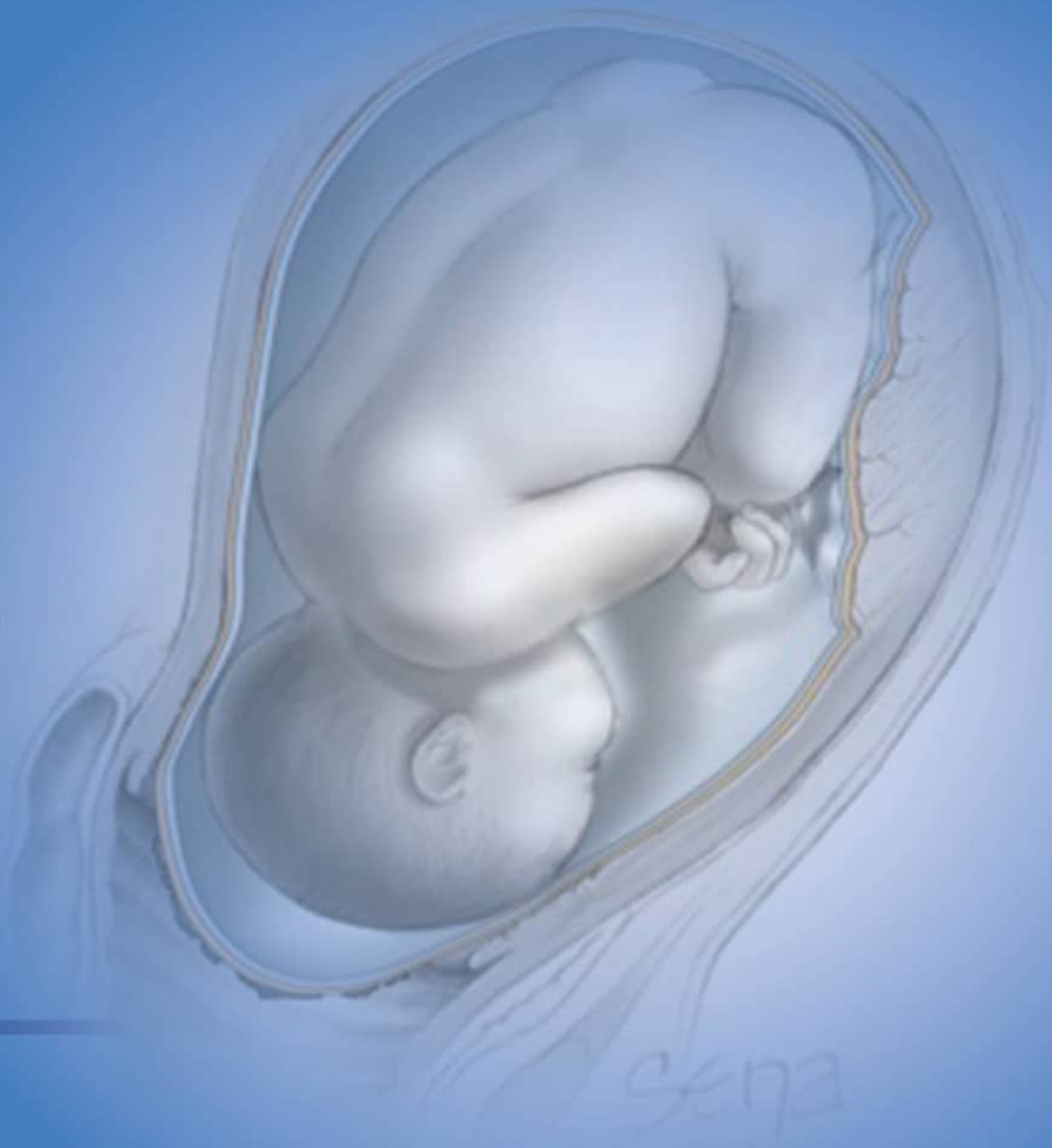
26TH EDITION

Williams OBSTETRICS



CUNNINGHAM
LEVENO
DASHE
HOFFMAN
SPONG
CASEY

Mc Graw Hill

Williams OBSTETRICS

NOTICE

Medicine is an ever-changing science. As new research and clinical experience broaden our knowledge, changes in treatment and drug therapy are required. The authors and the publisher of this work have checked with sources believed to be reliable in their efforts to provide information that is complete and generally in accord with the standards accepted at the time of publication. However, in view of the possibility of human error or changes in medical sciences, neither the authors nor the publisher nor any other party who has been involved in the preparation or publication of this work warrants that the information contained herein is in every respect accurate or complete, and they disclaim all responsibility for any errors or omissions or for the results obtained from use of the information contained in this work. Readers are encouraged to confirm the information contained herein with other sources. For example and in particular, readers are advised to check the product information sheet included in the package of each drug they plan to administer to be certain that the information contained in this work is accurate and that changes have not been made in the recommended dose or in the contraindications for administration. This recommendation is of particular importance in connection with new or infrequently used drugs.

Williams OBSTETRICS

26TH EDITION

F. Gary Cunningham
Kenneth J. Leveno
Jodi S. Dashe
Barbara L. Hoffman
Catherine Y. Spong
Brian M. Casey

New York Chicago San Francisco Lisbon London Madrid Mexico City
Milan New Delhi San Juan Seoul Singapore Sydney Toronto

ISBN: 978-1-26-046274-6
MHID: 1-26-046274-9

The material in this eBook also appears in the print version of this title: ISBN: 978-1-26-046273-9,
MHID: 1-26-046273-0.

eBook conversion by codeMantra
Version 1.0

EDITORS

F. Gary Cunningham, MD
Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Parkland Health and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

Kenneth J. Leveno, MD
Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Parkland Health and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

Jodi S. Dashe, MD
Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Medical Director of Prenatal Diagnosis
Parkland Health and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

Barbara L. Hoffman, MD
Distinguished Professor in Obstetrics and Gynecology,
in Honor of F. Gary Cunningham, M.D.
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Parkland Health and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

Catherine Y. Spong, MD
Paul C. MacDonald Distinguished Chair in Obstetrics and Gynecology
Professor and Chair, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Chief, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Parkland Health and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

Brian M. Casey, MD
Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
Vice Chair, Obstetrics
Director, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine
University of Alabama at Birmingham

DR. F. GARY CUNNINGHAM

Editor of *Williams Obstetrics*
18th through 26th Editions

In the early 1970s, as I was finishing my residency at Charity Hospital of New Orleans, the 14th edition of *Williams Obstetrics* was published. The residents in our program were totally enamored with the textbook because it was a clinical manual derived from the editors' personal experiences and from contemporary, evidence-based literature.

During my last year, my chairman, Dr. Abe Mickal, invited me to attend a national meeting where I first met four obstetricians who would have an immeasurable impact on my life—Drs. Jack Pritchard, Paul MacDonald, Norman Gant, and Peggy Whalley. Following that, I was invited to Dallas to spend time at the University of Texas Southwestern and Parkland Hospital. As I followed Dr. Pritchard through Labor & Delivery and his clinical research laboratory, I became hooked on "Parkland Obstetrics" and later that year began a fellowship that was the nascent subspecialty of Maternal–Fetal Medicine. It also began a lifelong friendship with Jack Pritchard that I will always treasure.

Beginning with the 15th edition of *Williams Obstetrics*, the author-editors were Drs. Pritchard, MacDonald, and Gant. After publication of the 17th edition, these mentors asked me to assume the senior editor role. I was immediately struck by the awesome responsibility of shepherding the book that many people called "the bible of obstetrics."

Over the years, and now as we publish this 26th edition, I reflect on the evolution of obstetrics, and hence the complexity of sustaining a textbook designed to cover the breadth of obstetrics. As essential fields such as sonography, genetics, and fetal medicine were developed, we enlisted the help of extremely talented leaders in their respective fields to ensure that the book adequately presented these innovations. As for my role in this and other editions, I can only promise the readers that the quality of the book has been foremost in my mind and led me to spend literally tens of thousands of hours to help prepare the past nine editions. To this end, the editors have always strived to put the best product forward because of the tremendous responsibility that we shoulder regarding the care of women and their unborn children. The textbook has been one of the great passions in my life, and I will miss the challenge.

DEDICATION

KENNETH LEVENO, MD
1941–2020

Dr. Kenneth Leveno was a vocal and stalwart defender of evidence-based obstetrics. Sadly, he passed away in May 2020. Ken joined the Department of Obstetrics & Gynecology at the University of Texas Southwestern after completing a Maternal–Fetal Medicine fellowship in 1978. In 1984, he was appointed Chief of Obstetrics at Parkland Memorial Hospital—a role in which he served for the next 20 years. During that time and afterwards, he worked tirelessly to achieve a level of excellence in obstetrical care for indigent women of Dallas County. His inspiring leadership and innovations raised the quality of care at the community obstetrics clinics, the high-risk prenatal clinics at Parkland, and the inpatient units, which include the Obstetrical Triage Unit, Labor & Delivery, postpartum wards, and the High-Risk Pregnancy Unit. Early on, he also designed a computerized database to measure quality indicators and provide an underpinning for clinical research. Indeed, his contributions to these programs were reverently referred to by us as *Parkland Obstetrics.*

Ken Leveno's leadership extended well beyond the hospital that he loved. He was a leader in American obstetrics by his defining of clinical research. Through his hundreds of peer-reviewed publications, his clinical opinions, and his willingness to engage in national debates, he helped shape obstetrical practices worldwide. In 1993, Ken began serving as an editor for *Williams Obstetrics*—a task that he regarded as a privilege and a responsibility. He co-authored the 19th through the current 26th editions. Last and importantly, he mentored the careers of many Maternal–Fetal Medicine fellows and young faculty who have gone on to achieve national reputations in the care of women. Ken will be greatly missed.

The Editors

ASSOCIATE EDITORS

Mala S. Mahendroo, PhD
Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology and
Green Center for Reproductive Biological Sciences
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Dallas, Texas

David B. Nelson, MD
Dedman Family Scholar in Clinical Care
Associate Professor, Department of Obstetrics and
Gynecology
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Chief of Obstetrics
Parkland Health and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

Shivani Patel, MD
Associate Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Assistant Quality Officer, Health Systems Affairs
Medical Director of Obstetrics, William P. Clements Jr.
University Hospital
Parkland Health and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

Diane M. Twickler, MD, FACR
Dr. Fred Bonte Professorship in Radiology
Professor, Department of Radiology and of Obstetrics and
Gynecology
Vice Chairman at Large for Radiology
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Medical Director of Obstetrics and Gynecology Ultrasonography
Parkland Health and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

CONTRIBUTING AUTHORS

Emily H. Adhikari, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Medical Director of Perinatal Infectious Diseases
Parkland Hospital and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

Donald D. McIntire, PhD
Biostatistician
Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Dallas, Texas

Wilmer Moreno, MD
Assistant Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Parkland Health and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

David M. Owen, MD, PhD
Assistant Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Parkland Health and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

Weike Tao, MD
Professor, Department of Anesthesiology and Pain Management
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Parkland Health and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

C. Edward Wells, MD
Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Parkland Health and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

Myra H. Wyckoff, MD
Professor, Department of Pediatrics
University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center
Director, Newborn Resuscitation Services
Parkland Health and Hospital System
Dallas, Texas

PREFACE

Over its 26 editions, *Williams Obstetrics* has aimed to serve practicing obstetricians and midwives in the bedside care of their patients. With its detailed explanations of disease pathophysiology and treatment fundamentals, it provides a bedrock text for residents who are training in Obstetrics or in Family Medicine specialties. Fellows in Maternal–Fetal Medicine will benefit from its additional discussions of complicated pathology and management. Last, *Williams Obstetrics* can aid specialists who act as consultants for gravidas with non-pregnancy-related disorders. Specifically, each chapter in Section 12 focuses on a specific organ system, the normal physiological changes and frequent disorders of that system in pregnancy, and suitable treatment options.

For this 26th edition, we continue to present the detailed staples of basic obstetrics such as maternal anatomy and physiology, preconceptional and prenatal care, labor, delivery, and the puerperium. These accompany detailed discussions of obstetrical complications exemplified by preterm labor, hemorrhage, hypertension, and many more. To emphasize the "M" in Maternal–Fetal Medicine, we continue to instruct on the many medical and surgical disorders that can complicate pregnancy. And, our second patient—the fetus—has accrued especial attention with an entire section devoted to diagnosis and treatment of fetal disorders. For all of these, we once again emphasize the science-based practice of clinical obstetrics. Expert clinical pearls add depth to these discussions and are written for busy practitioners—those "in the trenches." To integrate all our content, the reader of one chapter may be referred to a different chapter that contains complementary content. This offers a more global understanding of a given topic.

To accomplish our teaching goals, the text has been updated with more than 3000 new literature citations through 2021. Many of the nearly 900 figures are new, and these graphs, sonograms, magnetic resonance images, photographs, photomicrographs, and data graphs are all in vivid color. Much of the original artwork was rendered by our own medical illustrators.

As before, we continue to incorporate contemporaneous guidelines from professional and academic organizations such as the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, the Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and other authoritative sources. Many of these data are distilled into nearly 100 tables, in which information has been arranged in an easy read-and-use format. In addition, several diagnostic and management algorithms are available to quickly guide practitioners. Although we strive to cite numerous sources and provide multiple evidence-based options for such management schemes, we also include our own clinical experiences drawn from the large obstetrical service at Parkland Hospital. We are convinced that these are disciplined examples of evidence-based obstetrics but quickly acknowledge that they do not constitute the sole method of management.

F. Gary Cunningham
Kenneth J. Leveno
Jodi S. Dashe
Barbara L. Hoffman
Catherine Y. Spong
Brian M. Casey

This page intentionally left blank

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

In the creation and production of this textbook, we were fortunate to have the assistance and support of countless talented professionals both within and outside the Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology. To begin, we acknowledge that an undertaking of this magnitude would not be possible without the unwavering support provided by our recent Chairman Dr. Steven Bloom and Vice-Chairman Dr. Barry Schwarz, whose financial and academic endorsement has been essential. Dr. Bloom has served as an editor for the 22nd through 25th editions but now has assumed the important role of Associate Dean of Clinical Sciences at the University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center.

In constructing such an expansive academic compilation, the expertise of many colleagues was needed to add vital, evidence-based content. It was indeed fortuitous for us to have access to a trove of collaborators from our medical center. From our own Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Dr. Shivani Patel was essential to the production of our book and is an invaluable addition to our team. We benefitted from her obstetrical expertise, writing talent, and ability to translate difficult concepts into teaching pearls. Faculty with specific expertise included Dr. Claudia Werner, who lent valuable insight into the management of cervical dysplasia. Our nationally known pelvic anatomist, Dr. Marlene Corton, prepared graphic masterpieces for the anatomy chapter with artist Lew Calver. We also are grateful to the numerous faculty and residents who added seminal clinical photographs to our text.

In addition to these contributors, we relied heavily on our colleagues in the Division of Maternal–Fetal Medicine. These professionals, in addition to providing expert consultation, graciously assisted us by covering clinical duties when writing and editing were especially time consuming. These include Drs. Scott Roberts, Oscar Andujo, Vanessa Rogers, Charles Brown, Julie Lo, Robyn Horsager, Patricia Santiago-Muñoz, Mark Peters, Elaine Duryea, Jamie Morgan, Morris Bryant, Shena Dillon, Anne Ambia, Robert Martin, Robert Stewart, Stephan Shivvers, Ashley Zink, Sarah Happe, and Christina Herrera.

We also emphasize that production of *Williams Obstetrics* would not be feasible without the help of our Maternal–Fetal Medicine fellows and our residents in Obstetrics and Gynecology. Their insatiable curiosity serves to energize us to find new and effective ways to convey age-old truths, new data, and cutting-edge concepts. Their logical and critical questions lead us to weaknesses in the text, and thereby always help us to improve our work. In addition, we sincerely thank them for their vigilance in capturing photographs of spectacular examples of both obstetrical pathology and normal findings.

This edition is heavily populated with seminal examples of sonographic findings. We are grateful for the efforts of Mary Gibbs, RDMS; Rafael Levy, RDMS; Michael Davidson, RDMS; and the many talented sonographers at Parkland Hospital.

Thanks to generous funding from the McGraw-Hill Companies, this 26th edition now contains more than 200 color illustrations. Most of these were crafted by several skilled medical illustrators who include Ms. Marie Sena, Ms. Erin Frederickson, and Ms. SangEun Cha. All of these talented artists trained here at UT Southwestern under the instruction of Mr. Lewis Calver. Additional artistic support came from Mr. Joseph Varghese, Ms. Shreya Tiwari, Dr. Sudhi Singh, and Mr. Manoj Kumar Choudhry. Their work at Thomson Digital provided the full-color graphs and line art used to enhance this edition. Their team tirelessly coordinated efforts between author and artist and graciously accommodated our numerous changes and tweaks.

Production of the 5000-page manuscript would not have been possible without a dedicated team. Once again, we are deeply indebted to Ms. Dawn Wilson and Ms. Melinda Epstein for their untiring efforts with manuscript production. Ms. Regina Williams also provided excellent, cheerful, conscientious manuscript assistance. Mr. Charles Richards offered knowledgeable and responsive information technology support. For these and many more that go unnamed, we could not have done our job without their expertise.

It again has been a privilege to work with the dedicated professionals from McGraw-Hill Education. We have had the pleasure to work with Executive Editor Mr. Jason Malley in production of our textbook and are grateful for his support of *Williams Obstetrics*. Senior Project Development Editor Ms. Christie Naglieri has again brought her considerable knowledge to this edition of our book. Her dedication to creating the best textbook supported our efforts, and we appreciate her productive, gracious style. We thank Ms. Leah Carton, who provided professional, timely, and ever-sunny aid. Mr. Richard Ruzycka served as production supervisor for this edition of the textbook, and our book benefits from his years of experience.

Our text took its final shape under the watchful care of our compositors at Aptara, Inc. We thank Ms. Indu Jawwad for her talents in graciously and masterfully coordinating and overseeing composition. Her dedicated attention to detail and organization were vital to completion of our project. She has created many editions with us, and we consider her an essential team member. At Aptara, Mr. Mahender Singh carried out the crucial task of quality control. He also assisted, along with Mr. Rajesh Chander, Mr. Kamlesh Bhatt, and Mr. Anil Varghese, in creating beautiful chapter layouts to highlight our content aesthetically and informatively. This edition's chapters were also posted and available online for use prior to print publication. We thank Mr. Braj Bhushan and Mr. Ashish Kumar Sharma for preparing this content so brilliantly. Special thanks go to Mr. Greg Feldman. As copyeditor, Greg added

precision and clarity to our efforts. His endurance and pleasant professionalism through many challenging chapters has made our text better.

Last, we acknowledge our significant debt to the women who have entrusted themselves and their unborn children to us for obstetrical care. The clinical expertise and many images provided in this text would not have been possible without their collaborative spirit to help us advance obstetrical knowledge. We also offer enthusiastic and heartfelt appreciation to our families and friends. Without their patience, generosity, love, and encouragement, this task would have been impossible.

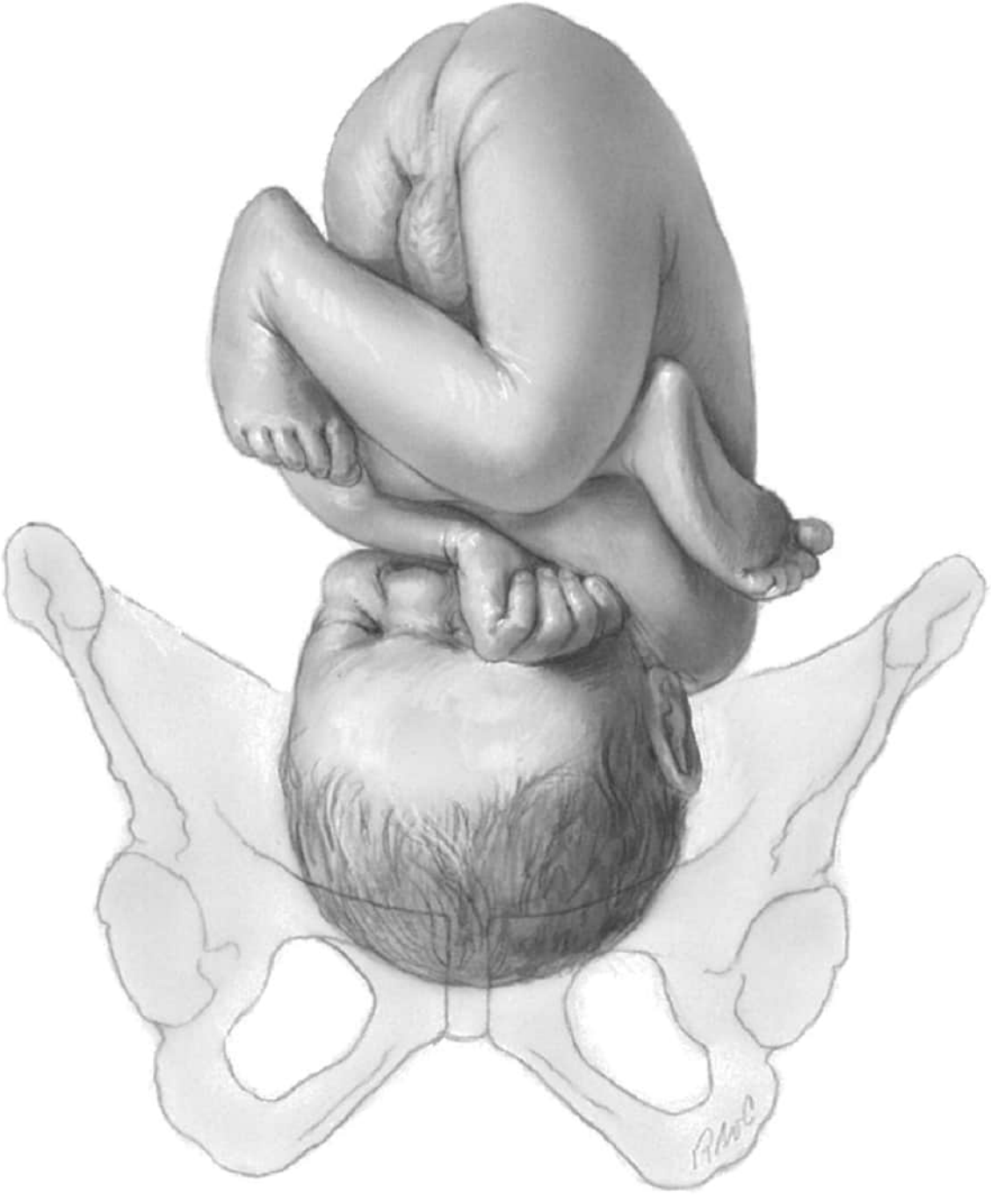
F. Gary Cunningham
Kenneth J. Leveno
Jodi S. Dashe
Barbara L. Hoffman
Catherine Y. Spong
Brian M. Casey

Williams OBSTETRICS

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 1

OVERVIEW



CHAPTER 1

Overview of Obstetrics

The science and clinical practice of obstetrics focuses on human reproduction. The specialty promotes the health and well-being of the pregnant woman and her fetus through quality perinatal care. Such care entails recognition and treatment of complications, supervision of labor and delivery, initial care of the newborn, and management of the puerperium. Postpartum care promotes health and provides family planning options.

Evidence-based medicine dominates the modern practice of obstetrics. As described by Williams in this textbook's first edition, we too strive to present the scientific evidence for current obstetrical care. Still, high-quality data do not support most recommendations (Brock, 2021). Thus, much of our practice stems from expert-based opinions and historical experiences (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2021). To help bridge knowledge gaps, we also rely on authoritative sources such as the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, as well as agencies such as the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and National Institutes of Health (NIH).

VITAL STATISTICS

The importance of obstetrics is demonstrated by the use of maternal and neonatal outcomes as an index of health and life quality among nations. Intuitively, indices showing poor obstetrical and perinatal outcomes could be assumed to reflect medical care deficiencies for the entire population.

The National Vital Statistics System of the United States collects statistics on births and deaths, including fetal deaths. Legal authority for collection resides individually with the 50 states; two regions—the District of Columbia and New York City; and five territories—American Samoa, Guam, the Northern Mariana Islands, Puerto Rico, and the Virgin Islands. The standard birth certificate includes information on medical and lifestyle risks, labor and delivery factors, and newborn characteristics. Importantly, the current death certificate contains a pregnancy checkbox (Hoyert, 2020).

Definitions

Standard definitions are encouraged by the World Health Organization as well as the American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a). Uniformity allows data comparison between states or regions and between countries. Still, not all definitions are uniformly applied. For example, uniformity is incomplete among states regarding birthweight and gestational age criteria for reporting fetal deaths (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). Not all states follow this recommendation. Specifically, 28 states stipulate that losses beginning at 20 weeks' gestation should be recorded as fetal deaths; eight states report all products of conception as fetal deaths; and still others use a minimum birthweight of 350 g, 400 g, or 500 g to define fetal death. To further the confusion, the National Vital Statistics Reports tabulates fetal deaths from pregnancies that are 20 weeks' gestation or older (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020a). This is problematic because the 50th percentile for fetal weight at 20 weeks approximates 325 to 350 g—considerably less than the 500-g definition. In fact, a birthweight of 500 g corresponds closely with the 50th percentile for 22 weeks' gestation.

Definitions recommended by the National Center for Health Statistics and the CDC are as follows:

Perinatal period. The interval between the birth of a neonate born after 20 weeks' gestation and the 28 completed days after that birth. When perinatal rates are based on birthweight, rather than gestational age, recommendations define the perinatal period as commencing at the birth of a 500-g neonate.

Birth. The complete expulsion or extraction from the mother of a fetus after 20 weeks' gestation. As described above, in the absence of accurate dating criteria, fetuses weighing <500 g are usually not considered births but rather are termed *abortuses* for purposes of vital statistics.

Birthweight. Neonatal weight determined immediately after delivery or as soon thereafter as feasible. It should be expressed to the nearest gram.

Birth rate. The number of live births per 1000 population.

Fertility rate. The number of live births per 1000 females aged 15 through 44 years.

Live birth. The term used to record a birth whenever the newborn at or sometime after birth breathes spontaneously or shows any other sign of life such as a heartbeat or definite spontaneous movement of voluntary muscles. Heartbeats are distinguished from transient cardiac contractions, and respirations are differentiated from fleeting respiratory efforts or gasps.

Stillbirth or fetal death. The absence of signs of life at birth.

Early neonatal death. Death of a liveborn neonate during the first 7 days after birth.

Late neonatal death. Death after 7 days but before 29 days.

Stillbirth rate or fetal death rate. The number of stillborn neonates per 1000 neonates born, including live births and stillbirths.

Neonatal mortality rate. The number of neonatal deaths per 1000 live births.

Perinatal mortality rate. The number of stillbirths plus neonatal deaths per 1000 total births.

Infant death. All deaths of liveborn infants from birth through 12 months of age.

Infant mortality rate. The number of infant deaths per 1000 live births.

Low birthweight. A newborn whose weight is <2500 g.

Very low birthweight. A newborn whose weight is <1500 g.

Extremely low birthweight. A newborn whose weight is <1000 g.

Term neonate. A neonate born any time after 37 completed weeks' gestation and up until 42 completed weeks' gestation (260 to 294 days). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine encourage specific gestational age designations (2019a). *Early term* refers to neonates born at 37 completed weeks up to $38^{6/7}$ weeks. *Full term* denotes those born at 39 completed weeks up to $40^{6/7}$ weeks. Last, *late term* describes neonates born at 41 completed weeks up to $41^{6/7}$ weeks.

Preterm neonate. A neonate born before 37 completed weeks (the 259^{th} day). A neonate born before 34 completed weeks is early preterm, whereas a neonate born between 34 and 36 completed weeks is late preterm.

Postterm neonate. A neonate born any time after completion of the 42nd week, beginning with day 295.

Abortus. A fetus or embryo removed or expelled from the uterus in the first half of gestation—20 weeks or less, or in the absence of accurate dating criteria, born weighing <500 g.

Induced termination of pregnancy. The purposeful interruption of an intrauterine pregnancy that has the intention other than to produce a liveborn neonate and that does not result in a live birth. This definition excludes retention of products of conception following fetal death.

Direct maternal death. The death of the mother that results from obstetrical complications of pregnancy, labor, or the puerperium and from interventions, omissions, incorrect treatment, or a chain of events resulting from any of these factors. An example is maternal death from exsanguination after uterine rupture.

Indirect maternal death. A maternal death that is not directly due to an obstetrical cause. Death results from previously existing disease or a disease developing during pregnancy, labor, or the puerperium that was aggravated by maternal physiological adaptation to pregnancy. An example is maternal death from complications of mitral valve stenosis.

Late maternal death. Death of a woman from direct or indirect obstetrical causes more than 42 days but less than 1 year after the pregnancy's end.

Nonmaternal death. Death of the mother that results from accidental or incidental causes not related to pregnancy. An example is death from an automobile accident or concurrent malignancy.

Pregnancy-associated death. The death of a woman, from any cause, while pregnant or within 1 calendar year of termination of pregnancy, regardless of the duration and the site of pregnancy.

Pregnancy-related death. A pregnancy-associated death that results from: (1) complications of pregnancy itself, (2) the chain of events initiated by pregnancy that led to death, or (3) aggravation of an unrelated condition by the physiological or pharmacological effects of pregnancy and that subsequently caused death.

Maternal mortality ratio. The number of maternal deaths that result from the reproductive process per 100,000 live births. Used more commonly, but less accurately, are the terms *maternal mortality rate* or *maternal death rate*. The term *ratio* is more accurate because it includes in the numerator the number of deaths regardless of pregnancy outcome—for example, live births, stillbirths, and ectopic pregnancies—whereas the denominator includes the number of live births.

PREGNANCY RATES IN THE UNITED STATES

According to the CDC, the fertility rate of women aged 15 to 44 years in the United States in 2019 was 58 live births per 1000 women. This rate began slowly trending downward in 1990 and has now dropped below that for replacement births to sustain the population level. This indicates a population decline. The birth rate decreased for all major ethnic and racial groups, for adolescents and unmarried women, and for

TABLE 1-1. Total Pregnancies and Outcomes in the United States in 2019

Outcome	Number or Percent
Total births	3,747,540
Cesarean deliveries	31.7%
Primary cesarean delivery	21.6%
Vaginal birth after cesarean	13.8%
Preterm births (<37 weeks)	10.0%
Low birthweight (<2500 g)	8.0%
Very low birthweight (<1500 g)	1.4%
Induced abortions	862,320

Data from Guttmacher 2019b; Martin, 2021.

those aged 20 to 24 years. For women older than 30 years, the birth rate rose slightly. Almost half of newborns in 2019 in the United States were minorities: Hispanic—25 percent; African-American—15 percent; and Asian—4 percent (Martin, 2021).

The total number of pregnancies and their outcomes in 2019 are shown in Table 1-1. According to the Guttmacher Institute (2019b), 45 percent of births in the United States are unintended at the time of conception. But, the overall proportion of unintended births has declined since 2008. Unmarried women, black women, and women with less education or income are more likely to have an unplanned pregnancy.

OBSTETRICAL CARE MEASURES

Several indices are used to assess obstetrical and perinatal outcomes as measures of medical care quality. As noted, the *perinatal mortality rate* includes the number of stillbirths and neonatal deaths per 1000 total births. In 2016, this rate was 6 deaths per 1000 births (Fig. 1-1). This rate has been unchanged for several years (Gregory, 2018). Rates of fetal death at 28 weeks' gestational age or more have declined since 1990, whereas rates for those between 20 and 27 weeks are static.

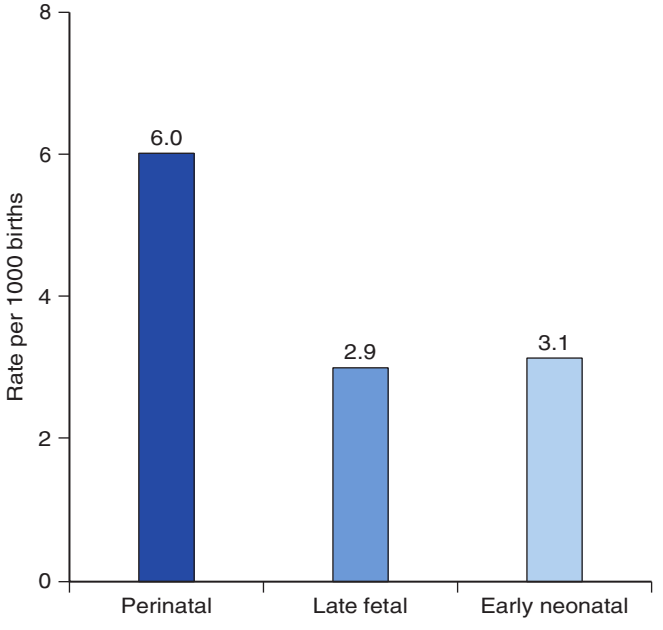


FIGURE 1-1 Perinatal, late-fetal, and early-neonatal mortality rates per 1000 births in the United States in 2016. (Data from Gregory, 2018).

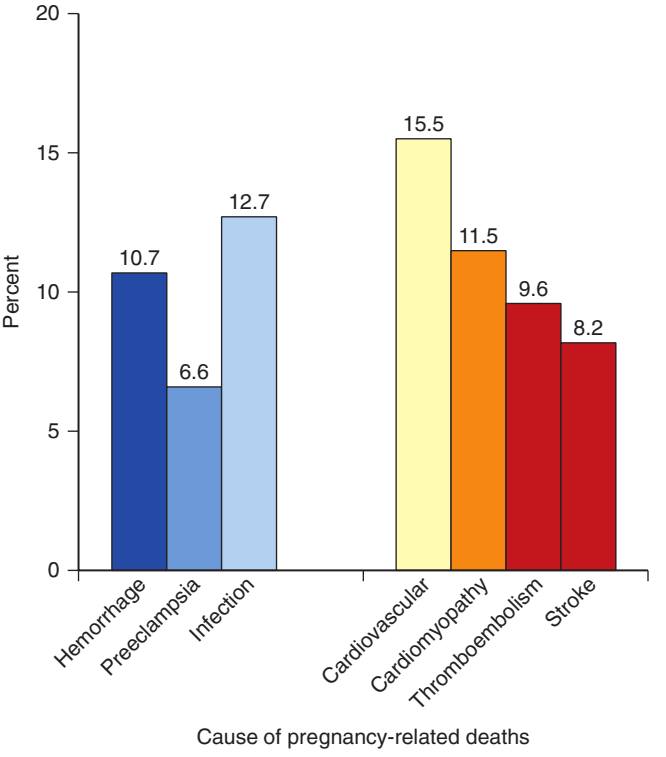


FIGURE 1-2 Some causes of and their contributions to pregnancy-related maternal deaths in the United States from 2014–2017. (Data from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020c).

Of *infant deaths*, the rate approximated 6 deaths per 1000 live births in 2018 compared with nearly 7 in 2001 (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020b). The four leading causes—congenital malformations, preterm birth, low birthweight, and maternal pregnancy complications—accounted for almost half of all infant deaths. Neonates born at the lowest gestational ages and birthweights add substantively to these mortality rates. For example, 17 percent of all infant deaths in 2018 were in those born preterm and with a low birthweight (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020d). Of particular interest are neonates with birthweights <500 g, for whom neonatal intensive care can now be offered (Chap. 45, p. 785).

Of *maternal deaths*, rates dropped precipitously in the United States during the 20th century. Pregnancy-related deaths are so uncommon as to be measured per 100,000 births. The CDC maintains data on pregnancy-related maternal deaths in its Pregnancy Mortality Surveillance System (PMSS). Its latest report described 3410 pregnancy-related deaths between 2011 and 2015 (Petersen, 2019b). Approximately 5 percent were early-pregnancy maternal deaths due to ectopic gestation or abortive outcomes. The deadly obstetrical triad of hemorrhage, preeclampsia, and infection accounted for a third of all deaths (Fig. 1-2). Thromboembolism, cardiomyopathy, and other cardiovascular disease together accounted for another third. Other significant contributors were amniotic fluid embolism (5.5 percent) and cerebrovascular accidents (8.2 percent). Anesthesia-related deaths were at an all time low—only 0.4 percent. Similar

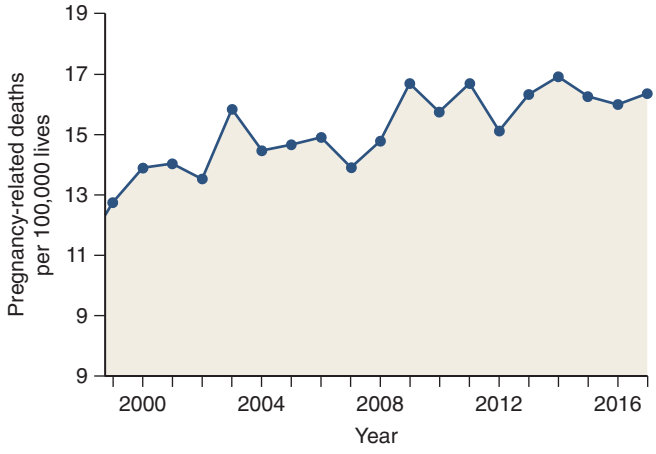


FIGURE 1-3 Trends in pregnancy-related maternal mortality in the United States from 1999–2017. (Data from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020c).

causes were reported for selected cohorts by MacDorman and associates (2017).

The pregnancy-related maternal mortality ratio was 17 deaths per 100,000 live births in 2017 (Fig. 1-3). The cause of this rise during the last 30 years may simply be that more women are dying, however, other factors explain this increase (Joseph, 2017). First, the number of pregnant women with severe chronic health conditions, which place women at higher risk, is greater (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020c). Second, the increased proportion of births to women older than 40 years contributes to higher mortality rates (Petersen, 2019b). Another is an artificial elevation caused by the International Statistical Classification of Diseases, 10th Revision (ICD-10), implemented in 1999. Additionally, improved reporting of maternal mortality contributes to the rise (MacDorman, 2016, 2017). Last, implementation of the pregnancy checkbox on the death certificate was associated with an increased identification of maternal deaths (Rossen, 2020). Thus, after accounting for the checkbox, predicted maternal mortality rates did not change significantly from 1999 through 2017.

Another consideration is the obvious disparity of higher mortality rates among black, Hispanic, and white women as shown in Figure 1-4. Racial disparities stem from health-care

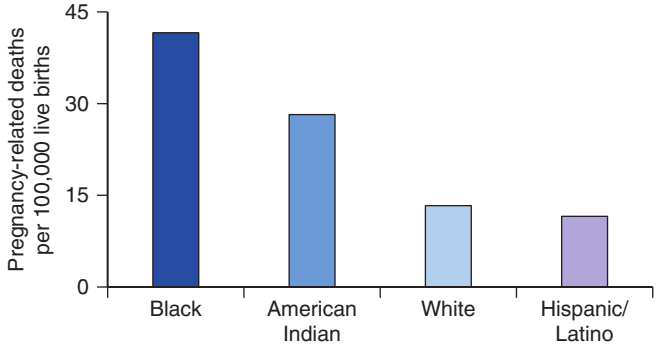


FIGURE 1-4 Pregnancy-related mortality ratio by race/ethnicity in the United States from 2014–2017. (Data from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020c).

availability, access, or use (Petersen, 2019a). The maternal mortality rate is also disparately high in rural compared with metropolitan areas (Maron, 2017).

Importantly, many maternal deaths are considered preventable. In one report, up to a third of pregnancy-related deaths in white women and up to half of those in black women were deemed preventable (Berg, 2005). One evaluation of an insured cohort reported that 28 percent of 98 maternal deaths were preventable (Clark, 2008). Thus, further efforts are imperative for obstetrics and described on page 6.

Severe Maternal Morbidity

This is defined as unintended events of labor and delivery resulting in serious short- or long-term consequences to a woman. Indicators serve as one measure to guide prevention (Table 1-2). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2016) have provided lists of suggested screening topics for this purpose.

To study severe maternal morbidity (SMM), the CDC analyzed more than 50 million maternity records from 1998 to 2009 (Callaghan, 2012). They reported that 129 per 10,000 women had at least one indicator for SMM (Table 1-2). Thus, for every maternal death, approximately 200 women experience severe morbidity. As shown in Figure 1-5, SMM rates have increased during the past 15 years, and this trend is attributed to better documentation and a rise the blood transfusion rate. These numbers are greatest in smaller hospitals with <1000 deliveries annually (Hehir, 2017). Last, as with mortality rates,

TABLE 1-2. Severe Maternal Morbidity Indicators

Acute myocardial infarction
Acute renal failure
Adult respiratory distress syndrome
Amnionic fluid embolism
Cardiac arrest/ventricular fibrillation
Cardiac monitoring
Cardiac surgery
Conversion of cardiac rhythm
Disseminated intravascular coagulation
Eclampsia
Heart failure during procedure
Hysterectomy
Injuries of thorax, abdomen, and pelvis
Intracranial injuries
Puerperal cerebrovascular disorders
Pulmonary edema
Severe anesthesia complications
Sepsis
Shock
Sickle-cell crisis
Thrombotic embolism
Tracheostomy
Ventilation

Summarized from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021.

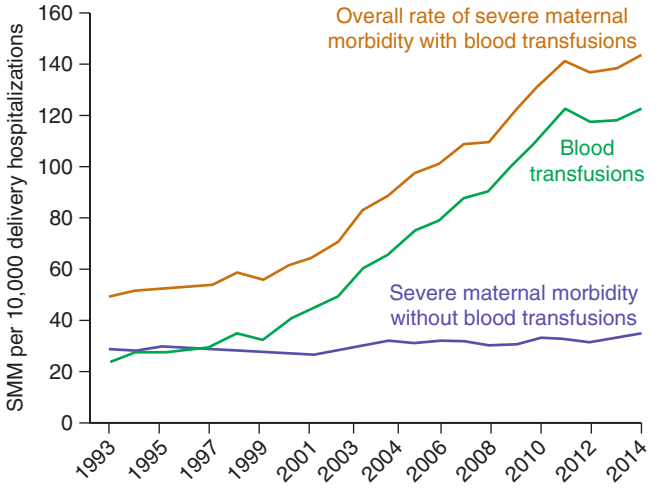


FIGURE 1-5 Rates of severe maternal morbidity (SMM) per 10,000 delivery hospitalizations. Women who received blood transfusions account for the greatest fraction of SMM. (Data from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021).

there are serious racial and ethnic disparities for SMM, and black women are disproportionately affected (Creanga, 2014).

Near Misses

Lowering medical error rates serves to diminish risks for maternal death and SMM. The terms *near misses* or *close calls* were introduced and defined as unplanned events caused by error that do not result in patient injury but have this potential (Institute for Safe Medication Practices, 2009). These are more common than injury events, but for obvious reasons, they are more difficult to identify and quantify. Systems designed to encourage reporting have been installed in various institutions and allow focused safety efforts (Clark, 2012; King, 2012; Shields, 2017). The World Health Organization (WHO) also implemented such a system. It has been validated in Brazil and accurately correlates with maternal death rates (Souza, 2012). A similar system in Britain is the *UK Obstetric Surveillance System—UKOSS* (Knight, 2005, 2008). In the United States, one is the *National Partnership for Maternal Safety* (D'Alton, 2016; Main, 2015).

TIMELY TOPICS IN OBSTETRICS

Various topics have been in the forefront since the 25th edition of this textbook. Here, we discuss several of these.

COVID-19 Pandemic

In early 2020, the severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)-CoV-2 virus spread rapidly around the globe, creating the greatest public health crisis since the influenza pandemic of 1918 (Chap. 67, p. 1187). As of early 2021, the disease caused by this virus and commonly known as COVID-19 is estimated to have infected more than 181 million people and caused nearly 4 million deaths (World Health Organization, 2021). Expectedly, the healthcare and political landscapes in the United States changed dramatically because of the pandemic.

Following the January 2020 declaration of a Global Health Emergency by the WHO, citywide lockdowns, state-mandated shelter-in-place orders, and public mask mandates were all implemented to help control early viral spread. Healthcare systems scrambled to acquire COVID-19 tests and personal protective equipment for staff. Wards dedicated solely to COVID-19 care opened in hospitals throughout the nation to handle substantial patient volume. Despite these measures, more than 500,000 individuals—including more than 3000 healthcare workers—died in the United States in 2020 from the infection.

Maternity wards were not spared, and traditional models of prenatal care were transformed. Namely, virtual care and drive-through prenatal care models aimed to reduce exposure risk to patients and staff (Holcomb, 2020; Turrentine, 2020). Asymptomatic or mild infections were common in pregnancy (Adhikari, 2020). Still, the effects of COVID-19 on pregnancy are not completely understood, and the effect of pregnancy on disease course is controversial. Management of severe COVID-19 infection in pregnancy requires interdisciplinary care and an understanding of pregnancy physiology and viral pathophysiology.

Preventive measures—including mRNA vaccines—have been shown to be safe and highly effective in disease prevention. However, this critical information was delayed following exclusion of pregnant individuals from initial clinical trials (Adhikari, 2021; Polack, 2020). In a report describing over 800,000 pregnancies, Chinn and colleagues (2021) found that 2.2 percent (18,715) of these women had COVID-19. When compared with women without such infections, these women had significantly increased adverse outcomes to include preterm birth, ICU admissions, intubations and mechanical ventilation, and maternal deaths. In 2021 the FDA approved COVID-19 vaccines for pregnant women.

Knowledge gained during the SARS-CoV-2 pandemic will undoubtedly shape healthcare moving forward (Cook, 2021). Indeed, a combined in-person plus audio-only virtual prenatal care model may most effectively provide services to vulnerable patients who lack internet access (Duryea, 2021).

Maternal Mortality—a Call to Arms

Almost 700 women in the United States die each year from pregnancy or its complications, and many deaths are deemed preventable. As a result, obstetricians and other stakeholders have united to address these tragedies (Chescheir, 2015). Because maternal deaths are inextricably linked to SMM indicators (see Table 1-2), several programs have been designed by national organization to avoid these events. Noted earlier, the Pregnancy Mortality Surveillance System (PMSS) collects national pregnancy-related death data to guide prevention efforts. Another, the Alliance for Innovation on Maternal Health (AIM) program, creates patient *safety bundles*, which describe evidence-based best practices for various obstetrical settings. The Joint Commission recommends that birthing centers establish protocols and implement simulation efforts (Barbieri, 2015). Moreover, national working groups target specific risks, such as thromboembolism (D'Alton, 2016).

In addition to pregnancy, the puerperium is a vulnerable period as well. One specific national effort is to establish

dedicated 1-year postpartum follow-up to ensure ongoing care. Important targets are medical disorders such as hypertension, diabetes, other cardiovascular diseases, and their consequences. To emphasize puerperal care, the concept of a "fourth trimester" has been introduced (Chap. 36, p. 634). Moreover, legislation—the MOMMA's Act—aims to expand Medicaid postpartum coverage from 60 days to 12 months (Bailey, 2021). As stated by Surgeon General Jerome Adams, "We must act now; our nation and our mothers deserve better." (Frieden, 2020).

Opioid Use Disorder

During 1999 to 2014, the national prevalence of opioid use disorder in pregnant women rose 333 percent from 1.5 to 6.5 cases per 1000 deliveries (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2018). In addition to the complexities of maternal addiction, opioid use has led to an unprecedented increase in the incidence of the *neonatal opioid withdrawal syndrome* (Chap. 33, p. 605). To combat the associated adverse effects on women and their pregnancies, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) has stressed an active role by obstetricians. The College recommends universal screening by questionnaire, as well as care given to affected women by a multidisciplinary team. Therapeutic use of opioids is curtailed as best possible. Treatment of opioid use disorder with methadone or buprenorphine is challenging and discussed in Chapter 64 (p. 1150). Despite efforts, a significant decline in the prevalence of these disorders in gravidas is not in sight.

Advances in Prenatal Genetics

Several technologies help detect fetal genetic abnormalities. Since the last edition, noninvasive prenatal screening that uses cell-free DNA (cfDNA) has become commonplace in prenatal care (Zhang, 2019). Another promising technique is chromosomal microarray analysis (CMA) performed on samples of chorionic villi or amnionic fluid. These tests provide sophisticated information about gains and losses of DNA segments as small as 50 to 100 kilobases. However, although the yield with CMA is superior to that with fetal karyotyping, *most* birth defects occur in the setting of normal CMA and karyotype results.

As knowledge of the human genome has expanded, the role of specific DNA sequence abnormalities has gained attention. As an example, evaluation of fetal skeletal dysplasia may include panels of tests in which next-generation sequencing is used to identify mutations in specific genes. Whole exome sequencing (WES) analyzes all coding regions of DNA, which together account for 1.5 percent of the genome. In pregnancies with structural fetal abnormalities, and in which CMA and karyotype results are normal, WES has identified clinically significant abnormalities in approximately 10 percent of fetuses (Lord, 2019; Petrovski, 2019). In one series of fetuses with unexplained nonimmune hydrops, WES detected diagnostic genetic variants in nearly 30 percent (Sparks, 2020).

Although promising, WES technology at this time is not recommended for routine use in prenatal diagnosis (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). Limitations include high rates of genetic variants of uncertain significance, long turnaround times, and high costs. Comprehensive counseling is needed because WES may detect or suspect a finding that is unrelated but medically actionable. Genomic tests are reviewed in Chapter 16 (p. 324), and elements of counseling are discussed in Chapter 17 (p. 334).

Placenta Accreta Spectrum

Since our last edition, the cesarean delivery rate has been static and approximates 32 percent. However, rates of pregnancies complicated by placenta accreta spectrum (PAS) have grown substantially. An incidence as high as 1 case in 300 deliveries has been cited (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018). Sequelae of these dangerous syndromes are discussed in Chapter 43 (p. 765). To address these risks, specialized accreta surgical teams at tertiary care centers and greater antepartum transfer to these centers are both on the rise. As one prevention, national efforts have worked to avoid the *primary* cesarean delivery. However, despite these efforts, PAS will likely continue as a significant risk for SMM.

Progestogens to Prevent Preterm Birth

Progesterone derivatives to forestall preterm birth have been studied for decades. One—intramuscular 17-alpha-hydroxyprogesterone caproate (17-OHPC)—was approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) under the accelerated approval process and contingent on demonstration of efficacy in a second trial. The drug is marketed as *Makena*, and subsequent, observational studies, described in Chapter 45 (p. 795), have led to questions of its efficacy (Nelson, 2021).

In 2019, results of the confirmatory trial of *Makena* efficacy—the PROLONG trial—failed to show its benefits compared with placebo for prevention of birth before 35 weeks (Blackwell, 2020). Later in 2019, an FDA Advisory Committee voted 9 to 7 to withdraw interim accelerated approval. Analyses by the committee included cross-study comparisons and subgroup analyses that did not show 17-OHPC benefits (Fig. 45-6, p. 796). In late 2020, the FDA Center for Drug Evaluation and Research (CDER) recommended drug withdrawal from the market.

Subsequently, obstetricians became polarized regarding "off label" use of the drug because it *appears safe* (Chang, 2020; Greene, 2020; Sibai, 2020). Despite findings from the PROLONG trial and the FDA's CDER, both the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021) and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020) continued to endorse 17-OHPC use. This, however, is with the proviso that "uncertainty regarding benefit" be shared with the patient during decision-making. Last, the EPPPIC Group (2021) performed a metaanalysis of randomized trials evaluating progestogens for preterm birth prevention. Although not statistically significant, they concluded progestogens, which include 17-OHPC, reduced births at less than 34 weeks. The FDA's CDER (2021) continues to recommend withdrawal of 17-OHPC from the market. At this time, however, thousands of women continue to receive 17-OHPC despite its questionable efficacy.

REFERENCES

Adhikari EH, Moreno W, Zofkie AC, et al: Pregnancy outcomes among women with and without severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 infection. JAMA Netw Open 3(11):e2029256, 2020

Adhikari EH, Spong CY: COVID-19 vaccination in pregnant and lactating women. JAMA 325(1):1039, 2021

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Severe maternal morbidity: screening and review. Obstetric Care Consensus No. 5, September 2016

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Placenta accreta spectrum. Obstetric Care Consensus No. 7, December 2018

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Definition of term pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 579, November 2013, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Opioid use and opioid use disorder in pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 711, August 2017, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Management of stillbirth. Obstetric Consensus Conference No. 10, February 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Microarrays and next-generation sequencing technology: the use of advanced genetic diagnostic tools in obstetrics and gynecology. Committee Opinion No. 682, December 2016, Reaffirmed 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prediction and prevention of spontaneous preterm birth. Practice Bulletin No. 234, August 2021

Bailey SR: Our black maternal health crisis is an American tragedy. AMA April 15, 2021

Barbieri RL: Reducing maternal mortality in the United States—let's get organized! OBG Manag 27(9):8, 2015

Berg CJ, Harper MA, Atkinson SM, et al: Preventability of pregnancy-related deaths. Results of a state-wide review. Obstet Gynecol 106:1228, 2005

Blackwell SC, Gyamfi-Bannerman C, Biggio JR Jr, et al: 17-OHPC to prevent recurrent preterm birth in singleton gestation (PROLONG Study): a multicenter, international, randomized double-blind trial. Am J Perinatol 37(2):127, 2020

Brock CO, Blackwell SC, Chauhan SP, et al: Assessment of evidence underlying guidelines by the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224:223.e1, 2021

Callaghan WM, Creanga AA, Kuklina EV: Severe maternal morbidity among delivery and postpartum hospitalizations in the United States. Obstet Gynecol 120(5):1029, 2012

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Opioid use disorder documented at delivery hospitalization—United States, 1999–2014. MMWR 67(31):845, 2018

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Fetal deaths. 2020a. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/nchs/nvss/fetal_death.htm. Accessed June 24, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Infant mortality. 2020b. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/maternalinfanthealth/infantmortality.htm. Accessed June 29, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Pregnancy mortality surveillance system. 2020c. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/maternalmortality/pregnancy-mortality-surveillance-system.htm. Accessed July 1, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Preterm birth. 2020d. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/maternalinfanthealth/pretermbirth.htm. Accessed June 29, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Severe maternal morbidity in the United States. 2021. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/maternalinfanthealth/severematernalmorbidity.html. Accessed July 1, 2021

Chang CY, Nguyen CP, Wesley B, et al: Withdrawing approval of Makena—a proposal from the FDA Center for Drug Evaluation and Research. N Engl J Med 383(24):e131, 2020

Chescheir NC: Enough already! Obstet Gynecol 125(1):2, 2015

Chinn J, Sedighim S, Kirby K, et al: Characteristics and outcomes of women with COVID-19 giving birth at UKS academic centers during the COVID-19 pandemic. JAMA Netw Open 4(8):e2120456, 2021

Clark SL, Belfort MA, Dildy GA, et al: Maternal death in the 21st century: causes, prevention, and relationship to cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199(1):36.e1, 2008

Clark SL, Meyers JA, Frye DR, et al: A systematic approach to the identification and classification of near-miss events on labor and delivery in a large, national health care system. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(5):441, 2012

Cook DJ, Altman RB, Westman J, et al: Can the COVID-19 natural experiment teach us about care value and system preferences? NEJM Catalyst May 5, 2021

Creanga AA, Bateman BT, Kuklina EV, et al: Racial and ethnic disparities in severe maternal morbidity: a multistate analysis, 2008–2010. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210(5):435.e1, 2014

D'Alton ME, Friedman AM, Smiley RM, et al: National partnership for maternal safety: consensus bundle on venous thromboembolism. Obstet Gynecol 128:688–98, 2016

Duryea EL, Adhikari EH, Ambia A, et al: Comparison between in-person and audio-only prenatal visits and perinatal outcomes. JAMA Network Open 5(4):e215854, 2021

EPPPIC Group: Evaluating Progestogens for Preventing Preterm birth International Collaborative (EPPPIC): metaanalysis of individual participant data from randomised controlled trials. Lancet 397(10280):1183, 2021

Frieden J: HHS, Surgeon General launches campaign to reduce maternal deaths. Med Page Today December 3, 2020

Greene MF, Klebanoff MA, Harrington D: Preterm birth and 17OHP–why the FDA should not withdraw approval. N Engl J Med 383(24):e130, 2020

Gregory EC, Drake P, Martin JA: Lack of change in perinatal mortality in the United States, 2014–2016. NCHS Data Brief No. 316, August, 2018

Guttmacher Institute: Fact Sheet: induced abortion in the United States. 2019a. Available at: www.guttmacher.org/fact-sheet/induced-abortion-united states. Accessed June 25, 2021

Guttmacher Institute: Fact sheet: unintended pregnancy in the United States. 2019b. Available at: https://www.guttmacher.org/fact-sheet/unintended-pregnancy-united-states. Accessed June 25, 2021

Hehir MP, Ananth CV, Wright JD, et al: Severe maternal morbidity and comorbid risk in hospitals performing <1000 deliveries per year. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(2):179.e1, 2017

Holcomb D, Faucher MA, Bouzid J, et al: Patient perspectives on audio-only virtual prenatal visits amidst the severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) pandemic. Obstet Gynecol 136(2):317, 2020

Hoyert DL, Uddin SF, Miniño AM: Evaluation of the pregnancy status checkbox on the identification of maternal deaths. National Vital Statistics Reports 69(1):1, 2020

Institute for Safe Medication Practices: ISMP survey helps define near miss and close call. 2009. Available at: https://www.ismp.org/resources/ismp-survey-helps-define-near-miss-and-close-call. Accessed June 29, 2021

Joseph KS, Lisonkova S, Muraca GM, et al: Factors underlying the temporal increase in maternal mortality in the United States. 129(1):91, 2017

King JC: Maternal mortality in the United States—why is it important and what are we doing about it? Semin Perinatol 36(1):14, 2012

Knight M, Kurinczuk JJ, Tuffnell D, et al: The UK obstetric surveillance system for rare disorders of pregnancy. BJOG 112:263, 2005

Knight M, UKOSS: Antenatal pulmonary embolism: risk factors, management and outcomes. BJOG 115:453, 2008

Lord J, McMullan DJ, Eberhardt RY: Prenatal exome sequencing analysis in fetal structural abnormalities detected by ultrasonography (PAGE): a cohort study. Lancet 393(10073):747, 2019

MacDorman MF, Declercq E, Cabral H, et al: Recent increases in the U.S. maternal mortality rate: disentangling trends from measurement issues. Obstet Gynecol 128(3):447, 2016

MacDorman MF, Declercq E, Thoma ME: Trends in maternal mortality by sociodemographic characteristics and cause of death in 27 states and the District of Columbia. Obstet Gynecol 129(5):811, 2017

Main EK, Cape V, Abreo A, et al: Reduction of severe maternal morbidity from hemorrhage using a state perinatal quality collaborative. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(3):298.e1, 2017

Main EK, Goffman D, Scavone BM, et al: National partnership for maternal safety: consensus bundle on obstetric hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 126(1): 155, 2015

Maron DF: Maternal health care is disappearing in rural America. Scientific American, February 15, 2017

Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJ, et al: Births: final data for 2019. National Vital Statistics Report 70(2):1, 2021

Meis PJ, Klebanoff M, Thom E, et al: Prevention of recurrent preterm delivery by 17 alpha-hydroxyprogesterone caproate. N Engl J Med 348(24):2379, 2003

Nelson DB, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: A chronicle of the 17OHP-C story to prevent recurrent preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(2):175, 2021

Petersen EE, Davis NL, Goodman D, et al: Racial/ethnic disparities in pregnancy-related deaths—United States, 2007–2016. MMWR 68(35):762, 2019a

Petersen EE, Davis NL, Goodman D, et al: Vital signs: pregnancy-related deaths, United States, 2011–2015, and strategies for prevention, 13 states, 2013–2017. MMWR 68(18):423, 2019b

Petrovski S, Aggarwal V, Giordano JL, et al: Whole-exome sequencing in the evaluation of fetal structural anomalies: a prospective cohort study. Lancet 393(101793):758, 2019

Polack FP, Thomas SJ, Kitchin N, et al: Safety and efficacy of the BNT162b2 mRNA Covid-19 vaccine. N Engl J Med 383(27):2603, 2020

Rossen LM, Womack LS, Hoyert DL, et al: The impact of the pregnancy checkbox and misclassification on maternal mortality trends in the United States, 1999–2017. Vital Health Stat 3(44):1, 2020

Shields LE, Wiesner S, Klein C, et al: Early standardized treatment of critical blood pressure elevations is associated with a reduction in eclampsia and severe maternal morbidity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(4):415.e1, 2017

Sibai B, Saade G, Das A: Re-examining the Meis Trial for evidence of false-positive results. Obstet Gynecol 136 (3):622, 2020

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: SMFM statement use of 17-alpha hydroxyprogesterone caproate or prevention of recurrent preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(1):B16, 2020

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Special statement: grading of recommendations assessment, development, and evaluations (GRADE) update. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(4):B24, 2021

Souza JP, Cecatti JG, Haddad SM, et al: The WHO maternal near-miss approach and the maternal severity index model (MSI): tools for assessing the management of severe maternal morbidity. PLoS One 7(8):e44129, 2012

Sparks TN, Lianoglou BR, Adami RR, et al: Exome sequencing for prenatal diagnosis in nonimmune hydrops fetalis. N Engl J Med 383(18):1746, 2020

Turrentine M, Ramirez M, Monga M, et al: Rapid development of a drive-through prenatal care model in response to the coronavirus disease 2019 (covid-19) pandemic. Obstet Gynecol 136(1):29, 2020

United States Food and Drug Administration: CDER statement: Makena (hydroxyprogesterone caproate injection) information. 2021. Available at: https://www.fda.gov/drugs/postmarket-drug-safety-information-patients-and-providers/makena-hydroxyprogesterone-caproate-injection-information. Accessed July 1, 2021

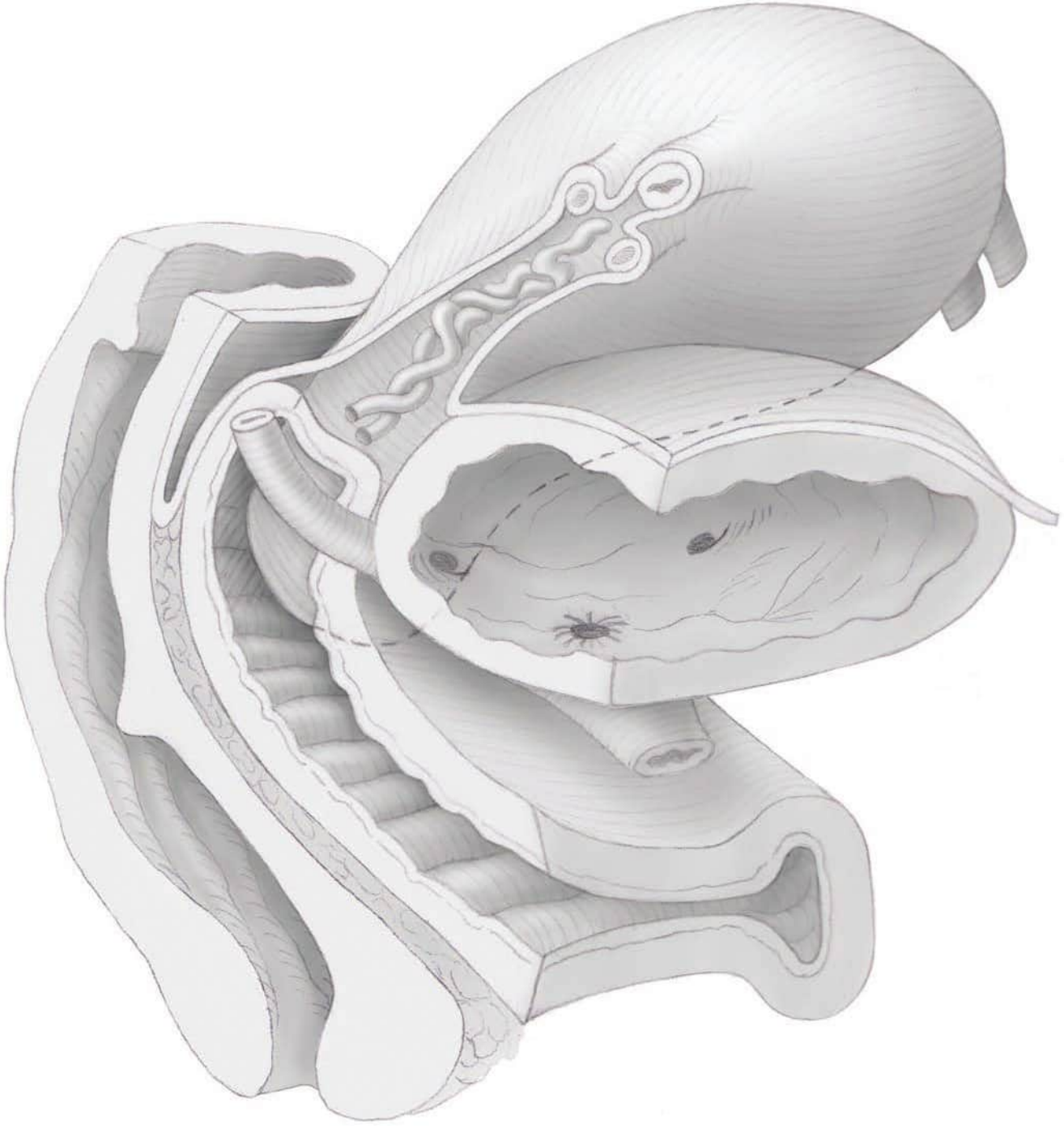
World Health Organization: WHO coronavirus (COVID-19) dashboard. 2021. Available at: https://covid19.who.int. Accessed June 30, 2021

Zhang J, Jianli L, Saucier JB, et al: Non-invasive prenatal sequencing for multiple mendelian monogenic disorders using circulating cell-free fetal DNA. Nat Med 25(3):439, 2019

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 2

MATERNAL ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY



CHAPTER 2

Maternal Anatomy

ANTERIOR ABDOMINAL WALL

Skin, Subcutaneous Layer, and Fascia

The anterior abdominal wall confines abdominal viscera, stretches to accommodate the expanding uterus, and provides surgical access to the internal reproductive organs. Thus, a comprehensive knowledge of its layered structure is required to surgically enter the peritoneal cavity.

Langer lines describe the orientation of dermal fibers within the skin. In the anterior abdominal wall, they lie transversely. As a result, vertical skin incisions sustain greater lateral tension and in general develop wider scars. In contrast, low transverse incisions, such as the Pfannenstiel, follow Langer lines and lead to superior cosmetic results.

The subcutaneous layer can be separated into a superficial, predominantly fatty layer—Camper fascia—and a deeper membranous layer—Scarpa fascia. Camper fascia continues onto the perineum to provide fatty substance to the mons pubis and labia majora and then to blend with the fat of the ischioanal fossa. Scarpa fascia continues inferiorly onto the perineum as Colles fascia, (p. 18).

Beneath the subcutaneous layer, the anterior abdominal wall muscles are the midline *rectus abdominis* and *pyramidalis muscles* as well as the *external oblique*, *internal oblique*, and *transversus abdominis muscles*, which extend across the entire wall (Fig. 2-1). The fibrous aponeuroses of these three latter muscles form the primary fascia of the anterior abdominal wall. These fuse in the midline at the linea alba, which normally sonographically measures ≤15 mm wide below the umbilicus in nongravid women (Beer, 2009; Mota, 2018). An abnormally wide separation may reflect diastasis recti or ventral hernia.

These three aponeuroses also invest the rectus abdominis muscle as the rectus sheath. The construction of this sheath varies above and below a boundary, termed the arcuate line (see Fig. 2-1). Cephalad to this border, the aponeuroses invest the rectus abdominis bellies on both dorsal and ventral surfaces. Caudal to this line, all aponeuroses lie ventral or superficial to the rectus abdominis muscle, and only the thin transversalis fascia and peritoneum lie deep to the rectus (Loukas, 2008). This transition of rectus sheath composition can be seen best in the upper third of a midline vertical abdominal incision.

The paired small triangular pyramidalis muscles originate from the pubic crest and insert into the linea alba. These muscles lie atop the rectus abdominis muscle but beneath the anterior rectus sheath.

The umbilicus is covered by peritoneum, transversalis fascia, and skin and contains the umbilical ring. The ring is a defect in the linea alba through which the fetal umbilical vessels previously passed. The round ligament of the liver and the median umbilical and medial umbilical ligaments variably attach to the ring.

Transversalis Fascia and Peritoneum

Transversalis fascia is the thin fibrous tissue layer between the inner surface of the transversus abdominis muscle and the

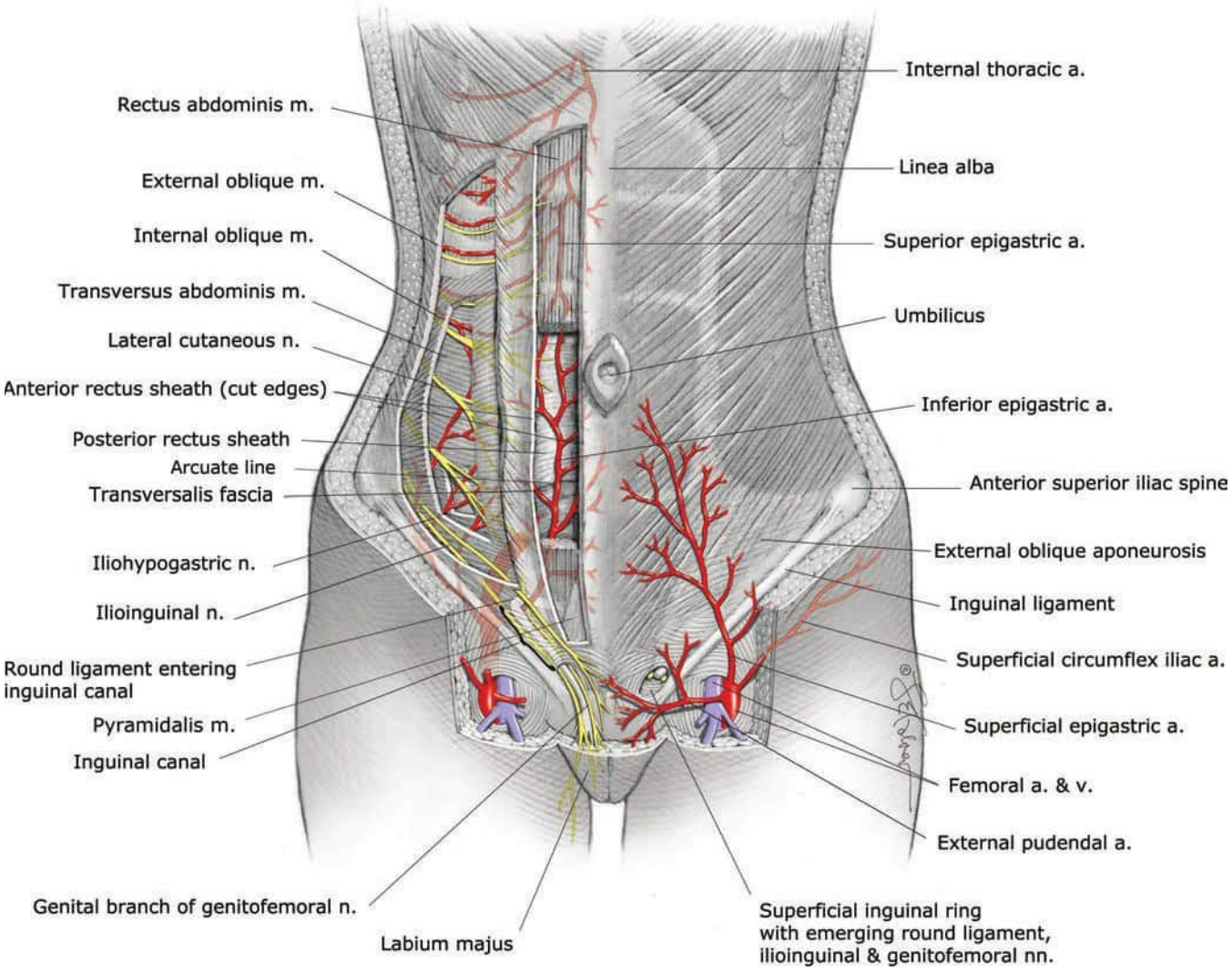


FIGURE 2-1 Anterior abdominal wall anatomy. (Modified with permission from Corton MM: Anatomy. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

preperitoneal fat. Inferiorly, the transversalis fascia blends with the periosteum of the pubic bones.

The peritoneum contains a single layer of epithelial cells and a supporting connective tissue. The visceral peritoneum densely wraps around the abdominopelvic viscera, whereas the parietal peritoneum lines the inner surface of the abdominal walls. In the anterior abdominal wall, five elevations of parietal peritoneum converge toward the umbilicus and are known as umbilical ligaments.

The single *median umbilical ligament* is formed by the urachus, a fibrous fetal remnant that extends from the bladder apex to the umbilicus. Clinically, this ligament may be seen at laparotomy during peritoneal incision as a white, midline, fibrous cord. The paired *medial umbilical ligaments* are formed by the obliterated fetal umbilical arteries. The paired *lateral umbilical ligaments* contain the patent inferior epigastric vessels (see Fig. 2-1).

■ Blood Supply and Lymphatics

The *superficial epigastric*, *superficial circumflex iliac*, and *superficial external pudendal arteries* arise from the femoral artery just below the inguinal ligament within the femoral triangle (see Fig. 2-1). These vessels supply the skin and subcutaneous layers of the anterior abdominal wall and mons pubis. The superficial epigastric vessels are surgically important and course diagonally from their origin toward the umbilicus. With a low transverse skin incision, these vessels can usually be identified at a depth halfway between the skin and the anterior rectus sheath. They lie above the Scarpa fascia and several centimeters from the midline. Ideally, these vessels are identified and surgically occluded. Lymphatics run cephalad–caudad on the lower abdomen (Tourani, 2015). Most channels lie in the dermis, and a smaller density is found between the Camper and Scarpa fascias (Friedman, 2015).

More deeply, the bilateral *inferior epigastric artery* and vein are respective branches of the external iliac vessels and supply anterior abdominal wall muscles, nerves, and fascia. Of surgical relevance, the inferior epigastric vessels initially course lateral to and then posterior to the rectus abdominis muscles, which they supply. A deep system of lymphatics follows these arteries (Tourani, 2015).

Clinically, when a Maylard incision is used for cesarean delivery, the inferior epigastric vessels may be lacerated during muscle transection. Preventively, identification and surgical

occlusion are preferable. These vessels rarely may rupture spontaneously or traumatically during pregnancy to create a rectus sheath hematoma (Eckhoff, 2016; Gibbs, 2016).

On each side of the lower anterior abdominal wall, the Hesselbach triangle is the region bounded laterally by the inferior epigastric vessels, inferiorly by the inguinal ligament, and medially by the lateral border of the rectus abdominis muscle. Hernias that protrude through the abdominal wall in the boundaries of the Hesselbach triangle are termed direct inguinal hernias. In contrast, indirect inguinal hernias bulge through the deep inguinal ring, which lies lateral to this triangle, and enter the inguinal canal. Here, contents may exit out the superficial inguinal ring.

Innervation

The entire anterior abdominal wall is innervated by intercostal nerves ($T_{7–11}$), the subcostal nerve (T_{12}), and the iliohypogastric and the ilioinguinal nerves (L_1). The intercostal and subcostal nerves are anterior rami of the thoracic spinal nerves and run along the lateral and then anterior abdominal wall between the transversus abdominis and internal oblique muscles (Fig. 2-2). This space, termed the transversus abdominis plane, can be used for postcesarean analgesia blockade (Chap. 25, p. 480) (Ng, 2018).

Near the rectus abdominis lateral borders, anterior branches of the intercostal and subcostal nerves travel superficially to pierce the posterior sheath, rectus muscle, and then anterior sheath to reach the skin. Thus, these nerve branches may be severed during a Pfannenstiel incision creation during the step in which the overlying anterior rectus sheath is separated from the rectus abdominis muscle (Chap. 30, p. 552).

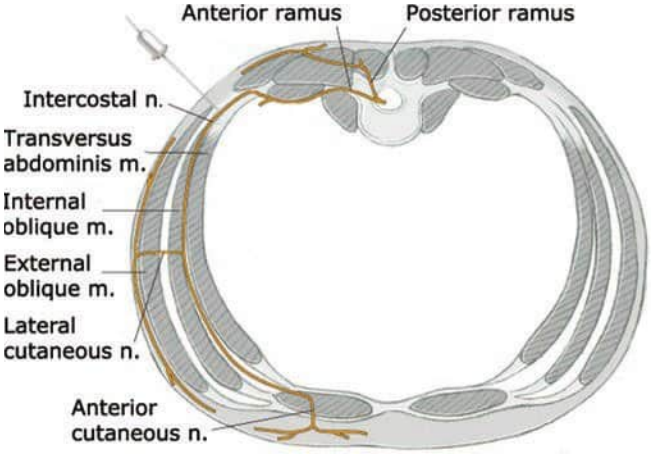


FIGURE 2-2 Intercostal and subcostal nerves are the anterior rami of spinal nerves. In this figure, an intercostal nerve extends ventrally between the transversus abdominis and internal oblique muscles. During this path, the nerve gives rise to lateral and anterior cutaneous branches, which innervate the anterior abdominal wall. As shown by the inserted needle, the transversus abdominis plane (TAP) block takes advantage of this anatomy. (Modified with permission from Hawkins JL: Anesthesia for the pregnant woman. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al: Cunningham and Gilstraps's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

The iliohypogastric and ilioinguinal nerves originate from the anterior ramus of the first lumbar spinal nerve. They emerge lateral to the psoas major muscle and travel across the quadratus lumborum in the retroperitoneum and toward the iliac crest. Near this crest, both nerves pierce the transversus abdominis muscle and course ventromedially. At a site 2 to 3 cm medial to the anterior superior iliac spine, the nerves then pierce the internal oblique muscle and course superficial to it toward the midline (Whiteside, 2003). The iliohypogastric nerve perforates the external oblique aponeurosis near the lateral rectus border to provide sensation to the suprapubic skin (see Fig. 2-1). The ilioinguinal nerve in its course medially travels through the inguinal canal and exits through the superficial inguinal ring, which forms by splitting of external abdominal oblique aponeurosis fibers. This nerve supplies the skin of the mons pubis, upper labia majora, and medial upper thighs.

The ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves can be severed during a low transverse incision or entrapped during closure, especially if incisions extend beyond the lateral borders of the rectus abdominis muscle (Rahn, 2010). These nerves carry sensory information only, and injury leads to loss of sensation within the areas supplied. Rarely, chronic pain may develop (Verhagen, 2018).

The T_{10} dermatome approximates the level of the umbilicus. Analgesia to this level is suitable for labor and vaginal birth. Regional analgesia for cesarean delivery or for puerperal sterilization ideally extends to T_4.

PERINEUM

This diamond-shaped area has boundaries that mirror those of the bony pelvic outlet (p. 28). These are the pubic symphysis anteriorly, ischiopubic rami and ischial tuberosities anterolaterally, sacrotuberous ligaments posterolaterally, and coccyx posteriorly. An arbitrary line joining the ischial tuberosities divides the perineum into an anterior triangle, also called the urogenital triangle, and a posterior triangle, termed the anal triangle (Fig. 2-3).

Vulva

Mons Pubis, Labia, and Clitoris

The vulva includes all structures visible externally in the urogenital triangle. These are the mons pubis, labia majora, labia minora, clitoris, hymen, vestibule, urethral opening, greater vestibular (Bartholin) glands, minor vestibular glands, and paraurethral glands (see Fig. 2-3). The vulva receives innervations and vascular support from the pudendal nerve (p. 22).

The mons pubis is a fat-filled cushion overlying the symphysis pubis. After puberty, the mons pubis skin is covered by hair that forms the triangular escutcheon, whose base aligns with the upper margin of the symphysis pubis. In men and some hirsute women, the escutcheon extends farther onto the anterior abdominal wall toward the umbilicus and thus is diamond shaped.

Labia majora usually are 7 to 8 cm long, 2 to 3 cm wide, and 1 to 1.5 cm thick. They are continuous directly with the

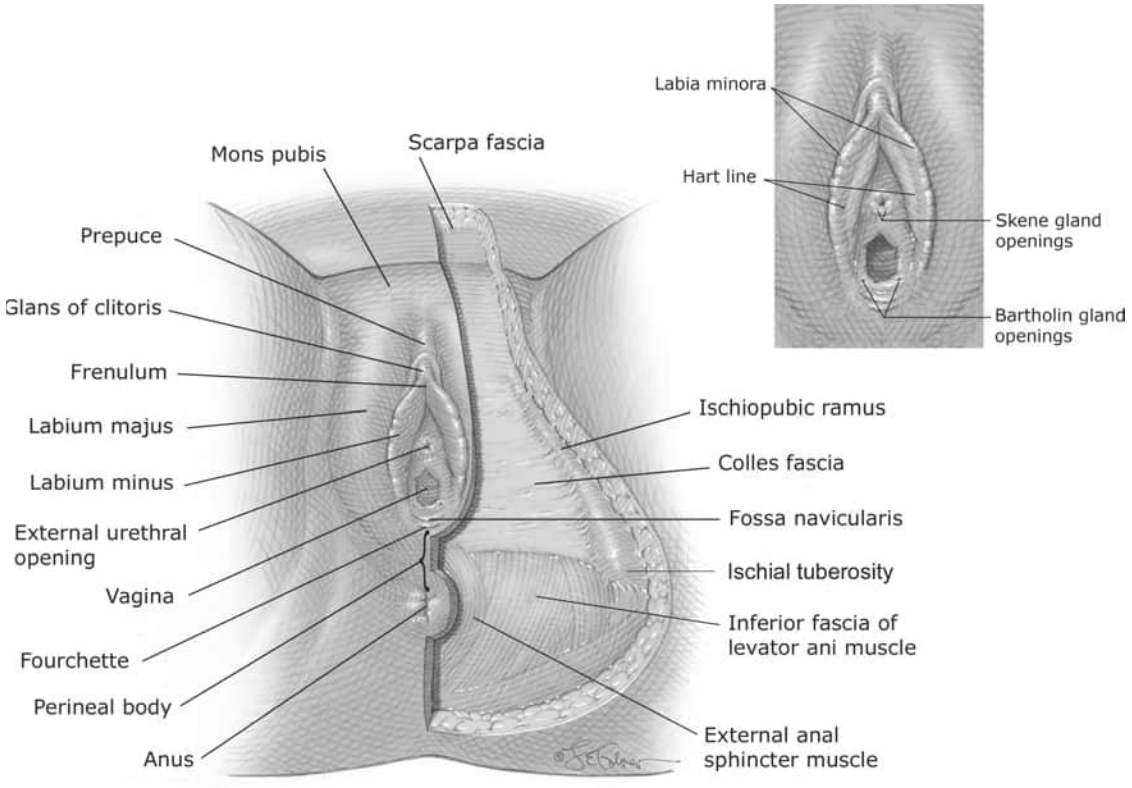


FIGURE 2-3 Vulvar structures and subcutaneous layer of urogenital triangle. **Inset:** Vestibule boundaries and openings onto the vestibule. (Modified with permission from Corton MM: Anatomy. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

mons pubis superiorly, and the round ligaments terminate at their upper borders. Hair covers the labia majora, and apocrine, eccrine, and sebaceous glands are abundant. Beneath the skin, a dense connective tissue layer is nearly void of muscular elements but is rich in elastic fibers and fat. This fat mass provides bulk to the labia majora and is supplied with a rich venous plexus. During pregnancy, this plexus may develop varicosities from pressure created by the growing uterus.

Each labium minus is a thin tissue fold that lies medial to each labium majus. The labia minora begin at the fourchette and extend superiorly, where each divides into two lamellae. From each side, the lower lamellae fuse to form the frenulum of the clitoris, and the upper lamellae merge to form the prepuce (see Fig. 2-3). The labia minora dimensions vary greatly among reproductive-aged women (Cao, 2015; Lykkebo, 2017). In one large study, the mean length was 4 cm (range 0.5 to 10 cm) and mean lateral span was 1.5 (range 0.1 to 6 cm) (Kreklau, 2018).

Structurally, the labia minora are composed of connective tissue with many small vessels, elastin fibers, but very little smooth muscle. Nerve fibers are numerous (Ginger, 2011a; Schober, 2015). The epithelia of the labia minora differ by location. Thinly keratinized stratified squamous epithelium covers the outer surface of each labium. On their inner surface, the lateral portion is covered by this same epithelium up to a demarcating line, termed the Hart line. Medial to this line, each labium is covered by squamous epithelium that is nonkeratinized. Labia minora lack hair follicles, eccrine glands, and apocrine glands but have many sebaceous glands (Wilkinson, 2011).

The clitoris is the principal female erogenous organ (Fig. 2-4). It is located beneath the prepuce, above the frenulum and urethra, and projects downward toward the vaginal opening. The clitoris rarely exceeds 2 cm in length and is composed of a glans, a corpus or body, and two crura. The glans is usually less than 0.5 cm in diameter and is covered by stratified squamous epithelium. Nerve bundles are prominent and correspond to the paired dorsal nerves of the clitoris (Jackson, 2019). The clitoral body contains two corpora cavernosa. Extending from the clitoral body, each corpus cavernosum diverges laterally to form a long, narrow crus. Each crus lies along the inferior surface of its respective ischiopubic ramus and deep to the ischiocavernosus muscle. The clitoral blood supply stems from branches of the internal pudendal artery. Specifically, the *deep artery of the clitoris* supplies the clitoral body, whereas the *dorsal artery of the clitoris* supplies the glans and prepuce.

Vestibule

In adult women, the vestibule is an almond-shaped area that is enclosed by the Hart line laterally, the hymen medially, the clitoral frenulum anteriorly, and the fourchette posteriorly (see Fig. 2-3). The vestibule is usually perforated by six openings: the urethra, the vagina, two greater vestibular (Bartholin) gland ducts, and ducts of the two largest paraurethral glands—the Skene glands. The posterior portion of the vestibule between the fourchette and the vaginal opening is called the vestibular fossa (Hill, 2021). It is usually observed only in nulliparas.

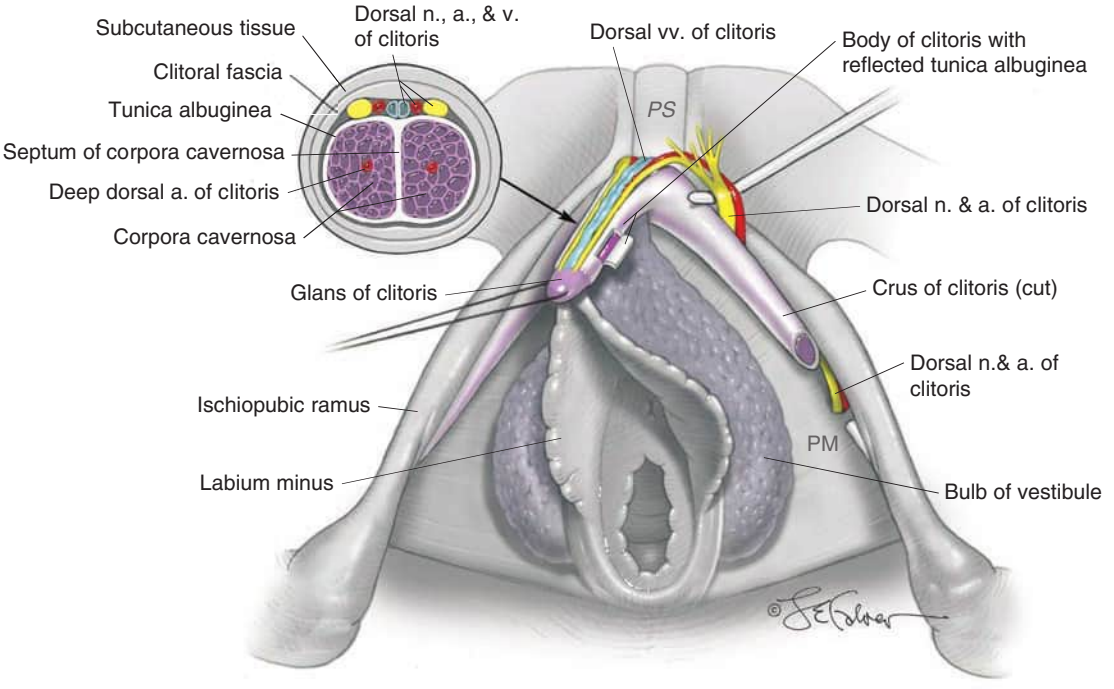


FIGURE 2-4 Clitoris and associated vulvar structures in superficial space of urogenital triangle. Inset: cross section through proximal body of clitoris. PM = perineal membrane; PS = pubic symphysis. (Modified with permission from Corton MM: Anatomy. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

The bilateral Bartholin glands are 0.5 to 1 cm in diameter. On their respective side, each lies inferior to the vestibular bulb (bulb of vestibule) and deep to the inferior end of the bulbospongiosus muscle (former bulbocavernosus muscle). A duct extends medially from each gland, measures 1.5 to 2 cm long, and opens distal to the hymeneal ring. One duct opens at 5 and the other at 7 o'clock on the vestibule. Following trauma or infection, either duct may swell and obstruct to form a cyst or, if infected, an abscess. In contrast, the minor vestibular glands are shallow glands lined by simple mucin-secreting epithelium and open along the Hart line.

The paraurethral glands are a collective arborization of glands whose numerous small ducts open into the urethra and predominantly along its entire inferior aspect (Costa, 2016; Huffman, 1948). The two largest are called Skene glands, and their ducts typically lie distally and near the urethral meatus. Clinically, inflammation and duct obstruction of any of the paraurethral glands can lead to urethral diverticulum formation (Chap 56, p. 1007). The urethral opening or meatus is in the midline of the vestibule, 1 to 1.5 cm below the pubic arch, and a short distance above the vaginal opening.

■ Vagina and Hymen

In adult women, the hymen is a thin membrane that surrounds all or much of the vaginal opening in an annular or crescent form. Mainly elastic fibers, collagen, and fine vessels compose the hymen. Nerve fibers are few and localize to its base. Both outer and inner hymeneal surfaces are covered by nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium (Mahran, 1964). The aperture of the intact hymen ranges in diameter from pinpoint to one that admits one or even two fingertips. As a rule, the hymen is torn at several sites during first coitus. However, identical tears may form by other penetration, for example, by tampons used during menstruation. The torn edges soon reepithelialize.

Proximal to the hymen, the vagina is a muscular tube that extends to the uterus and is interposed lengthwise between the bladder and the rectum (Fig. 2-5). Total vaginal length is 9 to 10 cm (Collins, 2017; Patnam, 2019). Anteriorly, the vagina is separated from the bladder and urethra by connective tissue—the vesicovaginal septum. Posteriorly, between the lower portion of the vagina and the rectum, similar tissues together form the rectovaginal septum. The upper fourth of the vagina is separated from the rectum by the rectouterine pouch, also called the cul-de-sac or pouch of Douglas (Balgobin, 2020).

Normally, the anterior and posterior walls of the vaginal lumen lie in contact. The vaginal apex is subdivided by the cervix into anterior, posterior, and two lateral fornices. Clinically, the internal pelvic organs usually can be palpated through the thin walls of these fornices.

The vaginal lining is composed of nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium and underlying lamina propria. In premenopausal women, this lining is thrown into numerous thin transverse ridges, known as rugae. Deep to this, a muscular layer contains smooth muscle, collagen, and elastin. Beneath this, an adventitial layer consists of collagen and elastin (Maldonado, 2020; Mazloomdoost, 2017). No true fascia separates the vagina from the bladder or from the rectum.

The vagina lacks glands. Instead, it is lubricated by a transudate that originates from the vaginal subepithelial capillary

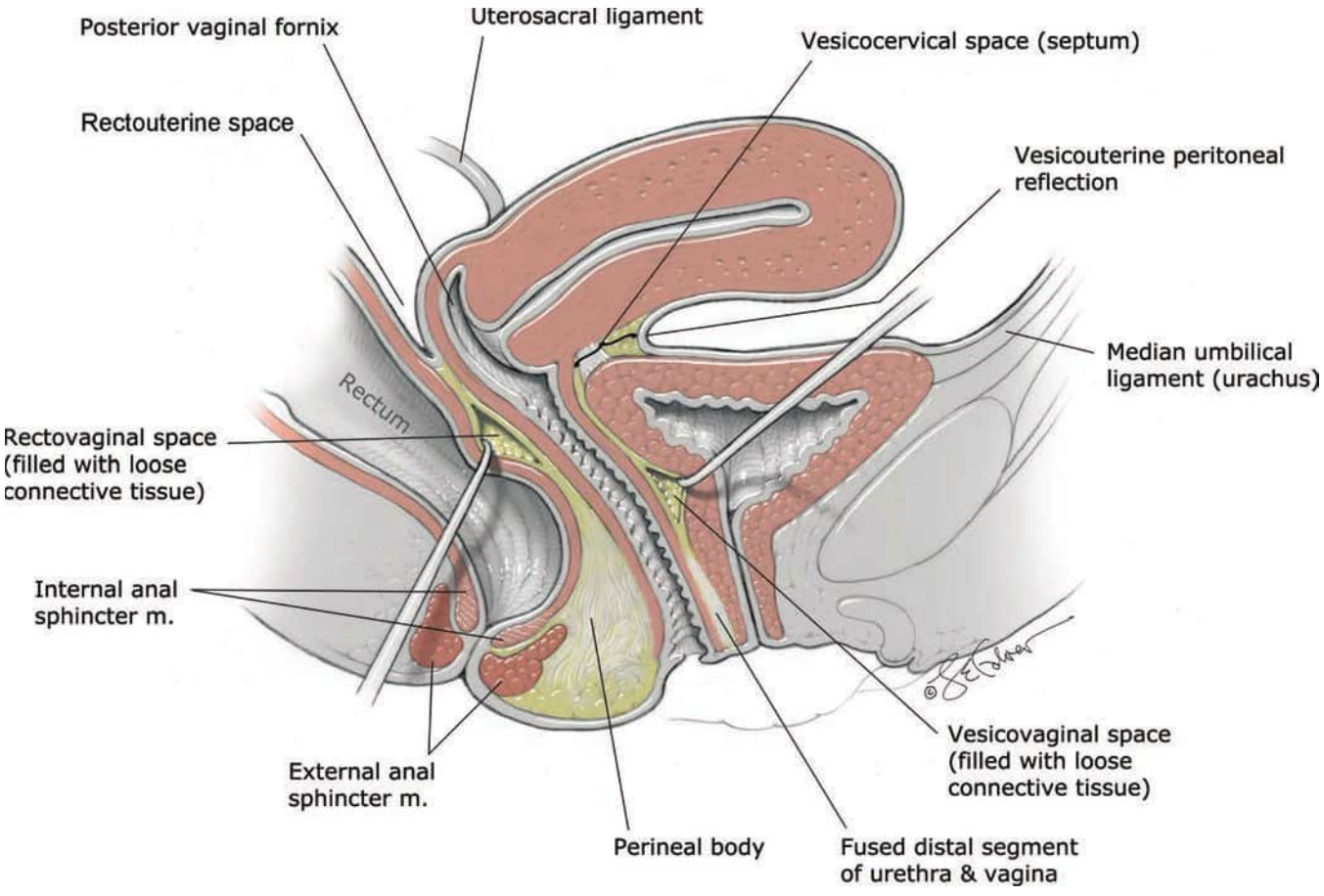


FIGURE 2-5 Vagina and surrounding anatomy. (Modified with permission from Corton MM: Anatomy. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

plexus and crosses the permeable epithelium (Kim, 2011). Due to increased vascularity during pregnancy, vaginal secretions are notably increased. At times, this may be confused with amniotic fluid leakage, and clinical differentiation of these two is described in Chapter 22 (p. 426).

After birth-related epithelial trauma and healing, fragments of stratified epithelium occasionally are embedded beneath the vaginal surface. Similar to its native tissue, this buried epithelium continues to shed degenerated cells. As a result, epidermal inclusion cysts, which are filled with debris, may commonly form.

The vagina has an abundant vascular supply. The proximal portion is supplied by the cervical branch of the uterine artery and by the vaginal artery. The latter may variably arise from the uterine or inferior vesical artery or directly from the internal iliac artery. The middle rectal artery contributes supply to the posterior vaginal wall, whereas the distal walls receive contributions from the internal pudendal artery. At each level, vessels supplying each side of the vagina course medially across the anterior or posterior vaginal wall and form midline anastomoses.

An extensive venous plexus also surrounds the vagina and follows the course of the arteries. Lymphatics from the lower third, along with those of the vulva, drain primarily into the inguinal lymph nodes. Those from the remainder drain into the pelvic lymph nodes.

Perineal Body

This fibromuscular pyramidal mass lies in the midline at the junction between the urogenital and anal triangles (Figs. 2-3 and 2-5) (Oh, 1973; Soga, 2007). Clinically, it measures 3.5 to 5 cm in nulliparas from the posterior midline hymen to the mid-anal opening, which are standard pelvic organ prolapse-quantification (POP-Q) landmarks (Komorowski, 2014; Reimers, 2016). It lengthens slightly during pregnancy, and during second-stage labor, one study showed that it stretches >65 percent (Meriwether, 2016). It serves as the junction for several structures and provides significant perineal support (Shafik, 2007). Superficially, the bulbospongiosus, superficial transverse perineal, and external anal sphincter muscles converge on the perineal body. More deeply, the perineal membrane, portions of the pubococcygeus muscle, and internal anal sphincter contribute (Larson, 2010).

The perineal body is incised during episiotomy incision and is torn with second-, third-, and fourth-degree lacerations. Data conflict as to whether a shorter perineal body length predisposes to higher-order lacerations (Deering, 2004; Dua, 2009; Hokenstad, 2015; Meriwether, 2016).

Urogenital Triangle

Superficial Space

The urogenital triangle is bounded by the pubic rami superiorly, the ischial tuberosities laterally, and the superficial

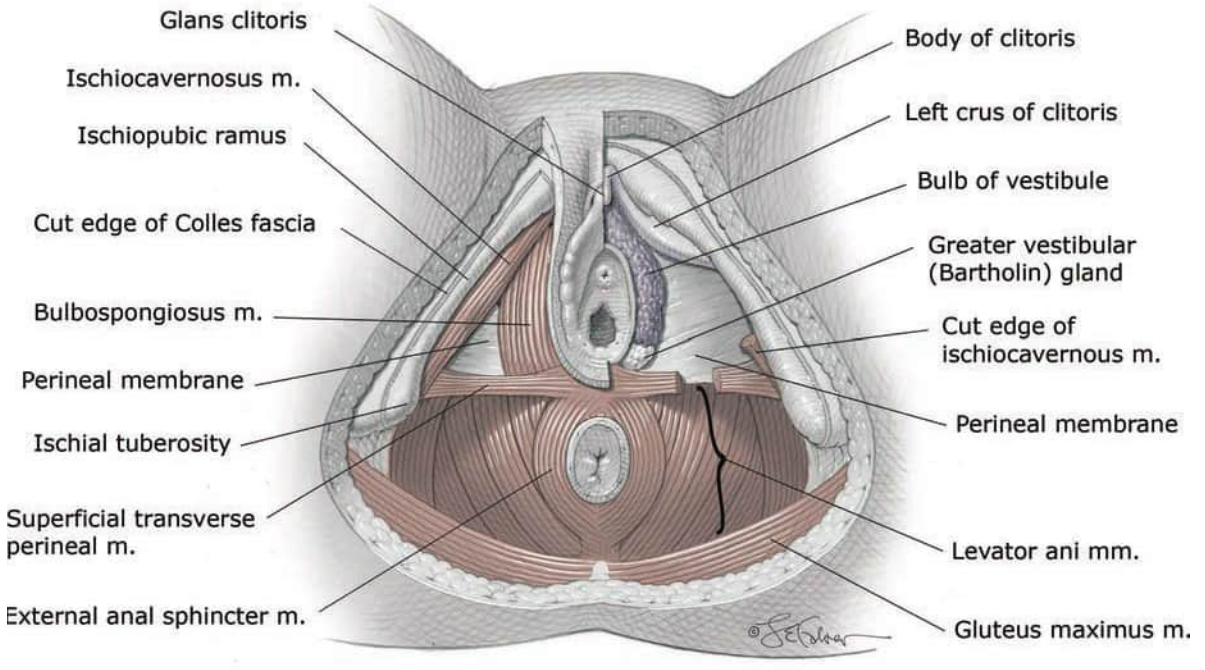


FIGURE 2-6 Superficial space of the urogenital triangle and anal triangle. Structures on the left side of the image can be seen after removal of Colles fascia. Those on the right side are noted after removal of the superficial muscles of the urogenital triangle. (Modified with permission from Corton MM: Anatomy. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

transverse perineal muscles posteriorly (Fig. 2-6). It is divided into superficial and deep spaces by the perineal membrane. This membranous partition is a dense fibrous sheet that was previously known as the inferior fascia of the urogenital diaphragm. The perineal membrane attaches laterally to the ischiopubic rami, medially to the distal third of the urethra and vagina, posteriorly to the perineal body, and anteriorly to the arcuate ligament of the pubis (Stein, 2008). It lies at the depth of the hymeneal ring.

The superficial space has the perineal membrane as its deep wall and the Colles fascia as its superficial one. As noted earlier, the Colles fascia is the continuation of the Scarpa fascia onto the perineum. On the perineum, the Colles fascia securely attaches laterally to the pubic rami and fascia lata of the thigh, inferiorly to the superficial transverse perineal muscle and inferior border of the perineal membrane, and medially to the urethra, clitoris, and vagina. As such, the superficial space of the urogenital triangle is a relatively closed compartment.

This superficial space contains several important structures, which include the Bartholin glands, vestibular bulbs, clitoral body and crura, branches of the pudendal vessels and nerve, and the ischiocavernosus, bulbospongiosus, and superficial transverse perineal muscles. Of this muscular trio, the ischiocavernosus muscles each attach on their respective side to the medial aspect of the ischial tuberosity inferiorly and the ischiopubic ramus laterally. Anteriorly, each attaches to a clitoral crus and may help maintain clitoral erection by compressing the crus to obstruct venous drainage. Each bulbospongiosus muscle overlies a vestibular bulb and Bartholin gland. Anteriorly, they attach to the body of the clitoris and posteriorly, to the perineal body. Some more-recent anatomical studies instead describe that the bulbospongiosus muscles blend medially with the external anal sphincter (Baramee, 2020; Plochocki, 2016). The muscles constrict the vaginal lumen and aid release of Bartholin gland secretions. They also may contribute to clitoral erection by compressing the deep dorsal vein of the clitoris. The bulbospongiosus and ischiocavernosus muscles also pull the clitoris downward. Last, the superficial transverse perineal muscles are narrow strips that attach to the ischial tuberosities laterally and the perineal body medially.

Each vestibular bulb, also called bulb of vestibule, is an almond-shaped aggregation of veins that lie beneath the bulbospongiosus muscle on either side of the vestibule (Jeppson, 2018). They measure 5 cm long and 2 cm wide (Jackson, 2019). The bulbs terminate inferiorly at approximately the middle of the vaginal opening and extend upward toward the clitoris. Their anterior extensions merge in the midline, below the clitoral body. During childbirth, veins in the vestibular bulb may be lacerated or may rupture to create a hematoma enclosed within the superficial space of the urogenital triangle.

Deep Space

This space lies above or deep to the perineal membrane and below the inferior investing fascia of the levator ani muscle. It contains portions of urethra and vagina, certain portions of internal pudendal artery branches, and muscles of the striated urogenital sphincter complex (Fig. 2-7).

Urethra. The female urethra measures 3 to 4 cm and originates within the bladder trigone (p. 27) (Hamner, 2018; Rahn, 2007). The distal two thirds of the urethra are fused with the

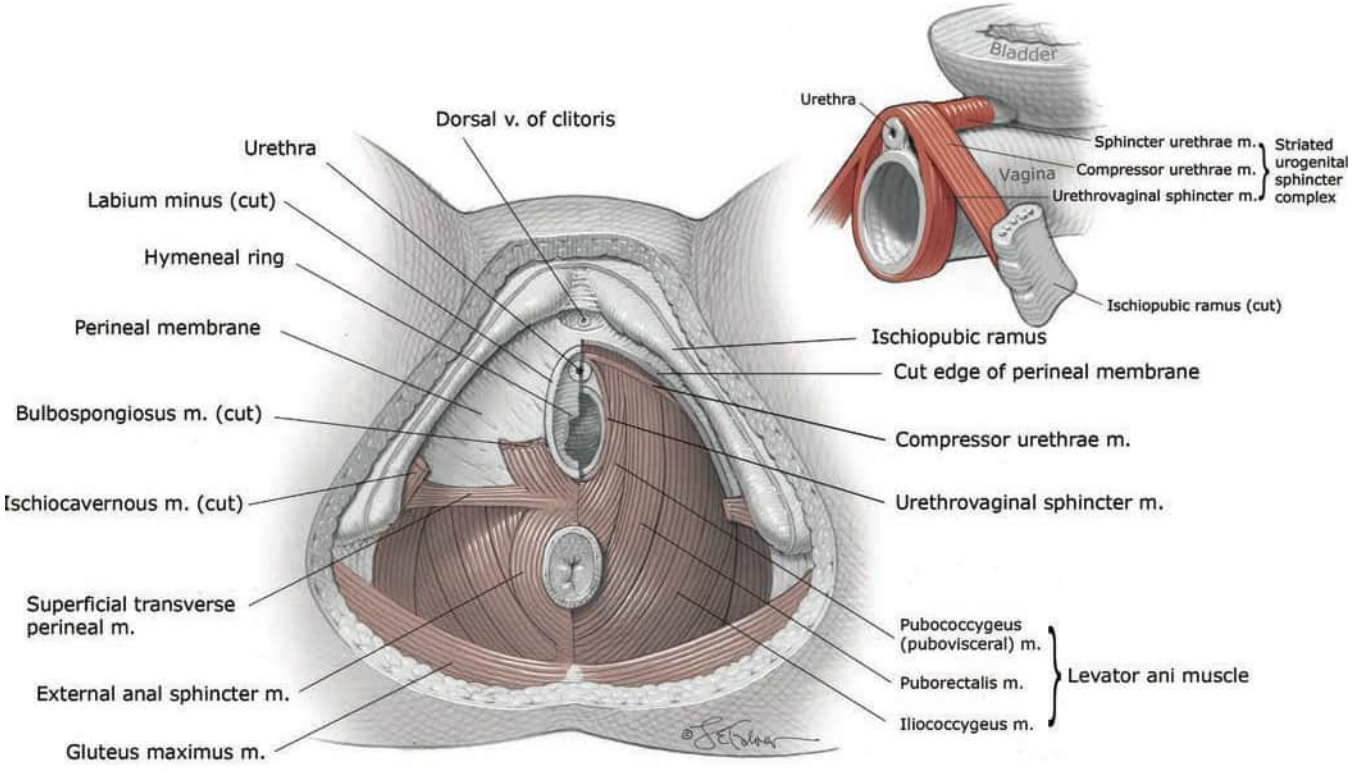


FIGURE 2-7 Deep space of urogenital triangle. Structures on the right side of the image can be seen after removal of the perineal membrane. Also shown are structures that attach to the perineal body: bulbospongiosus, superficial transverse perineal, external anal sphincter, and puboperinealis muscles as well as perineal membrane. (Modified with permission from Corton MM: Anatomy. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

anterior vaginal wall. The epithelial lining of the urethra is transitional epithelium at the urethrovesical junction. It then changes to a pseudostratified columnar along its proximal length but is a nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium distally (Carlile, 1987).

The walls of the urethra consist of two layers of smooth muscle, an inner longitudinal and an outer circular. This is in turn surrounded by a circular layer of skeletal muscle referred to as the sphincter urethrae (see Fig. 2-7). Approximately at the junction of the middle and lower third of the urethra and within the deep perineal space, two straplike skeletal muscles called the sphincter urethrovaginalis and the compressor urethrae are found. Together with the sphincter urethrae, these constitute the external urethral sphincter (EUS), also called the striated urogenital sphincter complex (Mistry, 2020). The EUS supplies constant tonus and provides emergency reflex contraction to sustain continence.

Distal to the level of the perineal membrane, the walls of the urethra consist of fibrous tissue, serving to direct the urine stream. Here, the urethra has a prominent submucosal layer that is lined by hormonally sensitive stratified squamous epithelium. Within the submucosal layer on the dorsal (vaginal) surface of the urethra lie most paraurethral glands (p. 16).

The urethra receives its blood supply from branches of the inferior vesical, vaginal, or internal pudendal arteries. The pudendal nerve provides somatic innervation to the EUS. The urethra's smooth muscle receives sympathetic and parasympathetic innervation from the inferior hypogastric plexus (p. 26) (Colleselli, 1998).

■ Pelvic Diaphragm

The pelvic diaphragm spans the pelvic outlet and lies deep to the urogenital and anal triangles (p. 17). This broad muscular floor provides substantial support to the pelvic viscera and is composed of the coccygeus and levator ani muscles (see Fig. 2-7). The levator ani muscle, in turn, contains the pubococcygeus, puborectalis, and iliococcygeus muscles. The pubococcygeus muscle is also termed the pubovisceral muscle and is subdivided based on points of insertion and function. These include the pubovaginalis, puboperinealis, and puboanalis muscles, which insert into the vagina, perineal body, and anus, respectively (Kearney, 2004).

Vaginal birth can damage the levator ani muscle or its innervation (DeLancey, 2003; Weidner, 2006). Evidence suggests that levator ani trauma may predispose women to later pelvic organ prolapse (Berger, 2018; Dietz, 2008). Current research efforts aim to minimize these injuries.

■ Anal Triangle

This triangle contains the anal canal, anal sphincter complex, and ischioanal fossae. The sphincter complex consists of the internal anal sphincter, external anal sphincter, and puborectalis muscle. The anal triangle also contains branches of the pudendal nerve and internal pudendal vessels.

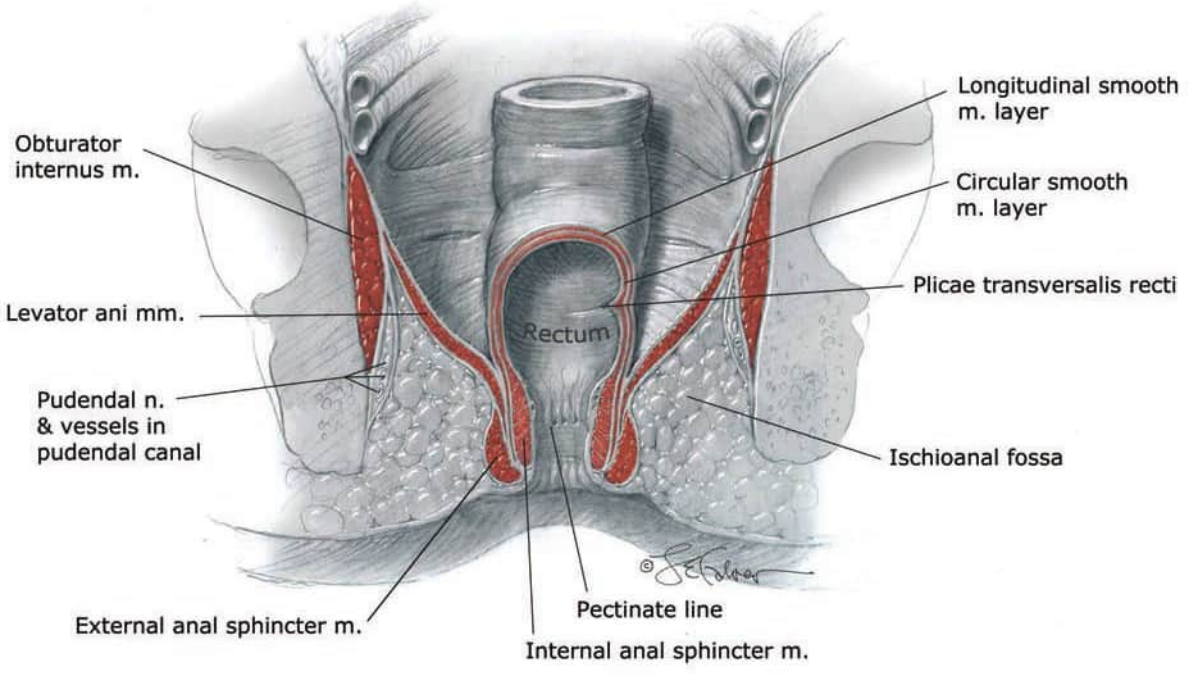


FIGURE 2-8 Anal canal and ischioanal fossa. (Modified with permission from Corton MM: Anatomy. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

Anal Canal

This is the distal continuation of the rectum. Canal mucosa is a columnar epithelium proximally. However, at the pectinate line, also termed dentate line, simple stratified squamous epithelium begins and continues to the anal verge (Fig. 2-8). The anal verge is defined as the transition point at which a keratin layer and skin adnexa join the squamous epithelium. Two definitions describe anal canal boundaries. The *surgical* anal canal begins at the levator ani muscle, ends at the anal verge, and measures 4 cm. The *anatomical* anal canal lies between the pectineal line and anal verge and is 2 cm long (Nivatvongs, 1981).

The anal canal has several tissue layers. Inner layers include the anal mucosa, the internal anal sphincter, and an intersphincteric space that contains continuation of the rectum's longitudinal smooth muscle layer. An outer layer contains the external anal sphincter caudally and the puborectalis muscle cephalad.

Within the anal canal, three highly vascularized submucosal arteriovenous plexuses, termed anal cushions, aid complete closure of the canal and fecal continence when apposed. Increasing uterine size, excessive straining, and hard stool create raised pressure that ultimately leads to degeneration and subsequent laxity of the cushion's supportive connective tissue base. These cushions then protrude into and downward through the anal canal. This leads to venous engorgement within the cushions—now termed hemorrhoids. Venous stasis results in inflammation, erosion of the cushion's epithelium, and bleeding.

External hemorrhoids are those that arise distal to the pectinate line. They are covered by stratified squamous epithelium and receive sensory innervation from the inferior rectal nerve. Accordingly, pain and a palpable mass are typical complaints. Following resolution, a hemorrhoidal tag may remain and is composed of redundant anal skin and fibrotic tissue. In contrast, internal hemorrhoids are those that form above the pectinate line and are covered by insensitive anorectal mucosa. These may prolapse or bleed but rarely become painful unless they undergo thrombosis or necrosis.

Anal Sphincter Complex

Two sphincters surround the anal canal to provide fecal continence—the external and internal anal sphincters. Both lie near the vagina and may be torn during vaginal delivery. The internal anal sphincter (IAS) is a distal continuation of the rectal circular smooth muscle layer. It receives predominantly parasympathetic fibers, which pass through the pelvic splanchnic nerves. Along its length, this sphincter is supplied by the superior, middle, and inferior rectal arteries. The IAS contributes the bulk of anal canal resting pressure for fecal continence and relaxes prior to defecation. The IAS measures 3 to 4 cm in length, and at its distal margin, it overlaps the external sphincter for 1 to 2 cm (DeLancey, 1997). The distal site at which this overlap ends, called the intersphincteric groove, is palpable on digital examination. It is 2 to 3 mm thick (Rociu, 2000).

In contrast, the external anal sphincter (EAS) is a striated muscle ring that anteriorly attaches to the perineal body and posteriorly connects to the coccyx via the anococcygeal ligament. The EAS measures 1.5 to 2.5 cm deep and 6 to 15 mm thick (Fenner, 1998; Stewart, 2018). The EAS is considered to have one or more subdivisions, although the precise composition is disputed (Lee, 2018). Often, a surrounding fibrous capsule is described, but this most likely is perineal body rather than a true EAS sheath (Maldonado, 2020).

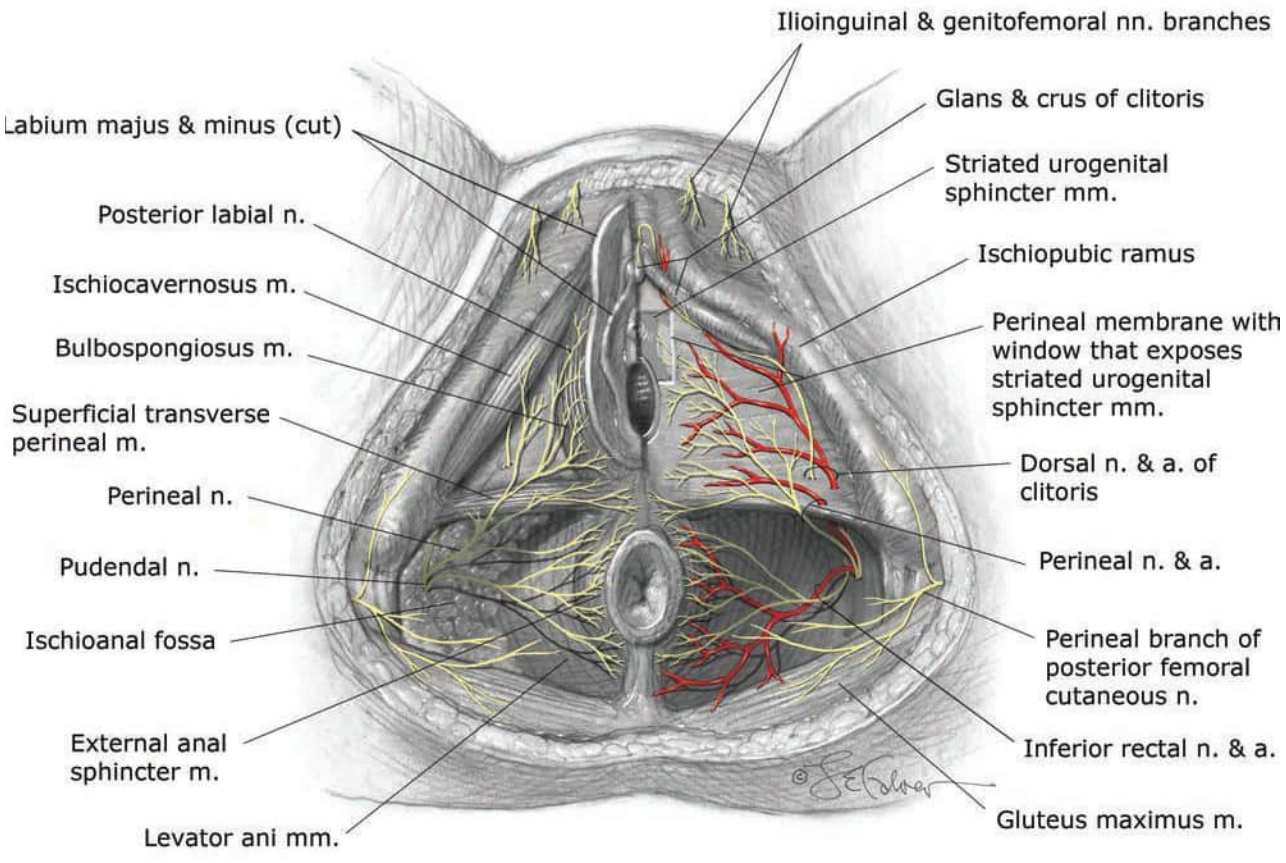


FIGURE 2-9 Branches of pudendal nerve and artery. (Modified with permission from Corton MM: Anatomy. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

The EAS maintains a constant resting contraction to aid continence, provides additional squeeze pressure when continence is threatened, yet relaxes for defecation. The EAS receives blood supply from the inferior rectal artery, which is a branch of the internal pudendal artery. Somatic motor innervation derives from the inferior rectal branch of the pudendal nerve supply. Clinically, the IAS and EAS may be involved in third- and fourth-degree lacerations during vaginal delivery, and reunion of these rings is integral to defect repair (Chap. 27, p. 511).

Ischioanal Fossae

These two fat-filled wedge-shaped spaces are found on either side of the anal canal and constitute the bulk of the anal triangle (Figs. 2-8 and 2-9). Formerly known also as ischiorectal fossae, each fossa has skin as its superficial base, whereas its deep border is formed by the levator ani muscle. Other borders include: laterally, the obturator internus muscle and ischial tuberosity; medially, the anal sphincter complex and levator ani muscle; posteriorly, the gluteus maximus muscle and sacrotuberous ligament; and anteriorly, the inferior border of the urogenital triangle.

The fat found within each fossa provides support to surrounding organs yet allows rectal distention during defecation and vaginal stretching during delivery. Clinically, injury to vessels in the anal triangle can lead to hematoma formation in the ischioanal fossa. Moreover, the two fossae communicate posteriorly through the *deep postanal space*. This connection lies between the pelvic floor muscles and anococcygeal ligament (Llauger, 1998). As a result, episiotomy infection or hematoma may extend from one fossa into the other.

Pudendal Nerve

This is formed from the anterior rami of S_{2-4} spinal nerves. It courses between the piriformis and coccygeus muscles and exits through the greater sciatic foramen at a location posterior to the sacrospinous ligament and just medial to the ischial spine (Maldonado, 2015). Thus, when injecting local anesthetic for a pudendal nerve block, the ischial spine serves as an identifiable landmark (Chap. 25, p. 471). The pudendal nerve then runs beneath the sacrospinous ligament and above the sacrotuberous ligament as it reenters the lesser sciatic foramen to course across the obturator internus muscle. Atop this muscle, the nerve lies within the pudendal canal, also known as the Alcock canal. This space is formed by splitting of the obturator internus investing fascia (Shafik, 1999). In general, the pudendal nerve is relatively fixed as it courses behind the sacrospinous ligament and within the pudendal canal. Accordingly, it may be at risk of stretch injury during downward displacement of the pelvic floor during childbirth (Lien, 2005).

The pudendal nerve leaves this canal to enter the perineum and divides into three terminal branches (see Fig. 2-9). The first of these, the dorsal nerve of the clitoris, runs between the ischiocavernosus muscle and perineal membrane to supply the clitoral glans (Ginger, 2011b). Second, the perineal nerve runs superficial to the perineal membrane (Montoya, 2011). It divides into posterior labial branches and muscular branches, which serve the labial skin and the urogenital triangle muscles, respectively. Last, the inferior rectal branch runs through the ischioanal fossa to supply the external anal sphincter, the anal mucosa, and the perianal skin (Mahakkanukrauh, 2005).

The major blood supply to the perineum is from the internal pudendal artery, and its branches mirror the divisions of the pudendal nerve. Relevant to pudendal nerve blockade, the internal pudendal artery is the closest vascular structure, within 5 to 8 mm. It runs deep to the spine in most cases as it exits the greater sciatic foramen (Dueñas-Garcia, 2017; Roshanravan, 2007).

INTERNAL GENERATIVE ORGANS

Uterus

The nonpregnant uterus lies in the pelvic cavity between the bladder anteriorly and the rectum posteriorly. Anterior and posterior uterine walls are lined by serosa, that is, visceral peritoneum (Fig. 2-10). This peritoneum continues from the posterior wall to create the rectouterine space (see Fig. 2-5). It continues anteriorly to create the vesicouterine pouch. Clinically, during cesarean delivery, the peritoneum of the vesicouterine pouch is sharply incised, and the vesicocervical space is entered. This space is a well-defined loose connective tissue layer between the cervix and bladder (Balgobin, 2020). Dissection caudally within this space lifts the bladder safely off the cervix and lower uterine segment for hysterotomy and delivery (Chap. 30, p. 553).

The uterus is pear shaped and consists of two major but unequal parts. The upper, larger portion is the body or corpus, whereas the lower smaller cervix projects into the vagina. The isthmus is the union site of these two. It is of special obstetrical significance because it forms the lower uterine segment during pregnancy. At each superolateral margin of the body is a uterine cornu, from which a fallopian tube emerges. This area also contains the origins of the round and uteroovarian ligaments. Between the points of fallopian tube insertion is the convex upper uterine segment termed the fundus.

The bulk of the uterine body, but not the cervix, is muscle. The inner surfaces of the uterine walls lie almost in contact, and the intervening cavity forms a mere slit. The nulligravid uterus measures 6 to 8 cm in length compared with 9 to 10 cm in multiparas. The uterus averages 60 g and typically weighs more in parous women (Langlois, 1970; Sheikhazadi, 2010).

Pregnancy stimulates remarkable uterine growth due to muscle fiber hypertrophy. The uterine fundus, a previously flattened

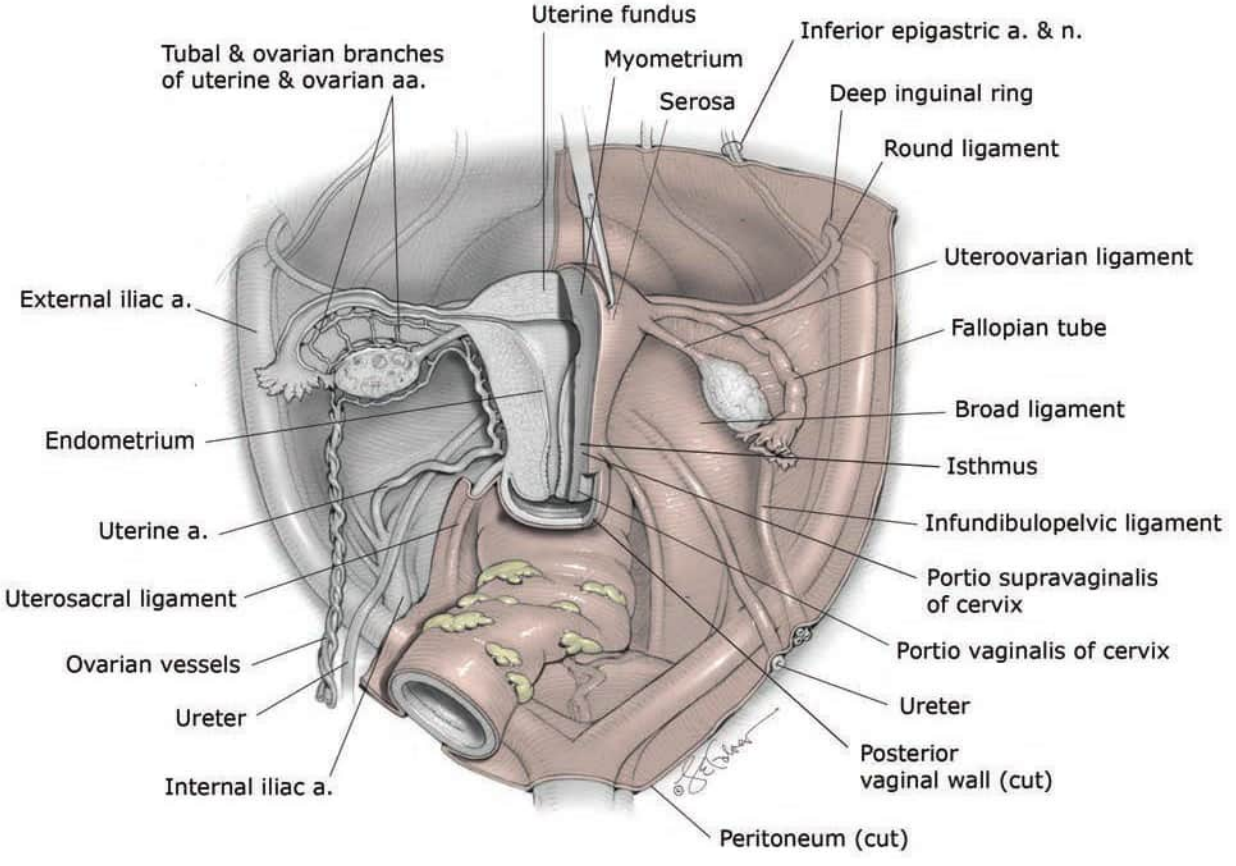


FIGURE 2-10 Uterus, adnexa, and associated anatomy. (Modified with permission from Corton MM: Anatomy. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

convexity between tubal insertions, now becomes dome shaped. Moreover, the round ligaments appear to insert at the junction of the middle and upper thirds of the organ. The fallopian tubes elongate, but the ovaries grossly appear unchanged.

Cervix

This portion of the uterus is cylindrical and has small apertures at each end—the internal os and external os. The endocervical canal runs through the cervix and connects these ora. The cervix is divided into upper and lower portions by the vagina's attachment to its outer surface. The upper portion—the *portio supravaginalis*—begins at the internal os, which corresponds to the level of the vesicouterine peritoneum (see Figs. 2-5 and 2-10). The lower cervical portion protrudes into the vagina as the *portio vaginalis*.

Before childbirth, the external cervical os is a small, regular, oval opening. After labor, especially vaginal childbirth, the orifice is converted into a transverse slit that is divided such that there are the so-called anterior and posterior cervical lips. If torn deeply during labor or delivery, the cervix may heal in such a manner that it appears irregular, nodular, or stellate (Fig. 36-1, p. 635).

The cervical surface that radially surrounds the external os is called the ectocervix and is lined predominantly by nonkeratinized stratified squamous epithelium. In contrast, the endocervical canal is covered by a single layer of mucin-secreting columnar epithelium, which creates deep cleftlike infoldings or "glands." Commonly during pregnancy, the endocervical epithelium moves out and onto the ectocervix in a physiological process termed eversion (Chap. 4, p. 53).

The cervical stroma is composed mainly of collagen, elastin, and proteoglycans, but very little smooth muscle. As described in Chapter 21 (p. 406), changes in the amount, composition, and orientation of these components lead to cervical ripening prior to labor. In early pregnancy, increased vascularity within the cervix stroma beneath the epithelium creates an ectocervical blue tint that is characteristic of the Chadwick sign. Cervical edema leads to softening—the Goodell sign, whereas isthmic softening is the Hegar sign.

Myometrium and Endometrium

Most of the uterus is composed of myometrium, which contains smooth muscle bundles united by connective tissue with many elastic fibers. Interlacing myometrial fibers surround myometrial vessels and contract to compress these. This anatomy allows hemostasis at the placental site during third-stage labor.

The uterine cavity is lined with endometrium, which is composed of an overlying epithelium, invaginating glands, and a supportive, vascular stroma. Throughout the menstrual cycle, the endometrium varies greatly (Chap. 5, p. 83). It is divided into a functionalis layer, which is sloughed with menses, and a basalis layer, which serves to regenerate the functionalis layer following each menses. During pregnancy, the endometrium undergoes dramatic hormonally driven alterations and is termed decidua.

Ligaments

Several ligaments extend from the uterine surface toward the pelvic sidewalls and include the round, broad, cardinal, and uterosacral ligaments (see Fig. 2-10). Despite their appellation, the round and broad ligaments provide no substantial uterine support, which contrasts with the cardinal and uterosacral ligaments.

The round ligament originates somewhat below and anterior to the origin of the fallopian tubes. Clinically, this orientation can aid tube identification during puerperal sterilization (Chap. 39, p. 682). Each round ligament extends laterally and down into the inguinal canal, through which it passes, to terminate in the upper portion of the ipsilateral labium majus. The *artery to the round ligament*, formerly the Sampson artery, is a small branch of the uterine artery and runs within the ligament. In nonpregnant women, the round ligament varies from 3 to 5 mm in diameter and is composed of smooth muscle bundles separated by fibrous tissue septa (Mahran, 1965). During pregnancy, these ligaments hypertrophy and increase appreciably in both length and diameter. Rare, round ligament varicosities can mimic an inguinal hernia, and color Doppler interrogation of the mass aids diagnosis (Yonggang, 2017).

The broad ligaments are two winglike structures that extend from the lateral uterine margins to the pelvic sidewalls. Each broad ligament consists of a double-layer drape of peritoneum. The anterior and posterior layers of this drape are termed the anterior and posterior leaves, respectively. In forming the broad ligament, this peritoneum folds over structures extending from each cornu. Peritoneum that folds over the fallopian tube is termed the mesosalpinx, that around the round ligament is the mesoteres, and that over the ovarian ligament is the mesovarium. Peritoneum that extends beneath the fimbriated end of the uterine tube toward the pelvic wall forms infundibulopelvic ligament, which is also the *suspensory ligament of the ovary*. This contains nerves and the ovarian vessels, and during pregnancy, these vessels, especially the venous plexuses, are dramatically enlarged. Specifically, the diameter of the ovarian vascular pedicle increases from 0.9 cm to reach 2.6 cm at term (Hodgkinson, 1953).

The cardinal ligament—formerly the transverse cervical ligament or the Mackenrodt ligament—anchors medially to the uterus and upper vagina. The cardinal ligament is the thick base of the broad ligament. As such, during cesarean hysterectomy, sturdy clamps and suture are required for its transection and ligation.

Each uterosacral ligament originates with a posterolateral attachment to the supravaginal portion of the cervix and inserts into the fascia over the sacrum, with some variations (Ramanah, 2012; Umek, 2004). These ligaments are composed of connective tissue, small neurovascular bundles, and some smooth muscle. Covered by peritoneum, these ligaments form the lateral boundaries of the rectouterine space.

The term parametrium describes the connective tissues adjacent and lateral to the uterus within the broad ligament. Paracervical tissues are those adjacent to the cervix, whereas paracolpium is tissue lateral to the vaginal walls.

Pelvic Blood Supply

During pregnancy, uterine vasculature, which is supplied principally from the uterine and ovarian arteries, markedly hypertrophies (see Fig. 2-10). The uterine artery is a main branch of

the internal iliac artery (prior hypogastric artery) and enters the base of the broad ligament. From its origin, the uterine artery courses medially to the lateral side of the uterus. Approximately 2 cm lateral to the cervix, the uterine artery crosses over the ureter. This proximity is important surgically, as the ureter may be injured or ligated during hysterectomy when the uterine vessels are clamped and ligated.

Once the uterine artery reaches the cervix, it divides. The smaller cervicovaginal artery supplies blood to the lower cervix and upper vagina. Instead, the main uterine artery branch turns abruptly upward and travels cephalad along the lateral margin of the uterus. Along this path, the uterine artery gives rise to the arcuate arteries. Indicated by the name, each branch arches across either the anterior or posterior uterine wall and courses within the myometrium just beneath the serosal surface. Arcuate vessels from each side anastomose at the uterine midline. From the arcuate arteries, radial arteries originate at right angles and travel inward through the myometrium. Upon entering the endometrium/decidua, they branch to become either basal arteries or spiral arteries. The coiled spiral arteries supply the functionalis layer. The basal arteries, also called the straight arteries, extend only into the basalis layer.

As the uterine artery courses cephalad, it gives rise to the artery of the round ligament. At the each cornu, the uterine artery divides into three terminal branches. First, the tubal branch makes its way through the mesosalpinx and supplies part of the fallopian tube; whereas the fundal branch penetrates the uppermost uterus. Third, the ovarian branch of the uterine artery forms an anastomosis with the terminal branch of the ovarian artery.

The ovarian artery is a direct branch of the aorta and enters the broad ligament through the infundibulopelvic ligament. At the ovarian hilum, it divides into smaller branches that enter the ovary. As the ovarian artery runs along the hilum, it also sends several branches through the mesosalpinx to supply the fallopian tubes. Its main stem, however, traverses the entire length of the broad ligament toward the uterine cornu. Here, it forms an anastomosis with the ovarian branch of the uterine artery. This dual uterine blood supply creates a vascular reserve to prevent uterine ischemia if ligation of the uterine or internal iliac artery is performed to control postpartum hemorrhage.

Uterine veins accompany their respective arteries. As such, the arcuate veins unite to form the uterine vein, which empties into the internal iliac vein and then the common iliac vein. Some of the blood from the upper uterus, the ovary, and the upper part of the broad ligament is collected by several veins. These terminate in the ovarian vein. From here, the right ovarian vein empties into the vena cava. The left ovarian vein empties into the left renal vein.

Blood supply to the pelvis is predominantly provided by branches of the internal iliac artery (Fig. 2-11). These branches

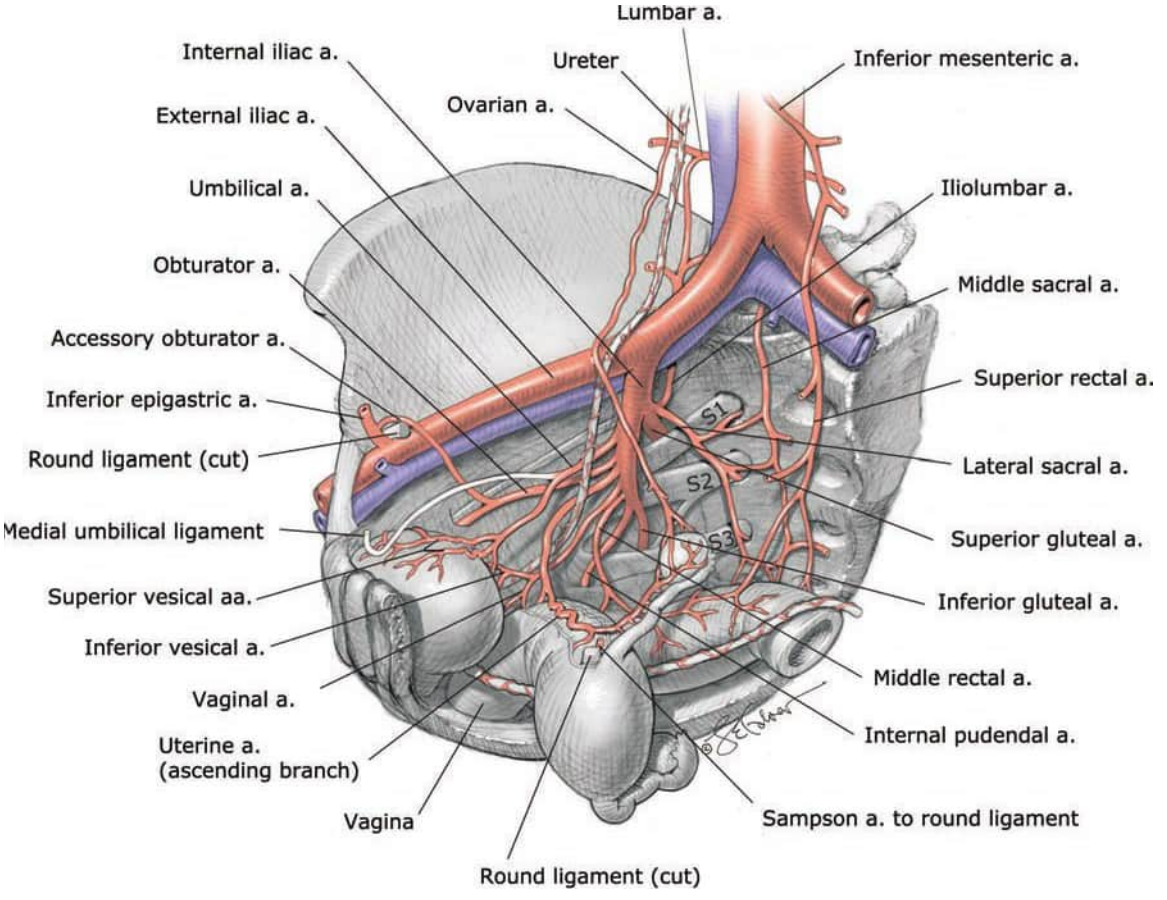


FIGURE 2-11 Pelvic arteries. (Modified with permission from Corton MM: Anatomy. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

are organized into anterior and posterior divisions, and subsequent branches are highly variable between individuals. The anterior division provides blood supply to the pelvic organs and perineum and includes the inferior gluteal, internal pudendal, middle rectal, vaginal, uterine, and obturator arteries, as well as the umbilical artery and its continuation as the superior vesical artery. The posterior division branches extend to the buttock and thigh and include the superior gluteal, lateral sacral, and iliolumbar arteries. For this reason, during internal iliac artery ligation, many advocate ligation distal to the posterior division to avoid compromise to the areas supplied by this division (Bleich, 2007).

Pelvic Lymphatics

The lymphatic vessels from the uterine corpus generally empty into two nodal groups. Those from the cervix and lower uterine segment travel to the pelvic lymph nodes, which then drain into the paraaortic nodes. Vessels from the fundus, after joining lymphatics from the adnexa, directly terminate in the paraaortic lymph nodes. Vaginal lymphatic channels have extensive anastomoses. As a result, any node in the pelvis, groin, or anorectal area may drain any part of the vagina. Lymphatics of the vulva and distal vagina typically empty into the superficial inguinal nodal group. From here, lymph travels through the deep femoral lymphatics to the pelvic nodal groups.

Pelvic Innervation

As a brief review, the peripheral nervous system is divided into a somatic division, which innervates skeletal muscle, and an autonomic division, which innervates smooth muscle, cardiac muscle, and glands. Pelvic visceral innervation is predominantly autonomic, which is further divided into sympathetic and parasympathetic components.

Sympathetic innervation to pelvic viscera begins with the *superior hypogastric plexus*, also termed the presacral nerve (Fig. 2-12). This plexus is formed by sympathetic fibers arising from spinal levels T_{10} through L_2. At the level of the sacral promontory, the superior hypogastric plexus divides into a *right* and a *left hypogastric nerve*, which run downward along their respective pelvic sidewalls (Ripperda, 2017).

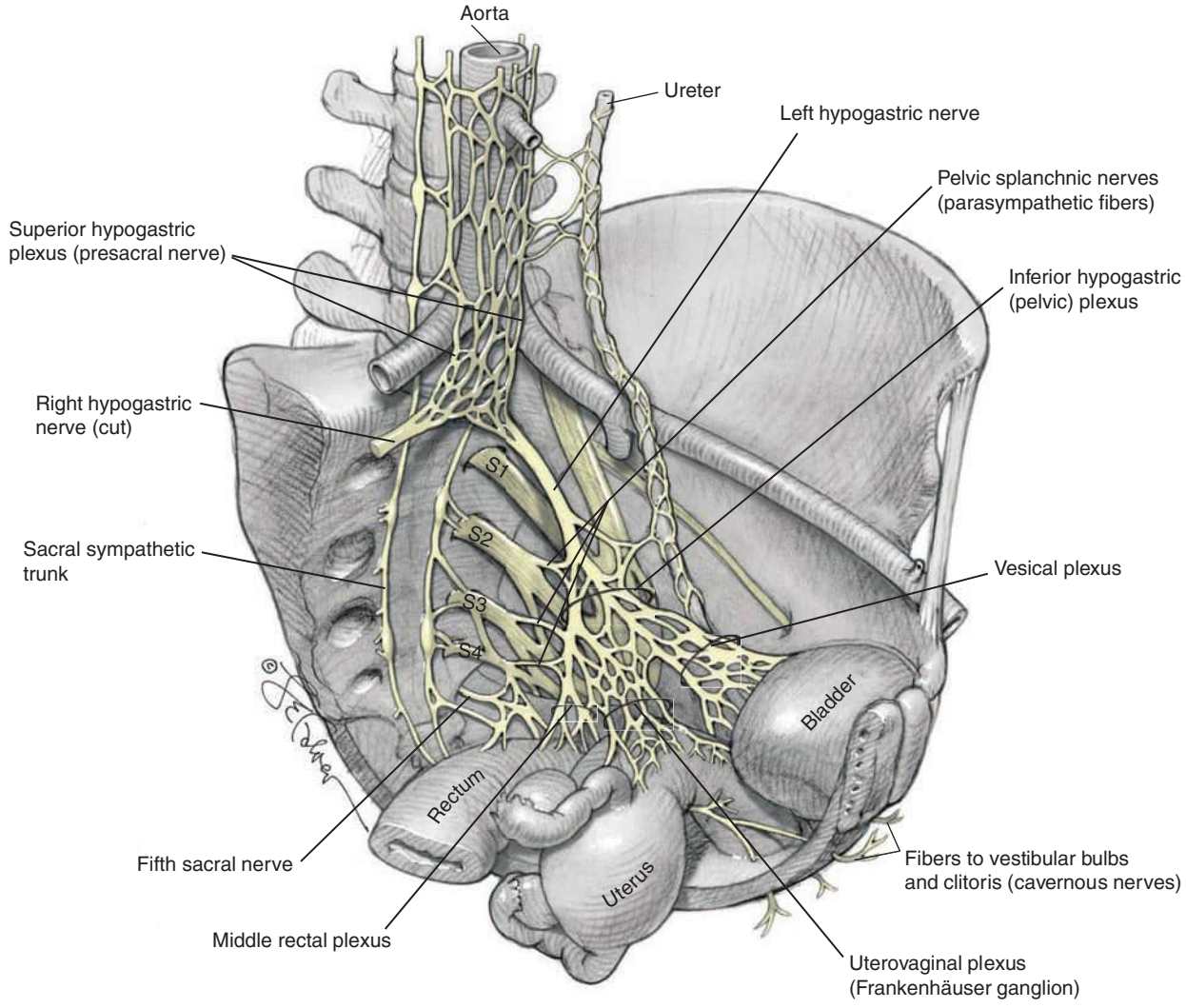


FIGURE 2-12 Pelvic innervation. (Modified with permission from Corton MM: Anatomy. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

In contrast, parasympathetic innervation to the pelvic organs derives from spinal levels S_2 through S_4. Anterior rami of the spinal nerves for those levels combine on each side to form the *pelvic splanchnic nerves*, also termed nervi erigentes.

Blending of the two hypogastric nerves (sympathetic) and the two pelvic splanchnic nerves (parasympathetic) gives rise to the *inferior hypogastric plexus*, also termed the pelvic plexus. From here, fibers of this plexus extend to the bladder, uterus, upper vagina, and rectum (Ripperda, 2017; Spackman, 2007). Extensions of the inferior hypogastric plexus also reach the perineum to innervate the clitoris and vestibular bulbs (Montoya, 2011).

For the uterus, most of its afferent sensory fibers ascend through the inferior hypogastric plexus and enter the spinal cord via T_{10} through T_{12} and L_1 spinal nerves. These transmit the painful stimuli of contractions to the central nervous system. For the cervix and upper part of the birth canal, sensory nerves pass through the pelvic splanchnic nerves to the second, third, and fourth sacral nerves. Last, those from the lower portion of the birth canal pass primarily through the pudendal nerve. Anesthetic blocks used during delivery target these levels of innervation.

Ovaries

Along the pelvic sidewall, each ovary usually rests in the ovarian fossa, which is a slight depression between the external and internal iliac vessels. During childbearing years, ovaries variably measure 2.5 to 5 cm in length, 1.5 to 3 cm in width, and 0.6 to 1.5 cm in thickness.

The ovarian ligament, also called the uteroovarian ligament, originates from the posterolateral uterine cornu and extends to the uterine pole of the ovary (see Fig. 2-10). Measuring a few centimeters long and 3 to 4 mm in diameter, this ligament is made up of muscle and connective tissue and is covered by peritoneum—the mesovarium. Blood supply reaches the ovary through the mesovarium to enter the ovarian hilum.

The ovary consists of an outer cortex and inner medulla. In young women, the cortex is smooth, white, and lined by a single layer of cuboidal epithelium. This epithelium is supported by an inner connective tissue condensation, the tunica albuginea. Beneath this, the ovarian cortex contains oocytes and developing follicles. The medulla is composed of loose connective tissue, numerous arteries and veins, and a small amount of smooth muscle.

The ovaries are supplied with both sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves. The sympathetic nerves are derived primarily from the ovarian plexus that accompanies the ovarian vessels and originates in the renal plexus. Others derive from the plexus that surrounds the ovarian branch of the uterine artery. Parasympathetic input is from the vagus nerve. Sensory afferents follow the ovarian artery and enter at T_{10} spinal cord level.

Fallopian Tubes

Each of these serpentine tubes extend laterally 8 to 14 cm from their respective uterine cornu. Along their length, they contain an interstitial portion, isthmus, ampulla, and infundibulum (Fig. 2-13). Most proximal, the interstitial portion is embodied within the uterine muscular wall. Next, the narrow 2- to 3-mm wide isthmus widens gradually into the 5- to 8-mm wide ampulla. Last, the infundibulum is the funnel-shaped fimbriated distal extremity of the tube, which opens into the abdominal cavity. These latter three extrauterine portions are covered by the mesosalpinx, which is a superior extension of the broad ligament and described next.

In cross section, the uterine tube contains a mesosalpinx, myosalpinx, and endosalpinx. The outer of these, the mesosalpinx, is a single-cell mesothelial layer functioning as visceral peritoneum. In the myosalpinx, smooth muscle is arranged in an inner circular and an outer longitudinal layer. The tubal musculature undergoes rhythmic contractions constantly, the rate of which varies with cyclical ovarian hormonal changes.

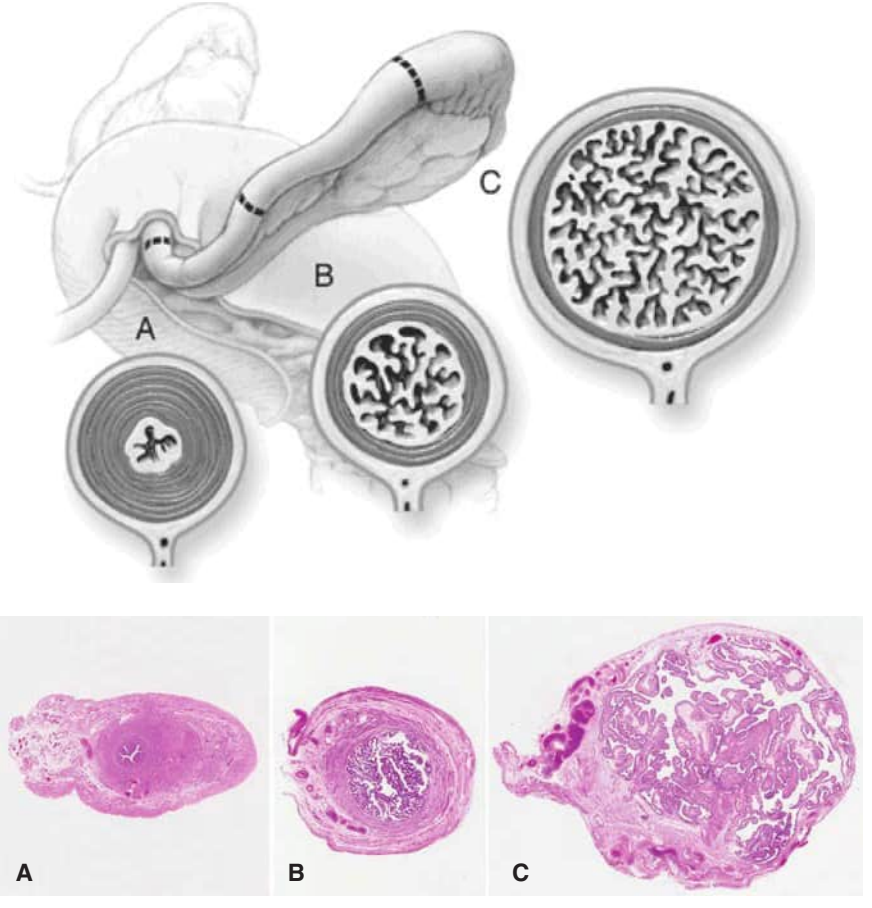


FIGURE 2-13 The fallopian tube of an adult woman with cross-sectioned illustrations of the gross structure in several portions: **(A)** isthmus, **(B)** ampulla, and **(C)** infundibulum. Below these are photographs of corresponding histological sections. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Kelley S. Carrick.)

The *endosalpinx* (tubal mucosa) is a single layer of columnar epithelium made up of ciliated, secretory, and intercalary cells resting on a sparse lamina propria. Clinically, its close proximity to the underlying myosalpinx contributes to easy invasion by ectopic trophoblast. The tubal mucosa is arranged in longitudinal folds that become progressively more complex toward the fimbria. In the ampulla, the lumen is occupied almost completely by the arborescent mucosa. The current produced by the tubal cilia flows toward the uterine cavity. Tubal peristalsis created by cilia and muscular layer contraction aids ovum transport (Croxatto, 2002).

The tubes are supplied richly with elastic tissue, blood vessels, and lymphatics. Their sympathetic innervation is extensive, in contrast to their parasympathetic innervation. This nerve supply derives partly from the ovarian plexus and partly from the inferior hypogastric plexus. Sensory afferent fibers ascend to T_{10} spinal cord levels.

LOWER URINARY TRACT

Bladder

Anteriorly, the bladder rests against the inner surface of the pubic bones and then, as it fills, also against the anterior abdominal wall. Posteriorly, it rests against the vagina and cervix. The bladder is divided into a dome and a base approximately at the level of the ureteral orifices. The dome is thin walled and distensible, whereas the base is thicker and undergoes less distention during filling. The vesical trigone lies in the bladder base and contains both ureteral orifices and the internal urinary meatus. The urethral lumen begins at this meatus and then courses through the bladder base for less than 1 cm. This region where the urethral lumen traverses the bladder base is the bladder neck.

The bladder wall consists of coarse bundles of smooth muscle known as the detrusor muscle, which extends into the proximal part of the urethra. A submucosal layer intervenes between this detrusor muscle and the mucosa. The bladder mucosa consists of transitional epithelium and underlying lamina propria.

The blood supply to the bladder arises from the superior vesical arteries, which are branches of the patent portion of the umbilical artery and supply the dome (see Fig. 2-11). The inferior vesical arteries supply the base and variably arise from either the umbilical, uterine, or vaginal artery (de Treigny, 2017). The nerve supply to the bladder arises from the inferior hypogastric plexus (see Fig. 2-12).

Ureter

As the ureter enters the pelvis, it crosses over the bifurcation of the common iliac artery and passes just medial to the ovarian vessels (see Fig. 2-10). As the ureter descends into the pelvis, it lies medial to the internal iliac branches and anterolateral to the uterosacral ligaments. The ureter then traverses through the cardinal ligament approximately 1 to 2 cm lateral to the cervix. Near the level of the uterine isthmus, it courses below the uterine artery and travels anteromedially toward the bladder base. In this path, it runs close to the upper third of the anterior vaginal wall (Jackson, 2019; Rahn, 2007). Finally, the ureter enters the bladder and travels obliquely for approximately 1.5 cm before opening at the ureteral orifices.

The pelvic ureter receives blood supply from the vessels it passes: the common iliac, internal iliac, uterine, and superior vesical vessels. The ureter's course runs medial to these vessels, and thus its blood supply reaches the ureter from lateral sources. This is important during ureteral isolation. Vascular anastomoses on the connective tissue sheath enveloping the ureter form a longitudinal network of vessels.

PELVIC SKELETAL ANATOMY

Pelvic Bones and Joints

The pelvis is composed of four bones—the sacrum, coccyx, and two innominate bones. Each innominate bone is formed by the fusion of three bones—the ilium, ischium, and pubis (Fig. 2-14). Both innominate bones are joined to the sacrum at the sacroiliac joint. Anteriorly, they are joined at the symphysis pubis. This consists of fibrocartilage and the superior and inferior pubic ligaments. The latter ligament is frequently designated the *arcuate ligament of the pubis*.

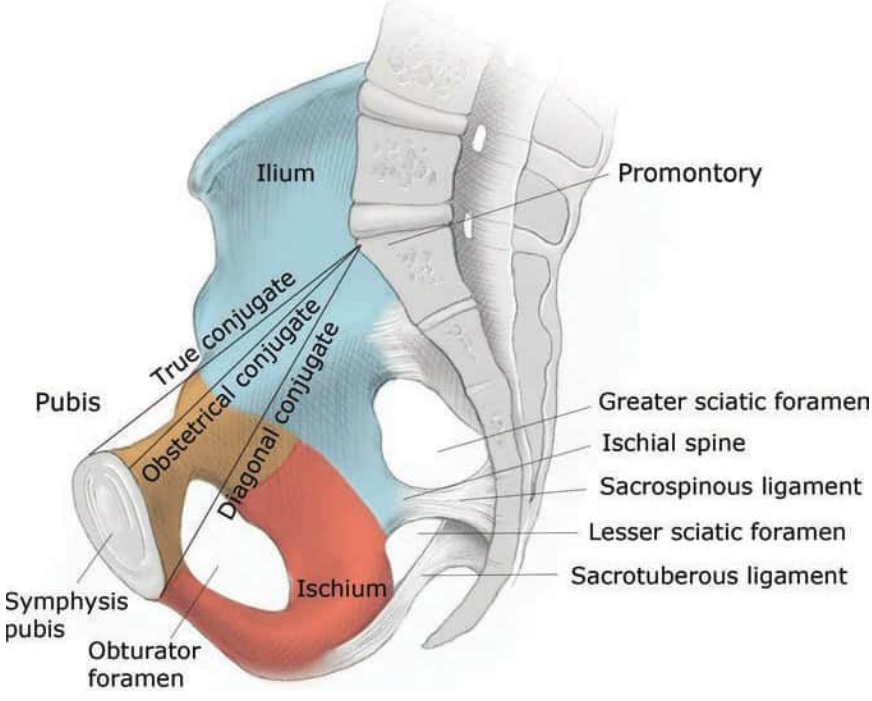


FIGURE 2-14 The innominate bone is composed of the pubis (*brown*), ischium (*red*), and ilium (*blue*). Of the three anteroposterior diameters of the pelvic inlet, only the diagonal conjugate can be measured clinically. The important obstetrical conjugate is derived by subtracting 1.5 cm from the diagonal conjugate.

These pelvic joints have a limited degree of mobility but can relax remarkably during pregnancy. For example, at term, the sacroiliac joint can glide upward. This is greatest in dorsal lithotomy position and may increase the diameter of the outlet by 1.5 to 2.0 cm for delivery (Borell, 1957). Sacroiliac joint mobility also likely aids the McRoberts maneuver to release an obstructed shoulder in cases of shoulder dystocia (Chap. 27, p. 502). These changes may also contribute to the success of the modified squatting position to hasten second-stage labor (Gardosi, 1989). Squatting may increase the interspinous diameter and the pelvic outlet diameter (Russell, 1969, 1982).

Planes and Diameters of the Pelvis

The pelvis is conceptually divided into false and true components. The false pelvis lies above the linea terminalis, and the true pelvis is below this boundary (Fig. 2-15). The false pelvis is bounded posteriorly by the lumbar vertebra and laterally by the iliac fossa. In front, the boundary is formed by the lower portion of the anterior abdominal wall.

The true pelvis is described by four imaginary planes:

1. The plane of the pelvic inlet—the superior strait.
2. The plane of the pelvic outlet—the inferior strait.
3. The plane of the midpelvis—the least pelvic dimensions.
4. The plane of greatest pelvic dimension—of no obstetrical significance.

Pelvic Inlet

The pelvic inlet is bounded posteriorly by the promontory, laterally by the linea terminalis, and anteriorly by the horizontal pubic rami and the symphysis pubis. During labor, fetal head engagement is defined by the fetal head's biparietal diameter passing through this plane.

Four diameters of the pelvic inlet are usually described: anteroposterior, transverse, and two oblique diameters. Of these, distinct anteroposterior diameters have been described using specific landmarks. Most cephalad, the anteroposterior diameter, termed the *true conjugate*, extends from the uppermost margin of the symphysis pubis to the sacral promontory (see Fig. 2-14). The clinically important *obstetrical conjugate* is the shortest, and thus the most limiting, distance between the sacral promontory and the symphysis pubis. Normally, this measures 10 cm or more, but unfortunately, it cannot be measured directly with examining fingers. Thus, the obstetrical conjugate is estimated indirectly by subtracting 1.5 to 2 cm from the *diagonal conjugate*. To measure the diagonal conjugate, a hand with the palm oriented laterally extends its index finger to the promontory. The distance from the fingertip to the point at which the lowest margin of the symphysis strikes the same finger's base is the diagonal conjugate.

The transverse diameter is constructed at right angles to the obstetrical conjugate and represents the greatest distance between the linea terminalis on either side (see Fig. 2-15). It usually intersects the obstetrical conjugate at a point approximately 5 cm in front of the promontory and measures approximately 13 cm.

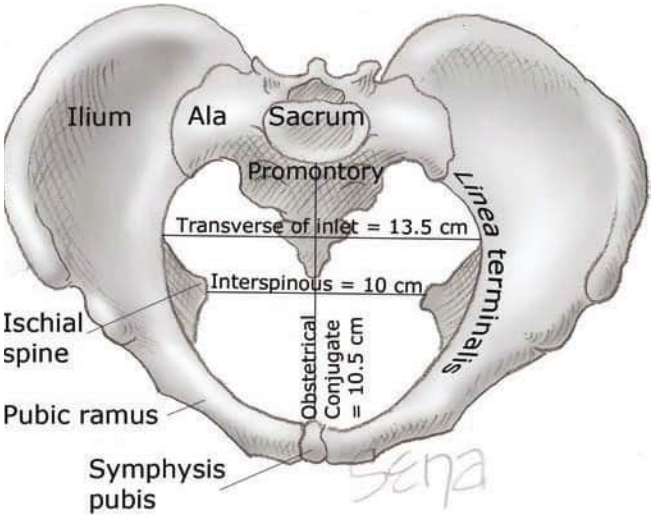


FIGURE 2-15 Axial view of a normal female pelvis. The clinically important obstetrical conjugate and transverse diameter of the pelvic inlet are illustrated. The interspinous diameter of the midpelvis also is marked.

Midpelvis and Pelvic Outlet

The midpelvis is measured at the level of the ischial spines, also called the midplane or plane of least pelvic dimensions (see Fig. 2-15). During labor, the degree of fetal head descent into the true pelvis may be described by station, and the midpelvis and ischial spines serve to mark zero station. The interspinous diameter is 10 cm or slightly greater and is usually the smallest overall pelvic diameter. The anteroposterior diameter through the level of the ischial spines normally measures at least 11.5 cm.

The pelvic outlet consists of two approximately triangular areas whose boundaries mirror those of the perineum described earlier (p. 14). They have a common base, which is a line drawn between the two ischial tuberosities. The apex of the posterior triangle is the tip of the sacrum, and the lateral boundaries are the sacrotuberous ligaments and the ischial tuberosities. The anterior triangle is formed by the descending inferior rami of the pubic bones. These rami unite at an angle of 90 to 100 degrees to form a rounded arch under which the fetal head must pass. Unless there is significant pelvic bony disease, the pelvic outlet seldom obstructs vaginal delivery.

Pelvic Shapes

The Caldwell–Moloy (1933, 1934) anatomical classification of the pelvis is based on shape, and its concepts aid an understanding of labor mechanisms. Specifically, the greatest transverse diameter of the inlet and its division into anterior and posterior segments are used to classify the pelvis as gynecoid, anthropoid, android, or platypelloid. The posterior segment determines the type of pelvis, whereas the anterior segment determines the tendency. These are both determined because many pelves are not pure but are mixed types. For example, a gynecoid pelvis with an android tendency means that the posterior pelvis is gynecoid and the anterior pelvis is android shaped.

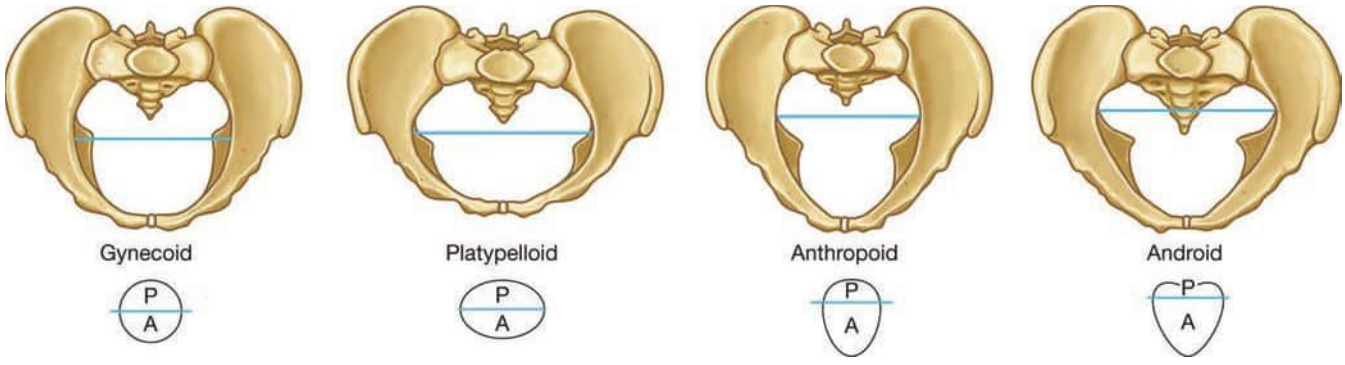


FIGURE 2-16 The four parent pelvic types of the Caldwell–Moloy classification are shown by anatomic and schematic drawings. In each, the blue line passes through the widest transverse diameter and divides the pelvic inlets into posterior (P) and anterior (A) segments. Mixed types are formed by combining anterior and posterior inlet segments from different parent types.

From viewing the four basic types in Figure 2-16, the configuration of the gynecoid pelvis would intuitively seem suited for delivery of most fetuses. Indeed, Caldwell (1939) reported that the gynecoid pelvis was found in almost half of women.

REFERENCES

Balgobin S, Jeppson PC, Wheeler T 2nd, et al: Standardized terminology of apical structures in the female pelvis based on a structured medical literature review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(3):204, 2020

Baramee P, Muro S, Suriyut J, et al: Three muscle slings of the pelvic floor in women: an anatomic study. Anat Sci Int 95(1):47, 2020

Beer GM, Schuster A, Seifert B, et al: The normal width of the linea alba in nulliparous women. Clin Anat 22(6):706, 2009

Berger MB, Kolenic GE, Fenner DE, et al: Structural, functional, and symptomatic differences between women with rectocele versus cystocele and normal support. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(5):510, 2018

Bleich AT, Rahn DD, Wieslander CK, et al: Posterior division of the internal iliac artery: anatomic variations and clinical applications. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197:658.e1, 2007

Borell U, Fernstrom I: Movements at the sacroiliac joints and their importance to changes in pelvic dimensions during parturition. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 36:42, 1957

Caldwell WE, Moloy HC: Anatomical variations in the female pelvis and their effect in labor with a suggested classification. Am J Obstet Gynecol 26:479, 1933

Caldwell WE, Moloy HC, D'Esopo DA: Further studies on the pelvic architecture. Am J Obstet Gynecol 28:482, 1934

Caldwell WE, Moloy HC, Swenson PC: The use of the roentgen ray in obstetrics, 1. Roentgen pelvimetry and cephalometry; technique of pelvis roentgenography. AJR 41:305, 1939

Cao Y, Li Q, Zhou C, et al: Measurements of female genital appearance in Chinese adults seeking genital cosmetic surgery: a preliminary report from a gynecological center. Int Urogynecol J 26(5):729, 2015

Carlile A, Davies I, Faragher E, et al: The epithelium in the female urethra: a quantitative study. J Urol 138(4):775, 1987

Colleselli K, Stenzl A, Eder R, et al: The female urethral sphincter: a morphological and topographical study. J Urol 160(1):49, 1998

Collins AF, Doyle PJ, Vilasagar S, et al: Utility of anterior vaginal wall length measurement in vaginal reconstructive surgery. Int Urogynecol J 28(8):1197, 2017

Corton MM: Anatomy. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2020

Costa TC, Cury PM, Custódio AM: Features of the female prostate according to age: an autopsy study. J Bras Patol Med 52(4):246, 2016

Croxatto HB: Physiology of gamete and embryo transport through the fallopian tube. Reprod Biomed Online 4(2):160, 2002

de Treigny OM, Roumiguie M, Deudon R, et al: Anatomical study of the inferior vesical artery: is it specific to the male sex? Surg Radiol Anat 39(9):961, 2017

Deering SH, Carlson N, Stitely M, et al: Perineal body length and lacerations at delivery. J Reprod Med 49(4):306, 2004

DeLancey JO, Kearney R, Chou Q, et al: The appearance of levator ani muscle abnormalities in magnetic resonance images after vaginal delivery. Obstet Gynecol 101:46, 2003

DeLancey JO, Toglia MR, Perucchini D: Internal and external anal sphincter anatomy as it relates to midline obstetric lacerations. Obstet Gynecol 90:924, 1997

Dietz HP, Simpson JM: Levator trauma is associated with pelvic organ prolapse. BJOG 115(8):979, 2008

Dua A, Whitworth M, Dugdale A, et al: Perineal length: norms in gravid women in the first stage of labour. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 20(11):1361, 2009

Dueñas-Garcia OF, Kim Y, Leung K, et al: Vascular anatomical relationships of the retropubic space and the sacrospinous ligament, using three-dimensional imaging. Int Urogynecol J 28(8):1177, 2017

Eckhoff K, Wedel T, Both M, et al: Spontaneous rectus sheath hematoma in pregnancy and a systematic anatomical workup of rectus sheath hematoma: a case report. J Med Case Rep 10(1):292, 2016

Fenner DE, Kriegshauser JS, Lee HH, et al: Anatomic and physiologic measurements of the internal and external anal sphincters in normal females. Obstet Gynecol 91(3):369, 1998

Friedman T, Coon D, Kanbour-Shakir A, et al: Defining the lymphatic system of the anterior abdominal wall: an anatomical study. Plast Reconstr Surg 135(4):1027, 2015

Gardosi J, Hutson N, Lynch CB: Randomised, controlled trial of squatting in the second stage of labour. Lancet 2:74, 1989

Gibbs J, Bridges F, Trivedi K, et al: Spontaneous rectus sheath hematoma in pregnancy complicated by the development of transfusion related acute lung injury: a case report and review of the literature. AJP Rep 6(3):e325, 2016

Ginger VA, Cold CJ, Yang CC: Structure and innervation of the labia minora: more than minor skin folds. Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg 17(4):180, 2011a

Ginger VA, Cold CJ, Yang CC: Surgical anatomy of the dorsal nerve of the clitoris. Neurourol Urodyn 30(3):412, 2011b

Hamner JJ, Carrick KS, Ramirez DM, et al: Gross and histologic relationships of the retropubic urethra to lateral pelvic sidewall and anterior vaginal wall in female cadavers: clinical applications to retropubic surgery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(6):597, 2018

Hawkins JL: Anesthesia for the pregnant woman. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017

Hill AJ, Balgobin S, Mishra K, et al: Recommended standardized anatomic terminology of the posterior female pelvis and vulva based on a structured medical literature review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 225(2):169.e1, 2021

Hodgkinson CP: Physiology of the ovarian veins during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 1(1):26, 1953

Hokenstad ED, El-Nashar SA, Weaver A, et al: Perineal body and genital hiatus in the third trimester and risk of perineal Laceration. Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg 21(6):359, 2015

Huffman JW: The detailed anatomy of the paraurethral ducts in the adult human female. Am J Obstet Gynecol 55(1):86, 1948

Jackson LA, Hare AM, Carrick KS, et al: Anatomy, histology, and nerve density of clitoris and associated structures: clinical applications to vulvar surgery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(5):519, 2019

Jeppson PC, Balgobin S, Washington BB, et al: Recommended standardized terminology of the anterior female pelvis based on a structured medical literature review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(1):26, 2018

Kearney R, Sawhney R, DeLancey JO: Levator ani muscle anatomy evaluated by origin-insertion pairs. Obstet Gynecol 104:168, 2004
Kim SO, Oh KJ, Lee HS, et al: Expression of aquaporin water channels in the vagina in premenopausal women. J Sex Med 8(7):1925, 2011
Komorowski LK, Leeman LM, Fullilove AM, et al: Does a large infant head or a short perineal body increase the risk of obstetrical perineal trauma? Birth 41(2):147, 2014
Kreklau A, Vâz I, Oehme F, et al: Measurements of a 'normal vulva' in women aged 15–84: a cross-sectional prospective single-centre study. BJOG 125(13):1656, 2018
Langlois PL: The size of the normal uterus. J Reprod Med 4:220, 1970
Larson KA, Yousuf A, Lewicky-Gaupp C, et al: Perineal body anatomy in living women: 3-dimensional analysis using thin-slice magnetic resonance imaging. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203(5):494.e15, 2010
Lee JM, Kim NK: Essential anatomy of the anorectum for colorectal surgeons focused on the gross anatomy and histologic findings. Ann Coloproctol 34(2):59, 2018
Lien KC, Morgan DM, Delancey JO, et al: Pudendal nerve stretch during vaginal birth: a 3D computer simulation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192(5):1669, 2005
Llauger J, Palmer J, Pérez C, et al: The normal and pathologic ischiorectal fossa at CT and MR imaging. Radiographics 18(1):61, 1998
Loukas M, Myers C, Shah R, et al: Arcuate line of the rectus sheath: clinical approach. Anat Sci Int 83(3):140, 2008
Lykkebo AW, Drue HC, Lam JU, et al: The size of labia minora and perception of genital appearance: a cross-sectional study. J Low Genit Tract Dis 21(3):198, 2017
Mahakkanukrauh P, Surin P, Vaidhayakarn P: Anatomical study of the pudendal nerve adjacent to the sacrospinous ligament. Clin Anat 18:200, 2005
Mahran M: The microscopic anatomy of the round ligament. J Obstet Gynaecol Br Commonw 72:614, 1965
Mahran M, Saleh AM: The microscopic anatomy of the hymen. Anat Rec 149:313, 1964
Maldonado PA, Carrick KS, Montoya TI, et al: Posterior vaginal compartment anatomy: implications for surgical repair. Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg 26(12):751, 2020
Maldonado PA, Chin K, Garcia AA, et al: Anatomic variations of pudendal nerve within pelvis and pudendal canal: clinical applications. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(5):727, 2015
Mazloomdoost D, Westermann LB, Mutema G, et al: Histologic anatomy of the anterior vagina and urethra. Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg 23(5):329, 2017
Meriwether KV, Rogers RG, Dunivan GC, et al: Perineal body stretch during labor does not predict perineal laceration, postpartum incontinence, or postpartum sexual function: a cohort study. Int Urogynecol J 27(8):1193, 2016
Mistry MA, Klarskov N, DeLancey JO, et al: A structured review on the female urethral anatomy and innervation with an emphasis on the role of the urethral longitudinal smooth muscle. Int Urogynecol J 31(1):63, 2020
Montoya TI, Calver L, Carrick KS, et al: Anatomic relationships of the pudendal nerve branches. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(5):504.e1, 2011
Mota P, Pascoal AG, Carita AI, et al: Normal width of the inter-recti distance in pregnant and postpartum primiparous women. Musculoskelet Sci Pract 35:34, 2018
Ng SC, Habib AS, Sodha S, et al: High-dose versus low-dose local anaesthetic for transversus abdominis plane block post-Caesarean delivery analgesia: a meta-analysis. Br J Anaesth 120(2):252, 2018
Nivatvongs S, Stern HS, Fryd DS: The length of the anal canal. Dis Colon Rectum 24(8):600, 1981
Oh C, Kark AE: Anatomy of the perineal body. Dis Colon Rectum 16(6):444, 1973
Patnam R, Edenfield A, Swift S: Defining normal apical vaginal support: a relook at the POSST study. Int Urogynecol J 30(1):47, 2019
Plochocki JH, Rodriguez-Sosa JR, Adrian B, et al: A functional and clinical reinterpretation of human perineal neuromuscular anatomy: application to sexual function and continence. Clin Anat 29(8):1053, 2016
Rahn DD, Bleich AT, Wai CY, et al: Anatomic relationships of the distal third of the pelvic ureter, trigone, and urethra in unembalmed female cadavers. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197(6):668.e1, 2007
Rahn DD, Phelan JN, Roshanravan SM, et al: Anterior abdominal wall nerve and vessel anatomy: clinical implications for gynecologic surgery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 202(3):234.e1, 2010
Ramanah R, Berger MB, Parratte BM, et al: Anatomy and histology of apical support: a literature review concerning cardinal and uterosacral ligaments. Int Urogynecol J 23(11):1483, 2012
Reimers C, Staer-Jensen J, Siafarikas F, et al: Change in pelvic organ support during pregnancy and the first year postpartum: a longitudinal study. BJOG 123(5):821, 2016
Ripperda CM, Jackson LA, Phelan JN, et al: Anatomic relationships of the pelvic autonomic nervous system in female cadavers: clinical applications to pelvic surgery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(4):388, 2017
Rociu E, Stoker J, Eijkemans MJ, et al: Normal anal sphincter anatomy and age- and sex-related variations at high-spatial-resolution endoanal MR imaging. Radiology 217(2):395, 2000
Roshanravan SM, Wieslander CK, Schaffer JI, et al: Neurovascular anatomy of the sacrospinous ligament region in female cadavers: implications in sacrospinous ligament fixation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197(6):660.e1, 2007
Russell JG: Moulding of the pelvic outlet. J Obstet Gynaecol Br Commonw 76:817, 1969
Russell JG: The rationale of primitive delivery positions. BJOG 89:712, 1982
Schober J, Aardsma N, Mayoglou L, et al: Terminal innervation of female genitalia, cutaneous sensory receptors of the epithelium of the labia minora. Clin Anat 28(3):392, 2015
Shafik A, Doss SH: Pudendal canal: surgical anatomy and clinical implications. Am Surg 65:176, 1999
Shafik A, Sibai OE, Shafik AA, et al: A novel concept for the surgical anatomy of the perineal body. Dis Colon Rectum 50(12):2120, 2007
Sheikhazadi A, Sadr SS, Ghadyani MH, et al: Study of the normal internal organ weights in Tehran's population. J Forensic Leg Med 17(2):78, 2010
Soga H, Nagata I, Murakami G, et al: A histotopographic study of the perineal body in elderly women: the surgical applicability of novel histological findings. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 18(12):1423, 2007
Spackman R, Wrigley B, Roberts A, et al: The inferior hypogastric plexus: a different view. J Obstet Gynaecol 27(2):130, 2007
Stein TA, DeLancey JO: Structure of the perineal membrane in females: gross and microscopic anatomy. Obstet Gynecol 111(3):686, 2008
Stewart AM, Cook MS, Dyer KY, et al: Structure-function relationship of the human external anal sphincter. Int Urogynecol J 29(5):673, 2018
Tourani SS, Taylor GI, Ashton MW: Scarpa fascia preservation in abdominoplasty: does it preserve the lymphatics? Plast Reconstr Surg 136(2):258, 2015
Umek WH, Morgan DM, Ashton-Miller JA, et al: Quantitative analysis of uterosacral ligament origin and insertion points by magnetic resonance imaging. Obstet Gynecol 103:447, 2004
Verhagen T, Loos MJ, Mulders LG, et al: A step up therapeutic regimen for chronic post-Pfannenstiel pain syndrome. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 231:248, 2018
Weidner AC, Jamison MG, Branham V, et al: Neuropathic injury to the levator ani occurs in 1 in 4 primiparous women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:1851, 2006
Whiteside JL, Barber MD, Walters MD, et al: Anatomy of ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves in relation to trocar placement and low transverse incisions. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:1574, 2003
Wilkinson EJ, Massoll NA: Benign diseases of the vulva. In Kurman RJ, Ellenson LH, Ronnett BM (eds): Blaustein's Pathology of the Female Genital Tract, 6th ed. New York, Springer, 2011, p 3
Yonggang H, Jing Y, Ping W, et al: Forty-one cases of round ligament varicosities that are easily misdiagnosed as inguinal hernias. Hernia 21(6):901, 2017

CHAPTER 3

Congenital Genitourinary Abnormalities

In females, the external genitalia, gonads, and müllerian ducts each derive from different primordia and in close association with the urinary tract and hindgut. Abnormal embryogenesis can lead to reproductive organs that predispose to infertility, subfertility, miscarriage, or preterm delivery.

GENITOURINARY TRACT DEVELOPMENT

Urinary System

Between the 3rd and 5th gestational weeks, an elevation of intermediate mesoderm on each side of the fetus begins to develop into the urogenital tract. This *urogenital ridge* divides into the *genital ridge*, destined to become the gonads, and into the *nephrogenic ridge* (Fig. 3-1). Each nephrogenic ridge produces a mesonephros (mesonephric kidney). Recall that evolution of the renal system passes sequentially from the mesonephric stage to reach the permanent metanephric system (de Bakker, 2019; Upadhyay, 2014). Each nephrogenic ridge also gives rise to a mesonephric duct, also termed wolffian duct, and to a paramesonephric duct, also called müllerian duct.

The early urinary tract develops from the mesonephric ducts (Fig. 3-2A). Between the 4th and 5th weeks, each mesonephric duct gives rise to a ureteric bud, which grows cephalad (Fig. 3-2B). As each bud lengthens, it induces differentiation of the metanephros, which will become the final kidney (Fig. 3-2C) (Davidson, 2019). The metanephros ascends to its final position by the 9th week because of disproportionate growth of the embryo's caudal region (Jain, 2018). Each ureteric bud also gives rise to an elongation that becomes the metanephric duct or future ureter.

The cloaca begins as a common opening for the embryonic urinary, genital, and alimentary tracts (Gupta, 2014). By the 7th week, it is divided by the urorectal septum to create the hindgut and the urogenital sinus (Fig. 3-2D) (Valentini, 2016). The urogenital sinus is considered in three parts: (1) the cephalad or vesicle portion, which forms the urinary bladder; (2) the middle or pelvic portion, which creates the female urethra; and (3) the caudal or phallic part, which gives rise to the distal vagina and to the greater vestibular (Bartholin) and paraurethral glands.

Near the end of the first trimester, each mesonephros degenerates, and without testosterone, the mesonephric ducts regress as well. The ureterovesical junction forms from incorporation of the metanephric ducts into the bladder at the trigone. Abnormalities of this process lead to obstruction and vesicoureteral reflux (Liaw, 2018).

Genital Tract

The fallopian tubes, uterus, and upper vagina derive from the müllerian ducts (see Fig. 3-2B). Linear spatial development of these organs along the duct length is guided by several genes and notably by *Hox* genes (Du, 2004; Jacquinet, 2016). These ducts extend downward and then turn medially to meet and

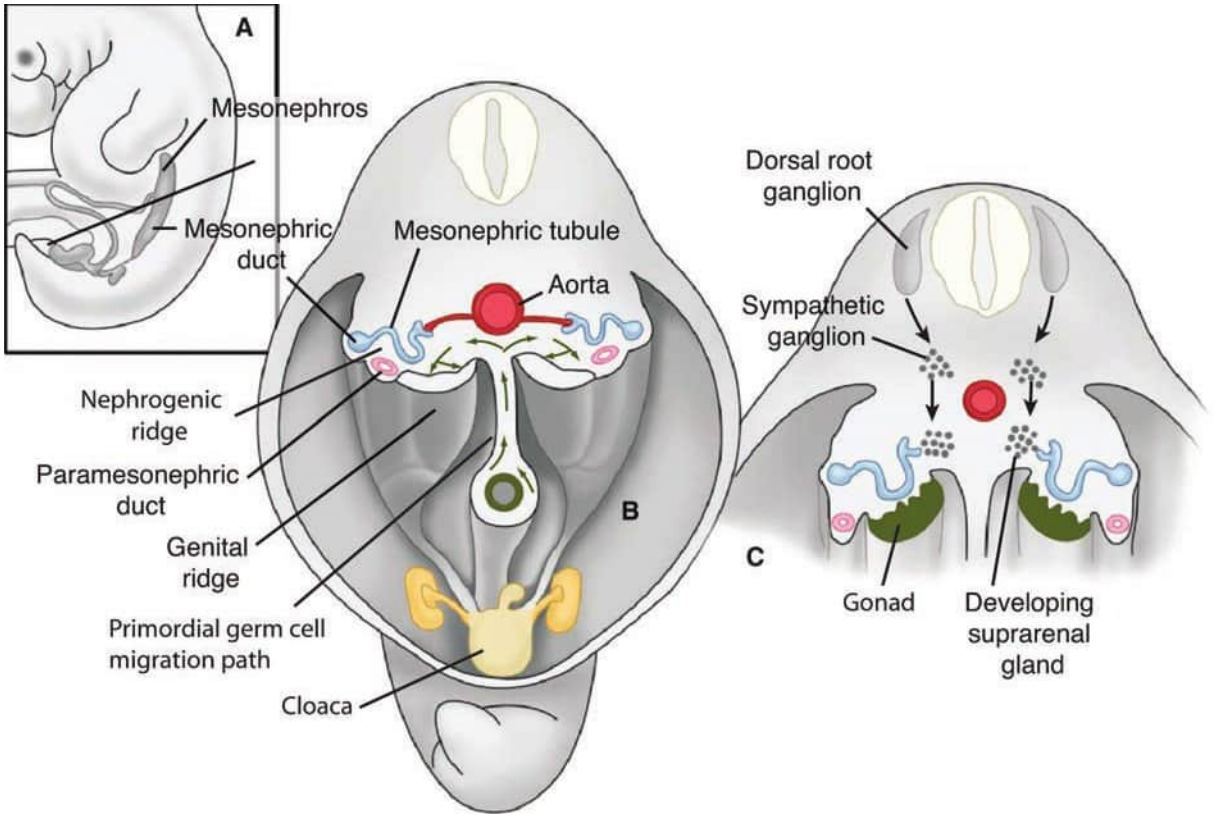


FIGURE 3-1 **A.** Cross-section of an embryo at 4 to 6 weeks. **B.** Primordial germ cells migrate (*arrows*) from the yolk sac to the area of germinal epithelium, within the genital ridge. **C.** Development of gonad. Also, migration of sympathetic cells from the spinal ganglia to a region above the developing kidney.

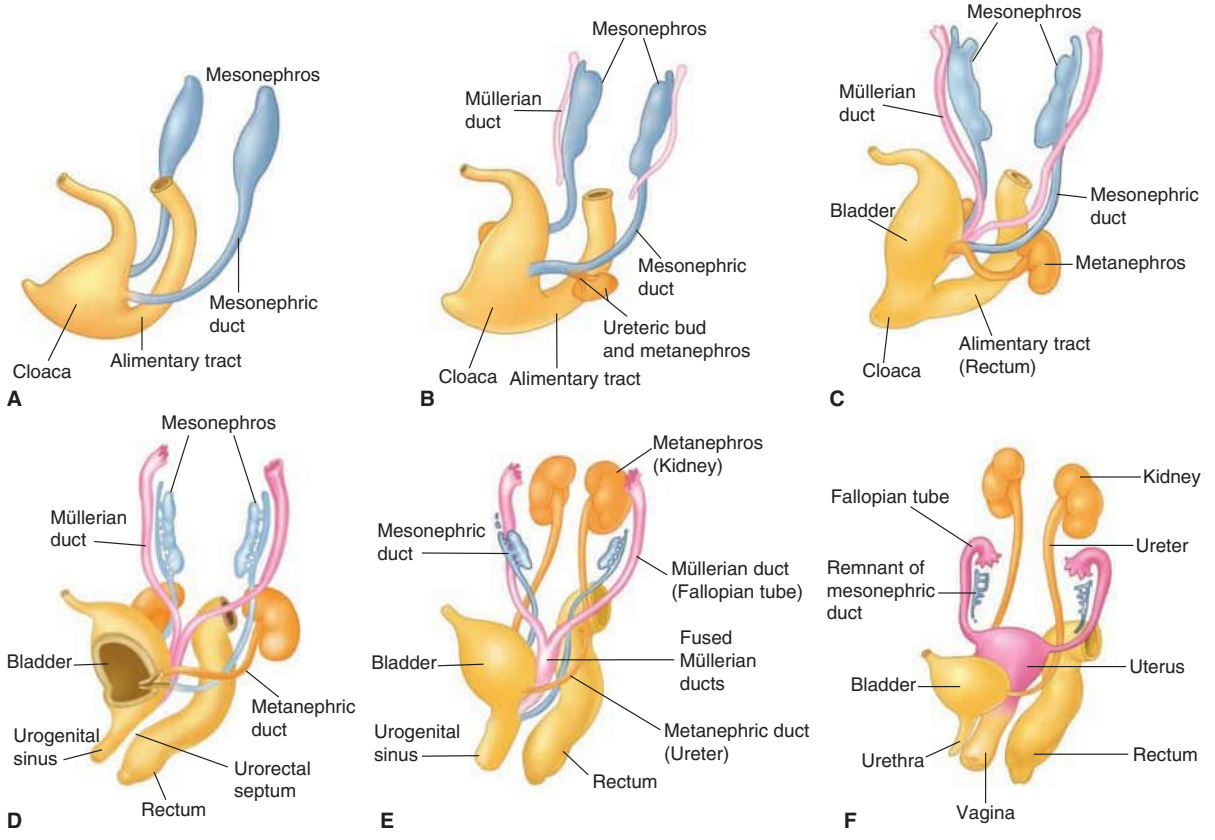


FIGURE 3-2 Embryonic development of the female genitourinary tract **(A–F)**. (Reproduced with permission from Shatzkes DR, Haller JO, Velcek FT: Imaging of uterovaginal anomalies in the pediatric patient, Urol Radiol 1991;13(1):58–66.)

fuse together in the midline. The uterus is formed by this union of the two müllerian ducts at approximately the 10th week (Fig. 3-2E) (Spencer, 2012). Fusion to create the uterus begins in the middle and then extends both caudally and cephalad. With cellular proliferation at the upper portion, a thick wedge of tissue creates the characteristic piriform uterine shape. At the same time, dissolution of cells at the lower pole forms the first uterine cavity (Fig. 3-2F). As the upper wedge-shaped septum is slowly reabsorbed, the final uterine cavity is usually formed by the 20th week (Toaff, 1984). If the two müllerian ducts fail to fuse, two separate uterine horns remain. In contrast, resorption failure of the common tissue between them results in various degrees of persistent uterine septum.

As the distal end of the fused müllerian ducts contacts the urogenital sinus, this induces endodermal outgrowths from the sinus, which are termed the sinovaginal bulbs. These bulbs proliferate and fuse to form the vaginal plate, which later resorbs to form the vaginal lumen. Vaginal canalization is generally completed by the 20th week (Crosby, 1962). However, the lumen remains separated from the urogenital sinus by the hymeneal membrane. This membrane further degenerates to leave only the hymeneal ring.

The close association of the mesonephric (wolffian) and paramesonephric (müllerian) ducts explains the potential to see simultaneous abnormalities in their end organs. Nearly half of females with uterovaginal malformations have associated urinary tract defects, and this association is explored later (p. 40) (Kenney, 1984; Semmens, 1962). With müllerian anomalies, ovaries are functionally normal but have a higher incidence of anatomical maldescent into the pelvis (Allen, 2012).

As discussed, the mesonephric ducts usually degenerate in the female. However, persistent remnants may become clinically apparent. Mesonephric, that is wolffian, vestiges can persist as Gartner duct cysts. These are typically located in the proximal anterolateral vaginal wall but may be found at other sites along the vaginal length. Most cysts are asymptomatic and benign and usually do not require surgical excision or drainage.

Intraabdominal wolffian remnants in the female include a few blind tubules in the mesovarium—the epoöphoron—and similar ones adjacent to the uterus—paroöphoron (see Fig. 3-2F) (Moore, 2020). The epoöphoron or paroöphoron may develop into clinically identifiable benign cysts in the adult.

Gonads

Because of separate gonadal and müllerian derivation, women with müllerian defects typically have functionally normal ovaries. At approximately 4 weeks, gonads form from the genital ridge, also known as the gonadal ridge. This ridge forms from the coelomic epithelium covering the medioventral surface of the mesonephros (Smith, 2014). Recall that coelomic epithelium arises from mesoderm and invests the body cavity's inner surface (Ariza, 2016). Next, strands of these epithelial cells extend into the underlying mesenchyme as the primary sex cords.

Another gonadal component is the primordial germ cell, the future oogonia. By the 6th week, primordial germ cells have migrated from the yolk sac along the dorsal mesentery to enter the genital ridge mesenchyme (see Fig. 3-1) (Fujimoto, 1977; Hen, 2019). The primordial germ cells are then incorporated into the primary sex cords.

In the 7th week, the sexes can be distinguished. Testes are recognized during microscopic sectioning by their well-defined radiating testis cords, which derived from the primary sex cords. These cords develop into the seminiferous tubules and rete testis. The rete testis connects with small tubes arising off the mesonephric duct. These small tubes become the efferent ducts that drain into the epididymis and then into the vas deferens, which are main mesonephric duct derivatives. After the 8th week, gonads begin to differ grossly as well (Shen, 2018).

In the female embryo, the primary sex cords give rise to the medullary cords, which persist only for a short time. The coelomic epithelium again proliferates into the underlying mesenchyme, and these strands are the cortical cords. By the 16th week, the cortical cords begin to form isolated cell clusters called primordial follicles. These follicles contain the oogonia, which derive from primordial germ cells, and a single surrounding layer of follicular cells, derived from the cortical cords. Follicular cells are supporting nutrient cells.

By 8 months, the ovary has become a long, narrow, lobulated structure that is attached to the body wall by the mesovarium. The coelomic epithelium has been separated by a band of connective tissue—the tunica albuginea—from the cortex. At this stage, the cortex contains follicles and is well defined from the inner medulla, which is composed of abundant blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and nerve fibers.

External Genitalia

Early development of the external genitalia is similar in both sexes. By 6 weeks' gestation, three external protuberances have developed surrounding the cloacal membrane. These are the left and right cloacal folds, which meet ventrally to form the genital tubercle (Fig. 3-3A). With division of the cloacal membrane into anal and urogenital membranes in the early 7th week, the cloacal folds become the anal and urethral folds, respectively. Lateral to the urethral folds, genital swellings arise, and these become the labioscrotal folds. Between the urethral folds, the urogenital sinus extends onto the surface of the enlarging genital tubercle to form the urethral groove. Late in week 7, the urogenital membrane ruptures, exposing the cavity of the urogenital sinus to amnionic fluid.

The genital tubercle elongates to form the phallus in males and the clitoris in females. Still, it is not possible to visually differentiate between male and female external genitalia until week 12. In the male fetus, dihydrotestosterone (DHT) forms locally by the 5-α reduction of testosterone. DHT prompts the anogenital distance to lengthen, the phallus to enlarge, and the labioscrotal folds to fuse and form the scrotum (see Fig. 3-3B).

In the female fetus, without DHT, the anogenital distance does not lengthen, and the labioscrotal and urethral folds do not fuse (see Fig. 3-3C). The genital tubercle bends caudally to become the clitoris, and the urogenital sinus forms the

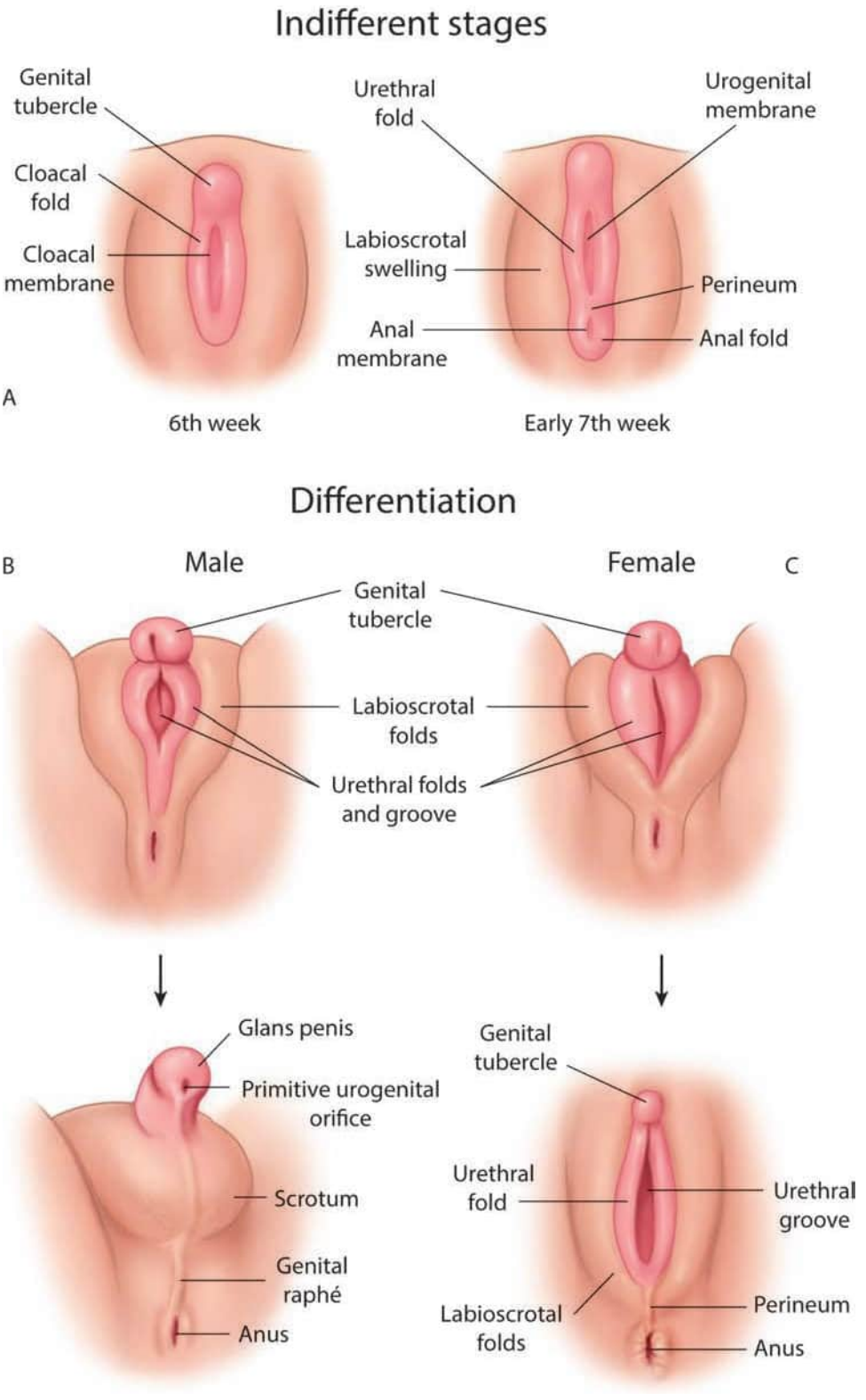


FIGURE 3-3 Development of the external genitalia. **A.** Indifferent stage. **B.** Virilization of external genitalia. **C.** Feminization.

vestibule of the vagina. The labioscrotal folds create the labia majora, whereas the urethral folds persist as the labia minora. Female external genitals are differentiated by 11 weeks, whereas male external genital differentiation is complete by 14 weeks.

To differentiate phenotypic gender early, first-trimester sonography relies on the angle of the genital tubercle off a horizontal line drawn parallel to the lumbosacral skin surface (Fig. 3-4) (Efrat, 2006). Specifically, male gender is assigned if the angle is >30°, and female gender if the angle is <10°.

SEXUAL DIFFERENTIATION

Defining gender incorporates genetic gender, gonadal gender, and phenotypic gender. *Genetic gender*—XX or XY—is established at fertilization. However, for the first 6 weeks, male and female embryos are morphologically indistinguishable.

Gonadal gender is heralded by the differentiation of the primordial gonad into a testis or an ovary. If a Y chromosome is present, the gonad begins developing into a testis. Testis development is directed by the *sex-determining region (SRY)* gene, located on the short arm of the Y chromosome (Sinclair, 1990). In addition, testis development requires other autosomal genes that include *SOX9*, *WT1*, *DAX1*, *WNT4*, and *NR5A1(SF1)* (Grinspon, 2019). Identified mutations in these and others are linked to disorders of sex development, described next.

The importance of the *SRY* gene is demonstrated in several paradoxical conditions. For example, 46,XX phenotypic males can result from translocation of the Y chromosome fragment containing *SRY* to the X chromosome during meiosis of male germ cells (Yue, 2019). Similarly, 46,XY individuals can appear phenotypically female if they carry a mutation in the *SRY* gene (Helszer, 2013).

Last, *phenotypic gender* begins at 8 weeks' gestation. Before this, urogenital tract development in both sexes is homologous. Thereafter, differentiation of the internal and external genitalia to the male phenotype is dependent on testicular function and response. In its absence, female differentiation ensues irrespective of genetic gender (Table 3-1) (She, 2017).

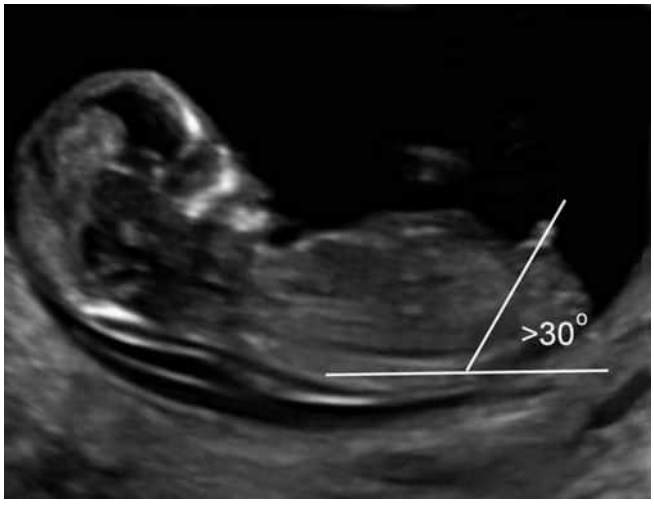


FIGURE 3-4 First-trimester transvaginal sonogram shows a male fetus, whose phallus lies at an angle that is ≥30 degrees above the horizontal. The horizontal line aligns with the fetal lumbosacral skin. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Ashley Zink.)

In males, the Sertoli cells of the fetal testis secrete a protein called antimüllerian hormone (AMH), also named müllerian-inhibiting substance (MIS). It acts locally as a paracrine factor to cause müllerian duct regression (Grinspon, 2020; Mäkelä, 2019). Thus, it prevents development of the uterus, fallopian tube, and upper vagina. Sertoli cells secrete AMH before differentiation of Leydig cells, which synthesize testosterone. AMH is secreted as early as 7 weeks, and müllerian duct regression is completed by 9 to 10 weeks. Because AMH acts locally near its site of formation, if a testis were absent on one side, the müllerian duct on that side would persist, and the uterine horn and fallopian tube would develop on that side.

Through stimulation initially by human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), and later by fetal pituitary luteinizing hormone (LH), Leydig cells secrete testosterone. This hormone acts directly on the wolffian duct to promote development of the vas deferens, epididymis, and seminal vesicles. Testosterone also enters fetal blood and acts on the external genitalia. In these tissues, testosterone is converted to 5α-DHT to cause virilization of the external genitalia. Leydig cells also produce insulin-like factor 3, which prompts embryonic testes to descend by acting on the gubernaculum (Ivell, 2009).

DISORDERS OF SEX DEVELOPMENT

Definitions

Abnormal sex development may involve the gonads, internal duct system, or external genitalia. Current classification of *disorders of sex development (DSDs)* include: (1) sex chromosome DSDs, (2) 46,XY DSDs, and (3) 46,XX DSDs (Table 3-2) (Hughes, 2006). Rates vary depending on included entities and approximate 1 case in every 5000 births (Lee, 2016).

Other terms describe abnormal phenotypic findings. First, some DSDs have abnormal, underdeveloped gonads, that is, *gonadal dysgenesis*. With this, a poorly formed testis is called a *dysgenetic testis*. A poorly formed ovary is a *streak gonad*. Underdeveloped gonads ultimately fail, which creates low sex steroid hormone levels but elevated follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and LH levels.

A second term, *ambiguous genitalia*, describes genitalia that do not appear clearly male or female. Abnormalities can include hypospadias, undescended testes, micropenis or enlarged clitoris, labial fusion, and labial mass.

Last, *ovotesticular* defines a rare state characterized by ovarian and testicular tissue in the same individual. It was formerly termed true hermaphroditism. In these cases, different gonad types can be paired. Pair combinations may include a normal testis, a normal ovary, a streak gonad, a dysgenetic testis, or an *ovotestis*. In the last, both ovarian and testicular elements are combined within the same gonad.

With ovotesticular cases, the internal ductal system structure depends on the type of ipsilateral gonad and its function. Specifically, the amount of AMH and testosterone determines the degree to which the internal ductal system is retained or

TABLE 3-1. Embryonic Urogenital Structures and Their Adult Homologues

Indifferent Structure	Female	Male
Genital ridge	Ovary	Testis
Primordial germ cells	Ova	Spermatozoa
Sex cords	Granulosa cells	Seminiferous tubules, Sertoli cells
Gubernaculum	Uteroovarian and round ligaments	Gubernaculum testis
Mesonephric tubules	Epoöphoron, paroöphoron	Efferent ductules, paradidymis
Mesonephric ducts	Gartner duct	Epididymis, vas deferens, ejaculatory duct
Paramesonephric ducts	Uterus, fallopian tubes, upper vagina	Prostatic utricle, appendix of testis
Urogenital sinus	Bladder, urethra	Bladder, urethra
	Vagina	Prostatic utricle
	Paraurethral glands	Prostate glands
	Greater (Bartholin) and lesser vestibular glands	Bulbourethral glands
Genital tubercle	Clitoris	Glans penis
Urogenital folds	Labia minora	Floor of penile urethra
Labioscrotal swellings	Labia majora	Scrotum

TABLE 3-2. Disorders of Sex Development (DSD) Classification

Sex Chromosome DSD
45,X Turner[a]
47,XXY Klinefelter[a]
45,X/46,XY Mixed gonadal dysgenesis
46,XX/46,XY Ovotesticular DSD
46,XY DSD
Testicular development abnormalities
Complete gonadal dysgenesis
Partial gonadal dysgenesis
Ovotesticular
Testicular regression syndrome
Androgen production or action defects
Androgen synthesis
Androgen receptor
LH/hCG receptor
AMH
Persistent müllerian duct syndrome
Other structure-affecting syndrome
Smith-Lemli-Opitz
46,XX DSD
Ovarian development abnormalities
Gonadal dysgenesis
Testicular
Ovotesticular
Androgen excess
Fetal
Maternal
Placental

[a]And syndrome variants.
AMH = antimüllerian hormone; hCG = human chorionic gonadotropin; LH = luteinizing hormone.

reabsorbed (p. 35). With inadequate AMH, müllerian duct derivatives persist. With inadequate testosterone, external genitalia are usually ambiguous and undermasculinized. Ovotesticular development may be found in all three of the DSD categories, and each of these sections describes examples (see Table 3-2).

Germ Cell Cancer

This cancer can develop in dysgenetic gonads of patients bearing all or part of the Y chromosome. On the Y chromosome, the gene for *testis-specific protein Y (TSPY)* is one putative cancer-predisposing gene. Other risks include disturbed gonadal development, delayed germ cell maturation, and presence of a gonadoblastoma (Cools, 2014). The last is a benign tumor that contains germ cells and immature granulosa cells (Roth, 2018).

Germ cell cancer (GCC) risk varies among DSD types, but for some, gonadectomy may be recommended by a multispecialty DSD team (Lee, 2016). Early surgery benefits those with higher GCC risk and those in whom gonadal hormones may run counter to preferred pubertal development for the individual's chosen gender identity. Later surgery may benefit those with low GCC risk and in whom gonadal hormones would advance desired pubertal development (van der Zwan, 2015).

In addition to dysgenetic gonads, undescended testes also have higher GCC rates (Kolon, 2014). Instead of gonadectomy, orchiopexy, which translocates and fixes a testis into the scrotum, may be protective (Radmayr, 2016; Walsh, 2007).

Sex Chromosome DSD

Cases in this first DSD category typically arise from an abnormal number of sex chromosomes, that is, *sex chromosome aneuploidy (SCA)*. The population rate approximates 1 case per 2500 births (Howard-Bath, 2018).

Discussed fully in Chapter 17 (p. 333), prenatal screening methods allow detection of aneuploidies, including SCAs (Norton, 2016). Sonographically, a thick nuchal translucency or the presence of cystic hygromas is associated with an increased SCA risk (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; Reiss, 2017). Cell-free DNA present in the maternal blood is another common aneuploidy screening tool (Fig. 16-14, p. 328) (Huang, 2018; Vogel, 2019). Its selection solely for gender identification and without a medical indication is not recommended by the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics (Gregg, 2016). Still, with cell-free DNA use for other indications, antenatal detection of SCAs will likely rise. Interpretation and management of findings is discussed in Chapter 17 (p. 335). Advantageously, early recognition of sex chromosome DSD offers an opportunity for patient education. Decisions to end or continue pregnancies are best guided by clinical geneticists. For continued pregnancies, prenatal diagnosis allows early postnatal interventions (Gravholt, 2017).

Turner Syndrome

This develops from de novo loss or severe structural abnormality of one X chromosome in a phenotypic female. Most affected fetuses are spontaneously aborted. However, 1 in 2000 female live births are affected (Lin, 2019). In survivors with Turner syndrome, phenotype varies but nearly all affected patients have short stature. Associated problems can include hypertension; cardiac abnormalities, especially aortic coarctation, bicuspid aortic valve, and QT-interval prolongation; and renal, skeletal, and otolaryngological anomalies. A webbed posterior neck results from cystic hygromas. Metabolic concerns are diabetes mellitus (DM), autoimmune thyroiditis, celiac disease, and elevated liver enzymes (Gravholt, 2019). Two streak ovaries are typically found, and this syndrome is the most common form of gonadal dysgenesis that leads to primary ovarian insufficiency (POI). POI is the depletion or dysfunction of ovarian follicles that leads to failing sex hormone production. The uterus and vagina are normal and respond to prescribed hormones (Matthews, 2017).

Despite eventual POI, women with Turner syndrome may conceive with assisted reproductive technologies (ART) and rarely spontaneously (Hovatta, 1999; Oktay, 2016). In gravidas with Turner syndrome, cardiac morbidity stems from aortic dissection, aortic valve stenosis, and hypertension. For

this reason, maternal–fetal medicine preconceptional counseling and cardiologist evaluation is essential. For aortic dissection, risk rises as the aortic diameter increases. The ascending *aortic size index (ASI)*, which is the aortic diameter divided by body surface area, better reflects risk because it accounts for short stature. Conception should be avoided with an ASI >2.5 cm/m^2 or with an ASI of 2.0 to 2.5 cm/m^2 plus comorbid aortic dissection risk factors. These include bicuspid aortic valve, transverse aortic arch elongation, aortic coarctation, and hypertension (Gravholt, 2017; Silberbach, 2018). The American Society for Reproductive Medicine (2012) recommends against pregnancy with an ASI >2 cm. Even without identified risk, aortic dissection can develop in pregnancy (Carlson, 2007).

If conception is planned, preconceptional evaluation includes echocardiography, combined computed tomography plus cardiac magnetic resonance (CMR) imaging of the heart/aorta, 24-hour ambulatory blood pressure monitoring, exercise testing to reveal exercise-induced hypertension, and electrocardiogram (Gravholt, 2017). Cardiac disorders may require surveillance with serial echocardiograms.

This syndrome carries higher fetal rates of miscarriage, preterm birth, and small-for-gestational age. Preeclampsia, gestational diabetes, and cholestasis of pregnancy are other maternal risks (Dotters-Katz, 2016a; Grewal, 2021). Thus, baseline serum tests ideally assess renal, liver, and thyroid function and screen for DM (Bouet, 2016). These complications and cephalopelvic disproportion account for cesarean delivery rates of 40 to 80 percent in gravidas with Turner syndrome (Cadoret, 2018; Campens, 2021; Dotters-Katz, 2016a).

Klinefelter Syndrome

This syndrome has an estimated prevalence of 1 case per 650 newborn males fetuses (Bojesen, 2003; Radicioni, 2010). With chromosome complement of 47,XXY, these individuals tend to be tall, undervirilized males with gynecomastia and two small, firm testes. They have greatly reduced fertility from hypogonadism due to gradual testicular failure. These men are at increased risk for mediastinal germ cell tumors, osteoporosis, hypothyroidism, DM, breast cancer, cardiovascular abnormalities, and neurobehavioral disorders (Groth, 2013).

Affected fetuses may show a thick NT during first-trimester sonography (Gruchy, 2011). Antepartum risks include preterm birth, cesarean delivery, small-for-gestational-age fetus, and neonatal death (Dotters-Katz, 2016b).

47,XXX and 47,XYY Karyotypes

These rare karyotypes are found in 1 in 10,000 newborn females and 2 in 10,000 newborn males, respectively (Berglund, 2019). Sonographically, fetuses with either karyotype may show a thick NT and fetal-growth restriction (Gruchy, 2016). Phenotypic range is wide, but both may be taller, show subtle facial and skeletal dysmorphisms, and display neurobehavioral problems such as autism spectrum and attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorders (Bardsley, 2013; Urbanus, 2020; Widby 2016). Hormone levels and fertility are unaffected in most, although POI and semen abnormalities may be seen, respectively.

Sex Chromosomal Ovotesticular DSD

In the sex chromosome DSD group, ovotesticular DSD may arise from a 46,XX/46,XY karyotype. Here, an ovary, testis, or ovotestis may be paired. For others, ovotesticular DSD arises from a chromosomal mosaic such as 45,X/46,XY. With this karyotype, *mixed gonadal dysgenesis* shows a streak gonad on one side and either a dysgenetic testis or normal testis on the other. For this reason, phenotypic gender varies widely.

46,XY DSD

Insufficient androgen exposure of a fetus destined to be a male leads to 46,XY DSD—formerly called male pseudohermaphroditism. Testes are often present, and the uterus is generally absent due to the normal action of AMH. These individuals are usually sterile from abnormal spermatogenesis and a small phallus that is inadequate for coitus. Described next, the etiology of 46,XY DSD may stem from abnormal testis development or from abnormal androgen production or action (see Table 3-2). Rarely, 46,XY DSD may be part of another metabolic syndrome that alters structural development, such as Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome (Neri, 1999).

46,XY Gonadal Dysgenesis

This spectrum of abnormal gonad underdevelopment includes complete, partial, or mixed 46,XY gonadal dysgenesis. These are defined by karyotype and by the amount of abnormal testicular tissue. Because of the potential for GCC, gonadectomy is often recommended (p. 36).

Of these, *complete gonadal dysgenesis* results from a mutation in the *SRY* gene or in other genes with testis-determining effects (Hutson, 2014). Swyer syndrome reflects *SRY* defects, whereas Frasier and Denys-Drash syndromes have *WT1* mutations. With both mutations, underdeveloped dysgenetic gonads fail to produce androgens or AMH, which results a normal prepubertal female phenotype and a normal müllerian system.

Partial gonadal dysgenesis defines those with gonad development intermediate between normal and dysgenetic testes. Depending on percentages, wolffian and müllerian structures and genital ambiguity are variably expressed.

Mixed gonadal dysgenesis is one type of ovotesticular DSD. As discussed in the last section, one gonad is streak, and the other is a normal testis or a dysgenetic testis. The phenotype is wide ranging.

Last, *testicular regression* can follow initial testis development (McElreavey, 2020). The phenotypic spectrum is broad and depends on the timing of testis failure.

Abnormal Androgen Production or Action

Some cases of 46,XY DSD stem from abnormalities in: (1) testosterone biosynthesis, (2) LH-receptor function, (3) AMH function, or (4) androgen-receptor action. First, the sex-steroid biosynthesis pathway can suffer enzymatic defects that block testosterone production. Depending on blockade timing and degree, undervirilized males or phenotypic females may result. In contrast to these central enzymatic defects, peripheral defects can be causative. Namely, abnormal action of 5α-reductase

type 2 enzyme impairs conversion of testosterone to DHT and blunts virilization.

Second, hCG/LH receptor abnormalities within the testes can lead to Leydig cell hypoplasia and decreased testosterone production. In contrast, disorders of AMH and AMH receptors result in persistent müllerian duct syndrome (PMDS). These patients appear as males but have a persistent uterus and fallopian tubes due to failed AMH action.

Last, the androgen receptor may be defective and result in androgen-insensitivity syndrome (AIS). Resistance to androgens may be incomplete and result in varying degrees of virilization and genital ambiguity. Milder forms may lead to poorly virilized men with severe male-factor infertility.

Those with complete androgen-insensitivity syndrome (CAIS) are phenotypically normal females. Girls often present at puberty with primary amenorrhea. External genitalia appear normal; pubic and axillary hair are scant or absent; the vagina is markedly shortened; and the uterus and fallopian tubes are absent. However, these individuals develop breasts during puberty due to conversion of androgen to estrogen. Testes may be palpable in the labia or groin or may lie intraabdominally. Traditionally, testes are removed. However, women with AIS have a low risk of GCC, and retention until after puberty allows hormone-mediated breast and bone mass development. Despite hormone replacement after ultimate gonadectomy, many individuals describe hormone-related mood imbalance. New cancer-surveillance protocols may allow gonad retention (Cools, 2017; Weidler, 2019).

46,XX DSD

This DSD group may stem from abnormal ovarian development or from excess androgen exposure.

Abnormal Ovarian Development

Disorders of ovarian development in those with a 46,XX complement include: (1) gonadal dysgenesis, (2) testicular DSD, and (3) ovotesticular DSD.

With *46,XX gonadal dysgenesis*, similar to Turner syndrome, streak gonads develop. These lead to hypogonadism, prepubertal normal female genitalia, and normal müllerian structures. However, other Turner stigmata are absent.

With *46,XX testicular DSD*, several genetic mutations lead to testis-like formation. Most commonly, defects stem from *SRY* translocation onto one paternal X chromosome. Less often, other genes with testis-determining effects are activated. Regardless, AMH prompts müllerian system regression, and androgens promote wolffian system development and external genitalia masculinization. Spermatogenesis, however, is absent because needed genes on the long arm of the Y chromosome are lacking. These persons are not usually diagnosed until puberty or during infertility evaluation.

With *46,XX ovotesticular DSD*, individuals possess a unilateral ovotestis with a contralateral ovary or testis, or bilateral ovotestes. An overexpression of *SOX* genes, which are testis promoting, or deficient ovarian promoting genes are implicated (Grinspon, 2019). Phenotypic findings depend on the degree of androgen exposure.

Androgen Excess

Discordance between female gonadal sex and phenotypically masculine external genitalia may also result from excessive fetal androgen exposure. The prior term was female pseudohermaphroditism. In affected individuals, the ovaries and female internal ductal structures such as the uterus, cervix, and upper vagina develop. Thus, patients are potentially fertile. The external genitalia, however, are variably virilized depending on the amount and timing of androgen exposure. The embryonic clitoris, labioscrotal folds, and urogenital sinus are commonly affected by elevated androgen levels. Virilization may range from modest clitoromegaly to posterior labial fusion and a phallus with a penile urethra. Degrees of virilization can be described by the *Prader score*, which ranges from 0 for a normal-appearing female to 5 for a normal, virilized male. The *external genitalia score* is another and similarly ranges from 0 to 12, respectively (Ahmed, 2000; van der Straaten, 2020).

Fetal, placental, or maternal sources can provide the excessive androgen levels. Maternally derived androgen excess may come from virilizing ovarian tumors such as luteoma and Sertoli-Leydig cell tumor or from virilizing adrenal tumors. Fortunately, these neoplasms infrequently cause fetal effects because of the placental syncytiotrophoblast's tremendous ability to convert C_{19} steroids—androstenedione and testosterone—into estradiol via the enzyme aromatase (Chap. 5, p. 101). As another source, drugs such as testosterone, danazol, and other androgen derivatives may virilize.

Of fetal sources, exposure can arise from fetal congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH). This stems from a fetal enzyme deficiency in the steroidogenic pathway and leads to androgen accumulation. Most cases have a 21-hydroxylase deficiency. Rarely, others involve deficient 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase, 17α-hydroxylase, cholesterol side-chain cleavage enzyme, P450 oxidoreductase, or 11β-hydroxylase (El-Maouche, 2017; Narasimhan, 2019). CAH is a frequent cause of virilization, and its approximate incidence in the United States is 1 case in 18,000 live births (Chan, 2013; Pearce, 2016).

With CAH, phenotypes depend on the enzyme defect's location in the steroidogenic pathway and its severity (Miller, 2011). Classically, deficient enzymes block corticosteroid production, which feeds back to raise adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) levels. This prompts increased levels of precursors, which detour into pathways that generate androgens. With severe deficiency, affected newborns also have blocked aldosterone production that leads to life-threatening salt wasting. This is typified by hyponatremia, hyperkalemia, metabolic acidosis, and hypovolemia (Bizzarri, 2016). Other mutations may prompt fetal virilization alone (Auchus, 2015).

The mildest abnormalities present later and are described as "nonclassic," "late-onset," or "adult-onset" CAH. In these patients, adrenal axis activation at puberty increases steroidogenesis and unmasks mild enzymatic deficiency. Excess androgen provides negative feedback to gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) receptors in the hypothalamus. These patients often have hirsutism, acne, and anovulation. Thus, late-onset CAH may mimic polycystic ovarian syndrome (McCann-Crosby, 2014).

In some instances, CAH can be diagnosed antenatally. Early maternal dexamethasone therapy can dampen androgen excess to minimize virilization (Chap. 19, p. 369). Cell-free DNA can identify fetal gonadal gender. If Y-chromosome cell-free DNA is identified, androgens will not harm the male fetus and maternal dexamethasone treatment can be stopped (Tardy-Guidollet, 2014).

Of rare placental sources, placental aromatase deficiency from a fetal *CYP19* gene mutation causes accumulation of placental androgen and underproduction of placental estrogens (Chap. 5, p. 102) (Jones, 2007). Consequently, both the mother and the 46,XX fetus are virilized.

Gender Assignment

Delivery of a newborn with a DSD is a potential medical emergency and can also create possible long-lasting psychosexual and social ramifications for the individual and family. Ideally, once the affected neonate is stable, parents are encouraged to hold the child. The newborn is referred to as "your baby," and suggested terms include "phallus," "gonads," "folds," and "urogenital sinus" to reference underdeveloped structures. An obstetrician explains that the genitalia are incompletely formed and emphasizes the situation's seriousness and need for rapid consultation and laboratory testing.

Because similar or identical phenotypes may have several etiologies, identification of a specific DSD may require several diagnostic tools (McCann-Crosby, 2015). Relevant historical questions seek prior obstetrical outcomes, medication inventory, consanguinity, germane antenatal testing and sonography results, and family history of genetic or structural anomalies. Signs of maternal hyperandrogenism are sought. Neonatal physical examination evaluates: (1) ability to palpate gonads in the labioscrotal or inguinal regions, (2) ability to palpate uterus during rectal examination, (3) phallus size, (4) other syndromic features, and (5) genitalia pigmentation, which derives from increased melanocyte-stimulating hormone levels that can accompany ACTH secretion. The newborn metabolic condition is assessed, and hyperkalemia, hyponatremia, and hypoglycemia may indicate CAH. Other neonatal tests include genetic studies, hormone measurements, imaging, and in some cases endoscopic, laparoscopic, and gonadal biopsy. Sonography or magnetic resonance (MR) imaging can help identify müllerian/wolffian structures, gonad location, and associated malformations such as renal anomalies.

BLADDER AND PERINEAL ABNORMALITIES

During embryo formation, a bilaminar cloacal membrane lies at the caudal end of the germinal disc and forms the infraumbilical abdominal wall. Normally, an ingrowth of mesoderm between the ectodermal and endodermal layers leads to formation of the lower abdominal musculature and pelvic bones. Without this reinforcement, the cloacal membrane may prematurely rupture. Depending on the infraumbilical defect's extent, cloacal exstrophy, bladder exstrophy, or epispadias may result, and all are rare.

Cloacal exstrophy, also known as the omphalocele, bladder exstrophy, imperforate anus, spina bifida (OEIS) complex, affects approximately 1 in 300,000 live births (Keppler-Noreuil, 2007; Woo, 2010). With *bladder exstrophy*, the bladder lies outside the abdomen, is open, drains directly into amnionic fluid, and thus does not fill. Sonography in the first trimester may show a thin-walled, lower-abdominal cystic structure and a thick NT (Mallmann, 2014; Tonni, 2011). During second-trimester scans, findings are a midline, infraumbilical, anterior-abdominal-wall defect, failure to see the bladder, and associated OEIS defects (Ben-Neriah, 2007). Prenatal karyotyping is recommended. Delivery route is usually dictated by the associated spina bifida defect. Postnatal repair is complex, and individuals may struggle with urinary and fecal incontinence and the challenges of neonatal gender assignment (Woo, 2010).

With *bladder exstrophy*, associated findings often include abnormal external genitalia and a widened symphysis pubis. At the same time, however, the uterus, fallopian tubes, and ovaries are typically normal except for occasional müllerian duct fusion defects. Although often not identified in affected fetuses, sonographic indicators are inability to see the bladder, solid mass between the umbilical arteries, low umbilical insertion into the abdomen, divergent pubic rami, normal amnionic fluid volume, and in males, a small penis with anteriorly displaced scrotum (Mallmann, 2019). The differential diagnosis includes bladder exstrophy or agenesis, bilateral ectopic ureters, patent urachus, cloacal exstrophy, and simple nonvisualization of the bladder. MR imaging may be a helpful adjunct (Goldman, 2013). Fetal karyotyping is considered if genitalia are ambiguous. For an affected fetus, the prenatal course is typically routine, and cesarean delivery is reserved for obstetrical indications.

For a gravida with bladder exstrophy herself, pregnancy is associated with greater risk for antepartum pyelonephritis, urinary retention, ureteral obstruction, pelvic organ prolapse, miscarriage, preterm birth, and breech presentation. The American Urological Association has published management guidelines for pregnancy (Eswara, 2016). Due to the extensive adhesions from prior repair and altered anatomy typically encountered, some recommend planned early cesarean delivery at a tertiary center (Deans, 2012; Greenwell, 2003). Dy and coworkers (2015) described using paramedian abdominal wall and vertical uterine incisions.

Epispadias without bladder exstrophy is rare and develops in association with other anomalies such as a widened, patulous urethra; absent or bifid clitoris; nonfused labial folds; and flattened mons pubis. Vertebral abnormalities and pubic symphysis diathesis are also common.

Clitoral anomalies are rare. One is clitoral duplication or bifid clitoris, which usually develops in association with bladder exstrophy or epispadias. With *female phallic urethra*, the urethra opens at the clitoral tip. Last, *clitoromegaly* noted at birth suggests fetal exposure to excessive androgens (p. 38). Without a DSD, idiopathic congenital clitoromegaly in females born extremely premature is rare but well-recognized, and observation is recommended (Williams, 2013).

As noted, the hymen marks the embryological boundary between structures derived from the müllerian and urogenital sinus. *Hymeneal anomalies* include imperforate, microperforate,

cribriform (sievelike), navicular (boat-shaped), and septate hymens. They result from failure of the inferior end of the vaginal plate—the hymeneal membrane—to canalize. Rarely, with an imperforate hymen, secretions may markedly accumulate in the fetal uterus and vagina, that is, hydrometrocolpos (HMC). Most cases of HMC are asymptomatic and resolve postnatally as mucus is reabsorbed and estrogen levels decline. Rarely, perinatal urinary tract obstruction results from mass effect and is relieved with cruciate incision of the hymen (Grimstad, 2019).

Fetal HMC sonographically appears as a cystic mass behind the bladder. The differential diagnosis includes reproductive tract outlet obstruction of the hymen, vagina, or cervix; ureterocele; megacystis; ovarian, urachal, or mesenteric cyst; anterior meningocele; bowel or bladder duplications; and urogenital sinus or cloacal dysgenesis. Rare associated syndromes are McKusick-Kaufman, Ellis-van Creveld, or Bardet-Biedl syndromes (Garcia Rodriguez, 2018).

MÜLLERIAN ABNORMALITIES

Four principal abnormalities arise from defective müllerian duct embryological steps: (1) agenesis of both ducts, either focally or along the entire duct length; (2) unilateral maturation of one müllerian duct with incomplete or absent development of the opposite side; (3) absent or faulty midline fusion of the ducts; or (4) defective canalization. Various classifications have been proposed, and Table 3-3 shows the one from the American Fertility Society (1988). This classification system is the most widely used, although several others have been created (Grimbizis, 2013, 2016; Ludwin, 2018b).

TABLE 3-3. Classification of Müllerian Anomalies

- **I. Segmental müllerian hypoplasia or agenesis**
  - a. Vaginal
  - b. Cervical
  - c. Uterine fundal
  - d. Tubal
  - e. Combined anomalies
- **II. Unicornuate uterus**
  - a. Communicating rudimentary horn
  - b. Noncommunicating horn
  - c. No endometrial cavity
  - d. No rudimentary horn
- **III. Uterine didelphys**
- **IV. Bicornuate uterus**
  - a. Complete—division to internal os
  - b. Partial
- **V. Septate uterus**
  - a. Complete—septum to internal os
  - b. Partial
- **VI. Arcuate**
- **VII. Diethylstilbestrol related**

Data from American Fertility Society: The American Fertility Society classifications of adnexal adhesions, distal tubal occlusion, tubal occlusion secondary to tubal ligation, tubal pregnancies, Müllerian anomalies and intrauterine adhesions, Fertil Steril 1988 Jun;49(6):944–955.

A müllerian anomaly is suspected if a vaginal septum, blind-ending vagina, or duplicated cervix is found. Amenorrhea may be an initial complaint for those with agenesis of a müllerian component. In those with outlet obstruction but functioning endometrium, pelvic pain may arise from occult blood that accumulates and distends the vagina, uterus, or fallopian tubes (Kapczuk, 2018; Patel, 2016). Endometriosis and its associated dysmenorrhea, dyspareunia, and chronic pain are also frequent with outlet obstruction (Matalliotakis, 2017).

Comorbid Renal Anomalies

Renal anomalies most frequently accompany unicornuate uterus, uterine didelphys, and anomalies with an ipsilateral obstructive vaginal septum. Less often, partial bicornuate, and partial septate uteri are associated (Heinonen, 2018). When müllerian anomalies are identified, the urinary system can be evaluated with sonography, MR imaging, or intravenous pyelography (Hall-Craggs, 2013). The last two are advantageous because ureteral anatomy can be affected too. An absent unilateral kidney is the most common finding. On the other hand, if renal agenesis is found first, reproductive-tract imaging in early puberty may help identify müllerian anomalies early (Friedman, 2018).

Müllerian Agenesis (Class I)

Class I segmental defects are caused by müllerian hypoplasia or agenesis as shown in Figure 3-5 (American Fertility Society, 1988). These developmental defects can affect the vagina, cervix, uterus, or fallopian tubes and may be isolated or may coexist with other müllerian anomalies.

Vaginal Abnormalities

Of these, vaginal agenesis is the most profound and may be isolated or associated with other müllerian anomalies. One example is the Mayer-Rokitansky-Küster-Hauser (MRKH) syndrome, in which upper vaginal agenesis is typically associated with uterine hypoplasia or agenesis. Less often, this syndrome also displays additional abnormalities and is known by the acronym MURCS (müllerian duct aplasia, renal aplasia, and cervicothoracic somite dysplasia) (Rall, 2015).

The obstetrical significance of vaginal anomalies depends greatly on the degree of obstruction. Complete vaginal agenesis, unless corrected surgically, precludes pregnancy by vaginal intercourse. With MRKH syndrome, a functional vagina can be created, but uterine agenesis proscribes childbearing. In these women, however, ova can be retrieved for in vitro fertilization (IVF) and carriage by a surrogate mother (Reichman, 2010). Uterine transplantation is experimental but holds promise for these women (Johannesson, 2021; Jones, 2019).

Of other vaginal anomalies, congenital septa may form longitudinally or transversely, and each can arise from a fusion or resorption defect. A *longitudinal septum* divides the vagina into right and left portions. It may be complete and extend the

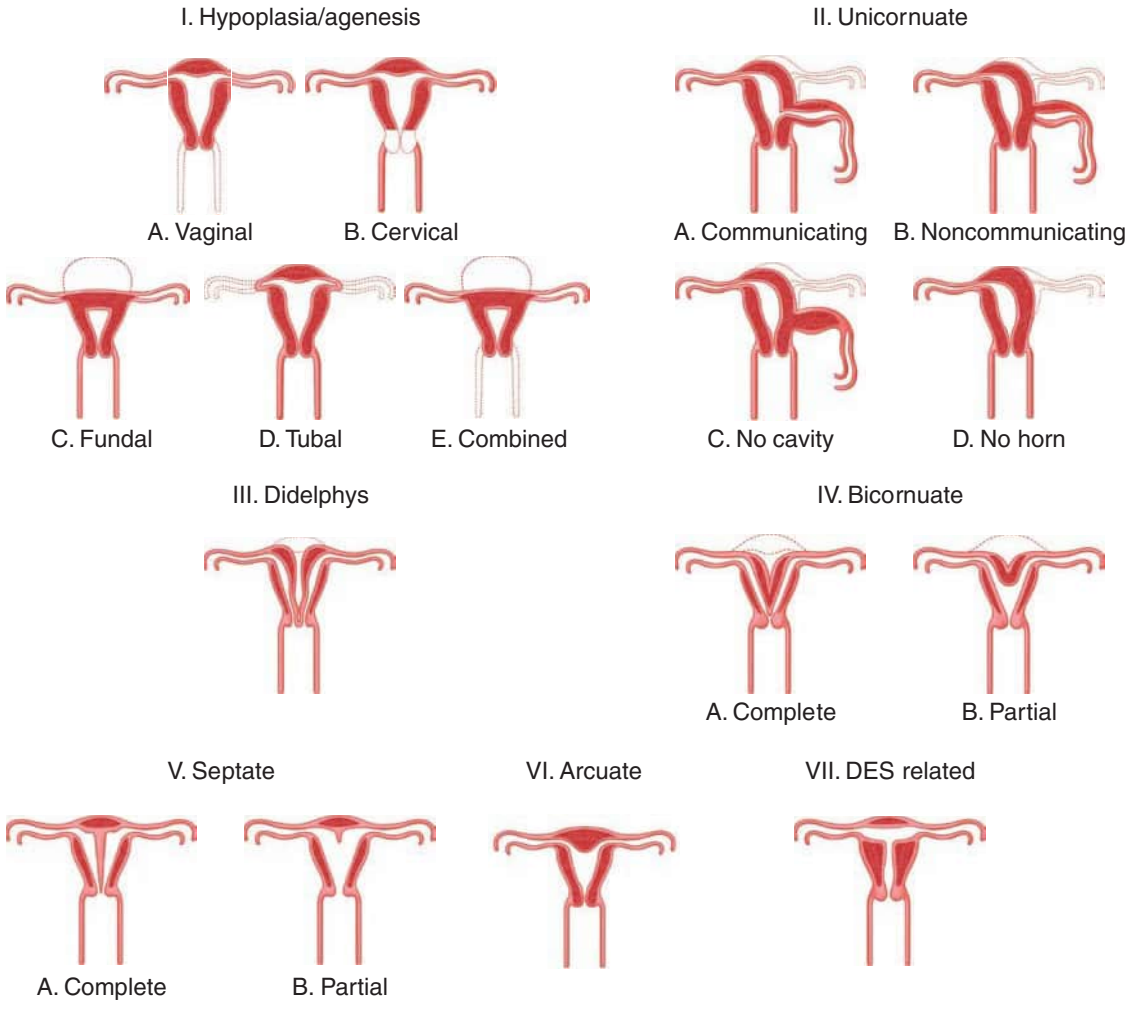


FIGURE 3-5 Classification of müllerian anomalies. DES = diethylstilbestrol.

entire vaginal length. A partial septum usually forms high in the vagina but may develop at lower levels. These septa are often associated with other müllerian anomalies (Haddad, 1997).

During examination, the provider can usually guide a speculum up along one side of the septum. Similarly, in labor, a complete longitudinal vaginal septum usually does not cause dystocia because the fetus can descend through one vaginal side, which dilates sufficiently. An incomplete distal longitudinal septum, however, may interfere with descent, and antepartum resection is preferred (Hoffman, 2020). Rarely, a woman with an incomplete distal longitudinal septum instead presents in labor. During second-stage labor, this septum usually becomes attenuated by pressure from the fetal head. After ensuring adequate analgesia, the attachment of the septum to the posterior vaginal wall is isolated between two clamps, transected, and ligated. Following placenta delivery, the superior attachment is similarly isolated between clamps and transected, while carefully avoiding urethral injury.

A *transverse septum* poses an obstruction of variable thickness. It may develop at any depth within the vagina, but most lie in the lower third (Williams, 2014). Septa may or may not be perforate, and thus obstruction or infertility is possible.

In labor, perforate strictures may be mistaken for the upper limit of the vaginal vault, and the septal opening is misidentified as an undilated cervix (Kumar, 2014). If encountered during labor, and after the cervix has dilated completely, the head impinges on the septum and causes it to bulge downward. If the septum does not spontaneously yield, slightly stretching its opening usually leads to further dilation. Occasionally cruciate incisions that avoid the urethra and rectum are required to permit delivery (Blanton, 2003; Levin, 1963). For a thick transverse septum, cesarean delivery may be necessary.

■ Cervical Abnormalities

Developmental abnormalities of the cervix include partial or complete agenesis, duplication, or a longitudinal dividing septum. Complete agenesis is incompatible with pregnancy. IVF with gestational surrogacy or with transmyometrial embryo transfer are options (Al-Jaroudi, 2011; Xu, 2009). Instead, surgical correction by uterovaginal anastomosis successfully relieves outlet obstruction, but subsequent pregnancy and live birth rates are low (Mikos, 2020). Significant complications including deaths have accompanied such corrective surgery. Some experts recommend hysterectomy for complete cervical agenesis and reserve reconstruction attempts for carefully selected patients with cervical dysgenesis (Roberts, 2011; Rock, 2010).

Uterine Abnormalities

From a large variety, a few of the more common congenital uterine malformations are shown in Table 3-3. Assessing an accurate population prevalence is difficult because the best diagnostic techniques are invasive. The prevalence found with imaging ranges from 0.4 to 10 percent, and rates in women with recurrent miscarriage are significantly higher (Byrne, 2000; Dreisler, 2014; Saravelos, 2008). In a general population, the most frequent finding is arcuate uterus, followed in descending order by septate, bicornuate, didelphic, and unicornuate classes (Chan, 2011b).

As a group, these anomalies pose greater risk for miscarriage, malpresentation, preterm birth, and poor fetal growth (Chan, 2011a; Hua, 2011; Reichman, 2009). Vaginal delivery is the preferred delivery route when feasible. The cervix of the pregnancy-containing uterus or horn will typically dilate sufficiently. Similarly, any proximal longitudinal septum will stretch to permit fetal descent.

Müllerian uterine anomalies may be discovered first during pelvic examination, cesarean delivery, tubal sterilization, or infertility evaluation. Depending on clinical presentation, sonography, hysterosalpingography (HSG), MR imaging, laparoscopy, and hysteroscopy may also be diagnostic. Each has limitations and thus may be combined to completely define anatomy.

If a müllerian anomaly is suspected, two-dimensional transvaginal sonography (2-D TVS) is initially performed in most clinical settings. For this indication, the pooled accuracy for 2-D TVS is 90 to 92 percent (Pellerito, 1992). Three-dimensional (3-D) TVS is more accurate than 2-D TVS because it provides uterine images from virtually any angle. The diagnostic accuracy of 3-D TVS approaches 97 percent (Vaz, 2017). Thus, coronal images can be constructed, and these are essential in evaluating both internal and external uterine contours. Both 2-D and 3-D TVS are suitable for use in pregnancy (Fig. 3-6).

Several studies reported good concordance between 3-D TVS and MR imaging of müllerian uterine anomalies (Deutch, 2008; Graupera, 2015). MR imaging is often preferred for complex anatomy, especially cases for which corrective surgery is planned. MR imaging provides clear delineation of both the internal and external uterine anatomy and has a reported accuracy of up to 100 percent for müllerian anomaly evaluation (Bermejo, 2010; Pellerito, 1992). Moreover, secondary diagnoses such as renal or skeletal anomalies can be concurrently evaluated. MR imaging without contrast is safe in pregnancy.

Saline infusion sonography (SIS) is a technique that instills fluid into the uterine cavity to distend and define cavity shape. It improves delineation of internal uterine morphology. However, SIS is contraindicated in pregnancy. It requires a patent endometrial cavity.

In women undergoing fertility evaluation, HSG is usually selected for uterine cavity and tubal patency assessment. It is contraindicated during pregnancy. HSG poorly defines the external uterine contour and can delineate only patent cavities. Described next, remember that some unicornuate rudimentary horns lack a cavity. Also, outlet obstructions will preclude dye filling. For infertility, hysteroscopy and/or laparoscopy plus chromotubation may help confirm or treat uterine cavity or tubal pathologies. These also screen for endometriosis, which often coexists with both infertility and müllerian anomalies (American Society for Reproductive Medicine, 2015). In pregnancy, laparoscopy is rarely used to diagnose müllerian defects, and hysteroscopy is contraindicated.

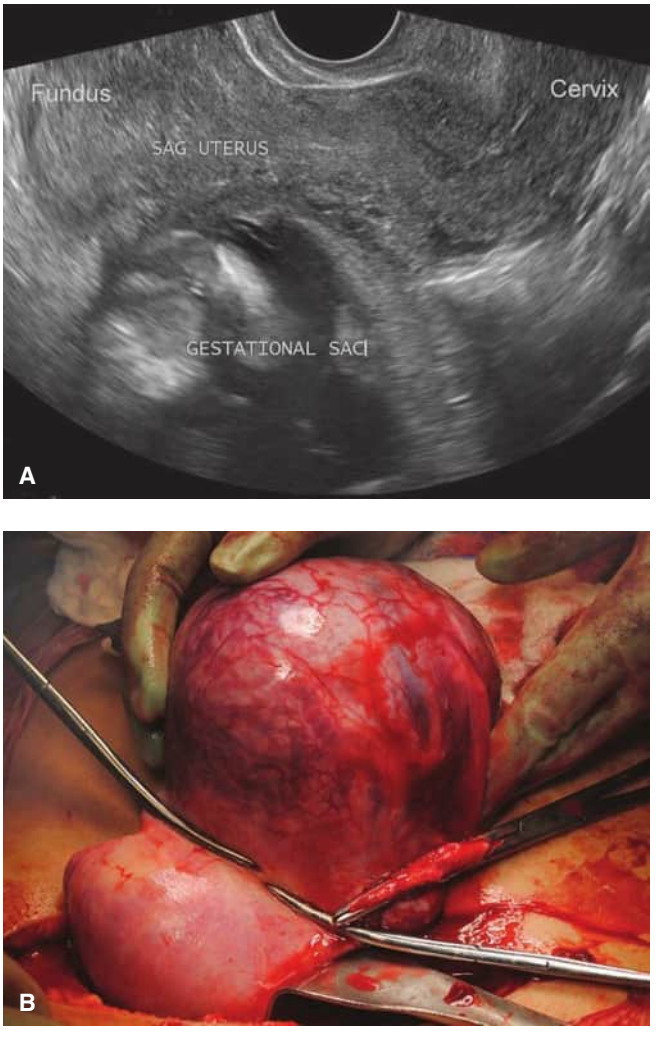


FIGURE 3-6 A. Sagittal transvaginal sonogram shows a gestational sac surrounded by myometrium. The gestational sac is not contiguous with the endocervical canal or with the main horn's endometrium. **B.** Here, two Pean clamps are placed across the vascular tissue bridge that separates the rudimentary horn (*above*) from the main uterine horn (*below*). (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Elaine L. Duryea.)

Unicornuate Uterus (Class II)

General population estimates cite an incidence of 1 case in 4000 women (Reichman, 2009). In class II-D forms, only one uterine horn is present (see Fig. 3-5). Instead, an underdeveloped rudimentary horn may be present. The rudiment may or may not communicate with the dominant horn and may or may not contain an endometrium-lined cavity. With noncommunicating types, the rudiment may lie near the uterus or may lie anywhere along the embryological migration path of the paramesonephros. This starts at the back and sweeps forward along the broad ligament.

This anomaly may be detected during fertility evaluation by HSG, but false-negative examinations stem from noncavitary or noncommunicating horns failing to fill with dye. If this anomaly is suspected, 3-D TVS raises diagnostic accuracy, but again MR imaging may be preferred to define endometrium (Fukunaga, 2017). Importantly, 40 percent of affected women will have renal anomalies (Fedele, 1996).

Main Horn. Pregnancies developing in the main horn carry significant obstetrical risks. These include first- and second-trimester miscarriage, malpresentation, fetal-growth restriction, fetal demise, prematurely ruptured membranes, and preterm delivery (Chan, 2011a; Hua, 2011; Reichman, 2009). These risks theoretically stem from abnormal uterine blood flow, cervical insufficiency, and diminished cavity size and muscle mass (Donderwinkel, 1992). The main unicornuate horn is indeed smaller than normal uterine lengths of 7- to 8-cm (Hawkins, 2013). One small study of 140 nulligravidas found a median uterine length of 5 cm (Li, 2019). Those with lengths from the internal os to fundus <4.5 cm prior to pregnancy had higher preterm labor rates during subsequent pregnancy compared with longer hemiuteri. Thus, a heightened awareness of potential complications is prudent. However, specific surveillance for poor fetal growth or preterm labor is mainly guided by prior pregnancy outcomes.

Rudimentary Horn. Ectopic pregnancy, correctly termed a *cornual pregnancy*, can develop within a remnant (Arleo, 2014). This risk includes noncommunicating cavitary rudiments, for which transperitoneal sperm migration permits ovum fertilization and pregnancy (Nahum, 2004). Although less common than other unicornuate pregnancy complications, rupture can create life-threatening hemorrhage. Convergence of uterine and ovarian branches near the pregnancy and the commonly associated placenta accreta spectrum (PAS) explain this risk.

In a report of 70 such pregnancies, Rolen and associates (1966) found that most rudimentary uterine horn pregnancies ruptured prior to 20 weeks' gestation. Nahum (2002) reviewed the literature from 1900 to 1999 and identified 588 rudimentary horn pregnancies. Half had uterine rupture, and 80 percent did so before the third trimester. Of the total 588, the neonatal survival rate was only 6 percent.

First-trimester sonography allows an earlier diagnosis and rudiment excision before rupture. The main horn shows an empty endometrium continuous with the cervical canal, and the interstitial portion of a fallopian tube is seen only on one side. The rudimentary horn pregnancy displays: (1) no continuity between the cervical canal and gestational sac, (2) myometrium surrounding the gestation, (3) PAS-associated hypervascularity surrounding the gestational sac, and (4) a vascular pedicle connecting the main horn and the sac's surrounding myometrium (Mavrelos, 2007; Tsafrir, 2005). If necessary, 3-D TVS is an appropriate adjunct (Tolani, 2018). As seen in Figure 3-6, the connecting pedicle can be broad and vascular.

Treatment is surgical and removes the rudimentary horn and in situ pregnancy. The ipsilateral fallopian tube is also excised to avert future ectopic pregnancies (Dove, 2017; Worley, 2008). Steps include sequential division of the uteroovarian ligament, mesosalpinx, round ligament, and pedicle to the main horn. Ideally, the ovary is spared, but large pregnancies with a short uteroovarian ligament may prompt adnexectomy. Surgical route is dictated by pregnancy size and laparoscopic capabilities.

In nonpregnant women, most unicornuate uteri are asymptomatic. Those with a noncommunicating cavitary rudiment may present with outlet obstruction symptoms at puberty. In this instance, comorbid endometriosis can club fimbria and obstruct tubal egress of blood. In all cases, prophylactic excision of a cavitary rudiment is recommended to avoid pregnancy in an inadequately sized horn (Fedele, 2005; Rackow, 2007; Schneiderman, 2018). Data regarding subsequent pregnancy after excision are scarce. In one series of eight women, all had a preterm cesarean delivery (Pados, 2014).

Uterine Didelphys (Class III)

This anomaly arises from incomplete fusion that results in two entirely separate hemiuteri, two cervices, and usually two vaginas or a longitudinal vaginal septum (see Fig. 3-5). Uterine didelphys may be isolated or part of a rare triad with an obstructed hemivagina and ipsilateral renal agenesis (OHVIRA), also known as Herlyn-Werner-Wunderlich syndrome (Tong, 2014). Rarely diagnosed antenatally, it is considered in a fetus with renal agenesis and a cystic pelvic mass, which reflects hydrometrocolpos (p. 40) (Tuna, 2019). Fetal MR imaging aids diagnosis.

Uterine didelphys is suspected on pelvic examination by identification of a longitudinal vaginal septum and two cervices. During HSG for fertility evaluation, contrast shows two separate endocervical canals. These open into separate noncommunicating fusiform endometrial cavities that each ends with a solitary fallopian tube. In women without fertility issues, 2- or 3-D TVS is a logical initial imaging tool, and separate divergent uterine horns with a large intervening fundal cleft are seen. Endometrial cavities and two cervices are uniformly separate. MR imaging can clarify cases lacking classic findings.

Adverse obstetrical outcomes associated with uterine didelphys are similar to but less frequent than those seen with unicornuate uterus. Increased risks include miscarriage, preterm birth, and malpresentation (Chan, 2011a; Hua, 2011).

Metroplasty for either uterine didelphys or bicornuate uterus involves resection of intervening myometrium and fundal recombination (Alborzi, 2015). These rarely performed surgeries are chosen for highly selected patients with otherwise unexplained recurrent miscarriage at later gestational ages. After metroplasty, scheduled delivery prior to labor is prudent to avoid uterine rupture (Ayhan, 1992).

Bicornuate Uterus (Class IV)

This fusion anomaly results in two hemiuteri. As shown in Figure 3-5, the central myometrium runs either partially or completely to the cervix. A complete bicornuate uterus may extend to the internal cervical os and have a single cervix (bicornuate unicollis) or reach the external os (bicornuate bicollis). As with uterine didelphys, a coexistent longitudinal vaginal septum is common.

Radiological discrimination of a bicornuate uterus from a septate uterus can be challenging, and defining criteria vary. This distinction, however, is important because septate uterus can be treated with hysteroscopic septal resection. HSG or 2-D TVS may initially suggest an anomaly, but further distinction is provided by 3-D TVS or MR imaging. With these, the intercornual angle, fundal contour, and a straight line drawn between the imaged tubal ostia serve as defining thresholds (Fig. 3-7).

Bicornuate uterus carries increased risks for miscarriage, preterm birth, and malpresentation (Chan, 2011a; Mastrolia, 2017). As discussed in the prior section, rare surgical correction by metroplasty is reserved for highly selected cases.

Septate Uterus (Class V)

With this anomaly, a resorption defect leads to a persistent complete or partial longitudinal uterine septum (see Fig. 3-5).

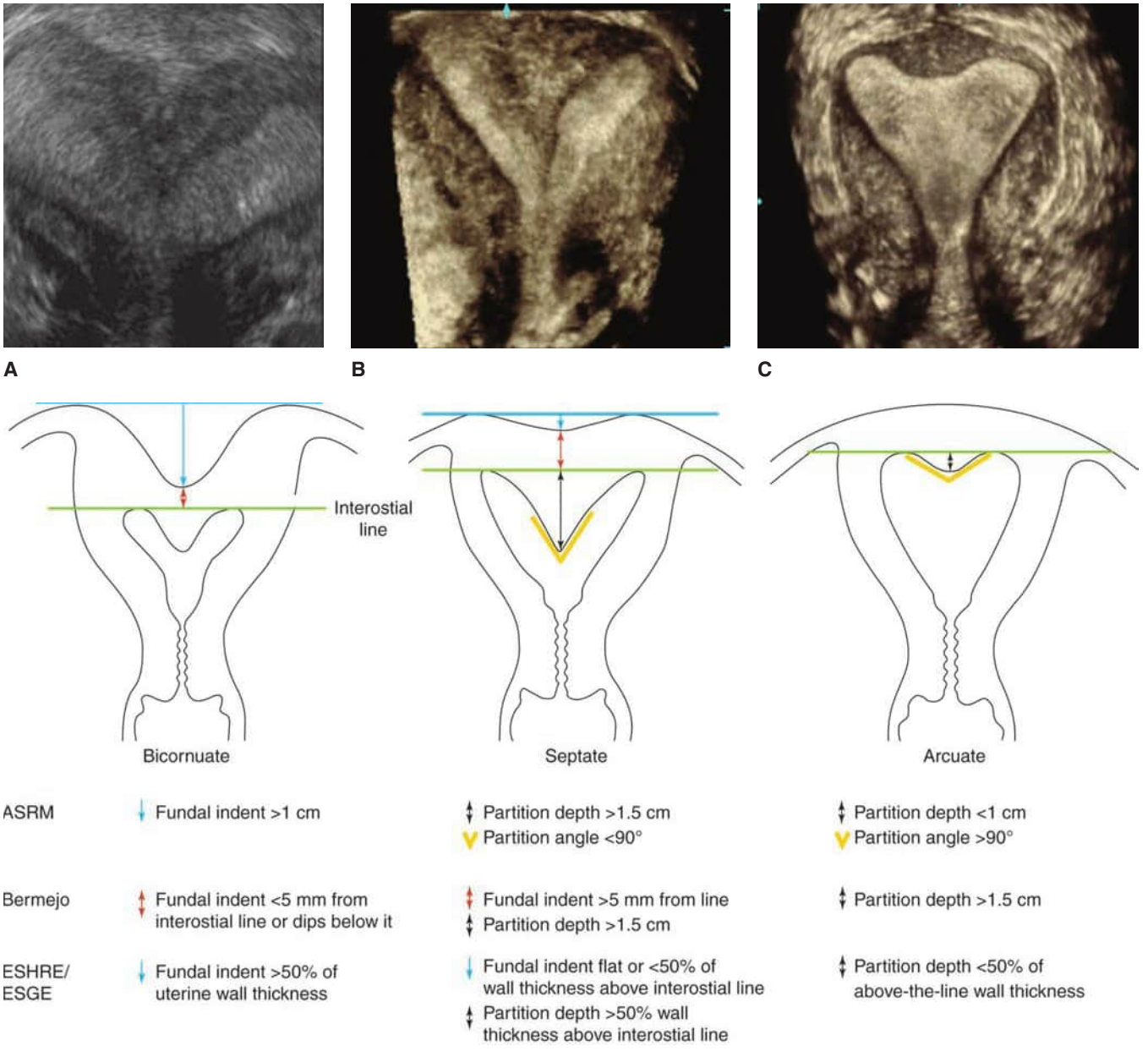


FIGURE 3-7 Three-dimensional transvaginal sonography (3-D TVS) images of müllerian uterine anomalies in the coronal plane. Below each are corresponding diagrammatic uteri and differing organizational definitions. **A.** Bicornuate uterus. This 3-D TVS rendered image demonstrates a concave external fundal contour that dips to a point near or below the interostial line (*green line*). (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Elysia Moschos.) **B.** Septate uterus. This sonogram depicts the narrow angle between the two small endometrial cavities, which is characteristic of a septate) uterus. The external contour here is flat but may show minor fundal indentation. **C.** Arcuate uterus. This image illustrates the normal external uterine contour and obtuse angle of the endometrial cleft that is characteristic of an arcuate uterus. Organizations vary among their use of the terms intercornual, interostial, or interstitial line. ASRM = American Society for Reproductive Medicine; ESHRE/ESGE = European Society of Human Reproduction and Embryology/European Society for Gynaecological Endoscopy. (Data from American Society for Reproductive Medicine, 2016, Bermejo, 2010, Grimbizis, 2013, 2016.)

In the rare Robert uterus, an asymmetric longitudinal septum creates a sequestered noncommunicating hemicavity that acts similar to a rudimentary horn (Ludwin, 2018a).

Many septate uteri are identified during evaluation of infertility or recurrent pregnancy loss. Although an abnormality may be identified with HSG or 2-D TVS, typically 3-D TVS or MR imaging is required to differentiate septate and bicornuate uteri. Experts still debate diagnostic criteria (see Fig. 3-7).

Septate anomalies can be associated with increased risks for adverse pregnancy outcomes that include miscarriage, preterm delivery, and malpresentation (Chan, 2011a; Ghi, 2012). In those with recurrent pregnancy loss, hysteroscopic septal resection may improve birth rates (American Society for Reproductive Medicine, 2016; Corroenne, 2018; Valle, 2013). During a subsequent labor, those with prior septal resection, especially if complicated by uterine perforation, carry a small risk for uterine rupture (Homer, 2000; Sentilhes, 2005).

Arcuate Uterus (Class VI)

This malformation is a mild deviation from the normally developed uterus (see Fig. 3-7). Most consider this anomaly benign, but some have found excessive second-trimester losses, preterm labor, and malpresentation (Chan, 2011a; Mucowski, 2010; Prior, 2018; Woelfer, 2001).

Cesarean Delivery

As noted in the above sections, cesarean delivery rates are increased with müllerian uterine anomalies. Data regarding subsequent trial of labor after cesarean (TOLAC) are few and show evidence both for and against its success and safety (Erez, 2007; Ravasia, 1999). Failed TOLAC attempts or the risk of rupture may stem from smaller than normal cavity size, abnormal propagation of myometrial action potentials, and a weaker cesarean scar due to congenitally altered vascular anatomy (Altwerger, 2015). Other factors that support or disfavor TOLAC are similar to those for women with normal-shaped uteri and are outlined in Chapter 31.

In those without prior cesarean delivery, external cephalic version (ECV) is reasonable to avoid primary cesarean delivery for malpresentation. A smaller uterine cavity or an obstructing midline partition may limit fetal turning. These are added to the traditional list of factors that should be reviewed when assessing a potential ECV candidate (Chap. 28, p. 528).

At times, a müllerian anomaly may not be diagnosed until cesarean delivery, and additional information should be methodically sought. Prior to hysterotomy closure, the cavity is manually explored to define the length of any cavity partition. If a rudimentary horn is found, the main cavity is also digitally explored for a communication. However, this may be missed due to its narrow caliber.

After closure, the fundus is examined. The external contour is delineated to differentiate bicornuate from didelphys types. If only one adnexum is found, a unicornuate uterus is suspected. In this case, if an obvious rudiment is not attached to the main horn, the surgeon should trace the embryological migratory path of the paramesonephric duct starting at the patient's back and sweeping forward. If found, the rudiment may be removed or at minimum its accompanying fallopian tube should be ligated to prevent later ectopic pregnancy.

With any müllerian anomaly, both renal fossae are examined intraoperatively to confirm kidneys. Postoperative radiologic assessment of the urinary collecting anatomy is reasonable.

Treatment with Cerclage

Uterine anomalies are one risk for cervical insufficiency (Althuisius, 2001; Berghella, 1999; Mastrolia, 2018). Some women with uterine anomalies and repetitive pregnancy loss after the first trimester may benefit from cervical cerclage (Golan, 1992; Yassaee, 2011). Others with partial cervical atresia or hypoplasia also may benefit (Ludmir, 1991; Song, 2015). For women with a uterine anomaly, candidacy for cervical length sonographic screening or for cerclage placement is determined by the same criteria used for women without a uterine defect (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021; Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine, 2016). These topics are discussed in Chapters 45 (p. 794) and 11 (p. 205), respectively.

■ Diethylstilbestrol-related Abnormalities (Class VII)

In the 1960s, a synthetic nonsteroidal estrogen—diethylstilbestrol (DES)—was used to treat threatened abortion, preterm labor, preeclampsia, and diabetes. It was remarkably ineffective. Moreover, women exposed as fetuses carry increased risks for vaginal clear cell adenocarcinoma, cervical intraepithelial neoplasia, and vaginal adenosis (Hatch, 2001; Herbst, 1971; Robboy, 1984). Women exposed in utero can also show a cervix or vagina with a transverse septum, circumferential ridge, or cervical collar. Uteri are potentially smaller or have a T-shaped cavity (see Fig. 3-5) (Kaufman, 1984). Women exposed as fetuses are now postreproductive, but they did suffer risks for infertility and adverse pregnancy outcome (Kaufman, 2000; Palmer, 2001).

■ Fallopian Tube Abnormalities

The fallopian tubes develop from the unpaired distal ends of the müllerian ducts. Congenital anomalies include accessory ostia, complete or segmental tubal agenesis, and several embryonic cystic remnants. The most common is a small, benign cyst attached by a pedicle to the distal end of the fallopian tube—the hydatid of Morgagni. In other cases, benign paratubal cysts may be of mesonephric or mesothelial origin. Last, in utero exposure to DES is associated with various tubal abnormalities (DeCherney, 1981).

UTERINE FLEXION

Moderate flexion of the pregnant uterus is typically inconsequential, but exaggerated flexion may pose unique complications. *Anteflexion* describes forward angling of the uterine fundus in the sagittal plane relative to the cervix. In extreme cases, the fundus later in pregnancy falls forward to lie below the lower margin of the symphysis. Abdominal wall laxity is contributory. This uterine position can prevent proper transmission of labor contractions but is usually corrected by repositioning and application of an abdominal binder.

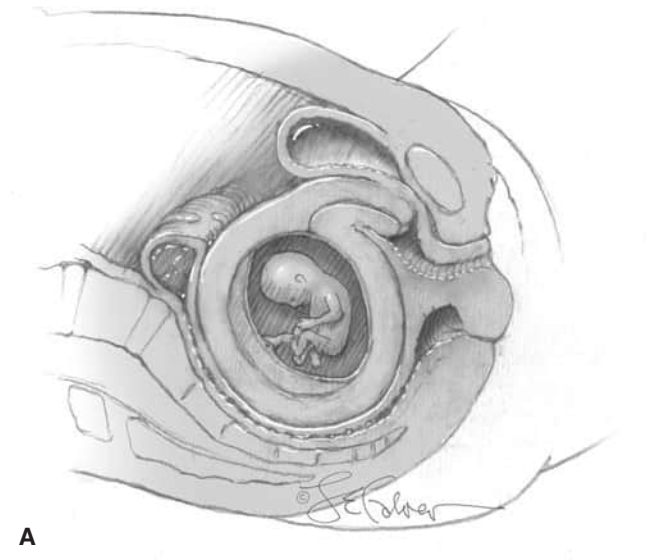


FIGURE 3-8 A. With uterine incarceration, the uterus is wedged between the sacral promontory and symphysis pubis. Resulting pressure against the urethra and rectum can cause urinary retention and constipation, respectively (Reproduced with permission from Corton MM: Anatomy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.) **B.** Sagittal transvaginal sonogram shows a first-trimester fetus and incarcerated uterine fundus. The marked retroflexion brings the fundus to lie beneath the cervix. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Angela Seasley.)

Retroflexion describes uterine fundal angling posteriorly in the sagittal plane. A growing retroflexed uterus fundus will occasionally become trapped in the hollow of the sacrum (Fig. 3-8). Symptoms include pelvic pressure or pain plus voiding dysfunction or retention. During bimanual pelvic examination, the cervix will be anterior and behind the symphysis pubis, whereas the uterus is wedged in the deep pelvis. Sonography or MR imaging can aid diagnosis (Gardner, 2013; Grossenburg, 2011).

With continued uterine growth, the incarcerated uterus can spontaneously resolve over 1 to 2 weeks. A knee-chest position assumed by the patient several times daily may assist resolution (Hooker, 2009). An indwelling urinary catheter or intermittent self-catheterization resolves retention. Persistent cases require manual repositioning. For this, after bladder catheterization, the uterus can usually be pushed out of the pelvis when the woman is placed in a knee-chest position. Often, this is best accomplished by digital pressure applied through the rectum or vagina. Intravenous sedation or spinal analgesia aids comfort and allows sufficient dislodging forces (Hire, 2019). Afterward, insertion of a soft, space-filling pessary for a few weeks usually prevents recurrence (Gibbons, 1969).

For rare resistant cases, advancing a colonoscope or colonoscopic insufflation can dislodge the fundus (Newell, 2014; Seubert, 1999). Upward round ligament traction during laparoscopy also has been described (Lettieri, 1994).

Rarely, *sacculation* may form as an extensive lower uterine segment dilation due to persistent uterine entrapment. Clinically, the elongated vagina extends above the level of the deeply descended fetal head. The Foley catheter is frequently palpated above the level of the umbilicus! In these extreme cases, sonography and MR imaging help define anatomy (Gottschalk, 2008; Lee, 2008). To avoid uterine rupture, cesarean delivery is necessary when sacculation is marked. Spearing (1978) recommended extending the abdominal incision above the umbilicus and delivering the entire uterus from the abdomen before hysterotomy. Correct anatomical relationships are ideally restored to help prevent inadvertent incisions into and through the vagina and bladder (Fig. 3-9). (Singh, 2007; Uma, 2002).

Uterine torsion is another rare acquired anomaly. During pregnancy, the uterus commonly rotates gently to the maternal right. Rotation exceeding 180 degrees creates torsion, and most cases stem from uterine leiomyomas, müllerian anomalies, fetal malpresentation, pelvic adhesions, or laxity of the abdominal wall or uterine ligaments. In one review of 212 cases, associated symptoms were obstructed labor, intestinal or urinary complaints,

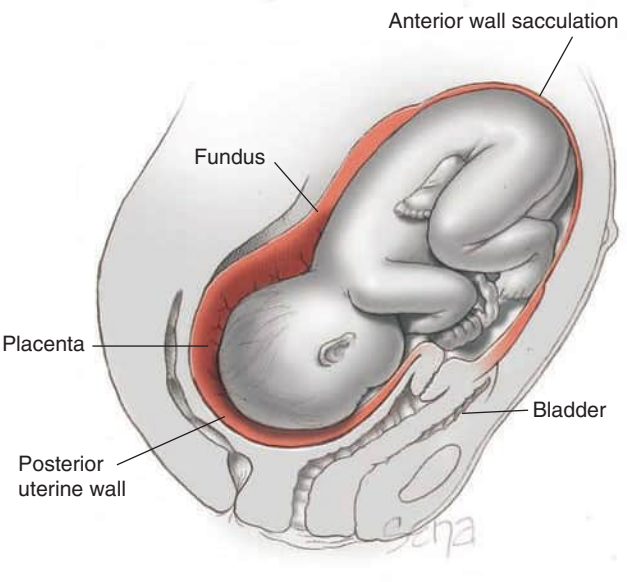


FIGURE 3-9 With anterior sacculation, note the markedly attenuated anterior uterine wall and atypical location of the true uterine fundus.

abdominal pain, uterine hypertonus, vaginal bleeding, or hypotension (Jensen, 1992).

In some women, torsion can be confirmed preoperatively with MR imaging, which shows a twisted vagina that appears X-shaped rather than its normal H-shape (Nicholson, 1995). Flipped placenta location and abnormal umbilical Doppler findings have been described sonographically (Rood, 2014). However, uterine torsion is usually found at the time of cesarean delivery, and the severely rotated uterus should be repositioned anatomically before hysterotomy. In some cases, an inability to reposition or a failure to recognize the torsion may lead to a posterior hysterotomy incision (Albayrak, 2011; Karavani, 2017). Rotation of 90 degrees risks uterine vessel laceration (Berger, 2020).

REFERENCES

Ahmed SF, Khwaja O, Hughes IA: The role of a clinical score in the assessment of ambiguous genitalia. BJU Int 85(1):120, 2000

Albayrak M, Benian A, Ozdemir I, et al: Deliberate posterior low transverse incision at cesarean section of a gravid uterus in 180 degrees of torsion: a case report. J Reprod Med 56(3–4):181, 2011

Alborzi S, Asefjah H, Amini M, et al: Laparoscopic metroplasty in bicornuate and didelphic uteri: feasibility and outcome. Arch Gynecol Obstet 291(5):1167, 2015

Al-Jaroudi D, Saleh A, Al-Obaid S, et al: Pregnancy with cervical dysgenesis. Fertil Steril 96(6):1355, 2011

Allen JW, Cardall S, Kittijarukhajorn M, et al: Incidence of ovarian maldescent in women with mullerian duct anomalies: evaluation by MRI. AJR Am J Roentgenol 198(4):W381, 2012

Althuisius SM, Dekker GA, Hummel P, et al: Final results of the cervical incompetence prevention randomized cerclage trial (CIPRACT): therapeutic cerclage with bed rest versus bed rest alone. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185(5):1106, 2001

Altwerger G, Pritchard AM, Black JD, et al: Uterine didelphys and vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 125(1):157, 2015

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Screening for Fetal Chromosomal abnormalities. Practice Bulletin No 226, October 2020

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prediction and prevention of preterm birth. Practice Bulletin No 234, August 2021

American Fertility Society: The American Fertility Society classifications of adnexal adhesions, distal tubal occlusion, tubal occlusion secondary to tubal ligation, tubal pregnancies, Müllerian anomalies and intrauterine adhesions. Fertil Steril 49:944, 1988

American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Diagnostic evaluation of the infertile female: a committee opinion. Fertil Steril 103(6):e44, 2015

American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Uterine septum: a guideline. Fertil Steril 106(3):530, 2016

American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Increased maternal cardiovascular mortality associated with pregnancy in women with Turner syndrome. Fertil Steril 97(2):282, 2012

Ariza L, Carmona R, Cañete A, et al: Coelomic epithelium-derived cells in visceral morphogenesis. Dev Dyn 245(3):307, 2016

Arleo EK, DeFilippis EM: Cornual, interstitial, and angular pregnancies: clarifying the terms and a review of the literature. Clin Imaging 38(6):763, 2014

Auchus RJ: Management considerations for the adult with congenital adrenal hyperplasia. Mol Cell Endocrinol 408:190, 2015

Ayhan A, Yücel I, Tuncer ZS, et al: Reproductive performance after conventional metroplasty: an evaluation of 102 cases. Fertil Steril 57(6):1194, 1992

Bardsley MZ, Kowal K, Levy C, et al: 47,XYY syndrome: clinical phenotype and timing of ascertainment. J Pediatr 163(4):1085, 2013

Ben-Neriah Z, Withers S, Thomas M, et al: OEIS complex: prenatal ultrasound and autopsy findings. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 29(2):170, 2007

Berger A, Ritter M, Fessler S: Uterine torsion in pregnancy. Arch Gynecol Obstet 302(4):791, 2020

Berghella V, Daly SF, Tolosa JE, et al: Prediction of preterm delivery with transvaginal ultrasonography of the cervix in patients with high-risk pregnancies: does cerclage prevent prematurity? Am J Obstet Gynecol 181(4):809, 1999

Berglund A, Viuff MH, Skakkebæk A, et al: Changes in the cohort composition of turner syndrome and severe non-diagnosis of Klinefelter, 47,XXX and 47,XYY syndrome: a nationwide cohort study. Orphanet J Rare Dis 14(1):16, 2019

Bermejo C, Martinez Ten P, et al: Three-dimensional ultrasound in the diagnosis of müllerian duct anomalies and concordance with magnetic resonance imaging. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 35:593, 2010

Bizzarri C, Pedicelli S, Cappa M, et al: Water balance and 'salt wasting' in the first year of life: The role of aldosterone-signaling defects. Horm Res Paediatr 86(3):143, 2016

Blanton EN, Rouse DJ: Trial of labor in women with transverse vaginal septa. Obstet Gynecol 101:1110, 2003

Bojesen A, Juul S, Gravholt CH: Prenatal and postnatal prevalence of Klinefelter syndrome: a national registry study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 88(2):622, 2003

Bouet PE, Godbout A, El Hachem H, et al: Fertility and pregnancy in turner syndrome. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 38(8):712, 2016

Byrne J, Nussbaum-Blask A, Taylor WS, et al: Prevalence of Müllerian duct anomalies detected at ultrasound. Am J Med Genet 94(1):9, 2000

Cadoret F, Parinaud J, Bettiol C, et al: Pregnancy outcome in Turner syndrome: a French multi-center study after the 2009 guidelines. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 229:20, 2018

Campens L, Baris L, Scott NS, et al: Pregnancy outcome in thoracic aortic disease data from the Registry Of Pregnancy And Cardiac disease. Heart January 19, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Carlson M, Silberbach M.: Dissection of the aorta in Turner syndrome: two cases and review of 85 cases in the literature. J Med Genet 44:745, 2007

Chan CL, McFann K, Taylor L, et al: Congenital adrenal hyperplasia and the second newborn screen. J Pediatr 163(1):109, 2013

Chan YY, Jayaprakasan K, Tan A, et al: Reproductive outcomes in women with congenital uterine anomalies: a systematic review. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 38(4):371, 2011a

Chan YY, Jayaprakasan K, Zamora J, et al: The prevalence of congenital uterine anomalies in unselected and high-risk populations: a systematic review. Hum Reprod Update 17(6):761, 2011b

Cools M: Germ cell cancer risk in DSD patients. Ann Endocrinol (Paris) 75(2):67, 2014

Cools M, Looijenga L: Update on the pathophysiology and risk factors for the development of malignant testicular germ cell tumors in complete androgen insensitivity syndrome. Sex Dev 11(4):175, 2017

Corroenne R, Legendre G, May-Panloup P, et al: Surgical treatment of septate uterus in cases of primary infertility and before assisted reproductive technologies. J Gynecol Obstet Hum Reprod 47(9):413, 2018

Corton MM: Anatomy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017, p 47

Crosby WM, Hill EC: Embryology of the mullerian duct system. Review of present-day theory. Obstet Gynecol 20:507, 1962

Davidson AJ, Lewis P, Przepiorski A, et al: Turning mesoderm into kidney. Semin Cell Dev Biol 91:86, 2019

de Bakker BS, van den Hoff MJ, Vize PD, et al: The pronephros; a fresh perspective. Integr Comp Biol 59(1):29, 2019

Deans R, Banks F, Liao LM, et al: Reproductive outcomes in women with classic bladder exstrophy: an observational cross-sectional study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(6):496.e1, 2012

DeCherney AH, Cholst I, Naftolin F: Structure and function of the fallopian tubes following exposure to diethylstilbestrol (DES) during gestation. Fertil Steril 36(6):741, 1981

Deutch TD, Abuhamad AZ: The role of 3-dimensional ultrasonography and magnetic resonance imaging in the diagnosis of müllerian duct anomalies: a review of the literature. J Ultrasound Med 27(3):413, 2008

Donderwinkel PF, Dörr JP, Willemsen WN: The unicornuate uterus: clinical implications. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 47(2):135, 1992

Dotters-Katz SK, Humphrey WM, Senz KL, et al: The effects of Turner syndrome, 45,X on obstetric and neonatal outcomes: a retrospective cohort evaluation. Am J Perinatol 33(12):1152, 2016a

Dotters-Katz SK, Humphrey WM, Senz KL, et al: The impact of prenatally diagnosed Klinefelter syndrome on obstetric and neonatal outcomes. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 203:173, 2016b

Dove CK, Harvey SM, Spalluto LB: Sonographic findings of early pregnancy in the rudimentary horn of a unicornuate uterus: a two case report. Clin Imaging 47:25, 2017

Dreisler E, Stampe Sørensen S: Müllerian duct anomalies diagnosed by saline contrast sonohysterography: prevalence in a general population. Fertil Steril 102(2):525, 2014

Du H, Taylor HS. Molecular regulation of mullerian development by Hoxgenes. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1034:152, 2004

Efrat Z, Perri T, Ramati E, et al: Fetal gender assignment by first-trimester ultrasound. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 27(6):619, 2006

El-Maouche D, Arlt W, Merke DP: Congenital adrenal hyperplasia. Lancet 390(10108):2194, 2017

Erez O, Dukler D, Novack L, et al: Trial of labor and vaginal birth after cesarean section in patients with uterine Müllerian anomalies: a population-based study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196(6):537, 2007
Eswara JR, Kielb S, Koyle MA, et al: The recommendations of the 2015 American Urological Association Working Group on Genitourinary Congenitalism. Urology 88:1, 2016
Fedele L, Bianchi S, Agnoli B, et al: Urinary tract anomalies associated with unicornuate uterus. J Urol 155:847, 1996
Fedele L, Bianchi S, Zanconato G, et al: Laparoscopic removal of the cavitated noncommunicating rudimentary uterine horn: surgical aspects in 10 cases. Fertil Steril 83(2):432, 2005
Friedman MA, Aguilar L, Heyward Q, et al: Screening for mullerian anomalies in patients with unilateral renal agenesis: leveraging early detection to prevent complications. J Pediatr Urol 14(2):144, 2018
Fujimoto T, Miyayama Y, Fuyuta M: The origin, migration and fine morphology of human primordial germ cells. Anat Rec 188(3):315, 1977
Fukunaga T, Fujii S, Inoue C, et al: The spectrum of imaging appearances of müllerian duct anomalies: focus on MR imaging. Jpn J Radiol 35(12):697, 2017
Garcia Rodriguez R, Pérez González J, Garcia Delgado R, et al: Fetal hydrometrocolpos and congenital imperforate hymen: prenatal and postnatal imaging features. J Clin Ultrasound 46(8):549, 2018
Gardner CS, Jaffe TA, Hertzberg BS, et al: The incarcerated uterus: a review of MRI and ultrasound imaging appearances. AJR Am J Roentgenol 201(1):223, 2013
Ghi T, De Musso F, Maroni E, et al: The pregnancy outcome in women with incidental diagnosis of septate uterus at first trimester scan. Hum Reprod 27(9):267, 2012
Gibbons JM Jr, Paley WB: The incarcerated gravid uterus. Obstet Gynecol 33(6):842, 1969
Golan A, Langer R, Neuman M, et al: Obstetric outcome in women with congenital uterine malformations. J Reprod Med 37:233, 1992
Goldman S, Szejnfeld PO, Rondon A, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of bladder exstrophy by fetal MRI. J Pediatr Urol 9(1):3, 2013
Gottschalk EM, Siedentopf JP, Schoenborn I, et al: Prenatal sonographic and MRI findings in a pregnancy complicated by uterine sacculation: case report and review of the literature. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 32(4):582, 2008
Graupera B, Pascual MA, Hereter L, et al: Accuracy of three-dimensional ultrasound compared with magnetic resonance imaging in diagnosis of müllerian duct anomalies using ESHRE-ESGE consensus on the classification of congenital anomalies of the female genital tract. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 46(5):616, 2015
Gravholt CH, Andersen NH, Conway GS, et al: Clinical practice guidelines for the care of girls and women with Turner syndrome: proceedings from the 2016 Cincinnati International Turner Syndrome Meeting. Eur J Endocrinol 177(3):G1, 2017
Gravholt CH, Viuff MH, Brun S, et al: Turner syndrome: mechanisms and management. Nat Rev Endocrinol 15(10):601, 2019
Greenwell TJ, Venn SN, Creighton SM, et al: Pregnancy after lower urinary tract reconstruction for congenital abnormalities. BJU Int 92:773, 2003
Gregg AR, Skotko BG, Benkendorf JL, et al: Noninvasive prenatal screening for fetal aneuploidy, 2016 update: a position statement of the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics. Genet Med 18(10):1056, 2016
Grewal J, Valente AM, Egbe AC, et al: Cardiovascular outcomes of pregnancy in Turner syndrome. Heart 107(1):61, 2021
Grimbizis GF, Di Spiezio Sardo A, Saravelos SH, et al: The Thessaloniki ESHRE/ESGE consensus on diagnosis of female genital anomalies. Hum Reprod 31(1):2, 2016
Grimbizis GF, Gordts S, Di Spiezio Sardo A, et al: The ESHRE/ESGE consensus on the classification of female genital tract congenital anomalies. Hum Reprod 28(8):2032, 2013
Grimstad F, Strickland J, Dowlut-McElroy T: Management and prevention of postoperative complications in a neonate with a symptomatic imperforate hymen. J Pediatr Adolesc Gynecol 32(4):429, 2019
Grinspon RP, Bergadá I, Rey RA: Male hypogonadism and disorders of sex development. Front Endocrinol (Lausanne) 11:211, 2020
Grinspon RP, Rey RA: Molecular characterization of XX maleness. Int J Mol Sci 20(23):6089, 2019
Grossenburg NJ, Delaney AA, Berg TG: Treatment of a late second-trimester incarcerated uterus using ultrasound-guided manual reduction. Obstet Gynecol 118(2 Pt 2):436, 2011
Groth KA, Skakkebæk A, Høst C, et al: Clinical review: Klinefelter syndrome—a clinical update. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 98(1):20, 2013
Gruchy N, Blondeel E, Le Meur N, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in prenatally diagnosed 47,XXX and 47,XYY syndromes: a 30-year French, retrospective, multicentre study. Prenat Diagn 36(6):523, 2016
Gruchy N, Vialard F, Decamp M, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in 188 French cases of prenatally diagnosed Klinefelter syndrome. Hum Reprod 26(9):2570, 2011
Gupta A, Bischoff A, Peña A, et al: The great divide: septation and malformation of the cloaca, and its implications for surgeons. Pediatr Surg Int 30(11):1089, 2014
Haddad B, Louis-Sylvestre C, Poitout P, et al: Longitudinal vaginal septum: a retrospective study of 202 cases. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 74(2):197, 1997
Hall-Craggs MA, Kirkham A, Creighton SM: Renal and urological abnormalities occurring with müllerian anomalies. J Pediatr Urol 9(1):27, 2013
Hatch EE, Herbst AL, Hoover RN, et al: Incidence of squamous neoplasia of the cervix and vagina in women exposed prenatally to diethylstilbestrol (United States). Cancer Causes Control 12:837, 2001
Hawkins LK, Correia KF, Srouji SS, et al: Uterine length and fertility outcomes: a cohort study in the IVF population. Hum Reprod 28(11):3000, 2013
Heinonen PK: Renal tract malformations associated with müllerian duct anomalies. Clin Obstet Gynecol Reprod Med 4(1):1, 2018
Helszer Z, Dmochowska A, Szemraj J, et al: A novel mutation (c. 341A>G) in the SRY gene in a 46,XY female patient with gonadal dysgenesis. Gene 526(2):467, 2013
Hen G, Sela-Donenfeld D: "A narrow bridge home": the dorsal mesentery in primordial germ cell migration. Semin Cell Dev Biol 92:97, 2019
Herbst AL, Ulfelder H, Poskanzer DC: Adenocarcinoma of the vagina. Association of maternal stilbestrol therapy with tumor appearance in young women. N Engl J Med 284(15):878, 1971
Hire MG, Reynolds KE, Farrer JR: Spontaneous resolution of gravid uterine incarceration with spinal anesthesia: a case report. A Pract 13(11):433, 2019
Hoffman BL, Hamid CA, Corton MM: Surgeries for benign gynecologic disorders. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al: Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2020, p 993
Homer HA, Li TC, Cooke ID: The septate uterus: a review of management and reproductive outcome. Fertil Steril 73(1):1, 2000
Hooker AB, Bolte AC, Exalto N, et al: Recurrent incarceration of the gravid uterus. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 22(5):462, 2009
Hovatta O: Pregnancies in women with Turner's syndrome. Ann Med 31(2):106, 1999
Howard-Bath A, Poulton A, Halliday J, et al: Population-based trends in the prenatal diagnosis of sex chromosome aneuploidy before and after non-invasive prenatal testing. Prenat Diagn 38(13):1062, 2018
Hua M, Odibo AO, Longman RE, et al: Congenital uterine anomalies and adverse pregnancy outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(6):558.e1, 2011
Huang LY, Pan M, Han J, et al: What would be missed in the first trimester if nuchal translucency measurement is replaced by cell free DNA foetal aneuploidy screening? J Obstet Gynaecol 38(4):498, 2018
Hughes IA, Houk C, Ahmed SF, et al: Consensus statement on management of intersex disorders. J Pediatr Urol 2:148, 2006
Hutson JM, Grover SR, O'Connell M, et al: Malformation syndromes associated with disorders of sex development. Nat Rev Endocrinol 10(8):476, 2014
Ivell R, Anand-Ivell R: Biology of insulin-like factor 3 in human reproduction. Hum Reprod Update 15(4):463, 2009
Jacquinet A, Millar D, Lehman A: Etiologies of uterine malformations. Am J Med Genet A 170(8):2141, 2016
Jain S, Chen F, Jain S, et al: Developmental pathology of congenital kidney and urinary tract anomalies. Clin Kidney J 12(3):382, 2018
Jensen JG: Uterine torsion in pregnancy. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 71:260, 1992
Johannesson L, Testa G, Putman JM, et al: Twelve live births after uterus transplantation in the Dallas UtErus Transplant Study. Obstet Gynecol 137(2):241, 2021
Jones BP, Saso S, Bracewell-Milnes T, et al: Human uterine transplantation: a review of outcomes from the first 45 cases. BJOG 126(11):1310, 2019
Jones ME, Boon WC, McInnes K, et al: Recognizing rare disorders: aromatase deficiency. Nat Clin Pract Endocrinol Metab 3(5):414, 2007
Kapczuk K, Friebe Z, Iwaniec K, et al: Obstructive müllerian anomalies in menstruating adolescent girls: a report of 22 cases. J Pediatr Adolesc Gynecol 31(3):252, 2018
Karavani G, Picard R, Elami-Suzin M, et al: Complete uterine torsion diagnosed during an elective caesarean section following failed external cephalic version: a case report. J Obstet Gynaecol 37(5):673, 2017
Kaufman RH, Adam E, Hatch EE, et al: Continued follow-up of pregnancy outcomes in diethylstilbestrol-exposed offspring. Obstet Gynecol 96(4):483, 2000
Kaufman RH, Noller K, Adam E, et al: Upper genital tract abnormalities and pregnancy outcome in diethylstilbestrol exposed progeny. Am J Obstet Gynecol 148: 973, 1984
Kenney PJ, Spirt BA, Leeson MD: Genitourinary anomalies: radiologic-anatomic correlations. Radiographics 4(2):233, 1984

Keppler-Noreuil K, Gorton S, Foo F, et al: Prenatal ascertainment of OEIS complex/cloacal exstrophy—15 new cases and literature review. Am J Med Genet A 143A(18):2122, 2007
Kolon TF, Herndon CD, Baker LA, et al: Evaluation and treatment of cryptorchidism: AUA guideline. J Urol 192(2):337, 2014
Kumar N, Tayade S: Successful pregnancy outcome in an untreated case of concomitant transverse complete vaginal septum with unicornuate uterus. J Hum Reprod Sci 7(4):27, 2014
Lee PA, Nordenström A, Houk CP, et al: Global disorders of sex development update since 2006: perceptions, approach and care. Horm Res Paediatr 85(3):158, 2016
Lee SW, Kim MY, Yang JH, et al: Sonographic findings of uterine sacculation during pregnancy. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 32(4):595, 2008
Lettieri L, Rodis JF, McLean DA, et al: Incarceration of the gravid uterus. Obstet Gynecol Surv 49:642, 1994
Levin N, Layzequilla N: Transverse vaginal septum—a rare cause of dystocia of labor. Report of a case. Obstet Gynecol 22:237, 1963
Li XQ, Qian HJ, Zhang XY, et al: Analysis of the reproductive outcomes and the size of the unicornuate uterus measured by magnetic resonance imaging and their relationship. Arch Gynecol Obstet 299(5):1321, 2019
Liaw A, Cunha GR, Shen J, et al: Development of the human bladder and ureterovesical junction. Differentiation 103:66, 2018
Lin AE, Prakash SK, Andersen NH, et al: Recognition and management of adults with Turner syndrome: from the transition of adolescence through the senior years. Am J Med Genet A 179(10):1987, 2019
Ludmir J, Jackson GM, Samuels P: Transvaginal cerclage under ultrasound guidance in cases of severe cervical hypoplasia. Obstet Gynecol 78:1067, 1991
Ludwin A, Ludwin I, Bhagavath B, et al: Pre-, intra-, and postoperative management of Robert's uterus. Fertil Steril 110(4):778, 2018a
Ludwin A, Martins WP, Nastri CO, et al: Congenital uterine malformation by experts (CUME): better criteria for distinguishing between normal/arcuate and septate uterus? Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 51(1):101, 2018b
Mäkelä JA, Koskenniemi JJ, Virtanen HE, et al: Testis development. Endocr Rev 40(4):857, 2019
Mallmann MR, Mack-Detlefsen B, Reutter H, et al: Isolated bladder exstrophy in prenatal diagnosis. Arch Gynecol Obstet 300(2):355, 2019
Mallmann MR, Reutter H, Geipel A, et al: Early prenatal diagnosis of the OEIS complex with different appearance in early compared with late pregnancy before spontaneous rupture of the cloacal membrane. Prenat Diagn 34(8):803, 2014
Mastrolia SA, Baumfeld Y, Hershkovitz R, et al: Bicornuate uterus is an independent risk factor for cervical os insufficiency: a retrospective population based cohort study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(22):2705, 2017
Mastrolia SA, Baumfeld Y, Hershkovitz R, et al: Independent association between uterine malformations and cervical insufficiency: a retrospective population-based cohort study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 297(4):919, 2018
Matalliotakis M, Goulielmos GN, Matalliotaki C, et al: Endometriosis in adolescent and young girls: report on a series of 55 cases. J Pediatr Adolesc Gynecol 30(5):568, 2017
Matthews D, Bath L, Högler W, et al: Hormone supplementation for pubertal induction in girls. Arch Dis Child 102(10):975, 2017
Mavrelos D, Sawyer E, Helmy S, et al: Ultrasound diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy in the non-communicating horn of a unicornuate uterus (cornual pregnancy). Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 30(5):765, 2007
McCann-Crosby B, Chen MJ, et al: Non-classical congenital adrenal hyperplasia: targets of treatment and transition. Pediatr Endocrinol Rev 12(2):224, 2014
McCann-Crosby B, Sutton VR: Disorders of sexual development. Clin Perinatol 42(2):395, 2015
McElreavey K, Jorgensen A, Eozenou C, et al: Pathogenic variants in the DEAH-box RNA helicase DHX37 are a frequent cause of 46,XY gonadal dysgenesis and 46,XY testicular regression syndrome. Genet Med 22(1):150, 2020
Mikos T, Gordts S, Grimbizis GF: Current knowledge about the management of congenital cervical malformations: a literature review. Fertil Steril 113(4):723, 2020
Miller WL, Auchus RJ: The molecular biology, biochemistry, and physiology of human steroidogenesis and its disorders. Endocr Rev 32(1):81, 2011
Moore KL, Persaud TV, Torchia MG: Urogenital system. In The Developing Human, 11th ed. Philadelphia, Saunders, 2020, p 246
Mucowski SJ, Herndon CN, Rosen MP: The arcuate uterine anomaly: a critical appraisal of its diagnostic and clinical relevance. Obstet Gynecol Surv 65(7):449, 2010
Nahum G, Stanislaw H, McMahon C: Preventing ectopic pregnancies: how often does transperitoneal transmigration of sperm occur in effecting human pregnancy? BJOG 111:706, 2004
Nahum GG: Rudimentary uterine horn pregnancy: the 20th-century worldwide experience of 588 cases. J Reprod Med 47:151, 2002
Narasimhan ML, Khattab A, Narasimhan ML, et al: Genetics of congenital adrenal hyperplasia and genotype-phenotype correlation. Fertil Steril 111(1):24, 2019
Neri G, Opitz J: Syndromal (and nonsyndromal) forms of male pseudohermaphroditism. Am J Med Genet 89(4):201, 1999
Newell SD, Crofts JF, Grant SR: The incarcerated gravid uterus: complications and lessons learned. Obstet Gynecol 123(2 Pt 2 Suppl 2):423, 2014
Nicholson WK, Coulson CC, McCoy MC, et al: Pelvic magnetic resonance imaging in the evaluation of uterine torsion. Obstet Gynecol 85(5 Pt 2):888, 1995
Norton ME, Baer RJ, Wapner RJ, et al: Cell-free DNA vs sequential screening for the detection of fetal chromosomal abnormalities. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(6):727, 2016
Oktay K, Bedoschi G, Berkowitz K, et al: Fertility preservation in women with turner syndrome: a comprehensive review and practical guidelines. J Pediatr Adolesc Gynecol 29(5):409, 2016
Pados G, Tsolakidis D, Athanatos D, et al: Reproductive and obstetric outcome after laparoscopic excision of functional, non-communicating broadly attached rudimentary horn: a case series. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 182:33, 2014
Palmer JR, Hatch EE, Rao RS, et al: Infertility among women exposed prenatally to diethylstilbestrol. Am J Epidemiol 154:316, 2001
Patel V, Gomez-Lobo V: Obstructive anomalies of the gynecologic tract. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 28(5):339, 2016
Pearce M, DeMartino L, McMahon R, et al: Newborn screening for congenital adrenal hyperplasia in New York State. Mol Genet Metab Rep 7:1, 2016
Pellerito JS, McCarthy SM, Doyle MB, et al: Diagnosis of uterine anomalies: relative accuracy of MR imaging, endovaginal sonography, and hysterosalpingography. Radiology 183:795, 1992
Prior M, Richardson A, Asif S, et al: Outcome of assisted reproduction in women with congenital uterine anomalies: a prospective observational study. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 51(1):110, 2018
Rackow BW, Arici A: Reproductive performance of women with müllerian anomalies. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 19(3):229, 2007
Radicioni AF, Ferlin A, Balercia G, et al: Consensus statement on diagnosis and clinical management of Klinefelter syndrome. J Endocrinol Invest 2010
Radmayr C, Dogan HS, Hoebeke P, et al: Management of undescended testes: European Association of Urology/European Society for Paediatric Urology Guidelines. J Pediatr Urol 12(6):335, 2016
Rall K, Eisenbeis S, Henninger V: Typical and atypical associated findings in a group of 346 patients with Mayer-Rokitansky-Kuester-Hauser syndrome. J Pediatr Adolesc Gynecol 28(5):362, 2015
Ravasia DJ, Brain PH, Pollard JK: Incidence of uterine rupture among women with müllerian duct anomalies who attempt vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181(4):877, 1999
Reichman DE, Laufer MR: Mayer-Rokitansky-Küster-Hauser syndrome: fertility counseling and treatment. Fertil Steril 94(5):1941, 2010
Reichman D, Laufer MR, Robinson BK: Pregnancy outcomes in unicornuate uteri: a review. Fertil Steril 91(5): 1886, 2009
Reiss RE, Discenza M, Foster J, et al: Sex chromosome aneuploidy detection by noninvasive prenatal testing: helpful or hazardous? Prenat Diagn 37(5):515, 2017
Robboy SJ, Young RH, Welch WR, et al: Atypical vaginal adenosis and cervical ectropion. Association with clear cell adenocarcinoma in diethylstilbestrol-exposed offspring. Cancer 54(5):869, 1984
Roberts CP, Rock JA: Surgical methods in the treatment of congenital anomalies of the uterine cervix. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 23(4):251, 2011
Rock JA, Roberts CP, Jones HW Jr: Congenital anomalies of the uterine cervix: lessons from 30 cases managed clinically by a common protocol. Fertil Steril 94(5):1858, 2010
Rolen AC, Choquette AJ, Semmens JP: Rudimentary uterine horn: obstetric and gynecologic implications. Obstet Gynecol 27:806, 1966
Rood K, Markham KB: Torsion of a term gravid uterus: a possible cause of intrauterine growth restriction and abnormal umbilical artery Doppler findings. J Ultrasound Med 33(10):1873, 2014
Roth LM, Cheng L: Classical gonadoblastoma: its relationship to the 'dissecting' variant and undifferentiated gonadal tissue. Histopathology 72(4):545, 2018
Saravelos SH, Cocksedge KA, Li TC: Prevalence and diagnosis of congenital uterine anomalies in women with reproductive failure: a critical appraisal. Hum Reprod Update 14(5):415, 2008
Schneiderman M, Tulandi T: The importance to exclude the existence of a rudimentary uterine horn in women with unicornuate uterus. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 40(2):143, 2018
Semmes JP: Congenital anomalies of female genital tract. Functional classification based on review of 56 personal cases and 500 reported cases. Obstet Gynecol 19:328, 1962

Sentilhes L, Sergent F, Roman H, et al: Late complications of operative hysteroscopy: predicting patients at risk of uterine rupture during subsequent pregnancy. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 120(2):134, 2005
Seubert DE, Puder KS, Goldmeier P, et al: Colonoscopic release of the incarcerated gravid uterus. Obstet Gynecol 94:792, 1999
Shatzkes DR, Haller JO, Velcek FT: Imaging of uterovaginal anomalies in the pediatric patient. Urol Radiol 13(1):58, 1991
She ZY, Yang WX: Sry and SoxE genes: How they participate in mammalian sex determination and gonadal development? Semin Cell Dev Biol 63:13, 2017
Shen J, Cunha GR, Sinclair A, et al: Macroscopic whole-mounts of the developing human fetal urogenital-genital tract: Indifferent stage to male and female differentiation. Differentiation 103:5, 2018
Silberbach M, Roos-Hesselink JW, Andersen NH, et al: Cardiovascular health in Turner syndrome: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. Circ Genom Precis Med 11(10):e000048, 2018
Sinclair AH, Berta P, Palmer MS, et al: A gene from the human sex-determining region encodes a protein with homology to a conserved DNA-binding motif. Nature 346(6281):240, 1990
Singh MN, Payappagoudar J, Lo J: Incarcerated retroverted uterus in the third trimester complicated by postpartum pulmonary embolism. Obstet Gynecol 109:498, 2007
Smith P, Wilhelm D, Rodgers RJ: Development of mammalian ovary. J Endocrinol 221(3):R145, 2014
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, McIntosh J, Feltovich H, et al: The role of routine cervical length screening in selected high- and low-risk women for preterm birth prevention. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(3):B2, 2016
Song JE, Lee KY, Son GH: Prediction of outcome for transabdominal cerclage in women with cervical insufficiency. Biomed Res Int 2015;2015:985764
Spearing GJ: Uterine sacculation. Obstet Gynecol 51:11S, 1978
Spencer TE, Dunlap KA, Filant J. Comparative developmental biology of the uterus: insights into mechanisms and developmental disruption. Mol Cell Endocrinol 354(1-2):34, 2012
Tardy-Guidollet V, Menassa R, Costa JM, et al: New management strategy of pregnancies at risk of congenital adrenal hyperplasia using fetal sex determination in maternal serum: French cohort of 258 cases (2002-2011). J Clin Endocrinol Metab 99(4):1180, 2014
Toaff ME, Lev-Toaff AS, Toaff R: Communicating uteri: review and classification with introduction of two previously unreported types. Fertil Steril 41(5):661, 1984
Tolani AD, Kadambari Deenadayal A, et al: Timely identification of pregnancy in noncommunicating horn of unicornuate uterus by three-dimensional transvaginal ultrasonography. J Clin Imaging Sci 8:39, 2018
Tong J, Zhu L, Chen N, et al: Endometriosis in association with Herlyn-Werner-Wunderlich syndrome. Fertil Steril 102(3):790, 2014
Tonni G, Grisolia G, Bonasoni M, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of OEIS (omphalocele, bladder exstrophy, imperforate anus, clubfeet) variant associated with increased nuchal translucency and OEIS complex with ambiguous genitalia associated with corrected transposition of the great arteries: case series and review of the literature. Arch Gynecol Obstet 284(2):261, 2011
Tsafrir A, Rojansky N, Sela HY, et al: Rudimentary horn pregnancy: first-trimester prerupture sonographic diagnosis and confirmation by magnetic resonance imaging. J Ultrasound Med 24(2):219, 2005
Tuna T, Estevão-Costa J, Ramalho C, et al: Herlyn-Werner-Wunderlich Syndrome: report of a prenatally recognised case and review of the literature. Urology 125:205, 2019
Uma R, Oláh KS: Transvaginal caesarean hysterectomy: an unusual complication of a fibroid gravid uterus. BJOG 109(10):1192, 2002
Upadhyay KK, Silverstein DM: Renal development: a complex process dependent on inductive interaction. Curr Pediatr Rev 10(2):107, 2014
Urbanus E, Swaab H, Tartaglia N, et al: The behavioral profile of children aged 1–5 years with sex chromosome trisomy (47,XXX, 47,XXY, 47,XYY). Am J Med Genet C Semin Med Genet 184(2):444, 2020
Valentini AL, Giuliani M, Gui B, et al: Persistent urogenital sinus: diagnostic imaging for clinical management. What does the radiologist need to know? Am J Perinatol 33(5):425, 2016
Valle RF, Ekpo GE: Hysteroscopic metroplasty for the septate uterus: review and meta-analysis. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 20(1):22, 2013
Van der Straaten S, Springer A, Zecic A, et al: The external genitalia score (EGS): a European multicenter validation study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 105(3):dgz142, 2020
Van der Zwan YG, Biermann K, Wolffenbuttel KP, et al: Gonadal maldevelopment as risk factor for germ cell cancer: towards a clinical decision model. Eur Urol 67(4):692, 2015
Vaz SA, Dotters-Katz SK, Kuller JA: Diagnosis and management of congenital uterine anomalies in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 72(3):194, 2017
Vogel I, Tabor A, Ekelund C, et al: Population-Based screening for trisomies and atypical chromosomal abnormalities: improving efficacy using the combined first trimester screening algorithm as well as individual risk parameters. Fetal Diagn Ther 45(6):424, 2019
Walsh TJ, Dall'Era MA, Croughan MS, et al: Prepubertal orchiopexy for cryptorchidism may be associated with lower risk of testicular cancer. J Urol 178(4 Pt 1):1440, 2007
Weidler EM, Linnaus ME, Baratz AB, et al: A management protocol for gonad preservation in patients with androgen insensitivity syndrome. J Pediatr Adolesc Gynecol 32(6):605, 2019
Williams CE, Nakhal RS, Achermann JC, et al: Persistent unexplained congenital clitoromegaly in females born extremely prematurely. J Pediatr Urol 9(6 Pt A):962, 2013
Williams CE, Nakhal RS, Hall-Craggs MA, et al: Transverse vaginal septae: management and long-term outcomes. BJOG 121(13):1653, 2014
Woelfer B, Salim R, Banerjee S, et al: Reproductive outcomes in women with congenital uterine anomalies detected by three-dimensional ultrasound screening. Obstet Gynecol 98:1099, 2001
Woo LL, Thomas JC, Brock JW: Cloacal exstrophy: a comprehensive review of an uncommon problem. J Pediatr Urol 6(2):102, 2010
Worley KC, Hnat MD, Cunningham FG: Advanced extrauterine pregnancy: diagnostic and therapeutic challenges. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198:287.e1, 2008
Xu C, Xu J, Gao H, et al: Triplet pregnancy and successful twin delivery in a patient with congenital cervical atresia who underwent transmyometrial embryo transfer and multifetal pregnancy reduction. Fertil Steril 91(5):1958, 2009
Yassaee F, Mostafaee L: The role of cervical cerclage in pregnancy outcome in women with uterine anomaly. J Reprod Infertil 12(4):277, 2011
Yue F, Zhang H, Xi Q, et al: Molecular cytogenetic analysis and genetic counseling: a case report of eight 46,XX males and a literature review. Mol Cytogenet 12:44, 2019

CHAPTER 4

Maternal Physiology

The anatomical, physiological, and biochemical adaptations of pregnancy are profound. Many gestational changes begin soon after fertilization and continue throughout pregnancy. Equally astounding is the almost complete return to the prepregnancy state after delivery and lactation. Most pregnancy-related changes are prompted by stimuli provided by the fetus and placenta. Virtually every organ system undergoes alterations, and these can appreciably modify criteria for disease diagnosis and treatment. Thus, an understanding of pregnancy adaptations is essential to avoid misinterpretation. Moreover, some normal physiological changes can unmask or worsen preexisting disease.

REPRODUCTIVE TRACT

Uterus

In the nonpregnant woman, the uterus weighs approximately 70 g and is almost solid, except for a cavity of 10 mL or less. During pregnancy, the uterus is transformed into a thin-walled muscular organ of sufficient capacity to accommodate the fetus, placenta, and amnionic fluid. The total volume of the contents at term averages 5 L but may be 20 L or more! Thus, by the end of pregnancy, the uterus has achieved a capacity that is 500 to 1000 times greater than the nonpregnant state. The corresponding increase in uterine weight is such that, by term, the organ weighs nearly 1100 g.

Uterine hypertrophy early in pregnancy is probably stimulated by the action of estrogen and perhaps progesterone. Thus, similar uterine changes can be observed with ectopic pregnancy. But after approximately 12 weeks' gestation, uterine growth is related predominantly to pressure exerted by the expanding products of conception.

Within the uterus, enlargement is most marked in the fundus. The extent of uterine hypertrophy is also influenced by the position of the placenta. Namely, the myometrium surrounding the placental site grows more rapidly than does the rest.

During pregnancy, uterine enlargement involves stretching and marked hypertrophy of muscle cells, whereas the production of new myocytes is limited. Fibrous tissue also accumulates, particularly in the external muscle layer, together with a considerable rise in elastic tissue content. The walls of the corpus considerably thicken and strengthen during the first few months of pregnancy but then gradually thin. By term, the myometrium is only 1 to 2 cm thick, and the fetus usually can be palpated through the soft, readily indentable uterine walls.

The uterine musculature during pregnancy is arranged in three strata. The first is an outer hoodlike layer, which arches over the fundus and extends into the various ligaments. The middle layer is a dense network of muscle fibers perforated in all directions by blood vessels. Last is an internal layer, with sphincter-like fibers around the fallopian tube orifices and internal cervical os. Most of the uterine wall is formed by the middle layer. Here, each myocyte has a double curve so that the interlacing of any two cells forms a figure eight. This crucial arrangement permits myocytes to contract after delivery and constrict penetrating blood vessels to halt bleeding.

Uterine Shape and Position

For the first few weeks, the uterus maintains its original piriform or pear shape. But, as pregnancy advances, the corpus and fundus become globular and almost spherical by 12 weeks' gestation. Subsequently, the organ grows more rapidly in length than in width and becomes ovoid. By the end of 12 weeks, the enlarged uterus extends out of the pelvis. With growth, it contacts the anterior abdominal wall, displaces the intestines laterally and superiorly, and ultimately reaches almost to the liver. As it ascends, the uterus usually rotates to the right, and this dextrorotation likely is caused by the rectosigmoid on the left side of the pelvis. As the uterus rises, tension is exerted on the broad and round ligaments.

With the pregnant woman standing, the longitudinal axis of the uterus corresponds to an extension of the pelvic inlet axis. The abdominal wall supports the uterus and maintains this axis, unless the wall is lax. When the pregnant woman lies supine, the uterus falls back to rest on the vertebral column and the adjacent great vessels.

Uterine Contractility

Beginning in early pregnancy, the uterus contracts irregularly, and these may be perceived as mild cramps. During the second trimester, these contractions can be detected by bimanual examination. In 1872, J. Braxton Hicks first brought attention to these contractions, which now bear his name. These appear unpredictably and sporadically. Their intensity varies between 5 and 25 mm Hg (Alvarez, 1950). Until near term, these *Braxton Hicks contractions* are infrequent, but their number rises during the last week or two. At this time, the uterus may contract as often as every 10 to 20 minutes and with some degree of rhythmicity. Correspondingly, uterine electrical activity is low and uncoordinated early in gestation but becomes progressively more intense and synchronized by term (Rabotti, 2015). This synchrony develops twice as fast in multiparas compared with nulliparas (Govindan, 2015). Late in pregnancy, these contractions may cause some discomfort and account for so-called false labor (Chap 21, p. 401).

Uteroplacental Blood Flow

The delivery of most substances essential for fetal and placental growth, metabolism, and waste removal requires the placental intervillous space to be adequately perfused (Chap. 5, p. 86). Placental perfusion depends on total uterine blood flow, but simultaneous measurement of uterine, ovarian, and collateral vessels is not yet possible, even using magnetic resonance (MR) angiography (Pates, 2010). For this measurement, early results using four-dimensional flow MR imaging in the primate are promising (MacDonald, 2019).

Doppler ultrasound interrogation of the uterine arteries shows a progressive increase in uteroplacental blood flow during pregnancy. Flow rates rise from approximately 450 mL/min in the midtrimester to nearly 500 to 750 mL/min at 36 weeks' gestation (Flo, 2014; Wilson, 2007). These measures are similar to flow estimates ascertained indirectly using clearance rates of androstenedione and xenon-133 (Edman, 1981; Kauppila, 1980). These values also mirror older ones—500 to 750 mL/min—obtained with invasive methods (Assali, 1953; Metcalfe, 1955). Logically, such massively increased uteroplacental blood flow requires adaptation of the uterine veins as well. The resulting increased venous caliber and distensibility can result in uterine vein varices that rarely may rupture (Lim, 2014).

As noted first from animal studies, uterine contractions, either spontaneous or induced, lower uterine blood flow proportionally to contraction intensity (Assali, 1968). A tetanic contraction yields a precipitous fall in uterine blood flow. In humans, three-dimensional power Doppler angiography has also demonstrated reduced uterine blood flow during contractions (Jones, 2009). Using a similar technique, resistance to blood flow in both maternal and fetal vessels was found to be greater during the second stage of labor compared with the first (Baron, 2015). Given that baseline uterine blood flow is diminished in pregnancies complicated by fetal-growth restriction, these fetuses often tolerate spontaneous labor less effectively (Simeone, 2017).

Uteroplacental Blood Flow Regulation

The vessels that supply the uterine corpus widen and elongate yet preserve their contractile function (Mandala, 2012). As an exception, the spiral arteries, which directly supply the placenta, vasodilate but completely lose contractility. This presumably stems from endovascular trophoblast invasion, which destroys the intramural muscular elements (Chap. 5, p. 92). This vasodilation allows maternal–placental blood flow to progressively rise during gestation. Given that blood flow increases proportionally to the fourth power of the radius of the vessel, small widening of a vessel diameter results in tremendous augmentation of flow. In one study, the uterine artery diameter grew from only 3.3 mm to 3.7 mm between 22 and 29 weeks' gestation, but mean blood flow velocity increased 50 percent, from 29 to 43 cm/sec (Flo, 2010).

The downstream fall in vascular resistance is another key factor that accelerates flow and shear stress in upstream vessels. In turn, shear stress leads to circumferential vessel growth. Nitric oxide—a potent vasodilator—appears to play a central role in regulating this process and is discussed later (p. 65). Endothelial nitric oxide synthase (eNOS) and nitric oxide production are augmented by endothelial shear stress and several hormones and growth factors (Osol, 2019; Zhang, 2017). Factors include estrogen, progesterone, activin, placental growth factor (PlGF), and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), which is a promoter of angiogenesis. As an important aside, VEGF and PlGF signaling is attenuated in response to excess placental secretion of their soluble receptor—*soluble FMS-like tyrosine kinase 1*

(sFlt-1). An elevated maternal sFlt-1 level inactivates and lowers circulating PlGF and VEGF concentrations and is important in preeclampsia pathogenesis (Chap. 40, p. 694).

Normal pregnancy is also characterized by vascular refractoriness to the pressor effects of infused angiotensin II, and this raises uteroplacental blood flow (Rosenfeld, 2012). Other factors that augment uteroplacental blood flow include relaxin and certain adipocytokines (Vodstrcil, 2012). *Chemerin* is an adipocytokine secreted by several tissues, including the placenta (Kasher-Meron, 2014). Its concentration rises as gestation advances and serves to increase human umbilical eNOS activity (Wang, 2015). Another adipocytokine—*visfatin*—raises VEGF secretion and VEGF receptor 2 expression in epithelial cells derived from the placental amnion (Astern, 2013). Other adipocytokines include *leptin*, *resistin,* and *adiponectin,* which all enhance umbilical vein endothelial cell proliferation (Połeć, 2014).

Last, certain microRNA species mediate vascular remodeling and uterine blood flow early in placentation (Santa, 2015). In particular, members of the miR-17–92 cluster and miR-34 are important in spiral artery remodeling and invasion. MicroRNA dysfunction has been reported in preeclampsia, fetal-growth restriction, and gestational diabetes.

Cervix

As early as 1 month after conception, the cervix begins to soften and gain bluish tones. These changes result from increased vascularity and edema of the entire cervix, from alterations in the collagen network, and from hypertrophy and hyperplasia of the cervical glands (Peralta, 2015). Although the cervix contains a small amount of smooth muscle, its major component is connective tissue. Rearrangement of this collagen-rich tissue aids the cervix in retention of the pregnancy until term, in dilation to aid delivery, and in postpartum repair and reconstitution to permit a subsequent successful pregnancy (Myers, 2015). As detailed in Chapter 21 (p. 405), cervical ripening involves connective tissue remodeling that lowers collagen and proteoglycan concentrations and raises water content compared with the nonpregnant cervix.

Cervical glands undergo marked proliferation, and by the end of pregnancy, they occupy up to one half of the entire cervical mass. This normal pregnancy-induced change prompts an extension, or *eversion*, of the proliferating columnar endocervical glands onto the ectocervical portio (Fig. 4-1). This tissue appears red and velvety and bleeds even with minor trauma, such as with Pap smear testing.

The endocervical mucosal cells produce copious amounts of tenacious mucus that obstructs the cervical canal soon after conception (Bastholm, 2017). This mucus is rich in immunoglobulins and cytokines and may act as an immunological barrier to protect the uterine contents against infection (Hansen, 2014). At labor onset, if not before, this *mucus plug* is expelled, resulting in a *bloody show.* Moreover, the cervical mucus consistency changes during pregnancy. Specifically, in most pregnant women, as a result of progesterone, when cervical mucus is spread and dried on a glass slide, it shows poor crystallization, termed *beading*. In some gravidas, as a result of amnionic fluid leakage, an arborization of ice-like crystals, called *fern*ing, is seen microscopically.

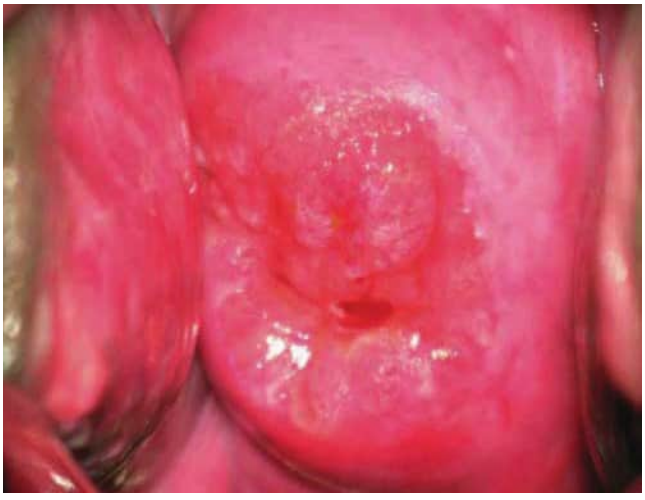


FIGURE 4-1 Cervical eversion of pregnancy as viewed through a colposcope. The eversion represents columnar epithelium on the portio of the cervix. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Claudia Werner.)

Histologically, basal cells near the squamocolumnar junction can be prominent in size, shape, and staining quality in pregnancy. These changes are considered to be estrogen induced. In addition, pregnancy is associated with both endocervical gland hyperplasia and hypersecretory appearance—the *Arias-Stella reaction*. This cytologic change can make differentiating these from truly atypical glandular cells during Pap test evaluation particularly difficult (Rosai, 2015).

Ovaries

Ovulation ceases during pregnancy, and maturation of new follicles is suspended. The single corpus luteum functions maximally during the first 6 to 7 weeks of pregnancy—4 to 5 weeks postovulation. Thereafter, it contributes relatively little to progesterone production. As discussed in Chapter 66 (p. 1170), surgical removal of the corpus luteum before 7 weeks' gestation prompts a rapid fall in maternal serum progesterone levels and spontaneous abortion (Csapo, 1973). In these cases, exogenous progesterone is necessary for pregnancy maintenance until placental function is sufficient. After 7 weeks, however, corpus luteum excision ordinarily does not cause abortion.

An extrauterine *decidual reaction* on and just beneath the ovarian surface is common in pregnancy and is usually observed at cesarean delivery. These appear as slightly elevated clear or red blisters or patches that bleed easily and may, on first glance, resemble freshly torn adhesions. Similar decidual reactions are seen on the uterine serosa and other pelvic, or even extrapelvic, abdominal organs (Bloom, 2010). These areas arise from subcoelomic mesenchyme or endometriotic lesions that have been stimulated by progesterone. They histologically appear similar to progestin-stimulated intrauterine endometrial stroma (Kim, 2015).

The enormous caliber of the ovarian veins viewed at cesarean delivery is startling. Hodgkinson (1953) found that the diameter of the ovarian vascular pedicle increased during pregnancy from 0.9 cm to approximately 2.6 cm at term. Again, recall

that flow in a tubular structure increases exponentially as the diameter enlarges.

Relaxin

This protein hormone is secreted by the corpus luteum, the decidua, and the placenta in a pattern similar to that of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) (Chap. 5, p. 97). Relaxin is also expressed in brain, heart, and kidney. It is mentioned here because its secretion by the corpus luteum appears to aid many maternal physiological adaptations, such as remodeling of reproductive-tract connective tissue to accommodate labor (Vrachnis, 2015). Relaxin also appears important in initiating augmented renal hemodynamics, lowering serum osmolality, and increasing arterial compliance, which are all associated with normal pregnancy (Conrad, 2015). Despite its name, serum relaxin levels do not contribute to greater peripheral joint laxity or pelvic girdle pain during pregnancy (Aldabe, 2012; Marnach, 2003).

Theca-Lutein Cysts

These benign ovarian lesions reflect exaggerated physiological follicle stimulation, which is termed *hyperreactio luteinalis.* The resulting bilateral cystic ovaries are variably enlarged. The reaction is usually linked to markedly elevated serum hCG levels. Logically, theca-lutein cysts are found frequently with gestational trophoblastic disease (Fig. 13-3, p. 238). They may also develop with the placentomegaly that can accompany diabetes, anti-D alloimmunization, and multifetal gestation. Hyperreactio luteinalis is associated with preeclampsia and hyperthyroidism, which may contribute to elevated risks for fetal-growth restriction and preterm birth (Lynn, 2013; Malinowski, 2015). These cysts are also encountered in women with otherwise uncomplicated pregnancies. In these cases, an exaggerated response of the ovaries to normal levels of circulating hCG is suspected (Sarmento Gonçalves, 2015).

Although usually asymptomatic, hemorrhage into the cysts can cause acute abdominal pain (Amoah, 2011). Maternal virilization may be seen in up to 30 percent of women, however, virilization of the fetus has only rarely been reported. Maternal findings that include temporal balding, hirsutism, and clitoromegaly are associated with massively elevated levels of androstenedione and testosterone. The diagnosis typically is based on sonographic findings of bilateral enlarged ovaries containing multiple cysts in the appropriate clinical settings. The condition is self-limited and resolves following delivery. Its management was reviewed by Malinowski (2015) and discussed further in Chapter 66 (p. 1171).

Fallopian Tubes

The fallopian tube musculature, that is, the *myosalpinx*, undergoes little hypertrophy during pregnancy. The epithelium of the *endosalpinx* somewhat flattens. Decidual cells may develop in the stroma of the endosalpinx, but a continuous decidual membrane is not formed. Rarely, a fallopian tube may twist during uterine enlargement, but this torsion is more common with comorbid paratubal or ovarian cysts (Lee, 2015; Macedo, 2017).

Vagina and Perineum

During pregnancy, greater vascularity and hyperemia develop in the skin and muscles of the perineum and vulva, and the underlying abundant connective tissue softens. This augmented vascularity prominently affects the vagina and cervix and results in the violet color characteristic of the *Chadwick sign.*

Within the vagina, the considerably elevated volume of cervical secretions during pregnancy forms a somewhat thick, white discharge. The pH is acidic and varies from 3.5 to 6. This pH results from increased production of lactic acid by *Lactobacillus acidophilus* during metabolism of glycogen energy stores in the vaginal epithelium. Pregnancy is associated with an elevated risk of vulvovaginal candidiasis, particularly during the second and third trimesters. Higher infection rates may stem from immunological and hormonal changes and from greater vaginal glycogen stores (Aguin, 2015).

The vaginal walls undergo striking changes in preparation for the distention that accompanies labor and delivery. These include considerable epithelial thickening, connective tissue loosening, and hypertrophy of smooth muscle cells.

Pelvic Organ Prolapse

Pelvic Organ Prolapse Quantification (POP-Q) scores and sonographic studies show that vaginal support changes across pregnancy. In particular, vaginal lengthening, posterior vaginal wall and hiatal relaxation, increased levator hiatal area, and greater first-trimester vaginal elastase activity are all associated with uncomplicated spontaneous vaginal delivery (Oliphant, 2014). The larger hiatal area persists in women who deliver vaginally compared with women delivering by prelabor or early-labor cesarean delivery. However, all women show greater hiatal distensibility after delivery, which is potentially a factor in later pelvic floor dysfunction (Blomqvist, 2018; Friedman, 2019).

In women with existing apical vaginal prolapse, the cervix, and occasionally a portion of the uterine body, can protrude variably from the vulva during early pregnancy. With further growth, the uterus usually rises above the pelvis and can draw the cervix up with it. If the uterus persists in its prolapsed position, symptoms of incarceration may develop at 10 to 14 weeks' gestation (Chap. 3, p. 46). As a preventive measure, the uterus can be replaced early in pregnancy and held in position with a space-filling pessary.

Attenuation of anterior vaginal wall support can lead to prolapse of the bladder, that is, cystocele. Associated urinary stasis can predispose to infection. Pregnancy may also worsen coexistent *stress urinary incontinence (SUI)*, likely because urethral closing pressures do not rise sufficiently to compensate for altered bladder neck support. Urinary incontinence affects nearly 20 percent of women during the first trimester and nearly 40 percent during the third trimester. Most cases stem from SUI rather than urgency urinary incontinence (Abdullah, 2016; Franco, 2014). In primigravidas, maternal age greater than 30 years, obesity, smoking, constipation, and gestational diabetes mellitus are all risk factors associated with incontinence during pregnancy (Sangsawang, 2014).

Attenuation of posterior vaginal wall support can lead to rectocele, and a large defect may fill with feces. Splinting, in

which a finger is inserted into the vagina, can bolster posterior wall support to aid evacuation. Occasionally, digital rectal disimpaction is needed. Uncommonly during labor, fetal descent is blocked by a cystocele or rectocele. Emptying by catheterization or enema and compressing the bulge with vaginal fingers will resolve the impasse. Rarely, a large enterocele may bulge into the vagina to block descent. Similarly, the hernia sac and its abdominal contents are gently reduced.

BREASTS

In early pregnancy, women often experience breast tenderness and paresthesias. After the second month, the breasts grow in size, and delicate veins are visible just beneath the skin. The nipples become considerably larger, more deeply pigmented, and more erectile. After the first few months, a thick, yellowish fluid—*colostrum*—can often be expressed from the nipples by gentle massage. During the same months, the areolae become broader and more deeply pigmented. Scattered through each areola are several small elevations, the *glands of Montgomery*, which are hypertrophic sebaceous glands. If breasts gain extensive size, skin striae similar to those observed in the abdomen may develop. Rarely, breasts can become pathologically enlarged—referred to as *gigantomastia*—which may require consideration of postpartum bromocriptine and later surgical reduction (Rezai, 2015; Türkan, 2016).

For most, prepregnancy breast size and ultimate volume of breast milk do not correlate. Multiple factors influence milk production and are discussed in Chapter 36 (p. 640).

SKIN

Skin changes are common, and Fernandes and Amaral (2015) described dermatological changes in more than 900 pregnant women. They found at least one physiological cutaneous change in 89 percent of the women examined. Dermatological pathologies during pregnancy are found in Chapter 65.

Abdominal Wall

Beginning after midpregnancy, reddish, slightly depressed streaks commonly develop in the skin. These are called *striae gravidarum* or *stretch marks.* In multiparas, glistening, silvery lines that represent the cicatrices of previous striae frequently coexist. In one study of 800 primiparas, 70 percent developed striae gravidarum on their abdomen; 33 percent on their breasts; and 41 percent on their hips and thighs (Picard, 2015). The strongest associated risk factors included younger maternal age, family history, and prepregnancy weight and weight gain during pregnancy. The etiology of striae gravidarum is unknown, but aloe vera gel and almond oil decrease itching and may help to prevent progression (Hajhashemi, 2018).

Occasionally, the muscles of the abdominal walls do not withstand the tension of the expanding pregnancy. As a result, rectus muscles separate in the midline, creating *diastasis recti* of varying extent. If severe, a considerable portion of the anterior uterine wall is covered by only a layer of skin, attenuated fascia, and peritoneum to form a ventral hernia.

Hyperpigmentation

This develops in up to 90 percent of women and is usually more accentuated in those with darker complexion (Bieber, 2017). Of specific sites, the pigmented skin line in the midline of the anterior abdominal wall—the *linea alba*—takes on dark brown-black pigmentation to form the *linea nigra.* Occasionally, irregular brownish patches of varying size appear on the face and neck, giving rise to *chloasma* or *melasma gravidarum*—the *mask of pregnancy*. Pigmentation of the areolae and genital skin also may be accentuated. After delivery, these pigmentary changes usually disappear or at least regress considerably. Oral contraceptives may cause similar alterations (Handel, 2014).

The etiology of these pigmentary changes is incompletely understood, however, hormonal and genetic factors are implicated. Levels of melanocyte-stimulating hormone, a polypeptide similar to corticotropin, are elevated remarkably throughout pregnancy, and estrogen and progesterone also are reported to have melanocyte-stimulating effects.

Vascular Changes

Angiomas, called *vascular spiders*, are particularly common on the face, neck, upper chest, and arms. These are minute, red skin papules with radicles branching out from a central lesion. The condition is often designated as nevus, angioma, or telangiectasis. *Palmar erythema* is encountered during pregnancy. Both conditions lack clinical significance and disappear in most gravidas shortly after pregnancy. They are likely the consequence of hyperestrogenemia. In addition to these discrete lesions, increased cutaneous blood flow in pregnancy serves to dissipate excess heat generated by augmented metabolism.

Hair Changes

Throughout life, the human hair follicle undergoes a pattern of cyclic activity that includes periods of hair growth (anagen phase), apoptosis-driven involution (catagen phase), and a resting period (telogen phase). Based on a study of 116 healthy pregnant women, the anagen phase lengthens during pregnancy and the telogen rate increases postpartum (Gizlenti, 2014). Neither is exaggerated in most gravidas, but excessive hair loss in the puerperium is termed *telogen effluvium* (Stoehr, 2019).

METABOLIC CHANGES

In response to the greater demands of the rapidly growing fetus and placenta, the pregnant woman undergoes numerous metabolic changes. By the third trimester, maternal basal metabolic rate rises by 20 percent compared with that of the nonpregnant state (Berggren, 2015). This rate grows by an additional 10 percent in women with a twin gestation (Shinagawa, 2005). This is stratified as 85, 285, and 475 kcal/d during the first, second, and third trimesters, respectively (Table 4-1) (World Health Organization, 2004). Of note, Abeysekera and coworkers (2016) reported that women accrue fat mass during pregnancy despite the increased total energy expenditure and without significant change in energy intake. This suggests more efficient energy storage.

TABLE 4-1. Additional Energy Demands During Normal Pregnancy[a]

	Rates of Tissue Deposition			
	1st Trimester g/d	2nd Trimester g/d	3rd Trimester g/d	Total Deposition g/280 d
Weight gain	17	60	54	12,000
Protein deposition	0	1.3	5.1	597
Fat deposition	5.2	18.9	16.9	3741

Energy Cost of Pregnancy Estimated from Basal Metabolic Rate and Energy Deposition					
	1st Trimester kJ/d	2nd Trimester kJ/d	3rd Trimester kJ/d	Total Energy Cost	
				MJ	Kcal
Protein deposition	0	30	121	14.1	3370
Fat deposition	202	732	654	144.8	34,600
Efficiency of energy utilization[b]	20	76	77	15.9	3800
Basal metabolic rate	199	397	993	147.8	35,130
Total energy cost of pregnancy	**421**	**1235**	**1845**	**322.6**	**77,100**

[a]Assumes an average gestational weight gain of 12 kg.
[b]Efficiency of food energy utilization for protein and fat deposition estimated as 0.90.

Most of the normal weight gain in pregnancy is attributable to the uterus and its contents, the breasts, and expanded blood and extravascular extracellular fluid volumes. A smaller fraction results from metabolic alterations that promote accumulation of cellular water, fat, and protein, which are so-called maternal reserves. The average weight gain during pregnancy approximates 12.5 kg or 27.5 lb, and this value has remained consistent across studies and over time (Hytten, 1991; Jebeile, 2016). Weight gain is detailed in Table 4-2 and in Chapter 10 (p. 183) (Hytten, 1991).

Water Metabolism

In pregnancy, greater water retention is normal and mediated in part by a drop in plasma osmolality of 10 mOsm/kg. As shown in Figure 4-2, this decline develops in early pregnancy and is induced by a reset of osmotic thresholds for thirst and vasopressin secretion (Lindheimer, 2001). Relaxin and other hormones are thought to play a role (Conrad, 2013).

TABLE 4-2. Weight Gain Based on Pregnancy-Related Components

	Cumulative Increase in Weight (g)			
Tissues and Fluids	10 Weeks	20 Weeks	30 Weeks	40 Weeks
Fetus	5	300	1500	3400
Placenta	20	170	430	650
Amnionic fluid	30	350	750	800
Uterus	140	320	600	970
Breasts	45	180	360	405
Blood	100	600	1300	1450
Extravascular fluid	0	30	80	1480
Maternal stores (fat)	310	2050	3480	3345
Total	**650**	**4000**	**8500**	**12,500**

Maternal serum osmolality is significantly lower than umbilical arterial osmolality to favor water transport to the fetus (Moen, 2018). At term, the water content of the fetus, placenta, and amnionic fluid approximates 3.5 L. Another 3.0 L accumulates from expanded maternal blood volume and from uterus and breast growth. Thus, the minimum amount of extra water that the average woman accrues during normal pregnancy approximates 6.5 L. This corresponds to almost 15 lb.

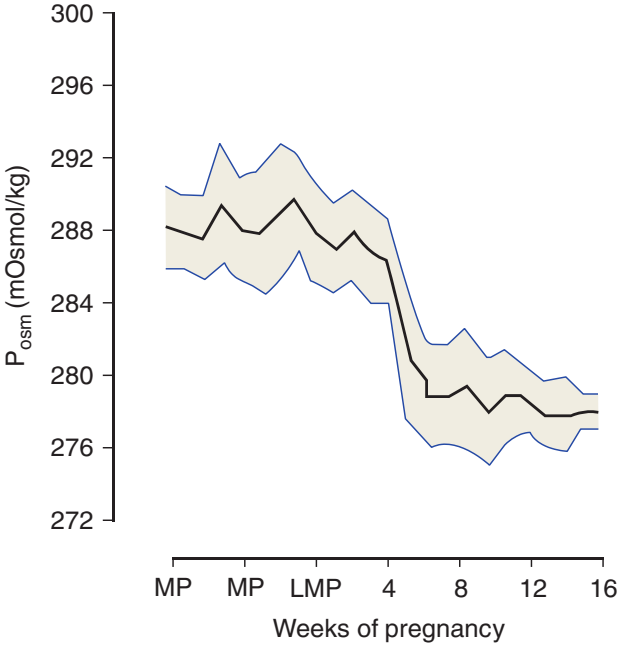


FIGURE 4-2 Mean values (*black line*) ± standard deviations (*blue lines*) for plasma osmolality (P_{osm}) measured at weekly intervals in nine women from preconception to 16 weeks. LMP = last menstrual period; MP = menstrual period. (Redrawn from Davison JM, Dunlop W. Renal hemodynamics and tubular function normal human pregnancy, Kidney Int 1980 Aug;18(2):152–161.)

Demonstrable pitting edema of the ankles and legs is seen in most gravidas, especially at the day's end. This fluid accumulation may amount to a liter or so. It results from greater venous pressure below the level of the uterus as a consequence of partial vena cava occlusion. A decline in interstitial colloid osmotic pressure induced by normal pregnancy also favors edema late in pregnancy (Øian, 1985).

Longitudinal studies of body composition show a progressive accumulation of total body water and fat mass during pregnancy. These two components as well as initial maternal weight and weight gained during pregnancy are highly associated with neonatal birthweight (Lederman, 1999). As discussed in Chapter 51 (p. 905), "overnourished" women are more likely to deliver oversized neonates, even when glucose tolerant.

Protein Metabolism

The products of conception, the uterus, and maternal blood are relatively rich in protein rather than fat or carbohydrate. At term, the normally grown fetus and placenta together weigh about 4 kg and contain approximately 500 g of protein, or about half of the total pregnancy increase. The remaining 500 g is added to the uterus as contractile protein, to the breasts primarily in the glands, and to maternal blood as hemoglobin and plasma proteins.

Amino acid concentrations are higher in the fetal than in the maternal compartment and generally result from facilitated transport across the placenta (Panitchob, 2015). This greater concentration is largely regulated by the placenta through an incompletely understood process (Chap. 7, p. 136). In particular, placental transport is variable for individuals and for different amino acids. For example, tyrosine is a conditionally essential amino acid in the preterm neonate but not in the fetus (Van den Akker, 2011). The placenta concentrates amino acids into the fetal circulation and is also involved in protein synthesis, oxidation, and transamination of some nonessential amino acids (Galan, 2009).

Maternal protein intake does not appear to be a critical determinant for birthweight among well-nourished women (Chong, 2015). Still, recent data suggest that current recommendations for protein intake may be too low. These guidelines are extrapolated from nonpregnant adults and may underestimate actual needs. Stephens and colleagues (2015) prospectively analyzed maternal protein intake and metabolism. They estimated average requirements of 1.22 g/kg/d of protein for early pregnancy and 1.52 g/kg/d for late pregnancy. These levels are higher than the current recommendation of 0.88 g/kg/d. Dietary protein intake is discussed in Chapter 10 (p. 185).

Carbohydrate Metabolism

Normal pregnancy is characterized by mild fasting hypoglycemia, postprandial hyperglycemia, and hyperinsulinemia (Fig. 4-3) (Phelps, 1981). This elevated basal level of plasma insulin in normal pregnancy is associated with several unique responses to glucose ingestion. Specifically, after an oral

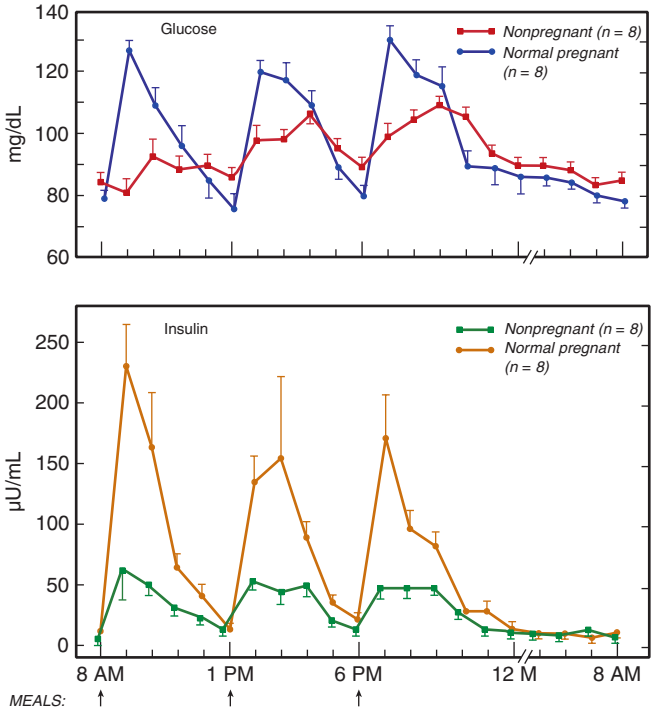


FIGURE 4-3 Diurnal changes in plasma glucose and insulin in normal late pregnancy.

glucose meal, gravidas demonstrate prolonged hyperglycemia and hyperinsulinemia and a greater suppression of glucagon. This cannot be explained by an increased metabolism of insulin because its half-life during pregnancy is not changed appreciably (Lind, 1977). Instead, this response reflects a pregnancy-induced state of peripheral insulin resistance, which ensures a sustained postprandial supply of glucose to the fetus. Indeed, insulin sensitivity in late normal pregnancy is 30 to 70 percent lower than that of nonpregnant women (Lowe, 2014).

The mechanisms responsible for this reduced insulin sensitivity include numerous endocrine and inflammatory factors (Angueira, 2015). In particular, pregnancy-related hormones such as progesterone, placentally derived growth hormone, prolactin, and cortisol; cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor; and hormones derived from central adiposity, particularly leptin and its interplay with prolactin, all have a role in the insulin resistance of pregnancy. Even so, insulin resistance is not the only factor to elevate postprandial glucose values. Hepatic gluconeogenesis is augmented during both diabetic and nondiabetic pregnancies, particularly in the third trimester (Angueira, 2015).

When fasting overnight, the pregnant woman changes from a postprandial state characterized by elevated and sustained glucose levels to a fasting state characterized by lower levels of plasma glucose and some amino acids. Instead, plasma concentrations of free fatty acids, triglycerides, and cholesterol are higher in the fasting state. This pregnancy-induced switch in fuels from glucose to lipids has been called *accelerated starvation.* Certainly, when fasting is prolonged in the pregnant woman, these alterations are exaggerated and ketonemia rapidly appears.

Fat Metabolism

The concentrations of lipids, lipoproteins, and apolipoproteins in plasma rise appreciably during pregnancy (Appendix, p. 1231). Increased insulin resistance and estrogen stimulation during pregnancy are responsible for maternal hyperlipidemia. Augmented lipid synthesis and food intake contribute to maternal fat accumulation during the first two trimesters. Overweight women who have excessive gestational weight gain accrue fat mass (Berggren, 2016). In the third trimester, however, fat storage declines or ceases. This is a consequence of enhanced lipolytic activity, and decreased lipoprotein lipase activity reduces circulating triglyceride uptake into adipose tissue. This transition to a catabolic state favors maternal use of lipids as an energy source and spares glucose and amino acids for the fetus.

Maternal hyperlipidemia is one of the most consistent and striking changes of lipid metabolism during late pregnancy. Triacylglycerol and cholesterol levels in very-low-density lipoproteins (VLDLs), low-density lipoproteins (LDLs), and high-density lipoproteins (HDLs) are increased during the third trimester compared with those in nonpregnant women (Table 4-3). After delivery, the concentrations of these lipids, lipoproteins, and apolipoproteins decline. Breastfeeding drops maternal triglyceride levels but increases those of HDL cholesterol (HDL-C). The effects on total cholesterol and LDL cholesterol levels are unclear (Gunderson, 2014).

Hyperlipidemia is theoretically a concern because it is associated with endothelial dysfunction. That said, endothelium-dependent vasodilation responses actually improve across pregnancy (Saarelainen, 2006). This is partly because increased HDL-C concentrations likely inhibit LDL oxidation and thus protect the endothelium. These findings suggest that the increased cardiovascular disease risk in multiparas may be related to factors other than maternal hypercholesterolemia.

Leptin

This peptide hormone is primarily secreted by adipose tissue in nonpregnant humans. It plays a key role in body fat and energy expenditure regulation and in reproduction. For example, leptin is important for implantation, cell proliferation, and angiogenesis (Vazquez, 2015). Leptin deficiency is associated with anovulation and infertility, whereas certain leptin mutations cause extreme obesity (Tsai, 2015).

Among normal-weight gravidas, serum leptin levels rise and peak during the second trimester and plateau until term in concentrations two to four times higher than those in nonpregnant women. Among obese women, leptin levels correlate with adiposity (Tsai, 2015). In all cases, leptin levels fall after delivery, reflecting the significant amounts produced by the placenta (Vazquez, 2015).

Leptin participates in regulating energy metabolism during pregnancy. Despite the rise in leptin concentrations during pregnancy, reduced leptin sensitivity to food intake during pregnancy has been described (Chehab, 2014). This "leptin resistance" may serve to promote energy storage during pregnancy and for later lactation.

Higher leptin levels during pregnancy may be disadvantageous under certain situations, such as maternal obesity. Leptin functions as a proinflammatory cytokine in white adipose tissue, which may dysregulate the inflammatory cascade and lead to placental dysfunction in obese women (Vazquez, 2015). In addition, abnormally elevated leptin levels have been associated with preeclampsia, gestational diabetes, and fetal distress (Rabiepoor, 2019; Taylor, 2015).

Fetal leptin is important for the development of several organs that include the pancreas, kidney, heart, and brain. Fetal levels correlate with maternal body mass index and birthweight (Özdemir, 2020). Lower levels are linked to fetal-growth restriction (Briffa, 2015).

TABLE 4-3. Plasma Concentrations of Lipids

Lipid	Nonpregnant	Third Trimester[a,b]
Total cholesterol	<200 mg/dL	267 ± 30 mg/dL
LDL	<100 mg/dL	136 ± 33 mg/dL
HDL	40–60 mg/dL	81 ± 17 mg/dL
Triglycerides	<150 mg/dL	245 ± 73 mg/dL

[a]Values from the Appendix (p. 1231).
[b]Values expressed as mean ± standard deviation.
HDL = high-density lipoprotein; LDL = low-density lipoprotein.

Other Adipocytokines

Dozens of hormones with metabolic and/or inflammatory functions are produced by adipose tissue. *Adiponectin* is a peptide produced primarily in maternal fat but not in the placenta (Haghiac, 2014). It may play a role in early pregnancy to assure a source of glycogen for fetal energy (Duval, 2018). Adiponectin levels inversely correlate with adiposity, and it acts as a potent insulin sensitizer. Despite reduced adiponectin levels in women with gestational diabetes, directed assays are not useful for predicting diabetes development (Hauguel-de Mouzon, 2013).

Ghrelin is a peptide secreted mainly by the stomach in response to hunger. It cooperates with other neuroendocrine factors, such as leptin, in energy homeostasis. Ghrelin is also expressed in the placenta and likely has a role in fetal growth and cell proliferation (González-Domínguez, 2016).

Visfatin is a peptide that was first identified as a growth factor for B lymphocytes but is mainly produced within adipose tissue. Mumtaz and associates (2015) propose that elevated levels of visfatin and leptin impair uterine contractility. Such findings may provide a physiological basis for the observation that maternal obesity raises the risk for dysfunctional labor.

Electrolyte and Mineral Metabolism

During normal pregnancy, nearly 1000 mEq of *sodium* and 300 mEq of *potassium* are retained (Lindheimer, 1987). The glomerular filtration rate of sodium and potassium is increased, but the excretion of these electrolytes is unchanged during pregnancy as a result of enhanced tubular resorption (Brown, 1988). Although total accumulations of sodium and potassium are elevated, their serum concentrations are diminished slightly (Appendix, p. 1229). Several mechanisms may explain these

lower levels (Odutayo, 2012). In the case of potassium, it possibly involves the expanded plasma volume of pregnancy. With respect to sodium, osmoregulation is altered, and the threshold for arginine vasopressin release is lowered. This promotes free water retention and diminished sodium levels.

Total serum *calcium* levels, which include both ionized and nonionized calcium, decrease during pregnancy. This reduction follows lowered plasma albumin concentrations and in turn a consequent decline in the amount of circulating protein-bound nonionized calcium. Serum ionized calcium levels, however, remain unchanged (Olausson, 2012).

The developing fetus imposes a significant demand on maternal calcium homeostasis. For example, the fetal skeleton accrues approximately 30 g of calcium by term, 80 percent of which is deposited during the third trimester. This demand is largely met by a doubling of maternal intestinal calcium absorption mediated partly by 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D_3, the serum levels of which also are doubled. These higher levels of vitamin D are possibly stimulated by a twofold rise in parathyroid hormone (PTH)-related peptide levels produced by several tissues including the placenta (Olausson, 2012). To help compensate, dietary intake of sufficient calcium is necessary to prevent excess depletion from the mother. A list of all recommended daily allowances is found in Table 10-5 (p. 184). This is especially important for pregnant adolescents, in whom bones are still developing (Cullers, 2019). Unfortunately, a lack of robust data prevents drawing firm conclusions regarding the utility of calcium and vitamin D supplements during pregnancy (Bi, 2018; Hofmeyr, 2018).

Serum *magnesium* levels also decline during pregnancy. Compared with nonpregnant women, both total and ionized magnesium concentrations are significantly lower during normal pregnancy (Rylander, 2014).

Serum *phosphate* levels lie within the nonpregnant range (Larsson, 2008). Although calcitonin is an important regulator of serum calcium and phosphate, the importance of calcitonin as it relates to pregnancy is poorly understood (Olausson, 2012).

Iodine requirements increase during normal pregnancy for several reasons (Moleti, 2014). First, maternal thyroxine (T4) production rises to maintain maternal euthyroidism and to transfer thyroid hormone to the fetus prior to fetal thyroid functioning. Second, fetal thyroid hormone production increases during the second half of pregnancy. This contributes to greater maternal iodine requirements because iodine readily crosses the placenta. Third, the primary route of iodine excretion is the kidney. Beginning in early pregnancy, the iodine glomerular filtration rate increases by 30 to 50 percent. In sum, because of greater thyroid hormone production, fetal iodine requirements, and augmented renal clearance, dietary iodine needs are higher during normal gestation (Velasco, 2018).

Although the placenta has the ability to store iodine, whether this organ functions to protect the fetus from inadequate maternal dietary iodine is currently unknown. Iodine deficiency is discussed later in this chapter (p. 72) and in Chapter 61 (p. 1097). Extremely low or high maternal iodine intake may affect childhood neurodevelopment (Zhou, 2019). At the extreme, maternal supplements containing excessive iodine have been associated with congenital hypothyroidism. This stems from autoregulation in the thyroid gland—known as the *Wolff-Chaikoff effect*—to curb T4 production in response to iodine overconsumption.

The serum levels of many of these minerals are listed in the Appendix (p. 1229). With respect to most other minerals, pregnancy induces little change in their metabolism other than their retention in amounts equivalent to those needed for growth. An important exception is the considerably greater requirement for *iron*, which is discussed subsequently (Georgieff, 2021).

HEMATOLOGICAL CHANGES

Blood Volume

The well-known hypervolemia associated with normal pregnancy averages 40 to 45 percent above the nonpregnant blood volume after 32 to 34 weeks' gestation (Pritchard, 1965; Zeeman, 2009). In some, accumulated volume rises only modestly, whereas in others blood volume nearly doubles. A fetus is not essential, as augmented blood volume develops in some with hydatidiform mole. The stimulus is not known, but it likely is related to renin and prorenin with its effects on sodium and water retention (Fu, 2018). Simultaneously, vascular plasticity accommodates the larger blood volume (Osol, 2019).

Pregnancy-induced hypervolemia serves several functions. First, it meets the metabolic demands of the enlarged uterus and its greatly hypertrophied vascular system. It also provides abundant nutrients and elements to support the rapidly growing placenta and fetus. The expanded intravascular volume protects the mother, and in turn the fetus, against the deleterious effects of impaired venous return in the supine and erect positions. Last, it safeguards the mother against the adverse effects of parturition-associated blood loss.

Maternal blood volume begins to accrue during the first trimester. By 12 menstrual weeks, plasma volume expands by approximately 15 percent compared with that prior to pregnancy (Bernstein, 2001). Maternal blood volume grows most rapidly during the midtrimester, rises at a much slower rate during the third trimester, and reaches a plateau during the last several weeks of pregnancy (Fig. 4-4) (Thomsen, 1994). Blood volume accrues even more dramatically in twin gestations.

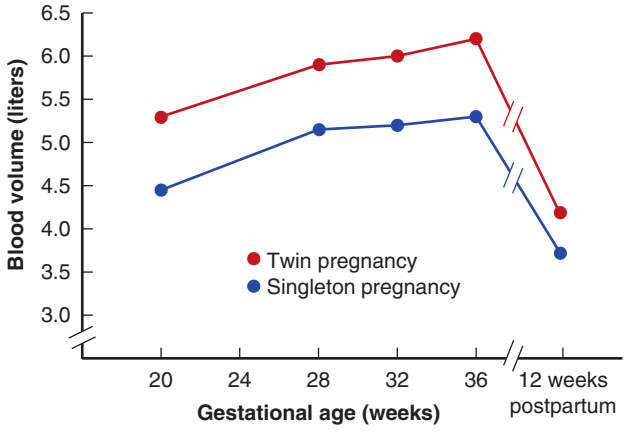


FIGURE 4-4 Blood volume expansion during pregnancy in twins (n = 10) and singletons (n = 40). Data shown as medians.

During blood volume expansion, plasma volume and erythrocyte mass increase. Although more plasma than erythrocytes is usually added to the maternal circulation, the increase in erythrocyte volume is considerable and averages 450 mL (Pritchard, 1960). Moderate erythroid hyperplasia develops in the bone marrow, and the reticulocyte count is elevated slightly during normal pregnancy. These changes are almost certainly related to the rise in maternal plasma erythropoietin levels (Appendix, p. 1227).

Because of great plasma augmentation, both hemoglobin concentration and hematocrit decline slightly during pregnancy. As a result, whole blood viscosity decreases (Huisman, 1987). Hemoglobin concentration at term averages 12.5 g/dL, and in approximately 5 percent of women it is below 11.0 g/dL. Thus, a concentration <11.0 g/dL, especially late in pregnancy, is considered abnormal and usually due to iron-deficiency anemia rather than pregnancy hypervolemia (Chap. 59, p. 1049).

Iron Metabolism

The total iron content of normal adult women ranges from 2.0 to 2.5 g, or approximately half that found normally in men. Most of this is incorporated in hemoglobin or myoglobin, and thus iron stores of normal young women approximate only 300 mg (Pritchard, 1964). Although the lower iron levels in women may be partly due to menstrual blood loss, other factors have a role. One is *hepcidin*—a peptide hormone that functions as a homeostatic regulator of systemic iron metabolism (Fisher, 2017). As shown in Figure 4-5, hepcidin levels drop early in pregnancy (Hedengran, 2016a,b). Lower hepcidin levels are associated with greater absorption of iron via ferroportin in enterocytes (Camaschella, 2015). Lower hepcidin levels also augment iron transport into the fetus via ferroportin in syncytiotrophoblast. Hepcidin levels rise with inflammation, but drop with iron deficiency and increased amount of several hormones, including testosterone, estrogen, vitamin D, and possibly prolactin (Liu, 2016).

Of the approximate 1000 mg of iron required for normal pregnancy, about 300 mg is actively transferred to the fetus and placenta, and another 200 mg is lost through various normal excretion routes, primarily the gastrointestinal tract. These are obligatory losses and accrue even when the mother is iron deficient. The average increase in the total circulating erythrocyte volume—about 450 mL—requires another 500 mg. Recall that each 1 mL of erythrocytes contains 1.1 mg of iron.

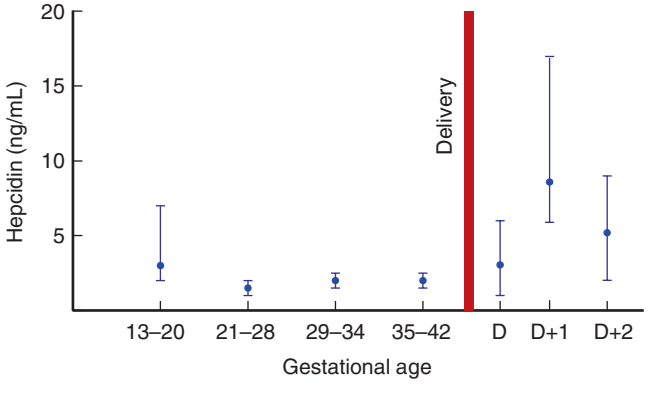


FIGURE 4-5 Hepcidin levels during pregnancy. Blue data points are median values and crossbars are the 25th and 75th percentiles. D is delivery and D + 1 and D + 2 are postpartum days 1 and 2.

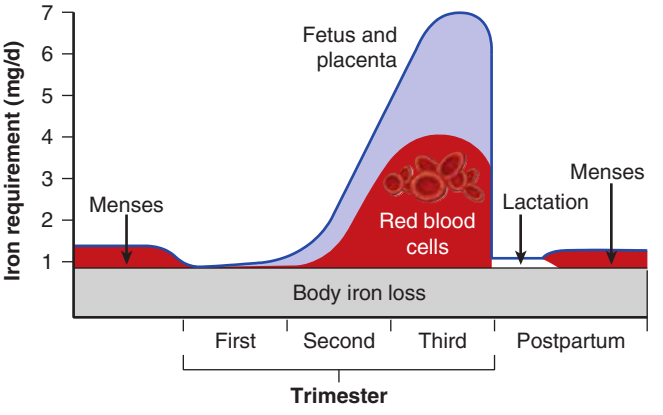


FIGURE 4-6 Estimated daily iron requirements during pregnancy in a 55-kg woman.

As shown in Figure 4-6, most iron is used during the latter half of pregnancy (Koenig, 2014). Thus, the iron requirement becomes large after midpregnancy and averages 6 to 7 mg/d (Pritchard, 1970). In most women, this amount is usually not available from iron stores or diet. If the nonanemic pregnant woman is not given supplemental iron, serum iron and ferritin concentrations decline after midpregnancy. Moreover, the optimal rise in maternal erythrocyte volume will not develop, and the hemoglobin concentration and hematocrit will fall appreciably as plasma volume rises. At the same time, fetal red cell production is not impaired because the placenta transfers iron even if the mother has marked iron-deficiency anemia. In severe cases, we have documented maternal hemoglobin values of 3 g/dL, and at the same time, fetuses had hemoglobin concentrations of 16 g/dL. The mechanisms of placental iron transport and regulation are complex (Koenig, 2014; McArdle, 2014).

With normal vaginal delivery, at least 500 to 600 mL of blood is typically lost, and thus not all the maternal iron added in the form of hemoglobin is spent. The excess hemoglobin iron postpartum becomes stored iron.

Immunological Functions

Pregnancy is associated with suppression of various humoral and cell-mediated immunological functions (Chap. 5, p. 93). This permits accommodation of the "foreign" semiallogeneic fetal graft that contains antigens of both maternal and paternal origin (Redman, 2015). The tolerance that exists at the maternal-fetal interface remains a great unsolved medical mystery. This tolerance is complex and involves certain immune system adaptations and crosstalk among the maternal microbiome, uterine decidua, and trophoblast. In particular, areas of the uterus that were previously considered sterile are colonized with bacteria. In most cases, these microbes are believed to be commensal and play a tolerizing and protective role. Indeed, commensal organisms may inhibit the proliferation of certain pathogens. Several reviewers have described these relationships (Mor, 2015; Racicot, 2014; Sisti, 2016).

One immune adaptation that promotes tolerance and protection at the maternal-fetal interface involves the expression of special major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecules on the trophoblast. Another immune adaptation that promotes tolerance stems from important changes in CD4 T lymphocyte subpopulations in pregnancy. Specifically, immunity mediated by T-helper (Th) 1 cells shifts to Th2-mediated immunity. An important antiinflammatory component of pregnancy involves suppression of Th1 and T-cytotoxic (Tc) 1 cells, which lower secretion of interleukin 2 (IL-2), interferon α, and tumor necrosis factor (TNF).

In cervical mucus, peak levels of immunoglobulins A and G (IgA and IgG) are significantly higher during pregnancy, and the immunoglobulin-rich cervical mucus plug creates a barrier to ascending infection (Hansen, 2014; Wang, 2014). Similarly, IgG is transferred to the developing fetus in the third trimester as a form of passive immunity, ostensibly in anticipation of birth. Immunoglobulins secreted into breast milk during lactation augment neonatal defenses against infection (Chap. 36, p. 640).

Leukocytes and Lymphocytes

Normal leukocyte counts during pregnancy can be higher than nonpregnant values, and upper values approach 15,000/μL (Appendix, p. 1227). During labor and the early puerperium, values may markedly rise to attain levels ≥25,000/μL (Gat, 2019). The cause is unknown, but the same response occurs during and after strenuous exercise. The leukocytosis possibly represents the reappearance of leukocytes previously shunted out of active circulation.

The distribution of lymphocyte cell types also is altered during pregnancy. Specifically, B lymphocytes numbers are unchanged, but the absolute numbers of T lymphocytes rise and create a relative increase. Concurrently, the ratio of CD4 to CD8 T lymphocytes does not change (Kühnert, 1998).

Inflammatory Markers

Many tests performed to diagnose inflammation cannot be used reliably during pregnancy. For example, *leukocyte alkaline phosphatase* levels—used to evaluate myeloproliferative disorders—are elevated beginning early in pregnancy. The concentration of *C-reactive protein,* an acute-phase serum reactant, rises rapidly in response to tissue trauma or inflammation. Median C-reactive protein levels in pregnancy and labor are higher than for nonpregnant women (Anderson, 2013). Of nonlaboring gravidas, 95 percent had levels measuring ≤1.5 mg/dL, and gestational age did not affect serum levels.

Another marker of inflammation, the *erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)*, is increased in normal pregnancy because of elevated plasma globulin and fibrinogen concentrations. *Complement factors C3* and *C4* levels also significantly rise during the second and third trimesters (Richani, 2005). Concentrations of *procalcitonin*, a normal precursor of calcitonin, are low to undetectable in midpregnancy but increase at the end of the third trimester and through the first few postpartum days (Bilinski, 2018). Procalcitonin levels rise with severe bacterial infections but remain low in viral infections and nonspecific inflammatory disease. However, measured levels poorly predict development of overt or subclinical chorioamnionitis after premature rupture of membranes (Thornburg, 2016; Tujula, 2018).

Coagulation and Fibrinolysis

During normal pregnancy, both coagulation and fibrinolysis are augmented but remain balanced to maintain hemostasis (Kenny, 2015). Evidence of activation includes increased concentrations of all clotting factors except factors XI and XIII (Table 4-4) (Cunningham, 2015).

Of procoagulants, the level and rate of thrombin generation throughout gestation progressively increase (McLean, 2012). In normal nonpregnant women, plasma fibrinogen (factor I) averages 300 mg/dL and ranges from 200 to 400 mg/dL. During normal pregnancy, the fibrinogen concentration rises approximately 50 percent. In late pregnancy, it averages 450 mg/dL, with a range from 300 to 600 mg/dL. As discussed, this contributes greatly to the striking elevation in the erythrocyte sedimentation rate. Also, levels of factor XIII—*fibrin stabilizing factor*—significantly drop as normal pregnancy advances (Sharief, 2014). Few studies describe thromboelastographic changes in normal pregnancy (Murray, 2018).

The end product of the coagulation cascade is fibrin formation, and the main function of the fibrinolytic system is to remove excess fibrin. Tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) converts plasminogen into plasmin, which is the enzyme that promotes fibrinolysis. It yields fibrin-degradation products such as D-dimers, and levels of these are increased in pregnancy (Hedengran, 2016b). Although somewhat conflicting, most evidence suggests that fibrinolytic activity is reduced in normal pregnancy (Kenny, 2015). As reviewed by Cunningham and

TABLE 4-4. Coagulation Factor Normal Values Across Pregnancy

Factor	Nonpregnant	Trimester		
		1st	2nd	3rd
Fibrinogen (mg/dL)	233–496	244–510	291–538	373–6.19
D-dimer (μg/mL)	0.22–0.74	0.05–0.95	0.32–1.29	0.13–1.7
Factor (% activity)				
V	50–150	75–95	72–96	60–88
VII	50–150	100–146	95–153	149–211
VIII	50–150	90–110	97–312	143–353
Protein C, functional (%)	70–130	78–121	83–133	67–135
Protein S, functional (%)	65–140	57–95	42–68	16–42

Nelson (2015), these changes favor fibrin formation. Although this is countered by increased levels of plasminogen, the net result is that pregnancy is a procoagulant state. Amnionic fluid is a potent activation of coagulation (Oda, 2018). Such changes serve to ensure hemostatic control during pregnancy, particularly during delivery when a certain amount of blood loss is expected.

Regulatory Proteins

Several proteins are natural inhibitors of coagulation, including proteins C and S and antithrombin. Inherited or acquired deficiencies of these and other natural regulatory proteins—collectively referred to as *thrombophilias*—account for many thromboembolic episodes during pregnancy. They are discussed in Chapter 55 (p. 976).

Activated protein C, along with the cofactors protein S and factor V, functions as an anticoagulant by neutralizing the procoagulants factor Va and factor VIIIa. During pregnancy, resistance to activated protein C grows progressively and is related to a concomitant drop in free protein S levels and greater factor VIII concentrations. Between the first and third trimesters, activated protein C levels decline from 2.4 to 1.9 U/mL, and free protein S concentrations diminish from 0.4 to 0.16 U/mL (Cunningham, 2015; Walker, 1997). Antithrombin levels drop by 13 percent between midpregnancy and term and fall 30 percent from this baseline until 12 hours after delivery. By 72 hours after delivery, there is a return to baseline (James, 2014).

Platelets

In a study of more than 7000 women, and as shown in Figure 4-7, the average platelet count declined across pregnancy and returned to normal nonpregnant values by 4 to 12 weeks postpartum (Reese, 2018). The platelet counts were lower for twin pregnancies. Lower platelet concentrations are partially due to hemodilution. In addition, platelet consumption is likely augmented and creates a greater proportion of younger and therefore larger platelets (Han, 2014). Further, clinically insignificant levels of several markers of platelet activation rise with gestational age but drop postpartum (Blomqvist, 2018). Because of splenic enlargement, an element of "hypersplenism," may sequester and prematurely destroy platelets (Kenny, 2015).

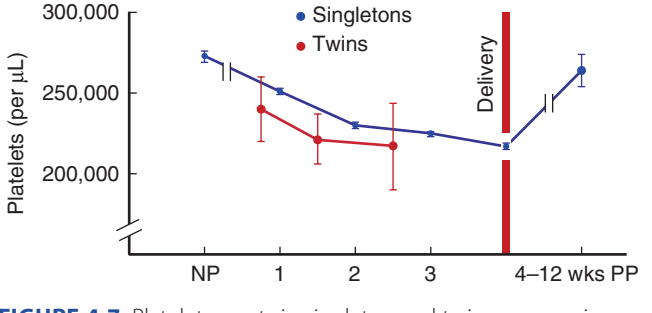


FIGURE 4-7 Platelet counts in singleton and twin pregnancies determined during 1st, 2nd, and 3rd trimester, at delivery, and then at 4–12 weeks postpartum. NP = nonpregnant. Values are means and 95% confidence intervals.

Spleen

By the end of normal pregnancy, the spleen enlarges up to 50 percent compared with that in the first trimester (Maymon, 2007). Moreover, Gayer and coworkers (2012) found that splenic size was 68-percent greater compared with that of nonpregnant controls. The cause of this splenomegaly is unknown, but it might follow the increased blood volume and/or the hemodynamic changes of pregnancy.

CARDIOVASCULAR SYSTEM

Changes in cardiac function become apparent during the first 8 weeks of pregnancy (Hibbard, 2015). Cardiac output is increased as early as the fifth week and reflects a reduced systemic vascular resistance and an increased heart rate. Compared with prepregnancy measurements, brachial systolic blood pressure, diastolic blood pressure, and central systolic blood pressure are all significantly lower 6 to 7 weeks from the last menstrual period (Mahendru, 2012). The resting pulse rate rises approximately 10 beats/min during pregnancy. Nelson and associates (2015) found that for both normal and overweight women, heart rate rose significantly between 12 and 16 weeks' and between 32 and 36 weeks' gestation. Between weeks 10 and 20, plasma volume expansion begins, and preload rises. This augmented preload results in a significantly larger left atrial volume and ejection fraction (Cong, 2015).

Ventricular performance during pregnancy is influenced by both the decline in systemic vascular resistance and changes in pulsatile arterial flow. Multiple factors contribute to this overall altered hemodynamic function, which allows the physiological demands of the fetus to be met while maintaining maternal cardiovascular integrity (Hibbard, 2015). These changes in stroke volume during the last half of pregnancy and the effects of maternal posture are summarized in Figure 4-8 (Nelson, 2015). Bijl and colleagues (2019) offer a detailed review of methods to measure cardiac function in gravidas.

Heart

As the diaphragm becomes progressively elevated, the heart is displaced to the left and upward and is rotated on its long

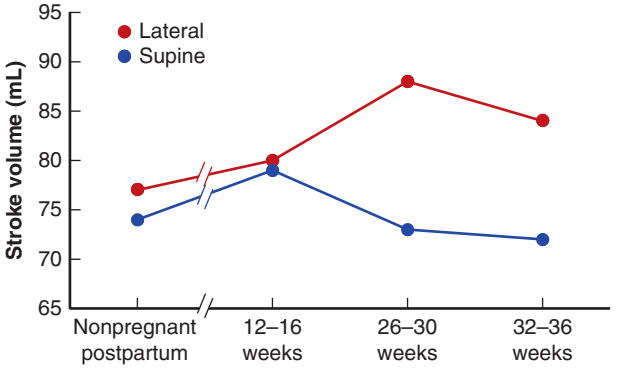


FIGURE 4-8 Left ventricular stroke volume across pregnancy compared with 12-week postpartum (nonpregnant) values for normal-weight women in the supine and lateral positions.

axis. As a result, the apex is moved somewhat laterally from its usual position and produces a larger cardiac silhouette in chest radiographs. Furthermore, gravidas normally have some degree of benign pericardial effusion, which may enlarge the cardiac silhouette (Enein, 1987). These factors make it difficult to precisely identify moderate degrees of cardiomegaly by simple radiographic studies.

Normal pregnancy induces some characteristic electrocardiographic (ECG) changes, and the most common is slight left-axis deviation due to the altered heart position. Q waves in leads II, III, and avF and flat or inverted T waves in leads III and V1–V3 also may be seen (Sunitha, 2014).

During pregnancy, many of the normal *cardiac sounds* are modified. These include: (1) an exaggerated splitting of the first heart sound and increased loudness of both components, (2) no definite changes in the aortic and pulmonary elements of the second sound, and (3) a loud, easily heard third sound (Cutforth, 1966). In most gravidas, a systolic murmur is intensified during inspiration in some or with expiration in others. Less often, a soft diastolic murmur can be noted transiently, and continuous murmurs arising from the breast vasculature may be heard (Fig. 52-1, p. 917).

Structurally, the expanding plasma volume seen during normal pregnancy is reflected by enlarging cardiac end-systolic and end-diastolic dimensions. Concurrently, however, septal thickness or ejection fraction does not change. This is because these dimensional changes are accompanied by substantive ventricular remodeling, which is characterized by left-ventricular mass expansion of 30 to 35 percent near term. In the nonpregnant state, the heart is capable of remodeling in response to stimuli such as hypertension and exercise. Such cardiac *plasticity* likely is a continuum that encompasses physiological growth as with exercise, and pathological hypertrophy as with hypertension (Hill, 2008; Osol, 2019).

Stewart and colleagues (2016) used cardiac MR imaging to prospectively evaluate cardiac remodeling during pregnancy. Compared with the first trimester, left ventricular mass significantly grew beginning at 26 to 30 weeks' gestation, and this continued until delivery (Fig. 4-9) (Stewart, 2016). This remodeling is concentric and proportional to maternal size for both normal and overweight women and resolved within 3 months of delivery. Certainly for clinical purposes,

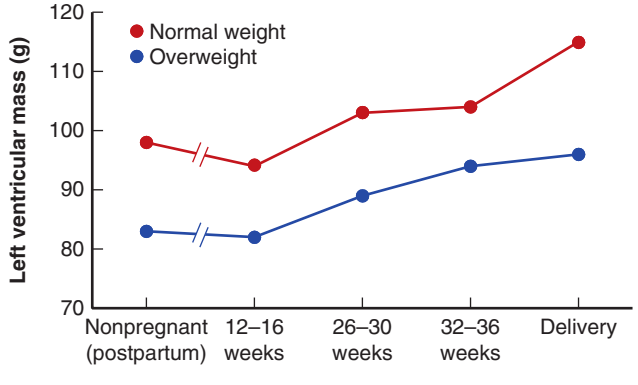


FIGURE 4-9 Left ventricular mass of normal-weight and overweight women across pregnancy compared with 12-week postpartum (nonpregnant) values.

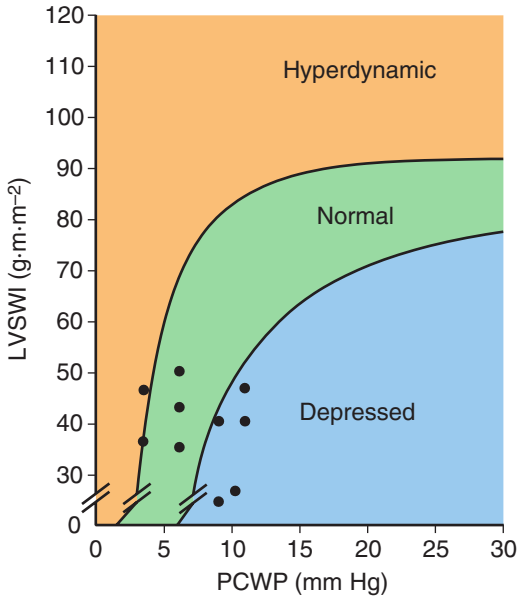


FIGURE 4-10 Relationship between left ventricular stroke work index (LVSWI), cardiac output, and pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP) in 10 normal pregnant women in the third trimester.

ventricular function during pregnancy is normal, as estimated by the *Braunwald ventricular function* graph (Fig. 4-10) (Clark, 1989). For the given filling pressures, cardiac output is appropriate and thus cardiac function during pregnancy is eudynamic. Of the metabolic changes that occur in the heart during pregnancy, the efficiency of cardiac work—which is the product of cardiac output × mean arterial pressure—is estimated to rise by approximately 25 percent. The associated increase in oxygen consumption is primarily accomplished via increased coronary blood flow rather than increased extraction (Liu, 2014).

Cardiac Output

When measured in the lateral recumbent position at rest, cardiac output increases significantly beginning in early pregnancy. It continues to rise and remains elevated during the remainder. In a supine woman, a large uterus consistently compresses veins and diminishes venous return from the lower body. It may also compress the aorta. In response, cardiac filling is limited, and cardiac output lessened. Specifically, cardiac MR imaging shows that a woman rolling from her back onto her left side raises her cardiac output at 26 to 30 weeks' gestation by approximately 20 percent and at 32 to 34 weeks by 10 percent (see Fig. 4-7). Consistent with this, Simpson and James (2005) found that fetal oxygen saturation is approximately 10 percent higher if a laboring woman lies in a lateral recumbent position compared with supine. Upon standing, cardiac output falls to the same degree as in the nonpregnant woman (Easterling, 1988).

In multifetal pregnancies, compared with singletons, maternal cardiac output is augmented further by almost another 20 percent. Ghi and coworkers (2015) used transthoracic echocardiography to show that first-trimester cardiac output with twins (mean 5.5 L/min) was more than 20 percent greater than postpartum values. Cardiac output values in the second (6.3 L/min)

and third (6.3 L/min) trimesters rose an additional 15 percent compared with first-trimester output. Due to augmented preload, left atrial and left ventricular end-diastolic diameters also grow with twins (Orabona, 2021). The augmented heart rate and inotropic contractility imply that cardiovascular reserve is reduced in multifetal gestations (Orabona, 2019).

During first-stage labor, cardiac output rises moderately. During the second stage, with vigorous expulsive efforts, it is appreciably greater. The pregnancy-induced increase is lost after delivery, at times dependent on blood loss.

Hemodynamic Function in Late Pregnancy

Clark and associates (1989) conducted invasive studies to measure hemodynamic function late in pregnancy (Table 4-5). Right heart catheterization was performed in 10 healthy nulliparas at 35 to 38 weeks' gestation, and again at 11 to 13 weeks postpartum. Late pregnancy was associated with the expected increases in heart rate, stroke volume, and cardiac output. Systemic vascular and pulmonary vascular resistance both dropped significantly, as did colloid osmotic pressure. Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure and central venous pressure did not change appreciably. Thus, although cardiac output rises, left ventricular function as measured by stroke work index remains similar to the nonpregnant normal range (see Fig. 4-10). Put another way, normal pregnancy is not a continuous "high-output" state (Herrera, 2018).

Circulation and Blood Pressure

Arterial pressure usually declines to a nadir at 24 to 26 weeks' gestation and rises thereafter. Diastolic pressure decreases more than systolic. Changes in posture affect arterial blood pressure (Fig. 4-11) (Wilson, 1980). Brachial artery pressure when sitting is lower than that when in the lateral recumbent supine position (Bamber, 2003). Additionally, systolic blood pressure is lower in the lateral positions compared with either the flexed sitting or supine positions (Armstrong, 2011). In approximately

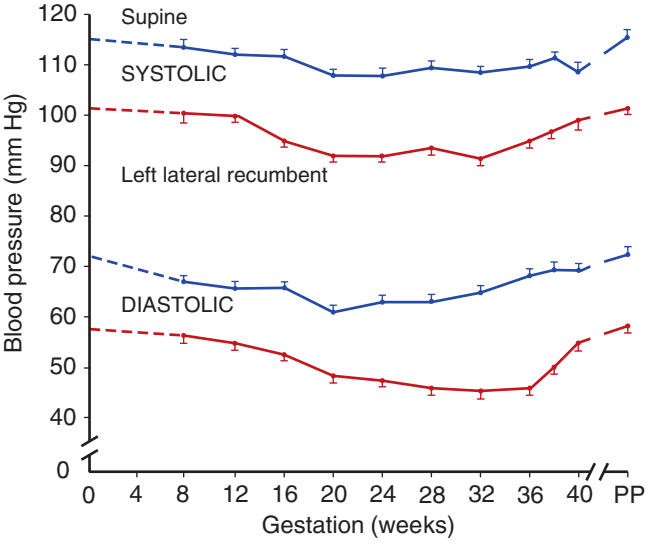


FIGURE 4-11 Sequential changes (± SEM) in blood pressure throughout pregnancy in 69 women in supine (*blue lines*) and left lateral recumbent positions (*red lines*). PP = postpartum.

10 percent of women, supine compression of the great vessels by the uterus causes significant arterial hypotension, sometimes referred to as the supine hypotensive syndrome. Also when supine, uterine arterial pressure—and thus uterine blood flow—is significantly lower than that in the brachial artery. Evidence to support whether this directly affects fetal heart rate patterns in uncomplicated low-risk pregnancies is conflicting (Armstrong, 2011; Ibrahim, 2015). Similar changes can also be seen with hemorrhage or with spinal analgesia.

Studies have assessed vascular compliance before pregnancy, during pregnancy, and postpartum (Morris, 2015; Osman, 2017). Compared with healthy nonpregnant controls, significant declines in mean arterial pressure and arterial stiffness were observed between prepregnant and postpartum time periods. These findings suggest that pregnancy confers a favorable effect on maternal cardiovascular remodeling.

TABLE 4-5. Central Hemodynamic Changes in 10 Normal Nulliparous Women Near Term and Postpartum

	Pregnant[a] (35–38 wk)	Postpartum (11–13 wk)	Change[b]
Mean arterial pressure (mm Hg)	90 ± 6	86 ± 8	NSC
Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (mm Hg)	8 ± 2	6 ± 2	NSC
Central venous pressure (mm Hg)	4 ± 3	4 ± 3	NSC
Heart rate (beats/min)	83 ± 10	71 ± 10	+17%
Cardiac output (L/min)	6.2 ± 1.0	4.3 ± 0.9	+43%
Systemic vascular resistance (dyn/sec/cm^{-5})	1210 ± 266	1530 ± 520	−21%
Pulmonary vascular resistance (dyn/sec/cm^{-5})	78 ± 22	119 ± 47	−34%
Serum colloid osmotic pressure (mm Hg)	18.0 ± 1.5	20.8 ± 1.0	−14%
COP-PCWP gradient (mm Hg)	10.5 ± 2.7	14.5 ± 2.5	−28%
Left ventricular stroke work index (g/m/m^2)	48 ± 6	41 ± 8	NSC

[a]Measured in lateral recumbent position.
[b]Changes significant unless NSC = no significant change.
COP = colloid osmotic pressure; PCWP = pulmonary capillary wedge pressure.

The venous system is a high-flow, low-resistance circulation during pregnancy (Gyselaers, 2018). While antecubital venous pressure remains unchanged, in the supine position, femoral venous pressure rises steadily, from approximately 8 mm Hg early in pregnancy to 24 mm Hg at term. Venous blood flow in the legs is retarded except when the lateral recumbent position is assumed. This tendency toward blood stagnation in the lower extremities during later pregnancy is attributable to occlusion of the pelvic veins and inferior vena cava by the enlarged uterus. The elevated venous pressure returns to normal when the pregnant woman lies on her side and immediately after delivery. These alterations contribute to the dependent edema frequently experienced and to development of hemorrhoids and varicose veins in the legs and vulva. These changes also predispose to deep-vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism.

Renin, Angiotensin II, and Plasma Volume

The renin-angiotensin-aldosterone axis is intimately involved in blood pressure control via sodium and water balance. All components of this system show increased levels in normal pregnancy. Renin is produced by both the maternal kidney and the placenta, and greater amounts of renin substrate (angiotensinogen) are produced by both maternal and fetal liver. Elevated angiotensinogen levels result, in part, from augmented estrogen production during normal pregnancy and are important in first-trimester blood pressure maintenance (West, 2016).

Gant and associates (1973) reported that nulliparas who remained normotensive became and stayed refractory to the pressor effects of infused angiotensin II. Conversely, those who ultimately became hypertensive developed, but then lost, this refractoriness. The diminished vascular responsiveness to angiotensin II may be progesterone related. Placental growth factor (PlGF) also blunts this response (Espinoza, 2019). Normally, pregnant women lose their acquired vascular refractoriness to angiotensin II within 15 to 30 minutes after the placenta is delivered. Large amounts of intramuscular progesterone given during late labor delay this diminishing responsiveness.

Cardiac Natriuretic Peptides

At least two species of these—*atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP)* and *brain natriuretic peptide (BNP)*—are secreted by cardiomyocytes in response to chamber-wall stretching. These peptides regulate blood volume by provoking natriuresis, diuresis, and vascular smooth-muscle relaxation. In nonpregnant and pregnant patients, levels of BNP and of amino-terminal pro–brain natriuretic peptide (Nt pro-BNP), as well as newer analytes such as suppressor of tumorigenicity 2 (ST2), may be useful in screening for depressed left ventricular systolic function and determining chronic heart failure prognosis (Cunningham, 2019; Ker, 2018).

During normal pregnancy, plasma ANP and BNP levels are maintained in the nonpregnant range despite greater plasma volume (Yurteri-Kaplan, 2012). In one study, median BNP levels were stable across pregnancy with values <20 pg/mL (Resnik, 2005). BNP levels are elevated in severe preeclampsia, and this may be caused by cardiac strain from increased afterload. It would appear that ANP-induced physiological adaptations participate in extracellular fluid volume expansion and in the elevated plasma aldosterone concentrations characteristic of normal pregnancy.

Prostaglandins

Elevated prostaglandin production during pregnancy is thought to have a central role in control of vascular tone, blood pressure, and sodium balance. Renal medullary prostaglandin E_2 synthesis is markedly elevated during late pregnancy and is presumed to be natriuretic. Levels of prostacyclin (PGI_2), the principal prostaglandin of endothelium, also rise during late pregnancy. PGI_2 regulates blood pressure and platelet function. It helps maintain vasodilation during pregnancy, and its deficiency is associated with pathological vasoconstriction (Shah, 2015). The ratio of PGI_2 to thromboxane in maternal urine and blood may be important indicators of preeclampsia pathogenesis.

Endothelin

Pregnancy generates several endothelins, which are vasoconstricting peptides. Endothelin-1 is a potent vasoconstrictor produced in endothelial and vascular smooth muscle cells and regulates local vasomotor tone (Lankhorst, 2016). Its production is stimulated by angiotensin II, arginine vasopressin, and thrombin. Endothelins, in turn, stimulate secretion of ANP, aldosterone, and catecholamines. Vascular sensitivity to endothelin 1 is not altered during normal pregnancy. Pathologically elevated levels may play a role in preeclampsia (Saleh, 2016).

Nitric Oxide

This potent vasodilator is released by endothelial cells and may modify vascular resistance during pregnancy. As discussed earlier (p. 52), nitric oxide is an important mediator of placental vascular tone and development (West, 2016). Abnormal nitric oxide synthesis has been linked to preeclampsia (Laskowska, 2015; Vignini, 2016).

RESPIRATORY TRACT

Of anatomical changes, the diaphragm rises approximately 4 cm during pregnancy (Fig. 4-12). The subcostal angle widens appreciably as the transverse diameter of the thoracic cage lengthens approximately 2 cm. The thoracic circumference increases about 6 cm, but not sufficiently to prevent reduced residual lung volumes created by the elevated diaphragm. Even so, diaphragmatic excursion is greater in pregnancy. Dyspnea is common (Rudder, 2021).

Pulmonary Function

Of physiological lung changes, *functional residual capacity (FRC)* decreases by approximately 20 to 30 percent or 400 to 700 mL during pregnancy (Fig. 4-13). This capacity is composed of *expiratory reserve volume*—which drops 15 to 20 percent or 200 to 300 mL—and *residual volume*—which decreases 20 to 25 percent or 200 to 400 mL. FRC and residual volume decline

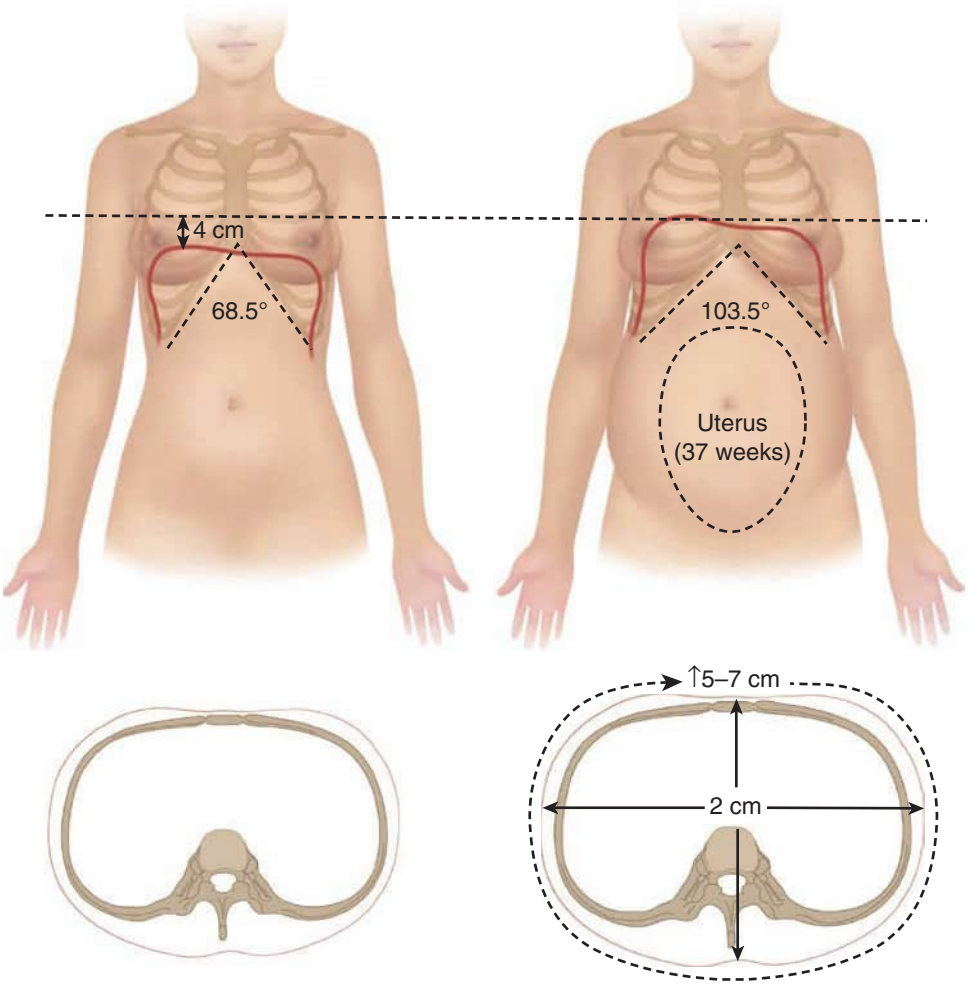


FIGURE 4-12 Chest wall measurements in nonpregnant (*left*) and pregnant women (*right*). The subcostal angle increases, as does the anteroposterior and transverse diameters of the chest wall and chest wall circumference. These changes compensate for the 4-cm elevation of the diaphragm so that total lung capacity is not significantly reduced. (Redrawn from Hegewald MJ, Crapo RO. Respiratory physiology in pregnancy, Clin Chest Med 2011 Mar;32(1):1–13.)

progressively across pregnancy due to diaphragm elevation. Significant reductions are observed by the sixth month. *Inspiratory capacity*, the maximum volume that can be inhaled from FRC, rises by 5 to 10 percent or 200 to 350 mL during pregnancy. *Total lung capacity*—the combination of FRC and inspiratory capacity—is unchanged or declines by <5 percent at term (Hegewald, 2011).

The respiratory rate is essentially unchanged, but *tidal volume* and *resting minute ventilation* increase significantly as pregnancy advances. Kolarzyk and coworkers (2005) reported significantly greater mean tidal volumes—0.66 to 0.8 L/min—and resting minute ventilations—10.7 to 14.1 L/min—compared with those of nonpregnant women. The elevated minute ventilation is caused by several factors. These include enhanced respiratory drive primarily due to the stimulatory action of progesterone, low expiratory reserve volume, and compensated respiratory alkalosis (Heenan, 2003). Also, decreased plasma osmolality can result in less respiratory depression (Moen, 2014).

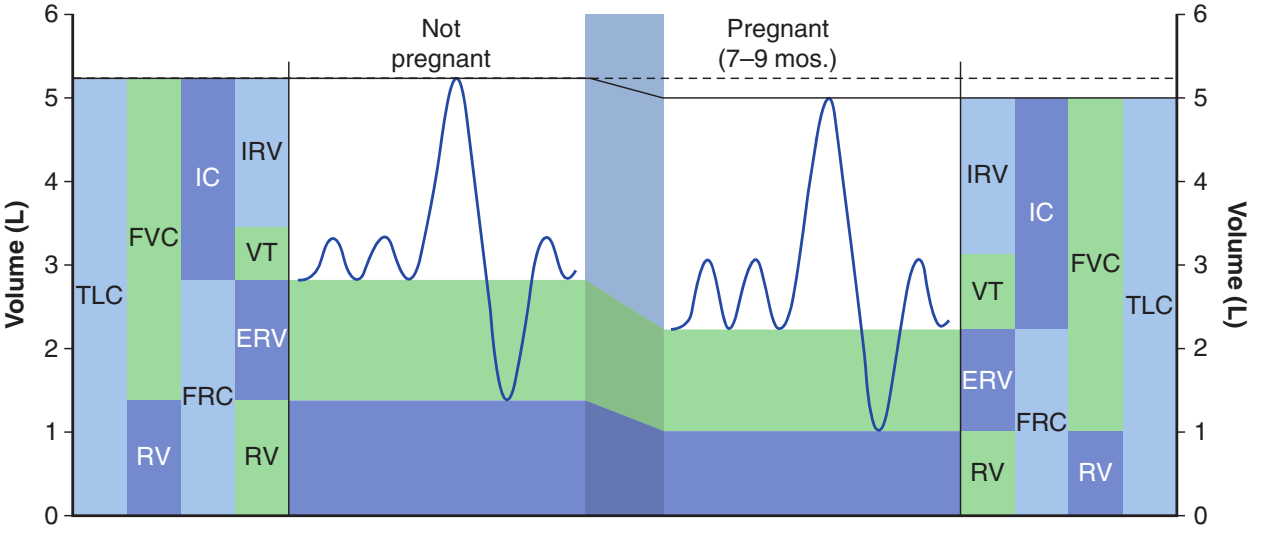


FIGURE 4-13 Changes in lung volumes with pregnancy. The most significant changes are reduction in functional residual capacity (FRC) and its subcomponents, expiratory reserve volume (ERV) and residual volume (RV), as well as increases in inspiratory capacity (IC) and tidal volume (VT). (Reproduced with permission from Hegewald MJ, Crapo RO. Respiratory physiology in pregnancy, Clin Chest Med 2011 Mar;32(1):1–13.)

Regarding pulmonary function, *peak expiratory flow rates* rise progressively as gestation advances (Grindheim, 2012). *Lung compliance* is unaffected by pregnancy. *Airway conductance* is increased and *total pulmonary resistance* reduced, possibly as a result of progesterone. The *maximum breathing capacity* and *forced* or *timed vital capacity* are not altered appreciably. It is unclear whether the critical *closing volume*—the lung volume at which airways in the dependent parts of the lung begin to close during expiration—is higher in pregnancy (Hegewald, 2011). Pulmonary function with a singleton pregnancy does not significantly differ from that with twins (Siddiqui, 2014). Importantly, the greater oxygen requirements and perhaps the increased critical closing volume imposed by pregnancy make respiratory diseases more serious.

Demir and colleagues (2015) studied nasal physiology in 85 pregnant women. Although the minimal cross-sectional area decreased between the first and third trimesters, subjective reports of nasal congestion or total nasal resistance did not significantly differ among trimesters or compared with nonpregnant controls.

Oxygen Delivery

The amount of oxygen delivered into the lungs by the increased tidal volume clearly exceeds oxygen requirements imposed by pregnancy. Moreover, the total hemoglobin mass and, in turn, total oxygen-carrying capacity rise appreciably during normal pregnancy, as does cardiac output. Consequently, the *maternal arteriovenous oxygen* difference is diminished. Oxygen consumption grows approximately 20 percent during pregnancy, and it is approximately 10 percent higher in multifetal gestations (Ajjimaporn, 2014). During labor, oxygen consumption increases 40 to 60 percent (Bobrowski, 2010).

Acid–Base Equilibrium

A greater awareness of a desire to breathe is common even early in pregnancy (Milne, 1978). This may be interpreted as dyspnea, which may suggest pulmonary or cardiac abnormalities when none exist. This physiological dyspnea, which should not interfere with normal physical activity, is thought to result from greater tidal volume that lowers the partial pressure of carbon dioxide (CO_2) in blood ($Paco_2$) slightly and paradoxically causes dyspnea. The increased respiratory effort during pregnancy, and in turn the reduction in the $Paco_2$, is likely induced in large part by progesterone and to a lesser degree by estrogen. Progesterone acts centrally. Here, it lowers the threshold and raises the sensitivity of the chemoreflex response to carbon dioxide (Jensen, 2005).

To compensate for the resulting respiratory alkalosis, plasma bicarbonate levels normally drop from 26 to 22 mmol/L. Although blood pH is increased only minimally, it does shift the oxygen dissociation curve to the left. This shift increases the affinity of maternal hemoglobin for oxygen—the *Bohr effect*—thereby lowering the oxygen-releasing capacity of maternal blood. This is offset because the slight pH rise also stimulates an increase in 2,3-diphosphoglycerate in maternal erythrocytes. This shifts the curve back to the right (Tsai, 1982). Thus, reduced $Paco_2$ from maternal hyperventilation aids CO_2 (waste) transfer from the fetus to the mother while also aiding oxygen release to the fetus.

URINARY SYSTEM

Kidney

The urinary system undergoes several remarkable changes in pregnancy (Table 4-6) (Lindheimer, 2000). *Kidney size* grows

TABLE 4-6. Renal Changes in Normal Pregnancy

Parameter	Alteration	Clinical Relevance
Kidney size	Approximately 1 cm longer on radiograph	Size returns to normal postpartum
Dilatation	Resembles hydronephrosis on sonogram or IVP (more marked on right)	Can be confused with obstructive uropathy; retained urine leads to collection errors; renal infections are more virulent; may be responsible for "distention syndrome"; elective pyelography should be deferred to at least 12 weeks postpartum
Renal function	Glomerular filtration rate and renal plasma flow increase ~50%	Serum creatinine decreases during normal gestation; >0.8 mg/dL (>72 μmol/L) creatinine already borderline; protein, amino acid, and glucose excretion all increase
Maintenance of acid-base	Decreased bicarbonate threshold; progesterone stimulates respiratory center	Serum bicarbonate decreased by 4–5 mEq/L; Pco_2 decreased 10 mm Hg; a Pco_2 of 40 mm Hg already represents CO_2 retention
Plasma osmolality	Osmoregulation altered; osmotic thresholds for AVP release and thirst decrease; hormonal disposal rates increase	Serum osmolality decreases 10 mOsm/L (serum Na^+ ~5 mEq/L) during normal gestation; increased placental metabolism of AVP may cause transient diabetes insipidus during pregnancy

AVP = vasopressin; IVP = intravenous pyelography; Pco_2 = partial pressure carbon dioxide.

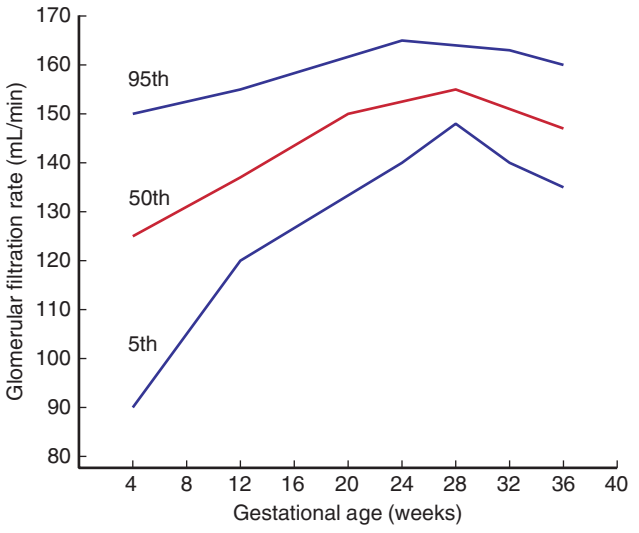


FIGURE 4-14 Glomerular filtration rate across pregnancy as measured by inulin clearance. The solid line is the 50th percentile and the dashed lines are the 5th and 95th percentiles.

approximately 1.0 cm (Cietak, 1985). Both the *glomerular filtration rate (GFR)* and *renal plasma flow* increase early in pregnancy. The GFR rises as much as 25 percent by the second week after conception and 50 percent by the beginning of the second trimester (Fig. 4-14) (Lopes van Balen, 2019). This hyperfiltration results from two principal factors. First, hypervolemia-induced hemodilution lowers the protein concentration and oncotic pressure of plasma entering the glomerular microcirculation. Second, renal plasma flow rises by approximately 80 percent before the end of the first trimester (Conrad, 2015; Lopes van Balen, 2019). Elevated GFR persists until term, even though renal plasma flow declines during late pregnancy. Primarily as a consequence of this elevated GFR, approximately 60 percent of nulliparas during the third trimester experience urinary frequency, and 80 percent experience nocturia (Frederice, 2013).

During the puerperium, a marked GFR persists during the first postpartum day, principally from the reduced glomerular capillary oncotic pressure. The gestational hypervolemia and hemodilution, still evident on the first postpartum day, resolves by the second week postpartum.

Studies suggest that relaxin, discussed earlier (p. 54), may mediate both increased GFR and renal blood flow during pregnancy (Conrad, 2015). Relaxin boosts renal nitric oxide production, which leads to renal vasodilation and lowered renal afferent and efferent arteriolar resistance. This augments renal blood flow and GFR (Bramham, 2016). Relaxin may also increase vascular gelatinase activity during pregnancy, which leads to renal vasodilation, glomerular hyperfiltration, and reduced myogenic reactivity of small renal arteries (Odutayo, 2012).

As with blood pressure, maternal posture may considerably influence several aspects of renal function. Late in pregnancy, the sodium excretion rate in the supine position averages less than half that in the lateral recumbent position. The effects of posture on GFR and renal plasma flow vary.

One unusual feature of the pregnancy-induced changes in renal excretion is the remarkably higher amounts of some nutrients lost in the urine. Amino acids and water-soluble vitamins are excreted in much greater amounts (Shibata, 2013).

Renal Function Tests

The mean nonpregnancy serum creatinine level of 0.7 mg/dL declines during normal pregnancy to 0.5 mg/dL. *Values ≥0.9 mg/dL suggest underlying renal disease and prompt further evaluation.* Creatinine clearance in pregnancy averages 30 percent higher than the 100 to 115 mL/min in nonpregnant women. This is a useful test to estimate renal function, provided that complete urine collection is made during an accurately timed period. If this is not done precisely, results are misleading (Lindheimer, 2010). During the day, pregnant women tend to accumulate water as dependent edema. When recumbent at night, they mobilize this fluid with diuresis. This reversal of the usual nonpregnant diurnal pattern of urinary flow causes nocturia, and urine is more dilute than in nonpregnant women. Failure of a pregnant woman to excrete concentrated urine after withholding fluids for approximately 18 hours does not necessarily signify renal damage. In fact, the kidneys in these circumstances function perfectly normally by excreting mobilized extracellular fluid of relatively low osmolality.

Urinalysis

Glucosuria during pregnancy may not be abnormal. The appreciably increased GFR, together with impaired tubular reabsorptive capacity for filtered glucose, accounts for most cases of glucosuria. Chesley (1963) calculated that approximately one sixth of gravidas will spill glucose in the urine. As discussed in Chapter 56 (p. 994), although the sensitivity is low, glucosuria may be an indicator of gestational diabetes mellitus. For women with glucosuria, no guidelines in the United States direct practice, but in the United Kingdom, early oral glucose testing is considered for those with an isolated 2+ or repetitive 1+ urine dipstick readings (National Institute for Health And Clinical Excellence, 2015).

Hematuria most often suggests urinary tract disease or infection. Evaluation of this finding is outlined in Chapter 56 (p. 995). Hematuria is common after difficult labor and delivery because of trauma to the bladder and urethra.

Proteinuria is typically defined in nonpregnant subjects as a protein excretion rate of more than 150 mg/d. Because of the aforementioned hyperfiltration and possible reduction of tubular reabsorption, proteinuria during pregnancy is usually considered significant once a protein excretion threshold of at least 300 mg/d is reached (Odutayo, 2012). Higby and coworkers (1994) measured protein excretion in 270 normal women throughout pregnancy (Fig. 4-15). Mean 24-hour excretion for all three trimesters was 115 mg, and the upper 95-percent confidence limit was 260 mg/d without significant differences by trimester. They showed that albumin excretion is minimal and ranges from 5 to 30 mg/d. Proteinuria increases with gestational age, which corresponds with the peak in GFR (Benzing, 2021).

Measuring Urine Protein

The three most commonly employed approaches for assessing proteinuria are the qualitative classic dipstick, the quantitative

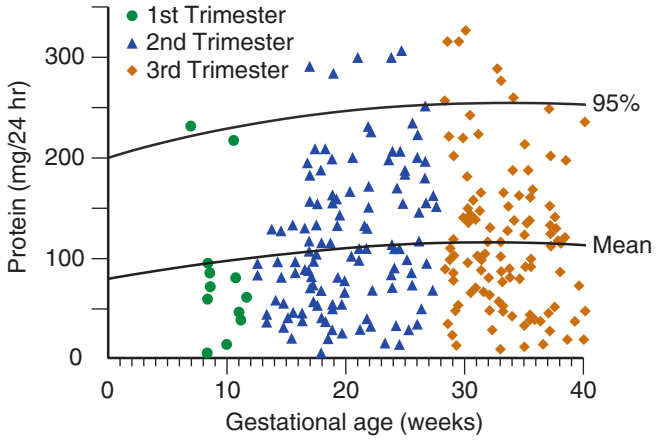


FIGURE 4-15 Scatter plot of women showing 24-hour urinary total protein excretion by gestational age. Mean and 95-percent confidence limits are outlined. (Modified with permission from Higby K, Suiter CR, Phelps JY, et al: Normal values of urinary albumin and total protein excretion during pregnancy, Am J Obstet Gynecol 1994 Oct;171(4):984–989.)

24-hour collection, and the albumin/creatinine or protein/creatinine ratio of a single voided urine specimen. The pitfalls of each approach have been reviewed (Bramham, 2016; Conrad, 2015).

With dipstick assessment, the principal problem is its failure to account for renal concentration or dilution of urine. For example, with polyuria and extremely dilute urine, a negative or trace dipstick could actually be associated with excessive protein excretion.

The 24-hour urine collection is affected by urinary tract dilation, discussed in the next section. The dilated tract may lead to errors related both to retention—hundreds of milliliters of urine remaining in the dilated tract—and to timing—the remaining urine may have formed hours before the collection. To minimize these pitfalls, the patient is first hydrated and positioned in lateral recumbency—the definitive nonobstructive posture—for 45 to 60 minutes. After this, she is asked to void, and this specimen is discarded. Immediately following this void, her 24-hour collection begins. During the final hour of collection, the patient is again placed in the lateral recumbent position. But, at the end of this hour, the final collected urine is incorporated into the total collected volume (Lindheimer, 2010).

Last, the protein:creatinine ratio is a promising approach because data can be obtained quickly and collection errors are avoided. Disadvantageously, the amount of protein per unit of creatinine excreted during a 24-hour period is not constant, and the thresholds to define abnormal vary. Nomograms for urinary microalbumin and creatinine ratios during uncomplicated pregnancies have been developed. The ratio is unreliable postpartum (Aziz, 2018).

■ Ureters

After the uterus completely rises out of the pelvis, it rests on the ureters. This laterally displaces and compresses them at the pelvic brim. Above this level, elevated intraureteral tonus results, and ureteral dilation (hydroureter) and hydronephrosis is impressive. It is greater on the right side as shown in Figure 4-16

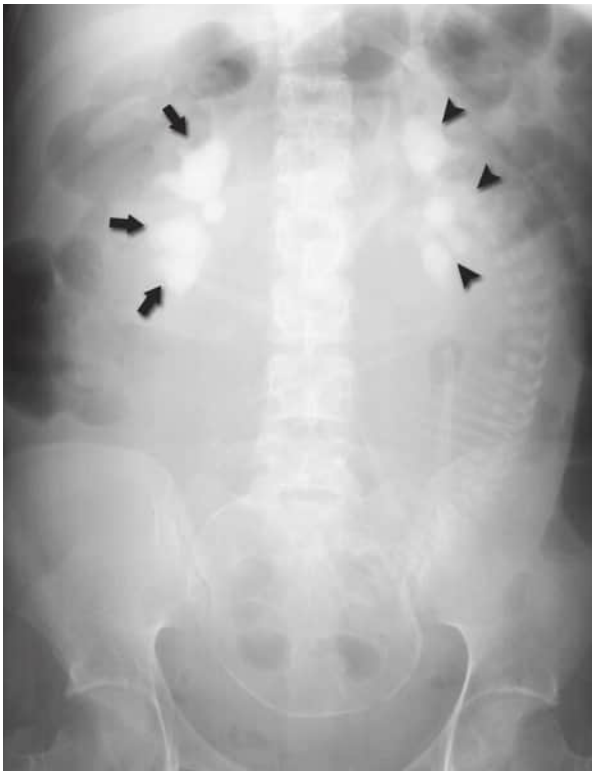


FIGURE 4-16 Hydronephrosis. Plain film from the 15-minute image of an intravenous pyelogram (IVP). Moderate hydronephrosis on the right (*arrows*) and mild hydronephrosis on the left (*arrowheads*) are both normal for this 35-week gestation.

(Wadasinghe, 2016). It is right sided in 86 percent of women. This unequal dilation may result from cushioning provided to the left ureter by the sigmoid colon and perhaps from greater right ureteral compression exerted by the dextrorotated uterus. The right ovarian vein complex, which is remarkably dilated during pregnancy, lies obliquely over the right ureter and may also contribute to ureteral compression and proximal dilation.

Progesterone likely has some additional effect. Van Wagenen and Jenkins (1939) described continued ureteral dilation after removal of the monkey fetus but with the placenta left in situ. The relatively abrupt onset of dilation in women at midpregnancy, however, seems more consistent with ureteral compression.

Ureteral elongation accompanies distention, and the ureter is frequently thrown into curves of varying size, and smaller curves may be sharply angulated. These so-called kinks are poorly named, because the term connotes obstruction. They are usually single or double curves that, when viewed in a radiograph taken in the same plane as the curve, may appear as acute angulations. Another exposure at right angles nearly always identifies them to be gentle curves. Despite these anatomical changes, complication rates associated with ureteroscopy in pregnant and nonpregnant patients do not differ significantly (Semins, 2014).

■ Bladder

The bladder shows few significant anatomical changes before 12 weeks' gestation. Subsequently, however, increased uterine size, the hyperemia that affects all pelvic organs, and hyperplasia

of bladder muscle and connective tissues together elevate the trigone and thicken its intraureteric margin. Continuation of this process to term produces marked deepening and widening of the trigone. The bladder mucosa is unchanged other than an increase in the size and tortuosity of its blood vessels.

Bladder pressure in primigravidas rises from 8 cm H_2O early in pregnancy to 20 cm H_2O at term (Iosif, 1980). To compensate for reduced bladder capacity, absolute and functional urethral lengths increase by 6.7 and 4.8 mm, respectively. Concurrently, maximal intraurethral pressure rises from 70 to 93 cm H_2O, and thus continence is maintained. Still, at least half of women experience some degree of urinary incontinence by the third trimester (Abeysekera, 2016). Indeed, this is always considered in the differential diagnosis of ruptured membranes. Near term—particularly in nulliparas, in whom the presenting part often engages before labor—the entire base of the bladder is pushed ventral and cephalad. This converts the normally convex surface into a concavity. As a result, diagnostic and therapeutic procedures are more difficult. Moreover, pressure from the presenting part impairs blood and lymph drainage from the bladder base, often rendering the area edematous, easily traumatized, and possibly more susceptible to infection.

GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT

As pregnancy progresses, the stomach and intestines are displaced cephalad by the enlarging uterus. Consequently, the physical findings in certain diseases are altered. The appendix, for instance, is usually displaced upward and somewhat laterally. At times, it may reach the right flank.

Pyrosis (heartburn) is common during pregnancy and is most likely caused by reflux of acidic secretions into the lower esophagus. Although the altered stomach position probably contributes to its frequency, lower esophageal sphincter tone also is diminished. In addition, intraesophageal pressures are lower and intragastric pressures higher in pregnant women. Concurrently, esophageal peristalsis has lower wave speed and lower amplitude (Ulmsten, 1978).

Gastric emptying time is essentially unchanged across pregnancy in gravidas compared with nonpregnant women. In fasting women at term, gastric volume is not different than that in nonpregnant controls (Van de Putte, 2019). At term, during labor, and especially after administration of analgesics, however, gastric emptying time may be appreciably prolonged (Barboni, 2016). As a result, one danger of general anesthesia for delivery is regurgitation and aspiration of either food-laden or highly acidic gastric contents.

Some reports describe maternal gut microbiome changes during pregnancy (Smid, 2018). Currently, however, the vaginal and gut microbiome profiles and their influence on pregnancy are unclear (Taddei, 2018).

Hemorrhoids are common during pregnancy (Shin, 2015). They are caused in large measure by constipation and elevated pressure in rectal veins below the level of the enlarged uterus.

Liver

Liver size does not enlarge during human pregnancy. Hepatic arterial and portal venous blood flow, however, rise substantively (Clapp, 2000). Liver stiffness increases from the second to third trimester and returns to baseline postpartum (Ammon, 2018).

Some laboratory test results of hepatic function are altered in normal pregnancy (Appendix, p. 1229). Total alkaline phosphatase activity almost doubles, but much of the rise is attributable to heat-stable placental alkaline phosphatase isozymes. Serum aspartate transaminase (AST), alanine transaminase (ALT), γ-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT), and bilirubin levels are slightly lower compared with nonpregnant values (Cattozzo, 2013).

The serum albumin concentration declines during pregnancy. By late pregnancy, albumin levels may be near 3.0 g/dL compared with approximately 4.3 g/dL in nonpregnant women (Mendenhall, 1970). Total body albumin levels rise, however, because of pregnancy-associated expansion of plasma volume. Serum globulin levels also are slightly higher.

Leucine aminopeptidase is a proteolytic liver enzyme whose serum levels may be elevated with liver disease. Its activity is markedly higher in pregnant women. The rise, however, results from a pregnancy-specific enzyme(s) with distinct substrate specificities (Song, 1968). Pregnancy-induced aminopeptidase has oxytocinase and vasopressinase activity that occasionally causes transient diabetes insipidus (Chap. 61, p. 1104).

Gallbladder

During normal pregnancy, gallbladder volume expands by approximately 50 percent, contractility declines, and both lead to greater residual volume (Braverman, 1980). Progesterone potentially impairs gallbladder contraction by inhibiting cholecystokinin-mediated smooth muscle stimulation, which is the primary regulator of gallbladder contraction. Impaired emptying, subsequent stasis, and the greater cholesterol saturation of bile in pregnancy contribute to the increased prevalence of cholesterol gallstones in multiparas. In one study, approximately 8 percent of women had gallbladder sludge or stones (Ko, 2014).

The pregnancy effects on maternal serum bile acid concentrations are still incompletely characterized. This is despite the long-acknowledged propensity for pregnancy to cause intrahepatic cholestasis from retained bile salts. Cholestasis of pregnancy is described in Chapter 58 (p. 1032).

ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

Pituitary Gland

During normal pregnancy, the pituitary gland enlarges by approximately 135 percent (Woodmansee, 2019). This expansion may sufficiently compress the optic chiasma to reduce visual fields. Impaired vision from this is rare and usually due to macroadenomas (Lee, 2014). Pituitary enlargement is primarily caused by estrogen-stimulated hypertrophy and hyperplasia of the lactotrophs (Feldt-Rasmussen, 2011). As discussed subsequently, maternal serum prolactin levels parallel this growth. Gonadotroph number decline, and corticotroph and thyrotroph populations remain constant. Somatotroph function is generally suppressed due to negative feedback by the placental production of growth hormone.

Peak pituitary size may reach 12 mm in MR images in the first days postpartum. The gland involutes rapidly and reaches normal size by 6 months postpartum (Woodmansee, 2019). The incidence of pituitary prolactinomas is not increased during pregnancy. When these tumors are large before pregnancy, such as with macroadenomas that by definition measure ≥10 mm, then growth during pregnancy is more likely (Chap. 61, p. 1103).

The maternal pituitary gland is not essential for pregnancy maintenance. Many women have undergone hypophysectomy, completed pregnancy successfully, and entered spontaneous labor while receiving compensatory glucocorticoids, thyroid hormone, and vasopressin.

Of pituitary gland hormones, *growth hormone* during the first trimester is secreted predominantly from the maternal pituitary gland, and concentrations in serum and amnionic fluid lie within the nonpregnant range. As early as 6 weeks' gestation, growth hormone secreted from the placenta becomes detectable, and by approximately 20 weeks, the placenta is the principal source of growth hormone secretion (Woodmansee, 2019). During this time, maternal serum values rise slowly from approximately 3.5 ng/mL at 10 weeks to plateau at about 14 ng/mL after 28 weeks' gestation. Growth hormone in amnionic fluid peaks at 14 to 15 weeks' gestation and slowly declines thereafter to reach baseline values after 36 weeks.

Placental growth hormone—which differs from pituitary growth hormone by 13 amino acid residues—is secreted by syncytiotrophoblast (Newbern, 2011). Its regulation and physiological effects are incompletely understood, but it influences fetal growth via upregulation of insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF-1). That said, fetal growth still progresses in the complete absence of this hormone. Although not absolutely essential, the hormone may act in concert with placental lactogen to regulate fetal growth (Newbern, 2011).

Prolactin levels rise markedly in maternal plasma during normal pregnancy. Concentrations are usually tenfold greater at term—approximately 150 ng/mL—compared with those of nonpregnant women. Paradoxically, plasma levels drop after delivery even in women who are breastfeeding. During early lactation, pulsatile bursts of prolactin secretion are a response to suckling.

The principal function of maternal prolactin is to ensure lactation. Early in pregnancy, prolactin acts to initiate DNA synthesis and mitosis of glandular epithelial cells and presecretory alveolar cells of the breast. Prolactin also augments the number of estrogen and prolactin receptors in these cells. Last, prolactin promotes mammary alveolar cell RNA synthesis, galactopoiesis, and production of casein, lactalbumin, lactose, and lipids (Andersen, 1982). A woman with isolated prolactin deficiency failed to lactate after two pregnancies (Kauppila, 1987). This establishes prolactin as a requisite for lactation but not for pregnancy.

Grattan (2015) has reviewed the numerous physiological roles of prolactin to aid maternal adaptations to pregnancy. The prolactin receptor in the maternal pancreas indicates that prolactin may function to mediate pancreatic adaptations to pregnancy (Nteeba, 2019). A possible role is proposed for a prolactin fragment in the genesis of peripartum cardiomyopathy (Chap. 52, p. 933) (Cunningham, 2019; Koenig, 2018).

Prolactin is present in amnionic fluid in high concentrations. Levels of up to 10,000 ng/mL are found at 20 to 26 weeks' gestation. Thereafter, levels decline and reach a nadir after 34 weeks. Uterine decidua is the synthesis site of amnionic fluid prolactin. The exact function of this hormone is unknown, but water transfer from the fetus into the maternal compartment to prevent fetal dehydration is one suggestion.

Oxytocin and *antidiuretic hormone* are hormones secreted from the posterior pituitary gland. The roles of oxytocin in parturition and lactation are discussed in Chapters 21 (p. 413) and 36 (p. 640), respectively. Brown and colleagues (2013) have reviewed the complex mechanisms that promote quiescence of oxytocin systems during pregnancy. Levels of antidiuretic hormone, also called vasopressin, do not change during pregnancy. As discussed earlier (p. 56), osmolality is slightly higher in maternal compared with fetal blood, and the gradient favors water transport to the fetus (Moen, 2018).

Thyroid Gland

The maternal and fetal thyroid glands are intricately interrelated. On the maternal side, *thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH)* is secreted by the hypothalamus and stimulates thyrotrope cells of the anterior pituitary to release *thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH),* also called *thyrotropin*. TRH levels do not rise during normal pregnancy. However, TRH does cross the placenta and may serve to stimulate the fetal pituitary to secrete TSH.

Serum TSH and hCG levels vary with gestational age (Fig. 4-17) (Burrow, 1994). As discussed in Chapter 5 (p. 96), the α-subunits of the two glycoproteins are identical, whereas the β-subunits, although similar, differ in their amino acid sequence. As a result of this structural similarity, hCG has intrinsic thyrotropic activity, and thus, high serum hCG levels cause thyroid stimulation. Indeed, TSH levels in the first trimester decline in more than 80 percent of pregnant women, however, they still remain in the normal range for nonpregnant women.

The thyroid gland boosts production of thyroid hormones by 40 to 100 percent to meet maternal and fetal needs (Korevaar, 2017). To accomplish this, the thyroid gland undergoes moderate enlargement during pregnancy caused by glandular hyperplasia and greater vascularity. Mean thyroid volume expands from 12 mL in the first trimester to 15 mL at term (Glinoer, 1990). That said, normal pregnancy does not typically cause significant thyromegaly, and thus any goiter warrants evaluation.

Early in the first trimester, levels of the principal carrier protein—*thyroid-binding globulin (TBG)*—rise. They reach their zenith at about 20 weeks' gestation. Concentrations stabilize at approximately double baseline values for the remainder of pregnancy (see Fig. 4-17). The greater TBG concentrations result from both higher hepatic synthesis rates—due to estrogen stimulation—and lower metabolism rates due to increased TBG sialylation and glycosylation. These elevated TBG levels increase total serum T_4 and triiodothyronine (T_3) concentrations, but do not affect the physiologically important serum *free* T_4 and *free* T_3 levels. Specifically, total serum T_4 levels rise sharply beginning between 6 and 9 weeks' gestation and reach a plateau at 18 weeks. Serum free T_4 levels rise only slightly and peak along with hCG levels, and then they return to normal.

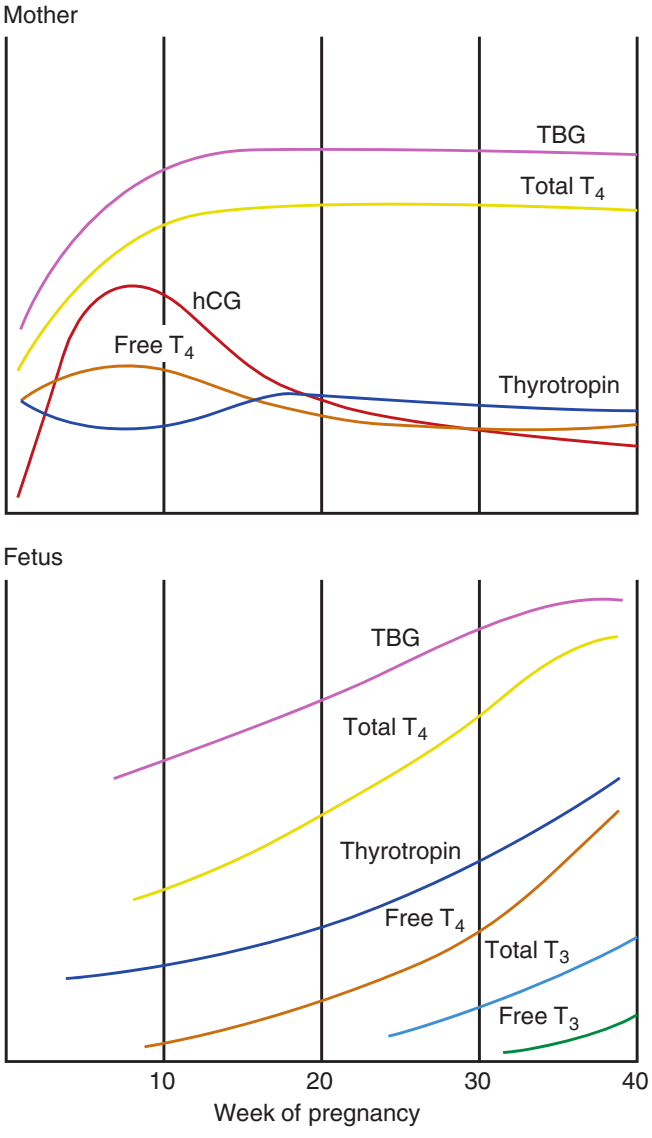


FIGURE 4-17 Relative changes in maternal and fetal thyroid function across pregnancy. Maternal changes include a marked and early increase in hepatic production of thyroxine-binding globulin (TBG) and placental production of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG). Elevated TBG increases serum thyroxine (T_4) concentrations. hCG has thyrotropin-like activity and stimulates maternal free T_4 secretion. This transient hCG-induced increase in serum T_4 levels inhibits maternal secretion of thyrotropin. Except for minimally increased free T_4 levels when hCG peaks, these levels are essentially unchanged. Fetal levels of all serum thyroid analytes increase incrementally across pregnancy. Fetal triiodothyronine (T_3) does not increase until late pregnancy.

Interestingly, T_4 and T_3 secretion is not similar for all pregnant women. Approximately a third of women experience relative hypothyroxinemia, preferential T_3 secretion, and higher, albeit normal, serum TSH levels (Korevaar, 2017). Thus, thyroidal adjustments during normal pregnancy may vary considerably.

The fetus relies on maternal T_4, which crosses the placenta in small quantities to maintain normal fetal thyroid function (Chap. 61, p. 1089). Recall that the fetal thyroid does not begin to concentrate iodine until 10 to 12 weeks' gestation. The synthesis and secretion of thyroid hormone by fetal pituitary TSH

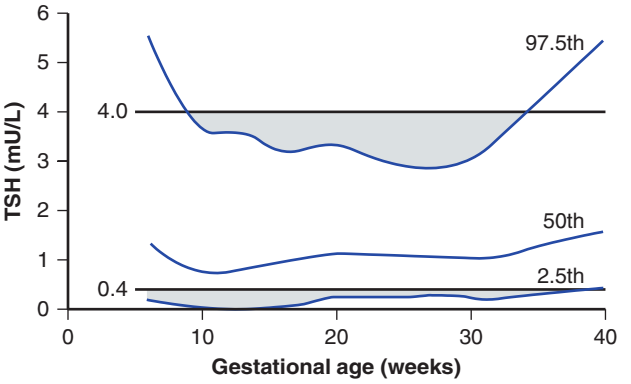


FIGURE 4-18 Gestational age-specific thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) nomogram derived from 13,599 singleton pregnancies. The nonpregnant reference values of 4.0 and 0.4 mU/L are represented as solid black lines. Upper shaded area represents the 28 percent of singleton pregnancies with TSH values above the 97.5th percentile threshold that would not have been identified as abnormal based on the assay reference value of 4.0 mU/L. Lower shaded area represents singleton pregnancies that would have been (falsely) identified as having TSH suppression based on the assay reference value of 0.4 mU/L.

ensues at approximately 20 weeks. At birth, approximately 30 percent of the T_4 in umbilical cord blood is of maternal origin (Leung, 2012).

Thyroid Function Tests

As detailed in Chapter 61 (p. 1095), a substantial proportion of otherwise normal pregnancies are found to have subclinical hypothyroidism or isolated hypothyroxinemia. The effects of thyroxine replacement in these women is currently controversial (Korevaar, 2017). Normal suppression of TSH during pregnancy may lead to a misdiagnosis of subclinical hyperthyroidism. Of greater concern is the potential failure to identify women with early hypothyroidism because of suppressed TSH concentrations. To mitigate the likelihood of such misdiagnoses, Dashe and coworkers (2005), and others, have developed gestational-age-specific TSH normal curves for both singleton and twin pregnancies (Fig. 4-18).

These complex alterations of thyroid regulation do not appear to alter maternal thyroid status as measured by metabolic studies. Although basal metabolic rate rises progressively by as much as 25 percent during normal pregnancy, most of this greater oxygen consumption can be attributed to fetal metabolic activity. If fetal body surface area is considered along with that of the mother, the predicted and observed basal metabolic rates are similar to those in nonpregnant women.

Iodine Status

As discussed earlier (p. 59), iodine requirements increase during normal pregnancy (Chap. 61, p. 1097). In women with low or marginal intake, deficiency may manifest as low T_4 and higher TSH levels. Importantly, more than one third of the world population lives in areas where iodine intake is marginal. Even in modernized countries, iodine deficiency is commonplace (Snart, 2019). For the fetus, early exposure to thyroid hormone is essential for the nervous system. Yet, despite public health programs

to supplement iodine, severe deficiency that results in cretinism affects more than 2 million people globally (Syed, 2015).

Parathyroid Glands

During pregnancy, levels of calcitriol, which is the bioactive form of vitamin D, increase twofold and enhance intestinal calcium absorption (Khan, 2019). In an earlier longitudinal investigation of 20 women, all markers of bone turnover rose during normal pregnancy and failed to reach baseline levels by 12 months postpartum (More, 2003). Investigators concluded that the calcium needed for fetal growth and lactation may be drawn at least in part from the maternal skeleton. The factors affecting bone turnover create a net yield that favors fetal skeletal formation at the expense of the mother. As a result, pregnancy is a vulnerable period for osteoporosis (Sanz-Salvador, 2015).

Parathyroid hormone (PTH) release is stimulated by acute or chronic declines in plasma calcium or acute drops in magnesium levels. Conversely, greater calcium and magnesium levels suppress PTH levels. The action of this hormone on bone resorption, intestinal absorption, and kidney reabsorption is to raise extracellular fluid calcium concentrations and lower phosphate levels.

As discussed earlier (p. 59), fetal skeleton mineralization requires approximately 30 g of calcium, primarily during the third trimester. Although this amounts to only 3 percent of the total calcium held within the maternal skeleton, calcium demands still challenge the mother (Degennaro, 2021). Augmented maternal calcium absorption provides the additional calcium. During pregnancy, the amount of calcium absorbed rises gradually and reaches approximately 400 mg/d in the third trimester. Greater calcium absorption appears to be mediated by elevated maternal 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D concentrations. This occurs despite decreased PTH levels during early pregnancy, which is the normal stimulus for active vitamin D production within the kidney. Indeed, PTH plasma levels decline during the first trimester and then rise progressively throughout the remainder of pregnancy (Pitkin, 1979).

The increased production of active vitamin D is likely due to placental production of either PTH or a PTH-related protein (PTH-rP). Outside pregnancy and lactation, PTH-rP is usually detectable only in serum of women with hypercalcemia due to malignancy. During pregnancy, however, PTH-rP concentrations rise significantly. This protein is synthesized in both fetal tissues and maternal breasts.

Calcitonin is secreted by C cells that are located predominantly in the perifollicular areas of the thyroid gland. Calcitonin opposes actions of PTH and vitamin D and protects the maternal skeleton during times of calcium stress. As discussed, pregnancy and lactation cause profound maternal calcium stress. Indeed, fetal calcitonin levels are at least twofold higher than maternal levels (Ohata, 2016). Although maternal calcitonin levels fall during pregnancy, they generally rise postpartum.

Calcium and magnesium promote the biosynthesis and secretion of calcitonin. Various gastric hormones—gastrin, pentagastrin, glucagon, and pancreozymin—and food ingestion also promote calcitonin plasma levels.

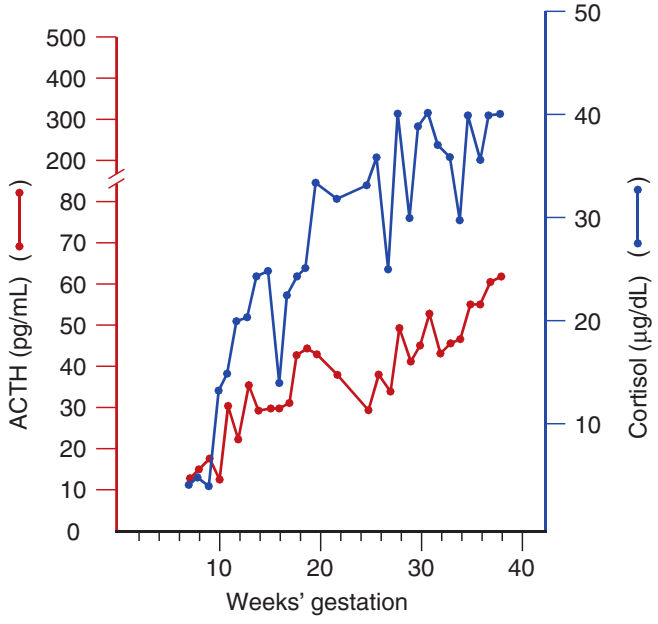


FIGURE 4-19 Serial increases in serum cortisol (*blue line*) and adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) (*red line*) across normal pregnancy.

Adrenal Glands

Cortisol

In normal pregnancy, unlike their fetal counterparts, the maternal adrenal glands undergo little, if any, morphological change. The serum concentration of circulating cortisol rises, but much of it is bound by *transcortin*, the cortisol-binding globulin. The adrenal secretion rate of this principal glucocorticoid is not elevated, and it is probably lower than in the nonpregnant state. The metabolic clearance rate of cortisol, however, is diminished during pregnancy because its half-life is nearly doubled compared with that for nonpregnant women (Migeon, 1957). Administration of estrogen, including most oral contraceptives, causes changes in serum cortisol levels and transcortin similar to those of pregnancy (Jung, 2011).

During early pregnancy, the levels of circulating *adrenocorticotropic hormone* (*ACTH*), also known as *corticotropin*, are dramatically reduced. As pregnancy progresses, ACTH and free cortisol levels rise equally and strikingly (Fig. 4-19) (Carr, 1981). This apparent paradox is not understood completely. Some suggest that greater free cortisol levels in pregnancy result from a "resetting" of the maternal feedback mechanism to higher thresholds (Nolten, 1981). This might result from *tissue refractoriness* to cortisol. Others assert that these incongruities stem from an antagonistic action of progesterone on mineralocorticoids (Keller-Wood, 2001). Thus, in response to elevated progesterone levels during pregnancy, an elevated free cortisol is needed to maintain homeostasis. Other theories include possible roles for higher free cortisol in preparation for the stress of pregnancy, delivery, and lactation.

Aldosterone

As early as 15 weeks' gestation, the maternal adrenal glands secrete considerably higher amounts of aldosterone, the principal mineralocorticoid. By the third trimester, approximately 1 mg/d is

released. If sodium intake is restricted, aldosterone secretion is even further elevated. Concurrently, levels of renin and angiotensin II substrate normally rise, especially during the latter half of pregnancy. This scenario promotes greater plasma levels of angiotensin II, which acts on the zona glomerulosa of the maternal adrenal glands and accounts for the markedly elevated aldosterone secretion. Some suggest the increased aldosterone secretion during normal pregnancy affords protection against the natriuretic effect of progesterone and atrial natriuretic peptide. Gennari-Moser and colleagues (2011) provide evidence that aldosterone and cortisol may modulate trophoblast growth and placental size.

Deoxycorticosterone

Maternal plasma levels of this potent mineralocorticosteroid progressively increase during pregnancy. Indeed, plasma levels of deoxycorticosterone rise to near 1500 pg/mL by term, a more than 15-fold increase (Parker, 1980). This marked elevation does not derive from adrenal secretion but instead represents augmented kidney production resulting from estrogen stimulation. The levels of deoxycorticosterone and its sulfate in fetal blood are appreciably higher than those in maternal blood, which suggests transfer of fetal deoxycorticosterone into the maternal compartment.

Androgens

In balance, androgenic activity rises during pregnancy, and both maternal plasma levels of *androstenedione* and *testosterone* are increased. This finding is not totally explained by alterations in their metabolic clearance. Both androgens are converted to estradiol in the placenta, which increases their clearance rates. Conversely, greater plasma sex hormone–binding globulin levels in gravidas retard testosterone clearance. Thus, the production rates of maternal testosterone and androstenedione during human pregnancy are increased. The source of this higher C_{19}-steroid production is unknown, but it likely originates in the ovary. Interestingly, little or no testosterone in maternal plasma enters the fetal circulation as testosterone. Even when massive testosterone levels are found in the circulation of pregnant women, as with androgen-secreting tumors, testosterone concentrations in umbilical cord blood are likely to be undetectable. This results from the near complete trophoblastic conversion of testosterone to 17β-estradiol.

Maternal serum and urine levels of *dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate* are lower during normal pregnancy. This stems from a greater metabolic clearance through extensive maternal hepatic 16α-hydroxylation and placental conversion to estrogen (Chap. 5, p. 101).

MUSCULOSKELETAL SYSTEM

Progressive lordosis is characteristic of pregnancy. Compensating for the anterior position of the enlarging uterus, lordosis shifts the center of gravity dorsally and over the lower extremities. The sacroiliac, sacrococcygeal, and pubic joints have greater mobility during pregnancy. However, as discussed earlier, increased joint laxity and associated discomfort during pregnancy do not correlate with increased maternal serum levels of estradiol, progesterone, or relaxin. Most relaxation takes place in the first half of pregnancy. It may contribute to maternal posture alterations and in turn create lower back discomfort. As discussed in Chapter 36 (p. 644), although some symphyseal separation likely accompanies many deliveries, those greater than 1 cm may cause significant pain (Shnaekel, 2015).

Aching, numbness, and weakness also occasionally are experienced in the upper extremities. This may result from the marked lordosis and associated anterior neck flexion and shoulder girdle slumping. These can produce traction on the ulnar and median nerves. The latter may give rise to symptoms mistaken for the *carpal tunnel syndrome* (Chap. 63, p. 1137). Joint strengthening begins immediately following delivery and is usually complete within 3 to 5 months. Pelvic dimensions measured by MR imaging up to 3 months postpartum are not significantly different from prepregnancy values (Huerta-Enochian, 2006).

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

Changes to the central nervous system during pregnancy are relatively few and mostly subtle. Zeeman and coworkers (2003) used MR imaging to measure cerebral blood flow across pregnancy. They found that mean blood flow in the middle and posterior cerebral arteries declined progressively from 147 and 56 mL/min when nonpregnant to 118 and 44 mL/min late in pregnancy, respectively. Others have found similar middle cerebral artery blood flow changes with ultrasound (Batur Caglayan, 2019). Mechanisms and significance of the decline are unknown. It appears that pregnancy does not affect cerebrovascular autoregulation (Cipolla, 2015).

Memory

Women often report problems with attention, concentration, and memory throughout pregnancy and the early puerperium. Systematic studies of memory in pregnancy, however, are limited and often anecdotal. In a metaanalysis, Davies and coworkers (2018) reported pregnancy-related memory decline was worst in the third trimester. This decline was not attributable to depression, anxiety, sleep deprivation, or other physical changes associated with pregnancy. It was transient and quickly resolved following delivery. In follow up studies, preeclampsia and eclampsia were found to lead to both short- and long-term cognitive disability (Aukes, 2007; Dayan, 2018).

Eyes

Intraocular pressure declines during pregnancy and is attributed partly to greater vitreous outflow. Corneal sensitivity is decreased, and the greatest changes are late in gestation. Most pregnant women demonstrate a measurable but slight increase in corneal thickness, thought to be due to edema. Consequently, they may have difficulty with previously comfortable contact lenses. Brownish-red opacities on the posterior surface of the cornea—*Krukenberg spindles*—are observed with a higher than expected frequency during pregnancy. Hormonal

effects similar to those observed for skin lesions are believed to cause this increased pigmentation. Other than transient loss of accommodation reported during both pregnancy and lactation, visual function is unaffected by pregnancy. These changes during pregnancy and pathological eye aberrations were reviewed by Gilbert and colleagues (2019).

Sleep

Beginning as early as 12 weeks' gestation and extending through the first 2 months postpartum, women have difficulty with falling asleep, frequent awakenings, fewer hours of night sleep, and reduced sleep efficiency. These symptoms are part of the spectrum of sleep-disordered breathing, the most severe of which is obstructive sleep apnea (Ayyar, 2018; Dominguez, 2018). The greatest disruption of sleep is encountered postpartum and may contribute to *postpartum blues* or to frank depression and suicidal ideation (Palagini, 2019).

REFERENCES

Abdullah B, Ayub SH, Mohd Zahid AZ, et al: Urinary incontinence in primigravida: the neglected pregnancy predicament. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 198:110, 2016

Abeysekera MV, Morris JA, Davis GK, et al: Alterations in energy homeostasis to favour adipose tissue gain: a longitudinal study in healthy pregnant women. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 56:42, 2016

Aguin TJ, Sobel JD: Vulvovaginal candidiasis in pregnancy. Curr Infect Dis Rep 17:462, 2015

Ajjimaporn A, Somprasit C, Chaunchaiyakul R: A cross-sectional study of resting cardio-respiratory and metabolic changes in pregnant women. J Phys Ther Sci 26:779, 2014

Aldabe D, Ribeiro DC, Milosavljevic S, et al: Pregnancy-related pelvic girdle pain and its relationship with relaxin levels during pregnancy: a systematic review. Eur Spine J 21:1769, 2012

Alvarez H, Caldeyro-Barcia R: Contractility of the human uterus recorded by new methods. Surg Gynecol Obstet 91:1, 1950

Amoah C, Yassin A, Cockayne E, et al: Hyperreactio luteinalis in pregnancy. Fertil Steril 95(7):2429.e1, 2011

Ammon FJ, Kohlhaas A, Elshaarawy O, et al: Liver stiffness reversibly increases during pregnancy and independently predicts preeclampsia. World J Gastroenterol 24(38):4393, 2018

Andersen JR: Prolactin in amniotic fluid and maternal serum during uncomplicated human pregnancy. Dan Med Bull 29:266, 1982

Anderson BL, Mendez-Figueroa H, Dahlke J, et al: Pregnancy-induced changes in immune protection of the genital tract: defining normal. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(4):321.e1, 2013

Angueira AR, Ludvik AE, Reddy TE, et al: New insights into gestational glucose metabolism: lessons learned from 21st century approaches. Diabetes 64:327, 2015

Armstrong S, Fernando R, Columb M, et al: Cardiac index in term pregnant women in the sitting, lateral, and supine positions: an observational, crossover study. Anesth Analg 113:318, 2011

Assali NS, Dilts PV, Pentl AA, et al: Physiology of the placenta. In Assali NS (ed): Biology of Gestation, Vol I. The Maternal Organism. New York, Academic Press, 1968

Assali NS, Douglas RA, Baird WW: Measurement of uterine blood flow and uterine metabolism. IV. Results in normal pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 66(2):248, 1953

Astern JM, Collier AC, Kendal-Wright CE: Pre-B cell colony enhancing factor (PBEF/NAMPT/Visfatin) and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) cooperate to increase the permeability of the human placental amnion. Placenta 34:42, 2013

Aukes AM, Wessel I, Dubois AM, et al: Self-reported cognitive functioning in formerly eclamptic women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197:365.e1, 2007

Ayyar L, Shaib F, Guntupalli K: Sleep-disordered breathing in pregnancy. Sleep Med Clin 13(3):349, 2018

Aziz MM, Kulkarni A, Shah L, et al: Physiologic proteinuria in labor and postpartum: the results of the postpartum proteinuria trial (PoPPy). Pregnancy Hypertens 13:22, 2018

Bamber JH, Dresner M: Aortocaval compression in pregnancy: the effect of changing the degree and direction of lateral tilt on maternal cardiac output. Anesth Analg 97:256, 2003

Barboni E, Mancinelli P, Bitossi U, et al: Ultrasound evaluation of the stomach and gastric emptying in pregnant women at term: a case-control study. Minerva Anestesiol 82(5):543, 2016

Baron J, Shwarzman, Sheiner E, et al: Blood flow Doppler velocimetry measured during active labor. Arch Gynecol Obstet 291:837, 2015

Bastholm SK, Samson MH, Becher N, et al: Trefoil factor peptide 3 is positively correlated with the viscoelastic properties of the cervical mucus plug. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 96(1):47, 2017

Batur Caglayan HZ, Nazliel B, Cinar M, et al: Assessment of maternal cerebral blood flow velocity by transcranial Doppler ultrasound before delivery and in the early postpartum period. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(4):584, 2019

Benzing T, Salant D: Insights into glomerular filtration and albuminuria. N Engl J Med 384:1437, 2021

Berggren EK, Groh-Wargo S, Presley L, et al: Maternal fat, but not lean, mass is increased among overweight/obese women with excess gestational weight gain. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(6):745.e1, 2016

Berggren EK, Presley L, Amini SB, et al: Are the metabolic changes of pregnancy reversible in the first year postpartum? Diabetologia 58:1561, 2015

Bernstein IM, Ziegler W, Badger GJ: Plasma volume expansion in early pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 97:669, 2001

Bi WG, Nuyt AM, Weiler H, et al: Association between vitamin D supplementation during pregnancy and offspring growth, morbidity, and mortality: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA Pediatr 172(7):635, 2018

Bieber AK, Martires KJ, Stein JA, et al: Pigmentation and pregnancy: knowing what is normal. Obstet Gynecol 129(1):168, 2017

Bijl RC, Valensise H, Novelli GP, et al: Methods and considerations concerning cardiac output measurement in pregnant women: recommendations of the International Working Group on Maternal Hemodynamics. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 54(1):35, 2019

Bilinski RT, Williams SF, Apuzzio JJ: Procalcitonin in amniotic fluid at the time of genetic amniocentesis and preterm delivery. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(20):2705, 2018

Blomqvist JL, Muñoz A, Carroll M, et al: Association of delivery mode with pelvic floor disorders after childbirth. JAMA 320(23):2438, 2018

Bloom SL, Uppot R, Roberts DJ: Case 32–2010: a pregnant woman with abdominal pain and fluid in the peritoneal cavity. N Engl J Med 363(17):1657, 2010

Bobrowski RA: Pulmonary physiology in pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 53(2):286, 2010

Bramham K, Hladunewich MA, Jim B, et al: Pregnancy and kidney disease. NephSAP Nephrology Self-Assessment Program 15(2):115, 2016

Braverman DZ, Johnson ML, Kern F Jr: Effects of pregnancy and contraceptive steroids on gallbladder function. N Engl J Med 302:362, 1980

Briffa JF, McAinch AJ, Romano T, et al: Leptin in pregnancy and development: a contributor to adulthood disease? Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 308:E335, 2015

Brown CH, Bains JS, Ludwig M, et al: Physiological regulation of magnocellular neurosecretory cell activity: integration of intrinsic, local and afferent mechanisms. J Neuroendocrinol 25:678, 2013

Brown MA, Gallery EDM, Ross MR, et al: Sodium excretion in normal and hypertensive pregnancy: a prospective study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 159:297, 1988

Burrow GN, Fisher DA, Larsen PR: Maternal and fetal thyroid function. N Engl J Med 331:1072, 1994

Camaschella C: Iron deficiency anemia. N Engl J Med 372:1832, 2015

Carr BR, Parker CR Jr, Madden JD, et al: Maternal plasma adrenocorticotropin and cortisol relationships throughout human pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 139:416, 1981

Cattozzo G, Calonaci A, Albeni C, et al: Reference values for alanine aminotransferase, α-amylase, aspartate aminotransferase, γ-glutamyltransferase and lactate dehydrogenase measured according to the IFCC standardization during uncomplicated pregnancy. Clin Chem Lab Med 51:e239, 2013

Chehab FF: 20 years of leptin: leptin and reproduction: past milestones, present undertakings, and future endeavors. J Endocrinol 223:T37, 2014

Chesley LC: Renal function during pregnancy. In Carey HM (ed): Modern Trends in Human Reproductive Physiology. London, Butterworth, 1963

Chong MF, Chia AR, Colega M, et al: Maternal protein intake during pregnancy is not associated with offspring birth weight in a multiethnic Asian population. J Nutr 145:1303, 2015

Cietak KA, Newton JR: Serial quantitative maternal nephrosonography in pregnancy. Br J Radiol 58:405, 1985

Cipolla MJ, Zeeman GG, Cunningham FG: Cerebrovascular (patho)physiology in preeclampsia/eclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Clapp JF III, Stepanchak W, Tomaselli J, et al: Portal vein blood flow—effects of pregnancy, gravity, and exercise. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:167, 2000

Clark SL, Cotton DB, Lee W, et al: Central hemodynamic assessment of normal term pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 161:1439, 1989

Cong J, Yang X, Zhang N, et al: Quantitative analysis of left atrial volume and function during normotensive and preeclamptic pregnancy: a real-time three-dimensional echocardiography study. Int J Cardiovasc Imaging 31:805, 2015

Conrad KP, Baker VL: Corpus luteal contribution to maternal pregnancy physiology and outcomes in assisted reproductive technologies. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 304(2):R69, 2013

Conrad KP, Gaber LW, Lindheimer MD: The kidney in normal pregnancy and preeclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Csapo AI, Pulkkinen MO, Wiest WG: Effects of luteectomy and progesterone replacement therapy in early pregnant patients. Am J Obstet Gynecol 115(6):759, 1973

Cullers A, King JC, Van Loan M, et al: Effect of prenatal calcium supplementation on bone during pregnancy and 1 y postpartum. Am J Clin Nurt 109(1):197, 2019

Cunningham FG, Byrne JJ, Nelson DB: Peripartum cardiomyopathy. Obstet Gynecol 133(1):167, 2019

Cunningham FG, Nelson DB: Disseminated intravascular coagulation syndromes in obstetrics. Obstet Gynecol 126:999, 2015

Cutforth R, MacDonald CB: Heart sounds and murmurs in pregnancy. Am Heart J 71:741, 1966

Dashe JS, Casey BM, Wells CE, et al: Thyroid-stimulating hormone in singleton and twin pregnancy: importance of gestational age-specific reference ranges. Obstet Gynecol 106:753, 2005

Davies SJ, Lum JA, Skouteris H, et al: Cognitive impairment during pregnancy: a meta-analysis. Med J Aust 208(1):35, 2018

Davison JM, Dunlop W: Renal hemodynamics and tubular function in normal human pregnancy. Kidney Int 18:152, 1980

Dayan N, Kaur A, Elharram M, et al: Impact of preeclampsia on long-term cognitive function. Hypertension 72(6):1374, 2018

Degennaro VA, Brandt ML, Cagnielli G, et al: First assessment of bone mineral density in healthy pregnant women by means of Radiofrequency Echographic Multi Spectrometry (REMS) technology. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 263:44, 2021

Demir UL, Demir BC, Oztosun E, et al: The effects of pregnancy on nasal physiology. Int Forum Allergy Rhinol 5:162, 2015

Dominguez JE, Street L, Louis J: Management of obstructive sleep apnea in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 45(2):233, 2018

Duval F, Dos Santos E, Maury B, et al: Adiponectin regulates metabolism at the human fetal-maternal interface. J Mol Endocrinol 61(3):139, 2018

Easterling TR, Schmucker BC, Benedetti TJ: The hemodynamic effects of orthostatic stress during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 72:550, 1988

Edman CD, Toofanian A, MacDonald PC, et al: Placental clearance rate of maternal plasma androstenedione through placental estradiol formation: an indirect method of assessing uteroplacental blood flow. Am J Obstet Gynecol 141:1029, 1981

Enein M, Zina AA, Kassem M, et al: Echocardiography of the pericardium in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 69:851, 1987

Espinoza J, Betancourt A, Belfort MA, et al: Placental growth factor blunts uterine artery responses to angiotensin II. BJOG 126(8):1058, 2019

Feldt-Rasmussen U, Mathiesen ER: Endocrine disorders in pregnancy: physiological and hormonal aspects of pregnancy. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab 25(6):875, 2011

Fernandes LB, Amaral WN: Clinical study of skin changes in low and high risk pregnant women. An Bras Dermatol 90:822, 2015

Fisher AL, Nemeth E: Iron homeostasis during pregnancy. Am J Clin Nutr 106(Suppl6):1567S, 2017

Flo K, Widnes C, Vårtun Å, et al: Blood flow to the scarred gravid uterus at 22–24 weeks of gestation. BJOG 121:210, 2014

Flo K, Wilsgaard T, Vårtun Å, et al: A longitudinal study of the relationship between maternal cardiac output measured by impedance cardiography and uterine artery blood flow in the second half of pregnancy. BJOG 117:837, 2010

Franco EM, Pares D, Colome NL, et al: Urinary incontinence during pregnancy: is there a difference between first and third trimester? Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 182:86, 2014

Frederice CP, Amaral E, Ferreira Nde O: Urinary symptoms and pelvic floor muscle function during the third trimester of pregnancy in nulliparous women. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 39:188, 2013

Friedman T, Eslick GD, Dietz HP: Delivery mode and the risk of levator muscle avulsion: a meta-analysis. Int Urogynecol 30(6):901, 2019

Fu Z, Hu J, Zhou L, et al: (Pro)Renin receptor contributes to pregnancy-induced sodium-water retention in rats via activation of intrarenal RAAS and α-ENaC. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol 316(3):F530, 2019

Galan HL, Marconi AM, Paolini CL, et al: The transplacental transport of essential amino acids in uncomplicated human pregnancies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(1):91.e1, 2009

Gant NF, Daley GL, Chand S, et al: A study of angiotensin II pressor response throughout primigravid pregnancy. J Clin Invest 52:2682, 1973

Gat R, Hadar E, Orbach-Zinger S, et al: Distribution of extreme vital signs and complete blood count values of healthy parturients: a retrospective database analysis and review of the literature. Anesth Analg 129(6):1595, 2019

Gayer G, Ben Ely A, Maymon R, et al: Enlargement of the spleen as an incidental finding on CT in post-partum females with fever. Br J Radiol 85 (1014):753, 2012

Gennari-Moser C, Khankin EV, Schüller S, et al: Regulation of placental growth by aldosterone and cortisol. Endocrinology 152(1):263, 2011

Georgieff MK: Iron deficiency in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 146:516, 2021

Ghi T, Degli Esposti D, Montaguti E, et al: Maternal cardiac evaluation during uncomplicated twin pregnancy with emphasis on the diastolic function. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213:376.e1, 2015

Gilbert AL, Prasad S, Mallery RM: Neuro-ophthalmic disorders in pregnancy. Neurol Clin 37(1):85, 2019

Gizlenti S, Ekmekci TR: The changes in the hair cycle during gestation and the post-partum period. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol 28:878, 2014

Glinoer D, de Nayer P, Bourdoux P, et al: Regulation of maternal thyroid during pregnancy. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 71:276, 1990

González-Domínguez MI, Lazo-de-la-Vega-Monroy ML, Zaina S, et al: Association of cord blood des-acyl ghrelin with birth weight, and placental GHS-R1 receptor expression in SGA, AGA, and LGA newborns. Endocrine 53:182, 2016

Govindan RB, Siegel E, Mckelvey S, et al: Tracking the changes in synchrony of the electrophysiological activity as the uterus approaches labor using magnetomyographic technique. Reprod Sci 22:595, 2015

Grattan DR: The hypothalamo-prolactin axis. J Endocrinol 226:7101, 2015

Grindheim G, Toska K, Estensen ME, et al: Changes in pulmonary function during pregnancy: a longitudinal cohort study. BJOG 119(1):94, 2012

Gunderson EP: Impact of breastfeeding on maternal metabolism: implications for women with gestational diabetes. Curr Diab Rep 14:460, 2014

Gyselaers W, Spaanderman M, International Working Group on Maternal Hemodynamics: Assessment of venous hemodynamics and volume homeostasis during pregnancy: recommendations of the International Working Group on Maternal Hemodynamics. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 52(2):174, 2018

Hajhashemi M, Rafieian M, Rouhi Boroujeni HA, et al: The effect of aloe vera gel and sweet almond oil on striae gravidarum in nulliparous women. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(13):1703, 2018

Haghiac M, Basu S, Presley L, et al: Patterns of adiponectin expression in term pregnancy: impact of obesity. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 99:3427, 2014

Han L, Liu X, Li H, et al: Blood coagulation parameters and platelet indices: changes in normal and preeclamptic pregnancies and predictive values for preeclampsia. PLoS One 9:e114488, 2014

Handel AC, Lima PB, Tonolli VM, et al: Risk factors for facial melasma in women: a case-control study. Br J Dermatol 171:588, 2014

Hansen LK, Becher N, Bastholm S, et al: The cervical mucus plug inhibits, but does not block, the passage of ascending bacteria from the vagina during pregnancy. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 93:102, 2014

Hauguel-de Mouzon S, Catalano P: Adiponectin: are measurements clinically useful in pregnancy? Diabetes Care 36:1434, 2013

Hedengran KK, Andersen MR, Stender S, et al: Large D-Dimer fluctuation in normal pregnancy: a longitudinal cohort study of 4,117 samples from 714 healthy Danish women. Obstet Gynecol Int 2016:3561675, 2016b

Hedengran KK, Nelson D, Andersen MR, et al: Hepcidin levels are low during pregnancy and increase around delivery in women without iron deficiency—a prospective cohort study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29:1506, 2016a

Heenan AP, Wolfe LA: Plasma osmolality and the strong ion difference predict respiratory adaptations in pregnant and nonpregnant women. Can J Physiol Pharmacol 81:839, 2003

Hegewald MJ, Crapo RO: Respiratory physiology in pregnancy. Clin Chest Med 32(1):1, 2011

Herrera S, Kuhlmann-Capek MJ, Rogan SC, et al: Stroke volume recruitability during the third trimester of pregnancy. Am J Perinatal 35(8):737, 2018

Hibbard JU, Shroff SG, Cunningham FG: Cardiovascular alterations in normal and preeclamptic pregnancies. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Higby K, Suiter CR, Phelps JY, et al: Normal values of urinary albumin and total protein excretion during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 171:984, 1994

Hill JA, Olson EN: Cardiac plasticity. N Engl J Med 358:1370, 2008

Hodgkinson CP: Physiology of the ovarian veins in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 1:26, 1953

Hofmeyr GJ, Lawrie TA, Atallah ÁN, et al: Calcium supplementation during pregnancy for preventing hypertensive disorders and related problems. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD001059, 2018
Huerta-Enochian GS, Katz VL, Fox LK, et al: Magnetic resonance–based serial pelvimetry: do maternal pelvic dimensions change during pregnancy? Am J Obstet Gynecol 194:1689, 2006
Huisman A, Aarnoudse JG, Heuvelmans JH, et al: Whole blood viscosity during normal pregnancy. BJOG 94:1143, 1987
Hytten FE: Weight gain in pregnancy. In Hytten FE, Chamberlain G (eds): Clinical Physiology in Obstetrics, 2nd ed. Oxford, Blackwell, 1991, p 173
Ibrahim S, Jarefors E, Nel DG, et al: Effect of maternal position and uterine activity on periodic maternal heart rate changes before elective cesarean section at term. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 94:1359, 2015
Iosif S, Ingemarsson I, Ulmsten U: Urodynamic studies in normal pregnancy and in puerperium. Am J Obstet Gynecol 137:696, 1980
James AH, Rhee E, Thames B, et al: Characterization of antithrombin levels in pregnancy. Thromb Res 134:648, 2014
Jebeile H, Mijatovic J, Louie JC, et al: A systematic review and meta-analysis of energy intake and weight gain in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214:465, 2016
Jensen D, Wolfe LA, Slatkovska L, et al: Effects of human pregnancy on the ventilatory chemoreflex response to carbon dioxide. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 288:R1369, 2005
Jones NW, Raine-Fenning NJ, Jayaprakasan K, et al: Changes in myometrial "perfusion" during normal labor as visualized by three-dimensional power Doppler angiography. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 33:307, 2009
Jung C, Ho JT, Torpy DJ, et al: A longitudinal study of plasma and urinary cortisol in pregnancy and postpartum. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 96(5):1533, 2011
Kasher-Meron M, Mazaki-Tovi S, Barhod E, et al: Chemerin concentrations in maternal and fetal compartments: implications for metabolic adaptations to normal human pregnancy. J Perinat Med 42:371, 2014
Kauppila A, Chatelain P, Kirkinen P, et al: Isolated prolactin deficiency in a woman with puerperal alactogenesis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 64:309, 1987
Kauppila A, Koskinen M, Puolakka J, et al: Decreased intervillous and unchanged myometrial blood flow in supine recumbency. Obstet Gynecol 55:203, 1980
Keller-Wood M, Wood CE: Pregnancy alters cortisol feedback inhibition of stimulated ACTH: studies in adrenalectomized ewes. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 280:R1790, 2001
Kenny L, McCrae K, Cunningham FG: Platelets, coagulation, and the liver. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015
Ker JA, Soma-Pillay P: NT-proBNP: When is it useful in obstetric medicine. Obstet Gynecol 1(1):3, 2018
Khan AA, Clarke B, Rejnmark L, et al: MANAGEMENT OF ENDOCRINE DISEASE: Hypoparathyroidism in pregnancy: review and evidence-based recommendations for management. Eur J Endocrinol 180(2):R37, 2019
Kim HS, Yoon G, Kim BG, et al: Decidualization of intranodal endometriosis in a postmenopausal woman. Int J Clin Exp Pathol 8:1025, 2015
Ko CW, Napolitano PG, Lee SP, et al: Physical activity, maternal metabolic measures, and the incidence of gallbladder sludge or stones during pregnancy: a randomized trial. Am J Perinatol 31:39, 2014
Koenig MD, Tussing-Humphreys L, Day J, et al: Hepcidin and iron homeostasis during pregnancy. Nutrients 6:3062, 2014
Koenig T, Bauersachs J, Hilfiker-Kleiner D: Bromocriptine for the treatment of peripartum cardiomyopathy. Card Fail Rev 4(1):46, 2018
Kolarzyk E, Szot WM, Lyszczarz J: Lung function and breathing regulation parameters during pregnancy. Arch Gynecol Obstet 272:53, 2005
Korevaar TIM, Medici M, Visser TH, et al: Thyroid disease in pregnancy: new insights in diagnosis and clinical management. Nat Rev Endocrinol 13(10):610, 2017
Kühnert M, Strohmeier R, Stegmüller M: Changes in lymphocyte subsets during normal pregnancy. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 76:147, 1998
Lankhorst S, Jan Danser AH, van den Meiracker AH: Endothelin-1 and antiangiogenesis. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 310:R230, 2016
Larsson A, Palm M, Hansson LO, et al: Reference values for clinical chemistry tests during normal pregnancy. BJOG 115:874, 2008
Laskowska M, Laskowska K, Oleszczuk J: The relation of maternal serum eNOS, NOSTRIN and ADMA levels with aetiopathogenesis of preeclampsia and/or intrauterine fetal growth restriction. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 28:26, 2015
Lederman SA, Paxton A, Heymsfield SB, et al: Maternal body fat and water during pregnancy: do they raise infant birth weight? Am J Obstet Gynecol 180:235, 1999
Lee DH, Park YK: Isolated fallopian tube torsion during pregnancy: a case report. Clin Exp Obstet Gynecol 42:681, 2015
Lee HR, Song JE, Lee KY: Developed diplopia and ptosis due to a nonfunctioning pituitary macroadenoma during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Sci 57:66, 2014
Leung AM: Thyroid function in pregnancy. J Trace Elem Med Biol 26(2–3):137, 2012
Lim PS, Ng SP, Shafiee MN, et al: Spontaneous rupture of uterine varicose veins: a rare cause for obstetric shock. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 40:1791, 2014
Lind T, Bell S, Gilmore E, et al: Insulin disappearance rate in pregnant and non-pregnant women, and in non-pregnant women given GHRIH. Eur J Clin Invest 7:47, 1977
Lindheimer MD, Davison JM, Katz AI: The kidney and hypertension in pregnancy: twenty exciting years. Semin Nephrol 21:173, 2001
Lindheimer MD, Grünfeld JP, Davison JM: Renal disorders. In Barran WM, Lindheimer MD (eds): Medical Disorders During Pregnancy, 3rd ed. St. Louis, Mosby, 2000, p 39
Lindheimer MD, Kanter D: Interpreting abnormal proteinuria in pregnancy: the need for a more pathophysiological approach. Obstet Gynecol 115(2 Pt 1):365, 2010
Lindheimer MD, Richardson DA, Ehrlich EN, et al: Potassium homeostasis in pregnancy. J Reprod Med 32:517, 1987
Liu J, Sun B, Yin H, et al: Hepcidin: a promising therapeutic target for iron disorders: a systematic review. Medicine (Baltimore) 95:e3150, 2016
Liu LX, Arany Z: Maternal cardiac metabolism in pregnancy. Cardiovasc Res 101:545, 2014
Lopes van Balen VA, van Gansewinkel TAG, de Haas S, et al: Kidney function during pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 54(3):297, 2019
Lowe WL, Karban J: Genetics, genomics and metabolomics: new insights into maternal metabolism during pregnancy. Diabet Med 31:254, 2014
Lynn KN, Steinkeler JA, Wilkins-Haug LE, et al: Hyperreactio luteinalis (enlarged ovaries) during the second and third trimesters of pregnancy: common clinical associations. J Ultrasound Med 32:1285, 2013
Macdonald JA, Corrado PA, Jguyen SM, et al: Uteroplacental and fetal 4D flow MRI in the pregnant rhesus macaque. J Magn Reson Imaging 49(2):534, 2019
Macedo M, Kim B, Khoury R, et al: A rare case of right lower quadrant abdominal pain. Am J Emerg Med 35(4):668.e1, 2017
Mahendru AA, Everett TR, Wilkinson IB, et al: Maternal cardiovascular changes from pre-pregnancy to very early pregnancy. J Hypertens 30(11):2168, 2012
Malinowski AK, Sen J, Sermer M: Hyperreactio luteinalis: maternal and fetal effects. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 37:715, 2015
Mandala M, Osol G: Physiological remodeling of the maternal uterine circulation during pregnancy. Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol 110:12, 2012
Marnach ML, Ramin KD, Ramsey PS, et al: Characterization of the relationship between joint laxity and maternal hormones in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 101:331, 2003
Maymon R, Zimerman AL, Strauss S, et al: Maternal spleen size throughout normal pregnancy. Semin Ultrasound CT MRI 28:64, 2007
McArdle HJ, Gambling L, Kennedy C: Iron deficiency during pregnancy: the consequences for placental function and fetal outcome. Proc Nutr Soc 73:9, 2014
McLean KC, Bernstein IM, Brummel-Ziedins KE: Tissue factor-dependent thrombin generation across pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(2):135.e1, 2012
Mendenhall HW: Serum protein concentrations in pregnancy. 1. Concentrations in maternal serum. Am J Obstet Gynecol 106:388, 1970
Metcalfe J, Romney SL, Ramsey LH, et al: Estimation of uterine blood flow in normal human pregnancy at term. J Clin Invest 34(11):1632, 1955
Migeon CJ, Bertrand J, Wall PE: Physiological disposition of 4–^{14}C cortisol during late pregnancy. J Clin Invest 36:1350, 1957
Milne JA, Howie AD, Pack AI: Dyspnoea during normal pregnancy. BJOG 85:260, 1978
Moen V, Brudin L, Rundgren M, et al: Osmolality and respiratory regulation in humans: respiratory compensation for hyperchloremic metabolic acidosis is absent after infusion of hypertonic saline in healthy volunteers. Anesth Analg 119:956, 2014
Moen V, Brudin L, Tjernberg I, et al: Feto-maternal osmotic balance at term. A prospective observational study. J Perinat Med 46(2):183, 2018
Moleti M, Trimarchi F, Vermiglio F: Thyroid physiology in pregnancy. Endocr Pract 20:589, 2014
Mor G, Kwon JY: Trophoblast-microbiome interaction: a new paradigm on immune regulation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213:S131, 2015
More C, Bhattoa HP, Bettembuk P, et al: The effects of pregnancy and lactation on hormonal status and biochemical markers of bone turnover. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 106:209, 2003

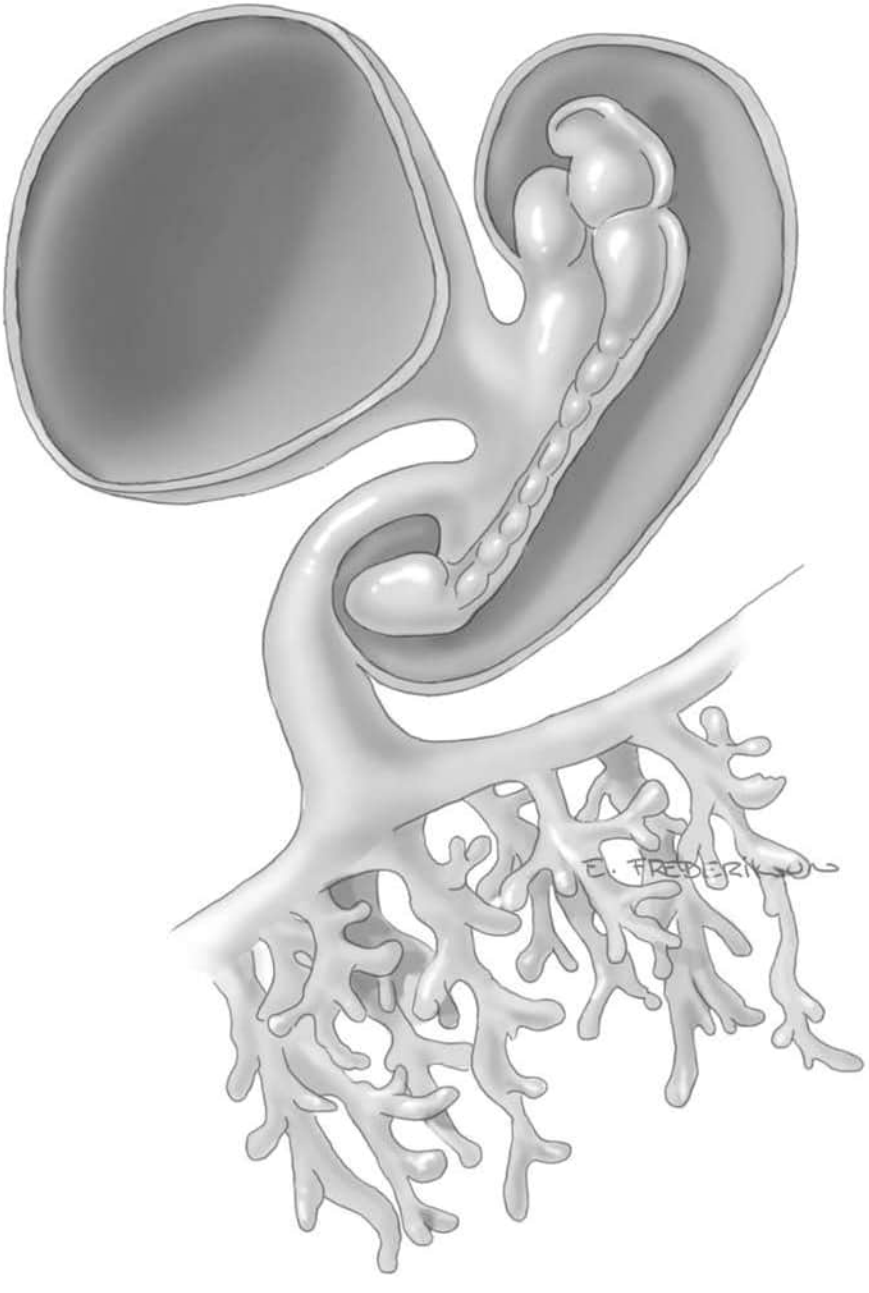
Morris EA, Hale SA, Badger GJ, et al: Pregnancy induces persistent changes in vascular compliance in primiparous women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212:633.e1, 2015
Mumtaz S, AlSaif S, Wray S, et al: Inhibitory effect of visfatin and leptin on human and rat myometrial contractility. Life Sci 125:57, 2015
Murray EKI, Murphy MSQ, Smith GN, et al: Thromboelastographic analysis of haemostasis in preeclamptic and normotensive pregnant women. Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis 29(6):567, 2018
Myers KM, Feltovich H, Mazza E, et al: The mechanical role of the cervix in pregnancy. J Biomech 48:1511, 2015
National Institute for Health And Clinical Excellence: Diabetes in pregnancy management from preconception to the postnatal period. 2015. Available at: www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng3/resources/diabetes-in-pregnancy-management-from-preconception-to-the-postnatal-period-51038446021. Accessed November 25, 2020
Nelson DB, Stewart RD, Matulevicius SA, et al: The effects of maternal position and habitus on maternal cardiovascular parameters as measured by cardiac magnetic resonance. Am J Perinatol 32:1318, 2015
Newbern D, Freemark M: Placental hormones and the control of maternal metabolism and fetal growth. Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes 18:409, 2011
Nolten WE, Rueckert PA: Elevated free cortisol index in pregnancy: possible regulatory mechanisms. Am J Obstet Gynecol 139:492, 1981
Nteeba J, Kubota K, Wang W, et al: Pancreatic prolactin receptor signaling regulates maternal glucose homeostasis. J Endocrinol February 1, 2019 [Epub ahead of print]
Oda T, Tamura N, Shen Y, et al: Amniotic fluid as a potent activator of blood coagulation and platelet aggregation: study with rotational thromboelastometry. Thromb Res 172:142, 2018
Odutayo A, Hladunewich M: Obstetric nephrology: renal hemodynamic and metabolic physiology in normal pregnancy. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 7:2073, 2012
Ohata Y, Ozono K, Michigami T: Current concepts in perinatal mineral metabolism. Clin Pediatr Endocrinol 25:9, 2016
Øian P, Maltau JM, Noddeland H, et al: Oedema-preventing mechanisms in subcutaneous tissue of normal pregnant women. BJOG 92:1113, 1985
Olausson H, Goldberg GR, Laskey MA: Calcium economy in human pregnancy and lactation. Nutr Res Rev 25:40, 2012
Oliphant SS, Nygaard IE, Zong W, et al: Maternal adaptations in preparation for parturition predict uncomplicated spontaneous delivery outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211:630.e1, 2014
Orabona R, Prefumo F, Zandardini C, et al: Maternal functional hemodynamics in uncomplicated twin pregnancies: a longitudinal study using impedance cardiography. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 98(2):188, 2019
Orabona R, Sciatti E, Vizzardi, E, et al: Maternal hemodynamics, arterial stiffness and elastic aortic properties in twin pregnancy. Physiol Med 41:125, 2021
Osman MW, Nath M, Khalik A, et al: Longitudinal study to assess changes in arterial stiffness and cardiac output parameters among low-risk pregnant women. Pregnancy Hypertens 10:256, 2017
Osol G, Ko NL, Mandalá M: Plasticity of the maternal vasculature during pregnancy. Annu Rev Physiol 81:89, 2019
Özdemir ZC, Akşit MA: The association of ghrelin, leptin, and insulin in umbilical cord blood with fetal anthropometric measurements and glucose levels at birth. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(9):1486, 2020
Palagini L, Cipollone G, Masci I, et al: Stress-related sleep reactivity is associated with insomnia, psychopathology and suicidality in pregnant women: preliminary results. Sleep Med 56:145, 2019
Panitchob N, Widdows KL, Crocker IP, et al: Computational modeling of amino acid exchange and facilitated transport in placental membrane vesicles. J Theor Biol 365:352, 2015
Parker CR Jr, Everett RB, Whalley PJ, et al: Hormone production during pregnancy in the primigravid patients. II. Plasma levels of deoxycorticosterone throughout pregnancy of normal women and women who developed pregnancy-induced hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 138:626, 1980
Pates JA, Hatab MR, McIntire DD, et al: Determining uterine blood flow in pregnancy with magnetic resonance imaging. Magn Reson Imaging 28(4):507, 2010
Peralta L, Rus G, Bochud N, et al: Mechanical assessment of cervical remodeling in pregnancy: insight from a synthetic model. J Biomech 48:1557, 2015
Phelps RL, Metzger BE, Freinkel N: Carbohydrate metabolism in pregnancy, 17. Diurnal profiles of plasma glucose, insulin, free fatty acids, triglycerides, cholesterol, and individual amino acids in late normal pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 140:730, 1981
Picard D, Sellier S, Houivet E, et al: Incidence and risk factors for striae gravidarum. J Am Acad Dermatol 273:699, 2015
Pitkin RM, Reynolds WA, Williams GA, et al: Calcium metabolism in normal pregnancy: a longitudinal study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 133:781, 1979
Połeć A, Fedorcsák P, Eskild A, et al: The interplay of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) with basic fibroblast growth factor and adipokines on angiogenesis in vitro. Placenta 35:249, 2014
Pritchard JA: Changes in the blood volume during pregnancy and delivery. Anesthesiology 26:393, 1965
Pritchard JA, Adams RH: Erythrocyte production and destruction during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 79:750, 1960
Pritchard JA, Mason RA: Iron stores of normal adults and their replenishment with oral iron therapy. JAMA 190:897, 1964
Pritchard JA, Scott DE: Iron demands during pregnancy. In Iron Deficiency-Pathogenesis: Clinical Aspects and Therapy. London, Academic Press, 1970, p 173
Rabiepoor S, Abedi M, Saboory E, et al: Stress during pregnancy affected neonatal outcomes and changed cortisol and leptin both in mothers and newborns. J Neonatal Perinatal Med 12(2):209, 2019
Rabotti C, Mischi M: Propagation of electrical activity in uterine muscle during pregnancy: a review. Acta Physiol 213:406, 2015
Racicot K, Kwon JY, Aldo P, et al: Understanding the complexity of the immune system during pregnancy. Am J Reprod Immunol 72:107, 2014
Redman CW, Sargent IL, Taylor RN: Immunology of normal pregnancy and preeclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015
Reese JA, Peck JD, Deschamps DR, et al: Platelet counts during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 379(1):32, 2018
Resnik JL, Hong C, Resnik R, et al: Evaluation of B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP) levels in normal and preeclamptic women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193:450, 2005
Rezai S, Nakagawa JT, Tedesco J, et al: Gestational gigantomastia complicating pregnancy: a case report and review of the literature. Case Rep Obstet Gynecol 2015:892369, 2015
Richani K, Soto E, Romero R, et al: Normal pregnancy is characterized by systemic activation of the complement system. J Matern Fetal Neonat Med 17:239, 2005
Rosai J, Young RH: Javier Arias-Stella and his famous reaction. Int J Gynecol Pathol 34:314, 2015
Rosenfeld CR, DeSpain K, Word RA, et al: Differential sensitivity to angiotensin II and norepinephrine in human uterine arteries. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 97(1):138, 2012
Rudder M, Russo M, Ventetuolo CE: Breathing for two. N Engl J Med 384:61, 2021
Rylander R: Magnesium in pregnancy blood pressure and pre-eclampsia—a review. Pregnancy Hypertens 4:146, 2014
Saarelainen H, Laitinen T, Raitakari OT, et al: Pregnancy-related hyperlipidemia and endothelial function in healthy women. Circ J 70:768, 2006
Saleh L, Verdonk K, Visser W, et al: The emerging role of endothelin-1 in the pathogenesis of pre-eclampsia. Ther Adv Cardiovasc Dis 10(5):282, 2016
Sangsawang B: Risk factors for the development of stress urinary incontinence during pregnancy in primigravidae: a review of the literature. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 178:27, 2014
Santa LM, Teshima LY, Forero JV, et al: AngiomiRs: potential biomarkers of pregnancy's vascular pathologies. J Pregnancy 2015:320386, 2015
Sanz-Salvador L, García-Pérez MÁ, Tarín JJ, et al: Bone metabolic changes during pregnancy: a period of vulnerability to osteoporosis and fracture. Eur J Endocrinol 172:R53, 2015
Sarmento Gonçalves I, Malafaia S, Belchior H, et al: Hyperreactio luteinalis encountered during caesarean delivery of an uncomplicated spontaneous singleton pregnancy. BMJ Case Rep 2015:bcr2015211349, 2015
Semins MJ, Matlaga BR: Kidney stones during pregnancy. Nat Rev Urol 11:163, 2014
Shah DA, Khalil RA: Bioactive factors in uteroplacental and systemic circulation link placental ischemia to generalized vascular dysfunction in hypertensive pregnancy and preeclampsia. Biochem Pharmacol 95:211, 2015
Sharief LT, Lawrie AS, Mackie IJ, et al: Changes in factor XIII level during pregnancy. Hemophilia 20:e144, 2014
Shibata K, Fukuwatari T, Sasaki S, et al: Urinary excretion levels of water-soluble vitamins in pregnant and lactating women in Japan. J Nutr Sci Vitaminol 59:178, 2013
Shin GH, Toto EL, Schey R: Pregnancy and postpartum bowel changes: constipation and fecal incontinence. Am J Gastroenterol 110:521, 2015
Shinagawa S, Suzuki S, Chihara H, et al: Maternal basal metabolic rate in twin pregnancy. Gynecol Obstet Invest 60:145, 2005
Shnaekel KL, Magann EF, Ahmadi S: Pubic symphysis rupture and separation during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 70:713, 2015
Siddiqui AH, Tauheed N, Ahmad A, et al: Pulmonary function in advanced uncomplicated singleton and twin pregnancy. J Bras Pneumol 40:244, 2014

Simeone S, Marchi L, Canarutto R, et al: Doppler velocimetry and adverse outcome in labor induction for late IUGR. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(3):323, 2017
Simpson KR, James DC: Efficacy of intrauterine resuscitation techniques in improving fetal oxygen status during labor. Obstet Gynecol 105:1362, 2005
Sisti G, Kanninen TT, Witkin SS: Maternal immunity and pregnancy outcome: focus on preconception and autophagy. Genes Immun 17:1, 2016
Smid MC, Ricks NM, Panzer A, et al: Maternal gut microbiome biodiversity in pregnancy. Am J Perinatol 35(1):24, 2018
Snart CJP, Keeble C, Taylor E, et al: Maternal iodine status and associations with birth outcomes in three major cities in the United Kingdom. Nutrients 11(2):441, 2019
Song CS, Kappas A: The influence of estrogens, progestins and pregnancy on the liver. Vitam Horm 26:147, 1968
Stephens TV, Payne M, Ball RO, et al: Protein requirements of healthy pregnant women during early and late gestation are higher than current recommendations. J Nutr 145:73, 2015
Stewart RD, Nelson DB, Matulevicius SA, et al: Cardiac magnetic resonance imaging to assess the impact of maternal habitus on cardiac remodeling during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214:640.e1, 2016
Stoehr JR, Choi JN, Colavincenzo M, et al: Off-label use of topical minoxidil in alopecia: a review. Am J Clin Dermatol 20(2):237, 2019
Sunitha M, Chandrasekharappa S, Brid SV: Electrocardiographic QRS axis, Q wave and T-wave changes in 2nd and 3rd trimester of normal pregnancy. J Clin Diagn Res 8:BC17, 2014
Syed S: Iodine and the "near" eradication of cretinism. Pediatrics 135:594, 2015
Taddei CR, Cortez RV, Mattar R, et al: Microbiome in normal and pathological pregnancies: a literature overview. Am J Reprod Immunol 80(2):e12993, 2018
Taylor BD, Ness RB, Olsen J, et al: Serum leptin measured in early pregnancy is higher in women with preeclampsia compared with normotensive pregnant women. Hypertension 65:594, 2015
Thomsen JK, Fogh-Andersen N, Jaszczak P, et al: Atrial natriuretic peptide, blood volume, aldosterone, and sodium excretion during twin pregnancy. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 73(1):14, 1994
Thornburg LL, Queenan R, Brandt-Griffith B, et al: Procalcitonin for prediction of chorioamnionitis in preterm premature rupture of membranes. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29:2056, 2016
Tsai CH, de Leeuw NK: Changes in 2,3-diphosphoglycerate during pregnancy and puerperium in normal women and in β-thalassemia heterozygous women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 142:520, 1982
Tsai PJ, Davis J, Bryant-Greenwood G: Systemic and placental leptin and its receptors in pregnancies associated with obesity. Reprod Sci 22:189, 2015
Türkan H, Gökgöz MS, Taşdelen I, et al: Gestational gigantomastia. J Breast Health 12(2):86, 2016
Tujula B, Kokki H, Räsänen J, et al: Procalcitonin; a feasible biomarker for severe bacterial infections in Obstetrics and Gynecology? Acta Obstet Gynecol Scan 97(5):505, 2018
Ulmsten U, Sundström G: Esophageal manometry in pregnant and nonpregnant women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 132:260, 1978
Van de Putte P, Vernieuwe L, Perlas A: Term pregnant patients have similar gastric volume to non-pregnant females: a single-centre cohort study. Br J Anaesth 122(1):79, 2019
Van den Akker CH, Schierbeek H, et al: Amino acid metabolism in the human fetus at term: leucine, valine, and methionine kinetics. Pediatr Res 70:566, 2011
Van Wagenen G, Jenkins RH: An experimental examination of factors causing ureteral dilatation of pregnancy. J Urol 42:1010, 1939
Vazquez MJ, Ruiz-Romero A, Tena-Sempere M: Roles of leptin in reproduction, pregnancy and polycystic ovary syndrome: consensus knowledge and recent developments. Metabolism 64:79, 2015
Velasco I, Bath SC, Rayman MP: Iodine as essential nutrient during the first 1000 days of like. Nutrients 10(3):pii.E290, 2018
Vignini A, Cecati M, Nanetti L, et al: Placental expression of endothelial and inducible nitric oxide synthase and NO metabolism in gestational hypertension: a case-control study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29:576, 2016
Vodstrcil LA, Tare M, Novak J, et al: Relaxin mediates uterine artery compliance during pregnancy and increases uterine blood flow. FASEB J 26(10):4035, 2012
Vrachnis N, Grigoriadis C, Siristatidis C, et al: The Janus face of maternal serum relaxin: a facilitator of birth, might it also induce preterm birth? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 28:218, 2015
Wadasinghe SU, Metcalf L, Metcalf P, et al: Maternal physiologic renal pelvis dilatation in pregnancy: sonographic reference data. J Ultrasound Med 35(12):2659, 2016
Walker MC, Garner PR, Keely EJ, et al: Changes in activated protein C resistance during normal pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 177:162, 1997
Wang L, Yang T, Ding Y, et al: Chemerin plays a protective role by regulating human umbilical vein endothelial cell-induced nitric oxide signaling in preeclampsia. Endocrine 48:299, 2015
Wang YY, Kannan A, Nunn KL, et al: IgG in cervicovaginal mucus traps HSV and prevents vaginal herpes infections. Mucosal Immunol 7:1036, 2014
West CA, Sasser JM, Baylis C: The enigma of continual plasma volume expansion in pregnancy: critical role of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol 311(6):F1125, 2016
Wilson M, Morganti AA, Zervoudakis I, et al: Blood pressure, the renin-aldosterone system and sex steroids throughout normal pregnancy. Am J Med 68:97, 1980
Wilson MJ, Lopez M, Vargas M, et al: Greater uterine artery blood flow during pregnancy in multigenerational (Andean) than shorter-term (European) high-altitude residents. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 293:R1313, 2007
Woodmansee WW: Pituitary disorders in pregnancy. Neurol Clin 37(1):63, 2019
World Health Organization: Human energy requirements. Food and nutrition technical report series 1. Rome, Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations, 2004, p 53
Yurteri-Kaplan L, Saber S, Zamudio S: Brain natriuretic peptide in term pregnancy. Reprod Sci 19(5):520, 2012
Zeeman GG, Cunningham FG, Pritchard JA: The magnitude of hemoconcentration with eclampsia. Hypertens Pregnancy 28(2):127, 2009
Zeeman GG, Hatab M, Twickler DM: Maternal cerebral blood flow changes in pregnancies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:968, 2003
Zhang HH, Chen JC, Sheibani L, et al: Pregnancy augments VEGF-stimulated in vitro angiogenesis and vasodilator (NO and H2S) production in human uterine artery endothelial cells. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 102(7):2382, 2017
Zhou SJ Condo D, Ryan P, et al: Association between maternal iodine intake in pregnancy and childhood neurodevelopment at age 18 months. Am J Epidemiol 88(2):332, 2019

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 3

PLACENTATION, EMBRYOGENESIS, AND FETAL DEVELOPMENT



CHAPTER 5

Implantation and Placental Development

All obstetricians should understand the basic biological steps required for women to achieve pregnancy. Moreover, abnormalities affecting these steps can lead to infertility or pregnancy loss. The biological and molecular changes involved in human zygote implantation and subsequent fetal and placental development are intricate. In the past 50 years, researchers have delineated many of these molecular and physiological events. Yet, much work remains in the continual challenge to improve clinical outcomes.

OVARIAN-ENDOMETRIAL CYCLE

In most women, cyclical ovulation continues during the almost 40 years between menarche and menopause. Thus, without contraception, approximately 400 opportunities for pregnancy exist, and these are tightly regulated by complex interactions of the hypothalamic-pituitary-ovarian axis. Concurrently, endometrium undergoes faithfully reproduced cyclical changes to prepare for pregnancy (Fig. 5-1). Essential contributors in this process include gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH), the gonadotropin hormones follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinizing hormone (LH), and the ovarian sex steroid hormones estrogen and progesterone. For a detailed description of menstrual cycle physiology, the reader is referred to Chapter 16 in *Williams Gynecology*, 4th edition (Halvorson, 2020).

Ovulation

This defining event separates the follicular and luteal phases of the menstrual cycle. Following ovulation, the corpus luteum develops from the remains of the graafian follicle in a process referred to as *luteinization*. The basement membrane separating the granulosa-lutein and theca-lutein cells breaks down, and by day 2 postovulation, blood vessels and capillaries invade the granulosa cell layer. During luteinization, these cells undergo hypertrophy and increase their capacity to synthesize hormones. LH is the primary luteotropic factor responsible for corpus luteum maintenance (Vande Wiele, 1970).

The hormone secretion pattern of the corpus luteum differs from that of the follicle. First, the greater capacity of granulosa-lutein cells to produce progesterone results from enhanced access to blood-borne, low-density lipoprotein (LDL)-derived cholesterol, which is a steroidogenic precursor (Carr, 1981). Ovarian progesterone production peaks at 25 to 50 mg/d during the midluteal phase. With pregnancy, the corpus luteum continues progesterone production in response to placental human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG). LH and hCG both act via the same LH-hCG receptor.

The human corpus luteum is a transient endocrine organ. In the absence of pregnancy, it rapidly undergoes apoptosis 9 to 11 days after ovulation (Vaskivuo, 2002). The dramatic drop in

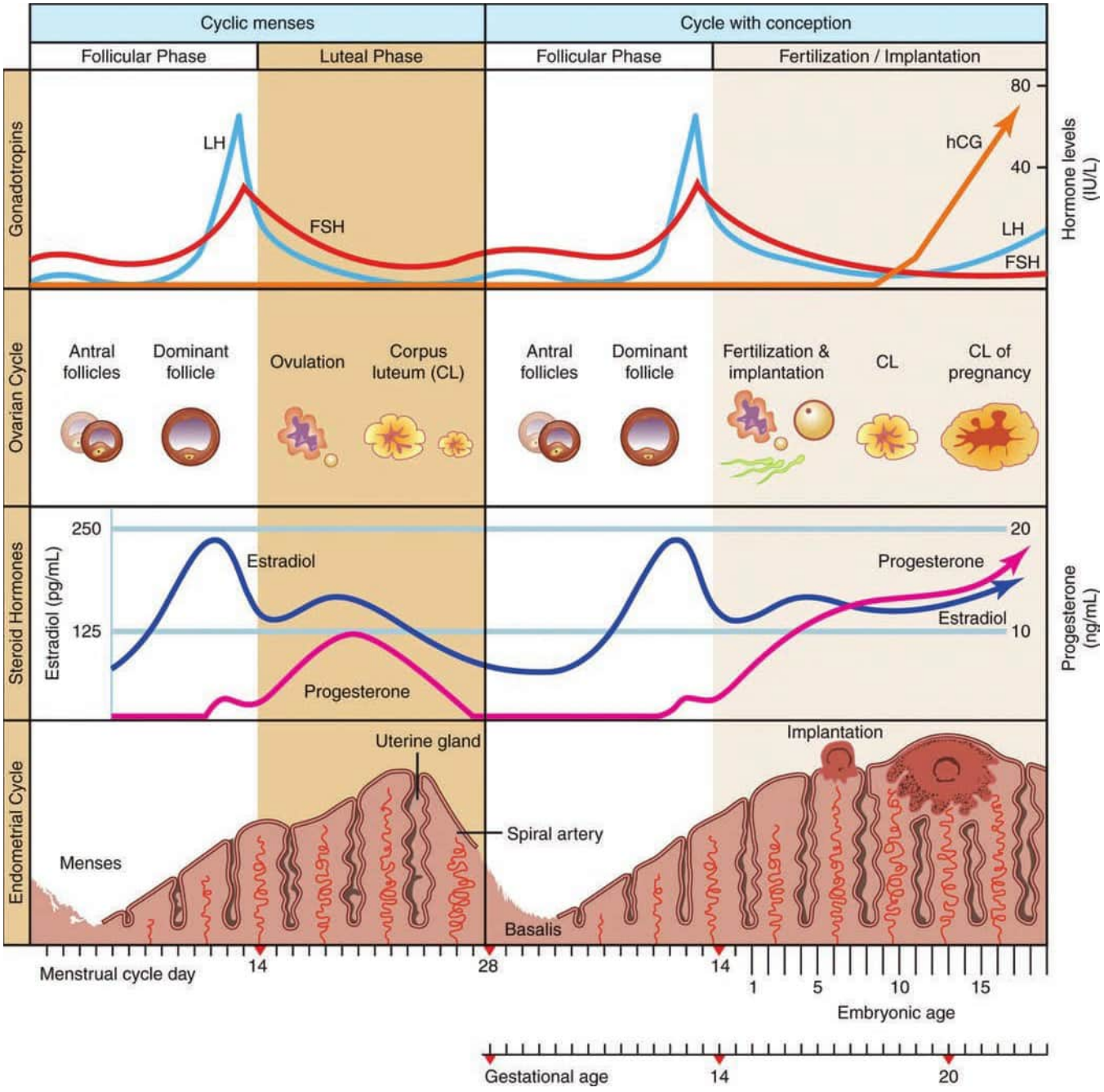


FIGURE 5-1 Gonadotropin control of the ovarian and endometrial cycles. The ovarian-endometrial cycle is structured as a 28-day cycle. The follicular phase (days 1 to 14) is characterized by rising estrogen levels, endometrial thickening, and selection of the dominant "ovulatory" follicle. During the luteal phase (days 14 to 21), the corpus luteum (CL) produces estrogen and progesterone, which prepare the endometrium for implantation. If implantation occurs, the developing blastocyst begins to produce human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) and rescues the corpus luteum, thus maintaining progesterone production. FSH = follicle-stimulating hormone; LH = luteinizing hormone.

circulating estradiol and progesterone levels initiate molecular events that lead to menstruation.

Between days 22 and 25 after ovulation, the secretory-phase endometrium undergoes striking changes associated with predecidual transformation of the upper two thirds of the functionalis layer. The glands exhibit extensive coiling, and luminal secretions become visible. Changes within the endometrium can also mark the *window of implantation* seen on days 20 to 24. Epithelial surface cells show fewer microvilli and cilia, but luminal protrusions appear on the apical cell surface (Nikas, 2003). These *pinopodes* help prepare for blastocyst implantation. They also coincide with changes in the surface glycocalyx that allow acceptance of a blastocyst (Aplin, 2003).

Another highlight of the secretory phase is the continuing growth and development of the spiral arteries. These vessels arise from the radial arteries, which are myometrial branches of the arcuate and, ultimately, uterine vessels. The morphological and functional properties of the spiral arteries are unique and essential to blood flow changes seen during menstruation or implantation. During endometrial growth, spiral arteries lengthen at

a rate appreciably greater than the rate of endometrial tissue thickening. This growth discordance obliges even greater coiling. Spiral artery development reflects a marked induction of angiogenesis, reflected by widespread vessel sprouting and extension.

At this juncture with hormonal withdrawal, menstruation follows. With blastocyst implantation, however, the endometrium is converted to the decidua.

DECIDUA

This is a specialized, highly modified endometrium of pregnancy. It is essential for *hemochorial placentation*, that is, one in which maternal blood contacts trophoblast. This relationship requires trophoblast invasion, and considerable research has focused on the interaction between decidual cells and invading trophoblasts. *Decidualization* transforms proliferating endometrial stromal cells into specialized secretory cells. This process depends on estrogen, progesterone, androgens, and factors secreted by the implanting blastocyst (Gibson, 2016). The decidua produces factors that regulate endometrial receptivity and that modulate immune and vascular cell functions within the maternal–fetal microenvironment. The special immunomodulatory relationship between the decidua and invading trophoblasts is largely mediated by decidual natural killer (NK) cells and ensures success of the pregnancy semiallograft.

Decidual Structure

The decidua is classified into three parts based on anatomical location. Decidua directly beneath the implanted blastocyst is modified by trophoblast invasion and becomes the *decidua basalis*. The *decidua capsularis* overlies the enlarging blastocyst and initially separates the conceptus from the rest of the uterine cavity (Fig. 5-2). This portion is most prominent during the second month of pregnancy and consists of stromal decidual cells covered by a single layer of flattened epithelial cells. The other side of the capsularis contacts the avascular, extraembryonic fetal membrane—the chorion laeve. The remainder of the uterus is lined by *decidua parietalis*. During early pregnancy, a space lies between the decidua capsularis and parietalis because the gestational sac does not fill the entire uterine cavity. The gestational sac is the *extraembryonic coelom* and also called the chorionic cavity. By 14 to 16 weeks' gestation, the expanding sac has enlarged to completely fill the uterine cavity. The resulting apposition of the decidua capsularis and parietalis creates the *decidua vera*, and the uterine cavity is functionally obliterated.

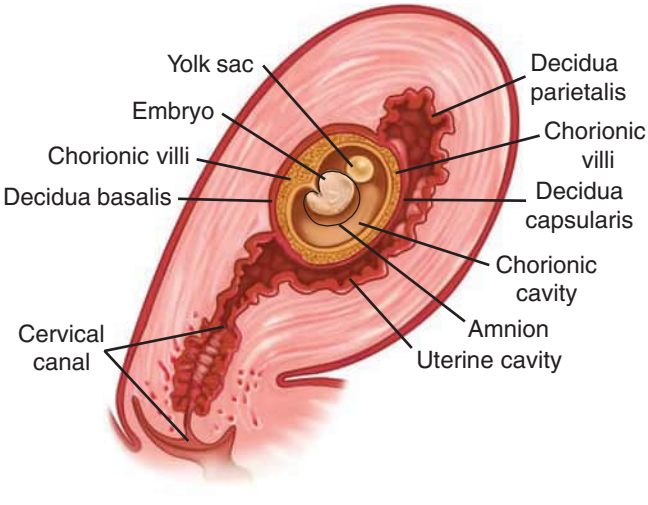


FIGURE 5-2 Three portions of the decidua—the basalis, capsularis, and parietalis—are illustrated.

In early pregnancy, the decidua begins to thicken, eventually attaining a depth of 5 to 10 mm. With magnification, furrows and numerous small openings, representing the mouths of uterine glands, can be detected. Later in pregnancy, the decidua becomes thinner, presumably because of pressure exerted by the expanding uterine contents.

The decidua parietalis and basalis are composed of three layers. There is a surface or compact zone—*zona compacta*; a middle portion or spongy zone—*zona spongiosa*—that has remnants of glands and numerous small blood vessels; and a basal zone—*zona basalis*. The zona compacta and spongiosa together form the *zona functionalis*. The basal zone remains after delivery and gives rise to new endometrium.

The decidual reaction is completed only with blastocyst implantation. Predecidual changes, however, commence first during the midluteal phase in endometrial stromal cells adjacent to the spiral arteries and arterioles. Thereafter, these alterations spread in waves throughout the uterine endometrium. The endometrial stromal cells enlarge to form polygonal or round decidual cells. The nuclei become vesicular, and the cytoplasm becomes clear, slightly basophilic, and surrounded by a translucent membrane.

As the embryo–fetus grows, the blood supply to the decidua capsularis is lost. However, spiral arteries persist to supply the decidua parietalis. These arteries retain smooth muscle and endothelium and thereby remain responsive to vasoactive agents.

In contrast, the spiral arteries that supply the decidua basalis and ultimately the placental intervillous space are altered remarkably. Trophoblastic cells invade the spiral arterioles and arteries and replace their endothelial cells. The vessel wall smooth muscle is destroyed, and the resulting uteroplacental vessels become unresponsive to vasoactive agents. Defective trophoblastic invasion of spiral arteries is thought to be one underlying cause of preeclampsia (Chap. 40, p. 692). Conversely, the fetal chorionic vessels, which transport blood between the placenta and the fetus, contain smooth muscle and thus do respond to vasoactive agents.

Decidual Histology

Early in pregnancy, the decidual zona spongiosa consists of large distended glands, often exhibiting marked hyperplasia and separated by minimal stroma. At first, the glands are lined by typical cylindrical uterine epithelium with abundant secretory activity that contributes to blastocyst nourishment. With advanced pregnancy, the glandular elements largely disappear, and the spongy zone of the decidua basalis consists mainly of arteries and widely dilated veins.

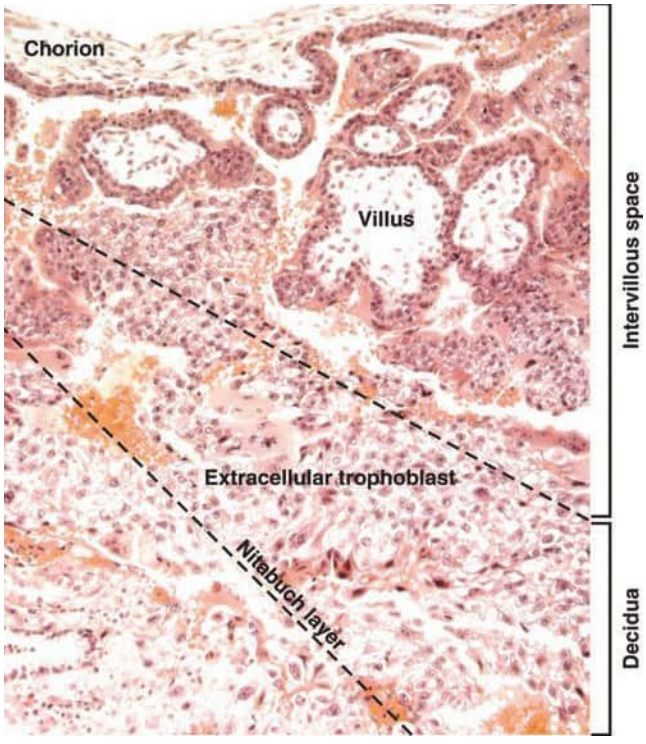


FIGURE 5-3 Section through a junction of chorion, villi, and decidua basalis in early first-trimester pregnancy. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Kurt Benirschke.)

The decidua basalis contributes to formation of the placental basal plate (Fig. 5-3). As such, it is invaded by many interstitial trophoblasts. The *Nitabuch layer* is a zone of fibrinoid degeneration in which invading trophoblasts meet the decidua basalis. If the decidua is defective, as in placenta accreta, the Nitabuch layer is usually absent (Chap. 43, p. 759). Normally, there is also a more superficial, but inconsistent, deposition of fibrin—*Rohr stria*—at the bottom of the intervillous space and surrounding the anchoring villi. Decidual necrosis is a common phenomenon in the first and probably second trimesters (McCombs, 1964). Thus, necrotic decidua obtained through curettage after spontaneous abortion should not necessarily be interpreted as either a cause or an effect of the pregnancy loss.

Both decidual layers contain numerous cell groups whose composition varies with gestational stage (Loke, 1995). The primary cellular components are the true decidual cells, which differentiated from the endometrial stromal cells, and numerous maternal bone marrow-derived cells. Of the latter, lymphocytes with unique properties accumulate at the maternal–fetal interface and are essential to evoke immune tolerance between mother and fetus. These include regulatory T cells, decidual macrophages, and decidual NK cells. Collectively, these cells not only provide immunotolerance but also play an important role in trophoblast invasion and vasculogenesis (PrabhuDas, 2015).

■ Decidual Prolactin

The decidua produces prolactin, which is present in enormous amounts in amnionic fluid (Golander, 1978; Riddick, 1979). Decidual prolactin is a product of the same gene that encodes for anterior pituitary prolactin, but the exact physiological role of decidual prolactin is unknown. Signaling by prolactin can lead to the production of proangiogenic factors. Prolactin can also be cleaved by proteases to form vasoinhibins (Nakajima, 2015; Triebel, 2015). These compounds have antiangiogenic properties and may contribute to peripartum cardiomyopathy, whose pathogenesis and treatment are discussed in Chapter 52 (p. 933).

Decidual prolactin preferentially enters amnionic fluid and may reach extraordinarily high levels of 10,000 ng/mL at 20 to 24 weeks' gestation (Tyson, 1972). In contrast, maternal serum levels are relatively low at 150 to 200 ng/mL. As discussed in Chapter 4 (p. 57), prolactin inhibits maternal insulin action and results in increased glucose levels for fetal growth.

IMPLANTATION AND EARLY TROPHOBLAST FORMATION

■ Fertilization

With ovulation, the ovary releases the secondary oocyte and surrounding cells of the cumulus–oocyte complex. The oocyte complex is quickly engulfed by the fallopian tube infundibulum. Directional movement of cilia and tubal peristalsis moves the ovum within the tubal lumen. Fertilization takes place in the lumen within a few hours, and no more than a day after ovulation. Because of this narrow window, spermatozoa must be present in the fallopian tube at the time of oocyte arrival. Almost all pregnancies result when intercourse occurs during the 2 days preceding or on the day of ovulation.

Fertilization is highly complex. Molecular mechanisms allow spermatozoa to pass between cumulus cells; through the zona pellucida, which is a thick glycoprotein layer surrounding the oocyte cell membrane; and into the oocyte cytoplasm. Fusion of the two nuclei and intermingling of maternal and paternal chromosomes creates the *zygote*.

Early human development is described by days or weeks postfertilization, that is, postconceptional (Chap. 7, p. 121). By contrast, in most chapters of this book, clinical pregnancy dating is calculated from the first day of the last menstrual period (LMP). Thus, 1 week postfertilization corresponds to approximately 3 weeks from the LMP in women with regular 28-day cycles. This convention is clinically important for dating pregnancies conceived by in vitro fertilization (IVF), in which the gestational age is 14 days greater than the day of fertilization. As an example, 8 weeks' gestation refers to 8 completed weeks following the LMP but corresponds to 6 weeks postfertilization.

After fertilization, the zygote—a diploid cell with 46 chromosomes—undergoes cleavage, and zygote cells produced by this division are *blastomeres* (Fig. 5-4). In the two-cell zygote, the blastomeres and polar body continue to be surrounded by the zona pellucida. The zygote undergoes slow cleavage for 3 days while still in the fallopian tube. As the blastomeres continue to divide, a solid mulberry-like ball of cells—the *morula*—is produced. The morula enters the uterine cavity approximately 3 days after fertilization. Gradual accumulation of fluid between the morula cells leads to formation of the early *blastocyst*.

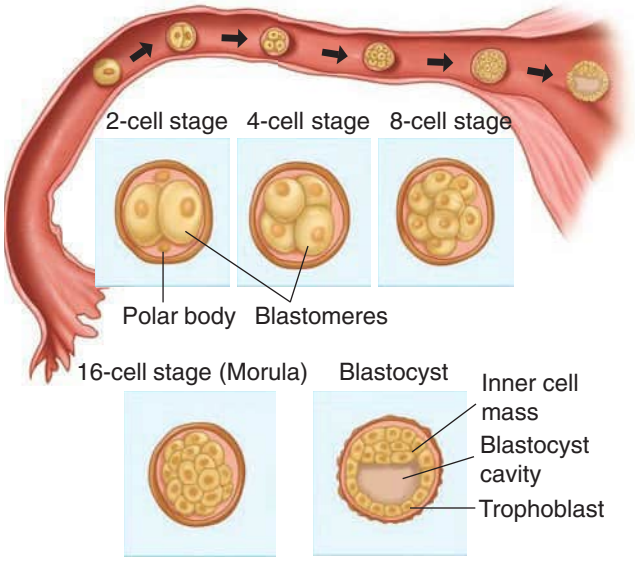


FIGURE 5-4 Zygote cleavage and blastocyst formation. The morula period begins at the 12- to 16-cell stage and ends when the blastocyst forms, which occurs when there are 50 to 60 blastomeres present. The polar bodies, shown in the 2-cell stage, are small nonfunctional cells that degenerate.

Blastocyst

As early as 4 to 5 days after fertilization, the 58-cell blastocyst differentiates into five embryo-producing cells—the *inner cell mass* (see Fig. 5-4). The remaining 53 outer cells, called the *trophectoderm*, are destined to form *trophoblasts* (Hertig, 1962).

In the 107-cell blastocyst, the eight formative, embryo-producing cells are surrounded by 99 trophoblastic cells. The blastocyst is released from the zona pellucida secondary to secretion of specific proteases from the secretory-phase endometrial glands (O'Sullivan, 2002). Release from the zona pellucida allows blastocyst-produced cytokines and hormones to directly influence endometrial receptivity (Lindhard, 2002). The blastocyst secretes interleukin-1α (IL-1α) and IL-1β, which are cytokines that likely directly influence the endometrium. Embryos also secrete hCG, which may influence endometrial receptivity (Licht, 2001; Lobo, 2001).

The receptive endometrium is thought to respond by producing leukemia inhibitory factor (LIF), follistatin, and colony-stimulating factor-1 (CSF-1). LIF and follistatin activate signaling pathways that collectively inhibit proliferation and promote differentiation of the endometrial epithelia and stroma to enable uterine receptivity (Rosario, 2016b). At the maternal–fetal interface, CSF-1 has proposed immunomodulatory and proangiogenic actions that are required for implantation (Rahmati, 2015).

■ Implantation

The blastocyst implants into the uterine wall 6 or 7 days after fertilization. This process can be divided into three phases: (1) *apposition*—initial contact of the blastocyst to the uterine wall; (2) *adhesion*—increased physical contact between the blastocyst and decidua; and (3) *invasion*—penetration and invasion of syncytiotrophoblast and cytotrophoblasts into the decidua, inner third of the myometrium, and uterine vasculature. Successful implantation requires a receptive endometrium appropriately primed with estrogen and progesterone by the corpus luteum. Such uterine receptivity is limited to days 20 to 24 of the endometrial cycle. Adherence is mediated by cell-surface receptors at the implantation site that interact with blastocyst receptors (Carson, 2002; Lessey, 2002). If the blastocyst approaches the endometrium after cycle day 24, the potential for adhesion declines because antiadhesive glycoprotein synthesis prevents receptor interactions (Navot, 1991). A mismatch between uterine receptivity and timing of embryo transfer can lead to repeated implantation failure in some IVF patients. This has stimulated efforts to define receptivity by gene expression profiles to improve clinical outcomes (Ruiz-Alonso, 2013).

At the time of its interaction with the endometrium, the blastocyst is composed of 100 to 250 cells. The blastocyst trophectoderm loosely adheres to the decidua by apposition. This appears to be closely regulated by paracrine interactions between these two tissues and most commonly occurs on the upper posterior uterine wall.

Successful endometrial blastocyst adhesion involves modified expression of cellular adhesion molecules (CAMs). The integrins—one of four families of CAMs—are cell-surface receptors that mediate cell adhesion to extracellular matrix proteins (Lessey, 2002). Endometrial integrins are hormonally regulated, and a specific set of integrins is expressed at implantation (Lessey, 1995). Recognition-site blockade of the integrins needed for binding will prevent blastocyst attachment (Kaneko, 2013).

■ Trophoblast Development

The fetus depends on the placenta for pulmonary, hepatic, and renal functions. These are accomplished through the anatomical relationship of the placenta and its uterine interface. In overview, maternal blood flows from uteroplacental vessels into the placental intervillous space and bathes the syncytiotrophoblast, which surround villi. Here, gases, nutrients, and other substances are exchanged with fetal capillary blood within the core of each placental villus. Thus, fetal and maternal blood do not normally mix in this hemochorial placenta.

Human placental formation begins with the trophectoderm, which gives rise to a trophoblast cell layer encircling the blastocyst. Trophoblast exhibits the most variable structure, function, and developmental pattern of all placental components. Its invasiveness promotes implantation, its nutritional role for the conceptus is reflected in their name, and its endocrine function is essential to maternal physiological adaptations and to pregnancy maintenance.

By the eighth day postfertilization, after initial implantation, the trophoblast has differentiated into an outer multinucleated syncytium—the primitive *syncytiotrophoblast*, and an inner layer of primitive mononuclear cells—*cytotrophoblasts*. The latter are solely germinal cells for the syncytium. As cytotrophoblasts differentiate, they express an endogenous envelope protein called *syncytin*, which aids their cell fusion with the expanding outer layer of syncytiotrophoblast. Each cytotrophoblast has a well-demarcated cell border, a single nucleus, and ability to undergo DNA synthesis and mitosis (Arnholdt, 1991). These are lacking

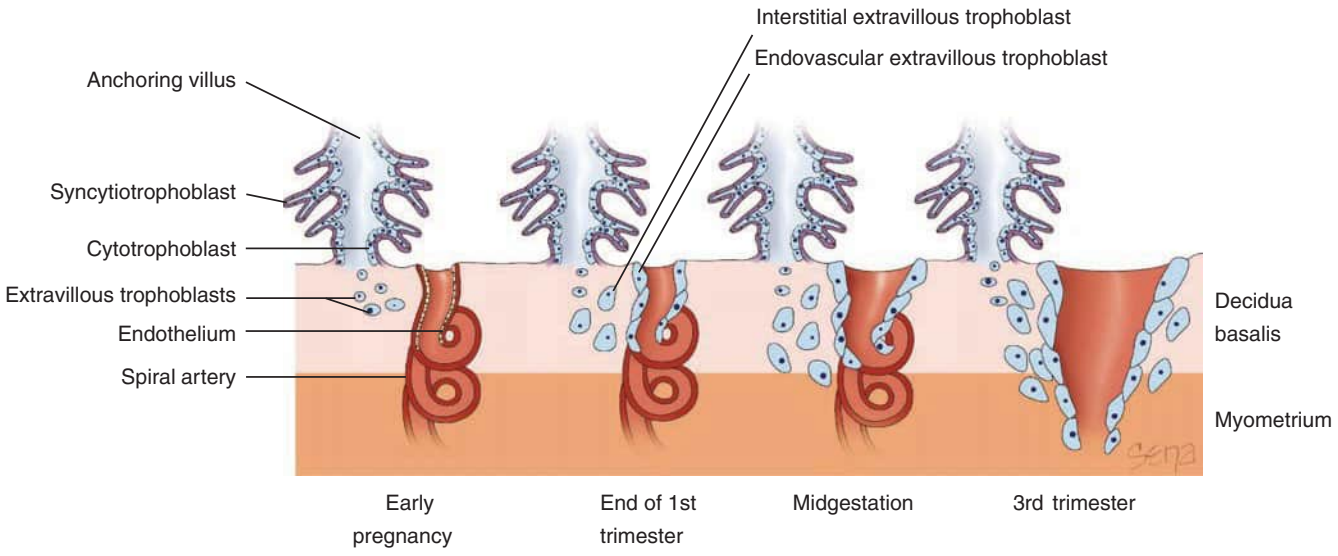


FIGURE 5-5 Endovascular and interstitial extravillous trophoblasts are found outside the villus. Endovascular trophoblasts invade and transform spiral arteries during pregnancy to create low-resistance blood flow that is characteristic of the placenta. Interstitial trophoblasts invade the decidua and surround spiral arteries.

in the syncytiotrophoblast, which provides transport functions of the placenta. It is so named because instead of individual cells, it has an amorphous cytoplasm without cell borders, nuclei that are multiple and diverse in size and shape, and a continuous syncytial lining.

Following implantation, trophoblasts differentiate along two main pathways that give rise to either villous or extravillous trophoblasts. As shown in Figure 5-5, both have distinct functions (Loke, 1995). *Villous trophoblasts* generate chorionic villi, which primarily transport oxygen, nutrients, and other compounds between the fetus and mother. *Extravillous trophoblasts* migrate into the decidua and myometrium (Fig. 5-6). They also penetrate maternal vasculature and thus directly contact various maternal cell types (Pijnenborg, 1994). Extravillous trophoblasts are further classified as *interstitial trophoblasts* and *endovascular trophoblasts*. The interstitial trophoblasts invade the decidua and eventually penetrate the myometrium to form placental-bed giant cells. These trophoblasts also surround spiral arteries. The endovascular trophoblasts penetrate the spiral artery lumens (Pijnenborg, 1983).

Recently, single-cell RNA sequencing technology has enabled inference of trophoblast differentiation lineages (Liu, 2018; Tsang, 2017). This has also yielded insights into the communication between trophoblasts and maternal decidual and immune cell populations (Vento-Tormo, 2018). Furthermore, human trophoblast stem cells, long hypothesized to exist, have been isolated from early gestations (Okae, 2018). Culture of these cells will likely aid greater understanding of early trophoblast differentiation and invasion (Haider, 2018; Turco, 2018).

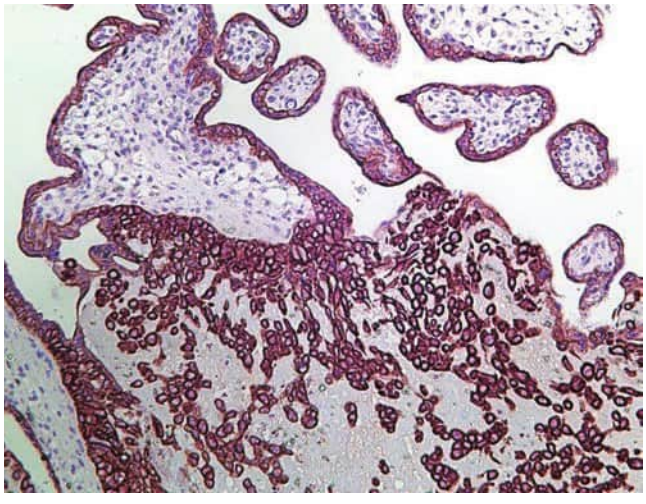


FIGURE 5-6 Photomicrograph of extravillous trophoblast invasion of the decidua basalis.

Early Invasion

After gentle erosion between epithelial cells of the surface endometrium, invading trophoblasts burrow deeper. At 9 days of development, the blastocyst wall facing the uterine lumen is a single layer of flattened cells. By the 10th day, the blastocyst becomes totally encased within the endometrium (Fig. 5-7). The blastocyst wall opposite the uterine lumen is thicker and comprises two zones—the trophoblasts and the embryo-forming inner cell mass. As early as 7.5 days postfertilization, the inner cell mass or embryonic disc differentiates into a thick plate of primitive ectoderm and an underlying layer of endoderm. Some small cells appear between the embryonic disc and the trophoblasts and enclose a space that will become the amnionic cavity.

Extraembryonic mesenchyme first appears as groups of isolated cells within the blastocyst cavity, and later this mesoderm completely lines the cavity. Within this mesoderm, spaces form and then fuse to form the chorionic cavity, that is, the extraembryonic coelom. The *chorion* is composed of trophoblasts and mesenchyme. Some mesenchymal cells eventually will condense to form the *body stalk*. This stalk joins the embryo to the nutrient chorion and later develops into the umbilical cord. The body stalk can be recognized at an early stage at the caudal end of the embryonic disc (Fig. 7-3, p. 123).

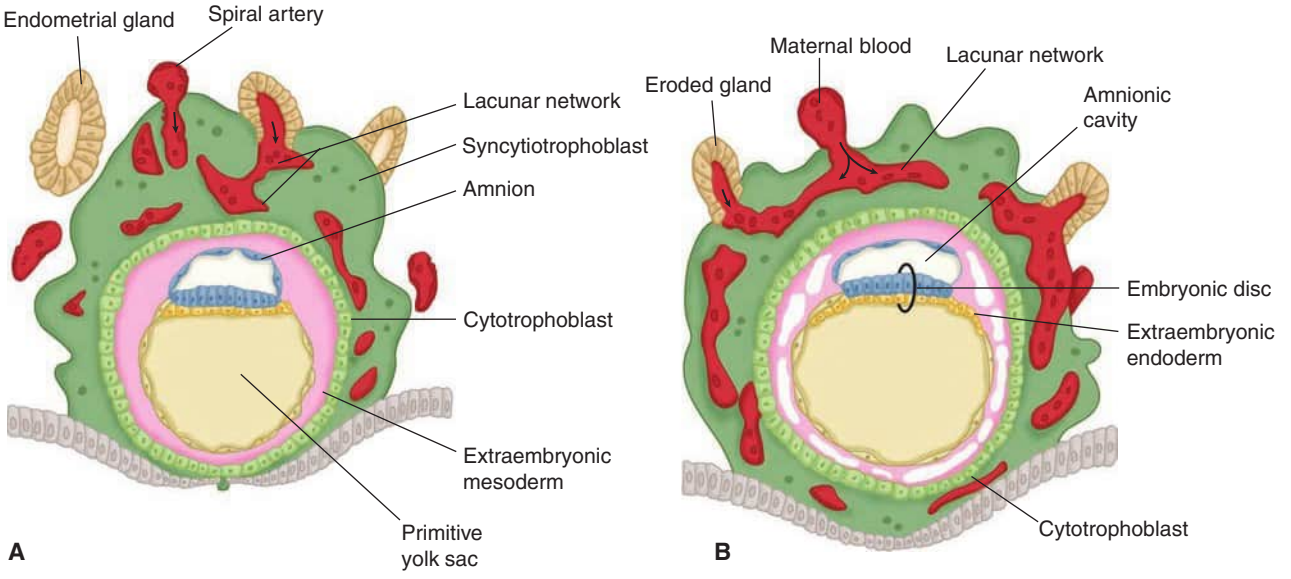


FIGURE 5-7 Drawing of sections through implanted blastocysts. **A.** At 10 days. **B.** At 12 days after fertilization. This stage is characterized by the intercommunication of the lacunae filled with maternal blood. Note in (B) that large cavities have appeared in the extraembryonic mesoderm, forming the beginning of the extraembryonic coelom. Also, extraembryonic endodermal cells have begun to form on the inside of the primitive yolk sac. (Redrawn from Moore KL, Persaud, TV, Torchia, MG (eds): The Developing Human. Clinically Oriented Embryology, 9th ed. Philadelphia, PA: Saunders; 2013.)

As the embryo enlarges, more maternal decidua basalis is invaded by syncytiotrophoblast. Beginning approximately 12 days after conception, the syncytiotrophoblast is permeated by a system of intercommunicating channels called *trophoblastic lacunae*. After invasion of superficial decidual capillary walls, lacunae become filled with maternal blood. At the same time, the decidual reaction, characterized by decidual stromal cell enlargement and glycogen storage, intensifies (p. 84).

Chorionic Villi

With deeper invasion into the decidua, solid primary villi arise from buds of cytotrophoblasts that protrude into the primitive syncytium before 12 days postfertilization. Primary villi are composed of a cytotrophoblast core covered by syncytiotrophoblast. As the lacunae merge, a complicated labyrinth is formed that is partitioned by these solid cytotrophoblastic columns. The trophoblast-lined channels form the *intervillous space*, and the solid cellular columns form the *primary villous stalks*.

Beginning on the 12th day after fertilization, mesenchymal cords derived from extraembryonic mesoderm invade the solid trophoblast columns. These then form *secondary villi*. Once angiogenesis begins in the mesenchymal cords, *tertiary villi* are created. Although maternal venous sinuses are tapped early in implantation, maternal arterial blood does not enter the intervillous space until around day 15. By the 17th day, however, fetal blood vessels are functional, and a placental circulation is established. The fetal–placental circulation is completed when the blood vessels of the embryo are connected with chorionic vessels. In some villi, angiogenesis fails from lack of circulation. The most striking exaggeration of this is seen with hydatidiform mole (Fig. 13-1, p. 236).

Villi are covered by an outer layer of syncytiotrophoblast and an inner layer of cytotrophoblasts. Proliferation of cytotrophoblast at the villous tips produces the trophoblastic cell columns that form *anchoring villi*. They are not invaded by fetal mesenchyme, and they are anchored to the decidua at the *basal plate*, which is the maternal side of the intervillous space. The *chorionic plate* forms the roof of the intervillous space. It consists of the two layers of trophoblasts, which line the intervillous space, and fibrous mesoderm on the opposite side. The final chorionic plate is formed by 8 to 10 weeks as the amnionic and primary chorionic plate mesenchyme fuse together. This formation is accomplished by expansion of the amnionic sac.

Early electron microscopic studies demonstrate prominent microvilli on the syncytial surface (Fig. 5-8) (Wislocki, 1955).

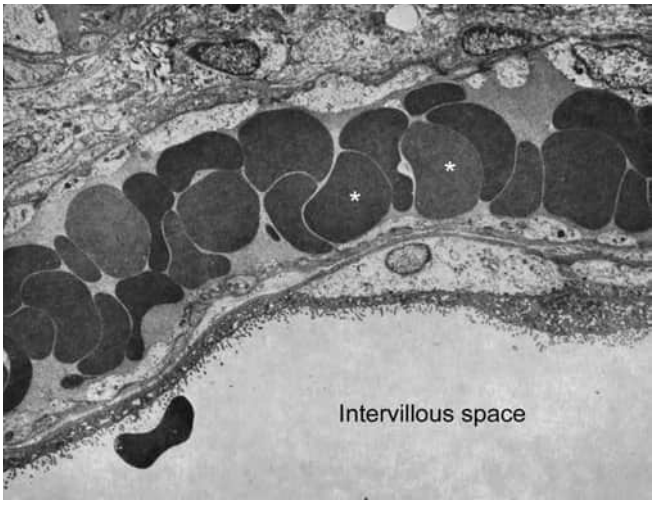


FIGURE 5-8 Electron micrograph of term human placenta villus. A villus capillary filled with fetal red blood cells (*asterisks*) is seen in close proximity to the microvilli border. (Reproduced with permission from Boyd JD, Hamilton WJ: The Human Placenta. Cambridge, Heffer, 1970.)

Associated pinocytotic vacuoles and vesicles are involved in both absorptive and secretory placental functions. Microvilli increase trophoblast surface area in direct contact with maternal blood, the defining characteristic of a hemochorial placenta.

PLACENTA AND CHORION

Chorion Development

In early pregnancy, the villi are distributed over the entire periphery of the chorionic membrane (Fig. 5-9). As the blastocyst with its surrounding trophoblasts grows and expands into the decidua, one pole faces the endometrial cavity. The opposite pole will form the placenta. Here, chorionic villi in contact with the decidua basalis proliferate to form the *chorion frondosum*—or leafy chorion. As growth of embryonic and extraembryonic tissues continues, the blood supply to the chorion facing the endometrial cavity is restricted. Because of this, villi in contact with the decidua capsularis cease to grow and then degenerate. This portion of the chorion becomes the avascular fetal membrane that abuts the decidua parietalis and is called the *chorion laeve*—or smooth chorion. This smooth chorion is composed of cytotrophoblasts and fetal mesodermal mesenchyme. A paracrine system between the decidua and chorion also links mother and fetus. This is an extraordinarily important arrangement for maternal–fetal communication and for maternal immunological acceptance of the conceptus (Guzeloglu-Kayisli, 2009).

Until near the end of the third month, the chorion laeve is separated from the amnion by the exocoelomic cavity. Thereafter, they are in intimate contact to form the avascular amniochorion. These two structures are important sites of molecular transfer and metabolic activity. Moreover, they constitute an important paracrine arm of the fetal–maternal communication system.

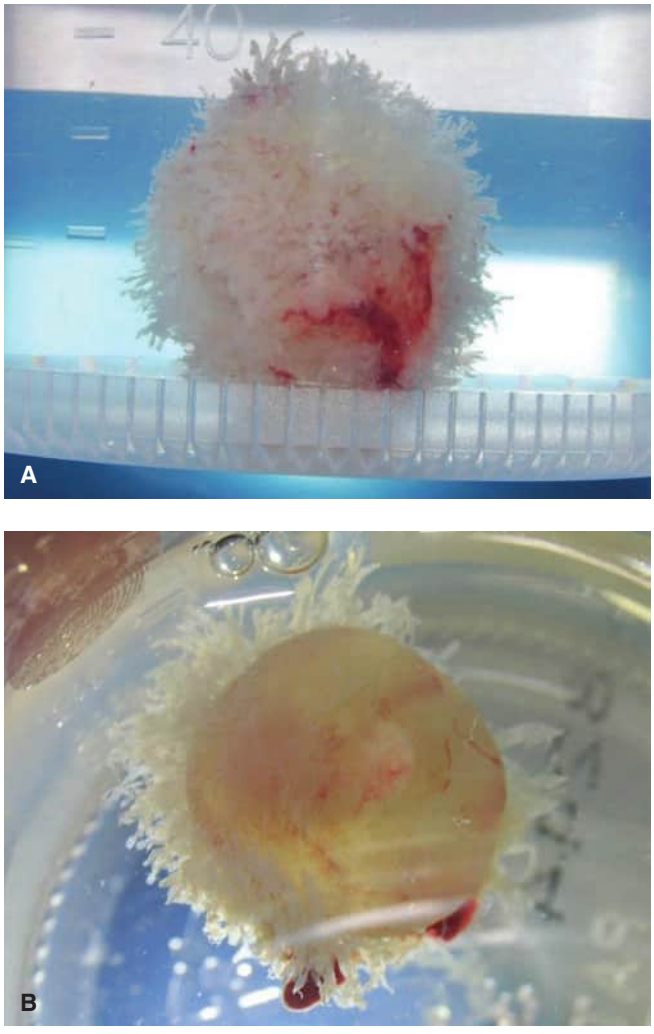


FIGURE 5-9 Complete abortion specimens. **A.** Initially, the entire chorionic sac is covered with villi, and the embryo within is not visible **B.** Stretch and pressure from further growth prompt partial regression of the villi. The remaining villi form the future placenta, whereas the smooth portion is the chorion.

Regulators of Trophoblast Invasion

Implantation and endometrial decidualization activate a unique population of maternal immune cells that play critical functions in trophoblast invasion, angiogenesis, spiral artery remodeling, and maternal tolerance to fetal alloantigens. Decidual natural killer cells (dNK) make up 70 percent of decidual leukocytes in the first trimester and directly contact trophoblasts. In contrast to NK cells in peripheral blood, dNK cells lack cytotoxic functions. They produce specific cytokines and angiogenic factors to regulate trophoblast invasion and spiral artery remodeling (Hanna, 2006). dNK cells promote phagocytosis of cell debris (Faas, 2017). These and other unique properties distinguish dNK cells from circulating NK cells and from NK cells in the endometrium before pregnancy (Fu, 2013; Winger, 2013). dNK cells express both IL-8 and interferon-inducible protein 10, which bind to receptors on invasive trophoblastic cells to promote their decidual invasion toward the spiral arteries. dNK cells also produce proangiogenic factors, including VEGF and placental growth factor (PlGF), which both promote vascular growth in the decidua.

Trophoblasts also secrete specific chemokines that attract the dNK cells to the maternal–fetal interface. Thus, both cell types simultaneously attract each other. Decidual macrophages account for approximately 20 percent of leukocytes in the first trimester and elicit an M2-immunomodulatory phenotype (Williams, 2009). Recall that while M1 macrophages are proinflammatory, M2 macrophages counter proinflammatory responses and promote tissue repair.

Concurrently, T cell subsets aid tolerance toward the allogenic fetus. Regulatory T cells (Tregs) are essential for promoting immune tolerance. Other T cell subsets are present, such as Th1, Th2, and Th17, although their functions are tightly regulated (Ruocco, 2014).

Endometrial Invasion

Extravillous trophoblasts of the first-trimester placenta are highly invasive. This process occurs under low-oxygen conditions, and regulatory factors that are induced under hypoxic conditions are contributory (Soares, 2012). Invasive trophoblasts

secrete numerous proteolytic enzymes that digest extracellular matrix and activate proteinases already present in the decidua. Trophoblasts produce urokinase-type plasminogen activator, which converts plasminogen into the broadly acting serine protease, plasmin. This in turn both degrades matrix proteins and activates MMPs. One member of the MMP family, MMP-9, appears to be critical. The timing and extent of trophoblast invasion is regulated by a balanced interplay between pro- and anti-invasive factors.

Low estradiol levels in the first trimester are critical for trophoblast invasion and spiral artery remodeling. Animal studies suggest that the rise in second-trimester estradiol levels suppresses and limits vessel remodeling by reducing trophoblast expression of VEGF and specific integrin receptors (Bonagura, 2012). Namely, extravillous trophoblasts express integrin receptors that recognize the extracellular matrix proteins collagen IV, laminin, and fibronectin. Binding of these matrix proteins and integrin receptors initiates signals to promote trophoblast cell migration and differentiation. However, as pregnancy advances, rising estradiol levels downregulate VEGF and integrin receptor expression. This represses and controls the extent of uterine vessel transformation.

Spiral Artery Invasion

One of the most remarkable features of human placental development is the extensive modification of maternal vasculature by trophoblasts, which are fetal in origin. These events occur in the first half of pregnancy and are essential to uteroplacental blood flow. They are also integral to conditions such as preeclampsia, fetal-growth restriction, and preterm birth. Spiral artery modifications are carried out by two populations of extravillous trophoblasts—*endovascular trophoblasts*, which penetrate the spiral-artery lumen, and *interstitial trophoblasts*, which surround the arteries (see Fig. 5-5).

Interstitial trophoblasts constitute a major portion of the placental bed. They penetrate the decidua and adjacent myometrium and aggregate around spiral arteries, where they may aid endovascular trophoblast invasion.

Endovascular trophoblasts first enter the spiral artery lumens and initially form cellular plugs. They then promote apoptosis of the native endothelium and replace the vessel lumen with cells of fetal origin. Fibrinoid material replaces smooth muscle and connective tissue of the vessel media. This decreases resistance of blood flow into the intervillous space. Invading endovascular trophoblasts can extend several centimeters along the vessel lumen, and they must migrate against arterial flow. Of note, invasion by trophoblasts involves only the decidual spiral arteries and not decidual veins.

Uteroplacental vessel development proceeds in two waves or stages (Ramsey, 1980). First, before 12 weeks' postfertilization, spiral arteries are invaded and modified up to the border between the decidua and myometrium. The second wave, between 12 and 16 weeks, involves some invasion of the intramyometrial segments of spiral arteries. Remodeling converts narrow-lumen, muscular spiral arteries into dilated, low-resistance uteroplacental vessels. Molecular mechanisms of these crucial events and their significance for preeclampsia and fetal-growth restriction have been reviewed (Pereira de Sousa, 2017; Xie, 2016).

Although early placenta development occurs in a low-oxygen-tension environment (2 to 3 percent O_2), this vascular remodeling increases blood flow and oxygenation such that the oxygen concentration more than doubles around the end of the first trimester (Chang, 2018).

Villus Branching

Although certain villi of the chorion frondosum extend from the chorionic plate to the decidua to serve as anchoring villi, most villi arborize and end freely within the intervillous space. As gestation proceeds, the short, thick, early stem villi branch to form progressively finer subdivisions and greater numbers of increasingly smaller villi (Fig. 5-10). This increasing villous surface area correlates with gestational age and aids fetal growth. In cases of restricted blood flow, more highly branched villi than expected for gestational age is a compensatory mechanism.

Each truncal or main stem villus and its ramifications constitutes a placental lobule or cotyledon. Each lobule has a single chorionic artery and vein, such that lobules constitute the functional units of placental architecture.

Placental Growth and Maturation

In the first trimester, placental growth is more rapid than that of the fetus. However, by 17 weeks' gestation, placental and fetal weights are nearly equal. By term, placental weight approximates one sixth of fetal weight.

The mature placenta and its variant forms are discussed in detail in Chapter 6 (p. 108). Briefly, viewed from the maternal surface, which attaches to the uterine wall, the number of slightly elevated convex areas, called lobes, varies from 10 to 38. Lobes are incompletely separated by grooves of variable depth. These tissue grooves form in response to placental septa, which rise up as projections of decidua. The total number of placental lobes remains the same throughout gestation, and individual lobes continue to grow—although less actively in late pregnancy (Crawford, 1959). Although grossly visible lobes are commonly referred to as cotyledons, this is inaccurate. Correctly used, lobules or cotyledons are the functional units supplied by each main stem villus.

As villi continue to branch and the terminal ramifications become more numerous and smaller, the volume of cytotrophoblasts decline. This layer attenuates, and by 16 weeks' gestation, the apparent continuity of the cytotrophoblasts is lost. As the syncytium also thins, the fetal vessels become more prominent within the villus and lie closer to the intervillous space (see Fig. 5-8). At term, villi may be focally reduced to a thin layer of syncytium covering minimal villous connective tissue in which thin-walled fetal capillaries abut the trophoblast and dominate the villi.

The villous stroma also exhibits changes as gestation progresses. In early pregnancy, the branching connective-tissue

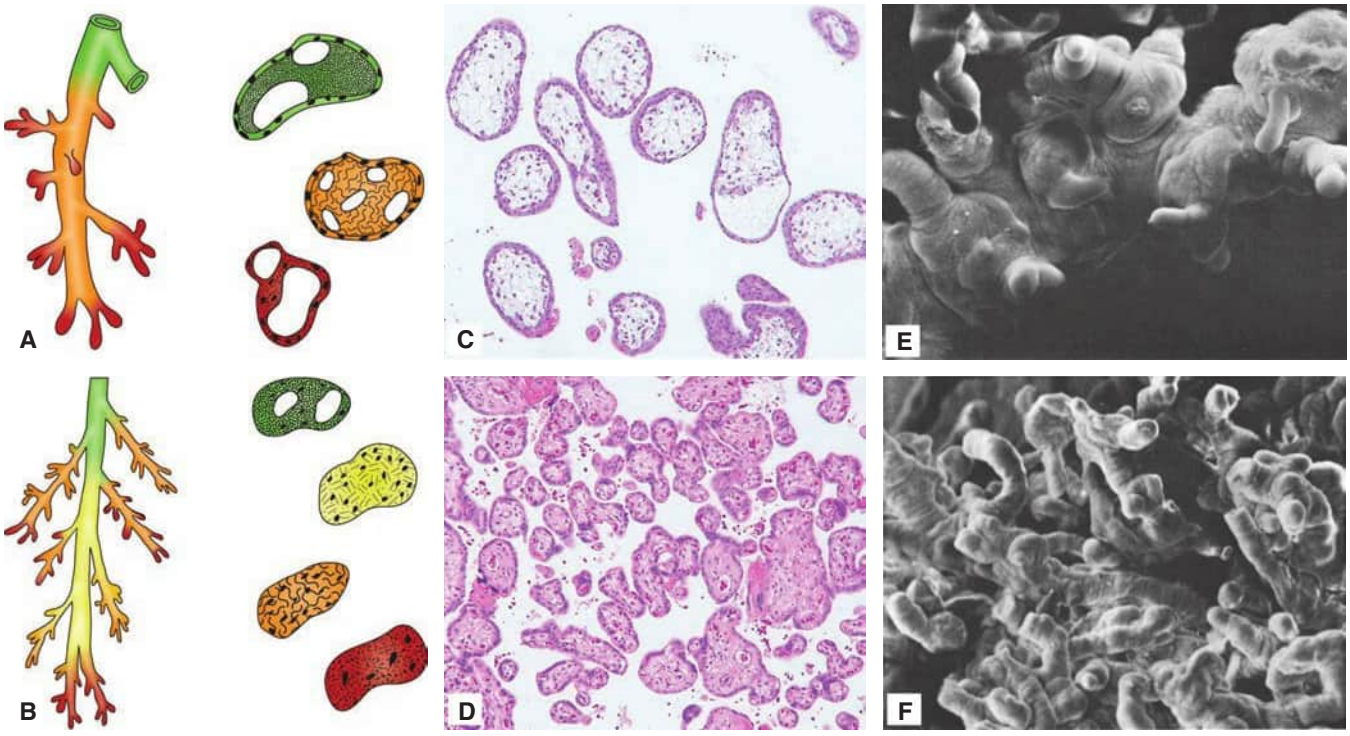


FIGURE 5-10 Illustration **(A, B)**, histology **(C, D)**, and electron microscopy **(E, F)** of early (top panel) and late (bottom panel) human placenta villi. Limited branching of villi is seen in the early placenta. With maturation, increasing villous arborization is seen, and villous capillaries lie closer to the surface of each villus. (Electron micrographs reproduced with permission from King BF, Menton DN: Scanning electron microscopy of human placental villi from early and late in gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 122:824, 1975.)

cells are separated by an abundant loose intercellular matrix. Later, the villous stroma becomes denser, and the cells are more spindly and closely packed. Another stromal change involves infiltration of *Hofbauer cells*, which are fetal macrophages. These are round with vesicular, often eccentric nuclei and with very granular or vacuolated cytoplasm. They grow in number and maturational state throughout pregnancy and appear to be important mediators of protection at the maternal–fetal interface (Johnson, 2012). These macrophages are phagocytic, have an immunosuppressive phenotype, produce various cytokines, and provide paracrine regulation of trophoblastic functions (Cervar, 1999; Reyes, 2017).

Some architectural changes, if substantive, can lower placental exchange efficiency. These include thickening of the basal lamina of trophoblast or capillaries, obliteration of certain fetal vessels, greater villous stroma, and fibrin deposition on the villous surface (Chap. 6, p. 109).

■ Placental Circulation

The gross anatomy of the placenta reflects the intimate approximation of the fetal capillary bed to maternal blood. The fetal surface is covered by the transparent amnion, beneath which chorionic vessels course. A section through the placenta includes amnion, chorion, chorionic villi and intervillous space, decidual (basal) plate, and myometrium (Figs. 5-11 and 5-12).

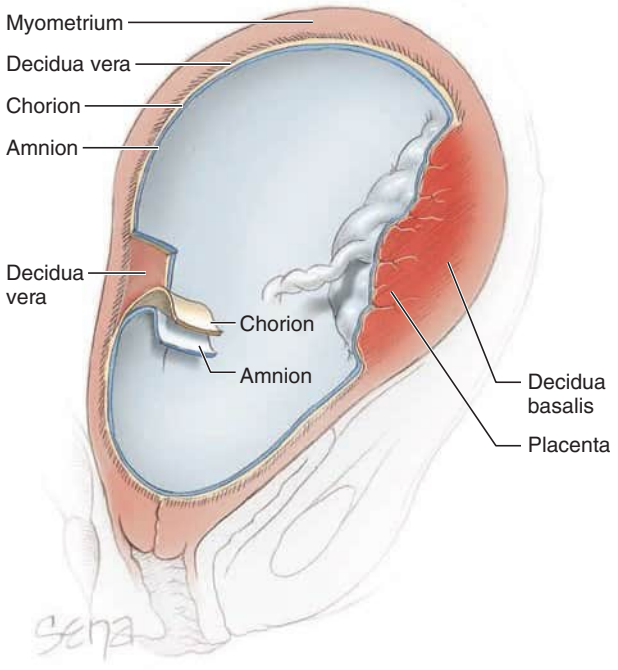


FIGURE 5-11 Uterus showing a normal placenta and its membranes in situ.

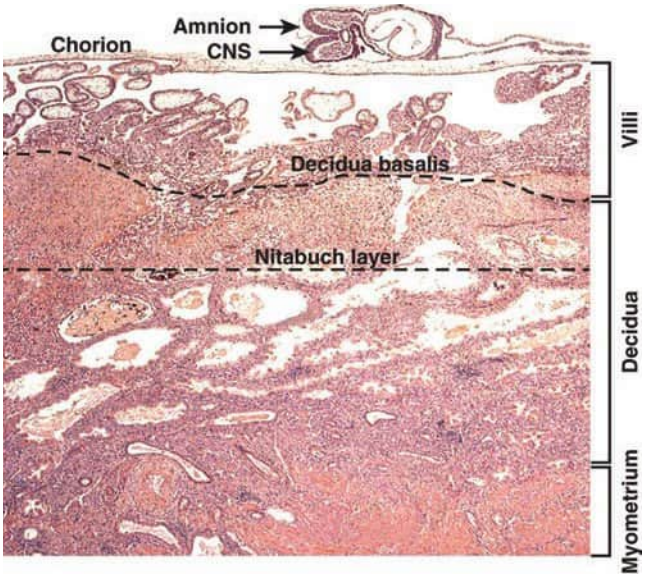


FIGURE 5-12 Photomicrograph of implantation site with partial section of an early embryo. Anchoring villi are seen with extravillous trophoblasts invading the decidua basalis. CNS = central nervous system. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Kurt Benirschke.)

Fetal Circulation

Deoxygenated venous-like fetal blood flows to the placenta through the two umbilical arteries. As the cord joins the placenta, these umbilical vessels branch repeatedly beneath the amnion as they run across the chorionic plate. Branching continues within the villi to ultimately form capillary networks in the terminal villous branches. Blood with significantly higher oxygen content returns from the placenta via a single umbilical vein to the fetus.

The branches of the umbilical vessels that traverse along the chorionic plate are called placental surface vessels or chorionic vessels. They respond to vasoactive substances, but anatomically, morphologically, histologically, and functionally, they are unique. Chorionic arteries always cross over chorionic veins. Vessels are most readily recognized by this anatomical relationship, but they are difficult to distinguish by histological criteria.

Truncal arteries are perforating branches of the surface arteries and pass through the chorionic plate. Each truncal artery supplies one main stem villus and thus one cotyledon. As the artery penetrates the chorionic plate, its wall loses smooth muscle, and its caliber increases. The loss of muscle continues as the truncal arteries and veins branch into their smaller rami.

Before 10 weeks' gestation, end-diastolic flow is not detected within the umbilical artery at the end of the fetal cardiac cycle (Fisk, 1988; Loquet, 1988). After 10 weeks, however, end-diastolic flow appears and is maintained throughout normal pregnancy. Clinically, these flow patterns are studied with Doppler sonography to assess fetal well-being (Chap. 4, p. 262).

Maternal Circulation

Mechanisms of placental blood flow must allow blood to leave maternal circulation; flow into an amorphous space lined by syncytiotrophoblast; and return through maternal veins without producing arteriovenous-like shunts that would prevent adequate exchange between maternal blood and fetal villi. For this, maternal blood enters through the basal plate and is driven high up toward the chorionic plate by arterial pressure before laterally dispersing (Fig. 5-13). After bathing the external microvillous surface, maternal blood drains back through venous orifices in the basal plate and enters uterine veins. Thus, maternal blood traverses the placenta randomly without preformed channels. Trophoblast invasion of the spiral arteries creates low-resistance vessels that can accommodate massive increase in uterine perfusion during gestation. Generally, spiral arteries are perpendicular to, but veins are parallel to, the uterine wall. This arrangement aids closure of veins during a uterine contraction and prevents the exit of maternal blood from the intervillous space. The number of arterial openings into the intervillous space is gradually reduced by cytotrophoblastic invasion to approximately 120 entry sites at term (Brosens, 1963). These discharge blood in spurts to bath

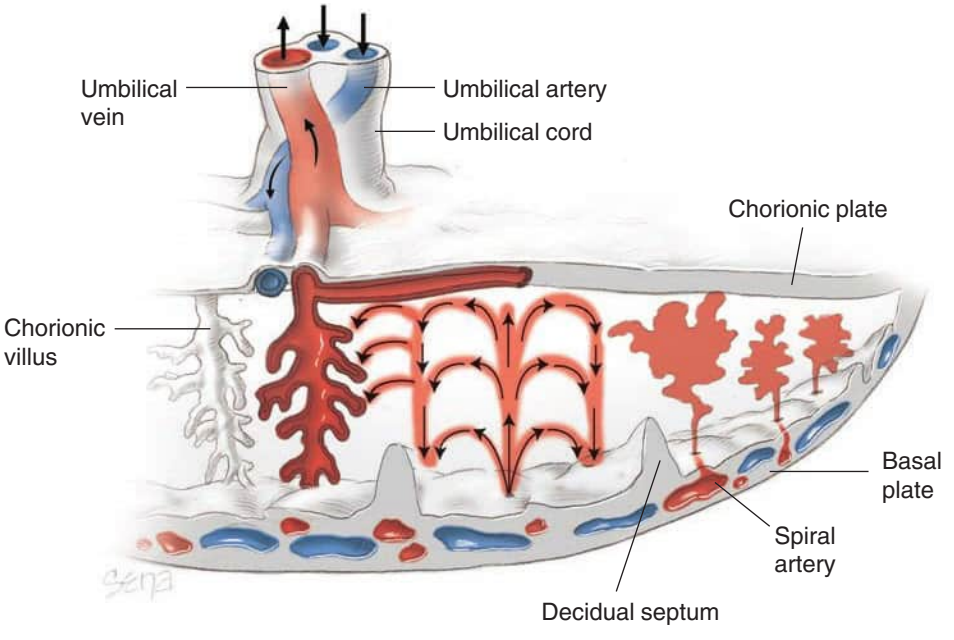


FIGURE 5-13 Schematic drawing of a section through a full-term placenta. Maternal blood flows into the intervillous spaces in funnel-shaped spurts, and umbilical arteries carry deoxygenated fetal blood to the placenta. Exchanges between the maternal and fetal systems occur as maternal blood flows around the villi. The umbilical vein carries oxygenated blood back to the fetus. Inflowing arterial blood pushes maternal venous blood into the endometrial veins, which are scattered over the entire surface of the decidua basalis. Placental lobes are separated from each other by placental (decidual) septa.

the adjacent villi (Borell, 1958). After the 30th week, a prominent venous plexus lies between the decidua basalis and myometrium and helps develop the cleavage plane needed for placental separation after delivery.

Both inflow and outflow are curtailed during uterine contractions. Bleker and associates (1975) used serial sonography during normal labor and found that placental length, thickness, and surface area grew during contractions. They attributed this to distention of the intervillous space by impairment of venous outflow compared with arterial inflow. During contractions, therefore, a somewhat larger volume of blood is available for exchange even though the rate of flow is decreased. Similarly, Doppler velocimetry has shown that diastolic flow velocity in spiral arteries is diminished during uterine contractions. Thus, principal factors regulating intervillous space blood flow are arterial blood pressure, intrauterine pressure, uterine contraction pattern, and factors that act specifically on arterial walls.

Breaks in the Placental "Barrier"

The placenta does not maintain absolute integrity of the fetal and maternal circulations, and cells traffic between mother and fetus in both directions. This situation is best exemplified clinically by erythrocyte D-antigen alloimmunization (Chap. 18, p. 353). Fetal cell transfer is small in most cases, although rarely the fetus exsanguinates into the maternal circulation.

Fetal cells can also engraft in the mother during pregnancy and still be detected decades later. Fetal lymphocytes, mesenchymal stem cells, and endothelial colony-forming cells all reside in maternal blood, bone marrow, or uterine vasculature (Huu, 2006; Piper, 2007; Sipos, 2013). This frequent phenomenon, termed *microchimerism*, is implicated in the disparate female: male ratio of autoimmune disorders (Greer, 2011; Stevens, 2006). As discussed in Chapter 62 (p. 1109), fetal cell engraftment has been associated with the pathogenesis of lymphocytic thyroiditis, scleroderma, and systemic lupus erythematosus.

Maternal–Fetal Interface

This maternal–fetal interface is an active hub of immunological interactions that allows implantation, appropriate placental development, and immunotolerance of the fetus. At the same time, a functional immune system must be maintained to protect the mother.

Immunogenicity of the Trophoblasts

Trophoblastic cells are the only fetus-derived cells in direct contact with maternal tissues and blood. Fetal syncytiotrophoblast synthesizes and secretes numerous factors that regulate the immune responses of maternal cells both at the implantation site and systemically.

Human leukocyte antigens (HLAs) are the human analogue of the major histocompatibility complex (MHC) (Hunt, 1992). There are 17 HLA class I genes and include three classic genes, *HLA-A*, *-B*, and *-C*, that encode the major class I (class Ia) transplantation antigens. Three other class I genes, designated *HLA-E*, *-F*, and *-G*, encode class Ib HLA antigens. MHC class I and II antigens are absent from villous trophoblasts, which appear to be immunologically inert at all gestational stages (Weetman, 1999). Invasive extravillous trophoblasts do express MHC class I molecules but avoid rejection by the maternal immune system.

Moffett-King (2002) reasoned that normal implantation depends on controlled trophoblastic invasion of maternal decidua and spiral arteries. Such invasion must proceed far enough to provide for normal fetal growth and development but avoid the pathogenic invasion seen in placenta accreta spectrum disorders (Chap. 43, p. 759). She suggests that dNK cells combined with extravillous trophoblasts' unique expression of three specific HLA class I genes act in concert to permit and subsequently limit trophoblast invasion.

Extravillous trophoblasts express the class Ia antigen HLA-C and nonclassic class Ib molecules HLA-E and HLA-G. HLA-G antigen is expressed only in humans and is restricted to extravillous trophoblasts in contact with maternal tissues. Expressed in both membrane-bound and soluble isoforms detectable in maternal circulation, HLA-G is thought to protect extravillous trophoblasts from immune rejection by modulating the function of both decidual and circulating NK populations (Apps, 2011; Rajagopalan, 2012). The importance of this molecule is highlighted by the observation that IVF embryos fail to implant if they do not express a soluble HLA-G isoform (Fuzzi, 2002). Thus, HLA-G may act through multiple mechanisms to aid tolerance of the maternal–fetal antigen mismatch (LeBouteiller, 1999). Abnormal HLA-G expression in extravillous trophoblasts from women with preeclampsia suggests immune dysregulation as one etiology (Goldman-Wohl, 2000).

Decidual Immune Cells

Of leukocytes, NK cells predominate in midluteal phase endometrium and in first-trimester decidua, but numbers decline by term (Johnson, 1999). In first-trimester decidua, dNK cells lie close to extravillous trophoblasts and purportedly regulate invasion. Their infiltration is increased by progesterone and by stromal cell production of IL-15 and decidual prolactin (Dunn, 2002; Gubbay, 2002). Although dNK cells have the capacity for cytotoxicity, they are not cytotoxic toward fetal trophoblasts. Their cytotoxic potential is prevented by molecular cues from decidual macrophages. As noted, specific HLA molecule expression protects against dNK cells' damaging actions.

Decidual macrophages are another decidual immune cell type and are distinct from proinflammatory M1 or antiinflammatory M2 macrophages. These cells regulate adaptive T cell responses; control dNK differentiation, activation, and cytotoxicity; and produce antiinflammatory cytokines such as IL-10.

Dendritic cells are antigen-presenting cells that educate maternal T cells. They affect development of a receptive endometrium for implantation.

Maternal T cells, as part of the adaptive immune response, increase in number and function after encounter with a specific antigen. These cells subsequently retain the ability to respond rapidly in a subsequent encounter with the same antigen. In contrast, Tregs are immunosuppressive, and during pregnancy systemic maternal populations expand. Specific Treg cell populations persist and protect against aberrant immune responses.

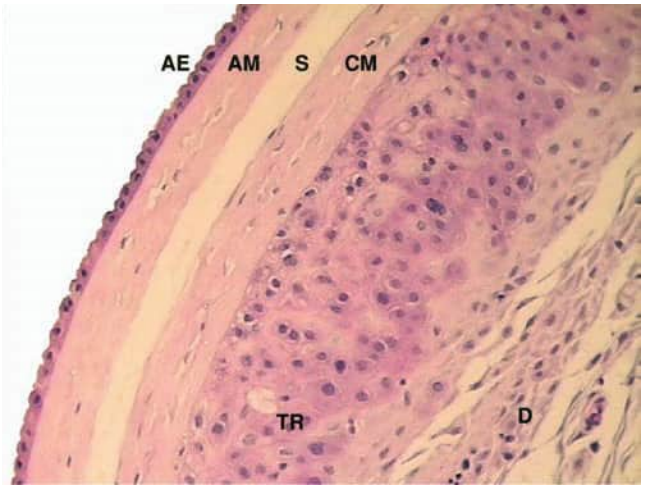


FIGURE 5-14 Photomicrograph of fetal membranes. From left to right: AE = amnion epithelium; AM = amnion mesenchyme; S = zona spongiosa; CM = chorionic mesenchyme; TR = trophoblast; D = decidua. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Judith R. Head.)

AMNION

At term, the amnion is a tough and tenacious but pliable membrane. This innermost avascular fetal membrane is contiguous with amniotic fluid and provides almost all of the tensile strength of the fetal membranes. Its resilience to rupture is vital to successful pregnancy outcomes. Indeed, preterm rupture of fetal membranes is a major cause of preterm delivery (Chap. 45, p. 787).

Bourne (1962) described five separate amnion layers. Here, progression of discussed layers moves from amniotic fluid to the chorion. The innermost layer, which is bathed by amniotic fluid, is a single-layer *cuboidal epithelium* (Fig. 5-14). This epithelium attaches firmly to a distinct *basement membrane*. Next, an acellular *compact layer* composed primarily of interstitial collagens is followed by the *fibroblast-like mesenchymal cell layer*. The outermost layer is the relatively acellular *zona spongiosa*, which is contiguous with the chorion laeve. The amnion also contains a few fetal macrophages, which predominate in the outer two layers. The amnion lacks smooth muscle cells, nerves, lymphatics, and importantly, blood vessels.

Amnion Development

Early during implantation, a space develops between the embryonic cell mass and adjacent trophoblastic cells (see Fig. 5-7). Small cells that line this inner surface of trophoblasts are precursors of amniotic epithelium, and the amnion is first identifiable on the 7th or 8th day of embryo development. It is initially a minute vesicle, which then develops into a small sac that covers the dorsal embryo surface. As the amnion enlarges, it gradually engulfs the growing embryo, which prolapses into its cavity (Benirschke, 2012).

Distention of the amniotic sac eventually brings it into contact with the interior surface of the chorion laeve. Apposition of the chorion laeve and amnion near the end of the first trimester obliterates the extraembryonic coelom. The amnion and chorion laeve, although slightly adhered, are never intimately connected and can be separated easily. Placental amnion covers the placental surface and thereby is in contact with the chorionic vessels. Umbilical amnion covers the umbilical cord. As discussed in Chapter 48 (p. 842), with monochorionic-diamnionic placentas, no tissue intervenes between the fused amnions. With dichorionic-diamnionic twin placentas, amnions are separated by fused chorion laeves.

Amniotic fluid fills the amniotic sac. As pregnancy progresses, this normally clear fluid increases in volume until approximately 34 weeks' gestation. After this, the volume declines. At term, it averages 1000 mL, although this may vary widely in normal and especially abnormal conditions. Amniotic fluid origin, composition, circulation, and function of are discussed further in Chapter 14 (p. 256).

Amnion Cell Histogenesis

Amniotic epithelium derives from fetal ectoderm of the embryonic disc and not from trophoblasts. This is an important consideration both embryologically and functionally. For example, HLA class I gene expression in amnion is more akin to that in embryonic cells than to that in trophoblasts.

The fibroblast-like mesenchymal cell layer likely originates from embryonic mesoderm. Early in human embryogenesis, the amniotic mesenchymal cells lie immediately adjacent to the basal surface of the amnion epithelium. At this time, the amnion has two-cell layers and approximately equal numbers of epithelial and mesenchymal cells. Simultaneously with growth and development, interstitial collagens are deposited between these two cell layers. This marks formation of the amnion compact layer, which separates the two early layers.

Amniotic epithelium early in pregnancy replicates at a rate appreciably faster than mesenchymal cells. Thus, as the amniotic sac expands, its epithelial cells form a continuous, uninterrupted layer. Instead, mesenchymal cells become more sparsely distributed. Connected by a lattice network of extracellular matrix, they appear as long, slender fibrils.

Amnion Epithelial Cells

The apical surface of the amniotic epithelium is replete with highly developed microvilli. This structure reflects its function as a major site of transfer between amniotic fluid and amnion layers. This epithelium is metabolically active, and its cells synthesize tissue inhibitor of MMP-1, prostaglandin E_2 (PGE_2), and fetal fibronectin (fFN) (Rowe, 1997). Although epithelia produce fFN, studies suggest that fFN acts in the underlying mesenchymal cells. Here, fFN promotes synthesis of MMPs that break down strength-bearing collagens. It also enhances prostaglandin synthesis to prompt uterine contractions (Mogami, 2013). This pathway is upregulated with premature rupture of membranes induced by thrombin or infection-induced release of fFN (Chigusa, 2016; Mogami, 2014).

Epithelial cells may respond to signals derived from the fetus or the mother, and they are responsive to various endocrine or paracrine modulators. Examples include oxytocin and vasopressin, both of which increase PGE_2 production in vitro (Moore, 1988). These cells may also produce cytokines such as IL-8 during labor initiation (Elliott, 2001).

Amnionic epithelium also synthesizes vasoactive peptides, which function in both maternal and fetal tissues in diverse physiological processes. These peptides include endothelin and parathyroid hormone-related protein (Economos, 1992; Germain, 1992). Others are brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) and corticotropin-releasing hormone, which are peptides that invoke smooth-muscle relaxation (Riley, 1991; Warren, 1995). BNP production is positively regulated by mechanical stretch in fetal membranes and is proposed to function in uterine quiescence. Epidermal growth factor, a negative regulator of BNP, is upregulated in the membranes at term and leads to a decline in BNP-regulated uterine quiescence (Carvajal, 2013).

Amnion Mesenchymal Cells

These cells are responsible for other major functions. Mesenchymal cells synthesize the interstitial collagens that compose the amnionic compact layer—the major source of its tensile strength (Casey, 1996). At term, the generation of cortisol by 11β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase may contribute to membrane rupture by reducing collagen abundance (Mi, 2017). Mesenchymal cells also synthesize cytokines that include IL-6, IL-8, and MCP-1. Cytokine synthesis rises in response to bacterial toxins and IL-1. This ability of amnion mesenchymal cells to synthesize chemokines is an important consideration in interpreting studies of labor-associated accumulation of inflammatory mediators in amnionic fluid (Garcia-Velasco, 1999). Last, mesenchymal cells may be a greater source of PGE_2 than epithelial cells, especially in the case of premature membrane rupture (Mogami, 2013; Whittle, 2000).

■ Tensile Strength

During tests of tensile strength, the decidua and then the chorion laeve give way long before the amnion ruptures. Indeed, the membranes are elastic and can expand to twice normal size during pregnancy (Benirschke, 2012). The amnion tensile strength resides almost exclusively in the compact layer, which is composed of cross-linked interstitial collagens I and III, and lesser amounts of collagens V and VI.

Amnion tensile strength is regulated in part by fibrillar collagen assembly. This process is influenced by the interaction between fibrils and proteoglycans such as decorin and biglycan (Chap. 21, p. 405). Reduction of these proteoglycans is reported to perturb fetal membrane function (Horgan, 2014; Wu, 2014). Fetal membranes overlying the cervix have a regional shift in gene expression and lymphocyte activation that set in motion an inflammatory cascade (Marcellin, 2017). This change may contribute to tissue remodeling and loss of tensile strength in the amnion (Moore, 2009).

■ Metabolic Functions

The amnion is metabolically active, is involved in solute and water transport for amnionic fluid homeostasis, and produces an impressive array of bioactive compounds. The amnion is responsive both acutely and chronically to mechanical stretch, which alters amnionic gene expression (Carvajal, 2013; Nemeth, 2000). This in turn may trigger both autocrine and paracrine responses that include production of MMPs, IL-8, and collagenase (Bryant-Greenwood, 1998; Mogami, 2013). Such factors may modulate changes in membrane properties during labor.

UMBILICAL CORD

The yolk sac and the umbilical vesicle into which it develops are prominent early in pregnancy. Initially, the embryo is a flattened disc interposed between amnion and yolk sac (see Fig. 5-7). The embryonic dorsal surface, in association with the elongation of its neural tube, grows faster than the ventral surface. As a result, the embryo bulges into the amnionic sac, and the embryo body incorporates the adjacent yolk sac to form the gut. The body stalk connects the caudal embryo to the chorion. The fetal allantois forms as a diverticulum from the caudal wall of the yolk sac and projects into the base of the body stalk.

As pregnancy advances, the yolk sac becomes smaller and its pedicle relatively longer. By the middle of the third month, the expanding amnion fuses with the chorion laeve to obliterate the extraembryonic coelom. In its expansion, the amnion covers the bulging placental disc and the lateral surface of the body stalk. The latter is then called the *umbilical cord* or *funis*. A more detailed description of this cord and potential abnormalities is found in Chapter 6 (p. 113).

The cord at term normally has two arteries and one vein. The right umbilical vein usually disappears early during fetal development, leaving only the original left vein. The umbilical cord extends from the fetal umbilicus to the fetal surface of the placenta, that is, the chorionic plate. As discussed in detail in Chapter 7 (p. 126), blood flows from the umbilical vein toward the fetus. Blood then takes a path of least resistance via two routes within the fetus. One is the ductus venosus, which empties directly into the inferior vena cava. The other route consists of numerous smaller openings into the hepatic circulation. Blood from the liver flows into the hepatic vein and then the inferior vena cava. Resistance in the ductus venosus is controlled by a sphincter situated at the origin of the ductus at the umbilical recess and is innervated by a vagus nerve branch.

Blood exits the fetus via the two umbilical arteries. These are anterior branches of the internal iliac artery and become obliterated after birth to form the medial umbilical ligaments.

PLACENTAL HORMONES

The production of steroid and protein hormones by human trophoblasts is greater in amount and diversity than that of any single endocrine tissue in all of mammalian physiology. Table 5-1 is a compendium of average production rates for various steroid hormones in nonpregnant and in near-term pregnant women. It demonstrates the remarkable increase in steroid hormone production during pregnancy. The human placenta also synthesizes an enormous amount of protein and peptide hormones, summarized in Table 5-2. The successful physiological adaptations of pregnant women to this unique endocrine milieu is discussed throughout Chapter 4.

TABLE 5-1. Steroid Production Rates in Nonpregnant and Near-Term Pregnant Women

Steroid[a]	Production Rates (mg/24 hr)	
	Nonpregnant	Pregnant
Estradiol	0.1–0.6	15–20
Estriol	0.02–0.1	50–150
Progesterone	0.1–40	250–600
Aldosterone	0.05–0.1	0.250–0.600
Deoxycorticosterone	0.05–0.5	1–12
Cortisol	10–30	10–20

[a]Estrogens and progesterone are produced by placenta. Aldosterone is produced by the maternal adrenal in response to the stimulus of angiotensin II. Deoxycorticosterone is produced in extraglandular tissue sites by way of the 21-hydroxylation of plasma progesterone. Cortisol production during pregnancy is not increased, even though the blood levels are elevated because of decreased clearance caused by increased cortisol-binding globulin.

Human Chorionic Gonadotropin

Biosynthesis

Chorionic gonadotropin is a glycoprotein with biological activity similar to that of LH, and both act via the LH-hCG receptor. hCG varies in molecular weight from 36,000 to 40,000 Da and is highly glycosylated with the most carbohydrate content of any human hormone—30 percent. This glycosylation protects the molecule from catabolism and results in a 36-hour plasma half-life for intact hCG compared with 2 hours for LH. The hCG molecule is composed of two dissimilar subunits, α and β. These are noncovalently linked but held together by electrostatic and hydrophobic forces. Isolated subunits are unable to bind the LH-hCG receptor and thus lack biological activity.

The hCG hormone is structurally related to three other glycoprotein hormones—LH, FSH, and thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH). All four glycoproteins share a common α-subunit. However, each of their β-subunits is characterized by a distinct (although related) amino acid sequence.

Synthesis of the α- and β-chains of hCG is regulated separately from gene loci on different chromosomes. A single gene

TABLE 5-2. Protein Hormones Produced by the Human Placenta

Hormone	Primary Non-placental Site of Expression	Shares Structural or Function Similarity	Functions
Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)	—	LH, FSH, TSH	Maintains corpus luteum function Regulates fetal testis testosterone secretion Stimulates maternal thyroid
Placental lactogen (PL)	—	GH, prolactin	Aids maternal adaptation to fetal energy requirements
Adrenocorticotropin (ACTH)	Hypothalamus	—	
Corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH)	Hypothalamus	—	Relaxes smooth-muscle; initiates parturition? Promotes fetal and maternal glucocorticoid production
Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH)	Hypothalamus	—	Regulates trophoblast hCG production
Thyrotropin (TRH)	Hypothalamus		Unknown
Growth hormone-releasing hormone (GHRH)	Hypothalamus	—	Unknown
Growth hormone variant (hGH-V)	—	GH variant not found in pituitary	Potentially mediates pregnancy insulin resistance
Neuropeptide Y	Brain		Potential regulates CRH release by trophoblasts
Parathyroid-releasing protein (PTH-rp)	—		Regulates transfer of calcium and other solutes; regulates fetal mineral homeostasis
Inhibin	Ovary/testis		Potentially inhibits FSH-mediated ovulation; regulates hCG synthesis
Activin	Ovary/testis		Regulates placental GnRH synthesis

GH = growth hormone; FSH = follicle-stimulating hormone; LH = luteinizing hormone; TSH = thyroid-stimulating hormone.

on chromosome 6 encodes the α-subunit. Chromosome 19 encodes the β-hCG–β-LH family of subunits with six genes for β-hCG and one for β-LH (Miller-Lindholm, 1997). Both subunits are synthesized as larger precursors and then cleaved by endopeptidases to their mature form. Intact hCG is assembled and released by secretory granule exocytosis (Morrish, 1987). Modifications during synthesis and subsequent enzymatic degradation give rise to multiple forms of hCG in maternal plasma and urine that vary enormously in bioactivity and immunoreactivity.

Before 5 weeks, hCG is expressed both in the syncytiotrophoblast and cytotrophoblasts (Maruo, 1992). Later in the first trimester, hCG is produced almost solely in the syncytiotrophoblast, peaks around 9 weeks' gestation, and then declines to a plateau for the remainder of gestation (Beck, 1986; Kurman, 1984). Dynamic changes in hCG concentration in the first trimester highlight the importance of accurate gestational age estimation when interpreting aneuploidy screening strategies that include hCG.

Circulating levels of free β-subunit are low to undetectable throughout pregnancy, and their concentration is the limiting factor for secretion of complete hCG molecules. Levels of the α-subunit rise gradually and roughly correspond to placental mass, until they plateau at approximately 36 weeks' gestation (Cole, 1997).

Concentrations in Serum and Urine

The combined hCG molecule is detectable in plasma of pregnant women 7 to 9 days after the midcycle LH surge preceding ovulation. Thus, hCG likely enters maternal blood at the time of blastocyst implantation. Plasma levels rise rapidly, doubling approximately every 2 days in the first trimester (Fig. 5-15). Appreciable fluctuations in levels for a given patient are observed on the same day.

Intact hCG circulates as multiple, highly related isoforms that have variable cross-reactivity between commercial assays. This emphasizes the need to use the same assay type when measuring serial hCG levels for clinical indications such as evaluating pregnancy of unknown location or medical management of ectopic pregnancy. Peak maternal plasma levels reach approximately 50,000 to 100,000 mIU/mL between the 60th and 80th days after menses. Plasma levels then decline, and a nadir is reached by approximately 16 weeks' gestation. Plasma levels remain at this lower level for the rest of pregnancy.

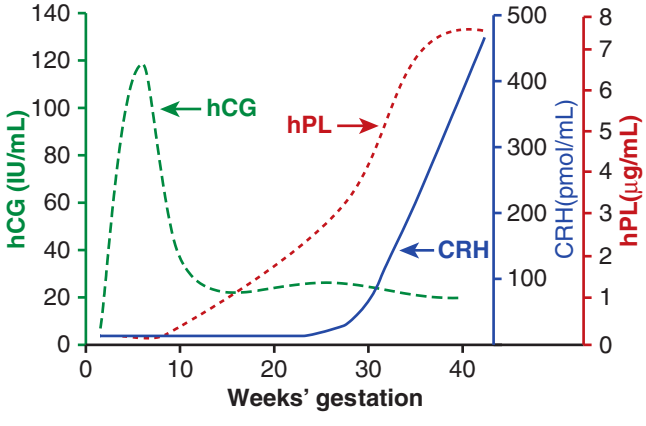


FIGURE 5-15 Distinct profiles for the concentrations of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), human placental lactogen (hPL), and corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) in serum of women throughout normal pregnancy.

Although maternal urine, like plasma, contains various hCG degradation products, the principal urinary form is the terminal product of hCG degradation, namely, the β-core fragment. Concentrations of this fragment follow the same general pattern as that in maternal plasma, peaking at approximately 10 weeks' gestation. Importantly, the β-subunit antibody used in most pregnancy tests reacts with both intact hCG (the major form in the plasma) and with fragments of hCG (the major form found in urine).

hCG Regulation

Placental GnRH is likely involved in the regulation of hCG formation. Both GnRH and its receptor are expressed by cytotrophoblasts and syncytiotrophoblast (Wolfahrt, 1998). GnRH administration elevates circulating hCG levels, and cultured trophoblasts respond to GnRH treatment with increased hCG secretion (Iwashita, 1993; Siler-Khodr, 1981). Pituitary GnRH production is regulated by inhibin and activin. Likewise, in cultured placental cells, activin stimulates and inhibin inhibits GnRH and hCG production (Petraglia, 1989; Steele, 1993).

hCG is cleared by the kidney (about 30 percent), and the remainder is likely cleared by liver metabolism (Wehmann, 1980). Thus, levels can be markedly altered in gravidas with chronic renal disease.

Biological Functions

Noted earlier, hCG maintains corpus luteum function—that is, continued progesterone production. Both hCG subunits are required for binding to the LH-hCG receptor in the corpus luteum. However, maximum plasma hCG concentrations are attained well after hCG-stimulated corpus luteum secretion of progesterone has ceased. Specifically, luteal progesterone synthesis begins to decline at approximately 6 weeks' gestation despite continued and increasing hCG production. Therefore, this incompletely explains the physiological function of hCG in pregnancy. LH-hCG receptors are present in various other tissues, and roles are discussed subsequently.

In pregnancies with male fetuses, hCG stimulates fetal testicular testosterone secretion. This reaches a maximum when hCG levels peak. Thus, at a critical time in male sexual differentiation, hCG enters fetal plasma from the syncytiotrophoblast. In the fetus, it acts as an LH surrogate to stimulate Leydig cell replication and testosterone synthesis to promote male sexual differentiation (Chap. 3, p. 35). Before approximately 110 days, the fetal anterior pituitary lacks vascularization from the hypothalamus and produces minimal LH secretion. Thereafter, as hCG levels fall, pituitary LH maintains modest testicular stimulation.

The maternal thyroid gland also is stimulated by large quantities of hCG. In women with gestational trophoblastic disease, biochemical and clinical evidence of hyperthyroidism sometimes develops (Chap. 13, p. 238). Some forms of

hCG bind to TSH receptors on thyrocytes (Hershman, 1999). The thyroid-stimulatory activity in plasma of first-trimester pregnant women varies appreciably from sample to sample. Modifications of hCG oligosaccharides likely are important in the capacity of hCG to stimulate thyroid function. Acidic isoforms stimulate thyroid activity, and some more basic isoforms stimulate iodine uptake (Kraiem, 1994; Tsuruta, 1995). Last, the LH-hCG receptor is also expressed by thyrocytes, which suggests that hCG stimulates thyroid activity via the LH-hCG receptor as well (Tomer, 1992).

LH-hCG receptors are found in myometrium and in uterine vascular tissue. It has been hypothesized that hCG may promote uterine vascular vasodilation and myometrial smooth muscle relaxation (Kurtzman, 2001). hCG also modulates maternal immune cell functions in the decidua during early stages of placentation (Schumacher, 2019; Silasi, 2020).

Abnormally High or Low Levels

Several clinical circumstances display substantively higher maternal plasma hCG levels. Some examples include multifetal pregnancy, erythroblastosis fetalis associated with fetal hemolytic anemia, and gestational trophoblastic disease. Relatively higher hCG levels may be found in women carrying a fetus with Down syndrome, and this has been incorporated into screening strategies (Table 17-4, p. 336). Various malignant tumors also produce hCG, sometimes in large amounts—especially trophoblastic neoplasms (Chap. 13, p. 241).

Relatively lower hCG plasma levels are found in women with failing early pregnancies and ectopic pregnancy (Chap. 12, p. 222). hCG is produced in very small amounts in normal tissues of men and nonpregnant women, perhaps primarily in the anterior pituitary gland. Nonetheless, the detection of hCG in blood or urine almost always indicates pregnancy (Chap. 10, p. 176).

Human Placental Lactogen

Biosynthesis

This single, nonglycosylated polypeptide chain shares a 96-percent amino-acid-sequence homology with human growth hormone (hGH) and a 67-percent homology with human prolactin (hPRL). Because of these similarities, it was called chorionic growth hormone or human placental lactogen. Currently, the latter term is used by most.

Five genes in the growth hormone–placental lactogen gene cluster are linked and located on chromosome 17: *GH1*, *GH2*, *CSHL1, CSH1*, and *CSH2*. Human placental lactogen (hPL) is encoded by the last two genes. hPL is concentrated in syncytiotrophoblast, but similar to hCG, hPL is demonstrated in cytotrophoblasts before 6 weeks (Grumbach, 1964; Maruo, 1992). Within 5 to 10 days after conception, hPL is demonstrable in the placenta and can be detected in maternal serum as early as 3 weeks. Levels of mRNA for hPL in syncytiotrophoblast remain relatively constant throughout pregnancy. This finding supports the idea that the hPL secretion rate is proportional to placental mass. Levels rise steadily until 34 to 36 weeks' gestation. The hPL production rate near term—approximately 1 g/d—is by far the greatest of any known hormone in humans. It is rapidly cleared and has a half-life between 10 and 30 minutes (Walker, 1991). In late pregnancy, maternal serum concentrations reach levels of 5 to 15 μg/mL (see Fig. 5-15).

Very little hPL is detected in fetal blood, and amnionic fluid levels are somewhat lower than that in maternal plasma. Thus, although hPL may have a direct effect on fetal tissues, such as modulating fetal vasculature formation, its primary role is to act on maternal physiology to ensure adequate nutrient delivery to the placenta (Corbacho, 2002).

Metabolic Actions

hPL has putative actions in several important maternal metabolic processes. First, hPL promotes lipolysis to raise circulating free fatty acid levels. This provides an energy source for maternal metabolism and fetal nutrition. In vitro studies suggest that hPL inhibits secretion by term syncytiotrophoblast of leptin (Coya, 2005). Prolonged maternal starvation in the first half of pregnancy leads to higher hPL plasma concentrations.

Second, hPL aids maternal adaptation to fetal energy requirements (Hill, 2018). For example, increased maternal insulin resistance ensures nutrient flow to the fetus. It also favors protein synthesis and provides a readily available amino acid source to the fetus. To counterbalance the greater insulin resistance and prevent maternal hyperglycemia, maternal insulin levels rise. Both hPL and prolactin signal through the prolactin receptor to increase maternal beta cell proliferation, which augments insulin secretion (Georgia, 2010). In animals, prolactin and hPL upregulate serotonin synthesis, which increases beta cell proliferation (Kim, 2010). Short-term changes in plasma glucose or insulin, however, have relatively little effect on plasma hPL levels. In vitro studies of syncytiotrophoblast suggest that hPL synthesis is stimulated by insulin and insulin-like growth factor-1 and inhibited by PGE_2 and $PGF_{2\alpha}$ (Bhaumick, 1987; Genbacev, 1977).

Other Placental Protein Hormones

The placenta has a remarkable capacity to synthesize numerous peptide hormones, including some that are analogous or related to hypothalamic and pituitary hormones. In contrast to their counterparts, some of these placental peptide/protein hormones are not subject to feedback inhibition.

Hypothalamic-Like Releasing Hormones

The known hypothalamic-releasing or -inhibiting hormones include GnRH, corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH), thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH), growth hormone–releasing hormone (GHRH), and somatostatin. For each of these, the human placenta produces an analogous hormone (Petraglia, 1992; Siler-Khodr, 1988).

GnRH in the placenta shows its highest expression in the first trimester (Siler-Khodr, 1978, 1988). Interestingly, it is found in cytotrophoblasts but not syncytiotrophoblast. Placenta-derived GnRH functions to regulate trophoblast hCG production and extravillous trophoblast invasion via regulation of MMP-2 and MMP-9 (Peng, 2016). Placenta-derived GnRH is also the likely source of elevated maternal GnRH levels in pregnancy (Siler-Khodr, 1984).

CRH is a member of a larger family of CRH-related peptides that includes CRH and urocortins (Dautzenberg, 2002). Maternal serum CRH levels rise from 5 to 10 pmol/L in the nonpregnant woman to approximately 100 pmol/L in the early third trimester and then to almost 500 pmol/L abruptly during the last 5 to 6 weeks (see Fig. 5-15). After labor begins, maternal plasma CRH levels rise even further (Petraglia, 1989, 1990). Urocortin, involved in the stress response, is also produced by the placenta and secreted into the maternal circulation, but at much lower levels than that seen for CRH (Florio, 2002).

The function of CRH synthesized in the placenta, membranes, and decidua has been somewhat defined. For example, trophoblast, amniochorion, and decidua express both CRH-R1 and CRH-R2 receptors and several variant receptors (Florio, 2000). Both CRH and urocortin enhance trophoblast secretion of adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), and this suggests an autocrine–paracrine role (Petraglia, 1999). Large amounts of trophoblast CRH enter maternal blood.

CRH receptors are also present in many tissues outside the placenta. Proposed biological roles include induction of smooth-muscle relaxation in vascular and myometrial tissue and immunosuppression. The physiological reverse, however, induction of myometrial contractions, has been proposed for the rising CRH levels seen near term. Some hypothesize that CRH may be involved with parturition initiation (Wadhwa, 1998).

Glucocorticoids act in the hypothalamus to inhibit CRH release. But, in the trophoblast, glucocorticoids stimulate CRH gene expression (Jones, 1989a; Robinson, 1988). Thus, a novel positive feedback loop in the placenta may allow placental CRH to stimulate placental ACTH and thereby prompt fetal and maternal adrenal glucocorticoid production, with subsequent stimulation of placental CRH expression (Nicholson, 2001; Riley, 1991).

GHRH is expressed in placenta, but its function is unclear (Berry, 1992). GHRH may play an autocrine role in trophoblast survival via the GHRH receptor (Liu, 2016). Ghrelin is another regulator of hGH secretion and is produced by placental tissue (Horvath, 2001). Trophoblast ghrelin expression peaks at midpregnancy and is a paracrine regulator of differentiation or is a potential regulator of human growth hormone variant production, described next (Fuglsang, 2005; Gualillo, 2001).

Pituitary-Like Hormones

A *human growth hormone variant (hGH-V)* that is not expressed in the pituitary is expressed in the placenta. The gene encoding hGH-V is located in the hGH–hPL gene cluster on chromosome 17. Sometimes referred to as placental growth hormone, hGH-V is a 191-amino-acid protein that differs in 15 amino acid positions from the sequence for hGH. Although hGH-V retains growth-promoting and antilipogenic functions that are similar to those of hGH, it has reduced diabetogenic and lactogenic functions relative to hGH (Vickers, 2009). Placental hGH-V presumably is synthesized in the syncytiotrophoblast. It is believed that hGH-V is present in maternal plasma by 21 to 26 weeks' gestation, rises in concentration until approximately 36 weeks, and remains relatively constant thereafter. hGH-V levels in maternal plasma and those of insulin-like growth factor 1 positively correlate. Moreover, hGH-V secretion by trophoblast in vitro is inhibited by glucose in a dose-dependent manner (Patel, 1995). Overexpression of hGH-V in mice causes severe insulin resistance, making it a likely candidate to mediate insulin resistance of pregnancy (Liao, 2016).

Pro-opiomelanocortin (POMC) is a polypeptide produced in the pituitary and other tissues including the placenta. It is proteolytically cleaved into numerous active hormones including ACTH, β-lipotropic hormone, melanocyte-stimulating hormone (α-, β-, and γ-MSH), and β–endorphin (Harno, 2018). These hormones play a role in maintaining energy balance. As discussed, placental CRH stimulates synthesis and release of placental ACTH, demonstrating the autocrine and paracrine functions of the placenta in addition to its systemic endocrine activity.

Relaxin

The peptide is expressed in human corpus luteum, decidua, and placenta (Bogic, 1995). Two of the three relaxin genes—*H2* and *H3*—are transcribed in the corpus luteum (Bathgate, 2002; Hudson, 1983, 1984). Decidua, placenta, and membranes express *H1* and *H2* (Hansell, 1991). Relaxin is synthesized as a single, 105-amino-acid preprorelaxin molecule that is cleaved to A and B molecules. Relaxin is structurally similar to insulin and insulin-like growth factor.

The rise in maternal circulating relaxin levels in early pregnancy is attributed to corpus luteum secretion, and levels parallel those of hCG. Relaxin, along with rising progesterone levels, may act on myometrium to promote relaxation and the quiescence of early pregnancy (Chap. 21, p. 404). In addition, the production of relaxin and relaxin-like factors within the placenta and fetal membranes may play an autocrine-paracrine role in postpartum regulation of extracellular matrix remodeling (Qin, 1997a,b). One important relaxin function is enhancement of the maternal glomerular filtration rate that is apparent early in gestation (Chap. 4, p. 68).

Parathyroid Hormone-Related Protein

Levels of this peptide are elevated within maternal but not fetal circulation (Bertelloni, 1994; Saxe, 1997). Parathyroid hormone-related protein (PTH-rP) synthesis is found in several normal adult tissues, especially in reproductive organs that include myometrium, endometrium, corpus luteum, and lactating mammary tissue. PTH-rP is not produced in the parathyroid glands of normal adults. Although yet undefined, placenta-derived PTH-rP may regulate genes involved in transfer of calcium and other solutes. It also contributes to mineral homeostasis in fetal bone, amnionic fluid, and the fetal circulation (Simmonds, 2010).

Leptin

This hormone is normally secreted by adipocytes, but cytotrophoblasts and syncytiotrophoblast also synthesize leptin (Henson, 2002). Relative contributions of leptin from maternal adipose tissue versus placenta are currently undefined. Leptin functions as an antiobesity hormone that decreases food

intake through its hypothalamic receptor. It also regulates bone growth and immune function (Cock, 2003; La Cava, 2004). Placental leptin promotes placental cell proliferation, protein synthesis, and activation of immune tolerance and antiapoptotic responses (Rosario, 2016a; Schanton, 2018). Maternal serum levels are significantly higher than those in nonpregnant women. Fetal leptin levels correlate positively with birthweight and likely function in fetal development and growth. Studies suggest that reductions in leptin availability contribute to adverse fetal metabolic programing in intrauterine growth-restricted offspring (Nusken, 2016, Perez-Perez, 2018).

Neuropeptide Y

This 36-amino-acid peptide is widely distributed in brain. It also is found in sympathetic neurons innervating the cardiovascular, respiratory, gastrointestinal, and genitourinary systems. Neuropeptide Y has been isolated from the placenta and localized in cytotrophoblasts (Petraglia, 1989). Trophoblasts possess neuropeptide Y receptors, and treatment of these with neuropeptide Y causes CRH release (Robidoux, 2000).

Transforming Growth Factor Beta Superfamily

This family of cytokines regulates various cellular functions that include placental development, trophoblast differentiation, and invasion into the decidua (Adu-Gyamafi, 2020). This process is finely tuned, and extreme invasion results in placenta accreta spectrum disorders, whereas shallow implantation can lead to early pregnancy loss or preeclampsia. Members of the family include transforming growth factor beta (TGF-β), activin, inhibin, nodal, bone morphogenic proteins (BMPs), antimüllerian hormone, and growth differentiation factors (GDFs).

These cytokines bind to a suite of receptors composed of a type 1 subunit and a type 2 receptor subunit to ultimately direct gene expression. This combinatorial diversity leads to divergent functions in the placenta and decidua. Activin A promotes syncytialization, extravillous trophoblast formation, and invasion. BMP2 enhances invasion, and BMP4 may direct embryonic stem cells toward a trophoblast lineage (Zhang 2018, Xu 2002). Inhibin A promotes syncytialization but inhibits invasion (Debiève, 2000; Jones, 2006). Nodal inhibits proliferation, extravillous trophoblast formation, and invasion. The complete role this superfamily in normal and abnormal placental development is yet to be fully defined.

■ Placental Progesterone Production

After 6 to 7 weeks' gestation, little progesterone is produced in the ovary (Diczfalusy, 1961). Surgical removal of the corpus luteum or even bilateral oophorectomy during the 7th to 10th week does not decrease excretion rates of urinary pregnanediol, the principal urinary metabolite of progesterone. Before this time, however, corpus luteum removal will lead to spontaneous abortion unless an exogenous progestin is given, and Chapter 66 (p. 1170) lists suitable dosing. After approximately 8 weeks, the placenta assumes progesterone secretion, and maternal serum levels throughout pregnancy gradually rise (Fig. 5-16). By term, these levels are 10 to 5000 times of those in nonpregnant women, depending on the ovarian cycle stage.

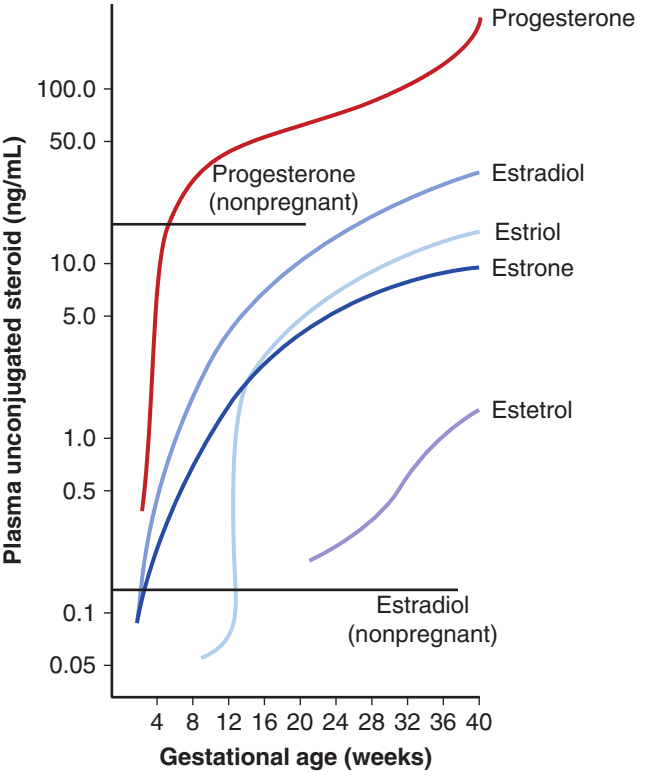


FIGURE 5-16 Plasma levels of progesterone, estradiol, estrone, estetrol, and estriol in women during the course of gestation. (Modified and redrawn with permission from Mesiano S: The endocrinology of human pregnancy and fetoplacental neuroendocrine development. In Strauss JF, Barbieri RL (eds) Yen and Jaffe's Reproductive Endocrinology: Physiology, Pathophysiology, and Clinical Management, 6th ed. Philadephia, PA: Saunders; 2009.)

The daily production rate of progesterone in late, normal, singleton pregnancies approximates 250 mg. In multifetal pregnancies, the daily production rate may exceed 600 mg. Progesterone is synthesized from cholesterol in a two-step enzymatic reaction. First, cholesterol is converted to pregnenolone within the mitochondria in a reaction catalyzed by cytochrome P450 cholesterol side-chain cleavage enzyme. Pregnenolone leaves the mitochondria and is converted to progesterone in the endoplasmic reticulum by 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase. Progesterone is released immediately by diffusion.

Although the placenta produces a prodigious amount of progesterone, the syncytiotrophoblast has a limited capacity for cholesterol biosynthesis. The rate-limiting enzyme in its biosynthesis is 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A (HMG-CoA) reductase. Because of this, the placenta must rely on an exogenous source, that is, maternal cholesterol, for progesterone formation. The trophoblast preferentially uses LDL cholesterol for progesterone biosynthesis (Simpson, 1979, 1980). This mechanism differs from placental production of estrogens, which relies principally on fetal adrenal precursors.

Although fetal well-being and placental estrogen production show a relationship, this is not the case for placental progesterone. Thus, placental endocrine function, including progesterone biosynthesis and formation of protein hormones such as hCG, may persist for weeks after fetal demise.

The metabolic clearance rate of progesterone in pregnant women is similar to that found in men and nonpregnant women. One metabolite is 5α-dihydroprogesterone (5α-DHP), and levels disproportionately rise due to synthesis in syncytiotrophoblast from both placenta-produced progesterone and fetus-derived precursor (Dombroski, 1997). Thus, the concentration ratio of 5α-DHP to progesterone is elevated in pregnancy, although the mechanisms for this are incompletely defined. Progesterone also is converted to the potent mineralocorticoid deoxycorticosterone in pregnant women and in the fetus. The concentration of deoxycorticosterone is strikingly higher in both maternal and fetal compartments (see Table 5-1). The extraadrenal formation of deoxycorticosterone from circulating progesterone accounts for most of its production in pregnancy (Casey, 1982a,b).

■ Placental Estrogen Production

During the first 2 to 4 weeks or pregnancy, rising hCG levels maintain production of estradiol in the corpus luteum. Ovarian production of both progesterone and estrogens drops significantly by the 7th week of pregnancy. At this time, there is a luteal–placental transition. Subsequently, more than half of estrogen entering maternal circulation is produced in the placenta, and it produces a continually increasing magnitude of estrogen (MacDonald, 1965a; Siiteri, 1963, 1966). Near term, normal human pregnancy is a hyperestrogenic state, and syncytiotrophoblast is producing estrogen in amounts equivalent to that produced in one day by the ovaries of no fewer than 1000 ovulatory women. This hyperestrogenic state terminates abruptly after delivery of the placenta.

Biosynthesis

In human trophoblast, neither cholesterol nor in turn progesterone can serve as precursor for estrogen biosynthesis. This is because *steroid 17α-hydroxylase/17,20-lyase (CYP17A1)* is not expressed in the human placenta. This essential enzyme converts 17-OH progesterone (a C_{21} steroid) to androstenedione, which is a C_{19} steroid and an estrogen precursor. Consequently, conversion of C_{21} steroids to C_{19} steroids is not possible.

However, dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) and its sulfate (DHEA-S) are also C_{19} steroids and are produced by maternal and fetal adrenal glands. These two steroids can serve as estrogen precursors in the placenta (Fig. 5-17). Ryan (1959a) found that the placenta had an exceptionally high capacity to convert appropriate C_{19} steroids to estrone and estradiol. The conversion of DHEA-S to estradiol requires placental expression of four key enzymes that are located principally in syncytiotrophoblast (Bonenfant, 2000; Salido, 1990). First, the placenta expresses high levels of steroid sulfatase (STS), which converts the conjugated DHEA-S to DHEA. DHEA is then acted upon by 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 1 (3βHSD) to produce androstenedione. Cytochrome P450 aromatase (CYP19) then converts androstenedione to estrone, which is then converted to estradiol by 17β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 1 (17βHSD1).

DHEA-S is the major precursor of estrogens in pregnancy (Baulieu, 1963; Siiteri, 1963). However, maternal adrenal glands do not produce sufficient amounts of DHEA-S to account for more than a fraction of total placental estrogen biosynthesis. The fetal adrenal glands are quantitatively the most important source of placental estrogen precursors in human pregnancy. Thus, estrogen production during pregnancy reflects the unique interactions among fetal adrenal glands, fetal liver, placenta, and maternal adrenal glands.

Directional Secretion

Of estradiol and estriol formed in syncytiotrophoblast, >90 percent enters maternal plasma (Gurpide, 1966). Of placental progesterone production, ≥85 percent enters maternal plasma, and little maternal progesterone crosses the placenta to the fetus (Gurpide, 1972).

This directional secretion stems from the architecture of hemochorioendothelial placentation. Steroids produced in the syncytiotrophoblast are secreted directly into maternal blood. To reach the fetus, they must first traverse the cytotrophoblast layer and then enter the stroma of the villous core and then fetal capillaries. From either of these spaces, steroids can reenter the

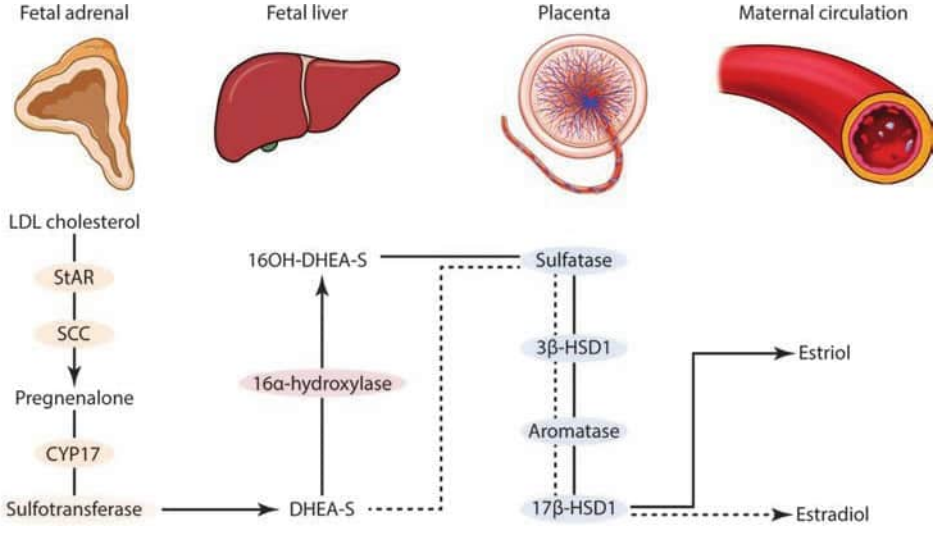


FIGURE 5-17 Schematic presentation of estrogen biosynthesis in the human placenta. Dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (DHEA-S) is secreted in prodigious amounts by the fetal adrenal glands, and a portion is converted to 16α-hydroxydehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (16OH-DHEA-S) in the fetal liver. DHEA-S and 16OH-DHEA-S are converted in the placenta to the estrogens 17β-estradiol (E_2) and estriol (E_3). These estrogens then enter the maternal circulation. Near term, half of E_2 is derived from fetal adrenal DHEA-S and half from maternal DHEA-S. On the other hand, 90 percent of E_3 in the placenta arises from fetal 16OH-DHEA-S and only 10 percent from all other sources. 3βHSD1 = 3β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 1; 17βHSD1 = 17β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase type 1; CYP17 = steroid 17α-hydroxylase/17,20-lyase; LDL = low-density lipoprotein; SCC = cholesterol side-chain cleavage enzyme; StAR = steroidogenic acute regulatory protein.

syncytium. The net result of this hemochorial arrangement is that entry of steroids into the maternal circulation is substantially greater than that into fetal blood.

FETAL ADRENAL GLAND–PLACENTAL INTERACTIONS

As noted, the fetal adrenal gland is a vital source of steroid precursors for placental estrogen synthesis. This fetal gland is remarkable both morphologically and functionally. At term, its mass exceeds that in adults (Chap. 7, p. 134). More than 85 percent of the fetal gland is composed of a unique fetal zone, which has a great capacity for steroid biosynthesis. Its daily steroid production near term is 100 to 200 mg/d, which exceeds the adult steroid secretion of 30 to 40 mg/d. The unique fetal zone subsequently regresses in the first year of life.

In addition to responding to ACTH from the fetal brain, fetal adrenal gland growth is influenced by factors secreted by the placenta. This is exemplified by the continued adrenal gland growth throughout gestation and by its rapid involution immediately after birth and placenta delivery.

Placental Estriol Synthesis

Estradiol is the primary placental estrogen product at term. In addition, significant levels of *estriol* and *estetrol* are found in the maternal circulation, particularly late in gestation (see Fig. 5-16). These hydroxylated forms of estrogen derive from the placenta using substrates formed by the combined efforts of the fetal adrenal gland and fetal liver enzymes (see Fig. 5-17). For this, high levels of hepatic 16α-hydroxylase act on adrenal-derived steroids (MacDonald, 1965b; Ryan, 1959b). Thus, the disproportionate rise in estriol formation during pregnancy is accounted for by placental synthesis from plasma-borne 16-OH-DHEA-S. Near term, the fetus produces 90 percent of placental estriol and estetrol precursors in normal human pregnancy. Thus, in the past, levels of these steroids were used as an indicator of fetal well-being.

Fetal Adrenal Steroid Precursor

Cholesterol is the precursor for fetal adrenal steroidogenesis. Here, the steroid biosynthesis rate is so great that its steroidogenesis alone is equivalent to a fourth of the total daily LDL cholesterol turnover in adults. Fetal adrenal glands synthesize cholesterol from acetate, and all enzymes involved in this biosynthesis are elevated compared with those of the adult adrenal gland (Rainey, 2001). Thus, the de novo cholesterol synthesis rate by fetal adrenal tissue is extremely high. Even so, it is insufficient to account for the steroids produced by fetal adrenal glands. Therefore, cholesterol must be assimilated from the fetal circulation and mainly from LDL produced in the fetal liver (Carr, 1980, 1984; Simpson, 1979).

Fetal Conditions Affecting Estrogen Production

Several fetal disorders alter the availability of substrate for placental steroid synthesis and thus highlight the interdependence of fetal development and placental function. *Fetal demise* is followed by a striking reduction in maternal urinary estrogen levels. Similarly, after ligation of the umbilical cord with the fetus and placenta left in situ, placental estrogen production declines markedly (Cassmer, 1959). However, as previously discussed, placental progesterone production is maintained. These observations indicate that an important source of precursors for placental estrogen—but not for progesterone—biosynthesis derive from the fetus.

Anencephalic fetuses have markedly atrophic adrenal glands due to absent hypothalamic and pituitary structures that would otherwise release ACTH for adrenal stimulation. In the absence of the adrenal cortical fetal zone development, placental formation of estrogen is severely limited because of diminished availability of C_{19} steroid precursors. Indeed, urinary estrogen levels in women pregnant with an anencephalic fetus approximate only 10 percent of those found in normal pregnancy (Frandsen, 1961). With an anencephalic fetus, almost all estrogens produced arise from placental use of maternal plasma DHEA-S.

Fetal adrenal cortical hypoplasia occurs in perhaps 1 in 12,500 births (McCabe, 2001). Estrogen production in these pregnancies is also limited, which suggests the absence of C_{19} precursors.

Fetal–placental sulfatase deficiency is associated with very low estrogen levels in otherwise normal pregnancies (France, 1969). Namely, sulfatase deficiency precludes the hydrolysis of C_{19} steroid sulfates, the first enzymatic step in the placental use of these circulating prehormones for estrogen biosynthesis. This deficiency is an X-linked disorder, and thus all affected fetuses are male. Its estimated frequency is 1 case in 2000 to 5000 births and is associated with delayed labor onset. It also is associated with development of ichthyosis in affected males later in life (Bradshaw, 1986).

Fetal–placental aromatase deficiency is a rare autosomal recessive disorder in which individuals cannot synthesize endogenous estrogens (Grumbach, 2011; Simpson, 2000). Fetal adrenal DHEA-S is converted in the placenta to androstenedione, but in cases of placental aromatase deficiency, androstenedione cannot be converted to estradiol. Rather, androgen metabolites of DHEA produced in the placenta, including androstenedione and some testosterone, are secreted into the maternal or fetal circulation, or both. This can virilize the mother and the female fetus (Belgorosky, 2009; Harada, 1992).

Trisomy 21—Down syndrome—screening searches for abnormal levels of hCG, alpha-fetoprotein, and other analytes (Chap. 17, p. 338). Of these, serum unconjugated estriol levels can be low in women with Down syndrome fetuses (Benn, 2002). This likely stems from inadequate formation of C_{19} steroids in the adrenal glands of these trisomic fetuses.

Fetal erythroblastosis in some cases of severe fetal D-antigen alloimmunization can lead to elevated maternal plasma estrogen levels. A suspected cause is the greater placental mass from hypertrophy, which can be seen with such fetal hemolytic anemia (Chap. 18, p. 360).

Complete hydatidiform mole and *gestational trophoblastic neoplasias* lack a fetus and also a fetal adrenal source of C_{19} steroid precursors for trophoblast estrogen biosynthesis. Placental estrogen formation is consequently limited to the use of C_{19}

steroids from the maternal plasma, and thus estradiol is principally produced (MacDonald, 1964, 1966).

Maternal Conditions Affecting Estrogen Production

Maternal conditions can likewise affect placental estrogen production. *Glucocorticoid treatment* can inhibit ACTH secretion from the maternal and fetal pituitary glands. This diminishes maternal and fetal adrenal secretion of the placental estrogen precursor DHEA-S and leads to a striking reduction in placental estrogen formation.

With *Addison disease,* pregnant women show lower estrogen levels, principally estrone and estradiol levels (Baulieu, 1956). However, the fetal adrenal gland contribution to estriol synthesis, particularly in later pregnancy, is quantitatively much more important than that of the maternal adrenal gland.

Maternal *androgen-producing tumors* can present the placenta with elevated androgen levels. Fortunately, placenta is extraordinarily efficient in the aromatization of C_{19} steroids. For example, virtually all androstenedione entering the intervillous space is taken up by syncytiotrophoblast and converted to estradiol (Edman, 1981). None of the C_{19} steroid enters the fetus, and a female fetus is rarely virilized by a maternal androgen-secreting tumor. Indeed, virilized female fetuses of women with an androgen-producing tumor may be cases in which a nonaromatizable C_{19} steroid androgen is produced by the tumor—for example, 5α-dihydrotestosterone. Alternatively, tumor-derived testosterone could be produced very early in pregnancy in amounts that exceed the placental aromatase capacity at that time.

REFERENCES

Adu-Gyamfi EA, Ding YB, Wang YX: Regulation of placentation by the transforming growth factor beta superfamily. Biol Reprod 102(1):18, 2020

Apps R, Sharkey A, Gardner L, et al: Ex vivo functional responses to HLA-G differ between blood and decidual NK cells. Mol Hum Reprod 17(9):577, 2011

Arnholdt H, Meisel F, Fandrey K, et al: Proliferation of villous trophoblast of the human placenta in normal and abnormal pregnancies. Virchows Arch B Cell Pathol Incl Mol Pathol 60:365, 1991

Bathgate RA, Samuel CS, Burazin TC, et al: Human relaxin gene 3 (H3) and the equivalent mouse relaxin (M3) gene. Novel members of the relaxin peptide family. J Biol Chem 277:1148, 2002

Baulieu EE, Bricaire H, Jayle MF: Lack of secretion of 17-hydroxycorticosteroids in a pregnant woman with Addison's disease. J Clin Endocrinol 16:690, 1956

Baulieu EE, Dray F: Conversion of 3H-dehydroepiandrosterone (3Beta-hydroxy-delta5-androsten-17-one) sulfate to 3H-estrogens in normal pregnant women. J Clin Endocrinol 23:1298, 1963

Beck T, Schweikhart G, Stolz E: Immunohistochemical location of HPL, SP1 and beta-HCG in normal placentas of varying gestational age. Arch Gynecol 239:63, 1986

Belgorosky A, Guercio G, Pepe C, et al: Genetic and clinical spectrum of aromatase deficiency in infancy, childhood and adolescence. Horm Res 72(6):321, 2009

Benirschke K, Burton GJ, Baergen RN: Pathology of the Human Placenta, 6th ed. Heidelberg, Springer, 2012

Benn PA: Advances in prenatal screening for Down syndrome: I. General principles and second trimester testing. Clin Chim Acta 323:1, 2002

Berry SA, Srivastava CH, Rubin LR, et al: Growth hormone-releasing hormone-like messenger ribonucleic acid and immunoreactive peptide are present in human testis and placenta. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 75:281, 1992

Bertelloni S, Baroncelli GI, Pelletti A, et al: Parathyroid hormone-related protein in healthy pregnant women. Calcif Tissue Int 54:195, 1994

Bhaumick B, Dawson EP, Bala RM: The effects of insulin-like growth factor-I and insulin on placental lactogen production by human term placental explants. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 144:674, 1987

Bleker O, Kloostermans G, Mieras D, et al: Intervillous space during uterine contractions in human subjects: an ultrasonic study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 123:697, 1975

Bogic LV, Mandel M, Bryant-Greenwood GD: Relaxin gene expression in human reproductive tissues by in situ hybridization. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 80:130, 1995

Bonagura TW, Babischkin JS, Aberdeen GC, et al: Prematurely elevating estradiol in early baboon pregnancy suppresses uterine artery remodeling and expression of extravillous placental vascular endothelial growth factor and a1b1 integrins. Endocrinology 153(6):2897, 2012

Bonenfant M, Provost PR, Drolet R, et al: Localization of type 1 17beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase mRNA and protein in syncytiotrophoblasts and invasive cytotrophoblasts in the human term villi. J Endocrinol 165:217, 2000

Borell U, Fernstrom I, Westman A: An arteriographic study of the placental circulation. Geburtshilfe Frauenheilkd 18:1, 1958

Bourne GL: The Human Amnion and Chorion. Chicago, Year Book, 1962

Boyd JD, Hamilton WJ: The Human Placenta. Cambridge, England, Heffer, 1970

Bradshaw KD, Carr BR: Placental sulfatase deficiency: maternal and fetal expression of steroid sulfatase deficiency and X-linked ichthyosis. Obstet Gynecol Surv 41:401, 1986

Brosens I, Dixon H: The anatomy of the maternal side of the placenta. Eur J Endocrinol 73:357, 1963

Bryant-Greenwood GD: The extracellular matrix of the human fetal membranes: structure and function. Placenta 19:1, 1998

Carr BR, Porter JC, MacDonald PC, et al: Metabolism of low density lipoprotein by human fetal adrenal tissue. Endocrinology 107:1034, 1980

Carr BR, Sadler RK, Rochelle DB, et al: Plasma lipoprotein regulation of progesterone biosynthesis by human corpus luteum tissue in organ culture. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 52:875, 1981

Carr BR, Simpson ER: Cholesterol synthesis by human fetal hepatocytes: effect of lipoproteins. Am J Obstet Gynecol 150:551, 1984

Carson DD: The glycobiology of implantation. Front Biosci 7:d1535, 2002

Carvajal JA, Delpiano AM, Cuello MA, et al: Mechanical stretch increases brain natriuretic peptide production and secretion in the human fetal membranes. Reprod Sci 20(5):597, 2013

Casey ML, MacDonald PC: Extraadrenal formation of a mineralocorticosteroid: deoxycorticosterone and deoxycorticosterone sulfate biosynthesis and metabolism. Endocr Rev 3:396, 1982a

Casey ML, MacDonald PC: Metabolism of deoxycorticosterone and deoxycorticosterone sulfate in men and women. J Clin Invest 70:312, 1982b

Casey ML, MacDonald PC: The endothelin-parathyroid hormone-related protein vasoactive peptide system in human endometrium: modulation by transforming growth factor-beta. Hum Reprod 11(Suppl 2):62, 1996

Cassmer O: Hormone production of the isolated human placenta. Studies on the role of the foetus in the endocrine functions of the placenta. Acta Endocrinol Suppl 32(Suppl 45):1, 1959

Cervar M, Blaschitz A, Dohr G, et al: Paracrine regulation of distinct trophoblast functions in vitro by placental macrophages. Cell Tissue Res 295:297, 1999

Chang CW, Wakeland AK, Parast MM: Trophoblast lineage specification, differentiation and their regulation by oxygen tension. J Endocrinol 236(1):R43, 2018

Chigusa Y, Kishore AH, Mogami H, et al: Nrf2 activation inhibits effects of thrombin in human amnion cells and thrombin-induced preterm birth in mice. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 101(6):2612, 2016

Cock TA, Auwerx J: Leptin: cutting the fat off the bone. Lancet 362:1572, 2003

Cole LA: Immunoassay of human chorionic gonadotropin, its free subunits, and metabolites. Clin Chem 43:2233, 1997

Corbacho AM, Martinez DL, Clapp C: Roles of prolactin and related members of the prolactin/growth hormone/placental lactogen family in angiogenesis. J Endocrinol 173:219, 2002

Coya R, Martul P, Algorta J, et al: Progesterone and human placental lactogen inhibit leptin secretion on cultured trophoblast cells from human placentas at term. Gynecol Endocrinol 21:27, 2005

Crawford J: A study of human placental growth with observations on the placenta in erythroblastosis foetalis. BJOG 66:855, 1959

Dautzenberg FM, Hauger RL: The CRF peptide family and their receptors: yet more partners discovered. Trends Pharmacol Sci 23:71, 2002

Debiève F, Pampfer S, Thomas K: Inhibin and activin production and subunit expression in human placental cells cultured *in vitro*. Mol Human Reprod 6(8):743, 2000

Diczfalusy E, Troen P: Endocrine functions of the human placenta. Vitam Horm 19:229, 1961

Dombroski RA, Casey ML, MacDonald PC: 5-Alpha-dihydroprogesterone formation in human placenta from 5alpha-pregnan-3beta/alpha-ol-20-ones and 5-pregnan-3beta-yl-20-one sulfate. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 63:155, 1997

Dunn CL, Critchley HO, Kelly RW: IL-15 regulation in human endometrial stromal cells. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 87:1898, 2002

Economos K, MacDonald PC, Casey ML: Endothelin-1 gene expression and protein biosynthesis in human endometrium: potential modulator of endometrial blood flow. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 74:14, 1992

Edman CD, Toofanian A, MacDonald PC, et al: Placental clearance rate of maternal plasma androstenedione through placental estradiol formation: an indirect method of assessing uteroplacental blood flow. Am J Obstet Gynecol 141:1029, 1981

Elliott CL, Allport VC, Loudon JA, et al: Nuclear factor-kappa B is essential for up-regulation of interleukin-8 expression in human amnion and cervical epithelial cells. Mol Hum Reprod 7:787, 2001

Faas MM, de Vos P: Uterine NK cells and macrophages in pregnancy. Placenta 56:44, 2017

Fisk NM, MacLachlan N, Ellis C, et al: Absent end-diastolic flow in first trimester umbilical artery. Lancet 2:1256, 1988

Florio P, Franchini A, Reis FM, et al: Human placenta, chorion, amnion and decidua express different variants of corticotropin-releasing factor receptor messenger RNA. Placenta 21:32, 2000

Florio P, Mezzesimi A, Turchetti V, et al: High levels of human chromogranin A in umbilical cord plasma and amniotic fluid at parturition. J Soc Gynecol Investig 9:32, 2002

France JT, Liggins GC: Placental sulfatase deficiency. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 29:138, 1969

Frandsen VA, Stakemann G: The site of production of oestrogenic hormones in human pregnancy: hormone excretion in pregnancy with anencephalic foetus. Acta Endocrinol 38:383, 1961

Fu B, Li X, Sun R, et al: Natural killer cells promote immune tolerance by regulating inflammatory TH17 cells at the human maternal-fetal interface. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 110(3):E231, 2013

Fuglsang J, Skjaerbaek C, Espelund U, et al: Ghrelin and its relationship to growth hormones during normal pregnancy. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 62(5):554, 2005

Fuzzi B, Rizzo R, Criscuoli L, et al: HLA-G expression in early embryos is a fundamental prerequisite for the obtainment of pregnancy. Eur J Immunol 32:311, 2002

Garcia-Velasco JA, Arici A: Chemokines and human reproduction. Fertil Steril 71:983, 1999

Genbacev O, Ratkovic M, Kraincanic M, et al: Effect of prostaglandin PGE2alpha on the synthesis of placental proteins and human placental lactogen (HPL). Prostaglandins 13:723, 1977

Georgia S, Bhushan A: Pregnancy hormones boost beta cells via serotonin. Nat Med 16(7):756, 2010

Germain A, Attaroglu H, MacDonald PC, et al: Parathyroid hormone-related protein mRNA in avascular human amnion. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 75:1173, 1992

Gibson DA, Simitsidelis I, Cousins FL, et al: Intracrine androgens enhance decidualization and modulate expression of human endometrial receptivity genes. Sci Rep 286, 2016

Golander A, Hurley T, Barrett J, et al: Prolactin synthesis by human chorion-decidual tissue: a possible source of prolactin in the amniotic fluid. Science 202:311, 1978

Goldman-Wohl DS, Ariel I, Greenfield C, et al: HLA-G expression in extravillous trophoblasts is an intrinsic property of cell differentiation: a lesson learned from ectopic pregnancies. Mol Hum Reprod 6:535, 2000

Greer LG, Casey BM, Halvorson LM, et al: Antithyroid antibodies and parity: further evidence for microchimerism in autoimmune thyroid disease. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(5):471.e1, 2011

Grumbach MM: Aromatase deficiency and its consequences. Adv Exp Med Biol 707:19, 2011

Grumbach MM, Kaplan SL: On placental origin and purification of chorionic growth hormone prolactin and its immunoassay in pregnancy. Trans N Y Acad Sci 27:167, 1964

Gualillo O, Caminos J, Blanco M, et al: Ghrelin, a novel placental-derived hormone. Endocrinology 142:788, 2001

Gubbay O, Critchley HO, Bowen JM, et al: Prolactin induces ERK phosphorylation in epithelial and CD56(+) natural killer cells of the human endometrium. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 87:2329, 2002

Gurpide E, Schwers J, Welch MT, et al: Fetal and maternal metabolism of estradiol during pregnancy. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 26:1355, 1966

Gurpide E, Tseng J, Escarcena L, et al: Fetomaternal production and transfer of progesterone and uridine in sheep. Am J Obstet Gynecol 113:21, 1972

Guzeloglu-Kayisli O, Kayisli UA, Taylor HS: The role of growth factors and cytokines during implantation: endocrine and paracrine interactions. Semin Reprod Med 27(1):62, 2009

Haider S, Meinhardt G, Saleh L, et al: Self-renewing trophoblast organoids recapitulate the developmental program of the early human placenta Stem Cell Reports 11(2):537, 2018

Halvorson LM: Reproductive endocrinology. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al: Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2020

Hanna J, Goldman-Wohl D, Hamani Y, et al: Decidual NK cells regulate key developmental processes at the human fetal-maternal interface. Nat Med 12:1065, 2006

Hansell DJ, Bryant-Greenwood GD, Greenwood FC: Expression of the human relaxin H1 gene in the decidua, trophoblast, and prostate. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 72:899, 1991

Harada N, Ogawa H, Shozu M, et al: Biochemical and molecular genetic analyses on placental aromatase (P-450AROM) deficiency. J Biol Chem 267:4781, 1992

Harno E, Ramamoorthy TG, Coll AP, et al: POMC: the physiological power of hormone processing. Physiol Rev 98(4):2381, 2018

Henson MC, Castracane VD: Leptin: roles and regulation in primate pregnancy. Semin Reprod Med 20:113, 2002

Hershman JM: Human chorionic gonadotropin and the thyroid: Hyperemesis gravidarum and trophoblastic tumors. Thyroid 9:653, 1999

Hertig AT: The placenta: some new knowledge about an old organ. Obstet Gynecol 20:859, 1962

Hill DJ: Placental control of metabolic adaptations in the mother for an optimal pregnancy outcome. What goes wrong in gestational diabetes? Placenta 69:162, 2018

Horgan CE, Roumimper H, Tucker R, et al: Altered decorin and Smad expression in human fetal membranes in PPROM. Biol Reprod 91(5):105, 2014

Horvath TL, Diano S, Sotonyi P, et al: Minireview: ghrelin and the regulation of energy balance—a hypothalamic perspective. Endocrinology 142:4163, 2001

Hudson P, Haley J, John M, et al: Structure of a genomic clone encoding biologically active human relaxin. Nature 301:628, 1983

Hudson P, John M, Crawford R, et al: Relaxin gene expression in human ovaries and the predicted structure of a human preprorelaxin by analysis of cDNA clones. EMBO J 3:2333, 1984

Hunt JS, Orr HT: HLA and maternal-fetal recognition. FASEB J 6:2344, 1992

Huu SN, Dubernard G, Aractingi S, et al: Feto-maternal cell trafficking: a transfer of pregnancy associated progenitor cells. Stem Cell Rev 2:111, 2006

Iwashita M, Kudo Y, Shinozaki Y, et al: Gonadotropin-releasing hormone increases serum human chorionic gonadotropin in pregnant women. Endocr J 40:539, 1993

Johnson EL, Chakraborty R: Placental Hofbauer cells limit HIV-1 replication and potentially offset mother to child transmission (MTCT) by induction of immunoregulatory cytokines. Retrovirology 9:101, 2012

Johnson PM, Christmas SE, Vince GS: Immunological aspects of implantation and implantation failure. Hum Reprod 14(suppl 2):26, 1999

Jones RL, Stoikos C, Findlay JK, et al: TGF-β superfamily expression and actions in the endometrium and placenta. Reproduction 132:217, 2006

Jones SA, Brooks AN, Challis JR: Steroids modulate corticotropin-releasing hormone production in human fetal membranes and placenta. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 68:825, 1989a

Kaneko Y, Murphy CR, Day ML: Extracellular matrix proteins secreted from both the endometrium and the embryo are required for attachment: a study using a co-culture model of rat blastocysts and Ishikawa cells. J Morphol 2741(1):63, 2013

Kim H, Toyofuku Y, Lynn FC; et al: Serotonin regulates pancreatic beta cell mass during pregnancy. Nat Med 16(7):804, 2010

King BF, Menton DN: Scanning electron microscopy of human placental villi from early and late in gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 122:824, 1975

Kraiem Z, Sadeh O, Blithe DL, et al: Human chorionic gonadotropin stimulates thyroid hormone secretion, iodide uptake, organification, and adenosine 3′,5′-monophosphate formation in cultured human thyrocytes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 79:595, 1994

Kurman RJ, Young RH, Norris HJ, et al: Immunocytochemical localization of placental lactogen and chorionic gonadotropin in the normal placenta and trophoblastic tumors, with emphasis on intermediate trophoblast and the placental site trophoblastic tumor. Int J Gynecol Pathol 3:101, 1984

Kurtzman JT, Wilson H, Rao CV: A proposed role for hCG in clinical obstetrics. Semin Reprod Med 19:63, 2001

La Cava A, Alviggi C, Matarese G: Unraveling the multiple roles of leptin in inflammation and autoimmunity. J Mol Med 82:4, 2004

LeBouteiller P, Solier C, Proll J, et al: Placental HLA-G protein expression in vivo: where and what for? Hum Reprod Update 5:223, 1999
Lessey BA, Castelbaum AJ: Integrins and implantation in the human. Rev Endocr Metab Disord 3:107, 2002
Lessey BA, Castelbaum AJ, Sawin SW, et al: Integrins as markers of uterine receptivity in women with primary unexplained infertility. Fertil Steril 63:535, 1995
Liao S, Vickers MH, Taylor RS, et al: Human placental growth hormone is increased in maternal serum at 20 weeks of gestation in pregnancies with large-for-gestation-age babies. Growth Factors 34(5–6):203, 2016
Licht P, Russu V, Wildt L: On the role of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) in the embryo-endometrial microenvironment: implications for differentiation and implantation. Semin Reprod Med 19:37, 2001
Lindhard A, Bentin-Ley U, Ravn V, et al: Biochemical evaluation of endometrial function at the time of implantation. Fertil Steril 78:221, 2002
Liu AX, Zhang D, Zhu YM, et al: Impact of axis of GHRH and GHRH receptor on cell viability and apoptosis of the placental choriocarcinoma cell line. Curr Mol Med 16(3):299, 2016
Liu Y, Fan X, Wang R, et al: Single-cell RNA-seq reveals the diversity of trophoblast subtypes and patterns of differentiation in the human placenta. Cell Res 28(8):819, 2018
Lobo SC, Srisuparp S, Peng X, et al: Uterine receptivity in the baboon: modulation by chorionic gonadotropin. Semin Reprod Med 19:69, 2001
Loke YM, King A: Human Implantation. Cell Biology and Immunology. Cambridge, Cambridge University Press, 1995
Loquet P, Broughton-Pipkin F, Symonds E, et al: Blood velocity waveforms and placental vascular formation. Lancet 2:1252, 1988
MacDonald PC: Placental steroidogenesis. In Wynn RM (ed): Fetal Homeostasis, Vol. I. New York, New York Academy of Sciences, 1965a
MacDonald PC, Siiteri PK: Origin of estrogen in women pregnant with an anencephalic fetus. J Clin Invest 44:465, 1965b
MacDonald PC, Siiteri PK: Study of estrogen production in women with hydatidiform mole. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 24:685, 1964
MacDonald PC, Siiteri PK: The in vivo mechanisms of origin of estrogen in subjects with trophoblastic tumors. Steroids 8:589, 1966
Marcellin L, Schmitz T, Messaoudene M, et al: Immune modifications in fetal membranes overlying the cervix precede parturition in humans. J Immunol 198(3):1345, 2017
Maruo T, Ladines-Llave CA, Matsuo H, et al: A novel change in cytologic localization of human chorionic gonadotropin and human placental lactogen in first-trimester placenta in the course of gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 167:217, 1992
McCabe ER: Adrenal hypoplasias and aplasias. In Scriver CR, Beaudet AL, Sly WE, et al (eds): The Metabolic and Molecular Bases of Inherited Disease. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2001
McCombs H, Craig M: Decidual necrosis in normal pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 24:436, 1964
McGregor WG, Kuhn RW, Jaffe RB: Biologically active chorionic gonadotropin: synthesis by the human fetus. Science 220:306, 1983
Mesiano S: The endocrinology of human pregnancy and fetoplacental neuroendocrine development. In Strauss JF, Barbieri RL (eds): Yen and Jaffe's Reproductive Endocrinology: Physiology, Pathophysiology, and Clinical Management, 6th ed. Philadelphia, Saunders, 2009
Mi Y, Wang W, Zhang C, et al: Autophagic degradation of collagen 1A1 by cortisol in human amnion fibroblasts. Endocrinology 158(4):1005, 2017
Miller-Lindholm AK, LaBenz CJ, Ramey J, et al: Human chorionic gonadotropin-beta gene expression in first trimester placenta. Endocrinology 138:5459, 1997
Moffett-King A: Natural killer cells and pregnancy. Nat Rev Immunol 2:656, 2002
Mogami H, Keller PW, Shi H, et al: Effect of thrombin on human amnion mesenchymal cells, mouse fetal membranes, and preterm birth. J Biol Chem 289(19):13295, 2014
Mogami H, Kishore AH, Shi H, et al: Fetal fibronectin signaling induces matrix metalloproteases and cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) in amnion cells and preterm birth in mice. J Biol Chem 288(3):1953, 2013
Moore JJ, Dubyak GR, Moore RM, et al: Oxytocin activates the inositol-phospholipid-protein kinase-C system and stimulates prostaglandin production in human amnion cells. Endocrinology 123:1771, 1988
Moore KL, Persaud TV, Torchia MG (eds): The Developing Human. Clinically Oriented Embryology, 9th ed. Philadelphia, Saunders, 2013
Moore RM, Redline RW, Kumar D, et al: Differential expression of fibulin family proteins in the para-cervical weak zone and other areas of human fetal membranes. Placenta 30(4):335, 2009
Morrish DW, Marusyk H, Siy O: Demonstration of specific secretory granules for human chorionic gonadotropin in placenta. J Histochem Cytochem 35:93, 1987
Nakajima R, Ishida M, Kamiya CA, et al: Elevated vasoinhibin derived from prolactin and cathepsin D activities in sera of patients with preeclampsia. Hypertens Res 38(12):899, 2015
Navot D, Bergh P: Preparation of the human endometrium for implantation. Ann N Y Acad Sci 622:212, 1991
Nemeth E, Tashima LS, Yu Z, et al: Fetal membrane distention: I. Differentially expressed genes regulated by acute distention in amniotic epithelial (WISH) cells. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:50, 2000
Nicholson RC, King BR: Regulation of CRH gene expression in the placenta. Front Horm Res 27:246, 2001
Nusken E, Wohlfarth M, Lippach G, et al: Reduced perinatal leptin availability may contribute to adverse metabolic programming in a rat model of uteroplacental insufficiency. Endocrinology 157(5):1813, 2016
O'Sullivan CM, Liu SY, Karpinka JB, et al: Embryonic hatching enzyme strypsin/ISP1 is expressed with ISP2 in endometrial glands during implantation. Mol Reprod Dev 62:328, 2002
Okae H, Toh H, Sato T, et al: Derivation of human trophoblast stem cells. Cell Stem Cell 4;22(1):50, 2018
Patel N, Alsat E, Igout A, et al: Glucose inhibits human placental GH secretion, in vitro. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 80:1743, 1995
Peng B, Zhu H, Klausen C, et al: GnRH regulates trophoblast invasion via RUNX2-mediated MMP2/9 expression. Mol Hum Reprod 22(2):119, 2016
Pereira de Sousa FL, Chaiwangyen W, Morales-Prieto DM, et al: Involvement of STAT1 in proliferation and invasiveness of trophoblastic cells. Reprod Biol 17(3):218, 2017
Pérez-Pérez A, Toro A, Vilariño-García T, et al: Leptin action in normal and pathological pregnancies. J Cell Mol Med 22(2):716, 2018
Petraglia F, Florio P, Benedetto C, et al: Urocortin stimulates placental adrenocorticotropin and prostaglandin release and myometrial contractility in vitro. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 84:1420, 1999
Petraglia F, Giardino L, Coukos G, et al: Corticotropin-releasing factor and parturition: plasma and amniotic fluid levels and placental binding sites. Obstet Gynecol 75:784, 1990
Petraglia F, Vaughan J, Vale W: Inhibin and activin modulate the release of gonadotropin-releasing hormone, human chorionic gonadotropin, and progesterone from cultured human placental cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 86:5114, 1989
Petraglia F, Woodruff TK, Botticelli G, et al: Gonadotropin-releasing hormone, inhibin, and activin in human placenta: evidence for a common cellular localization. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 74:1184, 1992
Pijnenborg R: Trophoblast invasion. Reprod Med Rev 3:53, 1994
Pijnenborg R, Bland JM, Robertson WB, et al: Uteroplacental arterial changes related to interstitial trophoblast migration in early human pregnancy. Placenta 4:397, 1983
Piper KP, McLarnon A, Arrazi J, et al: Functional HY-specific CD8+ T cells are found in a high proportion of women following pregnancy with a male fetus. Biol Reprod 76:96, 2007
PrabhuDas M, Bonney E, Caron K, et al: Immune mechanisms at the maternal-fetal interface: perspective and challenges. Nat Immunol 16(4):328, 2015
Qin X, Chua PK, Ohira RH, et al: An autocrine/paracrine role of human decidual relaxin. II. Stromelysin-1 (MMP-3) and tissue inhibitor of matrix metalloproteinase-1 (TIMP-1). Biol Reprod 56:812, 1997a
Qin X, Garibay-Tupas J, Chua PK, et al: An autocrine/paracrine role of human decidual relaxin. I. Interstitial collagenase (matrix metalloproteinase-1) and tissue plasminogen activator. Biol Reprod 56:800, 1997b
Rahmati M, Petitbarat M, Dubanchet S, et al: Colony stimulating factors 1, 2, 3 and early pregnancy steps: from bench to bedside. J Reprod Immunol 109:1, 2015
Rainey WE, Carr BR, Wang ZN, et al: Gene profiling of human fetal and adult adrenals. J Endocrinol 171:209, 2001
Rajagopalan S, Long EO: Cellular senescence induced by CD158d reprograms natural killer cells to promote vascular remodeling. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 109(50):20596, 2012
Ramsey EM, Donner MW: Placental Vasculature and Circulation. Philadelphia, Saunders, 1980
Reyes L, Wolfe B, Golos T: Hofbauer cells: placental macrophages of fetal origin. Results Probl Cell Differ 62:45, 2017
Riddick DH, Luciano AA, Kusmik WF, et al: Evidence for a nonpituitary source of amniotic fluid prolactin. Fertil Steril 31:35, 1979
Riley S, Walton J, Herlick J, et al: The localization and distribution of corticotropin-releasing hormone in the human placenta and fetal membranes throughout gestation. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 72:1001, 1991
Robidoux J, Simoneau L, St Pierre S, et al: Characterization of neuropeptide Y-mediated corticotropin-releasing factor synthesis and release from human placental trophoblasts. Endocrinology 141:2795, 2000

Robinson BG, Emanuel RL, Frim DM, et al: Glucocorticoid stimulates expression of corticotropin-releasing hormone gene in human placenta. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 85:5244, 1988
Rosario FJ, Powell TL, Jansson T: Activation of placental insulin and mTOR signaling in a mouse model of maternal obesity associated with fetal overgrowth. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 310(1):R87, 2016a
Rosario GX, Stewart CL: The multifaceted actions of leukaemia inhibitory factor in mediating uterine receptivity and embryo implantation. Am J Reprod Immunol 75(3):246, 2016b
Rowe T, King L, MacDonald PC, et al: Tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinase-1 and tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinase-2 expression in human amnion mesenchymal and epithelial cells. Am J Obstet Gynecol 176:915, 1997
Ruiz-Alonso M, Blesa D, Díaz-Gimeno P, et al: The endometrial receptivity array for diagnosis and personalized embryo transfer as a treatment for patients with repeated implantation failure. Fertil Steril 100(3):818, 2013
Ruocco MG, Chaouat G, Florez L, et al: Regulatory T-cells in pregnancy: historical perspective, state of the art, and burning questions. Front Immunol 5:389, 2014
Ryan KJ: Biological aromatization of steroids. J Biol Chem 234:268, 1959a
Ryan KJ: Metabolism of C-16-oxygenated steroids by human placenta: the formation of estriol. J Biol Chem 234:2006, 1959b
Salido EC, Yen PH, Barajas L, et al: Steroid sulfatase expression in human placenta: immunocytochemistry and in situ hybridization study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 70:1564, 1990
Saxe A, Dean S, Gibson G, et al: Parathyroid hormone and parathyroid hormone-related peptide in venous umbilical cord blood of healthy neonates. J Perinat Med 25:288, 1997
Schanton M, Maymó JL, Pérez-Pérez A, et al: Involvement of leptin in the molecular physiology of the placenta. Reproduction 155(1):R1, 2018
Schumacher A, Zenclussen AC: Human chorionic gonadotropin-mediated immune responses that facilitate embryo implantation and placentation. Front Immunol 10:2896, 2019
Siiteri PK, MacDonald PC: Placental estrogen biosynthesis during human pregnancy. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 26:751, 1966
Siiteri PK, MacDonald PC: The utilization of circulating dehydroisoandrosterone sulfate for estrogen synthesis during human pregnancy. Steroids 2:713, 1963
Silasi M, You Y, Simpson S, et al: Human chorionic gonadotropin modulates CXCL10 expression through histone methylation in human decidua. Sci Rep 10(1):5785, 2020
Siler-Khodr TM: Chorionic peptides. In McNellis D, Challis JRG, MacDonald PC, et al (eds): The Onset of Labor: Cellular and Integrative Mechanisms. Ithaca, Perinatology Press, 1988
Siler-Khodr TM, Khodr GS: Content of luteinizing hormone-releasing factor in the human placenta. Am J Obstet Gynecol 130:216, 1978
Siler-Khodr TM, Khodr GS, Valenzuela G: Immunoreactive gonadotropin-releasing hormone level in maternal circulation throughout pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 150:376, 1984
Simmonds CS, Karsenty G, Karaplis AD, et al: Parathyroid hormone regulates fetal-placental mineral homeostasis. J Bone Miner Res 25(3):594, 2010
Simpson ER: Genetic mutations resulting in loss of aromatase activity in humans and mice. J Soc Gynecol Investig 7:S18, 2000
Simpson ER, Burkhart MF: Acyl CoA:cholesterol acyl transferase activity in human placental microsomes: inhibition by progesterone. Arch Biochem Biophys 200:79, 1980
Simpson ER, Carr BR, Parker CR Jr, et al: The role of serum lipoproteins in steroidogenesis by the human fetal adrenal cortex. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 49:146, 1979
Sipos Pl, Rens W, Schlecht H, et al: Uterine vasculature remodeling in human pregnancy involves functional macrochimerism by endothelial colony forming cells of fetal origin. Stem Cells 31:1363, 2013
Soares MJ, Chakraborty D, Renaud SJ, et al: Regulatory pathways controlling the endovascular invasive trophoblast cell linear. J Reprod Dev 58(3):283, 2012
Steele GL, Currie WD, Yuen BH, et al: Acute stimulation of human chorionic gonadotropin secretion by recombinant human activin-A in first trimester human trophoblast. Endocrinology 133:297, 1993
Stevens AM: Microchimeric cells in systemic lupus erythematosus: targets or innocent bystanders? Lupus 15:820, 2006
Tomer Y, Huber GK, Davies TF: Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) interacts directly with recombinant human TSH receptors. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 74:1477, 1992
Triebel J, Bertsch T, Bollheimer C, et al: Principles of the prolactin/vasoinhibin axis. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 309(10):R1193, 2015
Trombly DJ, Woodruff TK, Mayo KE: Roles for transforming growth factor beta superfamily proteins in early folliculogenesis. Semin Reprod Med 27(1):14, 2009
Tsang JCH, Vong JSL, Ji L, et al Integrative single-cell and cell-free plasma RNA transcriptomics elucidates placental cellular dynamics. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 114(37):E7786, 2017
Tsuruta E, Tada H, Tamaki H, et al: Pathogenic role of asialo human chorionic gonadotropin in gestational thyrotoxicosis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 80:350, 1995
Turco MY, Gardner L, Kay RG, et al: Trophoblast organoids as a model for maternal-fetal interactions during human placentation. Nature 564(7735):263, 2018
Tyson JE, Hwang P, Guyda H, et al: Studies of prolactin secretion in human pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 113:14, 1972
Vande Wiele RL, Bogumil J, Dyrenfurth I, et al: Mechanisms regulating the menstrual cycle in women. Recent Prog Horm Res 26:63, 1970
Vaskivuo TE, Ottander U, Oduwole O, et al: Role of apoptosis, apoptosis-related factors and 17 beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenases in human corpus luteum regression. Mol Cell Endocrinol 194(1–2):191, 2002
Vento-Tormo R, Efremova M, Botting RA, et al: Single-cell reconstruction of the early maternal-fetal interface in humans. Nature 563(7731):347, 2018
Vickers MH, Gilmour S, Gertler A, et al: 20-kDa placental hGH-V has diminished diabetogenic and lactogenic activities compared with 22-kDa hGH-N while retaining antilipogenic activity. Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 297(3):E629, 2009
Wadhwa PD, Porto M, Garite TJ, et al: Maternal corticotropin-releasing hormone levels in the early third trimester predict length of gestation in human pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 179:1079, 1998
Walker WH, Fitzpatrick SL, Barrera-Saldana HA, et al: The human placental lactogen genes: structure, function, evolution and transcriptional regulation. Endocr Rev 12:316, 1991
Warren W, Silverman A: Cellular localization of corticotrophin releasing hormone in the human placenta, fetal membranes and decidua. Placenta 16:147, 1995
Weetman AP: The immunology of pregnancy. Thyroid 9:643, 1999
Wehmann RE, Nisula BC: Renal clearance rates of the subunits of human chorionic gonadotropin in man. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 50:674, 1980
Whittle WL, Gibb W, Challis JR: The characterization of human amnion epithelial and mesenchymal cells: the cellular expression, activity and glucocorticoid regulation of prostaglandin output. Placenta 21:394, 2000
Williams PJ, Searle RF, Robson SC, et al: Decidual leucocyte populations in early to late gestation normal human pregnancy. J Reprod Immunol 82(1):24, 2009
Winger EE, Reed JL: The multiple faces of the decidual natural killer cell. Am J Reprod Immunol 70:1, 2013
Wislocki GB, Dempsey EW: Electron microscopy of the human placenta. Anat Rec 123:133, 1955
Wolfahrt S, Kleine B, Rossmanith WG: Detection of gonadotrophin releasing hormone and its receptor mRNA in human placental trophoblasts using in situ reverse transcription-polymerase chain reaction. Mol Hum Reprod 4:999, 1998
Wu Z, Horgan CE, Carr O, et al: Biglycan and decorin differentially regulate signaling in the fetal membranes. Matrix Biol 34:266, 2014
Xie L, Sadovsky Y: The function of miR-519d in cell migration, invasion, and proliferation suggests a role in early placentation. Placenta 48:34, 2016
Xu RH, Chen X, Li DS, et al: BMP4 initiates human embryonic stem cell differentiation to trophoblast. Nat Biotechnol 20(12): 1261, 2002
Yan C, Wang P, DeMayo J, et al: Synergistic roles of bone morphogenetic Protein 15 and growth differentiation Factor 9 in ovarian function. Mol Endocrinol 15:854, 2001
Zhang B, He L, Liu Y, et al: Prostaglandin E(2) is required for BMP4-induced mesoderm differentiation of human embryonic stem cells. Stem Cell Reports 10(3):905, 2018

CHAPTER 6

Placental Abnormalities

During pregnancy, the placenta provides the indispensable interface between mother and fetus (Chap. 5, p. 86). However, in part due to inaccessibility throughout gestation, the placenta's anatomy, physiology, and molecular structure still remain some of the most understudied and intriguing topics in obstetrics. Furthermore, the parallels between placental formation and cancer afford opportunities to understand tumor biology and pathogenesis (Costanzo, 2018; Guttmacher, 2014).

Visual placental inspection by the obstetrician is recommended, but routine pathological examination is not mandatory. Indeed, specific conditions that merit submission for detailed inspection are still debated. For example, the College of American Pathologists recommends placental examination for an extensive list of indications, however many providers are not aware (Langston, 1997; Odibo, 2016). Moreover, data are insufficient to support all of these. At minimum, the placenta and cord should be inspected in the delivery room. The decision to request pathological examination should be based on clinical and placental findings (Table 6-1) (Redline, 2008; Roberts, 2008).

NORMAL PLACENTA

At term, the typical placenta weighs 470 g, is round to oval with a 22-cm diameter, and has a central thickness of 2.5 cm (Benirschke, 2012). It is composed of a placental disc, extraplacental membranes, and three-vessel umbilical cord. The disc surface that lies against the uterine wall is the *basal plate*, which is divided by clefts into portions—termed cotyledons. The fetal surface is the *chorionic plate*. Here, the umbilical cord inserts, typically in the center. Large fetal vessels that originate from the cord vessels then spread and branch across the chorionic plate before entering stem villi of the placenta parenchyma. In tracing these, fetal arteries almost invariably cross over veins. The chorionic plate and its vessels are covered by thin amnion, which can be easily peeled away from a postdelivery specimen.

During prenatal sonographic examinations, multiple societies, including the American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine (2018), recommend identifying and recording placental location and its relationship to the internal cervical os. As seen sonographically, the normal placenta is homogenous and 2 to 4 cm thick, lies against the myometrium, and indents into the amnionic sac. The retroplacental space is a hypoechoic area that separates the myometrium from the basal plate and measures less than 1 to 2 cm. The umbilical cord is also imaged, its fetal and placental insertion sites examined, and its vessels counted.

Many placental lesions can be identified grossly or sonographically, but other abnormalities require histopathological examination for clarification. A detailed description of these is beyond the scope of this chapter, and interested readers are referred to textbooks by Benirschke (2012), Fox (2007), and Faye-Petersen (2006) and their colleagues. Moreover, the placenta accreta spectrum, placenta previa, and gestational

TABLE 6-1. Some Indications for Placental Pathological Examination[a]

Maternal Indications
Abruption
Antepartum infection with fetal risks
Anti-CDE alloimmunization
Cesarean hysterectomy
Oligohydramnios or hydramnios
Peripartum fever or infection
Preterm (<32 wks) delivery
Postterm (>42 wks) delivery
Severe trauma
Suspected placental injury
Systemic disorders with known placental effects
Thick meconium
Unexplained late pregnancy bleeding
Unexplained or recurrent pregnancy complications
Fetal and Neonatal Indications
Admission to an acute care nursery
Birth weight <10th or >95th percentile
Fetal anemia
Fetal or neonatal compromise
Neonatal seizures
Hydrops fetalis
Infection or sepsis
Major anomalies or abnormal karyotype
Multifetal gestation
Stillbirth or neonatal death
Vanishing twin beyond the first trimester
Placental Indications
Gross lesions
Markedly abnormal placental shape or size
Markedly adhered placenta
Term cord >32 cm or <100 cm
Umbilical cord lesions
Velamentous cord insertion

[a]Indications are organized alphabetically.

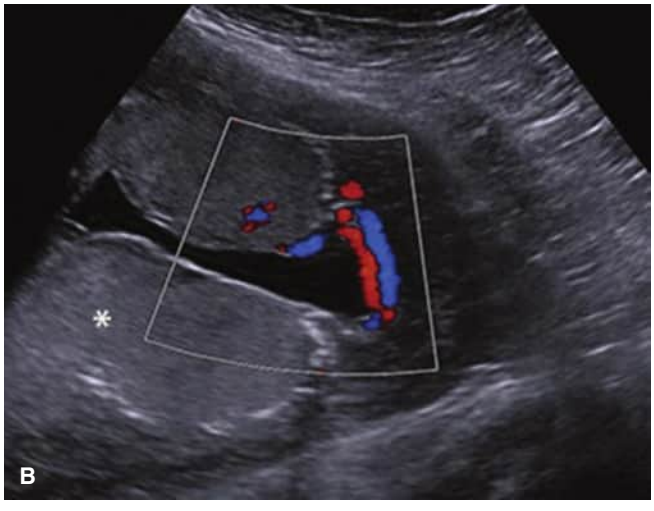
trophoblastic disease are presented in detail in Chapters 41 and 20, respectively.

SHAPE AND SIZE VARIANTS

Of variants, placentas may infrequently form as separate, nearly equally sized discs. This *bilobate placenta* may also be called bipartite placenta or placenta duplex. In these, the cord inserts between the two placental lobes—either into a connecting chorionic bridge or into intervening membranes. A placenta containing three or more equivalently sized lobes is rare and termed *multilobate*. Unlike this equal distribution, one or more disparately smaller accessory lobes—*succenturiate lobes*—may develop in the membranes at a distance from the main placenta (Fig. 6-1). These lobes have vessels that course through the membranes. Of clinical importance, if these vessels overlie the cervix to create a vasa previa, dangerous fetal hemorrhage can follow vessel laceration (p. 115). An accessory lobe can also be retained in the uterus after delivery to cause postpartum uterine atony and hemorrhage or later endometritis.

Rarely, the placental surface area varies from the norm. With *placenta membranacea*, villi cover all or nearly all the uterine cavity. This may occasionally give rise to serious hemorrhage because of associated placenta previa or accreta (Pereira, 2013). A *ring-shaped placenta* may be a variant of placenta membranacea. This placenta is annular, and a partial or complete ring of placental tissue is present. These abnormalities appear to be associated with a greater likelihood of antepartum and postpartum bleeding and fetal-growth restriction (Faye-Petersen, 2006; Steemers, 1995). With *placenta fenestrata*, the central portion of a placental disc is missing. In some cases, there is

A



B

FIGURE 6-1 Succenturiate lobe. **A.** Vessels extend from the main placental disc to supply the small round succenturiate lobe located to the left. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Rachel Gardner.) **B.** Sonographic imaging with color Doppler shows the main placental disc implanted posteriorly (*asterisk*). The succenturiate lobe is located on the anterior uterine wall across the amnionic cavity. Vessels are identified as the long red and blue crossing tubular structures that travel within the membranes to connect these two portions of placenta.

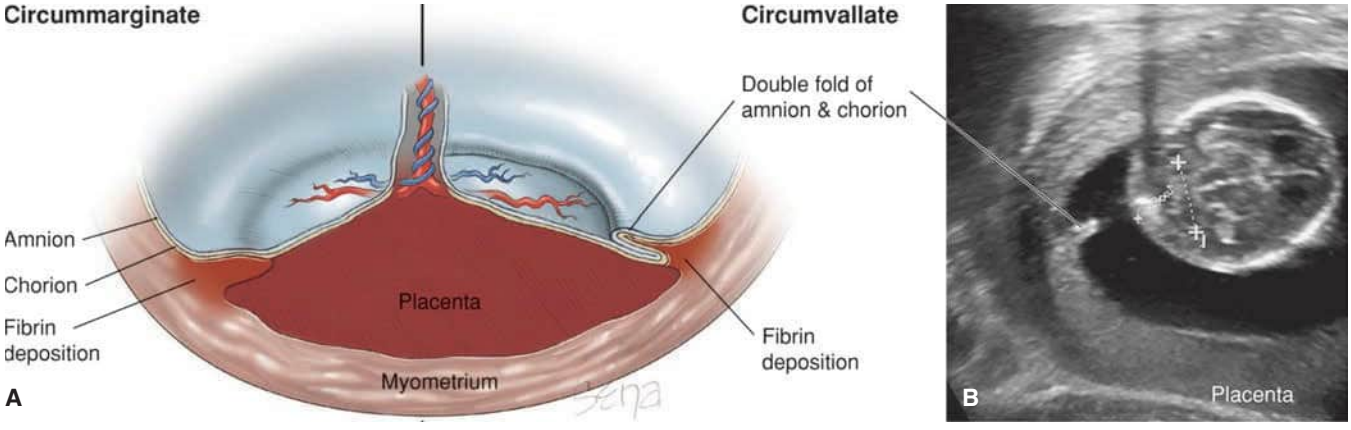


FIGURE 6-2 A. In this illustration, circummarginate (*left*) and circumvallate (*right*) varieties of extrachorial placentation are shown. A circummarginate placenta is covered by a single layer of amniochorion. **B.** This transabdominal grayscale sonographic image shows a circumvallate placenta. The double fold of amnion and chorion creates a broad, opaque white ring and ridge on the fetal surface.

an actual hole in the placenta. More often, only villous tissue is missing, and the chorionic plate remains intact.

During pregnancy, the normal placenta increases its thickness at a rate that approximates 1 mm per week. Although not measured as a component of routine sonographic evaluation, this thickness typically does not exceed 40 mm (Hoddick, 1985). *Placentomegaly* defines those thicker than 40 mm and commonly results from striking villous enlargement. Underlying maternal etiologies are diabetes mellitus or severe anemia, whereas fetal sources include hydrops, anemia, syphilis, toxoplasmosis, or infection caused by parvovirus or cytomegalovirus. In these conditions, the placenta is homogeneously thickened. In other cases placentas are thick but inhomogeneous. Partial mole is a classic example. The thickened placenta contains edematous villi, which appear as multiple, small, anechoic placental cysts (Chap. 13, p. 239). Cystic vesicles also are seen with *placental mesenchymal dysplasia*. In this rare condition, vesicles correspond to enlarged stem villi. However, unlike molar pregnancy, trophoblast proliferation is not excessive, and chromosomal complements are diploid (Woo, 2011).

Rather than villous enlargement, inhomogeneous placentomegaly often may result from collections of blood or fibrin, which impart heterogeneity to the placenta. Examples of this are discussed later and include massive perivillous fibrin deposition, intervillous or subchorionic thromboses, and large retroplacental hematomas (p. 110).

EXTRACHORIAL PLACENTATION

The chorionic plate normally extends to the periphery of the placental disc and has a diameter similar to that of the basal plate. With extrachorial placentation, however, the chorionic plate fails to extend to this periphery and leads to a chorionic plate that is smaller than the basal plate (Fig. 6-2). Circummarginate and circumvallate placentas are the two types. In a *circummarginate placenta*, fibrin and old hemorrhage lie between the placental disc and the overlying sheer amniochorion. In contrast, with a *circumvallate placenta*, the chorionic plate periphery is a thickened, opaque, gray-white circular ridge composed of a double fold of chorion and amnion.

Sonographically, the circumvallate fold can be seen as a thick, linear band of echoes extending from one placental edge to the other. On cross section, however, it appears as two "shelves," with each lying above an opposing placental margin (see Fig. 6-2). This anatomy can help differentiate this shelf from other bands (Table 6-2).

In small observational studies of circumvallate placenta diagnosed postpartum, it was associated with increased risk for antepartum bleeding, abruption, fetal demise, and preterm birth (Suzuki, 2008; Taniguchi, 2014). In a prospective sonographic investigation of 17 cases, however, Shen and associates (2007a) found most circumvallate placentas to be transient. Persistent cases were benign. In general, most otherwise uncomplicated pregnancies with either type of extrachorial placentation have normal outcomes, and no increased surveillance is usually required.

CIRCULATORY DISTURBANCES

Functionally, placental perfusion disorders can be grouped into: (1) those in which maternal blood flow to or within the intervillous space is disrupted, and (2) those with disturbed fetal blood flow through the villi. These lesions are frequently identified in the normal, mature placenta. Although they can limit maximal placental blood flow, functional reserve within the placental prevents harm in most cases. Indeed, some estimate that up to 30 percent of placental villi can be lost without untoward fetal effects (Fox, 2007). If extensive, however, these lesions can profoundly limit fetal growth.

Lesions that disrupt perfusion are frequently seen grossly or sonographically, whereas smaller lesions are seen only histologically. With sonography, many of these, such as subchorionic fibrin deposition, perivillous fibrin deposition, and intervillous thrombosis, appear as focal sonolucencies within the placenta. Greater magnetic resonance (MR) imaging use in pregnancy has permitted detection and further characterization of these lesions (Bockoven, 2020; Capuani, 2017). Importantly, in the absence of maternal or fetal complications, small isolated placental sonolucencies are considered incidental findings.

TABLE 6-2. Sonographic Bands During Pregnancy

Condition	Sonographic Findings
Normal early chorioamnionic separation	Crescent-shaped amnion mirrors the chorion's curve; distinct from the fetus; fuses after 16 weeks' gestation
Subchorionic hematoma	Echogenic blood lies between the myometrium and chorioamnion, which appears as a thin band crossing the cavity. Hemorrhage and band resolve over time
Uterine synechiae (Amnionic sheet)	2.5- to 4.0-mm-thick, broad-based band crosses the cavity. Appears shelflike on cross section
Circumvallate placenta	Broad-based band extends from one placental edge to the other, just above the placental surface. Appears shelflike on cross section
Amnionic band	Thin strands cross and appear to tether fetal parts
Pseudoamnionic band syndrome	Thin strands tether fetal parts and form after fetoscopic surgeries or amniocenteses that are complicated by membrane laceration
Uterine septum	Chorioamnionic sac of an early pregnancy fills one horn of a septate or partial bicornuate uterus. Thick band of echoes, which may be wedge-shaped, extend from uterine fundus in midline
Membranes from vanishing twin	Depending on chorionicity either a thin amnion or thicker chorioamnion spans the cavity
Placental vessels supported by membranes: velamentous insertion, succenturiate lobe	With grayscale imaging, vessels appear as bands. Color Doppler will clarify (see Figs. 6-1 and 6-6)

Modified from Dashe, 2017; Lafitte, 2017.

■ Maternal Blood Flow Disruption

Subchorionic Fibrin Deposition

These collections are caused by slowing of maternal blood flow within the intervillous space. In the upper portion of this space near the chorionic plate, blood stasis is prominent and leads to subsequent fibrin deposition. In viewing the placental fetal surface, subchorionic lesions are seen as white or yellow, firm, round, elevated plaques just beneath the chorionic plate.

Perivillous Fibrin Deposition

Stasis of maternal blood flow around an individual villus also results in fibrin deposition and can lead to diminished villous oxygenation and necrosis of syncytiotrophoblast (Fig. 6-3). These small yellow-white placental nodules are grossly visible within the parenchyma of a sectioned placenta. Within limits, these reflect normal placental aging. Deposition that affects >25 percent of villi is associated with fetal-growth restriction and adverse neonatal outcomes (Devisme, 2017; Spinillo, 2019).

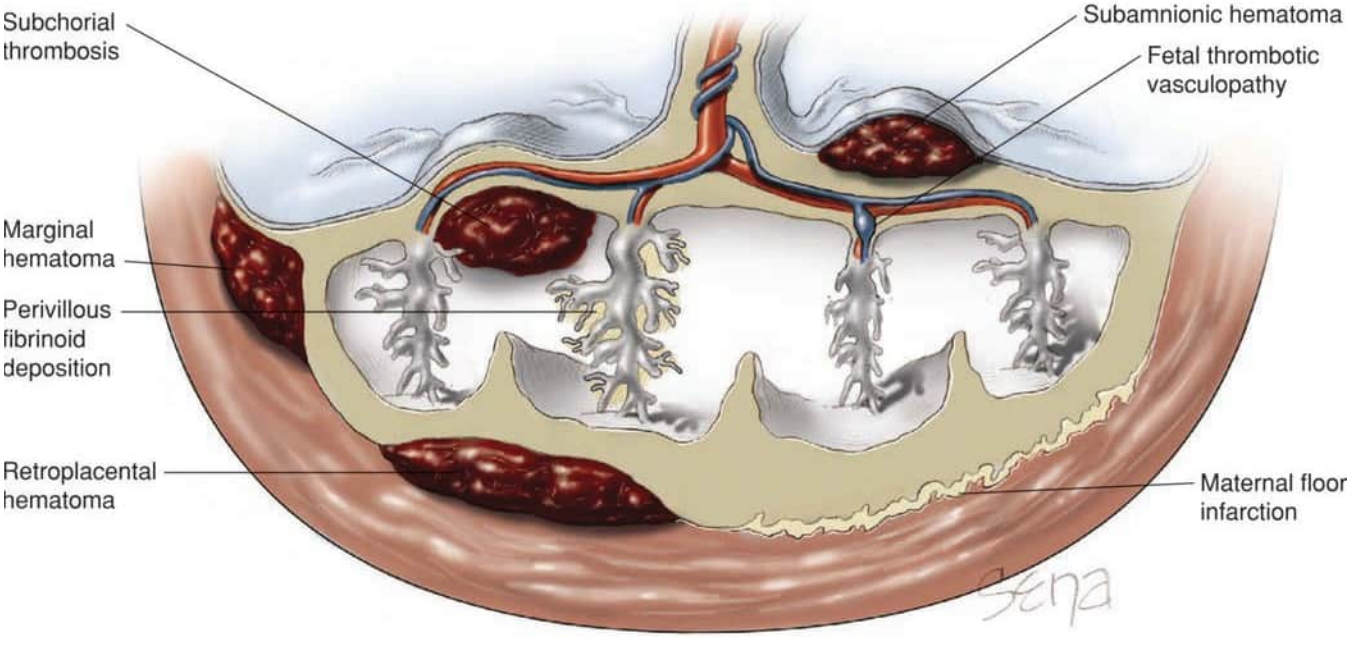


FIGURE 6-3 Potential sites of maternally and fetally related placental circulatory disturbances.

Maternal Floor Infarction. This extreme variant of perivillous fibrin deposition is a dense fibrinoid layer within the placental basal plate and is erroneously termed an infarction. *Maternal floor infarction* has a thick, yellow or white, firm corrugated surface that impedes normal maternal blood flow into the intervillous space. In specific cases that extend up and beyond the basal plate to entrap villi and obliterate the intervillous space, the term *massive perivillous fibrin deposition* is used. The etiopathogenesis is unclear, but maternal auto- or alloimmunity appears contributory (Faye-Peterson, 2018; Romero, 2013). Antiphospholipid antibody syndrome and angiogenic factors involved with preeclampsia also have been implicated (Sebire, 2002; Whitten, 2013).

These lesions are not reliably imaged with prenatal sonography, but they may create a thicker basal plate. Affected pregnancies are associated with miscarriage, fetal-growth restriction, preterm delivery, and stillbirth (Andres, 1990; Mandsager, 1994). Importantly, these adverse outcomes can recur in subsequent pregnancies.

Intervillous Thrombus

This is a collection of coagulated maternal blood normally found in the intervillous space mixed with fetal blood from a break in a villus. Grossly, these round or oval collections vary in size up to several centimeters. They appear red if recent or white-yellow if older, and they develop at any placental depth. Intervillous thrombi are common and typically not associated with adverse fetal sequelae. These reflect potential communication between maternal and fetal circulations, and thus large lesions are one cause of elevated maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein (MSAFP) levels (Table 17-5, p. 338). (Salafia, 1988).

Infarction

Chorionic villi themselves receive oxygen solely from maternal circulation and specifically from blood supplied into the intervillous space. Any uteroplacental disease that diminishes or obstructs this supply can result in infarction of an individual villus. These are common lesions in mature placentas and are benign in limited numbers. If numerous, however, placental insufficiency can develop. When they are thick, centrally located, and randomly distributed, they may be associated with preeclampsia or lupus anticoagulant.

Hematoma

The maternal–placental–fetal unit can develop several hematoma types. As depicted in Figure 6-3, these include: (1) *retroplacental hematoma*—formed between the placenta and its adjacent decidua; (2) *marginal hematoma*—formed between the chorion and decidua at the placental periphery—known clinically as *subchorionic hemorrhage*; (3) *subamnionic hematoma*—derived of fetal vessel origin and found beneath the amnion but above the chorionic plate, and (4) *subchorial thrombus* along the roof of the intervillous space and beneath the chorionic plate. With this last type, *massive subchorionic hematomas* are also known as *Breus moles.*

Sonographically, hematomas evolve with time and appear hyperechoic to isoechoic in the first week after hemorrhage, hypoechoic at 1 to 2 weeks, and finally, anechoic after 2 weeks. Most subchorionic hematomas visible sonographically are fairly small and of no clinical consequence (Naert, 2019). However, extensive retroplacental, marginal, and subchorial collections are associated with higher rates of miscarriage, stillbirth, placental abruption, and preterm delivery (Tuuli, 2011). In essence, placental abruption is a large, clinically significant retroplacental hematoma.

■ Fetal Blood Flow Disruption

Fetal Vascular Malperfusion

Placental lesions that arise from fetal circulatory disturbances are also depicted in Figure 6-3. Normally, deoxygenated fetal blood flows from the two umbilical arteries into arteries within the chorionic plate. These surface arteries divide and send branches out across the placental surface. These eventually supply individual stem villi. Remember that fetal blood is oxygenated within each villus by passive diffusion of oxygen from maternal blood contained within the intervillous space. Thus, with fetal vessel thrombosis, portions of the villus distal to the obstruction become nonfunctional. Normally, thrombi in limited numbers are found in mature placentas. If many villi are affected, which can be seen with preeclampsia, the fetus may suffer growth restriction, stillbirth, or nonreassuring fetal heart rate patterns (Chisholm, 2015; Lepais, 2014; Saleemuddin, 2010).

Villous Vascular Lesions

Villous capillaries show a spectrum of histological lesions. *Chorangiosis* describes an increased number of capillaries within terminal villi. Its definition requires ≥10 capillaries to be present in ≥10 villi in ≥10 fields viewed through a 10× lens (Altshuler, 1984). Clinically, long-standing hypoperfusion or hypoxia is thought to be causative (Stanek, 2016). *Focal chorangiosis* is increased capillary vascularity in a significant portion of the placenta but not diffusely. In one small study, lower Apgar scores and fetal vascular malperfusion were associated outcomes (Sung, 2019). Prenatal detection of chorangiosis has been reported (Inubashiri, 2017). *Chorangiomatosis* describes increased capillary number in stem villi, but terminal villi are spared. This finding has been linked with fetal-growth restriction and anomalies (Bagby, 2011). Despite these associations, the clinical significance of both vascular conditions remains unclear. *Chorioangiomas* are described subsequently.

Subamnionic Hematoma

As noted earlier, these hematomas lie between the chorionic plate and amnion. They most often are acute iatrogenic events of no clinical consequence during third-stage labor when cord traction ruptures a vessel near the cord insertion.

Large, chronic antepartum lesions may cause fetomaternal hemorrhage or fetal-growth restriction (Deans, 1998). They also may be confused with other placental masses such as chorioangioma. In most cases, color Doppler interrogation will show absent internal blood flow within a hematoma and permit differentiation (Sepulveda, 2000).

PLACENTAL CALCIFICATION

Calcium salts can be deposited throughout the placenta but are most common on the basal plate. Calcification accrues

with advancing gestation, and greater degrees are associated with smoking and higher maternal serum calcium levels (Bedir Findik, 2015). These hyperechoic deposits can easily be seen sonographically, and a grading scale from 0 to 3 reflects increasing calcification with increasing numerical grade (Grannum, 1979). Following this scheme, a grade 0 placenta is homogeneous, lacks calcification, and displays a smooth, flat chorionic plate. A grade 1 placenta has scattered echogenicities and subtle chorionic plate undulations. Grade 2 shows echogenic stippling at the basal plate. Large, echogenic comma shapes originate from an indented chorionic plate, but their curve falls short of the basal plate. Last, a grade 3 placenta has echogenic indentations extending from the chorionic plate to the basal plate, which create discrete components that resemble cotyledons. Basal plate densities also increase.

This grading scale poorly predicts neonatal outcome near term (McKenna, 2005; Mirza, 2018). However, data from two small studies link grade 3 placenta prior to 32 weeks with stillbirth and some other adverse pregnancy outcomes (Chen, 2011, 2015; Mirza, 2018).

PLACENTAL TUMORS

Chorioangioma

These benign tumors have components similar to the blood vessels and stroma of the chorionic villus. Also called chorangiomas, these placental tumors have an incidence that approximates 1 percent (Guschmann, 2003). In some cases, fetal-to-maternal hemorrhage across tumor capillaries leads to elevated levels of MSAFP. This typically prompts sonographic evaluation to exclude a neural-tube defect, which also shows high MSAFP levels. Sonographically, chorangiomas appear as a well-circumscribed, rounded, predominantly hypoechoic lesion lying near the chorionic plate and protruding into the amnionic cavity (Fig. 6-4). Documenting increased blood flow by color Doppler helps to distinguish these lesions from other placental masses such as hematoma, partial hydatidiform mole, teratoma, metastases, and leiomyoma (Prapas, 2000). Although rare, *chorangiocarcinoma* tumors mirror chorioangiomas clinically (Huang, 2015).

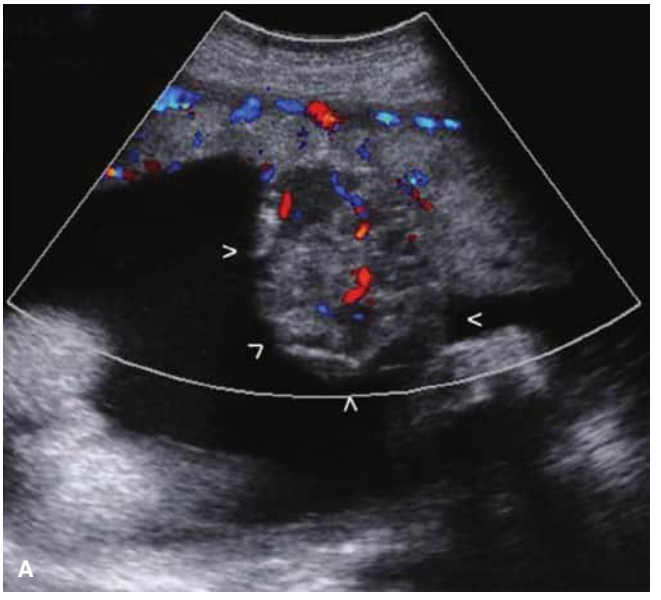
Small chorioangiomas are usually asymptomatic. Large tumors, typically those measuring >4 cm, can create significant arteriovenous shunting within the placenta to cause high-output heart failure, hydrops, and fetal death (Al Wattar, 2014). Compression or shearing of fetal erythrocytes within tumor vessels can lead to hemolysis and microangiopathic anemia (Bauer, 1978). Hydramnios, preterm delivery, and fetal-growth restriction are other sequelae (Dong, 2020). Large tumor size and fetal hydrops are the primary determinants and signal a potential adverse perinatal outcome (Buca, 2020).

Grayscale and color Doppler interrogation of the placenta and amnionic fluid volume are used to identify these tumors. Diagnostic tools that can affirm associated fetomaternal hemorrhage include MSAFP level and Kleihauer-Betke stain (Chap. 18, p. 358). With fetal concern, echocardiography assesses cardiac function, whereas middle cerebral artery interrogation is used to identify fetal anemia.

Several fetal therapies interfere with the vascular supply to the tumor and reverse fetal heart failure. At specialized perinatal centers, endoscopic laser ablation of feeder vessels to the tumor is most frequently used and is associated with favorable fetal outcomes (Hosseinzadeh, 2015). Discussed in Chapter 16, fetal transfusion can treat serious anemia, amnioreduction can temporize hydramnios, and digoxin therapy can assist fetal heart failure.

Metastatic Tumors

Maternal malignant tumors rarely metastasize to the placenta. Of those that do, melanomas, leukemias and lymphomas,



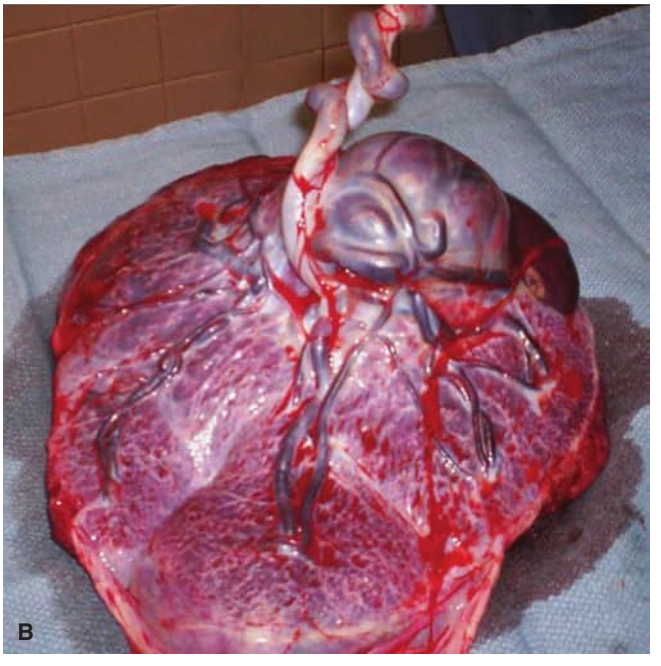


FIGURE 6-4 Placental chorioangioma. **A.** Color Doppler imaging displays blood flow through a large chorioangioma with its border outlined by white arrows. **B.** Grossly, the chorioangioma is a round, well-circumcised mass protruding from the fetal surface.

and breast cancer are the most common (Al-Adnani, 2007). Tumor cells usually are confined within the intervillous space. As a result, metastasis to the fetus is uncommon but is most often seen with melanoma (Alexander, 2003).

Similarly, cases in which fetal malignancy metastasizes to the placenta are rare (Reif, 2014). These are predominantly fetal neuroectodermal tumors, and only one case in the literature describes transplantation of tumor to the maternal uterus (Nath, 1995).

AMNIOCHORION

Chorioamnionitis

Normal genital-tract flora can colonize and infect the membranes, umbilical cord, and eventually the fetus. Bacteria most commonly ascend after prolonged membrane rupture and during labor to cause infection. Organisms initially infect the chorion and adjacent decidua in the area overlying the internal os. Subsequently, progression leads to full-thickness involvement of the membranes—chorioamnionitis. Organisms often then spread along the chorioamnionic surface to colonize and replicate in amnionic fluid. Inflammation of the chorionic plate and of the umbilical cord—*funisitis*—may follow (Kim, 2015; Redline, 2012).

Most commonly, chorioamnionitis is microscopic or occult and caused by a wide variety of microorganisms. This is frequently cited as a possible explanation for many otherwise unexplained cases of ruptured membranes, preterm labor, or both (Chap. 45, p. 789). In some cases, gross infection is characterized by visible membrane clouding and is sometimes accompanied by a foul odor that depends on bacterial species.

Other Membrane Abnormalities

Amnion nodosum is a condition characterized by numerous small, light-tan nodules affixed to the amnion that overlies the chorionic plate. These may be scraped off the fetal surface and contain deposits of fetal squames and fibrin that reflect prolonged and severe oligohydramnios (Adeniran, 2007).

Two notable bands can be formed by the fetal membranes. First, *amnionic band sequence* is an anatomical disruption sequence in which amnion bands tether, constrict, or amputate fetal parts. Bands may form spontaneously or follow fetal surgery procedures (see Table 6-2) (Lafitte, 2017). Amnionic bands commonly cause limb-reduction defects, facial clefts, or encephalocele (Barzilay, 2015; Guzmán-Huerta, 2013). Umbilical cord compromise is another sequela (Barros, 2014). Severe defects of the spine or ventral wall that accompany amnionic bands suggest a *limb-body wall complex*, described in Chapter 15 (p. 297).

Sonography often first identifies the sequelae of this sequence rather than the bands themselves. As with any fetal anomaly, targeted sonography is indicated. Identification of a limb-reduction defect, an encephalocele in an atypical location, or an extremity with edema or positional deformity should prompt careful evaluation for amnionic bands.

Management depends on the degree of anatomic deformity (Society of Maternal–Fetal Medicine, 2019). Fetoscopic laser interruption of the band may be suitable in highly selected antepartum cases (Gueneuc, 2019; Javadian, 2013).

Second, an *amnionic sheet* in contrast is formed by normal amniochorion draped over a preexisting uterine synechia. Generally, these sheets pose little fetal risk, although slightly higher rates of preterm membrane rupture and placental abruption have been described (Nelson, 2010; Tuuli, 2012).

UMBILICAL CORD

Length

Most umbilical cords at delivery measure 40 to 70 cm long, and very few measure <30 cm or >100 cm. Cord length is influenced positively by both maternal parity and body mass index (Linde, 2018). In retrospective studies, short cords have been linked with congenital malformations and intrapartum distress (Krakowiak, 2004; Linde, 2018; Yamamoto, 2016). Excessively long cords are linked with cord entanglement or prolapse and with fetal anomalies (Olaya-C, 2015; Rayburn, 1981).

Because antenatal determination of cord length is technically limited, cord diameter has been evaluated as a predictive marker for fetal outcomes. Some have linked lean cords with poor fetal growth and large-diameter cords with macrosomia (Proctor, 2013). However, the clinical utility of this parameter is still unclear (Cromi, 2007; Raio, 2003).

Coiling

Cord coiling characteristics are not currently part of standard sonographic evaluation. Usually the umbilical vessels spiral through the cord in a sinistral, that is, left-twisting direction (Fletcher, 1993; Lacro, 1987). The number of complete coils per centimeter of cord length is termed the *umbilical coiling index—UCI* (Strong, 1994). A normal, antepartum, sonographically derived UCI is 0.4, and this contrasts with a normal, postpartum, physically measured value of 0.2 (Sebire, 2007). UCIs <10th percentile are considered *hypocoiled,* and those >90th percentile are *hypercoiled*.

Clinically, the significance of coiling extremes is controversial. Some studies evaluating large, unselected cohorts find no associations between UCI values and poor neonatal outcome (Jessop, 2014; Pathak, 2010). In others, extremes are linked with various adverse outcomes but most consistently with intrapartum fetal heart rate abnormalities, preterm labor, or fetal-growth restriction (Chitra, 2012; de Laat, 2006; Pergialiotis, 2019).

Vessel Number

Counting cord vessel number is a standard component of anatomical evaluation during fetal sonographic examination and immediately after delivery (Fig. 6-5). Embryos initially have two umbilical veins. In the first trimester, the right vein typically atrophies to leave one large vein to accompany the two, thick-walled umbilical arteries. Four-vessel cords are rare and often associated with congenital anomalies (Puvabanditsin,

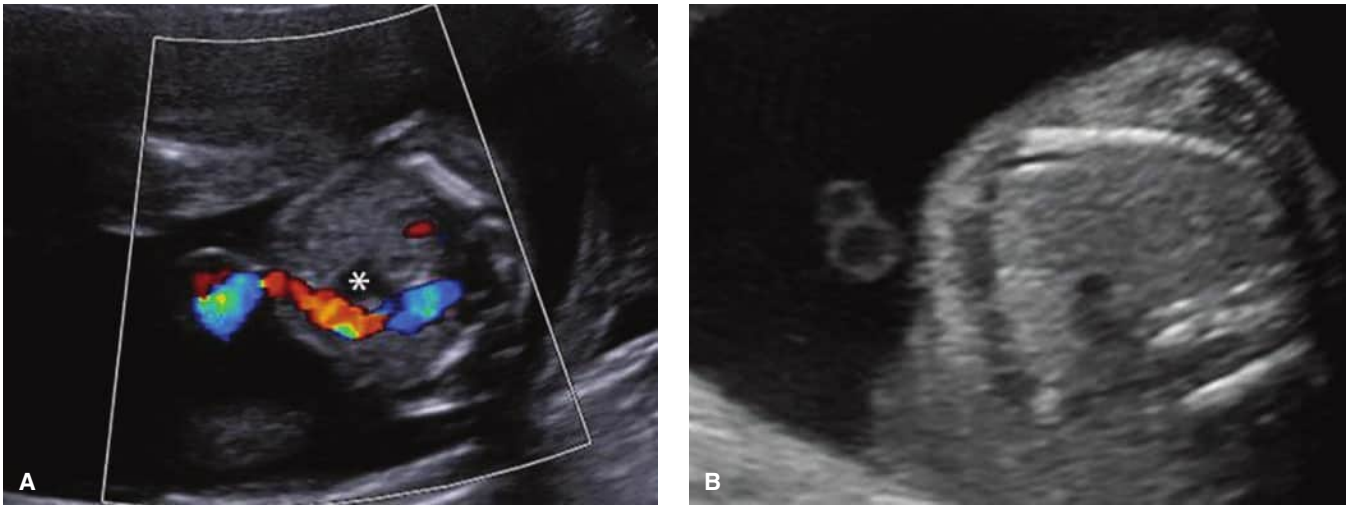


FIGURE 6-5 Two umbilical arteries are typically documented sonographically in the second trimester. They encircle the fetal bladder (*asterisk*) as extensions of the superior vesical arteries. **A.** In this color Doppler sonographic image, a single umbilical artery, shown in red, runs along the bladder wall before joining the umbilical vein (blue) in the cord. Remember with color Doppler that color signifies only blood flow direction relative to the transducer. **B.** A cross section of a floating cord segment shows the two vessels of the cord. The smaller circle is the single umbilical artery and the larger circle, the umbilical vein.

2011). If it is an isolated finding, however, prognosis can be good (Avnet, 2011).

The most common aberration is that of a single umbilical artery (SUA). Its cited incidence is 0.63 percent in liveborn neonates, 1.92 percent in perinatal deaths, and 3 percent in twins (Heifetz, 1984). Fetuses with major malformations frequently have an SUA. Thus, its identification often prompts consideration for targeted sonography and possibly fetal echocardiography. The most frequent anomalies are cardiovascular and genitourinary (Hua, 2010; Murphy-Kaulbeck, 2010). In an anomalous fetus, an SUA greatly increases the aneuploidy risk, and amniocentesis is recommended for karyotype assessment (Dagklis, 2010).

If targeted sonography finds otherwise normal anatomy, an isolated SUA in an otherwise low-risk pregnancy does not significantly raise the fetal aneuploidy risk. However, as an isolated finding, it has been associated with fetal-growth restriction and perinatal death in some but not all studies (Chetty-John, 2010; Ebbing, 2019; Voskamp, 2013). Thus, clinical monitoring of growth is reasonable, but the value of sonographic surveillance is unclear.

In contrast, a fused umbilical artery with a shared lumen is rare. It arises from failure of the two arteries to split during embryological development. The common lumen may extend through the entire cord, but, if partial, it is typically found near the placental insertion site (Yamada, 2005). In one report, these malformations were associated with a higher incidence of marginal or velamentous cord insertion but not of congenital fetal anomalies (Fujikura, 2003).

Found in most placentas, the *Hyrtl anastomosis* is a connection between the two umbilical arteries, and it lies near the cord's insertion into the placenta. This anastomosis acts physiologically to equalize pressures between the arteries (Gordon, 2007). The resulting redistribution of pressure gradients and blood flow improves placental perfusion, especially during uterine contractions or during compression of one umbilical artery. Fetuses with an SUA lack this safety valve (Raio, 1999, 2001).

Remnants and Cysts

Several structures are housed in the umbilical cord during fetal development, and their remnants may be seen when the mature cord is inspected transversely. Indeed, in grossly sectioned cords, remnants of the allantoic duct, vitelline duct, and embryonic vessels are found in 25 to 50 percent (Grottling, 2019; Jauniaux, 1989). These are not associated with congenital malformations or perinatal complications.

Cysts occasionally are found along the course of the cord. They are designated according to their origin. *True cysts* are epithelium-lined remnants of the allantoic or vitelline ducts and tend to be located closer to the fetal insertion site. In contrast, the more common *pseudocysts* form from local degeneration of Wharton jelly and occur anywhere along the cord. Both have a similar sonographic appearance. Single umbilical cord cysts identified in the first trimester tend to resolve completely, however, multiple cysts may portend miscarriage or aneuploidy (Ghezzi, 2003; Hannaford, 2013). Cysts persisting beyond this time are associated with a risk for structural defects and chromosomal anomalies (Bonilla, 2010; Zangen, 2010).

Insertion

The cord normally inserts centrally into the placental disc, but eccentric, marginal, or velamentous insertions are variants. Of these, eccentric insertions in general pose no identifiable fetal risk. Marginal insertion is a common variant—sometimes referred to as a *battledore placenta*—in which the cord anchors at the placental margin. In one population-based study, the rate was 6 percent in singleton gestations and 11 percent in twins (Ebbing, 2013). This common insertion variant rarely causes problems, but it and velamentous insertion occasionally result in the cord being pulled off during delivery of the placenta (Ebbing, 2015; Luo, 2013). In monochorionic twins, marginal insertion may be associated with weight discordance (Kent, 2011).

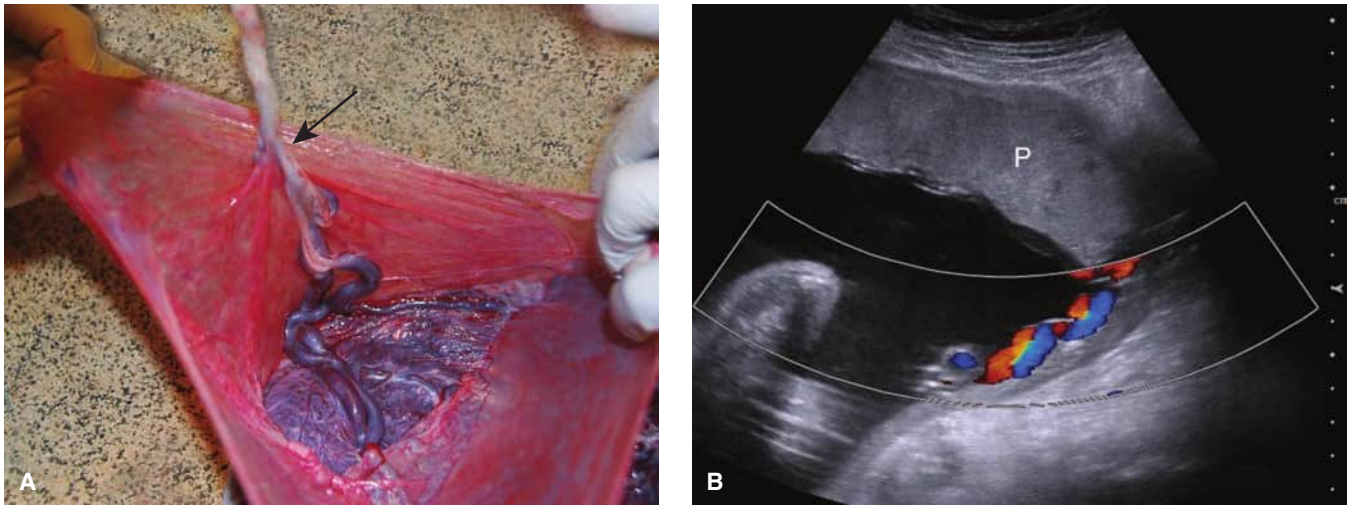


FIGURE 6-6 Velamentous cord insertion. **A.** The umbilical cord inserts into the membranes (*arrow*). From here, the cord vessels branch and are supported only by membrane until they reach the placental disc. **B.** When viewed sonographically and using color Doppler, the cord vessels appear to lie against the myometrium as they travel to insert into the margin of the placental disc (*P*).

With velamentous insertion, the umbilical vessels characteristically travel within the membranes before reaching the placental margin (Fig. 6-6). The incidence of velamentous insertion approximates 1 percent but is 6 percent with twins (Ebbing, 2013). It is more commonly seen with placenta previa (Papinniemi, 2007; Räisänen, 2012). Antenatal diagnosis is possible sonographically, and cord vessels are seen traveling along the uterine wall before entering the placental disc. Clinically, vessels are vulnerable to compression, which may lead to fetal hypoperfusion and acidemia. Higher associated rates of low Apgar scores, stillbirth, preterm delivery, and small for gestational age have been noted (de Los Reyes, 2018; Ebbing, 2017; Esakoff, 2015; Vahanian, 2015). Accordingly, monitoring of fetal growth is reasonable either clinically or sonographically (Vintzileos, 2015).

Last, with the rare furcate insertion, umbilical vessels lose their protective Wharton jelly shortly before they insert. As a result, they are covered only by an amnion sheath and prone to compression, twisting, and thrombosis.

Vasa Previa

With this condition, vessels travel within the membranes and overlie the cervical os. There, they can be torn with cervical dilation or membrane rupture, and laceration can lead to rapid fetal exsanguination. Over the cervix, vessels can also be compressed by a presenting fetal part (Matsuzaki, 2019). Vasa previa may be more common than previously estimated, and rates are 1 case in 338 to 365 pregnancies (Hasegawa, 2012; Klahr, 2019). Vasa previa is classified as type 1, in which vessels are part of a velamentous cord insertion, and type 2, in which involved vessels span between portions of a bilobate or a succenturiate placenta (Catanzarite, 2001). Two other risks are conception with in vitro fertilization and second-trimester placenta previa, with or without later migration (Baulies, 2007; Schachter, 2003).

Compared with intrapartum diagnosis, antepartum diagnosis greatly improves the perinatal survival rate, which ranges from 97 to 100 percent (Oyelese, 2004; Swank, 2016; Zhang, 2021). Thus, vasa previa is ideally identified early, although this is not always possible. Effective screening for vasa previa begins during scheduled midtrimester sonographic examination. In suspicious cases, transvaginal sonography is added and shows cord vessels inserting into the membranes and vessels running above the cervical internal os (Fig. 6-7). Routine color Doppler interrogation of the placental cord insertion site, particularly in cases of placenta previa or low-lying placenta, may aid its detection. With this, the vessel waveform reflects the fetal heart rate. In one systematic review, the median prenatal detection rate was 93 percent (Ruiter, 2015).

Once vasa previa is identified, subsequent imaging is reasonable because up to 39 percent of cases ultimately resolve (Erfani, 2019; Klahr, 2019). Bed rest apparently has no added advantage. Antenatal corticosteroids can be provided as indicated or given prophylactically at 28 to 32 weeks' gestation to cover possible urgent preterm delivery. Antenatal hospitalization may be considered at 30 to 34 weeks to permit surveillance and expedited delivery for labor, bleeding, or rupture of membranes. Data supporting this are limited, and admission may best serve women with risk factors that portend early delivery (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2015). A few cases of antepartum fetoscopic surgery with vessel laser ablation are described (Hosseinzadeh, 2015; Johnston, 2014). However, current practice is early scheduled cesarean delivery. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021) recommends cesarean delivery at 34 to 36 weeks' gestation.

At delivery, the fetus is expeditiously delivered after the hysterotomy incision in case a vessel is lacerated during uterine entry. Delayed cord clamping is not encouraged.

In all pregnancies, otherwise unexplained vaginal bleeding either antepartum or intrapartum should prompt consideration of vasa previa and a lacerated fetal vessel. In many cases, bleeding is rapidly fatal, and neonatal salvage is not possible. With less hemorrhage, however, it may be possible to distinguish fetal versus maternal bleeding. Various tests can be used, and

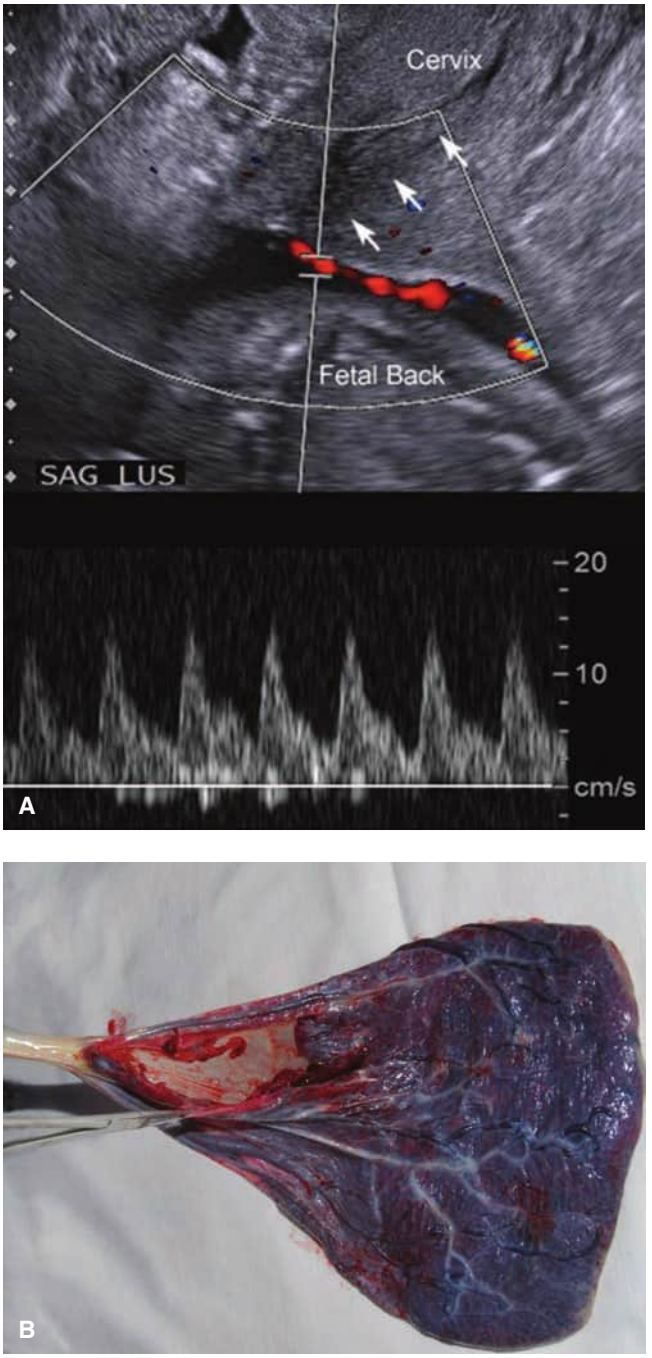


FIGURE 6-7 Vasa previa. **A.** Using color Doppler, an umbilical vessel (*red linear structure*) is seen overlying the internal os and cervical canal (*arrows*). At the bottom, the Doppler waveform seen with this vasa previa has the typical appearance of an umbilical artery. **B.** The amniotomy site (*held open by hemostat*), which was created at the time of cesarean hysterotomy, illustrates how fetal vessels may be lacerated and why fetal delivery should be prompt (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Julie Lo.)

each relies on the increased resistance of fetal hemoglobin to denaturing by alkaline or acid reagents (Odunsi, 1996).

Knots, Strictures, and Loops

Various mechanical abnormalities in the cord can impede blood flow and sometimes cause fetal harm. Of these, *true knots* are found in approximately 1 percent of births. These form from fetal movement, and associated risks include hydramnios and diabetes mellitus (Hershkovitz, 2001; Räisänen, 2013). Knots are especially common and dangerous in monoamnionic twins, which are discussed in Chapter 48 (p. 845). In singleton fetuses, the stillbirth risk is increased four- to tenfold compared with those without knots (Airas, 2002; Sørnes, 2000).

Knots can be found incidentally during antepartum sonography, and a "hanging noose" sign is suggestive (Ramon y Cajal, 2006). Three-dimensional and color Doppler aid diagnostic accuracy (Hasbun, 2007). With these knots, optimal fetal surveillance is unclear but may include umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry, nonstress testing, or subjective fetal movement monitoring (Rodriguez, 2012). Allowing vaginal delivery is suitable, and intrapartum fetal heart rate tracings do not differ from unaffected pregnancies (Carter, 2018). In these cases, cesarean delivery rates are not increased and cord blood acid-base values are usually normal (Airas, 2002; Maher, 1996).

In contrast, *false knots* form from focal redundancy and folding of an umbilical cord vessel rather than knotting. These lack clinical significance.

A cord stricture is a focal narrowing of the diameter that usually develops near the fetal cord insertion site (Peng, 2006). Pathological features typically include absent Wharton jelly at the narrowed segment and obliteration of cord vessels (Sun, 1995). In most instances, the fetus is stillborn (French, 2005). Even less common is a cord stricture caused by an amnionic band.

Cord loops are frequently encountered and are caused by coiling around various fetal parts during movement. A cord around the neck—a *nuchal cord*—is common, and vaginal delivery is suitable. One loop is reported in 20 to 34 percent of deliveries; two loops in 2.5 to 5 percent; and three loops in 0.2 to 0.5 percent (Kan, 1957; Sørnes, 1995; Spellacy, 1966). During labor, up to 20 percent of fetuses with a nuchal cord have moderate to severe variable heart rate decelerations, and these are associated with a lower umbilical artery pH (Hankins, 1987). Decelerations are not relieved by amnioinfusion (Spong, 1996). Cords wrapped around the body can have similar effects (Kobayashi, 2015). Despite their frequency, nuchal cords are not associated with greater rates of adverse perinatal outcome (Henry, 2013; Masad, 2019).

Last, in a *funic presentation,* the umbilical cord is the presenting part. These are uncommon and most often are associated with fetal malpresentation (Kinugasa, 2007). A funic presentation in some cases is identified with placental sonography and color flow Doppler (Ezra, 2003). Overt or occult cord prolapse can complicate labor. Thus, once identified at term, cesarean delivery is typically recommended.

Vascular

Cord hematomas are rare and generally follow rupture of an umbilical vessel, usually the vein, and hemorrhage into the Wharton jelly. Hematomas have been associated with abnormal cord length, umbilical vessel aneurysm, trauma, entanglement, umbilical vessel venipuncture, and funisitis (Gualandri, 2008). Most are identified postpartum, but hematomas are recognized

sonographically as hypoechoic masses that lack blood flow (Chou, 2003). Sequelae include stillbirth or intrapartum abnormal fetal heart rate pattern (Abraham, 2015; Barbati, 2009; Sepulveda, 2005; Towers, 2009). However, case reports have described normal outcomes (Sanchex-Codez, 2018).

Umbilical cord vessel thromboses are rare in utero events and seldom diagnosed antepartum. Approximately 70 percent are venous, 20 percent are venous and arterial, and 10 percent are arterial thromboses (Heifetz, 1988). These all have high associated rates of stillbirth, fetal-growth restriction, and intrapartum fetal distress (Minakami, 2001; Sato, 2006; Shilling, 2014). If these are identified antepartum as hypoechoic masses without blood flow, data from case reports support consideration of prompt delivery of viable-aged fetuses (Kanenishi, 2013).

An *umbilical vein varix* can complicate either the intraamnionic or fetal intraabdominal portion of the umbilical vein. Sonographically and complemented by color Doppler, rare intraamnionic varices show cystic dilation of the umbilical vein that is contiguous with a normal-caliber portion. Of complications, an intraamnionic varix may compress an adjacent umbilical artery or can rupture or thrombose. A systematic review of 250 cases found that approximately one fifth is associated with other anomalies. Isolated cases had reassuring outcomes but typically required antenatal surveillance (di Pasquo, 2018).

The rare *umbilical artery aneurysm* is caused by congenital thinning of the vessel wall with diminished support from Wharton jelly. Indeed, most form at or near the cord's placental insertion site, where this support is absent. These are associated with SUA, trisomy 18, amnionic fluid volume extremes, fetal-growth restriction, and stillbirth (Hill, 2010; Vyas, 2016). At least theoretically, these aneurysms could cause fetal compromise and death by compression of the umbilical vein. With aneurysms measuring >5 cm, the blood reservoir within the aneurysm may pose a risk for high-output heart failure (Matsuki, 2017). These aneurysms may appear sonographically as a cyst with a hyperechoic rim. Within the aneurysm, color flow and spectral Doppler interrogation demonstrate either low-velocity or turbulent nonpulsatile flow (Olog, 2011; Shen, 2007b). Although not codified, management may include fetal karyotyping, antenatal fetal surveillance, and early delivery to prevent stillbirth (Doehrman, 2014). Some recommend delivery by cesarean to avoid aneurysm rupture.

REFERENCES

Abraham A, Rathore S, Gupta M, et al: Umbilical cord haematoma causing still birth—a case report. J Clin Diagn Res 9(12):QD01, 2015

Adeniran AJ, Stanek J: Amnion nodosum revisited: clinicopathologic and placental correlations. Arch Pathol Lab Med 131:1829, 2007

Airas U, Heinonen S: Clinical significance of true umbilical knots: a population-based analysis. Am J Perinatol 19:127, 2002

AIUM-ACR-ACOG-SMFM-SRU Practice parameter for the performance of standard diagnostic obstetric ultrasound examinations. J Ultrasound Med 37(11):e13, 2018

Al-Adnani M, Kiho L, Scheimberg I: Maternal pancreatic carcinoma metastatic to the placenta: a case report and literature review. Pediatr Dev Pathol 10:61, 2007

Alexander A, Samlowski WE, Grossman D, et al: Metastatic melanoma in pregnancy: risk of transplacental metastases in the infant. J Clin Oncol 21:2179, 2003

Altshuler G: Chorangiosis: an important placental sign of neonatal morbidity and mortality. Arch Pathol Lab Med 108(1):71, 1984

Al Wattar BH, Hillman SC, Marton T, et al: Placenta chorioangioma: a rare case and systematic review of literature. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 27(10):1055, 2014

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Medically indicated late-preterm and early-term deliveries. Committee Opinion No. 831, June 2021

Andres RL, Kuyper W, Resnik R, et al: The association of maternal floor infarction of the placenta with adverse perinatal outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 163:935, 1990

Avnet H, Shen O, Mazaki E, et al: Four-vessel umbilical cord. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 38:604, 2011

Bagby C, Redline RW: Multifocal chorangiomatosis. Pediatr Dev Pathol 14(1):38, 2011

Barbati A, Cacace MG, Fratini D, et al: Umbilical cord haematoma with altered fetal heart rate. J Obstet Gynaecol 29(2):150, 2009

Barros M, Gorgal G, Machado AP, et al: Revisiting amniotic band sequence: a wide spectrum of manifestations. Fetal Diagn Ther 35(1):51, 2014

Barzilay E, Harel Y, Haas J, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of amniotic band syndrome—risk factors and ultrasonic signs. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 28(3):281, 2015

Bauer CR, Fojaco RM, Bancalari E, et al: Microangiopathic hemolytic anemia and thrombocytopenia in a neonate associated with a large placental chorioangioma. Pediatrics 62(4):574, 1978

Baulies S, Maiz N, Muñoz A, et al: Prenatal ultrasound diagnosis of vasa praevia and analysis of risk factors. Prenat Diagn 27:595, 2007

Bedir Findik R, Ersoy AO, Fidanci V, et al: Vitamin D deficiency and placental calcification in low-risk obstetric population: are they related? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(19):3189, 2015

Benirschke K, Burton GJ, Baergen R: Pathology of the Human Placenta, 6th ed. New York, Springer, 2012, p 908

Bockoven C, Gastfield RD, Victor T, et al: Correlation of placental magnetic resonance imaging with histopathologic diagnosis: detection of aberrations in structure and water diffusivity. Pediatr Dev Pathol 23(4):260, 2020

Bonilla F Jr, Raga F, Villalaiz E, et al: Umbilical cord cysts: evaluation with different 3-dimensional sonographic modes. J Ultrasound Med 29(2):281, 2010

Buca D, Iacovlla C, Khlil A, et al: Perinatal outcome of pregnancies complicated by placental chorioangioma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 55(4):441, 2020

Capuani S, Guerreri M, Antonelli A, et al: Diffusion and perfusion quantified by magnetic resonance imaging are markers of human placenta development in normal pregnancy. Placenta 58:33, 2017

Carter EB, Chu CS, Thompson Z, et al: True knot at the time of delivery: electronic fetal monitoring characteristics and neonatal outcomes. J Perinatol 38(12):1620, 2018

Catanzarite V, Maida C, Thomas W, et al: Prenatal sonographic diagnosis of vasa previa: ultrasound findings and obstetric outcome in ten cases. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 18:109, 2001

Chen KH, Chen LR, Lee YH: Exploring the relationship between preterm placental calcification and adverse maternal and fetal outcome. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 37(3):328, 2011

Chen KH, Seow KM, Chen LR: The role of preterm placental calcification on assessing risks of stillbirth. Placenta 36(9):1039, 2015

Chetty-John S, Zhang J, Chen Z, et al: Long-term physical and neurologic development in newborn infants with isolated single umbilical artery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203(4):368.e1, 2010

Chisholm KM, Heerema-McKenney A: Fetal thrombotic vasculopathy: significance in live born children using proposed society for pediatric pathology diagnostic criteria. Am J Surg Pathol 39(2):274, 2015

Chitra T, Sushanth YS, Raghavan S: Umbilical coiling index as a marker of perinatal outcome: an analytical study. Obstet Gynecol Int 2012:213689, 2012

Chou SY, Chen YR, Wu CF, et al: Spontaneous umbilical cord hematoma diagnosed antenatally with ultrasonography. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 82(11):1056, 2003

Costanzo V, Bardelli A, Siena S, et al: Exploring the links between cancer and placenta development. Open Biol 8(6): 180081, 2018

Cromi A, Ghezzi F, Di Naro E, et al: Large cross-sectional area of the umbilical cord as a predictor of fetal macrosomia. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 30:804, 2007

Dagklis T, Defigueiredo D, Staboulidou I, et al: Isolated single umbilical artery and fetal karyotype. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 36(3):291, 2010

Dashe JS, Hoffman BL: Placental abnormalities. D'Alton (ed): Ultrasonography in Obstetrics and Gynecology, 6th ed. Philadelphia, Elsevier, 2017

Deans A, Jauniaux E: Prenatal diagnosis and outcome of subamniotic hematomas. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 11:319, 1998

de Laat MW, Franx A, Bots ML, et al: Umbilical coiling index in normal and complicated pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 107:1049, 2006

de Los Reyes S, Henderson J, Eke AC. A systematic review and meta-analysis of velamentous cord insertion among singleton pregnancies and the risk of preterm delivery. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 142(1):9, 2018

Devisme L, Chauvière C, Franquet-Ansart H, et al: Perinatal outcome of placental massive perivillous fibrin deposition: a case-control study. Prenat Diagn 37(4):323, 2017

di Pasquo E, Kuleva M, O'Gorman N, et al: Fetal intra-abdominal umbilical vein varix: retrospective cohort study and systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 51(5):580, 2018

Doehrman P, Derksen BJ, Perlow JH, et al: Umbilical artery aneurysm: a case report, literature review, and management recommendations. Obstet Gynecol Surv 69(3):159, 2014

Dong T, Sher D, Luo Q: Pregnancy complications and adverse outcomes in placental chorioangioma: a retrospective cohort analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(13):2269, 2020

Ebbing C, Johnsen SL, Albrechtsen S, et al: Velamentous or marginal cord insertion and the risk of spontaneous preterm birth, prelabor rupture of the membranes, and anomalous cord length, a population-based study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 96(1):78, 2017

Ebbing C, Kiserud T, Johnsen SL, et al: Prevalence, risk factors and outcomes of velamentous and marginal cord insertions: a population-based study of 634,741 pregnancies. PLoS One 8(7):e70380, 2013

Ebbing C, Kessler J, Moster D, et al: Isolated single umbilical artery and the risk of adverse perinatal outcome and third stage of labor complications: a population-based study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(3):374, 2020

Ebbing C, Kiserud T, Johnsen SL, et al: Third stage of labor risks in velamentous and marginal cord insertion: a population-based study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 94(8):878, 2015

Erfani H, Haeri S, Shainker SA, et al: Vasa previa: a multicenter retrospective cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(6):644.e1, 2019

Esakoff TF, Cheng YW, Snowden JM, et al: Velamentous cord insertion: is it associated with adverse perinatal outcomes? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 28(4):409, 2015

Ezra Y, Strasberg SR, Farine D: Does cord presentation on ultrasound predict cord prolapse? Gynecol Obstet Invest 56:6, 2003

Faye-Petersen O, Sauder A, Estrella Y, et al: Dichorionic twins discordant for massive perivillous fibrinoid deposition: report of a case and review of the literature. Int J Surg Pathol 26(1):41, 2018

Faye-Petersen OM, Heller DS, Joshi VV: Handbook of Placental Pathology, 2nd ed. London, Taylor & Francis, 2006, pp 27, 83

Fletcher S: Chirality in the umbilical cord. BJOG 100(3):234, 1993

Fox H, Sebire NJ: Pathology of the Placenta, 3rd ed. Philadelphia, Saunders, 2007, pp 99, 133, 484

French AE, Gregg VH, Newberry Y, et al: Umbilical cord stricture: a cause of recurrent fetal death. Obstet Gynecol 105:1235, 2005

Fujikura T: Fused umbilical arteries near placental cord insertion. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:765, 2003

Ghezzi F, Raio L, Di Naro E, et al: Single and multiple umbilical cord cysts in early gestation: two different entities. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 21:213, 2003

Gordon Z, Eytan O, Jaffa AJ, et al: Hemodynamic analysis of Hyrtl anastomosis in human placenta. Am J Physiol Regul Integra Comp Physiol 292:R977, 2007

Grannum PA, Berkowitz RL, Hobbins JC: The ultrasonic changes in the maturing placenta and their relation to fetal pulmonic maturity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 133:915, 1979

Grottling E, Gisselsson D: Changes in the prevalence of embryologic remnants in umbilical cord with gestational age. Pediatr Dev Pathol 22(4):288, 2019

Gualandri G, Rivasi F, Santunione AL, et al: Spontaneous umbilical cord hematoma: an unusual cause of fetal mortality: a report of 3 cases and review of the literature. Am J Forensic Med Pathol 29(2):185, 2008

Gueneuc A, Chalouhi GE, Borali D, et al: Fetoscopic release of amniotic bands causing limb constriction: case series and review of the literature. Fetal Diagn Ther 46(4):246, 2019

Guschmann M, Henrich W, Entezami M, et al: Chorioangioma—new insights into a well-known problem. I. Results of a clinical and morphological study of 136 cases. J Perinat Med 31:163, 2003

Guttmacher AE, Maddox YT, Spong CY: The Human Placenta Project: placental structure, development, and function in real time. Placenta 35(5):303, 2014

Guzmán-Huerta ME, Muro-Barragán SA, Acevedo-Gallegos S, et al: Amniotic band sequence: prenatal diagnosis, phenotype descriptions, and a proposal of a new classification based on morphologic findings. Rev Invest Clin 65(4):300, 2013

Hankins GD, Snyder RR, Hauth JC, et al: Nuchal cords and neonatal outcome. Obstet Gynecol 70:687, 1987

Hannaford K, Reeves S, Wegner E: Umbilical cord cysts in the first trimester: are they associated with pregnancy complications? J Ultrasound Med 32(5):801, 2013

Hasbun J, Alcalde JL, Sepulveda W: Three-dimensional power Doppler sonography in the prenatal diagnosis of a true knot of the umbilical cord: value and limitations. J Ultrasound Med 26(9):1215, 2007

Hasegawa J, Nakamura M, Ichizuka K, et al: Vasa previa is not infrequent. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(12):2795, 2012

Heifetz SA: Single umbilical artery: a statistical analysis of 237 autopsy cases and a review of the literature. Perspect Pediatr Pathol 8:345, 1984

Heifetz SA: Thrombosis of the umbilical cord: analysis of 52 cases and literature review. Pediatr Pathol 8:37, 1988

Henry E, Andres RL, Christensen RD: Neonatal outcomes following a tight nuchal cord. J Perinatol 33(3):231, 2013

Hershkovitz R, Silberstein T, Sheiner E, et al: Risk factors associated with true knots of the umbilical cord. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 98(1):36, 2001

Hill AJ, Strong TH Jr, Elliott JP, et al: Umbilical artery aneurysm. Obstet Gynecol 116(Suppl 2):559, 2010

Hoddick WK, Mahony BS, Callen PW, et al: Placental thickness. J Ultrasound Med 4(9):479, 1985

Hosseinzadeh P, Shamshirsaz AA, Cass DL, et al: Fetoscopic laser ablation of vasa previa for a fetus with a giant cervical lymphatic malformation. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 46(4):507, 2015

Hua M, Odibo AO, Macones GA, et al: Single umbilical artery and its associated findings. Obstet Gynecol 115(5):930, 2010

Huang B, Zhang YP, Yuan DF, et al: Chorangiocarcinoma: a case report and clinical review. Int J Clin Exp Med 8(9):16798, 2015

Inubashiri E, Watanabe Y, Akutagawa N, et al: Preliminary experience using three-dimensional HD live-rendered images for antenatal diagnosis in placental chorangiosis. Taiwan J Obstet Gynecol 56(1):106, 2017

Jauniaux E, De Munter C, Vanesse M, et al: Embryonic remnants of the umbilical cord: morphologic and clinical aspects. Hum Pathol 20(5):458, 1989

Javadian P, Shamshirsaz AA, Haeri S, et al: Perinatal outcome after fetoscopic release of amniotic bands: a single-center experience and review of the literature. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 42(4):449, 2013

Jessop FA, Lees CC, Pathak S, et al: Umbilical cord coiling: clinical outcomes in an unselected population and systematic review. Virchows Arch 464(1):105, 2014

Johnston R, Shrivastava VK, Chmait RH: Term vaginal delivery following fetoscopic laser photocoagulation of type II vasa previa. Fetal Diagn Ther 35(1):62, 2014

Kan PS, Eastman NJ: Coiling of the umbilical cord around the foetal neck. BJOG 64:227, 1957

Kanenishi K, Nitta E, Mashima M, et al: HDlive imaging of intra-amniotic umbilical vein varix with thrombosis. Placenta 34(11):1110, 2013

Kent EM, Breathnach FM, Gillan JE, et al: Placental cord insertion and birthweight discordance in twin pregnancies: results of the national prospective ESPRiT Study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(4):376.e1, 2011

Kim CJ, Romero R, Chaemsaithong P, et al: Acute chorioamnionitis and funisitis: definition, pathologic features, and clinical significance. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(4 Suppl):S29, 2015

Kinugasa M, Sato T, Tamura M, et al: Antepartum detection of cord presentation by transvaginal ultrasonography for term breech presentation: potential prediction and prevention of cord prolapse. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 33(5):612, 2007

Klahr R, Fox NS, Zafman K, et al: Frequency of spontaneous resolution of vasa previa with advancing gestational age. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(6):646.e1, 2019

Kobayashi N, Aoki S, Oba MS, et al: Effect of umbilical cord entanglement and position on pregnancy outcomes. Obstet Gynecol Int 2015:342065, 2015

Krakowiak P, Smith EN, de Bruyn G, et al: Risk factors and outcomes associated with a short umbilical cord. Obstet Gynecol 103:119, 2004

Lacro RV, Jones KL, Benirschke K: The umbilical cord twist: origin, direction, and relevance. Am J Obstet Gynecol 157(4 Pt 1):833, 1987

Lafitte AS, Verspyck E, Jeanne Pasquier C, et al: Pseudoamniotic band syndrome after fetoscopic laser ablation of placental anastomoses for twin-twin transfusion syndrome: two case reports and systematic review. J Ultrasound Med 36(11):2373, 2017

Langston C, Kaplan C, Macpherson T, et al: Practice guideline for examination of the placenta. Arch Pathol Lab Med 121:449, 1997

Lepais L, Gaillot-Durand L, Boutitie F, et al: Fetal thrombotic vasculopathy is associated with thromboembolic events and adverse perinatal outcome but not with neurologic complications: a retrospective cohort study of 54 cases with a 3-year follow-up of children. Placenta 35(8):611, 2014

Linde LE, Rasmussen S, Kessler J, et al: Extreme umbilical cord lengths, cord knot and entanglement: risk factors and risk of adverse outcomes, a population-based study. PLoS One 13(3):e0194814, 2018
Luo G, Redline RW: Peripheral insertion of umbilical cord. Pediatr Dev Pathol 16(6):399, 2013
Maher JT, Conti JA: A comparison of umbilical cord blood gas values between newborns with and without true knots. Obstet Gynecol 88:863, 1996
Mandsager NT, Bendon R, Mostello D, et al: Maternal floor infarction of the placenta: prenatal diagnosis and clinical significance. Obstet Gynecol 83:750, 1994
Masad R, Gutvirtz G, Wainstock T, et al: The effect of nuchal cord on perinatal mortality and long-term offspring morbidity. J Perinatol 40(3):439, 2020
Matsuzaki S, Kimura T: Vasa previa. N Engl J Med 380(3):274, 2019
Minakami H, Akahori A, Sakurai S, et al: Umbilical vein thrombosis as a possible cause of perinatal morbidity or mortality: report of two cases. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 27(2):97, 2001
Mirza FG, Ghulmiyyah LM, Tamim H, et al: To ignore or not to ignore placental calcifications on prenatal ultrasound: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(6):797, 2018
Murphy-Kaulbeck L, Dodds L, Joseph KS, et al: Single umbilical artery risk factors and pregnancy outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 116(4):843, 2010
Nath ME, Kanbour A, Hu J, et al: Transplantation of congenital primitive neuroectodermal tumor of fetus to the uterus of mother: application of biotin-labeled chromosome-specific probes. Int J Gynecol Cancer 5(6):459, 1995
Naert MN, Muniz Rodriguez A, Khadraoui H, et al: Association between first-trimester subchorionic hematomas and adverse pregnancy outcomes after 20 weeks of gestation in singleton pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 134(4):863, 2019
Nelson LD, Grobman WA: Obstetric morbidity associated with amniotic sheets. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 36(3):324, 2010
Odibo I, Gehlot A, Ounpraseuth ST, et al: Pathologic examination of the placenta and its clinical utility: a survey of obstetrics and gynecology providers. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(2):197, 2016
Odunsi K, Bullough CH, Henzel J, et al: Evaluation of chemical tests for fetal bleeding from vasa previa. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 55(3):207, 1996
Olaya-C M, Bernal JE: Clinical associations to abnormal umbilical cord length in Latin American newborns. J Neonatal Perinatal Med 8(3):251, 2015
Olog A, Thomas JT, Petersen S, et al: Large umbilical artery aneurysm with a live healthy baby delivered at 31 weeks. Fetal Diagn Ther 29(4):331, 2011
Oyelese Y, Catanzarite V, Prefumo F, et al: Vasa previa: the impact of prenatal diagnosis on outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 103:937, 2004
Papinniemi M, Keski-Nisula L, Heinonen S: Placental ratio and risk of velamentous umbilical cord insertion are increased in women with placenta previa. Am J Perinatol 24:353, 2007
Pathak S, Hook E, Hackett G, et al: Cord coiling, umbilical cord insertion and placental shape in an unselected cohort delivering at term: relationship with common obstetric outcomes. Placenta 31(11):963, 2010
Peng HQ, Levitin-Smith M, Rochelson B, et al: Umbilical cord stricture and over coiling are common causes of fetal demise. Pediatr Dev Pathol 9:14, 2006
Pereira N, Yao R, Guilfoil DS, et al: Placenta membranacea with placenta accreta: radiologic diagnosis and clinical implications. Prenat Diagn 33(13):1293, 2013
Pergialiotis V, Kotrogianni P, Koutaki D, et al: Umbilical cord coiling index for the prediction of adverse pregnancy outcomes: a meta-analysis and sequential analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 27:1, 2019
Prapas N, Liang RI, Hunter D, et al: Color Doppler imaging of placental masses: differential diagnosis and fetal outcome. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 16:559, 2000
Proctor LK, Fitzgerald B, Whittle WL, et al: Umbilical cord diameter percentile curves and their correlation to birth weight and placental pathology. Placenta 34(1):62, 2013
Puvabanditsin S, Garrow E, Bhatt M, et al: Four-vessel umbilical cord associated with multiple congenital anomalies: a case report and literature review. Fetal Pediatr Pathol 30(2):98, 2011
Raio L, Ghezzi F, Di Naro E, et al: In-utero characterization of the blood flow in the Hyrtl anastomosis. Placenta 22:597, 2001
Raio L, Ghezzi F, Di Naro E, et al: Prenatal assessment of the Hyrtl anastomosis and evaluation of its function: case report. Hum Reprod 14:1890, 1999
Raio L, Ghezzi F, Di Naro E, et al: Umbilical cord morphologic characteristics and umbilical artery Doppler parameters in intrauterine growth-restricted fetuses. J Ultrasound Med 22:1341, 2003
Räisänen S, Georgiadis L, Harju M, et al: Risk factors and adverse pregnancy outcomes among births affected by velamentous umbilical cord insertion: a retrospective population-based register study. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 165(2):231, 2012
Räisänen S, Georgiadis L, Harju M, et al: True umbilical cord knot and obstetric outcome. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 122(1):18, 2013
Ramon y, Cajal CL, Martinez RO: Four-dimensional ultrasonography of a true knot of the umbilical cord. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:896, 2006
Rayburn WF, Beynen A, Brinkman DL: Umbilical cord length and intrapartum complications. Obstet Gynecol 57(4):450, 1981
Rebarber A, Dolin C, Fox NS, et al: Natural history of vasa previa across gestation using a screening protocol. J Ultrasound Med 33(1):141, 2014
Redline RW: Inflammatory response in acute chorioamnionitis. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 17(1):20, 2012
Redline RW: Placental pathology: a systematic approach with clinical correlations. Placenta 29(Suppl A):S86, 2008
Reif P, Hofer N, Kolovetsiou-Kreiner V, et al: Metastasis of an undifferentiated fetal soft tissue sarcoma to the maternal compartment of the placenta: maternal aspects, pathology findings and review of the literature on fetal malignancies with placenta metastases. Histopathology 65(6):933, 2014
Roberts DJ: Placental pathology, a survival guide. Arch Pathol Lab Med 132(4):641, 2008
Rodriguez N, Angarita AM, Casasbuenas A, et al: Three-dimensional high-definition flow imaging in prenatal diagnosis of a true umbilical cord knot. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 39(2):245, 2012
Romero R, Whitten A, Korzeniewski SJ, et al: Maternal floor infarction/massive perivillous fibrin deposition: a manifestation of maternal antifetal rejection? Am J Reprod Immunol 70(4):285, 2013
Ruiter L, Kok N, Limpens J, et al: Systematic review of accuracy of ultrasound in the diagnosis of vasa previa. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 45(5):516, 2015
Salafia CM, Silberman L, Herrera NE, et al: Placental pathology at term associated with elevated midtrimester maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein concentration. Am J Obstet Gynecol 158(5):1064, 1988
Saleemuddin A, Tantbirojn P, Sirois K, et al: Obstetric and perinatal complications in placentas with fetal thrombotic vasculopathy. Pediatr Dev Pathol 13(6):459, 2010
Sánchez-Códez MI, Lubián-Gutiérrez M, Méndez-Abad P: Umbilical cord hematoma. Fetal Pediatr Pathol 38(4):359, 2019
Sato Y, Benirschke K: Umbilical arterial thrombosis with vascular wall necrosis: clinicopathologic findings of 11 cases. Placenta 27:715, 2006
Schachter M, Tovbin Y, Arieli S, et al: In vitro fertilization is a risk factor for vasa previa. Fertil Steril 78(3):642, 2003
Sebire NJ: Pathophysiological significance of abnormal umbilical cord coiling index. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 30(6):804, 2007
Sebire NJ, Backos M, Goldin RD, et al: Placental massive perivillous fibrin deposition associated with antiphospholipid antibody syndrome. BJOG 109:570, 2002
Sepulveda W, Aviles G, Carstens E, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of solid placental masses: the value of color flow imaging. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 16:554, 2000
Sepulveda W, Wong AE, Gonzalez R, et al: Fetal death due to umbilical cord hematoma: a rare complication of umbilical cord cyst. J Matern-Fetal Neonatal Med 18(6):387, 2005
Shen O, Golomb E, Lavie O, et al: Placental shelf—a common, typically transient and benign finding on early second-trimester sonography. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 29:192, 2007a
Shen O, Reinus C, Baranov A, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of umbilical artery aneurysm: a potentially lethal anomaly. J Ultrasound Med 26(2):251, 2007b
Shilling C, Walsh C, Downey P, et al: Umbilical artery thrombosis is a rare but clinically important finding: a series of 7 cases with clinical outcomes. Pediatr Dev Pathol 17(2):89, 2014
Society for Maternal-Fetal (SMFM) Publications Committee, Sinkey RG, Odibo AO, et al: Diagnosis and management of vasa previa. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(5):615, 2015
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Gandhi M, Rac MW, et al: Amniotic band sequence. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(6):B5, 2019
Sørnes T: Umbilical cord encirclements and fetal growth restriction. Obstet Gynecol 86:725, 1995
Sørnes T: Umbilical cord knots. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 79:157, 2000
Spellacy WN, Gravem H, Fisch RO: The umbilical cord complications of true knots, nuchal coils and cords around the body. Report from the collaborative study of cerebral palsy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 94:1136, 1966
Spinillo A, Gardella B, Muscettola G, et al: The impact of placental massive perivillous fibrin deposition on neonatal outcome in pregnancies complicated by fetal growth restriction. Placenta 87:46, 2019
Spong CY, McKindsey F, Ross MG: Amniotic fluid index predicts the relief of variable decelerations after amnioinfusion bolus. Am J Obstet Gynecol 175(4 Pt 1):1066, 1996
Stanek J: Chorangiosis of chorionic villi: what does it really mean? Arch Pathol Lab Med 140(6):58, 2016

Steemers NY, De Rop C, Van Assche A: Zonary placenta. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 51(3):251, 1995

Strong TH Jr, Jarles DL, Vega JS, et al: The umbilical coiling index. Am J Obstet Gynecol 170(1 Pt 1):29, 1994

Sun Y, Arbuckle S, Hocking G, et al: Umbilical cord stricture and intrauterine fetal death. Pediatr Pathol Lab Med 15:723, 1995

Sung DK, Baergen RN: Focal chorangiosis: does it have clinical and pathologic significance? Pediatr Dev Pathol 22(5):406, 2019

Suzuki S: Clinical significance of pregnancies with circumvallate placenta. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 34(1):51, 2008

Swank ML, Garite TJ, Maurel K, et al: Vasa previa: diagnosis and management. Obstetrix Collaborative Research Network. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(2):223.e1, 2016

Taniguchi H, Aoki S, Sakamaki K, et al: Circumvallate placenta: associated clinical manifestations and complications—a retrospective study. Obstet Gynecol Int 2014:986230, 2014

Towers CV, Juratsch CE, Garite TJ: The fetal heart monitor tracing in pregnancies complicated by a spontaneous umbilical cord haematoma. J Perinatol 29:517, 2009

Tuuli MG, Norman SM, Odibo AO, et al: Perinatal outcomes in women with subchorionic hematoma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 117(5):1205, 2011

Tuuli MG, Shanks A, Bernhard L, et al: Uterine synechiae and pregnancy complications. Obstet Gynecol 119(4):810, 2012

Vahanian SA, Lavery JA, Ananth CV, et al: Placental implantation abnormalities and risk of preterm delivery: a systematic review and metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(4 Suppl):S78, 2015

Vintzileos AM, Ananth CV, Smulian JC: Using ultrasound in the clinical management of placental implantation abnormalities. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(4 Suppl):S70, 2015

Voskamp BJ, Fleurke-Rozema H, Oude-Rengerink K, et al: Relationship of isolated single umbilical artery to fetal growth, aneuploidy and perinatal mortality: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 42(6):622, 2013

Vyas NM, Manjeera L, Rai S, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of umbilical artery aneurysm with good fetal outcome and review of literature. J Clin Diagn Res 10(1):QD01, 2016

Whitten AE, Romero R, Korzeniewski SJ, et al: Evidence of an imbalance of angiogenic/antiangiogenic factors in massive perivillous fibrin deposition (maternal floor infarction): a placental lesion associated with recurrent miscarriage and fetal death. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(4):310.e1, 2013

Woo GW, Rocha FG, Gaspar-Oishi M, et al: Placental mesenchymal dysplasia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(6):e3, 2011

Yamada S, Hamanishi J, Tanada S, et al: Embryogenesis of fused umbilical arteries in human embryos. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193:1709, 2005

Yamamoto Y, Aoki S, Oba MS, et al: Relationship between short umbilical cord length and adverse pregnancy outcomes. Fetal Pediatr Pathol 35(2):81, 2016

Zangen R, Boldes R, Yaffe H, et al: Umbilical cord cysts in the second and third trimesters: significance and prenatal approach. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 36(3):296, 2010

Zhang W, Geris S, Al-Emara N, et al: Perinatal outcome of pregnancies with prenatal diagnosis of vasa previa: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 57(5):710, 2021

CHAPTER 7

Embryogenesis and Fetal Development

Contemporary obstetrics incorporates physiology and pathophysiology of the fetus, and its development and environment. As a result, the fetus is considered a patient and is given the same meticulous care provided for the mother. Section 6 is dedicated to the fetal patient, however, virtually every aspect of obstetrics can affect the developing fetus.

GESTATIONAL AGE

Several terms define pregnancy duration and thus fetal age (Fig. 7-1). *Gestational age* or *menstrual age* is the time elapsed since the first day of the last menstrual period (LMP), a time that actually precedes conception. This starting time, which is usually approximately 2 weeks before ovulation and fertilization and nearly 3 weeks before blastocyst implantation, has traditionally been used. Embryologists describe embryofetal development in *ovulation age*, or the time in days or weeks from ovulation. Another term is *postconceptional age,* which is nearly identical to ovulation age.

Until recently, clinicians customarily calculated menstrual age, and with this, term pregnancy averages 280 days or 40 weeks between the first day of the LMP and birth. This corresponds to 9 and 1/3 calendar months. However, menstrual cycle length variability among women renders many of these calculations inaccurate. This realization, combined with the frequent use of first-trimester sonography, has led to more accurate gestational age determination (Duryea, 2015). Much of this change stems from the accuracy of early sonographic measurement. As a result, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, the American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2019) together recommend the following:

1. First-trimester sonography is the most accurate method to establish or reaffirm gestational age.
2. In conceptions achieved with in vitro fertilization (IVF), the embryo age and egg transfer date are used.
3. If available, the gestational ages calculated from the LMP and from first-trimester sonography are compared, and the estimated date of confinement (EDC) is recorded and discussed with the patient.
4. The best obstetrical estimate of gestational age at delivery is recorded on the birth certificate.

The embryofetal crown-rump length in the first trimester is accurate ± 5 to 7 days. Thus, if sonographic gestational

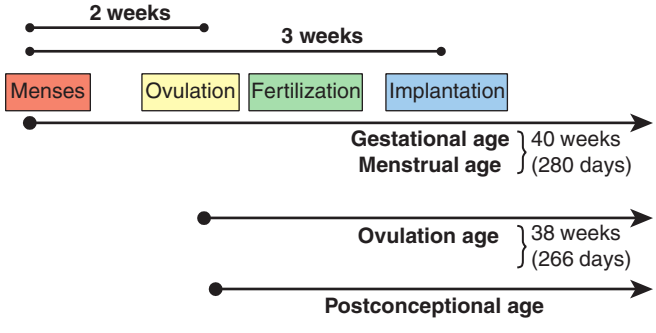


FIGURE 7-1 Terminology used to describe pregnancy duration.

age differs by more than 5 days prior to 9 weeks' gestation, or by more than 7 days later in the first trimester, the EDC is changed. These and discrepant values in the second and third trimester are discussed further in Chapter 14 (p. 248).

Naegele Rule

An EDC based on the LMP can be quickly estimated as follows: add 7 days to the first day of the LMP and subtract 3 months. For example, if the first day of the LMP was October 5, the due date is 10–05 minus 3 (months) plus 7 (days) = 7–12, or July 12 of the following year. This calculation has been termed the *Naegele rule*. The period of gestation can also be divided into three units of approximately 14 weeks each. These three *trimesters* are important obstetrical milestones.

In addition to estimating the EDC with either Naegele rule or "pregnancy wheels," calculator tools in the electronic medical record and smartphone applications can provide a calculated EDC and gestational age. For example, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020) has developed a calculator application that incorporates sonographic criteria and the LMP or embryo transfer date (Chap. 14, p. 248).

EMBRYONIC DEVELOPMENT

The complexity of embryofetal development is immense. Figure 7-2 shows a developmental sequence of various organ systems. New information regarding organ development continues to accrue. For example, imaging techniques help to unravel the contributions of gene regulation and tissue interaction to eventual three-dimensional organ morphology (Anderson, 2016). Others have described the sequence of gene activation that underlies cardiac development (p. 126).

Zygote and Blastocyst Development

During the first 2 weeks after ovulation and then fertilization, the zygote—or preembryo—progresses to the blastocyst stage. The blastocyst implants 6 or 7 days following fertilization. The 58-cell blastocyst differentiates into five cells—*the inner cell mass*, which develops into the embryo. The remaining 53 cells form placental trophoblast. Details of implantation and early development of the blastocyst and placenta are described in Chapter 5 (p. 86).

Embryonic Period

The conceptus is termed an embryo at the beginning of the third week after ovulation and fertilization. Primitive chorionic villi form, and this coincides with the expected day of menses. The embryonic period, during which time organogenesis takes place, lasts 6 weeks. It begins the third week from the LMP and continues through the eighth week. The embryonic disc is well defined, and most pregnancy tests that measure human

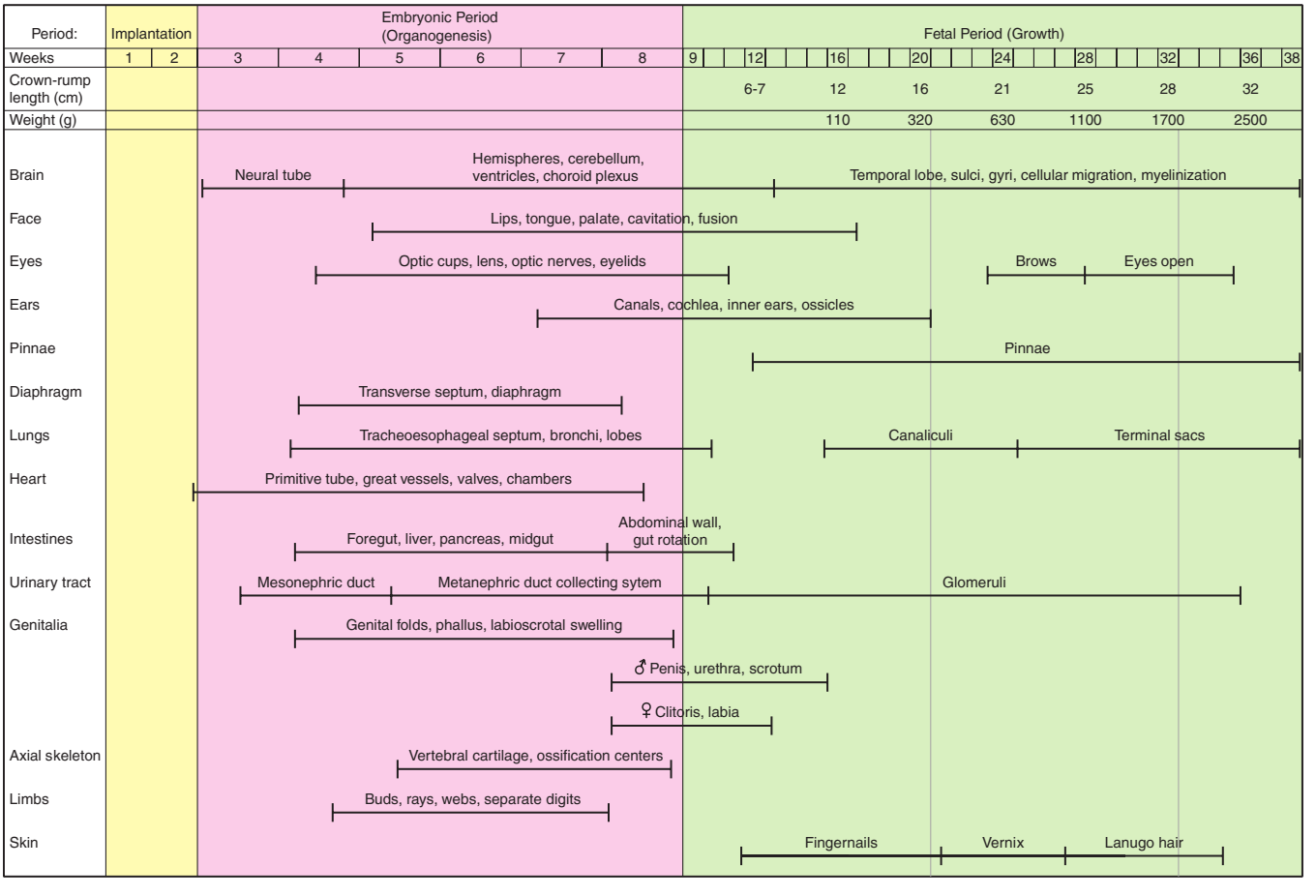


FIGURE 7-2 Embryofetal development according to gestational age determined by the first day of the last menses. Times are approximate.

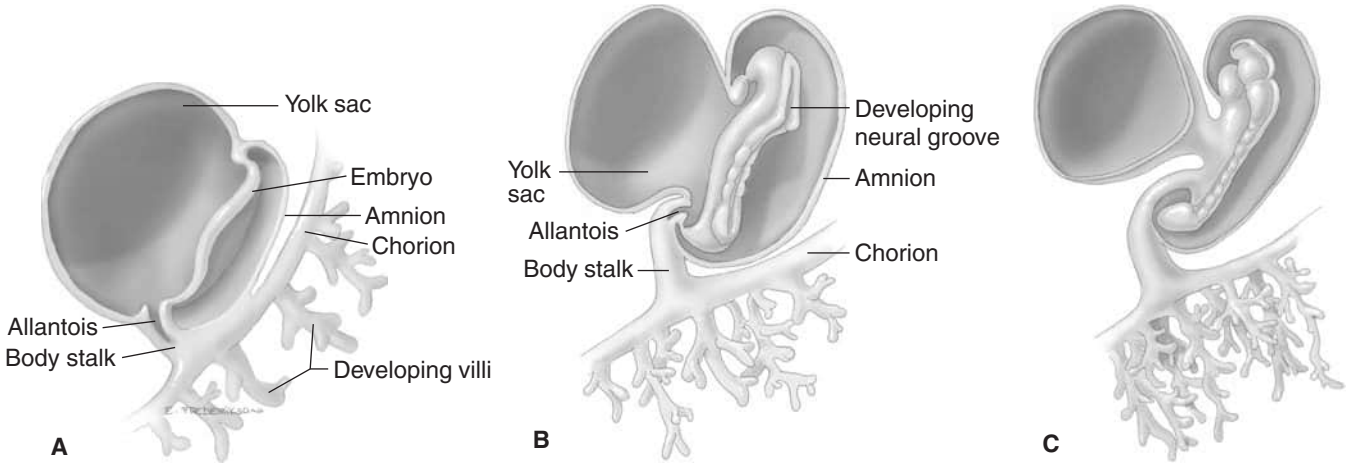


FIGURE 7-3 Early human embryos. Ovulation ages: **A.** 19 days (presomite). **B.** 21 days (7 somites). **C.** 22 days (17 somites). (After drawings and models in the Carnegie Institute.)

chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) become positive by this time. As shown in Figure 7-3, the body stalk is now differentiated. There are villous cores in which angioblastic chorionic mesoderm can be distinguished and a true intervillous space that contains maternal blood.

During the third week, fetal blood vessels in the chorionic villi appear. In the fourth week, a cardiovascular system has formed (Fig. 7-4) (Moore, 2008). Thereby, a true circulation is established both within the embryo and between the embryo and the chorionic villi. Partitioning of the primitive heart begins. Also in the fourth week, the neural plate forms, and it subsequently folds to form the neural tube. By the end of the fifth menstrual week, the chorionic sac measures approximately 1 cm in diameter. The embryo is 3 mm long and can be

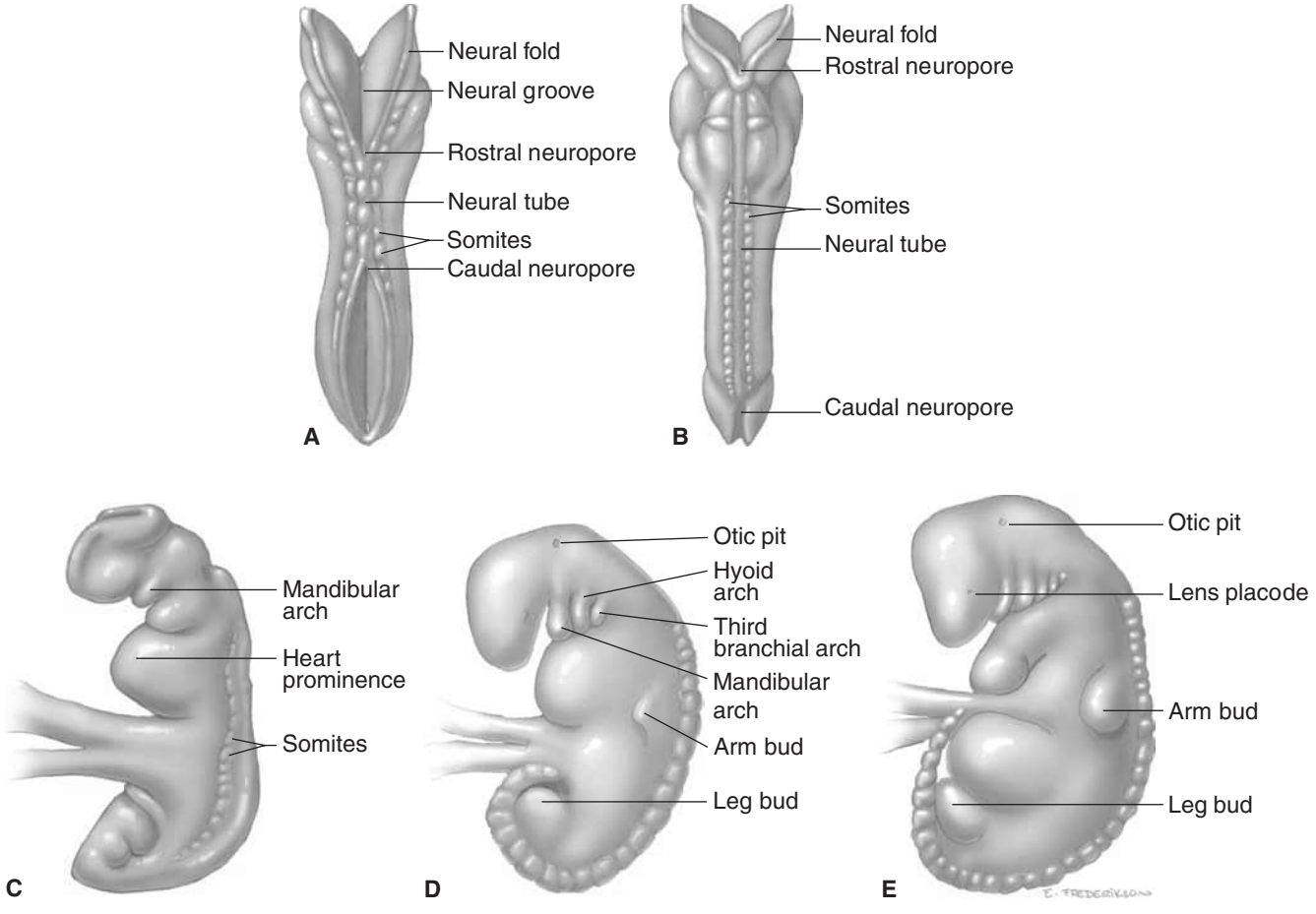


FIGURE 7-4 Three- to four-week-old embryos. **A, B.** Dorsal views of embryos during 22 to 23 days of development showing 8 and 12 somites, respectively. **C–E.** Lateral views of embryos during 24 to 28 days, showing 16, 27, and 33 somites, respectively.

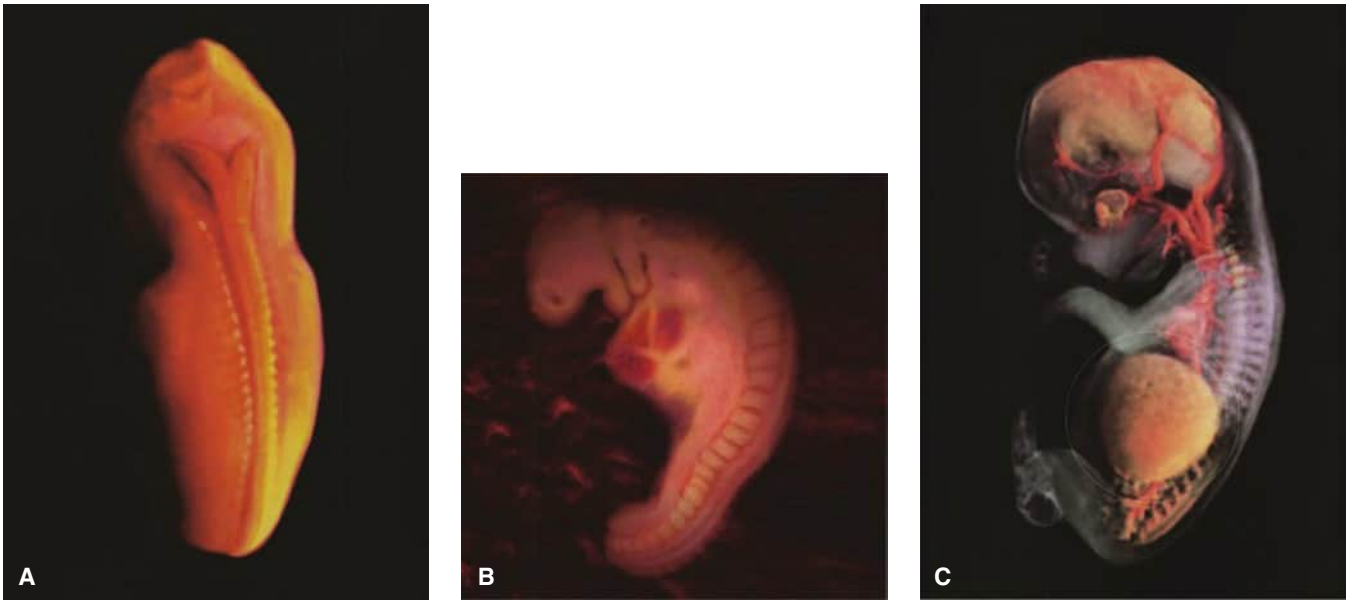


FIGURE 7-5 Embryo photographs. **A.** Dorsal view of an embryo at 24 to 26 days and corresponding to Figure 7-4C. **B.** Lateral view of an embryo at 28 days and corresponding to Figure 7-4D. **C.** Lateral view of embryofetus at 56 days, which marks the end of the embryonic period and the beginning of the fetal period. The liver is within the white, halo circle. (From Werth B, Tsiaras A: From Conception to Birth: A Life Unfolds. New York, Doubleday, 2002.)

measured sonographically. Arm and leg buds have developed, and the amnion is beginning to ensheathe the body stalk, which thereafter becomes the umbilical cord. At the end of the sixth week, the embryo is approximately 9 mm long, and the neural tube has closed (Fig. 7-5). Cardiac motion is almost always discernable sonographically (Fig. 7-6).

The cranial end of the neural tube closes by 38 days from the LMP, and the caudal end closes by 40 days. Thus, the neural tube has closed by the end of the sixth week. And by the end of the eighth week, the crown-rump length approximates 22 mm. Fingers and toes are present, and the arms bend at the elbows. The upper lip is complete, and the external ears form definitive elevations on either side of the head. Three-dimensional images and videos of human embryos from the Multi-Dimensional Human Embryo project can be seen at: embryo.soad.umich.edu/.

FETAL DEVELOPMENT AND PHYSIOLOGY

Fetal Period Epochs

The transition from embryonic to fetal periods occurs at 7 weeks after fertilization, corresponding to 9 weeks after the LMP. At this time, the fetus approximates 24 mm in length, most organ systems have developed, and the fetus enters a period of growth and maturation. These phases are outlined in Figure 7-2.

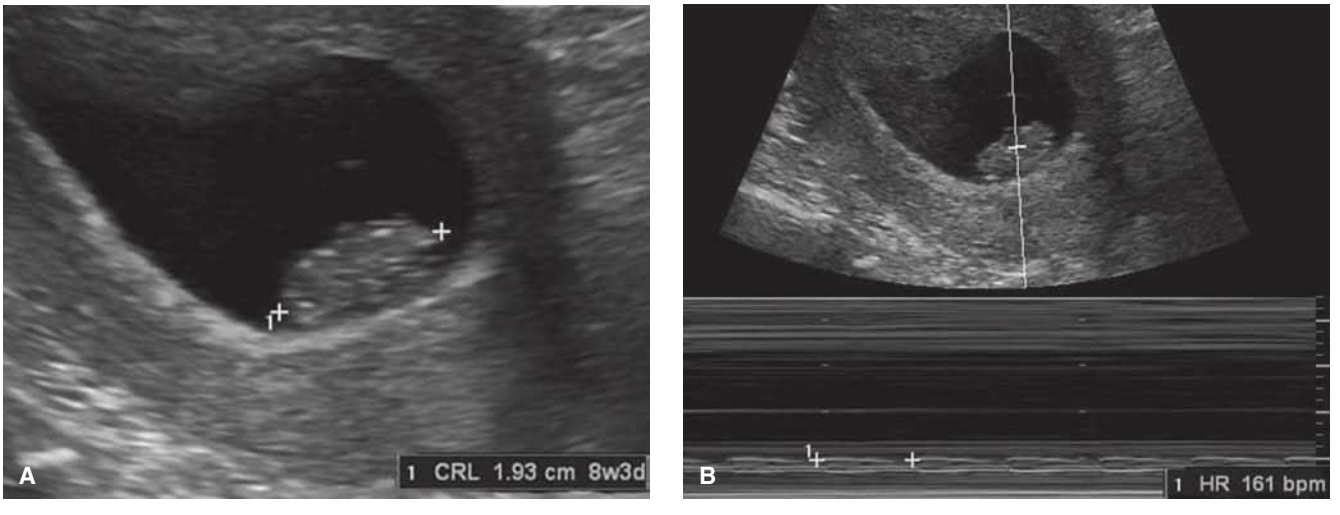


FIGURE 7-6 **A.** This image of an 8-week, 3-day embryo depicts measurement of the crown-rump length, which is 1.93 cm at this gestational age. **B.** Despite the early gestational age, M-mode imaging readily demonstrates embryonic cardiac activity. The heart rate in this image is 161 beats per minute.

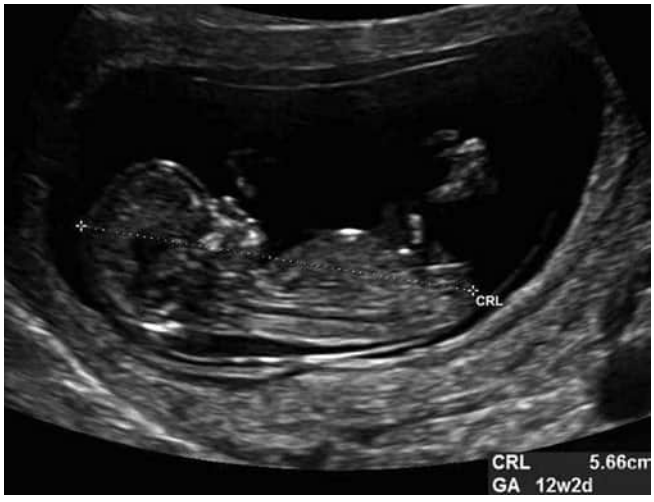


FIGURE 7-7 This image of a 12-week, 2-day embryo depicts measurement of the crown-rump length. The fetal profile, cranium, and a hand and foot also are visible in this image.

12 Gestational Weeks

The uterus usually is just palpable above the symphysis pubis. Fetal growth is rapid, and the fetal crown-rump length is 5 to 6 cm (Fig. 7-7). Centers of ossification have appeared in most fetal bones, and the fingers and toes have become differentiated. Skin and nails develop, and scattered rudiments of hair appear. The external genitalia are beginning to show definitive signs of male or female gender. The fetus begins to make spontaneous movements.

16 Gestational Weeks

Fetal growth slows at this time. The crown-rump length is 12 cm, and the fetal weight approximates 150 g. Clinically, the sonographic crown-rump length is not measured beyond 13 weeks, which corresponds to approximately 8.4 cm. Instead, biparietal diameter, head circumference, abdominal circumference, and femur length are measured. Fetal weight in the second and third trimesters is estimated from a combination of these measurements (Chap. 14, p. 248).

Eye movements begin at 16 to 18 weeks, coinciding with midbrain maturation. By 18 weeks in the female fetus, the uterus is formed and vaginal canalization begins. By 20 weeks in the male, testicles start to descend.

20 Gestational Weeks

This is the midpoint of pregnancy as estimated from the LMP. The fetus now weighs somewhat more than 300 g, and weight increases substantially in a linear manner. From this point onward, the fetus moves approximately every minute and is active 10 to 30 percent of the day (DiPietro, 2005). Brown fat forms, and the fetal skin becomes less transparent. Downy lanugo covers its entire body, and some scalp hair can be seen. Cochlear function develops between 22 and 25 weeks, and this maturation continues for 6 months after delivery.

24 Gestational Weeks

The fetus now weighs almost 700 g. The skin is characteristically wrinkled, and fat deposition begins. The head is still comparatively large, and eyebrows and eyelashes are usually recognizable. By 24 weeks, the secretory type II pneumocytes have initiated surfactant secretion (Chap. 32, p. 587). The canalicular period of lung development, during which the bronchi and bronchioles enlarge and alveolar ducts develop, is nearly completed. Despite this, a fetus born at this time will attempt to breathe, but many will die because the terminal sacs, required for gas exchange, have not yet formed. Although dependent on racial and ethnic factors, and as discussed in Chapter 45 (p. 785), the overall survival rate at 24 weeks barely exceeds 50 percent (Janevic, 2018). By 26 weeks, the eyes open. Nociceptors are present over all the body, and the neural pain system is developed (Kadic, 2012). The fetal liver and spleen are important early sites for hemopoiesis (Fanni, 2018).

28 Gestational Weeks

The crown-rump length approximates 25 cm, and the fetus weighs about 1100 g. The thin skin is red and covered with vernix caseosa. The pupillary membrane has just disappeared from the eyes. Isolated eye blinking peaks at 28 weeks. The bone marrow now becomes the major site of hemopoiesis. The otherwise normal neonate born at this age has a 90-percent chance of survival without physical or neurological impairment.

32 and 36 Gestational Weeks

At 32 weeks, the fetus has attained a crown-rump length approximating 28 cm and a weight of about 1800 g. The skin surface is still red and wrinkled. In contrast, by 36 weeks, the fetal crown-rump length averages about 32 cm, and the weight approximates 2800 g (Duryea, 2014). Because of subcutaneous fat deposition, the body is more rotund, and the previous wrinkled facies are now fuller. Normal fetuses have a nearly 100-percent survival rate.

40 Gestational Weeks

This is considered term, and the fetus is fully developed. The average crown-rump length measures about 36 cm, and the average weight approximates 3500 g.

■ Central Nervous System Development

Brain Development

The cranial end of the neural tube closes by 38 days from the last menstrual period, and the caudal end closes by 40 days. Hence, folic acid supplementation to prevent neural-tube defects must be in place before this point to be efficacious (Chap. 9, p. 168). The walls of the neural tube form the brain and spinal cord. The lumen becomes the ventricular system of the brain and the central canal of the spinal cord. During the sixth week, the cranial end of the neural tube forms three primary vesicles. In the seventh week, five secondary vesicles develop: the telencephalon—future cerebral hemispheres; diencephalon—thalami; mesencephalon—midbrain; metencephalon—pons and cerebellum; and myelencephalon—medulla. This is, in part, controlled by *Hox* genes, and defects result in abnormal signaling that leads to neuropathic anomalies (Arendt, 2018). Meanwhile, flexures develop and fold the brain into its typical

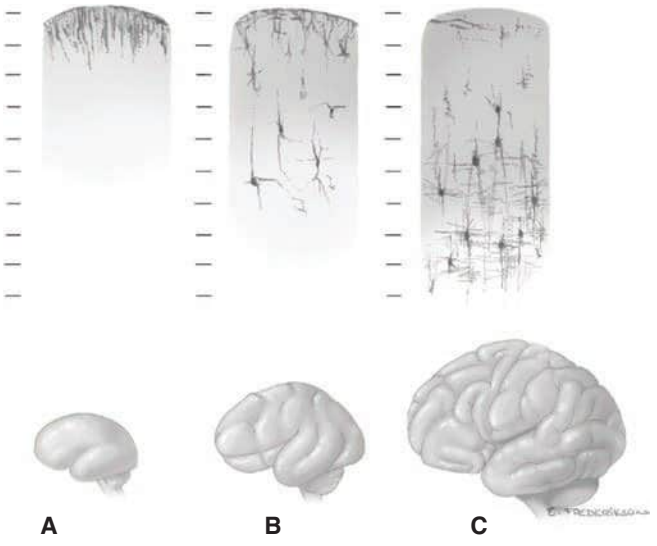


FIGURE 7-8 Neuronal proliferation and migration are complete at 20 to 24 weeks. During the second half of gestation, organizational events proceed with gyral formation and proliferation, differentiation, and migration of cellular elements. Approximate gestational ages are shown. **A.** 20 weeks. **B.** 35 weeks. **C.** 40 weeks.

configuration. The end of the embryonic period signifies completion of primary and secondary neutralization.

At 3 to 4 months' gestation, *neuronal proliferation* peaks. As expected, disorders in this cerebral development phase profoundly worsen function (Ortega, 2017; Volpe, 2018). One example is Zika virus infection (Rothan, 2019). *Neuronal migration* occurs almost simultaneously and peaks at 3 to 5 months. This process is characterized by movement of millions of neuronal cells from their ventricular and subventricular zones to areas of the brain in which they reside for life (Fig. 7-8). Upregulation of gene expression for neuronal migration has been described (Di Donato, 2017). Noninvasive methods to study fetal neurodevelopment also have been reported (Goetzl, 2016; Wang, 2015).

As gestation progresses, the fetal brain appearance steadily changes. Thus, it is possible to identify fetal age from its external appearance (Volpe, 2018). Neuronal proliferation and migration proceed along with gyral growth and maturation (see Fig. 7-8). Sequential maturation studies using magnetic resonance (MR) imaging have characterized the developing fetal brain (Dubois, 2014; Meng, 2012; Wang, 2015).

Myelination of the ventral roots of the cerebrospinal nerves and brainstem begins at approximately 6 months, but most myelination progresses after birth. This lack of myelin and incomplete skull ossification permit fetal brain structure to be seen sonographically throughout gestation.

Spinal Cord

Whereas the superior two thirds of the neural tube give rise to the brain, the inferior third forms the spinal cord. In the embryo, the spinal cord extends along the entire vertebral column length, but after that it lags behind vertebral growth. Ossification of the entire sacrum is visible sonographically by approximately 21 weeks (Chap. 15, p. 276). By 24 weeks, the spinal cord extends to S_1, at birth to L_3, and in the adult to L_1. Spinal cord myelination begins at midgestation and continues through the first year of life. Synaptic function is sufficiently developed by the eighth week to demonstrate flexion of the neck and trunk. During the third trimester, integration of nervous and muscular function proceeds rapidly (Molina, 2017).

Cardiovascular System

The embryology of the heart is highly complex. At its earliest stages of formation, the fetal heart undergoes molecular programming, and more than a hundred genes and molecular factors are integral to its morphogenesis (Kathiriya, 2015; Moore, 2020). These molecular factors include the *hypoxia-inducible factor—HIF* and *homeobox (HOX)*—family.

To summarize its embryology, the straight cardiac tube is formed by the 23rd day during an intricate morphogenetic sequence, during which each segment arises at a unique time. Between 4 and 7 weeks the heart undergoes extensive growth and morphological modification, leading to the formation of a partially septated four-chambered heart with a set of primitive valves (Sylva, 2014). The valves develop, and the aortic arch forms by vasculogenesis. Chapter 8 of Hurst's The Heart has a full description (Torres, 2017). Late in fetal life, coronary angiogenesis vascularizes the myocardium (Lu, 2021).

Fetal Circulation

This unique circulation is substantially different from that of the adult and functions until birth, when it changes dramatically. For example, fetal blood is oxygenated by the placenta and does not need to enter the pulmonary vasculature. Thus, most of the right ventricular output bypasses the lungs. In addition, the fetal heart chambers work in parallel, not in series. This effectively supplies the brain and heart, compared with the rest of the body, with more highly oxygenated blood from the dominant right ventricle.

Oxygen and nutrient materials required for fetal growth and maturation are delivered from the placenta by the single umbilical vein (Fig. 7-9). The vein then divides into the ductus venosus and the portal sinus. The ductus venosus is the major branch of the umbilical vein and traverses the liver to enter the inferior vena cava directly. Because it does not supply oxygen to the intervening tissues, it carries well-oxygenated blood directly to the heart. In contrast, the portal sinus carries blood to the hepatic veins primarily on the left side of the liver, and oxygen is extracted. The relatively deoxygenated blood from the liver then flows back into the inferior vena cava, which also receives more deoxygenated blood returning from the lower body. Blood flowing to the fetal heart from the inferior vena cava, therefore, consists of an admixture of arterial-like blood that passes directly through the ductus venosus and less well-oxygenated blood that returns from most of the veins below the level of the diaphragm. The oxygen content of blood delivered to the heart from the inferior vena cava is thus lower than that leaving the placenta.

Because the ventricles of the fetal heart work in parallel, this allows the right ventricle to account for two thirds of the total cardiac output. Well-oxygenated blood enters the left ventricle,

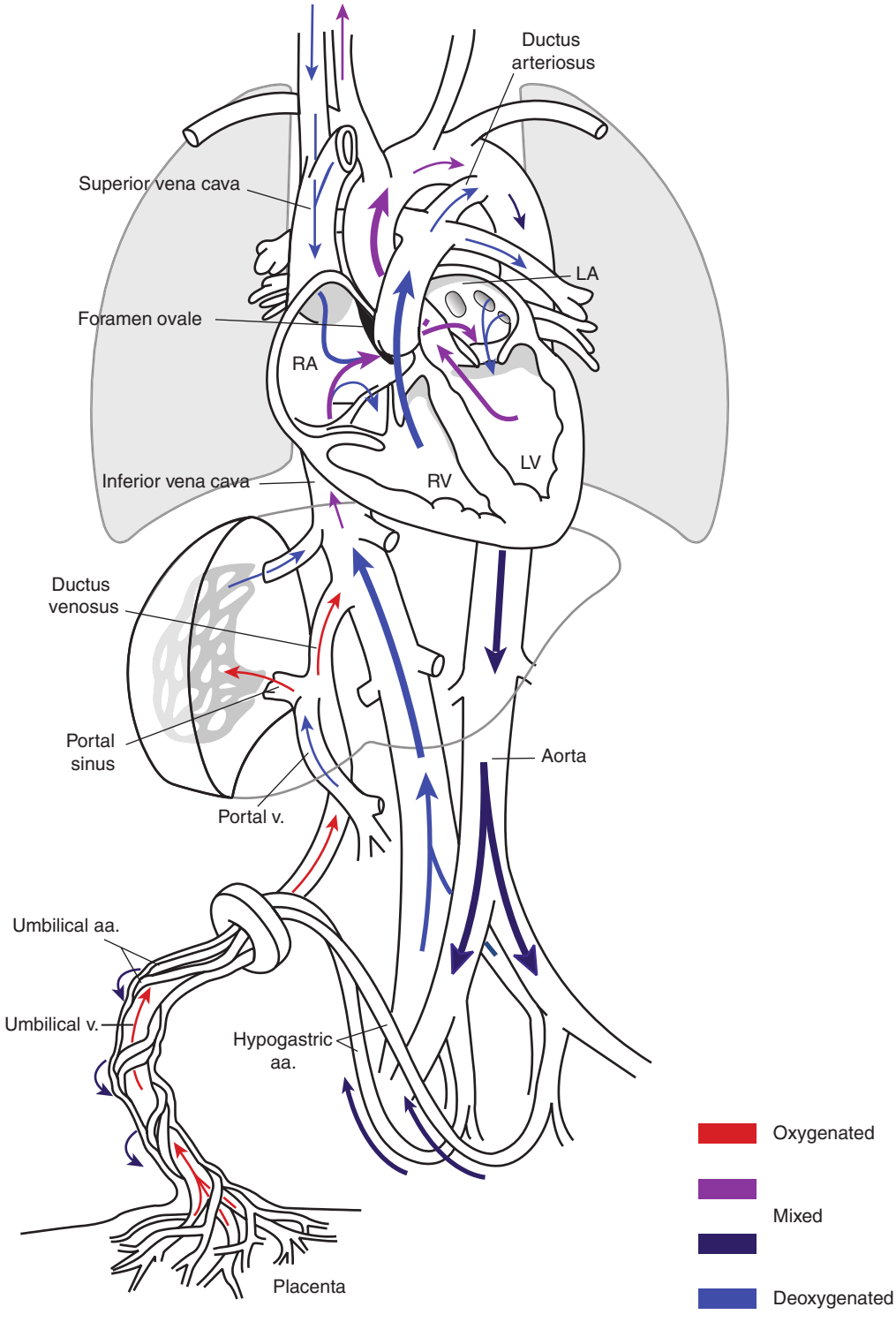


FIGURE 7-9 The intricate nature of the fetal circulation is evident. The degree of blood oxygenation in various vessels differs appreciably from that in the postnatal state. aa = arteries; LA = left atrium; LV = left ventricle; RA = right atrium; RV = right ventricle; v = vein.

which supplies the heart and brain, and less oxygenated blood enters the right ventricle, which supplies the rest of the body. Congenital cardiac defects may contribute to dysregulated brain development or placenta dysfunction (Fantasia, 2018; Lauridsen, 2017).

These two separate circulations are maintained by right-atrium anatomy, which effectively directs entering blood to either the left atrium or the right ventricle, depending on its oxygen content. This separation of blood according to its oxygen content is aided by the pattern of blood flow in the inferior vena cava. The well-oxygenated blood tends to course along the dorsomedial aspect of the inferior vena cava and the less oxygenated blood flows along the lateral vessel wall. This aids their shunting into opposite sides of the heart. Once this blood enters the right atrium, the configuration of the upper interatrial septum—the *crista dividens*—preferentially shunts

the well-oxygenated blood from the medial side of the inferior vena cava through the foramen ovale into the left heart. Here, it is directed to the heart and brain (Dawes, 1962). After these tissues extract needed oxygen, the resulting less oxygenated blood returns to the right atrium through the superior vena cava. Blood flow velocity in the superior vena cava rises from 20 weeks until term (Stefopoulou, 2021).

The less oxygenated blood coursing along the lateral wall of the inferior vena cava enters the right atrium and is deflected through the tricuspid valve to the right ventricle. The superior vena cava courses inferiorly and anteriorly as it enters the right atrium, ensuring that less well-oxygenated blood returning from the brain and upper body also will be shunted directly to the right ventricle. Similarly, the ostium of the coronary sinus lies just superior to the tricuspid valve so that less oxygenated blood from the heart also returns to the right ventricle. As a result of this blood flow pattern, blood in the right ventricle is 15 to 20 percent less saturated with oxygen than blood in the left ventricle.

Almost 90 percent of blood exiting the right ventricle is shunted through the ductus arteriosus to the descending aorta. High pulmonary vascular resistance and comparatively lower resistance in the ductus arteriosus and the umbilical–placental vasculature ensure that only about 8 percent of right ventricular output goes to the lungs (Fineman, 2014). Thus, one third of the blood passing through the ductus arteriosus is delivered to the body. The remaining right ventricular output returns to the placenta through the two hypogastric arteries. These two arteries course from the level of the bladder along the abdominal wall to the umbilical ring and into the cord as the umbilical arteries. In the placenta, this blood picks up oxygen and other nutrients and is recirculated to the umbilical vein.

Circulatory Changes at Birth

After birth, the umbilical vessels, ductus arteriosus, foramen ovale, and ductus venosus normally constrict or collapse. With the functional closure of the ductus arteriosus and the expansion of the lungs, blood leaving the right ventricle preferentially enters the pulmonary vasculature to become oxygenated before it returns to the left heart (Hillman, 2012). Virtually instantaneously, the ventricles, which had worked in parallel in fetal life, now effectively work in series. The more distal portions of the hypogastric arteries undergo atrophy and obliteration within 3 to 4 days after birth. These become the umbilical ligaments, whereas the intraabdominal remnants of the umbilical vein form the ligamentum teres. The ductus venosus constricts by 10 to 96 hours after birth and is anatomically closed by 2 to 3 weeks. This ultimately forms the ligamentum venosum (Fineman, 2014).

Fetoplacental Blood Volume

Although precise measurements of human fetoplacental blood volume are lacking, Usher and associates (1963) reported values in term normal newborns to average 78 mL/kg when immediate cord clamping was conducted. Gruenwald (1967) found that the fetal blood volume contained in the placenta after prompt cord clamping averaged 45 mL/kg of fetal weight. Thus, fetoplacental blood volume at term is approximately 125 mL/kg of fetal weight. This is important when assessing the magnitude of fetomaternal hemorrhage, which is discussed in Chapter 18 (p. 358).

Hemopoiesis

Embryo hemopoiesis begins in the yolk sac and endothelium, followed by the liver, and then spleen and bone marrow (Canu, 2021). Transitions are intricate and involve several genes and protein complexes (Shao, 2018). Both myeloid and erythroid cells are continually produced by progenitors that derive from hemopoietic stem cells (Fanni, 2018; Heinig, 2015). The first erythrocytes released into the fetal circulation are nucleated and macrocytic. The mean cell volume is at least 180 fL in the embryo and decreases to 105 to 115 fL at term. Normal adult volume ranges from 80 to 95 fL. The erythrocytes of aneuploid fetuses generally do not undergo this maturation and maintain high mean cell volumes, which average 130 fL (Sipes, 1991). As fetal development progresses, more and more circulating erythrocytes are smaller and nonnucleated. With fetal growth, both the blood volume in the common fetoplacental circulation and hemoglobin concentration increase. As shown in Table 7-1, fetal hemoglobin concentrations rise across pregnancy. For clinical purposes, the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2015) recommends a cutoff fetal hematocrit value of 30 percent to define anemia.

Because of their large size, fetal erythrocytes have a short life span, which progressively lengthens to approximately 90 days at term (Pearson, 1966). As a consequence, red blood cell concentrations rise. Reticulocytes are initially present at high levels but decrease to 4 to 5 percent of the total at term. Fetal erythrocytes differ structurally and metabolically from those in the adult (Baron, 2012). They are more deformable, which serves

TABLE 7-1. Fetal Hemoglobin Concentrations Across Pregnancy

Weeks' Gestation	Multiples of the Median		
	1.16 (95th percentile)	1.00 (median)	0.84 (5th percentile)
	grams per deciliter		
18	12.3	10.6	8.9
20	12.9	11.1	9.3
22	13.4	11.6	9.7
24	13.9	12.0	10.1
26	14.3	12.3	10.3
28	14.6	12.6	10.6
30	14.8	12.8	10.8
32	15.2	13.1	10.9
34	15.4	13.3	11.2
36	15.6	13.5	11.3
38	15.8	13.6	11.4
40	16.0	13.8	11.6

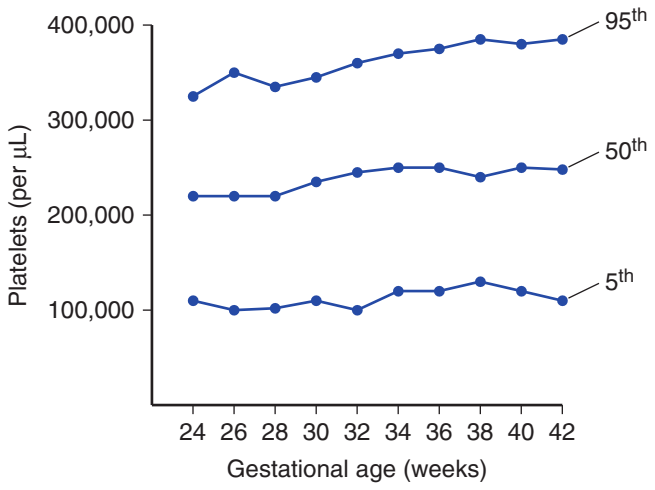


FIGURE 7-10 Platelet counts by gestational age obtained the first day of life. Mean values and 5th and 95th percentiles are shown. (Data from Christensen RD, Henry E, Antonio DV: Thrombocytosis and thrombocytopenia in the NICU: incidence, mechanisms and treatments, J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25 Suppl 4:15, 2012.)

to offset their higher volume and viscosity. They also contain several enzymes with appreciably different activities.

Erythropoiesis is controlled primarily by fetal erythropoietin because maternal erythropoietin does not cross the placenta. Fetal hormone production is influenced by testosterone, estrogen, prostaglandins, thyroid hormone, lipoproteins, and importantly, by fetal hypoxia (Teramo, 2018). Serum erythropoietin levels rise with fetal maturity. The fetal liver is an important source until renal production begins near term. The erythropoietin concentration in amnionic fluid correlates closely with that in umbilical venous blood obtained by cordocentesis. After birth, erythropoietin normally may not be detectable for up to 3 months.

In contrast, platelet production reaches stable levels by midpregnancy, although there is some variation across gestation (Fig. 7-10). The fetal and neonatal platelet count is subject to various agents, which are discussed in Chapter 18 (p. 359).

Fetal Hemoglobin

This tetrameric protein is composed of two copies of two different peptide chains, which determine the type of hemoglobin produced (Fig. 7-11). Normal adult hemoglobin A1 is made of α and β chains. During embryonic and fetal life, various α and β chain precursors are produced. This results in the serial production of several different embryonic hemoglobins. At least 17 genetic loci potentially regulate erythropoiesis (Tumburu, 2017). Genes for β-type chains are on chromosome 11, and those for α-type chains on chromosome 16. Each of these genes is turned on and then off during fetal life, until α and β genes, which direct the production of adult hemoglobin A1, are permanently activated.

The timing of production of each of these early hemoglobins corresponds to the site of hemoglobin production. Fetal blood is first produced in the yolk sac, where hemoglobins Gower 1, Gower 2, and Portland are made. Erythropoiesis then moves to the liver, where fetal hemoglobin F is produced. When hemopoiesis finally moves to the bone marrow, adult-type hemoglobin A1 appears in fetal red blood cells and is present in progressively greater amounts as the fetus matures (Lessard, 2018).

The final adult version of the α chain is produced exclusively by 6 weeks. After this, there are no functional alternative versions, and the gene for the zeta (ζ) globin chain is downregulated. If the gene coding the α globin chain undergoes mutation, no alternate α-type chain can be substituted to form functional hemoglobin. In contrast, at least two versions of the β chain—δ and γ—remain in production throughout fetal life and beyond. With a mutation in the gene coding the β globin chain, these two other versions of the β chain often continue to be produced, resulting in either hemoglobin A2 ($\alpha_2\delta_2$) or

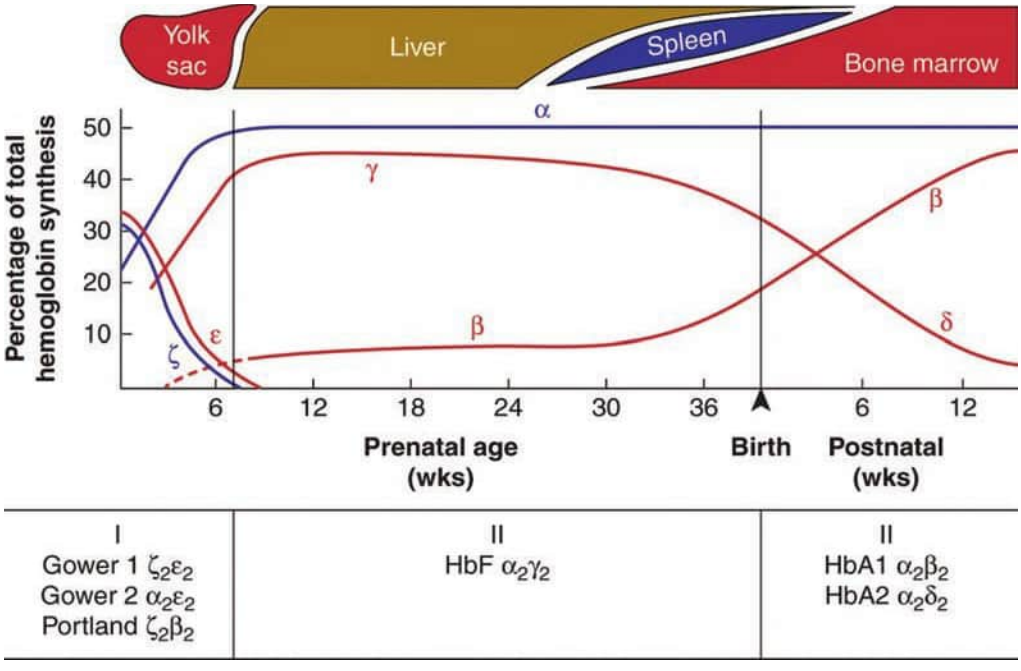


FIGURE 7-11 Hemoglobin types transition throughout pregnancy. Alpha (α) and zeta (ζ) globin chains are interchangeable. The beta (β) globin chain can be replaced by epsilon (ε), gamma (γ), or delta (δ) globin chains. In embryonic life (stage I), ζ and ε globin chain production is gradually replaced by α and γ globin chain production. Hemoglobin F is the main type in fetal life (stage II). After birth (stage III), HbA1 predominates.

hemoglobin F ($\alpha_2\gamma_2$), which substitute for the abnormal or missing hemoglobin A1.

Genes are turned off by methylation of their control region, which is discussed in Chapter 13 (p. 322). In some situations, methylation does not occur. For example, in newborns of diabetic women, hemoglobin F may persist due to hypomethylation of the γ gene (Perrine, 1988). With sickle-cell anemia, the γ gene remains unmethylated, and large quantities of fetal hemoglobin continue to be produced. As discussed in Chapter 59 (p. 1053), elevated hemoglobin F levels are associated with fewer sickle-cell disease symptoms, and pharmacological modification of these levels by hemoglobin F–inducing drugs is one treatment approach (Pasricha, 2018).

Hemoglobins A and F function differently. At any given oxygen tension and at identical pH, fetal erythrocytes that contain mostly hemoglobin F bind more oxygen than do those that contain nearly all hemoglobin A (Fig. 50-2, p. 886). This is because hemoglobin A binds 2,3-diphosphoglycerate (2,3-DPG) more avidly than does hemoglobin F. Remember that 2,3-DPG is an intraerythrocyte phosphate, and hemoglobin has a reciprocal affinity for 2,3-DPG and oxygen (Benesch, 1968). Thus, hemoglobin A's greater 2,3-DPG binding lowers its oxygen affinity compared with hemoglobin F. Moreover, during pregnancy, maternal 2,3-DPG levels are greater, and because fetal erythrocytes have lower concentrations of 2,3-DPG, fetal cells have increased oxygen affinity.

The amount of hemoglobin F in fetal erythrocytes begins to decrease in the last weeks of pregnancy. At term, approximately three fourths of total hemoglobin levels are hemoglobin F. During the first 6 to 12 months of life, the hemoglobin F proportion continues to decline and eventually reaches the low levels found in adult erythrocytes (Pasricha, 2018).

Coagulation Factors

With the exception of fibrinogen, other hemostatic proteins do not exist in embryonic forms. The fetus starts producing normal, adult-type procoagulant, fibrinolytic, and anticoagulant proteins by 12 weeks. Because they do not cross the placenta, their concentrations at birth are markedly below the levels that develop within a few weeks of life (Corrigan, 1992). In normal neonates, the levels of factors II, VII, IX, X, and XI, and of protein S, protein C, antithrombin, and plasminogen, all approximate 50 percent of adult levels. In contrast, levels of factors V, VIII, XIII, and fibrinogen are closer to adult values (Saracco, 2009). Maternal vitamin K deficiency has been associated with fetal cerebral hemorrhage (Goto, 2018). Without prophylactic treatment, the levels of vitamin K–dependent coagulation factors usually drop even further during the first few days after birth. This decline is amplified in breastfed infants and may lead to newborn hemorrhage (Chap. 33, p. 606). Schott (2018) and Konstantinidi (2019) and their colleagues have provided thromboelastographic parameters for both healthy and sick term newborns.

Fetal fibrinogen, which appears as early as 5 weeks, has the same amino acid composition as adult fibrinogen but different properties (Klagsbrun, 1988). It forms a less compressible clot, and the fibrin monomer has a lower degree of aggregation (Heimark, 1988). Although plasma fibrinogen levels at birth are less than those in nonpregnant adults, the protein is functionally more active than adult fibrinogen (Ignjatovic, 2011). Neonates have higher cord plasma levels and fibronectin-fibrinogen complexes compared with maternal levels (Lis-Kuberka, 2018).

Levels of functional fetal factor XIII (fibrin stabilizing factor) are significantly reduced compared with those in adults (Henriksson, 1974). Nielsen (1969) described low levels of plasminogen and elevated fibrinolytic activity in cord plasma compared with that of maternal plasma. Platelet counts in cord blood are in the normal range for nonpregnant adults.

Despite this relative reduction in procoagulants, the fetus appears to be protected from hemorrhage, and fetal bleeding is rare. Even after invasive fetal procedures such as cordocentesis, excessive bleeding is uncommon. Ney and coworkers (1989) have shown that amnionic fluid thromboplastins and a factor(s) in Wharton jelly combine to aid coagulation at the umbilical cord puncture site.

Various *thrombophilias* may cause thromboses and pregnancy complications in adults (Chap. 55, p. 976). If the fetus inherits one of these mutations, thrombosis and infarction can develop in the placenta or fetal organs. This is usually seen with homozygous inheritance. One example is homozygous protein C mutation, which causes *purpura fulminans*.

Plasma Proteins

Liver enzymes and other plasma proteins are produced by the fetus, and these levels do not correlate with maternal levels (Weiner, 1992). Concentrations of plasma proteins, which include albumin, lactic dehydrogenase, aspartate and alanine aminotransferases, and γ-glutamyl transpeptidase, all rise. Conversely, prealbumin levels decline with gestational age (Fryer, 1993). At birth, mean total plasma protein and albumin concentrations in fetal blood are similar to maternal levels. This is important because albumin binds unconjugated bilirubin to prevent *kernicterus* in the newborn (Chap. 33, p. 606).

■ Respiratory System

Lung maturation and biochemical indices of functional fetal lung maturity are important predictors of early neonatal outcome. Morphological or functional immaturity at birth leads to the development of the *respiratory distress syndrome* (Chap. 34, p. 615). A sufficient amount of surface-active materials—collectively referred to as *surfactant*—in the amnionic fluid is evidence of fetal lung maturity (Warburton, 2017). As Liggins (1994) emphasized, however, the structural and morphological maturation of fetal lung also is extraordinarily important to proper lung function.

Anatomical Maturation

Like the branching of a tree, lung development proceeds along an established timetable. As with other organ systems, gene activation and deactivation control these functions (Miller, 2019). The lung primordium is an outgrowth from foregut endoderm at approximately 20 days' gestation. The lung bud arises at 25 days and within this framework, four essential lung

development stages are described by Moore (2020). First, the *pseudoglandular stage* entails growth of the intrasegmental bronchial tree between the 5th and 17th weeks. The microvasculature begins to develop, and the lung looks microscopically like a gland. Second, during the *canalicular stage*, from 16 to 25 weeks, the bronchial cartilage plates extend peripherally. Each terminal bronchiole gives rise to several respiratory bronchioles, and each of these in turn divides into multiple saccular ducts. Third, the *terminal sac stage* begins after 25 weeks. During this stage, primordial alveoli give rise to primitive pulmonary alveoli, that is, the terminal sacs. Simultaneously, an extracellular matrix develops from proximal to distal lung segments until term. The fourth *alveolar stage* begins during the late fetal period and continues well into childhood. An extensive capillary network is built, the lymphatic system forms, and type II pneumocytes begin to produce surfactant. At birth, only approximately 15 percent of the adult number of alveoli is present. Thus, the lung continues to grow and add more alveoli for up to 8 years.

Various insults can upset this process, and their timing determines the sequelae. During the embryonic phase, abnormalities in lung development include esophageal and tracheal atresia, tracheoesophageal fistula, and pulmonary agenesis. Another example is fetal renal agenesis in which amnionic fluid is absent at the beginning of lung growth, and major defects occur in all four developmental stages. Similarly, the fetus with membrane rupture and subsequent oligohydramnios before 20 weeks usually exhibits nearly normal bronchial branching and cartilage development but has immature alveoli. In contrast, membrane rupture after 24 weeks may have minimal long-term effect on pulmonary structure. Last, vitamin D is thought to be important for several aspects of lung development (Hart, 2015; Ustun, 2020).

Pulmonary Surfactant

After the first breath, the terminal sacs must remain expanded despite the pressure imparted by the tissue-to-air interface, and surfactant keeps them from collapsing. Surfactant is formed in type II pneumocytes that line the alveoli. These cells are characterized by multivesicular bodies that produce the lamellar bodies in which surfactant is assembled. During late fetal life, at a time when the alveolus is characterized by a water-to-tissue interface, the intact lamellar bodies are secreted from the lung and swept into the amnionic fluid during respiratory-like movements that are termed fetal breathing. At birth, with the first breath, an air-to-tissue interface is established in the lung alveolus. Surfactant uncoils from the lamellar bodies and spreads to line the alveolus to prevent alveolar collapse during expiration. Thus, the fetal lungs' capacity to produce surfactant establishes lung maturity.

Surfactant Composition. Gluck (1972) and Hallman (1976) and their coworkers approximated that 90 percent of surfactant dry weight is lipid, specifically glycerophospholipids. Proteins account for the other 10 percent. Nearly 80 percent of the glycerophospholipids are phosphatidylcholines (lecithins). The principal active component that constitutes half of surfactant is a specific lecithin, which is dipalmitoyl phosphatidylcholine (DPPC or PC). Phosphatidylglycerol (PG) accounts for another 8 to 15 percent. Its precise role is unclear because newborns without PG usually do well. The other major constituent is phosphatidylinositol (PI).

Surfactant Synthesis. Biosynthesis takes place in the type II pneumocytes. The apoproteins are produced in the endoplasmic reticulum, and the glycerophospholipids are synthesized by cooperative interactions of several cellular organelles. Phospholipid is the primary surface tension–lowering component of surfactant, whereas the apoproteins aid the forming and reforming of a surface film.

The major apoprotein is surfactant A (SP-A), which is a glycoprotein with a molecular weight of 28,000 to 35,000 Da. It is synthesized in the type II cells, and its content in amnionic fluid increases with gestational age and fetal lung maturity. *SP-A* gene expression is demonstrable by 29 weeks (Mendelson, 2005). Specifically, *SP-A1* and *SP-A2* are two separate genes on chromosome 10, and their regulation is distinctive and different (McCormick, 1994).

Corticosteroids and Fetal Lung Maturation. Since Liggins (1969) observed accelerated lung maturation in lamb fetuses given glucocorticosteroid prior to preterm delivery, many suggested that fetal cortisol stimulates lung maturation and surfactant synthesis. It is unlikely, however, that corticosteroids are the only stimulus for augmented surfactant formation. But, when these are administered at certain critical times, they may improve preterm fetal lung maturation. Antenatal betamethasone and dexamethasone for lung maturation and neonatal replacement surfactant therapy are discussed in Chapter 34 (p. 617).

Breathing

Fetal respiratory muscles develop early, and chest wall movements are detected sonographically as early as 11 weeks (Koos, 2014). Breathing is essential for normal lung growth and development. From the beginning of the fourth month, the fetus engages in respiratory movement sufficiently intense to move amnionic fluid in and out of the respiratory tract. Some extrauterine events have effects on fetal breathing, for example, maternal exercise stimulates it (Sussman, 2016).

■ Digestive System

After its embryogenic formation from the yolk sac as the primordial gut, the digestive system forms the intestines and various appendages. The foregut gives rise to the pharynx, lower respiratory system, esophagus, stomach, proximal duodenum, liver, pancreas, and biliary tree. The midgut gives rise to the distal duodenum, jejunum, ileum, cecum, appendix, and the right colon. The hindgut develops into the left colon, rectum, and the superior portion of the anal canal that empties into the cloaca (Kruepunga, 2018). Numerous malformations develop in these structures from improper rotation, fixation, and partitioning. A common example is one of the several types of intestinal atresias (Moore, 2020; Stoll, 2017).

Swallowing begins at 10 to 12 weeks, coincident with the ability of the small intestine to undergo peristalsis and

to actively transport glucose (Koldovsky, 1965). As a correlate, neonates born preterm may have swallowing difficulties because of immature gut motility (Singendonk, 2014). Much of the water in swallowed fluid is absorbed, and unabsorbed matter is propelled to the lower colon. Gitlin (1974) demonstrated that late in pregnancy, approximately 800 mg of soluble protein is ingested daily by the fetus. The stimulus for swallowing is unclear, but the fetal neural analogue of thirst, gastric emptying, and change in the amnionic fluid composition are potential factors (Boyle, 1992). The fetal taste buds may play a role because saccharin injected into amnionic fluid increases swallowing, whereas injection of a noxious chemical inhibits it (Liley, 1972).

Fetal swallowing appears to have little effect on amnionic fluid volume early in pregnancy because the volume swallowed is small compared with the total. However, term fetuses swallow between 200 and 760 mL per day—an amount comparable to that of the term neonate (Pritchard, 1966). Thus at term, amnionic fluid volume regulation can be substantially altered by fetal swallowing. For example, as discussed in Chapter 14 (p. 256), if swallowing is inhibited, hydramnios is common.

Hydrochloric acid and some digestive enzymes are present in the stomach and small intestine in minimal amounts in the early fetus. Intrinsic factor is detectable by 11 weeks, and pepsinogen by 16 weeks. The preterm neonate, depending on its gestational age, may have transient deficiencies of these enzymes. The small intestinal histological appearance is normal (Meier, 2018).

Stomach emptying appears to be stimulated primarily by volume. A dilated stomach suggests obstruction (McCormick, 2021). Movement of amnionic fluid through the gastrointestinal system may enhance growth and development of the alimentary canal. That said, other regulatory factors likely are involved. For example, anencephalic fetuses, in which swallowing is limited, often have normal amnionic fluid volume and normal-appearing gastrointestinal tract.

Meconium

Fetal bowel contents consist of various products of secretion, such as glycerophospholipids from the lung, desquamated fetal cells, lanugo, scalp hair, and vernix. It also contains undigested debris from swallowed amnionic fluid. The dark greenish-black color forms from bile pigments, especially biliverdin. Meconium can pass from normal bowel peristalsis in the mature fetus or from vagal stimulation. It can also pass when hypoxia stimulates arginine vasopressin (AVP) release from the fetal pituitary gland. AVP stimulates colonic smooth muscle to contract, resulting in intraamnionic defecation (Rosenfeld, 1985). Meconium is toxic to the respiratory system, and its inhalation can result in *meconium aspiration syndrome*.

Liver

The hepatic diverticulum is an outgrowth of the endodermal lining of the foregut. Epithelial liver cords and primordial cells differentiate into hepatic parenchyma. By 9 weeks, the liver accounts for 10 percent of fetal weight (Moore, 2020). Serum liver enzyme levels increase with gestational age. As noted, in early gestation, fetal hepatic hemopoiesis is a key source of blood and immune cells (p. 125) (Popescu, 2019).

The fetal liver has a gestational-age-related capacity to conjugate bilirubin, which forms from hemoglobin breakdown (Morioka, 2015). Because of hepatic immaturity, the preterm newborn is at particular risk for unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia (Chap. 33, p. 606). And because the life span of normal fetal macrocytic erythrocytes is shorter than that of the adult, relatively more unconjugated bilirubin is produced. Of this unconjugated form, only a small fraction is conjugated by the fetal liver, and this is excreted into the intestine and ultimately oxidized to biliverdin. Instead, most of the unconjugated bilirubin is excreted into the amnionic fluid after 12 weeks and transferred across the placenta (Bashore, 1969). Importantly, placental bilirubin transfer is bidirectional. Thus, a woman with severe hemolysis has excess unconjugated bilirubin that readily passes to the fetus and then into the amnionic fluid. Conversely, conjugated bilirubin is not exchanged to any significant degree between mother and fetus.

Most fetal cholesterol derives from hepatic synthesis, which satisfies the large demand for low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol by the fetal adrenal glands. However, an estimated 20 to 50 percent of fetal cholesterol originates from the mother, is transferred through the placenta, and released to circulating fetal apolipoproteins (Baardman, 2012; Pecks, 2014). Fetuses with growth restriction have lower cholesterol levels due to diminished fetal synthesis rather than diminished maternal supply (Pecks, 2019).

Hepatic glycogen is present in low concentration during the second trimester, but near term, levels rise rapidly and markedly to reach concentrations that are two- to threefold higher than those in the adult liver. After birth, glycogen content falls precipitously.

Pancreas

This gland arises from dorsal and ventral pancreatic buds from the endoderm of the foregut (Moore, 2020). Gene regulation of its development has been reviewed (Jennings, 2015). Insulin-containing granules can be identified by 9 to 10 weeks, and insulin is detectable in fetal plasma at 12 weeks (Adam, 1969). Between 19 and 36 weeks, Kivilevitch and associates (2017) were able to visualize the pancreas sonographically in 60 percent of fetuses.

The fetal pancreas responds to hyperglycemia by secreting insulin (Obenshain, 1970). Islets of Langerhans are enlarged in fetuses of mothers with metabolic abnormalities (Avagliano, 2019). These fetuses likely can be identified by sonographic pancreatic hyperechogenicity (Akkaya, 2018). Glucagon has been identified in the fetal pancreas at 8 weeks. Although hypoglycemia does not cause an increase in fetal glucagon levels, similar stimuli do so by 12 hours after birth (Chez, 1975).

Most pancreatic enzymes are present by 16 weeks. Trypsin, chymotrypsin, phospholipase A, and lipase are found in the 14-week fetus, and their concentrations increase with gestational age (Werlin, 1992). Amylase has been identified in amnionic fluid at 14 weeks (Davis, 1986). The exocrine function of the fetal pancreas is limited. Physiologically important

secretion occurs only after stimulation by a secretagogue such as acetylcholine, which is released locally after vagal stimulation (Werlin, 1992). Cholecystokinin normally is released only after protein ingestion and thus ordinarily is not found in the fetus.

Urinary System

Renal development involves interaction between pluripotential stem cells, undifferentiated mesenchymal cells, and epithelial components (Fanos, 2015). Two primitive urinary systems—the pronephros and the mesonephros—precede development of the metanephros, which forms the final kidney. The pronephros involutes by 2 weeks, and the mesonephros produces urine at 5 weeks and degenerates by 11 to 12 weeks. Failure of these two structures either to form or to regress may result in anomalous urinary system development. Between 9 and 12 weeks, the ureteric bud and the nephrogenic blastema interact to produce the metanephros. Glomeruli develop and filtration begins by week 9 (Moore, 2020). The kidney and ureter develop from intermediate mesoderm. The bladder and urethra develop from the urogenital sinus. The bladder also develops in part from the allantois. Urogenital embryology is a focus of Chapter 3.

By week 14, the loop of Henle is functional and reabsorption occurs (Smith, 1992). New nephrons continue to be formed until 36 weeks (Lindström, 2018). In preterm neonates, their formation continues after birth. Although the fetal kidneys produce urine, their ability to concentrate and modify the pH is limited even in the mature fetus. Fetal urine is hypotonic with respect to fetal plasma and has low electrolyte concentrations.

Renal vascular resistance is high, and the filtration fraction is low compared with adult values (Smith, 1992). Fetal renal blood flow and thus urine production are controlled or influenced by the renin-angiotensin system, the sympathetic nervous system, prostaglandins, kallikrein, and atrial natriuretic peptide. The glomerular filtration rate increases with gestational age from less than 0.1 mL/min at 12 weeks to 0.3 mL/min at 20 weeks. In later gestation, the rate remains constant when corrected for fetal weight (Smith, 1992). Hemorrhage or hypoxia generally decreases renal blood flow, glomerular filtration rate, and urine output.

Urine usually is found in the bladder even in small fetuses. The fetal kidneys start producing urine at 12 weeks. By 18 weeks, they are producing 7 to 14 mL/d, and at term, this increases to 650 mL/d (Wladimiroff, 1974). Maternally administered furosemide augments fetal urine formation, whereas uteroplacental insufficiency, fetal-growth restriction, and other fetal disorders can lower it. Obstruction of the urethra, bladder, ureters, or renal pelves can damage renal parenchyma and distort fetal anatomy (Müller Brochut, 2014). Pathological correlates and prenatal therapy of urinary tract obstruction are discussed in Chapter 19 (p. 376).

Kidneys are not essential for survival in utero but influence control of amnionic fluid composition and volume. Thus, abnormalities that cause chronic fetal anuria are usually accompanied by oligohydramnios and pulmonary hypoplasia (Cotton, 2017).

Endocrine Gland Development

The fetal endocrine system is functional for some time before the central nervous system reaches maturity (Mulchahey, 1987).

Pituitary Gland

The anterior pituitary gland develops from oral ectoderm—the *Rathke pouch*—whereas the posterior pituitary gland derives from neuroectoderm. Embryonic development involves a complex and highly spatiotemporally regulated network of signaling molecules and transcription factors (Bancalari, 2012; Montenegro, 2019).

Anterior and Intermediate Lobes. The adenohypophysis, or anterior pituitary, differentiates into five cell types that secrete six protein hormones. Of these types, lactotropes produce prolactin (PRL), somatotropes produce growth hormone (GH), corticotropes produce adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), thyrotropes produce thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), and gonadotropes produce luteinizing hormone (LH) and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH).

ACTH is first detected in the fetal pituitary gland at 7 weeks, and GH and LH have been identified by 13 weeks. By the end of the 17th week, the fetal pituitary gland synthesizes and stores all pituitary hormones. Moreover, the fetal pituitary is responsive to tropic hormones and is capable of secreting these early in gestation (Grumbach, 1974). The fetal pituitary secretes β-endorphin, and cord blood levels of β-endorphin and β-lipotropin rise with fetal arterial partial pressure of carbon dioxide ($Paco_2$) (Browning, 1983).

The intermediate lobe in the fetal pituitary gland is well developed. The cells of this structure begin to disappear before term and are absent from the adult pituitary.

Neurohypophysis. The posterior pituitary gland or neurohypophysis is well developed by 10 to 12 weeks, and oxytocin and arginine vasopressin are demonstrable. Both hormones probably function in the fetus to conserve water by actions directed largely at the lung and placenta rather than kidney. Vasopressin levels in umbilical cord plasma are strikingly higher than maternal levels (Chard, 1971).

Thyroid Gland

The thyroid primordium arises from the endoderm of the primordial pharynx (Moore, 2020). The thyroid migrates to its final position, and the obliterated thyroglossal duct connects to the foramen cecum of the tongue.

The pituitary–thyroid system is functional by the end of the first trimester. By 10 to 12 weeks, the thyroid gland is able to synthesize hormones, and thyrotropin, thyroxine, and thyroid-binding globulin (TBG) have been detected in fetal serum as early as 11 weeks (Bernal, 2007). Thyroid follicles have formed and colloid is present. The placenta actively concentrates iodine on the fetal side, and by 12 weeks and throughout pregnancy, the fetal thyroid concentrates iodine more avidly than does the maternal thyroid. Thus, maternal administration of either radioiodine or appreciable amounts of ordinary iodine is hazardous after this time (Chap. 66, p. 1174). Normal fetal levels of free thyroxine (T_4), free triiodothyronine (T_3), and TBG rise

steadily throughout gestation (Ballabio, 1989). Compared with adult levels, by 36 weeks, fetal serum concentrations of TSH are higher, total and free T_3 concentrations are lower, and T_4 is similar. This suggests that the fetal pituitary may not become sensitive to feedback until late pregnancy.

Fetal thyroid hormone plays a role in the normal development of virtually all fetal tissues, especially the brain (Andersen, 2018; Jansen, 2019). Congenital hypothyroidism is a heterogenous disorder for which several candidate genes have been identified (Moore, 2020). With hypothyroidism, it was previously believed that normal fetal growth and development provided evidence that T_4 was not essential for fetal growth. It is now known, however, that growth proceeds normally because small quantities of maternal T_4 prevent antenatal cretinism in fetuses with thyroid agenesis (Forhead, 2014; Vulsma, 1989). As discussed in Chapter 61 (p. 1098), the fetus with congenital hypothyroidism typically does not develop stigmata of cretinism until after birth (Abduljabbar, 2012). Because administration of thyroid hormone will prevent this, by state law, all newborns are tested for high serum levels of TSH (Chap. 32, p. 594).

The placenta prevents substantial passage of maternal thyroid hormones to the fetus by rapidly deiodinating maternal T_4 and T_3 to form reverse T_3, a relatively inactive thyroid hormone. Several antithyroid antibodies cross the placenta when present in high concentrations (Pelag, 2002). Those include the long-acting thyroid stimulators (LATS), LATS-protector (LATS-P), and thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulin (TSI). Congenital hyperthyroidism develops when maternal thyroid-stimulating antibody crosses the placenta to stimulate the fetal gland to secrete thyroxine (Donnelley, 2015). These fetuses develop large goiters as shown in Figure 61-3 (p. 1092). They also display tachycardia, hepatosplenomegaly, hematological abnormalities, craniosynostosis, and growth restriction. As children, they have perceptual motor difficulties, hyperactivity, and reduced growth (Johns, 2018).

Immediately after birth, thyroid function and metabolism undergo major change. Cooling to room temperature evokes a sudden and marked increase in TSH secretion. This in turn causes a progressive increase in serum T_4 levels that are maximal 24 to 36 hours after birth. There are nearly simultaneous elevations of serum T_3 levels.

Adrenal Glands

These glands develop from two separate tissues. The medulla derives from neural crest ectoderm, whereas the fetal and adult cortex arise from intermediate mesoderm. The gland grows rapidly through cell proliferation and angiogenesis, cellular migration, hypertrophy, and apoptosis (Ishimoto, 2011). Expression of the *Kiss1R* gene, alone or in concert with corticotropin-releasing hormone, stimulates fetal adrenal growth (Katugampola, 2017). Fetal glands are enormous in relation to body size and are 10 to 20 times larger than adult glands (Karsli, 2019; Moore, 2020). The bulk is made up of the inner or fetal zone of the adrenal cortex and involutes rapidly after birth. This zone is scant to absent in rare instances in which the fetal pituitary gland is congenitally absent. The function of the fetal adrenal glands is discussed in Chapter 5 (p. 102).

Immunological System

Infections in utero have provided an opportunity to examine mechanisms of the fetal immune response (Chap. 67, p. 1182). Evidence of immunological competence has been reported as early as 13 weeks (Stabile, 1988). In cord blood at or near term, the average level for most components approximates half that of the adult values.

B cells differentiate from pluripotent hemopoietic stem cells that migrate to the liver (Berthault, 2017; Melchers, 2015). Despite this, in the absence of a direct antigenic stimulus such as infection, fetal plasma immunoglobulins consist almost totally of transferred maternal immunoglobulin G (IgG). Thus, antibodies in the newborn most often reflect maternal immunological experiences (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019). The interaction between maternal and fetal T cells is described in Chapter 5 (p. 93).

Immunoglobulin G

Maternal IgG transport correlates with placental Fc receptor expression (Lozano, 2018). Fetal transport begins at approximately 16 weeks and increases thereafter. Because the bulk of IgG is acquired during the last 4 weeks, preterm neonates are poorly endowed with protective maternal antibodies. Newborns begin to slowly produce IgG, and adult values are not attained until age 3 years. In certain situations, the transfer of IgG antibodies from mother to fetus can be harmful rather than protective. The classic example is hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn resulting from Rh-antigen alloimmunization (Chap. 18, p. 353).

Immunoglobulins M and A

In the adult, production of immunoglobulin M (IgM) in response to an antigenic stimulus is superseded in a week or so predominantly by IgG production. Similarly, very little IgM is produced by normal fetuses not exposed to infection, but with infection, the IgM response predominates and remains so for weeks to months in the newborn. And, because IgM is not transported from the mother, any IgM in the fetus or newborn is that which it produced. Thus, specific IgM levels in umbilical cord blood may be elevated in those with congenital infection. According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019), elevated IgM levels are usually found in newborns with congenital infection such as rubella, cytomegalovirus infection, or toxoplasmosis. In infants, adult levels of IgM are normally attained by age 9 months.

Immunoglobulin A (IgA) ingested in colostrum provides mucosal protection against enteric infections. There is only a small amount of fetal secretory IgA found in amnionic fluid (Quan, 1999).

Lymphocytes and Monocytes

The immune system develops early, and B lymphocytes are derived from primordial stem cells and appear in fetal liver by 9 weeks and in blood and spleen by 12 weeks (Moore, 2020). T lymphocytes begin to leave the thymus at approximately 14 weeks. Despite this, the newborn responds poorly to immunization, and especially poorly to bacterial capsular

polysaccharides. This immature response may stem from a deficient response of newborn B cells to polyclonal activators or from a lack of T cells that proliferate in response to specific stimuli (Hayward, 1983). In the newborn, monocytes are able to process and present antigen when tested with maternal antigen-specific T cells. DNA methylation patterns are developmentally regulated during monocyte-macrophage differentiation and contribute to the antiinflammatory phenotype in macrophages (Kim, 2012).

■ Musculoskeletal System

The origin of most muscles and bones is mesodermal. MYOD is a member of the family of myogenic regulatory factors that activates transcription of muscle-specific genes (Moore, 2020). The limb buds appear by the fourth week. Most skeletal muscle derives from myogenic precursor cells in the somites. The skeleton arises from condensed mesenchyme—embryonic connective tissue—which eventually forms hyaline cartilage models of the bones. Osteoclasts arise from erythro-myeloid progenitors (Jacome-Galarza, 2019). By the end of the embryonic period, ossification centers have developed, and bones harden by endochondral ossification.

ENERGY AND NUTRITION

Because of the small amount of yolk in the human ovum, growth of the embryofetus is dependent on maternal nutrients during the first 2 months. During the first few days after implantation, blastocyst nutrition comes from the interstitial fluid of the endometrium and the surrounding maternal tissue.

Maternal adaptations to store and transfer nutrients to the fetus are discussed in Chapter 4 and summarized here. Three major maternal storage depots are the liver, muscle, and adipose tissue. These maternal depots and the storage hormone insulin are intimately involved in the metabolism of the nutrients absorbed from the gut. Maternal insulin secretion is sustained by increased serum levels of glucose and amino acids. The net effect is maternal storage of glucose as glycogen primarily in liver and muscle, retention of some amino acids as protein, and storage of the excess as fat (Abeysekera, 2016). Storage of maternal fat peaks in the second trimester and then declines as fetal energy demands rise in the third trimester (Pipe, 1979). Interestingly, the placenta appears to act as a nutrient sensor, altering transport based on the maternal supply and environmental stimuli (Jansson, 2006b, Wesolowski, 2017).

During times of fasting, glucose is released from glycogen, but maternal glycogen stores cannot provide an adequate amount of glucose to meet requirements for maternal energy and fetal growth. Augmentation is provided by cleavage of triacylglycerols, stored in adipose tissue, which results in free fatty acids and activation of lipolysis.

■ Glucose and Fetal Growth

Although dependent on the mother for nutrition, the fetus also actively participates in providing its own nutrition. At midpregnancy, fetal serum glucose concentration is independent of maternal levels and may exceed them. Glucose is the major nutrient for fetal growth and energy. Logically, mechanisms exist to minimize maternal glucose use so that the limited maternal supply is available to the fetus. As one example, human placental lactogen (hPL) is a hormone normally abundant in the mother but not the fetus and has an insulin antagonist effect. It blocks the peripheral uptake and use of glucose, while instead promoting mobilization and use of free fatty acids by maternal tissues (Chap. 5, p. 98). This hormone is also diabetogenic as discussed in Chapter 60 (p. 1068). Last, intrinsic epigenetic changes play a role (Hansen, 2017). For example, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is associated with fetal macrosomia (Lee, 2019).

Glucose Transport

The transfer of D-glucose across cell membranes is accomplished by a carrier-mediated, stereospecific, nonconcentrating process of facilitated diffusion. There are 14 glucose transport proteins (GLUTs) encoded by the *SLC2A* gene family and characterized by tissue-specific distribution (Joshi, 2021). Several of these are expressed by trophoblast (Stanirowski, 2017). GLUT-1, GLUT-3, and GLUT-4 primarily aid glucose uptake by the placenta and are located in the plasma membrane of the syncytiotrophoblast microvilli (Acosta, 2015; James-Allan, 2019). DNA methylation regulates expression of placental *GLUT* genes, with epigenetic modification across gestation (Novakovic, 2013). Methylation increases as pregnancy advances and is induced by almost all growth factors.

In addition to its transport role, the placenta uses glucose for its metabolic functions. Fetal and placental glucose consumption are inversely related. Thus, placental glucose use is a key modulator of maternal-fetal transfer (Michelsen, 2019).

Lactate is a product of glucose metabolism and transported across the placenta also by facilitated diffusion. By way of cotransport with hydrogen ions, lactate is probably transported as lactic acid.

Fetal Macrosomia

The precise biomolecular events in the pathophysiology of fetal macrosomia are not defined. Nonetheless, fetal hyperinsulinemia is clearly one driving force (Luo, 2012). As discussed with fetal-growth disorders in Chapter 47 (p. 824), insulin-like growth factor and leptin and other adipokines are important regulators of placental development and function (Gao, 2012). Maternal obesity begets fetal macrosomia. In addition, theories suggest that maternal obesity affects fetal cardiomyocyte growth that may result in fetal cardiomyopathy or even congenital heart disease (Roberts, 2015).

■ Leptin

This polypeptide hormone was originally identified as a product of adipocytes and a regulator of energy homeostasis by curbing appetite. It also contributes to angiogenesis, hemopoiesis, osteogenesis, pulmonary maturation, and neuroendocrine, immune, and reproductive functions (Briffa, 2015). Leptin is produced by the mother, fetus, and placenta. It is expressed in syncytiotrophoblast and fetal vascular endothelial cells. Of

placental production, 5 percent enters the fetal circulation, whereas 95 percent is transferred to the mother (Hauguel-de Mouzon, 2006).

Leptin concentrations peak in amnionic fluid at midpregnancy (Scott-Finley, 2015). Fetal serum leptin levels begin increasing at approximately 34 weeks and are correlated with fetal weight. This hormone is involved in the development and maturation of the heart, brain, kidneys, and pancreas, and its levels are decreased with fetal-growth restriction (Briffa, 2015; Yalinbas, 2019). Abnormal levels are associated with fetal-growth disorders, gestational diabetes, and preeclampsia, but not maternal obesity (Allbrand, 2018; Gurugubelli, 2018). Postpartum, leptin levels decline in both the newborn and mother. Perinatal leptin is associated with the development of metabolic syndromes later in life (Briffa, 2015).

Free Fatty Acids and Triglycerides

The term newborn has a large proportion of fat, which averages 15 percent of body weight (Kimura, 1991). Thus, late in pregnancy, a substantial part of the substrate transferred to the human fetus is stored as fat. Although maternal obesity raises placental fatty acid uptake and fetal fat deposition, it does not appear to affect fetal organ growth (Dubé, 2012). Neutral fat in the form of triglycerides does not cross the placenta, but glycerol does. Despite this, evidence supports that abnormal maternal concentrations of triglycerides—both low and high levels—are associated with major congenital anomalies (Nederlof, 2015).

There is preferential placental-fetal transfer of long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids (Fonseca, 2018). Lipoprotein lipase is present on the maternal but not on the fetal side of the placenta. This arrangement favors hydrolysis of triacylglycerols in the maternal intervillous space yet preserves these neutral lipids in fetal blood. Fatty acids transferred to the fetus can be converted to triglycerides in the fetal liver.

The placental uptake and use of LDL is an alternative mechanism for fetal assimilation of essential fatty acids and amino acids (Chap. 5, p. 100). LDL binds to specific receptors in the coated-pit regions of the syncytiotrophoblast microvilli. The large LDL particle, measuring about 250,000 Da, is taken up by a process of receptor-mediated endocytosis. The apoprotein and cholesterol esters of LDL are hydrolyzed by lysosomal enzymes in the syncytium to yield: (1) cholesterol for progesterone synthesis; (2) free amino acids, including essential amino acids; and (3) essential fatty acids, primarily linoleic acid. Interestingly, maternal cholesterol is obligatory for steroid hormone synthesis, but increasing levels are associated with fetal aortic atherogenesis (de Nigris, 2018).

Amino Acids

The placenta concentrates many amino acids in the syncytiotrophoblast, which are then transferred to the fetal side by diffusion. In cordocentesis blood samples, the amino acid concentration in umbilical cord plasma is greater than in maternal venous or arterial plasma. DNA methylation serves to regulate transporter gene expression (Simner, 2017). Transport system activity is influenced by gestational age and environmental factors. These include heat stress, hypoxia, under- and overnutrition, and hormones such as glucocorticoids, growth hormone, and leptin (Briffa, 2015). Trophoblastic mammalian target of rapamycin complex 1 (mTORC1) regulates placental amino acid transporters and modulates transfer across the placenta (Jansson, 2012). In vivo studies suggest an upregulation of transport for certain amino acids and a greater delivery rate of these to the fetuses of women with gestational diabetes associated with fetal overgrowth (Jansson, 2006a).

Proteins

Placental transfer of larger proteins is limited, but there are exceptions. As discussed, IgG crosses the placenta in large amounts via endocytosis and trophoblast Fc receptors. IgG transfer depends on maternal levels of total IgG, gestational age, placental integrity, IgG subclass, and antigenic potential (Palmeira, 2012). Conversely, the larger immunoglobulins—IgA and IgM—of maternal origin are effectively excluded from the fetus.

Ions and Trace Metals

Calcium and phosphorus are actively transported from mother to fetus. Calcium is transferred for fetal skeletal mineralization (Olausson, 2012). A calcium-binding protein is produced in placenta. Parathyroid hormone–related protein (PTH-rP), as the name implies, acts as a surrogate PTH in many systems (Chap. 5, p. 99). PTH is not found in fetal plasma, but PTH-rP is present, suggesting that PTH-rP is the fetal parathormone (Martin, 2016). The expression of PTH-rP in cytotrophoblasts is modulated by the extracellular concentration of Ca^{2+} (Hellman, 1992). It seems possible that PTH-rP synthesized in decidua, placenta, and other fetal tissues is important in fetal Ca^{2+} transfer and homeostasis.

Another example is the unidirectional transfer of iron. Typically, maternal plasma iron concentration is much lower than that in her fetus. Even with severe maternal iron-deficiency anemia, the fetal hemoglobin mass is normal.

Iodine transport is clearly attributable to a carrier-mediated, energy-requiring active process. And, as discussed in Chapter 61 (p. 1097), the placenta concentrates iodine (Velasco, 2018). The concentrations of zinc in the fetal plasma also are greater than those in maternal plasma. Conversely, copper levels in fetal plasma are less than those in maternal plasma. This fact is of particular interest because important copper-requiring enzymes are necessary for fetal development.

Placental Sequestration of Heavy Metals

The heavy metal–binding protein metallothionein-1 is expressed in human syncytiotrophoblast. This protein binds and sequesters a host of heavy metals, including zinc, copper, lead, and cadmium. Despite this, fetal exposure is variable (Caserta, 2013). For example, lead enters the fetal environment at a level 90 percent of maternal concentrations. In contrast, placental transfer of cadmium is limited (Kopp, 2012).

The most common source of environmental cadmium is cigarette smoke.

Metallothionein also binds and sequesters copper in placental tissue. This accounts for the low copper levels in cord blood (Iyengar, 2001). It is possible that cadmium provokes metallothionein synthesis in the amnion. This may cause copper sequestration, a pseudocopper deficiency, and in turn, diminished amnion tensile strength.

Vitamins

The concentration of vitamin A (retinol) is greater in fetal than in maternal plasma and is bound to retinol-binding protein and to prealbumin. Retinol-binding protein is transferred from the maternal compartment across the syncytiotrophoblast. The transport of vitamin C—ascorbic acid—from mother to fetus is accomplished by an energy-dependent, carrier-mediated process. As a result, the concentration of ascorbic acid is two to four times higher in fetal plasma than in maternal plasma (Morriss, 1994). Levels of principal vitamin D metabolites, including 1,25-dihydroxycholecalciferol, are greater in maternal plasma than in fetal plasma. The 1β-hydroxylation of 25-hydroxyvitamin D_3 is known to take place in placenta and in decidua.

PLACENTAL ROLE IN EMBRYOFETAL DEVELOPMENT

The placenta is the organ of transfer between mother and fetus. Within this bidirectional maternal-fetal interface, maternal oxygen and nutrients transfer to the fetus, whereas CO_2 and metabolic wastes are directed back to the mother. Fetal blood, which is contained in the fetal capillaries of the chorionic villi, has no direct contact with maternal blood, which remains in the intervillous space. Instead, bidirectional transfer depends on processes that allow or aid the transport through the syncytiotrophoblast that lines chorionic villi (Michelsen, 2017).

With this system, breaks in the chorionic villi permit escape of fetal/placental cells and other blood-borne material into the maternal circulation. This leakage is the mechanism by which some D-negative women become sensitized by the erythrocytes of their D-positive fetus (Chap. 18, p. 353). The escape of fetal cells can also lead to fetal microchimerism from entrance of allogeneic fetal cells, including trophoblast, into maternal blood and other organs (Rijnink, 2015). Volumes are estimated to range from 1 to 6 cells/mL at midpregnancy. Some fetal cells become "immortal" in that they persist in the maternal circulation and organs following pregnancy. As discussed in Chapter 61 (p. 1109), the clinical corollary is that some maternal autoimmune diseases such as Hashimoto thyroiditis may be provoked by such microchimerism.

Last, cell-free DNA (cfDNA) is released from syncytiotrophoblast during normal physiological cell turnover. After 10 weeks, 10 to 15 percent of all cfDNA in maternal plasma is trophoblastic DNA (Norton, 2015; Shaffer, 2018). This phenomenon underlies one maternal-serum screening method for fetal aneuploidy, which is discussed in Chapters 16 and 17 (pp. 327 and 335).

The Intervillous Space

Maternal blood within the intervillous space is the primary source of maternal–fetal transfer. Blood from the maternal spiral arteries directly bathes the trophoblast layer that surrounds the villi. Substances transferred from mother to fetus first enter the intervillous space and are then transported to the syncytiotrophoblast. As such, the chorionic villi and intervillous space function together as the fetal lung, gastrointestinal tract, and kidney.

Circulation within the intervillous space is described in Chapter 5 (p. 92). Intervillous and uteroplacental blood flow increases throughout pregnancy, and at term, the residual volume of the intervillous space approximates 140 mL. Moreover, uteroplacental blood flow near term ranges from 700 to 900 mL/min, and most of this blood apparently goes to the intervillous space (Pates, 2010).

Placental Transfer

In the terminal villi, substances that pass from maternal to fetal blood must first traverse the syncytiotrophoblast, the attenuated cytotrophoblast layer, the thinned villous stroma, and finally, the fetal capillary wall. Although this histological barrier separates maternal and fetal circulations, it is not a simple physical barrier. First, throughout pregnancy, syncytiotrophoblast actively or passively permits, facilitates, and adjusts the amount and rate of substance transfer to the fetus. As discussed in Chapter 5 (p. 92), the maternal-facing syncytiotrophoblast surface is characterized by a complex microvillus structure. The fetal-facing basal cell membrane is the site of transfer to the intravillous space. Finally, the villous capillaries are an additional site for transport from the intravillous space into fetal blood, or vice versa. In determining the effectiveness of the human placenta as an organ of transfer, several variables are important and shown in Table 7-2. Epigenetic placental changes brought about by methylation of genes engaged in nutrient transfer also play a role (Kerr, 2018).

Mechanisms of Transfer

Most substances with a molecular mass <500 Da pass readily through placental tissue by simple diffusion. These include

TABLE 7-2. Variables of Maternal-Fetal Substance Transfer

Maternal plasma concentration
Maternal carrier-protein binding
Maternal blood flow rate through the intervillous space
Trophoblast surface area size available for exchange
Physical trophoblast properties to permit simple diffusion
Trophoblast biochemical machinery for active transport
Substance metabolism by the placenta during transfer
Fetal intervillous capillary surface area size for exchange
Fetal blood concentration of the substance
Fetal carrier-protein binding
Villous capillary blood flow rate
DNA methylation of transporter genes

oxygen, CO_2, water, most electrolytes, and anesthetic gases (Carter, 2009). Some low-molecular-weight compounds undergo transfer facilitated by syncytiotrophoblast. These are usually those that have low concentrations in maternal plasma but are essential for normal fetal development.

Insulin, steroid hormones, and thyroid hormones cross the placenta, but very slowly. The hormones synthesized in situ in the syncytiotrophoblast enter both the maternal and fetal circulations, but not equally (Chap. 5, p. 86). Examples are hCG and hPL concentrations, which are much lower in fetal plasma than in maternal plasma. High-molecular-weight substances usually do not traverse the placenta, but there are important exceptions. As discussed, one is IgG—molecular weight 160,000 Da—which is transferred by way of a specific trophoblast receptor–mediated mechanism (Stach, 2014).

Although simple diffusion is an important method of placental transfer, the trophoblast and chorionic villus unit demonstrate enormous selectivity in transfer. As discussed, important in this regard is DNA methylation of transporter genes (Kerr, 2018; Simner, 2017). The net results are different metabolite concentrations on the two sides of the villus.

Transfer of Oxygen and Carbon Dioxide

Placental oxygen transfer is blood flow limited. Using estimated uteroplacental blood flow, Longo (1991) calculated oxygen delivery to be approximately 8 mL O_2/min/kg of fetal weight. Because of the continuous passage of oxygen from maternal blood in the intervillous space to the fetus, its oxygen saturation resembles that in maternal capillaries. The average oxygen saturation of intervillous blood is estimated to be 65 to 75 percent, with a partial pressure (Pao_2) of 30 to 35 mm Hg. The oxygen saturation of umbilical vein blood is similar but has a somewhat lower oxygen partial pressure (Ramsay, 1996). As noted earlier, fetal hemoglobin has a higher oxygen affinity than adult hemoglobin.

The placenta is highly permeable to CO_2, which traverses the chorionic villus by diffusion more rapidly than oxygen. Near term, the partial pressure of carbon dioxide ($Paco_2$) in the umbilical arteries averages 50 mm Hg, which is approximately 5 mm Hg higher than in the maternal intervillous blood. Fetal blood has less affinity for CO_2 than does maternal blood, thereby favoring CO_2 transfer from fetus to mother. Also, mild maternal hyperventilation results in a fall in $Paco_2$ levels, favoring a transfer of CO_2 from the fetal compartment to maternal blood.

REFERENCES

Abduljabbar MS, Afifi AM: Congenital hypothyroidism. J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab 25(102)13, 2012

Abeysekera MV, Morris JA, Davis GK, et al: Alterations in energy homeostasis to favour adipose tissue gain: a longitudinal study in healthy pregnant women. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 56(1):42, 2016

Acosta O, Ramirez VI, Lager S, et al: Increased glucose and placental GLUT-1 in large infants of obese nondiabetic mothers. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(2):227.e1, 2015

Adam PA, Teramo K, Raiha N, et al: Human fetal insulin metabolism early in gestation: response to acute elevation of the fetal glucose concentration and placental transfer of human insulin-I-131. Diabetes 18:409, 1969

Akkaya H, Büke B, Uysal G: Fetal pancreatic hyperechogenicity may be an early ultrasonographic sign of gestational diabetes mellitus. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 20:1, 2018

Allbrand M, Åman J, Lodefalk M: Placental ghrelin and leptin expression and cord blood ghrelin, adiponectin, leptin, and C-peptide levels in severe maternal obesity. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(21):2839, 2018

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Cytomegalovirus, parvovirus B19, varicella zoster, and toxoplasmosis in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 151, June 2015, Reaffirmed 2019

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: ACOG app. 2020. Available at: https://www.acog.org/membership/member-benefits/acog-app. Accessed April 5, 2020

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine: Methods for estimating the due date. Committee Opinion No. 700, May 2017, Reaffirmed 2019

Andersen SL, Andersen S, Liew Z, et al: Maternal thyroid function in early pregnancy and neuropsychological performance of the child at 5 years of age. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 103(2):660, 2018

Anderson RH, Brown NA, Mohun TJ: Insights regarding the normal and abnormal formation of the atrial and ventricular septal structures. Clin Anat 29(3):290, 2016

Arendt D: Hox genes and body segmentation. Science 361(6409):1310, 2018

Avagliano L, Mascherpa M, Massa V, et al: Fetal pancreatic Langerhans islets size in pregnancies with metabolic disorders. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(21):3589, 2019

Baardman ME, Erwich JJ, Berger RM, et al: The origin of fetal sterols in second-trimester amniotic fluid: endogenous synthesis or maternal-fetal transport? Am J Obs Gynecol 207:202 e19, 2012

Ballabio M, Nicolini U, Jowett T, et al: Maturation of thyroid function in normal human foetuses. Clin Endocrinol 31:565, 1989

Bancalari RE, Gregory LC, McCabe MJ, et al: Pituitary gland development: an update. Endocr Dev 23:1, 2012

Baron MH, Isern J, Fraser ST: The embryonic origins of erythropoiesis in mammals. Blood 119(21):4828, 2012

Bashore RA, Smith F, Schenker S: Placental transfer and disposition of bilirubin in the pregnant monkey. Am J Obstet Gynecol 103:950, 1969

Benesch R, Benesch RE, Enoki Y: The interaction of hemoglobin and its subunits with 2,3-diphosphoglycerate. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 61(3):1102, 1968

Bernal J: Thyroid hormone receptors in brain development and function. Nat Clin Pract Endocrinol Metab 3:249, 2007

Berthault C, Ramond C, Burlen-Defranoux O, et al: Asynchronous lineage priming determines commitment to T cell and B cell linages in fetal liver. Nat Immunol 18(10):1139, 2017

Boyle JT: Motility of the upper gastrointestinal tract in the fetus and neonate. In Polin RA, Fox WW (eds): Fetal and Neonatal Physiology. Philadelphia, Saunders, 1992, p 1028

Briffa JF, McAinch AG, Romano T, et al: Leptin in pregnancy and development: a contributor to adulthood disease? Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 308:E335, 2015

Browning AJF, Butt WR, Lynch SS, et al: Maternal plasma concentrations of β-lipotropin, β-endorphin and α:lipotropin throughout pregnancy. BJOG 90:1147, 1983

Canu G, Ruhrberg C: First blood: the endothelial origins of hematopoietic progenitors. Angiogenesis 24(2):199, 2021

Carter AM: Evolution of factors affecting placental oxygen transfer. Placenta 30(Suppl A):19, 2009

Caserta D, Graziano A, Lo Monte G, et al: Heavy metals and placental fetal-maternal barrier: a mini-review on the major concerns. Eur Rev Med Pharmacol Sci 17(16):198, 2013

Chard T, Hudson CN, Edwards CR, et al: Release of oxytocin and vasopressin by the human foetus during labour. Nature 234:352, 1971

Chez RA, Mintz DH, Reynolds WA, et al: Maternal-fetal plasma glucose relationships in late monkey pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 121:938, 1975

Christensen RD, Henry E, Antonio DV: Thrombocytosis and thrombocytopenia in the NICU: incidence, mechanisms and treatments. J Matern Fetal Neonat Med 25(54):15, 2012

Corrigan JJ Jr: Normal hemostasis in the fetus and newborn: Coagulation. In Polin RA, Fox WW (eds): Fetal and Neonatal Physiology. Philadelphia, Saunders, 1992, p 1368

Cotton CM: Pulmonary hypoplasia. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 22(4):250, 2017

Davis MM, Hodes ME, Munsick RA, et al: Pancreatic amylase expression in human pancreatic development. Hybridoma 5:137, 1986

Dawes GS: The umbilical circulation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 84:1634, 1962

de Nigris F, Cacciator F, Mancini FP, et al: Epigenetic hallmarks of fetal early atherosclerotic lesions in humans. JAMA Cardiol 3(12):1184, 2018

Di Donato N, Chiari S, Mirzaa GM, et al: Lissencephaly: expanded imaging and clinical classification. Am J Med Genet A 173(6):1473, 2017

DiPietro JA: Neurobehavioral assessment before birth. MRDD Res Rev 11:4, 2005

Donnelley MA, Wood C, Casey B, et al: Early severe fetal Graves disease in a mother after thyroid ablation and thyroidectomy. Obstet Gynecol 125(5):1059, 2015

Dubé E, Gravel A, Martin C, et al: Modulation of fatty acid transport and metabolism by maternal obesity in the human full-term placenta. Biol Reprod 87(1):14, 2012

Dubois J, Dehaene-Lambertz G, Kulilova S, et al: The early development of brain white matter: a review of imaging studies in fetuses, newborns and infants. Neuroscience 12:276, 2014

Duryea EL, Hawkins JS, McIntire DD, et al: A revised birth weight reference for the United States. Obstet Gynecol 124(1):16, 2014

Duryea EL, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: The rate of preterm birth in the United States is affected by the method of gestational age assignment. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213:331.e1, 2015

Fanni D, Angotzi F, Lai C, et al: Four stages of hepatic hematopoiesis in human embryos and fetuses. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(6):701, 2018

Fanos V, Loddo C, Puddu M, et al: From ureteric bud to the first glomeruli: genes, mediators, kidney alterations. Int Urol Nephrol 47(1):109, 2015

Fantasia I, Kasapoglu D, Kasapoglu T, et al: Fetal major cardiac defects and placental dysfunction at 11–13 weeks' gestation. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 51(2):194, 2018

Fineman JR, Clyman R: Fetal cardiovascular physiology. In Resnik R, Creasy RK, Iams JD, et al (eds): Creasy and Resnik's Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Principles and Practice, 7th ed. Philadelphia, Saunders, 2014, p 147

Fonseca FCPD, Mucci DB, Assumpcão RP, et al: Differential long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids status and placental transport in adolescent pregnancies. Nutrients 10(2):220, 2018

Forhead AJ, Fowden AL: Thyroid hormones in fetal growth and prepartum maturation. J Endocrinol 221(3):R87, 2014

Fryer AA, Jones P, Strange R, et al: Plasma protein levels in normal human fetuses: 13–41 weeks' gestation. BJOG 100:850, 1993

Gao L, Lv C, Xu C, et al: Differential regulation of glucose transporters mediated by CRH receptor type 1 and type 2 in human placental trophoblasts. Endocrinology 153:1464, 2012

Gitlin D: Protein transport across the placenta and protein turnover between amnionic fluid, maternal and fetal circulation. In Moghissi KS, Hafez ESE (eds): The Placenta. Springfield, Thomas, 1974

Gluck L, Kulovich MV, Eidelman AI, et al: Biochemical development of surface activity in mammalian lung. 4. Pulmonary lecithin synthesis in the human fetus and newborn and etiology of the respiratory distress syndrome. Pediatr Res 6:81, 1972

Goetzl L, Darbinian N, Goetzl EJ: Novel window on early human neurodevelopment via fetal exosomes in maternal blood. Ann Clin Transl Neurol 3(5): 381, 2016

Goto T, Karita H, Takasu M, et al: A rare case of fetal extensive intracranial hemorrhage and whole-cerebral hypoplasia due to latent maternal vitamin K deficiency. J Neonatal Perinatal Med 11(2):191, 2018

Gruenwald P: Growth of the human foetus. In McLaren A (ed): Advances in Reproductive Physiology. New York, Academic Press, 1967

Grumbach MM, Kaplan SL: Fetal pituitary hormones and the maturation of central nervous system regulation of anterior pituitary function. In Gluck L (ed): Modern Perinatal Medicine. Chicago, Year Book, 1974

Gurugubelli Krishna R, Vishnu Bhat B: Molecular mechanisms of intrauterine growth restriction. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(19):2634, 2018

Hallman M, Kulovich MV, Kirkpatrick E, et al: Phosphatidylinositol and phosphatidylglycerol in amniotic fluid: indices of lung maturity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 125:613, 1976

Hansen NS, Strasko KS, Hjort L, et al: Fetal Hyperglycemia changes human preadipocyte function in adult life. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 102(4):1141, 2017

Hart PH, Lucas RM, Walsh JP, et al: Vitamin D in fetal development: findings from a birth cohort study. Pediatrics 135(1):e167, 2015

Hauguel-de Mouzon S, Lepercq J, Catalano P: The known and unknown of leptin in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193(6):1537, 2006

Hayward AR: The human fetus and newborn: development of the immune response. Birth Defects Orig Artic Ser 19:289, 1983

Heimark R, Schwartz S: Cellular organization of blood vessels in development and disease. In Ryan U (ed): Endothelial Cells, Vol II. Boca Raton, CRC Press, 1988, p 103

Heinig K, Sage F, Robin C, et al: Development and trafficking function of haematopoietic stem cells and myeloid cells during fetal ontogeny. Cardiovasc Res 107(3):352, 2015

Hellman P, Ridefelt P, Juhlin C, et al: Parathyroid-like regulation of parathyroid hormone related protein release and cytoplasmic calcium in cytotrophoblast cells of human placenta. Arch Biochem Biophys 293:174, 1992

Henriksson P, Hedner V, Nilsson IM, et al: Fibrin-stabilization factor XIII in the fetus and the newborn infant. Pediatr Res 8:789, 1974

Hillman NH, Kallapur SG, Jobe AH: Physiology of transition from intrauterine to extrauterine life. Clin Perinatol 39(4):769, 2012

Ignjatovic V, Ilhan A, Monagle P: Evidence for age-related differences in human fibrinogen. Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis 22(2):110, 2011

Ishimoto H, Jaffe RB: Development and function of the human fetal adrenal cortex: a key component in the feto-placental unit. Endocr Rev 32(3):317, 2011

Iyengar GV, Rapp A: Human placenta as a "dual" biomarker for monitoring fetal and maternal environment with special reference to potentially toxic trace elements. Part 3: Toxic trace elements in placenta and placenta as a biomarker for these elements. Sci Total Environ 280:221, 2001

Jacome-Galarza CE, Percin GI, Muller JT, et al: Developmental origin, functional maintenance and genetic rescue of osteoclasts. Nature 568(7753):541, 2019

James-Allan LB, Arbet J, Teal SB, et al: Insulin stimulates GLUT4 trafficking to the syncytiotrophoblast basal plasma membrane in the human placenta. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 104(9):4225, 2019

Janevic T, Zeitlin J, Auger N, et al: Association of race/ethnicity with very preterm neonatal morbidities. JAMA Pediatr 172(11):1061, 2018

Jansen TA, Korevaar TI, Mulder TA, et al: Maternal thyroid function during pregnancy and child brain morphology: a time window-specific analysis of a prospective cohort. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 7(8):629, 2019

Jansson T, Aye IL, Goberdhan DC: The emerging role of mTORC1 signaling in placental nutrient-sensing. Placenta 33(Suppl 2):e23, 2012

Jansson T, Cetin I, Powell TL, et al: Placental transport and metabolism in fetal overgrowth—a workshop report. Placenta 27:109, 2006a

Jansson T, Powell TL: Human placental transport in altered fetal growth: does the placenta function as a nutrient sensor? A review. Placenta 27:S91, 2006b

Jennings RE, Berry AA, Strutt JP, et al: Human pancreas development 142(18):3126, 2015

Johns LE, Ferguson KK, Cantonwine DE, et al: Subclinical changes in maternal thyroid function parameters in pregnancy and fetal growth. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 103(4):1349, 2018

Joshi NP, Mane AR, Sahay AS, et al: Role of placental glucose transporters in determining fetal growth. Reprod Sci August 2, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Kadic AS, Predojevic M: Fetal neurophysiology according to gestational age. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 17(5):256, 2012

Karsli T, Strickland D, Livingston J, et al: Assessment of neonatal adrenal size using high resolution 2D ultrasound and its correlation with birth demographics and clinical outcomes. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(3):377, 2019

Kathiriya IS, Nora EP, Bruneau BG: Investigating the transcriptional control of cardiovascular development. Circ Res 116(4):700, 2015

Katugampola H, King PJ, Chatterjee S, et al: Kisspeptin is a novel regulator of human fetal adrenocortical development and function: a finding with important implications for the human fetoplacental unit. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 102(9):3349, 2017

Kerr B, Leiva A, Farías M, et al: Foetoplacental epigenetic changes associated with maternal metabolic dysfunction. Placenta 69:146, 2018

Kim ST, Romero R, Tarca AL: Methylome of fetal and maternal monocytes and macrophages at the feto-maternal interface. Am J Reprod Immunol 68(1):8, 2012

Kimura RE: Lipid metabolism in the fetal-placental unit. In Cowett RM (ed): Principles of Perinatal-Neonatal Metabolism. New York, Springer, 1991, p 291

Kivilevitch Z, Achiron R, Perlman S, et al: The normal fetal pancreas. J Ultrasound Med 36(10):1997, 2017

Klagsbrun M: Angiogenesis factors. In Ryan U (ed): Endothelial Cells, Vol II. Boca Raton, CRC Press, 1988, p 37

Koldovsky O, Heringova A, Jirsova U, et al: Transport of glucose against a concentration gradient in everted sacs of jejunum and ileum of human fetuses. Gastroenterology 48:185, 1965

Konstantinidi A, Sokou R, Parastatidou S, et al: Clinical application of thromboelastography/thromboelastometry (TEG/TEM) in the neonatal population: a narrative review. Semin Thromb Hemost 45(5):449, 2019

Koos BJ, Rajaee A: Fetal breathing movements and changes at birth. Adv Exp Med Biol 814:89, 2014

Kopp RS, Kumbartski M, Harth V, et al: Partition of metals in the maternal/fetal unit and lead-associated decreases of fetal iron and manganese: an observational biomonitoring approach. Arch Toxicol 86(10):1571, 2012

Kruepunga N, Hikspoors JP, Mekonen HK, et al: The development of the cloaca in the human embryo. J Anat 233(6):724, 2018

Lauridsen MH, Uldbjerg N, Henriksen TB, et al: Cerebral oxygenation measurements by magnetic resonance imaging in fetuses with and without heart defects. Circ Cardiovasc Imaging 10(11):e006459, 2017

Lee SM, Kim BJ, Koo JN, et al: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease is a risk factor for large-for-gestational-age birthweight. PLoS One 14(8): e0221400, 2019

Lessard S, Beaudoin M, Orkin SH, et al: 14q32 and let-7 microRNAs regulate transcriptional networks in fetal and adult human erythroblasts. Hum Mol Genet 27(8):141, 2018
Liggins GC: Fetal lung maturation. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 34:247, 1994
Liggins GC: Premature delivery of fetal lambs infused with glucocorticoids. J Endocrinol 45:515, 1969
Liley AW: Disorders of amniotic fluid. In Assali NS (ed): Pathophysiology of Gestation. New York, Academic Press, 1972
Lindström NO, McMahon JA, Guo J, et al: Conserved and divergent features of human and mouse kidney organogenesis. J Am Soc Nephrol 29(3):785, 2018
Lis-Kuberka J, Berghausen-Mazur M, Katnik-Prastowska I, et al: Delivery-associated presence of supramolecular fibronectin-fibrin complexes in puerperal and cord plasma. J Neonatal Perinatal Med 11(2):191, 2018
Longo LD: Respiration in the fetal-placental unit. In Cowett RM (ed): Principles of Perinatal-Neonatal Metabolism. New York, Springer, 1991, p 304
Lozano NA, Lozano A, Marini V, et al: Expression of FcRn receptor in placental tissue and its relationship with IgG levels in term and preterm newborns. Am J Reprod Immunol 80(3):e12972, 2018
Lu P, Wang Y, Liu Y, et al: Perinatal angiogenesis from preexisting coronary vessels via DLL4-NOTCH1 signalling. Nat Cell Biol 23(9):967, 2021
Luo ZC, Nuyt AM, Delvin E, et al: Maternal and fetal IGF-I and IGF-II levels, fetal growth, and gestational diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 97(5):1720, 2012
Mari G, Deter RL, Carpenter RL, et al: Noninvasive diagnosis by Doppler ultrasonography of fetal anemia due to maternal red-cell alloimmunization. Collaborative Group for Doppler Assessment of the Blood Velocity in Anemic Fetuses (Level II-I). N Engl J Med 342:9, 2000
Martin TJ: Parathyroid hormone-related protein, its regulation of cartilage and bone development, and role in treating bone diseases. Physiol Rev 96(3):831, 2016
McCormick BM, Blakemore K, Johnson CT, et al: Outcomes of both complex and isolated cases of infants with large stomach on fetal ultrasound. Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 3(1):100272, 2021
McCormick SM, Mendelson CR: Human SP-A1 and SP-A2 genes are differentially regulated during development and by cAMP and glucocorticoids. Am J Physiol 266:367, 1994
Meier CF, Camargo SM, Hunziker S, et al: Intestinal IMINO transporter SIT1 is not expressed in human newborns. Am J Physiol Gastrointest Physiol 315(5):G887, 2018
Melchers F: Checkpoints that control B cell development. J Clin Invest 125(6):2203, 2015
Mendelson CR, Condon JC: New insights into the molecular endocrinology of parturition. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 93:113, 2005
Meng H, Zhang Z, Geng H, et al: Development of the subcortical brain structures in the second trimester: assessment with 7.0-T MRI. Neuroradiology 54(10):1153, 2012
Michelsen TM, Holme AM, Henriksen T: Transplacental nutrient transfer in the human in vivo determined by 4 vessel sampling. Placenta 59 Suppl 1: S26, 2017
Michelsen TM, Holme AM, Holm MB, et al: Uteroplacental glucose uptake and fetal glucose consumption: a quantitative study in human pregnancies. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 104(3):873, 2019
Miller AJ, Dye BR, Ferrer-Torres D, et al: Generation of lung organoids from human pluripotent stem cells in vitro. Nat Protoc 41(2):518, 2019
Molina A, Pituello F: Playing with the cell cycle to build the spinal cord. Dev Biol 432(1):14, 2017
Montenegro YH, de Queiroga Nascimento D, de Assis TO, et al: The epigenetics of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis in fetal development. Ann Hum Genet 83(4):195, 2019
Moore KL, Persaud TV: The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 8th ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, 2008
Moore KL, Persaud TV, Torchia MG: The Developing Human: Clinically Oriented Embryology, 11th ed. Elsevier, Philadelphia, 2020
Morioka I, Iwatani S, Koda T, et al: Disorders of bilirubin binding to albumin and bilirubin-induced neurologic dysfunction. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 20(1):31, 2015
Morriss FH Jr, Boyd RD, Manhendren D: Placental transport. In Knobil E, Neill J (eds): The Physiology of Reproduction, Vol II. New York, Raven, 1994, p 813
Mulchahey JJ, DiBlasio AM, Martin MC, et al: Hormone production and peptide regulation of the human fetal pituitary gland. Endocr Rev 8:406, 1987
Müller Brochut AC, Thomann D, Kluwe W, et al: Fetal megacystis: experience of a single tertiary center in Switzerland over 20 years. Fetal Diagn Ther 36(3):215, 2014
Nederlof M, de Walle HE, van Poppel MN, et al: Deviant early pregnancy maternal triglyceride levels and increased risk of congenital anomalies: a prospective community-based cohort study. BJOG 122:1176, 2015
Ney JA, Fee SC, Dooley SL, et al: Factors influencing hemostasis after umbilical vein puncture in vitro. Am J Obstet Gynecol 160:424, 1989
Nielsen NC: Coagulation and fibrinolysin in normal women immediately postpartum and in newborn infants. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 48:371, 1969
Norton ME, Jacobsson B, Swamy GK, et al: Cell-free DNA analysis for noninvasive examination of trisomy. N Engl J Med 372(17):1589, 2015
Novakovic B, Gordon L, Robinson WP, et al: Glucose as a fetal nutrient: dynamic regulation of several glucose transporter genes by DNA methylation in the human placenta across gestation. J Nutr Biochem 24(1):282, 2013
Obenshain SS, Adam PAJ, King KC, et al: Human fetal insulin response to sustained maternal hyperglycemia. N Engl J Med 283:566, 1970
Olausson H, Goldberg GR, Laskey A, et al: Calcium economy in human pregnancy and lactation. Nutr Res Rev 25(1):40, 2012
Ortega JA, Sirois CL, Memi F, et al: Oxygen levels regulate the development of human cortical radial glia cells. Cereb Cortex 27(7):3736, 2017
Palmeira P, Quinello C, Silveira-Lessa AL, et al: IgG placental transfer in health and pathological pregnancies. Clin Dev Immunol 2012:985646, 2012
Pasricha SR, Drakesmith H: Hemoglobinopathies in the fetal position. N Engl J Med 379(17):1675, 2018
Pates JA, Hatab MR, McIntire DD, et al: Determining uterine blood flow in pregnancy with magnetic resonance imaging. Magn Reson Imaging 28(4):507, 2010
Pearson HA: Recent advances in hematology. J Pediatr 69:466, 1966
Pecks U, Bornemann V, Klein A, et al: Estimating fetal cholesterol synthesis rates by cord blood analysis in intrauterine growth restriction and normally grown fetuses. Lipids Health Dis 18(1):185, 2019.
Pecks U, Mohaupt MG, Hütten MC, et al: Cholesterol acceptor capacity is preserved by different mechanisms in preterm and term fetuses. Biochim Biophys Acta 1841:251, 2014
Pelag D, Cada S, Peleg A, et al: The relationship between maternal serum thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulin and fetal and neonatal thyrotoxicosis. Obstet Gynecol 99:1040, 2002
Perrine SP, Greene MF, Cohen RA, et al: A physiological delay in human fetal hemoglobin switching is associated with specific globin DNA hypomethylation. FEBS Lett 228:139, 1988
Pipe NGJ, Smith T, Halliday D, et al: Changes in fat, fat-free mass and body water in human normal pregnancy. BJOG 86:929, 1979
Popescu DM, Botting RA, Stephenson E, et al: Decoding human fetal liver haematopoiesis. Nature 574(7778):365, 2019
Pritchard JA: Fetal swallowing and amniotic fluid volume. Obstet Gynecol 28:606, 1966
Quan CP, Forestier F, Bouvet JP: Immunoglobulins of the human amniotic fluid. Am J Reprod Immunol 42:219, 1999
Ramsay MM, James DK, Steer PJ, et al (eds): Normal Values in Pregnancy. London, Elsevier, 1996, p 106
Reddy UM, Abuhamad AZ, Levine D, et al: Fetal imaging: executive summary of a joint Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, American College of Radiology, Society for Pediatric Radiology, and Society of Radiologists in Ultrasound Fetal Imaging workshop. Obstet Gynecol 123(5):1070, 2014
Rijnink EC, Penning ME, Wolterbeek R, et al: Tissue microchimerism is increased during pregnancy: a human autopsy study. Mol Hum Reprod 21(11):857, 2015
Roberts VH, Frias AE, Grove KL: Impact of maternal obesity on fetal programming of cardiovascular disease. Physiology 30:224, 2015
Rosenfeld CR, Porter JC: Arginine vasopressin in the developing fetus. In Albrecht ED, Pepe GJ (eds): Research in Perinatal Medicine, Vol 4. Perinatal Endocrinology. Ithaca, Perinatology Press, 1985, p 91
Rothan HA, Fang S, Mahesh M, et al: Zika virus and the metabolism of neuronal cells. Mol Neurobiol 56(4):2551, 2019
Saracco P, Parodi E, Fabris C, et al: Management and investigation of neonatal thromboembolic events: genetic and acquired risk factors. Thromb Res 123(6):805, 2009
Schott NJ, Emery SP, Garbee C, et al: Thromboelastograpohy in term neonates. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(19):2599, 2018
Scott-Finley M, Woo JG, Habli M, et al: Standardization of amniotic fluid leptin levels and utility in maternal overweight and fetal undergrowth. J Perinatol 35(8):547, 2015
Shaffer BL, Norton ME: Cell-free DNA screening for aneuploidy and microdeletion syndromes. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 45(1):13, 2018
Shao L, Chang J, Feng W, et al: The Wave2 scaffold Hem-1 is required for transition of fetal liver hematopoiesis to bone marrow. Nat Commun 9(1):2377, 2018
Simner C, Novakovic B, Killycrop KA, et al: DNA methylation of amino transporter genes in the human placenta. Placenta 60:64, 2017

Singendonk MM, Rommel N, Omari TI, et al: Upper gastrointestinal motility: prenatal development and problems in infancy. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 11(9):545, 2014

Sipes SL, Weiner CP, Wenstrom KD, et al: The association between fetal karyotype and mean corpuscular volume. Am J Obstet Gynecol 165:1371, 1991

Smith FG, Nakamura KT, Segar JL, et al: In Polin RA, Fox WW (eds): Fetal and Neonatal Physiology, Vol 2, Chap 114. Philadelphia, Saunders, 1992, p 1187

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Mari G, Norton ME, et al: Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM) Clinical Guidelines #8: the fetus at risk for anemia—diagnosis and management. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(6):697, 2015

Stabile I, Nicolaides KH, Bach A, et al: Complement factors in fetal and maternal blood and amniotic fluid during the second trimester of normal pregnancy. BJOG 95:281, 1988

Stach SC, Brizot Mde L, Liao AW, et al: Transplacental total IgG transfer in twin pregnancies. Am J Reprod Immunol 72(6):555, 2014

Stanirowski PJ, Szukiewicz D, Pyzlak M, et al: Impact of pre-gestational and gestational diabetes mellitus on the expression of glucose transporter GLIT-1, GLIT-4 and GLUT-9 in human term placenta. Endocrine 55(3):799, 2017

Stefopoulou M, Herling L, Johnson J, et al: Reference ranges of fetal superior vena cava blood flow velocities and pulsatility index in the second half of pregnancy: a longitudinal study. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 21(1):158, 2021

Stoll C, Alembik Y, Dott B, et al: Associated anomalies in cases with esophageal atresia. Am J Med Genet A 173(8):2139, 2017

Sussman D, Lye SJ, Wells GD: Impact of maternal physical activity on fetal breathing and body movement—a review. Early Hum Dev 94:53, 2016

Sylva M, van den Hoff MJ, Moorman AF: Development of the human heart. Am J Med Genet A 164A(6):1347, 2014

Teramo KA, Klemetti MM, Widness JA: Robust increases in erythropoietin production by the hypoxic fetus is a response to protect the brain and other vital organs. Pediatr Res 84(6):807, 2018

Torres M, Martin-Puig S: Molecular and cellular development of the heart. Fuster V, Harrington RA, Narula J, et al (eds): Hurst's The Heart, 14th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017, p 161

Tumburu L, Thein SL: Genetic control of erythropoiesis. Curr Opin Hematol 24(3):173, 2017

Usher R, Shephard M, Lind J: The blood volume of the newborn infant and placental transfusion. Acta Paediatr 52:497, 1963

Ustun N, Eyerci N, Karadag N, et al: Association of vitamin D receptor gene FokI and TaqI polymorphisms and risk of RDS. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(21):3640, 2020

Velasco I, Bath SC, Rayman MP: Iodine as essential nutrient during the first 1000 days of life. Nutrients 10(3):290, 2018

Volpe JJ, Inder TE, Darras BT, et al (eds): Volpe's Neurology of the Newborn, 6th ed. New York, Elsevier, 2018

Vulsma T, Gons MH, De Vijlder JJ: Maternal-fetal transfer of thyroxine in congenital hypothyroidism due to a total organification defect or thyroid agenesis. N Engl J Med 321:13, 1989

Wang R, Dai G, Takahashi E: High resolution MRI reveals detailed layer structures in early human fetal stages: in vitro study with histologic correlation. Front Neuroanat 9:150, 2015

Warburton D: Overview of lung development in the newborn human. Neonatology 111(4):398, 2017

Weiner CP, Sipes SL, Wenstrom K: The effect of fetal age upon normal fetal laboratory values and venous pressure. Obstet Gynecol 79:713, 1992

Werlin SL: Exocrine pancreas. In Polin RA, Fox WW (eds): Fetal and Neonatal Physiology. Philadelphia, Saunders, 1992, p 1047

Werth B, Tsiaras A: From Conception to Birth: A Life Unfolds. New York, Doubleday, 2002

Wesolowski SR, Kasmi KC, Jonscher KR, et al: Development origins of NAFLD: a womb with a clue. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 14(2):81, 2017

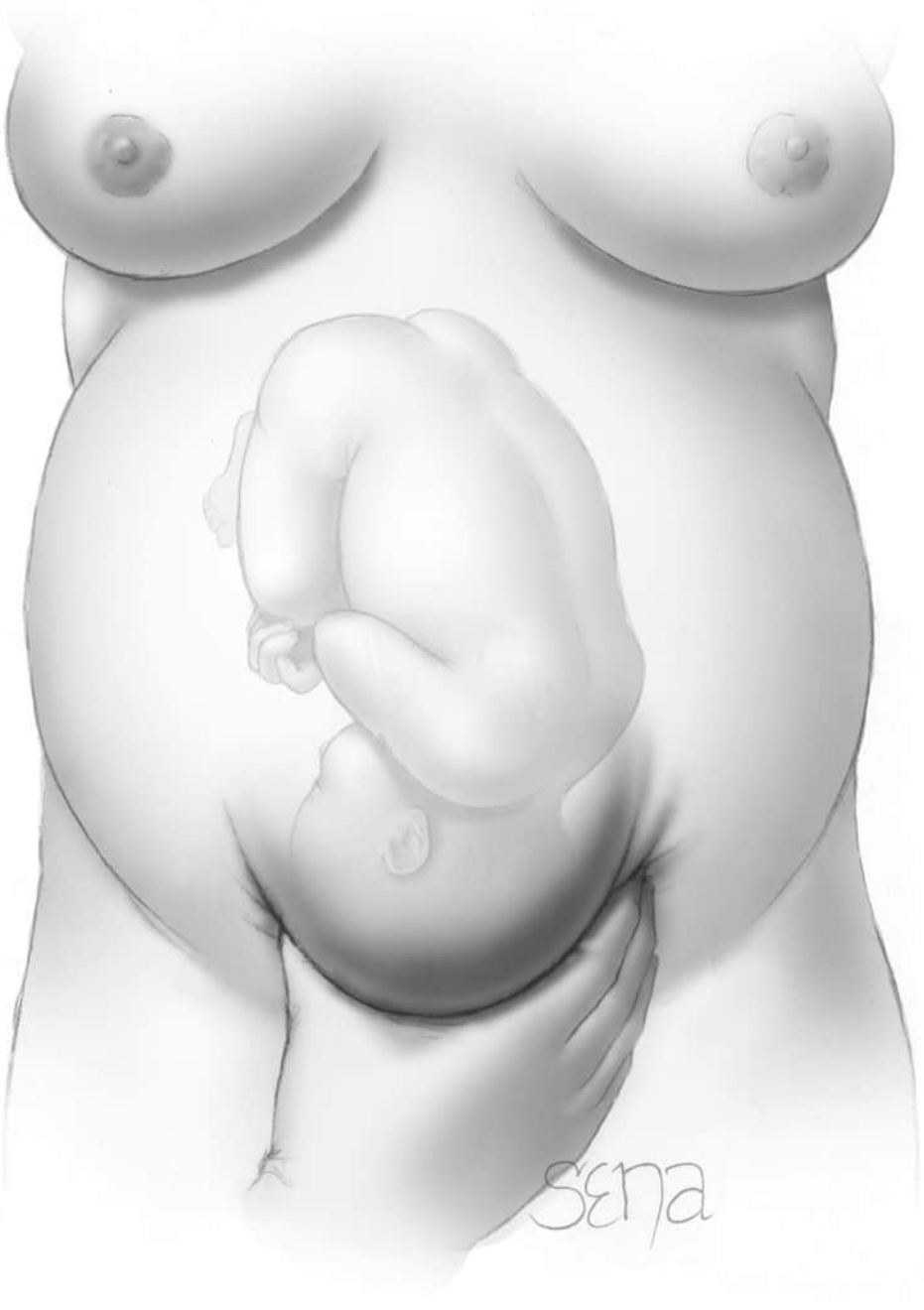
Wladimiroff JW, Campbell S: Fetal urine-production rates in normal and complicated pregnancy. Lancet 1:151, 1974

Yalinbas EE, Binay C, Simsek E, et al: The role of umbilical cord blood concentration of IGF-I, IGR-II, leptin, adiponectin, ghrelin, resistin, and visfatin in fetal growth. Am J Perinatol 36(6):600, 2019

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 4

PRECONCEPTIONAL AND PRENATAL CARE



CHAPTER 8

Teratology, Teratogens, and Fetotoxic Agents

Birth defects are common. Of all newborns, 2 to 3 percent have a major congenital abnormality detectable at birth (Cragan, 2009; Dolk, 2010). Some medications undoubtedly pose significant risk to the developing embryo or fetus (Table 8-1). However, 80 percent of birth defects do not have an obvious etiology, and of those with an identified cause, nearly 95 percent of cases have chromosomal or genetic origins (Feldkamp, 2017). The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) (2018) estimates that <1 percent of all birth defects are caused by medications (Fig. 8-1).

That said, significant concern surrounds medication use in pregnancy. This is because many pregnant women are prescribed medications and because safety data are often lacking. Investigators from the National Birth Defects Prevention Study found that women take an average of two to three medications per pregnancy and that 70 percent use medication in the first trimester (Mitchell, 2011). A population-based review from Canada found that 65 percent of women fill ≥1 prescription during pregnancy (Leong, 2019). Between 2010 and 2019, the FDA approved 290 new drugs, and only 11 percent had human data related to pregnancy (Byrne, 2020).

TERATOLOGY

The study of birth defects and their etiology is termed teratology, derived from the Greek *teratos,* meaning monster. A *teratogen* may be broadly defined as any agent that acts during embryonic or fetal

TABLE 8-1. Selected Teratogenic and Fetotoxic Agents

Acitretin	Methotrexate
Alcohol	Mycophenolate
Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors	Nitrofurantoin
Angiotensin-receptor blockers	Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
Bexarotene	Paroxetine
Carbamazepine	Phenobarbital
Cocaine	Phenytoin
Corticosteroids	Radioactive iodine
Cyclophosphamide	Ribavirin
Endothelin-receptor antagonists[a]	Sulfonamides
Fluconazole	Tamoxifen
Isotretinoin	Tetracyclines
Lead	Thalidomide and analogues[b]
Leflunomide	Tobacco
Lithium	Toluene
Marijuana	Topiramate
Mercury	Trastuzumab
Methamphetamine	Valproic acid
Methimazole	Warfarin

[a]Includes ambrisentan, bosentan, and macitentan.
[b]Includes lenalidomide and pomalidomide.

development to produce a permanent alteration of form or function. Thus, a teratogen may be a medication or other chemical substance, a physical or environmental factor such as heat or radiation, a maternal metabolite as in diabetes or phenylketonuria, or an infection such as cytomegalovirus.

Strictly defined, a teratogen causes structural abnormalities. A *hadegen*—after the god Hades—is an agent that interferes with normal maturation and function of an organ. A *trophogen* is an agent that alters growth. Substances in the latter two groups typically affect development in the fetal period or postnatally and are thus fetotoxins rather than teratogens.

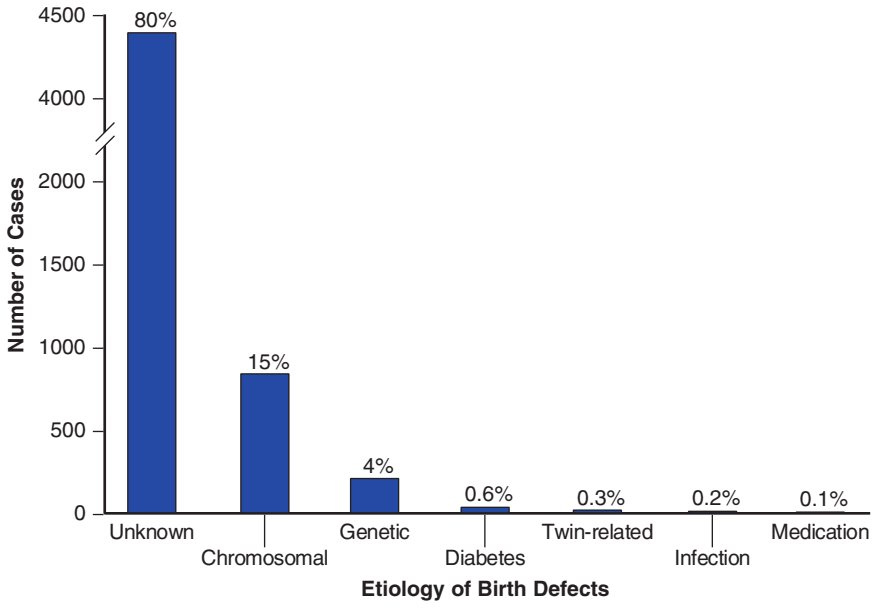


FIGURE 8-1 Etiology of birth defects. Known and unknown causes of 5504 birth defects from a population-based review of 270,878 births.

Criteria for Determining Teratogenicity

The guidelines shown in Table 8-2 were proposed by Shepard (1994) as a framework for discussion and have proved useful for nearly 30 years. Although each individual criterion is not required to establish teratogenicity, the following tenets should be considered (Shepard, 2002a):

- The abnormality has been completely characterized. This is preferably done by a geneticist or dysmorphologist because different genetic and environmental factors may produce similar defects. It is easiest to prove causation when a rare exposure produces a rare anomaly, when at least three cases with the same exposure have been identified, and when the defect is severe.
- The agent must cross the placenta. Although almost all drugs cross the placenta, transport must be of sufficient quantity to directly influence embryonic or fetal development or to alter maternal or placental metabolism to exert an indirect effect. Placental transfer depends on maternal metabolism; on specific characteristics of the drug, such as protein binding and storage, molecular size, electrical charge, and lipid solubility; and on placental metabolism, such as by the cytochrome P_{450} enzyme system. In early pregnancy, the placenta also has a relatively thick membrane that slows diffusion.
- Exposure must occur during a critical developmental period.
  - The *preimplantation period* is the 2 weeks between fertilization and implantation and is known as the "all or none" period. As the zygote undergoes cleavage, an insult damaging a large number of cells typically causes embryonic death. However, if only a few cells are injured, compensation may be possible and allow normal development.
  - The *embryonic period* extends from the second through the eighth week postconception. It encompasses organogenesis and is thus the most crucial period with regard to structural malformations. Critical developmental periods for each organ system are illustrated in Figure 7-2 (p. 122).
  - The *fetal period*, which is beyond 8 weeks postconception, is characterized by continued maturation and functional development. During this time, certain organs remain vulnerable.
- A biologically plausible association is supportive. Because birth defects and medication exposures are both common, they may be temporally but not causally related.
- Epidemiological findings must be consistent. Because initial evaluation of teratogen exposure is often retrospective, it may be hampered by recall bias, inadequate reporting, and

TABLE 8-2. Criteria for Determining Teratogenicity

Essential Criteria:

1. Careful delineation of clinical cases, particularly if there is a specific defect or syndrome
2. Proof that exposure occurred at a critical time during development (see Fig. 7-2, p. 122)
3. Consistent findings by at least two epidemiological studies with:
   a. exclusion of bias,
   b. adjustment for confounding variables,
   c. adequate sample size (power),
   d. prospective ascertainment if possible, and
   e. relative risk (RR) of 3.0 or greater, some recommend RR of 6.0 or greater

   or

   For a rare environmental exposure associated with a rare defect, at least three reported cases. This is easiest if the defect is severe.

Ancillary Criteria:

4. The association is biologically plausible
5. Teratogenicity in experimental animals is important but not essential
6. The agent acts in an unaltered form in an experimental model

incomplete assessment of the exposed population. Potential confounding factors include varying dosages, concomitant drug therapy, and comorbid maternal disease(s). Familial and environmental variables also can influence development of birth defects. Thus, an important criterion for teratogenicity is that two or more high-quality epidemiological studies report similar findings. Last, a relative risk of *3.0 or greater* is generally considered necessary to support the hypothesis, whereas a lesser risk is interpreted with caution (Khoury, 1992).

- The suspected teratogen causes a defect in animal studies. This criterion is not obligatory, and for litigation purposes, establishment of a causal relationship between an exposure and an outcome in humans requires human data (Teratology Society Public Affairs Committee, 2005).

Failure to employ these tenets and criteria has contributed to erroneous conclusions regarding the safety of some widely used drugs. The poster child for this is the medicolegal fiasco surrounding Bendectin. This antiemetic was a combination of doxylamine and pyridoxine, with or without dicyclomine. More than 30 million women used this drug worldwide, and it was safe and effective for nausea and vomiting in early pregnancy. The 3-percent congenital anomaly rate among exposed fetuses was not different from the background rate (McKeigue, 1994). Despite considerable evidence that this combination of an antihistamine and a B-vitamin is not teratogenic, Bendectin was the target of numerous lawsuits, and the financial burden of defending these forced its withdrawal from the marketplace in 1983. Consequently, hospitalization rates for hyperemesis doubled (Koren, 1998). Ironically, the combination of doxylamine and pyridoxine was subsequently remarketed under the brand name Diclegis and was approved by the FDA in 2013.

Studies in Pregnant Women

The study of medication safety—or teratogenicity—in pregnant women is fraught with complications. First, animal studies are necessary but insufficient. For example, thalidomide was considered harmless in several animal species but resulted in phocomelia in thousands of children born across Europe in the late 1950s and early 1960s. Second, medications are rarely approved by the FDA for a pregnancy-related indication. Despite the Common Rule's removal of pregnant women as a vulnerable population, pregnant women are routinely excluded from research (Health and Human Services, 2017; Spong, 2018). Last, drug concentration and thus embryo-fetal exposure are affected by pregnancy physiology. This includes changes in volume of distribution, cardiac output, gastrointestinal absorption, hepatic metabolism, and renal clearance. In the absence of research trials, counseling is based on case reports or series, case-control studies, cohort studies, and pregnancy registry data.

Case Reports and Series

Many major teratogens were first described by clinicians who observed a rare defect occurring after a rare exposure. This has been termed the "astute clinician model" (Carey, 2009). Congenital rubella syndrome was identified in this way by Gregg (1941), an Australian ophthalmologist whose observations challenged the view that the uterine environment was impervious to noxious agents. Other teratogens identified through case series include thalidomide and alcohol (Jones, 1973; Lenz, 1962). Shepard (2002a) recommended that establishment of teratogenicity in this way requires proven exposure at a critical time in development and at least three such cases. Unfortunately, teratogens are less likely to be identified if the exposure is uncommon, if the defects are relatively nonspecific, or if abnormalities develop in only a small proportion of exposed fetuses. A major limitation of case series is their lack of a control group.

Case-control Studies

These studies begin with groups of affected infants (cases) and unaffected controls and are structured to allow retrospective assessment of prenatal exposure to particular substances. Case-control studies are an efficient way to study rare outcomes (Alwan, 2015). These permit investigators to evaluate associations and generate useful hypotheses. However, case-control studies have inherent potential for *recall bias.* Namely, parents of an affected infant are often more likely to recall exposure than those whose child is not ill. Confounding by indication is another concern, that is, the indication for the medication may be the cause of the birth defect. And importantly, birth defect registries have statistical power to detect small differences that may not be clinically meaningful. Grimes and Schulz (2012) have cautioned that unless odds ratios in case-control studies are above three- to fourfold, the observed associations may not be correct.

The National Birth Defects Prevention Study. Funded by Congress and coordinated by the National Center on Birth Defects and Developmental Disabilities, the National Birth Defects Prevention Study (NBDPS) took place between 1997 and 2013 across ten states with active birth defects surveillance programs. It is an excellent example of a population-based case-control study. The study involved approximately 32,000 cases and nearly 12,000 controls. Live births, stillbirths, and terminated pregnancies were included. Clinical geneticists reviewed each potential case, and standardized telephone interviews were conducted with women whose pregnancies were affected or unaffected to obtain information regarding medication exposure and risk factors (Mitchell, 2011; Reefhuis, 2015).

The NBDPS identified novel—although often small—associations between individual birth defects and several classes of medications. These include antibiotics, antidepressants, antiemetics, antihypertensives, asthma medications, nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), and opioids (Ailes, 2016; Broussard, 2011; Fisher, 2018; Hernandez, 2012; Lin, 2012; Munsie, 2011). Pregestational diabetes was significantly associated with 46 of 50 different abnormalities studied (Tinker, 2020). The NBDPS also found associations between birth defects and exposures such as secondhand smoke, pesticides, and nitrogen oxide, which is a marker of traffic-related air pollution (Hoyt, 2016; Rocheleau, 2015; Stingone, 2017).

The NBDPS had several key limitations related to study design. First, interviews were conducted 6 weeks to 2 years following delivery, which raised the likelihood of recall bias. For example, 25 percent of women could not remember which

antibiotic they had taken (Ailes, 2016). Additionally, only two thirds of women agreed to participate, and there were differences in ethnicity and socioeconomic status between cases and controls. These factors may have contributed to selection bias (Reefhuis, 2015). Further, medical records were not reviewed to verify dosage, and this precluded assessment of dose-response relationships. Last, a major limitation was that because the NBDPS included only a small number of cases of each birth defect and analyzed them for many different maternal exposures, it was not possible to adjust for multiple comparisons. As a result, some of the observed associations were likely due to chance (Alwan, 2015). As one example, the study of antibiotics and birth defects included 43 comparisons and identified four significant associations, but chance alone predicted that two associations would be identified (Ailes, 2016).

Importantly, the NBDPS was able to identify statistically significant odds ratios for which the absolute risk was quite low. Such findings have the potential to complicate counseling and prenatal management. In many instances, the risk identified by the NBDPS was as low as 1 case per 1000 exposed pregnancies.

Cohort Studies

These studies begin with cohorts of pregnant women who are exposed or unexposed to a particular medication. The percentage of infants or children affected with birth defects is examined in each cohort. Because individual birth defects are rare, cohort studies require a *very* large sample size. Medicaid datasets and private insurance claims databases are commonly used for cohort studies of teratogenicity in the United States (Ehrenstein, 2010). Inability to adjust for confounding variables—such as the indication for which the medication was needed—is an important limitation of this study design.

Pregnancy Registries

Potentially harmful agents may be monitored by clinicians who prospectively enroll exposed pregnancies in a registry. The FDA (2021) maintains an active webpage of Pregnancy Exposure Registries. As of 2021, this included registries for 115 individual medications and for medication groups used to treat asthma, attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, autoimmune diseases, cancer, diabetes, epilepsy, hepatitis B and C, human immunodeficiency virus infection, hypercholesterolemia, inborn errors of metabolism, inflammatory bowel disease, multiple sclerosis, narcolepsy, psychiatric illness, and transplant rejection. Similar to case series, exposure registries are hampered by lack of a control group. The prevalence of an abnormality identified through a registry requires knowledge of the baseline prevalence of that anomaly in the population. Investigators typically use a birth defect registry to assess population prevalence. One example is the Metropolitan Atlanta Congenital Defects Program, which is an active surveillance program established in 1967 for fetuses and infants with birth defects.

COUNSELING FOR MEDICATION EXPOSURE

Questions regarding medication and illicit drug use should be part of routine preconceptional and prenatal care. Misinformation is common. Individuals tend to underestimate the background risk for birth defects in the general population and exaggerate potential risks associated with medication exposure. In one population-based study of more than 270,000 births from Utah that included 5500 fetuses and infants with major birth defects, only 4 cases were attributed to medication exposure (see Fig. 8-1) (Feldkamp, 2017). And yet, Koren and colleagues (1989) reported that a fourth of women exposed to nonteratogenic drugs thought they had a 25-percent risk for fetal anomalies. Misinformation may be amplified by inaccurate reports in the lay press. Knowledgeable counseling may allay anxiety considerably and may even avert pregnancy termination.

Several sources are available to assist providers with accurate and updated risk information. With recent changes to the FDA labeling requirements, discussed next, the manufacturer's prescribing information has become increasingly helpful. We recommend using this content for initial counseling. Published research studies can be identified using PubMed, a free database tool from the National Center for Biomedical Information. Additionally, online databases such as Reprotox, TERIS, and Shepard's Online Catalog of Teratogenic Agents offer detailed reviews of medication risks. Lactmed, a database from the National Library of Medicine, specifically deals with medication use by breastfeeding women. Its entries on specific medications describe levels in breast milk and potential effects on the infant.

Ultimately, it is the responsibility of the clinician to interpret risk information. Medication dosage and route, timing of exposure during pregnancy, other medications used, and underlying medical condition(s) are considered in this analysis. Last, the risk from lack of treatment also is weighed.

Labeling Requirements

In 1979, the FDA developed a letter classification system (A, B, C, D, X) to provide therapeutic guidance for prescribing medications in pregnancy. These letter categories were intended to simplify risk-benefit data using summary statements regarding available evidence from human or animal studies of embryonic–fetal risk. Unfortunately, information regarding medication risk was often incomplete and led to an overreliance on the category definition.

To address these deficiencies, new FDA (2014, 2020b) labeling requirements were created and went into effect in 2015. The label provides a framework to aid prescribing decisions by more clearly communicating risks and benefits. Information about each medication now incorporates a detailed summary of risks, clinical considerations, and available data (Table 8-3). Registry information is included when available. For each medication, a lactation subsection is provided, and a section addressing potential risks in females and males of reproductive potential is presented. In addition to risks associated with specific medications, the label is required to include the background risk of major birth defects and miscarriage in the general population. Because of the level of detail in the new labels, the information can be indispensable for counseling.

Presenting Risk Information

Counseling should cover not only the embryonic and fetal risks from drug exposure, but also the risks and/or genetic

TABLE 8-3. Food and Drug Administration Pregnancy Labeling Requirements

Label Subsection	Categories	Selected Specific Content
8.1 Pregnancy	Pregnancy exposure registry	Presence of a registry and contact information
	Risk summary	Structural abnormalities, embryo-fetal and/or infant mortality information, functional impairments, and alterations to growth
		Human data, animal data, and pharmacology information as an integrated summary
		Incidence of adverse outcomes, including dose effects, exposure duration, and gestational age
	Clinical considerations	Disease-associated maternal and embryo-fetal risks; dose adjustments (pregnancy or postpartum); maternal, fetal or neonatal adverse reactions; effects on labor or delivery
	Data	Content from human and animal studies and their findings and limitations
8.2 Lactation	Risk summary	Presence of a drug or its metabolite(s) in human milk, effects on the breastfed child, and effects on milk production
	Clinical considerations	Summary of available data and information about minimizing exposure
	Data	Includes content from human and animal studies that inform clinical considerations
8.3 Males and females of reproductive potential	Pregnancy testing	Testing requirement or recommendation before, during, or after drug use
	Contraception	Contraception requirement or recommendation before, during, or after drug use
	Infertility	Effects on fertility, potential reversibility, mutagenesis data, and pre-implantation loss effects

From Food and Drug Administration, 2020b.

implications of the condition for which the drug is administered. Risks associated with not treating the condition also are described. Even the manner in which information is presented affects perception. For example, women given negative information—such as a 2-percent chance of a malformed newborn—are more likely to perceive an exaggerated risk than women given positive information—such as a 98-percent chance of an unaffected infant (Jasper, 2001). Instead of citing a higher odds ratio, it may be helpful to provide the *absolute risk* for a particular defect or the *attributable risk*, which is the difference between prevalence in exposed and unexposed individuals (Conover, 2011). The association between oral corticosteroid medications and cleft lip sounds far more concerning when presented as a tripling or 200-percent increase in risk than when described as an increase from 1 to 3 cases per 1000 or as a 99.7-percent likelihood of no cleft development following exposure.

With a few notable exceptions, most commonly prescribed drugs and medications can be used with relative safety during pregnancy. Many drugs discussed in this chapter are *low-risk teratogens*, which are medications that produce defects in fewer than 10 per 1000 maternal exposures (Shepard, 2002a). Because risks conferred by low-risk teratogens are so close to the population background rate of fetal anomalies, they may not be a major factor in deciding whether to discontinue treatment for an important condition (Shepard, 2002b). All women have an approximate 3-percent chance of having a fetus or newborn with a major anomaly. Although exposure to a confirmed teratogen may elevate this risk, the magnitude of the increase is usually only 1 or 2 percent or at most, doubled or tripled. The concept of risk versus benefit is often central to counseling. Some untreated diseases pose a more serious threat to both mother and fetus than medication exposure risks.

TERATOGENIC AND FETOTOXIC AGENTS

Considering the thousands of compounds available, relatively few medications and other substances are considered to be major human teratogens or to have significant fetotoxicity. The most common examples are listed in Table 8-1. With few exceptions, in every clinical situation potentially requiring therapy with a known teratogen, alternative drugs can be given with relative safety. Realizing limitations in available evidence, pregnant women should be advised to take any medication only when it is clearly needed. Detailed sonography is generally indicated if the fetus has been exposed to any major teratogen during the embryonic period.

Alcohol

Ethanol is a potent and prevalent teratogen. It is considered the leading cause of preventable developmental disabilities

worldwide (Hoyme, 2016). In the United States, alcohol use is reported by 10 percent of pregnant women (England, 2020). Nearly 10 percent of such women admit to binge drinking in the first trimester, and 1 percent report binge drinking in the second and third trimesters.

The fetal effects of alcohol abuse have been recognized since the 1800s. Lemoine (1968) and Jones (1973) and their coworkers are credited with describing the spectrum of alcohol-related fetal defects known as *fetal alcohol syndrome.* Criteria are shown in Table 8-4 (Hoyme, 2016). For every child with the syndrome, many more are born with neurobehavioral deficits from alcohol exposure. *Fetal alcohol spectrum disorder (FASD)* is an umbrella term that includes five conditions attributed to prenatal alcohol damage: (1) fetal alcohol syndrome, (2) partial fetal alcohol syndrome, (3) alcohol-related birth defects, (4) alcohol-related neurodevelopmental disorder, and (5) neurobehavioral disorder associated with prenatal alcohol exposure (Williams, 2015). The prevalence of FASD exceeds 1 percent in 76 countries, and 1 in 13 women who consume alcohol in pregnancy has a child with FASD (Lange, 2017). The birth prevalence of fetal alcohol syndrome is estimated to be as high as 1 percent in the United States (Centers for Disease Control, 2015; Guerri, 2009). Further, studies of school-aged children have identified FASD in 2 to 5 percent (May, 2009, 2014).

TABLE 8-4. Criteria for Prenatal Alcohol Exposure, Fetal Alcohol Syndrome, and Alcohol-Related Birth Defects

Documented Prenatal Alcohol Exposure—One or More Required

1. ≥6 drinks per week for ≥2 weeks
2. ≥3 drinks per occasion for ≥2 occasions
3. Risk identified with a validated screening questionnaire
4. Laboratory testing indicating alcohol intoxication or positive alcohol-exposure biomarker
5. Documentation of an alcohol-related legal or social problem

Fetal Alcohol Syndrome Diagnostic Criteria—All Required

1. Dysmorphic facial features (≥2 required)
   a. Short palpebral fissures
   b. Thin vermilion border of the upper lip
   c. Smooth philtrum
2. Prenatal and/or postnatal growth impairment, ≤10th percentile
3. Abnormal brain growth, morphogenesis, or physiology (≥1 required)
   a. Head circumference ≤10th percentile
   b. Structural brain abnormalities
   c. Recurrent nonfebrile seizures
4. Neurobehavioral impairment (defined as >1.5 SD below mean)
   a. Child <3 years: developmental delay
   b. Child ≥3 years: global cognitive impairment, or cognitive deficit in at least 1 neurobehavioral domain, or behavioral deficit in at least 1 domain

Alcohol-Related Birth Defects

Cardiac: atrial or ventricular septal defect, aberrant great vessels, conotruncal heart defects
Skeletal: radioulnar synostosis, vertebral segmentation defects, joint contractures, scoliosis
Renal: aplastic or hypoplastic kidneys, dysplastic kidneys, horseshoe kidney, ureteral duplication
Eyes: strabismus, ptosis, retinal vascular abnormalities, optic nerve hypoplasia
Ears: conductive or neurosensory hearing loss

SD = standard deviation.

Criteria

Fetal alcohol syndrome has specific criteria (see Table 8-4). These include central nervous system (CNS) abnormalities, pre- or postnatal growth impairment, and a characteristic pattern of minor facial abnormalities (Fig. 8-2). Similar criteria have been established for the other conditions that make up FASD (Hoyme, 2016). Prenatal alcohol exposure criteria also are available to assist with assessment.

Alcohol-related birth defects include cardiac and renal anomalies, orthopedic problems, and abnormalities of the eyes and ears (see Table 8-4). An association has further been reported between periconceptional alcohol use and omphalocele and gastroschisis (Richardson, 2011). There are no established sonographic criteria for prenatal diagnosis of fetal alcohol syndrome. At Parkland Hospital, we reserve detailed sonography for pregnancies that have met the exposure criteria listed in Table 8-4. Third-trimester assessment of fetal growth also should be considered.

Fetal vulnerability to alcohol is modified by genetic and environmental factors, nutritional status, coexisting maternal disease, and maternal age (Abel, 1995). Binge drinking, however, is believed to pose particularly high risk for alcohol-related birth

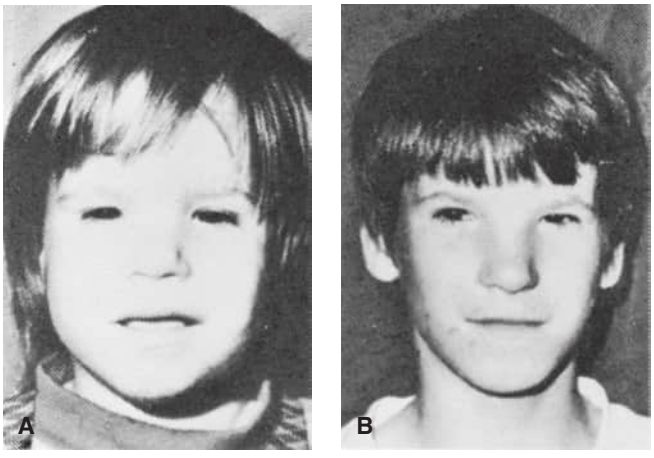


FIGURE 8-2 Fetal alcohol syndrome. **A.** At 2½ years. **B.** At 12 years. Note persistence of short palpebral fissures, epicanthal folds, flat midface, hypoplastic philtrum, and thin upper vermilion border. (Reproduced with permission from Streissguth AP, Clarren, SK, Jones KL. Natural history of fetal alcohol syndrome: a 10-year follow-up of eleven patients, Lancet. 1985 Jul 13;2(8446):85–91.)

defects and has also been linked to a greater risk for stillbirth (Centers for Disease Control, 2015; Strandberg-Larsen, 2008). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), and the American Academy of Pediatrics have stressed that *no* amount of alcohol can be considered safe in pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a; Williams, 2015).

Antiepileptic Medications

Traditionally, women with epilepsy requiring treatment with medication were informed that their risk for fetal malformations was increased. More recent data suggest that the risk may not be as great as once thought, particularly for newer agents. The most frequently reported anomalies are orofacial clefts, cardiac malformations, and neural-tube defects.

Of agents in current use, valproic acid confers the highest risk (Vajda, 2016). The North American Antiepileptic Drug (NAAED) Pregnancy Registry reported that major malformations developed in 9 percent of fetuses with first-trimester valproate exposure. This included a 4-percent risk for neural-tube defects (Hernandez-Diaz, 2012). School-aged children with prior in utero exposure to valproic acid have poorer cognitive development—including significantly lower intelligence quotient (IQ) scores—than children exposed to other antiepileptic drugs (Bromley, 2014; Meador, 2009).

Regarding other specific anticonvulsants, one metaanalysis identified increased malformation rates among exposed children compared with rates among children born to women with untreated epilepsy. Rates were twofold higher among children exposed to carbamazepine or phenytoin, threefold higher among those exposed to phenobarbital, and fourfold higher among those exposed to topiramate as monotherapy (Weston, 2016). The risk for fetal malformations is approximately doubled if multiple agents are required (Vajda, 2016). Several older anticonvulsants may produce a constellation of findings similar to the *fetal hydantoin syndrome*. The syndrome is characterized by distinctive features such as hypertelorism, low nasal bridge, and midface hypoplasia; hypoplasia of the distal phalanges and nails; growth impairment; and intellectual disability.

Importantly, evidence to date suggests that these risks do not appear to hold for the newer agents levetiracetam and lamotrigine (Mølgaard-Nielsen, 2011; Weston, 2016). A review of 208 pregnancies with first-trimester lamotrigine exposure from the Israeli Teratology Information Service found no increase in the rate of major malformations and no case of oral cleft (Diav-Citrin, 2017). Similarly, the International Lamotrigine Pregnancy Registry followed more than 1500 pregnancies with first trimester exposure and observed no effect on the rate of major malformations (Cunnington, 2011). The Motherisk Program reviewed eight studies of levetiracetam and concluded that monotherapy was associated with a 2-percent major malformation rate, no different from that for the general population (Chaudhry, 2014). More recently, a review of 465 pregnancies reported to the Levetiracetam Pregnancy Registry found no evidence of teratogenicity (Scheuerle, 2019).

Providers are encouraged to enroll pregnant women treated with antiepileptic medication in the NAAED Pregnancy Registry. Management of epilepsy in pregnancy is discussed in Chapter 63 (p. 1128).

Angiotensin-converting Enzyme Inhibitors and Receptor Blocking Drugs

These medications may result in *angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE)-inhibitor fetopathy*. Normal renal development depends on the fetal renin-angiotensin system. ACE-inhibitor medication may cause fetal hypotension and renal hypoperfusion, with subsequent ischemia and anuria (Guron, 2000; Pryde, 1993). Reduced perfusion can result in fetal-growth restriction and calvarium maldevelopment, and oligohydramnios may lead to pulmonary hypoplasia and limb contractures (Barr, 1991). Because angiotensin-receptor blockers have a similar mechanism of action, concerns regarding fetotoxicity have been generalized to include this entire medication class. A recent review of nearly 200 pregnancies from teratology information services found a 30-percent fetopathy risk with angiotensin-receptor blockers compared with a 3-percent risk with ACE-inhibitor exposure beyond 20 weeks' gestation (Weber-Schoendorfer, 2020).

Concerns about ACE-inhibitor embryotoxicity have largely been disproven. In 2006, a review of 29,000 infants from the Tennessee Medicaid database identified a two- to threefold greater risk for neonatal cardiac and CNS abnormalities among the 209 that had prenatal ACE-inhibitor exposure (Cooper, 2006). Subsequent larger studies have not corroborated these observations. In a retrospective cohort study of more than 460,000 pregnancies, risks for birth defects were not higher with ACE inhibitors than with other antihypertensive medications (Li, 2011). Similarly, a review of 1.3 million pregnancies from the Medicaid Analytic eXtract found no increased risk for any malformation with ACE-inhibitor exposure after adjusting for confounding factors such as diabetes (Bateman, 2017). Thus, women with inadvertent first-trimester exposure to these medications may be reassured. Importantly, given the many therapeutic options for treating hypertension during pregnancy, discussed in Chapter 53 (p. 949), ACE inhibitors and angiotensin receptor-blocking drugs should be avoided in pregnancy.

Antifungal Medications

From this class of drugs, fluconazole has been associated with a pattern of congenital malformations resembling the autosomal recessive *Antley-Bixler syndrome*. Abnormalities include oral clefts, abnormal facies, and cardiac, skull, long-bone, and joint abnormalities. Such findings have been reported only with chronic, first-trimester, high-dose treatment at doses of 400 to 800 mg daily.

Regarding low-dose treatment of vulvovaginal candidiasis, the Motherisk Program conducted a systematic review of pregnancies with first-trimester oral fluconazole exposure of 150 or 300 mg in total (Alsaad, 2015). The overall risk for birth defects was not greater, although a small increase in rates of cardiac malformations could not be excluded. A population-based cohort study from Denmark identified a threefold greater

risk for tetralogy of Fallot following exposure to low-dose fluconazole (Mølgaard-Nielsen, 2013). The birth prevalence of tetralogy of Fallot rose from 3 to 10 cases per 10,000. Notably, investigators did not identify increased risks for 14 other birth defects previously associated with exposure to high-dose azole antifungal agents (Mølgaard-Nielsen, 2013). A subsequent review of more than 37,000 pregnancies with first-trimester fluconazole exposure did not identify an association with cardiac abnormalities (Zhu, 2020). Based on reported risks, we do not perform detailed sonography or fetal echocardiography following low-dose fluconazole exposure.

Antiinflammatory Agents

Nonsteroidal Antiinflammatory Drugs

This drug class includes both aspirin and traditional NSAIDs such as ibuprofen and indomethacin. They exert their effects by inhibiting prostaglandin synthesis. In a report from the NBDPS, at least 20 percent of pregnant women recall first-trimester NSAID use, particularly ibuprofen and aspirin, and such exposure is not a major risk factor for birth defects (Hernandez, 2012).

When taken in late pregnancy, however, indomethacin may cause constriction of the fetal ductus arteriosus and subsequent pulmonary hypertension. Fetal ductal constriction is more likely with third trimester use that exceeds 72 hours. The drug also may decrease fetal urine production and amnionic fluid volume (Rasanen, 1995; van der Heijden, 1994; Walker, 1994). In one systematic review, indomethacin tocolysis was associated with a 1.5-fold risk for bronchopulmonary dysplasia, intraventricular hemorrhage, and necrotizing enterocolitis (Hammers, 2015a,b).

Based on a review of 35 cases of oligohydramnios or neonatal kidney problems reported to the FDA Adverse Event Reporting System database, the FDA recommends that pregnant women ≥20 weeks' gestation avoid NSAID use (Food and Drug Administration, 2020a). If NSAIDs are needed for more than 48 hours, ultrasound evaluation of amnionic fluid should be considered. Oligohydramnios usually resolves within 6 days of discontinuing NSAIDs, but there are cases in which infants have died of renal failure.

With aspirin, a low dosage of 100 mg daily or less does *not* confer a greater risk for constriction of the ductus arteriosus or for adverse infant outcomes (Grab, 2000). As with other NSAIDs, however, high-dose aspirin use should be avoided, particularly in the third trimester.

Leflunomide

This is a pyrimidine-synthesis inhibitor used to treat rheumatoid arthritis. Leflunomide is considered contraindicated in pregnancy. In rats and rabbits, leflunomide results in hydrocephalus, eye anomalies, skeletal anomalies, and embryo death when given at or below human-equivalent doses (Sanofi-Aventis, 2016). The active metabolite, teriflunomide, is detectable in plasma for up to 2 years following discontinuation of the medication. Women who become pregnant while taking leflunomide, and even those of childbearing potential who have discontinued it, are recommended to undergo an accelerated drug elimination procedure with either cholestyramine or activated charcoal (Sanofi-Aventis, 2016).

Reassuringly, studies of exposed human pregnancies have not confirmed these teratogenic effects (Berard, 2018; Chambers, 2010). In a cohort of 60 women with first-trimester leflunomide exposure who completed cholestyramine washout, the rate of birth defects was not increased (Chambers, 2010). A recent review of more than 500 exposed pregnancies found that the rate of major birth defects was 3 percent, similar to the general population (Henson, 2020). The rate of spontaneous abortion also was not increased.

Antimicrobial and Antiviral Drugs

Medications used to treat infections are among those most frequently administered during pregnancy. Over the years, experience has accrued regarding their general safety. With few exceptions, commonly used antimicrobial agents are without embryo-fetal safety concerns.

Nitrofurantoin

From NBDPS results, first-trimester nitrofurantoin exposure is linked to a twofold risk for cleft lip (Ailes, 2016). Considering that the birth prevalence of clefts approximates 1 case per 1000, the likelihood that a nitrofurantoin-exposed fetus would *not* have a cleft would thus be 998 per 1000. For other birth defects, initial associations with this antibiotic did not persist in the final NBDPS cohort (Ailes, 2016).

In one systematic review of nitrofurantoin exposure in pregnancy, results of cohort and case-control studies differed (Goldberg, 2015). Five cohort studies included 9275 exposed pregnancies and nearly 1.5 million unexposed pregnancies, and the review found no higher risk for any malformation. However, among three case-control studies that had nearly 40,000 cases matched with 130,000 controls, the rate of hypoplastic left heart syndrome was threefold greater (Goldberg, 2015). For context, this increase in risk would result in a birth prevalence of fewer than 1 case per 1000 exposed infants. Nitrofurantoin is considered contraindicated in pregnant women with known or suspected glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency because of risk for hemolytic anemia and other hematologic abnormalities. In the absence of G6PD deficiency, the There are no concerns with second- or third-trimester nitrofurantoin use, and first-trimester use is appropriate if no suitable alternatives are available.

Sulfonamides

These drugs are often combined with trimethoprim and used to treat infections during pregnancy. One indication is treatment of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA)* infection. The NBDPS, which included 107 pregnancies with periconceptional trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole exposure and birth defects, identified a fivefold greater risk to have offspring with esophageal atresia or diaphragmatic hernia (Ailes, 2016). Similar to findings with nitrofurantoin exposure, this degree of increase would confer a risk of approximately 1 case per 1000 exposed infants for these selected birth defects. However, these findings have not been corroborated by other reports. One review from the Medication Exposure in Pregnancy Risk Evaluation Program included more than 7500 infants with first-trimester exposure

to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (Hansen, 2016). Compared with either unexposed infants or those exposed to penicillins or cephalosporins, no higher risk for any congenital abnormality was identified. Given this reassuring data, we consider sulfonamides appropriate for first-trimester use if suitable alternatives are lacking.

Sulfonamides are considered contraindicated in pregnant women with known or suspected G6PD deficiency because of risk for hemolytic anemia and other hematologic abnormalities. Additionally, sulfonamides displace bilirubin from protein-binding sites. Thus, if given near the time of preterm delivery, these agents theoretically might worsen neonatal hyperbilirubinemia. However, a population-based review of more than 800,000 births from Denmark found no association between exposure to sulfamethoxazole in late pregnancy and neonatal jaundice (Klarskov, 2013).

Tetracyclines

These drugs are not commonly used in pregnant women. They have been associated with yellowish-brown discoloration of the deciduous teeth when used after 25 weeks' gestation. The risk for subsequent dental caries is not increased (Billings, 2004; Kutscher, 1966). Doxycycline has a reduced ability to chelate calcium orthophosphate compared with other tetracyclines and is preferred if needed. A systematic review of doxycycline-exposed pregnancies identified no higher rates of either birth defects or staining of deciduous teeth (Cross, 2016).

Ribavirin

This antiviral nucleoside analogue is a component of therapy for hepatitis C infection, discussed in Chapter 58 (p. 1038). Ribavirin causes birth defects in multiple animal species at doses significantly lower than those recommended for human use. Reported malformations include skull, palate, eye, skeleton, and gastrointestinal abnormalities. The drug has a half-life of 12 days and persists in extravascular compartments following therapy discontinuation. Treated women must use two forms of contraception and have monthly pregnancy tests while on therapy and for 6 months following drug discontinuation (Merck, 2020). Ribavirin use is also contraindicated in men whose partners are pregnant.

■ Antineoplastic Agents

Cancer management in pregnancy includes many chemotherapeutic agents generally considered to be at least potentially toxic to the embryo, fetus, or both. For the many novel polyclonal antibody therapies designated as antineoplastics, there is little information concerning safety. The National Toxicology Program (2013) conducted a review of 300 pregnancies with first-trimester exposure and identified major malformations in 14 percent. Treatment of cancer in pregnancy is discussed in Chapter 66 (p. 1163). Risks associated with selected agents for which experience in pregnancy has accrued are considered next.

Cyclophosphamide

This alkylating agent inflicts a chemical insult on developing fetal tissues and leads to cell death and heritable DNA alterations in surviving cells. Pregnancy loss rates are greater, and reported fetal abnormalities include skeletal anomalies, limb defects, cleft palate, and eye abnormalities (Enns, 1999; Kirshon, 1988). The risk for a major abnormality is estimated to be 18 percent (National Toxicology Program, 2013). Surviving infants may have growth abnormalities and developmental delays. Environmental exposure among health-care workers is associated with a higher risk for spontaneous abortion.

Methotrexate

This folic-acid antagonist is a potent teratogen. It is used for cancer chemotherapy, immunosuppression of autoimmune diseases and psoriasis, nonsurgical treatment of ectopic pregnancy, and medical abortion. It acts similarly to aminopterin, which is no longer used clinically, and can cause defects known collectively as the fetal *methotrexate-aminopterin syndrome*. Associated craniofacial abnormalities include craniosynostosis with a "clover-leaf" skull, wide nasal bridge, low-set ears, and micrognathia (Del Campo, 1999). Exposure has also been linked to central nervous system abnormalities, cardiac defects, and limb anomalies (Cumberland Pharmaceuticals, 2020). Intellectual impairment has been described. The embryo is thought to be most vulnerable at 8 to 10 weeks postconception and at dosages of at least 10 mg/week. However, this is not universally accepted (Feldkamp, 1993). Because of its distribution, methotrexate can remain in the body for prolonged periods. Thus, preconceptional exposure is not without risk.

The standard 50-mg/m^2 dose given to treat ectopic pregnancy or to induce abortion exceeds the 10-mg/week threshold dose. Reports describe cardiac anomalies, particularly conotruncal defects, in intrauterine pregnancies inadvertently treated with methotrexate for suspected ectopic pregnancy (Dawson, 2014; Hyoun, 2012).

Tamoxifen

This nonsteroidal selective estrogen-receptor modulator (SERM) is used as an adjuvant to treat breast cancer. In animal studies, tamoxifen has been associated with malformations similar to those caused by diethylstilbestrol (DES) exposure in rodents, including vaginal adenosis. One review of 167 pregnancies reported a fetal abnormality in 13 percent but emphasized that evidence was limited (Schuurman, 2019). Abnormalities have included ambiguous genitalia and craniofacial anomalies.

Trastuzumab

This is a recombinant monoclonal antibody directed to the human epidermal growth factor receptor 2 (HER2) protein. Used to treat breast and gastric cancers that express HER2 protein, this drug has not been associated with fetal malformations. However, postmarketing surveillance identified cases of oligohydramnios sequence resulting in pulmonary hypoplasia, renal failure, skeletal abnormalities, and neonatal death (Genentech, 2020). Surveillance for these complications is recommended for exposed pregnancies and for those treated at any time in the 7 months prior to conception. A trastuzumab pregnancy exposure registry and a pregnancy pharmacovigilance program have been established to monitor pregnancy outcomes. These warnings also apply to those treated with ado-trastuzumab emtansine.

Endothelin-receptor Antagonists

Bosentan, ambrisentan, and macitentan are three endothelin-receptor antagonists used to treat pulmonary arterial hypertension (Chap. 52, p. 930). The endothelin-receptor signaling pathway is important for neural-crest development. Mice deficient in endothelin receptors develop neural-crest cell defects that include craniofacial and cardiac outflow tract abnormalities (de Raaf, 2015). Each of these three agents has been found to cause similar birth defects in multiple animal species (Janssen, 2019a,b). No human data are available. Endothelin-receptor antagonists may be obtained only through restricted access programs, each of which has stringent requirements that include contraception and monthly pregnancy testing (Gilead, 2019; Janssen, 2019a,b).

Immunosuppressant Medications

Selected autoimmune diseases and their treatment are reviewed in Chapter 62 (p. 1109).

Corticosteroids

Glucocorticoids and mineralocorticoids have antiinflammatory and immunosuppressive actions. They are used to treat serious disorders such as asthma and autoimmune disease. Corticosteroids have been associated with orofacial clefts in animal studies, but the absolute risk is small. In a metaanalysis of case-control studies by the Motherisk Program, systemic corticosteroid exposure was associated with a threefold rate increase, conferring an absolute risk of 3 clefts per 1000 exposed fetuses (Park-Wyllie, 2000). A 10-year prospective cohort study by the same group, however, did not identify an increased overall risk for major malformations. Based on these findings, corticosteroids are not considered to represent a major teratogenic risk.

Potential risks associated with prednisone or methylprednisolone are considered to be lower than those with other corticosteroids. Prednisolone, the active metabolite of prednisone, is itself metabolized and rendered inactive by the placental enzyme 11β-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase 2 (Murphy, 2007). Thus, it is thought to reach the fetus less effectively.

Mycophenolate Mofetil

This inosine monophosphate dehydrogenase inhibitor, and a related agent, mycophenolic acid, are immunosuppressants. They are used to prevent rejection in organ-transplant recipients and to treat autoimmune disease (Chap. 62, p. 1112). Mycophenolate is a potent teratogen. From the National Transplantation Pregnancy Registry, of pregnancies in which mycophenolate was not discontinued until after the first trimester, birth defects complicated 30 percent, and another 30 percent spontaneously aborted (King, 2017). One prospective review by the European Network of Teratology Information Services similarly identified a spontaneous loss rate of nearly 30 percent in exposed pregnancies. More than 20 percent of liveborn infants had major anomalies (Hoeltzenbein, 2012).

Many affected infants have a pattern of defects termed *mycophenolate embryopathy*. This includes microtia, auditory canal atresia, clefts, coloboma and other eye anomalies, short fingers with hypoplastic nails, and cardiac defects (Anderka, 2009; Merlob, 2009). A Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy (REMS) has been developed for mycophenolate prescribers who treat women with reproductive potential. REMS are safety strategies mandated by the FDA to help manage known risks associated with a medicine yet still allow patients to have access to the benefits of a given drug.

Lead

Lead crosses the placenta via passive diffusion. Prenatal lead exposure is associated with fetal-growth impairment and with childhood neurodevelopmental delays. According to the CDC (2010), no level of lead exposure is considered safe in pregnancy. Although routine testing is not recommended, risk factors should be assessed in all pregnancies (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). Care and testing for at-risk pregnancies is discussed in Chapter 10 (p. 188).

Mercury

The developing nervous system is particularly susceptible to mercury. In the 1950s and early 1960s, children born near Minamata Bay, Japan were found to have congenital Minamata disease—severe neurological abnormalities from methylmercury exposure in utero (Yorifuji, 2020). Prenatal exposure causes disturbances in neuronal cell division and migration. This leads to a range of defects from microcephaly to intellectual disability, choreo-athetoid movement abnormalities, motor delays, and behavioral abnormalities (Grandjean, 2011).

The principal concern for prenatal mercury exposure is the consumption of certain species of large fish and seafood (Chap. 10, p. 188). Methylmercury cannot be eliminated by cooking. It crosses the placenta and can accumulate in the fetus. The FDA (2019) advises that pregnant women and breastfeeding mothers avoid consumption of king mackerel, marlin, orange roughy, shark, swordfish, tilefish, and bigeye tuna.

Psychiatric Medications

Treatment of psychiatric illness in pregnancy, including a discussion of the risks and benefits of various psychiatric medications, is described in Chapter 64 (p. 1142).

Antipsychotic Medications

No antipsychotic medications are considered teratogenic. Exposed neonates can manifest abnormal extrapyramidal muscle movements and withdrawal symptoms that include agitation, abnormally enhanced or diminished muscle tone, tremor, agitation, somnolence, respiratory abnormalities, and feeding difficulty. Such findings are nonspecific and transient. An FDA (2017) alert cited all medications in this class. Included are older medications like haloperidol and chlorpromazine and newer medications such as aripiprazole, olanzapine, quetiapine, and risperidone.

Lithium

This medication has been associated with Ebstein anomaly, a rare cardiac abnormality that otherwise complicates only 1

per 20,000 births. Ebstein anomaly is characterized by apical displacement of the tricuspid valve, often resulting in severe tricuspid regurgitation and marked right atrial enlargement. A report from the Lithium Baby Registry initially suggested that the risk for Ebstein anomaly was as high as 3 percent. However, subsequent series have identified an attributable risk for Ebstein anomaly and co-occurring right-sided cardiac anomalies of only 1 to 4 cases per 1000 exposed pregnancies (Patorno, 2017; Yacobi, 2008). The NBDPS found that just 1 of 135 cases of Ebstein anomaly occurred in the setting of lithium exposure (Downing, 2019).

Neonatal lithium toxicity stems from exposure near delivery. The manufacturer recommends that if possible, the dosage should be decreased or drug discontinued 2 to 3 days prior to delivery to reduce this risk (West-Ward, 2020). Findings may persist for up to 2 weeks and may include cardiac arrhythmias, hypoglycemia, nephrogenic diabetes insipidus, and a "floppy infant syndrome" (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019f). The latter may include hypotonia, respiratory distress or apnea, bradycardia, cyanosis, and feeding difficulties (West-Ward, 2020).

Selective Serotonin- and Norepinephrine-reuptake Inhibitors

These medications have been studied more than almost any other, apart from Bendectin (p. 146). As a class, they are not considered major teratogens (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019f). The one exception is paroxetine, which has been associated with a slightly higher risk for cardiac anomalies, particularly atrial and ventricular septal defects. Metaanalyses have identified a pooled odds ratio of just 1.3 for paroxetine and cardiac abnormalities (Berard, 2016; Wurst, 2010). However, a review of nearly 1 million pregnancies from the nationwide Medicaid Analytic eXtract identified no significant association between paroxetine use in the first trimester and fetal cardiac abnormalities (Huybrechts, 2014). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019f) recommends that women planning pregnancy avoid paroxetine. Fetal echocardiography should be considered for those with first-trimester paroxetine exposure.

Neonatal effects have been associated with prenatal exposure to selective serotonin-reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs) and selective norepinephrine-reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs). Approximately 25 percent of neonates exposed to SSRIs in late pregnancy manifest one or more nonspecific findings considered to represent poor neonatal adaptation (Costei, 2002; Jordan, 2008). Collectively termed the *neonatal behavioral syndrome*, findings can include jitteriness, irritability, hyper- or hypotonia, feeding abnormalities, vomiting, hypoglycemia, thermoregulatory instability, and respiratory abnormalities. Fortunately, these neonatal behaviors are typically mild and self-limited and last approximately 2 days. Jordan and coworkers (2008) reported that affected newborns were not more likely to require a higher level of care, to experience respiratory abnormalities, or to have prolonged hospitalization. Rarely, neonates exposed to SSRIs in late pregnancy have demonstrated more severe adaptation abnormalities (Ornoy, 2017).

Another concern with late-pregnancy exposure is the possible association of SSRI medications with *persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn (PPHN)*. The baseline incidence approximates 2 cases per 1000 term newborns. PPHN is characterized by elevated pulmonary vascular resistance with right-to-left shunting and resultant hypoxemia. Two population-based cohort studies—together involving more than 5 million pregnancies—identified an attributable risk of only 1 to 2 cases per 1000 births (Huybrechts, 2015; Kieler, 2012). Moreover, cases of PPHN associated with SSRI medication have not been severe (Ornoy, 2017).

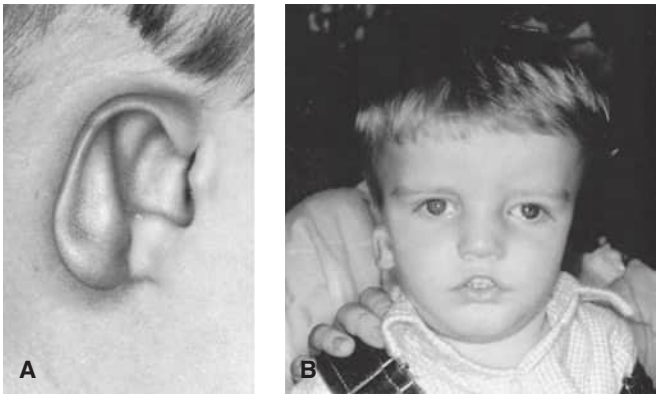


FIGURE 8-3 Retinoic acid embryopathy. **A.** Bilateral microtia or anotia with stenosis of external ear canal. **B.** Flat, depressed nasal bridge and ocular hypertelorism. (Reproduced with permission from permission from Dr. Edward Lammer.)

■ Retinoids

Vitamin A derivatives are among the most potent human teratogens. By inhibiting neural-crest cell migration during embryogenesis, they create a pattern of cranial neural-crest defects—termed *retinoic acid embryopathy*—that involve the CNS, face, heart, and thymus (Fig. 8-3). Specific anomalies may include ventriculomegaly, maldevelopment of the facial bones or cranium, microtia or anotia, micrognathia, cleft palate, conotruncal heart defects, and thymic aplasia or hypoplasia.

Acitretin

This retinoid is used to treat severe psoriasis. It was introduced to replace etretinate, a lipophilic retinoid with such a long half-life (120 days) that birth defects resulted more than 2 years after therapy was discontinued. Although acitretin has a short half-life, it is metabolized to etretinate, and thus remains in the body for prolonged periods (Stiefel Laboratories, 2017). To obviate exposure, the manufacturer of acitretin has developed a pregnancy risk management program. Called "Do Your P.A.R.T"—pregnancy prevention actively required during and after treatment, this program promotes a delay of conception for at least 3 years following therapy discontinuation.

Bexarotene

This retinoid is used to treat refractory cutaneous T-cell lymphoma. When given to rats in doses comparable to those for human therapy, fetuses developed eye and ear abnormalities, cleft palate, and incomplete ossification. For a woman to receive bexarotene, the manufacturer requires two forms of contraception that are initiated 1 month before therapy and continued

for 1 month after it is discontinued. This is coupled with monthly pregnancy testing during treatment (Bausch Health, 2020). Males who have partners who could become pregnant are advised to use condoms during sexual intercourse while taking bexarotene and for 1 month after discontinuing therapy.

Isotretinoin

13-*cis*-Retinoic acid is a vitamin A isomer that stimulates epithelial cell differentiation. It is primarily used to treat recalcitrant nodular acne. First-trimester exposure is associated with a high rate of pregnancy loss, and up to a third of infants have malformations (Lammer, 1985). The iPLEDGE program is an FDA-mandated REMS for isotretinoin and is found at www.ipledgeprogram.com. This web-based, restricted-distribution program requires participation for all patients, physicians, and pharmacies to help eliminate embryo–fetal exposure. Other countries have instituted similar programs, however, inadvertent exposure remains a global concern (Autret-Leca, 2010; Crijns, 2011).

Topical Retinoids

These compounds, initially used to treat acne, have become so popular for sun-damage treatment that they are called *cosmeceuticals* (Panchaud, 2012). The most commonly used topical agents are tretinoin, isotretinoin, and adapalene. Systemic absorption is low, and this argues against plausible teratogenicity.

Isolated case reports have described malformations following topical tretinoin, and it is unknown whether this is due to variability in absorption or perhaps potential individual susceptibility (Kaplan, 2015). A prospective study by the European Network of Teratology Information Services found no higher rates of birth defects or spontaneous losses, and no case of retinoid embryopathy (Panchaud, 2012). A systematic review of 635 pregnancies exposed to topical retinoids identified no higher risk for congenital malformations, spontaneous abortion, stillbirth, low birthweight, or preterm delivery (Kaplan, 2015). Notably, the manufacturer of tazarotene cautions that application over a sufficient body surface area could be comparable to oral treatment. Accordingly, its use in pregnancy is not recommended (Allergan, 2019).

Vitamin A

There are two natural forms of vitamin A. First, *provitamin A carotenoids*, which include beta-carotene, alpha-carotene, and beta-cryptoxanthin, are precursors found in fruits and vegetables. The body converts carotenoids into vitamin A. They have never been shown to cause birth defects (Oakley, 1995).

Second, *preformed vitamin A*, also called retinol, has been associated with cranial neural-crest defects when more than 10,000 IU per day is consumed in the first trimester (Rothman, 1995). Preformed vitamin A is present in liver, fish oils, milk, eggs, and in vitamin pills and dietary supplements. It seems reasonable to avoid doses of preformed preparations that exceed the recommended 3000 IU daily allowance (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017).

Sex Hormones

Selected functions and effects of male and female hormones on the developing fetus are reviewed in Chapter 3 (p. 31). Androgen exposure may cause varying degrees of virilization in female fetuses and may result in ambiguous genitalia (Fig. 3-3, p. 34).

Thalidomide and Analogues

Possibly the most notorious human teratogen, thalidomide causes malformations in 20 percent of fetuses exposed between 34 and 50 days menstrual age. The characteristic malformation is *phocomelia*—an absence or underdevelopment of one or more long bones. As a result, hands or feet may attach to the trunk, occasionally by a small rudimentary bone. Cardiac defects, gastrointestinal abnormalities, external ear and eye malformations, and other limb-reduction defects also are common following thalidomide exposure. The manufacturer reports that up to 40 percent of affected newborns do not survive the neonatal period (Celgene, 2021).

Thalidomide was marketed outside the United States from 1956 to 1960, before its teratogenicity was appreciated. The ensuing disaster, with thousands of affected children, was instructive of several important teratological principles. First, the placenta is not an effective barrier to the transfer of toxic substances from mother to embryo (Dally, 1998). Second, different species manifest considerable variability in their susceptibility to drugs and chemicals. Namely, thalidomide produced no defects in multiple rodent species and was assumed to be safe for humans. Last, timing of exposure may be closely related to the type of defect (Vargesson, 2015). For example, upper-limb amelia may develop with thalidomide exposure during days 24 to 30 postconception, upper-limb phocomelia with exposure during days 24 to 33, and lower-limb phocomelia with exposure during days 27 to 33.

Thalidomide was first approved in the United States in 1999 and currently is used to treat erythema leprosum nodosum and multiple myeloma (Celgene, 2021). The FDA has mandated a web-based, restricted-distribution program for thalidomide, called THALOMID REMS, which is required before patients, physicians, and pharmacies can access the medication.

Lenalidomide and *pomalidomide* are analogues of thalidomide. Both cross the placenta in animal species. Lenalidomide is used to treat some types of myelodysplastic syndrome and multiple myeloma. It has been found to cause thalidomide-like limb abnormalities in monkeys (Celgene, 2019). Pomalidomide is used to treat refractory multiple myeloma and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)-related Kaposi sarcoma. It is teratogenic in rats and rabbits (Celgene, 2020). Restricted-distribution programs similar to those used for thalidomide have been developed for these analogues.

Thyroid Medications

Methimazole

This thionamide drug is used to treat hyperthyroidism. Methimazole has been associated with a 2-fold increased risk for aplasia cutis congenita, as well as choanal atresia and esophageal atresia (Yoshihara, 2012). This constellation of findings has been termed *methimazole embryopathy*. Aplasia cutis is a rare abnormality characterized by a full-thickness skin defect, usually the scalp,

occasionally with a defect of underlying bone. In a study of more than 1000 methimazole-treated pregnancies, Yoshihara and colleagues (2015) identified the embryopathy in 1 to 2 percent. Treatment of hyperthyroidism in pregnancy is reviewed in Chapter 61.

Radioiodine

Radioactive iodine-131 is used for treatment of thyroid cancer and thyrotoxicosis and for diagnostic thyroid scanning. It is also a component of iodine-131 tositumomab therapy, which is employed to treat a type of non-Hodgkin lymphoma. Radioiodine is contraindicated during pregnancy because it readily crosses the placenta and is concentrated in the fetal thyroid gland by 12 weeks' gestation. It may cause severe or irreversible fetal and neonatal hypothyroidism, which can lead to decreased mental capacity and delayed skeletal maturation. Pregnancy testing should be performed before administration of radioiodine-131, and it is recommended that pregnancy be avoided for 6 to 12 months following treatment (Haugen, 2016). A review of more than 3000 pregnancies in which women delayed conception for at least 6 months after receiving radioactive iodine treatment identified no increase in pregnancy losses or congenital malformations (Kim, 2020). Concerns for the breastfeeding mother stem from breast exposure to the radioisotope.

Warfarin

This anticoagulant is a vitamin K antagonist with a long half-life. Because of its low molecular weight, it readily crosses the placenta and may cause embryotoxic and fetotoxic effects. It is considered contraindicated in pregnancy with one important exception. As discussed in Chapter 52 (p. 922), warfarin is used to treat women with mechanical heart valves who are at high risk for thromboembolism (Bristol-Myers Squibb, 2019).

Warfarin embryopathy is characterized by stippled epiphyses and nasal hypoplasia (Fig. 8-4). In one review of 63 cases attributed to warfarin exposure, 80 percent displayed characteristic findings, which include depressed nasal bridge with nasal hypoplasia and choanal atresia, along with stippled epiphyses of the femur, humerus, calcanei, and distal phalanges (Van Driel, 2002). The embryopathy may result from exposure between 6 and 9 weeks' gestation (Hall, 1980). Prevalence following exposure during this critical period is estimated to be 6 percent. One metaanalysis of cases in which the warfarin dosage was ≤5 mg/d identified embryopathy in 1 percent of exposed fetuses. This suggests that risk may be dose dependent (Hassouna, 2014).

If used beyond the first trimester, warfarin may lead to hemorrhage into fetal structures, which can cause abnormal growth and deformation from scarring (Warkany, 1976). Nearly 50 percent of reported embryopathy cases also have CNS anomalies (van Driel, 2002). Abnormalities can include agenesis of the corpus callosum; cerebellar vermian agenesis, which is the Dandy-Walker malformation; microphthalmia; and optic atrophy. Affected infants are also at risk for blindness, deafness, and developmental delays.

Tobacco

Cigarette smoking is the leading preventable cause of perinatal mortality. At least 7 percent of women report smoking cigarettes during pregnancy (Drake, 2018). Cigarette smoke contains a complex mixture of nicotine, cotinine, cyanide, thiocyanate, carbon monoxide, cadmium, lead, and various hydrocarbons (Stillerman, 2008). In addition to being fetotoxic, many of these substances have vasoactive effects or reduce oxygen levels.

Although tobacco is not considered a major human teratogen, selected birth defects have been reported to occur with greater frequency following exposure. Cigarette smoking and exposure to second-hand smoke have been associated with up to a 1.5-fold risk for orofacial clefts (Kummet, 2016; Sabbagh, 2015). This equates to an attributable risk of approximately 1 case per 2000 births. It is plausible that the vasoactive properties of tobacco smoke could produce congenital defects related to vascular disturbances. For example, the prevalence of Poland sequence, which is caused by an interruption in the vascular supply to one side of the fetal chest and ipsilateral arm, has been reported to occur two times more commonly among cigarette smokers (Martinez-Frias, 1999). The NBDPS similarly found an association between active or passive cigarette smoking and limb reduction defects, and an overall increase in risk of 25 percent (Caspers, 2013). A small increased risk for fetal cardiac anomalies also has been reported and may be dose related (Alverson, 2011; Malik, 2008; Sullivan, 2015).

The most prevalent obstetrical complication from smoking is a dose-dependent reduction in fetal growth. Newborns of mothers who smoke weigh on

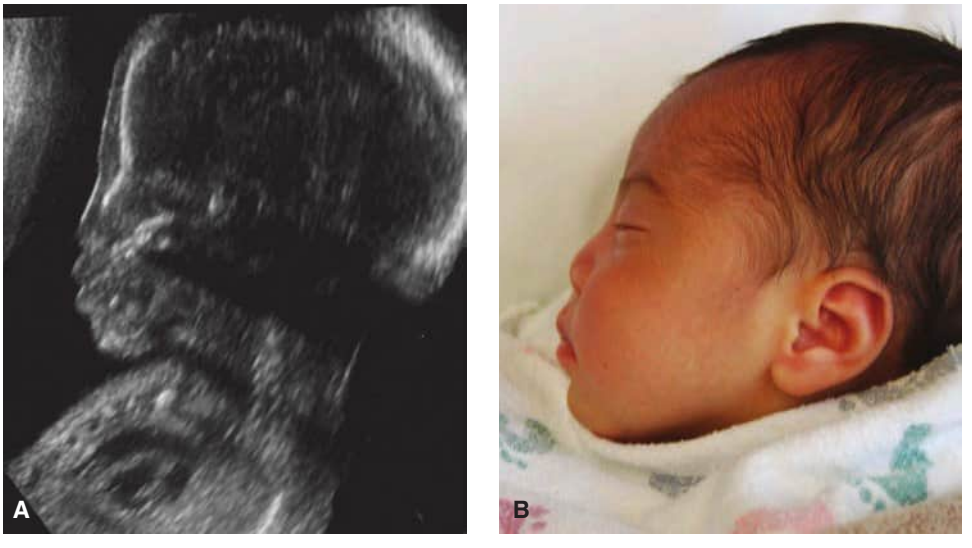


FIGURE 8-4 Warfarin embryopathy or fetal warfarin syndrome: nasal hypoplasia and depressed nasal bridge seen in a fetal sonographic image **(A)** and in the same newborn **(B)**.

average 200 g less than newborns of nonsmokers (D'Souza, 1981). Smoking doubles the risk of low birthweight and raises the risk of fetal-growth restriction two- to threefold (Werler, 1997). As such, cigarette smoking accounts for 15 percent of low-birthweight neonates (Dietz, 2010). Even secondhand smoke increases the risk for low birthweight. Other adverse pregnancy outcomes associated with cigarette smoking include preterm birth, prelabor rupture of membranes, placenta previa, and placenta abruption (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). Approximately one third of cases of sudden infant death syndrome have been attributed to cigarette smoking (Anderson, 2019; Dietz, 2010). Risks of childhood asthma and obesity also are increased.

When inquiring about tobacco use, providers should include alternative nicotine delivery products. All forms of nicotine cross the placenta. None is considered safe in pregnancy. Vaping or e-cigarette products heat an "e-liquid" containing nicotine—and often additional contaminants—along with a flavoring agent. Nicotine is associated with adverse effects on fetal brain and lung development (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b; Spindel, 2016). In adults, vaping has been linked to serious lung injury known as EVALI—e-cigarette or vaping-associated lung injury (Krishnasamy, 2020). Animal studies of hookah use, in which tobacco smoke is filtered through a water bowl, demonstrate lower birthweight and increased markers of cardiac stress (Khabour, 2016).

Smoking cessation should be strongly encouraged. Counseling includes avoidance of secondhand smoke and all nicotine-replacement products, such as patches, gum, and lozenges. A hotline is available from the Centers of Disease Control and Prevention and can be accessed by calling 1-800-QUIT-NOW. The U.S. Preventive Services Task Force has recommended that behavioral interventions be offered at the initial visit and continued throughout pregnancy (Siu, 2015).

■ Herbal Medicinal Products

In large survey studies from North America and Europe, 30 to 60 percent of women report using herbal remedies during pregnancy (Kennedy, 2016; Pallivalapila, 2015). These products are not regulated by the FDA, and there is a paucity of controlled studies assessing their safety and efficacy. The identity, quantity, and purity of each ingredient are usually unknown. Authors of a recent systematic review that included more than 1 million pregnancies concluded that in the absence of more safety data, the use of herbal medicinal products in pregnancy should be discouraged (Munoz Balbontin, 2019). Selected herbal remedies and their reported adverse effects are shown in Table 8-5.

■ Drugs of Abuse

Substance abuse is not uncommon in pregnancy. Assessment of outcomes attributable to illicit drug use is often confounded by factors such as poor maternal health, malnutrition, and infectious disease. Polysubstance abuse further complicates assessment of outcomes associated with any one drug. Moreover, illegal substances may contain toxic contaminants such as lead, cyanide, herbicides, and pesticides. Impurities added as diluents may independently have serious adverse perinatal effects. As noted on page 149, alcohol is a significant teratogen. Because it is legally obtained and ubiquitous, its use confounds the study of illicit drug teratogenicity. Similarly, tobacco use confounds the effect of drugs on fetal growth.

Cocaine

With this CNS stimulant, most adverse outcomes result from its vasoconstrictive and hypertensive effects. Serious potential maternal complications are cerebrovascular hemorrhage, myocardial damage, and placental abruption. Studies of congenital abnormalities and cocaine exposure have yielded conflicting results, but associations with cleft palate, cardiovascular abnormalities, and urinary tract anomalies have been reported (Chasnoff, 1988; Lipshultz, 1991; van Gelder, 2009). Cocaine use is also associated with fetal-growth restriction and preterm delivery. Children exposed as fetuses have risks for behavioral abnormalities and cognitive impairments (Bada, 2011; Gouin, 2011).

Marijuana

This is the recreational drug most commonly used in pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b). Based on data from the National Survey on Drug Use and Health, nearly 4 percent of pregnant women reported using marijuana in 2014 (Brown, 2017). Among women diagnosed with nausea and vomiting of pregnancy, the prevalence of marijuana use increased from 7 to 11 percent from 2009 to 2016 (Young-Wolff, 2019). Of concern is that the increase in prevalence is related to perceived safety and efficacy. In a study of 400 cannabis dispensaries, nearly 70 percent advised a caller posing as a pregnant woman with nausea at 8 weeks' gestation to use marijuana (Dickson, 2018). However, no data support efficacy of marijuana for nausea and vomiting of pregnancy, and there are indeed safety concerns (Metz, 2018).

Cannabinoids are not considered to be major teratogens, but they cross the placenta, and endogenous cannabinoids play key roles in brain development. In animals, cannabinoids are involved in neuronal proliferation, migration, and differentiation (Campolongo, 2011). Adverse developmental outcomes reported in exposed children include decreased attention span and lower scores on tests of visual problem solving and visual-motor coordination (Fried, 2003; Willford 2010).

Pregnancy outcome data are somewhat limited by the confounding risks of concomitant tobacco use. In one metaanalysis of nearly 8000 exposed pregnancies, only those with concomitant tobacco use had increased rates of preterm birth and low-birthweight neonates (Conner, 2016). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) has stated that the effects of marijuana may be as serious as those of cigarette smoking or alcohol consumption. Because of neurodevelopmental concerns, women who are pregnant or contemplating pregnancy should avoid marijuana use.

Methamphetamine

This sympathomimetic amine is derived from dextroamphetamine. It enhances dopamine release and blocks its reuptake. Methamphetamine is prescribed to treat attention deficit

TABLE 8-5. Pharmacological Actions and Adverse Effects of Some Herbal Medicines

Herb and Common Name	Potential Pharmacological Effects	Concerns
Aloe (oral ingestion)	Smooth-muscle stimulant	May cause uterine contractions
Almond oil (topical)	Smooth-muscle stimulant	Increase in preterm births
Black cohosh	Smooth-muscle stimulant	Causes uterine contractions; also has an estrogenic compound
Blue cohosh	Smooth-muscle stimulant	Causes uterine contractions; contains compounds teratogenic in multiple animal species
Echinacea: *purple coneflower root*	Activates cell-mediated immunity	Allergic reactions; decreases immunosuppressant effectiveness; possible immunosuppression with long-term use
Ephedra: *ma huang*	Direct and indirect sympathomimetic; tachycardia and hypertension	Hypertension, arrhythmias, myocardial ischemia; stroke; depletes endogenous catecholamines; life-threatening interaction with monoamine oxidase inhibitors
Evening primrose oil	Contains linoleic acids, a prostaglandin precursor	Possible complications if used for labor induction
Garlic: *ajo*	Inhibits platelet aggregation; increased fibrinolysis; antihypertensive activity	Risk of bleeding when combined with other platelet aggregation inhibitors
Ginger	Cyclooxygenase inhibitor, thromboxane synthetase inhibitor; lowers blood glucose	Increased risk of bleeding; hypoglycemia
Ginkgo biloba	Anticoagulant	Risk of bleeding; interferes with monoamine oxidase inhibitors
Ginseng	Lowers blood glucose; inhibition of platelet aggregation	Hypoglycemia; hypertension; risk of bleeding
Kava: *awa, intoxicating pepper, kawa*	Sedation, anxiolysis	Sedation; tolerance and withdrawal
Licorice (glycyrrhizin)	Inhibits cortisol and prostaglandin metabolism	Increased risk of preterm birth
Raspberry leaf	Smooth-muscle stimulant	Increased risk of cesarean when used in late pregnancy or in labor
Valerian: *all heal, garden heliotrope, vandal root*	Sedation	Sedation; hepatotoxicity; benzodiazepine-like acute withdrawal
Yohimbe		Hypertension, arrhythmias

Data from Ang-Lee, 2001; Facchinetti, 2012; Hall, 2012; Munoz Balbontin, 2019; Nordeng, 2011; Strandberg, 2002; Wiesner, 2017.

hyperactivity disorder and narcolepsy. Abuse has been rising in the United States since the late 1980s (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). Methamphetamine is not considered teratogenic. However, use in pregnancy is consistently associated with small-for-gestational age newborns, and children are at risk for developmental delays and behavioral abnormalities (Derauf, 2012; Eze, 2016; Gabrhelik, 2021; O'Connor, 2020). Behavioral abnormalities have been described in both infants and school-aged children (Eze, 2016). Hypertensive complications, placental abruption, preterm birth, and stillbirth are other associated adverse outcomes (Gorman, 2014).

Opioids

The dramatic rise in narcotic use among nonpregnant and pregnant individuals has been aptly termed an epidemic. Opioids are not major teratogens. However, the NBDPS did identify a slightly greater risk for spina bifida, gastroschisis, and cardiac abnormalities with periconceptional opioid exposure (Broussard, 2011). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019d) stresses that this potential, small increase in birth defects with maintenance therapy should be weighed against the risks associated with uncontrolled opioid abuse. Heroin addiction is associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes from the effects of repeated narcotic withdrawal on the fetus and placenta. These include preterm birth, placental abruption, fetal-growth restriction, and fetal death.

Neonatal narcotic withdrawal, called the *neonatal abstinence syndrome*, may manifest in 40 to 90 percent of exposed newborns (Blinick, 1973; Creanga, 2012; Dashe, 2002; Zelson, 1973). As discussed in Chapter 33 (p. 605), CNS irritability may progress to seizures if untreated and may be accompanied by tachypnea, apneic episodes, poor feeding, and failure to thrive. At-risk neonates are closely monitored using a scoring

system, and those severely affected are treated with opioids (Finnegan, 1975). The proportion of exposed newborns developing neonatal abstinence syndrome has risen significantly in recent years (Creanga, 2012; Lind, 2015).

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019d) recommends that pregnant women with opioid-use disorder be maintained on opioid-agonist therapy to reduce the risks associated with illicit opioid abuse and associated behaviors. Treatment includes either buprenorphine, which may be given in an office-based setting by a licensed buprenorphine prescriber, or methadone, usually through a licensed outpatient opioid treatment program. A multidisciplinary treatment program is recommended to reduce the likelihood of additional opioid abuse while on maintenance therapy. Withdrawal from methadone during pregnancy is discouraged because of high relapse rates (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019d). At Parkland Hospital, pregnant opioid users who decline maintenance therapy are offered inpatient hospitalization for controlled methadone taper. The goal is to reduce the likelihood of neonatal abstinence syndrome (Dashe, 2002; Stewart, 2013).

Miscellaneous Drugs

Phencyclidine (PCP) or angel dust is not associated with congenital anomalies. More than half of exposed newborns, however, experience withdrawal symptoms characterized by tremors, jitteriness, and irritability. *Toluene* is a common solvent used in paints and glue. Occupational exposure is reported to have significant fetal risks (Wilkins-Haug, 1997). When abused by women in early pregnancy, it is associated with *toluene embryopathy*, which is phenotypically similar to fetal alcohol syndrome. Abnormalities include pre- and postnatal growth deficiency, microcephaly, midface hypoplasia, short palpebral fissures, and wide nasal bridge (Pearson, 1994). Up to 40 percent of exposed children have developmental delays (Arnold, 1994).

REFERENCES

Abel EL, Hannigan JH: Maternal risk factors in fetal alcohol syndrome: provocative and permissive influences. Neurotoxicol Teratol 17(4):445, 1995

Ailes EC, Gilboa SM, Gill SK, et al: Association between antibiotic use among pregnant women and urinary tract infections in the first trimester and birth defects, National Birth Defects Prevention Study 1997 to 2011. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 106(11):940, 2016

Allergan Pharmaceuticals: Avage (Tazarotene) prescribing information. 2019. Available at: https://media.allergan.com/actavis/actavis/media/allergan-pdf-documents/product-prescribing/AVAGE-Cream_pi.pdf. Accessed March 20, 2021

Alsaad AM, Kaplan YC, Koren G: Exposure to fluconazole and risk of congenital malformations in the offspring: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Reprod Toxicol 52:78, 2015

Alverson CJ, Strickland MJ, Gilboa SM, et al: Maternal smoking and congenital heart defects in the Baltimore-Washington Infant Study. Pediatrics 127(3):e647, 2011

Alwan S, Chambers CD: Findings from the National Birth Defects Prevention Study: interpretation and translation for the clinician. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 103(8):721, 2015

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Elk Grove Village, AAP, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Lead screening during pregnancy and lactation. Committee Opinion No. 533, August 2012, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Marijuana use during pregnancy and lactation. Committee Opinion No. 722, October 2017, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Methamphetamine abuse in women of reproductive age. Committee Opinion No. 479, March 2011, Reaffirmed 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Opioid use and opioid use disorder in pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 711, August 2017, Reaffirmed 2019d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Use of psychiatric medications during pregnancy and lactation. Practice Bulletin No. 92, April 2008, Reaffirmed 2019f

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prepregnancy counseling. Committee Opinion No. 762, December 2018, Reaffirmed 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Tobacco and nicotine cessation during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 807, April 2020b

Anderka MT, Lin AE, Abuelo DN, et al: Reviewing the evidence for mycophenolate mofetil as a new teratogen: case report and review of the literature. Am J Med Genet A 149A(6):1241, 2009

Anderson TM, Lavista Ferres JM, Ren SY, et al: Maternal smoking before and during pregnancy and the risk of sudden unexpected infant death. Pediatrics 143(4):e20183325, 2019

Ang-Lee MK, Moss J, Yuan CS: Herbal medicines and perioperative care. JAMA 286(2):208, 2001

Arnold GL, Kirby RS, Langendoerfer S, et al: Toluene embryopathy: clinical delineation and developmental follow-up. Pediatrics 93(2):216, 1994

Autret-Leca E, Kreft-Jais C, Elefant E, et al: Isotretinoin exposure during pregnancy: assessment of spontaneous reports in France. Drug Saf 33(8):659, 2010

Bada HS, Bann CM, Bauer CR, et al: Preadolescent behavior problems after prenatal cocaine exposure: relationship between teacher and caretaker ratings (Maternal Lifestyle Study). Neurotoxicol Teratol 33(1):78, 2011

Barr M, Cohen MM: ACE inhibitor fetopathy and hypocalvaria: the kidney-skull connection. Teratology 44(5):485, 1991

Bateman BT, Patorno E, Desai RJ, et al: Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors and the risk of congenital malformations. Obstet Gynecol 129(1):174, 2017

Bausch Health: Bexarotene (Targretin) prescribing information. 2020. Available at: https://bauschhealth.com/Portals/25/Pdf/PI/TargretinCapsules-PI.pdf. Accessed March 20, 2021

Berard A, Iessa N, Chaabane S, et al: The risk of major cardiac malformations associated with paroxetine use during the first trimester of pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Br J Clin Pharmacol 81(4):589, 2016

Berard A, Zhao JP, Shui I, et al: Leflunomide use during pregnancy and the risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes. Ann Rheum Dis 77(4):500, 2018

Billings RJ, Berkowitz RJ, Watson G: Teeth. Pediatrics 113(4Suppl):1120, 2004

Blinick G, Jerez E, Wallach RC: Methadone maintenance, pregnancy, and progeny. JAMA 225(5):477, 1973

Bristol-Myers Squibb Pharmaceuticals: Coumadin (Warfarin) prescribing information. 2019. Available at: https://packageinserts.bms.com/pi/pi_coumadin.pdf. Accessed March 20, 2021

Bromley R, Weston J, Adab N, et al: Treatment for epilepsy in pregnancy: neurodevelopmental outcomes in the child. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD010236, 2014

Broussard CS, Rasmussen SA, Reefhuis J, et al: Maternal treatment with opioid analgesics and risk for birth defects. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(4):314.e1, 2011

Brown QL, Sarvet AL, Shmulewitz D, et al: Trends in marijuana use among pregnant and nonpregnant reproductive-aged women, 2002–2014. JAMA 317(2):207, 2017

Byrne JJ, Saucedo AM, Spong CY: Evaluation of drug labels following the 2015 Pregnancy and Lactation Labeling Rule. JAMA Netw Open 3(8):e2015094, 2020

Campolongo P, Trezza V, Ratano P, et al: Developmental consequences of perinatal cannabis exposure: behavioral and neuroendocrine effects in adult rodents. Psychopharmacology (Berl) 214(1):5, 2011

Carey JC, Martinez L, Balken E, et al: Determination of human teratogenicity by the astute clinician method: review of illustrative agents and a proposal of guidelines. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 85(1):63, 2009

Caspers KM, Romitti RA, Lin S, et al: Maternal periconceptional exposure to cigarette smoking and congenital limb deficiencies. Pediatr Perinat Epidemiol 27(6):509, 2013

Celgene Corporation: Pomalyst (pomalidomide) prescribing information. 2020. Available at: https://packageinserts.bms.com/pi/pi_pomalyst.pdf. Accessed March 20, 2021

Celgene Corporation: Revlimid (lenalidomide) prescribing information. 2019. Available at: https://packageinserts.bms.com/pi/pi_revlimid.pdf Accessed March 20, 2021
Celgene Corporation: Thalomid (thalidomide) prescribing information. 2021. Available at: https://packageinserts.bms.com/pi/pi_thalomid.pdf Accessed March 20, 2021.
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Alcohol use and binge drinking among women of childbearing age—United States, 2011–2013. MMWR 64(37):1042, 2015
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Guidelines for the identification and management of lead exposure in pregnant and lactating women. 2010. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/nceh/lead/publications/leadandpregnancy2010.pdf. Accessed March 20, 2021
Chambers CD, Johnson DL, Robinson LK, et al: Birth outcomes in women who have taken leflunomide during pregnancy. Arthritis Rheum 62(5):1494, 2010
Chasnoff IJ, Chisum GM, Kaplan WE: Maternal cocaine use and genitourinary tract malformations. Teratology 37(3):201, 1988
Chaudhry SA, Jong G, Koren G: The fetal safety of levetiracetam: a systematic review. Reprod Toxicol 46(1):40, 2014
Conner SN, Bedell V, Lipsey K, et al: Maternal marijuana use and adverse neonatal outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 128(4):713, 2016
Conover EA, Polifka JE: The art and science of teratogen risk communication. Am J Med Genet C Semin Med Genet 157(3):227, 2011
Cooper WO, Hernandez-Diaz S, Arbogast PG, et al: Major congenital malformation after first-trimester exposure to ACE inhibitors. N Engl J Med 354(23):2443, 2006
Costei AM, Kozer E, Ho T, et al: Perinatal outcome following third trimester exposure to paroxetine. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 156(11):1129, 2002
Cragan JD, Giboa SM: Including prenatal diagnoses in birth defects monitoring: experience of the Metropolitan Atlanta Congenital Birth Defects Program. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 85(1)20, 2009
Creanga AA, Sabel JC, Ko JY, et al: Maternal drug use and its effect on neonates: a population-based study in Washington state. Obstet Gynecol 119(5):924, 2012
Crijns HJ, Straus SM, Gispen-de Wied C, et al: Compliance with pregnancy prevention programmes of isotretinoin in Europe: a systematic review. Br J Dermatol 164(2):238, 2011
Cross R, Ling C, Day NP, et al: Revisiting doxycycline in pregnancy and early childhood—time to rebuild its reputation? Expert Opinion Drug Saf 15(3):367, 2016
Cumberland Pharmaceuticals: RediTrex (methotrexate) prescribing information. 2020. Available at: https://reditrex.com/wp-content/uploads/2020/10/Reditrex-revised-PI_AUG2020-cleanJW.pdf. Accessed March 20, 2021
Cunnington MC, Weil JG, Messenheimer JA, et al: Final results from 18 years of the International Lamotrigine Pregnancy Registry. Neurology 76(21):1817, 2011
Dally A: Thalidomide: was the tragedy preventable? Lancet 351:1197, 1998
Dashe JS, Sheffield JS, Olscher DA, et al: Relationship between maternal methadone dosage and neonatal withdrawal. Obstet Gynecol 100(6):1244, 2002
Dawson AL, Riehle-Colarusso T, Reefhuis J, et al: Maternal exposure to methotrexate and birth defects: a population-based study. Am J Med Genet 164A(9):2212, 2014
Derauf C, LaGasse LL, Smith LM, et al: Prenatal methamphetamine exposure and inhibitory control among young school-age children. J Pediatr 161:452, 2012
De Raaf MA, Beekhuijzen M, Guignabert C, et al: Endothelin-1 receptor antagonists in fetal development and pulmonary arterial hypertension. Reprod Toxicol 56:45, 2015
Del Campo M, Kosaki K, Bennett FC, et al: Developmental delay in fetal aminopterin/methotrexate syndrome. Teratology 60(1):10, 1999
Diav-Citrin O, Shechtman S, Zvi N, et al: Is it safe to use lamotrigine during pregnancy? A prospective comparative observational study. Birth Defects Res 109(15):1196, 2017
Dickson B, Mansfield C, Guiahi M, et al: Recommendations from cannabis dispensaries about first-trimester cannabis use. Obstet Gynecol 131(6):1031, 2018
Dietz PM, England LJ, Shapiro-Mendoza CK, et al: Infant morbidity and mortality attributable to prenatal smoking in the U.S. Am J Prev Med 39(1):45, 2010
Dolk H, Loane M, Garne E: The prevalence of congenital anomalies in Europe. Adv Exp Med Biol 686:349, 2010
Downing KF, Riehle-Colarusso T, Gilboa SM, et al: Potential risk factors for Ebstein anomaly, National Birth Defects Prevention Study, 1997–2011. Cardiol Young 29(6):819, 2019
Drake P, Driscoll AK, Mathews TJ: Cigarette smoking during pregnancy: United States, 2016. NCHS Data Brief (305):1, 2018
D'Souza SW, Black P, Richards B: Smoking in pregnancy: associations with skinfold thickness, maternal weight gain, and fetal size at birth. BMJ 282(6227):1661, 1981
Ehrenstein V, Sorensen HT, Bakketeig LS, et al: Medical databases in studies of drug teratogenicity: methodological issues. Clin Epidemiol 2(1):37, 2010
England LJ, Bennett C, Denny CH, et al: Alcohol use and co-use of other substances among pregnant females aged 12–44 years—United States, 2015–2018. MMWR 69(31):1009, 2020
Enns GM, Roeder E, Chan RT, et al: Apparent cyclophosphamide (Cytoxan) embryopathy: a distinct phenotype? Am J Med Genet 86(3):237, 1999
Eze N, Smith LM, LaGasse LL, et al: School-aged outcomes following prenatal methamphetamine exposure: 7.5-year follow-up from the infant development, environment, and lifestyle study. J Pediatr 170:34.e1, 2016
Facchinetti F, Pedrielli G, Benoni G, et al: Herbal supplements in pregnancy: unexpected results from a multicentre study. Hum Reprod 27(11):3161, 2012
Feldkamp M, Carey JC: Clinical teratology counseling and consultation case report: low dose methotrexate exposure in the early weeks of pregnancy. Teratology 47(6):533, 1993
Feldkamp ML, Carey JC, Byrne JL, et al: Etiology and clinical presentation of birth defects: population based study. BMJ 357:j2249, 2017
Finnegan LP, Connaughton JF, Kron RE et al: Neonatal abstinence syndrome: assessment and management. Addict Dis 2(1–2):141, 1975
Fisher SC, van Zutphen AR, Werler MM, et al: Maternal antihypertensive medication use and selected birth defects in the National Birth Defects Prevention Study. Birth Defects Res 110(19):1433, 2018
Food and Drug Administration: Content and format of labeling for human prescription drug and biological products; requirements for pregnancy and lactation labeling. Final rule. Fed Regist 79(233):72036, 2014
Food and Drug Administration: Evaluating the risks of drug exposure in human pregnancies. 2018. Available at: https://www.fda.gov/regulatory-information/search-fda-guidance-documents/evaluating-risks-drug-exposure-human-pregnancies. Accessed March 20, 2021
Food and Drug Administration: FDA drug safety communication: antipsychotic drug labels updated on use during pregnancy and risk of abnormal muscle movements and withdrawal symptoms in newborns. 2017. Available at: https://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm243903.htm. Accessed March 20, 2021
Food and Drug Administration: FDA drug safety communication: FDA recommends avoiding use of NSAIDs in pregnancy at 20 weeks or later because they can result in low amniotic fluid. 2020a. Available at: www.fda.gov/drugs/drug-safety-and-availability/fda-recommends-avoiding-use-nsaids-pregnancy-20-weeks-or-later-because-they-can-result-low-amniotic. Accessed March 20, 2021
Food and Drug Administration: List of pregnancy exposure registries. 2021. Available at: https://www.fda.gov/science-research/womens-health-research/list-pregnancy-exposure-registries. Accessed March 20, 2021
Food and Drug Administration: Pregnancy, lactation, and reproductive potential: labeling for human prescription drug and biological products—content and format guidance for industry. Draft Guidance, Revision 1. Rockville, Maryland, 2020b. Available at: https://www.fda.gov/media/90160/download. Accessed March 20, 2021
Food and Drug Administration: Questions & answers from the FDA/EPA advice about eating fish for women who are or might become pregnant, breastfeeding mothers, and young children. 2019. Available at: https://www.fda.gov/food/consumers/questions-answers-fdaepa-advice-about-eating-fish-women-who-are-or-might-become-pregnant. Accessed March 20, 2021
Fried PA, Watkinson B, Gray R: Differential effects on cognitive functioning in 13- to 16-year-olds prenatally exposed to cigarettes and marihuana. Neurotoxicol Teratol 25:427, 2003
Gabrhelik R, Skurtveit S, Nechanska B, et al: Prenatal methamphetamine exposure and adverse neonatal outcomes: a nationwide cohort study. Eur Addict Res 27(2):97, 2021
Genentech: Herceptin (trastuzumab) prescribing information. 2020. Available at: https://www.gene.com/download/pdf/herceptin_prescribing.pdf. Accessed March 20, 2021
Gilead Sciences: Letairis (ambrisentan) prescribing information. 2019. Available at: https://www.gilead.com/~/media/Files/pdfs/medicines/cardiovascular/letairis/letairis_pi.pdf. Accessed March 20, 2021
Goldberg O, Moretti M, Levy A, et al: Exposure to nitrofurantoin during early pregnancy and congenital malformations: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 37(2):150, 2015
Gorman MC, Orme KS, Nguyen NT, et al: Outcomes in pregnancies complicated by methamphetamine use. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(4):429.e1, 2014

Gouin K, Murphy K, Shah PS, et al: Effects of cocaine use during pregnancy on low birthweight and preterm birth: systematic review and meta-analyses. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(4):340.e1, 2011
Grab D, Paulus WE, Erdmann M, et al: Effects of low-dose aspirin on uterine and fetal blood flow during pregnancy: results of a randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind trial. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 15(1):19, 2000
Grandjean P, Herz KT: Methylmercury and brain development: imprecision and underestimation of developmental neurotoxicity in humans. Mt Sinai J Med 78(1):107, 2011
Gregg NM: Congenital cataract following German measles in the mother. Trans Ophthalmol Soc 3:35, 1941
Grimes DA, Schulz KF: False alarms and pseudo-epidemics: the limitations of observational epidemiology. Obstet Gynecol 120(4):920, 2012
Guerri C, Bazinet A, Riley EP: Foetal alcohol spectrum disorders and alterations in brain and behaviour. Alcohol 44(2):108, 2009
Guron G, Friberg P: An intact renin-angiotensin system is a prerequisite for normal renal development. J Hypertension 18(2):123, 2000
Hall HG, McKenna LG, Griffiths DL: Complementary and alternative medicine for induction of labor. Women Birth 25(3):142, 2012
Hall JG, Pauli RM, Wilson K: Maternal and fetal sequelae of anticoagulation during pregnancy. Am J Med 68(1):122, 1980
Hammers AL, Sanchez-Ramos L, Kaunitz AM: Antenatal exposure to indomethacin increases the risk of severe intraventricular hemorrhage, necrotizing enterocolitis, and periventricular leukomalacia: a systematic review with metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(4):505.e1, 2015a
Hammers AL, Sanchez-Ramos L, Kaunitz AM: Indomethacin as a tocolytic harmful to preterm infant. Author reply. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(6):879, 2015b
Hansen C, Andrade SE, Freiman H, et al: Trimethoprim-sulfonamide use during the first trimester of pregnancy and the risk of congenital anomalies. Pharmacoepidemiol Drug Saf 25(2):170, 2016
Hassouna A, Allam H: Limited dose warfarin throughout pregnancy in patients with mechanical heart valve prosthesis: a meta-analysis. Interact Cardiovasc Thorac Surg 18(6):797, 2014
Haugen BR, Alexander EK, Bible KC, et al. 2015 American Thyroid Association management guidelines for adult patients with thyroid nodules and differentiated thyroid cancer: the American Thyroid Association Guidelines Task Force on thyroid nodules and differentiated thyroid cancer. Thyroid 26(1):1, 2016
Health and Human Services: Federal policy for the protection of human subjects. Fed Regist 82(2):7149, 2017
Henson LJ, Afsar S, Davenport L, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in patients treated with leflunomide, the parent compound of the multiple sclerosis drug teriflunomide. Reprod Toxicol 95:45, 2020
Hernandez RK, Werler MM, Romitti P, et al: Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug use among women and the risk of birth defects. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(3):228.e1, 2012
Hernandez-Diaz S, Smith CR, Shen A, et al: Comparative safety of antiepileptic drugs during pregnancy. Neurology 78(21):1692, 2012
Hoeltzenbein M, Elefant E, Vial T, et al: Teratogenicity of mycophenolate confirmed in a prospective study of the European Network of Teratology Information Services. Am J Med Genet A 158A(3):588, 2012
Hoyme HE, Kalberg WO, Elliott AJ, et al: Updated clinical guidelines for diagnosing fetal alcohol spectrum disorders. Pediatrics 138(2):e20154256, 2016
Hoyt AT, Canfield MA, Romitti PA, et al: Associations between maternal periconceptional exposure to secondhand tobacco smoke and major birth defects. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(5):613, 2016
Huybrechts KF, Bateman BT, Palmsten K, et al: Antidepressant use late in pregnancy and risk of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn. JAMA 313(21):2142, 2015
Huybrechts KF, Palmsten K, Avorn J, et al: Antidepressant use in pregnancy and the risk of cardiac defects. N Engl J Med 360(25):2397, 2014
Hyoun SC, Obican SG, Scialli AR: Teratogen update: methotrexate. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 94(4):187, 2012
Janssen Pharmaceutica: Opsumit (macitentan) prescribing information. 2019a. Available at: https://www.janssenlabels.com/package-insert/product-monograph/prescribing-information/OPSUMIT-pi.pdf. Accessed March 20, 2021
Janssen Pharmaceutica: Tracleer (bosentan) prescribing information. 2019b. Available at: https://www.tracleer.com/assets/PDFs/Tracleer_Full_Prescribing_Information.pdf. Accessed March 20, 2021
Jasper JD, Goel R, Einarson A, et al: Effects of framing on teratogenic risk perception in pregnant women. Lancet 358(9289):1237, 2001
Jones KL, Smith DW, Ulleland CN, et al: Pattern of malformation in offspring of chronic alcoholic mothers. Lancet 1(7815):1267, 1973
Jordan AE, Jackson GL, Deardorff D, et al: Serotonin reuptake inhibitor use in pregnancy and the neonatal behavioral syndrome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 21(10):745, 2008
Kaplan YC, Ozsarfati J, Etwel F, et al: Pregnancy outcomes following first-trimester exposure to topical retinoids: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Br J Dermatol 173(5):1117, 2015
Kennedy DA, Lupattelli A, Koren G, et al: Safety classification of herbal medicines used in pregnancy in a multinational study. BMC Complement Altern Med 16(1):102, 2016
Khabour OF, Alzoubi KH, Al-Sheyab N, et al: Investigating the effects of exposure to waterpipe smoke on pregnancy outcomes using an animal model. Nicotine Tob Res 18:585, 2016
Khoury MJ, James LM, Flanders WD, et al: Interpretation of recurring weak association obtained from epidemiologic studies of suspected human teratogens. Teratology 46(1):69, 1992
Kieler H, Artama M, Engeland A, et al: Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors during pregnancy and risk of persistent pulmonary hypertension in the newborn: population based cohort study from the five Nordic countries. BMJ 344:d8012, 2012
Kim HO, Lee K, Lee SM, et al: Association between pregnancy outcomes and radioactive iodine treatment after thyroidectomy among women with thyroid cancer. JAMA Intern Med 180(1):54, 2020
King RW, Baca MJ, Armenti VT, et al: Pregnancy outcomes related to mycophenolate exposure in female kidney transplant recipients. Am J Transplant 17(1):151, 2017
Kirshon B, Wasserstrum N, Willis R, et al: Teratogenic effects of first trimester cyclophosphamide therapy. Obstet Gynecol 72(3Pt2):462, 1988
Klarskov P, Andersen JT, Jimenez-Solem E, et al: Short-acting sulfonamides near term and neonatal jaundice. Obstet Gynecol 122(1):105, 2013
Koren G, Bologa M, Long D, et al: Perception of teratogenic risk by pregnant women exposed to drugs and chemicals during the first trimester. Am J Obstet Gynecol 160(5Pt1):1190, 1989
Koren G, Pastuszak A, Ito S: Drugs in pregnancy. N Engl J Med 338(16):1128, 1998
Krishnasamy VP, Hallowell BD, Ko JY, et al: Update: characteristics of a nationwide outbreak of e-cigarette, or vaping, product use–associated lung injury—United States, August 2019–January 2020. MMWR 69(3):90, 2020
Kummet CM, Moreno LM, Wilcox AJ, et al. Passive smoke exposure as a risk factor for oral clefts–a large international population-based study. Am J Epidemiol 183(9):834, 2016
Kutscher AH, Zegarelli EV, Tovell HM, et al: Discoloration of deciduous teeth induced by administration of tetracycline antepartum. Am J Obstet Gynecol 96(2):291, 1966
Lammer EJ, Chen DT, Hoar RM, et al: Retinoic acid embryopathy. N Engl J Med 313(14):837, 1985
Lange S, Probst C, Gmel G, et al: Global prevalence of fetal alcohol spectrum disorder among children and youth: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA Pediatr 171(10):948, 2017
Lemoine P, Harouusseau H, Borteyru JP, et al: Les enfants de parents alcooliques: anomalies observées, a propos de 127 cas. Ouest Med 21:476, 1968
Lenz W, Knapp K: Thalidomide embryopathy. Arch Environ Health 5:100, 1962
Leong C, Chateau D, Dahl M, et al: Prescription medication use during pregnancies that resulted in births and abortions (2001-2013): a retrospective population-based study in a Canadian population. PLoS One 14(3):e0211319, 2019
Li DK, Yang C, Andrade S, et al: Maternal exposure to angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors in the first trimester and risk of malformations in offspring: a retrospective cohort study. BMJ 343:d5931, 2011
Lin S, Munsie JP, Herdt-Losavio ML, et al: Maternal asthma medication use and the risk of selected birth defects. Pediatrics 129(2):317, 2012
Lind JN, Petersen EE, Lederer PA, et al: Infant and maternal characteristics in neonatal abstinence syndrome—selected hospitals in Florida, 2010–2011. MMWR 64(8):213, 2015
Lipshultz SE, Frassica JJ, Orav EJ: Cardiovascular abnormalities in infants prenatally exposed to cocaine. J Pediatr 118(1):44, 1991
Malik S, Cleves MA, Honein MA, et al: Maternal smoking and congenital heart defects. Pediatrics 121(4):e810, 2008
Martinez-Frias ML, Czeizel AE, Rodriguez-Pinilla E, et al: Smoking during pregnancy and Poland sequence: results of a population-based registry and a case-control registry. Teratology 59(1):35, 1999
May PA, Baete A, Russo J, et al: Prevalence and characteristics of fetal alcohol spectrum disorders. Pediatrics 134(5):855, 2014
May PA, Gossage JP, Kalberg WO, et al: Prevalence and epidemiologic characteristics of FASD from various research methods with an emphasis on recent in-school studies. Dev Disabil Res Rev 15(3):176, 2009
McKeigue PM, Lamm SH, Linn S, et al: Bendectin and birth defects: I. A meta-analysis of the epidemiologic studies. Teratology 50(1):27, 1994
Meador KJ, Baker GA, Browning N, et al: Cognitive function at 3 years of age after fetal exposure to antiepileptic drugs. N Engl J Med 360(16):1597, 2009

Merck: Rebetol (ribavirin) prescribing information. 2020. Available at: https://www.merck.com/product/usa/pi_circulars/r/rebetol/rebetol_pi.pdf. Accessed March 20, 2021
Merlob P, Stahl B, Klinger G: Tetrada of the possible mycophenolate mofetil embryopathy: a review. Reprod Toxicol 28(1):105, 2009
Metz TD, Borgelt LM: Marijuana use in pregnancy and while breastfeeding. Obstet Gynecol 132(5):1198, 2018
Mitchell AA, Gilboa SM, Werler MM, et al: Medication use during pregnancy, with particular focus on prescription drugs: 1976–2008. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(1):51.e1, 2011
Mølgaard-Nielsen D, Hviid A: Newer-generation antiepileptic drugs and the risk of major birth defects. JAMA 305(19):1996, 2011
Mølgaard-Nielsen D, Pasternak B, Hviid A: Use of oral fluconazole during pregnancy and the risk of birth defects. N Engl J Med 369(9):830, 2013
Munoz Balbontin Y, Stewart D, Shetty A, et al: Herbal medicinal product use during pregnancy and the postnatal period: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 133(5):920, 2019
Munsie JW, Lin S, Browne ML, et al: Maternal bronchodilator use and the risk of oral clefts. Hum Reprod 26(11):3147, 2011
Murphy VE, Fittock RJ, Zarzycki PK, et al: Metabolism of synthetic steroids by the human placenta. Placenta 28(1):39, 2007
National Toxicology Program: NTP monograph: developmental effects and pregnancy outcomes associated with cancer chemotherapy use during pregnancy. NTP Monog 2:1, 2013
Nordeng H, Bayne K, Havnen GC, et al: Use of herbal drugs during pregnancy among 600 Norwegian women in relation to concurrent use of conventional drugs and pregnancy outcome. Complement Ther Clin Pract 17(3):147, 2011
Oakley GP, Erickson JD: Vitamin A and birth defects. N Engl J Med 333(21): 1414, 1995
O'Connor A, Seeber C, Harris E, et al: Developmental outcomes following prenatal exposure to methamphetamine: a western Australian perspective. J Paediatr Child Health 56(3):372, 2020
Ornoy A, Koren G: Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors during pregnancy: do we have now more definite answers related to prenatal exposure? Birth Defects Res 109(12):898, 2017
Pallivalapila AR, Stewart D, Shetty A, et al: Use of complementary and alternative medicines during the third trimester. Obstet Gynecol 125(1):204, 2015
Panchaud A, Csajka C, Merlob P, et al: Pregnancy outcome following exposure to topical retinoids: a multicenter prospective study. J Clin Pharmacol 52(12):1844, 2012
Park-Wyllie L, Mazzota P, Pastuszak A, et al: Birth defects after maternal exposure to corticosteroids: prospective cohort study and meta-analysis of epidemiological studies. Teratology 62(6):385, 2000
Patorno E, Huybrechts KF, Bateman BT, et al: Lithium use in pregnancy and the risk of cardiac malformations. N Engl J Med 376(23):2245, 2017
Pearson MA, Hoyme HE, Seaver LH, et al: Toluene embryopathy: delineation of the phenotype and comparison with fetal alcohol syndrome. Pediatrics 93(2):211, 1994
Pryde PG, Sedman AB, Nugent CE, et al: Angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor fetopathy. J Am Soc Nephrol 3(9):1575, 1993
Rasanen J, Jouppila P: Fetal cardiac function and ductus arteriosus during indomethacin and sulindac therapy for threatened preterm labor: a randomized study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 173(1):20, 1995
Reefhuis J, Gilboa SM, Anderka M, et al: The National Birth Defects Prevention Study: a review of the methods. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 103(8):656, 2015
Richardson S, Browne ML, Rasmussen SA, et al: Associations between periconceptional alcohol consumption and craniosynostosis, omphalocele, and gastroschisis. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 91(7):623, 2011
Rocheleau CM, Bertke SJ, Lawson CC, et al: Maternal occupational pesticide exposure and risk of congenital heart defects in the National Birth Defects Prevention Study. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 103(10):823, 2015
Rothman KJ, Moore LL, Singer MR, et al: Teratogenicity of high vitamin A intake. N Engl J Med 333(21):1369, 1995
Sabbagh HJ, Hassan MH, Innes NP, et al: Passive smoking in the etiology of non-syndromic orofacial clefts: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PLOS One 10(3):e0116963, 2015
Sadler TW (ed): Langman's Medical Embryology, 6th ed. Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1990, p 130
Sanofi-Aventis: Arava (leflunomide) prescribing information. 2016. Available at: https://products.sanofi.us/arava/arava.html. Accessed March 20, 2021
Scheuerle AE, Holmes LB, Albano JD, et al: Levetiracetam Pregnancy Registry: final results and a review of the impact of registry methodology and definitions on the prevalence of major congenital malformations. Birth Defects Res 111(13):872, 2019
Schuurman TN, Witteveen PO, van der Wall E, et al: Tamoxifen and pregnancy: an absolute contraindication? Breast Can 175(1):17, 2019
Shepard TH: Annual commentary on human teratogens. Teratology 66(6):275, 2002a
Shepard TH: Letters: "proof" of human teratogenicity. Teratology 50(2):97, 1994
Shepard TH, Brent RL, Friedman JM, et al: Update on new developments in the study of human teratogens. Teratology 65(4):153, 2002b
Siu AL: Behavioral and pharmacotherapy interventions for tobacco smoking cessation in adults, including pregnant women: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement. U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Ann Intern Med 163:622, 2015
Spindel ER, McEvoy CT: The role of nicotine in the effects of maternal smoking during pregnancy on lung development and childhood respiratory disease. Implications for dangers of e-cigarettes. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 193(5):486, 2016
Spong CY, Bianchi DW: Improving public health requires inclusion of underrepresented populations in research. JAMA 319(4):337, 2018
Stewart RD, Nelson DB, Adhikari EH, et al: The obstetrical and neonatal impact of maternal opioid detoxification in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(3):267, 2013
Stiefel Laboratories: Soriatane (acitretin) prescribing information. 2017. Available at: https://gskpro.com/content/dam/global/hcpportal/en_US/Prescribing_Information/Soriatane/pdf/SORIATANE-PI-MG.PDF. Accessed March 20, 2021
Stillerman KP, Mattison DR, Giudice LC, et al: Environmental exposures and adverse pregnancy outcomes: a review of the science. Reprod Sci 15(7):631, 2008
Stingone JA, Luben TJ, Carmichael SL, et al: Maternal exposure to nitrogen dioxide, intake of methyl nutrients and congenital heart defects in offspring. Am J Epidemiol 186(6):719, 2017
Strandberg TE, Andersson S, Jarvenpaa AL, et al: Preterm birth and licorice consumption during pregnancy. Am J Epidemiol 156(9):803, 2002
Strandberg-Larsen K, Nielsen NR, Grønbaek M, et al: Binge drinking in pregnancy and risk of fetal death. Obstet Gynecol 111(3):602, 2008
Streissguth AP, Clarren SK, Jones KL: Natural history of fetal alcohol syndrome: a 10-year follow-up of eleven patients. Lancet 2:85, 1985
Sullivan PM, Dervan LA, Reiger S, et al: Risk of congenital heart defects in the offspring of smoking mothers: a population-based study. J Pediatr 166(4):978, 2015
Teratology Society Public Affairs Committee: Causation in teratology-related litigation. Birth Def Res A Clin Mol Teratol 73(6):421, 2005
Tinker SC, Gilboa SM, Moore CA, et al: Specific birth defects in pregnancies of women with diabetes: National Birth Defects Prevention Study, 1997–2011. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(2):176, 2020
Vajda FJ, O'Brien TJ, Lander CM, et al: Antiepileptic drug combinations not involving valproate and the risk of fetal malformations. Epilepsia 57(7):1048, 2016
van der Heijden BJ, Carlus C, Narcy F, et al: Persistent anuria, neonatal death, and renal microcystic lesions after prenatal exposure to indomethacin. Am J Obstet Gynecol 171(3):617, 1994
Van Driel D, Wesseling J, Sauer PJ, et al: Teratogen update: fetal effects after in utero exposure to coumarins overview of cases, follow-up findings, and pathogenesis. Teratology 66(3):127, 2002
Van Gelder MM, Reefhuis J, Caton AR, et al: Maternal periconceptional illicit drug use and the risk of congenital malformations. Epidemiology 20:60, 2009
Vargesson N: Thalidomide-induced teratogenesis: history and mechanisms. Birth Defects Res C Embryo Today 105(2):140, 2015
Walker MP, Moore TR, Brace RA: Indomethacin and arginine vasopressin interaction in the fetal kidney. A mechanism of oliguria. Am J Obstet Gynecol 171(5):1234, 1994
Warkany J: Warfarin embryopathy. Teratology 14(2):205, 1976
Weber-Schoendorfer C, Kayser A, Tissen-Diabate T, et al: Fetotoxic risk of AT1 blockers exceeds that of angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors: an observational study. J Hypertens 38(1):133, 2020
Werler MM: Teratogen update: smoking and reproductive outcomes. Teratology 55(6):382, 1997
Weston J, Bromley R, Jackson CF, et al: Monotherapy treatment of epilepsy in pregnancy: congenital malformation outcomes in the child. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD010224, 2016
West-Ward Pharmaceuticals: Lithium prescribing information. 2020. Available at: dailymed.nlm.nih.gov/dailymed/drugInfo.cfm?setid=7dc9c6d2-6d9a-49e4-a8ab-437b0ed5f84e. Accessed March 20, 2021
Wiesner J, Knoss W: Herbal medicinal products in pregnancy—which data are available? Reprod Toxicol 72:142, 2017
Wilkins-Haug L: Teratogen update: toluene. Teratology 55(2):145, 1997
Willford JA, Chandler LS, Goldschmidt L, et al: Effects of prenatal tobacco, alcohol and marijuana exposure on processing speed, visual-motor

coordination, and inter-hemispheric transfer. Neurotoxicol Teratol 32:580, 2010
Williams JF, Smith VC, American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Substance Abuse: Fetal alcohol spectrum disorders. Pediatrics 136(5):e1395, 2015
Wurst KE, Poole C, Ephross SA, et al: First trimester paroxetine use and the prevalence of congenital, specifically cardiac defects: a meta-analysis of epidemiological studies. Birth Defect Res A Clin Mol Teratol 88(3):159, 2010
Yacobi S, Ornoy A: Is lithium a real teratogen? What can we conclude from the prospective versus retrospective studies? A review. Isr J Psychiatry Relat Sci 45(2):95, 2008
Yorifuji T: Lessons from an early-stage epidemiological study of Minimata disease. J Epidemiol 30(1):12, 2020
Yoshihara A, Noh JY, Watanabe N, et al: Substituting potassium iodide for methimazole as the treatment for Graves' disease during the first trimester may reduce the incidence of congenital anomalies: a retrospective study at a single medical institution in Japan. Thyroid 25(10):1155, 2015
Yoshihara A, Noh J, Yamaguchi T, et al: Treatment of Graves' disease with antithyroid drugs in the first trimester of pregnancy and the prevalence of congenital malformation. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 97:2396, 2012
Young-Wolff KC, Sarovar V, Tucker LY et al: Trends in marijuana use among pregnant women with and without nausea and vomiting in pregnancy, 2009–2016. Drug Alcohol Depend 196(1): 66, 2019
Zelson C, Lee SJ, Casalino M: Neonatal narcotic addiction: comparative effects of maternal intake of heroin and methadone. N Engl J Med 289(23):1216, 1973
Zhu Y, Bateman BT, Gray KJ, et al: Oral fluconazole use in the first trimester and risk of congenital malformations: population based cohort study. BMJ 369:m1494, 2020

CHAPTER 9

Preconceptional Counseling

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) defines preconceptional health to encompass the overall health of nonpregnant women during their reproductive years (Robbins, 2018). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) and the Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine (2014, 2021) attest to the importance of preconceptional care and promote the following objectives to advance it:

1. Improve knowledge, attitudes, and behaviors of men and women related to preconceptional health
2. Assure that all childbearing-aged women receive preconceptional care services—including evidence-based risk screening, health promotion, and interventions—that will enable them to enter pregnancy in optimal health
3. Implement interconceptional interventions to prevent or minimize recurrent adverse outcomes
4. Reduce the racial and socioeconomical disparities in adverse pregnancy outcomes

Table 9-1 lists the prevalence of many conditions often amenable to preconceptional intervention (Robbins, 2018). These are frequently encountered by generalist obstetrician–gynecologists, who can help optimize health entering pregnancy (Arluck, 2018). For example, by the time most women realize they are pregnant—usually 1 to 2 weeks after the first missed period—the embryo has already begun to form. Thus, many preventive steps—such as folic acid to avoid neural-tube defects—will be ineffective if initiated at this time. Moreover, 45 percent of all pregnancies in the United States are unplanned, and often these are at greatest risk (Finer, 2016). Last, a disproportionate number of indigent women receive less preconceptional care compared with their more affluent counterparts (Easter, 2017).

Few randomized trials evaluate preconceptional care efficacy, in part because withholding such counseling would be unethical.

TABLE 9-1. Preconceptional Health Indicators—United States, 2013–2015

Factor	Prevalence (%)
Diabetes	3.1
Unwanted pregnancy	6.1
Hypertension	10.9
Smoking	16.9
Depression	21.9
Multivitamin use	33.6
Normal weight	44.9
Physical activity	50.4
Effective contraception	56.9

Data from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Behavioral Risk Factor Surveillance System, and Pregnancy Risk Assessment Monitoring System.

Also, pregnancy outcomes are dependent on the interaction of various maternal, fetal, and environmental factors. Thus, ascribing a salutary outcome to a specific intervention is difficult (Temel, 2014; Tieu, 2017). However, prospective observational and case-control studies have demonstrated the successes of preconceptional counseling (Yamamoto, 2018). Therefore, routine pregnancy intention screening should be done (Manze, 2020).

COUNSELING SESSION

Obstetricians–gynecologists, internists, family practitioners, and pediatricians have the best opportunity to provide preventive counseling during periodic health maintenance examinations. The occasion of a negative pregnancy test is also an excellent time for education (Skogsdal, 2018). Jack and colleagues (1995) administered a comprehensive preconceptional risk survey to 136 such women, and almost 95 percent reported at least one problem that could affect a future pregnancy (see Table 9-1). Providers should be knowledgeable regarding relevant medical diseases, prior surgery, reproductive disorders, or genetic conditions and be able to interpret data and recommendations provided by other specialists (Simpson, 2014).

Women presenting specifically for preconceptional evaluation are advised that information collection may be time consuming, depending on the number and complexity of factors. The intake evaluation includes a thorough review of the medical, obstetrical, social, and family histories. Useful information is more likely to be obtained by asking specific questions regarding each of these histories and the health of each family member than by asking general, open-ended questions. Some important information can be obtained by questionnaires that address these topics. Answers are reviewed with the couple to ensure appropriate follow-up, including obtaining relevant medical records.

The Fourth Trimester

Another optimal time to begin preconceptional counseling is during the "fourth trimester." This was emphasized by the Presidential Task Force on Redefining the Postpartum Visit (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018e). Designed to optimize postpartum care and provide contraceptive counseling, it also sets the stage for any subsequent pregnancy and for the woman's long-term health. To assist the provider, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) has joined the Society of Maternal–Fetal Medicine to provide an Obstetric Care Consensus guide that emphasizes the interpregnancy period.

MEDICAL HISTORY

With specific medical conditions, general points include the pregnancy's effect on the condition and the disorder's influence on the fetus and pregnancy course. Some chronic conditions that may worsen pregnancy outcomes include treated or active cancer, prior peripartum cardiomyopathy, antiphospholipid antibodies, systemic lupus erythematosus, and congenital heart disease (Amant, 2015; Cunningham, 2019; Davis, 2021; Foeller, 2018; Gibbins, 2018; Hopkins, 2018). Importantly, psychological health also is considered (Barker, 2020; Lassi, 2014). Detailed preconceptional information regarding a few exemplary conditions is found in the next sections and in the other topic-specific chapters of this text.

Diabetes Mellitus

Because maternal and fetal pathology associated with hyperglycemia is well known, diabetes is the prototype of a condition for which preconceptional counseling is beneficial. Diabetes-associated risks to both mother and fetus are discussed in detail in Chapter 60 (p. 1068). If a patient maintains glucose levels close to normal, many of these complications can be avoided before conception. Another important aspect of counseling pertains to the frequent use of teratogenic angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors in this population (Podymow, 2015).

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018f) has concluded that preconceptional counseling for women with pregestational diabetes is beneficial and cost-effective and should be encouraged. The American Diabetes Association (2004) has promulgated consensus recommendations for preconceptional care for women with diabetes. These guidelines advise an inventory of disease duration and related complications and clinical and laboratory examination for end-organ damage. Perhaps most essential, they encourage a preconceptional hemoglobin A_{1c} level goal below 7 percent. In addition to assessing diabetic control, hemoglobin A_{1c} measurement can also forecast the risks for gestational diabetes and for major anomalies (Fig. 9-1) (Hinkle, 2018; Martin, 2020).

Although no randomized trials attest to the success of preconceptional counseling in women with diabetes, cohort studies do demonstrate its effectiveness (Tieu, 2017). In a prospective study of 5075 affected women, preconceptional counseling improved hemoglobin A_{1c} levels, folic acid compliance, and "optimal" pregnancy preparation (Yamamoto, 2018). Diabetic women who undergo preconceptional counseling also have improved glycemic control before pregnancy and in the first trimester and experience lower rates of adverse outcomes—defined as a perinatal death or major congenital anomaly (Tripathi, 2010). Despite

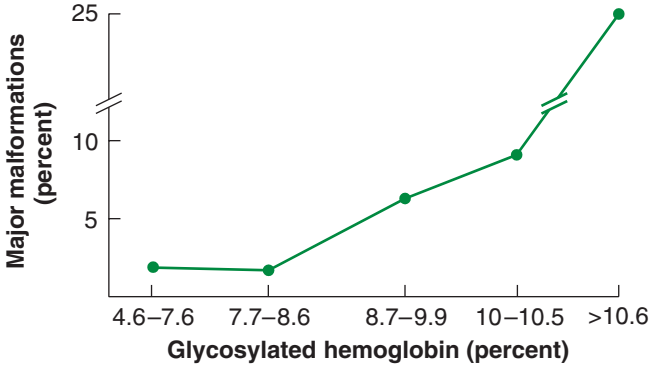


FIGURE 9-1 Relationship between first-trimester glycosylated hemoglobin values and risk for major congenital malformations in 320 women with insulin-dependent diabetes.

TABLE 9-2. First-Trimester Antiepileptic Monotherapy and the Associated Major Malformation Risk

Antiepileptic (n)	Malformations (%)[a]	Relative Risk (95% CI)[b]
Unexposed controls	1.1	Reference
Gabapentin	0.7	1.0 (0.5–1.9)
Lamotrigine	2.0	0.9 (0.7–1.3)
Oxcarbazepine	2.2	—
Levetiracetam	2.4	0.7 (0.4–1.2)
Phenytoin	2.9	1.7 (1.3–2.2)
Carbamazepine	3.0	1.4 (1.1–1.7)
Clonazepam	3.1	1.1 (0.6–2.0)
Topiramate	4.2	1.9 (1.2–2.9)
Phenobarbital	5.5	1.8 (1.4–2.5)
Valproate	9.3	2.9 (2.4–3.7)
Ethosuximide	—	3.0 (1.2–7.1)

Risk compared with that of the unexposed reference population of women without epilepsy.
CI = confidence interval.
Data from [a]Hernández-Díaz, 2012; [b]Veroniki, 2017.

such benefits, in one study of approximately 300 diabetic women in a managed-care plan, only approximately half received preconceptional counseling (Kim, 2005).

Epilepsy

Compared with unaffected women, those with a seizure disorder carry an augmented risk of neonates with structural anomalies. Some early reports indicated that epilepsy conferred an elevated a priori risk for congenital malformations that was independent of anticonvulsant treatment effects. More recent studies have largely failed to confirm this, but it is difficult to refute entirely because women who are controlled without medication generally have less severe disease (Cassina, 2013; Vajda, 2015). Polytherapy is associated with a higher malformation risk compared with monotherapy (Bromley, 2017). Last, in women using antiseizure medications, the risks for miscarriage and stillbirth in do not appear elevated (Aghajanian, 2015; Bech, 2014).

Ideally, medications are adjusted preconceptionally to minimize seizure frequency. From one national registry, the seizure risk during pregnancy was 50 to 70 percent lower in women without a seizure in the year preceding pregnancy compared with a group experiencing seizures in this preceding year (Vajda, 2008). No further advantages accrued if the seizure-free period exceeded a year.

Treatment goals attempt to control seizure frequency with monotherapy and with medications considered less teratogenic (Aguglia, 2009; Tomson, 2009). Discussed in Chapter 63 (p. 1129) and shown in Table 9-2, some one-drug regimens are more teratogenic than others. In particular, valproic acid is avoided if possible, as it has consistently been associated with a greater risk for major congenital malformations than other antiepileptic drugs (Jentink, 2010; Vajda, 2015). Information concerning the teratogenicity of newer antiepileptics is limited (Knight, 2021).

The American Academy of Neurology recommends consideration of antiseizure medication discontinuation before pregnancy in suitable candidates (Jeha, 2005). These include women who satisfy the following criteria: (1) have been seizure-free for 2 to 5 years, (2) display a single seizure type, (3) have a normal neurological examination and normal intelligence, and (4) show electroencephalogram results that have normalized with treatment.

Women with seizures should be advised to take a daily 4-mg oral folic acid supplement. Even so, the value of folate to reduce fetal malformation rates in pregnant women taking anticonvulsant therapy is not entirely clear. In one case-control study, the congenital abnormality risk was reduced by maternal folate supplementation in fetuses exposed to carbamazepine, phenobarbital, phenytoin, and primidone (Kjær, 2008). Conversely, Morrow and coworkers (2009) compared fetal outcomes of women who received preconceptional folic acid with those who did not receive it until later in pregnancy or not at all. In this study, a paradoxical *increase* in the number of major congenital malformations was observed in the group who received preconceptional folate. These investigators concluded that folate metabolism may be only a part of the mechanism by which malformations are induced in women taking these medications.

Immunizations

Preconceptional counseling includes assessment of immunity against common pathogens. Also, depending on health status, travel plans, and time of year, other immunizations may be indicated as discussed in Chapter 10 (p. 189). Several immunization resources are listed in Table 9-3. Vaccines that contain toxoids such as tetanus are suitable before or during gestation. Also, those containing killed bacteria or viruses—such as influenza, pneumococcus, hepatitis B, meningococcus, and rabies vaccines—are not associated with adverse fetal outcomes and are not contraindicated preconceptionally or during pregnancy. Conversely, live-virus vaccines are not recommended during pregnancy. Examples are vaccines against varicella-zoster, measles, mumps, rubella, polio, chickenpox, and yellow fever. Moreover,

TABLE 9-3. Immunization Resources

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists website: www.acog.org/programs/immunization-for-women
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention website: www.cdc.gov/vaccines/hcp/
Immunization Action Coalition: www.immunize.org

1 month or longer should ideally pass between vaccination and conception attempts. That said, inadvertent administration of measles, mumps, rubella (MMR) or varicella vaccines during pregnancy should not generally be considered indications for pregnancy termination. Most reports indicate that the fetal risk is only theoretical. Immunization to smallpox, anthrax, and other bioterrorism diseases is discussed if clinically appropriate (Chap. 67, p. 1200).

With some infections, vaccines are unavailable. One recent example is the Zika virus (Brasil, 2016). For this virus, during the 2016 epidemic, the CDC issued travel advisories for pregnant women (Petersen, 2016; Schuler-Faccini, 2016).

GENETIC DISEASES

The CDC (2016) estimates that 3 percent of neonates born each year in the United States will have at least one birth defect. Importantly, such defects are the leading cause of infant mortality and account for 20 percent of deaths. Ethics preclude randomized trials of preconceptional counseling for genetic risk (Hussein, 2018). Instead, the benefits of preconceptional counseling usually are measured by comparing the incidence of new cases before and after initiation of such a program. Specific congenital conditions that clearly benefit from patient education include neural-tube defects, phenylketonuria, thalassemias, and other genetic diseases more common in individuals of Eastern European Jewish descent (King, 2018). Other missed opportunities for genetic consultation were found for women with a personal or family history of birth defects, intellectual disability or autism, and a prior positive genetic carrier screening test (McClatchey, 2018).

Family History

Pedigree construction using the symbols shown in Figure 9-2 is the most thorough method for obtaining a family history as a part of genetic screening. The health and reproductive status of each "blood relative" are individually reviewed for medical illnesses, mental retardation, birth defects, infertility,

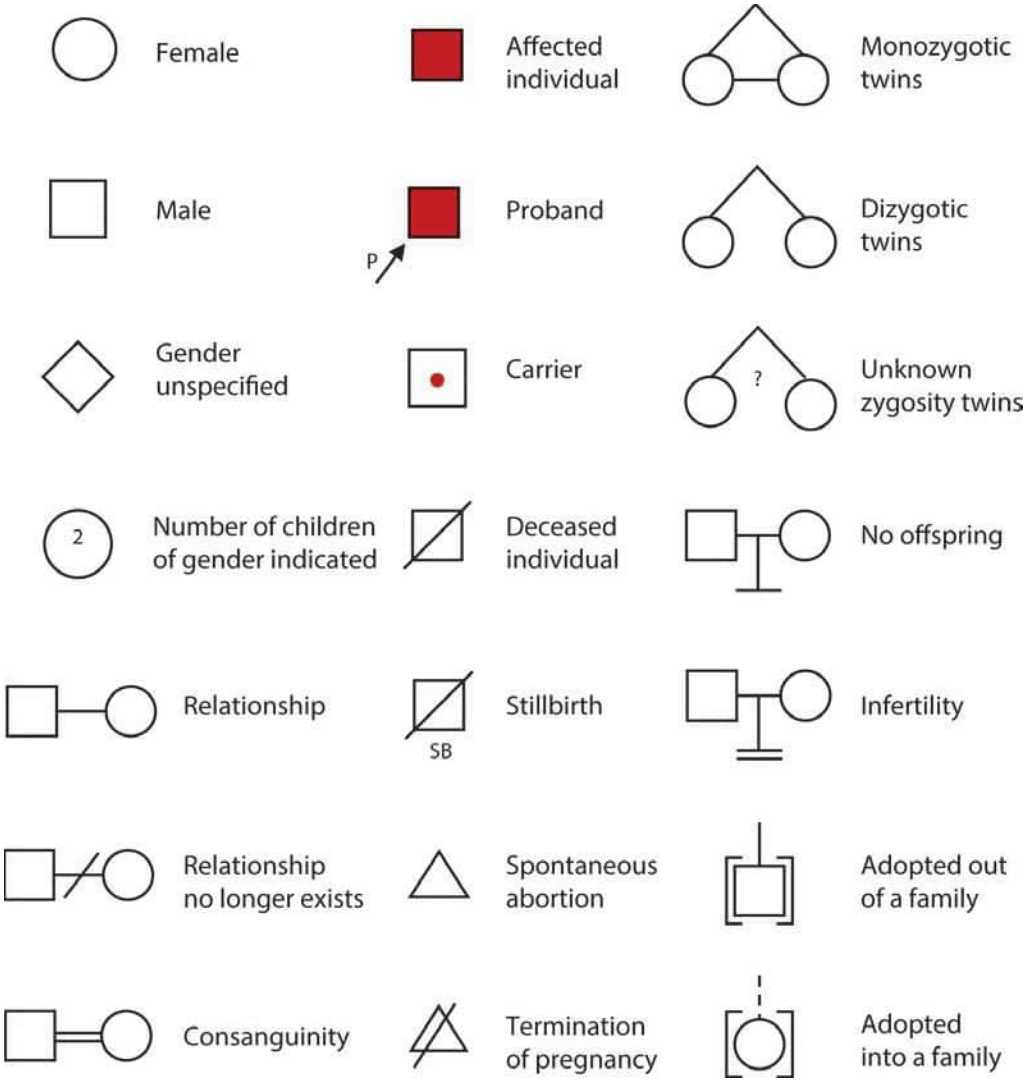


FIGURE 9-2 Symbols used for pedigree construction.

and pregnancy loss. Certain racial, ethnic, or religious backgrounds may indicate elevated risk for specific recessive disorders.

Although most women can provide information regarding their history, their understanding may be limited. Pregnant women may fail to communicate a birth defect in the family or may report it incorrectly. Thus, any disclosed defect or genetic disease is ideally confirmed by reviewing pertinent medical records or by contacting affected relatives for additional information.

Neural-Tube Defects

The incidence of neural-tube defects (NTDs) is 0.9 per 1000 live births, and they are second only to cardiac anomalies as the most frequent structural fetal malformation. Some of these malformations are associated with specific mutations. One example is the 677C → T substitution in the gene that encodes methylene tetrahydrofolate reductase. For this and similar gene defects, one seminal trial showed that preconceptional folic acid therapy significantly reduced the risk for a recurrent NTD by 72 percent (Medical Research Council Vitamin Study Research Group, 1991). More importantly, because more than 90 percent of neonates with NTDs are born to women at low risk, Czeizel and Dudas (1992) showed that universal supplementation reduced the a priori risk of a first NTD.

Because of these findings, all women who may become pregnant are recommended to take daily 400 to 800 μg of folic acid orally before conception and through the first trimester (U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, 2019). Folate fortification of cereal grains has been mandatory in the United States since 1998, and this practice has lowered neural-tube defect rates (Williams, 2015). Despite the demonstrated benefits of folate supplementation, only half of women take folic acid supplementation periconceptionally (de Jong-van den Berg, 2005; Goldberg, 2006).

Phenylketonuria

More than 600 mutations have been identified in the phenylalanine hydroxylase gene. The inherited defect in phenylalanine metabolism exemplifies diseases in which the fetus may not be at risk to inherit the disorder but may be damaged by maternal disease. Specifically, mothers with phenylketonuria (PKU) who eat an unrestricted diet have abnormally high blood phenylalanine levels. This amino acid readily crosses the placenta and can damage developing fetal organs, especially neural and cardiac tissues.

With appropriate preconceptional counseling and adherence to a phenylalanine-restricted diet before pregnancy, the incidence of fetal malformations is dramatically reduced (Camp, 2014; Vockley, 2014). Therefore, the phenylalanine concentration is ideally brought into normal range 3 months before conception and then maintained there throughout pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). The target phenylalanine blood concentration is 120 to 360 μmol/L (Camp, 2014).

Thalassemias

These disorders of globin-chain synthesis are the most common single-gene disorders worldwide (Forget, 2013; Vichinsky, 2013). As many as 200 million people carry a gene for one of these hemoglobinopathies, and hundreds of mutations are known to cause thalassemia syndromes (Chap. 59, p. 1053). In endemic areas such as Mediterranean and Southeast Asian countries, counseling and other prevention strategies have reduced the incidence of new cases by up to 80 percent (Cao, 2013).

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a) recommends that individuals of high-risk ancestry be offered carrier screening to allow them informed decision-making regarding reproduction and prenatal diagnosis. One method of early prenatal diagnosis for some thalassemia syndromes is *preimplantation genetic testing (PGT)*, which is coupled with assisted reproductive technology (Chap. 17, p. 348).

Individuals of Eastern European Jewish Descent

Most individuals of Jewish ancestry in North America are descended from Ashkenazi Jewish communities and are at greater risk for having offspring with one of several autosomal recessive disorders. These include Tay-Sachs disease, Gaucher disease, cystic fibrosis, Canavan disease, familial dysautonomia, mucolipidosis IV, Niemann-Pick disease type A, Fanconi anemia group C, and Bloom syndrome. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017a; 2019a) recommends preconceptional counseling and screening for these disorders in this population. Carrier frequency and features of these conditions are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 17 (p. 343).

REPRODUCTIVE HISTORY

During preconceptional screening, information is sought regarding infertility; abnormal pregnancy outcomes that may include miscarriage, ectopic pregnancy, molar pregnancy, and recurrent pregnancy loss; and obstetrical complications such as cesarean delivery, preeclampsia, placental abruption, and preterm delivery (Stubblefield, 2008).

As discussed in Chapter 35 (p. 626), details involving a prior stillbirth are especially important. For example, Korteweg and associates (2008) identified chromosomal abnormalities in 13 percent of stillborns who underwent karyotyping. And, Reddy and colleagues (2012) confirmed that chromosomal microarray analysis (CMA) yields better detection of genetic abnormalities than does standard karyotyping. This primarily stems from CMA's ability to assess nonviable tissue (Chap. 16, p. 325). Identification of a genetic abnormality in a stillborn can help to determine recurrence risk.

PARENTAL AGE

Maternal Age

Women at both ends of the reproductive-age spectrum have unique outcomes to consider. First, according to the CDC, 3.4 percent of births in the United States in 2010 were in women aged 15 to 19 years (Martin, 2012). An international study reported a rate of 11.9 percent for this age group globally (Althabe, 2015). These adolescents are at higher risk for anemia, preterm delivery, and preeclampsia compared with women aged 20 to 35 years (Usta, 2008). The incidence of sexually transmitted diseases—common in adolescents—is even higher during pregnancy (Niccolai, 2003). Unfortunately, because most of their pregnancies are unplanned, adolescents rarely seek preconceptional counseling.

Conceptions after age 35 currently constitute approximately 15 percent of pregnancies in the United States (Martin, 2012). By contrast, these women are more likely to request preconceptional counseling. Motivations may stem from a desire to optimize outcomes at their age or with infertility treatment or both. Some studies—including data from Parkland Hospital presented in Figure 9-3–indicate that risks for obstetrical complications and for perinatal morbidity and mortality rise after age 35 (Waldenström, 2015). The older woman who has a chronic illness or who is in poor physical condition usually has readily apparent risks. For the physically fit woman without medical problems, however, the risks are lower.

Overall, the maternal mortality rate is higher in women aged 35 and older (Chap. 1, p. 5). Creanga and coworkers (2017) analyzed pregnancy-related deaths in the United States for 2011 through 2013. Although women older than 35 years contributed less than 15 percent of all live births, they constituted 31 percent of maternal deaths. For the fetus, maternal age-related risks primarily originate from (1) indicated preterm delivery for maternal complications such as hypertension and diabetes, (2) spontaneous preterm birth, (3) fetal-growth disorders related to chronic maternal disease or multifetal gestation, (4) fetal aneuploidy, and (5) pregnancies resulting from assisted reproductive technology.

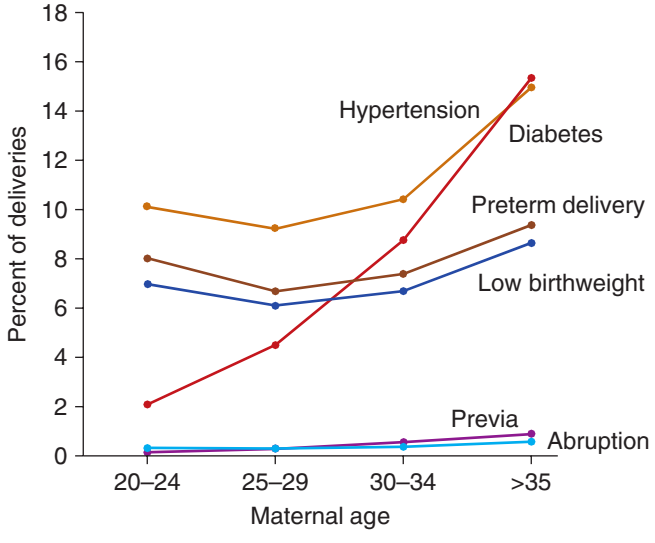


FIGURE 9-3 Incidence of selected pregnancy complications in relation to maternal age among 295,667 women delivered at Parkland Hospital.

Assisted Reproductive Technologies

Recall that older women have subfertility problems. And, although the incidence of dizygotic twinning rises with maternal age, the more important cause of multifetal gestation in older women follows the use of assisted reproductive technology (ART) and ovulation induction. Indeed, according to the CDC, 30 to 40 percent of all multifetal gestations in the United States in 2012 were conceived with the use of ART (Sunderan, 2015). Morbidity and mortality with multifetal pregnancies stem from preterm delivery and placentation complications, such as placenta previa and abruption (Qin, 2016).

With ART, transmission of infectious agents is a risk. For women without human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection who plan conception with their HIV-affected partners, the CDC has published prevention strategies (Kawwass, 2017). Also, Zika virus infection acquisition through in vitro fertilization (IVF) has been described (Washington Cross, 2017). Last, some data links ART to higher major congenital malformation rates. In a registry of 308,974 births, 8.3 percent of neonates conceived by ART had major birth defects, and intracytoplasmic injection was also associated with an elevated risk for malformations (Davies, 2012).

Paternal Age

Advanced paternal age has doubled in the United States over the past generation. It is associated with a higher risk of preterm birth and new autosomal-dominant mutations (Chap. 16, p. 320) (Khandwala, 2018). One example is the possible link between increasing paternal age and complex neuropsychiatric conditions (Malaspina, 2015). Parental history and experiences can also exert effects on progeny through epigenomic information not contained in the DNA sequence. Variations in sperm and oocyte cytosine methylation and noncoding RNAs are examples (Cedars, 2015; Lane, 2014).

SOCIAL HISTORY

Recreational Drugs and Smoking

Fetal risks associated with alcohol, marijuana, cocaine, amphetamines, and heroin are discussed in Chapters 8 (p. 148) and 64 (p. 1150). The first step in preventing drug-related fetal risk is an honest assessment of use by the patient (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017c). Toward this end, questioning should be nonjudgmental.

Several validated tools screen for at-risk drinking. One is the well-studied TACE questions (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019d). These four questions investigate having a *tolerance* to alcohol, being *annoyed* by comments about their drinking, attempting to *cut down*, and drinking early in the morning—the *eye opener*.

Of more than 1000 postpartum patients in one Canadian study, a high percentage reported alcohol use concurrent with conception attempts (Tough, 2006). Specifically, nearly half of those planning for pregnancy consumed a mean of 2.2 drinks daily during early gestation and before they recognized their pregnancy. This frequency and pattern clearly underscore the opportunity for preconceptional counseling.

In 2014 to 2015, 17 percent of reproductive-age women in the United States smoked cigarettes according to the CDC (Robbins, 2018). Smoking in pregnancy is consistently associated with numerous adverse perinatal outcomes (Chap. 8, p. 156). These risks are largely mitigated by cessation before pregnancy, highlighting the importance of screening for tobacco use prior to and during pregnancy (Chap. 10, p. 179).

Environmental Exposures

Only a few environmental agents have been shown to cause adverse pregnancy outcomes (McCue, 2019; Windham, 2008). For example, contact with some chemicals may impart significant maternal and fetal risks. Discussed in Chapter 8 (p. 153), excess exposure to methyl mercury or lead is associated with neurodevelopmental disorders. For lead, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018b) endorses guidelines that recommend blood lead testing only if a lead-exposure risk factor is identified. If the levels are >5 µg/dL, counseling is completed, and the lead source is sought and removed. Blood lead levels >45 µg/dL are consistent with lead poisoning, and women in this group may be candidates for chelation therapy (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2019).

In contrast, everyday exposures to *electromagnetic fields* are not linked to adverse fetal outcomes (Robert, 1999). Examples include energy emanated by high-voltage power lines, electric blankets, microwave ovens, and cellular phones.

Diet

Pica is the craving for and consuming of ice, laundry starch, clay, dirt, or other nonfood items. It should be discouraged due to its inherent replacement of healthful food with nutritionally empty products (Chap. 10, p. 191). In some cases, it may represent an unusual physiological response to iron deficiency (Epler, 2017). Many *vegetarian diets* are protein deficient but can be corrected by increasing egg and cheese consumption. *Anorexia* and *bulimia* raise maternal risks of nutritional deficiencies, electrolyte disturbances, cardiac arrhythmias, and gastrointestinal pathology (American Psychiatric Association, 2013). Discussed in Chapter 64 (p. 1149), pregnancy-related complications with these eating disorders include greater risks of low birthweight, smaller head circumference, microcephaly, and small-for-gestational-age newborns.

Obesity is linked with several maternal complications. Discussed in Chapter 51 (p. 905), these include hypertension, preeclampsia, gestational diabetes, labor abnormalities, cesarean delivery, and operative complications (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018d). Obesity also appears to be associated with a range of structural fetal anomalies (Stothard, 2009).

Exercise

Conditioned pregnant women usually can continue to exercise throughout gestation (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). Discussed in Chapter 10, covering prenatal care (p. 187), no data suggest that exercise is harmful during pregnancy. However, as pregnancy progresses, balance problems and joint relaxation may predispose to orthopedic injury. During exercise, gravidas should avoid exhaustion, overheating, dehydration, and prolonged supine position.

Intimate-Partner Violence

Pregnancy can exacerbate interpersonal problems and is a time of elevated risk from an abusive partner. According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2012), approximately 324,000 pregnant women are abused each year. Intimate-partner violence (IPV) is associated with greater risk for several pregnancy-related complications that include hypertension, vaginal bleeding, hyperemesis, preterm delivery, and low-birthweight neonates (Chap. 50, p. 891) (Silverman, 2006). Because IPV can escalate during pregnancy, even to the point of homicide, the preconceptional period provides an ideal time for screening and intervention (Cheng, 2010). In support, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019c) provides recommendations and resources for screening both pregnant and nonpregnant women for IPV.

Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Transgender, and Queer Individuals

Preconceptional care has traditionally been based on the assumption of heterosexuality and has often excluded lesbian women (Bushe, 2017). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018c) endorses quality health care for all women regardless of sexual orientation. Indeed, in a study by Carpinello and colleagues (2016), three fourths of lesbian couples planned for one partner to conceive. Paradoxically, adolescent bisexual and lesbian women are at greater risk for undesired pregnancies (Charlton, 2018; Hodson, 2017). Of special risks in this group, lesbian and bisexual women have higher incidences of obesity, tobacco and alcohol use, depression, diabetes, and low parity compared with heterosexual women (Mravcak, 2006; O'Hanlan, 2007). In some of these groups, knowledge of surrogacy laws is imperative (Tsai, 2020).

SCREENING TESTS

Highlighted in Table 9-4, women with certain chronic medical diseases ideally would be evaluated before conception. With several of these, optimizing maternal condition will improve pregnancy outcomes.

TABLE 9-4. Selected Preconceptional Counseling Topics

Condition	Reference Chapter	Recommendations for Preconceptional Counseling
Environmental exposure	Chap. 10, p. 188	*Methyl mercury*: Avoid shark, swordfish, king mackerel, and tile fish. Ingest no more than 12 ounces or 2 servings of canned tuna and no more than 6 ounces of albacore per week. *Lead*: Blood lead testing if a risk factor is identified (p. 188); treat if indicated according to recommendations.
Obesity	Chap. 51, p. 902	Calculate BMI yearly from Figure 51-1, p. 903
Eating disorder	Chap. 64, p. 1149	*BMI* $\geq$*25 kg/m*^{2}: Counsel on diet. Test for diabetes and metabolic syndrome if indicated. Consider weight loss prior to conception. *BMI* $\leq$*18.5 kg/m*^{2}: Assess for eating disorder. *Bariatric surgery*: Fertility rate, obstetrical complications.
Physical activity	Chap. 10, p. 187	*Exercise:* Conditioned women may continue to exercise. Counsel on fall prevention. Avoid exhaustion and heat exposure.
Cardiovascular disease	Chap. 52, p. 918 Chap. 8, p. 150	Counsel on cardiac risks during pregnancy; discuss situations in which pregnancy is contraindicated. Optimize cardiac function. Discuss medication teratogenicity (warfarin, ACE inhibitor, ARB) and, if possible, switch to less dangerous agent when conception planned. Offer genetic counseling to those with congenital cardiac anomalies (Table 52-4, p. 920).
Chronic HTN	Chap. 53, p. 944 Chap. 8, p. 150	Counsel on specific risks during pregnancy. Assess those with long-standing HTN for ventricular hypertrophy, retinopathy, and renal disease. Optimize blood pressure control. Assess for teratogenic drug use.
Asthma	Chap. 54, p. 960	Counsel on asthma risks during pregnancy. Optimize pulmonary function preconceptionally. Treat women with pharmacological step therapy for chronic asthma.
Thrombophilia	Chap. 55, p. 976	Question for personal or family history of thrombotic events or recurrent poor pregnancy outcomes. If a thrombophilia is found or known, counsel and offer appropriate anticoagulation regimen.
Renal disease	Chap. 56, p. 1003 Chap. 8, p. 150	*Chronic renal disease:* Counsel on specific risks during pregnancy. Optimize blood pressure control before conception. Counsel women taking ACE inhibitors and ARBs about teratogenicity.
Gastrointestinal disease	Chap. 57, p. 1021 Chap. 8, p. 152	*Inflammatory bowel disease*: Counsel affected women on subfertility risks and risks of adverse pregnancy outcomes. Discuss teratogenicity of methotrexate and the other immunomodulators. Offer effective contraception during their use.
Hepatobiliary disease	Chap. 58, p. 1037	*Hepatitis B*: Vaccinate all high-risk women before conception (Table 10-7, p. 189). Counsel chronic carriers on transmission prevention to partners and fetus. Treat if indicated. *Hepatitis C*: Screen high-risk women. Counsel affected women on risks of disease and transmission. If nonpregnant treatment indicated, discuss ramifications and appropriateness of pregnancy.
Hematological disease	Chap. 59, p. 1048	*Iron-deficiency anemia*: Iron supplementation. *Sickle-cell disease*: Screen all black women. Counsel those with trait or disease. Test partner if desired. *Thalassemias*: Screen women of Southeast Asian or Mediterranean ancestry.
Diabetes	Chap. 60, p. 1070	Optimize glycemic control to minimize teratogenicity of hyperglycemia. Evaluate for end-organ damage such as retinopathy, nephropathy, hypertension, and others. Discontinue ACE inhibitors.
Thyroid disease	Chap. 61, p. 1089	Screen those with thyroid disease symptoms. Ensure iodine-sufficient diet. Treat overt hyper- or hypothyroidism. Counsel on risks to pregnancy outcome.
Connective tissue disease	Chap. 62, p. 1109 Chap. 8, p. 144	*Rheumatoid arthritis*: Counsel on flare risk after pregnancy. Discuss methotrexate and leflunomide teratogenicity, as well as possible effects of other immunomodulators. Switch these agents before conception. Stop NSAIDs by 27 weeks' gestation. *Lupus*: Counsel on risks during pregnancy. Assess renal involvement. Optimize disease before conception. Discuss mycophenolate mofetil and cyclophosphamide teratogenicity as well as possible effects of newer immunomodulators. Switch these agents before conception.

(*continued*)

TABLE 9-4. Continued

Condition	Reference Chapter	Recommendations for Preconceptional Counseling
Substance abuse	Chap. 64, p. 1150	*Opioid use disorder (OUD)*: codeine, oxycodone, heroin, and other opioids.
Psychiatric disorders	Chap. 64, p. 1143	*Depression*: Screen for symptoms of depression. Counsel on risks of treatment and of untreated illness and the high risk of exacerbation during pregnancy and the puerperium.
Neurological disorders	Chap. 63, p. 1128	*Seizure disorder*: Optimize seizure control using monotherapy if possible.
Dermatological disease	Chap. 8, p. 155	Discuss isotretinoin and etretinate teratogenicity and effective contraception during their use; switch agents before conception.
Cancer	Chap. 66, p. 1164	Counsel on fertility preservation options before cancer therapy and on decreased fertility following certain agents. Discuss appropriateness of pregnancy balanced with need for ongoing cancer therapy and prognosis of the disease state.
Infectious diseases	Chap. 67, p. 1183	*Influenza*: Vaccinate all women who will be pregnant during flu season. Vaccinate high-risk women prior to flu season. *COVID-19*: Vaccinate candidates. *Malaria*: Counsel to avoid travel to endemic areas during conception. If unable, offer effective contraception during travel or provide chemoprophylaxis for those planning pregnancy. *Zika virus*: See travel restrictions by CDC. *Rubella*: Screen for rubella immunity. If nonimmune, vaccinate and counsel on the need for effective contraception during the subsequent month. *Tdap*: *tetanus, diphtheria, pertussis:* Update vaccination in all reproductive-aged women. *Varicella*: Question regarding immunity. If nonimmune, vaccinate.
STIs	Chap. 68, p. 1206	*Gonorrhea, syphilis, chlamydial infection*: Screen high-risk women and treat as indicated. *Human immunodeficiency virus*: Screen at-risk women. Counsel affected women on risks during pregnancy and on perinatal transmission. Discuss initiation of treatment before pregnancy to decrease transmission risk. Offer effective contraception to those not desiring conception. *Human papilloma virus*: Provide Pap smear screening per guidelines (Chap. 66, p. 1164). Vaccinate candidate patients. *Herpes virus*: Provide serological screening to asymptomatic women with affected partners. Counsel affected women on risks of perinatal transmission and on preventative measures during the third trimester and labor.

ACE = angiotensin-converting enzyme; ARB = angiotensin-receptor blocker; BMI = body mass index; CDC = Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; HTN = hypertension; NSAID = nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug; STI = sexually transmitted infection.

Adapted from American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017a, 2019b, 2021; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021; Jack, 2008.

REFERENCES

Aghajanian P, Gupta M: Helping your epileptic patient. Contemp OB/GYN 60:10, 2015

Aguglia U, Barboni G, Battino D, et al: Italian consensus conference on epilepsy and pregnancy, labor and puerperium. Epilepsia 50:7, 2009

Althabe F, Moore JL, Gibbons L, et al: Adverse maternal and perinatal outcomes in adolescent pregnancies: the Global Network's Maternal Newborn Health Registry Study. Reprod Health 12 Suppl:S8, 2015

Amant F, Vandenbroucke T, Verheecke M, et al: Pediatric outcome after maternal cancer diagnosed during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 373(19):1824, 2015

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Carrier screening for genetic conditions. Committee Opinion No. 691, March 2017a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Marijuana use during pregnancy and lactation. Committee Opinion No. 722, July 2015, Reaffirmed 2017c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Hemoglobinopathies in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 78, January 2007, Reaffirmed 2018a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Lead screening during pregnancy and lactation. Committee Opinion No. 533, August 2012, Reaffirmed 2018b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Marriage and family building equality for lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, queer, intersex, asexual, and gender nonconforming individual. Committee Opinion No. 749, July 2018c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Optimizing postpartum care. Committee Opinion No. 736, May 2018e

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologist: Pregestational diabetes mellitus. Practice Bulletin No. 201, November 2018f

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Carrier screening in the age of genomic medicine. Committee Opinion No. 690, March 2017, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Interpregnancy care. Obstetric Care Consensus Number 8, January 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Intimate partner violence. Committee Opinion No. 518, February 2012, Reaffirmed 2019c
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: At-risk drinking and alcohol dependence: obstetric and gynecologic implications. Committee Opinion No. 496, August 2011, Reaffirmed 2019d
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Management of women with phenylalanine hydroxylase deficiency. Committee Opinion No. 802, March 2020a
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Physical activity and exercise during pregnancy and the postpartum period. Committee Opinion No. 804, March 2020b
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Obesity in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 230, May 2021
American Diabetes Association: Preconception care of women with diabetes. Diabetes Care. 27 Suppl 1:S76, 2004
American Psychiatric Association: Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. Arlington, American Psychiatric Association, 2013
Arluck JC, Mayhew AC: Preconception care for the general Ob/Gyn. Clin Obstet Gynecol 61(1):62, 2018
Barker LC, Dennis CL, Hussain-Shamsy N, et al: Decision-making about antidepressant medication use in pregnancy: a comparison between women making the decision in the preconception period versus in pregnancy. BMC Psychiatry 20(1):54, 2020
Bech BH, Kjaersgaard MI, Pedersen HS, et al: Use of antiepileptic drugs during pregnancy and risk of spontaneous abortion and stillbirth: population based cohort study. BMJ 349:g5159, 2014
Bennett RL, French KS, Resta RG, et al: Standardized human pedigree nomenclature: update and assessment of the recommendations of the National Society of Genetic Counselors. J Genet Counsel 17(5):424, 2008
Brasil P, Pereira JP, Gabaglia CR, et al: Zika virus infection in pregnant women in Rio de Janeiro—preliminary report. N Engl J Med 375(24):2321, 2016
Bromley RL, Weston J, Marson AG: Maternal use of antiepileptic agents during pregnancy and major congenital malformations in children. JAMA 318(17):1700, 2017
Bushe S, Romero IL: Lesbian pregnancy: care and considerations. Semin Reprod Med 35(5):420, 2017
Camp KM, Paris MA, Acosta PB, et al: Phenylketonuria scientific review conference: state of the science and future research needs. Mol Genet Metab 112(2):87, 2014
Cao A, Kan YW: The prevention of thalassemia. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 3(2):a011775, 2013
Carpinello OJ, Jacob MC, Nulsen J, et al: Utilization of fertility treatment and reproductive choices by lesbian couples. Fertil Steril 106(7):1709, 2016
Cassina M, Dilaghi A, Di Gianantonio E, et al: Pregnancy outcome in women exposed to antiepileptic drugs: teratogenic role of maternal epilepsy and its pharmacologic treatment. Reprod Toxicol 39:50, 2013
Cedars MI: Introduction: childhood implications of parental aging. Fertil Steril 103(6):1379, 2015
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Recommended actions based on blood lead level. 2019. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/nceh/lead/advisory/acclpp/actions-blls.htm. Accessed January 30, 2020
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: COVID-19 vaccines while pregnant or breastfeeding. 2021. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/vaccines/recommendations/pregnancy.html. Accessed October 8, 2021
Charlton BM, Roberts AL, Rosario M, et al: Teen pregnancy risk factors among young women of diverse sexual orientations. Pediatrics 141(4):pii:e20172278, 2018
Cheng D, Horon IL: Intimate-partner homicide among pregnant and postpartum women. Obstet Gynecol 115(6):1181, 2010
Creanga AA, Berg CJ, Syverson C, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2011–2013. Obstet Gynecol 130:366, 2017
Cunningham FG, Byrne JJ, Nelson DB: Peripartum cardiomyopathy. Obstet Gynecol 133(1):167, 2019
Czeizel AE, Dudas I: Prevention of the first occurrence of neural-tube defects by periconceptional vitamin supplementation. N Engl J Med 327:1832, 1992
Davies MJ, Moore VM, Willson KJ, et al: Reproductive technologies and the risk of birth defects. N Engl J Med 366(19):1803, 2012
Davis MB, Arendt K, Bello NA, et al: Team-based care of women with cardiovascular disease from pre-conception through pregnancy and postpartum: JACC Focus Seminar 1/5. J Am Coll Cardiol 77(14):1763, 2021
de Jong-van den Berg LT, Hernandez-Diaz S, Werler MM, et al: Trends and predictors of folic acid awareness and periconceptional use in pregnant women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:121, 2005
Easter SR, Rosenthal EW, Morton-Eggleston E, et al: Disparities in care for publicly insured women with pregestational diabetes. Obstet Gynecol 130(5):946, 2017
Epler KE, Pierce A, Rappaport VJ: Pica in pregnancy: an unusual presentation. Obstet Gynecol 130(6):1377, 2017
Finer LB, Zolna MR: Declines in unintended pregnancy in the United States, 2008–2011. N Engl J Med 374(9):843, 2016
Foeller ME, Foeller TM, Druzin M: Maternal congenital heart disease in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 45(2):267, 2018
Forget BG, Bunn HF: Classification of the disorders of hemoglobin. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 3(2):a011684, 2013
Gibbins KJ, Mumford SL, Sjaarda LA, et al: Preconception antiphospholipid antibodies and risk of subsequent early pregnancy loss. Lupus 27(9):1437, 2018
Goldberg BB, Alvarado S, Chavez C, et al: Prevalence of periconceptional folic acid use and perceived barriers to the postgestation continuance of supplemental folic acid: survey results from a Teratogen Information Service. Birth Defects Res Part A Clin Mol Teratol 76:193, 2006
Hernández-Díaz S, Smith CR, Shen A, et al: Comparative safety of antiepileptic drugs during pregnancy. Neurology 78:1692, 2012
Hinkle SN, Tsai MY, Rawal S, et al: HbA_{1c} measured in the first trimester of pregnancy and the association with gestational diabetes. Sci Rep 8(1):12249, 2018
Hodson K, Meads C, Bewley S: Lesbian and bisexual women's likelihood of becoming pregnant: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 124(3):393, 2017
Hopkins MK, Golstein SA, Ward CC, et al: Evaluation and management of maternal congenital heart disease: a review. Obstet Gynecol 73(2):16, 2018
Hussein N, Weng SF, Kai J, et al: Preconception risk assessment for thalassaemia, sickle cell disease, cystic fibrosis and Tay-Sachs disease. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD010849, 2018
Jack BW, Atrash H, Coonrod DV, et al: The clinical content of preconception care: an overview and preparation of this supplement. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199(6 Suppl 2):S266, 2008
Jack BW, Campanile C, McQuade W, et al: The negative pregnancy test. An opportunity for preconception care. Arch Fam Med 4:340, 1995
Jeha LE, Morris HH: Optimizing outcomes in pregnant women with epilepsy. Cleve Clin J Med 72:928, 2005
Jentink J, Loane MA, Dolk H, et al: Valproic acid monotherapy in pregnancy and major congenital malformations. N Engl J Med 362(23):2185, 2010
Kawwass JF, Smith DK, Kissin DM, et al: Strategies for preventing HIV infection among HIV-uninfected women attempting conception with HIV-infected men—United States. MMWR 66(21):554, 2017
Khandwala YS, Baker VL, Shaw GM, et al: Associations of paternal age with perinatal outcomes between 2007 and 2016 in the United States: population based cohort study. BMJ 363:k4372, 2018
Kim C, Ferrara A, McEwen LN, et al: Preconception care in managed care: the translating research into action for diabetes study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:227, 2005
King JR, Klugman S: Ethnicity-based carrier screening. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 45(1):83, 2018
Kitzmiller JL, Gavin LA, Gin GD, et al: Preconception care of diabetics. JAMA 265:731, 1991
Kjær D, Horvath-Puhó E, Christensen J, et al: Antiepileptic drug use, folic acid supplementation, and congenital abnormalities: a population-based case-control study. 115(1):98, 2008
Knight R, Wittkowski A, Bromley RL: Neurodevelopmental outcomes in children exposed to newer antiseizure medications: a systematic review. Epilepsia 62:1765, 2021
Korteweg FJ, Bouman K, Erwich JJ, et al: Cytogenetic analysis after evaluation of 750 fetal deaths: proposal for diagnostic workup. Obstet Gynecol 111(4):865, 2008
Lane M, Robker RL, Robertson SA: Parenting from before conception. Science 345(6198):756, 2014
Lassi ZS, Imam AM, Dean SV, et al: Preconception care: screening and management of chronic disease and promoting psychological health. Reprod Health 26:11, 2014
Malaspina D, Gilman C, Kranz TM: Paternal age and mental health of offspring. Fertil Steril 103(6):1392, 2015
Manze MG, Calixte C, Romero DR, et al: Physician perspectives on routine pregnancy intention screening and counseling in primary care. Contraception 101(2):91, 2020
Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Ventura SJ, et al: Births: final data for 2010. Natl Vital Stat Rep 61(1):1, 2012
Martin R, Duryea E, Ambia A, et al: Congenital malformation risk according to hemoglobin A1c values in a contemproary cohort with pregestational diabetes. Abst. No, 957 Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:s594, 2020
McClatchey T, Lay E, Strassberg M, et al: Missed opportunities: unidentified genetic risk factors in prenatal care. Prenat Diagn 38(1):75, 2018
McCue K, DeNicola N: Environmental exposures in reproductive health. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 46(3):455 2019

Medical Research Council Vitamin Study Research Group: Prevention of neural tube defects: results of the Medical Research Council vitamin study. Lancet 338:131, 1991

Morrow JI, Hunt SJ, Russell AJ, et al: Folic acid use and major congenital malformations in offspring of women with epilepsy: a prospective study from the UK Epilepsy and Pregnancy Register. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 80(5):506, 2009

Mravcak SA: Primary care for lesbians and bisexual women. Am Fam Physician 74(2):279, 2006

Niccolai LM, Ethier KA, Kershaw TS, et al: Pregnant adolescents at risk: sexual behaviors and sexually transmitted disease prevalence. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:63, 2003

O'Hanlan KA, Isler CM: Health care of lesbian and bisexual women. In: Meyeer IH, Northridge ME (eds): The Health of Sexual Minorities: Public Health Perspectives on Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, and Transgender Populations. New York, Springer, 2007, p 506

Petersen EE, Staples JE, Meaney-Delman D, et al: Interim guidelines for pregnant women during a Zika virus outbreak—United States, 2016. MMWR 65(2):30, 2016

Podymow T, Joseph G: Preconception and pregnancy management of women with diabetic nephropathy on angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors. Clin Nephrol 83(2):73, 2015

Polen KD, Gilboa SM, Hills S, et al: Update: interim guidance for preconception counseling and prevention of sexual transmission of Zika virus for men with possible Zika virus exposure—United States, August 2018. MMWR 67(31):868, 2018

Qin J, Liu X, Sheng X, et al: Assisted reproductive technology and the risk of pregnancy-related complications and adverse pregnancy outcomes in singleton pregnancies: a meta-analysis of cohort studies. Fertil Steril 105(1):73, 2016

Reddy UM, Page GP, Saade GR, et al: Karyotype versus microarray testing for genetic abnormalities after stillbirth. N Engl J Med 367(23):2185, 2012

Robbins C, Boulet SL, Morgan, et al: Disparities in preconception health indicators—behavioral risk factor surveillance system, 2013–2015, and pregnancy risk assessment monitoring system, 2013–2014. MMWR 67(1):1, 2018

Robert E: Intrauterine effects of electromagnetic fields (low frequency, mid-frequency RF, and microwave): review of epidemiologic studies. Teratology 59:292, 1999

Schuler-Faccini L, Ribeiro EM, Feitosa IM, et al: Possible association between Zika virus infection and microcephaly—Brazil, 2015. MMWR 65(3):59, 2016

Silverman JG, Decker MR, Reed E, et al: Intimate partner violence victimization prior to and during pregnancy among women residing in 26 U.S. States: associations with maternal and neonatal health. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:140, 2006

Simpson LL: Preconception considerations. Semin Perinatol 38(5):236, 2014

Skogsdal YRE, Karlsson JÅ, Cao Y, et al: Contraceptive use and reproductive intentions among women requesting contraceptive counseling. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 97(11):1349, 2018

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Kaimal A, Norton ME: Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine consult series #55: counseling women at increased risk of maternal morbidity and mortality. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(4): B16, 2021

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM), Sciscione A, Berghella V, et al: Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM) special report: the maternal-fetal medicine subspecialists' role within a health care system. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(6):607, 2014

Stothard KJ, Tennant PW, Bell R, et al: Maternal overweight and obesity and the risk of congenital anomalies: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA 301:636, 2009

Stubblefield PG, Coonrod DV, Reddy UM, et al: The clinical content of preconception care: reproductive history. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199(6 Suppl 2):S373, 2008

Sunderan S, Kissin DM, Crawford SB, et al: Assisted reproduction technology surveillance—United States, 2012. MMWR 64:1, 2015

Temel S, Van Voorst SF, Jack BW, et al: Evidence-based preconceptional lifestyle interventions. Epidemiol Rev 36:19, 2014

Tieu J, Middleton P, Crowther CA, et al: Preconception care for diabetic women for improving maternal and infant health. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD0077776, 2017

Tomson T, Battino D: Pregnancy and epilepsy: what should we tell our patients? J Neurol 256(6):856, 2009

Tough S, Tofflemire K, Clarke M, et al: Do women change their drinking behaviors while trying to conceive? An opportunity for preconception counseling. Clin Med Res 4:97, 2006

Tripathi A, Rankin J, Aarvold J, et al: Preconception counseling in women with diabetes: a population-based study in the North of England. Diabetes Care 33(3):586, 2010

Tsai S, Shaia K, Woodward JT, et al: Surrogacy laws in the United States: what obstetrician-gynecologists need to know. Obstet Gynecol 135(3):717, 2020

U.S. Preventive Services Task Force: Final update summary: folic acid to prevent neural tube defects. 2019. Available at: www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/Page/Document/UpdateSummaryFinal/folic-acid-to-prevent-neural-tube-defects-preventive-medication. Accessed October 10, 2019

Usta IM, Zoorob D, Abu-Musa A, et al: Obstetric outcome of teenage pregnancies compared with adult pregnancies. Acta Obstet Gynecol 87:178, 2008

Vajda FJ, Hitchcock A, Graham J, et al: Seizure control in antiepileptic drug-treated pregnancy. Epilepsia 49:172, 2008

Vajda FJ, O'Brien TJ, Graham J, et al: The outcomes of pregnancy in women with untreated epilepsy. Seizure 24:77, 2015

Veroniki AA, Cogo E, Rios P, et al: Comparative safety of anti-epileptic drugs during pregnancy: a systematic review and network meta-analysis of congenital malformations and prenatal outcomes. BMC Med 15(1):95, 2017

Vichinsky EP: Clinical manifestations of α-thalassemia. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 3(5):a011742, 2013

Vockley J, Andersson HC, Antshel KM, et al: Phenylalanine hydroxylase deficiency: diagnosis and management guideline. Genet Med 16(2):188, 2014

Waldenström U, Cnattingius S, Norman M, et al: Advanced maternal age and stillbirth risk in nulliparous and parous women. Obstet Gynecol 126(2):355, 2015

Washington Cross CI, Segars JH: Preconception assisted reproductive technology counseling in the age of Zika. Fertil Steril 107(6):1296, 2017

Williams J, Mai CT, Mulinare J, et al: Updated estimates of neural tube defects prevention by mandatory folic acid fortification—United States, 1995–2011. MMWR 64(1):1, 2015

Windham G, Fenster L: Environmental contaminants and pregnancy outcomes. Fertil Steril 89:e111, 2008

Yamamoto JM, Hughes DJF, Evans ML, et al: Community-based pre-pregnancy care programme improves pregnancy preparation in women with pregestational diabetes. Diabetologia 61(7):1528, 2018

CHAPTER 10

Prenatal Care

The American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) define prenatal care as "A comprehensive antepartum program involves a coordinated approach to medical care, continuous risk assessment, and psychosocial support that optimally begins before pregnancy and extends throughout the postpartum and interpregnancy period." As promulgated by John Ballantyne, such care has been a bedrock to improve pregnancy outcomes for more than 100 years (Reiss, 2000).

PRENATAL CARE IN THE UNITED STATES

Almost a century after its introduction, prenatal care has become one of the most frequently used health services in the United States. According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), only 1.6 percent of women who gave birth in 2016 received no prenatal care (Osterman, 2018). African-American and Hispanic women have high rates of inadequate or no prenatal care that reach 10 and 7.7 percent, respectively. This figure is greater for adolescents, particularly those younger than 15 years, compared with older age groups. These data highlight areas of potential improvement by the health-care system.

Prenatal Care Effectiveness

Care designed during the early 1900s focused on lowering the extremely high maternal mortality rate. Prenatal care undoubtedly contributed to the dramatic decline in maternal deaths from 690 per 100,000 births in 1920 to 50 per 100,000 by 1955 (Loudon, 1992). Data from 1998 to 2005 from the Pregnancy Mortality Surveillance System identified a fivefold increased risk for maternal death in women who received no prenatal care (Berg, 2010).

Goldenberg and McClure (2018) have emphasized the importance of prenatal care to reduce stillbirth rates as well. In a study of almost 29 million births, the risk for preterm birth, stillbirth, early and late neonatal death, and infant death rose linearly with decreasing prenatal care utilization (Partridge, 2012). Similarly, from Parkland Hospital, Leveno and associates (2009) found that a significant decline in preterm births correlated closely with any use of prenatal care by medically indigent women. And in women with diabetes, adherence to prenatal care resulted in lower rates of neonatal admissions to the intensive care unit (Sperling, 2018a).

Group prenatal care is acceptable and effective (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018g). Ickovics and coworkers (2016) compared this with individual prenatal care. Group care provided traditional pregnancy surveillance in a group setting with special focus on support, education, and active health-care participation. Women enrolled in group care had significantly better pregnancy outcomes. Carter and colleagues (2017) cited similar results. Childbirth education classes are also reported to result in better pregnancy outcomes (Afshar, 2017). Pregnancy in adolescents carries special risk, and guidelines have been developed that focus on this age group (Fleming, 2015).

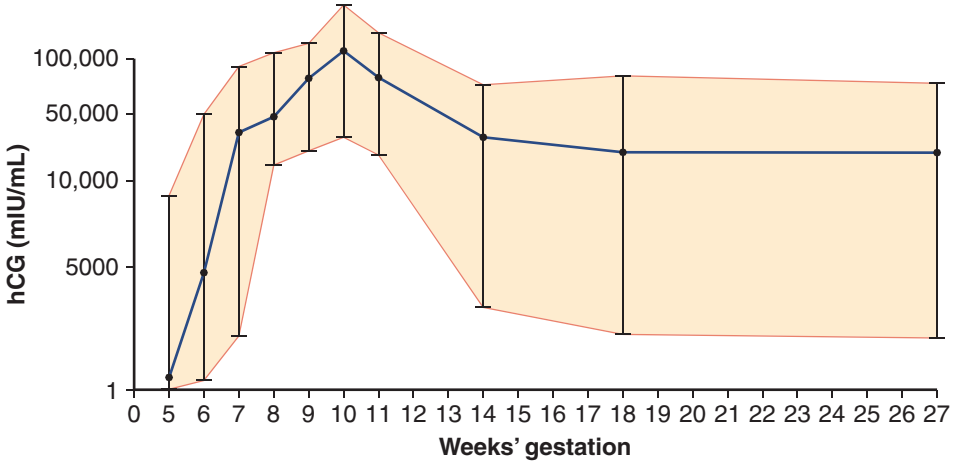


FIGURE 10-1 Mean concentration (95% CI) of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) in serum of women throughout normal pregnancy.

corpus luteum, which is the principal site of progesterone formation during the first 6 weeks of pregnancy.

With a sensitive test, the hormone can be detected in maternal serum or urine by 8 to 9 days after ovulation. The doubling time of serum hCG concentration is 1.4 to 2.0 days. As shown in Figure 10-1, serum levels range widely and increase from the day of implantation. Lower levels of hCG rise more rapidly than higher levels (Barnhart, 2016). Peak hCG levels are reached at 60 to 70 days. Thereafter, the concentration declines slowly to a plateau at approximately 16 weeks' gestation.

DIAGNOSIS OF PREGNANCY

Pregnancy is usually identified when a woman presents with symptoms and possibly a positive home urine pregnancy test result. Typically, these women receive confirmatory testing of urine or blood for human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG). Further, presumptive signs or diagnostic findings of pregnancy may be found during the clinical examination. Sonography is often used, especially if miscarriage or ectopic pregnancy is a concern.

Symptoms and Signs

Amenorrhea in a healthy reproductive-aged woman who previously has experienced spontaneous, cyclical, predictable menses is highly suggestive of pregnancy. Menstrual cycles vary appreciably in length among women and even in the same woman (Chap. 5, p. 83). Thus, amenorrhea is not a reliable pregnancy indicator until 10 or more days have passed after expected menses. Occasionally, uterine bleeding that mimics menstruation is noted after conception. During the first month of pregnancy, these episodes are likely the consequence of blastocyst implantation. Still, first-trimester bleeding should prompt evaluation for an abnormal pregnancy.

Of other symptoms, maternal perception of fetal movement depends on factors such as parity and habitus. In general, after a first successful pregnancy, a woman may first perceive fetal movements between 16 and 18 weeks' gestation. A primigravida may not appreciate fetal movements until approximately 2 weeks later. At about 20 weeks, depending on maternal habitus, an examiner can begin to detect fetal movements. Of pregnancy signs, changes in the lower reproductive tract, uterus, and breasts develop early.

Pregnancy Tests

Detection of hCG in maternal blood and urine is the basis for endocrine assays of pregnancy. Syncytiotrophoblast produces hCG in amounts that increase exponentially during the first trimester. hCG and luteinizing hormone (LH) share the same receptor in tissues. Thus, a main function of hCG is to prevent involution of the

Measurement of hCG

This hormone is a glycoprotein with high carbohydrate content. The general structure of hCG is a heterodimer composed of two dissimilar subunits, designated α and β, which are noncovalently linked. The α-subunit is identical to those of LH, follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), and thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), but the β-subunit is structurally distinct. Thus, antibodies were developed with high specificity for the hCG β-subunit. This specificity allows its detection, and numerous commercial immunoassays are available for measuring serum and urine hCG levels. Each immunoassay detects a slightly different mixture of hCG variants, its free subunits, or its metabolites—however, all are appropriate for pregnancy testing (Braunstein, 2014). Depending on the assay used, the sensitivity for the laboratory detection limit of hCG in serum is 1.0 mIU/mL or even lower.

False-positive hCG test results are rare. A few women have circulating serum factors that may bind erroneously with the test antibody directed to hCG in a given assay. The most common factors are heterophilic antibodies. These are produced by an individual and bind to the animal-derived test antibodies used in a given immunoassay. Thus, women who have worked closely with animals are more likely to develop these antibodies, and alternative laboratory techniques are available (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017a). Elevated hCG levels may also reflect molar pregnancy and its associated neoplasms (Chap. 13, p. 238). Other rare causes of positive assays without pregnancy are (1) exogenous hCG injection used for weight loss, (2) renal failure with impaired hCG clearance, (3) physiological pituitary hCG, and (4) hCG-producing tumors that most commonly originate from gastrointestinal sites, ovary, bladder, or lung (McCash, 2017).

Home Pregnancy Tests

More than 60 different types of over-the-counter pregnancy test kits are available in the United States (Grenache, 2015). Unfortunately, many of these are not as accurate as advertised (Johnson, 2015). For example, Cole and associates (2011) found that a detection limit of 12.5 mIU/mL would be required to diagnose

95 percent of pregnancies at the time of missed menses. However, they reported that only one brand had this degree of sensitivity. Two other brands gave false-positive or invalid results. In fact, with an hCG concentration of 100 mIU/mL, clearly positive results were displayed by only 44 percent of brands. Accordingly, only approximately 15 percent of pregnancies could be diagnosed at the time of the missed menses. Some manufacturers of even newer home urine assays claim >99-percent accuracy for tests done on the day of—and some up to 4 days before—the expected day of menses. Again, careful analysis suggests that these assays are often not as sensitive as advertised.

■ Sonographic Recognition of Pregnancy

Transvaginal sonography is commonly used to accurately establish gestational age and confirm pregnancy location. A *gestational sac* is the first sonographic evidence of pregnancy, and it may be seen with transvaginal sonography by 4 to 5 weeks' gestation. It should not be confused with a *pseudogestational sac*. The latter, or *pseudosac*, is a fluid collection within the endometrial cavity, which can occur in the setting of ectopic pregnancy (Fig. 12-3, p. 223). Further evaluation may be warranted if this is the only sonographic finding, particularly in a woman with pain or bleeding. A normal gestational sac implants eccentrically in the endometrium, whereas a pseudosac is seen in the midline of the endometrial cavity. Other potential indicators of early intrauterine pregnancy are an anechoic center surrounded by a single echogenic rim—the *intradecidual sign*—or two concentric echogenic rings surrounding the gestational sac—the *double decidual sign* (Fig. 10-2). If sonography yields equivocal findings, the term *pregnancy of unknown location (PUL)* is applied (Bobdiwala, 2019). In these cases, serial serum hCG levels and transvaginal sonography can help differentiate a normal intrauterine pregnancy from an extrauterine pregnancy or an early miscarriage (Chap. 12, p. 222).

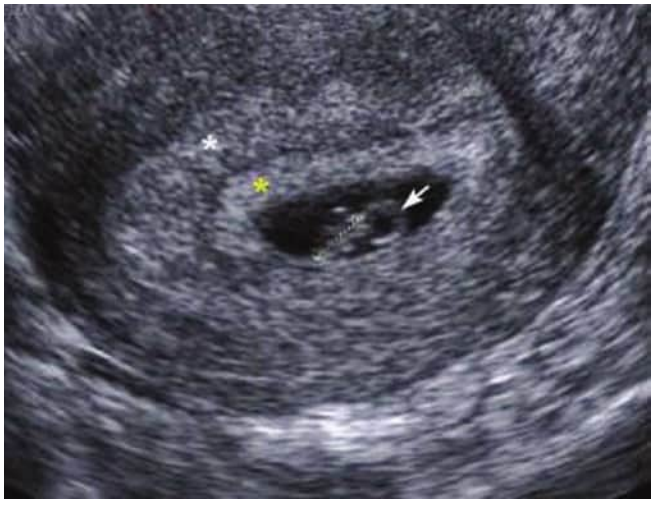


FIGURE 10-2 Transvaginal sonogram of a first-trimester intrauterine pregnancy. The double decidual sign is noted surrounding the gestational sac and is defined by the decidua parietalis (*white asterisk*) and the decidua capsularis (*yellow asterisk*). The arrow notes the yolk sac, and the crown-rump length of the embryo is marked with measuring calipers. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Elysia Moschos.)

If the *yolk sac*—a brightly echogenic ring with an anechoic center—is seen within the gestational sac, an intrauterine location for the pregnancy is confirmed. The yolk sac can normally be seen by the middle of the fifth week. As shown in Figure 10-2, after 6 weeks, an embryo is seen as a linear structure immediately adjacent to the yolk sac. Cardiac motion is typically noted at this point.

INITIAL PRENATAL EVALUATION

Prenatal care is ideally initiated early. Major goals are to (1) define the health status of the mother and fetus, (2) estimate the gestational age, and (3) initiate a plan for continued obstetrical care. Typical components of the initial visit are summarized in Table 10-1. Subsequent care may range from relatively infrequent routine visits to prompt hospitalization because of serious maternal or fetal disease.

■ Prenatal Record

Use of a standardized record within a perinatal health-care system greatly aids antepartum and intrapartum management. Standardizing documentation allows communication and care continuity between providers and enables objective measures of care quality to be evaluated over time and across different clinical settings (Gregory, 2006). A prototype is provided by the American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) in their *Guidelines for Perinatal Care*, 8th edition.

Definitions

Several definitions are pertinent to establishment of an accurate prenatal record.

1. *Nulligravida*—a woman who currently is not pregnant and has never been pregnant.
2. *Gravida*—a woman who currently is pregnant or has been in the past, irrespective of the pregnancy outcome. With the establishment of the first pregnancy, she becomes a *primigravida*, and with successive pregnancies, a *multigravida*.
3. *Nullipara*—a woman who has never completed a pregnancy beyond 20 weeks' gestation. She may not have been pregnant or may have had a spontaneous or elective abortion(s) or an ectopic pregnancy.
4. *Primipara*—a woman who has been delivered only once of a fetus or fetuses born alive or dead with an estimated gestation duration of 20 or more weeks. In the past, a 500-g birthweight threshold was used to define parity. This threshold is now controversial. Namely, many states still use this weight to differentiate a stillborn fetus from an abortus, but the survival of neonates with birthweights <500 g is no longer uncommon (Chap. 1, p. 2).
5. *Multipara*—a woman who has completed two or more pregnancies with gestational ages at least 20 weeks. Parity is determined by the number of pregnancies reaching 20 weeks. It is not increased to a higher number if multiples are delivered in a given pregnancy. Moreover, stillbirth does not lower this number.

TABLE 10-1. Typical Components of Routine Prenatal Care

	Text Referral	First Visit	Weeks 15–20	Weeks 24–28	Weeks 29–41
History					
Complete	Chap. 10, p. 179	•			
Updated			•	•	•
Physical Examination					
Complete	Chap. 10, p. 180	•			
Blood pressure	Chap. 40, p. 688	•	•	•	•
Maternal weight	Chap. 10, p. 181	•	•	•	•
Pelvic/cervical examination	Chap. 10, p. 180	•			
Fundal height	Chap. 10, p. 180	•	•	•	•
Fetal heart rate/fetal position	Chap. 10, p. 182	•	•	•	•
Laboratory Tests					
Hematocrit or hemoglobin	Chap. 59, p. 1048	•		•	
Blood type and Rh factor	Chap. 18, p. 353	•			
Antibody screen	Chap. 18, p. 353	•		**A**	
Pap smear screening	Chap. 66, p. 1164	•			
Glucose tolerance test	Chap. 60, p. 1079			•	
Fetal aneuploidy screening	Chap. 17, p. 335	**B**[a] and/or	**B**		
Neural-tube defect screening	Chap. 17, p. 338		**B**		
Cystic fibrosis screening	Chap. 17, p. 342	**B** or	**B**		
Urine protein assessment	Chap. 4, p. 68	•			
Urine culture	Chap. 56, p. 996	•			
Rubella serology	Chap. 67, p. 1190	•			
Syphilis serology	Chap. 68, p. 1208	•			**C**
Gonococcal screening	Chap. 68, p. 1211	**D**			**D**
Chlamydial screening	Chap. 68, p. 1212	•			**C**
Hepatitis B serology	Chap. 58, p. 1037	•			**D**
HIV serology	Chap. 68, p. 1219	**B**			**D**
Group B streptococcus culture	Chap. 67, p. 1195				**E**
Tuberculosis screening	Chap. 54, p. 966	**F**			

[a]First-trimester aneuploidy screening may be offered between 10 and 14 weeks.
A Performed at 28 weeks, if indicated.
B Test should be offered.
C High-risk women should be retested at the beginning of the third trimester.
D High-risk women should be screened at the first prenatal visit and again in the third trimester.
E Rectovaginal culture should be obtained between 35 and 37 weeks.
F High-risk women should be screened at the first prenatal visit.
HIV = human immunodeficiency virus.

In some locales, the obstetrical history is summarized by a series of digits connected by dashes. These refer to the number of term newborns, preterm neonates, abortuses younger than 20 weeks, and children currently alive. For example, a woman who is para 2–1–0–3 has had two term deliveries, one preterm delivery, no abortuses, and has three living children. Because these are nonconventional, it is helpful to specify the outcome of any pregnancy that did not end normally.

Normal Pregnancy Duration

The normal duration of pregnancy calculated from the first day of the last normal menstrual period is very close to 280 days or 40 weeks. A quick estimate of a pregnancy due date based on menstrual data can be made as follows: add 7 days to the first day of the last period and subtract 3 months. For example, if the first day of the last menses was October 5, the due date is 10-05 minus 3 (months) plus 7 (days) = 7–12 or July 12 of the following year. This calculation is the *Naegele rule*. However, menstrual cycle length varies among women and renders many of these calculations inaccurate. This, combined with the frequent use of first-trimester sonography, has changed the method of determining an accurate gestational age.

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017e), the American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine have emphasized that first-trimester ultrasound is the most accurate method to

establish or reaffirm gestational age. For pregnancies conceived by assisted reproductive technologies, embryo age or transfer date is used to assign gestational age. If available, the gestational ages calculated from the last menstrual period and from first-trimester ultrasound are compared, and this estimated date of delivery is recorded. Reconciling any discordance between these two values is discussed in Chapter 14 (p. 248).

Trimesters

It has become customary to divide pregnancy into three equal epochs or trimesters of approximately 3 calendar months. More recently a "fourth trimester" has been recognized to emphasize the need for comprehensive postpartum care (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018i). This is discussed in Chapter 36 (p. 634). Historically, the first trimester extends through completion of 14 weeks, the second through 28 weeks, and the third through 42 weeks. The fourth is the 12 weeks after delivery. Thus, prenatally, there are three periods of 14 weeks each. Certain major obstetrical problems tend to cluster in each of these three time periods. For example, most spontaneous abortions take place during the first trimester, whereas most women with hypertensive disorders due to pregnancy are diagnosed during the third trimester.

In modern obstetrics, the clinical use of trimesters to describe a specific pregnancy is imprecise. For example, it is inappropriate in cases of uterine hemorrhage to categorize the problem temporally as "third-trimester bleeding." Appropriate management for the mother and her fetus will vary remarkably depending on whether bleeding begins early or late in the third trimester (Chap. 42, p. 733). Because precise knowledge of fetal age is imperative for obstetrical management, the clinically appropriate unit is *weeks of gestation completed.* Clinicians designate gestational age using completed weeks and days. For example, $33^{4/7}$ weeks or 33 + 4 describes pregnancy duration of 33 completed weeks and 4 days.

Previous and Current Health Status

As elsewhere in medicine, history-taking begins with queries concerning medical or surgical disorders. Detailed information regarding previous pregnancies is essential, as many obstetrical complications tend to recur in subsequent pregnancies. The *menstrual* and *contraceptive histories* also are important. As noted earlier, gestational age may be less accurate for those with irregular menses. Moreover, some methods of birth control favor ectopic implantation following method failure (Chap. 38, p. 665).

Psychosocial Screening. The American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) define psychosocial issues as nonbiomedical factors that affect mental and physical well-being. Women should be screened regardless of social status, education level, race, or ethnicity. Such screening should seek barriers to care, communication obstacles, nutritional status, unstable housing, desire for pregnancy, safety concerns that include intimate-partner violence, depression, stress, and use of substances such as tobacco, alcohol, and illicit drugs. This screening is performed on a regular basis, at least once per trimester, to identify important issues and reduce adverse pregnancy outcomes. Coker and colleagues (2012) compared pregnancy outcomes in women before and after implementation of a universal psychosocial screening program and found that screened women were less likely to have preterm or low-birthweight newborns, as well as other adverse outcomes. Specific screens for depression are presented in Chapter 64 (p. 1143).

Cigarette Smoking. These data are included on the birth certificate, and the number of pregnant women who smoke continues to decline. From 2000 to 2010, the prevalences were 12 to 13 percent (Tong, 2013). By 2016, the incidence was 7.2 percent according to the National Center for Health Statistics (Drake, 2018). Concurrent with the decline in cigarette use, there has been an increase in electronic cigarettes/vaping with a reported prevalence of 0.6 to 15 percent (Whittington, 2018). In a survey of more than 3000 mothers in Oklahoma and Texas, 7 percent reported using electronic vapor products prior to conception and in the postpartum period. Of these women, according to the CDC, 1.4 percent used them during the last 3 months of pregnancy (Kapaya, 2019).

According to the American Society for Reproductive Medicine (2018), smoking is associated with subfertility. Higher rates of miscarriage, stillbirth, low birthweight, and preterm delivery also are linked to smoking during pregnancy (Dahlin, 2016; Luke, 2018; Tong, 2013). Compared with nonsmokers, risks of placenta previa, placental abruption, and premature membrane rupture are increased twofold. Potential teratogenic effects are reviewed in Chapter 8 (p. 156). Thus, the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force recommends that clinicians offer counseling and effective intervention options to pregnant smokers at the first and subsequent prenatal visits (Siu, 2015). Although benefits are greatest if smoking ceases early in pregnancy or preferably preconceptionally, quitting at any stage of pregnancy can improve perinatal outcomes (Soneji, 2019).

Compared with simple counseling to quit, person-to-person psychosocial interventions are significantly more successful in achieving smoking abstinence in pregnancy (Fiore, 2008). One example is a brief counseling session covering the "5As" of smoking cessation (Table 10-2). This approach can be accomplished in 15 minutes or less and is effective when initiated by health-care providers (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b).

Behavioral interventions and nicotine replacement products are successful in reducing smoking rates (Patnode, 2015). However, nicotine replacement has not been sufficiently evaluated to determine its effectiveness and safety in pregnancy. Trials evaluating such therapy have yielded conflicting evidence (Coleman, 2015; Spindel, 2016). Two randomized trials also produced inconclusive results. In the Smoking and Nicotine in Pregnancy (SNAP) trial, Cooper and associates (2014) reported that a temporary cessation of smoking may have been associated with improved infant development. In the Study of Nicotine Patch in Pregnancy (SNIPP) trial, no differences in smoking cessation rates or birthweights were found (Berlin, 2014). Similar preliminary results were reported for sustained-release bupropion (Nanovskaya, 2017). Olson and colleagues (2019) reported that financial incentives were helpful to encourage smoking cessation.

TABLE 10-2. Five A's of Smoking Cessation

ASK about smoking at the first and subsequent prenatal visits.
ADVISE with clear, strong statements that explain the risks of continued smoking to the woman, fetus, and newborn.
ASSESS the patient's willingness to attempt cessation.
ASSIST with pregnancy-specific, self-help smoking cessation materials. Offer a direct referral to the smokers' quit line (1-800-QUIT NOW) to provide ongoing counseling and support.
ARRANGE to track smoking abstinence progress at subsequent visits.

Adapted from American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b; Fiore, 2008.

Because of limited available evidence to support pharmacotherapy for smoking cessation in pregnancy, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) recommends that if nicotine replacement therapy is used, it should be done with close supervision and after careful consideration of the risks of smoking versus nicotine replacement.

Alcohol. Ethyl alcohol or ethanol is a potent teratogen that causes the *fetal alcohol spectrum disorders.* Fetal alcohol syndrome, the most severe form of these disorders, is characterized by growth restriction, facial abnormalities, and central nervous system dysfunction. The estimated prevalence of these disorders is 11 to 50 per 1000 (May, 2018).

As discussed in Chapter 8 (p. 150), women who are pregnant or considering pregnancy should abstain from drinking any alcoholic beverages (Sarman, 2018). The CDC analyzed data from the Behavioral Risk Factor Surveillance System from 2015 to 2017 and estimated that 12 percent of pregnant women used alcohol (Denny, 2019). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021a) in collaboration with the CDC has developed the *Fetal Alcohol Spectrum Disorders (FASD) Prevention Program*, which provides resources for providers and is available at www.acog.org/alcohol.

Illicit Drugs. An estimated 10 percent of fetuses are exposed to one or more illicit drugs. Agents may include heroin and other opiates, cocaine, amphetamines, barbiturates, and marijuana (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017). As discussed in Chapter 8 (p. 157), chronic use of large quantities is harmful to the fetus (Metz, 2015). Well-documented sequelae include fetal-growth restriction, low birthweight, and drug withdrawal soon after birth. Adverse effects of marijuana are less convincing. Women who use such drugs frequently do not seek prenatal care, which in itself is associated with risks for preterm and low-birthweight neonates (Eriksen, 2016).

For women who abuse heroin, methadone maintenance can be initiated within a registered methadone treatment program to reduce complications of illicit opioid use and narcotic withdrawal, to encourage prenatal care, and to avoid drug culture risks (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017g). Available programs can be found through the treatment locator of the Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration at www.samhsa.gov. Methadone dosages usually are initiated at 10 to 30 mg orally daily and titrated as needed. In some women, careful methadone taper may be an appropriate option (Stewart, 2013). Buprenorphine alone or in combination with naloxone also may be offered and managed by physicians with specific credentialing. These therapeutic options are considered in greater detail in Chapter 64 (p. 1150).

Intimate-Partner Violence. This term refers to a pattern of assault and coercive behavior that may include physical injury, psychological abuse, sexual assault, progressive isolation, stalking, deprivation, intimidation, and reproductive coercion (Miller, 2019). Such violence is recognized as a major public health problem. Unfortunately, most abused women continue to be victimized during pregnancy. With the possible exception of preeclampsia, intimate-partner violence (IPV) is more prevalent than any major medical condition detectable through routine prenatal screening (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017). The estimated prevalence during pregnancy lies between 4 and 8 percent. IPV is associated with an increased risk of several adverse perinatal outcomes that include preterm delivery, fetal-growth restriction, and perinatal death (Chap. 50, p. 891).

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019c) has provided methods for IPV screening and recommends their use at the first prenatal visit, again at least once per trimester, and again at the postpartum visit. Such screening should be done privately and away from family members and friends. Patient self-administered or computerized screenings appear to be as effective for disclosure as clinician-directed interviews (Ahmad, 2009; Chen, 2007). Physicians should be familiar with state laws that may require reporting of IPV. Coordination with social services can be invaluable in these cases. The National Domestic Violence Hotline (1–800–799-SAFE [7233]) is a nonprofit telephone referral service that provides individualized information regarding city-specific shelter locations, counseling resources, and legal advocacy.

Clinical Evaluation

Thorough, general physical and pelvic examinations should be completed at the initial prenatal encounter. The cervix is visualized using a speculum lubricated with warm water or water-based lubricant gel. Bluish-red passive hyperemia of the cervix is characteristic, but not diagnostic, of pregnancy. Dilated, occluded cervical glands bulging beneath the ectocervical mucosa—*nabothian cysts*—may be prominent. The cervix is not normally dilated except at the external os. To identify cytological abnormalities, a Pap test is performed according to current guidelines noted in Chapter 66 (p. 1164). Specimens for identification of *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* are obtained when indicated (p. 181).

Bimanual examination is completed by palpation. Special attention is given to the consistency, length, and dilation of the

cervix; to uterine and adnexal size; to the bony pelvic architecture; and to any vaginal or perineal anomalies. Often, later in pregnancy, fetal presentation also can be determined. Lesions of the cervix, vagina, or vulva are further evaluated as needed by colposcopy, biopsy, or culture. The perianal region is inspected, and digital rectal examination is performed as required for complaints of rectal pain, bleeding, or mass.

Gestational Age Assessment

Precise knowledge of gestational age is essential for prenatal care, because several pregnancy complications may develop and optimal treatment will depend on fetal age. Menstrual history is best confirmed by first-trimester sonography (Chap. 14, p. 248). That said, gestational age can also be estimated with considerable precision by a carefully performed clinical uterine size examination that is coupled with last menstrual period dating. Uterine size similar to a small orange roughly correlates with a 6-week gestation; a large orange, with an 8-week pregnancy; and a grapefruit, with one at 12 weeks (Margulies, 2001).

Laboratory Tests

Recommended routine tests at the first prenatal encounter are listed in Table 10-1. Initial blood tests include a complete blood count, a determination of blood type and Rh status, and an antibody screen. The Institute of Medicine recommends universal human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) testing as a routine part of prenatal care. This testing is explained to the patient, who may decline. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018j) continues to support this practice. If a woman declines, this is recorded in the prenatal record. All pregnant women are screened also for hepatitis B virus infection, syphilis, and immunity to rubella at the initial visit.

Based on their prospective investigation of 1000 women, Murray and coworkers (2002) concluded that in the absence of hypertension, routine urinalysis beyond the first prenatal visit was unnecessary. A urine culture is recommended by most, because treating bacteriuria significantly reduces the likelihood of developing symptomatic urinary tract infections in pregnancy (Chap. 56, p. 996).

Cervical Infections

C trachomatis is isolated from the cervix in 2 to 13 percent of pregnant women. The American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) recommend that all women be screened for chlamydia during the first prenatal visit, with additional third-trimester testing for those at increased risk. Risk factors include unmarried status, recent change in sexual partner or multiple concurrent partners, age younger than 25 years, inner-city residence, history or presence of other sexually transmitted diseases, and little or no prenatal care. For those testing positive, treatment described in Chapter 68 (p. 1212) is followed by a second testing—a *test of cure*—3 to 4 weeks after treatment completion.

N gonorrhoeae typically causes cervicitis or urethritis in pregnancy. Infrequently, it may also cause septic arthritis (Bleich, 2012). Risk factors for gonorrhea are similar to those for chlamydial infection. The American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) recommend that pregnant women with risk factors or those living in an area of high *N gonorrhoeae* prevalence be screened at the initial prenatal visit and again in the third trimester. Treatment is given for gonorrhea and simultaneously for possible coexisting chlamydial infection (Chap. 68, p. 1211). Test of cure is recommended following treatment.

Pregnancy Risk Assessment

Many factors can adversely affect maternal and fetal well-being. Some are evident at conception, but many become apparent during the course of pregnancy. The designation of "high-risk pregnancy" is overly vague for an individual woman and is best avoided if a more specific diagnosis can be assigned. Some common risk factors for which consultation is recommended by the American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) are shown in Table 10-3. Some conditions may require the involvement of a maternal-fetal medicine specialist, geneticist, neonatologist, anesthesiologist, cardiologist, or other specialist.

SUBSEQUENT PRENATAL VISITS

These are traditionally scheduled at 4-week intervals until 28 weeks, then every 2 weeks until 36 weeks, and weekly thereafter. Women with complicated pregnancies—for example, with twins or diabetes—often require return visits at 1- to 2-week intervals (Power, 2013). In 1986, the Department of Health and Human Services convened an expert panel to review the content of prenatal care. This report was subsequently reevaluated and revised in 2005 (Gregory, 2006). The panel recommended, among other things, early and continuing risk assessment that is patient specific. It also endorsed flexibility in clinical visit spacing; health promotion and education, including preconceptional care; medical and psychosocial interventions; standardized documentation; and expanded prenatal care objectives that include family health up to 1 year after birth.

The World Health Organization conducted a multicenter randomized trial with almost 25,000 women that compared routine prenatal care with an experimental model designed to minimize visits (Villar, 2001). In the new model, women were seen once in the first trimester and screened for certain risks. Those without anticipated complications—80 percent of those screened—were seen again at 26, 32, and 38 weeks. Compared with routine prenatal care, which required a median of eight visits, the new model required a median of only five. No disadvantages were attributed to the regimen with fewer visits, and these findings are consistent with other randomized trials.

Prenatal Surveillance

At each return visit, the well-being of mother and fetus are assessed (see Table 10-1). Fetal heart rate, growth, and activity are evaluated. Maternal blood pressure and weight and their extent of change are assessed. Symptoms such as abdominal pain, nausea and vomiting, bleeding, vaginal fluid leakage, headache, altered vision, and dysuria are sought. After 20 weeks' gestation, uterine examination measures size from the symphysis to the fundus with

TABLE 10-3. Conditions for Which Maternal-Fetal Medicine Consultation May Be Beneficial

Medical History and Conditions
Cardiac disease—moderate to severe disorders
Diabetes mellitus with evidence of end-organ damage or uncontrolled hyperglycemia
Family or personal history of genetic abnormalities
Hemoglobinopathy
Chronic hypertension if uncontrolled or associated with renal or cardiac disease
Renal insufficiency if associated with significant proteinuria (≥500 mg/24 hour), serum creatinine ≥1.5 mg/dL, or hypertension
Pulmonary disease if severe restrictive or obstructive, including severe asthma
Human immunodeficiency virus infection
Prior pulmonary embolus or deep-vein thrombosis
Severe systemic disease, including autoimmune conditions
Bariatric surgery
Epilepsy if poorly controlled or requires more than one anticonvulsant
Cancer, especially if treatment is indicated in pregnancy
Obstetrical History and Conditions
CDE (Rh) or other blood group alloimmunization (excluding ABO, Lewis)
Prior or current fetal structural or chromosomal abnormality
Desire or need for prenatal diagnosis or fetal therapy
Periconceptional exposure to known teratogens
Infection with or exposure to organisms that cause congenital infection
Higher-order multifetal gestation
Severe disorders of amnionic fluid volume

a traditional tape measure. In late pregnancy, vaginal examination often provides valuable information. This may include confirmation of the presenting part and its station, clinical estimation of pelvic capacity and configuration, fetal ballottement as a reflection of sufficient amnionic fluid volume, and cervical consistency, effacement, and dilation (Chap. 22, p. 426).

Fundal Height

Between 20 and 34 weeks' gestation, the height of the uterine fundus measured in centimeters correlates closely with gestational age in weeks. This measurement is used to monitor fetal growth and amnionic fluid volume. It is measured along the abdominal wall from the top of the symphysis pubis to the top of the fundus. Importantly, the bladder must be emptied before fundal measurement. Obesity or the presence of uterine masses such as leiomyomas also may limit fundal height measurement accuracy. Moreover, using fundal height alone, fetal-growth restriction may be undiagnosed in up to a third of cases (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021b; Haragan, 2015).

Fetal Heart Sounds

Instruments incorporating Doppler ultrasound are usually used to easily detect fetal heart action, and in the absence of maternal obesity, heart sounds are almost always detectable by 10 weeks with such instruments (Chap. 24, p. 447). The fetal heart rate ranges from 110 to 160 beats per minute and is typically heard as a double sound. Using a standard nonamplified stethoscope, the fetal heart is audible by 20 weeks in 80 percent of women, and by 22 weeks, heart sounds are expected to be heard in all (Herbert, 1987). Because the fetus moves freely in amnionic fluid, the site on the maternal abdomen where fetal heart sounds can be heard best will vary.

Additionally, with ultrasonic auscultation, one may hear the *funic souffle*, which is a sharp, whistling sound that is synchronous with the fetal pulse. It is caused by the rush of blood through the umbilical arteries and may not be heard consistently. In contrast, the *uterine souffle* is a soft, blowing sound that is synchronous with the maternal pulse. It is produced by the passage of blood through the dilated uterine vessels and is heard most distinctly near the lower portion of the uterus.

Sonography

Ultrasound imaging provides invaluable information regarding fetal anatomy, growth, and well-being. As such, it is recommended that all pregnant women be offered at least one prenatal sonographic examination (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018l). Continuing trends suggest that the number of these examinations performed per pregnancy is increasing. Data from commercial insurance plans indicate that even low-risk pregnancies receive an average of 4 to 5 ultrasound examinations (O'Keeffe, 2013). Sonography should be performed only for valid medical indications. Additionally, needed information is obtained using the lowest possible ultrasound exposure settings, which is the as low as reasonably achievable (ALARA) principle (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2016).

■ Subsequent Laboratory Tests

If initial results were normal, most tests need not be repeated. Hematocrit or hemoglobin determination, along with serology

for syphilis if it is prevalent in the population, is repeated at 28 to 32 weeks (Hollier, 2003; Kiss, 2004). For women at increased risk for HIV acquisition during pregnancy, repeat testing is recommended in the third trimester, preferably before 36 weeks (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018j). Similarly, women who engage in behaviors that place them at high risk for hepatitis B virus infection are retested at the time of delivery. Women who are D (Rh) negative and are unsensitized should have an antibody screening test repeated at 28 to 29 weeks. Anti-D immunoglobulin is given if they remain unsensitized (Chap. 18, p. 354).

Group B Streptococcal Infection

The CDC (2010b) recommends that vaginal and rectal group B streptococcal (GBS) cultures be obtained in all women between 35 and 37 weeks' gestation, and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020f) endorses this recommendation. Intrapartum antimicrobial prophylaxis is provided to those whose culture results are positive. Women with GBS bacteriuria, preterm labor, or a previous infant with invasive disease are given empirical intrapartum prophylaxis. Trials are in progress to test an investigational vaccine (Madhi, 2016). These infections are described further in Chapter 67 (p. 1194).

Gestational Diabetes

All pregnant women are screened for gestational diabetes mellitus, whether by history, clinical factors, or routine laboratory testing. Although laboratory testing between 24 and 28 weeks' gestation is the most sensitive approach, there may be women at low risk who are less likely to benefit from testing (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019d). Gestational diabetes is discussed in Chapter 60 (p. 1079).

Genetic Screening

Serum screening for fetal aneuploidy is routinely offered to all pregnant women—in the first trimester at 10 to 14 weeks, in the second trimester at 15 to 20 weeks, or as cell-free DNA screening at any point after 10 weeks (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020d). Additionally, the College recommends that both cystic fibrosis carrier screening and screening for spinal muscular atrophy should be offered to all women considering pregnancy or who are currently pregnant, provided that carrier or disease status is not already known (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologist, 2017b).

Historically, carrier screening for selected genetic abnormalities was offered only to women at increased risk based on ethnic or racial background. One example is screening for Tay-Sachs disease in those of Ashkenazi Jewish descent. However, given our increasingly diverse, multiethnic society, previous assumptions about carrier risk may no longer apply. Although ethnicity-specific carrier screening remains an option, providers should also consider panethnic and expanded carrier screening strategies (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017c). These are discussed further in Chapter 17 (p. 342). All genetic screening is optional, and ideally, genetic carrier screening and counseling should be performed before pregnancy.

Neural-Tube Defects

Traditionally, screening for neural-tube defects has been performed as part of second-trimester aneuploidy screening. An elevation of maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein (MSAFP) levels then prompted additional evaluation with ultrasound and/or amniocentesis. With the advent of other screening modalities for aneuploidy, second-trimester MSAFP testing is less frequently obtained. For example, the expansion of second-trimester fetal anatomical surveillance has been used to screen and identify neural-tube defects (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017f).

NUTRITIONAL COUNSELING

Weight Gain Recommendations

In 2009, the Institute of Medicine and National Research Council revised guidelines for weight gain in pregnancy and continued to stratify suggested weight gain ranges based on prepregnancy body mass index (BMI) (Table 10-4). The same recommendations apply to women in all age, race, and ethnic groups. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018n) endorses these measures.

When the initial Institute of Medicine guidelines were formulated, concern focused on low-birthweight newborns. However, current emphasis is directed to the obesity epidemic. The specific and relatively narrow range of recommended weight gains for obese women emphasizes the renewed interest in *lower* weight gains during pregnancy. Obesity is associated with significantly greater risks for gestational hypertension, preeclampsia, gestational diabetes, macrosomia, cesarean delivery, and other complications (Chap. 51, p. 905). The risk appears proportionate to prenatal weight gain. In a Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units Network cohort of more than 29,000 pregnant women, 51 percent had weight gain above and 21 percent below the guidelines

TABLE 10-4. Recommendations for Total and Rate of Weight Gain During Pregnancy

Category (BMI)	Total Weight Gain Range (lb)[a]	Weight Gain in 2nd and 3rd Trimesters Mean in lb/wk (range)
Underweight (<18.5)	28–40	1 (1–1.3)
Normal weight (18.5–24.9)	25–35	1 (0.8–1)
Overweight (25.0–29.9)	15–25	0.6 (0.5–0.7)
Obese (≥30.0)	11–20	0.5 (0.4–0.6)

[a]Empirical recommendations for weight gain in twin pregnancies include: normal BMI, 37–54 lb; overweight women, 31–50 lb; and obese women, 25–42 lb.
BMI = body mass index.
Modified from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2019b; Institute of Medicine and National Research Council, 2009.

(Kominiarek, 2018). Those with excessive weight gain had higher rates of hypertension and cesarean delivery. This risk is even greater in chronically hypertensive women (Ornaghi, 2018).

Conversely, among 100,000 women with normal prepregnancy BMI, DeVader and colleagues (2007) found that those who gained <25 lb during pregnancy had a lower risk for preeclampsia, failed induction, cephalopelvic disproportion, cesarean delivery, and large-for-gestational age neonates. This cohort, however, had an increased risk for small-for-gestational age newborns.

Severe Undernutrition

Meaningful studies of nutrition in human pregnancy are exceedingly difficult to design because experimental dietary deficiency is not ethical. In those instances in which severe nutritional deficiencies have been induced as a consequence of social, economic, or political disaster, coincidental events have often created many variables, the effects of which are not amenable to quantification. Some past experiences suggest, however, that in otherwise healthy women, a state of near starvation is required to establish clear differences in pregnancy outcome. These are discussed in Chapter 47 (p. 827).

Weight Retention After Pregnancy

Not all the weight gained during pregnancy is lost during and immediately after delivery. Schauberger and coworkers (1992) studied prenatal and postpartum weights in 795 women. Their average weight gain was 28.6 lb or 12.9 kg. As shown in Figure 10-3, most maternal weight loss was at delivery—approximately 12 lb or 5.4 kg—and in the ensuing 2 weeks—approximately 9 lb or 4 kg. An additional 5.5 lb or 2.5 kg was lost between 2 weeks and 6 months postpartum. Thus, average retained pregnancy weight was 2.1 lb or 1 kg. Excessive weight gain is manifest by accrual of fat and may be partially retained as long-term fat (Berggren, 2016; Widen, 2015). Overall, the more weight that was gained during pregnancy, the more that was lost postpartum. And breastfeeding duration is inversely related to weight retention (Jiang, 2018).

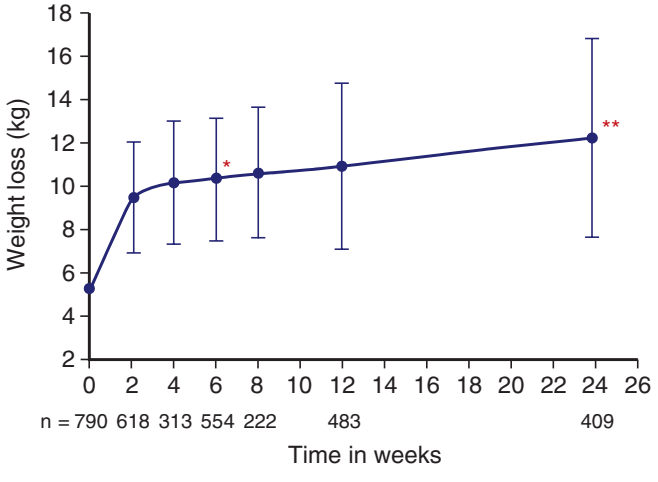


FIGURE 10-3 Cumulative weight loss from last antepartum visit to 6 months postpartum. On average, 1 kg will be retained after pregnancy. *Significantly different from 2-week weight loss; **Significantly different from 6-week weight loss. (Redrawn with permission from Schauberger CW, Rooney BL, Brimer LM: Factors that influence weight loss in the puerperium. Obstet Gynecol 79:424, 1992.)

Dietary Reference Intakes—Recommended Allowances

Periodically, the Institute of Medicine (2006, 2011) publishes recommended dietary allowances, including those for pregnant or lactating women. Some of its latest recommendations are summarized in Table 10-5. Certain prenatal vitamin–mineral supplements may lead to intakes well in excess of the recommended allowances. Moreover, the use of excessive supplements, which often are self-prescribed, has led to concern regarding nutrient toxicities during pregnancy. *Those with potentially toxic effects include iron, zinc, selenium, and vitamins A, B_6, C, and D.*

Calories

As shown in Figure 10-4, pregnancy requires an additional 80,000 kcal, mostly during the last 20 weeks. To meet this demand, a caloric increase of 100 to 300 kcal/d is recommended

TABLE 10-5. Recommended Daily Dietary Allowances for Pregnant and Lactating Women

	Pregnant	Lactating
Fat-Soluble Vitamins		
Vitamin A	770 µg	1300 µg
Vitamin D[a]	15 µg	15 µg
Vitamin E	15 mg	19 mg
Vitamin K[a]	90 µg	90 µg
Water-Soluble Vitamins		
Vitamin C	85 mg	120 mg
Thiamin	1.4 mg	1.4 mg
Riboflavin	1.4 mg	1.6 mg
Niacin	18 mg	17 mg
Vitamin B_6	1.9 mg	2 mg
Folate	600 µg	500 µg
Vitamin B_{12}	2.6 µg	2.8 µg
Minerals		
Calcium[a]	1000 mg	1000 mg
Sodium[a]	1.5 g	1.5 g
Potassium[a]	4.7 g	5.1 g
Iron	27 mg	9 mg
Zinc	11 mg	12 mg
Iodine	220 µg	290 µg
Selenium	60 µg	70 µg
Other		
Protein	71 g	71 g
Carbohydrate	175 g	210 g
Fiber[a]	28 g	29 g

[a]Recommendations measured as adequate intake.
Modified from the American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017; Institute of Medicine, 2006, 2011.

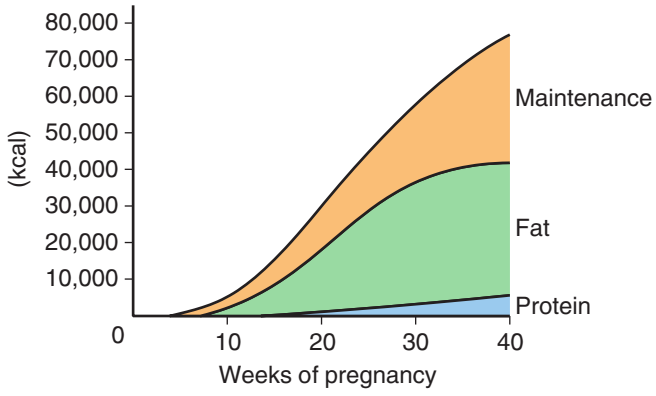


FIGURE 10-4 Cumulative kilocalories required for pregnancy. (Redrawn with permission from Chamberlain G, Broughton-Pipkin F [eds]: Clinical Physiology in Obstetrics, 3rd ed. Oxford, Blackwell Science, 1998.)

during pregnancy (American Academy of Pediatrics and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017). This greater intake, however, should not be divided equally during the course of pregnancy. The Institute of Medicine (2006) recommends adding 0, 340, and 452 kcal/d to the estimated nonpregnant energy requirements in the first, second, and third trimesters, respectively. The addition of 1000 kcal/d or more results in fat accrual (Jebeile, 2015).

Whenever caloric intake is inadequate, protein is metabolized rather than being spared for its vital role in fetal growth and development. Total physiological requirements during pregnancy are not necessarily the sum of ordinary nonpregnant requirements plus those specific to pregnancy. For example, the additional energy required during pregnancy may be compensated in whole or in part by reduced physical activity (Hytten, 1991).

Protein

Protein requirements rise to meet the demands for growth and remodeling of the fetus, placenta, uterus, and breasts, and for the expanded maternal blood volume (Chap. 4, p. 51). During the second half of pregnancy, approximately 1000 g of protein are deposited, amounting to 5 to 6 g/d (Hytten, 1971). To accomplish this, protein intake that approximates 1 g/kg/d is recommended (see Table 10-5). Data suggest this should be doubled in late gestation (Stephens, 2015). Most amino-acid levels in maternal plasma fall markedly, including ornithine, glycine, taurine, and proline (Hytten, 1991). Exceptions during pregnancy are glutamic acid and alanine, the concentrations of which rise.

Preferably, most protein is supplied from animal sources, such as meat, milk, eggs, cheese, poultry, and fish. These furnish amino acids in optimal combinations. Milk and dairy products are considered nearly ideal sources of nutrients, especially protein and calcium, for pregnant or lactating women. Ingestion of specific fish and potential methylmercury toxicity are discussed later (p. 188).

Minerals

The intakes recommended by the Institute of Medicine (2006) for various minerals are listed in Table 10-5. With the exception of iron and iodine, practically all diets that supply sufficient calories for appropriate weight gain will contain enough minerals to prevent deficiency.

Iron requirements substantively rise during pregnancy, and reasons for this are discussed in Chapter 4 (p. 60). Of the approximately 300 mg of iron transferred to the fetus and placenta and the 500 mg incorporated into the expanding maternal hemoglobin mass, nearly all is used after midpregnancy. During that time, iron requirements imposed by pregnancy and maternal excretion total approximately 7 mg/d (Pritchard, 1970). Few women have sufficient iron stores or dietary intake to supply this amount. Thus, the American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) endorse the recommendation by the National Academy of Sciences that at least 27 mg of elemental iron be supplemented daily to pregnant women. This amount is contained in most prenatal vitamins.

As little as 30 mg of elemental iron, supplied as ferrous gluconate, sulfate, or fumarate, and taken daily throughout the latter half of pregnancy, provides sufficient iron to meet pregnancy requirements and protect preexisting iron stores (Scott, 1970). This amount will also provide for iron requirements of lactation. Notably, in iron preparations, the number of milligrams of compound is followed by the milligrams of elemental iron, which is enclosed by parentheses. The pregnant woman may benefit from 60 to 100 mg of elemental iron per day if she is obese, has a multifetal gestation, begins supplementation late in pregnancy, takes iron irregularly, or has a depressed hemoglobin level. The woman who is overtly anemic from iron deficiency responds well to oral supplementation with iron salts. In response, serum ferritin levels rise more than the hemoglobin concentration (Daru, 2016).

Iodine also is needed, and the recommended iodine allowance is 220 µg/d (see Table 10-5). The use of iodized salt and bread products is recommended during pregnancy to offset the increased fetal requirements and maternal renal losses of iodine. Despite this, iodine intake has declined substantially in the past 15 years, and in some areas it is probably inadequate (Caldwell, 2013; Chittimoju, 2019). Severe maternal iodine deficiency predisposes offspring to endemic cretinism, which is characterized by multiple severe neurological defects. In parts of China and Africa, where this condition is common, iodide supplementation very early in pregnancy prevents some cretinism cases (Cao, 1994). To obviate this, most prenatal supplements now contain various quantities of iodine (Patel, 2019).

Calcium is retained by the pregnant woman during gestation and approximates 30 g. Most of this is deposited in the fetus late in pregnancy (Pitkin, 1985). This amount of calcium represents only approximately 2.5 percent of total maternal calcium, most of which is in bone and can readily be mobilized for fetal growth. As another potential use, routine calcium supplementation to prevent preeclampsia is ineffective (Chap. 40, p. 704).

Zinc deficiency if severe may lead to poor appetite, suboptimal growth, and impaired wound healing. During pregnancy, the recommended daily intake approximates 12 mg. But, the safe level of zinc supplementation for pregnant women is not clearly established. Vegetarians have lower zinc intakes (Foster, 2015). The bulk of studies support zinc supplementation only

in zinc-deficient women in poor-resource countries (Nossier, 2015; Ota, 2015).

Magnesium deficiency as a consequence of pregnancy has not been recognized. Undoubtedly, during prolonged illness with no magnesium intake, the plasma level might become critically low, as it would in the absence of pregnancy. We have observed this deficiency during pregnancies in some with previous intestinal bypass surgery. Instead, as a preventive agent, Sibai and colleagues (1989) randomly assigned 400 normotensive primigravidas to receive 365-mg elemental magnesium supplementation or placebo tablets from 13 to 24 weeks' gestation. Supplementation did not improve any measures of pregnancy outcome.

Trace metals include copper, selenium, chromium, and manganese, which all have important roles in certain enzyme functions. In general, most are provided by an average diet. Selenium deficiency is manifested by a frequently fatal cardiomyopathy in young children and reproductive-aged women. Conversely, selenium toxicity resulting from oversupplementation also has been observed. Selenium supplementation is not needed in American women.

Potassium concentrations in maternal plasma decline by approximately 0.5 mEq/L by midpregnancy (Brown, 1986). Potassium deficiency develops in the same circumstances as in nonpregnant individuals. One common example in pregnant women is hyperemesis gravidarum.

Fluoride metabolism is not altered appreciably during pregnancy (Maheshwari, 1983). Horowitz and Heifetz (1967) concluded that no additional offspring benefits accrued from maternal ingestion of fluoridated water if the newborn ingested such water from birth. Sa Roriz Fonteles and associates (2005) studied microdrill biopsies of deciduous teeth and concluded that antenatal fluoride provided no additional fluoride uptake compared with postnatal fluoride alone. Finally, supplemental fluoride ingested by lactating women does not raise the fluoride concentration in breast milk (Ekstrand, 1981).

Vitamins

The increased requirements for most vitamins during pregnancy shown in Table 10-5 usually are supplied by any general diet that provides adequate calories and protein. The exception is folic acid during times of unusual requirements, such as pregnancy complicated by protracted vomiting, hemolytic anemia, or multiple fetuses. That said, in impoverished countries, routine multivitamin supplementation reduced the incidence of low-birthweight and growth-restricted fetuses but did not alter preterm delivery or perinatal mortality rates (Fawzi, 2007).

Folic acid supplementation in early pregnancy can lower neural-tube defect risks (Chap. 15, p. 276). For example, the CDC (2004) estimated that the number of affected pregnancies had decreased from 4000 per year to approximately 3000 per year after mandatory fortification of cereal products with folic acid in 1998. Perhaps more than half of all neural-tube defects can be prevented with daily intake of 400 µg of folic acid throughout the periconceptional period (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2019a). Evidence also suggests that folate insufficiency has a global effect on brain development (Ars, 2016). Putting 140 µg of folic acid into each 100 g of grain products may increase the folic acid intake of the average American woman of childbearing age by 100 µg/d. Because nutritional sources alone are insufficient, however, folic acid supplementation is still recommended.

A woman with a prior child with a neural-tube defect can reduce the 2- to 5-percent recurrence risk by more than 70 percent with a daily 4-mg folic acid supplement taken during the month before conception and during the first trimester. As emphasized by the American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017), this dose should be consumed as a separate supplement and not as multivitamin tablets. This practice avoids excessive intake of fat-soluble vitamins.

Vitamin A, although essential, has been associated with congenital malformations when taken during pregnancy in high doses (>10,000 IU/d). These malformations are similar to those produced by the vitamin A derivative isotretinoin (Accutane), which is a potent teratogen (Chap. 8, p. 155). Beta-carotene, the precursor of vitamin A found in fruits and vegetables, does not produce vitamin A toxicity. Most prenatal vitamins contain vitamin A in doses considerably below the teratogenic threshold. Dietary intake of vitamin A in the United States appears to be adequate, and additional supplementation is not routinely recommended. In contrast, vitamin A deficiency is an endemic nutritional problem in the developing world (McCauley, 2015). Vitamin A deficiency, whether overt or subclinical, is associated with night blindness and with an increased risk of maternal anemia and spontaneous preterm birth (West, 2003).

Vitamin B_{12} plasma levels drop in normal pregnancy, mostly as a result of reduced plasma levels of their carrier proteins—*transcobalamins*. Vitamin B_{12} occurs naturally only in foods of animal origin, and strict vegetarians may give birth to neonates whose B_{12} stores are low. Likewise, because breast milk of a vegetarian mother contains little vitamin B_{12}, the deficiency may become profound in the breastfed infant (Higginbottom, 1978). Excessive ingestion of vitamin C also can lead to a functional deficiency of vitamin B_{12}. Although its role is still controversial, vitamin B_{12} deficiency may be an independent factor associated with neural-tube defects (Molloy, 2018).

Vitamin B_6, which is pyridoxine, does not require supplementation in most gravidas (Salam, 2015). For women at high risk for inadequate nutrition, a daily 2-mg supplement is recommended. As discussed on page 191, vitamin B_6, when combined with the antihistamine *doxylamine*, is helpful in many cases of nausea and vomiting of pregnancy.

Vitamin C allowances during pregnancy are 80 to 85 mg/d—approximately 20 percent more than when nonpregnant (see Table 10-5). A reasonable diet should readily provide this amount, and supplementation is unnecessary (Rumbold, 2015). Maternal plasma levels decline during pregnancy, whereas cord blood levels are higher. This is a phenomenon observed with most water-soluble vitamins.

Vitamin D is a fat-soluble vitamin. After being metabolized to its active form, it boosts the efficiency of intestinal calcium absorption and promotes bone mineralization and growth. Unlike most vitamins that are obtained exclusively from dietary intake, vitamin D is also synthesized endogenously with exposure to sunlight. Vitamin D deficiency is common during pregnancy. This is especially

true in high-risk groups such as women with limited sun exposure, vegetarians, and ethnic minorities—particularly those with darker skin (Bodnar, 2007). Maternal deficiency can cause disordered skeletal homeostasis, congenital rickets, and fractures in the newborn (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017j). However, vitamin D supplementation in women with asthma *may* decrease the likelihood of childhood asthma in their offspring (Litonjua, 2016). The Food and Nutrition Board of the Institute of Medicine (2011) established that an adequate intake of vitamin D during pregnancy and lactation was 15 µg/d (600 IU/d). In women suspected of having vitamin D deficiency, serum levels of 25-hydroxyvitamin D can be obtained. Even then, the optimal levels in pregnancy have not been established (De-Regil, 2016).

Pragmatic Nutritional Surveillance

Although researchers continue to study the ideal nutritional regimen for the pregnant woman and her fetus, basic tenets for the clinician include:

1. Advise the pregnant woman to eat food types she wants in reasonable amounts and salted to taste.
2. Ensure that food is amply available for socioeconomically deprived women.
3. Monitor weight gain and align goals with the Institute of Medicine recommendations.
4. Explore food intake by dietary recall periodically to discover the occasional nutritionally errant diet.
5. Give tablets of simple iron salts that provide at least 30 mg of elemental iron daily. Give folate supplementation before and in the early weeks of pregnancy. Provide iodine supplementation in areas of known dietary insufficiency.
6. Recheck the hematocrit or hemoglobin concentration at 28 to 32 weeks' gestation to detect significant anemia.

COMMON CONCERNS

Employment

More than half of the children in the United States are born to working mothers. Several federal laws have been passed to protect pregnant workers. These prohibit employers from excluding women from job categories on the basis that they are or might become pregnant. The Family and Medical Leave Act of 1993 requires that covered employers must grant up to 12 work weeks of unpaid leave to an employee for the birth and care of a newborn child.

In the absence of complications, most women can continue to work until labor onset (American Academy of Pediatrics and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017). Some types of work, however, may increase pregnancy complication risks. According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018b), risks of preterm birth are slightly to modestly increased with standing or walking at work >3 hours daily, lifting and carrying >5 kg, or physically exerting oneself at work. In a prospective study of more than 900 healthy nulliparas, women who worked had a fivefold higher risk of preeclampsia (Higgins, 2002). Thus, any occupation that subjects the gravida to severe physical strain should be avoided. Ideally, no work or play is continued to the extent that undue fatigue develops. Adequate periods of rest should be provided.

Exercise

In general, pregnant women do not need to limit exercise, provided they do not become excessively fatigued or risk injury (Davenport, 2016). Clapp and associates (2000) reported that both placental size and birthweight were significantly greater in women who exercised. Duncombe and coworkers (2006) reported similar findings in 148 women. In contrast, Magann and colleagues (2002) prospectively analyzed exercise behavior in 750 healthy women and found that working women who exercised had smaller neonates and more dysfunctional labors.

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) advises a thorough clinical evaluation before recommending an exercise program. In the absence of contraindications listed in Table 10-6, pregnant women are encouraged to engage in regular, moderate-intensity physical activity for at least 150 minutes each week. Such activity has been shown to not adversely alter uterine artery Doppler studies (Szymanski, 2018). Each activity should be reviewed individually for its potential risk. Examples of safe activities are walking, running, swimming, stationary cycling, and low-impact aerobics. However, they should refrain from activities with a high risk of falling or abdominal trauma. Similarly, scuba diving is avoided because the fetus is at increased risk for decompression sickness (Reid, 2018).

In the setting of certain pregnancy complications, it is wise to abstain from exercise and even limit physical activity. Some women with pregnancy-associated hypertensive disorders, preterm labor, placenta previa, or severe cardiac or pulmonary disease may accrue advantages from being sedentary. Also, those with multiple or suspected growth-restricted fetuses may be served by greater rest.

TABLE 10-6. Some Contraindications to Exercise During Pregnancy

Significant cardiovascular or pulmonary disease: chest pain, calf pain or swelling
Significant risk for preterm labor: cerclage, multifetal gestation, significant bleeding, threatened preterm labor, ruptured membranes
Obstetrical complications: preeclampsia, placenta previa, anemia, poorly controlled diabetes or epilepsy, morbid obesity, fetal-growth restriction

Summarized from American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017g; The American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017.

Seafood Consumption

Fish are an excellent source of protein, are low in saturated fats, and contain omega-3 fatty acids. It is recommended that pregnant women ingest 8 to 12 ounces of fish weekly, but no more than 6 ounces of albacore or "white" tuna (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2019). Because nearly all fish and shellfish contain trace amounts of mercury, pregnant and lactating women are advised to avoid specific types of fish with potentially high methylmercury levels. These include shark, swordfish, king mackerel, and tile fish. If the mercury content of locally caught fish is unknown, overall fish consumption should be limited to 6 ounces per week. Finally, to help avert listeriosis, eating raw or undercooked fish is avoided (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017j).

Lead Screening

Maternal lead exposure is associated with several adverse maternal and fetal outcomes across a range of maternal blood lead levels (Taylor, 2015). These include gestational hypertension, miscarriage, low birthweight, and neurodevelopmental impairments in exposed pregnancies. The levels at which these risks rise remains unclear. However, recognizing that such exposure remains a significant health issue for reproductive-aged women, the CDC (2010a) provides guidance for screening and managing exposed pregnant and lactating women. These guidelines, which have been endorsed by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018f), recommend blood lead testing only if a risk factor is identified. If the levels are >5 μg/dL, the lead source is sought and removed. Subsequent blood levels are obtained. Blood lead levels >45 μg/dL are consistent with lead poisoning, and women in this group may be candidates for chelation therapy. Affected pregnancies are best managed in consultation with lead poisoning treatment experts. National and state resources are available at the CDC website: www.cdc.gov/nceh/lead/.

Automobile and Air Travel

Pregnant women are encouraged to wear properly positioned three-point restraints as protection against automobile accident injury (Chap. 50, p. 892). The lap portion of the restraining belt is placed under the abdomen and across her upper thighs. The belt should be comfortably snug. The shoulder belt also is firmly positioned between the breasts. Airbags should not be disabled for the pregnant woman.

In general, air travel in a properly pressurized aircraft has no harmful effect on pregnancy. Thus, in the absence of obstetrical or medical complications, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a) has concluded that pregnant women can safely fly up to 36 weeks' gestation. It is recommended that they observe the same precautions for air travel as the general population. Seatbelts are used while seated. Support stockings, periodic lower extremity movement, and at least hourly ambulation help lower the venous thromboembolism threat. Significant risks with travel, especially international travel, are infectious disease acquisition and development of complications remote from adequate health-care resources.

Coitus

In healthy pregnant women, sexual intercourse usually is not harmful. Whenever miscarriage, placenta previa, or preterm labor threatens, however, coitus is avoided. Nearly 10,000 women enrolled in a prospective investigation by the Vaginal Infection and Prematurity Study Group were interviewed regarding sexual activity (Read, 1993). They reported a decreased frequency of coitus with advancing gestation. By 36 weeks, 72 percent had intercourse less than once weekly. The decline is attributed to lower desire and fear of harming the pregnancy (Staruch, 2016).

Intercourse specifically late in pregnancy is not harmful. Sayle and colleagues (2001) reported no increased—and actually a decreased—risk of delivery within 2 weeks of intercourse. Tan and associates (2007) studied women scheduled for nonurgent labor induction and found that spontaneous labor ensued at equal rates in groups either participating in or abstaining from intercourse.

Oral-vaginal intercourse is occasionally hazardous. Aronson and Nelson (1967) described a fatal air embolism late in pregnancy as a result of air blown into the vagina during cunnilingus. Other near-fatal cases have been described (Bernhardt, 1988).

Dental Care

Examination of the teeth is included in the prenatal examination, and good dental hygiene is encouraged. Indeed, periodontal disease is linked to preterm labor. Unfortunately, although its treatment improves dental health, it does not prevent preterm birth (Daalderop, 2018). Dental caries are not aggravated by pregnancy. Importantly, pregnancy is not a contraindication to dental treatment including dental radiographs (American Academy of Pediatrics and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017).

Immunization

Current recommendations for immunization during pregnancy are summarized in Table 10-7. Well-publicized concerns regarding a causal link between childhood exposure to the thimerosal preservative in some vaccines and neuropsychological disorders have led some parents to vaccine prohibition. Although controversy continues, these associations have been proven groundless. Thus, many vaccines may be used in pregnancy (Munoz, 2019). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020c) stresses the importance of integrating an effective vaccine strategy into the care of both obstetrical and gynecological patients. The College further emphasizes that information on the safety of vaccines given during pregnancy is subject to change, and recommendations can be found on the CDC website at www.cdc.gov/vaccines.

Influenza and tetanus–diphtheria–acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccinations are recommended routinely for all pregnant women (Munoz, 2019; Sperling, 2018b). Others are recommended for specific indications (see Table 10-7). Women who are susceptible to rubella should receive measles, mumps, and rubella (MMR) vaccination postpartum. This vaccine is contraindicated during pregnancy.

TABLE 10-7. Recommendations for Immunization During Pregnancy and Postpartum

Immunobiological Agent	Indications for Immunization During Pregnancy	Dose Schedule	Comments
Live Attenuated Virus Vaccines			
Measles	Contraindicated—see immune globulins	Single dose SC, preferably as MMR[a]	Vaccinate susceptible women postpartum; breastfeeding is not a contraindication
Mumps	Contraindicated	Single dose SC, preferably as MMR	Vaccinate susceptible women postpartum
Rubella	Contraindicated, but congenital rubella syndrome has never been described after vaccine	Single dose SC, preferably as MMR	Teratogenicity of vaccine is theoretical and not confirmed to date; vaccinate susceptible women postpartum
Poliomyelitis oral = live attenuated; injection = enhanced-potency inactivated virus	Not routinely recommended for women in the United States, except women at increased risk of exposure[b]	Primary: Two doses of enhanced-potency inactivated virus SC at 4- to 8-week intervals and a 3rd dose 6–12 months after 2nd dose Immediate protection: One dose oral polio vaccine (in outbreak setting)	Vaccine indicated for susceptible women traveling in endemic areas or in other high-risk situations
Yellow fever	Travel to high-risk areas	Single dose SC	Limited theoretical risk outweighed by risk of yellow fever
Varicella	Contraindicated, but no adverse outcomes reported in pregnancy	Two doses needed: 2nd dose given 4–8 weeks after 1st dose	Teratogenicity of vaccine is theoretical; vaccination of susceptible women should be considered postpartum
Zoster	Contraindicated	Single dose	Teratogenicity is theoretical
Smallpox (vaccinia)	Contraindicated in pregnant women and in their household contacts	One dose SC, multiple pricks with lancet	Only vaccine known to cause fetal harm
Other			
Influenza	All pregnant women, regardless of trimester during flu season (October–May)	One dose IM every year	Inactivated or recombinant virus vaccine
Rabies	Indications for prophylaxis not altered by pregnancy; each case considered individually	Public health authorities to be consulted for indications, dosage, and route of administration	Killed-virus vaccine
Human papillomavirus	Not recommended	Three-dose series IM at 0, 1, and 6 months	Nonavalent vaccine is inactivated virus; no teratogenic effects have been observed
Hepatitis B	Preexposure and postexposure for women at risk of infection, e.g., chronic liver or kidney disease	Three-dose series IM at 0, 1, and 6 months	Used with hepatitis B immune globulin for some exposures; exposed newborn needs birth-dose vaccination and immune globulin as soon as possible; all infants should receive birth dose of vaccine
Hepatitis A	Preexposure and postexposure if at risk (international travel); chronic liver disease	Two-dose schedule IM, 6 months apart	Inactivated virus

(*continued*)

TABLE 10-7. Continued

Immunobiological Agent	Indications for Immunization During Pregnancy	Dose Schedule	Comments
Inactivated Bacterial Vaccines			
Pneumococcus	(1) For chronic metabolic, liver, cardiac, or lung ds. (2) For immunosuppression, general malignancy, chronic renal disease, or asplenia	One lifetime dose: (1) One dose PPSV23 (2) One dose PCV13 with PPSV23 given 8 weeks later	Indications not altered by pregnancy Polyvalent polysaccharide vaccine; safety in the first trimester has not been evaluated
Meningococcus	Indications not altered by pregnancy; vaccination recommended in unusual outbreaks	One dose MenACWY or MPSV4; tetravalent vaccine; two doses for asplenia	Antimicrobial prophylaxis if significant exposure
Typhoid	Not recommended routinely except for close, continued exposure or travel to endemic areas	Killed Primary: 2 injections IM 4 weeks apart Booster: One dose; schedule not yet determined	Killed, injectable vaccine or live attenuated oral vaccine; oral vaccine preferred
Anthrax	See text	Six-dose primary vaccination, then annual booster vaccination	Preparation from cell-free filtrate of *B anthracis*; no dead or live bacteria; teratogenicity of vaccine theoretical
Toxoids			
Tetanus-diphtheria-acellular pertussis (Tdap)	Recommended in every pregnancy, preferably between 27 and 36 weeks to maximize passive antibody transfer	Primary: Two doses IM at 1–2 month interval with 3rd dose 6–12 months after the 2nd Booster: Single dose IM every 10 years, as a part of wound care if ≥5 years since last dose, or once per pregnancy	Combined tetanus-diphtheria toxoids with acellular pertussis (Tdap) preferred; updating immune status should be part of antepartum care
Specific Immune Globulins			
Hepatitis B	Postexposure prophylaxis	Depends on exposure	Usually given with hepatitis B virus vaccine; exposed newborn needs immediate prophylaxis
Rabies	Postexposure prophylaxis	Half dose at injury site, half dose in deltoid	Used in conjunction with rabies killed-virus vaccine
Tetanus	Postexposure prophylaxis	One dose IM	Used in conjunction with tetanus toxoid
Varicella	Should be considered for exposed pregnant women to protect against maternal, not congenital, infection	One dose IM within 96 hours of exposure	Indicated also for newborns or women who developed varicella within 4 days before delivery or 2 days following delivery
Standard Immune Globulins			
Hepatitis A: Hepatitis A virus vaccine should be used with hepatitis A immune globulin	Postexposure prophylaxis and those at high risk	0.02 mL/kg IM in one dose	Immune globulin should be given as soon as possible and within 2 weeks of exposure; infants born to women who are incubating the virus or are acutely ill at delivery should receive one dose of 0.5 mL as soon as possible after birth

[a]Two doses necessary for students entering institutions of higher education, newly hired medical personnel, and travel abroad.
[b]Inactivated polio vaccine recommended for nonimmunized adults at increased risk.
Ds. = disease; ID = intradermally; IM = intramuscularly; MMR = measles, mumps, rubella; PO = orally; SC = subcutaneously.
From the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018o; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2011; Kim, 2016; Munoz, 2019.

Caffeine

Whether adverse pregnancy outcomes are related to caffeine consumption is somewhat controversial. As summarized from Chapter 11 (p. 200), heavy intake of coffee each day—approximately five cups or 500 mg of caffeine—slightly raises the miscarriage risk. Studies of "moderate" intake—less than 200 mg daily—did not find a higher risk.

It is unclear if caffeine consumption is associated with preterm birth or impaired fetal growth. Clausson and coworkers (2002) found no association between caffeine consumption <500 mg/d and low birthweight, fetal-growth restriction, or preterm delivery. Bech and associates (2007) randomly assigned more than 1200 pregnant women who drank at least three cups of coffee per day to caffeinated versus decaffeinated coffee. They found no difference in birthweight or gestational age at delivery between groups. The CARE Study Group (2008), however, evaluated 2635 low-risk pregnancies and reported a 1.4-fold risk for fetal-growth restriction among those whose daily caffeine consumption was >200 mg/d compared with those who consumed <100 mg/d. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018g) concludes that moderate consumption of caffeine—less than 200 mg/d—does not appear to be associated with miscarriage or preterm birth, but that the relationship between caffeine consumption and fetal-growth restriction remains unsettled.

Nausea and Heartburn

Nausea and vomiting are common complaints during the first half of pregnancy. These vary in severity and usually commence between the first and second missed menstrual period and continue until 14 to 16 weeks' gestation. Although nausea and vomiting tend to be worse in the morning—thus termed *morning sickness*—both symptoms frequently continue throughout the day. Lacroix and associates (2000) found that nausea and vomiting were reported by three fourths of pregnant women and lasted an average of 35 days. Half had relief by 14 weeks' gestation, and 90 percent by 22 weeks' gestation. In 80 percent of these women, nausea lasted all day.

Treatment of pregnancy-associated nausea and vomiting seldom provides complete relief, but symptoms can be minimized. Eating small meals at frequent intervals is valuable. One systematic literature search reported that the herbal remedy ginger was likely effective (Borrelli, 2005). Mild symptoms usually respond to vitamin B_6 given with doxylamine, but some women require phenothiazine or H_1-receptor blocking antiemetics (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018h). In some with *hyperemesis gravidarum*, vomiting is so severe that dehydration, electrolyte and acid-base disturbances, and starvation ketosis become serious problems (Chap. 57, p. 1014).

Heartburn is another common complaint of gravidas and is caused by gastric content reflux into the lower esophagus. The greater frequency of regurgitation during pregnancy most likely results from upward displacement and compression of the stomach by the uterus, combined with relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter. Avoiding bending over or lying flat can be preventive. In most pregnant women, symptoms are mild and relieved by a regimen of more frequent but smaller meals. Antacids may provide considerable relief (Phupong, 2015). Specifically, aluminum hydroxide, magnesium trisilicate, or magnesium hydroxide are given alone or in combination. Management of heartburn or nausea that does not respond to simple measures is discussed in Chapter 57 (p. 1017).

Pica and Ptyalism

The craving for strange foods is termed pica. Worldwide, its prevalence among pregnant women is estimated to be 30 percent (Fawcett, 2016). At times, nonfoods such as ice (pagophagia), starch (amylophagia), or clay (geophagia) may predominate. This desire is considered by some to be triggered by severe iron deficiency (Epler, 2017). Although such cravings usually abate after deficiency correction, not all pregnant women with pica are iron deficient. Indeed, if strange "foods" dominate the diet, iron deficiency will be aggravated or will develop eventually. Patel and colleagues (2004) prospectively completed a dietary inventory on more than 3000 women during the second trimester. The prevalence of pica was 4 percent. The most common nonfood items ingested were starch in 64 percent, dirt in 14 percent, sourdough in 9 percent, and ice in 5 percent.

Women during pregnancy are occasionally distressed by profuse salivation—*ptyalism*. Although usually unexplained, ptyalism sometimes appears to follow salivary gland stimulation by the ingestion of starch. It commonly occurs with hyperemesis gravidarum (Bronshtein, 2018).

Headache or Backache

Headaches are common in pregnancy. At least 5 percent of pregnancies are estimated to be complicated by new-onset or new-type headache (Spierings, 2016). Acetaminophen is suitable for treatment of most, and an in-depth discussion is found in Chapter 63 (p. 1127).

Low back pain to some extent is reported by nearly 70 percent of gravidas (Liddle, 2015). Minor degrees follow excessive strain or significant bending, lifting, or walking. It can be reduced by squatting rather than bending when reaching down, by using a back-support pillow when sitting, and by avoiding high-heeled shoes. Back pain complaints increase with progressing gestation and are more prevalent in obese women and those with a history of low back pain. In some cases, troublesome pain may persist for years after the pregnancy (Norén, 2002).

Severe back pain should not be attributed simply to pregnancy until a thorough orthopedic examination has been conducted. Severe pain has other uncommon causes that include pregnancy-associated osteoporosis, disc disease, vertebral osteoarthritis, or septic arthritis (Smith, 2008). More commonly, muscular spasm and tenderness are classified clinically as acute strain or fibrositis. Although evidence-based clinical research directing care in pregnancy is limited, low back pain usually responds well to analgesics, heat, and rest. Acetaminophen may be used as needed. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs also may be beneficial but are used only in short courses to avoid fetal effects (Chap. 8, p. 151). Muscle relaxants that include cyclobenzaprine or baclofen may be added when needed. Once acute pain is improved, stabilizing and strengthening exercises provided by physical therapy help improve spine and hip stability, which is essential for the increased load of

pregnancy. For some, a support belt that stabilizes the sacroiliac joint may be helpful (Gutke, 2015).

Varicosities and Hemorrhoids

Venous leg varicosities have a congenital predisposition and accrue with advancing age. They can be aggravated by factors that raise lower-extremity venous pressures, such as an enlarging uterus. Femoral venous pressures in the supine gravida rise from 8 mm Hg in early pregnancy to 24 mm Hg at term. Thus, leg varicosities typically worsen as pregnancy advances, especially with prolonged standing. Symptoms vary from cosmetic blemishes and mild discomfort at the end of the day to severe discomfort that requires prolonged rest with feet elevation. Treatment is generally limited to periodic rest with leg elevation, elastic stockings, or both. Surgical correction during pregnancy generally is not advised, although rarely the symptoms may be so severe that injection, ligation, or even stripping of the veins is necessary. Superficial varicosities are a risk factor for deep-vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism (Chap. 55, p. 980).

Vulvar varicosities frequently coexist with leg varicosities, but they may appear without other venous pathology. Uncommonly, they become massive and almost incapacitating (Pratilas, 2018). If these large varicosities rupture, either spontaneously or at the time of delivery, blood loss can be severe. Treatment is with specially fitted pantyhose that will also minimize lower extremity varicosities. With particularly bothersome vulvar varicosities, a foam rubber pad suspended across the vulva by a belt can be used to exert pressure on the dilated veins.

Hemorrhoids are rectal vein varicosities and may first appear during pregnancy as pelvic venous pressures rise. Commonly, they are recurrences of previously encountered hemorrhoids. Up to 40 percent of pregnant women develop these (Poskus, 2014). Pain and swelling usually are relieved by topically applied anesthetics, warm soaks, and stool-softening agents. With thrombosis of an external hemorrhoid, pain can be considerable. This may be relieved by incision and removal of the clot following injection of a local anesthetic.

Sleeping and Fatigue

Beginning early in pregnancy, many women experience fatigue and need greater amounts of sleep. The soporific effect of progesterone contributes but may be compounded in the first trimester by nausea and vomiting. In the latter stages, general discomforts, urinary frequency, and dyspnea can be additive. Sleep-disordered breathing may be associated with significant morbidities such as hypertensive disorders of pregnancy, stillbirth, and preterm delivery (Brown, 2018; Dominguez, 2018). Moreover, sleep efficiency appears to progressively diminish as pregnancy advances. Wilson and associates (2011) performed overnight polysomnography and observed that women in the third trimester had poorer sleep efficiency, more awakenings, and less of both stage 4 (deep) and rapid-eye-movement sleep. Women in the first trimester also were affected, but to a lesser extent. Daytime naps and mild sedatives at bedtime such as diphenhydramine (Benadryl) can be helpful.

Cord Blood Banking

Cord blood contains hemopoietic stem cells that can be used to treat more than 70 types of diseases. These include immunological and genetic diseases and some forms of cancer. Of the two cord blood bank types, public banks promote allogeneic donation, for use by a related or unrelated recipient, similar to blood product donation. Private banks store stem cells for future autologous use and charge fees for initial processing and annual storage.

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020e) has concluded that if a woman requests data on umbilical cord banking, information regarding advantages and disadvantages of public versus private banking should be explained. Some states have passed laws that require physicians to inform patients about cord blood banking options. Importantly, few transplants have been performed by using cord blood stored in the absence of a known indication in the recipient (Screnci, 2016). The likelihood that cord blood would be used for the child or family member of the donor couple is considered remote. Instead, it is recommended that directed donation be considered when an immediate family member carries the diagnosis of a specific condition known to be treatable by hemopoietic transplantation.

REFERENCES

Afshar Y, Wang E, Mei J, et al: Childbirth education class and birth plans are associated with a vaginal delivery. Birth 44(1):29, 2017

Ahmad F, Hogg-Johnson S, Stewart D, et al: Computer-assisted screening for intimate partner violence and control. Ann Intern Med 151(2):94, 2009

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Elk Grove Village, AAP, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Avoiding inappropriate clinical decisions based on false-positive human chorionic gonadotropin test results. Committee Opinion No. 278, November 2002, Reaffirmed 2017a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Carrier screening for genetic conditions. Committee Opinion No. 691, March 2017b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Carrier screening in the age of genomic medicine. Committee Opinion No. 690, March 2017c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Method for estimating the due date. Committee Opinion No. 700, May 2017e

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Neural tube defects. Practice Bulletin No. 187, December 2017f

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Opioid use and opioid use disorder in pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 711, August 2017g

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Update on seafood consumption during pregnancy. ACOG Practice Advisory, 2017j

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Vitamin D: screening and supplementation during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 495, July 2011, Reaffirmed 2017k

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Air travel during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 746, August 2018a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Employment considerations during pregnancy and the postpartum period. Committee Opinion No. 733, April 2018b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Group prenatal care. Committee Opinion No. 731, March 2018d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Lead screening during pregnancy and lactation. Committee Opinion No. 533, August 2012, Reaffirmed 2018f

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Moderate caffeine consumption during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 462, August 2010, Reaffirmed 2018g

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Nausea and vomiting of pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 189, January 2018h

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Optimizing postpartum care. Committee Opinion No. 736, May 2018i

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prenatal and perinatal human immunodeficiency virus testing. Committee Opinion No. 752, September 2018j
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Ultrasound in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 175, December 2016, Reaffirmed 2018l
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Weight gain during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 548, January 2013, Reaffirmed 2018n
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Intimate partner violence. Committee Opinion No. 518, February 2012, Reaffirmed 2019c
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Gestational diabetes mellitus. Practice Bulletin. No. 190, Feburary 2018, Reaffirmed 2019d
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Physical activity and exercise during pregnancy and the postpartum period. Committee Opinion No. 804, March 2020a
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Smoking cessation during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 807, April 2020b
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Immunization implementation strategies for Obstetrician-Gynecologists. Committee Opinion No. 772, February 2019, Reaffirmed 2020c
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Screening for fetal chromosomal abnormalities. Practice Bulletin No. 226, August 2020d
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Umbilical cord blood banking. Committee Opinion No. 771, February 2019, Reaffirmed 2020e
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention of group B streptococcal early-onset disease in newborns. Committee Opinion No. 797, January 2020f
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologist: Fetal alcohol spectrum disorders (FASD) prevention program. 2021a. Available at: www.acog.org/programs/fasd. Accessed October 5, 2021
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Fetal growth restriction. Practice Bulletin No. 227, January 2021b
American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine: Recommended maximum scanning times for displayed thermal index (TI) values. 2016. Available at: www.aium.org/officialStatements/65. Accessed October 8, 2019
American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Smoking and infertility: a committee opinion. Fertil Steril 110(4):611, 2018
Aronson ME, Nelson PK: Fatal air embolism in pregnancy resulting from an unusual sex act. Obstet Gynecol 30:127, 1967
Ars CL, Nijs IM, Marroun HE, et al: Prenatal folate, homocysteine and vitamin B_{12} levels and child brain volumes, cognitive development and psychological functioning: the Generation R Study. Br J Nutr 22:1, 2016
Barnhart KT, Guo W, Cary MS, et al: Differences in serum human chorionic gonadotropin rise in early pregnancy by race and value at presentation. Obstet Gynecol 128(3):504, 2016
Bech BH, Obel C, Henriksen TB, et al: Effect of reducing caffeine intake on birth weight and length of gestation: randomized controlled trial. BMJ 335:409, 2007
Berg CJ, Callaghan WM, Syverson C, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 1998 to 2005. Obstet Gynecol 116(6):1302, 2010
Berggren EK, Groh-Wargo S, Presley L, et al: Maternal fat, but not lean, mass is increased among overweight/obese women with excess gestational weight gain. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(6):745.e1, 2016
Berlin I, Grangé G, Jacob N, et al: Nicotine patches in pregnant smokers: randomized, placebo controlled, multicentre trial of efficacy. BMJ 348:g1622, 2014
Bernhardt TL, Goldmann RW, Thombs PA, et al: Hyperbaric oxygen treatment of cerebral air embolism from orogenital sex during pregnancy. Crit Care Med 16:729, 1988
Bleich AT, Sheffield JS, Wendel GD Jr, et al: Disseminated gonococcal infection in women. Obstet Gynecol 119(3):597, 2012
Bobdiwala S, Saso S, Verbakel JY, et al: Diagnostic protocols for the management of pregnancy of unknown location: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 126(2): 190, 2019
Bodnar LM, Simhan HN, Powers RW, et al: High prevalence of vitamin D insufficiency in black and white pregnant women residing in the northern United States and their neonates. J Nutr 137(2):447, 2007
Borrelli F, Capasso R, Aviello G, et al: Effectiveness and safety of ginger in the treatment of pregnancy-induced nausea and vomiting. Obstet Gynecol 105:849, 2005
Braunstein GD: The long gestation of the modern home pregnancy test. Clin Chem 60(1):18, 2014
Bronshtein M, Gover A, Beloosesky R, et al: Characteristics and outcomes of ptyalism gravidarum. Isr Med Assoc J 20(9):573, 2018
Brown MA, Sinosich MJ, Saunders DM, et al: Potassium regulation and progesterone-aldosterone interrelationships in human pregnancy: a prospective study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 155:349, 1986
Brown NT, Turner JM, Kumar S: The intrapartum and perinatal risks of sleep-disordered breathing in pregnancy: a systematic review and metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(2):147, 2018
Cao XY, Jiang XM, Dou ZH, et al: Timing of vulnerability of the brain to iodine deficiency in endemic cretinism. N Engl J Med 331:1739, 1994
CARE Study Group: Maternal caffeine intake during pregnancy and risk of fetal growth restriction: a large prospective observational study. BMJ 337:a2332, 2008
Carter EB, Barbier K, Sarabia R, et al: Group versus traditional prenatal care in low-risk women delivering at term: a retrospective cohort study. J Perinatol 37(7):769, 2017
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Spina bifida and anencephaly before and after folic acid mandate—United States, 1995–1996 and 1999–2000. MMWR 53(17):362, 2004
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Guidelines for the identification and management of lead exposure in pregnant and lactating women. 2010a. Available at: www.cdc.gov/nceh/lead/publications/leadandpregnancy2010.pdf. Accessed October 8, 2019
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Prevention of perinatal group B streptococcal disease: revised guidelines from CDC, 2010b. MMWR 59(10):1, 2010b
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: General recommendations on immunization—recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR 60(2):1, 2011
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Folic acid: birth defects COUNT. 2019a. Available at: www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/birthdefectscount/basics.html. Accessed October 8, 2019
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Weight gain during pregnancy. 2019b. Available at: www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/maternalinfanthealth/pregnancy-weight-gain.htm. Accessed October 8, 2019
Chamberlain G, Broughton-Pipkin F (eds): Clinical Physiology in Obstetrics, 3rd ed. Oxford, Blackwell Science, 1998
Chen PH, Rovi S, Washington J, et al: Randomized comparison of 3 methods to screen for domestic violence in family practice. Ann Fam Med 5(5):430, 2007
Chittimoju SB, Pearce EN: Iodine deficiency and supplementation in pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 62(2):330, 2019
Caldwell KL, Pan Y, Mortensen ME, et al: Iodine status in pregnant women in the National Children's Study and in U.S. women (15-44 years), National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey 2005–2010. Thyroid 23(8):927, 2013
Clapp JF III, Kim H, Burciu B, et al: Beginning regular exercise in early pregnancy: effect on fetoplacental growth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:1484, 2000
Clausson B, Granath F, Ekbom A, et al: Effect of caffeine exposure during pregnancy on birth weight and gestational age. Am J Epidemiol 155:429, 2002
Coker AL, Garcia LS, Williams CM, et al: Universal psychosocial screening and adverse pregnancy outcomes in an academic obstetric clinic. Obstet Gynecol 119(6):1180, 2012
Cole LA: The utility of six over-the-counter (home) pregnancy tests. Clin Chem Lab Med 49(8): 1317, 2011
Coleman T, Chamberlain C, Davey MA, et al: Pharmacological interventions for promoting smoking cessation during pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 12:CD010078, 2015
Cooper S, Taggar J, Lewis S, et al: Effect of nicotine patches in pregnancy on infant and maternal outcomes at 2 years: follow-up from the randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled SNAP trial. Lancet Respir Med 2(9):728, 2014
Daalderop LA, Wieland BV, Tomsin K, et al: Periodontal disease and pregnancy outcomes: overview of systematic reviews. JDR Clin Trans Res 3(1): 10, 2018
Dahlin S, Gunnerbeck A, Wikström AK, et al: Maternal tobacco use and extremely premature birth–a population-based cohort study. BJOG 123(12): 1938, 2016
Daru K, Cooper NA, Khan KS: Systematic review of randomized trials of the effect of iron supplementation on iron stores and oxygen carrying capacity in pregnancy. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 95(3):270, 2016
Davenport MH, Skow RJ, Steinback CD: Maternal responses to aerobic exercise in pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 59(3):541, 2016
Denny CH, Acero CS, Naimi TS, et al: Consumption of alcohol beverages and binge drinking among pregnant women aged 18–44 years—United States, 2015–2017. MMWR 68(16):365, 2019
De-Regil LM, Palacios C, Lombardo LK, et al: Vitamin D supplementation for women during pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD008873, 2016
DeVader SR, Neeley HL, Myles TD, et al: Evaluation of gestational weight gain guidelines for women with normal prepregnancy body mass index. Obstet Gynecol 110:745, 2007
Dominguez JE, Street L, Louis J: Management of obstructive sleep apnea in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 45(2):233, 2018
Drake P, Driscoll AK, Mathews TJ: Cigarette Smoking During Pregnancy: United States, 2016. NCHS Data Brief 305:1, 2018

Duncombe D, Skouteris H, Wertheim EH, et al: Vigorous exercise and birth outcomes in a sample of recreational exercisers: a prospective study across pregnancy. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 46:288, 2006

Ekstrand J, Boreus LO, de Chateau P: No evidence of transfer of fluoride from plasma to breast milk. BMJ (Clin Res Ed) 283:761, 1981

Epler KE, Pierce A, Rappaport VJ: Pica in pregnancy: an unusual presentation. Obstet Gynecol 130(6):1377, 2017

Eriksen JL, Pilliod RA, Caughey AB: Impact of late initiation of prenatal care on pregnancy outcomes among women who use drugs. Abstract No. 732. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214:S384, 2016

Fawcett EJ, Fawcett JM, Mazmanian D: A meta-analysis of the worldwide prevalence of pica during pregnancy and the postpartum period. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 133(3):277, 2016

Fawzi WW, Msamanga GI, Urassa W, et al: Vitamins and perinatal outcomes among HIV-negative women in Tanzania. N Engl J Med 356:14, 2007

Fiore MC, Jaen CR, Baker TB, et al: Treating tobacco use and dependence: 2008 update. 2008. Available at: www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK63952/. Accessed October 15, 2019

Fleming N, O'Driscoll T, Becker G, et al: Adolescent pregnancy guidelines. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 37(8):740, 2015

Foster M, Herulah UN, Prasad A, et al: Zinc status of vegetarians during pregnancy: a systematic review of observational studies and meta-analysis of zinc intake. Nutrients 7(6):4512, 2015

Goldenberg RL, McClure EM: Importance of prenatal care in reducing stillbirth. BJOG 125(2):148, 2018

Gregory KD, Johnson CT, Johnson TR, et al: The content of prenatal care. Women's Health Issues 16:198, 2006

Grenache DG: Variable accuracy of home pregnancy tests: truth in advertising? Clin Chem Lab Med 53(3):339, 2015

Grohskopf LA, Alyanak E, Broder KR, et al: Prevention and control of seasonal influenza with vaccines: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices—United States, 2019–20 influenza season. MMWR 68(3):1, 2019

Gutke A, Betten C, Degerskär K, et al: Treatments for pregnancy-related lumbopelvic pain: a systematic review of physiotherapy modalities. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 94(11):1156, 2015

Haragan AF, Hulsey TC, Hawk AF, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of fundal height and handheld ultrasound-measured abdominal circumference to screen for fetal growth abnormalities. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(6):820.e1, 2015

Herbert WN, Bruninghaus HM, Barefoot AB, et al: Clinical aspects of fetal heart auscultation. Obstet Gynecol 69:574, 1987

Higginbottom MC, Sweetman L, Nyhan WL: A syndrome of methylmalonic aciduria, homocystinuria, megaloblastic anemia and neurologic abnormalities in a vitamin B_{12}-deficient breast-fed infant of a strict vegetarian. N Engl J Med 299:317, 1978

Higgins JR, Walshe JJ, Conroy RM, et al: The relation between maternal work, ambulatory blood pressure, and pregnancy hypertension. J Epidemiol Community Health 56:389, 2002

Hollier LM, Hill J, Sheffield JS, et al: State laws regarding prenatal syphilis screening in the United States. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:1178, 2003

Horowitz HS, Heifetz SB: Effects of prenatal exposure to fluoridation on dental caries. Public Health Rep 82:297, 1967

Hytten FE, Chamberlain G (eds): Clinical Physiology in Obstetrics, 2nd ed. Oxford, Blackwell, 1991

Hytten FE, Leitch I: The Physiology of Human Pregnancy, 2nd ed. Oxford, Blackwell, 1971

Ickovics JR, Earnshaw V, Lewis JB, et al: Cluster randomized controlled trial of group prenatal care: perinatal outcomes among adolescents in New York City health centers. Am J Public Health 106(2):359, 2016

Institute of Medicine: Dietary Reference Intakes: The Essential Guide to Nutrient Requirements. Washington, The National Academies Press, 2006

Institute of Medicine: DRI Dietary Reference Intakes for Calcium and Vitamin D. Washington, The National Academies Press, 2011

Institute of Medicine and National Research Council: Weight Gain During Pregnancy: Reexamining the Guidelines. Washington, The National Academic Press, 2009

Jebeile H, Mijatovic J, Louie JC, et al: A systematic review and meta-analysis of energy intake and weight gain in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(4):465, 2015

Jiang M, Gao H, Vinyes-Pares G, et al: Association between breastfeeding duration and postpartum weight retention of lactating mothers: A meta-analysis of cohort studies. Clin Nutr 37(4):1224, 2018

Johnson S, Cushion M, Bond S, et al: Comparison of analytical sensitivity and women's interpretation of home pregnancy tests. Clin Chem Lab Med 53(3):391, 2015

Kapaya M, D'Angelo DV, Tong VT, et al: Use of electronic vapor products before, during, and after pregnancy among women with a recent live birth–Oklahoma and Texas, 2015. MMWR 68(8):189, 2019

Kim DK, Bridges CB, Harriman KH, et al: Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices recommended immunization schedule for adults aged 19 years or older—United States, 2016. MMWR 65(4):88, 2016

Kim DK, Hunter P: Advisory committee on immunization practices recommended immunization schedule for adults aged 19 years or older—United States, 2019. MMWR 68(5):115, 2019

Kiss H, Widham A, Geusau A, et al: Universal antenatal screening for syphilis: is it still justified economically? A 10-year retrospective analysis. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 112:24, 2004

Kominiarek MA, Saade G, Mele L, et al: Association between gestational weight gain and perinatal outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 132(4):875, 2018

Lacroix R, Eason E, Melzack R: Nausea and vomiting during pregnancy: a prospective study of its frequency, intensity, and patterns of change. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:931, 2000

Leveno KJ, McIntire DD, Bloom SL, et al: Decreased preterm births in an inner-city public hospital. Obstet Gynecol 113(3):578, 2009

Liddle SD, Pennick V: Interventions for preventing and treating low-back and pelvic pain during pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 9:CD001139, 2015

Litonjua AA, Carey VJ, Laranjo N, et al: Effect of prenatal supplementation with vitamin D on asthma or recurrent wheezing in offspring by age 3 years: the VDAART randomized clinical trial. JAMA 315(4):362, 2016

Loudon I: Death in Childbirth. New York, Oxford University Press, 1992

Luke S, Kirby RS: Timing of maternal tobacco exposure, hypertension, and risk of singleton small-for-gestational age infants. Am J Perinatol 35(3):215, 2018

Madhi SA, Cutland CL, Jose L, et al: Safety and immunogenicity of an investigational maternal trivalent group B streptococcus vaccine in healthy women and their infants: a randomised phase 1b/2 trial. Lancet Infect Dis 16(8):923, 2016

Magann EF, Evans SF, Weitz B, et al: Antepartum, intrapartum, and neonatal significance of exercise on healthy low-risk pregnant working women. Obstet Gynecol 99:466, 2002

Maheshwari UR, King JC, Leybin L, et al: Fluoride balances during early and late pregnancy. J Occup Med 25:587, 1983

Margulies R, Miller L: Fruit size as a model for teaching first trimester uterine sizing in bimanual examination. Obstet Gynecol 98(2):341, 2001

May PA, Chambers CD, Kalberg WO, et al: Prevalence of fetal alcohol spectrum disorders in 4 US communities. JAMA 319(5):474, 2018

McCash SI, Goldfrank DJ, Pessin MS, et al: Reducing false-positive pregnancy test results in patients with cancer. Obstet Gynecol 130(4):825, 2017

McCauley ME, van den Broek N, Dou L, et al: Vitamin A supplementation during pregnancy for maternal and newborn outcomes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD008666, 2015

Metz TD, Stickrath EH: Marijuana use in pregnancy and lactation: a review of the evidence. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(6):761, 2015

Miller E, McCaw B: Intimate partner violence. N Engl J Med 380(9):850, 2019

Molloy AM: Should vitamin B_{12} status be considered in assessing risk of neural tube defects. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1414(1):109, 2018

Munoz FM, Jamieson DJ: Maternal immunization. Obstet Gynecol 133(4):739, 2019

Murray N, Homer CS, Davis GK, et al: The clinical utility of routine urinalysis in pregnancy: a prospective study. Med J Aust 177:477, 2002

Nanovskaya TN, Oncken C, Fokina VM, et al: Bupropion sustained release for pregnant smokers: a randomized, placebo-controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(4):2017

Norén L, Östgaard S, Johansson G, et al: Lumbar back and posterior pelvic pain during pregnancy: a 3-year follow-up. Eur Spine J 11:267, 2002

Nossier SA, Naeim NE, El-Sayed NA, et al: The effect of zinc supplementation on pregnancy outcomes: a double-blind, randomized controlled trial, Egypt. Br J Nutr 114(2):274, 2015

O'Keeffe DF, Abuhamad A: Obstetric ultrasound utilization in the United States: data from various health plans. Semin Perinatol 37(5):292, 2013

Olson AL, Boardman MB, Johnson DJ: Smoke-free moms: financial rewards for smoking cessation by low-income rural pregnant women. Am J Prev Med 56(6):852, 2019

Ornaghi S, Algeri P, Todyrenchuk L, et al: Impact of excessive pre-pregnancy body mass index and abnormal gestational weight gain on pregnancy outcomes in women with chronic hypertension. Pregnancy Hypertens 12:90, 2018

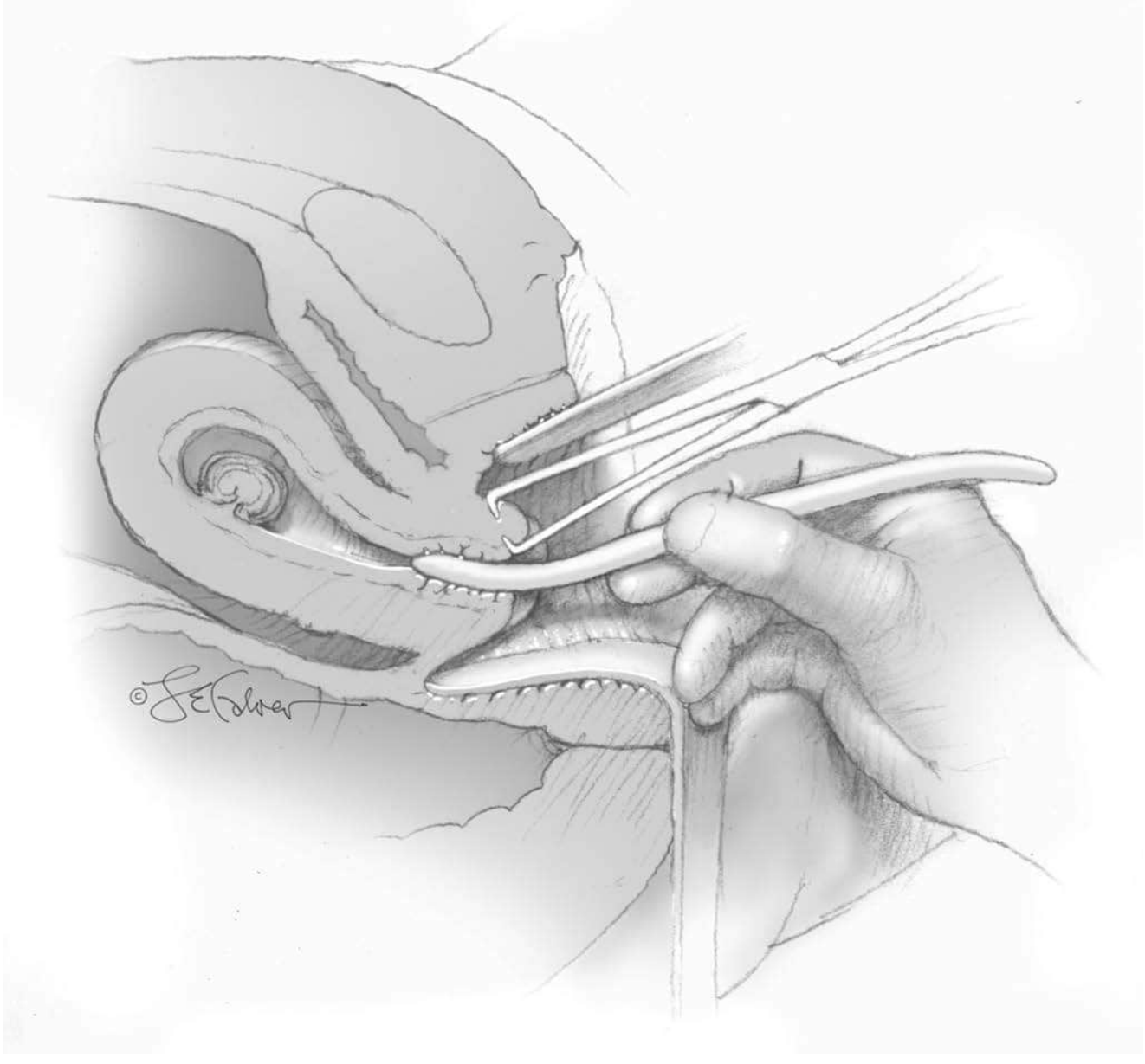
Osterman MJ, Martin JA: Timing and adequacy of prenatal care in the United States, 2016. Natl Vital Stat Rep 67(3):1, 2018

Ota E, Mori R, Middleton P, et al: Zinc supplementation for improving pregnancy and infant outcome. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD000230, 2015
Partridge S, Balayla J, Holcroft CA, et al: Inadequate prenatal care utilization and risks of infant mortality and poor birth outcome: a retrospective analysis of 28,729,765 U.S. deliveries over 8 years. Am J Perinatol 29(10):787, 2012
Patel A, Lee SY, Stagnaro-Green A, et al: Iodine content of the best-selling United States adult and prenatal multivitamin preparations. Thyroid 29(1): 124, 2019
Patel MV, Nuthalapaty FS, Ramsey PS, et al: Pica: a neglected risk factor for preterm birth. Obstet Gynecol 103:68S, 2004
Patnode CD, Henderson JT, Thompson JH, et al: Behavioral counseling and pharmacotherapy interventions for tobacco cessation in adults, including pregnant women: a review of reviews for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Ann Intern Med 163(8):608, 2015
Phupong V, Hanprasertpong T: Interventions for heartburn in pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 9:CD011379, 2015
Pitkin RM: Calcium metabolism in pregnancy and the perinatal period: a review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 151:99, 1985
Poskus T, Buzinskiene D, Drasutiene G, et al: Haemorrhoids and anal fissures during pregnancy and after childbirth: a prospective cohort study. BJOG 121(13):1666, 2014
Power ML, Wilson EK, Hogan SO, et al: Patterns of preconception, prenatal and postnatal care for diabetic women by obstetrician-gynecologists. J Reprod Med 58(1-2):7, 2013
Pratilas GC, Dinas K: Severe vulvovaginal varicosities in pregnancy. N Engl J Med 378(22):2123, 2018
Pritchard JA, Scott DE: Iron demands during pregnancy. In Hallberg L, Harwerth HG, Vannotti A (eds): Iron Deficiency: Pathogenesis, Clinical Aspects, Therapy. New York, Academic Press, 1970
Read JS, Klebanoff MA: Sexual intercourse during pregnancy and preterm delivery: effects of vaginal microorganisms. Am J Obstet Gynecol 168:514, 1993
Reid RL, Lorenzo M: SCUBA diving in pregnancy. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 40(11):1490, 2018
Reiss HE: History, John William Ballantyne 1861–1923. J Obstet Gynecol 20(4):343, 2000
Rumbold A, Ota E, Nagata C, et al: Vitamin C supplementation in pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 9:CD004072, 2015
Sa Roriz Fonteles C, Zero DT, Moss ME, et al: Fluoride concentrations in enamel and dentin of primary teeth after pre- and postnatal fluoride exposure. Caries Res 39:505, 2005
Salam RA, Zuberi NF, Bhutta ZA: Pyridoxine (vitamin B_6) supplementation during pregnancy or labour for maternal and neonatal outcomes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD000179, 2015
Sarman I: Review shows that early foetal alcohol exposure may cause adverse effects even when the mother consumes low levels. Acta Paediatr 107(6):938, 2018
Sayle AE, Savitz DA, Thorp JM Jr, et al: Sexual activity during late pregnancy and risk of preterm delivery. Obstet Gynecol 97:283, 2001
Schauberger CW, Rooney BL, Brimer LM: Factors that influence weight loss in the puerperium. Obstet Gynecol 79:424, 1992
Scott DE, Pritchard JA, Satin AS, et al: Iron deficiency during pregnancy. In Hallberg L, Harwerth HG, Vannotti A (eds): Iron Deficiency: Pathogenesis, Clinical Aspects, Therapy. New York, Academic Press, 1970
Screnci M, Murgi E, Valle V, et al: Sibling cord blood donor program for hematopoietic cell transplantation: the 20-year experience in the Rome Cord Blood Bank. Blood Cells Mol Dis 57:71, 2016
Sibai BM, Villar MA, Bray E: Magnesium supplementation during pregnancy: a double-blind randomized controlled clinical trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 161:115, 1989
Siu AL, U.S. Preventive Services Task Force: Behavioral and pharmacotherapy interventions for tobacco smoking cessation in adults, including pregnant women: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement. Ann Intern Med 163(8):622, 2015
Smith MW, Marcus PS, Wurtz LD: Orthopedic issues in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 63:103, 2008
Soneji S, Beltrán-Sánchez H: Association of maternal cigarette smoking and smoking cessation with preterm birth. JAMA Netw Open 2(4):e192514, 2019
Sperling JD, Maggio L, Has P, et al: Prenatal care adherence and neonatal intensive care unit admission or stillbirth among women with gestational and preexisting diabetes mellitus. Am J Perinatol 35(2):103, 2018a
Sperling RS, Riley LE, Immunization and Emerging Infections Expert Work Group: Influenza vaccination, pregnancy safety, and risk of early pregnancy loss. Obstet Gynecol 131(5):799, 2018b
Spierings EL, Sabin TD: De novo headache during pregnancy and puerperium. Neurologist 21(1):1, 2016
Spindel ER, McEvoy CT: The role of nicotine in the effects of maternal smoking during pregnancy on lung development and childhood respiratory disease: implications for dangers of E-cigarettes. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 193(5):486, 2016
Staruch M, Kucharcyzk A, Zawadzka K, et al: Sexual activity during pregnancy. Neuro Endocrinol Lett 37(1):53, 2016
Stephens TV, Payne M, Ball Ro, et al: Protein requirements of healthy pregnancy women during early and late gestation are higher than current recommendations. J Nutr 145(1):73, 2015
Stewart RD, Nelson DB, Adhikari EH, et al: The obstetrical and neonatal impact of maternal opioid detoxification in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209:267.e1, 2013
Szymanski LM, Kogutt BK: Uterine artery Doppler velocimetry during individually prescribed exercise in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 132(4):1026, 2018
Tan PC, Yow CM, Omar SZ: Effect of coital activity on onset of labor in women scheduled for labor induction. Obstet Gynecol 110:820, 2007
Taylor CM, Golding J, Emond AM: Adverse effects of maternal lead levels on birth outcomes in the ALSPAC study: a prospective birth cohort study. BJOG 122(3):322, 2015
Tong VT, Dietz PM, Morrow B, et al: Trends in smoking before, during, and after pregnancy—pregnancy risk assessment monitoring system, United States, 40 sites, 2000–2010. MMWR 62(6):1, 2013
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency: 2019 EPA-FDA advice about eating fish. 2019. Available at: www.fda.gov/food/consumers/advice-about-eating-fish. Accessed October 8, 2019
Villar J, Báaqeel H, Piaggio G, et al: WHO antenatal care randomised trial for the evaluation of a new model of routine antenatal care. Lancet 357:1551, 2001
West KP: Vitamin A deficiency disorders in children and women. Food Nutr Bull 24:S78, 2003
Whittington JR, Simmons PM, Phillips AM, et al: The use of electronic cigarettes in pregnancy: a review of the literature. Obstet Gynecol Surv 73(9): 544, 2018
Widen EM, Whyatt RM, Hoepner LA, et al: Excessive gestational weight gain is associated with long-term body fat and weight retention at 7 y postpartum in African American and Dominican mothers with underweight, normal, and overweight prepregnancy BMI. Am J Clin Nutr 102(6):1460, 2015
Wilson DL, Barnes M, Ellett L, et al: Decreased sleep efficiency, increased wake after sleep onset and increased cortical arousals in late pregnancy. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 51(1):38, 2011

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 5

FIRST- AND SECOND-TRIMESTER PREGNANCY LOSS



CHAPTER 11

First- and Second-Trimester Pregnancy Loss

Miscarriage is a common event in pregnancy. Most early losses stem from genetic abnormalities, and thus the opportunity for prevention is small. Women with later miscarriage or with recurrent miscarriage more likely have a chronic etiology that may be modified. In contrast to these spontaneous losses, pregnancy termination may be elected. For both induced abortion and miscarriage, management options include surgery or medication, and providers should have an understanding of these methods and their potential complications.

NOMENCLATURE

Abortion is defined as the spontaneous or induced termination of pregnancy before fetal viability. Many prefer *miscarriage* for spontaneous loss. *Induced abortion* describes termination with surgery or medication of a live fetus that has not reached viability.

Definitions of an abortus vary among organizations. The National Center for Health Statistics and the World Health Organization define *abortion* as loss or termination of a pregnancy with a fetus aged younger than 20 weeks' gestation or weighing <500 g. These criteria, however, are somewhat contradictory because the mean birthweight of a 20-week fetus approximates 330 g, whereas 500 g is the mean for 22 weeks (Hadlock, 1991). Further confusion may derive from criteria that are set by state laws and define abortion even more widely.

Incongruity also exists for the term *early pregnancy loss* itself. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) defines this as a nonviable, intrauterine pregnancy (IUP) within the first $12^{6/7}$ weeks of gestation that consists of either an empty gestational sac or one containing an embryo or fetus without fetal heart activity. *Recurrent pregnancy loss* is variably defined but is meant to identify women with repetitive miscarriage (p. 203).

Other definitions help distinguish intrauterine from ectopic gestations. The term *pregnancy of unknown location (PUL)* describes a pregnancy identified by human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) level testing but without a confirmed sonographic location. In this context, five categories are proposed for early pregnancies: definite ectopic pregnancy, probable ectopic pregnancy, PUL, probable IUP, and definite IUP (Barnhart, 2011). Diagnostic and management options for ectopic gestation are described in Chapter 12.

Last, spontaneous abortion includes subcategories of threatened, incomplete, complete, missed, and inevitable abortions. These are discussed in the next sections. Septic abortion is used to further classify any of these that are complicated by infection.

FIRST-TRIMESTER SPONTANEOUS ABORTION

Pathogenesis

More than 80 percent of spontaneous abortions occur within the first 12 weeks of gestation. With first-trimester losses, demise

of the embryo or fetus nearly always precedes spontaneous expulsion. Death is usually accompanied by hemorrhage into the decidua basalis. This is followed by adjacent tissue necrosis that stimulates uterine contractions and expulsion. An intact gestational sac is usually filled with fluid. *Anembryonic miscarriage* or *preembryonic loss* describes the group with no identifiable embryo. The term *blighted ovum* is less preferred. An *embryonic miscarriage or embryonic loss* displays an embryo without cardiac activity during ultrasound evaluation (Kolte, 2015; Pinar, 2018).

In second-trimester losses, the fetus usually does not die before expulsion. Thus, other sources for abortion are sought and described on page 213.

Incidence

Rates for miscarriage vary according to the study population. In pregnancies aged 5 to 20 weeks' gestation, the incidence ranges from 10 to 20 percent and is higher in earlier weeks (Ammon Avalos, 2012). To evaluate rates starting at conception, researchers have tested daily urinary samples for β-hCG in women trying to conceive and found that approximately 20 percent of pregnancies failed very early (Wang, 2003). These *biochemical pregnancy losses* are clinically silent and are identified only by dropping β-hCG levels (Kolte, 2015).

Certain factors influence the clinically apparent miscarriage rate and are described next. It is unknown if these same factors also affect biochemical pregnancy loss.

Fetal Factors

Of all miscarriages, approximately half are *euploid abortions,* that is, carrying a normal chromosomal complement. The other half of all miscarriages has a chromosomal abnormality. This percentage appears to persist even from evaluations with newer cytogenetic techniques (Sahoo, 2017). However, outside of research, routine use of chromosomal microarray testing of first-trimester fetal tissues is not endorsed by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020d). The American Society for Reproductive Medicine (2012) recognize its value only if cytogenetic analysis alters future care of a patient.

Both abortion and chromosomal anomaly rates decline with advancing gestational age (Eiben, 1990). Of chromosomally abnormal embryos, 75 percent aborts by 8 weeks' gestation. The rate of abortion with euploid fetuses peaks at approximately 13 weeks (Kajii, 1980).

Of chromosomal abnormalities, 95 percent are caused by maternal gametogenesis errors, and 5 percent by paternal errors (Jacobs, 1980). Thus, the aneuploid abortion incidence rises dramatically after maternal age exceeds 35 years (Eiben, 1990). Indeed, maternal age is a primary factor underlying the spontaneous loss of aneuploid fetuses (Nybo Andersen, 2000). To a lesser degree, increasing paternal age is also associated with a greater abortion risk (Nguyen, 2019). Not yet well studied, chromosomal abnormalities in spermatozoa likely play a role (Pohl, 2021).

Most common abnormalities are trisomy, found in 50 to 60 percent; monosomy X, in 9 to 13 percent; and triploidy, in 11 to 12 percent (Jenderny, 2014; Sahoo, 2017). *Trisomies* typically result from isolated nondisjunction, and rates rise with maternal age (Boué, 1975). Trisomies of chromosomes 13, 16, 18, 21, and 22 are most common. Less often, a trisomy forms from a balanced structural chromosomal rearrangements. These may originate from either parent and are found in 2 to 4 percent of couples with recurrent pregnancy loss (p. 204).

Monosomy X (45,X) is the single most frequent specific chromosomal abnormality. This is *Turner syndrome*, which usually results in miscarriage, but liveborn females are described in Chapter 3 (p. 36). Conversely, *autosomal monosomy* is rare and incompatible with life.

Triploidy is an additional haploid set of chromosomes, and cells thus contain a total of 69 chromosomes. The extra haploid set can be either maternally or paternally derived. Maternally derived *digynic triploidy* typically results from a meiosis error and fertilization of a diploid ovum by a normal haploid sperm. Paternally derived *diandric triploidy* usually forms from the fertilization of a normal haploid ovum by two haploid spermatozoa and leads to partial molar pregnancy (Chap. 13, p. 237). Triploid fetuses frequently spontaneously abort early, and the few carried longer are all grossly deformed.

Maternal Factors

Medical Disorders

In chromosomally normal pregnancy losses, maternal contributions can play a role. For example, a prominent miscarriage risk is associated with poorly controlled diabetes mellitus, obesity, thyroid disease, and systemic lupus erythematosus. In these, inflammatory mediators may be an underlying theme to pregnancy loss (Kalagiri, 2016; Sjaarda, 2017). In chapters on these disorders, the miscarriage rate and attempts to lower it are discussed. In contrast, thrombophilias are no longer linked to miscarriage (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b).

For women undergoing cancer treatment, direct therapeutic radiation can cause miscarriage. Suggested safe parameters are found in Chapter 49 (p. 872). Similarly, the effects of chemotherapy on miscarriage rates are not well defined. Particularly worrisome are women with an ongoing pregnancy after early exposure to the teratogen methotrexate, described in Chapter 8 (p. 152). Cancer survivors previously treated with abdominopelvic radiotherapy and now subsequently pregnant may carry a greater risk for miscarriage (Chap. 66, p. 1164).

Surgical Procedures

The miscarriage risk associated with surgery is not well studied. But, as discussed in Chapter 49 (p. 867), *uncomplicated* surgical procedures performed during early pregnancy are unlikely to raise this risk (Mazze, 1989).

If indicated, ovarian tumors can generally be resected without inciting miscarriage. An exception involves early removal of the corpus luteum or the entire ovary in which it resides. If performed before 10 weeks' gestation, supplemental progesterone should be given and is described in Chapter 66 (p. 1170).

Trauma seldom causes first-trimester miscarriage, and although Parkland Hospital is a busy trauma center, this is an infrequent association. Major trauma—especially abdominal—can cause fetal loss but is more likely as pregnancy advances (Chap. 50, p. 891).

Nutrition

Sole deficiency of one nutrient or moderate deficiency of all does not appear to raise miscarriage risks. Even in extreme cases—for example, hyperemesis gravidarum—abortion is rare. Dietary quality may play a small role, and some data suggest miscarriage risk may decline in women who eat a diet rich in fruits, vegetables, whole grains, and fish (Gaskins, 2015). Unlike obesity, underweight is not associated with a greater miscarriage risk (Balsells, 2016).

With caffeine, reports link heavy intake of approximately five cups of coffee per day—about 500 mg of caffeine—with a slightly greater abortion risk (Cnattingius, 2000; Klebanoff, 1999). Values vary depending on brewing style, but an 8-ounce cup of coffee contains 80 to 100 mg of caffeine. Black or green tea has half this dose (Food and Drug Administration, 2018). Currently, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020e) concludes consumption of <200 mg/d likely is not a major miscarriage risk and that any associated risk with higher intake is unsettled. Metaanalyses support an increasing dose-related risk (Chen, 2016; Li, 2015).

Behavioral Factors

Approximately 7 percent of pregnant women acknowledge cigarette smoking (Kondracki, 2019). One metaanalysis found a slight dose-related relationship between current smoking and early pregnancy loss (Pineles, 2014). The serious later risks of persistent smoking on pregnancy outcomes are discussed in Chapter 8 (p. 156).

Alcohol consumption carries miscarriage risk mainly in those with chronic or heavy use (Feodor Nilsson, 2014). The potent teratogenic effects in these instances are also discussed in Chapter 8 (p. 149).

Environmental Factors

Despite the many infections acquired in pregnancy, these uncommonly cause early miscarriage. The important maternofetal consequences of specific infections in later pregnancy are discussed in Chapters 67 and 68.

Environmental toxins suggested to have a possible link to miscarriage include bisphenol A, phthalates, polychlorinated biphenyls, and dichlorodiphenyltrichloroethane (DDT) (Krieg, 2016). Even fewer studies implicate occupational exposures. Data suggest a slight increased miscarriage risk in health-care workers exposed to radiation or antineoplastic drugs (Anderson, 2020). The National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health publishes guidelines on potentially hazardous drugs (Connor, 2016). Evidence implicating occupational anesthetic gases in miscarriage is not robust (Oliveira, 2021). Still, gas scavenging systems and workplace exposure limits are recommended (McGlothin, 2014).

■ Spontaneous Abortion Clinical Classification

Threatened Abortion

This is defined as bleeding through a closed cervical os in the first 20 weeks of pregnancy and with a live embryo or fetus. It may portend abortion, or it may be associated with conceptus implantation. Other bleeding sources to exclude are ectopic pregnancy, cervical infection, and dysplastic or neoplastic cervical lesions.

Almost one fourth of women develop bleeding during early gestation that is attributed to threatened abortion (Everett, 1997). Bleeding or spotting may persist for days or weeks. It may be accompanied by suprapubic discomfort, mild cramps, pelvic pressure, or persistent low backache. Of symptoms, bleeding is by far the most predictive factor for subsequent pregnancy loss.

Vaginal bleeding or abdominal pain in early pregnancy should prompt hematocrit and blood type assessment. One primary goal is to exclude ectopic pregnancy, and strategic use of β-hCG levels and transvaginal sonography (TVS) is outlined in Chapter 12 (p. 222). A second goal is to determine IUP viability. With an IUP, the gestational sac—an anechoic fluid collection that represents the exocoelomic cavity—may be seen by 4.5 weeks (Fig. 10-2, p. 177). At this time, β-hCG levels generally measure 1500 to 2000 mIU/mL (Barnhart, 1994; Timor-Tritsch, 1988). Connolly and colleagues (2013), however, noted that a threshold as high as 3500 mIU/mL may be needed to identify the gestational sac in some cases that ultimately yield a viable singleton IUP.

One caveat during TVS is that a gestational sac may appear similar to a *pseudogestational sac*, which is an anechoic intrauterine fluid collection (Fig. 12-3, p. 223). This pseudosac may be blood derived from a bleeding ectopic pregnancy and is easier to exclude once a yolk sac is seen. Typically, the yolk sac is visible by 5.5 weeks and with a mean gestational-sac diameter of 10 mm. Thus, the diagnosis of an IUP should be made cautiously if the yolk sac is not yet seen (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020h). Fetal cardiac activity can typically be detected at 6 to 6.5 weeks.

A subchorionic hematoma may also be seen sonographically with threatened miscarriage (Fig. 11-1). In general, this collection does not portend a greater miscarriage risk (Naert, 2019).

Once threatened abortion is diagnosed, observation is the norm. Acetaminophen-based analgesia will help relieve

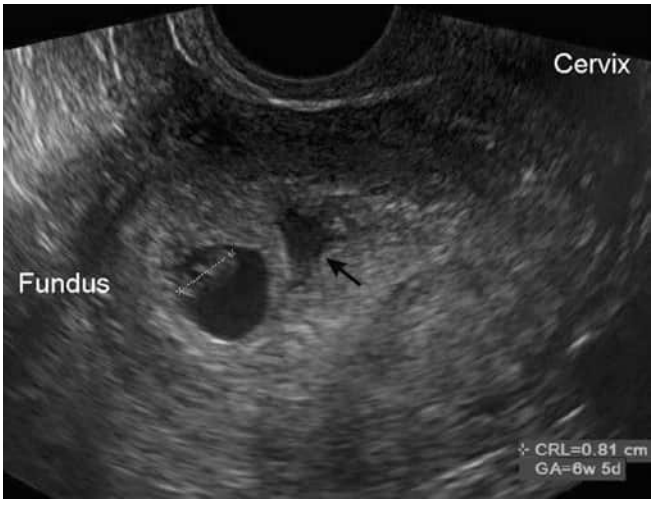


FIGURE 11-1 In this transvaginal sonogram sagittal view of the uterus, a subchorionic hematoma is seen as a very hypoechoic collection (*arrow*). It lies adjacent to the round anechoic gestational sac that contains a nearly 7-week embryo (*calipers*). (Reproduced with permission from Jason McWhirt, ARDMS.)

cramping discomfort. The randomized Progesterone in Spontaneous Miscarriage (PRISM) trial found no advantage to progesterone supplementation to lower miscarriage rates in women with first-trimester bleeding (Coomarasamy, 2019). Bed rest does not improve outcomes and may cause harms such a deep-vein thrombosis (McCall, 2013). We do counsel against intercourse until bleeding subsides. In unusual cases, bleeding with threatened abortion can lead acute severe anemia or hypovolemia. Pregnancy evacuation is generally indicated. Less often, transfusion and further observation is elected.

Even if miscarriage does not follow threatened abortion, later rates of preterm birth and placental abruption are slightly increased (Saraswat, 2010). Weiss and coworkers (2004) noted greater risks for later adverse outcomes if early bleeding was heavy rather than light. Despite these associations, we typically do not add sonography or other surveillance later in pregnancy solely for a first-trimester diagnosis of threatened abortion.

Incomplete Abortion

During miscarriage, the cervix opens and placental separation causes bleeding. Before 10 weeks' gestation, the fetus and the placenta are frequently expelled together, but later, they often deliver separately. Thus, tissue may remain entirely within the uterus or partially extrude through the cervix. Products lying loosely within the cervical canal can be easily extracted or teased out with ring forceps. For uterine infection or for hemodynamically unstable women with heavy bleeding, prompt surgical evacuation is performed.

For less urgent cases, three management options are curettage, expectant management, or misoprostol (Cytotec), which is prostaglandin E_1 (PGE_1) (Kim, 2017). With all three, treatment complications such as infection and need for transfusion are infrequent. However, misoprostol and expectant care can be associated with unpredictable bleeding. Thus, some women will still require unscheduled curettage, which studies have used as a failure endpoint. Expectant management of spontaneous incomplete abortion has failure rates that approximate 25 percent in randomized trials (Nielsen, 1999; Trinder, 2006). Medication therapy carries failure rates of 5 to 30 percent (Shochet, 2012; Trinder, 2006). Many of the studies assessing treatment have used an 800-µg vaginal, a 400-µg sublingual, or a 600-µg oral misoprostol dose. Last, curettage usually results in a quick resolution that is 95- to 100-percent successful. However, it is invasive, carries surgical risks, and is not necessary for all women (p. 211).

Complete Abortion

At times, the entire pregnancy is expelled. With completion, bleeding ebbs, and the internal cervical os subsequently closes over the next hour or so. Patients are encouraged to bring in passed tissue, and a gestation should be documented within blood clots or within a decidual cast (Fig. 11-2). The latter is the thickened endometrium, in the shape of the uterine cavity, that may slough with miscarriage.

If a gestational sac is not identified within the expelled tissue, TVS helps differentiate a complete abortion from a threatened abortion or ectopic pregnancy. Findings of complete abortion include a thin endometrium without a gestational sac. However, this does not guarantee a recent IUP. One study evaluated

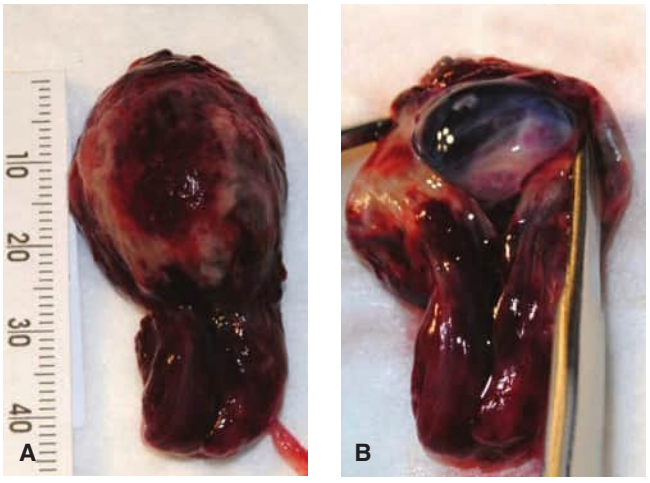


FIGURE 11-2 A. Decidual cast from a complete abortion. **B.** Opening the cast reveals a clear translucent gestational sac, which confirms the diagnosis.

152 women with heavy bleeding and an empty uterus with endometrial thickness <15 mm. Six percent were subsequently found to have an ectopic pregnancy (Condous, 2005). Thus, a complete abortion cannot be surely diagnosed unless: (1) true products of conception are seen grossly or (2) sonography documents first an IUP and then later an empty cavity. In unclear settings, serial serum β-hCG levels aid clarification. With complete abortion, these levels drop quickly (Table 11-1).

Missed Abortion

This describes dead products of conception that have been retained for days or weeks within a uterus with a closed cervical

TABLE 11-1. Percentage Decline of Initial Serum β-hCG Levels Following Complete Spontaneous Abortion

Initial hCG (mIU/mL)	Percentage Decline[a] by day 2 Expected % (Minimum %)	by day 4 Expected % (Minimum %)	by day 7 Expected % (Minimum %)
50	68 (12)	78 (26)	88 (34)
100	68 (16)	80 (35)	90 (47)
300	70 (22)	83 (45)	93 (62)
500	71 (24)	84 (50)	94 (68)
1000	72 (28)	86 (55)	95 (74)
2000	74 (31)	88 (60)	96 (79)
3000	74 (33)	88 (63)	96 (81)
4000	75 (34)	89 (64)	97 (83)
5000	75 (35)	89 (66)	97 (84)

[a]The percentage decline is given as the expected decline. The minimum expected decline in parentheses is the 95th percentile value. Declines less than this minimum may reflect retained either intrauterine or extrauterine trophoblast.
hCG = human chorionic gonadotropin.
Data from Barnhart, 2004; Chung, 2006.

TABLE 11-2. Guidelines for Early Pregnancy Loss Diagnosis

Sonographic Findings
CRL ≥7 mm and no heartbeat
MSD ≥25 mm and no embryo
An initial US scan shows a gestational sac with yolk sac, and after ≥11 days no embryo with a heartbeat is seen
An initial US scan shows a gestational sac without a yolk sac, and after ≥2 weeks no embryo with a heartbeat is seen
Modalities
Transvaginal preferable to transabdominal US
M-mode imaging used to document and measure heartbeat
Pulsed Doppler US methods generally not used to evaluate a normal early embryo

CRL = crown-rump length; MSD = mean sac diameter; US = ultrasound.
From American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b; Brown, 2018; Doubilet, 2013.

os. Diagnosis is imperative prior to intervention and avoids interruption of a potentially live IUP. Again, TVS and β-hCG levels are primary tools. With the latter, levels that plateau or drop are typical.

With TVS, a 1- to 2-mm embryo adjacent to the yolk sac can be seen at 5 to 6 weeks' gestation. As listed in Table 11-2, absence of an embryo in a sac with a mean sac diameter (MSD) ≥25 mm signifies pregnancy loss. The MSD is calculated by summing the length, width, and height of a gestational sac and dividing the sum by three. Fetal cardiac activity can typically be detected at 6 to 6.5 weeks, with a crown-rump length (CRL) of 1 to 5 mm, and an MSD of 13 to 18 mm (Goldstein, 1992; Levi, 1990). A CRL threshold ≥7 mm plus absent cardiac activity also is used to diagnose nonviability (Doubilet, 2013). For cases in which a gestational sac has no embryo or yolk sac, additional time and repeat TVS are recommended. M-mode should be used to document cardiac activity and measure the rate (Brown, 2018). Pulsed Doppler is not used routinely and is reserved for specific diagnostic purposes because of theoretical temperature elevation in exposed fetal tissues (Chap. 14, p. 247).

Less robust sonographic markers may portend pregnancy failure. A yolk sac diameter >7 mm in pregnancies <10 weeks' gestation is one (Rodgers, 2015). The fetal heart rate in the first trimester rises from 110 to 130 beats per minute (bpm) at 6 weeks' gestation to 160 to 170 bpm at 8 weeks (Achiron, 1991; Rauch, 2009). A slower heart rate is unfavorable, especially one <85 bpm (DeVilbiss, 2020). Even with cardiac activity, fetuses with a small MSD may presage embryonic loss. A difference <5 mm between the MSD and CRL values raises concern (Bromley, 1991). Last, an irregular gestational sac contour may portend loss (Nyberg, 1986).

With embryonic or fetal death confirmed, expectant observation, surgery, or medication is an option. Nonsurgical options balance less invasiveness against heavier associated bleeding, longer completion times, and lower success rates. Of options, expectant care underperforms medication or surgery, and failure rates range from 15 to 50 percent (Luise, 2002; Trinder, 2006; Zhang, 2005). Also, weeks may pass between pregnancy failure diagnosis and actual spontaneous miscarriage.

As a medication option, misoprostol can be given, and a single 800-μg dose vaginally is a common standard. It may be repeated once in 1 to 2 days, and one large trial reported that 22 percent of women required a second dose (Zhang, 2005). Overall, failure rates range from 15 to 40 percent (Petersen, 2013; Trinder, 2006). Success rates are improved by a 200-mg oral dose of mifepristone (Mifeprex) given 24 hours prior to misoprostol (Schreiber, 2018). In the United States, access to this antiprogestin is limited by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to providers participating in the manufacturer's Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy (REMS) (Danco Laboratories, 2021). Contraindications mirror those listed in the section describing induced abortion (p. 212).

Inevitable Abortion of a Previable Fetus

Either rupture of placental membranes or marked ballooning of membranes into the vagina may lead to inevitable abortion. The latter is discussed in the cervical insufficiency section (p. 205).

Preterm prelabor rupture of membranes (PPROM) at a *previable* gestational age complicates 0.5 percent of pregnancies (Hunter, 2012). Instead, *periviable birth* is defined as delivery between $20^{0/7}$ and $25^{6/7}$ weeks and is discussed in Chapter 45 (p. 785). Clinically with PPROM, abundant vaginal fluid that pools during sterile speculum examination confirms the diagnosis. Patient coughing or Valsalva maneuver may accentuate this. Other diagnostic steps can include pH testing, microscopic examination, and sonographic assessment of amnionic fluid volume, and these are outlined in Chapter 22 (p. 426).

Rupture may be spontaneous, and risks are prior PPROM, prior second-trimester delivery, and tobacco use (Kilpatrick, 2006). Iatrogenic fluid leakage can follow amniocentesis or fetal surgery. In some second-trimester cases, fluid may have collected previously between the amnion and chorion and reflects only chorion leakage.

Spontaneous rupture in the first trimester is nearly always followed by either uterine contractions or infection, and termination is typical. With second-trimester spontaneous PPROM at a previable age, 40 to 50 percent of women will deliver within the first week, and 70 to 80 percent will do so after 2 to 5 weeks (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020f). Average latency is 2 weeks (Hunter, 2012; Kibel, 2016). Significant maternal complications attend previable PPROM and include uterine infection, sepsis, placental abruption, postpartum hemorrhage, and retained placenta (Dotters-Katz, 2017b; Waters, 2009). In one study, 56 percent of women suffered one or more of these complications (van der Marel, 2016). With significant bleeding or fever, the uterus should be evacuated. Surgical evacuation or medication options for this vary by gestational age and surgeon skill. Methods mirror those for second-trimester elective abortion, described later (p. 213).

For cases in which previable delivery is inevitable or elected, neonatal consultation aids decision-making and helps form expectations for the family. For fetuses with a life-limiting

condition, such as extreme prematurity, *perinatal palliative care* is a strategy that emphasizes comfort (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). Care team members can include obstetric and neonatal professionals, chaplaincy, and mental health specialists.

In cases without bleeding or fever, expectant management is an option in the well-counseled patient. Many will choose termination due to the earlier-described maternal risks and tenuous neonatal outcomes. Early fetal mortality stems from pulmonary hypoplasia, severe intraventricular hemorrhage, and sepsis. Of those managed expectantly with PPROM at <20 weeks, the percentage of infants who are discharged home ranges from 12 to 23 percent (Hunter, 2012; Sim, 2020; van der Martel, 2016). Common neonatal morbidities are respiratory distress syndrome, bronchopulmonary hypoplasia or dysplasia, necrotizing enterocolitis, and sepsis. Overall, prognosis is improved if previable PPROM occurs at a later gestation, latency is longer, and oligohydramnios is absent. With the last, poor lung development and fetal skeletal deformations can result from scant amnionic fluid.

If expectant care is elected, initial hospital evaluation, diminished physical activity, and observation for fever or labor are reasonable. After 24 hours, if there is no bleeding, cramping, or fever, a woman may resume ambulation and is discharged home. She is instructed to watch for fever, contractions, or bleeding. Antibiotics are considered and given for 7 days to extend latency (Dotters-Katz, 2017a). However, lung-maturing corticosteroids, magnesium sulfate neuroprophylaxis, group B streptococcus antibiotic prophylaxis, cesarean delivery, and tocolytics are not recommended before 22 weeks' gestation (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019d). Once a viable age is reached, readmission until delivery is our practice. PPROM care at viable gestational ages is described in Chapter 45 (p. 799).

In procedure-related PPROM, iatrogenic leaks are typically higher in the uterus and tend to self-seal. For leaks from amniocentesis, management is typically conservative, and brief bedrest yields high pregnancy continuation rates. For rupture after fetal surgery, investigational treatments can address surgical leaks (Chmait, 2017). One is an occlusive plug—termed an amniopatch—that forms following intraamnionic instillation of autologous platelets and cryoprecipitate. Another is amnioinfusion to counter the effects of oligohydramnios but is not robustly supported by current data (Roberts, 2014; van Kempen, 2019).

In subsequent pregnancies, the risk for recurrent preterm birth is great in women with prior previable PPROM. In one cohort study, 46 percent delivered their next pregnancy before 37 weeks, and 17 percent delivered before reaching 24 weeks (Monson, 2016).

Septic Abortion

With spontaneous or induced abortion, organisms may invade myometrial tissues and extend to cause parametritis, peritonitis, and septicemia. This may complicate both medication and surgical methods. Classic clinical findings include fever, lower abdominal pain, uterine tenderness, and foul vaginal discharge. Vaginal bleeding and sonographic evidence of retained uterine tissue are others. Urinary tract infection should be excluded by urinalysis, and a complete blood count assesses leukocytosis.

Most bacteria causing septic abortion are part of the normal vaginal flora. Thus, vaginal culture is not informative, however, we obtain blood cultures for those with sepsis. Particularly worrisome are severe necrotizing infections and toxic shock syndrome (TSS) caused by group A streptococcus—*S pyogenes* (Daif, 2009). Maternal deaths from *Clostridium perfringens* or *C sordellii* also have been described. With TSS, women show severe endothelial injury, capillary leakage, hemoconcentration, hypotension, tachycardia, and marked leukocytosis but may not be febrile initially.

With septic abortion, management includes prompt administration of broad-spectrum antibiotics as discussed in Chapter 37 (p. 651). If products are retained, suction evacuation is performed. Most women respond to this treatment within 1 to 2 days and are discharged when afebrile. Additional oral antibiotics are likely unnecessary (Savaris, 2011). In a very few women, severe sepsis syndrome develops, and intensive supportive care is essential. Although rare, widespread peritonitis despite curettage and clinical decline in the patient should raise concerns. Imaging that shows intraabdominal free air or air within the uterine wall typically prompts laparotomy (Eschenbach, 2015). If the uterus is necrotic, hysterectomy is indicated.

Anti-D Immunoglobulin

With spontaneous or induced abortion, 2 percent of D-negative women will become alloimmunized if not provided passive isoimmunization. With surgical dilation and curettage, this rate may reach 5 percent. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019e) recommends a 300-μg intramuscular dose of anti-Rho (D) immunoglobulin for all gestational ages. Doses can also be graduated. Namely, a 50-μg or 120-ug dose is given for pregnancies ≤12 weeks and a 300-μg one for those ≥13 weeks. This is administered immediately following surgical evacuation. For medication abortion or expectant management, the injection is given within 72 hours of pregnancy failure diagnosis.

With *threatened* abortion, immunoglobulin prophylaxis is controversial because of sparse evidence-based data (Hannafin, 2006). It is reasonable to administer anti-D immunoglobulin for a threatened abortion, and this is our practice.

RECURRENT MISCARRIAGE

Affecting approximately 1 percent of fertile couples, recurrent pregnancy loss (RPL) is classically defined as three or more consecutive pregnancy losses at <20 weeks' gestation or with a fetal weight <500 g. However, data show the risk for a subsequent loss to be similar whether a woman has two or three prior miscarriages (Bhattacharya, 2010). The American Society for Reproductive Medicine (2020) now defines RPL as two or more failed pregnancies confirmed by sonographic or histopathological examination. *Primary RPL* refers to multiple losses in a woman who has never delivered a liveborn, and *secondary RPL* refers to multiple pregnancy losses in a patient with a prior live birth. Remarkably, chances for a successful pregnancy are >50 percent even after five miscarriages (Table 11-3) (Brigham, 1999). RPL evaluation addresses its major causes, described next.

TABLE 11-3. Predicted Success Rate of Subsequent Pregnancy According to Age and Number of Previous Miscarriages

Age (yrs)	No. of Previous Miscarriages: Predicted Success of Subsequent Pregnancy (%)			
	2	3	4	5
20	92	90	88	85
25	89	86	82	79
30	84	80	76	71
35	77	73	68	62
40+	65	59	53	47

Etiology

Widely accepted causes of RPL include some parental chromosomal abnormalities, antiphospholipid antibody syndrome, specific endocrinopathies, and certain structural uterine abnormalities. Thus, current RPL evaluation includes karyotyping of both parents; measuring antiphospholipid antibody levels; assessing HbA_{1c}, thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), and prolactin levels; and performing saline-infusion sonography (SIS) or hysterosalpingography (American Society for Reproductive Medicine, 2012).

The timing of recurrent loss can offer clues, and in some women, each miscarriage may occur near the same gestational age (Heuser, 2010). Approximately 50 percent of women have idiopathic RPL (Habayeb, 2004).

Parental Chromosomal Abnormalities

In first-trimester RPL, the incidence of genetic abnormalities is significantly lower than in sporadic miscarriage (Stephenson, 2002). A notable exception is a parent that carries a reciprocal translocation or Robertsonian translocation (Fan, 2016). Their genesis and reproductive sequelae are discussed in Chapter 16 (p. 316). These account for only 2 to 4 percent of RPL cases, but karyotyping of both parents is a recognized part of RPL evaluation.

After thorough genetic counseling, couples with an abnormal karyotype can be offered in vitro fertilization (IVF) followed by preimplantation genetic testing (PGT) or offered donor gametes (Chap. 17, p. 348). However, birth rates with IVF plus PGT are not superior to expectant management for this cause of RPL (Murugappan, 2016). Importantly, in couples with RPL who are *chromosomally normal,* PGT is not recommended solely for the indication of RPL.

Anatomical Factors

Several genital tract abnormalities have been implicated in RPL, but direct linkage is not robust. According to Devi Wold and associates (2006), 15 percent of women with ≥3 consecutive miscarriages will have a congenital or acquired uterine anomaly. Thus, SIS and hysteroscopy are primary evaluation tools.

Uterine leiomyomas are common, and some may cause miscarriage, especially if located near the placental implantation site. However, data suggesting a significant link to RPL are not convincing and poor quality (Saravelos, 2011). The American Society for Reproductive Medicine (2017) notes that hysteroscopic excision of large submucosal leiomyomas in women with RPL can be considered.

Uterine synechiae, often called *Asherman syndrome,* result from broad destruction of endometrium and subsequent scarring, which can follow uterine curettage or hysteroscopic surgeries. With SIS, multiple hypoechoic bridging bands are seen to span the endometrial cavity, which is filled with anechoic saline. Treatment is hysteroscopic adhesiolysis, but success rates are lower with more severe initial disease.

Uterine polyps have been found more frequently in women with RPL, but causality is unclear. These are seen during hysteroscopy or SIS as a mass lesion extending from the uterine wall into the endometrial cavity. Application of color Doppler during SIS classically reveals a single feeder vessel reaching the mass. Hysteroscopic polypectomy can be considered.

For all these acquired lesions, correction can be considered for those with significant uterine cavity distortion. However, evidence supporting improved birth rates is not robust (American Society for Reproductive Medicine, 2012). Moreover, reproductive benefits are balanced against intrauterine adhesions that may form after any intracavitary surgery.

Congenital uterine anomalies often originate from abnormal müllerian duct formation. Depending on their anatomy, some may raise risks for miscarriage or preterm delivery. Of these, septate uterus is most closely linked with miscarriage. Hysteroscopic resection has been associated with improved live birth rates in some but not all studies (Rikken, 2017). It can be considered for RPL (American Society for Reproductive Medicine, 2016). Chapter 3 (p. 42) contains a fuller discussion of uterine abnormalities and their other obstetrical effects.

Immunological Factors

Miscarriages are more common in women with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) (Clowse, 2008). Many of these women and also some without SLE carry *antiphospholipid antibodies*. These are a family of autoantibodies that bind to phospholipid-binding plasma proteins and are associated with RPL (Alijotas-Reig 2019). As shown in Table 11-4, the *antiphospholipid antibody syndrome (APS)* is defined by these antibodies in combination with various forms of reproductive loss or vascular thrombosis (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). Chapter 62 (p. 1114) describes pregnancy loss with APS and treatment.

Endocrine Factors

Of recurrent miscarriages, 8 to 12 percent are caused by endocrine factors (Arredondo, 2006). First, the well-known abortifacient action of uncontrolled diabetes mellitus is detailed in Chapter 60 (p. 1070). Optimal periconceptional glycemic control will mitigate many of these losses.

Overt hypothyroidism and severe iodine deficiency also raise miscarriage rates (Chap. 61, p. 1094). Correction with supplementation reverses these actions. Subclinical hypothyroidism, however, does not appear to increase miscarriage rates (Dong, 2020). Antithyroid antibodies are a common associate of subclinical hypothyroidism or overt hypothyroidism. A recent

TABLE 11-4. Clinical and Laboratory Criteria for Diagnosis of Antiphospholipid Antibody Syndrome[a]

Clinical Criteria

Obstetrical:

≥3 unexplained consecutive spontaneous miscarriages <10 weeks' gestation

or

≥1 unexplained fetal death(s) ≥10 weeks' gestation

or

Severe preeclampsia or placental insufficiency necessitating delivery before 34 weeks

Vascular: ≥1 episode(s) of arterial, venous, or small-vessel thrombosis in any tissue

Laboratory Criteria[b]

Presence of lupus anticoagulant according to guidelines of the International Society on Thrombosis and Hemostasis

or

Medium or high serum levels of IgG or IgM anticardiolipin antibodies

or

Anti-β_2 glycoprotein-I IgG or IgM antibody

[a]At least one clinical and one laboratory criteria must be present for diagnosis.
[b]These tests must be positive on two or more occasions at least 12 weeks apart.
IgG = immunoglobulin G; IgM = immunoglobulin M.
Modified from Branch, 2010; Miyakis, 2006.

metaanalysis found positive associations between these antibodies and a greater risk for sporadic and recurrent miscarriages (Xie, 2020). However, levothyroxine supplementation in this group does not improve subsequent pregnancy outcomes (Sun, 2020). For evaluation of RPL, measuring levels of serum TSH, but not antithyroid antibodies, is reasonable.

Other endocrinopathies are inconclusively implicated. One is progesterone deficiency caused by a luteal-phase defect. Progesterone supplementation, compared with placebo, did not improve the live birth rate in those with RPL in one large trial (Coomarasamy, 2015). Limited data implicate hyperprolactinemia (Hirahara, 1998). Obesity, polycystic ovarian syndrome, and insulin resistance are also linked to RPL (Cavalcante, 2019; Craig, 2002; Mayrhofer, 2020). However, the interplay between these makes assigning individual causality difficult.

SECOND-TRIMESTER ABORTION

Etiology

The timespan that defines a midtrimester fetal loss extends from the end of the first trimester until the fetus weighs <500 g or gestational age reaches 20 weeks. The spontaneous loss rate in the second trimester is much lower than in the first.

Unlike earlier miscarriages that frequently stem from chromosomal aneuploidies, causes of these later fetal losses are more diverse (Table 11-5). Their ultimate presentations may be miscarriage, PPROM, or fetal demise prior to labor (Morris, 2016). Some second-trimester abortions are induced because of fetal abnormalities or patient choice.

Second-trimester losses are subclassified similarly to first-trimester ones (p. 200). Management is similar in many regards to that used for second-trimester induced abortion, described on page 214. One exception is cervical cerclage, which may be employed for cervical insufficiency.

Cervical Insufficiency

Previously called incompetent cervix, this is characterized classically by painless cervical dilation in the second trimester. It can be followed by prolapse and ballooning of the amnionic membranes into the vagina, and ultimately, expulsion of an immature fetus. This sequence often repeats in future pregnancies.

Of causes, prior cervical trauma is implicated. One cohort study of more than 15,000 women with prior cervical conization found a fourfold risk of pregnancy loss before 24 weeks' gestation (Albrechtsen, 2008). However, in women solely with prior conization but no prior preterm birth, outcomes are not improved by prophylactic cerclage (Zeisler, 1997). In other instances, abnormal cervical development, including that from diethylstilbestrol (DES), may play a role (Hoover, 2011). Marfan and Ehlers-Danlos syndromes also carry increased risk of cervical insufficiency (Meijboom, 2006; Spiegel, 2020).

Surgical Indications

For women with an unequivocal history of second-trimester painless delivery, prophylactic cerclage placement is an option and reinforces a weak cervix by an encircling suture. However,

TABLE 11-5. Some Causes of Midtrimester Spontaneous Pregnancy Losses

Fetal Anomalies	**Placental Causes**
Structural	Abruption, previa
Chromosomal	Vasculopathy
	Chorioamnionitis
Maternal Disorders	**Uterine Defects**
Autoimmune	Congenital
Infections	Leiomyomas
Metabolic	Incompetent cervix

some women have a history and clinical findings that make it difficult to verify—*classic* cervical insufficiency. In one randomized trial of almost 1300 women, cerclage was found to be beneficial—13 versus 17 percent—to prolong pregnancy past 33 weeks (MacNaughton, 1993).

The physical finding of early dilation of the internal cervical os and visible membranes is another indicator of insufficiency. In one systematic review, cerclages that were placed based on such examination findings provided superior perinatal outcomes compared with expectant management (Ehsanipoor, 2015).

Last, some use TVS to determine cerclage need. In those with any prior spontaneous preterm birth, the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2016) recommends transvaginal cervical length screening. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021) also recommends this screening. Surveillance extends between 16 and 24 weeks' gestation, and examinations, described in Chapter 14 (p. 254), are performed every 1 to 4 weeks. In those without prior preterm birth or in those with multifetal gestation, cervical length is not specifically measured. The cervix should be viewed during the sonographic anatomical anatomy examination at 18 to 22 weeks' gestation. Chapter 45 (p. 794) discusses recommendations for cerclage placement based on cervical length to prevent preterm birth.

Presurgical Preparation

Contraindications to cerclage include bleeding, contractions, or ruptured membranes, any of which substantially raise the likelihood of labor and failure. Prophylactic *elective cerclage* before dilation is preferable, and timing between 12 and 14 weeks' gestation allows early intervention. Still, it avoids surgery in the first trimester, which is when most predestined spontaneous losses occur, and screening for aneuploidy and malformation is completed. Cervical neoplasia screening in suitable candidates and gonorrhea and chlamydial infection testing are done. Obvious cervical infection is treated.

At times, the cervix instead is found to be dilated, effaced, or both, and an *emergency cerclage* is performed. Notably, in more-advanced pregnancy, the risk of stimulating preterm labor or of rupturing membranes with the surgery is greater. At Parkland Hospital, cerclage procedures are not done after 23 to 24 weeks' gestation. Others, however, describe placement later than this (Caruso, 2000; Terkildsen, 2003).

When outcomes of cerclage are evaluated, women with similar clinical presentations are ideally compared. In a study of elective cerclage by Owen and associates (2009), approximately a third of women delivered before 35 weeks, and complications were few. By contrast, in a 10-year review of 75 women undergoing emergency cerclage, only half were delivered after 36 weeks (Chasen, 1998). Importantly, only 44 percent of those with bulging membranes at the time of cerclage reached 28 weeks. Terkildsen and associates (2003) had similar experiences. Our experiences at Parkland Hospital are that emergency cerclage has a high failure rate, and women are counseled accordingly.

If the clinical indication for cerclage is questionable, a woman may instead be observed. Most undergo cervical examinations weekly or every 2 weeks to assess effacement and dilation. Unfortunately, rapid effacement and dilation can develop despite such precautions (Witter, 1984).

Vaginal Cerclage

Of the two vaginal cerclage operations, most use the simpler procedure developed by McDonald (1963) (Fig. 11-3). The more complicated operation is a modification of the procedure

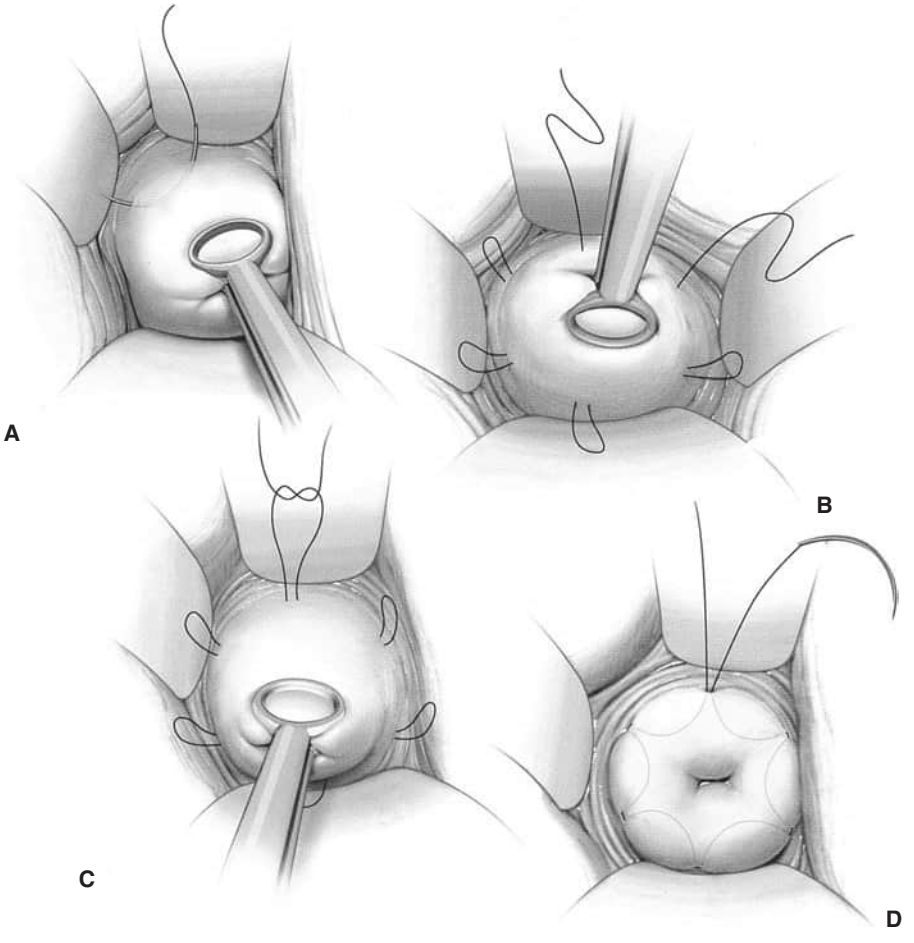


FIGURE 11-3 McDonald cerclage procedure for incompetent cervix. **A.** Start of the cerclage procedure with a no. 2 monofilament suture being placed in the body of the cervix very near the level of the internal os. **B.** Continuation of suture placement in the body of the cervix so as to encircle the os. **C.** Encirclement completed. **D.** The suture is tightened around the cervical canal sufficiently to reduce the diameter of the canal to 5 to 10 mm, and then the suture is tied. The effect of the suture placement on the cervical canal is apparent. A second suture placed somewhat higher may be of value if the first is not in close proximity to the internal os.

described by Shirodkar (1955) (Fig. 11-4). When either technique is performed electively, women with a classic history of cervical insufficiency have good outcomes (Caspi, 1990; Kuhn, 1977). For either vaginal or abdominal cerclage, evidence is insufficient to recommend perioperative antibiotic prophylaxis (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologist, 2020a). Few data are available and do not support prophylactic tocolysis (Smith, 2015).

Regional analgesia is suitable and preferred. After this, the woman is placed in standard lithotomy position. The vagina and perineum are cleaned for surgery, and the bladder is drained. Some operators do not use potentially irritating antiseptic solution if amnionic membranes are exposed and instead use warm saline (Pelosi, 1990). Although steps are described here, a thorough and illustrated review of technique is provided by Hawkins (2017).

For suturing, options include a no. 1 or 2 nylon or polypropylene monofilament suture or 5-mm Mersilene tape. During placement, the suture is placed as cephalad along the cervical length as possible, is anchored into the dense cervical stroma, yet avoids the bladder. Two tandem cerclage suture rings are not more effective than one (Giraldo-Isaza, 2013).

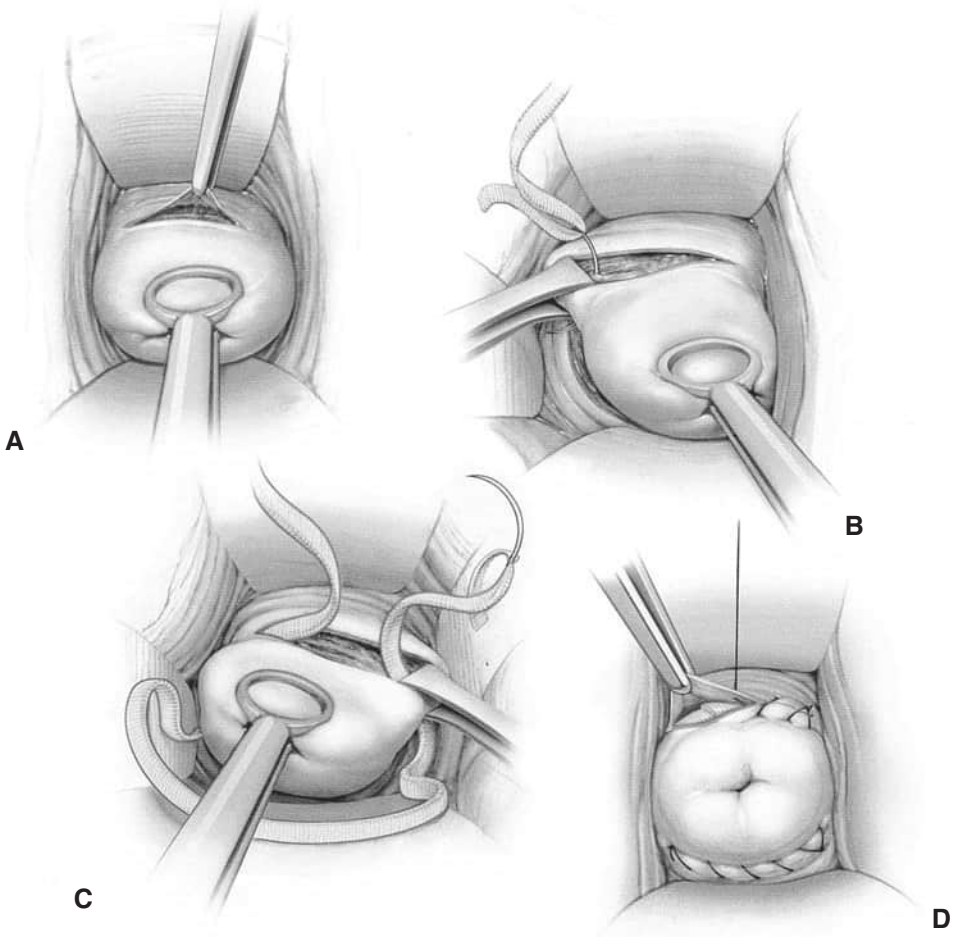


FIGURE 11-4 Modified Shirodkar cerclage for incompetent cervix. **A.** A transverse incision is made in the mucosa overlying the anterior cervix, and the bladder is pushed cephalad. **B.** A 5-mm Mersilene tape on a swaged-on or Mayo needle is passed anterior to posterior. **C.** The tape is then directed posterior to anterior on the other side of the cervix. Allis clamps are placed so as to bunch the cervical tissue. This diminishes the distance that the needle must travel submucosally and aids tape placement. **D.** The tape is snugly tied anteriorly, after ensuring that all slack has been taken up. The cervical mucosa is then closed with continuous stitches of chromic suture.

Emergency cerclage placement with a thinned dilated cervix is more difficult, and tissue tearing and membrane puncture are risks. Gentle replacement of the prolapsed amnionic sac back into the uterus can aid suturing. Options include steep Trendelenburg or filling the bladder with 600 mL of saline through a Foley catheter in the bladder. However, these steps may carry the cervix cephalad and away from the operating field. Instead, membranes can be pushed inward by a wide, moist sponge stick. A Foley catheter can instead be inserted through the cervix, and inflation of the 30-mL balloon can deflect the amnionic sac inward. The balloon is gradually deflated as the cerclage suture is tightened around the catheter tubing, which is then removed. With any of these, simultaneous gentle outward traction created by ring forceps placed on the cervical edges may be helpful.

For uncomplicated pregnancies without labor, the cerclage is usually snipped and removed at 37 weeks' gestation. This balances the risk of preterm birth against that of cervical laceration from a cerclage in place with labor contractions. Transvaginally placed cerclages are typically removed even with cesarean delivery to avoid rare long-term foreign-body complications (Hawkins, 2014). With scheduled cesarean delivery, the cerclage may be removed at 37 weeks or deferred until the time of regional analgesia and delivery. Again, the risk of labor ensuing before delivery must be considered. During extraction, particularly with a Shirodkar cerclage or a cerclage using Mersilene tape, analgesia aids patient comfort and adequate visualization.

Transabdominal Cerclage

At times, suture at the uterine isthmus is placed abdominally. Performed less often than transvaginal methods, selected indications include prior transvaginal cerclage failure or severe cervical anatomical defects. The cerclage is left until childbearing completion, and thus cesarean delivery is required. With the cerclage in place, conception rates still approximate 75 percent (Moawad, 2018). If needed for a fetal loss, dilation and evacuation can be performed with the suture in place (Dethier, 2020).

With the procedure, after abdomen entry, sharp dissection in the vesicocervical space allows the bladder to be pushed caudally. At the level of the internal os, a window is made in free space *medial* to the uterine vessels. This avoids vessel compression by the tightened cerclage. The nearby ureter is identified and avoided. One end of the ligating suture is passed into the right window, and the other is threaded into the left. Per surgeon preference, the knot is tied either in the front or back. The vesicouterine peritoneum is closed with absorbable suture in a running fashion.

In the MAVRIC trial, 111 women with a prior failed vaginal cerclage were randomly assigned to transabdominal, McDonald, or Shirodkar methods. Almost half of the transabdominal ones were placed prior to conception. The preterm birth rate before 32 weeks was 8 percent in the transabdominal group and 38 percent in each of the transvaginal cerclage groups (Shennan, 2020).

Of morbidity, rates of bleeding, adjacent organ injury, uterine perforation, and infection can be greater with transabdominal compared with transvaginal methods. Transabdominal cerclage performs suitably whether laparotomy or laparoscopy is used to place the sutures (Moawad, 2018).

Complications

With cerclage in general, PPROM, preterm labor, hemorrhage, or infection is a potential risk. All are uncommon with prophylactic cerclage. In the trial by MacNaughton and associates (1993), membrane rupture complicated only 1 of more than 600 procedures done before 19 weeks. In our view, clinical infection mandates immediate removal of the suture with labor induced or augmented. Similarly, with imminent abortion or delivery, the suture should be removed to avoid cervical laceration.

Following cerclage, sonographic surveillance does not improve outcomes (Dijkstra, 2000). Evidence does not support a subsequent reinforcing cerclage procedure (Baxter, 2005). Membrane rupture during suture placement or within the first 48 hours after surgery is considered by some to be an indication for cerclage removal to avoid serious fetal or maternal infection (Kuhn, 1977). In those with later PPROM but without infection or labor, options include observation alone or cerclage removal and observation. In these cases, data are contradictory regarding prolonged gestational latency and infection rates with retention or removal (Jenkins, 2000; Pergialiotis, 2015). In the absence of infection or labor, we allow cerclage retention with close clinical surveillance.

INDUCED ABORTION

Definitions

The term *induced abortion* is defined as termination of pregnancy with medication or surgery before fetal viability. The *abortion ratio* is the number of abortions per 1000 live births, and *abortion rate* is the number per 1000 women aged 15 to 44 years. For 2018, approximately 620,000 elective abortions were reported (Kortsmit, 2020). Of these, 78 percent were pregnancies aged ≤9 weeks' gestation, and 92 percent of abortions were completed before ≤13 weeks. The abortion ratio was 189 per 1000 live births, and the abortion rate was 11.3.

Therapeutic abortion refers to pregnancy termination for medical reasons, and suitable maternal or fetal indications are described in respective chapters. In cases of rape or incest, many consider termination. The most frequent therapeutic indication currently is to prevent birth of a fetus with a significant anatomical, metabolic, or mental deformity.

The term *elective abortion* or *voluntary abortion* describes the interruption of pregnancy before viability at the request of the woman, but not for medical reasons. Most abortions done today are elective.

Legal Influence

The legality of elective abortion was established by the United States Supreme Court in the case of *Roe v. Wade*. The Court defined the extent to which states might regulate abortion and ruled that first-trimester procedures must be left to the medical judgment of the physician. After this, the state could regulate abortion procedures in ways reasonably related to maternal health. Last, subsequent to viability, the state could promote its interest in the potential of human life and regulate abortion, except for preservation of the mother's health.

Other legislation followed. The 1976 Hyde Amendment forbids use of federal funds to provide abortion services except in cases of rape, incest, or life-threatening circumstances. The Supreme Court in 1992 reviewed *Planned Parenthood v. Casey* and upheld the fundamental right to abortion, but established that regulations are constitutional as long as they do not impose an "undue burden" on the woman. Subsequently, many states introduced counseling requirements, waiting periods, parental consent for minors, facility requirements, and funding restrictions. Such limits are often called targeted regulation of abortion providers (TRAP) laws. One major choice-limiting decision was the 2007 Supreme Court decision that reviewed *Gonzales v. Carhart* and upheld the 2003 Partial-Birth Abortion Ban Act. In 2016, some TRAP laws were dialed back by the Supreme Court ruling in the case of *Whole Woman's Health v. Hellerstedt*. With this, the justices noted that abortion laws must confer health safety benefits that outweigh burdens on access.

Provider Availability

Major women's health organizations support the legal right of women to obtain an abortion (Espey, 2019). The Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education mandates that obstetrics and gynecology residency education must include access to experience with induced abortion. The Kenneth J. Ryan Residency Training Program was established in 1999 to work with residency programs to improve abortion and contraceptive training. Moreover, postresidency training in these techniques is available in formal 2-year Family Planning fellowships. Other residency programs have a less-codified abortion curriculum. Instead, residents learn technical aspects through their management of miscarriage and pregnancy interruption for medical indications.

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019g) respects the need and responsibility of health-care providers to determine their individual positions on induced abortion. It also advocates for counseling and timely referral if providers have individual beliefs that preclude pregnancy termination. Knowledgeable and compassionate counseling objectively describes and provides information to the woman to permit informed decision-making.

FIRST-TRIMESTER METHODS

Abortions can be completed with either medication or surgery. In the absence of serious maternal disorders, abortion procedures do not require hospitalization (Guiahi, 2012). However, outpatient facilities should be able to provide emergency resuscitation and immediate transfer to a hospital (Levy, 2019).

■ Surgical Abortion

Preoperative Preparation

Surgical evacuation is performed transvaginally through an appropriately dilated cervix. For this, preoperative cervical ripening is typically associated with easier intraoperative cervical dilation, less pain, a technically easier procedure, and shorter operative times (Kapp, 2010; Webber, 2015). On balance, this preparation adds a surgical delay and potential side effects. Thus, cervical priming in the first trimester may be reserved for those with anticipated challenges to dilation. Examples are those with cervical stenosis or adolescents, who overall may experience higher associated pain (Allen, 2016). Surgical steps presented here apply to both induced abortion and miscarriage.

For ripening, hygroscopic dilators, also called osmotic dilators, are devices that draw water from surrounding tissues and expand gradually to dilate the endocervical canal. One type is derived from various species of *Laminaria* algae that are harvested from the ocean floor (Fig. 11-5). These come in different diameters, which allow the number and diameters of inserted devices, also called tents, to be customized to a given cervix. Another device is *Dilapan-S,* which is composed of an acrylic-based gel. Each type expands to an ultimate diameter three to four times that of its dry state.

With hygroscopic dilators, shallow insertion yields insufficient dilation or tent expulsion. Overly deep placement risks dislodgement into the uterine cavity. Once tents are inserted, several gauze sponges placed at the external os help prevent spontaneous tent expulsion. Patients can ambulate, void, or stool without limitation. The numbers of sponges and dilators inserted are carefully counted and recorded in the chart.

Schneider and coworkers (1991) described 21 cases in which women who had a hygroscopic dilator placed changed their minds. Of 17 women who chose to continue their pregnancy, 14 delivered at term, two delivered preterm, and one miscarried 2 weeks later. None suffered infection-related morbidity, including three untreated women with cervical cultures positive for *Chlamydia trachomatis*.

Instead, misoprostol is often used for cervical ripening. The typical dose is 400 μg administered sublingually, buccally, or

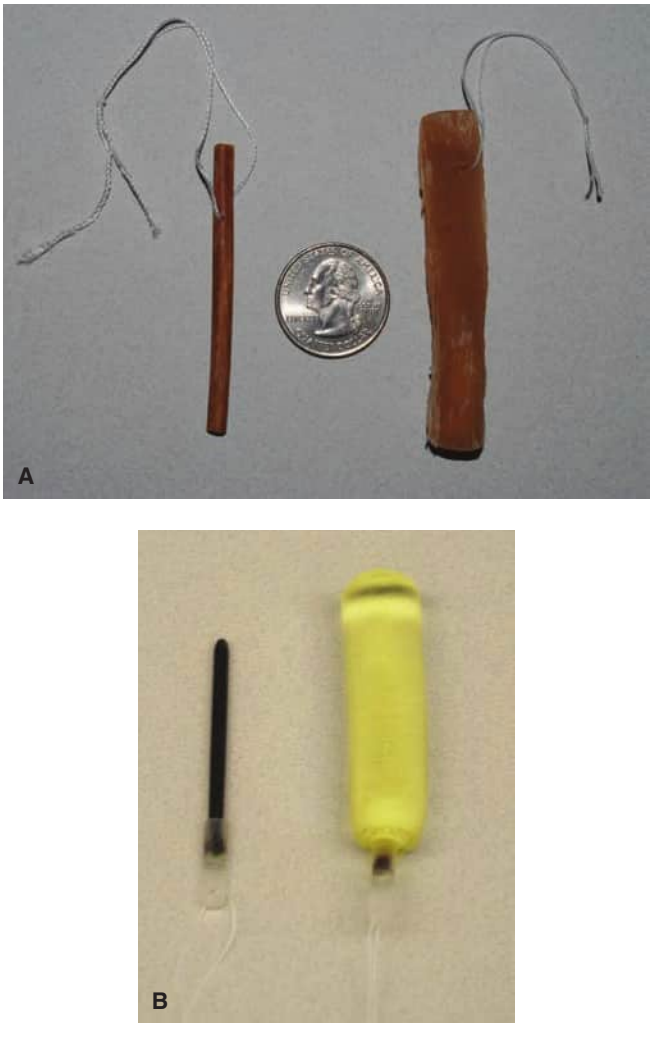


FIGURE 11-5 Hygroscopic dilators. With each type, the dry unit (*left*) expands exponentially when exposed to water (*right*) as in the endocervical canal. **A.** Laminaria. **B.** Dilapan-S.

placed into the posterior vaginal fornix at least 3 to 4 hours prior to surgery. Oral ingestion is less effective (Allen, 2016). Another option is a 200-mg oral mifepristone dose given 24 to 48 hours before surgery (Ashok, 2000). However, misoprostol is typically favored, because of mifepristone's greater delay to the procedure, cost, and limited access within the FDA's REMS program (p. 202).

Of options, hygroscopic dilators provide equal or slightly greater dilation than misoprostol. Other surgical parameters do not vary significantly (Bartz, 2013; MacIsaac, 1999). On balance, the ripening time required for hygroscopic dilators extends the total procedure time and can be uncomfortable, whereas misoprostol can cause fever, bleeding, and gastrointestinal side effects.

If not done as part of early prenatal care, hemoglobin level and Rh status are assessed prior to abortion. Screening for gonorrhea, for syphilis, and for human immunodeficiency virus, hepatitis B, and chlamydial infections also is completed. Obvious cervical infections are treated and resolved before elective procedures. To prevent postabortal infection after a first- or second-trimester surgical evacuation, a 200-mg oral prophylactic dose

of doxycycline is given 1 hour before. For those electing local anesthesia, evidence also supports adding an oral or intramuscular dose of a nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug 30 to 60 minutes prior to surgery (Allen, 2018). Prophylaxis specifically for infective endocarditis prevention in those with valvular heart disease is not required in the absence of active infection (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020g,i). No recommendations specifically address venous thromboembolism prophylaxis for suction curettage in low-risk gravidas. At our hospital, we encourage early ambulation.

Vacuum Aspiration

Also called *suction curettage* or *suction dilation and curettage*, vacuum aspiration is a transcervical approach, in which the cervix is first dilated and tissue is then evacuated. For this, a rigid cannula is attached either to an electric-powered vacuum source or to a handheld 60-mL syringe for its vacuum source. These are *electric vacuum aspiration (EVA)* or *manual vacuum aspiration (MVA)*, respectively. *Sharp dilation and curettage (D & C)* in which contents are mechanically scraped out *solely* by a sharp curette is currently not recommended for pregnancy evacuation due to greater blood loss, pain, and procedural time (National Abortion Federation, 2020; World Health Organization, 2012). Importantly, this practice is distinguished from brief final sharp curettage following initial aspiration.

To begin, the surgeon performs a bimanual examination to confirm uterine size and orientation. A speculum is inserted, and the cervix is swabbed with povidone-iodine or equivalent solution. The anterior cervical lip is grasped with a toothed tenaculum. The cervix, vagina, and uterus are richly supplied by nerves of the Frankenhäuser plexus, which lies within connective tissue lateral to the uterosacral and cardinal ligaments. Thus, vacuum aspiration at minimum requires intravenously or orally administered sedatives or analgesics, and some add a paracervical or intracervical block (Allen, 2009; Renner, 2012). For a pudendal block, 5 mL of 1- or 2-percent lidocaine is injected into the uterosacral ligaments at their insertion into the uterus at 4 and 8 o'clock. Instead, an intracervical block with 5-mL aliquots of 1-percent lidocaine injected at 12, 3, 6, and 9 o'clock was reported to be equally effective (Mankowski, 2009). General or regional anesthesia may instead be elected.

First, a Sims uterine sound is passed into the uterus to measure the depth and inclination of the cavity. This provides parameters for subsequent instrument insertion. If required, the cervix is further dilated with Hegar, Hank, or Pratt dilators until a suction cannula can be inserted. As a rough rule, the degree of required cervical dilation in millimeters approximates gestational age. Hegar sizes reflect their diameter in millimeters. Pratt and Hank dilators are sized in French units, which can be converted to millimeters by dividing the French value by three.

With dilation, the fourth and fifth fingers of the introducing hand should rest on the perineum and buttocks as the instrument is guided through the internal os (Fig. 11-6). This technique minimizes forceful insertion and helps prevent uterine perforation.

Following dilation, for most first-trimester aspiration procedures, an 8- to 12-mm Karman cannula is appropriate. Small cannulas carry the risks of a longer surgery and of missed

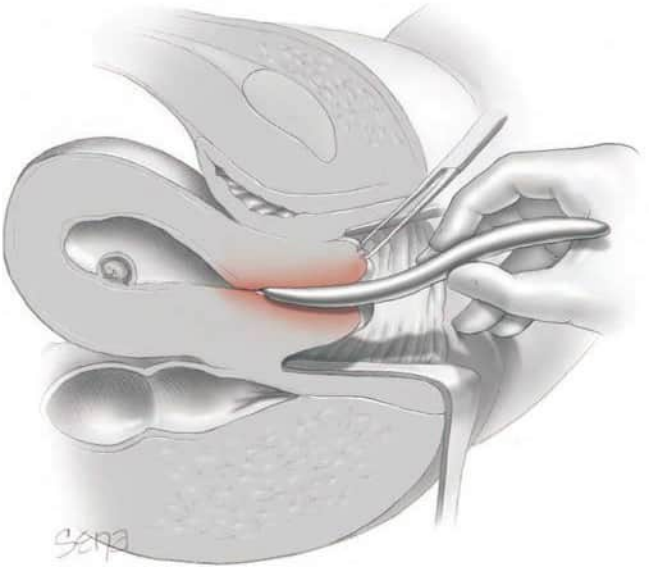


FIGURE 11-6 Dilation of cervix with a Hegar dilator. Note that the fourth and fifth fingers rest against the perineum and buttocks, lateral to the vagina. This maneuver is an important safety measure because if the cervix relaxes abruptly, these fingers prevent a sudden and uncontrolled thrust of the dilator, a common cause of uterine perforation.

intrauterine tissue. Large cannulas risk cervical injury and more discomfort. For evacuation, the cannula is slowly moved toward the fundus until resistance is met. Suction is then activated. The cannula is gradually pulled back toward the os and is simultaneously slowly turned circumferentially to cover the entire uterine cavity surface (Fig. 11-7). This is repeated until no more tissue is aspirated. A gentle sharp curettage can follow to remove any remaining tissue fragments (Fig. 11-8). Strong and consistent evidence supports the high efficacy, safety, and patient acceptability for both MVA and EVA (Lichtenberg, 2013).

For abortion done at ≤6 weeks' gestation, a distinct drawback is that the pregnancy may be small and missed by the curette. To identify placenta, the aspirated contents are rinsed in a strainer to remove blood, and then placed in a clear plastic container with saline and examined with back lighting (MacIsaac, 2000). Placental tissue macroscopically appears feathery. A magnifying lens, colposcope, or microscope can augment viewing. With gestations <6 weeks, the failed abortion rate approximates 2 percent (Paul, 2002). Thus, if products are not clearly identified, serial serum β-hCG levels can be informative (Dean, 2015).

Abortion Complications

Legally induced abortion in the United States has a low associated mortality rate, and from 2013 to 2017, the rate was 0.4 deaths in 100,000 procedures (Kortsmit, 2020). Early abortions are safer. The mortality rate was 0.3 deaths in 100,000 procedures performed ≤8 weeks' gestation but rose to 2.5 at 14 to 17 weeks and to 6.7 at ≥18 weeks (Zane, 2015). Notably, maternal mortality rates are 14-fold greater for pregnancies that are continued (Raymond, 2012).

Uterine perforation and lower-genital-tract laceration are uncommon but potentially serious, and rates also rise with

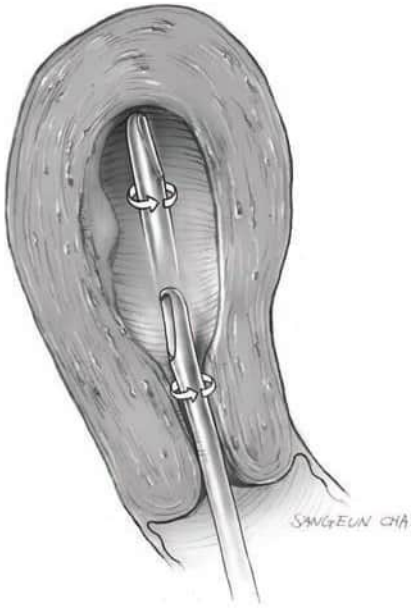


FIGURE 11-7 A suction curette has been placed through the cervix into the uterus. The figure shows the rotary motion used to aspirate the contents. (Figures 11-7 and 11-8: Reproduced with permission from Hoffman BL, Hamid CA, Corton MM: Surgeries for benign gynecologic disorders. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2020.)

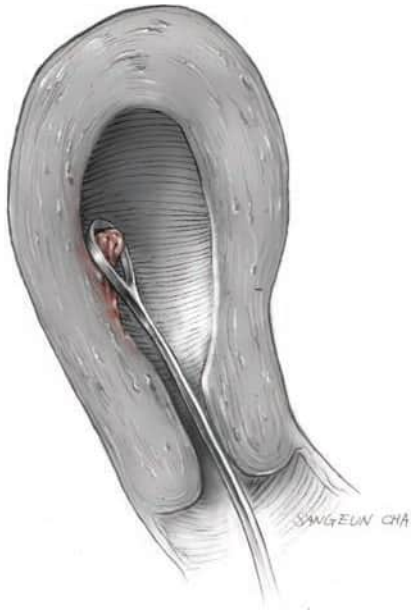


FIGURE 11-8 A sharp curette is advanced into the uterine cavity while the instrument is held with the thumb and forefinger as shown in Figure 11-6. Upon reaching the fundus, the curette is placed flush against the uterine wall. Firm pressure against the wall as the instrument is dragged out will scrape away adhered tissue fragments. With movement of the curette, only the strength of these two fingers should be used to help avoid perforation.

gestational age. In one systematic review of first-trimester abortion, the uterine perforation and laceration rates were each ≤1 percent (White, 2015). Perforation is usually recognized when the instrument passes without resistance deep into the pelvis. Risk factors include operator inexperience, prior cervical surgery or anomaly, adolescence, multiparity, and advanced gestational age (Allen, 2016; Grimes, 1984). If the uterine perforation is small and fundal, as when produced by a uterine sound or narrow dilator, observation for vital sign changes or uterine bleeding is usually sufficient.

If a suction cannula or sharp curette passes into the peritoneal cavity, considerable intraabdominal damage can ensue. Laparotomy or laparoscopy to thoroughly examine the abdominal contents is often the safest course. After potential injuries are resolved, intraoperatively, curettage can be completed under the direct guidance provided by laparoscopy or laparotomy (Owen, 2017).

Following curettage, uterine synechiae may form, and the risk of synechiae increases with procedure number. Most cases are mild and of unclear reproductive significance (Hooker, 2014). However, of Asherman syndrome cases, one series found that two thirds were linked to first-trimester curettage (Schenker, 1982).

Other first-trimester abortion complications are germane to both surgical and medication abortion techniques. First, hemorrhage with abortion is variably defined. One supported by the Society for Family Planning is bleeding that prompts a clinical response or bleeding in excess of 500 mL (Kerns, 2013). For first-trimester surgical abortions, hemorrhage complicates ≤1 percent (White, 2015). Atony, abnormal placentation, and coagulopathy are frequent sources, whereas surgical trauma is a rare cause. With medication abortion, bleeding is more common. In one study of more than 42,000 Finnish women undergoing pregnancy termination with pregnancies less 63 days, hemorrhage complicated 15 percent of medication abortion but only 2 percent of surgical cases (Niinimäki, 2009).

Infection is another risk. One review found a cumulative rate of 0.5 percent in those given prophylaxis compared with 2.6 percent in those given placebo (Achilles, 2011). In another review, the postoperative infection rate was <0.3 percent for either surgical or medication abortion (Upadhyay, 2015).

Incomplete abortion may require reevacuation. For medication abortion, this neared 5 percent in one systematic review (Raymond, 2013). Reaspiration rates following surgical abortion are typically <2 percent (Ireland, 2015; Niinimaki, 2009).

In sum, surgical abortion offers higher efficacy rates (96 to 100 percent) than medication abortion (83 to 98 percent) in the first trimester. Medication abortion also carries a greater cumulative risk of complications, although differences are small (Lichtenberg, 2013). These are balanced against the greater privacy of medication abortion and the more invasive steps of curettage.

■ Medication Abortion

Agents Used

For many women, outpatient medication abortion is an acceptable option for pregnancies with a menstrual age ≤70 days. Although suitable at later gestational ages, successful evacuation rates are lower.

Among abortions performed at ≤9 weeks' gestation, 39 percent were completed with medication in the United States

in 2018 (Kortsmit, 2020). One regimen provides mifepristone plus misoprostol, but another provides misoprostol alone. Of actions, mifepristone augments uterine contractility by reversing progesterone-induced myometrial quiescence. Misoprostol directly stimulates the myometrium. Both also ripen the cervix (Mahajan, 1997; Tang, 2007).

Contraindications have evolved from exclusion criteria that were used in clinical trials. Cautions include suspected ectopic pregnancy; in-situ intrauterine device; severe anemia, coagulopathy, or anticoagulant use; long-term systemic corticosteroid therapy; chronic adrenal failure; inherited porphyria; or allergy to agents used (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020c). Of note, misoprostol is suitable for early pregnancy failure in those with prior uterine surgery (Chen, 2008).

Misoprostol is a teratogen that is associated with transverse limb reduction or with the Mobius sequence, which is manifest by cranial nerve palsy. *Thus, a commitment to abortion completion is essential once this drug is given* (Vauzelle, 2013). With mifepristone, for women who choose to continue their pregnancies after exposure, the ongoing pregnancy rate ranges from 10 to 46 percent (Grossman, 2015). The associated major malformation rate was 5 percent in one series of 46 exposed pregnancies (Bernard, 2013).

Administration

Several dosing schemes are effective (Table 11-6). Because of its greater efficacy, mifepristone plus misoprostol combinations are favored. For gestations ≤70 days, the most widely accepted regimen is mifepristone, 200 mg given orally on day 0. This is followed in 24 to 48 hours by an 800-μg misoprostol dose that is administered vaginally, buccally, or sublingually (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020c). Oral ingestion has lower efficacy rates. If desired, mifepristone and misoprostol may be self-administered at home (Gambir, 2020). Associated infection rates approximate 0.3 percent, and antibiotic prophylaxis is not currently recommended (Achilles, 2011).

Symptoms following misoprostol are common within 3 hours and include vomiting, diarrhea, fever, and chills. Bleeding and cramping with medication abortion typically is significantly worse than that with menses. Thus, oral analgesics are provided. If bleeding soaks two or more pads in an hour for at least 2 hours, the woman is instructed to contact her provider.

Reappointment is 1 to 2 weeks following drug administration, and bimanual pelvic examination is recommended. Abortion completion may be assessed with β-hCG levels. Expected rates of decline at 1 week can be extrapolated from Table 11-1 and can guide care. However, specific β-hCG values lack suitable sensitivity (Rørbye, 2004). Moreover, routine postabortal sonographic examination is typically unnecessary (Clark, 2010). If done, it performs comparably to β-hCG level assessment (Dayananda, 2013). If sonography is done due to concern for failed abortion or for bleeding, unnecessary surgery can be avoided if scans are interpreted appropriately. If no gestational sac is seen and no heavy bleeding is noted, intervention is unnecessary. This is true even when, as is common, the uterus contains sonographically evident debris (Reeves, 2008).

TABLE 11-6. Various Regimens for Medical Termination of Pregnancy

First Trimester
Mifepristone/Misoprostol Mifepristone, 200 mg orally, and after 24 hr provide misoprostol[a] 800 μg
Misoprostol[a] Alone 800 μg and then may repeat every 3 hr for 3 total doses
Second Trimester
Mifepristone/Misoprostol Mifepristone, 200 mg orally, and after 24 hr provide misoprostol[a] 400 μg every 3 hr up to 5 total doses[b]
Misoprostol[a] Alone 400 μg every 3 hr up to 5 total doses[b]
Dinoprostone 20 mg vaginal suppository every 4 hr
Concentrated Oxytocin 50 units oxytocin in 500 mL of normal saline and infuse during 3 hr; then 1-hr diuresis (no oxytocin); then escalate sequentially in a similar fashion through 150, 200, 250, and finally 300 units oxytocin, each in 500 mL normal saline

[a]With misoprostol, efficacy is similar for vaginal, buccal, and sublingual routes, whereas oral ingestion is less effective.
[b]If abortion not completed by fifth dose, the cycle may be repeated following a 24-hour rest period.
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019f, 2020c; Raymond, 2019; Schreiber, 2018; Whitehouse, 2020; World Health Organization, 2018.

SECOND-TRIMESTER METHODS

In the second trimester, fetal anomaly or death, maternal health complications, inevitable abortion, or desired termination may be indications for uterine evacuation. As in the first trimester, medication or surgery is an option. In the second trimester, *dilation and evacuation (D & E)* rather than suction D & C is needed because of larger fetal size and bones.

Of options, D & E is a common means in the United States. Of all induced abortions in 2018, nearly 8 percent were performed by D & E at gestational ages >13 weeks (Kortsmit, 2020). Many of the surgical and medication steps for second-trimester abortion mirror those in the first trimester, and differences are emphasized here.

■ Dilation and Evacuation

Preparation

With D & E, wide mechanical cervical dilation is needed for evacuation of fetal parts. The degree needed rises with fetal gestational age, and inadequate dilation risks cervical trauma, uterine perforation, or tissue retention (Peterson, 1983). Thus, presurgical cervical preparation is advised, and main options include hygroscopic dilators or misoprostol (p. 209).

With laminaria, overnight preparation offers optimal cervical dilation (Fox, 2014). Uncommonly, laminaria may fail to adequately dilate the cervix, and serial insertions over several days with an increasing number of tents is an option. Dilapan-S also is suitable. It may be preferable for same-day procedures, as this device achieves its maximal effect in 4 to 6 hours (Newmann, 2014). Supplementing laminaria with mifepristone can aid procedures for gestations >19 weeks (Diedrich, 2020; Goldberg, 2015). In contrast, misoprostol supplementation to hygroscopic dilators failed to add benefits in one metaanalysis (Cahill, 2020).

If a patient changes abortion plans after hygroscopic dilator removal, preterm delivery and PPROM rates are substantial. In one series of 12 such cases, 50 percent ended with miscarriage or perinatal death (Mark, 2019).

Misoprostol alone can be used for cervical preparation. The typical dose is 400 μg given vaginally or buccally 3 to 4 hours prior to D & E. Randomized trial results vary regarding the ability of misoprostol to achieve results equal to that with hydroscopic dilators (Bartz, 2013; Goldberg, 2005; Sagiv, 2015). In women with one prior hysterotomy, the risk of uterine rupture was not elevated by misoprostol cervical ripening in one review but rose to 2.5 percent in those with ≥2 cesarean deliveries (Andrikopoulou, 2016).

With mifepristone alone for cervical ripening, fewer studies provide data. In one, mifepristone alone provided less dilation than hydroscopic dilators (Borgatta, 2012). In another trial, mifepristone given 48 hours before misoprostol created greater cervical dilation compared with misoprostol alone (Carbonell, 2007).

In sum, hygroscopic dilators soften and dilate the cervix before D & E. Sequential insertions or layering agents may be most helpful for later gestations or for an inadequate response to initial hygroscopic dilators alone. Yet, layering adds cost and potential side effects.

With elective abortion, some choose to induce fetal demise prior to D & E to avert a live birth. For this, an intracardiac potassium chloride or lidocaine injection or an intraamnionic or intrafetal digoxin injection is used prior to cervical ripening (Tufa, 2020).

Technique

During D & E, sonography can be used as an adjunct in all cases or selectively in more challenging ones. Perioperative antibiotic prophylaxis mirrors that for first-trimester procedures (p. 209). To reduce postprocedure bleeding, dilute vasopressin can be injected intracervically or as part of a paracervical block (Kerns, 2013; Schulz, 1985). Once adequate cervical dilation is achieved, the initial surgical step drains amnionic fluid with an 11- to 16-mm suction cannula or with amniotomy. This reduces the risk of amnionic fluid embolism and brings the fetus into the lower uterine segment for removal (Owen, 2017; Prager, 2009).

For pregnancies >16 weeks' gestation, the fetus is extracted, often in parts, using Sopher forceps or other destructive instruments. With complete removal of the fetus, a large-bore vacuum curette is used to remove the placenta.

Major complications are infrequent with D & E, and rates range from 1 to 2 percent in large series (Lederle, 2015; Peterson, 1983). These include uterine perforation, cervical laceration, uterine bleeding, and postabortal infection. Prior *cesarean delivery* is not a contraindication for D & E and may be preferred over prostaglandins for those with multiple prior hysterotomies (Ben-Ami, 2009).

Other Surgical Considerations

Placenta previa or the placenta accreta syndrome (PAS) can raise D & E risks. Once diagnosed, PAS typically prompts hysterectomy (Matsuzaki, 2015). For *placenta previa,* D & E is preferred to quickly evacuate the placenta, but the ability to transfuse blood products and perform possible hysterectomy must be available (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019f; Perriera, 2017). Medication abortion may be elected, but the risk for transfusion is greater than with D & E (Nakayama, 2007). Data are conflicting regarding the value of predelivery uterine artery embolization to lessen bleeding risks (Wang, 2019).

In some cases of failed second-trimester medication abortion, hysterotomy may be considered. In other cases, if comorbid uterine pathology is significant, such as numerous large myomas, hysterectomy may provide ideal treatment. Some women with second-trimester pregnancies desire sterilization following evacuation. Because the contracted uterine fundus will lie lower, any laparotomy incision must be placed to allow fallopian tube access.

■ Medication Abortion

Principal among noninvasive methods is a mifepristone plus misoprostol regimen or misoprostol alone (see Table 11-6). Of these two options, the combined regimen yields a shorter termination duration (Kapp, 2007; Ngoc, 2011). Hygroscopic dilators may speed the time to delivery with this combined regimen

(Mazouni, 2009; Vincienne, 2018). In selecting misoprostol routes, oral administration leads to a longer time to delivery compared with vaginal or sublingual routes (Dickinson, 2014). Prophylactic antibiotics are not typically given, and infection surveillance during labor is instead applied (Achilles, 2011).

Another induction agent, PGE_2, shows similar efficacy and side effects compared with misoprostol (Jain, 1994; Jansen, 2008). Simultaneous administration of an antiemetic such as metoclopramide (Reglan), an antipyretic such as acetaminophen, and an antidiarrheal such as diphenoxylate/atropine (Lomotil) will help prevent or treat symptoms. Dinoprostone (Prostin) is an available PGE_2 in the United States. However, its greater cost and poor pharmacologic stability at room temperature may make it less attractive than misoprostol.

During medication abortion, the uterine rupture rate is 0.4 percent with misoprostol and one prior low transverse cesarean delivery (Berghella, 2009). Both misoprostol and PGE_2 appear to pose similar risk (le Roux, 2001; Reichman, 2007). Few data guide their use for medication abortion in those with ≥2 prior cesarean deliveries.

Of other agents, high-dose intravenous oxytocin in saline will result in second-trimester abortion in 80 to 90 percent of cases (see Table 11-6). However, by comparison, misoprostol leads to higher successful induction rates and faster delivery times (Alavi, 2013).

Rarely used in the United States, ethacridine lactate is an organic antiseptic that activates myometrial mast cells to release prostaglandins (Olund, 1980). The solution is instilled either intraamnionically or extraovularly, that is, into the potential space between the uterine wall and amnion. Compared with misoprostol, it is associated with longer times to delivery and lower success rates (Hou, 2011).

Fetal and Placental Evaluation

For second-trimester pregnancies being terminated for maternal health or fetal indications, either D & E or medication abortion is suitable. Thus, patient input and clinical indication both guide selection. Perinatal palliative care can be instituted (p. 203) (Marc-Aurele, 2020).

Evaluation of a stillborn fetus is described in Chapter 35 (p. 626). One component is autopsy, which can also be valuable for second-trimester terminations due to anomalies (Hauerberg, 2012; Man, 2016). Fragmented D & E specimens may provide less information than intact fetuses (Lal, 2014).

ELECTIVE ABORTION CONSEQUENCES

Data relating abortion to overall maternal health and to subsequent pregnancy outcome are limited. Rates of infertility or ectopic pregnancy are not increased (Burkman, 1988; Frank, 1993). Exceptions may stem from postabortal infections, especially those caused by *C trachomatis*. Of subsequent adverse pregnancy outcomes, several studies note an approximate 1.5-fold greater incidence of preterm delivery following surgical evacuation (Lemmers, 2016; Saccone, 2016). This risk accrues with the number of terminations (Klemetti, 2012). Subsequent pregnancy outcomes are similar if a prior induced abortion was completed with medication or by surgery (Männistö, 2013; Virk, 2007).

POSTABORTAL CONTRACEPTION

After early abortion, woman may ovulate after 8 days, but the average is 3 weeks (Lahteenmaki, 1978; Stoddard, 2011). Unless another pregnancy is imminently desired, contraception, either hormonal or nonhormonal, can be started immediately after abortion (Curtis, 2016). In candidates, defined in Chapter 38 (p. 667), an intrauterine device can be inserted immediately after surgery or medication abortion is completed (Bednarek, 2011; Korjamo, 2017).

For women who desire another pregnancy, conception need not be delayed. From studies, groups conceiving within 3 months of a first-trimester loss had lower subsequent miscarriage rates compared with groups with later conceptions (Schliep, 2016).

REFERENCES

Achilles SL, Reeves MF, Society of Family Planning: Prevention of infection after induced abortion: release date October 2010: SFP guideline 20102. Contraception 83(4):295, 2011

Achiron R, Tadmor O, Mashiach S: Heart rate as a predictor of first-trimester spontaneous abortion after ultrasound-proven viability. Obstet Gynecol 78(3 Pt 1):330, 1991

Alavi A, Rajaei M, Amirian M, et al: Misoprostol versus high dose oxytocin and laminaria in termination of pregnancy in second-trimester pregnancies. Electron Physician 5(4):713, 2013

Albrechtsen S, Rasmussen S, Thoresen S, et al: Pregnancy outcome in women before and after cervical conization: population based cohort study. BMJ 18:337, 2008

Alijotas-Reig J, Esteve-Valverde E, Ferrer-Oliveras R, et al: The European Registry on Obstetric Antiphospholipid Syndrome (EUROAPS): A survey of 1000 consecutive cases. Autoimmun Rev 18(4):406, 2019

Allen RH, Fitzmaurice G, Lifford KL, et al: Oral compared with intravenous sedation for first-trimester surgical abortion: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 113(2 Pt 1):276, 2009

Allen RH, Goldberg AB: Cervical dilation before first-trimester surgical abortion (<14 weeks' gestation). Contraception 93(4):277, 2016

Allen RH, Singh R.: Society of Family Planning clinical guidelines pain control in surgical abortion part 1—local anesthesia and minimal sedation. Contraception 97(6):471, 2018

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Antiphospholipid syndrome. Practice Bulletin No. 132, December 2012, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Early pregnancy loss. Practice Bulletin No. 200, August 2018, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Perinatal palliative care. Committee Opinion No. 786, August 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Periviable birth. Obstetric Care Consensus No. 6, October 2017, Reaffirmed 2019d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention of Rh D alloimmunization. Practice Bulletin No. 181, August 2017, Reaffirmed 2019e

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Second-trimester abortion. Practice Bulletin No. 135, June 2013, Reaffirmed 2019f

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: The limits of conscientious refusal in reproductive medicine. Committee Opinion No. 385, November 2007, Reaffirmed 2019g

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Cerclage for management of cervical insufficiency. Practice Bulletin No. 142, February 2014, Reaffirmed 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Inherited thrombophilias in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 197, June 2018, Reaffirmed 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Medication abortion up to 70 days of gestation. Practice Bulletin No. 225, August 2020c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Microarray and next generation sequencing technology: the use of advanced genetic diagnostic tools in obstetrics and gynecology. Committee Opinion No. 682, December 2016, Reaffirmed 2020d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Moderate caffeine consumption during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 462, August 2010, Reaffirmed 2020e

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prelabor rupture of membranes. Practice Bulletin No. 217, March 2020f

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention of infection after gynecologic procedures. Practice Bulletin No. 195, June 2018, Reaffirmed 2020g

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Ultrasound in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 175, December 2016, Reaffirmed 2020h

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Use of prophylactic antibiotics in labor and delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 199, August 2018, Reaffirmed 2020i

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prediction and prevention of preterm birth. Practice Bulletin No. 234, September 2021

American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Definitions of infertility and recurrent pregnancy loss. Fertil Steril 113(3):533, 2020

American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Evaluation and treatment of recurrent pregnancy loss: a committee opinion. Fertil Steril 98:1103, 2012

American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Removal of myomas in asymptomatic patients to improve fertility and/or reduce miscarriage rate: a guideline. Fertil Steril 108(3):416, 2017

American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Uterine septum: a guideline. Fertil Steril 106(3):530, 2016

Ammon Avalos L, Galindo C, Li DK: A systematic review to calculate background miscarriage rates using life Table analysis. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 94(6):417, 2012

Anderson M, Goldman RH: Occupational reproductive hazards for female surgeons in the operating room: a review. JAMA Surg 155(3):243, 2020

Andrikopoulou M, Lavery JA, Ananth CV, et al: Cervical ripening agents in the second trimester of pregnancy in women with a scarred uterus: a systematic review and metaanalysis of observational studies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(2):177, 2016

Arredondo F, Noble LS: Endocrinology of recurrent pregnancy loss. Semin Reprod Med 1:33, 2006

Ashok PW, Flett GM, Templeton A: Mifepristone versus vaginally administered misoprostol for cervical priming before first-trimester termination of pregnancy: a randomized, controlled study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183(4):998, 2000

Balsells M, García-Patterson A, Corcoy R: Systematic review and meta-analysis on the association of prepregnancy underweight and miscarriage. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 207:73, 2016

Barnhart K, Mennuti MT, Benjamin I, et al: Prompt diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy in an emergency department setting. Obstet Gynecol 84(6):1010, 1994

Barnhart K, Sammel MD, Chung K, et al: Decline of serum human chorionic gonadotropin and spontaneous complete abortion: defining the normal curve. Obstet Gynecol 104:975, 2004

Barnhart K, van Mello NM, Bourne T, et al: Pregnancy of unknown location: a consensus statement of nomenclature, definitions, and outcome. Fertil Steril 95(3):857, 2011

Bartz D, Maurer R, Allen RH, et al: Buccal misoprostol compared with synthetic osmotic cervical dilator before surgical abortion: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 122(1):57, 2013

Baxter JK, Airoldi J, Berghella V.: Short cervical length after history-indicated cerclage: is a reinforcing cerclage beneficial? Am J Obstet Gynecol 193(3 Pt 2):1204, 2005

Bednarek PH, Creinin MD, Reeves MF, et al: Immediate versus delayed IUD insertion after uterine aspiration. N Engl J Med 364(21):2208, 2011

Ben-Ami I, Schneider D, Svirsky R, et al: Safety of late second-trimester pregnancy termination by laminaria dilatation and evacuation in patients with previous multiple cesarean sections. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(2):154.e1, 2009

Berghella V, Airoldi J, O'Neill AM, et al: Misoprostol for second trimester pregnancy termination in women with prior caesarean: a systematic review. BJOG 116(9):1151, 2009

Bernard N, Elefant E, Carlier P, et al: Continuation of pregnancy after first-trimester exposure to mifepristone: an observational prospective study. BJOG 120(5):568, 2013

Bhattacharya S, Townend J, Bhattacharya S: Recurrent miscarriage: are three miscarriages one too many? Analysis of a Scottish population-based database of 151,021 pregnancies. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 150:24, 2010

Borgatta L, Roncari D, Sonalkar S, et al: Mifepristone vs. osmotic dilator insertion for cervical preparation prior to surgical abortion at 14–16 weeks: a randomized trial. Contraception 86(5):567, 2012

Boué J, Bou A, Lazar P: Retrospective and prospective epidemiological studies of 1500 karyotyped spontaneous human abortions. Teratology 12(1):11, 1975

Branch DW, Gibson M, Silver RM: Recurrent miscarriage. N Engl J Med 363:18, 2010

Brigham SA, Conlon C, Farquhason RG: A longitudinal study of pregnancy outcome following idiopathic recurrent miscarriage. Hum Reprod 14(11):2868, 1999

Bromley B, Harlow BL, Laboda LA, et al: Small sac size in the first trimester: a predictor of poor fetal outcome. Radiology 178(2):375, 1991

Brown DL, Packard A, Maturen KE, et al: ACR Appropriateness Criteria first trimester vaginal bleeding. J Am Coll Radiol 15(5S):S69, 2018

Burkman RT, Mason KJ, Gold EB: Ectopic pregnancy and prior induced abortion. Contraception 37(1):21, 1988

Cahill EP, Henkel A, Shaw JG, et al: Misoprostol as an adjunct to overnight osmotic dilators prior to second trimester dilation and evacuation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Contraception 101(2):74, 2020

Carbonell JL, Gallego FG, Llorente MP, et al: Vaginal vs. sublingual misoprostol with mifepristone for cervical priming in second-trimester abortion by dilation and evacuation: a randomized clinical trial. Contraception 75(3):230, 2007

Caruso A, Trivellini C, De Carolis S, et al: Emergency cerclage in the presence of protruding membranes: is pregnancy outcome predictable? Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 79:265, 2000

Caspi E, Schneider DF, Mor Z, et al: Cervical internal os cerclage: description of a new technique and comparison with Shirodkar operation. Am J Perinatol 7:347, 1990

Cavalcante MB, Sarno M, Peixoto AB, et al: Obesity and recurrent miscarriage: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 45(1):30, 2019

Chasen ST, Silverman NS: Mid-trimester emergent cerclage: a ten year single institution review. J Perinatol 18:338, 1998

Chen BA, Reeves MF, Creinin MD, et al: Misoprostol for treatment of early pregnancy failure in women with previous uterine surgery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198:626.e1, 2008

Chen LW, Wu Y, Neelakantan N, et al: Maternal caffeine intake during pregnancy and risk of pregnancy loss: a categorical and dose-response meta-analysis of prospective studies. Public Health Nutr 19(7):1233, 2016

Chmait RH, Kontopoulos EV, Chon AH, et al: Amniopatch treatment of iatrogenic preterm premature rupture of membranes (iPPROM) after fetoscopic laser surgery for twin-twin transfusion syndrome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(11):1349, 2017

Chung K, Sammel M, Zhou L, et al: Defining the curve when initial levels of human chorionic gonadotropin in patients with spontaneous abortions are low. Fertil Steril 85(2): 508, 2006

Clark W, Bracken H, Tanenhaus J, et al: Alternatives to a routine follow-up visit for early medical abortion. Obstet Gynecol 115(2 Pt 1):264, 2010

Clowse ME, Jamison M, Myers E, et al: A national study of the complications of lupus in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199:127.e1, 2008

Cnattingius S, Signorello LB, Anneren G, et al: Caffeine intake and the risk of first-trimester spontaneous abortion. N Engl J Med 343:1839, 2000

Condous G, Okaro E, Khalid A, et al: Do we need to follow up complete miscarriages with serum human chorionic gonadotrophin levels? BJOG 112:827, 2005

Connolly A, Ryan DH, Stuebe AM, et al: Reevaluation of discriminatory and threshold levels for serum β-hCG in early pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 121(1):65, 2013

Connor TH, MacKenzie BA, DeBord DG, et al: NIOSH list of antineoplastic and other hazardous drugs in healthcare settings, 2016. National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Publication No. 2016–161, 2016

Coomarasamy A, Devall AJ, Cheed V, et al: A randomized trial of progesterone in women with bleeding in early pregnancy. N Engl J Med 380(19):1815, 2019

Coomarasamy A, Williams H, Truchanowicz E, et al: A randomized trial of progesterone in women with recurrent miscarriages. N Engl J Med 373(22):2141, 2015

Craig LB, Ke RW, Kutteh WH, et al: Increased prevalence of insulin resistance in women with a history of recurrent pregnancy loss. Fertil Steril 78(3):487, 2002

Curtis KM, Tepper NK, Jatlaoui TC, et al: U.S. medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use, 2016. MMWR 65(3):1, 2016

Daif JL, Levie M, Chudnoff S, et al: Group A streptococcus causing necrotizing fasciitis and toxic shock syndrome after medical termination of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 113(2 Pt 2):504, 2009

Danco Laboratories: Mifeprex. 2021. Available at: https://www.earlyoptionpill.com/for-health-professionals/prescribing-mifeprex/. Accessed March 1, 2021

Dayananda I, Maurer R, Fortin J, et al: Medical abortion follow-up with serum human chorionic gonadotropin compared with ultrasonography: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 121(3):607, 2013

Dean G, Colarossi L, Porsch L, et al: Manual compared with electric vacuum aspiration for abortion at less than 6 weeks of gestation: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 125(5):1121, 2015

Dethier D, Lassey SC, Pilliod R, et al: Uterine evacuation in the setting of transabdominal cerclage. Contraception 101(3):174, 2020

Devi Wold AS, Pham N, Arici A: Anatomic factors in recurrent pregnancy loss. Semin Reprod Med 1:25, 2006

DeVilbiss EA, Mumford SL, Sjaarda LA, et al: Prediction of pregnancy loss by early first trimester ultrasound characteristics. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(2):242.e1, 2020

Dickinson JE, Jennings BG, Doherty DA: Mifepristone and oral, vaginal, or sublingual misoprostol for second-trimester abortion: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 123(6):1162, 2014

Diedrich JT, Drey EA, Newmann SJ.: Society of Family Planning clinical recommendations: Cervical preparation for dilation and evacuation at 20–24 weeks' gestation. Contraception 101(5):286, 2020

Dijkstra K, Funai EF, O'Neill L, et al: Change in cervical length after cerclage as a predictor of preterm delivery. Obstet Gynecol 96(3):346, 2000

Dong AC, Morgan J, Kane M, et al: Subclinical hypothyroidism and thyroid autoimmunity in recurrent pregnancy loss: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Fertil Steril 113(3):587, 2020

Dotters-Katz SK, Myrick O, Smid M, et al: Use of prophylactic antibiotics in women with previable prelabor rupture of membranes. J Neonatal Perinatal Med 10(4):431, 2017a

Dotters-Katz SK, Panzer A, Grace MR, et al: Maternal morbidity after previable prelabor rupture of membranes. Obstet Gynecol 129(1):101, 2017b

Doubilet PM, Benson CB, Bourne T, et al: Diagnostic criteria for nonviable pregnancy early in the first trimester. N Engl J Med 369:1443, 2013

Ehsanipoor RM, Seligman NS, Saccone G, et al: Physical examination-indicated cerclage: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 126(1):125, 2015

Eiben B, Bartels I, Bahr-Prosch S, et al: Cytogenetic analysis of 750 spontaneous abortions with the direct-preparation method of chorionic villi and its implications for studying genetic causes of pregnancy wastage. Am J Hum Genet 47:656, 1990

Eschenbach DA: Treating spontaneous and induced septic abortions. Obstet Gynecol 125(5):1042, 2015

Espey E, Dennis A, Landy U: The importance of access to comprehensive reproductive health care, including abortion: a statement from women's health professional organizations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(1):67, 2019

Everett C: Incidence and outcome of bleeding before the 20th week of pregnancy: prospective study from general practice. BMJ 315(7099):32, 1997

Fan HT, Zhang M, Zhan P, et al: Structural chromosomal abnormalities in couples in cases of recurrent spontaneous abortions in Jilin Province, China. Genet Mol Res 15(1):1, 2016

Feodor Nilsson S, Andersen PK, Strandberg-Larsen K, et al: Risk factors for miscarriage from a prevention perspective: a nationwide follow-up study. BJOG 121:1375, 2014

Food and Drug Administration: Spilling the beans: how much caffeine is too much? 2018. Available at: https://www.fda.gov/consumers/consumer-updates/spilling-beans-how-much-caffeine-too-much. Accessed February 25, 2021

Fox MC, Krajewski CM: Cervical preparation for second-trimester surgical abortion prior to 20 weeks' gestation: SFP Guideline #2013–4. Contraception 89(2):75, 2014

Gambir K, Garnsey C, Necastro KA, et al: Effectiveness, safety and acceptability of medical abortion at home versus in the clinic: a systematic review and meta-analysis in response to COVID-19. BMJ Glob Health 5(12):e003934, 2020

Gaskins AJ, Toth TL, Chavarro JE: Prepregnancy nutrition and early pregnancy outcomes. Curr Nutr Rep 4(3):265, 2015

Giraldo-Isaza MA, Fried GP, Hegarty SE, et al: Comparison of 2 stitches vs 1 stitch for transvaginal cervical cerclage for preterm birth prevention. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208:209.e1, 2013

Goldberg AB, Drey EA, Whitaker AK: Misoprostol compared with laminaria before early second-trimester surgical abortion: a randomized trial. Obstet Gynecol 106:234, 2005

Goldberg AB, Fortin JA, Drey EA, et al: Cervical preparation before dilation and evacuation using adjunctive misoprostol or mifepristone compared with overnight osmotic dilators alone: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 126(3):599, 2015

Goldstein SR: Significance of cardiac activity on endovaginal ultrasound in very early embryos. Obstet Gynecol 80(4):670, 1992

Grimes DA, Schulz KF, Cates WJ Jr: Prevention of uterine perforation during curettage abortion. JAMA 251(16):2108, 1984

Grossman D, White K, Harris L, et al: Continuing pregnancy after mifepristone and "reversal" of first-trimester medical abortion: a systematic review. Contraception 92(3):206, 2015

Guiahi M, Davis A, Society of Family Planning: First-trimester abortion in women with medical conditions: release date October 2012 SFP guideline #20122. Contraception 86(6):622, 2012

Habayeb OM, Konje JC. The one-stop recurrent miscarriage clinic: an evaluation of its effectiveness and outcome. Hum Reprod 19(12):2952, 2004

Hadlock FP, Harrist RB, Martinez-Poyer J: In utero analysis of fetal growth: a sonographic weight standard. Radiology 181(1):129, 1991

Hannafin B, Lovecchio F, Blackburn P: Do Rh-negative women with first trimester spontaneous abortions need Rh immune globulin? Am J Obstet Gynecol 24:487, 2006

Hauerberg L, Skibsted L, Graem N, et al: Correlation between prenatal diagnosis by ultrasound and fetal autopsy findings in second-trimester abortions. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91(3):386, 2012

Hawkins E, Nimaroff M: Vaginal erosion of an abdominal cerclage 7 years after laparoscopic placement. Obstet Gynecol 123(2 Pt 2 Suppl 2):420, 2014

Hawkins JS: Lower genital tract procedures. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2017

Heuser C, Dalton J, Macpherson C, et al: Idiopathic recurrent pregnancy loss recurs at similar gestational ages. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203(4):343.e1, 2010

Hirahara F, Andoh N, Sawai K, et al: Hyperprolactinemic recurrent miscarriage and results of randomized bromocriptine treatment trials. Fertil Steril 70(2):246, 1998

Hoffman BL, Hamid CA, Corton MM: Surgeries for benign gynecologic disorders. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2020

Hooker AB, Lemmers M, Thurkow AL, et al: Systematic review and meta-analysis of intrauterine adhesions after miscarriage: prevalence, risk factors and long-term reproductive outcome. Hum Reprod Update 20(2):262, 2014

Hoover RN, Hyer M, Pheiffer RM, et al: Adverse health outcomes in women exposed in utero to diethylstilbestrol. N Engl J Med 365(14):1304, 2011

Hou SP, Fang AH, Chen QF, et al: Termination of second-trimester pregnancy by mifepristone combined with misoprostol versus intra-amniotic injection of ethacridine lactate (Rivanol®): a systematic review of Chinese trials. Contraception 84(3):214, 2011

Hunter TJ, Byrnes MJ, Nathan E, et al: Factors influencing survival in previable preterm premature rupture of membranes. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(9):1755, 2012

Ireland LD, Gatter M, Chen AY: Medical compared with surgical abortion for effective pregnancy termination in the first trimester. Obstet Gynecol 126(1):22, 2015

Jacobs PA, Hassold TJ: The origin of chromosomal abnormalities in spontaneous abortion. In Porter IH, Hook EB (eds): Human Embryonic and Fetal Death. New York, Academic Press, 1980, p 289

Jain JK, Mishell DR: Comparison of intravaginal misoprostol with prostaglandin-E_2 for termination of 2nd-trimester pregnancy. N Engl J Med 331:290, 1994

Jansen NE, Pasker-De Jong PC, Zondervan HA: Mifepristone and misoprostol versus Dilapan and sulprostone for second trimester termination of pregnancy. J Matern Fetal Neonatal 21(11):847, 2008

Jenderny J: Chromosome aberrations in a large series of spontaneous miscarriages in the German population and review of the literature. Mol Cytogenet 7:38, 2014

Jenkins TM, Berghella V, Shlossman PA, et al: Timing of cerclage removal after preterm premature rupture of membranes: maternal and neonatal outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183(4):847, 2000

Kajii T, Ferrier A, Niikawa N, et al: Anatomic and chromosomal anomalies in 639 spontaneous abortions. Hum Genet 55:87, 1980

Kalagiri RR, Carder T, Choudhury S, et al: Inflammation in complicated pregnancy and its outcome. Am J Perinatol 33(14):1337, 2016

Kapp N, Borgatta L, Stubblefield PG, et al: Mifepristone in midtrimester medical abortion: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 110:1304, 2007

Kapp N, Lohr PA, Ngo TD, et al: Cervical preparation for first trimester surgical abortion. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD007207, 2010

Kerns J, Steinauer J: Management of postabortion hemorrhage: release date November 2012 SFP Guideline #20131. Contraception 87(3):331, 2013

Kibel M, Asztalos E, Barrett J, et al: Outcomes of pregnancies complicated by preterm premature rupture of membranes between 20 and 24 weeks of gestation. Obstet Gynecol 128(2):313, 2016

Kilpatrick SJ, Patil R, Connell J, et al: Risk factors for previable premature rupture of membranes or advanced cervical dilation: a case control study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194(4):1168, 2006

Kim C, Barnard S, Neilson JP, et al: Medical treatments for incomplete miscarriage. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD007223, 2017

Klebanoff MA, Levine RJ, DerSimonian R, et al: Maternal serum paraxanthine, a caffeine metabolite, and the risk of spontaneous abortion. N Engl J Med 341:1639, 1999

Klemetti R, Gissler M, Niinimäki M, et al: Birth outcomes after induced abortion: a nationwide register-based study of first births in Finland. Hum Reprod 27(11):3315, 2012
Kolte AM, Bernardi LA, Christiansen OB, et al: Terminology for pregnancy loss prior to viability: a consensus statement from the ESHRE early pregnancy special interest group. Hum Reprod 30(3):495, 2015
Kondracki AJ: Prevalence and patterns of cigarette smoking before and during early and late pregnancy according to maternal characteristics: the first national data based on the 2003 birth certificate revision, United States, 2016. Reprod Health 16(1):142, 2019
Korjamo R, Mentula M, Heikinheimo O: Immediate versus delayed initiation of the levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system following medical termination of pregnancy—1 year continuation rates: a randomised controlled trial. BJOG 124(13):1957, 2017
Kortsmit K, Jatlaoui TC, Mandel MG, et al: Abortion surveillance—United States, 2018. MMWR 69(7):1, 2020
Krieg SA, Shahine LK, Lathi RB: Environmental exposure to endocrine-disrupting chemicals and miscarriage. Fertil Steril 106(4):941, 2016
Kuhn RPJ, Pepperell RJ: Cervical ligation: a review of 242 pregnancies. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 17:79, 1977
Lahteenmaki P, Luukkainen T: Return of ovarian function after abortion. Clin Endocrinol 2:123, 1978
Lal AK, Kominiarek MA, Sprawka NM: Induction of labor compared to dilation and evacuation for postmortem analysis. Prenat Diagn 34(6):547, 2014
le Roux PA, Pahal GS, Hoffman L, et al: Second trimester termination of pregnancy for fetal anomaly or death: comparing mifepristone/misoprostol to gemeprost. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 95(1):52, 2001
Lederle L, Steinauer JE, Montgomery A, et al: Obesity as a risk factor for complications after second-trimester abortion by dilation and evacuation. Obstet Gynecol 126(3):585, 2015
Lemmers M, Verschoor MA, Hooker AB, et al: Dilatation and curettage increases the risk of subsequent preterm birth: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Hum Reprod 31(1):34, 2016
Levi CS, Lyons EA, Zheng XH, et al: Endovaginal US: demonstration of cardiac activity in embryos of less than 5.0 mm in crown-rump length. Radiology 176(1):71, 1990
Levy BS, Ness DL, Weinberger SE: Consensus guidelines for facilities performing outpatient procedures: evidence over ideology. Obstet Gynecol 133(2):255, 2019
Li J, Zhao H, Song JM, et al: A meta-analysis of risk of pregnancy loss and caffeine and coffee consumption during pregnancy. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 130(2):116, 2015
Lichtenberg ES, Paul M, Society of Family Planning: Surgical abortion prior to 7 weeks of gestation. Contraception 88(1):7, 2013
Luise C, Jermy K, May C, et al: Outcome of expectant management of spontaneous first trimester miscarriage: observational study. BMJ 324:873, 2002
MacIsaac L, Darney P: Early surgical abortion: an alternative to and backup for medical abortion. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:S76, 2000
MacIsaac L, Grossman D, Balistreri E, et al: A randomized controlled trial of laminaria, oral misoprostol, and vaginal misoprostol before abortion. Obstet Gynecol 93(5 Pt 1):766, 1999
MacNaughton MC, Chalmers IG, Dubowitz V, et al: Final report of the Medical Research Council/Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists Multicentre Randomized Trial of Cervical Cerclage. BJOG 100:516, 1993
Mahajan DK, London SN: Mifepristone (RU486): a review. Fertil Steril 68(6):967, 1997
Man J, Hutchinson JC, Heazell AE, et al: Stillbirth and intrauterine fetal death: role of routine histopathological placental findings to determine cause of death. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 48(5):579, 2016
Mankowski JL, Kingston J, Moran T, et al: Paracervical compared with intracervical lidocaine for suction curettage: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 113:1052, 2009
Männistö J, Mentula M, Bloigu A, et al: Medical versus surgical termination of pregnancy in primigravid women—is the next delivery differently at risk? A population-based register study. BJOG 120(3):331, 2013
Marc-Aurele KL: Decisions parents make when faced with potentially life-limiting fetal diagnoses and the importance of perinatal palliative care. Front Pediatr 8:574556, 2020
Mark K, Merchant RM, Hu K: Pregnancy outcomes after removal of osmotic dilators in patients who presented for second-trimester abortion. Contraception 99(5):285, 2019
Matsuzaki S, Matsuzaki S, Ueda Y, et al: A case report and literature review of midtrimester termination of pregnancy complicated by placenta previa and placenta accreta. AJP Rep 5(1):e6, 2015
Mayrhofer D, Hager M, Walch K, et al: The prevalence and impact of polycystic ovary syndrome in recurrent miscarriage: a retrospective cohort study and meta-analysis. J Clin Med 9(9):2700, 2020
Mazouni C, Vejux N, Menard JP, et al: Cervical preparation with laminaria tents improves induction-to-delivery interval in second- and third-trimester medical termination of pregnancy. Contraception 80(1):101, 2009
Mazze RI, Källén B: Reproductive outcome after anesthesia and operation during pregnancy: a registry study of 5405 cases. Am J Obstet Gynecol 161:1178, 1989
McCall CA, Grimes DA, Lyerly AD. "Therapeutic" bed rest in pregnancy: unethical and unsupported by data. Obstet Gynecol 121(6):1305, 2013
McDonald IA: Incompetent cervix as a cause of recurrent abortion. J Obstet Gynaecol Br Commonw 70:105, 1963
McGlothlin JD, Moenning JE, Cole SS: Evaluation and control of waste anesthetic gases in the postanesthesia care unit. J Perianesth Nurs 29(4):298, 2014
Meijboom LJ, Drenthen W, Pieper PG, et al: Obstetric complications in Marfan syndrome. Int J Cardiol 110(1):53, 2006
Miyakis S, Lockshin MD, Atsumi T, et al: International consensus statement on an update of the classification criteria for definite antiphospholipid syndrome (APS). J Thromb Haemost 4(2):295, 2006
Moawad GN, Tyan P, Bracke T, et al: Systematic review of transabdominal cerclage placed via laparoscopy for the prevention of preterm birth. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 25(2):277, 2018
Monson MA, Gibbons KJ, Esplin MS, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with a history of previable, preterm prelabor rupture of membranes. Obstet Gynecol 128(5):976, 2016
Morris A, Meaney S, Spillane N, et al: The postnatal morbidity associated with second-trimester miscarriage. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(17):2786, 2016
Murugappan G, Shahine LK, Perfetto CO, et al: Intent to treat analysis of in vitro fertilization and preimplantation genetic screening versus expectant management in patients with recurrent pregnancy loss. Hum Reprod 31(8):1668, 2016
Naert MN, Khadraoui H, Muniz Rodriguez A, et al: Association between first-trimester subchorionic hematomas and pregnancy loss in singleton pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 134(2):276, 2019
Nakayama D, Masuzaki H, Miura K, et al: Effect of placenta previa on blood loss in second-trimester abortion by labor induction using gemeprost. Contraception 75(3):238, 2007
National Abortion Federation: 2020 Clinical Policy Guidelines for Abortion Care. Washington, NAF, 2020
Newmann SJ, Sokoloff A, Tharyil M, et al: Same-day synthetic osmotic dilators compared with overnight laminaria before abortion at 14–18 weeks of gestation: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 123:271, 2014
Ngoc NT, Shochet T, Raghavan S, et al: Mifepristone and misoprostol compared with misoprostol alone for second-trimester abortion. Obstet Gynecol 118(3):601, 2011
Nguyen BT, Chang EJ, Bendikson KA: Advanced paternal age and the risk of spontaneous abortion: an analysis of the combined 2011–2013 and 2013–2015 National Survey of Family Growth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(5):476.e1, 2019
Nielsen S, Hahlin M, Platz-Christensen J: Randomised trial comparing expectant with medical management for first trimester miscarriages. BJOG 106(8):804, 1999
Niinimäki M, Pouta A, Bloigu A, et al: Immediate complications after medical compared with surgical termination of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 114:795, 2009
Nyberg DA, Laing FC, Filly RA. Threatened abortion: sonographic distinction of normal and abnormal gestation sacs. Radiology 158(2):397, 1986
Nybo Andersen AM, Wohlfahrt J, Christens P, et al: Maternal age and fetal loss: population based register linkage study. BMJ 320(7251):1708, 2000
Oliveira LA, El Dib RP, Figueiredo DB, et al: Spontaneous abortion in women occupationally exposed to inhalational anesthetics: a critical systematic review. Environ Sci Pollut Res Int 28(9):10436, 2021
Olund A, Kindahl H, Oliw E, et al: Prostaglandins and thromboxanes in amniotic fluid during rivanol-induced abortion and labour. Prostaglandins 19(5):791, 1980
Owen J, Hankins G, Iams J, et al: Multicenter randomized trial of cerclage for preterm birth prevention in high-risk women with shortened midtrimester cervical length. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(4):375, 2009
Paul ME, Mitchell CM, Rogers AJ, et al: Early surgical abortion: efficacy and safety. Am J Obstet Gynecol 187:407, 2002
Pelosi MA: A new technique for reduction of prolapsed fetal membranes for emergency cervical cerclage. Obstet Gynecol 75(1):143, 1990
Pergialiotis V, Gkioka E, Bakoyiannis I, et al: Retention of cervical cerclage after preterm premature rupture of the membranes: a critical appraisal. Arch Gynecol Obstet 291(4):745, 2015
Perriera LK, Arslan AA, Masch R: Placenta praevia and the risk of adverse outcomes during second trimester abortion: a retrospective cohort study. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 57(1):99, 2017

Petersen SG, Perkins A, Gibbons K, et al: Can we use a lower intravaginal dose of misoprostol in the medical management of miscarriage? A randomised controlled study. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 53(1):64, 2013
Peterson WF, Berry FN, Grace MR, et al: Second-trimester abortion by dilatation and evacuation: an analysis of 11,747 cases. Obstet Gynecol 62(2):185, 1983
Pinar MH, Gibbins K, He M, et al: Early pregnancy losses: review of nomenclature, histopathology, and possible etiologies. Fetal Pediatr Pathol 37(3):191, 2018
Pineles BL, Park E, Samet JM: Systematic review and meta-analysis of miscarriage and maternal exposure to tobacco smoke during pregnancy. Am J Epidemiol 179(7):807, 2014
Pohl E, Gromoll J, Wistuba J, et al: Healthy ageing and spermatogenesis. Reproduction 161(4):R89, 2021
Prager SW, Oyer DJ: Second-trimester surgical abortion. Clin Obstet Gynecol 52(2):179, 2009
Rauch ER, Schattman GL, Christos PJ, et al: Embryonic heart rate as a predictor of first-trimester pregnancy loss in infertility patients after in vitro fertilization. Fertil Steril 91(6):2451, 2009
Raymond E, Grimes D: The comparative safety of legal induced abortion and childbirth in the United States. Obstet Gynecol 119(2, Part 1):215, 2012
Raymond EG, Harrison MS, Weaver MA: Efficacy of misoprostol alone for first-trimester medical abortion: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 133(1):137, 2019
Raymond EG, Shannon C, Weaver MA, et al: First-trimester medical abortion with mifepristone 200 mg and misoprostol: a systematic review. Contraception 87:26, 2013
Reeves MF, Lohr PA, Harwood BJ, et al: Ultrasonographic endometrial thickness after medical and surgical management of early pregnancy failure. Obstet Gynecol 111(1):106, 2008
Reichman O, Cohen M, Beller U: Prostaglandin E2 mid-trimester evacuation of the uterus for women with a previous cesarean section. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 96(1):32, 2007
Renner RM, Nichols MD, Jensen JT, et al: Paracervical block for pain control in first-trimester surgical abortion. Obstet Gynecol 119:1030, 2012
Rikken JF, Kowalik CR, Emanuel MH, et al: Septum resection for women of reproductive age with a septate uterus. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD008576, 2017
Roberts D, Vause S, Martin W, et al: Amnioinfusion in very early preterm prelabor rupture of membranes (AMIPROM): pregnancy, neonatal and maternal outcomes in a randomized controlled pilot study. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 43(5):490, 2014
Rodgers SK, Chang C, DeBardeleben JT, et al: Normal and abnormal US findings in early first-trimester pregnancy: review of the society of radiologists in ultrasound 2012 consensus panel recommendations. Radiographics 35(7):2135, 2015
Rørbye C, Nørgaard M, Nilas L.: Prediction of late failure after medical abortion from serial beta-hCG measurements and ultrasonography. Hum Reprod 19(1):85, 2004
Saccone G, Perriera L, Berghella V: Prior uterine evacuation of pregnancy as independent risk factor for preterm birth: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(5):572, 2016
Sagiv R, Mizrachi Y, Glickman H, et al: Laminaria vs. vaginal misoprostol for cervical preparation before second-trimester surgical abortion: a randomized clinical trial. Contraception 91(5):406, 2015
Sahoo T, Dzidic N, Strecker MN, et al: Comprehensive genetic analysis of pregnancy loss by chromosomal microarrays: outcomes, benefits, and challenges. Genet Med 19(1):83, 2017
Saraswat L, Bhattacharya S, Maheshwari A, et al: Maternal and perinatal outcome in women with threatened miscarriage in the first trimester: a systematic review. BJOG 117:245, 2010
Saravelos SH, Yan J, Rehmani H, et al: The prevalence and impact of fibroids and their treatment on the outcome of pregnancy in women with recurrent miscarriage. Hum Reprod 26:3274, 2011
Savaris RF, Silva de Moraes G, Cristovam RA, et al: Are antibiotics necessary after 48 hours of improvement in infected/septic abortions? A randomized controlled trial followed by a cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204:301.e1, 2011
Schenker JG, Margalioth EJ: Intrauterine adhesions: an updated appraisal. Fertil Steril 37(5):593, 1982
Schliep KC, Mitchell EM, Mumford SL, et al: trying to conceive after an early pregnancy loss: an assessment on how long couples should wait. Obstet Gynecol 127(2):204, 2016
Schneider D, Golan A, Langer R, et al: Outcome of continued pregnancies after first and second trimester cervical dilatation by laminaria tents. Obstet Gynecol 78:1121, 1991
Schreiber CA, Creinin MD, Atrio J, et al: Mifepristone pretreatment for the medical management of early pregnancy loss. N Engl J Med 378(23):2161, 2018
Schulz KF, Grimes DA, Christensen DD: Vasopressin reduces blood loss from second-trimester dilatation and evacuation abortion. Lancet 2:353, 1985
Shennan A, Chandiramani M, Bennett P, et al: MAVRIC: a multicenter randomized controlled trial of transabdominal vs transvaginal cervical cerclage. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(3):261.e1, 2020
Shirodkar VN: A new method of operative treatment for habitual abortions in the second trimester of pregnancy. Antiseptic 52:299, 1955
Shochet T, Diop A, Gaye A, et al: Sublingual misoprostol versus standard surgical care for treatment of incomplete abortion in five sub-Saharan African countries. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 12:127, 2012
Sim WH, Ng H, Sheehan P: Maternal and neonatal outcomes following expectant management of preterm prelabor rupture of membranes before viability. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(4):533, 2020
Sjaarda LA, Radin RG, Silver RM, et al: Preconception low-dose aspirin restores diminished pregnancy and live birth rates in women with low-grade inflammation: a secondary analysis of a randomized trial. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 102(5):1495, 2017
Smith J, DeFranco EA. Tocolytics used as adjunctive therapy at the time of cerclage placement: a systematic review. J Perinatol 35(8):561, 2015
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, McIntosh J, Feltovich H, et al: The role of routine cervical length screening in selected high- and low-risk women for preterm birth prevention. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(3):B2, 2016
Spiegel E, Nicholls-Dempsey L, Czuzoj-Shulman N, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with Ehlers-Danlos Syndrome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med July 13, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Stephenson MD, Awartani KA, Robinson WP: Cytogenetic analysis of miscarriages from couples with recurrent miscarriage: a case-control study. Hum Reprod 17(2):446, 2002
Stoddard A, Eisenberg DL: Controversies in family planning: timing of ovulation after abortion and the conundrum of postabortion intrauterine device insertion. Contraception 84(2):119, 2011
Sun X, Hou N, Wang H, et al: A meta-analysis of pregnancy outcomes with levothyroxine treatment in euthyroid women with thyroid autoimmunity. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 105(4):dgz217, 2020
Tang OS, Gemzell-Danielsson K, Ho PC: Misoprostol: pharmacokinetic profiles, effects on the uterus and side-effects. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 99 Suppl 2:S160, 2007
Terkildsen MFC, Parilla BV, Kumar P, et al: Factors associated with success of emergent second-trimester cerclage. Obstet Gynecol 101:565, 2003
Timor-Tritsch IE, Farine D, Rosen MG: A close look at early embryonic development with the high-frequency transvaginal transducer. Am J Obstet Gynecol 159(3):676, 1988
Trinder J, Brocklehurst P, Porter R, et al: Management of miscarriage: expectant, medical, or surgical? Results of randomized controlled trial (miscarriage treatment (MIST) trial). BMJ 332(7552):1235, 2006
Tufa TH, Prager S, Lavelanet AF, et al: Drugs used to induce fetal demise prior to abortion: a systematic review. Contracept X 2:100046, 2020
Upadhyay UD, Desai S, Zlidar V, et al: Incidence of emergency department visits and complications after abortion. Obstet Gynecol 125(1):175, 2015
van der Marel I, de Jonge R, Duvekot J, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes of preterm premature rupture of membranes before viability. Klin Padiatr 228(2):69, 2016
van Kempen LE, van Teeffelen AS, de Ruigh AA, et al: Amnioinfusion compared with no intervention in women with second-trimester rupture of membranes: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 133(1):129, 2019
Vauzelle C, Beghin D, Cournot MP, et al: Birth defects after exposure to misoprostol in the first trimester of pregnancy: prospective follow-up study. Reprod Toxicol 36:98, 2013
Vincienne M, Anselem O, Cordier AG, et al: Comparison of the induction-to-delivery interval in terminations of pregnancy with or without Dilapan-S. Fetal Diagn Ther 43(1):61, 2018
Virk J, Zhang J, Olsen J: Medical abortion and the risk of subsequent adverse pregnancy outcomes. N Engl J Med 357:648, 2007
Wang X, Chen C, Wang L, et al: Conception, early pregnancy loss, and time to clinical pregnancy: a population-based prospective study. Fertil Steril 79(3):577, 2003
Wang Y, Hu C, Pan N, et al: Prophylactic uterine artery embolization in second-trimester pregnancy termination with complete placenta previa. J Int Med Res 47(1):345, 2019
Waters TP, Mercer BM: The management of preterm premature rupture of the membranes near the limit of fetal viability. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(3):230, 2009
Webber K, Grivell RM: Cervical ripening before first trimester surgical evacuation for non-viable pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD009954, 2015
Weiss JL, Malone FD, Vidaver J, et al: Threatened abortion: a risk factor for poor pregnancy outcome, a population-based screening study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190(3):745, 2004

White K, Carroll E, Grossman D: Complications from first-trimester aspiration abortion: a systematic review of the literature. Contraception 92(5):422, 2015

Whitehouse K, Brant A, Fonhus MS, et al: Medical regimens for abortion at 12 weeks and above: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Contracept X 2:100037, 2020

Witter FR: Negative sonographic findings followed by rapid cervical dilatation due to cervical incompetence. Obstet Gynecol 64:136, 1984

World Health Organization: Medical management of abortion. Geneva, WHO, 2018

World Health Organization: Safe Abortion: Technical and Policy Guidance for Health Systems, 2nd ed. Geneva, WHO, 2012

Xie J, Jiang L, Sadhukhan A, et al: Effect of antithyroid antibodies on women with recurrent miscarriage: A meta-analysis. Am J Reprod Immunol. 83(6):e13238, 2020

Zane S, Creanga AA, Berg CJ, et al: Abortion-related mortality in the United States: 1998–2010. Obstet Gynecol 126(2):258, 2015

Zeisler H, Joura EA, Bancher-Todesca D, et al: Prophylactic cerclage in pregnancy. Effect in women with a history of conization. J Reprod Med 42(7):390, 1997

Zhang J, Gilles JM, Barnhart K, et al: A comparison of medical management with misoprostol and surgical management for early pregnancy failure. N Engl J Med 353:761, 2005

CHAPTER 12

Ectopic Pregnancy

Following fertilization and fallopian tube transit, the blastocyst normally implants in the endometrial lining of the uterine cavity. Implantation elsewhere is considered ectopic. In the United States, numbers from an insurance database and from Medicaid claims showed ectopic pregnancy rates of 1.54 percent and 1.38 percent, respectively, in 2013 (Tao, 2017). Ectopic implantation accounts for 3 percent of all pregnancy-related deaths (Creanga, 2017). Fortunately, beta-human chorionic gonadotropin (β-hCG) assays and transvaginal sonography (TVS) aid earlier diagnosis, maternal survival, and fertility conservation.

TUBAL PREGNANCY

Classification

Of ectopic pregnancies, nearly 95 percent implant in the fallopian tube's various segments (Fig. 2-13, p. 26). The ampulla (70 percent) is the most frequent site (Fig. 12-1). The rate for isthmic implantation is 12 percent; fimbrial, 11 percent; and interstitial, 2 percent (Bouyer, 2002). Nontubal ectopic pregnancies compose the remaining 5 percent and implant in the ovary, peritoneal cavity, cervix, or prior cesarean scar. Occasionally, a multifetal pregnancy contains one conceptus with normal uterine implantation and the other implanted ectopically. This is termed a *heterotopic pregnancy* (p. 231).

For all ectopic pregnancy sites, management is influenced by pregnancy viability, gestational age, maternal health, desires for

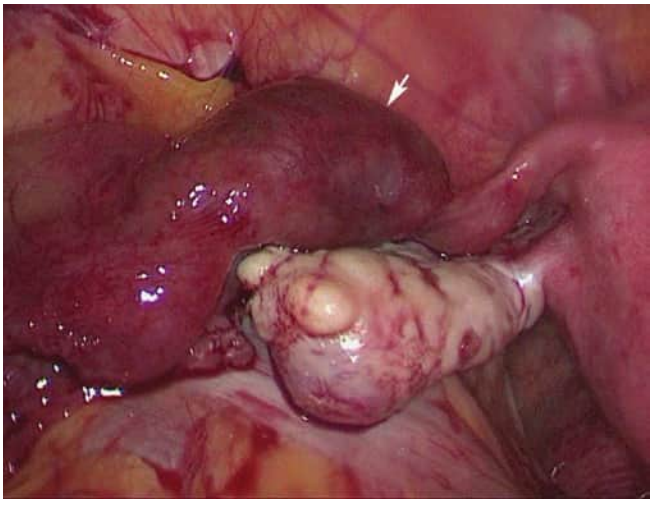


FIGURE 12-1 Ampullary tubal pregnancy (*arrow*) seen during laparoscopy. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Lisa Chao.)

the index pregnancy and for future fertility, physician skill, and available resources. Regardless of location, D-negative women with an ectopic pregnancy are given anti-D immunoglobulin. In first-trimester pregnancies, a single intramuscular 50- or 120-μg dose is appropriate. Later gestations are given 300 μg (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b).

Risks

Abnormal fallopian tube anatomy underlies most cases of tubal ectopic pregnancy. Surgeries for a prior tubal pregnancy, for fertility restoration, or for sterilization confer the highest risk. After one prior ectopic pregnancy, the chance of another nears 10 percent (de Bennetot, 2012). Previous tubal infection, which can distort normal tubal anatomy, is another risk. Specifically, one episode of salpingitis can be followed by a subsequent ectopic pregnancy in up to 9 percent of women (Westrom, 1992). Peritubal adhesions that form from salpingitis, appendicitis, or endometriosis also raise chances.

Infertility and the use of assisted reproductive technologies (ART) to overcome it are linked to increased ectopic pregnancy rates (Li, 2015; Perkins, 2015). Newer techniques aim to lower this rate with ART (Londra, 2015; Zhang, 2017). Smoking is another known association, although the underlying mechanism is unclear (Hyland, 2015). Last, with any form of contraception, the absolute number of ectopic pregnancies declines because pregnancy is effectively prevented. However, some methods more efficiently prevent intracavity implantation and with their failure, ectopic implantation is favored. These methods are tubal sterilization, intrauterine devices (IUDs), and progestin-only contraceptives.

Pathogenesis and Potential Outcomes

With tubal pregnancy, because the fallopian tube lacks a submucosal layer, the fertilized ovum promptly burrows through the epithelium. The zygote comes to lie near or within the muscularis, which is invaded by rapidly proliferating trophoblast. Potential outcomes from this include tubal rupture, tubal abortion, or pregnancy failure with resolution.

With rupture, the invading and expanding conceptus can tear the fallopian tube. Tubal ectopic pregnancies usually rupture spontaneously but may occasionally burst following coitus or bimanual examination. Hemorrhage usually persists and can become life threatening.

Tubal abortion describes the pregnancy's passage out the fallopian tube's distal end. Subsequently, hemorrhage may cease, and symptoms eventually disappear. However, bleeding instead can progress to induce symptoms as long as products remain in the tube. Blood slowly issues from the tubal fimbria into the peritoneal cavity and pools in the rectouterine cul-de-sac. If the fimbriated extremity is occluded, the fallopian tube may gradually distend with blood to form a hematosalpinx. Rarely, an aborted fetus will secondarily implant on a peritoneal surface and become an abdominal pregnancy (p. 231).

Last, *spontaneous failure* reflects ectopic pregnancy death and subsequent reabsorption. These are now more regularly identified by current sensitive β-hCG assays and surveillance.

Distinctions between *acute* ectopic pregnancy, just described, and *chronic* ectopic pregnancy also can be drawn. Acute ectopic pregnancies are more common, produce a high serum β-hCG level, and grow rapidly, leading to a timely diagnosis. These carry a greater risk of rupture (Barnhart, 2003c). With chronic ectopic pregnancy, abnormal trophoblasts die early, and thus serum β-hCG levels are negative or are low and static. Chronic ectopic pregnancies typically rupture late, if at all, but commonly form a persistent complex pelvic mass. This sonographic finding, rather than patient symptoms, often is the reason that prompts diagnostic surgery (Tempfer, 2019).

Clinical Manifestations

Sources of abdominal pain during pregnancy are extensive. Uterine conditions include miscarriage, infection, degenerating or enlarging leiomyomas, or round-ligament pain. Adnexal pain may reflect ectopic pregnancy or ovarian masses that are hemorrhagic, ruptured, or torsed. Appendicitis, renal stone, cystitis, and gastroenteritis are some nongynecological reasons for lower abdominal pain in early pregnancy. Thus, an initial urine β-hCG assay, urinalysis, and measure of hemoglobin or hematocrit are routine. A complete blood count (CBC) to assess the white blood cell count may be preferred if serious infection is a possible diagnosis. A positive urine pregnancy test result should prompt a serum β-hCG assay for those with pain or bleeding.

Before rupture, symptoms and signs of ectopic pregnancy are often subtle or absent. The classic triad is amenorrhea that is followed by pain and vaginal bleeding. With tubal rupture, lower abdominal and pelvic pain is usually severe and frequently described as sharp, stabbing, or tearing. Some degree of vaginal spotting or bleeding is reported by most women with tubal pregnancy. Although profuse vaginal bleeding suggests an incomplete abortion, such bleeding occasionally is seen with tubal gestations. Moreover, tubal pregnancy can lead to significant intraabdominal hemorrhage. Neck or shoulder pain, especially on inspiration, develops in women with diaphragmatic irritation from a sizable hemoperitoneum. Vertigo and syncope may reflect hemorrhage-related hypovolemia.

Of physical findings, abdominal palpation elicits tenderness. Bimanual pelvic examination may reveal a mass and tenderness, but this examination should be limited and gentle to avoid iatrogenic rupture. The uterus itself can be slightly enlarged due to hormonal stimulation. Responses to moderate bleeding include no change in vital signs, a slight rise in blood pressure, or a vasovagal response with bradycardia and hypotension. Blood pressure will fall and pulse will rise only if bleeding continues and hypovolemia becomes significant.

Of laboratory findings, hemoglobin or hematocrit readings may at first show only a slight reduction, even after substantive hemorrhage. Thus, after acute hemorrhage, a trending decline in hemoglobin or hematocrit levels over several hours is a more valuable index of blood loss than is the initial level. In approximately half of women with a ruptured ectopic pregnancy, varying degrees of leukocytosis may reach 30,000/μL.

Decidua is endometrium that is hormonally prepared for pregnancy. The degree to which the endometrium is converted with ectopic pregnancy varies. Thus, in addition to bleeding,

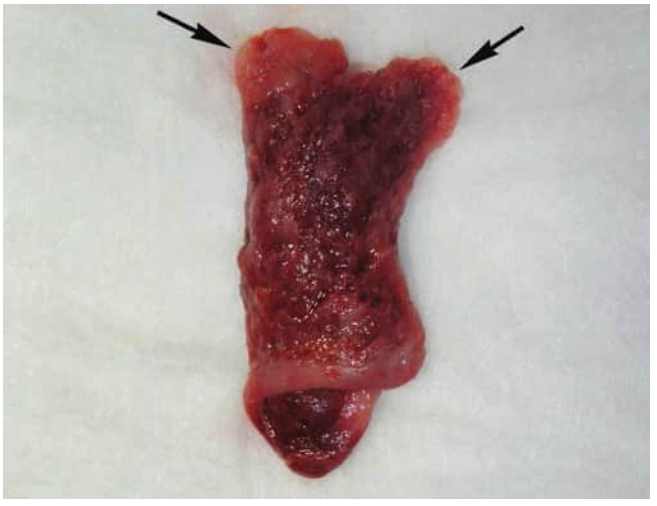


FIGURE 12-2 This 7-cm decidual cast was passed by a patient with a tubal ectopic pregnancy. The cast mirrors the shape of the endometrial cavity, and each arrow marks the portion of decidua that lined the cornua.

women with ectopic tubal pregnancy may pass a *decidual cast.* This is the entire sloughed endometrium that takes the form of the endometrial cavity (Fig. 12-2). Importantly, decidual sloughing may also occur with miscarriage. Thus, tissue is carefully examined by the provider and then submitted to evaluate for histological evidence of a conceptus. If no clear gestational sac is seen by inspection or if no villi are identified histologically, the possibility of ectopic pregnancy must still be considered.

TUBAL PREGNANCY DIAGNOSIS

For ectopic pregnancy, physical findings, serum β-hCG level measurement, TVS, and at times diagnostic surgery are tools for diagnosis. Women with evidence of tubal rupture undergo prompt surgery. For all other hemodynamically stable women without a clearly identified pregnancy, diagnostic strategies use these tools to identify ectopic pregnancy.

Strategies involve trade-offs. Those that maximize ectopic pregnancy detection may terminate a normal intrauterine pregnancy (IUP). Conversely, those that reduce the potential interruption of a normal IUP can delay ectopic pregnancy diagnosis. Patient desires for the index pregnancy are sought and influence these trade-offs.

■ Beta-Human Chorionic Gonadotropin

Rapid and accurate determination of pregnancy is a fundamental step. hCG is a glycoprotein produced by placental trophoblast and can be detected in serum in early pregnancy. Current pregnancy tests are immunoassays that seek the beta subunit of hCG. Lower limits of detection are 20 to 25 mIU/mL for urine and ≤5 mIU/mL for serum (Greene, 2015). Different assays can have results that vary by 5 to 10 percent. Thus, serial values are more reliable when performed by the same laboratory (Desai, 2014).

For women with a positive pregnancy test result plus bleeding or pain, an initial TVS is typically performed to locate the gestation. The initial β-hCG level sets expectations for anticipated TVS finding. With values above a discriminatory threshold, a normal IUP is expected to be seen within the uterus. Some institutions set their discriminatory threshold at ≥1500 mIU/mL, whereas others use ≥2000 mIU/mL. Connolly and associates (2013) suggested an even higher threshold. They noted that with live IUPs, a gestational sac was seen 99 percent of the time in those with a discriminatory level >3510 mIU/mL.

■ Transvaginal Sonography

Pregnancy of Unknown Location

If a yolk sac, embryo, or fetus is found within the uterus or within the adnexa, a diagnosis is made. However, if no evidence of an IUP is seen with TVS, the diagnosis is a *pregnancy of unknown location (PUL).* Most PULs reflect: (1) a failing IUP, (2) recent completed abortion, (3) early IUP, or (4) ectopic pregnancy.

Without clear evidence for ectopic pregnancy, serial β-hCG level assessment is reasonable, and a second level is obtained 48 hours after the first. This practice averts unnecessary methotrexate therapy and avoids harming an early, normal IUP.

With early, normal IUPs, Barnhart and coworkers (2004b) reported a 53-percent minimum rise over 48 hours. Seeber and colleagues (2006) found an even more conservative minimal 35-percent rise in normal IUPs. With multifetal gestation, this same anticipated rate of rise is expected (Chung, 2006).

With a PUL ultimately diagnosed as a failed IUP, a pattern of β-hCG level decline also can be anticipated, and levels drop rapidly (Table 11-1, p. 202) (Barnhart, 2004a). Sometimes, PULs fail before their location is identified. With failing PULs, Butts and coworkers (2013) found rates of decline that ranged from 35 to 50 percent at 48 hours and 66 to 87 percent at 7 days for starting hCG values between 250 and 5000 mIU/mL.

Despite these benchmarks, a third of women with an ectopic pregnancy can also have a 53-percent rise at 48 hours (Silva, 2006). Overall, approximately half of ectopic pregnancies show declining β-hCG levels, whereas the other half have rising levels. Importantly, despite a declining β-hCG level, a resolving ectopic pregnancy may rupture. Rupture at low values likely reflects partial disruption of the vascular connection between trophoblast and maternal vessels. Here, although β-hCG is produced, it is unable to enter circulation and be detected.

After the initial two β-hCG tests during PUL assessment, additional levels are drawn every 2 to 7 days. In general, testing is typically more frequent if symptoms or β-hCG level trends reflect a higher ectopic pregnancy risk (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). TVS also may be repeated. This serial assessment to reach a diagnosis is balanced against the rupture risk if the pregnancy is indeed ectopic. Dilation and curettage (D & C) is an option (Barnhart, 2021). It may give a faster diagnosis but may interrupt a normal IUP. Before curettage, a second TVS examination may be indicated and may display new informative findings.

As noted, ectopic pregnancies can rupture even at low β-hCG levels. Thus, serum β-hCG values are usually followed until they lie below the negative-result threshold for the given assay.

Endometrial Findings

In a woman in whom ectopic pregnancy is suspected, TVS is performed to look for findings indicative of an IUP or ectopic

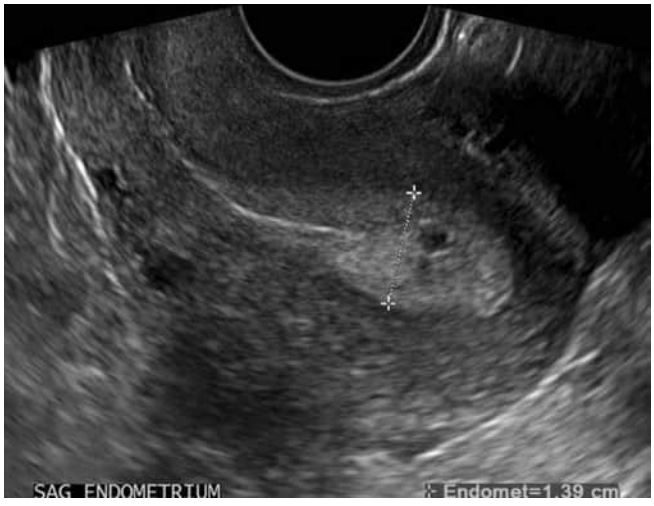


FIGURE 12-3 Transvaginal sonography of a pseudogestational sac within the endometrial cavity. Its central location is characteristic of these anechoic fluid collections. The endometrium is marked by calipers, and distal to this fluid, the endometrial thickness has a trilaminar pattern. This pattern is common with ectopic pregnancy. (Reproduced with permission from Jason McWhirt, ARDMS.)

pregnancy. During endometrial cavity evaluation, an intrauterine gestational sac is usually visible between 4½ and 5 weeks. The yolk sac appears between 5 and 6 weeks, and a fetal pole with cardiac activity is first detected at 5½ to 6 weeks (Fig. 14-1, p. 248). With transabdominal sonography, these structures are visualized slightly later.

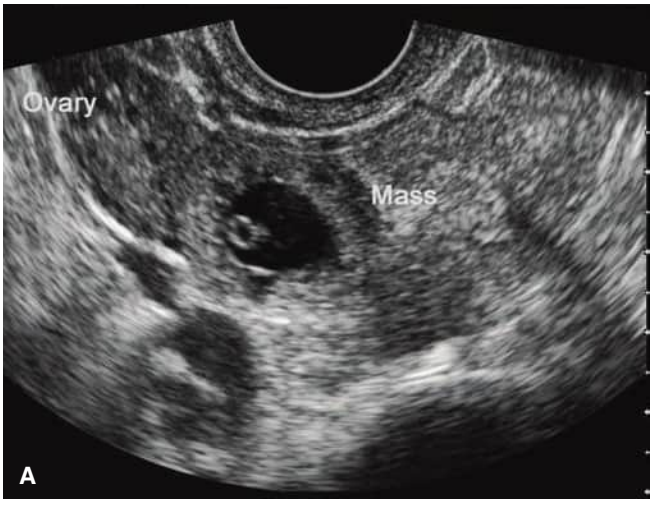
In contrast, with ectopic pregnancy, a trilaminar endometrial pattern is characteristic (Fig. 12-3). Its specificity is 94 percent, but with a sensitivity of only 38 percent (Hammoud, 2005). In addition, Moschos and Twickler (2008) determined in women with a PUL at presentation that no normal IUPs had an endometrial stripe thickness <8 mm.

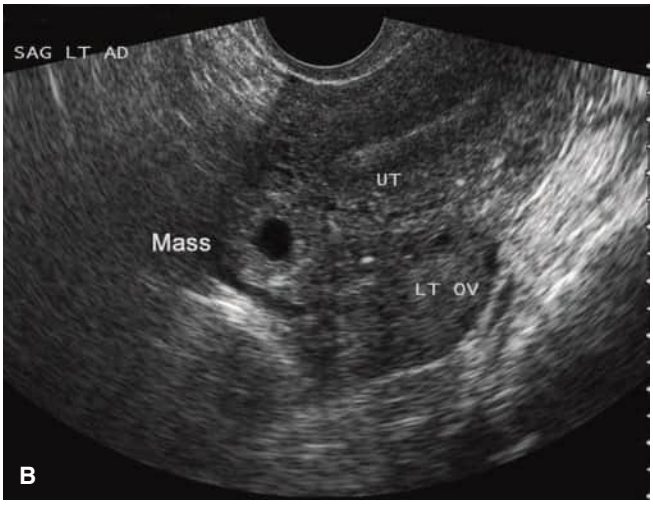
Anechoic fluid collections, which might normally suggest an early intrauterine gestational sac, may also be seen with ectopic pregnancy. These include pseudogestational sac and decidual cyst. First, a pseudosac is a fluid collection between the endometrial layers and conforms to the cavity shape (see Fig. 12-3). If a pseudosac is noted, the risk of ectopic pregnancy is increased (Hill, 1990). Second, a decidual cyst is identified as an anechoic area lying within the endometrium but remote from the canal and often at the endometrial–myometrial border. This may represent early decidual breakdown that precedes cast formation (Ackerman, 1993b).

These two findings contrast with the intradecidual sign seen with IUPs. With this sign, the early gestational sac is an anechoic sac eccentrically located within one of the endometrial stripe layers (Dashefsky, 1988). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020) advises caution in diagnosing an IUP if a definite yolk sac or embryo is not seen.

Adnexal Findings

The sonographic diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy rests on seeing an adnexal mass separate from the ovary (Fig. 12-4). If an extrauterine yolk sac, embryo, or fetus is identified, ectopic





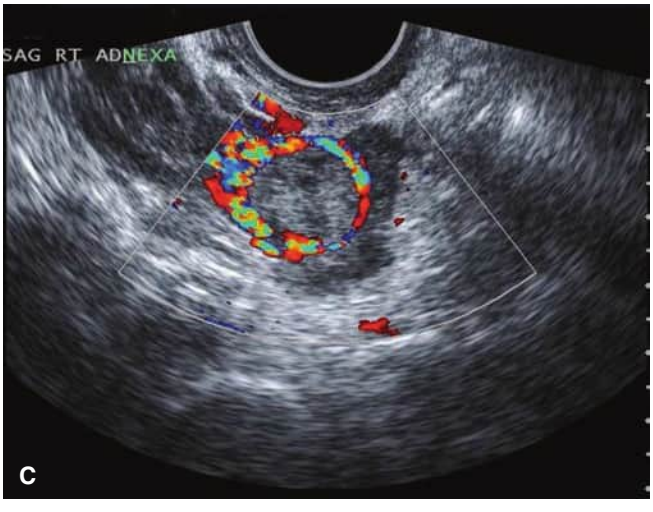


FIGURE 12-4 Various transvaginal sonographic findings with ectopic tubal pregnancies. For sonographic diagnosis, an ectopic mass should be seen in the adnexa separate from the ovary and may be seen as: **(A)** a yolk sac (shown here) and/or fetal pole with or without cardiac activity within an extrauterine sac, **(B)** an empty extrauterine sac with a hyperechoic ring, or **(C)** an inhomogeneous adnexal mass. In this last image, color Doppler shows a classic "ring of fire," which reflects increased vascularity typical of ectopic pregnancies. LT OV = left ovary; SAG LT AD = sagittal left adnexal; UT = uterus.

pregnancy is clearly confirmed. In other cases, a hyperechoic halo or tubal ring surrounding an anechoic gestational sac is seen. Alternatively, hemorrhage within the ectopic pregnancy can form a solid, complex adnexal mass. Overall, 60 percent of ectopic pregnancies are a complex mass; 20 percent are a hyperechoic ring; and 13 percent have an obvious gestational sac with a yolk sac or embryo (Condous, 2005). Importantly, not all adnexal masses represent an ectopic pregnancy. In this case, integration of sonographic findings with other clinical information is necessary.

Placental blood flow within the periphery of the complex adnexal mass—the *ring of fire*—can be seen with application of color Doppler. A corpus luteum cyst often displays a similar vascular pattern, and differentiation can be challenging.

Hemoperitoneum

In affected women, blood in the peritoneal cavity is most often identified using TVS (Fig. 12-5). A small amount of peritoneal fluid is physiologically normal. However, with hemoperitoneum, anechoic or hypoechoic fluid initially collects in the dependent retrouterine cul-de-sac. It then additionally surrounds the uterus as blood fills the pelvis. With significant intraabdominal hemorrhage, blood will track up the pericolic gutters to fill Morison pouch near the liver. Free fluid in this pouch typically is not seen until accumulated volumes reach 400 to 600 mL (Branney, 1995; Rodgerson, 2001). Diagnostically, peritoneal fluid in conjunction with an adnexal mass and a positive pregnancy test result are highly predictive of ectopic pregnancy (Nyberg, 1991). Ascites from cancer is a notable mimic.

If sonography is unavailable, culdocentesis is a simple technique and was used commonly in the past. The cervix is pulled outward and upward toward the symphysis with a tenaculum, and a long, 18-gauge needle is inserted through the posterior vaginal fornix into the retrouterine cul-de-sac. If present, fluid can be aspirated. However, no fluid is interpreted only as unsatisfactory entry into the cul-de-sac. Bloody fluid or fluid with old clot fragments suggests hemoperitoneum. If the blood sample clots, it may reflect an adjacent blood vessel puncture or brisk bleeding from ectopic pregnancy rupture.

Serum Progesterone

Although not our practice, this hormone is used by some to aid ectopic pregnancy diagnosis when serum β-hCG levels and TVS findings are inconclusive (Stovall, 1992). A single value is sufficient. From studies, a serum progesterone level <6 ng/mL (<20 nmol/L) has a pooled specificity of 98 percent to predict a nonviable pregnancy in women with a PUL (Verhaegen, 2012). A value >25 ng/mL suggests a live IUP and excludes ectopic pregnancy with 97-percent sensitivity (Carson, 1993). With most ectopic pregnancies, progesterone levels range between 10 and 25 ng/mL and thus have limited diagnostic utility (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). Serum progesterone levels can be used to buttress a clinical impression, but again they cannot reliably identify location (Guha, 2014).

Endometrial Sampling

Several endometrial changes accompany ectopic pregnancy, and all lack coexistent chorionic villi. Decidual reaction is found in 42 percent of samples, secretory endometrium in 22 percent, and proliferative endometrium in 12 percent (Lopez, 1994). Some recommend that lack of chorionic villi be confirmed by D & C before methotrexate treatment is given. Chung and associates (2011) found that the presumptive diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy is inaccurate in 27 percent of cases without histological exclusion of a spontaneous pregnancy loss. Nevertheless, the risks of D & C are weighed against the limited maternal risks of methotrexate.

Endometrial biopsy with a Pipelle catheter or endometrial aspiration was studied as an alternative to surgical curettage and found inferior (Barnhart, 2003b; Insogna, 2017). Instead, frozen section of curettage fragments to identify products of conception is accurate in 95 percent of cases (Li, 2014).

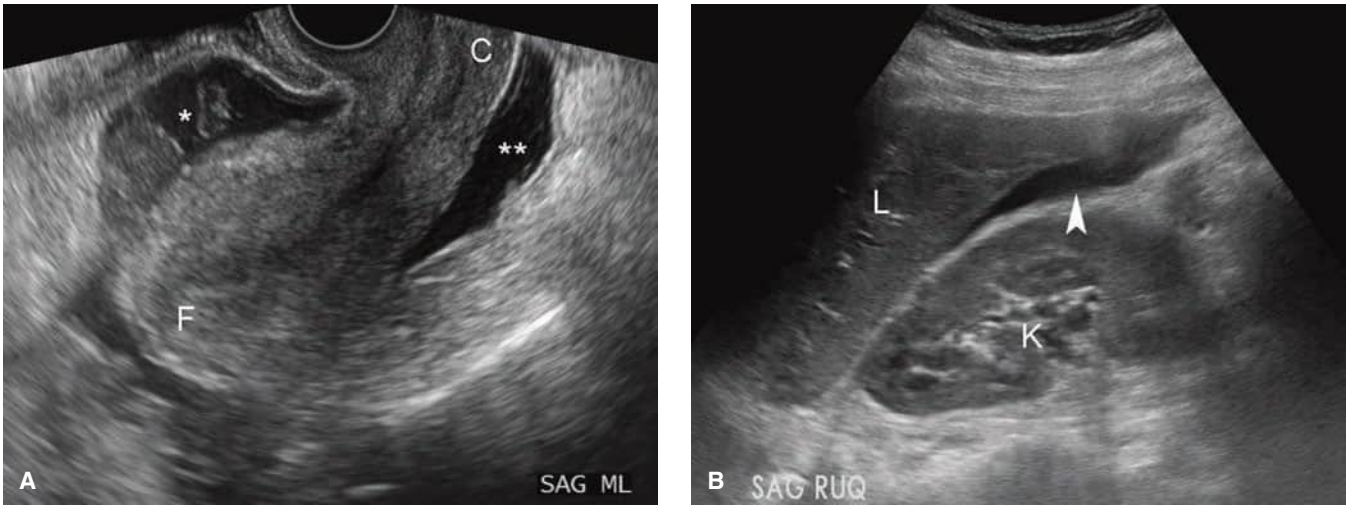


FIGURE 12-5 Hemoperitoneum. **A.** This transvaginal sagittal view of the pelvis shows anechoic fluid initially pooling in the retrouterine cul-de-sac (**). Large accumulations will also extend into the anterior cul-de-sac (*). **B.** In this right upper quadrant sonogram, anechoic fluid is seen in Morison pouch (*arrowhead*). C = cervix; F = fundus; K = kidney; L = liver. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Devin Macias.)

Laparoscopy

Direct visualization of the fallopian tubes and pelvis by laparoscopy offers a reliable diagnosis in most cases of suspected ectopic pregnancy. This also permits a ready transition to definitive operative therapy, which is discussed subsequently.

MEDICAL MANAGEMENT

Regimen Options

For most ectopic pregnancies, medical therapy is preferred, if feasible, to avoid surgical risks. Disqualifying criteria are a ruptured fallopian tube and drug contraindications. Other considerations include reasonably close access to emergency care and a commitment to surveillance laboratory testing.

Medical therapy traditionally involves the antimetabolite methotrexate (MTX). This drug is a folic acid antagonist. It tightly binds to dihydrofolate reductase, blocking the reduction of dihydrofolate to tetrahydrofolate, which is the active form of folic acid. As a result, de novo purine and pyrimidine production is halted, which then arrests DNA, RNA, and protein synthesis. Thus, MTX is highly effective against rapidly proliferating trophoblast. However, gastrointestinal mucosa, bone marrow, and respiratory epithelium also can be harmed.

To help select suitable candidates, laboratory tests are obtained. First, MTX is renally cleared, and significant renal dysfunction, reflected by an elevated serum creatinine level, precludes its use. Second, MTX can be hepato- and myelotoxic, and CBC and liver function tests (LFTs) help establish a baseline. Last, blood type and Rh status are determined. All except blood typing are considered surveillance laboratory tests and are repeated prior to additional MTX doses.

With administration, women are counseled to avoid several aggravating agents until treatment is completed. These are: (1) folic acid-containing supplements, which can competitively reduce MTX binding to dihydrofolate reductase; (2) nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs, which reduce renal blood flow and delay drug excretion; (3) alcohol, which can predispose to concurrent hepatic enzyme elevation; (4) sunlight, which can provoke MTX-related dermatitis; and (5) sexual activity, which can rupture the ectopic pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c).

MTX is a potent teratogen, and MTX embryopathy is notable for craniofacial and skeletal abnormalities and fetal-growth restriction (Nurmohamed, 2011). MTX is excreted into breast milk and may accumulate in neonatal tissues and interfere with neonatal cellular metabolism (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2001; Briggs, 2017). Based on all these findings, a list of contraindications and pretherapy laboratory testing is found in Table 12-1.

For ease and efficacy, intramuscular MTX administration is used most often for ectopic pregnancy treatment, and single-dose and multidose MTX protocols are available. With single-dose therapy, the dose is 50 mg/m^2 body surface area (BSA), and BSA can be derived using various Internet-based BSA calculators. At our institution, patients are observed for 30 minutes following MTX injection to exclude an adverse reaction.

With the multidose regimen, leucovorin is added to blunt MTX toxicity. Leucovorin is *folinic acid* and has folic acid activity. Thus, it allows some purine and pyrimidine synthesis to buffer side effects.

Comparing these two protocols, trade-offs are recognized. Single-dose therapy offers simplicity, less expense, and less intensive posttherapy monitoring. However, some but not all studies report a higher success rate for the multidose regimen (Barnhart, 2003a; Lipscomb, 2005; Tabatabaii, 2012). Overall, ectopic tubal pregnancy resolution rates approximate 90 percent with MTX use. At our institution, we use single-dose MTX.

TABLE 12-1. Medical Treatment Protocols for Ectopic Pregnancy

	Single Dose	Multidose
Dosing	One dose; repeat if necessary	Up to four doses of both drugs until serum β-hCG declines by 15%
Medication Dosage		
Methotrexate	50 mg/m^2 BSA (day 1)	1 mg/kg, days 1, 3, 5, and 7
Leucovorin	NA	0.1 mg/kg days 2, 4, 6, and 8
Serum β-hCG level	Days 1 (baseline), 4, and 7	Days 1 (baseline), 3, 5, and 7
Indication for additional dose	If serum β-hCG level does not decline by 15% from day 4 to day 7 Less than 15% decline during weekly surveillance	If serum β-hCG level declines <15%, give additional dose; repeat serum β-hCG in 48 hours and compare with previous value; maximum four doses
Surveillance	Once 15% decline achieved, then weekly serum β-hCG levels until undetectable	
Methotrexate Contraindications		
MTX sensitivity	Intrauterine pregnancy	Immunodeficiency
Tubal rupture	Peptic ulcer disease	Hepatic, renal, or hematologic dysfunction
Breastfeeding	Active pulmonary disease	

BSA = body surface area; β-hCG = β-human chorionic gonadotropin; MTX = methotrexate; NA = not applicable.
From American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c; American Society for Reproductive Medicine, 2013.

Patient Selection

The best candidate for medical therapy is the woman who is asymptomatic, motivated, and compliant. With medical therapy, some classic predictors of success include a low initial serum β-hCG level, small ectopic pregnancy size, and absent fetal cardiac activity. Of these, initial serum β-hCG level is the best prognostic indicator with single-dose MTX. Reported failure rates are 1.5 percent if the initial serum β-hCG concentration is <1000 mIU/mL; 5.6 percent at 1000 to 2000 mIU/mL; 3.8 percent at 2000 to 5000 mIU/mL; and 14.3 percent for levels between 5000 and 10,000 mIU/mL (Menon, 2007).

Many early trials also used large size as an exclusion criterion. Lipscomb and colleagues (1998) reported a 93-percent success rate with single-dose MTX when the ectopic mass was ≤3.5 cm. This compared with success rates between 87 and 90 percent when the mass was >3.5 cm. These authors also found ectopic pregnancies measuring ≤4 cm and lacking cardiac activity to be suitable candidates. Failure rates rise if cardiac activity is seen, with an 87-percent success rate in such cases.

Side Effects

These regimens are associated with minimal laboratory changes and symptoms, but rarely toxicity may be severe. Kooi and Kock (1992) reviewed 16 studies and reported that adverse effects were resolved by 3 to 4 days after MTX was discontinued. The most frequent were liver involvement—12 percent; stomatitis—6 percent; and gastroenteritis—1 percent. One woman had bone marrow depression. More commonly, 65 to 75 percent of women given MTX will have increasing pain beginning several days after therapy. Thought to reflect separation of the ectopic pregnancy from the tubal wall, this pain generally is mild and relieved by analgesics. In a series of 258 women treated with MTX by Lipscomb and colleagues (1999), 20 percent had pain that merited evaluation in a clinic or emergency department to exclude tubal rupture.

Long term, MTX treatment does not diminish ovarian reserve (Ohannessian, 2014). However, after successful MTX therapy, pregnancy is ideally delayed for at least 3 months, because this drug may persist in human tissues for months after a single dose (Hackmon, 2011). Although data are very limited, conception before this waiting period appears reassuring. In one study, 45 women who conceived <6 months after MTX had similar pregnancy outcomes compared with 80 women who conceived >6 months after MTX (Svirsky, 2009).

Surveillance

As shown in Table 12-1, monitoring single-dose therapy calls for serum β-hCG determinations at days 4 and 7 following initial MTX injection on day 1. After single-dose MTX, mean serum β-hCG levels may rise or fall during the first 4 days and then should gradually decline. If the level fails to drop by ≥15 percent between days 4 and 7, a second MTX dose is recommended. This is necessary in 20 percent of women treated with single-dose therapy (Cohen, 2014). In such cases, a CBC, creatinine level, and LFTs are rechecked. If these surveillance tests are normal, a second equivalent dose is administered. The date of this second injection will become the new day 1, and the protocol is restarted.

Multidose therapy provides MTX (1 mg/kg) treatment with leucovorin (0.1 mg/kg) therapy on alternating days. After this first pair of injections, a serum β-hCG concentration is obtained. Values between days 1 and 3 are anticipated to drop by ≥15 percent. If not and if surveillance tests are normal, an additional MTX/leucovorin pair is given. A serum β-hCG level is repeated 2 days later. Up to four doses may be given if required (Stovall, 1991).

With either dosing regimen, once a decline ≥15 percent is achieved, weekly serum β-hCG level testing then begins until values are undetectable. Lipscomb and colleagues (1998) used single-dose MTX to successfully treat 287 women and reported that the average time to resolution—defined as a serum β-hCG level <15 mIU/mL—was 34 days. The longest time was 109 days.

SURGICAL MANAGEMENT

Options

Before surgery, future fertility desires are discussed. In women desiring sterilization, the unaffected tube can be ligated or removed. This is done concurrently with salpingectomy for the ectopic-containing tube.

Laparoscopy is the preferred surgical approach for ectopic pregnancy unless a woman is hemodynamically unstable. This is supported first by comparable subsequent uterine pregnancy rates and tubal patency rates in those undergoing salpingostomy completed either by laparoscopy or by laparotomy (Hajenius, 2007). Second, laparoscopy has lower infection, adhesion, and thromboembolism risks and faster recovery times than laparotomy. Moreover, as experience has accrued, cases previously managed by laparotomy—for example, those with hemoperitoneum—can safely be managed laparoscopically by those with suitable expertise. However, the lowered venous return and cardiac output associated with pneumoperitoneum must be factored into the selection of minimally invasive surgery for a hypovolemic woman.

Two procedures—salpingostomy or salpingectomy—are options. In the past, some favored salpingostomy to preserve future fertility. However, two randomized trials compared laparoscopic outcomes between the two procedures in women with a normal contralateral fallopian tube. The European Surgery in Ectopic Pregnancy (ESEP) study randomized 231 women to salpingectomy and 215 to salpingostomy. After surgery, the subsequent cumulative rates of ongoing pregnancy by natural conception did not differ significantly between groups—56 versus 61 percent, respectively (Mol, 2014). Again, in the DEMETER trial, the subsequent 2-year rate for achieving an IUP did not differ between groups—64 versus 70 percent, respectively (Fernandez, 2013). However, for women with an *abnormal-appearing* contralateral tube, salpingostomy of the ectopic-containing tube may be preferred if feasible to help preserve fertility.

Of the two procedures, salpingectomy may be used for both ruptured and unruptured ectopic pregnancies. With one

laparoscopic technique, the affected fallopian tube is lifted and held with atraumatic grasping forceps. One of several suitable bipolar grasping devices is placed across the fallopian tube at the uterotubal junction. Once desiccated, the tube is cut from its uterine attachment. The bipolar device is then advanced across the mesosalpinx to free the entire tube.

Salpingostomy is typically used to remove a small unruptured pregnancy. A 10- to 15-mm linear incision is made on the antimesenteric border of the fallopian tube and over the pregnancy. The products usually will extrude from the incision. These can be carefully extracted or can be flushed out using high-pressure irrigation that more thoroughly removes the trophoblastic tissue. Small bleeding sites are controlled with needlepoint electrosurgical coagulation, and the incision is left unsutured to heal by secondary intention (Tulandi, 1991). With either procedure and after specimen removal, the pelvis and abdomen are irrigated and suctioned free of blood and tissue debris to remove all trophoblastic tissue.

■ Persistent Trophoblast

After trophoblast removal during surgery, β-hCG levels usually fall quickly. Persistent trophoblast is rare following salpingectomy but complicates 5 to 15 percent of salpingostomy cases (Pouly, 1986; Seifer, 1993). Incomplete trophoblast removal can be identified by stable or rising β-hCG levels (Hajenius, 1995). Monitoring approaches are not codified. Weekly measures are reasonable following salpingostomy (Mol, 2008). Following uncomplicated salpingectomy, we do not repeat β-hCG levels in women without pain or symptoms of hemoperitoneum.

With stable or increasing β-hCG levels, additional surgical or medical therapy is necessary. In those without evidence for tubal rupture, standard therapy for persistent trophoblast is single-dose MTX, 50 mg/m^2 × BSA. Tubal rupture and bleeding require a second surgery.

■ Medical versus Surgical Therapy

Of options, multidose MTX treatment and laparoscopic salpingostomy have been compared in one randomized trial of 100 patients. The authors found no differences for rates of tubal preservation, primary treatment success, and subsequent fertility (Dias Pereira, 1999; Hajenius, 1997).

For single-dose MTX, its efficacy compared with laparoscopic salpingostomy shows conflicting results. In one randomized trial, single-dose MTX was less successful in pregnancy resolution, whereas in the other, single-dose MTX was equally effective (Saraj, 1998; Sowter, 2001). Krag Moeller and associates (2009) reported during a median surveillance period of 8.6 years that ectopic-resolution success rates and cumulative spontaneous IUP rates were not significantly different between those managed by laparoscopic salpingostomy and those treated with single-dose MTX.

Salpingectomy effectively removes the entire conceptus and yields high resolution rates. It thus outperforms MTX in this regard. Yet, when future fertility and ectopic pregnancy recurrence rates are analyzed, both salpingectomy and MTX therapy show comparable results (de Bennetot, 2012; Irani, 2017). In another study, surgery, MTX, or expectant management all yielded statistically similar subsequent spontaneous IUP rates (Demirdag, 2017).

In sum, medical or surgical management offer similar outcomes in women who are hemodynamically stable, have serum β-hCG concentrations <5000 mIU/mL, and have a small pregnancy with no cardiac activity. Despite lower success rates with medical therapy for women with larger tubal size, higher serum β-hCG levels, and fetal cardiac activity, medical management can be offered to the motivated woman who understands the risks of emergency surgery in the event of treatment failure.

■ Expectant Management

In select asymptomatic women, observation of a very early tubal pregnancy that is associated with stable or falling serum β-hCG levels is reasonable. A commitment to surveillance visits and relative proximity to emergency care are other safeguards. Importantly, this differs from expectant management of a PUL during its evaluation.

Predictive factors for success include a low initial serum β-hCG concentration, a significant drop in levels over 48 hours, and a sonographic inhomogeneous mass rather than a tubal halo or other gestational structures. For example, initial values <175 mIU/mL predict spontaneous resolution in 88 to 96 percent of attempts (Elson, 2004; Kirk, 2011). Initial values <1000 mIU/mL have success rates ranging from 71 to 92 percent (Jurkovic, 2017; Mavrelos, 2013; Silva, 2015).

With expectant management, subsequent rates of tubal patency and intrauterine pregnancy are comparable with surgery (Helmy, 2007). That said, compared with the established safety of medical or surgical therapy, the prolonged surveillance and risks of tubal rupture support the practice of expectant therapy only in appropriately selected and counseled women.

INTERSTITIAL PREGNANCY

■ Diagnosis

An interstitial pregnancy is one that implants within the tubal segment that lies within the muscular uterine wall (Fig. 12-6). Incorrectly, they may be called cornual pregnancies, but this term describes a conception that develops in the rudimentary horn of a uterus with a müllerian anomaly. Risk factors are similar to others discussed for tubal ectopic pregnancy, although previous ipsilateral salpingectomy is a specific one for interstitial pregnancy (Lau, 1999). Undiagnosed interstitial pregnancies usually rupture following 8 to 16 weeks of amenorrhea, which is later than for more distal tubal pregnancies. The myometrium covering the interstitial fallopian tube segment permits greater distention before rupture. Because of the proximity of these pregnancies to the uterine and ovarian arteries, hemorrhage can be severe and associated with mortality rates as high as 2.5 percent (Tulandi, 2004).

In many cases, these pregnancies are identified early, but diagnosis can still be challenging. These pregnancies sonographically

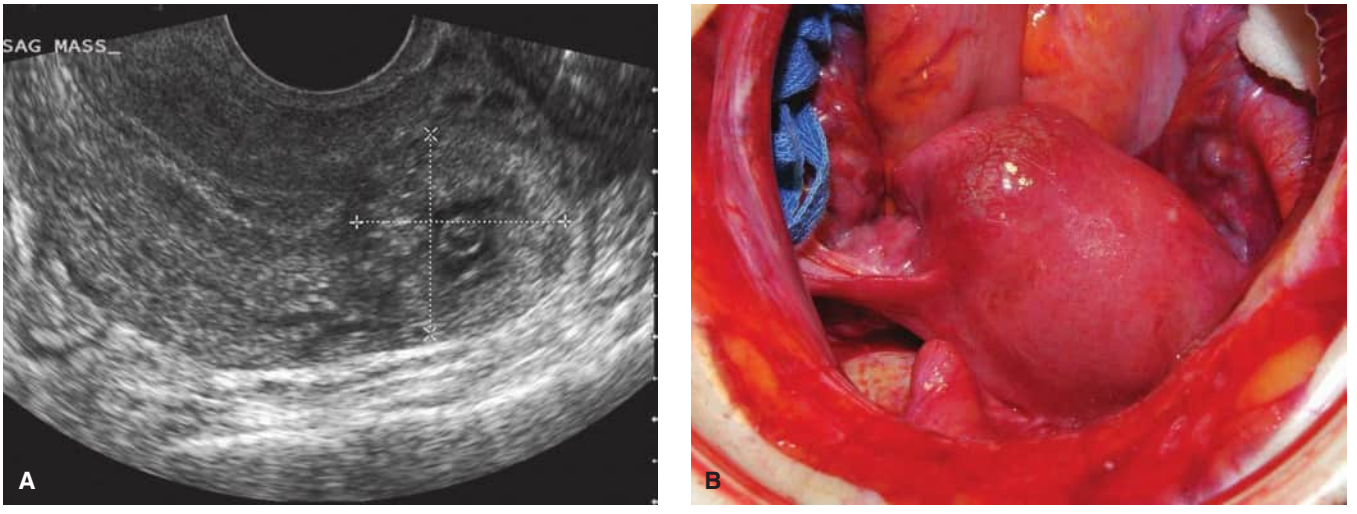


FIGURE 12-6 Interstitial ectopic pregnancy. **A.** This parasagittal view using transvaginal sonography shows an empty uterine cavity and a mass that is cephalad and lateral to the uterine fundus (*calipers*). **B.** Intraoperative photograph during laparotomy and before cornual resection of the same ectopic pregnancy. In this frontal view, the bulging right-sided interstitial ectopic pregnancy is lateral to the round ligament insertion and medial to the isthmic portion of the fallopian tube. (Reproduced with permission from Drs. David Rogers and Elaine Duryea.)

can appear similar to an eccentrically implanted IUP, especially in a uterus with a müllerian anomaly. Criteria that may aid differentiation include: an empty uterus, a gestational sac seen separate from the endometrium and >1 cm away from the most lateral edge of the uterine cavity, and a thin, <5-mm myometrial mantle surrounding the sac (Timor-Tritsch, 1992). Moreover, an echogenic line, known as the *interstitial line sign*, extending from the gestational sac to the endometrial cavity most likely represents the interstitial portion of the fallopian tube and is highly sensitive and specific (Ackerman, 1993a). In unclear cases, three-dimensional (3-D) sonography, magnetic resonance (MR) imaging, or diagnostic laparoscopy can help clarify anatomy. Laparoscopically, a myometrial protuberance is seen to lie lateral to the round ligament and coexists with normal distal tubes and ovaries.

■ Management

Surgically, either cornual resection or cornuostomy may be performed via laparotomy or laparoscopy, depending on patient hemodynamic stability and surgeon expertise. With either approach, intraoperative intramyometrial vasopressin injection may limit surgical blood loss. Cornual resection removes the gestational sac and surrounding cornual myometrium by means of a wedge excision (Fig. 12-7). Alternatively, cornuostomy involves incision of the cornual myometrium and suction or instrument extraction of the pregnancy. Both instances require layered myometrial closure. β-hCG levels are monitored postoperatively to exclude remnant trophoblast.

With early diagnosis, medical management may be considered. However, consensus regarding MTX regimens is lacking because of small study numbers. Jermy and coworkers (2004) reported a 94-percent success with systemic MTX using a dose of 50 mg/m^2 × BSA. Others employ a traditional multidose MTX regimen (Hiersch, 2014). Direct MTX injection into the gestational sac also offers comparable success (Framarino-dei-Malatesta, 2014). Last, a uterine artery MTX infusion followed by uterine artery embolization (UAE) is termed *chemoembolization* by some. This combined with systemic MTX has shown promise (Krissi, 2014).

The risk of uterine rupture with subsequent pregnancies following either medical or surgical management is undefined. Thus, elective cesarean delivery after $37^{0/7}$ weeks' gestation, which is timed similarly to those with prior at-risk myomectomy, is reasonable (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021).

Distinct from interstitial pregnancy, the term *angular pregnancy* is used by some to describe eccentric implantation near

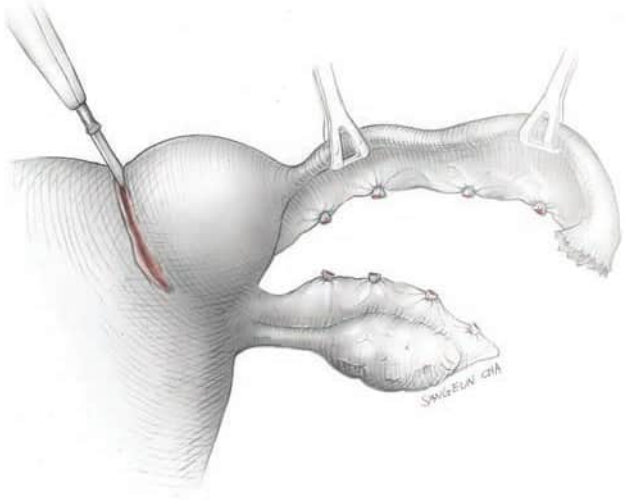


FIGURE 12-7 During cornual resection, the pregnancy, surrounding myometrium, and ipsilateral fallopian tube are excised en bloc. The incision is angled inward as it is deepened. This creates a wedge shape into the myometrium, which is then closed in layers with delayed-absorbable suture. The serosa is closed with subcuticular style suturing. (Reproduced with permission from Hoffman BL, Hamid CA, Corton MM: Surgeries for benign gynecologic conditions. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al: Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

one cornu but within the endometrial cavity. In one prospective case series of 42 such pregnancies, 80 percent progressed to a viable age, and abnormal placentation or uterine rupture did not develop (Bollig, 2020). These eccentrically implanted early IUPs are managed as normal pregnancies at our institution.

CESAREAN SCAR PREGNANCY

Diagnosis

This term describes implantation within the myometrium of a prior cesarean delivery scar. Its incidence approximates 1 case in 2000 normal pregnancies and has increased along with the cesarean delivery rate (Rotas, 2006).

Women with symptomatic cesarean scar pregnancy (CSP) usually present early, and pain and bleeding are common. Still, up to 40 percent of women are asymptomatic, and the diagnosis is made during routine sonographic examination (Rotas, 2006). Sonographic criteria are described in Figure 12-8 (Timor-Tritsch, 2012). Further, CSP implantation can be divided into *endogenic* and *exogenic* patterns. Endogenic CSPs implant on the scar and expand toward the uterine cavity, whereas exogenic ones implant deeply within the scar niche and grow toward the bladder or abdominal cavity. In one small study of CSPs that continued to viability, endogenic CSPs yielded variable obstetric outcomes, whereas all exogenic CSPs underwent hysterectomy with placenta accreta spectrum (PAS) at delivery (Kaelin Agten, 2017).

Sonographically, differentiating between an IUP implanted at the cervicoisthmic junction and a CSP can be difficult. Investigators in one study marked the midpoint of the uterine length (cervix to fundus) in sagittal views. If the center of the gestational sac lay distal to this midpoint, a CSP was diagnosed (Timor-Tritsch, 2016). A spontaneous expelling abortus is another mimic. Color Doppler will show the intense placental vascularity around a CSP, whereas as the aborting sac is avascular. Moreover, gentle pressure applied to the cervix by the vaginal probe will fail to move an implanted gestation—a negative sliding sign. Instead, an aborted sac will slide against the endocervical canal (Jurkovic, 2003). TVS is the typical first-line imaging tool, but MR imaging is useful for inconclusive cases.

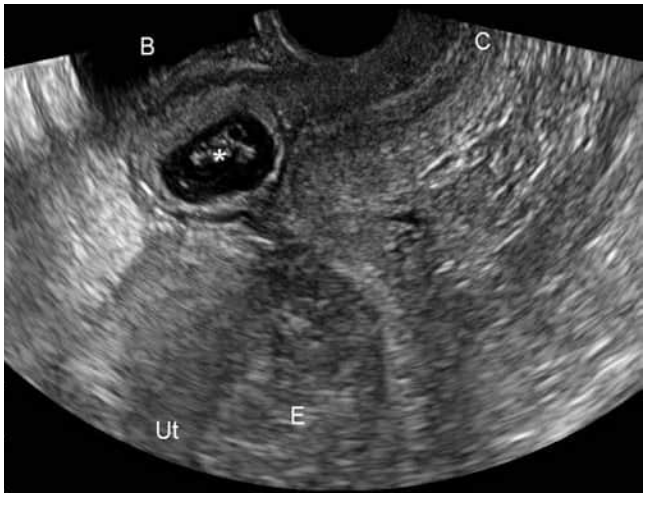


FIGURE 12-8 Transvaginal sonogram of a uterus with a cesarean scar pregnancy in a sagittal plane. Diagnostic criteria include: (1) an empty uterine cavity (*E*) and empty endocervical canal, (2) placenta or gestational sac (*asterisk*) embedded in the hysterotomy scar niche, (3) a thin myometrial mantle between the gestational sac and bladder (*B*), and (4) a prominent vascular pattern at the scar. C = cervix; Ut = anterior uterine wall.

Management

Insights into the pathogenesis of CSPs are expanding management options. Namely, growing evidence suggests that some of these pregnancies will not behave as a typical ectopic pregnancy, and rupture rates are lower. CSPs are thought by some to be a precursor of PAS (Timor-Tritsch, 2014). As such, a significant percentage of affected pregnancies will progress to a viable-aged neonate, albeit with the complications associated with PAS (Calì, 2018; Timor-Tritsch, 2015b).

Patients may prefer to avoid rupture and PAS risks and seek pregnancy termination. From one literature review, the most successful operations include: (1) laparoscopic uterine isthmic resection; (2) transvaginal isthmic resection through an anterior colpotomy, created similarly to anterior entry during vaginal hysterectomy; (3) UAE, followed by D & C with or without hysteroscopy; and (4) hysteroscopic resection (Birch Petersen, 2016; Wang, 2014). The Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM) (2020) considers sonography-guided vacuum aspiration alone, but not sharp curettage, to be suitable. In some instances, hysterectomy is required or may be elected in those not desiring future fertility.

Medical management is an option for those hoping to avoid surgery. However, compared with surgery, pregnancy resolution rates are more varied and lengthier. In one review, local MTX injection into the gestational sac alone provided a success rate of 60 percent, and systemic plus local MTX raised the rate to nearly 80 percent (Maheux-Lacroix, 2017). The SMFM (2020) recommends against systemic MTX alone.

With local MTX, doses of 1 mg/kg or 50-mg doses have been described. Prior to local MTX, fetal death can be induced in more advanced gestations by potassium chloride (KCL) injection into the sac (Grechukhina, 2018). One option is 1 mL of 2 mEq/mL KCL. Also, if associated bleeding complicates medical management, a Foley balloon catheter can be placed and expanded (Timor-Tritsch, 2015a). Recently, a novel double-balloon catheter, in which the balloons lie in tandem, has been used with MTX to resolve CSPs (Monteagudo, 2019). The cephalad balloon is filled within the endometrial cavity to prevent device expulsion. The lower balloon is tightly inflated to interrupt the CSP via mechanical pressure and tamponades potential bleeding.

Following conservative treatment, subsequent pregnancies have good outcomes, but PAS and recurrent CSP are risks (Gao, 2016; Wang, 2015). In one series of 30 CSPs, five subsequent pregnancies developed normally, whereas four were recurrent CSPs (Grechukhina, 2018). Uterine arteriovenous malformations are a potential long-term complication (Timor-Tritsch, 2015b).

CSPs have also been expectantly managed. The Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine (2020) recommends against this practice. Exceptions may be early CSPs with evidence of pregnancy failure. One review of 69 patients continuing their gestation found that uterine rupture or dehiscence complicated 10 percent of all

cases (Calì, 2018). During the first or second trimester, hysterectomy was performed in 15 percent. For the 40 patients progressing to the third trimester, 17 had placenta percreta, 23 patients underwent hysterectomy, and two patients had uterine rupture or dehiscence. For all trimesters, 60 percent of cases ultimately underwent hysterectomy. More reassuringly, in early pregnancies without cardiac activity, 70 percent had uncomplicated miscarriage, whereas 30 percent required surgical or medical intervention. Of these early demises, none required hysterectomy.

Women accepting expectant care are ideally well counseled on these potential obstetric complications. If not prompted by earlier complications, repeat cesarean delivery is recommended at $34^{0/7}$ and $35^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation, and this timing recognizes the PAS and uterine rupture risks associated with CSP. Betamethasone to hasten lung maturity is recommended prior to delivery (Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine, 2020).

CERVICAL PREGNANCY

Diagnosis

This rare ectopic pregnancy is defined first by cervical glands noted histologically opposite the placental attachment site. Second, all or part of the placenta lies at a level below the entrance of the uterine vessels or below the peritoneal reflection on the anterior uterus. Trophoblast invades the endocervix, and the pregnancy develops in the fibrous cervical wall. Risk factors include ART and prior uterine curettage (Ginsburg, 1994).

Painless vaginal bleeding is reported by 90 percent of women with a cervical pregnancy, and it can be severe (Ushakov, 1997). As pregnancy progresses, a distended, thin-walled cervix with a partially dilated external os may be evident. Above the cervical mass, a slightly enlarged uterine fundus is felt. Typical sonographic findings are shown and described in Figure 12-9. In some cases, MR imaging and 3-D TVS can aid diagnosis.

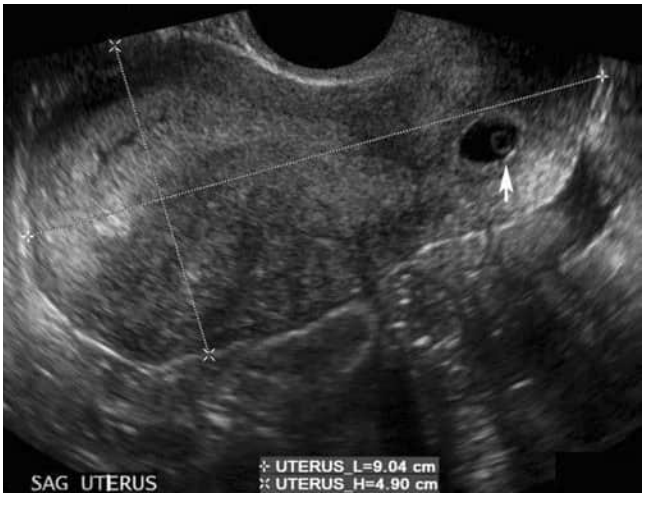


FIGURE 12-9 Cervical pregnancy. Transvaginal sonographic findings may include: (1) an hourglass uterine shape and ballooned cervix; (2) gestational tissue at the level of the cervix (*arrow*); (3) absent intrauterine gestational tissue; and (4) a portion of the endocervical canal seen interposed between the gestation and the endometrial canal. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Angela Seasely.)

At times, cervical ectopic pregnancy can mimic a miscarriage in transit through the cervix. Similar to CSPs and described in that section, color Doppler will show the intense vascularity of cervical implantation, and gentle pressure applied to the cervix by the vaginal probe will fail to move an implanted gestation—a negative sliding sign.

Management

Cervical pregnancy may be treated medically or surgically. In many centers, including ours, MTX is first-line therapy in hemodynamically stable women. Of options, single- or multidose systemic MTX and dosing found in Table 12-1 are suitable (Murji, 2015). Alternatively, 50 mg of MTX can be injected directly into the gestational sac (Jeng, 2007; Yamaguchi, 2017). Others describe chemoembolization with MTX and UAE, as described for interstitial pregnancy (p. 228).

With MTX regimens, resolution and uterine preservation are achieved for gestations <12 weeks in 91 percent of cases (Kung, 1997). To select appropriate candidates, Hung and colleagues (1996) noted higher risks of systemic MTX treatment failure in those with a gestational age >9 weeks, β-hCG levels >10,000 mIU/mL, crown-rump length >10 mm, and fetal cardiac activity. For this reason, feticidal KCL can be injected into the fetus or gestational sac (Verma, 2009). Notably, during posttherapy surveillance, sonographic resolution lags far behind serum β-hCG level regression (Song, 2009).

Although conservative management is feasible for many women with cervical pregnancies, suction evacuation or hysterectomy may be selected. Moreover, hysterectomy may be required with bleeding uncontrolled by conservative methods (Fowler, 2021). *During hysterectomy, because of the close proximity of the ureters to the ballooned cervix, urinary tract injury rates are a concern.*

If suction evacuation of the cervix is planned, intraoperative bleeding may be lessened by preoperative UAE, by intracervical vasopressin injection, or by a cerclage placed at the internal cervical os to compress feeding vessels (Chen, 2015; Fylstra, 2014; Wang, 2011). Cervical branches of the uterine artery can effectively be ligated with vaginal placement of hemostatic cervical sutures on the lateral aspects of the cervix at 3 and 9 o'clock (Bianchi, 2011).

As an adjunct to medical or surgical therapy, UAE has been described either as a response to bleeding or as a preprocedural prevention (Hirakawa, 2009; Zakaria, 2011). Also, in the event of hemorrhage, a 26F Foley catheter with a 30-mL balloon can be placed intracervically and inflated to effect hemostasis by vessel tamponade and to monitor bloody drainage. The balloon remains inflated for 24 to 48 hours and is gradually decompressed over a few days (Ushakov, 1997).

ABDOMINAL PREGNANCY

Diagnosis

These rare ectopic pregnancies are defined as an implantation in the peritoneal cavity exclusive of tubal, ovarian, or

intraligamentous implantations. Most are thought to follow early tubal rupture or tubal abortion with reimplantation.

Clinically, symptoms may be absent or vague. Laboratory tests are typically uninformative, although maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein levels can be elevated. With later gestations, abnormal fetal positions may be palpated, or the cervix is displaced (Zeck, 2007). Sonographically, clues are a fetus or placenta seen eccentrically positioned within the pelvis or separate from the uterus; lack of myometrium between the fetus and the maternal anterior abdominal wall or bladder; or bowel loops surrounding the gestational sac (Allibone, 1981; Chukus, 2015). Oligohydramnios is common but nonspecific. Often needed, MR imaging can aid diagnosis and provide placental information.

Management

Abdominal pregnancy treatment depends on the gestational age at diagnosis. Conservative expectant management carries a maternal risk for sudden, dangerous hemorrhage. Moreover, Stevens (1993) reported fetal malformations and deformations in 20 percent. Thus, we believe that termination generally is indicated once the diagnosis is made. Certainly, before 24 weeks' gestation, conservative treatment rarely is justified. Despite this, some describe waiting until fetal viability with close surveillance (Harirah, 2016).

Principal surgical objectives are delivery of the fetus and careful assessment of placental implantation without provoking hemorrhage. Unnecessary exploration is avoided because the anatomy is commonly distorted and surrounding areas are extremely vascular. Importantly, placental removal may precipitate torrential hemorrhage because the normal hemostatic mechanism of myometrial contraction to constrict hypertrophied blood vessels is lacking. If it is obvious that the placenta can be safely removed or if the implantation site is already bleeding, then removal begins immediately. Blood vessels supplying the placenta are ideally ligated first. For early gestations, locally injected dilute vasopressin also can be employed.

Some advocate leaving the placenta in place as the lesser of two evils. It decreases the chance of immediate life-threatening hemorrhage, but at the expense of long-term sequelae. Placental embolization may play a role prior to or following fetal extraction (Frischhertz, 2019; Marcelin, 2018). If left in the abdominal cavity, the placenta can form abscesses, adhesions, intestinal or ureteral obstruction, and wound dehiscence (Bergstrom, 1998; Martin, 1988). In many of these cases, surgical removal becomes inevitable. If the placenta is left, its involution can be monitored using serum β-hCG levels and color Doppler sonography or MR imaging (France, 1980; Martin, 1990). Placental function usually declines rapidly. The placenta is eventually resorbed, but this can take months or years with advanced gestations (Valenzano, 2003).

If the placenta is left, postoperative MTX is often given to hasten involution. Accelerated placental destruction with accumulation of necrotic tissue follows (Deng, 2017). Infection with abscess formation can be a complication (Rahman, 1982). Similar to persistent trophoblastic tissue, early gestations may benefit most (Ansong, 2019).

OVARIAN PREGNANCY

Ectopic implantation of the fertilized egg in the ovary is rare and is diagnosed if four clinical criteria are met. These were outlined by Spiegelberg (1878): (1) the ipsilateral tube is intact and distinct from the ovary; (2) the ectopic pregnancy occupies the ovary; (3) the ectopic pregnancy is connected by the uteroovarian ligament to the uterus; and (4) ovarian tissue can be demonstrated histologically amid the placental tissue. Risk factors are similar to those for tubal pregnancies, but ART or IUD failure are prominent (Zhu, 2014). Presenting complaints and findings mirror those for tubal ectopic pregnancy. Although the ovary can accommodate the expanding pregnancy more easily than the fallopian tube, rupture at an early stage is the usual consequence (Melcer, 2016).

Sonographically, an internal anechoic area is surrounded by a wide echogenic ring, which in turn is surrounded by ovarian cortex (Comstock, 2005). In one review of 49 cases, the diagnosis was not be made until surgery, and many cases were presumed to be a tubal ectopic pregnancy (Choi, 2011). Moreover, at surgery, an early, unrecognized ovarian pregnancy may instead be considered and managed as a hemorrhagic corpus luteum.

Evidence-based management accrues mainly from case reports (Hassan, 2012). Classically, management for ovarian pregnancies has been surgical. Selection of laparoscopy or laparotomy are influenced by gestational age, hemoperitoneum, and hemodynamic status. Small lesions can be managed by ovarian wedge resection or cystectomy, whereas larger lesions require oophorectomy (Elwell, 2015; Melcer, 2015). With conservative surgery, β-hCG levels should be monitored to exclude remnant trophoblast.

HETEROTOPIC PREGNANCY

This pairing of an IUP and an ectopically located pregnancy is rare, and the most common dyad is an IUP and an ampullary tubal pregnancy. The natural incidence of these *heterotopic pregnancies* approximates 1 case per 30,000 pregnancies (Reece, 1983). However, with ART, their incidence is higher and is 9 cases in 10,000 pregnancies (Perkins, 2015). Initial clinical symptoms usually reflect those from the ectopic. Because an IUP is seen sonographically and the ectopic pregnancy may not be visualized, rates of rupture are higher in heterotopic pregnancy (Dendas, 2017).

In patients wishing to preserve the IUP, management initially is dictated by bleeding. In those with hemorrhage, treatment of the ectopic pregnancy is surgical. Depending on the ectopic location, resection or suction aspiration is the most common method (Wu, 2018). Of note, adjunctive UAE and vasopressin and their effects on uterine blood flow are less desirable for the ongoing IUP. With a rare comorbid ovarian ectopic pregnancy, early excision of the corpus luteum merits progesterone supplementation (Chap. 66, p. 1170).

In those without significant bleeding, medical steps to disrupt the ectopic pregnancy typically involve gestational-sac injection of KCl or of hyperosmolar glucose. This may be followed by later aspiration evacuation of the ectopic gestation. Because of toxicity to the IUP, MTX is avoided.

With ongoing pregnancy, adverse neonatal outcome rates are not appreciably elevated (Clayton, 2007). However, initial sonographic surveillance of fetal growth seems reasonable. Route of ultimate delivery is influenced mainly by myometrial integrity following ectopic treatment (Dendas, 2017; OuYang, 2014).

REFERENCES

Ackerman TE, Levi CS, Dashefsky SM, et al: Interstitial line: sonographic finding in interstitial (cornual) ectopic pregnancy. Radiology 189(1):83, 1993a

Ackerman TE, Levi CS, Lyons EA, et al: Decidual cyst: endovaginal sonographic sign of ectopic pregnancy. Radiology 189(3):727, 1993b

Allibone GW, Fagan CJ, Porter SC: The sonographic features of intra-abdominal pregnancy. J Clin Ultrasound 9(7):383, 1981

American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Drugs: Transfer of drugs and other chemicals into human milk. Pediatrics 108(3):776, 2001

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention of Rh D alloimmunization. Practice Bulletin No. 181, August 2017, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Tubal ectopic pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 193, March 2018, Reaffirmed 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Ultrasonography in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 175, December 2016, Reaffirmed 2020

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Medically indicated late-preterm and early-term deliveries. Committee Opinion No. 831, June 2021

American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Medical treatment of ectopic pregnancy: a committee opinion. Fertil Steril 100(3):638, 2013

Ansong E, Illahi GS, Shen L, et al: Analyzing the clinical significance of postoperative methotrexate in the management of early abdominal pregnancy: analysis of 10 cases. Ginekol Pol 90(8):438, 2019

Barnhart KT, Gosman G, Ashby R, et al: The medical management of ectopic pregnancy: a meta-analysis comparing "single dose" and "multidose" regimens. Obstet Gynecol 101:778, 2003a

Barnhart KT, Gracia CR, Reindl B, et al: Usefulness of Pipelle endometrial biopsy in the diagnosis of women at risk for ectopic pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:906, 2003b

Barnhart KT, Hansen KR, Stephenson MD, et al: Effect of an active vs expectant management strategy on successful resolution of pregnancy among patients with a persisting pregnancy of unknown location: The ACT or NOT randomized clinical trial. JAMA 326(5):390, 2021

Barnhart KT, Rinaudo P, Hummel A, et al: Acute and chronic presentation of ectopic pregnancy may be two clinical entities. Fertil Steril 80:1345, 2003c

Barnhart KT, Sammel MD, Chung K, et al: Decline of serum hCG and spontaneous complete abortion: defining the normal curve. Obstet Gynecol 104:975, 2004a

Barnhart KT, Sammel MD, Rinaudo PF, et al: Symptomatic patients with an early viable intrauterine pregnancy: hCG curves redefined. Obstet Gynecol 104:50, 2004b

Bergstrom R, Mueller G, Yankowitz J: A case illustrating the continued dilemmas in treating abdominal pregnancy and a potential explanation for the high rate of postsurgical febrile morbidity. Gynecol Obstet Invest 46:268, 1998

Bianchi P, Salvatori MM, Torcia F, et al: Cervical pregnancy. Fertil Steril 95(6):2123.e3, 2011

Birch Petersen K, Hoffmann E, Rifbjerg Larsen C, et al: Cesarean scar pregnancy: a systematic review of treatment studies. Fertil Steril 105(4):958, 2016

Bollig KJ, Schust DJ: Refining angular pregnancy diagnosis in the first trimester: a case series of expectant management. Obstet Gynecol 135(1):175, 2020

Bouyer J, Coste J, Fernandez H, et al: Sites of ectopic pregnancy: a 10 year population-based study of 1800 cases. Hum Reprod 17(12):3224, 2002

Branney SW, Wolfe RE, Moore EE, et al: Quantitative sensitivity of ultrasound in detecting free intraperitoneal fluid. J Trauma 40(6):1052, 1995

Briggs GG, Freeman RK, Towers CV, et al: Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation, 11th edition. Philadelphia, Wolters Kluwer, 2017

Butts SF, Guo W, Cary MS, et al: Predicting the decline in human chorionic gonadotropin in a resolving pregnancy of unknown location. Obstet Gynecol 122(2 Pt 1):33, 2013

Calì G, Timor-Tritsch IE, Palacios-Jaraquemada J, et al: Outcome of cesarean scar pregnancy managed expectantly: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 51(2):169, 2018

Carson SA, Buster JE: Ectopic pregnancy. N Engl J Med 329(16):1174, 1993

Chen H, Yang S, Fu J, et al: Outcomes of bilateral uterine artery chemoembolization in combination with surgical evacuation or systemic methotrexate for cervical pregnancy. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 22(6):1029, 2015

Choi HJ, Im KS, Jung HJ, et al: Clinical analysis of ovarian pregnancy: a report of 49 cases. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 158(1):87, 2011

Chukus A, Tirada N, Restrepo R, et al: Uncommon implantation sites of ectopic pregnancy: thinking beyond the complex adnexal mass. Radiographics 35(3):946, 2015

Chung K, Chandavarkar U, Opper N, et al: Reevaluating the role of dilation and curettage in the diagnosis of pregnancy of unknown location. Fertil Steril 96(3):659, 2011

Chung K, Sammel MD, Coutifaris C, et al: Defining the rise of serum HCG in viable pregnancies achieved through use of IVF. Hum Reprod 21(3):823, 2006

Clayton HB, Schieve LA, Peterson HB, et al: Ectopic pregnancy risk with assisted reproductive technology procedures. Obstet Gynecol 107(3):595, 2006

Cohen A, Bibi G, Almog B, et al: Second-dose methotrexate in ectopic pregnancies: the role of beta human chorionic gonadotropin. Fertil Steril 102(6):1646, 2014

Comstock C, Huston K, Lee W: The ultra-sonographic appearance of ovarian ectopic pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 105:42, 2005

Condous G, Okaro E, Khalid A, et al: The accuracy of transvaginal ultrasonography for the diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy prior to surgery. Hum Reprod 20(5):1404, 2005

Connolly A, Ryan DH, Stuebe AM, et al: Reevaluation of discriminatory and threshold levels for serum β-hCG in early pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 121(1):65, 2013

Creanga AA, Syverson C, Seed K, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2011–2013. Obstet Gynecol 130(2):366, 2017

Dashefsky SM, Lyons EA, Levi CS, et al: Suspected ectopic pregnancy: endovaginal and transvesical US. Radiology 169:181, 1988

de Bennetot M, Rabischong B, Aublet-Cuvelier B, et al: Fertility after tubal ectopic pregnancy: results of a population-based study. Fertil Steril 98(5):1271, 2012

Demirdag E, Guler I, Abay S, et al: The impact of expectant management, systemic methotrexate and surgery on subsequent pregnancy outcomes in tubal ectopic pregnancy. Ir J Med Sci 186(2):387, 2017

Dendas W, Schobbens JC, Mestdagh G, et al: Management and outcome of heterotopic interstitial pregnancy: case report and review of literature. Ultrasound 25(3):134, 2017

Deng MX, Zou Y: Evaluating a magnetic resonance imaging of the third-trimester abdominal pregnancy: what the radiologist needs to know. Medicine (Baltimore) 96(48):e8986, 2017

Desai D, Lu J, Wyness SP, et al: Human chorionic gonadotropin discriminatory zone in ectopic pregnancy: does assay harmonization matter? Fertil Steril 101(6):1671, 2014

Dias Pereira G, Hajenius PJ, Mol BW, et al: Fertility outcome after systemic methotrexate and laparoscopic salpingostomy for tubal pregnancy. Lancet 353(9154):724, 1999

Elwell KE, Sailors JL, Denson PK, et al: Unruptured second-trimester ovarian pregnancy. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 41(9):1483, 2015

Elson J, Tailor A, Banerjee S, et al: Expectant management of tubal ectopic pregnancy: prediction of successful outcome using decision tree analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 23:552, 2004

Fernandez H, Capmas P, Lucot JP, et al: Fertility after ectopic pregnancy: the DEMETER randomized trial. Hum Reprod 28(5):1247, 2013

Fowler ML, Wang D, Chia V, et al: Management of cervical ectopic pregnancies: a scoping review. Obstet Gynecol 138(1):33, 2021

Framarino-dei-Malatesta M, Piccioni MG, Derme M, et al: Transabdominal ultrasound-guided injection of methotrexate in the treatment of ectopic interstitial pregnancies. J Clin Ultrasound 42(9):522, 2014

France JT, Jackson P: Maternal plasma and urinary hormone levels during and after a successful abdominal pregnancy. BJOG 87:356, 1980

Frischhertz S, Eubanks-Bradley J, Gilbert P: Endovascular therapy for abdominal pregnancy. Ochsner J 19(2):74, 2019

Fylstra DL: Cervical pregnancy: 13 cases treated with suction curettage and balloon tamponade. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210(6):581.e1, 2014

Gao L, Huang Z, Zhang X, et al: Reproductive outcomes following cesarean scar pregnancy—a case series and review of the literature. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 200:102, 2016

Ginsburg ES, Frates MC, Rein MS, et al: Early diagnosis and treatment of cervical pregnancy in an in vitro fertilization program. Fertil Steril 61:966, 1994

Greene DN, Grenache DG, Education Committee of the Academy of Clinical Laboratory Physicians and Scientist: Pathology consultation on human chorionic gonadotropin testing for pregnancy assessment. Am J Clin Pathol 144(6):830, 2015

Grechukhina O, Deshmukh U, Fan L, et al: Cesarean scar pregnancy, incidence, and recurrence: five-year experience at a single tertiary care referral center. Obstet Gynecol 132(5):1285, 2018

Guha S, Ayim F, Ludlow J, et al: Triaging pregnancies of unknown location: the performance of protocols based on single serum progesterone or repeated serum hCG levels. Hum Reprod 29(5):938, 2014

Hackmon R, Sakaguchi S, Koren G: Effect of methotrexate treatment of ectopic pregnancy on subsequent pregnancy. Can Fam Physician 57(1):37, 2011

Hajenius PJ, Engelsbel S, Mol BW, et al: Randomized trial of systemic methotrexate versus laparoscopic salpingostomy in tubal pregnancy. Lancet 350:774, 1997

Hajenius PJ, Mol BWJ, Ankum WM, et al: Clearance curves of serum human chorionic gonadotropin for the diagnosis of persistent trophoblast. Hum Reprod 10:683, 1995

Hajenius PJ, Mol F, Mol BW, et al: Intervention for tubal ectopic pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD000324, 2007

Hammoud AO, Hammoud I, Bujold E, et al: The role of sonographic endometrial patterns and endometrial thickness in the differential diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:1370, 2005

Harirah HM, Smith JM, Dixon CL, et al: Conservative management and planned surgery for periviable advanced extrauterine abdominal pregnancy with favorable outcome: report of two cases. AJP Rep 6(3):e301, 2016

Hassan S, Arora R, Bhatia K: Primary ovarian pregnancy: case report and review of literature. BMJ Case Rep Nov 21, 2012

Helmy S, Sawyer E, Ofili-Yebovi D, et al: Fertility outcomes following expectant management of tubal ectopic pregnancy. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 30(7):988, 2007

Hiersch L, Krissi H, Ashwal E, et al: Effectiveness of medical treatment with methotrexate for interstitial pregnancy. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 54(6):576, 2014

Hill LM, Kislak S, Martin JG: Transvaginal sonographic detection of the pseudogestational sac associated with ectopic pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 75(6):986, 1990

Hirakawa M, Tajima T, Yoshimitsu K, et al: Uterine artery embolization along with the administration of methotrexate for cervical ectopic pregnancy: technical and clinical outcomes. AJR Am J Roentgenol 192(6):1601, 2009

Hoffman BL, Hamid CA, Corton MM: Surgeries for benign gynecologic conditions. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2020

Hung TH, Jeng CJ, Yang YC, et al: Treatment of cervical pregnancy with methotrexate. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 53:243, 1996

Hyland A, Piazza KM, Hovey KM, et al: Associations of lifetime active and passive smoking with spontaneous abortion, stillbirth and tubal ectopic pregnancy: a cross-sectional analysis of historical data from the Women's Health Initiative. Tob Control 24(4):328, 2015

Insogna IG, Farland LV, Missmer SA, et al: Outpatient endometrial aspiration: an alternative to methotrexate for pregnancy of unknown location. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(2):185.e1, 2017

Irani M, Robles A, Gunnala V, et al: Unilateral salpingectomy and methotrexate are associated with a similar recurrence rate of ectopic pregnancy in patients undergoing in vitro fertilization. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 24(5):777, 2017

Jeng CJ, Ko ML, Shen J: Transvaginal ultrasound-guided treatment of cervical pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 109:1076, 2007

Jermy K, Thomas J, Doo A, et al: The conservative management of interstitial pregnancy. BJOG 111:1283, 2004

Jurkovic D, Hillaby K, Woelfer B, et al: First-trimester diagnosis and management of pregnancies implanted into the lower uterine segment cesarean section scar. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 21(3):220, 2003

Jurkovic D, Memtsa M, Sawyer E, et al: Single-dose systemic methotrexate vs expectant management for treatment of tubal ectopic pregnancy: a placebo-controlled randomized trial. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 49(2):171, 2017

Kaelin Agten A, Cali G, Monteagudo A, et al: The clinical outcome of cesarean scar pregnancies implanted "on the scar" versus "in the niche." Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(5):510.e1, 2017

Kirk E, Van Calster B, Condous G, et al: Ectopic pregnancy: using the hCG ratio to select women for expectant or medical management. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 90(3):264, 2011

Kooi S, Kock HC: A review of the literature on nonsurgical treatment in tubal pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 47:739, 1992

Krag Moeller LB, Moeller C, Thomsen SG, et al: Success and spontaneous pregnancy rates following systemic methotrexate versus laparoscopic surgery for tubal pregnancies: a randomized trial. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 88(12):1331, 2009

Krissi H, Hiersch L, Stolovitch N, et al: Outcome, complications and future fertility in women treated with uterine artery embolization and methotrexate for non-tubal ectopic pregnancy. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 182:172, 2014

Kung FT, Chang SY, Tsai YC, et al: Subsequent reproduction and obstetric outcome after methotrexate treatment of cervical pregnancy: a review of original literature and international collaborative follow-up. Hum Reprod 12:591, 1997

Lau S, Tulandi T: Conservative medical and surgical management of interstitial ectopic pregnancy. Fertil Steril 72:207, 1999

Li Y, Yang Y, He QZ, et al: Frozen section of uterine curetting in excluding the possibility of ectopic pregnancy—a clinicopathologic study of 715 cases. Clin Exp Obstet Gynecol 41(4):419, 2014

Li C, Zhao WH, Zhu Q, et al: Risk factors for ectopic pregnancy: a multicenter case-control study. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 15:187, 2015

Lipscomb GH, Bran D, McCord ML, et al: Analysis of three hundred fifteen ectopic pregnancies treated with single-dose methotrexate. Am J Obstet Gynecol 178:1354, 1998

Lipscomb GH, Givens VM, Meyer NL, et al: Comparison of multidose and single-dose methotrexate protocols for the treatment of ectopic pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:1844, 2005

Lipscomb GH, Puckett KJ, Bran D, et al: Management of separation pain after single-dose methotrexate therapy for ectopic pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 93:590, 1999

Londra L, Moreau C, Strobino D, et al: Ectopic pregnancy after in vitro fertilization: differences between fresh and frozen-thawed cycles. Fertil Steril 104(1):110, 2015

Lopez HB, Micheelsen U, Berendtsen H, et al: Ectopic pregnancy and its associated endometrial changes. Gynecol Obstet Invest 38(2):104, 1994

Maheux-Lacroix S, Li F, Bujold E, et al: Cesarean scar pregnancies: a systematic review of treatment options. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 24(6):915, 2017

Marcelin C, Kouchner P, Bintner M, et al: Placenta embolization of advanced abdominal pregnancy. Diagn Interv Imaging 99(4):265, 2018

Martin JN Jr, McCaul JF IV: Emergent management of abdominal pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 33:438, 1990

Martin JN Jr, Sessums JK, Martin RW, et al: Abdominal pregnancy: current concepts of management. Obstet Gynecol 71:549, 1988

Mavrelos D, Nicks H, Jamil A, et al: Efficacy and safety of a clinical protocol for expectant management of selected women diagnosed with a tubal ectopic pregnancy. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 42(1):102, 2013

Melcer Y, Maymon R, Vaknin Z, et al: Primary ovarian ectopic pregnancy: still a medical challenge. J Reprod Med 61(1-2):58, 2016

Melcer Y, Smorgick N, Vaknin Z, et al: Primary ovarian pregnancy: 43 years experience in a single institute and still a medical challenge. Isr Med Assoc J 17(11):687, 2015

Menon S, Colins J, Barnhart KT: Establishing a human chorionic gonadotropin cutoff to guide methotrexate treatment of ectopic pregnancy: a systematic review. Fertil Steril 87(3):481, 2007

Mol F, Strandell A, Jurkovic D, et al: The ESEP study: salpingostomy versus salpingectomy for tubal ectopic pregnancy; the impact on future fertility: a randomized controlled trial. BMC Womens Health 8:11, 2008

Mol F, van Mello NM, Strandell A, et al: Salpingotomy versus salpingectomy in women with tubal pregnancy (ESEP study): an open-label, multicentre, randomized controlled trial. Lancet 383(9927):1483, 2014

Monteagudo A, Calì G, Rebarber A, et al: Minimally invasive treatment of cesarean scar and cervical pregnancies using a cervical ripening double balloon catheter: expanding the clinical series. J Ultrasound Med 38(3):785, 2019

Moschos E, Twickler DM: Endometrial thickness predicts intrauterine pregnancy in patients with pregnancy of unknown location. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 32(7):929, 2008

Murji A, Garbedian K, Thomas J, et al: Conservative management of cervical ectopic pregnancy. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 37(11):1016, 2015

Nurmohamed L, Moretti ME, Schechter T, et al: Outcome following high-dose methotrexate in pregnancies misdiagnosed as ectopic. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(6):533.e1, 2011

Nyberg DA, Hughes MP, Mack LA, et al: Extrauterine findings of ectopic pregnancy of transvaginal US: importance of echogenic fluid. Radiology 178:823, 1991

Ohannessian A, Loundou A, Courbière B, et al: Ovarian responsiveness in women receiving fertility treatment after methotrexate for ectopic pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Hum Reprod 29(9):1949, 2014

OuYang Z, Yin Q, Xu Y, et al: Heterotopic cesarean scar pregnancy: diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis. J Ultrasound Med 33(9):1533, 2014

Perkins KM, Boulet SL, Kissin DM, et al: Risk of ectopic pregnancy associated with assisted reproductive technology in the United States, 2001–2011. Obstet Gynecol 125(1):7, 2015

Pouly JL, Mahnes H, Mage G, et al: Conservative laparoscopic treatment of 321 ectopic pregnancies. Fertil Steril 46:1093, 1986

Rahman MS, Al-Suleiman SA, Rahman J, et al: Advanced abdominal pregnancy—observations in 10 cases. Obstet Gynecol 59:366, 1982

Reece EA, Petrie RH, Sirmans MF, et al: Combined intrauterine and extra uterine gestations: a review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 146(3):32, 1983

Rodgerson JD, Heegaard WG, Plummer D, et al: Emergency department right upper quadrant ultrasound is associated with a reduced time to diagnosis and treatment of ruptured ectopic pregnancies. Acad Emerg Med 8(4):331, 2001

Rotas MA, Haberman S, Levgur M: Cesarean scar ectopic pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 107:1373, 2006

Saraj AJ, Wilcox JG, Najmabadi S, et al: Resolution of hormonal markers of ectopic gestation: a randomized trial comparing single-dose intramuscular methotrexate with salpingostomy. Obstet Gynecol 92:989, 1998

Seeber BE, Sammel MD, Guo W, et al: Application of redefined human chorionic gonadotropin curves for the diagnosis of women at risk for ectopic pregnancy. Fertil Steril 86(2):454, 2006

Seifer DB, Gutmann JN, Grant WD, et al: Comparison of persistent ectopic pregnancy after laparoscopic salpingostomy versus salpingostomy at laparotomy for ectopic pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 81(3):378, 1993

Silva C, Sammel MD, Zhou L, et al: Human chorionic gonadotropin profile for women with ectopic pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 107:605, 2006

Silva PM, Araujo Júnior E, Cecchino GN, et al: Effectiveness of expectant management versus methotrexate in tubal ectopic pregnancy: a double-blind randomized trial. Arch Gynecol Obstet 291(4):939, 2015

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Miller R, Timor-Tritsch IE, et al: Cesarean scar pregnancy. Consult Series No. 49, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(5):B2, 2020

Song MJ, Moon MH, Kim JA, et al: Serial transvaginal sonographic findings of cervical ectopic pregnancy treated with high-dose methotrexate. J Ultrasound Med 28:55, 2009

Sowter MC, Farquhar CM, Petrie KJ, et al: A randomized trial comparing single dose systemic methotrexate and laparoscopic surgery for the treatment of unruptured tubal pregnancy. BJOG 108(2):192, 2001

Spiegelberg O: Zur Casuistic der Ovarialschwangerschaft. Arch Gynaekol 13:73, 1878

Stevens CA: Malformations and deformations in abdominal pregnancy. Am J Med Genet 47:1189, 1993

Stovall TG, Ling FW, Carson SA, et al: Serum progesterone and uterine curettage in differential diagnosis of ectopic pregnancy. Fertil Steril 57:456, 1992

Stovall TG, Ling FW, Gray LA, et al: Methotrexate treatment of unruptured ectopic pregnancy: a report of 100 cases. Obstet Gynecol 77(5):749, 1991

Svirsky R, Rozovski U, Vaknin Z, et al: The safety of conception occurring shortly after methotrexate treatment of an ectopic pregnancy. Reprod Toxicol 27(1):85, 2009

Tao G, Patel C, Hoover KW: Updated estimates of ectopic pregnancy among commercially and Medicaid-insured women in the United States, 2002–2013. South Med J 110(1):18, 2017

Tabatabaii Bafghi A, Zaretezerjani F, Sekhavat L, et al: Fertility outcome after treatment of unruptured ectopic pregnancy with two different methotrexate protocols. Int J Fertil Steril 6:189, 2012

Tempfer CB, Dogan A, Tischoff I, et al: Chronic ectopic pregnancy: case report and systematic review of the literature. Arch Gynecol Obstet 300(3):651, 2019

Timor-Tritsch IE, Cali G, Monteagudo A, et al: Foley balloon catheter to prevent or manage bleeding during treatment for cervical and cesarean scar pregnancy. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 46(1):118, 2015a

Timor-Tritsch IE, Khatib N, Monteagudo A, et al: Cesarean scar pregnancies: experience of 60 cases. J Ultrasound Med 34(4):601, 2015b

Timor-Tritsch IE, Monteagudo A, Cali G, et al: Cesarean scar pregnancy is a precursor of morbidly adherent placenta. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 44(3):346, 2014

Timor-Tritsch IE, Monteagudo A, Cali G, et al: Easy sonographic differential diagnosis between intrauterine pregnancy and cesarean delivery scar pregnancy in the early first trimester. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(2):225.e1, 2016

Timor-Tritsch IE, Monteagudo A, Matera C, et al: Sonographic evolution of cornual pregnancies treated without surgery. Obstet Gynecol 79(6):1044, 1992

Timor-Tritsch IE, Monteagudo A, Santos R, et al: The diagnosis, treatment, and follow-up of cesarean scar pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(1):44.e1, 2012

Tulandi T, A1-Jaroudi D: Interstitial pregnancy: results generated from the Society of Reproductive Surgeons. Obstet Gynecol 103:47, 2004

Tulandi T, Guralnick M: Treatment of tubal ectopic pregnancy by salpingotomy with or without tubal suturing and salpingectomy. Fertil Steril 55:53, 1991

Ushakov FB, Elchalal U, Aceman PJ, et al: Cervical pregnancy: past and future. Obstet Gynecol Surv 52:45, 1997

Valenzano M, Nicoletti L, Odicino F, et al: Five-year follow-up of placental involution after abdominal pregnancy. J Clin Ultrasound 31(1):39, 2003

Verhaegen J, Gallos ID, van Mello NM, et al: Accuracy of single progesterone test to predict early pregnancy outcome in women with pain or bleeding: meta-analysis of cohort studies. BMJ 345:e6077, 2012

Verma U, Goharkhay N: Conservative management of cervical ectopic pregnancy. Fertil Steril 91(3):671, 2009

Wang G, Liu X, Bi F, et al: Evaluation of the efficacy of laparoscopic resection for the management of exogenous cesarean scar pregnancy. Fertil Steril 101(5):1501, 2014

Wang Q, Peng HL, He L, et al: Reproductive outcomes after previous cesarean scar pregnancy: Follow up of 189 women. Taiwan J Obstet Gynecol 54(5):551, 2015

Wang Y, Xu B, Dai S, et al: An efficient conservative treatment modality for cervical pregnancy: angiographic uterine artery embolization followed by immediate curettage. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(1):31.e1, 2011

Westrom L, Joesoef R, Reynolds G, et al: Pelvic inflammatory disease and fertility: a cohort study of 1,844 women with laparoscopically verified disease and 657 control women with normal laparoscopic results. Sex Transm Dis 19(4):185, 1992

Wu Z, Zhang X, Xu P, et al: Clinical analysis of 50 patients with heterotopic pregnancy after ovulation induction or embryo transfer. Eur J Med Res 23(1):17, 2018

Yamaguchi M, Honda R, Erdenebaatar C, et al: Treatment of cervical pregnancy with ultrasound-guided local methotrexate injection. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 50(6):781, 2017

Zakaria MA, Abdallah ME, Shavell VI, et al: Conservative management of cervical ectopic pregnancy: utility of uterine artery embolization. Fertil Steril 95(3):872, 2011

Zeck W, Kelters I, Winter R, et al: Lessons learned from four advanced abdominal pregnancies at an East African Health Center. J Perinat Med 35(4):278, 2007

Zhang X, Ma C, Wu Z, et al: Frozen-thawed embryo transfer cycles have a lower incidence of ectopic pregnancy compared with fresh embryo transfer cycles. Reprod Sci 25(9):1431, 2018

Zhu Q, Li C, Zhao WH, et al: Risk factors and clinical features of ovarian pregnancy: a case-control study. BMJ Open 4(12):e006447, 2014

CHAPTER 13

Gestational Trophoblastic Disease

Gestational trophoblastic disease (GTD) is the term used to encompass a group of tumors typified by abnormal trophoblast proliferation. Trophoblast produces human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG). Thus, the measurement of this peptide hormone in serum is essential for GTD diagnosis, management, and surveillance. GTD histologically is divided into hydatidiform moles, which are characterized by the presence of villi, and nonmolar trophoblastic malignant neoplasms, which lack villi.

Hydatidiform moles are excessively edematous immature placentas (Benirschke, 2012). These include the benign *complete hydatidiform mole* and *partial hydatidiform mole* (Table 13-1). The third member is the malignant *invasive mole* (Hui, 2014b). Invasive mole is deemed malignant because of its marked penetration into and destruction of the myometrium and its ability to metastasize.

Nonmolar trophoblastic neoplasms include choriocarcinoma, placental site trophoblastic tumor, and epithelioid trophoblastic tumor (Hui, 2014a). These three are differentiated by the trophoblast type that they contain.

Under the GTD umbrella term, the malignant forms of GTD are termed *gestational trophoblastic neoplasia (GTN).* These include invasive mole, choriocarcinoma, placental site trophoblastic tumor, and epithelioid trophoblastic tumor. These malignancies develop weeks or years following any type of pregnancy, but more frequently follow hydatidiform mole.

Each GTN malignancy type is histologically distinct and varies in its propensity to invade and metastasize. However, these diagnoses are infrequently identified from an actual histological specimen. Instead, measurement of serum hCG levels and clinical findings are more often used to diagnose and treat this malignancy. Accordingly, GTN is often managed as a single composite clinical entity. With chemotherapy, most tumors currently are highly curable.

TABLE 13-1. Modified WHO Classification of GTD

Molar Pregnancies
Hydatidiform mole
Complete
Partial
Invasive mole
Trophoblastic Tumors
Choriocarcinoma
Placental site trophoblastic tumor
Epithelioid trophoblastic tumor

GTD = gestational trophoblastic disease; WHO = World Health Organization.
From Hui, 2014a,b.

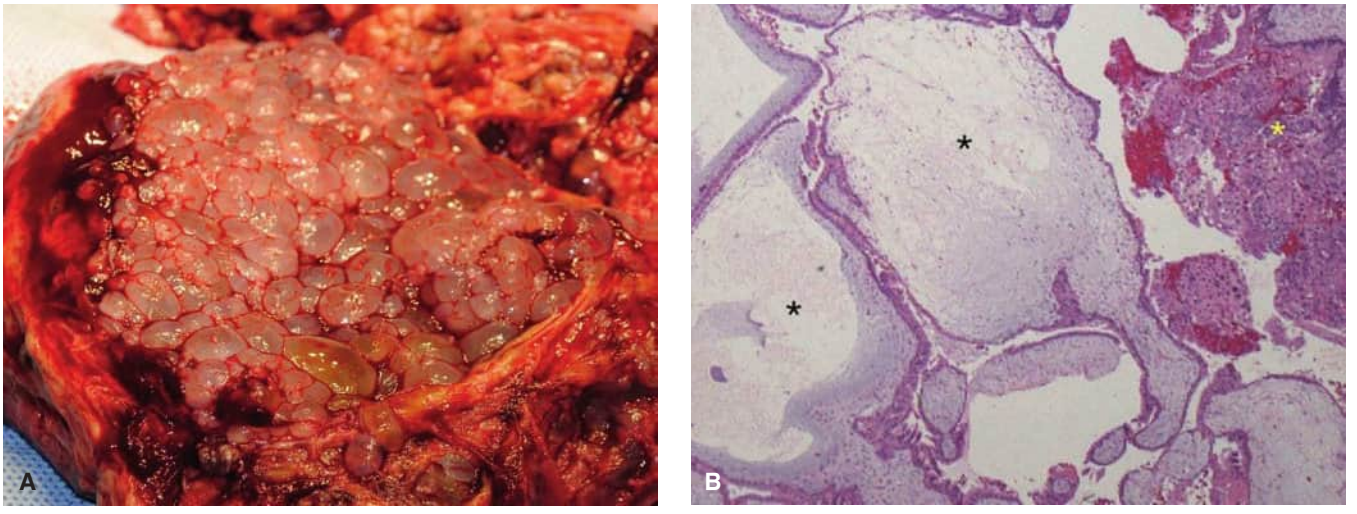


FIGURE 13-1 Complete hydatidiform mole. **A.** Gross specimen with characteristic vesicles of variable size. (Photograph contributed by Dr. Sasha Andrews. Reproduced with permission from Patel S, Roberts S, Rogers V, et al [eds]: Williams Obstetrics Study Guide, 25th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2019.) **B.** Low-magnification photomicrograph shows generalized edema and cistern formation (*black asterisks*) within avascular villi. Haphazard trophoblastic hyperplasia is marked by a yellow asterisk on the right. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Erika Fong.)

HYDATIDIFORM MOLE

Classic histological findings of molar pregnancy include trophoblast proliferation and villi with stromal edema (Fig. 13-1). The degree of histological changes, karyotype and immunostaining differences, and the absence or presence of embryonic elements are used to classify them as either *complete* or *partial hydatidiform moles* (Table 13-2). These two also vary in their associated risks for developing medical comorbidities and postevacuation GTN. Of the two, GTN more frequently follows complete hydatidiform mole.

Grossly, complete moles have abnormal chorionic villi that appear as a mass of clear vesicles. These vary in size and often hang in clusters from thin pedicles. In contrast, partial molar pregnancies have focal and less advanced hydatidiform changes and contain some fetal tissue. Both forms of moles usually fill the uterine cavity, but they rarely may be ectopic (Sebire, 2005; Yamada, 2016).

TABLE 13-2. Features of Partial and Complete Hydatidiform Moles

Feature	Partial Mole	Complete Mole
Karyotype[a]	69,XXX or 69,XXY	46,XX
Clinical presentation		
Diagnosis	Missed abortion	Molar gestation
Uterine size	Small for dates	Large for dates
Theca-lutein cysts	Rare	25–30% of cases
Initial hCG levels	<100,000 mIU/mL	>100,000 mIU/mL
Medical complications[b]	Rare	Uncommon
Rate of subsequent GTN	1–5% of cases	15–20% of cases
Pathology		
Embryo-fetus	Often present	Absent
Amnion, fetal erythrocytes	Often present	Absent
Villous edema	Focal	Widespread
Trophoblastic proliferation	Focal, slight to moderate	Slight to severe
Trophoblast atypia	Mild	Marked
$p57^{KIP2}$ immunostaining	Positive	Negative

[a]Typical karyotypes.
[b]These include anemia, hyperthyroidism, hyperemesis gravidarum, preeclampsia, and infection.
GTN = gestational trophoblastic neoplasia; hCG = human chorionic gonadotropin.

Epidemiology and Risk Factors

Ethnic predisposition is seen with hydatidiform mole, and prevalences are higher in Asians, Hispanics, and American Indians (Choi, 2015; Drake, 2006). The incidence in the United States and Europe has been relatively constant at 1 per 1000 deliveries (Eysbouts, 2016; Melamed, 2016).

The strongest risk factors are age and a prior hydatidiform mole. Women at both extremes of reproductive age are most vulnerable (Savage, 2013; Sebire, 2002a). With a prior complete mole, the risk of another mole is 0.9 percent, and with a previous partial mole, the rate is 0.3 percent. After two prior complete moles, approximately 20 percent of women have a third mole (Eagles, 2015).

Pathogenesis

Molar pregnancies typically arise from chromosomally abnormal fertilizations. Complete moles most often have a diploid chromosomal composition. These usually are 46,XX and result from *androgenesis,* meaning both sets of chromosomes are paternal. The chromosomes of the ovum are either absent or inactivated. As shown in Figure 13-2A, an ovum is fertilized by a haploid sperm, which then duplicates its own chromosomes after meiosis. Less commonly, the chromosomal pattern may be 46,XY or 46,XX and due to fertilization by two sperm, that is, *dispermic fertilization* or *dispermy* (Lawler, 1991; Ohama, 1981).

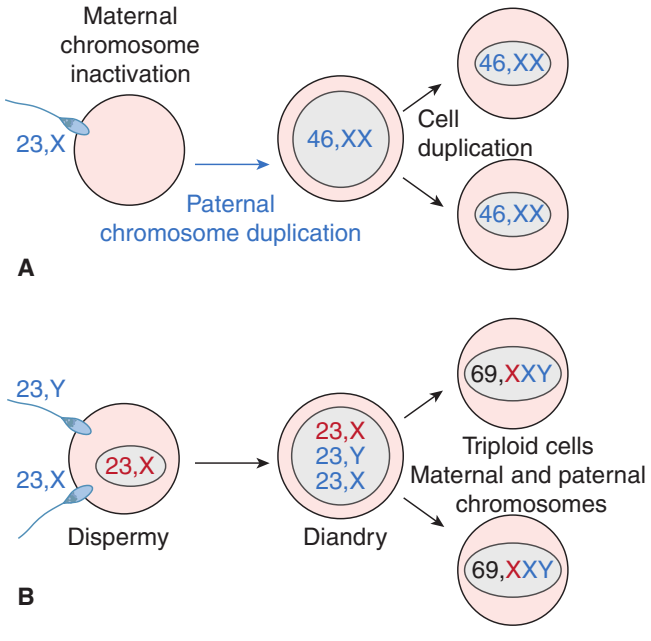


FIGURE 13-2 Typical pathogenesis of complete and partial moles. **A.** A 46,XX complete mole may be formed if a 23,X-bearing haploid sperm penetrates a 23,X-containing haploid egg whose genes have been "inactivated." Paternal chromosomes then duplicate to create a 46,XX diploid complement solely of paternal origin. **B.** A partial mole may be formed if two sperm—either 23,X- or 23,Y-bearing—both fertilize (*dispermy*) a 23,X-containing haploid egg whose genes have not been inactivated. The resulting fertilized egg is triploid with two chromosome sets being donated by the father (*diandry*).

Partial moles have a triploid karyotype, which is 69,XXX, 69,XXY, or much less commonly, 69,XYY. These are each composed of two paternal haploid sets of chromosomes contributed by dispermy and one maternal haploid set (see Fig. 13-2B). Less frequently, a similar haploid egg may be fertilized by an unreduced diploid 46,XY sperm. These triploid zygotes result in some embryonic development, however, it ultimately is a lethal fetal condition (Joergensen, 2014; Lakovschek, 2011). Fetuses that reach advanced ages have severe growth restriction, multiple congenital anomalies, or both.

Twin Pregnancy

Rarely, in some twin pregnancies, one chromosomally normal fetus is paired with a complete diploid molar pregnancy. Importantly, these cases must be distinguished from a single partial molar pregnancy with its associated abnormal fetus. Other potential diagnoses include placental mesenchymal dysplasia, subchorionic hematoma, or chorioangioma (Chap. 6, p. 112) (Cavoretto, 2020). To help distinguish among these, chorionic villus sampling, amniocentesis, or fetal cord blood sampling coupled with fetal karyotyping aid confirmation (Lee, 2010).

Several unique pregnancy problems complicate such twin pregnancies. Thyrotoxicosis is common, but the most worrisome are preeclampsia or hemorrhage. These frequently necessitate preterm delivery. Thus, many women may choose to terminate the gestation, if diagnosed early. In those with continuing pregnancy, survival of the normal fetus varies and depends on associated comorbidity from the molar component. Wee and Jauniaux (2005) reviewed outcomes in 174 women, of whom 82 chose termination. Of the remaining 92 pregnancies, 42 percent either miscarried or had a perinatal death; approximately 60 percent delivered preterm; and 40 percent delivered at term.

Another concern for those continuing their pregnancy is the risk for developing subsequent GTN. Most evidence indicates no significant difference between women who continue or terminate their pregnancy (Lin, 2017; Sebire 2002b).

Clinical Findings

Molar pregnancy is diagnosed sooner than in the past because prenatal care is sought much earlier and sonography is virtually universal. For example, in 194 women with a complete mole, evacuation was completed at a median gestational age of 9 weeks and at 12 weeks for 172 patients with a partial mole (Sun, 2015). As a result, most molar pregnancies are treated before complications ensue.

Typically, 1 to 2 months of amenorrhea precede the diagnosis. As gestation advances, symptoms tend to be more pronounced with complete compared with partial moles (Niemann, 2007). Untreated molar pregnancies will almost always cause uterine bleeding that varies from spotting to profuse hemorrhage. Bleeding may presage spontaneous molar abortion, but more often, it follows an intermittent course for weeks to months.

In more advanced moles with considerable concealed uterine hemorrhage, moderate iron-deficiency anemia develops. Nausea and vomiting also may be significant. Of physical findings, many women have uterine growth exceeding that expected, and the enlarged uterus is comparatively softer. Fetal heart motion is absent with complete moles. The ovaries can be fuller and cystic

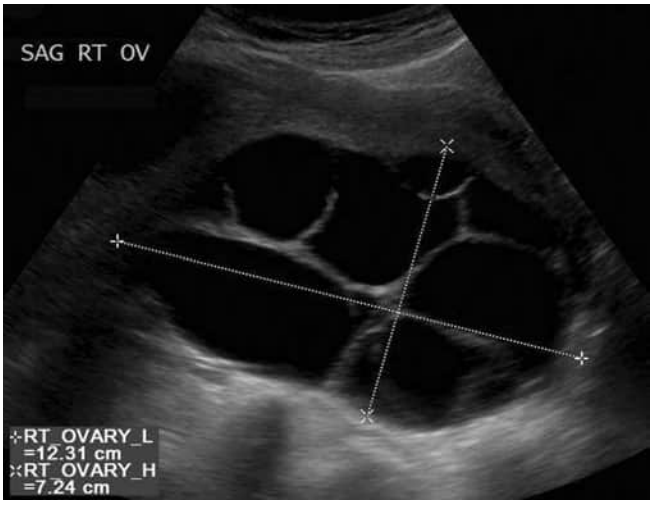


FIGURE 13-3 Sonogram of an ovary with multiple theca-lutein cysts in a woman with a complete hydatidiform mole.

from multiple theca-lutein cysts (Fig. 13-3). These are more common with a complete mole and likely result from ovarian overstimulation by excessive hCG levels. Remember that hCG and luteinizing hormone share the same receptor, and both can stimulate the theca layer that surrounds follicles. Because theca-lutein cysts regress following pregnancy evacuation and subsequent hCG level decline, expectant management is preferred. Occasionally, a larger cyst may undergo torsion, infarction, and hemorrhage. However, oophorectomy is not performed unless extensive infarction persists after untwisting.

The thyrotropin-like effects of hCG frequently cause serum free thyroxine (fT_4) levels to be elevated and thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) levels to be decreased (Chap. 61, p. 1089). Despite this, clinically apparent thyrotoxicosis is unusual and in our experience can be mimicked by bleeding and sepsis from infected products. Moreover, the serum free T_4 levels rapidly normalize after uterine evacuation. Despite this, cases of presumed "thyroid storm" have been reported (Kofinas, 2015).

Severe preeclampsia and eclampsia are relatively common with advanced molar pregnancies. However, these are seldom seen today because of early diagnosis and evacuation. An exception is the case of a normal fetus coexisting with a complete mole, described earlier. In continuing twin gestations, severe preeclampsia frequently mandates preterm delivery.

Diagnosis

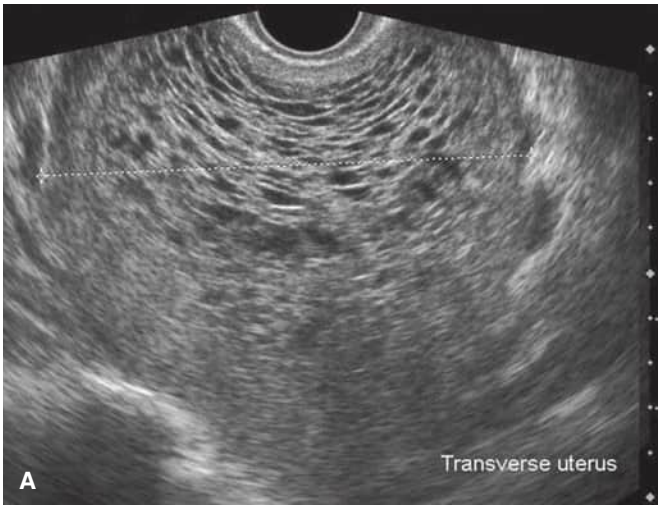
Serum β-HCG Measurements

Most women initially have irregular bleeding that almost always prompts pregnancy testing and sonography. Less often, women will spontaneously pass molar tissue.

With a complete molar pregnancy, serum β-hCG levels are commonly elevated above those expected for gestational age. With more advanced moles, values in the millions are not unusual. Importantly, these high values can lead to erroneous false-negative *urine* pregnancy test results. Termed a *hook effect*, excessive β-hCG hormone levels oversaturate the assay's targeting antibody and create a false-negative reading (Cormano, 2016). In these cases, *serum* β-hCG determinations with or without sample dilution will yield a positive result. With a partial mole, β-hCG levels may also be significantly elevated, but more commonly concentrations are in ranges expected for gestational age.

Sonography

Although this is the mainstay of trophoblastic disease diagnosis, not all cases are confirmed initially. In a large series of more than 1000 patients with molar pregnancy, sonography's sensitivity was 44 percent, and its specificity was 74 percent (Fowler, 2006). With grayscale sonography, a complete mole appears as an echogenic uterine mass filling the endometrial cavity and is surrounded by normal myometrium. The mass is composed of numerous anechoic cystic spaces of different sizes and shapes, but without a fetus or amnionic sac. The appearance is often described as a "snowstorm" (Fig. 13-4). Application of color Doppler displays marked surrounding myometrial vascularity.



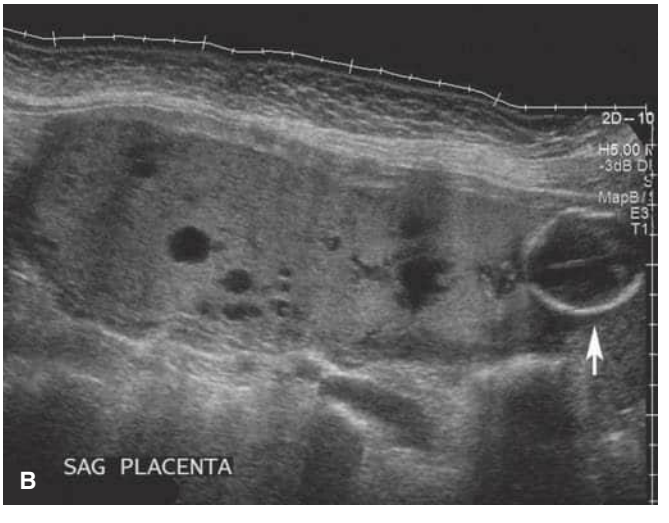


FIGURE 13-4 Sonograms of hydatidiform moles. **A.** Transverse view of a uterus with a complete hydatidiform mole. The characteristic "snowstorm" appearance reflects an echogenic uterine mass, marked by calipers, that has numerous anechoic cystic spaces. Notably, a fetus or amnionic sac is absent. **B.** In this sagittal image of a partial hydatidiform mole, the fetal head (*arrow*) lies adjacent to an enlarged, multicystic placenta.

However, absent internal flow reflects the avascular villi of complete moles.

A partial mole has features that include a thick, multicystic placenta plus a fetus or fetal tissue. Thin septa can be found within the gestational sac (Savage, 2017). Affected fetuses usually die in the first trimester. Those advancing further often show growth restriction, oligohydramnios, and limb or CNS defects (Cavoretto, 2020).

In early pregnancy, however, these sonographic characteristics are seen in fewer than half of hydatidiform moles. At earlier gestations, a complete mole may appear as a polypoid hyperechoic mass that lacks internal cysts and is surrounded by anechoic fluid (Jauniaux, 2018).

The most common mimics are incomplete or missed abortion. In these cases, histological evaluation, described next, ultimately is diagnostic. Occasionally, molar pregnancy may be confused for a multifetal pregnancy or a uterine leiomyoma with cystic degeneration.

Pathology

Because of the risk for subsequent GTN following molar pregnancy, postevacuation surveillance is indicated. Thus, moles must be distinguished from other pregnancy types that are not molar but that have hydropic placental degeneration. Most often, these are hydropic abortuses formed by the traditional union of one haploid egg and one haploid sperm but are pregnancies that have failed. Their placentas display hydropic degeneration, in which villi are edematous and swollen, and thus mimic some villous features of hydatidiform moles. These mimics do not require postevacuation surveillance. Some distinguishing histological characteristics are shown in Table 13-2.

In pregnancies before 10 weeks, classic molar histological changes may not be apparent. Villi may not be enlarged, and molar stroma may not yet be edematous and avascular. Histopathologic evaluation can be enhanced by immunohistochemical staining for p57 expression and by molecular genotyping (Banet, 2014). $p57^{KIP2}$ is a nuclear protein whose gene is paternally imprinted and maternally expressed. This means that the gene product is produced only in tissues containing a maternal allele. Because complete moles contain only paternal genes, the $p57^{KIP2}$ protein is absent in complete moles, and tissues do not pick up this stain (Merchant, 2005). In contrast, this nuclear protein is strongly expressed in normal placentas, in spontaneous pregnancy losses with hydropic degeneration, and in partial hydatidiform moles (Castrillon, 2001). Accordingly, immunostaining for $p57^{KIP2}$ is an effective means to isolate complete mole from the diagnostic list. For distinction of a partial mole from a nonmolar hydropic abortus, both of which express $p57^{KIP2}$, molecular genotyping can be used (Ronnett, 2018). Molecular genotyping determines the parental source of alleles. Thereby, it can distinguish among a diploid diandric genome (complete mole), a triploid diandric-monogynic genome (partial mole), or biparental diploidy (nonmolar abortus) (Xing, 2021).

■ Management

Maternal deaths from molar pregnancies are rare because of early diagnosis, timely evacuation, and vigilant postevacuation surveillance for GTN (Sun, 2016). Preoperative evaluation strives to identify potential complications, such as preeclampsia, hyperthyroidism, anemia, electrolyte depletions from hyperemesis, and metastatic disease (Table 13-3). Most recommend chest radiography, whereas computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance (MR) imaging are not routinely done unless a chest radiograph shows lung lesions or unless other extrauterine disease is suspected.

Molar Pregnancy Termination

Regardless of uterine size, molar evacuation by suction curettage usually is the preferred treatment. Preoperative cervical dilation with an osmotic dilator is recommended if the cervix is minimally dilated. Intraoperative bleeding can be greater with molar pregnancy than with a comparably sized uterus containing nonmolar products. Thus with large moles, adequate anesthesia, sufficient intravenous access, and blood-banking support is imperative.

A step by step description of dilation and curettage is found in Chapter 11 (p. 213). For molar evacuation, the cervix is mechanically dilated to preferably allow insertion of a large Karman suction cannula. Depending on uterine size, a 10- to 14-mm diameter is typical. As evacuation is begun, oxytocin is infused to limit bleeding. Intraoperative sonography is often recommended to help ensure complete uterine cavity emptying and minimize perforation risk. When the myometrium has contracted, a thorough but gentle curettage with a sharp large-loop Sims curette may be performed. If bleeding continues despite uterine evacuation and oxytocin infusion, other uterotonic agents are given (see Table 13-3). Uncommonly, pelvic arterial embolization, uterine packing, or hysterectomy may be necessary (Chap. 44, p. 779) (Tse, 2007).

Some volume of trophoblast is deported into the pelvic venous system during molar evacuation (Hankins, 1987). With large moles, the amount of tissue may be sufficient to produce clinically apparent respiratory insufficiency, pulmonary edema, or even embolism (Delmis, 2000). In our earlier experiences with substantial moles, these and their chest radiographic manifestations clear rapidly without specific treatment.

Following curettage, anti-D immunoglobulin (Rhogam) is given to Rh D-negative women because fetal tissues with a partial mole may include red cells with D-antigen (Chap. 18, p. 356). Those with suspected complete mole are similarly treated because a definitive diagnosis of complete versus partial mole may not be confirmed until histological evaluation of the evacuated products.

Following evacuation, the long-term prognosis for women with a hydatidiform mole is not improved with prophylactic chemotherapy. Moreover, chemotherapy toxicity can be significant, and thus it is not recommended routinely (Gueye, 2014; Wang, 2017).

Methods other than suction curettage can be considered for select cases. Hysterectomy with ovarian preservation may be preferable for women who have finished childbearing and who carry complete moles with high-risk features. Of women aged 40 to 49 years, up to 50 percent will subsequently develop GTN, and hysterectomy markedly reduces this likelihood (Elias, 2012; Zhao, 2019). During hysterectomy, theca-lutein cysts do not require removal, and they spontaneously regress following molar termination. Last, labor induction or hysterotomy is seldom

TABLE 13-3. Some Considerations for Management of Hydatidiform Mole

Preoperative
Laboratory
Hemogram; serum β-hCG, creatinine, and hepatic aminotransferase levels
TSH, free T_4 levels
Type and Rh; group & screen or crossmatch depending on uterine size
Chest radiograph
Consider hygroscopic dilators
Intraoperative
Large-bore intravenous catheter(s)
Regional or general anesthesia
Oxytocin (Pitocin): 20 units in 1000 mL Ringer lactate for continuous infusion
One or more other uterotonic agents may be added as needed:
Methylergonovine (Methergine): 0.2 mg = 1 mL = 1 ampule IM every 2 h prn
Carboprost tromethamine ($PGF_{2\alpha}$) (Hemabate): 250 μg = 1 mL = 1 ampule IM every 15–90 min prn
Misoprostol (PGE_1) (Cytotec): 200 mg tablets for rectal administration, 800–1000 mg once
Karman cannula: size 10 or 14 mm
Consider sonography machine
Postevacuation
Anti-D immune globulin (Rhogam) if Rh D-negative
Initiate effective contraception[a]
Review pathology report
Serum hCG levels: within 48 h of evacuation, weekly until undetectable, then monthly for 6 months

[a]Intrauterine devices are not suitable during surveillance.
hCG = human chorionic gonadotropin; IM = intramuscular; PG = prostaglandin; T_4 = thyroxine; TSH = thyroid-stimulating hormone.

used for molar evacuation in the United States. Both will likely increase blood loss and theoretically may raise the incidence of persistent trophoblastic disease (Tidy, 2000).

Postevacuation Surveillance

Close biochemical surveillance for persistent gestational neoplasia follows each hydatidiform mole evacuation. Serial measurement of serum β-hCG levels aim to detect persistent or renewed trophoblastic proliferation. As a glycoprotein, hCG shows structural heterogeneity and exists in different isoforms. Thus, for surveillance, an hCG assay that can detect all forms of hCG should be used (Harvey, 2010; Ngan, 2018). These are different from those used for routine pregnancy testing (de Medeiros, 2009). The initial β-hCG level is obtained within 48 hours after evacuation. This serves as the baseline, which is compared with β-hCG quantification done thereafter every 1 to 2 weeks. Levels are followed until they become undetectable.

The median time for such resolution is 6 weeks for partial moles and 7 weeks for complete moles. Of patients, 95 percent have normal β-hCG levels by 14 weeks postevacuation and 99 percent by 25 weeks (Eysbouts, 2017a). Once β-hCG is undetectable, this is confirmed with monthly determinations for another 6 months (Lurain, 2010; Sebire, 2007).

Concurrently, reliable contraception is imperative to avoid confusion caused by rising β-hCG levels from a new pregnancy. Most recommend combination hormonal contraception, injectable depot medroxyprogesterone acetate, or progestin implant. The latter two are particularly useful if poor patient compliance is anticipated. Intrauterine devices are not used until β-hCG levels are undetectable because of the risk of uterine perforation if an invasive mole is present. After these 6 months, monitoring is discontinued and pregnancy allowed. Although not recommended, if a woman conceives during surveillance, live-birth and congenital anomalies rates appear to mirror general population rates (Tuncer, 1999b).

During β-hCG levels surveillance, increasing or persistently plateaued levels mandate evaluation for GTN. If the woman has not become pregnant, these levels signify trophoblast proliferation that is most likely malignant. Several factors predispose a patient to GTN following molar evacuation. Complete moles have a 15 to 20 percent incidence of malignant sequelae, compared with 1 to 5 percent following partial moles. Surprisingly, with much earlier recognition and evacuation of molar pregnancies, the risk for GTN has not dropped (Sun, 2015). Other GTN risk factors are older maternal age, preevacuation β-hCG levels >100,000 mIU/mL, uterine size that is large-for-gestational age, theca-lutein cysts >6 cm, and a slow decline in β-hCG levels (Berkowitz, 2009; Kang, 2012; Wolfberg, 2005).

GESTATIONAL TROPHOBLASTIC NEOPLASIA

This group includes invasive mole, choriocarcinoma, placental site trophoblastic tumor, and epithelioid trophoblastic tumor. These tumors almost always develop with or after some form

TABLE 13-4. Criteria for Diagnosis of Gestational Trophoblastic Neoplasia

1. Plateau of β-hCG level (± 10 percent) for four measurements during a period of 3 weeks or longer—days 1, 7, 14, 21
2. Rise of serum β-hCG level >10 percent during three weekly consecutive measurements or longer, during a period of 2 weeks or more—days 1, 7, 14
3. Serum β-hCG level remains detectable for 6 months or more
4. Histological criteria for choriocarcinoma

of recognized pregnancy. Half follow hydatidiform mole, a fourth follow miscarriage or tubal pregnancy, and another fourth develop after a preterm or term pregnancy (Goldstein, 2012). These four tumor types are histologically distinct but are usually diagnosed solely by persistently elevated serum β-hCG levels because tissue is infrequently available for study. Criteria to diagnose postmolar GTN are shown in Table 13-4.

Diagnosis, Staging, and Prognostic Scoring

Clinically, these placental tumors are characterized by their aggressive invasion into the myometrium and propensity to metastasize. The most common finding with GTN is irregular bleeding associated with uterine subinvolution. The bleeding may be continuous or intermittent and sometimes may be sudden and massive. Myometrial perforation from trophoblastic growth can cause intraperitoneal hemorrhage. In some women, lower genital tract metastases are evident. In others, only distant metastases, with no trace of uterine tumor, are found.

Consideration for the possibility of GTN is the most important factor in its recognition. Unusually persistent bleeding after any type of pregnancy should prompt serum β-hCG level measurement. Uterine size is assessed, and careful examination seeks lower genital tract metastases, which usually are bluish vascular masses (Cagayan, 2010). Tissue biopsy of such masses is unnecessary and may cause significant bleeding.

Once the diagnosis is verified, a baseline serum β-hCG level and hemogram are obtained. A search for local disease and metastases includes tests of liver and renal function, transvaginal sonography, chest CT or radiography, and brain and abdominopelvic CT scan or MR imaging. Less often, positron-emission tomographic (PET) scanning and cerebrospinal fluid β-hCG level determination are used to identify metastases (Lurain, 2011).

If no extrauterine disease is found, a second curettage or hysterectomy may be considered. After either, β-hCG levels are then measured every 2 weeks until three consecutively lie in undetectable range. Levels are subsequently repeated monthly for 6 months. In contrast, if β-hCG levels persist after curettage or hysterectomy or if initial extrauterine disease is found, patients undergo staging and chemotherapy is instituted (Koh, 2018; Osborne, 2016).

GTN is staged clinically using the system of the International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) (2009). This includes a modification of the World Health Organization (WHO) (1983) prognostic index score, with which scores of 0 to 4 are given for each of the categories shown in Table 13-5. Women with WHO scores of 0 to 6 are considered to have

TABLE 13-5. International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) Staging and Diagnostic Scoring System for Gestational Trophoblastic Neoplasia

Anatomical Staging	
Stage I	Disease confined to the uterus
Stage II	GTN extends outside of the uterus but is limited to the genital structures (adnexa, vagina, broad ligament)
Stage III	GTN extends to the lungs, with or without known genital tract involvement
Stage IV	All other metastatic sites

Modified World Health Organization (WHO) Prognostic Scoring System[a]

Scores[b]	0	1	2	4
Age (years)	<40	≥40	—	—
Antecedent pregnancy	Mole	Abortion	Term	—
Interval after index pregnancy (mo)	<4	4–6	7–12	>12
Pretreatment serum β-hCG (mIU/mL)	$<10^3$	10^3 to 10^4	10^4 to 10^5	$\geq 10^5$
Largest tumor size (including uterus)	<3 cm	3–4 cm	≥5 cm	—
Site of metastases		Spleen, kidney	GI	Liver, brain
Number of metastases	—	1–4	5–8	>8
Previous failed chemotherapy drugs	—	—	1	≥2

[a]Adapted by FIGO.
[b]Low risk = WHO score of 0 to 6; high risk = WHO score of ≥7.
β-hCG = beta human chorionic gonadotropin; GI = gastrointestinal; GTN = gestational trophoblastic neoplasia.

low-risk disease, whereas those with scores ≥7 are considered in the high-risk group.

Histological Classification

Clinical staging is assigned without regard to histological findings, even if available. Still, distinct histological types are recognized.

Invasive Mole

These are a common trophoblastic neoplasm, and almost all invasive moles arise from partial or complete moles. Previously known as *chorioadenoma destruens*, invasive mole is characterized by extensive tissue invasion by trophoblast and whole villi. Trophoblastic cells penetrate deep into the myometrium and sometimes involve the peritoneum, adjacent parametrium, or vaginal vault. Although locally aggressive, invasive moles are less prone to metastasize.

Gestational Choriocarcinoma

This is the most common trophoblastic neoplasm to follow a term pregnancy or a miscarriage, and only a fourth of cases follow a molar gestation (Soper, 2021). Choriocarcinoma is composed of cells reminiscent of early cytotrophoblast and syncytiotrophoblast, however, it contains no villi. This rapidly growing tumor invades both myometrium and blood vessels to create hemorrhage and necrosis. Myometrial tumor may spread outward and become visible on the uterine surface as dark, irregular nodules. Metastases often develop early and are generally blood-borne. The most common sites are the lungs and vagina, but tumor may travel to the vulva, kidneys, liver, brain, ovaries, and bowel. With choriocarcinomas, ovarian theca-lutein cysts commonly coexist.

Placental Site Trophoblastic Tumor

This uncommon tumor arises from *intermediate trophoblasts* at the placental site. These tumors have associated serum β-hCG levels that may be only modestly elevated (Gadducci, 2019). However, they produce variant forms of hCG, and identifying a high proportion of free β-hCG favors this diagnosis (Horowitz, 2017). Treatment of placental site trophoblastic tumor by hysterectomy is preferred because these locally invasive tumors are usually resistant to chemotherapy. For higher-risk stage I and for later stages, adjuvant multidrug chemotherapy also is given (Koh, 2018; Schmid, 2009).

Epithelioid Trophoblastic Tumor

This rare tumor develops from *chorionic-type intermediate trophoblast*. The uterus is mainly involved, and bleeding but low hCG levels are typical findings (Gadducci, 2019). Primary treatment is hysterectomy because this tumor is relatively resistant to chemotherapy. Metastatic disease is common, and combination chemotherapy is employed (Frijstein, 2019; Koh, 2018).

Treatment

Women with GTN are best managed by oncologists, and some evidence supports treatment in centers specializing in GTN (Kohorn, 2014). Chemotherapy alone is usually the primary treatment. In some GTN cases without extrauterine disease, a second uterine evacuation may be an adjuvant therapeutic option to avoid or minimize chemotherapy (Hemida, 2019; Koh, 2018; Pezeshki, 2004). In other cases, suction curettage may infrequently be needed to resolve bleeding or remove a substantial amount of retained molar tissue. In specific cases, hysterectomy may be primary or adjuvant treatment (Bolze, 2018; Eysbouts, 2017b).

Single-agent chemotherapy protocols are usually sufficient for nonmetastatic or low-risk metastatic neoplasia (Lawrie, 2016; Koh, 2018). In their review of 108 women with low-risk disease, Abrão and colleagues (2008) reported that monotherapy protocols with either methotrexate or actinomycin D were equally effective compared with a regimen containing both. In general, methotrexate is less toxic than actinomycin D (Chan, 2006; Seckl, 2010). Regimens are repeated until serum β-hCG levels are undetectable.

Combination chemotherapy is given for high-risk disease, and reported cure rates approximate 90 percent (Lurain, 2011). Several regimens are successful. One is *EMA-CO,* which includes etoposide, methotrexate, actinomycin D, cyclophosphamide, and vincristine (Oncovin). In selected cases, adjuvant surgical and radiotherapy also may be employed (Hanna, 2010). Despite chemotherapy successes in general, frequent causes of death include hemorrhage from metastatic sites, respiratory failure, sepsis, and multiorgan failure due to widespread chemoresistant disease (Lybol, 2012; Neubauer, 2015).

With either low- or high-risk disease, once serum β-hCG levels are undetectable, serosurveillance is continued for 1 year. During this time, effective contraception is crucial to avoid teratogenic effects of chemotherapy to the fetus and to mitigate confusion from rising β-hCG levels caused by superimposed pregnancy.

A few women during surveillance, despite no evidence of metastases, will be found to have very low β-hCG levels that plateau. This phenomenon is called *quiescent hCG* and presumably stems from dormant trophoblast. Close observation without therapy is recommended, but 20 percent will eventually have recurrent active and progressive GTN (Ngu, 2014).

SUBSEQUENT PREGNANCY

Women with prior hydatidiform mole generally do not have impaired fertility, and their pregnancy outcomes are usually normal (Joneborg, 2014; Matsui, 2001; Sebire, 2003). One concern is the 1-percent risk for developing trophoblastic disease in a subsequent pregnancy (p. 237). Sonographic evaluation is recommended in early pregnancy, and subsequently as needed.

Women with GTN who have successfully completed chemotherapy are advised to delay pregnancy for 1 year. Most relapses develop within this time period (Tranoulis, 2019). Also, methotrexate may persist in human tissues for months (Hackmon, 2011). Despite this, women who become pregnant within 1 year postchemotherapy for GTN can be reassured of a likely favorable outcome (Woolas, 1998). Risk of miscarriage or GTN relapse is not increased compared with women conceiving after the suggested 1-year surveillance (Williams, 2014). However, these gravidas are advised that the diagnosis

of a tumor relapse may be delayed during pregnancy (Blagden, 2002; Tuncer, 1999a).

In general, fertility and pregnancy outcomes following GTN treatment are typically normal, and congenital anomaly rates are not increased (Berkowitz, 2000; Tse, 2012). One exception is a higher stillbirth rate of 1.5 percent compared with a background rate of 0.8 percent (Vargas, 2014).

For those with prior hydatidiform mole or GTN treatment, the placenta or products of conception in a subsequent pregnancy are sent for pathological evaluation at delivery. A serum β-hCG level also is measured 6 weeks postpartum (Lurain, 2010; Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, 2010). This assay may be less valuable for those solely with a prior mole compared with those previously treated for GTN (Earp, 2019).

REFERENCES

Abrão RA, de Andrade JM, Tiezzi DG, et al: Treatment for low-risk gestational trophoblastic disease: comparison of single-agent methotrexate, dactinomycin and combination regimens. Gynecol Oncol 108:149, 2008

Banet N, DeScipio C, Murphy KM, et al: Characteristics of hydatidiform moles: analysis of a prospective series with p57 immunohistochemistry and molecular genotyping. Mod Pathol 27(2):238, 2014

Benirschke K, Burton GJ, Baergen RN (eds): Molar pregnancies. In Pathology of the Human Placenta, 6th ed. New York, Springer, 2012, p 687

Berkowitz RS, Goldstein DP: Current management of gestational trophoblastic diseases. Gynecol Oncol 112(3):654, 2009

Berkowitz RS, Tuncer ZS, Bernstein MR: Management of gestational trophoblastic diseases: subsequent pregnancy experience. Semin Oncol 27(6):678, 2000

Blagden SP, Foskett MA, Fisher RA, et al: The effect of early pregnancy following chemotherapy on disease relapse and foetal outcome in women treated for gestational trophoblastic tumours. Br J Cancer 86(1):26, 2002

Bolze PA, Mathe M, Hajri T, et al: First-line hysterectomy for women with low-risk non-metastatic gestational trophoblastic neoplasia no longer wishing to conceive. Gynecol Oncol 150(2):282, 2018

Cagayan MS: Vaginal metastases complicating gestational trophoblastic neoplasia. J Reprod Med 55(5–6):229, 2010

Castrillon DH, Sun D, Weremowicz S, et al: Discrimination of complete hydatidiform mole from its mimics by immunohistochemistry of the paternally imprinted gene product p57KIP2. Am J Surg Pathol 25(10): 1225, 2001

Cavoretto P, Cioffi R, Mangili G, et al: A pictorial ultrasound essay of gestational trophoblastic disease. J Ultrasound Med 39(3):597, 2020

Chan KK, Huang Y, Tam KF, et al: Single-dose methotrexate regimen in the treatment of low-risk gestational trophoblastic neoplasia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:1282, 2006

Choi MC, Lee C, Smith HO, et al: Epidemiology. In Hancock BW, Seckl MJ, Berkowitz RS (eds): Gestational trophoblastic disease, 4th ed. London, International Society for the Study of Trophoblastic Disease, 2015, p 57

Cormano J, Mackay G, Holschneider C: Gestational trophoblastic disease diagnosis delayed by the hook effect. Obstet Gynecol 126(4):811, 2015

de Medeiros SF, Norman RJ: Human chorionic gonadotrophin protein core and sugar branches heterogeneity: basic and clinical insights. Hum Reprod Update 15(1):69, 2009

Delmis J, Pfeifer D, Ivanisecvic M, et al: Sudden death from trophoblastic embolism in pregnancy. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 92:225, 2000

Drake RD, Rao GG, McIntire DD, et al: Gestational trophoblastic disease among Hispanic women: a 21-year hospital-based study. Gynecol Oncol 103:81, 2006

Eagles N, Sebire NJ, Short D, et al: Risk of recurrent molar pregnancies following complete and partial hydatidiform moles. Hum Reprod 30(9): 2055, 2015

Earp KE, Hancock BW, Short D, et al: Do we need post-pregnancy screening with human chorionic gonadotrophin after previous hydatidiform mole to identify patients with recurrent gestational trophoblastic disease? Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 234:117, 2019

Elias KM, Shoni M, Bernstein M, et al: Complete hydatidiform mole in women aged 40 to 49 years. J Reprod Med 57(5-6):254, 2012

Eysbouts Y, Brouwer R, Ottevanger P, et al: Serum human chorionic gonadotropin normogram for the detection of gestational trophoblastic neoplasia. Int J Gynecol Cancer 27(5):1035, 2017a

Eysbouts YK, Bulten J, Ottevanger PB, et al: Trends in incidence for gestational trophoblastic disease over the last 20 years in a population-based study. Gynecol Oncol 140(1):70, 2016

Eysbouts YK, Massuger LF, IntHout J, et al: The added value of hysterectomy in the management of gestational trophoblastic neoplasia. Gynecol Oncol 145(3):536, 2017b

FIGO Committee on Gynecologic Oncology: Current FIGO staging for cancer of the vagina, fallopian tube, ovary, and gestational trophoblastic neoplasia. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 105:3, 2009

Fowler DJ, Lindsay I, Seckl MJ, et al: Routine pre-evacuation ultrasound diagnosis of hydatidiform mole: experience of more than 1000 cases from a regional referral center. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 27(1):56, 2006

Frijstein MM, Lok CA, van Trommel NE, et al: Management and prognostic factors of epithelioid trophoblastic tumors: results from the International Society for the Study of Trophoblastic Diseases database. Gynecol Oncol 152(2):361, 2019

Gadducci A, Carinelli S, Guerrieri ME, et al: Placental site trophoblastic tumor and epithelioid trophoblastic tumor: clinical and pathological features, prognostic variables and treatment strategy. Gynecol Oncol 153(3):684, 2019

Goldstein DP, Berkowitz RS: Current management of gestational trophoblastic neoplasia. Hematol Oncol Clin North Am 26(1):111, 2012

Gueye M, Kane-Gueye SM, Ndiaye-Gueye MD, et al: Gestational trophoblastic neoplasia after achieving a nondetectable serum human chorionic gonadotrophin level. BJOG 121(11):1415, 2014

Hackmon R, Sakaguchi S, Koren G: Effect of methotrexate treatment of ectopic pregnancy on subsequent pregnancy. Can Fam Physician 57(1): 37, 2011

Hankins GD, Wendel GD, Snyder RR, et al: Trophoblastic embolization during molar evacuation: central hemodynamic observations. Obstet Gynecol 63:368, 1987

Hanna RK, Soper JT: The role of surgery and radiation therapy in the management of gestational trophoblastic disease. Oncologist 15(6):593, 2010

Harvey RA, Mitchell HD, Stenman UH, et al: Differences in total human chorionic gonadotropin immunoassay analytical specificity and ability to measure human chorionic gonadotropin in gestational trophoblastic disease and germ cell tumors. J Reprod Med 55(7-8):28, 2010

Hemida R, Vos EL, El-Deek B, et al: Second uterine curettage and the number of chemotherapy courses in postmolar gestational trophoblastic neoplasia: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 133(5):1024, 2019

Horowitz NS, Goldstein DP, Berkowitz RS: Placental site trophoblastic tumors and epithelioid trophoblastic tumors: biology, natural history, and treatment modalities. Gynecol Oncol 144(1):208, 2017

Hui P, Baergen R, Cheung AN, et al: Gestational trophoblastic neoplasia. In Kurman RJ, Carcangiu LM, Herrington CS, et al (eds): WHO Classification of Tumours of Female Reproductive Organs. Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, 2014a, p 155

Hui P, Baergen R, Cheung AN, et al: Molar pregnancies. In Kurman RJ, Carcangiu LM, Herrington CS, et al (eds): WHO Classification of Tumours of Female Reproductive Organs. Lyon, International Agency for Research on Cancer, 2014b, p 163

Jauniaux E, Memtsa M, Johns J, et al: New insights in the pathophysiology of complete hydatidiform mole. Placenta 62:28, 2018

Joergensen MW, Niemann I, Rasmussen AA, et al: Triploid pregnancies: genetic and clinical features of 158 cases. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(4):370. e1, 2014

Joneborg U, Eloranta S, Johansson AL, et al: Hydatidiform mole and subsequent pregnancy outcome: a population-based cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(6):681.e1, 2014

Kang WD, Choi HS, Kim SM: Prediction of persistent gestational trophoblastic neoplasia: the role of hCG level and ratio in 2 weeks after evacuation of complete mole. Gynecol Oncol 124(2):250, 2012

Kofinas JD, Kruczek A, Sample J, et al: Thyroid storm-induced multi-organ failure in the setting of gestational trophoblastic disease. J Emerg Med 48(1): 35, 2015

Koh WJ, Abu-Rustum NR, Besn S, et al: Gestational trophoblastic neoplasia, version 1.2019. Plymouth Meeting, National Comprehensive Cancer Network, 2018

Kohorn EI: Worldwide survey of the results of treating gestational trophoblastic disease. J Reprod Med 59(3-4):145, 2014

Lakovschek IC, Streubel B, Ulm B: Natural outcome of trisomy 13, trisomy 18, and triploidy after prenatal diagnosis. Am J Med Genet A 155A(11):262, 2011

Lawler SD, Fisher RA, Dent J: A prospective genetic study of complete and partial hydatidiform moles. Am J Obstet Gynecol 164:1270, 1991

Lawrie TA, Alazzam M, Tidy J, et al: First-line chemotherapy in low-risk gestational trophoblastic neoplasia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD007102, 2016

Lee SW, Kim MY, Chung JH, et al: Clinical findings of multiple pregnancy with a complete hydatidiform mole and coexisting fetus. J Ultrasound Med 29(2):271, 2010

Lin LH, Maestá I, Braga A, et al: Multiple pregnancies with complete mole and coexisting normal fetus in North and South America: a retrospective multicenter cohort and literature review. Gynecol Oncol 145(1):88, 2017

Lurain JR: Gestational trophoblastic disease I: epidemiology, pathology, clinical presentation and diagnosis of gestational trophoblastic disease, and management of hydatidiform mole. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203(6):531, 2010

Lurain JR: Gestational trophoblastic disease II: classification and management of gestational trophoblastic neoplasia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(1):11, 2011

Lybol C, Centen DW, Thomas CM, et al: Fatal cases of gestational trophoblastic neoplasia over four decades in the Netherlands: a retrospective cohort study. BJOG 119(12):1465, 2012

Matsui H, Iitsuka Y, Suzuka K, et al: Subsequent pregnancy outcome in patients with spontaneous resolution of HCG after evacuation of hydatidiform mole: comparison between complete and partial mole. Hum Reprod 16(6):1274, 2011

Melamed A, Gockley AA, Joseph NT, et al: Effect of race/ethnicity on risk of complete and partial molar pregnancy after adjustment for age. Gynecol Oncol 143(1):73, 2016

Merchant SH, Amin MB, Viswanatha DS, et al: p57KIP2 immunohistochemistry in early molar pregnancies: emphasis on its complementary role in the differential diagnosis of hydropic abortuses. Hum Pathol 36:180, 2005

Neubauer NL, Strohl AE, Schink JC, et al: Fatal gestational trophoblastic neoplasia: an analysis of treatment failures at the Brewer Trophoblastic Disease Center from 1979–2012 compared to 1962–1978. Gynecol Oncol 138(2):339, 2015

Ngan HY, Seckl MJ, Berkowitz RS, et al: Update on the diagnosis and management of gestational trophoblastic disease. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 143(Suppl 2): 79, 2018

Ngu SF, Chan KK: Management of chemoresistant and quiescent gestational trophoblastic disease. Curr Obstet Gynecol Rep 3:84, 2014

Niemann I, Petersen LK, Hansen ES, et al: Differences in current clinical features of diploid and triploid hydatidiform mole. BJOG 114:1273, 2007

Ohama K, Kajii T, Okamoto E, et al: Dispermic origin of XY hydatidiform moles. Nature 292(5823):551, 1981

Osborne RJ, Filiaci VL, Schink JC, et al: Second curettage for low-risk nonmetastatic gestation-al trophoblastic neoplasia. Obstet Gynecol 128(3):535, 2016

Patel S, Roberts S, Rogers V, et al (eds): Williams Obstetrics Study Guide, 25th Edition. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2019, p 138

Pezeshki M, Hancock BW, Silcocks P: The role of repeat uterine evacuation in the management of persistent gestational trophoblastic disease. Gynecol Oncol 95(3):423, 2004

Ronnett BM: Hydatidiform moles: ancillary techniques to refine diagnosis. Arch Pathol Lab Med 142(12):1485, 2018

Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists: The management of gestational trophoblastic disease. Green-top Guideline No. 38, 2010

Savage JL, Maturen KE, Mowers EL, et al: Sonographic diagnosis of partial versus complete molar pregnancy: a reappraisal. J Clin Ultrasound 45(2):72, 2017

Savage PM, Sita-Lumsden A, Dickson S, et al: The relationship of maternal age to molar pregnancy incidence, risks for chemotherapy and subsequent pregnancy outcome. J Obstet Gynaecol 33(4):406, 2013

Schmid P, Nagai Y, Agarwal R: Prognostic markers and long-term outcome of placental-site trophoblastic tumours: a retrospective observational study. Lancet 374(9683):48, 2009

Sebire NJ, Fisher RA, Foskett M, et al: Risk of recurrent hydatidiform mole and subsequent pregnancy outcome following complete or partial hydatidiform molar pregnancy. BJOG 110(1):22, 2003

Sebire NJ, Foskett M, Fisher RA, et al: Risk of partial and complete hydatidiform molar pregnancy in relation to maternal age. BJOG 109:99, 2002a

Sebire NJ, Foskett M, Paradinas FJ, et al: Outcome of twin pregnancies with complete hydatidiform mole and healthy co-twin. Lancet 359:2165, 2002b

Sebire NJ, Foskett M, Short D, et al: Shortened duration of human chorionic gonadotrophin surveillance following complete or partial hydatidiform mole: evidence for revised protocol of a UK regional trophoblastic disease unit. BJOG 114(6):760, 2007

Sebire NJ, Lindsay I, Fisher RA: Overdiagnosis of complete and partial hydatidiform mole in tubal ectopic pregnancies. Int J Gynecol Pathol 24(3):260, 2005

Seckl MJ, Sebire NJ, Berkowitz RS: Gestational trophoblastic disease. Lancet 376(9742):717, 2010

Soper JT: Gestational trophoblastic disease: current evaluation and management. Obstet Gynecol 137(2):355, 2021

Sun SY, Goldstein DP, Bernstein MR, et al: Maternal near miss according to World Health Organization classification among women with a hydatidiform mole: experience at the New England Trophoblastic Disease Center, 1994–2013. J Reprod Med 61(5–6):210, 2016

Sun SY, Melamed A, Goldstein DP, et al: Changing presentation of complete hydatidiform mole at the New England Trophoblastic Disease Center over the past three decades: does early diagnosis alter risk for gestational trophoblastic neoplasia? Gynecol Oncol 138(1):46, 2015

Tidy JA, Gillespie AM, Bright N, et al: Gestational trophoblastic disease: a study of mode of evacuation and subsequent need for treatment with chemotherapy. Gynecol Oncol 78:309, 2000

Tranoulis A, Georgiou D, Sayasneh A, et al: Gestational trophoblastic neoplasia: a meta-analysis evaluating reproductive and obstetrical outcomes after administration of chemotherapy. Int J Gynecol Cancer 29(6):1021, 2019

Tse KY, Chan KK, Tam KF: 20-year experience of managing profuse bleeding in gestational trophoblastic disease. J Reprod Med 52(5):397, 2007

Tse KY, Ngan HY: Gestational trophoblastic disease. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 26(3):357, 2012

Tuncer ZS, Bernstein MR, Goldstein DP, et al: Outcome of pregnancies occurring before completion of human chorionic gonadotropin follow-up in patients with persistent gestational trophoblastic tumor. Gynecol Oncol 73(3):345, 1999a

Tuncer ZS, Bernstein MR, Goldstein DP, et al: Outcome of pregnancies occurring within 1 year of hydatidiform mole. Obstet Gynecol 94(4):588, 1999b

Vargas R, Barroilhet LM, Esselen K, et al: Subsequent pregnancy outcomes after complete and partial molar pregnancy, recurrent molar pregnancy, and gestational trophoblastic neoplasia: an update from the New England Trophoblastic Disease Center. J Reprod Med 59(5-6):188, 2014

Wang Q, Fu J, Hu L, et al: Prophylactic chemotherapy for hydatidiform mole to prevent gestational trophoblastic neoplasia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 9:CD007289, 2017

Wee L, Jauniaux E: Prenatal diagnosis and management of twin pregnancies complicated by a co-existing molar pregnancy. Prenat Diagn 25(9):772, 2005

Williams J, Short D, Dayal L, et al: Effect of early pregnancy following chemotherapy on disease relapse and fetal outcome in women treated for gestational trophoblastic neoplasia. J Reprod Med 59(5-6):248, 2014

Wolfberg AJ, Berkowitz RS, Goldstein DP: Postevacuation hCG levels and risk of gestational trophoblastic neoplasia in women with complete molar pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 106(3):548, 2005

Woolas RP, Bower M, Newlands ES, et al: Influence of chemotherapy for gestational trophoblastic disease on subsequent pregnancy outcome. BJOG 105:1032, 1998

World Health Organization Scientific Group: Gestational trophoblastic disease. WHO Tech Rep Ser 692:1, 1983

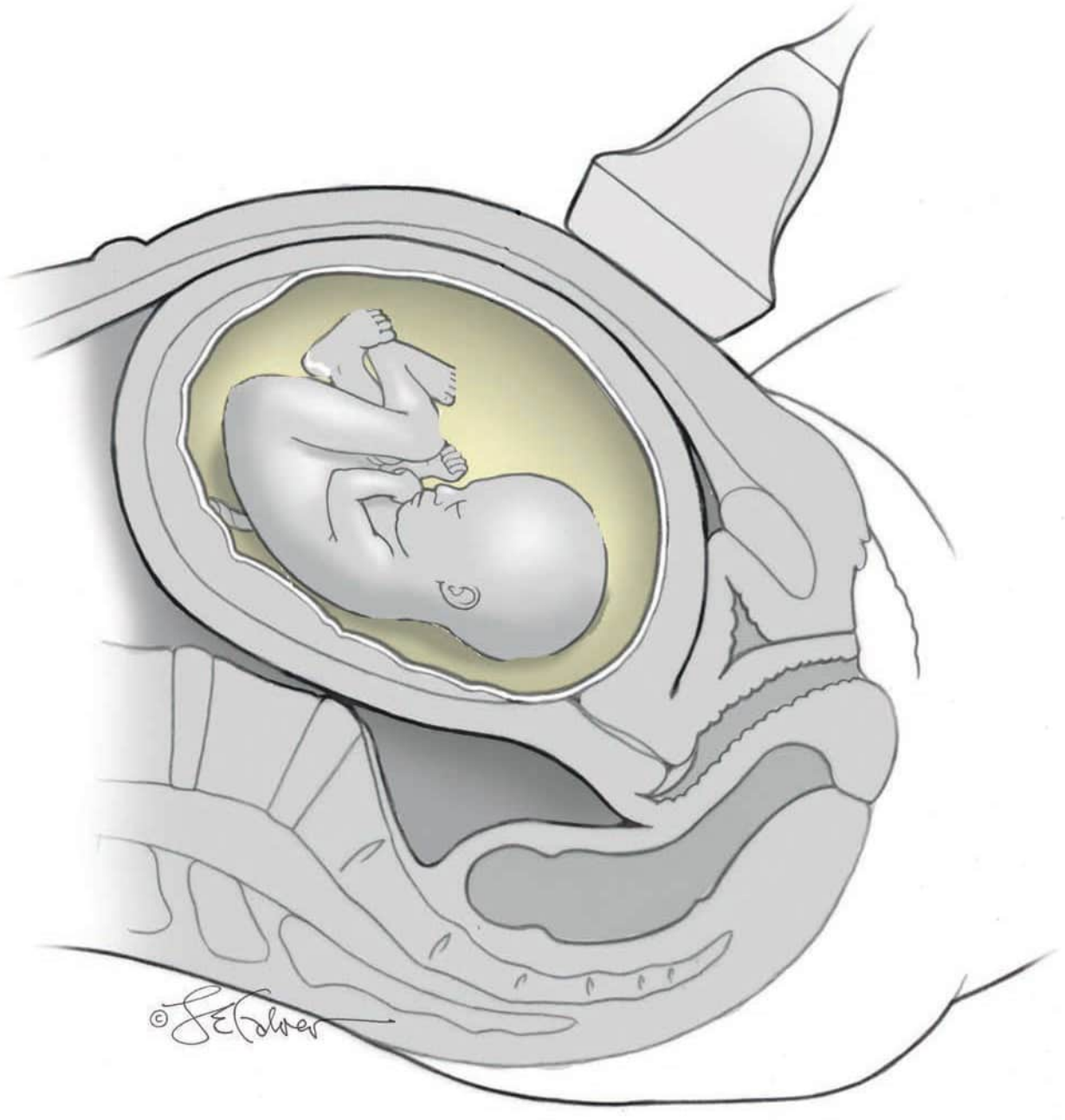
Yamada Y, Ohira S, Yamazaki T, et al: Ectopic molar pregnancy: diagnostic efficacy of magnetic resonance imaging and review of the literature. Case Rep Obstet Gynecol 2016:7618631, 2016

Xing D, Adams E, Huang J, et al: Refined diagnosis of hydatidiform moles with p57 immunohistochemistry and molecular genotyping: updated analysis of a prospective series of 2217 cases. Mod Pathol 34(5):961, 2021

Zhao P, Lu Y, Huang W, et al: Total hysterectomy versus uterine evacuation for preventing post-molar gestational trophoblastic neoplasia in patients who are at least 40 years old: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMC Cancer 19(1):13, 2019

SECTION 6

THE FETAL PATIENT



CHAPTER 14

Obstetrical Imaging

Obstetrical ultrasound is fundamental to prenatal care. It is used to confirm gestational age and viability; to detect and characterize abnormalities of the fetus, amnionic fluid, and placenta; and to assist with diagnostic and therapeutic procedures.

Ultrasound practice continues to evolve. The number of components included in the second-trimester standard and detailed fetal anatomical surveys has expanded. With improved image resolution, fetal abnormalities are increasingly identified in the late first trimester. This has prompted the requirement for a limited anatomical survey during the standard first-trimester examination and has led to the development of a new detailed first-trimester examination. Detailed placental evaluation is a new specialized examination to aid detection and characterization of placenta accreta spectrum.

Across the United States, pregnant women receive ultrasound examinations in various practice settings staffed by obstetrician–gynecologists, maternal–fetal medicine specialists, and radiologists. Ideally, examinations are performed by registered diagnostic medical sonographers or physicians with certification in their area(s) of practice and in units accredited by the American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine (AIUM) or American College of Radiology. Components of accreditation include evidence of physician training, sonographer credentialing, continuing medical education, and protocols and procedures to ensure proper and safe ultrasound practice. One important component is independent review of submitted images.

To standardize ultrasound education for residents in obstetrics and gynecology and fellows in maternal-fetal medicine, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, and the AIUM have developed consensus documents (Abuhamad, 2018; Benacerraf, 2018). A focus of training—and of ultrasound practice—is standardization of an ultrasound curriculum and provision of competency assessment tools for image acquisition.

TECHNOLOGY AND SAFETY

The image on the ultrasound screen is produced by sound waves that are reflected back from fluid and tissue interfaces of the fetus, amnionic fluid, and placenta. Ultrasound transducers contain groups of piezoelectric crystals that convert electrical energy into sound waves and convert returning sound waves back into electrical energy. The sound waves are emitted in synchronized pulses. As these pulses pass through tissue layers, dense tissue such as bone produces high-velocity reflected waves. With routine gray-scale imaging, which is also known as brightness-mode (B-mode), these reflected waves are displayed as bright echoes on the screen. Conversely, fluid generates few reflected waves and appears dark. Digital images generated at

50 to more than 100 frames per second undergo postprocessing that yields the appearance of real-time imaging.

Ultrasound refers to sound waves traveling at a frequency above 20,000 hertz (Hz [cycles per second]). Transducers use wide-bandwidth technology to perform within a range of frequencies. Higher-frequency transducers yield better image resolution, whereas lower frequencies penetrate tissue more effectively. In early pregnancy, a 5- to 12-megahertz (MHz) transvaginal transducer usually provides excellent resolution, because the early fetus lies close to the transducer. In the first and second trimesters, a 4- to 6-MHz transabdominal transducer is similarly sufficiently close to the fetus to yield precise images. By the third trimester, however, a lower-frequency 2- to 5-MHz transducer may be needed for tissue penetration—particularly in obese patients—and this can lead to compromised image resolution.

Embryo and Fetal Safety

Sonography should be performed only for a valid medical indication and use the lowest possible exposure setting to gain necessary information. This is the *ALARA* principle—as low as reasonably achievable. Examinations are performed only by those trained to recognize fetal abnormalities and artifacts that may mimic pathology and with techniques to avoid ultrasound exposure beyond what is considered safe for the fetus (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018a). No causal relationship has been demonstrated between diagnostic ultrasound and any recognized adverse effect in human pregnancy. The International Society of Ultrasound in Obstetrics and Gynecology (2016) further concludes that there is no scientifically proven association between ultrasound exposure in the first or second trimesters and autism spectrum disorder or its severity.

All ultrasound machines are required to display two indices: the *thermal index* and the *mechanical index*. The thermal index measures the relative probability that the examination may raise the temperature enough to induce injury. However, fetal damage resulting from commercially available ultrasound equipment in routine practice is extremely unlikely. The potential for temperature elevation is higher with longer examination time and is greater near bone than in soft tissue. Theoretical risks are higher during organogenesis than later in gestation. The thermal index for soft tissue, *Tis*, should be used before 10 weeks' gestation, and that for bone, *Tib*, at or beyond 10 weeks (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018a).

The thermal index is higher with pulsed Doppler applications than with routine B-mode scanning. In the first trimester, if pulsed Doppler is clinically indicated, the thermal index should be ≤ 0.7, and the exposure time should be as brief as possible (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2020b). This is an important consideration when pulsed Doppler is applied to assist with identification or characterization of suspected abnormalities at 11 to 14 weeks' gestation. To document the embryonic or fetal heart rate, motion-mode (M-mode) scanning is used instead of pulsed Doppler imaging.

The mechanical index is a measure of the likelihood of adverse effects related to rarefactional pressure, such as cavitation, which is relevant only in tissues that contain air. Microbubble ultrasound contrast agents are not used in pregnancy for this reason. In mammalian tissues that do not contain gas bodies, no adverse effects have been reported over the range of diagnostically relevant exposures. Fetuses cannot contain gas bodies and thus are not considered at risk.

The use of ultrasound for any nonmedical purpose, such as "keepsake fetal imaging," is considered *contrary to responsible medical practice* and is not condoned by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) (2019), the American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine (2020b), or the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b). However, images or video clips from medically indicated ultrasound examinations may be shared with patients.

Operator Safety

The reported prevalence of work-related musculoskeletal discomfort or injury among sonographers approximates 70 percent (Janga, 2012; Roll, 2012). The most common injuries are capsulitis and tendonitis of the shoulder, epicondylitis of the elbow, carpal and cubital tunnel syndrome, and neck or back strain (Murphey, 2018). The main risk factors for injury during transabdominal ultrasound examinations are awkward posture, sustained static forces, and various pinch grips used to maneuver the transducer (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2006). Excessive flexion, extension, or abduction while scanning places stress on joints and muscles. Task repetition without adequate recovery time may compound risks. Maternal habitus can be contributory because more force is often needed when imaging obese patients.

The following guidelines may help avert injury:

1. Position the patient close to you on the examination table. As a result, your elbow is close to your body, shoulder abduction is <30 degrees, and your thumb is facing up.
2. Adjust the table or chair height so that your forearm is parallel to the floor.
3. Use a chair with back support, if seated. Avoid leaning toward the patient or monitor. Support your feet, and keep ankles in neutral position.
4. Face the monitor squarely and position it so that it is viewed at a neutral angle from the horizon, such as 15 degrees downward.
5. Avoid reaching, bending, or twisting while scanning.
6. Take frequent breaks to help prevent muscle strain. Stretching and strengthening exercises can be helpful.

GESTATIONAL AGE ASSESSMENT

Gestational age is based on two things: the certainty of the woman's last menstrual period (LMP) date and measurements of the embryo or fetus at the initial ultrasound examination. Gestational sac measurement is not suitable for gestational age assignment. If the LMP is certain, the estimated due date (EDD) is based on LMP unless the date–measurement discrepancy exceeds thresholds listed in Table 14-1 (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b,c). If the

TABLE 14-1. Assessment of Gestational Age

Gestational Age[a]	Parameter(s)	Threshold Value to Redate[b]
<9 wks	CRL	>5 d
9 to <14 wks	CRL	>7 d
14 to <16 wks	BPD, HC, AC, FL	>7 d
16 to <22 wks	BPD, HC, AC, FL	>10 d
22 to <28 wks	BPD, HC, AC, FL	>14 d
≥28 wks	BPD, HC, AC, FL	>21 d

[a]Based on last menstrual period (LMP).
[b]Ultrasound gestational age should be used if it differs from the LMP-derived gestational age by more than the threshold value.
AC = abdominal circumference; BPD = biparietal diameter; CRL = crown-rump length; FL = femur length; HC = head circumference.

discrepancy exceeds these thresholds, or if the LMP is uncertain or unknown, ultrasound measurements establish the EDD.

Ultrasound measurement of the crown-rump length (CRL) is the most accurate method to establish or confirm gestational age (Appendix, p. 1234). Transvaginal imaging yields higher resolution images. The CRL is measured in the midsagittal plane with the embryo or fetus in a neutral, nonflexed position. This allows its length to be measured in a straight line (Fig. 14-1). The mean of three discrete measurements is used. Before 14 weeks' gestation, the CRL is accurate to within 5 to 7 days (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c).

Starting at $14^{0/7}$ weeks' gestation, the biparietal diameter, head circumference, abdominal circumference, and femur length should be measured. Equipment software formulas calculate estimated gestational age and fetal weight from these four biometric parameters. The accuracy of the fetal weight estimate is assumed to be within 15 percent of the actual weight (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018a). Measurement criteria are discussed in Chapter 15 (p. 272).

Before 22 weeks, gestational age assessment using these four biometric parameters is accurate to within 7 to 10 days (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). Various nomograms are available for other structural measurements, including the transverse cerebellar diameter, orbital distances, thoracic circumference, and length of the ear, kidney, long bones, and feet. These may be used to address specific questions regarding organ system abnormalities or syndromes (Appendix, pp. 1238–1241).

If the initial ultrasound examination is performed at or beyond 22 weeks' gestation, the pregnancy is *suboptimally dated* (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b). In such cases, subsequent ultrasound evaluation in 3 to 4 weeks may be considered. This is especially true if the ultrasound measurements are smaller than expected for gestational age based on LMP and thus poor fetal growth is a possibility.

Fertilization is presumed to occur 2 weeks after a confident LMP. Therefore, for pregnancies achieved with in vitro fertilization and fresh transfer, 266 days are added to the egg-retrieval/fertilization date to calculate the EDD. Similarly, if using a day-3 frozen embryo, adding 263 days accounts for the days of embryo culture. For pregnancies conceived with intrauterine insemination, LMP is used.

FIRST-TRIMESTER ULTRASOUND

The three types of first-trimester examinations include standard ultrasound; nuchal translucency evaluation—between 11 and 14 weeks' gestation; and detailed first-trimester anatomy evaluation between 12 and 14 weeks' gestation.

Indications for the standard first-trimester examination are listed in Table 14-2 (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018a). Early pregnancy can be evaluated with transabdominal or transvaginal sonography, or both. The components listed in Table 14-3 should be assessed (American

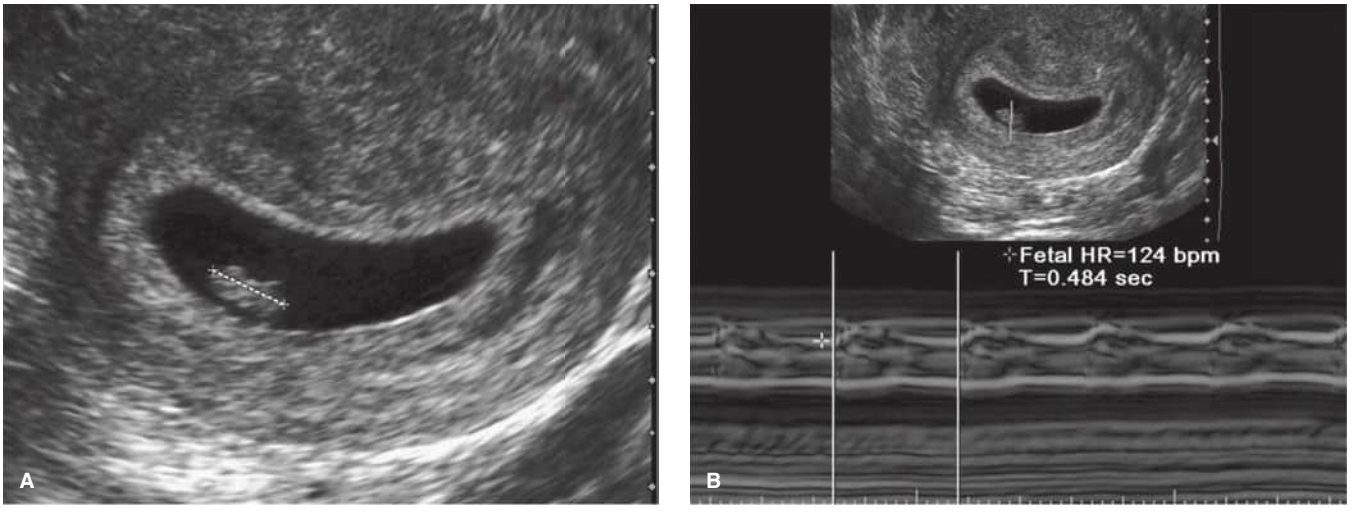


FIGURE 14-1 A. The measured crown-rump length is approximately 7 mm in this 6-week embryo. **B.** M-mode demonstrates embryonic cardiac activity and a heart rate of 124 beats per minute.

TABLE 14-2. Indications for First-Trimester Ultrasound Examination

Confirm an intrauterine pregnancy
Estimate gestational age
Confirm cardiac activity
Diagnose/evaluate a multifetal gestation, including chorionicity and amnionicity
Assess for certain fetal anomalies, such as anencephaly
Measure fetal nuchal translucency, when part of an aneuploidy screening program
Evaluate for uterine abnormalities or pelvic masses
Evaluate for suspected ectopic pregnancy
Evaluate for suspected gestational trophoblastic disease
Evaluate for the cause of vaginal bleeding
Evaluate for the cause of pelvic pain
Serve as adjunct to embryo transfer, chorionic villus sampling, and intrauterine device localization and removal

College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018a). The first trimester is the ideal time to evaluate the uterus, adnexa, and cul-de-sac. Ultrasound interrogation at this time can reliably diagnose anembryonic gestation, embryonic demise, ectopic pregnancy, and gestational trophoblastic disease. In a multifetal gestation, determination of chorionicity is most accurate in the first trimester (Chap. 48, p. 841). Gestational sac implantation in a prior cesarean scar is increasingly detected in the first trimester as well.

An intrauterine gestational sac may be consistently visualized with transvaginal sonography by 5 weeks' gestation, and an embryo with cardiac activity by 6 weeks. The embryo should be visible transvaginally once the mean sac diameter has reached 25 mm—otherwise the gestation is *anembryonic*. Whenever an embryo or fetus is identified, it should be measured, and cardiac motion should be documented with either video clip or M-mode scanning (see Fig. 14-1B). Cardiac motion may be visible with transvaginal imaging when the length of the embryo is 2 mm and should be visible at 7 mm in a live embryo (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020). If an embryo measures <7 mm and has no visible cardiac activity, subsequent examination is recommended in 1 week (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018a). At Parkland Hospital, first-trimester demise is diagnosed with transvaginal ultrasound if the embryo has reached 10 mm and lacks cardiac motion, taking measurement error into consideration. Criteria to diagnose first-trimester demise are found in Table 11-2 (p. 202).

A recent addition to the standard first-trimester examination is an assessment of selected anatomical components when fetal size permits. These include the calvarium, umbilical cord insertion into the ventral wall, and presence of extremities (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018a).

Nuchal Translucency

This represents the maximum thickness of the subcutaneous translucent area between the skin and soft tissue overlying the fetal spine at the back of the neck. The nuchal translucency (NT) is measured in the sagittal plane between 11 and 14 weeks' gestation using precise criteria (Table 14-4) (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018a; International Society of Ultrasound in Obstetrics and Gynecology, 2016). When the NT measurement is increased, the risk for fetal aneuploidy and various structural anomalies—in particular heart defects—is significantly elevated. It is a component of first-trimester

TABLE 14-3. Components of Standard Ultrasound Examination by Trimester

First Trimester[a]	Second and Third Trimester
Gestational sac size, location, and number	Gestational age assessment
Embryo and/or yolk sac identification	Fetal number, including amnionicity and chorionicity of multifetal gestations
Crown-rump length	Fetal weight estimation
Gestational age assessment	Fetal anatomical survey, including documentation of technical limitations
Fetal number, including amnionicity and chorionicity of multifetal gestations	Fetal cardiac activity, documented with M-mode or 2-dimensional video clip
Embryonic/fetal cardiac activity, documented with M-mode or 2-dimensional video clip	Fetal presentation
Fetal anatomy assessment including calvarium, nuchal region, ventral wall cord insertion, and presence of limbs (depending on gestational age and fetal size)	Amnionic fluid measurement (single deepest pocket, amniotic fluid index, or qualitative assessment)
Fetal nuchal translucency assessment	Placental location, appearance, and relationship to internal cervical os[a]
Maternal uterus, adnexa, and cul-de-sac evaluation	Placental cord insertion site documentation when technically possible
	Evaluation of the maternal uterus, adnexa, and cervix[a]

[a]If a transabdominal examination is not definitive, transvaginal (or transperineal) evaluation is recommended.

TABLE 14-4. Guidelines for Nuchal Translucency (NT) Measurement

Angle of insonation is perpendicular to NT line
Fetus is measured in midsagittal plane, with nasal tip, palate, and diencephalon visible
Margins of NT edges are visible
Majority of image is filled by the fetal head, neck, and upper thorax
Fetal neck lies in a neutral position, not flexed or hyperextended
Amnion line must be separate from the NT line
+ calipers are placed perpendicular to the fetal long axis, on the inner borders of the nuchal membranes, with none of the horizontal crossbar protruding into the space
Measurement should be obtained at the widest NT space
Largest of 3 NT measurements should be used

aneuploidy screening, which is discussed in Chapter 17 (p. 337). The aneuploidy risk calculation depends on the crown-rump length. However, an NT measurement ≥3 mm is associated with increased risk for fetal structural or genetic abnormalities and is an indication for a detailed fetal anatomical survey.

Detailed First-Trimester Ultrasound Examination

Assessment for fetal abnormalities in an at-risk pregnancy may include a detailed survey of fetal anatomy at 12 to 14 weeks' gestation. Such examinations are a recent addition and limited to specialized centers with advanced imaging skills, although use may be expected to expand. *Despite improvements in imaging technology, it is not realistic to expect that all major abnormalities detectable in the second trimester may be visualized in the first trimester.* Abnormalities may change in appearance as the fetus develops, and new findings may become evident. If an abnormality is identified in the first trimester, detailed second-trimester sonography will be important to further characterize the findings or identify associated abnormalities. In an at-risk pregnancy, a normal first-trimester examination does not obviate the recommendation for a detailed second-trimester fetal anatomical survey.

In a systematic review of more than 118,000 pregnancies undergoing fetal NT assessment, 46 percent of major abnormalities were detected in low-risk or unselected pregnancies (Karim, 2017). In high-risk pregnancies, anomaly detection exceeded 60 percent. Detection rates are high for fetal anencephaly, alobar holoprosencephaly, and ventral wall defects. However, in one series of 40,000 pregnancies with fetal anatomical evaluation at the time of NT assessment, only a third of major cardiac anomalies were identified. No cases of microcephaly, agenesis of the corpus callosum, cerebellar abnormalities, congenital pulmonary airway malformations, or bowel obstruction were detected (Syngelaki, 2011). Some of these abnormalities had not yet developed by the end of the first trimester, and this is an important caveat for counseling.

SECOND- AND THIRD-TRIMESTER ULTRASOUND

Ultrasound should be routinely offered to all pregnant women between 18 and 22 weeks' gestation (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020). Recognizing that the gestational age at which an abnormality is identified may affect pregnancy management options, providers often opt to perform the examination before 20 weeks. Indications for second- and third-trimester sonograms are listed in Table 14-5 (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018a). Based on data from large insurance providers, pregnant women typically receive at least 4 to 5 sonograms per pregnancy (O'Keeffe, 2013). Examinations are classified as standard, specialized, or limited. Specialized examination types include the detailed fetal anatomy examination, detailed evaluation for placenta accreta spectrum (p. 253), fetal echocardiography, Doppler velocimetry (p. 262), and the biophysical profile (Chap. 20, p. 389).

Standard Second- and Third-Trimester Ultrasound Examinations

The standard examination includes evaluation of fetal number and presentation, cardiac activity, fetal biometry, amnionic fluid volume, placental location, cervical length, and a survey of fetal anatomy (see Table 14-3). Anatomical components are listed in Table 15-1 (p. 273). With twins or other multiples, documentation should also include the number of chorions

TABLE 14-5. Indications for Standard Second- and Third-trimester Ultrasound Examinations

Routine evaluation of gestational age and fetal anatomy[a]
Fetal growth evaluation or size-date discrepancy
Fetal abnormality (follow-up evaluation)
Amniocentesis or other procedure
Cervical length assessment
Multifetal gestation
Vaginal bleeding
Placenta previa or low-lying placenta[b]
Vasa previa[b]
Placenta accreta spectrum[b]
Placental abruption[b]
Uterine or adnexal abnormality[b]
Gestational trophoblastic disease[b]
Amnionic fluid volume abnormality[b]
Preterm rupture of membranes or preterm labor
Inability to document fetal heart tones
Assessment of fetal well-being
Assessment of fetal presentation
Adjunct to external cephalic version

[a]Standard ultrasound examination should be offered in all pregnancies, ideally at 18–20 weeks' gestation.
[b]Includes evaluation of suspected cases.

and amnions, comparison of fetal sizes, estimation of amnionic fluid volume within each sac, and fetal phenotypic gender.

The American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine (2018a) revised its prior 2013 standard ultrasound practice parameter to include the following updates:

1. Components added to the standard fetal anatomical survey are presence of the hands and feet, and when feasible, the three-vessel view and three-vessel trachea views of the heart (Fig. 15-37, p. 290).
2. If the relationship between placenta and cervix cannot be assessed transabdominally, transvaginal evaluation should be performed. Transperineal evaluation remains an option but in our experience is rarely used.
3. If the cervix appears abnormal or is not adequately visualized transabdominally, transvaginal (or transperineal) examination is recommended. If cervical length assessment is requested, measurement should be based on a transvaginal image.
4. In the setting of velamentous cord insertion, color and pulsed Doppler ultrasound should be used to evaluate for vasa previa (Figs. 6-6 and 6-7, p. 115).

Detailed Second- and Third-Trimester Ultrasound Examinations

The *detailed fetal anatomy* examination is also known as a targeted or 76811 examination. It is performed when the risk for a fetal structural or genetic abnormality is elevated because of history, screening test result, or abnormal finding during standard examination (Table 14-6) (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2019). The detailed ultrasound examination is intended to be indication-driven and is not repeated without an extenuating circumstance, such as a new risk factor (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2019). Physicians who perform or interpret these ultrasound examinations should have gained expertise in fetal imaging through both training and ongoing experience (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020).

Components of the detailed examination are intended to be determined on a case-by-case basis. Table 15-1 (p. 273) lists nearly 70 anatomical components that may be included. When practices apply for adjunct accreditation in performance of the detailed fetal anatomic survey, the American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine specifies 50 components that must be included when submitting normal cases for review. At Parkland Hospital, we attempt to image these components in all detailed anatomic surveys. When performing a given detailed examination, one challenge is determining which components are needed for a given indication, as these have not been codified. The most prevalent risk factors and thus indications for detailed ultrasound examinations are maternal obesity and maternal age ≥35 years. In a systematic review of more than 16,000 pregnancies affected by anomalies, obesity conferred modestly

TABLE 14-6. American Institute for Ultrasound in Medicine Indications for Detailed Second- and Third-trimester Ultrasound Examinations

Prior fetus or infant with a structural or genetic abnormality
Current pregnancy with known or suspected fetal abnormality or growth restriction
Increased risk for fetal structural abnormality in current pregnancy
Teratogen exposure (Chap. 8)
Diabetes diagnosed before 24 weeks' gestation
Nuchal translucency ≥3.0 mm
Abnormal serum analyte levels (e.g., elevated alpha fetoprotein)
Assisted reproductive technology used to achieve conception
Prepregnancy body mass index ≥30 kg/m^2
Multifetal gestation
Increased risk for fetal genetic abnormality in current pregnancy
Woman or her partner carries a genetic abnormality
Maternal age ≥35 years at delivery
Nuchal translucency ≥3.0 mm
Abnormal aneuploidy screening test result (Chap. 17, p. 333)
Minor aneuploidy marker found during standard ultrasound examination
Other condition affecting the fetus
Congenital infection (Chaps. 67, 68)
Substance abuse
Alloimmunization (Chap. 18, p. 352)
Amnionic fluid volume abnormality
Suspected placenta accreta spectrum or associated risk factors

Adapted with permission from American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine (AIUM): Practice parameter for the performance of detailed second- and third-trimester diagnostic obstetric ultrasound examinations. J Ultrasound Med 38(12):3093, 2019.

increased odds of a neural-tube defect (1.9), ventriculomegaly (1.7), cardiovascular anomaly (1.3), cleft lip/palate (1.2), anorectal atresia (1.5), and limb reduction defect (1.7) (Stothard, 2009). Subsequently, Biggio and colleagues (2010) reported that obesity was associated with a higher anomaly prevalence only in the setting of diabetes. Maternal age ≥35 years is considered another indication for detailed sonographic examination. However, the fetal anomaly risk may be related to the associated increase in aneuploidy. Goetzinger and colleagues (2017) found that the anomaly rate among euploid fetuses born to older mothers was not increased.

Fetal Echocardiography

This specialized examination of fetal cardiac structure and function is designed to identify and characterize abnormalities. Echocardiography indications include suspected fetal cardiac structural or functional abnormality; heart rate abnormality or arrhythmia; extracardiac anomaly or hydrops; chromosomal abnormality; nuchal translucency ≥3.5 mm; in vitro fertilization; monochorionic twin gestation; first-degree relative to the fetus with a congenital cardiac defect; first- or second-degree relative to the fetus with a Mendelian syndrome and childhood cardiac manifestation; prior fetus with heart block in the setting of maternal anti-Ro or La antibodies; retinoid exposure; and metabolic risk factor such as pregestational diabetes or phenylketonuria (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2020a). Selected cardiac anomalies are reviewed in Chap. 15 (p. 291).

Limited Ultrasound Examination

A *limited* second- or third-trimester examination is performed to address a specific clinical question. Evaluation of fetal number, presentation, and cardiac activity; amnionic fluid volume; and placental location with respect to the internal os are common indications (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018b). The examination may include fetal biometry but not a complete anatomical survey. In the absence of an emergency, a limited examination is performed only if a standard ultrasound survey has already been completed. Otherwise, provided that the gestational age is at least 18 weeks, a standard ultrasound examination is recommended.

Fetal Anomaly Detection

With current advances in imaging technology, approximately 60 percent of major fetal abnormalities may be detected during standard ultrasound examinations (Byrne, 2020; Rydberg, 2017). For detailed ultrasound surveys performed in pregnancies at increased risk for anomalies, detection rates may exceed 90 percent (Dashe, 2009; Levi, 1998). The sensitivity of the examination varies according to factors such as gestational age, maternal habitus, fetal position, equipment features, examination type, operator skill, and the specific abnormality. For example, maternal obesity lowers the anomaly detection rate by 20 percent (Dashe, 2009).

Detection rates vary considerably according to the abnormality. In the EUROCAT network of 28 population-based registries, 40 percent of major fetal abnormalities are detected prenatally (EUROCAT, 2019). Detection rates of selected abnormalities are as follows: anencephaly, 98 percent; spina bifida, 89 percent; hydrocephaly, 82 percent; cleft lip/palate, 70 percent; hypoplastic left heart, 88 percent; transposition of the great vessels, 69 percent; diaphragmatic hernia, 73 percent; gastroschisis, 92 percent; omphalocele, 90 percent; bilateral renal agenesis, 94 percent; posterior urethral valves, 80 percent; limb reduction defects, 60 percent; and clubfoot, 60 percent. In contrast, anomalies with poor sonographic detection rates in the second trimester include microcephaly, choanal atresia, cleft palate, Hirschsprung disease, anal atresia, and congenital skin disorders. Although clinicians tend to focus on abnormalities amenable to sonographic detection, those that are undetectable can be no less devastating to families. *Every sonographic examination should include a frank discussion of examination limitations.*

Three-Dimensional Ultrasound Examination

Over the past three decades, three-dimensional (3-D) ultrasound has gone from a novelty to a feature of all modern equipment. After a region of interest is identified, a volume is acquired using a 3-D transducer. This volume can be rendered to display axial, sagittal, coronal, or oblique images. Sequential slices may be generated, similar to computed tomographic (CT) images. Unlike two-dimensional (2-D) scanning, which appears to be happening in real time on the screen, 3-D imaging is static and obtained by processing a volume of stored images. With *four-dimensional ultrasound*, rapid reconstruction of the rendered images conveys the impression that the scanning is in real time.

For selected anomalies, such as those of the face and skeleton, for tumors, and for some cases of neural-tube defects, 3-D sonography can add useful information (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; Goncalves, 2005). That said, comparisons of 3-D and conventional 2-D sonography for the diagnosis of most congenital anomalies have not demonstrated better overall detection rates (Goncalves, 2006; Reddy, 2008). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) has concluded that proof of a clinical advantage of 3-D ultrasound for prenatal diagnosis is generally lacking.

PLACENTA AND CERVIX

The standard examination includes evaluation of the anatomical relationship between the placenta and the internal cervical os, the umbilical cord insertion into the placenta, and cervical length assessment. (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018a). Evaluation for placenta accreta spectrum is a detailed examination type (see Table 14-6).

Placenta Previa and Low-lying Placenta

The location of the placenta with respect to the cervix may be accurately assessed by approximately 16 weeks' gestation. If transabdominal visualization is limited, transvaginal ultrasound is recommended. *Placenta previa* is diagnosed if the placenta overlies the internal cervical os to any degree or

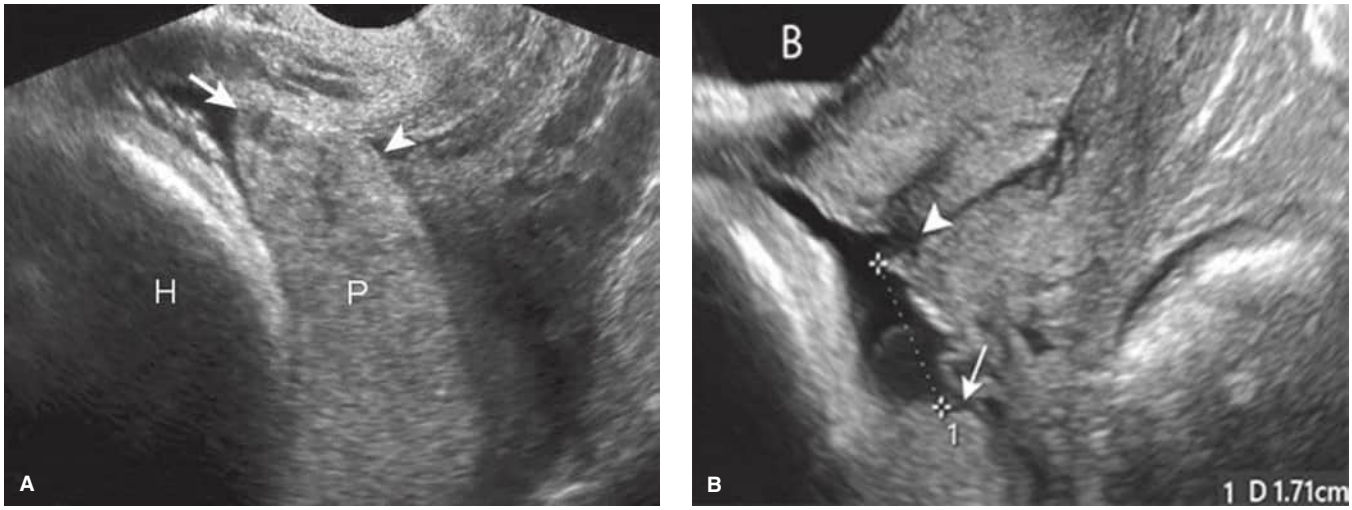


FIGURE 14-2 A. Placenta previa. In this transvaginal image, the inferior edge (*arrow*) of the posterior placenta (*P*) overlies the internal cervical os (*arrowhead*). H = head. **B.** Low-lying placenta. The inferior placental edge (*arrow*) is within 2 cm of the internal cervical os (*arrowhead*) in this transvaginal image. The bladder (B) is seen anterior to the cervix.

reaches its margin (Fig. 14-2A). If the inferior placental edge is within 2 cm of the internal os but does not reach the cervix, the diagnosis is *low-lying placenta* (see Fig. 14-2B). Whenever placenta previa or low-lying placenta are diagnosed, a follow-up ultrasound examination is recommended at approximately 32 weeks' gestation, with transvaginal evaluation if needed to verify the relationship between the placenta and cervix. If findings persist, a 36-week ultrasound examination also is recommended. Management of these placenta types are discussed in Chapter 43 (p. 757).

The umbilical cord insertion into the placenta should be interrogated. Marginal cord insertion, also known as *battledore placenta*, is diagnosed if the umbilical cord inserts into the edge of the placenta or within 2 cm of the placental margin. If the umbilical cord does not insert into the placenta—but rather into the membranes—the diagnosis is *velamentous cord insertion* (Fig. 6-6, p. 115). With the latter, the umbilical arteries and vein traverse the membranes along the uterine wall unprotected by Wharton jelly before entering the placental margin. If umbilical vessels course within the portion of membrane overlying the cervix or within 2 cm of the cervix, the diagnosis is *vasa previa* (Fig. 6-7, p. 116). Vasa previa may also occur if there are two or more placental lobes—as with a succenturiate lobe—and the interconnecting vessels traverse the intervening membranes over or in proximity to the internal cervical os. Transvaginal ultrasound with color Doppler highlights the vessels, and pulsed-wave Doppler of the spanning arterial vessel demonstrates a fetal heart rate, which confirms the diagnosis. A subsequent detailed ultrasound examination is recommended at 32 weeks' gestation (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2015b). Chapter 6 (p. 114) contains content on management of these entities.

■ Placenta Accreta Spectrum

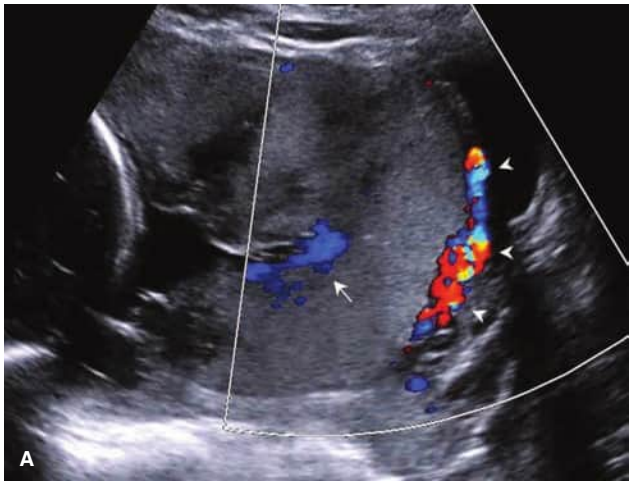
Placenta accreta, increta, and percreta comprise the placenta accreta spectrum (PAS). They are characterized by abnormal placental invasion onto, into, or through the myometrium, respectively (Chap. 43, p. 759). Evaluation includes transabdominal and transvaginal imaging, with and without color or power Doppler and with the patient's bladder partially filled. In one metaanalysis that included more than 3200 pregnancies, the sensitivity of ultrasound to identify placenta accreta, increta, and percreta was 91, 93, and 89 percent, respectively. Corresponding specificities were 97, 98, and 99 percent, respectively (Pagani, 2018). Five ultrasound criteria assist with detection and characterization of PAS (Fig. 14-3):

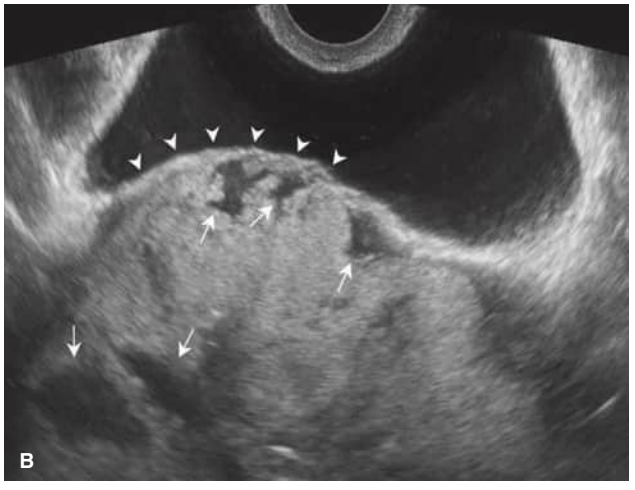
1. Placental *lacunae*, which are vascular spaces that may contain prominent color Doppler flow
2. Attenuation or thinning of the retroplacental myometrium, such that the *smallest myometrial thickness* measurement is <1 mm. This is also referred to as loss of the retroplacental clear space
3. Disruption of the bladder-uterine serosal interface, which appears as an irregular, echogenic boundary between the bladder and uterine serosa with gray-scale imaging
4. Bridging vessels, which are demonstrated with color Doppler to course from the placenta to the bladder-serosal interface
5. A placental "bulge" that pushes outward and distorts the contour of the uterus or other organs. In some cases of placenta percreta, a focal exophytic mass also is seen.

The accuracy of these criteria varies in published series and is affected by the number and predictive value of given findings and by associated risk factors such as placenta previa and number of prior cesarean deliveries (Jauniaux, 2016; Rac, 2015). Serial evaluation may be helpful, particularly in the third trimester. With concurrent placenta previa and history of cesarean delivery, any of these ultrasound findings prompts a detailed ultrasound evaluation. The role of magnetic resonance (MR) imaging as an adjunct in pregnancies with suspected PAS is reviewed later (p. 268).

■ Cesarean Scar Pregnancy

Placental implantation within a prior hysterotomy scar—termed cesarean scar pregnancy (CSP)—is often a precursor





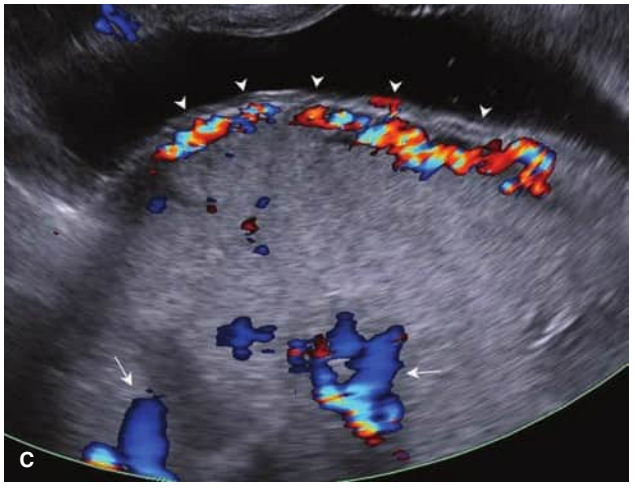


FIGURE 14-3 These third-trimester sonograms demonstrate findings that characterize placenta accreta spectrum. **A.** Transabdominal color mapping depicts bridging vessels between the bladder and the uterine serosa (*arrowheads*) and shows large intraplacental lacunae (*arrow*). **B.** Transvaginal transverse image showing a large bulge (suggesting placenta percreta) along the bladder-uterine serosal interface (*arrowheads*) and multiple large, irregular lacunae (*arrows*). **C.** Disruption of the bladder-serosal interface. The echogenic interface between bladder and serosa appears irregular (*arrowheads*). The smallest myometrial thickness measures <1 mm, and bridging vessels are highlighted by color Doppler. Large lacunae also are shown (*arrows*).

to second- or third-trimester PAS (Happe, 2020; Rac, 2016; Timor-Trisch, 2014). Sonographically, the gestational sac lies low and anteriorly in the uterus. CSPs may appear to rest on the prior scar or may fill the *niche*, which is a myometrial pocket defect in the thinned hysterotomy scar (Kaelin Agten, 2017). Placental sonolucencies, a precursor to PAS lacunae, may be seen. The retroplacental myometrium may be attenuated to a degree that the distance from the anterior trophoblastic border to the uterine serosa measures <3 mm (D'Antonio, 2018; Moschos, 2014; Happe, 2020). Color Doppler may demonstrate prominent vascularity in the region of the prior hysterotomy scar (Fig. 14-4). In some cases, the gestational sac may bulge toward the bladder. CSP evaluation and management are discussed in Chapter 12 (p. 229).

■ Cervical Length

Although the cervix may be imaged transabdominally (Fig. 14-5A), visualization is often limited by maternal habitus, cervical position, or shadowing by the fetal presenting part. In addition, the maternal bladder or pressure from the transducer may artificially elongate the cervix's appearance. As a result, values from transabdominal or transvaginal measurement of the cervix can differ significantly.

If the cervix appears short or is inadequately visualized during transabdominal evaluation, transvaginal assessment should be considered (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018a). Clinical decision-making should use only cervical length measurements obtained transvaginally (Fig. 14-5B). Measurement should be performed at or beyond 16 weeks' gestation. A short cervix is associated with an elevated risk for preterm birth, particularly in those with prior preterm birth. Risk rises proportionally with the degree of cervical shortening (Chap. 45, p. 793).

To measure the cervix transvaginally, the imaging criteria shown in Table 14-7 are followed. The endocervical canal should be visible in its entirety, and images ideally are obtained over several minutes to capture dynamic change. *Funneling* is a protrusion of amnionic membranes into a portion of the endocervical canal that has dilated (Fig. 14-6). Funneling is not an independent predictor of preterm birth but is associated with cervical shortening. Transvaginal assessment is recommended if a funnel is suspected transabdominally. The cervical length is measured distal to the funnel, because the funnel's base becomes the functional internal os. If the cervix is dilated, as with cervical insufficiency, the membranes may prolapse through the endocervical canal and into the vagina to produce an hourglass appearance. *Sludge* represents an aggregate of particulate matter (debris) within the amnionic sac and close to the internal os. In pregnancies at risk for preterm birth, sludge further raises the risk.

AMNIONIC FLUID

■ Physiology

Amnionic fluid serves several roles. Fetal breathing is essential for normal lung growth, and fetal swallowing permits

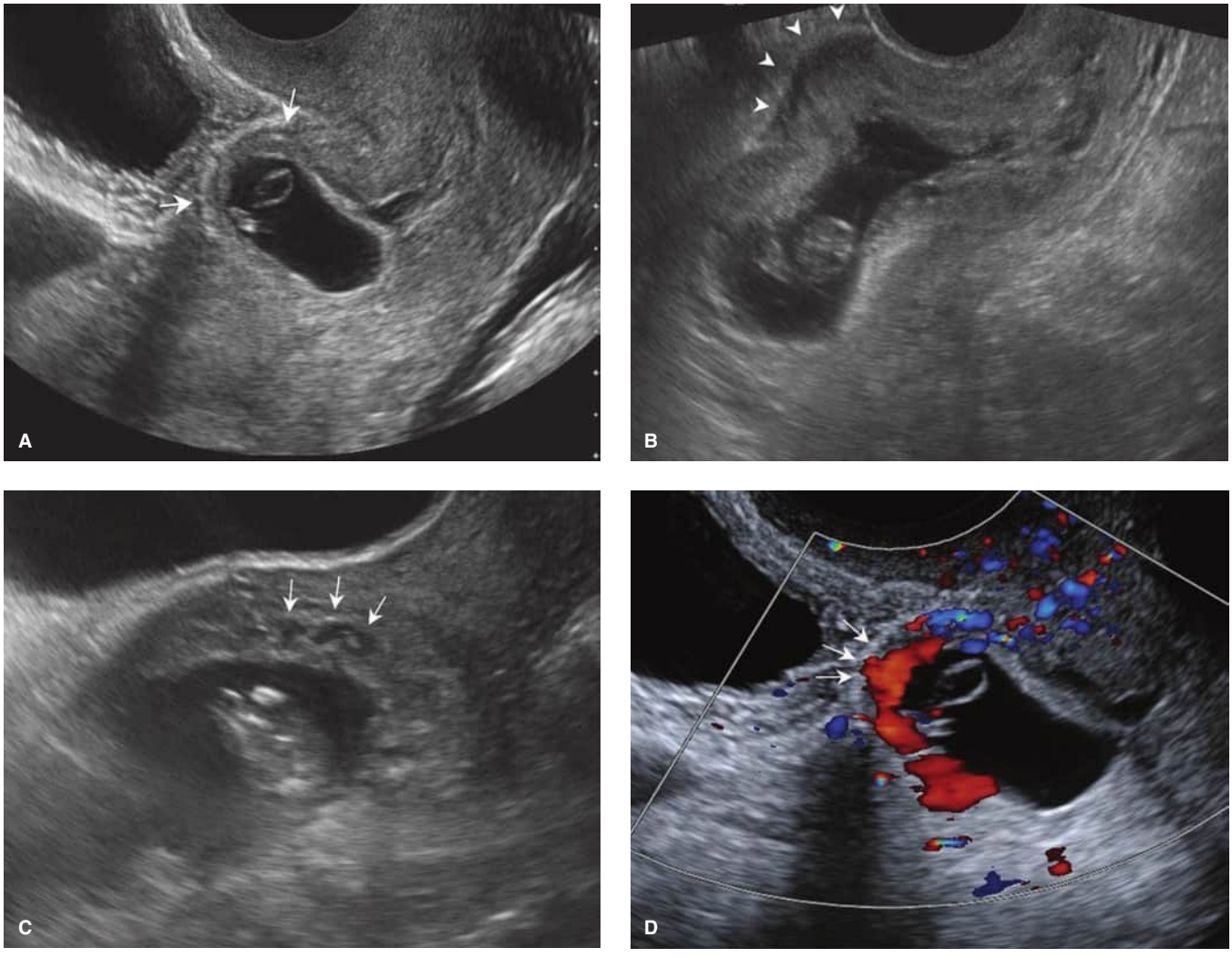


FIGURE 14-4 Cesarean scar pregnancy, transvaginal images. **A.** The trophoblast appears to fill the scar "niche" (*arrows*). **B.** Outward bulging of the gestational sac toward the bladder (*arrowheads*). **C.** Placental sonolucencies (*arrows*). **D.** Attenuation of the retroplacental myometrium. The distance from the anterior trophoblastic border to the uterine serosa is <1 mm (*arrows*). Color Doppler demonstrates vascularity in the region of the prior hysterotomy scar.

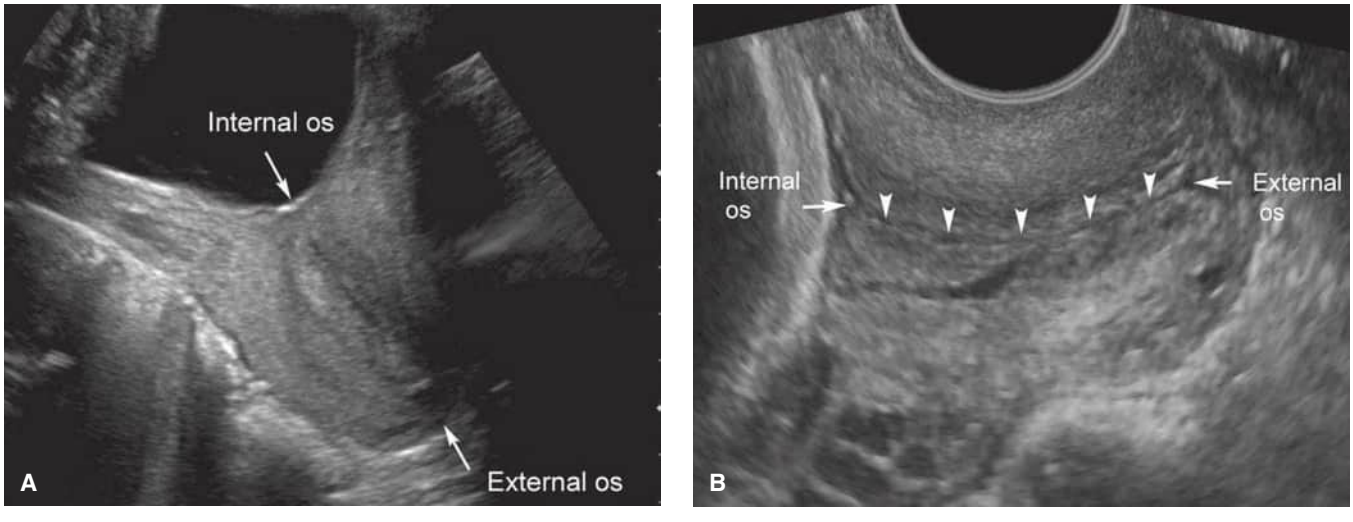


FIGURE 14-5 **A.** Transabdominal image of the cervix depicting the internal os and external os. **B.** Transvaginal imaging provides a more accurate evaluation of the cervix and should be used for medical decision-making. In this image, arrowheads mark the endocervical canal. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Emily Adhikari.)

TABLE 14-7. Criteria for Transvaginal Evaluation of the Cervix

Imaging the Cervix

- Maternal bladder should be empty.
- Transducer is inserted under real-time observation, identifying midsagittal plane, internal os, and then external os, while keeping the internal os in view.
- Internal os, external os, and entire endocervical canal should be visible. The internal os may appear as a small triangular indentation at the junction of the amnionic cavity and endocervical canal.
- Image is enlarged so that the cervix fills approximately 75% of the screen.
- Anterior and posterior width of the cervix should be approximately equal.
- Transducer is pulled back slightly until the image begins to blur, ensuring that pressure is not placed on the cervix, then inserted only enough to restore a clear image.
- Images should be obtained with and without fundal or suprapubic pressure, to assess for dynamic change or shortening on real-time imaging.

Measuring the Cervix

- Calipers are placed at the point where anterior and posterior walls of cervix meet.
- Endocervical canal appears as a faint, linear echodensity.
- If canal has a curved contour, a straight line between the internal and external os will deviate from the path of the endocervical canal.
- If midpoint of the line between the internal and external canal deviates by ≥3 mm from the endocervical canal, measure the cervical length in two linear segments.
- Funneling, sludge (debris), or dynamic change is noted.
- At least three separate images are measured during a period of at least 3 minutes to allow for dynamic change. Visualization of cervical shortening on real-time imaging, with or without fundal or suprapubic pressure, raises preterm birth risks.
- Shortest cervical length image that meets all criteria should be used.

Adapted from American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018a; Iams, 2013.

gastrointestinal (GI) tract development. The fluid also creates a physical space for fetal movement, which is necessary for neuromusculoskeletal maturation. Amnionic fluid further guards against umbilical cord compression and protects the fetus from trauma. It also has bacteriostatic properties.

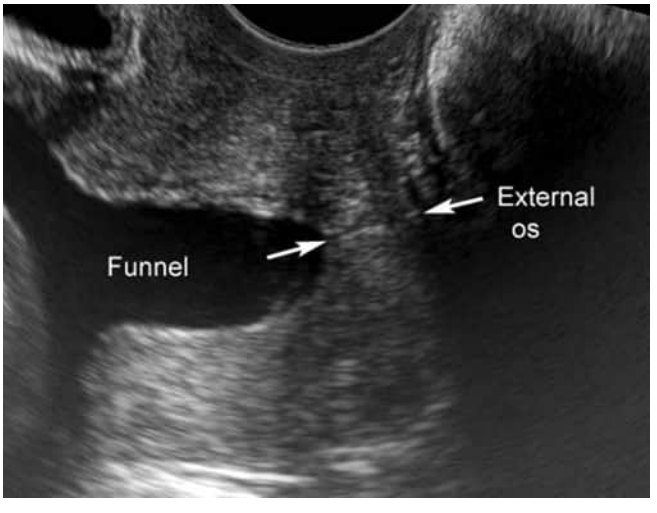


FIGURE 14-6 Transvaginal image depicting a foreshortened cervix with funneling. Funneling is a protrusion of amnionic membranes into a portion of the endocervical canal that has dilated. The distal protruding edge of the funnel becomes the functional internal os (*left arrow*). Thus, the measured cervical length, which lies between the arrows, should not include the funnel. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Emily Adhikari.)

Early in pregnancy, amnionic fluid is similar in composition to extracellular fluid. Amnionic fluid arises as a transudate of plasma either from the fetus through its nonkeratinized skin or from the mother across the uterine decidua and placenta surface (Beall, 2007). Specifically, early transfer of water and other small molecules occurs via three mechanisms: across the amnion—*transmembranous flow*; across fetal vessels on the placental surface—*intramembranous flow*; and across fetal skin—*transcutaneous flow*. Fetal urine production does not become a major component of amnionic fluid until the second trimester, which explains why fetuses with lethal renal abnormalities may not manifest severe amnionic volume declines until after 18 weeks' gestation. Water transport across the fetal skin continues until keratinization occurs at 22 to 25 weeks. In the second half of pregnancy, fetal urination is the primary source of amnionic fluid. In late gestation, the fetal respiratory tract also produces approximately 350 mL of lung fluid per day. Fetal swallowing is the primary mechanism for amnionic fluid resorption and averages 500 to 1000 mL per day (Mann, 1996). By term, the entire amnionic fluid volume is recirculated on a daily basis (Table 14-8). However, impaired swallowing, secondary to either a central nervous system (CNS) abnormality or GI tract obstruction, can result in impressive amnionic fluid volume expansion.

The osmolality of amnionic fluid is similar to that of fetal urine and *hypotonic* to that of maternal and fetal plasma. Specifically, the osmolality of maternal and fetal plasma approximates 280 mOsm/mL, whereas that of amnionic fluid is about

TABLE 14-8. Amnionic Fluid Volume Regulation in Late Pregnancy

Pathway	Effect on Volume	Approximate Daily Volume (mL)
Fetal urination	Production	1000
Fetal lung fluid secretion	Production	350
Fetal swallowing	Resorption	750
Intramembranous flow across fetal vessels on the placental surface	Resorption	400
Transmembranous flow across amnionic membrane	Resorption	Minimal

Data from Magann, 2011; Modena, 2004; Moore, 2010.

260 mOsm/L. The hypotonicity of amnionic fluid accounts for up to 400 mL per day of intramembranous fluid transfer across and into fetal vessels on the placental surface (Mann, 1996). Maternal dehydration can lead to higher maternal osmolality, which favors fluid transfer from the fetus to mother and then from the amnionic fluid compartment into the fetus (Moore, 2010).

Amnionic fluid volume expands from approximately 30 mL at 10 weeks' gestation to 200 mL by 16 weeks and reaches 800 mL by the mid-third trimester (Brace, 1989; Magann, 1997). Using dye dilution, Magann and associates (1997) reported that the average amnionic fluid volume was approximately 400 mL between 22 and 30 weeks' gestation, then rose to 800 mL until 40 weeks, and subsequently declined by 8 percent per week. There was a wide normal range, particularly in the third trimester. Abnormally decreased fluid volume is termed *oligohydramnios*, whereas abnormally increased fluid volume is termed *hydramnios* or *polyhydramnios*.

■ Semi-quantitative Assessment

Evaluation of amnionic fluid volume is a component of every second- or third-trimester ultrasound examination. Volume is measured semi-quantitatively using the single deepest pocket of fluid or the amnionic fluid index (AFI). Both measurements are reproducible and, in the setting of a fluid abnormality, can be followed serially over time to assess trends and aid communication among providers. For this reason, subjective assessment alone is not recommended.

The single deepest pocket of fluid is measured in a sagittal plane with the ultrasound transducer held perpendicular to the floor and parallel to the long axis of the woman. A pocket should be at least 1 cm wide to be considered adequate, and the measurement should not include fetal parts or loops of umbilical cord. Color Doppler is generally used to verify that umbilical cord is not within the measurement. The measurement is considered normal if it is >2 cm and <8 cm. Values below and above this range indicating oligohydramnios and hydramnios, respectively. These thresholds correspond to the 3rd and 97th percentiles (Chamberlain, 1984). When evaluating twins and other multifetal gestations, a single deepest pocket is assessed in each gestational sac, using the same normal range (Hernandez, 2012; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2013). The fetal biophysical profile similarly uses a single deepest vertical pocket threshold of >2 cm to indicate normal amnionic fluid volume (Chap. 20, p. 389).

To measure the AFI, the uterus is divided into four equal quadrants—the right and left upper and lower quadrants, respectively. The AFI is the sum of the single deepest pocket from each quadrant. In a study of 1400 measurements obtained from the INTERGROWTH-21st trial, the mean intra- and interobserver variability of AFI measurements were each below 1 cm (Sande, 2015). Two standard deviations from the mean, however, reached 5 and 7 cm, respectively. As useful rule of thumb, the AFI is generally three times higher than the single deepest pocket of fluid.

The AFI is considered normal if >5 cm and <24 or 25 cm. Using an AFI nomogram based on cross-sectional evaluation of nearly 800 uncomplicated pregnancies, the mean AFI ranged between 12 and 15 cm from 16 weeks until 40 weeks' gestation (Moore, 1990). Other investigators have published nomograms with similar mean values (Fig. 14-7) (Hinh, 2005; Machado, 2007).

■ Hydramnios

Abnormally increased amnionic fluid volume complicates 1 to 2 percent of singleton pregnancies (Dashe, 2002; Khan, 2017; Pri-Paz, 2012). Hydramnios may be categorized as *mild* if the AFI is 25 to 29.9 cm; *moderate*, if 30 to 34.9 cm; and *severe*, if ≥35 cm (Luo, 2017; Odibo, 2016). Using a single deepest pocket of amnionic fluid, as is done in multifetal gestations, mild hydramnios is defined as 8 to 9.9 cm, moderate as 10 to 11.9 cm, and severe hydramnios as ≥12 cm (Fig. 14-8). Mild hydramnios accounts for approximately two thirds of cases and is frequently idiopathic and benign. By comparison, severe hydramnios is far more likely to have an underlying etiology and to have consequences for the pregnancy.

Underlying causes of hydramnios include fetal structural abnormalities or genetic syndromes in approximately 15 percent and diabetes in 15 to 20 percent (Table 14-9). Selected anomalies and the likely mechanism by which they cause hydramnios are shown in Table 14-10. Congenital infection, red blood cell alloimmunization, and placental chorioangioma are less frequent etiologies. Hydramnios may also complicate syphilis and cytomegalovirus, toxoplasmosis, and parvovirus infections (Chaps. 67 and 68, pp. 1183 and 1206). Hydramnios is often seen with *hydrops fetalis* (Chap. 18, p. 360). The

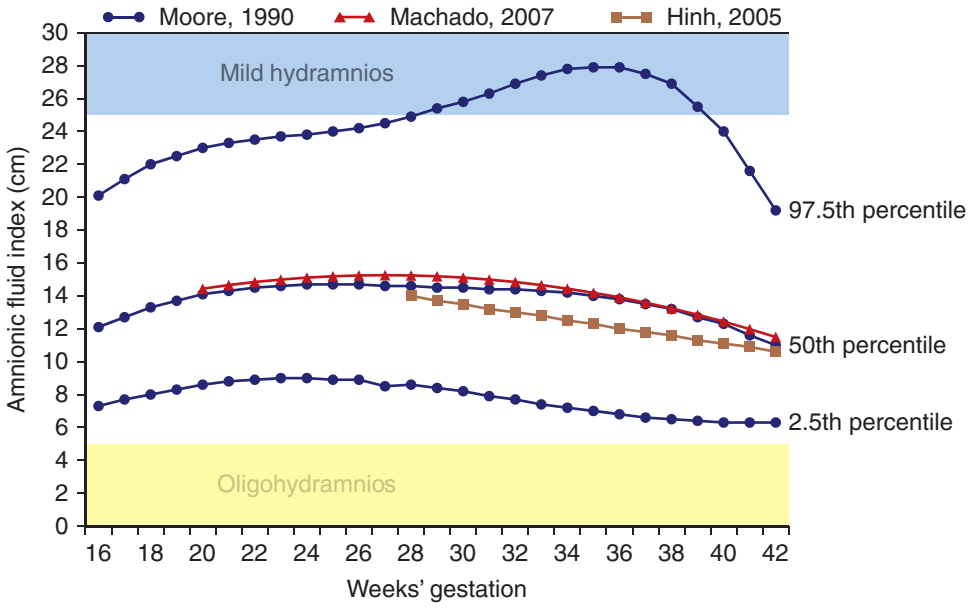


FIGURE 14-7 Amnionic fluid index (AFI) according to gestational age–specific and threshold values. The blue curves represent the 2.5th, 50th, and 97.5th AFI percentile values, based on the nomogram by Moore (1990). Red and tan curves represent 50th percentile values for AFI from Machado (2007) and from Hinh and Ladinsky (2005), respectively. The light blue and yellow shaded bars indicate threshold values used to define hydramnios and oligohydramnios, respectively.

underlying pathophysiology in such cases is frequently related to a high-cardiac-output state, and severe fetal anemia a classic example. A detailed ultrasound examination is indicated whenever hydramnios is identified. If a fetal abnormality is identified at that time, the aneuploidy risk is significantly elevated.

The degree of hydramnios positively correlates with the likelihood of an anomalous fetus. At Parkland Hospital, the prevalence of an anomalous neonate approximated 8 percent with mild hydramnios, 12 percent with moderate hydramnios, and more than 30 percent with severe hydramnios (Dashe, 2002). Even if no abnormality was detected during targeted sonographic evaluation, the likelihood of a major anomaly identified at birth was 1 to 2 percent if hydramnios was mild or moderate and 10 percent if hydramnios was severe. The overall reported risk that an underlying anomaly will be discovered after delivery ranges from 9 percent in the neonatal period to 28 percent among infants followed to 1 year of age (Abele, 2012; Dorleijn, 2009).

The amnionic fluid glucose concentration is higher in diabetic women than in those without diabetes, and the AFI may correlate positively with the amnionic fluid glucose concentration (Dashe, 2000; Spellacy, 1973; Weiss, 1985). Such findings support the hypothesis that maternal hyperglycemia causes fetal hyperglycemia, which leads to fetal osmotic diuresis into the amnionic fluid compartment. Repeat screening for gestational diabetes in pregnancies with hydramnios does not appear to be beneficial if the second-trimester glucose tolerance test result was normal (Frank Wolf, 2017).

Hydramnios is more frequently noted in multifetal gestations than in singleton ones. In a review of nearly 2000 twin gestations, Hernandez and coworkers (2012) identified hydramnios in 18 percent of both monochorionic and dichorionic pregnancies. In monochorionic gestations, hydramnios in one sac and oligohydramnios in the other are diagnostic criteria for twin-twin transfusion syndrome (TTTS) (Chap. 48, p. 848). Isolated hydramnios solely in one sac also may precede this syndrome's development (Chon, 2014). In the absence of a fetal abnormality or TTTS, complication risks are not generally higher (Hernandez, 2012).

Idiopathic hydramnios is a diagnosis of exclusion. It accounts for up to 70 percent of all hydramnios cases, is mild in approximately 80 percent of idiopathic cases, and subsequently resolves in more than one third (Odibo, 2016; Wiegand, 2016).

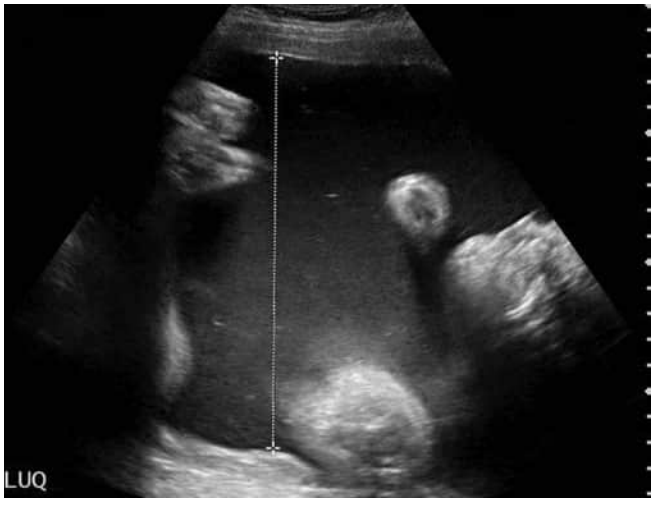


FIGURE 14-8 Severe hydramnios. This pocket of amnionic fluid measured >15 cm, and the amnionic fluid index measured nearly 50 cm.

Management

Severe hydramnios occasionally results in early preterm labor or maternal respiratory compromise. In such cases, large-volume amniocentesis—termed *amnioreduction*—may be needed. The technique is similar to that for genetic amniocentesis but is generally done with an 18- or 20-gauge needle. Fluid is collected in either a vacuum container bottle or a larger syringe (Chap. 17, p. 344). Approximately 1000 to 2000 mL of fluid is slowly withdrawn over 20 to 30 minutes, depending on the severity of hydramnios and gestational age. The goal is to restore amnionic fluid volume to the upper normal range. Subsequent amnioreduction procedures may be required as often as weekly or semiweekly.

In a review of 138 singleton pregnancies requiring amnioreduction for hydramnios, a fetal GI malformation was identified in 20 percent, a chromosomal abnormality or genetic condition

TABLE 14-9. Hydramnios: Prevalence and Associated Etiologies—Values in Percent

	Golan (1993) n = 149	Many (1995) n = 275	Biggio (1999) n = 370	Dashe (2002) n = 672	Pri-Paz (2012) n = 655
Prevalence	1	1	1	1	2
Amnionic fluid index					
Mild 25–29.9 cm	—	72	—	66	64
Moderate 30–34.9 cm		20		22	21
Severe >35 cm		8		12	15
Etiology					
Idiopathic	65	69	72	82	52
Fetal anomaly[a]	19	15[a]	8	11[a]	38[a]
Diabetes	15	18	20	7	18

[a]A significant correlation was identified between severity of hydramnios and likelihood of an anomalous infant.

in almost 30 percent, and a neurological abnormality in 8 percent (Dickinson, 2014). In only 20 percent of cases was the hydramnios idiopathic. The initial amnioreduction procedure was performed at 31 weeks' gestation, and the median gestational age at delivery was 36 weeks.

Outcomes

Hydramnios can be associated with preterm birth, placental abruption, uterine dysfunction during labor, and postpartum hemorrhage. When an underlying cause is identified, the severity of hydramnios positively correlates with risk for preterm delivery, small-for-gestational age newborn, and perinatal mortality (Pri-Paz, 2012). However, *idiopathic* hydramnios is generally not associated with preterm birth (Magann, 2010; Many, 1995; Panting-Kemp, 1999). Placental abruption may result from rapid decompression of an overdistended uterus following rupture of membranes or therapeutic amnioreduction, occasionally days or weeks later. Uterine dysfunction from

TABLE 14-10. Selected Anomalies and Mechanism for Hydramnios

Mechanism	Anomaly Examples
Impaired swallowing (CNS)	Anencephaly Hydranencephaly Holoprosencephaly
Impaired swallowing (craniofacial)	Cleft lip/palate Micrognathia
Tracheal compression or obstruction	Neck venolymphatic abnormality CHAOS[a]
Thoracic etiology (mediastinal shift)	Diaphragmatic hernia[a] Cystic adenomatoid malformation[a] Pulmonary sequestration[a]
High-output cardiac state	Ebstein anomaly[a] Tetralogy of Fallot with absent pulmonary valve[a] Thyrotoxicosis[a]
Functional cardiac etiology	Cardiomyopathy, myocarditis[a]
Cardiac arrhythmia	Tachyarrhythmia[a]: atrial flutter, atrial fibrillation, supraventricular tachycardia Bradyarrhythmia[a]: heart block
GI obstruction	Esophageal atresia Duodenal atresia
Renal-urinary	Ureteropelvic junction obstruction ("paradoxical hydramnios") Bartter syndrome
Neurological or muscular etiology	Arthrogryposis, akinesia sequence Myotonic dystrophy
Neoplastic etiology	Sacrococcygeal teratoma[a] Mesoblastic nephroma[a] Placental chorioangioma[a]

[a]Poses risk for hydrops.
CNS = central nervous system; CHAOS = congenital high-airway obstruction sequence; GI = gastrointestinal.

overdistention may lead to postpartum atony and associated postpartum hemorrhage.

With idiopathic hydramnios, birthweight exceeds 4000 g in nearly 25 percent of cases, and the likelihood is greater if the hydramnios is moderate or severe (Luo, 2017; Odibo, 2016; Wiegand, 2016). A rationale for this association is that larger fetuses have higher urine output, by virtue of their increased volume of distribution, and fetal urine is the largest contributor to amnionic fluid volume. Cesarean delivery rates are also higher in pregnancies with idiopathic hydramnios, and reported rates range from 35 to 55 percent (Dorleijn, 2009; Khan, 2017; Odibo, 2016).

An unresolved question is whether hydramnios alone raises the risk for perinatal mortality (Khan, 2017; Pilliod, 2015; Wiegand, 2016). Using birth certificate data from California, Pilliod and colleagues (2015) reported that at 37 weeks' gestation, the stillbirth risk was sevenfold higher in pregnancies with hydramnios. Risks appear to be compounded when fetal-growth restriction is comorbid with hydramnios (Erez, 2005).

Oligohydramnios

Abnormally decreased amnionic fluid volume complicates 1 to 2 percent of pregnancies (Casey, 2000; Petrozella, 2011). Oligohydramnios is diagnosed if the AFI measures <5 cm or the single deepest pocket is <2 cm (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020). An AFI threshold of 5 cm is below the 2.5th percentile throughout the second and third trimesters (see Fig. 14-7). Importantly, use of AFI rather than single deepest pocket will identify more pregnancies as having oligohydramnios but without evidence of improved pregnancy outcomes (Kehl, 2016; Nabhan, 2010). When evaluating multifetal pregnancies for TTTS, a single deepest pocket <2 cm is used to define oligohydramnios (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021c). When no measurable pocket of amnionic fluid is identified, the term *anhydramnios* is used.

By 18 weeks' gestation, the fetal kidneys are the main contributor to amnionic fluid volume. Selected renal abnormalities that lead to absent fetal urine production include bilateral *renal agenesis*, bilateral *multicystic dysplastic kidney*, unilateral renal agenesis with contralateral multicystic dysplastic kidney, and the infantile form of *autosomal recessive polycystic kidney disease*. Lower urinary abnormalities may also cause oligohydramnios because of fetal *bladder outlet obstruction* (Figs. 15-58 through 15-61, p. 300). Complex fetal genitourinary abnormalities such as *persistent cloaca* and *sirenomelia* similarly may result in a lack of amnionic fluid. With oligohydramnios before the mid-second trimester, particularly before 20 to 22 weeks, pulmonary hypoplasia is a significant concern. The prognosis is extremely poor unless fetal therapy is an option (Chap. 19, p. 377).

Oligohydramnios is also associated with exposure to drugs that block the renin-angiotensin system. These include angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, angiotensin-receptor blockers, and nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). When taken in the second or third trimester, ACE inhibitors and angiotensin-receptor blockers may result in fetal hypotension, renal hypoperfusion, and renal ischemia, leading to subsequent anuric renal failure (Bullo, 2012; Guron, 2000). Fetal skull bone hypoplasia and limb contractures also have been described (Schaefer, 2003). Additionally, NSAIDs can be associated with fetal ductus arteriosus constriction and impaired fetal urine production (Chap. 8, p. 151).

Oligohydramnios in the late second trimester or in the third trimester is often associated with uteroplacental insufficiency. A placental abnormality or a maternal complication such as preeclampsia or vascular disease are examples. Initially, ruptured membranes should be excluded. Then, particularly in the second trimester, a detailed ultrasound examination should be performed to search for fetal and placental abnormalities. If a placental hematoma or chronic abruption is sufficiently severe to result in oligohydramnios—the chronic abruption-oligohydramnios sequence (CAOS)—then it commonly also causes growth restriction (Chap. 43, p. 750).

Management

Oligohydramnios detected before 36 weeks' gestation in the presence of normal fetal anatomy and growth is generally managed expectantly and coupled with fetal surveillance (Chap. 20, p. 392). For late-preterm and early-term pregnancies, risks of fetal compromise outweigh potential complications of preterm delivery. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021b) recommends delivery between $36^{0/7}$ and $37^{6/7}$ weeks. In a review of 16 trials of pregnancies with apparent isolated oligohydramnios, oral or intravenous hydration was associated with a significantly improved AFI. However, it was unclear whether this translated into better pregnancy outcomes (Gizzo, 2015).

Outcomes

In a review of pregnancies with oligohydramnios at Parkland Hospital, Petrozella and associates (2011) found that an AFI <5 cm identified between 24 and 34 weeks' gestation was associated with increased risks for perinatal morbidity and mortality (Table 14-11). Similarly, a metaanalysis comprising more than 10,000 pregnancies found that oligohydramnios conferred a twofold risk for cesarean delivery due to nonreassuring fetal status and a fivefold risk for an Apgar score <7 at 5 minutes compared with pregnancies with a normal AFI (Chauhan, 1999).

As discussed, if oligohydramnios is defined as an AFI <5 cm rather than a single deepest pocket <2 cm, more pregnancies will be classified as such. Kehl and coworkers (2016) performed a prospective trial with more than 1000 term pregnancies in which women with an AFI <5 cm or a single deepest pocket <2 cm were randomly assigned to labor induction or expectant care. Significantly more pregnancies were diagnosed with oligohydramnios using the AFI criterion—10 percent compared with just 2 percent—when single deepest pocket was used. This led to a higher rate of labor induction in the AFI group but not to a difference in neonatal outcomes.

Borderline Oligohydramnios

This diagnosis is somewhat controversial. Also called *borderline AFI.* It usually refers to an AFI between 5 and 8 cm (Magann, 2011; Petrozella, 2011). During the mid-third trimester, an

TABLE 14-11. Pregnancy Outcomes in Women Diagnosed with Oligohydramnios between 24 and 34 Weeks' Gestation at Parkland Hospital

Factor	AFI ≤5 cm (n = 166)	AFI 8 to 24 cm (n = 28,185)	*p* Value
Major malformation	42 (25)	634 (2)	<.001
Stillbirth	8 (5)	133 (<1)	<.001
Gestational age at delivery[a]	35.1 ± 3.3	39.2 ± 2.0	<.001
Preterm birth, spontaneous[a]	49 (42)	1698 (6)	<.001
Preterm birth, indicated[a]	23 (20)	405 (2)	<.001
Cesarean delivery for nonreassuring fetal status[a]	10 (9)	1083 (4)	<.001
Birthweight <10th percentile[a]	61 (53)	3388 (12)	<.001
<3rd percentile[a]	43 (37)	1130 (4)	<.001
Neonatal death[a]	1 (1)	24 (<1)	<.001[b]

Data expressed as No. (%) and mean ± standard deviation.
[a]Anomalous infants excluded.
[b]This difference was no longer significant after adjustment for gestational age at delivery.
Data from Petrozella LN, Dashe JS, McIntire DD, et al: Clinical significance of borderline amniotic fluid index and oligohydramnios in preterm pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 117(2 pt 1):338, 2011.

AFI value of 8 cm is below the 5th percentile on the Moore nomogram (see Fig. 14-7). Petrozella (2011) found that pregnancies between 24 and 34 weeks' gestation with an AFI between 5 and 8 cm were not more likely than those with an AFI >8 cm to have maternal hypertensive complications or an increased risk for stillbirth and neonatal death. Wood and colleagues (2014) reported a higher rate of fetal-growth restriction in pregnancies with borderline AFI but not an increase in rates of preterm delivery or need for neonatal intensive care. In a study of late-preterm pregnancies that were otherwise uncomplicated, borderline AFI conferred no increased risk for preterm delivery, nonreassuring fetal heart rate tracing, low Apgar score, or neonatal respiratory compromise (Sahin, 2018). Evidence is insufficient to support fetal surveillance or delivery in this setting (Magann, 2011).

DOPPLER

When sound waves strike a moving target, the frequency of the waves reflected back is shifted in proportion to the velocity and direction of that moving target—a phenomenon known as the *Doppler shift*. Because magnitude and direction of the frequency shift depend on the motion of a moving target, Doppler can help evaluate flow within blood vessels.

An important component of the Doppler equation is the angle of insonation, abbreviated as theta (θ) (Fig. 14-9). This is the angle between the sound waves from the transducer and flow within the vessel. Measurement error becomes large when θ is not close to zero, in other words, when blood flow is not coming *directly* toward or away from the transducer. For this reason, ratios are often used to compare different waveform components and allow cosine θ to cancel out of the equation. Figure 14-10 is a schematic of the Doppler waveform and describes the three ratios commonly used. The simplest is the *systolic-diastolic ratio (S/D ratio),* which compares the maximal (or peak) systolic flow with end-diastolic flow to evaluate downstream impedance to flow. Currently, two types of Doppler modalities are available for clinical use.

Continuous-wave Doppler equipment contains two types of crystals, one to transmit high-frequency sound waves and another to continuously capture signals. In M-mode imaging, continuous-wave Doppler is used to evaluate motion through time, however, it cannot image individual vessels.

Pulsed-wave Doppler uses only one crystal, which transmits the signal and then waits until the returning signal is received before transmitting another one. It allows precise visualization and color-flow mapping of the vessel of interest. By convention,

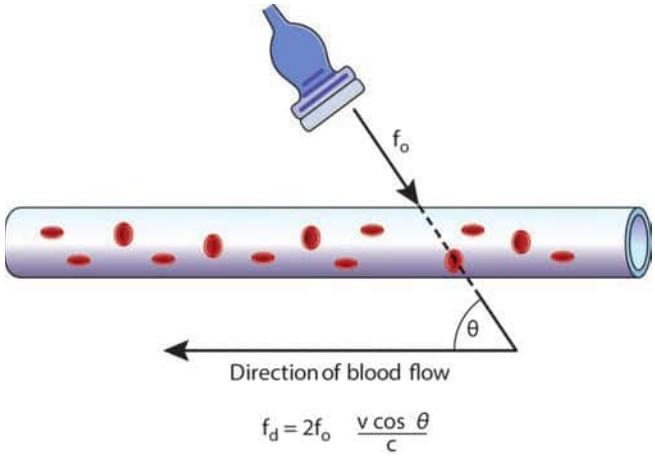


FIGURE 14-9 Doppler equation. Ultrasound emanating from the transducer with initial frequency f_o strikes blood moving at velocity v. Reflected frequency f_d is dependent on angle θ between beam of sound and vessel.

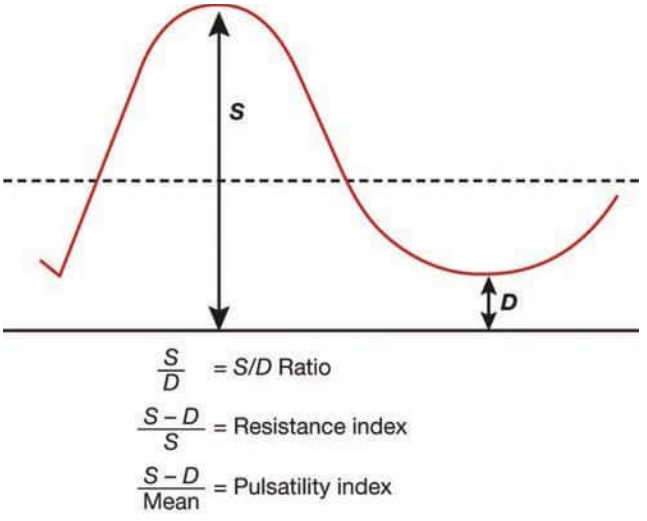


FIGURE 14-10 Doppler systolic–diastolic waveform indices of blood flow velocity. S represents the peak systolic flow or velocity, and D indicates the end-diastolic flow or velocity. The mean, which is the time-average mean velocity, is calculated from computer-digitized waveforms.

blood flowing toward the transducer is displayed in red and that flowing away from the transducer appears in blue.

Umbilical Artery

The umbilical artery differs from other vessels in that it normally has forward flow throughout the entire cardiac cycle. With advancing gestation, the amount of flow during diastole increases because of decreasing placental impedance. The S/D ratio approximates ≤4.0 after 20 weeks' gestation, <3.0 after 30 weeks', and close to 2.0 at term. More end-diastolic flow is observed at the placental cord insertion than at the fetal ventral wall, a reflection of downstream impedance to flow. Thus, abnormalities such as absent or reversed end-diastolic flow will appear first at the cord insertion site into the fetus. The International Society of Ultrasound in Obstetrics and Gynecology recommends that umbilical artery Doppler measurements be made in a free loop of cord (Bhide, 2013). However, assessment close to the ventral wall insertion may optimize measurement reproducibility in cases in which flow is diminished (Berkley, 2012).

The waveform is considered abnormal if the S/D ratio is >95th percentile for gestational age. Threshold values are listed in the Appendix (p. 1242). In extreme cases of growth restriction, end-diastolic flow can become absent or even reversed (Fig. 47, p. 830). Such reversal of end-diastolic flow has been associated with greater than 70-percent obliteration of the small muscular arteries in placental tertiary stem villi (Kingdom, 1997; Morrow, 1989).

Umbilical artery Doppler has been rigorously investigated to test of fetal well-being. As described in Chapter 47 (p. 830), this tool aids management of fetal-growth restriction and is associated with improved outcome in these cases (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). It is not recommended for other indications. Similarly, its use as a screening tool for growth-restriction is not advised (Berkley, 2012). Abnormal umbilical artery Doppler findings should prompt a detailed fetal evaluation, if not already done, because abnormal measurements are often associated with major fetal anomalies and aneuploidy (Wenstrom, 1991).

Ductus Arteriosus

Doppler evaluation of the ductus arteriosus is used primarily to monitor fetuses exposed to indomethacin and other NSAIDs. Indomethacin may cause ductal constriction or closure, particularly when used in the third trimester (Huhta, 1987). The resulting increased pulmonary flow can cause reactive hypertrophy of the pulmonary arterioles and eventual development of fetal pulmonary hypertension. In a review of 12 randomized trials involving more than 200 exposed pregnancies, Koren and coworkers (2006) reported that NSAIDs raised the odds of ductal constriction 15-fold. The risk is typically limited to drug use greater than 72 hours' duration. Monitoring for ductal constriction should be considered in such cases, so that the NSAID can be discontinued if ductal constriction is identified. Fortunately, effects are often reversible after NSAID discontinuation.

Uterine Artery

Uterine blood flow is estimated to rise from 50 mL/min early in gestation to 500 to 750 mL/min by term. The uterine artery Doppler waveform is characterized by high diastolic flow velocities and turbulent flow. Greater resistance to flow and development of a *diastolic notch* are associated with later development of gestational hypertension, preeclampsia, and fetal-growth restriction. Zeeman and associates (2003) also found that women with chronic hypertension who had elevated uterine artery impedance at 16 to 20 weeks' gestation were at greater risk to develop superimposed preeclampsia. However, the technique, best testing interval, and defining criteria for this indication have not been standardized. As the predictive value of uterine artery Doppler testing is considered to be low, its use for screening for hypertensive complications of pregnancy or for fetal-growth restriction is not recommended in either high-risk or low-risk pregnancies (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a, 2020b).

Middle Cerebral Artery

Doppler velocimetry of the middle cerebral artery (MCA) has become the primary method of detecting fetal anemia and is central to surveillance of alloimmunized pregnancies. Anatomically, the path of the MCA is such that flow often approaches the transducer "head-on," which allows accurate determination of flow velocity (Fig. 14-11). The MCA is imaged in an axial view of the head at the base of the skull and ideally within 2 mm of the internal carotid artery origin. Velocity measurement is optimal when the insonating angle θ is close to zero, and no more than 30 degrees of angle correction should be used. In general, other fetal vessels are not suitable for velocity assessment, because a larger insonating angle is needed and confers significant measurement error.

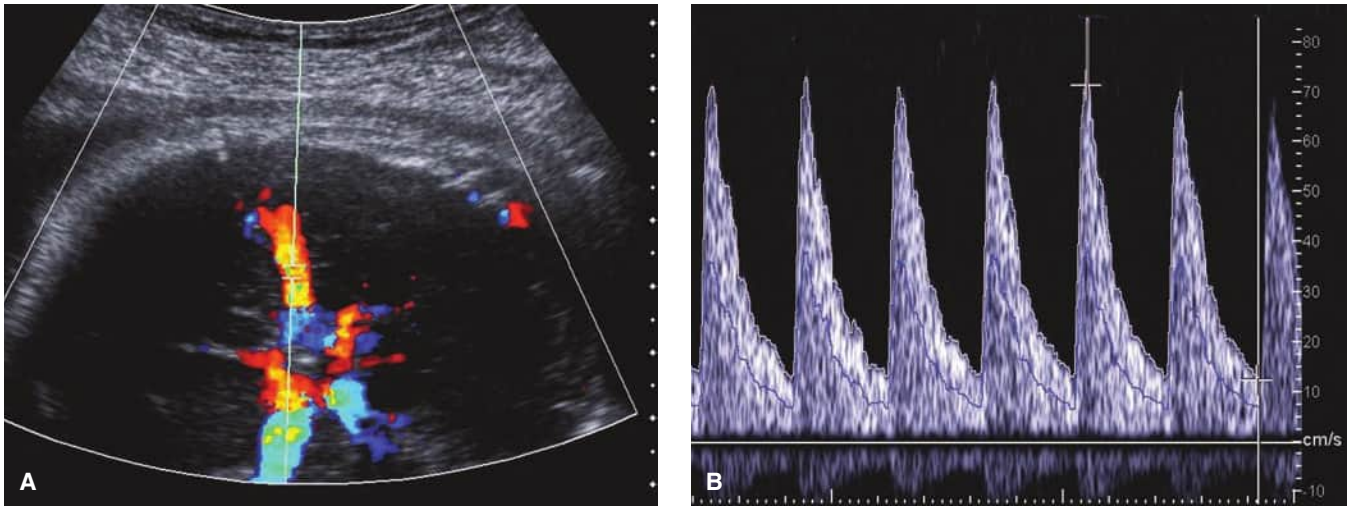


FIGURE 14-11 Middle cerebral artery (MCA) Doppler. **A.** Color Doppler of the circle of Willis demonstrates the correct location to sample the MCA. **B.** The waveform shows a peak systolic velocity exceeding 70 cm/sec in a 32-week fetus with severe fetal anemia secondary to Rh alloimmunization.

With fetal anemia, the *peak systolic velocity* is enhanced due to greater cardiac output and decreased blood viscosity (Segata, 2004). This permits the reliable, noninvasive detection of fetal anemia in cases of blood-group alloimmunization. Mari and colleagues (2000) demonstrated that an MCA peak systolic velocity threshold of 1.50 multiple of the median (MoM) could reliably identify fetuses with moderate or severe anemia. As discussed in Chapter 18 (p. 355), MCA peak systolic velocity has replaced invasive testing with amniocentesis as the preferred test for fetal anemia detection (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2015a).

MCA Doppler has also been studied as an adjunct in evaluation of fetal-growth restriction (Chap. 47, p. 830). Fetal hypoxemia is associated with increased blood flow to the brain, heart, and adrenal glands, which leads to greater end-diastolic flow in the MCA. This phenomenon, called "brain-sparing," is actually a misnomer, as it does not protect the fetus but rather is associated with perinatal morbidity and mortality (Bahado-Singh, 1999; Cruz-Martinez, 2011). To evaluate redistribution of blood flow, investigators have studied a ratio of the MCA pulsatility index (PI) to the umbilical artery PI–termed the *cerebroplacental ratio*. Like the S/D ratio, the PI estimates downstream impedance to flow (Fig. 14-10). In the PORTO (Prospective Observational Trial to Optimize Paediatric Health in IUGR) study of ultrasound-dated pregnancies with estimated fetal weights <10th percentile, fetuses with a cerebroplacental PI ratio <1 had an 11-fold greater risk for adverse perinatal outcomes (Flood, 2014). Such findings can further our understanding of fetal pathophysiology. However, the utility of MCA Doppler to aid the timing of delivery is uncertain, and it has not been adopted as standard practice in the management of growth restriction (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a; Martins, 2020).

■ Ductus Venosus

The fetal ductus venosus shunts oxygenated blood from the intrahepatic portion of the umbilical vein directly to the inferior vena cava, thus bypassing the liver (Fig. 7-9, p. 127). The ductus venosus is imaged as it branches from the umbilical vein at approximately the level of the diaphragm. The waveform is biphasic and normally has forward flow throughout the entire cardiac cycle (Fig. 14-12). The first peak reflects ventricular systole, and the second is ventricular diastolic filling. These are followed by a nadir during atrial contraction—termed the *a-wave*.

It is believed that Doppler findings in preterm fetuses with growth restriction show a progression in which umbilical artery Doppler abnormalities are followed by ones in the MCA and then in the ductus venosus. With severe fetal-growth restriction, cardiac dysfunction may lead to flow in the a-wave that is decreased, absent, and eventually reversed and to pulsatile flow in the umbilical vein (see Fig. 14-12). However, ductus venosus Doppler assessment has not improved perinatal outcomes, and neither the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021a) nor the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (Martins, 2020) recommend its use in the routine management of fetal growth-restriction.

MAGNETIC RESONANCE IMAGING

MR imaging is based on the excitation of hydrogen ions in the body by pulsing radiofrequencies with high field-strength magnets (1.5 to 3 Tesla). High-resolution fetal imaging is now possible, in part due to faster acquisition times of less than one second per slice. The relaxing hydrogen ions can be manipulated through various pulse sequences to produce different representations on images. The classic example is simple fluid, such as amnionic fluid or urine in the bladder, which appears bright on T2-weighted and dark on T1-weighted image acquisitions.

Image resolution with MR is often superior to that with sonography because MR is less hindered by bony interfaces, maternal obesity, oligohydramnios, or an engaged fetal head. Thus, it can complement sonography in evaluating suspected fetal abnormalities. Examples include complex abnormalities of the fetal thorax and of the central nervous, GI, genitourinary,

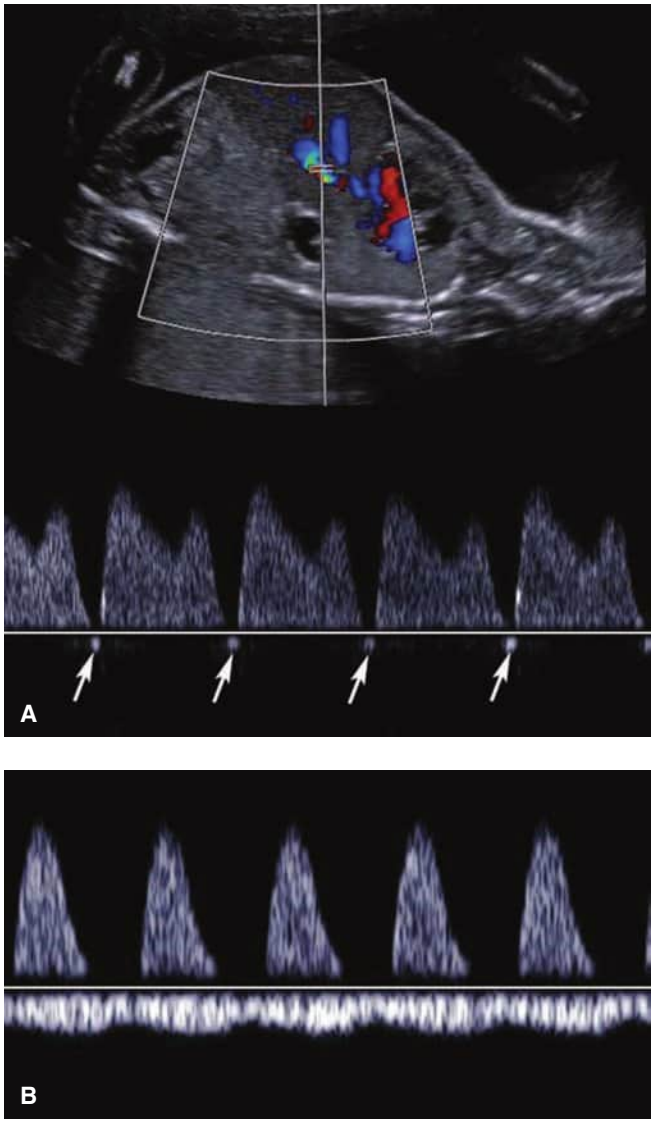


FIGURE 14-12 Venous Doppler abnormalities. **A.** Reversal of a-wave flow in the ductus venosus. Arrows depict a-waves below the baseline. This finding may be identified with cardiac dysfunction in the setting of severe fetal-growth restriction. **B.** Pulsatile flow in the umbilical vein. The undulating umbilical venous waveform below the baseline indicates tricuspid regurgitation. Above the baseline is the umbilical artery waveform, in which there is no visible end-diastolic flow. Because the venous waveform is below the baseline in this image, it is not possible to determine whether the umbilical artery end-diastolic flow is reversed.

and musculoskeletal systems. MR imaging is also used to evaluate maternal pelvic masses and placental invasion. This modality, however, is not portable, is time-consuming, and is generally limited to referral centers with expertise in fetal imaging.

To guide clinical use, the American College of Radiology and Society for Pediatric Radiology (2020b) have developed a practice guideline for fetal MR imaging. This document acknowledges the primacy of sonography as the preferred screening modality. Moreover, it recommends that fetal MR imaging be used for problem solving to contribute to prenatal diagnosis, counseling, treatment, and delivery planning. At Parkland Hospital, MR imaging is performed in 15 percent of pregnancies with major fetal abnormalities (Herrera, 2020). Specific indications are listed in Table 14-12 and are discussed subsequently (American College of Radiology, 2020b).

Safety

MR imaging is not associated with known adverse fetal effects if performed without administration of contrast media (Ray, 2016). It uses no ionizing radiation, and human and tissue studies support its safety (Clements, 2000; Reeves, 2010; Vadeyar, 2000; Wiskirchen, 1999). The strength of the magnetic field is measured in *tesla (T).* Both 1.5T and 3T fetal MR imaging can be done safely and successfully, assuming expertise of the imagers with the physical principles of MR (Prayer, 2017). All clinical examinations must adhere to the specific absorption rate, which is regulated by the FDA, and the ALARA principle should be followed. Specifically, the amount of heat generated in the MR is reflected in the specific absorption rate and must be monitored.

The Society for Pediatric Radiology recommends 3T MR imaging because of its improved signal-to-noise ratio, which results in better resolution (Barth, 2017). We prefer 1.5T for diagnostic imaging given its better field homogeneity. We reserve 3T for functional imaging, which requires higher field strength.

Gadolinium-based MR contrast agents are gadolinium (Gd^{3+}) chelates. These contrast agents enter the fetal circulation and are excreted via fetal urination into amnionic fluid. Here, they may remain for an indeterminate period before being ingested and reabsorbed. The longer time the gadolinium-chelate molecule remains in a protected space such as the amnionic sac, the greater the potential for dissociation of the toxic Gd^{3+} ion. In a population-based review from Ontario, children exposed to gadolinium-enhanced MR imaging in utero were at slightly increased risk for a broad set of rheumatological, inflammatory, or infiltrative skin conditions (Ray, 2016). In adults with renal disease, this contrast agent is associated with development of nephrogenic systemic fibrosis, a potentially severe complication. MR imaging with gadolinium is not recommended in pregnancy without a life-threatening indication.

Technique

Before MR imaging, all women complete a written safety questionnaire that includes information about metallic implants, pacemakers, or other metal- or iron-containing devices. High-level magnetization may cause dangerous movement in these devices, causing adjacent tissue damage and malfunction. (American College of Radiology, 2020a). Iron supplementation may cause image artifact in the colon but does not usually affect the resolution of fetal images. In more than 4500 MR procedures performed at Parkland Hospital in pregnancy during the past 18 years, <1 percent of our patients suffered maternal anxiety secondary to claustrophobia. To reduce anxiety in this small group, a single oral dose of diazepam, 5 to 10 mg, or lorazepam, 1 to 2 mg, may be given.

TABLE 14-12. Fetal Conditions for Which Magnetic Resonance Imaging May Be Indicated[a]

Brain and spine
Agenesis of the corpus callosum
Cavum septum pellucidum abnormalities
Cephalocele
Cerebral cortical malformation or migrational abnormalities
Family history conferring a risk for brain anomaly
Hemorrhage
Holoprosencephaly
Hydranencephaly
Infarctions
Monochorionic twin pregnancy complications
Neural-tube defects
Posterior fossa abnormalities
Sacral agenesis (caudal regression)
Sacrococcygeal teratoma
Sirenomelia
Solid or cystic masses
Vascular malformations
Ventriculomegaly
Vertebral anomalies

Skull, face, and neck
Facial clefts
Goiter
Hemangiomas
Teratomas
Venolymphatic malformations
Other abnormalities with potential airway obstruction

Thorax
Bronchogenic cyst or congenital lobar overinflation
Congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation
Diaphragmatic hernia
Effusions
Extralobar pulmonary sequestration
Esophageal atresia
Mediastinal masses
Evaluation of pulmonary hypoplasia secondary to diaphragmatic hernia, oligohydramnios, chest mass, or skeletal dysplasia

Abdomen, pelvis, and retroperitoneum
Abdominopelvic cystic mass
Bowel anomalies (anorectal malformations, complex obstructions)
Complex genitourinary anomalies (bladder outlet obstruction syndromes, bladder exstrophy, cloacal exstrophy)
Renal anomalies with oligohydramnios
Tumors (sacrococcygeal teratoma, neuroblastoma, hemangioma, suprarenal or renal masses)

Complications of monochorionic twins
Assess morbidity after death of a monochorionic co-twin
Determine vascular anatomy prior to laser treatment
Evaluate conjoined twins

Fetal surgery assessment
Anomalies for which fetal surgery is planned
Fetal brain anatomy before and after surgical intervention

[a]In some cases, magnetic resonance imaging is indicated only if the anomaly is suspected but cannot be adequately characterized sonographically, which is assessed on a case-by-case basis.
Summarized from American College of Radiology, Society for Pediatric Radiology: ACR-SPR practice parameter for the safe and optimal performance of fetal magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Resolution No. 45, 2020.

To begin an MR examination, women are placed in a supine or left lateral decubitus position. A torso coil is used in most circumstances to send and receive the radiofrequency pulses, but a body coil can be used alone to accommodate large maternal habitus. A series of three-plane localizers, or scout views, are obtained relative to the maternal coronal, sagittal, and axial planes. The gravid uterus is imaged in the maternal axial plane (7-mm slices, 0 gap) with a T2-weighted fast acquisition. Typically, these may be a single-shot fast spin echo sequence (SSFSE), half-Fourier acquisition single-shot turbo spin echo (HASTE), or rapid acquisition with relaxation enhancement (RARE), depending on the machine. Next, a fast T1-weighted acquisition such as spoiled gradient echo (SPGR) is performed (7-mm thickness, 0 gap). These large-field-of-view acquisitions through the maternal abdomen and pelvis are particularly good for identifying fetal and maternal anatomy.

Orthogonal images of targeted fetal or maternal structures are then obtained. In these cases, 3- to 5-mm slice thickness, 0 gap T2-weighted acquisitions are performed in the coronal, sagittal, and axial planes. Depending on the anatomy and underlying suspected abnormality, T1-weighted images can be performed to evaluate for subacute hemorrhage, fat, or location of normal structures that appear bright on these sequences, such as liver and meconium in the colon (Brugger, 2006; Zaretsky, 2003b).

Short T1 inversion recovery (STIR) and frequency-selective fat-saturated T2-weighted images may help differentiation in cases in which the water content of the abnormality is similar to that of the normal structure. An example is a thoracic mass compared with normal lung. Diffusion-weighted imaging may be employed to evaluate for restricted diffusion, which can be seen in ischemia, cellular tumors, or clotted blood (Brugger, 2006; Zaretsky, 2003b).

Fetal Anatomy Evaluation

A fetal anatomical survey is generally completed during the MR examination, regardless of the fetal indication. Nearly 95 percent of anatomical components recommended by the International Society of Ultrasound in Obstetrics and Gynecology were visible at 30 weeks' gestation (Millischer, 2013). The aorta and pulmonary artery were the most difficult to evaluate. Zaretsky and coworkers (2003a) similarly found that with the exclusion of cardiac structures, fetal anatomical evaluation was possible in 99 percent of cases.

Central Nervous System

For intracranial anomalies, fast T2-weighted images produce excellent tissue contrast. Cerebrospinal fluid–containing structures appear bright, which allows exquisite detail of the posterior fossa, midline structures, and cerebral cortex. T1-weighted images are used to identify hemorrhage. CNS biometry obtained with MR imaging is comparable with that obtained using sonography, and nomograms are available for the corpus callosum and cerebellar vermis (Harreld, 2011; Katorza, 2016; Twickler, 2002; Xi, 2016).

MR imaging may provide valuable added information when cerebral abnormalities are identified or suspected sonographically (Benacerraf, 2007; Li, 2012). Additional information is more likely to be gained when the examination is performed beyond 24 weeks' gestation. In studies, MR imaging has identified additional CNS findings or led to a changed diagnosis in nearly 50 percent of cases and affected prognosis or management in 20 percent (Griffiths, 2017, Twickler, 2003).

MR imaging accurately portrays cerebral gyration and sulcation patterns (Fig. 14-13) (Levine, 1999). It may assist with identifying agenesis or dysgenesis of the corpus callosum and characterizing migrational abnormalities (Benacerraf, 2007; Li, 2012; Twickler, 2003). In cases of septo-optic dysplasia, MR imaging may confirm absence of the septum pellucidum and display hypoplastic optic tracts (Fig. 14-14). When fetal intracranial hemorrhage (ICH) is suspected, MR imaging can help to characterize the extent of bleeding and to estimate when bleeding occurred. Risk factors for fetal ICH include atypical-appearing ventriculomegaly, concern for neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia, and severe TTTS or demise of one monochorionic twin (Hu, 2006). With congenital fetal infections, MR imaging can delineate the variable degrees of neural parenchymal abnormality and subsequent maldevelopment (Soares de Oliveira-Szejnfeld, 2016).

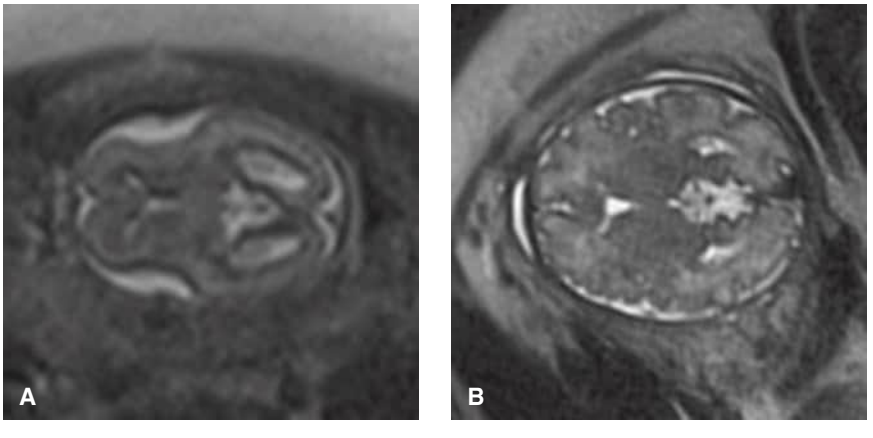


FIGURE 14-13 Axial images of the fetal brain demonstrate the normal gyration and sulcation progression during fetal development. **A.** 23 weeks' gestation. **B.** 33 weeks' gestation. These images were obtained using a Half Fourier Acquisition Single Shot Turbo Spin Echo (HASTE) sequence because it is relatively motion insensitive.

Thorax

MR imaging can delineate the location and size of space-occupying thoracic lesions and quantify the volume of lung tissue. If needed, it can characterize blood flow to a thoracic mass to differentiate cystic adenomatoid malformation from pulmonary sequestration (Chap. 15, p. 287). With congenital diaphragmatic hernia, MR imaging can help verify and quantify the abdominal organs within the thorax (Debus, 2013; Lee, 2011; Mehollin-Ray, 2012). This includes the volume

of herniated liver and of compressed lung tissue (Fig. 14-15). MR imaging can also measure lung volumes in pregnancies with prolonged oligohydramnios secondary to renal abnormalities or ruptured membranes (Messerschmidt, 2011; Zaretsky, 2005).

Abdomen

Meconium accumulation within the GI tract gives a predictable pattern and has high signal intensity on T1-weighted sequences. Thus, MR imaging is a complementary tool in diagnosing GI abnormalities and complex cloacal malformations (Furey, 2016). With cystic abdominal abnormalities, differences in signal characteristics may also help distinguish between meconium in the fetal colon and urine in the bladder (Farhataziz, 2005). Peritoneal calcifications related to meconium peritonitis are more readily apparent sonographically, whereas pseudocysts and resultant abnormalities of meconium migration are better delineated with MR imaging.

Adjunct to Fetal Therapy

Prior to fetal surgery, MR imaging is often used. In cases of myelomeningocele, it precisely displays brain and spine anatomy. For sacrococcygeal teratomas, if fetal surgery is considered, MR imaging may identify tumor extension into the fetal pelvis (Avni, 2002; Neubert, 2004; Perrone, 2018). When a fetal neck mass is identified with ultrasound, MR imaging may help delineate a lesion's extent and its mass effect on the oral cavity and trachea. This can help identify cases that are at risk for adverse outcome and that may benefit from an ex utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT) procedure (Lazar, 2012; Ogamo, 2005; Ng, 2019). MR imaging can also calculate a jaw index when an EXIT procedure may be needed for severe micrognathia (Kooiman, 2018; Morris, 2009). At some centers, before laser ablation of placental anastomoses for TTTS, MR imaging is performed to identify fetal ICH or periventricular leukomalacia (Hu, 2006; Kline-Fath, 2007). Fetal therapy is discussed in Chapter 19 (p. 367).

Placenta

Despite improvements in ultrasound detection of PAS, particularly when the placenta is anterior, characterization of the extent of invasion remains a challenge. MR findings concerning for invasion are depicted in Figure 14-16. They include dark intraplacental bands on T2-weighted images, a focal bulge, placental heterogeneity, involvement of the bladder-uterine

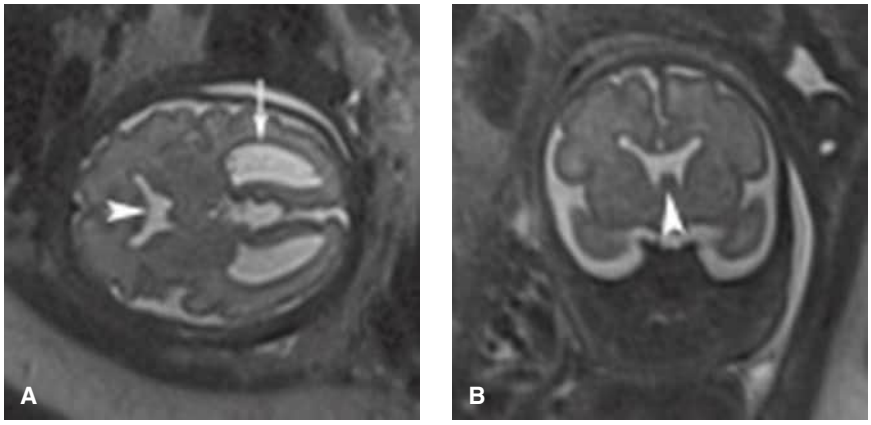


FIGURE 14-14 Septo-optic dysplasia. **A.** Axial. **B.** Coronal. Images at 30 weeks' gestation confirm absence of the cavum septum pellucidum (*arrowheads*) in both. There is also associated mild ventriculomegaly (*arrow*).

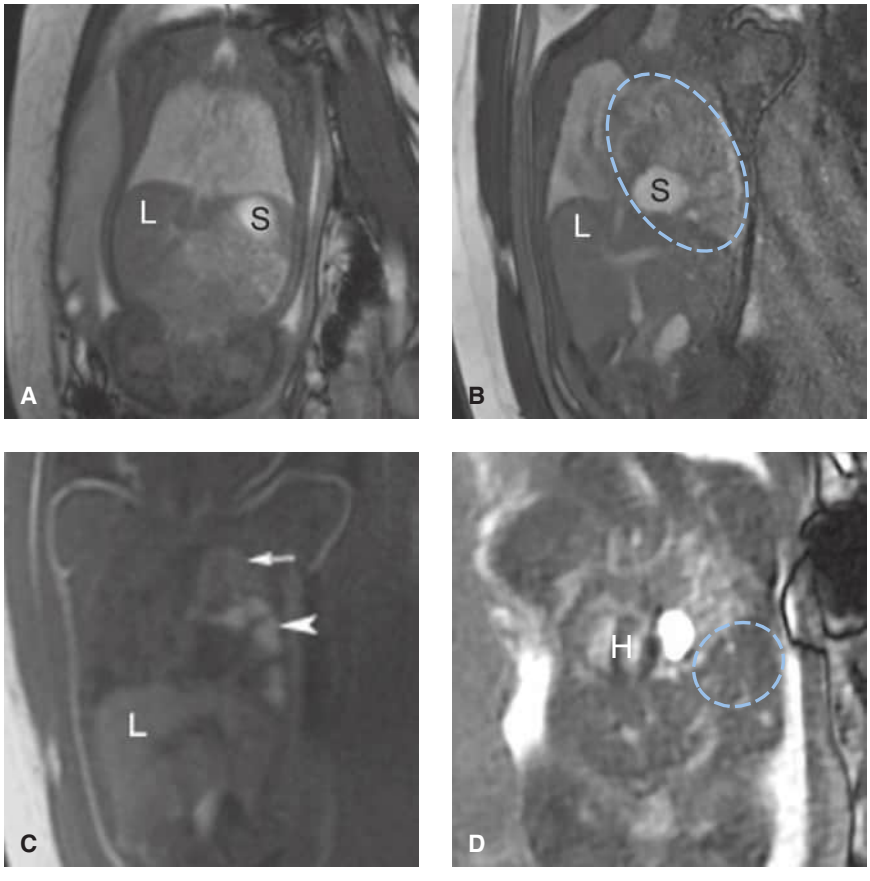


FIGURE 14-15 **A.** Coronal image of normal lungs on a balanced sequence at 29 weeks' gestation. The liver (*L*) and stomach (*S*) lie below the diaphragm. **B.** Left-sided congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH) (*dotted ellipse*) seen on balanced sequence at 33 weeks. **C.** The T1-weighted sequence confirms the subdiaphragmatic position of the liver and better delineates the small bowel (*arrow*) and meconium-containing colon (*arrowhead*) that have herniated into the chest. **D.** Another image of a left-sided CDH at 22 weeks demonstrates no normal lung, the heart (*H*) displaced into the right chest, and an elevated liver (*dotted ellipse*).

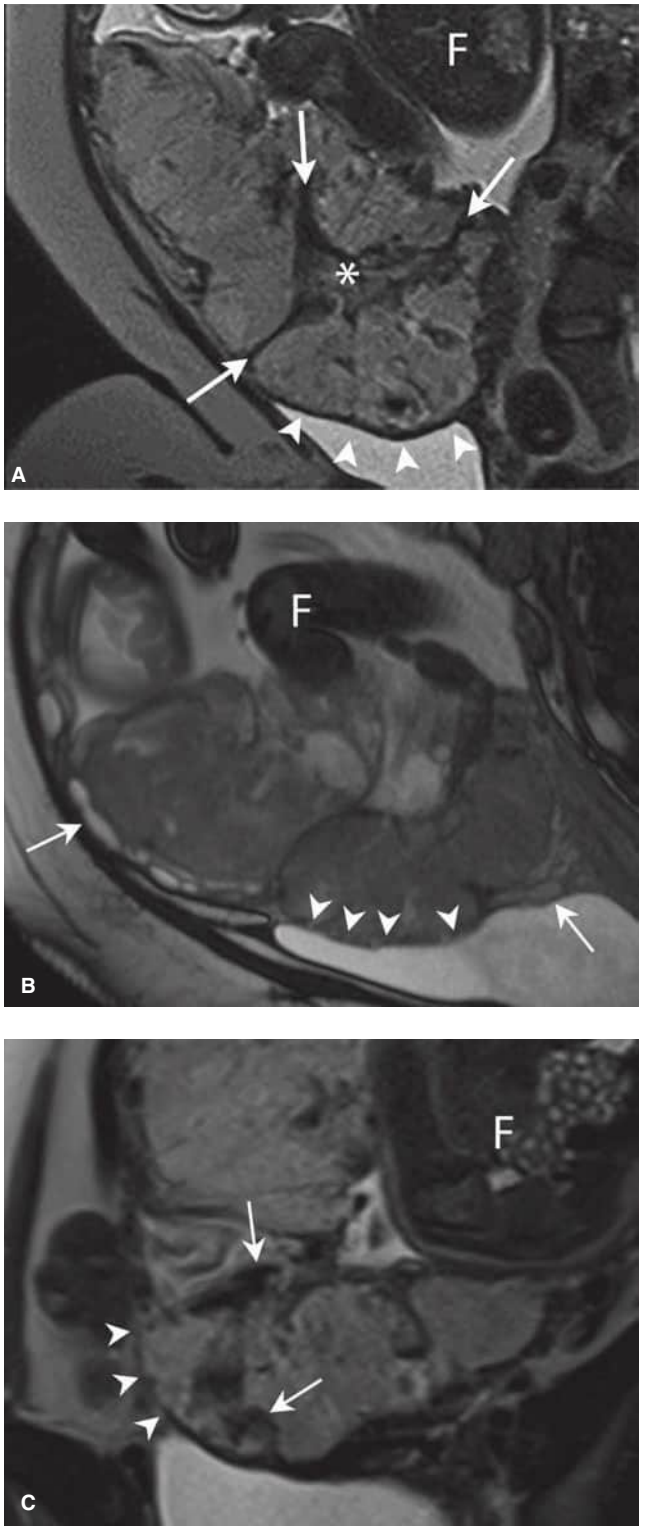


FIGURE 14-16 A. Sagittal T2-weighted image of the placenta demonstrates placenta accreta spectrum (PAS), in this case placenta percreta. There are intraplacental, dark, linear bands (*arrows*), a large bulge along the bladder-serosal interface (*arrowheads*), and a central area of marked inhomogeneity (*asterisk*). **B.** A coronal image from the same study demonstrates the bulge with right lateral extension (*arrowheads*) and multiple, dark, linear bands (*arrows*). **C.** A sagittal, balanced, steady state free precession (SSFE) image shows a bulge, retroplacental vessels, and irregularity of the bladder-serosal interface (*arrowheads*). These contrast with the large maternal varices (*arrows*). F = fetus.

serosal interface, and fibrin deposition (Clark, 2020; Leyendecker, 2012). When used to complement ultrasound, MR imaging's sensitivity to detect invasion is high. Clark and associates (2020) reported that MR imaging findings positively correlated with need for cesarean hysterectomy and with histological and surgical impressions of invasion. Clinical risk factors and ultrasound findings (p. 253) should be incorporated when interpreting MR placental images (Chap. 43, p. 759).

Two emerging technologies also are being employed to investigate placental insufficiency and PAS. Arterial spin labelling is a technique for functional assessment of perfusion and excites maternal red blood cells to serve as endogenous contrast agents (Zun, 2018). Second, radiomics textural analysis characterizes placental morphology in vivo. MR textural features may help select pregnancies requiring cesarean hysterectomy (Do, 2020).

REFERENCES

Abele H, Starz S, Hoopmann M, et al: Idiopathic polyhydramnios and postnatal abnormalities. Fetal Diagn Ther 32(4):251, 2012

Abuhamad A, Minton KK, Benson CB, et al: Obstetric and gynecologic ultrasound curriculum and competency assessment in residency training programs: consensus report. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(1):29, 2018

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Management of suboptimally dated pregnancies. Committee Opinion No. 688, March 2017, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Methods for estimating the due date. Committee Opinion No. 700, May 2017, Reaffirmed 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Ultrasound in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 175, December 2016, Reaffirmed 2020

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Fetal growth restriction. Practice Bulletin No. 227, February 2021a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society of Maternal–Fetal Medicine: Medically indicated late-preterm and early-term deliveries. Committee Opinion No. 831, July 2021b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Multifetal gestations: twin, triplet, and higher-order multifetal pregnancies. Practice Bulletin No. 231, June 2021c

American College of Radiology: ACR manual on MR safety. 2020a. Available at: https://www.acr.org/-/media/ACR/Files/Radiology-Safety/MR-Safety/Manual-on-MR-Safety.pdf. Accessed September 15, 2021

American College of Radiology, Society for Pediatric Radiology: ACR-SPR practice parameter for the safe and optimal performance of fetal magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Resolution No. 45, 2020b. Available at: https://www.acr.org/-/media/ACR/Files/Practice-Parameters/mr-fetal.pdf. Accessed September 15, 2021

American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine: AIUM-ACR-ACOG-SMFM-SRU practice parameter for the performance of standard diagnostic obstetric ultrasound examinations. J Ultrasound Med 37(11):e13, 2018a

American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine: AIUM practice parameter for the performance of detailed second- and third-trimester diagnostic obstetric ultrasound examinations. J Ultrasound Med 38(12):3093, 2019

American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine: AIUM practice parameter for the performance of fetal echocardiography. J Ultrasound Med 39(1):E5, 2020a

American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine: AIUM practice parameter for the performance of limited obstetric ultrasound examinations by advanced clinical providers. J Ultrasound Med 37:1587, 2018b

American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine: Prudent use and safety of diagnostic ultrasound in pregnancy. 2020. Available at: https://www.aium.org/officialStatements/79. Accessed October 13, 2020b

Avni FE, Guibaus L, Robert Y, et al: MR imaging of fetal sacrococcygeal teratoma: diagnosis and assessment. AJR Am J Roentgenol 178(1):179, 2002

Bahado-Singh RO, Kovanci E, Jeffres A, et al: The Doppler cerebroplacental ratio and perinatal outcome in intrauterine growth restriction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 180(3):750, 1999

Barth R, Victoria T, Kline-Fath B, et al: ISUOG Guidelines for fetal MRI: a response to 3-T fetal imaging and limited fetal exams. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 50(6):804, 2017

Beall MH, van den Wijngaard JP, van Gemert MJ, et al: Amniotic fluid water dynamics. Placenta 28(8-9):816, 2007

Benacerraf BR, Minton KK, Benson CB, et al: Proceedings: Beyond Ultrasound First Forum on improving the quality of ultrasound imaging in obstetrics and gynecology. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(1):19, 2018

Benacerraf BR, Shipp TD, Bromley B, et al: What does magnetic resonance imaging add to the prenatal sonographic diagnosis of ventriculomegaly? J Ultrasound Med 26:1513, 2007

Bhide A, Acharya G, Bilardo CM, et al: ISUOG Practice Guidelines: use of Doppler ultrasonography in obstetrics. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 41(2):233, 2013

Biggio JR, Chapman V, Neely C, et al: Fetal anomalies in obese women: the contribution of diabetes. Obstet Gynecol 115 (201):290, 2010

Brace RA, Wolf EJ: Normal amniotic fluid volume changes throughout pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 161(2):382, 1989

Brugger PC, Stuhr F, Lindner C, et al: Methods of fetal MR: beyond T2-weighted imaging. Euro J Radiol 57(2):172, 2006

Bullo M, Tschumi S, Bucher BS: Pregnancy outcome following exposure to angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors or angiotensin receptor antagonists: a systematic review. Hypertension 60:444, 2012

Byrne JJ, Morgan JL, Twickler DM, et al: Utility of follow-up standard sonography for fetal anomaly detection. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:615.e1, 2020

Casey BM, McIntire DD, Bloom SL, et al: Pregnancy outcomes after antepartum diagnosis of oligohydramnios at or beyond 34 weeks' gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:909, 2000

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Workplace solutions. Preventing work-related musculoskeletal disorders in sonography. DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 2006–148, 2006

Chamberlain PF, Manning FA, Morrison I, et al: Ultrasound evaluation of amniotic fluid. The relationship of marginal and decreased amniotic fluid volumes to perinatal outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 150:245, 1984

Chauhan SP, Sanderson M, Hendrix NW, et al: Perinatal outcome and amniotic fluid index in the antepartum and intrapartum periods: a meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181:1473, 1999

Chon AH, Korst LM, Llanes A, et al: Midtrimester isolated polyhydramnios in monochorionic diamniotic multiple gestations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(3):303.e1, 2014

Clark HR, Ng Tw, Khan A, et al: Placenta accreta spectrum: correlation of MRI parameters with pathologic and surgical outcomes in high-risk pregnancies. AJR Am J Roentgenol 214:1417, 2020

Clements H, Duncan KR, Fielding K, et al: Infants exposed to MRI in utero have a normal paediatric assessment at 9 months of age. Br J Radiol 73(866):190, 2000

Cruz-Martinez R, Figueras F, Hernandez-Andrade E, et al: Fetal brain Doppler to predict cesarean delivery for nonreassuring fetal status in term small-for-gestational-age fetuses. Obstet Gynecol 117:618, 2011

D'Antonio F, Timor-Tritsch IE, Palacios-Jaraquemada J, et al: First-trimester detection of abnormally invasive placenta in high-risk women: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 51(2):176, 2018

Dashe JS, McIntire DD, Ramus RM, et al: Hydramnios: anomaly prevalence and sonographic detection. Obstet Gynecol 100(1):134, 2002

Dashe JS, McIntire DD, Twickler DM: Effect of maternal obesity on the ultrasound detection of anomalous fetuses. Obstet Gynecol 113(5):1001, 2009

Dashe JS, Nathan L, McIntire DD, et al: Correlation between amniotic fluid glucose concentration and amniotic fluid volume in pregnancy complicated by diabetes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182(4):901, 2000

Debus A, Hagelstein C, Kilian A, et al: Fetal lung volume in congenital diaphragmatic hernia: association of prenatal MR imaging findings with postnatal chronic lung disease. Radiology 266(3):887, 2013

Do QN, Lewis MA, Xi Y, et al: MRI of the placenta accreta spectrum (PAS) disorder: radiomics analysis correlates with surgical and pathological outcome. J Magn Reson Imaging 51(3):936, 2020

Dorleijn DM, Cohen-Overbeek TE, Groenendaal F, et al: Idiopathic polyhydramnios and postnatal findings. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 22(4):315, 2009

Einerson BD, Comstock J, Silver RM, et al: Placenta accreta spectrum disorder: uterine dehiscence, not placental invasion. Obstet Gynecol 135(5):1104, 2020

Erez O, Shoham-Vardi I, Sheiner E, et al: Hydramnios and small for gestational age are independent risk factors for neonatal mortality and maternal morbidity. Arch Gynecol Obstet 271(4):296, 2005

EUROCAT: Prenatal detection rates charts and tables. 2019. Available at: eurd-platform.jrc.ec.europa.eu/eurocat/eurocat-data/prenatal-screening-and-diagnosis_en. Accessed September 15, 2021

Farhataziz N, Engels JE, Ramus RM, et al: Fetal MRI of urine and meconium by gestational age for the diagnosis of genitourinary and gastrointestinal abnormalities. AJR Am J Roentgenol 184:1891, 2005

Flood K, Unterscheider J, Daly S, et al: The role of brain sparing in the prediction of adverse outcomes in intrauterine growth restriction: results of the multicenter PORTO Study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211:288.e1, 2014

Food and Drug Administration: Avoid fetal "keepsake" images, heartbeat monitors. 2014. Available at https://www.fda.gov/consumers/consumer-updates/avoid-fetal-keepsake-images-heartbeat-monitors. Accessed May 12, 2020

Frank Wolf M, Peleg D, Stahl-Rosenzweig T, et al: Isolated polyhydramnios in the third trimester: is a gestational diabetes evaluation of value? Gynecol Endocrinol 33(11):849, 2017

Furey EA, Bailey AA, Twickler DM: Fetal MR imaging of gastrointestinal abnormalities. Radiographics 36(3):904, 2016

Gizzo S, Noventa M, Vitagliano A, et al: An update on maternal hydration strategies for amniotic fluid improvement in isolated oligohydramnios and normohydramnios: evidence from a systematic review of literature and meta-analysis. PLoS One 10(12):e0144334, 2015

Goetzinger KR, Shanks AL, Odibo AO, et al: Advanced maternal age and the risk of major congenital anomalies. Am J Perinatol 34(3):217, 2017

Griffiths PD, Bradburn M, Campbell MJ, et al: Use of MRI in the diagnosis of fetal brain abnormalities in utero (MERIDIAN): a multicenter, prospective cohort study. Lancet 389(10068):538, 2017

Guron G, Friberg P: An intact renin-angiotensin system is a prerequisite for normal renal development. J Hypertens 18(2):123, 2000

Happe SK, Rac MW, Moschos E, et al: Prospective first trimester ultrasound of low implantation and placenta accreta spectrum. J Ulrasound 39(10):1907, 2020

Harreld JH, Bhore R, Chason DP, et al: Corpus callosum length by gestational age as evaluated by fetal MR imaging. Am J Neuroradiol 32(3):490, 2011

Hernandez JS, Twickler DM, McIntire DM, et al: Hydramnios in twin gestations. Obstet Gynecol 120(4):759, 2012

Herrera CL, Byrne JJ, Clark HR, et al: Utilization of fetal magnetic resonance imaging after sonographic identification of major structural anomalies. J Ultrasound Med 39(10):2053, 2020

Hinh ND, Ladinsky JL: Amniotic fluid index measurements in normal pregnancy after 28 gestational weeks. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 91:132, 2005

Hu LS, Caire J, Twickler DM: MR findings of complicated multifetal gestations. Obstet Gynecol 36(1): 76, 2006

Huhta JC, Moise KJ, Fisher DJ, et al: Detection and quantitation of construction of the fetal ductus arteriosus by Doppler echocardiography. Circulation 75:406, 1987

Iams JD, Grobman WA, Lozitska A, et al: Adherence to criteria for transvaginal ultrasound imaging and measurement of cervical length. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(4):365, 2013

International Society of Ultrasound in Obstetrics and Gynecology: ISUOG statement on ultrasound exposure in the first trimester and autism spectrum disorders. 2016. Available at: https://www.isuog.org/resource/isuog-statement-on-ultrasound-exposure-in-the-first-trimester-and-autism-spectrum-disorders-pdf.html. Accessed September 15, 2021

Janga D, Akinfenwa O: Work-related repetitive strain injuries amongst practitioners of obstetric and gynecologic ultrasound worldwide. Arch Gynecol Obstet 286(2):353, 2012

Jauniaux E, Collins SL, Jurkovic D, et al: Accreta placentation: a systematic review of prenatal ultrasound imaging and grading of villous invasiveness. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(6):712, 2016

Kaelin Agten A, Cali G, Monteagudo A, et al: The clinical outcome of cesarean scar pregnancies implanted "on the scar" versus "in the niche." Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(5):510, 2017

Karim JN, Roberts NW, Salomon LJ, et al: Systematic review of first trimester ultrasound screening in detecting fetal structural anomalies and factors affecting screening performance. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 50(4):429, 2017

Katorza E, Bertucci E, Perlman S, et al: Development of the fetal vermis: new biometry reference data and comparison of 3 diagnostic modalities-3D ultrasound, 2D ultrasound, and MR imaging. Am J Neuroradiol 37(7):1359, 2016

Kehl S, Schelkle A, Thomas A, et al: Single deepest vertical pocket or amniotic fluid index as evaluation test for predicting adverse pregnancy outcome (SAFE trial): a multicenter open-label, randomized controlled trial. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 47:674, 2016

Khan S, Donnelly J: Outcome of pregnancy in women diagnosed with idiopathic polyhydramnios. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 57(1):57, 2017

Kingdom JC, Burrell SJ, Kaufmann P: Pathology and clinical implications of abnormal umbilical artery Doppler waveforms. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 9:271, 1997

Kline-Fath BM, Calvo-Garcia MA, O'Hara SM, et al: Twin-twin transfusion syndrome: cerebral ischemia is not the only fetal MR imaging finding. Pediatr Radiol 37(1):47, 2007

Kooiman, Calabrese CE, Didier R, et al: Micrognathia and oropharyngeal space in patients with Robin sequence: prenatal MRI measurements. J Oral Maxillofac Surg 76(2):408, 2018
Koren G, Florescu A, Costei AM, et al: Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs during third trimester and the risk of premature closure of the ductus arteriosus: a meta-analysis. Ann Pharmacother 40(5):824, 2006
Lazar DA, Cassady CI, Olutoye OO, et al: Tracheoesophageal displacement index on predictors of airway obstruction for fetuses with neck masses. J Pediatr Surg 47:46, 2012
Lee TC, Lim FY, Keswani SG, et al: Late gestation fetal magnetic resonance imaging-derived total lung volume predicts postnatal survival and need for extracorporeal membrane oxygenation support in isolated congenital diaphragmatic hernia. J Pediatr Surg 46(6):1165, 2011
Levi S: Routine ultrasound screening of congenital anomalies. An overview of the European experience. Ann N Y Acad Sci 847:86, 1998
Levine D, Barnes PD: Cortical maturation in normal and abnormal fetuses as assessed with prenatal MR imaging. Radiology 210:751, 1999
Leyendecker JR, DuBose M, Hosseinzadeh K, et al: MRI of pregnancy-related issues: abnormal placentation. AJR Am J Roentgenol 198(2):311, 2012
Li Y, Estroff JA, Khwaja O, et al: Callosal dysgenesis in fetuses with ventriculomegaly: levels of agreement between imaging modalities and postnatal outcome. Ultra Obstet Gynecol 40(5): 522, 2012
Luo QQ, Zou L, Gao H, et al: Idiopathic polyhydramnios at term and pregnancy outcomes: a multicenter observational study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(14):1755, 2017
Machado MR, Cecatti JG, Krupa F, et al: Curve of amniotic fluid index measurements in low risk pregnancy. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 86:37, 2007
Magann EF, Bass JD, Chauhan SP, et al: Amniotic fluid volume in normal singleton pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 90(4):524, 1997
Magann EF, Chauhan CP, Hitt WC, et al: Borderline or marginal amniotic fluid index and peripartum outcomes: a review of the literature. J Ultrasound Med 30(4):523, 2011
Magann EF, Doherty D, Lutegendorf MA, et al: Peripartum outcomes of high-risk pregnancies complicated by oligo- and polyhydramnios: a prospective longitudinal study. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 36(2):268, 2010
Mann SE, Nijland MJ, Ross MG: Mathematic modeling of human amniotic fluid dynamics. Am J Obstet Gynecol 175(4):937, 1996
Many A, Hill LM, Lazebnik N, et al: The association between polyhydramnios and preterm delivery. Obstet Gynecol 86(3):389, 1995
Mari G, Deter RL, Carpenter RL, et al: Noninvasive diagnosis by Doppler ultrasonography of fetal anemia due to maternal red-cell alloimmunization. Collaborative group for Doppler assessment of the blood velocity in anemic fetuses. N Engl J Med 342:9, 2000
Martins JG, Biggio JR, Abuhamad A: Consult series #52: diagnosis and management of fetal growth restriction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(4):B2, 2020
Mehollin-Ray AR, Cassady CI, Cass DL, et al: Fetal MR imaging of congenital diaphragmatic hernia. Radiographics 32(4):1067, 2012
Messerschmidt A, Pataraia A, Helber H, et al: Fetal MRI for prediction of neonatal mortality following preterm premature rupture of the fetal membranes. Pediatr Radiol 41:1416, 2011
Millischer AE, Sonigo P, Ville Y, et al: Standardized anatomical examination of the fetus at MRI. A feasibility study. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 42(5):553, 2013
Modena AB, Fieni S: Amniotic fluid dynamics. Acta Bio Medica Ateneo Parmanese 75(Suppl 1):11, 2004
Moore TR: Amniotic fluid dynamics reflect fetal and maternal health and disease. Obstet Gynecol 116(3):759, 2010
Moore TR, Cayle JE: The amniotic fluid index in normal human pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 162(5):1168, 1990
Morris LM, Lim FY, Elluru RG, et al: Severe micrognathia: indications for EXIT-to-Airway. Fetal Diagn Ther 26(30):162, 2009
Morrow RJ, Abramson SL, Bull SB, et al: Effect of placental embolization of the umbilical artery velocity waveform in fetal sheep. Am J Obstet Gynecol 151:1055, 1989
Moschos E, Wells CE, Twickler DM: Biometric sonographic findings of abnormally adherent trophoblastic implantations on cesarean delivery scars. J Ultrasound Med 33:475, 2014
Murphey S, Society of Diagnostic Medical Sonography: White paper series: work related musculoskeletal disorders in sonography. Society of Diagnostic Medical Sonography, Plano, Texas, 2018
Nabhan AF, Abdelmoula YA: Amniotic fluid index versus single deepest vertical pocket as a screening test for preventing adverse pregnancy outcome. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD006953, 2008
Neubert S, Trautmann K, Tanner B, et al: Sonographic prognostic factors in prenatal diagnosis of SCT. Fetal Diagn Ther 19(4): 319, 2004
Ng TW, Xi Y, Schindel D, et al: Fetal head and neck masses: MRI prediction of significant morbidity. AJR Am J Roentgenol 212(1):215, 2019
Odibo IN, Newville TM, Ounpraseuth ST, et al: Idiopathic polyhydramnios: persistence across gestation and impact on pregnancy outcomes. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 199:175, 2016
Ogamo M, Sugiyama T, Maeda T, et al: The ex utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT) procedure in giant fetal neck masses. Fetal Diagn Ther 20(3):214, 2005
O'Keeffe DF, Abuhamad A: Obstetric ultrasound utilization in the United States: data from various health plans. Semin Perinatol 37(5):29, 2013
Pagani G, Cali G, Acharya G, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of ultrasound in detecting the severity of abnormally invasive placentation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 97(1):25, 2018
Panting-Kemp A, Nguyen T, Chang E, et al: Idiopathic polyhydramnios and perinatal outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181(5):1079, 1999
Perrone EE, Jarboe MD, Maher CO, et al: Early delivery of sacrococcygeal teratoma with intraspinal extension. Fetal Diagn Ther 43(1):72, 2018
Petrozella LN, Dashe JS, McIntire DD, et al: Clinical significance of borderline amniotic fluid index and oligohydramnios in preterm pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 117(2 pt 1):338, 2011
Pilliod RA, Page JM, Burwick RM, et al: The risk of fetal death in nonanomalous pregnancies affected by polyhydramnios. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213:410.e1, 2015
Prayer D, Malinger G, Twickler D, et al: In reply: ISUOG Guidelines for fetal MRI: a response to 3-T fetal imaging and limited fetal exams. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 50(6):805, 2017
Pri-Paz S, Khalek N, Fuchs KM, et al: Maximal amniotic fluid index as a prognostic factor in pregnancies complicated by polyhydramnios. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 39(6):648, 2012
Rac MW, Dashe JS, Wells CE, et al: Ultrasound predictors of placental invasion: the Placenta Accreta Index. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(3):343, 2015
Rac MW, Moschos E, Wells CE, et al: Sonographic findings of morbidly adherent placenta in the first trimester. J Ultrasound Med 35(2):263, 2016
Ray JG, Vermeulen MJ, Bharatha A, et al: Association between MRI exposure during pregnancy and fetal and childhood outcomes. JAMA 316(9):952, 2016
Reeves MJ, Brandreth M, Whitby EH, et al: Neonatal cochlear function: measurement after exposure to acoustic noise during in utero MR imaging. Radiology 257(3):802, 2010
Roll SC, Evans KD, Hutmire CD, et al: An analysis of occupational factors related to shoulder discomfort in diagnostic medical sonographers and vascular technologists. Work 42(3):355, 2012
Rydberg C, Tunon K: Detection of fetal abnormalities by second-trimester ultrasound screening in a non-selected population. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 96(2):176, 2017
Sahin E, Madendag Y, Tayyar AT, et al: Perinatal outcomes in uncomplicated late preterm pregnancies with borderline oligohydramnios. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(23):3085, 2018
Sande JA, Ioannou C, Sarris I, et al: Reproducibility of measuring amniotic fluid index and single deepest vertical pool throughout gestation. Prenat Diagn 35(5):434, 2015
Schaefer C: Angiotensin II-receptor-antagonists: further evidence of fetotoxicity but not teratogenicity. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 67(8):591, 2003
Segata M, Mari G: Fetal anemia: new technologies. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 16:153, 2004
Soares de Oliveira-Szejnfeld P, Levine D, Melo AS, et al: Congenital brain abnormalities and Zika virus: what the radiologist can expect to see prenatally and postnatally. Radiology 281:203, 2016
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Mari G, Norton ME, et al: SMFM Clinical Guideline No. 8: The fetus at risk for anemia—diagnosis and management. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(6):697, 2015a
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Simpson LL: Twin-twin transfusion syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(1):3, 2013
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Sinkey RG, Odibo AO, et al: SMFM Clinical Consult Series No. 37: Diagnosis and management of vasa previa. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(5):615, 2015b
Spellacy WN, Buhi WC, Bradley B, et al: Maternal, fetal, amniotic fluid levels of glucose, insulin, and growth hormone. Obstet Gynecol 41:323, 1973
Stothard KJ, Tennant PW, Bell R, et al: Maternal overweight and obesity: A systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA 301(6):636, 2009
Syngelaki A, Chelemen T, Dagklis T, et al: Challenges in the diagnosis of fetal non-chromosomal abnormalities at 11–13 weeks. Prenat Diagn 31:90, 2011
Timor-Tritsch IE, Monteagudo A, Cali G, et al: Cesarean scar pregnancy and early placenta accreta share a common histology. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 43(4):383, 2014
Twickler DM, Magee KP, Caire J, et al: Second-opinion magnetic resonance imaging for suspected fetal central nervous system abnormalities. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:492, 2003
Twickler DM, Reichel T, McIntire DD, et al: Fetal central nervous system ventricle and cisterna magna measurements by magnetic resonance imaging. Am J Obstet Gynecol 187:927, 2002

Vadeyar SH, Moore RJ, Strachan BK, et al: Effect of fetal magnetic resonance imaging on fetal heart rate patterns. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:666, 2000

Weiss PA, Hofmann H, Winter R, et al: Amniotic fluid glucose values in normal and abnormal pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 65:333, 1985

Wenstrom KD, Weiner CP, Williamson RA: Diverse maternal and fetal pathology associated with absent diastolic flow in the umbilical artery of high-risk fetuses. Obstet Gynecol 77:374, 1991

Wiegand SL, Beamon CJ, Chescheir NC, et al: Idiopathic polyhydramnios: severity and perinatal morbidity. Am J Perinatol 33(7):658, 2016

Wiskirchen J, Groenewaeller EF, Kehlbach R, et al: Long-term effects of repetitive exposure to a static magnetic field 1.5 T on proliferation of human fetal lung fibroblasts. Magn Reson Med 41:464, 1999

Wood SL, Newton JM, Wang L, et al: Borderline amniotic fluid index and its relation to fetal intolerance of labor: a 2-center retrospective cohort study. J Ultrasound Med 33(4):705, 2014

Xi Y, Brown E, Bailey A, et al: MR imaging of the fetal cerebellar vermis: Biometric predictors of adverse neurologic outcome. J Magn Reson Imaging 44(5):1284, 2016

Zaretsky M, Ramus R, McIntire D, et al: MRI calculation of lung volumes to predict outcome in fetuses with genitourinary abnormalities. AJR Am J Roentgenol 185:1328, 2005

Zaretsky MV, McIntire DD, Twickler DM: Feasibility of the fetal anatomic and maternal pelvic survey by magnetic resonance imaging at term. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:997, 2003a

Zaretsky MV, Twickler DM: Magnetic imaging in obstetrics. Clin Obstet Gynecol 46:868, 2003b

Zeeman GG, McIntire DD, Twickler DM: Maternal and fetal artery Doppler findings in women with chronic hypertension who subsequently develop superimposed pre-eclampsia. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 14:318, 2003

Zun Z, Limperopoulos C: Placental perfusion imaging using velocity-selective arterial spin labeling. Magn Reson Med 80(3):1036, 2018

CHAPTER 15

Normal and Abnormal Fetal Anatomy

The ability to detect and characterize abnormalities before birth is one of the marvels of modern obstetrics. Sonography can image the fetus with remarkable precision. Components of the standard anatomic survey are listed in Table 15-1. These have been termed *essential elements* by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020) and *minimal elements* by the American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine (2018). Ideally, residency training in Obstetrics and Gynecology includes education in acquisition and interpretation of these views. Resources provided by national societies assist with this endeavor (Abuhamad, 2018).

A *detailed fetal anatomic survey* is a specialized examination that may include more than 60 components, each determined on a case-by-case basis. It is the primary method of evaluating at-risk pregnancies and characterizing fetal abnormalities, thereby aiding consultation and delivery planning. Indications are shown in Table 14-6 and discussed further in Chapter 14 (p. 251). At Parkland hospital, the detailed survey includes, at minimum, an attempt to visualize all components required by the American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine for normal detailed case submission (see Table 15-1).

This chapter presents the standard and detailed anatomic surveys and some of the many fetal abnormalities that may be detected when visualization is optimal. When imaging or measuring any fetal structure, care should be taken to place the focal zone at the appropriate level and to magnify the image appropriately (Abuhamad, 2018). Whenever a fetal abnormality is identified, a detailed anatomic survey is recommended. With rare exception, amniocentesis with chromosomal microarray analysis also is offered. If a cardiac abnormality is identified, fetal echocardiography is indicated. Additional indications for these specialized examinations and for fetal magnetic resonance (MR) imaging are reviewed in Chapter 14.

BIOMETRY

In the first trimester, crown-rump length (CRL) measurement is used to establish or confirm gestational age (Appendix, p. 1234). The earlier that sonography is performed, the more accurate this estimation. Gestational age assessment is reviewed in Chapter 14 (p. 248). The fetus is imaged in the midsagittal plane in a neutral, nonflexed position so that its length can be measured in a straight line (Fig. 15-1). The average of three measurements is used. First-trimester nuchal translucency measurement is reviewed in Chapter 14 (p. 249).

In the second and third trimesters, the biparietal diameter, head circumference, abdominal circumference, and femur length are measured to confirm gestational age, if not already established in the

TABLE 15-1. Components of Standard and Detailed Anatomic Surveys

Standard Ultrasound	Detailed Ultrasound, Additional Components
Head, face, and neck	**Head, face, and neck**
Midline falx	Cranial integrity and shape[a]
Cavum septum pellucidum	Brain parenchyma[a]
Lateral ventricles	Lateral ventricle wall/lining and contour
Choroid plexus	Third ventricle
Cerebellum	Fourth ventricle
Cisterna magna	Corpus callosum
Upper lip	Cerebellar vermis[a] and lobes
Nuchal skinfold measurement, 15–20 weeks	Transverse cerebellar diameter
	Nasal bone measurement, 15–22 weeks[a]
	Profile[a]
	Coronal view of lenses, nose[a], lips
	Orbits with measurement
	Maxilla[a], mandible[a], palate, tongue
	Ear position, size
	Neck[a]
Thorax and heart	**Thorax and heart**
Situs	Interventricular septum
Heart rate (M-mode)	Superior/inferior venae cavae[a]
Four-chamber view of the heart	Aortic arch[a]
Left ventricular outflow tract	Ductal arch
Right ventricular outflow tract	3-vessel view[a]
3-vessel view, if feasible	3-vessel and trachea view[a]
3-vessel trachea view, if feasible	Lungs[a]
	Diaphragm integrity[a]
	Ribs
Abdomen	**Abdomen**
Stomach: presence, size, and situs	Bowel, small and large
Kidneys	Liver
Urinary bladder	Gallbladder
Umbilical cord insertion into fetal abdomen	Spleen
Umbilical cord vessel number	Renal arteries
	Adrenal glands
	Ventral wall integrity
Spine	**Spine**
Cervical, thoracic, lumbar, and sacral spine	Shape[a], curvature[a], conus medullaris
	Integrity of spine and overlying tissue[a]
Extremities (presence only)	**Extremities**
Arms and legs	Architecture, position, number[a]
Hands and feet	Long-bone measurements
	Fingers and toes (number, position)[a]
External genitalia	**External genitalia**
When indicated, e.g., multifetal gestation	

[a]In addition to all standard anatomy components, these detailed ultrasound components are required by the American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine for normal cases submitted as part of the detailed ultrasound accreditation process. Modified from the American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018, 2019, 2020a.

first trimester, and to estimate fetal weight. Ultrasound equipment and report packages calculate these estimates using standardized nomograms (Hadlock, 1991). If an abnormality involving one of the parameters is suspected, consideration is given to excluding it from the gestational age calculation. Fetal weight nomograms are available that do not include the head measurements or the femur measurement (Hadlock, 1984; Shepard, 1982).

The biparietal diameter and head circumference are measured in the *transthalamic view*. This is a transverse image that includes the midline falx cerebri, cavum septum pellucidum,

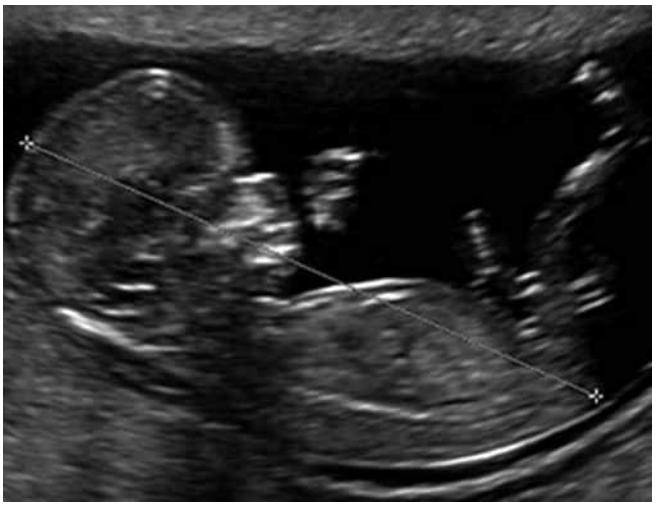


FIGURE 15-1 The crown-rump length measures 61 mm in this 12-week, 4-day fetus.

thalami, and insula (Fig. 15-2A). The cerebral hemispheres should appear symmetric, and the cerebellum should not be visible. The biparietal diameter is measured perpendicular to the falx cerebri, from the outer edge of the skull in the near field to the inner edge of the skull in the far field. The head circumference is measured by placing an ellipse around the outer edge of the skull. The head circumference may also be calculated by averaging the biparietal diameter and the occipito-frontal diameter and multiplying by π.

The abdominal circumference is measured in a transverse image that includes the stomach and the J-shaped confluence of the umbilical vein with the portal sinus. An ellipse is placed just outside the fetal skin edge (Fig. 15-2B). The image should appear as round as possible and ideally contain no more than 1 rib on either side. The spine should be visible in cross-section at the 3 o'clock or 9 o'clock position, whereas the kidneys should not be visible, as they are lower in the abdomen. Abdominal circumference is the biometric parameter most affected by fetal growth. An abdominal circumference below the 10th percentile may be used to diagnose fetal-growth restriction (Chap. 47, p. 825).

The femur length is measured with the ultrasound beam perpendicular to the long axis of the shaft. Calipers are placed at each end of the calcified diaphysis (Fig. 15-2C). Throughout the second and third trimesters, the femur length to abdominal circumference ratio is normally 20 to 24 percent. If this ratio is below 18 percent, a skeletal dysplasia should be considered, particularly if other long-bone measurements are lagging (p. 302). As discussed in Chapter 17 (p. 340), a mildly foreshortened femur length measurement is also a minor marker for Down syndrome (Herrera, 2020b).

Various nomograms exist for other fetal structures, including the transverse cerebellar diameter, ocular distances, nasal bone, ear length, jaw index, thoracic circumference, and lengths of the liver, kidneys, long bones, and feet. They may be used to address specific questions regarding organ system abnormalities, congenital infection, or genetic syndromes (Appendix, pp. 1238–1241).

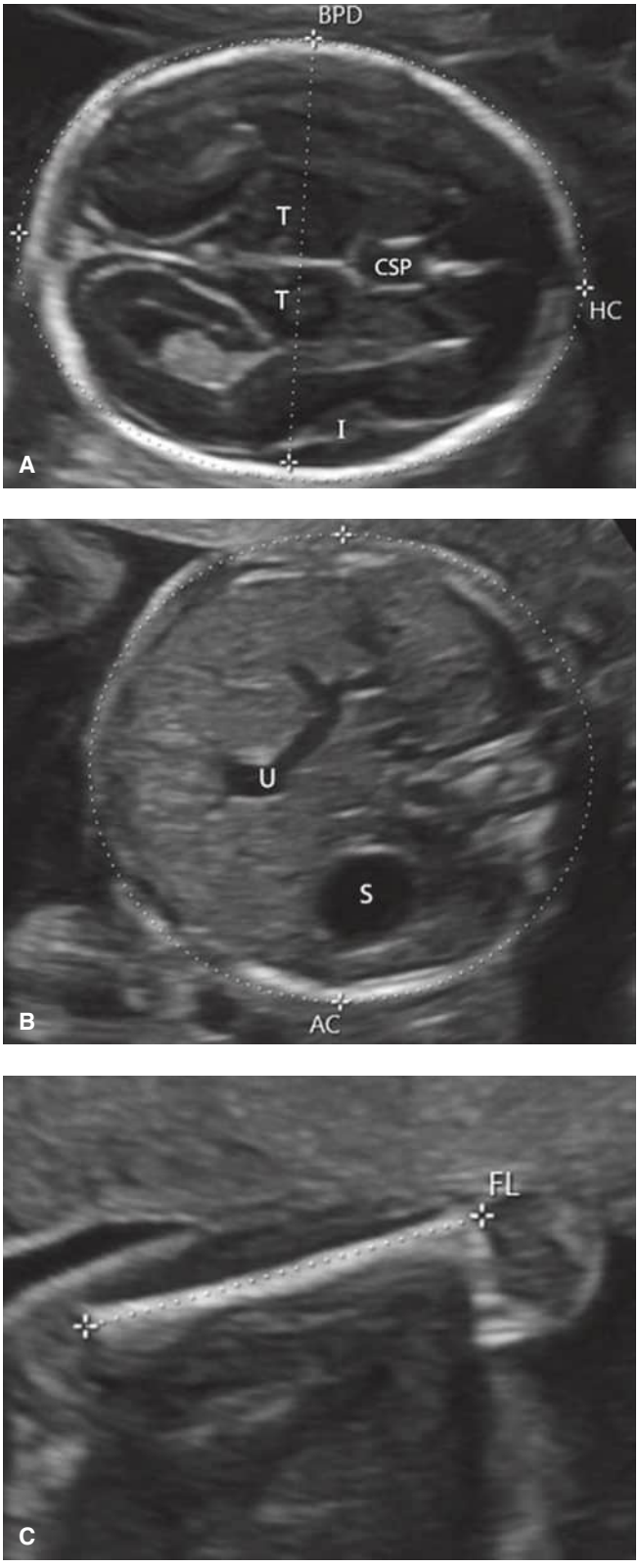


FIGURE 15-2 Normal biometry. **A.** Transthalamic view depicts measurement of the biparietal diameter (*BPD*) and head circumference (*HC*). Landmarks include the cavum septum pellucidum (*CSP*), thalami (*T*), and insula (*I*). **B.** Abdominal circumference view (*AC*) shows measurement and landmarks, which include the stomach (*S*) and the confluence of the umbilical vein (*U*) and the left portal vein. **C.** Femur length measurement (*FL*).

BRAIN AND SPINE

Standard sonographic evaluation of the fetal brain includes three transverse (axial) views. As noted, the *transthalamic view* should contain the midline falx cerebri, cavum septum pellucidum (CSP), thalami, and insula (see Fig. 15-2A). The CSP is the space between the two laminae that separate the frontal horns of the lateral ventricles. It should be visible between approximately 17 and 37 weeks' gestation, but after this, fusion of the septi pellucidi may obliterate the cavum. Inability to visualize a normal CSP may indicate a midline brain abnormality (Fig. 15-3). For example, the frontal horns are widely spaced apart in agenesis of the corpus callosum (ACC), whereas in cases of septo-optic dysplasia (de Morsier syndrome) and lobar holoprosencephaly, the frontal horns communicate. Discussed in Chapter 16 (p. 312), an abnormally wide CSP may also be found with trisomy 18.

The *transventricular view* lies superior to the transthalamic view and, as the name implies, includes the lateral ventricles. The ventricles are measured at their atrium, which is the confluence of the temporal and occipital horns (Fig. 15-4). The measurement is normally 5 to 9 mm throughout the second and third trimesters. Cerebrospinal fluid is produced within the ventricles by the *choroid plexus.* Choroid plexus cysts are present in 0.5 to 2 percent of uncomplicated pregnancies and approximately 30 to 50 percent of pregnancies with trisomy 18 (Fig. 16-5, p. 312) (Reddy, 2014). A detailed ultrasound examination is generally offered when found. In the absence of an associated ultrasound abnormality, or unless an aneuploidy screening test indicates increased risk for trisomy 18, a choroid plexus cyst is considered a normal variant.

For the *transcerebellar view*, the transducer is angled back through the posterior fossa (Fig. 15-5). Structures visible in this image include the

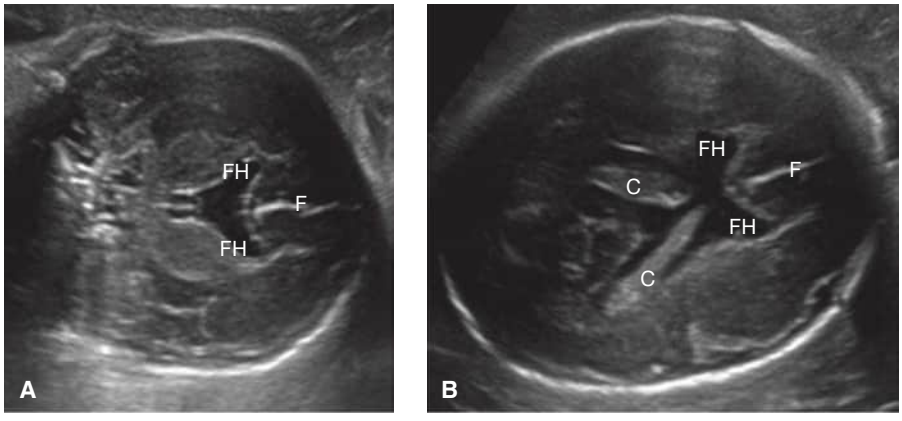


FIGURE 15-3 Absence of the cavum septum pellucidum, with coronal **(A)** and transverse **(B)** images showing communication between the frontal horns (*FH*) of the lateral ventricles. This may be isolated but can occur in the setting of septo-optic dysplasia or lobar holoprosencephaly. C = choroid plexus; F = falx cerebri.

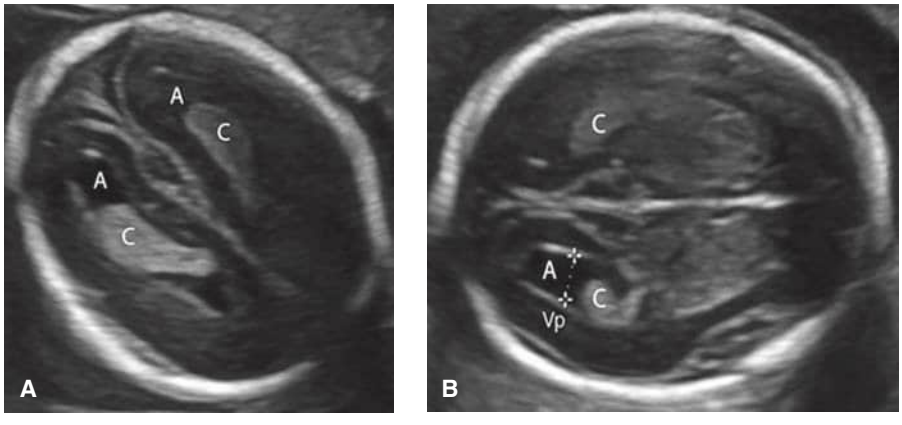


FIGURE 15-4 Transventricular view. **A.** Transverse image of the lateral ventricles, which contain the choroid plexus (*C*). **B.** The ventricles are measured at the atria (*A*), the confluence of the temporal and occipital horns. The measurement is normally 5–9 mm. Vp = lateral ventricle. (Reproduced with permission from Rosa Robles, RDMS.)

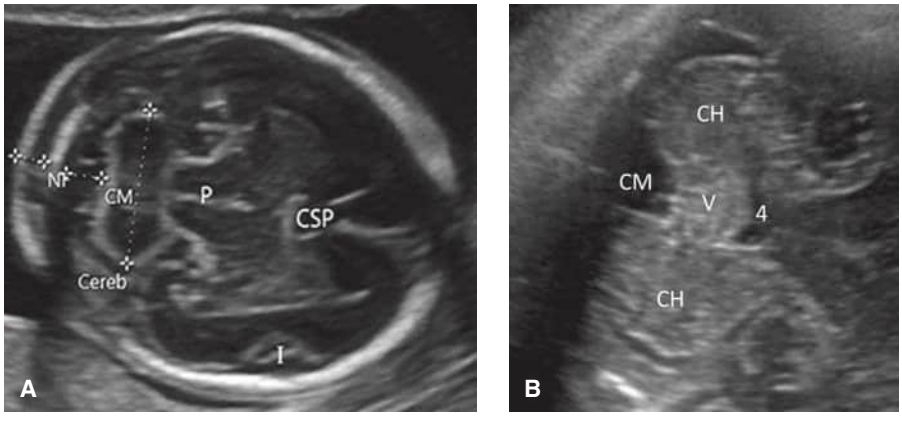


FIGURE 15-5 Transcerebellar view. **A.** Transverse image of the posterior fossa showing measurement of the cerebellum (*Cereb*), cisterna magna (*CM*), and nuchal skinfold thickness (*NF*). **B.** Third-trimester image depicting the cerebellar hemispheres (*CH*) and cerebellar vermis (*V*). The fourth ventricle (4) is anterior to the vermis. CSP = cavum septum pellucidum; I = insula; P = cerebral peduncles.

midline falx cerebri, cavum septum pellucidum, thalami, cerebellum, and cisterna magna. The cerebellum and cisterna magna are measured, and between 15 and 20 weeks' gestation, the nuchal skinfold thickness also is measured. From 15 until 22 weeks, the cerebellar diameter in millimeters is roughly equivalent to the gestational age in weeks (Chavez, 2003). *Cerebellar hypoplasia* has been associated with various central nervous system (CNS) and non-CNS abnormalities (Howley, 2018). The cisterna magna should measure between 2 and 10 mm throughout the second trimester and may reach 12 mm in the latter part of the third trimester. It becomes effaced when the Chiari II malformation is present (p. 277). If the cisterna magna is enlarged, the differential diagnosis includes absence of all or part of the vermis (p. 279), a cyst such as an arachnoid cyst within the posterior fossa, or mega-cisterna magna, which is a diagnosis of exclusion and has an excellent prognosis. An increased nuchal skinfold measurement is associated with increased risk for Down syndrome, other genetic syndromes, and structural abnormalities (Chap. 17, p. 341).

Imaging of the spine includes evaluation of the cervical, thoracic, lumbar, and sacral regions (Fig. 15-6). Representative images are often obtained in the sagittal or coronal plane. However, imaging of each spinal segment in the transverse plane is more sensitive for anomaly detection. Transverse images demonstrate three ossification centers. The anterior ossification center is the vertebral body, and the posterior paired ossification centers represent the junction of vertebral laminae and pedicles. Ossification of the spine proceeds in a cranial-caudal fashion. The ossification of the upper sacrum (S_1-S_2) is not generally visible before 16 weeks' gestation, and ossification of the entire sacrum may not be visible until 21 weeks (De Biasio, 2003). Thus, detection of some spinal abnormalities can be challenging in the early second trimester.

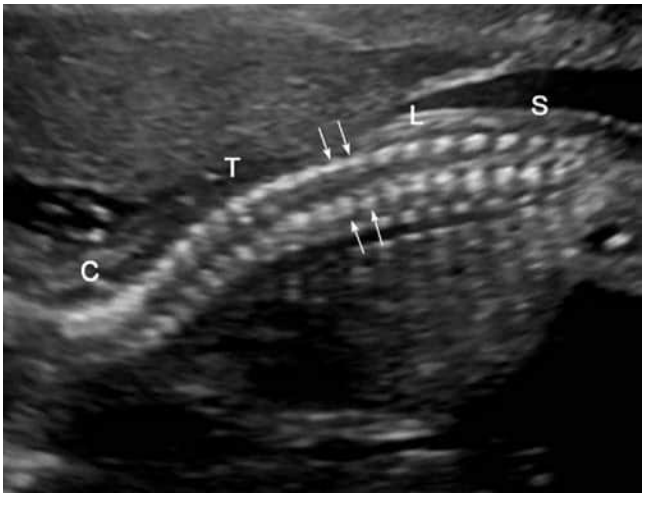


FIGURE 15-6 Normal fetal spine. This sagittal image depicts the cervical (*C*), thoracic (*T*), lumbar (*L*), and sacral spine (*S*). Arrows denote the parallel rows of paired posterior ossification centers, which represent the junction of vertebral lamina and pedicles.

Neural-tube Defects

These defects include anencephaly, myelomeningocele (spina bifida), cephalocele, and rare spinal dysraphisms. Normally, the neural tube closes by the embryonic age of 26 to 28 days (Chap. 7, p. 124). The birth prevalence of neural-tube defects approximates 0.9 in 1000 in the United States and most of Europe and 1.3 in 1000 in the United Kingdom (Cragan, 2009; Dolk, 2010). Many neural-tube defects can be prevented with folic acid supplementation. When isolated, neural-tube defect inheritance is multifactorial, and the recurrence risk without periconceptional folic acid supplementation is 3 to 5 percent (Chap. 16, p. 324).

Screening for neural-tube defects may be performed with either ultrasound alone or ultrasound in addition to maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein (MSAFP) level measurement (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). Between 15 and 20 weeks' gestation, an upper MSAFP threshold of 2.5 multiples of the median (MoM) is anticipated to detect 95 percent with fetal anencephaly and 80 percent with myelomeningocele. However, detection with standard sonography is at least comparable to that with MSAFP (Dashe, 2006; Norem 2005). A detailed ultrasound examination is the preferred diagnostic test and may identify other abnormalities or conditions that also elevate MSAFP levels (Table 17-5, p. 338).

Anencephaly is an absence of the cranium and telencephalon above the level of the skull base and orbits (Fig. 15-7). *Acrania* is absence of the cranium with protrusion of disorganized brain tissue, and herniation of the latter tissue is *exencephaly*. Importantly, brain tissue visible in the late first trimester is often not seen when ultrasound is performed in the second or third trimester. Thus, anencephaly is the final stage of exencephaly. It is often diagnosed in the late first trimester, and with adequate visualization, virtually all cases may be diagnosed in the second trimester.

Sonographically, the cranial contour may appear abnormal in the first trimester and may resemble a "shower cap" in the late first or early second trimester. The face often appears triangular, and sagittal images demonstrate lack of an ossified cranium. Hydramnios from impaired fetal swallowing is common in the third trimester. Anencephaly is uniformly lethal. If the pregnancy is continued, perinatal palliative care consultation should be considered (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b).

Cephalocele is the herniation of meninges through a cranial defect, typically located in the midline occipital region (Fig. 15-8). When brain tissue herniates through the skull defect, the anomaly is termed an *encephalocele.* Herniation of the cerebellum and other posterior fossa structures constitutes a *Chiari III malformation*. Microcephaly is common by the third trimester. Associated intracranial abnormalities are frequently visible, and survivors have a high incidence of neurological deficits and intellectual disability. Cephalocele is an important feature of the autosomal recessive *Meckel-Gruber syndrome*, which includes cystic renal dysplasia and polydactyly. A cephalocele not located in the occipital midline raises suspicion for *amnionic-band sequence* (Chap. 6, p. 113).

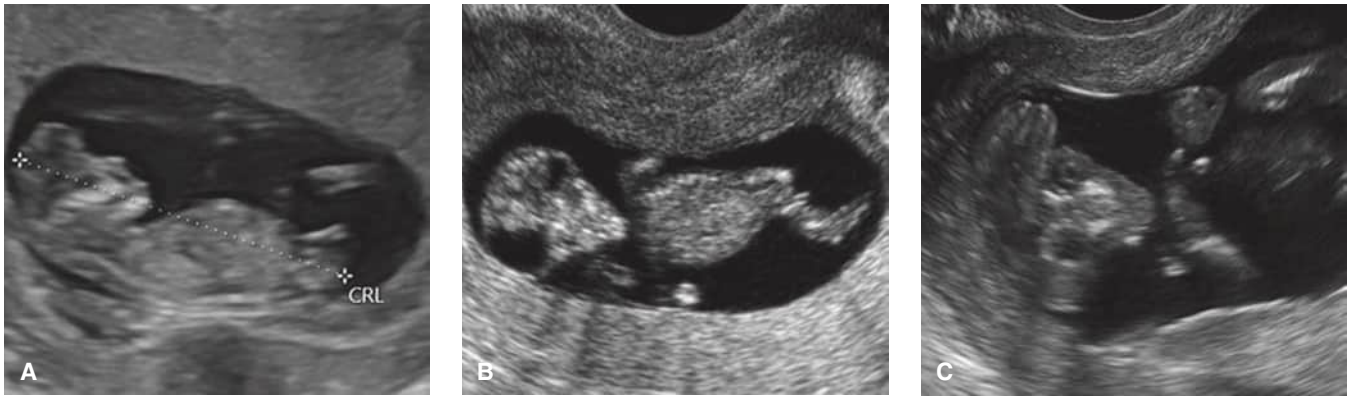


FIGURE 15-7 Anencephaly/acrania. **A.** This transabdominal image at 11 weeks' gestation depicts relatively subtle absence of the cranium. **B.** A transvaginal image at 11 weeks demonstrates more clearly the protrusion of a disorganized mass of brain tissue. **C.** By 14 weeks, this tissue resembles a "shower cap." CRL = crown–rump length.

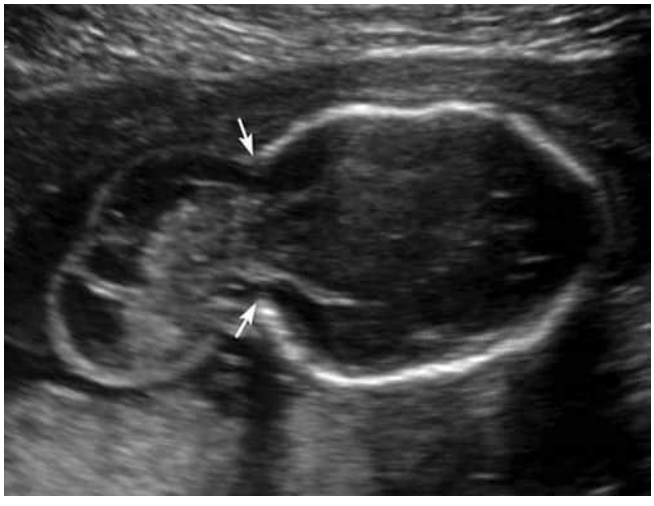


FIGURE 15-8 Encephalocele. This transverse image depicts a large defect in the occipital region of the cranium (*arrows*) through which meninges and brain tissue have herniated.

Spina bifida is characterized by defects in the vertebrae, typically the dorsal arches, and subsequent exposure of the meninges and nerve roots. The prevalence approximates 1 in 2000 births (Cragan, 2009; Dolk, 2010). Herniation of a meningeal sac and neural elements is a *myelomeningocele* (Fig. 15-9A). Less commonly, only an empty meningeal sac herniates, which is a *meningocele.* Transverse images are helpful to demonstrate separation or splaying of the lateral processes and characterize the level of the defect. Most cases are *open spina bifida*, which means that the defect includes skin and soft tissues. Closed defects are skin-covered and more challenging to detect prenatally.

Detection of spina bifida is aided by two characteristic cranial findings (Nicolaides, 1986). Flatting or scalloping of the frontal bones is termed the "*lemon sign,*" and anterior curvature of the cerebellum with effacement of the cisterna magna is the "*banana sign*" (Fig. 15-9B,C). These findings are manifestations of the Arnold-Chiari or Chiari II malformation. This develops when downward displacement of the spinal cord pulls a portion of the cerebellum through the foramen magnum and into the upper cervical canal. The biparietal diameter measurement often lags behind the other biometric parameters. *Ventriculomegaly* is common after mid-gestation, and 80 to 90 percent of infants with myelomeningocele require ventriculoperitoneal

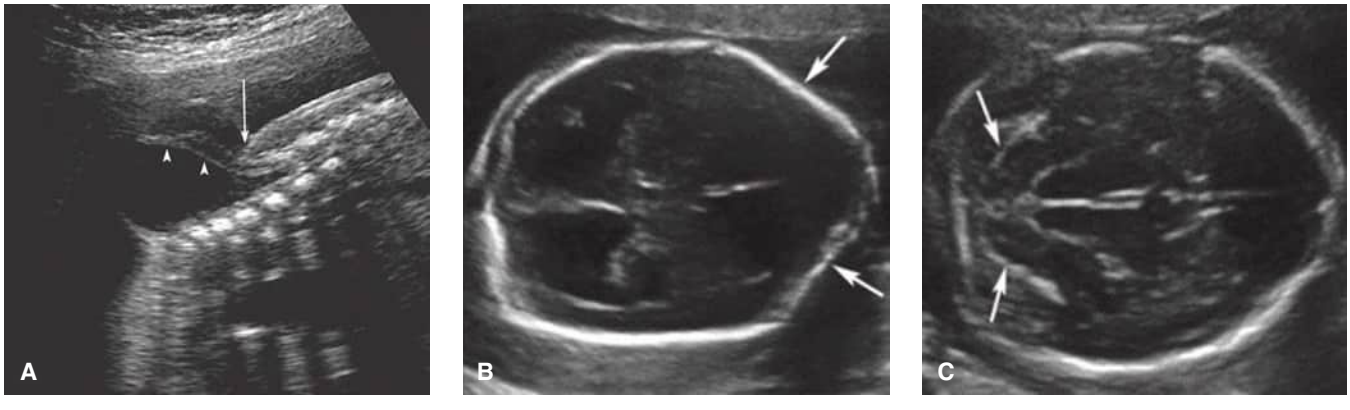


FIGURE 15-9 Myelomeningocele. **A.** Sagittal image of a lumbosacral myelomeningocele. Arrowheads indicate nerve roots within the anechoic herniated sac. The overlying skin abruptly stops at the defect (*arrow*). **B.** Transthalamic image demonstrating flattening of the frontal bones (*arrows*)—the *lemon sign*. **C.** Transcerebellar image depicting the *banana sign*, an anterior curvature of the cerebellum (*arrows*) and effacement of the cisterna magna.

shunt placement (Adzick 2011, Chao, 2010). Affected children require multidisciplinary care to address problems related to the defect such as deficits in swallowing, bladder and bowel function, and ambulation. Fetal myelomeningocele surgery is discussed in Chapter 19 (p. 372).

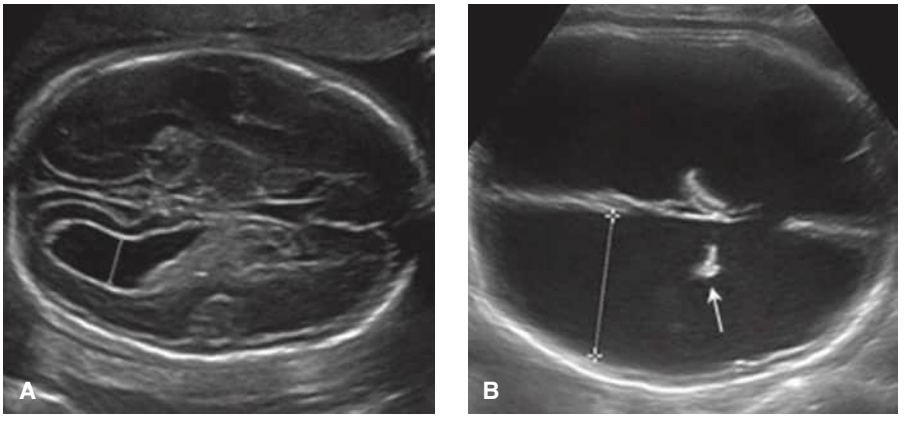


FIGURE 15-10 Ventriculomegaly. **A.** Mild ventriculomegaly. The atria measured 11 mm. No associated abnormality or underlying etiology was identified. **B.** Severe ventriculomegaly. In this fetus with aqueductal stenosis, the atria measured 45 mm. Arrow denotes the dangling choroid plexus.

Ventriculomegaly

Distention of the lateral ventricles is considered a nonspecific marker of abnormal brain development (Pilu, 2018). *Mild ventriculomegaly* is diagnosed when the atrial width measures 10 to 12 mm; *moderate ventriculomegaly*, when the measurement is 13 to 15 mm; and *severe ventriculomegaly* when >15 mm (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2018). Representative images are depicted in Figure 15-10. The choroid plexus may appear *dangling* in severe cases.

Ventriculomegaly may occur secondary to a variety of central nervous system abnormalities and is associated with numerous genetic and infectious etiologies. Initial evaluation includes a detailed examination of fetal anatomy, amniocentesis for chromosomal microarray analysis, and testing for congenital infections such as cytomegalovirus and toxoplasmosis (Chap. 16, p. 326). Genetic syndromes resulting in ventriculomegaly include L1 X-linked aqueductal stenosis, Joubert syndrome, Walker Warburg syndrome, hydrolethalus syndrome, and lissencephaly syndromes (Kousi, 2016). Ventriculomegaly does not typically result in significant skull enlargement. Two exceptions—when macrocrania often occurs—are aqueductal stenosis and the asymmetric ventriculomegaly interhemispheric cyst callosal dysgenesis (AVID) syndrome (Oh, 2019). Fetal MR imaging should be considered to assess for associated abnormalities that may not be detectable sonographically (Herrera, 2020a; Katz, 2018) (Chap. 14, p. 263).

Prognosis is determined by etiology, severity, and progression. In a systematic review of nearly 1500 mild to moderate cases, 1 to 2 percent were associated with congenital infection; 5 percent, with aneuploidy; and 12 percent, with neurological abnormality (Devaseelan, 2010). With chromosomal microarray analysis, genetic abnormalities may be identified in 10 to 15 percent (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2018). The larger the atria, the greater the likelihood of an underlying CNS abnormality and subsequent abnormal outcome (Gaglioti, 2009; Joó, 2008). If ventriculomegaly is isolated and remains mild, development is normal in at least 90 percent, and if moderate, development is normal in at least 75 percent (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2018). Progression significantly raises the likelihood of abnormal neurological development.

Agenesis of the Corpus Callosum

The corpus callosum is a major fiber bundle that connects reciprocal regions of the cerebral hemispheres. It is best viewed in the midsagittal plane, and color Doppler may demonstrate the pericallosal artery (Fig. 15-11). Agenesis of the corpus callosum has characteristic sonographic findings. The frontal horns are widely separated, and the occipital horns are rounded—which is called colpocephaly. Together these findings give the lateral ventricles a teardrop shape (Fig. 15-12). A normal cavum septum pellucidum is not visible because of frontal horn displacement. In the midline, *bundles of Probst* represent fiber tracts that no longer cross in the midline. Ventriculomegaly is not uncommon, and without the corpus callosum bordering the third ventricle superiorly, the third ventricle may be elevated and mildly enlarged.

In population-based series, agenesis of the corpus callosum occurs in 1 in 4000 to 5000 pregnancies (Ballardini, 2018; Stoll, 2019; Szabo, 2011). It is associated with other anomalies, aneuploidy, and more than 200 genetic syndromes. Thus, chromosomal microarray analysis should be offered, and genetic counseling can be challenging. In a review of apparently isolated cases, fetal MR imaging identified additional brain abnormalities in more than 20 percent of cases (Sotiriadis, 2012). If MR imaging does not identify associated abnormalities, normal developmental outcome in 67 to 75 percent of cases and severe disability in about 10 percent has been reported (des Portes, 2018; Sotiriadis, 2012).

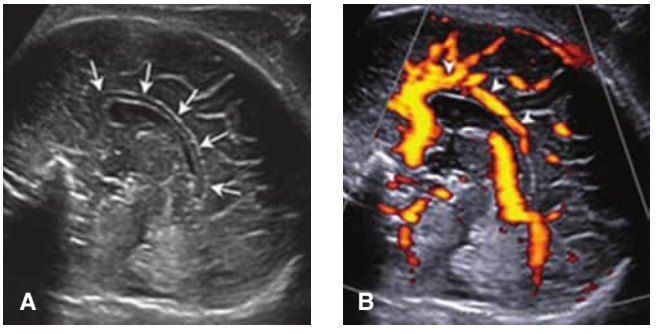


FIGURE 15-11 Normal corpus callosum. **A.** Arrows point to the corpus callosum in this midsagittal image. **B.** Power Doppler image of the pericallosal artery (*arrowheads*).

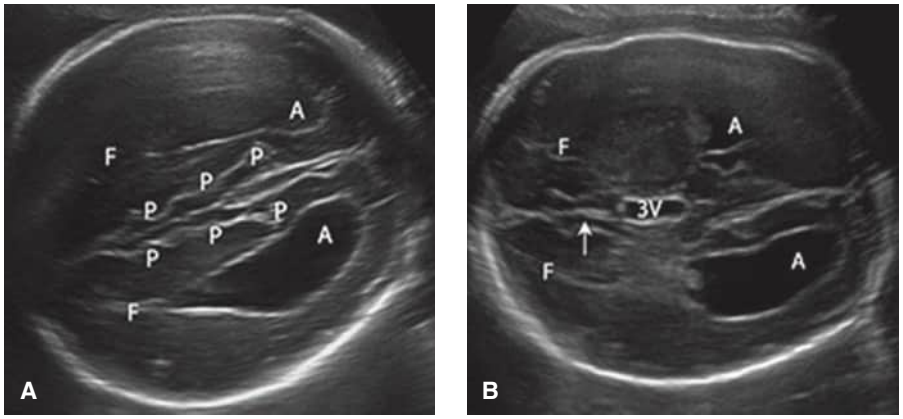


FIGURE 15-12 Agenesis of the corpus callosum. **A.** This transverse image demonstrates a teardrop-shaped ventricle. The frontal horns (*F*) are widely separated, no cavum septum pellucidum is visible, and bundles of Probst (*P*) line the midline. **B.** There is mild ventriculomegaly, no cavum septum pellucidum is visible (*arrow*), and the third ventricle (*3V*) is elevated and enlarged. A = atria.

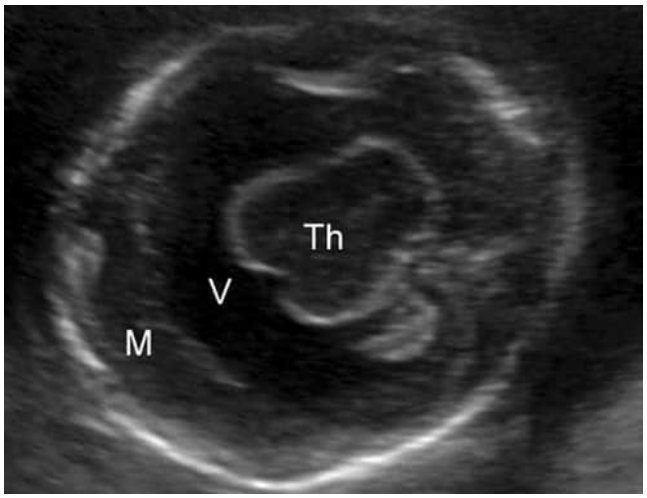


FIGURE 15-13 Alobar holoprosencephaly. The thalami (*Th*) are fused and encircled by a monoventricle (*V*) with a covering mantle (*M*) of cortex. The midline falx is absent. (Reproduced with permission from Rafael Levy, RDMS.)

Holoprosencephaly

During early normal brain development, the prosencephalon or forebrain divides as it becomes the telencephalon and diencephalon. With holoprosencephaly, the prosencephalon fails to divide completely into two separate cerebral hemispheres and underlying paired diencephalic structures. The most severe form, *alobar holoprosencephaly,* is characterized by a single monoventricle that surrounds fused thalami (Fig. 15-13). In *semilobar holoprosencephaly*, hemispheres partially separate. *Lobar holoprosencephaly* refers to a variable degree of fusion of frontal structures and is more challenging to detect with prenatal ultrasound. The lobar form is among possible diagnoses when a normal cavum septum pellucidum cannot be visualized. Last, the *middle interhemispheric variant of holoprosencephaly* is characterized by communication between the midportion of the bodies of the lateral ventricles with separation of the frontal horns, such that the choroid plexus may prolapse from one lateral ventricle into the other. Differentiation into two cerebral hemispheres is induced by prechordal mesenchyme, which is also responsible for differentiation of the midline face. Craniofacial anomalies associated with holoprosencephaly are reviewed later (p. 283).

The birth prevalence of holoprosencephaly is only 1 in 10,000. However, the abnormality has been identified in nearly 1 in 250 early abortuses, which attests to extremely high in-utero lethality (Orioli, 2010; Yamada, 2004). The alobar form accounts for 40 to 75 percent of cases, and 30 to 40 percent have a numerical chromosomal abnormality, particularly trisomy 13 (Orioli, 2010; Solomon, 2010). Conversely, of trisomy 13 cases, two thirds are found to have holoprosencephaly.

Dandy-Walker Malformation

This posterior fossa abnormality is characterized by agenesis of the cerebellar vermis, posterior fossa enlargement, and elevation of the tentorium cerebelli. The cerebellar hemispheres are visibly separated, and fluid in the cisterna magna communicates with the fourth ventricle through the cerebellar vermis defect (Fig. 15-14). The birth prevalence approximates 1 in 12,000 (Long, 2006). Associated anomalies and aneuploidy are common. These include ventriculomegaly in 30 to 40 percent, other anomalies in approximately 50 percent, and aneuploidy in 40 percent (Ecker, 2000; Long, 2006). Dandy-Walker malformation is also associated with numerous genetic and sporadic syndromes, congenital viral infections, and teratogen exposure, all of which greatly affect the prognosis. Thus, the initial evaluation mirrors that for ventriculomegaly (p. 278).

Inferior vermian agenesis is a term used when only the inferior portion of the vermis is absent. Even with partial and relatively subtle vermian agenesis, the prevalence of associated anomalies and aneuploidy is still high, and the prognosis is often poor (Ecker, 2000; Long, 2006).

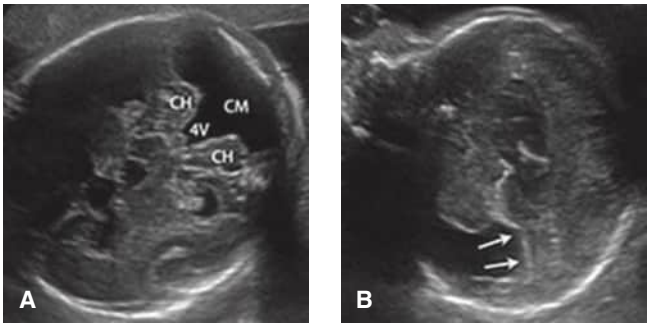


FIGURE 15-14 Dandy-Walker malformation. **A.** The cerebellar hemispheres (*CH*) are widely separated by a fluid collection that connects the 4th ventricle (*4V*) to the enlarged cisterna magna (*CM*). **B.** Sagittal image depicts elevation of the tentorium (*arrows*).

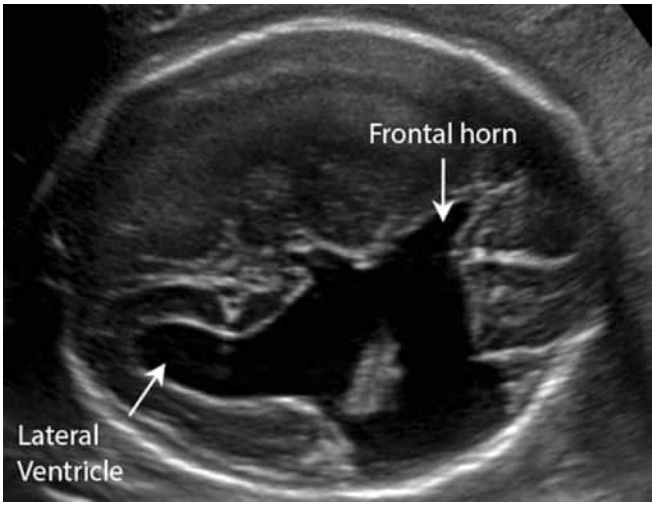


FIGURE 15-15 Schizencephaly. This transverse image shows a large cleft extending from the right lateral ventricle through the cortex. Because the borders of the cleft are separate, the defect is termed *open-lipped*. (Reproduced with permission from Michael Davidson, RDMS.)

Schizencephaly and Porencephaly

Schizencephaly is a rare brain abnormality characterized by clefts in one or both cerebral hemispheres, typically involving the perisylvian fissure. The cleft is lined by heterotopic gray matter and communicates with the ventricle, extending through the cortex to the pial surface (Fig. 15-15). Schizencephaly is believed to be an abnormality of neuronal migration, which explains its typically delayed recognition until after midpregnancy (Howe, 2012). It is associated with absence of the cavum septum pellucidum, resulting in frontal horn communication. Ventriculomegaly is a common finding.

In contrast, porencephaly is a cystic space within the brain that is lined by white matter and may or may not communicate with the ventricular system. It is generally considered to be a destructive lesion. Porencephaly may develop following intracranial hemorrhage in the setting of neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia or in an individual with a COL4A-1 mutation—a genetic condition which causes *familial porencephaly*. In a monochorionic twin gestation, acute hypotension following death of a co-twin also may create porencephaly. Fetal MR imaging should be considered when either of these CNS anomalies is identified.

Microcephaly

This condition indicates that the size of the head is profoundly smaller than expected. The Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2016) recommends that fetal microcephaly be defined as a head circumference at least 3 standard deviations (SD) below the mean for gestational age (Appendix, p. 1237). However, many fetuses with measurements in this range have normal head size at birth, and therefore the diagnosis of pathologic microcephaly is not considered *certain* until the head circumference reaches 5 SD below the mean (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2016). The forehead is often upsloping. Microcephaly is associated with a wide range of underlying abnormalities, genetic syndromes, and congenital infections such as toxoplasmosis, rubella, and cytomegalovirus, herpes, or Zika infection (Chap. 67, p. 1183). Findings that suggest infection include parenchymal and periventricular echogenic foci, ventriculomegaly, and cerebellar hypoplasia. Amniocentesis should be offered, and fetal MR imaging should be considered. The Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2016) recommends performing a detailed ultrasound examination of the fetal brain if the head circumference measures more than 2 SD below the mean. Another ultrasound evaluation follows in 3 or 4 weeks, with the understanding that it may be difficult to distinguish constitutionally small head size from pathologic findings.

Sacrococcygeal Teratoma

This germ cell tumor is one of the most common tumors in neonates, with a birth prevalence of approximately 1 in 28,000 (Derikx, 2006; Swamy, 2008). It is thought to arise from the totipotent cells along the Hensen node, anterior to the coccyx. Sacrococcygeal teratoma (SCT) classification includes four types (Altman, 1974). Type 1 is predominantly external with a minimal presacral component; type 2 is predominantly external but with a significant intrapelvic component; type 3 is predominantly internal and has abdominal extension; and type 4 is entirely internal with no external component. The tumor histological type may be mature, immature, or malignant.

Sonographically, SCT is a solid and/or cystic mass that arises from the anterior sacrum and usually extends inferiorly and externally as it grows (Fig. 15-16). Solid components often vary in echogenicity, appear disorganized, and may enlarge rapidly with advancing gestation. Fetal MR imaging should be considered because internal pelvic components may be challenging to visualize. Large, solid tumors frequently result in hydrops due to high-output cardiac failure, either as a consequence of tumor vascularity or secondary to bleeding within the tumor and resultant anemia. Hydramnios is common. Fetuses with tumors >5 cm often require cesarean delivery, and classical hysterotomy may be needed (Gucciardo, 2011). Fetal therapy for SCT is discussed in Chapter 19 (p. 373).

Caudal Regression Sequence

This rare anomaly is characterized by absence of the sacral spine and often portions of the lumbar spine. It is approximately 25 times more prevalent in pregnancies complicated by diabetes (Garne, 2012). Caudal regression is associated with genitourinary malformations and syndromes such as the VACTERL association (vertebral defects, anal atresia, cardiac defects, tracheo-esophageal fistula, renal anomalies, and limb abnormalities) (Vilanova-Sanchez, 2018). Sonographic findings include a spine that appears abnormally short, lacks normal lumbosacral curvature, and terminates abruptly above the level of the iliac wings (Fig. 15-17). Because the sacrum does not lie between the iliac wings, they are abnormally close together and may appear shield-like. The lower extremities lack normal soft tissue development and may be abnormally positioned.

Sirenomelia

This rare anomaly may be confused with caudal regression sequence but is quite different. Formerly termed mermaid

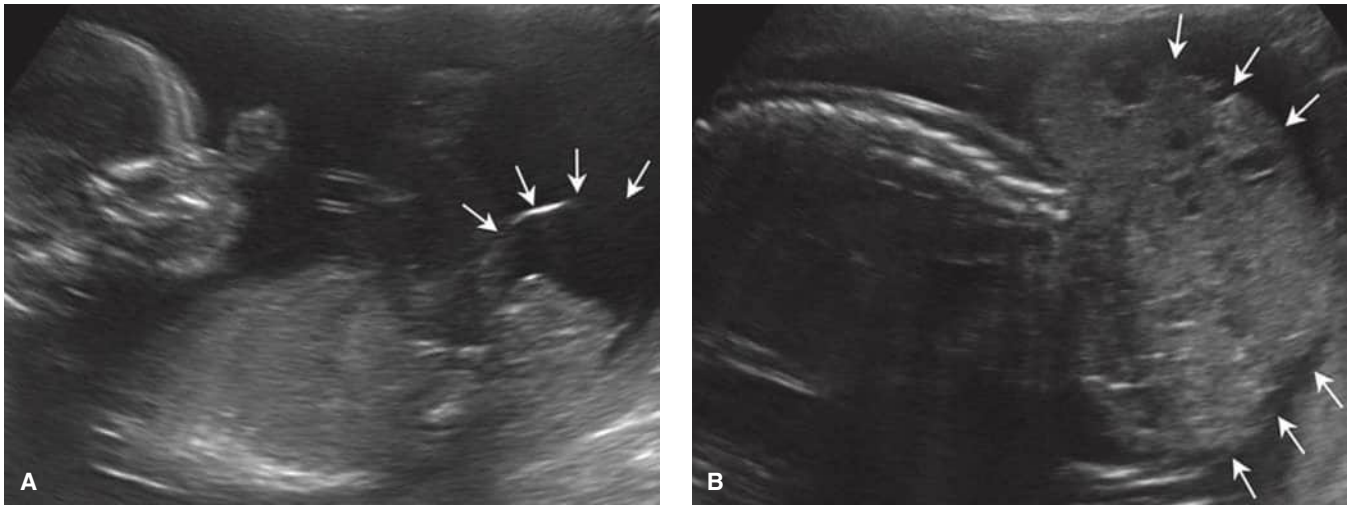


FIGURE 15-16 Sacrococcygeal teratoma. This tumor enlarged from 3 cm in diameter at 19 weeks' gestation **(A)** to 9 cm in diameter during a 5-week period **(B)**. Arrows depict the external borders of the mass.

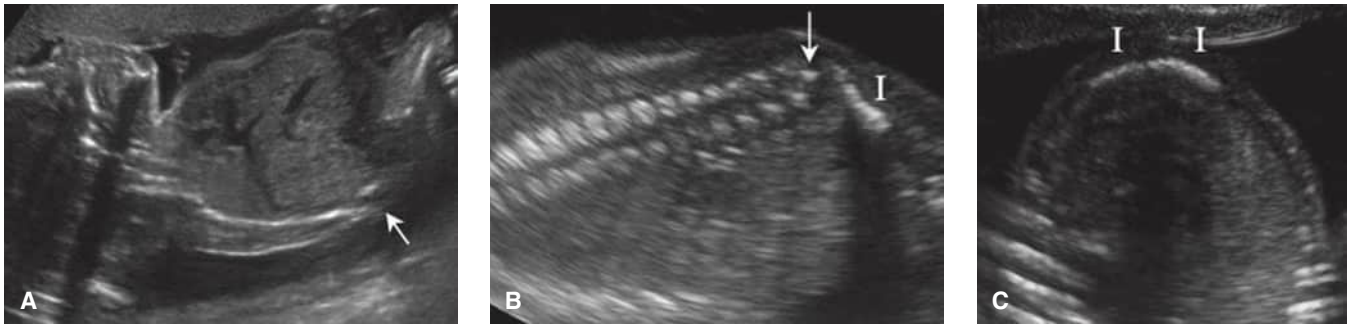


FIGURE 15-17 Caudal regression sequence. **A.** The spine is markedly foreshortened. The arrow shows where it terminates. **B.** The spine ends abruptly above the level of the iliac wings (*I*). **C.** Without a vertebral body between the iliac wings (*I*), they assume a shield shape.

syndrome, it is characterized by a single lower extremity in the midline and bilateral renal agenesis. The extremity may contain one or two sets of bones and feet (Fig. 15-18). The bladder, anus, and genitalia are absent. What may appear to be a single umbilical artery in these cases is instead a remnant of the vitelline artery. After 18 weeks' gestation, when the kidneys become the primary source of amniotic fluid production, resultant anhydramnios may complicate the diagnosis. Cases of surviving infants have a variant of sirenomelia in which there is some functioning renal tissue and urinary output (Pinette, 2005).

■ Hemivertebrae

These spinal *segmentation-fusion defects* are characterized by abnormal development of half of the vertebral

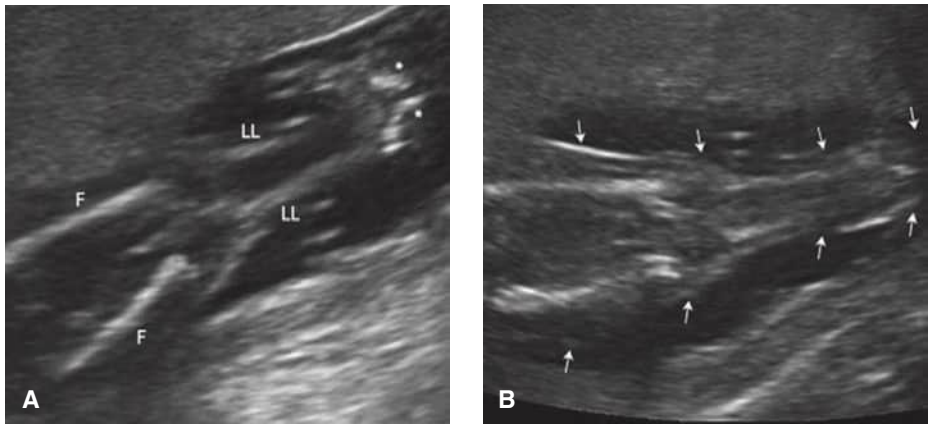


FIGURE 15-18 Sirenomelia. **A.** This single lower extremity contained two femur bones (*F*), two lower leg bones (*LL*), and a fused foot with toes pointing outward (*). **B.** Arrows show the soft tissue outline of the lower extremity. Amnionic fluid is visible only because the gestational age is 17 weeks' gestation. By 18 weeks, absence of kidneys and bladder resulted in anhydramnios. (Reproduced with permission from Melissa Salvie, RDMS.)

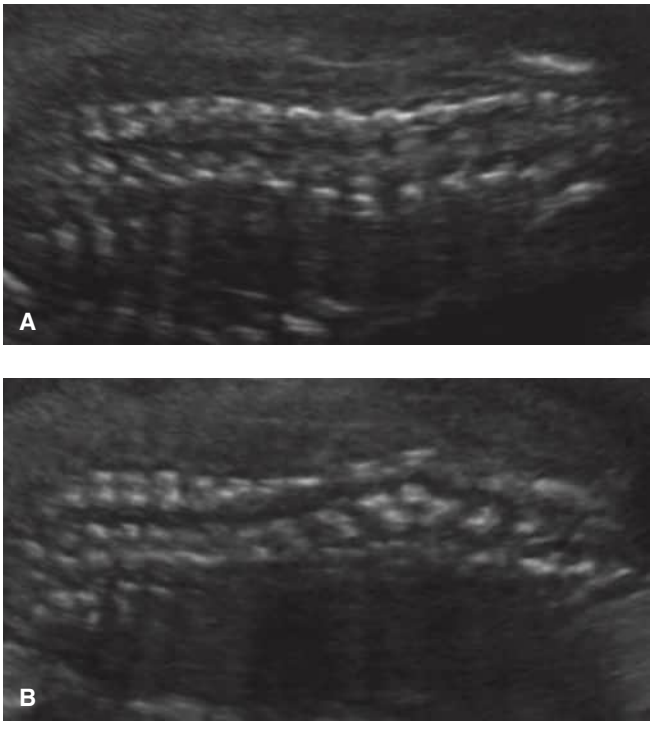


FIGURE 15-19 Hemivertebrae result in abnormal spinal curvature in these coronal images. (Reproduced with permission from Rose Muli, RDMS.)

body. Affected vertebrae are triangular and may be separate or fused to adjacent vertebral bodies. This leads to abnormal curvature of the spine such as scoliosis (Fig. 15-19). Prenatally diagnosed cases typically involve the thoraco–lumbar spine. Associated abnormalities are common, particularly skeletal, renal, and cardiac defects (Basude, 2015; Yulia, 2020). Hemivertebrae are also a component of several syndromes, including the VACTERL association.

HEAD, FACE, AND NECK

Craniofacial anatomy on the detailed anatomic survey may include cranial integrity and shape of the skull (Fig. 15-2A); images of the orbits, nose, and lips; views of the maxilla, mandible, hard palate, and tongue; images of the ears; and evaluation of the neck (Fig. 15-20). Of these structures, only the upper lip is a component of the standard examination. At Parkland Hospital, we include an image of the sagittal profile as part of our standard examination to help detect micrognathia prenatally.

When imaging the neck, particularly in the third trimester, identifying a nuchal cord is not uncommon (Fig. 15-21). This finding is not associated with adverse outcome, and we do not alter fetal surveillance if a nuchal cord is detected.

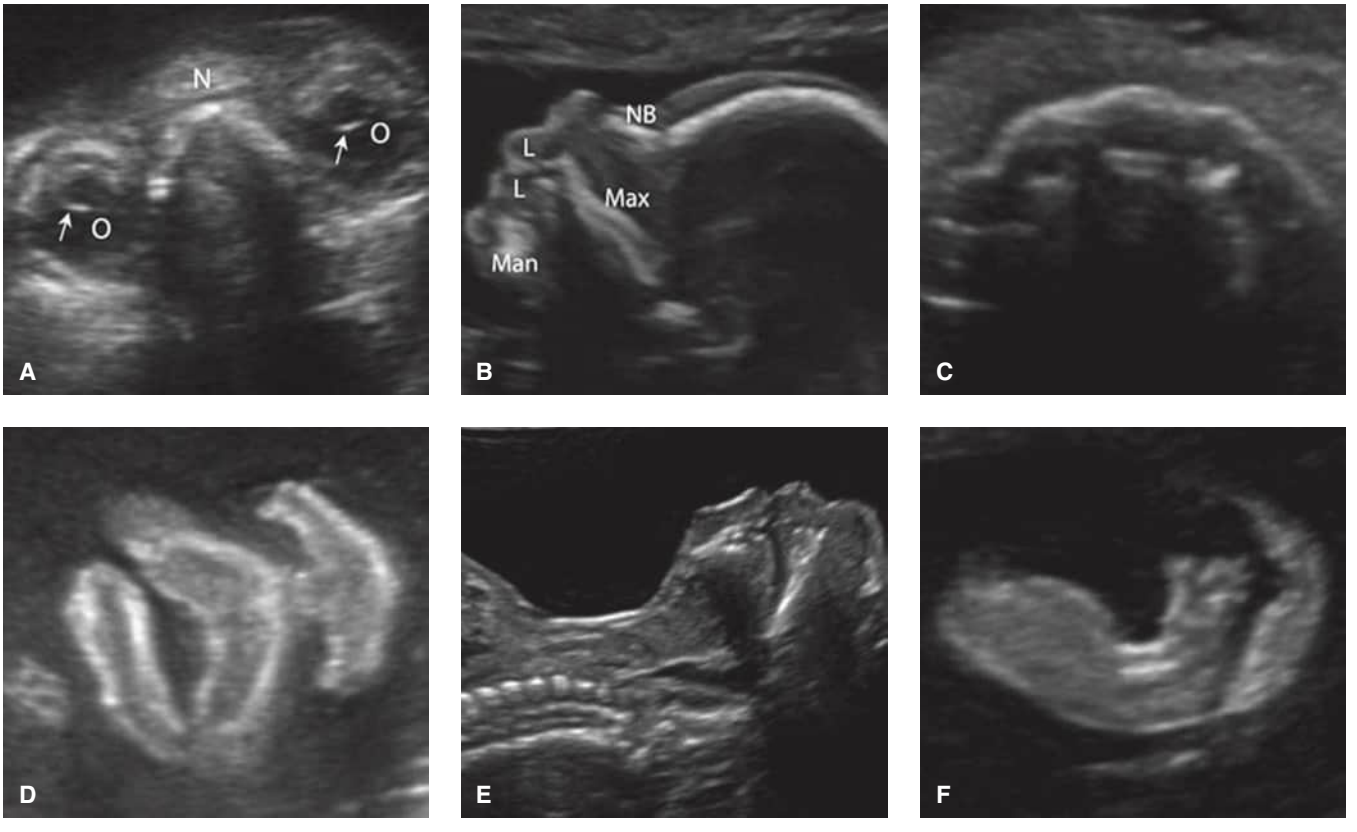


FIGURE 15-20 Normal craniofacial and neck anatomy. **A.** Transverse images of orbits (*O*) and nose (*N*). The small circle within each orbit is the lens. The distance between the orbits roughly approximates the width of each orbit. **B.** Sagittal view of the face, depicting the nasal bone (*NB*), lips (*L*), maxilla (*Max*), and mandible (*Man*). **C.** Transverse image of the alveolar ridge. **D.** Coronal view of the nose, upper lip, and lower lip. **E.** Sagittal image of the neck. **F.** Image of the ear. (Reproduced with permission from Devi Nanandhan, RDMS.)

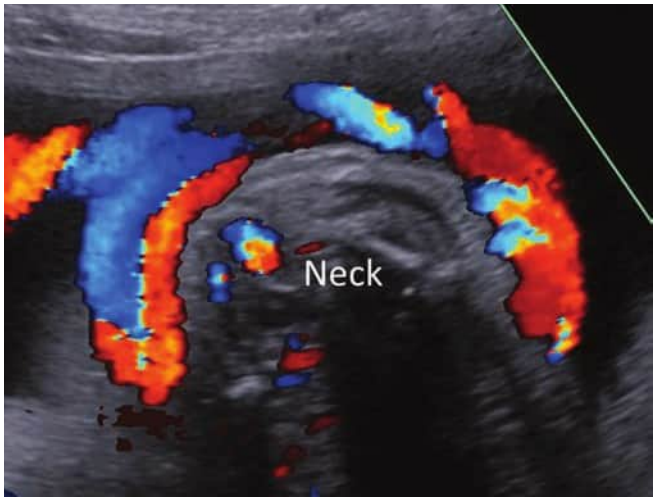


FIGURE 15-21 Nuchal cord incidentally noted with color Doppler in a transverse image of the fetal neck at 34 weeks' gestation.

■ Dolichocephaly and Brachycephaly

The *cephalic index* reflects the skull shape. It is measured by dividing the biparietal diameter by the occipitofrontal diameter. The cephalic index is normally 70 to 86 percent. It is smaller if the head shape is flattened—*dolichocephaly,* and larger if the shape is rounded—*brachycephaly.* In such cases, the head circumference measurement more reliably estimates gestational age than does the biparietal diameter (Fig. 15-22). These head shape variants may be normal or can be secondary to fetal position or oligohydramnios. Dolichocephaly can occur with neural-tube defects, and brachycephaly may be seen in fetuses with Down syndrome. A strawberry-shaped skull describes a pattern of angulation typical of trisomy 18 (Fig. 16-5, p. 312). With any abnormal skull shape, *craniosynostosis* is a consideration.

■ Abnormalities of Orbits and Nose

Subjectively, the distance in between the orbits is similar to the diameter of each orbit (see Fig. 15-20). The lens is often visible. Nomograms are available for the ocular diameter and for the interorbital and binocular distances (Appendix, p. 1240).

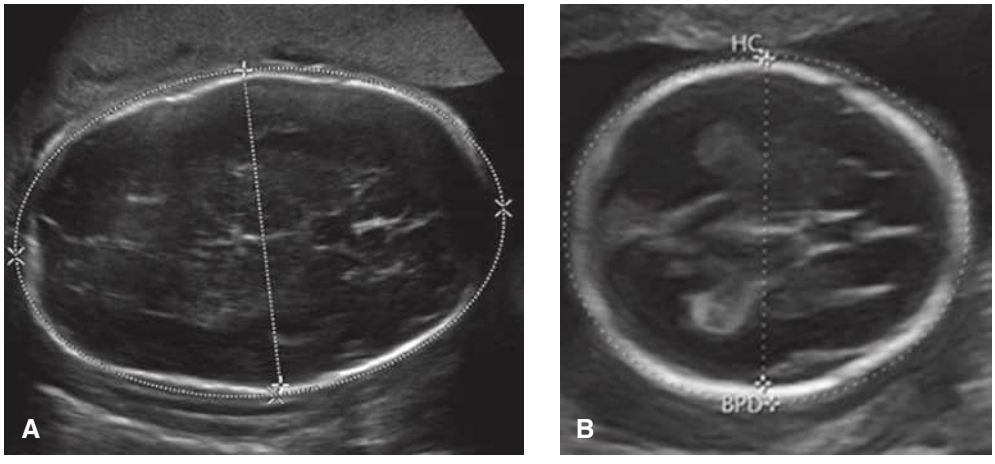


FIGURE 15-22 Transthalamic images demonstrating dolichocephaly **(A)** and brachycephaly **(B)**. The biparietal diameter (*BPD*) and head circumference (*HC*) are measured in each image.

Hypertelorism (Fig. 15-23) is a common finding in trisomy 18. Hypotelorism, with or without microphthalmia, may be found in the setting of holoprosencephaly. In its extreme form only a single orbit is visible—cyclopia. Other comorbid anomalies with holoprosencephaly include a single nostril—cebocephaly, or absence of the entire nose (arhinia) with proboscis (Fig. 15-24).

Nasal bone hypoplasia or sonographic absence is an aneuploidy marker that confers increased risk for fetal Down syndrome (Fig. 15-25). It is not a structural abnormality. Nasal bone measurement is part of the detailed ultrasound examination and is measured only between 15 and 22 weeks' gestation. The measurement is considered foreshortened if less than 2.5 mm or if more than 2 SD below the mean for gestational age (Chap. 17, p. 341). Hypoplasia of the nose is a different condition that can occur following warfarin exposure (Fig. 8-4, p. 156).

■ Facial Clefts

These are grouped into three main types. The first type, *cleft lip and palate*, always involves the lip, may also involve the hard palate, can be unilateral or bilateral, and has a birth prevalence that approximates 1 in 1000 (Cragan, 2009; Dolk, 2010). If isolated, the inheritance is multifactorial—with a recurrence risk of 3 to 5 percent for one prior affected child. If a cleft is visible in the upper lip, a transverse image at the level of the alveolar ridge may demonstrate that the defect also involves the primary palate (Fig. 15-26).

In one review of low-risk pregnancies, cleft lip was identified sonographically in only about half of cases (Maarse, 2010). Approximately 40 percent of those detected prenatally are associated with other anomalies or syndromes, and aneuploidy is common (Maarse, 2011; Offerdal, 2008). The rate of associated anomalies is highest for bilateral defects that involve the palate. In the Utah Birth Defect Network, aneuploidy was identified in 1 percent with cleft lip alone, 5 percent with unilateral cleft lip and palate, and 13 percent with bilateral cleft lip and palate (Walker, 2001).

The second type of cleft is *isolated cleft palate.* It begins at the uvula, may involve the soft palate, and occasionally involves the hard palate—but does not involve the lip. The birth prevalence approximates 1 in 2000 (Dolk, 2010). Identification of an isolated cleft palate has been described using detailed sonography, and particularly with three-dimensional imaging, but detection is not feasible in all cases (Ramos, 2010; Wilhelm, 2010). Isolated cleft palate is not expected to be visualized during a standard ultrasound examination (Maarse, 2011; Offerdal, 2008).

A third type of cleft is *median cleft lip,* which may

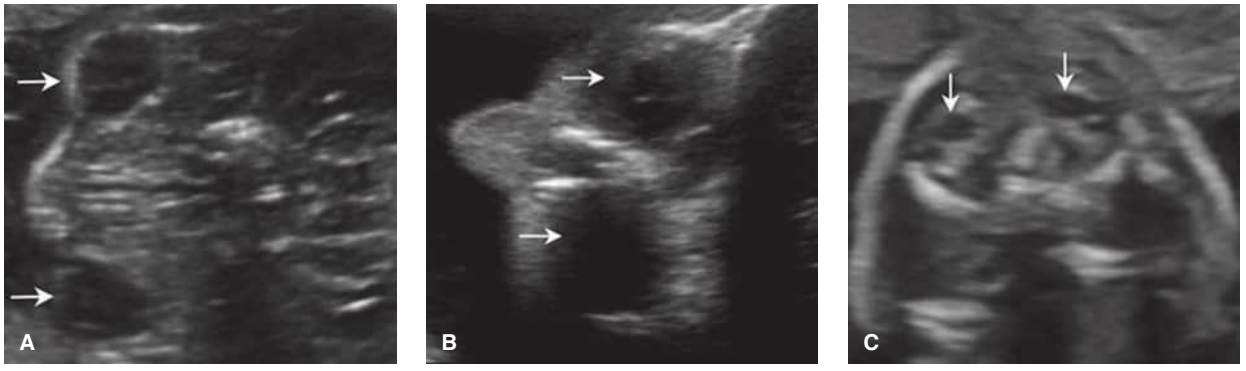


FIGURE 15-23 Abnormalities of the orbits. **A.** Hypertelorism in a fetus with trisomy 18. **B.** Hypotelorism in a fetus with trisomy 13 and alobar holoprosencephaly. **C.** Microphthalmia. This fetus also had trisomy 13. Arrows point to the eyes.

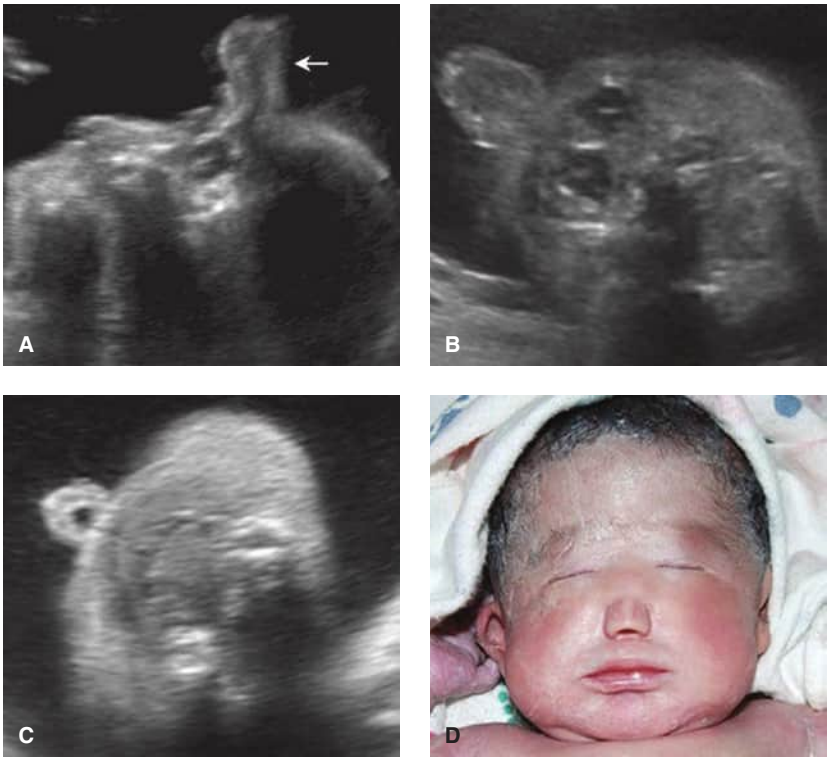


FIGURE 15-24 Nasal abnormalities associated with holoprosencephaly. **A.** Sagittal profile depicting a proboscis (*arrow*) protruding from the forehead. **B.** Coronal image demonstrating the proboscis along with hypotelorism and absence of the nose. **C.** Coronal image demonstrating a single nostril (cebocephaly). **D.** Photograph of a newborn with cebocephaly.

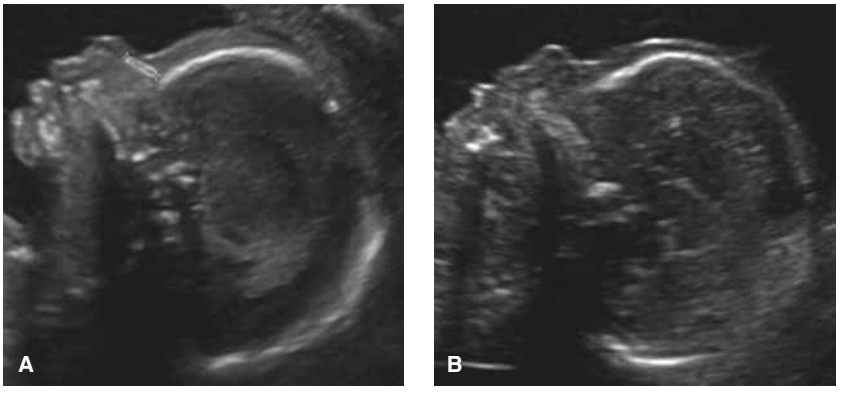


FIGURE 15-25 Nasal bone (and its absence). **A.** Sagittal image of the profile showing measurement of a normal nasal bone at 19 weeks. **B.** Fetus with trisomy 21, also at 19 weeks, with no visible nasal bone. (Reproduced with permission from Jason McWhirt, RDMS.)

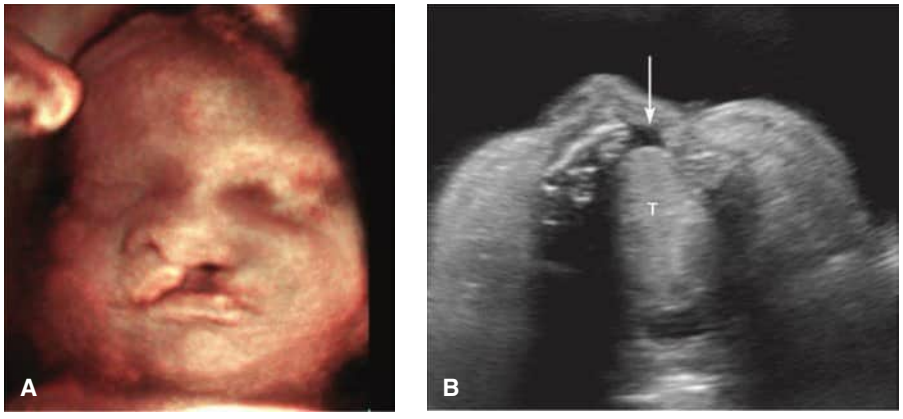


FIGURE 15-26 Cleft lip/palate. **A.** This fetus has a prominent unilateral (left-sided) cleft lip. **B.** Transverse view of the palate in the same fetus demonstrates a defect in the alveolar ridge (*arrow*). The tongue (*T*) is also visible.

be found in fetuses with holoprosencephaly, typically when hypotelorism is also present. Additionally, a median cleft may be associated with hypertelorism and frontonasal dysplasia, formerly called the *median cleft face syndrome*.

Micrognathia

The fetal profile can help identify cases of *micrognathia*—hypoplasia of the mandible, and *retrognathia*, which is recession of the mandible in relation to the maxilla (Fig. 15-27). To quantify micrognathia risk, a transverse image of the mandible can be used to calculate the jaw index, which is the anterior-posterior diameter of the mandible expressed as a percentage of the biparietal diameter (Paladini, 1999). Fetuses with micrognathia and retrognathia frequently have a posterior cleft palate and glossoptosis (recessed tongue)—a constellation of findings known as the Pierre Robin sequence. Micrognathia is also a feature of Treacher Collins syndrome, oral-facial-digital syndromes, trisomies 18 and 13, triploidy, and the 22 q11.2 deletion. Micrognathia may result in hydramnios and can cause airway obstruction at birth. Use of the *ex-utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT)* procedure for severe micrognathia is discussed in Chapter 19 (p. 379).

Micrognathia should not be confused with agnathia–otocephaly, a rare anomaly in which no mandible develops and the ears may fuse in the midline (Fig. 15-28). The latter confers an extremely poor prognosis and has been diagnosed as early as the late first trimester (Rodriguez, 2019).

Epignathus

This rare teratoma arises from the oral cavity or pharynx. It may grow outward or both outward and into the brain, the latter conferring an extremely poor prognosis (Fig. 15-29). If brain involvement is absent, an EXIT procedure, reviewed in Chapter 19 (p. 379), can help secure the airway at delivery (Chung, 2012).

Cystic Hygroma

This venolymphatic malformation is characterized by fluid-filled sacs that extend from the posterior neck (Fig. 15-30). Cystic hygromas may be diagnosed in the first trimester and vary widely in size. Impaired lymphatic drainage from the head into the jugular vein leads to an accumulation of fluid in jugular lymphatic sacs. The birth prevalence of cystic hygromas approximates 1 in 5000. However, reflecting the high in-utero lethality of the condition, the first-trimester incidence exceeds 1 in 300 (Malone, 2005).

Up to 70 percent of cystic hygromas are associated with aneuploidy. When cystic hygromas are diagnosed in the first trimester, trisomy 21 is the most common aneuploidy, followed by 45,X and trisomy 18 (Kharrat, 2006; Malone, 2005). First-trimester fetuses with cystic hygromas are five times more likely to be aneuploid than fetuses with a thickened nuchal translucency. When cystic hygromas are diagnosed in the second trimester, approximately 75 percent of aneuploid cases are 45,X—Turner syndrome (Johnson, 1993; Shulman, 1992).

Even in the absence of aneuploidy, cystic hygromas confer a significantly greater risk for other abnormalities, particularly flow-related cardiac defects. These include hypoplastic left heart and coarctation of the aorta (p. 292). Cystic hygromas may

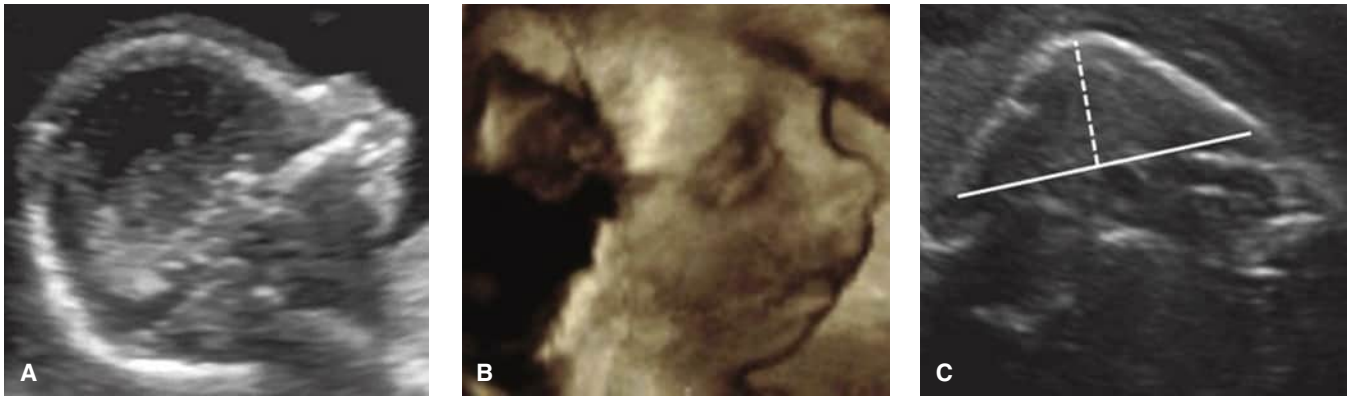


FIGURE 15-27 Micrognathia. **A.** Sagittal image of a fetus with severe micrognathia. **B.** 3-dimensional ultrasound rendering depicts the recessed chin and downslanting palpebral fissures. **C.** A transverse image of the mandible was used to calculate a jaw index for this fetus.

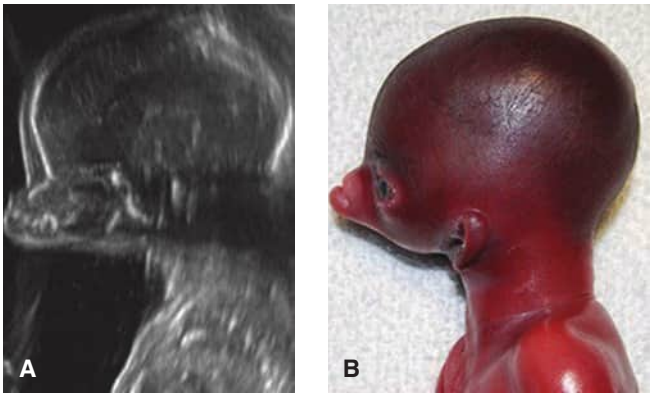


FIGURE 15-28 Agnathia-otocephaly, ultrasound **(A)** and postdelivery **(B)** images. With this rare, lethal anomaly the mandible fails to develop, and the ears are inferiorly displaced and may be fused in the midline.

also be part of a genetic syndrome such as *Noonan syndrome*, an autosomal dominant disorder that shares several features with 45,X. Noonan syndrome is characterized by short stature, lymphedema, high-arched palate, and often pulmonary valve stenosis.

Large cystic hygromas are usually associated with hydrops fetalis, rarely resolve, and carry a poor prognosis. Small hygromas may undergo spontaneous resolution, and provided that fetal karyotype and echocardiography results are normal, the prognosis *may* be good. The likelihood of a nonanomalous liveborn neonate with normal karyotype following identification of first-trimester hygroma approximates 1 in 6 (Kharrat, 2006; Malone, 2005).

THORAX

Thoracic anatomy imaged in the detailed anatomic survey may include the lungs, ribs, and diaphragm. The lungs should appear homogeneous and symmetric, each occupying approximately one third of the area in the four-chamber view of the heart (Fig. 15-31). The thoracic circumference is measured at the skin line in a transverse plane at the level of the four-chamber view. If pulmonary hypoplasia is suspected secondary to a small thorax, such as with a severe skeletal dysplasia, comparison with a reference table may be helpful (Appendix, p. 1238). Representative images of the diaphragm are usually obtained in the parasagittal or coronal plane. The diaphragm appears as a hypoechoic line between the lungs and liver. Thoracic abnormalities may appear sonographically as cystic or solid space-occupying lesions or as an effusion outlining the

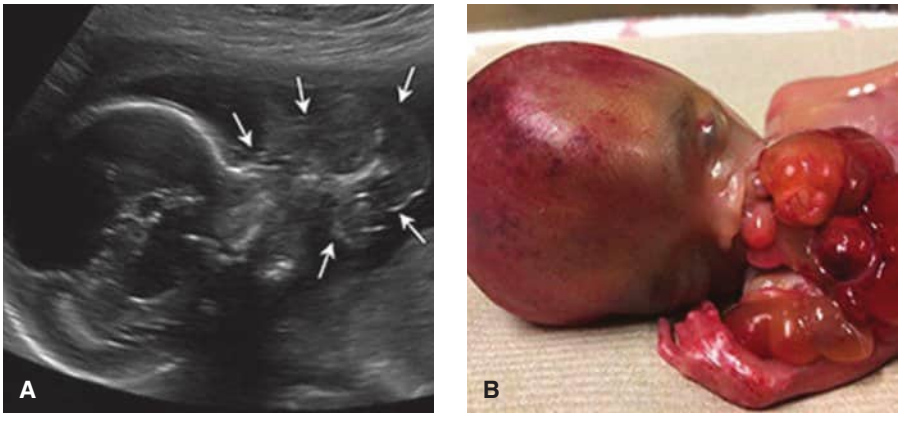


FIGURE 15-29 Epignathus, ultrasound **(A)** and postdelivery **(B)** images. This teratoma arises from the oral cavity or pharynx and may grow outward from the mouth or both outward and into the brain, as in this fetus (*arrowhead*). Arrows depict the external extent of the mass. (Reproduced with permission from Halima Abdirahman, RDMS.)

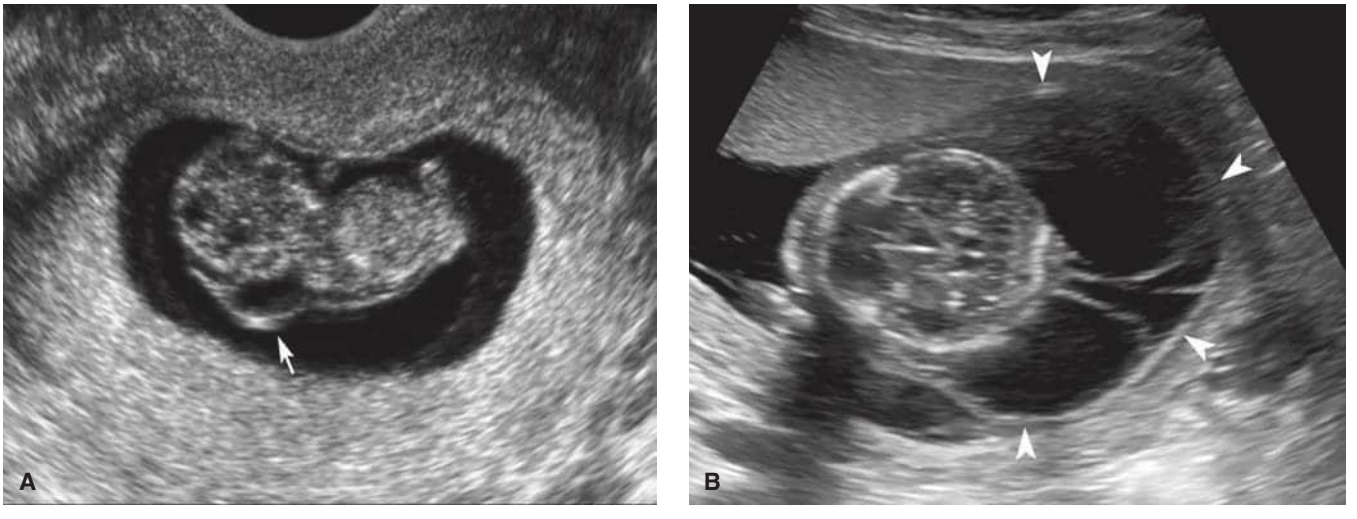


FIGURE 15-30 Cystic hygromas. **A.** This 9-week fetus with a cystic hygroma (*arrow*) was later found to have Noonan syndrome. **B.** Massive multiseptated hygromas (*arrowheads*) in the setting of hydrops fetalis at 15 weeks' gestation.

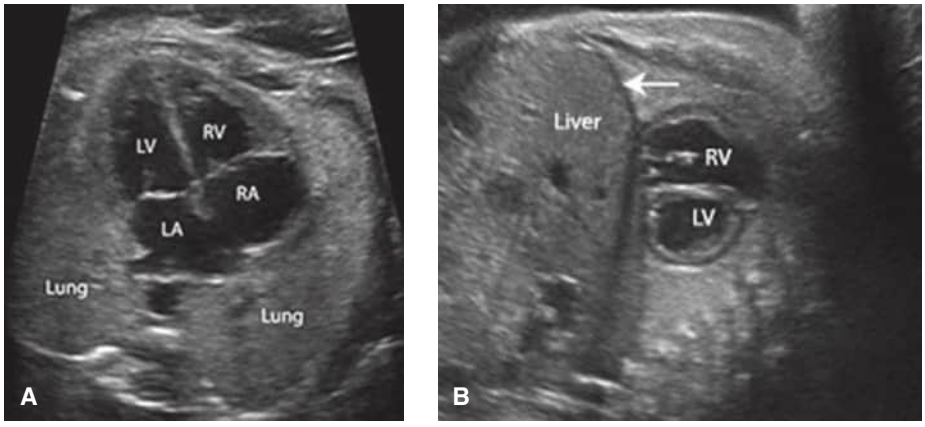


FIGURE 15-31 Normal thoracic anatomy. **A.** The lungs each occupy one third of the area in the four-chamber view of the heart. **B.** The diaphragm (*arrow*) appears as a hypoechoic line in between the lung and liver in this parasagittal view. LA = left atrium; LV = left ventricle; RA = right atrium; RV = right ventricle.

heart or lung(s). Fetal therapy for thoracic abnormalities is discussed in Chapter 19 (p. 376).

■ Diaphragmatic Hernia

This is a defect in the diaphragm through which abdominal organs herniate into the thorax. It is left-sided in approximately 75 percent of cases, right-sided in 20 percent, and bilateral in 5 percent (Gallot, 2007). The prevalence of congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH) is 1 in 3000 to 5000 births (Cragan, 2009; Dolk, 2010). Associated anomalies and aneuploidy are found in 40 percent of cases (Gallot, 2007; Stege, 2003). In population-based series, an associated abnormality reduces the overall survival rate of neonates with CDH from approximately 50 percent to about 20 percent (Colvin, 2005; Gallot, 2007). Without other abnormalities, the major causes of neonatal mortality are pulmonary hypoplasia and pulmonary hypertension.

Left-sided CDH typically causes dextroposition of the heart to the right side of the thorax, such that the cardiac axis points toward the midline (Fig. 15-32). Accompanying findings include the stomach bubble or bowel peristalsis in the chest and a wedge-shaped mass—the liver—located anteriorly in the left hemithorax. Liver herniation complicates at least 50 percent of cases and is associated with a 30-percent reduction in the survival rate (Mullassery, 2010). With large lesions, impaired swallowing and mediastinal shift may result in hydramnios and hydrops, respectively.

An effort to reduce neonatal mortality rates and need for extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) has focused on prognostic indicators such as the sonographic lung-to-head ratio, described in Chapter 19 (p. 375). MR imaging parameters include measurements of lung volume and degree of liver herniation (Dutemeyer, 2020; Oluyomi-Obi, 2017; Worley, 2009).

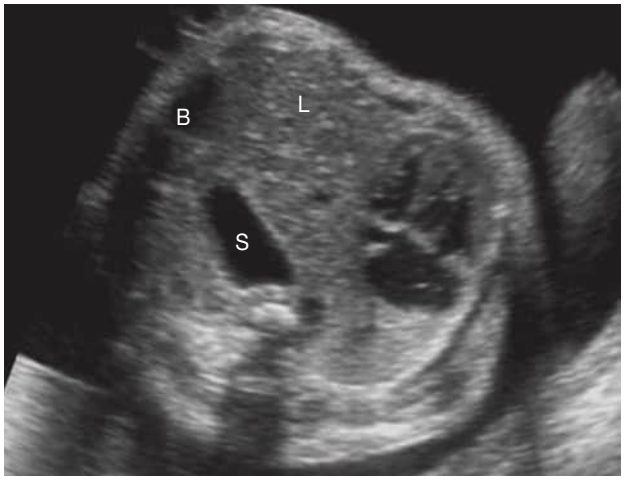


FIGURE 15-32 Congenital diaphragmatic hernia. In this transverse view of the thorax, the heart is shifted to the right side of the chest by a left-sided diaphragmatic hernia containing stomach (*S*), liver (*L*), and bowel (*B*).

■ Congenital Cystic Adenomatoid Malformation

This abnormality represents a hamartomatous overgrowth of terminal bronchioles that communicates with the tracheobronchial tree. It is also called *congenital pulmonary airway malformation (CPAM),* based on an understanding that not all histopathological types are *cystic* or *adenomatoid* (Azizkhan, 2008; Stocker, 1977 2002). The estimated prevalence is 1 in 6000 to 8000 births, and this rate is rising because of improved sonographic detection of milder cases (Burge, 2010; Duncombe, 2002; Lau, 2017).

With ultrasound, a congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation (CCAM) is as a well-circumscribed mass that may appear solid and echogenic or may have one or multiple variably sized cysts (Fig. 15-33). It usually involves one lobe, receives its blood supply from the pulmonary artery, and has pulmonary venous drainage. Lesions with cysts ≥5 mm are generally termed *macrocystic*, and lesions that appear solid or have cysts <5 mm are *microcystic* (Adzick, 1985).

In a review of 645 CCAM cases, the neonatal survival rate exceeded 95 percent, and 30 percent of cases demonstrated apparent prenatal resolution. The other 5 percent of cases—typically very large lesions with associated mediastinal shift—were complicated by hydrops and had poor prognosis (Cavoretto, 2008). Microcystic CCAMs usually become less conspicuous with advancing gestation, because in addition to occupying less of the thorax, their echogenicity more closely resembles surrounding lung tissue. However, a subset of CCAMs may demonstrate rapid growth between 18 and 26 weeks' gestation. Corticosteroid therapy has been used for large microcystic lesions to forestall growth and potentially ameliorate hydrops (Curran, 2010; Peranteau, 2016). If a large dominant cyst is present, thoracoamnionic shunt placement may lead to hydrops resolution. Fetal therapy for CCAM is discussed in Chapter 19 (p. 370).

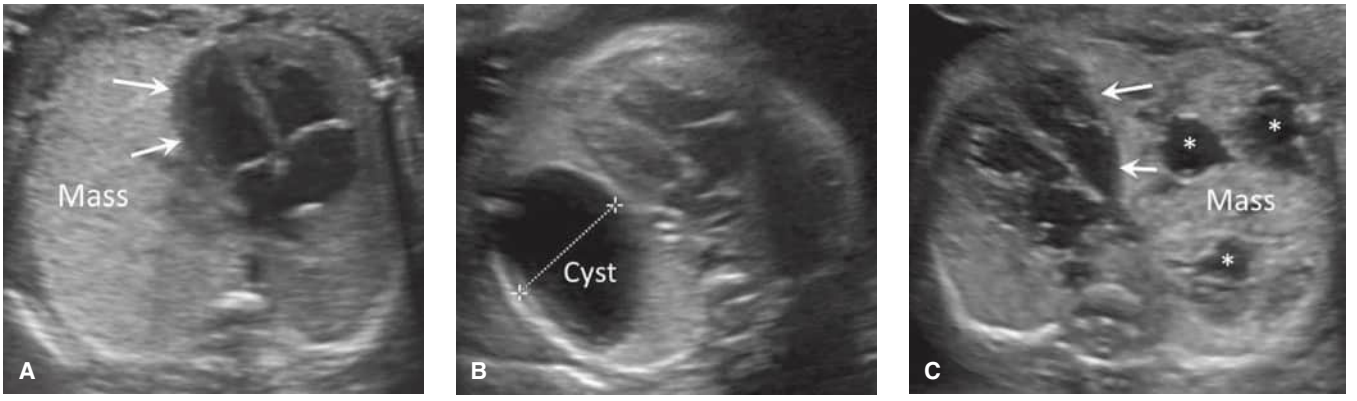


FIGURE 15-33 Congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation (CCAM). **A.** This left-sided microcystic CCAM is an echogenic mass that fills the left hemithorax and causes mediastinal shift, which displaces the heart (*arrows*) to the right side of the chest. **B.** This left-sided macrocystic CCAM contains a cyst as large as the heart and also displaces the heart to the right. **C.** This right-sided CCAM contains multiple cysts of varying size (*) and displaces the heart farther to the left side of the chest (*arrows*).

Pulmonary Sequestration

Also called a *bronchopulmonary sequestration*, this abnormality is an accessory lung bud "sequestered" from the tracheobronchial tree. It is nonfunctioning lung tissue. Most cases diagnosed prenatally are *extralobar,* which means they are enveloped in their own pleura. Overall, however, most sequestrations present in adulthood and are *intralobar*—within the pleura of another lobe. Extralobar pulmonary sequestration is considered significantly less common than CCAM, and no precise prevalence has been reported. Lesions have a left-sided predominance and most often involve the left lower lobe. Associated anomalies have been reported in approximately 10 percent of cases (Yildirim, 2008).

Sonographically, pulmonary sequestration presents as a homogeneous, echogenic thoracic mass (Fig. 15-34A). Thus, it may resemble a microcystic CCAM. However, the blood supply is from the systemic circulation—from the aorta—rather than the pulmonary artery (Fig. 15-34B). Approximately 10 to 20 percent are located below the diaphragm. A small percentage of fetuses with pulmonary sequestration develop a large ipsilateral pleural effusion, and without treatment, this may result in pulmonary hypoplasia or hydrops (Fig. 15-34C). Treatment with thoracoamnionic shunting is discussed in Chapter 19 (p. 376). Hydrops may also result from mediastinal shift or high-output cardiac failure due to the left-to-right shunt imposed by the mass. In the absence of a pleural effusion, the reported survival rate exceeds 95 percent, and 40 percent of cases demonstrate apparent prenatal resolution (Cavoretto, 2008).

Congenital High Airway Obstruction Sequence

This rare anomaly usually results from laryngeal or tracheal atresia. The normal egress of lung fluid is obstructed, and the tracheobronchial tree and lungs become massively distended. Sonographically, the lungs are brightly echogenic, the bronchi are dilated, the diaphragm is flattened or everted, and the heart is compressed (Fig. 15-35). Impaired venous return leads to development of ascites, typically followed by hydrops. In one review of 118 cases, associated anomalies were identified in more than 50 percent (Sanford, 2012). Congenital high airway obstruction sequence (CHAOS) is a feature of the autosomal recessive *Fraser syndrome* and has been associated with the 22q11.2 deletion syndrome. In some cases, the obstructed airway spontaneously perforates, which potentially confers a better prognosis. The EXIT procedure has significantly improved outcome in selected cases.

HEART

Cardiac malformations are the most common class of congenital anomalies. Their overall prevalence is 8 cases in 1000 births (Cragan, 2009). Almost 90 percent of cardiac defects are multifactorial or polygenic in origin, another 1 to 2 percent result from a single-gene disorder or gene-deletion syndrome, and 1 to 2 percent may occur from exposure to a teratogen such as maternal diabetes or isotretinoin. Based on data from population-based registries, approximately 1 in 8 liveborn and stillborn neonates with a congenital heart defect has a chromosomal abnormality (Dolk, 2010; Hartman, 2011). Trisomy 21 accounts for most of these cases, followed by trisomy 18, 22q11.2 deletion, trisomy 13, and monosomy X (Hartman, 2011). Approximately 50 to 70 percent of aneuploid fetuses with cardiac anomalies are also found to have noncardiac abnormalities.

Traditionally, congenital cardiac anomalies have been more challenging to detect than anomalies of other organ systems. Recent series suggest that standard ultrasound may identify 50 to 60 percent of those with major cardiac anomalies before 22 weeks' gestation (Byrne, 2020; Sun, 2018). Prenatal detection may improve neonatal survival, particularly for *ductal-dependent* lesions, that is, those requiring prostaglandin infusion after birth to keep the ductus arteriosus open (Franklin, 2002; Mahle, 2001; Tworetzky, 2001).

Standard Cardiac Examination

Standard cardiac assessment includes a four-chamber view, evaluation of rate and rhythm, evaluation of the left and right ventricular outflow tracts, and when feasible, documentation of the 3-vessel view and 3-vessel trachea view (Figs. 15-36 and

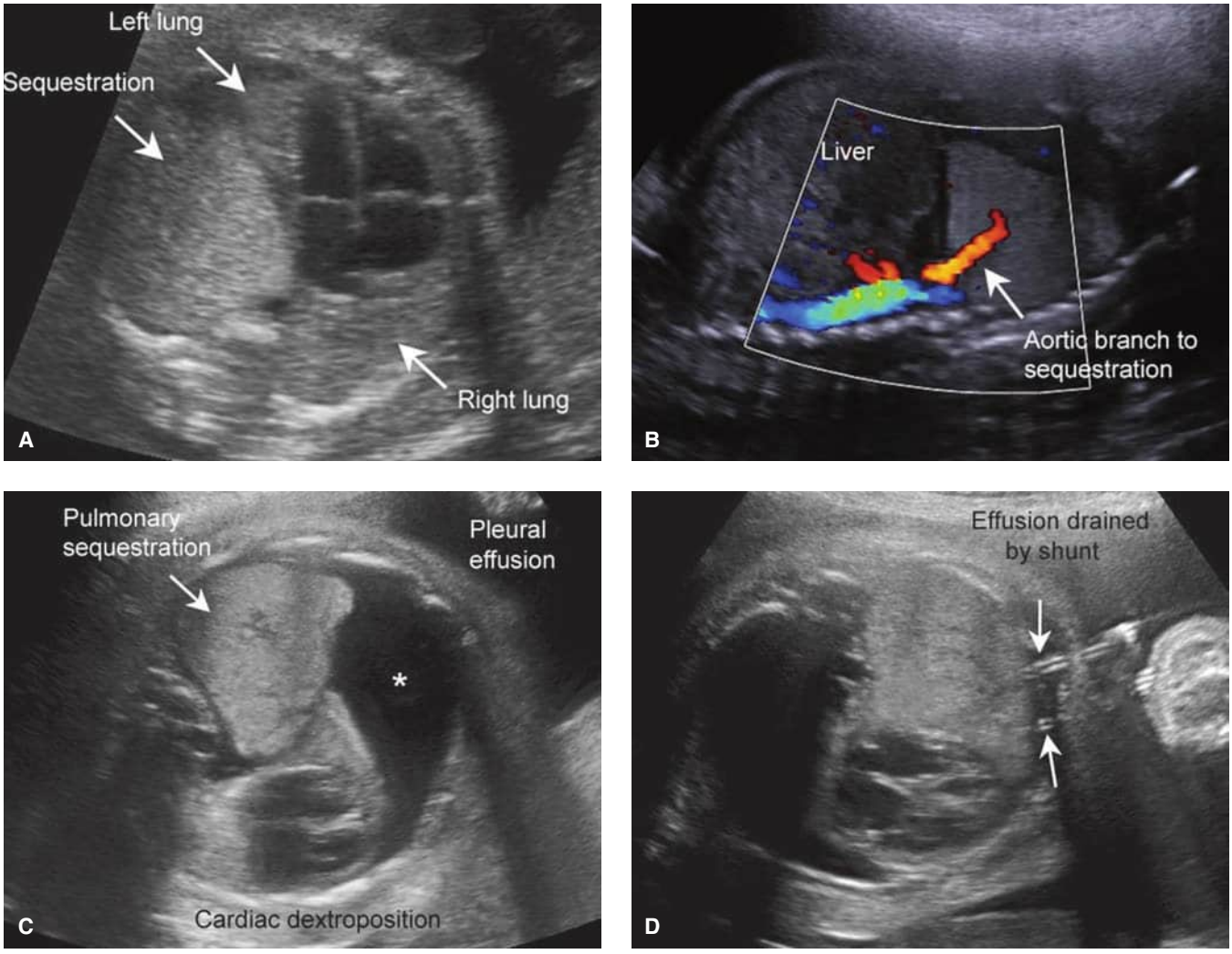


FIGURE 15-34 Pulmonary sequestration. **A.** Transverse image of the thorax depicts a left lower lobe pulmonary sequestration (*PS*) in this 25-week fetus. **B.** Sagittal image showing that blood supply to the mass is from a branch of the abdominal aorta, which confirms the diagnosis. **C.** Over the next 3 weeks, a large ipsilateral pleural effusion develops (*asterisk*), resulting in mediastinal shift and dextroposition of the heart to the far-right thorax. **D.** After placement of a double-pigtail shunt through the chest wall, which drains the effusion into the amniotic fluid, the lung significantly reexpanded. Arrows point to coils of the pigtail shunt. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Elaine Duryea.)

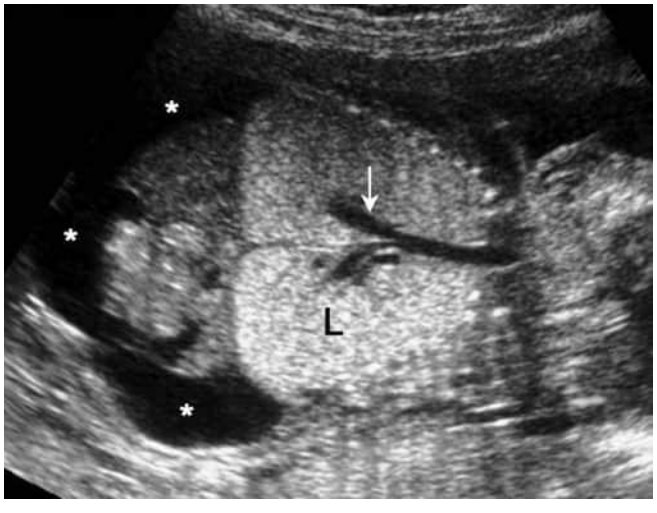


FIGURE 15-35 Congenital high airway obstruction sequence (CHAOS). The lungs (*L*) appear brightly echogenic, and the bronchi (*arrow*) are dilated with fluid. Flattening and eversion of the diaphragm is common, as is ascites (*asterisks*).

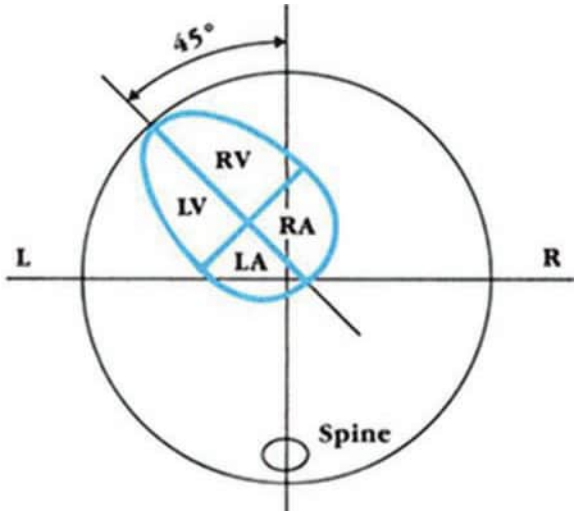


FIGURE 15-36 Diagram showing measurement of cardiac axis from the four-chamber view. LA = left atrium; LV = left ventricle; RA = right atrium; RV = right ventricle.

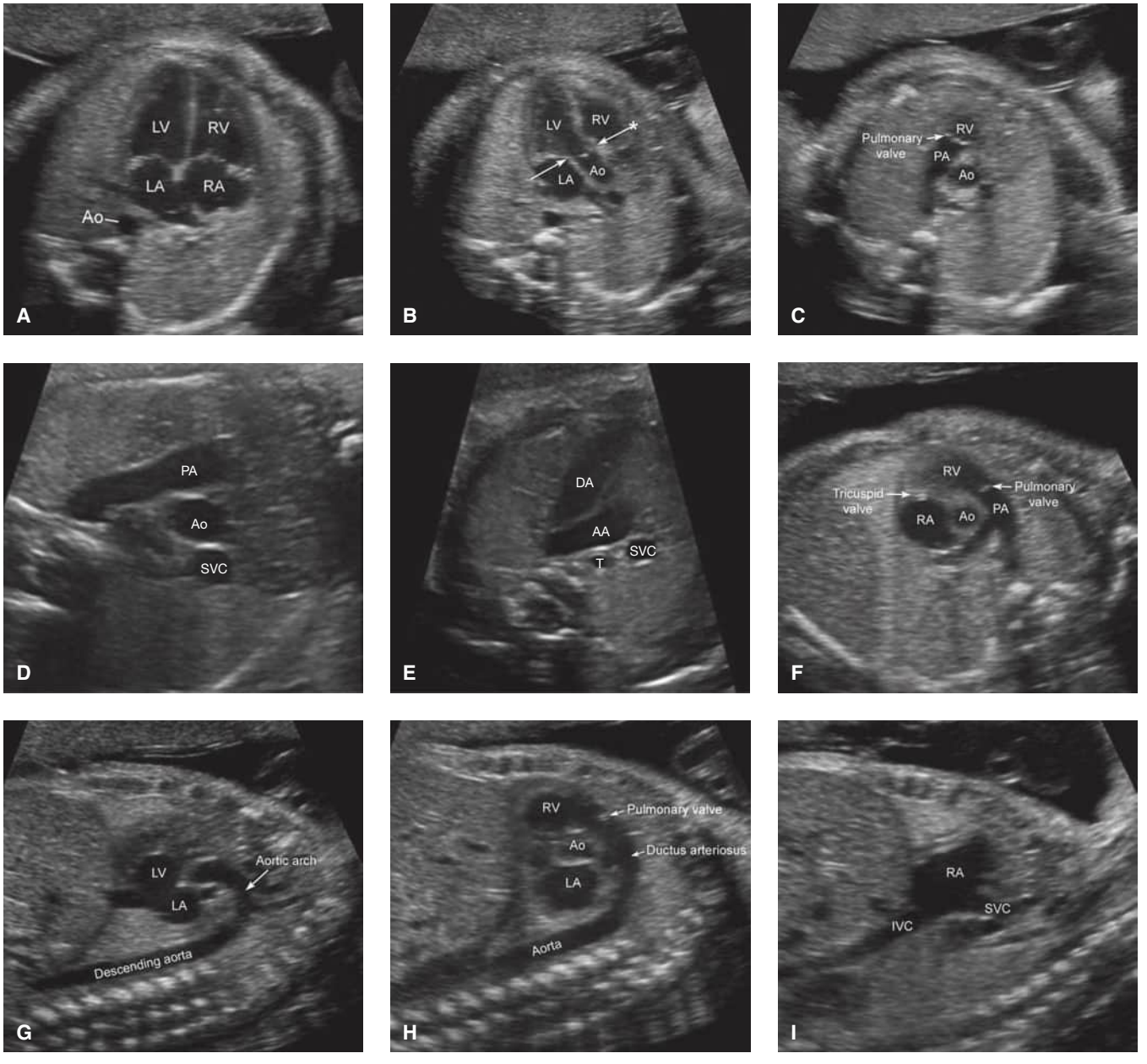


FIGURE 15-37 Standard and detailed examination cardiac views. **A.** Four-chamber view. **B.** Left ventricular outflow tract view. Arrow depicts mitral valve becoming the posterior wall of the aorta. The arrow with asterisk marks the interventricular septum becoming the anterior aortic wall. **C.** Right ventricular outflow tract view. **D.** Three-vessel view. **E.** Three-vessel trachea view **F.** High short-axis view (outflow tracts). **G.** Aortic arch view. **H.** Ductal arch view. **I.** Superior and inferior vena cavae views. AA = aortic arch; Ao = aorta; DA = ductal arch; IVC = inferior vena cava; LA = left atrium; LV = left ventricle; PA = pulmonary artery; RA = right atrium; RV = right ventricle; SVC = superior vena cava; T = trachea.

15-37). It is hoped that examination of the cardiac outflow tracts and 3-vessel views will improve detection of outflow tract abnormalities that may have a normal-appearing four-chamber view, such as tetralogy of Fallot and transposition of the great arteries. Centers with expertise have reported at least 90 percent detection of such anomalies with incorporation of these views (Brandt, 2015; Palatnik, 2016).

The *four-chamber view* is a transverse image of the fetal thorax at a level immediately above the diaphragm. It allows evaluation of cardiac size, position in the thorax, cardiac axis, atria and ventricles, foramen ovale, atrial septum primum, interventricular septum, and atrioventricular valves (Fig. 15-37A). The left ventricle is apex-forming, and two pulmonary veins are often visible entering the left atrium. The atria and ventricles should be similar in size, and the apex of the heart should form a 45-degree angle with the left anterior chest wall (see Fig. 15-36). Abnormalities of cardiac axis are encountered in more than one third of fetuses with structural cardiac anomalies (Shipp, 1995; Crane, 1997; Sinkovskaya, 2015).

The *left ventricular outflow tract view* demonstrates that the ascending aorta arises entirely from the left ventricle. The interventricular septum is shown to be in continuity with the anterior wall of the aorta, and the mitral valve in continuity with the posterior wall of the aorta (Fig. 15-37B). Ventricular septal

defects and outflow tract abnormalities are often visible in this view.

The *right ventricular outflow tract view* shows the right ventricle giving rise to the main pulmonary artery, which subsequently branches into the right and left pulmonary arteries. (Fig. 15-37C,F). Together, the left and right outflow tract views demonstrate the normal perpendicular orientation of the aorta and pulmonary artery and the comparable size of these great arteries.

The *3-vessel view* (3VV) is a transverse image obtained just above the base of the heart. The three vessels line up in a row: an oblique view of the pulmonary artery, which should appear long and cylindrical; a cross-sectional image of the ascending aorta; and a cross-sectional image of the superior vena cava (SVC) (Fig. 15-37D). The pulmonary artery and aorta should be similar in diameter. The 3-vessel trachea view (3VTV) also is a transverse image but is obtained further cephalad. It includes the pulmonary artery giving rise to the ductus arteriosus as it makes a V-shape with the aortic arch, along with the SVC and the trachea (Fig. 15-37E). The 3VTV can be helpful for identifying aortic arch abnormalities, particularly ductal-dependent lesions.

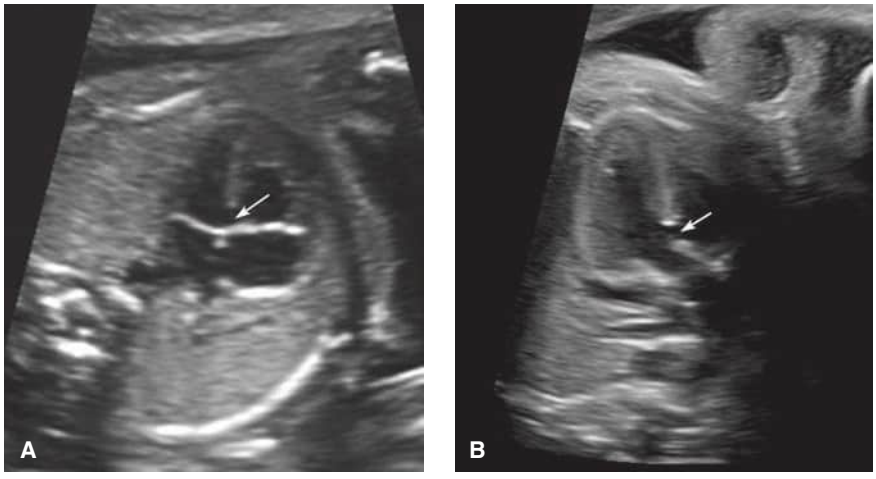


FIGURE 15-38 Ventricular septal defect. **A.** In this four-chamber view, a defect (*arrow*) is noted in the perimembranous portion of the interventricular septum. **B.** The left ventricular outflow tract view demonstrates a break in continuity (*arrow*) between the interventricular septum and the anterior wall of the aorta.

■ Specialized Cardiac Examination

The detailed ultrasound examination includes the five cardiac components of the standard examination plus the superior and inferior vena cavae and the aortic and ductal arch views (Fig. 15-37G–I). The examination also involves evaluation of the interventricular septum and cardiac situs, documentation of which may be facilitated with video clips.

Fetal echocardiography is a more extensive examination of cardiac structure and function designed to characterize abnormalities. In addition to grayscale imaging views, echocardiography includes evaluation of cardiac rate and rhythm, color Doppler ultrasound, pulsed-wave Doppler ultrasound, cardiac biometry, and if clinically relevant, cardiac function assessment (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2020b). These components are beyond the scope of this text. Echocardiography indications are discussed in Chapter 14 (p. 252). Selected cardiac anomalies are reviewed next.

Ventricular Septal Defect

This is the most common congenital cardiac anomaly. It is found in approximately 1 in 300 births (Bjornard, 2013; Cragan, 2009; Dolk, 2010). A defect may be appreciated in the perimembranous or muscular portion of the interventricular septum in the four-chamber view, and imaging of the left ventricular outflow tract may show discontinuity of the interventricular septum as it becomes the wall of the aorta (Fig. 15-38). Color Doppler may demonstrate flow across the defect. Genetic abnormalities are diagnosed with chromosomal microarray analysis in approximately 1 percent of isolated cases but found in at least 15 percent if other structural abnormalities also are present (Maya, 2020). More than a third of prenatally diagnosed ventricular septal defects close in utero, and another third close in the first year of life (Cho, 2017; Paladini, 2002; Svirsky, 2019).

Endocardial Cushion Defect

This is also called an *atrioventricular (AV) septal defect* or *AV canal defect*. It has a birth prevalence of approximately 1 in 2500 and is associated with trisomy 21 in more than half of cases (Christensen, 2013; Cragan, 2009; Dolk, 2010). The endocardial cushions are the crux of the heart, and defects jointly involve the atrial septum primum, interventricular septum, and medial leaflets of the mitral and tricuspid valves (Fig. 15-39).

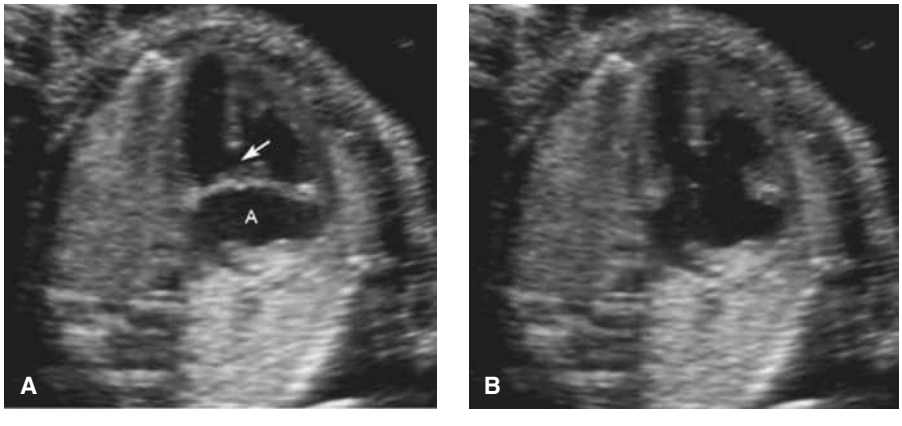


FIGURE 15-39 Endocardial cushion defect. **A.** During ventricular systole, the lateral leaflets of the mitral and tricuspid valves come together in the midline. But the atrioventricular valve plane is abnormal, a common atrium (*A*) is observed, and there is a visible defect (*arrow*) in the interventricular septum. **B.** During diastolic filling, opening of the atrioventricular valves more clearly demonstrates the absence of their medial leaflets.

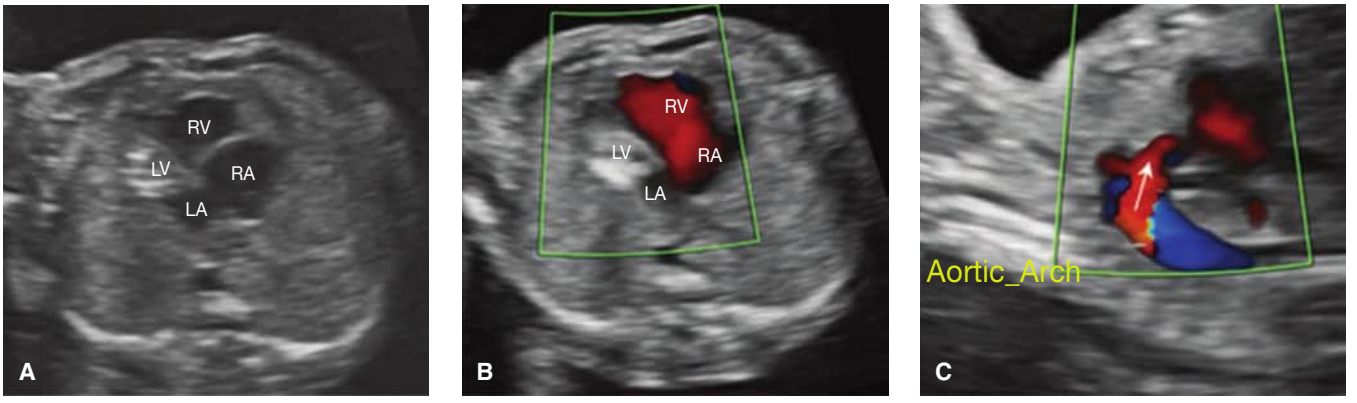


FIGURE 15-40 Hypoplastic left heart syndrome. **A.** In this four-chamber view, the left ventricle appears "filled in" and echogenic, due to endocardial fibroelastosis. **B.** Color Doppler depicts only flow from the right atrium into the right ventricle, and no left ventricular filling is visible. **C.** Color Doppler shows reversal of flow in the aortic arch (*arrow*), which is perfused retrograde via the ductus arteriosus. LA = left atrium; LV = left ventricle; RA = right atrium; RV = right ventricle.

The majority of defects are balanced–with ventricles comparable in size. Some are *unbalanced* however, with one side of the heart significantly smaller than the other. The endocardial cushion defect is considered *partial* if there is absence of the atrial septum primum and a more subtle AV valve plane abnormality, with no ventricular septal defect.

Endocardial cushion defects are a common finding in *heterotaxy*, also known as *cardiosplenic* or *isomerism syndromes*. Heterotaxy implies that thoraco-abdominal organs normally on one side of the body are on an incorrect side, on both sides, or absent, as in polysplenia or asplenia. Complex cardiac abnormalities are a common feature, particularly endocardial cushion defects. In a review of 632 pregnancies with fetal heterotaxy, an endocardial cushion defect was present in 60 percent (Buca, 2018). These endocardial cushion defects are a particularly at-risk group because of their association with third-degree heart block, which confers a poor prognosis.

Hypoplastic Left Heart Syndrome

This anomaly is found in approximately 1 in 4000 births (Bjornard, 2013; Cragan, 2009; Dolk, 2010;). During second-trimester ultrasound examination, the left ventricle may be so small that a chamber is difficult to appreciate (Fig. 15-40). Alternately, the left ventricle may be normal in size or dilated but have severely decreased contractility and an echogenic inner wall due to *endocardial fibroelastosis*. There may be no visible left ventricular inflow or outflow, and reversal of flow may be documented in the aortic arch in the 3-vessel trachea view. As gestation advances, the left ventricle and aorta become progressively smaller. Prenatal detection is nearly 90 percent in population-based registries.

Hypoplastic left heart syndrome is a ductal-dependent lesion for which neonatal administration of prostaglandin therapy is essential. Postnatal treatment consists of a three-staged palliative repair—*single ventricle palliation,* or cardiac transplantation. Rates of survival to adulthood may reach 70 percent (Feinstein, 2012). However, morbidity is high, and developmental delays are common (Lloyd, 2017; Paladini, 2017; Wilson, 2018). Fetal therapy for this condition is discussed in Chapter 19 (p. 378).

Coarctation of the Aorta

Coarctation refers to narrowing of the aortic arch. The birth prevalence approximates 1 in 2500 (Bjornard, 2013). Usually, the narrowing is focal and found just distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery at the aortic isthmus. Alternatively, a long segment of the aorta may be affected. Coarctation may be isolated or associated with other cardiac anomalies, such as hypoplastic left heart syndrome, unbalanced endocardial cushion defect, or double-outlet right ventricle. The most common sonographic finding is disproportion in ventricular size, with the left ventricle smaller than the right. However, only one third with this finding have coarctation (Ghi, 2018; van Nisselrooij, 2018). Other findings include narrowing of the aortic arch in the 3-vessel trachea view or narrowing of the isthmus in the aortic arch view–which may be challenging to image. Coarctation is associated with Turner syndrome (45,X), with the 22q11.2 deletion, and with autosomal trisomies.

Ebstein Anomaly

This rare anomaly is characterized by apical displacement of the tricuspid valve, such that the septal and posterior valve leaflets of the tricuspid valve attach closer to the cardiac apex (Fig. 15-41). The birth prevalence is approximately 1 in 20,000 (Boyle, 2017). Fetuses with Ebstein anomaly develop varying degrees of tricuspid regurgitation. In severe cases, right atrium becomes markedly dilated, and the fetus may develop cardiomegaly and hydrops. For many years, there was concern that lithium exposure predisposed to Ebstein anomaly. However, as discussed in Chapter 8 (p. 154), the absolute attributable risk is likely well below 1 percent.

Tetralogy of Fallot

This anomaly occurs in approximately 1 in 3000 births (Cragan, 2009; Dolk, 2010; Nelson, 2016). It includes a ventricular septal defect; an overriding aorta; a pulmonary valve or pulmonary artery abnormality, and right ventricular hypertrophy (Fig. 15-42). The last does not usually manifest before birth. Due to the location of the ventricular septal defect, the four-chamber view may appear normal.

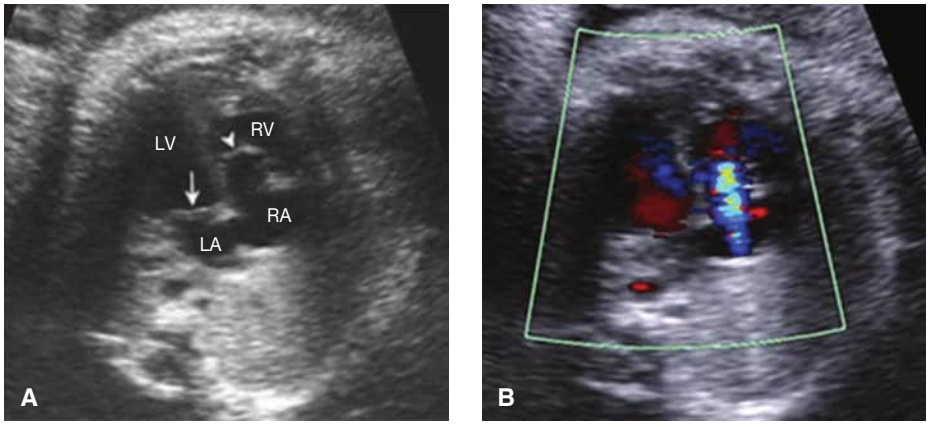


FIGURE 15-41 Ebstein anomaly. **A.** In this four-chamber view, the tricuspid valve's septal leaflet attaches closer to the cardiac apex (*arrowhead*) than the corresponding mitral valve leaflet (*arrow*). **B.** The color Doppler blue jet reflects tricuspid regurgitation. LA = left atrium; LV = left ventricle; RA = right atrium; RV = right ventricle.

The pulmonary artery abnormality is pulmonary stenosis in 60 percent of cases, pulmonary atresia in slightly more than 25 percent, and absent pulmonary valve in 10 to 15 percent (Zhao, 2016). Absence of the pulmonary valve leads to marked enlargement of the pulmonary artery and poses a risk for hydrops. The enlarged pulmonary artery can also compress the trachea and cause tracheomalacia.

Chromosomal abnormalities are identified in approximately one third of fetuses with tetralogy of Fallot. Of these, 22q11.2 deletions compose 15 to 20 percent, and autosomal trisomies constitute 10 percent (Zhao, 2016).

D-Transposition of the Great Arteries

This anomaly is characterized by outflow tracts that arise in parallel from the ventricles. The right ventricle gives rise to the aorta, and the left ventricle to the pulmonary artery (Fig. 15-43). Thus, there is *ventriculo-arterial discordance*. The birth prevalence approximates 1 in 4000 (Bjornard, 2013). The four-chamber view is often normal. Prenatal detection approximates 40 percent but is thought to improve with visualization of the outflow tracts (Ravi, 2018). Additionally, the 3-vessel views may demonstrate only two vessels, because the pulmonary artery is underneath the aorta.

D-transposition contrasts with *L-* or *corrected* transposition of the great arteries, in which there is atrioventricular discordance in addition to ventricular-arterial discordance. L-transposition is strongly associated with other cardiac anomalies and is much less likely to be diagnosed prenatally as an isolated finding.

Double-outlet Right Ventricle

With this anomaly, the majority of blood flow to both the pulmonary artery and the aorta comes from the right ventricle. Double-outlet right ventricle (DORV) is always associated with a ventricular septal defect. DORV has a spectrum of presentation. It is categorized according to the location of the ventricular septal defect and the relative proportion of blood flow from the right ventricle to the outflow tracts. The outflow tracts are often malposed, arising in parallel. The birth prevalence approximates 1 in 20,000 (Bjornard, 2013).

Truncus Arteriosus

This rare anomaly is characterized by a single, large outflow tract exiting the heart—a common arterial trunk—rather than a separate aorta and pulmonary artery. A prominent ventricular septal defect is usually identified, with an enlarged overriding outflow tract that gives rise to pulmonary arteries as well as head and neck vessels (Fig. 15-44). The differential diagnosis includes tetralogy of Fallot with pulmonary atresia. The birth prevalence of truncus arteriosus approximates 1 in 16,000 (Bjornard, 2013). In 1949, Collett and Edwards categorized four types of truncus arteriosus according to the origin of the

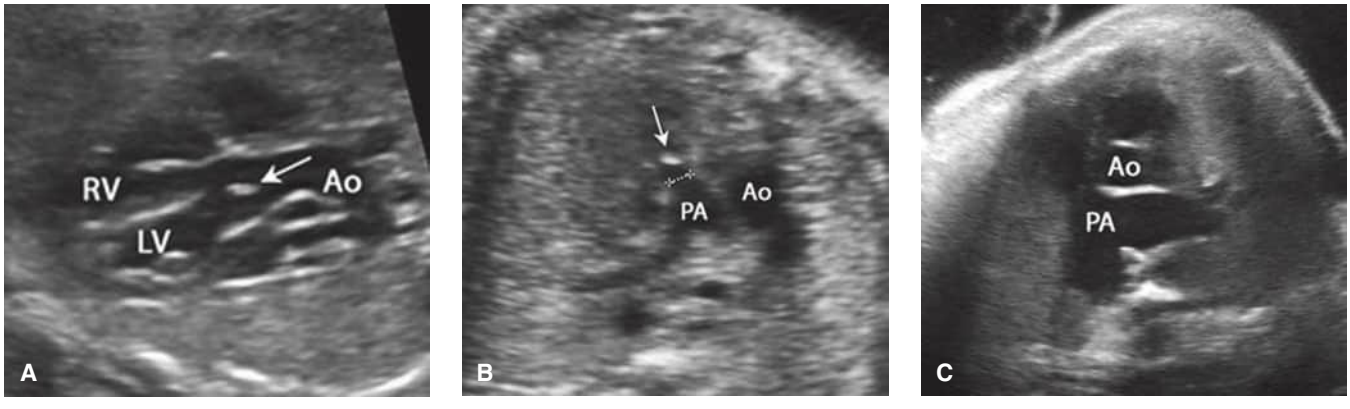


FIGURE 15-42 Tetralogy of Fallot. **A.** Left ventricular outflow tract view shows a ventricular septal defect with an overriding aorta. The arrow points to the aortic valve. **B.** Right ventricular outflow tract view demonstrating severe pulmonary artery stenosis. The arrow points to the pulmonary valve. **C.** In this fetus with tetralogy of Fallot with *absent pulmonary valve*, the pulmonary artery shows marked enlargement. Ao = aorta; LV = left ventricle; PA = pulmonary artery; RV = right ventricle.

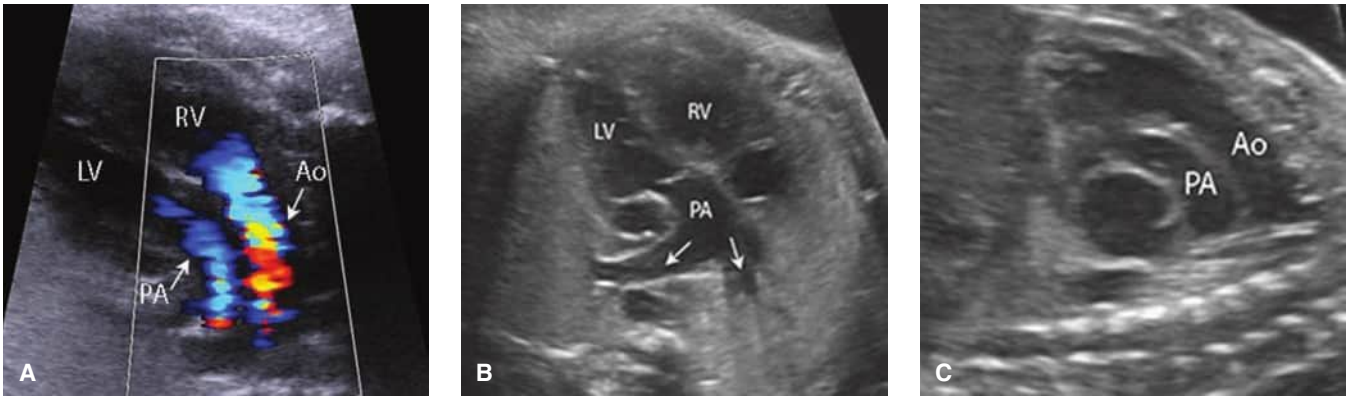


FIGURE 15-43 D-transposition of the great arteries. **A.** Transverse image with color Doppler depicting the outflow tracts arising in parallel. **B.** View of the left ventricle giving rise to the pulmonary artery, which subsequently branches (*arrows*). **C.** Sagittal image of the aorta arising anteriorly from the right ventricle and parallel to the pulmonary artery, which arises posteriorly. Ao = aorta; LV = left ventricle; PA = pulmonary artery; RV = right ventricle.

pulmonary arteries. Characterization of anatomic variants can often only be made postnatally.

Cardiac Rhabdomyoma

This is the most common cardiac tumor. Approximately 50 percent of cases are associated with tuberous sclerosis, an autosomal dominant disease with multiorgan system manifestations. Tuberous sclerosis is caused by mutations in the hamartin (*TSC1*) and tuberin (*TSC2*) genes.

Sonographically, cardiac rhabdomyomas are well-circumscribed echogenic masses, usually within the ventricles or outflow tracts (Fig. 15-45). They may be single or multiple, may grow in size during gestation, and may occasionally lead to inflow or outflow obstruction. In cases without obstruction or large tumor size, the prognosis is relatively good from a cardiac standpoint, because the tumors tend to regress after the neonatal period. Because extracardiac findings of tuberous sclerosis may not be apparent with prenatal sonography, MR imaging may be considered to evaluate fetal CNS anatomy (p. 266).

M-Mode

Motion-mode or M-mode imaging is a linear display of cardiac cycle events, with time on the x-axis and motion on the y-axis. It is often used to measure embryonic or fetal heart rate (Fig. 14-1, p. 248). If an abnormality of heart rate or rhythm is identified, M-mode imaging permits separate evaluation of atrial and ventricular waveforms. Thus, it is particularly useful for characterizing arrhythmias and their response to treatment (Chap. 19, p. 367). M-mode can also be used to assess ventricular function and atrial and ventricular outputs.

Premature Atrial Contractions

Also called atrial extrasystoles, these are the most common fetal arrhythmia and a frequent finding. They represent cardiac conduction system immaturity and often resolve with advancing gestation or in the neonatal period. Premature atrial contractions (PACs) may be conducted and thus sound like extra beats. However, they are more commonly blocked, and with handheld Doppler they sound like dropped beats. As shown

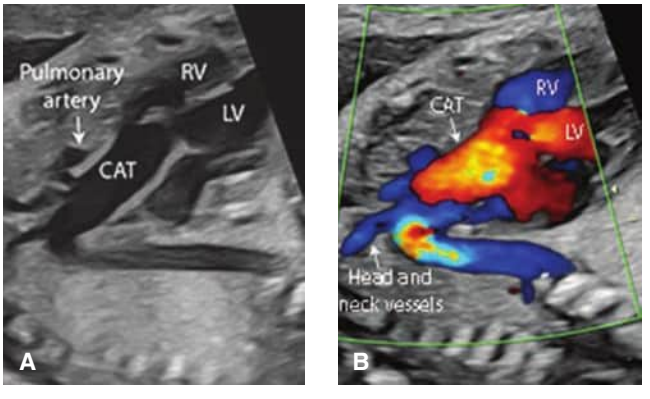


FIGURE 15-44 Truncus arteriosus. Grayscale **(A)** and color Doppler **(B)** images depict a single, large outflow tract. The common arterial trunk (*CAT*) overlies a ventricular septal defect (*arrowhead*) and gives rise to the head and neck vessels and pulmonary arteries. LV = left ventricle; RV = right ventricle. (Reproduced with permission from Paul Mallamaci, RDMS.)

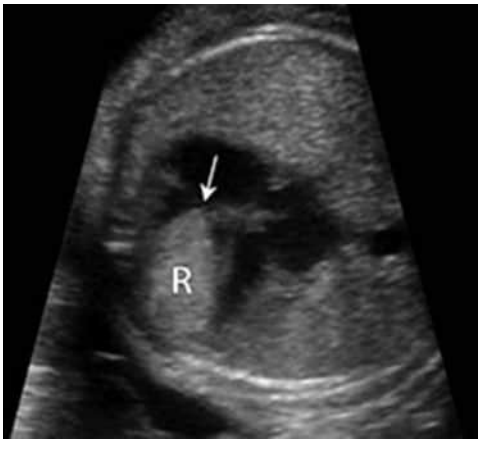


FIGURE 15-45 Rhabdomyoma. In this four-chamber view of the heart, a large, echogenic, well-circumscribed mass (*R*) fills the right ventricle and abuts the tricuspid valve (*arrow*). Despite its size, the mass did not obstruct flow, and the neonate did well.

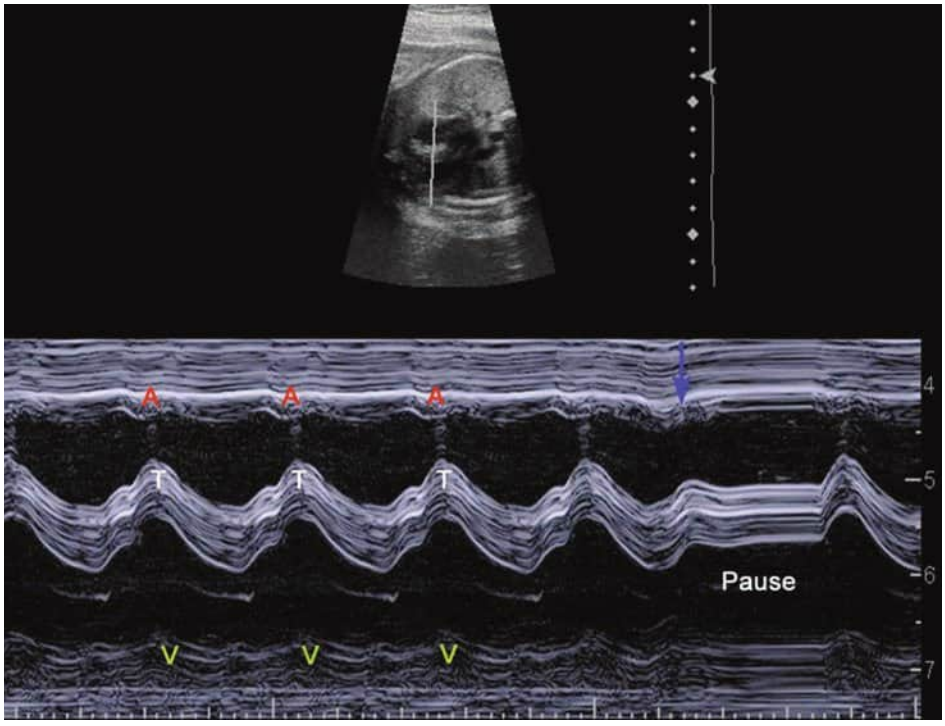


FIGURE 15-46 M-mode. This image demonstrates normal concordance between atrial (*A*) and ventricular (*V*) contractions. Movement of the tricuspid valve (*T*) is also shown. The blue arrow denotes a premature atrial contraction followed by a compensatory pause.

in Figure 15-46, the dropped beat may be demonstrated with M-mode evaluation as a compensatory pause that follows the premature contraction.

PACs are not associated with major structural cardiac abnormalities. Older case reports describe an association with maternal caffeine consumption and with hydralazine (Lodeiro, 1989; Oei, 1989). In approximately 2 percent of cases, affected fetuses are later identified to have *supraventricular tachycardia (SVT)*, which is an arrhythmia that requires urgent treatment (Copel, 2000). Accordingly, pregnancies with fetal PACs are often followed with fetal heart rate assessment as often as every 1 to 2 weeks until the ectopy resolves. Treatment of fetal SVT and other arrhythmias is discussed in Chapter 19 (p. 368).

ABDOMEN

Abdominal anatomy visible in the second and third trimester includes the stomach, liver, gallbladder, spleen, adrenal glands, kidneys, renal arteries, small and large bowel, and ventral wall. The stomach is nearly always identified after 14 weeks' gestation. Nonvisualization of the stomach may be secondary to impaired swallowing in the setting of oligohydramnios or to underlying causes such as esophageal atresia, a craniofacial anomaly, or a CNS or musculoskeletal abnormality. Fetuses with hydrops can also have impaired swallowing.

Both the liver and spleen may be viewed in a transverse image obtained at the level of the stomach and intrahepatic portion of the umbilical vein—the plane at which the abdominal circumference is measured (see Fig. 15-2B). Hepatosplenomegaly may occur with congenital infection or with hydrops. By convention, the liver is measured in the sagittal or coronal plane, from the top of the right hemidiaphragm to the inferior tip of the right lobe (Fig. 15-47). The spleen is posterior to the stomach in the transverse plane. The gallbladder may be imaged just inferior to the level at which the abdominal circumference is measured. It lies to the right of the intrahepatic portion of the umbilical vein and has a conical or teardrop shape (see Fig. 15-47B).

The appearance of fetal bowel changes with maturation. Increased bowel echogenicity may indicate a small amount of swallowed intraamnionic blood, especially if the maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein level is elevated. The bowel appears as bright as bone in approximately 0.5 percent of second-trimester fetuses. In such cases, the risk for fetal trisomy 21 is increased (Fig. 17-3, p. 340). Echogenic bowel is also associated with fetal cytomegalovirus infection and with cystic fibrosis, in which echogenicity represents inspissated meconium.

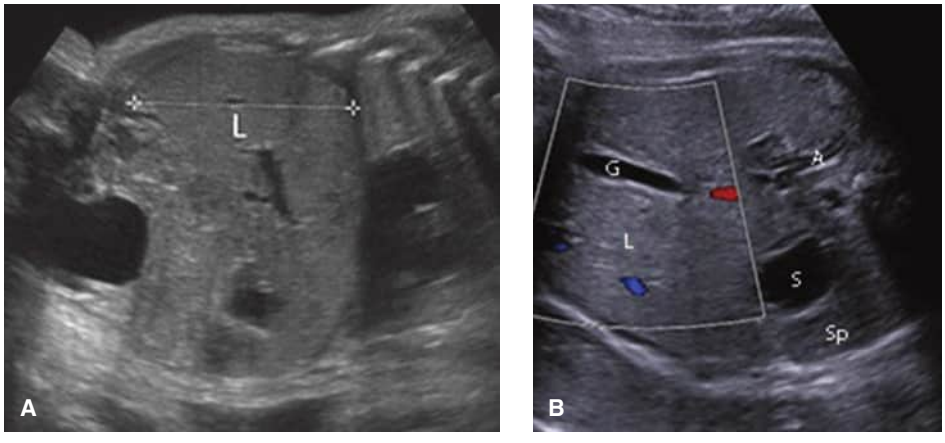


FIGURE 15-47 Abdominal organs. **A.** The liver is measured from the top of the right hemidiaphragm to the inferior tip of the right lobe in this coronal image. **B.** Transverse image of the abdomen just inferior to the level at which the abdominal circumference is measured, depicting the gallbladder (*G*), stomach (*S*), spleen (*Sp*), liver (*L*), and right adrenal gland (*A*).

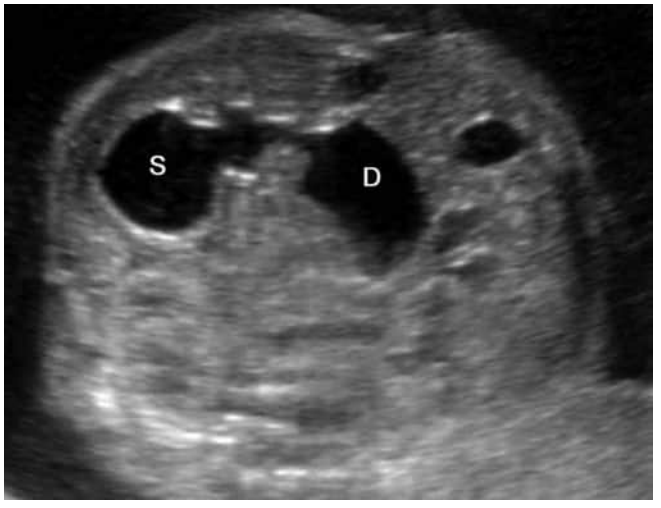


FIGURE 15-48 Duodenal atresia. Transverse image of the *double-bubble sign*, which represents distension of the stomach (*S*) and the first part of the duodenum (*D*). Continuity between these structures confirms that the second cystic structure is the duodenum.

Gastrointestinal Obstruction

Bowel atresia is characterized by obstruction and proximal bowel dilation. In general, the more proximal the obstruction, the more likely it is to lead to hydramnios. The degree of hydramnios from proximal small-bowel obstruction can be sufficiently severe to result in maternal respiratory compromise or preterm labor and may necessitate amnioreduction (Chap. 14, p. 258).

Esophageal Atresia

The birth prevalence of this anomaly approximates 1 in 4000 (Cragan, 2009; Pedersen, 2012). It may be suspected when there is no visible stomach bubble or when the stomach is contracted. However, because esophageal atresia is associated with a *tracheoesophageal fistula* in up to 90 percent of cases, fluid is often able to enter the stomach. More than 50 percent of those with esophageal atresia have other abnormalities or underlying genetic syndromes. Multiple malformations are present in 30 percent of cases, and aneuploidy such as trisomy 18 or 21, in 10 percent. Approximately 10 percent of cases of esophageal atresia is found as part of the VACTERL association (Pedersen, 2012).

Duodenal Atresia

This anomaly occurs in approximately 1 in 10,000 births (Best, 2012; Dolk, 2010). It is characterized by the sonographic *double-bubble sign,* which develops from distention of the stomach and the first part of the duodenum (Fig. 15-48). This finding may not be obvious before 24 weeks' gestation. Demonstrating continuity between the stomach and proximal duodenum confirms that the second "bubble" is the proximal duodenum. Approximately 30 percent of affected fetuses have an associated chromosomal abnormality or genetic syndrome, particularly trisomy 21. Of cases without a genetic abnormality, a third have associated anomalies, most commonly cardiac defects and other gastrointestinal abnormalities (Best, 2012).

Jejunoileal Atresia

This condition may present with dilated small-bowel loops that fill the abdomen or with *meconium peritonitis* from bowel perforation (Fig. 15-49). Associated gastrointestinal abnormalities are identified postnatally in 25 percent of cases, with malrotation in 10 to 15 percent (Stollman, 2009). Cystic fibrosis also is identified in approximately 10 percent.

In general, jejunal atresia is more strongly associated with bowel dilation and hyperperistalsis, and ileal atresia, with perforation. Bowel dilatation in jejunal atresia typically does not present until after 24 weeks' gestation and may be accompanied by hydramnios. Perforation is frequently associated with ascites, and bright echoes may be visible outside the bowel lumen, outlining the peritoneal cavity. Over time, the ascites resolves, and the extravasated meconium may form a pseudocyst. Fetal MR imaging can assist with identifying the level of the defect (Chap. 14, p. 267).

Anal Atresia

Also known as imperforate anus, this condition is less readily diagnosed by sonography. Hydramnios is not a typical feature, and the bowel may not be significantly dilated. A transverse view through the pelvis may show an enlarged rectum as an anechoic structure between the bladder and the sacrum. Anal atresia is a feature of the VACTERL association.

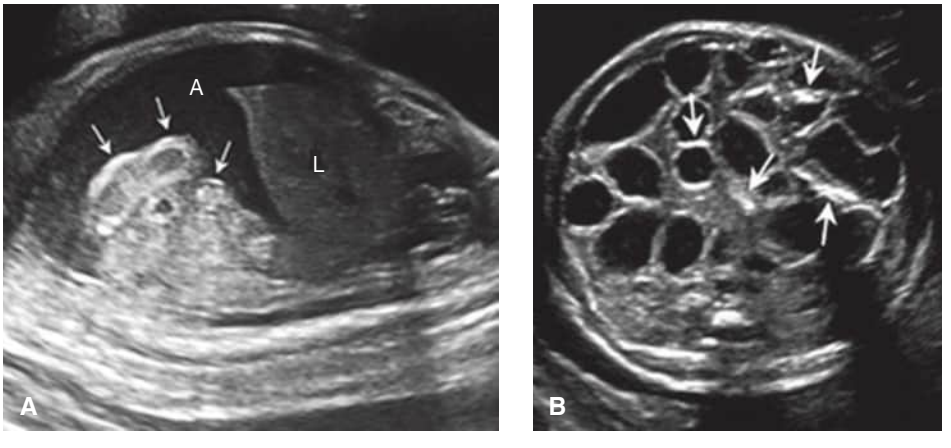


FIGURE 15-49 Jejunoileal atresia with meconium peritonitis. **A.** Sagittal image of the fetal abdomen at 26 weeks' gestation with severe ascites following bowel perforation. Arrows point to the bowel, which is considerably more echogenic than the liver. **B.** Transverse image at 30 weeks demonstrates resolution of ascites. The abdomen is now filled with dilated loops of small bowel. Focal bright echoes (*arrows*) represent extraluminal meconium. A = ascites; L = liver.

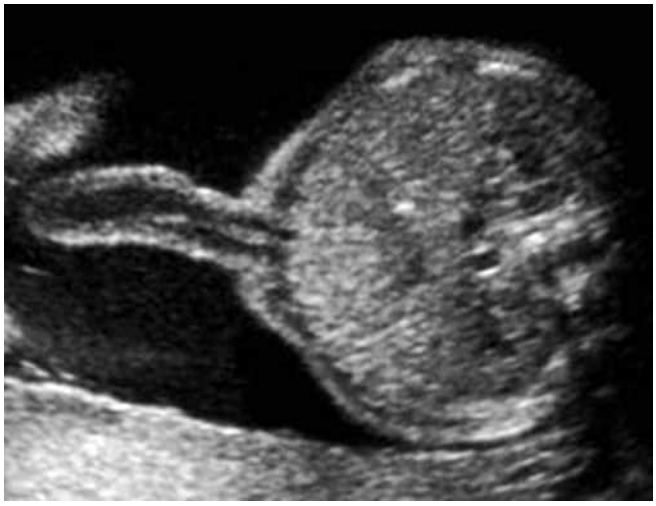


FIGURE 15-50 Normal ventral wall. Transverse view of the abdomen demonstrating normal umbilical cord insertion and integrity of the anterior abdominal wall.

Ventral Wall Defects

The integrity of the abdominal wall is assessed at the level of the cord insertion during the standard examination (Fig. 15-50). Ventral wall defects include gastroschisis, omphalocele, and body stalk anomaly.

Gastroschisis

This is a full-thickness abdominal wall defect located to the right of the umbilical cord insertion. Bowel herniates through the defect into the amnionic cavity. Gastroschisis may be diagnosed as early as the late first trimester (Fig. 15-51). The prevalence is approximately 1 in 2000 births (Jones, 2016; Nelson, 2015). Gastroschisis is the one major anomaly more common in fetuses of younger mothers, and the average maternal age is 20 years (Santiago-Muñoz, 2007). Coexisting bowel abnormalities such as *jejunal atresia* are found in approximately 15 percent of cases (Overcash, 2014). Gastroschisis is not associated with aneuploidy, and the survival rate is 90 to 95 percent (Nelson, 2015; Raitio, 2020).

Fetal-growth restriction complicates gastroschisis in 15 to 40 percent of cases (Overcash, 2014; Santiago-Muñoz, 2007). Growth restriction does not appear to confer increased mortality (Nelson, 2015; Overcash, 2014). However, earlier gestational age at delivery does pose a risk for adverse outcome, and planned delivery at 36 to 37 weeks' gestation has not been found to benefit the neonate (Al-Kaff, 2016; South, 2013).

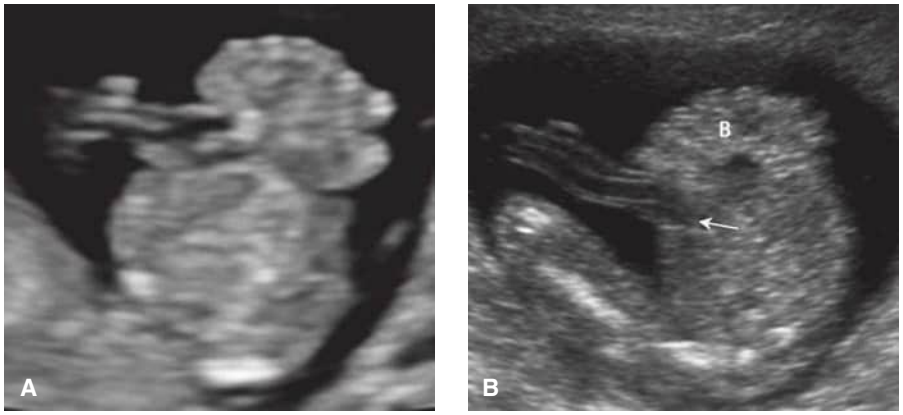


FIGURE 15-51 Gastroschisis. Transverse views of the lower abdomen at 13 weeks' gestation **(A)** and 18 weeks **(B)** depict multiple small bowel loops (*B*) that have herniated into the amnionic cavity through a defect to the right of the cord insertion (*arrow*).

Omphalocele

The birth prevalence of this anomaly approximates 1 in 3000 to 5000 (Canfield, 2006; Dolk, 2010). It develops when the lateral ectomesodermal folds fail to meet in the midline. Abdominal organs herniate into the base of the umbilical cord, covered only by a two-layered sac of amnion and peritoneum (Fig. 15-52). More than half of cases are associated with other major anomalies or aneuploidy. Aneuploidy is particularly common with smaller defects (De Veciana, 1994). Omphalocele is also a component of several syndromes, including *Beckwith–Wiedemann*, *cloacal exstrophy*, and *pentalogy of Cantrell*. Neonatal survival approximates 90 percent for isolated cases and 80 percent in those with other structural abnormalities (Raitio, 2021; Springett, 2014). Isolated defects containing liver are typically delivered via cesarean to decrease the risk for fetal trauma and bleeding.

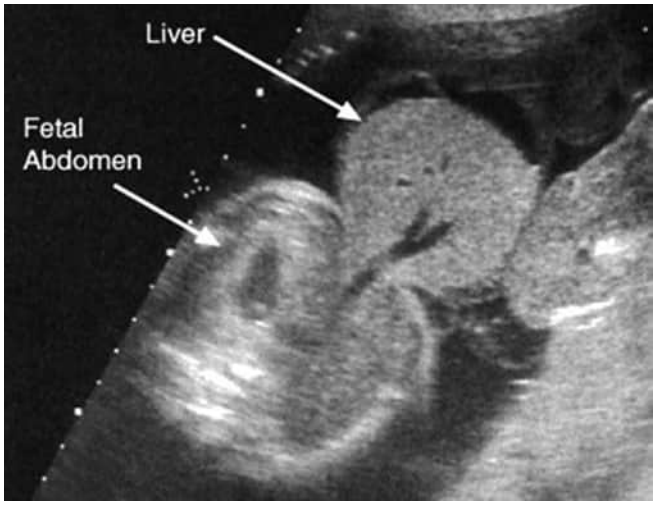


FIGURE 15-52 Omphalocele. Transverse view of the abdomen showing a large, round, membrane-covered ventral wall defect containing exteriorized liver.

Body Stalk Anomaly

Also known as *limb-body-wall complex* or *cyllosoma*, this rare, lethal anomaly is characterized by abnormal body wall formation. Typically, *no* abdominal wall is visible, and the abdominal organs extrude into the extraamnionic coelom (Fig. 15-53). The body and placenta are closely approximated or fused, and

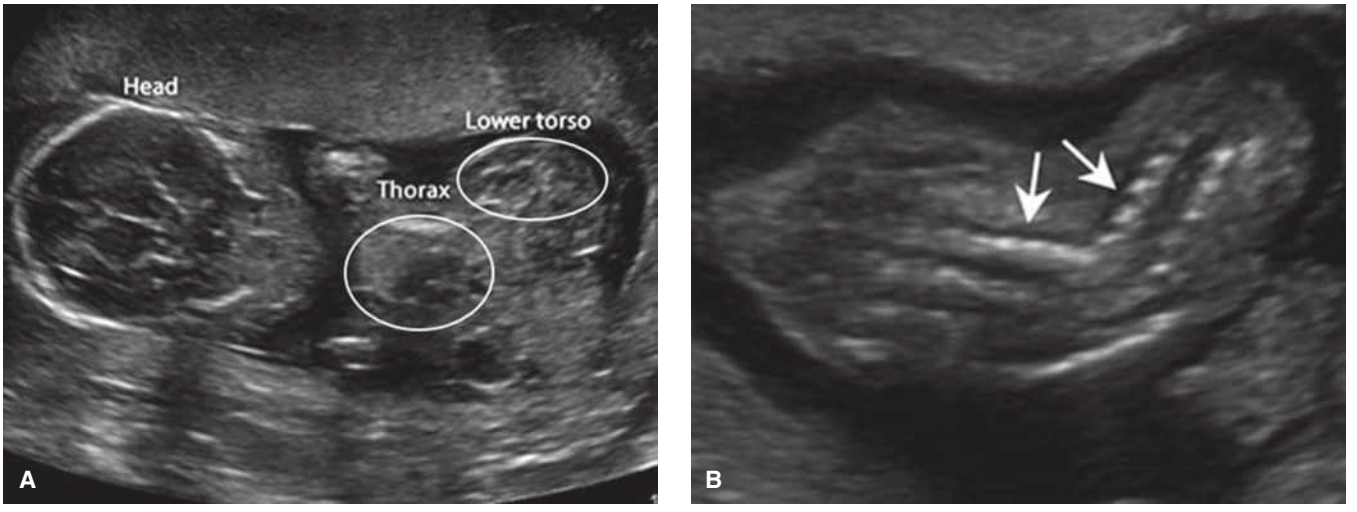


FIGURE 15-53 Body-stalk anomaly. **A.** This 15-week fetus has no visible abdominal wall. The thorax is disproportionately small compared with the head, and the small lower torso is deviated to the side. Arrows point to the large mass of extruded abdominal organs. **B.** Acute-angle scoliosis. Arrows depict the abnormal curvature of the spine. (Reproduced with permission from Deirdre Snelson, RDMS.)

the umbilical cord is extremely short. Acute-angle scoliosis is another feature, and amnionic bands are often identified.

Kidneys and Genitourinary Tract

The fetal kidneys are visible adjacent to the spine, frequently in the first trimester and routinely by 18 weeks' gestation (Fig. 15-54). The length of the kidney approximates 20 mm at 20 weeks and grows about 1.1 mm each week thereafter (Chitty, 2003).

The fetal bladder is also readily seen in the second trimester as a round, anechoic structure in the anterior midline of the pelvis. With application of Doppler, the bladder is outlined by the two superior vesical arteries as they become the umbilical arteries of the umbilical cord (Chap. 6, p. 114). The fetal ureters and urethra are not visible sonographically unless abnormally dilated.

After 18 weeks' gestation, the kidneys are the major source of amnionic fluid (Chap. 14, p. 256). Normal amnionic fluid volume in the second half of pregnancy suggests urinary tract patency and at least one functioning kidney.

External genitalia are a component of the detailed examination and are part of the standard examination in multifetal gestations and when medically indicated (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2019). Identification may aid counseling in pregnancies at risk for an X-linked genetic condition. Examples of normal and ambiguous genitalia are shown in Figure 15-55. Disorders of sexual development are discussed in Chapter 3 (p. 35).

Renal Pelvis Dilatation

Present in 1 to 5 percent of fetuses, this finding is also called urinary tract dilatation or hydronephrosis. In 40 to 90 percent of cases, and particularly when mild, renal pelvis dilatation is transient or physiological and does not represent an underlying abnormality (Ismaili, 2003; Nguyen, 2010). In approximately one third of cases, a urinary tract abnormality is confirmed in the neonatal period. Of these, *ureteropelvic junction (UPJ) obstruction* and *vesicoureteral reflux (VUR)* are the most frequent.

The fetal renal pelvis diameter is measured anterior-to-posterior in a transverse plane. Calipers are placed on the inner border of the fluid collection (Fig. 15-56). Although various thresholds have been defined, the pelvis is typically considered dilated if it exceeds 4 mm in the second trimester or 7 mm at approximately 32 weeks' gestation (Nguyen, 2014; Reddy, 2014). The second-trimester threshold is used to identify pregnancies that warrant subsequent third-trimester evaluation.

The Society for Fetal Urology categorized renal pelvis dilatation based on a metaanalysis of more than 100,000 screened pregnancies (Table 15-2) (Lee, 2006; Nguyen, 2010). Provided that the finding is isolated, the degree of dilation correlates with

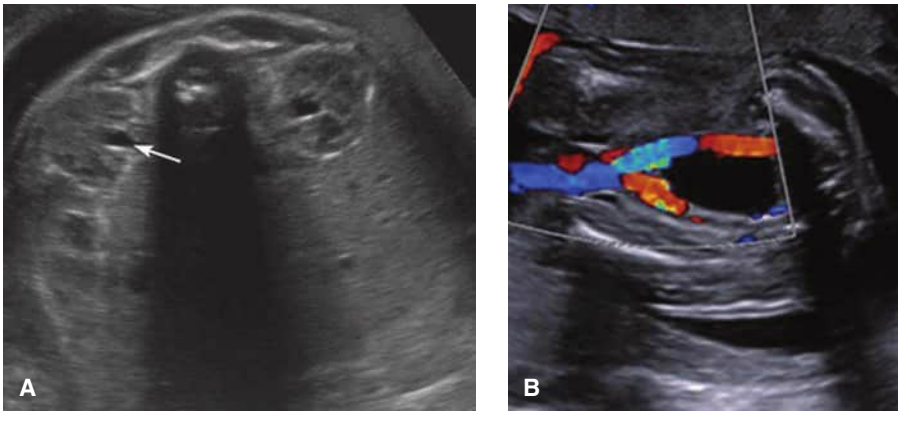


FIGURE 15-54 Normal fetal kidneys and bladder. **A.** The kidneys are visible adjacent to the spine in this 29-week fetus. A small amount of urine is often visible within the renal pelvis (*arrow*). **B.** Normal fetal bladder, outlined by the two superior vesical arteries as they become the umbilical arteries.

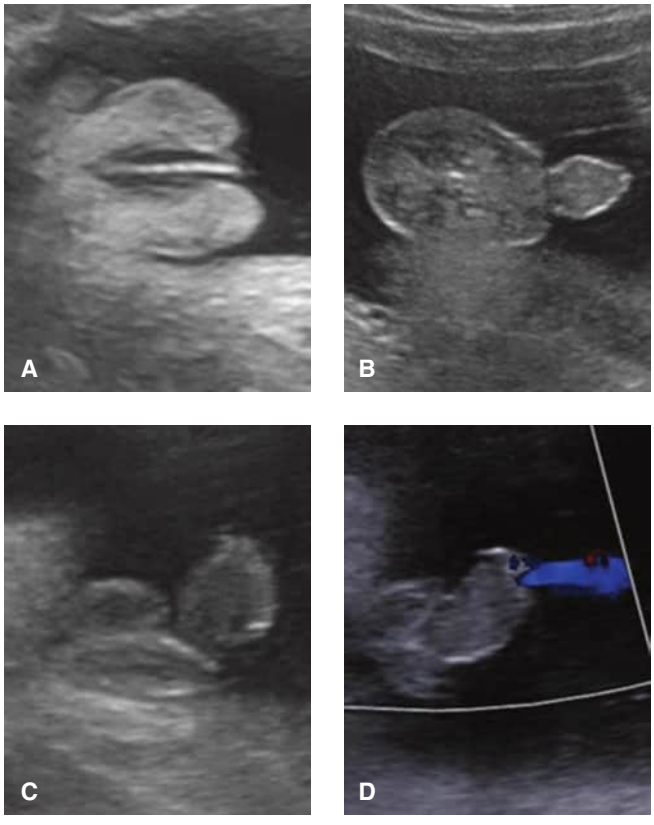


FIGURE 15-55 Normal and ambiguous genitalia. **A.** Female labia. **B.** Male penis and scrotum. **C.** Ambiguous genitalia with a phallus and bifid scrotum. **D.** With this condition, color Doppler can assist locating the urethral meatus, which is pinpointed here by the urine stream (*blue*).

the likelihood of an underlying abnormality. Associated calyceal dilation, cortical thinning, or dilation elsewhere along the urinary tract confer increased risk (Nguyen, 2014). Mild pyelectasis in the second trimester is a minor aneuploidy marker associated with a slightly increased risk for trisomy 21, particularly when other findings or risk factors are also present (Fig. 17-3, p. 340).

Ureteropelvic Junction Obstruction. This condition is the most common abnormality associated with renal pelvis dilatation. The birth prevalence is 1 in 1000 to 2000, and males are affected three times more often than females (Williams, 2007; Woodward, 2002). Obstruction is generally functional rather than anatomical, and it is bilateral in up to a fourth of cases. The likelihood of UPJ obstruction ranges from 5 percent with mild renal pelvis dilatation to more than 50 percent with severe dilatation (Lee, 2006).

TABLE 15-2. Risk for Postnatal Urinary Abnormality According to Degree of Renal Pelvis Dilation

Dilation	Second Trimester	Third Trimester	Postnatal Abnormality
Mild	4 to <7 mm	7 to <9 mm	12%
Moderate	7 to ≤10 mm	9 to ≤15 mm	45%
Severe	>10 mm	>15 mm	88%

Modified from Lee, 2006; Nguyen, 2010.

Duplicated Renal Collecting System. In this anatomical anomaly, the upper and lower poles of the kidney—called moieties—are each drained by a separate ureter (Fig. 15-57). Duplication is found in approximately 1 in 4000 pregnancies, is more common in females, and is bilateral in 15 to 20 percent of cases (James, 1998; Vergani, 1998; Whitten, 2001). Sonographically, an intervening tissue band separates two distinct renal pelves. Hydronephrosis or ureteral dilation may develop due to abnormal implantation of one or both ureters within the bladder—a relationship that reflects the anatomical *Weigert-Meyer* rule. The upper pole ureter tends to develop obstruction from a ureterocele within the bladder, whereas the lower pole ureter has a shortened intravesical segment that predisposes to VUR (see Fig. 15-57). Thus, both moieties may become dilated from different etiologies, and both are at risk for loss of function.

Renal Agenesis

The estimated prevalence of bilateral renal agenesis is 1 in 8000 births, whereas that of unilateral renal agenesis is 1 in 1000 births (Cragan, 2009; Dolk, 2010; Sheih, 1989; Wiesel, 2005). With an absent kidney, color Doppler imaging of the descending aorta demonstrates absence of the ipsilateral renal artery (Fig. 15-58). In addition, the ipsilateral adrenal gland typically enlarges to fill the renal fossa, termed the *lying down adrenal sign* (Hoffman, 1992).

If renal agenesis is bilateral, no urine is produced, and the resulting anhydramnios leads to pulmonary hypoplasia, limb contractures, and distinctive facies. When this combination results from renal agenesis, it is called *Potter syndrome*, after Dr. Edith Potter, who described it in 1946. When these abnormalities result from severely decreased amniotic fluid volume from another etiology, such as bilateral multicystic dysplastic kidney or autosomal

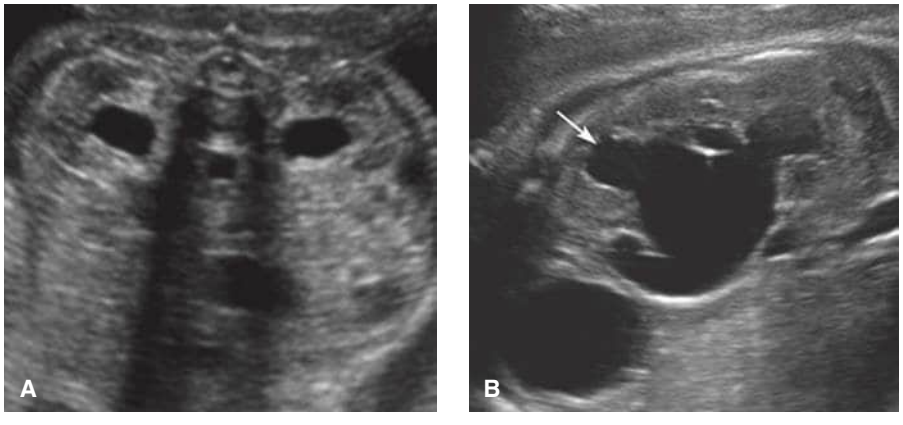


FIGURE 15-56 Renal pelvis dilatation. **A.** The anterior-posterior diameter of the renal pelves measured 7 mm in the transverse plane in this 34-week fetus. **B.** Sagittal image at 32 weeks depicts renal pelvis dilatation with rounded calyces (*arrow*) in the setting of ureteropelvic junction obstruction.

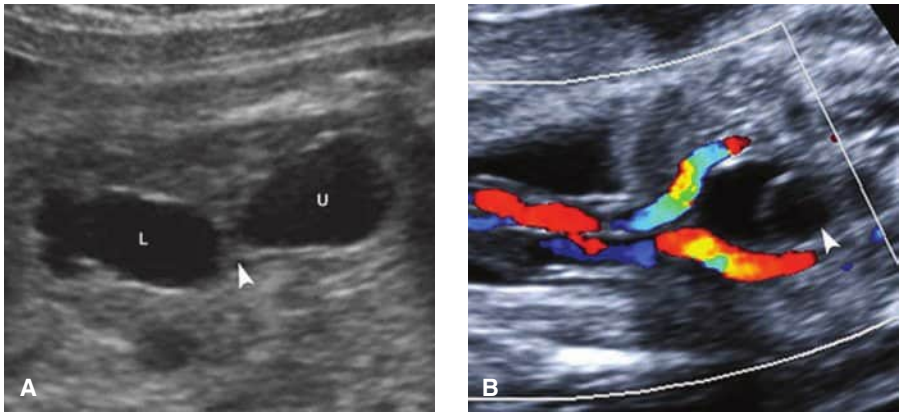


FIGURE 15-57 Duplicated renal collecting system. **A.** Renal pelvis dilatation is visible in both the upper (*U*) and lower (*L*) pole moieties, which are separated by an intervening band of renal tissue (*arrowhead*). **B.** A ureterocele (*arrowhead*) is visible within the bladder. Color Doppler depicts the superior vesical arteries.

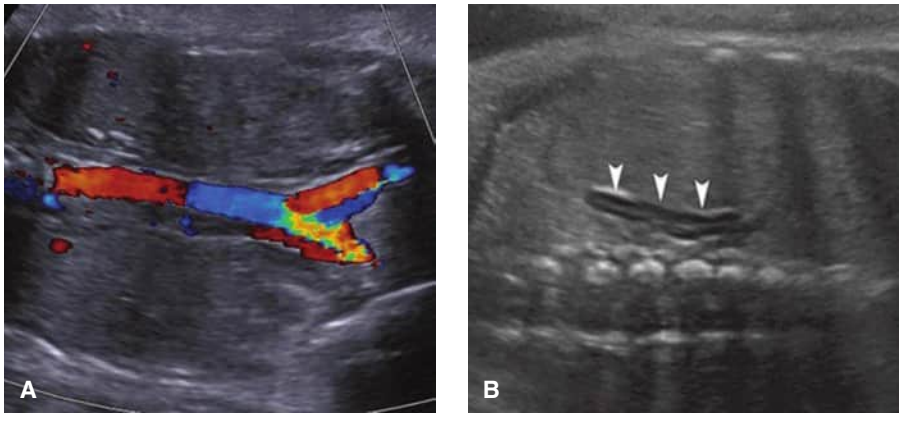


FIGURE 15-58 Renal agenesis. **A.** Coronal image of a fetus with bilateral renal agenesis in which color Doppler of the abdominal aorta is used to demonstrate absence of the renal arteries. **B.** In this fetus with unilateral renal agenesis, arrowheads point to the adrenal gland (*arrowheads*) filling the renal fossa, which is the "lying-down" adrenal sign.

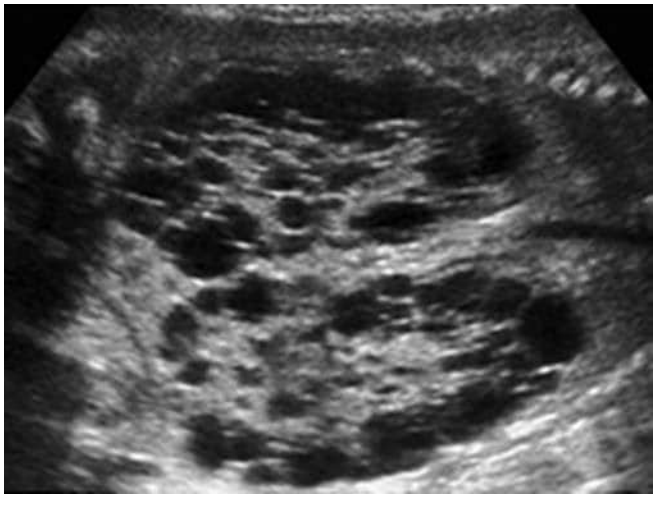


FIGURE 15-59 Multicystic dysplastic kidneys. Coronal view of the fetal abdomen demonstrates enlarged kidneys that are filled with cysts of varying size and contain no visible renal pelvis or normal-appearing renal tissue.

recessive polycystic kidney disease, it is called *Potter sequence.* The prognosis for these abnormalities is extremely poor.

Multicystic Dysplastic Kidney

This severe form of renal dysplasia results in a nonfunctioning kidney. The nephrons and collecting ducts form abnormally, such that primitive ducts are surrounded by fibromuscular tissue, and the ureter is atretic (Hains, 2009). Sonographically, the kidney contains numerous, variably sized, smooth-walled cysts that do not communicate with the renal pelvis and are surrounded by echogenic cortex (Fig. 15-59).

Unilateral multicystic dysplastic kidney (MCDK) has a prevalence of 1 in 4000 births. Contralateral renal abnormalities are present in 30 to 40 percent—most frequently VUR or UPJ obstruction (Schreuder, 2009). Nonrenal anomalies have been reported in 25 percent of cases. Cystic dysplasia may occur as a component of many genetic syndromes (Lazebnik, 1999; Schreuder, 2009). If MCDK is isolated and unilateral, the prognosis is generally good. Bilateral MCDK is found in approximately 1 in 12,000 births. It is associated with severely decreased amnionic fluid volume starting early in gestation. This leads to Potter sequence and a poor prognosis.

Polycystic Kidney Disease

Of the hereditary polycystic diseases, only the infantile form of *autosomal recessive polycystic kidney disease (ARPKD)* may be reliably diagnosed prenatally. ARPKD is a chronic, progressive disease of the kidneys and liver that results in cystic dilation of the renal collecting ducts and in congenital hepatic fibrosis (Turkbey, 2009). The carrier frequency of a disease-causing mutation in the *PKHD1* gene approximates 1 in 70, and the birth prevalence is 1 in 20,000 (Zerres, 1998). The phenotypes of ARPKD range from lethal pulmonary hypoplasia at birth to a presentation in late childhood or even adulthood with predominantly hepatic manifestations. Sonographically, ARPKD displays abnormally large kidneys that may fill or even distend the fetal abdomen and have a solid, ground-glass texture (Fig. 15-60). Severe oligohydramnios confers a poor prognosis.

Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease (ADPKD), which is far more common, usually does not manifest until adulthood (Chap. 56, p. 1001). Even so, some fetuses with ADPKD have mild renal enlargement and enhanced renal echogenicity in the setting of normal amnionic fluid volume.

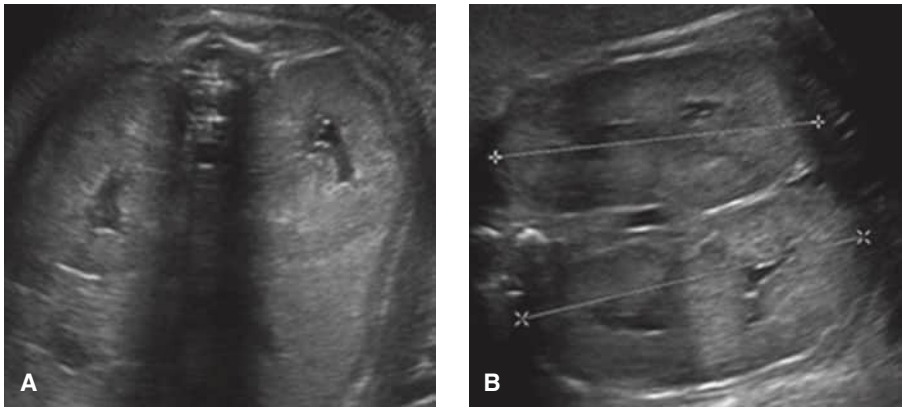


FIGURE 15-60 Autosomal recessive polycystic kidney disease (ARPKD). Transverse **(A)** and coronal **(B)** images of a 29-week fetus with marked renal enlargement. The kidneys measure 7 cm in length and have a ground-glass appearance. There is anhydramnios.

The differential diagnosis for these findings includes several genetic syndromes, aneuploidy, or normal variant.

Bladder Outlet Obstruction

Distal obstruction of the urinary tract is more frequent in male fetuses, and the most common etiology is *posterior urethral valves*. It may be diagnosed as early as the first trimester in some cases (Fig. 15-61). The bladder is markedly dilated, with accompanying dilation of the proximal urethra, which is termed the "keyhole" sign. Oligohydramnios, particularly before midpregnancy, portends pulmonary hypoplasia and poor prognosis. The kidneys may initially manifest severe hydroureteronephrosis but later develop cystic renal dysplasia or become small and echogenic. Outcome may be poor even with normal amnionic fluid volume. Associated anomalies occur in 40 percent of cases, and aneuploidy has been reported in 5 to 8 percent (Hayden, 1988; Hobbins, 1984; Mann, 2010). Evaluation and potential fetal therapy for bladder outlet obstruction is discussed in Chapter 19 (p. 376).

SKELETON

The standard examination includes demonstrating the presence of the arms, legs, hands, and feet (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018). The detailed examination includes, in addition, the number and position of the digits—fingers and toes (Fig. 15-62).

The Nosology and Classification of Genetic Skeletal Disorders includes 461 skeletal anomalies in 42 groups, characterized according to their molecular phenotype, clinical features, or radiographic findings (Mortier, 2019). More than 90 percent of skeletal disorders now have a known genetic basis, with pathogenic variants identified in more than 400 genes. The two types of skeletal dysplasias are *osteochondrodysplasias*—the generalized abnormal development of bone and/or cartilage, and *dysostoses*—which are abnormalities of individual bones. In addition to these *malformations*, skeletal abnormalities include *deformations*, as with some cases of clubfoot, and *disruptions* such as limb-reduction defects.

■ Skeletal Dysplasias

The prevalence of skeletal dysplasias approximates 3 in 10,000 births. Two groups account for more than half of all cases: the *fibroblast growth factor 3 (FGFR3) chondrodysplasia* group and the *osteogenesis imperfecta* and decreased bone density group. Each occurs in 0.8 in 10,000 births (Stevenson, 2012).

Evaluation of a pregnancy with suspected skeletal dysplasia includes a survey of every long bone, as well as the hands and feet, skull size and shape, clavicles, scapulae, thorax, and spine. Reference tables are used to determine which long bones are affected and ascertain the degree of shortening (Appendix, p. 1239). Involvement of all long bones is termed *micromelia*, whereas predominant involvement of only the proximal, intermediate, or distal long bone segments is termed *rhizomelia*, *mesomelia*, and *acromelia*, respectively. The degree of ossification should be noted, as should presence of bowing or fractures.

Although precise characterization may elude prenatal diagnosis, it is frequently possible to determine whether a skeletal dysplasia is lethal. Lethal dysplasias show profound long bone

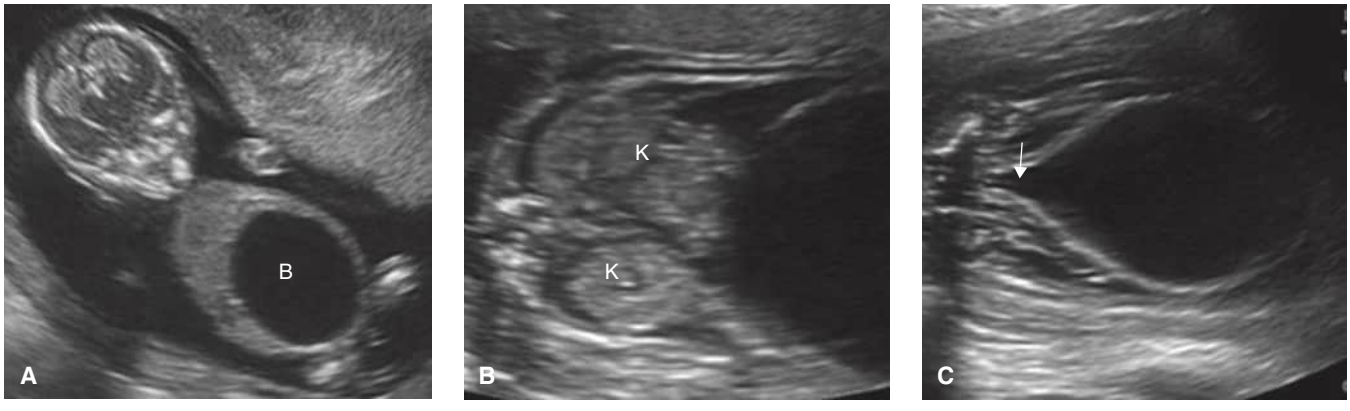


FIGURE 15-61 Bladder outlet obstruction. **A.** The bladder (*B*) is so large that it fills the abdomen in this 13-week fetus. **B.** By 18 weeks, the kidneys (*K*) have become brightly echogenic. **C.** The bladder is markedly dilated and thick-walled, with dilation of the proximal urethra, termed the "keyhole" sign (*arrow*).

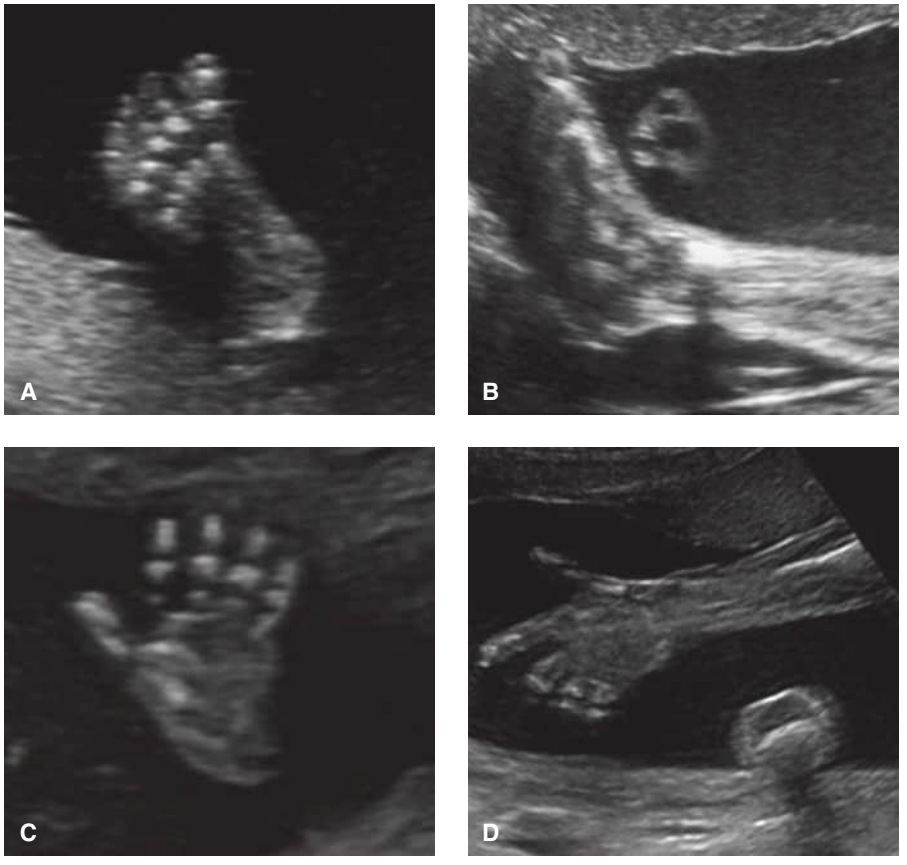


FIGURE 15-62 Normal extremities. **A.** Footprint with toes identified. **B.** Normal ankle position. **C.** Hand with fingers identified. **D.** Normal hand and forearm position.

shortening, often with measurements far below the 5th percentile, and display femur length-to-abdominal circumference ratios <16 percent (Nelson, 2014; Rahemtullah, 1997; Ramus, 1998). Other sonographic abnormalities are generally evident. Pulmonary hypoplasia is suggested by a thoracic circumference <80 percent of the abdominal circumference value, a thoracic circumference <2.5th percentile, and a cardiac circumference >50 percent of the thoracic circumference value (Appendix, p. 1238). Affected pregnancies may also develop hydramnios and/or hydrops.

The FGFR3 chondrodysplasias include *achondroplasia*, *hypochondroplasia*, and *thanatophoric dysplasia*. Achondroplasia is the most common nonlethal skeletal dysplasia. An impressive 98 percent of cases are due to a specific point mutation in the *FGFR3* gene. Inheritance is autosomal dominant, and 80 percent of cases result from a new mutation. Achondroplasia is characterized by long bone shortening that is predominantly *rhizomelic*, an enlarged head with frontal bossing, depressed nasal bridge, exaggerated lumbar lordosis, and a trident configuration of the hands. Intelligence is usually normal. The femur and humerus measurements may not fall below the 5th percentile until the early third trimester. In homozygotes, who represent 25 percent of the offspring of heterozygous parents, the condition is characterized by greater long bone shortening and is lethal.

The other major class of FGFR3 dysplasias, *thanatophoric dysplasia*, is the most common lethal skeletal disorder. It is characterized by severe micromelia, and affected fetuses—particularly those with type II—may develop a characteristic cloverleaf skull deformity (*Kleeblattschädel*) due to craniosynostosis. Genetic testing is confirmatory.

Osteogenesis imperfecta represents a group of skeletal dysplasias typified by hypomineralization. There are multiple types, and more than 90 percent of cases are characterized by a mutation in the *COL1A1* or *COL1A2* gene. Type II, also called the perinatal form, is lethal. The skull displays a profound lack of ossification, and gentle pressure on the maternal abdomen from the ultrasound transducer results in visible skull deformation (Fig. 15-63). Other features include multiple in-utero fractures and ribs that appear "beaded." Inheritance is autosomal dominant, such that all cases result from either new mutations or gonadal mosaicism. Another skeletal dysplasia that creates severe hypomineralization is *hypophosphatasia*, which has an autosomal recessive inheritance.

Polydactyly

The most common skeletal abnormality is polydactyly, which occurs in approximately 1 in 1000 births. It is *post-axial* if on the side of the ulna or fibula and *pre-axial* if on the side of the

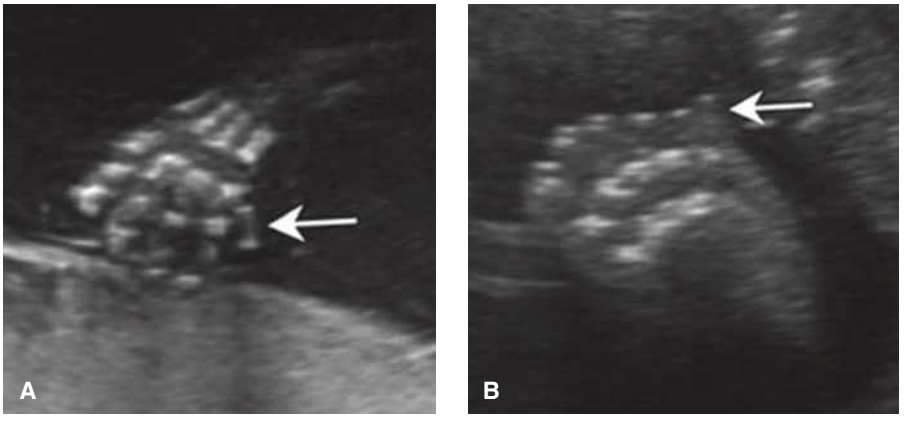


FIGURE 15-63 Post-axial polydactyly. **A.** In this image of the hand, the arrow points to a rudimentary digit adjacent to the little finger. **B.** Foot with 6 toes in a fetus with trisomy 13. The arrow points to the extra digit.

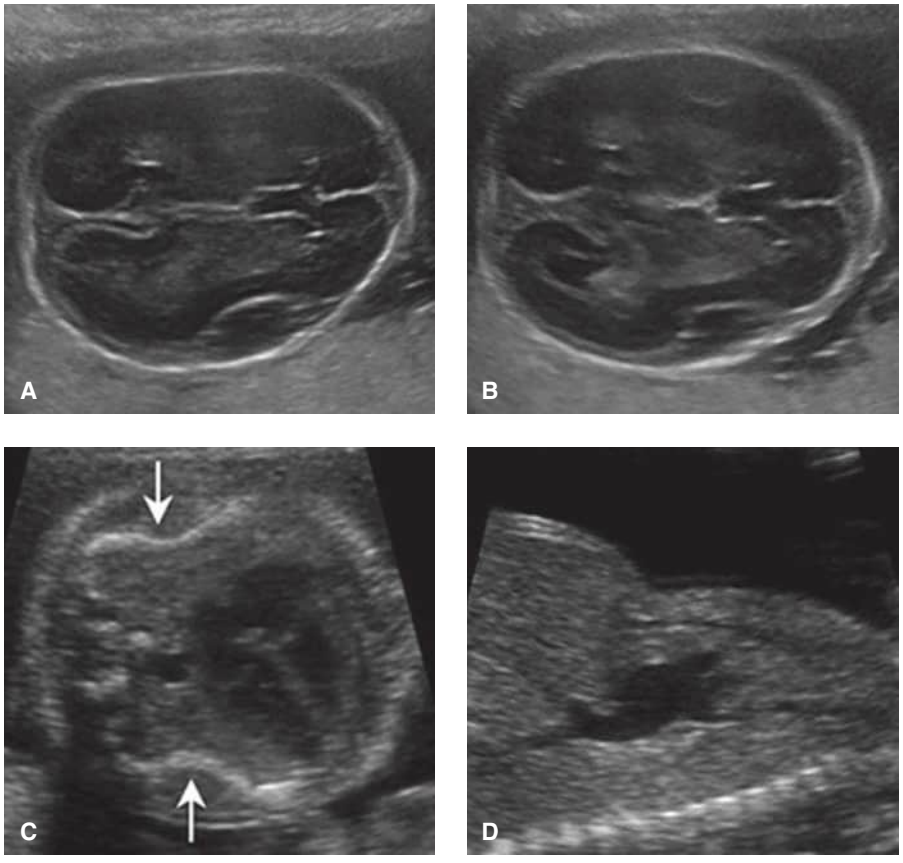


FIGURE 15-64 Osteogenesis imperfecta, Type IIa. **A.** Due to lack of skull ossification, gentle ultrasound transducer pressure on the maternal abdomen results in visible deformation (flattening) of the skull in this 24-week fetus. **B.** When the transducer pressure is removed, the skull shape returns to normal. **C.** In the four-chamber view of the heart, in-utero fractures lead to abrupt angulation of the ribs (*arrows*). **D.** The thorax is markedly smaller than the abdomen in this sagittal image.

radius or tibia (Fig. 15-64). The extra digit is often rudimentary, and in the absence of a bony component, prenatal detection may be limited. Post-axial polydactyly is more common and is frequently inherited in an autosomal dominant fashion. Polydactyly is also a feature of syndromes such as Meckel-Gruber and trisomy 13.

■ Clubfoot—Talipes Equinovarus

This disorder is notable for a deformed talus and shortened Achilles tendon. The affected foot is abnormally fixed and positioned with *equinus* (downward pointing), *varus* (inward rotation), and forefoot adduction. Most cases are considered malformations, with a multifactorial genetic component. However, an association with environmental factors and with early amniocentesis suggests that deformation also plays a role (Tredwell, 2001). Sonographically, the footprint is visible in the same plane as the tibia and fibula (Fig. 15-65).

The prevalence of clubfoot approximates 1 in 1000 births, and the male:female ratio is 2:1 (Carey, 2003; Pavone, 2012). Clubfoot is bilateral in approximately 50 percent of cases. At least 50 percent of affected individuals have associated abnormalities, such as neural-tube defects, arthrogryposis, and myotonic dystrophy and other genetic syndromes (Mammen, 2004; Sharma, 2011). If there are other abnormalities, aneuploidy is present in 30 percent. In contrast, the aneuploidy rate is <4 percent when clubfoot appears isolated (Lauson, 2010; Sharma, 2011). Thus, a careful search for associated abnormalities is warranted, and chromosomal microarray analysis may be considered.

■ Limb-Reduction Defects

Documentation of the arms and legs is a component of the standard examination. The absence or hypoplasia of all or part of one or more extremities is a *limb-reduction defect*. The birth prevalence is 4 to 8 in 10,000 (Kucik, 2012; Stoll, 2010; Vasluian, 2013). Approximately half of these are isolated defects, up to one third occur as part of a recognized syndrome, and individuals in the remaining cases have other coexisting anomalies (Stoll, 2010; Vasluian, 2013). Upper extremities are affected more frequently than lower ones. A terminal *transverse limb defect* lacks part or all of a distal limb to create a stump (Fig. 15-66). This is more common than a *longitudinal defect*, which is complete or partial absence of the long bone(s) on only one side of a given extremity.

Absence of an entire extremity is termed *amelia*. *Phocomelia*, associated with thalidomide exposure, is an absence of one or more long bones with the hands or feet attached to the trunk (Chap. 8, p. 155). Limb-reduction defects are associated with numerous genetic syndromes, such

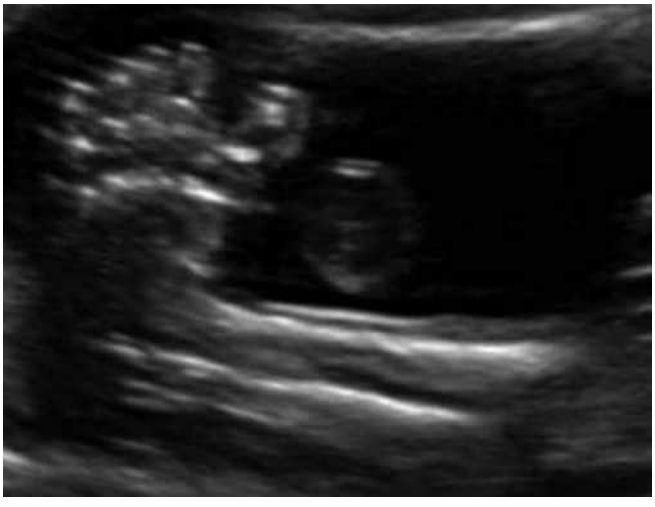


FIGURE 15-65 Talipes equinovarus or clubfoot. This condition is diagnosed by visualizing the "footprint" in the same plane as the tibia and fibula.

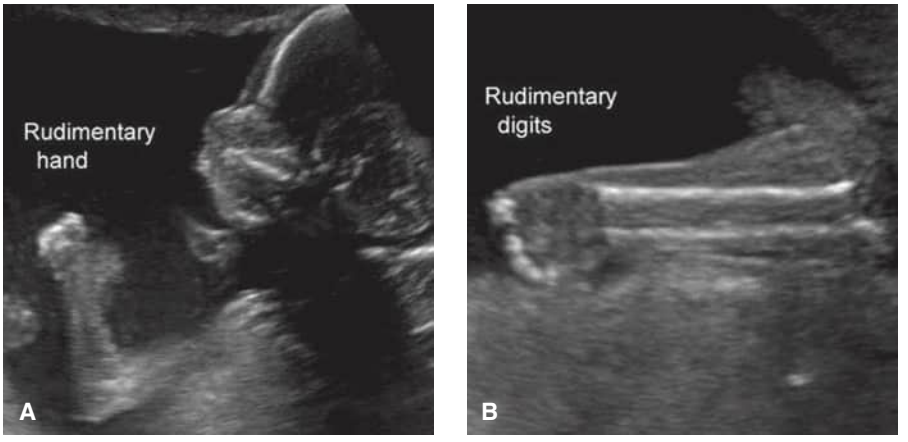


FIGURE 15-66 Transverse limb-reduction defect. **A.** At 18 weeks' gestation, only a rudimentary hand was visible. **B.** By 24 weeks, the radius and ulna were normal in size and appearance, and small rudimentary digits were evident.

as *Roberts syndrome*, an autosomal recessive condition characterized by *tetraphocomelia.* A *clubhand deformity*, usually from an absent radius, is a component of the *thrombocytopenia-absent radius syndrome* and is also associated with trisomy 18 (Fig. 16-5, p. 312). Limb-reduction defects may occur in the setting of a disruption such as amnionic-band sequence (Chap. 6, p. 113). They have also been associated with chorionic villus sampling when performed before 10 weeks' gestation (Fig. 17-5, p. 346).

REFERENCES

Abuhamad A, Minton KK, Benson CB, et al: Obstetric and gynecologic ultrasound curriculum and competency assessment in residency training programs: consensus report. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(1):29, 2018

Adzick NS, Harrison MR, Glick PL, et al: Fetal cystic adenomatoid malformation: prenatal diagnosis and natural history. J Pediatr Surg 20:483, 1985

Adzick NS, Thom EA, Spong CY, et al: A randomized trial of prenatal versus postnatal repair of myelomeningocele. N Engl J Med 364(11):993, 2011

Al-Kaff A, MacDonald SC, Kent N, et al: Delivery planning for pregnancies with gastroschisis: findings from a prospective national registry. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(4):557.e1, 2015

Altman RP, Randolph JG, Lilly JR: Sacrococcygeal teratoma: American Academy of Pediatrics Surgical Section survey—1973. J Pediatr Surg 9:389, 1974

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Neural tube defects. Practice Bulletin No. 187, December 2017, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Perinatal palliative care. Committee Opinion No. 786, August 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Ultrasound in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 175, December 2016, Reaffirmed 2020

American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine: AIUM-ACR-ACOG-SMFM-SRU Practice parameter for the performance of standard trimester diagnostic obstetric ultrasound examinations. J Ultrasound Med 37(11):e13, 2018

American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine: AIUM Ultrasound Practice Accreditation. 2020a. Available at: https://aium.org/accreditation/accreditation.aspx. Accessed August 17, 2020

American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine: Practice parameter for the performance of detailed second- and third-trimester diagnostic obstetric ultrasound examinations. J Ultrasound Med 38(12):3093, 2019

American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine: Practice parameter for the performance of fetal echocardiography. J Ultrasound Med 39(1):e5, 2020b

Azizkhan RG, Crombleholme TM: Congenital cystic lung disease: contemporary antenatal and postnatal management. Pediatric Surg Int 24:643, 2008

Ballardini E, Marino P, Maietti E, et al: Prevalence and associated factors for agenesis of corpus callosum in Emilia Romagna (1981–2015). Eur J Med Genet 61(9):524, 2018

Basude S, McDermott L, Newell S, et al: Fetal hemivertebra: associations and perinatal outcome. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 45(4):434, 2015

Best KE, Tennant PWG, Addor M, et al: Epidemiology of small intestinal atresia in Europe: a register-based study. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 97(5):F353, 2012

Bjornard K, Riehle-Colarusso T, Gilboa SM, et al: Patterns in the prevalence of congenital heart defects, metropolitan Atlanta, 1978 to 2005. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 97(2):87, 2013

Boyle B, Garne E, Loane M, et al: The changing epidemiology of Ebstein's anomaly and its relationship with maternal mental health conditions: a European registry-based study. Cardio Young 27(4):677, 2017

Brandt JS, Wang E, Rychik J, et al: Utility of a single 3-vessel view in the evaluation of the ventricular outflow tracts. J Ultrasound Med 34(8):1415, 2015

Buca DIP, Khalil A, Rizzo G, et al: Outcome of prenatally diagnosed fetal heterotaxy: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 51:323, 2018

Burge D, Wheeler R: Increasing incidence of detection of congenital lung lesions. Pediatr Pulmonol 45(1):103, 2010

Byrne JJ, Morgan JL, Twickler DM, et al: Utility of follow-up standard sonography for fetal anomaly detection. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(6):615, 2020

Canfield MA, Honein MA, Yuskiv N, et al: National estimates and race/ethnic-specific variation of selected birth defects in the United States, 1999–2001. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 76(11):747, 2006

Carey M, Bower C, Mylvaganam A, et al: Talipes equinovarus in Western Australia. Paediatr Perinat Epidemiol 17:187, 2003

Cavoretto P, Molina F, Poggi S, et al: Prenatal diagnosis and outcome of echogenic fetal lung lesions. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 32:769, 2008

Chao TT, Dashe JS, Adams RC, et al: Central nervous system findings on fetal magnetic resonance imaging and outcomes in children with spina bifida. Obstet Gynecol 116(2):323, 2010

Chavez MR, Ananth CV, Smulian JC, et al: Fetal transcerebellar diameter nomogram in singleton gestations with special emphasis in the third trimester: a comparison with previously published nomograms. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189(4):1021, 2003

Chitty LS, Altman DG: Charts of fetal size: kidney and renal pelvis measurements. Prenat Diagn 23:891, 2003

Cho YS, Park S E, Hong SK, et al: The natural history of fetal diagnosed isolated ventricular septal defect. Prenat Diagn 37(9):889, 2017

Christensen N, Andersen H, Garne E, et al: Atrioventricular septal defects among infants in Europe: a population-based study of prevalence, associated anomalies, and survival. Cardiol Young 23(4):560, 2013

Chung JH, Farinelli CK, Porto M, et al: Fetal epignathus: the case of an early EXIT (ex utero intrapartum treatment). Obstet Gynecol 119(2):466, 2012

Collett RW, Edwards JE. Persistent truncus arteriosus; a classification according to anatomic types. Surg Clin North Am 29(4):1245, 1949

Colvin J, Bower C, Dickinson JE, et al: Outcomes of congenital diaphragmatic hernia: a population-based study in Western Australia. Pediatr 116:e356, 2005

Copel JA, Liang R, Demasio K, et al: The clinical significance of the irregular fetal heart rhythm. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:813, 2000

Cragan JD, Gilboa SM: Including prenatal diagnoses in birth defects monitoring: experience of the Metropolitan Atlanta Congenital Defects Program. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 85:20, 2009

Crane JM, Ash K, Fink N, et al: Abnormal fetal cardiac axis in the detection of intrathoracic anomalies and congenital heart disease. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 10(2):90, 1997

Curran PF, Jelin EB, Rand L, et al: Prenatal steroids for microcystic congenital adenomatoid malformations. J Pediatr Surg 45:145, 2010
Dashe JS, Twickler DM, Santos-Ramos R, et al: Alpha-fetoprotein detection of neural tube defects and the impact of standard ultrasound. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195(6):1623, 2006
De Biasio P, Ginocchio G, Aicardi G, et al: Ossification timing of sacral vertebrae by ultrasound in the mid-second trimester of pregnancy. Prenat Diagn 23:1056, 2003
De Veciana M, Major CA, Porto M: Prediction of an abnormal karyotype in fetuses with omphalocele. Prenat Diagn 14:487, 1994
Derikx JP, De Backer A, Van De Schoot L, et al: Factors associated with recurrence and metastasis in sacrococcygeal teratoma. Br J Surg 93:1543, 2006
des Portes V, Rolland A, Velazquez-Dominguez J, et al: Outcome of isolated agenesis of the corpus callosum: a population-based prospective study. Eur J Paediatr Neurol 22(1):82, 2018
Devaseelan P, Cardwell C, Bell B, et al: Prognosis of isolated mild to moderate fetal cerebral ventriculomegaly: a systematic review. J Perinat Med 38:401, 2010
Dolk H, Loane M, Garne E: The prevalence of congenital anomalies in Europe. Adv Exp Med Biol 686:349, 2010
Duncombe GJ, Dickinson JE, Kikiros CS: Prenatal diagnosis and management of congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation of the lung. Am J Obstet Gynecol 187(4):950, 2002
Dutemeyer V, Cordier AG, Cannie MM, et al: Prenatal prediction of postnatal survival in fetuses with congenital diaphragmatic hernia using MRI: lung volume measurement, signal intensity ratio, and effect of experience. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med March 25, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Ecker JL, Shipp TD, Bromley B, et al: The sonographic diagnosis of Dandy-Walker and Dandy-Walker variant: associated findings and outcomes. Prenat Diagn 20:328, 2000
Feinstein JA, Benson DW, Dubin AM, et al: Hypoplastic left heart syndrome: current considerations and expectations. J Am Coll Cardiol 59(1 Suppl):S1, 2012
Franklin O, Burch M, Manning N, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of coarctation of the aorta improves survival and reduces morbidity. Heart 87:67, 2002
Gaglioti P, Oberto M, Todros T: The significance of fetal ventriculomegaly: etiology, short-and long-term outcomes. Prenat Diagn 29(4):381, 2009
Gallot D, Boda C, Ughetto S, et al: Prenatal detection and outcome of congenital diaphragmatic hernia: a French registry-based study. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 29:276, 2007
Garne E, Loane M, Dolk H, et al: Spectrum of congenital anomalies in pregnancies with pregestational diabetes. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 94(3):134, 2012
Ghi T, Dall'Asta A, Cavalli C, et al: How often an isolated cardiac disproportion predicts a coarctation of the aorta? Single center experience and systematic review of the literature. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(10):1350, 2017
Gucciardo L, Uyttebroek A, de Wever I, et al: Prenatal assessment and management of sacrococcygeal teratoma. Prenat Diagn 31:678, 2011
Hadlock FP, Harrist RB, Carpenter RJ, et al: Sonographic estimation of fetal weight. Radiology 150:535, 1984
Hadlock FP, Harrist RB, Martinez-Poyer J: In utero analysis of fetal growth: a sonographic weight standard. Radiology 181(1):129, 1991
Hains DS, Bates CM, Ingraham S, et al: Management and etiology of the unilateral multicystic dysplastic kidney: a review. Pediatr Nephrol 24:233, 2009
Hartman RJ, Rasmussen SJ, Botto LD, et al: The contribution of chromosomal abnormalities to congenital heart defects: a population-based study. Pediatr Cardiol 32:1147, 2011
Hayden SA, Russ PD, Pretorius DH, et al: Posterior urethral obstruction. Prenatal sonographic findings and clinical outcome in fourteen cases. J Ultrasound Med 7:371, 1988
Herrera CL, Byrne JJ, Clark HR, et al: Use of fetal magnetic resonance imaging after sonographic identification of major structural anomalies. J Ultrasound Med 39(10):2053 2020a
Herrera CL, Hussamy DJ, McIntire DD, et al: Femur length parameters in fetuses with Down syndrome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(15):2516, 2020b
Hobbins JC, Robero R, Grannum P, et al: Antenatal diagnosis of renal anomalies with ultrasound: I. Obstructive uropathy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 148:868, 1984
Hoffman CK, Filly RA, Callen PW: The "lying down" adrenal sign: a sonographic indicator of renal agenesis or ectopia in fetuses and neonates. J Ultrasound Med 11:533, 1992
Howe DT, Rankin J, Draper ES: Schizencephaly prevalence, prenatal diagnosis and clues to etiology: a register-based study. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 39(1):75, 2012
Howley MM, Keppler-Noreuil KM, Cunniff CM, et al: Descriptive epidemiology of cerebellar hypoplasia in the National Birth Defects Prevention Study. Birth Defects Res 110(19):1419, 2018
Ismaili K, Hall M, Donner C, et al: Results of systematic screening for minor degrees of fetal renal pelvis dilatation in an unselected population. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:242, 2003
James CA, Watson AR, Twining P, et al: Antenatally detected urinary tract abnormalities: changing incidence and management. Eur J Pediatr 157:508, 1998
Johnson MP, Johnson A, Holzgreve W, et al: First-trimester simple hygroma: cause and outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 168:156, 1993
Jones AM, Isenburg J, Salemi JL, et al: Increasing prevalence of gastroschisis–14 states, 1995–2012. MMWR 65(2):23, 2016
Joó JG, Tóth Z, Beke A, et al: Etiology, prenatal diagnoses and outcome of ventriculomegaly in 230 cases. Fetal Diagn Ther 24(3):254, 2008
Katz JA, Chock VY, Davis AS, et al: Utility of prenatal MRI in the evaluation and management of fetal ventriculomegaly. J Perinatol 38(11):1444, 2018
Kharrat R, Yamamoto M, Roume J, et al: Karyotype and outcome of fetuses diagnosed with cystic hygroma in the first trimester in relation to nuchal translucency thickness. Prenat Diagn 26:369, 2006
Kousi M, Katsanis N: The genetic basis of hydrocephalus. Ann Review Neurosci 39:409, 2016
Kucik JE, Alverson CJ, Gliboa SM, et al: Racial/ethnic variations in the prevalence of selected major birth defects, Metropolitan Atlanta, 1994–2005. Public Health Reports 127(1):52, 2012
Lau CT, Kan A, Shek N et al: Is congenital pulmonary airway malformation really a rare disease? Result of a prospective registry with universal antenatal screening program. Pediatr Surg Int 33(1):105, 2017
Lauson S, Alvarez C, Patel MS, et al: Outcome of prenatally diagnosed isolated clubfoot. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 35:708, 2010
Lazebnik N, Many A: The severity of polyhydramnios, estimated fetal weight and preterm delivery are independent risk factors for the presence of congenital anomalies. Gynecol Obstet Invest 48:28, 1999
Lee RS, Cendron M, Kinnamon DD, et al: Antenatal hydronephrosis as a predictor of postnatal outcome: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 118:586, 2006
Lloyd DF, Rutherford MA, Simpson JM, et al: The neurodevelopmental implications of hypoplastic left heart syndrome in the fetus. Cardiol Young 27(2):217, 2017
Lodeiro JG, Feinstein SJ, Lodeiro SB: Fetal premature atrial contractions associated with hydralazine. Am J Obstet Gynecol 160(1):105, 1989
Long A, Moran P, Robson S: Outcome of fetal cerebral posterior fossa anomalies. Prenat Diagn 26:707, 2006
Maarse W, Berge SJ, Pistorius L, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of transabdominal ultrasound in detecting prenatal cleft lip and palate: a systematic review. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 35:495, 2010
Maarse W, Pistorius LR, Van Eeten WK, et al: Prenatal ultrasound screening for orofacial clefts. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 38:434, 2011
Mahle WT, Clancy RR, McGaurn SP, et al: Impact of prenatal diagnosis on survival and early neurologic morbidity in neonates with the hypoplastic left heart syndrome. Pediatrics 107:1277, 2001
Malone FD, Ball RH, Nyberg DA, et al: First-trimester septated cystic hygroma: prevalence, natural history, and pediatric outcome. Obstet Gynecol 106:288, 2005
Mammen L, Benson CB: Outcome of fetuses with clubfeet diagnosed by prenatal sonography. J Ultrasound Med 23:497, 2004
Mann S, Johnson MP, Wilson RD: Fetal thoracic and bladder shunts. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 15:28, 2010
Maya I, Singer A, Yonath H, et al: What have we learned from 691 prenatal chromosomal microarrays for ventricular septal defects? Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(6):757, 2020
Mortier GR, Cohn DH, Cormier-Daire V, et al: Nosology and classification of genetic skeletal disorders: 2019 revision. Am J Med Genet A 179(12):2393, 2019
Mullassery D, Ba'ath ME, Jesudason EC, et al: Value of liver herniation in prediction of outcome in fetal congenital diaphragmatic hernia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 35:609, 2010
Nelson DB, Dashe JS, McIntire DD, et al: Fetal skeletal dysplasias: sonographic indices associated with adverse outcomes. J Ultrasound Med 33(6):1085, 2014
Nelson DB, Martin R, Twickler DM, et al: Sonographic detection and clinical importance of growth restriction in pregnancies with gastroschisis. J Ultrasound Med 34(12):2217, 2015
Nelson JS, Stebbins RC, Strassle PD, et al: Geographic distribution of live births with tetralogy of Fallot in North Carolina 2003 to 2012. Birth Defect Res A Clin Mol Teratol 106(11):881, 2016

Nguyen HT, Benson CB, Bromley B, et al: Multidisciplinary consensus on the classification of prenatal and postnatal urinary tract dilatation (UTD classification system). J Pediatric Urol 10:982, 2014
Nguyen HT, Herndon CDA, Cooper C, et al: The Society for Fetal Urology consensus statement on the evaluation and management of antenatal hydronephrosis. J Pediatr Urol 6:212, 2010
Nicolaides KH, Campbell S, Gabbe SG: Ultrasound screening for spina bifida: cranial and cerebellar signs. Lancet 2(8498):72, 1986
Norem CT, Schoen EJ, Walton DL, et al: Routine ultrasonography compared with maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein for neural tube defect screening. Obstet Gynecol 106:747, 2005
Oei SG, Vosters RP, van der Hagen NL: Fetal arrhythmia caused by excessive intake of caffeine by pregnant women. BMJ 298:568, 1989
Offerdal K, Jebens N, Swertsen T, et al: Prenatal ultrasound detection of facial cleft: a prospective study of 49,314 deliveries in a non-selected population in Norway. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 31:639, 2008
Oh KY, Gibson TH, Pinter JD, et al: Clinical outcomes following prenatal diagnosis of asymmetric ventriculomegaly, interhemispheric cyst, and callosal dysgenesis (AVID). Prenat Diagn 39(1):26, 2019
Oluyomi-Obi T, Kuret V, Puligandla P, et al: Antenatal predictors of outcome in prenatally diagnosed congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH). J Pediatr Surg 52(5):881, 2017
Orioli IM, Catilla EE: Epidemiology of holoprosencephaly: prevalence and risk factors. Am J Med Genet Part C Semin Med Genet 154C:13, 2010
Overcash RT, DeUgarte DA, Stephenson ML, et al: Factors associated with gastroschisis outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 124(3):551, 2014
Paladini D, Alfirevic Z, Carvalho JS, et al: ISUOG consensus statement on current understanding of the association of neurodevelopmental delay and congenital heart disease: impact on prenatal counseling. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 49(2):287, 2017
Paladini D, Morra T, Teodoro A, et al: Objective diagnosis of micrognathia in the fetus: the jaw index. Obstet Gynecol 93(3):382, 1999
Paladini D, Russo M, Teodoro A, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of congenital heart disease in the Naples area during the years 1994–1999—the experience of a joint fetal-pediatric cardiology unit. Prenatal Diagn 22(7):545, 2002
Palatnik A, Grobman WA, Cohen LS, et al: Role of the 3-vessel and trachea view in antenatal detection of tetralogy of Fallot. J Ultrasound Med 35(8):1799, 2016
Pavone V, Bianca S, Grosso G, et al: Congenital talipes equinovarus: an epidemiological study in Sicily. Acta Orthop 83(3):294, 2012
Pedersen RN, Calzolari E, Husby S, et al: Oesophageal atresia: prevalence, prenatal diagnosis and associated anomalies in 23 European regions. Arch Dis Child 97:227, 2012
Peranteau WH, Boelig MM, Khalek N, et al: Effect of single and multiple courses of maternal betamethasone on prenatal congenital lung lesion growth and fetal survival. J Pediatr Surg 51(1):28, 2016
Pilu G: Prenatal diagnosis of cerebrospinal anomalies. In Fleischer AC, Abramowicz JS, Goncalves LF, et al (eds): Fleischer's Sonography in Obstetrics and Gynecology: Textbook and Teaching Cases, 8th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018
Pinette MG, Hand M, Hunt RC, et al: Surviving sirenomelia. J Ultrasound Med 24(11):1555, 2005
Rahemtullah A, McGillivray B, Wilson RD: Suspected skeletal dysplasias: femur length to abdominal circumference ratio can be used in ultrasonographic prediction of fetal outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 177:864, 1997
Raitio A, Lahtinen A, Syvanen J, et al: Gastroschisis in Finland 1993 to 2014-increasing prevalence, high rates of abortion, and survival: a population-based study. Eur J Pediatr Surg 30(6):536, 2020
Raitio A, Tauriainen A, Syvanen J, et al: Omphalocele in Finland from 1993 to 2014: trends, prevalence, mortality, and associated malformations-a population-based study. Eur J Pediatr Surg 31(2):172, 2021
Ramos GA, Romine LE, Gindes L, et al: Evaluation of the fetal secondary palate by 3-dimensional sonography. J Ultrasound Med 29:357, 2010
Ramus RM, Martin LB, Twickler DM: Ultrasonographic prediction of fetal outcome in suspected skeletal dysplasias with use of the femur length-to-abdominal circumference ratio. Am J Obstet Gynecol 179(5):1348, 1998
Ravi P, Mills L, Fruitman D, et al: Population trends in prenatal detection of transposition of great arteries: impact of obstetric screening ultrasound guidelines. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 51(5):659, 2018
Reddy UM, Abuhamad AZ, Levine D, et al: Fetal imaging: executive summary of a joint Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, American College of Radiology, Society for Pediatric Radiology, and Society of Radiologists in Ultrasound Fetal Imaging Workshop. Obstet Gynecol 123(5):1070, 2014
Rodriguez N, Casasbuenas A, Andreeva E, et al. First-trimester diagnosis of agnathia-otocephaly complex: a series of 4 cases and review of the literature. J Ultrasound Med 38(3):805, 2019
Sanford A, Saadai P, Lee H, et al: Congenital high airway obstruction sequence (CHAOS): a new case and a review of phenotypic features. Am J Med Genet A 158A(12):3126, 2012
Santiago-Muñoz PC, McIntire DD, Barber RG, et al: Outcomes of pregnancies with fetal gastroschisis. Obstet Gynecol 110:663, 2007
Schreuder MF, Westland R, van Wijk JA: Unilateral multicystic dysplastic kidney: a meta-analysis of observational studies on the incidence, associated urinary tract malformations and the contralateral kidney. Nephrol Dial Transplant 24:1810, 2009
Sharma R, Stone S, Alzouebi A, et al: Perinatal outcome of prenatally diagnosed congenital talipes equinovarus. Prenat Diagn 31:142, 2011
Sheih CP, Liu MB, Hung CS, et al: Renal abnormalities in schoolchildren. Pediatrics 84:1086, 1989
Shepard MJ, Richards VA, Berkowitz RL, et al: An evaluation of two equations for predicting fetal weight by ultrasound. Am J Obstet Gynecol 142:47, 1982
Shipp TD, Bromley B, Hornberger LK, et al: Levorotation of the fetal cardiac axis: a clue for the presence of congenital heart disease. Obstet Gynecol 85:97, 1995
Shulman LP, Emerson DS, Felker RE, et al: High frequency of cytogenetic abnormalities in fetuses with cystic hygroma diagnosed in the first trimester. Obstet Gynecol 80:80, 1992
Sinkovskaya ES, Chaoui R, Karl K, et al: Fetal cardiac axis and congenital heart defects in early gestation. Obstet Gynecol 125(2)453, 2015
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine. Ultrasound screening for fetal microcephaly following Zika virus exposure. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(6):B2, 2016
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Fox NS, Monteagudo A, et al: Mild fetal ventriculomegaly: diagnosis, evaluation, and management. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(1):B2, 2018
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Simpson LL: Twin-twin transfusion syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(1):3, 2013
Solomon BD, Rosenbaum KN, Meck JM, et al: Holoprosencephaly due to numeric chromosome abnormalities. Am J Med Genet Part C Semin Med Genet 154C:146, 2010
Sotiriadis A, Makrydimas G: Neurodevelopment after prenatal diagnosis of isolated agenesis of the corpus callosum: an integrative review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(4):337.e1, 2012
South AP, Stutey KM, Meinzen-Derr J, et al: Metaanalysis of the prevalence of intrauterine fetal death in gastroschisis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(2):114.e.1, 2013
Springett A, Draper ES, Rankin J, et al: Birth prevalence and survival of exomphalos in England and Wales: 2005 to 2011. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 100(9):721, 2014
Stege G, Fenton A, Jaffray B: Nihilism in the 1990s: the true mortality of congenital diaphragmatic hernia. Pediatr 112:532, 2003
Stevenson DA, Carey JC, Byrne JL, et al: Analysis of skeletal dysplasias in the Utah population. Am J Med Genet 158A:1046, 2012
Stocker JT: Congenital pulmonary airway malformation: a new name and expanded classification of congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation of the lung. Histopathology 41(Suppl):424, 2002
Stocker JT, Madewell JE, Drake RM: Congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation of the lung: classification and morphologic spectrum. Hum Pathol 8:155, 1977
Stoll C, Alembik Y, Dott B, et al: Associated malformations in patients with limb reduction deficiencies. Eur J Med Genet 53(5):286, 2010
Stoll C, Dott B, Roth MP: Associated anomalies in cases with agenesis of the corpus callosum. Am J Med Genet A 179(10):2101, 2019
Stollman TH, de Blaauw I, Wijnen MH, et al: Decreased mortality but increased morbidity in neonates with jejunoileal atresia; a study of 114 cases over a 34-year period. J Pediatr Surg 44(1):217, 2009
Sun HY, Proudfoot JA, McCandless RT: Prenatal detection of critical cardiac outflow tract anomalies remains suboptimal despite revised obstetrical imaging guidelines. Cong Heart Dis 13:748, 2018
Svirsky R, Brabbing-Goldstein D, Rozovkski U, et al: The genetic and clinical outcome of isolated fetal muscular ventricular septal defect. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(17)2837, 2019
Swamy R, Embleton N, Hale J, et al: Sacrococcygeal teratoma over two decades: birth prevalence, prenatal diagnosis and clinical outcomes. Prenat Diagn 28:1048, 2008
Szabo N, Gergev G, Kobor J, et al: Corpus callosum abnormalities: birth prevalence and clinical spectrum in Hungary. Pediatr Neurol 44:420, 2011
Turkbey B, Ocak I, Daryanani K, et al: Autosomal recessive polycystic kidney disease and congenital hepatic fibrosis. Pediatr Radiol 39:100, 2009
Tworetzky W, McElhinney DB, Reddy VM, et al: Improved surgical outcome after fetal diagnosis of hypoplastic left heart syndrome. Circulation 103:1269, 2001

Van Nisselrooij AE, Rozendaal L, Linskens IH, et al: Postnatal outcome of fetal isolated ventricular size disproportion in the absence of aortic coarctation. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 52(5):593, 2018

Vasluian E, van der Sluis CK, van Essen AJ, et al: Birth prevalence for congenital limb defects in the northern Netherlands: a 30-year population-based study. BMC Musculoskel Disord 14:323, 2013

Vergani P, Ceruti P, Locatelli A, et al: Accuracy of prenatal ultrasonographic diagnosis of duplex renal system. J Ultrasound Med 18:463, 1998

Vilanova-Sanchez A, Reck CA, Sebastião YV et al: Can sacral development as a marker for caudal regression help identify associated urologic anomalies in patients with anorectal malformation? J Pediatr Surg 53(11)2178, 2018

Walker SJ, Ball RH, Babcook CJ, et al: Prevalence of aneuploidy and additional anatomic abnormalities in fetuses and neonates with cleft lip with or without cleft palate. A population-based study in Utah. J Ultrasound Med 20(11):1175, 2001

Whitten SM, Wilcox DT: Duplex systems. Prenat Diagn 21:952, 2001

Wiesel A, Queisser-Luft A, Clementi M, et al: Prenatal detection of congenital renal malformations by fetal ultrasonographic examination: an analysis of 709,030 births in 12 European countries. Euro J Med Genet 48:131, 2005

Wilhelm L, Borgers H: The "equals sign": a novel marker in the diagnosis of fetal isolated soft palate. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 36:439, 2010

Williams B, Tareen B, Resnick M: Pathophysiology and treatment of ureteropelvic junction obstruction. Curr Urol Rep 8:111, 2007

Wilson WM, Valente AM, Hickey EJ, et al: Outcomes of patients with hypoplastic left heart syndrome reaching adulthood after fontan palliation: multicenter study. Circulation. 137(9): 978, 2018

Woodward M, Frank D: Postnatal management of antenatal hydronephrosis. BJU Int 89:149, 2002

Worley KC, Dashe JS, Barber RG, et al: Fetal magnetic resonance imaging in isolated diaphragmatic hernia: volume of herniated liver and neonatal outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(3):318.e1, 2009

Yamada S, Uwabe C, Fujii S, et al: Phenotypic variability in human embryonic holoprosencephaly in the Kyoto collection. Birth Defects Res Part A Clin Mol Teratol 70:495, 2004

Yildirim G, Gungorduk K, Aslan H, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of extralobar pulmonary sequestration. Arch Gynecol Obstet 278:181, 2008

Yulia A, Pawar S, Chelemen O, et al: Fetal hemivertebra at 11 to 14 weeks' gestation. J Ultrasound Med 39(9):1857, 2020

Zerres K, Mucher G, Becker J, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of autosomal recessive polycystic kidney disease: molecular genetics, clinical experience, and fetal morphology. Am J Med Genet 6:137, 1998

Zhao Y, Abuhamad A, Fleenor J, et al. Prenatal and postnatal survival of fetal tetralogy of Fallot: a meta-analysis of perinatal outcomes and associated genetic disorders. J Ultrasound Med 35(5):905, 2016

CHAPTER 16

Genetics

Genetics is the study of genes, heredity, and the variation of inherited characteristics. Medical genetics addresses the etiology and pathogenesis of human diseases that are at least partially genetic in origin, as well as their prediction and prevention. Whereas a gene is a specific sequence of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) on a single chromosome that codes for a particular protein, a *genome* is the entirety of all genes that make up an organism. *Genomics* is the study of how genes function and interact with one other. Chromosomal, mendelian, and nonmendelian genetic conditions are reviewed in this chapter. Prenatal and preimplantation genetic testing and newborn genetic screening are discussed in Chapters 17 and 32, respectively.

Genetic disease is common. Two to 3 percent of newborns have a recognized structural abnormality, another 3 percent are diagnosed with an abnormality by age 5 years, and yet another 8 to 10 percent are found to have a functional or developmental abnormality before reaching adulthood.

GENOMICS IN OBSTETRICS

The Human Genome Project was an international research program that sequenced the 3 billion base pairs and more than 20,000 genes that make up the human genome. It paved the way for research into gene organization and function in an effort to understand the molecular basis of disease. More than 99 percent of our DNA is identical. The coding regions of DNA—*exons*—constitute only 1.5 percent of the genome. An *exome* is the entirety of all the exons that an organism contains. *Introns* are DNA sequences involved in coding regulation and make up 24 percent of the genome. Intergenic DNA composes the remainder.

Our genetic code varies once every 200 to 500 base pairs, usually as a single-nucleotide polymorphism (SNP). Thus, whole genome sequencing and whole exome sequencing, described later (p. 327), hold tremendous potential to further elucidate genetic variants in disease.

Toward this goal, genetic and genomic databases are maintained by the National Center for Biotechnology Information (2021). These are freely accessible and can be indispensable to providers who offer counseling and testing for genetic conditions. The *GeneReviews* database has in-depth clinical information for more than 800 genetic conditions, including diagnostic criteria and management considerations. The *Genetic Testing Registry (GTR)* database contains information for nearly 80,000 genetic tests and instructions for specimen collection and transport to individual laboratories throughout

the world (National Center for Biotechnology Information, 2021). The National Library of Medicine (2021) has also established a genetic information database, the *MedlinePlus Genetics,* which is intended for the lay population. It provides explanations of more than 1300 genetic conditions, a glossary of genetic concepts, and links to more comprehensive medical resources.

CHROMOSOMAL ABNORMALITIES

Chromosomal abnormalities figure prominently in genetic disease. They account for >50 percent of first-trimester miscarriages, approximately 20 percent of second-trimester losses, and 6 to 8 percent of stillbirths and early-childhood deaths (Reddy, 2012; Stevenson, 2004; Wou, 2016). Based on data from population-based registries, chromosomal abnormalities are identified in 0.4 percent of recognized pregnancies (Wellesley, 2012). Most of these are aneuploidies. Trisomy 21 accounts for >50 percent, trisomy 18 for nearly 15 percent, and trisomy 13 for 5 percent of cases (Fig. 16-1). If no karyotypic abnormality is identified in a fetus with a structural anomaly, additional testing with chromosomal microarray analysis is anticipated to detect a chromosomal deletion or duplication—a *copy number variant*—in approximately 6.5 percent of cases (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020c).

Standard Nomenclature

Chromosomal abnormalities are described using the International System for Human Cytogenomic Nomenclature (McGowan-Jordan, 2020). Abnormalities fall into two broad categories: *abnormal chromosome number*, such as trisomy, and *abnormal chromosome structure*, such as a DNA segment deletion or duplication. Each chromosome has a short arm, termed the "p" or petit arm, and a long arm, known as the "q" arm, selected because it is the next letter in the alphabet. The two arms are separated by the centromere.

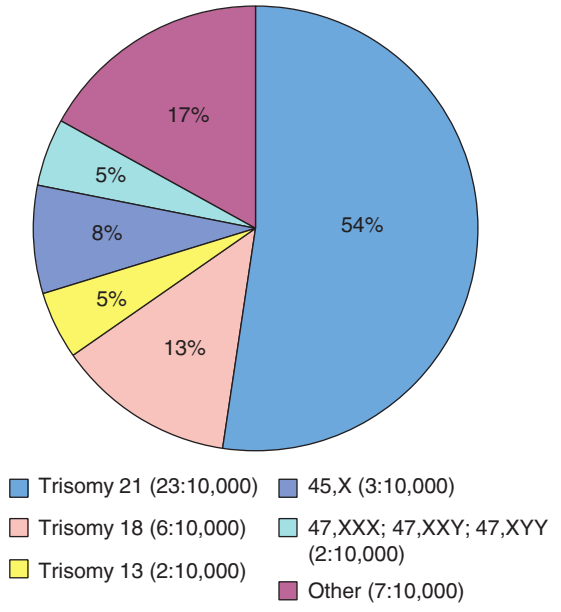


FIGURE 16-1 Prevalence and relative proportion of selected chromosomal abnormalities from EUROCAT (European Surveillance of Congenital Anomalies) population-based registries that included >10,000 aneuploid live births, fetal deaths, and pregnancy terminations, 2000–2006.

When reporting a karyotype, the total number of chromosomes is listed first, corresponding to the number of centromeres. This is followed by the sex chromosomes, XX or XY, and then by a description of any structural variation. Specific chromosomal abnormalities are indicated by standard abbreviations, such as del (deletion), inv (inversion), and t (translocation). The affected region or bands of the arms are then reported, so that the reader will know the exact location. Examples are shown in Table 16-1.

Nomenclature is similar for fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH), a technique used to rapidly identify a specific chromosome abnormality (p. 325). The abbreviation *ish* applies when in situ hybridization is performed on metaphase cells and *nuc ish* when performed on interphase nuclei. If the result is normal, ish is followed by the probe's specific chromosomal region, such as 22q11.2, and then the name of the probe and the number of signals visualized—for example, HIRAx2. If a deletion is identified, *del* is included before the chromosomal region, and the name of the probe is followed by a minus sign (HIRA–), as shown in Table 16-1. The 22q11.2 deletion syndrome is discussed later (p. 315).

For chromosomal microarray analysis (CMA), the designation begins with the abbreviation *arr* (p. 348). This is followed by the version of the genome build to which the nucleotide designations are aligned, such as GRCh38 for Genome Reference Consortium human build 38. Next, the number of the chromosome containing the abnormality is listed, followed by the p or q arm, and then the specific bands in question. CMA reports also include the affected base pair coordinates and thus convey the exact size and location for every abnormality identified (see Table 16-1). The information is reported in the same way whether the alteration is pathogenic or is of uncertain clinical significance.

Abnormalities of Chromosome Number

The most easily recognized chromosomal abnormalities are numerical. *Aneuploidy* is the inheritance of either an extra chromosome—resulting in trisomy, or loss of a chromosome—*monosomy*. This differs from *polyploidy*, which is an abnormal number of whole haploid chromosome sets. For example, triploidy has 69 chromosomes. The estimated incidence of various numerical chromosomal abnormalities is shown in Figure 16-1 (Wellesley, 2012).

Autosomal Trisomies

Trisomy usually results from nondisjunction, which is the failure of normal chromosomal pairing and separation during meiosis. Nondisjunction may occur if the chromosomes: (1) fail to pair up, (2) pair up properly but separate prematurely, or (3) fail to separate. Although each chromosome pair is equally likely to have a segregation error, trisomies other than 21, 18, or 13 rarely result in term pregnancies. Each of these autosomal

TABLE 16-1. Examples of Karyotype Designations Using the 2020 International System for Human Cytogenomic Nomenclature

Karyotype	Description
46,XX	Normal female chromosome constitution
47,XY,+21	Male with trisomy 21
47,XX,+21/46,XX	Female who is a mosaic of trisomy 21 cells and cells with normal constitution
46,XY,del(4)(p14)	Male with terminal deletion (del) of the short arm of chromosome 4 at band p14
46,XX,dup(5)(p14p15.3)	Female with duplication (dup) of the short arm of chromosome 5 from band p14 to band p15.3
45,XY,der(13;14)(q10;q10)	Male with balanced robertsonian translocation (der) of the long arms of chromosomes 13 and 14—the karyotype now has one normal 13, one normal 14, and the translocation chromosome, reducing the normal 46 chromosome complement to 45
46,XX,t(11;22)(q23;q11.2)	Female with a balanced reciprocal translocation (t) between chromosomes 11 and 22, with breakpoints at 11q23 and 22q11.2
46,XY,inv(3)(p21q13)	Male with inversion (inv) of chromosome 3 that extends from p21 to q13—a pericentric inversion because it includes the centromere
46,X,r(X)(p22.1q27)	Female with one normal X and one ring (r) X chromosome, with the regions distal to p22.1 and q27 deleted from the ring
46,X,i(X)(q10)	Female with one normal X chromosome and an isochromosome (i) of the long arm of the other X
ish 22q11.2(HIRAx2)	FISH of metaphase cells using a probe for the HIRA locus of the 22q11.2 region, with 2 signals identified (no evidence of microdeletion)
ish del(22)(q11.2q11.2) (HIRA-)	FISH of metaphase cells using a probe for the HIRA locus of the 22q11.2 region, with only one signal identified, consistent with the microdeletion
arr[GRCh38] 18p11.32q23 (102328_79093443)x3	Microarray analysis (arr), genome build GRCh38, showing a single copy gain on chromosome 18 from band p11.32 to band q23 (essentially the entire chromosome), consistent with trisomy 18
arr[GRCh38] 4q32.2q35.1 (163146681_183022312)x1	Microarray analysis (arr), genome build GRCh38, showing a copy loss on the long arm of chromosome 4 at bands q32.2 through q35.1 (19.9 Mb)
arr[GRCh38] 15q11.2q26 (23123715_101888908)x2 hmz	SNP microarray analysis (arr), genome build GRCh 38, showing homozygosity for the entire long arm of chromosome 15

FISH = fluorescence in situ hybridization; GRCh38 = Genome Reference Consortium human build 38; HIRA = histone cell cycle regulator; SNP = single nucleotide polymorphism.
Used with permission from Dr. Kathleen S. Wilson.

trisomies has a spectrum of phenotypic severity. Some fetuses come to attention earlier in a pregnancy due to multiple major organ abnormalities or hydrops fetalis (p. 328). Others have more subtle findings or are detected only through prenatal screening tests (Chap. 17, p. 337). Survival data are based on cases with better prognosis, and this factors into counseling.

The likelihood that a pregnancy will be complicated by an autosomal trisomy rises steeply with maternal age and particularly after age 35 (Fig. 16-2) (Mai, 2013). From birth until ovulation, oocytes are suspended in midprophase of meiosis I. If nondisjunction occurs after completion of meiosis, one gamete will have two copies of the affected chromosome, which leads to trisomy if fertilized. The other gamete, receiving no copy of the affected chromosome, is nullisomic and will be monosomic if fertilized. It is estimated that 10 to 20 percent of oocytes are aneuploid secondary to meiotic errors compared with 3 to 4 percent of sperm. After a pregnancy with an autosomal trisomy, the risk for any autosomal trisomy in a future pregnancy approximates 1 percent until the woman's age-related risk exceeds this. Screening and prenatal diagnosis of autosomal trisomies are discussed in Chapter 17 (p. 333). Parental chromosomal studies are not indicated unless the abnormality was caused by an unbalanced translocation or other structural rearrangement (p. 315).

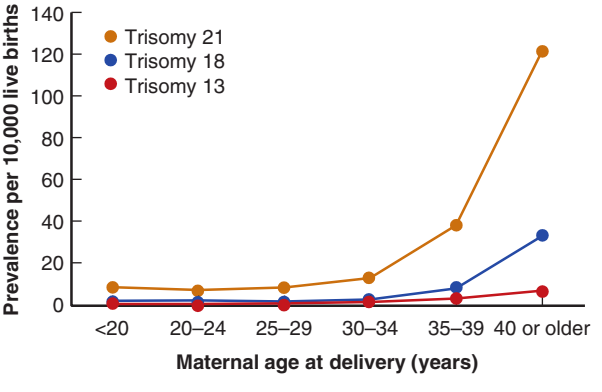


FIGURE 16-2 Prevalence of autosomal trisomies according to maternal age found in population-based birth defect surveillance programs in the United States, 2006–2010.

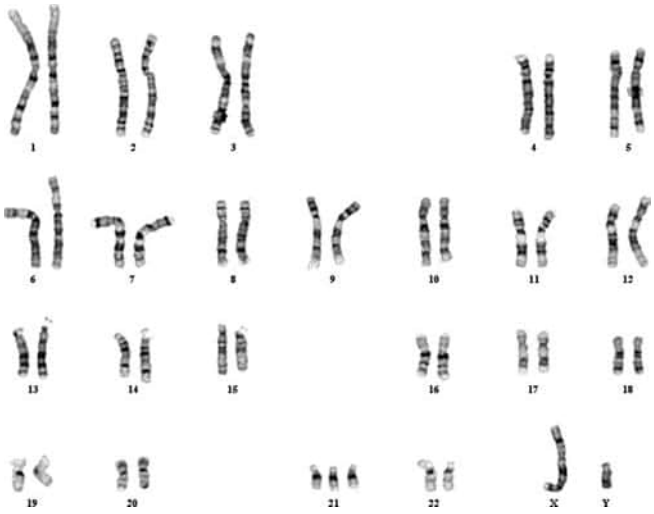


FIGURE 16-3 Male karyotype with trisomy 21 (47,XY,+21), consistent with Down syndrome. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Prasad Koduru.)

Trisomy 21—Down Syndrome. In 1866, J. L. H. Down described a group of intellectually disabled children with distinctive physical features. Nearly 100 years later, Lejeune (1959) demonstrated that Down syndrome stems from an autosomal trisomy (Fig. 16-3). Trisomy 21 causes 95 percent of Down syndrome cases. The nondisjunction event occurs during meiosis I in approximately 75 percent of cases and in meiosis II in the remainder. Because chromosome 21 is acrocentric, a robertsonian translocation (p. 315) may occur, and this accounts for 3 to 4 percent of Down syndrome births. The remaining 1 to 2 percent are caused by isochromosome 21 or mosaicism for chromosome 21 (p. 317).

Down syndrome is the most common nonlethal trisomy. It is identified in approximately 1 in 450 pregnancies (Loane, 2013). In the United States, fetal losses and pregnancy terminations yield an estimated prevalence of 1 case per 740 live births (Mai, 2013; Parker, 2010). The fetal death rate beyond 20 weeks' gestation approximates 5 percent. Coinciding with the rise in overall number of pregnancies in women aged 35 years and older, the proportion of pregnancies with Down syndrome has increased approximately 33 percent during the past four decades (Loane, 2013; Parker, 2010; Shin, 2009). Most Down syndrome births at Parkland Hospital now occur in women in this age group (Hussamy, 2019).

If major anomalies and minor aneuploidy markers are considered, 50 to 75 percent of pregnancies affected by Down syndrome are found to have a sonographic abnormality (Chap. 17, p. 340) (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020d; Hussamy, 2019). A major structural malformation is detected in the second trimester in approximately one third of cases. The most prevalent anomalies in affected children are cardiac and gastrointestinal. Cardiac abnormalities occur in approximately 50 percent, particularly endocardial cushion defects and ventricular septal defects (Figs. 15-39A and 15-39B, p. 291) (Bergstrom, 2016; Freeman, 2008; Stoll, 2015). Gastrointestinal abnormalities are identified in 6 to 12 percent and include esophageal atresia, duodenal atresia, and Hirschsprung disease (Fig. 15-48, p. 296) (Bull, 2011; Stoll, 2015).

Other health problems are also common with Down syndrome. These include hearing loss in 75 percent, optical refractive errors in 50 percent, cataracts in 15 percent, obstructive sleep apnea in 60 percent, thyroid disease in 15 percent, transient myeloproliferative disorder in 10 percent of newborns, early-onset Alzheimer's disease in 70 percent of adults, and a higher incidence of leukemia (Bull, 2011; Hartley, 2015). Women with Down syndrome are fertile, and nearly one third of their offspring will have Down syndrome. Males with Down syndrome have markedly reduced spermatogenesis and are almost always sterile. The average intelligence quotient (IQ) score is 35 to 70. Social skills in affected children are usually higher than predicted by their IQ scores.

Characteristic features of Down syndrome are shown in Figure 16-4. Typical findings include brachycephaly; epicanthal folds and up-slanting palpebral fissures; Brushfield spots, which are whitish spots on the periphery of the iris; a flat nasal bridge; and hypotonia. Infants often have loose skin at the

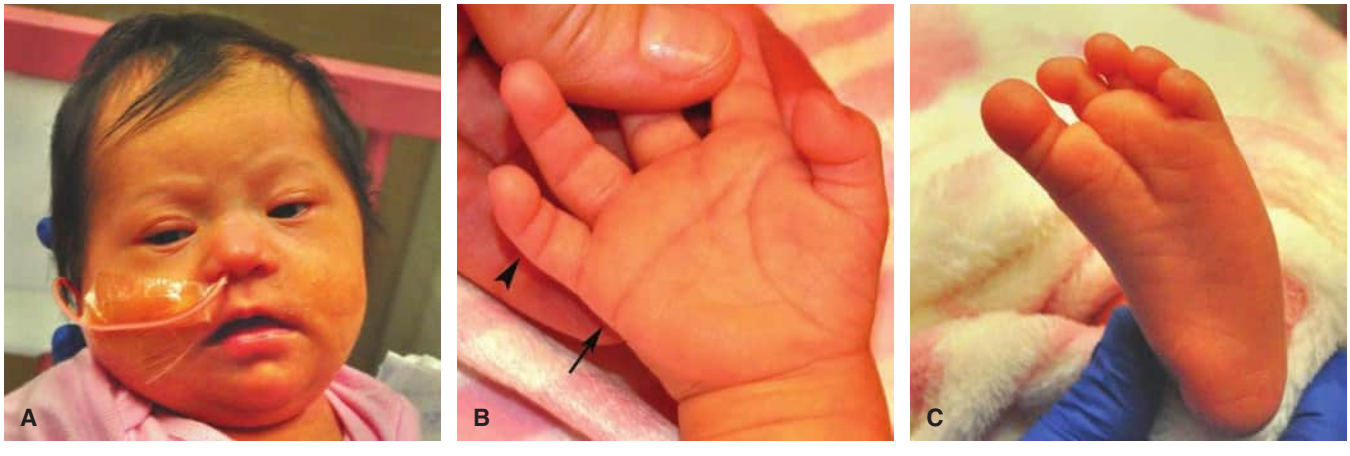


FIGURE 16-4 Newborn with Down syndrome, karyotype 47,XX,+21 (trisomy 21). **A.** Characteristic facial features include epicanthal folds and a flattened nasal bridge. **B.** The hand has a single palmar crease (*arrow*) and hypoplasia of the middle phalanx of the fifth digit (*arrowhead*). **C.** The "sandal gap" between the first and second toes is also known as hallux varus. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Aldeboran N. Rodriguez.)

nape of the neck, a prominent space or "sandal-gap" between the first and second toes, short fingers, a single palmar crease, and clinodactyly of the fifth digit, in which hypoplasia of the middle phalanx causes inward curvature. Discussed in Chapter 17, some of these findings are seen during prenatal ultrasound examination.

Data suggest that approximately 95 percent of liveborn infants with Down syndrome survive the first year. The 10-year survival rate is at least 90 percent overall and is 99 percent if major malformations are absent (Rankin, 2012; Vendola, 2010). Average life expectancy is 55 to 60 years. Several organizations offer education and support for prospective parents faced with prenatal diagnosis of Down syndrome. These include the March of Dimes, National Down Syndrome Congress (www.ndsccenter.org), and National Down Syndrome Society (www.ndss.org).

Trisomy 18—Edwards Syndrome. The association between this constellation of abnormalities and an autosomal trisomy was first described by Edwards (1960). In population-based series of abortuses, stillbirths, and live births, trisomy 18 approximates 1 per 2000 recognized pregnancies (Goel, 2019; Loane, 2013; Parker, 2010). High in-utero lethality and termination of many affected pregnancies explains a live birth prevalence of just 1 per 6600 to 10,000. Unlike Down syndrome and Patau syndrome, which may result from a robertsonian translocation because they involve acrocentric chromosomes, Edwards syndrome uncommonly stems from a chromosomal rearrangement.

Virtually every organ can be affected by trisomy 18. Common major anomalies include heart defects in more than 90 percent, particularly ventricular septal defects. Cerebellar vermian agenesis, myelomeningocele, diaphragmatic hernia, omphalocele, imperforate anus, and renal anomalies such as horseshoe kidney are others (Rosa, 2011; Springett, 2015; Watson, 2008). Sonographic images of these abnormalities are shown in Chapter 15. Frequent cranial and extremity abnormalities in affected fetuses include a "strawberry-shaped" cranium, abnormally wide cavum septum pellucidum, choroid plexus cysts, micrognathia, clenched hands with overlapping digits, radial aplasia with hyperflexed wrists, and rockerbottom or clubbed feet (Fig. 16-5) (Abele, 2013). Importantly, choroid plexus cysts only raise the risk for trisomy 18 in the setting of other risk factors, such as fetal structural abnormalities or an abnormal aneuploidy screening test result (Reddy, 2014).

Pregnancies with trisomy 18 that reach the third trimester often develop fetal-growth restriction, and the mean birthweight is <2500 g (Lin, 2006; Rosa, 2011). When undiagnosed, trisomy 18 has resulted in emergency cesarean for "fetal distress" in nearly 50 percent of cases (Schneider, 1981; Houlihan, 2013). Mode of delivery and management of heart rate abnormalities should be discussed in advance. Discussed in Chapter 35 (p. 628), perinatal palliative care consultation should be offered (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019).

In the National Birth Defects Prevention Study, median neonatal survival with trisomy 18 was 8 days, and the 5-year survival rate was 12 percent (Meyer, 2016). Not unexpectedly, major anomalies lower survival rates. Data from the Society of Thoracic Surgeons indicate that infants with trisomy 18 who undergo cardiac surgery have mortality rates 3 to 5 times higher than those without trisomy 18 (Cooper, 2019). Thus, among the minority with trisomy 18 who survive until birth, the condition is severely life limiting.

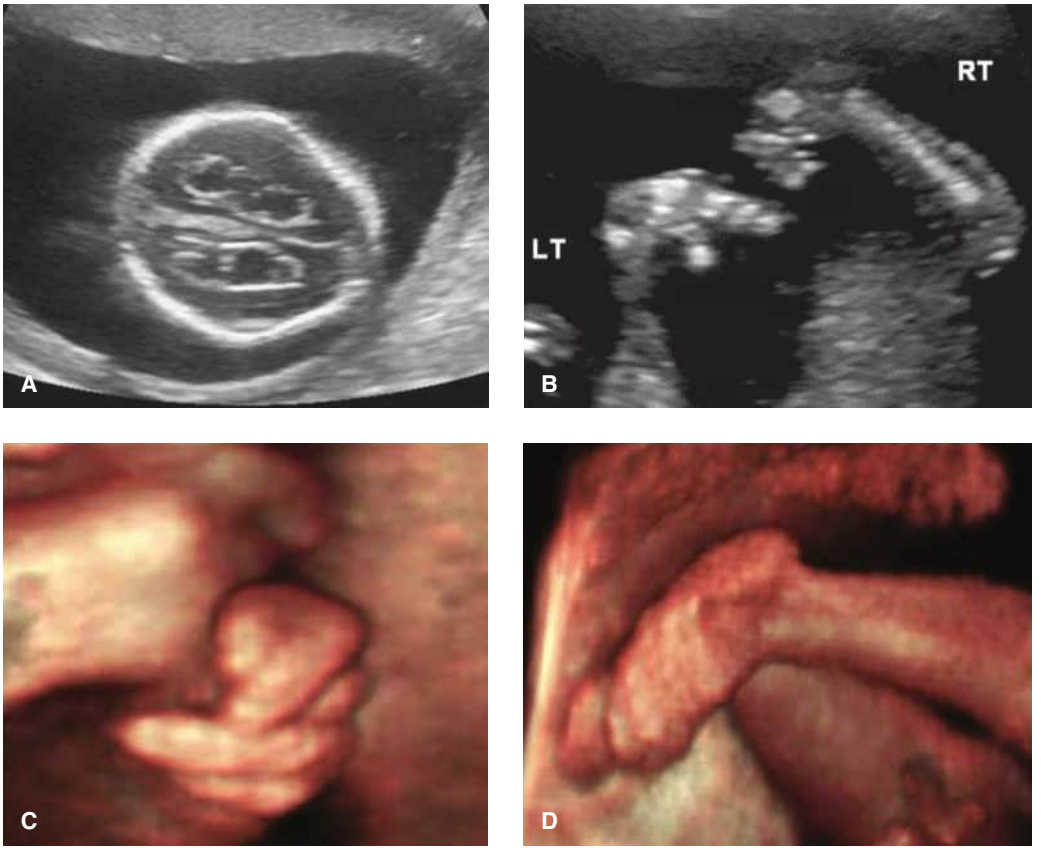


FIGURE 16-5 Trisomy 18—Edwards Syndrome. **A.** This transventricular sonographic view shows fetal choroid plexus cysts and an angulated "strawberry-shaped" skull. **B.** Radial clubhand is manifested as a single forearm bone (radius), with the hands in a fixed, hyperflexed position at right angles to the forearms. **C.** This three-dimensional (3-D) sonographic image shows the characteristic hand position of clenched fist with overlapping digits. **D.** 3-D sonographic image displays a rockerbottom foot (vertical talus).

Trisomy 13—Patau Syndrome. This constellation of fetal abnormalities and their association with an autosomal trisomy was first described by Patau and colleagues (1960). The incidence of trisomy 13 approximates 1 case in 5000 recognized pregnancies, which includes abortuses and stillbirths. Most affected fetuses are lost or terminated. The live birth prevalence is 1 per 12,000 to 18,000 (Goel, 2019; Loane, 2013; Parker, 2010).

At least 80 percent of pregnancies with Patau syndrome result from trisomy 13. With rare exception, the remainder are caused by a robertsonian translocation involving chromosome 13. The most common translocation involves chromosomes 13 and 14, der(13;14)(q10;q10), which is carried by approximately 1 in 1300 phenotypically normal individuals. Among translocation carriers, fewer than 2 percent give birth to a live infant with Patau syndrome.

Trisomy 13 may be associated with abnormalities of any organ system. Abnormalities of the brain, heart, kidneys, and extremities are the most frequent. Holoprosencephaly, usually the alobar type, is present in two thirds of cases and often is accompanied by severe facial abnormalities (Fig. 15-13, p. 279). These may include hypotelorism or cyclopia, microphthalmia, and nasal abnormalities that range from a single nostril to a proboscis. Cardiac defects are found in up to 90 percent (Shipp, 2002). Other abnormalities that suggest trisomy 13 include cephalocele, microcephaly, omphalocele, cystic renal dysplasia, polydactyly, rockerbottom feet, aplasia cutis, and cleft lip-palate, which may be median (Lin, 2007; Springett, 2015). Sonographic images of several of these are shown in Chapter 15. Affected fetuses often also have bilateral echogenic intracardiac foci. For the fetus or newborn with a cephalocele, cystic kidneys, and polydactyly, the differential diagnosis includes trisomy 13 and the autosomal-recessive Meckel–Gruber syndrome.

Trisomy 13 is life limiting, even more so than trisomy 18 (Domingo, 2019). In the National Birth Defects Prevention Study, median survival of neonates with trisomy 13 was 5 days, and the 5-year survival rate was below 10 percent (Meyer, 2016). Occasionally children with trisomy 13 have been candidates for palliative surgical procedures. Most of these have a milder phenotype that lacks brain, cardiac, gastrointestinal, or genitourinary abnormalities (Nelson, 2016). Counseling regarding prenatal diagnosis and management options is similar to that described for trisomy 18.

Unlike other aneuploidies, fetal trisomy 13 confers risk to the pregnant woman. Continuing pregnancies have at least a 25-percent risk for hypertensive complications (Dotters-Katz, 2018; Tuohy, 1992). The risk for preeclampsia with severe features is increased more than tenfold and often develops prior to 32 weeks' gestation. Chromosome 13 contains the gene for soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase-1 (sFlt-1), which is an antiangiogenic protein associated with preeclampsia (Chap. 40, p. 694). Investigators have documented overexpression of the sFlt-1 protein by trisomic 13 placentas and in serum of women with preeclampsia (Bdolah, 2006; Silasi, 2011).

Other Trisomies. Live births are extremely rare with any other autosomal trisomy. Trisomy 22 has been described in case reports and series (Heinrich, 2013; Kehinde, 2014). Affected fetuses have severe growth restriction, microcephaly with an abnormal-shaped cranium, midface hypoplasia, and cardiac and genitourinary abnormalities. Trisomy 16 is the most prevalent trisomy among first-trimester losses, accounting for 16 percent. Trisomies 21 and 22 are also common among first trimester losses. Trisomy 1 has never been reported.

Monosomy

Nondisjunction creates an equal number of nullisomic and disomic gametes. As a rule, missing chromosomal material is more devastating than extra chromosomal material, and almost all monosomic conceptuses are lost before implantation. The one exception is monosomy for the X chromosome (45,X), Turner syndrome, which is discussed subsequently. Unlike autosomal trisomies, which increase in incidence with maternal age, monosomy and maternal age lack an association.

Polyploidy

This is defined as more than two complete haploid chromosomal sets. Polyploidy accounts for approximately 20 percent of spontaneous abortions but is rarely found later in gestation.

Triploid pregnancies have three haploid sets, 69 chromosomes. If extra set of chromosomes is paternal, the result is *diandric triploidy*, and if maternal, *digynic triploidy*, relevant because the phenotype reflects the parent of origin. This is an example of *imprinting* (p. 322). Diandric or type I triploidy occurs after fertilization of one egg by two sperm or by one abnormal diploid sperm. Diandric triploidy produces a partial molar pregnancy, discussed in Chapter 13 (p. 237). With digynic or type II triploidy, the extra chromosomal set is maternal, and the egg fails to undergo the first or second meiotic division before fertilization. Digynic triploid placentas do not develop molar changes. However, the fetus usually develops asymmetrical growth restriction. Although diandric triploidy accounts for the majority of triploid conceptions, the early loss rate is so high that two thirds of triploid pregnancies identified beyond the first trimester are digynic (Jauniaux, 1999).

Triploidy is recognized in 1 per 5000 pregnancies (Zalel, 2016). It is considered lethal, and fetuses with either the diandric or digynic form typically have multiple structural anomalies. The brain, heart, kidneys, and extremities are commonly affected (Massalska, 2017; Zalel, 2016). Counseling, prenatal diagnosis, and delivery management are similar to those for trisomies 18 and 13. The recurrence risk for a woman whose triploid fetus survived past the first trimester is 1 to 1.5 percent, and thus prenatal diagnosis is offered in future pregnancies.

Tetraploid pregnancies have four haploid sets of chromosomes, resulting in either 92,XXXX or 92,XXYY. This suggests a postzygotic failure to complete an early cleavage division. The conceptus invariably succumbs, and the recurrence risk is minimal.

Sex Chromosome Abnormalities

45,X—Turner Syndrome. First described by Turner (1938), this syndrome later was found to be caused by monosomy X (Ford, 1959). The birth prevalence of Turner syndrome is approximately 1 in 2500 girls (Cragan, 2009; Dolk, 2010). The missing X chromosome is paternally derived in 80 percent of cases (Cockwell, 1991; Hassold, 1990).

Turner syndrome is the only monosomy compatible with life, but it is also the most common aneuploidy in first-trimester losses, accounting for 20 percent. This is explained by its wide range in phenotype. Approximately 98 percent of affected conceptuses are so abnormal that they abort early in the first trimester. Of the remainder, many manifest large, septated cystic hygromas in the late first or early second trimester, often in the setting of edema that progresses to hydrops fetalis. When cystic hygromas are accompanied by hydrops, the prognosis is extremely poor (Chap. 15, p. 286).

Fewer than 1 percent of pregnancies with Turner syndrome result in a liveborn neonate. Of these, only half are actually monosomy X—approximately a fourth have mosaicism for monosomy X, such as 45,X/46,XX or 45,X/46,XY, and another 15 percent have isochromosome X. It is thought that surviving individuals with 45,X may have had the benefit of "rescue" by an additional cell line containing 46,XX during critical phases of development that was subsequently lost (Hook, 2014).

Abnormalities associated with Turner syndrome include left-sided cardiac defects—such as coarctation of the aorta, hypoplastic left heart syndrome, or bicuspid aortic valve—in 30 to 50 percent; renal anomalies, particularly horseshoe kidney; and hypothyroidism. Other features are short stature, broad chest with widely spaced nipples, congenital lymphedema—puffiness over the dorsum of hands and feet, and a "webbed" posterior neck resulting from cystic hygromas. Intelligence scores are generally in the normal range, but there may be impairments in visual-spatial organization, nonverbal problem solving, and interpretation of social cues. A consensus guideline is available that addresses screening and treatment for the range of health problems affected individuals face (Graveholt, 2017). Growth hormone is typically administered in childhood to ameliorate short stature. More than 90 percent have ovarian dysgenesis and require estrogen repletion at puberty. An exception is mosaicism involving the Y chromosome, as this confers risk for germ cell neoplasm—regardless of whether the child is phenotypically male or female. Accordingly, eventual prophylactic bilateral gonadectomy is indicated (Cools, 2011; Schorge, 2020).

47,XXX. Approximately 1 in 1000 female newborns has an additional X chromosome—47,XXX (Berglund, 2020). The extra X is maternally derived in more than 90 percent of cases. The prevalence of 47,XXX is weakly associated with maternal age, and cell-free DNA screening has resulted in increased diagnoses. No specific pattern of malformations has been described, but genitourinary problems and seizure disorders are more common (Wigby, 2016). Affected infants do not have a characteristic appearance. When children do come to attention, features may include tall stature, hypertelorism, epicanthal folds, kyphoscoliosis, clinodactyly, and hypotonia (Tartaglia, 2010; Wigby, 2016). More than one third are diagnosed with a learning disability, half have attention deficit disorder, and overall cognitive scores are in the low-average range. Pubertal development is unaffected. Primary ovarian insufficiency has been reported. In the absence of prenatal diagnosis, it is estimated that 47,XXX is ascertained in only 10 percent of affected children (Tartalgia, 2010).

Females with two or more extra X chromosomes—48,XXXX or 49,XXXXX—are likely to have physical abnormalities apparent at birth. These abnormal X complements are associated with intellectual disability. For both males and females, the IQ score is lower with each additional X chromosome.

47,XXY—Klinefelter Syndrome. This is the most common sex chromosome abnormality. It occurs in approximately 1 in 700 male infants (Radicioni, 2010). The additional X chromosome is maternally or paternally derived with equal propensity (Jacobs, 1995; Lowe, 2001). There is a weak association with advanced maternal and paternal age.

Like 47,XXX, newborns with 47,XXY usually appear phenotypically normal and do not have a higher incidence of anomalies. As children, boys are typically taller than average and have normal prepubertal development. However, they have gonadal dysgenesis, do not undergo normal virilization, and require testosterone supplementation. They may develop gynecomastia. IQ scores usually lie in the average to low-average range, with increased rates of delayed language development (Boada, 2009; Girardin, 2011). Initiation of hormone replacement was previously recommended to begin in adolescence. However, more recent research suggests that therapy earlier in childhood results in improved working memory and executive functioning and a decrease in anxiety disorders (Samango-Sprouse 2019; Tran, 2019).

47,XYY. This aneuploidy occurs in approximately 1 in 1000 male newborns (Berglund, 2020). As with 47,XXX and XXY individuals, affected boys tend to be tall. A third have macrocephaly, nearly two thirds demonstrate hypotonia, and tremors are common (Bardsley, 2013). Rates of major anomalies are not elevated, although hypertelorism and clinodactyly may be identified in more than half. Pubertal development is normal, and fertility is unimpaired. Affected individuals do have increased rates of oral and written language impairments, attention deficit disorder, developmental delays, and autism spectrum disorder (Bardsley, 2013; Joseph, 2018).

Males with more than two Y chromosomes—48,XYYY—or with both additional X and Y chromosomes—48,XXYY or 49,XXXYY—are more likely to have congenital abnormalities, medical problems, and intellectual disability (Tartaglia, 2011).

■ Abnormalities of Chromosome Structure

Structural chromosomal abnormalities include deletions, duplications, translocations, isochromosomes, inversions, ring chromosomes, and mosaicism (see Table 16-1). Identification of a structural chromosomal abnormality in offspring raises two primary questions. First, what phenotypic or later developmental abnormalities are associated with the finding? Second, is parental karyotype evaluation indicated? In other words, are the parents at increased risk of carrying this abnormality, and if so, what is their risk of having future affected offspring?

Deletions and Duplications

A chromosome with a deletion has a stretch of DNA that is missing, whereas one with a duplication has a region that is included twice. Most deletions and duplications occur during

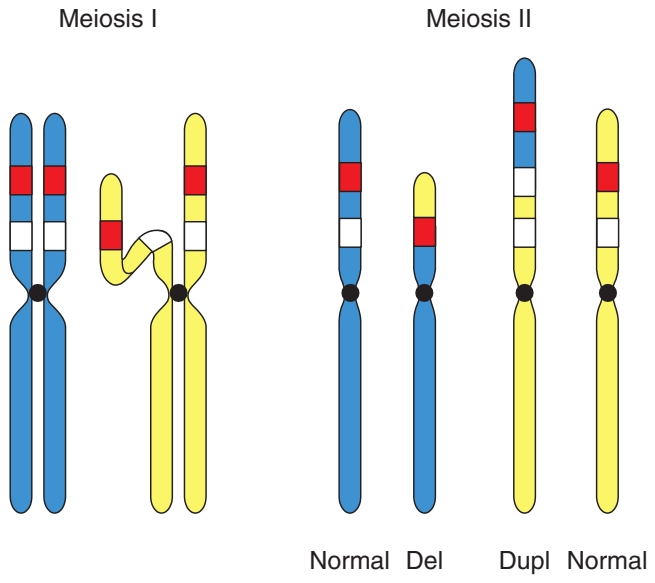


FIGURE 16-6 A mismatch during pairing of homologous chromosomes may lead to a deletion in one chromosome and a duplication in the other. Del = deletion; Dupl = duplication.

meiosis and result from malalignment or mismatching during the pairing of homologous chromosomes. The misaligned segment may then be deleted, or if the mismatch remains when the two chromosomes recombine, it may result in a deletion in one chromosome and duplication in the other (Fig. 16-6). When a deletion or duplication is identified in a fetus or infant, parental karyotyping should be offered, because if either parent carries a balanced translocation, the recurrence risk in subsequent pregnancies is significantly increased. Deletions involving DNA segments large enough to be seen with standard cytogenetic karyotyping are identified in approximately 1 in 7000 births. Common deletions may be referred to by eponyms—for example, del 5p is called *cri du chat syndrome*.

Microdeletions and Microduplications. When a deletion or duplication is smaller than 3 to 5 million base pairs, it is too small to be detected with a standard karyotype analysis. CMA permits identification of these microdeletions and microduplications (p. 325). When CMA is used, the region of DNA that is missing or duplicated is termed a *genomic copy number variant.* A microdeletion or duplication may involve a stretch of DNA that contains multiple genes. This causes a *contiguous gene syndrome*, which can encompass serious but unrelated phenotypic abnormalities (Schmickel, 1986). In some cases, a microduplication may involve the exact DNA region that causes a recognized microdeletion syndrome (Table 16-2). When a specific microdeletion syndrome is suspected clinically, it is confirmed using either CMA or FISH.

22q11.2 Microdeletion Syndrome. This syndrome is also known as DiGeorge syndrome, Shprintzen syndrome, and velocardiofacial syndrome. It is the most common microdeletion, with a prevalence of 1 case in 3000 to 6000 births. Inheritance is autosomal dominant—offspring of affected individuals have a 50-percent chance of inheriting the syndrome. However, more than 90 percent of cases arise from a de-novo mutation. The full deletion contains 3 million base pairs, encompasses 40 genes, and includes 180 different features (Shprintzen, 2008). This is emblematic of a contiguous gene syndrome and poses counseling challenges because features can vary widely, even among family members. With prenatal diagnosis of an affected fetus, genetic testing is offered to the pregnant patient and her partner.

Approximately 75 percent of affected individuals have an associated conotruncal cardiac anomaly, such as tetralogy of Fallot, truncus arteriosus, interrupted aortic arch, or ventricular septal defect (McDonald-McGinn, 2015). Immune deficiency, such as T-cell lymphopenia, also develops in 75 percent. More than 70 percent have velopharyngeal insufficiency or cleft palate. Characteristic facial features include short palpebral fissures, bulbous nasal tip, micrognathia, short philtrum, and small or posteriorly rotated ears. Learning disabilities, autism spectrum disorder, and intellectual disability also are common. Other manifestations include hypocalcemia, renal anomalies, esophageal dysmotility, hearing loss, behavioral disorders, and psychiatric illness, particularly schizophrenia.

Chromosomal Translocations

These are DNA rearrangements in which a DNA segment breaks away from one chromosome and attaches to another. The rearranged chromosomes are called derivative (der) chromosomes. The two types are reciprocal and robertsonian translocations.

Reciprocal Translocations. A double-segment or reciprocal translocation results when breaks occur in two different chromosomes and the broken fragments are exchanged. Each affected chromosome receives a fragment of the other. If no chromosomal material is gained or lost, the translocation is considered balanced. The prevalence of reciprocal translocations approximates 1 in 600 births.

The carrier of a balanced translocation will usually have a normal phenotype. However, repositioning of specific genes within chromosomal segments may cause major structural or developmental abnormalities in approximately 6 percent of apparently balanced translocation carriers. Using CMA technology, up to 20 percent of individuals who appear to have a balanced translocation are found instead to have missing or redundant DNA segments (Manning, 2010).

Balanced translocation carriers are at risk to produce unbalanced gametes, resulting in abnormal offspring. As shown in Figure 16-7, if an oocyte or sperm contains a translocated chromosome, fertilization results in an unbalanced translocation—monosomy for part of one affected chromosome and trisomy for part of the other. In general, translocation carriers identified after the birth of an abnormal child have a 5- to 30-percent risk of producing liveborn offspring with an unbalanced translocation. Carriers identified for other reasons, for example, during an infertility evaluation, have only a 5-percent risk. This risk is lower because gametes are so abnormal that conceptions are nonviable.

Robertsonian Translocations. These involve only the *acrocentric* chromosomes—13, 14, 15, 21, and 22. Acrocentric

TABLE 16-2. Selected Microdeletion Syndromes

Syndrome	Prevalence	Location	Features
Alagille	1:70,000	20p12.2	Cholestasis (paucity of intrahepatic bile ducts), cardiac disease, skeletal disease, ocular abnormalities, dysmorphic facies
Angelman	1:12,000 to 1:20,000	15q11.2–q13 (maternal genes)	Dysmorphic facies—"happy puppet" appearance, intellectual disability, ataxia, hypotonia, seizures
Cri-du-chat	1:20,000 to 1:50,000	5p15.2–15.3	Abnormal laryngeal development with "cat-like" cry, hypotonia, intellectual disability
Kallmann syndrome	1:30,000 males	Xp22.3	Hypogonadotropic hypogonadism, anosmia
Langer-Giedion	Rare	8q23.3	Trichorhinophalangeal syndrome, dysmorphic facies, skeletal abnormalities, sparse hair
Miller-Dieker	Rare	17p13.3	Neuronal migration abnormalities with lissencephaly and microcephaly (profound impairment), dysmorphic facies
Prader-Willi	1:10,000 to 1:30,000	15q11.2–q13 (paternal genes)	Obesity, hypotonia, hypogonadotropic hypogonadism, small hands and feet, intellectual disability
Retinoblastoma	1:280,000	13q14.2	Retinoblastoma, retinoma (benign neoplasm), non-retinal (second primary) tumors
Rubenstein-Taybi	1:100,000 to 1:125,000	16p13.3	Dysmorphic facies, broad thumbs and toes, intellectual disability, increased tumor risk
Smith-Magenis	1:15,000 to 1:25,000	17p11.2	Dysmorphic facies, speech delay, hearing loss, sleep disturbances, self-destructive behaviors, intellectual disability
Velocardiofacial syndrome	1:3000 to 1:6000	22q11.2	Conotruncal cardiac defects, cleft palate, velopharyngeal incompetence, thymic and parathyroid abnormalities, intellectual disability
WAGR	1:500,000	11p13	Wilms tumor, aniridia, genitourinary anomalies. intellectual disability (mental retardation)
Williams-Beuren	1:7500 to 1:10,000	7q11.23	Dysmorphic facies, dental malformation, aortic and peripheral pulmonary artery stenosis, intellectual disability
Wolf-Hirschhorn	1:20,000 to 1:50,000	4p16.3	Dysmorphic ("Greek helmet") facies, delayed growth and development, cleft lip/palate, coloboma, cardiac septal defects
X-linked ichthyosis	1:6000	Xp22.3	Steroid sulfatase deficiency, corneal opacities

Prevalence reflects live births.
Data from National Library of Medicine, 2021; Johns Hopkins University, 2021.

chromosomes have extremely short p arms, and the p arms contain redundant copies of genes coding for ribosomal RNA. In a robertsonian translocation, the q arms of two acrocentric chromosomes fuse at one centromere to form a derivative chromosome, and the other centromere and both p arms are lost. The lost DNA is present in multiple copies on other acrocentric chromosomes, and thus the translocation carrier is usually phenotypically normal. Because the number of centromeres determines the chromosome count, a robertsonian translocation carrier has only 45 chromosomes.

Balanced robertsonian carriers have reproductive difficulties. During fertilization, if the derivative chromosome pairs with a normal haploid chromosome, the resulting offspring will have trisomy. If the fused chromosomes are homologous, that is, from the same chromosome pair, the carrier can produce only unbalanced gametes. Each egg or sperm contains either both copies of the translocated chromosome, which would result in trisomy if fertilized, or no copy, which would result in monosomy. If the fused chromosomes are nonhomologous, four of the six possible gametes would be abnormal.

Robertsonian translocations are found in 1 in 1000 individuals. The risk to have an abnormal offspring approximates 15 percent if a robertsonian translocation is carried by the mother and 2 percent if carried by the father. However, robertsonian translocations are not a major cause of miscarriage and are identified in fewer than 5 percent of couples evaluated for recurrent pregnancy loss. If a fetus or child is found to have a translocation trisomy, both parents should be offered karyotype analysis. If neither parent is a carrier, the recurrence risk is extremely low. The most common robertsonian translocation

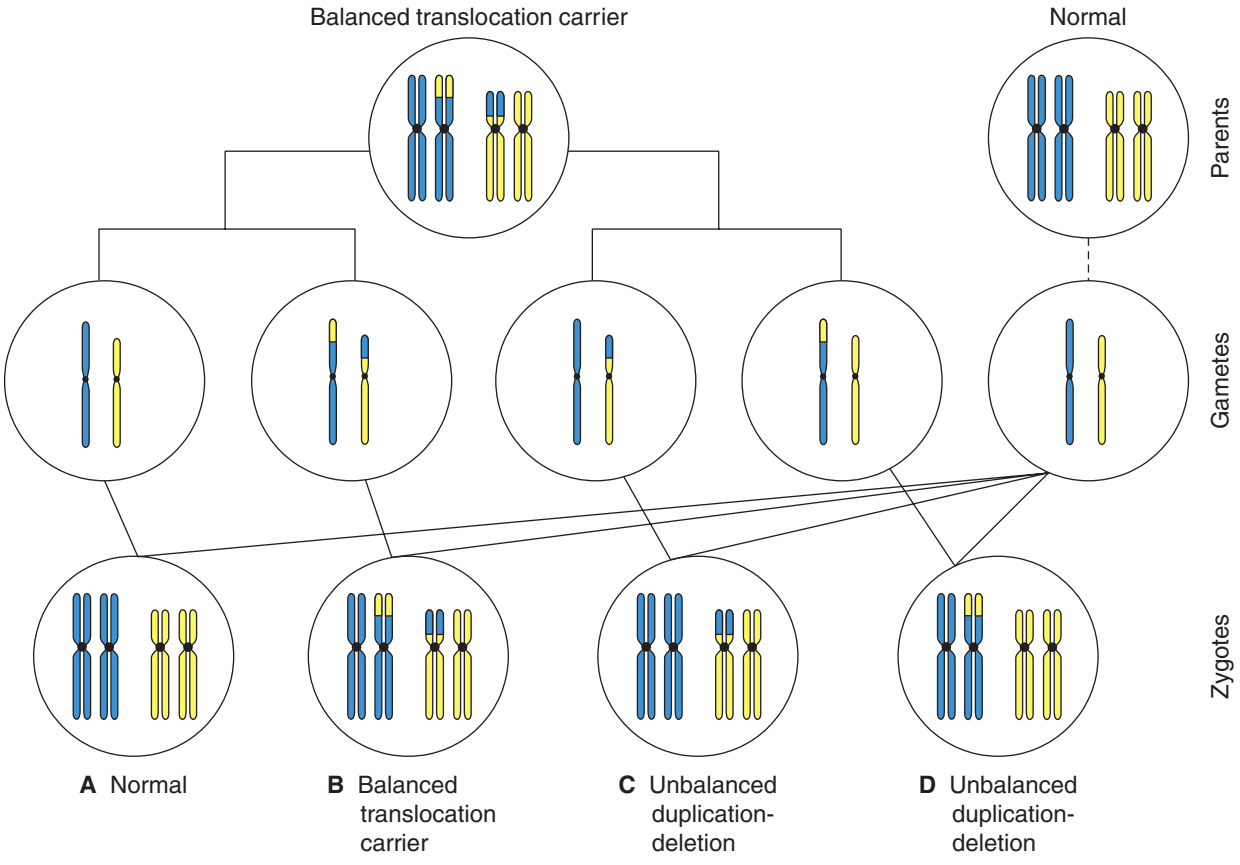


FIGURE 16-7 A carrier of a balanced translocation may produce offspring who are also carriers of the balanced rearrangement **(B)**, offspring with unbalanced translocations **(C, D)**, or offspring with normal chromosomal complements **(A)**.

is der(13;14)(q10;q10), which accounts for up to 20 percent of cases of Patau syndrome (p. 313).

Isochromosomes

When either two p arms or two q arms from the same chromosome fuse together, an isochromosome results. This may occur if the centromere breaks transversely instead of longitudinally during meiosis II or mitosis. Alternately, an isochromosome can result from a meiotic error in a chromosome with a robertsonian translocation. If the isochromosome is acrocentric, it is composed of two q arms and will behave like a homologous robertsonian translocation. Such a carrier is phenotypically normal but can produce only abnormal, unbalanced gametes. If the isochromosome is nonacrocentric, it may be composed of either two p arms or two q arms. Functionally this results in trisomy of the genes on the arms that are present and monosomy of the genes on the arms that are lost. Thus, the carrier is usually phenotypically abnormal and produces abnormal gametes. The most common isochromosome involves the long arm of the X chromosome, i(Xq), which is the etiology of 15 percent of cases of Turner syndrome.

Chromosomal Inversions

When the same chromosome breaks in two places, the intervening genetic material may invert before the breaks are repaired. Although no genetic material is lost or duplicated, an inversion may alter gene function. There are two types—pericentric and paracentric inversions.

Pericentric Inversion. This results from breaks in both the p and q arms of a chromosome, such that the inverted material spans the centromere (Fig. 16-8). A pericentric inversion causes problems in chromosomal alignment during meiosis and confers significant risk for the carrier to produce abnormal gametes and abnormal offspring. The observed risk of abnormal offspring is 5 to 10 percent if ascertainment is made after the birth of an abnormal child. The risk is only 1 to 3 percent if prompted by another indication. An important exception is inv(9)(p11q12), a pericentric inversion on chromosome 9 that is a normal variant and present in approximately 1 percent of the population.

Paracentric Inversion. If one arm of a chromosome suffers the two breaks, the inverted material does not include the centromere, and the inversion is paracentric (see Fig. 16-8). The carrier makes either normal balanced gametes or gametes that are so abnormal as to preclude fertilization. Thus, although infertility may be a problem, the risk of having an abnormal offspring is extremely low.

Ring Chromosome

If a deletion occurs at each end of the same chromosome, the ends may come together to form a ring chromosome. The telomere regions at the ends of each chromosome contain redundant nucleoprotein complexes that stabilize the chromosome. If only the telomeres are lost, all necessary genetic material is retained, and the carrier is balanced. If a deletion extends more

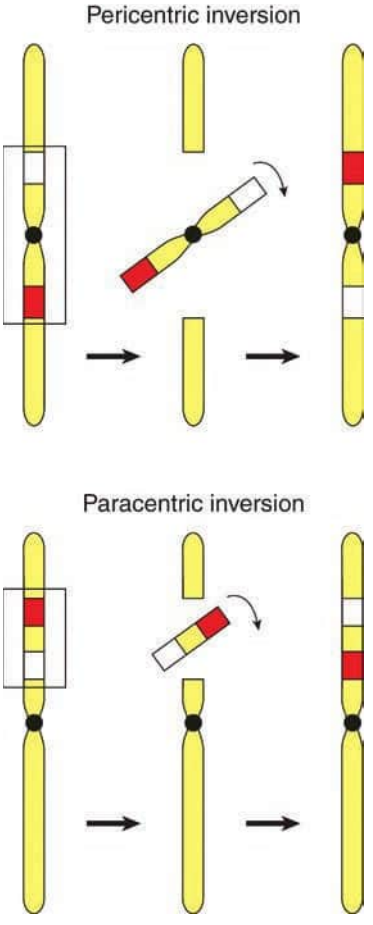


FIGURE 16-8 Pericentric inversion involves the centromere, whereas paracentric inversion does not. Individuals with pericentric inversions are at risk to have offspring with a duplication/deletion. Those with paracentric inversions are at increased risk for early pregnancy loss.

proximally than the telomere, the carrier is likely to be phenotypically abnormal. An example of this is the ring X chromosome, which may result in Turner syndrome.

■ Mosaicism

A mosaic individual has two or more cytogenetically distinct cell lines that are derived from a single zygote. Phenotypic expression of mosaicism depends on several factors, including whether the cytogenetically abnormal cells involve the fetus, part of the fetus, just the placenta, or some combination. Mosaicism is found in approximately 0.3 percent of amnionic fluid cultures (Carey, 2014). When abnormal cells are present in only a single flask of amnionic fluid, the finding is likely pseudomosaicism, caused by cell-culture artifact (Bui, 1984; Hsu, 1984). When abnormal cells involve multiple cultures, however, true mosaicism is more likely. Further testing verifies a second cell line in 60 to 70 percent of these fetuses (Hsu, 1984; Worton, 1984).

Confined Placental Mosaicism

Mosaicism involving a gene abnormality is detected in 1 to 2 percent of chorionic villus sampling specimens. Amniocentesis should be offered. In a series of more than 1000 pregnancies with mosaicism at chorionic villus sampling, subsequent amniocentesis identified true fetal mosaicism in 13 percent. Confined placental mosaicism accounted for 85 percent of cases, and uniparental disomy, discussed later (p. 322), was found in 2 percent (Malvestiti, 2015). If mosaicism is detected for a chromosome known to contain imprinted genes—such as chromosomes 6, 7, 11, 14, or 15—testing for uniparental disomy should be considered, as there may be fetal consequences (Grati, 2014a).

Although outcomes with confined placental mosaicism are generally good, risks of fetal-growth restriction and stillbirth are higher (Reddy, 2009). Fetal-growth restriction may stem from impaired functioning of the aneuploid placental cells (Baffero, 2012). In a recent series of 5500 pregnancies undergoing chorionic villus sampling, the preterm birth rate in pregnancies with confined placental mosaicism was 45 percent, and 50 percent of affected newborns were small for gestational age (Toutain, 2018). Placental mosaicism for trisomy 16 confers a particularly poor prognosis, with as few as 1 in 3 pregnancies resulting in normal outcome (Grau Madsen, 2018).

Gonadal Mosaicism

Also called germline mosaicism, this refers to having one cell line in gametes and another in somatic cells. A genetic abnormality that is confined to gamete cells will affect all cells in the offspring. Thus, gonadal mosaicism can account for apparently de-novo diseases in the offspring of normal parents. Because spermatogonia and oogonia divide throughout fetal life, and spermatogonia continue to divide throughout adulthood, a meiotic error can occur in germ cells that were previously normal. New mutations identified in an offspring whose father is older than 40 may arise through this mechanism, as discussed later (p. 319) (Wilkie, 2017). Gonadal mosaicism also explains the 6-percent recurrence risk after the birth of a child with a disease caused by a "new" mutation.

MODES OF INHERITANCE

A monogenic or *mendelian* disorder is caused by a mutation or alteration in a single locus or gene in one or both members of a gene pair. Types of mendelian inheritance include autosomal dominant, autosomal recessive, X-linked, and Y-linked (Table 16-3). Other monogenic inheritance patterns include mitochondrial inheritance, uniparental disomy, imprinting, and trinucleotide repeat expansion.

■ Relationship between Phenotype and Genotype

When considering inheritance, it is the phenotype that is dominant or recessive, not the genotype. If a disease is dominant, a normal gene directs the production of normal protein, but the phenotype will be abnormal because of protein produced by the abnormal gene. A heterozygous carrier of a recessive disease may produce detectable levels of an abnormal gene product but have no features of the condition, because the phenotype is directed by the product of the normal co-gene. For example,

TABLE 16-3. Selected Monogenic (Mendelian) Disorders

Autosomal Dominant
Achondroplasia
Acute intermittent porphyria
Adult polycystic kidney disease
Antithrombin III deficiency
BRCA1 and BRCA2 breast and/or ovarian cancer
Ehlers-Danlos syndrome
Familial adenomatous polyposis
Familial hypercholesterolemia
Hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia
Hereditary spherocytosis
Huntington disease
Hypertrophic obstructive cardiomyopathy
Long QT syndrome
Marfan syndrome
Myotonic dystrophy
Neurofibromatosis type 1 and 2
Tuberous sclerosis
von Willebrand disease
Autosomal Recessive
α_1-Antitrypsin deficiency
Congenital adrenal hyperplasia
Cystic fibrosis
Gaucher disease
Hemochromatosis
Homocystinuria
Phenylketonuria
Sickle-cell anemia
Tay-Sachs disease
Thalassemia syndromes
Wilson disease
X-Linked
Androgen insensitivity syndrome
Chronic granulomatous disease
Color blindness
Fabry disease
Fragile X syndrome
Glucose-6-phosphate deficiency
Hemophilia A and B
Hypophosphatemic rickets
Muscular dystrophy—Duchenne and Becker
Ocular albinism type 1 and 2

erythrocytes from carriers of sickle-cell anemia contain approximately 30 percent hemoglobin S, but because the other 70 percent is hemoglobin A, these cells do not usually sickle in vivo.

Heterogeneity

Genetic heterogeneity explains how different genetic mechanisms may result in the same phenotype. *Locus heterogeneity* indicates that a specific disease phenotype can be caused by mutations in different genetic loci. It also explains why some diseases appear to follow more than one type of inheritance. For example, retinitis pigmentosa may develop following mutations in at least 35 different genes or loci and may result in autosomal dominant, autosomal recessive, or X-linked forms. *Allelic heterogeneity* describes how different mutations of the same gene may affect presentation of a particular disease. For example, although only one gene has been associated with cystic fibrosis—the *cystic fibrosis conductance transmembrane regulator* gene—more than 2000 mutations in this gene have been described and result in variable disease severity (Chaps. 17, p. 342 and 54, p. 968). *Phenotypic heterogeneity* explains how different disease states can arise from different mutations in the same gene. As an example, mutations in the *fibroblast growth factor receptor 3 (FGFR3)* gene may result in several different skeletal disorders, including achondroplasia and thanatophoric dysplasia, both of which are discussed in Chapter 15 (p. 302).

Autosomal Dominant Inheritance

If only one copy of a gene pair determines the phenotype, that gene is considered to be dominant. Carriers have a 50-percent chance of passing on the affected gene with each conception. A gene with a dominant mutation generally specifies the phenotype in preference to the normal gene. That said, not all individuals will necessarily manifest an autosomal dominant condition the same way. Factors that affect the phenotype of an autosomal dominant condition include penetrance, expressivity, and presence of codominant genes.

Penetrance

This characteristic describes whether a dominant gene is expressed. A gene with recognizable phenotypic expression in all individuals has complete penetrance. Penetrance is incomplete if some carriers express the gene but others do not. A gene that is expressed in 80 percent of individuals is 80-percent penetrant. Incomplete penetrance explains why some autosomal dominant diseases may appear to "skip" generations.

Expressivity

Individuals with the same autosomal dominant trait may manifest the condition differently, even within the same family. Genes with variable expressivity can produce disease manifestations that range from mild to severe. Examples include neurofibromatosis, tuberous sclerosis, and adult polycystic kidney disease.

Codominant Genes

If two different alleles in a gene pair are both expressed in the phenotype, they are considered to be codominant. Blood type, for example, is determined by expression of dominant A and B red-cell antigens that can be expressed simultaneously. Another example of codominance is the group of genes responsible for hemoglobin production. If one gene directs production of hemoglobin S and the other directs production of hemoglobin C, that individual will produce both S and C hemoglobin (Chap. 59, p. 1053).

Advanced Paternal Age

Paternal age older than 40 is associated with increased risk for spontaneous genetic mutations. Spermatogonia undergo

mitotic division every 16 days, and the many replications raise the risk for single base-pair mutations. As a result, offspring of older fathers are at risk for new autosomal dominant disorders and X-linked carrier states. Several in particular have been termed *paternal age effect* disorders (Goriely 2012). These include mutations in the *fibroblast growth factor receptor 2 (FGFR2)* gene, which may cause craniosynostosis syndromes such as Apert, Crouzon, and Pfeiffer syndromes; mutations in the *FGFR3* gene, which may result in achondroplasia and thanatophoric dysplasia; and mutations in the *RET proto-oncogene,* which may cause multiple endocrine neoplasia syndromes (Toriello, 2008).

Using whole genome sequencing to study SNPs among offspring of older fathers, Kong and associates (2012) found an increase of approximately two mutations for each year of paternal age past 40. The absolute risk for any specific condition is low, because individual autosomal dominant disorders are uncommon. Thus, no screening or testing is specifically recommended.

Autosomal Recessive Inheritance

Recessive diseases develop only when both gene copies are abnormal. Unless carriers are screened for a specific disease, they usually are recognized only after the birth of an affected child or the diagnosis of an affected family member. If a couple has a child with an autosomal recessive disease, the recurrence risk is 25 percent for each subsequent pregnancy. Thus, 1/4 of offspring will be homozygous normal, 2/4 will be heterozygous carriers, and 1/4 will be homozygous abnormal. In other words, three of four children will be phenotypically normal, and 2/3 of phenotypically normal siblings are actually carriers.

A heterozygous carrier of a recessive condition is only at risk to have affected children if her or his partner is heterozygous or homozygous for the disease. Genes for rare autosomal recessive conditions have low prevalence in the general population. Thus, the likelihood that a partner will be a gene carrier is small, unless there is consanguinity or the partner is a member of an at-risk group. Carrier screening is discussed in Chapter 17 (p. 342). Preimplantation genetic testing allows a blastocyst to be genetically evaluated prior to intrauterine transfer during in vitro fertilization and is described also in Chapter 17 (p. 348).

Inborn Errors of Metabolism

Most of these autosomal recessive diseases result from absence of a crucial enzyme, leading to incomplete metabolism of proteins, lipids, or carbohydrates. The metabolic intermediates that build up are toxic to various tissues and may result in intellectual disability or other abnormalities.

Phenylketonuria. Also known as phenylalanine hydroxylase (PAH) deficiency, this autosomal recessive disease is caused by mutations in the *PAH* gene. PAH metabolizes phenylalanine to tyrosine, and homozygotes have diminished or absent enzyme activity. This leads to abnormally high levels of phenylalanine, which results in progressive intellectual impairment, autism, seizures, motor deficits, and neuropsychological abnormalities (Blau, 2010). Because phenylalanine competitively inhibits tyrosine hydroxylase, which is essential for melanin production, affected individuals also have hair, eye, and skin hypopigmentation. More than 600 *PAH* gene mutations have been characterized, and the carrier frequency varies by ethnicity. For those of Northern European origin, carrier frequency is 1 in 50, such that the disease affects up to 1 in 10,000 newborns (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). Prompt diagnosis and restriction of dietary phenylalanine beginning early in infancy are essential to prevent neurological damage. All states mandate newborn screening for phenylketonuria (PKU).

Phenylalanine restriction alone would result in inadequate protein consumption, and phenylalanine-free amino acid–based supplementation is required. Maintenance of phenylalanine concentrations in the range of 2 to 6 mg/dL (120 to 360 μmol/L) is recommended from at least 3 months prior to pregnancy and continuing throughout pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b).

Unfortunately, phenylalanine is actively transported to the fetus. Women with PKU whose phenylalanine levels remain above the recommended range during pregnancy are at risk to have otherwise normal (heterozygous) offspring who sustain significant in utero damage as a result of being exposed to toxic phenylalanine concentrations. Hyperphenylalaninemia raises the risk for miscarriage and for PKU embryopathy, which is characterized by intellectual disability, microcephaly, seizures, growth impairment, and cardiac anomalies. Among women on unrestricted diets, the risk to have a child with intellectual disability exceeds 90 percent, microcephaly develops in more than 70 percent, and as many as 1 in 6 children have cardiac defects. The Maternal Phenylketonuria Collaborative Study, which included 572 pregnancies followed more than 18 years, reported that maintenance of serum phenylalanine levels in the recommended range significantly reduced the fetal abnormality risk and resulted in normal childhood IQ scores (Koch, 2003; Platt, 2000).

Approximately 25 to 50 percent of individuals with PKU experience a significant decline in phenylalanine levels when treated with the synthetic PAH cofactor tetrahydrobiopterin (sapropterin) (Vockley, 2014). Based on registry data, sapropterin is considered a treatment option for those in whom phenylalanine levels remain elevated despite dietary therapy (Grange, 2014). Preconceptional counseling and consultation with providers from experienced PKU centers is recommended.

Consanguinity

In medical genetics, a union is consanguineous if between second cousins or closer relatives. Although uncommon in Western countries, the global estimate of consanguineous parentage approximates 10 percent of the population (Oniya, 2019). More than 1 billion people are estimated to live in countries in which 20 to 50 percent of marriages are consanguineous (Romeo, 2014). First-degree relatives share half of their genes, second-degree relatives share a fourth, and third-degree relatives—first cousins—share one eighth. Because of the potential for shared deleterious genes, consanguinity confers an increased risk to have offspring with otherwise rare autosomal recessive diseases or multifactorial disorders. In population-based

series, first cousins have *twice* the risk for offspring with congenital abnormalities (Sheridan, 2013; Stoltenberg, 1997). Consanguinity is also associated with a greater rate of stillbirth (Kapurubandara, 2016). Because CMA performed using a SNP platform may identify consanguinity, it is important that preprocedural counseling include this possibility.

Incest is defined as a sexual relationship between first-degree relatives such as parent-child or brother-sister and is universally illegal. Progeny of such unions carry the highest risk of abnormal outcomes. Older studies reported that up to 40 percent of offspring were abnormal as a result of recessive and multifactorial disorders (Baird, 1982; Freire-Maia, 1984).

X-Linked and Y-Linked Inheritance

Most X-linked diseases are recessive. Common examples include color blindness, hemophilia A and B, and Duchenne and Becker muscular dystrophy. A male with an X-linked recessive gene is usually affected by the disease it causes, because he lacks a second X chromosome to express the normal dominant gene. However, a male with an X-linked disease cannot have affected sons because they do not receive his X chromosome. When a woman carries a gene causing an X-linked recessive condition, each son has a 50-percent risk of being affected, and each daughter has a 50-percent chance of being a carrier.

Women with an X-linked recessive gene are generally unaffected by the disease it causes. In some cases, however, the random inactivation of one X chromosome in each cell—termed lyonization—is skewed, and female carriers may have features of the condition. For example, approximately 10 percent of female carriers of hemophilia A will have factor VIII levels less than 30 percent of normal, and a similar proportion of female hemophilia B carriers have factor IX levels less than 30 percent. Levels below these thresholds confer a greater risk for abnormal bleeding when affected women give birth (Plug, 2006). Indeed, even with higher levels, carriers are reported to be at increased risk for bleeding complications (Olsson, 2014). Female carriers of Duchenne or Becker muscular dystrophy carry an elevated risk for cardiomyopathy, and periodic evaluation for cardiac dysfunction and neuromuscular disorders is recommended (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2008).

X-linked dominant disorders mainly affect females, because they tend to be lethal in males. Two examples are vitamin D–resistant rickets and incontinentia pigmenti. An important exception is fragile X syndrome, discussed subsequently.

The prevalence of Y-linked disorders is low. The Y-chromosome carries genes important for sex determination and various cellular functions related to spermatogenesis and bone development. Deletion of genes on the long arm of Y results in severe spermatogenic defects, whereas genes at the tip of the short arm are critical for chromosomal pairing during meiosis and for fertility.

Mitochondrial Inheritance

Human cells contain hundreds of mitochondria, each with its own genome and associated replication system. Oocytes have approximately 100,000 mitochondria. Sperm have only about 100, and the latter are destroyed after fertilization. Each mitochondrion has multiple copies of a 16.5-kb circular DNA molecule that contains 37 genes. Mitochondrial DNA encodes peptides required for oxidative phosphorylation and encodes ribosomal and transfer RNAs.

Mitochondria are inherited exclusively from the mother. Thus, although males and females both can be affected by a mitochondrial disorder, a male cannot transmit the condition to his offspring. When a cell replicates, mitochondrial DNA sorts randomly into each of the resulting cells, a process termed replicative segregation. As a consequence of replicative segregation, any mitochondrial mutation will be propagated randomly into the newly formed cells. Because each cell holds multiple copies of mitochondrial DNA, the mitochondrion may contain only normal or only abnormal DNA, termed *homoplasmy.* Alternatively, it may contain both normal and mutated DNA, namely *heteroplasmy*. If a heteroplasmic oocyte is fertilized, the relative proportion of mutated DNA may affect whether the individual manifests a given mitochondrial disease. It is not possible to predict the potential degree of heteroplasmy among offspring, and this poses challenges for genetic counseling.

There are 33 mitochondrial diseases or conditions with known molecular bases (Johns Hopkins University, 2020). Examples include myoclonic epilepsy with ragged red fibers (MERRF), Leber optic atrophy, Kearns-Sayre syndrome, Leigh syndrome, and several forms of mitochondrial myopathy and cardiomyopathy.

DNA Triplet Repeat Expansion

Mendel's first law is that genes are passed unchanged from parent to progeny, and barring new mutations, this is often true. Certain genes, however, contain a region of DNA trinucleotide repeats that can expand during parent-to-child transmission. The expansion can occur during male meiosis, as in Huntington disease, or during female meiosis, as in fragile X syndrome. Clinically, DNA triplet repeat expansion is manifested by *anticipation*—a phenomenon in which a disease may manifest at an earlier age or become more severe with each successive generation. Examples of DNA triplet repeat diseases are shown in Table 16-4.

Fragile X Syndrome

This is the most common inherited intellectual disability. Fragile X syndrome affects approximately 1 in 3600 males and 1 in

TABLE 16-4. Some Disorders Caused by DNA Triplet Repeat Expansion

Dentatorubral-pallidoluysian atrophy
Fragile X syndrome
Friedreich ataxia
Huntington disease
Spinal and bulbar muscular atrophy
Myotonic dystrophies
Spinocerebellar ataxias

4000 to 6000 females (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). It is caused by expansion of a repeated trinucleotide DNA segment—cytosine-guanine-guanine (CGG)—at chromosome Xq27.3. When the CGG repeat number reaches a critical size—the full mutation—the *fragile X mental retardation 1 (FMR1)* gene becomes methylated and inactivated. Inactivation halts expression of the FMR1 protein, which is abundant in nerve cells and necessary for normal cognitive development.

Individuals with fragile X syndrome may have speech and language problems, attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder, and autism or autistic-like behaviors. Intellectual disability is generally more severe in males, in whom average IQ scores are 35 to 45 (Nelson, 1995). The syndrome has characteristic phenotypic features—a narrow face with large jaw, prominent ears, connective tissue abnormalities, and macroorchidism in postpubertal males.

Both the sex of the affected individual and the number of CGG repeats determine the degree of clinical impairment. Clinically, four groups have been described (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a):

- Full mutation—more than 200 repeats
- Premutation—55 to 200 repeats
- Intermediate—45 to 54 repeats
- Unaffected—fewer than 45 repeats.

Full mutations are expressed in all males and many females. Males with full mutations typically have significant cognitive and behavioral abnormalities and phenotypic features. In females, random X chromosome inactivation results in variable expression, and the disability may be much less severe. With rare exception, the parent of origin of repeat expansion that leads to a full mutation is female (Monaghan, 2013).

Counseling for a premutation is more complex. The woman with a fragile X premutation may have offspring with the full mutation, and the risk ranges from ≤5 percent with fewer than 70 CGG repeats to >95 percent with 100 to 200 CGG repeats (Nolin, 2003). Expansion is extremely unlikely in a male premutation carrier, but all of his daughters will carry the premutation. Among women with no risk factors, approximately 1 in 250 carries a fragile X premutation, and in those with a family history of intellectual disability, the risk approximates 1 in 90 (Cronister, 2008).

Fragile X premutation carriers may themselves experience significant health consequences. Males with a premutation are at risk for the fragile X tremor ataxia syndrome (FXTAS), which is characterized by memory loss, executive function deficits, anxiety, and dementia (Monaghan, 2013). Females are at decreased risk for FXTAS, but they have a 20-percent risk for fragile X-associated primary ovarian insufficiency (POI).

Carrier screening is recommended for women with a family history of fragile X syndrome, for those with unexplained intellectual disability, developmental delay, or autism, and for women with POI (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). Prenatal diagnosis can be accomplished by amniocentesis or chorionic villus sampling. Either type of specimen can be used to evaluate the CGG repeat number, but chorionic villus sampling may not accurately determine *FMR1* gene methylation status.

Imprinting

Usually, one copy of each gene is inherited from each parent, and both copies are expressed. Imprinting refers to the situation in which gene expression varies according to the parent of origin. With *maternal imprinting*, a gene inherited from the mother is transcriptionally silent and the gene inherited from the father is active. *Paternal imprinting* is the opposite. This phenomenon explains the phenotypic differences that occur in triploid pregnancies according to whether the extra chromosomal set is maternal or paternal (p. 313).

Imprinting affects gene expression by epigenetic control, that is, it modifies the phenotype without altering the underlying genetic structure or genotype. Importantly, the effect may be reversed in a subsequent generation, because a female who inherits an imprinted gene from her father will pass it in her oocytes with a maternal—rather than paternal—imprint, and vice versa.

An example of imprinting can be found in two very different diseases associated with the same region of DNA. *Prader-Willi syndrome* is characterized by pronounced hyperphagia with obesity, along with short stature, small hands and feet, and mild mental retardation. In more than 70 percent of cases, Prader-Willi is caused by microdeletion or disruption of a DNA segment on the paternal chromosome 15, 15q11.2-q13. The remaining cases are due to maternal uniparental disomy or due to maternal gene imprinting with the paternal gene inactivated.

In contrast, individuals with *Angelman syndrome* have normal stature and weight but severe intellectual disability, absent speech, seizures, ataxia, jerky arm movements, and paroxysms of inappropriate laughter. In approximately 70 percent of cases, Angelman syndrome is caused by microdeletion for the 15q11.2-q13 DNA segment on the mother's chromosome 15. This segment contains a gene that codes for *ubiquitin protein ligase E3A*, an important neural protein. Paternal gene imprinting defects—with maternal genes inactivated—account for 2 to 3 percent, and 2 percent result from paternal uniparental disomy. Table 16-5 lists selected diseases that can involve imprinting.

Uniparental Disomy

This occurs when both members of a chromosome pair are inherited from the same parent. Uniparental disomy usually

TABLE 16-5. Some Disorders That Can Involve Imprinting

Disorder	Chromosomal Region	Parental Origin
Angelman	15q11.2–q13	Maternal
Beckwith-Wiedemann	11p15.5	Paternal
Myoclonus-dystonia	7q21	Maternal
Prader-Willi	15q11.2–q13	Paternal
Pseudohypoparathyroidism	20q13.2	Variable
Russell-Silver syndrome	7p11.2	Maternal

Data from Johns Hopkins University, 2021.

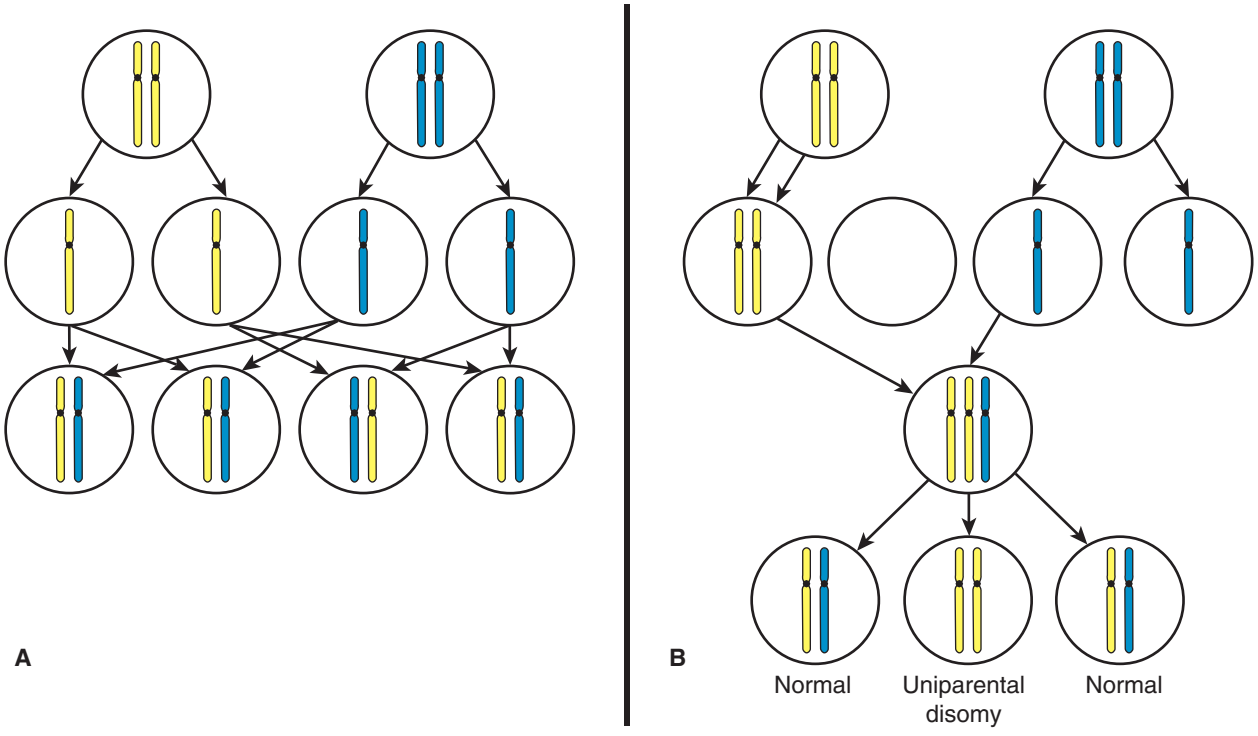


FIGURE 16-9 Mechanism of uniparental disomy arising from trisomic "rescue." **A.** In normal meiosis, one member of each pair of homologous chromosomes is inherited from each parent. **B.** If nondisjunction results in a trisomic conceptus, one homologue is sometimes lost. In a third of cases, loss of one homologue leads to uniparental disomy.

has no clinical consequences, because gene expression is not generally affected by the parent of origin and because both copies of a chromosome pair are not usually identical. However, if chromosomes 6, 7, 11, 14, or 15 are involved, offspring are at increased risk for an abnormality because of parent-of-origin differences in gene expression, that is, because of imprinting (Shaffer, 2001). Several genetic mechanisms may cause uniparental disomy, the most common of which is trisomic rescue, shown in Figure 16-9. After a nondisjunction event produces a trisomic conceptus, one of the three homologues may be lost, resulting in uniparental disomy for that chromosome in approximately one third of cases.

Uniparental *isodisomy* occurs when an individual receives two identical copies of one chromosome from the same parent. This mechanism has explained cases of cystic fibrosis in which only one parent is a carrier but the fetus inherits two copies of the same gene mutation (Spence, 1988; Spotila, 1992).

Multifactorial Inheritance

Traits or diseases that are determined by the combination of multiple genes and environmental factors are considered to have multifactorial inheritance (Table 16-6). Polygenic traits are determined by the combined effects of more than one gene. Many congenital and acquired conditions and common traits display multifactorial inheritance. Examples include malformations such as neural-tube defects, cardiac defects, and facial clefts; diseases such as diabetes and atherosclerosis; and traits such as head size or height. Multifactorial abnormalities tend to recur in families, but not according to a mendelian pattern. If a couple has had 1 child with a multifactorial birth defect, the risk that another child will be affected is empirically 3 to 5 percent. This risk declines exponentially with successively more distant family relationships.

Multifactorial traits that have a normal distribution in the population are termed continuously variable. A measurement that is more than two standard deviations above or below the population mean may be considered abnormal. Continuously variable traits tend to be less extreme in the offspring of affected individuals, because of the statistical principle of regression to the mean.

TABLE 16-6. Characteristics of Multifactorial Diseases

There is a genetic contribution
No mendelian pattern of inheritance
No evidence of single-gene disorder
Nongenetic factors are also involved in disease causation
Lack of penetrance despite predisposing genotype
Monozygotic twins may be discordant
Familial aggregation may occur
Relatives are more likely to have disease-predisposing alleles
Expression more common among close relatives
Greater concordance in monozygotic than dizygotic twins
Becomes less common in less closely related relatives—fewer predisposing alleles

Adapted from Nussbaum, 2016.

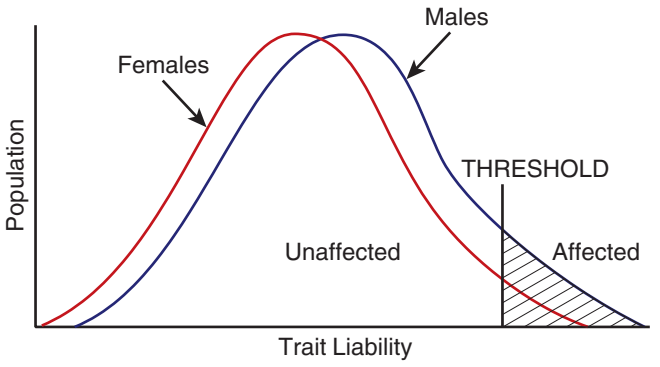


FIGURE 16-10 Schematic example of a threshold trait, such as pyloric stenosis, which has a predilection for males. Each gender is normally distributed, but at the same threshold, more males than females will develop the condition.

Threshold Traits

Some multifactorial traits do not appear until a threshold is exceeded. Genetic and environmental factors that create propensity or liability for the trait are themselves normally distributed, and only individuals at extremes of the distribution exceed the threshold and exhibit the trait or defect. The phenotypic abnormality is thus an all-or-none phenomenon.

Certain threshold traits have a clear male or female predominance. If an individual of the less affected gender has the characteristic or defect, the risk is greater in his or her offspring (Fig. 16-10). An example is pyloric stenosis, which is approximately four times more common in males (Krogh, 2012). A female with pyloric stenosis has likely inherited more predisposing genetic factors than are necessary to produce the defect in a male, and the recurrence risk for her children or siblings is thus higher than the expected 3 to 5 percent. Her brothers and sons would have the highest liability because they not only will inherit more than the usual number of predisposing genes but also are the more susceptible gender.

The recurrence risk for threshold traits is also greater if the defect is severe. For example, the recurrence risk after the birth of a child with bilateral cleft lip and palate approximates 8 percent, but it is only about 4 percent following a child with unilateral cleft lip alone.

Cardiac Defects

Structural cardiac anomalies are the most common birth defects, with a birth prevalence of 8 cases per 1000. The risk of having a child with a cardiac anomaly approximates 5 to 6 percent if the mother has the defect and 2 to 3 percent if the father is affected (Burn, 1998). Selected left-sided lesions, including hypoplastic left heart syndrome, coarctation of the aorta, and bicuspid aortic valve, may have recurrence risks four- to sixfold higher (Lin, 1988; Lupton, 2002; Nora, 1988). Observed recurrence risks for specific cardiac malformations are listed in Table 52-4 (p. 920).

Neural-tube Defects

Risk for developing a neural-tube defect (NTD) is influenced by family history, hyperthermia, hyperglycemia, teratogen exposure, obesity, ethnicity, and fetal gender. More than 50 years ago, Hibbard and Smithells (1965) postulated that abnormal folate metabolism was responsible for many NTDs. However, most NTD cases do not occur in the setting of maternal folic acid deficiency, and it has become clear that the gene-nutrient interactions underlying folate-responsive NTDs are complex. For a woman with a prior affected child, the 3- to 5-percent recurrence risk declines by at least 70 percent with 4 mg/d of periconceptional oral folic acid supplementation (Grosse, 2007; MRC Vitamin Study Research Group, 1991). Periconceptional folic acid supplementation also appears to ameliorate the fetal NTD risk in women with pregestational diabetes and in those with exposure to antiepileptic medications, fever during embryogenesis, and obesity (Kerr, 2017; Petersen, 2019). Sonographic features of NTDs are described in Chapter 15 (p. 276), their prevention with folic acid is discussed in Chapter 9 (p. 168), and fetal therapy for myelomeningocele is reviewed in Chapter 19 (p. 372).

GENETIC TESTS

All pregnant women should have the option of prenatal aneuploidy *screening* and prenatal genetic *diagnosis* (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018). Screening for fetal aneuploidy may be either serum analyte-based or cell-free DNA-based. Prenatal genetic carrier screening tests for cystic fibrosis and spinal muscular atrophy carrier status also are routinely offered. Additional carrier screening tests are offered to at-risk individuals. Expanded genetic carrier screening panels also are available. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists considers ethnic-specific, panethnic, and expanded carrier screening acceptable strategies (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). These screening tests are discussed in Chapter 17 (p. 342).

For prenatal genetic diagnosis, the most commonly used tests are chromosomal microarray analysis (CMA), cytogenetic analysis (karyotyping), and fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH). Testing may be performed on amnionic fluid or chorionic villi. In selected circumstances, whole genome or whole exome sequencing may be considered, but these are not recommended for routine use. To diagnose a specific disease whose genetic basis is known, DNA-based tests are often employed, typically using polymerase chain reaction (PCR) for rapid amplification of DNA sequences.

■ Cytogenetic Analysis

Also known as karyotyping, cytogenetic analysis tests for numerical chromosomal abnormalities—aneuploidy or polyploidy. It can also identify balanced or unbalanced structural rearrangements of at least 5 to 10 megabases in size. Karyotyping has diagnostic accuracy exceeding 99 percent.

Any tissue containing dividing cells or cells that can be stimulated to divide is suitable for cytogenetic analysis. The dividing cells are arrested in metaphase, and their chromosomes are stained to reveal light and dark bands. The most commonly used technique is Giemsa staining, which yields the G-bands shown in Figure 16-3. Each chromosome has a unique banding pattern that permits its identification and detection of

deleted, duplicated, or rearranged segments. The accuracy of cytogenetic analysis rises with the number of bands produced. Metaphase banding routinely yields 450 to 550 visible bands per haploid chromosome set, whereas prophase banding generally yields 850 bands.

Only dividing cells can be evaluated, so the growth of cultured cells affects the rapidity with which results are obtained. Amnionic fluid, which contains amniocytes, epithelial cells, and gastrointestinal mucosal cells, will usually yield results in 7 to 10 days (Chap. 17, p. 344). Fetal blood cells may provide results in 36 to 48 hours but are rarely needed. If fetal skin fibroblasts are evaluated postmortem, stimulation of cell growth can be more difficult. Cytogenetic analysis may take 2 to 3 weeks in such cases and has largely been replaced by CMA (Chap. 35, p. 627).

Fluorescence In Situ Hybridization

This technique is most commonly used for rapid identification of a specific chromosomal abnormality, such as trisomy 21, 18, or 13. Because of its 1- to 2-day turnaround time, FISH is typically selected for cases in which findings may alter pregnancy management. It may also be used to verify a suspected deletion syndrome, such as the 22q11.2 microdeletion (p. 315), although CMA is preferred. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018) recommends that decision-making based on FISH should incorporate clinical information consistent with the suspected diagnosis. Supportive data may be an abnormal aneuploidy screening test result, a sonographic finding, or a confirmatory diagnostic test such as karyotyping or CMA.

To perform FISH, cells are fixed onto a glass slide, and fluorescent-labeled probes are hybridized to the fixed chromosomes (Fig. 16-11). Each probe is a DNA sequence that is complementary to a chromosome region or gene being investigated. If the DNA sequence is present, hybridization is detected as a bright signal visible by microscopy. The number of signals indicates the number of chromosomes or genes of that type in the cell. FISH does not provide information on the entire chromosomal complement but merely the chromosomal or gene region of interest. Figure 16-12 shows an example of interphase FISH using α-satellite probes for chromosomes 18, X, and Y to confirm trisomy 18.

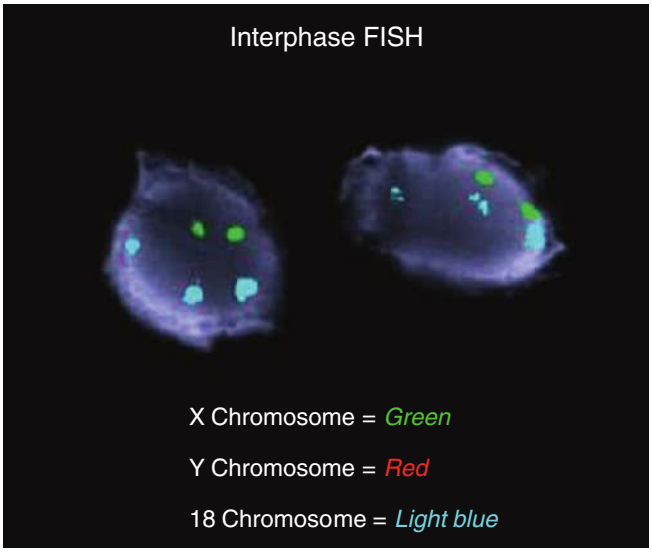


FIGURE 16-12 Interphase fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) using α-satellite probes for chromosomes 18, X, and Y. In this case, the three light blue signals, two green signals, and absence of red signals indicate that this is a female fetus with trisomy 18. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Frederick Elder.)

Chromosomal Microarray Analysis

This test is 100 times more sensitive than karyotyping and detects microduplications and microdeletions as small as 50 to 100 kilobases. Direct CMA, which is performed on uncultured cells, can yield results in 3 to 7 days. If cultured cells are required, results may take 10 to 14 days (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018).

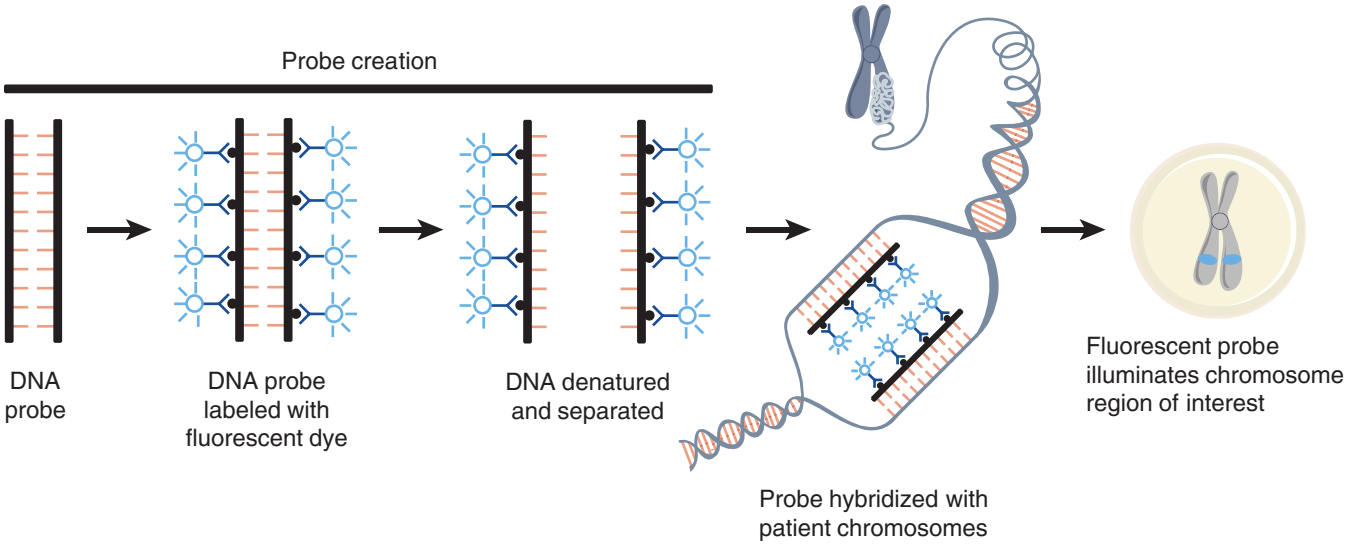


FIGURE 16-11 Steps in fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH).

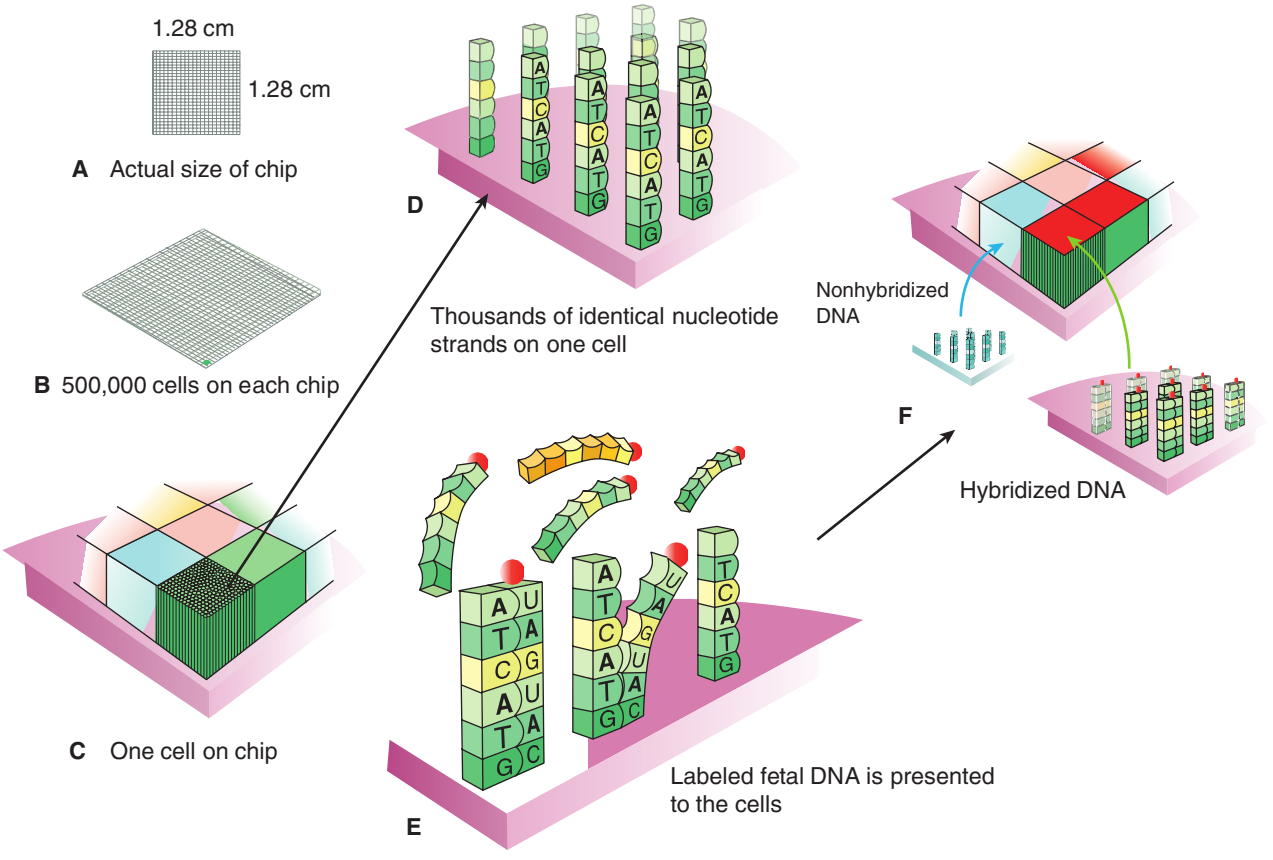


FIGURE 16-13 Chromosomal microarray analysis. **A.** Actual microarray chip size. **B.** Each chip contains thousands of cells (squares). **C** & **D.** Each cell contains thousands of identical oligonucleotides on its surface and is unique in its nucleotide content. **E.** During genetic analysis, a mixture containing tagged fetal DNA is presented to the chip. Complementary DNA sequences bind. **F.** If a laser is shined on the chip, DNA sequences that have bound will glow thus identifying a matching sequence. (Modified with permission from Doody KJ: Treatment of the infertile couple. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Schaffer JI, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 2nd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2012.)

Microarrays use either a comparative genomic hybridization (CGH) platform, a SNP platform, or a combination of the two. The CGH microarray platform compares specimen DNA with a normal control sample. Shown in Figure 16-13, the CGH chip contains reference DNA fragments of known sequence—oligonucleotides. Fetal DNA from the amniocentesis or chorionic villus sampling specimen is labeled with a fluorescent dye and then hybridized to the DNA on the chip. Normal control DNA is labeled with a different probe and also hybridized to the same chip. The intensity of the fluorescent signals from the two samples is compared. With a SNP array, the chip contains known DNA sequence variants, that is, single-nucleotide polymorphisms. When fetal DNA is labeled and hybridized to the chip, the fluorescent signal intensity indicates copy number variation.

Both types of platforms detect aneuploidy, unbalanced translocations, and microdeletions and microduplications. In addition, SNP arrays are able to identify triploidy and can detect *absence of heterozygosity*. The latter can occur with uniparental disomy, in which both copies of a chromosome are inherited from one parent. Absence of heterozygosity may also occur with consanguinity, and counseling prior to performance of an SNP array should include this possibility (p. 321). Importantly, neither type of array platform currently detects balanced chromosomal rearrangements. For this reason, couples with recurrent pregnancy loss should be offered karyotyping as the first-line test (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2016).

In addition to identifying pathogenic copy number variants, CMA may detect variants that are unable to be classified as benign or pathologic and thus are considered to be of uncertain clinical significance. In recent series, these variants of uncertain significance are identified in approximately 1 percent of prenatal specimens (Brady, 2014; Chong, 2019; Wang, 2018). Not unexpectedly, variants of uncertain significance may be a source of distress to families, even with comprehensive pretest counseling.

Clinical Applications

In pregnancies at increased risk for autosomal trisomy based on aneuploidy screening results, karyotyping or FISH plus karyotyping should be offered, and CMA should be made available (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018). Clinicians are increasingly offering CMA in this setting. If the karyotype is normal, CMA has identified clinically relevant copy number variants in approximately 6.5 percent of pregnancies with fetal abnormalities and in 1 to 2 percent of those without obvious fetal abnormality (Callaway, 2013; Chong, 2019). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018) and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2016) recommend CMA as the first-tier test when fetal structural abnormalities are identified. If a particular

anomaly that strongly suggests a specific aneuploidy is identified, such as an endocardial cushion defect (trisomy 21) or alobar holoprosencephaly (trisomy 13), then karyotyping or FISH may be offered as the initial test. Genetic counseling should include information regarding the benefits and limitations of both CMA and karyotyping. Each should be made available to women who elect prenatal diagnosis (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2016). CMA may identify instances of autosomal dominant genetic disorders that have not yet manifested in an affected parent, and it may also identify instances of nonpaternity.

For stillbirth evaluation, CMA is significantly more likely than standard karyotyping to provide a genetic diagnosis, in part because it does not require dividing cells. The Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network found that when karyotyping was uninformative, approximately 6 percent of cases had either aneuploidy or a pathogenic copy number variant identified with CMA (Reddy, 2012). In a recent metaanalysis of more than 900 stillbirths with normal karyotype, CMA identified pathogenic copy number variants in 6 percent with structural abnormalities and 3 percent with no abnormalities evident (Martinez-Portilla, 2019). Overall, CMA yielded results 15 percent more often than karyotyping alone.

Whole Genome and Whole Exome Sequencing

Most fetuses with structural abnormalities have a normal karyotype and a normal CMA result. Whole genome sequencing (WGS) is a technique for analyzing the entire genome. Whole exome sequencing (WES) analyzes only the DNA coding regions, which account for approximately 1.5 percent of the genome. These next-generation sequencing tools are increasingly used postnatally to evaluate suspected genetic syndromes and intellectual disability.

Several prospective, multicenter series have evaluated WES for pregnancies in which fetuses have structural abnormalities, no karyotypic evidence of aneuploidy, and normal CMA. WES identified genetic abnormalities in approximately 10 percent of such cases (Lord, 2019; Petrovski, 2019). Utility was higher in cases with cardiac, skeletal, or multiorgan system anomalies.

Importantly, WGS and WES have significant limitations in their current form. These include prohibitively long turnaround times, high costs, and increased rates of false-positive and false-negative results and variants of uncertain significance (American College of Medical Genetics, 2012; Atwal, 2014). In addition, because sequencing is generally performed on the fetus and parents simultaneously, one parent may be identified or suspected to have an unrelated but medically actionable finding, which further complicates counseling (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020c). As a result, the clinical utility of this promising technology for prenatal cases is currently limited, and it is not recommended for routine clinical use.

Fetal DNA in the Maternal Circulation

Fetal cells are present in maternal blood at a very low concentration, only 2 to 6 cells per milliliter (Bianchi, 2006). Intact fetal cells sometimes persist in the maternal circulation for decades following delivery. Persistent fetal cells may engraft in the mother, causing microchimerism (Chap. 62, p. 1109). This has been implicated in maternal autoimmune diseases such as scleroderma, systemic lupus erythematosus, and Hashimoto thyroiditis (Kinder, 2017). From the standpoint of prenatal diagnosis, use of intact fetal cells from maternal blood is limited by low cell concentration, cell persistence into successive pregnancies, and difficulties in distinguishing fetal and maternal cells. Cell-free DNA overcomes these limitations.

Cell-free DNA

Also known as cell-free fetal DNA or noninvasive prenatal screening (NIPS), this screening test uses DNA fragments derived from maternal cells and from apoptotic placental trophoblast cells. "Fetal" is thus a misnomer. Cell-free DNA is reliably detected in maternal blood after 9 to 10 weeks' gestation (Bianchi, 2018). The proportion of total cell-free DNA that is placental is called the fetal fraction, and it accounts for approximately 10 percent of the total circulating cell-free DNA in maternal plasma. Unlike intact fetal cells, cell-free DNA is cleared within minutes from maternal blood.

Current clinical applications of cell-free DNA are aneuploidy screening and Rh D genotyping (Fig. 16-14). Commercial laboratories have also offered two other applications of cell-free DNA: (1) screening for selected microdeletion and microduplication syndromes and (2) genome-wide screening for deletions and duplications larger than 7 megabase pairs. Currently, prospective data on these promising applications are limited, and neither is recommended for routine screening (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020c).

Additional applications for cell-free DNA are on the horizon. In research settings, numerous single-gene disorders have been detected and include skeletal dysplasias, hemoglobinopathies, cystic fibrosis, congenital adrenal hyperplasia, hemophilia, muscular dystrophy, myotonic dystrophy, and spinal muscular atrophy (Camunas-Soler, 2018; Jenkins, 2018; Zhang, 2019).

Aneuploidy Screening. Several different assay platforms are used to screen for fetal autosomal trisomies and sex chromosomal aneuploidies. These include massively parallel sequencing, which is a WGS technique; chromosome-selective or targeted sequencing; and analysis of SNPs (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018, 2020c). By simultaneously sequencing millions of chromosome-specific DNA fragments, investigators can identify whether the proportion or ratio of fragments from one chromosome is higher than expected. Thus, samples from women with a Down syndrome fetus will have a larger proportion of DNA sequences from chromosome 21.

The screening performance of cell-free DNA is excellent. In a metaanalysis of 35 studies of largely high-risk pregnancies, the pooled sensitivity to detect Down syndrome was 99.7 percent, and to identify trisomies 18 and 13, 98 and 99 percent, respectively (Gil, 2017). For each, the specificity was at least 99.9 percent, such that the cumulative false-positive rate was below 1 percent. Aneuploidy screening reports commonly include information about fetal sex, which may be clinically useful if the fetus is at risk for an X-linked disorder or for congenital adrenal hyperplasia (Chap. 17, p. 335). In a metaanalysis, the

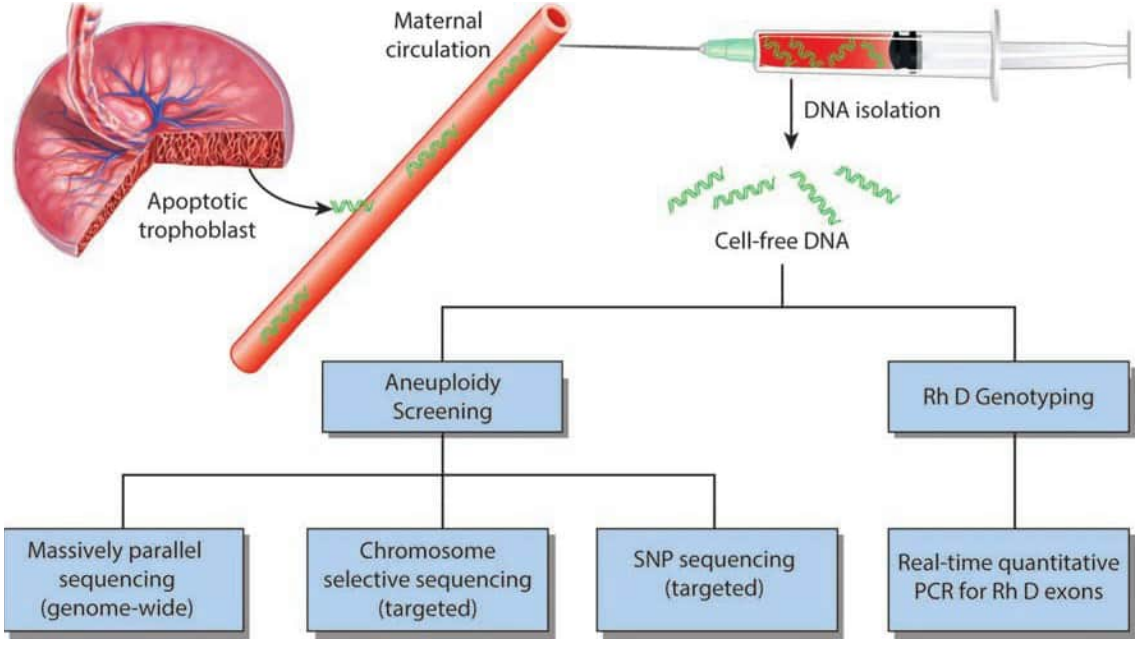


FIGURE 16-14 Cell-free DNA screening. These DNA fragments are derived from apoptotic trophoblast cells. Screening for autosomal trisomies and sex chromosomal aneuploidies may be performed using whole-genome sequencing, chromosome-selective or -targeted sequencing, and analysis of single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs). Real-time quantitative polymerase chain reaction (PCR) also may be used to target specific regions or sequences, a technique used for Rh D genotyping.

sensitivity of cell-free DNA testing for fetal sex determination was reported to be 95 percent between 7 and 12 weeks' gestation and 99 percent after 20 weeks (Devaney, 2011).

Causes of false-positive and false-negative screening results are listed in Table 16-7. As with any other screening test, diagnostic confirmation should be performed before irreversible medical intervention. Cell-free DNA screens do not yield a result in 2 to 4 percent of cases. This may be due to assay failure, high assay variance, or low fetal fraction (Norton, 2012; Pergament, 2014; Quezada, 2015). Importantly, such pregnancies carry a greater risk for fetal aneuploidy. In addition, results may not reflect the fetal DNA complement but rather may indicate confined placental mosaicism, early demise of an aneuploid co-twin, maternal mosaicism, or rarely, occult maternal malignancy (Bianchi, 2015; Curnow, 2015; Grati, 2014b; Wang, 2014). Recommendations for counseling are discussed in Chapter 17 (p. 336).

TABLE 16-7. Selected Etiologies Creating Inaccurate Cell-free DNA Results

Abnormality not detected—false negative
Low fetal fraction
Fetal chromosomal abnormality
Multifetal gestation
Maternal obesity
Low-molecular-weight heparin
Confined placental mosaicism (normal placenta, aneuploid fetus)
Normal fetus but abnormal screen—false positive
Confined placental mosaicism (normal fetus, aneuploid placenta)
Multifetal gestation with loss of aneuploid fetus
Maternal aneuploidy (e.g. 47,XXX)
Maternal mosaicism (e.g. 46,XX/45,X) or fetal mosaicism
Maternal cancer (lymphoma, breast, colon, leukemia, others)
Vitamin B_{12} deficiency

Data from Bianchi, 2018.

Rh D Genotype Evaluation. Many fetuses of Rh D-negative women are also Rh D-negative. In a predominantly white population, this prevalence approaches 40 percent. Fetal Rh D genotype assessment from maternal blood can eliminate administration of anti-D immune globulin in such cases, thereby reducing costs and potential risk. When Rh D alloimmunization is suspected, early identification of an Rh D-negative fetus might avoid unnecessary middle cerebral artery Doppler assessment or amniocentesis. Evaluation using cell-free DNA is done using real-time PCR to target several exons of the *RHD* gene, typically exons 4, 5, 7, and 10.

Rh D-genotyping is performed routinely with cell-free DNA in Denmark, Finland, and the Netherlands (Clausen, 2012; de Haas, 2016; Haimila, 2017). In population-based studies of more than 35,000 Rh D-negative women screened at 24 to 27 weeks' gestation, the false-negative rate—in which Rh D-negative status was missed—was only 0.03 percent. The false-positive rate—in which Rh immune globulin would be given unnecessarily—was less than 1 percent (de Haas, 2016; Haimila, 2017). Similar results were reported from the United Kingdom, although the false-negative rate was higher in the first trimester. Investigators concluded that false-negative screening results might increase the alloimmunization risk but by less than 1 case per million births (Chitty, 2014). Rh D alloimmunization is discussed in Chapter 18 (p. 353).

REFERENCES

Abele H, Babiy-Pachomow O, Sonek J, et al: The cavum septum pellucidi in euploid and aneuploidy fetuses. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 42(2):156, 2013

American Academy of Pediatrics: Clinical report: cardiovascular health supervision for individuals affected by Duchenne or Becker muscular dystrophy. Pediatrics 116(6):1569, 2005, Reaffirmed December 2008

American College of Medical Genetics (ACMG) Board of Directors: Points to consider in the clinical application of genomic sequencing. Genet Med 14(8):759, 2012

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prenatal diagnostic testing for genetic disorders. Practice Bulletin No. 162, May 2016, Reaffirmed 2018

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Perinatal palliative care. Committee Opinion No. 786, August 2019

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Carrier screening for genetic conditions. Committee Opinion No. 691, March 2017, Reaffirmed 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Management of women with phenylalanine hydroxylase deficiency (phenylketonuria). Committee Opinion No. 802, April 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Microarrays and next-generation sequencing technology: the use of advanced genetic diagnostic tools in obstetrics and gynecology. Committee Opinion No. 682, December 2016, Reaffirmed 2020c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Screening for fetal chromosomal abnormalities. Practice Bulletin No. 226, October 2020d

Atwal PS, Brennan ML, Cox R, et al: Clinical whole-exome sequencing: are we there yet? Genet Med 16(9):717, 2014

Baffero GM, Somigliana E, Crovetto F, et al: Confined placental mosaicism at chorionic villus sampling: risk factors and pregnancy outcome. Prenat Diagn 32(11):1102, 2012

Baird PA, McGillivray B: Children of incest. J Pediatr 101(5): 854, 1982

Bardsley MZ, Kowal K, Levy C, et al: 47,XYY syndrome: clinical phenotype and timing of ascertainment. J Pediatr 163(4):1085, 2013

Bdolah Y, Palomaki GE, Yaron Y, et al: Circulating angiogenic proteins in trisomy 13. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194(1):239, 2006

Berglund A, Stochholm K, Gravholt CH: The epidemiology of sex chromosome abnormalities. Am J Med Genet C 184(2):202, 2020

Bergström S, Carr H, Petersson G, et al: Trends in congenital heart defects in infants with Down syndrome. Pediatrics 138(1):e210160123, 2016

Bianchi DW, Chiu RW: Sequencing of circulating cell-free DNA during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 379(5):464, 2018

Bianchi DW, Chudova D, Sehnert AJ, et al: Noninvasive prenatal testing and incidental detection of occult malignancies. JAMA 314(2):162, 2015

Bianchi DW, Hanson J: Sharpening the tools: a summary of a National Institutes of Health workshop on new technologies for detection of fetal cells in maternal blood for early prenatal diagnosis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 19(4):199, 2006

Blau N, van Spronsen FJ, Levy HL: Phenylketonuria. Lancet 376(9750):1417, 2010

Boada R, Janusz J, Hutaff-Lee C, et al: The cognitive phenotype in Klinefelter syndrome: a review of the literature including genetic and hormonal factors. Dev Disabil Res Rev 15(4):284, 2009

Brady PD, Delle Chiaie B, Christenhusz G, et al: A prospective study of the clinical utility of prenatal chromosomal microarray analysis in fetuses with ultrasound abnormalities and an exploration of a framework for reporting unclassified variants and risk factors. Genet Med 16(6):469, 2014

Bui TH, Iselius L, Lindsten J: European collaborative study on prenatal diagnosis: mosaicism, pseudomosaicism and single abnormal cells in amniotic fluid cultures. Prenat Diagn 4(7):145, 1984

Bull MJ, American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Genetics: Health supervision for children with Down syndrome. Pediatrics 128(2):393, 2011

Burn J, Brennan P, Little J, et al: Recurrence risks in offspring of adults with major heart defects: results from first cohort of British collaborative study. Lancet 351(9099):311, 1998

Callaway JL, Shaffer LG, Chitty LS, et al: The clinical utility of microarray technologies applied to prenatal cytogenetics in the presence of a normal conventional karyotype: a review of the literature. Prenat Diagn 33(12):1119, 2013

Canunas-Soler J, Lee H, Hudgins L, et al: Noninvasive prenatal diagnosis of single-gene disorders by use of droplet digital PCR. Clin Chem 64(2):336, 2018

Carey L, Scott F, Murphy K, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of chromosomal mosaicism in over 1600 cases using array comparative genomic hybridization as a first line test. Prenat Diagn 34(5):478, 2014

Chitty LS, Finning K, Wade A: Diagnostic accuracy of routine antenatal determination of fetal RHD status across gestation: population based cohort study. BMJ 349:g5243, 2014

Chong HP, Hamilton S, Mone F, et al: Prenatal chromosomal microarray testing of fetuses with ultrasound structural anomalies: a prospective cohort study of over 1000 cases. Prenat Diagn 39(12):1064, 2019

Clausen FB, Christiansen M, Steffensen R, et al: Report of the first nationally implemented clinical routine screening for fetal RHD in D–pregnant women to ascertain the requirement for antenatal RHD prophylaxis. Transfusion 52(4):752, 2012

Cockwell A, MacKenzie M, Youings S, et al: A cytogenetic and molecular study of a series of 45,X fetuses and their parents. J Med Genet 28(3):151, 1991

Cools M, Pleskacova J, Stoop H, et al: Gonadal pathology and tumor risk in relation to clinical characteristics in patients with 45,X/46,XY mosaicism. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 96(7):E1171, 2011

Cooper DS, Riggs KW, Zafar F, et al: Cardiac surgery in patients with trisomy 13 and 18: an analysis of the Society of Thoracic Surgeons Congenital Heart Surgery Database. J Am Heart Assoc 8:e012349, 2019

Cragan JD, Gilboa SM: Including prenatal diagnoses in birth defects monitoring: experience of the Metropolitan Atlanta Congenital Defects Program. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 85(1):20, 2009

Cronister A, Teicher J, Rohlfs EM, et al: Prevalence and instability of fragile X alleles: implications for offering fragile X premutation diagnosis. Obstet Gynecol 111(3):596, 2008

Curnow KJ, Wilkins-Haug L, Ryan A, et al: Detection of triploid, molar, and vanishing twin pregnancies by single-nucleotide polymorphism-based noninvasive prenatal test. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(1):79.e1, 2015

de Haas M, Thurik FF, van der Ploeg CP, et al: Sensitivity of fetal RHD screening for safe guidance of targeted anti-D immunoglobulin prophylaxis: a prospective cohort study of a nationwide programme in the Netherlands. BMJ 355:i5789, 2016

Devaney SA, Palomaki GE, Scott JA, et al: Noninvasive fetal sex determination using cell-free fetal DNA: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA 306(6):627, 2011

Dolk H, Loane M, Garne E: The prevalence of congenital anomalies in Europe. Adv Exp Med Biol 686:349, 2010

Domingo L, Carey JC, Eckhauser A, et al: Mortality and resource use following cardiac interventions in children with trisomy 13 and trisomy 18 and congenital heart disease. Pediatr Cardiol 40(2):349, 2019

Doody KJ: Treatment of the infertile couple. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2020

Dotters-Katz SK, Humphrey WM, Senz KL, et al: Trisomy 13 and the risk of gestational hypertensive disorders: a population-based study. J Mat Fetal Neonatal Med 31(15):1951, 2018

Edwards JH, Harnden DG, Cameron AH, et al: A new trisomic syndrome. Lancet 1(7128):787, 1960

Ford CE, Jones KW, Polani PE, et al: A sex-chromosome anomaly in a case of gonadal dysgenesis (Turner's syndrome). Lancet 1(7075):711, 1959

Freeman SB, Bean LH, Allen EG, et al: Ethnicity, sex, and the incidence of congenital heart defects: a report from the National Down Syndrome Project. Genet Med 10(3):173, 2008

Freire-Maia N: Effects of consanguineous marriages on morbidity and precocious mortality: genetic counseling. Am J Med Genet 18(3):401, 1984

Gil MM, Accurti V, Santacruz B, et al: Analysis of cell-free DNA in maternal blood in screening for aneuploidies: updated meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 50:302, 2017

Girardin CM, Vliet GV: Counselling of a couple faced with a prenatal diagnosis of Klinefelter syndrome. Acta Pediatr 100(6):917, 2011

Goel N, Morris JK, Tucker D, et al: Trisomy 13 and 18-prevalence and mortality-a multi-registry population based analysis. Am J Med Genet A 179(12):2382, 2019

Goriely A, Wilkie AO: Paternal age effect mutations and selfish spermatogonial selection: causes and consequences for human diseases. Am J Hum Genet 90(2):175, 2012

Grange DK, Hillman RE, Burton BK, et al: Sapropterin dihydrochloride use in pregnant women with phenylketonuria: an interim report of the PKU MOMS sub-registry. Mol Genet Metab 112(1):9, 2014

Grati FR: Chromosomal mosaicism in human feto-placental development: implications for prenatal diagnosis. J Clin Med 3(3):809, 2014a

Grati FR, Malvestiti F, Ferreira JC, et al: Fetoplacental mosaicism: potential implications for false-positive and false negative non-invasive prenatal screening results. Genet Med 16(8):620, 2014b

Grau Madsen S, Uldbjerg N, Sunde L, et al: Prognosis for pregnancies with trisomy 16 confined to the placenta: a Danish cohort study. Prenat Diagn 38(13):1103, 2018

Grosse SD, Collins JS: Folic acid supplementation and neural tube defect recurrence prevention. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 79(11):737, 2007
Haimila KI, Sulin K, Kuosmanen M, et al: Targeted antenatal anti-D prophylaxis program for RhD-negative pregnant women–outcome of the first two years of a national program in Finland. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 96(10):1228, 2017
Hartley D, Blumenthal T, Carrillo M, et al: Down syndrome and Alzheimer's disease: common pathways, common goals. Alzheimers Dement 11(6):700, 2015
Hassold T, Arnovitz K, Jacobs PA, et al: The parental origin of the missing or additional chromosome in 45,X and 47,XXX females. Birth Defects Orig Artic Ser 26(4):297, 1990
Heinrich T, Nanda I, Rehn M, et al: Live-born trisomy 22: patient report and review. Mol Syndromol 3(6):262, 2012
Hibbard ED, Smithells RW: Folic acid metabolism and human embryopathy. Lancet 1:1254, 1965
Hook EB, Warburton D: Turner syndrome revisited: review of new data supports the hypothesis that all viable 45,X cases are cryptic mosaics with a rescue cell line, implying an origin by mitotic loss. Hum Genet 133(4):417, 2014
Houlihan OA, O'Donoghue K: The natural history of pregnancies with a diagnosis of Trisomy 18 or Trisomy 13; a retrospective case series. BMC Pregnancy and Childbirth 13:209, 2013.
Hussamy DJ, Herrera CL, Twickler DM, et al: Number of risk factors in Down syndrome pregnancies. Am J Perinatol 36(1):79, 2019
Hsu LY, Perlis TE: United States survey on chromosome mosaicism and pseudomosaicism in prenatal diagnosis. Prenat Diagn 4(7):97, 1984
Jacobs PA, Hassold TJ: The origin of numerical chromosomal abnormalities. Adv Genet 33:101, 1995
Jauniaux E: Partial moles: from postnatal to prenatal diagnosis. Placenta 20(5–6):379, 1999
Jenkins LA, Deans ZC, Lewis C, et al: Delivering an accredited non-invasive prenatal diagnosis service for monogenic disorders and recommendations for best practice. Prenat Diagn 38(1):44, 2018
Johns Hopkins University: Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man (OMIM). 2021. Available at: http://omim.org/. Accessed October 4, 2021
Joseph L, Farmer C, Chlebowski C, et al: Characterization of autism spectrum disorder and neurodevelopmental profiles in youth with XYY syndrome. J Neurodev Disord 10(1):30, 2018
Kapurubandara S, Melov S, Shalou E, et al: Consanguinity and associated perinatal outcomes, including stillbirth. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynecol 56(6):599, 2016
Kehinde FI, Anderson CE, McGowan JE, et al: Co-occurrence of non-mosaic trisomy 22 and inherited balanced t(4;6)(q33;q23.3) in a liveborn female: case report and review of the literature. Am J Med Genet Part A 164(12):3187, 2014
Kerr SM, Parker SE, Mitchell AA, et al: Periconceptional maternal fever, folic acid intake, and the risk for neural tube defects. Ann Epidemiol 27(12):777, 2017
Kinder JM, Stelzer IA, Arch PC, et al: Immunological implications of pregnancy-induced microchimerism. Nat Rev Immunol 17(8)483, 2017
Koch R, Hanley W, Levy H, et al: The maternal phenylketonuria international study: 1984–2002. Pediatrics 112(6 Pt 2):1523, 2003
Kong A, Frigge ML, Masson G, et al: Rate of de novo mutations, father's age, and disease risk. Nature 488(7412):471, 2012
Krogh C, Gortz S, Wohlfahrt J, et al: Pre- and perinatal risk factors for pyloric stenosis and their influence on the male predominance. Am J Epidemiol 176(1):24, 2012
Lejeune J, Turpin R, Gautier M: Chromosomic diagnosis of mongolism. Arch Fr Pediatr 16:962, 1959
Lin AE, Garver KL: Genetic counseling for congenital heart defects. J Pediatr 113(6):1105, 1988
Lin HY, Chen YJ, Hung HY, et al: Clinical characteristics and survival of trisomy 18 in a medical center in Taipei, 1988–2004. Am J Med Genet 140(9):945, 2006
Lin HY, Lin SP, Chen YJ, et al: Clinical characteristics and survival of trisomy 13 in a medical center in Taiwan, 1985–2004. Pediatr Int 49(3):380, 2007
Loane M, Morris JK, Addor M, et al: Twenty-year trends in the prevalence of Down syndrome and other trisomies in Europe: impact of maternal age and prenatal screening. Eur J Hum Genet 21(1):27, 2013
Lord J, McMullan DJ, Eberhardt RY. Prenatal exome sequencing analysis in fetal structural anomalies detected by ultrasonography (PAGE): a cohort study. Lancet 393(10173):747, 2019
Lowe X, Eskenazi B, Nelson DO, et al: Frequency of XY sperm increases with age in fathers of boys with Klinefelter syndrome. Am J Hum Genet 69(5):1046, 2001
Lupton M, Oteng-Ntim E, Ayida G, et al: Cardiac disease in pregnancy. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 14(2):137, 2002
Mai CT, Kucik JE, Isenburg J, et al: Selected birth defects data from population-based birth defects surveillance programs in the United States, 2006 to 2010: featuring trisomy conditions. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 97(11):709, 2013
Malvestiti F, Agrati C, Grimi B, et al: Interpreting mosaicism in chorionic villi: results of a monocentric series of 1001 mosaics in chorionic villi with follow-up amniocentesis. Prenat Diagn 35(11):1117, 2015
Manning M, Hudgins L: Professional Practice and Guidelines Committee: array-based technology and recommendations for utilization in medical genetics practice for detection of chromosomal abnormalities. Genet Med 12(11):742, 2010
Martinez-Portilla RJ, Pauta M, Hawkins-Villarreal A, et al: Added value of chromosomal microarray analysis over conventional karyotyping in stillbirth work-up: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 53(5):590, 2019
Massalska D, Bijok J, Ilnicka A, et al: Triploidy – variability of sonographic phenotypes. Prenat Diagn 37(8):774, 2017
McDonald-McGinn DM, Sullivan KE, Marino B, et al: 22q11.2 deletion syndrome. Nat Rev Dis Primers 1:15071, 2015
McGowan-Jordan J, Hastings RJ, Moore S (eds): ISCN 2020: An International System for Human Cytogenomic Nomenclature. Basel, Karger, 2020
Meyer RE, Liu G, Gilboa SM, et al: Survival of children with trisomy 13 and trisomy 18: a multi-state population-based study. Am J Med Genet Part A 170(4):825, 2016
Monaghan KG, Lyon E, Spector EB, et al: ACMG Standards and Guidelines for fragile X testing: a revision to the disease-specific supplements to the Standards and Guidelines for Clinical Genetics Laboratories of the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics. Genet Med 15(7):575, 2013
MRC Vitamin Study Research Group: Prevention of neural tube defects: results of the Medical Research Council Vitamin Study. Lancet 338(8760):131, 1991
National Center for Biotechnology Information: GeneReviews. 2021. Available at: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK1116/. Accessed October 4, 2021
National Center for Biotechnology Information: GTR: Genetic Testing Registry. 2021. Available at: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/gtr/. Accessed October 4, 2021
National Library of Medicine: MedlinePlus Genetics. 2021. Available at: https://medlineplus.gov/genetics/. Accessed October 4, 2021
Nelson DL: The fragile X syndromes. Semin Cell Biol 6(1):5, 1995
Nelson KE, Rosella LC, Mahant S, et al: Survival and surgical interventions for children with trisomy 13 and 18. JAMA 316(4):420, 2016
Nolin SL, Brown WT, Glickspan A, et al: Expansion of the fragile X CGG repeat in females with premutation or intermediate alleles. Am J Hum Genet 72(2):454, 2003
Nora JJ, Nora AH: Updates on counseling the family with a first-degree relative with a congenital heart defect. Am J Med Genet 29(1):137, 1988
Norton ME, Brar H, Weiss J, et al: Non-Invasive Chromosomal Evaluation (NICE) study: results of a multicenter prospective cohort study for detection of fetal trisomy 21 and trisomy 18. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(2):137.e1, 2012
Nussbaum RL, McInnes RR, Willard HF (eds): Complex inheritance of common multifactorial traits. In Thompson & Thompson Genetics in Medicine, 8th ed. Philadelphia, Saunders, 2016
Olsson A, Hellgren M, Berntorp E, et al: Clotting factor level is not a good predictor of bleeding in carriers of haemophilia A and B. Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis 25(5):471, 2014
Oniya O, Neves K, Ahmed B, et al: A review of the reproductive consequences of consanguinity. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 232(1):87, 2019
Parker SE, Mai CT, Canfield MA, et al: Updated national birth prevalence estimates for selected birth defects in the United States, 2004–2006. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 88(12):1008, 2010
Patau K, Smith DW, Therman E, et al: Multiple congenital anomaly caused by an extra autosome. Lancet 1(7128):790, 1960
Pergament E, Cuckle H, Zimmermann B, et al: Single-nucleotide polymorphism-based noninvasive prenatal screening in a high-risk and low-risk cohort. Obstet Gynecol 124(2pt1):210, 2014
Petersen JM, Parker SE, Benedum CM, et al: Periconceptional folic acid and risk for neural tube defects among higher risk pregnancies. Birth Defects Res 111(19):1501, 2019
Petrovski S, Aggarwal V, Giordano JL, et al. Whole-exome sequencing in the evaluation of fetal structural anomalies: a prospective cohort study. Lancet 393(10173):758, 2019
Platt LD, Koch R, Hanley WB, et al: The international study of pregnancy outcome in women with maternal phenylketonuria: report of a 12-year study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182(2):326, 2000

Plug I, Mauser-Bunschoten EP, Brocker-Vriends AH, et al: Bleeding in carriers of hemophilia. Blood 108(1):52, 2006
Quezada MS, Gil MM, Francisco C, et al: Screening for trisomies 21, 18, and 13 by cell-free DNA analysis of maternal blood at 10–11 weeks. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 45(1):36, 2015
Radicioni AF, Ferlin A, Balercia G, et al: Consensus statement on diagnosis and clinical management of Klinefelter syndrome. J Endocrinol Invest 33(11):839, 2010
Rankin J, Tennant PWG, Bythell M, et al: Predictors of survival in children born with Down syndrome: a registry-based study. Pediatrics 129(6):e1373, 2012
Reddy UM, Abuhamad AZ, Levine D, et al: Fetal Imaging. Executive summary of a joint Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, American College of Radiology, Society for Pediatric Radiology, and Society of Radiologists in Ultrasound Fetal Imaging Workshop. Obstet Gynecol 123(5):1070, 2014
Reddy UM, Goldenberg R, Silver R, et al: Stillbirth classification—developing an international consensus for research: executive summary of a National Institute of Child Health and Human Development workshop. Obstet Gynecol 114(4):901, 2009
Reddy UM, Grier PP, Saade GR, et al: Karyotype versus microarray testing for genetic abnormalities after stillbirth. N Engl J Med 367(23):2185, 2012
Romeo G, Bittles AH: Consanguinity in the contemporary world. Hum Hered 77(1):6, 2014
Rosa RF, Rosa RC, Lorenzen MB, et al: Trisomy 18: experience of a reference hospital from the south of Brazil. Am J Med Genet A 155A(7):1529, 2011
Samango-Sprouse CA, Lasutschinkow P, Powell S, et al: The incidence of anxiety symptoms in boys with 47,XXY (Klinefelter syndrome) and the possible impact of timing of diagnosis and hormonal replacement therapy. Am J Med Genet Part A 179(3):423, 2019
Schmickel RD: Contiguous gene syndromes: a component of recognizable syndromes. J Pediatr 109(2):231, 1986
Schneider AS, Mennuti MT, Zackai EH: High cesarean section rate in trisomy 18 births: a potential indication for late prenatal diagnosis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 140(4):367, 1981
Schorge JO: Ovarian germ cell and sex cord-stromal tumors. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2020
Shaffer LG, Agan N, Goldberg JD, et al: American College of Medical Genetics Statement on diagnostic testing for uniparental disomy. Genet Med 3(3):206, 2001
Sheridan E, Wright J, Small N, et al: Risk factors for congenital anomaly in a multiethnic birth cohort: an analysis of the Born in Branford study. Lancet 382(9901):1350, 2013
Shin M, Besser LM, Kucik JE, et al: Prevalence of Down syndrome in children and adolescents in 10 regions of the United States. Pediatrics 124(6):1565, 2009
Shipp TD, Benacerraf BR: Second trimester ultrasound screening for chromosomal abnormalities. Prenat Diagn 22(4):296, 2002
Shprintzen RJ: Velo-cardio-facial syndrome: 30 years of study. Dev Disabil Res Rev 14(1):3, 2008
Silasi M, Rana S, Powe C, et al: Placental expression of angiogenic factors in trisomy 13. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(6):546.e1, 2011
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: The use of chromosomal microarray for prenatal diagnosis. SMFM Consult Series No. 41. October 2016
Spence JE, Perciaccante RG, Greig FM, et al: Uniparental disomy as a mechanism for human genetic disease. Am J Hum Genet 42(2):217, 1988
Spotila LD, Sereda L, Prockop DJ: Partial isodisomy for maternal chromosome 7 and short stature in an individual with a mutation at the COLIA2 locus. Am J Hum Genet 51(6):1396, 1992
Springett A, Wellesley D, Greenlees R, et al: Congenital anomalies associated with trisomy 18 or trisomy 13: a registry-based study in 16 European countries, 2000–2011. Am J Med Genet A 167A(12):3062, 2015
Stevenson DA, Carey JC: Contribution of malformations and genetic disorders to mortality in a children's hospital. Am J Med Genet 126A(4):393, 2004
Stoll C, Dott B, Alembik Y, et al: Associated congenital anomalies among cases with Down syndrome. Eur J Med Genet 58(12):674, 2015
Stoltenberg C, Magnus P, Lie RT, et al: Birth defects and parental consanguinity in Norway. Am J Epidemiol 145(5):439, 1997
Tartaglia N, Ayari N, Howell S, et al: 48,XXYY, 48,XXXY, and 49,XXXXY syndromes: not just variants of Klinefelter syndrome. Acta Paediatrica 100(6):851, 2011
Tartaglia NR, Howell S, Sutherland A, et al: A review of trisomy X (47,XXX). Orphanet J Rare Dis 5:8, 2010
Toriello HV, Meck JM, Professional Practice and Guidelines Committee: Statement on guidance for genetic counseling in advanced paternal age. Genet Med 10(6):457, 2008
Toutain J, Goutte-Gattat D, Horovitz J, et al: Confined placental mosaicism revised: impact on pregnancy characteristics and outcome. PLoS One 13(4):e0195905, 2018
Tran SL, Samango-Sprouse CA, Sadeghin T, et al: Hormonal replacement therapy and its potential influence on working memory and competency/adaptive functioning in 47,XXY (Klinefelter syndrome). Am J Med Genet Part A 179(12):2374, 2019
Tuohy JF, James DK: Pre-eclampsia and trisomy 13. BJOG 99(11):891, 1992
Turner HH: A syndrome of infantilism, congenital webbed neck and cubitus valgus. Endocrinol 23:566, 1938
Vendola C, Canfield M, Daiger SP, et al: Survival of Texas infants born with trisomies 21, 18, and 13. Am J Med Genet A 152A(2):360, 2010
Vockley J, Andersson HC, Antshel KM, et al: ACMG Practice Guidelines: phenylalanine hydroxylase deficiency: diagnosis and management guideline. Genet Med 16(2):188, 2014
Wang J, Chen L, Zhou C, et al. Prospective chromosome analysis of 3429 amniocentesis samples in China using copy number variation sequencing. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(3):287, 2018
Wang Y, Chen Y, Tian F, et al: Maternal mosaicism is a significant contributor to discordant sex chromosomal aneuploidies associated with non-invasive prenatal testing. Clin Chem 60(1):251, 2014
Watson WJ, Miller RC, Wax JR, et al: Sonographic findings of trisomy 18 in the second trimester of pregnancy. J Ultrasound Med 27(7):1033, 2008
Wellesley D, Dolk H, Boyd PA, et al: Rare chromosome abnormalities, prevalence, and prenatal diagnosis rates from population-based congenital anomaly registers in Europe. Eur J Hum Genet 20(5):521, 2012
Wigby K, D'Epagnier C, Howell S, et al: Expanding the phenotype of triple X syndrome: a comparison of prenatal versus postnatal diagnosis. Am J Med Genet Part A 170(11):2870, 2016
Wilkie AOM, Goriely A: Gonadal mosaicism and non-invasive prenatal diagnosis for reassurance in sporadic paternal age effect (PAE) disorders. Prenat Diagn 23(9):946, 2017
Worton RG, Stern R: A Canadian collaborative study of mosaicism in amniotic fluid cell cultures. Prenat Diagn 4(7):131, 1984
Wou K, Hyun Y, Chitayat D, et al: Analysis of tissue from products of conception and perinatal losses using QF-PCR and microarray: a three-year retrospective study resulting in an efficient protocol. Eur J Med Genet 59(8):417, 2016
Zalel Y, Shapiro I, Weissmann-Brenner A, et al: Prenatal sonographic features of triploidy at 12–16 weeks. Prenat Diagn 36(7)650, 2016
Zhang J, Li J, Saucier JB, et al. Non-invasive prenatal sequencing for multiple Mendelian monogenic disorders using circulating cell-free DNA. Nat Med 2019;25(3):439

CHAPTER 17

Prenatal Diagnosis

Prenatal diagnosis is the science of identifying congenital abnormalities and genetic conditions in the fetus. It encompasses the diagnosis of structural malformations with specialized ultrasound, screening tests for aneuploidy, carrier screening for genetic diseases, and diagnostic tests performed on chorionic villi and amnionic fluid.

Based on population-based registry data including births, fetal deaths, and pregnancy terminations, 4 per 1000 pregnancies have a chromosomal abnormality (Wellesley, 2012). If chromosomal microarray analysis (CMA) is performed on chorionic villi or amnionic fluid, an additional 4 per 1000 are found to have a pathogenic copy number variant, such as a microdeletion or microduplication (Srebniak, 2017). It is important for all pregnant women to be offered both screening and diagnostic tests.

The goal of prenatal diagnosis is to provide accurate information about short- and long-term prognosis, recurrence risk, and potential therapy. Nondirective counseling and provision of unbiased knowledge are paramount. Management of an affected pregnancy that includes diagnostic testing, discussion of potential fetal therapy options and postnatal care, and decisions related to expectant management or pregnancy termination are all incorporated into counseling (Flessel, 2011). Fetal imaging of congenital anomalies is discussed in Chapter 15, fetal therapy in Chapter 19, and pregnancy termination in Chapter 11.

HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVE

Nearly 50 years ago, Brock (1972, 1973) observed that pregnancies complicated by neural-tube defects had higher levels of alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) in maternal serum and amnionic fluid. Widespread serum screening began in 1977, after a collaborative trial from the United Kingdom established the association between elevated maternal serum AFP levels (MSAFP) and fetal open neural-tube defects (Wald, 1977). Screening at 16 to 18 weeks' gestation detected 90 percent of fetuses with anencephaly and 80 percent of those with open spina bifida, similar to current screening performance (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c).

The terms *level I* and *level II* ultrasound were coined in this context. In the California MSAFP Screening Program of the 1980s and early 1990s, the first step in evaluation of an abnormally elevated MSAFP was a level I ultrasound examination. This screening examination demonstrated that one third of pregnancies with MSAFP elevation had incorrect gestational age, multifetal gestation, or fetal demise as the etiology (Filly, 1993). Amniocentesis was then offered to the remaining two thirds. If the amnionic fluid AFP concentration was elevated, a level II ultrasound examination was performed to detect and characterize a fetal abnormality.

Additionally, an elevated amnionic fluid AFP level prompted a concurrent assay for amnionic fluid acetylcholinesterase.

TABLE 17-1. Estimated Risks for Fetal Trisomy 21 and Any Aneuploidy According to Maternal Age and Timing of Diagnosis

	Trisomy 21			Any Aneuploidy	
Age	Chorionic Villus Sampling	Amniocentesis	Delivery	Amniocentesis	Delivery
35	1/249	1/280	1/356	1/132	1/204
36	1/196	1/220	1/280	1/105	1/167
37	1/152	1/171	1/218	1/83	1/130
38	1/117	1/131	1/167	1/65	1/103
39	1/89	1/100	1/128	1/53	1/81
40	1/68	1/76	1/97	1/40	1/63
41	1/51	1/57	1/73	1/31	1/50
42	1/38	1/43	1/55	1/25	1/39
43	1/29	1/32	1/41	1/19	1/30
44	1/21	1/24	1/30	1/15	1/24
45	1/16	1/18	1/23	1/12	1/19

Adapted from Hook, 1983; Snidjers, 1999.

Because acetylcholinesterase leaks from the exposed neural tissue into the amnionic fluid, presence of both analytes was used to confirm the diagnosis. However, other fetal abnormalities are associated with elevated amnionic fluid AFP and positive assay results for acetylcholinesterase. These include ventral wall defects, esophageal atresia, fetal teratoma, cloacal exstrophy, and skin abnormalities such as epidermolysis bullosa.

Most neural-tube defects are now detected with a standard ultrasound examination, and the detailed ultrasound examination is the preferred diagnostic test (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c; Dashe, 2006). Level II ultrasound is no longer an appropriate synonym for detailed ultrasound examination, because the study now includes a much more comprehensive evaluation of fetal anatomy (Chap. 14, p. 251).

As MSAFP screening was being adopted, the designation "advanced maternal age" (AMA) became popular. A 1979 National Institutes of Health Consensus Development Conference recommended advising pregnant women who were 35 years and older about the possibility of amniocentesis for fetal karyotyping. The threshold was based on the greater risk for selected fetal chromosomal abnormalities with increasing maternal age (Table 17-1). There was also an assumption that the loss rate attributable to amniocentesis was equivalent to the fetal Down syndrome risk at maternal age 35. *This is no longer the case.*

In 1984, Merkatz and colleagues reported that midtrimester MSAFP levels were lower in pregnancies with trisomies 21 and 18 than in unaffected pregnancies. Maternal age was incorporated into the calculation, which enabled assignment of a specific risk (DiMaio, 1987; New England Regional Genetics Group, 1989). The MSAFP screen detected approximately 25 percent of cases of fetal trisomy 21 when the threshold ratio for a positive result was set at 1:270—the approximate second-trimester risk at maternal age 35. This trisomy 21 risk threshold and the associated 5-percent false-positive rate became standards that remain in use in some laboratories.

ANEUPLOIDY SCREENING

Aneuploidy is the presence of one or more extra chromosomes, usually resulting in trisomy, or loss of a chromosome—monosomy (Chap. 16, p. 309). Of recognized pregnancies with chromosomal abnormalities, trisomy 21 accounts for approximately half of cases; trisomy 18 accounts for 15 percent; trisomy 13, for 5 percent; and the sex chromosomal abnormalities—45,X, 47,XXX, 47,XXY, and 47,XYY—for approximately 12 percent. Screening tests are available for some or all of these aneuploidies.

The risk for fetal trisomy increases with maternal age, particularly after age 35 (Fig. 16-2, p. 310). The positive predictive value of all aneuploidy screening tests is higher for women aged 35 years and older. Such women account for 18 percent of deliveries in the United States (Fig. 17-1). At Parkland Hospital, the majority of Down syndrome births occur in this age group (Hussamy, 2019). Other important aneuploidy risk factors include a numerical chromosomal abnormality or structural chromosomal rearrangement in the woman or her partner—such as a balanced translocation—or a prior pregnancy with autosomal trisomy or triploidy.

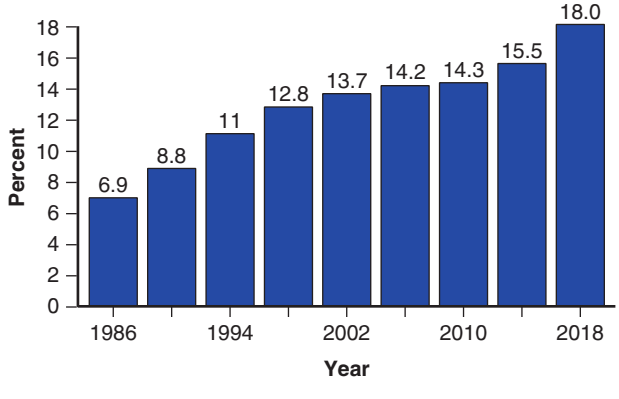


FIGURE 17-1 Trends in the percentage of births to women aged 35 to 44 years. (Data from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2015, 2019).

Broadly speaking, there are two types of aneuploidy screening tests, those that are analyte-based and those that are cell-free DNA-based. Cell-free DNA (cfDNA) screening is more sensitive and specific than analyte-based screening, and it has a much higher positive predictive value. One prospective screening study for trisomy 21 in 15,000 pregnancies found that the average positive predictive value was 80 percent for cfDNA but only 3 percent for first-trimester screening (Norton, 2015). However, analyte-based screening has the unusual benefit that an abnormal result may indicate a genetic abnormality for which screening was not specifically performed (p. 337). The position of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020e) is that no one screening test is superior in all circumstances. No aneuploidy screening test is diagnostic, and prenatal diagnosis is strongly recommended before acting upon a result.

There are selected circumstances in which aneuploidy screening is *not* recommended. Following diagnosis of a major fetal abnormality, prenatal diagnosis with amniocentesis or chorionic villus sampling is advised. The fetal risk cannot be normalized with a negative aneuploidy screening result. Screening results can be falsely negative, and major abnormalities confer risk for genetic syndromes not identified through screening tests. Analyte-based screening tests are not valid in the setting of an abnormality that affects the AFP component, such as a neural-tube defect or ventral-wall defect. Additionally, all aneuploidy screening methods are less accurate in twin gestations and are invalid in triplet gestations and higher-order multiples.

Aneuploidy screening should be an informed patient choice that incorporates the patient's clinical circumstances, values, interests, and goals. Counseling should be individualized, with the understanding that at least 20 percent of women prefer not to receive aneuploidy screening, even when financial barriers are removed (Kuppermann, 2014). Elements of counseling prior to aneuploidy screening are listed in Table 17-2. The screening test(s) offered and elected may depend on factors such as gestational age, provider location or practice setting, and the patient's out-of-pocket costs.

Test Characteristics

Validity characteristics convey information about how well an aneuploidy screening test differentiates affected from unaffected pregnancies. The sensitivity, also known as the detection rate, is the proportion of fetuses with a particular aneuploidy who are detected by the screening test. The converse is the false-negative rate. If a woman elects a first-trimester aneuploidy screen with a sensitivity of 80 percent for trisomy 21, the false-negative rate is 20 percent, so the test is anticipated to miss 1 in 5 affected pregnancies.

Specificity is the proportion of *unaffected* pregnancies with a negative screening result. The converse of specificity is the

TABLE 17-2. Aneuploidy Screening Counseling Elements

All pregnant women have 3 options: screening, diagnostic testing, and no screening or testing.
The purpose of a screening test is to provide information, not to dictate a course of action.
Diagnostic testing is safe and effective and provides information that screening does not.
There are differences between a screening test and a diagnostic test.
Screening evaluates whether the pregnancy is at increased risk for specific conditions and estimates the degree of risk. Screening does not provide information regarding all genetic abnormalities.
With a negative screening test result, the risk is decreased but not eliminated.
With a positive screening result, a diagnostic test is recommended if the patient wants to know whether the fetus is affected.
Irreversible management decisions should not be based on screening test results.
Cell-free DNA screening does not always provide a result, and the aneuploidy risk is increased in such cases.
Basic information is provided regarding the conditions for which screening is performed and the limitations of the screening test.
Information may include prevalence of a genetic condition, associated abnormalities, and prognosis.
Diagnosis may aid earlier identification of associated abnormalities.
In the case of trisomy 18 or 13, diagnosis may affect pregnancy management if complications arise such as growth restriction or nonreassuring fetal heart rate.
All screening tests are less effective in multifetal gestations.
Phenotypic expression of sex chromosome aneuploidies varies widely.
A-priori risk for fetal aneuploidy may affect whether a woman elects a screening test or diagnostic test.
Age-related risk information may be found in reference tables.
If a patient has had a prior fetus with autosomal trisomy, robertsonian translocation, or other chromosomal abnormality, additional evaluation and counseling are recommended.
If a major fetal abnormality has been identified with ultrasound, a diagnostic test is preferred, and aneuploidy screening is not recommended.

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020e; Dashe, 2016.

TABLE 17-3. Positive Predictive Value of Cell-Free DNA Screening for Autosomal Trisomies and Sex Chromosome Abnormalities, According to Maternal Age at Term

Maternal Age	Trisomy 21	Trisomy 18	Trisomy 13	45,X	47,XXX	47,XXY	47,XYY
20	48%	14%	6%	41%	27%	29%	25%
25	51%	15%	7%	41%	27%	29%	25%
30	61%	21%	10%	41%	27%	29%	25%
35	79%	39%	21%	41%	28%	30%	25%
40	93%	69%	50%	41%	45%	52%	25%
45	98%	90%	NA	41%	73%	77%	NA

NA = not available.
Positive predictive values were obtained using the Cell Free DNA Screening Predictive Value Calculator from the Perinatal Quality Foundation, 2020.
Calculations based on prevalence at 16 weeks' gestation using sensitivities and specificities from Gil, 2015.

false-positive rate, those without aneuploidy who nonetheless screen positive. Because aneuploidies are individually uncommon, the screen-positive rate, which is the overall proportion of tests with a positive result, is usually similar to the false-positive rate. Aneuploidy screening tests generally have screen-positive rates no higher than 5 percent.

Sensitivity and specificity do not convey any information regarding individual risk. The positive predictive value (PPV) is the proportion with a positive screening result who have an aneuploid fetus. PPV may be viewed as the test result. It is usually expressed as a 1:X ratio or as a percentage. Because PPV is directly affected by disease prevalence, it is higher in women aged 35 years and older than in younger women (Table 17-3). Negative predictive value is the proportion of those with a negative screening test result who have unaffected (euploid) fetuses. Because the prevalence of aneuploidy is low, the negative predictive value of all aneuploidy screening tests generally exceeds 99 percent (Gil, 2017; Norton, 2015).

■ Cell-free DNA Screening

This screening test identifies DNA fragments derived primarily from apoptotic trophoblasts, which are placental cells undergoing programmed cell death. Thus, the term cell-free *fetal* DNA is a misnomer. Differences between placental and fetal DNA may cause false-positive and false-negative results. There are three types of assays: whole-genome sequencing, chromosome selective or targeted sequencing, and single nucleotide polymorphism analysis. CfDNA screening can be performed at any time after 9 to 10 weeks' gestation. When it was first introduced, cfDNA screening was offered primarily to pregnancies with increased aneuploidy risk, but it has since become widely available (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020e).

CfDNA screening is most commonly used to screen for autosomal trisomies—trisomy 21, trisomy 18, and trisomy 13. It may also be used to screen for 45,X (Turner syndrome), 47,XXX, 47,XXY, and 47,XYY. A recent metaanalysis concluded that the number of reported sex aneuploidy cases is too small for accurate assessment of screening performance (Gil, 2017). The prognosis for these sex chromosomal aneuploidies differs considerably from that of the autosomal trisomies (Chap. 16, p. 313). If screening for sex chromosomal abnormalities is elected, counseling should include this information.

CfDNA has the highest sensitivity and specificity of any aneuploidy screening test. In a metaanalysis of 35 studies of largely high-risk pregnancies, the pooled sensitivity to detect trisomy 21 was 99.7 percent, and for trisomies 18 and 13, 98 percent and 99 percent, respectively (Gil, 2017). For each of these autosomal trisomies, the specificity is 99.9 percent, and the combined false-positive rate is less than 0.2 percent. If the screening platform includes other genetic conditions, each additional condition increases the overall false-positive rate for the test.

The PPV of a positive cfDNA result is provided in the report or may be estimated from an online calculator or reference table (see Table 17-3). Because the risk estimate for each aneuploidy depends on maternal age, such information may be included as part of pretest counseling. This can help to avoid the misconception that a positive screen indicates aneuploidy—*it does not*.

Because cfDNA screening has a PPV far higher than analyte screening, it may be offered as a secondary screening test for women who wish to avoid amniocentesis. Such an approach has important caveats. If cfDNA is used as a secondary screening test and yields a negative result, the residual risk for a chromosomal abnormality may be as high as 2 percent (Norton, 2014). And, if the cfDNA result is positive, the delay in definitive diagnosis may affect management options.

In addition to the aforementioned aneuploidies, cfDNA screening is available for other genetic conditions. These include aneuploidies such as trisomies 16 and 22, specific microdeletion syndromes, and large copy number changes throughout the genome. Currently, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020e) does *not* recommend cfDNA screening for these other conditions. Sensitivity and specificity of cfDNA screening have not been established for them, and screening accuracy has not been validated clinically.

Limitations of cfDNA Screening

In 2 to 4 percent of pregnancies screened with cfDNA, no result is obtained. These cases are termed "no-call," or indeterminate.

TABLE 17-4. Characteristics of Screening Tests for Trisomy 21 in Singletons

Screening Test	Detection Rate	False-Positive Rate	Positive Predictive Value[a]
Quadruple screen:			
AFP, hCG, estriol, inhibin	80–82%	5%	3%
First-trimester screen:			
NT, hCG, PAPP-A	80–84%	5%	3–4%
First-trimester NT alone	64–70%	5%	
Integrated screening	94–96%	5%	5%
Sequential screening:			
Stepwise	92–97%	5.1%	5%
Contingent	91–95%	4.5%	5%
Cell-free DNA screening:			
Positive result	99%	0.1%	Table 17-3
Low fetal fraction or no result	—	2–4%	3–4%

[a]The positive predictive value represents the overall population studied and cannot be applied to any individual patient.
AFP = alpha-fetoprotein; hCG = human chorionic gonadotropin; NT = nuchal translucency; PAPP-A = pregnancy-associated plasma protein A.
Data from Aldred, 2017; Baer, 2015; Dashe, 2016; Gil, 2015; Malone, 2005b; Norton, 2015; Pergament, 2014; Quezada, 2015.

With a no-call result, the fetal aneuploidy risk is as high as 4 percent (Norton, 2015). As shown in Table 17-4, this result is similar to the average risk conferred by a positive analyte screening test result.

Low fetal fraction is a common reason for no-call results. The fetal fraction is the proportion of cfDNA in the maternal circulation that is placental rather than maternal in origin. The fetal fraction approximates 10 percent in the late first trimester, increasing slightly thereafter (Ashoor, 2013; Scott, 2018). Low fetal fraction is usually defined as <4 percent of the total, and it is more prevalent before 10 weeks' gestation and in the setting of maternal obesity (Ashoor, 2013; Juul, 2020; Scott, 2018). The no-call rate may exceed 10 to 20 percent in women whose body mass index is 40 kg/m^2 or greater (Juul, 2020). Low fetal fraction is also more common in the setting of aneuploidy, particularly trisomies 18 and 13 (Norton, 2015; Pergament, 2014). The American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics recommends that the fetal fraction be included in cfDNA reports because it assists with interpretation of results (Gregg, 2016). Pretest counseling should include the possibility of a no-call result and its clinical significance (see Table 17-2).

If the cfDNA screening test is positive or yields a no-call result, additional genetic counseling is indicated, and amniocentesis should be offered. If cfDNA screening is repeated, the risk for repeat screen failure approximates 40 percent (Dar, 2014; Quezada, 2015; Rolnik, 2018). Detailed ultrasound examination may be offered, but it is not a substitute for amniocentesis, and the residual aneuploidy risk following normal detailed ultrasound examination is unknown.

It is important to remember that cfDNA results may not reflect the fetal DNA complement. Rather, a positive result may be caused by confined placental mosaicism or early demise of an aneuploid co-twin. Alternately, it may indicate maternal aneuploidy, mosaicism, or even occult maternal malignancy (Bianchi, 2015; Curnow, 2015; Grati, 2014; Wang, 2014). If ultrasound identifies an empty second gestational sac, cfDNA screening is not recommended. The patient should be informed of such limitations prior to screening.

■ Analyte-based Aneuploidy Screening

The three categories of multiple marker-serum analyte screening are first-trimester screens, second-trimester screens, and combined first- and second-trimester screens. The serum concentration of each analyte is converted to a multiple of the median (MoM) of the unaffected population by adjusting for maternal age, maternal weight, and gestational age. The serum AFP concentration is further adjusted for maternal race and for presence of diabetes, which affect calculation of neural-tube defect risk (Greene, 1988; Huttly, 2004).

The analyte-based screening result is based on a composite likelihood ratio, and the maternal age-related risk is multiplied by this ratio. Adjustment normalizes the distribution of analyte levels and permits comparison of results from different laboratories and populations. Each woman is provided with a specific risk for trisomy 21 and for trisomy 18—or in the first trimester, for trisomy 18 or 13 in some cases. Each screening test has a predetermined value at or above which it is deemed "positive" or abnormal. For second-trimester tests, this threshold has traditionally been set at the risk for fetal Down syndrome at a maternal age of 35 years—approximately 1 in 270 in the second trimester. The trisomy 21 risk may be further modified based on selected ultrasound markers (p. 340).

A benefit of analyte screening is that pregnancies with abnormal results may have genetic abnormalities other than those for which screening was performed. For example, in a review of more than 2500 pregnancies with genetic abnormalities from the California Prenatal Screening Program, combined first- and second-trimester screening results were abnormal in 93 percent with trisomies 21 and 18 (Norton, 2016). However, results were also abnormal in 80 percent with trisomy 13, in 80 percent with 45,X, in nearly 60 percent with other sex chromosomal abnormalities, and in more than 50 percent with other genetic abnormalities. Alamillo and associates (2013) similarly identified an abnormal karyotype other than trisomies 21, 18, or 13 in 2 percent of pregnancies with abnormal first-trimester screening results, accounting for 30 percent of abnormal karyotypes in the series.

Women younger than 35 are at lower risk for the specific autosomal trisomies for which cfDNA screening is typically performed. Thus, if the goal is to select a screening test that will identify the highest proportion of fetuses with *any* chromosomal abnormality, the yield may be comparable or even slightly higher with integrated or sequential screening than with current cfDNA screening (Baer, 2015; Norton, 2014).

First-trimester Aneuploidy Screening

This test includes human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), pregnancy-associated plasma protein A (PAPP-A), and ultrasound measurement of the nuchal translucency (NT). It is performed between 11 and 14 weeks' gestation. Pregnancies with fetal trisomy 21 are characterized by higher levels of hCG and lower PAPP-A. With trisomy 18 and trisomy 13, levels of both analytes are lower (Cuckle, 2000; Malone, 2005b).

Nuchal Translucency. This is the maximum thickness of the subcutaneous translucent area between the skin and soft tissue overlying the fetal spine at the back of the neck (Fig. 17-2). It is measured in the sagittal plane and is valid when the crown-rump length (CRL) measurement is between 38 to 45 mm and 84 mm, with the lower limit varying according to the laboratory. Measurement criteria are listed in Table 14–4 (p. 250). The NT should be imaged and measured with a high degree of precision for aneuploidy detection to be accurate. This has led to standardized training, certification, and ongoing quality review programs.

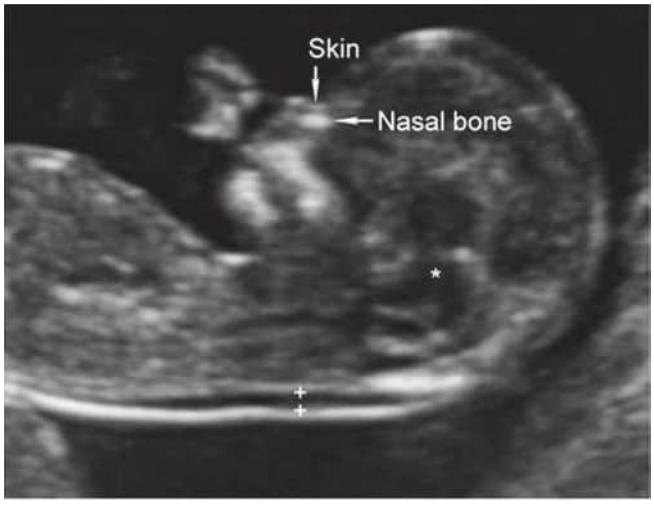


FIGURE 17-2 Sagittal image of a normal, 12-week fetus shows correct caliper placement (+) for nuchal translucency measurement. The fetal nasal bone and overlying skin are indicated. The nasal tip and the 3rd and 4th ventricles (*asterisk*), which are other landmarks that should be visible in the nasal bone image, also are shown. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Michael Zaretsky.)

An increased NT is not a fetal abnormality but rather a marker that confers increased risk. It is helpful to differentiate from cystic hygroma, which appears sonographically as a septated hypoechoic space behind the neck that extends down the back (Fig. 15-30, p. 286). The fetal aneuploidy risk is five times greater with first-trimester cystic hygroma than with increased NT (Malone, 2005a). An increased NT measurement is associated with other genetic syndromes and various birth defects, especially fetal cardiac abnormalities (Clur 2008; Simpson, 2007). If the NT measurement is at least 3 mm or reaches the 99th percentile for CRL, a detailed ultrasound examination should be offered. Similarly, fetal echocardiography may be considered if the NT measurement is at least 3 mm and is recommended if the NT measurement is 3.5 mm or greater (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020e; American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2019).

As an isolated marker, NT detects only 70 percent of trisomy 21 fetuses, and for this reason it is not used to screen singleton pregnancies (Alldred, 2017; Malone, 2005b). If cfDNA screening has already been performed, the NT measurement does not improve fetal aneuploidy detection and is not recommended for this purpose (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020e; Reiff, 2016). NT evaluation may be helpful in multifetal gestations because serum screening is less accurate, may not be available, and cannot provide information specific to each fetus. The NT distribution is similar in twins and singletons (Cleary-Goldman, 2005).

Efficacy of First-trimester Screening. Before first-trimester screening became widely adopted, four large prospective trials were conducted, together including more than 100,000 pregnancies (Reddy, 2006). When the screen-positive rate was set at 5 percent, trisomy 21 detection was 84 percent. A recent metaanalysis also reported detection of 87 percent of trisomy 21 fetuses (Alldred, 2017). First-trimester screening similarly detects approximately 80 percent of fetuses with trisomy 18 and 50 percent with trisomy 13 (Norton, 2015).

Maternal age affects the performance of first-trimester aneuploidy screening. In women younger than age 35 at delivery, fetal trisomy 21 detection ranges from 67 to 75 percent (Malone, 2005b; Wapner, 2003). Among women older than 35 at delivery, detection is as high as 90 to 95 percent, albeit at a higher false-positive rate of 15 to 22 percent.

In twin pregnancies, serum free β-hCG and PAPP-A levels are approximately double the singleton values (Vink, 2012). Even with specific curves, a normal dichorionic co-twin will tend to normalize screening results. Thus the aneuploidy detection rate is at least 15-percent lower (Bush, 2005).

Analyte abnormalities are termed *unexplained* if prenatal diagnostic testing results are normal. There is a significant

association between serum PAPP-A levels below the 5th percentile and preterm birth, growth restriction, preeclampsia, and fetal demise (Cignini, 2016; Dugoff, 2004; Jelliffe-Pawlowski, 2015). Similarly, low levels of free β-hCG have been associated with fetal demise (Goetzl, 2004). The sensitivity and PPVs of these markers are too low to make them clinically useful as screening tests (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020c).

Second-trimester Aneuploidy Screening

The quadruple marker or "quad" screening test is performed from 15 through 20 or 21 weeks' gestation depending on the laboratory. Pregnancies with fetal trisomy 21 are characterized by lower MSAFP, higher hCG, lower unconjugated estriol, and higher dimeric inhibin levels. In large prospective trials, trisomy 21 detection was 81 to 83 percent at a 5-percent screen-positive rate (Malone, 2005b; Wald, 1996, 2003). In cases of trisomy 18, levels of MSAFP, hCG, and unconjugated estriol are all decreased, and inhibin is not part of the calculation. Trisomy 18 detection is similar to that for trisomy 21, but the false-positive rate is just 0.5 percent (Benn, 1999). As with first-trimester screening, aneuploidy detection rates are lower in younger women and higher in women older than 35 years at delivery. If second-trimester serum screening is used in twin pregnancies, aneuploidy detection rates are significantly lower (Vink, 2012).

Quadruple-marker screening offers no benefit over first-trimester screening from the standpoint of trisomy 21 or trisomy 18 detection. As a stand-alone test, it is generally used if women do not begin care until the second trimester or if first-trimester screening and cfDNA screening are not available. In 2019, women who initiated prenatal care beyond the first trimester made up more than 20 percent of pregnancies in the United States (Martin, 2020). As subsequently discussed, combining first- and second-trimester screening yields greater aneuploidy detection.

Maternal Serum AFP Elevation: Neural-tube Defect Screening. AFP is the major protein in fetal serum, analogous to albumin in a child or adult. Defects in fetal integument, such as neural-tube and ventral-wall defects, permit AFP to leak into the amnionic fluid and result in dramatically increased maternal serum levels. Accurate gestational age assessment is imperative because the AFP value rises by approximately 15 percent per week during the screening window (Knight, 1992).

Using an MSAFP level of 2.5 MoM as the upper limit of normal, the neural-tube defect detection rate approximates 95 percent for anencephaly and 80 percent for spina bifida, with a screen-positive rate of 1 to 3 percent (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c; Palomaki, 2019). The overall PPV approximates just 2 percent. Higher screening threshold values are used in twin pregnancies, which have twice the AFP level of singletons (Cuckle, 1990). Importantly, because nearly all cases of anencephaly and most with spina bifida are detected during the standard second-trimester ultrasound examination, MSAFP screening is considered optional (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c; Dashe, 2006; Norem, 2005).

TABLE 17-5. Conditions Associated with MSAFP Level Elevation

Underestimated gestational age
Multifetal gestation
Fetal death
Neural-tube defect
Gastroschisis
Omphalocele
Cystic hygroma
Esophageal or intestinal obstruction
Liver necrosis
Renal anomalies—polycystic kidneys, renal agenesis, congenital nephrosis, urinary tract obstruction
Cloacal exstrophy
Osteogenesis imperfecta
Sacrococcygeal teratoma
Congenital skin abnormality
Pilonidal cyst
Chorioangioma of placenta
Placenta intervillous thrombosis
Placental abruption
Oligohydramnios
Preeclampsia
Fetal-growth restriction
Maternal hepatoma or teratoma

MSAFP = maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein.

If the serum AFP is elevated, a detailed ultrasound examination is recommended, and characteristic sonographic findings are diagnostic (Chap. 15, p. 276). Other abnormalities and conditions also may result in MSAFP elevation (Table 17-5). Amniocentesis for measurement of amnionic fluid AFP and acetylcholinesterase levels can help to diagnose whether a myelomeningocele is open or closed, which is relevant when considering fetal surgical repair (Chap. 19, p. 372).

Most pregnancies with MSAFP elevation have no fetal abnormality. The patient should receive counseling about the benefits and limitations of detailed ultrasound examination for the diagnosis of neural-tube defects and other potential etiologies. These include other fetal abnormalities, placental abnormalities, and selected adverse pregnancy outcomes (Table 17-5). The likelihood of any abnormality or adverse outcome increases in proportion to the AFP level.

There are similarly significant associations between second-trimester elevation of either hCG or dimeric inhibin alpha levels and adverse pregnancy outcomes. The likelihood of adverse outcome is greater if multiple analytes are elevated (Dugoff, 2005). The sensitivity and positive predictive values of these markers are considered too low to be useful for screening or management. No specific program of maternal or fetal surveillance has been found to favorably affect pregnancy outcomes (Dugoff, 2010).

Low Maternal Serum Estriol Level. A maternal serum estriol level less than 0.25 MoM has been associated with two uncommon but important conditions. *Smith-Lemli-Opitz syndrome* is

an autosomal recessive condition resulting from mutations in the 7-dehydrocholesterol reductase gene. It is characterized by abnormalities of the central nervous system, heart, kidney, and extremities; with ambiguous genitalia; and with fetal-growth restriction. Detailed sonography should be offered if an unconjugated estriol level is <0.25 MoM (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2019; Dugoff, 2010). An elevated amnionic fluid 7-dehydrocholesterol level can confirm the diagnosis.

The second condition is *steroid sulfatase deficiency*, also known as *X-linked ichthyosis*. It is typically an isolated condition, but it may also occur in the setting of a contiguous gene deletion syndrome (Chap. 16, p. 315). In such cases, it may be associated with Kallmann syndrome, chondrodysplasia punctata, and/or mental retardation (Langlois, 2009). If the estriol level is <0.25 MoM and the fetus appears to be male, chromosomal microarray analysis or fluorescence in situ hybridization to assess the steroid sulfatase locus on the X-chromosome may be considered.

Integrated and Sequential Screening

If first-trimester screening is combined with second-trimester screening, aneuploidy detection is significantly improved. Combined screening test options require that specimens are obtained at the correct gestational age and sent to the same laboratory. The first- and second-trimester components cannot be performed independently, because the false-positive rate would be higher and providing accurate risk assessment would be problematic.

Three types of screening strategies are available:

1. *Integrated screening* combines results of first- and second-trimester tests. This includes a combined measurement of fetal NT and serum analyte levels at 11 to 14 weeks' gestation plus quadruple markers at approximately 15 to 21 weeks. Trisomy 21 detection is 94 to 96 percent (see Table 17-4).
2. *Sequential screening* involves informing the patient of the results after first-trimester screening, with plan to offer prenatal diagnostic testing if the calculated risk value lies above a specified threshold. There are two testing strategies in this category:
   - With *stepwise sequential screening*, women whose first-trimester risk is at or below the threshold receive second-trimester screening. Using data from the First- and Second-Trimester Evaluation of Risk trial, when the first-trimester threshold is set at approximately 1:30, and the overall threshold is set at 1:270, stepwise sequential screening resulted in a 92-percent trisomy 21 detection rate (Cuckle, 2008). The false-positive rate remained 5 percent (see Table 17-4).
   - With *contingent sequential screening*, women are divided into high-, moderate-, and low-risk groups. Those at highest risk for trisomy 21—for example, risk >1:30, are counseled and offered diagnostic testing. Women at moderate risk, between 1:30 and 1:1500, undergo second-trimester screening, whereas those at lowest risk of <1:1500 receive negative screening test results and have no further testing (Cuckle, 2008). Using this strategy, more than 75 percent of those screened are provided with reassuring results almost immediately. Assuming that women accept diagnostic testing when informed that the risk is elevated, detection approaches 91 percent.

Ultrasound Screening

Ultrasound can improve aneuploidy screening by providing accurate gestational age assessment, by detecting multifetal gestations, and by identifying major structural abnormalities and minor aneuploidy markers. With rare exception, the aneuploidy risk associated with any major abnormality is high enough to recommend prenatal diagnosis with chromosomal microarray analysis. We do not recommend aneuploidy *screening* after

TABLE 17-6. Aneuploidy Risk Associated with Selected Major Fetal Anomalies

Abnormality	Birth Prevalence	Aneuploidy Risk (%)	Common Aneuploidies[a]
Cystic hygroma	1/5000	50–70	45,X; 21; 18; 13; triploidy
Nonimmune hydrops	1/1500–4000	10–20	21; 18; 13; 45,X, triploidy
Ventriculomegaly	1/1000–2000	5–25	13; 18; 21; triploidy
Holoprosencephaly	1/10,000–15,000	30–40	13; 18; 22; triploidy
Dandy-Walker malformation	1/12,000	40	18; 13; 21; triploidy
Cleft lip/palate	1/1000	5–15	18; 13
Cardiac defects	5–8/1000	10–30	21; 18; 13; 45,X; 22q11.2 microdeletion
Diaphragmatic hernia	1/3000–5000	5–15	18; 13; 21
Esophageal atresia	1/4000	10	18; 21
Duodenal atresia	1/10,000	30	21
Gastroschisis	1/2000	No increase	
Omphalocele	1/3000–5000	30–50	18; 13; 21; triploidy
Clubfoot	1/1000	5–30	18; 13

[a]Numbers indicate autosomal trisomies except where indicated. For example, 45,X indicates Turner syndrome.

Data from Best, 2012; Canfield, 2006; Colvin, 2005; Cragan, 2009; Dolk, 2010; Ecker, 2000; Gallot, 2007; Long, 2006; Orioli, 2010; Pavone, 2018; Pedersen, 2012; Sharma, 2011; Solomon, 2010; Walker, 2001.

detection of a major abnormality, because of the many genetic conditions are not detectable with screening tests. Counseling should include the association of the abnormality with aneuploidy (Table 17-6). A caveat is that fetal abnormalities are frequently not isolated, and associated-but-undetectable abnormalities may greatly affect prognosis.

Importantly, fetuses with trisomy 21 and other genetic syndromes may not have obvious ultrasound abnormalities. Just one third of trisomy 21 fetuses have a major abnormality identified with second-trimester ultrasound evaluations (Bromley, 2002; Hussamy, 2019; Vintileos, 1995). If major anomalies and minor aneuploidy markers are considered, 50 to 75 percent of pregnancies affected by Down syndrome are found to have a sonographic abnormality. This is not unexpected, because nearly 40 percent of infants with trisomy 21 do not have major organ system abnormalities identified in the newborn period (Hussamy, 2019). In contrast, the vast majority of fetuses with trisomies 18 and 13 and with triploidy do have ultrasound abnormalities detectable in the second trimester.

Aneuploidy Markers

For more than three decades, investigators have recognized that ultrasound detection of aneuploidy, particularly trisomy 21, may be improved by minor markers that are collectively referred to as "soft signs." Minor markers are normal variants rather than fetal abnormalities, and in the absence of aneuploidy or an associated abnormality, they do not significantly affect prognosis. One or more markers are present in at least 10 percent of pregnancies (Bromley, 2002; Nyberg, 2003). Examples are listed in Table 17-7 and depicted in Figure 17-3.

TABLE 17-7. First- and Second-Trimester Ultrasound Markers Associated with Fetal Trisomy 21

First trimester
Ductus venosus with A-wave absence or flow reversal
Nasal bone absence or hypoplasia
Nuchal translucency enlargement
Tricuspid valve regurgitation
Second trimester
Brachycephaly or shortened frontal lobes
Clinodactyly (hypoplastic middle phalanx of fifth digit)
Echogenic bowel
Flat-appearing facies
Echogenic intracardiac focus
Nasal bone absence or hypoplasia
Nuchal fold thickening
Renal pelvis dilatation
"Sandal gap" between first and second toes
Short ear length
Single transverse palmar crease
Single umbilical artery
Short femur
Short humerus
Subclavian artery aberrant (right side)
Widened iliac angle

Markers listed alphabetically.

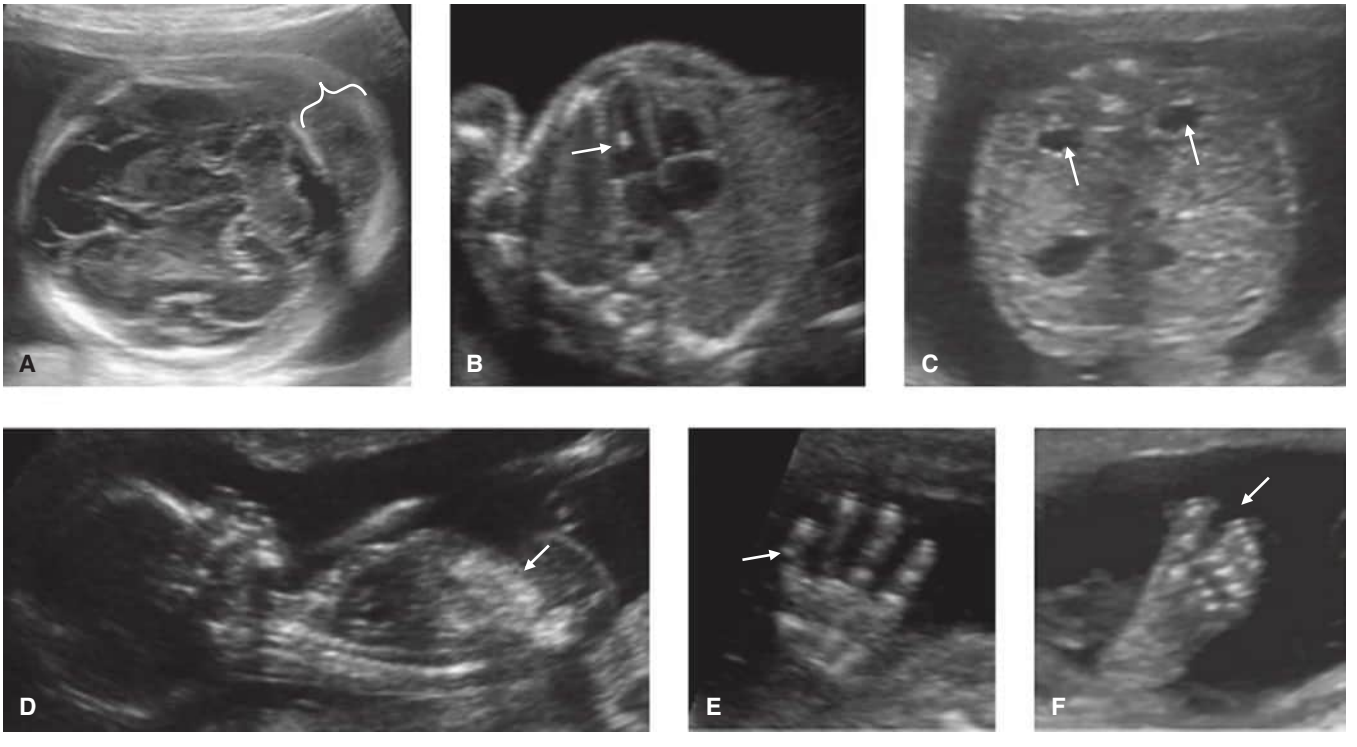


FIGURE 17-3 Minor sonographic markers that are associated with increased risk for fetal Down syndrome. **A.** Nuchal skinfold thickening (*bracket*). **B.** Echogenic intracardiac focus (*arrow*). **C.** Mild renal pelvis dilatation (pyelectasis) (*arrows*). **D.** Echogenic bowel (*arrow*). **E.** Clinodactyly—hypoplasia of the 5th finger middle phalanx creates an inward curvature (*arrow*). **F.** "Sandal-gap" (*arrow*).

A minor marker is an indication for a detailed survey of fetal anatomy to determine if it is isolated (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2019).

If an isolated marker is identified and aneuploidy screening has not yet been performed, it should be offered. A benefit of cfDNA screening is that isolated aneuploidy markers no longer factor into the aneuploidy risk, because the negative predictive value of a normal cfDNA test is so high. Conversely, if a cfDNA result is abnormal, the absence of minor markers is not considered reassuring.

First-trimester Markers. Detection of first-trimester findings associated with aneuploidy requires specialized imaging. NT evaluation is discussed earlier (p. 337). Other first-trimester markers are not routinely used in the United States but may be available at specialized centers. The Perinatal Quality Foundation's Nuchal Translucency Quality Review Program offers an education program in first-trimester nasal bone assessment. The Fetal Medicine Foundation also provides online instruction and certification in first-trimester assessment of nasal bone, ductus venosus flow, and tricuspid flow.

There are additional benefits of first-trimester ultrasound evaluation in women who elect aneuploidy screening, including accurate assessment of gestational age and early detection of multifetal gestation or fetal demise. As discussed in Chapter 14 (p. 249), standard first-trimester sonography may identify selected major anomalies associated with aneuploidy, such as cystic hygroma.

Second-trimester Markers. If analyte-based aneuploidy screening has been performed, minor markers may be used to modify the risk using likelihood ratios (Table 17-8). The risk increases with the number of markers identified. Risk modification should follow a protocol that specifies criteria for each marker (Reddy, 2014).

TABLE 17-8. Likelihood Ratios and False-Positive Rates for Isolated Second-Trimester Markers Used in Trisomy 21 Screening Protocols

Sonographic Marker	Likelihood Ratio	Prevalence in Unaffected Fetuses (%)
Nuchal skinfold thickening	11–17	0.5
Renal pelvis dilation	1.5–1.9	2.0–2.2
Echogenic intracardiac focus	1.4–2.8	3.8–3.9[a]
Echogenic bowel	6.1–6.7	0.5–0.7
Short femur	1.2–2.7	3.7–3.9
Short humerus	5.1–7.5	0.4
Any one marker	*1.9–2.0*	*10.0–11.3*
Two markers	*6.2–9.7*	*1.6–2.0*
Three or more	*80–115*	*0.1–0.3*

[a]Higher in Asian individuals.
Data from Bromley, 2002; Nyberg, 2001; Smith-Bindman, 2001.

The *nuchal skinfold* is imaged in the transcerebellar view of the head and is measured from the outer edge of the skull to the outer border of the skin (see Fig. 17-3A). The skinfold is considered thickened if it measures ≥6 mm at 15 to 20 weeks (Benacerraf, 1985). This finding is seen in approximately 1 per 200 pregnancies and confers more than tenfold risk for trisomy 21 (Bromley, 2002; Nyberg, 2001; Smith-Bindman, 2001).

An *echogenic intracardiac focus* is a focal papillary muscle calcification that is neither a structural nor functional cardiac abnormality (see Fig. 17-3B). It is present in 4 to 7 percent of normal fetuses. The fetal trisomy 21 risk is approximately doubled. The finding is more commonly identified in Asian individuals (Shipp, 2000). Fetuses with trisomy 13 may have bilateral echogenic foci (Nyberg, 2001).

Mild *renal pelvis dilatation* is usually transient or physiologic (Chap. 15, p. 298). The renal pelves are measured anterior-to-posterior in a transverse image of the kidneys, with calipers placed at the inner borders of the fluid collection (see Fig. 17-3C). A measurement ≥4 mm is found in about 2 percent of fetuses and approximately doubles the risk for trisomy 21. The degree of pelvic dilatation beyond 4 mm correlates with the likelihood of an underlying renal abnormality, and third-trimester sonography is recommended at approximately 32 weeks.

Echogenic fetal bowel is defined as bowel that is sonographically as bright as fetal bone (see Fig. 17-3D). It is identified in approximately 0.5 percent of pregnancies and often represents a small amount of swallowed blood, not infrequently in the setting of MSAFP elevation. The fetal trisomy 21 risk is increased approximately sixfold. Echogenic bowel is also associated with fetal cytomegalovirus infection and cystic fibrosis—representing inspissated meconium in the latter. Follow-up ultrasound evaluation is suggested at 32 weeks' gestation to evaluate fetal growth (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020e).

For the purpose of Down syndrome screening, the fetal *femur* and *humerus* are considered short if below the 2.5th percentile for gestational age (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020e). Third-trimester ultrasound evaluation is suggested to assess fetal growth. Fetuses with trisomy 21 and short femur are not more likely to be growth restricted, however (Herrera, 2019).

The fetal *nasal bone* is absent in 30 percent of second-trimester fetuses with trisomy 21 and hypoplastic in more than 50 percent (Moreno-Cid, 2014). Absent nasal bone occurs in approximately 1 in 200 euploid fetuses (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020e; Viora, 2005). The finding represents delayed ossification rather than true absence. The nasal bone is measured between 15 and 22 weeks' gestation. Hypoplasia may be defined as shorter than 2.5 mm, as >2 standard deviations below the mean, or based on a ratio to the biparietal diameter (Cicero, 2003). The fetal profile and nasal bone are components of the detailed fetal anatomic survey, but they are not assessed as part of the standard examination and thus not used for routine screening (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2019).

One or more *choroid plexus cysts* are seen in 1 to 2 percent of euploid pregnancies (Fig. 16-5, p. 312). The cyst is a benign,

normal variant of no clinical consequence. If associated with structural abnormalities however, the trisomy 18 risk is increased (Reddy, 2014).

CARRIER SCREENING FOR GENETIC DISORDERS

The goal of genetic carrier screening is to provide individuals with meaningful information to guide pregnancy planning according to their personal values (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). There are three approaches, each of which is an acceptable strategy: ethnicity-based carrier screening, panethnic screening (performed regardless of ethnicity), and expanded carrier screening—which is a type of panethnic screening performed for a large number of conditions. All carrier screening is optional and should be an informed choice.

Carrier screening is ideally performed prior to conception so that both partners can have the opportunity to consider the results and pursue options such as preimplantation genetic testing (p. 348) or donor gametes. If the screen detects a genetic condition, partner screening should be offered. No screening test will identify all carriers of a condition. Genetic counseling should include the residual risk for the condition if the partner's screen is negative, as well as prenatal diagnosis options (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). Prenatal diagnosis is increasingly available if disease-causing mutation or mutations are known. The Genetic Testing Registry of the National Institutes of Health contains detailed information regarding more than 18,000 genetic conditions and 78,000 genetic tests (www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/gtr/). In the setting of consanguinity, additional genetic counseling is indicated.

Ethnicity-based carrier screening is offered for selected autosomal recessive conditions that are found in greater frequency in specific racial or ethnic groups. The *founder effect* occurs when an otherwise rare gene is found with greater frequency in a certain population and can be traced back to a single family member or small group of ancestors. It may develop when generations of individuals procreate only within their own groups because of religious or ethnic prohibitions or geographical isolation. Because assignment of a single ethnicity is often difficult, *panethnic* screening is increasingly preferred.

Expanded carrier screening has the advantage of screening for many conditions simultaneously, ranging from a few dozen to more than 1000 (Chokshvilli, 2018). An unfortunate result is that much of the population—more than 50 percent of those screened–may be identified to be carriers for at least 1 condition. Some conditions are so rare that information about detection and residual risk are limited. Counseling regarding phenotypic expression of different mutations and determination of whether variants have clinical significance has become increasingly complex. Thus, expanded carrier screening can cause anxiety for families and may pose challenges to already-strained genetic counseling resources. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) has the following guidelines for conditions included in expanded panels:

1. The carrier frequency should be at least 1:100, which corresponds to a population prevalence of 1:40,000.
2. The condition should have a well-defined phenotype, lead to a detrimental effect on quality of life, cause cognitive or physical impairment, or require surgical or medical intervention.
3. Conditions with adult onset are not recommended for inclusion.

There is a long-held principle that genetic carrier screening for a particular condition not be repeated in a subsequent pregnancy. The number of mutations for which testing is available has greatly increased in recent years, but the additional yield of rescreening is usually low. Consultation with a provider with genetic expertise should be considered before screening is repeated (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

Cystic Fibrosis

This disorder is caused by a mutation in the *cystic fibrosis conductance transmembrane regulator (CFTR)* gene, which is located on the long arm of chromosome 7 and encodes a chloride-channel protein. Although the most common *CFTR* mutation associated with classic cystic fibrosis (CF) is the Δ*F508* mutation, more than 2100 mutations have been identified (Cystic Fibrosis Mutation Database, 2020). CF may develop from either *homozygosity* or *compound heterozygosity* for mutations in the *CFTR* gene. One mutation must be present in each copy of the gene, but they need not be the same mutation. There is a wide range of clinical disease severity. Median survival length is 42 years, but approximately 15 percent have milder disease and can survive for decades longer. Care of the pregnant woman with CF is discussed in Chapter 54 (p. 968).

For more than two decades, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) has recommended that all women who are pregnant or considering pregnancy be offered CF carrier screening. Such screening should include, at minimum, a panel of 23 panethnic gene mutations, selected because they are present in at least 0.1 percent of patients with classic CF. The CF-mutation carrier frequency approximates 1:25 in Ashkenazi Jews and those of non-Hispanic white ethnicity, 1:60 in African Americans and those of Hispanic white ethnicity, and 1:95 Asian Americans. Using the 23-mutation panel, the residual carrier risk after a negative test result was roughly 1:380 for Ashkenazi Jews and 1:170 to 1:200 for other ethnicities (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

More recently however, expanded panels that use gene sequencing have been reported to improve detection of at-risk couples by 30 percent compared with the 23-mutation panel (Beauchamp, 2019). The American College of Medical Genetics now recommends either a targeted approach to carrier screening, in which the standard mutation panel may be used, or a more comprehensive approach in which specific variant classifications may be reported (Deignan, 2020).

CF is included in all newborn screening panels but is not a substitute for carrier screening because it only identifies affected individuals. If the patient carries a mutation, her partner should be offered screening. If both parents are carriers, genetic counseling is indicated, and prenatal diagnostic testing should be offered.

Spinal Muscular Atrophy

This autosomal recessive disorder results in spinal cord motor neuron degeneration that leads to skeletal muscle atrophy and generalized weakness. There is currently no effective treatment. The prevalence of spinal muscular atrophy (SMA) is 1 in 6000 to 10,000 live births. Types I, II, III, and IV are caused by mutations in the *survival motor neuron (SMN1)* gene, which is located on the long arm of chromosome 5 (5q13.2) and encodes the SMN protein. Types I and II account for 80 percent of cases and are both lethal (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). SMA type I, known as Werdnig-Hoffmann disease, is the most severe. Disease onset is within the first 6 months, and affected children die of respiratory failure by age 2 years. Type II generally has onset before age 2 years, and the age at death can range from 2 years to the third decade of life. Type III also presents before age 2 years, with disease severity that is milder and more variable. Type IV does not present until adulthood.

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) recommends that carrier screening for SMA be offered to all women who are considering pregnancy or are currently pregnant. Prior to screening, the potential spectrum of severity, carrier frequency, and detection rate should be provided. Posttest counseling should include the residual risk after a negative result, which differs according to ethnicity and also according to the number of *SMN1* copies detected. The SMA carrier frequency approximates 1:35 in those of non-Hispanic white ethnicity, 1:41 in Ashkenazi Jews, 1:53 in Asians, 1:66 in African Americans, and 1:117 in those of Hispanic white ethnicity (Hendrickson, 2009). Carrier detection rates range from 90 to 95 percent for each ethnicity except African Americans, in whom it approximates 70 percent (MacDonald, 2014).

Although there is usually one copy of the *SMN1* gene on each chromosome, approximately 3 to 4 percent of carriers have no copies of this gene on one chromosome and two copies on the other. Because such individuals have two copies in total, they are not detected if a quantitative polymerase chain reaction test is used. Carrier screening is less sensitive in African American individuals, because they are more likely to have this genetic variation. Additionally, some individuals have three copies of the gene and are at even lower risk. If the patient or her partner has a family history of SMA, or if carrier screening is positive, genetic counseling is indicated.

Hemoglobinopathies

These include the sickle hemoglobinopathies—sickle cell anemia and sickle cell hemoglobin C disease, thalassemias, and sickle cell–β-thalassemia. Their pathophysiology and management are discussed in Chapter 59 (p. 1053). The risk is increased in women who are of African or African-American, Mediterranean, Middle Eastern, or Southeast Asian ethnicity. In such individuals, hemoglobin electrophoresis should be offered prenatally or prior to conception (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a).

Sickle Hemoglobinopathies

Approximately 1 in 12 African Americans has sickle-cell trait, 1 in 40 carries hemoglobin C, and 1 in 40 carries the trait for β-thalassemia. Hemoglobin S is also more common among individuals of Mediterranean, Middle Eastern, and Asian Indian descent (Davies, 2000). If a couple is at risk to have a child with a sickle hemoglobinopathy, genetic counseling should be offered. Prenatal diagnosis can be performed with either chorionic villus sampling or amniocentesis.

Thalassemias

These are the most common single-gene disorders worldwide. Thalassemias are characterized as alpha (α) or beta (β) depending on whether α- or β-hemoglobin chains are affected. In general, α-thalassemia is more likely to be caused by *deletions* of α-globin chains, whereas β-thalassemia more often stems from *mutations* in β-globin chains.

In α-thalassemia, the number of α-globin genes that are deleted may range from one to all four. If two α-globin genes are deleted, both may be deleted from the same chromosome—*cis* configuration (αα/––), or one may be deleted from each chromosome—*trans* configuration (α–/α–). The *cis* configuration is more prevalent among Southeast Asians, whereas those of African descent are more likely to inherit the trans configuration. Alpha-thalassemia trait results in mild anemia. However, if the patient and her partner both carry cis deletions, offspring are at risk for an absence of α-hemoglobin, called Hb Barts disease. This can lead to hydrops and fetal loss (Chap. 18, p. 360). Hemoglobin electrophoresis cannot detect α-thalassemia or α-thalassemia trait. Molecular genetic testing should be considered if there is microcytic anemia in the absence of iron deficiency and if the hemoglobin electrophoresis is normal, particularly among individuals of Southeast Asian descent (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a).

In β-thalassemia, β-globin genes may cause reduced or absent production of β-globin chains. If the mutation affects one gene, it results in β-thalassemia minor. If both copies are affected, the result is either β-thalassemia major—termed Cooley anemia—or β-thalassemia intermedia. Hemoglobin electrophoresis demonstrates elevated levels of hemoglobins that do not contain β-chains, which are hemoglobins F and A_2. β-Thalassemia minor should be considered if an individual of one or more of the aforementioned ethnicities is found to have microcytic anemia in the absence of iron deficiency. A hemoglobin A_2 level exceeding 3.5 percent confirms the diagnosis.

Recessive Diseases in Ashkenazi Jewish Individuals

Among Jewish individuals of Eastern and Central European (Ashkenazi) descent, there are three severe diseases for which the carrier frequency and detection rate are high enough that screening should be offered: Tay-Sachs disease, Canavan disease, and familial dysautonomia (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists 2020a). The carrier rate approximates 1 in 30 for Tay-Sachs disease, 1 in 40 for Canavan disease, and 1 in 32 for familial dysautonomia. For each, the detection rate is at least 98 percent. As for other genetic conditions, screening is ideally performed prior to conception or during early pregnancy.

There are several other autosomal recessive conditions for which the College also recommends that screening be

considered. These include Bloom syndrome, familial hyperinsulinism, Fanconi anemia, Gaucher disease, glycogen storage disease type I (von Gierke disease), Joubert syndrome, maple syrup urine disease, mucolipidosis type IV, Niemann-Pick disease, and Usher syndrome. Gaucher disease differs from the other conditions listed because it has a wide range in phenotype and because treatment is available in the form of enzyme repletion and substrate reduction therapy.

Tay-Sachs Disease

This lysosomal-storage disease causes progressive neurodegeneration and death in early childhood. It is characterized by deficiency of the enzyme hexosaminidase A, which results in accumulation of GM2 gangliosides in the central nervous system. Affected individuals have almost complete absence of the enzyme, whereas carriers are asymptomatic but have less than 55-percent hexosaminidase A activity. An international Tay-Sachs carrier screening campaign was initiated in the 1970s and met with unprecedented success in the Ashkenazi Jewish population. The incidence of Tay-Sachs disease subsequently declined more than 90 percent (Kaback, 1993). Other groups at increased risk for Tay-Sachs disease include those of French-Canadian and Cajun descent.

Carrier screening for Tay-Sachs disease is performed with DNA-based mutation analysis or hexosaminidase activity testing. DNA-based mutation analysis is the preferred test in Ashkenazi Jewish individuals and other high-risk groups but has a lower detection rate in the general population. Therefore, hexosaminidase activity testing is recommended for screening in individuals from lower-risk ethnicities. If a woman is pregnant or taking oral contraceptives, a hexosaminidase activity test should be performed on leukocytes to avoid a high false-positive rate (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). If both partners are found to be carriers, prenatal diagnostic testing should be offered. Hexosaminidase activity may be measured from chorionic villi or amnionic fluid.

PRENATAL AND PREIMPLANTATION DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

Diagnostic procedures used in prenatal diagnosis include amniocentesis and chorionic villus sampling (CVS). Fetal blood sampling is rarely performed solely for genetic diagnosis but may be used in conjunction with intrauterine transfusion. Preimplantation genetic tests for aneuploidies, structural chromosomal rearrangements, and monogenic disorders are available for couples undergoing in vitro fertilization (IVF).

In the setting of a fetal structural abnormality, chromosomal microarray analysis (CMA) is recommended. CMA is preferred to cytogenetic analysis (karyotyping) because it can detect clinically significant chromosomal abnormalities in approximately 6.5 percent of fetuses with normal karyotype (Callaway, 2013; de Wit, 2014, Wapner, 2012). And, in the absence of a fetal structural abnormality, CMA has detected additional chromosomal abnormalities (pathogenic copy number variants) in up to 1 percent of those with normal karyotype. CMA is therefore made available whenever a prenatal diagnostic procedure is performed (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018; Callaway, 2013). Types of CMA platforms and their benefits and limitations are reviewed in Chapter 16 (p. 326).

Karyotyping identifies aneuploidy and polyploidy. Additionally, it can identify *balanced* chromosomal rearrangements that are currently undetectable with CMA. For example, karyotyping performed when a couple has experienced recurrent pregnancy loss may reveal that one parent carries a balanced robertsonian translocation (Chap. 16, p. 315). An additional indication is the fetus with a structural abnormality that strongly suggests a particular aneuploidy—such as endocardial cushion defect in trisomy 21 or holoprosencephaly in trisomy 13.

If rapid identification of a specific chromosomal abnormality, such as trisomy 21, 18, or 13, is needed, fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) may be used in conjunction with CMA or karyotyping. Decision-making based on FISH should incorporate clinical information consistent with the suspected diagnosis, such as a screening result or ultrasound finding (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018).

Because of improvements in aneuploidy screening tests, there has been a dramatic drop in the number of prenatal diagnostic procedures. Larion and coworkers (2014) reported a 70-percent decline in CVS and a nearly 50-percent drop in amniocentesis procedures since the introduction of cfDNA screening in 2012. This further amplified the decrease in amniocentesis procedures that occurred with the advent of first-trimester screening (Warsof, 2015). Unfortunately, fewer than 40 percent of women with a positive screening result elect prenatal diagnosis (Dar, 2014). If prenatal diagnosis is elected, however, the percent with an abnormal result has increased significantly (Awomolo, 2018).

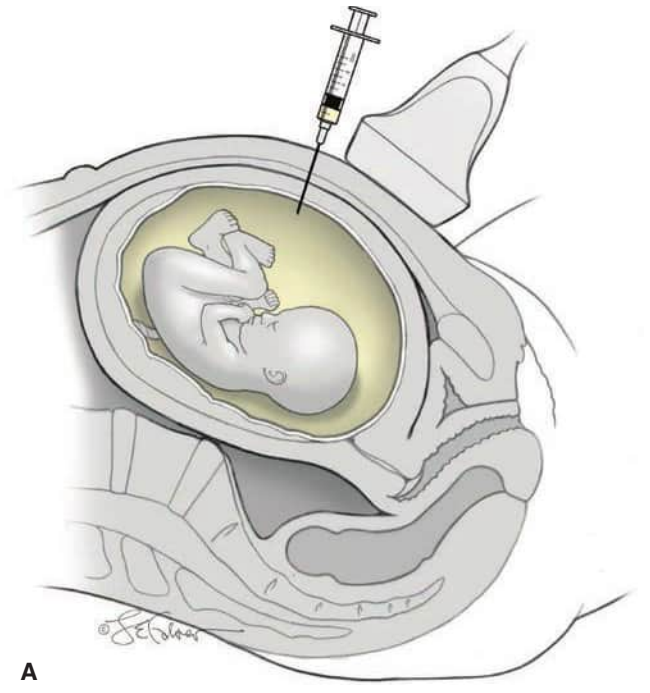
■ Amniocentesis

Because of its established safety and efficacy, amniocentesis is offered to all pregnant women (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020e). Amnionic fluid is withdrawn transabdominally under direct ultrasound guidance. Although typically performed between 15 and 20 weeks' gestation, amniocentesis may be done at any point later in gestation. Tests include those for genetic conditions, congenital infections, and alloimmunization. Fetal lung maturity is no longer routinely assessed, based on recommendations against using it to assist with delivery timing (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b).

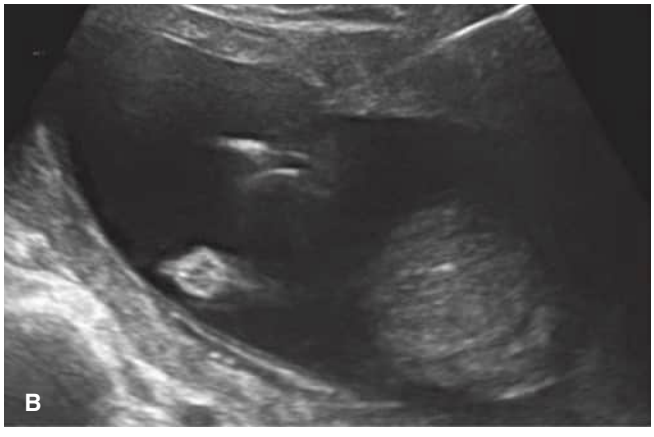
Technique

Amniocentesis is performed with a 20- or 22-gauge needle using aseptic technique (Fig. 17-4). A standard spinal needle is 9 cm long. A longer needle may be required for obese patients. To aid in needle selection, we find it helpful to measure the distance from skin to amnionic fluid with ultrasound prior to the procedure. After the patient empties her bladder, the skin is prepared with an antiseptic such as povidone-iodine. Shellfish allergy is not a contraindication to the povidone-iodine antiseptic (Westermann-Clark, 2015).

All aspects of the procedure are performed under direct ultrasound guidance. A pocket of amnionic fluid close to the midline is selected, avoiding fetal parts and being cognizant



A



B

FIGURE 17-4 A. Amniocentesis. **B.** The amniocentesis needle is seen in the upper right portion of this sonogram. (Figures 17-4, 17-5, and 17-7 are reproduced with permission from Mastrobattista JM, Espinoza J: Invasive prenatal diagnostic procedures. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

of uterine size and shape. The needle is inserted perpendicular to the skin, gently puncturing the chorioamnion rather than pushing or "tenting" it away from the uterine wall. The amnion usually fuses with the underlying chorion by 16 weeks' gestation, and the procedure is generally deferred until after chorioamnion fusion. Discomfort from the procedure is considered minor and is related more to focal myometrial contraction than needle discomfort at the skin. Local anesthetic has not been found to be beneficial (Mujezinovic, 2011).

The amniotic fluid should be clear and colorless or pale yellow. Blood-tinged fluid is more frequent with transplacental passage of the needle and generally clears with continued aspiration. Needle passage through the placenta occurs in approximately 60 percent of cases with anterior placentation and is not associated with pregnancy loss (Bombard, 1995, Marthin, 1997). Dark brown or greenish fluid may represent a past episode of intraamnionic bleeding.

TABLE 17-9. Selected Tests Performed on Amniotic Fluid and Volume of Fluid Required

Test	Volume (mL)[a]
Chromosomal microarray analysis	20
Fetal karyotype	20
FISH[b]	10
Genotype studies (alloimmunization)	20
PCR tests for cytomegalovirus, toxoplasmosis, or parvovirus	1–2 each test
Cytomegalovirus culture	2–3
Tests no longer commonly used:	
Fetal lung maturity tests	10
Delta OD 450 (bilirubin analysis)	2–3
Alpha-fetoprotein	2

[a]The volume of fluid needed for each test may vary according to individual laboratory specifications.
[b]Fluorescence in situ hybridization (FISH) is typically performed for chromosomes 21, 18, 13, X, and Y.
PCR = polymerase chain reaction.

The volume of fluid generally needed for commonly performed analyses is shown in Table 17-9. Because the initial 1 to 2 mL of fluid aspirate may be contaminated with maternal cells, it is often discarded. Approximately 20 to 30 mL of fluid is then collected for either fetal CMA or karyotyping before the needle is withdrawn. The uterine puncture site is observed for bleeding, and fetal cardiac motion is documented following the procedure. If the patient is Rh D-negative and unsensitized, anti-D immune globulin is administered after the procedure (Chap. 18, p. 356).

Multifetal Pregnancy. When performing the procedure in a dichorionic or monochorionic diamnionic twin gestation, careful attention is paid to the location of each sac and the dividing membrane. Until recently, a small quantity of dilute indigo carmine dye was often injected before removing the needle from the first sac, with return of clear amnionic fluid anticipated following needle placement into the second sac. Because of widespread shortages of indigo carmine dye, experienced providers typically offer amniocentesis without dye injection. Methylene blue dye is contraindicated because it has been associated with jejunal atresia and neonatal methemoglobinemia (van der Pol, 1992).

Complications

Midtrimester losses attributable to amniocentesis have decreased with improvements in imaging technology. When performed by an experienced provider, the procedure-related loss rate is estimated to be 0.1 to 0.3 percent, or about 1 per 500 procedures (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018; Odibo, 2008, Salomon, 2019). The loss rate may be doubled in women whose body mass index exceeds 40 kg/m^2 (Harper, 2012). In twin pregnancies, Cahill and coworkers (2009) reported a loss rate of 1.8 percent attributable to amniocentesis.

When counseling regarding fetal loss following a procedure, it can be helpful to explain the difference between overall losses and procedure-related losses. In a recent metaanalysis that included more than 60,000 amniocentesis procedures and 300,000 control pregnancies, the loss rate in the absence of a procedure was 0.6 percent, approximately twice the rate of losses attributable to procedures (Salomon, 2019). The indication for the procedure is also relevant, because severe fetal abnormalities and hydrops can significantly increase the loss rate, regardless of a procedure.

Other complications of amniocentesis include amnionic fluid leakage or transient vaginal spotting in 1 to 2 percent. Leakage of amnionic fluid generally occurs within 48 hours of the procedure. Leakage of fluid typically resolves after a few days, and fetal survival exceeds 90 percent (Borgida, 2000). Management recommendations include pelvic rest and avoidance of strenuous activity. Needle injuries to the fetus are rare. If karyotyping is performed, amnionic fluid culture is successful in more than 99 percent of cases, although cells are less likely to grow if the fetus is abnormal (Persutte, 1995).

Early Amniocentesis

Amniocentesis was formerly offered between 11 and 14 weeks' gestation. The technique is the same as for traditional amniocentesis, but the procedure may be more challenging because of lack of membrane fusion to the uterine wall. Approximately 1 mL is withdrawn for each week of gestation. Early amniocentesis is associated with significantly higher rates of fetal loss and other procedure-related complications than other procedures. Complications include development of talipes equinovarus (clubfoot) and amnionic fluid leakage (Canadian Early and Mid-Trimester Amniocentesis Trial, 1998; Philip, 2004). For these reasons, early amniocentesis is not recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018).

Chorionic Villus Sampling

Biopsy of chorionic villi is typically performed between 10 and 13 weeks' gestation. As with amniocentesis, the specimen is usually sent for CMA or karyotype analysis. The primary advantage of CVS is that results are available earlier in pregnancy, permitting more time for decision-making and safer pregnancy termination, if desired.

Technique

CVS is performed transcervically or transabdominally. Both approaches are equally safe and effective (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018). The transcervical approach uses a flexible polyethylene catheter that contains a blunt-tipped, malleable stylet. Transabdominal sampling is performed with an 18- or 20-gauge spinal needle. Both use aseptic technique and are performed under direct transabdominal ultrasound guidance. The catheter or needle is inserted into the early placenta—*chorion frondosum*, and villi are aspirated into a syringe that contains tissue culture media (Fig. 17-5).

Relative contraindications include vaginal bleeding or spotting, active genital tract infection, extreme uterine ante- or retroflexion, or body habitus precluding adequate visualization. If the patient is Rh D-negative and unsensitized, anti-D immune globulin is administered after the procedure.

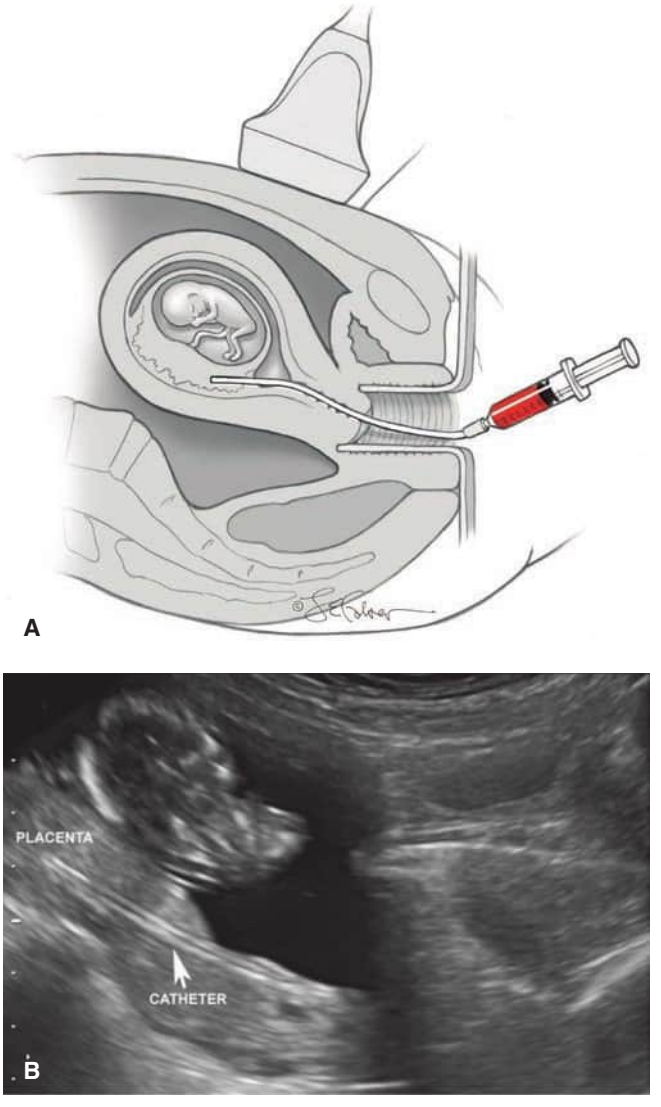


FIGURE 17-5 A. Transcervical chorionic villus sampling. **B.** Catheter entering the placenta is marked and labeled.

Complications

The *overall* fetal loss rate following CVS is higher than that with midtrimester amniocentesis. This is because of losses that would have occurred between the first and second trimester in the absence of a procedure. The procedure-related loss rate is comparable to that with amniocentesis, approximately 0.1 to 0.3 percent (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018). In fact, a recent metaanalysis identified no significant losses from CVS when controls with similar risk profiles were selected (Salomon, 2019). As with amniocentesis, CVS indication will affect the loss rate. For example, fetuses with increased NT thickness have a greater likelihood of demise. There is also a learning curve associated with safe performance of CVS (Silver, 1990; Wijnberger, 2003).

An early problem with CVS was its association with *limb-reduction defects* and *oromandibular limb hypogenesis,* shown in Figure 17-6 (Firth, 1991, 1994; Hsieh, 1995). These were

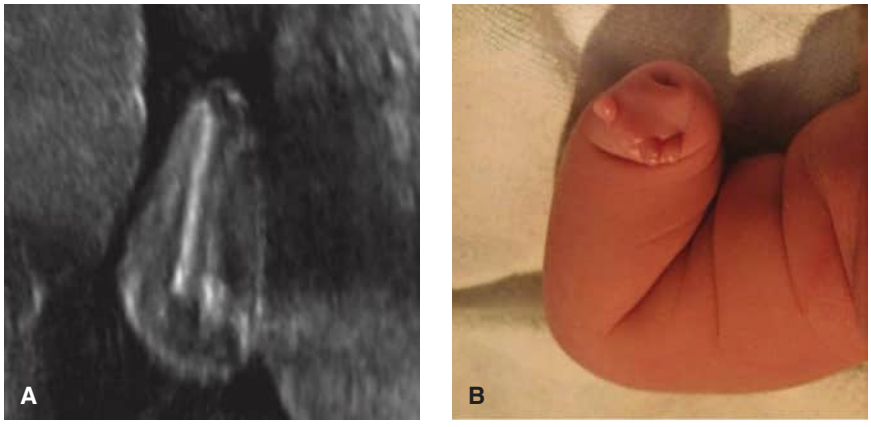


FIGURE 17-6 Oromandibular limb hypogenesis is characterized by transverse limb deficiency and absence or hypoplasia of the tongue or mandible. This is hypothesized to result from vascular disruption with subsequent loss of tissue. **A.** Sonogram obtained at 25 weeks' gestation demonstrates a fetal limb reduction defect involving the right hand. **B.** Photograph of the right extremity of the same newborn. Chorionic villus sampling was not performed in this pregnancy. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Jamie Morgan.)

subsequently found to be associated with procedures performed at 7 weeks' gestation (Holmes, 1993). When performed at or after 10 weeks' gestation, the incidence of limb defects does not exceed the background population rate of approximately 1 case per 1000 (Evans, 2005; Kuliev, 1996).

Vaginal spotting is not uncommon following transcervical sampling, but it is self-limited and not associated with pregnancy loss. The incidence of infection or leakage of amnionic fluid is less than 0.5 percent (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018).

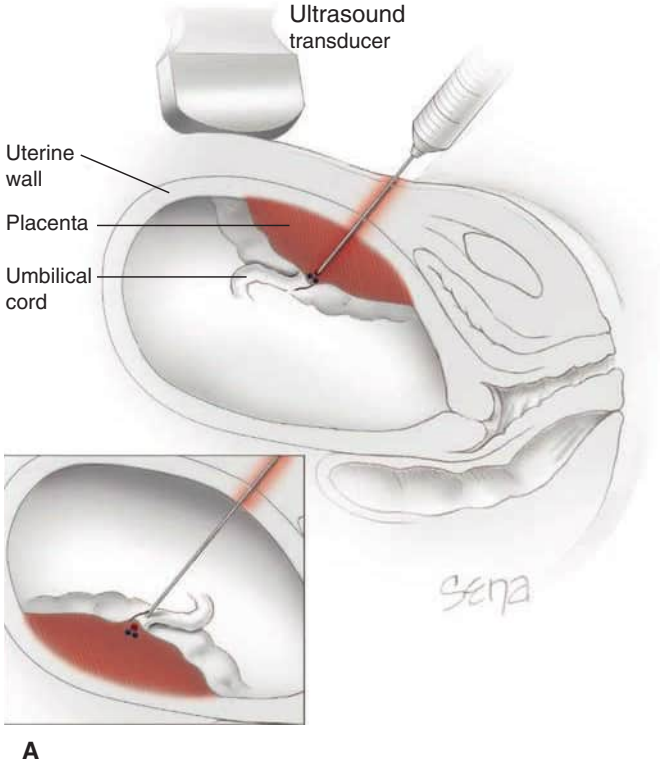
A limitation of CVS is that chromosomal mosaicism is identified in up to 2 percent of specimens (Malvestiti, 2015). In most cases, the mosaicism reflects confined placental mosaicism rather than a true second cell line within the fetus. This is discussed in Chapter 16 (p. 318). Amniocentesis should be offered, and if the result is normal, the mosaicism is usually presumed to be confined to the placenta. Confined placental mosaicism is associated with fetal-growth restriction (Baffero, 2012; Toutain, 2018).

Fetal Blood Sampling

This procedure is also called cordocentesis or percutaneous umbilical blood sampling (Fig. 17-7). It was initially described for fetal transfusion of red blood cells in the setting of anemia from alloimmunization, and fetal anemia assessment remains the most common indication (Chap. 18, p. 356). Other indications include assessment and treatment of platelet alloimmunization and for fetal karyotype determination, particularly in cases of mosaicism identified following amniocentesis or CVS. Improvements in testing using an amniocentesis specimen have eliminated the need for fetal blood sampling in most cases (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2013).

Technique

Using aseptic technique, a 22- or 23-gauge spinal needle is introduced into the umbilical vein under direct ultrasound guidance, and blood is slowly withdrawn into a heparinized syringe. Precise visualization of the needle is essential. As with



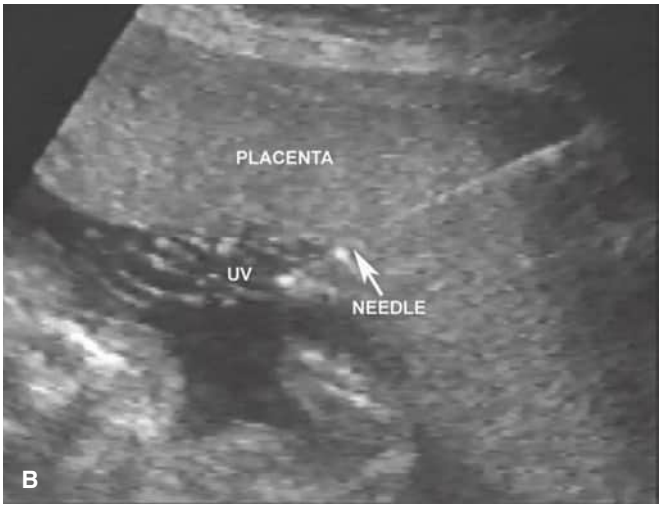


FIGURE 17-7 Fetal blood sampling. **A.** Access to the umbilical vein varies depending on placental location and cord position. With an anterior placenta, the needle may traverse the placenta. Inset: With posterior placentation, the needle passes through amnionic fluid before penetrating the umbilical vein. Alternatively, a free loop of cord may be accessed. **B.** Sonogram shows an anterior placenta with transplacental needle passage into the umbilical vein (UV).

amniocentesis, a longer needle may be required for obese patients. Fetal blood sampling is often performed near the placental cord insertion site, where it may be easier to enter the cord if the placenta lies anteriorly. Alternatively, a free loop of cord may be punctured. Because fetal blood sampling requires more time than other fetal procedures, a local anesthetic may be administered. Prophylactic antibiotics are used at some centers, although no trials support this policy. Arterial puncture is avoided, because it may result in vasospasm and fetal bradycardia. After the needle is removed, fetal cardiac motion is documented, and the site is observed for bleeding.

Complications

The procedure-related fetal loss rate following fetal blood sampling approximates 1 percent (Tongsong, 2001, Tanvisut, 2020). The actual loss rate varies according to the procedure indication and the fetal status. Other complications may include cord vessel bleeding in 20 to 30 percent of cases, fetal-maternal bleeding in approximately 40 percent of cases in which the placenta is traversed, and fetal bradycardia in 5 to 10 percent (Boupaijit, 2012; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2013; Tanvisut, 2020). Most complications are transitory, with complete recovery, but some result in fetal loss.

In one series of more than 2000 procedures comparing fetal blood sampling near the placental cord insertion site with puncture of a free loop, rates of procedure success, pregnancy loss, visible bleeding from the cord, and fetal bradycardia did not differ. Time to complete the procedure was significantly shorter if the cord was sampled at the placental insertion site rather than in a free loop—5 versus 7 minutes. However, sampling at the insertion site had a higher rate of maternal blood contamination (Tangshewinsirikul, 2011).

■ Preimplantation Genetic Tests

For couples undergoing IVF, several types of genetic tests may be performed on oocytes (polar bodies) or embryos prior to uterine transfer. These include preimplantation genetic testing for aneuploidy, abbreviated PGT-A, prenatal genetic testing for structural rearrangements (PGT-SR), and prenatal genetic testing for monogenic disorders (PGT-M). Testing is typically performed via trophectoderm biopsy at the blastocyst stage but may be performed on polar bodies of oocytes or via blastomere biopsy of a cleavage-stage embryo (Fig. 17-8). False-positive and false-negative results are possible with each type of PGT. Therefore, prenatal diagnosis with CVS or amniocentesis should be offered (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020d). Comprehensive genetic counseling is required before consideration of each of these procedures (ESHRE PGT Consortium Steering Committee, 2020).

PGT-A is a type of aneuploidy screening test that evaluates the number of each chromosome. Although clearly an appealing prospect, available data are limited, and an optimal testing platform is not yet established. Importantly, if PGT-A is performed with next-generation sequencing following trophectoderm biopsy, mosaicism is frequently identified (Vera-Rodriguez, 2017). Despite an increased risk for poor outcome, many such cases have resulted in healthy, normal children (Victor, 2019).

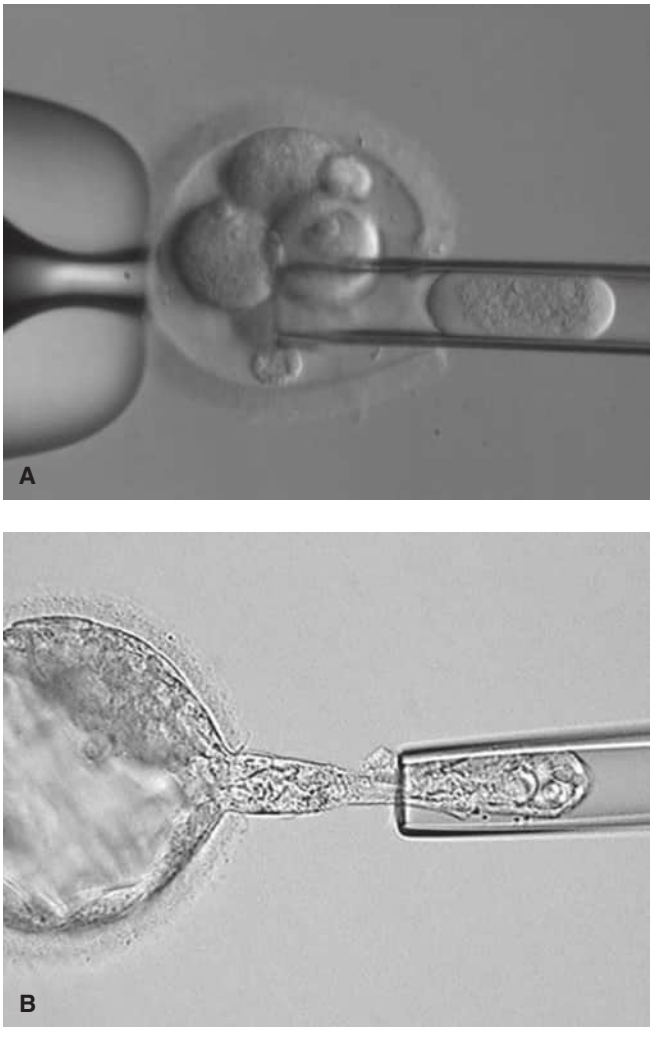


FIGURE 17-8 A. Blastomere biopsy. After a blastomere is selected, it is then drawn into the pipette. **B.** Trophectoderm biopsy. (Reproduced with permission from Doody KJ: Treatment of the infertile couple. Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

The American Society for Reproductive Medicine (2018) has concluded that the utility of routine performance of PGT-A for all IVF pregnancies has yet to be determined.

PGT-M may be performed when there is increased risk for a particular single-gene disorder or a hereditary cancer syndrome (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020d). It is a test for a specific condition rather than a panel. In selected cases, this technique may also be used identify a suitable future donor of umbilical cord blood for an affected family member.

PGT-SR is offered if one of the parents is a carrier of such a rearrangement, such as a duplication, deletion, translocation, insertion, or inversion. The test will identify an unbalanced chromosomal rearrangement but will not detect a balanced carrier. Counseling should therefore include this limitation.

REFERENCES

Alamillo CM, Krantz D, Evans M, et al: Nearly a third of abnormalities found after first-trimester screening are different than expected: 10-year experience from a single center. Prenat Diagn 33(3):251, 2013

Alldred SK, Takwoingi Y, Guo B, et al: First trimester ultrasound tests alone or in combination with first trimester serum tests for Down's syndrome screening. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews 3:CD012600, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prenatal diagnostic testing for genetic disorders. Practice Bulletin No. 162, May 2016, Reaffirmed 2018

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Hemoglobinopathies in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 78, January 2007, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Management of suboptimally dated pregnancies. Committee Opinion No. 688, March 2017, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Neural tube defects. Practice Bulletin No. 187, December 2017, Reaffirmed 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Carrier screening for genetic conditions. Committee Opinion No. 691, March 2017, Reaffirmed 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Carrier screening in the age of genomic medicine. Committee Opinion No. 690, March 2017, Reaffirmed 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Gestational hypertension and preeclampsia. Practice Bulletin No. 222, June 2020c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Preimplantation genetic testing. Committee Opinion No. 799, February 2020d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Screening for fetal chromosomal abnormalities. Practice Bulletin No. 226, October, 2020e

American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine: AIUM practice parameter for the performance of detailed second- and third-trimester diagnostic obstetric ultrasound examinations. J Ultrasound Med 38(12):3093, 2019

American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Preimplantation genetic testing: a practice committee opinion. Fertil Steril 90: S136, 2008

Ashoor G, Syngelaki A, Poon LC, et al: Fetal fraction in maternal plasma cell-free fetal DNA at 11–13 weeks' gestation: relation to maternal and fetal characteristics. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 41(1):26, 2013

Awomolo A, Palomares K, Herrera Garcia G, et al: Trends in invasive prenatal diagnostic testing at a single institution. Prenat Diagn 38(10):735, 2018

Baer RJ, Flessel MC, Jelliffe-Pawlowski LL, et al: Detection rates for aneuploidy by first-trimester and sequential screening. Obstet Gynecol 126(4):753, 2015

Baffero GM, Somigliana E, Crovetto F, et al: Confined placental mosaicism at chorionic villus sampling: risk factors and pregnancy outcome. Prenat Diagn 32(11):1102, 2012

Beauchamp KA, Johansen Taber KA, Grauman BS, et al: Sequencing as first-line methodology for cystic fibrosis carrier screening. Genet Med 21(11):2569, 2019

Benn PA, Leo MV, Rodis JF, et al: Maternal serum screening for fetal trisomy 18: a comparison of fixed cutoff and patient-specific risk protocols. Obstet Gynecol 93 (5 Pt 1):707, 1999

Best KE, Tennant PW, Addor MC, et al: Epidemiology of small intestinal atresia in Europe: a register-based study. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 97(5):F353, 2012

Bianchi DW, Chudova D, Sehnert AJ, et al: Noninvasive prenatal testing and incidental detection of occult malignancies. JAMA 314(2):162, 2015

Bombard AT, Powers JF, Carter S, et al: Procedure-related fetal losses in transplacental versus nontransplacental genetic amniocentesis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 172(3):868, 1995

Borgida AF, Mills AA, Feldman DM, et al: Outcome of pregnancies complicated by ruptured membranes after genetic amniocentesis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183(4):937, 2000

Boupaijit K, Wanapirak C, Piyamongkol W, et al: Effect of placental penetration during cordocentesis at mid-pregnancy on fetal outcomes. Prenat Diagn 32(1):83, 2012

Brock DJ, Bolton AE, Monaghan JM: Prenatal diagnosis of anencephaly through maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein measurement. Lancet 2(7835):923, 1973

Brock DJ, Sutcliffe RG: Alpha-fetoprotein in the antenatal diagnosis of anencephaly and spina bifida. Lancet 2(7770):197, 1972

Bromley B, Lieberman E, Shipp TD, et al: The genetic sonogram, a method for risk assessment for Down syndrome in the mid trimester. J Ultrasound Med 21(10):1087, 2002

Bush MC, Malone FD: Down syndrome screening in twins. Clin Perinatol 32(2):373, 2005

Cahill AG, Macones GA, Stamilio DM, et al: Pregnancy loss rate after mid-trimester amniocentesis in twin pregnancies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(3):257.e1, 2009

Callaway JL, Shaffer LG, Chitty LS, et al: The clinical utility of microarray technologies applied to prenatal cytogenetics in the presence of a normal conventional karyotype: a review of the literature. Prenat Diagn 33(12):1119, 2013

Canadian Early and Mid-Trimester Amniocentesis Trial (CEMAT) Group: Randomised trial to assess safety and fetal outcome of early and midtrimester amniocentesis. Lancet 351(9098):242, 1998

Canfield MA, Honein MA, Yuskiv N, et al: National estimates and race/ethnic-specific variation of selected birth defects in the United States, 1999–2001. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 76(11):747, 2006

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Natality trends in the United States, 1909–2013. 2015. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data-visualization/natality-trends/Accessed November 2, 2020

Chkoshvilli D, Vears D, Borry P: Expanded carrier screening for monogenic disorders: where are we now? Prenat Diagn 38(1):59, 2018

Cicero S, Sonek JD, McKenna DS, et al: Nasal bone hypoplasia in trisomy 21 at 15–22 weeks' gestation. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 21(1):15, 2003

Cignini P, Maggio Savasta L, Gulino FA, et al: Predictive value of pregnancy-associated plasma protein-A (PAPP-A) and free beta-hCG on fetal growth restriction: results of a prospective study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 293(6):1227, 2016

Cleary-Goldman J, D'Alton ME, Berkowitz RL: Prenatal diagnosis and multiple pregnancy. Semin Perinatol 29(5):312, 2005

Clur SA, Mathijsssen IB, Pajkrt E, et al: Structural heart defects associated with an increased nuchal translucency: 9 years experience in a referral centre. Prenat Diagn 28(4):347, 2008

Colvin J, Bower C, Dickinson JE, et al: Outcomes of congenital diaphragmatic hernia: a population-based study in Western Australia. Pediatrics 116(3):e356, 2005

Cragan JD, Gilboa SM: Including prenatal diagnoses in birth defects monitoring: experience of the Metropolitan Atlanta Congenital Defects Program. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 85(1):20, 2009

Cuckle H: Biochemical screening for Down syndrome. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 92(1):97, 2000

Cuckle H, Wald N, Stevenson JD, et al: Maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein screening for open neural tube defects in twin pregnancies. Prenat Diagn 10(2):71, 1990

Cuckle HS, Malone FD, Wright D, et al: Contingent screening for Down syndrome–results from the FaSTER trial. Prenat Diagn 28(2):89, 2008

Curnow KJ, Wilkins-Haug L, Ryan A, et al: Detection of triploid, molar, and vanishing twin pregnancies by single-nucleotide polymorphism-based noninvasive prenatal test. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(1):79.e1, 2015

Cystic Fibrosis Mutation Database: CFMDB statistics. Available at: http://www.genet.sickkids.on.ca/StatisticsPage.html. Accessed November 2, 2020

Dar P, Curnow KJ, Gross SJ, et al: Clinical experience and follow-up with large scale single nucleotide polymorphism-based noninvasive prenatal aneuploidy testing. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(5):527.e1, 2014

Dashe JS: Aneuploidy screening in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 128(1):181, 2016

Dashe JS, Twickler DM, Santos-Ramos R, et al: Alpha-fetoprotein detection of neural tube defects and the impact of standard ultrasound. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195(6):1623, 2006

Davies SC, Cronin E, Gill M, et al: Screening for sickle cell disease and thalassemia: a systematic review with supplementary research. Heath Technol Assess 4(3):1, 2000

Deignan JL, Astbury C, Cutting GR, et al: CFTR variant testing: a technical standard of the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics (ACMG). Genet Med 22(8):1288, 2020

de Wit MC, Srebniak MI, Govaerts LC, et al: Additional value of prenatal genomic array testing in fetuses with isolated structural ultrasound abnormalities and a normal karyotype: a systematic review of the literature. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 43(2):139, 2014

DiMaio MS, Baumgarten A, Greenstein RM, et al: Screening for fetal Down's syndrome in pregnancy by measuring maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein levels. N Engl J Med 317(6):342, 1987

Dolk H, Loane M, Garne E: The prevalence of congenital anomalies in Europe. Adv Exp Med Biol 686:349, 2010

Doody KJ: Treatment of the infertile couple. Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2020

Dugoff L, Hobbins JC, Malone FD, et al: First-trimester maternal serum PAPP-A and free-beta subunit human chorionic gonadotropic concentrations and nuchal translucency are associated with obstetric complications: a population-based screening study (The FaSTER Trial). Am J Obstet Gynecol 191(6):1446, 2004

Dugoff L, Hobbins JC, Malone FD, et al: Quad screen as a predictor of adverse pregnancy outcome. Obstet Gynecol 106(2):260, 2005

Dugoff L, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: First- and second-trimester maternal serum markers for aneuploidy and adverse pregnancy outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 115(5):1052, 2010

Ecker JL, Shipp TD, Bromley B, et al: The sonographic diagnosis of Dandy-Walker and Dandy-Walker variant: associated findings and outcomes. Prenat Diagn 20(3):328, 2000

ESHRE PGT Consortium Steering Committee, Carvalho F, Coonen E, et al: ESHRE PGD Consortium good practice recommendations for the organization of PGT. Hum Reprod Open 2020(3):hoaa021, 2020

Evans MI, Wapner RJ: Invasive prenatal diagnostic procedures. Semin Perinatol 29(4):215, 2005

Filly RA, Callen PW, Goldstein RB: Alpha-fetoprotein screening programs: what every obstetric sonologist should know. Radiology 188(1):1, 1993

Firth HV, Boyd PA, Chamberlain PF, et al: Analysis of limb reduction defects in babies exposed to chorionic villus sampling. Lancet 343(8905):1069, 1994

Firth HV, Boyd PA, Chamberlain P, et al: Severe limb abnormalities after chorion villus sampling at 56–66 days' gestation. Lancet 337(8744):762, 1991

Flessel MC, Lorey FW: The California Prenatal Screening Program: "options and choices" not "coercion and eugenics." Genet Med 13(8):711, 2011

Gallot D, Boda C, Ughetto S, et al: Prenatal detection and outcome of congenital diaphragmatic hernia: a French registry-based study. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 29(3):276, 2007

Gil MM, Accurti V, Santacruz B, et al: Analysis of cell-free DNA in maternal blood in screening for aneuploidies: updated meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 50(3):302, 2017

Gil MM, Quezada MS, Revello R, et al: Analysis of cell-free DNA in maternal blood in screening for fetal aneuploidies: updated meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 45(3):249, 2015

Goetzl L, Krantz D, Simpson JL, et al: Pregnancy-associated plasma protein A, free beta-hCG, nuchal translucency, and risk of pregnancy loss. Obstet Gynecol 104(1):30, 2004

Grati FR, Malvestiti F, Ferreira JC, et al: Fetoplacental mosaicism: potential implications for false-positive and false-negative noninvasive prenatal screening results. Genet Med 16(8):620, 2014

Greene MF, Haddow JE, Palomaki GE, et al: Maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein levels in diabetic pregnancies. Lancet 2(8606):345, 1988

Gregg AR, Skotko BG, Benkendorf JL, et al: Noninvasive prenatal screening for fetal aneuploidy, 2016 update: a position statement of the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics. Genet Med 18(10):1056, 2016

Harper LM, Cahill AG, Smith K, et al: Effect of maternal obesity on the risk of fetal loss after amniocentesis and chorionic villus sampling. Obstet Gynecol 119(4):745, 2012

Hendrickson BC, Donohoe C, Akmaev VR, et al: Differences in SMN1 allele frequencies among ethnic groups within North America. J Med Genet 46(9):641, 2009

Herrera CL, Hussamy DJ, McIntire DD, et al: Femur length parameters in fetuses with Down syndrome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(15):2516, 2019

Holmes LB: Report of National Institute of Child Health and Human Development Workshop on Chorionic Villus Sampling and Limb and Other Defects, October 20, 1992. Teratology 48(4):7, 1993

Hook EB, Cross PK, Schreinemachers DM: Chromosomal abnormality rates at amniocentesis and in live-born infants. JAMA 249(15):2034, 1983

Hsieh FJ, Shyu MK, Sheu BC, et al: Limb defects after chorionic villus sampling. Obstet Gynecol 85(1):84, 1995

Hussamy DJ, Herrera CL, Twickler DM, et al: Number of risk factors in Down syndrome pregnancies. Am J Perinatol 36(1):79, 2019

Huttly W, Rudnicka A, Wald NJ: Second-trimester prenatal screening markers for Down syndrome in women with insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus. Prenat Diagn 24(10):804, 2004

Jelliffe-Pawlowski LL, Baer R, Blumenfeld YJ, et al: Maternal characteristics and mid-pregnancy serum biomarkers as risk factors for subtypes of preterm birth. BJOG 122(11):1484, 2015

Juul LA, Hartwig TS, Ambye L, et al: Noninvasive prenatal testing and maternal obesity: A review. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(6):744, 2020

Kaback M, Lim-Steele J, Dabholkar D, et al: Tay Sachs disease: carrier screening, prenatal diagnosis, and the molecular era. JAMA 270:2307, 1993

Knight GK, Palomaki GE: Maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein and the detection of open neural tube defects. In Elias S, Simpson JL (eds): Maternal Serum Screening. New York, Churchill Livingstone, 1992

Kuliev A, Jackson L, Froster U, et al: Chorionic villus sampling safety. Report of World Health Organization/EURO meeting in association with the Seventh International Conference on Early Prenatal Diagnosis of Genetic Diseases, Tel Aviv, Israel, May 21, 1994. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174(3):807, 1996

Kuppermann M, Pena S, Bishop JT, et al: Effect of enhanced information, values clarification, and removal of financial barriers on use of prenatal genetic testing: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA 312(12):1210, 2014

Langlois S, Armstrong L, Gall K, et al: Steroid sulfatase deficiency and contiguous gene deletion syndrome amongst pregnant patients with low serum unconjugated estriols. Prenat Diagn 29(10):966, 2009

Larion S, Warsof SL, Romary L, et al: Association of combined first-trimester screen and noninvasive prenatal testing on diagnostic procedures. Obstet Gynecol 123(6):1303, 2014

Long A, Moran P, Robson S: Outcome of fetal cerebral posterior fossa anomalies. Prenat Diagn 26(8):707, 2006

MacDonald WK, Hamilton D, Kuhle S: SMA carrier testing: a meta-analysis of differences in test performance by ethnic group. Prenat Diagn 34 (12):1219, 2014

Malone FD, Ball RH, Nyberg DA, et al: First-trimester septated cystic hygroma: prevalence, natural history, and pediatric outcome. Obstet Gynecol 106(2)288, 2005a

Malone FD, Canick JA, Ball RH, et al: First-trimester or second-trimester screening, or both, for Down's syndrome. N Engl J Med 353(19):2005b

Malvestiti F, Agrati C, Grimi B, et al: Interpreting mosaicism in chorionic villi: results of a monocentric series of 1001 mosaics in chorionic villi with follow-up amniocentesis. Prenat Diagn 35(11):1117, 2015

Marthin T, Liedgren S, Hammar M: Transplacental needle passage and other risk-factors associated with second trimester amniocentesis. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 76(8):728, 1997

Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJ, et al: Births: Final data for 2018. National Vital Statistics Reports 68(13):1, 2019

Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJ: Births in the United States, 2019. NCHS Data Brief, No. 387, October 2020

Mastrobattista JM, Espinoza J: Invasive prenatal diagnostic procedures. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017

Merkatz IR, Nitowsky HM, Macri JN, et al: An association between low maternal serum α-fetoprotein and fetal chromosomal abnormalities. Am J Obstet Gynecol 148(7):886, 1984

Moreno-Cid M, Rubio-Lorente A, Rodriguez MJ, et al: Systematic review and meta-analysis of performance of second-trimester nasal bone assessment in detection of fetuses with Down syndrome. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 43(3):247, 2014

Mujezinovic F, Alfirevic Z: Analgesia for amniocentesis or chorionic villus sampling. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD008580, 2011

New England Regional Genetics Group Perinatal Collaborative Study of Down Syndrome Screening: Combining maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein measurements and age to screen for Down syndrome in pregnant women under age 35. Am J Obstet Gynecol 160(3):575, 1989

Norem CT, Schoen EJ, Walton DL, et al: Routine ultrasonography compared with maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein for neural tube defect screening. Obstet Gynecol 106(4):747, 2005

Norton ME, Baer RJ, Wapnr RJ, et al: Cell-free DNA vs sequential screening for the detection of fetal chromosomal abnormalities. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(6):727.e1, 2016

Norton ME, Jacobsson B, Swamy GK, et al: Cell-free DNA analysis for noninvasive examination of trisomy. N Engl J Med 372(17):1589, 2015

Norton ME, Jelliffe-Pawlowski LL, Currier RJ: Chromosomal abnormalities detected by current prenatal screening and noninvasive prenatal testing. Obstet Gynecol 124(5):979, 2014

Nyberg DA, Souter VL: Use of genetic sonography for adjusting the risk for fetal Down syndrome. Semin Perinatol 27(2):130, 2003

Nyberg DA, Souter VL, El-Bastawissi A, et al: Isolated sonographic markers for detection of fetal Down syndrome in the second trimester of pregnancy. J Ultrasound Med 20(10):1053, 2001

Odibo AO, Gray DL, Dicke JM, et al: Revisiting the fetal loss rate after second-trimester genetic amniocentesis: a single center's 16-year experience. Obstet Gynecol 111(3):589, 2008

Orioli IM, Catilla EE: Epidemiology of holoprosencephaly: prevalence and risk factors. Am J Med Genet Part C Semin Med Genet 154C:13, 2010

Palomaki GE, Bupp C, Gregg AR, et al: Laboratory screening and diagnosis of open neural tube defects, 2019 revision: a technical standard of the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics. Genet Med 22(3):462, 2020

Pavone V, Chisari E, Vescio A, et al: The etiology of idiopathic congenital talipes equinovarus: a systematic review. J Orthop Surg Res 13(1):206, 2018

Pedersen RN, Calzolari E, Husby S, et al: Oesophageal atresia: prevalence, prenatal diagnosis, and associated anomalies in 23 European regions. Arch Dis Child 97(3):227, 2012

Pergament E, Cuckle H, Zimmermann B, et al: Single-nucleotide polymorphism-based noninvasive prenatal screening in a high-risk and low-risk cohort. Obstet Gynecol 124(2 Pt 1):210, 2014

Perinatal Quality Foundation: NIPT/cell free DNA screening predictive value calculator. 2016. Available at: http://perinatalquality.org/. Accessed November 18, 2020

Persutte WH, Lenke RR: Failure of amniotic-fluid-cell growth: is it related to fetal aneuploidy? Lancet 345(8942):96, 1995

Philip J, Silver RK, Wilson RD, et al: Late first-trimester invasive prenatal diagnosis: results of an international randomized trial. Obstet Gynecol 103(6):1164, 2004

Practice Committees of the American Society for Reproductive Medicine, Society for Assisted Reproductive Technology: The use of preimplantation genetic testing for aneuploidy (PGT-A): a committee opinion. Fertil Steril 109(3):429, 2018

Quezada MS, Gil MM, Francisco C, et al: Screening for trisomies 21, 18, and 13 by cell-free DNA analysis of maternal blood at 10–11 weeks. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 45(1):36, 2015

Reddy UM, Abuhamad AZ, Levine D, et al: Fetal imaging: Executive summary of a joint Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute for Child Health and Human Development, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, American Institute for Ultrasound in Medicine, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, American College of Radiology, Society for Pediatric Radiology, and Society of Radiologists in Ultrasound Fetal Imaging Workshop. Obstet Gynecol 123(5):1070, 2014

Reddy UM, Mennuti MT: Incorporating first-trimester Down syndrome studies into prenatal screening: executive summary of the National Institute of Child Health and Human Development workshop. Obstet Gynecol 107(1):167, 2006

Reiff ES, Little SE, Dobson L, et al: What is the role of the 11- to 14-week ultrasound in women with negative cell-free DNA screening for aneuploidy? Prenat Diagn 36(3):260, 2016

Rolnik DL, Yong Y, Lee TJ, et al: Influence of body mass index on fetal fraction increase with gestation and cell-free DNA test failure. Obstet Gynecol 132(2):436, 2018

Salomon LJ, Sotiriadis A, Wulff CB, et al: Risk of miscarriage following amniocentesis or chorionic villus sampling: systemic review of literature and updated meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 54 (4):442, 2019

Scott FP, Menezes M, Palma-Dias R, et al: Factors affecting cell-free DNA fetal fraction and the consequences for test accuracy. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(14):1865, 2018

Sharma R, Stone S, Alzouebi A, et al: Perinatal outcome of prenatally diagnosed congenital talipes equinovarus. Prenat Diagn 31(2):142, 2011

Shipp TD, Bromley B, Lieberman E, et al: The frequency of the detection of the detection of fetal echogenic intracardiac foci with respect to maternal race. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 15(6):460, 2000

Silver RK, MacGregor SN, Sholl JS, et al: An evaluation of the chorionic villus sampling learning curve. Am J Obstet Gynecol 163(3):917, 1990

Simpson LL, Malone FD, Bianchi DW, et al: Nuchal translucency and the risk of congenital heart disease. Obstet Gynecol 109(2 Pt 1):376, 2007

Smith-Bindman R, Hosmer W, Feldstein VA, et al: Second-trimester ultrasound to detect fetuses with Down syndrome. A meta-analysis. JAMA 285(8):1044, 2001

Snidjers RJM, Sundberg K, Holzgreve W, et al: Maternal-age and gestation-specific risk for trisomy 21. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 13(3):167, 1999

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Berry SM, Stone J, et al: Fetal blood sampling. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(3):170, 2013

Solomon BD, Rosenbaum KN, Meck JM, et al: Holoprosencephaly due to numeric chromosome abnormalities. Am J Med Genet C Semin Med Genet 154C(1):146, 2010

Srebniak MI, Joosten M, Knapen MFCM, et al: Frequency of submicroscopic chromosomal aberrations in pregnancies without increased risk for structural chromosomal aberrations: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 51(4):445, 2018

Tangshewinsirikul C, Wanapirak C, Piyamongkol W, et al: Effect of cord puncture site on cordocentesis at mid-pregnancy on pregnancy outcome. Prenat Diagn 31(9):861, 2011

Tanvisut R, Wanapirak C, Piyamongkol W, et al: Cordocentesis-associated fetal loss and risk factors: experience of 6650 cases from a single center. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 56(5):664, 2020

Tongsong T, Wanapirak C, Kunavikatikul C, et al: Fetal loss rate associated with cordocentesis at midgestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 184(4):719, 2001

Toutain J, Goutte-Gattat D, Horovitz J, et al: Confined placental mosaicism revisited: Impact on pregnancy characteristics and outcome. PLoS One 13(4):e0195905, 2018

van der Pol JG, Wolf H, Boer K, et al: Jejunal atresia related to the use of methylene blue in genetic amniocentesis in twins. BJOG 99(2):141, 1992

Vera-Rodriguez M, Rubio C: Assessing the true incidence of mosaicism in preimplantation embryos. Fertil Steril 107(5):1107, 2017

Victor AR, Tyndall JC, Brake AJ et al: One hundred mosaic embryos transferred prospectively in a single clinic: exploring when and why they result in healthy pregnancies. Fertil Steril 111(2):280, 2019

Vink J, Wapner R, D'Alton ME: Prenatal diagnosis in twin gestations. Semin Perinatol 36(3):169, 2012

Vintzileos AJ, Egan JF: Adjusting the risk for trisomy 21 on the basis of second-trimester ultrasonography. Am J Obstet Gynecol 172(3):837, 1995

Viora E, Errante G, Sciarrone A, et al: Fetal nasal bone and trisomy 21 in the second trimester. Prenat Diagn 25(6):511, 2005

Wald NJ, Cuckle H, Brock JH, et al: Maternal serum-alpha-fetoprotein measurement in antenatal screening for anencephaly and spina bifida in early pregnancy. Report of UK Collaborative Study on alpha-fetoprotein in relation to neural-tube defects. Lancet 1(8026):1323, 1977

Wald NJ, Densem JW, George L, et al: Prenatal screening for Down's syndrome using inhibin-A as a serum marker. Prenat Diagn 16(2):143, 1996

Wald NJ, Rodeck C, Hackshaw AK, et al: First and second trimester antenatal screening for Down's syndrome: the results of the Serum, Urine and Ultrasound Screening Study (SURUSS). Health Technol Assess 7(11):1, 2003

Walker SJ, Ball RH, Babcook CJ, et al: Prevalence of aneuploidy and additional anatomic abnormalities in fetuses and neonates with cleft lip with or without cleft palate. A population-based study in Utah. J Ultrasound Med 20(11):1175, 2001

Wang Y, Chen Y, Tian F, et al: Maternal mosaicism is a significant contributor to discordant sex chromosomal aneuploidies associated with non-invasive prenatal testing. Clin Chem 60(1):251, 2014

Wapner R, Thom E, Simpson JL, et al: First-trimester screening for trisomies 21 and 18. N Engl J Med 349(15):1471, 2003

Wapner RJ, Martin CL, Levy B, et al: Chromosomal microarray versus karyotyping for prenatal diagnosis. N Engl J Med 2367(23):2175, 2012

Warsof SL, Larion S, Abuhamad AZ: Overview of the impact of noninvasive prenatal testing on diagnostic procedures. Prenat Diagn 35(10):972, 2015

Wellesley D, Dolk H, Boyd PA, et al: Rare chromosome abnormalities, prevalence and prenatal diagnosis rates from population-based congenital anomaly registers in Europe. Eur J Hum Genet 20(5):521, 2012

Westermann-Clark E, Pepper AN, Talreja N, et al: Debunking myths about "allergy" to radiocontrast media in an academic institution. Postgrad Med 127(3):295, 2015

Wijnberger LD, van der Schouw YT, Christiaens GC: Learning in medicine: chorionic villus sampling. Prenat Diagn 20(3):241, 2003

CHAPTER 18

Fetal Disorders

Fetal disorders may be acquired—such as alloimmunization; may be genetic—congenital adrenal hyperplasia; or may be sporadic—like many structural malformations. This chapter reviews fetal anemia and thrombocytopenia and immune and nonimmune fetal hydrops. Hydrops is perhaps the quintessential fetal disorder, as it can be a manifestation of severe illness from a wide variety of etiologies. Fetal structural malformations are reviewed in Chapter 15, genetic abnormalities in Chapters 16 and 17, and conditions amenable to medical or surgical fetal therapy in Chapter 19. Because congenital infections arise as a result of maternal infection or colonization, they are discussed in Chapters 67 and 68.

FETAL ANEMIA

Anemia may result from alloimmunization, infection, genetic disorders, or fetomaternal hemorrhage. Red cell alloimmunization results from transplacental passage of maternal antibodies that destroy fetal red cells. Alloimmunization leads to overproduction of immature fetal and neonatal red cells—*erythroblastosis fetalis*—a condition now referred to as *hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn (HDFN)*. Congenital infections are also associated with fetal anemia, particularly parvovirus B19, discussed in Chapter 67 (p. 1191). In Southeast Asian populations, α^0-thalassemia is a common cause of severe anemia and nonimmune hydrops. Rare genetic causes of anemia include red cell production disorders—such as Diamond-Blackfan anemia and Fanconi anemia; red cell enzymopathies—glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency and pyruvate kinase deficiency; red cell structural abnormalities—hereditary spherocytosis and elliptocytosis; lysosomal storage diseases—Gaucher disease, Niemann-Pick, and mucopolysaccharidosis VII; and myeloproliferative disorders—leukemias. Fetomaternal hemorrhage is discussed on page 357. Fetal anemia is typically identified through Doppler evaluation of the fetal middle cerebral artery (MCA) peak systolic velocity (p. 355).

Progressive fetal anemia from any cause leads to heart failure, hydrops fetalis, and ultimately death. Treatment with intrauterine transfusions can be lifesaving. Severely anemic fetuses transfused in utero have survival rates exceeding 90 percent, and even in cases of hydrops fetalis, survival rates approach 80 percent (Lindenberg, 2013; Mizuuchi, 2021; Zwiers, 2017).

Red Cell Alloimmunization

Currently, 36 different blood group systems and 360 erythrocyte antigens are recognized by the International Society of Blood Transfusion (Storry, 2019). Blood banks routinely screen for erythrocyte antigens. Some are immunologically and genetically important, but many are rare and of little clinical significance. An individual who lacks a specific erythrocyte antigen may produce antibodies against it when exposed to that antigen. Such antibodies can prove harmful if an individual receives an incompatible blood transfusion. During pregnancy, these antibodies may cross the placenta and lyse fetal red cells that contain the associated antigens, resulting in anemia.

The fetus typically inherits at least one erythrocyte antigen from the father that is lacking in the mother. The pregnant woman may become sensitized if enough fetal red cells reach her circulation to elicit an immune response. Importantly, alloimmunization is uncommon for the following reasons: (1) low prevalence of incompatible erythrocyte antigens; (2) insufficient transplacental passage of fetal antigens and maternal antibodies; (3) maternal-fetal ABO incompatibility, which leads to rapid clearance of fetal erythrocytes before they elicit an immune response; (4) variable antigenicity; and (5) variable maternal immune response to the antigen.

The prevalence of red cell alloimmunization in pregnancy approximates 1 percent (Bollason, 2017; Koelewijn, 2008). Most cases of severe fetal anemia requiring antenatal transfusion are attributable to anti-D, anti-Kell, anti-c, or anti-E alloimmunization (de Haas, 2015).

Maternal blood type and antibody screen are routinely assessed at the first prenatal visit. Unbound antibodies in maternal serum are detected with an *indirect Coombs test* (Chap. 10, p. 178). If the result is positive, the specific antibodies are identified; their immunoglobulin subtype is determined as either immunoglobulin G (IgG) or M (IgM); and the titer is quantified. Only IgG antibodies are concerning, because IgM antibodies do not cross the placenta. Selected antibodies and their potential to cause fetal hemolytic anemia are listed in Table 18-1. The *critical titer* is the level at which significant fetal anemia may develop. It may vary according to antibody and laboratory but is usually between 1:8 and 1:32. If the laboratory's critical titer threshold for anti-D antibodies is 1:16, a titer ≥1:16 indicates the possibility of severe hemolytic disease. An important exception is Kell sensitization, which is discussed on page 354.

CDE (Rh) Blood Group Incompatibility

The CDE system includes five erythrocyte antigens: C, c, D, E, and e. There is no "d" antigen, and D-negativity is defined as the absence of the D antigen. Although most people are D positive or negative, more than 200 D antigen variants exist (Daniels, 2013). The CDE group was formerly termed Rh or rhesus, due to a misconception that red cells from rhesus monkeys expressed these human antigens. In transfusion medicine, "rhesus" is no longer used (Sandler, 2017).

CDE antigens are clinically important. D-negative individuals may become sensitized after a single exposure to as little as 0.1 mL of fetal erythrocytes (Bowman, 1988). The two responsible genes—*RHD* and *RHCE*—are located on the short arm of chromosome 1 and are inherited together, independent of other blood group genes. Antigen positivity varies according to race and ethnicity. Nearly 85 percent of non-Hispanic white Americans are D-positive, as are approximately 90 percent of Native Americans, 93 percent of African Americans and Hispanic Americans, and 99 percent of Asian Americans (Garratty, 2004).

TABLE 18-1. Selected Red Cell Antigens and Their Relationship to Fetal Hemolytic Disease

Blood Group System	Antigens	Fetal Hemolysis Potential
CDE (Rh)	D, c	Severe disease risk
	E, Be^a, Ce, Cw, Cx, ce, Dw, Evans, e, G, Goa7, Hr, Hro, JAL, HOFM, LOCR, Riv, Rh29, Rh32, Rh42, Rh46, STEM, Tar	Severe disease infrequent, mild disease risk
Kell	K	Severe disease risk
	k, Kp^a, Kp^b, K11, K22	Severe disease infrequent, mild disease risk
	Ku, Js^a, Js^b, Ula	
Duffy	Fy^a	Severe disease infrequent, mild disease risk
	Fy^b	Not associated with fetal hemolytic disease
Kidd	Jk^a	Severe disease infrequent, mild disease risk
	Jk^b, Jk^3	Mild disease possible
MNS	M, N, S, s, U, Mt^a, Ena, Far, Hil, Hut, Mi^a, Mit, Mut, Mur, Mv, sD, Vw	Severe disease infrequent, mild disease risk
Colton	Co^a, Co^3	Severe disease infrequent, mild disease risk
Diego	Di^a, Di^b, Wr^a, Wr^b	Severe disease infrequent, mild disease risk
Dombrock	Do^a, Gy^a, Hy, Jo^a	Mild disease possible
Gerbich	Ge^2, Ge^3, Ge^4, Ls^a	Mild disease possible
Scianna	Sc2	Mild disease possible
I	I, i	Not associated with fetal hemolytic disease
Lewis	Le^a, Le^b	Not associated with fetal hemolytic disease

Data from de Haas, 2015; Moise, 2008; Weinstein, 1982.

The prevalence of D alloimmunization complicating pregnancy ranges from 0.5 to 0.9 percent (Koelewijn, 2008; Martin, 2005). Without anti-D immune globulin prophylaxis, a D-negative woman delivered of a D-positive, *ABO-compatible* newborn has a 16-percent likelihood of developing alloimmunization. Two percent will become sensitized by the time of delivery, 7 percent by 6 months postpartum, and the remaining 7 percent will be "sensibilized"—producing detectable antibodies only in a subsequent pregnancy (Bowman, 1985). If there is *ABO incompatibility*, the D alloimmunization risk decreases to 2 percent because erythrocyte destruction of incompatible cells limits sensitization (Bowman, 2006). D sensitization may also occur following first-trimester pregnancy complications, prenatal diagnostic procedures, and maternal trauma (Table 18-2).

The C, c, E, and e antigens have lower immunogenicity than the D antigen but can cause hemolytic disease. Sensitization to E, c, and C antigens complicates approximately 0.3 percent of pregnancies in screening studies and accounts for about 30 percent of red cell alloimmunization cases (Howard, 1998; Koelewijn, 2008). Anti-E alloimmunization is the most common, but the need for fetal or neonatal transfusions is greater with anti-c alloimmunization than with anti-E or anti-C (de Haas, 2015; Hackney, 2004; Koelewijn, 2008).

The Grandmother Effect. In virtually all pregnancies, small amounts of maternal blood enter the fetal circulation. Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) has identified maternal D-positive DNA in peripheral blood from preterm and full-term D-negative newborns (Lazar, 2006). Thus, a D-negative female fetus exposed to maternal D-positive red cells might develop sensitization, and later might produce anti-D antibodies before or during pregnancy. This mechanism is called the *grandmother effect* because the fetus in the current pregnancy is jeopardized by maternal antibodies that were initially provoked by his or her *grandmother's* erythrocytes.

TABLE 18-2. Causes of Fetomaternal Hemorrhage Associated with Red Cell Antigen Alloimmunization[a]

Pregnancy Loss
Abortion, spontaneous or elective
Ectopic pregnancy
Fetal death (any trimester)
Procedures
Amniocentesis
Chorionic villus sampling
Fetal blood sampling
Molar pregnancy evacuation
Other
Antepartum bleeding, including threatened abortion
Delivery, vaginal or cesarean
External cephalic version
Placental abruption
Trauma to the abdomen during pregnancy

[a]For each of the above, anti-D immune globulin is recommended.
Expanded from American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017; American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b.

Alloimmunization to Minor Antigens

Because routine administration of anti-D immune globulin prevents anti-D alloimmunization, proportionately more cases of hemolytic disease are caused by red cell antigens other than D (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a; Koelewijn, 2008). These are also known as minor antigens. Kell antigens are among the most frequent. Other antigens with potential to cause severe alloimmunization include Duffy group A—Fy^a, MNS, and Kidd—Jk^a (de Hass, 2015; Moise, 2008). In most cases, sensitization to a minor antigen results from an incompatible blood transfusion. However, if an IgG red cell antibody is detected and there is any doubt as to its significance, the pregnancy should be evaluated for hemolytic disease.

Only a few blood group antigens pose *no* fetal risk. Lewis antibodies—Le^a and Le^b—are cold agglutinins, as are I antibodies. They are predominantly IgM and are not expressed on fetal red cells (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). Another antibody that does not cause fetal hemolysis is Duffy group B—Fy^b.

Kell Alloimmunization. Approximately 90 percent of non-Hispanic white Americans and up to 98 percent of African Americans are Kell antigen negative. Kell type is not routinely determined. Transfusion history is important, as nearly 90 percent of Kell sensitization cases result from transfusion with Kell-positive blood.

Kell sensitization may develop more rapidly and may be more severe than with sensitization to D and other blood group antigens. This is because Kell antibodies attach to erythrocyte precursors in the fetal bone marrow and thereby impair the normal hemopoietic response to anemia. With fewer erythrocytes produced, there is less hemolysis, and thus severe anemia may not be predicted by the maternal Kell antibody titer.

Slootweg and colleagues (2018) reviewed 93 pregnancies with Kell alloimmunization in which the fetus was confirmed to be Kell-positive. They found that a titer of 1:4 had 100 percent sensitivity, 27 percent specificity, and 60 percent positive predictive value for transfusion requirement in the fetal or neonatal period. More than 50 percent of Kell antigen–positive fetuses ultimately needed transfusions. Given the potential for severe anemia, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) has recommended that antibody titers not be used to monitor Kell-sensitized pregnancies.

ABO Blood Group Incompatibility

Incompatibility for the major blood group antigens A and B is the most common cause of hemolytic disease in newborns, but it does not cause appreciable hemolysis in the fetus. This is because most anti-A and anti-B antibodies are IgM types and do not cross the placenta. Also, fetal red cells have fewer A and B antigenic sites than adult cells and are thus less immunogenic. Approximately 20 percent of newborns have ABO blood

group incompatibility, although only 5 percent are affected clinically. In such cases, the resulting anemia is typically mild.

The condition differs from CDE incompatibility in several respects. First, ABO incompatibility is often seen in firstborn neonates, unlike sensitization to other blood group antigens. This is because most group O women have developed anti-A and anti-B isoagglutinins before pregnancy from exposure to bacteria displaying similar antigens. Additionally, ABO alloimmunization rarely becomes more severe in successive pregnancies. Fetal surveillance and early delivery are not indicated in pregnancies with prior ABO incompatibility. Postnatally however, neonates are evaluated for hyperbilirubinemia, which may require treatment with phototherapy or occasionally transfusion (Chap. 33, p. 606).

Management of the Alloimmunized Pregnancy

Of fetuses from D-alloimmunized pregnancies, 25 to 30 percent will have mild to moderate hemolytic anemia, and up to 25 percent have anemia severe enough to cause hydrops (Tannirandorn, 1990). If alloimmunization is detected and the titer is below the critical value, the titer is generally repeated every 4 weeks for the duration of the pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). In any pregnancy in which the antibody titer has reached a critical value, there is no benefit to repeating the titer. The pregnancy is at risk even if the titer drops, and further evaluation is required. Similarly, if a prior pregnancy was complicated by alloimmunization, the pregnancy is considered at risk regardless of titer.

Fetal Risk Assessment

The presence of anti-D antibodies reflects maternal sensitization but does not indicate whether the fetus is D-positive or D-negative. Up to 40 percent of D-negative pregnant women carry a D-negative fetus. If a woman is sensitized from a prior pregnancy, her antibody titer may rise during the current pregnancy even if the current fetus is D-negative because of an *amnestic response.* In a non-Hispanic white couple in which the woman is D-negative, there is an 85-percent chance that the man is D-positive. However, there is a 60-percent likelihood that he is heterozygous at the D-locus, and only half of his children will be at risk for hemolytic disease.

Initial evaluation of alloimmunization begins with determining the paternal erythrocyte antigen status. *Provided that paternity is certain*, if the father is negative for the red cell antigen to which the mother is sensitized, the pregnancy is not at risk. A prior blood transfusion may be the cause of alloimmunization to a red cell antigen other than D. In a D-alloimmunized pregnancy in which the father is D-positive, it is helpful to determine paternal zygosity for the D antigen using DNA-based analysis. If the father is heterozygous—or if paternity is not known—the woman should be offered assessment of fetal genotype. Traditionally, this was done with amniocentesis and PCR testing of uncultured amniocytes, which has a positive predictive value of 100 percent and negative predictive value of approximately 97 percent (Van den Veyver, 1996). Fetal testing for other antigens—such as E/e, C/c, Duffy, Kell, Kidd, and M/N—also is available with this method. Chorionic villus sampling is not recommended because of greater risk for fetomaternal hemorrhage and subsequent worsening of alloimmunization (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a).

Noninvasive fetal D genotyping has been performed using cell-free DNA (cfDNA) from maternal plasma (Chap. 17, p. 335). The reported sensitivity exceeds 99 percent, the specificity exceeds 95 percent, and positive or negative predictive values are similarly very high (Johnson, 2017; Moise, 2016; Pazourkova, 2021). Fetal D genotyping with cfDNA is routinely used in parts of Europe but is not yet a widely used clinical tool in the United States (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). Two potential indications for cfDNA use in D-negative pregnant women are: (1) in the setting of D alloimmunization, testing can identify fetuses who are also D-negative and do not require anemia surveillance, and (2) in women *without* D alloimmunization, anti-D immune globulin might be withheld if the fetus is D negative. In the case of the latter, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) does not recommend routine cfDNA screening in D-negative pregnancies until it has been demonstrated to be cost-effective.

Management of the alloimmunized pregnancy typically consists of maternal antibody titer surveillance followed by ultrasound monitoring of the fetal MCA peak systolic velocity if a critical antibody titer is reached. As noted earlier (p. 354), pregnancies with Kell alloimmunization often receive ultrasound surveillance regardless of titer. Fetal blood sampling is generally performed if the MCA peak systolic velocity exceeds the threshold for severe anemia, with plan for concurrent intrauterine transfusion as needed. Spectrophotometric analysis of amniotic fluid bilirubin, also known as the ΔOD_{450} test, is no longer recommended (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2015a).

Recent efforts have focused on use of maternal intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) therapy to postpone the initial intrauterine transfusion to beyond 20 weeks in severely affected pregnancies (Maisonneuve, 2021). Its mechanism of action is unclear, but IVIG therapy has been reported to delay need for transfusion by an average of 3 weeks and to lower the risk for hydrops (Zwiers, 2018).

Middle Cerebral Artery Doppler Velocimetry. Serial measurement of the peak systolic velocity of the fetal MCA is the recommended test to detect fetal anemia (Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine, 2015a). The anemic fetus shunts blood preferentially to the brain to maintain adequate oxygenation. The velocity rises because of increased cardiac output and decreased blood viscosity. Measurement technique is discussed in Chapter 14 (p. 262).

In a landmark study, Mari and coworkers (2000) measured the MCA peak systolic velocity serially in 111 fetuses at risk for anemia and in 265 normal control fetuses. The threshold value of 1.5 multiples of the median (MoM) for gestational age correctly identified all fetuses with moderate or severe anemia. This provided a sensitivity of 100 percent, with a false-positive rate of 12 percent.

MCA peak systolic velocity is followed serially, and values are plotted on a curve like the one shown in Figure 18-1.

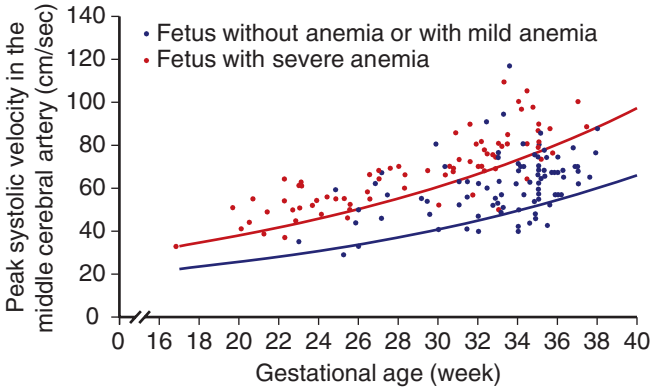


FIGURE 18-1 Doppler measurements of the peak systolic velocity in the middle cerebral artery (MCA) in 165 fetuses at risk for severe anemia. The blue line indicates the median peak systolic velocity in normal pregnancies, and the red line shows 1.5 multiples of the median. (Reproduced with permission from Oepkes D, Seaward PG, Vandenbussche et al: Doppler ultrasonography versus amniocentesis to predict fetal anemia, N Engl J Med. 2006 Jul 13;355(2):156–164.)

If the velocity is between 1.0 and 1.5 MoM and the slope is rising—such that the value is approaching 1.5 MoM—MCA Doppler surveillance is generally performed at least weekly. The false-positive rate of MCA peak systolic velocity increases significantly beyond 34 weeks' gestation and stems from the normal rise in cardiac output that develops at this gestational age (Moise, 2008; Zimmerman, 2002). At Parkland Hospital, MCA peak systolic velocity is not measured beyond 35 weeks, but ultrasound evaluation for hydrops is performed as needed.

Fetal Blood Transfusion

If the MCA peak systolic velocity exceeds 1.5 MoM or if hydrops develops and anemia is the leading etiology, fetal blood sampling and intrauterine transfusion should be considered. Fetal transfusion is typically performed prior to 34 to 35 weeks' gestation (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2015a). Later in gestation, the benefits of transfusion may be outweighed by the risks of delaying delivery. Transfusion is most commonly intravascular. However, the umbilical vein may be too narrow in the early second trimester to readily permit needle entry, and severe hemolysis may necessitate intraperitoneal fetal transfusion. In the setting of hydrops, peritoneal absorption may be impaired, and some prefer to transfuse into both the fetal peritoneal cavity and umbilical vein.

Transfusion is generally recommended only if the fetal hematocrit is <30 percent (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2015a). If hydrops has developed, the hematocrit is usually 15 percent or lower. The red cells transfused are type O, D-negative, cytomegalovirus-negative, packed to a hematocrit of approximately 80 percent to prevent volume overload, irradiated to prevent fetal graft-versus-host reaction, and leukocyte-poor. The fetal–placental volume allows rapid infusion of a relatively large quantity of blood. Before transfusion, a paralytic agent such as vecuronium may be given to the fetus to minimize movement. In a nonhydropic fetus, the target hematocrit is 40 to 50 percent. The volume transfused may be estimated by multiplying the estimated fetal weight in grams by 0.02 for each 10-percent rise in hematocrit needed (Giannina, 1998). In the severely anemic fetus at 18 to 24 weeks' gestation, a smaller volume is transfused initially, and another transfusion may be planned for approximately 2 days later. Subsequent transfusions take place every 2 to 4 weeks, depending on the hematocrit.

The MCA peak systolic velocity threshold for severe anemia is higher following an initial transfusion—1.70 MoM rather than 1.50 MoM (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2015a). It is hypothesized that the change in threshold compensates for the contribution of donor cells in the initial transfusion, because the donor cells are from adults and have a smaller mean corpuscular volume. Following transfusion, the fetal hematocrit drops by approximately 1 percent per day. The initial decline may be more rapid if hydrops has developed.

Outcomes. The overall survival rate approximates 95 percent (Zwiers, 2017; Mizuuchi, 2021). Complications include fetal death in 2 percent, need for emergent cesarean delivery in 1 percent, and infection and preterm rupture of membranes in 0.3 percent each, respectively. The stillbirth rate exceeds 15 percent if transfusion is required before 20 weeks (Lindenberg, 2013; Zwiers, 2017). For hydropic fetuses, the neonatal survival rate is about 80 percent (Emiroglu, 2020; Van Kamp, 2001). In one series, 95 percent of neonates survived if hydrops resolved following intrauterine transfusion compared with fewer than 40 percent if hydrops persisted (Van Kamp, 2001).

Lindenberg (2012) reviewed long-term outcomes following intrauterine transfusion in a cohort of more than 450 alloimmunized pregnancies. Alloimmunization was secondary to anti-D in 80 percent, anti-Kell in 12 percent, and anti-c in 5 percent. Approximately a fourth of affected fetuses had hydrops, and more than half also required exchange transfusion in the neonatal period. Among nearly 300 children aged 2 to 17 years who participated in neurodevelopmental testing, fewer than 5 percent had severe impairments.

■ Prevention of Anti-D Alloimmunization

Anti-D immune globulin has been used for more than five decades to prevent D alloimmunization. Unfortunately, 50 percent of women around the world who would benefit from anti-D immune globulin do not receive it (Pegoraro, 2020). In countries without access, up to 10 percent of D-negative pregnancies are complicated by hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn (Zipursky, 2015). With immunoprophylaxis, however, the alloimmunization risk may be reduced to <0.2 percent. Despite long-standing and widespread use, its mechanism of action is not completely understood.

Fetomaternal hemorrhage at delivery accounts for as many as 90 percent of alloimmunization cases. Routine postpartum administration of anti-D immune globulin to at-risk pregnancies within 72 hours of delivery lowers the alloimmunization rate by 90 percent (Bowman, 1985). Additionally, provision of anti-D immune globulin at 28 weeks' gestation reduces the third-trimester alloimmunization rate from approximately 2 percent to 0.1 percent (Bowman, 1988). *Whenever there is doubt whether to give anti-D immune globulin, it should be given.* If not needed, it will not cause harm, but failure to provide it when needed may have severe consequences.

Anti-D immune globulin is derived from human plasma donated by individuals with high-titer anti-D immunoglobulin D antibodies. Formulations prepared by cold ethanol fractionation and ultrafiltration must be administered intramuscularly because they contain plasma proteins that could result in anaphylaxis if given intravenously. Formulations prepared using ion exchange chromatography may be administered either intramuscularly or intravenously, which is relevant when treating significant fetomaternal hemorrhage. Both preparation methods effectively remove viral particles, including hepatitis and human immunodeficiency viruses. Depending on the preparation, the half-life of anti-D immune globulin ranges from 16 to 24 days, which is why it is given both in the third trimester and following delivery. The standard intramuscular dose of anti-D immune globulin—300 μg or 1500 IU—will protect the average-sized mother from a fetal hemorrhage of up to 30 mL of fetal whole blood or 15 mL of fetal red cells.

In the United States, anti-D immune globulin is given prophylactically to all D-negative, unsensitized women at approximately 28 weeks' gestation, and a second dose is given after delivery if the newborn is D-positive (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b). Before the 28-week dose of anti-D immune globulin, repeat antibody screening is recommended to identify individuals who have become alloimmunized (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017). Following delivery, anti-D immune globulin should be given within 72 hours. Recognizing that 40 percent of neonates born to D-negative women are also D negative, administration of immune globulin is recommended only after the newborn is confirmed to be D positive (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b). If immune globulin is inadvertently not administered following delivery, it should be given as soon as the omission is recognized, because there may be some protection up to 28 days postpartum (Bowman, 2006). Anti-D immune globulin is also administered after pregnancy-related events that could result in sensitization (see Table 18-2). In the first trimester, smaller doses of 50 or 120 μg may be suitable, as discussed in Chapters 11 and 12 (p. 203 and 221).

Anti-D immune globulin may produce a weakly positive—1:1 to 1:4—indirect Coombs titer in the mother. This is harmless and should not be confused with development of alloimmunization. Additionally, as the body mass index increases above 27 to 40 kg/m^2, serum antibody levels decrease by 30 to 60 percent and may be less protective (MacKenzie, 2006; Woelfer, 2004). D-negative women who receive other types of blood products—including platelet transfusions and plasmapheresis—also are at risk of becoming sensitized, and this can be prevented with anti-D immune globulin. Rarely, a small amount of antibody crosses the placenta and results in a weakly positive direct Coombs test in cord and infant blood. Despite this, passive immunization does not cause significant fetal or neonatal hemolysis.

In 2 to 3 per 1000 pregnancies, the volume of fetomaternal hemorrhage may exceed 30 mL of whole blood (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b). A single dose of anti-D immune globulin would be insufficient in such situations. If additional anti-D immune globulin is considered only for women with risk factors such as those shown in Table 18-2, *half* of those who require additional immune globulin may be missed. For this reason, all D-negative women should be screened at delivery, typically with a rosette test, followed by quantitative testing if indicated (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b).

The rosette test is a qualitative test that identifies whether fetal D-positive cells are present in the circulation of a D-negative woman. A sample of maternal blood is mixed with anti-D antibodies that coat any D-positive fetal cells present in the sample. Indicator red cells bearing the D-antigen are then added, and rosettes form around the fetal cells as the indicator cells attach to them by the antibodies. Thus, if rosettes are visualized, there are fetal D-positive cells in that sample. In the setting of D incompatibility, or any time a large fetomaternal hemorrhage is suspected—regardless of antigen status, a Kleihauer-Betke test or flow cytometry test are used. These are discussed on page 358.

The dosage of anti-D immune globulin is calculated from the estimated volume of the fetal-to-maternal hemorrhage, as described on page 358. One 300-μg dose is given for each 15 mL of fetal red cells or 30 mL of fetal whole blood to be neutralized. If using an intramuscular preparation of anti-D immune globulin, no more than five doses may be given in a 24-hour period. If using an intravenous preparation, two ampules—totaling 600 μg—may be given every 8 hours. A positive indirect Coombs test or the presence of circulating fetal cells on a rosette test demonstrate that the dose was sufficient.

Serological Weak D Phenotypes

Formerly called *D*^{u}, these are the most common antigenic D variants in the United States and Europe (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). Serological weak D phenotypes have been further refined into two general categories using molecular analysis to complete RHD genotyping. *Molecular weak D phenotypes* carry reduced numbers of intact D antigens on the red cell surface. *Partial D types* have protein deletions associated with abnormal D antigens that lack epitopes (Sandler, 2017).

Many individuals who test positive for weak D have weak D phenotypes 1, 2, or 3. These phenotypes may be managed as if D-positive. The pregnancy is not considered at risk for alloimmunization, and thus anti-D immune globulin is not needed (Sandler 2015, 2017). In contrast, individuals with partial D antigens may be at risk for D-sensitization and do require immune globulin. Molecular RHD genotyping has been suggested for pregnant women with weak D phenotype, but cost-benefit analysis of this strategy is presently lacking (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b). *If molecular genetic testing has not been performed in those with serologic weak D phenotype, D immunoprophylaxis should be administered.*

FETOMATERNAL HEMORRHAGE

A small amount of fetomaternal bleeding likely occurs in all pregnancies and may be sufficient to provoke an antigen-antibody reaction in two thirds. As shown in Figure 18-2, the incidence increases with advancing gestation and with the volume of fetal blood in the maternal circulation (Choavaratana, 1997).

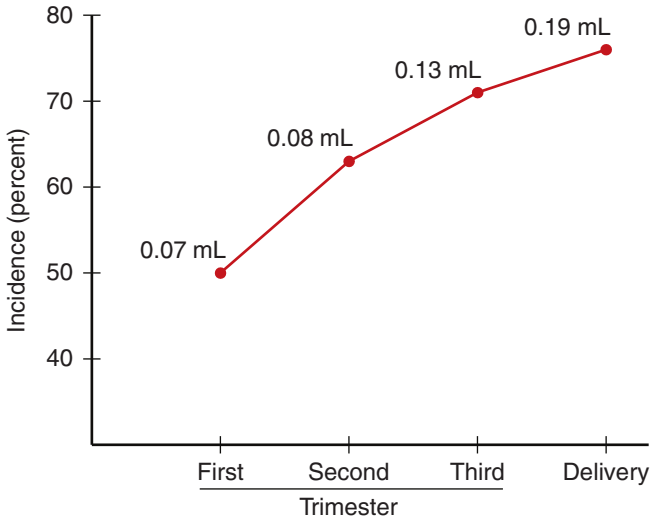


FIGURE 18-2 Incidence of fetomaternal hemorrhage during pregnancy. The numbers at each data point represent total volume of fetal blood estimated to have been transferred into the maternal circulation.

The prevalence of fetomaternal bleeding of at least 30 mL is estimated to be 3 events per 1000 pregnancies (Wylie, 2010). Fortunately, frank hemorrhage is rare. In one series of more than 30,000 pregnancies, fetomaternal hemorrhage ≥150 mL complicated 1 in 2800 births (de Almeida, 1994).

Selected causes of fetomaternal hemorrhage are shown in Table 18-2. With significant hemorrhage, the most common presenting complaint is decreased fetal movement (Bellussi, 2017; Wylie, 2010). A sinusoidal fetal heart rate pattern is infrequently seen but warrants immediate evaluation (Chap. 24, p. 451). Sonography may demonstrate elevated MCA peak systolic velocity, and indeed this is reported to be the most accurate predictor (Bellusi, 2017; Wylie, 2010). Hydrops is an ominous finding. If the MCA peak systolic velocity is elevated or hydrops is identified, urgent fetal transfusion or delivery should be considered. In more than 80 percent of cases, no etiology of the fetomaternal hemorrhage is identified.

One limitation of quantitative tests for fetal cells in the maternal circulation is that they do not provide information regarding the timing or chronicity of hemorrhage (Wylie, 2010). Anemia that develops gradually, as with alloimmunization, is generally better tolerated by the fetus than acute anemia. Chronic anemia may not produce fetal heart rate abnormalities until the fetus is moribund. In contrast, significant acute hemorrhage may result in profound fetal neurological impairment from cerebral hypoperfusion, ischemia, and infarction. In some cases, fetomaternal hemorrhage is identified during stillbirth evaluation (Chap. 35, p. 325).

■ Hemorrhage Quantification

Estimating the volume of fetomaternal hemorrhage is needed to calculate the appropriate dose of anti-D immune globulin if the woman is D-negative, and it may also influence obstetrical management. The most commonly used quantitative test for fetal red cells in the maternal circulation is the acid elution or

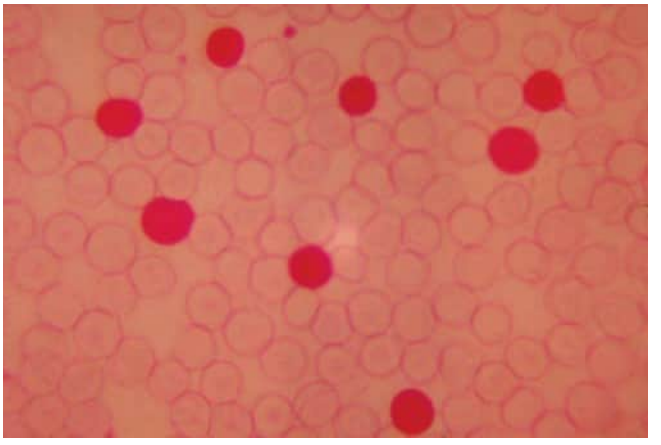


FIGURE 18-3 Kleihauer-Betke test demonstrating massive fetomaternal hemorrhage. After acid-elution treatment, fetal red cells rich in hemoglobin F stain darkly, whereas maternal red cells with only very small amounts of hemoglobin F stain lightly.

Kleihauer-Betke (KB) test (Kleihauer, 1957). Fetal erythrocytes contain hemoglobin F, which is more resistant to acid elution than hemoglobin A. Following exposure to acid, only fetal hemoglobin remains. Therefore, after staining, the fetal erythrocytes appear red and adult erythrocytes appear as "ghosts" (Fig. 18-3). The fetal cells are then counted and expressed as a percentage of adult cells. The fetal blood volume involved in the fetomaternal hemorrhage may be calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{Fetal blood volume} = \frac{\text{MBV} \times \text{maternal Hct} \times \%\ \text{fetal cells in KB test}}{\text{newborn Hct}}$$

For a pregnant woman of normal size who is normotensive and has reached full-term, the maternal blood volume (MBV) may be estimated as 5000 mL. Thus, in a woman with a hematocrit of 35 percent and whose fetus has a hematocrit of 50 percent, the calculation for a KB test demonstrating staining of 1.7 percent of sample cells is:

$$\text{Fetal blood volume} = \frac{5000 \times 0.35 \times 0.017}{0.5} = 60\ \text{mL}$$

The fetal-placental blood volume at term approximates 125 mL/kg. For a 3000-g fetus, that would equate to 375 mL. Thus, this fetus lost approximately 15 percent (60 ÷ 375 mL) of the fetal-placental volume. Assuming the hematocrit is 50 percent in a term fetus, this 60 mL of whole blood represents 30 mL of red cells lost into the maternal circulation. A loss of this magnitude should be well tolerated hemodynamically but would require two 300-μg doses of anti-D immune globulin to prevent alloimmunization. A more precise method to estimate the maternal blood volume includes a calculation based on the maternal height, weight, and anticipated physiological maternal blood volume accrual (Table 42-1, p. 732).

The KB test is labor intensive. There are also two scenarios in which the KB may be inaccurate: (1) maternal hemoglobinopathies in which the fetal hemoglobin level is elevated, such

as β-thalassemia, and (2) at or near term, because the fetus may already be producing hemoglobin A.

Another method of quantifying fetomaternal hemorrhage is with flow cytometry, which uses monoclonal antibodies to hemoglobin F or to the D antigen and then measures the degree of fluorescence (Chambers, 2012; Welsh, 2016). Flow cytometry is an automated test that can analyze a greater number of cells than the KB test. It is also unaffected by maternal levels of fetal hemoglobin and by fetal levels of hemoglobin A. Flow cytometry has been reported to be more sensitive and accurate than the KB test, however, it uses specialized technology not routinely available in many hospitals (Chambers, 2012; Corcoran, 2014; Fernandes, 2007).

FETAL THROMBOCYTOPENIA

Alloimmune Thrombocytopenia

This is also referred to as *fetal and neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia (FNAIT)*. Alloimmune thrombocytopenia (AIT) is the most common cause of severe thrombocytopenia among term newborns, with a frequency of 1 to 2 cases per 1000 births (Kamphuis, 2010; Pacheco, 2013; Risson, 2012). FNAIT is caused by maternal alloimmunization to paternally inherited fetal platelet antigens. Maternal antiplatelet antibodies cross the placenta in a manner similar to red cell alloimmunization (p. 352). Unlike *immune thrombocytopenia*, the maternal platelet count is normal with FNAIT. And, unlike anti-D alloimmunization, severe sequelae may affect the *initial* at-risk pregnancy.

Maternal platelet alloimmunization against human platelet antigen-1a (HPA-1a) accounts for 80 to 90 percent of cases and is associated with the greatest severity (Bussel, 1997; Knight, 2011; Tiller, 2013). This is followed in order of frequency by alloimmunization against HPA-5b, HPA-1b, and HPA-3a. Alloimmunization to other antigens accounts for only 1 percent of reported cases.

Approximately 85 percent of non-Hispanic white individuals are HPA-1a positive. Two percent are homozygous for HPA-1b and at risk for alloimmunization. However, only 10 percent of these women produce antiplatelet antibodies when carrying an HPA-1a fetus. Approximately a third of affected fetuses or neonates will develop severe thrombocytopenia, and 10 to 20 percent with severe thrombocytopenia sustain an intracranial hemorrhage (ICH) (Kamphuis, 2010). As a result, population-based screening studies have identified one case of FNAIT-associated ICH per 25,000 to 60,000 pregnancies (Kamphuis, 2010; Knight, 2011).

FNAIT has a spectrum of presentation. Neonatal thrombocytopenia may be an incidental finding, the newborn may manifest petechiae, or the fetus or neonate may develop devastating ICH. Of 600 pregnancies with FNAIT identified through a large international registry, fetal or neonatal ICH complicated just 7 percent of cases (Tiller, 2013). Hemorrhage affected the first-born child in 60 percent and occurred before 28 weeks' gestation in half. A third of affected children died soon after birth, and 50 percent of survivors had severe neurological disabilities.

Bussel and coworkers (1997) evaluated fetal platelet counts before therapy in 107 fetuses with FNAIT. Thrombocytopenia severity was predicted by a prior sibling with perinatal ICH. Fifty percent had an initial platelet count <20,000/μL. And, among those in whom the initial platelet count was >80,000/μL, it dropped by at least 10,000/μL per week in the absence of therapy.

Diagnosis and Management

AIT is typically diagnosed following delivery of a neonate with severe and unexplained thrombocytopenia to a woman whose platelet count is normal. Rarely, the diagnosis is ascertained after identifying fetal ICH. The condition recurs in 70 to 90 percent of subsequent pregnancies, is often severe, and usually develops earlier with each successive pregnancy. Traditionally, fetal blood sampling was performed to detect fetal thrombocytopenia and to tailor therapy. Platelets were transfused if the fetal platelet count was <50,000/μL. The reported rate of procedure-related complications exceeds 10 percent (Winkelhorst, 2017). For this reason, most favor empirical treatment with IVIG instead (Berkowitz, 2006; Pacheco, 2011).

Therapy may be stratified according to whether a prior affected pregnancy was complicated by perinatal ICH, and if so, at what gestational age (Table 18-3) (Pacheco, 2011). Pioneering work by Bussel (1996) and Berkowitz (2006) and their colleagues demonstrated the efficacy of such treatment. In one series of 50 pregnancies with fetal thrombocytopenia secondary to FNAIT, IVIG raised the platelet count by approximately 50,000/μL, and no fetus developed ICH (Bussel, 1996). Among pregnancies at particularly high risk, which was based on a platelet count <20,000/μL or a sibling with FNAIT-associated ICH, the addition of corticosteroids to IVIG therapy was associated with a rise in platelet count in 80 percent of cases (Berkowitz, 2006). However, a systematic review identified no consistent benefit of corticosteroid treatment compared with IVIG therapy alone (Winkelhorst, 2017). Thus, corticosteroid therapy is somewhat controversial. Cesarean delivery is generally recommended at or near term.

Immune Thrombocytopenia

Also known as immune or idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP), this autoimmune disorder is characterized by antiplatelet IgG antibodies that attack platelet glycoproteins. The antibodies may cross the placenta and cause fetal thrombocytopenia. Maternal ITP is discussed in Chapter 59 (p. 1059).

Fetal thrombocytopenia from maternal ITP is usually mild. However, neonatal platelet levels may fall rapidly after birth and nadir at 48 to 72 hours of life. Neither the maternal platelet count, identification of antiplatelet antibodies, nor treatment with corticosteroids effectively predicts fetal or neonatal platelet counts (Hachisuga, 2014). Importantly, fetal platelet counts are usually adequate to allow vaginal delivery without an increased risk of ICH. In a review of more than 400 pregnancies with ITP, there was no case of fetal or neonatal ICH and no infant with any central nervous system abnormality (Wyszynski, 2016). Fetal blood sampling is not recommended

TABLE 18-3. Fetal-Neonatal Alloimmune Thrombocytopenia (FNAIT) Treatment Recommendations

Risk Group	Criteria	Suggested Management
1	Prior fetus or newborn with ICH, but no maternal anti-HPA antibody identified	Maternal anti-HPA antibody screening and cross-matching with paternal platelets at 12, 24, and 32 weeks' gestation; no treatment for negative test results
2	Prior fetus or newborn with thrombocytopenia and maternal anti-HPA antibody, but no ICH	Beginning at 20 wks: IVIG 1g/kg/wk and prednisone 0.5 mg/kg/d ***or*** IVIG 2 g/kg/wk Beginning at 32 wks: IVIG 2 g/kg/wk and prednisone 0.5 mg/kg/d Continue until delivery
3	Prior fetus with 3rd-trimester ICH or prior newborn with ICH, and maternal anti-HPA antibody	Beginning at 12 wks: IVIG 1 g/kg/wk Beginning at 20 wks: either increase IVIG to 2 g/kg/wk ***or*** add prednisone 0.5 mg/kg/d Beginning at 28 wks: IVIG 2 g/kg/wk ***and*** prednisone 0.5 mg/kg/d Continue until delivery
4	Prior fetus with ICH before the 3rd trimester and maternal anti-HPA antibody	Beginning at 12 wks: IVIG 2 g/kg/wk Beginning at 20 wks: add prednisone 1 mg/kg/d Continue both until delivery

HPA = human platelet antigen; ICH = intracerebral hemorrhage; IVIG = intravenous immunoglobulin G.

(Neunert, 2011). Mode of delivery is based on standard obstetrical indications.

HYDROPS FETALIS

This phrase has its origins in Middle English, Latin, and Greek. The condition was described by Ballantyne in 1892 as general dropsy, that is, edema, of the fetus (Kaiser, 1971). Hydrops can be a manifestation of severe illness from a wide variety of etiologies (Table 18-4) (Bellini, 2015).

Hydrops is diagnosed by identifying two or more fetal effusions—pleural, pericardial, or ascites—or one effusion plus anasarca (Fig. 18-4). Sonographically measured skin thickness of >5 mm constitutes edema or anasarca. Placentomegaly is defined as placental thickness ≥4 cm in the second trimester or ≥6 cm in the third trimester (Bellini, 2009; Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine, 2015b). As hydrops progresses in severity, anasarca is an invariable feature and is usually accompanied by placentomegaly and hydramnios.

If found in association with red cell alloimmunization, hydrops is termed *immune*, otherwise, it is *nonimmune*. Immune and nonimmune hydrops are postulated to share several physiological abnormalities. The precise pathogenesis remains unknown but is likely multifactorial. As shown in Figure 18-5, these include decreased colloid oncotic pressure, increased hydrostatic or central venous pressure, and enhanced vascular permeability.

Immune Hydrops

This condition results from transplacental passage of maternal antibodies that destroy fetal red cells. The resultant anemia stimulates marrow erythroid hyperplasia and extramedullary hematopoiesis in the spleen and liver (see Fig. 18-5). The latter likely causes portal hypertension and impaired hepatic protein synthesis, which lowers plasma oncotic pressure (Nicolaides, 1985). Fetal anemia may also raise central venous pressure (Weiner, 1989). Tissue hypoxia from anemia may increase capillary permeability, such that fluid collects in the fetal thorax, abdominal cavity, and/or subcutaneous tissue.

The incidence of immune hydrops has decreased dramatically with the advent of anti-D immune globulin and with use of MCA Doppler to aid anemia detection. Only severe anemia results in immune hydrops. Mari and colleagues (2000) reviewed 70 pregnancies with fetal anemia from red cell alloimmunization and found that all with immune hydrops had hemoglobin values *<5 g/dL*. As discussed on page 356, immediate fetal blood transfusion may be lifesaving.

Nonimmune Hydrops

At least 90 percent of cases of hydrops are nonimmune (Bellini, 2012). The prevalence approximates 1 case per 1500 second-trimester pregnancies (Heinonen, 2000). The number of specific disorders that can lead to nonimmune hydrops is extensive. Etiologies and the proportion of births within each hydrops category from a review of more than 6700 affected pregnancies are summarized in Table 18-4 (Bellini, 2015).

A cause is identified in approximately 60 percent prenatally and in up to 80 percent postnatally (Bellini, 2009, 2015; Santo, 2011). Of prenatally diagnosed cases, aneuploidy accounts for approximately 20 percent, cardiovascular abnormalities for 15 percent, and infections for 14 percent—the most common of which is parvovirus B19 (Santo, 2011; Sileo, 2020; Sparks, 2019). In multifetal gestations, twin-twin transfusion syndrome is the most frequent cause (Yeom, 2015). Fetal deaths and stillbirths are common with nonimmune hydrops. Overall, only 40 percent of affected pregnancies result in a liveborn

TABLE 18-4. Categories and Etiologies of Nonimmune Hydrops Fetalis

Category	Percent[a]
Cardiovascular Structural defects: Ebstein anomaly, tetralogy of Fallot with absent pulmonary valve, hypoplastic left or right heart, premature closure of ductus arteriosus, arteriovenous malformation (vein of Galen aneurysm) Cardiomyopathies Tachyarrhythmias Bradycardia, as may occur in heterotaxy syndrome with endocardial cushion defect or with anti-Ro/La antibodies	21
Chromosomal Turner syndrome (45,X), triploidy, trisomies 21, 18, and 13	13
Hematological Hemoglobinopathies, such as α4-thalassemia Erythrocyte enzyme and membrane disorders Erythrocyte aplasia/dyserythropoiesis Decreased erythrocyte production (myeloproliferative disorders) Fetomaternal hemorrhage	10
Lymphatic Abnormalities Cystic hygroma, systemic lymphangiectasis, pulmonary lymphangiectasis	8
Infections Parvovirus B19, syphilis, cytomegalovirus, toxoplasmosis, rubella, enterovirus, varicella, herpes simplex, coxsackievirus, listeriosis, leptospirosis, Chagas disease, Lyme disease	7
Syndromic Arthrogryposis multiplex congenita, lethal multiple pterygium, congenital lymphedema, myotonic dystrophy type I, Neu-Laxova, Noonan, and Pena-Shokeir syndromes	5
Thoracic Abnormalities Cystic adenomatoid malformation Pulmonary sequestration Diaphragmatic hernia Hydro/chylothorax Congenital high airway obstruction sequence (CHAOS) Mediastinal tumors Skeletal dysplasia with very small thorax	5
Gastrointestinal Meconium peritonitis, gastrointestinal tract obstruction	1
Kidney and Urinary Tract Kidney malformations Bladder outlet obstructions Congenital (Finnish) nephrosis, Bartter syndrome, mesoblastic nephroma	2
Placental, Twin, and Cord Abnormalities Placental chorioangioma, twin-twin transfusion syndrome, twin reversed arterial perfusion sequence, twin anemia polycythemia sequence, cord vessel thrombosis	5
Other Rare Disorders Inborn errors of metabolism: Gaucher disease, galactosialidosis, GM_1 gangliosidosis, sialidosis, mucopolysaccharidoses, mucolipidoses Tumors: sacrococcygeal teratoma, hemangioendothelioma with Kasabach-Merritt syndrome	5
Idiopathic	18

[a]Percentages reflect the proportion within each category from a systematic review of 6775 pregnancies with nonimmune hydrops.

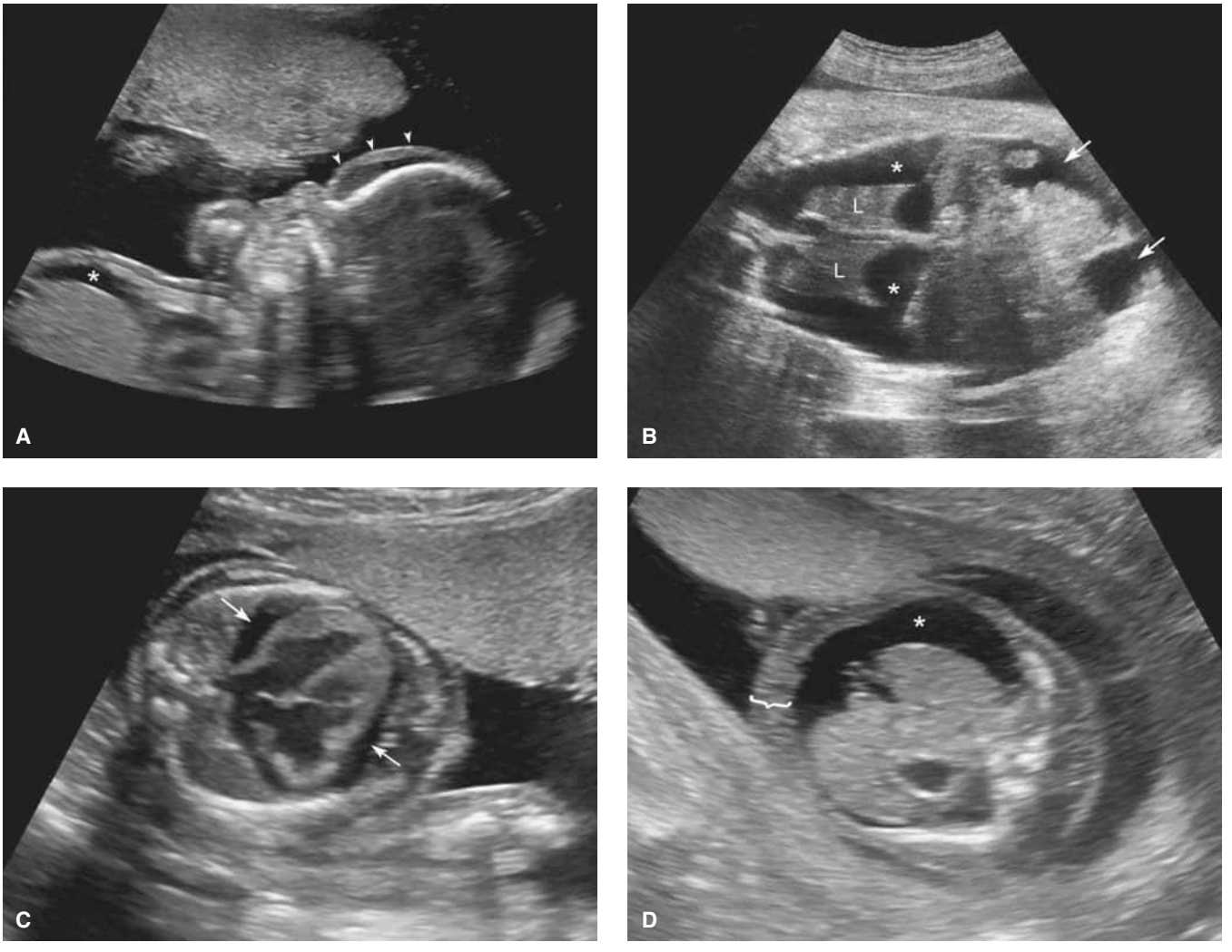


FIGURE 18-4 Sonographic findings that define hydrops. **A.** This profile of a 23-week fetus with nonimmune hydrops secondary to B19 parvovirus infection depicts scalp edema (*arrowheads*) and ascites (*). **B.** This 34-week fetus had hydrops secondary to an arteriovenous malformation in the brain, known as a vein of Galen aneurysm. In this coronal image, prominent pleural effusions (*) outline the lungs (L). Fetal ascites is also present (*arrows*), as is anasarca. **C.** This axial (transverse) image depicts a pericardial effusion (*arrows*) in a 23-week fetus with hydrops from B19 parvovirus infection. The degree of cardiomegaly is impressive, and the ventricular hypertrophy raises concern for myocarditis, which can accompany parvovirus infection. **D.** This axial (transverse) image depicts fetal ascites (*) in a 15-week fetus with hydrops secondary to large cystic hygromas. Anasarca is also seen (*bracket*).

neonate, and of these, the neonatal survival rate is just 50 percent (Nassr, 2018; Yeom, 2015).

Importantly, the etiology of nonimmune hydrops varies according to the gestational age at diagnosis. In a review of 63 pregnancies undergoing genetic testing for hydrops in the first trimester, aneuploidy was the cause in 70 percent (Sileo, 2020). Of cases diagnosed from 14 through 24 weeks, aneuploidy and congenital infection each accounted for 20 percent. When nonimmune hydrops presents before 24 weeks' gestation, the most frequent aneuploidy is 45,X—*Turner syndrome*, and in such cases, the survival rate is <5 percent (Sohan, 2001).

Recent advances in genetic testing have improved the understanding of hydrops cases that were previously considered idiopathic. In a review from the University of California Fetal-Maternal Consortium, whole exome sequencing was studied in 127 cases of unexplained nonimmune hydrops in which traditional genetic testing was uninformative (Sparks, 2020). Nearly 30 percent had a pathogenic genetic variant. The most common etiology was *RASopathies*, and many such cases resulted in Noonan syndrome. It is anticipated that as experience with whole exome sequencing accrues, the diagnostic yield will continue to increase.

Although the prognosis of nonimmune hydrops is guarded, it depends heavily on etiology. In a large series from Thailand and Southern China, α^0-thalassemia is the main cause of nonimmune hydrops. It accounts for 30 to 50 percent of cases and confers an extremely poor prognosis (Liao, 2007; Ratanasiri, 2009; Suwanrath-Kengpol, 2005). In contrast, treatable etiologies such as parvovirus infection, chylothorax, and tachyarrhythmias, which each constituting approximately 10 percent of cases, can result in survival in two thirds of cases with fetal therapy (Sohan, 2001).

Diagnostic Evaluation

Hydrops is readily detected with prenatal sonography (see Fig. 18-5). Imaging and laboratory evaluation may identify

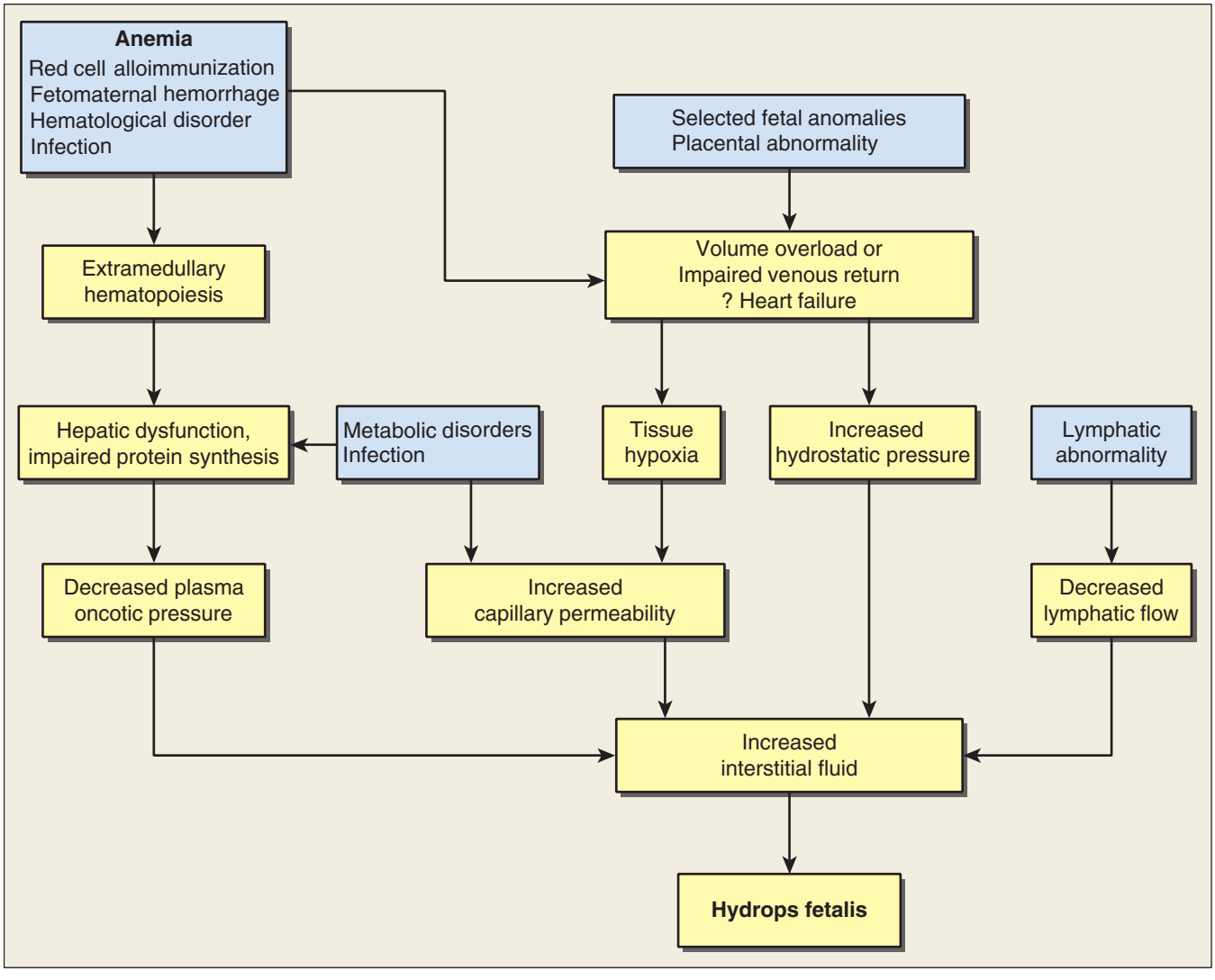


FIGURE 18-5 Proposed pathogenesis of immune and nonimmune hydrops fetalis. (Data from Bellini, 2009; Lockwood, 2009.)

fetal structural abnormalities, arrhythmias, anemia, aneuploidy, placental abnormalities, and complications of monochorionic twinning. Depending on the circumstances, initial evaluation includes the following:

1. Indirect Coombs test to identify alloimmunization
2. Detailed ultrasound examination of the fetus and placenta that includes:
   - A detailed anatomical survey to assess for the structural abnormalities listed in Table 18-4
   - Fetal echocardiography to further evaluate cardiac structure and function
   - MCA Doppler peak systolic velocity to assess for fetal anemia
3. Amniocentesis to obtain samples for chromosomal microarray analysis or karyotyping and for parvovirus B19, cytomegalovirus, and toxoplasmosis testing, as discussed in Chapter 67
4. Kleihauer-Betke test to detect fetomaternal hemorrhage if anemia is suspected, depending on findings and test results
5. Consideration of testing for alpha-thalassemia and/or inborn errors of metabolism.

Whole exome sequencing has significant potential to identify a genetic etiology if the aforementioned evaluation is not informative (Sparks, 2020). Counseling should include anticipated turnaround times, costs, and variants of uncertain significance. It is not recommended for routine use (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020). In addition, because sequencing is generally performed on the fetus and parents, a parent may be identified or suspected to have an unrelated but medically actionable finding, such as a cancer predisposition.

Isolated Effusion or Edema. The initial presentation of hydrops may be as a single effusion or anasarca. Although neither is diagnostic of hydrops, the above evaluation should be considered, and frequent surveillance may be prudent. A pericardial effusion may precede development of hydrops in fetal parvovirus B19 infection (Chap. 67, p. 1191). Similarly, isolated ascites may be the initial finding in fetal parvovirus B19 infection or may result from a gastrointestinal abnormality such as meconium peritonitis. An isolated pleural effusion may represent a chylothorax, which is amenable to prenatal diagnosis, and for which fetal therapy may be lifesaving if hydrops develops (Chap. 19, p. 376). Last, isolated edema, particularly involving

the upper torso or the dorsum of the hands and feet, may be found in Turner or Noonan syndrome or may represent congenital lymphedema syndrome (Chap. 16, p. 314).

Mirror Syndrome

The association between fetal hydrops and the development of maternal edema, in which the mother *mirrors* the fetus, is attributed to Ballantyne. He called the condition *triple edema* because the fetus, mother, and placenta all became edematous. Mirror syndrome has been reported to complicate at least 20 percent of hydrops cases (Chen, 2021). The etiology of the hydrops is not related to development of mirror syndrome. It has been associated with hydrops from D alloimmunization, twin-twin transfusion syndrome, placental chorioangioma, fetal cystic hygroma, Ebstein anomaly, sacrococcygeal teratoma, chylothorax, bladder outlet obstruction, supraventricular tachycardia, vein of Galen aneurysm, and various congenital infections (Braun, 2010).

In a review of more than 50 cases of mirror syndrome, Braun (2010) found that approximately 90 percent of women had edema, 60 percent had hypertension, 40 percent had proteinuria, 20 percent had liver enzyme elevation, and nearly 15 percent had headache and visual disturbances. Based on these findings, it is reasonable to consider mirror syndrome a form of severe preeclampsia (Espinoza, 2006; Midgley, 2000). Others, however, have suggested that it is a separate disease process with hemodilution rather than hemoconcentration (Carbillon, 1997; Livingston, 2007).

Some reports describe the same imbalance of angiogenic and antiangiogenic factors that is observed with preeclampsia, and this suggests a common pathophysiology (Goa, 2013; Hobson, 2020; Llurba, 2012). These findings, which include elevated concentrations of soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase 1 (sFlt-1), decreased placental growth factor (PlGF) levels, and elevation of soluble vascular endothelial growth factor receptor 1 (sVEGFR-1) concentrations, are discussed further in Chapter 40 (p. 694).

In most cases with mirror syndrome, prompt delivery is indicated and followed by resolution of maternal edema and other findings (Braun, 2010). However, in isolated cases of fetal anemia, supraventricular tachycardia, hydrothorax, or bladder outlet obstruction, successful fetal treatment has resulted in resolution of both fetal hydrops and maternal mirror syndrome (Goa, 2013; Livingston, 2007; Llurba, 2012; Midgley, 2000). Normalization of the angiogenic imbalance has also been described following fetal transfusion for parvovirus B19 infection. Fetal therapy for these conditions is reviewed in Chapter 19. Given the parallels to severe preeclampsia, delaying delivery to effect fetal therapy should be considered only with caution. If the maternal condition deteriorates, delivery is recommended.

REFERENCES

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care. 8th ed. Elk Grove Village, AAP, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Management of alloimmunization during pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 192, March 2018, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention of Rh-D alloimmunization. Practice Bulletin No. 181, August 2017, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Microarrays and next-generation sequencing technology: the use of advanced genetic diagnostic tools in obstetrics and gynecology. Committee Opinion No. 682, December 2016, Reaffirmed 2020

Bellini C, Donarini G, Paladini D, et al: Etiology of non-immune hydrops fetalis: an update. Am J Med Genet 167A:1082, 2015

Bellini C, Hennekam RC: Non-immune hydrops fetalis: a short review of etiology and pathophysiology. Am J Med Genet 158A(3):597, 2012

Bellini C, Hennekam RC, Fulcheri E, et al: Etiology of nonimmune hydrops fetalis: a systematic review. Am J Med Genet A 149A(5):844, 2009

Bellussi F, Perolo A, Ghi T, et al: Diagnosis of severe fetomaternal hemorrhage with fetal cerebral Doppler: case series and systematic review. Fetal Diagn Ther 41(1):1, 2017

Berkowitz RL, Kolb EA, McFarland JG, et al: Parallel randomized trials of risk-based therapy for fetal alloimmune thrombocytopenia. Obstet Gynecol 107(1):91, 2006

Bollason G, Hjartardottir H, Jonsson T, et al: Red blood cell alloimmunization in pregnancy during the years 1996–2015 in Iceland: a nation-wide population study. Transfusion 57(11):2578, 2017

Bowman J: Rh-immunoglobulin: Rh prophylaxis. Best Pract Res Clin Haematol 19(1):27, 2006

Bowman JM: Controversies in Rh prophylaxis: who needs Rh immune globulin and when should it be given? Am J Obstet Gynecol 151:289, 1985

Bowman JM: The prevention of Rh immunization. Transfus Med Rev 2:129, 1988

Braun T, Brauer M, Fuchs I, et al: Mirror syndrome: a systematic review of fetal associated conditions, maternal presentation, and perinatal outcome. Fetal Diagn Ther 27(4):191, 2010

Bussel JB, Berkowitz RL, Lynch L, et al: Antenatal management of alloimmune thrombocytopenia with intravenous gamma-globulin: a randomized trial of the addition of low-dose steroid to intravenous gamma-globulin. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174(5):1414, 1996

Bussel JB, Zabusky MR, Berkowitz RL, et al: Fetal alloimmune thrombocytopenia. N Engl J Med 337:22, 1997

Carbillon L, Oury JF, Guerin JM, et al: Clinical biological features of Ballantyne syndrome and the role of placental hydrops. Obstet Gynecol Surv 52(5):310, 1997

Chambers E, Davies L, Evans S, et al: Comparison of haemoglobin F detection by the acid elution test, flow cytometry and high-performance liquid chromatography in maternal blood samples analysed for fetomaternal haemorrhage. Transfus Med 22(3):199, 2012

Chen R, Liu M, Yan J, et al: Clinical characteristics of mirror syndrome: a retrospective study of 16 cases. J Obstet Gynaecol 41(1):73, 2021

Choavaratana R, Uer-Areewong S, Makanantakocol S: Fetomaternal transfusion in normal pregnancy and during delivery. J Med Assoc Thai 80:96, 1997

Corcoran D, Murphy D, Donnelly J, et al: The prevalence of maternal F cells in a pregnant population and potential overestimation of foeto-maternal haemorrhage as a consequence. Blood Transfus 12:570, 2014

Daniels G: Variants of RhD—current testing and clinical consequences. Br J Haematol 161(4):461, 2013

de Almeida V, Bowman JM: Massive fetomaternal hemorrhage: Manitoba experience. Obstet Gynecol 83:323, 1994

de Haas M, Thurik FF, Koelewijn JM et al: Haemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn. Vox Sang 109(2):99, 2015

Emiroğlu N, Yilmaz FH, Keçeci R, et al: Clinical characteristics and neonatal outcomes of liveborn newborns with hydrops fetalis treated in a tertiary level neonatal intensive care unit. Birth Defects Res 1:112(6):515, 2020

Fernandes BJ, von Dadelszen P, Fazal I, et al: Flow cytometric assessment of feto-maternal hemorrhage; a comparison with Betke-Kleihauer. Prenat Diagn 27(7):641, 2007

Garratty G, Glynn SA, McEntire R, et al: ABO and Rh(D) phenotype frequencies of different racial/ethnic groups in the United States. Transfusion 44(5):703, 2004

Giannina G, Moise KJ Jr, Dorman K: A simple method to estimate the volume for fetal intravascular transfusion. Fetal Diagn Ther 13:94, 1998

Goa S, Mimura K, Kakigano A, et al: Normalisation of angiogenic imbalance after intra-uterine transfusion for mirror syndrome caused by parvovirus B19. Fetal Diagn Ther 34(3):176, 2013

Hachisuga K, Hidaka N, Fujita Y, et al: Can we predict neonatal thrombocytopenia in offspring of women with idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura? Blood 49(4):259, 2014

Hackney DN, Knudtson EJ, Rossi KQ, et al: Management of pregnancies complicated by anti-c isoimmunization. Obstet Gynecol 103:24, 2004

Heinonen S, Ruynamen M, Kirkinen P: Etiology and outcome of second trimester nonimmunological fetal hydrops. Scand J Obstet Gynecol 79:15, 2000
Hobson SR, Wallace EM, Chan YF, et al: Mirroring preeclampsia: the molecular basis of Ballantyne syndrome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(5):768, 2020
Howard H, Martlew V, McFadyen I, et al: Consequences for fetus and neonate of maternal red cell allo-immunization. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonat Ed 78:F62, 1998
Johnson JA, MacDonald K, Clarke G, et al: No. 343—Routine non-invasive prenatal prediction of fetal RHD genotype in Canada: the time is here. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 39(5):366, 2017
Kaiser IH: Ballantyne and triple edema. Am J Obstet Gynecol 110(1):115, 1971
Kamphuis MM, Paridaans N, Porcelijn L, et al: Screening in pregnancy for fetal or neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia: systematic review. BJOG 117(11):1335, 2010
Kleihauer B, Braun H, Betke K: Demonstration of fetal hemoglobin in erythrocytes of a blood smear. Klin Wochenschr 35(12):637, 1957
Knight M, Pierce M, Allen D, et al: The incidence and outcomes of fetomaternal alloimmune thrombocytopenia: a UK national study using three data sources. Br J Haematol 152(4):460, 2011
Koelewijn JM, Vrijkotte TG, van der Schoot CE, et al: Effect of screening for red cell antibodies, other than anti-D, to detect hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn: a population study in the Netherlands. Transfusion 48:941, 2008
Lazar L, Harmath AG, Ban Z, et al: Detection of maternal deoxyribonucleic acid in peripheral blood of premature and mature newborn infants. Prenat Diagn 26(2):168, 2006
Liao C, Wei J, Li Q, et al: Nonimmune hydrops fetalis diagnosed during the second half of pregnancy in Southern China. Fetal Diagn Ther 22(4):302, 2007
Lindenburg I, van Kamp I, van Zwet E, et al: Increased perinatal loss after intrauterine transfusion for alloimmune anaemia before 20 weeks of gestation. BJOG 120:847, 2013
Lindenburg IT, Smits-Wintjens VE, van Klink JM, et al: Long-term neurodevelopmental outcome after intrauterine transfusion for hemolytic disease of the fetus/newborn: the LOTUS study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206:141.e1, 2012
Livingston JC, Malik KM, Crombleholme TM, et al: Mirror syndrome: a novel approach to therapy with fetal peritoneal-amniotic shunt. Obstet Gynecol 110(2 Pt 2):540, 2007
Llurba E, Marsal G, Sanchez O, et al: Angiogenic and antiangiogenic factors before and after resolution of maternal mirror syndrome. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 40(3):367, 2012
Lockwood CJ, Nadel AS, King ME, et al: A 32-year old pregnant woman with an abnormal fetal ultrasound study. Case 16–2009. N Engl J Med 360(21):2225, 2009
MacKenzie IZ, Roseman F, Findlay J, et al: The kinetics of routine antenatal prophylactic intramuscular injections of polyclonal anti-D immunoglobulin. BJOG 113:97, 2006
Maisonneuve E, Dugas A, Friszer S, et al: Effect of intravenous immunoglobulins to postpone the gestational age of first intrauterine transfusion in very severe red blood cell alloimmunization: a case-control study. J Gynecol Obstet Hum Reprod 50(7):102119, 2021
Mari G, Deter RL, Carpenter RL, et al: Noninvasive diagnosis by Doppler ultrasonography of fetal anemia due to maternal red-cell alloimmunization. N Engl J Med 342:9, 2000
Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Sutton PD, et al: Births: final data for 2003. Natl Vital Stat Rep 54(2):1, 2005
Midgley DY, Hardrug K: The mirror syndrome. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 8:201, 2000
Mizuuchi M, Murotsuki J, Ishii K, et al: Nationwide survey of intrauterine blood transfusion for fetal anemia in Japan. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 47(6):2076, 2021
Moise KJ: Fetal anemia due to non-Rhesus-D red-cell alloimmunization. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 13(4):207, 2008
Moise KJ, Gandhi M, Boring NH, et al: Circulating cell-free DNA to determine the fetal RHD status in all three trimesters of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 128(6):1340, 2016
Nassr AA, Ness A, Hosseinzadeh P, et al: Outcome and treatment of antenatally diagnosed nonimmune hydrops fetalis. Fetal Diagn Ther 43(2):123, 2018
Neunert C, Lim W, Crowther M, et al: The American Society of Hematology 2011 evidence-based practice guideline for immune thrombocytopenia. Blood 117(16):4190, 2011
Nicolaides KH, Warenski JC, Rodeck CH: The relationship of fetal plasma protein concentration and hemoglobin level to the development of hydrops in rhesus isoimmunization. Am J Obstet Gynecol 152:341, 1985
Oepkes D, Seaward PG, Vandenbussche FP, et al: Doppler ultrasonography versus amniocentesis to predict fetal anemia. N Engl J Med 355:156, 2006
Pacheco LD, Berkowitz RL, Moise KJ, et al: Fetal and neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia. A management algorithm based on risk stratification. Obstet Gynecol 118(5):1157, 2011
Pazourkova E, Zednikova I, Korabecna M, et al: Optimization of diagnostic strategy for non-invasive cell-free foetal RHD determination from maternal plasma. Vox Sang March 24, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]
Pegoraro V, Urbinati D, Visser GHA, et al: Hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn due to Rh(D) incompatibility: a preventable disease that still produces significant morbidity and mortality in children. PLoS One 15(7):e0235807, 2020
Ratanasiri T, Komwilaisak R, Sittivech A, et al: Incidence, causes, and pregnancy outcomes of hydrops fetalis at Srinagarind Hospital, 1996–2005: a 10-year review. J Med Assoc Thai 92(5):594, 2009
Risson DC, Davies MW, Williams BA: Review of neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia. J Pediatr Child Health 48(9):816, 2012
Sandler SG, Flegel WA, Westhoff CM, et al: It's time to phase-in RHD genotyping for patients with a serological weak D phenotype. Transfusion 55(3):680, 2015
Sandler SG, Queenan JT: A guide to terminology for Rh immunoprophylaxis. Obstet Gynecol 130(3):633, 2017
Santo S, Mansour S, Thilaganathan B, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of non-immune hydrops fetalis: what do we tell the parents? Prenat Diagn 31:186, 2011
Sileo FG, Kulkarni A, Branescu I, et al: Non-immune fetal hydrops: etiology and outcome according to gestational age at diagnosis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 56(3):416, 2020
Slootweg YM, Lindenburg IT, Koelewijn JM, et al: Predicting anti-Kell-mediated hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn: diagnostic accuracy of laboratory management. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(4):393.e1, 2018
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Mari G, Norton ME, et al: Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM) Clinical Guideline #8: The fetus at risk for anemia—diagnosis and management. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(6):697, 2015a
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Norton ME, Chauhan SP, et al: Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM) Clinical Guideline #7: Nonimmune hydrops fetalis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(2):127, 2015b
Sohan K, Carroll SG, De La Fuente S, et al: Analysis of outcome in hydrops fetalis in relation to gestational age at diagnosis, cause, and treatment. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 80(8):726, 2001
Sparks TN, Lianoglou BR, Adami RR, et al: Exome sequencing for prenatal diagnosis in nonimmune hydrops fetalis. N Engl J Med 383(18):1746, 2020
Sparks TN, Thao K, Lianoglou BR, et al: Nonimmune hydrops fetalis: identifying the underlying genetic etiology. Genet Med 21(6):1339, 2019
Storry JR, Clausen FB, Castilho L, et al: International Society of Blood Transfusion Working Party on red cell immunogenics and blood group terminology: report of the Dubai, Copenhagen, and Toronto meetings. Vox Sang 114(1):95, 2019
Suwanrath-Kengpol C, Kor-anantakul O, Suntharasaj T, et al: Etiology and outcome of non-immune hydrops fetalis in southern Thailand. Gynecol Obstet Invest 59(3):134, 2005
Tannirandorn Y, Rodeck CH: New approaches in the treatment of haemolytic disease of the fetus. Ballieres Clin Haematol 3(2):289, 1990
Tiller H, Kamphuis MM, Flodmark O, et al: Fetal intracranial hemorrhages caused by fetal and neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia: an observational cohort study of 43 cases from an international multicentre registry. BMJ 3:e002490, 2013
Van den Veyver IB, Moise KJ: Fetal RhD typing by polymerase chain reaction in pregnancies complicated by rhesus alloimmunization. Obstet Gynecol 88:1061, 1996
Van Kamp IL, Klumper FJ, Bakkum RS, et al: The severity of immune fetal hydrops is predictive of fetal outcome after intrauterine treatment. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185:668, 2001
Weiner CP, Pelzer GD, Heilskov J, et al: The effect of intravascular transfusion on umbilical venous pressure in anemic fetuses with and without hydrops. Am J Obstet Gynecol 161:1498, 1989
Weinstein L: Irregular antibodies causing hemolytic disease of the newborn: a continuing problem. Clin Obstet Gynecol 25(2):321, 1982
Welsh KJ, Bai Y, Education Committee of the Academy of Clinical Laboratory Physicians and Scientists: pathology consultation on patients with a large Rh immune globulin dose requirement. Am J Clin Pathol 145:744, 2016
Winkelhorst D, Murphy MF, Greinacher A, et al: Antenatal management in fetal and neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia: a systematic review. Blood 129(11):1538, 2017
Woelfer B, Schuchter K, Janisiw M, et al: Postdelivery levels of anti-D IgG prophylaxis in mothers depend on maternal body weight. Transfusion 44:512, 2004

Wylie BJ, D'Alton ME: Fetomaternal hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 115(5): 1039, 2010

Wyszynski DF, Carmen WJ, Cantor AB, et al: Pregnancy and birth outcomes among women with idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. J Pregnancy 2016:8297407, 2016

Yeom W, Paik ES, An JJ, et al: Clinical characteristics and perinatal outcome of fetal hydrops. Obstet Gynecol Sci 58(2):90, 2015

Zimmerman R, Carpenter RJ Jr, Durig P, et al: Longitudinal measurement of peak systolic velocity in the fetal middle cerebral artery for monitoring pregnancies complicated by red cell alloimmunization: a prospective multicenter trial with intention-to-treat. BJOG 109(7):746, 2002

Zipursky A, Bhutani VK: Impact of Rhesus disease on the global problem of bilirubin-induced neurologic dysfunction. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 20(1):2, 2015

Zwiers C, Lindenburg IT, Klumper FJ, et al: Complications of intrauterine intravascular blood transfusion: lessons learned after 1678 procedures. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 50(2):180, 2017

Zwiers C, van der Bom JG, van Kamp IL, et al: Postponing early intrauterine transfusion with intravenous immunoglobulin treatment; the PETIT study on severe hemolytic disease of the fetus and newborn. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(3):291.e1, 2018

CHAPTER 19

Fetal Therapy

Innovative treatments developed during the past three decades have dramatically altered the course of selected fetal anomalies and conditions. Over time, fetal interventions have become less invasive, and the number of fetal centers has expanded. The North American Fetal Therapy Network now includes 36 medical centers in the United States and Canada. Some of the fetal abnormalities and conditions amenable to either medical or surgical treatment are presented here. The management of fetal anemia and thrombocytopenia is reviewed in Chapter 18, and treatment of some fetal infections is discussed in Chapters 67 and 68.

MEDICAL THERAPY

Selected medications administered to the pregnant woman are transported across the placenta in concentrations high enough to treat fetal conditions. Pregnancy physiology affects drug concentration, and transfer depends on maternal and placental metabolism (Chap. 8, p. 145).

Arrhythmias

Abnormal fetal cardiac rhythms are grouped into three categories: *tachyarrhythmias*, heart rates >180 beats per minute (bpm); *bradyarrhythmias*, heart rates <110 bpm; and ectopy, typically premature atrial contractions. If a fetal arrhythmia is suspected, M-mode ultrasound, described in Chapter 15 (p. 294), is used to measure the atrial and ventricular rates and to clarify the relationship between atrial and ventricular beats, thereby diagnosing the type of rhythm disturbance.

Premature Atrial Contractions

If the fetal heart rate is normal but the rhythm is irregular, the most common etiology is premature atrial contractions (PACs). These atrial ectopic beats are found in 1 to 2 percent of uncomplicated pregnancies (Hahurij, 2011; Strasburger, 2010). PACs represent immaturity of the cardiac conduction system. They typically resolve later in gestation or in the neonatal period. PACs are usually an isolated finding but may be associated with redundancy of the foramen ovale flap—formerly termed a foramen ovale aneurysm.

When a PAC is conducted, an extra beat is heard with handheld Doppler. However, the premature contraction more commonly arrives at the atrioventricular node during the refractory period. This results in a compensatory pause, which sounds like a dropped beat. M-mode evaluation confirms the diagnosis (Fig. 15-46, p. 295).

PACs may occur as frequently as every other beat, which means that the auscultated fetal heart rate may be as low as 60 to 80 bpm. Known as *blocked atrial bigeminy*, this condition is benign and does not require treatment (Strasburger, 2010). However, monitoring the fetus in labor may be challenging and necessitate cesarean delivery. M-mode ultrasound will differentiate atrial bigeminy from other causes of bradycardia, such as third-degree atrioventricular block.

Up to 2 percent of fetuses with PACs are later found to have *supraventricular tachycardia* (Copel, 2000; Srinivasan, 2008).

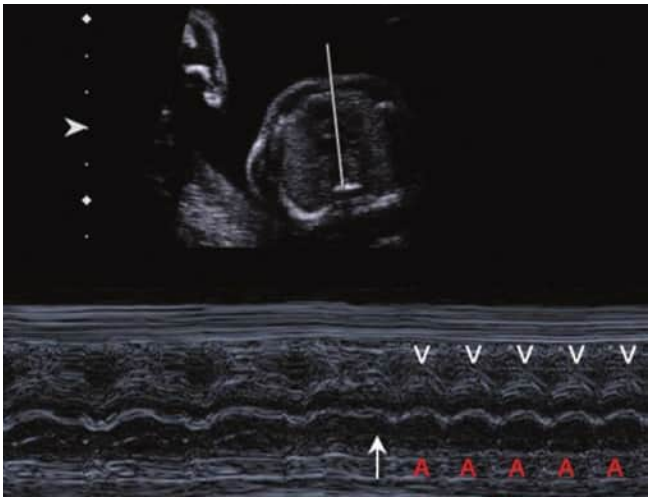


FIGURE 19-1 Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT). This M-mode image at 20 weeks' gestation demonstrates an initially normal fetal heartrate of 150 bpm. Midway through the image (*arrow*), the fetal heart rate suddenly increases to 240 bpm. With SVT, there is one atrial beat (*A*) for each ventricular beat (*V*).

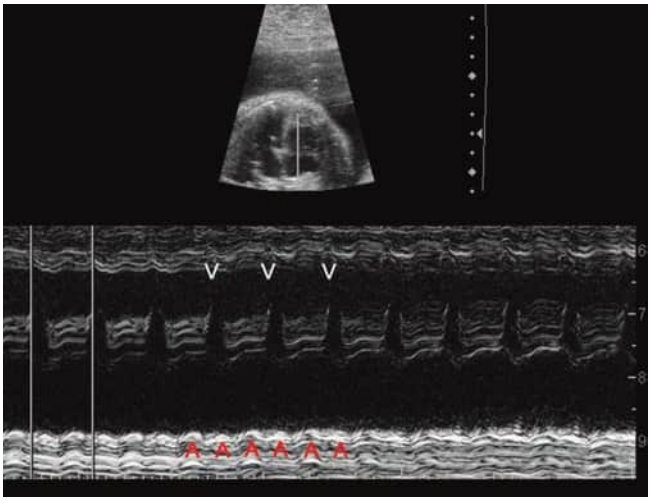


FIGURE 19-2 Atrial flutter. In this M-mode image at 32 weeks' gestation, calipers mark the ventricular rate, which is approximately 220 bpm. There are two atrial beats (*A*) for each ventricular beat (*V*), such that the atrial rate is approximately 440 bpm with 2:1 atrioventricular block.

Given the importance of prompt identification and treatment of supraventricular tachyarrhythmias, pregnancies with PACs are often monitored with fetal heart rate assessment every 1 to 2 weeks until the ectopy resolves. At Parkland Hospital, we find that auscultation with handheld Doppler is sufficient for surveillance.

Tachyarrhythmias

The two most common tachyarrhythmias are supraventricular tachycardia (SVT) and atrial flutter. SVT is characterized by an abrupt increase in the fetal heart rate to 180 to 300 bpm with 1:1 atrioventricular concordance (Fig. 19-1). The typical range is 200 to 240 bpm. SVT may develop secondary to an ectopic focus or to an accessory atrioventricular pathway leading to a reentrant tachycardia. Atrial flutter is characterized by a much higher atrial rate, generally 300 to 500 bpm, with varying degrees of atrioventricular block. As a result, the ventricular rate in a fetus with atrial flutter may range from below normal to approximately 250 bpm (Fig. 19-2). In contrast, fetal *sinus tachycardia* typically presents with a gradual heart rate rise to a rate that is only slightly above normal. With this, readily discernible causes may be maternal fever or hyperthyroidism, or rarely, fetal anemia or infection.

If a fetal tachyarrhythmia is identified, it is important to determine whether it is *sustained*—defined as present for at least 50 percent of the time. It may be necessary to monitor the fetal heart rate for 12 to 24 hours upon initial detection, and then periodically to reassess (Srinivasan, 2008). Unsustained or intermittent tachyarrhythmias may become sustained over time. Although intermittent tachyarrhythmias do not generally require treatment, close fetal surveillance is warranted.

Sustained fetal tachyarrhythmias with ventricular rates exceeding 200 bpm impair ventricular filling to a degree that the risks for developing cardiomyopathy and hydrops are significant. With atrial flutter, lack of coordinated atrioventricular contractions may further compound this risk. Maternal administration of antiarrhythmic agents that cross the placenta may convert the rhythm to normal or may lower the baseline heart rate to forestall heart failure. Therapy can require dosages at the upper end of the therapeutic adult range. Therefore, a maternal electrocardiogram is obtained before and during therapy. Monitoring of the maternal serum level may be necessary, particularly if the dosage requires titration. If medical therapy is successful, the medication is generally continued until delivery.

Antiarrhythmic medications most commonly used include digoxin, flecainide, and sotalol. Their selection depends on the type of tachyarrhythmia and provider experience with the drug. Traditionally, digoxin was the initial preferred treatment, but its placental transfer may be poor in the setting of hydrops. Many centers now use flecainide or sotalol as first-line therapy (Ekiz, 2018; van der Heijden, 2013). A second agent is needed in more than 50 percent of cases (Jaeggi, 2011; O'Leary, 2020; Shah, 2012). With treatment, conversion to a normal rhythm or reduction in heart rate to a normal range occurs in 90 percent, including 80 percent of those with hydrops (Miyoshi, 2019; Ueda, 2018). SVT is more likely than atrial flutter to convert to a normal rhythm. The neonatal survival rate exceeds 90 percent (Ekman-Joelsson, 2015; Miyoshi, 2019; O'Leary, 2020; van der Heijden, 2013).

Bradyarrhythmia

The most common etiology of fetal bradycardia is *congenital heart block*. Approximately 50 percent of cases occur in the setting of a structural cardiac abnormality involving the conduction system. These include *heterotaxy*, in particular *left-atrial isomerism*; *endocardial cushion defect*; and less commonly *corrected transposition of the great vessels* (Srinivasan, 2008). The prognosis of heart block from a structural cardiac anomaly is extremely poor, and fetal loss rates exceed 80 percent (Glatz, 2008; Strasburger, 2010).

In a structurally normal heart, 85 percent of atrioventricular block cases are caused by transplacental passage of maternal

anti-SSA/Ro or anti-SSB/La antibodies (Buyon, 2009). Many of these women have, or subsequently develop, systemic lupus erythematosus or other autoimmune disease (Chap. 62, p. 1113). The risk of third-degree heart block with Ro antibodies is small—only approximately 2 percent. However, the risk may reach 20 percent if a prior infant has been affected. Immune-mediated congenital heart block confers a mortality rate of nearly 20 percent, requires permanent pacing in two thirds of surviving children, and also poses a risk for cardiomyopathy (Brito-Zeron, 2015; Izmirly, 2011). If associated with effusions, bradyarrhythmias, or endocardial fibroelastosis, neonatal status may progressively worsen after birth.

Research has focused on maternal corticosteroid therapy to potentially reverse fetal heart block or to forestall it. In the PR Interval and Dexamethasone (PRIDE) study, a multicenter trial of pregnancies with anti-SSA/Ro antibodies, Friedman and colleagues (2008, 2009) performed weekly fetal echocardiography to assess for development of heart block. Fetal heart block was treated with maternal oral dexamethasone, 4 mg daily. Unfortunately, therapy did not prevent progression from second- to third-degree block, and third-degree atrioventricular block was *irreversible*. In rare cases, there was a potential benefit in reversing first-degree atrioventricular block. However, first-degree block did not generally progress even without treatment. Similarly, a subsequent review of pregnancies with isolated second- or third-degree fetal heart block found that dexamethasone therapy did not affect disease progression, need for pacemaker in the neonatal period, or overall survival rates (Izmirly, 2016). Despite considerable enthusiasm for corticosteroid treatment, a systematic review of more than 700 pregnancies with treated fetal heart block demonstrated no improvement in fetal or neonatal morbidity or mortality rates (Michael, 2019). Thus, we do not recommend dexamethasone use for this indication.

More recent efforts have turned to potential therapy with hydroxychloroquine (Plaquenil), a mainstay of treatment for systemic lupus erythematosus (Chap. 62, p. 1112). In a review of more than 250 women with prior affected children, early treatment with hydroxychloroquine was associated with a significant decrease in recurrence of congenital heart block (Izmirly, 2012). A subsequent clinical trial found that treatment with hydroxychloroquine was associated with a greater than 50-percent reduction in the rate of fetal heart block (Izmirly, 2020). In each of these series, fewer than 8 percent of children from pregnancies treated with hydroxychloroquine experienced heart block. Research in this area is ongoing.

Maternal terbutaline has also been given in small cohorts with either alloimmune- or heterotaxy-mediated fetal heart block in which the fetal heart rate is persistently below 56 bpm. The terbutaline dosage is titrated to a maternal heart rate of 95 to 115 bpm. Fetal heart rate increases of 5 to 10 bpm have been reported, but resolution of hydrops has not been consistently demonstrated (Cuneo, 2007, 2010).

■ Congenital Adrenal Hyperplasia

Several autosomal recessive enzyme deficiencies impair fetal synthesis of cortisol from cholesterol by the adrenal cortex, leading to congenital adrenal hyperplasia (CAH). CAH is the most common etiology of androgen excess in those with 46,XX disorders of sex development (Chap. 3, p. 38). Lack of cortisol stimulates adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) secretion by the anterior pituitary, overproduction of androstenedione and testosterone, and subsequent virilization of female fetuses. Sequelae may include formation of labioscrotal folds, persistence of a urogenital sinus, or even creation of a penile urethra and scrotal sac (Fig. 15-55, p. 299).

More than 90 percent of CAH cases are caused by 21-hydroxylase deficiency. There are two types: classic and nonclassic. The incidence of classic CAH approximates 1 in 15,000 births worldwide but is higher in selected populations. Among Yupik Eskimos, the reported incidence is 1 in 300 births (Nimkarn, 2016). Of those with classic CAH, 75 percent require postnatal treatment with mineralocorticoids and glucocorticoids to prevent a *salt-wasting adrenal crisis*, which is characterized by hyponatremia, dehydration, hypotension, and even cardiovascular collapse. The remaining 25 percent with classic CAH have the *simple virilizing type* and also require glucocorticoid supplementation. Nonclassic CAH may present with precocious pubarche, hirsutism, or infertility. However, affected individuals also may be asymptomatic. The prevalence of nonclassic CAH approximates 1 case per 200 Caucasians and Ashkenazi Jews in the United States (Hannah-Shmouni, 2017). As discussed in Chapter 32 (p.594), all states mandate newborn screening for CAH.

For more than three decades, dexamethasone has been administered to the pregnant woman to suppress fetal androgen overproduction and either obviate or ameliorate virilization of female fetuses (David, 1984; New, 2012). Prenatal corticosteroid therapy is successful in most cases if initiated early and taken consistently. One metaanalysis found that dexamethasone treatment was associated with reduced virilization. Specifically, the Prader score, which grades genital masculinization on a scale 1 to 5, improved by 2.3 grades (Fernandez-Balselis, 2010). The alternative is consideration of postnatal genitoplasty, which may include clitoroplasty, urogenital sinus surgery, and additional vaginoplasty procedures. In a recent review, 18 percent of children treated with feminizing genitoplasty experienced postoperative complications, and 12 percent required further surgery (Baskin, 2020).

The typical preventive regimen is oral dexamethasone given to the mother at a dosage of 20 μg/kg/d—up to 1.5 mg per day, divided in three doses. The critical period for external genitalia development is 7 to 12 weeks' gestation, and treatment to prevent virilization should be initiated by 9 weeks—*before it is known whether the fetus is* affected. Because this is an autosomal recessive condition, affected females make up only 1 in 8 at-risk conceptions.

Carrier parents are typically identified after the birth of an affected child. Molecular genetic testing is clinically available in such cases and initially uses sequence analysis of the *CYP21A2* gene, which encodes the 21-hydroxylase enzyme (Nimkarn, 2016). If this is uninformative, gene-targeted deletion/duplication analysis is performed, and additional testing such as whole exome sequencing may be considered (Chap. 16, p. 327).

A goal of prenatal diagnosis is to limit dexamethasone exposure in males and in unaffected females. If both parents

are determined to be carriers, prenatal molecular genetic testing may be performed on chorionic villi—at 10 to 12 weeks' gestation—or on amniocytes after 15 weeks. Determination of fetal gender using cell-free DNA (cfDNA) may aid in avoiding dexamethasone treatment. CfDNA sensitivity to detect Y-chromosome sequences is at least 95 percent when performed at or beyond 7 weeks (Devaney, 2011; Hill, 2011). In the research setting, effective cfDNA testing using hybridization probes flanking the *CYP21A2* gene has been reported as early as $5^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation (New, 2014).

Maternal treatment with dexamethasone has become controversial. The Endocrine Society recommends that treatment be given only in the context of research protocols (Speiser, 2018). It further recommends that such protocols incorporate cfDNA screening for the Y-chromosome to avoid treatment of male fetuses. Of note, if therapy is initiated shortly before 9 weeks' gestation, the dose of dexamethasone used is not considered to have significant teratogenic potential because organogenesis of major organs has already taken place (McCullough, 2010). Ongoing concerns focus on the potential effects of either excess *endogenous* androgens or excess *exogenous* dexamethasone on the developing brain. Although maternal dexamethasone has been used for many years to prevent virilization of female fetuses with CAH, long-term safety data are relatively limited.

Congenital Cystic Adenomatoid Malformation

This well-circumscribed lung mass may appear solid and echogenic or may have one or multiple variably sized cysts (Fig. 15-33, p. 288). Lesions with one or more cysts ≥5 mm are termed macrocystic, whereas solid lesions and those with smaller cysts are microcystic (Adzick, 1985). A small subset of microcystic congenital cystic adenomatoid malformations (CCAMs) may demonstrate rapid growth, generally between 18 and 26 weeks' gestation. The mass may become so large that it causes mediastinal shift, which may compromise cardiac output and venous return, leading to hydrops (Cavoretto, 2008).

A CCAM-volume ratio (CVR) has been used to quantify size and risk for hydrops in these severe cases (Crombleholme, 2002). This ratio is an estimate of the CCAM volume using the formula for a prolate ellipse (length × width × height × π/6) divided by the head circumference. In a series of 40 pregnancies with microcystic CCAM, the mean CVR was 0.5 at 20 weeks' gestation, peaked at 1.0 by 26 weeks, and then declined sharply before delivery (Macardle, 2016). With a CVR exceeding 1.6, the risk for hydrops is as high as 60 percent. However, if the initial CVR is below 1.6, CCAM growth resulting in hydrops develops in fewer than 2 percent of cases (Ehrenberg-Buchner, 2013; Peranteau, 2016).

A CVR threshold of 1.0 also may assist counseling. In a series of 62 pregnancies with fetal lung masses, a maximal CVR >1.0 was associated with a 75-percent likelihood that the neonate would be symptomatic (Ehrenberg-Buchner, 2013). However, no fetus with a CVR ≤1.0 subsequently required surgery in the newborn period.

If the CVR exceeds 1.6 or if signs of hydrops develop, corticosteroid treatment may be beneficial. Regimens include dexamethasone—6.25 mg every 12 hours for four doses, or betamethasone—12.5 mg intramuscularly every 24 hours for two doses. A single course of corticosteroids has been associated with resolution of hydrops in approximately 80 percent of cases, and 90 percent of treated fetuses survived (Loh, 2012; Peranteau, 2016). Multiple courses of corticosteroids—generally two—have been advocated for fetuses with large CCAM lesions and with persistent or worsening hydrops or ascites despite a single course of medication (Derderian, 2015; Peranteau, 2016). Therapy for macrocystic CCAM is discussed later.

Thyroid Disease

Identification of fetal thyroid disease is rare and is usually prompted by sonographic detection of a fetal goiter. If a goiter is identified, determination of fetal hyper- or hypothyroidism is essential, and thyroid hormone levels should be measured in amnionic fluid or fetal blood. Traditionally, fetal blood sampling was preferred to amniocentesis for guiding treatment, but data are limited (Abuhamad, 1995; Ribault, 2009). Performance of these procedures is discussed in Chapter 17 (p. 347). Goals of therapy are correction of the physiological abnormality and diminished goiter size. The goiter may compress the trachea and esophagus, leading to hydramnios from impaired swallowing. Despite this, case reports attest to lack of airway compromise and favorable outcomes (Blumenfeld, 2013; Machado, 2019).

Thyrotoxicosis

Maternal Graves disease may result in transplacental passage of immunoglobulin G (IgG) thyroid-stimulating antibodies. Untreated fetal thyrotoxicosis can present with goiter, tachycardia, growth restriction, hydramnios, accelerated bone maturation, and even heart failure and hydrops (Huel, 2009; Kiefer, 2017; Peleg, 2002; van Dijk, 2018). Fetal blood sampling may be considered to confirm the diagnosis (Duncombe, 2001; Srisupundit, 2008). Maternal administration of antithyroid medication may be needed, even if the woman has had prior surgery or ablation and no longer has hyperthyroidism. If the pregnant women develops hypothyroidism, she is treated with supplemental levothyroxine (Hui, 2011).

Hypothyroidism

In a woman receiving medication for Graves disease, transplacental passage of methimazole or propylthiouracil may cause *fetal hypothyroidism* (Bliddal, 2011). Other potential causes of fetal hypothyroidism resulting in goiter include transplacental passage of thyroid peroxidase antibodies, fetal thyroid dyshormonogenesis, and maternal consumption of iodine supplements (Agrawal, 2002; Hardley, 2018; Overcash, 2016).

Goitrous hypothyroidism may lead to hydramnios, neck hyperextension, and delayed bone maturation. Treatment with intraamnionic levothyroxine should be considered. Optimal dosage and frequency have not been established but have typically ranged from 150 to 500 μg every 1 to 4 weeks (Machado, 2019; Nemescu, 2020; Ribault, 2009). If the pregnant woman is receiving antithyroid medication, it is generally discontinued.

TABLE 19-1. Guiding Principles for Fetal Surgical Procedures

Accurate prenatal diagnosis for the defect is available, with staging if applicable
The defect appears isolated, with no evidence of other abnormality or underlying genetic syndrome that would significantly worsen survival or quality of life
The defect results in a high likelihood of death or irreversible organ destruction, and postnatal therapy is inadequate
The procedure is technically feasible, and a multidisciplinary team is in agreement regarding the treatment plan
Maternal risks from the procedure are well documented and considered acceptable
There is comprehensive parental counseling
It is recommended that there be an animal model for the defect and procedure

Data from Deprest, 2010; Harrison, 1982; Vrecenak, 2013; Walsh, 2011.

SURGICAL THERAPY

Fetal surgery, also called *maternal-fetal surgery*, is offered for selected congenital abnormalities in which the likelihood of deterioration during gestation is so great that delaying treatment until after delivery would risk fetal death or substantially greater postnatal morbidity. Fetal surgical procedures are highly specialized interventions performed at relatively few centers to treat a small number of fetal conditions. They require extensive preoperative counseling and multidisciplinary care. Principles for guiding case selection are listed in Table 19-1. When considering fetal surgery, the overriding concern is the safety of the mother and fetus. Accomplishing the fetal goals of the procedure is secondary (Walsh, 2011).

Selected abnormalities amenable to fetal surgical treatment are shown in Table 19-2. An overview of some of these procedures, their indications, and complications is provided here to assist with initial patient evaluation and counseling. Additional content is also found in *Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics*, 3rd edition.

Open Fetal Surgery

Fetal procedures are considered open if they are accomplished though a hysterotomy that is not performed for the purpose of delivery. Open procedures are performed under general endotracheal anesthesia to suppress uterine contractions and fetal responses. The hysterotomy is made with a stapling device, and intraoperative ultrasound is used to avoid the placental edge and to verify fetal position. The stapler seals the edges of the myometrium and membranes to achieve hemostasis and avoid chorioamnion separation. Warmed fluid is continuously infused into the uterus thorough a rapid infusion device to limit cord compression. The fetus is gently manipulated to facilitate exposure, to permit pulse oximetry monitoring, and to establish venous access in case fluids or blood are emergently needed. The surgical procedure is then performed, and the hysterotomy is closed. Prophylactic antibiotics are generally administered for 24 hours. Tocolysis typically includes intravenous magnesium sulfate for 24 hours and oral indomethacin for 48 hours. Cesarean delivery is needed later in gestation and for all future deliveries.

Risks

Open fetal surgery entails significant maternal and fetal risks. The most recent data are from studies of fetal myelomeningocele

TABLE 19-2. Selected Fetal and Placental Abnormalities Amenable to In-Utero Procedures

Open Fetal Surgery
Congenital cystic adenomatoid malformation (CCAM)
Myelomeningocele
Pulmonary sequestration
Sacrococcygeal teratoma
Fetoscopic Surgery
Amnionic band sequence: band release
Congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH): fetal endoscopic tracheal occlusion (FETO)
Congenital high airway obstruction sequence (CHAOS): vocal cord laser
Myelomeningocele
Posterior urethral valves: cystoscopic laser
Twin-twin transfusion: laser of placental anastomoses
Percutaneous Procedures
Cardiac catheter procedures
Aortic or pulmonic valvuloplasty for stenosis
Atrial septoplasty for hypoplastic left heart with restrictive atrial septum
Radiofrequency ablation
Twin reversed arterial perfusion (TRAP) sequence
Monochorionic twins with severe anomaly in one twin
Chorioangioma
Shunt therapy
Dominant cyst in CCAM
Thoracoamnionic shunt for pleural effusion
Vesicoamnionic shunt for bladder outlet obstruction
Ex-Utero Intrapartum Treatment (EXIT) Procedures
CDH after FETO
CHAOS
EXIT-to-extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO): CDH
EXIT-to-resection: resection of fetal thoracic or mediastinal mass
Micrognathia
Neck or airway tumors

Procedures are listed alphabetically within groupings.

TABLE 19-3. Benefits and Risks of Fetal Myelomeningocele Surgery versus Postnatal Repair

	Fetal Surgery (n = 78)	Postnatal Surgery (n = 80)	*p* value
Benefits (Primary Outcomes)			
Perinatal death or shunt by 12 months[a]	68%	98%	<0.001
Shunt placement by 12 months	40%	82%	<0.001
Composite developmental score[a,b]	149 ± 58	123 ± 57	0.007
Hindbrain herniation (any)	64%	96%	<0.001
Brainstem kinking (any)	20%	48%	<0.001
Independent walking (30 months)	42%	21%	0.01
Risks			
Maternal pulmonary edema	6%	0	0.03
Placental abruption	6%	0	0.03
Maternal transfusion at delivery	9%	1%	0.03
Oligohydramnios	21%	4%	0.001
Gestational age at delivery	34 ± 3	37 ± 1	<0.001
Preterm birth			
<37 weeks	79%	15%	<0.001
<35 weeks	46%	5%	
<30 weeks	13%	0	

[a]Each primary outcome had two components. The perinatal death components of the primary outcomes as well as the Bayley Mental Development Index at 30 months did not differ between the two study cohorts.
[b]Score derived from Bayley Mental Development Index and difference between functional and anatomical level of lesion (30 months).
Data from Adzick, 2011.

repair, which is the most commonly performed procedure. Morbidities identified in the Management of Myelomeningocele Study (MOMS) are shown in Table 19-3 (Adzick, 2011). In a review of 26 open fetal myelomeningocele cases, 15 percent experienced preterm rupture of membranes, and the mean gestational age at delivery was 35 weeks (Pruthi, 2021). Other potential risks include maternal sepsis and fetal death during or following the procedure, particularly if hydrops is present. Wilson and associates (2010) reviewed subsequent pregnancy outcomes following open fetal surgery and reported that 14 percent of women experienced uterine rupture and 14 percent had uterine dehiscence.

Myelomeningocele Surgery

Fetal myelomeningocele is the first nonlethal birth defect for which in-utero repair has been offered (Fig. 19-3). Following standard postnatal myelomeningocele repair, affected children experience varying degrees of paralysis, bladder and bowel dysfunction, developmental delays, and brainstem dysfunction from the Arnold-Chiari II malformation (Chap. 15, p. 277). Damage is postulated to result from abnormal embryonic neurulation followed by exposure of neural elements to amnionic fluid throughout pregnancy (Adzick, 2010; Meuli, 1995, 1997).

In the landmark MOMS trial, Adzick and colleagues (2011) randomized 183 pregnancies to prenatal or standard postnatal myelomeningocele repair at three centers. Criteria for trial participation included: (1) a singleton fetus at 19.0 to 25.9 weeks' gestation; (2) an upper myelomeningocele boundary between T_1 and S_1 confirmed by magnetic resonance imaging; (3) evidence of hindbrain herniation; and (4) a normal karyotype and no evidence of a fetal anomaly unrelated to the myelomeningocele. Women at risk for preterm birth or placental abruption, those with a contraindication to fetal surgery, and women with body mass index (BMI) >35 kg/m^2 were excluded.

The MOMS trial demonstrated improved early childhood outcomes in the prenatal surgery cohort (see Table 19-3). Children who had undergone fetal surgery were twice as likely to walk independently by 30 months. They had significantly less hindbrain herniation and were only half as likely to undergo ventriculoperitoneal shunting by age 1 year. A primary outcome was a composite score that was derived from the Bayley Mental Development Index and from the difference between the functional and anatomical level of the lesion at 30 months. This primary outcome was also significantly better in the prenatal surgery group.

Despite these benefits, *most* children who received fetal surgery were not able to ambulate independently, and nearly 30 percent were not able to ambulate at all. Prenatal surgery did not confer improvements in fetal or neonatal death rates or in the Bayley Mental Development Index score at age 30 months. Prenatal surgery was also associated with a small risk for placental abruption and maternal pulmonary edema. Moreover, nearly half were delivered before 34 weeks,

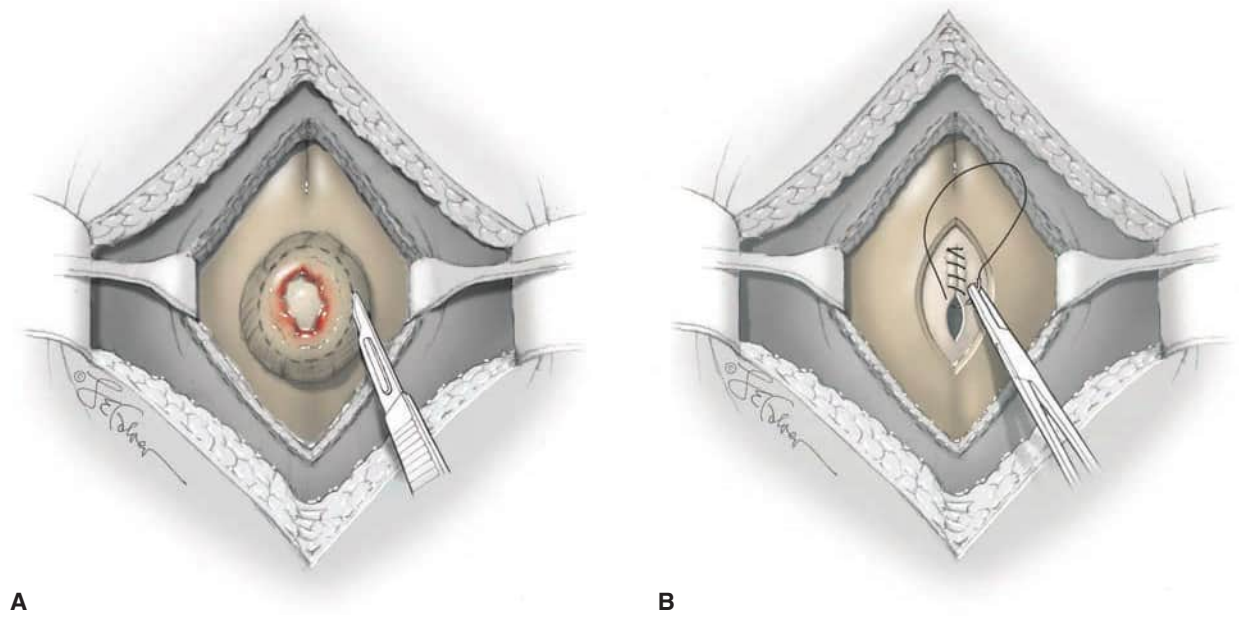


FIGURE 19-3 Fetal myelomeningocele surgery. **A.** With the edges of both the laparotomy and hysterotomy incisions retracted, the skin around the defect is incised. Subsequently, the neural placode is sharply dissected from the arachnoid membrane. **B.** The dural membrane is reflected to the midline to cover the neural placode and is reapproximated using suture. In some cases a patch is needed (not shown). The fetal skin incision is subsequently sutured. Last, hysterotomy and laparotomy are then closed. (Figures 19-3, 19-4, 19-6, and 19-8: Reproduced with permission from Shamshirsaz AA, Ramin, SM, Belfort MA: Fetal therapy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2017.)

which significantly increased the risk for respiratory distress syndrome (Adzick, 2011).

It is the position of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) that nondirective counseling include the option of fetal surgery for all pregnancies that meet MOMS trial criteria. Study of fetal myelomeningocele repair in women with BMI up to 40 kg/m^2 has demonstrated outcomes similar to those in women of lower BMI (Hilton, 2019; Moldenhauer, 2020). Otherwise, MOMS trial criteria are strictly followed. Outcomes of children aged 6 to 10 years who previously participated in the MOMs trial are now available (Houtrow, 2020). Fetal surgery conferred a sustained benefit in the likelihood of independent ambulation. Nearly 30 percent of children were able to ambulate independently, and approximately 50 percent required ventriculoperitoneal shunt placement. Overall cognitive function was similar between cohorts (Houtrow, 2020).

Thoracic Masses

Open fetal surgery is rarely performed for thoracic masses. Most are small, and these have a good prognosis. Large CCAMs are often treated medically with a course of corticosteroids (p. 370). A dominant cyst in a CCAM may be amenable to drainage or shunt placement (p. 376). Similarly, an isolated pleural effusion surrounding a pulmonary sequestration may be amenable to drainage or shunt placement.

Fetal surgery is generally reserved for pregnancies prior to 32 weeks' gestation in which there is a large, solid-appearing or microcystic mass and hydrops is developing. In carefully selected cases, the survival rate following open lobectomy approximates 60 percent (Vrecenak, 2013). Use of the ex-utero intrapartum treatment procedure in the treatment of fetal lung masses at delivery is discussed later.

Sacrococcygeal Teratoma

The perinatal mortality rate for cases of sacrococcygeal teratoma diagnosed prenatally is 20 to 40 percent (Hedrick, 2004; Shue, 2013, Simonini, 2021). Poor prognostic factors include a solid component constituting more than 50 percent of the tumor mass and a tumor volume-to-fetal weight ratio exceeding 12 percent prior to 24 weeks' gestation (Akinkuotu, 2015). Hydramnios is common, and hydrops may develop from high-output cardiac failure, either as a consequence of tumor vascularity or secondary to bleeding within the tumor and resulting anemia. Fetal loss rates approach 100 percent in such cases. *Mirror syndrome*—maternal preeclampsia developing along with fetal hydrops—may occur in this setting (Chap. 18, p. 364).

Open fetal surgery is considered only if the tumor is completely external and high cardiac output with early hydrops has developed in the second trimester (Vrecenak, 2013). However, given the poor prognosis, rapid growth beyond 27 weeks often prompts early delivery and postnatal resection rather than open fetal surgery (Baumgarten, 2019).

■ Fetoscopic Surgery

As with open fetal surgeries, these procedures are performed at highly specialized centers. Fetoscopy is performed with fiberoptic endoscopes that measure 1 to 2 mm in diameter. Instruments such as lasers fit through a 3- to 5-mm cannula

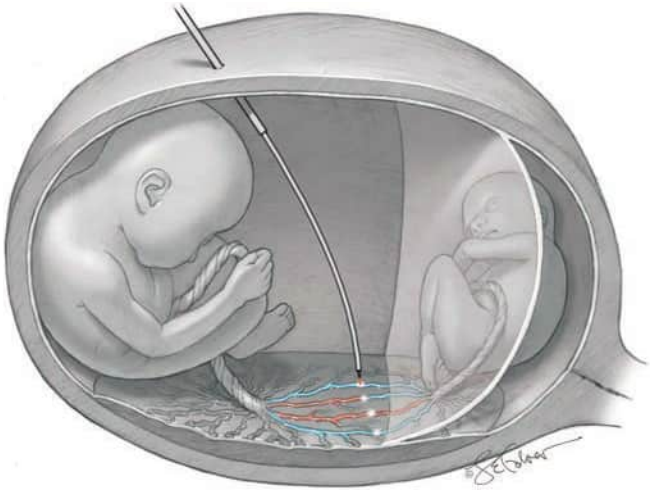


FIGURE 19-4 Selective laser photocoagulation for twin-twin transfusion syndrome. The fetoscope is inserted into the recipient-twin sac and positioned over the vascular equator, which lies in between the two placental cord insertion sites. Arteriovenous anastomoses along the placental surface are individually photocoagulated using the laser. (Reproduced with permission from Shamshirsaz AA, Ramin, SM, Belfort MA: Fetal therapy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

that surrounds the endoscope. Not all fetoscopic procedures involve placing the instruments through the maternal anterior abdominal wall. In some cases, laparotomy facilitates optimal placement and maneuvering of the instruments or positioning of the fetus. Examples of conditions treated by fetoscopy are listed in Table 19-2.

Twin-Twin Transfusion Syndrome

As discussed in Chapter 48 (p. 849), fetoscopic laser ablation of placental anastomoses is the preferred management for severe twin-twin transfusion syndrome (TTTS). It is generally performed between 16 and 26 weeks' gestation for monochorionic-diamnionic twin pregnancies with stage II to stage IV TTTS (Quintero, 1999; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2013).

A fetoscope inserted into the sac of the recipient twin is used to image the *vascular equator*. The vascular equator separates the placental cotyledons that supply each twin (Fig. 19-4). *Selective laser photocoagulation* involves individually coagulating anastomoses that cross between the twins (Ville, 1995). Arteriovenous anastomoses along the placental surface of the equator are visualized with the fetoscope and then photocoagulated using a 600-μm diameter diode laser or a 400-μm neodymium:yttrium-aluminum-garnet (Nd:YAG) laser (Fig. 19-5). The procedure is typically performed under epidural analgesia. At the end, amnioreduction is performed to decrease the single deepest pocket of amnionic fluid to below 5 cm, and antibiotics are injected into the amnionic cavity.

Unfortunately, residual anastomoses remain in up to a third of cases and may lead to TTTS recurrence or to the development of twin anemia-polycythemia sequence (TAPS). The latter is a feto-fetal transfusion characterized by large differences in hemoglobin concentrations between a pair of monochorionic twins. With the *Solomon technique*, immediately after selective photocoagulation, the laser is used to coagulate the entire vascular equator from one edge of the placenta to the other (Slaghekke, 2014a). Placental dye-injection studies confirm a significant reduction in the number of residual anastomoses following this procedure (Ruano, 2013; Slaghekke, 2014b).

Families should have reasonable expectations of procedural success and potential complications. Without treatment, the perinatal mortality rate for severe TTTS is 70 to 100 percent. Following laser therapy, the perinatal mortality rate approximates 30 to 50 percent, and the risk for long-term neurological handicap is 5 to 20 percent (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2013). One series reported a double-twin survival rate of nearly 70 percent and survival of at least one twin in more than 90 percent of cases (Diehl, 2017). Ischemic fetal brain lesions have been identified in 2 percent of those treated by laser and include cystic periventricular leukomalacia and grade III or IV interventricular hemorrhage (Stirnemann, 2018).

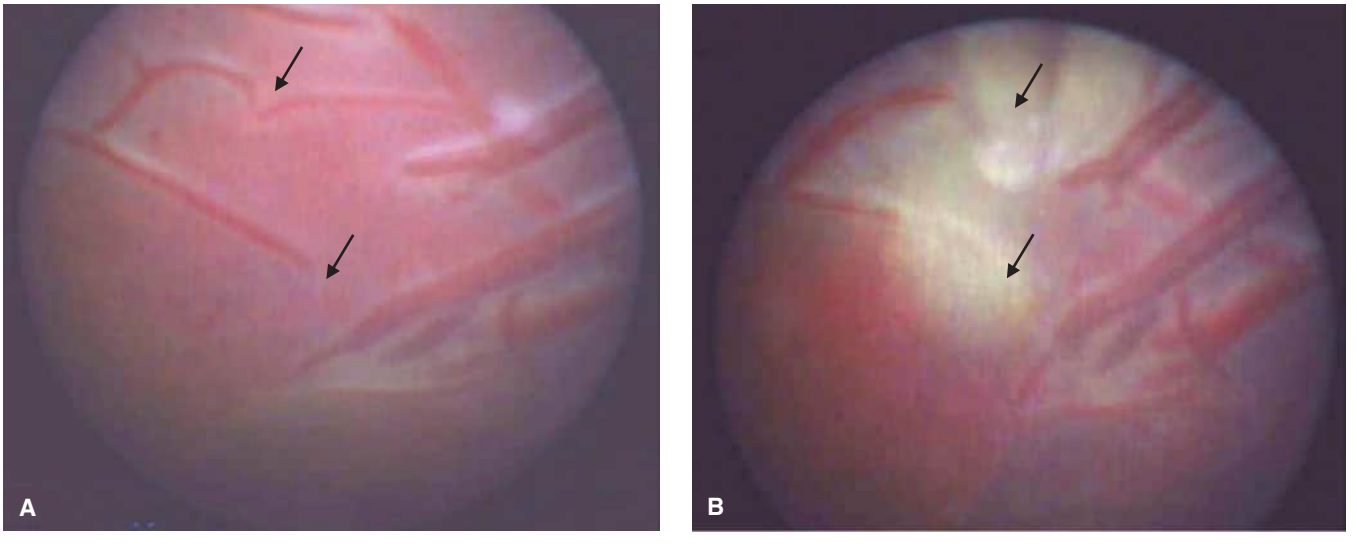


FIGURE 19-5 Fetoscopic photograph of laser photocoagulation for twin-twin transfusion syndrome. **A.** Vascular anastomoses (*arrows*) are shown before photocoagulation is performed. **B.** The ablation sites appear as blanched yellow-white areas (*arrows*). (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Timothy M. Crombleholme.)

Cerebral palsy has been reported in 5 percent of surviving children (Schou, 2019).

Procedure-related complications include preterm prelabor ruptured membranes in up to 25 percent, placental abruption in 8 percent, vascular laceration in 3 percent, and amnionic band syndrome resulting from laser laceration of the membranes in 3 percent. Additionally, TAPS complicates 16 percent of pregnancies treated with selective laser photocoagulation and 3 percent treated with the Solomon technique (Habli, 2009; Robyr, 2006; Slaghekke, 2014b). The majority of laser-treated TTTS pregnancies deliver before 34 weeks' gestation (Akkermans, 2015).

Congenital Diaphragmatic Hernia

Early attempts to treat congenital diaphragmatic hernia (CDH) used open fetal surgery to reposition the liver into the abdomen. This unfortunately kinked the umbilical vein and led to fetal demise (Harrison, 1993). Knowledge that lungs normally produce fluid and that fetuses with upper airway obstruction develop pulmonary hyperplasia formed the rationale for tracheal occlusion. The idea was to "plug the lung until it grows" (Hedrick, 1994). Initial efforts focused on occluding the trachea with an external clip (Harrison, 1993). Subsequently, a detachable silicone or latex balloon was placed within the trachea endoscopically and inflated with normal saline (Fig. 19-6). This procedure, *fetoscopic tracheal occlusion (FETO)*, is offered to selected pregnancies with isolated CDH in which the prognosis is otherwise poor based on the degree of fetal liver herniation.

FETO uses a 3-mm operating sheath and fetoscopes as small as 1 mm (Van der Veeken, 2018). The procedure is generally performed between 26 and 30 weeks' gestation. The balloon is removed after 6 weeks or at approximately 34 weeks, either through a second fetoscopic procedure or by ultrasound-guided puncture (Baschat, 2020). Fetal lamb research demonstrated that without balloon removal, the number of type II pneumocytes was markedly reduced, but that balloon removal normalized type II pneumocyte density (Flageole, 1998). Because the procedure is performed fetoscopically, vaginal delivery is not contraindicated.

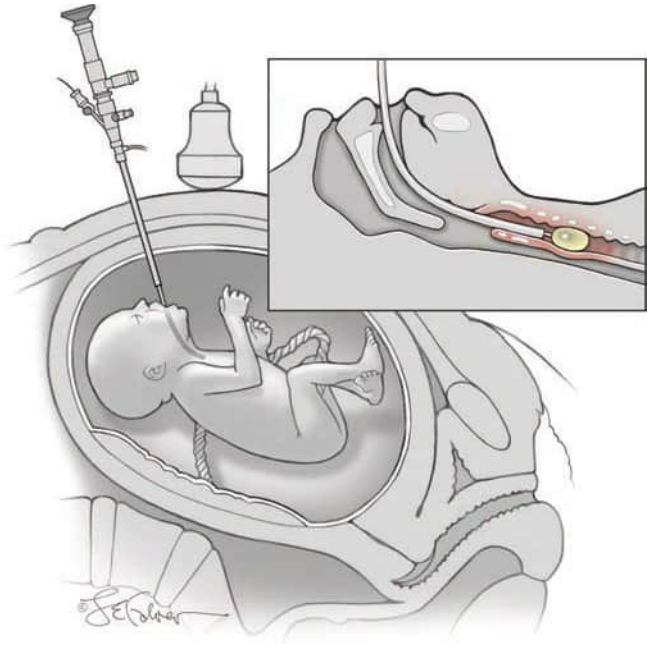


FIGURE 19-6 Fetoscopic tracheal occlusion (FETO). The endoscope enters the fetal oropharynx and advances down the trachea. Inset: The balloon is inflated to occlude the trachea, and then the endoscope is removed. (Reproduced with permission from Shamshirsaz AA, Ramin, SM, Belfort MA: Fetal therapy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

In 2003, a randomized trial of the FETO procedure in pregnancies with isolated CDH, liver herniation, and lung-to-head ratio <1.4 did not identify a benefit from fetal therapy (Harrison, 2003). Survival rates 90 days after birth were unexpectedly high—75 percent—in both groups. Therefore, the lung-to-head threshold was lowered and adjusted for gestational age in an effort to improve prediction. In a metaanalysis of more than 200 pregnancies, treatment with FETO was associated with a 13-fold improvement in survival rates (Al-Maary, 2016). FETO has also been associated with improved survival rates in right-sided CDH (Russo, 2021). Although study outcomes are promising, this procedure is currently available in the United States only through a research protocol.

Lung-to-Head Ratio. This imaging index was developed to improve prediction of survival in fetuses with isolated left-sided CDH diagnosed before 25 weeks' gestation (Metkus, 1996). The lung-to-head ratio (LHR) is a semi-quantitative estimate of the right lung area divided by the head circumference. Investigators found that the neonatal survival rate was 100 percent if the LHR was >1.35 and that there were no survivors if the LHR was <0.6 (Metkus, 1996). Nearly three fourths of pregnancies had values between 0.6 and 1.35, and prediction was difficult in this group because the overall survival rate approximated 60 percent.

Modifications to the LHR have been developed in an effort to improve prediction. Jani and colleagues (2007) derived an observed-to-expected (O/E) LHR nomogram to account for differential growth of the head and torso across gestation. Lung area has been measured in 3 different ways: (1) by tracing the lung circumference, (2) by multiplying the longest diameter of the lung with its longest perpendicular diameter, and (3) by multiplying the anterior-posterior diameter of the lung at the mid-clavicular line by the perpendicular diameter at its midpoint (Jani, 2012). The North American Fetal Therapy Network found that reproducibility of the O/E LHR was highest when the lung circumference was traced, but that overall interrater agreement was lower than anticipated (Abbasi, 2019).

Fetoscopic Myelomeningocele Repair

After publication of the MOMS trial findings, research efforts focused on whether maternal morbidities associated with open fetal myelomeningocele repair might be mitigated if the procedure were accomplished fetoscopically. Araujo Junior and associates (2016) conducted a systematic review that included 456 open cases and 84 fetoscopic surgeries. The endoscopic procedures were generally performed by inserting instruments through the maternal abdominal wall and then through the uterine wall, with partial carbon dioxide insufflation of the

uterus. The rate of maternal myometrial dehiscence or attenuation was only 1 percent following endoscopy compared with 26 percent following open procedures. However, fetoscopy was associated with significantly higher rates of preterm delivery before 34 weeks—80 versus 45 percent, and of perinatal mortality—14 versus 5 percent.

More recently, investigators have performed fetoscopic myelomeningocele repair but used laparotomy and exteriorization of the uterus (Belfort 2017). The proportion of infants requiring ventriculoperitoneal shunts before age 1 year—approximately 40 percent—was similar to that with open fetal surgery in the MOMS trial (Adzick, 2011; Belfort, 2017). In one series of 34 pregnancies treated with open fetoscopic myelomeningocele repair, the median gestational age at delivery was 38 weeks, and 50 percent delivered vaginally (Kohn, 2018). Research is ongoing in this area.

Percutaneous Procedures

These procedures are performed using a shunt, angioplasty catheter, radiofrequency ablation needle, or bipolar cautery. Under ultrasound guidance, instruments are inserted through the maternal abdominal wall, uterine wall, and membranes to reach the amnionic cavity and fetus. Risks may include preterm labor, preterm prelabor ruptured membranes, placental abruption, maternal infection, and fetal injury or loss.

Thoracic Shunts

These shunts drain fetal pleural fluid into the amnionic cavity (Fig. 19-7). A large effusion may result in pulmonary hypoplasia or may cause mediastinal shift that is severe enough to result in hydrops. The most common etiology of a primary effusion is *chylothorax*, which is caused by lymphatic obstruction. Chylothorax is diagnosed if a cell count performed on the pleural fluid demonstrates that more than 80 percent of the cells are lymphocytes, and there is no evidence of infection. Pleural effusions may also form secondary to congenital viral infection or aneuploidy, or they may be associated with a malformation such as a *pulmonary sequestration*. Yinon and associates (2010) reported aneuploidy in approximately 5 percent and associated anomalies in 10 percent of cases.

Typically, the effusion is first drained using a 22-gauge needle. The fluid may be sent for chromosomal microarray analysis, infection studies, and a cell count. If the effusion recurs, a double-pigtail shunt is placed through the fetal chest wall using a trocar and cannula. For a right-sided effusion, the shunt is placed in the lower third of the chest to permit maximum expansion of the lung. If left-sided, the shunt is placed along the upper axillary line to allow the heart to return to normal position. The overall survival rate is 70 percent, and that for hydropic fetuses approximates 50 percent (Mann, 2010; Yinon, 2010). We recommend weekly surveillance following shunt placement because displacement into the amnionic cavity is common. At time of delivery, the shunt must be clamped immediately to avoid neonatal pneumothorax.

A shunt may also be used drain a dominant cyst in a fetus with *macrocystic CCAM* (Fig. 15-33, p. 288). Only rarely are such cysts large enough to confer risk for hydrops or pulmonary hypoplasia. Shunt placement may improve the survival rate to 90 percent in those without hydrops and to at least 75 percent if hydrops has developed (Litwinska, 2017).

Urinary Shunts

Vesicoamnionic shunts are offered in selected cases of fetal bladder-outlet obstruction in which the amnionic fluid volume is severely diminished. Lower urinary tract obstruction

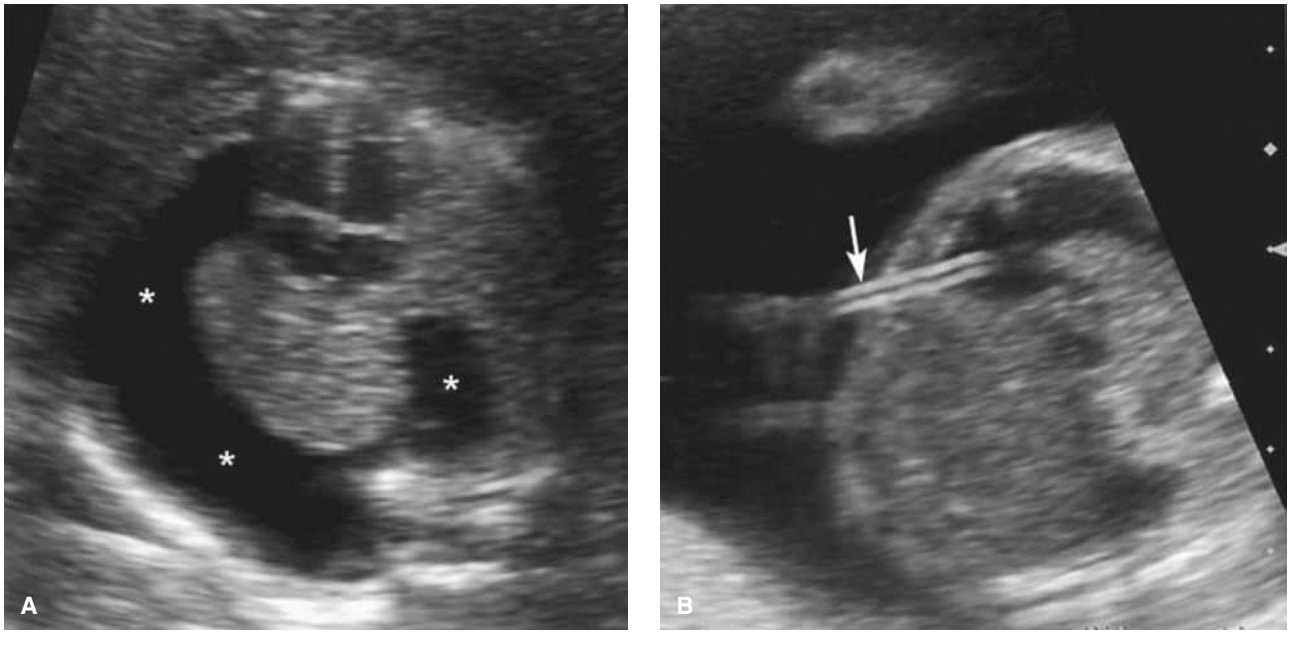


FIGURE 19-7 Thoracoamnionic shunt placement. **A.** A large, right-sided fetal pleural effusion (*asterisks*) and ascites were identified at 18 weeks' gestation. The effusion was drained but rapidly reaccumulated. The xanthochromic fluid contained 95-percent lymphocytes, consistent with chylothorax. **B.** A double-pigtail shunt (*arrow*) was inserted under ultrasound guidance. Following shunt placement, the effusion and ascites resolved.

TABLE 19-4. Fetal Urinary Analyte Values with Bladder Outlet Obstruction

Analyte	Good Prognosis	Poor Prognosis
Sodium	<90 mmol/L	>100 mmol/L
Chloride	<80 mmol/L	>90 mmol/L
Calcium	<7 mg/dL	>8 mg/dL
Osmolality	<180 mmol/L	>200 mmol/L
β_2-Microglobulin	<6 mg/L	>10 mg/L
Total protein	<20 mg/dL	>40 mg/dL

Good or poor prognosis is based on values from serial vesicocentesis performed between 18 and 22 weeks' gestation, using the last specimen obtained.
Data from Mann, 2010.

(LUTO) occurs more often in male fetuses. It is most commonly caused by posterior urethral valves but may be due to anterior urethral valves, urethral atresia or stenosis, or prune belly syndrome, which is also called Eagle-Barrett syndrome. Cases in females may be associated with complex cloacal abnormalities or the megacystis-microcolon syndrome. Ultrasound findings include dilation of the bladder and proximal urethra, termed the "keyhole" sign, along with bladder wall thickening (Fig. 15-61, p. 301). Associated oligohydramnios before midpregnancy leads to pulmonary hypoplasia. Unfortunately, postnatal renal function may be poor even when amnionic fluid volume is normal.

Evaluation includes a careful search for associated anomalies, which may occur in 40 percent of cases, and for aneuploidy, which has been reported in 5 to 8 percent (Hayden, 1988; Hobbins, 1984; Mann, 2010). Potential candidates for therapy are fetuses without other severe anomalies or genetic syndromes. Therapy is generally offered only if the fetus is male because the underlying anomaly tends to be even more severe in females. Serial bladder drainage—vesicocentesis—performed under ultrasound guidance at approximately 48-hour intervals is used to evaluate fetal urine electrolyte and protein content. Fetal urine is normally hypotonic due to tubular resorption of sodium and chloride, whereas isotonic urine in the setting of obstruction suggests renal tubular damage. Serial assessment has been used to guide candidate selection for therapy (Table 19-4). Chromosomal microarray analysis also may be performed on fetal urine.

Vesicoamnionic shunt placement allows urine to drain from the bladder into the amnionic cavity (Fig. 19-8). While this may prevent pulmonary hypoplasia, it does not reliably preserve renal function, particularly if cortical cysts are visible sonographically (Ruano, 2017). Warmed lactated Ringer solution is first infused into the amniotic cavity. Amnioinfusion improves ultrasound visualization, thereby facilitating evaluation of fetal anatomy and shunt placement. A small trocar and cannula are then inserted into the fetal bladder. A double-pigtail catheter is used, and the shunt is placed as caudal as possible within the bladder to avoid dislodgement after bladder decompression.

Complications include displacement of the shunt out of the fetal bladder in up to 40 percent of cases, urinary ascites in approximately 20 percent, and even development of bowel herniation through the abdominal wall defect—gastroschisis—in up to 10 percent (Freedman, 2000; Mann, 2010). Preterm delivery is common, and reported neonatal survival rates range from 50 to 90 percent (Biard, 2005; Walsh, 2011). A third of

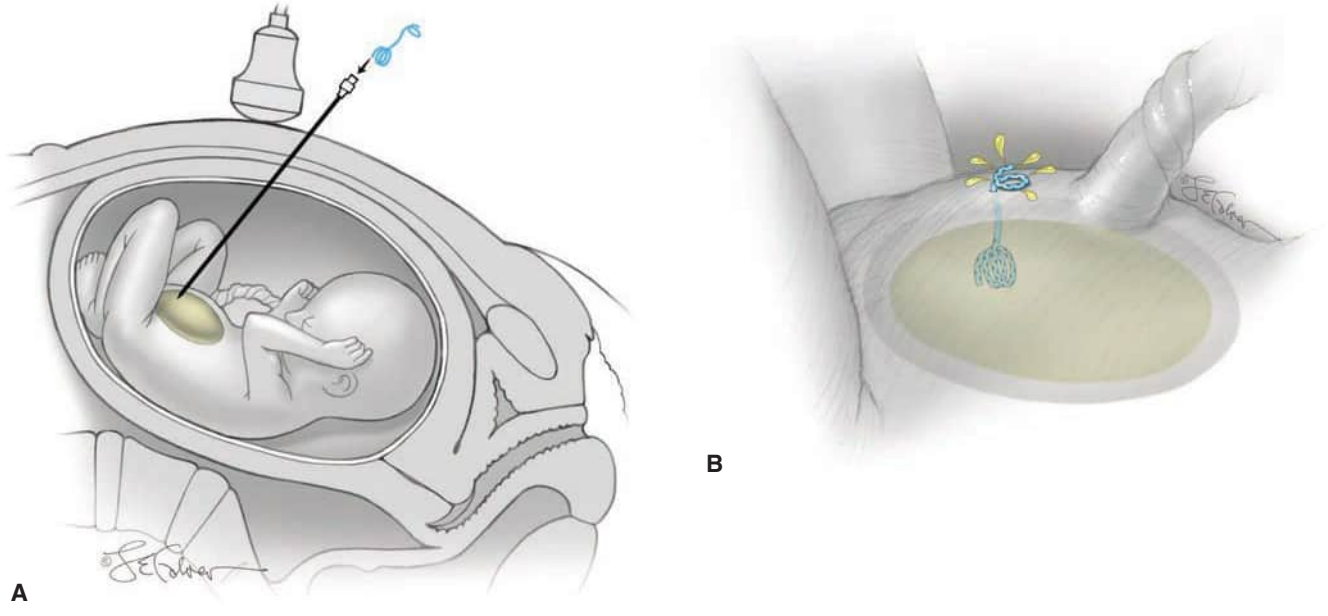


FIGURE 19-8 Vesicoamnionic shunt placement. **A.** After amnioinfusion is performed, a trocar is inserted into the distended fetal bladder under sonographic guidance. The pigtail catheter is threaded into the trocar. **B.** The double-pigtail shunt has been deployed down the trocar, and the trocar has been removed. The distal end of the shunt is coiled within the fetal bladder, and the proximal end is draining into the amnionic cavity. (Reproduced with permission from Shamshirsaz AA, Ramin, SM, Belfort MA: Fetal therapy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

surviving children have required dialysis or renal transplantation, and almost half have respiratory problems (Biard, 2005). In a randomized trial comparing vesicoamnionic shunt with conservative management in 31 cases, those receiving shunts had higher survival rates. However, only two children had normal renal function at age 2 years (Morris, 2013). Similarly, a metaanalysis of LUTO studies performed between 1990 and 2015 found that vesicoamnionic shunt conferred perinatal survival benefit but no improvement in renal function or survival at age 2 years (Nassr, 2017).

Radiofrequency Ablation

With this procedure, high-frequency alternating current is used to coagulate and desiccate tissue. Radiofrequency ablation (RFA) is the favored modality for treatment of *twin reversed arterial perfusion (TRAP) sequence*, also known as *acardiac twin* (Chap. 48, p. 850). Without treatment, the mortality rate for the normal or pump twin in severe TRAP sequence exceeds 50 percent. The procedure is also used for selective termination with other monochorionic twin complications.

Under ultrasound guidance, a 17- to 19-gauge RFA needle is directed into the base of the umbilical cord within the abdomen of the acardiac twin, and a 2-cm area of coagulation is achieved. Color Doppler is used to verify absent flow into the acardius. The procedure is generally performed at 20 weeks' gestation. The neonatal survival rate of the normal or pump twin approximates 85 percent (Cabassa, 2013; Lee, 2013; Wagata, 2016). Risks are higher for monoamnionic twin pregnancies, in whom the survival rate is only 67 percent (Sugibayashi, 2016). The most common complications are preterm prelabor ruptured membranes and preterm birth.

RFA has generally been offered for TRAP sequence when the volume of the acardiac twin is large. In a series from the North American Fetal Therapy Network, the median size of the acardius relative to the pump twin was 90 percent (Lee, 2013). Considering procedure-related risks, expectant management with close fetal surveillance is often considered if the estimated weight of the acardius is below 50 percent of the estimated weight of the pump twin (Jelin, 2010).

Intracardiac Catheter Procedures

Selected fetal cardiac lesions may worsen during gestation, further complicating and even limiting options for postnatal repair. Severe narrowing of a cardiac outflow tract may result in progressive myocardial damage in utero, and a goal of fetal intervention is to permit muscle growth and preserve ventricular function. These innovative procedures include *aortic valvuloplasty* for critical aortic stenosis; *atrial septoplasty* for hypoplastic left heart syndrome with intact interatrial septum; and *pulmonary valvuloplasty* for pulmonary atresia with intact interventricular septum.

Fetal aortic valvuloplasty is the most commonly performed cardiac procedure, accounting for 75 percent of cases reported by the International Fetal Cardiac Intervention Registry (Moon-Grady, 2015). It is offered for selected cases of critical aortic stenosis in which the left ventricle is either normal sized or dilated. The goal is to prevent progression to hypoplastic left heart and to permit postnatal biventricular repair. Under sonographic guidance, an 18-gauge cannula is inserted through uterus and fetal chest wall and into the left ventricle. Although the procedure is ideally performed percutaneously—through the maternal abdominal wall—laparotomy may be needed if the fetal position is unfavorable. The cannula tip is positioned in front of the stenotic aortic valve, and a 2.5- to 4.5-mm balloon catheter is guided into the aortic annulus and then inflated. Fetal bradycardia requiring treatment may complicate a third of cases, and hemopericardium requiring drainage affects approximately 20 percent (Patel, 2020).

In a review of 108 fetuses treated with aortic valvuloplasty from 15 international centers, 75 percent survived until delivery, and biventricular repair was achieved in 32 percent (Patel, 2020). Friedman and coworkers (2018) from Boston Children's Hospital have reported improved outcomes with the procedure in recent years. Of 52 aortic valvuloplasty procedures performed between 2009 and 2015, nearly 90 percent resulted in a live birth, and more than 50 percent achieved biventricular repair. Guseh and colleagues (2020) emphasize that most children with biventricular function still require postnatal cardiac procedures. The risk for neurodevelopmental impairment in childhood appears similar to cases treated with postnatal repair (Laraja, 2017; Moon-Grady, 2015).

The subset of fetuses with hypoplastic left heart syndrome who also have an intact or restrictive interatrial septum have postnatal mortality rates of nearly 80 percent (Glantz, 2007; Jantzen, 2017). To help improve survival, fetal atrial septoplasty using a percutaneous balloon catheter has been offered. Atrial septal stent placement is often attempted at the time of septoplasty to ensure patency. Of 47 such procedures reported by the International Fetal Cardiac Intervention Registry, 35 percent of infants survived to hospital discharge (Jantzen, 2017). However, the 1-year survival rate was higher in those that had successful fetal cardiac intervention compared with those that had not undergone intervention.

Fetal pulmonary valvuloplasty has been offered in cases of pulmonary atresia with intact interventricular septum to prevent development of hypoplastic right heart syndrome and subsequent single ventricle palliation. The International Fetal Cardiac Intervention Registry reported that of 58 cases of attempted pulmonary valvuloplasty, the procedure was technically successful in 70 percent (Hogan, 2020). Those with successful in-utero procedures were twice as likely to achieve biventricular repair. However, when procedure-related losses were considered, survival to hospital discharge was similar to those who had not received fetal intervention, approximating 75 percent. Long-term benefits of the procedure have yet to be demonstrated.

■ Ex-Utero Intrapartum Treatment

This procedure allows the fetus to remain perfused by the placenta after being partially delivered, so that lifesaving treatment can be performed before completing the delivery. The technique was first developed to obtain an airway with fetal tumors involving the oropharynx and neck and is still used for this indication (Catalano, 1992; Kelly, 1990; Langer, 1992; Shamshirsaz, 2021). An ex-utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT)

TABLE 19-5. Components of the Ex-Utero Intrapartum Treatment (EXIT) Procedure

Comprehensive preoperative evaluation: specialized fetal sonography, fetal echocardiography, magnetic resonance imaging, fetal karyotype if possible
Uterine relaxation with deep general anesthesia and tocolysis
Intraoperative sonography to confirm placental margin and fetal position and to visualize vessels at planned hysterotomy site
Placement of stay-sutures followed by use of uterine stapling device to decrease hysterotomy-site bleeding
Maintenance of uterine volume during the procedure via continuous amnioinfusion of warmed physiological solution to help prevent placental separation
Delivery of the fetal head, neck, and upper torso to permit access as needed
Fetal injection of intramuscular vecuronium, fentanyl, and atropine
Fetal peripheral intravenous access, pulse oximeter, and cardiac ultrasound
Following procedure, umbilical lines placed prior to cord clamping
Uterotonic agents administered as needed

procedure is performed by a multidisciplinary team, which may include an obstetrician, maternal-fetal medicine specialist, pediatric surgeon(s), pediatric otolaryngologist, pediatric cardiologist, anesthesiologists for the mother and fetus, neonatologists, and specially trained nursing personnel. Components of the procedure are shown in Table 19-5 (Moldenhauer, 2013).

Selected indications are listed in Table 19-2. EXIT is the preferred procedure for intrapartum management of large venolymphatic malformations of the neck such as the one shown in Figure 19-9. Criteria for EXIT with a cervical venolymphatic malformation include compression, deviation, or obstruction of the airway by the mass, and also involvement of the floor of the mouth (Laje, 2015). However, a review of 112 pregnancies with fetal cervical venolymphatic malformations found that only about 10 percent met these criteria. Other indications for EXIT include severe *micrognathia* and *congenital high airway obstruction sequence (CHAOS)*, which are discussed in Chapter 15 (Figs. 15-27 and 15-35, p. 285). Criteria for an EXIT procedure for micrognathia include a fetal jaw measurement below the 5th percentile along with indirect evidence of obstruction, such as hydramnios, an absent stomach bubble, or glossoptosis (Morris, 2009b). Case selection for EXIT procedures is generally based on fetal magnetic resonance imaging findings.

In some cases, an EXIT procedure has been used as a bridge to other procedures. For example, resection of large thoracic masses may be accomplished by fetal thoracotomy performed with intact placental circulation. In a series of 16 fetuses with CCAM volume ratios >1.6 or hydrops, all of whom had mediastinal compression, Cass and colleagues (2013) reported that nine infants undergoing *EXIT-to-resection* survived. In contrast, there were no survivors with urgent postnatal surgery alone. Similarly, Moldenhauer (2013) reported that 20 of 22 newborns treated with EXIT-to-resection for lung masses survived. The EXIT procedure has also been used as a bridge to extracorporeal membrane oxygenation—EXIT-to-ECMO—in pregnancies with severe congenital diaphragmatic hernia. However,

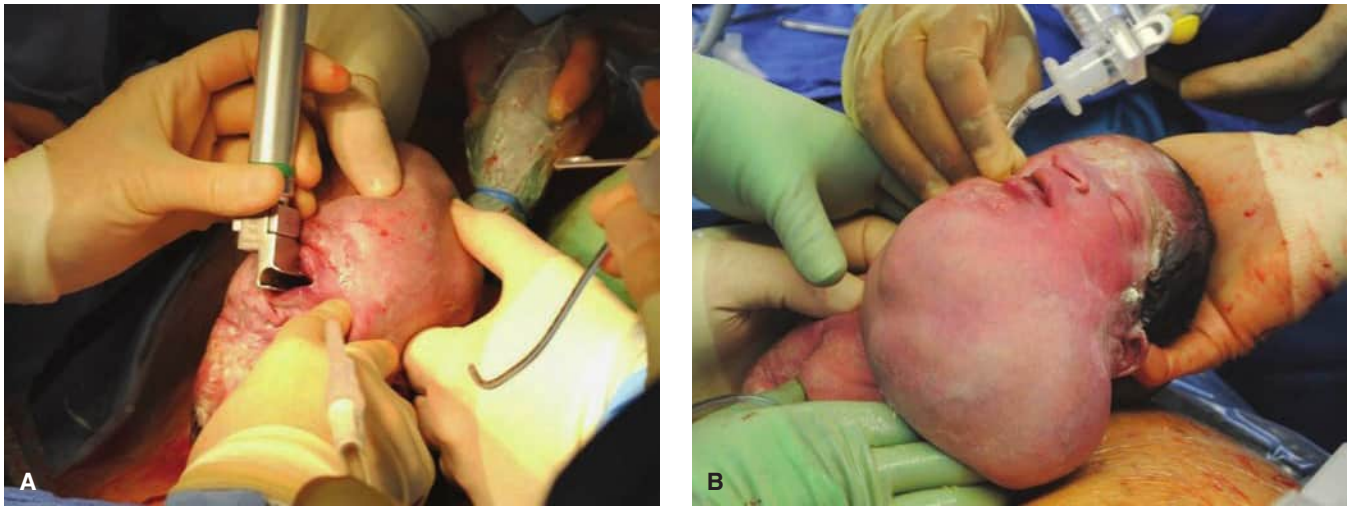


FIGURE 19-9 Ex-utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT) procedure for a venolymphatic malformation. **A.** Upon delivery of the head, placental circulation was maintained, and an airway was established over the course of 20 minutes by a team of pediatric subspecialists that included a surgeon, anesthesiologist, and otolaryngologist. **B.** Following a controlled intubation, the fetus was ready for delivery and transfer to the neonatal intensive care unit team. (Reproduced with permission from Drs. Stacey Thomas and Patricia Santiago-Muñoz.)

it has not been found to clearly confer survival benefit in such cases (Morris, 2009a; Shieh, 2017; Stoffan, 2012).

Counseling prior to an EXIT procedure includes procedure-related risks such as hemorrhage from placental abruption or uterine atony, need for cesarean delivery in future pregnancies, higher risk for subsequent uterine rupture or dehiscence, possible need for hysterectomy, and fetal death or permanent neonatal disability. Compared with cesarean delivery, the EXIT procedure is associated with greater blood loss, a higher incidence of wound complications, and a longer operating time (Noah, 2002; Shamshirsaz, 2019).

REFERENCES

Abbasi N, Ryan G, Johnson A, et al: Reproducibility of fetal lung-to-head ratio in left diaphragmatic hernia across the North American Fetal Therapy Network (NAFTNet). Prenat Diagn 39(2):188, 2019

Abuhamad AZ, Fisher DA, Warsof SL, et al: Antenatal diagnosis and treatment of fetal goitrous hypothyroidism: case report and review of the literature. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 6:368, 1995

Adzick NS: Fetal myelomeningocele: natural history, pathophysiology, and in utero intervention. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 15(1):9, 2010

Adzick NS, Harrison MR, Glick PL, et al: Fetal cystic adenomatoid malformation: prenatal diagnosis and natural history. J Pediatr Surg 20:483, 1985

Adzick NS, Thom EA, Spong CY, et al: A randomized trial of prenatal versus postnatal repair of myelomeningocele. N Engl J Med 364(11):993, 2011

Agrawal P, Ogilvy-Stuart A, Lees C: Intrauterine diagnosis and management of congenital goitrous hypothyroidism. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 19:501, 2002

Akinkuotu AC, Coleman A, Shue E, et al: Predictors of poor prognosis in prenatally diagnosed sacrococcygeal teratoma: a multiinstitutional review. J Pediatr Surg 50(5):771, 2015

Akkermans J, Peeters SH, Klumper FJ, et al: Twenty-five years of fetoscopic laser coagulation for twin-twin transfusion syndrome: a systematic review. Fetal Diagn Ther 38(4):241, 2015.

Al-Maary J, Eastwood MP, Russo FM, et al: Fetal tracheal occlusion for severe pulmonary hypoplasia in isolated congenital diaphragmatic hernia. A systematic review and meta-analysis of survival. Ann Surg 264(6):929, 2016

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Neural tube defects. Practice Bulletin No. 187, December 2017, Reaffirmed 2019

Araujo Junior EA, Eggink AJ, van den Dobbelsteen J, et al: Procedure-related complications of open vs endoscopic fetal surgery for treatment of spina bifida in an era of intrauterine myelomeningocele repair: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 48(2):151, 2016

Baschat AA, Rosner M, Millard SE, et al: Single-center outcome of fetoscopic tracheal balloon occlusion for severe congenital diaphragmatic hernia. Obstet Gynecol 135(3):511, 2020

Baskin A, Wisniewski AB, Aston CE, et al: Post-operative complications following feminizing genitoplasty in moderate to severe atypia: results from a multicenter, observational prospective cohort study. J Pediatr Urol 16(5):568, 2020

Baumgarten HD, Gebb JS, Khalek N, et al: Preemptive delivery and immediate resection for fetuses with high-risk sacrococcygeal teratomas. Fetal Diagn Ther 45(3):137, 2019

Belfort MA, Whitehead WE, Shamshirsaz AA, et al: Fetoscopic open neural tube defect repair. Development and refinement of a two-port carbon dioxide insufflation technique. Obstet Gynecol 129(4):734, 2017

Biard JM, Johnson MP, Carr MC, et al: Long-term outcomes in children treated by prenatal vesicoamniotic shunting for lower urinary tract obstruction. Obstet Gynecol 106(3):503, 2005

Bliddal S, Rasmussen AK, Sundberg K, et al: Antithyroid drug-induced fetal goitrous hypothyroidism. Nat Rev Endocrinol 7:396, 2011

Blumenfeld YJ, Davis A, Milan K, et al: Conservatively managed fetal goiter: an alternative to in utero therapy. Fetal Diagn Ther 34(3):184, 2013

Brito-Zeron P, Izmirly PM, Ramos-Casals M, et al: The clinical spectrum of autoimmune congenital heart block. Nat Rev Rheumatol 11(5):301, 2015

Buyon JP, Clancy RM, Friedman DM: Autoimmune associated congenital heart block: integration of clinical and research clues in the management of the maternal/fetal dyad at risk. J Intern Med 265(6):653, 2009

Cabassa P, Fichera A, Prefumo F, et al: The use of radiofrequency in the treatment of twin reversed arterial perfusion sequence: a case series and review of the literature. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 166(2):127, 2013

Cass DL, Olutoye OO, Cassady CI, et al: EXIT-to-resection for fetuses with large lung masses and persistent mediastinal compression near birth. J Pediatr Surg 48(1):138, 2013

Catalano PJ, Urken ML, Alvarez M, et al: New approach to the management of airway obstruction in "high risk" neonates. Arch Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 118:306, 1992

Cavoretto P, Molina F, Poggi S, et al: Prenatal diagnosis and outcome of echogenic fetal lung lesions. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 32:769, 2008

Copel JA, Liang RI, Demasio K, et al: The clinical significance of the irregular fetal heart rhythm. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:813, 2000

Crombleholme TM, Coleman B, Hedrick H, et al: Cystic adenomatoid volume ratio predicts outcome in prenatally diagnosed cystic adenomatoid malformation of the lung. J Pediatr Surg 37(3):331, 2002

Cuneo BF, Lee M, Roberson D, et al: A management strategy for fetal immune-mediated atrioventricular block. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 23(12):1400, 2010

Cuneo BF, Zhao H, Strasburger JF, et al: Atrial and ventricular rate response and patterns of heart rate acceleration during maternal-fetal terbutaline treatment of fetal complete heart block. Am J Cardiol 100(4):661, 2007

David M, Forest MG: Prenatal treatment of congenital adrenal hyperplasia resulting from 21-hydroxylase deficiency. J Pediatr 105(5):799, 1984

Deprest JA, Flake AW, Gratacos E, et al: The making of fetal surgery. Prenat Diagn 30(7):653, 2010

Derderian SC, Coleman AM, Jeanty C, et al: Favorable outcomes in high-risk congenital pulmonary airway malformations treated with multiple courses of maternal betamethasone. J Pediatr Surg 50(4):515, 2015

Devaney SA, Palomaki GE, Scott JA, et al: Noninvasive fetal sex determination using cell-free fetal DNA: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA 306(6):627, 2011

Dhillon RK, Hillman SC, Pounds R, et al: Comparison of Solomon technique with selective laser ablation for twin-twin transfusion syndrome: a systematic review. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 46(5):526, 2015

Diehl W, Diemert A, Grasso D, et al: Fetoscopic laser coagulation in 1020 pregnancies with twin-twin transfusion syndrome demonstrates improvement in double-twin survival rate. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 50():728, 2017

Duncombe GJ, Dickinson JE: Fetal thyrotoxicosis after maternal thyroidectomy. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 41(2):224, 2001

Ehrenberg-Buchner S, Stapf AM, Berman DR, et al: Fetal lung lesions: can we start to breathe easier? Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(2):151.e1, 2013

Ekiz A, Kaya B, Bornaun H, et al: Flecainide as first-line treatment for fetal supraventricular tachycardia. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(4):407, 2018

Ekman-Joelsson BM, Mellander M, Lagnefeldt L, et al: Foetal tachyarrhythmia treatment remains challenging even if the vast majority of cases have a favourable outcome. Acta Paediatr 104(11):1090, 2015

Fernandez-Balsells MM, Muthusamy K, Smushkin G, et al: Prenatal dexamethasone use for the prevention of virilization in pregnancies at risk for classical congenital adrenal hyperplasia because of 21-hydroxylase (CYP21A2) deficiency: a systematic review and meta-analyses. Clin Endocrinol 73(4):436, 2010

Flageole H, Evrard VA, Piedboeuf B, et al: The plug-unplug sequence: an important step to achieve type II pneumocyte maturation in the fetal lamb model. J Pediatr Surg 33(2):299, 1998

Freedman AL, Johnson MP, Gonzalez R: Fetal therapy for obstructive uropathy: past, present… future? Pediatr Nephrol 14:167, 2000

Friedman DM, Kim MY, Copel JA, et al: Prospective evaluation of fetuses with autoimmune associated congenital heart block followed in the PR interval and dexamethasone evaluation (PRIDE) study. Am J Cardiol 103(8):1102, 2009

Friedman DM, Kim MY, Copel JA: Utility of cardiac monitoring in fetuses at risk for congenital heart block: the PR Interval and Dexamethasone (PRIDE) Prospective Study. Circulation 117:485, 2008

Friedman KG, Sleeper LA, Freud LR, et al: Improved technical success, postnatal outcome and refined predictors of outcome for fetal aortic valvuloplasty. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 52(2):212, 2018

Glantz JA, Tabbutt S, Gaynor JW, et al: Hypoplastic left heart syndrome with atrial level restriction in the era of prenatal diagnosis. Ann Thorac Surg 84:1633, 2007

Glatz AC, Gaynor JW, Rhodes LA, et al: Outcome of high-risk neonates with congenital complete heart block paced in the first 24 hours after birth. J Thorac Cardiovasc Surg 136(3):767, 2008

Guseh SH, Friedman KG, Wilkins-Haug LE: Fetal cardiac intervention-perspectives from a single center. Prenat Diagn 40(4):415, 2020

Habli M, Bombrys A, Lewis D, et al: Incidence of complications in twin-twin transfusion syndrome after selective fetoscopic laser photocoagulation: a single-center experience. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(4):417.e1, 2009

Hahurij ND, Blom NA, Lopriore E, et al: Perinatal management and long-term cardiac outcome in fetal arrhythmia. Early Hum Dev 87:83, 2011

Hannah-Shmouni F, Morissette R, Sinaii N, et al: Revising the prevalence of nonclassic congenital adrenal hyperplasia in US Ashkenazi Jews and Caucasians. Genet Med 19(11):1276, 2017

Hardley MT, Chon AH, Mestman J, et al: Iodine-induced fetal hypothyroidism: Diagnosis and treatment with intra-amniotic levothyroxine. Horm Res Paediatr 90(6):419, 2018

Harrison MR, Filly RA, Golbus MS, et al: Fetal treatment. N Engl J Med 307:1651, 1982

Harrison MR, Keller RL, Hawgood SB, et al: A randomized trial of fetal endoscopic tracheal occlusion for severe fetal congenital diaphragmatic hernia. N Engl J Med 349:1916, 2003

Harrison MR, Sydorak MR, Farrell JA, et al: Fetoscopic temporary tracheal occlusion for congenital diaphragmatic hernia: prelude to a randomized controlled trial. J Pediatr Surg 38:1012, 1993

Hayden SA, Russ PD, Pretorius DH, et al: Posterior urethral obstruction. Prenatal sonographic findings and clinical outcome in fourteen cases. J Ultrasound Med 7(7):371, 1988

Hedrick HL, Flake AW, Crombleholme TM, et al: Sacrococcygeal teratoma: prenatal assessment, fetal intervention, and outcome. J Pediatr Surg 39(3):430, 2004

Hedrick MH, Estes JM, Sullivan KM, et al: Plug the lung until it grows (PLUG): a new method to treat congenital diaphragmatic hernia in utero. J Pediatr Surg 29(5):612, 1994

Hill M, Finning K, Martin P, et al: Non-invasive prenatal determination of fetal sex: translating research into clinical practice. Clin Genet 80(1):68, 2011

Hilton SA, Hodges MM, Dewberry LC, et al: MOMS plus: single institution review of outcomes for extended BMI criteria for open fetal repair of myelomeningocele. Fetal Diagn Ther 46(6):411, 2019

Hobbins JC, Robero R, Grannum P, et al: Antenatal diagnosis of renal anomalies with ultrasound: I. Obstructive uropathy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 148:868, 1984

Hogan WJ, Grinenco S, Armstrong A, et al: Fetal cardiac intervention for pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum: International Fetal Cardiac Intervention Registry. Fetal Diagn Ther July 7, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]

Houtrow AJ, Thom EA, Fletcher JM, et al: Prenatal repair of myelomeningocele and school-age functional outcomes. Pediatrics 145(2):e20191544, 2020

Huel C, Guibourdenche J, Vuillard E, et al: Use of ultrasound to distinguish between fetal hyperthyroidism and hypothyroidism on discovery of a goiter. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 33:412, 2009

Hui L, Bianchi DW: Prenatal pharmacotherapy for fetal anomalies: a 2011 update. Prenat Diagn 31:735, 2011

Izmirly P, Kim M, Friedman DM, et al: Hydroxychloroquine to prevent recurrent congenital heart block in fetuses of anti-SSA/Ro-positive mothers. J Amer Col Cardiol 76(3):292, 2020

Izmirly PM, Costedoat-Chalumeau N, Pisoni C, et al: Maternal use of hydroxychloroquine is associated with a reduced risk of recurrent anti-SSA/Ro associated cardiac manifestations of neonatal lupus. Circulation 126(1):76, 2012

Izmirly PM, Saxena A, Kim MY, et al: Maternal and fetal factors associated with mortality and morbidity in a multi-racial/ethnic registry of anti-SSA/Ro-associated cardiac neonatal lupus. Circulation 124(18):1927, 2011

Izmirly PM, Saxena A, Sahl SK, et al: Assessment of fluorinated steroids to avert progression and mortality in anti-SSA/Ro-associated cardiac injury limited to the fetal conduction system. Ann Rheum Dis 75(6):1161, 2016

Jaeggi E, Carvalho JS, de Groot E, et al: Comparison of transplacental treatment of fetal supraventricular tachyarrhythmias with digoxin, flecainide, and sotalol. Results of a nonrandomized multicenter study. Circulation 124(16):1747, 2011

Jani J, Nicolaides KH, Keller RL, et al: Observed to expected lung area to head circumference ratio in the prediction of survival in fetuses with isolated diaphragmatic hernia. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 30(1):67, 2007

Jani JC, Peralta CF, Nicolaides KH: Lung-to-head ratio: a need to unify the technique. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 39(1):2, 2012

Jantzen DW, Moon-Grady AJ, Morris SA, et al: Hypoplastic left heart syndrome with intact or restrictive atrial septum: a report from the International Fetal Cardiac Intervention Registry. Circulation 136(14):1346, 2017

Jelin E, Hirose S, Rand L, et al: Perinatal outcome of conservative management versus fetal intervention for twin reversed arterial perfusion sequence with a small acardiac twin. Fetal Diagn Ther 27:138, 2010

Kelly MF, Berenholz L, Rizzo KA, et al: Approach for oxygenation of the newborn with airway obstruction due to a cervical mass. Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol 99(3 pt 1):179, 1990

Kiefer FL, Klebermass-Schrehf K, Steiner M, et al: Fetal/neonatal thyrotoxicosis in a newborn from a hypothyroid woman with Hashimoto thyroiditis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 102(1):6, 2017

Kohn JR, Rao V, Sellner AA, et al: Management of labor and delivery after fetoscopic repair of an open neural tube defect. Obstet Gynecol 131(6):1062, 2018

Laje P, Peranteau WH, Hedrick HL, et al: Ex utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT) in the management of cervical lymphatic teratoma. J Pediatr Surg 50(2):311, 2015

Langer JC, Tabb T, Thompson P, et al: Management of prenatally diagnosed tracheal obstruction: access to the airway in utero prior to delivery. Fetal Diagn Ther 7(1):12, 1992

Laraja K, Sadhwani A, Tworetzky W, et al: Neurodevelopmental outcome in children after fetal cardiac intervention for aortic stenosis with evolving hypoplastic left heart syndrome. J Pediatr 184:130, 2017

Lee H, Bebbington M, Crombleholme TM, et al: The North American Fetal Therapy Network Registry data on outcomes of radiofrequency ablation for twin-reversed arterial perfusion sequence. Fetal Diagn Ther 33(4):224, 2013

Litwinska M, Litwinska E, Janiak K, et al: Thoracoamniotic shunts in macrocystic lung lesions: case series and review of the literature. Fetal Diagn Ther 41(3):179, 2017

Loh K, Jelin E, Hirose S, et al: Microcystic congenital pulmonary airway malformation with hydrops fetalis: steroids vs open fetal resection. J Pediatr Surg 47(1):36, 2012

Macardle CA, Ehrenberg-Buchner S, Smith EA, et al: Surveillance of fetal lung lesions using the congenital pulmonary airway malformation volume ratio: natural history and outcomes. Prenat Diagn 36(3):282, 2016

Machado CM, Castro JM, Campos RA, et al: Graves' disease complicated by fetal goitrous hypothyroidism treated with intra-amniotic administration of levothyroxine. BMJ Case Rep 12(8):e230457, 2019

Mann S, Johnson MP, Wilson RD: Fetal thoracic and bladder shunts. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 15:28, 2010

McCullough LB, Chervenak FA, Brent RL, et al: A case study in unethical transgressive bioethics: "Letter of Concern from Bioethicists" about the prenatal administration of dexamethasone. Am J Bioeth 10(9):35, 2010

Metkus AP, Filly RA, Stringer MD, et al: Sonographic predictors of survival in fetal diaphragmatic hernia. J Pediatr Surg 31(1):148, 1996

Meuli M, Meuli-Simmen C, Hutchins GM, et al: In utero surgery rescues neurological function at birth in sheep with spina bifida. Nat Med 1(4):342, 1995

Meuli M, Meuli-Simmen C, Hutchins GM, et al: The spinal cord lesion in human fetuses with myelomeningocele: implications for fetal surgery. J Pediatr Surg 32(3):448, 1997

Michael A, Radwan AA, Kamel Ali A, et al: Use of antenatal fluorinated corticosteroids in management of congenital heart block: systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol X 16(4):1000072, 2019

Miyoshi T, Maeno Y, Hamasaki T, et al: Antenatal therapy for fetal supraventricular tachyarrhythmias: multicenter trial. J Am Coll Cardiol 74(7):874, 2019

Moldenhauer JS: Ex utero intrapartum therapy. Semin Pediatr Surg 22(1):44, 2013

Moldenhauer JS, Soni S, Jatres J, et al: Open fetal surgical outcomes for myelomeningocele closure stratified by maternal body mass index in a large single-center cohort. Fetal Diagn Ther 47(12):889, 2020

Moon-Grady AJ, Morris SA, Belfort M, et al: International Fetal Cardiac Intervention Registry. A worldwide collaborative description and preliminary outcomes. J Am Coll Cardiol 66(4):388, 2015

Morris LM, Lim FY, Crombleholme TM: Ex utero intrapartum treatment procedure: a peripartum management strategy in particularly challenging cases. J Pediatr 154(1):126, 2009a

Morris LM, Lim FY, Elluru RG, et al: Severe micrognathia: indications for EXIT-to-airway. Fetal Diagn Ther 26:162, 2009b

Morris RK, Malin GL, Quinlan-Jones E, et al: Percutaneous vesicoamniotic shunting versus conservative management in fetal lower urinary tract obstruction (PLUTO): a randomized trial. Lancet 382(9903):1496, 2013

Nassr AA, Shazly SA, Abdelmagied AM, et al: Effectiveness of vesicoamniotic shunt in fetuses with congenital lower urinary tract obstruction: an updated systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 49(6):696, 2017

Nemescu D, Tanasa IA, Stoian DL, et al: Conservative in utero treatment of fetal dyshormonogenetic goiter with levothyroxine, a systematic literature review. Exp Ther Med 20(3):2434, 2020

New MI, Abraham M, Yuen T, et al: An update on prenatal diagnosis and treatment of congenital adrenal hyperplasia. Semin Reprod Med 30(5):396, 2012

New MI, Tong YK, Yuen T, et al: Noninvasive prenatal diagnosis of congenital adrenal hyperplasia using cell-free DNA in maternal plasma. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 99(6):E1022, 2014

Nimkarn S, Gangishetti PK, Yau M, et al: 21-Hydroxylase deficient congenital adrenal hyperplasia. In Pagon RA, Adam MP, Ardinger HH, et al (eds): GeneReviews. Seattle, University of Washington, 2016

Noah MM, Norton ME, Sandberg P, et al: Short-term maternal outcomes that are associated with the EXIT procedure, as compared with cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186(4):773, 2002

O'Leary ET, Alexander ME, Bezzerides VJ, et al: Low mortality in fetal supraventricular tachycardia: outcomes in a 30-year single-institution experience. J Cardiovasc Electrophysiol 31(5):1105, 2020

Overcash RT, Marc-Aurele KL, Hull AD, et al: Maternal iodine exposure: a case of fetal goiter and neonatal hearing loss. Pediatrics 137(4):e1, 2016

Patel ND, Nageotte S, Ing FF, et al: Procedural, pregnancy, and short-term outcomes after fetal aortic valvuloplasty. Catheter Cardiovasc Inter 96(3):626, 2020

Peleg D, Cada S, Peleg A, et al: The relationship between maternal serum thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulin and neonatal thyrotoxicosis. Obstet Gynecol 99(6):1040, 2002

Peranteau WH, Boelig MM, Khalek N, et al: Effect of single and multiple courses of maternal betamethasone on prenatal congenital lung lesion growth and fetal survival. J Pediatr Surg 51(1):28, 2016

Pruthi V, Abbasi N, Ryan G, et al: Fetal surgery for open spina bifida in Canada: initial results. J Obstet Gynecol Can 43(6):733, 2021

Quintero RA, Morales WJ, Allen MH, et al: Staging of twin-twin transfusion syndrome. J Perinatol 19:550, 1999

Ribault V, Castanet M, Bertrand AM, et al: Experience with intraamniotic thyroxine treatment in nonimmune fetal goitrous hypothyroidism in 12 cases. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 94:3731, 2009

Robyr R, Lewi L, Salomon LJ, et al: Prevalence and management of late fetal complications following successful selective laser coagulation of chorionic plate anastomoses in twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194(3):796, 2006

Ruano R, Dunn T, Braun MC, et al: Lower urinary tract obstruction: fetal intervention based on prenatal staging. Pediatr Nephrol 32:(10):1871, 2017

Ruano R, Rodo C, Peiro JL, et al: Fetoscopic laser ablation of placental anastomoses in twin-twin transfusion syndrome using "Solomon technique." Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 42(4):434, 2013

Russo FM, Cordier AG, Basurto D, et al: Fetoscopic endoluminal tracheal occlusion reverses the natural history of right-sided congenital diaphragmatic hernia: a European multicenter experience. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 57(3):378, 2021

Schou KV, Lando AV, Ekelund CK, et al: Long-term neurodevelopmental outcome of monochorionic twins after laser therapy or umbilical cord occlusion for twin-twin transfusion syndrome. Fetal Diagn Ther 46(1):20, 2019

Shah A, Moon-Grady A, Bhogal N, et al: Effectiveness of sotalol as first-line therapy for fetal supraventricular tachyarrhythmias. Am J Cardiol 190(11):1614, 2012

Shamshirsaz AA, Aalipour S, Erfani H, et al: Obstetrics outcomes of ex-utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT). Prenat Diagn 39(8):643, 2019

Shamshirsaz AA, Aalipour S, Stewart KA, et al: Perinatal characteristics and early childhood follow up after ex-utero intrapartum treatment for head and neck teratomas by prenatal diagnosis. Prenat Diagn 41(4):497, 2021

Shamshirsaz AA, Ramin SM, Belfort MA: Fetal therapy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017

Shieh HF, Wilson JM, Sheils CA, et al: Does the ex utero intrapartum treatment to extracorporeal membrane oxygenation procedure change morbidity outcomes for high-risk congenital diaphragmatic hernia survivors? J Pediatr Surg 52(1):22, 2017

Shue E, Bolouri M, Jelin EB, et al: Tumor metrics and morphology predict poor prognosis in prenatally diagnosed sacrococcygeal teratoma: a 25-year experience at a single institution. J Pediatr Surg 48(6):1225, 2013

Simonini C, Strizek B, Berg C, et al: Fetal teratomas–a retrospective observational single-center study. Prenat Diagn 41(3):301, 2021

Slaghekke F, Lewi L, Middeldorp JM, et al: Residual anastomoses in twin-twin transfusion syndrome after laser: the Solomon randomized trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(3):285.e1, 2014a

Slaghekke F, Lopriore E, Lewi L, et al: Fetoscopic laser coagulation of the vascular equator versus selective coagulation for twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome: an open-label randomized controlled trial. Lancet 383(9935):2144, 2014b

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Simpson LL: Twin-twin transfusion syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(1):3, 2013

Speiser PW, Arlt W, Auchus RJ, et al: Congenital adrenal hyperplasia due to steroid 21-hydroxylase deficiency: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 103(11):4043, 2018

Srinivasan S, Strasburger J: Overview of fetal arrhythmias. Curr Opin Pediatr 20:522, 2008

Srisupundit K, Sirichotiyakul S, Tongprasent F, et al: Fetal therapy in fetal thyrotoxicosis: a case report. Fetal Diagn Ther 23(2):114, 2008

Stirnemann J, Chalouhi G, Essaoui M, et al: Fetal brain imaging following laser surgery in twin-to-twin surgery. BJOG 125(9):1186, 2018

Stoffan AP, Wilson JM, Jennings RW, et al: Does the ex utero intrapartum treatment to extracorporeal membrane oxygenation procedure change outcomes for high-risk patients with congenital diaphragmatic hernia? J Pediatr Surg 47(6):1053, 2012

Strasburger JF, Wakai RT: Fetal cardiac arrhythmia detection and in utero therapy. Nat Rev Cardiol 7(5):277, 2010

Sugibayashi R, Ozawa K, Sumie M, et al: Forty cases of twin reversed arterial perfusion sequence treated with radio frequency ablation using the multistep coagulation method: a single-center experience. Prenat Diagn 36(5):437, 2016

Ueda K, Maeno Y, Miyoshi T, et al: The impact of intrauterine treatment on fetal tachycardia: a nationwide survey in Japan. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(19):2605, 2018

van der Heijden LB, Oudijk MA, Manten GT, et al: Sotalol as first-line treatment for fetal tachycardia and neonatal follow-up. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 42(3):285, 2013

Van der Veeken L, Russo FM, de Catte L, et al: Fetoscopic endoluminal tracheal occlusion and reestablishment of fetal airways for congenital diaphragmatic hernia. Gynecol Surg 15(1):9, 2018

van Dijk, Smits IH, Fliers E, et al: Maternal thyrotropin receptor antibody concentration and the risk of fetal and neonatal thyrotoxicosis: a systematic review. Thyroid 28(2):257, 2018

Ville Y, Hyett J, Hecher K, et al: Preliminary experience with endoscopic laser surgery for severe twin-twin transfusion syndrome. N Engl J Med 332(4):224, 1995

Vrecenak JD, Flake AW: Fetal surgical intervention: progress and perspectives. Pediatr Surg Int 29(5):407, 2013

Wagata M, Muraskoshi T, Ishii K, et al: Radiofrequency ablation with an internally cooled electrode for twin reversed arterial perfusion sequence. Fetal Diagn Ther 40(2):110, 2016

Walsh WF, Chescheir NC, Gillam-Krakauer M, et al: Maternal-fetal surgical procedures. Technical Brief No. 5. AHRQ Publication No. 10(11)-EHC059-EF, Rockville, Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, 2011

Wilson RD, Lemerand K, Johnson MP, et al: Reproductive outcomes in subsequent pregnancies after a pregnancy complicated by open maternal-fetal surgery (1996–2007). Am J Obstet Gynecol 203(3):209.e1, 2010

Yinon Y, Grisaru-Granovsky S, Chaddha V, et al: Perinatal outcome following fetal chest shunt insertion for pleural effusion. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 36:58, 2010

CHAPTER 20

Antepartum Fetal Assessment

Techniques employed to evaluate fetal health focus on fetal biophysical findings that include heart rate, movement, breathing, and amnionic fluid production. Antepartum fetal surveillance aims to prevent fetal death in pregnancies with complex maternal and fetal conditions yet avoid unnecessary interventions (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a).

Most fetuses will be healthy, and a normal antepartum test result is highly reassuring. Fetal death within 1 week of a normal test result is rare. Indeed, negative predictive values—true negative test results for fetal jeopardy—for most of the tests described are 99.8 percent or higher. In contrast, estimates of positive predictive values—true positive test results for fetal jeopardy—are low and range between 10 and 40 percent. The benefit of fetal surveillance is primarily based on circumstantial evidence. No definitive randomized clinical trials have been conducted for obvious ethical reasons (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a).

FETAL MOVEMENTS

Fetal Behavioral States

Fetal activity commences as early as 7 weeks' gestation (Sajapala, 2017; Vindla, 1995). Between 20 and 30 weeks' gestation, general body movements become organized, and the fetus starts to show rest-activity cycles (Sorokin, 1982). These cycles reflect central nervous system development and maturation. By approximately 36 weeks' gestation, rest-activity cycles give way to behavioral states in most normal fetuses (Peirano, 2003). Four fetal behavioral states are described by Nijhuis and coworkers (1982):

- State 1F is a quiescent state—quiet sleep—with a narrow oscillatory bandwidth of the fetal heart rate.
- State 2F includes frequent gross body movements, continuous eye movements, and wider oscillation of the fetal heart rate. This state is analogous to rapid eye movement (REM) or active sleep in the neonate.
- State 3F includes continuous eye movements in the absence of body movements and no heart rate accelerations. This state is rare, and its existence is disputed (Pillai, 1990a).
- State 4F is one of vigorous body movement with continuous eye movements and heart rate accelerations. This state corresponds to the awake state in newborns.

At 28 to 30 weeks' gestation, fetuses transition to spend most of their time in states 1F and 2F, namely, in quiet or active sleep (Fig. 20-1) (Peirano 2003; Suwanrath, 2010). For example, at 38 weeks, 75 percent of time is spent in these two states. These behavioral states have been used to develop an increasingly sophisticated understanding of fetal behavior. In a study of fetal urine production, bladder volumes rose during state 1F quiet sleep and significantly declined during state 2F active sleep due to diminished urine production and infrequent fetal voiding (Oosterhof, 1993). These phenomena were

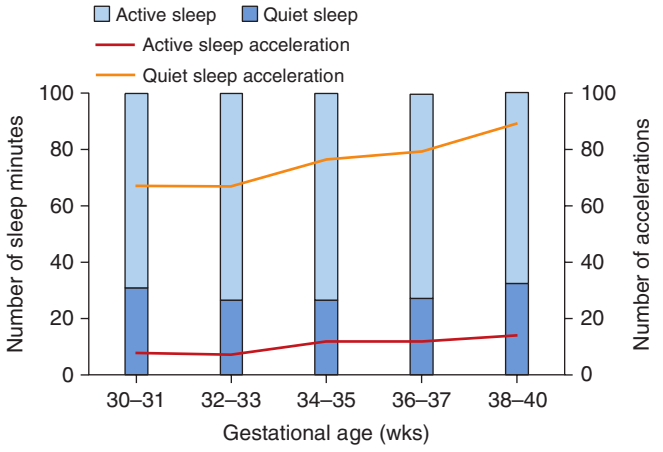


FIGURE 20-1 The change in fetal sleep patterns (*blue columns*) and corresponding number of accelerations (*graph lines*). As the third trimester advances, fetuses spend more time in active sleep and the number of accelerations per hour increases.

thought to represent reduced renal blood flow during active sleep.

Determinants of Fetal Activity

One determinant of fetal activity is the just-described sleep-awake cycles, which are independent of maternal ones. In one study of 16 near-term fetuses, the mean duration of a complete cycle, which included quiet and active states, was 60 minutes. The mean duration was 23 minutes for the quiet states and 40 minutes for the active states (Timor-Tritsch, 1978). Patrick and associates (1982) measured gross fetal body movements with real-time sonography for 24-hour periods in 31 normal near-term pregnancies and found the longest period of inactivity to be 75 minutes.

Amnionic fluid volume is another factor affecting fetal activity. Sherer and colleagues (1996) assessed the number of fetal movements in relation to amnionic fluid volume in 465 preterm pregnancies during biophysical profile testing. Fetal activity declined in those with diminished amnionic volumes, and the authors suggested that a restricted uterine space might physically limit fetal movements.

Patient habits and medications alter fetal movement. For example, maternal smoking decreases fetal activity (Coppens, 2001; Thaler, 1980). Treatment of substance abuse disorders with methadone and buprenorphine also reduces fetal movement (Jansson, 2017; Wouldes, 2004). Betamethasone administration is associated with decreased fetal movement for 24 to 72 hours, and the diurnal pattern is lost (Koenen, 2005; Mulder, 2009). The effect is less clear with dexamethasone. Maternal acetaminophen ingestion does not alter fetal movement, but a glucose load does promote activity (Aladjem, 1979; Nitsche, 2015).

Maternal Perception

Sadovsky and coworkers (1979b) classified fetal movements as weak, strong, and rolling according to maternal perceptions and independent recordings using piezoelectric sensors. As pregnancy advances, the rate of weak movements drops, and more vigorous ones rise in frequency. The latter then subside at term. Presumably, declining amnionic fluid volume and space

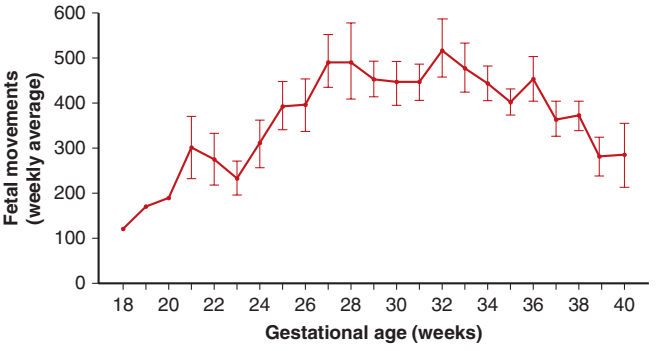


FIGURE 20-2 Graph depicts averages of fetal movements counted during 12-hour periods (mean ± SEM). (Data from Sadovsky, 1979a.)

account for diminished activity at term. Figure 20-2 shows fetal movements during the last half of gestation in 127 pregnancies with normal outcomes. The mean number of weekly movements calculated from 12-hour daily recording periods rose from approximately 200 at 20 weeks' gestation to a maximum of 575 movements at 32 weeks. Weekly fetal movement counts then declined to an average of 282 at 40 weeks. Another study of nearly 300 gravidas found a similar movement pattern across gestational ages (Bradford, 2019b). More than 90 percent of these women reported stronger movements during the evening and nighttime.

Women perceive 16 to 45 percent of fetal movements detected by sonography (Brown, 2016). A higher body mass index does not decrease maternal perception of fetal movement (Bradford, 2019a; Sasson, 2016). It remains unclear if nulliparity or anterior placental location affect maternal impression of fetal activity (Brown, 2016; Sasson, 2016).

Clinical Application

Because women may perceive a decline in fetal movement in the days to weeks preceding stillbirth, maternal perception of fetal movement has been evaluated as a preventive aid (Heazell, 2008; Stacey, 2011). However, the optimal fetal-movement protocol remains undefined (Mangesi, 2015). Some methods rely on quantitative counts, such as 10 movements in 2 hours, whereas others rely on a mother's subjective impression. In one study, more than 68,000 pregnancies were randomly assigned between 28 and 32 weeks' gestation to an objective or subjective assessment group (Grant, 1989). Women in the objective arm were instructed to record the time needed to feel 10 movements each day. This required an average of 2.7 hours daily. Women in the subjective group were informally asked about movements during prenatal visits. Reports of decreased fetal motion were then evaluated with tests of fetal well-being. Antepartum death rates for normal singleton fetuses were similar in the two study groups, and most stillborn fetuses were dead by the time the mothers reported for medical attention. Rather than concluding that maternal perceptions were meaningless, the authors concluded that informal maternal impressions were as valid as formally recorded fetal movement counts.

Women's knowledge of these protocols also vary. In one survey of more than 400 gravidas, 85 percent noted receiving

instruction from their provider regarding normal fetal movement (Pollock, 2019). However, 60 percent described it as a subjective assessment, and 40 percent reported a quantitative method. In another study, more than two thirds of women could not explain fetal movement monitoring techniques (Berndl, 2013).

Although a long-standing pillar of maternal care, fetal movement surveillance may not be as predictive as thought. Nearly 6 to 7 percent of pregnancies are complicated by decreased fetal movement, but stillbirth rates are not increased in these cases (Harrington, 1998; Scala, 2015). In one study of more than 400,000 pregnancies complicated by decreased fetal movement, directed patient and staff education coupled with a prescriptive management plan did not reduce the stillbirth incidence (Norman, 2018). Aside from stillbirth, some data show that decreased fetal movement may help identify growth-restricted fetuses before birth (Saastad, 2011; Scala, 2015). In one of these studies, nearly 1100 pregnancies were assigned to subjective or objective assessment of fetal activity. The rate of 1-minute Apgar scores ≤3 was significantly reduced (0.4 versus 2.3 percent) when counting was used (Saastad, 2011).

Thus, although most pregnancies complicated by decreased fetal movement will result in normal outcomes, maternal perception of reduced fetal activity warrants further evaluation. No consensus guides a provider's response. Care is individualized and influenced by gestational age and pregnancy comorbidities. In low-risk pregnancies, documenting fetal heart tones and adequate amnionic fluid volume may be sufficient. For older fetuses, tests described in the upcoming sections are typically added. Our practice is a nonstress test and sonographic measurement of amnionic fluid volume.

Many women report excessive fetal movement in the third trimester. Its risk, if any, is poorly understood. Stacey and colleagues (2011) reported that a single episode of vigorous fetal activity is associated with a greater risk for fetal death. Similarly, others have described maternal perception of a single episode of excessive of fetal movement in the weeks prior to a stillbirth diagnosis (Heazell, 2017; Whitehead, 2020). More research is needed prior to recommending intervention.

FETAL BREATHING

Small inward and outward flow of tracheal fluid, indicating thoracic movement, was first identified in fetal sheep (Dawes, 1972). These chest wall movements differ from those following birth in that they are discontinuous. Another feature of fetal respiration is *paradoxical chest wall movement* (Fig. 20-3) (Johnson, 1988). In the newborn or adult, the opposite occurs. One interpretation of paradoxical respiratory motion might be coughing to clear amnionic fluid debris. Although the physiological basis for the breathing reflex is not completely understood, such exchange of amnionic fluid appears to be essential for normal lung development (Chap. 7, p. 130). Dawes (1974) identified two types of respiratory movements. The first are *gasps* or *sighs,* which occurred at a frequency of 1 to 4 per minute. The second, *irregular bursts of breathing,* occurred at rates up to 240 cycles per minute. These latter rapid respiratory movements were associated with rapid eye movement. Badalian

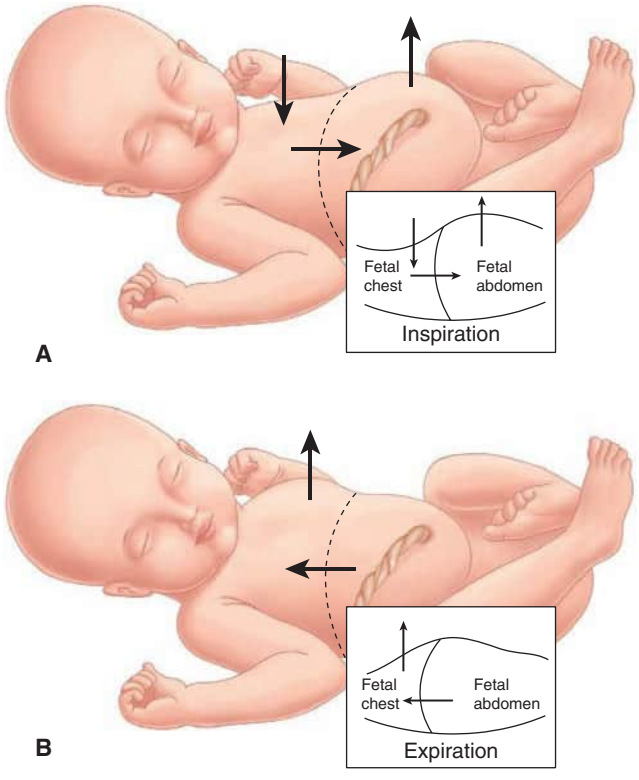


FIGURE 20-3 Paradoxical chest movement with fetal respiration. During inspiration **(A)**, the chest wall paradoxically *collapses* and the abdomen protrudes, whereas during expiration **(B)**, the chest wall *expands*.

and associates (1993) studied the maturation of normal fetal breathing using color flow and spectral Doppler analysis of nasal fluid flow as an index of lung function. They suggested that fetal respiratory rate declined in conjunction with increasing respiratory volume at 33 to 36 weeks' gestation and coincided with lung maturation.

Many investigators have used sonography to determine whether chest wall movements might reflect fetal health. Several variables in addition to hypoxia affect these movements. These include maternal hypoglycemia, sound stimuli, cigarette smoking, amniocentesis, impending preterm labor, gestational age, fetal heart rate, and labor—during which it is normal for fetal respiration to cease.

Because fetal breathing movements are episodic, interpretation of fetal health when respirations are absent may be difficult. Patrick and coworkers (1980) performed continuous 24-hour observation using sonography to characterize fetal breathing patterns during the last 10 weeks of pregnancy. A total of 1224 hours of fetal observation in 51 pregnancies were collected. Figure 20-4 displays the percentages of time spent breathing near term. Substantively diminished breathing during the night suggests a diurnal pattern. In addition, breathing activity is enhanced somewhat following maternal meals. Total absence of breathing was observed in some of these normal fetuses for up to 122 minutes, indicating that fetal evaluation to diagnose absent respiratory motion may require long periods of observation.

The potential for breathing activity to be an important sole marker of fetal health is unfulfilled because of the multiple

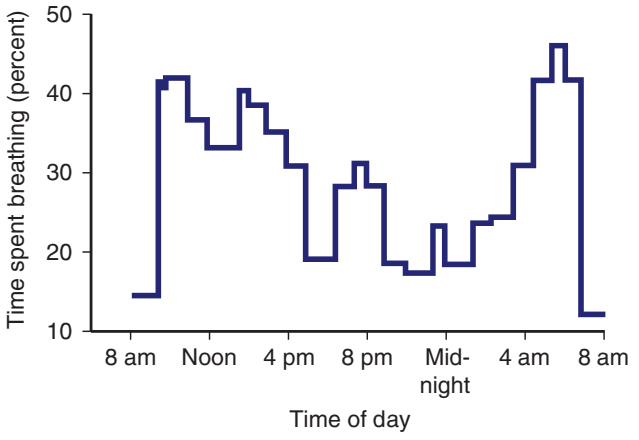


FIGURE 20-4 The percentage of time spent breathing by 11 fetuses at 38 to 39 weeks' gestation. Fetal breathing activity significantly increases after breakfast. Breathing activity diminished during the day and reached its minimum between 20:00 and 24:00 hours. The percentage of time spent breathing rose significantly between 04:00 and 07:00 hours, when mothers were asleep. (Adapted with permission from Patrick J, Campbell K, Carmichael L, et al: Patterns of human fetal breathing during the last 10 weeks of pregnancy, Obstet Gynecol. 1980 Jul;56(1):24–30.)

factors that affect breathing. Most clinical applications couple fetal breathing with other biophysical indices. For example, fetal breathing is one component of the biophysical profile (p. 389).

CONTRACTION STRESS TEST

During a uterine contraction, pressures generated by the myometrium exceed the collapsing pressure of the vessels coursing through it. This ultimately lowers blood flow to the placenta's intervillous space. Brief periods of impaired oxygen exchange result. If uteroplacental pathology is present, oxygen exchange to the fetus is further diminished, and *late fetal heart rate decelerations* appear (Chap. 24, p. 452). These downward-sloping heart-rate waveforms begin with the onset of the uterine contraction waveform or just beyond its acme. Instead, contractions may produce variable decelerations as a result of cord compression. This suggests oligohydramnios, which is often comorbid with placental insufficiency.

Ray and associates (1972) used this concept in 66 complicated pregnancies and developed the *oxytocin challenge test,* which was later called the *contraction stress test (CST).* A positive test result, that is, an abnormal result, is uniform repetitive late fetal heart rate decelerations. In their study, the tests were repeated weekly, and the authors concluded that negative CST results, that is, normal results, forecasted fetal health.

To perform the test, contractions are induced with either intravenous oxytocin or nipple stimulation. If at least three spontaneous contractions of 40 seconds or longer are present in a 10-minute span, no uterine stimulation is necessary (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a). The fetal heart rate and uterine contractions are recorded simultaneously by external monitors. With oxytocin, a dilute intravenous infusion is used to establish a satisfactory contraction pattern (Freeman, 1975). At Parkland Hospital, 20 units of oxytocin are mixed in 1 liter of Ringer solution and initiated at a rate of 6 mU/min. The rate is increased by 6 mU/min every 40 minutes to achieve the just-discussed contraction pattern.

Nipple stimulation to induce uterine contractions for a CST is usually successful (Huddleston, 1984). One method involves a woman rubbing one nipple through her clothing for 2 minutes or until a contraction begins. This 2-minute nipple stimulation ideally will induce a pattern of three contractions per 10 minutes. If not, after a 5-minute rest interval, she is instructed to retry nipple stimulation to achieve the desired pattern. If this is unsuccessful, dilute oxytocin may be used.

CST results are interpreted according to the criteria shown in Table 20-1. Disadvantageously, the average CST requires 90 minutes to complete. Compared with oxytocin, nipple stimulation shortens testing time and costs less. During a CST, some have reported unpredictable uterine hyperstimulation and fetal distress, whereas others did not find excessive activity to be harmful (Frager, 1987; Schellpfeffer, 1985). Relative contraindications to a CST include those conditions that contraindicate vaginal delivery.

NONSTRESS TEST

The *nonstress test (NST)* also is used to assess fetal well-being and employs the phenomenon of fetal heart rate acceleration in response to fetal movement (Freeman, 1975; Lee, 1975). During an NST, these accelerations are correlated with fetal movements perceived by the mother.

Compared with a CST, an NST is easier to perform, and normal results can be used to further define false-positive CST results. Simplistically, the NST is primarily a test of *fetal condition,* and it differs from the CST, which is considered a test of *uteroplacental function.* Currently, NST is the most widely used primary testing method for assessment of fetal well-being. It has also been incorporated into the biophysical profile, discussed later (p. 389).

TABLE 20-1. Criteria for Interpretation of the Contraction Stress Test

Negative: no late or significant variable decelerations
Positive: late decelerations following 50% or more of contractions (even if the contraction frequency is fewer than three in 10 minutes)
Equivocal-suspicious: intermittent late decelerations or significant variable decelerations
Equivocal-hyperstimulatory: fetal heart rate decelerations that occur in the presence of contractions more frequent than every 2 minutes or lasting longer than 90 seconds
Unsatisfactory: fewer than three contractions in 10 minutes or an uninterpretable tracing

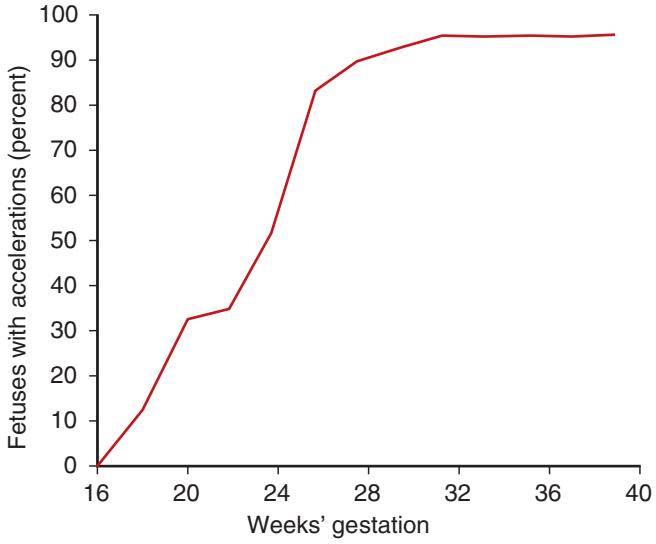


FIGURE 20-5 Percentage of fetuses with at least one acceleration of 15 bpm sustained for 15 seconds concurrent with fetal movement. (Redrawn from Pillai M, James D: The development of fetal heart rate patterns during normal pregnancy, Obstet Gynecol. 1990 Nov;76(5 Pt 1):812–816.)

Fetal Heart Rate Acceleration

Autonomic influences are mediated by sympathetic or parasympathetic impulses from brainstem centers to normally raise or slow the fetal heart rate. The NST is based on the hypothesis that the heart rate of a fetus that is not acidemic as a result of hypoxia or neurological depression will temporarily accelerate in response to fetal movement (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019; Lee, 1975). Fetal movements during testing are identified by maternal perception and self-recorded. As hypoxia develops, fetal heart rate accelerations diminish (Smith, 1988).

Gestational age influences acceleration of the fetal heart rate. Pillai and James (1990b) studied patterns of fetal heart rate acceleration during normal pregnancy. The percentage of body movements accompanied by accelerations and the amplitude of these waveforms both increase with gestational age (Fig. 20-5).

Accordingly, the National Institute of Child Health and Human Development Fetal Monitoring Workshop defined acceleration waveforms based on gestational age (Macones, 2008). In fetuses at or beyond 32 weeks' gestation, the acceleration acme is ≥15 beats per minute (bpm) above the baseline rate, and the acceleration lasts ≥15 seconds but <2 minutes. Before 32 weeks, accelerations are defined as having a rise ≥10 bpm above baseline for ≥10 seconds. In one study of 188 normal fetuses at 25 and 28 weeks' gestation, only 70 percent demonstrated the required ≥15 bpm during heart rate accelerations. Accelerations of 10 bpm occurred in 90 percent (Guinn, 1998). Cousins and associates (2012) compared the Workshop criteria recommended before 32 weeks with the standard 15 bpm/15 second criteria in a randomized trial of 143 women. They found no differences in perinatal outcomes.

Reactive (Normal) Nonstress Tests

A normal NST is termed *reactive* and requires two or more accelerations within 20 minutes of beginning the test (Fig. 20-6) (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a). Accelerations are accepted irrespective of fetal movement. Before concluding that a test is *nonreactive*, a 40-minute or longer tracing should be performed. This threshold accounts for fetal sleep cycles (Paul, 1995). Miller and coworkers (1996b) reviewed outcomes in fetuses with NST results that were considered nonreactive because only one acceleration was recorded. They concluded that one acceleration was as reliable as two in predicting healthy fetal status. NSTs are more likely to be reactive and have a shorter testing time in the evening compared with the morning (Babazadeh, 2005; Petrikovsky, 1996).

Loud external sounds have been used to startle the fetus and thereby provoke heart rate acceleration. A commercially available acoustic stimulator is positioned on the maternal abdomen, and a stimulus of 1 to 2 seconds is applied (Eller, 1995). This may be repeated up to three times for up to 3 seconds (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a). In a randomized trial of 113 women undergoing NST, vibroacoustic stimulation lowered the average testing time and incidence of nonreactive test results (Perez-Delboy, 2002; Turitz, 2012). One case report described a fetal tachyarrhythmia that was provoked with vibroacoustic stimulation in a fetus with known premature atrial contractions (Laventhal, 2003).

Although a normal number and amplitude of accelerations seems to reflect fetal well-being, their absence does not

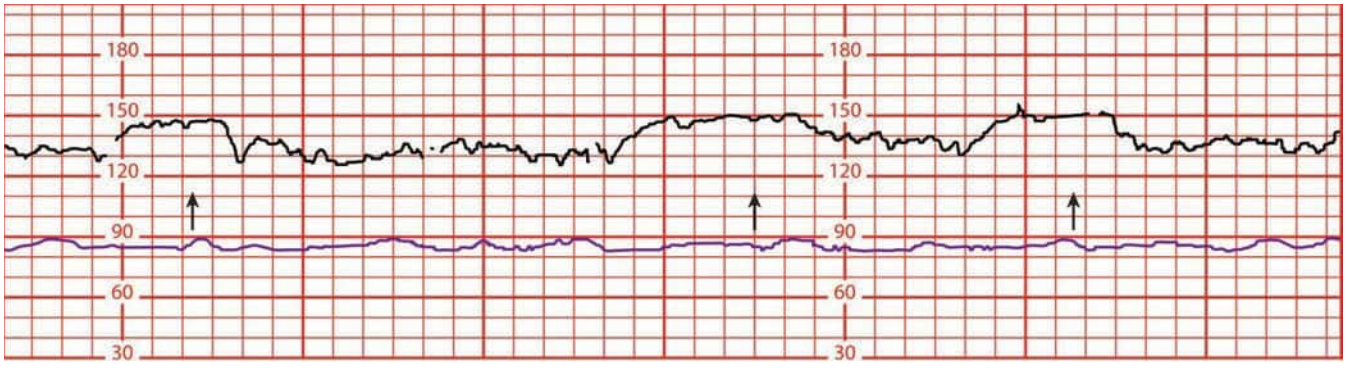


FIGURE 20-6 Reactive nonstress test. Notice there are at least two fetal heart rate accelerations (*arrows*) of more than 15 beats/min for longer than 15 seconds. The black line reflects fetal heart rate, whereas the purple line reflects the mother's.

invariably predict fetal compromise. Indeed, some investigators have reported false-positive rates ≥90 percent (Devoe, 1986). Because healthy fetuses may not move for up to 75 minutes, some have considered that a longer NST duration might increase the positive predictive value of the NST (Brown, 1981). In this scheme, either the test became reactive during a period up to 80 minutes or the test remained nonreactive for 120 minutes, which indicated a very ill fetus. Therefore, prolonged fetal heart rate monitoring is undertaken if an NST remains nonreactive after 40 minutes.

Nonreactive (Abnormal) Nonstress Tests

Based on the foregoing, a nonreactive NST is not always ominous and can be seen with a sleeping fetus. An NST result can also revert to normal as the fetal condition changes. An example is shown in Figure 20-7. Instead, a reactive NST result can become abnormal if the fetal condition deteriorates.

Some abnormal patterns reliably forecast severe fetal jeopardy (Fig. 20-8). For example, Devoe and colleagues (1985) concluded that >90 percent of NST results that were nonreactive for 90 minutes or more were associated with significant perinatal pathology. Specifically, Visser and associates (1980) described a *terminal cardiotocogram,* which included:

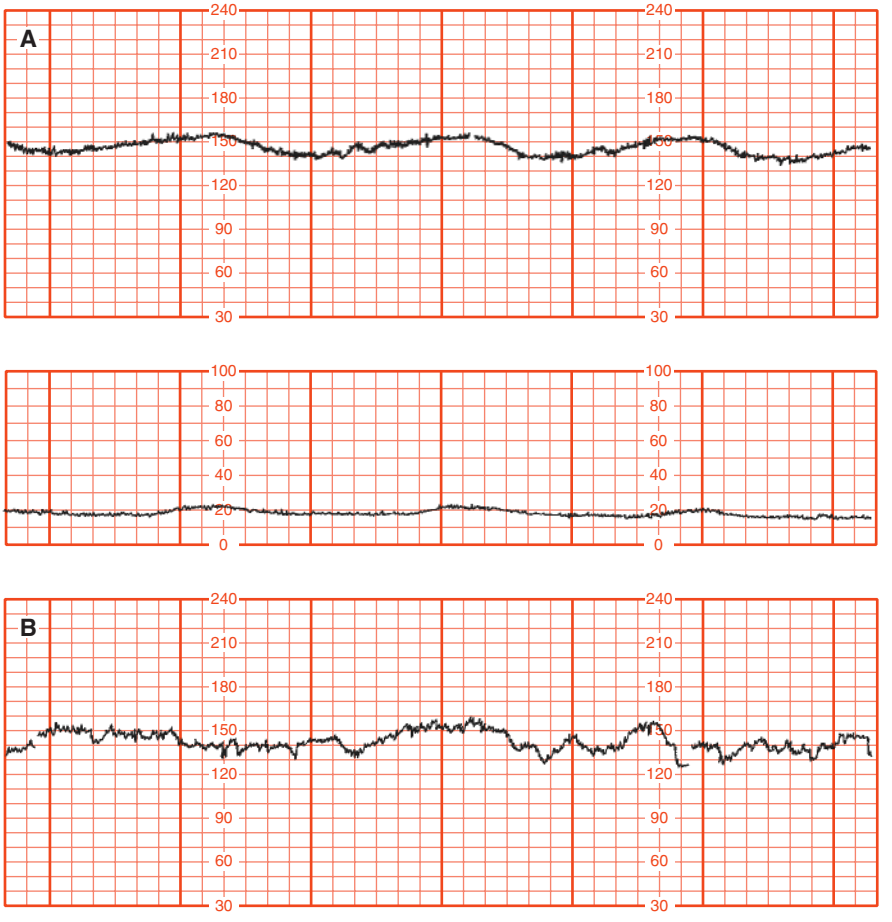


FIGURE 20-7 Two antepartum fetal heart rate (FHR) tracings in a 28-week pregnant woman with diabetic ketoacidosis. **A.** FHR tracing (*upper panel*) and accompanying contraction tracing (*second panel*). Tracing, obtained during maternal and fetal acidemia, shows absence of accelerations, diminished variability, and late decelerations with weak spontaneous contractions. **B.** Fetal heart rate tracing shows return of normal accelerations and variability of the fetal heart rate following correction of maternal acidemia.

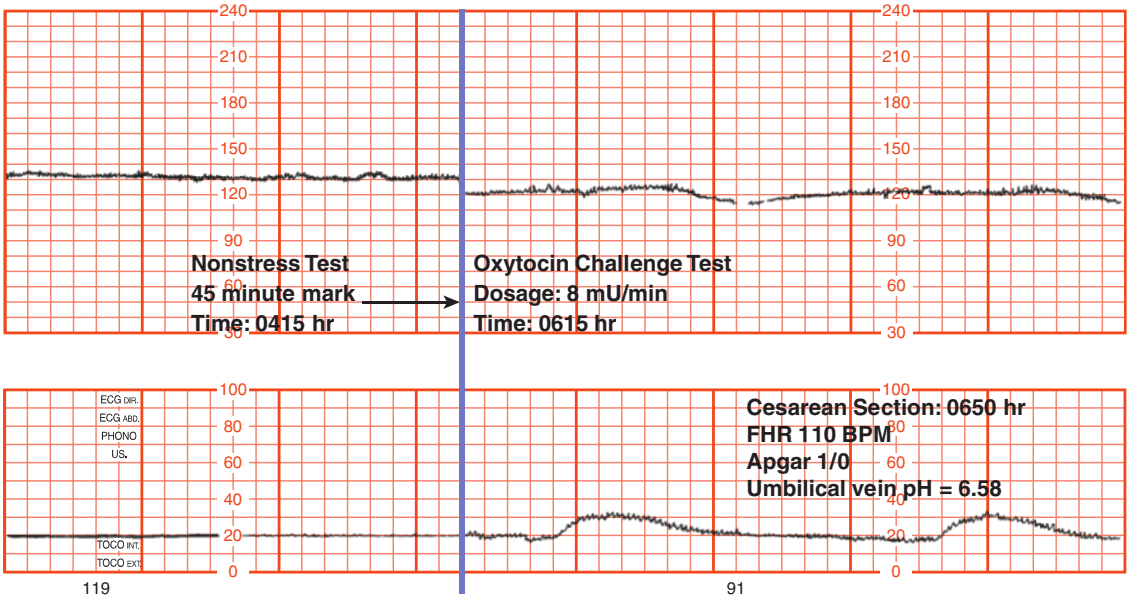


FIGURE 20-8 Nonreactive nonstress test (*left side of tracing*) followed by contraction stress test showing mild, late decelerations (*right side of tracing*). Cesarean delivery was performed, and the severely acidemic fetus could not be resuscitated.

(1) baseline variability <5 bpm, (2) absent accelerations, and (3) late decelerations with spontaneous uterine contractions. These mirrored experiences from Parkland Hospital in which absence of accelerations during an 80-minute recording period in 27 fetuses was associated consistently with evidence of uteroplacental pathology (Leveno, 1983). The latter included fetal-growth restriction in 75 percent, oligohydramnios in 80 percent, fetal acidemia in 40 percent, meconium in 30 percent, and placental infarction in 93 percent.

Interval Between Testing

Set originally and arbitrarily at 7 days, the interval between NSTs varies based on indication (Paul, 1995). According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021a), weekly testing is undertaken in the setting of stable maternal medical conditions such as pregestational diabetes, chronic hypertension, or lupus. For high-risk conditions such as preeclampsia remote from term, some perform NSTs daily. Fetal conditions require individualized periodic testing based on the fetal complication. Fetal-growth restriction is a common indication for which testing intervals vary (Fig. 47-6, p. 829).

Decelerations During Nonstress Testing

Fetal movements commonly produce heart rate decelerations. In one study of 16 near-term fetuses, one half to two thirds of NST tracings had decelerations, depending on the vigor of the fetal motion (Timor-Tritsch, 1978). This high incidence of decelerations inevitably makes interpretation of their significance problematic. Indeed, Meis and coworkers (1986) reported that variable fetal heart rate decelerations during NSTs were not a sign of fetal compromise. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021a) has concluded that variable decelerations, if nonrepetitive and brief—less than 30 seconds—do not indicate fetal compromise or the need for obstetrical intervention. Repetitive variable decelerations—at least three in 20 minutes—have been associated with a greater risk of cesarean delivery for fetal distress. Decelerations lasting ≥1 minute are reported to have an even worse fetal prognosis (Bourgeois, 1984; Druzin, 1981; Pazos, 1982).

Hoskins and associates (1991) attempted to refine interpretation of tests that showed variable decelerations by adding sonographic estimation of amnionic fluid volume. The incidence of cesarean delivery for intrapartum fetal distress progressively rose concurrently with the decline of amnionic fluid volume. Variable decelerations during an NST plus oligohydramnios resulted in a 75-percent cesarean delivery rate. Fetal distress in labor, however, also frequently developed in those pregnancies with variable decelerations but with normal amounts of amnionic fluid. Others report similar results (Grubb, 1992).

False-reactive Nonstress Tests

In one review of fetal death within 7 days of a reactive NST, the most frequent indication for testing was postterm pregnancy (Smith, 1987). The mean interval between testing and death was 4 days, with a range of 1 to 7 days. The single most common autopsy finding was meconium aspiration, often associated with some type of umbilical cord abnormality. The authors concluded that acute asphyxia had provoked fetal gasping. They considered an NST inadequate to preclude an acute asphyxial event, but viewed amnionic fluid volume assessment as valuable. Other ascribed frequent causes of fetal death despite a false-reactive NST included intrauterine infection, abnormal cord position, fetal malformations, and placental abruption.

BIOPHYSICAL PROFILE

Assessing five specific fetal biophysical variables more accurately predicts fetal health (Manning, 1980). These include heart rate acceleration, breathing, movement, tone, and amnionic fluid volume (Table 20-2). In the commonly used *biophysical profile (BPP)*, each normal variable is assigned a score of 2, and abnormal variables are given a score of 0. Thus, the highest score possible for a normal fetus is 10. Because fetal breathing and movement are episodic, 30 minutes are allotted to perform a BPP before a score of 0 is assigned to any component. Figure 20-9 shows color Doppler evidence of amnionic fluid flowing through the nares with fetal breathing. In one study, BPP scores were higher if a test was performed in late evening compared with the morning (Ozkaya, 2012). Narcotics and sedatives can significantly lower the score (Kopecky, 2000).

Using the BPP interpretation and management strategy shown in Table 20-3, Manning and colleagues (1987) evaluated more than 19,000 pregnancies. Greater than 97 percent of the tested pregnancies had normal results. They reported a

TABLE 20-2. Components and Scores for the Biophysical Profile

Component	Score 2	Score 0
Nonstress test[a]	≥2 accelerations within 20–40 min	0 or 1 acceleration within 20–40 min
Fetal breathing	≥1 episode of rhythmic breathing lasting ≥30 sec	<30 sec of breathing
Fetal movement	≥3 discrete body or limb movements	<3 discrete movements
Fetal tone	≥1 episode of extremity extension and subsequent return to flexion	0 extension/flexion events
Amnionic fluid volume[b]	A pocket of amnionic fluid that measures at least 2 cm in two planes perpendicular to each other (2 × 2 cm pocket)	Deepest single vertical pocket ≤2 cm

[a]May be omitted if all four sonographic components are normal.
[b]Further evaluation warranted, regardless of biophysical composite score, if deepest vertical amnionic fluid pocket ≤2 cm.

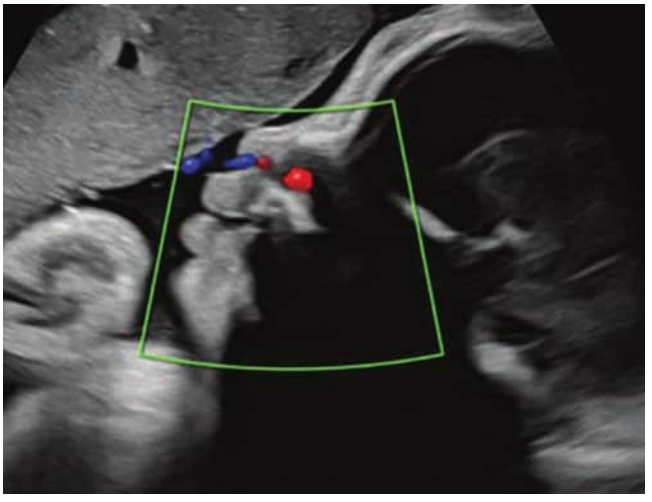


FIGURE 20-9 A sagittal color Doppler image displays the movement of amnionic fluid through the nares during fetal breathing.

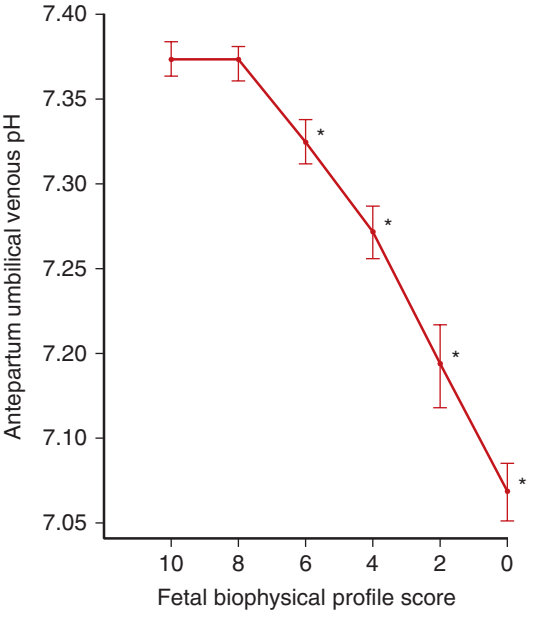


FIGURE 20-10 Mean umbilical vein pH (±2 SD) obtained by cordocentesis in relation to fetal biophysical profile score category. (Data from Manning, 1993.)

false-normal test rate—defined by an antepartum death of a structurally normal fetus—that approximated 1 per 1000. The most common identifiable causes of fetal death after a normal BPP score include fetomaternal hemorrhage, umbilical cord accident, and placental abruption (Dayal, 1999).

Subsequently, Manning and associates (1993) published a remarkable description of 493 fetuses in which BPP scores were correlated with umbilical venous blood pH values. This blood was being obtained via antepartum cordocentesis for other specific fetal indications. Namely, karyotyping of fetal-growth restricted fetuses constituted 20 percent, and the remainder had alloimmune hemolytic anemia requiring hemoglobin measurement. As shown in Figure 20-10, a BPP score of 0 was almost invariably associated with significant fetal acidemia, whereas a normal score of 8 or 10 was associated with normal pH. An equivocal test result—a score of 6—was a poor predictor of an abnormal outcome. A drop in the BPP score from 2 or 4 down to 0 more accurately predicted an abnormal fetal outcome. Overall, BPP scores provided poor sensitivity to predict cord blood pH. Similar studies have concluded the same (Salvesan, 1993; Weiner, 1996). Kaur and colleagues (2008) performed daily BPPs to ascertain the optimal delivery time in 48 growth-restricted preterm fetuses that weighed <1000 g. Despite scores of 8 in 27 fetuses and 6 in 13 others, 6 died and 21 were acidemic.

Modified Biophysical Profile

BPP performance is labor intensive and requires a trained sonographer. In response, Clark and coworkers (1989) created

TABLE 20-3. Interpretation of Biophysical Profile Score

Biophysical Profile Score	Interpretation	Recommended Management
10	Normal, nonasphyxiated fetus	No fetal indication for intervention; repeat test weekly
8/10 (Normal AFV) 8/8 (NST not done)	Normal, nonasphyxiated fetus	No fetal indication for intervention; repeat test weekly
8/10 (Decreased AFV)	Chronic fetal asphyxia suspected	If ≥36 weeks, deliver If <36 weeks, monitor per institution's protocol
6 (Normal AFV)	Equivocal	If ≥37 weeks, deliver If <37 weeks and normal fluid, repeat test in 24 hours If repeat test >6, monitor per institution's protocol
6 (Decreased AFV)	Possible fetal asphyxia	If 36–37 weeks, deliver If <36 weeks, monitor per institution's protocol
4	Probable fetal asphyxia	If ≥32 weeks, deliver If <32 weeks, individualize management based on maternal and fetal conditions
0 or 2	Almost certain fetal asphyxia	Deliver

AFV = amnionic fluid volume; NST = nonstress test.
Adapted from American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a; Liston, 2018; Manning, 2018.

an abbreviated BPP, in which an NST was coupled with amnionic fluid volume assessment. In 2628 singleton pregnancies, the NST was performed twice weekly. Described in the next section, amnionic fluid volume was measured by the amnionic fluid index (AFI), and values ≤5 cm were considered abnormal. This abbreviated BPP required approximately 10 minutes to perform. The authors considered it a superb antepartum surveillance method because no fetuses died unexpectedly.

From another study of 17,429 modified BPPs in 2774 women, investigators concluded that such testing was an excellent fetal surveillance tool (Nageotte, 1994). Miller and associates (1996a) reported results of more than 54,000 modified BPPs performed in 15,400 high-risk pregnancies. They described a false-negative rate of 0.8 per 1000 and a false-positive rate of 1.5 percent. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021a) has concluded that the BPP and modified BPP are comparable to other biophysical fetal surveillance approaches in predicting fetal well-being.

AMNIONIC FLUID VOLUME

The importance of amnionic fluid volume estimation is indicated by its inclusion into virtually all schemes of fetal health assessment (Frøen, 2008). Physiologically, diminished uteroplacental perfusion may lead to lower fetal renal blood flow, decreased urine production, and ultimately, oligohydramnios (Chap. 14, p. 260). Amnionic fluid volume is measured either by the AFI or by the single deepest vertical pocket (DVP). In one study of more than 1000 women in which both methods were compared, AFI led to a higher rate of oligohydramnios diagnoses and induction of labor. Despite this, perinatal outcomes were not improved (Kehl, 2016). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021a) concludes that DVP measurement, as opposed to AFI, is associated with fewer unnecessary interventions but comparable perinatal outcomes (Nabhan, 2008; Reddy, 2014). An AFI ≤5 cm and a DVP ≤2 cm is considered abnormal.

DOPPLER VELOCIMETRY

Blood flow velocity measured by Doppler ultrasound reflects downstream impedance (Chap. 14, p. 261). This Doppler velocimetry has been used to interrogate the umbilical artery, middle cerebral artery (MCA), and ductus venosus. With umbilical artery studies, abnormal waveforms correlated with placental villous hypovascularity. Specifically, of the small placental arterial channels, 60 to 70 percent must be obliterated before the umbilical artery Doppler waveform becomes abnormal. Such extensive placental vascular pathology has a major effect on fetal circulation. According to Trudinger (2007), because more than 40 percent of the combined fetal ventricular output is directed to the placenta, obliteration of placental vascular channel increases afterload and leads to fetal hypoxemia. This in turn leads to ventricular dilation and redistribution of MCA blood flow. Ultimately, pressure rises in the ductus venosus due to afterload in the right side of the fetal heart (Baschat, 2004). Clinically, abnormal Doppler waveforms in the ductus venosus are a late finding in the progression of fetal deterioration due to chronic hypoxemia. To predict placental dysfunction, maternal uterine artery Doppler velocimetry also has been assessed, with the goal to balance stillbirth against the risks of preterm delivery (Ghidini, 2007).

Umbilical Artery

The umbilical artery systolic-diastolic (S/D) ratio is considered abnormal if it is above the 95th percentile for gestational age or if diastolic flow is either absent or reversed (Chap. 14, p. 262). Absent or reversed end-diastolic flow signifies greater impedance to umbilical artery blood flow (Fig. 47-7, p. 830). It is reported to result from poorly vascularized placental villi and is seen in extreme cases of fetal-growth restriction (Todros, 1999). The perinatal mortality rate is increased when absent or reversed end-diastolic flow is present (Viero, 2004).

Umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry to evaluate fetal health has been extensively assessed in randomized trials. In one, 1360 women with a high risk for stillbirth underwent either an NST or Doppler velocimetry, and abnormal results prompted labor induction. More patients in the Doppler group required induction, yet the cesarean delivery rate for intrapartum fetal distress was 4.6 percent. This rate was significantly lower than the 8.7-percent cesarean rate for those receiving an NST (Williams, 2003). The authors believed that Doppler assessment, compared with an NST, identified a higher proportion of patients with early placental compromise. Identified early, these fetuses experienced less distress, which yielded a lower cesarean delivery rate. Similarly, Yoon and coworkers (1992) found that the BPP and umbilical artery Doppler measurements are comparable indicators of fetal acidosis. Introduction of Doppler velocimetry as a primary screening test must balance any advantages against its necessary training and associated costs.

In addition, umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry does not effectively predict fetal health in normal pregnancies (Alfirevic, 2015; Page, 2017). Gonzalez and associates (2007) found that abnormal umbilical artery Doppler findings in a cohort of growth-restricted fetuses were the best predictors of perinatal outcomes. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021a) has concluded that umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry has not proved valuable as a screening test, except in cases of fetal-growth restriction (Chap. 47, p. 830).

Ductus Venosus

Doppler ultrasound can also assess the fetal venous circulation, and as discussed earlier, an abnormal ductus venosus Doppler waveform indicates cardiac dysfunction. However, its routine use in surveillance of fetal-growth restriction is not recommended (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2020).

Ductus venosus Doppler is also used in the staging of twin-twin transfusion syndrome (Quintero, 1999). Abnormal Doppler indices reflect myocardial dysfunction and predict a poorer outcome (Banek, 2003). Additionally, this Doppler method can help monitor fetuses with congenital heart defects and supraventricular tachycardia (SVT) (Seravalli, 2016). Namely, SVT can induce a reversible cardiomyopathy that may lead to hydrops.

Ductus venosus Doppler patterns may aid prediction and monitor improvement following treatment. Thus, ductus venosus Doppler may have a role in monitoring pregnancies at increased risk for fetal cardiovascular decline (Baschat, 2010).

Middle Cerebral Artery

Doppler velocimetry of the MCA is the primary method of detecting fetal anemia (Chap. 14, p. 263). With fetal anemia, the *peak systolic velocity* is enhanced due to greater cardiac output and decreased blood viscosity. However, to detect fetal compromise, Doppler velocimetry of the MCA is not recommended (Morris, 2012). In one randomized study of 665 women assigned to modified BPP alone or to modified BPP plus MCA and umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry, pregnancy outcomes did not differ (Ott, 1998).

Uterine Artery

Vascular resistance in the uterine circulation normally declines in the first half of pregnancy. This stems from trophoblast invasion and remodeling of maternal uterine vessels (Chap. 5, p. 90). Uterine artery Doppler velocimetry may be most helpful in assessing pregnancies at high risk of uteroplacental insufficiency (Abramowicz, 2008). Persistence or development of high-resistance patterns has been linked to various pregnancy complications (Sciscione, 2009; Velathur, 2014). In a study of 30,519 unselected British women, uterine artery velocimetry was assessed at 22 to 24 weeks' gestation (Smith, 2007). The risk of fetal death before 32 weeks, when associated with abruption, preeclampsia, or fetal-growth restriction, was significantly linked to high-resistance flow. However, technique standards and criteria to define an abnormal test are lacking. Thus, uterine artery Doppler studies are not considered standard practice in either low- or high-risk populations (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2020).

ANTENATAL TESTING SUMMARY

Despite a continuous evolution of options, the precision of any given method is limited. Moreover, the wide range of normal biological fetal variation makes interpretation of test results challenging. This prompts many clinicians to use antenatal testing to forecast fetal *wellness* rather than *illness.*

Antenatal testing efficacy was reviewed between 1971 and 1985 at Los Angeles County Hospital (Platt, 1987). Nearly 17,000 women underwent antepartum testing of various types. Fetal surveillance rose from <1 percent of pregnancies in the early 1970s to 15 percent in the mid-1980s. These authors concluded that such testing was clearly beneficial because the fetal death rate was significantly less in the tested high-risk pregnancies compared with the rate in those not tested. The study, however, did not consider other innovations incorporated into practice during those years. Results from Ghana suggest that NSTs may be beneficial in low-resource countries (Lawrence, 2016). Namely, in an observational study of 316 pregnancies complicated by gestational hypertension, women undergoing an NST had a nonsignificant decreased risk for stillbirth compared with those not tested—3.6 versus 9.2 percent, respectively. However, the benefits of antenatal fetal testing have not been sufficiently evaluated in randomized trials.

Another important and unanswered question is whether antepartum fetal surveillance identifies fetal asphyxia early enough to prevent brain damage. Manning and associates (1998) studied the incidence of cerebral palsy in 26,290 high-risk pregnancies managed with serial BPP testing. These outcomes were compared with those of 58,657 low-risk pregnancies in which antepartum testing was not performed. The rate of cerebral palsy was 1.3 per 1000 in tested pregnancies compared with 4.7 per 1000 in untested women. Todd and colleagues (1992) attempted to correlate cognitive development in infants up to age 2 years following abnormal umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry or NST results. Only abnormal NST results were associated with marginally poorer cognitive outcomes. These investigators concluded that by the time fetal compromise is diagnosed with antenatal testing, fetal damage has already been sustained. Low and coworkers (2003) reached a similar conclusion.

Indications for antepartum testing include fetal and maternal conditions that increase the risk for stillbirth (Table 20-4) (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021b). According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021a), a *normal* antepartum fetal test result is highly reassuring that a stillbirth will not occur within 1 week. This conclusion was reached after an analysis of reports of stillbirth rates associated with the various antepartum fetal heart rate tests (Table 20-5).

The most important consideration in deciding when to begin antepartum testing is the prognosis for neonatal survival. The severity of maternal disease is another. In general, with most high-risk pregnancies, testing begins by 32 to 34 weeks' gestation. Pregnancies with severe complications, such as

TABLE 20-4. Indications for Antepartum Testing

Maternal	Pregnancy-related
Chronic hypertension	Gestational hypertension
Pregestational DM	Preeclampsia
SLE	Insulin-requiring gestational DM
Antiphospholipid syndrome	Oligohydramnios
Hemoglobinopathies	Polyhydramnios
Cyanotic heart disease	Postterm pregnancy
Cardiomyopathy	Prior stillbirth
Cystic fibrosis	Isoimmunization
Restrictive lung disease	Cholestasis
Chronic renal disease	Velamentous cord insertion
Hyperthyroidism	Single umbilical artery
In vitro fertilization	**Fetal**
Substance abuse	Fetal-growth restriction
Chemotherapy (current)	Decreased fetal movement
Prepregnancy BMI ≥35	Multifetal gestation
Maternal age >35	

BMI = body mass index; DM = diabetes mellitus; SLE = systemic lupus erythematosus.

TABLE 20-5. Stillbirth Rates within 1 Week of a Normal Antepartum Fetal Surveillance Test

Antepartum Fetal Test	Stillbirth[a] Rate/1000	Number
Nonstress test	1.9	5861
Contraction stress test	0.3	12,656
Biophysical profile	0.8	44,828
Modified biophysical profile	0.8	54,617

[a]Corrected for lethal anomalies and unpredictable causes of fetal death such as abruption or cord accident.

fetal-growth restriction, might require testing as early as 26 to 28 weeks. The frequency for repeating tests is arbitrarily set at 7 days, but more frequent testing is often done.

REFERENCES

Abramowicz JS, Sheiner E: Ultrasound of the placenta: a systemic approach. Part II: function assessment (Doppler). Placenta 29(11):921, 2008

Aladjem S, Feria A, Rest J, et al: Effect of maternal glucose load on fetal activity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 134(3):276, 1979

Alfirevic Z, Stampalija T, Medley N: Fetal and umbilical Doppler ultrasound in normal pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD001450, 2015

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Intrapartum fetal heart rate monitoring: nomenclature, interpretation, and general management principles. Practice Bulletin No. 106, July 2009, Reaffirmed 2019

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Antepartum fetal surveillance. Practice Bulletin No. 229, May 2021a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Indications for outpatient antenatal fetal surveillance. Committee Opinion No. 828, May 2021b

Babazadeh R, Abdali K, Lotfalizadeh M, et al: Diurnal nonstress test variations in the human fetus at risk. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 90(3):189, 2005

Badalian SS, Chao CR, Fox HE, et al: Fetal breathing-related nasal fluid flow velocity in uncomplicated pregnancies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 169:563, 1993

Banek CS, Hecher K, Hackeloer BJ, et al: Long-term neurodevelopmental outcome after intrauterine laser treatment for severe twin-twin transfusion syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188(4):876, 2003

Baschat AA: Ductus venosus doppler for fetal surveillance in high-risk pregnancies. Clin Obstet Gynecol 53(4)858, 2010

Baschat AA: Opinion and review: Doppler application in the delivery timing in the preterm growth-restricted fetus: another step in the right direction. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 23:118, 2004

Baschat AA, Cosmi E, Bilardo C, et al: Predictors of neonatal outcome in early-onset placental dysfunction. Obstet Gynecol 109:253, 2007

Berndl AM, O'Connell CM, McLeod NL: Fetal movement monitoring: how are we doing as educators? J Obstet Gynaecol Can 35(1):22, 2013

Bourgeois FJ, Thiagarajah S, Harbert GM Jr: The significance of fetal heart rate decelerations during nonstress testing. Am J Obstet Gynecol 150:213, 1984

Bradford B, Cronin R, McKinlay C, et al: Maternally perceived fetal movement patterns: The influence of body mass index. Early Hum Dev 15:140, 2019a

Bradford BF, Cronin RS, McKinlay CJ, et al: A diurnal fetal movement pattern: Findings from a cross-sectional study of maternally perceived fetal movements in the third trimester of pregnancy. PLoS One 14(6):e0217583, 2019b

Brown R, Higgins LE, Johnstone ED, et al: Maternal perception of fetal movements in late pregnancy is affected by type and duration of fetal movement. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(13):2145, 2016

Brown R, Patrick J: The nonstress test: how long is enough? Am J Obstet Gynecol 141:646, 1981

Clark SL, Sabey P, Jolley K: Nonstress testing with acoustic stimulation and amnionic fluid volume assessment: 5973 tests without unexpected fetal death. Am J Obstet Gynecol 160:694, 1989

Coppens M, Vindla S, James DK, et al: Computerized analysis of acute and chronic changes in fetal heart rate variation and fetal activity in association with maternal smoking. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185(2):421, 2001

Cousins LM, Poeltler DM, Faron S, et al: Nonstress testing at ≤32.0 weeks' gestation: a randomized trial comparing different assessment criteria. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(4):311.e1, 2012

Dawes GS: Breathing before birth in animals and man. An essay in medicine. Physiol Med 290:557, 1974

Dawes GS, Fox HE, Leduc BM, et al: Respiratory movements and rapid eye movement sleep in the foetal lamb. J Physiol 220:119, 1972

Dayal AK, Manning FA, Berck DJ, et al: Fetal death after normal biophysical profile score: an eighteen year experience. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181:1231, 1999

Devoe LD, Castillo RA, Sherline DM: The nonstress test as a diagnostic test: a critical reappraisal. Am J Obstet Gynecol 152:1047, 1986

Devoe LD, McKenzie J, Searle NS, et al: Clinical sequelae of the extended nonstress test. Am J Obstet Gynecol 151:1074, 1985

Druzin ML, Gratacos J, Keegan KA, et al: Antepartum fetal heart rate testing, 7. The significance of fetal bradycardia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 139:194, 1981

Eller DP, Scardo JA, Dillon AE, et al: Distance from an intrauterine hydrophone as a factor affecting intrauterine sound pressure levels produced by the vibroacoustic stimulation test. Am J Obstet Gynecol 173:523, 1995

Frager NB, Miyazaki FS: Intrauterine monitoring of contractions during breast stimulation. Obstet Gynecol 69:767, 1987

Freeman RK: The use of the oxytocin challenge test for antepartum clinical evaluation of uteroplacental respiratory function. Am J Obstet Gynecol 121:481, 1975

Frøen JF, Tviet JV, Saastad E, et al: Management of decreased fetal movements. Semin Perinatol 32(4):307, 2008

Ghidini A: Doppler of the ductus venosus in severe preterm fetal growth restriction. A test in search of a purpose? Obstet Gynecol 109:250, 2007

Gonzalez JM, Stamilio DM, Ural S, et al: Relationship between abnormal fetal testing and adverse perinatal outcomes in intrauterine growth restriction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196:e48, 2007

Grant A, Elbourne D, Valentin L, et al: Routine formal fetal movement counting and risk of antepartum late death in normally formed singletons. Lancet 2:345, 1989

Grubb DK, Paul RH: Amnionic fluid index and prolonged antepartum fetal heart rate decelerations. Obstet Gynecol 79:558, 1992

Guinn DA, Kimberlin KF, Wigton TR, et al: Fetal heart rate characteristics at 25 to 28 weeks gestation. Am J Perinatol 15:507, 1998

Harrington K, Thompson O, Jorden L, et al: Obstetric outcomes in women who present with a reduction in fetal movements in the third trimester of pregnancy. J Perinat Med 26:77, 1998

Heazell AE, Frøen JF: Methods of fetal movement counting and the detection of fetal compromise. J Obstet Gynaecol 28:147, 2008

Heazell AE, Warland J, Stacey T, et al: Stillbirth is associated with perceived alterations in fetal activity—findings from an international case control study. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 17(1):369, 2017

Hoskins IA, Frieden FJ, Young BK: Variable decelerations in reactive nonstress tests with decreased amnionic fluid index predict fetal compromise. Am J Obstet Gynecol 165:1094, 1991

Huddleston JF, Sutliff JG, Robinson D: Contraction stress test by intermittent nipple stimulation. Obstet Gynecol 63:669, 1984

Jansson LM, Velez M, McConnell K, et al: Maternal buprenorphine treatment and fetal neurobehavioral development. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(5):529.e, 2017

Johnson T, Besigner R, Thomas R: New clues to fetal behavior and well-being. Contemp Ob/Gyn May 1988

Kaur S, Picconi JL, Chadha R, et al: Biophysical profile in the treatment of intrauterine growth-restricted fetuses who weigh <1000 g. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199:264.e1, 2008

Kehl S, Schelkle A, Thomas A, et al: Single deepest vertical pocket or amniotic fluid index as evaluation test for predicting adverse pregnancy outcome (SAFE trial): a multicenter, open-label, randomized controlled trial. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 47(6):674, 2016

Koenen SV, Mulder EJ, Wijnberger LD, et al: Transient loss of the diurnal rhythms of fetal movements, heart rate, and its variation after maternal betamethasone administration. Pediatr Res 57(5 Pt 1):662, 2005

Kopecky EA, Ryan ML, Barrett JF, et al: Fetal response to maternally administered morphine. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:424, 2000

Lalor JG, Fawole B, Alfirevic Z, et al: Biophysical profile for fetal assessment in high risk pregnancies. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD000038, 2008

Laventhal NT, Dildy GA III, Belfort MA: Fetal tachyarrhythmia associated with vibroacoustic stimulation. Obstet Gynecol 101:116, 2003

Lawrence ER, Quarshie EL, Lewis KF, et al: Introduction of cardiotocograph monitoring improves birth outcomes in women with preeclampsia in Ghana. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 132(1):103, 2016

Lee CY, DiLoreto PC, O'Lane JM: A study of fetal heart rate acceleration patterns. Obstet Gynecol 45:142, 1975

Leveno KJ, Williams ML, DePalma RT, et al: Perinatal outcome in the absence of antepartum fetal heart rate acceleration. Obstet Gynecol 61:347, 1983

Liston R, Sawchuck D, Young D: No. 197a-Fetal health surveillance: antepartum consensus guideline. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 40(4):e251, 2018
Low JA, Killen H, Derrick EJ: Antepartum fetal asphyxia in the preterm pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:461, 2003
Macones GA, Hankins GD, Spong CY, et al: The 2008 National Institute of Child Health and Human Development workshop report on electronic fetal monitoring: update on definitions, interpretation, and research guidelines. Obstet Gynecol 112:661, 2008
Mangesi L, Hofmeyr GJ, Smith V, et al: Fetal movement counting for assessment of fetal wellbeing. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD004909, 2015
Manning FA, Bondagji N, Harman CR, et al: Fetal assessment based on fetal biophysical profile scoring VIII: the incidence of cerebral palsy in tested and untested perinates. Am J Obstet Gynecol 178:696, 1998
Manning FA, Morrison I, Harman CR, et al: Fetal assessment based on fetal biophysical profile scoring: experience in 19,221 referred high-risk pregnancies, 2. An analysis of false-negative fetal deaths. Am J Obstet Gynecol 157:880, 1987
Manning FA, Platt LD, Sipos L: Antepartum fetal evaluation: development of a fetal biophysical profile. Am J Obstet Gynecol 136:787, 1980
Manning FA, Snijders R, Harman CR, et al: Fetal biophysical profile score, VI. Correlation with antepartum umbilical venous fetal pH. Am J Obstet Gynecol 169:755, 1993
Meis PJ, Ureda JR, Swain M, et al: Variable decelerations during nonstress tests are not a sign of fetal compromise. Am J Obstet Gynecol 154:586, 1986
Miller DA, Rabello YA, Paul RH: The modified biophysical profile: antepartum testing in the 1990s. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:812, 1996a
Miller F, Miller D, Paul R, et al: Is one fetal heart rate acceleration during a nonstress test as reliable as two in predicting fetal status? Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:337, 1996b
Morris RK, Say R, Robson SC, et al: Systematic review and meta-analysis of middle cerebral artery Doppler to predict perinatal wellbeing. J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 165(2):141, 2012
Mulder EJ, de Heus R, Visser GH: Antenatal corticosteroid therapy: short-term effects on fetal behaviour and haemodynamics. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 14(3):151, 2009
Nabhan AF, Abdelmoula YA: Amniotic fluid index versus single deepest vertical pocket as a screening test for preventing adverse pregnancy outcome. Cochran Database Syst Rev 3:CD006593, 2008
Nageotte MP, Towers CV, Asrat T, et al: Perinatal outcome with the modified biophysical profile. Am J Obstet Gynecol 170:1672, 1994
Nijhuis JG, Prechtl HF, Martin CB Jr, et al: Are there behavioural states in the human fetus? Early Hum Dev 6:177, 1982
Nitsche J, Langman LJ, Penn HJ, et al: Effect of acetaminophen on fetal activity. Am J Perinatol 32(13):1277, 2015
Norman JE, Heazell AE, Rodriguez A, et al: Awareness of fetal movements and care package to reduce fetal mortality (AFFIRM): a stepped wedge, cluster-randomised trial. Lancet 392(10158):1629, 2018
Oosterhof H, vd Stege JG, Lander M, et al: Urine production rate is related to behavioural states in the near term human fetus. BJOG 100:920, 1993
Ott WJ, Mora G, Arias F, et al: Comparison of the modified biophysical profile to a "new" biophysical profile incorporating the middle cerebral artery to umbilical artery velocity flow systolic/diastolic ratio. Am J Obstet Gynecol 178:1346, 1998
Ozkaya E, Baser E, Cinar M, et al: Does diurnal rhythm have an impact on fetal biophysical profile? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(4):335, 2012
Page JM, Silver RM: Interventions to prevent stillbirth. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 22(3):135, 2017
Patrick J, Campbell K, Carmichael L, et al: Patterns of gross fetal body movements over 24-hour observation intervals during the last 10 weeks of pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 142:363, 1982
Patrick J, Campbell K, Carmichael L, et al: Patterns of human fetal breathing during the last 10 weeks of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 56:24, 1980
Paul RH, Miller DA: Nonstress test. Clin Obstet Gynecol 38(1):3, 1995
Pazos R, Vuolo K, Aladjem S, et al: Association of spontaneous fetal heart rate decelerations during antepartum nonstress testing and intrauterine growth retardation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 144:574, 1982
Peirano P, Algarín C, Uauy R: Sleep-wake states and their regulatory mechanisms throughout early human development. J Pediatr 143:S70, 2003
Perez-Delboy A, Weiss J, Michels A, et al: A randomized trial of vibroacoustic stimulation for antenatal fetal testing. Am J Obstet Gynecol 187:S146, 2002
Petrikovsky BM, Kaplan GP: Diurnal non-stress test variations in healthy term fetuses. A call for evening appointments for fetal testing. Early Hum Dev 44(2):127, 1996
Pillai M, James D: Behavioural states in normal mature human fetuses. Arch Dis Child 65:39, 1990a
Pillai M, James D: The development of fetal heart rate patterns during normal pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 76:812, 1990b
Platt LD, Paul RH, Phelan J, et al: Fifteen years of experience with antepartum fetal testing. Am J Obstet Gynecol 156:1509, 1987
Pollock D, Ziaian T, Pearson E, et al: Breaking through the silence in antenatal care: fetal movement and stillbirth education. Women Birth 33(1):77, 2020
Quintero RA, Morales WJ, Allen MH, et al: Staging of twin-twin transfusion syndrome. Perinatol 19(8 Pt 1):550, 1999
Ray M, Freeman R, Pine S, et al: Clinical experience with the oxytocin challenge test. Am J Obstet Gynecol 114:1, 1972
Reddy UM, Abuhamad AZ, Levine D, et al: Fetal imaging: executive summary of a joint Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, American College of Radiology, Society for Pediatric Radiology, and Society of Radiologists in Ultrasound Fetal Imaging Workshop. Obstet Gynecol 123(5):1070, 2014
Reddy UM, Filly RA, Copel JA, et al: Prenatal imaging: ultrasonography and magnetic resonance imaging. Obstet Gynecol 112(1):145, 2008
Saastad E, Winje BA, Stray Penderson B, et al: Fetal movement counting improved identification of fetal growth restriction and perinatal outcomes—a multi-centre, randomized, controlled trial. PLoS One 6(12):e28482, 2011
Sadovsky E, Evron S, Weinstein D: Daily fetal movement recording in normal pregnancy. Riv Obstet Ginecol Practica Med Perinatal 59:395, 1979a
Sadovsky E, Laufer N, Allen JW: The incidence of different types of fetal movement during pregnancy. BJOG 86:10, 1979b
Sadovsky E, Yaffe H: Daily fetal movement recording and fetal prognosis. Obstet Gynecol 41:845, 1973
Sajapala S, AboEllail MA, Kanenshi K, et al: 4D ultrasound study of fetal movement early in the second trimester of pregnancy. J Perinat Med 45(6):737, 2017
Salvesen DR, Freeman J, Brudenell JM, et al: Prediction of fetal acidemia in pregnancies complicated by maternal diabetes by biophysical scoring and fetal heart rate monitoring. BJOG 100:227, 1993
Sasson A, Tsur A, Kalter A, et al: Reduced fetal movement: factors affecting maternal perception. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(8):1318, 2016
Scala C, Bhide A, Familiari A, et al: Number of episodes of reduced fetal movement at term: association with adverse perinatal outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(5):678.e1, 2015
Schellpfeffer MA, Hoyle D, Johnson JW: Antepartum uterine hypercontractility secondary to nipple stimulation. Obstet Gynecol 65:588, 1985
Sciscione AC, Hayes EJ: Uterine artery Doppler flow studies in obstetric practice. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(2):121, 2009
Sciscione AC, Hayes EJ, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Uterine artery Doppler flow studies in obstetric practice. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(2):121, 2009
Seravalli V, Miller JL, Block-Abraham D, et al: Ductus venosus Doppler in the assessment of fetal cardiovascular health: an updated practical approach. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 95(6):635, 2016
Sherer DM, Spong CY, Ghidini A, et al: In preterm fetuses decreased amniotic fluid volume is associated with decreased fetal movements. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:344, 1996
Smith CV, Nguyen HN, Kovacs B, et al: Fetal death following antepartum fetal heart rate testing: a review of 65 cases. Obstet Gynecol 70:18, 1987
Smith GC, Yu CK, Papageorghiou AT, et al: Maternal uterine artery Doppler flow velocimetry and the risk of stillbirth. Obstet Gynecol 109:144, 2007
Smith JH, Anand KJ, Cotes PM, et al: Antenatal fetal heart rate variation in relation to the respiratory and metabolic status of the compromised human fetus. BJOG 95:980, 1988
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM), Martins JG, Biggio JR, et al: A Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine Consult Series #52: Diagnosis and management of fetal growth restriction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(4):B2, 2020
Sorokin Y, Bottoms SF, Dierker CJ, et al: The clustering of fetal heart rate changes and fetal movements in pregnancies between 20 and 30 weeks gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 143:952, 1982
Spinillo A, Montanari L, Bergante C, et al: Prognostic value of umbilical artery Doppler studies in unselected preterm deliveries. Obstet Gynecol 105:613, 2005
Stacey T, Thompson JM, Mitchell EA, et al: Maternal perception of fetal activity and late stillbirth risk: findings from the Auckland Stillbirth Study. Birth 38(4):311, 2011
Suwanrath C, Suntharasaj T: Sleep-wake cycles in normal fetuses. Arch Gynecol Obstet 281(3):449, 2010
Thaler I, Goodman JD, Dawes GS: Effects of maternal cigarette smoking on fetal breathing and fetal movements. Am J Obstet Gynecol 138(3):282, 1980
Timor-Tritsch IE, Dierker LJ, Hertz RH, et al: Studies of antepartum behavioral state in the human fetus at term. Am J Obstet Gynecol 132:524, 1978

Todd AL, Tridinger BJ, Cole MJ, et al: Antenatal tests of fetal welfare and development at age 2 years. Am J Obstet Gynecol 167:66, 1992

Todros T, Sciarrone A, Piccoli E, et al: Umbilical Doppler waveforms and placental villous angiogenesis in pregnancies complicated by fetal growth restriction. Obstet Gynecol 93:499, 1999

Trudinger B: Doppler: more or less? Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 29 (3):243, 2007

Turitz AL, Bastek JA, Sammel MD, et al: Can vibroacoustic stimulation improve the efficiency of a tertiary care antenatal testing unit? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(12):2645, 2012

Velauthar L, Plana MN, Kalidindi M, et al: First-trimester uterine artery Doppler and adverse pregnancy outcome: a meta-analysis involving 55,974 women. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 43(5):500, 2014

Viero S, Chaddha V, Alkazaleh F, et al: Prognostic value of placental ultrasound in pregnancies complicated by absent end-diastolic flow velocity in the umbilical arteries. Placenta 25(8-9):735, 2004

Vindla S, James D: Fetal behavior as a test of fetal well-being. BJOG 102:597, 1995

Visser GH, Redman CW, Huisjes HJ, et al: Nonstressed antepartum heart rate monitoring: implications of decelerations after spontaneous contractions. Am J Obstet Gynecol 138:429, 1980

Weiner Z, Divon MY, Katz N, et al: Multi-variant analysis of antepartum fetal test in predicting neonatal outcome of growth retarded fetuses. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:338, 1996

Whitehead CL, Cohen N, Visser GH, et al: Are increased fetal movements always reassuring? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(21):3713, 2020

Williams KP, Farquharson DF, Bebbington M, et al: Screening for fetal well-being in a high-risk pregnant population comparing the nonstress test with umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry: a randomized controlled clinical trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:1366, 2003

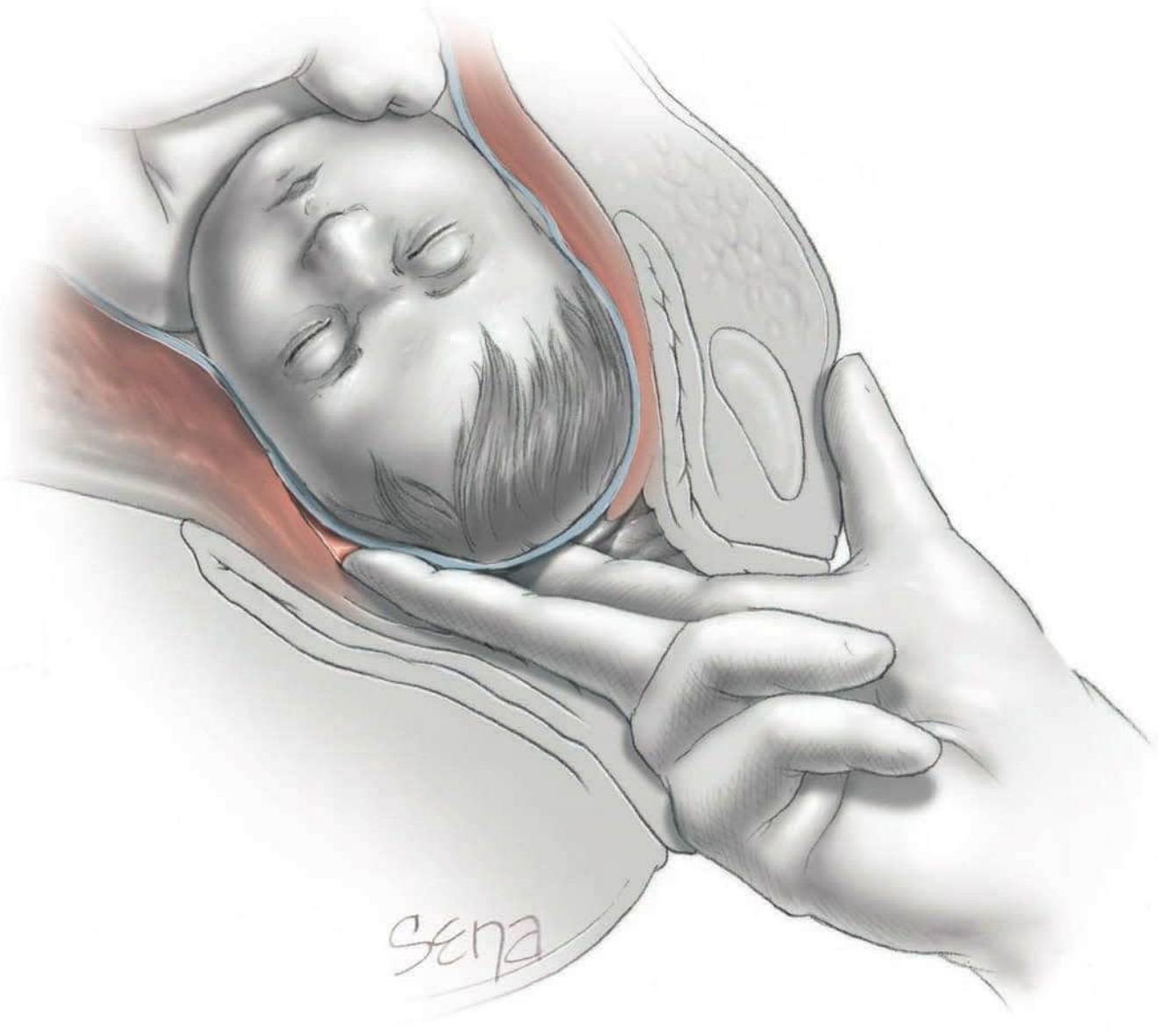
Wouldes TA, Roberts AB, Pryor JE, et al: The effect of methadone treatment on the quantity and quality of human fetal movement. Neurotoxicol Teratol 26(1):23, 2004

Yoon BH, Syn HC, Kim SW: The efficacy of Doppler umbilical artery velocimetry in identifying fetal acidosis. A comparison with fetal biophysical profile. J Ultrasound Med 11(1):1, 1992

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 7

LABOR



CHAPTER 21

Physiology of Labor

Labor is characterized by forceful and painful uterine contractions that effect cervical dilation and cause the fetus to descend through the birth canal. However, extensive preparations take place in both the uterus and cervix long before this. During the first 36 to 38 weeks of normal gestation, the myometrium is in a preparatory yet unresponsive state. Concurrently, the cervix begins an early stage of remodeling yet maintains structural integrity. Following uterine quiescence, a transitional phase begins during which myometrial unresponsiveness is suspended and the cervix undergoes ripening, effacement, and loss of structural cohesion.

The physiological processes that regulate *parturition* and the onset of labor continue to be defined. Three theories describe labor initiation. Viewed simplistically, the first is the *functional loss of pregnancy maintenance factors.* The second focuses on *synthesis of factors that induce parturition*. The third suggests that the mature fetus is the source of the initial *signal for parturition commencement*. Research supports a model that draws from all three themes. Thus, labor onset represents the culmination of a series of biochemical changes in the uterus and cervix. These result from endocrine and paracrine signals emanating from both mother and fetus. Their relative contributions vary between species, and it is these differences that complicate elucidation of the exact factors that regulate human parturition. When parturition is abnormal, preterm labor, dystocia, or postterm pregnancy may result.

MATERNAL AND FETAL COMPARTMENTS

Uterus and Cervix

The myometrial layer of the uterus is composed of bundles of smooth muscle cells surrounded by connective tissue. In contrast to skeletal or cardiac muscle, the smooth muscle cell is not terminally differentiated and therefore is readily adaptable to environmental changes. Varied stimuli such as mechanical stretch, inflammation, and endocrine and paracrine signals modulate the transition of the smooth muscle cell into phenotypes that provide cell growth, proliferation, secretion, and contractility.

Additionally, several smooth muscle qualities confer advantages for uterine contraction efficiency and fetal delivery. First, the degree of smooth muscle cell shortening with contractions may be one order of magnitude greater than that attained in striated muscle cells. Second, forces can be exerted in smooth muscle cells in multiple directions. This differs from the contraction force generated by skeletal muscle, which is always aligned with the axis of the muscle fibers. Third, the thick and thin filaments of smooth muscle are found in long, random bundles throughout the cells. This plexiform arrangement aids augmented shortening and force-generating capacity. Last, greater multidirectional force generation in the uterine fundus

compared with that of the lower uterine segment helps optimize expulsive force vectors.

Lining the thick muscular uterine walls, the endometrium is transformed by pregnancy hormones and is then termed *decidua*. Composed of stromal cells and maternal immune cells, the decidua serves to maintain the pregnancy via unique immunoregulatory functions that suppress inflammatory signals during gestation. However, at the end of pregnancy, the decidua transitions to induce inflammatory signals and withdraw active immunosuppression, contributing to parturition initiation.

During pregnancy, the cervix has multiple functions that include: (1) maintaining the epithelial barrier to protect the reproductive tract from infection, (2) sustaining cervical competence despite greater gravitational forces as the fetus grows, and (3) orchestrating extracellular matrix (ECM) changes that allow progressively greater tissue compliance.

In nonpregnant women, the cervix is closed and firm, and its consistency is similar to nasal cartilage. By the end of pregnancy, the cervix is easily distensible, and its consistency is similar to the lips of the oral cavity. The cervix has a high ratio of fibroblasts to smooth muscle cells, and ECM contributes significantly to overall tissue mass. Vink and colleagues (2016) showed that the smooth muscle cells in the cervix have a spatial gradient. Specifically, smooth muscle cells make up approximately 50 percent of stromal cells at the internal os but only 10 percent at the external os. Also, three-dimensional sonography and magnetic resonance imaging show increases in the cross-sectional area of the cervical canal and changes in ECM structure from early to late pregnancy (House, 2009; Lang, 2010; Pizzella, 2020). Concurrent with expansion of the stroma, the cervical epithelia proliferate and exert a pregnancy-specific immunoprotection.

Placenta

In addition to providing the exchange of nutrients and waste between mother and fetus, the placenta is a key source of steroid hormones, growth factors, and other mediators that maintain pregnancy and potentially aid the transition to parturition. The fetal membranes—amnion and chorion—and adjacent decidua serve as a physiologic, immunologic, and metabolic shield to protect against untimely parturition initiation.

The amnion provides virtually all of the fetal membranes' tensile strength to resist membrane tearing and rupture (Chap. 5, p. 94). This avascular tissue is highly resistant to penetration by leukocytes, microorganisms, and neoplastic cells (Fig. 21-1). It also constitutes a selective filter to prevent fetal particulate-bound lung and skin secretions from reaching the maternal compartment. In this manner, maternal tissues are protected from amnionic fluid constituents that could prematurely accelerate decidual or myometrial activation or could promote adverse events such as amnionic fluid embolism.

The chorion is a primarily protective tissue layer and provides immunological acceptance. It is also enriched with enzymes that inactivate *uterotonins*, which are agents that stimulate contractions. Inactivating enzymes include prostaglandin dehydrogenase, oxytocinase, and enkephalinase (Cheung, 1990; Germain, 1994; Mizutani, 2011).

SEX STEROID HORMONE ROLE

In many species, the role of sex steroid hormones is clear—estrogen promotes and progesterone inhibits the events leading to parturition. The removal of progesterone, that is, *progesterone withdrawal*, directly precedes progression of parturition. In addition, providing progesterone to some species will delay parturition via a decline in myometrial activity and continued cervical competency (Challis, 1994). In humans, however, both estrogen and progesterone are components of a broader molecular system that maintains uterine quiescence.

Plasma levels of estrogen and progesterone in normal pregnancy are enormous and in great excess of the affinity constants for their receptors. For this reason, it is difficult to comprehend how relatively subtle changes in the ratio of their concentrations could modulate physiological processes during pregnancy. The evidence, however, for an increased progesterone-to-estrogen ratio in the maintenance of pregnancy and a decline in this ratio for parturition is overwhelming. In all species studied, including humans, administration of the progesterone-receptor antagonists *mifepristone (RU-486)* or *onapristone* will promote some or all key features of parturition. These include cervical ripening, greater cervical distensibility, and augmented uterine sensitivity to uterotonins (Bygdeman, 1994; Chwalisz, 1994b; Wolf, 1993). The exact role of estrogen in regulation of human uterine quiescence and cervical competency is less well understood. That said, estrogen can advance progesterone responsiveness and, at the end of pregnancy, aid in processes that mediate uterine activation and cervical ripening.

Both progesterone and estrogen bind to nuclear receptors that regulate gene transcription. Two nuclear receptors for estrogen are estrogen receptor α (ERα) and estrogen receptor

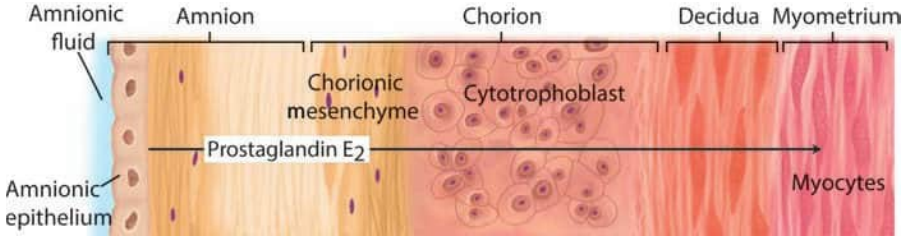


FIGURE 21-1 The amnion synthesizes prostaglandins, and late in pregnancy, synthesis is augmented by increased phospholipase A_2 and prostaglandin H synthase, type 2 (PGHS-2) activity. The transport of prostaglandins from the amnion to maternal tissues is limited by expression of the inactivating enzyme, prostaglandin dehydrogenase (PGDH), in the chorion. During labor, PGDH levels decline, and amnion-derived prostaglandins can influence membrane rupture and uterine contractility. The role of decidual activation in parturition is unclear but may involve local progesterone metabolism and higher prostaglandin receptor concentrations, thus enhancing uterine prostaglandin actions and cytokine production. (Redrawn from Smith R: Parturition. N Engl J Med. 2007 Jan 18;356(3):271–283.)

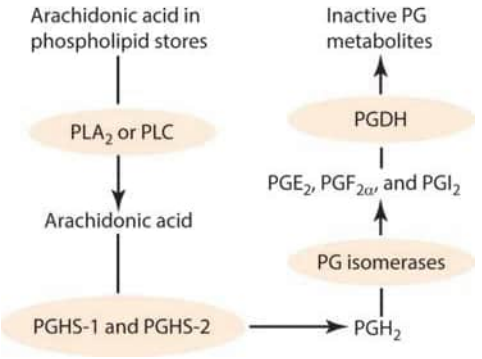


FIGURE 21-2 Overview of the prostaglandin biosynthetic pathway. PG = prostaglandin; PGDH = prostaglandin dehydrogenase; PGE_2 = prostaglandin E_2; $PGF_{2\alpha}$ = prostaglandin $F_{2\alpha}$; PGH_2 = prostaglandin H_2; PGHS = prostaglandin H synthase; PGI_2 = prostaglandin I_2; PLA_2 = phospholipase A_2; PLC = phospholipase C.

β (ERβ). Nuclear receptor isoforms of the progesterone receptor (PR-A and PR-B) are encoded by differing transcripts from a single gene (Patel, 2015).

PROSTAGLANDINS ROLE

Prostaglandins are lipid molecules with varied hormone-like actions. In parturition, they play a prominent role in myometrial contractility, relaxation, and inflammation. Prostaglandins interact with a family of eight different G protein–coupled receptors (p. 403), several of which are expressed in the myometrium and the cervix (Konopka, 2015; Myatt, 2004).

The major synthetic pathway involved in prostaglandin biosynthesis is shown in Figure 21-2. Prostaglandins are produced using plasma membrane–derived arachidonic acid, which usually is released by the action of phospholipase A_2 or C. The enzymes type 1 and 2 prostaglandin H synthase (PGHS-1 and -2), also known as cyclooxygenase 1 and 2 (COX-1 and -2), convert arachidonic acid to prostaglandin H_2 (PGH_2). These enzymes are the target of many nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). The tocolytic actions of specific COX inhibitors, as discussed in Chapter 45 (p. 806), were considered promising until they were shown to have adverse fetal effects (Loudon, 2003; Olson, 2007).

Through prostaglandin isomerases, PGH_2 is converted to active prostaglandins. These include prostaglandins E_2 (PGE_2), $F_{2\alpha}$ ($PGF_{2\alpha}$), and I_2 (PGI_2). Isomerase expression is tissue-specific and thereby controls the relative production of various prostaglandins. Another important control point for prostaglandin activity is its metabolism, which most often is through the action of 15-hydroxyprostaglandin dehydrogenase (PGDH). Expression of this enzyme is upregulated during pregnancy in the uterus and cervix, which provides the important ability to rapidly inactivate prostaglandins (Giannoulias, 2002; Kishore, 2017). Thus, myometrial responses to prostaglandins stem from a balance between prostaglandin synthesis versus metabolism, from the relative expression of various prostaglandin receptors, or from a switch in receptor-signaling pathways (Kandola, 2014; Lyall, 2002; Olson, 2007; Smith, 2001). It is possible that prostanoids contribute to myometrial relaxation at one stage of pregnancy and to myometrial contractions after parturition initiation (Myatt, 2004).

In addition to the myometrium, the amnion synthesizes several bioactive peptides and prostaglandins that cause myometrial relaxation or contraction (see Fig. 21-1). Late in pregnancy, amnionic prostaglandin biosynthesis of PGE_2 and $PGF_{2\alpha}$ is increased, and phospholipase A_2 and PGHS-2 show greater activity (Peiris, 2020). The amnion is likely the major source for amnionic fluid prostaglandins, and their role in the activation of cascades that promote membrane rupture is clear. However, the influence of amnion-derived prostaglandins on uterine quiescence and activation is less clear because their access to maternal tissues is limited by expression of PGDH.

PHASE 1: UTERINE QUIESCENCE AND CERVICAL SOFTENING

Parturition can be arbitrarily divided into four overlapping phases that correspond to the major physiological transitions of the myometrium and cervix during pregnancy (Fig. 21-3) (Casey, 1997; Shynlova, 2020; Vink, 2018). These include: (1) the prelude, (2) the preparation, (3) the process itself, and (4) the recovery. Importantly, the *phases of parturition* should not be confused with the *clinical stages of labor*. The first, second, and third stages of labor make up phase 3 of parturition (Fig. 21-4).

Beginning even before implantation, a remarkably effective period of myometrial quiescence is imposed. This phase 1 normally constitutes 95 percent of pregnancy and is characterized by uterine smooth muscle tranquility with maintenance of cervical structural integrity (Fig. 21-5). All manner of molecular systems—neural, endocrine, paracrine, and autocrine—are likely called to implement and coordinate a state of relative uterine unresponsiveness. Moreover, a complementary "fail-safe" system that protects the uterus against agents that could perturb the tranquility of phase 1 also must be in place.

During phase 1, the uterus must initiate extensive changes in its size and vascularity to accommodate fetal growth. Concurrently, myometrial cells undergo

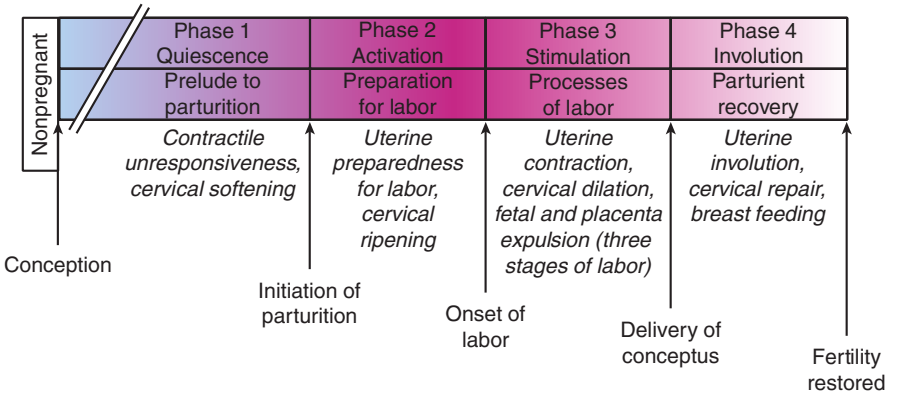


FIGURE 21-3 The phases of parturition.

a phenotypic modification to a noncontractile state, and uterine muscle is rendered unresponsive to natural stimuli. Although this unresponsiveness continues until near the end of pregnancy, some low-intensity myometrial contractions are felt during the quiescent phase. These contractions do not normally cause cervical dilation, and they are common toward the end of pregnancy, especially in multiparas. They are referred to as *Braxton Hicks contractions* or *false labor* (Chap. 4, p. 52).

The quiescence of phase 1 likely stems from: (1) actions of estrogen and progesterone via intracellular receptors, (2) myometrial-cell plasma membrane receptor–mediated increases in cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP), (3) generation of cyclic guanosine monophosphate, and (4) other systems, including modification of myometrial-cell ion channels.

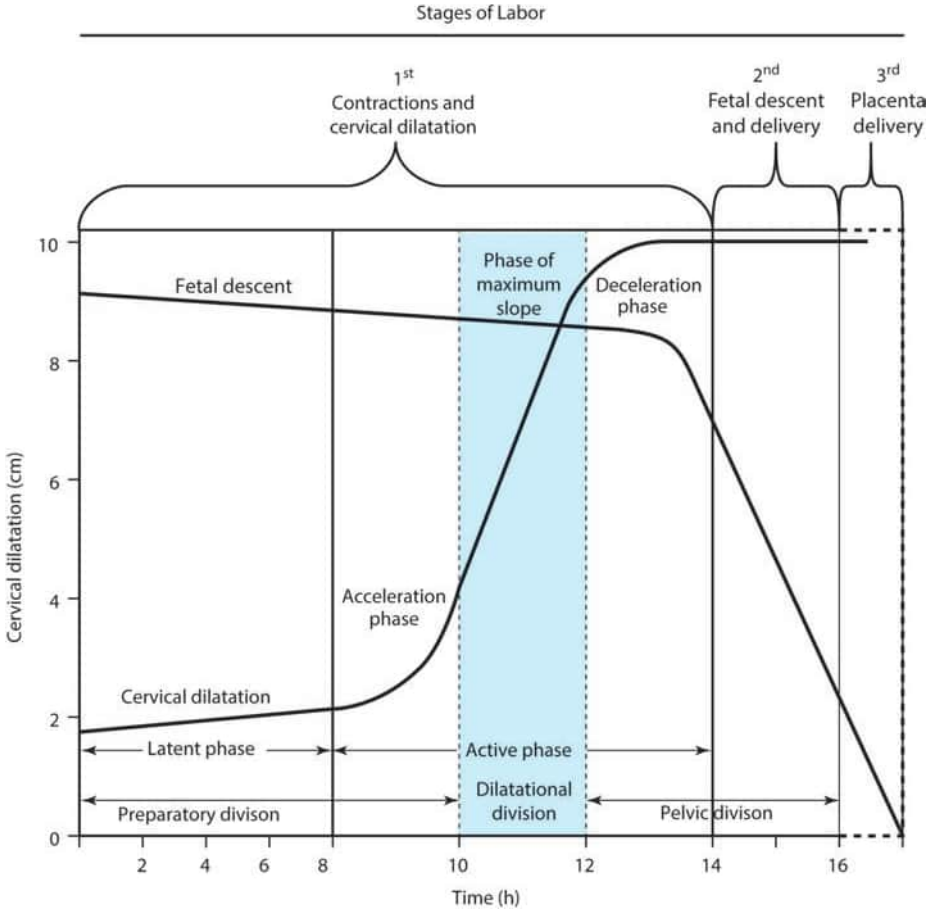


FIGURE 21-4 Labor course divided on the basis of expected evolution of the dilatation and descent curves into three functional divisions. The preparatory division includes the latent and active phases. The dilatational division is the phase of maximum slope of dilatation. The pelvic division encompasses both the deceleration phase and the second stage, which is concurrent with the phase of maximum slope of fetal descent. (Redrawn from Friedman EA: Labor: Clinical Evaluation and Management, 2nd ed. New York, Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1978.)

Myometrial Relaxation and Contraction

The balance between myometrial relaxation and contraction is controlled by steroid- and peptide-hormone transcriptional regulation of key genes and their protein products (Wray, 2019). Quiescence is achieved in part by: (1) diminished intracellular crosstalk and reduced intracellular Ca^{2+} ($[Ca^{2+}]_i$) levels, (2) ion-channel regulation of cell membrane potential, (3) activation of the stress–unfolded protein response by the uterine endoplasmic reticulum, and (4) uterotonin degradation. In contrast, contractility results from: (1) enhanced interactions between the actin and myosin proteins, (2) heightened excitability of individual myometrial cells, and (3) promotion of intracellular crosstalk that allows synchronous contractions to develop.

Actin–Myosin Interactions

Actin and myosin proteins are essential to muscle contraction. For this, actin must be converted from a globular to a filamentous form. Indeed, a potential mechanism for maintenance of relaxation is the promotion of actin into a globular form rather than into fibrils, which are required for contraction. Moreover, actin must be attached to the cytoskeleton at focal points in the cell membrane to allow tension to develop.

Actin must partner with myosin, which is composed of multiple light and heavy chains (Fig. 21-6). This interaction is brought about by enzymatic phosphorylation of the 20-kDa light chain of myosin (Stull, 1998). This is catalyzed by the enzyme *myosin light-chain kinase*, which is activated by calcium (Ca^{2+}).

Thus, logically, uterine relaxation ordinarily is promoted by conditions that lower concentrations of $(Ca^{2+})_i$. In contrast, agents that prompt contraction act on myometrial cells to augment $(Ca^{2+})_i$ levels. Or, they allow an influx of extracellular calcium through ligand- or voltage-regulated calcium channels (see Fig. 21-6). For example, $PGF_{2\alpha}$ and oxytocin bind their respective receptors during labor to open ligand-activated calcium channels. Activation of these receptors also releases calcium from the sarcoplasmic reticulum. Additionally, greater localization of nonselective cation channels on the cell membrane promotes Ca^{2+} entry (Ying, 2015). The rise in $(Ca^{2+})_i$ levels is often transient. But, contractions can be prolonged by inhibition of myosin phosphatase, an enzyme that dephosphorylates myosin (Woodcock, 2004).

Regulation of Membrane Potentials

As just noted, myocyte excitability is regulated in part by changes in the electrochemical potential gradient across the plasma membrane. Before labor, myocytes maintain a relatively high interior electronegativity. Maintenance of a hyperpolarized membrane potential attenuates smooth muscle cell excitation and is regulated by ion channels.

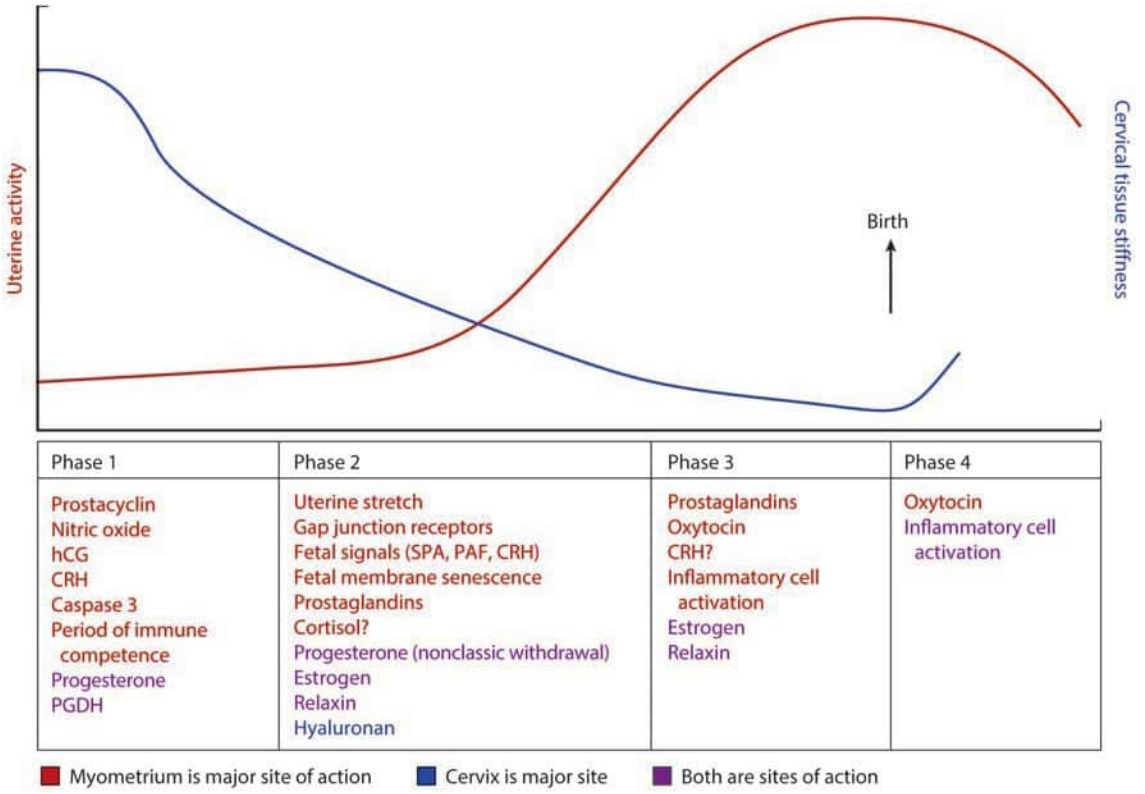


FIGURE 21-5 The key factors thought to regulate the phases of human parturition. CRH = corticotropin-releasing hormone; hCG = human chorionic gonadotropin; PAF = platelet-activating factor; PGDH = prostaglandin dehydrogenase; SPA = surfactant protein A.

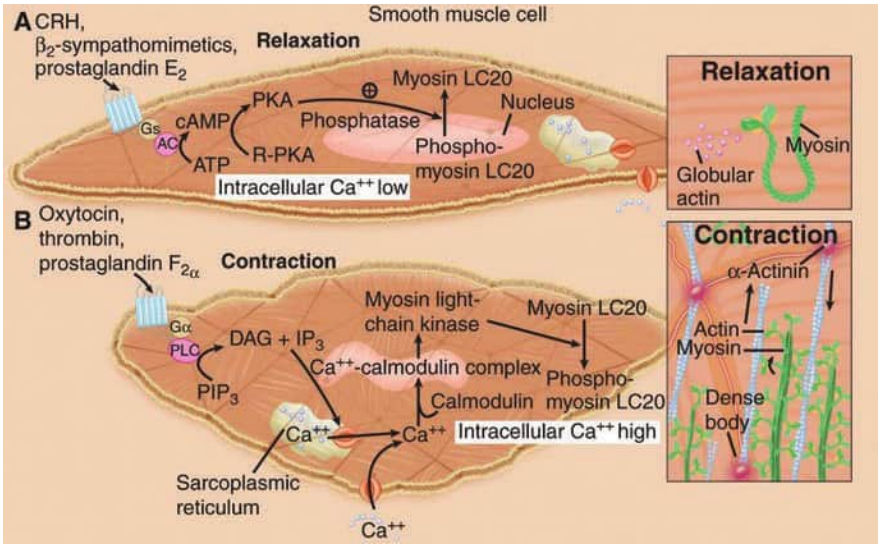


FIGURE 21-6 Uterine myocyte relaxation and contraction. **A.** Uterine relaxation is maintained by factors that increase myocyte cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP) levels. This activates protein kinase A (PKA) to promote phosphodiesterase activity with dephosphorylation of myosin light-chain kinase (MLCK). Other processes serve to maintain actin in a globular form and thus to prevent the fibril formation necessary for contractions. **B.** Uterine contractions result from reversal of these sequences. Actin now assumes a fibrillar form, and calcium enters the cell to combine with calmodulin to form complexes. These complexes activate MLCK to bring about phosphorylation of the myosin light chains. This generates ATPase activity to cause sliding of myosin over the actin fibrils, which is a uterine contraction. AC = adenylyl cyclase; Ca^{2+} = calcium; DAG = diacylglycerol; Gs and Gα = G-receptor proteins; IP_3 = inositol triphosphate; LC20 = light chain 20; PIP_3 = phosphatidylinositol 3,4,5–triphosphate; PLC = phospholipase C; R-PKA = inactive protein kinase. (Redrawn from Smith R: Parturition. N Engl J Med. 2007 Jan 18;356(3):271–283.)

Numerous ion channels control sodium (Na^+) and calcium (Ca^{2+}) influx and potassium (K^+) efflux to collectively regulate membrane potential. Sodium leak channels (NALCN) are important to normal uterine function (Reinl, 2018). Another key regulator is the large-conductance voltage- and Ca^{2+}-activated K^+ channel (BK_{Ca}) (Pérez, 1993). The BK_{Ca} channel is abundantly expressed in the myometrium and plays dual promoting and opposing roles to maintain a balance between uterine quiescence and contractility. Opening the BK_{Ca} channel allows potassium to leave the cell to maintain interior electronegativity, thus preventing voltage-gated Ca^{2+} influx and contraction. Inhibition of the BK_{Ca} channel augments myometrial contractility. Regulation of uterine contractility from early to late gestation may result from temporal changes in expression of the BK_{Ca} channel and/or BK_{Ca} interacting partners (Wakle-Prabagaran, 2016).

Myometrial Gap Junctions

Cellular signals that control myometrial contraction and relaxation can be effectively transferred between cells through

intercellular junctional channels. Communication is established between myocytes by gap junctions, which aid the passage of electrical or ionic coupling currents as well as metabolite coupling. The connexin family of proteins form cell-type specific gap junctions (Solan, 2018). Connexin-43 is expressed in the myometrium, and concentrations rise near labor onset. Six connexin subunits form a *connexon*, and two adjacent connexons establish a conduit between communicating cells. This permits exchange of small molecules that can be nutrients, waste, metabolites, second messengers, or ions. Optimal numbers and types of gap junctions are believed to be important for electrical myometrial synchrony.

Progesterone promotes uterine quiescence in part by lowering expression of contraction-associated proteins (CAPs) and maintaining expression of anticontractile agents such as *caspase 3* (Ingles, 2018; Kyathanahalli, 2015). CAPs include the oxytocin receptor, prostaglandin F receptor, and connexin-43. Also, at the end of pregnancy, increased stretch, metabolism of progesterone by the enzyme 20α-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase (20α-HSD), loss of progesterone-mediated repression of CAP genes, and greater estrogen dominance raise CAP levels. Integration of diverse regulatory pathways culminates in released inhibition of connexin-43 and oxytocin receptor levels to promote greater uterine contractility (Anamthathmakula, 2019; Mendelson, 2019; Peavey, 2021).

G Protein–Coupled Receptors

In addition to ion-channel linked receptors, G protein–coupled receptors regulate myocyte contractility. These receptors together with appropriate ligands may act with sex steroid hormones to maintain uterine quiescence (Price, 2000; Sanborn, 1998). Examples are the luteinizing hormone (LH) receptor and corticotropin-releasing hormone receptor 1 (CRHR1), both described in this section (Fig. 21-7). Other G protein–coupled myometrial receptors, instead, are associated with uterine contractility. G protein–mediated activation of phospholipase C, which releases arachidonic acid, is one example. Ligands for the G protein–coupled receptors include numerous neuropeptides, hormones, and autacoids. Many of these are available to the myometrium during pregnancy in high concentration via *endocrine* or *autocrine* mechanisms.

LH and human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) hormones share the same LH-hCG receptor. This G protein–coupled receptor is found in myometrial smooth muscle and blood vessels, and levels during pregnancy are greater before labor (Ziecik, 1992). hCG acts to activate adenylyl cyclase by way of a plasma membrane receptor $G_{\alpha s}$-linked system. This lessens contraction frequency and force and lowers the number of tissue-specific myometrial cell gap junctions (Ambrus, 1994; Eta, 1994). Thus, high circulating levels of hCG may be one mechanism of uterine quiescence. β-Adrenergic receptors mediate $G_{\alpha s}$-stimulated myometrial cell relaxation. Agents binding to these receptors have been used for tocolysis of preterm labor and include ritodrine and terbutaline (Chap. 45, p. 805). The rate-limiting factor is likely the number of receptors expressed and the level of adenylyl cyclase expression.

Prostaglandin E_2 mediates its diverse cellular effects through four G protein–coupled receptors. Specifically, prostaglandin E receptors 1 through 4 (EP_1-EP_4) are expressed in the

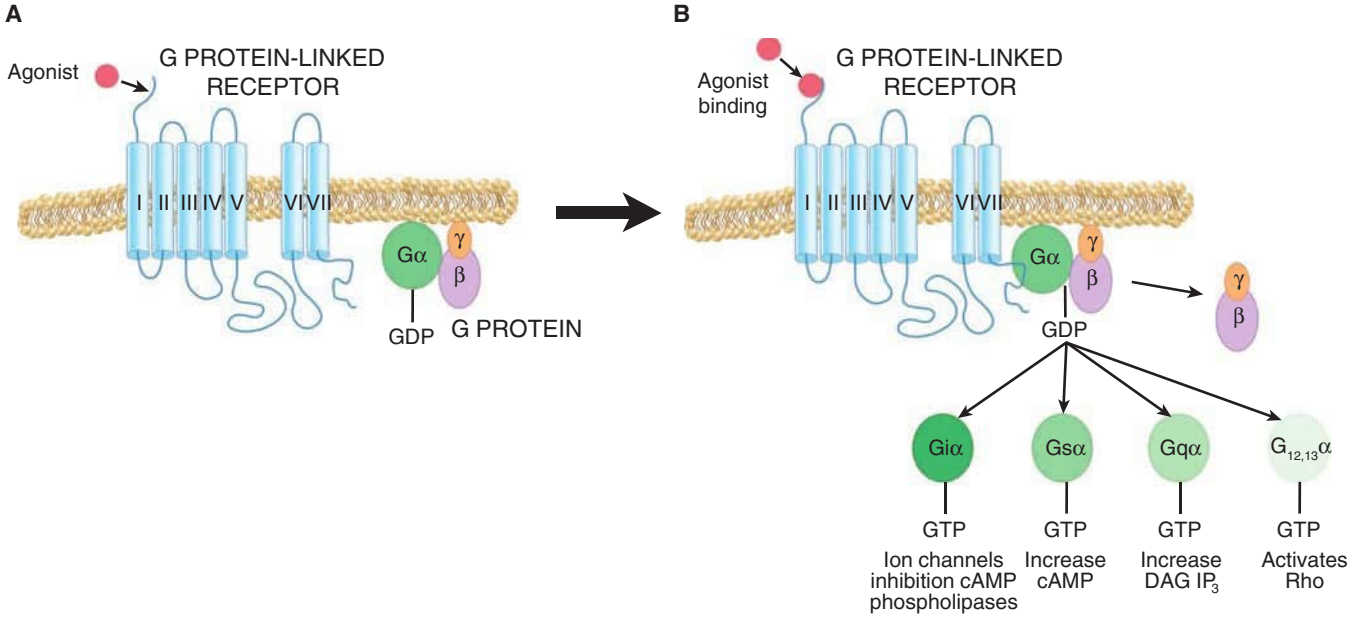


FIGURE 21-7 G protein–coupled receptor signal transduction pathways. **A.** Receptors coupled to heterotrimeric guanosine-triphosphate (GTP)-binding proteins (G proteins) are integral transmembrane proteins that transduce extracellular signals to the cell interior. G protein–coupled receptors exhibit a common structural motif consisting of seven membrane-spanning regions. **B.** Receptor occupation promotes interaction between the receptor and the G protein on the interior surface of the membrane. An exchange of guanosine diphosphate (GDP) for GTP on the G protein α subunit and dissociation of the α subunit from the βγ heterodimer occurs. Depending on its isoform, the GTP-α subunit complex mediates intracellular signaling either indirectly by acting on effector molecules such as adenylyl cyclase (AC) or phospholipase C (PLC), or directly by regulating ion channel or kinase function. cAMP = cyclic adenosine monophosphate; DAG = diacylglycerol; IP_3 = inositol triphosphate.

myometrium during pregnancy and with labor onset (Astle, 2005; Leonhardt, 2003). EP_2 and EP_4 act through $G_\alpha s$ to maintain myometrial cell quiescence but switch to a $G_\alpha q/11$ calcium-activating pathway during labor (Kandola, 2014). EP_1 and EP_3 receptors act through $G_\alpha q$ and $G_\alpha i$ to augment intracellular Ca^{2+} and contractility.

The peptide hormone relaxin binds to the G protein–coupled receptor named *relaxin family peptide receptor 1 (RXFP1)*. Binding activates adenylyl cyclase, which in turn prevents increased intracellular Ca^{2+}, and thus promotes uterine quiescence (Downing, 1993; Meera, 1995). The *H1* relaxin gene is primarily expressed in the decidua, trophoblast, and prostate, whereas the *H2* gene is primarily expressed in the corpus luteum. Relaxin plasma levels peak at approximately 1 ng/mL between 8 and 12 weeks' gestation. Thereafter, they decline until term.

Corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) is synthesized in the placenta and hypothalamus. Discussed on page 408, CRH plasma levels rise dramatically during the final 6 to 8 weeks of normal pregnancy and are implicated in mechanisms that control the timing of human parturition (Smith, 2007; Wadhwa, 1998; Wang, 2019). CRH appears to promote myometrial quiescence during most of pregnancy but then aids contractions with parturition onset. Studies suggest that these opposing actions are achieved by differential actions of CRH via its receptor CRHR1. In nonlaboring myometrium at term, the interaction of CRH with CRHR1 activates the Gs-adenylate cyclase-cAMP signaling pathway. This results in inhibition of inositol triphosphate (IP_3) and stabilization of $(Ca^{2+})_i$ levels (You, 2012). However, in term laboring myometrium, $(Ca^{2+})_i$ concentrations are augmented by CRH activation of G proteins Gq and Gi and prompts stimulation of IP_3 production and greater contractility.

Cyclic Guanosine Monophosphate

As noted, cAMP is an important mediator of myometrial relaxation. However, activation of guanylyl cyclase raises intracellular cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP) levels. This also promotes smooth muscle relaxation (Word, 1993). Intracellular cGMP levels are increased in the pregnant myometrium and can be stimulated by atrial natriuretic peptide, brain natriuretic peptide, and nitric oxide (Guerra, 2019; Telfer, 2001). All of these factors and their receptors are expressed in the pregnant uterus.

Accelerated Uterotonin Degradation

The activity of enzymes that degrade or inactivate endogenously produced uterotonins also is strikingly increased in phase 1. Pairs of some degrading enzymes and their respective targets include PGDH and prostaglandins; enkephalinase and endothelins; oxytocinase and oxytocin; diamine oxidase and histamine; catechol *O*-methyltransferase and catecholamines; angiotensinases and angiotensin II; and platelet-activating factor (PAF) and PAF acetylhydrolase. Levels of several of these enzymes decline late in gestation (Germain, 1994).

Decidua

To ensure uterine quiescence, the synthesis in the decidua of prostaglandins, in particular $PGF_{2\alpha}$, is markedly suppressed. Suppression of prostaglandin production here persists throughout most of pregnancy, and suppression withdrawal is a prerequisite for parturition (Norwitz, 2015).

The mother and fetus come in direct contact at the decidua basalis and decidua parietalis. At this interface, myeloid and lymphoid immune cells such as natural killer cells, macrophages, dendritic cells, and T cells undergo dynamic changes in number and phenotype to achieve a balanced microenvironment (Ander, 2019; Solano, 2019; van der Zwan, 2020). This is a critical site for immune tolerance in phase 1 and for decidual activation in phase 2 of parturition (see Fig. 21-5). In phase 1 of parturition, these cells, in collaboration with decidual cells, promote an environment of immune tolerance to protect the fetus. Immune cells with innate and adaptive immune responses support vascular and tissue remodeling, immune surveillance and defense, and trophoblast invasion in phase 1 (Fig. 21-8).

During phase 2, decidual stromal cells and fetal membranes undergo an aging process termed cellular senescence. Noninflammatory signals precipitate senescence, which in turn leads to synthesis of proinflammatory cytokines, augmented

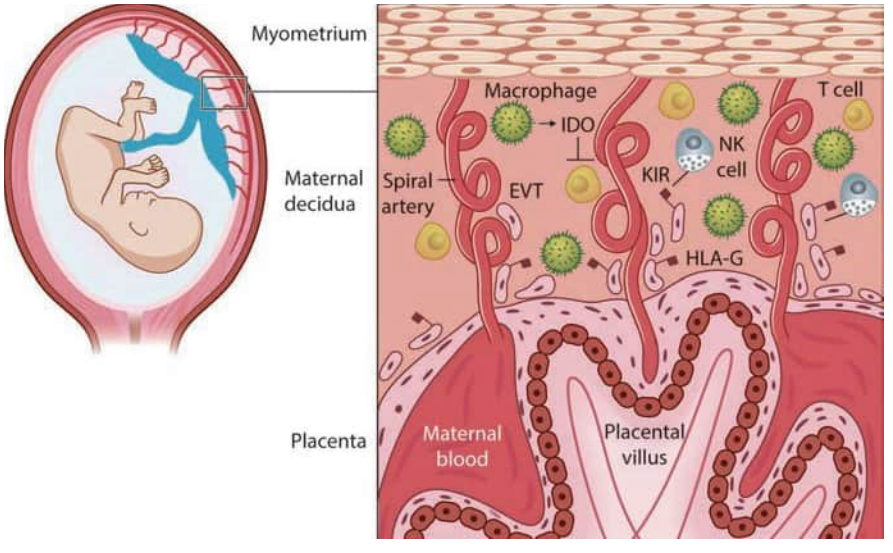


FIGURE 21-8 Immune tolerance and activation at the maternal fetal interface. In the antepartum period, dNK cells are abundant and their maturation is promoted by release of uterine IL-15. These cells promote decidual remodeling, blastocyst implantation, and EVT invasion. The cytotoxicity of dNK cells is regulated by the interaction of its KIR receptor with HLA-G on EVTs. Decidual macrophages—primary antigen-presenting cells—produce the enzyme IDO, which limits T cell activation. Changes in the intrapartum period are less understood, but the number of dNK cells decline and decidual macrophages are activated to a proinflammatory phenotype. dNK = decidual natural killer; EVT = extravillous trophoblasts; HLA = human leukocyte antigen; IL = interleukin; IDO = indoleamine 2,3-dioxygenase; KIR = killer-cell immunoglobulin-like receptors.

prostaglandin production, and increased protease expression. These proteins and hormones break down fetal membranes.

Cervical Softening

The initial stage of cervical remodeling—termed *softening*—begins in phase 1 of parturition. It is characterized by greater tissue compliance, yet the cervix remains firm and unyielding. Hegar (1895) first described palpable softening of the lower uterine segment at 4 to 6 weeks' gestation, and this sign was once used to diagnose pregnancy. Clinically, the maintenance of cervical anatomical and structural integrity is essential for pregnancy to continue to term. Preterm cervical dilation, structural insufficiency, or both may forecast delivery.

Cervical Connective Tissue

Cervical softening is an active molecular process that balances tissue competence against slow, progressive compositional and structural changes in the extracellular matrix (ECM) to increase compliance (Myers, 2015; Nallasamy, 2017; Vink, 2018). Constituents of the ECM include type I and III fibrillar collagens, matricellular proteins, glycosaminoglycans, proteoglycans, and elastic fibers. Key to matrix changes, collagen, which is the main structural protein in the cervix, undergoes conformational changes that alter tissue stiffness and flexibility (Zhang, 2012). Specifically, collagen processing and the number or type of stable covalent cross-links between collagen's triple helices are altered. Beginning in early pregnancy, mature cross-links between newly synthesized collagen monomers are reduced due to diminished expression and activity of the cross-link-forming enzymes (Akins, 2011; Yoshida, 2014). These enzymes are lysyl hydroxylase and lysyl oxidase. Gradual turnover of collagen during pregnancy replaces mature cross-linked collagen fibrils with poorly linked fibrils. The result is a collagen with reduced stiffness. The collagen-binding proteoglycans—decorin and biglycan—ensure the new, poorly cross-linked collagen is appropriately assembled and deposited in the ECM. Data from human and mouse studies support the theory that a balance in the synthesis and breakdown of collagen, rather than loss of collagen, achieves cervical remodeling (Fig. 21-9) (Akins, 2011; Myers, 2008; Read, 2007; Yoshida, 2014).

Clinical evidence for the importance of matrix changes to cervical softening is supported by in vivo mechanical evaluation of the cervix (Badir, 2013; Parra-Saavedra, 2011). The prevalence of cervical insufficiency is also higher in those with inherited defects in the synthesis or assembly of collagen or elastic fibers (Anum, 2009; Hermanns-Le, 2005; Volozonoka, 2020).

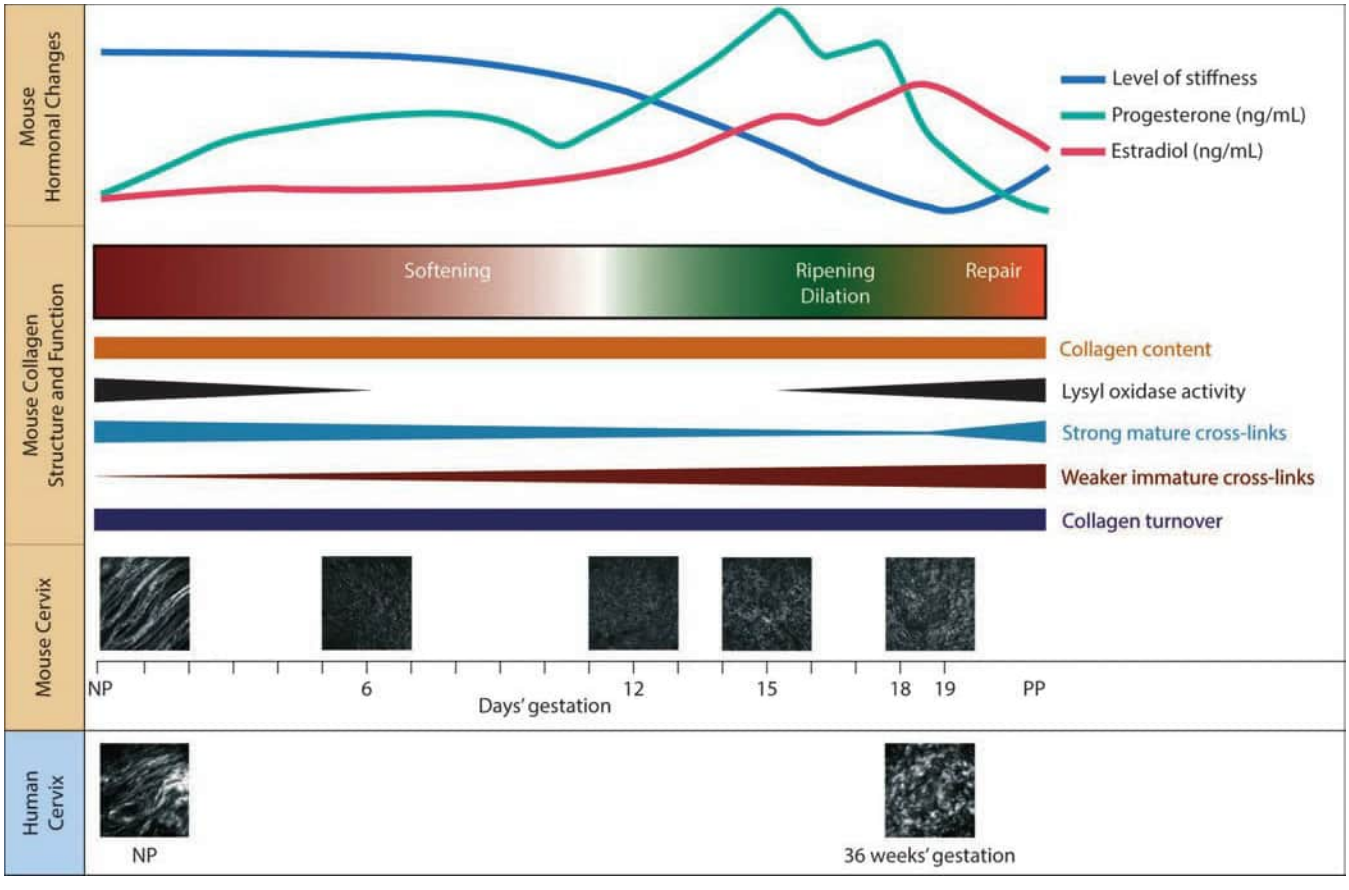


FIGURE 21-9 Mouse studies identify molecular changes in collagen structure and function during cervical remodeling. These changes are regulated by steroid hormones and result in a gradual loss of tissue stiffness. During the softening phase, the decline in lysyl oxidase activity in conjunction with high collagen turnover results in the replacement of strong cross-linked collagen fibers with weakly cross-linked collagen fibers. Second harmonic generation images in the mouse and human cervix show the corresponding gradual decline in mechanical function of the cervix. (Compiled from Akins, 2010, 2011; Ozasa, 1981; Read, 2007; Yoshida, 2014; Zhang, 2012.)

Examples are Ehlers-Danlos and Marfan syndromes, discussed in Chapter 62 (p. 1121). Concurrent with matrix remodeling in the softening period, genes involved in cervical dilation and parturition are actively repressed (Kishore, 2012).

PHASE 2: PREPARATION FOR LABOR

To prepare for labor, the myometrial tranquility of phase 1 of parturition must be suspended. This so-called *uterine awakening* or *activation* in phase 2 of parturition is a progression of uterine changes during the last few weeks of pregnancy. Importantly, shifting events associated with phase 2 can cause either preterm or delayed labor.

Progesterone Withdrawal

Key factors in uterine activation are depicted in Figure 21-5. In species that exhibit progesterone withdrawal, parturition progression to labor can be blocked by administering progesterone to the mother. Whether progesterone administration in the absence of classic progesterone withdrawal can delay the timely onset of parturition or prevent preterm labor remains unclear. The possibility that progesterone may prevent preterm labor has been studied, but its use in preventing preterm birth continues to be debated (Chap. 45, p. 795).

Classic progesterone withdrawal from decreased secretion does not occur in human parturition. However, a mechanism for progesterone inactivation, whereby the myometrium and cervix become refractory to progesterone's inhibitory actions, is supported by studies using progesterone-receptor antagonists. Mifepristone is a classic steroid antagonist, acting at the level of the progesterone receptor. Although less effective in inducing abortion or labor later in pregnancy, mifepristone appears to have some effect on cervical ripening and on increasing myometrial sensitivity to uterotonins (Berkane, 2005; Chwalisz, 1994a).

The diverse mechanisms by which functional progesterone withdrawal or antagonism is achieved is an active area of research. These include: (1) changes in the relative expression of the nuclear progesterone-receptor (PR) isoforms, (2) differential interaction of PR isoforms A and B with enhancers and inhibitors of gene expression, (3) altered PR activity through changes in the expression of coactivators or corepressors of receptor function, (4) local progesterone inactivation by steroid-metabolizing enzymes or synthesis of a natural antagonist, and (5) microRNA regulation of progesterone-metabolizing enzymes and transcription factors that modulate uterine quiescence (Chen, 2017; Condon, 2003; Mahendroo, 1999; Mesiano, 2002; Nadeem, 2016; Peavey, 2021; Renthal, 2010; Williams, 2012). Thus, multiple pathways exist to create functional progesterone withdrawal.

Myometrial Changes

Phase 2 changes in the myometrium prepare it for labor contractions. Changes result from a shift in the expression of proteins that control uterine quiescence to an expression of CAPs, described earlier (p. 403) (Mendelson, 2019; Renthal, 2015; Stanfield, 2019). These CAPs increase uterine responsiveness to uterotonins.

Another critical change in phase 2 is formation of the lower uterine segment from the isthmus. With this development, the fetal head often descends to or even through the pelvic inlet—*lightening*. The abdomen commonly undergoes a shape change, sometimes described by women as "the baby dropped." It is also likely that the lower segment myometrium is unique from that in the upper uterine segment, and leads to distinct roles for each near term and during labor. This is supported by human studies that demonstrate differential expression of prostaglandin receptors and CAPs within the upper- and lower-segment myometrial regions (Astle, 2005; Blanks, 2003; Sparey, 1999). Near term, elevated expression of the *HoxA13* gene in the lower myometrial segment compared with the upper segment also induces CAP expression and regionalized contractility of the lower segment (Li, 2016).

Oxytocin Receptors

Because of its long-standing application for labor induction, it seemed logical that oxytocin must play a central role in spontaneous human labor. Myometrial oxytocin receptor levels do rise during phase 2 of parturition, and the level of oxytocin receptor mRNA in human myometrium at term is greater than that found in preterm myometrium (Wathes, 1999). However, it is unclear whether oxytocin plays a role in the early phases of uterine activation or whether its sole function is in the expulsive phase of labor. Most studies of regulation of myometrial oxytocin receptor synthesis have been performed in rodents. Disruption of the oxytocin receptor gene in the mouse does not affect parturition. This suggests that, at least in this species, multiple systems likely ensure that parturition occurs.

Progesterone inhibits and estradiol induces oxytocin receptor expression. Through interaction with PR-B, progesterone regulates numerous genes in the oxytocin signaling pathway (Peavey, 2021). Progesterone may also act within the myometrial cell to enhance oxytocin receptor degradation (Bogacki, 2002). These data indicate that one of the mechanisms whereby progesterone maintains uterine quiescence is through inhibition of a myometrial oxytocin signaling pathway.

Cervical Ripening

Before contractions begin, the cervix must shift from a state of competence to one of compliance. This eventually leads to the cervix yielding and dilating from forceful uterine contractions. Cervical modifications during phase 2 principally involve connective tissue changes—termed *cervical ripening*. The transition from the softening to the ripening phase begins weeks or days before labor. The understanding of this cervical matrix transformation remains incomplete. However, it is clear that levels of *glycosaminoglycans*, which are large linear polysaccharides, are uniquely increased in phase 2.

Glycosaminoglycans and Proteoglycans

Hyaluronan is a high-molecular-weight polysaccharide that functions alone, but most other glycosaminoglycans (GAGs)

complex with proteins to form proteoglycans. Hyaluronan is a hydrophilic, space-filling molecule, and thus greater hyaluronan production during cervical ripening is thought to increase viscoelasticity, hydration, and matrix disorganization. Hyaluronan synthesis is carried out by hyaluronan synthase isoenzymes, and expression of these enzymes is elevated in the cervix during ripening (Akgul, 2012; Straach, 2005).

Inflammatory Changes

In phase 2, resident immune cells are localized to the cervical stroma, although a functional role for them in this phase has not been demonstrated. For example, studies of gene expression patterns at term both before and after cervical ripening show little rise in proinflammatory gene expression. However, once labor is underway, activation of neutrophils, proinflammatory M1 macrophages, and tissue repair M2 macrophages in the cervix is augmented. Moreover, proinflammatory and immunosuppressive gene expression in the cervix increases markedly after delivery (Bollapragada, 2009; Hassan, 2006, 2009). This suggests a role for inflammatory cells in postpartum cervical remodeling and repair (Mahendroo, 2012).

Induction of Cervical Ripening

No therapies prevent premature cervical ripening. In contrast, treatment to promote cervical ripening for labor induction includes direct application of PGE_2 and $PGF_{2\alpha}$ (Chap. 26, p. 489). Prostaglandins likely modify ECM structure to aid ripening, although their role in the normal physiology of cervical ripening remains unclear.

In some nonhuman species, events that allow cervical ripening are induced by dropping serum progesterone concentrations. And in humans, administration of progesterone antagonists causes cervical ripening.

Endocervical Epithelia

In addition to matrix changes during pregnancy, endocervical epithelial cells proliferate such that endocervical glands account for a significant percentage of cervical mass. The endocervical canal is lined with mucus-secreting columnar and stratified squamous epithelia. These cells form both a mucosal barrier and a tight junctional barrier that protect against microbial invasion (Akgul, 2014; Blaskewicz, 2011; Timmons, 2007). The mucosal epithelium recognizes and deters pathogen invasion via expression of toll-like receptors that identify pathogens and via antimicrobial peptides and protease inhibitors. These epithelia also express signals to underlying immune cells when a pathogenic challenge exceeds their protective capacity (Wira, 2005).

■ Fetal Contributions to Parturition

It is intriguing to envision that the mature human fetus provides the signal to initiate parturition, and evidence for fetal signaling is mounting (Mendelson, 2017). The fetus may give signals through blood-borne agents that act on the placenta or through secretion into the amniotic fluid.

Uterine Stretch

Fetal growth is an important component of uterine activation in phase 2 of parturition. With uterine activation, stretch is required for induction of specific CAPs. Namely, stretch increases expression of connexin-43 and oxytocin receptors. Levels of gastrin-releasing peptide, a stimulatory agonist for smooth muscle, also are augmented by stretch in the myometrium (Tattersall, 2012).

Clinical clues for a role of stretch come from the observation that multifetal pregnancies carry a much greater risk for preterm labor than singleton ones. Preterm labor is also more common in pregnancies complicated by hydramnios. Although the mechanisms causing preterm birth in these two are debated, a role for uterine stretch must be considered.

Cell signaling systems are influenced by stretch to regulate the myometrial cell. This process—*mechanotransduction*—may include activation of cell-surface receptors or ion channels, transmission of signals through ECM, or release of autocrine molecules that act directly on myometrium (Shynlova, 2007; Young, 2011).

Fetal Endocrine Cascades

The ability of the fetus to provide endocrine signals that initiate parturition has been demonstrated in several species. However, evidence suggests that it is not regulated in the same manner in humans. That said, the human fetal hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal-placental axis is considered a critical component of normal parturition. Moreover, premature activation of this axis is considered to prompt many cases of preterm labor (Challis, 2000, 2001). Steroid products of the human fetal adrenal gland are believed to have effects on the placenta and membranes that eventually transform the myometrium from a quiescent to a contractile state.

A key component in the human may be the unique ability of the placenta to produce large amounts of CRH that is identical to maternal and fetal hypothalamic CRH (Grino, 1987; Saijonmaa, 1988) (Fig. 21-10). However, unlike hypothalamic CRH, which is under glucocorticoid negative feedback, cortisol

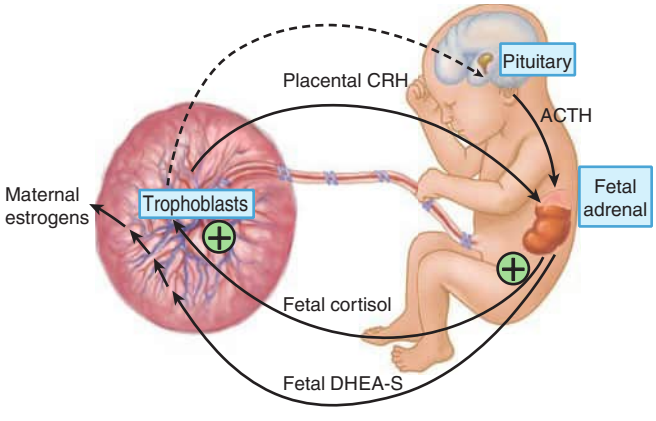


FIGURE 21-10 The placental–fetal adrenal endocrine cascade. In late gestation, placental corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH) stimulates fetal adrenal production of dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (DHEA-S) and cortisol. The latter stimulates production of placental CRH, which leads to a feed-forward cascade that enhances adrenal steroid hormone production. ACTH = adrenocorticotropic hormone.

instead *stimulates* placental CRH production. This ability makes it possible to create a feed-forward endocrine cascade that does not end until delivery.

Maternal plasma CRH levels are low in the first trimester and rise from midgestation to term. In the last 12 weeks, CRH plasma levels rise exponentially, peak during labor, and then fall precipitously after delivery (Frim, 1988; Sasaki, 1987). Amnionic fluid CRH concentrations similarly increase in late gestation. CRH is the only trophic hormone-releasing factor to have a specific serum binding protein. During most of pregnancy, CRH-binding protein (CRH-BP) binds most maternal circulating CRH, and this inactivates it (Lowry, 1993). During later pregnancy, however, CRH-BP levels in both maternal plasma and amnionic fluid decline, leading to markedly greater levels of bioavailable CRH (Perkins, 1995; Petraglia, 1997).

In pregnancies in which the fetus can be considered "stressed" from various complications, concentrations of CRH in fetal plasma, amnionic fluid, and maternal plasma are greater than those seen in normal gestation (Berkowitz, 1996; McGrath, 2002). The placenta is the likely source of this elevated CRH concentration. For example, placental CRH content is fourfold higher in placentas from women with preeclampsia than in those from normal pregnancies (Perkins, 1995).

Placental CRH is thought to play several roles in parturition regulation. It may enhance fetal cortisol production to provide positive feedback so that the placenta produces more CRH. Late in pregnancy—phase 2 or 3 of parturition—modification in the CRH receptor favors a switch from cAMP formation instead to increased myometrial cell calcium levels via protein kinase C activation (You, 2012). Oxytocin acts to attenuate CRH-stimulated accumulation of cAMP in myometrial tissue. CRH acts to augment myometrial contractile force in response to $PGF_{2\alpha}$ (Benedetto, 1994). Last, CRH stimulates fetal adrenal C_{19}-steroid synthesis, thereby increasing substrate for placental aromatization.

Some have proposed that the rising CRH level at the end of gestation reflects a *fetal-placental clock* (McLean, 1995). CRH concentrations vary greatly among women, and the rate of rise in maternal CRH levels is a more accurate predictor of pregnancy outcome than is a single measurement (Leung, 2001; McGrath, 2002). In this regard, the placenta and fetus, through endocrinological events, influence parturition timing at the end of normal gestation.

Fetal Lung Surfactant and Platelet-activating Factor

Surfactant protein A (SP-A) produced by the fetal lung is required for lung maturation. SP-A is expressed by the human amnion and decidua, is present in the amnionic fluid, and prompts signaling pathways in human myometrial cells (Garcia-Verdugo, 2008; Lee, 2010; Snegovskikh, 2011). The exact mechanisms by which SP-A activates myometrial contractility in women, however, remain to be clarified. One mode may be its effects on prostaglandins. Namely, SP-A selectively inhibits $PGF_{2\alpha}$ in the term decidua, but SP-A levels drop in the amnionic fluid at term (Chaiworapongsa, 2008). The fetal lung also makes the uterotonic agent platelet-activating factor (Frenkel, 1996; Toyoshima, 1995). This factor and SP-A play a role in fetal–maternal signaling for parturition (Gao, 2015).

Fetal Membrane Senescence

Toward the end of pregnancy, fetal membranes undergo cellular senescence (Menon, 2016). In human and animal fetal membranes, stretch and oxidative stress induce senescent fetal membrane to manifest a form of sterile inflammation termed senescent-associated secretory phenotype (SASP). This in turn propagates inflammatory signals that further weaken the fetal membrane and activate signals in the decidua and myometrium to initiate parturition. Thus, as the functional necessity of fetal membranes declines at term, they are able to promote signals that contribute to parturition initiation.

Fetal Anomalies and Delayed Parturition

Some evidence shows that pregnancies with markedly diminished estrogen production may be associated with prolonged gestation. These include women with inherited placental sulfatase deficiency and fetal anencephaly with adrenal hypoplasia. The broad range of gestational length seen with these disorders, however, calls into question the exact role of estrogen in human parturition initiation.

Some brain anomalies of the fetal calf, fetal lamb, and sometimes the human fetus delay the normal timing of parturition. In particular, the association between fetal anencephaly and prolonged gestation is well described (Rea, 1898; Malpas, 1933). Malpas concluded that the prolonged gestation was attributable to anomalous fetal brain-pituitary-adrenal function. Indeed, the adrenal glands of the anencephalic fetus are very small and, at term, may be only 5 to 10 percent as large as those of a normal fetus. This is caused by developmental failure of the fetal zone that normally accounts for most of fetal adrenal mass and production of C_{19}-steroid hormones (Chap. 5, p. 101). Such pregnancies are associated with delayed labor and suggest that the fetal adrenal glands are important for the timely onset of parturition.

Other fetal abnormalities that prevent or severely reduce the entry of fetal urine or lung secretions into amnionic fluid do not prolong human pregnancy. Examples are renal agenesis and pulmonary hypoplasia, respectively. Thus, a fetal signal through the paracrine arm of the fetal–maternal communication system does not appear to be mandated for parturition initiation.

PHASE 3: LABOR

This phase is synonymous with active labor, which is customarily divided into three stages (see Figure 21-4). The first stage begins when spaced uterine contractions of sufficient frequency, intensity, and duration are attained to bring about cervical thinning, termed *effacement*. Several uterotonins may be important to the success of this stage of active labor (see Fig. 21-5). These have been shown to stimulate smooth muscle contraction through G-protein coupling. This labor stage ends when the cervix is fully dilated—about 10 cm—to allow passage of the term-sized fetus. The first stage of labor, therefore, is the *stage of cervical effacement and dilation*. The second stage begins when cervical dilation is complete and ends with delivery. Thus, the second stage of labor is the *stage of fetal expulsion*. Last, the third stage begins immediately after delivery of the

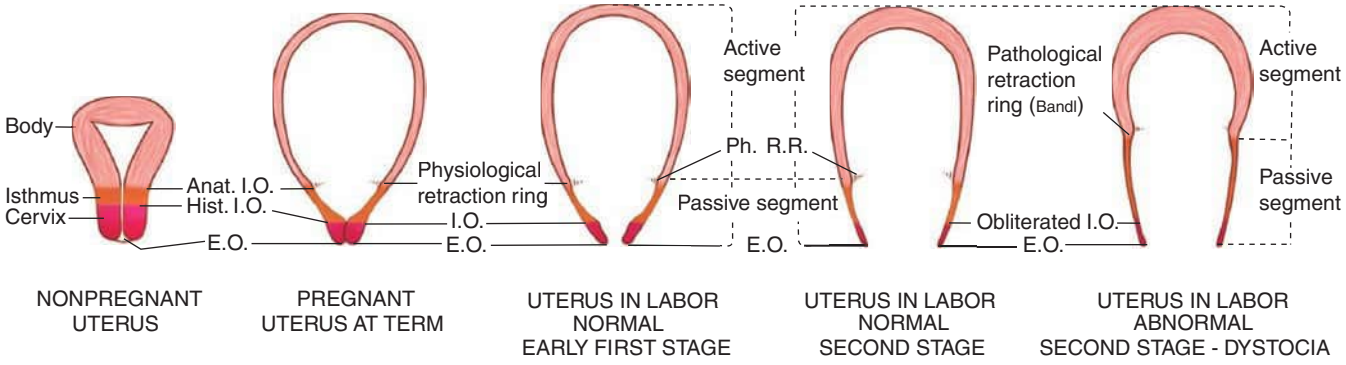


FIGURE 21-11 Sequence of development of the segments and rings in the uterus at term and in labor. Note comparison between the nonpregnant uterus, the uterus at term, and the uterus during labor. The passive lower uterine segment is derived from the isthmus, and the physiological retraction ring develops at the junction of the upper and lower uterine segments. The pathological retraction ring develops from the physiological ring. Anat. I.O. = anatomical internal os; E.O. = external os; Hist. I.O. = histological internal os; Ph.R.R. = physiological retraction ring.

fetus and ends with the delivery of the placenta. This stage of labor is the *stage of placental separation and expulsion*.

First Stage: Clinical Onset of Labor

Uterine Labor Contractions

In some women, forceful uterine contractions that effect delivery begin suddenly. In others, labor initiation is heralded by spontaneous release of a small amount of blood-tinged mucus from the vagina. This extrusion of the mucus plug that had previously filled the cervical canal during pregnancy is referred to as "bloody show." Its passage indicates that labor is already in progress or likely will ensue in hours to days.

Unique among physiological muscular contractions, those of uterine smooth muscle during labor are painful. Suggested causes are: (1) hypoxia of the contracted myometrium—such as that with angina pectoris; (2) compression of nerve ganglia in the cervix and lower uterus by contracted interlocking muscle bundles; (3) cervical stretching during dilation; and (4) stretching of the peritoneum overlying the fundus.

Of these, compression of nerve ganglia in the cervix and lower uterine segment by the contracting myometrium is an especially attractive hypothesis. Paracervical infiltration with local anesthetic usually produces appreciable pain relief with contractions (Chap. 25, p. 472). Uterine contractions are involuntary and, for the most part, independent of extrauterine control. Neural blockade from epidural analgesia does not diminish their frequency or intensity. In other examples, myometrial contractions in paraplegic women and in women after bilateral lumbar sympathectomy are normal but painless.

Mechanical stretching of the cervix enhances uterine activity in several species, including humans. This phenomenon is the *Ferguson reflex* (Ferguson, 1941). Its exact mechanism is unclear, and release of oxytocin has been suggested but not proven. Manipulation of the cervix and "stripping" the fetal membranes are associated with a rise in blood levels of prostaglandin $F_{2\alpha}$ metabolites.

The interval between contractions narrows gradually from approximately 10 minutes at the onset of first-stage labor to as little as 1 minute or less in the second stage. Periods of relaxation between contractions, however, are essential for fetal welfare. Unremitting contractions compromise uteroplacental blood flow sufficiently to cause fetal hypoxemia. In active-phase labor, the duration of each contraction ranges from 30 to 90 seconds and averages 1 minute. Contraction intensity varies appreciably during normal labor. Specifically, amnionic fluid pressures generated by contractions during spontaneous labor average 40 mm Hg, but vary from 20 to 60 mm Hg (Chap. 24, p. 462).

Distinct Lower and Upper Uterine Segments

During active labor, the anatomical uterine divisions that were initiated in phase 2 of parturition become increasingly evident (Figs. 21-11 and 21-12). By abdominal palpation, even before membrane rupture, the two segments can sometimes be

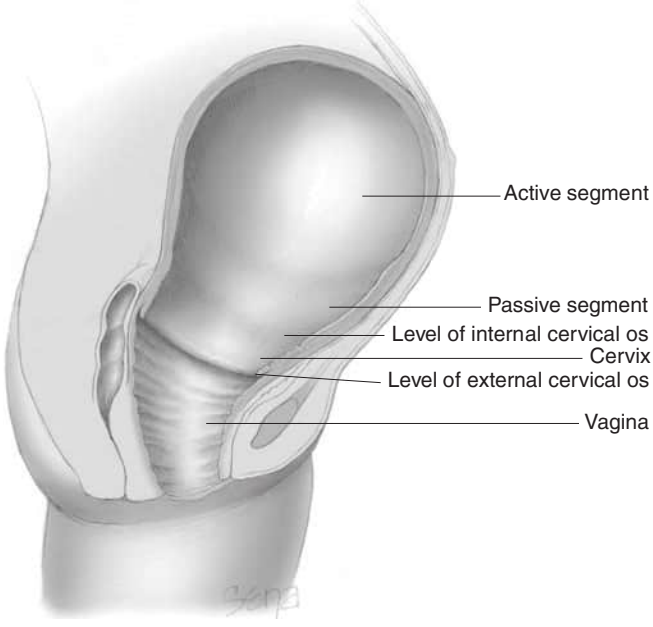


FIGURE 21-12 The uterus at the time of vaginal delivery. The active upper segment retracts around the presenting part as the fetus descends through the birth canal. In the passive lower segment, there is considerably less myometrial tone.

differentiated. The upper segment is firm during contractions, whereas the lower segment is softer, distended, and more passive. This mechanism is imperative because if the entire myometrium, including the lower uterine segment and cervix, were to contract simultaneously and with equal intensity, the net expulsive force would markedly decline. Thus, the upper segment contracts, retracts, and expels the fetus. In response to these contractions, the softened lower uterine segment and cervix dilate and thereby form a greatly expanded, thinned-out tube through which the fetus can pass.

The myometrium of the upper segment does not relax to its original length after contractions. Instead, it becomes relatively fixed at a shorter length. The upper active uterine segment contracts down on its diminishing contents, but myometrial tension remains constant. The net effect is to take up slack, thus maintaining the advantage gained in expulsion of the fetus. Concurrently, the uterine musculature is kept in firm contact with the uterine contents. As the consequence of retraction, each successive contraction commences where its predecessor left off. Thus, the upper part of the uterine cavity becomes slightly smaller with each successive contraction. Because of the successive shortening of the muscular fibers, the upper active segment becomes progressively thickened throughout first- and second-stage labor (see Fig. 21-11). This process continues and results in a tremendously thickened upper uterine segment immediately after delivery.

Clinically, it is important to understand that the phenomenon of upper segment retraction is contingent on a decrease in the volume of its contents. For this to happen, particularly early in labor when the entire uterus is virtually a closed sac with only minimal cervical dilation, the musculature of the lower segment must stretch. This permits a greater portion of the uterine contents to occupy the lower segment. The upper segment retracts only to the extent that the lower segment distends and the cervix dilates.

Relaxation of the lower uterine segment mirrors the same gradual progression of retraction. In the lower segment, successive lengthening of the fibers with labor is accompanied by thinning, normally to only a few millimeters in the thinnest part. With lower segment thinning and concomitant upper segment thickening, a boundary between the two is marked by a ridge on the inner uterine surface—the *physiological retraction ring*. When the thinning of the lower uterine segment is extreme, as in obstructed labor, the ring is prominent and forms a *pathological retraction ring*. This abnormal condition is also known as the *Bandl ring,* which is discussed further in Chapter 23 (p. 442).

Changes in Uterine Shape

Each contraction gradually elongates the ovoid uterine shape an estimated 5 to 10 cm and thereby narrows the horizontal diameter. This *fetal axis pressure* straightens the fetal vertebral column. It also presses the upper pole of the fetus firmly against the fundus, whereas the lower pole is thrust farther downward. With uterine lengthening, the longitudinal muscle fibers are drawn taut. As a result, the lower segment and cervix are the only parts of the uterus that are flexible, and these are pulled upward and around the lower pole of the fetus.

Ancillary Forces

After the cervix is dilated fully, the most important force in fetal expulsion is produced by maternal intraabdominal pressure. Contraction of the abdominal muscles simultaneously with forced respiratory efforts with the glottis closed is referred to as *pushing*. The force is similar to that with defecation, but the intensity usually is much greater. The importance of intraabdominal pressure is shown by the prolonged descent during labor in paraplegic women and in those with a dense epidural block.

Cervical Changes

As the result of contraction forces, two fundamental changes—effacement and dilation—occur in the ripened cervix. For an average-sized fetal head to pass through the cervix, it must completely or fully dilate to a diameter of approximately 10 cm. The fetus may not descend during cervical effacement. However, as the cervix dilates, the presenting fetal part typically does descend somewhat.

Cervical effacement is "obliteration" or "taking up" of the cervix. It is manifest clinically by shortening of the cervical canal from a length of approximately 3 cm to a mere circular orifice with almost paper-thin edges. The muscular fibers at the level of the internal cervical os are pulled upward, or "taken up," into the lower uterine segment. The condition of the external os remains temporarily unchanged (Fig. 21-13). Because of

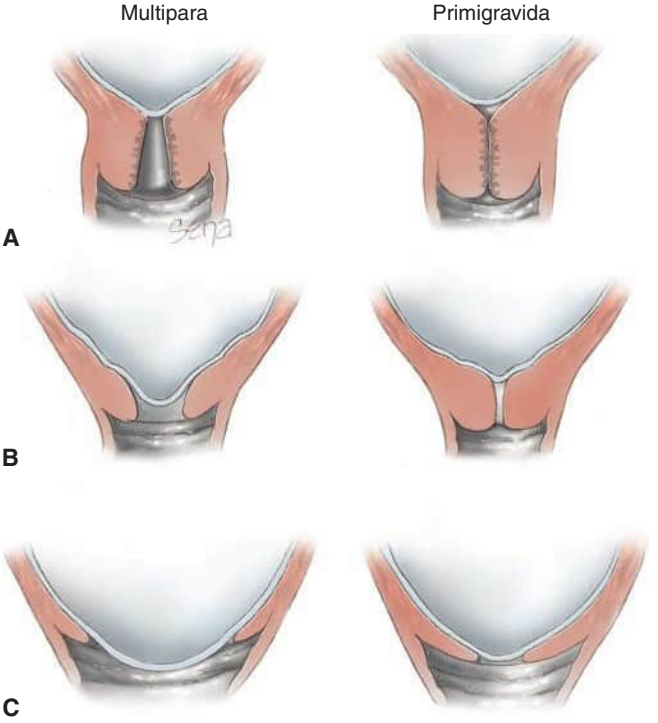


FIGURE 21-13 Schematic showing effacement and dilation. **A.** Before labor, the primigravid cervix is long and undilated in contrast to that of the multipara, which has dilation of the internal and external os. **B.** As effacement begins, the multiparous cervix shows more dilation and funneling of the internal os compared with the primigravid cervix. **C.** As complete effacement is achieved in the primigravid cervix, dilation is minimal. The reverse is true in the multipara.

growing myometrial activity during uterine preparedness for labor, appreciable effacement of a softened cervix sometimes is accomplished before active labor begins. Effacement causes expulsion of the mucous plug as the cervical canal is shortened.

Because the lower segment and cervix have less resistance during a contraction, a centrifugal pull is exerted on the cervix and creates *cervical dilation* (Fig. 21-14). As uterine contractions cause pressure on the membranes, the hydrostatic action of the amnionic sac in turn dilates the cervical canal like a wedge. The process of cervical effacement and dilation causes formation of the *forebag* of amnionic fluid. This is the leading portion of fluid and amnionic sac located in front of the presenting part. In the absence of intact membranes, the pressure of the presenting fetal part against the cervix and lower uterine segment is a similar wedge. Early rupture of the membranes does not retard cervical dilation so long as the presenting fetal part is positioned to exert pressure against the cervix and lower segment.

Referring back to Figure 21-4, recall that cervical dilation is divided into latent and active phases. The duration of the latent phase is more variable and sensitive to extraneous factors. For example, sedation may prolong the latent phase, and myometrial stimulation shortens it. The latent phase duration has little bearing on the subsequent course of labor, whereas the characteristics of the active phase are usually predictive of labor outcome. Normal and abnormal labor curves are fully described in Chapters 22 and 23.

Second Stage: Fetal Descent

In many nulliparas, engagement of the head is accomplished before labor begins. That said, the head may not descend further until late in labor. In the descent pattern of normal labor, a typical hyperbolic curve is formed when the station of the fetal head is plotted as a function of labor duration (see Fig. 21-4). *Station* describes descent of the fetal biparietal diameter in relation to a line drawn between maternal ischial spines (Chap. 22, p. 427). Active descent usually takes place after dilation has progressed for some time. During second-stage labor, the speed of descent is maximal and is maintained until the presenting part reaches the perineal floor (Friedman, 1978). In nulliparas, the presenting part typically descends slowly and steadily. In multiparas, however, descent may be rapid.

Pelvic Floor Changes

The birth canal is supported and functionally closed by the pelvic floor (Chap. 2, p. 19). The most important component of the floor is the levator ani muscle and the fibromuscular connective tissue that covers its upper and lower surfaces. The biomechanical properties of these structures and of the vaginal wall change markedly during parturition. These result from altered ECM structure or composition (Alperin, 2015; Lowder, 2007; Rahn, 2008).

In the first stage of labor, the membranes, when intact, and the fetal presenting part serve to dilate the upper vagina. The most marked change consists of stretching levator ani muscle fibers. This is accompanied by thinning of the central portion

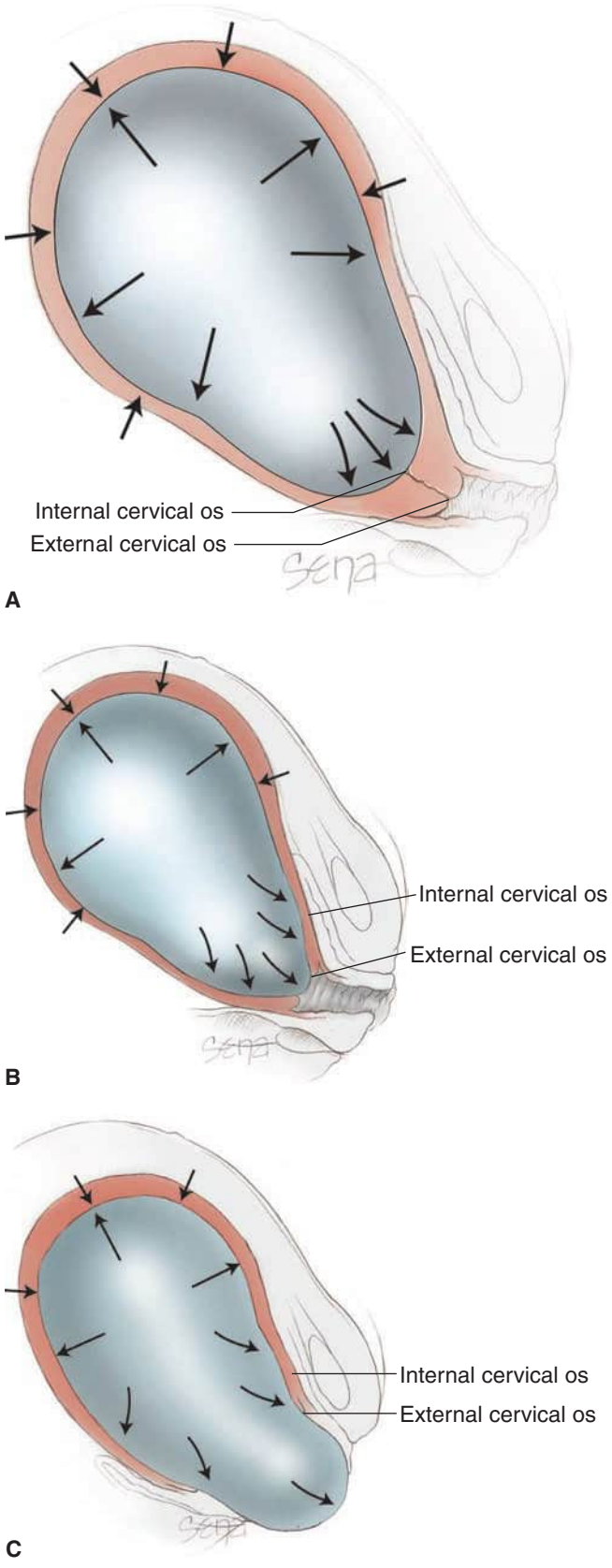


FIGURE 21-14 Hydrostatic action of membranes in effecting cervical effacement and dilation. With labor progression, note the changing relations of the internal and external os in **(A)**, **(B)**, and **(C)**. Although not shown in this diagram, with membrane rupture, the presenting part, applied to the cervix and the forming lower uterine segment, acts similarly.

of the perineum, which becomes transformed from a wedge-shaped, 5-cm-thick tissue mass to a thin, almost transparent membranous structure less than 1 cm thick. When the perineum is distended maximally, the anus becomes markedly dilated and presents an opening that varies from 2 to 3 cm in diameter and through which the anterior wall of the rectum bulges.

Third Stage: Delivery of Placenta and Membranes

This stage begins immediately after fetal delivery and involves separation and expulsion of the placenta and membranes. Normally, by the time the newborn is delivered, the uterine cavity is nearly obliterated and is an almost solid mass of muscle, several centimeters thick, above the thinner lower segment. The uterine fundus now lies just below the level of the umbilicus.

This sudden diminution in uterine size is inevitably accompanied by a decrease in the area of the placental implantation site (Fig. 21-15). For the placenta to accommodate itself to this reduced area, it thickens, but because of limited placental elasticity, it buckles. The resulting tension pulls the weakest layer—decidua spongiosa—from that site. Thus, placental separation follows the disproportion created between the relatively unchanged placental size and the reduced implantation site size.

Cleavage of the placenta is aided greatly by the loose structure of the spongy decidua. As detachment proceeds, a hematoma forms between the separating placenta and the adjacent decidua, which remains attached to the myometrium. The hematoma is usually the result rather than the cause of the separation, because in some cases bleeding is negligible.

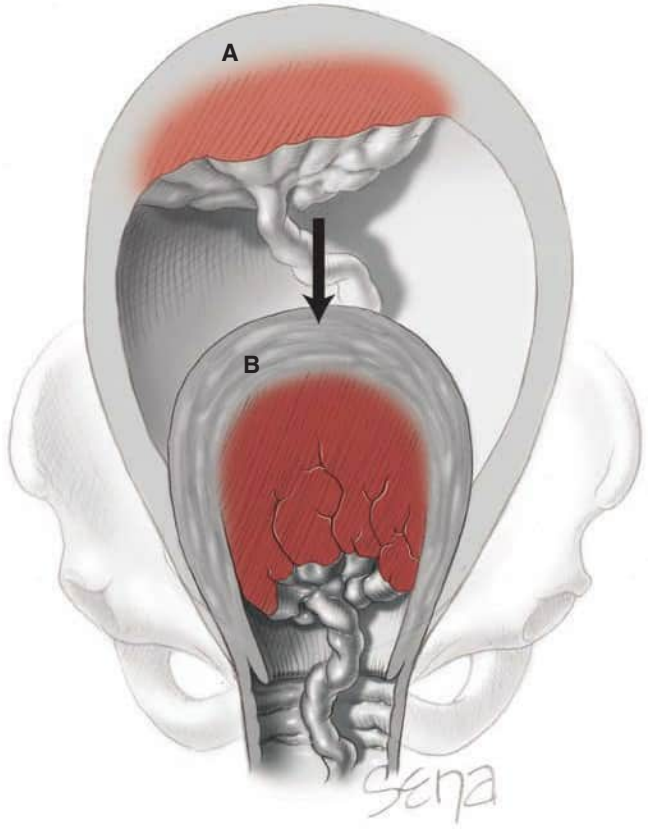


FIGURE 21-15 Diminution in size of the placental site after birth of the newborn. **A.** Spatial relations before birth. **B.** Placental spatial relations after birth.

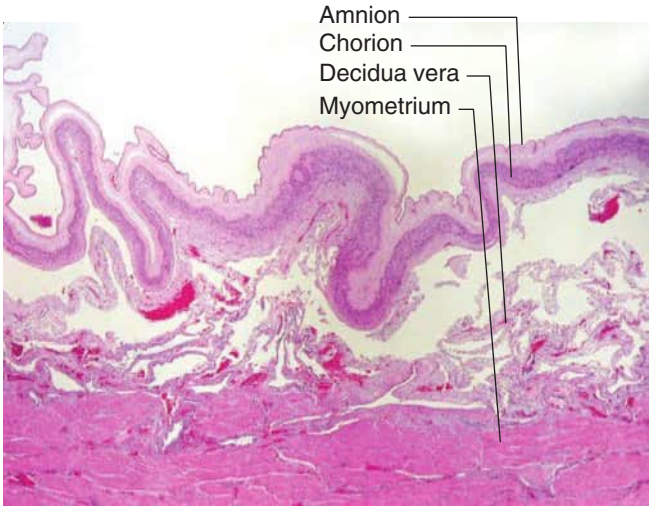


FIGURE 21-16 Postpartum, membranes are thrown up into folds as the uterine cavity decreases in size. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Kelley S. Carrick.)

The great decline in uterine cavity surface area simultaneously throws the fetal membranes—the amniochorion and the parietal decidua—into innumerable folds (Fig. 21-16). Membranes usually remain in situ until placental separation is nearly completed. These are then peeled off the uterine wall, partly by further contraction of the myometrium and partly by traction that is exerted by the separated placenta as it descends during expulsion.

After the placenta has detached, it can be expelled by increased abdominal pressure. Completion of the third stage is also accomplished by alternately compressing and elevating the fundus, while exerting minimal traction on the umbilical cord. The retroplacental hematoma either follows the placenta or is found within the inverted sac formed by the membranes. In this process, known as the *Schultze mechanism* of placental expulsion, blood from the placental site pours into the membrane sac and does not escape externally until after extrusion of the placenta. In the other form of placental extrusion, known as the *Duncan mechanism*, the placenta separates first at the periphery and blood collects between the membranes and the uterine wall and escapes from the vagina. In this circumstance, the placenta descends sideways, and its maternal surface appears first.

UTEROTONINS IN PARTURITION PHASE 3

Oxytocin

This nanopeptide is synthesized in the magnocellular neurons of the supraoptic and paraventricular neurons. The prohormone is transported with its carrier protein, neurophysin, along the axons to the neural lobe of the posterior pituitary gland in membrane-bound vesicles for storage and later release. The prohormone is converted enzymatically to oxytocin during transport (Gainer, 1988; Leake, 1990).

Oxytocin—literally, *quick birth*—was the first uterotonin to be implicated in parturition initiation. Support for this role includes: (1) oxytocin receptor numbers strikingly rising in myometrial and decidual tissues near the end of gestation; (2) oxytocin acting on decidual tissue to promote prostaglandin release; and (3) oxytocin synthesis directly in decidual and extraembryonic fetal tissues and in the placenta (Chibbar, 1993; Zingg, 1995). Moreover, abundant data support oxytocin's important role during second-stage labor and in the puerperium, which is phase 4 of parturition. Specifically, maternal serum oxytocin levels are elevated: (1) during second-stage labor, which is the end of phase 3 of parturition; (2) in the early puerperium; and (3) during breastfeeding (Nissen, 1995). Immediately after delivery of the fetus and placenta, which completes parturition phase 3, firm and persistent uterine contractions induced by oxytocin are essential to prevent postpartum hemorrhage.

Prostaglandins

Prostaglandins play a critical role in phase 3 of parturition (MacDonald, 1993). First, levels of prostaglandins—or their metabolites—in amnionic fluid, maternal plasma, and maternal urine are increased during labor. Second, receptors for PGE_2 and $PGF_{2\alpha}$ are expressed in the uterus and cervix. Thus, if these tissues are exposed to prostaglandins, they will respond. Third, treatment of pregnant women with prostaglandins, by any of several administration routes, causes abortion or labor at all gestational ages. Moreover, administration of prostaglandin H synthase type 2 inhibitors to pregnant women will delay spontaneous labor onset and sometimes arrest preterm labor (Loudon, 2003).

During labor, prostaglandin production within the myometrium and decidua is an efficient mechanism of activating contractions. For example, prostaglandin synthesis is high and unchanging in the decidua during phase 2 and 3 of parturition. Moreover, the receptor level for $PGF_{2\alpha}$ is augmented in the decidua at term, and this increase most likely is the regulatory step in prostaglandin action in the uterus.

The fetal membranes and placenta also produce prostaglandins. Primarily PGE_2, but also $PGF_{2\alpha}$, are detected in amnionic fluid at all gestational ages. As the fetus grows, prostaglandin levels in the amnionic fluid rise gradually. Their greatest elevation in concentration within amnionic fluid, however, is demonstrable after labor begins. These higher levels likely result as the cervix dilates and exposes decidual tissue (Fig. 21-17). These higher levels in the forebag, compared with those in the upper compartment, are believed to follow an inflammatory response that signals the events leading to active labor. Together, the rise in cytokine and prostaglandin concentrations further degrade the ECM, thus weakening fetal membranes.

Endothelin 1

The endothelins are a family of 21-amino-acid peptides that powerfully induce myometrial contraction (Word, 1990). The endothelin A receptor is preferentially expressed in smooth muscle, and when activated, it effects a rise in intracellular calcium.

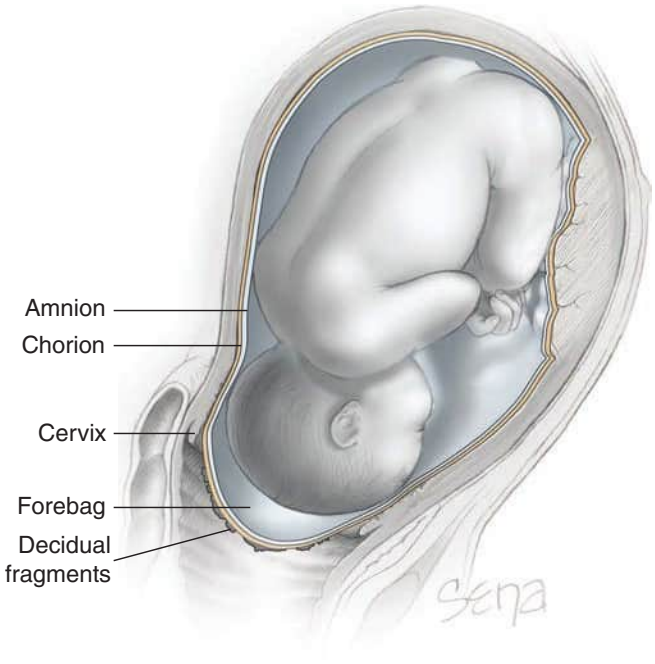


FIGURE 21-17 Sagittal view of the exposed forebag and attached decidual fragments after cervical dilation during labor. (Redrawn from MacDonald PC, Casey ML: Preterm birth. Sci Am 3:42, 1996.)

Endothelin 1 is produced in myometrium of term gestations and is able to induce synthesis of other contractile factors such as prostaglandins and inflammatory mediators (Momohara, 2004; Sutcliffe, 2009). The requirement of endothelin 1 in normal parturition physiology remains to be established.

Angiotensin II

Modulation of uteroplacental blood flow is regulated by angiotensin II, a potent vasoconstrictor. Although, in pregnancy, circulating levels of angiotensin II are increased, vascular resistance is reduced and vasodilation is enhanced. Two angiotensin II receptors are expressed in the uterus—AT_1R and AT_2R. In nonpregnant women, the AT_1R receptor predominates, but the AT_2R receptor is preferentially expressed in gravidas (Cox, 1993). During normotensive pregnancy, AT_2R-mediated effects on vascular smooth muscle lead to vasodilation, which contributes to the pregnancy-associated rise in uterine arterial blood flow. Decreased AT_2R expression is associated with preeclamptic pregnancies (Mishra, 2018; Rosenfeld, 2012) (Chap. 4, p. 65).

PHASE 4: THE PUERPERIUM

Immediately and for about an hour after delivery, the myometrium remains persistently contracted. This directly compresses large uterine vessels and allows thrombosis of their lumens to prevent hemorrhage. This is typically augmented by endogenous and pharmacological uterotonic agents (Chap. 27, p. 507).

Uterine involution and cervical repair are prompt remodeling processes that restore these organs to the nonpregnant state. These protect the reproductive tract from invasion by commensal microorganisms and restore endometrial responsiveness to normal hormonal cyclicity.

During the early puerperium, lactogenesis and milk let-down begin in mammary glands (Chap. 36, p. 639). Reinstitution of ovulation signals preparation for the next pregnancy. Ovulation generally occurs within 4 to 6 weeks after birth. However, it is dependent on the duration of breastfeeding and lactation-induced, prolactin-mediated anovulation and amenorrhea.

REFERENCES

Akgul Y, Holt R, Mummert M, et al: Dynamic changes in cervical glycosaminoglycan composition during normal pregnancy and preterm birth. Endocrinology 153(7):3493, 2012

Akgul Y, Word RA, Ensign LM, et al: Hyaluronan in cervical epithelia protects against infection-mediated preterm birth. J Clin Invest 124(12):5481, 2014

Akins ML, Luby-Phelps K, Bank RA, et al: Cervical softening during pregnancy: regulated changes in collagen cross-linking and composition of matricellular proteins in the mouse. Biol Reprod 84(5):1053, 2011

Akins ML, Luby-Phelps K, Mahendroo M: Second harmonic generation imaging as a potential tool for staging pregnancy and predicting preterm birth. J Biomed Opt 15(2):026020, 2010

Alperin M, Lawley DM, Esparza MC, et al: Pregnancy-induced adaptations in the intrinsic structure of rat pelvic floor muscles. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(2):191 e191, 2015

Ambrus G, Rao CV: Novel regulation of pregnant human myometrial smooth muscle cell gap junctions by human chorionic gonadotropin. Endocrinology 135(6):2772, 1994

Anamthathmakula P, Kyathanahalli C, Ingles J, et al: Estrogen receptor alpha isoform ERdelta7 in myometrium modulates uterine quiescence during pregnancy. EBioMedicine 39:520, 2019

Ander S, Diamond MS, Coyne CB: Immune responses at the maternal-fetal interface. Sci Immunol 4(31):eaat6114, 2019

Anum EA, Hill LD, Pandya A, et al: Connective tissue and related disorders and preterm birth: clues to genes contributing to prematurity. Placenta 30(3):207, 2009

Astle S, Thornton S, Slater DM: Identification and localization of prostaglandin E2 receptors in upper and lower segment human myometrium during pregnancy. Mol Hum Reprod 11(4):279, 2005

Badir S, Bajka M, Mazza E: A novel procedure for the mechanical characterization of the uterine cervix during pregnancy. J Mech Behav Biomed Mater 27:143, 2013

Benedetto C, Petraglia F, Marozio L, et al: Corticotropin-releasing hormone increases prostaglandin F2 alpha activity on human myometrium in vitro. Am J Obstet Gynecol 171(1):126, 1994

Berkane N, Verstraete L, Uzan S, et al: Use of mifepristone to ripen the cervix and induce labor in term pregnancies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:114, 2005

Berkowitz GS, Lapinski RH, Lockwood CJ, et al: Corticotropin-releasing factor and its binding protein: maternal serum levels in term and preterm deliveries. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174(5):1477, 1996

Blanks AM, Vatish M, Allen MJ, et al: Paracrine oxytocin and estradiol demonstrate a spatial increase in human intrauterine tissues with labor. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 88(7):3392, 2003

Blaskewicz CD, Pudney J, Anderson DJ: Structure and function of intercellular junctions in human cervical and vaginal mucosal epithelia. Biol Reprod 85(1):97, 2011

Bogacki M, Silvia WJ, Rekawiecki R, et al: Direct inhibitory effect of progesterone on oxytocin-induced secretion of prostaglandin F(2alpha) from bovine endometrial tissue. Biol Reprod 67(1):184, 2002

Bollapragada S, Youssef R, Jordan F, et al: Term labor is associated with a core inflammatory response in human fetal membranes, myometrium, and cervix. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(1):104.e1, 2009

Bygdeman M, Swahn ML, Gemzell-Danielsson K, et al: The use of progesterone antagonists in combination with prostaglandin for termination of pregnancy. Hum Reprod 9 Suppl 1:121, 1994

Casey ML, MacDonald PC: The endocrinology of human parturition. Ann N Y Acad Sci 828:273, 1997

Chaiworapongsa T, Hong JS, Hull WM, et al: The concentration of surfactant protein-A in amniotic fluid decreases in spontaneous human parturition at term. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 21(9):652, 2008

Challis JR, Lye SJ: Parturition. In Knobil E, Neill JD (eds): The Physiology of Reproduction, 2nd ed. Vol II. New York, Raven, 1994

Challis JR, Matthews SG, Gibb W, et al: Endocrine and paracrine regulation of birth at term and preterm. Endocr Rev 21(5):514, 2000

Challis JR, Smith SK: Fetal endocrine signals and preterm labor. Biol Neonate 79(3–4):163, 2001

Chen CC, Montalbano AP, Hussain I, et al: The transcriptional repressor GATAD2B mediates progesterone receptor suppression of myometrial contractile gene expression. J Biol Chem 292(30):12560, 2017

Cheung PY, Walton JC, Tai HH, et al: Immunocytochemical distribution and localization of 15-hydroxyprostaglandin dehydrogenase in human fetal membranes, decidua, and placenta. Am J Obstet Gynecol 163:1445, 1990

Chibbar R, Miller FD, Mitchell BF: Synthesis of oxytocin in amnion, chorion, and decidua may influence the timing of human parturition. J Clin Invest 91(1):185, 1993

Chwalisz K: The use of progesterone antagonists for cervical ripening and as an adjunct to labour and delivery. Hum Reprod 9 Suppl 1:131, 1994a

Chwalisz K, Garfield RE: Antiprogestins in the induction of labor. Ann N Y Acad Sci 734:387, 1994b

Condon JC, Jeyasuria P, Faust JM, et al: A decline in the levels of progesterone receptor coactivators in the pregnant uterus at term may antagonize progesterone receptor function and contribute to the initiation of parturition. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100(16):9518, 2003

Cox BE, Ipson MA, Shaul PW, et al: Myometrial angiotensin II receptor subtypes change during ovine pregnancy. J Clin Invest 92(5):2240, 1993

Dodd JM, Jones L, Flenady V, et al: Prenatal administration of progesterone for preventing preterm birth in women considered to be at risk of preterm birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD004947, 2013

Downing SJ, Hollingsworth M: Action of relaxin on uterine contractions—a review. J Reprod Fertil 99(2):275, 1993

Eta E, Ambrus G, Rao CV: Direct regulation of human myometrial contractions by human chorionic gonadotropin. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 79(6):1582, 1994

Ferguson JK: A study of the motility of the intact uterus at term. Surg Gynecol Obstet 73, 1941

Frenkel RA, Muguruma K, Johnston JM: The biochemical role of platelet-activating factor in reproduction. Prog Lipid Res 35(2):155, 1996

Friedman EA: Labor: Clinical Evaluation and Management, 2nd ed. New York, Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1978

Frim DM, Emanuel RL, Robinson BG, et al: Characterization and gestational regulation of corticotropin-releasing hormone messenger RNA in human placenta. J Clin Invest 82(1):287, 1988

Gainer H, Alstein M, Whitnall MH, et al: The biosynthesis and secretion of oxytocin and vasopressin. In Knobil E, Neill J (eds): The Physiology of Reproduction, Vol II. New York, Raven, 1988

Garcia-Verdugo I, Tanfin Z, Dallot E, et al: Surfactant protein A signaling pathways in human uterine smooth muscle cells. Biol Reprod 79(2):348, 2008

Gao L, Rabbitt EH, Condon JC, et al: Steroid receptor coactivators 1 and 2 mediate fetal-to-maternal signaling that initiates parturition. J Clin Invest 125(7):2808, 2015

Germain AM, Smith J, Casey ML, et al: Human fetal membrane contribution to the prevention of parturition: uterotonin degradation. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 78(2):463, 1994

Giannoulias D, Patel FA, Holloway AC, et al: Differential changes in 15-hydroxyprostaglandin dehydrogenase and prostaglandin H synthase (types I and II) in human pregnant myometrium. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 87(3):1345, 2002

Grino M, Chrousos GP, Margioris AN: The corticotropin releasing hormone gene is expressed in human placenta. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 148(3):1208, 1987

Guerra DD, Hurt JK: Gasotransmitters in pregnancy: from conception to uterine involution. Biol Reprod 101(1):4, 2019

Hassan SS, Romero R, Haddad R, et al: The transcriptome of the uterine cervix before and after spontaneous term parturition. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195(3):778, 2006

Hassan SS, Romero R, Tarca AL, et al: The transcriptome of cervical ripening in human pregnancy before the onset of labor at term: identification of novel molecular functions involved in this process. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(12):1183, 2009

Hegar A: Diagnose der frühesten Schwangerschaftsperiode. Deutsche Medizinische Wochenschrift 21:565, 1895

Hermanns-Le T, Pierard G, Quatresooz P: Ehlers-Danlos-like dermal abnormalities in women with recurrent preterm premature rupture of fetal membranes. Am J Dermatopathol 27(5):407, 2005

House M, Bhadelia RA, Myers K, et al: Magnetic resonance imaging of three-dimensional cervical anatomy in the second and third trimester. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 144 Suppl 1:S65, 2009

Ingles J, Simpson A, Kyathanahalli C et al: Preconditioning the uterine unfolded protein response maintains non-apoptotic caspase 3-dependent quiescence during pregnancy. Cell Death Dis 9(10):933, 2018

Kandola MK, Sykes L, Lee YS, et al: EP2 receptor activates dual G protein signaling pathways that mediate contrasting proinflammatory and relax-

atory responses in term pregnant human myometrium. Endocrinology 155(2):605, 2014
Kishore AH, Li XH, Word RA: Hypoxia and PGE(2) regulate MiTF-CX during cervical ripening. Mol Endocrinol 26(12):2031, 2012
Kishore AH, Liang H, Kanchwala M, et al: Prostaglandin dehydrogenase is a target for successful induction of cervical ripening. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 114(31):E6427, 2017
Konopka CK, Glanzner WG, Rigo ML, et al: Responsivity to PGE2 labor induction involves concomitant differential prostaglandin E receptor gene expression in cervix and myometrium. Genet Mol Res 14(3):10877, 2015
Kyathanahalli C, Organ K, Moreci RS, et al: Uterine endoplasmic reticulum stress-unfolded protein response regulation of gestational length is caspase-3 and 7-dependent. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 112(45):14090, 2015
Lang CT, Iams JD, Tangchitnob E, et al: A method to visualize 3-dimensional anatomic changes in the cervix during pregnancy: a preliminary observational study. J Ultrasound Med 29(2):255, 2010
Leake RD: Oxytocin in the initiation of labor. In Carsten ME, Miller JD (eds): Uterine Function. Molecular and Cellular Aspects. New York, Plenum, 1990
Lee DC, Romero R, Kim CJ, et al: Surfactant protein-A as an anti-inflammatory component in the amnion: implications for human pregnancy. J Immunol 184(11):6479, 2010
Leonhardt A, Glaser A, Wegmann M, et al: Expression of prostanoid receptors in human lower segment pregnant myometrium. Prostaglandins Leukot Essent Fatty Acids 69(5):307, 2003
Leung TN, Chung TK, Madsen G, et al: Rate of rise in maternal plasma corticotrophin-releasing hormone and its relation to gestational length. BJOG 108(5):527, 2001
Li H, Yu Y, Shi Y, et al: HoxA13 stimulates myometrial cells to secrete IL-1beta and enhance the expression of contraction-associated proteins. Endocrinology 157(5):2129, 2016
Loudon JA, Groom KM, Bennett PR: Prostaglandin inhibitors in preterm labour. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 17(5):731, 2003
Lowder JL, Debes KM, Moon DK, et al: Biomechanical adaptations of the rat vagina and supportive tissues in pregnancy to accommodate delivery. Obstet Gynecol 109(1):136, 2007
Lowry PJ: Corticotropin-releasing factor and its binding protein in human plasma. Ciba Found Symp 172:108, 1993
Lyall F, Lye S, Teoh T, et al: Expression of Gsalpha, connexin-43, connexin-26, and EP1, 3, and 4 receptors in myometrium of prelabor singleton versus multiple gestations and the effects of mechanical stretch and steroids on Gsalpha. J Soc Gynecol Investig 9(5):299, 2002
MacDonald PC, Casey ML: Preterm birth. Sci Am 3:42, 1996
MacDonald PC, Casey ML: The accumulation of prostaglandins (PG) in amniotic fluid is an aftereffect of labor and not indicative of a role for PGE2 or PGF2 alpha in the initiation of human parturition. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 76(5):1332, 1993
Mahendroo M: Cervical remodeling in term and preterm birth: insights from an animal model. Reproduction 143(4):429, 2012
Mahendroo MS, Porter A, Russell DW, et al: The parturition defect in steroid 5alpha-reductase type 1 knockout mice is due to impaired cervical ripening. Mol Endocrinol 13(6):981, 1999
Malpas P: Postmaturity and malformations of the foetus. BJOG 40(6):1046, 1933
McGrath S, McLean M, Smith D, et al: Maternal plasma corticotropin-releasing hormone trajectories vary depending on the cause of preterm delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186(2):257, 2002
McLean M, Bisits A, Davies J, et al: A placental clock controlling the length of human pregnancy. Nat Med 1(5): 460, 1995
Meera P, Anwer K, Monga M, et al: Relaxin stimulates myometrial calcium-activated potassium channel activity via protein kinase A. Am J Physiol 269(2 Pt 1):C312, 1995
Mendelson CR, Montalbano AP, Gao L: Fetal-to-maternal signaling in the timing of birth. J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 170:19, 2017
Mendelson CR, Gao L, Montalbano AP: Multifactorial regulation of myometrial contractility during pregnancy and parturition. Front Endocrinol (Lausanne) 10:714, 2019
Menon R, Bonney EA, Condon J, et al: Novel concepts on pregnancy clocks and alarms: redundancy and synergy in human parturition. Hum Reprod Update 22(5):535, 2016
Mesiano S, Chan EC, Fitter JT, et al: Progesterone withdrawal and estrogen activation in human parturition are coordinated by progesterone receptor A expression in the myometrium. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 87(6):2924, 2002
Mishra JS, Gopalakrishnan K, Kumar S: Pregnancy upregulates angiotensin type 2 receptor expression and increases blood flow in uterine arteries of rats. Biol Reprod 99(5):1091, 2018
Mizutani S, Wright JW, Kobayashi H: Placental leucine aminopeptidase- and aminopeptidase A- deficient mice offer insight concerning the mechanisms underlying preterm labor and preeclampsia. J Biomed Biotechnol 2011: 286947, 2011
Momohara Y, Sakamoto S, Obayashi S, et al: Roles of endogenous nitric oxide synthase inhibitors and endothelin-1 for regulating myometrial contractions during gestation in the rat. Mol Hum Reprod 10(7):505, 2004
Myatt L, Lye SJ: Expression, localization and function of prostaglandin receptors in myometrium. Prostaglandins Leukot Essent Fatty Acids 70(2):137, 2004
Myers KM, Feltovich H, Mazza E, et al: The mechanical role of the cervix in pregnancy. J Biomech 48(9):1511, 2015
Myers KM, Paskaleva AP, House M, et al: Mechanical and biochemical properties of human cervical tissue. Acta Biomater 4(1):104, 2008
Nadeem L, Shynlova O, Matysiak-Zablocki E, et al: Molecular evidence of functional progesterone withdrawal in human myometrium. Nat Commun 7:11565, 2016
Nallasamy S, Mahendroo M: Distinct roles of cervical epithelia and stroma in pregnancy and parturition. Semin Reprod Med 35(2):190, 2017
Nissen E, Lilja G, Widstrom AM, et al: Elevation of oxytocin levels early post partum in women. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 74(7):530, 1995
Norwitz ER, Bonney EA, Snegovskikh VV, et al: Molecular regulation of parturition: the role of the decidual clock. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 5(11):1, 2015
Olson DM, Ammann C: Role of the prostaglandins in labour and prostaglandin receptor inhibitors in the prevention of preterm labour. Front Biosci 12:1329, 2007
Ozasa H, Tominaga T, Nishimura T, et al: Lysyl oxidase activity in the mouse uterine cervix is physiologically regulated by estrogen. Endocrinology 109(2):618, 1981
Parra-Saavedra M, Gomez L, Barrero A, et al: Prediction of preterm birth using the cervical consistency index. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 38(1):44, 2011
Patel B, Elguero S, Thakore S, et al: Role of nuclear progesterone receptor isoforms in uterine pathophysiology. Hum Reprod Update 21(2):155, 2015
Peavey MC, Wu SP, Li R, et al: Progesterone receptor isoform B regulates the Oxtr-Plcl2-Trpc3 pathway to suppress uterine contractility. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 118(11): e2011643118, 2021
Peiris HN, Romero R, Vaswani K, et al: Prostaglandin and prostamide concentrations in amniotic fluid of women with spontaneous labor at term with and without clinical chorioamnionitis. Prostaglandins Leukot Essent Fatty Acids 163:102195, 2020
Pérez GJ, Toro L, Erulkar SD, et al: Characterization of large-conductance, calcium-activated potassium channels from human myometrium. Am J Obstet Gynecol 168(2):652, 1993
Perkins AV, Wolfe CD, Eben F, et al: Corticotrophin-releasing hormone-binding protein in human fetal plasma. J Endocrinol 146(3):395, 1995
Petraglia F, Florio P, Simoncini T, et al: Cord plasma corticotropin-releasing factor-binding protein (CRF-BP) in term and preterm labour. Placenta 18(2–3):115, 1997
Pizzella S, Helou NE, Chubiz J, et al: Evolving cervical imaging technologies to predict preterm birth. Semin Immunopathol 42(4):385, 2020
Price SA, Pochun I, Phaneuf S, et al: Adenylyl cyclase isoforms in pregnant and non-pregnant human myometrium. J Endocrinol 164(1):21, 2000
Rahn DD, Ruff MD, Brown SA, et al: Biomechanical properties of the vaginal wall: effect of pregnancy, elastic fiber deficiency, and pelvic organ prolapse. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198(5):590 e591, 2008
Rea C: Prolonged gestation, acrania monstrosity and apparent placenta previa in one obstetrical case. JAMA 30(20):1166, 1898
Read CP, Word RA, Ruscheinsky MA, et al: Cervical remodeling during pregnancy and parturition: molecular characterization of the softening phase in mice. Reproduction 134(2):327, 2007
Reinl EL, Zhao P, Wu W, et al: Na+-leak channel, non-selective (NALCN) regulates myometrial excitability and facilitates successful parturition. Cell Physiol Biochem 48(2):503, 2018
Renthal NE, Chen CC, Williams KC, et al: miR-200 family and targets, ZEB1 and ZEB2, modulate uterine quiescence and contractility during pregnancy and labor. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107(48):20828, 2010
Renthal NE, Williams KC, Montalbano AP, et al: Molecular regulation of parturition: a myometrial perspective. Cold Spring Harb Perspect Med 5(11):1, 2015
Rosenfeld CR, DeSpain K, Word RA, et al: Differential sensitivity to angiotensin II and norepinephrine in human uterine arteries. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 97(1):138, 2012
Saijonmaa O, Laatikainen T, Wahlstrom T: Corticotrophin-releasing factor in human placenta: localization, concentration and release in vitro. Placenta 9(4):373, 1988
Sanborn BM, Yue C, Wang W, et al: G protein signalling pathways in myometrium: affecting the balance between contraction and relaxation. Rev Reprod 3(3):196, 1998

Sasaki A, Shinkawa O, Margioris AN, et al: Immunoreactive corticotropin-releasing hormone in human plasma during pregnancy, labor, and delivery. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 64(2):224, 1987

Shynlova O, Nadeem L, Zhang J, et al: Myometrial activation: novel concepts underlying labor. Placenta 92:28, 2020

Shynlova O, Williams SJ, Draper H, et al: Uterine stretch regulates temporal and spatial expression of fibronectin protein and its alpha 5 integrin receptor in myometrium of unilaterally pregnant rats. Biol Reprod 77(5):880, 2007

Smith GC, Wu WX, Nathanielsz PW: Effects of gestational age and labor on expression of prostanoid receptor genes in baboon uterus. Biol Reprod 64(4):1131, 2001

Smith R: Parturition. N Engl J Med 356(3):271, 2007

Snegovskikh VV, Bhandari V, Wright JR, et al: Surfactant protein-A (SP-A) selectively inhibits prostaglandin F2alpha (PGF2alpha) production in term decidua: implications for the onset of labor. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 96(4):E624, 2011

Solan JL, Lampe PD: Spatio-temporal regulation of connexin43 phosphorylation and gap junction dynamics. Biochem Biophys Acta Biomembr 1860(1):83, 2018

Solano ME: Decidual immune cells: guardians of human pregnancies. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 60:3, 2019

Sparey C, Robson SC, Bailey J, et al: The differential expression of myometrial connexin-43, cyclooxygenase-1 and 2, and Gs alpha proteins in the upper and lower segments of the human uterus during pregnancy and labor. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 84(5):1705, 1999

Stanfield Z, Amini P, Wang J, et al: Interplay of transcriptional signaling by progesterone, cyclic AMP, and inflammation in myometrial cells: implications for the control of human parturition. Mol Hum Reprod 25(7):408, 2019

Straach KJ, Shelton JM, Richardson JA, et al: Regulation of hyaluronan expression during cervical ripening. Glycobiology 15(1):55, 2005

Stull JT, Lin PJ, Krueger JK, et al: Myosin light chain kinase: functional domains and structural motifs. Acta Physiol Scand 164(4):471, 1998

Sutcliffe AM, Clarke DL, Bradbury DA, et al: Transcriptional regulation of monocyte chemotactic protein-1 release by endothelin-1 in human airway smooth muscle cells involves NF-kappaB and AP-1. Br J Pharmacol 157(3):436, 2009

Tattersall M, Cordeaux Y, Charnock-Jones DS, et al: Expression of gastrin-releasing peptide is increased by prolonged stretch of human myometrium, and antagonists of its receptor inhibit contractility. J Physiol 590(9):2081, 2012

Telfer JF, Itoh H, Thomson AJ, et al: Activity and expression of soluble and particulate guanylate cyclases in myometrium from nonpregnant and pregnant women: down-regulation of soluble guanylate cyclase at term. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 86(12):5934, 2001

Timmons BC, Mahendroo M: Processes regulating cervical ripening differ from cervical dilation and postpartum repair: insights from gene expression studies. Reprod Sci 14(8 Suppl):53, 2007

Toyoshima K, Narahara H, Furukawa M, et al: Platelet-activating factor. Role in fetal lung development and relationship to normal and premature labor. Clin Perinatol 22(2):263, 1995

van der Zwan A, van Unen V, Beyrend G, et al: Visualizing dynamic changes at the maternal-fetal interface throughout human pregnancy by mass cytometry. Front Immunol 11:571300, 2020

Vink J, Myers K. Cervical alterations in pregnancy. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 52:88, 2018

Vink JY, Qin S, Brock CO, et al: A new paradigm for the role of smooth muscle cells in the human cervix. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(4):478.e1, 2016

Volozonoka L, Rots D, Kempa I, et al: Genetic landscape of preterm birth due to cervical insufficiency: comprehensive gene analysis and patient next-generation sequencing data interpretation. PLoS One 15(3):e0230771, 2020

Wadhwa PD, Porto M, Garite TJ, et al: Maternal corticotropin-releasing hormone levels in the early third trimester predict length of gestation in human pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 179(4):1079, 1998

Wakle-Prabagaran M, Lorca RA, Ma X, et al: BKCa channel regulates calcium oscillations induced by alpha-2-macroglobulin in human myometrial smooth muscle cells. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 113(16):E2335, 2016

Wang B, Wang P, Parobchak N, et al: Integrated RNA-seq and ChIP-seq analysis reveals a feed-forward loop regulating H3K9ac and key labor drivers in human placenta. Placenta 76:40, 2019

Wathes DC, Borwick SC, Timmons PM, et al: Oxytocin receptor expression in human term and preterm gestational tissues prior to and following the onset of labour. J Endocrinol 161(1):143, 1999

Williams KC, Renthal NE, Condon JC, et al: MicroRNA-200a serves a key role in the decline of progesterone receptor function leading to term and preterm labor. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109(19):7529, 2012

Wira CR, Grant-Tschudy KS, Crane-Godreau MA: Epithelial cells in the female reproductive tract: a central role as sentinels of immune protection. Am J Reprod Immunol 53(2):65, 2005

Wolf JP, Simon J, Itskovitz J, et al: Progesterone antagonist RU 486 accommodates but does not induce labour and delivery in primates. Hum Reprod 8:759, 1993

Woodcock NA, Taylor CW, Thornton S: Effect of an oxytocin receptor antagonist and rho kinase inhibitor on the $[Ca^{++}]_i$ sensitivity of human myometrium. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190:222, 2004

Word RA, Kamm KE, Stull JT, et al: Endothelin increases cytoplasmic calcium and myosin phosphorylation in human myometrium. Am J Obstet Gynecol 162(4):1103, 1990

Word RA, Stull JT, Casey ML, et al: Contractile elements and myosin light chain phosphorylation in myometrial tissue from nonpregnant and pregnant women. J Clin Invest 92(1):29, 1993

Wray S, Prendergast C: The myometrium: from excitation to contractions and labour. Adv Exp Med Biol 1124:233, 2019

Ying L, Becard M, Lyell D, et al: The transient receptor potential vanilloid 4 channel modulates uterine tone during pregnancy. Sci Transl Med 7(319):319ra204, 2015

Yoshida K, Jiang H, Kim M, et al: Quantitative evaluation of collagen cross-links and corresponding tensile mechanical properties in mouse cervical tissue during normal pregnancy. PLoS One 9(11):e112391, 2014

You X, Gao L, Liu J, et al: CRH activation of different signaling pathways results in differential calcium signaling in human pregnant myometrium before and during labor. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 97(10):E1851, 2012

Young RC, Goloman G: Mechanotransduction in rat myometrium: coordination of contractions of electrically and chemically isolated tissues. Reprod Sci 18(1):64, 2011

Zhang Y, Akins ML, Murari K, et al: A compact fiber-optic SHG scanning endomicroscope and its application to visualize cervical remodeling during pregnancy. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109(32):12878, 2012

Ziecik AJ, Derecka-Reszka K, Rzucidlo SJ: Extragonadal gonadotropin receptors, their distribution and function. J Physiol Pharmacol 43(4 Suppl 1):33, 1992

Zingg HH, Rozen F, Chu K, et al: Oxytocin and oxytocin receptor gene expression in the uterus. Recent Prog Horm Res 50:255, 1995

CHAPTER 22

Normal Labor

Labor is the process that leads to childbirth. It begins with the onset of regular uterine contractions and ends with delivery of the newborn and expulsion of the placenta. Pregnancy and birth are physiological processes. Thus, labor and delivery should be considered normal for most women.

FETAL ORIENTATION

Fetal Lie

Fetal position within the birth canal is critical to labor progress and to the delivery route. It should be determined in early labor, and sonography can be implemented for unclear cases. Important relationships include fetal lie, presentation, attitude, and position.

Of these, *fetal lie* describes the relationship of the fetal long axis to that of the mother. In more than 99 percent of labors at term, the fetal lie is *longitudinal*. A *transverse lie* is less frequent. Occasionally, the fetal and maternal axes may cross at a 45-degree angle to form an *oblique lie*. This is unstable and becomes longitudinal or transverse during labor.

Fetal Presentation

The *presenting part* is the portion of the fetal body either within or in closest proximity to the birth canal. It usually can be felt through the cervix on vaginal examination. In longitudinal lies, the presenting part is either the fetal head or the breech, creating cephalic and breech presentations, respectively. When the fetus lies with the long axis transversely, the shoulder is considered the presenting part.

Cephalic presentations are subclassified according to the relationship between the head and body of the fetus (Fig. 22-1). Ordinarily, the head is flexed sharply so that the chin contacts the thorax. The occipital fontanel is the presenting part, and this presentation is referred to as a *vertex* or *occiput presentation*. Much less often, the fetal neck may be sharply extended so that the occiput and back come into contact, and the face is foremost in the birth canal—*face presentation*. The fetal head may assume a position between these extremes. When the neck is only partly flexed, the anterior (large) fontanel may present—*sinciput presentation*. When the neck is only partially extended, the brow may emerge—*brow presentation*. These latter two are usually transient. As labor progresses, sinciput and brow presentations almost always convert into occiput or face presentations by neck flexion or extension, respectively. If not, dystocia can develop (Chap. 23, p. 441).

The fetus at term usually presents occiput rather than breech. Although the fetal head at term is slightly larger than the breech, the entire *podalic pole* of the fetus—that is, the breech and extremities—is bulkier and more mobile than the cephalic pole. The *cephalic pole* is composed of the fetal head only. Logically, the fetus orients its polarity to make use of the roomier fundus for its bulkier and more mobile podalic pole. The breech presentation rate drops with gestational age, but 2

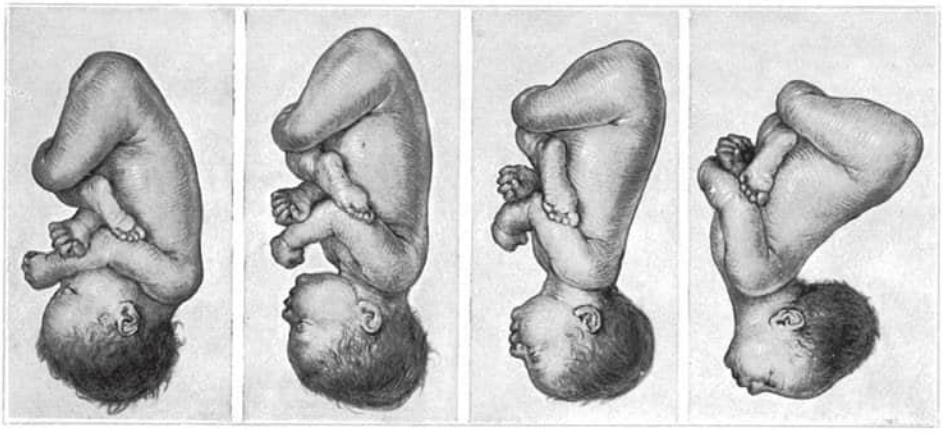


FIGURE 22-1 Longitudinal lie, cephalic presentation. Differences in attitude of the fetal body in **(A)** occiput, **(B)** sinciput, **(C)** brow, and **(D)** face presentations. Note changes in fetal attitude as the fetal head becomes less flexed.

to 3 percent of singletons are breech at delivery (Bin, 2016; Toijonen, 2020). The three general breech configurations are *frank*, *complete*, and *footling presentations*. Management of the breech presenting fetus and of those with transverse lie is found in Chapters 28 and 23, respectively.

Fetal Attitude

In the later months of pregnancy, the fetus assumes a characteristic posture described as attitude or habitus. As a rule, the fetus forms an ovoid mass that corresponds roughly to the shape of the uterine cavity (see Fig. 22-1A). The fetus becomes folded upon itself to create a convex back. The head is sharply flexed, the chin nearly contacts with the chest, the thighs are flexed over the abdomen, and the legs bend at the knee. In cephalic presentations, the arms usually lie across the thorax or parallel to the sides. The umbilical cord fills the space between the extremities. This posture results from fetal growth and accommodation to the uterine cavity.

Exceptions form as the fetal head becomes progressively more extended from occiput to face presentations. This results in a progressive change in fetal attitude from a convex (flexed) to a concave (extended) contour of the vertebral column. This progression is seen in Figure 22-1, panels B through D.

Fetal Position

Position refers to the relationship of a defined portion of the fetal presenting part to either the right or left side of the birth canal. The fetal occiput, chin (mentum), and sacrum are the defined landmarks in occiput, face, and breech presentations, respectively. Because the defined presenting part may be on either the mother's left or right side, possible designations are left and right occipital (LO and RO), left and right mental (LM and RM), and left and right sacral (LS and RS). Further, the relationship of the defined landmark to the anterior (A), transverse (T), or posterior (P) portion of the maternal pelvis is considered (Fig. 22-2).

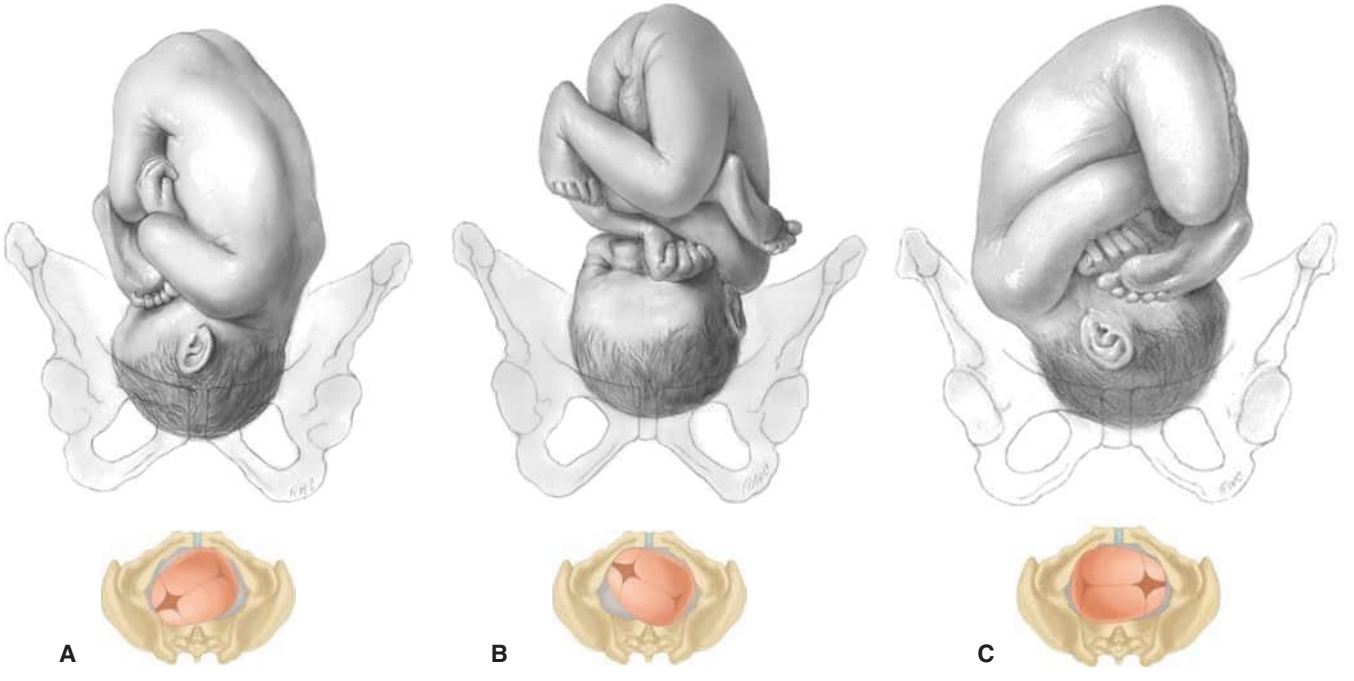
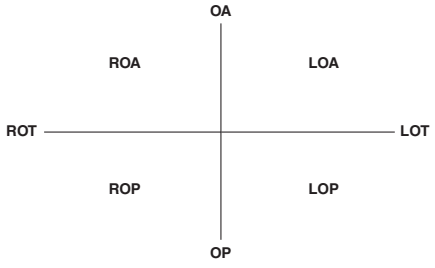


FIGURE 22-2 Longitudinal lie, occiput presentation. **A.** Left occiput anterior (LOA) position. **B.** Left occiput posterior (LOP) position. **C.** Right occiput transverse (ROT) position.

Thus, in an occiput presentation, the presentation and position may be abbreviated in clockwise fashion as shown.



In shoulder presentations, the acromion process of the scapula is the portion of the fetus arbitrarily chosen for its orientation to the mother's right or left side. In addition, the back may be directed anteriorly or posteriorly and also superiorly or inferiorly. Thus, it is customary to further distinguish right or left varieties as dorsoanterior and dorsoposterior (Fig. 23-7, p. 442). Another term used is *transverse lie*, with *back up* or *back down*, which is clinically important when deciding incision type for cesarean delivery.

Diagnosis

To diagnose fetal presentation and position, Leopold maneuvers, vaginal examination, and sonography are primary tools. First, abdominal examination can be conducted systematically employing the four maneuvers described by Leopold in 1894 (Fig. 22-3). The mother lies supine and comfortably positioned with her abdomen bared. Leopold maneuvers can be performed throughout the latter months of pregnancy and during and between the contractions of labor. These may be difficult if not impossible to perform and interpret if the patient is obese, if amnionic fluid volume is excessive, or if the placenta is anteriorly implanted.

The first maneuver assesses the uterine fundus. It permits identification of fetal lie and presentation. The breech feels large and nodular, whereas the head is large, hard, and round.

The second maneuver can help define the presenting part's position. Palms are placed on either side of the maternal abdomen, and gentle but deep pressure is exerted. On one side, a hard, resistant structure is felt—the back. On the other, numerous small, irregular, mobile parts are felt—the fetal extremities. These may move in response to palpation. The back indicates the side on which the occiput lies. In occiput anterior positions, the convex back is felt. In occiput posterior positions, nodular extremity parts are appreciated.

The third maneuver aids confirmation of fetal presentation. The thumb and fingers of one hand grasp the lower portion of the maternal abdomen just above the symphysis pubis. If the presenting part is not engaged, a movable mass will be felt, usually the head. The differentiation between head and breech is made as in the first maneuver.

The fourth maneuver helps determine the degree of descent. The examiner faces the mother's feet, and the fingertips of both hands are positioned on either side of the presenting part. They exert inward pressure and then slide caudad along the axis of the pelvic inlet. In many instances, when the head has descended into the pelvis, the anterior shoulder or the space created by the neck may be differentiated readily from the hard head.

At least in the past, experienced clinicians have accurately identified fetal malpresentation using Leopold maneuvers with a high sensitivity—88 percent, specificity—94 percent, positive predictive value—74 percent, and negative predictive value—97 percent (Lydon-Rochelle, 1993). With experience, it is possible to estimate the size of the fetus with these maneuvers (Field, 1995). However, and especially with an obese woman, estimates by palpation and actual birth weights often correlate poorly (Fox, 2009; Preyer, 2019).

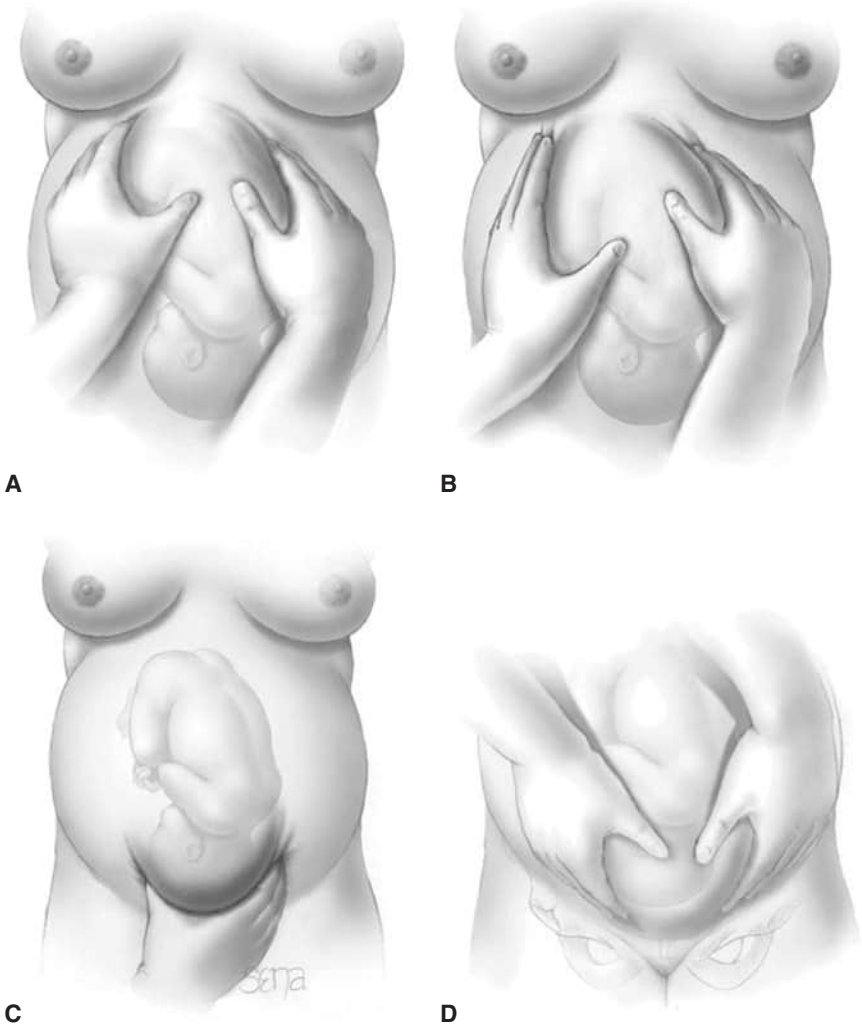


FIGURE 22-3 Leopold maneuvers **(A-D)** performed in fetus with a longitudinal lie and left occiput anterior (LOA) position.

Vaginal examination complements Leopold maneuvers. Before labor, the diagnosis of fetal presentation and position by vaginal examination is challenging because the presenting part must be palpated through a closed cervix and lower uterine segment. However, with labor and cervical dilation, cephalic presentations and their positions are recognized by palpation of the various fetal sutures and fontanels (Fig. 29-1, p. 534). Palpation of facial features signals a face presentation, whereas digital delineation of the fetal sacrum and perineum suggests breech presentation. With a transverse lie, ribs, scapula, or clavicle may be identified. Sonography is used to confirm suspected abnormal fetal presentation or lie.

Sonography can also help clarify fetal position. For the occiput presenting fetus, a transducer is placed transversely on the lower maternal abdomen and moved toward the symphysis. In a fetus positioned occiput anterior, its spine is identified anteriorly and followed to its union with its occiput. The angle between the two is wide and increases as the head flexes and descends into the maternal pelvis. In occiput posterior positions, fetal orbits and nasal bridge lie anteriorly (Bellussi, 2017). Compared with digital interrogation, sonography for fetal head position determination during second-stage labor is more accurate (Ramphul, 2014; Wiafe, 2016).

MECHANISMS OF LABOR

Positional changes of the presenting part are needed for the fetus to navigate through the pelvic canal. Called the mechanisms of labor or *cardinal movements of labor*, these are engagement, descent, flexion, internal rotation, extension, external rotation, and expulsion. During labor, these movements show great temporal overlap. For example, as part of engagement, the head both flexes and descends (Fig. 22-4). Concurrently, uterine contractions effect important modifications in fetal attitude, especially after the head has descended into the pelvis. These changes consist mainly of fetal straightening, loss of dorsal convexity, and closer application of the extremities to the body. As a result, the fetal ovoid is transformed into a cylinder, with the smallest possible cross section typically passing through the birth canal.

Engagement

In an occiput presentation, passage of the biparietal diameter through the pelvic inlet defines *engagement*. The fetal head may engage during the last few weeks of pregnancy or not until after labor commences. In many multiparas and some nulliparas, the fetal head is freely movable above the pelvic inlet at labor onset and is often referred to as "floating." In one study of 5341 nulliparas, lack of fetal head engagement before labor onset did not affect vaginal delivery rates in either spontaneous or induced labor (Segel, 2012).

In most cases, the vertex enters the pelvis with the sagittal suture lying in the transverse pelvic diameter. Left occiput transverse (LOT) position is slightly more common than right occiput transverse (ROT) position (Caldwell, 1934). However, the sagittal suture may not lie exactly midway between the symphysis and the sacral promontory. The sagittal suture frequently is deflected off the midline, either posteriorly toward the promontory or anteriorly toward the symphysis (Fig. 22-5). Such lateral deflection to a more anterior or posterior position in the pelvis is called *asynclitism*. If the sagittal suture approaches the sacral promontory, more of the anterior parietal bone presents itself to the examining fingers, and the condition is called *anterior asynclitism*. If, however, the sagittal suture lies close to the symphysis, more of the posterior parietal bone will present, and the condition is called *posterior asynclitism*. With extreme asynclitism, an ear may be palpable.

Moderate degrees of asynclitism are the rule in normal labor. Successive fetal head shifting from posterior to anterior asynclitism aids descent. However, if severe, the condition is a common reason for cephalopelvic disproportion even with an otherwise normal-sized pelvis.

Descent

This movement is the first requisite for vaginal birth. In nulliparas, engagement may take place before labor onset, and further descent may not follow until second-stage labor. In multiparas, descent usually begins with engagement. Descent stems from one or more of three forces: (1) direct myometrial pressure of the fundus upon the breech with contractions, (2) bearing-down efforts of maternal abdominal muscles, and (3) extension and straightening of the fetal body.

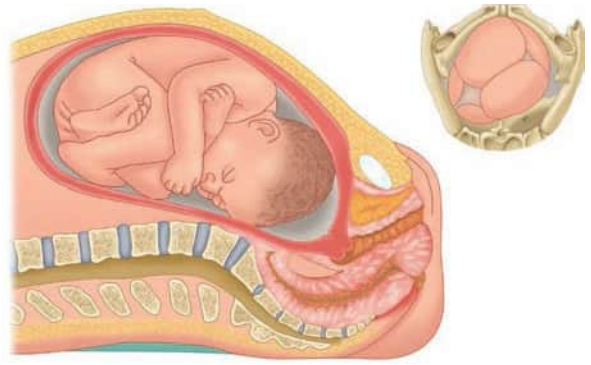
Flexion

As soon as the descending head meets resistance, whether from the cervix, pelvic walls, or pelvic floor, it normally flexes. With this movement, the chin draws closer to the fetal thorax, and the appreciably shorter suboccipitobregmatic diameter replaces the longer occipitofrontal diameter (Fig. 29-1, p. 534). This is an essential requisite for descent because it allows the smallest head diameter to progress.

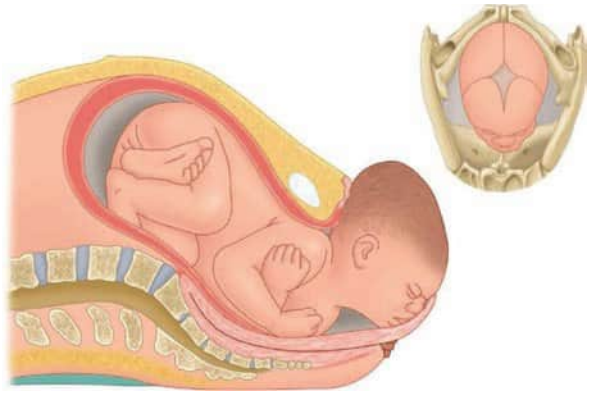
Internal Rotation

This movement turns the occiput gradually away from the transverse axis. Usually the occiput rotates anteriorly toward the symphysis pubis. LOT positions transition to left occiput anterior (LOA) positions (Fig. 22-6). ROT positions rotate to right occiput anterior (ROA) positions. Less commonly, the head may rotate posteriorly toward the hollow of the sacrum to generate occiput posterior positions. Internal rotation is essential for completion of labor, except when the fetus is unusually small.

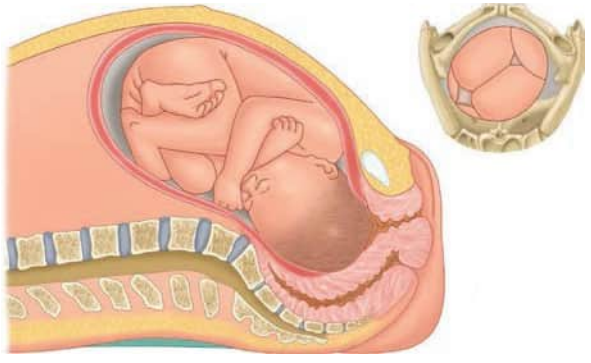
Calkins (1939) studied more than 5000 women in labor to ascertain the time of internal rotation. He concluded that in approximately two thirds, internal rotation is completed by the time the head reaches the pelvic floor; in about another fourth, internal rotation is completed shortly after the head reaches the pelvic floor; and in the remaining 5 percent, rotation does not take place. When the head fails to turn until reaching the pelvic floor, it typically rotates during the next one or two contractions



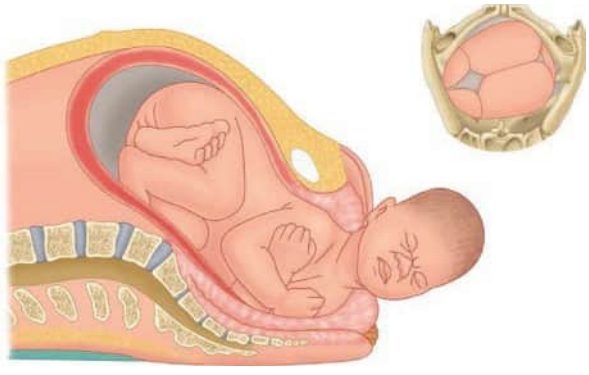
1. Head floating, before engagement



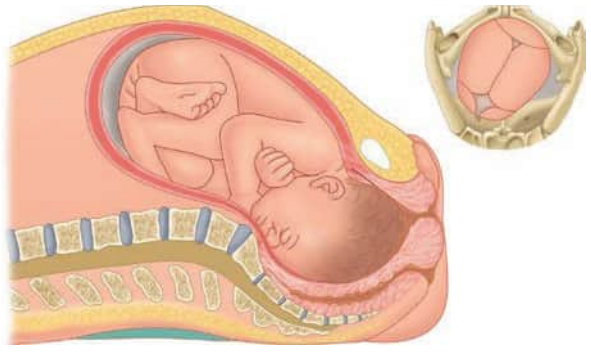
5. Complete extension



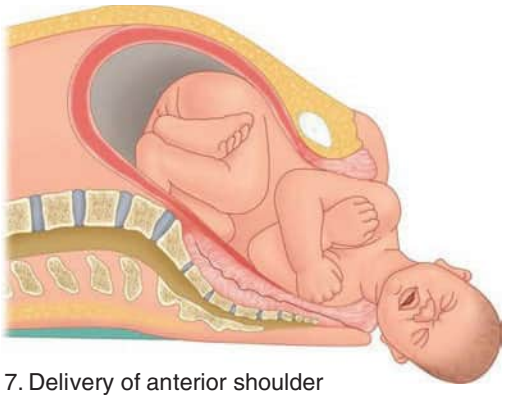
2. Engagement, descent, flexion



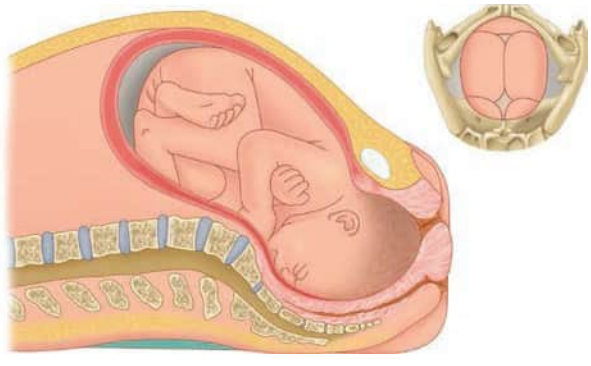
6. Restitution (external rotation)



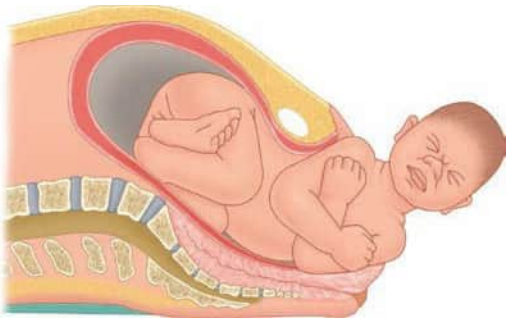
3. Further descent, internal rotation



7. Delivery of anterior shoulder



4. Complete rotation, beginning extension



8. Delivery of posterior shoulder

FIGURE 22-4 Cardinal movements of labor and delivery from a left occiput anterior position.

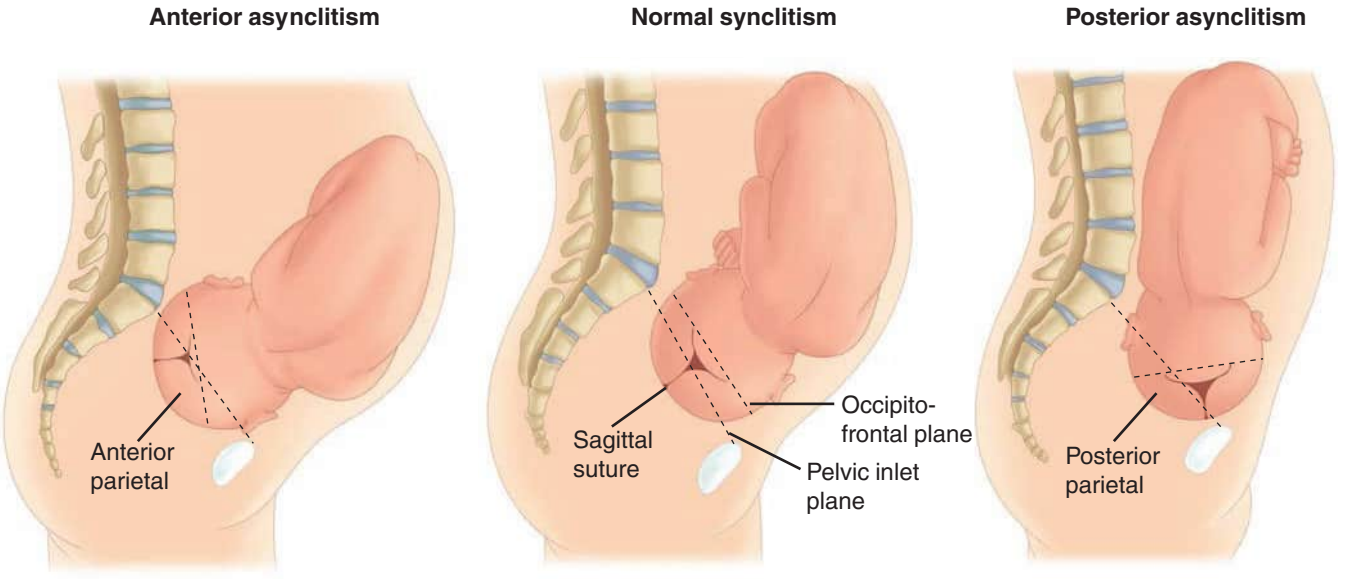


FIGURE 22-5 Synclitism and asynclitism.

in multiparas. In nulliparas, rotation usually occurs during the next three to five contractions.

Extension

After internal rotation, the sharply flexed head reaches the vulva and undergoes extension. If the sharply flexed head, on reaching the pelvic floor, did not extend but was driven farther downward, it would impinge on the posterior portion of the perineum and would eventually be forced through the perineal tissues. When the head presses on the pelvic floor, however, two forces come into play. The first force, exerted by the uterus, acts more posteriorly, and the second, supplied by the resistant pelvic floor and the symphysis, acts more anteriorly. The resultant vector is in the

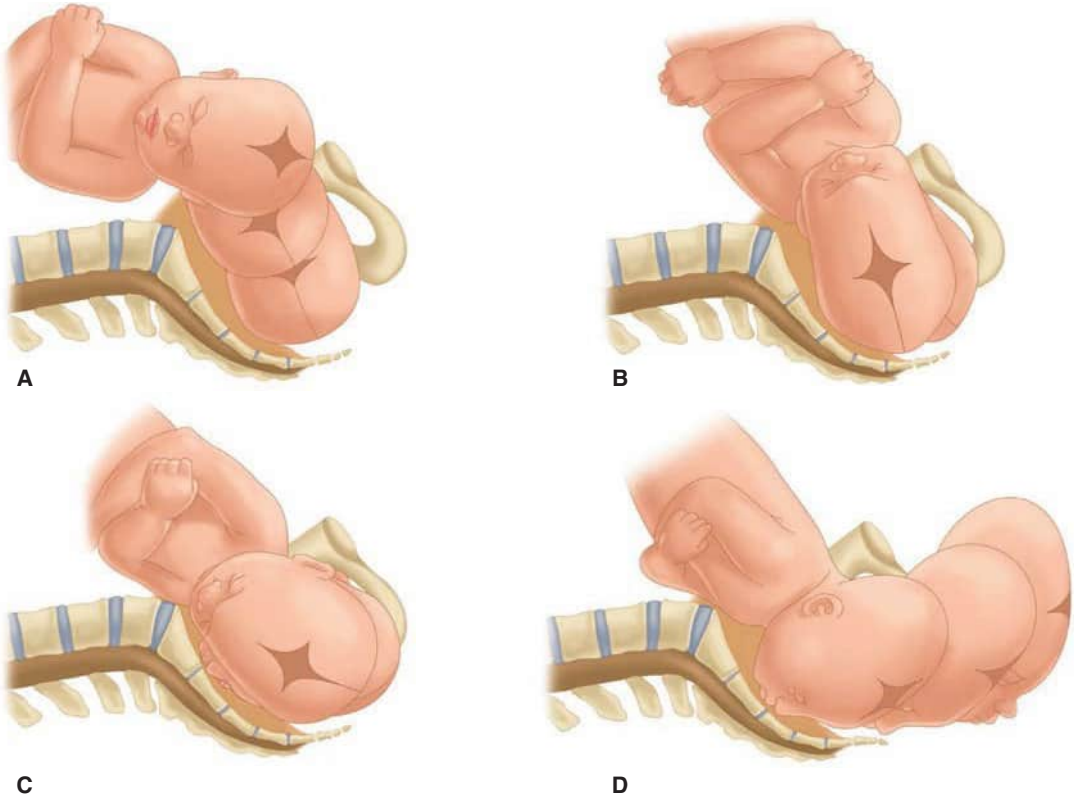


FIGURE 22-6 Mechanisms of labor for the left occiput transverse position, lateral view. **A.** Engagement with posterior asynclitism at the pelvic brim. During descent, the sagittal suture is then deflected toward the sacrum. **B.**This leads to anterior asynclitism. This corrects during additional descent **C.** Internal rotation moves the occiput toward the symphysis. Farther simultaneous descent. **D.** Additional descent with extension of the neck.

direction of the vulvar opening, thereby causing head extension. This brings the base of the occiput into direct contact with the inferior margin of the symphysis pubis (see Fig. 22-6).

With progressive distention of the perineum and vaginal opening, an increasingly large portion of the occiput gradually appears. The head is born as the occiput, anterior fontanel, brow, nose, mouth, and chin pass successively over the perineal body. Immediately after its delivery, the head drops so that the chin lies over the maternal anus.

External Rotation

The delivered head next undergoes *restitution* (see Fig. 22-4). If the occiput was originally directed toward the maternal left, it rotates toward the mother's left ischial tuberosity. If it was originally directed toward the right, the occiput rotates to the right. With restitution, the head reaches a transverse position. The fetal body aligns its bisacromial diameter, which is the distance across the shoulders, with the anteroposterior diameter of the pelvic outlet. Thus, one shoulder is anterior behind the symphysis and the other is posterior.

Expulsion

Almost immediately after external rotation, the anterior shoulder appears under the symphysis pubis, and the perineum soon becomes distended by the posterior shoulder. After delivery of the shoulders, the rest of the body quickly passes. If the anterior shoulder tightly wedges behind the symphysis, *shoulder dystocia* is diagnosed and is described in Chapter 27 (p. 501).

Occiput Posterior Position

In approximately 20 percent of labors, the fetus enters the pelvis in an *occiput posterior (OP)* position (Caldwell, 1934). It appears likely from radiographic evidence that posterior positions are more often associated with a narrow forepelvis (Gardberg, 1994a). Effective contractions, adequate head flexion, and average fetal size together permit most posteriorly positioned occiputs to rotate anteriorly toward the symphysis promptly as soon as they reach the pelvic floor. In perhaps 5 to 10 percent of cases, however, rotation may be incomplete or may not take place at all, especially if the fetus is large (Gardberg, 1994b). Poor contractions, faulty head flexion, or epidural analgesia, which diminishes maternal muscular pushing and relaxes pelvic floor muscles, may predispose to incomplete rotation. If rotation is incomplete, *transverse arrest* may result. If no rotation toward the symphysis proceeds, the occiput may remain in the direct OP position, a condition known as *persistent occiput posterior*. Both can lead to dystocia and cesarean delivery. Risk factors and labor management of a persistent OP position are found in Chapter 27 (p. 500). Techniques to manually rotate from OP to OA positions are illustrated in Chapter 29 (p. 540).

Fetal Head Shape Changes

In occiput presentations, labor forces alter fetal head shape. In prolonged labors before complete cervical dilation, the portion of the fetal scalp immediately over the cervical os becomes edematous. This swelling is called *caput succedaneum*. It usually attains a thickness of only a few millimeters, but in prolonged labors it may be sufficiently extensive to prevent differentiation of the various sutures and fontanels. More commonly, the caput is formed when the head is in the lower portion of the birth canal and frequently only after the resistance of a rigid vaginal outlet is encountered. Because it develops over the most dependent area of the head, one may deduce the original fetal head position. In cases of marked asynclitism and dystocia, the caput succedaneum may form far from the sagittal midline (Fig. 22-7).

Molding refers to changes in the bony fetal head shape as a result of external compressive forces (see Fig. 22-7B). Possibly related to Braxton Hicks contractions, some molding develops before labor. Despite these shape changes, most studies indicate that the parietal bones seldom overlap. A "locking" mechanism

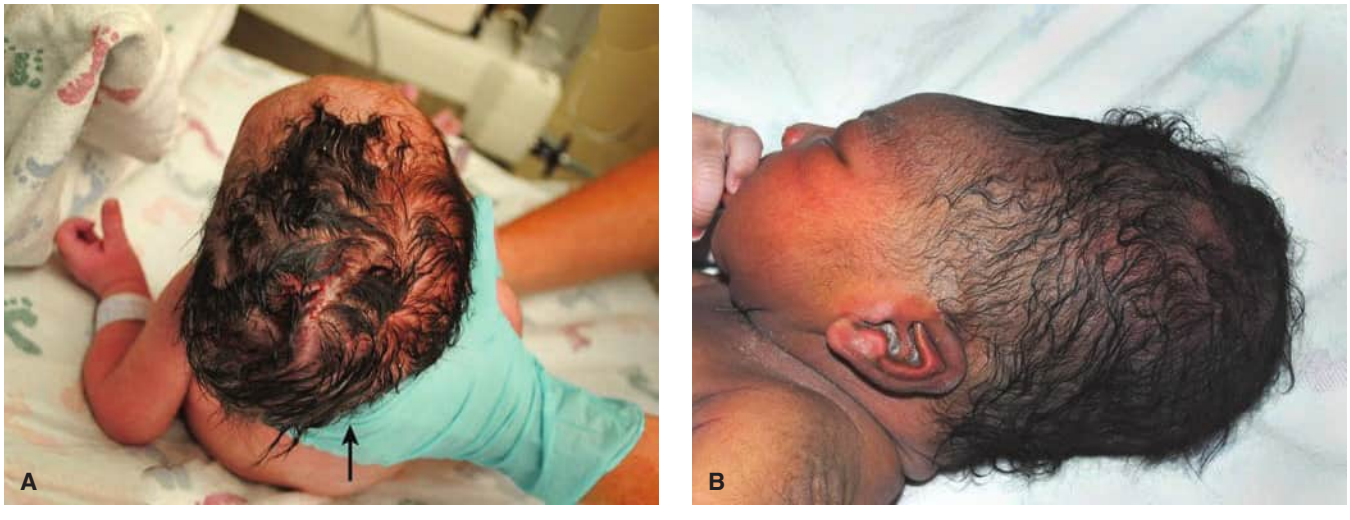


FIGURE 22-7 Fetal head molding and caput succedaneum formation. **A.** This newborn was delivered by cesarean for failure to progress and active labor arrest. The obvious caput succedaneum, which developed far from and to the left of the sagittal midline (*arrow*), reflects marked asynclitism during labor. **B.** This neonate after vaginal birth shows significant caput succedaneum and elongated molding.

at the coronal and lambdoidal sutures actually prevents such overlapping (Carlan, 1991).

Molding yields a shortened suboccipitobregmatic diameter. Of greatest importance in women with contracted pelves or asynclitism, the degree to which the head can mold may determine the difference between vaginal and cesarean birth.

Some older literature implicated severe head molding as a cause for possible cerebral trauma. Because of the many associated factors, for example, prolonged labor with fetal sepsis and acidosis, it is impossible to link molding to any alleged fetal or neonatal neurological sequelae. Most molding resolves within the week following delivery, although persistent cases have been described (Graham, 2006). Differentiation of molding, caput succedaneum, and cephalohematoma is discussed in Chapter 33 (p. 608).

NORMAL LABOR CHARACTERISTICS

The greatest impediment to understanding normal labor is recognizing its start. The strict definition describes uterine contractions that bring about demonstrable cervical effacement and dilation. Pinpointing when labor actually begins, however, is challenging because determination is retrospective. Several methods are used to mark its start. Despite these, a recent systematic review of labor definitions emphasizes the lack of consensus regarding definitions of labor onset (Hanley, 2016).

One method defines onset as the clock time when painful contractions become regular. However, uterine activity that causes discomfort but that does not represent true labor may develop at any time during pregnancy. False labor eventually wanes spontaneously, whereas the contractions of true labor typically progress to an effective, regular pattern.

A second method defines the onset of labor as beginning at the time of admission to a labor unit. In the United States, admission for labor is frequently based on the extent of cervical dilation accompanied by painful contractions. If a woman has intact membranes, a cervical dilation of 3 to 4 cm or greater and frequent painful contractions are reasonably reliable diagnostic criteria.

First Stage of Labor

For labor progression, Friedman (1954) described a characteristic sigmoid pattern by graphing cervical dilation against time. With Friedman's concept, the first stage of labor contains three functional labor divisions, each with its own physiological characteristics (Fig. 22-8). First, during the *preparatory division*, although the cervix dilates little, its connective tissue components change considerably (Chap. 21, p. 406). Sedation and conduction analgesia are capable of arresting this labor division. The *dilatational division*, during which dilation proceeds at its most rapid rate, is unaffected by sedation. Last, the *pelvic division* commences with the deceleration phase of cervical dilation. The cardinal movements of labor take place principally during this pelvic division. In actual practice, however, the onset of the pelvic division is seldom clearly identifiable.

Two phases of cervical dilation are defined. The *latent phase* corresponds to the preparatory division, and the *active phase* to the dilational division. Friedman further subdivided the active phase into the *acceleration phase*, the *phase of maximum slope*, and the *deceleration phase* (Fig. 22-9).

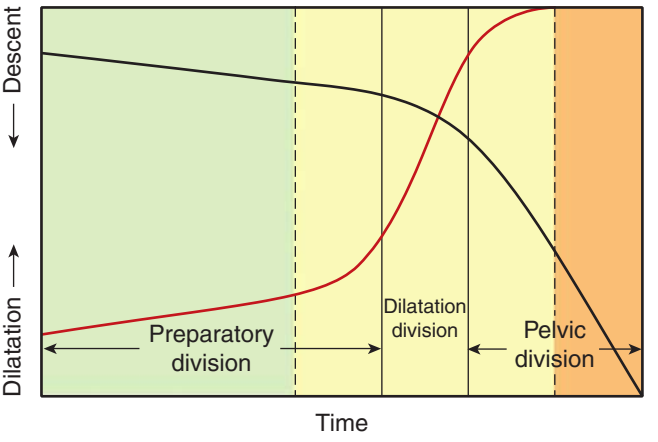


FIGURE 22-8 Labor progress is described by dilatation and descent curves and is partitioned into: (1) a preparatory division, including latent and acceleration phases; (2) a dilatational division, which contains the phase of maximum slope; and (3) a pelvic division, which encompasses both the deceleration phase and second-stage labor as well as the phase of maximum slope of descent.

Latent Phase

The onset of latent labor, as defined by Friedman (1972), is the point at which the mother perceives regular contractions. For most women, this phase ends once cervical dilation of 4 cm is achieved. This threshold may be clinically useful, for it defines dilation limits beyond which active labor can be expected. More recently, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2019c) has redefined active labor to begin at 6 cm. A fuller discussion of these labor changes is found in Chapter 23 (p. 436).

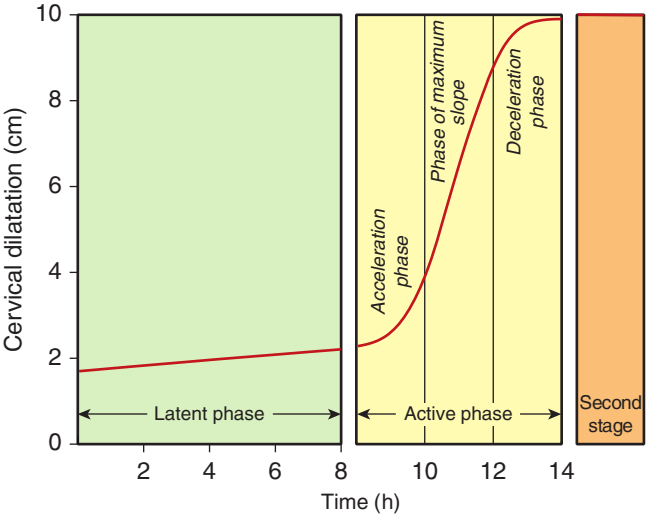


FIGURE 22-9 Composite of the average dilatation curve for nulliparous labor. The first stage is divided into a relatively flat latent phase and a rapidly progressive active phase. The active phase contains an acceleration phase, a phase of maximum slope, and a deceleration phase.

A *prolonged latent phase* was defined as one exceeding 20 hours in the nullipara and 14 hours in the multipara by Friedman and Sachtleben (1963). These times corresponded to the 95th percentiles. Factors that affected latent phase duration include excessive sedation or epidural analgesia; unfavorable cervical condition, that is, thick, uneffaced, or undilated; and false labor. Of women in latent labor who had been administered heavy sedation, 85 percent eventually entered active labor. In another 10 percent, uterine contractions ceased, which suggests false labor. In the remaining 5 percent, an abnormal latent phase persisted and required oxytocin stimulation. Amniotomy was discouraged because of the 10-percent incidence of false labor.

Friedman (1972) later reported that latent phase prolongation did not adversely influence fetal or maternal morbidity or mortality rates. However, prolongation of the latent phase appears associated with longer active labor duration and greater likelihood of obstetrical interventions (Ängeby, 2018; Chelmow, 1993; Tilden, 2020).

Active Phase

The progress of labor in nulliparas has particular significance because these curves all reveal a rapid change in the slope of cervical dilation rates between 3 and 5 cm (see Fig. 22-9). *Thus, cervical dilation of 3 to 6 cm or more, in the presence of uterine contractions, can be taken to reliably represent the threshold for active labor*. Similarly, these curves provide useful guideposts for labor management.

Turning again to Friedman (1955), the mean duration of active-phase labor in nulliparas was 4.9 hours. But, the standard deviation of 3.4 hours is large, hence, the active phase was reported to have a statistical maximum of 11.7 hours. Indeed, rates of cervical dilation ranged from a minimum of 1.2 up to 6.8 cm/hr. Friedman (1972) also found that multiparas progress somewhat faster in active-phase labor, with a *minimum* normal rate of 1.5 cm/hr. His analysis of active-phase labor concomitantly describes rates of fetal descent and cervical dilation (see Fig. 22-8). Descent begins in the later stage of active dilation, commencing at 7 to 8 cm in nulliparas and becoming most rapid after 8 cm.

Others have reassessed the Friedman labor curves. Zhang and associates (2010) studied electronic labor records from 62,415 parturients with spontaneous labor at term and vaginal birth. For primiparas, the median time to progress from 4 to 5 cm was 1.3 hours, from 5 to 6 cm 0.8 hours, and thereafter, additional centimeters were gained approximately each 0.5 hours. They found that normal labor may take >6 hours to progress from 4 to 5 cm and >3 hours to progress from 5 to 6 cm dilation. Rates for multiparas were similar to nulliparas from 4 to 6 cm, but then, labor accelerated much faster in multiparas. Data from this study form the foundation for new guidelines regarding cesarean delivery indications for labor arrest put forth in the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' Obstetric Care Consensus (2019c). These are described in Chapter 23 (p. 436).

Second Stage of Labor

This stage begins with complete cervical dilation and ends with fetal delivery. The median duration is approximately 50 minutes for nulliparas and about 20 minutes for multiparas, but it is highly variable (Kilpatrick, 1989). In a woman of higher parity with a previously dilated vagina and perineum, two or three expulsive efforts after full cervical dilation may suffice to complete delivery. Conversely, in a woman with a contracted pelvis, with a large fetus, or with impaired expulsive efforts from conduction analgesia or sedation, the second stage may become abnormally long. Nulliparas with high starting fetal station may experience a longer second stage (Ashwal, 2021). Greater maternal body mass index does not interfere with second-stage labor (Carlhäll, 2013; Robinson, 2011).

Labor Duration

The normal duration of labor may be clouded by the many clinical variables that affect the conduct of labor in modern obstetrical units. Kilpatrick and Laros (1989) reported that the mean length of first- and second-stage labors approximates 9 hours in nulliparas without regional analgesia and that the 95th percentile upper limit was 18.5 hours. Corresponding times for multiparas were a mean of 6 hours and a 95th percentile maximum of 13.5 hours. These authors defined labor onset as the time when a woman recalled regular, painful contractions every 3 to 5 minutes that led to cervical change.

Spontaneous labor was analyzed in nearly 25,000 women delivered at term at Parkland Hospital in the early 1990s. Almost 80 percent of women were admitted with a cervical dilation of ≤5 cm. Parity—nulliparous versus multiparous—and cervical dilation at admission were significant determinants of spontaneous labor length. The median time from admission to spontaneous delivery for all parturients was 3.5 hours, and 95 percent of all women delivered within 10.1 hours. These results suggest that normal human active labor is relatively short.

MANAGEMENT OF NORMAL LABOR

Birthing is a normal physiological process that most women experience without complications. However, unexpected intrapartum complications can arise quickly. Thus, every woman and her supporters should feel welcomed and comfortable, yet safety measures must be in place for the mother and her newborn if complications suddenly develop. The American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) have collaborated in the development of *Guidelines for Perinatal Care*. These provide detailed information on the appropriate content of intrapartum care, including both personnel and facility requirements. Labor and delivery outside the hospital is elected by some parturients. This option is discussed in Chapter 27 (p. 504).

Emergency Medical Treatment and Labor Act—EMTALA

By law, all Medicare-participating hospitals with emergency services must provide an appropriate screening examination for any pregnant woman experiencing contractions and presenting to the emergency department for evaluation. The definition of an emergency condition makes specific reference to a pregnant

woman who is having contractions. Labor is defined as "the process of childbirth beginning with the latent phase of labor continuing through delivery of the placenta. A woman experiencing contractions is in true labor unless a physician certifies that after a reasonable time of observation the woman is in false labor." A woman in true labor is considered "unstable" for interhospital transfer purposes until the newborn and placenta are delivered. A stable woman may, however, be transferred at the direction of the patient or by a physician who certifies that the benefits of treatment at another facility outweigh the transfer risks.

Identification of Labor

Pregnant women are urged to report early in labor rather than to procrastinate until delivery is imminent. Early admittance is important if during antepartum care, the woman, her fetus, or both are found to carry risks for intrapartum complications.

Although the differentiation between false and true labor is difficult at times, the diagnosis usually can be clarified by cervical dilation and by contraction frequency and intensity. Pates and associates (2007) studied one commonly used recommendation given to pregnant women. Namely, in the absence of ruptured membranes or bleeding, uterine contractions 5 minutes apart for 1 hour—that is, ≥12 contractions in 1 hour—may signify labor onset. Among 768 women in this study at Parkland Hospital, active labor defined as cervical dilation ≥4 cm was diagnosed within 24 hours in three fourths of women with ≥12 contractions per hour.

In those instances when a diagnosis of labor cannot be established with certainty, observation for a longer period is reasonable. Women who present to Parkland Hospital for labor symptoms at $\geq 24^{0/7}$ weeks gestation are routinely evaluated in a labor triage unit, which is contiguous to our labor and delivery unit. All women in the triage unit are evaluated by nurse practitioners and certified nurse midwives using written protocols. For those with uncomplicated pregnancies, women with intact membranes and cervical dilation <4 cm receive continuous external fetal monitoring for up to 2 hours. Women diagnosed with labor by either cervical change or persistent uterine contractions are admitted. After review by a physician, women without cervical change or with abatement of contractions return home with a diagnosis of false labor. In a recent study, a total of 3949 women with uncomplicated pregnancies between $37^{0/7}$ and $41^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation were diagnosed with false labor. The mean interval from hospital discharge to when they again presented was 4.9 days (Nelson, 2017). Within this protocol, hospital discharge with false labor at term was not associated with higher rates of adverse neonatal outcomes or cesarean delivery. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) has endorsed hospital-based obstetrical triage units.

Instead of false labor, labor in the latent phase may be diagnosed. In this phase, some women may require admission for pain management. However, for women without antepartum risks and with reassuring maternofetal status, expectant care during latent labor is reasonable (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). Studies support the value of this approach to potentially lower rates of interventions that include oxytocin, antibiotics for intrapartum fever, and cesarean delivery (Bailiet, 2005; Wood, 2016). Instructions on coping and self-care during this time have value (Hosek, 2014). Moreover, a mutually agreed upon time is set for reevaluation.

Initial Evaluation

For the gravida presenting with symptoms of labor, blood pressure, temperature, pulse, and respiratory rate are recorded. Fetal heart rate is evaluated using a portable Doppler device, sonography, or fetoscope. Our practice uses extended electronic fetal monitoring to assess initial fetal status. The pregnancy record is promptly reviewed to identify complications. A vaginal examination is performed unless there is a known placenta previa or vasa previa. The gloved index and second fingers are introduced into the vagina while avoiding the anal region.

Ruptured Membranes

During prenatal care, the woman is instructed to be aware of fluid leakage from the vagina and to report this event promptly. Rupture of the membranes is significant for three reasons. First, if the presenting part is not fixed in the pelvis, the umbilical cord can prolapse and be compressed. Second, labor is likely to begin soon if the pregnancy is at or near term. Third, if delivery is delayed after membrane rupture, intrauterine and neonatal infection is more likely as the time interval lengthens (Herbst, 2007).

During sterile speculum examination, ruptured membranes are diagnosed if amnionic fluid pools in the posterior fornix or clear fluid flows from the cervical canal. If the diagnosis remains uncertain, one method involves pH determination of vaginal fluid. The pH of vaginal secretions normally ranges from 4.5 to 5.5, whereas the pH of amnionic fluid is usually >7.0. The use of the indicator *nitrazine* to identify ruptured membranes is a simple and fairly reliable method. Test papers are impregnated with the dye, and the color of the reaction between these paper strips and vaginal fluids is interpreted by comparison with a standard color chart posted on the strip's container. A pH above 6.5 is consistent with ruptured membranes. False-positive test results may stem from blood, semen, or bacterial vaginosis, which raise pH. Scant fluid can yield a false-negative test result.

Another test to identify amnionic fluid microscopically evaluates vaginal fluid that is dried on a slide. Arborization or a fern pattern suggests amnionic rather than cervical fluid. Amnionic fluid crystallizes and ferns due to its concentrations of sodium chloride, proteins, and carbohydrates.

Of other methods, detection of alpha-fetoprotein in the vaginal vault has been used to identify amnionic fluid (Yamada, 1998). Rarely required, identification may also follow injection of 1 to 4 mL of a 5-percent sodium fluorescein solution into the amnionic sac via abdominal amniocentesis (Ireland, 2017).

Last, specific amnionic fluid proteins can be sought using point-of-care assays. These include *AmniSure*, which binds placental alpha microglobulin-1; *Actim PROM*, with binds insulin growth factor binding protein-1 (IGFBP-1); and *ROM Plus*, which detects IGFBP-1 plus alpha-fetoprotein (Eleje, 2017; Palacio, 2014). False-positive and false-negative results are not uncommon. The Food and Drug Administration (2018)

emphasizes the need to incorporate clinical findings if these methods are used.

Cervical Assessment

Progress during labor produces specific cervical changes. *Cervical dilation* is assessed by sweeping the examining finger from the inner cervical rim on one side of the opening to the opposite inner rim. The diameter traversed is estimated in centimeters. Effective labor will dilate the cervix, which is considered fully dilated when the diameter measures 10 cm. The presenting part of a term-size newborn usually can pass through a cervix this widely dilated.

Cervical effacement is the length of the cervical canal compared with that of an unlabored cervix. When the length of the cervix is reduced by one half, it is 50-percent effaced. When the cervix becomes as thin as the adjacent lower uterine segment, it is completely, or 100-percent, effaced.

Cervical position reflects the relationship of the cervical os to the center point of the presenting part. It is categorized as posterior, midposition, or anterior. Fetal descent will gradually move the cervix anteriorly. Along with position, the *consistency* of the cervix is determined to be soft, firm, or intermediate between these two. Cervical softening aids dilation and effacement.

Fetal station describes the presenting fetal part's leading edge in the birth canal in relationship to the ischial spines. These spines lie halfway between the pelvic inlet and the pelvic outlet and lie at the level of the midpelvis. When the lowermost portion of the presenting fetal part reaches the spines, it is designated as being at zero (0) station.

In the past, the long axis of the birth canal above and below the ischial spines was arbitrarily divided into thirds by some and into fifths (approximately 1 cm) by other groups. In 1989, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists adopted the classification of station that divides the pelvis above and below the spines into fifths. Each fifth represents 1 cm above or below the spines. Thus, as the presenting fetal part descends from the inlet *toward* the ischial spines, the designation is –5, –4, –3, –2, –1, and then 0 station. Below the spines, as the presenting fetal part descends, it passes +1, +2, +3, +4, and +5 stations to delivery. Station +5 cm corresponds to the fetal head being visible at the introitus.

If the leading part of the fetal head is at 0 station or below, most often the fetal head has engaged—thus, the biparietal plane has passed through the pelvic inlet. If the head is unusually molded or if caput succedaneum formation is extensive, or both, engagement might not have taken place although the *scalp* is at 0 station.

In addition to charting the progress of labor, these five characteristics—cervical dilation, effacement, consistency, position, and fetal station—are assessed when tabulating the Bishop score. This score is commonly used to predict labor induction outcome and is discussed in Chapter 26 (p. 488). Taken together, these factors suggest the subjective "favorability" of the cervix for induction success.

Laboratory Studies

When a woman is admitted in labor, most often the hematocrit or hemoglobin concentration is rechecked. The hematocrit can be measured easily and quickly. At Parkland Hospital, blood is collected in a standard collection tube with anticoagulant. From this, a heparinized capillary tube is filled to spin in a microhematocrit centrifuge in the labor and delivery unit. This provides a hematocrit value within 3 minutes. The initial collection tube is also sent to the hematology laboratory for evaluation if the point-of-care hematocrit is <30 volume percent. Another labeled tube of blood is allowed to clot and sent to the blood bank for blood type and antibody screen. Some states, for example, Texas, require routine testing for syphilis, hepatitis B, and HIV in all women admitted to labor and delivery units, even if these were done during prenatal care. In some labor units, a clean-catch voided specimen is examined in all women for protein and glucose. At Parkland Hospital, we obtain a urine specimen for protein determination in hypertensive women only (Chap. 40, p. 689).

■ Management of First-stage Labor

As soon as possible after admittance, the remainder of a general examination is completed. Whether a pregnancy is normal can best be determined when all examinations, including record and laboratory review, are completed. A rational plan for monitoring labor can then be established based on the needs of the fetus and the mother. Because labor lengths vary markedly among individuals, precise statements to the patient regarding anticipated labor duration are unwise.

Intrapartum Fetal Monitoring

This is discussed in detail in Chapter 24. Briefly, the American Academy of Pediatrics and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) recommend that during first-stage labor, in the absence of any abnormalities, the fetal heart rate should be checked immediately after a contraction at least every 30 minutes and then every 15 minutes during second-stage labor. If continuous electronic monitoring is used, the tracing is evaluated at least every 30 minutes during the first stage and at least every 15 minutes during the second stage. For women with pregnancies at risk, fetal heart auscultation is performed at least every 15 minutes during first-stage labor and every 5 minutes during the second stage. Continuous electronic monitoring may be used with evaluation of the tracing every 15 minutes during the first stage of labor, and every 5 minutes during the second stage.

Maternal Monitoring

Temperature, pulse, and blood pressure are evaluated at least every 4 hours. If membranes have been ruptured for many hours or if there is a borderline temperature elevation, the temperature is checked hourly.

Although uterine contractions are usually assessed with electronic monitoring, they can be quantitatively and qualitatively evaluated manually. With the palm of the hand resting lightly on the uterus, the time of contraction onset is determined. Its intensity is gauged from the degree of muscle tone the uterus achieves. At the acme of effective contractions, the finger or thumb cannot readily indent the uterus during a "firm" contraction. The time at which the contraction disappears is noted next. This sequence is repeated to evaluate the frequency, duration, and intensity of contractions.

During the first stage of labor, the need for subsequent vaginal examinations to monitor cervical change and presenting part position will vary considerably. When the membranes rupture, an examination to exclude cord prolapse is performed expeditiously if the fetal head was not definitely engaged at the previous examination. The fetal heart rate is also checked immediately and during the next uterine contraction to help detect occult umbilical cord compression. At Parkland Hospital, periodic pelvic examinations are typically performed at 2- to 3-hour intervals for gravidas in active labor to evaluate labor progress. Evidence implicating the number of vaginal examinations in infection-related morbidity is conflicting (Cahill, 2012; Soper, 1989).

Maternal Position

In bed, the laboring woman may assume the position she finds most comfortable, and often this will be lateral recumbency. Lying supine is typically avoided to avert aortocaval compression and its potential to lower uterine perfusion (Chap. 4, p. 64). However, the normal laboring woman need not be confined to bed early in labor. A comfortable chair may be beneficial psychologically and perhaps physiologically. Others encourage ambulation.

Proponents of walking report that it shortens labor, lowers rates of oxytocin augmentation, diminishes the need for analgesia, and decreases the frequency of operative vaginal delivery (Flynn, 1978; Read, 1981). In their Cochrane review, Lawrence and associates (2013) reported that labor in ambulant or upright positions shortened first-stage labor by approximately 1 hour and lowered cesarean delivery and epidural analgesia rates. However, they cautioned interpretation given variable study quality. Lupe and Gross (1986) concluded, however, that no conclusive evidence supports assertions that upright maternal posture or ambulation improves labor. They reported that women preferred to lie on their side or sit in bed. Few chose to walk, fewer to squat, and none wanted the knee-chest position. Parturients tended to assume fetal positions in later labor. Most women enthusiastic about ambulation returned to bed when active labor began (Carlson, 1986; Williams, 1980).

Bloom and colleagues (1998) conducted a randomized trial to study the effects of walking during first-stage labor. In 1067 women with uncomplicated term pregnancies delivered at Parkland Hospital, these investigators reported that ambulation did not affect labor duration. Ambulation did not reduce the need for analgesia nor was it harmful to the newborn. Because of these observations, we give women without complications the option to select either recumbency or supervised ambulation during labor.

Pain Management

In general, the needs and desires for pain relief are directed by the parturient. Relaxation techniques may have a role for pain relief and patient satisfaction, although evidence-based data are not robust (Smith, 2018). Discussed in the last section, ambulation is another option. Some women choose to spend part of first-stage labor in a large water tub, if available, for pain relief. With this practice, one Cochrane review found lower rates of regional analgesia use and no greater adverse neonatal or maternal effects compared with traditional labor (Cluett, 2018).

Pharmacologic options include epidural analgesia; intermittent intravenous (IV) or intramuscular (IM) opioids or meperidine (Table 25-2, p. 469), and less often, nitrous oxide. These are discussed in detail in Chapter 25.

Oral Intake

Food and liquids with particulate matter should be withheld during active labor and delivery. Gastric emptying time is remarkably prolonged once labor is established and analgesics are administered. As a consequence, ingested food and most medications remain in the stomach and are poorly absorbed. They may be vomited and aspirated (Chap. 25, p. 482). However, oral intake of moderate amounts of clear liquids is reasonable for women with uncomplicated labor (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017; American Society of Anesthesiologists, 2016). Water, clear tea, black coffee, carbonated beverages, Popsicles, and pulp-free juices are options. In those with appreciable risks for aspiration or those with significant risks for cesarean delivery, further restriction may be instituted. For example, for those with planned cesarean delivery, liquids are halted 2 hours before and solids are stopped 6 to 8 hours prior to surgery (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b).

Intravenous Fluids

Although an IV infusion system is often routinely established early in labor, real need for this in the normal pregnant woman is limited. Access allows parenteral analgesia or IV fluid infusion prior to regional analgesia. In the immediate puerperium, a dilute oxytocin solution can be given prophylactically to prevent uterine atony and at times therapeutically to treat it. Moreover, with longer labors, the administration of glucose, sodium, and water to the otherwise fasting woman at the rate of 60 to 120 mL/hr prevents dehydration and acidosis.

Although not mandatory, IV hydration may shorten labor length, and most studies of fluid selection use first-stage labor length as a primary outcome. From these investigations, data support use of fluids containing dextrose compared with fluid without it (Riegel, 2018; Shrivastava, 2009). For administration, rates of 125 or 250 mL/hr are suitable (Dawood, 2013; Ehsanipoor, 2017; Fong, 2017). In our practice, saline with 5-percent dextrose is infused at a rate of 150 mL/hr.

Rupture of Membranes

If the membranes are intact, temptation is great, even during normal labor, to perform amniotomy. Benefits are earlier detection of meconium-stained amnionic fluid and the opportunity to apply an electrode to the fetus or insert a pressure catheter into the uterine cavity for monitoring. In one metaanalysis of 15 studies, normal spontaneous labor was not shortened by amniotomy (Smyth, 2013). Risks include potential uterine infection if performed early and possible cord prolapse. To help prevent prolapse, the fetal head must be well applied to the cervix and not dislodged from the pelvis during amniotomy. The use of amniotomy in the setting of abnormal labor is discussed in Chapter 23 (p. 434).

With prolonged membrane rupture and unknown group B streptococcal (GBS) status, antimicrobial administration for prevention of GBS infections is recommended for intrapartum

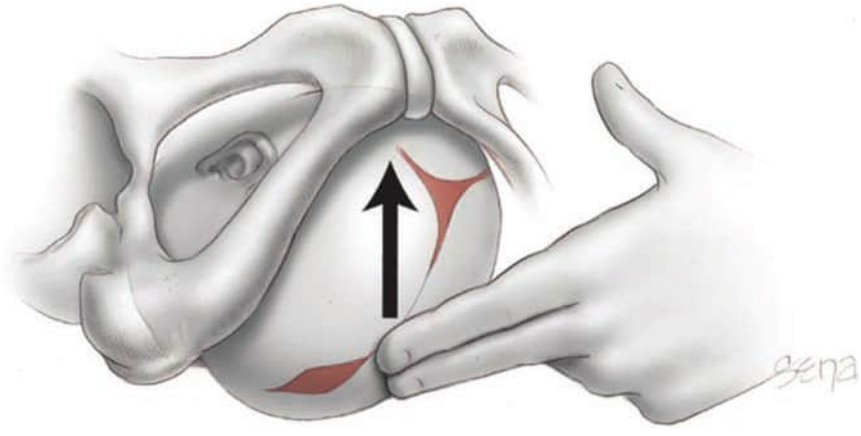


FIGURE 22-10 Locating the sagittal suture by vaginal examination.

risk factors (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). These include rupture of membranes greater than 18 hours or intrapartum temperature >38.0°C or >100.4°F (Chap. 67, p. 1194). This practice similarly lowers rates of chorioamnionitis and endometritis (Saccone, 2015).

Urinary Bladder Function

Distention of the bladder can hinder descent of the fetal presenting part and lead to subsequent bladder hypotonia and infection. Periodically, the suprapubic region is palpated to detect distention. If the bladder is readily seen or palpated above the symphysis, the woman should be encouraged to void. Those unable to do so on a bedpan may be able to ambulate with assistance to a toilet. Catheterization is indicated if the bladder is distended and voiding is not possible. Regional analgesia is a common reason. In these cases, continuous or intermittent catheterization is suitable, and both have comparable rates of puerperal urinary tract infection and urinary retention (Li, 2019). Postpartum retention is discussed in Chapter 36 (p. 643).

■ Management of Second-stage Labor

In later first-stage or early second-stage labor, attempts are made to determine head position. The fingers are directed posteriorly and then swept forward over the fetal head toward the maternal symphysis (Fig. 22-10). During this movement, the fingers necessarily cross the sagittal suture, and its lie is delineated. Next, the positions of the two fontanels are ascertained. For this, fingers are passed to the most anterior extension of the sagittal suture, and the fontanel encountered there is examined and identified. The fingers then pass along the sagittal suture to the other end of the head until the other fontanel is felt and differentiated (Fig. 22-11). Last, the station, or extent to which the presenting part has descended into the pelvis, also can be established. Using these maneuvers, the various sutures and fontanels are determined. In unclear cases, sonography can be used as described earlier (p. 420).

With full cervical dilation, which signifies the onset of the second stage, a woman typically begins to bear down. With descent of the presenting part, she develops the urge to defecate. Uterine contractions and the accompanying expulsive forces may now last 1 minute and recur at intervals less than 90 seconds. As discussed earlier, the median duration of the second stage is 50 minutes in nulliparas and 20 minutes in multiparas, although this length can vary. Monitoring intervals of the fetal heart rate were discussed earlier (p. 427), and interpretation of second-stage electronic fetal heart rate patterns is discussed in Chapter 24 (p. 447).

In most cases, bearing down is reflexive and spontaneous during second-stage labor. In those with neuraxial analgesia, this urge may be blunted. To improve spontaneous birth rates, delayed pushing for 60 minutes once the second stage is reached has been suggested to permit passive fetal descent to increase pushing efficiency and minimize maternal exhaustion. One large randomized trial compared immediate and delayed pushing in nulliparas at term with neuraxial analgesia. Routes of delivery were similar. The immediate group actively pushed longer, a mean difference of 9 minutes, but had lower rates of chorioamnionitis (Cahill, 2018). A subsequent metaanalysis noted similar findings (Di Mascio, 2020).

During pushing, a woman may not employ her expulsive forces to good advantage and coaching is desirable. When the next uterine contraction begins, she is instructed to exert downward pressure as though she were straining at stool. A woman is not encouraged to push beyond the completion of each contraction. Instead, she and her fetus are allowed to rest and recover. During this period of active pushing, the fetal heart rate auscultated during the contraction is likely to be slow but should recover to normal range before the next expulsive effort. Fetal and obstetrical outcomes appear to be unaffected whether pushing

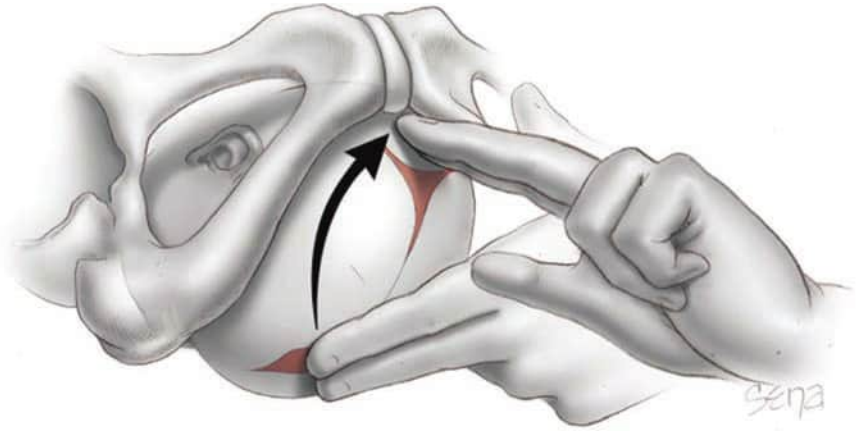


FIGURE 22-11 Differentiating the fontanels by vaginal examination.

is coached or uncoached during second-stage labor (Bloom, 2006; Tuuli, 2012).

Several positions during the second stage have been recommended to augment pushing efforts. The Birth in the Upright Maternal Position with Epidural in Second Stage (BUMPES) trial compared a lateral recumbent position and a supported upright one for nulliparas. Upright positions include standing, sitting out of bed, kneeling, or squatting. The lateral recumbent position required the head of the bed to have an incline ≤30 degrees. When compared, the recumbent group had a spontaneous birth rate of 41 percent, which was significantly higher than the 35-percent spontaneous birth rate experienced by the upright group. Otherwise, rates of operative vaginal delivery (OVD), anal sphincter tear, and neonatal outcome measures were similar (Epidural and Position Trial Collaborative Group, 2017). In a subsequent Cochrane review of studies that included nulliparas and multiparas, upright or recumbent position had little or no affect on rates of "operative birth," which combined OVD and cesarean delivery (Walker, 2018). In those without epidural analgesia, Gupta and coworkers (2017) in their Cochrane review compared upright positions with supine or lithotomy positions during second-stage labor in multiparas and nulliparas. Upright positions offered a marginally shorter interval to delivery and fewer episiotomies and OVDs. However, rates of blood loss >500 mL and perhaps of second-degree lacerations were increased. In sum, no one position is mandated for labor. Repositioning with the goal of maternal comfort and optimal fetal trajectory is suitable as long as appropriate maternal and fetal monitoring can be achieved (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). To help avoid femoral or lumbosacral nerve injury from lithotomy positions, hips are not overly flexed, abducted, or externally rotated for extended periods (Chap. 36, p. 644). From early data, transperineal ultrasound assessment of the fetal head's *angle of progression* relative to the symphysis during the second stage may be a tool to predict vaginal birth (Nassr, 2021).

As the head descends through the pelvis, the perineum begins to bulge and the overlying skin becomes stretched. Now the scalp of the fetus may be visible through the vulvar opening. At this time, the woman and her fetus are prepared for delivery, which is described in Chapter 27 (p. 498).

LABOR MANAGEMENT PROTOCOLS

An orderly and systematic approach to labor management results in reproducible beneficial maternal and perinatal outcomes (Althabe, 2008). In Dublin more than 30 years ago, O'Driscoll and associates (1984) pioneered the concept that a disciplined, standardized labor management protocol reduced the number of cesarean deliveries for dystocia. Their overall cesarean delivery rate was 5 percent in the 1970s and 1980s with such management. The approach is now referred to as *active management of labor*. Two of its components—amniotomy and oxytocin—have been widely used, especially in English-speaking countries outside the United States. With this protocol, labor is diagnosed when painful contractions are accompanied by complete cervical effacement, bloody "show," or ruptured membranes. Women with such findings are committed to delivery within 12 hours. Pelvic examination is performed each hour for the next 3 hours, and thereafter at 2-hour intervals. When dilation has not increased by at least 1 cm/hr, amniotomy is performed. Progress is again assessed at 2 hours, and high-dose oxytocin infusion, described in Chapter 26 (p. 493), is started unless dilation of at least 1 cm/hr is attained. Women are constantly attended by midwives. If membranes rupture before admission, oxytocin is begun for no progress at the 1-hour mark.

López-Zeno and colleagues (1992) prospectively compared such active management with their "traditional" approach to labor management at Northwestern Memorial Hospital in Chicago. They randomly assigned 705 nulliparas with uncomplicated pregnancies in spontaneous labor at term. The cesarean delivery rate was significantly lower with active versus traditional management—10.5 versus 14.1 percent, respectively. Subsequent studies did not show this. Wei and associates (2013) in a Cochrane database review found a modest reduction in cesarean delivery rates when active management of labor was compared with standard care. Frigoletto and coworkers (1995) reported another randomized trial with 1934 nulliparous women at Brigham and Women's Hospital in Boston. Although they found that such management somewhat shortened labor, it did not affect the cesarean delivery rate. These observations have since been reported by others (Brown, 2008).

At Parkland Hospital, women are admitted if active labor is diagnosed or if ruptured membranes are confirmed. Labor is defined as cervical dilation of ≥4 cm in the presence of regular uterine contractions. Management guidelines direct that a pelvic examination subsequently be performed approximately every 2 hours. Ineffective labor is suspected when the cervix does not dilate within approximately 2 hours of admission. Amniotomy is then performed, and labor progress determined at the next 2-hour evaluation. In women whose labors do not progress, an intrauterine pressure catheter is placed to assess uterine function. Hypotonic contractions and no cervical dilation after an additional 2 to 3 hours result in stimulation of labor using the high-dose oxytocin regimen described in Chapter 26 (p. 493). The goal is uterine activity of 200 to 250 Montevideo units for 4 hours before dystocia is diagnosed.

In cases in which hypotonic contractions are strongly suspected, internal monitors may be placed with amniotomy and again cervical change and contraction pattern are assessed in 2 hours. Confirmation of deficient Montevideo units at that time may prompt oxytocin augmentation for maternal or fetal indications.

Dilation rates of 1 to 2 cm/hr are accepted as evidence of progress after satisfactory uterine activity has been established with oxytocin. This can require up to 8 hours or more before cesarean delivery is performed for dystocia. The cumulative time required to effect this stepwise management approach permits many women to establish effective labor. This management protocol has been evaluated in >20,000 women with uncomplicated pregnancies. Importantly, these labor interventions and the relatively infrequent use of cesarean delivery did not jeopardize the fetus-newborn.

REFERENCES

Althabe F, Buekens P, Bergel E, et al: A behavioral intervention to improve obstetrical care. N Engl J Med 358:1929, 2008

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Elk Grove Village, AAP, 2017
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Obstetric forceps. Committee Opinion No. 71, August 1989
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Approaches to limit intervention during labor and birth. Committee Opinion No. 766, February 2019a
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Obstetric analgesia and anesthesia. Practice Bulletin No. 209, March 2019b
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Safe prevention of the primary cesarean delivery. Obstetric Care Consensus No. 1, March 2014, Reaffirmed 2019c
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Hospital-based triage of obstetric patients. Committee Opinion No. 667, July 2016, Reaffirmed 2020a
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention of group B streptococcal early-onset disease in newborns. Committee Opinion No. 797, February 2020b
American Society of Anesthesiologists: Task Force on Obstetrical Anesthesia: practice guidelines for obstetrical anesthesia. Anesthesiology 124:270, 2016
Ängeby K, Wilde-Larsson B, Hildingsson I, et al: Prevalence of prolonged latent phase and labor outcomes: review of birth records in a Swedish population. J Midwifery Womens Health 63(1):33, 2018
Ashwal E, Fan IY, Berger H, et al: The association between fetal head station at the first diagnosis of the second stage of labor and delivery outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(3):306.e1, 2021
Bailit JL, Dierker L, Blanchard MH, et al: Outcomes of women presenting in active versus latent phase of spontaneous labor. Obstet Gynecol 105:77, 2005
Bellussi F, Ghi T, Youssef A, et al: The use of intrapartum ultrasound to diagnose malpositions and cephalic malpresentations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(6):633, 2017
Bin YS, Roberts CL, Nicholl MC, et al: Contribution of changing risk factors to the trend in breech presentation at term. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 56(6):564, 2016
Bloom SL, Casey BM, Schaffer JI, et al: A randomized trial of coached versus uncoached maternal pushing during the second stage of labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194:10, 2006
Bloom SL, McIntire DD, Kelly MA, et al: Lack of effect of walking on labor and delivery. N Engl J Med 339:76, 1998
Brown HC, Paranjothy S, Dowswell T, et al: Package of care for active management in labour for reducing caesarean section rates in low-risk women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD004907, 2008
Cahill AG, Duffy CR, Odibo AO, et al: Number of cervical examinations and risk of intrapartum maternal fever. Obstet Gynecol 119(6):1096, 2012
Cahill AG, Srinivas SK, Tita AT, et al: Effect of immediate vs delayed pushing on rates of spontaneous vaginal delivery among nulliparous women receiving neuraxial analgesia: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA 320(14):1444, 2018
Caldwell WE, Moloy HC, D'Esopo DA: A roentgenologic study of the mechanism of engagement of the fetal head. Am J Obstet Gynecol 28:824, 1934
Calkins LA: The etiology of occiput presentations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 37:618, 1939
Carlan SJ, Wyble L, Lense J, et al: Fetal head molding: diagnosis by ultrasound and a review of the literature. J Perinatol 11:105, 1991
Carlhäll S, Källén K, Blomberg M: Maternal body mass index and duration of labor. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 171(1):49, 2013
Carlson JM, Diehl JA, Murray MS, et al: Maternal position during parturition in normal labor. Obstet Gynecol 68:443, 1986
Chelmow D, Kilpatrick SJ, Laros RK Jr: Maternal and neonatal outcomes after prolonged latent phase. Obstet Gynecol 81:486, 1993
Cluett ER, Burns E, Cuthbert A: Immersion in water during labour and birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD000111, 2018
Dawood F, Dowswell T, Quenby S: Intravenous fluids for reducing the duration of labour in low risk nulliparous women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD007715, 2013
Di Mascio D, Saccone G, Bellussi F, et al: Delayed versus immediate pushing in the second stage of labor in women with neuraxial analgesia: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(2):189, 2020
Ehsanipoor RM, Saccone G, Seligman NS, et al: Intravenous fluid rate for reduction of cesarean delivery rate in nulliparous women: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 96(7):804, 2017
Eleje GU, Ezugwu EC, Eke AC, et al: Comparison of the duo of insulin-like growth factor binding protein-1/alpha fetoprotein (Amnioquick duo+) and traditional clinical assessment for diagnosing premature rupture of fetal membranes. J Perinat Med 45(1):105, 2017
Epidural and Position Trial Collaborative Group. Upright versus lying down position in second stage of labour in nulliparous women with low dose epidural: BUMPES randomised controlled trial. BMJ 359:j4471, 2017
Field NT, Piper JM, Langer O: The effect of maternal obesity on the accuracy of fetal weight estimation. Obstet Gynecol 86(1):102, 1995
Flynn AM, Kelly J, Hollins G, et al: Ambulation in labour. BMJ 2:591, 1978
Fong A, Serra AE, Caballero D, et al: A randomized, double-blinded, controlled trial of the effects of fluid rate and/or presence of dextrose in intravenous fluids on the labor course of nulliparas. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(2):208.e1, 2017
Food and Drug Administration: Risks associated with use of rupture of membranes tests – letter to health care providers. 2018. Available at: https://www.fda.gov/medical-devices/letters-health-care-providers/risks-associated-use-rupture-membranes-tests-letter-health-care-providers. Accessed December 18, 2020
Fox NS, Bhavsar V, Saltzman DH, et al: Influence of maternal body mass index on the clinical estimation of fetal weight in term pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 113(3):641, 2009
Friedman E: The graphic analysis of labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 68:1568, 1954
Friedman EA: An objective approach to the diagnosis and management of abnormal labor. Bull N Y Acad Med 48:842, 1972
Friedman EA: Primigravid labor: a graphicostatistical analysis. Obstet Gynecol 6:567, 1955
Friedman EA, Sachtleben MR: Amniotomy and the course of labor. Obstet Gynecol 22:755, 1963
Frigoletto FD Jr, Lieberman E, Lang JM, et al: A clinical trial of active management of labor. N Engl J Med 333:745, 1995
Gardberg M, Tuppurainen M: Anterior placental location predisposes for occiput posterior presentation near term. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 73:151, 1994a
Gardberg M, Tuppurainen M: Persistent occiput posterior presentation—a clinical problem. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 73:45, 1994b
Graham JM Jr, Kumar A: Diagnosis and management of extensive vertex birth molding. Clin Pediatr (Phila) 45(7):672, 2006
Gupta JK, Sood A, Hofmeyr GJ, et al: Position in the second stage of labour for women without epidural anaesthesia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD002006, 2017
Hanley GE, Munro S, Greyson D, et al: Diagnosing onset of labor: a systematic review of definitions in the research literature. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 16:71, 2016
Herbst A, Källén K: Time between membrane rupture and delivery and septicemia in term neonates. Obstet Gynecol 110:612, 2007
Hosek C, Faucher MA, Lankford J, et al: Perceptions of care in women sent home in latent labor. MCN Am J Matern Child Nurs 39(2):115, 2014
Ireland KE, Rodriguez EI, Acosta OM, et al: Intra-amniotic dye alternatives for the diagnosis of preterm prelabor rupture of membranes. Obstet Gynecol 129(6):1040, 2017
Kilpatrick SJ, Laros RK Jr: Characteristics of normal labor. Obstet Gynecol 74:85, 1989
Lawrence A, Lewis L, Hofmeyr GJ, et al: Maternal positions and mobility during first stage labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD003934, 2013
Leopold J: Conduct of normal births through external examination alone. Arch Gynaekol 45:337, 1894
Li M, Xing X, Yao L, et al: The effect of bladder catheterization on the incidence of urinary tract infection in laboring women with epidural analgesia: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Int Urogynecol J 30(9):1419, 2019
López-Zeno JA, Peaceman AM, Adashek JA, et al: A controlled trial of a program for the active management of labor. N Engl J Med 326:450, 1992
Lupe PJ, Gross TL: Maternal upright posture and mobility in labor: a review. Obstet Gynecol 67:727, 1986
Lydon-Rochelle M, Albers L, Gorwoda J, et al: Accuracy of Leopold maneuvers in screening for malpresentation: a prospective study. Birth 20:132, 1993
Nassr AA, Berghella V, Hessami K, et al: Intrapartum ultrasound measurement of angle of progression at the onset of the second stage of labor for prediction of spontaneous vaginal delivery in term singleton pregnancies: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol August 9, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]
Nelson DB, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: False labor at term in singleton pregnancies: discharge after a standardized assessment and perinatal outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 130(1):139, 2017
O'Driscoll K, Foley M, MacDonald D: Active management of labor as an alternative to cesarean section for dystocia. Obstet Gynecol 63:485, 1984
Palacio M, Kühnert M, Berger R, et al: Meta-analysis of studies on biochemical marker tests for the diagnosis of premature rupture of membranes: comparison of performance indexes. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 14:183, 2014

Pates JA, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: Uterine contractions preceding labor. Obstet Gynecol 110:566, 2007

Preyer O, Husslein H, Concin N, et al: Fetal weight estimation at term—ultrasound versus clinical examination with Leopold's manoeuvres: a prospective blinded observational study. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 19(1): 122, 2019

Ramphul M, Ooi PV, Burke G, et al: Instrumental delivery and ultrasound: a multicentre randomised controlled trial of ultrasound assessment of the fetal head position versus standard care as an approach to prevent morbidity at instrumental delivery. BJOG 121(8):1029, 2014

Read JA, Miller FC, Paul RH: Randomized trial of ambulation versus oxytocin for labor enhancement: a preliminary report. Am J Obstet Gynecol 139(6):669, 1981

Riegel M, Quist-Nelson J, Saccone G, et al: Dextrose intravenous fluid therapy in labor reduces the length of the first stage of labor. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 228:284, 2018

Robinson BK, Mapp DC, Bloom SL, et al: Increasing maternal body mass index and characteristics of the second stage of labor. Obstet Gynecol 118:1309, 2011

Saccone G, Berghella V: Antibiotic prophylaxis for term or near-term premature rupture of membranes: metaanalysis of randomized trials. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(5):627.e1, 2015

Segel SY, Carreño CA, Weiner MS, et al: Relationship between fetal station and successful vaginal delivery in nulliparous women. Am J Perinatol 29:723, 2012

Shrivastava VK, Garite TJ, Jenkins SM, et al: A randomized, double-blinded, controlled trial comparing parenteral normal saline with and without dextrose on the course of labor in nulliparas. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(4):379.e1, 2009

Smith CA, Levett KM, Collins CT, et al: Relaxation techniques for pain management in labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD009514, 2018

Smyth RM, Markham C, Dowswell T. Amniotomy for shortening spontaneous labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD006167, 2013

Soper DE, Mayhall CG, Dalton HP: Risk factors for intraamniotic infection: a prospective epidemiologic study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 161(3):562, 1989

Tilden EL, Phillippi JC, Carlson N, et al: The association between longer durations of the latent phase of labor and subsequent perinatal processes and outcomes among midwifery patients. Birth 47(4):418, 2020

Toijonen AE, Heinonen ST, Gissler MV, et al: A comparison of risk factors for breech presentation in preterm and term labor: a nationwide, population-based case-control study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 301(2):393, 2020

Tuuli MG, Frey HA, Odibo AO, et al: Immediate compared with delayed pushing in the second stage of labor. Obstet Gynecol 120:660, 2012

Walker KF, Kibuka M, Thornton JG, et al: Maternal position in the second stage of labour for women with epidural anaesthesia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD008070, 2018

Wei S, Wo BL, Qi HP, et al: Early amniotomy and early oxytocin for prevention of, or therapy for, delay in first stage spontaneous labour compared with routine care. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD006794, 2013

Wiafe YA, Whitehead B, Venables H, et al: The effectiveness of intrapartum ultrasonography in assessing cervical dilatation, head station and position: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound 24(4):222, 2016

Williams RM, Thom MH, Studd JW: A study of the benefits and acceptability of ambulation in spontaneous labor. BJOG 87:122, 1980

Wood AM, Frey HA, Tuuli MG, et al: Optimal admission cervical dilation in spontaneously laboring women. Am J Perinatol 33(2):188, 2016

Yamada H, Kishida T, Negishi H, et al: Silent premature rupture of membranes, detected and monitored serially by an AFP kit. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 24:103, 1998

Zhang J, Landy HJ, Branch DW, et al: Contemporary patterns of spontaneous labor with normal neonatal outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 116:1281, 2010

CHAPTER 23

Abnormal Labor

Labor arrest, abnormal fetal presentation, or fetal jeopardy are indications for a large percentage of primary cesarean deliveries in the United States (Boyle, 2013). Lowering dystocia rates offers the potential to decrease rates of this surgery and associated maternal morbidity.

DYSTOCIA

Dystocia literally means *difficult labor* and is characterized by abnormally slow labor progress. Causes are grouped into three distinct categories. Mechanistically, these simplify into abnormalities of the *powers*—poor uterine contractility and maternal expulsive effort; of the *passenger*—the fetus; and of the *passage*—the pelvis and lower reproductive tract.

These three groups act singly or in combination to produce dysfunctional labor (Table 23-1). For the powers, uterine contractions may be insufficiently strong or inappropriately coordinated to efface and dilate the cervix. This is termed *uterine dysfunction*. Moreover, during second-stage labor, voluntary maternal pushing may be inadequate. For the passenger, fetal

TABLE 23-1. Some Causes of Dystocia in Term Vertex Singletons

Fetal characteristics
Presentation: face, brow, sinciput
Position: OT, OP, asynclitism
Macrosomia
Anomaly: sacrococcygeal teratoma, hydrocephalus, craniofacial tumor, anencephaly
Intrapartum findings
Hydramnios
Chorioamnionitis
Neuraxial analgesia
Higher station at labor onset
Poor maternal pushing: sedation, severe pain, dense regional block, neurologic disease
Maternal characteristics
Nulliparity
Increasing age
Obesity
Large leiomyoma
Uterine müllerian anomaly
Anthropoid, android, or platypelloid pelvis types
Narrow pelvic diameters
Short stature
Pelvic tumor
Prior pelvic fracture

OP = occiput posterior; OT = occiput transverse.

abnormalities of presentation, position, or anatomy may slow progress. Last, for the passage, structural changes can contract the maternal bony pelvis. Or, soft tissue abnormalities of the reproductive tract may block fetal descent.

To describe ineffective labors, two commonly used terms are *cephalopelvic disproportion (CPD)* and *failure to progress*. CPD describes obstructed labor resulting from disparity between the fetal head size and maternal pelvis. The term CPD originated at a time when the main indication for cesarean delivery was overt pelvic contracture from rickets (Olah, 1994). Such absolute disproportion is now rare, and most cases result from malposition of the fetal head within the pelvis (asynclitism). True disproportion is a tenuous diagnosis because 50 to 75 percent of women undergoing cesarean delivery for this reason subsequently deliver even larger newborns vaginally (Lewkowitz, 2015; Place, 2019).

A second phrase, *failure to progress* in either spontaneous or stimulated labor, has become an increasingly popular description of ineffectual labor. This term reflects lack of progressive cervical dilation or halted fetal descent.

ABNORMALITIES OF THE EXPULSIVE FORCES

Types of Uterine Dysfunction

Uterine contractions are needed to dilate the cervix and to expel the fetus. A contraction is initiated by spontaneous action potentials in the membrane of smooth muscle cells. Unlike the heart, a single pacemaker or its site remain unresolved (Young, 2018). Resulting uterine contractions in normal labor show a rising and falling gradient of myometrial activity (Reynolds, 1951). Normal spontaneous contractions can exert pressures approximating 60 mm Hg (Hendricks, 1959). Even so, the lower limit of contraction pressure required to dilate the cervix is 15 mm Hg (Caldeyro-Barcia, 1950).

In abnormal labor, two physiological types of uterine dysfunction may develop. In the more common *hypotonic uterine dysfunction*, basal tone is normal and uterine contractions have a normal gradient pattern (synchronous). However, pressure during a contraction is insufficient to dilate the cervix. In the second type, *hypertonic uterine dysfunction* or *incoordinate uterine dysfunction*, either basal tone is elevated appreciably or the pressure gradient is distorted.

Risk Factors for Uterine Dysfunction

Various factors are implicated in uterine dysfunction. First, neuraxial analgesia can slow labor and has been associated with longer first and second stages of labor (Sharma, 2004). With current anesthesia methods, however, its effect on labor length is blunted (Anim-Somuah, 2018; Myers, 2020). Moreover, cesarean delivery rates are not higher, and supporting studies are presented in Chapter 25 (p. 477).

Chorioamnionitis is associated with prolonged labor. Uterine infection may directly contribute to uterine dysfunction or instead may simply be an associated consequence of prolonged, dysfunctional labor (Mark, 2000; Satin, 1992). Affected gravidas are monitored for labor progress, and augmentation of protracted labor is prudent (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a).

A higher station at the onset of labor is significantly linked with subsequent dystocia (Friedman, 1965, 1976; Roshanfekr, 1999). Although a risk factor, most nulliparas without fetal head engagement at diagnosis of active labor still deliver vaginally. These observations apply especially for parous women because the head typically descends later in labor.

Dystocia rate rises proportionally with maternal age even after adjusting for maternal and fetal weight and parity (Timofeev, 2013; Waldenström, 2017). Maternal obesity lengthens the first stages of labor by 30 to 60 minutes in nulliparas, even after adjusting for associated diabetes, fetal weight, and parity (Carlhäll, 2013; Kominiarek, 2011). Dystocia-associated cesarean delivery rates are higher in this group (Fyfe, 2011; Kawakita, 2016). Growing evidence suggests a pathologic biological effect of obesity on normal parturition (Azais, 2017; Carlson, 2015).

Labor Disorders

Latent-phase Prolongation

Uterine dysfunction can in turn lead to labor abnormalities (Table 23-2). First, the latent phase may be prolonged, which is defined as >20 hours in the nullipara and >14 hours in the multipara (Friedman, 1961, 1963b). In some, uterine contractions cease, suggesting false labor. In the remainder, an abnormally long latent phase persists and is often treated with amniotomy and oxytocin stimulation (Friedman, 1963a). The diagnosis of uterine dysfunction in the latent phase is difficult and commonly is made retrospectively. Women who are not yet in active labor often are erroneously treated for perceived uterine dysfunction.

Active-phase Disorders

In active labor, disorders are divided into those with slow progress—a *protraction disorder* or those with halted progress—an *arrest disorder*. Terms presented in Table 23-2 and their diagnostic criteria describe abnormal labor. To be diagnosed with either of these, a woman must be in the active phase of labor.

The criteria and management of abnormal labor have undergone modification, and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine (2019b) describe these in their Obstetric Care Consensus titled *Safe Prevention of the Primary Cesarean Delivery*. The Obstetric Care Consensus was a response to the rising cesarean delivery rate because nearly one third of women who give birth each year in the United States undergoes this surgery (Martin, 2019). New recommendations stem from data of normal labor progress in a more contemporary cohort. The World Health Organization (2018) has also revised its recommendations on labor progress. These guidelines have prompted controversy by their significant revision of the preexisting understanding of abnormal labor.

Active-phase Protraction. Of active-phase disorders, protraction disorders are less well described. Previously, protraction has been defined as <1 cm/hr cervical dilation for a minimum of 4 hours. These criteria were adapted from those of Cohen and Friedman (1983) and shown in Table 23-2. For this disorder, observation for further progress is appropriate treatment. In monitoring active labor, if hypotonic contractions are strongly suspected, internal monitors may be placed with amniotomy and again cervical change and contraction pattern are reassessed.

TABLE 23-2. Abnormal Labor Patterns, Diagnostic Criteria, and Methods of Treatment

LABOR PHASE: Labor Disorder	Traditional Criteria and Treatment: Nulliparas		Traditional Criteria and Treatment: Multiparas	Obstetrical Care Consensus Criteria
LATENT PHASE				
Prolongation Disorder				
Prolonged latent phase	>20 hr	>14 hr	Supportive care Oxytocin or amniotomy CD not indicated	Supportive care Oxytocin or amniotomy CD not indicated
ACTIVE PHASE				
Protraction Disorders				
Protracted active-phase dilation	<1.2 cm/hr	1.5 cm/hr	Expectant care CD for CPD	CD not indicated
Protracted descent	<1 cm/hr	<2 cm/hr		
Arrest Disorders				
Prolonged deceleration phase	>3 hr	>1 hr	CD for CPD No CPD: oxytocin	CD indications: Ruptured membranes ***and*** No progress after 4 hr of adequate contractions ***or*** No progress after 6 hr of inadequate contractions despite oxytocin stimulation
Secondary arrest of dilation	>2 hr	>2 hr		
Arrest of descent	>1 hr	>1 hr		
Failure of descent	No descent in deceleration phase or second stage			

CD = cesarean delivery; CPD = cephalopelvic disproportion.
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b; Cohen, 1983.

Deficient Montevideo units and poor active labor progress typically prompts oxytocin augmentation. In accord with the Consensus Committee (2019b), slow but progressive first-stage labor should not be an indication for cesarean delivery.

Active-phase Arrest. Handa and Laros (1993) diagnosed active-phase arrest, defined as no dilation for ≥2 hours, in 5 percent of term nulliparas. This incidence has not changed since the 1950s (Friedman, 1978). Inadequate uterine contractions, defined as <180 Montevideo units, calculated as shown in Figure 23-1, were diagnosed in 80 percent of women with active-phase arrest. Hauth and coworkers (1986, 1991) reported that when labor is effectively induced or augmented with oxytocin, 90 percent of women achieve 200 to 225 Montevideo

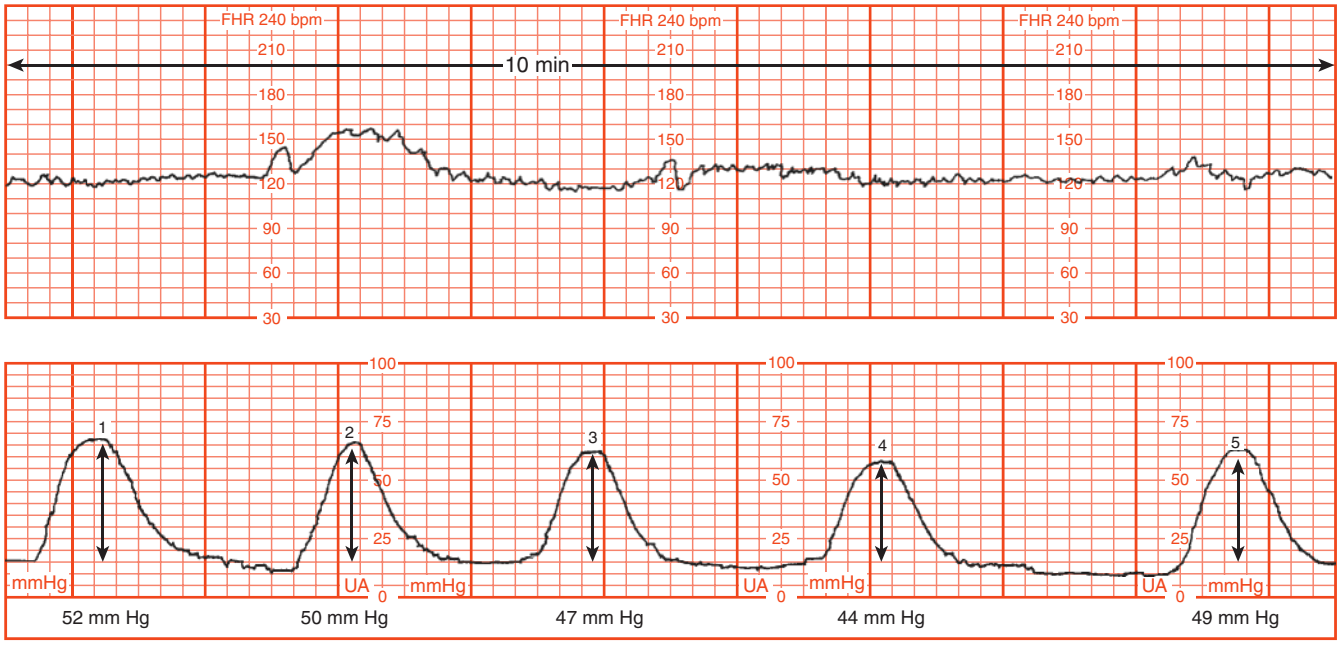


FIGURE 23-1 Montevideo units are calculated by subtracting the baseline uterine pressure from the peak contraction pressure for each contraction in a 10-minute window and adding the pressures generated by each contraction. In the example shown, there were five contractions producing pressure changes of 52, 50, 47, 44, and 49 mm Hg, respectively. The sum of these five contractions is 242 Montevideo units.

units, and 40 percent achieve at least 300 Montevideo units. These results suggest that certain minimums of uterine activity should be achieved before performing cesarean delivery for dystocia. Oxytocin regimens suitable to augment labor mirror those to induce labor. These regimens are outlined in detail in Chapter 26 (p. 493).

Other criteria should also be met. First, the latent phase should be completed, and the cervix is dilated ≥4 cm. Also, a uterine contraction pattern of ≥200 Montevideo units in a 10-minute period has been present for ≥4 hours without cervical change (Rouse, 1999). The Consensus Committee has extended this further, as described next.

Obstetric Care Consensus Committee. Four recommendations of the Consensus Committee apply to management of first-stage labor. The first admonishes against cesarean delivery in the latent phase. Specifically, a prolonged latent phase should not be the sole indication for cesarean delivery. This guideline is not new and is traceable to Friedman's work.

The second directive, too, is conventional practice. It recommends against cesarean delivery if labor is progressive but slow—a *protraction disorder*. This instance is typically managed with observation, assessment of uterine activity, and stimulation of contractions as needed.

A third instruction addresses the cervical dilation threshold that serves to herald active labor. Namely, a cervical dilation of 6 cm—not 4 cm—is now the recommended threshold. Moreover, before this threshold, standards for active-phase progress should not be applied. Of note, the WHO (2018) recognizes 5 cm as the active-labor threshold. Other large studies noted labor acceleration after 5 cm (Ashwal, 2020; Oladapo, 2018).

A fourth stipulation notes that cesarean delivery for active-phase arrest is best reserved for women with cervical dilation ≥6 cm and ruptured membranes who fail to progress despite 4 hours of adequate uterine activity or despite at least 6 hours of oxytocin administration but inadequate contractions.

Of these, the change of thresholds from 4 to 6 cm has prompted the most scrutiny. Described in Chapter 22 (p. 424), original labor curves have been used since first proposed approximately 40 years ago by Friedman (1978). Instead, Zhang and coworkers (2002) proposed a new labor curve derived from a more contemporaneous cohort delivered between 1992 and 1996. The Friedman labor curves reflected women in spontaneous labor with infrequent use of neuraxial labor analgesia or oxytocin augmentation. In contrast, in the later cohort, approximately 50 percent of women had neuraxial analgesia or augmentation. In the later group, the rate of cervical change is slow between 4 and 6 cm but accelerates thereafter. This could reasonably be interpreted as the active phase beginning at 6 cm. In comparing both labor curves, the active phase curve in the Zhang cohort flattens beginning at 3 to 4 cm (Fig. 23-2). Namely, the 6-cm rule for active labor derives from a slowing of the rate or flattening of the slope of cervical change in first-stage labor.

These findings by Zhang and coworkers (2002) are consistent with the labor results obtained in the subsequent Safe Labor Consortium study (Zhang, 2010). However, this study derived its numbers from a retrospective observational dataset built from abstracted labor and delivery information from 19

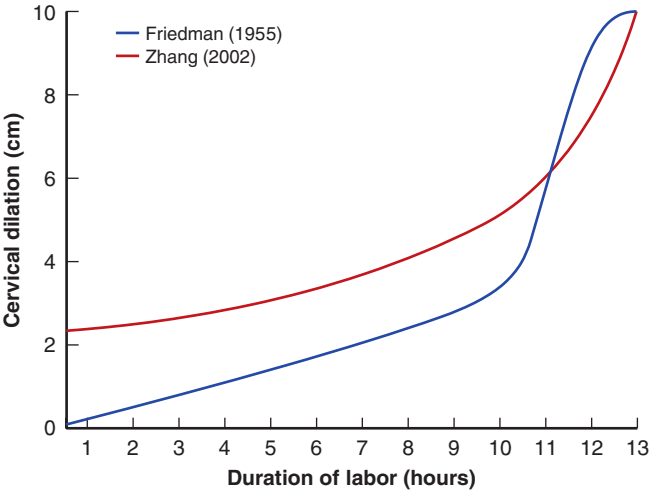


FIGURE 23-2 Cervical dilation curves from Friedman (1955) and Zhang (2002).

hospitals across the United States. Various statistical methods and heavy manipulations of these numbers were used (Cohen, 2015b). Moreover, women were analyzed after excluding all women with cesarean deliveries or asphyxiated newborns. The Consensus Committee (2019b) was explicit that "the Consortium on Safe Labor data, rather than the standards proposed by Friedman, should inform evidence-based labor management."

Critics of the Consensus Committee recommendations note that the Consortium on Safe Labor data were derived from clinical settings with a net cesarean rate of 30 percent. Thus, adherence to the new recommendations may fail to achieve desired cesarean rate reductions. Also, the study lacked a focus on neonatal safety, given that all the asphyxiated neonates were excluded. Supporters note that the study of prolonged first-stage labors by Cheng and coworkers (2010) found higher rates of cesarean delivery and chorioamnionitis but not higher rates of neonatal morbidity. However, Harper and associates (2014) analyzed maternal and neonatal adverse outcomes related to first-stage labor lengths. In 5030 women, first-stage labor durations were divided into those <90th percentile or those ≥90th percentile, with incremental increases thereafter. These authors and those of other large studies similarly found maternal and neonatal composite morbidity scores that were higher in cohorts after adoption of Consensus Committee guidelines compared with groups prior to implementation (Blankenship, 2020; Rosenbloom, 2017). This concern for adverse fetal and maternal effects resulting from the new Consensus Committee guidelines was echoed by Cohen and Friedman (2015a,b).

Another caveat notes that the efficacy of these recommendations to achieve their primary goal is limited. One retrospective cohort study compared 3200 women with uncomplicated term pregnancy undergoing spontaneous or induced labor before guideline changes and 3000 similar gravidas after these changes. The cesarean delivery rate for first-stage labor arrest dropped from 1.8 to 0.9 percent in nulliparas during this time (Thuillier, 2018). Percent changes were not significant in multiparas. Adverse maternal and neonatal outcomes did not significantly differ between epoch groups. In another evaluation of outcomes before and after guideline implementation, cesarean delivery rates were unchanged (Rosenbloom, 2017).

The Consensus Committee suggests that cesarean deliveries for dystocia are being done before 6 cm cervical dilation. However, evidence suggests that all of the Committee's first-stage recommendations are actually already empirically in use but are concurrent with an overall cesarean delivery rate >30 percent. For example, Nelson and associates (2020) analyzed data from nearly 9000 women with primary cesarean deliveries for dystocia at 13 university hospitals between 1999 and 2000. Notably, the median cervical dilation at the time of cesarean for dystocia was 6 cm. As another example, primary cesarean delivery rates for dystocia at Parkland Hospital between 1988 and 2017 did not change significantly. Thus, Consensus Committee guidelines may fail to prevent additional cesareans for dystocia. Logically, further study is needed.

Second-stage Descent Disorders

As discussed in Chapter 22 (p. 425), fetal descent largely follows complete dilation. Moreover, the second stage incorporates many of the cardinal movements necessary for the fetus to negotiate the birth canal. Thus, disproportion of the fetus and pelvis frequently becomes apparent during second-stage labor.

Similar to first-stage labor, time boundaries have been supported to limit second-stage duration to minimize adverse maternal and fetal outcomes. The second stage in nulliparas has been limited to 2 hours and extended to 3 hours when regional analgesia is used. For multiparas, 1 hour has been the limit, extended to 2 hours with regional analgesia. Several studies supported this extension (Cohen, 1977; Menticoglou, 1995a,b; Saunders, 1992). However, of maternal outcomes, higher rates of chorioamnionitis, anal sphincter injury, operative vaginal birth, and postpartum hemorrhage accrue as the second stage lengthens (Allen, 2009; Rouse, 2009).

Newer guidelines have been promoted by the Consensus Committee (2019b) for second-stage labor. These recommend that a nullipara push for at least 3 hours and a multipara push for at least 2 hours before second-stage labor arrest is diagnosed. Importantly, one caveat is that maternal and fetal status should be reassuring. These authors provide options to these times before cesarean delivery is performed. Namely, longer durations may be appropriate as long as progress is documented. Also, a specific maximal length of time spent in second-stage labor beyond which all women should undergo operative delivery has not been identified.

Intuitively, the goal to lower cesarean delivery rates is best balanced with one to ensure neonatal safety. It is problematic that no robust data on neonatal outcomes support the safety of allowing prolonged second-stage labor. Data from many evaluations reveal that serious newborn consequences attend second-stage labors longer than 3 hours (Bleich, 2012; Cahill, 2018; Nelson, 2020; Rosenbloom, 2017). Other data, when adjusted for labor variables, show no difference in adverse neonatal complications for these longer second stages (Cheng, 2004; Le Ray, 2009; Rouse, 2009). Some investigators have argued that the absolute number of such outcomes is small and overall outcomes remain good (Grantz, 2018; Grobman, 2016; Laughon, 2014). That said, some of the adverse outcomes are severe. To fully ascertain specific effect of these guidelines on morbidity rates, randomized controlled trials are needed.

It is possible that prolonged first-stage labor presages that with the second stage. Nelson and coworkers (2013) studied the relationships between the lengths of the first and second stages of labor in 12,523 nulliparas at term delivered at Parkland Hospital. The second stage significantly lengthened concomitantly with increasing first-stage duration. The 95th percentile was 15.6 and 2.9 hours for the first and second stages, respectively. Women with first stages lasting longer than 15.6 hours (>95th percentile) had a 16-percent rate of second-stage labor lasting 3 hours (95th percentile). This compared with a 4.5-percent rate of prolonged second stages in women with first-stage labors lasting <95th percentile.

Maternal Pushing Efforts

With full cervical dilation, most women cannot resist the urge to push with uterine contractions. The combined force created by contractions of the uterus and abdominal musculature propels the fetus downward. However, at times, force created by abdominal musculature is compromised sufficiently to slow or even prevent spontaneous vaginal delivery. Heavy sedation or regional analgesia may reduce the reflex urge to push and may impair the ability to contract abdominal muscles sufficiently. Allowing time for these to abate is reasonable. In other instances, the urge to push is overridden by the intense pain created by bearing down. Depending on fetal station and anticipated second stage, options include emotional support and encouragement, parenteral analgesia, pudendal blockade, or neuraxial analgesia.

PREMATURELY RUPTURED MEMBRANES AT TERM

Membrane rupture at term without spontaneous uterine contractions complicates approximately 8 percent of pregnancies. In the past, labor stimulation was initiated if contractions did not begin after 6 to 12 hours. Practice-changing research included that of Hannah (1996) and Peleg (1999) and their associates, who enrolled a total of 5042 pregnancies with ruptured membranes in a randomized investigation. They measured the effects of induction versus expectant management and also compared induction using intravenous oxytocin with that using prostaglandin E_2 gel. There were approximately 1200 pregnancies in each of the four study arms. They concluded that labor induction with intravenous oxytocin was preferred management. This was based on significantly fewer intrapartum and postpartum infections in women whose labor was induced. There were no significant differences in cesarean delivery rates. Subsequent analysis by Hannah and coworkers (2000) indicated higher rates of adverse outcomes when expectant management at home was compared with in-hospital observation. Mozurkewich and associates (2009) reported lower rates of chorioamnionitis, metritis, and neonatal intensive care unit admissions for women with term ruptured membranes whose labors were induced compared with those managed expectantly. At Parkland Hospital, labor is induced soon after admission when ruptured membranes are confirmed at term. In those with hypotonic contractions or with advanced cervical dilation, oxytocin is selected to lower potential hyperstimulation risk. In those with an unfavorable cervix, no or few contraction, and no significant fetal heart rate decelerations, prostaglandin E_1 (misoprostol) is chosen to promote cervical

ripening and contractions. The benefit of prophylactic antibiotics in women with ruptured membranes before labor at term is unclear (Passos, 2012). However, in those with membranes ruptured longer than 18 hours, antibiotics are instituted for group B streptococcal infection prophylaxis (Chap. 67, p. 1194).

PRECIPITOUS LABOR AND DELIVERY

Labor can be too slow, but it also can be abnormally rapid. *Precipitous labor and delivery* is extremely rapid labor and delivery. It may result from an abnormally low resistance of the soft parts of the birth canal, from abnormally strong uterine and abdominal contractions, or rarely from a lack of pain with contractions to cue advanced labor.

Precipitous labor terminates in expulsion of the fetus in <3 hours. Using this definition, 25,260 live births—3 percent—were complicated by precipitous labor in the United States in 2013 (Martin, 2015). Despite this incidence, little information is published on maternal and perinatal outcomes.

For the mother, complications are few if the cervix is effaced appreciably and compliant, if the vagina has been stretched previously, and if the perineum is relaxed. Conversely, vigorous uterine contractions combined with a long, firm cervix and a noncompliant birth canal may lead to uterine rupture or extensive lacerations of the cervix, vagina, vulva, or perineum (Sheiner, 2004). It is in these latter circumstances that *amniotic-fluid embolism* most likely develops (Chap. 42, p. 743). Precipitous labor is frequently followed by uterine atony. In one report of 99 term pregnancies, short labors were more common in multiparas who typically had contractions at intervals less than 2 minutes. Precipitous labors have been linked to cocaine abuse and associated with placental abruption, meconium, postpartum hemorrhage, and low Apgar scores (Mahon, 1994).

For the neonate, adverse perinatal outcomes from rapid labor may be increased considerably for several reasons. The uterine contractions, often with negligible intervals of relaxation, prevent appropriate uterine blood flow and fetal oxygenation. Related to trauma, resistance of the birth canal rarely may cause intracranial injury. In one review of 22 cases of Erb or Duchenne palsy, precipitous second-stage labor was associated in a third of the cases (Acker, 1988). During unattended birth, the newborn may fall to the floor and be injured. Last, needed resuscitation may not be immediately available due to delivery speed.

As treatment, analgesia is unlikely to modify these forceful contractions significantly. The use of tocolytic agents such as magnesium sulfate or terbutaline is unproven in these circumstances. A single, intramuscular 250-ug terbutaline dose may be reasonable in an attempt to resolve a nonreassuring fetal heart rate pattern. This is balanced against the risk of associated uterine atony if delivery is imminent. Certainly, oxytocin administration should be stopped.

FETOPELVIC DISPROPORTION

Pelvic Capacity

Fetopelvic disproportion arises from diminished pelvic capacity or from abnormal fetal size, structure, presentation, or position. Commonly, both are present. The pelvic inlet, midpelvis, or pelvic outlet may be contracted solely or in combination. Any contraction of the pelvic diameters that diminishes pelvic capacity can create dystocia. Normal pelvic anatomy is also discussed in Chapter 2 (p. 28).

Contracted Inlet

Before labor, the fetal biparietal diameter averages from 9.5 to 9.8 cm. Thus, it might prove difficult or even impossible for some fetuses to pass through a pelvic inlet that has an anteroposterior diameter <10 cm. Mengert (1948) and Kaltreider (1952), employing x-ray pelvimetry, demonstrated that the incidence of difficult deliveries rises when either the anteroposterior diameter of the inlet is <10 cm or the transverse diameter is <12 cm. Either threshold can be used to consider a pelvis contracted. As expected, when both diameters are shortened, dystocia rates are much greater than when only one is diminished.

The anteroposterior diameter of the inlet is also called the *obstetrical conjugate.* It is commonly approximated by manually measuring the *diagonal conjugate*, which is approximately 1.5 cm greater. To measure the diagonal conjugate, a hand with the palm oriented laterally extends its index finger to the promontory. The distance from the fingertip to the point at which the lowest margin of the symphysis strikes the same finger's base is the diagonal conjugate. Inlet contraction usually is defined as a diagonal conjugate <11.5 cm.

A diminutive woman is likely to have a small pelvis, but she is also likely to have a small neonate. Thoms (1937) studied 362 nulliparas and found that the mean birthweight of their offspring was significantly lower—280 g—in women with a small pelvis than in those with a medium or large pelvis.

Normally, cervical dilation is aided by hydrostatic action of the unruptured membranes or by direct application of the presenting part against the cervix after membrane rupture. In contracted pelves, however, because the head is arrested in the pelvic inlet, the entire force exerted by contractions acts directly on the portion of membranes that contact the dilating cervix. Consequently, early spontaneous rupture of the membranes is more likely.

After membrane rupture, absent pressure by the head against the cervix and lower uterine segment predisposes to less effective contractions. Hence, further dilation may proceed very slowly or not at all. Cibils and Hendricks (1965) reported that the mechanical adaptation of the fetal passenger to the bony passage plays an important part in determining the efficiency of contractions. Better adaptation begets more efficient contractions.

A contracted inlet also plays an important part in the production of abnormal presentations. In nulliparas with normal pelvic capacity, the presenting part at term commonly descends into the pelvic cavity before labor onset. If the inlet is contracted considerably or if asynclitism is marked, descent usually does not take place until after labor onset, if at all. Cephalic presentations still predominate, but the head floats over the pelvic inlet or rests more laterally in one of the iliac fossae. Accordingly, very slight influences may cause the fetus to assume other presentations. In women with contracted pelves, face and

shoulder presentations are encountered more frequently, and the cord prolapses more often.

Contracted Midpelvis

This finding is more common than inlet contraction. It frequently causes transverse arrest of the fetal head, which potentially can lead to a difficult midforceps operation or to cesarean delivery.

The obstetrical plane of the midpelvis extends from the inferior margin of the symphysis pubis through the ischial spines and touches the sacrum near the junction of the fourth and fifth vertebrae. A transverse line theoretically connecting the ischial spines divides the midpelvis into anterior and posterior portions (Fig. 2-16, p. 29). The former is bounded anteriorly by the lower border of the symphysis pubis and laterally by the ischiopubic rami. The posterior portion is bounded dorsally by the sacrum and laterally by the sacrospinous ligaments, forming the lower limits of the sacrosciatic notch.

Average midpelvis measurements are as follows: *transverse*, or interischial spinous, 10.5 cm; *anteroposterior*, from the lower border of the symphysis pubis to the junction of S_4 and S_5, 11.5 cm; and *posterior sagittal*, from the midpoint of the interspinous line to the same point on the sacrum, 5 cm. The definition of midpelvic contractions has not been established with the same precision possible for inlet contractions. Even so, the midpelvis is likely contracted when the sum of the interspinous and posterior sagittal diameters of the midpelvis—normally, 10.5 plus 5 cm, or 15.5 cm—falls to 13.5 cm or less. This concept was emphasized by Chen and Huang (1982) in evaluating possible midpelvic contraction. Midpelvic contraction is suspected whenever the interspinous diameter is <10 cm. When it measures <8 cm, the midpelvis is contracted.

Although no precise manual method permits measure of midpelvic dimensions, a suggestion of contraction sometimes can be inferred if the spines are prominent, the pelvic sidewalls converge, or the sacrosciatic notch is narrow. Moreover, Eller and Mengert (1947) noted that the relationship between the intertuberous and interspinous diameters of the ischium is sufficiently constant that narrowing of the interspinous diameter can be anticipated when the intertuberous diameter is narrow. A normal intertuberous diameter, however, does not always exclude a narrow interspinous diameter.

Contracted Outlet

This finding usually is defined as an interischial tuberous diameter of 8 cm or less. The pelvic outlet may be roughly likened to two triangles, with the interischial tuberous diameter constituting the base of both. The sides of the anterior triangle are the pubic rami, and its apex is the inferoposterior surface of the symphysis pubis. The posterior triangle has no bony sides but is limited at its apex by the tip of the last sacral vertebra—not the tip of the coccyx. Diminution of the intertuberous diameter with consequent narrowing of the anterior triangle must inevitably force the fetal head posteriorly. Floberg and associates (1987) reported that outlet contractions were found in almost 1 percent of more than 1400 unselected nulliparas with term pregnancies. A contracted outlet may cause dystocia not so much by itself but by an often-associated midpelvic contraction. *Outlet contraction without concomitant midplane contraction is rare.*

Although the disproportion between the fetal head and the pelvic outlet is not sufficiently great to give rise to severe dystocia, it may play an important part in perineal tears. With increased narrowing of the pubic arch, the occiput cannot emerge directly beneath the symphysis pubis but is forced farther down upon the ischiopubic rami. The perineum, consequently, becomes increasingly distended and thus exposed to risk of laceration.

Pelvic Fractures

Vallier (2012) and Riehl (2014) reviewed experiences with pelvic fractures and pregnancy. Trauma from automobile collisions was the most common cause. Moreover, they note that fracture pattern, minor malalignment, and retained hardware are not absolute indications for cesarean delivery. In determining vaginal delivery candidates, fracture healing requires 8 to 12 weeks and thus recent fracture merits cesarean delivery (Amorosa, 2013). With a healed fracture, care includes review of pelvic radiographs and possible pelvimetry later in pregnancy.

Radiologic Assessment

Current evaluation of pelvic capacity typically uses only digital interrogation of the bony pelvis. Of radiological methods, x-ray pelvimetry with cephalic presentations provides poor predictive value to diagnose CPD (Mengert, 1948; Pattinson, 2017). Similarly, magnetic resonance pelvimetry fails to provide suitable accuracy in predicting cesarean delivery for dystocia (Sporri, 2002; Zaretsky, 2005).

Fetal size alone is seldom the reason for failed labor. Indeed, most cases of CPD arise in fetuses whose weight is well within the range of the general obstetrical population. Figure 23-3 depicts Parkland Hospital data, in which two thirds of neonates who

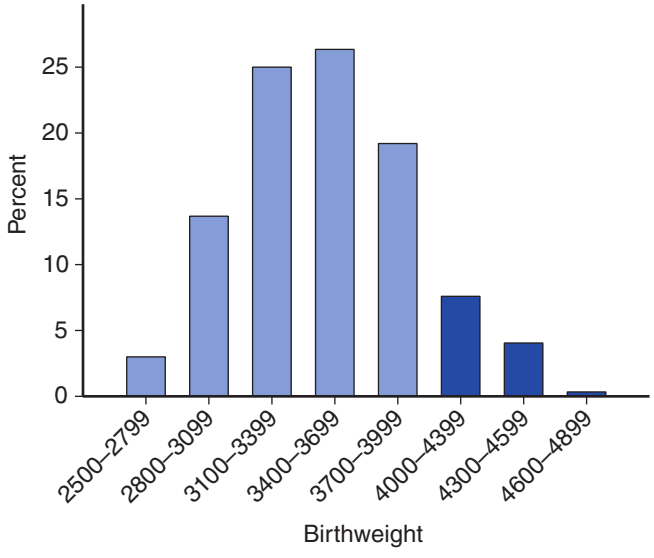


FIGURE 23-3 Birthweight distribution of 362 newborns born by cesarean delivery after a failed forceps attempt at Parkland Hospital from 1989–1999. Only 12 percent (n = 44) of the newborns weighed >4000 g (*dark bars*).

required cesarean delivery after failed forceps delivery weighed <3700 g. Thus, head malposition more likely obstructs fetal passage through the birth canal. These include asynclitism, occiput posterior position, and face, brow, or sinciput presentation.

For fetal head size estimation, clinical and radiographical methods to predict CPD also have proved disappointing. First, Mueller (1885) and Hillis (1930) described a clinical maneuver in which the fetal head is grasped through the abdominal wall, and firm pressure is directed downward along the axis of the inlet. If no disproportion exists, the head readily enters the pelvis, and vaginal delivery can be predicted. However, a prospective evaluation of this *Mueller-Hillis maneuver* found it poorly predicted subsequent labor dystocia (Thorp, 1993).

Measurements of fetal head diameters using plain radiographical techniques are hindered by parallax distortions. The biparietal diameter and head circumference can be measured sonographically, and Thurnau and colleagues (1991) used the *fetal-pelvic index* to identify labor complications. However, the sensitivity of such measurements to predict CPD is poor (Ferguson, 1998; Korhonen, 2015).

Face Presentation

Etiology and Diagnosis

With this presentation, the neck is hyperextended so that the occiput is in contact with the fetal back, and the chin (mentum) is presenting (Fig. 23-4). The rate is approximately 0.1 percent of births (Arsène, 2019; Gardberg, 2011).

Causes of face presentations are numerous and include conditions that favor neck extension or prevent flexion. Preterm fetuses, with their smaller head dimensions, can engage before conversion to occiput presentation, and multifetal gestations carry increased risk (Arsène, 2019; Shaffer, 2006). High parity is another predisposing factor (Fuchs, 1985). In these cases, a pendulous maternal abdomen permits the fetal back to sag forward, which promotes extension of the cervical spine. Fetal malformations and hydramnios are other risk factors for face or brow presentations, and anencephalic fetuses naturally present by the face (Bashiri, 2008). Last, extended neck positions develop more frequently when the pelvis is contracted or the fetus is very large. In a series of 141 face presentations studied by Hellman and coworkers (1950), the incidence of inlet contraction was 40 percent. This high incidence of pelvic contraction should be kept in mind when considering management.

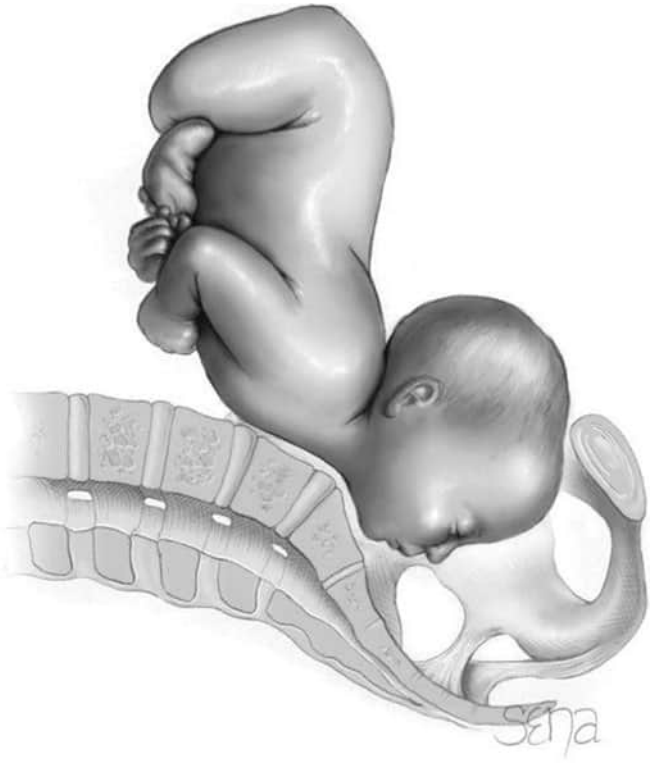


FIGURE 23-4 Face presentation. The chin is directly posterior. Vaginal delivery is impossible unless the chin rotates anteriorly.

Face presentation is diagnosed by vaginal examination and palpation of facial features. Notably, a breech may be mistaken for a face presentation. With careful examination, however, the finger encounters muscular resistance with the anus, whereas the bony, less-yielding jaws and palate are felt through the mouth. The finger, upon removal from the anus, may be stained with meconium. The mouth and malar eminences form a triangular shape, whereas the ischial tuberosities and anus lie in a straight line. Sonography can aid unclear cases (Bellussi, 2017). Used rarely, radiographs demonstrate a hyperextended head with the facial bones at or below the pelvic inlet (Duff, 1981).

Mechanism of Labor

The fetal face may present with the chin (mentum) anteriorly, transversely, or posteriorly, relative to the maternal symphysis pubis (Chap. 22, p. 418). Although some mentum posterior presentations persist, most convert spontaneously to an anterior position, even as late as second-stage labor (Duff, 1981; Sharshiner, 2015).

With the chin anterior, internal rotation of the face brings the chin under the symphysis pubis (Fig. 23-5). Only in this way can the neck traverse the posterior surface of the symphysis pubis. After anterior rotation and descent, the chin and mouth appear at the vulva, and the undersurface of the chin presses against the symphysis. Once the chin clears the symphysis, the neck can flex. The nose, eyes, brow, and occiput then appear in succession over the anterior margin of the perineum. After birth of the head, the occiput sags backward toward the anus. Next, the chin rotates externally to the side toward which it was originally directed, and the shoulders are born as in cephalic presentations. Fortunately temporary, edema and bruising can significantly distort the face.

Instead, if the chin persists posteriorly, the relatively short neck cannot span the anterior surface of the sacrum. Moreover, the fetal brow is pressed against the maternal symphysis pubis. This position precludes the flexion necessary to negotiate the birth canal. Hence, as noted earlier, vaginal birth from a mentum posterior position is impossible unless the shoulders enter the pelvis at the same time, an event that is impossible except for an extremely small or macerated fetus.

Management

During labor, fetal heart rate monitoring is best done with external devices to help avoid face or eye injury. Because face

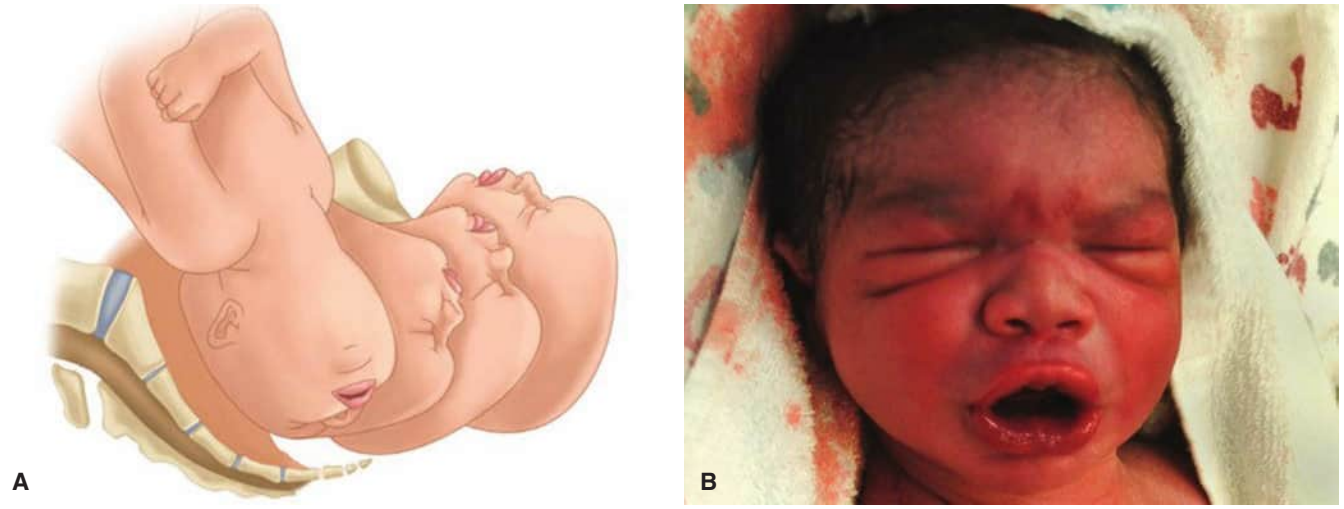


FIGURE 23-5 Face presentation. **A.** Mechanism of labor for right mentoanterior position. **B.** Swollen eyes and lips are common and transient in newborns delivered with face presentation.

presentations among term-size fetuses are more common with some degree of pelvic inlet contraction, cesarean delivery rates are substantially higher than with occiput presentation. If indicated, low or outlet forceps delivery of a mentum anterior face presentation can be completed (Chap. 29, p. 542). Vacuum extraction has been associated with eye trauma and is not recommended (De Bernardo, 2017).

As noted, rotation to a mentum anterior position may occur late in labor. Conversion methods should not be pursued. Namely, attempts to convert a face presentation manually to an occiput one, to rotate a posterior chin to a mentum anterior position, or to complete internal podalic version and extraction are dangerous and not recommended.

Brow Presentation

This uncommon presentation is diagnosed when that portion of the fetal head between the orbital ridge and the anterior fontanel presents at the pelvic inlet. As shown in Figure 23-6, the fetal head thus occupies a position midway between full flexion (occiput) and full extension (face). Rates range from 0.1 to 0.2 percent of births (Gardberg, 2011; Verspyck, 2012).

Risks for persistent brow presentation mirror those for face presentation. A brow presentation is commonly unstable and converts to a face or an occiput presentation (Cruikshank, 1973). The presentation may be recognized by abdominal palpation when both the occiput and chin can be palpated easily, but vaginal examination is usually necessary. The frontal sutures, large anterior fontanel, orbital ridges, eyes, and root of the nose are felt during vaginal examination, but neither the mouth nor the chin is palpable. Sonographic landmarks have been described (Bellussi, 2017).

Except when the fetal head is small or the pelvis is unusually large, engagement of the fetal head and subsequent delivery cannot take place as long as the brow presentation persists. Engagement is impossible until marked molding shortens the occipitomental diameter or, more commonly, until the neck either flexes to an occiput presentation or extends to a face presentation. The considerable molding essential for vaginal delivery of a persistent brow characteristically deforms the head. The caput succedaneum is over the forehead, and it may be so extensive that identification of the brow by palpation is impossible. In these instances, the forehead is prominent and squared, and the occipitomental diameter is diminished. Management principles mirror those for a face presentation.

Transverse Lie

Etiology and Diagnosis

With this, the fetus' long axis lies approximately perpendicular to that of the mother. In a transverse lie, the shoulder is usually

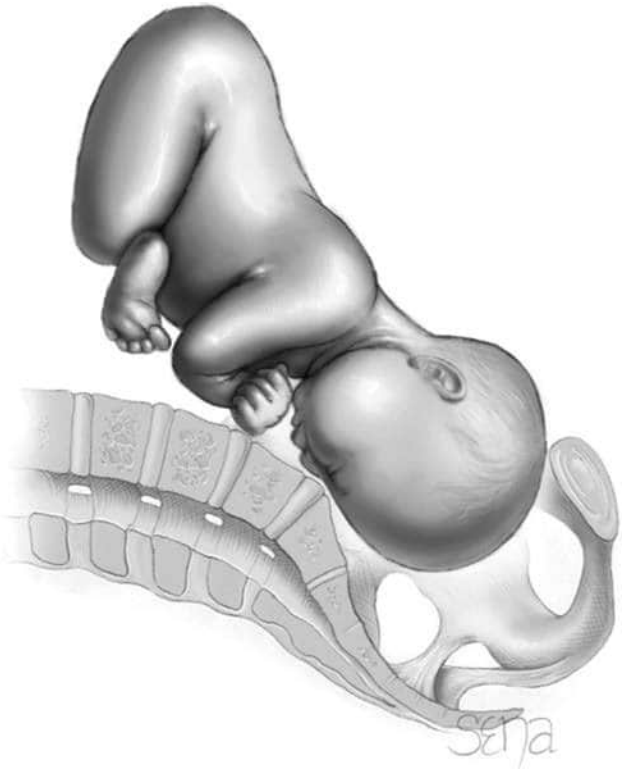


FIGURE 23-6 Brow posterior presentation.

FIGURE 23-7 Transverse lie. Leopold maneuver of a fetus with right acromiodorsoanterior position.

positioned over the pelvic inlet. The head occupies one iliac fossa, and the breech the other. This creates a *shoulder presentation* in which the side of the mother on which the acromion rests determines the designation of the position as right or left acromial. In addition, the back may be directed anteriorly or posteriorly and also superiorly or inferiorly. Thus, it is customary to further distinguish right or left varieties as dorsoanterior and dorsoposterior (Fig. 23-7).

Transverse lie complicates approximately 0.3 percent of births (Cruikshank, 1973; Gemer, 1994). Some of the more common causes include abdominal wall relaxation from high parity, preterm fetus, placenta previa, abnormal uterine anatomy, hydramnios, and contracted maternal pelvis.

A transverse lie is usually recognized easily, often by inspection alone. The abdomen is unusually wide, whereas the uterine fundus extends to only slightly above the umbilicus. No fetal pole is detected in the fundus, and the ballottable head is found on one side and the breech on the other. When the back is anterior, a hard resistance plane extends across the front of the abdomen. When it is posterior, irregular nodules that represent fetal small parts are felt through the mother's abdominal wall. During vaginal examination, in the early stages of labor, if the side of the thorax can be reached, the sequential parallel ribs are felt. With further dilation, the scapula and the clavicle are distinguished on opposite sides of the thorax. The position of the axilla indicates the side of the mother toward which the shoulder is directed.

Mechanism of Labor

Spontaneous delivery of a fully developed newborn is impossible with a persistent transverse lie. After rupture of the membranes, if labor continues, the fetal shoulder is forced into the pelvis, and the corresponding arm frequently prolapses. After some descent, the shoulder is arrested by the margins of the pelvic inlet. As labor continues, the shoulder is impacted firmly in the upper part of the pelvis. The uterus then contracts vigorously in an unsuccessful attempt to overcome the obstacle. With time, a uterine contraction ring rises increasingly higher and becomes more marked. An extreme form is the *Bandl ring*, described in the complication section. With a neglected transverse lie, the uterus will eventually rupture. Even without this complication, maternal and fetal morbidity rates with transverse lie are increased because of the frequent association with placenta previa, umbilical cord prolapse, and fetal manipulations during cesarean delivery.

If the fetus is small—usually <800 g—and the pelvis is large, spontaneous delivery is possible despite persistence of the abnormal lie. The fetus is compressed with the head forced against its abdomen. A portion of the thoracic wall below the shoulder thus becomes the most dependent part, appearing at the vulva. The head and thorax then pass through the pelvic cavity at the same time. The fetus, which is doubled upon itself in a position sometimes referred to as *conduplicato corpore*, is expelled.

Management

Active labor in a woman with a transverse lie typically requires cesarean delivery. With dorsoanterior or back down position, neither the fetal feet nor head occupies the lower uterine segment. A low transverse uterine incision may lead to difficult fetal extraction. Thus, a vertical hysterotomy incision is typically indicated. With dorsoposterior or back up position, one or both feet can be grasped through a low transverse incision and delivered by breech extraction (Chap. 28, p. 527).

Before labor or early in labor, with the membranes intact, attempts at external cephalic version (ECV) are worthwhile. Candidate selection and ECV technique mirror those for the breech fetus and are described in Chapter 28 (p. 528). ECV success rates are high and exceed those for breech fetuses (Correia Costa, 2020; Salzer, 2015).

■ Umbilical Cord Prolapse

Prolapse complicates 0.1 to 0.2 percent of births (Behbehani, 2016; Gibbons, 2014). As noted earlier, umbilical cord prolapse may be more common with pelvis contraction. Most risks stem from an unengaged presenting part and include hydramnios, breech presentation, transverse lie, premature or small fetus with weight <2500 g, preterm rupture of membranes, and multifetal gestation (Hasegawa, 2016). Funic presentation is one in which the umbilical cord is the presenting part. Although rare, it is a potent risk factor for prolapse and merits cesarean delivery prior to labor. Of maternal factors for cord prolapse, grand multiparity, a distorting leiomyoma, or müllerian uterine anomaly are less common reasons (Pagan, 2020).

Umbilical cord prolapse is usually diagnosed clinically. The cord loop is palpated in a position lower in the vaginal canal than the head or beside it. For most cases, prompt manual elevation of the fetal head relieves cord compression. Concurrently,

expeditious transfer to an operating room and preparations for cesarean delivery are completed. Rarely, vaginal or operative vaginal birth is reasonable if it can be completed much more rapidly than emergent cesarean birth (Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, 2017).

Compound Presentation

With this, an extremity prolapses alongside the presenting part, and both present simultaneously in the pelvis (Fig. 23-8). Goplerud and Eastman (1953) identified a hand or arm prolapsed alongside the head once in every 700 deliveries. Much less common was prolapse of one or both lower extremities alongside a cephalic presentation or a hand alongside a breech. At Parkland Hospital, compound presentations were identified in only 68 of more than 70,000 singleton fetuses—an incidence of approximately 1 in 1000. Compound presentations form in cases that prevent or delay occlusion of the pelvic inlet and mirror those for other malpresentations.

In most cases, the prolapsed part should be left alone. It typically does not impede labor and often retracts out of the way with descent of the presenting part. If it fails to retract and if it appears to prevent descent of the head, the prolapsed part can be pushed gently upward and the head simultaneously downward by fundal pressure. In cases with a co-presenting hand, the fetus may reflexively retract the hand if pinched by the provider.

In general, rates of perinatal mortality and morbidity are increased, but these mainly stem from effects of associated preterm birth, prolapsed umbilical cord, and traumatic obstetrical procedures. Tebes and coworkers (1999) described a rare case of pressure-induced forearm ischemia and later surgical amputation.

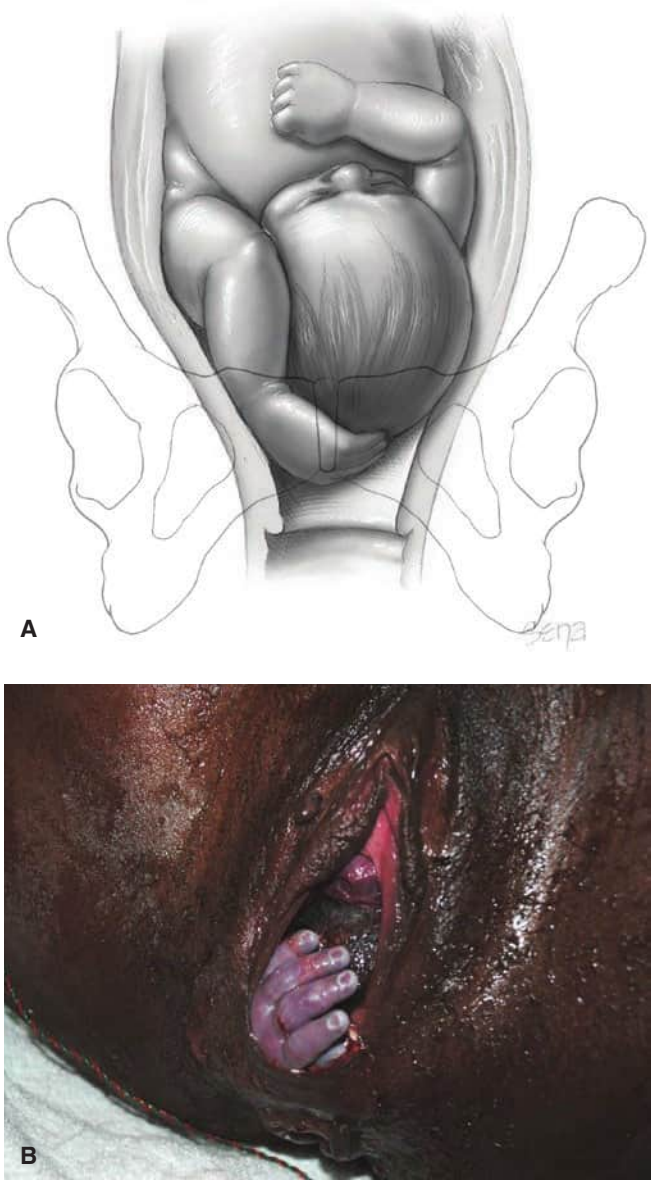


FIGURE 23-8 Compound presentation. **A.** The left hand is lying in front of the vertex. With further labor, the hand and arm may retract from the birth canal, and the head may then descend normally. **B.** Photograph of a small 34-week fetus with a compound presentation that delivered uneventfully with the hand presenting first. Mild bruising resolved uneventfully. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Elizabeth Mosier.)

COMPLICATIONS WITH DYSTOCIA

Dystocia, especially if labor is prolonged, is associated with a higher incidence of several common obstetrical and neonatal complications. Noted earlier, *maternal infection*, either intrapartum chorioamnionitis or postpartum endomyometritis, is more common with desultory and prolonged labors. *Postpartum hemorrhage* from atony is increased with prolonged and augmented labors. *Uterine tears* at the time of second-stage cesarean delivery also occur at greater incidence if the fetal head is impacted in the pelvis.

Uterine rupture is another risk. Abnormal thinning of the lower uterine segment creates a serious danger during prolonged labor (Delafield, 2018; Ronel, 2012). As described in Chapter 21 (p. 410), the upper segment of the uterus contracts, retracts, and expels the fetus. In response, the softened lower uterine segment and cervix dilate and thereby form a greatly expanded, thinned-out tube through which the fetus can pass. The boundary between these segments is the physiological *retraction ring*. When disproportion is so pronounced that fetal descent arrests, the lower uterine segment becomes increasingly stretched, and the normal *retraction ring* is unusually marked. Seldom encountered today, the *pathological retraction ring of Bandl* is associated with exaggerated thinning of the lower uterine segment. The ring may be seen clearly as a sharp uterine indentation and signifies impending lower segment rupture.

Fistula formation may result from dystocia, in which the presenting part is firmly wedged into the pelvis. Excessive pressure is exerted against tissues lying between the leading part and the pelvic wall. Because of impaired circulation, necrosis may result and become evident several days after delivery as vesicovaginal, vesicocervical, or rectovaginal fistulas (Letchworth, 2018). Most often, pressure necrosis follows a very prolonged second stage. These are rare today except in undeveloped medical systems.

Lower-extremity nerve injury in the mother can follow prolonged second-stage labor. These are discussed in Chapter 36 (p. 644). Fortunately, deficits are mainly sensory, and most resolve within 6 months of delivery in most women.

Similar to the mother, the incidence of peripartum fetal sepsis rises with longer labors. *Caput succedaneum* and *molding* develop commonly and may be impressive (Fig. 22-7, p. 423) (Buchmann, 2008). Mechanical trauma such as nerve injury, fractures, and cephalohematoma also are more frequent and are discussed further in Chapter 33 (p. 608).

REFERENCES

Acker DB, Gregory KD, Sachs BP, et al: Risk factors for Erb-Duchenne palsy. Obstet Gynecol 71:389, 1988

Allen VM, Baskett TF, O'Connell CM, et al: Maternal and perinatal outcomes with increasing duration of the second stage of labor. Obstet Gynecol 113(6):1248, 2009

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Intrapartum management of intraamniotic infection. Committee Opinion No. 712, August 2017, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine: Safe prevention of the primary cesarean delivery. Obstetric Care Consensus No. 1, March 2014, Reaffirmed 2019b

Amorosa LF, Amorosa JH, Wellman DS, et al: Management of pelvic injuries in pregnancy. Orthop Clin North Am 44(3):301, 2013

Anim-Somuah M, Smyth RM, Cyna AM, et al: Epidural versus non-epidural or no analgesia for pain management in labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD000331, 2018

Arsène E, Langlois C, Clouqueur E, et al: Prognosis for deliveries in face presentation: a case-control study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 300(4):869, 2019

Ashwal E, Livne MY, Benichou JI, et al: Contemporary patterns of labor in nulliparous and multiparous women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(3):267.e1, 2020

Azaïs H, Leroy A, Ghesquiere L, et al: Effects of adipokines and obesity on uterine contractility. Cytokine Growth Factor Rev 34:59, 2017

Bashiri A, Burstein E, Bar-David J, et al: Face and brow presentation: independent risk factors. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 21(6):357, 2008

Behbehani S, Patenaude V, Abenhaim HA: Maternal risk factors and outcomes of umbilical cord prolapse: a population-based study. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 38(1):23, 2016

Bellussi F, Ghi T, Youssef A, et al: The use of intrapartum ultrasound to diagnose malpositions and cephalic malpresentations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(6):633, 2017

Blankenship SA, Raghuraman N, Delhi A, et al: Association of abnormal first stage of labor duration and maternal and neonatal morbidity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(3):445.e1, 2020

Bleich AT, Alexander JM, McIntire DD, et al: An analysis of second-stage labor beyond 3 hours in nulliparous women. Am J Perinatol 29:717, 2012

Boyle A, Reddy UM, Landy HJ, et al: Primary cesarean delivery in the United States. Obstet Gynecol 122(1):33, 2013

Buchmann EJ, Libhaber E: Sagittal suture overlap in cephalopelvic disproportion: blinded and non-participant assessment. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 87(7):731, 2008

Cahill AG, Srinivas SK, Tita AT, et al: Effect of immediate vs delayed pushing on rates of spontaneous vaginal delivery among nulliparous women receiving neuraxial analgesia: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA 320(14):1444, 2018

Caldeyro-Barcia R, Alvarez H, Reynolds SR: A better understanding of uterine contractility through simultaneous recording with an internal and a seven channel external method. Surg Obstet Gynecol 91:641, 1950

Carlhäll S, Källén K, Blomberg M: Maternal body mass index and duration of labor. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 171(1):49, 2013

Carlson NS, Hernandez TL, Hurt KJ: Parturition dysfunction in obesity: time to target the pathobiology. Reprod Biol Endocrinol 13:135, 2015

Chen HY, Huang SC: Evaluation of midpelvic contraction. Int Surg 67:516, 1982

Cheng YW, Hopkins LM, Caughey AB: How long is too long: does a prolonged second stage of labor in nulliparous women affect maternal and neonatal outcomes? Am J Obstet Gynecol 191(3):933, 2004

Cheng YW, Shaffer BL, Bryant AS, et al: Length of the first stage of labor and associated perinatal outcomes in nulliparous women. Obstet Gynecol 116(5):1127, 2010

Cibils LA, Hendricks CH: Normal labor in vertex presentation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 91:385, 1965

Cohen W: Influence of the duration of second stage labor on perinatal outcome and puerperal morbidity. Obstet Gynecol 49:266, 1977

Cohen W, Friedman EA: Management of Labor. Baltimore, University Park Press, 1983

Cohen WR, Friedman EA: Misguided guidelines for managing labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(6):753.e1, 2015a

Cohen WR, Friedman EA: Perils of the new labor management guidelines. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(4):420, 2015b

Correia Costa S, Raposo MI, Machado AP, et al: External cephalic version: predictors of success and influence on caesarean rates. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 256:211, 2020

Cruikshank DP, White CA: Obstetric malpresentations: twenty years' experience. Am J Obstet Gynecol 116:1097, 1973

De Bernardo G, Svelto M, Giordano M, et al: Face presentation in delivery room: what is strategy? BMJ Case Rep 2017:bcr2016219114, 2017

Delafield R, Pirkle CM, Dumont A: Predictors of uterine rupture in a large sample of women in Senegal and Mali: cross-sectional analysis of QUARITE trial data. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 18(1):432, 2018

Duff P: Diagnosis and management of face presentation. Obstet Gynecol 57:105, 1981

Eller WC, Mengert WF: Recognition of mid-pelvic contraction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 53:252, 1947

Ferguson JE, Newberry YG, DeAngelis GA, et al: The fetal-pelvic index has minimal utility in predicting fetal-pelvic disproportion. Am J Obstet Gynecol 179:1186, 1998

Floberg J, Belfrage P, Ohlsén H: Influence of pelvic outlet capacity on labor. A prospective pelvimetry study of 1,429 unselected primiparas. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 66:121, 1987

Friedman EA: Labor: Clinical Evaluation and Management, 2nd ed. New York, Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1978

Friedman EA, Sachtleben MR: Amniotomy and the course of labor. Obstet Gynecol 22:755, 1963a

Friedman EA, Sachtleben MR: Dysfunctional labor. I. Prolonged latent phase in the nullipara. Obstet Gynecol 17:135, 1961

Friedman EA, Sachtleben MR: Dysfunctional labor. VI. Abnormal progress in the multipara. Obstet Gynecol 22:478, 1963b

Friedman EA, Sachtleben MR: Station of the fetal presenting part II: Effect on the course of labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 93:530, 1965

Friedman EA, Sachtleben MR: Station of the fetal presenting part IV: Arrest of descent in nulliparas. Obstet Gynecol 47:129, 1976

Fuchs K, Peretz BA, Marcovici R, et al: The grand multipara—is it a problem? Int J Gynaecol Obstet 73:321, 1985

Fyfe EM, Anderson NH, North RA, et al: Risk of first-stage and second-stage cesarean delivery by maternal body mass index among nulliparous women in labor at term. Obstet Gynecol 117(6):1315, 2011

Gardberg M, Leonova Y, Laakkonen E: Malpresentations—impact on mode of delivery. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 90(5):540, 2011

Gemer O, Segal S: Incidence and contribution of predisposing factors to transverse lie presentation. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 44(3):219, 1994

Gibbons C, O'Herlihy C, Murphy JF: Umbilical cord prolapse—changing patterns and improved outcomes: a retrospective cohort study. BJOG 121(13):1705, 2014

Goplerud J, Eastman NJ: Compound presentation: survey of 65 cases. Obstet Gynecol 1:59, 1953

Grantz KL, Sundaram R, Ma L, et al: Reassessing the duration of the second stage of labor in relation to maternal and neonatal morbidity. Obstet Gynecol 131(2):345, 2018

Grobman WA, Bailit J, Lai Y, et al: Association of the duration of active pushing with obstetric outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 127(4):667, 2016

Handa VL, Laros RK: Active-phase arrest in labor: predictors of cesarean delivery in a nulliparous population. Obstet Gynecol 81:758, 1993

Hannah M, Ohlsson A, Farine D, et al: International Term PROM Trial: a RCT of induction of labor for prelabor rupture of membranes at term. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:303, 1996

Hannah ME, Hodnett ED, Willan A, et al: Prelabor rupture of the membranes at term: expectant management at home or in hospital? Obstet Gynecol 96:533, 2000

Harper LM, Caughey AB, Roehl KA, et al: Defining an abnormal first stage of labor based on maternal and neonatal outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210(6):536.e1, 2014

Hasegawa J, Ikeda T, Sekizawa A, et al: Obstetric risk factors for umbilical cord prolapse: a nationwide population-based study in Japan. Arch Gynecol Obstet 294(3):467, 2016

Hauth JC, Hankins GD, Gilstrap LC III: Uterine contraction pressures achieved in parturients with active phase arrest. Obstet Gynecol 78:344, 1991

Hauth JC, Hankins GD, Gilstrap LC III, et al: Uterine contraction pressures with oxytocin induction/augmentation. Obstet Gynecol 68:305, 1986
Hellman LM, Epperson JW, Connally F: Face and brow presentation: the experience of the Johns Hopkins Hospital, 1896 to 1948. Am J Obstet Gynecol 59:831, 1950
Hendricks CH, Quilligan EJ, Tyler AB, et al: Pressure relationships between intervillous space and amniotic fluid in human term pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 77:1028, 1959
Hillis DS: Diagnosis of contracted pelvis by the impression method. Surg Gynecol Obstet 51:857, 1930
Kaltreider DF: Criteria of midplane contraction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 63:392, 1952
Kawakita T, Reddy UM, Landy HJ, et al: Indications for primary cesarean delivery relative to body mass index. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(4):515.e1, 2016
Kominiarek MA, Zhang J, VanVeldhuisen P, et al: Contemporary labor patterns: the impact of maternal body mass index. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205:244.e1, 2011
Korhonen U, Taipale P, Heinonen S: Fetal pelvic index to predict cephalopelvic disproportion-a retrospective clinical cohort study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 94(6):615, 2015
Laughon SK, Berghella V, Reddy UM, et al: Neonatal and maternal outcomes with prolonged second stage of labor. Obstet Gynecol 124(1):57, 2014
Le Ray C, Audibert F, Goffinet F, et al: When to stop pushing: effects of duration of second-stage expulsion efforts on maternal and neonatal outcomes in nulliparous women with epidural analgesia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(4):361.e1, 2009
Letchworth P, MacLaren E, Duffy S: Obstetric fistula: a paradigm shift is needed in research and prevention. BJOG 125(8):925, 2018
Lewkowitz AK, Nakagawa S, Thiet MP, et al: Effect of stage of initial labor dystocia on vaginal birth after cesarean success. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(6):861.e1, 2015
Mahon TR, Chazotte C, Cohen WR: Short labor: characteristics and outcome. Obstet Gynecol 84:47, 1994
Mark SP, Croughan-Minihane MS, Kilpatrick SJ: Chorioamnionitis and uterine function. Obstet Gynecol 95(6 Pt 1):909, 2000
Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJ, et al: Births: final data for 2013. Natl Vital Stat Rep 64(1):1, 2015
Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJ: Births: final data for 2018. Natl Vital Stat Rep 68(13):1, 2019
Mengert WF: Estimation of pelvic capacity. JAMA 138:169, 1948
Menticoglou SM, Manning F, Harman C, et al: Perinatal outcomes in relation to second-stage duration. Am J Obstet Gynecol 173:906, 1995a
Menticoglou SM, Perlman M, Manning FA: High cervical spinal cord injury in neonates delivered with forceps: report of 15 cases. Obstet Gynecol 86:589, 1995b
Mozurkewich E, Chilimigras J, Koepke E, et al: Indications for induction of labour: a best-evidence review. BJOG 116(5):626, 2009
Mueller P: About the prognosis for delivery with a narrow pelvis. Arch Gynaekol 27:311, 1885
Myers ER, Sanders GD, Coeytaux RR, et al: Labor dystocia. Comparative Effectiveness Review No. 226. AHRQ Publication No. 29-EHC007. Rockville, Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, 2020
Nelson DB, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: Relationship of the length of the first stage of labor to the length of the second stage. Obstet Gynecol 122:27, 2013
Nelson DB, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: Second-stage labor: consensus versus science. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(2):144, 2020
Oladapo OT, Diaz V, Bonet M, et al: Cervical dilatation patterns of 'low-risk' women with spontaneous labour and normal perinatal outcomes: a systematic review. BJOG 125(8):944, 2018
Olah KS, Neilson J: Failure to progress in the management of labour. BJOG 101:1, 1994
Pagan M, Eads L, Sward L, et al: Umbilical cord prolapse: a review of the literature. Obstet Gynecol Surv 75(8):510, 2020
Passos F, Cardose K, Coelho AM, et al: Antibiotic prophylaxis in premature rupture of membranes at term. Obstet Gynecol 120:1045, 2012
Pattinson RC, Cuthbert A, Vannevel V: Pelvimetry for fetal cephalic presentations at or near term for deciding on mode of delivery. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD000161, 2017
Peleg D, Hannah ME, Hodnett ED, et al: Predictors of cesarean delivery after prelabor rupture of membranes at term. Obstet Gynecol 93:1031, 1999
Place K, Kruit H, Tekay A, et al: Success of trial of labor in women with a history of previous cesarean section for failed labor induction or labor dystocia: a retrospective cohort study. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 19(1):176, 2019
Reynolds SR: Uterine contractility and cervical dilatation. Proc R Soc Med 44(8):695, 1951
Riehl JT: Caesarean section rates following pelvic fracture: a systematic review. Injury 45(10):1516, 2014
Ronel D, Wiznitzer A, Sergienko R, et al: Trends, risk factors and pregnancy outcome in women with uterine rupture. Arch Gynecol Obstet 285(2):317, 2012
Rosenbloom JI, Stout MJ, Tuuli MG, et al: New labor management guidelines and changes in cesarean delivery patterns. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(6):689.e1, 2017
Roshanfekr D, Blakemore KJ, Lee J, et al: Station at onset of active labor in nulliparous patients and risk of cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 93:329, 1999
Rouse DJ, Owen J, Hauth JC: Active-phase labor arrest: oxytocin augmentation for at least 4 hours. Obstet Gynecol 93:323, 1999
Rouse DJ, Weiner SJ, Bloom SL, et al: Second-stage labor duration in nulliparous women: relationship to maternal and perinatal outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(4):357.e1, 2009
Royal College of Obstetricians & Gynaecoloists: Umbilical cord prolapse. Green-top Guide No. 50, May 2014, Reaffirmed 2017
Salzer L, Nagar R, Melamed N, et al: Predictors of successful external cephalic version and assessment of success for vaginal delivery. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 28(1):49, 2015
Satin AJ, Maberry MC, Leveno KJ, et al: Chorioamnionitis: a harbinger of dystocia. Obstet Gynecol 79:913, 1992
Saunders NS, Paterson CM, Wadsworth J: Neonatal and maternal morbidity in relation to the length of the second stage of labour. BJOG 99(5):381, 1992
Shaffer BL, Cheng YW, Vargas JE, et al: Face presentation: predictors and delivery route. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194(5):e10, 2006
Sharma SK, McIntire DD, Wiley J, et al: Labor analgesia and cesarean delivery: an individual patient meta-analysis of nulliparous women. Anesthesiology 100(1):142, 2004
Sharshiner R, Silver RM: Management of fetal malpresentation. Clin Obstet Gynecol 58(2):246, 2015
Sheiner E, Levy A, Mazor M: Precipitate labor: higher rates of maternal complications. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 116(1):43, 2004
Spörri S, Thoeny HC, Raio Let al: MR imaging pelvimetry: a useful adjunct in the treatment of women at risk for dystocia? AJR Am J Roentgenol 179(1):137, 2002
Tebes CC, Mehta P, Calhoun DA, et al: Congenital ischemic forearm necrosis associated with a compound presentation. J Matern Fetal Med 8:281, 1999
Thom H: The obstetrical significance of pelvic variations: a study of 450 primiparous women. BMJ 2:210, 1937
Thorp JM Jr, Pahel-Short L, Bowes WA Jr: The Mueller-Hillis maneuver: can it be used to predict dystocia? Obstet Gynecol 82:519, 1993
Thuillier C, Roy S, Peyronnet V, et al: Impact of recommended changes in labor management for prevention of the primary cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(3):341.e1, 2018
Thurnau GR, Scates DH, Morgan MA: The fetal-pelvic index: a method of identifying fetal-pelvic disproportion in women attempting vaginal birth after previous cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 165:353, 1991
Timofeev J, Reddy UM, Huang CC, et al: Obstetric complications, neonatal morbidity, and indications for cesarean delivery by maternal age. Obstet Gynecol 122(6):1184, 2013
Vallier HA, Cureton BA, Schubeck D: Pregnancy outcomes after pelvic ring injury. J Orthop Trauma 26(5):302, 2012
Verspyck E, Bisson V, Gromez A, et al: Prophylactic attempt at manual rotation in brow presentation at full dilatation. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand. 91(11):13, 2012
Waldenström U, Ekéus C: Risk of labor dystocia increases with maternal age irrespective of parity: a population-based register study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 96(9):1063, 2017
World Health Organization: WHO recommendations: intrapartum care for a positive childbirth experience. Geneva, WHO; 2018
Young RC: The uterine pacemaker of labor. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 52:68, 2018
Zaretsky MV, Alexander JM, McIntire DD, et al: Magnetic resonance imaging pelvimetry and the prediction of labor dystocia. Obstet Gynecol 106:919, 2005
Zhang J, Landy HJ, Branch DW, et al: Contemporary patterns of spontaneous labor with normal neonatal outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 116:1281, 2010
Zhang J, Troendle JF, Yancey MK: Reassessing the labor curve in nulliparous women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 187(4):824, 2002

CHAPTER 24

Intrapartum Assessment

Electronic fetal monitoring eclipsed periodic fetoscopic auscultation of the fetal heartbeat in the late 1960s (Hon, 1958). It was hoped that the continuous graph-paper portrayal of the fetal heart rate (FHR), termed *cardiotocography*, would reflect pathophysiological events affecting the fetus. Initially, electronic FHR monitoring was used primarily in complicated pregnancies. Now, more than 85 percent of all live births in the United States undergo electronic FHR monitoring (Ananth, 2013).

ELECTRONIC FETAL MONITORING

Internal (Direct) Electronic Monitoring

Direct FHR measurement is accomplished by attaching a bipolar spiral electrode directly to the fetus (Fig. 24-1). The wire electrode penetrates the fetal scalp, and the second pole is a metal wing on the electrode. The P wave, QRS complex, and T wave of the electrical fetal cardiac signal are amplified and fed into a cardiotachometer for heart rate calculation. The peak R-wave voltage is the most reliably detected portion of the fetal electrocardiogram (ECG). Time (t) in milliseconds between fetal R waves is fed into a cardiotachometer, and a new FHR is set with the arrival of each new R wave (Fig. 24-2). The phenomenon of continuous R-to-R wave FHR computation was known as *beat-to-beat variability*, and is now called *baseline variability*. If present, fetal premature atrial contractions (PACs) cause the cardiotachometer to rapidly and erratically seek new heart rates and create the "spiking" shown Figure 24-3.

Electrical cardiac complexes detected by the fetal electrode include those generated by the mother. However, the amplitude of the maternal ECG signal is diminished when recorded through the fetal scalp electrode. Thus, maternal cardiac signals do not appear on the FHR tracing. However, if the fetus is dead, maternal R waves can be still detected by the scalp

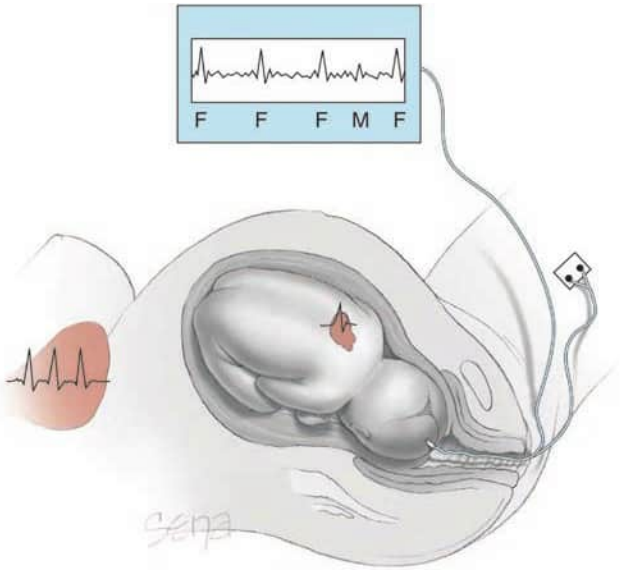


FIGURE 24-1 With internal electronic fetal monitoring a bipolar electrode is attached to the fetal scalp for detection of fetal QRS complexes (F). At times, the maternal heart and its electrical complex (M) also may be detected.

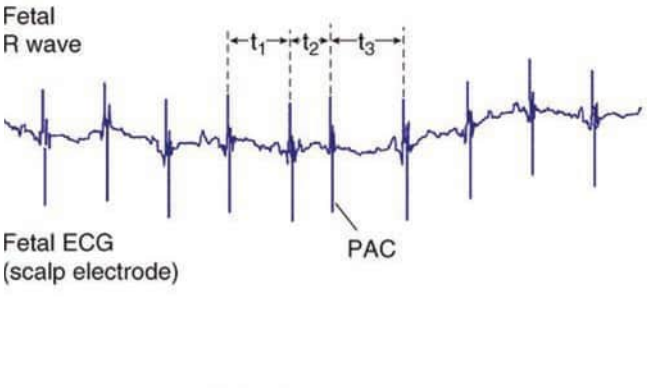


FIGURE 24-2 Fetal electrocardiographic signals from the scalp electrode are used to compute continuous beat-to-beat heart rate. Time intervals (t_1, t_2, t_3) in milliseconds between successive fetal R waves are used by a cardiotachometer to compute instantaneous fetal heart rate. In this example, the t_2 interval has complexes that are close together, which indicates a slighted higher heart rate. This is reflected in the vertical rise on the cardiotachometer graph. ECG = electrocardiogram; PAC = premature atrial contraction.

electrode as the next best signal and are counted by the cardiotachometer (Fig. 24-4).

External (Indirect) Electronic Monitoring

Although it avoids membrane rupture, external monitoring does not provide the precision of internal FHR monitoring (Nunes, 2014). Moreover, in some women, external monitoring may be difficult. For example, fetuses of obese women have a greater amount of unmonitored time compared with those of normal-weight women (Brocato, 2019).

With external monitoring, the FHR is detected through the maternal abdominal wall using the *ultrasound Doppler principle* (Chap. 14, p. 261). The instrument contains a transducer that emits ultrasound and a sensor to detect a shift in frequency of

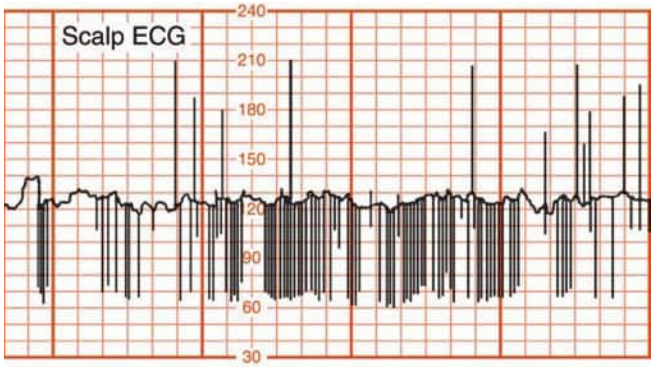


FIGURE 24-3 Standard fetal monitor tracing of heart rate using a fetal scalp electrode. Spiking of the fetal rate reflects premature atrial contractions.

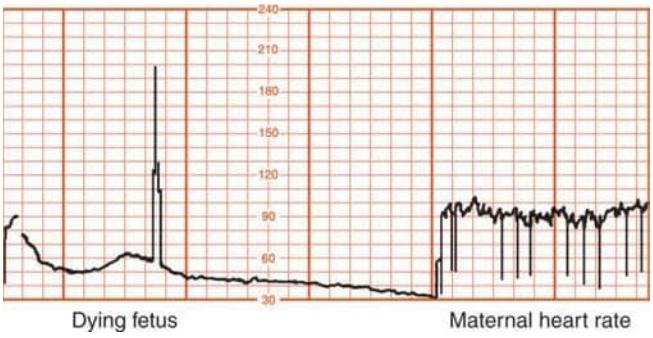


FIGURE 24-4 Placental abruption. The fetal scalp electrode first detects the dying fetus' heart rate. After fetal death, the maternal electrocardiogram complex is detected and recorded.

the reflected sound. The transducer is placed on the maternal abdomen at a site where fetal heart action is best detected. A coupling gel must be applied because air conducts ultrasound waves poorly. The device is held in position by an elastic belt.

Ultrasound Doppler signals are edited electronically before FHR data appear. Reflected ultrasound signals from moving fetal heart valves are analyzed through a microprocessor that compares incoming signals with the most recent previous signal. This process, called *autocorrelation*, is based on the premise that the FHR has regularity, whereas "noise" is random and lacks regularity. Several fetal heart motions must be deemed electronically acceptable by the microprocessor before the FHR is revealed. Such electronic editing has greatly improved tracing quality. Many fetal monitors are capable of interfacing with archival storage systems, which obviates maintaining actual paper tracings.

Other features of current external monitors include the ability to monitor twin fetuses, concurrently assess maternal heart rate, display fetal ECG, and record maternal pulse oximetry values. Wireless, abdominal, dermal-patch, external array systems may improve the interpretability of intrapartum FHR tracings in obese women (Lempersz, 2020; Monson, 2020). Wireless monitors use electrocardiography to accurately measure maternal and fetal heart rates yet allow patient mobility during labor.

Fetal Heart Rate Patterns

The interpretation of FHR patterns can be problematic without definitions and nomenclature. In one study, three Maternal-Fetal Medicine specialists independently interpreted FHR tracings. Agreement was poor for the most ominous tracings and was moderate for less severe patterns (Blackwell, 2011). To help standardize definitions, the National Institute of Child Health and Human Development (NICHD) convened a working group (Table 24-1) (Macones, 2008). The resulting definitions are used in this chapter and have been adopted by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a). Interobserver agreement improves when these standardized definitions are implemented (Epstein, 2013).

Pattern interpretation derives from the FHR that is portrayed on the monitor or graph paper. Thus, the choice of vertical and horizontal scaling greatly affects patterns. NICHD Workshop scaling parameters recommend that each centimeter

TABLE 24-1. Electronic Fetal Monitoring Definitions

Pattern	Definition
Baseline	• The mean FHR rounded to increments of 5 bpm during a 10-min segment, excluding: —Periodic or episodic changes —Periods of marked FHR variability —Segments of baseline that differ by more than 25 bpm • The baseline must be for a minimum of 2 min in any 10-min segment or the baseline for that time period is indeterminate. In this case, one may refer to the prior 10-min window for determination of baseline. • Normal FHR baseline: 110–160 bpm • Tachycardia: FHR baselines is greater than 160 beats per minute • Bradycardia: FHR baseline is less than 110 beats per minute
Baseline variability	• Fluctuations in the baseline FHR that are irregular in amplitude and frequency • Variability is visually quantified as the amplitude of peak-to-trough in beats per minute —Absent: amplitude range undetectable —Minimal: amplitude range detectable but 5 beats per minutes or fewer —Moderate (normal): amplitude range 6–25 beats per minute —Marked: amplitude range greater than 25 beats per minute
Acceleration	• A visually apparent abrupt increase (onset to peak in less than 30 seconds) in the FHR • At 32 weeks of gestation and beyond, an acceleration has a peak of 15 bpm or more above baseline, with a duration of 15 sec or more but less than 2 minutes from onset to return • Before 32 weeks, an acceleration has a peak of 10 bpm or more above baseline, with a duration of 10 seconds or more but less than 2 minutes from onset to return • Prolonged acceleration lasts 2 minutes or more but less than 10 minutes in duration • If an acceleration lasts 10 minutes or longer, it is a baseline change
Early deceleration	• Visually apparent usually symmetrical gradual decrease and return of the FHR associated with a uterine contraction • A gradual FHR decrease is defined as from the onset to the FHR nadir of 30 seconds or more • The decrease in FHR is calculated from the onset to the nadir of the deceleration • The nadir of the deceleration occurs at the same time as the peak of the contraction • In most cases the onset, nadir, and recovery of the deceleration are coincident with the beginning, peak, and ending of the contraction, respectively
Late deceleration	• Visually apparent usually symmetrical gradual decrease and return of the FHR associated with a uterine contraction • A gradual FHR decrease is defined as from the onset to the FHR nadir of 30 seconds or more • The decrease in FHR is calculated from the onset to the nadir of the deceleration • The deceleration is delayed in timing, with the nadir of the deceleration occurring after the peak of the contraction • In most cases the onset, nadir, and recovery of the deceleration occur after the beginning, peak, and ending of the contraction, respectively
Variable deceleration	• Visually apparent abrupt decrease in FHR • An abrupt FHR decrease is defined as from the onset of the deceleration to the beginning of the FHR nadir of less than 30 seconds • The decrease in FHR is calculated from the onset to the nadir of the deceleration • The decrease in FHR is 15 beats per minute or greater, lasting 15 seconds or greater, and less than 2 minutes in duration • When variable decelerations are associated with uterine contraction, their onset, depth, and duration commonly vary with successive uterine contractions
Prolonged deceleration	• Visually apparent decrease in the FHR below the baseline • Decrease in FHR from the baseline that is 15 beats per minute or more, and less than 2 minutes in duration • If a deceleration last 10 minutes or longer, it is a baseline change
Sinusoidal pattern	• Visually apparent, smooth, sine wave-line undulating pattern in FHR baseline with a cycle frequency of 3–5 per minute which persists for 20 minutes or more

FHR = fetal heart rate.

on the vertical axis represents 30 beats per minute (bpm). Measurement markers on this axis range from 30 to 240 bpm. Along the horizontal axis, the chart recorder moves at a speed of 3 cm/min. The time between each bold vertical line on this axis is 1 minute (see Fig. 24-4).

FHR patterns during labor are dynamic and can interchange rapidly. Although intrapartum evaluation of fetal heart tracings occur every 5 to 30 minutes, tracing interpretation should reflect a longitudinal assessment beyond the current 5- to 30-minute segment (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b; Robinson, 2008; Vintzileos, 2016). Thus, a full description should include an evaluation of changes or trends over time (Macones, 2008).

Baseline Fetal Heart Activity

This refers to FHR baseline characteristics apart from periodic accelerations or decelerations. Elements include *rate*, *variability*, and distinct FHR patterns such as *sinusoidal* or *saltatory*.

Rate

Beginning at 16 weeks' gestation, the heart rate drops approximately 1 bpm each week (Pillai, 1990; Serra 2009). This continues postnatally such that the average rate is 85 bpm by age 8 years (Tintinalli, 2016). This normal gradual slowing of the FHR is thought to correspond to maturation of parasympathetic (vagal) heart control (Renou, 1969).

The baseline FHR is the approximate mean rate during a 10-minute tracing segment and is rounded to increments of 5 bpm. In any 10-minute window, the minimum interpretable baseline duration must be at least 2 minutes—otherwise the baseline is considered *indeterminate*. For an indeterminate baseline, the previous 10-minute interval is used to determine the baseline heart rate.

If the baseline FHR is <110 bpm, it is termed *bradycardia*. If the baseline rate is >160 bpm, it is called *tachycardia*. The average FHR is considered the result of tonic balance between *accelerator* and *decelerator* influences on cardiac pacemaker cells. In this concept, the sympathetic system is the accelerator influence. The parasympathetic system is the decelerator factor and mediated by vagal slowing of heart rate (Dawes, 1985). Heart rate also is under the control of arterial chemoreceptors such that both hypoxia and hypercapnia can modulate rate. Prolonged hypoxia that is associated with a rising blood lactate level and severe metabolic acidemia induces an extended drop in heart rate (Thakor, 2009).

Bradycardia. In the third trimester, the normal mean baseline FHR ranges between 110 and 160 bpm. But, pragmatically, a rate between 100 and 119 bpm, in the absence of other FHR changes, usually is not representative of fetal compromise. Such mild bradycardias were observed in 2 percent of monitored pregnancies and averaged approximately 50 minutes in duration (Young, 1976). These low baseline heart rates have also been attributed to head compression from occiput posterior or transverse positions, particularly during second-stage labor.

However, fetal bradycardia may stem from congenital heart block or from fetal hypoxia due to maternal or fetal causes (Bravo-Valenzuela, 2018; Lepercq, 2021). For example, Figure 24-4 shows bradycardia in a fetus dying from placental abruption. Less often, sustained maternal hypothermia also can cause fetal bradycardia, but these uniquely involved fetuses apparently are not harmed by several hours of such bradycardia (Spires, 2020).

Tachycardia. This is defined as a baseline FHR >160 bpm. The most common explanation is maternal fever. In some cases, fetal tachycardia may precede overt maternal fever (Gilstrap, 1987). Fetal tachycardia caused by maternal infection typically is not associated with fetal compromise unless it is associated with fetal sepsis or with significant FHR decelerations.

Other causes of fetal tachycardia include fetal compromise, cardiac arrhythmias, and maternal administration of parasympathetic inhibiting (atropine) or sympathomimetic (terbutaline) drugs. Prompt treatment of the compromising event, such as alleviation of maternal fever or volume resuscitation, can result in fetal recovery. The key feature to distinguish fetal compromise in association with tachycardia seems to be concomitant FHR decelerations (Cahill, 2018).

Baseline Variability

This is an important index of cardiovascular function and reflects a sympathetic and parasympathetic "push and pull" mediated by the fetal sinoatrial node. This produces beat-to-beat fluctuations of the baseline FHR (Kozuma, 1997). *Variability* describes these changes during 1 minute, which modify the baseline's waviness (Fig. 24-5). Interpretation of variability is subjective and judges this waviness. The NICHD workshop defined *baseline variability* as irregular fluctuations in the baseline excluding accelerations and decelerations (Macones, 2008). They recommended the criteria shown in Figure 24-5 for quantification of variability. Normal variability shows oscillations that change 6 to 25 bpm. FHR variability increases with advancing gestational age (Serra, 2009; Shuffrey, 2019).

Increased Variability. Several physiological and pathological processes affect variability. Greater variability accompanies fetal breathing and body movements (Dawes, 1981; Zizzo, 2020). Shuffrey and colleagues (2020) showed the FHR had enhanced variation in state 4F (active awake state) compared with 1F (quiet state) and 2F (active state) (Chap. 20, p. 383). However, in one study of 390 fetuses, greater intrapartum variability was associated with abnormal fetal arterial cord blood gas measurements but without increased neonatal morbidity rates (Polnaszek, 2020).

Decreased Variability. *Absent variability* and *minimal variability* are defined as no baseline fluctuation or changes ≤5 bpm. These are shown in Figure 24-5, panels 1 and 2. Of greatest concern, diminished variability can be an ominous sign that indicates a seriously compromised fetus. According to Esplin (2020), metabolic acidemia depresses the fetal brainstem or heart to create the loss of variability. Thus, diminished variability, when it reflects fetal compromise, likely reflects acidemia rather than hypoxia. Severe maternal acidemia also can lower fetal variability, for example, in a mother with diabetic ketoacidosis.

Reduced baseline FHR variability is the single most reliable sign of fetal compromise. Moderate variability is associated with a normal umbilical cord pH in 98 percent of cases (Parer, 2006). Absent or minimal variability is associated with fetal acidemia, but it predicts an umbilical cord pH <7.15 in only 12 to 31 percent of cases (Parer, 2006; Williams, 2003). In a study of 2200 consecutive deliveries, authors concluded that variability by itself could not be used as the only indicator of fetal well-being (Samueloff, 1994). Comorbid fetal tachycardia or FHR decelerations also may help predict fetal acidemia (Esplin, 2020; Vintzileos, 2016).

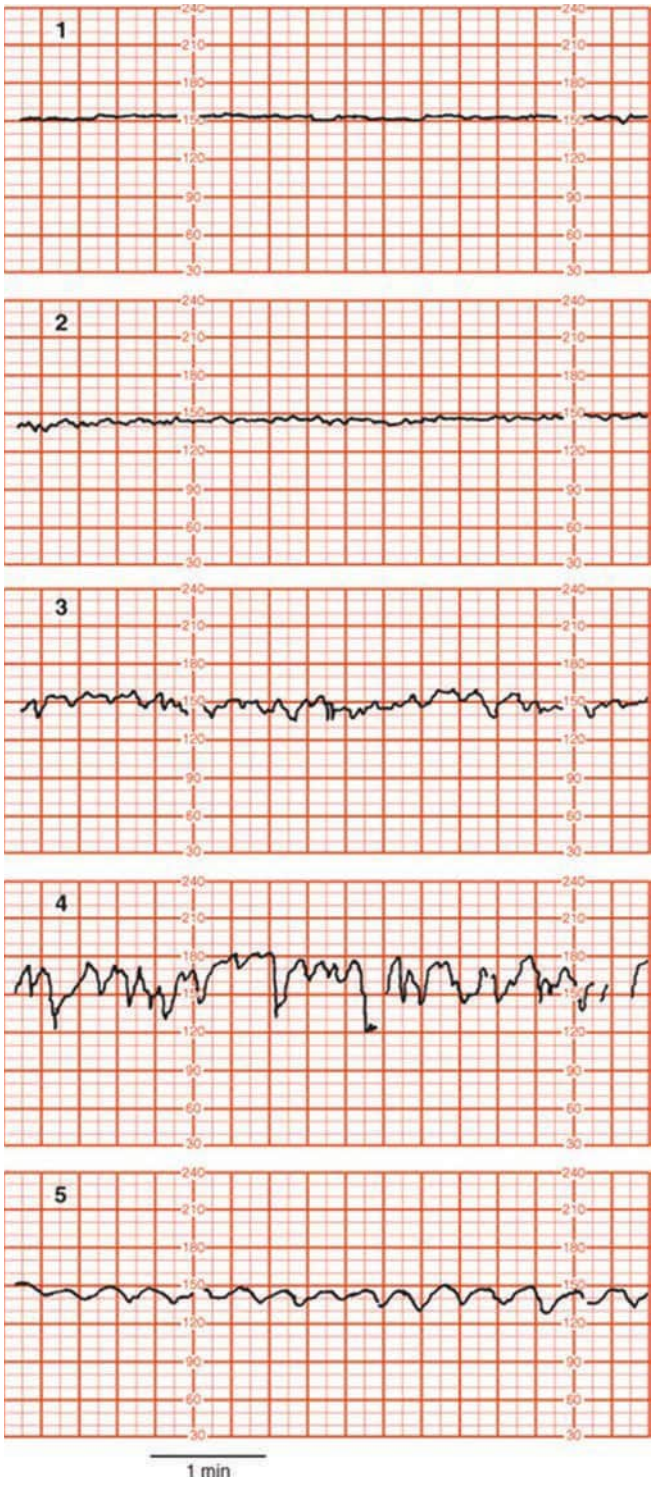


FIGURE 24-5 Baseline fetal heart rate variability shown in the following five panels. **1.** Undetectable, absent variability. **2.** Minimal variability, ≤5 bpm. **3.** Moderate (normal) variability, 6 to 25 bpm. **4.** Marked variability, >25 bpm. **5.** Sinusoidal pattern. This differs from variability in that it has a smooth, sinelike pattern of regular fluctuation and is excluded in the definition of fetal heart rate variability.

Another common cause of diminished variability is administration of some analgesic drugs during labor (Chap. 25, p. 477). These can depress the central nervous system and include narcotics, barbiturates, phenothiazines, tranquilizers, and general anesthetics. As one specific example, variability regularly diminishes within 5 to 10 minutes following intravenous (IV) meperidine administration, and the effects may last 60 minutes or longer (Hill, 2003; Petrie, 1993). IV butorphanol has similar effects (Schucker, 1996). And, chronically administered buprenorphine suppresses FHR and movement (Jansson, 2017). Corticosteroids also decrease fetal movement and thereby dampen variability (Noben, 2019).

Magnesium sulfate can diminish variability and is widely used in the United States for fetal neuroprotection, tocolysis, and seizure prophylaxis in preeclampsia. In a study of nearly 250 term gestations, its administration led to decreased variability but without evidence of adverse neonatal effects (Duffy, 2012). Others echo these findings (Nensi, 2014; Verdurmen, 2017).

In sum, variability is affected by fetal physiology, and its meaning differs depending on clinical setting. A decrease in variability but without decelerations is unlikely to reflect fetal hypoxia (Parer, 2006). A persistently flat FHR baseline—absent variability—within the normal baseline rate range and without decelerations may reflect a prior fetal insult that has resulted in neurological damage (Freeman, 2003).

Cardiac Arrhythmia

When fetal cardiac arrhythmias are first suspected using electronic monitoring, findings can include baseline bradycardia, tachycardia, or most commonly in our experience, *abrupt baseline spiking* (see Fig. 24-3). An arrhythmia can only be documented, practically speaking, when scalp electrodes are used. Some fetal monitors can be adapted to output the scalp electrode signals into an ECG recorder. Because only a single lead is obtained, analysis and interpretation of rhythm and rate disturbances are severely limited.

In one study, rate and rhythm disturbances in 934 normal pregnancies were evaluated between 30 and 40 weeks' gestation. Arrhythmias, episodes of bradycardia <100 bpm, or tachycardia >180 bpm were encountered in 3 percent (Southall, 1980). Most supraventricular arrhythmias carry little significance during labor unless fetal heart failure, as evidenced by hydrops, is coexistent. Many supraventricular arrhythmias disappear in the immediate neonatal period, although some are associated with structural cardiac defects (Api, 2008). Intermittent baseline bradycardia is frequently due to congenital heart block. Conduction defects, most often complete atrioventricular (AV) block, usually are found in association with maternal connective tissue diseases (Chap. 62, p. 1113). Antepartum evaluation of the fetus with an identified arrhythmia and treatment options are discussed in Chapter 19 (p. 368).

Most fetal arrhythmias without comorbid fetal hydrops are inconsequential during labor, but they may hinder interpretation of FHR tracings and thereby necessitate cesarean delivery. Sonographic evaluation of fetal anatomy and echocardiography can be useful. Generally, without evidence of fetal hydrops, neonatal outcome is not measurably improved by pregnancy intervention. At Parkland Hospital, intrapartum fetal cardiac arrhythmias, especially those associated with clear amnionic fluid, are typically managed conservatively.

Sinusoidal Heart Rate

A sinusoidal baseline is one with a sine wave–like undulating pattern with a frequency of 3 to 5 cycles per minute for at least 20 minutes. A true sinusoidal pattern such as that shown in panel 5 of Figure 24-5 can be observed with fetal intracranial hemorrhage, severe fetal asphyxia, or severe fetal anemia. The last may stem from alloimmunization, fetomaternal hemorrhage, twin-twin transfusion syndrome, fetal parvoviral infection, or vasa previa with bleeding. The pathophysiology of sinusoidal patterns is unclear, in part due to varying definitions. One group proposed that the pattern relates to fetal arterial blood pressure and oscillations in the baroreceptor-chemoreceptor feedback mechanism (Ikeda, 1999). Modanlou (1982, 2004) proposed adoption of a strict definition for true sinusoidal FHR that is most likely ominous. This criteria eliminates the influence of maternal medications.

1. Stable baseline FHR of 120 to 160 bpm with regular oscillations
2. Amplitude of 5 to 15 bpm (rarely greater)
3. 2 to 5 cycles per minute
4. Absent variability and accelerations
5. Oscillation of the sinusoidal waveform above or below a baseline
6. No concurrent drugs such as narcotics

Other investigators classify sinusoidal heart rate patterns into mild—amplitude 5 to 15 bpm; intermediate—16 to 24 bpm; and major—≥25 bpm. Increasing amplitude correlates with advancing fetal risk (Murphy, 1991; Neesham, 1993).

Importantly, insignificant sinusoidal patterns have been reported following administration of meperidine, morphine, alphaprodine, and butorphanol (Angel, 1984; Egley, 1991; Epstein, 1982). When due to narcotics, this pattern has a sine frequency of 6 cycles per minute. A sinusoidal pattern also has been described with chorioamnionitis, fetal distress, and umbilical cord occlusion (Murphy, 1991). Investigators have concluded that intrapartum sinusoidal fetal heart patterns are not generally associated with fetal compromise (Johnson, 1981; Young, 1980a). Thus, management is usually dictated by the clinical setting.

Pseudosinusoidal describes intrapartum sine wave–like baseline variation coupled with periods of acceleration. In one study, this pattern was seen in 15 percent of monitored labors (Murphy, 1991). Mild pseudosinusoidal patterns were associated with use of meperidine and epidural analgesia. Intermediate pseudosinusoidal patterns were linked to fetal sucking or transient episodes of fetal hypoxia caused by umbilical cord compression. In another study, 4 percent of fetuses demonstrated sinusoidal patterns transiently during normal labor (Egley, 1991). These authors noted patterns lasting for 90 minutes in some cases.

Periodic Fetal Heart Rate Changes

These refer to visually apparent deviations from baseline. *Acceleration* refers to a rise in FHR above the baseline, and *deceleration* is a drop below the baseline rate. For the latter, terms used in the United States are *early, late,* or *variable* and refer to the temporal relationship between the deceleration and contractions. Waveform shapes also aid pattern recognition and are described subsequently. The NICHD Workshop (2008) considered decelerations to be *recurrent* if they accompanied ≥50 percent of contractions in any 20-minute period.

Accelerations

These are an abrupt FHR increase above the baseline and are defined by the onset-to-peak rise within 30 seconds (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). At ≥32 weeks' gestation, an *acceleration* is one that peaks at a point ≥15 bpm above baseline. Its duration is ≥15 seconds but <2 minutes from onset to baseline return (see Table 24-1). Before 32 weeks, a peak ≥10 bpm and duration lasting 10 seconds to 2 minutes is considered normal. *Prolonged acceleration* is one lasting ≥2 minutes but <10 minutes.

Accelerations occur antepartum and intrapartum. Proposed mechanisms for intrapartum accelerations include fetal movement, stimulation by uterine contractions, umbilical cord occlusion, fetal scalp stimulation, scalp blood sampling, and acoustic stimulation. Accelerations are common during labor. These are virtually always reassuring and almost always confirm that the fetus is not acidemic at that moment (Berkus, 1999).

Accelerations reflect intact neurohormonal cardiovascular control mechanisms linked to fetal behavioral states. In one analysis of FHR tracings in nearly 2000 fetuses, 99.8 percent showed sporadic accelerations during labor. FHR accelerations during the first or last 30 minutes of labor were a favorable sign for fetal well-being (Krebs, 1982). Their absence during labor, however, is not necessarily an unfavorable sign unless coincidental with other nonreassuring changes. The chance of acidemia in the fetus that fails to respond to stimulation despite an otherwise nonreassuring pattern approximates 50 percent (Clark, 1984; Smith, 1986).

Early Deceleration

This physiological response shows a gradual FHR decline and then return to baseline that mirrors the contraction (Fig. 24-6). Etiologically, head compression and dural stimulation probably cause vagal nerve activation, which mediates the FHR deceleration (Paul, 1964). Freeman and associates (2003) defined early decelerations as those generally seen in active labor between 4 and 7 cm cervical dilation. In their definition, the degree of deceleration is generally proportional to the contraction strength and rarely falls below 100 to 110 bpm or 20 to 30 bpm below baseline. These decelerations are common during active labor and not associated with tachycardia, loss of variability, or other FHR changes. Early decelerations are considered benign

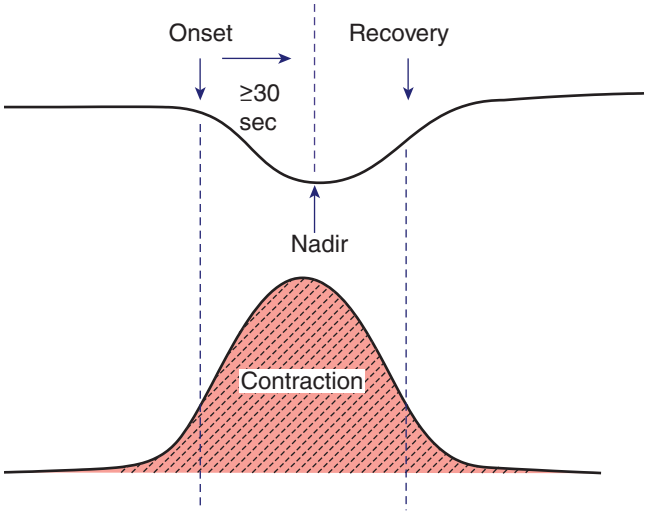


FIGURE 24-6 An early fetal heart rate deceleration characteristically shows a gradual decline and recovery in the heart rate that coincide with the onset and recovery of the contraction. The nadir of the deceleration is ≥30 seconds after the deceleration onset.

and not associated with fetal hypoxia, acidemia, or low Apgar scores.

Late Deceleration

This deceleration is a smooth, gradual, symmetrical decline in the FHR that begins at or after the contraction peak and returns to baseline only after the contraction has ended. It reaches its nadir within 30 seconds of its onset (Fig. 24-7). Typically, a late deceleration's depth is <10 to 20 bpm below baseline. These usually are not accompanied by accelerations.

Late decelerations often reflect poor uterine perfusion or placental dysfunction. In one animal study, uteroplacental perfusion was intentionally compromised, and the lag between contraction onset and late deceleration onset was directly related to basal fetal oxygenation (Myers, 1973). The lower the fetal Po_2 before contractions, the shorter the lag to the late deceleration's onset. This lag reflects the time necessary for the fetal Po_2 to fall below a critical level necessary to stimulate arterial chemoreceptors, which mediate the decelerations.

Late decelerations are the first FHR consequence of uteroplacental-induced hypoxia. Fetal acidemia develops after frequent or prolonged periods of hypoxia. However, late decelerations alone do not predict fetal acidemia (Jia, 2021). Instead, late decelerations plus decreased variability, which itself is an indicator of less activity in the cardioregulatory center of the medulla, are more predictive of fetal acidemia and neonatal morbidity (Cahill, 2018; Holzmann, 2015). Cahill and coworkers (2018) calculated the total area within the below-baseline curves of decelerations. They found that increasing area was more predictive of fetal acidemia than other FHR characteristics.

Generally, any process that produces maternal hypotension, excessive uterine activity, or placental dysfunction can induce late decelerations. The two most common are hypotension from epidural analgesia and uterine hyperactivity from oxytocin stimulation. Maternal hypertension, diabetes, and collagen vascular disorders can cause chronic placental dysfunction. Placental abruption can acutely produce late decelerations.

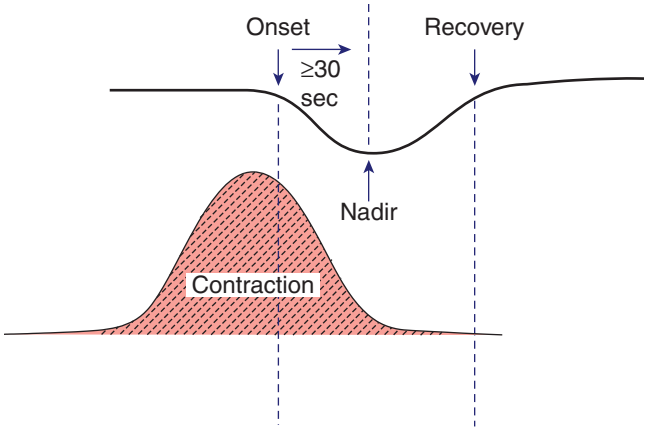


FIGURE 24-7 A late fetal heart rate deceleration characteristically shows a gradual decline in the heart rate that starts at or after the contraction's peak and recovers after the end of the contraction. The deceleration nadir occurs ≥30 seconds after the deceleration's onset.

Variable Deceleration

This is the most frequent deceleration pattern encountered during labor and is attributed to umbilical cord occlusion. In a study of more than 7000 tracings, variable decelerations were identified in 40 percent when labor had progressed to 5 cm dilation and in 83 percent by the end of first-stage labor (Melchior, 1985). The slope of FHR change is abrupt and erratic, giving the waveform its jagged shape (Fig. 24-8). A variable deceleration is defined as a drop in the FHR that begins with the contraction's onset and reaches a nadir in <30 seconds. The deceleration lasts between 15 seconds and 2 minutes, and its depth is ≥15 bpm in amplitude. The onset of deceleration typically varies with successive contractions.

Etiologically, variable deceleration often reflects some degree of umbilical cord occlusion. In one animal study, Hon (1959)

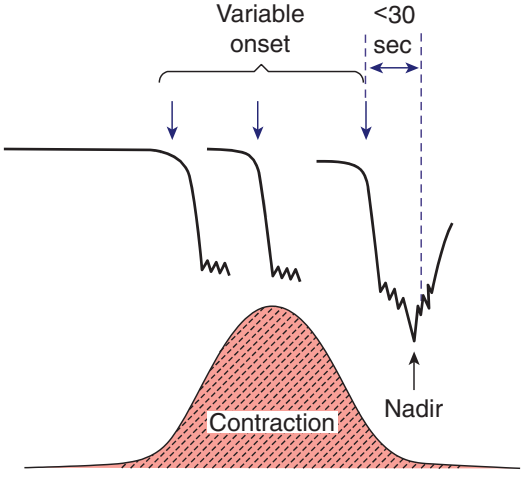


FIGURE 24-8 A variable fetal heart rate deceleration characteristically shows an abrupt drop in the heart rate, and its onset commonly varies with successive contractions. The deceleration depth measures ≥15 bpm, lasts ≥15 seconds, and has an onset-to-nadir phase <30 seconds. Its total duration is <2 minutes.

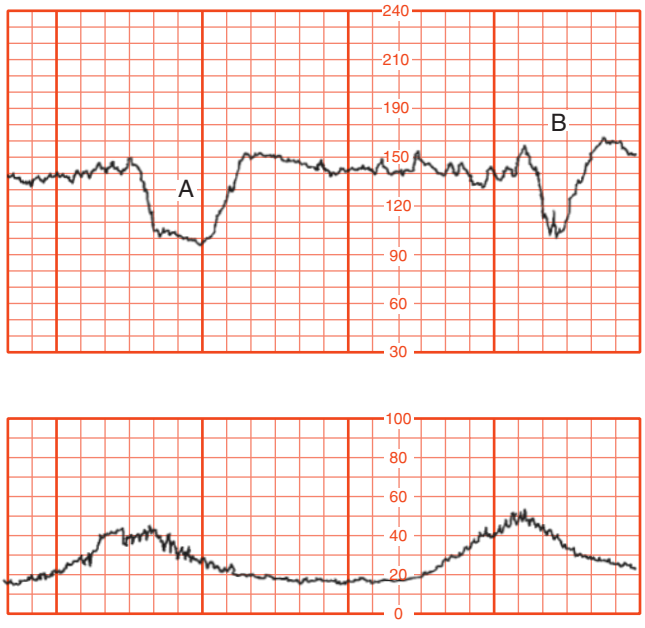


FIGURE 24-9 Variable fetal heart rate decelerations. Deceleration (*B*) exhibits "shoulders" of acceleration compared with deceleration (*A*).

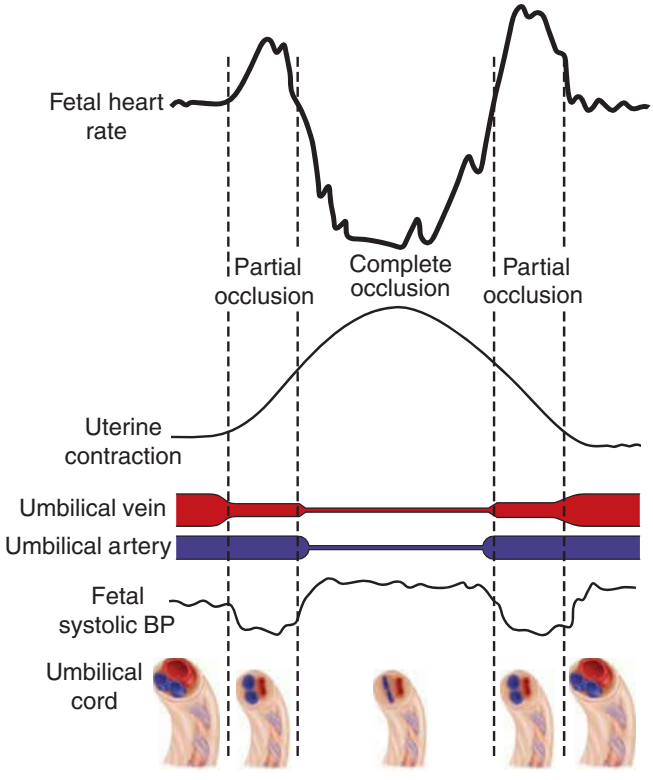


FIGURE 24-10 Schematic representation of the fetal heart rate effects with partial and complete umbilical cord occlusion. Uterine pressures generated early in a contraction cause cord compression predominantly of the thin-walled umbilical vein. The resulting decrease in fetal cardiac output leads to an initial compensatory rise in fetal heart rate. As cord compression intensifies, umbilical arteries are then also compressed. The resulting rise in fetal systolic blood pressure leads to a vagal-mediated fetal heart rate deceleration. As the contraction abates and compression is relieved first on the umbilical arteries, elevated fetal systolic blood pressures drop and the deceleration resolves. A final increase in fetal heart rate is seen as a result of persistent umbilical vein occlusion. With completion of the uterine contraction and cord compression, the fetal heart rate returns to baseline. BP = blood pressure.

assessed the effects of umbilical cord compression on FHR. He found lengthening and deepening of the deceleration curve with longer occlusion times. In another study, variable decelerations in fetal lambs occurred only after umbilical blood flow was reduced by at least 50 percent (Itskovitz, 1983).

Two patterns of variable decelerations are shown in Figure 24-9. The deceleration denoted by "A" is very much like that seen with complete umbilical cord occlusion in experimental animals. However, deceleration "B" differs and displays an acceleration before and after the deceleration component. Lee and coworkers (1975) proposed that this form was caused by differing degrees of cord occlusion. In this scheme, occlusion of only the vein reduces fetal blood return and thereby triggers a baroreceptor-mediated acceleration. With increasing intrauterine pressure and subsequent complete cord occlusion, fetal systemic hypertension develops due to obstructed umbilical artery flow. This stimulates a baroreceptor-mediated deceleration. Presumably, the aftercoming acceleration represents the same events occurring in reverse (Fig. 24-10) (Lee, 1975). Ball and Parer (1992) concluded that variable decelerations are mediated vagally and that the vagal response may be due to chemoreceptor or baroreceptor activity or both. Partial or complete cord occlusion produces an increase in afterload (baroreceptor) and a drop in fetal arterial oxygen content (chemoreceptor). Both result in vagal activity leading to deceleration.

Thus, variable decelerations represent FHR reflexes that reflect either blood pressure changes due to interruption of umbilical flow or changes in oxygenation. It is likely that most fetuses have experienced brief but recurrent periods of hypoxia due to umbilical cord compression during gestation. The great dilemma for the obstetrician in managing variable FHR decelerations is determining when variable decelerations are pathological. According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a), recurrent variable decelerations with minimal to moderate variability are *indeterminate*, whereas those with absent variability are *abnormal*.

A *saltatory* FHR baseline is another pattern linked to umbilical cord complications during labor (Fig. 24-11) (Hammacher, 1968). The pattern is rapidly recurring couplets of acceleration and deceleration causing relatively large oscillations of the FHR baseline. We also observed a relationship between cord occlusion and the saltatory pattern in postterm pregnancies (Leveno, 1984). In the absence of other FHR findings, this pattern does not signal fetal compromise.

Prolonged Deceleration

This pattern is defined as an isolated deceleration with a depth >15 bpm and length ≥2 minutes but <10 minutes from onset to return to baseline (Fig. 24-12). Prolonged decelerations are difficult to interpret because they are seen in many different clinical situations. Frequent causes are cervical examination, uterine hyperactivity, cord entanglement, and maternal supine hypotension. Epidural, spinal, or

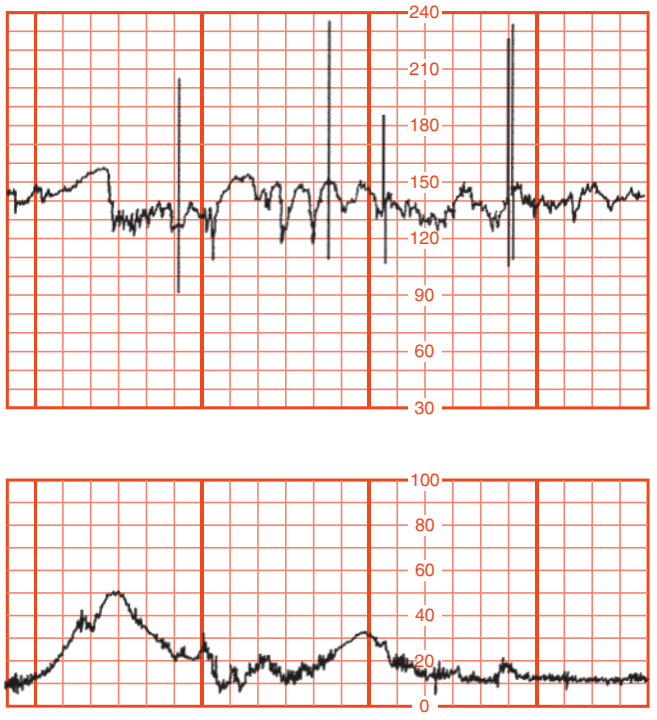


FIGURE 24-11 Saltatory baseline fetal heart rate showing rapidly recurring couplets of acceleration combined with deceleration.

paracervical analgesia may induce a prolonged deceleration (Eberle, 1998). Of women given epidural analgesia during labor in one analysis at Parkland Hospital, prolonged deceleration was noted in 1 percent (Hill, 2003). Other causes include placental abruption, umbilical cord knots or prolapse, maternal hypoperfusion or hypoxia from any cause, maternal seizures, fetal scalp-electrode application, impending birth, or maternal Valsalva maneuver.

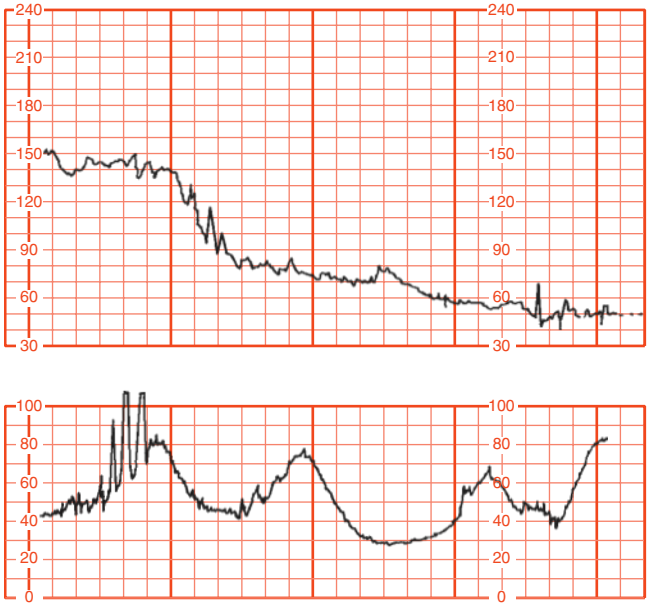


FIGURE 24-12 Prolonged fetal heart rate deceleration due to uterine hyperactivity. Approximately 3 minutes of the tracing are shown, but the fetal heart rate returned to normal after uterine hypertonus resolved. Vaginal delivery later ensued.

The placenta can effectively resuscitate the fetus if the original insult does not recur immediately. Occasionally, such self-limited prolonged decelerations are followed by loss of variability, baseline tachycardia, and even a period of late decelerations. These all resolve as the fetus recovers. Freeman and colleagues (2003) emphasize that the fetus may die during prolonged decelerations. Thus, management of prolonged decelerations can be extremely tenuous. Management of isolated prolonged decelerations is based on bedside clinical judgment, which inevitably will sometimes be imperfect given the unpredictability of these decelerations.

Fetal Heart Rate Patterns During Second-stage Labor

Decelerations are virtually ubiquitous during the second-stage labor. In one study, only 1.4 percent of more than 7000 deliveries lacked decelerations during this stage (Melchior, 1985). Both cord and fetal head compressions are implicated as causes of decelerations and of baseline bradycardia in this stage. In one series, profound, prolonged FHR deceleration in the 10 minutes preceding vaginal delivery was associated with intervention and good fetal outcomes (Boehm, 1975). In a later extension of this series, similarly prolonged second-stage decelerations were also associated with a stillbirth and neonatal death (Herbert, 1981). These experiences attest to the unpredictability of the FHR during second-stage labor.

In the analysis noted earlier by Cahill and associates (2018), an increasing total deceleration area found in the final 120 minutes prior to delivery was most predictive of fetal acidemia. A combination of deceleration area plus a 10-minute period of tachycardia was most predictive of neonatal morbidity. Others have reported similar findings (Krebs, 1981; Picquard, 1988). Gull and colleagues (1996) observed that abrupt FHR decelerations to <100 bpm associated with lost variability for ≥4 minutes predicted fetal acidemia. Thus, second-stage decelerations plus an abnormal FHR baseline (bradycardia or tachycardia and/or absent variability) are associated with greater risk for fetal compromise (Fig. 24-13).

Computerized Interpretation

FHR pattern interpretations are subjective. Thus, the potential for computer assistance to enhance the precision of identifying abnormal patterns appeared promising. The INFANT Collaborative Group (2017) studied whether the addition of computer-based decision-support software for FHR pattern interpretation lowered the number of poor neonatal outcomes. In this large trial, women were randomly assigned to computer-assisted interpretation or to conventional clinical interpretation. Rates of adverse perinatal outcomes that included intrapartum stillbirth, early neonatal death, and neonatal encephalopathy were not improved, and a subset showed no difference in neurological development at 2 years. Cesarean delivery rates were similar in both groups. In a subsequent analysis of 71 adverse outcomes, computer interpretation of FHR tracings was deemed completely valid in only 34 percent of cases. Computer analysis missed a significant portion of decelerations, reduced variability, and tachysystole (Steer, 2019).

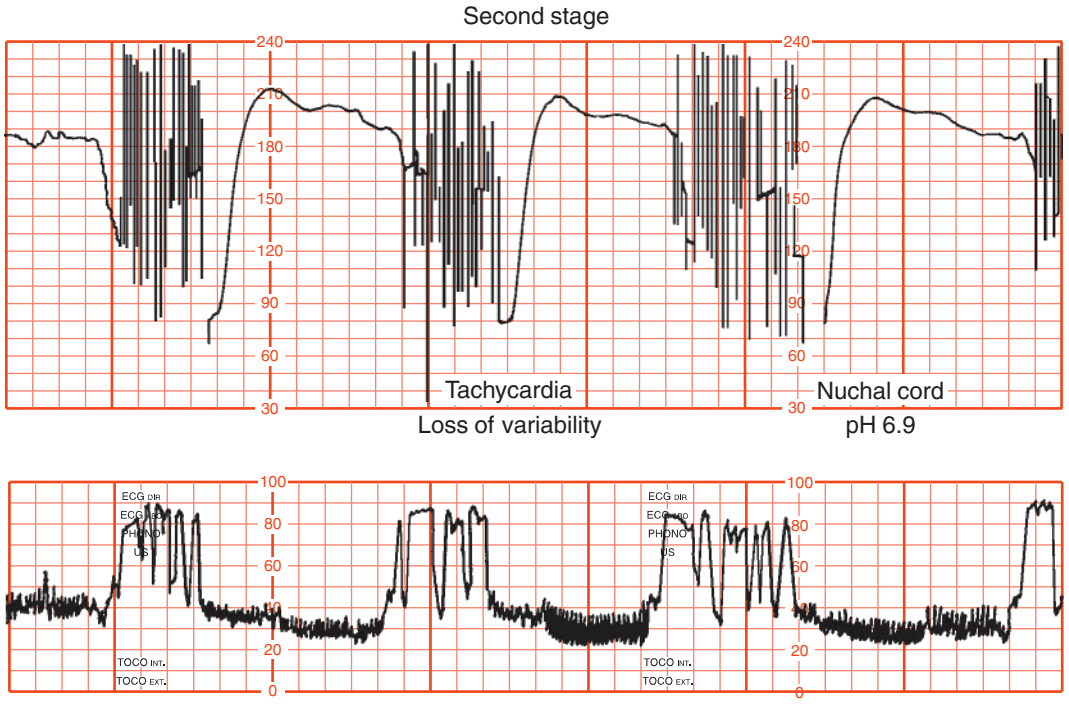


FIGURE 24-13 Cord-compression fetal heart rate decelerations in second-stage labor associated with tachycardia and loss of variability. The umbilical cord arterial pH was 6.9.

OTHER INTRAPARTUM ASSESSMENT TECHNIQUES

Fetal Scalp Blood Sampling

According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a), measurements of the pH in capillary scalp blood may help identify the fetus in serious distress. However, this group also emphasizes that neither normal nor abnormal scalp pH results accurately predict neonatal outcome. Although used in other countries, the procedure is not available at most hospitals in the United States.

With sampling, an illuminated endoscope is inserted through the dilated cervix after membrane rupture and is pressed firmly against the fetal scalp. The skin is wiped clean with a cotton swab and coated with a silicone gel, which allows fetal blood to accumulate as discrete globules. An incision is made through the fetal scalp to a depth of 2 mm with a special blade on a long handle. As a drop of blood forms on the surface, it is immediately collected into a heparinized glass capillary tube. The blood pH is measured promptly.

The pH of fetal capillary scalp blood is usually lower than that of umbilical venous blood and approaches that of umbilical arterial blood. In one algorithm, if the pH is ≥7.25, labor is observed, and if between 7.20 and 7.25, the pH measurement is repeated within 30 minutes (Zalar, 1979). If the pH is <7.20, another scalp blood sample is collected immediately, and delivery is performed promptly if the low pH level is confirmed. Otherwise, labor is allowed to continue, and scalp blood samples are repeated periodically.

The only benefits reported for scalp blood pH testing are fewer cesarean deliveries for fetal distress (Young, 1980b). However, Goodwin and coworkers (1994) showed a decrease in the scalp pH sampling rate from approximately 1.8 percent in the mid-1980s to 0.03 percent by 1992. This drop in sampling rate was not associated with a higher cesarean delivery rate for fetal distress. They concluded that scalp blood pH sampling was unnecessary.

Kruger and colleagues (1999) have assessed fetal scalp blood lactate concentration as an adjunct to pH. In one large randomized study, fetuses received scalp blood pH analysis or scalp blood lactate analysis (Wiberg-Itzel, 2008). The authors found either to be equivalent in predicting fetal acidemia. In a secondary analysis, prediction of low Apgar scores or admission to the neonatal intensive care unit did not differ between lactate and pH groups (Stal, 2020). However, cesarean delivery rates were higher in the lactate group.

Scalp Stimulation

Clark and coworkers (1984) have suggested that fetal scalp stimulation is an alternative to scalp blood sampling. This proposal stemmed from the observation that FHR acceleration followed pinching the fetal scalp with an Allis clamp just before obtaining scalp blood and was invariably associated with a normal pH level. However, failure to provoke acceleration was not uniformly predictive of fetal acidemia. In another study of 58 cases in which the FHR accelerated >10 bpm after 15 seconds of digital scalp stroking, 100 percent had a scalp blood pH >7.20 (Elimian, 1997). However, without an acceleration, only 30 percent had a scalp blood pH >7.20. Authors of a recent prospective study concluded that scalp stimulation was a reliable alternative to fetal scalp blood pH determination (Tahir Mahmood, 2018). In our practice, scalp stimulation is

often one element of intrapartum assessment of the fetus with a category II tracing.

Vibroacoustic Stimulation

FHR acceleration in response to vibroacoustic stimulation is another substitute for fetal scalp blood sampling (Edersheim, 1987). The technique uses an electronic artificial larynx placed 1 cm from or directly onto the maternal abdomen (Chap. 20, p. 387). Response to vibroacoustic stimulation is considered normal if the FHR accelerates within 15 seconds after the stimulus and with prolonged fetal movements (Sherer, 1994).

Lin and colleagues (2001) prospectively studied vibroacoustic stimulation in 113 women in labor with either moderate to severe variable or late FHR decelerations. They concluded that this technique effectively predicts fetal acidosis in cases with variable decelerations. In the setting of late decelerations, its prediction of fetal acidosis, however, is limited. Other authors found vibroacoustic stimulation in second-stage labor did not predict neonatal outcome or enhance labor management (Anyaegbunam, 1994).

Skupski and coworkers (2002) performed a metaanalysis of reports on intrapartum fetal stimulation tests. These included fetal scalp puncture for blood pH testing, fetal scalp pinching, vibroacoustic stimulation, and digital stroking of the fetal scalp. Results were similar for all four methods. These authors concluded that intrapartum stimulation tests were useful to exclude fetal acidemia. They cautioned, however, that these tests are "less than perfect."

Fetal Pulse Oximetry

Using technology similar to that of adult pulse oximetry, this tool measures fetal oxyhemoglobin saturation once membranes are ruptured. A unique padlike sensor is inserted through the cervix and positioned against the fetal face. Using fetal pulse oximetry, the lower limit for normal fetal oxygen saturation is generally considered to be 30 percent (Gorenberg, 2003; Stiller, 2002). However, when measured in umbilical arterial blood, fetal oxygen saturation normally varies greatly.

In one large trial of this technology, women with term fetuses that developed abnormal FHR patterns were assigned to conventional FHR monitoring alone or FHR monitoring plus continuous fetal pulse oximetry (Garite, 2000). The use of fetal pulse oximetry significantly reduced the cesarean delivery rate for nonreassuring fetal status from 10.2 to 4.5 percent. No neonatal benefits or adverse effects were associated with fetal pulse oximetry. Based on these observations, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved marketing of the Nellcor N-400 Fetal Oxygen Monitoring System. However, three subsequent trials compared fetal pulse oximetry with standard care. In each, neonatal outcomes were similar between study arms. In one, the addition of oximetry significantly reduced cesarean delivery rates for fetal indications (East, 2006). However, two studies found no difference in cesarean delivery rates between the two study arms (Bloom, 2006; Klauser, 2005). Because of these findings, in 2005, the manufacturer discontinued device sales in the United States.

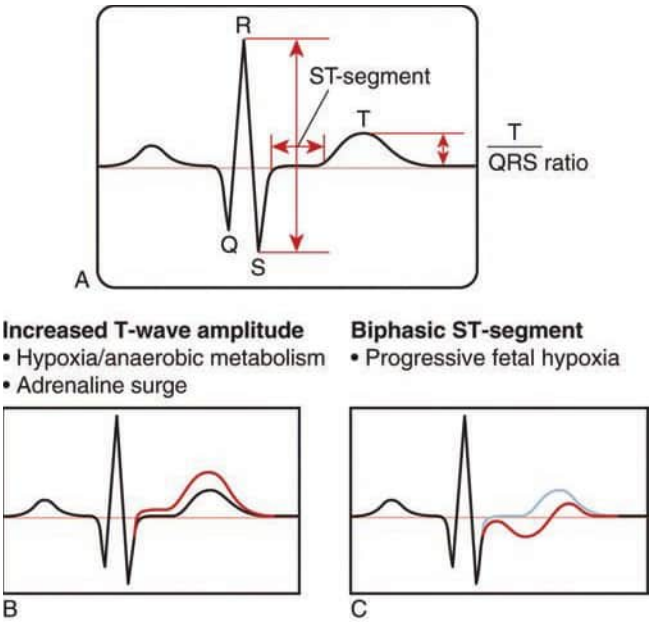


FIGURE 24-14 A. Generation of T:QRS ratio from a normal ST segment. **B.** ST-segment elevation in hypoxic conditions. **C.** Biphasic ST-segment waveform with progressive fetal hypoxia.

Fetal Electrocardiography

As fetal hypoxia worsens, the fetal ECG changes. Namely, the mature fetus with hypoxemia develops an elevated ST segment and a progressive rise in the T-wave height that can be expressed as a T:QRS ratio (Fig. 24-14) (Devoe, 2006). Increasing T:QRS ratios are thought to reflect fetal cardiac ability to adapt to hypoxia and appear before neurological damage. Further worsening of hypoxia then leads to progressively negative ST-segment deflection that creates a biphasic form. It is reasonable to consider that ST-segment abnormalities might occur late in the course of fetal compromise. Indeed, it has been hypothesized that ST-segment changes reflect myocardial tissue hypoxia.

Because of these findings, these parameters have been evaluated as an adjunct to conventional fetal monitoring. The technique requires internal FHR monitoring and special equipment to process the fetal ECG. In 2005, the manufacturer—Neoventa Medical—received FDA approval for their ST-segment analysis program named the *STAN system*.

Several studies have evaluated ST-segment changes with fetal monitoring. In one randomized trial of 2400 pregnancies, neonatal outcomes were not improved compared with those in which conventional FHR monitoring alone was used (Westgate, 1993). However, the cesarean delivery rate for fetal distress declined in those with ST-segment analysis. Subsequent studies revealed conflicting data regarding lower rates of operative delivery, fetal acidemia, and neonatal encephalopathy (Amer-Wåhlin, 2001; Becker, 2012; Doria, 2007).

In a trial by the NICHD, 5532 women were randomly assigned to an ST-segment analysis and 5576 to standard intrapartum management. The primary outcome was a composite of one or more of seven events associated with fetal compromise (Belfort, 2015). In the ST-segment analysis group, clinician

actions were directed by predetermined guidelines. These stipulated that intervention should be withheld, that is, expectant management adopted, for at least 60 minutes despite the presence of minimal variability; variable decelerations lasting ≥60 seconds or dropping to a level ≥60 bpm; recurrent late decelerations; or prolonged decelerations lasting >2 minutes, so long as no ST-segment abnormality was present. These guidelines did not pertain to the standard group. Notably, in the ST-segment analysis group, 55 (20 percent) of the 287 cesarean deliveries performed for fetal indications were done even though trial guidelines indicated that labor could continue. In these cases, physicians likely perceived the FHR patterns to reflect those formerly accepted in their usual practice as nonreassuring. These results showed that STAN system had no effect on neonatal outcome or cesarean delivery rates (Belfort, 2015). A subsequent systematic review reached similar conclusions (Neilson, 2015). These results have essentially eliminated use of ST-segment analysis in the United States, but it is still used in Europe.

NONREASSURING FETAL STATUS

The term *fetal distress* is too broad and vague to be applied with any precision to clinical situations (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019d). Uncertainty regarding the diagnosis based on FHR pattern interpretation has given rise to descriptions such as *reassuring* or *nonreassuring*. The former suggests confidence in the health of the fetus. In contrast, a nonreassuring designation suggests inability to remove doubt. However, these assessments are subjective judgments that are inevitably imperfect and must be recognized as such. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019d) recommends use of these terms followed by a description of the findings.

The difficulty in assigning a nonreassuring label to FHR patterns stems in part from the fact that these patterns reflect fetal physiology more so than pathology. Heart rate control stems from interconnected mechanisms that depend on blood flow and oxygenation. Moreover, these mechanisms are influenced by the preexisting state of fetal oxygenation. Chronic placental insufficiency is one example. Thus, normal labor is a process of repeated fetal hypoxic events and can infrequently lead to significant acidemia (Rogers, 1998).

Diagnosis

Identification of nonreassuring fetal status based on FHR patterns is imprecise. One study of interobserver agreement with FHR pattern interpretation found that consensus varied (Ayres-de-Campos, 1999). Specifically, experts agreed on 62 percent of normal patterns, 42 percent of suspicious patterns, and only 25 percent of pathological patterns. In another study, 17 experts reviewed 50 tracings on two occasions, at least 1 month apart. Approximately 20 percent changed their own interpretations, and approximately 25 percent did not agree with the interpretations of their colleagues (Keith, 1995).

In an attempt to resolve this imprecision, the NICHD recommended a three-tier system for FHR pattern classification (Table 24-2). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) has recommended its use. To assess this tiered system, Jackson and associates (2011) studied 48,444 women in labor and found that category I patterns were observed in 99.5 percent of tracings. Category II patterns were found in 84.1 percent, and category III patterns were seen in 0.1 percent

TABLE 24-2. Three-Tier Fetal Heart Rate Interpretation System

Category I—Normal

Include all of the following:

- Baseline rate: 110–160 bpm
- Baseline FHR variability: moderate
- Late or variable decelerations: absent
- Early decelerations: present or absent
- Accelerations: present or absent

Category II—Indeterminate

Include all FHR tracings not categorized as category I or III.

Category II tracings may represent an appreciable fraction of those encountered in clinical care. Examples include any of the following:

Baseline rate

- Bradycardia not accompanied by absent baseline variability
- Tachycardia

Baseline FHR variability

- Minimal baseline variability
- Absent baseline variability not accompanied by recurrent decelerations
- Marked baseline variability

Accelerations

- Absence of induced accelerations after fetal stimulation

Periodic or episodic decelerations

- Recurrent variable decelerations accompanied by minimal or moderate baseline variability
- Prolonged deceleration ≥2 min but <10 min
- Recurrent late decelerations with moderate baseline variability
- Variable decelerations with other characteristics, such as slow return to baseline, "overshoots," or "shoulders"

Category III—Abnormal

Include either:

- Absent baseline FHR variability and any of the following:
  Recurrent late decelerations
  Recurrent variable decelerations
  Bradycardia
- Sinusoidal pattern

bpm = beats per minute; FHR = fetal heart rate.
Reproduced with permission from Macones GA, Hankins GD, Spong CY, et al: The 2008 National Institute of Child Health and Human Development workshop report on electronic fetal monitoring: update on definitions, interpretation, and research guidelines, Obstet Gynecol. 2008 Sep;112(3):661–666.

(54 women). During labor, 84 percent of women had a mix of categories. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the American Academy of Pediatrics (2019d) has concluded that a category I or II tracing with a 5-minute Apgar score >7 or with normal arterial blood acid–base values is not consistent with an acute hypoxic-ischemic event.

Other studies have evaluated this three-tiered system. In one, the incidence of umbilical cord acidemia (pH ≤7.10) was correlated retrospectively with FHR characteristics during the 30 minutes preceding delivery. None of the three categories demonstrated a significant association with cord blood acidemia (Cahill, 2012). Sholapurkar (2012) has challenged the validity of the three-tier system because most abnormal FHR patterns fall into the indeterminate category II. It was suggested that this resulted from most FHR decelerations being inappropriately classified as *variable* and attributed to cord compression.

Parer and King (2010) compared this situation in the United States with that of other countries in which a consensus on classification and management has been reached by their professional societies. These authors note that the NICHD three-tier system is inadequate because category II contains a vast heterogenous mixture of patterns that prevents development of a management strategy. Weissbach and associates (2018) found that duration of category II tracings does not predict perinatal asphyxia, but the individual components of diminished variability and fetal tachycardia are predictive.

Parer and Ikeda (2007) had previously proposed a color-coded five-tier system for both FHR interpretation *and* management. Two subsequent reports have compared the five- and three-tier systems. In one, the two systems were similar in FHR interpretations for tracings that were either very normal or very abnormal (Bannerman, 2011). The other study found that the five-tier system had better sensitivity than the three-tier one (Coletta, 2012). It is apparent that despite decades of electronic FHR monitoring, a consensus on FHR pattern interpretation and diagnosis is still lacking (Parer, 2011).

■ Meconium in the Amnionic Fluid

Obstetricians have long realized that meconium during labor is an inaccurate predictor of fetal distress or asphyxia. Indeed, although 12 to 22 percent of labors are complicated by meconium, only a few are linked to neonatal mortality. In an investigation from Parkland Hospital, meconium was found to be a "low-risk" obstetrical hazard because the perinatal mortality rate attributable to meconium was only 1 death per 1000 live births (Nathan, 1994).

Three etiological theories may explain the tenuous association between meconium passage and neonatal mortality. First, fetuses may pass meconium in response to hypoxia, and meconium therefore signals fetal compromise (Walker, 1953). Second, however, in utero passage of meconium may represent normal gastrointestinal tract maturation under neural control (Mathews, 1979). A final theory posits that common but transient umbilical cord entrapment leads to vagal stimulation, increased bowel peristalsis, and meconium passage (Hon, 1961).

Jovanovic and Nguyen (1989) observed that meconium aspirated into fetal lungs during gasping caused aspiration syndrome only in asphyxiated animals. Ramin and associates (1996) studied almost 8000 pregnancies with meconium-stained amnionic fluid delivered at Parkland Hospital. Meconium aspiration syndrome was significantly associated with fetal acidemia at birth. Further analysis of umbilical blood gases suggested that the fetal compromise associated with meconium aspiration syndrome was an acute event. This is because most acidemic fetuses had abnormally elevated P_{CO_2} values rather than a pure metabolic acidemia. Other significant correlates of aspiration included cesarean delivery, forceps to expedite delivery, intrapartum FHR abnormalities, depressed Apgar scores, and need for assisted ventilation at delivery.

Ramin and colleagues (1996) hypothesized that the pathophysiology of meconium aspiration syndrome includes, but is not limited to, fetal hypercarbia, which stimulates fetal respiration leading to aspiration of meconium into the alveoli. Lung parenchymal injury is secondary to acidemia-induced alveolar cell damage. In this pathophysiological scenario, meconium in amnionic fluid is a fetal environmental hazard rather than a marker of preexisting compromise. This proposed pathophysiological sequence is not all-inclusive, because it does not account for approximately half of the cases of meconium aspiration syndrome in which the fetus is not acidemic at birth.

Thus, the high incidence of meconium observed in the amnionic fluid during labor often represents normal physiological fetal passage of gastrointestinal contents. Although normal, such meconium becomes an environmental hazard when fetal acidemia from hypercarbia supervenes. Importantly, such acidemia occurs acutely, and therefore meconium aspiration is unpredictable and likely unpreventable.

Growing evidence indicates that many newborns with meconium aspiration syndrome have suffered chronic hypoxia before birth (Ghidini, 2001). In one study, 60 percent of neonates diagnosed with meconium aspiration syndrome had umbilical artery blood pH ≥7.20, which implies that the syndrome was unrelated to the neonatal condition at delivery (Blackwell, 2001). Similarly, comorbid markers of chronic hypoxia, such as elevated fetal erythropoietin levels and increased nucleated red blood cell counts in newborns, suggest that chronic hypoxia is involved in many meconium aspiration syndrome cases (Dollberg, 2001; Jazayeri, 2000).

Previously, routine obstetrical management of a newborn with meconium-stained amnionic fluid included intrapartum suctioning of the oropharynx and nasopharynx. Current recommendations state that newborns with meconium-stained amnionic fluid, regardless of their vigor, should no longer routinely receive intrapartum suctioning (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021; Wyckoff, 2015). Suctioning is reserved for those with airway obstruction. They also recommend that an appropriately credentialed team with full resuscitation skills be available (Chap. 32, p. 586).

■ Management Options

Initial management of variant FHR patterns aims to correct any fetal insult, if possible. Suggestions are listed in Table 24-3. The woman is moved to a lateral position, and supplemental oxygen is provided by mask. Correcting maternal hypotension

TABLE 24-3. Some Resuscitative Measures for Category II or Category III Tracings

Fetal Heart Rate Abnormality[a]	Interventions[b]
Recurrent late decelerations Minimal or absent FHR variability	Initial actions: lateral decubitus positioning; administer maternal oxygen; intravenous fluid bolus; reduce uterine contraction frequency
Prolonged decelerations or bradycardia Tachysystole with category II or III tracing	Initial actions plus discontinue oxytocin or prostaglandins; consider terbutaline
Recurrent variable decelerations Prolonged decelerations or bradycardia	Initial actions plus consider amnioinfusion; with cord prolapse, manually elevate the presenting part while preparing for immediate delivery

[a]Simultaneous evaluation of the suspected cause(s) is also an important step in management of abnormal FHR tracings.
[b]The combination of multiple interventions simultaneously may be appropriate and potentially more effective than doing them individually or serially.
FHR = fetal heart rate.

caused by regional analgesia and discontinuing oxytocin both serve to improve uteroplacental perfusion. Vaginal examination excludes a prolapsed cord or impending delivery. Simpson and James (2005) assessed the benefits of three maneuvers in 52 women with fetal oxygen saturation sensors already in place. They provided IV hydration with 500 to 1000 mL of lactated Ringer solution given over 20 minutes; lateral versus supine positioning; and administration of supplemental oxygen at 10 L/min using a nonrebreathing mask. Each of these maneuvers significantly raised fetal oxygen saturation levels. A randomized trial comparing oxygen via face mask to room air showed no difference in resolution of recurrent decelerations (75 percent versus 86 percent), time to resolution of recurrent decelerations, and total deceleration area (Raghuraman, 2020b).

Tocolysis

Terbutaline sulfate given to relax the uterus can be a temporizing maneuver in the management of nonreassuring FHR patterns during labor. A single 250-μg IV or subcutaneous injection is used to inhibit uterine contractions and thereby improve fetal oxygenation. One study described 368 pregnancies in which terbutaline was used to relieve contractions in preparation for cesarean delivery that was already planned for nonreassuring fetal status (Cook, 1994). Compared with a group not receiving tocolysis, the treated group had fewer 5-minute Apgar scores <7. Small IV doses of nitroglycerin—60 to 180 μg—also have reported benefit (Mercier, 1997). In one comparator study, both agents resolved tachysystole, but nitroglycerin lowered mean arterial blood pressures (Pullen, 2007). Two systematic reviews both noted that data were limited and reached differing views on tocolysis benefits (Bullens, 2015; Leathersich, 2018). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) cites that evidence is insufficient to recommend tocolysis for nonreassuring FHR patterns. We consider terbutaline during labor stimulation to resolve tachysystole-associated prolonged decelerations. However, the chance of success is balanced against terbutaline's side effects should cesarean delivery be needed for unresolved bradycardia. Namely, β agonist–related maternal tachycardia exacerbates the tachycardia associated with surgery itself. We consider maternal cardiopulmonary disease, poorly controlled hyperthyroidism, and maternal or fetal tachycardia with loss of variability to be contraindications.

Amnioinfusion

Early studies infused saline through an intrauterine pressure catheter in laboring women who had either variable or prolonged decelerations attributed to cord compression (Miyazaki, 1983, 1985). Such therapy improved the FHR pattern and decreased cesarean delivery rates for fetal indications. For variable decelerations, other studies also support amnioinfusion to reduce variable deceleration frequency, improve neonatal outcome, and lower cesarean delivery rates (Hofmeyr, 2012; Raghuraman, 2020a). The American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) conclude that amnioinfusion is a reasonable approach to treat repetitive variable decelerations but not late decelerations. As a prophylactic tool in known cases of oligohydramnios, evidence does not support amnioinfusion to prevent cord compression-related decelerations (Nageotte, 1991; Ogundipe, 1994). Last, attempts to flush out or dilute thick meconium are not recommended (Fraser, 2005; Xu, 2007).

Despite differing amnioinfusion protocols, most provide a 500- to 800-mL bolus of warmed normal saline, which is followed by a continuous infusion of 3 mL/min (Owen, 1990; Pressman, 1996). Rinehart and colleagues (2000) administered a 500-mL bolus of normal saline at room temperature alone or this bolus plus a continuous infusion at 3 mL/min. They included 65 women with variable decelerations and found neither method to be superior. Potential amnioinfusion complications are summarized in Table 24-4 from a U.S. survey of fellowship and residency directors (Wenstrom, 1995).

TABLE 24-4. Complications Associated with Amnioinfusion from a Survey of 186 Obstetrical Units

Complication	Percent
Uterine hypertonus	14
Abnormal fetal heart rate tracing	9
Chorioamnionitis	4
Maternal cardiac or respiratory compromise	2
Uterine rupture	2
Maternal death	1
Other: cord prolapse, abruption	5

Fetal Heart Rate Patterns and Brain Injury

Studies attempting to correlate FHR patterns with brain injury have primarily examined infants identified in medicolegal actions. Phelan and Ahn (1994) reported that among 48 fetuses later found to be neurologically impaired, a persistent nonreactive FHR tracing was already present at the time of admission in 70 percent. They concluded that fetal neurological injury occurred predominantly before arrival to the hospital. When they looked retrospectively at FHR patterns in 209 brain-injured newborns, they concluded that there was not a single unique pattern associated with fetal neurological injury (Ahn, 1996). Others have reported the same conclusion (Nakao, 2020; Phelan, 2000). In a review of literature published between 1966 and 2006 on the effect of FHR monitoring to prevent perinatal brain injury, the summary found no benefit (Graham, 2006).

FHR patterns necessary for perinatal brain damage have been studied in animals. Myers (1972) described the effects of complete and partial asphyxia in rhesus monkeys (Fig. 24-15). Complete asphyxia was produced by total occlusion of umbilical blood flow that led to prolonged deceleration. Fetal arterial pH did not drop to 7.0 until approximately 8 minutes after complete cessation of oxygenation and umbilical flow. At least 10 minutes of such prolonged deceleration were required before surviving fetuses demonstrated brain damage.

The most common FHR pattern during labor—due to umbilical cord occlusion—requires considerable time to significantly affect the fetus in experimental animals. Clapp and colleagues (1988) partially occluded the umbilical cord for 1 minute every 3 minutes in fetal sheep. Rocha and associates (2004) totally occluded the umbilical cord for 90 seconds every 30 minutes for 3 to 5 hours a day for 4 days without producing necrotic brain cell injury. Results from such studies suggest that the effects of umbilical cord entrapment depend on the degree, the duration, and the frequency of such occlusions.

The contribution of intrapartum events to subsequent neurological handicaps has been greatly overestimated, as discussed in Chapter 33 (p. 601). For brain damage, the fetus must be exposed to much more than a brief period of hypoxia. Moreover, the hypoxia must cause profound, just barely sublethal metabolic acidemia. Because of this, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019d) has recommended umbilical cord blood gases be obtained when cesarean delivery is performed for fetal compromise or when a low 5-minute Apgar score, severe fetal-growth restriction, an abnormal FHR tracing, or multifetal gestation is present (Chap. 32, p. 593).

Until recently, the prognosis for moderately affected newborns with hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy (HIE) was poor. More recently, studies show that brain cooling administered to newborns suffering neonatal HIE could ameliorate the development of subsequent cerebral palsy (Chap. 33, p. 602).

Benefits of Electronic Fetal Heart Rate Monitoring

Several false assumptions underlie the expectation of improved perinatal outcome with electronic FHR monitoring. One is that nonreassuring fetal status is a slowly developing phenomenon and that electronic monitoring permits early detection of the compromised fetus. Another presumption is that all fetal injury develops in the hospital. In reality, most neurologically damaged fetuses suffer insults before arrival at labor units. The very term *fetal monitor* implies that this inanimate technology in some fashion "monitors." The assumption is made that if a dead or damaged fetus is delivered, the tracing strip must provide some clue, because this device was monitoring fetal condition. These assumptions led to expectations that all neonatal deaths or injuries were preventable.

By the end of the 1970s, questions regarding the efficacy, safety, and costs of electronic monitoring were being voiced. Banta and Thacker (2002) reviewed the benefits, or lack thereof, of electronic FHR monitoring. More recently, a review of 13 randomized trials involving more than 37,000 women concluded that electronic FHR monitoring was associated with fewer neonatal seizures but a higher rate of cesarean and operative vaginal deliveries (Alfirevic, 2017). However, rates of perinatal mortality or cerebral palsy did not decline. Grimes and Peipert (2010) concluded that such monitoring has failed as a public health screening program. They noted that the positive-predictive value of electronic FHR monitoring for fetal death in labor or cerebral palsy is near zero and reflects that "almost every positive test result is wrong."

Epidemiologically, two large studies in the United States reported a decline in neonatal mortality rates due to electronic

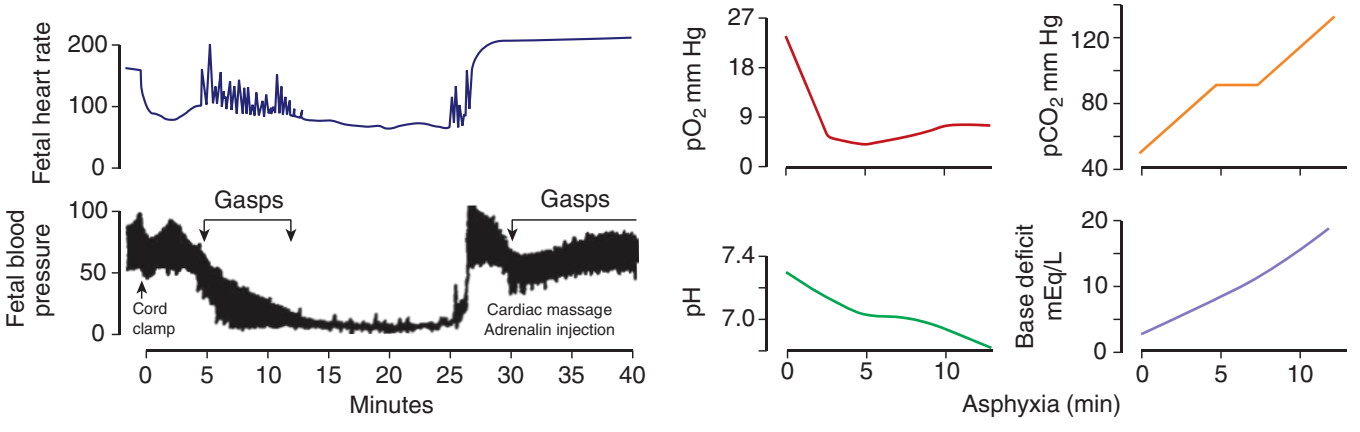


FIGURE 24-15 Prolonged deceleration in a rhesus monkey shown with blood pressure and biochemical changes during total occlusion of umbilical cord blood flow.

FHR monitoring. However, the highest effect was seen in preterm neonates (Ananth, 2013; Chen, 2011). Of note, caution must be used in interpreting these studies, as epidemiological association does not establish causation (Resnik, 2013).

At admission for labor, most women with low-risk pregnancies are monitored for a short time. In one study, 3752 low-risk women in spontaneous labor were randomly assigned at admission to either FHR auscultation or 20 minutes of electronic FHR monitoring (Mires, 2001). Electronic FHR monitoring did not improve neonatal outcome. Moreover, its use resulted in a greater number of interventions, including operative delivery. A similar study echoed these neonatal outcomes (Impey, 2003). Last, admission FHR monitoring for low-risk pregnancy is associated with a higher cesarean delivery rate but not improved neonatal outcomes in one Cochrane review (Devane, 2017).

At Parkland Hospital in July 1982, an investigation began to ascertain whether all women during labor should undergo electronic monitoring (Leveno, 1986). In alternating months, universal electronic FHR monitoring was rotated with selective FHR monitoring, which was the prevailing practice. During the 3-year investigation, more than 17,000 labors were managed using universal electronic FHR monitoring, and these outcomes were compared with a similar-sized cohort of women selectively monitored electronically. No significant differences were found in any perinatal outcome. With universal monitoring, a small but significant increase in the cesarean delivery rate for fetal distress was noted. Thus, greater application of electronic FHR monitoring at Parkland Hospital did not improve perinatal results but did slightly raise the frequency of cesarean delivery for fetal distress. More recently, a Cochrane Database review found that intermittent auscultation was associated with a higher cesarean delivery rate compared with continuous monitoring (Martis, 2017).

Current Recommendations

Methods most commonly used for intrapartum FHR monitoring include intermittent auscultation with a fetal stethoscope or a Doppler ultrasound device, or continuous electronic monitoring of FHR and uterine contractions. Evidence has not identified the most effective method nor the frequency or duration of fetal surveillance that ensures optimum results. That said, Table 24-5 summarizes current guidelines from the American Academy of Pediatrics and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017). Intermittent auscultation or continuous electronic monitoring is considered an acceptable method of intrapartum surveillance in both low- and high-risk pregnancies. The recommended interval between checking the heart rate, however, is longer in the uncomplicated pregnancy. When auscultation is used, it is recommended that it be performed after a contraction and for 60 seconds. It also is recommended that a 1-to-1 nurse–patient ratio be used if auscultation is employed. The position taken by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) acknowledges that available data do not show a clear benefit to the use of electronic monitoring over intermittent auscultation. At Parkland Hospital, all high-risk labors are continuously monitored electronically. In low-risk pregnancies, both intermittent auscultation and continuous electronic monitoring are used depending on clinical circumstances, including the woman's desire to ambulate.

TABLE 24-5. Guidelines for Methods of Intrapartum Fetal Heart Rate Monitoring

Surveillance	Low-Risk Pregnancies	High-Risk Pregnancies
Acceptable methods		
Intermittent auscultation	Yes	Yes[a]
Continuous electronic monitoring (internal or external)	Yes	Yes[b]
Evaluation intervals		
First-stage labor (active)	30 min	15 min[a,b]
Second-stage labor	15 min	5 min[a,c]

[a]Preferably before, during, and after a uterine contraction.
[b]Includes tracing evaluation and charting at least every 15 min.
[c]Tracing should be evaluated at least every 5 min.

INTRAPARTUM SURVEILLANCE OF UTERINE ACTIVITY

Analysis of electronically measured uterine activity permits some generalities concerning the relationship of certain contraction patterns and labor outcome. However, uterine muscle efficiency to bring about delivery varies greatly. Thus, caution should be exercised before diagnosing true labor or its absence solely from a monitor tracing.

With *internal monitoring* of contractions, amniotic fluid pressure is measured between and during contractions. An intrauterine pressure catheter is placed into the uterus with its distal tip above the presenting part. The catheter tip contains a pressure sensor and allows calculation of intrauterine pressure with each contraction (Fig. 24-16). With *external monitoring*, uterine contractions can be measured by a displacement transducer in which the transducer button, or "plunger," is held against the

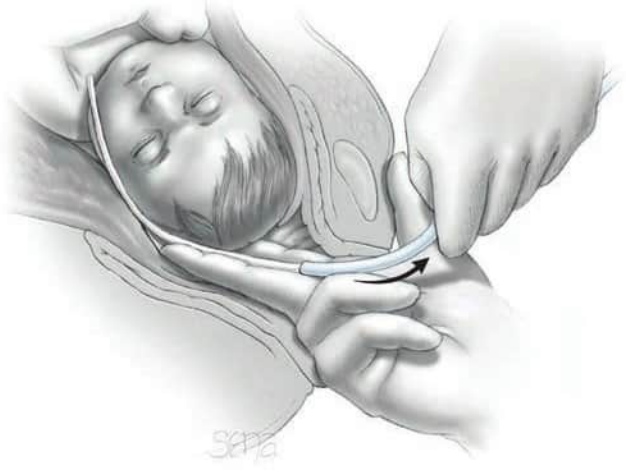


FIGURE 24-16 Placement of an intrauterine pressure catheter to monitor contractions and their pressures. The catheter, contained within the light blue introducer, is inserted into the uterus and placed along one side of the fetal head. The catheter is then gently advanced into the uterus, and the introducer is withdrawn.

maternal abdominal wall. As the uterus contracts, the button moves in proportion to the strength of the contraction. This movement is converted into a measurable electrical signal that indicates the *relative* intensity of the contraction. It has generally been accepted that internal monitoring provided a more accurate measure of intensity. That said, in a randomized trial comparing internal versus external monitoring of uterine contractions in 1456 women, the two methods yielded equivalent operative delivery rates and neonatal outcomes (Bakker, 2010).

Patterns of Uterine Activity

Caldeyro-Barcia and Poseiro (1960), from Montevideo, Uruguay, were pioneers in elucidating the patterns of spontaneous uterine activity throughout pregnancy. Waves of uterine activity were usually measured using intraamnionic pressure catheters. But early in their studies, as many as four simultaneous intramyometrial microballoons also were used to record uterine pressure. Contraction intensity was defined as the rise in this pressure above a resting pressure baseline. These investigators also introduced the concept of *Montevideo units* to define uterine activity (Chap. 23, p. 435). With this definition, uterine performance is the product of contraction intensity in mm Hg multiplied by the number of contractions in a 10-minute span. For example, three contractions in 10 minutes, each with 50-mm Hg intensity, would equal 150 Montevideo units.

According to Caldeyro-Barcia and Poseiro (1960), clinical labor usually commences when uterine activity reaches values between 80 and 120 Montevideo units. This translates into approximately three contractions of 40 mm Hg every 10 minutes. Importantly, no clear-cut division marks labor onset, which is a gradual and progressive transition.

In first-stage labor, uterine contractions progressively grow in intensity from approximately 25 mm Hg at labor commencement to 50 mm Hg at its end. At the same time, the frequency advances from three to five contractions per 10 minutes, and uterine baseline tone rises from 8 to 12 mm Hg. Uterine activity is further enhanced during second-stage labor, aided by maternal pushing. Contraction intensity of 80 to 100 mm Hg is typical, and the uterus contracts as frequently as five to six times each 10 minutes. Hauth and coworkers (1986) quantified uterine contraction pressures in 109 women at term who received oxytocin for labor induction or augmentation. Most of these women achieved 200 to 225 Montevideo units, and 40 percent had up to 300 units to effect delivery. The authors suggested that these levels of uterine activity should be sought before consideration of cesarean delivery for presumed dystocia (Chap. 23, p. 436).

Interestingly, the duration of uterine contractions—60 to 80 seconds—does not lengthen appreciably from early active labor through the second stage (Bakker, 2007; Pontonnier, 1975). Presumably, this duration constancy serves fetal respiratory gas exchange. During a uterine contraction, as the intrauterine pressure exceeds that of the intervillous space, respiratory gas exchange is halted. This leads to functional fetal "breath holding," which has a 60- to 80-second limit that remains relatively constant.

Caldeyro-Barcia and Poseiro (1960) also observed empirically that uterine contractions are clinically palpable only after their intensity exceeds 10 mm Hg. Moreover, until the intensity of contractions reaches 40 mm Hg, the uterine wall can readily be depressed by the finger. At greater intensities, the uterine wall then becomes so hard that it resists easy depression. Uterine contractions usually are not associated with pain until their strength exceeds 15 mm Hg. Presumably, this is the minimum pressure required to distend the lower uterine segment and cervix.

Hendricks (1968) observed that "the clinician makes great demands upon the uterus." The uterus is expected to remain well relaxed during pregnancy, to contract effectively but intermittently during labor, and then to remain in a state of almost constant contraction for several hours postpartum. Figure 24-17 demonstrates an example of normal uterine

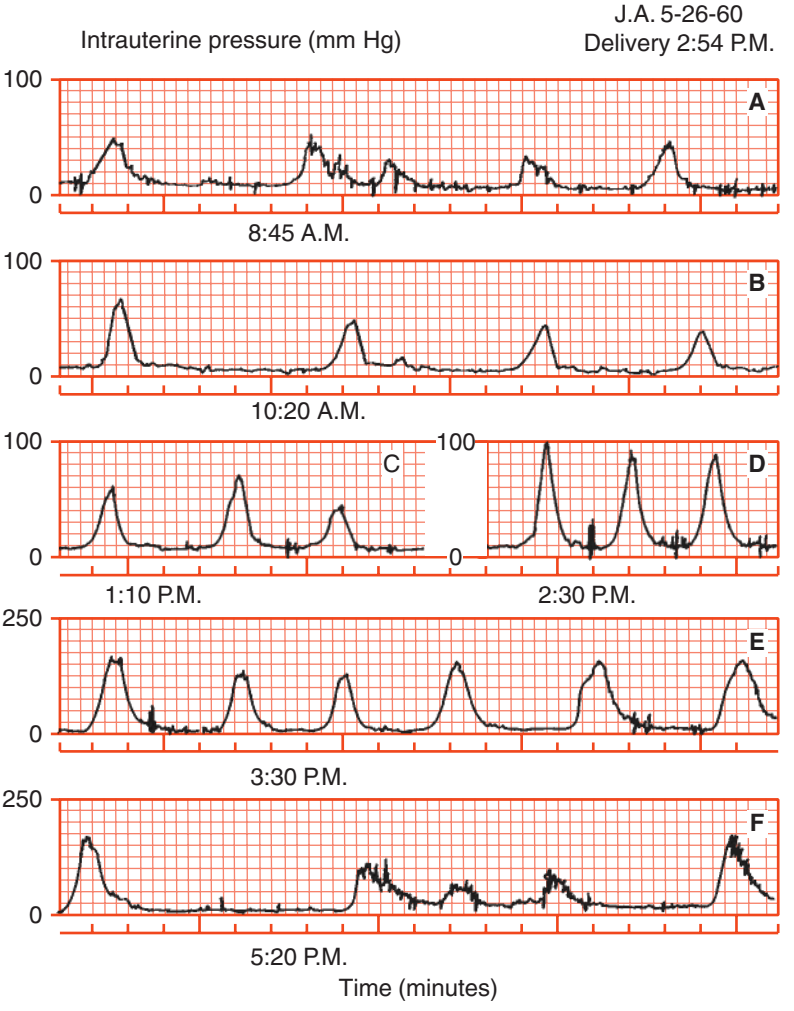


FIGURE 24-17 Intrauterine pressure recorded through a single catheter. **A.** Prelabor. **B.** Early labor. **C.** Active labor. **D.** Late labor. **E.** Spontaneous activity ½ hour postpartum. **F.** Spontaneous activity 2½ hours postpartum. (Redrawn from Hendricks CH: Uterine contractility changes in the early puerperium. Clin Obstet Gynecol 1968 Mar;11(1):125–144.)

activity during labor. Uterine activity progressively and gradually rises from early through late labor. Interestingly, uterine contractions after birth are identical to those resulting in delivery of the newborn. Logically, the uterus that performs poorly before delivery is also prone to atony and puerperal hemorrhage.

Uterine Contraction Terminology

Terms to describe uterine contractions have been recommended by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b). *Normal uterine activity* is defined as five or fewer contractions in 10 minutes, averaged during a 30-minute span. *Tachysystole* is more than five contractions in 10 minutes, averaged over 30 minutes. Tachysystole can be applied to spontaneous or induced labor. The term *hyperstimulation* was abandoned.

Stewart and associates (2012) prospectively studied uterine tachysystole in 584 women undergoing labor induction with misoprostol at Parkland Hospital. A higher rate of adverse neonatal outcomes was not associated with an increasing number of contractions per 10 minutes or per 30 minutes. Counts of six or more contractions in 10 minutes, however, were significantly associated with FHR decelerations.

Electronic Fetal Monitoring Complications

Electrodes for FHR evaluation and catheters for uterine contraction measurement are both associated with infrequent but potentially serious complications. Rarely, an intrauterine pressure catheter may lacerate a fetal vessel in the placenta during placement. Also with insertion, placental and possibly uterine perforation can cause hemorrhage, abruption, and spurious recordings that have resulted in inappropriate management. Severe cord compression has been described from entanglement with the pressure catheter. Injury to the fetal scalp or breech by a FHR electrode is rarely severe. However, face presentations pose risk for eye or mouth trauma.

Both the fetus and the mother may be at greater risk of infection from internal monitoring (Faro, 1990). Scalp wounds from the electrode may become infected, but subsequent cranial osteomyelitis is rare (Brook, 2005; Eggink, 2004; McGregor, 1989). Certain maternal infections that include human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), herpes simplex virus, and hepatitis B and C virus are relative contraindications to internal FHR monitoring (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017).

REFERENCES

Ahn MO, Korst L, Phelan JP: Intrapartum fetal heart rate patterns in 209 brain damaged infants. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:492, 1996

Alfirevic Z, Devane D, Gyte GM, et al: Continuous cardiotocography (CTG) as a form of electronic fetal monitoring (EFM) for fetal assessment during labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD006066, 2017

Amer-Wåhlin I, Hellsten C, Norén H, et al: Cardiotocography only versus cardiotocography plus ST analysis of fetal electrocardiogram for intrapartum fetal monitoring: a Swedish randomized controlled trial. Lancet 358:534, 2001

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Elk Grove Village, AAP, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Intrapartum fetal heart rate monitoring: nomenclature, interpretation, and general management principles. Practice Bulletin No. 106, July 2009, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Management of intrapartum fetal heart rate tracings. Practice Bulletin No. 116, November 2010, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Delivery of a newborn with meconium-stained amniotic fluid. Committee Opinion No. 689, March 2017, Reaffirmed 2021

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, American Academy of Pediatrics: Neonatal encephalopathy and neurologic outcome. Washington, ACOG, 2014, Reaffirmed 2019d

Ananth CV, Chauhan SP, Chen HY, et al: Electronic fetal monitoring in the United States. Obstet Gynecol 121(5):927, 2013

Angel J, Knuppel R, Lake M: Sinusoidal fetal heart rate patterns associated with intravenous butorphanol administration. Am J Obstet Gynecol 149:465, 1984

Anyaegbunam AM, Ditchik A, Stoessel R, et al: Vibroacoustic stimulation of the fetus entering the second stage of labor. Obstet Gynecol 83:963, 1994

Api O, Carvalho JS: Fetal dysrhythmias. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 22(1):31, 2008

Ayres-de-Campos D, Bernardes J, Costa-Pereira A, et al: Inconsistencies in classification by experts of cardiotocograms and subsequent clinical decision. BJOG 106:1307, 1999

Bakker JJ, Verhoeven CJ, Janssen PF, et al: Outcomes after internal versus external tocodynamometry for monitoring labor. N Engl J Med 362:306, 2010

Bakker PC, Kurver PH, Duik DJ, et al: Elevated uterine activity increases the risk of fetal acidosis at birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196:313, 2007

Ball RH, Parer JT: The physiologic mechanisms of variable decelerations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 166:1683, 1992

Bannerman CG, Grobman WA, Antoniewicz L: Assessment of the concordance among 2-tier, 3-tier, and 5-tier fetal heart rate classification systems. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(3):288.e1, 2011

Banta HD, Thacker SB: Electronic fetal monitoring: lessons from a formative case of health technology assessment. Int J Technol Assess Health Care 18:762, 2002

Becker JH, Bax L, Amer-Wåhlin I, et al: ST analysis of the fetal electrocardiogram in intrapartum fetal monitoring. Obstet Gynecol 119:145, 2012

Belfort MA, Saade GR, Thom E, et al: A randomized trial of intrapartum fetal ECG ST-segment analysis. N Engl J Med 373(7):632, 2015

Berkus MD, Langer O, Samueloff A, et al: Electronic fetal monitoring: what's reassuring? Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 78(1):15; 1999

Blackwell SC, Groman WA, Antoniewicz L, et al: Interobserver and intraobserver reliability of the NICHD 3-tier fetal heart rate interpretation system. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205:378.e1, 2011

Blackwell SC, Moldenhauer J, Hassan SS, et al: Meconium aspiration syndrome in term neonates with normal acid-base status at delivery: is it different? Am J Obstet Gynecol 184:1422, 2001

Bloom SL, Spong CY, Thom E, et al: Fetal pulse oximetry and cesarean delivery. N Engl J Med 335:21, 2006

Boehm FH: Prolonged end stage fetal heart rate deceleration. Obstet Gynecol 45:579, 1975

Bravo-Valenzuela NJ, Rocha LA, Machado Nardozza LM, et al: Fetal cardiac arrhythmias: current evidence. Ann Pediatr Cardiol 11(2)148, 2018

Brocato B, Lewis D, Mulekar M, et al: Obesity's impact on intrapartum electronic fetal monitoring. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(1):92, 2019

Brook I: Infected neonatal cephalohematomas caused by anaerobic bacteria. J Perinat Med 33(3):255, 2005

Bullens LM, van Runnard Heimel PJ, van der Hout-van der Jaqt MB, et al: Interventions for intrauterine resuscitation in suspected fetal distress during term labor: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol Surv 70(8):524, 2015

Cahill AG, Roehl KA, Odibo AO, et al: Association and prediction of neonatal acidemia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207:206.e1, 2012

Cahill AG, Tuuli MG, Stout MJ, et al: A prospective cohort study of fetal heart rate monitoring: deceleration area is predictive of fetal acidemia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(5):523, 2018

Caldeyro-Barcia R, Poseiro JJ: Physiology of the uterine contraction. Clin Obstet Gynecol 3:386, 1960

Chen HY, Chauhan SP, Ananth C: Electronic fetal heart monitoring and its relationship to neonatal and infant mortality in the United States. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(6):491.e1, 2011

Clapp JF, Peress NS, Wesley M, et al: Brain damage after intermittent partial cord occlusion in the chronically instrumented fetal lamb. Am J Obstet Gynecol 159:504, 1988

Clark SL, Gimovsky ML, Miller FC: The scalp stimulation test: a clinical alternative to fetal scalp blood sampling. Am J Obstet Gynecol 148:274, 1984

Coletta J, Murphy E, Rubeo Z, et al: The 5-tier system of assessing fetal heart rate tracings is superior to the 3-tier system in identifying fetal acidemia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206:226.e1, 2012
Cook VD, Spinnato JA: Terbutaline tocolysis prior to cesarean section for fetal distress. J Matern Fetal Med 3:219, 1994
Dawes GS: The control of fetal heart rate and its variability in counts. In Kunzel W (ed): Fetal Heart Rate Monitoring. Berlin, Springer, 1985
Dawes GS, Visser GHA, Goodman JDS, et al: Numerical analysis of the human fetal heart rate: modulation by breathing and movement. Am J Obstet Gynecol 140:535, 1981
Devane D, Lalor JG, Daly S, et al: Cardiotocography versus intermittent auscultation of fetal heart on admission to labour ward for assessment of fetal wellbeing. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD005122, 2017
Devoe L: ECG analysis: the next generation in electronic fetal monitoring? Contemporary Ob/Gyn, September 15, 2006
Dollberg S, Livny S, Mordecheyev N, et al: Nucleated red blood cells in meconium aspiration syndrome. Obstet Gynecol 97:593, 2001
Doria V, Papageorghiou AT, Gustafsson A, et al: Review of the first 1502 cases of ECG-ST waveform analysis during labour in a teaching hospital. BJOG 114:1202, 2007
Duffy CR, Odibo AO, Roehl KA, et al: Effect of magnesium sulfate on fetal heart rate patterns in the second stage of labor. Obstet Gynecol 119(6):1129, 2012
East CE, Brennecke SP, King JF, et al: The effect of intrapartum fetal pulse oximetry, in the presence of a nonreassuring fetal heart rate pattern, on operative delivery rates: a multicenter, randomized, controlled trial (the FOREMOST trial). Am J Obstet Gynecol 194:606, 2006
Eberle RL, Norris MC, Eberle AM, et al: The effect of maternal position on fetal heart rate during epidural or intrathecal labor analgesia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 179:150, 1998
Edersheim TG, Hutson JM, Druzin ML, et al: Fetal heart rate response to vibratory acoustic stimulation predicts fetal pH in labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 157:1557, 1987
Eggink BH, Richardson CJ, Rowen JL: *Gardnerella vaginalis*–infected scalp hematoma associated with electronic fetal monitoring. Pediatr Infect Dis J 23:276, 2004
Egley CC, Bowes WA, Wagner D: Sinusoidal fetal heart rate pattern during labor. Am J Perinatol 8:197, 1991
Elimian A, Figueroa R, Tejani N: Intrapartum assessment of fetal well-being: a comparison of scalp stimulation with scalp pH sampling. Obstet Gynecol 89:373, 1997
Epstein A, Twogood S, Lee RH, et al: Interobserver reliability of fetal heart rate pattern interpretation using NICHD definitions. Am J Perinatol 30(6):463, 2013
Epstein H, Waxman A, Gleicher N, et al: Meperidine induced sinusoidal fetal heart rate pattern and reversal with naloxone. Obstet Gynecol 59:225, 1982
Esplin SM: Identification of the fetus at risk for metabolic acidemia using continuous fetal heart rate monitoring. Clin Obstet Gynecol 63(3):616, 2020
Faro S, Martens MG, Hammill HA, et al: Antibiotic prophylaxis: is there a difference? Am J Obstet Gynecol 162:900, 1990
Fraser WD, Hofmeyr J, Lede R, et al: Amnioinfusion for the prevention of the meconium aspiration syndrome. N Engl J Med 353:9, 2005
Freeman RK, Garite TH, Nageotte MP: Fetal Heart Rate Monitoring, 3rd ed. Philadelphia, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2003
Garite TJ, Dildy GA, McNamara H, et al: A multicenter controlled trial of fetal pulse oximetry in the intrapartum management of nonreassuring fetal heart rate patterns. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:1049, 2000
Ghidini A, Spong CY: Severe meconium aspiration syndrome is not caused by aspiration of meconium. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185:931, 2001
Gilstrap LC III, Hauth JC, Hankins GD, et al: Second stage fetal heart rate abnormalities and type of neonatal acidemia. Obstet Gynecol 70:191, 1987
Goodwin TM, Milner-Masterson L, Paul RH: Elimination of fetal scalp blood sampling on a large clinical service. Obstet Gynecol 83:971, 1994
Gorenberg DM, Pattillo C, Hendi P, et al: Fetal pulse oximetry: correlation between oxygen desaturation, duration, and frequency and neonatal outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:136, 2003
Graham EM, Petersen SM, Christo DK, et al: Intrapartum electronic fetal heart rate monitoring and the prevention of perinatal brain injury. Obstet Gynecol 108:656, 2006
Grimes DA, Peipert JF: Electronic fetal monitoring as a public health screening program. Obstet Gynecol 116:1397, 2010
Gull I, Jaffa AJ, Oren M, et al: Acid accumulation during end-stage bradycardia in term fetuses: how long is too long? BJOG 103:1096, 1996
Hammacher K, Huter K, Bokelmann J, et al: Foetal heart frequency and perinatal conditions of the fetus and newborn. Gynaecologia 166:349, 1968
Hauth JC, Hankins GV, Gilstrap LC, et al: Uterine contraction pressures with oxytocin induction/augmentation. Obstet Gynecol 68:305, 1986
Hendricks CH: Uterine contractility changes in the early puerperium. Clin Obstet Gynecol 11(1):125, 1968
Herbert CM, Boehm FH: Prolonged end-stage fetal heart deceleration: a reanalysis. Obstet Gynecol 57:589, 1981
Hill JB, Alexander JM, Sharma SK, et al: A comparison of the effects of epidural and meperidine analgesia during labor on fetal heart rate. Obstet Gynecol 102:333, 2003
Hofmeyr GJ, Lawrie TA: Amnioinfusion for potential or suspected umbilical cord compression in labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD000013, 2012
Holzmann M, Wretler S, Cnattingius S, et al: Cardiotocography patterns and risk of intrapartum fetal acidemia. J Perinat Med 43(4):473, 2015
Hon EH: The electronic evaluation of the fetal heart rate. Am J Obstet Gynecol 75:1215, 1958
Hon EH: The fetal heart rate patterns preceding death in utero. Am J Obstet Gynecol 78:47, 1959
Hon EH, Bradfield AM, Hess OW: The electronic evaluation of the fetal heart rate. Am J Obstet Gynecol 82:291, 1961
Ikeda T, Murata Y, Quilligan EJ, et al: Two sinusoidal heart rate patterns in fetal lambs undergoing extracorporeal membrane oxygenation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 180:462, 1999
Impey L, Reynolds M, MacQuillan K, et al: Admission cardiotocography: a randomised controlled trial. Lancet 361:465, 2003
INFANT Collaborative Group: Computerised interpretation of fetal heart rate during labour (INFANT): a randomised controlled trial. Lancet 389(10080):1719, 2017
Itskovitz J, LaGamma EF, Rudolph AM: Heart rate and blood pressure response to umbilical cord compression in fetal lambs with special reference to the mechanisms of variable deceleration. Am J Obstet Gynecol 147:451, 1983
Jackson M, Holmgren CM, Esplin MS, et al: Frequency of fetal heart rate categories and short-term neonatal outcome. Obstet Gynecol 118:803, 2011
Jansson LM, Velez M, McConnell K, et al: Maternal buprenorphine treatment and fetal neurobehavioral development. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(5):529.e1, 2017
Jazayeri A, Politz L, Tsibris JC, et al: Fetal erythropoietin levels in pregnancies complicated by meconium passage: does meconium suggest fetal hypoxia? Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:188, 2000
Jia Y, Chen X, Cui H, et al: Physiological CTG interpretation: the significance of baseline fetal heart rate changes after the onset of decelerations and associated perinatal outcomes. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(14):2349, 2021
Johnson TR Jr, Compton AA, Rotmeusch J, et al: Significance of the sinusoidal fetal heart rate pattern. Am J Obstet Gynecol 139:446, 1981
Jovanovic R, Nguyen HT: Experimental meconium aspiration in guinea pigs. Obstet Gynecol 73:652, 1989
Keith RD, Beckley S, Garibaldi JM, et al: A multicentre comparative study of 17 experts and an intelligent computer system for managing labour using the cardiotocogram. BJOG 102:688, 1995
Klauser CK, Christensen EE, Chauhan SP, et al: Use of fetal pulse oximetry among high-risk women in labor: a randomized clinical trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:1810, 2005
Kozuma S, Watanabe T, Bennet L, et al: The effect of carotid sinus denervation on fetal heart rate variation in normoxia, hypoxia and post-hypoxia in fetal sleep. BJOG 104:460, 1997
Krebs HB, Petres RE, Dunn LJ: Intrapartum fetal heart rate monitoring. 5. Fetal heart rate patterns in the second stage of labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 140:435, 1981
Krebs HB, Petres RE, Dunn LJ, et al: Intrapartum fetal heart rate monitoring, 6. Prognostic significance of accelerations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 142:297, 1982
Kruger K, Hallberg B, Blennow M, et al: Predictive value of fetal scalp blood lactate concentration and pH as markers of neurologic disability. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181:1072, 1999
Leathersich SJ, Vogel JP, Tran TS, et al: Acute tocolysis for uterine tachysystole or suspected fetal distress. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD009770, 2018
Lee CV, DiLaretto PC, Lane JM: A study of fetal heart rate acceleration patterns. Obstet Gynecol 45:142, 1975
Lempersz C, Noben L, van Osta G, et al: Intrapartum non-invasive electrophysiological monitoring: a prospective observational study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(10):1387, 2020
Lepercq J, Nghiem M, Goffinet F: Fetal heart rate nadir during bradycardia and umbilical artery acidemia at birth. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 100(5):964, 2021
Leveno KJ, Cunningham FG, Nelson S: Prospective comparison of selective and universal electronic fetal monitoring in 34,995 pregnancies. N Engl J Med 315:615, 1986

Leveno KJ, Quirk JG, Cunningham FG, et al: Prolonged pregnancy: observations concerning the causes of fetal distress. Am J Obstet Gynecol 150:465, 1984
Lin CC, Vassallo B, Mittendorf R: Is intrapartum vibroacoustic stimulation an effective predictor of fetal acidosis? J Perinat Med 29:506, 2001
Macones GA, Hankins GD, Spong CY, et al: The 2008 National Institute of Child Health and Human Development workshop report on electronic fetal monitoring: update on definitions, interpretation, and research guidelines. Obstet Gynecol 112(3):661, 2008
Martis R, Emilia O, Nurdiati DS, et al: Intermittent auscultation (IA) of fetal heart rate in labour for fetal well-being. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD008680, 2017
Mathews TG, Warshaw JB: Relevance of the gestational age distribution of meconium passage in utero. Pediatrics 64:30, 1979
McGregor JA, McFarren T: Neonatal cranial osteomyelitis: a complication of fetal monitoring. Obstet Gynecol 73(2):490, 1989
Melchior J, Bernard N: Incidence and pattern of fetal heart rate alterations during labor. In Künzel W (ed): Fetal Heart Rate Monitoring: Clinical Practice and Pathophysiology. Berlin, Springer, 1985
Mercier FJ, Dounas M, Bouaziz H, et al: Intravenous nitroglycerin to relieve intrapartum fetal distress related to uterine hyperactivity: a prospective observation study. Anesth Analg 84:1117, 1997
Mires G, Williams F, Howie P: Randomised controlled trial of cardiotocography versus Doppler auscultation of fetal heart at admission in labour in low risk obstetric population. BMJ 322:1457, 2001
Miyazaki FS, Nevarez F: Saline amnioinfusion for relief of repetitive variable decelerations: a prospective randomized study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 153:301, 1985
Miyazaki FS, Taylor NA: Saline amnioinfusion for relief of variable or prolonged decelerations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 146:670, 1983
Modanlou H, Freeman RK: Sinusoidal fetal heart rate pattern: its definition and clinical significance. Am J Obstet Gynecol 142:1033, 1982
Modanlou H, Murata Y: Sinusoidal heart rate pattern: reappraisal of its definition and clinical significance. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 30(3):169, 2004
Monson M, Heuser C, Einerson BD, et al: Evaluation of an external fetal electrocardiogram monitoring system: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(2):244, 2020
Murphy KW, Russell V, Collins A, et al: The prevalence, aetiology and clinical significance of pseudo-sinusoidal fetal heart rate patterns in labour. BJOG 98:1093, 1991
Myers RE: Two patterns of perinatal brain damage and their conditions of occurrence. Am J Obstet Gynecol 112:246, 1972
Myers RE, Mueller-Heubach E, Adamsons K: Predictability of the state of fetal oxygenation from a quantitative analysis of the components of late deceleration. Am J Obstet Gynecol 115:1083, 1973
Nageotte MP, Bertucci L, Towers CV, et al: Prophylactic amnioinfusion in pregnancies complicated by oligohydramnios: a prospective study. Obstet Gynecol 77:677, 1991
Nakao M, Okumara A, Hasegawa J, et al: Fetal heart rate pattern in term or near-term cerebral palsy: a nationwide cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(6):907, 2020
Nathan L, Leveno KJ, Carmody TJ, et al: Meconium: a 1990s perspective on an old obstetric hazard. Obstet Gynecol 83:328, 1994
Neesham DE, Umstad MP, Cincotta RB, et al: Pseudo-sinusoidal fetal heart rate pattern and fetal anemia: case report and review. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 33:386, 1993
Neilson JP: Fetal electrocardiogram (ECG) for fetal monitoring during labour. Cochrane Database System Rev 5:CD000116, 2015
Nensi A, De Silva DA, von Dadelszen P, et al: Effect of magnesium sulphate on fetal heart rate parameters: a systematic review. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 36(12):1055, 2014
Noben L, Verdurmen KM, Warmerdam GJ, et al: The fetal electrocardiogram to detect the effects of betamethasone on fetal heart rate variability. Early Hum Dev 130:57, 2019
Nunes I, Ayres-de-Campos D, Costa-Santos C, et al: Differences between external and internal fetal heart rate monitoring during the second stage of labor: a prospective observational study. J Perinat Med 42(4):493, 2014
Ogundipe OA, Spong CY, Ross MG: Prophylactic amnioinfusion for oligohydramnios: a re-evaluation. Obstet Gynecol 84:544, 1994
Owen J, Henson BV, Hauth JC: A prospective randomized study of saline solution amnioinfusion. Am J Obstet Gynecol 162:1146, 1990
Parer JT: Personalities, politics and territorial tiffs: a half century of fetal heart rate monitoring. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(6):548, 2011
Parer JT, Ikeda T: A framework for standardized management of intrapartum fetal heart rate pattern. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197:26, 2007
Parer JT, King TL: Fetal heart rate monitoring: the next step? Am J Obstet Gynecol 203(6):520, 2010
Parer JT, King T, Flanders S: Fetal acidemia and electronic fetal heart rate patterns: is there evidence of an association? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 19(5):289, 2006
Paul WM, Quilligan EJ, MacLachlan T: Cardiovascular phenomena associated with fetal head compression. Am J Obstet Gynecol 90:824, 1964
Petrie RH: Dose/response effects of intravenous meperidine in fetal heart rate variability. J Matern Fetal Med 2:215, 1993
Phelan JP, Ahn MO: Perinatal observations in forty-eight neurologically impaired term infants. Am J Obstet Gynecol 171:424, 1994
Phelan PJ, Kim KO: Fetal heart rate observations in the brain-damaged infant. Semin Perinatol 24(3):221, 2000
Picquard F, Hsiung R, Mattauer M, et al: The validity of fetal heart rate monitoring during the second stage of labor. Obstet Gynecol 72:746, 1988
Pillai M, James D: The development of fetal heart rate patterns during normal pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 76:812, 1990
Polnaszek B, Lopez JD, Clark R, et al: Marked variability in intrapartum electronic fetal hear rate patterns: association with neonatal morbidity and abnormal arterial cord gas. J Perinatol 40(1):56, 2020
Pontonnier G, Puech F, Grandjean H, et al: Some physical and biochemical parameters during normal labour. Fetal and maternal study. Biol Neonate 26:159, 1975
Pressman EK, Blakemore KJ: A prospective randomized trial of two solutions for intrapartum amnioinfusion: effects on fetal electrolytes, osmolality, and acid-base status. Am J Obstet Gynecol 175:945, 1996
Pullen KM, Riley ET, Waller SA, et al: Randomized comparison of intravenous terbutaline vs nitroglycerin for acute intrapartum fetal resuscitation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197(4):414, 2007
Raghuraman N: Response to category II tracings: does anything help? Semin Perinatol 44(2):151217, 2020a
Raghuraman N, Lopez JD, Carter EB, et al: The effect of intrapartum oxygen supplementation on category II fetal monitoring. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(6):905, 2020b
Ramin KD, Leveno KJ, Kelly MS, et al: Amnionic fluid meconium: a fetal environmental hazard. Obstet Gynecol 87:181, 1996
Renou P, Warwick N, Wood C: Autonomic control of fetal heart rate. Am J Obstet Gynecol 105:949, 1969
Resnik R: Electronic fetal monitoring: the debate goes on … and on … and on. Obstet Gynecol 121(5):917, 2013
Rinehart BK, Terrone DA, Barrow JH, et al: Randomized trial of intermittent or continuous amnioinfusion for variable decelerations. Obstet Gynecol 96:571, 2000
Robinson B: A review of NICHD standardized nomenclature for cardiotocography: the importance of speaking a common language when describing electronic fetal monitoring. Rev Obstet Gynecol 1(2):56, 2008
Rocha E, Hammond R, Richardson B: Necrotic cell injury in the preterm and near-term ovine fetal brain after intermittent umbilical cord occlusion. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:488, 2004
Rogers MS, Mongelli M, Tsang KH, et al: Lipid peroxidation in cord blood at birth: the effect of labour. BJOG 105:739, 1998
Samueloff A, Langer O, Berkus M, et al: Is fetal heart rate variability a good predictor of fetal outcome? Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 73:39, 1994
Schucker JL, Sarno AP, Egerman RS, et al: The effect of butorphanol on the fetal heart rate reactivity during labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:491, 1996
Serra V, Bellver J, Moulden M, et al: Computerized analysis of normal fetal heart rate pattern throughout gestation. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 34(1):74, 2009
Sherer DM: Blunted fetal response to vibroacoustic stimulation associated with maternal intravenous magnesium sulfate therapy. Am J Perinatol 11:401, 1994
Sholapurkar SL: The conundrum of vanishing early decelerations in British obstetrics, a step backwards? Detailed appraisal of British and American classifications of fetal heart rate decelerations—fallacies of emphasis on waveform and putative aetiology. J Obstet Gynaecol 32(6):505, 2012
Shuffrey LC, Myers MM, Odendaal HJ, et al: Fetal heart rate, heart rate variability, and heart rate/movement coupling in the Safe Passage Study. J Perinatol 39(5):608, 2019
Simpson KR, James DC: Efficacy of intrauterine resuscitation techniques in improving fetal oxygen status during labor. Obstet Gynecol 105:1362, 2005
Skupski DW, Rosenberg CR, Eglinton GS: Intrapartum fetal stimulation tests: a meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 99:129, 2002
Smith CV, Nguyen HN, Phelan JP, et al: Intrapartum assessment of fetal well-being: a comparison of fetal acoustic stimulation with acid–base determinations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 155:726, 1986
Southall DP, Richards J, Hardwick RA, et al: Prospective study of fetal heart rate and rhythm patterns. Arch Dis Child 55:506, 1980
Spires B, Towers C: Fetal bradycardia in response to maternal hypothermia. Obstet Gynecol 135(6):1454, 2020
Stal I, Wennerholm U, Nordstrom L, et al: Fetal scalp blood sampling during second stage of labor-analyzing lactate or pH? A secondary analysis of a

randomized controlled trial. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med March 31, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Steer P, Kovar I, McKenzie C, et al: Computerised analysis of intrapartum fetal heart rate patterns and adverse outcomes in the INFANT trial. BJOG 126(11):1354, 2019
Stewart RD, Bleich AT, Lo JY, et al: Defining uterine tachysystole: how much is too much? Am J Obstet Gynecol 207:290.e1, 2012
Stiller R, von Mering R, König V, et al: How well does reflectance pulse oximetry reflect intrapartum fetal acidosis? Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:1351, 2002
Tahir Mahmood U, O'Gorman C, Marchocki Z, et al: Fetal scalp stimulation (FSS) versus fetal blood sampling (FBS) for women with abnormal fetal heart rate monitoring in labor: a prospective cohort study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(13):1742, 2018
Thakor AS, Giussani DA: Effects of acute acidemia on the fetal cardiovascular defense to acute hypoxemia. Am J Physiol Regul Integr Comp Physiol 296(1):R90, 2009
Tintinalli JE, Stapczynski JS, Ma OJ, et al: Tintinalli's Emergency Medicine: A Comprehensive Study Guide, 8th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2016
Verdurmen KM, Hulsenboom AD, van Laar JO, et al: Effect of tocolytic drugs on fetal heart rate variability: a systematic review. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(20):2387, 2017
Vintzileos AM, Smulian JC: Decelerations, tachycardia, and decreased variability: have we overlooked the significance of longitudinal fetal heart rate changes for detecting intrapartum fetal hypoxia? Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(3):261, 2016
Walker J: Foetal anoxia. J Obstet Gynaecol Br Commonw 61:162, 1953
Weissbach T, Heusler I, Ovadia M, et al: The temporal effect of Category II fetal monitoring on neonatal outcomes Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 229:8, 2018
Wenstrom K, Andrews WW, Maher JE: Amnioinfusion survey: prevalence protocols and complications. Obstet Gynecol 86:572, 1995
Westgate J, Harris M, Curnow JSH, et al: Plymouth randomized trial of cardiotocogram only versus ST waveform plus cardiotocogram for intrapartum monitoring in 2400 cases. Am J Obstet Gynecol 169:1151, 1993
Wiberg-Itzel E, Lipponer C, Norman M, et al: Determination of pH or lactate in fetal scalp blood in management of intrapartum fetal distress: randomised controlled multicenter trial. BMJ 336:1284, 2008
Williams KP, Galerneau F: Intrapartum fetal heart rate patterns in the prediction of neonatal acidemia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188(3):820, 2003
Wyckoff MH, Aziz K, Escobedo MB, et al: Part 13: Neonatal resuscitation: 2015 American Heart Association guidelines update for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. Circulation 132(18 Suppl 2):S543, 2015
Xu H, Hofmeyr J, Roy C, et al: Intrapartum amnioinfusion for meconium-stained amniotic fluid: a systematic review of randomised controlled trials. BOJG 114(4):383, 2007
Young BK, Katz M, Wilson SJ: Sinusoidal fetal heart rate. I. Clinical significance. Am J Obstet Gynecol 136:587, 1980a
Young BK, Weinstein HM: Moderate fetal bradycardia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 126:271, 1976
Young DC, Gray JH, Luther ER, et al: Fetal scalp blood pH sampling: its value in an active obstetric unit. Am J Obstet Gynecol 136:276, 1980b
Zalar RW, Quilligan EJ: The influence of scalp sampling on the cesarean section rate for fetal distress. Am J Obstet Gynecol 135:239, 1979
Zizzo A, Kirkegaard I, Hansen J, et al: Fetal heart rate variability is affected by fetal movements: a systematic review. Front Physiol 11:578898, 2020

CHAPTER 25

Obstetrical Analgesia and Anesthesia

Obstetrical anesthesia presents unique challenges. Labor begins without warning, and anesthesia may be required within minutes of a full meal. Vomiting with aspiration of gastric contents is a constant threat. The usual physiological adaptations of pregnancy require special consideration, especially with disorders such as preeclampsia, placental abruption, or sepsis.

Obstetrical analgesia and anesthesia have become extraordinarily safe over the past 40 years (Hawkins, 2011). Anesthetic-related maternal mortality rates decreased more than 60 percent during this time, and from 2007 to 2017, only 0.4 percent of 6765 maternal deaths were due to anesthesia complications (Petersen, 2019). Creanga and colleagues (2017) reported the contribution of anesthetics to pregnancy-associated deaths has declined markedly in the United States (Fig. 25-1). Approximately two thirds of deaths associated with general anesthesia were caused by induction problems or intubation failures during cesarean delivery. Deaths associated with regional analgesia were caused by spinal or epidural blocks reaching higher than planned spinal levels—26 percent; respiratory failure—19 percent; and drug reaction—19 percent.

Of factors contributing to improved obstetrical anesthesia safety, the increased use of regional analgesia for labor and delivery is the most significant. For general anesthesia, the improved case-fatality rate is especially notable considering that this method is now used for the highest-risk patients and for emergencies with decision-incision intervals <15 minutes (Bloom, 2005). In addition, the incidence of aspiration, hypoxia, or other respiratory events has declined during the past three decades. This is likely due to use of difficult-airway algorithms, advanced airway equipment, and increased in-house anesthesia staffing (Davies, 2017; Lim, 2018). Despite these encouraging results with general anesthesia, rising complications with regional analgesia techniques are now reported (Davies, 2017).

GENERAL PRINCIPLES

Obstetrical Anesthesia Services

Every obstetrician should be proficient in local and pudendal analgesia for select circumstances. However, it is preferable for

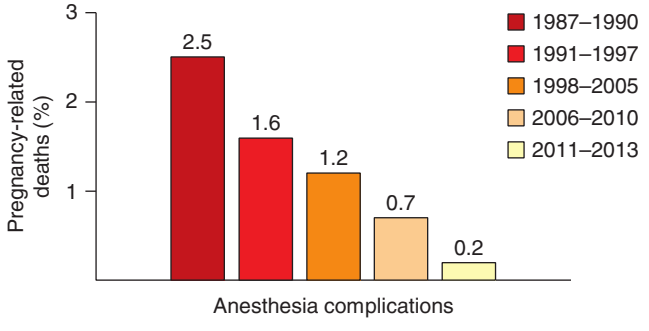


FIGURE 25-1 Contribution of anesthetic complications to pregnancy-associated deaths—United States, 1987–2013.

TABLE 25-1. Maternal Factors That May Prompt Anesthetic Consultation

Anatomical abnormalities of the face, neck, or spine
Thyromegaly
Cardiac, pulmonary, renal, hepatic, or neurological disease
Bleeding disorders
Prior anesthetic complications
Class III obesity (BMI ≥40 kg/m^2)
Obstetrical complications likely to lead to operative delivery
Severe pregnancy-associated hypertension
Obstetrical hemorrhage

BMI = body mass index.

an anesthesiologist or anesthetist to provide rapid and reliable pain relief to allow the obstetrician to focus attention on the laboring woman and her fetus.

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) and the American Society of Anesthesiologists (2016) have reaffirmed prior directives that a woman's request for labor pain relief is sufficient indication for its provision. Identification of any of the risk factors shown in Table 25-1 should prompt consultation and collaboration with anesthesia personnel. The resulting plan should ideally minimize the need for emergency anesthesia in this high-risk group.

Goals for optimizing obstetrical anesthesia services have been established by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) and the American Society of Anesthesiologists (2016). To achieve these goals, the following is a partial list of requisites:

1. Availability of a licensed practitioner credentialed to administer an appropriate anesthetic whenever necessary and to maintain support of vital functions in an obstetrical emergency
2. Availability of anesthesia personnel to permit the start of cesarean delivery within 30 minutes of the decision to perform the procedure (decision–incision time)
3. Anesthesia personnel immediately available to support an emergency cesarean delivery during the active labor of a woman attempting vaginal birth after prior cesarean (Chap. 31, p. 578)
4. Appointment of a qualified anesthesiologist to be responsible for all anesthetics administered
5. Availability of a qualified physician with obstetrical privileges to perform operative vaginal or cesarean delivery during anesthesia administration
6. Availability of equipment, facilities, and support personnel equal to that provided in a surgical suite
7. Immediate availability of personnel, other than the surgical team, to assume responsibility for resuscitation of a depressed newborn (Chap. 32, p. 586).

To meet these goals, 24-hour in-house anesthesia staffing is usually necessary. Providing such service in smaller facilities is more challenging. This is underscored by the fact that approximately 40 percent of all hospitals providing obstetrical care have fewer than 500 deliveries per year (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017). Bell and coworkers (2000) calculated the financial burden that may be incurred to provide 24/7 obstetrical anesthesia coverage. They concluded that such coverage could not operate profitably at their tertiary referral institution, given the average indemnity and Medicaid reimbursement for labor epidural analgesia. Compounding this burden, some third-party payers have denied reimbursement for epidural analgesia in the absence of a specific medical indication—an approach repudiated by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b).

■ Principles of Pain Relief

Labor pain caused by uterine contractions and cervical dilation is transmitted through visceral afferent sympathetic nerves entering the spinal cord from T_{10} through L_1. Later, perineal stretching transmits painful stimuli through the pudendal nerve and sacral nerves from S_2 through S_4. Cortical responses to pain and anxiety are complex and may be influenced by multiple factors.

Labor pain is a highly individual response to variable stimuli that are uniquely received and interpreted (Hawkins, 2010). These stimuli are modified by emotional, motivational, cognitive, social, and cultural circumstances. Specific modifiers are maternal expectations for her childbirth experience, age, antepartum labor education, and quality of emotional support. Major causes of dissatisfaction with pain relief are perceived labor pain and delay in ameliorating the pain (Yurashevich, 2019).

A mother's physiological responses to labor pain may influence maternal and fetal well-being and labor progress. First, a higher metabolic rate leads to more oxygen consumption and the resultant hyperventilation may induce hypocarbia. Second, the sympathetic nervous system response to pain leads to elevated circulating catecholamine levels. These in turn raise cardiac output and vascular resistance, which may raise maternal blood pressure. Catecholamines also directly can adversely affect uterine activity and uteroplacental blood flow. Last, pain, stress, and anxiety cause release of stress hormones such as cortisol and endorphins. Effective analgesia attenuates or eliminates these responses.

ANALGESIA AND SEDATION DURING LABOR

If uterine contractions cause discomfort, pain relief with a narcotic such as meperidine, plus an antiemetic tranquilizer such as promethazine, is appropriate. With a successful program of analgesia and sedation, discomfort usually is felt at the acme of a uterine contraction, and the mother can rest quietly between contractions. Appropriate drug selection and administration from the medications shown in Table 25-2 safely accomplishes these objectives.

■ Parenteral Agents

Meperidine and Promethazine

Meperidine, 50 to 100 mg, with promethazine, 25 mg, may be administered intramuscularly (IM) at intervals of 2 to

TABLE 25-2. Typical Parenteral Analgesic Agents for Labor Pain

Agent	Usual Dose	Frequency	Onset	Neonatal Half-Life
Meperidine	25–50 mg (IV) 50–100 mg (IM)	Every 1–2 hr Every 2–4 hr	5 min 30–45 min	~18–20 hr ~60 hr
Fentanyl	50–100 µg (IV)	Every 1 hr	1 min	~5 hr
Remifentanil	0.15–0.5 µg/kg (PCA)	Every 2 min	<1 min	10 min
Butorphanol	1–2 mg (IV or IM)	Every 4 hr	1–2 min (IV) 10–30 min (IM)	~5 hr
Morphine	2–5 mg (IV) 10 mg (IM)	Every 4 hr	5 min 30–40 min	~7 hr

IV = intravenously; IM = intramuscularly; PCA = patient-controlled analgesia.

4 hours. Analgesia is maximal 30 to 45 minutes after an IM injection. An almost immediate effect is achieved by giving meperidine intravenously (IV) in doses of 25 to 50 mg every 1 to 2 hours. In an earlier study, meperidine was found to be the most common opioid used worldwide for pain relief in labor (Bricker, 2002). Tsui and associates (2004) found meperidine to be superior to placebo for pain relief in the first stage of labor. In a randomized investigation at Parkland Hospital, IV patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) with meperidine was found to be an inexpensive and reasonably effective method for labor analgesia (Sharma, 1997). Women received 50-mg meperidine with 25-mg promethazine IV as an initial bolus. Thereafter, an infusion pump was set to deliver 15 mg of meperidine every 10 minutes as needed until delivery. Neonatal sedation, as measured by need for naloxone treatment in the delivery room, was identified in 3 percent of newborns.

Meperidine readily crosses the placenta, and its depressant effect in the fetus closely follows peak maternal analgesia. The active metabolite of meperidine, normeperidine, has a half-life of approximately 72 hours in the neonate. Therefore, other opioids discussed below are favored for labor analgesia. (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b).

Butorphanol

This synthetic opioid-receptor agonist-antagonist narcotic, given in 1- to 2-mg IV doses every 4 hours as needed, compares favorably with meperidine for labor analgesia. Its major side effects are somnolence, dizziness, and dysphoria. Neonatal respiratory depression is less than with meperidine. Importantly, the two drugs are not given contiguously because butorphanol antagonizes the narcotic effects of meperidine. Hatjis and Meis (1986) described a transient sinusoidal fetal heart rate pattern following butorphanol administration, but no short-term maternal or neonatal adverse sequelae were noted (Chap. 24, p. 451).

Fentanyl

This short-acting and potent synthetic opioid may be given in doses of 50 to 100 µg IV every hour. Its main disadvantage is a short duration of action, which requires frequent dosing or use of a PCA pump. Atkinson and coworkers (1994) reported that butorphanol provided better initial analgesia than fentanyl and was associated with fewer requests for additional medication or for epidural analgesia.

Remifentanil

This ultrashort-acting opioid can be given using a PCA pump (see Table 25-2). Remifentanil is administered through a dedicated IV cannula to avoid bolus dosing, which can lead to apnea. Both respiratory monitoring and 1:1 nursing-to-patient ratio help watch for apneic spells, which occur in 25 percent of treated women (Stocki, 2014). In the RemiPCA SAFE Network Study, moderate maternal hypoxia (SaO_2 <94 percent) was documented in a fourth of women (Melber, 2019). A multicenter randomized study showed PCA-administered remifentanil halved the proportion of women subsequently requesting epidural analgesia compared with IM meperidine (Wilson, 2018).

Parenteral Agent Safety

Parenteral sedation is not without risks. Hawkins and colleagues (1997) reported that 4 of 129 maternal anesthetic-related deaths were from such sedation. One was from aspiration, two from inadequate ventilation, and one from overdosage.

Narcotics used during labor may cause newborn respiratory depression. Naloxone is a narcotic antagonist capable of reversing respiratory depression induced by opioid narcotics. It acts by displacing the narcotic from specific receptors in the central nervous system. After adequate ventilation has been established, naloxone may be given to a newborn whose mother received narcotics. Naloxone is contraindicated in a newborn of a narcotic-addicted mother because withdrawal symptoms may be precipitated (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017).

■ Nitrous Oxide

A self-administered mixture of 50-percent nitrous oxide (N_2O) and oxygen may provide satisfactory analgesia during labor (Zafirova, 2018). Some preparations are premixed in a single cylinder (Entonox), and in others, a blender mixes the two gases from separate tanks (Nitronox). The gases are connected to a breathing circuit through a valve that opens only when the patient inspires. The use of intermittent nitrous oxide did not alter the rate of epidural analgesia but did improve birth experience satisfaction rates (Bobb, 2016; Lim, 2018). Maternal side effects include nausea, vomiting, dizziness, and drowsiness. Neonatal Apgar scores or umbilical cord blood gas results did not differ in women using

TABLE 25-3. Commonly Used Local Anesthetic Agents in Obstetrics

Anesthetic Agent[a]	Usual Concentration (%)	Usual Volume (mL)	Onset	Average Duration (min)	Maximum Dose (mg)	Clinical Use
Aminoesters[b]						
2-Chloroprocaine	2	10–20	Rapid	30–60	800	Local infiltration or pudendal block
	3	10–20		30–60		Epidural for cesarean or forceps delivery
Aminoamides[b]						
Bupivacaine	0.0625–0.125	5–10	Slow	60–90	175	Epidural for labor
	0.5	10–20		90–150		Epidural for cesarean
	0.75	1.5–2		60–120		Spinal for cesarean
Lidocaine	1–1.5	10–20	Rapid	30–60	300	Local infiltration or pudendal block
	1.5–2	5–20		60–90		Epidural for cesarean
	5	1.5–2		45–60		Spinal for D & C or puerperal tubal
Ropivacaine	0.08–0.2	5–10	Slow	60–90	200	Epidural for labor
	0.5–1	10–30		90–150	250	Epidural for cesarean

[a]Without epinephrine.
[b]Esters are hydrolyzed by plasma cholinesterases and amides by hepatic clearance.
D & C = dilation and curettage.
From Chestnut, 2020; Lin, 2017.

nitrous oxide compared with those selecting other pain management methods or no analgesia in labor (Likis, 2014).

NERVE BLOCKS

Various nerve blocks provide pain relief during labor and/or delivery. These include pudendal, paracervical, and neuraxial blocks such as spinal, epidural, dural-puncture epidural, and combined spinal-epidural techniques.

Anesthetic Agents

Commonly used nerve block anesthetics are summarized in Table 25-3. The dose of each agent varies widely and is dependent on the particular nerve block and physical status of the woman. The onset, duration, and quality of analgesia can be enhanced by increasing the anesthetic agent's dose, concentration, and volume or by altering its delivery mode. With their use, safety tenets include incremental boluses of the agent and carefully monitoring for early warning signs of adverse effects. Appropriate equipment and personnel to manage these reactions must be immediately available.

Local analgesic agents are manufactured in more than one concentration and ampule size, and this raises the potential for dosing errors. Most often, serious toxicity follows inadvertent intravenous, subarachnoid, or subdural injection. Systemic toxicity from local anesthetics typically manifests in the central nervous and cardiovascular systems. For this reason, before epidural analgesia is initiated, a mixture of a small amount of local anesthetic drug and epinephrine is given as a test dose. Epinephrine with its associated tachycardia is used as a marker to help identify incorrect placement if it occurs. A sudden significant elevation in the maternal heart rate or blood pressure within 1 to 2 minutes after administration suggests intravenous catheter placement. A block extending over wider than expected spinal levels and/or dense motor blockade indicate inadvertent catheter placement into the subarachnoid or into the subdural space.

Central Nervous System Toxicity

Early symptoms are those of *stimulation*, but as serum levels rise, *depression* follows. Symptoms may include lightheadedness, dizziness, tinnitus, metallic taste, and numbness of the tongue and mouth. Patients may also show bizarre behavior, slurred speech, and muscle fasciculation and excitation. Ultimately, generalized convulsions and loss of consciousness could result.

For neural and cardiac toxicity treatment, a rapid IV infusion of 20-percent intralipids effectively disassociates anesthetic drugs from neural and myocardial cell membranes. For patients weighing >70 kg, a 100-mL bolus dose of lipid emulsion is given. Boluses can be repeated once or twice every 5 minutes for persistent cardiac instability. The initial bolus is followed by a 200-mL infusion over 15 minutes (Neal, 2018).

For convulsions, an airway is established, and oxygen delivered. To halt seizures, lorazepam, 4 mg IV slowly, is administered and may be repeated once after 10 to 15 minutes. Alternatively, diazepam, 5 to 10 mg IV every 10 to 15 minutes up to a total dose of 30 mg, can be used. Succinylcholine abolishes the peripheral manifestations of the convulsions and allows tracheal intubation. Magnesium sulfate, administered according to the regimen for eclampsia, also controls convulsions (Chap. 41, p. 719).

Abnormal fetal heart rate patterns such as late decelerations or persistent bradycardia may develop from maternal hypoxia and lactic acidosis. With arrest of convulsions, oxygen administration, and other supportive measures, the fetus usually

recovers more quickly in utero than following immediate cesarean delivery. Moreover, the mother is better served if delivery is delayed until the intensity of hypoxia and metabolic acidosis has diminished.

Cardiovascular Toxicity

These manifestations generally develop later than those from cerebral toxicity, and they may not develop at all because they are induced by higher serum drug levels. The exception is bupivacaine, which is associated with the development of neurotoxicity and cardiotoxicity at virtually identical levels (Catterall, 2018). Fortunately, bupivacaine is mostly used in dilute epidural solutions, and use of 0.75-percent solution is limited to a small dose for spinal analgesia. Similar to neurotoxicity, cardiovascular toxicity is characterized first by stimulation and then by depression. Accordingly, hypertension and tachycardia are soon followed by hypotension, cardiac arrhythmias, and impaired uteroplacental perfusion. As before, 20-percent intralipids serve as the rescue.

Hypotension is managed initially by turning the woman onto either side to avoid aortocaval compression. A crystalloid solution is infused rapidly along with vasopressors. Emergency bedside cesarean delivery is considered if maternal vital signs have not been restored within 4 minutes of cardiac arrest, and the goal is delivery within 5 minutes (Chap. 50, p. 897). However, as with convulsions, the fetus is likely to recover more quickly in utero once maternal cardiac output is reestablished.

■ Pudendal Block

Pain with vaginal delivery arises from stimuli from the lower genital tract. These are transmitted primarily through the pudendal nerve, the peripheral branches of which provide sensory innervation to the perineum, anus, vulva, and clitoris (Chap. 2, p. 21). The pudendal nerve passes beneath the posterior surface of the sacrospinous ligament just as the ligament attaches to the ischial spine. Sensory nerve fibers of the pudendal nerve are derived from ventral branches of the S_2 through S_4 nerves.

The pudendal nerve block is a relatively safe, simple method of analgesia for vaginal delivery (Sultan, 2021). As shown in Figure 25-2, a tubular introducer is used to sheath and guide a 15-cm, 22-gauge needle into position near the pudendal nerve. The end of the introducer is placed against the vaginal mucosa just beneath the tip of the ischial spine. The introducer allows 1.0 to 1.5 cm of needle to protrude beyond its tip, and the needle is pushed beyond the introducer tip into the mucosa. A mucosal wheal is made with 1 mL of 1-percent lidocaine solution or an equivalent dose of another local anesthetic (see Table 25-3). To guard against intravascular infusion, aspiration is attempted before this and all subsequent injections. The needle is then advanced until it touches the sacrospinous ligament, which is infiltrated with 3 mL of lidocaine. The procedure is repeated on the other side.

Within 3 to 4 minutes of injection, the successful pudendal block will allow pinching of the lower vagina and posterior vulva without pain. If delivery occurs before the pudendal block becomes effective and an episiotomy is indicated, the fourchette, perineum, and adjacent vagina can be infiltrated with 5 to 10 mL of 1-percent lidocaine solution directly at the planned episiotomy site. The pudendal block usually has become effective by the time of repair.

The maximum recommended total dose of lidocaine is 4.5 mg/kg and not to exceed 300 mg (see Table 25-3). For a 50-kg woman, this would equal 225 mg (4.5 mg/kg × 50 kg). Thus, if 1-percent lidocaine is used, the calculated allowed amount would be: 225 mg ÷ 10 mg/mL = 22.5 mL. Of note, for any drug solution, 1 percent = 10 mg/mL.

Pudendal block usually does not provide adequate analgesia when delivery requires extensive obstetrical manipulation. Parenteral or neuraxial anesthesia is usually necessary when complete visualization of the cervix and upper vagina or manual exploration of the uterine cavity is indicated.

Infrequently, complications may follow this block. As previously described, intravascular injection of a local anesthetic agent may cause serious systemic toxicity. Hematoma formation from perforation of a blood vessel is most likely when there is a coagulopathy (Lee, 2004). The addition of a corticosteroid injected along with the local anesthetic did not decrease the incidence of pudendal neuralgia at 3 months (Labat, 2017). Rarely, severe infection may originate at the injection site. The infection may spread posteriorly to the hip joint, into the gluteal musculature, or into the retropsoas space (Svancarek, 1977).

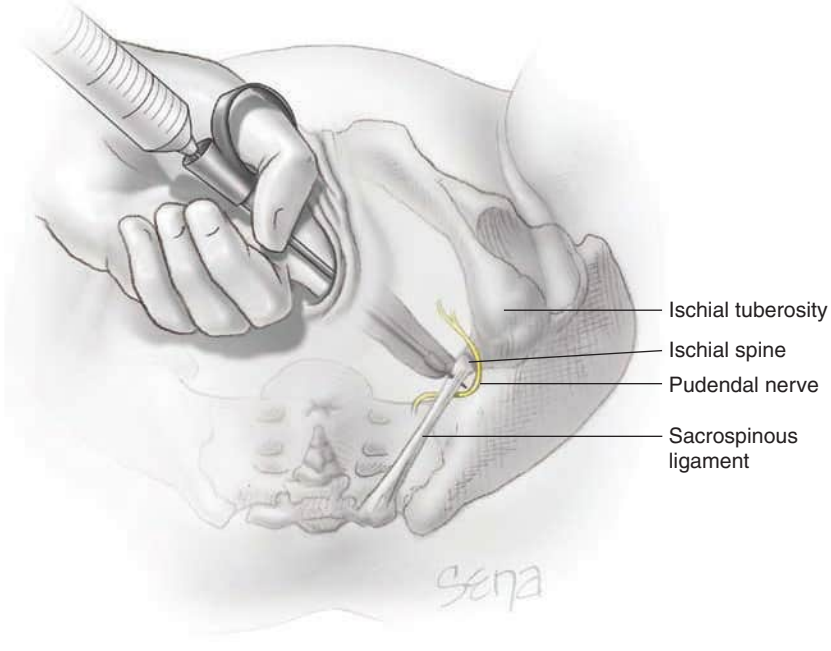


FIGURE 25-2 Local infiltration of the pudendal nerve. Transvaginal technique showing the needle extended beyond the needle guard and passing through the sacrospinous ligament to reach the pudendal nerve.

Paracervical Block

The cervix, vagina, and uterus are richly supplied by nerves of the uterovaginal plexus (Fig. 2-12, p. 25). This plexus lies within the connective tissue lateral to the uterosacral ligaments. Thus, injections are most effective if placed immediately lateral to the insertion of the uterosacral ligaments into the uterus (Rogers, 1998). For paracervical blockade, usually 1-percent lidocaine or 3-percent chloroprocaine, 5 to 10 mL, is injected into the cervix laterally at 4 and 8 o'clock positions. This block usually provides satisfactory pain relief during first-stage labor. However, because the pudendal nerves are not blocked, additional analgesia is required for delivery. The block may have to be repeated during labor because these anesthetics are relatively short acting.

Fetal bradycardia is a worrisome complication that develops in approximately 15 percent of these blocks (Rosen, 2002). Bradycardia usually develops within 10 minutes and may last up to 30 minutes. Doppler studies have shown an increase in the pulsatility index of the uterine arteries following paracervical blockade (Chap. 14, p. 262). These observations support the hypothesis of drug-induced arterial vasospasm as a cause of fetal bradycardia (Manninen, 2000). Thus, paracervical block should not be used in situations of potential fetal compromise. For all of these reasons, we do not use this block at Parkland Hospital.

NEURAXIAL ANALGESIA

Neuraxial Regional Blocks

Epidural, spinal, dural-puncture epidural, or combined spinal-epidural techniques are the most common methods used for relief of pain during labor and/or delivery in the United States. Nearly 75 percent of mothers receive neuraxial anesthesia for pain relief (Butwick, 2018a). Among first births, 68 percent of women who delivered vaginally received neuraxial pain relief compared with 57 percent of women delivering their second or higher number child. Antepartum education programs improve the understanding of labor analgesia and increase its use by 30 percent in Hispanic women who traditionally choose labor epidural analgesia less often (Togioka, 2019). Butwick and associates (2018b) showed women are more likely to receive neuraxial analgesia with higher class of obesity—class I, 72 percent; class II, 73 percent; and class III, 76 percent.

As a brief review, the epidural space lies just outside the dural sac. The dura mater encases the subarachnoid space, which contains the cauda equina of the spinal cord and cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) (Fig. 25-3). Spinal and intrathecal anesthesia are synonymous, and agents are injected into the subarachnoid space.

Epidural analgesia via a catheter in the epidural space is typically used for relief of labor pain, although it can also be used for *anesthesia* during operative vaginal and cesarean delivery. *Spinal analgesia* is typically given as a single intrathecal injection of a local anesthetic at the time of operative vaginal or cesarean delivery. Variations of these two basic approaches are described in the subsequent sections.

Spinal (Subarachnoid) Block

Introduction of a local anesthetic into the subarachnoid space to effect analgesia offers a short procedural time, rapid blockade onset, and high success rate of inducing analgesia. The subarachnoid space is smaller during pregnancy likely because of internal vertebral venous plexus engorgement (see Fig. 25-3A). As a result, compared with nonpregnant women, the same amount of anesthetic agent in the same volume of solution produces a higher-level blockade in parturients.

Vaginal Delivery

Spinal analgesia involving only lower spinal levels can be used for operative vaginal delivery. The level of analgesia should extend to the T_{10} dermatome, which corresponds to the level of the umbilicus. Blockade to this level provides excellent relief from the pain of uterine contractions. The spinal block provides also excellent analgesia to the lower uterine segment, vagina, and perineum.

Several local anesthetic agents have been used for spinal analgesia (see Table 25-3). Addition of dextrose to any of these agents creates a hyperbaric solution, which is heavier and denser than CSF. A sitting position causes a hyperbaric solution to settle caudally, whereas a lateral position will have a greater effect on the dependent side. Lidocaine given in a hyperbaric solution produces excellent analgesia and has the advantage of a rapid onset and relatively short duration. Isobaric bupivacaine provides satisfactory analgesia for more than 1 hour. Single-dose spinal analgesia is usually administered when the cervix is fully dilated, and all other criteria for safe operative vaginal delivery have been fulfilled (Chap. 29, p. 533). Preanalgesic IV hydration with 1 L of crystalloid solution will prevent or minimize hypotension in many cases.

Cesarean Delivery

A level of sensory blockade extending to the T_4 dermatome is desired for cesarean delivery. A dose of 10 to 12 mg of bupivacaine in a hyperbaric solution is administered. The addition of 20 to 25 μg of fentanyl improves the quality and prolongs the duration of the spinal block, reduces shivering, and minimizes referred pain. In addition, 0.1 to 0.2 mg of intrathecal morphine can be added for pain control postoperatively.

With intrathecal morphine, the risk for respiratory depression should be considered. The Society of Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology recommends postoperative respiratory monitoring based on dose, patient risk factors, and perioperative risk factors. A low-dose regimen, defined as >50 μg and ≤ 150 μg, in women with no risk factors requires respiratory rate and sedation checks postoperatively for the first 12 hours. In women with additional risk factors, these safeguards are conducted postoperatively for the first 24 hours, and additional monitoring with pulse oximetry or capnography is considered. Last, this monitoring method is also recommended in all women receiving doses >150 μg (Bauchat, 2019).

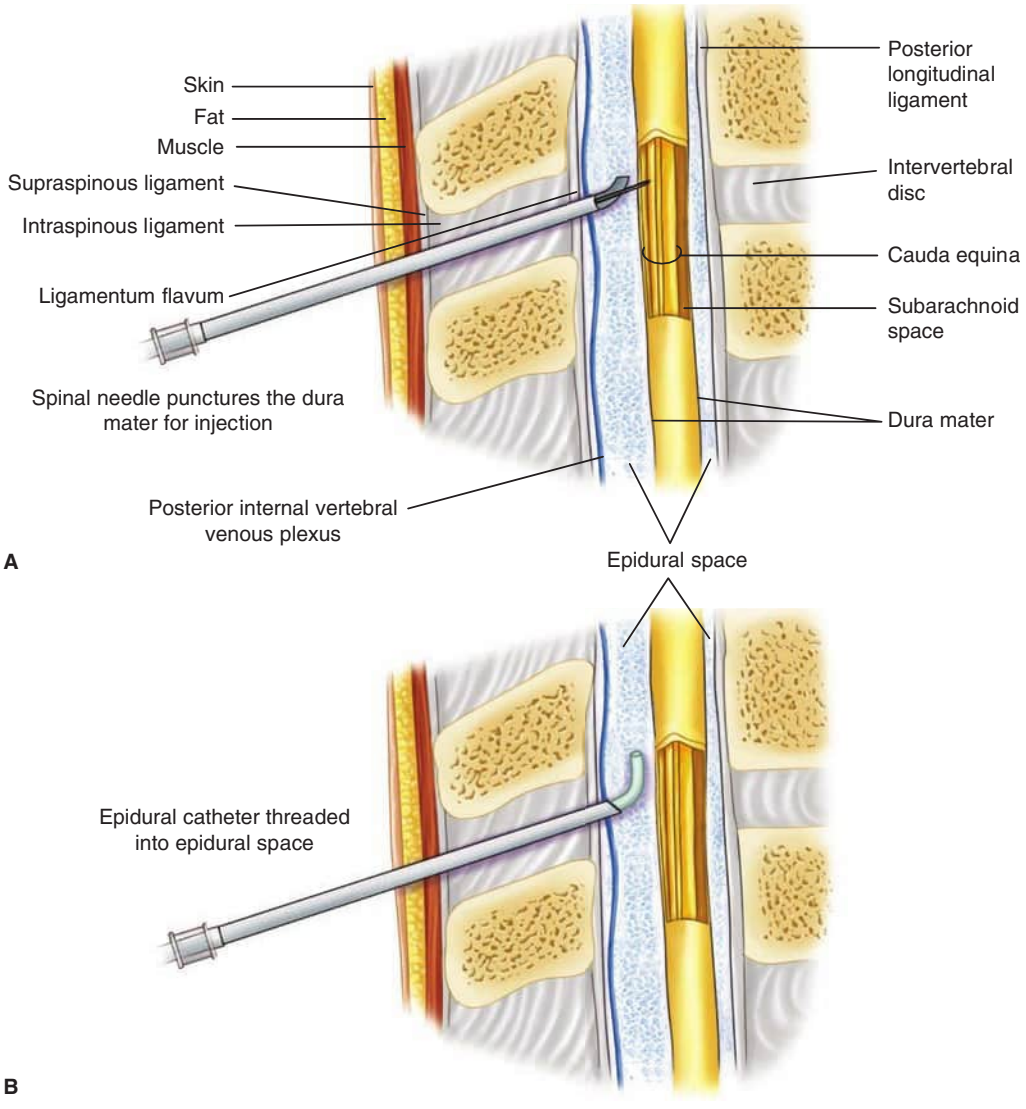


FIGURE 25-3 Neuraxial analgesia. **A.** Combined spinal-epidural analgesia. **B.** Epidural analgesia.

Complications

Shown in Table 25-4 are some of the more common complications associated with neuraxial analgesia.

Hypotension. This common complication may develop soon after injection of the local anesthetic agent. It stems from vasodilation caused by sympathetic blockade and is compounded by obstructed venous return due to uterine compression of the vena cava. In the supine position, even in the absence of maternal hypotension, placental blood flow may still be significantly diminished. Treatment includes uterine displacement by left lateral patient positioning, rapid IV crystalloid infusion, and IV vasopressors.

One systematic review concluded that vasopressors should be given only in the setting of hypotension (Fitzgerald, 2020). For treatment, phenylephrine is now the preferred drug to treat hypotension from neuraxial analgesia. It is a pure alpha agonist and raises blood pressure solely through vasoconstriction. Maternal bradycardia develops more frequently with

TABLE 25-4. Complications of Neuraxial Analgesia

Fever >38°C
Hypotension—highest with spinal analgesia (~50%)
Fetal heart rate abnormalities
High spinal level
Increased QT interval—with spinal analgesia in postterm pregnancies
Inadequate analgesia (~10%)
Postdural puncture headache (1–3%)
Nerve injury—arachnoiditis
Pruritus—with addition of opioids

From American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b; American Society of Anesthesiologists, 2016; D'Angelo, 2014; Karahan, 2020; Maronge, 2018.

phenylephrine than with ephedrine or norepinephrine (Sharkey, 2019; Veeser, 2012). Although ephedrine was believed to correct hypotension without reducing blood flow, phenylephrine is associated with better umbilical cord blood gases (Ngan Kee, 2017). A metaanalysis of 36 randomized trials also suggests that both agents have comparable efficacy but that phenylephrine yields a lower rate of fetal acidosis (Xu, 2018). For administration, prophylactic infusions of phenylephrine are effective and may require less physician intervention compared with intermittent boluses (Ngan Kee, 2004). As another potential agent, norepinephrine may improve cardiac output with its beta-adrenergic effects but also is associated with a lower cord arterial pH compared with phenylephrine (Chen, 2021; Mohta, 2019).

High Spinal Blockade. Most often, complete spinal blockade follows administration of an excessive dose of local anesthetic. However, it can also develop with inadvertent delivery of a small amount of local anesthetic drugs into the subdural space. This small potential space lies between the dura mater and arachnoid mater and outside the subarachnoid space. Because of its limited capacity, even small volumes will reach higher spinal levels. Hypotension and apnea develop quickly and must be immediately treated to prevent cardiac arrest. In the undelivered woman: (1) the uterus is immediately displaced laterally to minimize aortocaval compression, (2) effective ventilation is established, preferably with tracheal intubation, and (3) IV fluids and vasopressors are given to correct hypotension.

Postdural Puncture Headache. Leakage of CSF from the dural puncture site can lead to postdural puncture headache. Presumably, when the woman sits or stands, the diminished CSF volume creates traction on pain-sensitive central nervous system structures. An alternative mechanism is compensatory cerebral vasodilation in response to CSF loss—the *Monro-Kellie hypothesis* (Mokri, 2001).

The incidence of obstetrical postdural puncture headache in women undergoing spinal analgesia ranges from 0.2 to 1 percent (Maronge, 2012; Sprigge, 2008). This rate is similar to the overall occurrence of postdural puncture headaches, which approximates 1 headache per 200 blocks. A study of 567 postpartum hospital encounters showed that 40 percent of presentations for headache are due to neuraxial anesthesia, and these visits most often occur within 7 days of delivery (Rodriguez, 2020).

Procedural preventive steps include using a small-gauge spinal needle and avoiding multiple punctures. In a prospective, randomized study of five different spinal needles, Sprotte and Whitacre needles had the lowest risks of associated postdural puncture headaches (Vallejo 2000). Rates are high with inadvertent dural puncture during epidural analgesia and approximate 0.2 to 1 percent (Introna, 2012; Maronge, 2018). No strong evidence supports placing a woman flat on her back or providing vigorous hydration to prevent headache (Arevalo-Rodriguez, 2016). A prophylactic blood patch performed within 24 hours of dural puncture does not diminish either the incidence of postdural puncture headache or the need for a subsequent therapeutic blood patch (Scavone, 2004).

If a headache develops, administration of caffeine, which is a cerebral vasoconstrictor, has limited efficacy (Katz, 2017). With severe headache, an *epidural blood patch* is most effective and preferred treatment. Autologous blood is obtained aseptically by venipuncture, and 10 to 20 mL is injected into the epidural space at or below the site of dural puncture. This site is selected because the blood will spread more readily in the cephalad direction. Further CSF leakage is halted by either mass effect or clot formation. Relief is immediate, and complications are uncommon.

If a headache does not have the pathognomonic postural characteristics or persists despite treatment with a repeat blood patch, other diagnoses should be considered. Chisholm and Campbell (2001) described a case of superior sagittal sinus thrombosis that manifested as a postural headache. Chan and Paech (2004) reported persistent CSF leak in three women. Smarkusky and colleagues (2006) described pneumocephalus, which caused immediate cephalgia. Last, intracranial and intraspinal subarachnoid hematomas have developed after spinal analgesia (Bi, 2021; Maronge, 2018; Moore, 2019).

Convulsions. Rarely, postdural puncture cephalgia is associated with temporary blindness and convulsions. Shearer and associates (1995) described eight such cases in 19,000 regional analgesia procedures done at Parkland Hospital. It is presumed that these also are caused by hypotension from CSF leak. Immediate treatment of seizures and epidural blood patch were usually effective.

Bladder Dysfunction. With neuraxial analgesia, bladder sensation is likely to be obtunded and bladder emptying impaired for several hours after delivery. As a consequence, bladder distention is a frequent postpartum complication, especially if appreciable volumes of IV fluid are given. Millet (2012) randomized 146 women with neuraxial analgesia to either intermittent or continuous bladder catheterizations and found that the intermittent method was associated with significantly greater rates of bacteriuria.

Arachnoiditis and Meningitis. Local anesthetics used for neuraxial blocks are required to be free of methylparaben or other preservatives. This practice, coupled with aseptic technique and disposable equipment, has made meningitis and arachnoiditis rare (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2010; Maronge, 2018).

Contraindications to Spinal Analgesia

Shown in Table 25-5 are absolute contraindications to spinal analgesia. Obstetrical complications that are associated with maternal hypovolemia and hypotension—for example, severe hemorrhage—are contraindications to spinal blockade. The additive deleterious cardiovascular effects of spinal blockade plus acute blood loss in nonpregnant patients have been documented (Kennedy, 1968).

Severe preeclampsia is another obstetrical complication in which decreased blood pressure can be encountered when neuraxial analgesia is used (Wallace, 1995). These effects are mitigated by judicial dosing of anesthetic solutions. Perhaps related, Ulubaşoğlu and colleagues (2018) reported that preeclamptic

TABLE 25-5. Absolute Contraindications to Spinal Analgesia

Refractory hypotension
Maternal coagulopathy
Thrombocytopenia <70,000/μL
Untreated maternal bacteremia
Skin infection at site of needle placement
Increased intracranial pressure
Prophylactic low-molecular-weight heparin within 12 hours

women undergoing general anesthesia required more antihypertensive medication than those with spinal analgesia.

Disorders of coagulation that result in poor hemostasis also preclude the use of neuraxial analgesia. Women with a bleeding diathesis such as von Willebrand disease or hemophilias carry an increased risk for subarachnoid hematoma formation (Chap. 59, p. 1062). Rare subdural hematomas may mimic postdural puncture headaches (Lim, 2016). However, neuraxial analgesia can be safely performed in these patients following factor replacement and normalization of levels (Choi, 2009; Katz, 2015). As discussed earlier, these patients should receive consultation with an anesthesiologist prior to labor.

The use of anticoagulation to prevent or treat venous thromboembolism is frequently encountered during the peripartum period. No randomized studies guide the management of anticoagulation at the time of delivery, but consensus opinion is provided by the Society for Anesthesia and Perinatology (Leffert, 2018). Briefly, women receiving >10,000 units/d of unfractionated heparin are individually assessed regarding timing and dose of last injection. Thromboprophylaxis with low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH) should have a 12-hour delay. Therapeutic doses of LMWH merit a 24-hour delay. This is discussed further in Chapter 55 (p. 985). Spinal analgesia is also contraindicated if there is infection at the needle entry site.

Other maternal conditions may pose relative contraindications to neuraxial analgesia. Many women with neurological disorders such as Chiari malformation or pseudotumor cerebri may be candidates for neuraxial analgesia after consultation with an anesthesiologist and neurologist. Women with severe aortic stenosis or pulmonary hypertension also have a relative contraindication to spinal analgesia due to the deleterious effects of hypotension and diminished preload and afterload (Chap. 52, p. 926).

■ Epidural Analgesia

Relief of labor and childbirth pain, including cesarean delivery, can be accomplished by injection of a local anesthetic agent into the epidural space (see Fig. 25-3B). This potential space contains areolar tissue, fat, lymphatics, and the internal vertebral venous plexus. Entry for obstetrical analgesia is usually through a lumbar intervertebral space. Although only one injection may be given, usually an indwelling catheter is placed for subsequent bolus administration or continuous infusion (Billingham, 2018). Infusions use a volumetric pump controlled either by the patient or by a caregiver. Under appropriate physician supervision, labor and delivery nursing personnel with specific training in the management of epidural infusions should be able to adjust dosage and also discontinue infusions.

■ Continuous Lumbar Epidural Analgesia

Complete analgesia for the pain of labor and vaginal delivery necessitates a block from the T_{10} to the S_4 dermatomes. For cesarean delivery, a block extending from the T_4 to the S_1 dermatomes is desired. The effective spread of anesthetic depends upon the catheter tip location and the dose, concentration, and volume of anesthetic agent used. Individual variations in anatomy or synechiae or septa in the epidural space may preclude a completely satisfactory block. Last, the catheter tip may migrate from its original location during labor.

Technique

One example of the sequential steps and techniques for performance of epidural analgesia is detailed in Table 25-6. Before injection of the local anesthetic therapeutic dose, a test dose is given containing small amounts of lidocaine and epinephrine. The woman is observed for features of toxicity from intravascular injection and for signs of either subarachnoid or subdural injection. If these are absent, analgesia is initiated with a full dose of the anesthetic alone. Analgesia is maintained by a continuous infusion or by programmed intermittent boluses delivered by infusion pump (Billingham, 2018). The addition of a short-acting, lipid-soluble narcotic—fentanyl or sufentanil—lowers the required amount of local anesthetic drug needed to achieve analgesia. This helps preserve motor function (Lyons, 1997). One popular regimen is 0.0625- to 0.125-percent bupivacaine with 2-μg/mL fentanyl.

As with spinal blockade, close monitoring, including the level of analgesia, must be performed by trained personnel. Appropriate resuscitation equipment, drugs, and personnel must be available during administration of epidural analgesia.

Complications

As shown in Table 25-4, certain problems are inherent to epidural analgesia.

High Spinal Blockade. Dural puncture with inadvertent and unrecognized either subarachnoid or subdural injection may cause total spinal blockade. In a study of more than 18,000 women, the incidence of recognized accidental dural puncture at the time of epidural analgesia was 0.91 percent (Sprigge, 2008). Management of this complication is described earlier (p. 474).

Ineffective Analgesia. Using currently popular continuous or intermittent epidural infusion regimens, 90 percent of women rate their pain relief as good to excellent (Sharma, 1997). In a study of almost 2000 parturients, Hess and associates (2001) found that 12 percent complained of three or more episodes of

TABLE 25-6. Technique for Labor Epidural Analgesia

Obtain informed consent and consult the obstetrician
Monitoring includes the following:
Blood pressure every 1–2 minutes for 15 minutes after giving a bolus of local anesthetic
Continuous maternal heart rate monitoring during analgesia induction
Continuous fetal heart rate monitoring
Continual verbal communication
Hydration with 500–1000 mL of Ringer lactate solution
The woman assumes a lateral decubitus or sitting position
The epidural space is identified by the needle's loss of resistance during insertion
The epidural catheter is threaded 3–5 cm into the epidural space
After a negative aspiration, a test dose of 3 mL of 1.5% lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine is injected between contractions. Epinephrine is injected after careful aspiration to avert intravascular injection and after a uterine contraction. This minimizes the chance of confusing tachycardia that results from labor pain with that of tachycardia from intravenous injection of the test dose.
A positive test dose manifests as symptoms of an intravascular injection of lidocaine and epinephrine, which are tinnitus, circumoral numbness, dizziness, heart rate increase >20 bpm in 1 minute. Another potential symptom is an inability to raise the lower extremities against gravity in 4 min, which reflects the effects of a subarachnoid space injection.
If the test dose is negative, 10–15 mL of 0.0625–0.125% bupivacaine are injected to achieve a sensory T_{10} level
After 15–20 minutes, the block is assessed using loss of sensation to cold or pinprick. If no block is evident, the catheter is replaced. If the block is asymmetrical, the epidural catheter is withdrawn 0.5–1.0 cm and an additional 3–5 mL of 0.25% bupivacaine is injected. If the block remains inadequate, the catheter is replaced.
The woman is positioned in the lateral or semilateral position to avoid aortocaval compression
Subsequently, maternal blood pressure is recorded every 5–15 minutes. The fetal heart rate is monitored continuously
The level of analgesia and intensity of motor blockade are assessed at least hourly

pain or pressure. Its efficacy was more likely to decrease with rising body mass index (Dresner, 2006). Inadequate analgesia may result in patient dissatisfaction. Catheter replacement should be considered.

Moreover, a poorly functioning epidural catheter cannot be used for additional dosing of local anesthetic drugs for intrapartum cesarean delivery. Such conversion of labor epidural analgesia to cesarean delivery anesthesia has an approximately 20 percent failure rate. This necessitates placement of a new regional block or general anesthesia (Mankowitz, 2016). In a Maternal Fetal Medicine Units (MFMU) Network study, 4 percent of women initially given epidural analgesia required a general anesthetic for cesarean delivery (Bloom, 2005).

Also at times, perineal analgesia for vaginal delivery is difficult to obtain, especially when lower volumes of epidural local anesthetic drugs are used. With this situation, additional doses can be given, or a pudendal block may be added.

Hypotension. Sympathetic blockade from epidurally injected analgesic agents may cause peripheral vasodilation with resulting hypotension and diminished cardiac output. Hypotension is more common—20 percent—in women with an admission pulse pressure <45 mm Hg compared with 6 percent in those whose pulse pressure is >45 mm Hg (Miller, 2013). Pulse pressure is calculated by subtracting diastolic from systolic blood pressure measurements. Obese women also have significantly higher rates of hypotension (Vricella, 2011). In normal gravidas, hypotension induced by epidural analgesia usually can be prevented by rapid IV infusion of 500 to 1000 mL of crystalloid solution as described for spinal analgesia. Maintaining a lateral position also minimizes hypotension. Despite these precautions, hypotension is the most frequent side effect and is severe enough to require treatment in a third of women (Sharma, 1997).

Central Nervous Stimulation. Convulsions are an uncommon but serious complication. Described earlier, the immediate management involves infusion of 20-percent intralipids and treatment with lorazepam or diazepam (p. 470).

Fever. Some women develop intrapartum fever following epidural analgesia. Many studies are limited by the inability to control for other risk factors, such as labor length, duration of ruptured membranes, and number of vaginal examinations. With this in mind, the frequency of intrapartum fever associated with epidural analgesia is 10 to 15 percent above the baseline rate (Lieberman, 2002).

The two general theories concerning the etiology of maternal hyperthermia are *maternal-fetal infection* or *dysregulation of body temperature* (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b). A study of placental histopathology in women given epidural analgesia identified intrapartum fever only when there was placental inflammation (Dashe, 1999). This suggests that fever is due to infection. Sharma (2014) randomized 400 nulliparas with labor epidural analgesia to receive 2 g cefoxitin prophylactically versus placebo. It was hypoth-

esized that epidural-related fever was due to infection and that prophylactic antimicrobials should significantly reduce the rate of fever. Approximately equal proportions—40 percent—of women developed fever ≥38°C during labor. This result suggests that infection is unlikely to cause the fever associated with epidural analgesia during labor. Whatever the mechanism, women with persistent fever are usually treated with antimicrobials for presumed chorioamnionitis.

The other proposed mechanisms include alteration of the hypothalamic thermoregulatory set point, impaired peripheral thermoreceptor input to the central nervous system with selective blockade of warm stimuli, or imbalance between heat production and heat loss. Del Arroyo and colleagues (2019) suggested that bupivacaine blocks release of antipyretic interleukins.

Back Pain. An association between epidural analgesia and back pain has been reported by some. In a prospective cohort study, Butler and Fuller (1998) reported that back pain after delivery was common with epidural analgesia, however, persistent pain was infrequent. Based on their systematic review, Lieberman and O'Donoghue (2002) concluded that available data do not support an association between epidural analgesia and development of de novo, long-term backache.

Miscellaneous Complications. A spinal or epidural hematoma is a rare complication of an epidural catheter (Grant, 2007). These are considered neurological emergencies, and treatment is usually surgical. Epidural abscesses are rare, and the most common pathogen is *Staphylococcus aureus* (McQuaid, 2018). These may be managed conservatively with IV antibiotics, but surgical intervention may be necessary. For both conditions, timely neurosurgical consultation is important. Uncommonly, the plastic epidural catheter is sheared off (Noblett, 2007). Computed tomography can localize the retained fragment. For a tip left in the epidural space, surveillance is reasonable in the absence of symptoms. With neurological changes or with fragments in the subarachnoid space, neurosurgical consultation is recommended (Mitra, 2007). Last, an association of epidural analgesia and autism spectrum disorder seems unlikely (Mikkelsen, 2021).

Effect on Labor

Most studies, including five combined randomized trials from Parkland Hospital shown in Table 25-7, report that epidural analgesia prolongs labor and increases the use of oxytocin stimulation (Sharma, 2004). Alexander and associates (2002) examined the effects of epidural analgesia on the Friedman (1955) labor curve (Chap. 22, p. 424). There were 459 nulliparas randomly assigned to receive patient-controlled epidural analgesia or patient-controlled IV meperidine. Compared with original Friedman criteria, epidural analgesia prolonged the active phase of labor by 1 hour. In a cohort study, similar labor durations were observed for both spinal-epidural and epidural analgesia (Poma, 2019).

The effect of labor epidural on the second stage is unclear. Prolongation of the second stage was particularly true in earlier studies, at a time when higher concentrations of local anesthetic drugs were used. This association has been attributed to local-anesthetic-induced motor blockade and resultant impaired maternal expulsive efforts. Chestnut and associates (1999) reported that, with epidural analgesia, operative vaginal delivery occurred more frequently because of prolonged second-stage labor. In a systematic review, Anim-Somuah and colleagues (2018) reported that epidural analgesia prolongs the first stage by 32 minutes and the second stage by 15 minutes. Craig and coworkers (2015) randomly assigned 310 nulliparous women with labor epidural analgesia to receive 0.125-percent bupivacaine plus fentanyl or epidural fentanyl alone during second-stage labor. Epidural bupivacaine analgesia did cause motor blockade during the second stage, however, the duration of the second stage was not longer. Neither obstetrical nor neonatal outcomes were different between the two groups. Patient satisfaction was high with both methods.

TABLE 25-7. Selected Labor Events in 2703 Nulliparous Women Randomized to Epidural Analgesia or Intravenous Meperidine Analgesia

Event[a]	Epidural Analgesia n = 1339	Intravenous Meperidine n = 1364	*p* value
Labor outcomes			
First-stage duration (hr)[b]	8.1 ± 5	7.5 ± 5	0.011
Second-stage duration (min)	60 ± 56	47 ± 57	<0.001
Oxytocin after analgesia	641 (48)	546 (40)	<0.001
Type of delivery			
SVD	1027 (77)	1122 (82)	<0.001
Forceps	172 (13)	101 (7)	<0.001
Cesarean	140 (10.5)	141 (10.3)	0.92

[a]Data are presented as n (%) or mean ± SD.
[b]First stage = initiation of analgesia to complete cervical dilation.
SVD = spontaneous vaginal delivery.

Fetal Heart Rate. Hill and associates (2003) examined the effects of epidural analgesia with 0.25-percent bupivacaine on fetal heart rate patterns. Compared with IV meperidine, no worrisome effects were identified. Reduced beat-to-beat variability and fewer accelerations were more common in fetuses whose mothers received meperidine (Chap. 24, p. 450). Based on their systematic review, Reynolds and coworkers (2002) reported that epidural analgesia was associated with improved neonatal acid-base status compared with meperidine.

Cesarean Delivery Rates. A contentious issue in the past was whether epidural analgesia increased the risk for cesarean delivery. Early evidence that it did was from an era when dense motor blockade resulted from high concentrations of local

TABLE 25-8. Cesarean Delivery (CD) Rates in Laboring Women Receiving Epidural Analgesia or Intravenous Meperidine

Study	Odds Ratio[a]	CD Incidence Higher with
Ramin (1995)	1.20 (0.73–1.97)	Epidural
Sharma (1997)	0.77 (0.31–1.91)	Meperidine
Gambling (1998)	1.13 (0.65–1.97)	Epidural
Lucas (2001)	1.05 (0.68–1.63)	Epidural
Sharma (2002)	0.81 (0.41–1.61)	Meperidine
Adjusted	1.04 (0.81–1.34)	

[a]Shown with 95-percent confidence intervals.

anesthetic agents. Now however, with the administration of *dilute* anesthetic solutions, the risk for cesarean delivery is not increased.

Several studies conducted at Parkland Hospital were designed to answer this and related questions. From 1995 to 2002, a total of 2703 nulliparas at term and in spontaneous labor were enrolled in five trials to evaluate epidural analgesia techniques compared with IV meperidine. The results from these are summarized in Table 25-8 and show that epidural analgesia does not significantly raise cesarean delivery rates (Sharma, 2004). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) and the American Society of Anesthesiologists (2016) also conclude that epidural analgesia is not associated with a greater cesarean delivery rate.

Timing of Epidural Placement. Earlier studies indicated that epidural placement in early labor was linked to a higher risk of cesarean delivery (Lieberman, 1996; Rogers, 1999; Seyb, 1999). These observations prompted at least five randomized trials, which showed that the timing of epidural placement has no effect on the risk of cesarean birth, forceps delivery, or fetal malposition (Chestnut, 1994a,b; Luxman, 1998; Ohel, 2006; Wong, 2005, 2009). Thus, withholding epidural placement until some arbitrary cervical dilation has been attained serves only to deny women maximal labor pain relief.

Safety

Among nearly 20,000 women who received epidural analgesia in the MFMU Network study cited earlier, no anesthesia-related maternal deaths were reported (Bloom, 2005). Ruppen and colleagues (2006) reviewed data from 27 studies involving 1.4 million pregnant women who received epidural analgesia. Their calculated adverse-event rates were 1:145,000 for deep epidural infection, 1:168,000 for epidural hematoma, and 1:240,000 for persistent neurological injury. More recently, the Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology established the Serious Complication Repository Project (D'Angelo, 2014). During a 5-year period, more than 228,000 women had neuraxial analgesia. There were no maternal deaths related to anesthesia, but two each were attributed to cardiac arrest and myocardial infarction. There were four cases of epidural abscess or meningitis, 58 high-spinal-level neuraxial blocks (1 in 4000), 27 neurological injuries, and 16 respiratory arrests (1 in 10,000).

Contraindications

As with spinal analgesia, contraindications are listed in Table 25-5.

Thrombocytopenia. Although low platelet counts are intuitively worrisome, the level at which epidural bleeding *might* develop is unknown. Epidural hematomas are rare, and their incidence was estimated to be 0 to 0.6 percent in women whose platelet count is <70,000/μL (Goodier, 2015; Lee, 2017). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) and Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatalogy (Bauer, 2021) have concluded that women with a platelet count of ≥70,000/μL may be candidates for neuraxial analgesia.

Anticoagulation. Women receiving anticoagulation therapy who are given regional analgesia are at increased risk for spinal cord hematoma and compression (Chap. 55, p. 985). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) has concluded the following:

1. With prophylactic unfractionated heparin (UFH) in a dose of 5000 units twice daily, regional analgesia is not contraindicated.
2. With an intermediate dose of UFH (7500 to 10,000 units), it is likely low risk to proceed with neuraxial analgesia at a point more than 12 hours after the last dose.
3. With a high dose of UFH (>20,000 units), it is likely low risk to use regional analgesia at a point more than 24 hours after the last dose if the activate partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) is within normal range or the anti-Xa level is undetectable.
4. With thromboprophylaxis with LMWH, needle or catheter placement or removal should be delayed 12 hours or more.
5. With treatment doses of LMWH, placement or removal of a neuraxial catheter should be delayed for 24 hours.

Severe Preeclampsia-Eclampsia. Concerns with neuraxial analgesia in women with severe preeclampsia include hypotension as well as hypertension from pressor agents given to correct hypotension. Additionally, pulmonary edema may follow infusion of large volumes of crystalloid. These risks are outweighed by the disadvantages of general anesthesia (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologist, 2020). Of these, tracheal intubation may be difficult because of upper airway edema. Also, general anesthesia can lead to severe, sudden hypertension that can cause pulmonary or cerebral edema or intracranial hemorrhage.

With improved techniques for infusion of dilute local anesthetics into the epidural space, most have come to favor epidural blockade for labor and delivery in women with severe preeclampsia. In a study from Parkland Hospital, Lucas and associates (2001) randomly assigned 738 women with hypertension to epidural analgesia or patient-controlled IV analgesia during labor. A standardized protocol for prehydration,

incremental epidural administration, and ephedrine use was employed. They concluded that labor epidural analgesia was safe in women with hypertensive disorders.

Thrombocytopenia is seen with severe preeclampsia complicated by hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count—HELLP syndrome (Chap. 40, p. 689). Discussed earlier and in general, it seems safe to use neuraxial techniques if the platelet count is ≥70,000/μL (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b, 2020).

Women with severe preeclampsia can have remarkably diminished intravascular volume compared with normal pregnancy (Zeeman, 2009). Conversely, total body water volume is increased because of the capillary leak caused by endothelial cell activation (Chap. 40, p. 693). This imbalance is manifested as pathological peripheral edema, proteinuria, ascites, and total lung water. For all of these reasons, aggressive volume replacement raises the risk for pulmonary edema, especially in the first 72 hours postpartum (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b). In one study, 3.5 percent of women with severe preeclampsia developed pulmonary edema when preloaded without a protocol limit to the volume infused (Hogg, 1999).

The risk of pulmonary edema can be reduced or obviated with judicious prehydration—usually with 500 to 1000 mL of crystalloid solution. Specifically, in the study by Lucas and colleagues (2001) cited earlier, no instances of pulmonary edema developed among the women in whom the infused crystalloid preload volume was limited to 500 mL. Moreover, vasodilation produced by epidural blockade is less abrupt if the analgesia level is achieved slowly with dilute solutions of local anesthetic agents.

With vigorous IV crystalloid therapy, cerebral edema also may develop (Chap. 40, p. 701. Last, most cases of pharyngolaryngeal edema are related to aggressive volume therapy (Heller, 1983).

Epidural Opioid Analgesia

Opioids alone usually will not provide adequate analgesia, and they are often used as an adjunct to a local anesthetic agent such as bupivacaine (Wang, 2020). This combination lowers the local anesthetic drug concentration needed to achieve analgesia, which in turn creates a less dense motor blockade. Other benefits are rapid onset of pain relief and a decrease in shivering. Common side effects include pruritus and urinary retention. Nalbuphine, a mixed opioid agonist/antagonist, will abolish these symptoms without affecting the analgesic action. When neuraxial morphine is given for postoperative pain, monitoring for respiratory depression is necessary as discussed earlier (p. 472) (Bauchat, 2019).

Combined Spinal–Epidural Techniques

The combination of spinal and epidural techniques (CSE) has risen in popularity and may provide rapid and effective analgesia for labor and then for cesarean delivery. An epidural needle is first placed in the epidural space. A small-gauge spinal needle is then introduced through the epidural needle into the subarachnoid space—this is called the *needle-through-needle technique* (see Fig. 25-3A). A single bolus of an opioid, a local anesthetic, or sometimes a combination is injected into the subarachnoid space. A subarachnoid opioid bolus results in the rapid onset of profound pain relief with virtually no motor blockade (Poma, 2019). The spinal needle is withdrawn, and an epidural catheter is then placed into the epidural space. The epidural catheter remains and permits repeated analgesia dosing.

Miro and associates (2008) compared epidural analgesia with CSE analgesia for labor in 6497 women and found the overall outcomes and complications to be similar. Poma and coworkers (2019) also found comparable analgesia results with epidural or CSE techniques. They noted that subarachnoid sufentanil was associated with lower uterine contractility, but labor duration was not affected. A greater incidence of fetal heart rate abnormalities related to uterine hypertonus has been reported with CSE analgesia (Abrão, 2009; Beamon, 2014). The analgesia failure rate is 11.6 percent for traditional labor epidural and 6.6 percent for CSE (Booth, 2016). Although CSE provides a faster onset of labor analgesia, the intrathecal injection of local anesthetic drugs and/or narcotic may cause hypotension and pruritus.

Continuous Spinal Analgesia During Labor

The technique of continuous spinal analgesia for relief of labor pain is seldom used because of postdural puncture headaches (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b). With redesigned needles and catheters, Arkoosh (2008) randomized 429 women to either continuous spinal or conventional epidural analgesia during labor. Complication rates between these two neuraxial techniques did not differ.

Dural-Puncture Epidural Analgesia

Gaining popularity, this technique is similar to CSE, but initial steps differ. First, a single dural puncture is made using a 25-gauge spinal needle placed through the epidural needle shaft (see Fig. 25-3A). No anesthetic is injected, but the needle can help confirm correct subarachnoid space placement by the drip of CSF from its distal hub. After removal of the spinal needle, the epidural catheter is threaded into the epidural space (see Fig. 25-3B). The dural puncture allows for a small amount of local anesthetic drugs to be translocated from the epidural space to the subarachnoid space. This aids a faster onset of pain relief than traditional epidural analgesia. Without the intrathecal injection, dural-puncture epidural analgesia is associated with fewer side effects than CSE analgesia and provides better block quality than an epidural (Chau, 2017). A review of five studies with 581 patients showed dural puncture epidural technique was associated with a faster onset of analgesic effects, a reduction in provider-initiated boluses "top-ups," and better sacral coverage. The incidence of post-dural puncture headache was not significantly increased (Heesen, 2019). A study confirmed fewer top-ups and a greater local anesthetic drug sparing effect evaluating the combined use of this technique and the intermittent bolus drug delivery mode (Song, 2021).

Local Infiltration Analgesia

A local block is occasionally useful to augment an inadequate or "patchy" regional block that was given emergently. Rarely, local infiltration may be needed to perform an emergency cesarean delivery to save the life of a fetus in the absence of anesthesia support. Two methods are described here.

In one technique, the skin is infiltrated along the proposed incision, and the subcutaneous, muscle, and rectus sheath layers are injected as the abdomen is opened. Injection of large volumes into the fatty layers, which are relatively devoid of nerve supply, is avoided to limit the total dose of local anesthetic needed.

Cooper and coworkers described using 52 mL of 0.5-percent lidocaine with 1:200,000 epinephrine. This delivered 260 mg of lidocaine. Related to lidocaine toxicity, higher lidocaine volumes can be used when paired with epinephrine, because vasoconstriction lowers the intravascular transfer of anesthetic. The maximum dose is 7 mg/kg. Others have used 1-percent procaine with or without epinephrine (Larsen, 1971; Ranney, 1975).

A second technique involves a field block of the major branches supplying the abdominal wall, to include the 10th, 11th, and 12th intercostal nerves and the ilioinguinal and genitofemoral nerves (Nandagopal, 2001). As shown in Figure 25-4, the former group of nerves is located at a point midway between the costal margin and iliac crest in the midaxillary line. The latter group is found at the level of the external inguinal ring. A total of four skin punctures, two on each side, are made. First, at the intercostal block site, the needle is directed medially, and injection is carried down to the transversalis fascia, avoiding injection of the subcutaneous fat. Five mL of 0.5-percent lidocaine with epinephrine are injected. The needle is redirected but not removed, and similar dosing is delivered to sites located at a 45-degree angle cephalad and caudad. The other side is then injected. Second, at the ilioinguinal and genitofemoral sites, the injection is started at a spot 2 to 3 cm lateral from the pubic tubercle at a 45-degree angle. Last, the skin overlying the planned incision is injected.

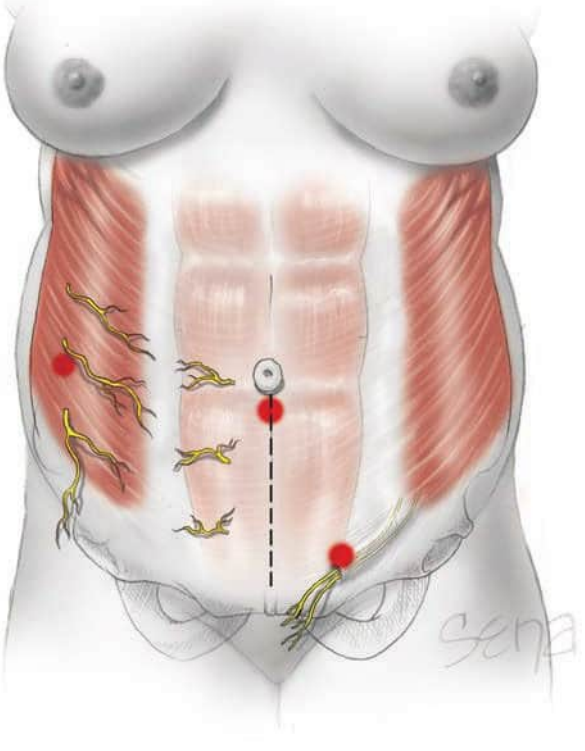


FIGURE 25-4 Local anesthetic block for cesarean delivery. The first injection site is halfway between the costal margin and iliac crest in the midaxillary line to block the 10th, 11th, and 12th intercostal nerves. A second injection at the external inguinal ring blocks branches of the genitofemoral and ilioinguinal nerves. Although not shown, both sites are infiltrated bilaterally. The final site is along the line of proposed skin incision.

Transversus Abdominis Plane Block

This block may be used for those with suitable training (Young, 2012). It is usually performed under ultrasound guidance and involves injection of a local anesthetic into the transversus abdominis plane (TAP) between the internal oblique and transversus abdominis muscles (Fig. 2-2, p. 14). The nerves lying in this plane supply the anterior abdominal wall at the T_6 to L_1 dermatomes. Ng and colleagues (2018) concluded that high- versus low-dose local anesthetics performed comparably.

Local infiltration or TAP blocks can be used also for postoperative pain control. The TAP block in one trial was not superior to local wound infiltration (Tawfik, 2017). Gao and associates (2019) demonstrated that pain relief with the TAP block was comparable with that from patient-controlled IV analgesia. Another study found that the TAP block was equivalent to intrathecal morphine for postoperative pain (Kwikiriza, 2019). Last, Prabhu and coworkers (2018) reported that a liposomal bupivacaine incisional block was not superior to placebo.

GENERAL ANESTHESIA

Trained personnel and specialized equipment—including fiberoptic intubation—are mandatory for the safe use of general anesthesia. A common cause of death cited is failed intubation. The latter occurs in approximately 1 of every 390 general anesthetics administered to pregnant women (Kinsella, 2015).

This relatively higher mortality rate suggests that neuraxial analgesia is the preferred method of pain control and should be used unless contraindicated (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b; American Society of Anesthesiologists, 2016). In two reports from the MFMU Network, 93 percent of more than 54,000 cesarean deliveries were performed using neuraxial analgesia (Bloom, 2005; Brookfield, 2013). Racial and ethnic disparities exist, and a higher incidence of general anesthesia use is seen among non-white women (Butwick, 2014; Lange, 2017). It is often used for emergent cesarean delivery for acute fetal distress (Metogo, 2021). In contrast, with obstetrical anesthesiologist subspecialists, the overall likelihood that neuraxial analgesia will be used is higher (Cobb, 2019).

Patient Preparation

Before anesthesia induction, several steps should be taken to help minimize complication risks. First, antacid administration shortly before anesthesia induction has probably decreased mortality rates from general anesthesia more than any other

single practice. The American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Obstetrical Anesthesia (2016) recommends timely administration of a nonparticulate antacid, an H_2-receptor antagonist, or metoclopramide. For many years, we have recommended administration of 30 mL of Bicitra—sodium citrate with citric acid—a few minutes before anesthesia induction by either general or major neuraxial block. If more than 1 hour has passed after the first dose was given and anesthesia has not yet been induced, a second dose is given.

Lateral uterine displacement also is provided as the uterus may compress the inferior vena cava and aorta when the mother is supine. With uterine displacement, the duration of general anesthesia has less effect on neonatal condition than if the woman remains supine (Crawford, 1972).

Last, because functional reserve lung capacity is diminished, and oxygen consumption is increased, the pregnant woman becomes hypoxemic more rapidly during periods of apnea than do nonpregnant patients. Obesity exacerbates this tendency. To minimize hypoxia between the time of muscle relaxant injection and intubation, nitrogen is replaced by oxygen in the lungs. This preoxygenation is accomplished by administering 100-percent oxygen via face mask for 2 to 3 minutes before anesthesia induction. In an emergency, four vital capacity breaths of 100-percent oxygen via a tight breathing circuit will provide similar benefit (Norris, 1985). High-flow nasal oxygen was found to be inferior to administration by face mask (Shippam, 2019; Tan, 2019).

Induction of Anesthesia

Drugs used to induce general anesthesia include propofol, etomidate, and ketamine. Propofol has the undesirable side effect of hypotension. Etomidate is associated with fewer hemodynamic changes. Ketamine also may be used for induction of general anesthesia in hemodynamically unstable women.

Intubation

Immediately after a patient is rendered unconscious, a muscle relaxant is given to aid intubation. *Succinylcholine,* a rapid-onset and short-acting agent, is used. Cricoid pressure—the *Sellick maneuver*—is applied by a trained assistant to occlude the esophagus from the onset of induction until intubation is completed. Before the operation begins, proper placement of the endotracheal tube must be confirmed.

As discussed, and although uncommon, failed intubation is a major cause of anesthesia-related maternal mortality. A history of prior difficult intubation and a careful anatomical assessment of the neck and the maxillofacial, pharyngeal, and laryngeal structures may help predict intubation complications. Even in cases in which the initial airway assessment was unremarkable, edema may develop intrapartum and present considerable challenges. Morbid obesity is a major risk factor for failed or difficult intubation.

The American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Obstetric Anesthesia (2016) stresses the importance of appropriate preoperative preparation. This includes the immediate availability of specialized equipment such as different-shaped laryngoscopes, laryngeal mask airways, and video laryngoscopes, as well as equipment for transtracheal ventilation and awake oral intubation with a fiberoptic bronchoscope.

Following failed intubation, the woman is ventilated by mask and cricoid pressure is applied to reduce the aspiration risk. Surgery may proceed with mask ventilation, or the woman may be allowed to awaken. In those cases in which the woman has been paralyzed and in which ventilation cannot be reestablished by insertion of an oral airway, by laryngeal mask airway, or by use of a fiberoptic laryngoscope, then a life-threatening emergency exists (Eskander, 2019). To restore ventilation, percutaneous or even open cricothyrotomy is performed, and jet ventilation begun. Failed intubation drills have been recommended to optimize response to such an emergency.

Inhalational Anesthetics

Once the endotracheal tube is secured, a volatile halogenated agent is given to provide amnesia and analgesia. The most commonly used volatile anesthetics in the United States include *desflurane* and *sevoflurane.* These gases can also produce uterine relaxation when given in high concentrations. These are used when relaxation is a requisite, such as for internal podalic version of the second twin, breech decomposition, ex utero intrapartum treatment (EXIT) procedures, and replacement of the acutely inverted uterus.

Extubation

The endotracheal tube may be safely removed only if the woman is conscious to a degree that enables her to follow commands and is capable of maintaining oxygen saturation with spontaneous respiration. Consideration should be given to emptying the stomach via a nasogastric tube before extubation. As induction has now become safer, extubation may be relatively more perilous. Of 15 anesthesia-related deaths of pregnant women from 1985 to 2003 in Michigan, none occurred during induction, whereas five resulted from hypoventilation or airway obstruction during emergence, extubation, or recovery (Mhyre, 2007).

Fasting

Data are insufficient regarding fasting times for clear liquids and the risk of pulmonary aspiration during labor. The American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Obstetrical Anesthesia (2016) and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) recommend that modest amounts of clear liquids such as water, clear tea, black coffee, carbonated beverages, and pulp-free fruit juices be allowed in uncomplicated laboring women. As discussed in Chapter 30 (p. 550), enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) protocols provide consumption of these same liquids up to 2 hours before scheduled surgery (Wilson, 2018b). Obvious solid foods should be avoided. A fasting period of 6 to 8 hours, depending on the type of food ingested, is recommended for uncomplicated parturients undergoing elective cesarean delivery or puerperal tubal ligation. The amount of gastric fluid—2 mL/kg—in nonlaboring women is almost the same as that in nonpregnant

women (Van de Putte, 2019). However, pregnancy is associated with horizontal shift of the stomach and a reduced esophageal sphincter tone. Our policy at Parkland Hospital is to allow clear liquids in low-risk uncomplicated laboring women in whom vaginal delivery is anticipated.

Aspiration

Massive gastric acidic inhalation may cause pulmonary insufficiency from aspiration pneumonitis (Mandell, 2019). Such pneumonitis has in the past been the most common cause of anesthetic deaths in obstetrics and therefore deserves special attention. To minimize this risk, antacids should be given routinely, intubation should be accompanied by cricoid pressure, and regional analgesia should be employed when possible.

Pathophysiology

In 1952, Teabeaut demonstrated experimentally that if the pH of aspirated fluid was below 2.5, severe chemical pneumonitis developed. It was later demonstrated that the gastric fluid pH of nearly half of women tested intrapartum was <2.5 (Taylor, 1966). The right mainstem bronchus usually offers the simplest pathway for aspirated material to reach the lung parenchyma, and therefore, the right lower lobe is most often involved. In severe cases, involvement is bilateral and widespread.

The woman who aspirates may develop evidence of respiratory distress immediately or several hours after aspiration, depending in part on the material aspirated and the severity of the response. Aspiration of a large amount of solid material causes obvious signs of airway obstruction. Smaller particles without acidic liquid may lead to patchy atelectasis and later to bronchopneumonia.

When highly acidic liquid is inspired, decreased oxygen saturation along with tachypnea, bronchospasm, rhonchi, rales, atelectasis, cyanosis, tachycardia, and hypotension are likely to develop. At the injury sites, there is pulmonary capillary leakage and exudation of protein-rich fluid containing numerous erythrocytes into the lung interstitium and alveoli. This causes decreased pulmonary compliance, shunting of blood, and severe hypoxemia.

Suspicion of aspiration demands close monitoring for evidence of pulmonary damage. Respiratory rate and oxygen saturation as measured by pulse oximetry are the most sensitive and earliest indicators of injury. Radiographic changes may not appear immediately and may be variable. Therefore, chest radiographs alone should not be used to exclude aspiration.

Treatment

Inhaled fluid should be immediately and thoroughly wiped from the mouth and removed from the pharynx and trachea by suction. Saline lavage may further disseminate the acid throughout the lung and is not recommended. If large particulate matter is inspired, bronchoscopy may be indicated to relieve airway obstruction. Use of corticosteroid therapy or prophylactic antimicrobial administration are not supported by clinical or experimental evidence (Mandell, 2019). If infection develops, however, vigorous treatment is given. Etiological agents have shifted from anaerobic or mixed infections to bacteria causing community- or hospital-acquired pneumonitis (Metlay, 2019). These infections are discussed in Chapter 54 (p. 962). If acute respiratory distress syndrome develops, mechanical ventilation with positive end-expiratory pressure may prove lifesaving (Chap. 50, p. 885).

REFERENCES

Abrão KC, Francisco RP, Miyadahira S, et al: Elevation of uterine basal tone and fetal heart rate abnormalities after labor analgesia: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 113(10):41, 2009

Alexander JM, Sharma SK, McIntire DD, et al: Epidural analgesia lengthens the Friedman active phase of labor. Obstet Gynecol 100:46, 2002

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Washington, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Obstetric analgesia and anesthesia. Practice Bulletin 209, March 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Gestational hypertension and preeclampsia. Practice Bulletin No. 222, May 2020

American Society of Anesthesiologists: Practice guidelines for obstetric anesthesia. An updated report by the American Society of Anesthesiologists Task Force on Obstetric Anesthesia and the Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology. Anesthesiology 124(2):270, 2016

Anim-Somuah M, Smyth RMD, Cyna AM, et al: Epidural versus non-epidural or no analgesia for pain management in labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD000331, 2018

Arevalo-Rodriguez I, Ciapponi A, Roqué i, Figuls M, et al: Posture and fluids for preventing post-dural puncture headache. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD009199, 2016

Arkoosh V, Palmer C, Yun E, et al: A randomized, double-masked, multicenter comparison of the safety of continuous intrathecal labor analgesia using a 28-gauge catheter versus continuous epidural labor analgesia. Anesthesiology 108(2):286, 2008

Atkinson BD, Truitt LJ, Rayburn WF, et al: Double-blind comparison of intravenous butorphanol (Stadol) and fentanyl (Sublimaze) for analgesia during labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 171:993, 1994

Bauchat JR, Weiniger CF, Sultan P, et al: Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology Consensus Statement: Monitoring recommendations for prevention and detection of respiratory depression associated with administration of neuraxial morphine for cesarean delivery analgesia. Anesth Analg 129(2):458, 2019

Bauer ME, Arendt K, Beilin Y, et al: The Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology interdisciplinary consensus statement on neuraxial procedures in obstetrics patients with thrombocytopenia. Anesth Analg 132:1531, 2021

Beamon C, Stuebe A, Edwards L, et al: Effect of mode of regional anesthesia on neonatal outcomes in preeclamptic patients. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210:S173, 2014

Bell ED, Penning DH, Cousineau EF, et al: How much labor is in a labor epidural? Manpower cost and reimbursement for an obstetric analgesia service in a teaching institution. Anesthesiology 92:851, 2000

Bi Y, Zhou J: Spinal subdural hematoma and subdural anesthesia following combined spinal-epidural anesthesia: a case report. BMC Anesthesiol 21:130, 2021

Billingham A, Liang S, Edmonds E, et al: Continuous epidural infusion vs programmed intermittent epidural bolus for labour analgesia: a prospective, controlled, before-and-after cohort study of labour outcomes. Br J Anesth 121(2):432, 2018

Bloom SL, Spong CY, Weiner SJ, et al: Complications of anesthesia for cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 106:281, 2005

Bobb LE, Farber MK, McGovern C, et al: Does nitrous oxide labor analgesia influence the pattern of neuraxial analgesia usage? An impact study at an academic medical center. J Clin Anesth 35:54, 2016

Booth JM, Pan JC, Ross VH, et al: Combined spinal epidural technique for labor analgesia does not delay recognition of epidural catheter failures: a single-center retrospective cohort survival analysis. Anesthesiology 125(3):516, 2016

Bricker L, Lavender T: Parenteral opioids for labor pain relief: a systematic review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:S94, 2002

Brookfield K, Osmundson S, Jaqvi M, et al: General anesthesia at cesarean delivery portends worse maternal and neonatal outcomes. Abstract No. 672. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(1 Suppl):S28, 2013

Butler R, Fuller J: Back pain following epidural anaesthesia in labour. Can J Anaesth 45:724, 1998

Butwick AJ, Bentley J, Wong CJ, et al: United States state-level variation in the use of neuraxial analgesia during labor for pregnant women. JAMA Network Open 1(8):e186567, 2018a

Butwick A, Blumenfeld Y, Brookfeld K, et al: Ethnic disparities among patients undergoing general anesthesia for cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210:S259, 2014

Butwick AJ, Wong CA, Guo N: Maternal body mass index and use of labor neuraxial analgesia: a population-based retrospective cohort study. Anesthesiology 129 (3):448, 2018b

Catterall WA, Mackie K: Local anesthetics. In Brunton LL, Hilal-Dandan R, Knolmann BC (eds): Goodman and Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics. 13th ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2018, p 405

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Bacterial meningitis after intrapartum anesthesia—New York and Ohio, 2008–2009. MMWR 59(3):65, 2010

Chan BO, Paech MJ: Persistent cerebrospinal fluid leak: a complication of the combined spinal-epidural technique. Anesth Analg 98:828, 2004

Chau A, Bibbo C, Huang CC, et al: Dural puncture epidural technique improves labor analgesia quality with fewer side effects compared with epidural and combined spinal epidural techniques: a randomized clinical trial. Anesth Analg 124(2):560, 2017

Chen Y, Zou L, Guo L, et al: Prophylactic norepinephrine infusion for postspinal anesthesia hypotension in patients undergoing cesarean section: a randomized, controlled, dose-finding trial. Pharmocotherapy 41:370, 2021

Chestnut DH: Effect on the progress of labor and method of delivery. In Chestnut DH (ed): Obstetric Anesthesia: Principles and Practice, 2nd ed. St. Louis, Mosby-Year Book, 1999, p 408

Chestnut DH, McGrath JM, Vincent RD Jr, et al: Does early administration of epidural analgesia affect obstetric outcome in nulliparous women who are in spontaneous labor? Anesthesiology 80:1201, 1994a

Chestnut DH, Vincent RD Jr, McGrather JM, et al: Does early administration of epidural analgesia affect obstetric outcome in nulliparous women who are receiving intravenous oxytocin? Anesthesiology 80:1193, 1994b

Chestnut DH, Wong CA, Tsen LC, et al (eds): Chestnut's Obstetric Anesthesia: Principles and Practice, 6th ed. Philadelphia, Elsevier, 2020

Chestnut DH: Effect on the progress of labor and method of delivery. In Chestnut DH (ed): Obstetric Anesthesia: Principles and Practice, 2nd ed. St. Louis: Mosby-Year Book, 1999, p 408

Chisholm ME, Campbell DC: Postpartum postural headache due to superior sagittal sinus thrombosis mistaken for spontaneous intracranial hypotension. Can J Anaesth 48:302, 2001

Choi S, Brull R: Neuraxial techniques in obstetric and non-obstetric patients with common bleeding diatheses. Anesth Analg 109(2):648, 2009

Cobb BT, Lane-Fall MB, Month RC, et al: Anesthesiologist specialization and use of general anesthesia for cesarean delivery. Anesthesiology 130(2):237, 2019

Cooper MG, Feeney EM, Joseph M, et al: Local anaesthetic infiltration for caesarean section. Anaesth Intensive Care 17(2):198, 1989

Craig MG, Grant EN, Tao W, et al: A randomized trial of bupivacaine plus fentanyl versus only fentanyl for epidural analgesia during the second stage of labor. Anesthesiology 122(1):172, 2015

Crawford JS: Some maternal complications of epidural analgesia for labour. Anaesthesia 40:1219, 1985

Crawford JS, Burton M, Davies P: Time and lateral tilt at caesarean section. Br J Anaesth 44:477, 1972

Creanga AA, Syverson C, Seed K, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2011–2013. Obstet Gynecol 130(2):366, 2017

D'Angelo R, Smiley RM, Riley ET, et al: Serious complications related to obstetric anesthesia: the serious complication repository project of the Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology. Anesthesiology 120(6):1505, 2014

Darouiche RO: Spinal epidural abscess. N Engl J Med 355:2012, 2006

Dashe JS, Rogers BB, McIntire DD, et al: Epidural analgesia and intrapartum fever: placental findings. Obstet Gynecol 93:341, 1999

Davies JM, Stephens LS: Obstetric anesthesia liability concerns. Clin Obstet Gynecol 60:431, 2017

Del Arroyo AG, Sanchez J, Patel S, et al: Role of leucocyte caspase-1 activity in epidural-related maternal fever: a single-centre, observational, mechanistic cohort study. Br J Anaesth 122(1):92, 2019

Dresner M, Brocklesby J, Bamber J: Audit of the influence of body mass index on the performance of epidural analgesia in labour and the subsequent mode of delivery. BJOG 113:1178, 2006

Eskander A, de Almeida JR, Irish JC: Acute upper airway obstruction. N Engl J Med 381(20):1940, 2019

Fitzgerald JP, Fedoruk KA, Jadin SM, et al: Prevention of hypotension after spinal anaesthesia for caesarean section: a systematic review and network meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. Anaesthesia 75(1):109, 2020

Friedman EA: Primigravid labor: a graphicostatistical analysis. Obstet Gynecol 6:567, 1955

Gao Y, Guo M, Du C, et al: Clinical study of ultrasound-guided transversus abdominis plane block for analgesia after cesarean section. Medicine (Baltimore) 98(41):e17542, 2019

Goodier CG, Lu JT, Hebber L, et al: Neuraxial anesthesia in parturients with thrombocytopenia: a multisite retrospective cohort study. Anesth Analg 121(4):988, 2015

Grant GJ: Safely giving regional anesthesia to gravidas with clotting disorders. Contemp OB Gyn August , 2007

Hatjis CG, Meis PJ: Sinusoidal fetal heart rate pattern associated with butorphanol administration. Obstet Gynecol 67:377, 1986

Hawkins JL: Epidural analgesia for labor and delivery. N Engl J Med 362:1503, 2010

Hawkins JL, Chang J, Palmer SK, et al: Anesthesia-related maternal mortality in the United States: 1979–2002. Obstet Gynecol 117:69, 2011

Hawkins JL, Koonin LM, Palmer SK, et al: Anesthesia-related deaths during obstetric delivery in the United States, 1979–1990. Anesthesiology 86:277, 1997

Heesen M, Rijs K, Klimek M, et al: Dural puncture epidural versus conventional epidural block for labor analgesia: a systematic review of randomized controlled trials. Int J Obstet Anesth 40:24, 2019

Heller PJ, Scheider EP, Marx GF: Pharyngolaryngeal edema as a presenting symptom in preeclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 62:523, 1983

Hess PE, Pratt SD, Lucas TP, et al: Predictors of breakthrough pain during labor epidural analgesia. Anesth Analg 93:414, 2001

Hill JB, Alexander JM, Sharma SK, et al: A comparison of the effects of epidural and meperidine analgesia during labor on fetal heart rate. Obstet Gynecol 102:333, 2003

Hogg B, Hauth JC, Caritis SN, et al: Safety of labor epidural anesthesia for women with severe hypertensive disease. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181:1096, 1999

Introna RPS, Blair JR, Neeld JB: What is the incidence of inadvertent dural puncture during epidural anesthesia in obstetrics? Anesthesiology 117(3):686, 2012

Karahan MA, Incebiyik A, Buyukfirat E, et al: Effect of spinal anesthesia on the QT interval in term and postterm pregnancies scheduled for elective cesarean section: a prospective study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med January 33(18):3147, 2020

Katz D, Beilin Y: Disorders of coagulation in pregnancy. Br J Anaesth 115 Suppl 2:ii75, 2015

Katz D, Beilin Y: Review of the alternatives to epidural blood patch for treatment of postdural puncture headache in the parturient. Anesth Analg 124(4):1219, 2017

Kennedy WF Jr, Bonica JJ, Akamatsu TJ, et al: Cardiovascular and respiratory effects of subarachnoid block in the presence of acute blood loss. Anesthesiology 29:29, 1968

Kinsella SM, Winton AL, Mushambi MC, et al: Failed tracheal intubation during obstetric general anaesthesia: a literature review. Int J Obstet Anesth 24(4):356, 2015

Kwikiriza A, Kiwanuka JK, Firth PG, et al: The analgesic effects of intrathecal morphine in comparison with ultrasound-guided transversus abdominis plane block after caesarean section: a randomised controlled trial at a Ugandan regional referral hospital. Anaesthesia 74(2):167, 2019

Labat JJ, Riant T, Lassaux A, et al: Adding corticosteroids to the pudendal nerve block for pudendal neuralgia: a randomised, double-blind, controlled trial. BJOG 124(2):251, 2017

Lange EMS, Rao S, Toledo P: Racial and ethnic disparities in obstetric anesthesia. Semin Perinatol 41(5):293, 2017

Larsen JV, Barker A, Barker M, et al: A technique combining neurolept-analgesia with local analgesia for caesarean section. S Afr Med J 45(27):750, 1971

Lee LA, Posner KL, Domino KB, et al: Injuries associated with regional anesthesia in the 1980s and 1990s: a closed claims analysis. Anesthesiology 101:143, 2004

Lee LO, Bateman BT, Kheterpal S, et al: Risk of epidural hematoma after neuraxial techniques in thrombocytopenic parturients: a report from the multicenter perioperative outcomes group. Anesthesiology 126(6):1053, 2017

Leffert L, Butwick A, Carvalho B, et al: The Society of Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology consensus statement on the anesthetic management of pregnant and postpartum women receiving thromboprophylaxis or higher dose anticoagulants. Anesth Analg 126(3):928, 2018

Lieberman E, Lang JM, Cohen A, et al: Association of epidural analgesia with cesarean delivery in nulliparas. Obstet Gynecol 88:993, 1996

Lieberman E, O'Donoghue C: Unintended effects of epidural analgesia during labor: a systematic review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:531, 2002

Likis FE, Andrews JC, Collins MR, et al: Nitrous oxide for the management of labor pain: a systematic review. Anesth Analg 118(1):153, 2014

Lim G, Facco FL, Nathan N, et al: A review of the impact of obstetric anesthesia on maternal and neonatal outcomes. Anesthesiology 129(1):192, 2018

Lim G, Zorn JM, Dong YJ, et al: Subdural hematoma associated with labor epidural analgesia: a case series. Reg Anesth Pain Med 41(5):628, 2016

Lin Y, Liu SS: Local anesthetics. In Barash P, Cullen B, Stoeling R, et al (eds): Clinical Anesthesia, 8th ed. Philadelphia, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2017, p 1432

Lucas MJ, Sharma SK, McIntire DD, et al: A randomized trial of labor analgesia in women with pregnancy-induced hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185:970, 2001

Luxman D, Wholman I, Groutz A, et al: The effect of early epidural block administration on the progression and outcome of labor. Int J Obstet Anesth 7:161, 1998

Lyons G, Columb M, Hawthorne L, et al: Extradural pain relief in labour: bupivacaine sparing by extradural fentanyl is dose dependent. Br J Anaesth 78:493, 1997

Mandell LA, Niederman MS: Aspiration pneumonia. N Engl J Med 380(7):651, 2019

Mankowitz SK, Gonzalez Fiol A, Smiley R: Failure to extend epidural labor analgesia for cesarean delivery anesthesia: a focused review. Anesth Analg 123(5):1174, 2016

Manninen T, Aantaa R, Salonen M, et al: A comparison of the hemodynamic effects of paracervical block and epidural anesthesia for labor analgesia. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 44:441, 2000

Maronge L, Bogod D: Complications in obstetric anaesthesia. Anaesthesia 73 (Suppl 1):61, 2018

McQuaid E, Leffert LR, Bateman BT: The role of the anesthesiologist in preventing severe maternal morbidity and mortality. Clin Obstet Gynecol 61(2):372, 2018

Melber AA, Jelting Y, Huber M, et al: Remifentanil patient-controlled analgesia in labour: a six-year audit of outcome data of the RemiPCA SAFE Network (2010-2015). Int J Obstet Anesth 39:12, 2019

Metlay JP, Waterer GW, Long AC, et al: Diagnosis and Treatment of Adults with Community-acquired Pneumonia. An Official Clinical Practice Guideline of the American Thoracic Society and Infectious Diseases Society of America. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 200(7):e45, 2019

Metogo JAM, Nana TN, Ngongheh BA, et al: General versus regional anaesthesia for caesarean section indicated for acute foetal distress: a retrospective cohort study. BMC Anesthesiol 21:68, 2021

Mhyre JM, Riesner MN, Polley LS, et al: A series of anesthesia-related maternal deaths in Michigan, 1985–2003. Anesthesiology 106:1096, 2007

Mikkelsen AP, Greiber IK, Scheller NM, et al: Association of labor epidural analgesia with autism spectrum disorder in children. JAMA 3261170, 2021

Miller NR, Cypher RL, Nielsen PE, et al: Maternal pulse pressure at admission is a risk factor for fetal heart rate changes after initial dosing of a labor epidural: a retrospective cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(4):382.e1, 2013

Millet L, Shaha S, Bartholomew ML: Rates of bacteriuria in laboring with epidural analgesia: continuous vs intermittent bladder catheterization. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206:316, 2012

Miro M, Guasch E, Gilsanz F: Comparison of epidural analgesia with combined spinal-epidural for labor: a retrospective study of 6497 cases. Int J Obstet Anesth 17:15, 2008

Mitra R, Fleischmann K: Management of the sheared epidural catheter: is surgical extraction really necessary? J Clin Anesth 19(4):310, 2007

Mohta M, Garg A, Chilkoti GT, et al: A randomised controlled trial of phenylephrine and noradrenaline boluses for treatment of postspinal hypotension during elective caesarean section. Anaesthesia 74(7):850, 2019

Mokri B: The Munro-Kellie hypothesis: application in CSF volume depletion. Neurology 56:1746, 2001

Moore AR, Wieczorek PM, Carvalho JC: Association between post-dural puncture headache after neuraxial anesthesia in childbirth and intracranial subdural hematoma. JAMA Neurol 77(1):65, 2020

Nandagopal M: Local anesthesia for cesarean section. Tech Reg Anesth Pain Manag 5(1):30, 2001

Neal JM, Barrington MJ, Fettiplace MR, et al: The Third American Society of Regional Anesthesia and Pain Medicine Practice Advisory on Local Anesthetic Systemic Toxicity: Executive Summary 2017. Reg Anesth Pain Med 43(2):113, 2018

Ng SC, Habib AS, Sodha S, et al: High-dose versus low-dose local anaesthetic for transversus abdominis plane block post-cesarean delivery analgesia: a meta-analysis. Br J Anesth 120(2):252, 2018

Ngan Kee WD: The use of vasopressors during spinal anaesthesia for caesarean section. Curr Opin Anaesthesiol 30(3):319, 2017

Ngan Kee WD, Khaw KS, Ng FF, et al: Prophylactic phenylephrine infusion for preventing hypotension during spinal anesthesia for cesarean delivery. Anesth Analg 98:815, 2004

Noblett K, McKinney A, Kim R: Sheared epidural catheter during an elective procedure. Obstet Gynecol 109:566, 2007

Norris MC, Dewan DM: Preoxygenation for cesarean section: a comparison of two techniques. Anesthesiology 62:827, 1985

Ohel G, Gonen R, Vaida S, et al: Early versus late initiation of epidural analgesia in labor: does it increase the risk of cesarean section? A randomized trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194:600, 2006

Osterman MJ, Martin JA: Epidural and spinal anesthesia use during labor, 2008. Natl Vital Stat Rep 59(5):1, 2011

Petersen EE, Davis NL, Goodman D, et al: Racial/ethnic disparities in pregnancy-related deaths—United States, 2007–2016. MMWR 68(35):762, 2019

Poma S, Scudeller L, Verga C, et al: Effects of combined spinal-epidural analgesia on first stage of labor: a cohort study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(21):3559, 2019

Prabhu M, Clapp MA, McQuaid-Hanson E, et al: Liposomal bupivacaine block at the time of cesarean delivery to decrease postoperative pain: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 132(1):70, 2018

Ranney B, Stanage WF: Advantages of local anesthesia for cesarean section. Obstet Gynecol 45(2):163, 1975

Reynolds F, Sharma SK, Seed PT: Analgesia in labour and fetal acid-base balance: a meta-analysis comparing epidural with systemic opioid analgesia. Br J Obstet Gynaecol 109:1344, 2002

Rodriguez AN, Patel S, Macias DA, et al: Timing of emergency postpartum hospital visits in the fourth trimester. Abstract No. 294, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:s198, 2020

Rogers R Jr: Basic pelvic neuroanatomy. In Steege J, Metzger D, Levy B (eds): Chronic Pelvic Pain: an Integrated Approach. Philadelphia, Saunders, 1998, p 31

Rogers R, Gilson G, Kammerer-Doak D: Epidural analgesia and active management of labor: effects on length of labor and mode of delivery. Obstet Gynecol 93:995, 1999

Rosen MA: Paracervical block for labor analgesia: a brief historic review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:S127, 2002

Ruppen W, Derry S, McQuay H, et al: Incidence of epidural hematoma, infection, and neurologic injury in obstetric patients with epidural analgesia/anesthesia. Anesthesiology 105:394, 2006

Scavone BM, Wong CA, Sullivan JT, et al: Efficacy of a prophylactic epidural blood patch in preventing post dural puncture headache in parturients after inadvertent dural puncture. Anesthesiology 101:1422, 2004

Seyb ST, Berka RJ, Socol ML, et al: Risk of cesarean delivery with elective induction of labor at term in nulliparous women. Obstet Gynecol 94:600, 1999

Sharma SK, McIntire DD, Wiley J, et al: Labor analgesia and cesarean delivery. An individual patient meta-analysis of nulliparous women. Anesthesiology 100:142, 2004

Sharma SK, Rogers BB, Alexander JM, et al: A randomized trial of the effects of antibiotic prophylaxis on epidural-related fever in labor. Anesth Analg 118(3):604, 2014

Sharma SK, Sidawi JE, Ramin SM, et al: Cesarean delivery: a randomized trial of epidural versus patient-controlled meperidine analgesia during labor. Anesthesiology 87:487, 1997

Shearer VE, Jhaveri HS, Cunningham FG: Puerperal seizures after post-dural puncture headache. Obstet Gynecol 85:255, 1995

Shippam W, Preston R, Douglas J, et al: High-flow nasal oxygen vs. standard flow-rate facemask preoxygenation in pregnant patients: a randomised physiological study. Anaesthesia 74(4):450, 2019

Sharkey AM, Siddiqui N, Downey K, et al: Comparison of intermittent intravenous boluses of phenylephrine and norepinephrine to prevent and treat spinal-induced hypotension in cesarean deliveries: randomized controlled trial. Anesth Analg 129(5):1312, 2019

Shmueli A, Salman L, Orbach-Zinger S, et al: The impact of epidural analgesia on the duration of the second stage of labor. Birth 45(4):377, 2018

Smarkusky L, DeCarvalho H, Bermudez A, et al: Acute onset headache complicating labor epidural caused by intrapartum pneumocephalus. Obstet Gynecol 108:795, 2006

Song Y, Du W, Zhou S, et al: Effect of dural puncture epidural technique combined with programmed intermittent epidural bolus on labor analgesia onset and maintenance: a randomized controlled trial. Anesth Analg 32(4):971, 2021

Sprigge JS, Harper SJ: Accidental dural puncture and post dural puncture headache in obstetric anaesthesia: presentation and management: a 23-year survey in a district general hospital. Anaesthesia 63:36, 2008

Stocki D, Matot I, Einav S, et al: A randomized controlled trial of the efficacy and respiratory effects of patient-controlled intravenous remifentanil analgesia and patient-controlled epidural analgesia in laboring women. Anesth Analg 118(3):589, 2014

Sultan P, Sultan E, Carvalho B: Regional anaesthesia for labour, operative vaginal delivery and cesarean delivery: a narrative review. Anaesthesia 76 Suppl 1:136, 2021

Svancarek W, Chirino O, Schaefer G Jr, et al: Retropsoas and subgluteal abscesses following paracervical and pudendal anesthesia. JAMA 237:892, 1977

Tan PC, Millay OJ, Leeton L, et al: High-flow humidified nasal preoxygenation in pregnant women: a prospective observational study. Br J Anaesth 122(1):86, 2019

Tawfik MM, Mohamed YM, Elbadrawi RE, et al: Transversus abdominis plane block versus wound infiltration for analgesia after cesarean delivery: a randomized controlled trial. Anesth Analg 124(4):1291, 2017

Taylor G, Pryse-Davies J: The prophylactic use of antacids in the prevention of the acid pulmonary aspiration syndrome (Mendelson's syndrome). Lancet 1:288, 1966

Teabeaut JR II: Aspiration of gastric contents: an experimental study. Am J Pathol 28:51, 1952

Togioka BM, Seligman KM, Werntz MK, et al: Education program regarding labor epidurals increases utilization by Hispanic Medicaid beneficiaries: a randomized controlled trial. Anesthesiology 131:840, 2019

Tsui MHY, Kee WDN, Ng FF, et al: A double blinded randomized placebo controlled study of intramuscular pethidine for pain relief in the first stage of labour. BJOG 111:648, 2004

Ulubaşoğlu H, Bakay K, Guven D: Relation with postpartum maternal morbidity of different types of anesthesia in preeclamptic patients. Hypertens Pregnancy 37(1):25, 2018

Vallejo MC, Mandell GL, Sabo DP, et al: Postdural puncture headache: a randomized comparison of five spinal needles in obstetric patients. Anesth Analg 91:916, 2000

Van de Putte P, Vernieuwe L, Perias A: Term pregnant patients have similar gastric volume to nonpregnant females: a single-centre cohort study. Br J Anaesth 122(1):79, 2019

Veeser M, Hofmann T, Roth R, et al: Vasopressors for the management of hypotension after spinal anesthesia for elective caesarean section. Systematic review and cumulative meta-analysis. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 56(7):810, 2012

Vricella LK, Louis JM, Mercer BM, et al: Impact of morbid obesity on epidural anesthesia complications in labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205:307, 2011

Wallace DH, Leveno KJ, Cunningham FG, et al: Randomized comparison of general and regional anesthesia for cesarean delivery in pregnancies complicated by severe preeclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 86:193, 1995

Wang Y, Xu M: Comparison of ropivacaine combined with sufentanil for epidural anesthesia and spinal-epidural anesthesia in labor analgesia. BMC Anesthesiol 20(1):1, 2020

Wilson MJ, MacArthur C, Hewitt CA, et al: Intravenous remifentanil patient-controlled analgesia versus intramuscular pethidine for pain relief in labour (RESPITE): an open-label, multicentre, randomized controlled trial. Lancet 392(10148):662, 2018a

Wilson RD, Caughey AB, Wood SL, et al: Guidelines for Antenatal and Preoperative care in Cesarean Delivery: Enhanced Recovery After Surgery Society Recommendations (Part 1). Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(6):523.e1, 2018b

Wong CA, McCarthy RJ, Sullivan JT, et al: Early compared with late neuraxial analgesia in nulliparous labor induction. Obstet Gynecol 113(5):1066, 2009

Wong CA, Scavone BM, Peaceman AM, et al: The risk of cesarean delivery with neuraxial analgesia given early versus late in labor. N Engl J Med 352:655, 2005

Xu C, Liu S, Huang Y, et al: Phenylephrine vs ephedrine in cesarean delivery under spinal anesthesia: A systematic literature review and meta-analysis. Int J Surg 60:48, 2018

Young MJ, Gorlin AW, Modes VE, et al: Clinical implications of the transversus abdominis plane block in adults. Anesthesiol Res Pract 2012:731645, 2012

Yurashevich M, Carvalho B, Butwick AJ, et al: Determinants of women's dissatisfaction with anaesthesia care in labour and delivery. Anaesthesia 74(9):1112, 2019

Zafirova Z, Sheehan C, Hosseinian L: Update on nitrous oxide and its use in anesthesia practice. Best Pract Res Clin Anaesthesiol 32(2):113, 2018

Zeeman GG, Cunningham FG, Pritchard JA: The magnitude of hemoconcentration with eclampsia. Hypertens Preg 28(2):127, 2009

CHAPTER 26

Induction and Augmentation of Labor

Today, several pharmacological agents permit labor to be induced or augmented. *Induction* implies stimulation of contractions before the spontaneous onset of labor, with or without ruptured membranes. When the cervix is closed and uneffaced, labor induction is often preceded by *cervical ripening*, a process to soften and open the cervix. This is somewhat of a misnomer in that cervical ripening, per se, may also be a means of labor induction. *Augmentation* refers to enhancement of spontaneous contractions that are considered inadequate because of failed cervical dilation and poor fetal descent. This chapter presents indications and methods for labor induction or augmentation and for cervical ripening.

LABOR INDUCTION

Indications

In the United States, the incidence of labor induction rose from 9.5 percent in 1991 to 27 percent in 2019 (Martin, 2019). Induction is indicated when the benefits to either mother or fetus outweigh those of pregnancy continuation. The more common indications include membrane rupture without labor, gestational hypertension, oligohydramnios, nonreassuring fetal status, postterm pregnancy, and various maternal medical conditions such as chronic hypertension and diabetes (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a).

Methods to induce or augment labor are contraindicated by most conditions that preclude spontaneous labor or delivery. Maternal contraindications are an abnormally implanted placenta or a prior uterine incision type that is associated with a high rupture risk. Uncommon conditions are active genital herpes infection, contracted or distorted pelvic anatomy, or cervical cancer. Fetal factors include appreciable macrosomia, severe hydrocephalus, malpresentation, or nonreassuring fetal status.

Risks

Some maternal complications associated with labor induction are chorioamnionitis, uterine rupture, and postpartum hemorrhage from uterine atony. Earlier nonrandomized studies suggested a particularly higher risk for cesarean delivery in nulliparas undergoing labor induction (Luthy, 2004; Yeast, 1999). More recent ones, however, cite comparable or even lower rates of cesarean delivery when induced labor is compared with spontaneous labor (Middleton, 2020; Souter, 2019).

These studies used spontaneous labor as the comparator, which may be less suitable than using expectant management as the comparator. In the ARRIVE trial—A Randomized Trial of Induction Versus Expectant Management-more than 6000 low-risk nulliparas at 39 weeks' gestation were randomly assigned to labor induction or expectant management groups (Table 26-1) (Grobman, 2018; Tita, 2021). Primary outcome, which was the rate of severe neonatal morbidity or death, did not differ between cohorts. However, the cesarean delivery rate in the induction arm was significantly lower than that in the expectantly managed cohort—18.6 versus 22.2 percent, respectively. Rates

TABLE 26-1. Selected Maternal and Perinatal Outcomes with Labor Induction Versus Expectant Management in Low-Risk Nulliparous Women—the ARRIVE Trial

Factor	Induction (%) (n = 3059)	Expectant (%) (n = 3037)	*p* value
Maternal outcome[a]			
Cesarean delivery	18.6	22.2	<0.001
Operative vaginal delivery	7.3	8.5	0.07
Hypertensive disorder	9.1	14.1	<0.001
Chorioamnionitis	13.3	14.1	0.35
Postpartum hemorrhage	4.6	4.5	0.81
Perinatal outcome[b]	4.3	5.4	0.049
Respiratory support	3.0	4.2	
Apgar score ≤3 at 5 min	0.4	0.6	
Seizure	0.4	0.1	
Meconium aspiration	0.6	0.9	
Birth trauma	0.5	0.6	
Perinatal death	0.1	0.1	

[a]Secondary outcomes.
[b]Composite outcomes.
ARRIVE = A Randomized Trial of Induction Versus Expectant Management.

of chorioamnionitis, postpartum hemorrhage, and peripartum infection were not significantly different. In a metaanalysis of six cohort studies, elective induction at 39 weeks' gestation had a significantly lower risk of cesarean delivery and these other morbidities compared with expectant management (Grobman, 2019).

With induction, the overall associated risk of uterine rupture is low but is highest with a prior uterine scar (Landon, 2004). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019c) recommends against the use of prostaglandins for preinduction cervical ripening or for labor induction in women with a prior uterine incision. It recognizes labor induction with oxytocin as an option but also notes the higher potential rupture rate and lower VBAC rate. Oxytocin augmentation may be used in those undergoing TOLAC, although evidence for higher rupture rates are conflicting.

Amniotomy is often selected to augment labor (p. 494). Of other potential risks, women whose labor is managed with amniotomy have a higher incidence of chorioamnionitis compared with those in spontaneous labor (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a).

In some, but not all studies, uterine atony and associated postpartum hemorrhage are more common in women undergoing induction or augmentation (Grobman, 2018; Widmer, 2020). And as discussed in Chapter 42 (p. 733), atony with intractable hemorrhage, especially following cesarean delivery, is a frequent indication for peripartum hysterectomy. In a study from Parkland Hospital, labor induction was associated with 17 percent of 553 unanticipated peripartum hysterectomies (Hernandez, 2013).

■ Elective Labor Induction

Until recently, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) did not recommend elective labor induction at term for convenience. Occasional exceptions are risk of rapid labor, psychosocial indications, or logistics that factor family support availability and distance from the hospital. Importantly, several studies have shown that elective delivery before 39 completed weeks' gestation is associated with significant adverse neonatal morbidity (Chiossi, 2013; Salemi, 2016; Tita, 2009).

This proscription against elective induction at term was reconsidered following publication of the previously cited ARRIVE trial. Because of the results from that trial, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018) and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2019) conclude that offering elective induction to low-risk, well-dated nulliparas at 39 weeks' gestation is reasonable. These women must meet the criteria for the ARRIVE trial, and it is recommended to combine shared decision-making with consideration of available resources.

■ Factors Affecting Induction Success

Several factors affect the ability of labor induction to achieve vaginal delivery. Favorable factors include younger age, multiparity, body mass index (BMI) <30, favorable cervix, and birthweight <3500 g (Freret, 2021; Sievert, 2017). In many cases, the uterus is simply poorly prepared for labor. One example is an "unripe" or "unfavorable" cervix. Indeed, investigators with the *Consortium on Safe Labor* reported that elective induction resulted in vaginal delivery in 97 percent of multiparas and 76 percent of nulliparas. Induction was more often successful with a "ripe cervix" (Laughon, 2012).

Failure of induction is likely strongly influenced by the induction duration, especially with an unfavorable cervix (Spong, 2012). In one study, labor duration to reach the active phase and to complete dilation was adversely affected by a higher BMI (Kominiarek, 2011). Similar findings were

TABLE 26-2. Some Commonly Used Regimens Compared with Oxytocin Infusion for Preinduction Cervical Ripening and/or Labor Induction

Techniques	Agent	Route/Dose	Compared with Oxytocin
Pharmacological			
Prostaglandin E_2	Dinoprostone gel, 0.5 mg (Prepidil) Dinoprostone insert, 10 mg (Cervidil)	Cervical 0.5 mg; repeat in 6 hr; permit 3 doses total Posterior fornix, 10 mg	1. Shorter I-D times with oxytocin infusion than oxytocin alone 1. Insert has shorter I-D times than gel 2. 6–12 hr interval from last insert to oxytocin infusion
Prostaglandin E_1[a]	Misoprostol tablet, 100 or 200 μg (Cytotec)[b]	Vaginal, 25 μg; repeat 3–6 hr prn Oral, 50–100 μg; repeat 3–6 hr prn	1. Contractions within 30–60 min 2. Success comparable to oxytocin for ruptured membranes at term and/or favorable cervix 3. Tachysystole common with vaginal doses >25 μg
Mechanical			
Transcervical 36F Foley catheter	30-mL balloon	Transcervical	1. Improves Bishop scores rapidly 2. 80-mL balloon more effective 3. Combined with oxytocin infusion is superior to PGE_1 vaginally 4. With EASI, results improved and possible decreased infection rate
Hygroscopic dilators	Laminaria, hydrogel	Intracervical	1. Rapidly improves Bishop score 2. May not shorten I-D times with oxytocin 3. Uncomfortable, requires speculum and placement on an examination table

[a]Off-label use.
[b]Tablets must be divided for 25- and 50-μg dose, but drug is evenly dispersed.
EASI = extraamnionic saline infusion at 30–40 mL/hr; I-D = induction-to-delivery.

reported for women with diabetes (Hawkins, 2017). Simon and Grobman (2005) concluded that a latent phase as long as 18 hours allowed most women undergoing labor induction to achieve a vaginal delivery without a significantly increased risk of maternal or neonatal morbidity. Rouse and associates (2000) recommend a minimum of 12 hours of uterine stimulation with oxytocin after membrane rupture, whereas Kawakita and coworkers (2016) recommend up to 15 hours for multiparas.

PREINDUCTION CERVICAL RIPENING

As noted, a soft cervix—described as "ripe" or "favorable"—is important to successful labor induction. However, some estimates of favorability are highly subjective (Feltovich, 2017). Still, pharmacological and mechanical methods can enhance cervical qualities in a process of *preinduction cervical ripening*.

Some of the techniques may have benefits compared with oxytocin induction alone (Table 26-2). Namely, some are able to initiate labor and may effect delivery when used alone. However, few data support the premise that any of these methods lower cesarean delivery rates or lessen maternal or neonatal morbidity compared with women in whom these methods are not used.

■ Cervical "Favorability"

One quantifiable method to predict labor induction outcomes is the score described by Bishop (1964) and presented in Table 26-3. As favorability or Bishop score rises, the rate of induction to effect vaginal delivery also increases. A *Bishop score* >8 conveys a high likelihood for a successful induction, and a score ≤6 is considered unfavorable (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a).

TABLE 26-3. Bishop Scoring System Used for Assessment of Inducibility

	Cervical Factor				
Score	Dilatation (cm)	Effacement (%)	Station (–3 to +2)	Consistency	Position
0	Closed	0–30	–3	Firm	Posterior
1	1–2	40–50	–2	Medium	Midposition
2	3–4	60–70	–1	Soft	Anterior
3	≥5	≥80	+1, +2	—	—

Laughon and coworkers (2011) attempted to simplify the Bishop score by performing a regression analysis on 5610 nulliparas with term singletons at 38 to 42 weeks' gestation. Cervical dilation, station, and effacement were significantly associated with successful vaginal delivery. Thus, a simplified Bishop score had a similar or improved positive- or negative-predictive value compared with that of the original Bishop score. Others have reported similar findings when consistency and position are omitted (Ivars, 2016; Raghuraman, 2016).

Transvaginal sonographic measurement of cervical length has been evaluated as a Bishop score alternative (Feltovich, 2017). However, data from a metaanalysis of 31 trials showed overall low sensitivity and specificity and limited predictive utility to forecast successful induction (Verhoeven, 2013).

Pharmacological Agents

Prostaglandin analogues make up available options. These can also stimulate contractions and thereby aid subsequent labor induction or augmentation. Importantly, in most studies of preinduction cervical ripening, oxytocin infusion either is initiated with the ripening agent or follows cervical change.

Prostaglandin E_2

Dinoprostone is a synthetic analogue of prostaglandin E_2 (PGE_2). It is commercially available in three forms: a gel, a time-release vaginal insert, and a 20-mg suppository (see Table 26-2). The gel and time-release vaginal insert formulations are indicated only for cervical ripening before labor induction. *Importantly, the 20-mg suppository is not indicated for cervical ripening.* It instead is used for pregnancy termination between 12 and 20 weeks' gestation and for evacuation of the uterus after fetal demise up to 28 weeks.

Local application of the PGE_2 gel form—*Prepidil*—is available in a 2.5-mL syringe for an intracervical application of 0.5 mg of dinoprostone. With the woman supine, the tip of a prefilled syringe is placed intracervically, and the gel is deposited just below the internal cervical os. After application, the woman remains reclined for 30 minutes. Doses may be repeated every 6 hours, with a maximum of three doses recommended in 24 hours.

A 10-mg dinoprostone vaginal insert—*Cervidil*—also is approved for cervical ripening. This is a thin, flat, rectangular polymeric wafer held within a small, white, mesh polyester sac (Fig. 26-1). The sac has a long attached tail to allow easy removal from the vagina. The insert provides slower release of medication—0.3 mg/hr—than the gel form. Cervidil is used as a single dose placed transversely in the posterior vaginal fornix. Lubricant is used sparingly, if at all, because it can coat the device and hinder dinoprostone release. Following insertion, the woman remains recumbent for at least 2 hours. The insert is removed after 12 hours or with labor onset and at least 30 minutes before the administration of oxytocin. Since the active drug is encased in a mesh sac, one benefit is the ability for removal if fetal heart rate abnormalities or tachysystole develop.

Most metaanalyses of dinoprostone efficacy report a reduced time to delivery within 24 hours. However, they do not consistently show a reduction in the cesarean delivery rate.

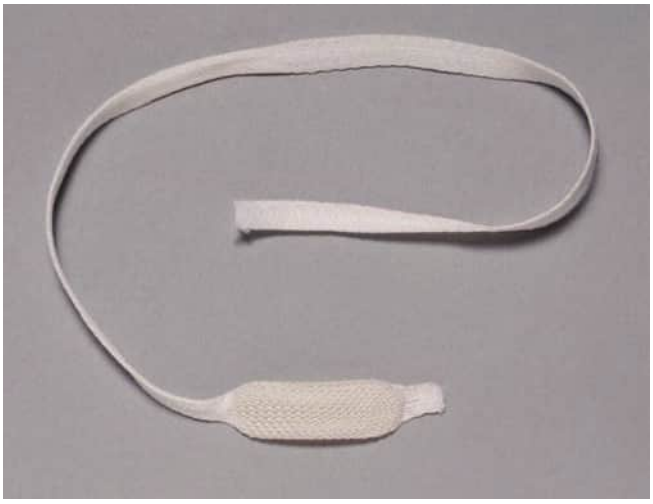


FIGURE 26-1 Cervidil vaginal insert contains 10 mg of dinoprostone designed to release approximately 0.3 mg/hr during a 10-hour period.

Thomas and colleagues (2014) provided a Cochrane review of 70 trials that included 11,487 women given vaginal prostaglandins or either placebo compared with no treatment. They noted a higher vaginal delivery rate within 24 hours when prostaglandins were used. They also reported a threefold greater risk of tachysystole accompanied by fetal heart rate changes, but cesarean delivery rates were not significantly decreased. Similar results were noted in another Cochrane review of intracervical dinoprostone gel (Boulvain, 2008). Compared with placebo or no treatment, a reduced risk of cesarean delivery was found only in a subgroup of women with an unfavorable cervix and intact membranes.

Last, the Foley catheter versus vaginal PGE_2 gel for induction of labor at term—PROBAAT-P and M trials—were unblinded, randomized trials comparing these two options (Jozwiak, 2011, 2013, 2014). The cesarean delivery rate did not differ, a finding consistent with accompanying metaanalyses.

Side Effects

Uterine tachysystole follows vaginally administered PGE_2 in 1 to 5 percent of women (Hawkins, 2012). Although definitions of abnormal uterine activity vary among studies, most use the definition recommended by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b). *Uterine tachysystole* is defined as >5 contractions in a 10-minute period. It should always be qualified by the presence or absence of fetal heart rate abnormalities. The terms *uterine hypertonus*, *hyperstimulation*, and *hypercontractility* are terms no longer defined, and their use is not recommended.

Because uterine tachysystole associated with fetal compromise may develop when prostaglandins are used with preexisting spontaneous labor, such use is not recommended. If tachysystole follows the 10-mg insert, its removal by pulling on the tail of the surrounding net sac will usually reverse this effect. Irrigation to remove the gel preparation has not been shown to be helpful.

The manufacturers recommend caution when these preparations are used in women with ruptured membranes. This concern is also extended to women with glaucoma or asthma. However, in a review of 189 women with asthma, dinoprostone was not associated with asthma worsening or exacerbation

(Towers, 2004). Other contraindications listed by the manufacturers include prior dinoprostone hypersensitivity, suspicion of fetal compromise or cephalopelvic disproportion, unexplained vaginal bleeding, six or more prior term pregnancies, and contraindications to vaginal delivery. Others are women already receiving oxytocin, those with a contraindication to oxytocin, or those who may be endangered by prolonged uterine contractions, for example, those with prior cesarean delivery or uterine surgery.

Administration

PGE_2 preparations should be administered only in or near the delivery suite. Moreover, uterine activity and fetal heart rate should be monitored (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). These guidelines stem from the risk of uterine tachysystole. When contractions begin, they are usually apparent in the first hour and show peak activity in the first 4 hours. According to manufacturer guidelines, oxytocin induction that follows prostaglandin use for cervical ripening should be delayed for 6 to 12 hours following PGE_2 gel administration or for at least 30 minutes after removal of the vaginal insert.

■ Prostaglandin E_1

Misoprostol—*Cytotec*—is a synthetic prostaglandin E_1 (PGE_1) that is approved as a 100- or 200-μg tablet for peptic ulcer prevention. These tablets can be split to administer 25- or 50-μg doses. The drug is absorbed from both vaginal, oral, and buccal administration. Randomized trials of labor induction with misoprostol have evaluated various induction regimens with differing primary outcomes (Table 26-4).

Misoprostol is widely used "off label" safely for preinduction cervical ripening (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). The tablets are stable at room temperature, and the drug currently is the preferred prostaglandin for cervical ripening at Parkland Hospital.

Vaginal Administration

Compared with intracervical or intravaginal PGE_2, vaginally administered misoprostol tablets offer equivalent or superior efficacy for cervical ripening or labor induction (Hofmeyr, 2010). Compared with oxytocin or with intravaginal or intracervical dinoprostone, vaginal misoprostol increased the vaginal delivery rate within 24 hours. Although the uterine tachysystole rate was higher, this did not affect cesarean delivery rates. Moreover, compared with dinoprostone, misoprostol lowered the need for oxytocin induction, but it raised the frequency of meconium-stained amnionic fluid. Higher doses of misoprostol are associated with a decreased need for oxytocin but with greater rates of uterine tachysystole, with and without fetal heart rate changes. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) recommends a 25-μg vaginal dose. The drug is evenly distributed among 100-μg tablets that are quartered.

Oral Administration

PGE_1 tablets are also effective when given orally, but with a faster peak concentration and decline compared with the

TABLE 26-4. Randomized Trials with 200 or More Subjects Designed to Compare Misoprostol (PGE_1) With or Without Foley Bulb

Study	Comparators	Primary Outcome	N	Findings
Kehl (2015)	Double balloon catheter + oral PGE_1 (50 μg) vs oral PGE_1 alone	TTD	326	Longer TTD with Foley + oral PGE_1 (32h) vs oral E_1 alone (22h) ($p = 0.004$)
Ten Eikelder (2016)	PROBAAT-II: Oral PGE_1 (50 μg) vs Foley	Neonatal asphyxia or EBL >1000 mL	1859	No difference in primary outcome: Foley (12%) vs oral PGE_1 (11.5%)
Levine (2016)	FOR MOMI: Vaginal PGE_1 (25 μg) + Foley vs oxytocin + Foley vs vaginal PGE_1 alone vs Foley alone	TTD	492	Shorter TTD with combinations: Foley + PGE_1 (13.1h), oxytocin + Foley (14.5h), PGE_1 alone (17.6h), Foley alone (17.7h) ($p < 0.001$)
Kruit (2016)	Foley vs oral PGE_1 (50–100 μg)	CD and infections	202	No difference in CD or maternal/neonatal infection rates
Mundle (2017)	Foley vs oral PGE_1 (25 μg)	VD within 24h	602	VD within 24h more common in oral PGE_1 (57%) vs Foley (47%) ($p = 0.014$)
Al-Ibraheemi (2018)	Vaginal PGE_1 (25 μg) ± Foley	TTD	200	TTD in combination group (15h) vs vaginal PGE_1 alone (19h) ($p = 0.001$)
Young (2020)	Oral PGE_1 (50 μg) vs vaginal PGE_1 (25–50 μg) vs dinoprostone gel (1 to 2 mg)	TTD	511	TTD differences not significant: oral PGE_1 (22.6h), vaginal PGE_1 (25.5h), vaginal dinoprostone (20.1h) ($p = 0.46$)
Adhikari (2020)	Oral PGE_1 (100 μg) ± Foley	VD	2227	No difference in VD rates: Foley + oral PGE_1 (78%), PGE_1 alone (77%)

CD = cesarean delivery; EBL = estimated blood loss; N = participant number; PGE_1 = prostaglandin E_1; TTD = time to delivery; VD = vaginal delivery.

vaginal route. One Cochrane metaanalysis of 76 trials reported that oral misoprostol compared with placebo significantly increased the rate of vaginal birth within 24 hours, while decreasing the need for oxytocin and lowering the cesarean delivery rate (Alfirevic, 2014). Comparisons of oral misoprostol and oxytocin and of oral misoprostol and dinoprostone also found significantly reduced rates of cesarean delivery with misoprostol. Similar efficacy was noted between oral misoprostol and vaginal administration, although oral administration was associated with significantly higher Apgar scores and less postpartum hemorrhage. Thorbiörnson and associates (2017) also reported lower rates of cesarean delivery with oral misoprostol compared with vaginal dinoprostone.

■ Nitric Oxide Donors

Over the years, agents that stimulate nitric oxide production have been studied for labor induction. Physiologically, nitric oxide is likely a mediator of cervical ripening. Cervical nitric oxide metabolite concentrations are increased at the beginning of uterine contractions.

Both *isosorbide mononitrate* and *glyceryl trinitrate* have been studied but are less effective clinically than prostaglandins for cervical ripening. In one metaanalysis, the rate of cesarean delivery was not reduced in those given nitric oxide donors compared with those given placebo, intravaginal or intracervical prostaglandins, intravaginal misoprostol, or intracervical catheter (Ghosh, 2016). However, nitric oxide donors were associated with significantly more headaches, nausea, and vomiting.

■ Mechanical Techniques

These include transcervical placement of a Foley catheter, with or without extraamnionic saline infusion; hygroscopic cervical dilators; and membrane stripping. In one metaanalysis, mechanical methods reduced the risk of uterine tachysystole compared with prostaglandins, although cesarean delivery rates were unchanged (Jozwiak, 2012). Trials comparing mechanical techniques and oxytocin found a lower rate of cesarean delivery with mechanical methods. Trials comparing mechanical options with dinoprostone found a higher rate of multiparas undelivered at 24 hours with mechanical methods. In another metaanalysis comparing Foley catheter and intravaginal dinoprostone inserts, cesarean delivery rates were similar, but uterine tachysystole was less frequent with catheter use (Jozwiak, 2013).

Transcervical Catheter

Generally, this option is only used with an unfavorable cervix because the catheter comes out as the cervix opens. It is suitable for women with membranes that are intact or ruptured. In most cases, a Foley catheter is placed through the internal cervical os, and downward tension is created by taping the catheter to the thigh (Mei-Dan, 2014). *Extraamnionic saline infusion (EASI)* is one modification. It adds a constant saline infusion through the catheter into the space between the internal os and placental membranes (Fig. 26-2). In one study, chorioamnionitis was significantly less frequent when infusion was added compared with no infusion—6 versus 16 percent (Karjane, 2006). Similarly,

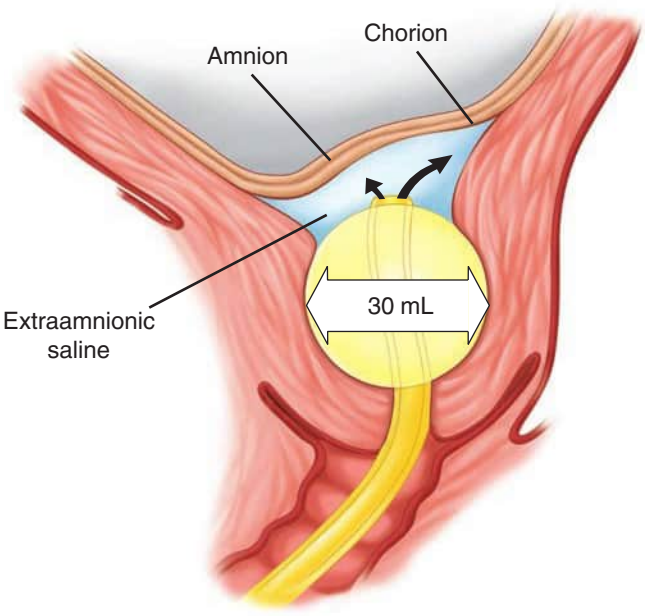


FIGURE 26-2 Extraamnionic saline infusion (EASI) through a 26F Foley catheter that is placed through the cervix. The 30-mL balloon is inflated with saline and pulled snugly against the internal os, and the catheter is taped to the thigh. Room-temperature normal saline is infused through the catheter port of the Foley at 30 or 40 mL/hour by intravenous infusion pump.

in a metaanalysis, transcervical catheters were not associated with higher rates of maternal or fetal infection (McMaster, 2015).

As discussed earlier, transcervical catheters do not reduce the cesarean delivery rate compared with prostaglandins. There were several iterations of the PROBAAT trials—I, P, M, and II—in which cervical ripening with a Foley catheter was compared with vaginal dinoprostone gel, dinoprostone vaginal inserts, and vaginal or oral misoprostol (Jozwiak, 2011, 2013, 2014; Ten Eikelder, 2016). These studies reported similar outcomes between the mechanical methods and the prostaglandin agents. Also, fewer overall cases of cardiotocographic changes were seen in the mechanical technique group.

Similar cesarean delivery rates are found in other comparison studies. Schoen and coworkers (2017) observed that concurrent oxytocin with a transcervical Foley catheter shortened the median time to delivery compared with a Foley catheter followed by oxytocin. However, rates of cesarean delivery were unchanged. Connolly and associates (2016) reported similar findings for women within intact membranes undergoing labor induction. Amorosa and colleagues (2017) found no benefit for transcervical catheter coupled with oxytocin compared with oxytocin alone for women with ruptured membranes. Other studies of concurrent misoprostol reported reduced time to delivery without affecting cesarean delivery rates (Carbone, 2013; Levine, 2016). With catheter induction plus misoprostol, one randomized trial found vaginal misoprostol to be superior to buccal administration (Gomez, 2021). Last, addition of tension does not appear to enhance catheter efficacy (Fruhman, 2017). These investigators randomly assigned 140 women to transcervical Foley catheter placement, with and without tension, and reported similar vaginal delivery rates.

One large trial at Parkland Hospital evaluated the addition of a Foley catheter to oral misoprostol. With catheter addition, investigators found no improvement in the vaginal delivery rate, but the chorioamnionitis rate was 30-percent higher (Adhikari, 2020). The unaltered vaginal delivery rate persisted in a stratified analysis of nulliparas and multiparas. In this study, our standard labor induction protocol with misoprostol alone achieved a 77-percent vaginal delivery rate.

Hygroscopic Cervical Dilators

Cervical dilation can be accomplished using hygroscopic or osmotic cervical dilators, which are illustrated in Chapter 11 (p. 209). Briefly, these include *Laminaria japonicum* or hygroscopic devices (Dilapan-S). Intuitive concerns of ascending infection have not been verified, and their use appears to be safe. Placement generally requires a speculum and positioning of the woman on an examination table. Studies comparing hygroscopic cervical dilators and prostaglandins found few benefits (Maier, 2018).

METHODS OF INDUCTION AND AUGMENTATION

Oxytocin has been used for labor induction for more than 70 years (Theobald, 1948). As discussed, other methods now include prostaglandins, which are used alone or in combination with oxytocin. Prostaglandins include misoprostol and dinoprostone. Mechanical methods encompass membrane stripping, artificial rupture of membranes, extraamnionic saline infusion, transcervical balloons, and hygroscopic cervical dilators. As recommended in *Guidelines for Perinatal Care*, each obstetrical department should have written protocols that describe administration of these methods for labor induction and augmentation (American College of Obstetricians, 2017).

Because preinduction cervical ripening frequently prompts labor, studies to determine induction efficacy for some of these agents have produced confusing results. The use of prostaglandins for labor augmentation has generally been considered experimental due to high rates of uterine tachysystole.

■ Prostaglandin E_1

Both vaginal and oral misoprostol are used for either cervical ripening or labor induction. For labor induction in women at or near term with either prematurely ruptured membranes or a favorable cervix, 100 μg of oral or 25 μg of vaginal misoprostol has similar efficacy compared with intravenous oxytocin. From these studies, evidence supports that oral misoprostol may be superior (Alfirevic, 2014; Hofmeyr, 2010; Lo, 2003). That said, misoprostol is associated with a greater rate of uterine tachysystole, particularly at higher doses. Also, induction with PGE_1 may prove ineffective and require subsequent induction or augmentation with oxytocin.

Thus, although there are trade-offs regarding the risks, costs, and ease of administration of each drug, either is suitable for labor induction. At Parkland Hospital, we administer an initial oral 100-μg dose, which may be repeated for inadequate labor after 6 hours. Four hours after the second dose or in those with tachysystole, an oxytocin infusion is begun, if needed, for hypotonic labor. One study compared oral misoprostol and a newer misoprostol vaginal insert that releases drug up to 24 hours. With the insert, cesarean delivery and adverse neonatal outcome rates were higher, but time to delivery was shorter (Döbert, 2018). Additional studies found these adverse outcomes were mitigated if the insert time was limited to 10 hours (Brandstetter, 2019, 2020).

For *labor augmentation*, results of a randomized controlled trial showed oral misoprostol, 75 μg given at 4-hour intervals for a maximum of two doses, to be safe and effective (Bleich, 2011). Although the uterine tachysystole rate was higher among women with labor augmented with misoprostol, the frequency of nonreassuring fetal status or cesarean delivery did not differ between oxytocin and misoprostol.

■ Oxytocin

As previously emphasized, in many instances, preinduction cervical ripening and labor induction are simply a continuum. In this regard "ripening" can also stimulate labor. If not, induction or augmentation may be continued with solutions of oxytocin given by infusion pump. Its use in augmentation is a key component in the *active management of labor*, described in Chapter 22 (p. 430). With oxytocin use, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) recommends fetal heart rate and uterine contraction monitoring. Contractions can be monitored either by palpation or by electronic means.

Intravenous Oxytocin Administration

A 1-mL vial contains 10 units of oxytocin. A typical infusate consists of 10 or 20 units, which is 10,000 or 20,000 mU, respectively, mixed into 1000 mL of crystalloid or dextrose solution. This mixture results in an oxytocin concentration of 10 or 20 mU/mL, respectively, and is administered by infusion pump. To avoid bolus administration, the infusion should be inserted into the main intravenous line close to the venipuncture site.

The goal of induction or augmentation is to effect uterine activity sufficient to produce cervical change and fetal descent, while avoiding development of a nonreassuring fetal status. According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a), the latter is a category III fetal heart rate tracing. In general, oxytocin is discontinued if the number of contractions persists with a frequency of more than five in a 10-minute period or more than seven in a 15-minute period or with a persistent nonreassuring fetal heart rate pattern. Oxytocin discontinuation nearly always rapidly lowers contraction frequency. When oxytocin is stopped, its concentration in plasma rapidly falls because the half-life is approximately 3 to 5 minutes.

The uterus contracts within 3 to 5 minutes of beginning an oxytocin infusion, and a plasma steady state is reached in 40 minutes (Seitchik, 1984). Response varies greatly and depends on preexisting uterine activity, cervical status, pregnancy duration, and individual biological differences. Caldeyro-Barcia and Poseiro (1960) reported that the uterine response to oxytocin increases from 20 to 30 weeks' gestation and rises rapidly at term.

TABLE 26-5. Various Low- and High-Dose Oxytocin Regimens Used for Labor Induction

Regimen	Starting Dose (mU/min)	Interval (min)	Incremental Increase (mU/min)
Low-dose	0.5–1.5	15–40	1–2
	2	15	4, 8, 12, 16, 20, 25, 30
High-dose	4	15	4
	4.5	15–30	4.5
	6	20–40[a]	3–6[b]

[a]Uterine tachysystole is more common with shorter intervals.
[b]With uterine tachysystole and after oxytocin infusion is discontinued, it is restarted at one half the previous dose and then increased at 3-mU/min incremental doses.
From American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a; Hauth, 1986; Satin, 1992, 1994; Son, 2021; Tesemma, 2020.

Oxytocin is generally very successful when used to stimulate labor. In one large Cochrane metaanalysis, oxytocin was compared with expectant management, and fewer women—8 versus 54 percent—failed to deliver vaginally within 24 hours with oxytocin (Alfirevic, 2009). This analysis studied different oxytocin dosing regimens.

Oxytocin Regimens

Several evidence-based regimens for labor stimulation are now recommended by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a). These and others are shown in Table 26-5. Initially, only variations of low-dose protocols were used in the United States. Subsequently, O'Driscoll and colleagues (1984) described their Dublin protocol for the active management of labor that called for oxytocin at a starting dosage of 6 mU/min and advanced in 6-mU/min increments. Subsequent comparative trials during the 1990s studied high-dose (4 to 6 mU/min) versus conventional low-dose (0.5 to 1.5 mU/min) regimens, both for labor induction and for augmentation.

From Parkland Hospital, Satin and associates (1992) evaluated an oxytocin regimen using an initial and incremental dosage of 6 mU/min compared with one using 1 mU/min. Among 1112 women undergoing induction, the 6-mU/min regimen resulted in a shorter mean admission-to-delivery time, fewer failed inductions, and no cases of neonatal sepsis. Among 1676 women who had labor augmentation, those who received the 6-mU/min regimen had a shorter duration-to-delivery time, fewer forceps deliveries, fewer cesarean deliveries for dystocia, and lower rates of intrapartum chorioamnionitis or neonatal sepsis. With this protocol, uterine tachysystole was managed by oxytocin discontinuation followed by resumption when indicated and at half the stopping dosage. Thereafter, the dosage was increased at 3 mU/min when appropriate, instead of the usual 6-mU/min increase used for women without tachysystole. No adverse neonatal effects were observed. More recently, Son and colleagues (2021) confirmed these findings in a randomized clinical trial.

In 1990 at Parkland Hospital, routine use of the 6-mU/min oxytocin beginning and incremental dosage was incorporated and continues through today. In other labor units, a 2-mU/min beginning and incremental oxytocin regimen is preferred and administered. With either regimen, dosages are employed for either labor induction or augmentation.

Interval Between Incremental Dosing

Intervals to increase oxytocin doses vary from 15 to 40 minutes (see Table 26-5). Satin and associates (1994) addressed this aspect with a 6-mU/min regimen providing increases at either 20- or 40-minute intervals. Women assigned to the 20-minute interval regimen for labor augmentation had a significantly reduced cesarean delivery rate for dystocia compared with that for the 40-minute interval regimen—8 versus 12 percent. As perhaps expected, uterine tachysystole was significantly more frequent with the 20-minute escalation regimen.

Other investigators reported even more frequent incremental increases. Frigoletto (1995) and Xenakis (1995) and their coworkers gave oxytocin at 4 mU/min with increases as needed every 15 minutes. Merrill and Zlatnik (1999) started with 4.5-mU/min doses and increased this every 30 minutes. López-Zeno and associates (1992) used 6-mU/min doses and 15-minute intervals.

Maximal Oxytocin Dosage

The *maximal* effective dose of oxytocin to achieve adequate contractions in all women is different. In one study of 1151 consecutive nulliparas, the likelihood of progression to vaginal delivery decreased at and beyond an oxytocin dosage of 36 mU/min (Wen, 2001). Still, at a dosage of 72 mU/min, half of the nulliparas were delivered vaginally. Thus, if contractions are not adequate—less than 200 Montevideo units—and if the fetal status is reassuring and labor has arrested, an oxytocin infusion dose greater than 48 mU/min has no apparent risks (Tesemma, 2020).

■ Risks versus Benefits

Unless the uterus is scarred, uterine rupture associated with oxytocin infusion is rare, even in parous women. Flannelly and associates (1993) reported no cases of uterine rupture, with or without oxytocin, in 27,829 nulliparas. Eight instances of overt uterine rupture during labor were noted in 48,718 parous women. Only one of these was associated with oxytocin use. A population-based retrospective review from Denmark reported a rupture rate of 3.3 per 100,000 women without prior cesarean, with the highest risk among multiparas (Thisted, 2015). Our experience from Parkland Hospital is that oxytocin induction and augmentation are associated with uterine rupture. During an 8-year period in which there were almost 95,000 births, 15 women suffered a primary uterine rupture, and 14 of these cases were associated with oxytocin use. In half of these women, prostaglandins were also given before augmentation with oxytocin.

Oxytocin has amino-acid homology similar to arginine vasopressin (AVP) and has significant antidiuretic action. When infused at doses of 20 mU/min or more, renal free water clearance drops markedly. If aqueous fluids are infused in appreciable amounts along with oxytocin, *water intoxication* can lead to convulsions, coma, and even death. In general, if

oxytocin is to be administered in high doses for a considerable period of time, its concentration should be increased rather than raising the flow rate of a more dilute solution. Consideration also should be given to use of crystalloids—either normal saline or lactated Ringer solution.

Uterine Contraction Pressures

Contraction forces in spontaneously laboring women range from 90 to 390 Montevideo units (Chap. 24, p. 462). Early researchers found that the mean or median spontaneous uterine contraction pattern between 140 and 150 Montevideo units resulted in progression to vaginal delivery (Caldeyro-Barcia, 1950; Seitchik, 1984).

Labor arrest in first-stage labor is described in Chapter 23 (p. 434). In the management of active-phase arrest, and with no contraindication to intravenous oxytocin, decisions must be made with knowledge of the safe upper range of uterine activity. Hauth and colleagues (1986) described an effective and safe protocol for oxytocin augmentation for active-phase arrest. With it, more than 90 percent of women achieved an average of at least 200 to 225 Montevideo units. They later reported that nearly all women in whom active-phase arrest persisted despite oxytocin generated more than 200 Montevideo units (Hauth, 1991). Importantly, despite no labor progression, no adverse maternal or perinatal effects were noted in those ultimately requiring cesarean delivery. Data regarding the safety and efficacy of contraction patterns in women with a prior cesarean delivery, with twins, or with an overdistended uterus are lacking.

Amniotomy for Induction and Augmentation

Elective amniotomy with the intention of accelerating labor is often performed. For labor induction, artificial rupture of the membranes—sometimes called *surgical induction*—can be used and always implies a commitment to delivery. The main disadvantage of amniotomy used alone for labor induction is the unpredictable and occasionally long interval until labor onset. That said, in a randomized trial, Bakos and Bäckström (1987) found that amniotomy alone or combined with oxytocin was superior to oxytocin alone. Mercer and colleagues (1995) randomly assigned 209 women undergoing oxytocin induction to either early amniotomy at 1 to 2 cm or late amniotomy at 5 cm. Early amniotomy was associated with a 4-hour reduction in labor duration. With early amniotomy, however, the incidence of chorioamnionitis was elevated. In a metaanalysis, De Vivo and associates (2020) reported that early amniotomy did not increase the risk of cesarean delivery yet reduced the interval from induction to delivery.

For labor augmentation, amniotomy is commonly performed when labor is abnormally slow. Shown in Table 26-6, amniotomy at approximately 5-cm dilation accelerated spontaneous labor by 1 to 1½ hours. Importantly, neither the need for oxytocin stimulation nor the overall cesarean delivery rate was higher. Although the incidences of mild and moderate cord compression patterns were increased following amniotomy, cesarean delivery rates for fetal distress were not greater. Most importantly, there were no adverse perinatal effects.

Rouse and associates (1994) also found that amniotomy with oxytocin augmentation for arrested active-phase labor shortened the time to delivery by 44 minutes compared with that of oxytocin alone. Although amniotomy did not alter the delivery route, one drawback was that it significantly increased the incidence of chorioamnionitis.

Regardless of the indication, amniotomy is associated with a risk of cord prolapse. To minimize this risk, disengagement of the fetal head during amniotomy is avoided. Toward this goal, fundal or suprapubic pressure or both may be helpful. Some clinicians prefer to rupture membranes during a contraction. If the vertex is not well applied to the lower uterine segment, a gradual egress of amnionic fluid can sometimes be accomplished by several membrane punctures with a 26-gauge needle held with a ring forceps and with direct visualization using a vaginal speculum. Alternatively, the trumpet used for pudendal blockade can sheath the needle and manually guide it through the cervix for amniotomy. In many of these cases, however, membranes tear and fluid is lost rapidly. Because of the risk of cord prolapse, or rarely placental abruption, the fetal heart rate is assessed before and immediately after amniotomy.

Membrane Stripping for Labor Induction

Labor induction by membrane "stripping" or "sweeping" is a frequent practice. Several studies have suggested that membrane stripping is safe and lowers the incidence of postterm pregnancy without consistently raising the incidence of ruptured

TABLE 26-6. Randomized Clinical Trials of Elective Amniotomy in Early Spontaneous Labor at Term

		Effects of Amniotomy					
Study	Number	Mean Dilation at Amniotomy	Mean Shortening of Labor	Need for Oxytocin	Cesarean Delivery Rate	Abnormal Tracing	Neonatal Effects
Fraser (1993)	925	<5 cm	125 min	None	None[a]	None	None
Garite (1993)	459	5.5 cm	81 min	Decreased	None	Increased[b]	None
UK Amniotomy Group (1994)	1463	5.1 cm	60 min	None	None	NA	None

[a]No effect on overall rate; cesarean delivery for fetal distress significantly increased.
[b]Increased mild and moderate umbilical cord compression patterns.
NA = not assessed.

membranes, infection, or bleeding. Randomized trials are limited and a metaanalysis of two of these reported sweeping to be ineffective (Hamidi, 2020). Downsides are discomfort and associated bleeding (Boulvain, 2005).

REFERENCES

Adhikari EH, Nelson DB, McIntire DD, et al: Foley bulb added to an oral misoprostol induction protocol: a cluster randomized trial. Obstet Gynecol 136(5):953, 2020

Alfirevic Z, Aflaifel N, Weeks A: Oral misoprostol for induction of labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD001338, 2014

Alfirevic Z, Kelly AJ, Dowswell T: Intravenous oxytocin alone for cervical ripening and induction of labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD003246, 2009

Al-Ibraheemi Z, Brustman L, Bimson BE, et al: Misoprostol with Foley bulb compared with misoprostol alone for cervical ripening: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 131(1):23, 2018

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Elk Grove Village, AAP, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Practice advisory: clinical guidance for integration of the findings of The ARRIVE Trial: labor induction versus expectant management in low-risk nulliparous women. 2018. Available at: https://www.acog.org/clinical/clinical-guidance/practice-advisory/articles/2018/08/clinical-guidance-for-integration-of-the-findings-of-the-arrive-trial. Accessed November 21, 2020

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Induction of labor. Practice Bulletin No. 107, August 2009, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Intrapartum fetal heart rate monitoring: nomenclature, interpretation, and general management principles. Practice Bulletin No. 106, July 2009, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Vaginal birth after previous cesarean delivery. Practice Bulletin 205, February 2019c

Amorosa JM, Stone J, Factor SH, et al: A randomized trial of Foley bulb for labor induction in premature rupture of membranes in nulliparas (FLIP). Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(3):360.e1, 2017

Bakos O, Bäckström T: Induction of labor: a prospective, randomized study into amniotomy and oxytocin as induction methods in a total unselected population. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 66:537, 1987

Bishop EH: Pelvic scoring for elective induction. Obstet Gynecol 24:266, 1964

Bleich AT, Villano KS, Lo JY, et al: Oral misoprostol for labor augmentation: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 118(6):1255, 2011

Boulvain M, Kelly A, Irion O: Intracervical prostaglandins for induction of labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD006971, 2008

Boulvain M, Stan C, Irion O: Membrane sweeping for induction of labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD000451, 2005

Brandstetter A, Döbert M, Schwaerzler P, et al: Safety of misoprostol vaginal insert for labor induction using standard vs. adjusted retrieval criteria: a comparative cohort study. J Perinat Med. 48(5):488, 2020

Brandstetter A, Döbert M, Schwaerzler P, et al: Standard and adjusted criteria for the use of the misoprostol vaginal insert for labor induction: a comparative cohort study J Perinat Med 47(7):750, 2019

Caldeyro-Barcia R, Alvarez H, Reynolds SR: A better understanding of uterine contractility through simultaneous recording with an internal and a seven channel external method. Surg Obstet Gynecol 91:641, 1950

Caldeyro-Barcia R, Poseiro JJ: Physiology of the uterine contraction. Clin Obstet Gynecol 3:386, 1960

Carbone JF, Tuuli MG, Fogertey PJ, et al: Combination of Foley bulb and vaginal misoprostol compared with vaginal misoprostol alone for cervical ripening and labor induction: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 121:247, 2013

Chiossi G, Lai Y, Landon MB, et al: Timing of delivery and adverse outcomes in term singleton repeat cesarean deliveries. Obstet Gynecol 121(3):561, 2013

Connolly KA, Kohari KS, Rekawek P, et al: A randomized trial of Foley balloon induction of labor trial in nulliparas (FIAT-N). Am J Obstet Gynecol. 215:392.e1, 2016

De Vivo V, Carbone L, Saccone G, et al: Early amniotomy after cervical ripening for induction of labor: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(4):320, 2020

Döbert M, Brandstetter A, Henrich W, et al: The misoprostol vaginal insert compared with oral misoprostol for labor induction in term pregnancies: a pair-matched case-control study. J Perinat Med 46(3):309, 2018

Feltovich H: Cervical evaluation. From ancient medicine to precision medicine. Obstet Gynecol 130:51, 2017

Flannelly GM, Turner MJ, Rassmussen MJ, et al: Rupture of the uterus in Dublin: an update. J Obstet Gynaecol 13:440, 1993

Fraser W, Marcoux S, Moutquin JM, et al: Effect of early amniotomy on the risk of dystocia in nulliparous women. N Engl J Med 328:1145, 1993

Freret TS, Woods GT, James KE, et al: Incidence of and risk factors for failed induction of labor using a contemporary definition. Obstet Gynecol 137(3):497, 2021

Frigoletto FD, Lieberman E, Lang JM, et al: A clinical trial of active management of labor. N Engl J Med 333:745, 1995

Fruhman G, Gavard JA, Amon E, et al: Tension compared to no tension on a Foley transcervical catheter for cervical ripening: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:67.e1, 2017

Garite TJ, Porto M, Carlson NJ, et al: The influence of elective amniotomy on fetal heart rate patterns and the course of labor in term patients: a randomized study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 168:1827, 1993

Ghosh A, Lattey KR, Kelly AJ: Nitric oxide donors for cervical ripening and induction of labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 12:CD006901, 2016

Gomez HB, Hoffman MK, Caplan R, et al: Buccal vs vaginal misoprostol combined with Foley catheter for cervical ripening at term (the BEGIN trial): a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(5):524.e1, 2021

Grobman WA, Caughey AB: Elective induction of labor at 39 weeks compared with expectant management: a meta-analysis of cohort studies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(4):304, 2019

Grobman WA, Rice MM, Reddy UM, et al: Labor induction versus expectant management in low-risk nulliparous women. N Engl J Med 379(6):513, 2018

Hamidi O, Quist-Nelson J, Xodo S, et al: Membrane sweeping in patients planning a trial of labor after cesarean: a systematic review and meta-analysis or randomized controlled trials. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(18):3103, 2020

Hauth JC, Hankins GD, Gilstrap LC III: Uterine contraction pressures achieved in parturients with active phase arrest. Obstet Gynecol 78:344, 1991

Hauth JC, Hankins GD, Gilstrap LC III: Uterine contraction pressures with oxytocin induction/augmentation. Obstet Gynecol 68:305, 1986

Hawkins JS, Stephenson M, Powers B, et al: Diabetes mellitus: an independent predictor of duration of prostaglandin labor induction. J Perinatol 37:488, 2017

Hawkins JS, Wing DA: Current pharmacotherapy options for labor induction. Expert Opin Pharmacother 13(14):2005, 2012

Hernandez JS, Wendel GD Jr, Sheffield JS: Trends in emergency peripartum hysterectomy at a single institution: 1988–2009. Am J Perinatol 30(5):365, 2013

Hofmeyr GJ, Gülmezoglu AM, Pileggi C: Vaginal misoprostol for cervical ripening and induction of labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD000941, 2010

Ivars J, Garabedian C, Devos P, et al: Simplified Bishop score including parity predicts successful induction of labor. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 203:309, 2016

Jozwiak M, Bloemenkamp KW, Kelly AJ, et al: Mechanical methods for induction of labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD001233, 2012

Jozwiak M, Oude Rengerink K, Benthem M, et al: Foley catheter versus vaginal prostaglandin E_2 gel for induction of labour at term (PROBAAT trial): an open-label, randomised controlled trial. Lancet 378(9809):2095, 2011

Jozwiak M, Oude Rengerink K, Ten Eikelder ML, et al: Foley catheter or prostaglandin E_2 inserts for induction of labour at term: an open-label randomized controlled trial (PROBAAT-P trial) and systematic review of literature. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 170(1):137, 2013

Jozwiak M, Ten Eikelder M, Rengerink KO, et al: Foley catheter versus vaginal misoprostol: randomized controlled trial (PROBAAT-M Study) and systematic review and meta-analysis of literature. Am J Perinatol 31:145, 2014

Karjane NW, Brock EL, Walsh SW: Induction of labor using a Foley balloon, with and without extra-amniotic saline infusion. Obstet Gynecol 107:234, 2006

Kawakita T, Reddy UM, Iqbal SN, et al: Duration of oxytocin and rupture of membranes before diagnosing a failed induction of labor. Obstet Gynecol 128:373, 2016

Kehl S, Ziegler J, Schleussner E, et al: Sequential use of double-balloon catheter and oral misoprostol versus oral misoprostol alone for induction of labour at term (CRBplus trial): a multicenter, open-label randomised controlled trial. BJOG 122(1):129, 2015

Kominiarek MA, Zhang J, Vanveldhuisen P, et al: Contemporary labor patterns: the impact of maternal body mass index. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(3):244.e1, 2011

Kruit H, Tihtonen K, Raudaskoski T, et al: Foley catheter or oral misoprostol for induction of labor in women with term premature rupture of membranes: a randomized multicenter trial. Am J Perinatol 33(9):866, 2016

Landon MB, Hauth JC, Leveno KJ, et al: Maternal and perinatal outcomes associated with a trial of labor after prior cesarean delivery. N Engl J Med 351(25):2581, 2004

Laughon SK, Branch DW, Beaver J, et al: Changes in labor patterns over 50 years. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(5):419.e1, 2012

Laughon SK, Zhang J, Troendle J, et al: Using a simplified Bishop score to predict vaginal delivery. Obstet Gynecol 117(4):805, 2011

Levine LD, Downes KL, Elovitz MA, et al: Mechanical and pharmacologic methods of labor induction: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 128:1357, 2016

Lo JY, Alexander JM, McIntire DD, et al: Ruptured membranes at term: randomized, double-blind trial of oral misoprostol for labor induction. Obstet Gynecol 101:685, 2003

López-Zeno JA, Peaceman AM, Adashek JA, et al: A controlled trial of a program for the active management of labor. N Engl J Med 326:450, 1992

Luthy DA, Malmgren JA, Zingheim RW: Cesarean delivery after elective induction in nulliparous women: the physician effect. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:1511, 2004

Maier JT, Metz M, Watermann N, et al: Induction of labor in patients with an unfavorable cervix after a cesarean using an osmotic dilator versus vaginal prostaglandin. J Perinatal Med 46(3):299, 2018

Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJ, et al: Births: final data for 2018. Natl Vital Stat Rep 68(13):1, 2019

McMaster K, Sanchez-Ramos L, Kaunitz AM: Evaluation of a transcervical Foley catheter as a source of infection: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 126:539, 2015

Mei-Dan E, Walfisch A, Valencia C, et al: Making cervical ripening EASI: a prospective controlled comparison of single versus double balloon catheters. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 27:1765, 2014

Mercer BM, McNanley T, O'Brien JM, et al: Early versus late amniotomy for labor induction: a randomized trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 173:1371, 1995

Merrill DC, Zlatnik FJ: Randomized, double-masked comparison of oxytocin dosage in induction and augmentation of labor. Obstet Gynecol 94:455, 1999

Middleton P, Shepherd E, Morris J, et al: Induction of labour at or beyond 37 weeks' gestation. Cochran Database Syst Rev 7(7): CD004945, 2020

Mundle S, Bracken H, Kedikar V, et al: Foley catheterisation versus oral misoprostol for induction of labour in hypertensive women in India (INFORM): a multicentre, open-label, randomised controlled trial. Lancet 390(10095):669, 2017

O'Driscoll K, Foley M, MacDonald D: Active management of labor as an alternative to cesarean section for dystocia. Obstet Gynecol 63:485, 1984

Raghuraman N, Stout MJ, Young OM: Utility of the simplified Bishop score in spontaneous labor. Am J Perinatol 33:1176, 2016

Rouse DJ, McCullough C, Wren AL, et al: Active-phase labor arrest: a randomized trial of chorioamnion management. Obstet Gynecol 83:937, 1994

Rouse DJ, Owen J, Hauth JC: Criteria for failed labor induction: prospective evaluation of a standardized protocol. Obstet Gynecol 96:671, 2000

Salemi JL, Pathak EB, Salihu HM: Infant outcomes after elective early-term delivery compared with expectant management. Obstet Gynecol 127:657, 2016

Satin AJ, Leveno KJ, Sherman ML, et al: High-dose oxytocin: 20- versus 40-minute dosage interval. Obstet Gynecol 83:234, 1994

Satin AJ, Leveno KJ, Sherman ML, et al: High-versus low-dose oxytocin for labor stimulation. Obstet Gynecol 80:111, 1992

Schoen CN, Grant G, Berghella V, et al: Intracervical Foley catheter with and without oxytocin for labor induction: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 129:1046, 2017

Seitchik J, Amico J, Robinson AG, et al: Oxytocin augmentation of dysfunctional labor. IV. Oxytocin pharmacokinetics. Am J Obstet Gynecol 150:225, 1984

Sievert RA, Kuper SG, Jauk VC: Predictors of vaginal delivery in medically indicated early preterm induction of labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(3):375.e1, 2017

Simon CE, Grobman WA: When has an induction failed? Obstet Gynecol 105:705, 2005

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: SMFM statement on elective induction of labor in low-risk nulliparous women at term: the ARRIVE trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(1):B2, 2019

Son M, Roy A, Stetson BT, et al: High-dose versus, standard-dose oxytocin regimens to augment labor in nulliparous: a double-blind randomized trial. Abstract No. 6, Presented at the 2020 Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine Meeting. January 28–30, 2021

Souter V, Painter I, Sitcov K, et al: Maternal and newborn outcomes with elective induction of labor at term. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(3):273.e1, 2019

Spong CY, Berghella V, Wenstrom KD, et al: Preventing the first cesarean delivery. Summary of a Joint Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Workshop. Obstet Gynecol 120(5):1181, 2012

Ten Eikelder ML, Oude Rengerink K, Jozwiak M, et al: Induction of labor at term with oral misoprostol versus a Foley catheter (PROBAAT-II): a multicenter randomized controlled non-inferiority trial. Lancet 387:1619, 2016

Tesemma MG, Sori DA, Gemeda DH: High dose and low dose oxytocin regimens as determinants of successful labor induction: a multicenter comparative study. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 20(1):232, 2020

Theobald GW, Graham A, Campbell J, et al: The use of post-pituitary extract in physiological amounts in obstetrics; a preliminary report. BMJ 2(4567):123, 1948

Thisted DL, Mortensen LH, Krebs L: Uterine rupture without previous caesarean delivery: a population-based cohort study. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 195:151, 2015

Thomas J, Fairclough A, Kavanagh J, et al: Vaginal prostaglandin (PGE2 and PGF2a) for induction of labour at term. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD003101, 2014

Thorbiörnson A, Vladic T, Stjernholm YV: Oral versus vaginal prostaglandin for labor induction. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30:789, 2017

Tita AT, Doherty L, Grobman WA, et al: Perinatal outcomes of expectant management of full-term, low-risk, nulliparous patients. Obstet Gynecol 137(2):250, 2021

Tita AT, Landon MB, Spong CY, et al: Timing of elective repeat cesarean delivery at term and neonatal outcomes. N Engl J Med 360(2):111, 2009

Towers CV, Briggs GG, Rojas JA: The use of prostaglandin E2 in pregnant patients with asthma. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190(6):1777, 2004

UK Amniotomy Group: A multicentre randomised trial of amniotomy in spontaneous first labour at term. BJOG 101:307, 1994

Verhoeven CJ, Opmeer BC, Oei SG, et al: Transvaginal sonographic assessment of cervical length and wedging for predicting outcome of labor induction at term: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 42:500, 2013

Wen T, Beceir A, Xenakis E, et al: Is there a maximum effective dose of Pitocin? Am J Obstet Gynecol 185:S212, 2001

Widmer M, Piaggio G, Hofmeyr GJ, et al: Maternal characteristics and causes associated with refractory postpartum haemorrhage after vaginal birth: a secondary analysis of the WHO CHAMPION trial data. BJOG 127(5):628, 2020

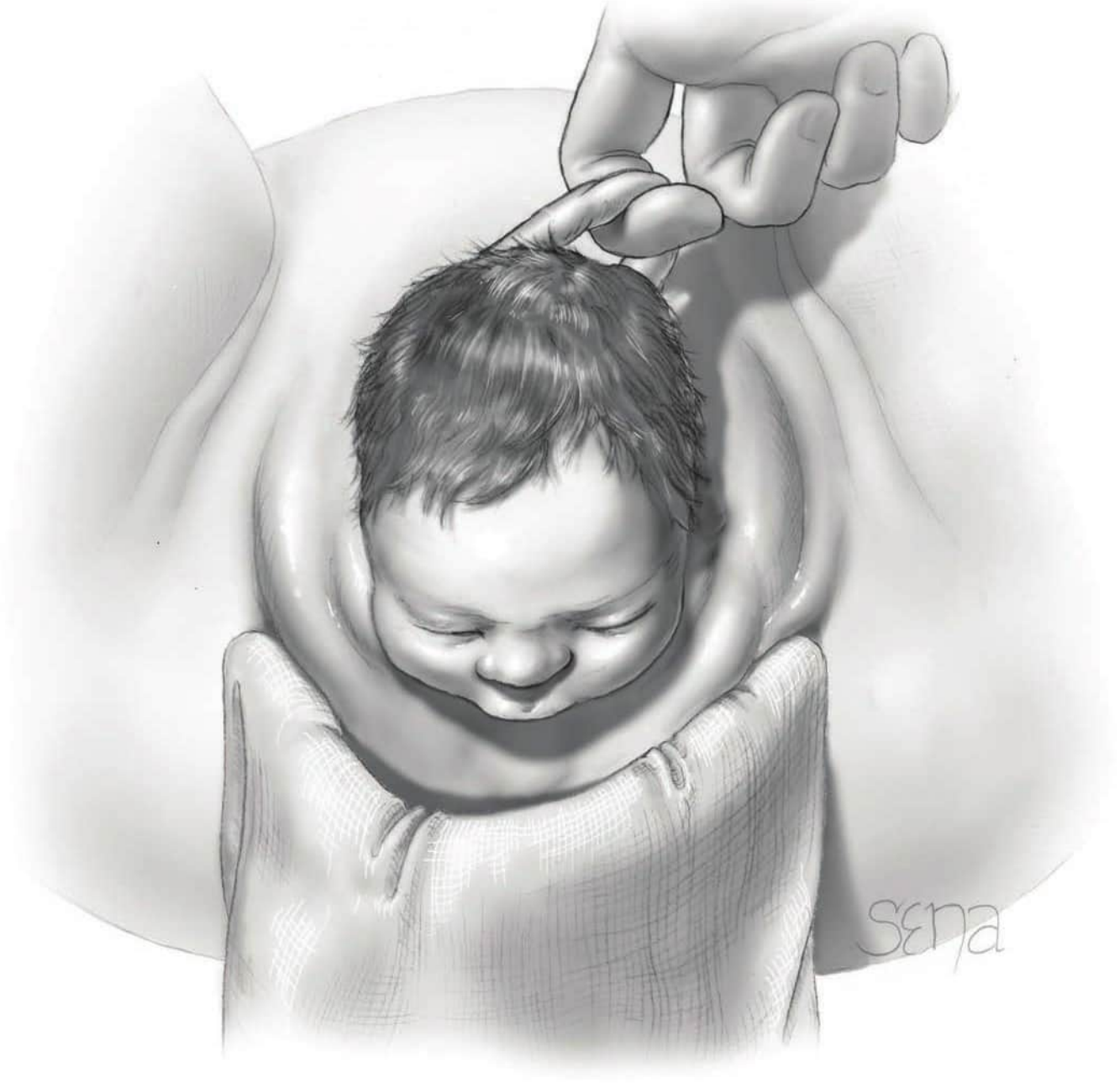
Xenakis EM, Langer O, Piper JM, et al: Low-dose versus high-dose oxytocin augmentation of labor—a randomized trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 173: 1874, 1995

Yeast JD, Jones A, Poskin M: Induction of labor and the relationship to cesarean delivery: a review of 7001 consecutive inductions. Am J Obstet Gynecol 180:628, 1999

Young DC, Delaney T, Armson BA, et al: Oral misoprostol, low dose vaginal misoprostol, and vaginal dinoprostone for labor induction: randomized controlled trial. PLoS One 15(1):e0227245, 2020

SECTION 8

DELIVERY



CHAPTER 27

Vaginal Delivery

The natural culmination of second-stage labor is controlled vaginal delivery of a healthy neonate with minimal trauma to the mother. Although some clinical settings favor cesarean delivery, for most fetuses, vaginal birth is preferred. For the mother, spontaneous vaginal vertex delivery poses the lowest risk of most maternal comorbidity, and comparisons with cesarean delivery are found in Chapter 30 (p. 548). Delivery is usually spontaneous, although some maternal or fetal complications may warrant operative vaginal delivery, described in Chapter 29 (p. 533). Last, a malpresenting fetus or multifetal gestation in many cases may be delivered vaginally but requires special techniques. These are described in Chapters 28 and 48.

DELIVERY TECHNIQUE

Preparation

The end of second-stage labor is heralded as the perineum begins to bulge, and the fetal scalp is seen through the separating labia. Perineal pressure from the fetal head creates reflexive pushing efforts. At this time, additional staff to attend the neonate and instruments are readied for delivery. Fetal heart rate monitoring continues. As one example, a nuchal cord often tightens with fetal descent and may lead to deepening variable decelerations. If the bladder is distended, catheterization can provide added pelvic space.

During second-stage labor, pushing positions may vary. But for delivery, the dorsal lithotomy position is most common and often the most satisfactory. Leg holders or stirrups are often used to assist. With or without their use, perineal laceration rates were equal in one randomized study of 214 parturients (Corton, 2012). With positioning, legs are not separated too widely or placed one higher than the other. Legs are not strapped into the stirrups. This permits quick flexion of the thighs backward onto the abdomen should shoulder dystocia develop. Legs may cramp during second-stage pushing, and cramping can be relieved by creating gentle muscle stretch, by brief massage, or both.

Preparation for delivery includes vulvar and perineal cleansing. If desired, sterile drapes are placed to cover the legs and abdomen and expose only the perineum. Scrubbing, gowning, gloving, and donning protective mask and eyewear protect both the gravida and accoucheur from infectious agents.

Delivery of the Head

By the end of second-stage labor, the position of the occiput is usually known. In some cases, however, molding and caput formation may have precluded early accurate identification. At this time, careful assessment is again performed as described in Chapter 22 (p. 429). In most cases, position is occiput anterior (OA) or is rotated slightly oblique. But, in perhaps 5 percent, an occiput posterior (OP) position persists.

With each contraction, the vulvovaginal opening is dilated by the fetal head to gradually form an ovoid and finally, an

almost circular opening. This encirclement of the largest head diameter by the vulvar ring is termed *crowning*. The anus becomes greatly stretched, and the anterior wall of the rectum is easily seen through it. The perineum thins and may spontaneously lacerate. Third- and fourth- degree perineal lacerations, which by definition involve the anal sphincter and perineal body, are collectively termed obstetric anal sphincter injuries (OASIS). Because of their associated morbidity (p. 508), one main goal during delivery is OASIS prevention.

To improve perineal elasticity and protect against laceration, some perform daily antepartum perineal massage starting at 34 to 35 weeks' gestation. With a lubricant, the woman or her partner inserts one or two fingers 3 cm into the vagina and applies pressure, first downward for 2 minutes and then laterally to each side of the vaginal entrance for 2 minutes. In one large randomized study, nulliparas benefited mainly by lower rates of episiotomy and of first-degree laceration (Labreque, 1999). Third- and fourth-degree laceration rates are not lowered (Beckmann, 2013). As another tool, antepartum use of the *Epi-No* intravaginal pump balloon similarly aims to stretch the perineum. However, in randomized trials, it did not prevent episiotomy, perineal trauma, or levator injury (Brito, 2015; Kamisan Atan, 2016). Instead of antepartum use, perineal massage can be performed solely intrapartum during second-stage labor. In a large randomized study, the rates of episiotomy, OASIS, and intact perineum were similar to those in a nonmassage group (Stamp, 2001). In subsequent systematic reviews, this practice was noted to lower OASIS rates and raise rates of delivery over an intact perineum (Aasheim, 2017; Aquino, 2020a).

When the head distends the vulva and perineum enough to open the vaginal introitus to a diameter of 5 cm or more, slow delivery of the head and control of accelerative forces may minimize lacerations (Laine, 2008). One of two approaches may be instituted. With the *hands-on method*, the thumb and remaining fingers form a V pressed against the perineum to bolster it. The other hand maintains fetal neck flexion to deliver the smallest head diameter through the introitus and provides gentle pressure against rapid forward movement to avoid expulsive delivery. Instead, with the *hands-poised method*, hands touch neither the head or perineum but are applied only selectively to slow rapid head expulsion. In a large randomized trial with more than 5000 gravidas, rates of intact perineum or OASIS did not differ between groups. In the hands-poised cohort, episiotomy rates were lower (McCandlish, 1998). Subsequent systematic reviews of randomized trials similarly note lower episiotomy rates with a hands-poised approach. However, among these analyses, intact perineum or OASIS rates were not consistently benefitted by this method (Aasheim, 2017; Huang, 2020; Pierce-Williams, 2019).

Alternatively, if expulsive efforts are inadequate or an expedited delivery is needed, the *Ritgen maneuver* may be employed or an episiotomy cut. With the maneuver, gloved fingers grasp the fetal chin just behind or in the anus and exert upward pressure between contractions. As a counter, the other hand presses against the occiput to control forces against the perineum (Fig. 27-1) (Cunningham, 2008). Although expeditious, this maneuver does not alter OASIS rates (Aquino, 2020b).

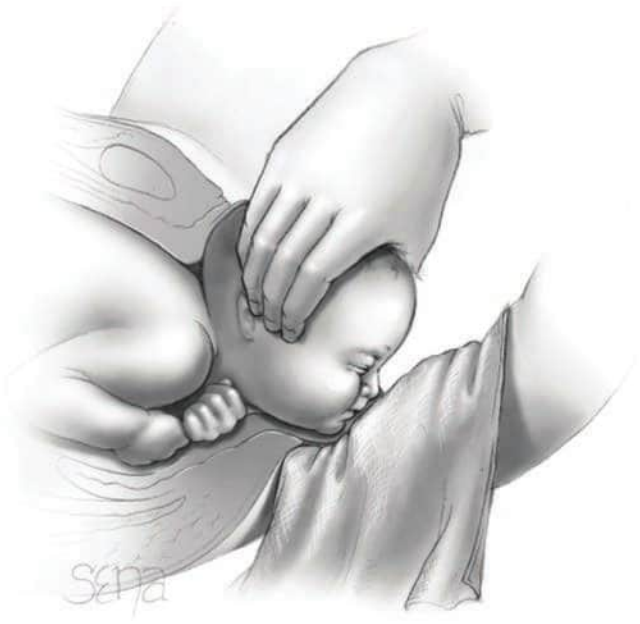


FIGURE 27-1 Modified Ritgen maneuver. Moderate upward pressure is applied to the fetal chin by the posterior hand covered with a sterile towel, while the occiput is held against the symphysis.

Delivery of the Shoulders

Following delivery of the fetal head, a finger is passed across the fetal neck to determine whether it is encircled by one or more umbilical cord loops. The nuchal cord incidence increases with gestational age and is found in nearly 25 percent of deliveries at term (Larson, 1997). If an umbilical cord coil is felt, it is slipped over the head if loose enough. If applied too tightly, the loop is cut between two clamps. Tight nuchal cords complicate approximately 6 percent of all deliveries but are not associated with worse neonatal outcomes than those without a cord loop (Henry, 2013).

Following its delivery, the fetal head falls posteriorly, bringing the face almost into contact with the maternal anus. The occiput promptly turns toward one of the maternal thighs, and the head assumes a transverse position. This external rotation indicates that the *bisacromial diameter*, which is the distance between the shoulders, has rotated into the anteroposterior diameter of the pelvis.

Most often, the shoulders appear at the vulva just after external rotation and are born spontaneously. If delayed, extraction aids controlled delivery. The sides of the head and neck are grasped with two hands, and if needed, *gentle* axial traction may be applied until the anterior shoulder appears under the pubic arch. Axial traction is aligned with the fetal spine, and lateral deviation of the neck does not exceed 25 to 45 degrees (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). Next, the posterior shoulder is delivered. During delivery, abrupt or powerful lateral extension of the neck is avoided to avert brachial plexus injury.

The rest of the body almost always follows the shoulders without difficulty. With prolonged delay, however, its birth may be hastened by moderate outward traction on the head and moderate pressure on the uterine fundus. Hooking the fingers

in the axillae is avoided. This can injure upper extremity nerves and produce a transient or possibly permanent paralysis. After the newborn, a gush of amnionic fluid that can be blood-tinged but not grossly bloody usually follows.

Previously, immediate nasopharyngeal bulb suctioning of the newborn was routine to remove secretions. However, suctioning of the nasopharynx may lead to neonatal bradycardia (Gungor, 2006). American Heart Association neonatal resuscitation recommendations eschew most suctioning immediately following birth—even with meconium present (Chap. 32, p. 589). Moreover, with meconium-stained fluid, routine intubation for tracheal suction is not recommended for vigorous or for nonvigorous neonates. Suctioning is reserved for neonates who have obvious obstruction to spontaneous breathing or who require positive-pressure ventilation (Wyckoff, 2015). For suctioning, options are bulb syringe or suction catheter aspiration and may include intubation and suctioning if the airway is obstructed.

Cord Clamping

The umbilical cord is cut between two clamps placed 6 to 8 cm from the fetal abdomen, and later an umbilical cord clamp is applied 2 to 3 cm from its insertion into the fetal abdomen.

For vigorous term neonates, umbilical cord clamping is ideally delayed 30 to 60 seconds to transfer blood to the newborn. Resting the newborn below the level of the uterus allows gravity to aid flow (Yao, 1974). As a result, higher total body iron stores and lower anemia rates for the neonate are sustained (Andersson, 2011; McDonald, 2013). This practice may be particularly valuable in populations in which iron deficiency is prevalent (World Health Organization, 2014). In general, delayed compared with early umbilical cord clamping does not worsen Apgar scores or umbilical cord pH values. For the mother, postpartum hemorrhage rates and puerperal hemoglobin status do not differ between early and delayed clamping groups (Andersson, 2013; Gomersall, 2021; Nudelman, 2020).

Of potential harms, a greater hemoglobin concentration raises risks for hyperbilirubinemia (Chap. 33, p. 606). Data are conflicting but suggest that neonatal phototherapy rates do not differ (Andersson, 2011; Chen, 2018; McDonald, 2013). That said, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020e) recommends that protocols should be in place that identify neonatal jaundice. Other cautions are cases requiring expedited maternal or fetal resuscitation. Others are those having abnormal placentation or compromised placental function, such as with abruption or fetal-growth restriction. Fewer data are available regarding cord "milking," in which the operator pushes blood through the cord toward the newborn. This maneuver appears safe for term newborns and may be advantageous if rapid cord clamping is clinically indicated (Panburana, 2020).

For the preterm neonate, delayed cord clamping for 30 seconds or longer has several benefits. From systematic reviews on the topic, these include decreased rates of blood transfusion and death before hospital discharge (Fogarty, 2018; Rabe, 2019). However, one large randomized study did not show an advantage for its primary outcome, which was a composite of death plus major neonatal morbidity (Tarnow-Mordi, 2017). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020e) recommends delayed cord clamping for vigorous term and preterm neonates not needing immediate resuscitation at birth.

Cord milking in the preterm neonate may pose potential harm. Although conflicting, some data suggest higher associated rates of severe interventricular hemorrhage in those <32 weeks' gestation (Katheria, 2019, 2020; Kumbhat, 2021). Because of rapid blood volume changes, organizations currently recommend against the routine use of cord milking for neonates born <29 weeks' gestation (Seidler, 2021; Wyckoff, 2015).

Occiput Transverse Position

In some cases, pelvic shape leads to a persistent occiput transverse (OT) position that is not easily overcome during second-stage pushing. A platypelloid pelvis is flattened anteroposteriorly and an android pelvis is heart shaped (Fig. 2-16, p. 29). With these, space may be inadequate for occipital rotation to either an anterior or posterior position.

In the absence of a pelvic architectural abnormality or asynclitism, the OT position is usually transitory. Thus, unless contractions are hypotonic, the head usually rotates spontaneously to an OA position. If rotation ceases because of poor expulsive forces, vaginal delivery can be aided. The easiest is manual rotation of the occiput either anteriorly to an OA or, less commonly, posteriorly to an OP position. Kielland forceps also can rotate the occiput anteriorly. Both manual and forceps rotations are described in Chapter 29 (p. 540).

Persistent Occiput Posterior Position

Approximately 2 to 10 percent of singleton, term, cephalic fetuses deliver in an OP position (Cheng, 2010). Many fetuses delivering OP are OA in early labor but malrotate during labor. Predisposing risks include epidural analgesia, nulliparity, greater fetal weight, and prior delivery with OP positioning (Cheng, 2006a; Gardberg, 2004; Lieberman, 2005). Of pelvic shapes, an anthropoid pelvis and narrow subpubic angle can predispose (Barth, 2015; Ghi, 2016).

Women with a persistent OP position have higher associated rates of prolonged second-stage labor, cesarean delivery, and operative vaginal delivery. For women who deliver vaginally, rates of blood loss and of OASIS are increased (Senécal, 2005).

Newborns delivered from an OP position have higher complication rates than those born positioned OA. In one study of neonatal outcomes in 2591 women undergoing delivery from a persistent OP position, rates of acidemic umbilical cord gases, birth trauma, Apgar scores <7, and intensive care nursery admission, among others, were higher compared with an OA position (Cheng, 2006b). Others report similar findings (Fitzpatrick, 2001; Ponkey, 2003).

Fetal head position assessment is essential to management (Chap. 22, p. 429). However, digital examination for identification of fetal head position can be inaccurate, and transabdominal sonography may increase accuracy (Bellussi, 2017). The transducer is placed transversely just cephalad to

the maternal mons pubis. In the sonogram, fetal orbits and nasal bridge lie ventrally, whereas the occiput apposes the lower sacrum. Such information may explain prolonged second-stage labor and identify suitable candidates for rotation. Of other interventions, varying maternal position either antepartum or during labor does not appear to lower rates of persistent OP position (Kariminia, 2004; Le Ray, 2016).

If the bony pelvic outlet is roomy and the perineum is somewhat relaxed from prior deliveries, rapid spontaneous OP delivery can take place. Conversely, if the perineum is resistant to stretch, second-stage labor may be appreciably prolonged. During each maternal push, the head is driven against the perineum to a greater degree than when the head position is OA. This leads to greater rates of OASIS (Groutz, 2011). For these reasons, manual rotation with spontaneous delivery from an OA position has advantages. Lower rates of cesarean delivery, severe perineal laceration, chorioamnionitis, and maternal blood loss follow rotation to OA position (Shaffer, 2011). Alternatively, forceps rotation to an OA position may be attempted for those with suitable skills. Last, forceps or vacuum device also can be applied and delivery completed from an OP position. These operative vaginal techniques are detailed in Chapter 29 (p. 540).

Infrequently, protrusion of fetal scalp through the introitus can be erroneously encouraging. In these cases, findings reflect marked fetal head elongation from molding plus substantive scalp edema and not fetal descent. In some cases, the head may not even be engaged—that is, the biparietal diameter may not have passed through the pelvic inlet. Labor is characteristically long and descent of the head is slow. Careful palpation above the symphysis may disclose the fetal head to be above the pelvic inlet. Prompt cesarean delivery is appropriate.

SHOULDER DYSTOCIA

Following complete emergence of the fetal head during vaginal delivery, the remainder of the body may not rapidly follow. The anterior fetal shoulder can become wedged behind the symphysis pubis and fail to deliver with maternal pushing and gentle axial traction by the provider. One indicator may be retraction of the baby's head against the mother's perineum—the *turtle sign*. Because the umbilical cord is compressed within the birth canal, shoulder dystocia is an emergency. Several maneuvers may be performed to free the shoulder. This requires a team approach, and effective communication and leadership are critical.

Consensus regarding a specific definition of shoulder dystocia is lacking. Some, including the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019c), diagnose it if maneuvers are required to free the shoulder. Spong and coworkers (1995) reported that the mean head-to-body delivery time in normal births was 24 seconds compared with 79 seconds in those with shoulder dystocia. These investigators proposed that a head-to-body delivery time >60 seconds be used to define shoulder dystocia. Currently, however, the diagnosis continues to rely on the clinical perception that the normal traction needed for fetal shoulder delivery is ineffective.

Because of these differing definitions, the incidence of shoulder dystocia varies. One review cites a clinically useful average of 1 percent of all deliveries (Ouzounian, 2016). The incidence has risen in recent decades, likely due to increasing fetal birthweight (Øverland, 2014). Greater recognition and documentation also may boost reported incidences (Kim, 2016).

■ Maternal and Neonatal Consequences

In general, shoulder dystocia poses greater risk to the fetus than to the mother. The main maternal risks are serious perineal tears and postpartum hemorrhage, usually from uterine atony but also from lacerations (Hehir, 2020; Rahman, 2009). In contrast, significant neuromusculoskeletal injury and asphyxia are neonatal concerns. These specific injuries are described fully in Chapter 33 (p. 599). In one review of 1177 shoulder dystocia cases, brachial plexus injury was diagnosed in 11 percent and clavicular or humeral fracture in 2 percent (Chauhan, 2014). MacKenzie and associates (2007) reviewed 514 cases. Of the neonates, 7 percent showed evidence of acidosis at delivery, and 1.5 percent required cardiac resuscitation or developed hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy (HIE). In another review of 200 cases, rates of severe fetal acidosis and HIE were each 0.5 percent if delivery was completed within 5 minutes. These rates rose to 6 and 24 percent, respectively, with delivery delays ≥5 minutes (Leung, 2011).

■ Prediction and Prevention

Although several factors are clearly associated with this complication, shoulder dystocia cannot be accurately predicted or prevented (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). Associated characteristics include fetal macrosomia, maternal obesity, prolonged second-stage labor, operative vaginal delivery, and a prior shoulder dystocia (Mehta, 2004; Zhang, 2018).

Of these, increasing birthweight creates a corresponding rise in the incidence of shoulder dystocia (Øverland, 2012). With fetal macrosomia, commonly associated maternal characteristics are obesity, postterm pregnancy, multiparity, and diabetes (Koyanagi, 2013). The combination of fetal macrosomia and maternal diabetes mellitus escalates the frequency of shoulder dystocia (Nesbitt, 1998). This predisposition may stem from anthropomorphic differences between comparable-weight fetuses of nondiabetic and diabetic mothers. The latter fetal group has larger shoulder and extremity circumferences and greater shoulder-to-head and chest-to-head size (Modanlou, 1982). However, translating these specific measurements into stand-alone sonographic thresholds shows poor predictive sensitivity (Burkhardt, 2014). Planned cesarean delivery should be considered for the nondiabetic woman with a fetus whose estimated fetal weight is >5000 g or for the diabetic woman whose fetus is estimated to weigh >4500 g (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c).

As prevention, early labor induction has been evaluated. In one study, approximately 800 women with suspected macrosomic fetuses were randomly assigned to early induction between 37 and 39 weeks' gestation or to expectant care (Boulvain, 2015). Women with insulin-requiring diabetes were excluded. Dystocia rates were lowered by two thirds in the induction group, and neither group suffered brachial plexus injury. Other

neonatal outcomes were similar, except for a higher rate of hyperbilirubinemia and phototherapy in the induction group. A systematic review of four randomized trials again with the same compared groups showed no differences in rates of cesarean delivery, shoulder dystocia, or operative vaginal delivery. Fetal fracture rates were lower in the induction group (Magro-Malosso, 2017). Notably, when assessing the benefits, the poor accuracy of antepartum fetal weight prediction should be considered (Malin, 2016). Moreover, potential benefits of early induction are balanced against potential harms from early delivery. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a,c) recommends against labor induction before 39 weeks for suspected macrosomia alone.

Of other risks, recurrent shoulder dystocia ranges from 4 to 13 percent in the three largest series (Al-Hawash, 2019). For many women with prior shoulder dystocia, labor may still be a reasonable option. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019c) recommends that estimated fetal weight, gestational age, maternal glucose intolerance, and severity of prior neonatal injury be evaluated. Antepartum, risks and benefits of cesarean delivery are discussed with any woman with a history of shoulder dystocia. After discussion and risk assessment, either mode of delivery is appropriate.

Management

Shoulder dystocia cannot be accurately predicted. Thus, the labor and delivery team, which includes nurses, obstetrical providers, and anesthesia staff, should be well versed in its management. An emergent call for assistance should assemble these members.

Because of ongoing cord compression with this dystocia, one goal is to reduce delivery time. This is balanced against the second goal, which is avoiding fetal and maternal injury from aggressive manipulations. Adequate analgesia assists maneuvers. Episiotomy may be needed to provide sufficient room for essential manipulations but itself does not lower brachial plexus injury rates (Gurewitsch, 2004; Paris, 2011).

Various techniques can be used to free the anterior shoulder from its impacted position behind the symphysis pubis. The *McRoberts maneuver* is often selected first. With it, legs are lifted from stirrups, hips are sharply flexed up onto the abdomen, and knees remain flexed. Gherman and colleagues (2000) analyzed the McRoberts maneuver using x-ray pelvimetry. The procedure causes straightening of the sacrum relative to the lumbar vertebrae, rotation of the symphysis pubis toward the maternal head, and a decrease in the angle of pelvic inclination. This does not increase pelvic dimensions, but pelvic rotation cephalad tends to free the impacted anterior shoulder. Gonik and coworkers (1989) tested the McRoberts position objectively with laboratory models and found that the maneuver reduced the forces needed to free the fetal shoulder. During McRoberts maneuver, an assistant can apply downward and laterally directed *suprapubic pressure* (Fig. 27-2). This abducts the anterior shoulder to create a shorter bisacromial diameter. It also rotates the shoulders into the oblique diameter, which at the pelvic inlet is longer than the anteroposterior diameter. If unsuccessful, most move next to the posterior shoulder or to rotation maneuvers.

FIGURE 27-2 The McRoberts maneuver. The maneuver consists of removing the legs from the stirrups and sharply flexing the thighs up onto the abdomen. Simultaneously, an assistant also provides suprapubic pressure that is directed down and lateral.

With *delivery of the posterior shoulder,* the provider inserts a hand into the posterior pelvis, carefully sweeps the posterior arm of the fetus forward across its chest, and delivers the arm (Fig. 27-3). If possible, the operator's fingers are aligned parallel to the long axis of the fetal humerus to lower fracture risks. With the arm now outside of the pelvis, the bisacromial diameter is diminished. Next, the shoulder girdle is rotated into one of the oblique diameters of the pelvic inlet. These steps resolve the disproportion to free the anterior shoulder.

Of the rotational maneuvers, the method recommended by Rubin (1964) aims to shorten the bisacromial diameter (Fig. 27-4). A pelvic hand reaches the most easily accessible fetal shoulder, often the posterior one, which is then pushed toward the anterior surface of the chest. This maneuver abducts the posterior shoulder and rotates both shoulders into one of the pelvic inlet's oblique diameters. Friction from the vagina also abducts the anterior shoulder to some degree during this rotation. Again, resolution of the disproportion can free the anterior shoulder.

Instead, Woods (1943) reported that by rotating the posterior shoulder progressively in a corkscrew fashion, the impacted anterior shoulder could be released. For performance, one hand

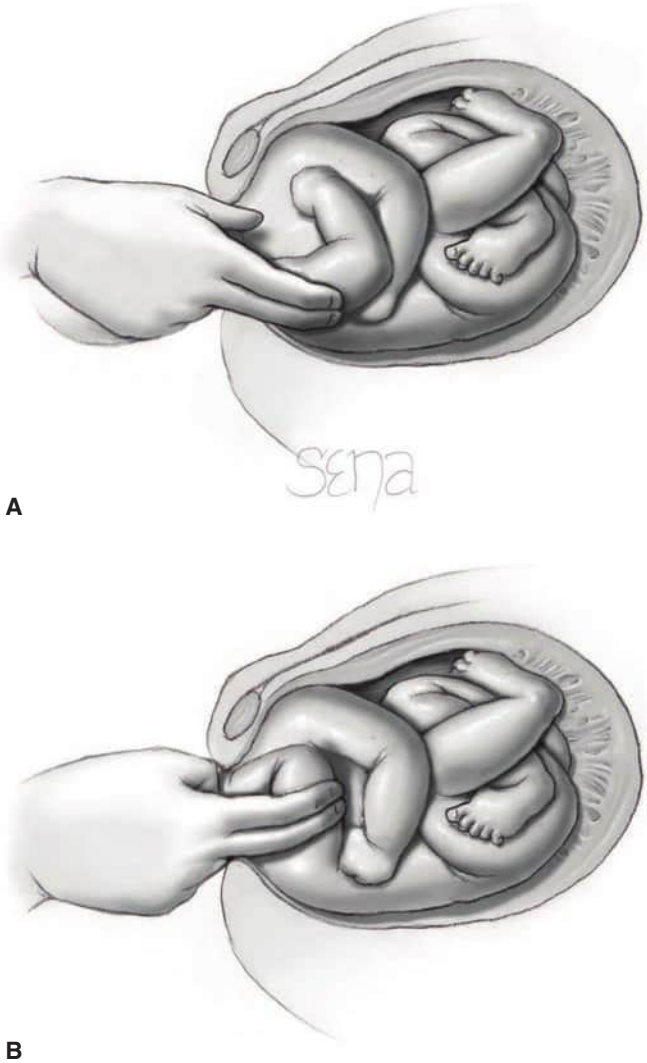


FIGURE 27-3 Delivery of the posterior shoulder for relief of shoulder dystocia. **A.** The operator's hand is introduced into the vagina along the fetal posterior humerus. **B.** The arm is splinted and swept across the chest, keeping the arm flexed at the elbow. **C.** The fetal hand is grasped and the arm extended along the side of the face. The posterior arm is delivered from the vagina.

is pressed against the anterior surface of the posterior shoulder, and pressure is directed toward the fetal back. The posterior shoulder is then rotated 180 degrees, and in doing so, it becomes the anterior-positioned limb. With rotation, this shoulder comes to lie beneath, not behind, the symphysis and can be delivered.

In a review of these four methods, all had similar neonatal injury rates (Spain, 2015). Importantly, delivery duration and the number of maneuvers raises neonatal injury rates.

If the above are initially unsuccessful, they may be repeated, and other methods may be elected. With an *all-fours maneuver*, also called the Gaskin maneuver, the parturient rolls onto her hands and knees. Here, axial traction against the head and neck attempts to free the posterior shoulder (Bruner, 1998). Challenges with this include immobility from regional analgesia and time lost in patient repositioning.

In some cases, the posterior arm is inaccessible for delivery. Cluver and Hofmeyr (2009) described *posterior axilla sling traction* to deliver the posterior arm. With this, suction tubing or a stiff urinary catheter is threaded under the fetal axilla, and both ends are brought together above the shoulder. This forms a loop beneath the axilla. Catheter traction then sweeps upward and outward to deliver the shoulder. Data continue to accrue. In a case series of 119 cases in which this was the first maneuver, the success rate was 96 percent (Ansell, 2019).

For refractory cases despite the above efforts, deliberate *fracture of the anterior clavicle* by using the thumb to press it toward and against the maternal pubic ramus can be attempted to free the shoulder impaction. In practice, however, deliberate fracture of a large neonate's clavicle is difficult. If successful, the fracture will heal rapidly and is usually trivial compared with brachial nerve injury, asphyxia, or death.

Symphysiotomy involves cutting of the intervening symphyseal cartilage and much of its ligamentous support to widen

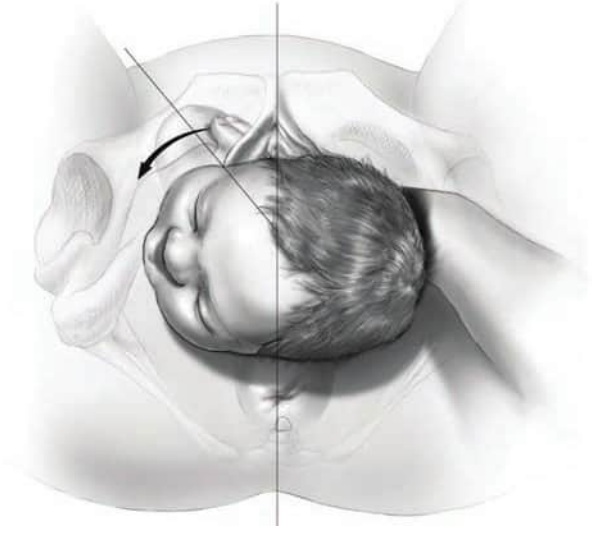


FIGURE 27-4 Rubin maneuver. The bisacromial diameter is aligned vertically. The more easily accessible fetal shoulder (the anterior is shown here) is pushed toward the anterior chest wall of the fetus (*arrow*). Most often, this results in abduction of both shoulders, which reduces the bisacromial diameter and frees the impacted anterior shoulder.

the symphysis pubis. In rare cases, it has been used successfully for shoulder dystocia (Goodwin, 1997). Using local analgesia, symphysiotomy surgically divides the intervening symphyseal cartilage and much of its ligamentous support to widen the symphysis pubis up to 2.5 cm (Basak, 2011). If feasible, a previously inserted urinary catheter is displaced from the midline with the index finger of the left hand, which is inside the vagina. Lack of provider training and potentially serious maternal pelvic or urinary tract injury explain its rare use in the United States.

The *Zavanelli maneuver* involves replacement of the fetal head into the pelvis followed by cesarean delivery (Sandberg, 1985). Terbutaline, 0.25 mg, is given subcutaneously to produce uterine relaxation. The operator first turns the head to an OA or OP position, flexes it, and slowly elevates it back into the vagina. Cesarean delivery is then performed. Sandberg (1999) reviewed 103 reported cases. It was successful in 91 percent of cephalic cases and in all cases of breech head entrapments. Despite successful replacement, fetal injuries were common but may have resulted from the multiple manipulations used before the Zavanelli maneuver (Sandberg, 2007).

Cleidotomy consists of cutting the clavicle with scissors or other sharp instruments. It is usually done for a dead fetus (Schramm, 1983).

In preparation for shoulder dystocia, clinical simulations aim to improve performance, documentation, and retention of drill steps. Their use has translated into improved neonatal outcome in some, but not all, investigations (Crofts, 2016; Fransen, 2017; Gurewitsch Allen, 2017; Walsh, 2011). At our institution, these drills involve resident, faculty, nursing, and anesthesia staff.

SPECIAL POPULATIONS

Home Birth

In 2017, 1.4 percent of deliveries in the United States were planned home births. Unplanned home births constituted 0.2 percent (MacDorman, 2019).

Of *unplanned* home births in a 15-year epoch in Norway, 69 of 6027 or 1.1 percent resulted in fetal or neonatal death. This high rate was attributable to infection, prematurity, and placental abruption (Gunnarsson, 2017). Multiparity and distance from the hospital were ascribed risks (Gunnarsson, 2014). In the United States, youth, lack of prenatal care, minority race, and lower educational attainment are risks (Declercq, 2010).

With *planned* home birth of a low-risk pregnancy, benefits include fewer medical interventions that include labor augmentation, episiotomy, operative vaginal delivery, and cesarean delivery (Bolten, 2016; Cheyney, 2014). Regarding the safety of planned home birth, data from randomized trials are lacking, and large observational studies derive from heterogeneous care systems, whose results may not be generalizable. For example, several developed countries deliver a large volume of carefully screened women at home. Gravidas are attended by midwives with substantial training and in a setting closely integrated with the local health-care system (Comeau, 2018; de Jonge, 2015). The level of such coordination in the United States is less uniform.

Overall, neonatal risks of home births in the United States are small but greater than those of hospital delivery. Midwife-attended home births carry a neonatal mortality risk of 1.3 per 1000 births. This is a nearly fourfold greater rate compared with midwife-attended hospital births (Grünebaum, 2020). The most common underlying causes of death are those attributed to labor and delivery events, to congenital anomalies, and to infection. Of neonatal injuries, rates of neonatal seizure and serious neurological dysfunction also are elevated in home-birth groups (Grünebaum, 2013, 2014, 2017; Snowden, 2015). Importantly, substantial risks attend home birth for those with preeclampsia, with multifetal gestation, with prior cesarean delivery, or with breech presentation (Caughey, 2019). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) specifically considers the last three to be absolute contraindications. Further, the College considers accredited hospitals and birthing centers to be the safest site for birth but recognizes the autonomy of the well-counseled patient.

Water Birth

As one option for pain relief, some women choose to spend part of first-stage labor in a large water tub. With this practice, one Cochrane review found lower rates of regional analgesia use and no greater adverse neonatal or maternal effects compared with traditional labor (Cluett, 2018).

For second-stage labor, water birth similarly aims to relieve pain, but it can pose neonatal risks. The rate of cord avulsion during water birth approximates 3 per 1000 births and stems primary from abruptly bringing the newborn out of the water (Schafer, 2014). Fresh-water drowning and pneumonia with sepsis are reported causes of neonatal death (Byard, 2010). The latter emphasizes the need for rigorous sanitizing protocols. Systematic reviews comment on the paucity of high-quality data but do not identify overall greater neonatal or maternal harms or benefits from water birth in low-risk, term, singleton gestations (Cluett, 2018; Taylor, 2016). Given the lack of robust data and potential for serious complications, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2016) currently recommends that "birth occur on land, not in water."

Female Genital Mutilation

This practice refers to medically unnecessary vulvar and perineal surgical modification. In the United States, it is a federal crime to perform unnecessary genital surgery on a girl younger than 18 years and is condemned by major health organizations that include the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b). Despite this, forms of female genital mutilation are practiced in countries throughout Africa, the Middle East, and Asia (UNICEF, 2020).

The World Health Organization (WHO) (2018a) classifies female genital mutilation (FGM) into four types (Table 27-1). Some long-term risks include propensity for urogenital infection, chronic vulvar pain, and dyspareunia (Berg, 2014b). Thus, early in care, new gravidas are asked about these problems or prior obstetrical complications. The psychiatric consequences also can be profound, and referral for psychological assessment can be offered (Low-Beer, 2018).

TABLE 27-1. World Health Organization Classification of Female Genital Mutilation

Type I	Partial or total removal of the clitoris and/or prepuce
Type II	Partial or total removal of the clitoris and the labia minora, with or without labia majora excision
Type III	Partial or total labial minora and/or majora excision, followed by fusion of the wound, termed infibulation, to cover and narrow the vagina. With or without clitoridectomy
Type IV	Pricking, piercing, incising, scraping, cautery, or other injury to female genitalia

With physical examination, a finger or cotton swab assesses elasticity and caliber of the vaginal opening. Parturients with types I, II, and IV typically require only routine obstetrical care. Those with type III FGM or with extensive scarring have higher delivery risks. If an obstruction to childbirth is recognized, the advantages of surgical release are ideally discussed early antenatally. Division of midline scar tissue to reopen the vulva is termed *defibulation* but also called *deinfibulation* or *anterior episiotomy* (Kalis, 2012).

FGM is associated with some adverse maternal and neonatal complications. Moreover, vaginal obstruction can delay diagnosis of other pregnancy conditions. From a prospective study, the WHO (2006) estimated that FGM raised perinatal morbidity rates by 1 to 2 percent. For mothers with FGM, rates for prolonged labor, perineal lacerations and episiotomy, and postpartum hemorrhage were higher than those without prior FGM (Berg, 2014a; Chibber, 2011). Evidence supports that gravidas with type III FGM who undergo defibulation benefit from lower rates of cesarean delivery and OASIS (Berg, 2018; Rodriguez, 2016). To prevent obstetrical complications, the WHO (2016) recommends defibulation, which can be completed antepartum or intrapartum (Fig. 27-5). In our and other's experiences, intrapartum defibulation allows successful vaginal delivery without major complications (Rouzi, 2012).

In discussing defibulation, cultural sensitivity is essential, and some women may be offended by the suggestion that they have been assaulted or mutilated (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2014). Preoperative counseling ideally discusses expected anatomic and physiologic changes. *Partial defibulation* uncovers the vagina and urethra, and *total defibulation* extends the incision to reveal the clitoris, if present. Women with infibulation often have a slow urine stream, and they perceive menses and urine to originate from the same opening. Both will change after scar incision. Affected women may be unfamiliar with normal vaginal anatomy, which will be visible following surgery. One excellent review is provided by Abdulcadir and associates (2018). Wound complications such as hematoma, cellulitis, or incisional dehiscence are rare but are discussed during counseling. Postoperative dyspareunia is uncommon, and in most studies, female sexual functioning scores improve (Berg, 2018; Nour, 2006).

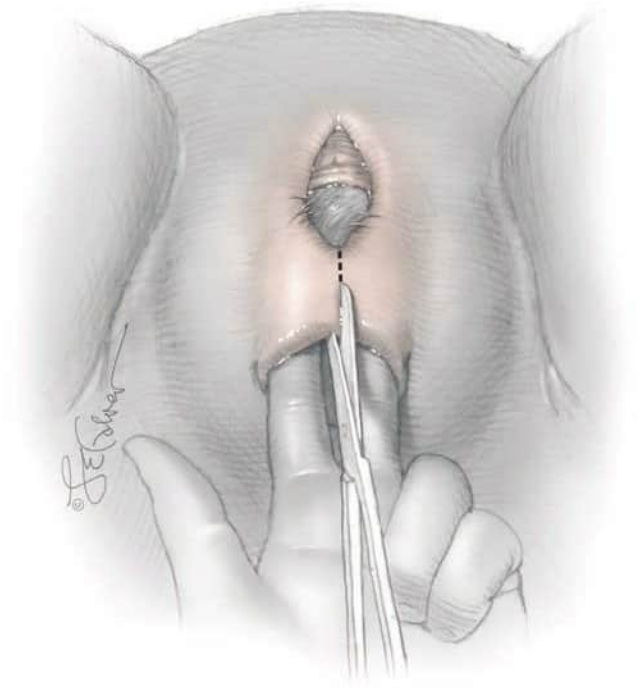


FIGURE 27-5 Deinfibulation. Although not shown here, lidocaine is first infiltrated along the planned incision if regional analgesia is not in place already. To protect underlying structures, two fingers or the tips of a narrow clamp are insinuated behind the shelf created by fused labia but in front of the urethra and crowning head. The shelf is then incised in the midline. After delivery, the raw edges are sutured with rapidly absorbable material to secure hemostasis. (Reproduced with permission from Hawkins JS: Lower genital tract procedures. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

Prior Pelvic Reconstructive Surgery

These surgeries are performed with increasing frequency in reproductive-aged women, and thus pregnancy following them is not uncommon. Major concerns are the degradation of repair by pregnancy and by vaginal birth.

After midurethral sling surgery and then a subsequent pregnancy, continence is preserved for most. Multiple pregnancies, however, may raise recurrence risk. Evidence does not favor a delivery route, and vaginal delivery is suitable (Adams-Piper, 2016; Cavkaytar, 2014; Dyrkorn, 2020).

Sacral neuromodulation units are recommended to be turned off because of unknown pregnancy effects from chronic electrical stimulation. From small reviews, lowered device efficacy and displaced or broken device leads can follow both vaginal and cesarean delivery (Mahran, 2017; Roulette, 2018). Data do not proscribe vaginal birth.

Hysteropexy aims to correct prolapse of the vaginal apex yet preserve the uterus. Available case series are few and small and do not allow estimates of recurrence rate or delivery route recommendations (Wieslander, 2020). Most undergo elective cesarean delivery.

Anomalous Fetuses

Rarely, delivery can be obstructed by extreme hydrocephaly, body stalk anomaly, conjoined twins, or massive fetal abdominal

enlargement from a greatly distended bladder, ascites, or organomegaly. Specifically, with milder forms of hydrocephaly, if the biparietal diameter is <10 cm or if the head circumference is <36 cm, vaginal delivery may be permitted (Anteby, 2003).

In rare cases in which neonatal death has occurred or is certain due to associated anomalies, vaginal delivery may be reasonable, but the head or abdomen must be reduced in size for delivery. Removal of fluid by cephalocentesis or paracentesis with sonographic guidance can be performed intrapartum. As described earlier, cleidotomy can shorten the bisacromial diameter. For hydrocephalic fetuses that are breech, cephalocentesis can be accomplished suprapubically when the aftercoming head enters the pelvis. Currently, these practices are more germane in developing countries.

THIRD STAGE OF LABOR

■ Delivery of the Placenta

Third-stage labor begins immediately after fetal birth and ends with placental delivery. Goals include delivering an intact placenta and avoiding uterine inversion or postpartum hemorrhage. The latter two, described in Chapter 42 (p. 731), are intrapartum emergencies.

Immediately after newborn birth, uterine fundal size and consistency are examined. If the uterus remains firm and bleeding is minimal, watchful waiting until the placenta separates is the usual practice. Neither massage nor downward fundal pressure is employed, but the fundus is frequently palpated to ensure that it does not become atonic and filled with blood from placental separation. *To prevent uterine inversion, umbilical cord traction must not be used to pull the placenta from the uterus.* Signs of separation include a sudden gush of blood into the vagina, a globular and firmer fundus, outward movement of the umbilical cord as the placenta descends into the vagina, and elevation of the uterus into the abdomen. With the last, the placenta, having separated, passes down into the vagina. Here, its bulk pushes the uterine body upward.

These signs appear within minutes after newborn delivery, and the median time ranges from 4 to 12 minutes (Frolova, 2016; Shinar, 2016b). Once the placenta has detached from the uterine wall, the mother can bear down, and intraabdominal pressure often expels the placenta into the vagina. These efforts may fail or may not be possible because of analgesia. After ensuring that the uterus is contracted firmly, the umbilical cord is kept slightly taut but is not pulled. Pressure is exerted by a hand wrapped around the fundus to propel the detached placenta into the vagina (Fig. 27-6). Concurrently, the heel of the same hand exerts pressure between the symphysis pubis and the uterine fundus and directs it toward the sacrum. This aims to prevent inversion. Once the placenta passes through the introitus, pressure on the uterus is relieved. The placenta is then gently lifted away. Care is taken to prevent placental membranes from being torn off and left behind. If the membranes begin to tear, they are grasped with a clamp and removed by gentle teasing (Fig. 27-7).

■ Management of the Third Stage

Practices within this stage of labor may be broadly considered as either expectant or active. Expectant management involves waiting for placental separation signs and allowing the placenta to deliver either spontaneously or aided by nipple stimulation or gravity (World Health Organization, 2012).

In contrast, active management of third-stage labor includes earlier cord clamping, controlled cord traction during placental delivery, and immediate prophylactic administration of a uterotonic agent. The goal of this triad is to limit postpartum hemorrhage. However, the value of this bundled approach is questioned (Begley, 2019). For example and as noted previously (p. 500),

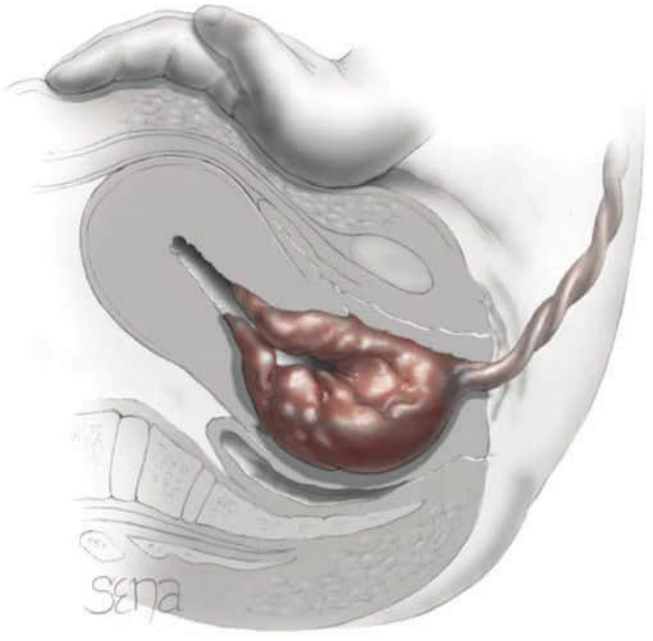


FIGURE 27-6 Expression of the detached placenta. Note that the hand is *not* trying to push the fundus through the birth canal! As the placenta leaves the uterus and enters the vagina, the uterus is pushed cephalad by the heel of the hand on the abdomen while the cord is held in position. The mother can aid in the delivery of the placenta by bearing down. As the placenta reaches the perineum, the cord is lifted, which in turn lifts the placenta out of the vagina.

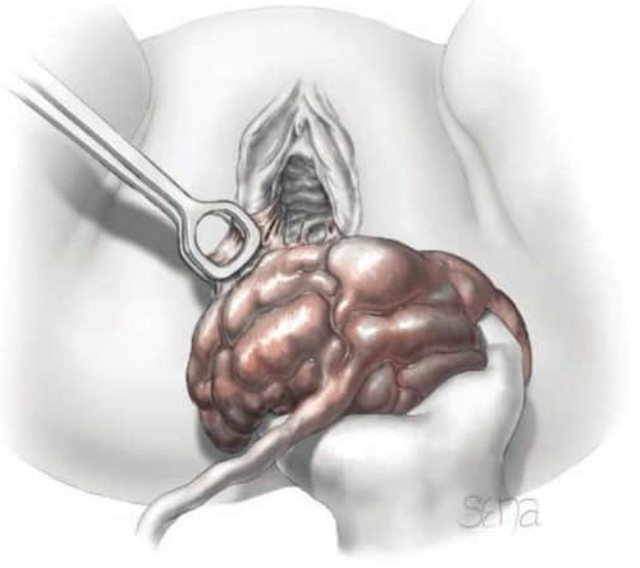


FIGURE 27-7 Membranes that were somewhat adhered to the uterine lining are separated by gentle traction with ring forceps.

delayed cord clamping does not raise postpartum hemorrhage rates, and thus early clamping is a less important component of this trio. Similarly, cord traction fails to prevent hemorrhage. Traction does lower manual placenta removal rates and shortens third-stage labor (Deneux-Tharaux, 2013; Hofmeyr, 2015). Following placental delivery, we support uterine massage to prompt uterine firming but recognize that evidence for its benefits to avoid postpartum hemorrhage is not strong (Saccone, 2018).

Therefore, uterotonic drugs play an essential preemptive role to decrease postpartum blood loss (Salati, 2019). A single agent is given either before or after placental expulsion, and timing does not affect rates of postpartum hemorrhage, placental retention, or third-stage labor length (Soltani, 2010). Choices for hemorrhage *prophylaxis* include oxytocin (Pitocin), misoprostol (Cytotec), and the ergots, namely ergonovine (Ergotrate) and methylergonovine (Methergine). In addition, a combination agent of oxytocin plus ergonovine (Syntometrine) is used outside the United States. Also in other countries, carbetocin (Duratocin), a long-acting oxytocin analogue, is available and effective for hemorrhage prevention (Kalafat, 2021). Prescribing information for carbetocin cites its use for cesarean delivery, but randomized trials reflect similar use for vaginal birth. Of agents, the WHO (2018) recommends oxytocin for first-line use.

High-dose Oxytocin

Synthetic oxytocin is identical to that produced by the posterior pituitary. Its action is noted at approximately 1 minute, and it has a mean half-life of 3 to 5 minutes. Recommended storage temperature is ≤25C°, which may pose problems in some low-resource countries. When given as a bolus, oxytocin can cause profound hypotension (Svanström, 2008). This hemodynamic change may be dangerous to women with hemorrhage-related hypovolemia or with certain cardiac conditions. Thus, oxytocin should be given as a dilute solution by continuous intravenous infusion or as an intramuscular injection.

Despite the routine use of oxytocin, no standard prophylactic dose has been established for its use following either vaginal or cesarean delivery. Water intoxication can result from the antidiuretic action of high-dose oxytocin if administered in a large volume of electrolyte-free dextrose solution (Whalley, 1963). Our practice is to add 20 units (2 mL) of oxytocin per liter of crystalloid solution. This is administered after delivery of the placenta at a rate of 10 to 20 mL/min—200 to 400 mU/min—for a few minutes until the uterus remains firmly contracted and bleeding is controlled. The infusion rate then is reduced to 1 to 2 mL/min until the mother is ready for transfer to the postpartum unit. The infusion is usually then discontinued. For women without intravenous access, 10 units of intramuscular oxytocin are injected.

Other Agents

Ergonovine and methylergonovine have similar activity in myometrium, but only methylergonovine is currently manufactured in the United States. These ergot alkaloid agents lower the rates of postpartum hemorrhage and the need for additional uterotonic drugs. However, blood pressure elevation is a concerning side effect (Liabsuetrakul, 2018). Methylergonovine is contraindicated in hypertensive women. If selected, a 200-μg dose of methylergonovine is given intramuscularly or is slowly injected intravenously in a period not less than 60 seconds to avoid sudden hypertension.

Misoprostol is a prostaglandin E_1 analogue, which has proved inferior to oxytocin for postpartum hemorrhage prevention (Tunçalp, 2012). However, in resource-poor settings that lack oxytocin, misoprostol is suitable for hemorrhage prophylaxis and is given orally as a single 400- or 600-μg dose (World Health Organization, 2018c). Side effects include fever and diarrhea.

From systematic reviews, carbetocin and oxytocin show equivalent efficacy for postpartum hemorrhage prevention after vaginal birth (van der Nelson, 2021; Widmer, 2018). Carbetocin is more expensive. A heat-stable form may have benefit in low-resource settings that may have inconsistent temperatures during supply distribution (Malm, 2018).

Tranexamic acid (TXA) is an antifibrinolytic agent and has been evaluated to *prevent* postpartum hemorrhage (Ahmadzia, 2018). In one metaanalysis, a 1-g intravenous TXA dose following delivery in addition to oxytocin was reported to lower the hemorrhage rate from 11.4 to 8.7 percent (Saccone, 2020). In a randomized trial of 3891 women, however, TXA plus oxytocin did not decrease the postpartum hemorrhage incidence compared with oxytocin alone (Sentilhes, 2018). Currently, TXA use is not recommended prophylactically (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). To *treat* hemorrhage, TXA use is described in Chapters 42 (p. 736) and 44 (p. 773).

■ Manual Removal of Placenta

In approximately 2 percent of singleton births, the placenta may not deliver promptly (Cheung, 2011). This may represent: (1) *placenta adherens*, in which uterine contractions are insufficient to detach the placenta; (2) lower uterine segment constriction and a detached but trapped placenta; or (3) placenta accreta spectrum. Consistent risks for retained placenta include stillbirth, prior cesarean delivery, prior retention, and preterm delivery (Belachew, 2014; Coviello, 2015; Endler, 2014). For the last, in one study with nearly 46,000 deliveries, analysis predicted that 90 percent of placentas would spontaneously deliver by 180 minutes for gestations at 20 weeks; 21 minutes at 30 weeks; and 14 minutes at 40 weeks (Dombrowski, 1995).

Postpartum hemorrhage can complicate a retained placenta, and bleeding risk accrues with the length of third-stage labor. In the absence of bleeding, evidence supports 15 to 20 minutes (Frolova, 2016; Shinar, 2016a; van Ast, 2019). The WHO (2012) cites a 60-minute threshold. Notably, if brisk bleeding ensues and the placenta cannot be delivered by standard technique, manual removal of the placenta is indicated (Fig. 27-8). When performed, some administer a single dose of intravenous antibiotics, however, one systematic review of observational studies found no benefits (Chibueze, 2015). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020d) concluded that data neither support nor refute this practice, but the WHO (2012) recommends prophylaxis. At our institution, we administer a single dose of cefazolin to women not already receiving antibiotics and not penicillin allergic.

IMMEDIATE POSTPARTUM CARE

The hour immediately following delivery of the placenta is critical. During this time, lacerations are repaired. Although uterotonic agents are administered, postpartum hemorrhage as the

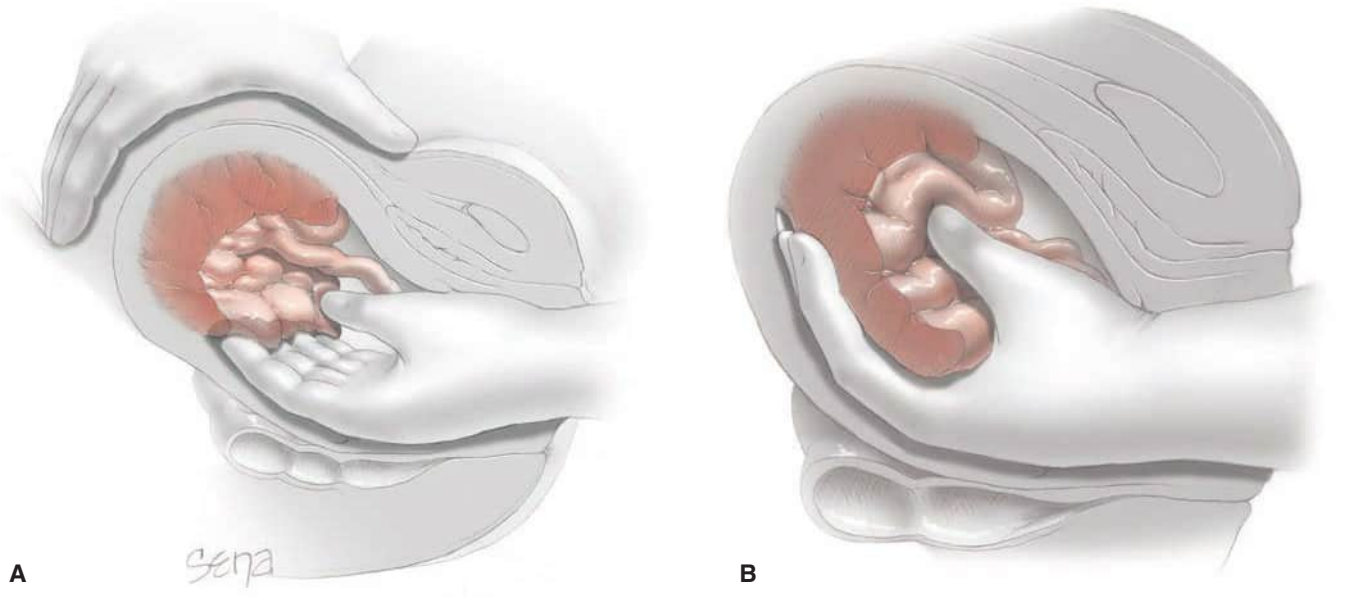


FIGURE 27-8 Manual removal of placenta. **A.** One hand grasps the fundus and the other hand is inserted into the uterine cavity and the fingers are swept from side to side as they are advanced. **B.** When the placenta detaches, it is grasped and removed.

result of uterine atony is most likely at this time. Hematomas may expand. Consequently, uterine tone and the perineum are frequently evaluated. The mother's blood pressure and pulse are recorded immediately after delivery and every 15 minutes for the first 2 hours. Her temperature is recorded every 4 hours during the first 8 hours and then every 8 hours thereafter. Vital signs may be obtained more frequently in patients at higher risk of postpartum complications (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017). The placenta, membranes, and umbilical cord are examined for completeness and anomalies, as described in Chapter 6 (p. 107).

Skin-to-skin Contact

This practice aims to connect the mother and newborn dyad early to promote breastfeeding (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a; Moore, 2016; World Health Organization, 2018b). Ideally, the mother lies in a semireclined position. After the newborn is dried to prevent cooling, its chest is placed against the mother's breast with access to her nipple. Its legs are flexed, and the mother's arm steadies its body. Covered with warm blankets and often a cap, the neonate's head is uncovered, turned to the side, and placed in a sniffing position. Mouth and nares should remain unobstructed (Widström, 2019). The dyad is continually monitored for physiologic stability, somnolence, unobstructed breathing, and safe positioning to avoid smothering or falls (Feldman-Winter, 2016).

Lower Genital Tract Lacerations

These lacerations may involve the cervix, vagina, or perineum. Those of the cervix and vagina are described in Chapter 42 (p. 739). In general, those of the perineum follow vaginal delivery, and most are first- and second-degree lacerations. Lacerations are classified by depth and involved anatomy, and complete definitions and visual examples are given in Figure 27-9. Of these, third-degree lacerations involve the anal sphincter and are subcategorized as:

(3a) <50 percent external anal sphincter (EAS) tear;
(3b) >50 percent EAS tear; and
(3c) EAS plus internal anal sphincter (IAS) tears.

Third- and fourth-degree perineal lacerations are considered obstetric anal sphincter injuries (OASIS), and their combined incidence is 0.1 to 5 percent (Blondel, 2016; Friedman, 2015). Risk factors for these more complex lacerations include nulliparity, midline episiotomy, persistent OP position, Asian race, increasing fetal birthweight, and operative vaginal delivery (Gurol-Urganci, 2013; Landy, 2011).

Morbidity rates rise as laceration severity increases. Compared with simpler lacerations, OASIS are associated with greater blood loss and puerperal pain. Wound disruption and infection rates are other risks (Goldaber, 1993; Lewicky-Gaupp, 2015). Stock and coworkers (2013) reported that approximately 7 percent of 909 OASIS had complications. Long term, OASIS are linked with approximately doubled rates of anal incontinence compared with vaginal delivery without OASIS (Evers, 2012; Schei, 2019). Fourth-degree lacerations pose greater anal incontinence risk than third-degree ones (Gommesen, 2020; Jangö, 2018). Evidence implicating OASIS in subsequent long-term dyspareunia are conflicting (Mous, 2008; O'Shea, 2018).

To ensure appropriate repair, identification and correct categorization is essential. Intrapartum endoanal ultrasound has been used to unmask clinically occult tears (Faltin, 2005). Few data currently support this imaging intrapartum, and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020c) does not recommended it.

For women with a prior OASIS, questions may arise as to subsequent pregnancy. In those without anal incontinence after OASIS repair, the rate of developing this incontinence is not increased by a subsequent vaginal birth (Jangö, 2016;

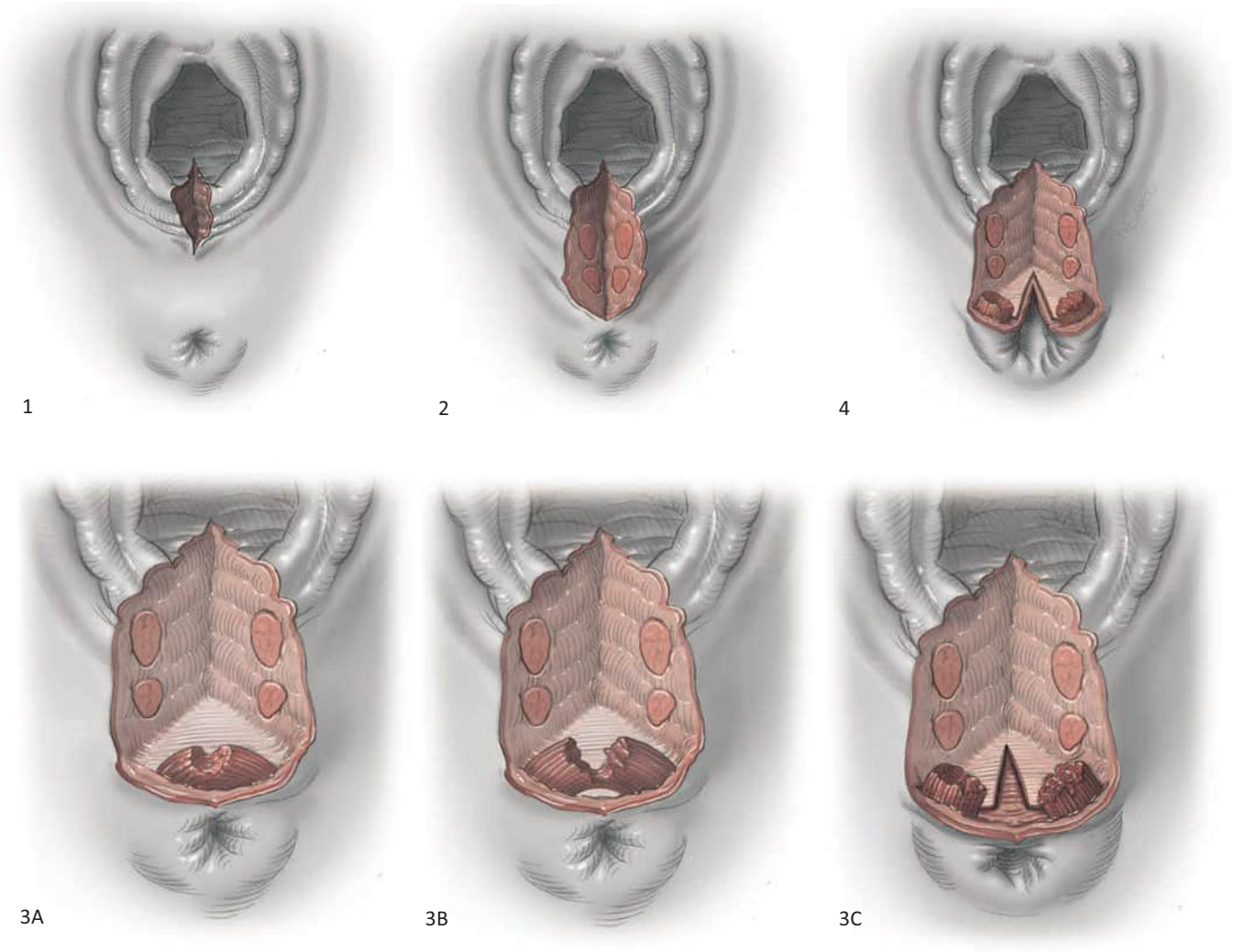


FIGURE 27-9 1. First-degree perineal laceration: injury to only the vaginal epithelium or perineal skin. **2.** Second-degree laceration: injury to perineum that spares the anal sphincter complex but involves the perineal muscles, which are the bulbospongiosus and superficial transverse perineal muscles. **3a.** Third-degree laceration: <50 percent of the external anal sphincter (EAS) is torn. **3b.** Third-degree laceration: >50 percent of the EAS is torn, but the internal anal sphincter (IAS) remains intact. **3c.** Third-degree laceration: EAS and IAS are torn. **4.** Fourth-degree laceration: the perineal body, entire anal sphincter complex, and anorectal mucosa are lacerated. (Reproduced with permission from Kenton K, Mueller M: Episiotomy and obstetric anal sphincter lacerations. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

Webb, 2017). Thus, a vaginal route is reasonable. However, women with a prior OASIS do have a higher recurrence rate with a subsequent delivery compared with multiparas without a prior OASIS (Edozien, 2014; Elfaghi, 2004). The risk mirrors that of primiparas in the general population and is low (Basham, 2013; Boggs, 2014). But, in those who experience a recurrent OASIS, the risk of anal incontinence can be substantial (Jangö, 2017). Fetal macrosomia and operative vaginal delivery are factors for OASIS recurrence and can influence counseling in future pregnancies. Specifically, patients may choose cesarean delivery to avoid repeat OASIS. This consideration may be most pertinent for those with prior postpartum anal incontinence, with OASIS complications that required a second repair, or with psychological trauma (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020c). Planned cesarean delivery is balanced against its associated operative risks (Chap. 30, p. 548).

■ Episiotomy

In contrast to spontaneous perineal tears, *episiotomy* is intended incision of the perineum. Its goal is enlargement of vaginal opening for birth. Textbooks and organizational guidelines often differ in their description. Kalis and colleagues (2012) presents one classification, and we agree with the need for terminology standardization.

Midline and mediolateral episiotomies are the two main types and vary by the angle of perineal incision. Involved structures mirror those found with second-degree laceration, and their repairs are analogous. The *midline episiotomy* begins at the fourchette, incises the perineal body in the midline, and ends well before the EAS is reached. The chosen incision length varies from 2 to 3 cm depending on perineal length, degree of tissue thinning, and outlet diameter needs for delivery. The *mediolateral episiotomy* begins at the midline of the fourchette

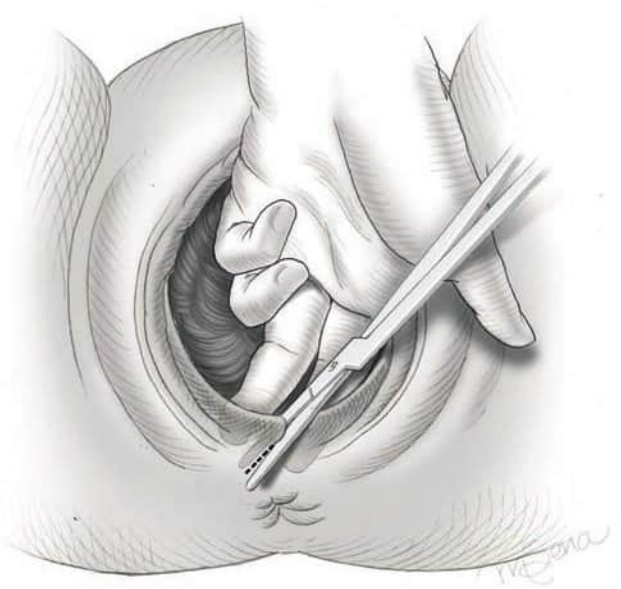


FIGURE 27-10 A mediolateral episiotomy is cut as the baby's head crowns. Fingers are insinuated between the perineum and head. The incision begins in the midline and is directed toward the ipsilateral ischial tuberosity at an angle 60 degrees off the midline. (Reproduced with permission from Kenton K, Mueller M: Episiotomy and obstetric anal sphincter lacerations. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

and is directed to the right or left at an angle 60 degrees off the midline (Fig. 27-10). This angle accounts for stretch distortion of perineal anatomy during crowning. After delivery and distortion resolution, it ultimately yields an incision 45-degrees from the midline for suturing (Kalis, 2011). Used less often, the *lateral episiotomy* begins at point 1 to 2 cm lateral from the midline of the fourchette. It too is angled toward either the right or the left ischial tuberosity.

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020c) recommends selective use of episiotomy rather than routine use. Evidence shows lower rates of severe perineal trauma in women undergoing spontaneous birth with a restrictive use of episiotomy (Dillon, 2019; Jiang, 2017). One potential indication is fetal jeopardy, and the quickly enlarged vaginal opening can speed delivery. Others are shoulder dystocia, breech delivery, fetal macrosomia, operative vaginal delivery, persistent OP position, and other instances in which failure to perform an episiotomy will result in significant perineal rupture. Surgical judgment and common sense should guide selection.

As a result of selective use, episiotomy rates have dropped. Oliphant and coworkers (2010) analyzed rates between 1979 and 2006 in the United States and noted a 75-percent decline. In the United States in 2012, episiotomy was performed in approximately 12 percent of vaginal births (Friedman, 2015).

Before episiotomy, analgesia is provided by existing labor regional analgesia, by bilateral pudendal nerve blockade, or by local infiltration of 1-percent lidocaine. Some instead advocate 2.5-percent lidocaine-prilocaine cream (EMLA cream). However, for efficacy, it requires application an hour before expected delivery, which may be logistically difficult (Abbas, 2020).

If episiotomy is performed unnecessarily early, incisional bleeding may be considerable before delivery. If it is performed too late, lacerations will not be prevented. Typically, episiotomy is completed when the head is visible during a contraction to a diameter of 4 to 5 cm.

Few data directly compare midline and mediolateral types. As noted, midline episiotomy has a greater likelihood of associated OASIS (Coats, 1980; de Leeuw, 2001). Short-term rates of pain and dyspareunia are similar or increased with mediolateral episiotomy (Fodstad, 2013, 2014; Sartore, 2004).

Even fewer studies compare lateral episiotomy to either mediolateral or midline. One randomized trial compared lateral and mediolateral types in nulliparas. Groups did not differ in pain scores, in sexual quality of life, or in vaginal or perineal trauma, including OASIS (Karbanova, 2014a,b; Necesalova, 2016). The authors also reported that mediolateral episiotomies required less time and suture for the repair. Thus, among the three, mediolateral episiotomy may be the preferred incision to reduce OASIS rates.

Laceration and Episiotomy Repairs

Typically, perineal repairs are deferred until the placenta has been delivered. This policy permits undivided attention to the signs of placental separation and delivery. A further advantage is that repair is not interrupted or disrupted by placenta delivery. This is especially true if manual placenta removal must be performed. The major disadvantage is continuing blood loss until the repair is completed. Direct pressure from an applied gauze sponge will help to limit this volume.

For suitable repair, an understanding of perineal anatomy is necessary (Chap. 2, p. 14). Adequate analgesia is imperative. Locally injected lidocaine can be used solely or as a supplement to bilateral pudendal nerve blockade. In those with epidural analgesia, additional doses can be given. Following any repair, needle and sponge counts are reconciled and recorded in the delivery note (Steelman, 2018).

First-degree lacerations do not always require repair, and sutures are placed to control bleeding or restore anatomy. Here, few data guide suture selection. A fine-gauge, absorbable suture such as chromic gut or a delayed-absorbable type such as polyglactin 910 (Vicryl) or poliglecaprone (Monocryl) are suitable. If a site is hemostatic, skin glue is another option (Feingenberg, 2014).

Second-degree laceration is shown in Figures 27-11. Midline and mediolateral episiotomy repairs use similar steps. Namely, these close the vaginal epithelium and reapproximate the bulbospongiosus and superficial transverse perineal muscles during restoration of the perineal body. Compared with placing interrupted sutures, a continuous suturing method closes the defect faster, and has lower short-term pain scores, but wound complications and long-term pain rates are comparable and low (Kettle, 2012; Kindberg, 2008; Valenzuela, 2009). Selected less often, blunt needles are suitable and aim to decrease the incidence of needle-stick injuries (Mornar, 2008). Commonly used suture materials are chromic catgut or 2–0 Vicryl. Compared with chromic catgut, Vicryl is associated with less short-term discomfort, but long-term pain rates are

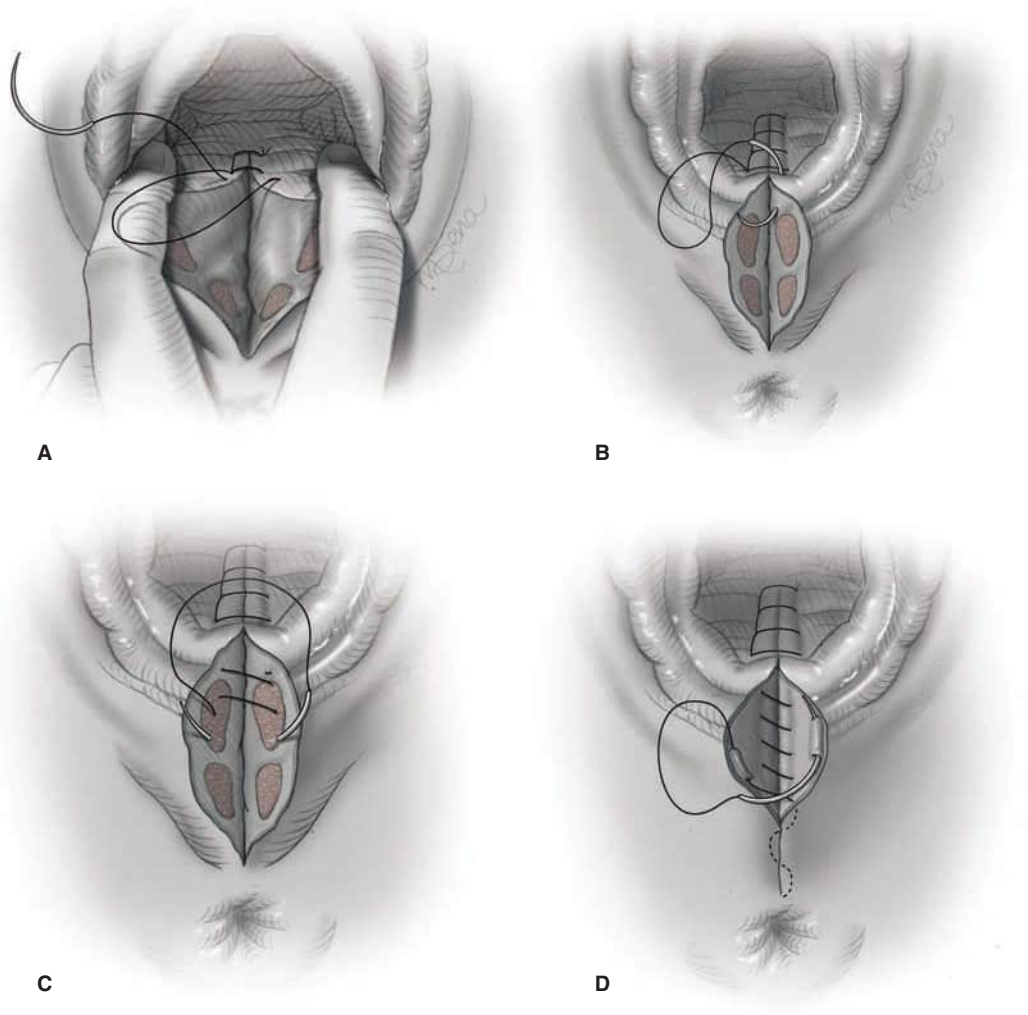


FIGURE 27-11 Midline episiotomy repair. **A.** An anchor stitch is placed above the wound apex to begin a running, locking closure with 2–0 suture to close the vaginal epithelium and deeper tissues and reapproximate the hymeneal ring. **B.** A transition stitch redirects suturing from the vagina to the perineum. **C.** The superficial transverse perineal and bulbospongiosus muscles are reapproximated using a continuous, nonlocking technique with the same length of suture. This aids restoration of the perineal body for long-term support. **D.** The continuous suture is then carried upward as a subcuticular stitch. The final knot is tied proximal to the hymeneal ring. (Reproduced with permission from Kenton K, Mueller M: Episiotomy and obstetric anal sphincter lacerations. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

comparable (Kettle, 2010). However, traditional Vicryl occasionally requires removal of residual suture from the repair site because of pain. This disadvantage may be reduced by selecting a rapidly absorbed polyglactin 910 suture (Vicryl Rapide) (Greenberg, 2004; Kettle, 2002). Other delayed absorbable options include Monocryl or polydioxanone (PDS II). The perineal skin is closed by a running subcuticular stitch with the same suture type used to close the perineal defect.

For third-degree laceration repair, two methods are available to repair the EAS. The first is an *end-to-end technique*, which we prefer, and is shown in Figure 27-12. Initially, the torn ends of the EAS, which often retract, are isolated. The EAS and its surrounding connective tissue are brought to the midline. As a misnomer, this connective tissue is often called a *capsule* (Maldonado, 2020). The strength of this closure is derived from the connective tissue surrounding the sphincter and less so from the striated muscle. Thus, serial interrupted sutures incorporate sphincter fibers and a substantial portion of the perisphincter connective tissue to bring EAS ends together. If the IAS is torn, a running, nonlocking closure is completed with 3-0 or 4-0 suture (see Fig. 27-13B). Few data guide suture selection for sphincter repair, but delayed-absorbable material can provide sustained tensile strength during healing (Williams, 2006). This theory is supported by the study by Jallad and coworkers (2016), which showed a higher perineal breakdown rate following OASIS repair with chromic catgut.

With the *overlapping technique,* the ends of the EAS are brought to the midline, lie atop one another, and are sutured in this position. This method is suitable only for type 3c lacerations—those with complete EAS rupture. Two rows of mattress sutures travel through both overlapping EAS ends to recreate the anal ring. In comparing the two methods, neither yields superior long-term anatomical or functional results (Farrell, 2012; Fernando, 2013; Fitzpatrick, 2000). Also with type 3c lacerations, the IAS is repaired before the EAS and is described next.

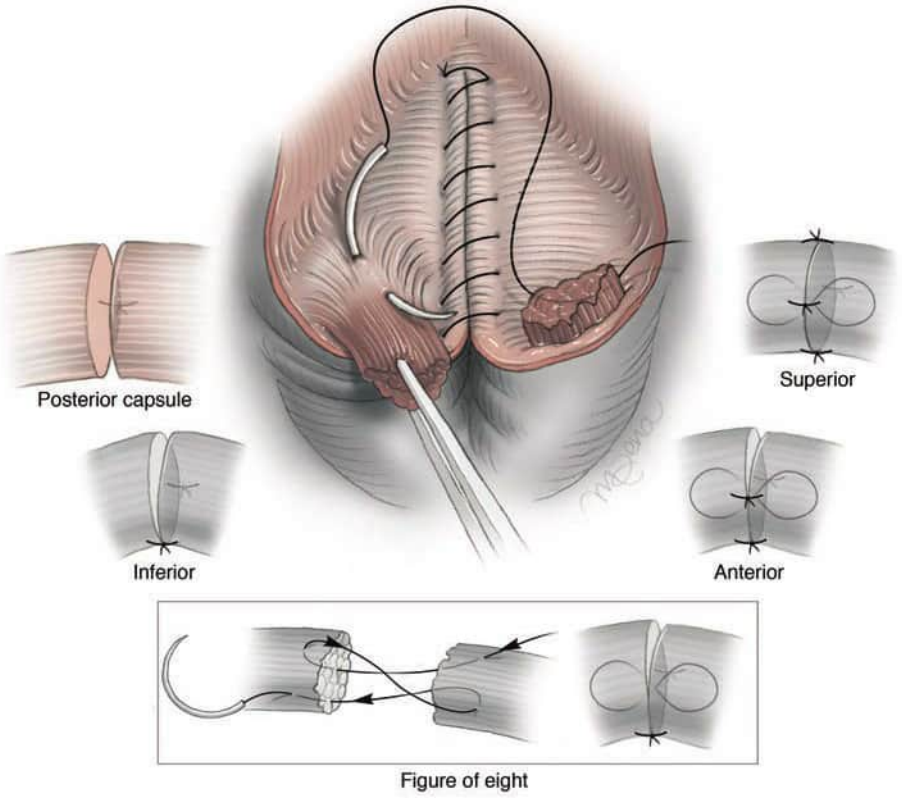


FIGURE 27-12 In overview, with end-to-end approximation of the external anal sphincter (EAS), a suture is placed through the EAS muscle, and four to six simple interrupted 2–0 or 3–0 sutures of polyglactin 910 are placed at the 3, 6, 9, and 12 o'clock positions through the perisphincter connective tissue. To begin, disrupted ends of the striated EAS muscle and capsule are identified and grasped. The first suture is placed posteriorly to maintain clear exposure. Another suture is then placed inferiorly at the 6 o'clock position. The sphincter muscle fibers are next reapposed by a figure-of-eight stitch. Last, the remainder of the fascia is closed with a stitch placed anterior to the sphincter cylinder and again with one placed superior to it. (Reproduced with permission from Kenton K, Mueller M: Episiotomy and obstetric anal sphincter lacerations. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

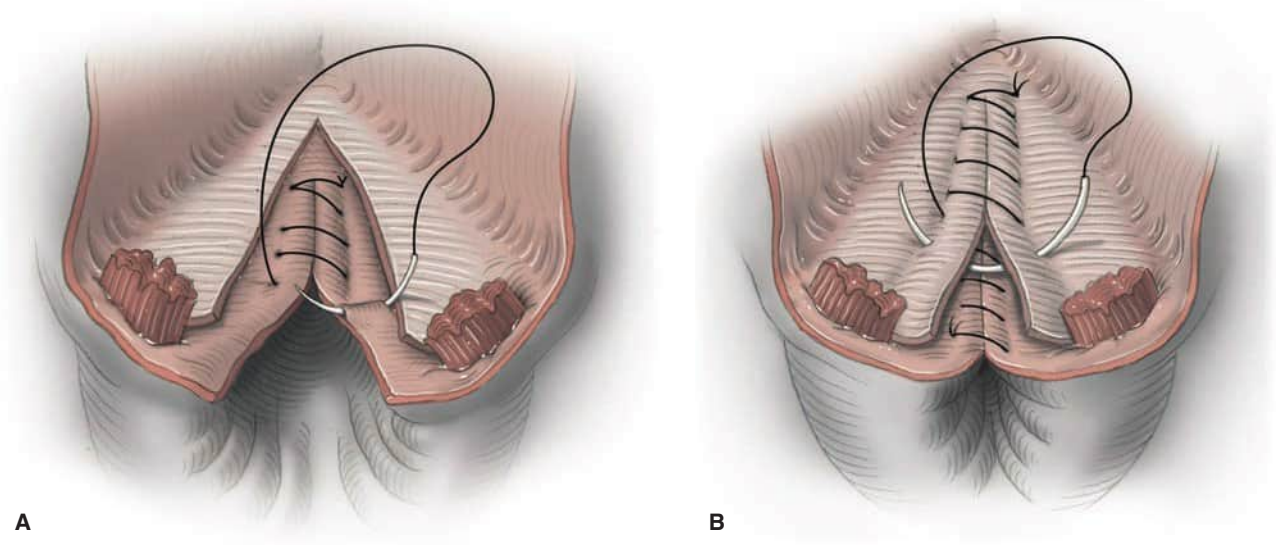


FIGURE 27-13 **A.** Suturing of the anorectal mucosa begins above the laceration apex using a continuous, nonlocking method with fine-gauge absorbable suture such as 3–0 or 4–0 chromic gut or polyglactin 910. Sutures are placed through the anorectal submucosa approximately 0.5 cm apart down to the anal verge. **B.** A second reinforcing layer uses 3–0 delayed-absorbable suture in a continuous, nonlocking fashion. This incorporates the torn ends of the internal anal sphincter (IAS), which can be identified as the glistening white fibrous structure lying between the anal canal submucosa and the fibers of the external anal sphincter. In many cases, the IAS retracts laterally and must be sought and retrieved for repair. (Reproduced with permission from Kenton K, Mueller M: Episiotomy and obstetric anal sphincter lacerations. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

With fourth-degree laceration repairs, both torn edges of the rectal mucosa are reapproximated first (see Fig. 27-13). Starting at a point 1 cm proximal to the wound apex, sutures are placed approximately 0.5 cm apart in the rectal muscularis and do not enter the anorectal lumen. Clinicians often use 4–0 delayed-absorbable suture or chromic gut for this running suture line. Some recommend a second reinforcing layer above this (Hale, 2007). The next layer to cover the anorectal mucosa is formed by reapproximation of the IAS.

For reduction of infectious morbidity associated with OASIS, a single dose of antibiotic at the time of repair may be considered (Buppasiri, 2014; Duggal, 2008; Lewicky-Gaupp, 2015; Stock, 2013). A single dose of a second-generation cephalosporin is suitable, or clindamycin for penicillin-allergic women. With OASIS, postoperatively, stool softeners are prescribed for a week, and enemas and suppositories are avoided.

■ Perineal Laceration Care

Initially, locally applied ice packs help reduce swelling and allay discomfort (de Souza Bosco Paiva, 2016). In subsequent days, warm sitz baths aid comfort and hygiene. Additionally, a small squirt bottle of warm water can cleanse the site after voiding or stooling. Analgesics containing codeine provide considerable relief. For lesser degrees of discomfort, nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs can be given.

Because pain may instead signal a large vulvar, paravaginal, or ischiorectal fossa hematoma or perineal cellulitis, these sites should be examined carefully if pain is severe or persistent. Management of these complications is discussed in Chapters 37 and 42 (pp. 657 and 740). In addition to pain, urinary retention may complicate episiotomy recovery, and management is described in Chapter 36 (p. 643).

For those with second-degree lacerations or OASIS, intercourse is usually proscribed until after the first puerperal visit. Compared with women with intact perineum, those with perineal trauma show higher rates of delayed intercourse at 3 and 6 months, but not at 1 year (McDonald, 2015; Rådestad, 2008; Signorello, 2001).

REFERENCES

Aasheim V, Nilsen AB, Reinar L, et al: Perineal techniques during the second stage of labour for reducing perineal trauma. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD006672, 2017

Abbas AM, Mohamed AA, Mattar OM, et al: Lidocaine-prilocaine cream versus local infiltration anesthesia in pain relief during repair of perineal trauma after vaginal delivery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(6):1064, 2020

Abdulcadir J, Marras S, Catania L, et al: Defibulation: a visual reference and learning tool. J Sex Med 15:601, 2018

Adams-Piper E, Buono K, Whitcomb E, et al: A large retrospective series of pregnancy and delivery after midurethral sling for stress urinary incontinence. Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg 22(5):307, 2016

Al-Hawash S, Whitehead CL, Farine D: Risk of recurrent shoulder dystocia: are we any closer to prediction? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(17):2928, 2019

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Elk Grove Village, AAP, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Women's Health Care, 4th ed. Washington, ACOG, 2014

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Immersion in water during labor and delivery. Committee Opinion No. 679, November 2016

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Avoidance of nonmedically indicated early-term deliveries and associated neonatal morbidities. Committee Opinion No. 765, January 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Female genital mutilation. Statement of Policy, 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Postpartum hemorrhage. Practice Bulletin No. 183, October 2017, Reaffirmed 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Shoulder dystocia. Practice Bulletin No. 178, May 2017, Reaffirmed 2019d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Optimizing support for breastfeeding as part of obstetric practice. Committee Opinion No. 756, October 2018, Reaffirmed 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Planned home birth. Committee Opinion No. 697, April 2017, Reaffirmed 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention and management of obstetric lacerations at vaginal delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 198, August 2018, Reaffirmed 2020c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Use of prophylactic antibiotics in labor and delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 199, August 2018, Reaffirmed 2020d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Delayed umbilical cord clamping after birth. Committee Opinion No. 814, November 2020e

Andersson O, Hellström-Westas L, Andersson D, et al: Effect of delayed versus early umbilical cord clamping on neonatal outcomes and iron status at 4 months: a randomised controlled trial. BMJ 343:d7157, 2011

Andersson O, Hellström-Westas L, Andersson D, et al: Effects of delayed compared with early umbilical cord clamping on maternal postpartum hemorrhage and cord blood gas sampling: a randomized trial. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 92(5):567, 2013

Ansell L, Ansell DA, McAra-Couper J, et al: Axillary traction: an effective method of resolving shoulder dystocia. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 59(5):627, 2019

Anteby EY, Yagel S: Route of delivery of fetuses with structural anomalies. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 106(1):5, 2003

Aquino CI, Guida M, Saccone G, et al: Perineal massage during labor: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(6):1051, 2020a

Aquino CI, Saccone G, Troisi J, et al: Is Ritgen's maneuver associated with decreased perineal lacerations and pain at delivery? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(18):3185, 2020b

Barth WH Jr: Persistent occiput posterior. Obstet Gynecol 125(3):695, 2015

Basak S, Kanungo S, Majhi C: Symphysiotomy: is it obsolete? J Obstet Gynaecol Res 37(7):770, 2011

Basham E, Stock L, Lewicky-Gaupp C, et al: Subsequent pregnancy outcomes after obstetric anal sphincter injuries (OASIS). Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg 19(6):328, 2013

Beckmann MM, Stock OM: Antenatal perineal massage for reducing perineal trauma. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD005123, 2013

Begley CM, Gyte GM, Devane D, et al: Active versus expectant management for women in the third stage of labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD007412, 2019

Belachew J, Cnattingius S, Mulic-Lutvica A, et al: Risk of retained placenta in women previously delivered by caesarean section: a population-based cohort study. BJOG 121(2):224, 2014

Bellussi F, Ghi T, Youssef A, et al: The use of intrapartum ultrasound to diagnose malpositions and cephalic malpresentations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(6):633, 2017

Berg RC, Odgaard-Jensen J, Fretheim A, et al: An updated systematic review and meta-analysis of the obstetric consequences of female genital mutilation/cutting. Obstet Gynecol Int 2014:542859, 2014a

Berg RC, Taraldsen S, Said MA, et al: The effectiveness of surgical interventions for women with FGM/C: a systematic review. BJOG 125(3):278, 2018

Berg RC, Underland V, Odgaard-Jensen J, et al: Effects of female genital cutting on physical health outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ Open 4(11):e006316, 2014b

Blondel B, Alexander S, Bjarnadóttir RI, et al: Variations in rates of severe perineal tears and episiotomies in 20 European countries: a study based on routine national data in Euro-Peristat Project. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 95(7):746, 2016

Boggs EW, Berger H, Urquia M, et al: Recurrence of obstetric third-degree and fourth-degree anal sphincter injuries. Obstet Gynecol 124(6):1128, 2014

Bolten N, de Jonge A, Zwagerman E, et al: Effect of planned place of birth on obstetric interventions and maternal outcomes among low-risk women: a cohort study in the Netherlands. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 16(1):329, 2016

Boulvain M, Senat MV, Perrotin F, et al: Induction of labour versus expectant management for large-for-date fetuses: a randomised controlled trial. Lancet 385(9987):2600, 2015

Brito LG, Ferreira CH, Duarte G, et al: Antepartum use of Epi-No birth trainer for preventing perineal trauma: systematic review. Int Urogynecol J (10):1429, 2015

Bruner JP, Drummond SB, Meenan AL, et al: All-fours maneuver for reducing shoulder dystocia during labor. J Reprod Med 43(5):439, 1998

Buppasiri P, Lumbiganon P, Thinkhamrop J, et al: Antibiotic prophylaxis for third- and fourth-degree perineal tear during vaginal birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD005125, 2014

Burkhardt T, Schmidt M, Kurmanavicius J, et al: Evaluation of fetal anthropometric measures to predict the risk for shoulder dystocia. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 43(1):77, 2014

Byard RW, Zuccollo JM. Forensic issues in cases of water birth fatalities. Am J Forensic Med Pathol 31(3):258, 2010

Caughey AB, Cheyney M: Home and birth center birth in the United States: time for greater collaboration across models of care. Obstet Gynecol 133(5):1033, 2019

Cavkaytar S, Kokanali M, Ozer I, et al: Effect of pregnancy and delivery on urinary incontinence after the midurethral sling procedure. Int Urogynecol J 26(5):693, 2014

Chauhan SP, Laye MR, Lutgendorf M, et al: A multicenter assessment of 1,177 cases of shoulder dystocia: lessons learned. Am J Perinatol 31(5):401, 2014

Chen X, Li X, Chang Y, et al: Effect and safety of timing of cord clamping on neonatal hematocrit values and clinical outcomes in term infants: a randomized controlled trial. J Perinatol 38(3):251, 2018

Cheng YW, Hubbard A, Caughey AB, et al: The association between persistent fetal occiput posterior position and perinatal outcomes: an example of propensity score and covariate distance matching. Am J Epidemiol 171(6):656, 2010

Cheng YW, Shaffer BL, Caughey AB: Associated factors and outcomes of persistent occiput posterior position: a retrospective cohort study from 1976 to 2001. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 19(9):563, 2006a

Cheng YW, Shaffer BL, Caughey AB: The association between persistent occiput posterior position and neonatal outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 107(4):837, 2006b

Cheung WM, Hawkes A, Ibish S: The retained placenta: historical and geographical rate variations. J Obstet Gynaecol 31(1):37, 2011

Cheyney M, Bovbjerg M, Everson C, et al: Outcomes of care for 16,924 planned home births in the United States: the Midwives Alliance of North America Statistics Project, 2004 to 2009. J Midwifery Womens Health 59(1):17, 2014

Chibber R, El-Saleh E, El Harmi J: Female circumcision: obstetrical and psychological sequelae continues unabated in the 21st century. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 24(6):833, 2011

Chibueze EC, Parsons AJ, Ota E, et al: Prophylactic antibiotics for manual removal of retained placenta during vaginal birth: a systematic review of observational studies and meta-analysis. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 15:313, 2015

Cluett ER, Burns E, Cuthbert A: Immersion in water during labour and birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD000111, 2018

Cluver CA, Hofmeyr GJ: Posterior axilla sling traction: a technique for intractable shoulder dystocia. Obstet Gynecol 113(2 Pt 2):486, 2009

Coats PM, Chan KK, Wilkins M, et al: A comparison between midline and mediolateral episiotomies. BJOG 87:408, 1980

Comeau A, Hutton EK, Simioni J, et al: Home birth integration into the health care systems of eleven international jurisdictions. Birth 45(3):311, 2018

Corton MM, Lankford JC, Ames R, et al: A randomized trial of birthing with and without stirrups. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(2):133.e1, 2012

Coviello EM, Grantz KL, Huang CC, et al: Risk factors for retained placenta. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(6):864.e1, 2015

Crofts JF, Lenguerrand E, Bentham GL, et al: Prevention of brachial plexus injury—12 years of shoulder dystocia training: an interrupted time-series study. BJOG 123(1):111, 2016

Cunningham FG: The Ritgen maneuver: another sacred cow questioned. Obstet Gynecol 112:210, 2008

Declercq E, Macdorman MF, Menacker F, et al: Characteristics of planned and unplanned home births in 19 states. Obstet Gynecol 116(1):93, 2010

de Jonge A, Geerts CC, van der Goes BY, et al: Perinatal mortality and morbidity up to 28 days after birth among 743 070 low-risk planned home and hospital births: a cohort study based on three merged national perinatal databases. BJOG 122(5):720, 2015

de Leeuw JW, Struijk PC, Vierhout ME, et al: Risk factors for third degree perineal ruptures during delivery. BJOG 108(4):383, 2001

Deneux-Tharaux C, Sentilhes L, Maillard F, et al: Effect of routine controlled cord traction as part of the active management of the third stage of labour on postpartum haemorrhage: multicentre randomised controlled trial (TRACOR). BMJ 346:f1541, 2013

de Souza Bosco Paiva C, Junqueira Vasconcellos de Oliveira SM, Amorim Francisco A, et al: Length of perineal pain relief after ice pack application: a quasi-experimental study. Women Birth 29(2):117, 2016

Dillon SJ, Nelson DB, Spong CY, et al: Episiotomy evolution of a common obstetric practice at a single public hospital. Abstract No. 801, Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(1):S523, 2019

Dombrowski MP, Bottoms SF, Saleh AA, et al: Third stage of labor: analysis of duration and clinical practice. Am J Obstet Gynecol 172:1279, 1995

Duggal N, Mercado C, Daniels K, et al: Antibiotic prophylaxis for prevention of postpartum perineal wound complications: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 111(6):1268, 2008

Dyrkorn OA, Staff AC, Kulseng-Hanssen S, et al: Childbirth after mid-urethral sling surgery: effects on long-term success and complications. Int Urogynecol J 31(3):485, 2020

Edozien LC, Gurol-Urganci I, Cromwell DA, et al: Impact of third- and fourth-degree perineal tears at first birth on subsequent pregnancy outcomes: a cohort study. BJOG 121(13):1695, 2014

Elfaghi I, Johansson-Ernste B, Rydhstroem H: Rupture of the sphincter ani: the recurrence rate in second delivery. BJOG 111:1361, 2004

Endler M, Saltvedt S, Cnattingius S, et al: Retained placenta is associated with pre-eclampsia, stillbirth, giving birth to a small-for-gestational-age infant, and spontaneous preterm birth: a national register-based study. BJOG 121(12):1462, 2014

Evers EC, Blomquist JL, McDermott KC, et al: Obstetrical anal sphincter laceration and anal incontinence 5–10 years after childbirth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(5):425.e1, 2012

Faltin DL, Boulvain M, Floris LA, et al: Diagnosis of anal sphincter tears to prevent fecal incontinence: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 106:6, 2005

Farrell SA, Flowerdew G, Gilmour D, et al: Overlapping compared with end-to-end repair of complete third-degree or fourth-degree obstetric tears: three-year follow-up of a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 120(4):803, 2012

Feigenberg T, Maor-Sagie E, Zivi E, et al: Using adhesive glue to repair first degree perineal tears: a prospective randomized controlled trial. Biomed Res Int 2014:526590, 2014

Feldman-Winter L, Goldsmith JP, Committee on Fetus and Newborn, et al: Safe sleep and skin-to-skin care in the neonatal period for healthy term newborns. Pediatrics 138(3):e20161889, 2016

Fernando RJ, Sultan AH, Kettle C, et al: Methods of repair for obstetric anal sphincter injury. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 12:CD002866, 2013

Fitzpatrick M, Behan M, O'Connell PR, et al: A randomized clinical trial comparing primary overlap with approximation repair of third-degree obstetric tears. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:1220, 2000

Fitzpatrick M, McQuillan K, O'Herlihy C: Influence of persistent occiput posterior position on delivery outcome. Obstet Gynecol 98(6):1027, 2001

Fodstad K, Laine K, Staff AC: Different episiotomy techniques, postpartum perineal pain, and blood loss: an observational study. Int Urogynecol J 24(5):865, 2013

Fodstad K, Staff AC, Laine K: Effect of different episiotomy techniques on perineal pain and sexual activity 3 months after delivery. Int Urogynecol J 25:1629, 2014

Fogarty M, Osborn DA, Askie L, et al: Delayed vs early umbilical cord clamping for preterm infants: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(1):1, 2018

Fransen AF, van de Ven J, Schuit E, et al: Simulation-based team training for multi-professional obstetric care teams to improve patient outcome: a multicentre, cluster randomised controlled trial. BJOG 124(4):641, 2017

Friedman AM, Ananth CV, Prendergast E, et al: Evaluation of third-degree and fourth-degree laceration rates as quality indicators. Obstet Gynecol 125(4):927, 2015

Frolova AI, Stout MJ, Tuuli MG, et al: Duration of the third stage of labor and risk of postpartum hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 127(5):951, 2016

Gardberg M, Stenwall O, Laakkonen E: Recurrent persistent occipito-posterior position in subsequent deliveries. BJOG 111(2):170, 2004

Gherman RB, Tramont J, Muffley P, et al: Analysis of McRoberts' maneuver by x-ray pelvimetry. Obstet Gynecol 95:43, 2000

Ghi T, Youssef A, Martelli F, et al: Narrow subpubic arch angle is associated with higher risk of persistent occiput posterior position at delivery. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 48(4):511, 2016

Goldaber KG, Wendel PJ, McIntire DD, et al: Postpartum perineal morbidity after fourth-degree perineal repair. Am J Obstet Gynecol 168:489, 1993

Gomersall J, Berber S, Middleton P, et al: Umbilical cord management at term and late preterm birth: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 147(3):e2020015404, 2021

Gommesen D, Nohr EA, Qvist N, et al: Obstetric perineal ruptures-risk of anal incontinence among primiparous women 12 months postpartum: a prospective cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(2):165.e1, 2020
Gonik B, Allen R, Sorab J: Objective evaluation of the shoulder dystocia phenomenon: effect of maternal pelvic orientation on force reduction. Obstet Gynecol 74:44, 1989
Goodwin TM, Banks E, Millar LK, et al: Catastrophic shoulder dystocia and emergency symphysiotomy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 177:463, 1997
Greenberg JA, Lieberman E, Cohen AP, et al: Randomized comparison of chromic versus fast-absorbing polyglactin 910 for postpartum perineal repair. Obstet Gynecol 103(6):1308, 2004
Groutz A, Hasson J, Wengier A, et al: Third- and fourth-degree perineal tears: prevalence and risk factors in the third millennium. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(4):347.e1, 2011
Grünebaum A, McCullough LB, Arabin B, et al: Underlying causes of neonatal deaths in term singleton pregnancies: home births versus hospital births in the United States. J Perinat Med 45(3):349, 2017
Grünebaum A, McCullough LB, Orosz B, et al: Neonatal mortality in the United States is related to location of birth (hospital versus home) rather than the type of birth attendant. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(2):254.e1, 2020
Grünebaum A, McCullough LB, Sapra KJ, et al: Apgar score of 0 at 5 minutes and neonatal seizures or serious neurologic dysfunction in relation to birth setting. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(4):323.e1, 2013
Grünebaum A, McCullough LB, Sapra KJ, et al: Early and total neonatal mortality in relation to birth setting in the United States, 2006–2009. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211:390.e1, 2014
Gungor S, Kurt E, Teksoz E, et al: Oronasopharyngeal suction versus no suction in normal and term infants delivered by elective cesarean section: a prospective randomized controlled trial. Gynecol Obstet Invest 61(1):9, 2006
Gunnarsson B, Fasting S, Skogvoll E, et al: Why babies die in unplanned out-of-institution births: an enquiry into perinatal deaths in Norway 1999–2013. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 96(3):326, 2017
Gunnarsson B, Smárason AK, Skogvoll E, et al: Characteristics and outcome of unplanned out-of-institution births in Norway from 1999 to 2013: a cross-sectional study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 93(10):1003, 2014
Gurewitsch Allen ED, Will SE, Allen RH, et al: Improving shoulder dystocia management and outcomes with a targeted quality assurance program. Am J Perinatol 34(11):1088, 2017
Gurewitsch ED, Donithan M, Stallings SP, et al: Episiotomy versus fetal manipulation in managing severe shoulder dystocia: a comparison of outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191(3):911, 2004
Gurol-Urganci I, Cromwell DA, Edozien LC, et al: Third- and fourth-degree perineal tears among primiparous women in England between 2000 and 2012: time trends and risk factors. BJOG 120(12):1516, 2013
Hale RW, Ling FW: Episiotomy: procedure and repair techniques. Washington, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2007
Hawkins JS: Lower genital tract procedures. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017
Hehir MP, Rubeo Z, Flood K et al: Anal sphincter injury in vaginal deliveries complicated by shoulder dystocia. Int Urogynecol J 29(3):377, 2018
Henry E, Andres RL, Christensen RD: Neonatal outcomes following a tight nuchal cord. J Perinatol 33(3):231, 2013
Hofmeyr GJ, Mshweshwe NT, Gülmezoglu AM: Controlled cord traction for the third stage of labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD008020, 2015
Huang J, Lu H, Zang Y, et al: The effects of hands on and hands off/poised techniques on maternal outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Midwifery 87:102712, 2020
Jallad K, Steele SE, Barber MD: Breakdown of perineal laceration repair after vaginal delivery: a case-control study. Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg 22(4):276, 2016
Jangö H, Langhoff-Roos J, Rosthøj S, et al: Long-term anal incontinence after obstetric anal sphincter injury-does grade of tear matter? Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(2):232.e1, 2018
Jangö H, Langhoff-Roos J, Rosthøj S, et al: Mode of delivery after obstetric anal sphincter injury and the risk of long-term anal incontinence. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(6):733.e1, 2016
Jangö H, Langhoff-Roos J, Rosthøj S, et al: Recurrent obstetric anal sphincter injury and the risk of long-term anal incontinence. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(6):610.e1, 2017
Jiang H, Qian X, Carroli G, et al: Selective versus routine use of episiotomy for vaginal birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD000081, 2017
Kalafat E, Gokce A, O'Brien P, et al: Efficacy of carbetocin in the prevention of postpartum hemorrhage: a systematic review and Bayesian meta-analysis of randomized trials. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(14):2303, 2021
Kalis V, Laine K, de Leeuw JW, et al: Classification of episiotomy: towards a standardisation of terminology. BJOG 119(5):522, 2012
Kalis V, Landsmanova J, Bednarova B, et al: Evaluation of the incision angle of mediolateral episiotomy at 60 degrees. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 112:220, 2011
Kamisan Atan I, Shek KL, Langer S, et al: Does the Epi-No birth trainer prevent vaginal birth-related pelvic floor trauma? A multicentre prospective randomized controlled trial. BJOG 123(6):995, 2016
Karbanova J, Rusavy Z, Betincova L, et al: Clinical evaluation of early postpartum pain and healing outcomes after mediolateral versus lateral episiotomy. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 127(2):152, 2014a
Karbanova J, Rusavy Z, Betincova L, et al: Clinical evaluation of peripartum outcomes of mediolateral versus lateral episiotomy. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 124(1):72, 2014b
Kariminia A, Chamberlain ME, Keogh J, et al: Randomised controlled trial of effect of hands and knees posturing on incidence of occiput posterior position at birth. BMJ 328(7438):490, 2004
Katheria A, Reister F, Essers J, et al: Association of umbilical cord milking vs delayed umbilical cord clamping with death or severe intraventricular hemorrhage among preterm infants. JAMA 322(19):1877, 2019
Katheria AC, Szychowski JM, Essers J, et al: Early cardiac and cerebral hemodynamics with umbilical cord milking compared with delayed cord clamping in infants born preterm. J Pediatr 223:51, 2020
Kenton K, Mueller M: Episiotomy and obstetric anal sphincter lacerations. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017
Kettle C, Dowswell T, Ismail KM: Absorbable suture materials for primary repair of episiotomy and second degree tears. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD000006, 2010
Kettle C, Dowswell T, Ismail KM: Continuous and interrupted suturing techniques for repair of episiotomy or second-degree tears. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD000947, 2012
Kettle C, Hills RK, Jones P, et al: Continuous versus interrupted perineal repair with standard or rapidly absorbed sutures after spontaneous vaginal birth: a randomized controlled trial. Lancet 359:2217, 2002
Kim T, Vogel RI, Mackenthun SM, et al: Rigorous simulation training protocol does not improve maternal and neonatal outcomes from shoulder dystocia. Obstet Gynecol 127 Suppl 1:3S, 2016
Kindberg S, Stehouwer M, Hvidman L, et al: Postpartum perineal repair performed by midwives: a randomised trial comparing two suture techniques leaving the skin unsutured. BJOG 115(4):472, 2008
Koyanagi A, Zhang J, Dagvadorj A, et al: Macrosomia in 23 developing countries: an analysis of a multicountry, facility-based, cross-sectional survey. Lancet 381(9865):476, 2013
Kumbhat N, Eggleston B, Davis AS, et al: Placental transfusion and short-term outcomes among extremely preterm infants. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 106(1):62, 2021
Labrecque M, Eason E, Marcoux S, et al: Randomized controlled trial of prevention of perineal trauma by perineal massage during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 180(3 Pt 1):593, 1999
Laine K, Pirhonen T, Rolland R, et al: Decreasing the incidence of anal sphincter tears during delivery. Obstet Gynecol 111:1053, 2008
Landy HJ, Laughon SK, Bailit JL, et al: Characteristics associated with severe perineal and cervical lacerations during vaginal delivery. Obstet Gynecol 117(3):627, 2011
Larson JD, Rayburn WF, Harlan VL: Nuchal cord entanglements and gestational age. Am J Perinatol 14(9):555, 1997
Le Ray C, Lepleux F, De La Calle A, et al: Lateral asymmetric decubitus position for the rotation of occipito-posterior positions: multicenter randomized controlled trial EVADELA. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(4):511.e1, 2016
Leung TY, Stuart O, Sahota DS: Head-to-body delivery interval and risk of fetal acidosis and hypoxic ischaemic encephalopathy in shoulder dystocia: a retrospective review. BJOG 118(4):474, 2011
Lewicky-Gaupp C, Leader-Cramer A, Johnson LL, et al: Wound complications after obstetric anal sphincter injuries. Obstet Gynecol 125(5):1088, 2015
Liabsuetrakul T, Choobun T, Peeyananjarassri K, et al: Prophylactic use of ergot alkaloids in the third stage of labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD005456, 2018
Lieberman E, Davidson K, Lee-Parritz A, et al: Changes in fetal position during labor and their association with epidural analgesia. Obstet Gynecol 105 (5 Pt 1):974, 2005
Low-Beer NM, Creighton SM, Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists: Female genital mutilation and its management. Green-top Guideline No. 53, July 2015, Reaffirmed 2018
MacDorman MF, Declercq E: Trends and state variations in out-of-hospital births in the United States, 2004–2017. Birth 46(2):279, 2019

MacKenzie IZ, Shah M, Lean K, et al: Management of shoulder dystocia: trends in incidence and maternal and neonatal morbidity. Obstet Gynecol 110:1059, 2007
Magro-Malosso ER, Saccone G, Chen M, et al: Induction of labour for suspected macrosomia at term in non-diabetic women: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. BJOG 124(3):414, 2017
Mahran A, Soriano A, Safwat AS, et al: The effect of sacral neuromodulation on pregnancy: a systematic review. Int Urogynecol J 28(9):1357, 2017
Maldonado PA, Carrick KS, Montoya TI, et al: Posterior vaginal compartment anatomy: implications for surgical repair. Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg 26(12):751, 2020
Malin GL, Bugg GJ, Takwoingi Y, et al: Antenatal magnetic resonance imaging versus ultrasound for predicting neonatal macrosomia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 123(1):77, 2016
Malm M, Madsen I, Kjellström J: Development and stability of a heat-stable formulation of carbetocin for the prevention of postpartum haemorrhage for use in low and middle-income countries. J Pept Sci 24(6):e3082, 2018
McCandlish R, Bowler U, Van Asten H, et al: A randomised controlled trial of care of the perineum during second stage of normal labour. BJOG 105(12):1262, 1998
McDonald EA, Gartland D, Small R, et al: Dyspareunia and childbirth: a prospective cohort study. BJOG 122(5):672, 2015
McDonald SJ, Middleton P, Dowswell T, et al: Effect of timing of umbilical cord clamping of term infants on maternal and neonatal outcomes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD004074, 2013
Mehta SH, Bujold E, Blackwell SC, et al: Is abnormal labor associated with shoulder dystocia in nulliparous women? Am J Obstet Gynecol 190(6):1604, 2004
Modanlou HD, Komatsu G, Dorchester W, et al: Large-for-gestational-age neonates: anthropometric reasons for shoulder dystocia. Obstet Gynecol 60:417, 1982
Moore ER, Bergman N, Anderson GC, et al: Early skin-to-skin contact for mothers and their healthy newborn infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD003519, 2016
Mornar SJ, Perlow JH: Blunt suture needle use in laceration and episiotomy repair at vaginal delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198:e14, 2008
Mous M, Muller SA, de Leeuw JW: Long-term effects of anal sphincter rupture during vaginal delivery: faecal incontinence and sexual complaints. BJOG 115(2):234, 2008
Necesalova P, Karbanova J, Rusavy Z, et al: Mediolateral versus lateral episiotomy and their effect on postpartum coital activity and dyspareunia rate 3 and 6 months postpartum. Sex Reprod Healthc 8:25, 2016
Nesbitt TS, Gilbert WM, Herrchen B: Shoulder dystocia and associated risk factors with macrosomic infants born in California. Am J Obstet Gynecol 179:476, 1998
Nour NM, Michels KB, Bryant AE: Defibulation to treat female genital cutting: effect on symptoms and sexual function. Obstet Gynecol 108(1):55, 2006
Nudelman MJR, Belogolovsky E, Jegatheesan P, et al: Effect of delayed cord clamping on umbilical blood gas values in term newborns: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 135(3):576, 2020
Oliphant SS, Jones KA, Wang L, et al: Trends over time with commonly performed obstetric and gynecologic inpatient procedures. Obstet Gynecol 116(4):926, 2010
O'Shea MS, Lewicky-Gaupp C, Gossett DR: Long-term sexual function after obstetric anal sphincter injuries. Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg 24(2):82, 2018
Ouzounian JG: Shoulder dystocia: incidence and risk factors. Clin Obstet Gynecol 59(4):791, 2016
Øverland EA, Vatten LJ, Eskild A: Pregnancy week at delivery and the risk of shoulder dystocia: a population study of 2,014,956 deliveries. BJOG 121(1):34, 2014
Øverland EA, Vatten LJ, Eskild A: Risk of shoulder dystocia: associations with parity and offspring birthweight. A population study of 1,914,544 deliveries. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91(4):483, 2012
Panburana P, Odthon T, Pongmee P, et al: The effect of umbilical cord milking compared with delayed cord clamping in term neonates: a randomized controlled trial. Int J Womens Health 12:301, 2020
Paris AE, Greenberg JA, Ecker JL, et al: Is an episiotomy necessary with a shoulder dystocia? Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(3):217.e1, 2011
Pierce-Williams RA, Saccone G, Berghella V: Hands-on versus hands-off techniques for the prevention of perineal trauma during vaginal delivery: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 3:1, 2019
Ponkey SE, Cohen AP, Heffner LJ, et al: Persistent fetal occiput posterior position: obstetric outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 101(5 Pt 1):915, 2003
Rabe H, Gyte GM, Díaz-Rossello JL, et al: Effect of timing of umbilical cord clamping and other strategies to influence placental transfusion at preterm birth on maternal and infant outcomes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 9:CD003248, 2019
Rådestad I, Olsson A, Nissen E, et al: Tears in the vagina, perineum, sphincter ani, and rectum and first sexual intercourse after childbirth: a nationwide follow-up. Birth 35:98, 2008
Rahman J, Bhattee G, Rahman MS: Shoulder dystocia in a 16-year experience in a teaching hospital. J Reprod Med 54(6):378, 2009
Rodriguez MI, Seuc A, Say L, et al: Episiotomy and obstetric outcomes among women living with type 3 female genital mutilation: a secondary analysis. Reprod Health 13(1):131, 2016
Roulette P, Castel-Lacanal E, Sanson S, et al: Sacral neuromodulation and pregnancy: results of a national survey carried out for the neuro-urology committee of the French Association of Urology (AFU). Neurourol Urodyn 37(2):792, 2018
Rouzi AA, Al-Sibiani SA, Al-Mansouri NM, et al: Defibulation during vaginal delivery for women with type III female genital mutilation. Obstet Gynecol 120(1):98, 2012
Rubin A: Management of shoulder dystocia. JAMA 189:835, 1964
Saccone G, Caissutti C, Ciardulli A, et al: Uterine massage as part of active management of the third stage of labour for preventing postpartum haemorrhage during vaginal delivery: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised trials. BJOG 125(7):778, 2018
Saccone G, Della Corte L, D'Alessandro P, et al: Prophylactic use of tranexamic acid after vaginal delivery reduces the risk of primary postpartum hemorrhage. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(19):3368, 2020
Salati JA, Leathersich SJ, Williams MJ, et al: Prophylactic oxytocin for the third stage of labour to prevent postpartum haemorrhage. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD001808, 2019
Sandberg EC: Shoulder dystocia: associated with versus caused by the Zavanelli maneuver. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197(1):115, 2007
Sandberg EC: The Zavanelli maneuver: 12 years of recorded experience. Obstet Gynecol 93:312, 1999
Sandberg EC: The Zavanelli maneuver: a potentially revolutionary method for the resolution of shoulder dystocia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 152:479, 1985
Schafer R: Umbilical cord avulsion in waterbirth. J Midwifery Womens Health 59(1):91, 2014
Schei B, Johannessen HH, Rydning A, et al: Anal incontinence after vaginal delivery or cesarean section. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 98(1):51, 2019
Schramm M: Impacted shoulders—a personal experience. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 23:28, 1983
Seidler AL, Gyte GML, Rabe H, et al: Umbilical cord management for newborns <34 weeks' gestation: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 147(3):e20200576, 2021
Senécal J, Xiong X, Fraser WD, et al: Effect of fetal position on second-stage duration and labor outcome. Obstet Gynecol 105(4):763, 2005
Sentilhes L, Winer N, Azria E, et al: Tranexamic acid for the prevention of blood loss after vaginal delivery. N Engl J Med 379(8):731, 2018
Shaffer BL, Cheng YW, Vargas JE, et al: Manual rotation to reduce caesarean delivery in persistent occiput posterior or transverse position. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 24(1):65, 2011
Shinar S, Schwartz A, Maslovitz S, et al: How long is safe? Setting the cutoff for uncomplicated third stage length: a retrospective case-control study. Birth 43(1):36, 2016a
Shinar S, Shenhav M, Maslovitz S, et al: Distribution of third-stage length and risk factors for its prolongation. Am J Perinatol 33(10):1023, 2016b
Signorello LB, Harlow BL, Chekos AK, et al: Postpartum sexual functioning and its relationship to perineal trauma: a retrospective cohort study of primiparous women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 184:881, 2001
Snowden JM, Tilden EL, Snyder J, et al: Planned out-of-hospital birth and birth outcomes. N Engl J Med 373(27):2642, 2015
Soltani H, Hutchon DR, Poulose TA: Timing of prophylactic uterotonics for the third stage of labour after vaginal birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD006173, 2010
Spain JE, Frey HA, Tuuli MG, et al: Neonatal morbidity associated with shoulder dystocia maneuvers. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(3):353.e1, 2015
Spong CY, Beall M, Rodrigues D, et al: An objective definition of shoulder dystocia: prolonged head-to-body delivery intervals and/or the use of ancillary obstetric maneuvers. Obstet Gynecol 86:433, 1995
Stamp G, Kruzins G, Crowther C: Perineal massage in labour and prevention of perineal trauma: randomised controlled trial. BMJ 322(7297):1277, 2001
Steelman VM, Shaw C, Shine L, et al: Retained surgical sponges: a descriptive study of 319 occurrences and contributing factors from 2012 to 2017. Patient Saf Surg 12:20, 2018
Stock L, Basham E, Gossett DR, et al: Factors associated with wound complications in women with obstetric anal sphincter injuries (OASIS). Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(4):327.e1, 2013
Svanström MC, Biber B, Hanes M, et al: Signs of myocardial ischaemia after injection of oxytocin: a randomized double-blind comparison of oxytocin

and methylergometrine during caesarean section. Br J Anaesth 100:683, 2008
Tarnow-Mordi W, Morris J, Kirby A, et al: Delayed versus immediate cord clamping in preterm infants. N Engl J Med 377(25):2445, 2017
Taylor H, Kleine I, Bewley S, et al: Neonatal outcomes of waterbirth: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 101(4):F357, 2016
Tunçalp Ö, Hofmeyr GJ, Gülmezoglu AM: Prostaglandins for preventing postpartum haemorrhage. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD000494, 2012
UNICEF: Female genital mutilation country profiles. 2016. Available at https://data.unicef.org/resources/fgm-country-profiles/. Accessed October 15, 2020
Valenzuela P, Saiz Puente MS, Valero JL, et al: Continuous versus interrupted sutures for repair of episiotomy or second-degree perineal tears: a randomised controlled trial. BJOG 116(3):436, 2009
van Ast M, Goedhart MM, Luttmer R, et al: The duration of the third stage in relation to postpartum hemorrhage. Birth 46(4):602, 2019
van der Nelson H, O'Brien S, Burnard S, et al: Intramuscular oxytocin versus Syntometrine versus carbetocin for prevention of primary postpartum haemorrhage after vaginal birth: a randomised double-blinded clinical trial of effectiveness, side effects and quality of life. BJOG 128(7):1236, 2021
Walsh JM, Kandamany N, Ni Shuibhne N, et al: Neonatal brachial plexus injury: comparison of incidence and antecedents between 2 decades. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(4):324.e1, 2011
Webb SS, Yates D, Manresa M, et al: Impact of subsequent birth and delivery mode for women with previous OASIS: systematic review and meta-analysis. Int Urogynecol J 28(4):507, 2017
Whalley PJ, Pritchard JA: Oxytocin and water intoxication. JAMA 186:601, 1963
Widmer M, Piaggio G, Nguyen TM, et al: Heat-stable carbetocin versus oxytocin to prevent hemorrhage after vaginal birth. N Engl J Med 379(8):743, 2018
Widström AM, Brimdyr K, Svensson K, et al: Skin-to-skin contact the first hour after birth, underlying implications and clinical practice. Acta Paediatr 108(7):1192, 2019
Wieslander CK, Weinstein MM, Handa VL, et al: Pregnancy in women with prior treatments for pelvic floor disorders. Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg 26(5):299, 2020
Williams A, Adams EJ, Tincello DG, et al: How to repair an anal sphincter injury after vaginal delivery: results of a randomised controlled trial. BJOG 113(2):201, 2006
Woods CE: A principle of physics is applicable to shoulder delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 45:796, 1943
World Health Organization: Care of Women and Girls Living with Female Genital Mutilation: a Clinical Handbook. Geneva, WHO, 2018a
World Health Organization: Female genital mutilation and obstetric outcome: WHO collaborative prospective study in six African countries. Lancet 367:1835, 2006
World Health Organization: Guideline: delayed umbilical cord clamping for improved maternal and infant health and nutrition outcomes. Geneva, WHO, 2014
World Health Organization: Implementation guidance: protecting, promoting and supporting breastfeeding in facilities providing maternity and newborn services—the revised Baby-friendly Hospital Initiative. Geneva, WHO, 2018b
World Health Organization: WHO recommendations for the prevention and treatment of postpartum haemorrhage. Geneva, WHO, 2012
World Health Organization: WHO recommendations: uterotonics for the prevention of postpartum haemorrhage. Geneva, WHO, 2018c
Wyckoff MH, Aziz K, Escobedo MB, et al: Part 13: Neonatal resuscitation: 2015 American Heart Association guidelines update for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. Circulation 132(18 Suppl 2):S543, 2015
Yao AC, Lind J: Placental transfusion. Am J Dis Child 127:128, 1974
Zhang C, Wu Y, Li S, et al: Maternal prepregnancy obesity and the risk of shoulder dystocia: a meta-analysis. BJOG 125(4):407, 2018

CHAPTER 28

Singleton Breech Delivery

CLASSIFICATION

Near term, the typical fetus spontaneously assumes a cephalic presentation. However, if the fetal buttocks or legs enter the pelvis before the head, the presentation is *breech*. At term, breech presentation persists in 2 to 5 percent of singleton deliveries (Bin, 2016; Cammu, 2014; Toijonen, 2019). Breech delivery of a second twin is discussed in Chapter 48 (p. 856).

The categories of frank, complete, and incomplete breech presentations differ in their varying relations between the lower extremities and buttocks. With a *frank breech*, lower extremities are flexed at the hips and extended at the knees, and thus the feet lie close to the head (Fig. 28-1). With a complete breech, both hips are flexed, and one or both knees are also flexed (Fig. 28-2). With an incomplete breech, one or both hips are extended. As a result, one or both feet or knees lie below the breech, and thus a foot or knee is lowermost in the birth canal. A footling breech is an incomplete breech with one or both feet below the breech.

Of singleton term breech fetuses, the neck may be extremely hyperextended in perhaps 5 percent, and the term *stargazing fetus* is used (Cimmino, 1975). With transverse lie and similar hyperextension of the fetal neck, the term *flying fetus* is applied. With these, fetal or uterine anomalies may be more prevalent and are sought if not previously identified (Phelan, 1983; Shipp, 2000). With hyperextension, vaginal delivery can injure the cervical spinal cord. Thus, if identified at term, cesarean delivery is indicated (Westgren, 1981). However, cases of spinal cord injury have been reported following uneventful

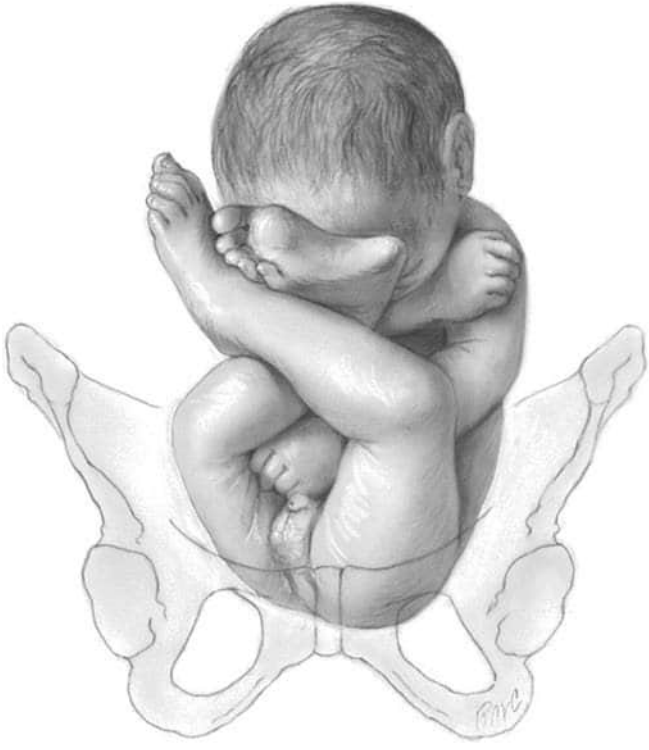


FIGURE 28-1 Frank breech presentation.

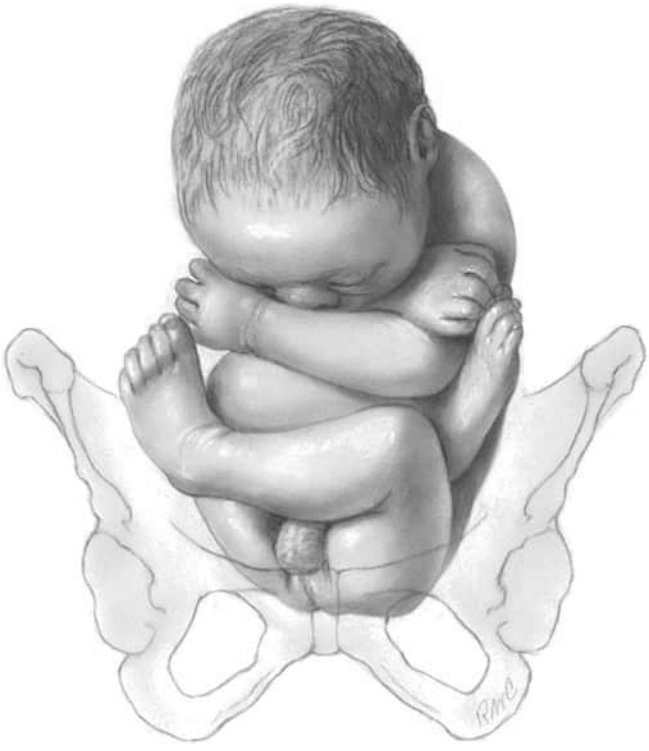


FIGURE 28-2 Complete breech presentation.

cesarean delivery of breech fetuses. Here, the flexion itself may be implicated (Hernandez-Marti, 1984; Weinstein, 1983).

DIAGNOSIS

Risk Factors

Understanding the clinical settings that predispose to breech presentation can aid early recognition. This fetal lie is more common remote from term, as earlier in pregnancy each fetal pole has similar bulk (Toijonen, 2019). Multifetal gestation is another (Chap. 48, p. 856). With singletons, other factors include extremes of amnionic fluid volume, fetal anomalies, structural uterine abnormalities, placenta previa, nulliparity, increased maternal age, female fetal gender, prior breech delivery, and size that is small for gestational age (Bin, 2016; Cammu, 2014; Noli, 2019; Roberts, 1999). One study found that following one breech delivery, the recurrence rate for a second breech presentation was 10 percent, and for a subsequent third breech it was 28 percent (Ford, 2010).

Examination

Leopold maneuvers to ascertain fetal presentation are discussed in Chapter 22 (p. 419). With the first maneuver, the hard, round fetal head occupies the fundus. The second maneuver identifies the hard, broad back to be on one side of the abdomen and the knobby small parts on the other. With the third maneuver, if not engaged, the softer breech is movable above the pelvic inlet. After engagement, the fourth maneuver shows the breech to be beneath the symphysis. The accuracy of this palpation varies (Lydon-Rochelle, 1993; Nassar, 2006). Thus, with unclear presentation, sonographic examination is indicated.

During cervical examination with a frank breech, no feet are appreciated, but the fetal ischial tuberosities, sacrum, and anus are usually palpable. After further fetal descent, the external genitalia also may be distinguished. When labor is prolonged, the fetal buttocks may become markedly swollen, rendering digital differentiation of a face and breech difficult. In some cases, the anus may be mistaken for the mouth and the ischial tuberosities for the malar eminences. With careful examination, however, the finger encounters muscular resistance with the anus, whereas the bony, less yielding jaws and palate are felt through the mouth. The finger, upon removal from the anus, may be stained with meconium. The mouth and malar eminences form a triangular shape, whereas the ischial tuberosities and anus lie in a straight line. With a complete breech, the feet may be felt alongside the buttocks. In footling presentations, one or both feet are inferior to the buttocks.

The fetal sacrum is palpated to establish position. As with cephalic presentations, fetal position is designated to reflect the relations of the fetal sacrum to the maternal pelvis. Thus, with left sacrum anterior (LSA), the fetus's back is up and its sacrum occupies the left upper (ventral) quadrant of the mother's pelvis. Other positions are right sacrum anterior (RSA), right or left sacrum posterior (RSP or LSP), and right or left sacrum transverse (RST or LST).

DELIVERY ROUTE

Multiple factors aid determination of the best delivery route. These include maternal parity and pelvic dimensions; coexistent pregnancy complications; provider experience; patient preference; hospital capabilities; and fetal size, anatomy, and gestational age (Table 28-1).

TABLE 28-1. Factors Favoring Cesarean Delivery of the Breech Fetus

Clinical characteristics
Lack of operator experience
Patient request for cesarean delivery
Prior perinatal death or neonatal birth trauma
Sonographic fetal characteristics
Large fetus: >3800 to 4000 g
Severe fetal-growth restriction; term weight <2500 to 2800 g
Oligohydramnios
Fetal anomaly incompatible with vaginal delivery
Incomplete breech presentation
Hyperextended neck
Apparently healthy, viable preterm fetus either with active labor or with indicated delivery
Maternal characteristics
Pelvic contraction or unfavorable pelvic shape determined clinically or with pelvimetry
Prior cesarean delivery

Compiled from text references.

Compared with their term counterparts, preterm breech fetuses have distinct complications related to their small size and immaturity. Accordingly, a separate discussion of term and preterm breech fetuses is presented.

Term Breech Fetus

Current obstetrical thinking regarding vaginal delivery of the term breech fetus was tremendously influenced by results of the Term Breech Trial (Hannah, 2000). This trial included 1041 women randomly assigned to planned cesarean and 1042 to planned vaginal delivery. These comparator groups reflect actual risks, and the planned vaginal delivery group included those who required intrapartum cesarean delivery. In the planned vaginal delivery group, 57 percent were actually delivered vaginally. Planned cesarean delivery was associated with a lower risk of perinatal mortality compared with planned vaginal delivery—3 per 1000 versus 13 per 1000. Cesarean delivery was also associated with a lower risk of "serious" neonatal morbidity—1.4 versus 3.8 percent. Short-term maternal morbidity was similar between groups.

Critics of the Term Breech Trial emphasize that fewer than 10 percent of candidates underwent radiological assessment of pelvic capacity. In addition, most of the outcomes included in the "serious" neonatal morbidity composite did not actually portend long-term infant disability (Whyte, 2004).

Since that trial, however, additional data favoring cesarean delivery has come from the World Health Organization (Lumbiganon, 2010). In more than 100,000 deliveries from nine participating Asian countries, planned cesarean delivery offered improved perinatal outcomes for the term breech fetus compared with planned vaginal delivery. Other studies also have found lowered neonatal morbidity and mortality rates with cesarean delivery (Lyons, 2015; Rietberg, 2005; Vistad, 2015). From one metaanalysis, the calculated absolute risk of perinatal mortality was 0.3 percent, and risk of fetal birth trauma or neurological morbidity was 0.7 percent (Berhan, 2016).

In contrast, other studies support vaginal delivery as a suitable option at term (Hofmeyr, 2015a). The *Presentation et Mode d'Accouchement (PREMODA)* study—which translates as presentation and mode of delivery—showed no differences in corrected neonatal mortality rates and neonatal outcomes according to delivery mode (Goffinet, 2006). Severe acute maternal morbidity scores were similar (Korb, 2019). This French prospective observational study involved more than 8000 women with term breech singletons. Strict criteria were used to select 2526 of these for planned vaginal delivery, and 71 percent of that group were delivered vaginally. Data from the Lille Breech Study Group in France also showed no excessive morbidity in term breech singletons delivered vaginally provided that strict fetal biometric and maternal pelvimetry parameters were applied (Michel, 2011). Other smaller studies support these findings as long as guidelines are part of the selection process (Alarab, 2004; Giuliani, 2002; Toivonen, 2012).

Long-term evidence supporting vaginal breech delivery comes from Eide and associates (2005). These investigators analyzed intelligence testing scores of more than 8000 men delivered breech, and delivery route did not affect later intellectual performance. Moreover, a 2-year follow-up from the Term Breech trial showed similar risks for death and for neurodevelopmental delay between delivery groups (Whyte, 2004). Other studies support these findings (Bin, 2017; Macharey, 2018).

Despite evidence for this debate, at least in the United States, rates of planned vaginal delivery attempts continue to decline (Grunebaum, 2016). Thus, as predicted, the number of skilled providers able to safely select and vaginally deliver breech fetuses steadily dwindles (Dotters-Katz, 2020). Moreover, obvious medicolegal concerns make physician training in such deliveries difficult. In response, some institutions have developed birth simulators to improve resident competence in vaginal breech delivery (Deering, 2006; Maslovitz, 2007).

In selecting suitable term breech vaginal delivery candidates, factors outlined in Table 28-1 are weighed. Of these, various national organizations recommend that the estimated term fetal weight lies between >2500 to 2800 g and <3800 to 4000 g (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018b; Impey, 2017b; Kotaska, 2019). Fetal-growth restriction and oligohydramnios are other contraindications, because of their inherent association with poor neonatal outcome (Chaps. 14 and 47, pp. 260 and 831). Data support this concern for the term breech fetus (Hinnenberg, 2019; Macharey, 2017a). Of uterine factors, prior hysterotomy carries an inherent risk for rupture in labor. The PREMODA, Term Breech Trial, and other studies allowed a trial of labor after cesarean for vaginal breech delivery, but in each, these constituted a small percentage of participants. Other studies have considered prior cesarean as a contraindication. Very limited data suggest a possible link with adverse perinatal outcome (Azria, 2012; Macharey, 2017a). Moreover, a prior cesarean delivery performed for arrested labor may suggest a relatively contracted pelvis and a greater labor risk. In contrast, parity and prior vaginal birth are positive factors and likely reflect sufficient pelvic capacity. Last, those with spontaneous labor and normal labor curves have higher successful vaginal birth rates.

Preterm Breech Fetus

In contrast to the term breech fetus, no randomized trials guide delivery selection for the preterm breech fetus. Comparison of the available observational studies is often hampered by their combining, splitting, or overlapping of gestational age groups. Other study biases include differing gestational age thresholds for planned neonatal resuscitation, assigning mortality causation to delivery rather than immaturity, and tendency to favor vaginal delivery for fetuses with a poor prognosis. In addition, the effects of precipitous vaginal delivery and associated incomplete antenatal prophylaxis with corticosteroids and antibiotics is difficult to evaluate.

Despite these limitations, for preterm breech fetuses as whole, data support that planned cesarean delivery confers a survival advantage compared with planned vaginal delivery. Reddy and associates (2012) reported data from deliveries between 24 and 32 weeks' gestation. For breech fetuses within these gestational ages, attempting vaginal delivery yielded a low success rate, and this group was associated with higher neonatal mortality rates compared with planned cesarean delivery.

From a metaanalysis incorporating data from more than 3500 parturients, similar mortality associations were reported (Bergenhenegouwen, 2014). In contrast, in their smaller cohort with gestational ages of 26 to 34 weeks, Lorthe and coworkers (2019) found similar rates of survival or of survival at discharge without severe morbidity.

For less mature subgroups—23 to 28 weeks—the data are more conflicting as to whether survival rates are improved with planned cesarean delivery (Bergenhenegouwen, 2015; Grabovac, 2018; Kayem, 2015; Thomas, 2016; Tucker Edmonds, 2015). In the balance, cesarean delivery is proposed to avoid fetal injury from vaginal birth that may include anoxia, trauma, and head entrapment. This is measured against maternal morbidity from a classical uterine incision, which is often needed in this early preterm group due to a poorly developed lower uterine segment. This incision typically poses a risk of greater blood loss, higher infection rate, and increased risk of uterine rupture in future pregnancies (Patterson, 2002; Reddy, 2015; Sciscione, 2008). The high-level skills needed for safe vaginal delivery of the very preterm fetus and the ultimate prognosis of the neonate are other directing factors. For *periviable fetuses*, defined by them as 20 to $25^{6/7}$ weeks, a consensus workshop of perinatal organizations concluded that "available data do not consistently support routine cesarean delivery to improve perinatal mortality or neurological outcomes for early preterm infants" (Raju, 2014). A subsequent joint statement by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2017) suggested *consideration* for cesarean delivery for periviable fetuses beginning at $23^{0/7}$ weeks, with a recommendation for cesarean delivery at $25^{0/7}$ weeks.

For more mature preterm breech fetuses, that is, between 32 and 37 weeks, again limited data guide delivery route selection. Bergenhenegouwen and coworkers (2015) studied more than 6800 breech deliveries in a subgroup between 32 and 37 weeks. With planned cesarean delivery or planned vaginal birth, they found similar perinatal mortality and morbidity rates.

All these findings shape practice. Thus, individualized decision-making is needed for the preterm breech fetus for whom resuscitation is planned. Provider skill, gestational age, parity, labor curve, and facility capability weigh heavily in this process. For the fetus in which resuscitation is not planned, vaginal delivery is likely preferable.

Delivery Complications

Compared with cephalic-presenting fetuses, higher rates of maternal and perinatal morbidity can be anticipated with breech presentations. For the mother, with either cesarean or vaginal delivery, genital tract laceration can be problematic. With cesarean delivery, added stretching of the lower uterine segment by forceps or by a poorly molded fetal head can extend hysterotomy incisions. With vaginal delivery, especially with a thinned lower uterine segment, delivery of the aftercoming head through an incompletely dilated cervix or application of forceps may cause vaginal wall or cervical lacerations, and even uterine rupture. Manipulations may also extend an episiotomy, create deep perineal tears, require cervical incision, and raise infection risks. If needed in select cases, inhalant anesthesia sufficient to induce appreciable uterine relaxation during vaginal delivery may cause uterine atony and postpartum hemorrhage. Maternal death is rare, but rates appear higher in those with planned cesarean delivery for breech presentation—a case-fatality rate of 0.47 maternal deaths per 1000 births (Schutte, 2007). Other general short-term and long-term risks of cesarean delivery are listed in Chapter 30 (p. 548).

For the fetus, prematurity and its complications are frequently comorbid with breech presentation. Rates of congenital anomalies also are greater (Mostello, 2014). Compared with cephalic presentation, umbilical cord prolapse is more frequent with breech fetuses and with breech vaginal delivery (Behbehani, 2016; Critchlow, 1994). Collea (1980) reported that the incidence of prolapse approximated 0.5 percent with frank breech presentation, 5 percent with complete breech, and up to 15 percent with footling presentation.

Rare fetal morbidity includes humeral or clavicular fracture, brachial plexus injury, and sternocleidomastoid muscle trauma (Chap. 33, p. 609. These may occur with either route but more frequently complicate vaginal birth. However, cesarean birth does not appear to afford greater protection against femur or skull fractures (Ekéus, 2019; Goffinet, 2006; Hannah, 2000). Rarely, traction may separate scapular, humeral, or femoral epiphyses (Lamrani, 2011). The spinal cord may be injured or vertebrae fractured, especially if great force is employed (Vialle, 2007). Last, genitals may be injured with breech delivery (Saroha, 2015).

Some perinatal outcomes are inherent to the breech position rather than delivery. For example, development of hip dysplasia is more common in breech compared with cephalic presentation and is unaffected by delivery mode (de Hundt, 2012; Hinderaker, 1994).

Imaging

As noted, limited sonographic evaluation near term is reasonable to confirm presentation. Transabdominal sonography of the lower uterine segment in the sagittal plane shows the presenting fetal part. Prior to this and as part of prenatal care, sonographic fetal survey will have been performed in most cases. If not, gross fetal abnormalities, such as hydrocephaly or anencephaly, can be rapidly ascertained with sonography. This will identify many fetuses not suitable for vaginal delivery. It will also help to ensure that a cesarean delivery is not performed under emergency conditions for an anomalous fetus with no chance of survival.

In many fetuses—especially those that are preterm or growth restricted—the breech is smaller than the aftercoming head. Moreover, unlike cephalic presentations, the head of a breech-presenting fetus does not undergo appreciable molding during labor. Thus, if vaginal delivery is considered, fetal size, breech type, and degree of neck flexion are evaluated (Fontenot, 1997; Rojansky, 1994). If needed, simple two-view radiography of the maternal abdomen also can define fetal head inclination. Sonographic identification of a nuchal arm or nuchal cord loops may warrant cesarean delivery to avoid neonatal harm (Sherer, 1989).

The accuracy of fetal weight estimation by sonography is not altered by breech presentation (McNamara, 2012). For planned vaginal delivery at term, thresholds in Table 28-1 guide care. Moreover, a biparietal diameter (BPD) >90 to 100 mm is often considered exclusionary for vaginal delivery (Giuliani, 2002; Roman, 2008).

Pelvimetry

In addition to these requisite fetal parameters, some institutional protocols recommend pelvimetry to assess the maternal bony pelvis prior to planned vaginal term breech birth. Others, including our practice at Parkland Hospital, instead monitor the steady progression of fetal descent and cervical dilation to reflect adequate pelvic capacity.

For pelvimetry, one-view computed tomography (CT), magnetic resonance (MR) imaging, or plain film radiography is suitable. Comparative data among these modalities for pelvimetry are lacking, but CT is favored due to its accuracy, low radiation dose, and widespread availability (Thomas, 1998). Although variable, some suggest specific measurements to permit a planned vaginal delivery: inlet anteroposterior diameter ≥10.5 cm; inlet transverse diameter ≥12.0 cm; and midpelvic interspinous distance ≥10.0 cm (Azria, 2012; Vendittelli, 2006). Some have recommended maternal-fetal biometry correlation. Appropriate values include: the sum of the inlet obstetrical conjugate minus the fetal BPD is ≥15 mm; the inlet transverse diameter minus the BPD is ≥25 mm; and the midpelvis interspinous distance minus the BPD is ≥0 mm (Michel, 2011). From small studies of MR imaging, vaginal delivery success rates approximating 75 percent were noted if the interspinous distance was >11 cm and true obstetrical conjugate was >12 cm (Hoffmann, 2016; Klemt, 2019).

LABOR AND DELIVERY

Labor Management

On arrival to the labor unit, surveillance of fetal heart rate and uterine contractions begins, and immediate recruitment of necessary staff includes: (1) a provider skilled in the art of breech extraction, (2) an associate to assist with the delivery, (3) anesthesia personnel who can ensure adequate analgesia or anesthesia when needed, and (4) an individual trained in newborn resuscitation. For the mother, intravenous access is obtained. This allows, if required, emergency induction of anesthesia or maternal resuscitation following hemorrhage from lacerations or from uterine atony.

Assessing cervical dilation, membranes status, and presenting part station is essential for management. If labor is too far advanced, pelvimetry may be unsafe if fetal expulsion in the radiology department is a possibility. This alone, however, should not force the decision for cesarean delivery. Commonly, stepwise labor progression itself is a good indicator of pelvic adequacy (Biswas, 1993). Sonographic assessment, described earlier, is completed. Ultimately, the choice of abdominal or vaginal delivery is guided by factors listed in Table 28-1.

During labor, one-on-one nursing is ideal because of increased cord prolapse risks, and physicians must be readily available for such emergencies. Guidelines for monitoring the high-risk fetus are applied (Chap. 24, p. 461). For first-stage labor, most clinicians prefer continuous electronic monitoring. At minimum, the fetal heart rate is recorded every 15 minutes. A scalp electrode can be safely affixed to the buttock, but genitalia are avoided.

When membranes rupture, either spontaneously or artificially, the cord prolapse risk rises appreciably. A small or preterm fetus or a non-frank breech presentation raises this risk. Therefore, vaginal examination is performed immediately following rupture, and special attention is directed to the fetal heart rate for the first 5 to 10 minutes thereafter.

Continuous epidural analgesia is advocated by some. This may increase the need for labor augmentation and prolong second-stage labor (Chadha, 1992; Confino, 1985). These potential disadvantages are weighed against the advantages of better pain relief and increased pelvic relaxation should extensive fetal manipulation be required. Analgesia must be sufficient for episiotomy, for breech extraction, and for Piper forceps application. Nitrous oxide plus oxygen inhalation provides further relief from pain. If general anesthesia is required, it must be induced quickly.

Normal second-stage labor should show progressive fetal descent. An initial passive second stage allows the breech to advance to the perineum and is recommended. In the PREMODA study, this stage lasted <30 min for 60 percent of parturients and >60 min for only 20 percent (Goffinet, 2006). For this passive phase, some recommend cesarean if the breech is not visible after 1½ to 2 hours (Impey, 2017b; Kotaska, 2019).

Once the breech is visible, active pushing is encouraged. A hands-off approach in which hands are poised merely to support delivering parts is preferred to allow spontaneous delivery. In the PREMODA study, this active phase was <30 min for 95 percent of those with successful vaginal births (Goffinet, 2006). In their subanalysis of adverse neonatal outcome factors, an active second stage >20 min increased the risk (Azria, 2012). In the Term Breech Trial, the lowest risk for maternal and neonatal adverse outcomes was seen in the group with active second stages lasting <30 min (Su, 2003, 2007). In one small observational study, fetal adverse risks rose if this phase was >40 minutes (Macharey, 2017b). Canadian guidelines recommend cesarean if completed or imminent delivery is not accomplished after 60 min of pushing (Kotaska, 2019).

Labor Induction or Augmentation

Induction or augmentation of labor is controversial for term breech pregnancies. Here again, data are limited and mostly retrospective. With labor induction, Burgos and coworkers (2017) reported equivalent vaginal delivery rates compared with spontaneous labor. With induction, however, they reported higher rates of neonatal intensive care unit (NICU) admission. But, Marzouk and associates (2011) found perinatal outcomes and cesarean delivery rates not to differ. Last, others described greater cesarean delivery rates with induction but similar neonatal outcomes (Macharey, 2016). In a metaanalysis of studies, the NICU admission rate was 3 percent with labor induction and was double that of those delivered from spontaneous labor.

The cesarean delivery rate with induction was higher and was 33 percent (Sun, 2018).

Compared with cephalic presentations, breech labor in general proceeds more slowly, but steady cervical progress is a positive indicator of adequate pelvic capacity (Lennox, 1998). Thus, some protocols avoid augmentation for the breech-presenting fetus, whereas others recommend it only for hypotonic contractions (Alarab, 2004; Kotaska, 2019). In women with a viable fetus, at Parkland Hospital, we use amniotomy to promote contractions but prefer cesarean delivery instead of pharmacological labor induction or augmentation.

Vaginal Delivery Methods

Vaginal breech delivery is accomplished by one of three methods. With *spontaneous breech delivery*, the fetus is expelled entirely without any traction or manipulation other than support of the newborn. With *partial breech extraction*, the fetus is delivered spontaneously as far as the umbilicus, but the remainder of the body is delivered by provider traction and assisted maneuvers, with or without maternal expulsive efforts. With *total breech extraction*, the entire fetal body is extracted by the provider.

Spontaneous Breech Delivery

Similar to vertex delivery, spontaneous expulsion of a breech fetus entails sequential cardinal movements (Chap. 22, p. 421). First, engagement and descent of the breech usually take place with the bitrochanteric diameter in one of the oblique pelvic diameters. The anterior hip usually descends more rapidly than the posterior hip, and when the resistance of the pelvic floor is met, internal rotation of 45 degrees usually follows, bringing the anterior hip toward the pubic arch and allowing the bitrochanteric diameter to occupy the anteroposterior diameter of the pelvic outlet.

After rotation, descent continues until the perineum is distended by the advancing breech, and the anterior hip appears at the vulva. By lateral flexion of the fetal body, the posterior hip then is forced over the perineum, which retracts over the fetal buttocks, thus allowing the fetus to straighten out when the anterior hip is born. The legs and feet follow the breech and may be born spontaneously or require aid.

After the birth of the breech, there is slight external rotation, with the back turning anteriorly as the shoulders are brought into relation with one of the oblique diameters of the pelvis. The shoulders then descend rapidly and undergo internal rotation, with the bisacromial diameter occupying the anteroposterior plane. Immediately following the shoulders, the head, which is normally sharply flexed on the thorax, enters the pelvis in one of the oblique diameters and then rotates to bring the posterior portion of the neck under the symphysis pubis. The head is then born in flexion.

Infrequently, rotation renders the fetal back to lie posteriorly instead of anteriorly. Such rotation is prevented if possible. Although the head can be delivered by allowing the chin and face to pass beneath the symphysis, the slightest traction on the body may cause extension of the head. With this, a longer diameter of the head must pass through the pelvis.

Partial Breech Extraction

With breech delivery, successively larger and less compressible parts are born. Thus, spontaneous expulsion is the exception, and vaginal delivery typically requires skilled provider participation for the fetus to navigate the birth canal. Noteworthy clinical pearls are provided by Yeomans (2017) in *Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics*, 3rd edition.

First, with all breech deliveries, unless the perineum is considerably lax, an episiotomy is made and is an important adjunct to delivery. As discussed in Chapter 27 (p. 510), mediolateral episiotomy may be preferred for its lower associated risk of anal sphincter lacerations. Ideally, the breech is allowed to deliver spontaneously to the umbilicus. Delivery of the breech draws the umbilicus and attached cord into the pelvis. Therefore, once the breech has passed beyond the vaginal introitus, the abdomen, thorax, arms, and head must be delivered promptly either spontaneously or assisted.

The posterior hip will deliver, usually from the 6 o'clock position, and often with sufficient pressure to evoke passage of thick meconium. The anterior hip then delivers, followed by external rotation to a sacrum anterior position. The mother is encouraged to continue to push as the fetus descends until the legs are accessible. The legs are sequentially delivered by splinting the femur with the operator's fingers positioned parallel to the long axis of the femur. This helps avoid femoral fracture. Pressure is exerted upward and laterally to sweep each leg away from the midline (Fig. 28-3).

Following delivery of the legs, the fetal bony pelvis is grasped with both hands. The fingers should rest on the anterior superior iliac crests and the thumbs on the sacrum. This minimizes

FIGURE 28-3 To deliver the left leg, two fingers of the provider's left hand are placed beneath and parallel to the femur. The thigh is then slightly abducted and pressure from the fingertips in the popliteal fossa should induce knee flexion and bring the foot within reach. The foot is then grasped to gently deliver the entire leg outside the vagina. A similar procedure is followed on the right. (Reproduced with permission from Yeomans ER: Vaginal breech delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al [eds]: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

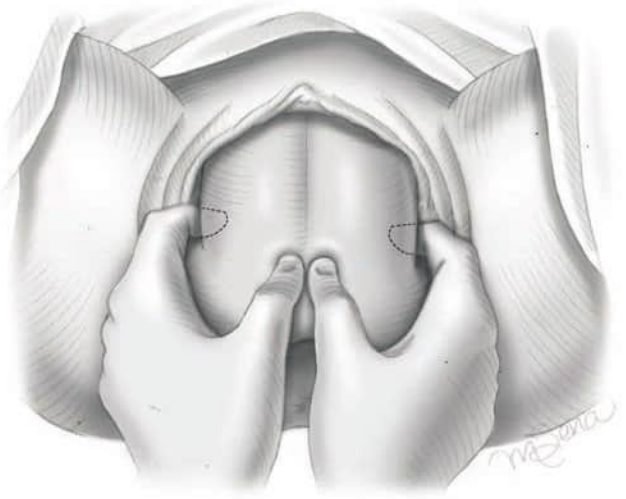


FIGURE 28-4 To deliver the body, thumbs are placed over the sacrum, and each index finger wraps over the top of the corresponding fetal iliac crest. Gentle downward traction is applied until the scapulas are clearly visible. (Reproduced with permission from Yeomans ER: Vaginal breech delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al [eds]: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

the chance of fetal abdominal soft-tissue injury (Fig. 28-4). Maternal expulsive efforts are again used in conjunction with downward traction to affect delivery.

A cardinal rule in successful breech extraction is to employ steady, gentle, downward traction until the lower halves of the scapulas are delivered. Subsequent delivery of the shoulders and arms is not attempted until one axilla becomes visible. It makes little difference which shoulder is delivered first, and two methods are suitable for their delivery. In the first method, with the scapulas visible, the trunk is rotated either clockwise or counterclockwise to bring the anterior shoulder and arm into view (Fig. 28-5). During delivery of the arm, fingers and hand are aligned parallel to the humerus and act as a splint. Perpendicular force risks humeral fracture. The body of the fetus is then rotated 180 degrees in the reverse direction to bring the other shoulder and arm into position for delivery.

The second method is employed if trunk rotation is unsuccessful. With this maneuver, the posterior shoulder is delivered first. For this, the feet are grasped in one hand and drawn upward over the inner thigh of the mother (Fig. 28-6). The operator's hand enters over the fetal shoulder, fingers are aligned parallel to the long axis of the fetal humerus, and the fetal arm is swept upward. The posterior shoulder slides out over the perineal margin and is usually followed by the arm and hand. Then, by depressing the body of the fetus, the anterior shoulder emerges beneath the pubic arch, and the arm and hand usually follow spontaneously. After both shoulders are delivered, the back of the fetus tends to rotate spontaneously to the symphysis. Delivery of the head may then be accomplished.

Nuchal Arm

During delivery, one or both fetal arms occasionally may lie across the back of the neck and become trapped at the pelvic inlet. With such a nuchal arm, delivery is more difficult and can be aided by rotating the fetus through a half circle in such a direction that the friction exerted by the birth canal will draw the elbow toward the face (Fig. 28-7). With a right nuchal arm, the body should be rotated counterclockwise, which rotates the fetal back toward the maternal right. With a left nuchal arm, the rotation is clockwise, which rotates the fetal back toward the maternal left. If rotation fails to free the nuchal arm, it may be necessary to push the fetus upward to a roomier part of the pelvis. If the rotation is still unsuccessful, still in this roomier part of the pelvic, the nuchal arm can be

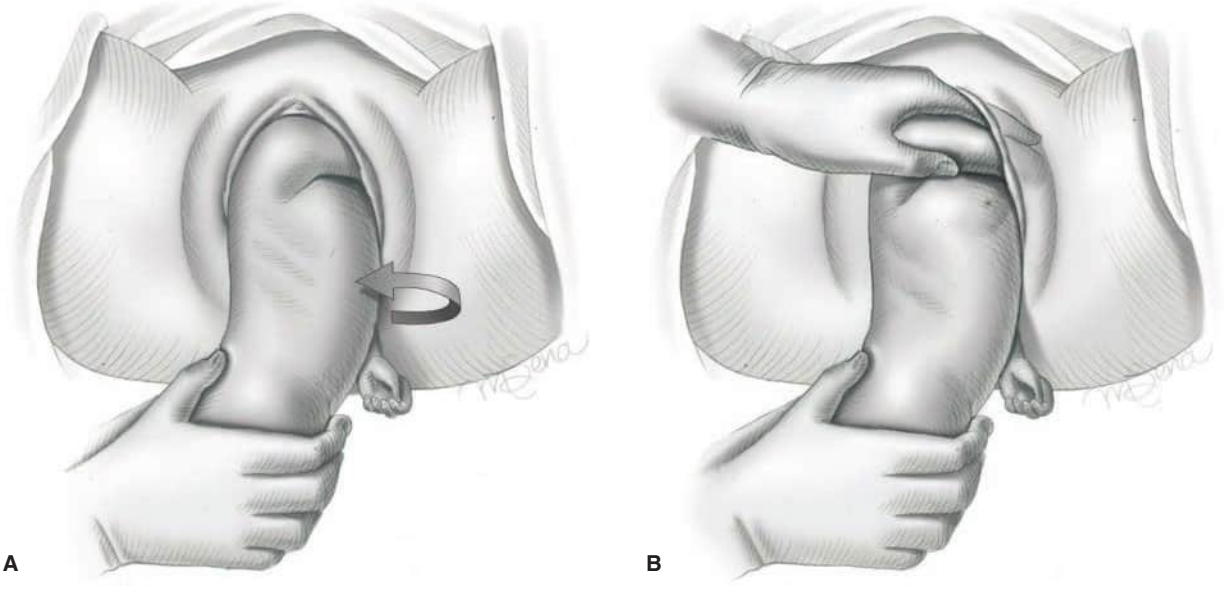


FIGURE 28-5 **A.** After delivery of the first arm, 180-degree rotation of the fetal body brings the sacrum to a right sacrum transverse (RST) position. **B.** Fingers of the provider's hand extended over the right shoulder and parallel to the humerus. These sweep the arm downward across the chest and out. (Reproduced with permission from Yeomans ER: Vaginal breech delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al [eds]: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

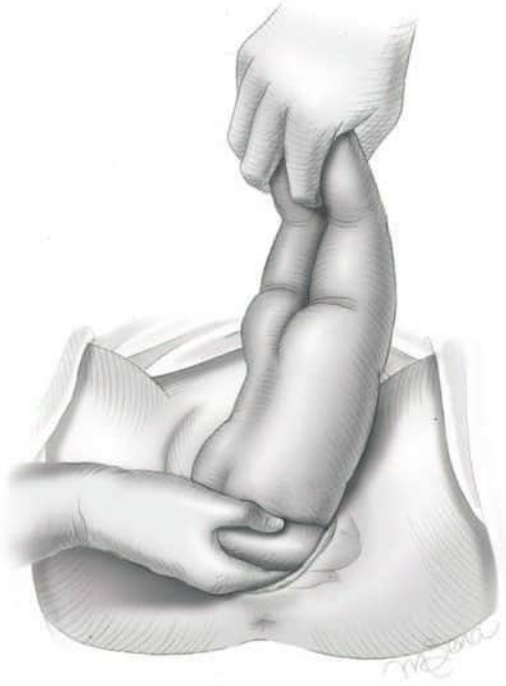


FIGURE 28-6 Infrequently, the posterior arm must be delivered first. For this, the lower half of the fetal body is raised up and over the maternal groin. The provider's fingers are inserted under the posterior shoulder and aligned with the humerus. (Reproduced with permission from Yeomans ER: Vaginal breech delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al [eds]: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

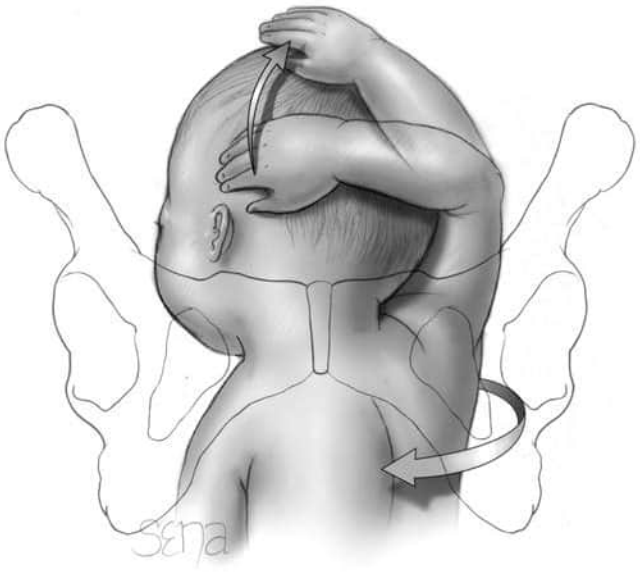


FIGURE 28-7 Reduction of a right nuchal arm is accomplished by rotating the fetal body 180 degrees counterclockwise, which directs the fetal back to the maternal right. Friction exerted by the birth canal will draw the elbow toward the face.

extracted. For this, the operator's hand enters over the fetal shoulder, and fingers are aligned parallel to the long axis of the fetal humerus. Downward pressure flexes the elbow, and the fetal arm is then swept forward and down the ventral body surface for delivery. In this event, fracture of the humerus or clavicle is common.

Delivery of the Aftercoming Head

The head of the fetus is normally extracted with one of the three maneuvers. With any of these, hyperextension of the fetal neck is avoided.

First, with the *Mauriceau maneuver*, the index and middle finger of one hand are applied over the maxilla, to flex the head, while the fetal body rests on the palm of the same hand and forearm (Fig. 28-8). Fetal legs straddle the forearm. Two fingers of the other hand hook over and grasp the shoulders. Downward traction is concurrently applied until the suboccipital region appears under the symphysis. Gentle suprapubic pressure simultaneously applied by an assistant helps keep the head flexed. The body is slightly elevated toward the maternal abdomen, and the mouth, nose, brow, and eventually the occiput emerge successively over the perineum. With this maneuver, the provider uses both hands simultaneously to exert continuous downward gentle traction while balancing forces between the fetal neck and maxilla to avoid neck hyperextension.

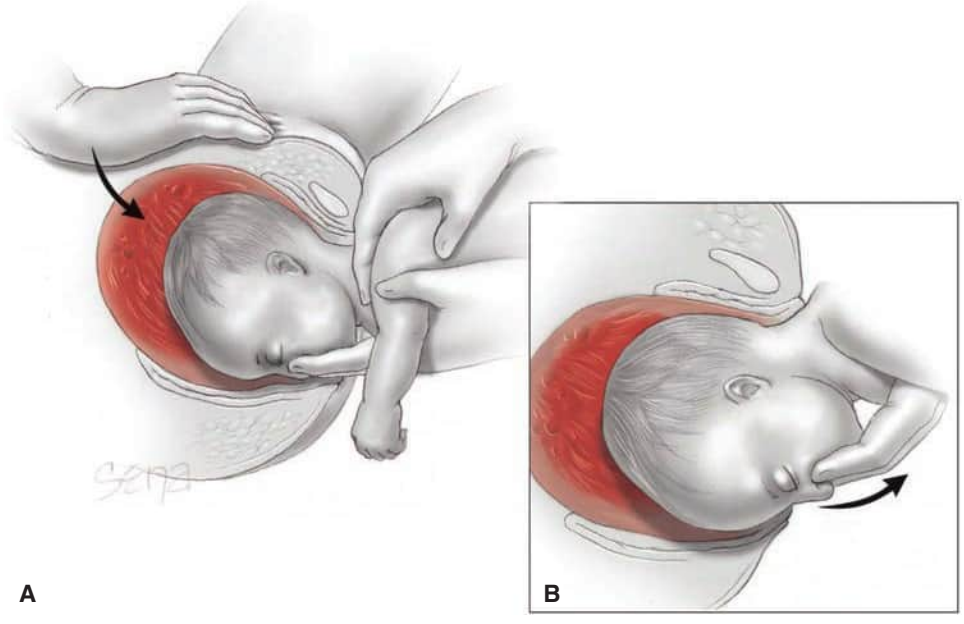


FIGURE 28-8 A. Delivery of the aftercoming head using the Mauriceau maneuver. Note that as the fetal head is being delivered, flexion of the head is maintained by suprapubic pressure provided by an assistant. **B.** Pressure on the maxilla is applied simultaneously by the operator as upward and outward traction is exerted.

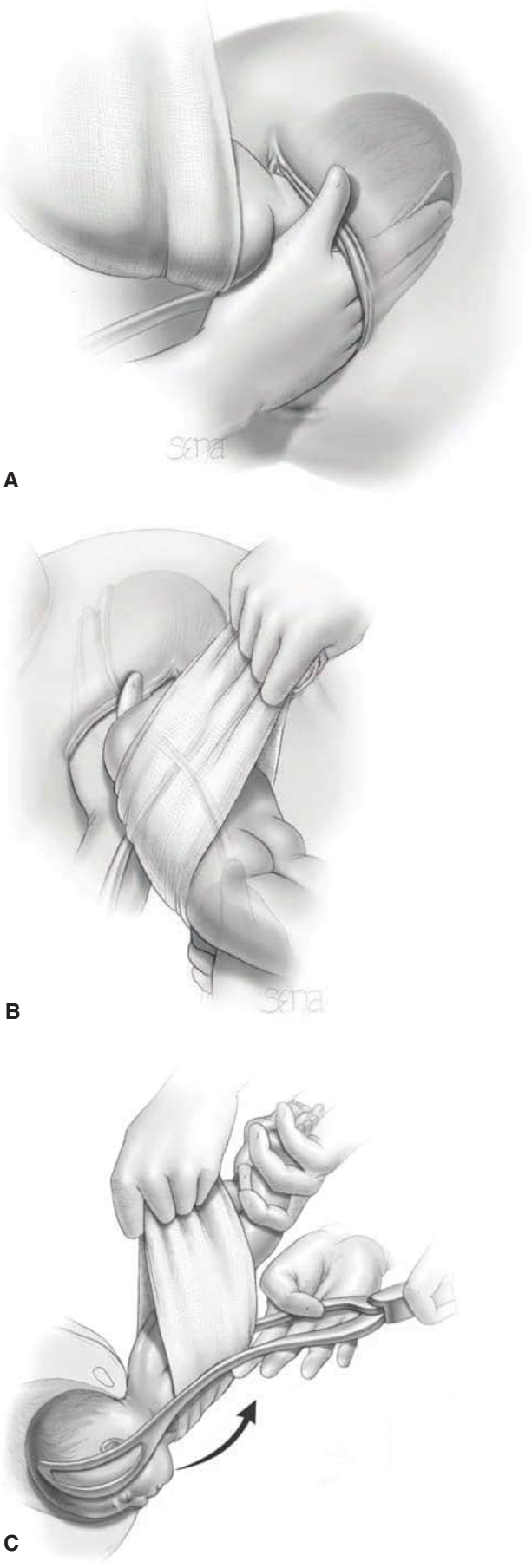


FIGURE 28-9 Piper forceps for delivery of the aftercoming head.

Second, specialized forceps can be used to deliver the aftercoming head. *Piper forceps*, shown in Figure 28-9, or *Laufe-Piper forceps* may be applied electively or when the Mauriceau maneuver cannot be accomplished easily. The blades of the forceps are not applied to the aftercoming head until it has been brought into the pelvis by gentle traction, combined with suprapubic pressure, and is engaged. Suspension of the body of the fetus in a towel effectively holds the fetus up and helps keep the arms and cord out of the way as the forceps blades are applied.

Because the forceps blades are directed upward from the level of the perineum, some choose to apply them from a one-knee kneeling position. Piper forceps have a downward arch in the shank to accommodate the fetal body and lack a pelvic curve. This shape permits direct application of the cephalic curve of the blade along the length of the maternal vagina and fetal parietal bone. The blade to be placed on the maternal left is held in the provider's left hand. The right hand slides between the fetal head and left maternal vaginal sidewall to guide the blade inward and around the parietal bone. The opposite blade mirrors this application.

Once in place, the blades are articulated, and the fetal body rests across the shanks. The head is delivered by pulling gently outward and slightly raising the handle simultaneously. This rolls the face over the perineum, while the occiput remains beneath the symphysis until after the brow delivers. Ideally, the head and body move in unison to minimize neck extension.

Last, in some cases, the back of the fetus fails to rotate to the symphysis. The fetus still may be delivered using the modified *Prague maneuver*. With this, two fingers of one hand grasp the shoulders of the back-down fetus from below while the other hand draws the feet up and over the maternal abdomen (Fig. 28-10).

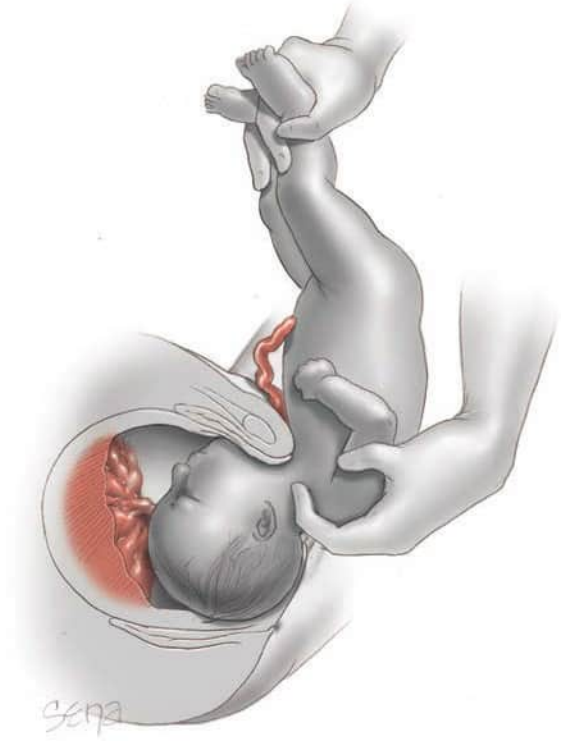


FIGURE 28-10 Delivery of the aftercoming head using the modified Prague maneuver necessitated by failure of the fetal trunk to rotate anteriorly.

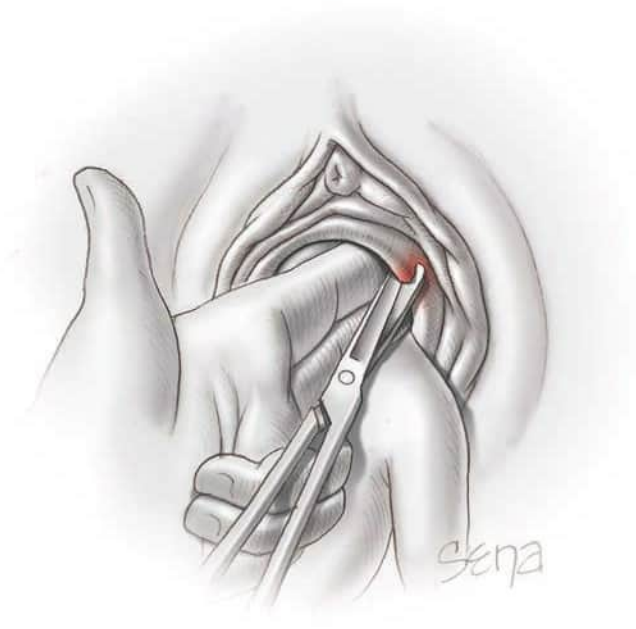


FIGURE 28-11 Dührssen incision being cut at 2 o'clock, which is followed by a second incision if needed at 10 o'clock. Infrequently, an additional incision is required at 6 o'clock. The incisions are so placed as to minimize bleeding from the laterally located cervical branches of the uterine artery. After delivery, the incisions are repaired as described in Chapter 42 (p. 740).

Head Entrapment

Either an incompletely dilated cervix or cephalopelvic disproportion can entrap the head. At this point, a true emergency exists because significant cord compression must be assumed.

First, an incompletely dilated cervix can constrict around the neck, especially with a small preterm fetus. With gentle traction on the fetal body, the cervix at times may be manually slipped over the occiput. If unsuccessful, Dührssen incisions may be needed (Fig. 28-11). General anesthesia with halogenated agents is another option to aid lower uterine segment relaxation. As an extreme measure, replacement of the fetus higher into the vagina and uterus, followed by cesarean delivery, can rescue an entrapped breech fetus. This *Zavanelli maneuver* is classically performed to relieve intractable shoulder dystocia (Sandberg, 1988). However, case reports have also described its use for an entrapped aftercoming head (Sandberg, 1999; Steyn, 1994).

Second, in cases with cephalopelvic disproportion and arrest of aftercoming head, the Zavanelli maneuver or symphysiotomy are options (Sunday-Adeoye, 2004; Wery, 2013). These are described in Chapter 27 (p. 504).

■ Total Breech Extraction

Frank Breech

During complete extraction of a frank breech, moderate traction is exerted by a finger in each groin and aided by a generous episiotomy. Once the breech is pulled through the introitus, the steps just described for partial breech extraction are completed.

Rarely during vaginal delivery, a frank breech will require decomposition inside the uterine cavity. Attributed to Pinard (1889), this procedure converts a frank breech into a footling breech. It is accomplished more readily if the membranes have ruptured only recently. It becomes extremely difficult if amniotic fluid is scant and the uterus is tightly contracted around the fetus. Pharmacological relaxation by general anesthesia or intravenous magnesium sulfate, nitroglycerin, or a betamimetic agent may be required. To begin, two fingers are carried up along one leg to externally rotate the hip by pressing on the medial side of the thigh parallel to the femur. Simultaneously, pressure in the popliteal fossa should prompt spontaneous knee flexion which brings the corresponding foot into contact with the back of the provider's hand. The fetal foot then may be grasped and brought down. Delivery is then accomplished as for incomplete breech, described next.

Incomplete or Complete Breech

If rapid labor progress prohibits cesarean delivery, total extraction of an incomplete or complete breech may be required. A hand is introduced through the vagina, and both fetal feet are grasped. The ankles are held with the middle finger lying between them. With gentle traction, the feet are brought through the introitus (Fig. 28-12). As the legs begin to emerge through the vulva, downward gentle traction is continued. As the legs emerge, successively higher portions are grasped. When the breech appears at the vaginal outlet, gentle traction is applied until the hips are delivered. The thumbs are then placed over the sacrum and the fingers over the iliac crests. Breech extraction is then completed, as described for partial breech extraction.

If only one foot can be grasped, it can be brought down into the vagina and held with the appropriate hand, right hand for right foot and left hand for left foot (Yeomans, 2017). With the first foot secure, the opposite hand is introduced, passed upward along the leg, and guided to locate the other foot. If the remaining hip is extended, the second foot is usually easily grasped and

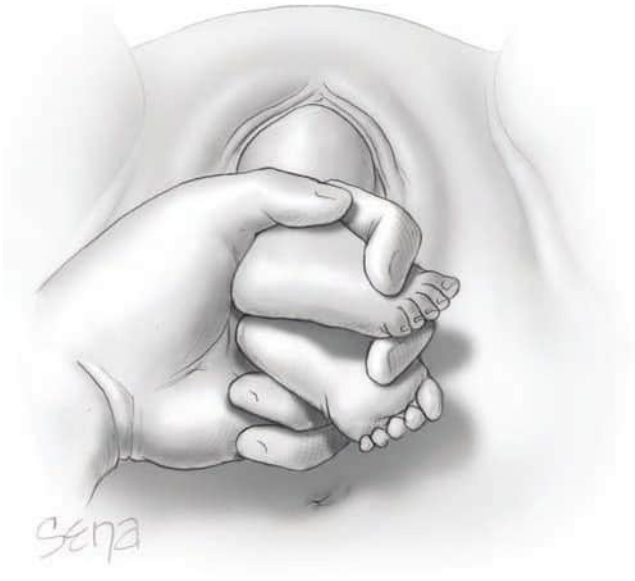


FIGURE 28-12 Complete breech extraction begins with traction on the feet and ankles.

brought down. If the hip is flexed and knee extended, a finger is hooked into that groin, and traction will bring the lower half of the fetus down until the leg can be reached.

For cesarean delivery, these same total breech extraction maneuvers can be used. These steps can aid delivery of a frank, complete, or incomplete breech through the hysterotomy incision.

EXTERNAL CEPHALIC VERSION

With *version*, fetal presentation is altered by physically substituting one pole of a longitudinal presentation for the other, or converting an oblique or transverse lie into a longitudinal presentation. Manipulations performed through the abdominal wall that yield a cephalic presentation are termed *external cephalic version*. Manipulations accomplished inside the uterine cavity that yield a breech presentation are designated *internal podalic version*. This latter procedure is reserved for delivery of a second twin and described in Chapter 48 (p. 856).

Indications

External cephalic version (ECV) reduces the rate of noncephalic presentation at birth, and its success rate is 50 to 60 percent (Hofmeyr, 2015b; Melo, 2019). For women with a transverse lie, the overall success rate is significantly higher.

In general, ECV is attempted before labor in a woman who has reached $37^{0/7}$ weeks' gestation (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; Impey, 2017a). This threshold aims to balance risks of fetal immaturity and the greater amnionic fluid volume seen in early-term pregnancies, which aids turning. In support of this, one systematic review found that ECV done before $37^{0/7}$ weeks raised ECV success rates but did not lower the ultimate cesarean delivery rate and increased the risk of late-preterm birth (Hutton, 2015). Before this time, breech presentation also still has a high likelihood of correcting spontaneously. And, if ECV is performed too early, time may allow a reversion back to breech (Bogner, 2012). Last, if attempts at version cause a need for immediate delivery, complications of iatrogenic early-term delivery generally are not severe.

Absolute contraindications to ECV are few. It is contraindicated if vaginal delivery is not an option, such as with placenta previa. Relative contraindications are early labor, oligohydramnios or ruptured membranes, known nuchal cord, structural uterine abnormalities, fetal-growth restriction, multifetal gestation, and prior abruption or its risk factors (Rosman, 2013). Little data guide the decision for ECV for women with a prior cesarean delivery. In one pooled series of small studies that contained more than 100 attempts, no uterine ruptures were reported (Impey, 2018). At Parkland Hospital, we do not attempt ECV in these women.

Several factors can improve the chances of an ECV attempt. These are multiparity, unengaged presenting part, nonanterior placenta, nonobese patient, and abundant amnionic fluid (Lauterbach, 2021; Kok, 2008, 2009). To augment the last parameter, neither a preprocedural 2-L intravenous fluid bolus nor amnioinfusion raised ECV success rates (Burgos, 2014; Diguisto, 2018). Dedicated breech teams may increase these rates (Hickland, 2018; Thissen, 2019).

Complications

Patient counseling includes a discussion regarding small but real risks for placental abruption, preterm labor, and fetal compromise. Bradycardia is common during or following ECV, but emergent cesarean rates are ≤0.5 percent. Uterine rupture, fetomaternal hemorrhage, alloimmunization, amnionic fluid embolism, and maternal or fetal deaths are rare (Grootscholten, 2008; Rodgers, 2017). Overall, compared with expectant management, perinatal morbidity and mortality rates are not greater with ECV (Krueger, 2018; Son, 2018).

Even after successful ECV, several reports suggest that the cesarean delivery rate does not completely revert to the baseline for vertex presentations. Specifically, dystocia, malpresentation, and nonreassuring fetal heart patterns may be more common in these fetuses who have undergone successful ECV (Chan, 2004; de Hundt, 2014; Vézina, 2004).

Technique

ECV should be carried out in an area that has ready access to a facility equipped to perform emergency cesarean delivery. Because of the risk for surgical intervention, intravenous access is obtained. Patients also abstain from eating for 6 hours, but clear liquids can be consumed up to 2 hours prior. Sonographic examination is performed to confirm nonvertex presentation, document amnionic fluid volume adequacy, exclude obvious fetal anomalies if not done previously, and identify placental location and fetal spine orientation. Preprocedural external monitoring is performed to document fetal heart rate reactivity. Anti-D immune globulin is given to Rh D–negative women. Tocolysis and regional analgesia may be elected, and rationale for these is provided in subsequent sections.

The woman is placed in left lateral tilt to aid uteroplacental perfusion, and Trendelenburg positioning helps during elevation of the breech. During the procedure, we prefer to monitor fetal heart motion sonographically. An abundant abdominal coating of ultrasound gel permits this and also minimizes painful skin friction (Vallikkannu, 2014).

A forward roll of the fetus usually is attempted first. One or two providers may participate, and one hand grasps the head. The fetal buttocks are then elevated from the maternal pelvis and displaced laterally (Fig. 28-13). These are then gently guided toward the fundus, while the head is simultaneously directed toward the pelvis. If the forward roll is unsuccessful, a backward flip is attempted. ECV attempts are discontinued for excessive discomfort, for persistently abnormal fetal heart rate, or after multiple failed attempts. Failure is not always absolute. Ben-Meir and colleagues (2007) reported a spontaneous version rate of 7 percent among 226 failed versions—2 percent among nulliparas and 13 percent among multiparas.

If ECV is successful, a nonstress test is repeated until a normal test result is obtained. A transient abnormal fetal heart rate tracing during or after ECV complicates 6 to 9 percent of cases. This should prompt a traditional resuscitative response with intravenous fluids, oxygen, and lateral tilt. Rates of abnormal tracings prompting immediate cesarean delivery range from only 0.2 to 0.4 percent (Collaris, 2004; Grootscholten, 2008).

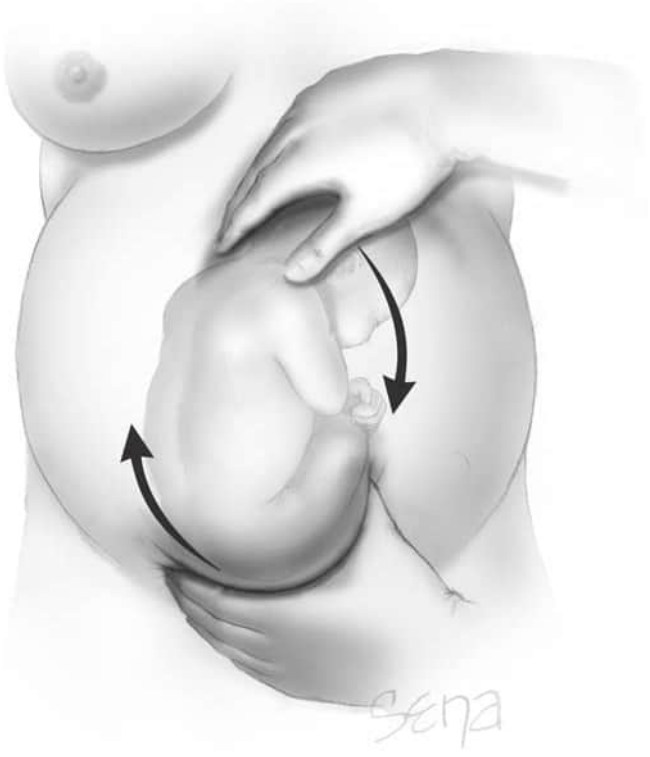


FIGURE 28-13 External cephalic version. With an attempted forward roll, clockwise pressure is exerted against the fetal poles.

Once resolved, Kuppens and coworkers (2017) found that a transient abnormal tracing did not predict later fetal distress in subsequent labor.

If ECV is completed before 39 weeks' gestation, awaiting spontaneous labor and fetal maturity is preferred. In some studies, immediate labor induction is linked to higher cesarean delivery rates (Burgos, 2015; Kuppens, 2013).

Tocolysis

By relaxing the uterus prior to an ECV attempt, tocolysis raises success rates. Most data support the use of the betamimetics terbutaline and ritodrine for this (Cluver, 2015). In one such trial, Fernandez and coworkers (1996) reported that the success rate with subcutaneous terbutaline—52 percent—was significantly higher than without—27 percent. Our policy at Parkland Hospital is to administer 250 μg of terbutaline subcutaneously to most women before attempted ECV. When maternal tachycardia—a known side effect of terbutaline—is noted, the attempt is begun. Terbutaline readily crosses the placenta, and mild elevation of fetal heart rate baseline also is possible (Ingemarsson, 1981; Roth, 1990). Data are limited and in some cases are nonsupportive for other agents that include calcium-channel blockers, such as nifedipine; nitric oxide donors, such as nitroglycerin; the oxytocin-receptor antagonist atosiban; and another betamimetic salbutamol (Burgos, 2010; Cluver, 2015; Hilton, 2009; Levin, 2019; Vani, 2009; Wilcox, 2011).

Conduction Analgesia

Epidural analgesia coupled with tocolysis has been reported to raise ECV success rates compared with tocolysis alone (Goetzinger, 2011; Magro-Malosso, 2016). Moreover, rates of complications that include fetal heart rate aberrations, emergency cesarean delivery, or placental abruption are not greater with regional analgesia. In trials, spinal and epidural have both shown success and are reasonable options (Khaw, 2015; Weiniger, 2010). Although uncommon, risks specific to regional analgesia, such as spinal headache, are possible. Currently, the superior technique and best drugs to administer are unclear. In contrast, from limited data, intravenous sedation or nitrous oxide does not appear to improve ECV success (Burgos, 2016; Dochez, 2019; Khaw, 2015; Straube, 2021).

■ Moxibustion

This is a traditional Chinese medicine technique that burns a cigarette-shaped stick of ground *Artemisia vulgaris*—which is also known as mugwort or in Japanese as *moxa.* At the BL 67 acupuncture point, the stick is directly placed against the skin or indirectly heats an acupuncture needle at the site to increase fetal movement and promote spontaneous breech version (Ewies, 2002). It is performed usually between 33 and 36 weeks' gestation to permit a trial of ECV if not successful. Results from randomized controlled studies are conflicting (Bue, 2016; Coulon, 2014; Coyle, 2012; Sananes, 2016; Vas, 2013).

REFERENCES

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Mode of term singleton breech delivery. Committee Opinion No. 745, July 2018b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Periviable birth. Obstetric Care Consensus No. 6, October 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: External cephalic version. Practice Bulletin No. 221, April 2020

Azria E, Le Meaux JP, Khoshnood B, et al: Factors associated with adverse perinatal outcomes for term breech fetuses with planned vaginal delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(4):285.e1, 2012

Behbehani S, Patenaude V, Abenhaim HA: Maternal risk factors and outcomes of umbilical cord prolapse: a population-based study. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 38(1):23, 2016

Ben-Meir A, Elram T, Tsafrir A, et al: The incidence of spontaneous version after failed external cephalic version. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196(2):157, 2007

Bergenhenegouwen L, Vlemmix F, Ensing S, et al: Preterm breech presentation: a comparison of intended vaginal and intended cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 126(6):1223, 2015

Bergenhenegouwen LA, Meertens LJ, Schaaf J, et al: Vaginal delivery versus caesarean section in preterm breech delivery: a systematic review. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 172:1, 2014

Berhan Y, Haileamlak A: The risks of planned vaginal breech delivery versus planned caesarean section for term breech birth: a meta-analysis including observational studies. BJOG 123(1):49, 2016

Bin YS, Ford JB, Nicholl MC, et al: Long-term childhood outcomes of breech presentation by intended mode of delivery: a population record linkage study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 96(3):342, 2017

Bin YS, Roberts CL, Nicholl MC, et al: Contribution of changing risk factors to the trend in breech presentation at term. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 56(6):564, 2016

Biswas A, Johnstone MJ: Term breech delivery: does x-ray pelvimetry help? Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 33:150, 1993

Bogner G, Xu F, Simbrunner C, et al: Single-institute experience, management, success rate, and outcome after external cephalic version at term. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 116(2):134, 2012

Bue L, Lauszus FF: Moxibustion did not have an effect in a randomised clinical trial for version of breech position. Dan Med J 63(2): A5199, 2016

Burgos J, Arana I, Garitano I, et al: Induction of labor in breech presentation at term: a retrospective cohort study. J Perinat Med 45(3):299, 2017

Burgos J, Eguiguren N, Quintana E, et al: Atosiban vs. ritodrine as a tocolytic in external cephalic version at term: a prospective cohort study. J Perinat Med 38(1):23, 2010

Burgos J, Iglesias M, Pijoan JI, et al: Probability of cesarean delivery after successful external cephalic version. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 131(2):192, 2015

Burgos J, Pijoan JI, Osuna C, et al: Increased pain relief with remifentanil does not improve the success rate of external cephalic version: a randomized controlled trial. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 95(5):547, 2016

Burgos J, Quintana E, Cobos P, et al: Effect of maternal intravenous fluid therapy on external cephalic version at term: a prospective cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(6):665.e1, 2014

Cammu H, Dony N, Martens G, et al: Common determinants of breech presentation at birth in singletons: a population-based study. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 177:106, 2014

Chadha YC, Mahmood TA, Dick MJ, et al: Breech delivery and epidural analgesia. BJOG 99:96, 1992

Chan LY, Tang JL, Tsoi KF, et al: Intrapartum cesarean delivery after successful external cephalic version: a meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 104:155, 2004

Cimmino CV, Southworth LE: Persistent hyperextension of the neck in breech ("star-gazing fetus") and in transverse lie ("flying-fetus"): indication for cesarean section. Am J Roentgenol Radium Ther Nucl Med 125(2):447, 1975

Cluver C, Gyte GM, Sinclair M, et al: Interventions for helping to turn term breech babies to head first presentation when using external cephalic version. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD000184, 2015

Collaris RJ, Oei SG.: External cephalic version: a safe procedure? A systematic review of version-related risks. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 83(6):511, 2004

Collea JV: Current management of breech presentation. Clin Obstet Gynecol 23(2):525, 1980

Confino E, Ismajovich B, Rudick V, et al: Extradural analgesia in the management of singleton breech delivery. Br J Anaesth 57:892, 1985

Coulon C, Poleszczuk M, Paty-Montaigne MH, et al: Version of breech fetuses by moxibustion with acupuncture: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 124(1):32, 2014

Coyle ME, Smith CA, Peat B: Cephalic version by moxibustion for breech presentation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD003928, 2012

Critchlow CW, Leet TL, Benedetti TJ, et al: Risk factors and infant outcomes associated with umbilical cord prolapse: a population-based case-control study among births in Washington State. Am J Obstet Gynecol 170(2):613, 1994

Deering S, Brown J, Hodor J, et al: Simulation training and resident performance of singleton vaginal breech delivery. Obstet Gynecol 107(1):86, 2006

de Hundt M, Vlemmix F, Bais JM, et al: Risk factors for developmental dysplasia of the hip: a meta-analysis. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 165(1):8, 2012

Diguisto C, Winer N, Descriaud C, et al: Amnioinfusion for women with a singleton breech presentation and a previous failed external cephalic version: a randomized controlled trial. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(8):993, 2018

Dochez V, Esbelin J, Misbert E, et al: Effectiveness of nitrous oxide in external cephalic version on success rate: a randomized controlled trial. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(3):391, 2020

Dotters-Katz SK, Gray B, Heine RP, et al: Resident education in complex obstetric procedures: are we adequately preparing tomorrow's obstetricians? Am J Perinatol 37(11):1155, 2020

Eide MG, Øyen N, Skjaerven R, et al: Breech delivery and intelligence: a population-based study of 8,738 breech infants. Obstet Gynecol 105(1):4, 2005

Ekéus C, Norman M, Åberg K, et al: Vaginal breech delivery at term and neonatal morbidity and mortality—a population-based cohort study in Sweden. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med. 32(2):265, 2019

Ewies AA, Olah KS: The sharp end of medical practice: the use of acupuncture in obstetrics and gynecology. BJOG 109(1):1, 2002

Fernandez CO, Bloom S, Wendel G: A prospective, randomized, blinded comparison of terbutaline versus placebo for singleton, term external cephalic version. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:326, 1996

Fontenot T, Campbell B, Mitchell-Tutt E, et al: Radiographic evaluation of breech presentation: is it necessary? Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 10:338, 1997

Ford JB, Roberts CL, Nassar N, et al: Recurrence of breech presentation in consecutive pregnancies. BJOG 117(7):830, 2010

Giuliani A, Scholl WMJ, Basver A, et al: Mode of delivery and outcome of 699 term singleton breech deliveries at a single center. Am J Obstet Gynecol 187:1694, 2002

Goetzinger KR, Harper LM, Tuuli MG, et al: Effect of regional anesthesia on the success rate of external cephalic version: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 118(5):1137, 2011

Goffinet F, Carayol M, Foidart JM, et al: Is planned vaginal delivery for breech presentation at term still an option? Results of an observational prospective survey in France and Belgium. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194(4):1002, 2006

Grabovac M, Karim JN, Isayama T, et al: What is the safest mode of birth for extremely preterm breech singleton infants who are actively resuscitated? A systematic review and meta-analyses. BJOG 125(6):652, 2018

Grootscholten K, Kok M, Oei SG, et al: External cephalic version-related risks: a meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 112(5):1143, 2008

Grunebaum A: Vaginal breech deliveries in the United States 1999–2013. Obstet Gynecol 127(5, suppl):69S, 2016

Hannah ME, Hannah WJ, Hewson SA, et al: Planned caesarean section versus planned vaginal birth for breech presentation at term: a randomised multicentre trial. Lancet 356:1375, 2000

Hernandez-Marti M, Dal Canto MC, Kidd JM: Evidence of spinal cord injury in an infant delivered by cesarean section. A case report. Childs Brain 11(3):197, 1984

Hickland P, Gargan P, Simpson J, et al: A novel and dedicated multidisciplinary service to manage breech presentation at term; 3 years of experience in a tertiary care maternity unit. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(22):3002, 2018

Hilton J, Allan B, Swaby C, et al: Intravenous nitroglycerin for external cephalic version: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 114(3):560, 2009

Hinderaker T, Daltveit AK, Irgens LM, et al: The impact of intra-uterine factors on neonatal hip instability. An analysis of 1,059,479 children in Norway. Acta Orthop Scand 65(3):239, 1994

Hinnenberg P, Toijonen A, Gissler M, et al: Outcome of small for gestational age-fetuses in breech presentation at term according to mode of delivery: a nationwide, population-based record linkage study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 299(4):969, 2019

Hoffmann J, Thomassen K, Stumpp P, et al: New MRI criteria for successful vaginal breech delivery in primiparae. PLoS One 11(8):e0161028, 2016

Hofmeyr GJ, Hannah M, Lawrie TA: Planned caesarean section for term breech delivery. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD000166, 2015a

Hofmeyr GJ, Kulier R, West HM: External cephalic version for breech presentation at term. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD000083, 2015b

Hutton EK, Hofmeyr GJ, Dowswell T: External cephalic version for breech presentation before term. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD000084, 2015

Impey LW, Murphy DJ, Griffiths M, et al: External cephalic version and reducing the incidence of term breech presentation. BJOG 124: e178, 2017a

Impey LW, Murphy DJ, Griffiths M, et al: Management of breech presentation: green-top guideline No. 20b. BJOG 124(7):e151, 2017b

Impey OR, Greenwood CE, Impey LW: External cephalic version after previous cesarean section: a cohort study of 100 consecutive attempts. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol. 231:210, 2018

Ingemarsson I, Westgren M, Lindberg C, et al: Single injection of terbutaline in term labor: placental transfer and effects on maternal and fetal carbohydrate metabolism. Am J Obstet Gynecol 139(6):697, 1981

Kayem G, Combaud V, Lorthe E, et al: Mortality and morbidity in early preterm breech singletons: impact of a policy of planned vaginal delivery. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 192:61, 2015

Khaw KS, Lee SW, Ngan Kee WD, et al: Randomized trial of anaesthetic interventions in external cephalic version for breech presentation. Br J Anaesth 114(6):944, 2015

Klemt AS, Schulze S, Brüggmann D, et al: MRI-based pelvimetric measurements as predictors for a successful vaginal breech delivery in the Frankfurt Breech at term cohort (FRABAT). Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 232:10, 2019

Kok M, Cnossen J, Gravendeel L, et al: Clinical factors to predict the outcome of external cephalic version: a metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199(6): 630, 2008

Kok M, Cnossen J, Gravendeel L, et al: Ultrasound factors to predict the outcome of external cephalic version: a meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 33(1):76, 2009

Korb D, Schmitz T, Alexander S, et al: Association between planned mode of delivery and severe maternal morbidity in women with breech presentations: a secondary analysis of the PREMODA prospective general population study. J Gynecol Obstet Hum Reprod 49(2):101662, 2020

Kotaska A, Menticoglou S: No. 384-management of breech presentation at term. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 41(8):1193, 2019

Krueger S, Simioni J, Griffith LE, et al: Labour outcomes after successful external cephalic version compared with spontaneous cephalic version. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 40(1):61, 2018

Kuppens SM, Hutton EK, Hasaart TH, et al: Mode of delivery following successful external cephalic version: comparison with spontaneous cephalic presentations at delivery. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 35(10):883, 2013

Kuppens SM, Smailbegovic I, Houterman S, et al: Fetal heart rate abnormalities during and after external cephalic version: which fetuses are at risk and how are they delivered? BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 17(1):363, 2017

Lamrani YA, Maâroufi M, Kamaoui I, et al: Neonatal distal femoral epiphyseal dislocation: an ultrasound diagnosis. J Med Ultrason 38(4):221, 2011
Lauterbach R, Bachar G, Ben-David C, et al: Association of persistent breech presentation with external cephalic version success. Obstet Gynecol 137(2):258, 2021
Lennox CE, Kwast BE, Farley TM: Breech labor on the WHO partograph. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 62(2):117, 1998
Levin G, Ezra Y, Weill Y, et al: Nifedipine versus ritodrine during external cephalic version procedure: a case control study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 13:1, 2019
Lorthe E, Sentilhes L, Quere M, et al: Planned delivery route of preterm breech singletons, and neonatal and 2-year outcomes: a population-based cohort study. BJOG 126(1):73, 2019
Lumbiganon P, Laopaiboon M, Gülmezoglu AM, et al: Method of delivery and pregnancy outcomes in Asia: the WHO global survey on maternal and perinatal health 2007–08. Lancet 375(9713):490, 2010
Lydon-Rochelle M, Albers L, Gorwoda J, et al: Accuracy of Leopold maneuvers in screening for malpresentation: a prospective study. Birth 20:132, 1993
Lyons J, Pressey T, Bartholomew S, et al: Delivery of breech presentation at term gestation in Canada, 2003–2011. Obstet Gynecol 125(5):1153, 2015
Macharey G, Gissler M, Rahkonen L, et al: Breech presentation at term and associated obstetric risks factors-a nationwide population based cohort study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 295(4):833, 2017a
Macharey G, Ulander VM, Heinonen S, et al: Induction of labor in breech presentations at term: a retrospective observational study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 293(3):549, 2016
Macharey G, Ulander VM, Heinonen S, et al: Risk factors and outcomes in "well-selected" vaginal breech deliveries: a retrospective observational study. J Perinat Med 45(3):291, 2017b
Macharey G, Väisänen-Tommiska M, Gissler M, et al: Neurodevelopmental outcome at the age of 4 years according to the planned mode of delivery in term breech presentation: a nationwide, population-based record linkage study. J Perinat Med 46(3):323, 2018
Magro-Malosso ER, Saccone G, Di Tommaso M, et al: Neuraxial analgesia to increase the success rate of external cephalic version: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(3):276, 2016
Marzouk P, Arnaud E, Oury JF, et al: Induction of labour and breech presentation: experience of a French maternity ward. [French]. J Gynecol Obstet Biol Reprod (Paris) 40(7):668, 2011
Maslovitz S, Barkai G, Lessing JB, et al: Recurrent obstetric management mistakes identified by simulation. Obstet Gynecol 109(6):1295, 2007
McNamara JM, Odibo AO, Macones GA, et al: The effect of breech presentation on the accuracy of estimated fetal weight. Am J Perinatol 29(5):353, 2012
Melo P, Georgiou EX, Hedditch A, et al: External cephalic version at term: a cohort study of 18 years' experience. BJOG 126(4):493, 2019
Michel S, Drain A, Closset E, et al: Evaluation of a decision protocol for type of delivery of infants in breech presentation at term. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 158(2):194, 2011
Mostello D, Chang JJ, Bai F, et al: Breech presentation at delivery: a marker for congenital anomaly? J Perinatol 34(1):11, 2014
Nassar N, Roberts CL, Cameron CA, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of clinical examination for detection of non-cephalic presentation in late pregnancy: cross sectional analytic study. BMJ 333:578, 2006
Noli SA, Baini I, Parazzini F, et al: Preterm birth, low gestational age, low birth weight, parity, and other determinants of breech presentation: Results from a large retrospective population-based study. Biomed Res Int 2019: 9581439, 2019
Patterson LS, O'Connell CM, Baskett TF: Maternal and perinatal morbidity associated with classic and inverted T cesarean incisions. Obstet Gynecol 100(4):633, 2002
Phelan JP, Bethel M, DeVore G, et al: Use of ultrasonography in the breech presentation with hyperextension of the fetal head. J Ultrasound Med 2(8):373, 1983
Pinard A: On version by external maneuvers. In traite du palper abdominal. Paris, Lauwereyns, 1889
Raju TN, Mercer BM, Burchfield DJ, et al: Periviable birth: executive summary of a joint workshop by the Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, American Academy of Pediatrics, and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Obstet Gynecol 123(5):1083, 2014
Reddy UM, Rice MM, Grobman WA, et al: Serious maternal complications after early preterm delivery (24-33 weeks' gestation). Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(4):538, 2015
Reddy UM, Zhang J, Sun L, et al: Neonatal mortality by attempted route of delivery in early preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(2):117.e1, 2012
Rietberg CC, Elferink-Stinkens PM, Visser GH: The effect of the Term Breech Trial on medical intervention behaviour and neonatal outcome in The Netherlands: an analysis of 35,453 term breech infants. BJOG 112(2):205, 2005
Roberts CL, Algert CS, Peat B, et al: Small fetal size: a risk factor for breech birth at term. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 67(1):1, 1999
Rodgers R, Beik N, Nassar N, et al: Complications of external cephalic version: a retrospective analysis of 1121 patients at a tertiary hospital in Sydney. BJOG 124(5):767, 2017
Rojansky N, Tanos V, Lewin A, et al: Sonographic evaluation of fetal head extension and maternal pelvis in cases of breech presentation. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 73:607, 1994
Roman H, Carayol M, Watier L, et al: Planned vaginal delivery of fetuses in breech presentation at term: prenatal determinants predictive of elevated risk of cesarean delivery during labor. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 138(1):14, 2008
Rosman AN, Guijt A, Vlemmix F, et al: Contraindications for external cephalic version in breech position at term: a systematic review. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 92(2):137, 2013
Roth AC, Milsom I, Forssman L, et al: Effects of intravenous terbutaline on maternal circulation and fetal heart activity. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 69(3):223, 1990
Sananes N, Roth GE, Aissi GA, et al: Acupuncture version of breech presentation: a randomized sham-controlled single-blinded trial. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 204:24, 2016
Sandberg EC: The Zavanelli maneuver extended: progression of a revolutionary concept. Am J Obstet Gynecol 158(6 Pt 1):1347, 1988
Sandberg EC: The Zavanelli maneuver: 12 years of recorded experience. Obstet Gynecol 93:312, 1999
Saroha M, Batra P, Dewan P, et al: Genital injuries in neonates following breech presentation. J Neonatal Perinatal Med 8(4):421, 2015
Schutte JM, Steegers EA, Santema JG, et al: Maternal deaths after elective cesarean section for breech presentation in the Netherlands. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 86(2):240, 2007
Sciscione AC, Landon MB, Leveno KJ, et al: Previous preterm cesarean delivery and risk of subsequent uterine rupture. Obstet Gynecol 111(3):648, 2008
Sherer DM, Menashe M, Palti Z, et al: Radiologic evidence of a nuchal arm in the breech-presenting fetus at the onset of labor: an indication for abdominal delivery. Am J Perinatol 6(3):353, 1989
Shipp TD, Bromley B, Benacerraf B: The prognostic significance of hyperextension of the fetal head detected antenatally with ultrasound. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 15(5):391, 2000
Son M, Roy A, Grobman WA, et al: Association between attempted external cephalic version and perinatal morbidity and mortality. Obstet Gynecol. 132(2):365, 2018
Steyn W, Pieper C: Favorable neonatal outcome after fetal entrapment and partially successful Zavanelli maneuver in a case of breech presentation. Am J Perinatol 11:348, 1994
Straube LE, Fardelmann KL, Penwarden AA, et al: Nitrous oxide analgesia for external cephalic version: A randomized controlled trial. J Clin Anesth 68:110073, 2021
Su M, McLeod L, Ross S, et al: Factors associated with adverse perinatal outcome in the term breech trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189(3):740, 2003
Su M, McLeod L, Ross S, et al: Factors associated with maternal morbidity in the term breech trial. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 29(4):324, 2007
Sun W, Liu F, Liu S, et al: Comparison of outcomes between induction of labor and spontaneous labor for term breech—a systemic review and meta-analysis. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 222:155, 2018
Sunday-Adeoye IM, Okonta P, Twomey D: Symphysiotomy at the Mater Misericordiae Hospital Afikpo, Ebonyi State of Nigeria (1982–1999): a review of 1013 cases. J Obstet Gynaecol 24(5):525, 2004
Thissen D, Swinkels P, Dullemond RC, et al: Introduction of a dedicated team increases the success rate of external cephalic version: a prospective cohort study. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 236:193, 2019
Thomas PE, Petersen SG, Gibbons K: The influence of mode of birth on neonatal survival and maternal outcomes at extreme prematurity: a retrospective cohort study. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 56(1):60, 2016
Thomas SM, Bees NR, Adam EJ: Trends in the use of pelvimetry techniques. Clin Radiol 53(4):293, 1998
Toijonen AE, Heinonen ST, Gissler MV, et al: A comparison of risk factors for breech presentation in preterm and term labor: a nationwide, population-based case-control study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 301(2):393, 2020
Toivonen E, Palomäki O, Huhtala H, et al: Selective vaginal breech delivery at term—still an option. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91(10):1177, 2012
Tucker Edmonds B, McKenzie F, Macheras M, et al: Morbidity and mortality associated with mode of delivery for breech periviable deliveries. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(1):70, 2015
Vallikkannu N, Nadzratulaiman WN, Omar SZ, et al: Talcum powder or aqueous gel to aid external cephalic version: a randomised controlled trial. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 14:49, 2014

Vani S, Lau SY, Lim BK, et al: Intravenous salbutamol for external cephalic version. Int J Gynecol Obstet 104(1):28, 2009

Vas J, Aranda-Regules JM, Modesto M, et al: Using moxibustion in primary healthcare to correct non-vertex presentation: a multicentre randomised controlled trial. Acupunct Med 31(1):31, 2013

Vendittelli F, Pons JC, Lemery D, et al: The term breech presentation: neonatal results and obstetric practices in France. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 125(2):176, 2006

Vézina Y, Bujold E, Varin J, et al: Cesarean delivery after successful external cephalic version of breech presentation at term: a comparative study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190:763, 2004

Vialle R, Piétin-Vialle C, Ilharreborde B, et al: Spinal cord injuries at birth: a multicenter review of nine cases. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 20(6):435, 2007

Vistad I, Klungsøyr K, Albrechtsen S, et al: Neonatal outcome of singleton term breech deliveries in Norway from 1991 to 2011. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 94(9):997, 2015

Weiniger CF, Ginosar Y, Elchalal U, et al: Randomized controlled trial of external cephalic version in term multiparae with or without spinal analgesia. Br J Anaesth 104(5):613, 2010

Weinstein D, Margalioth EJ, Navot D, et al: Neonatal fetal death following cesarean section secondary to hyperextended head in breech presentation. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 62(6):629, 1983

Wery E, Le Roch A, Subtil D: Zavanelli maneuver performed in a breech presentation. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 120(2):193, 2013

Westgren M, Grundsell H, Ingemarsson I, et al: Hyperextension of the fetal head in breech presentation. A study with long-term follow-up. BJOG 88(2):101, 1981

Whyte H, Hannah ME, Saigal S, et al: Outcomes of children at 2 years after planned cesarean birth versus planned vaginal birth for breech presentation at term: the International Randomized Term Breech Trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191(3):864, 2004

Wilcox CB, Nassar N, Roberts CL: Effectiveness of nifedipine tocolysis to facilitate external cephalic version: a systematic review. BJOG 118(4):423, 2011

Yeomans ER: Vaginal breech delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017

CHAPTER 29

Operative Vaginal Delivery

Operative vaginal delivery (OVD) is birth accomplished with assistance from forceps or a vacuum-cup device. Once these are applied to the fetal head, outward traction generates forces that augment maternal pushing to deliver the fetus.

INCIDENCE AND INDICATIONS

From national data, forceps or vacuum-assisted vaginal delivery aided 3.1 percent of births in the United States in 2015. This is a decline from 9 percent in 1990 (Martin, 2017). For these procedures, a vacuum is disproportionately selected, and the vacuum-to-forceps delivery ratio approximates 4:1 (Yeomans, 2010). Most of these procedures are successful in effecting vaginal birth. From 2006 United States data, only 0.4 percent of forceps trials and 0.8 percent of vacuum extraction attempts failed to result in vaginal birth (Osterman, 2009). In the specific group of nulliparas with term gestations, higher failure rates of 4.4 and 6.4 percent, respectively, were found in a study of 25 academic hospitals (Bailit, 2016).

If technically safe, termination of second-stage labor by OVD is considered for any condition that threatens the mother or fetus and that is likely to be relieved by delivery. Of maternal indications, the most common are maternal exhaustion and prolonged second-stage labor. However, a specific, maximum second-stage length beyond which all women should be considered for OVD has not been defined (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019). Other maternal reasons are preexisting or intrapartum conditions that limit effective pushing or warrant expedited delivery. Severe or acute pulmonary compromise, decompensation from intrapartum infection, neurological disease, and serious cardiac disorders are examples. Frequent fetal indications include nonreassuring fetal heart rate and premature placental separation (Schuit, 2012).

CLASSIFICATION AND PREREQUISITES

Classification of OVD is summarized in Table 29-1. It emphasizes that station and rotation are the two most important discriminators of risk for both mother and neonate. Station is measured by the number of centimeters, either above or below, an anatomical zero station, which is a line drawn between the ischial spines. Stations range from −5 to 0 to +5. Procedures are categorized as outlet, low, and midpelvic, and most are low or outlet deliveries. *High forceps, in which instruments are applied above 0 station, have no place in current obstetrics*.

To aid patient selection, the Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine (2020) published a preprocedural checklist and documentation template. Once station and rotation are determined, the prerequisites listed in Table 29-1 are assessed. For vacuum extraction, fetuses ideally are not younger than 34 weeks' gestation because of cranial hemorrhage vulnerability at earlier ages (Åberg, 2014). Also prior to vacuum use, although infrequently used in the United States, fetal scalp blood sampling should not have been recently performed. Of requisites, ascertaining

TABLE 29-1. Operative Vaginal Delivery Prerequisites and Classification According to Station and Rotation[a]

Procedure	Criteria
Outlet forceps	Scalp is visible at the introitus without separating the labia Fetal skull has reached pelvic floor Fetal head is at or on perineum Head is OA or OP ***or*** Head is right or left OA or OP position but rotation ≤45 degrees
Low forceps (2 types)	Fetal station is ≥+2 cm but not on the pelvic floor, and: (a) Rotation ≤45 degrees is required ***or*** (b) Rotation >45 degrees is required
Midforceps	Fetal station is between 0 and +2 cm

Prerequisites		
Engaged head	Experienced operator	No fetal coagulopathy
Vertex presentation[b,c]	Ruptured membranes	No fetal demineralization disorder
Known fetal head position	Completely dilated cervix	Informed consent completed
CPD not suspected	Adequate anesthesia	Willingness to abandon OVD
Fetal weight estimated	Emptied maternal bladder	

[a]Classification for the vacuum delivery is the same as for forceps except that vacuum is used for traction but not rotation.
[b]Forceps, but not vacuum extractor, may be used for delivery of a mentum anterior face presentation.
[c]Piper forceps may be used to deliver the head during breech delivery.
CPD = cephalopelvic disproportion; OA = occiput anterior; OP = occiput posterior; OVD = operative vaginal delivery.

correct head position is essential, and Figure 29-1 shows fetal skull anatomy. In unclear cases, sonography can help identify fetal orbits and nasal bridge to aid orientation (Ghi, 2018).

Regional analgesia is preferable for low or midpelvic procedures. Pudendal blockade may prove adequate for outlet deliveries. As a causative factor, newer epidural methods or placement during early labor do not raise OVD rates (Anim-Somuahm, 2018; Liu, 2004).

The bladder is emptied to provide additional pelvic space and minimize bladder trauma. Urinary retention and bladder dysfunction are frequent short-term effects of OVD (Mulder, 2012; Pifarotti, 2014). Notably, episiotomy and epidural analgesia, both common associates of OVD, also are risks for urinary retention. Retention usually resolves after 24 to 48 hours of passive catheter bladder drainage (Chap. 36, p. 643).

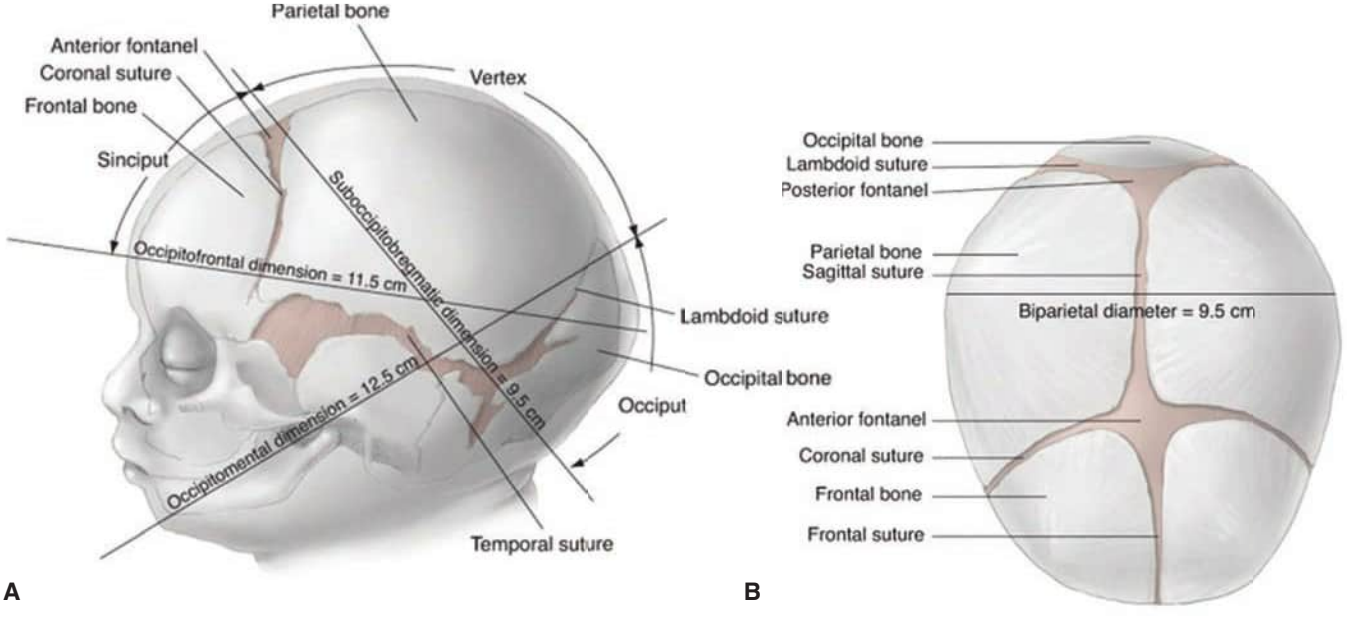


FIGURE 29-1 Fetal head **(A–B)** at term showing fontanels, sutures, and various dimensions.

MORBIDITY

Maternal Morbidity

OVD carries increased risk of certain morbidities for both mother and fetus. In general, a higher station and greater degrees of rotation raise procedure difficulty and the chance of injury. Morbidity is most properly compared with morbidity from cesarean delivery and not with that from spontaneous birth. This is the most appropriate comparator because the alternative to indicated OVD is cesarean delivery.

Lacerations

The very indications that prompt OVD are among those that also increase the need for episiotomy and the likelihood of lacerations (de Leeuw, 2008). That said, higher rates of third- and fourth-degree perineal lacerations, vaginal wall lacerations, and less often cervical tears do complicate OVD compared with spontaneous birth (Friedman, 2015; Gurol-Urganci, 2013; Landy, 2011). These rates with OVD are also substantially higher than with cesarean delivery. Third- and fourth-degree perineal lacerations are grouped as *obstetrical anal sphincter injuries (OASIS)*. In general, these tears more frequently attend forceps delivery compared with vacuum extraction, and especially if an episiotomy is midline (Kudish, 2006; O'Mahony, 2010).

With OVD, *indicated* episiotomy rather than *routine* use is recommended. If required, a mediolateral episiotomy affords greater protection against OASIS than midline incision (Gurol-Urganci, 2013; Jangö, 2014; van Bavel, 2018). But, short-term rates of pain and dyspareunia are similar or increased with mediolateral episiotomy (Chap. 27, p. 510). As another OASIS protection, early forceps disarticulation and removal can avoid the full perineal distention created by the blades and crowning head. Moreover, cessation of maternal pushing during disarticulation or as the head begins to crown allows the clinician sole control of outward forces against the perineum. Similarly, adding a dedicated assistant to bolster the perineum can lower OASIS rates, and this is our practice (Wan, 2020). Last, OASIS are more common with an occiput posterior (OP) position (Damron, 2004). Thus, manual or forceps rotation to an occiput anterior (OA) position may lower rates of lower reproductive tract injury (Bradley, 2013).

Infection and Subsequent-pregnancy Morbidity

As detailed in Chapter 30 (p. 548), cesarean delivery carries greater maternal morbidity compared with spontaneous birth. For OVD, in one study of more than 1 million births, cesarean delivery, but not OVD, was a risk for peripartum hysterectomy (Spiliopoulos, 2011). Further, avoiding cesarean delivery can minimize rates of subsequent pregnancy complications, such as placenta previa, placenta accreta spectrum, uterine rupture, and adhesion-related surgical organ injury.

In addition, postpartum wound or uterine infection is more frequent in women following cesarean compared with OVD (Bailit, 2016; Halscott, 2015). Still, to address peripartum infection, investigators in the ANODE trial randomly assigned nearly 3500 gravidas undergoing OVD to receive either placebo or a single intravenous dose of amoxicillin plus clavulanic acid (Knight, 2019). The puerperal infection rate was 11 percent after antibiotic prophylaxis compared with 19 percent in those given placebo. Notably, these infections often coincide with long labors and multiple cervical examinations, both of which are common with women requiring OVD. Thus, we believe that provision of antibiotics to those undergoing OVD without other infection-related risks warrants further study. Indeed, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) notes that this prophylaxis is *reasonable* but recommends against routine antibiotic prophylaxis for all women undergoing OVD. However, the College (2020b) does note that a single antibiotic dose with third- and fourth-degree perineal laceration is reasonable. Several studies support this practice (Duggal, 2008; Lewicky-Gaupp, 2015; Stock, 2013a).

Pelvic Floor Disorders

This term encompasses urinary incontinence, anal incontinence, and pelvic organ prolapse (POP). OVD has been implicated as a possible risk for each. Proposed mechanisms include structural compromise or pelvic floor denervation secondary to forces exerted during delivery.

For urinary incontinence, parity and specifically vaginal delivery are risk factors (Gyhagen, 2013; Rortveit, 2003). But, many studies do not support a higher risk from OVD compared with the risk from vaginal birth alone (Gartland, 2016; Leijonhufvud, 2011; MacArthur, 2016).

Evidence linking anal incontinence with OVD is conflicting. Some studies show that OASIS, but not delivery mode, is the main etiological link (Bols, 2010; Evers, 2012; Nygaard, 1997). In contrast, others directly associate OVD with anal incontinence (Dolan, 2010; MacArthur, 2013). But, these studies may not be incongruous—recall that OVD is associated with increased rates of OASIS. Importantly, several studies and reviews have not found cesarean delivery to be protective long term against anal incontinence (Nelson, 2010).

Similarly for POP, evidence linking it to OVD is mixed (Gyhagen, 2013; Volløyhaug, 2015). First, pelvic floor mechanisms leading to POP are complex and incompletely defined (Gordon, 2019). Despite this, obstetrical avulsion of the levator ani muscle from the pelvic sidewall has been implicated, and OVD, especially forceps delivery, is one risk for this injury (DeLancey, 2007; Dietz, 2008; Friedman, 2019). Again, the pelvic floor injury rather OVD itself may be the causative agent, as those with OVD but no avulsion did not suffer greater POP rates in one recent analysis (Handa, 2019).

Perinatal Morbidity

Acute Perinatal Injury

OVD carries higher risk for fetal injury than cesarean delivery or spontaneous birth. Both OVD methods are implicated, and factors can include delivery duration and the number of pulls or cup pop-offs (Åberg, 2019; Levin, 2019; Miller, 2020). Injuries are more frequent with vacuum extraction, and injuries with this device include cephalohematoma, subgaleal hemorrhage, retinal hemorrhage, neonatal jaundice secondary to these hemorrhages, clavicular fracture, and scalp lacerations. Cephalohematoma and subgaleal hemorrhage are both extracranial

lesions illustrated in Figure 33-2 (p. 608). Shoulder dystocia has been linked to both methods (Dall'Asta, 2016). Forceps delivery has higher rates of facial nerve injury, brachial plexus injury, depressed skull fracture, and corneal abrasion (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a; Demissie, 2004; Dupuis, 2005). With intracranial hemorrhage, some studies have associated vacuum extraction with higher rates, whereas others show similar rates with either OVD method (Towner, 1999; Wen, 2001; Werner, 2011).

Compared with cesarean delivery, OVD carries higher risk of extracranial hematomas, fractures, nerve injuries, retinal hemorrhage, and head lacerations. However, rates of fetal acidemia or hypoxic encephalopathy are not higher with OVD compared with second-stage cesarean delivery (Bailit, 2016; Contag, 2010; Walsh, 2013). Intracranial hemorrhage rates are similar among newborns delivered by vacuum extraction, forceps, or cesarean delivery during labor (Towner, 1999). But, intracranial hemorrhage rates are higher than among those delivered spontaneously or by cesarean delivery before labor. These authors suggest that the common risk factor for intracranial hemorrhage is abnormal labor. Werner and associates (2011), in their evaluation of more than 150,000 singleton deliveries, reported that forceps delivery was associated with fewer total neurological complications that included seizures, intraventricular hemorrhage, and subdural hemorrhage compared with vacuum-assisted birth or any cesarean delivery.

Compared with rotational OVD, second-stage cesarean delivery has similar maternal and neonatal morbidity rates (Aiken, 2015; Bahl, 2013; Stock, 2013b). For example, in their large series, Tempest and associates (2013) found similar morbidity rates among malpositioned fetuses during second-stage labor that underwent Kielland rotation, rotational vacuum extraction, or emergency cesarean delivery.

Midforceps by definition are performed from a higher station. The bulk of data are from older studies, and most show comparable neonatal morbidity between low and midforceps procedures (Dierker, 1985; Gilstrap, 1984). In a recent report also comparing these two, Ducarme and coworkers (2015) found comparable neonatal and maternal composite morbidity scores.

Comparing midpelvic OVD and second-stage cesarean delivery, most studies support neonatal safety (Bashore, 1990; Cibils, 1990; Hagadorn-Freathy, 1991). But, others have found increased rates of trauma and umbilical cord blood acidemia with midforceps delivery (Robertson, 1990). More recently, Muraca and associates (2018) compared midpelvic OVD methods against second-stage cesarean delivery. For the indication of dystocia, fetal and maternal morbidity composite scores were higher with OVD. With distress as the indication, the neonatal morbidity score was greater only with midpelvic vacuum-assisted OVD, whereas the maternal morbidity score was higher only with midforceps. In another study comparing both midpelvic OVD methods, maternal morbidity was greater with forceps, and neonatal morbidity differed only in a higher cephalohematoma rate with vacuum-assisted delivery (Baerthlein, 1986).

Mechanisms of Acute Injury

The types of fetal injury with OVD can usually be explained by the forces exerted. In cases of cephalohematoma or subgaleal hemorrhage, suction and perhaps rotation during vacuum extraction may lead to a primary vessel shearing. Intracranial hemorrhage may result from skull fracture that lacerates vessels or from vessel rupture alone due to exerted forces. With facial nerve palsy, one of the forceps blades compresses the nerve against the facial bones. To explain brachial plexus injury, Towner and Ciotti (2007) proposed that as the fetal head descends down the birth canal, the shoulders may stay above the pelvic inlet. Thus, similar to shoulder dystocia at the symphysis, this "shoulder dystocia at the pelvic inlet" is overcome by traction forces but with concomitant stretch on the brachial plexus.

Long-term Infant Morbidity

Evidence regarding long-term neurodevelopmental outcomes in children born by OVD is reassuring (Seidman, 1991; Wesley, 1992). Moreover, no association between forceps delivery and later epilepsy was found in a cohort study of more than 21,000 births (Murphy, 2004). In their review, O'Callaghan and colleagues (2011) reported no link between cerebral palsy and OVD. Last, the incidence of neurodevelopmental morbidity was similar in those undergoing successful forceps delivery, failed forceps with cesarean delivery, or cesarean delivery without forceps in one study (Bahl, 2007). Similarly, with midpelvic OVD, long-term neurodevelopment is not harmed in most analyses (Dierker, 1986; Friedman, 1984; Nilsen, 1984; Wesley, 1993).

Trial of Operative Vaginal Delivery

If an attempt to perform OVD is expected to be difficult, it should be considered a trial. Moving the woman to an operating room for this attempt, which could be followed by immediate cesarean delivery if OVD fails, has merit. If forceps cannot be satisfactorily applied, the procedure is stopped. Either a trial of vacuum-assisted delivery or cesarean delivery is then performed. With the former, if the fetus does not descend with traction, the trial should be abandoned and cesarean delivery performed.

With such caveats, cesarean delivery after an OVD attempt was not associated with adverse neonatal outcomes if the fetal heart rate was concurrently reassuring (Alexander, 2009). A similar study evaluated 122 women who had a trial of midpelvic OVD in a setting with full preparations for cesarean delivery (Lowe, 1987). Investigators found no significant difference in immediate neonatal or maternal morbidity compared with that of 42 women delivered for similar indications by cesarean but without such a trial. Conversely, in 61 women who had "unexpected" vacuum or forceps failure in which there was no prior preparation for immediate cesarean delivery, neonatal morbidity was higher.

Some factors associated with OVD failure are persistent OP positions and birthweight >4000 g (Ben-Haroush, 2007; Verhoeven, 2016). However, Palatnik and coworkers (2016) found that risk factors poorly predicted success. In general, to avert morbidity with failed OVD, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) cautions that these trials should be attempted only if the clinical assessment suggests a successful outcome. We also emphasize proper training.

Sequential instrumentation most often involves an attempt at vacuum-assisted OVD followed by one with forceps. This sequence likely reflects the overall higher completion rate with forceps. However, this practice significantly raises fetal trauma risks (Dupuis, 2005; Gardella, 2001; Murphy, 2011). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) recommends against the sequential use of instruments unless there is a "compelling and justifiable reason."

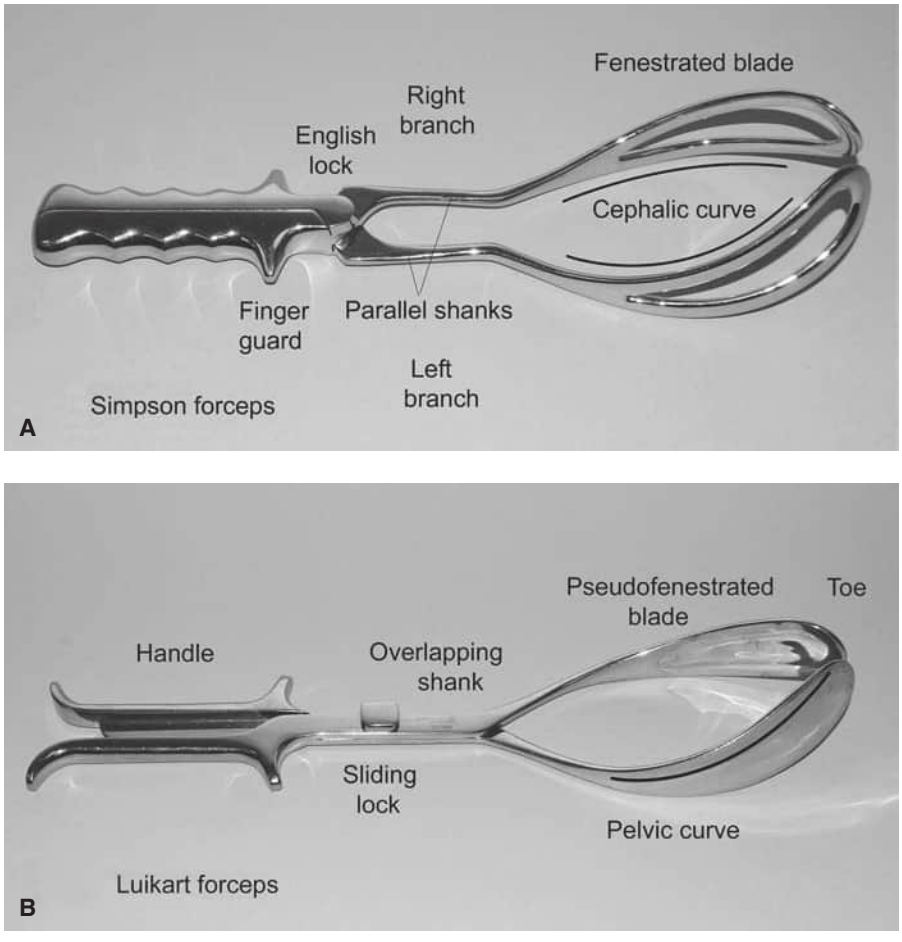


FIGURE 29-2 A. Simpson forceps have fenestrated blades, parallel shanks, and English lock. The cephalic curve accommodates the fetal head. **B.** Luikart forceps have pseudofenestrated blades, overlapping shanks, a sliding lock, and tongue-in-groove handles. The pelvic curve (*black curve*) is marked in this example.

FORCEPS DELIVERY

Design

Forceps refers to the paired instrument, and each member of this pair is called a branch. Branches are designated left or right according to the side of the maternal pelvis to which they are applied (Fig. 29-2A). Each branch has four components: blade, shank, lock, and handle (see Fig. 29-2B). Each blade has a toe, a heel, and two curves. Of these, the outward cephalic curve conforms to the round fetal head, whereas the upward pelvic curve corresponds to the curve of the birth canal. Some blades are *solid*, meaning smooth on both surfaces. Others have an opening within or a depression along the blade surface and are termed *fenestrated* or *pseudofenestrated*, respectively. A true window in the blade reduces the degree of head slippage within the blades during forceps rotation. Disadvantageously, it can increase blade thickness and friction against the vaginal wall. With pseudofenestration, the forceps blade is smooth on the outer maternal side but indented on the inner fetal surface. The goal is to reduce head slipping yet improve the ease and safety of application and removal of forceps. In most situations, however, despite these subtle differences, any are appropriate.

The blades are connected to shanks, which may be parallel or overlapping. *Parallel shanks* limit compression of blades against the fetal head and may be helpful with deliveries employing greater forces. These shanks, however, add width against the introitus. In comparison, overlapping shanks raise compression forces but distend the perineum less. This may offer greatest advantage for outlet deliveries.

Locks are found on all forceps and help to connect the right and left branches and stabilize the instrument. They can be located at the end of the shank nearest to the handles (English lock), at the ends of the handles (pivot lock), or along the shank (sliding lock). Although varied in design, handles, when squeezed, raise compression forces against the fetal head. Thus, forces to consider include traction and compression.

Blade Application and Delivery

Forceps blades grasp the head and are applied according to fetal head position. If the head is in an OA position, two or more fingers of the right hand are introduced inside the left posterior portion of the vulva and advanced into the vagina beside the fetal head. The handle of the left branch is grasped between the thumb and two fingers of the left hand (Fig. 29-3). The blade tip is then gently introduced along the posterior left vaginal wall. It is swept upward and inward between the fetal head and the palmar surface of the fingers (Fig. 29-4). This blade can be held in position by an assistant. For application of the right blade, two or more fingers of the left hand are introduced into the right posterior portion of the vagina to serve as a guide for the right blade. This blade is held in the right hand and introduced into the vagina. With each blade, the thumb is positioned behind the heel, and most of the insertion force comes from this thumb (Fig. 29-5). If the head is positioned in a left OA (LOA) or right OA (ROA) position, then the lower of the two blades is typically placed first.

The blades are constructed so that their cephalic curve is closely adapted to the sides of the fetal head (Fig. 29-6). The fetal head is perfectly grasped only when the long axis of the blades corresponds to the occipitomental diameter (see Fig. 29-1). As a result, most of the blade lies over the lateral face.

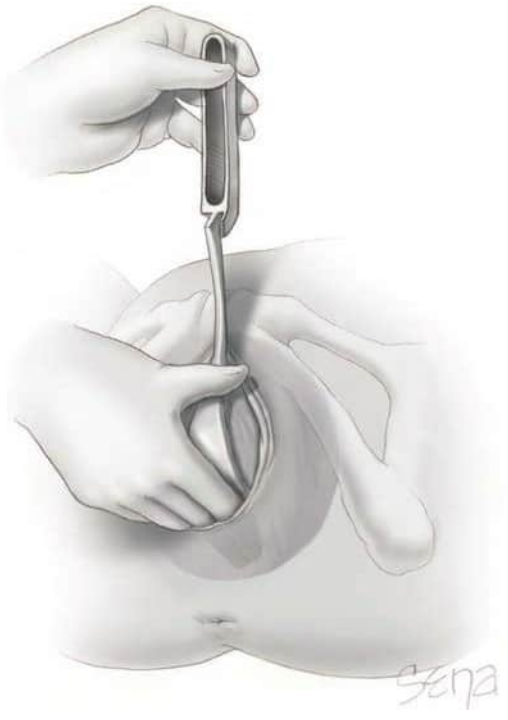


FIGURE 29-3 For OA or LOA positions, the left handle of the forceps is held in the left hand. The blade is introduced into the left side of the pelvis between the fetal head and the fingers of the operator's right hand.

Suboptimal blade placement can increase morbidity (Ramphul, 2015). For OA positions, appropriately applied blades are equidistant from the sagittal suture, and each blade is equidistant from its adjacent lambdoid suture. In OP positions, blades are symmetrically placed relative to the sagittal suture and to each coronal suture. After correct positioning, the branches can be articulated. If branches do not articulate, the blade's relationships to the sutures are reassessed. Applied in this way, forceps should not slip, and traction may be applied most advantageously. With most forceps, if one blade is applied over the brow and the other

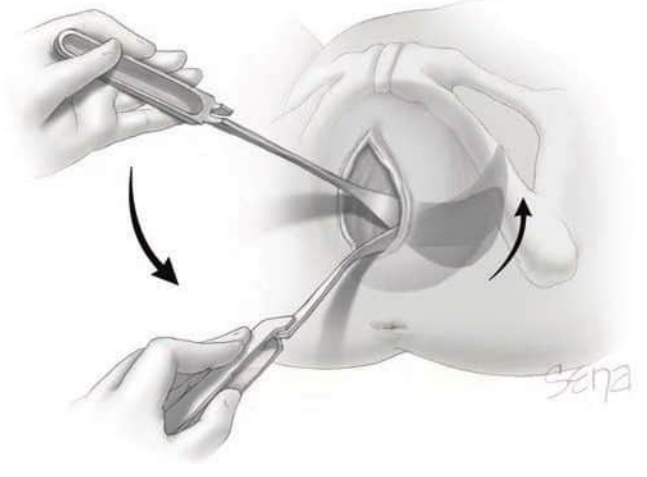


FIGURE 29-4 Insertion arc of the blade. Importantly, the thumb of the right hand, not shown here, guides the blade during placement.

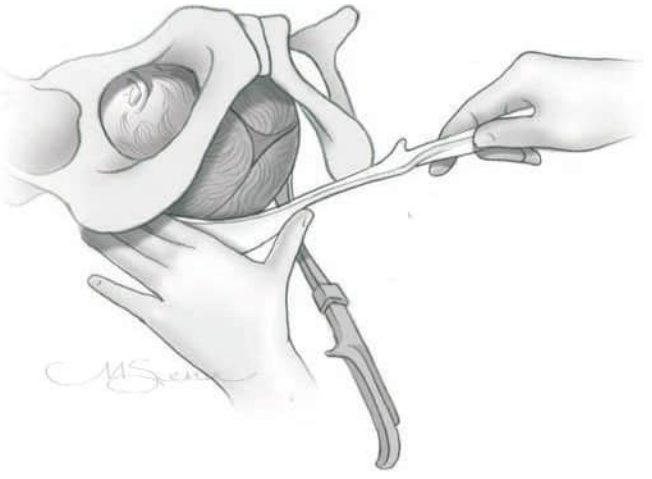


FIGURE 29-5 In applying the second blade, insertional force is generated mainly by the thumb. (Reproduced with permission from Yeomans ER: Operative vaginal delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

over the occiput, the instrument cannot be locked, or if locked, the blades will slip off when traction is applied.

With both branches in place, slow articulation of the handles will also typically correct mild asynclitism. For greater asynclitism, Luikart forceps can be placed and once positioned, one handle will extend further than the other along their long axis. Asynclitism is resolved by pulling and/or pushing each respective branch within the sliding lock along the instrument's long axis until the finger guards align.

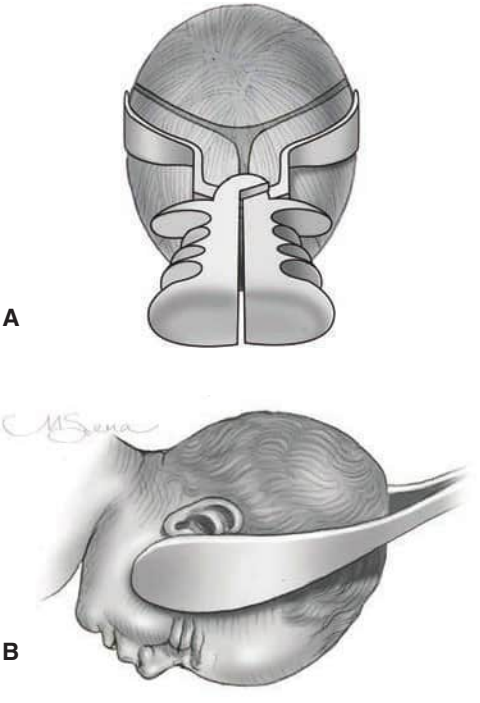


FIGURE 29-6 A. The forceps are symmetrically placed and articulated. **B.** The vertex is OA. (Reproduced with permission from Yeomans ER: Operative vaginal delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

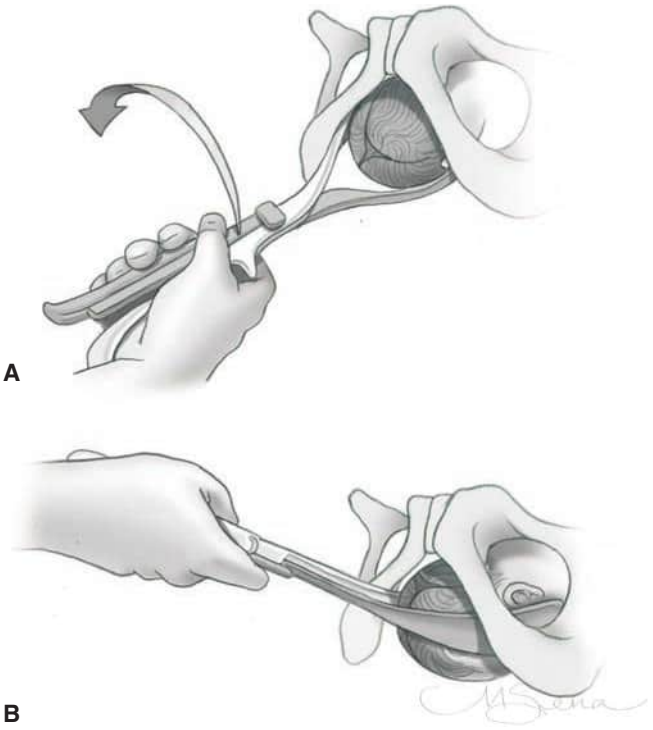


FIGURE 29-7 If LOA, the vertex is rotated from this position to OA (*arrow*). (Reproduced with permission from Yeomans ER: Operative vaginal delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

Once blades are placed satisfactorily, rotation to OA position is performed before traction is applied (Fig. 29-7). Next, gentle, intermittent, downward and outward traction is exerted concurrent with maternal efforts until the perineum begins to bulge. For most stations, the initial direction of traction is downward and brings the head beneath the symphysis.

With head descent, the vector of forces changes continuously and are gradually directed upward (Fig. 29-8). During the birth of the head, mechanisms of spontaneous delivery should be simulated as closely as possible. As a teaching tool for this, a *Bill axis traction device* can be attached over the finger guards of most forceps. The instrument has an arrow and indicator line. When the arrow points directly to the line, traction is along the path of least resistance.

It is impossible to ascertain the amount of force exerted by forceps for an individual patient. Thus, traction is ideally intermittent and relieved between contractions, as in spontaneous labor. Except when urgently indicated, delivery should be sufficiently slow, deliberate, and gentle to prevent undue head compression. It is preferable to apply traction only with each uterine contraction. Maternal pushing will augment these efforts.

With traction, as the occiput distends the vulva, an episiotomy may be performed if needed. The delivery may be completed in several ways. Some clinicians keep the forceps in place to control the head. However, this blade volume adds to vulvar distention and raises risks for laceration or episiotomy. To prevent this, the forceps may be removed, and delivery is then completed by maternal pushing (Fig. 29-9). Importantly, if blades are disarticulated and removed too early, the head

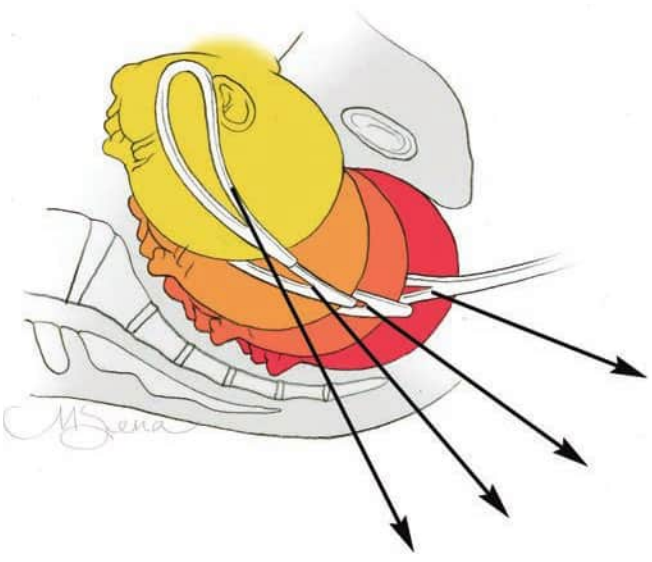


FIGURE 29-8 With low forceps, the direction of gentle traction for delivery of the head is indicated (*arrows*). (Reproduced with permission from Yeomans ER: Operative vaginal delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

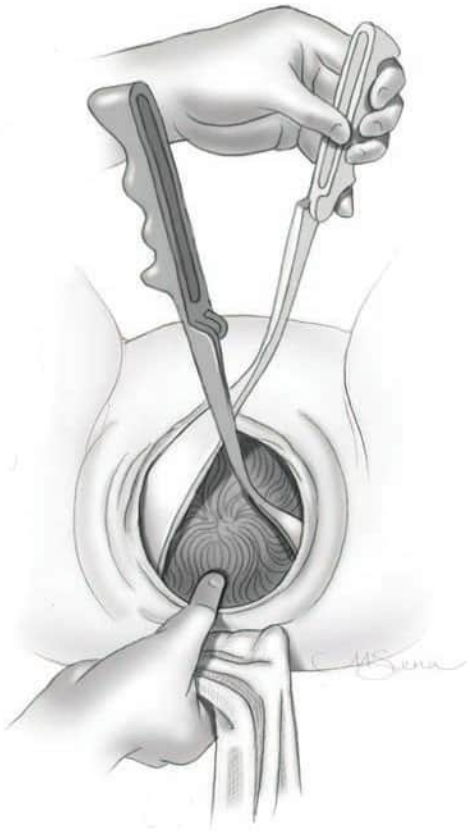


FIGURE 29-9 Branches are removed in the opposite order from that in which they were originally placed. The fingers of the right hand, covered by a sterile towel, bolster the perineum. The thumb is placed directly on the head to prevent sudden egress. (Reproduced with permission from Yeomans ER: Operative vaginal delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

may recede and prolong delivery. Pushing in some cases may be aided by the modified Ritgen maneuver. We emphasize bolstering of the perineum to control outward forces.

Manual Rotation

In many cases, OT and OP head positions are often imperfectly flexed and present a wider head diameter. This can slow fetal descent and lengthen second-stage labor. By manually rotating the fetal occiput into the anterior pelvis (OA positions), cephalopelvic proportions improve to help hasten spontaneous birth. This is usually reserved for second-stage labor. Compared with no attempt, manual rotation is associated with lower rates of cesarean delivery, OVD, severe perineal laceration, and chorioamnionitis (Blanc, 2021; Shaffer, 2011). If OVD is still required, the new OA position lowers rates of perineal trauma.

In the simplest cases, *digital rotation* can correct OT or OP positioning. With head molding, the sutures override one another to create a bony ridge. Two fingers hooked against this ridge and forces directed parallel to the skull can rotate the occiput toward the anterior pelvis. This is done between contractions, and advancements are then held in place during pushing. Progressive degrees of rotation are attained with each attempt, and several may be needed to ultimately rotate the occiput into the anterior pelvis.

Instead, with *manual rotation*, an open hand is inserted into the vagina. For ROP position, the right palm cups the fetal head and straddles the sagittal suture. The operator's fingers wrap to one side of the fetal face, and the thumb extends along the other side. Rotation is clockwise to bring the occiput to an ROA position (Fig. 29-10). With LOP position, rotation is counterclockwise with the left palm. Three actions are performed simultaneously between contractions. The fetal head is flexed to provide a smaller diameter for rotation and subsequent descent within the pelvis. Next, slight *destationing* of the fetal head moves the head to a level in the maternal pelvis with sufficient room to complete the rotation. Importantly, destationing should not be confused with *disengaging* the fetal head, which is proscribed. Third, we and others prefer also to place the other hand externally on the corresponding side of the maternal abdomen to pull the back of the fetus up and toward the midline in synchrony with internal head rotation. Barth (2015) provides an excellent summary of this technique.

Le Ray and associates (2007, 2013) reported a success rate >90 percent with manual rotation. Complication were uncommon. In their report of 796 rotations, no cords prolapsed. Two women sustained cervical lacerations, which required simple vaginal repair. Notably, this study allowed rotations at advanced cervical dilation prior to second-stage labor, which may have enhanced cervical injury risk. In 71 percent, fetal heart rate (FHR) was normal during rotation, but severe FHR abnormalities were noted in 10 percent. However, the need for cesarean delivery after successful manual rotation was not associated with FHR abnormalities. Failure to rotate the head does not mandate cesarean delivery, and options are described next.

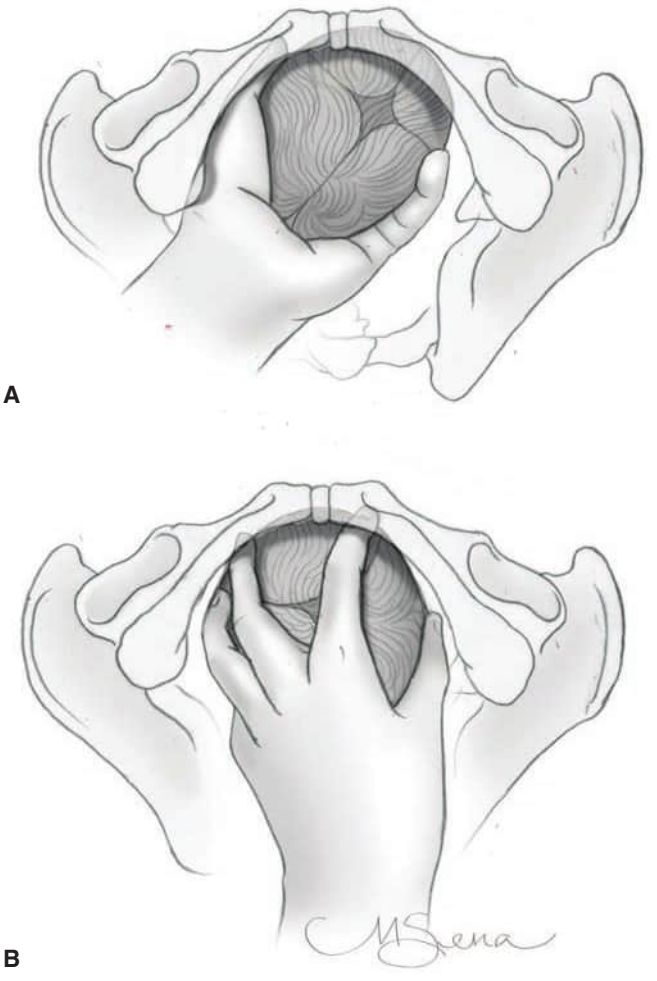


FIGURE 29-10 A. Manual rotation using the left hand, palm-up, to rotate from ROP. **B.** The head is flexed and destationed during clockwise rotation to reach an OA position. (Reproduced with permission from Yeomans ER: Operative vaginal delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

Persistent Occiput Posterior Positions

In cases with persistent OP positioning, the head may spontaneously deliver OP, may be manually or instrumentally rotated to an OA position, or may be delivered OP by forceps or vacuum (Bertholdt, 2019). In many cases, the cause of a persistent OP position and of the difficulty in accomplishing rotation is an anthropoid pelvis. This architecture opposes rotation and predisposes to posterior delivery (Fig. 2-16, p. 29).

With forceps delivery from an OP position, downward and outward traction is applied until the base of the nose passes under the symphysis (Fig. 29-11). The handles are then slowly elevated until the occiput gradually emerges over the perineum's fourchette. The forceps are directed downward again, and the nose, mouth, and chin successively emerge from the vulva.

OP delivery causes greater vulvar distention, and an episiotomy may be needed. OP deliveries have a higher incidence

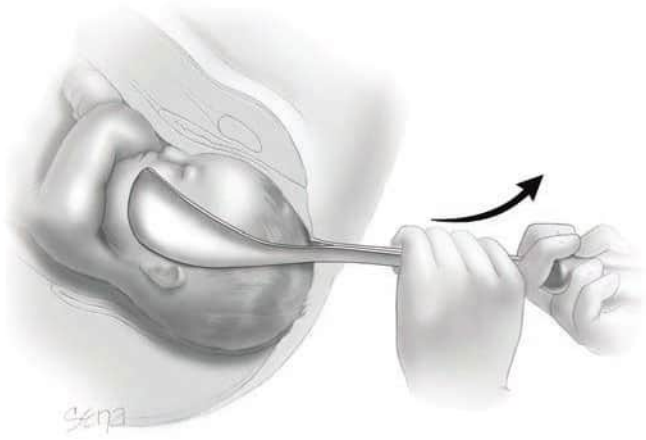


FIGURE 29-11 Outlet forceps delivery from an OP position. The head should be flexed after the bregma passes under the symphysis.

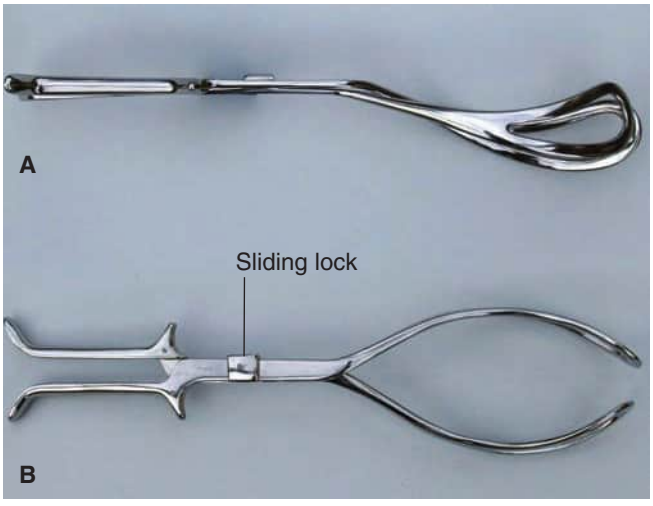


FIGURE 29-12 Kielland forceps. The characteristic features are minimal pelvic curvature **(A)**, sliding lock **(B)**, and light weight.

of severe perineal lacerations and of extensive episiotomy compared with OA positions (de Leeuw, 2008; Pearl, 1993). Also, newborns undergoing OVD from OP positions have a higher incidence of Erb and facial nerve palsies, 1 and 2 percent, respectively, than those delivered from OA positions. As expected, rotations to OA ultimately decrease perineal delivery trauma (Bradley, 2013).

For forceps rotations from an OP to OA position, Kielland forceps are preferred because they have a less pronounced pelvic curve (Fig. 29-12). *Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics*, 3rd edition offers a more detailed description and illustration of this Kielland forceps procedure (Yeomans, 2017).

■ Occiput Transverse Positions

With occiput transverse (OT) fetal head positions, rotation is required for delivery. For this, the head may be manually or instrumentally rotated into an OA position. Manual rotation was described earlier in that section (p. 540).

Forceps rotation by experienced operators can offer high success rates with minimal maternal morbidity (Burke, 2012; Stock, 2013b). Either standard forceps or specialized forceps, such as Kielland forceps, are used. With the latter, each handle has a small knob, and branches are placed so that this knob faces the occiput.

Kielland described two methods of applying the anterior blade. In this example, placement with a left OT (LOT) position is described. With the wandering method, the anterior blade is first introduced into the posterior pelvis (Fig. 29-13). The blade is then arched around the face to an anterior position. To permit this sweep of the blade, the handle is held close to the left maternal buttock throughout the maneuver. The second blade is introduced posteriorly, and the branches are locked.

After checking the application, the provider pulls the handles of the Kielland forceps slightly to the patient's right to flex the fetal head and create a smaller diameter for rotation. The first and second fingers of the left hand are placed over the finger guards with the palm against the handles. This palm faces the maternal left. Concurrently, the first two fingers of the operator's right hand are placed against the anterior lambdoid suture. The fetal head is then elevated and slightly destationed. For rotation in a counterclockwise direction, the wrist of the left

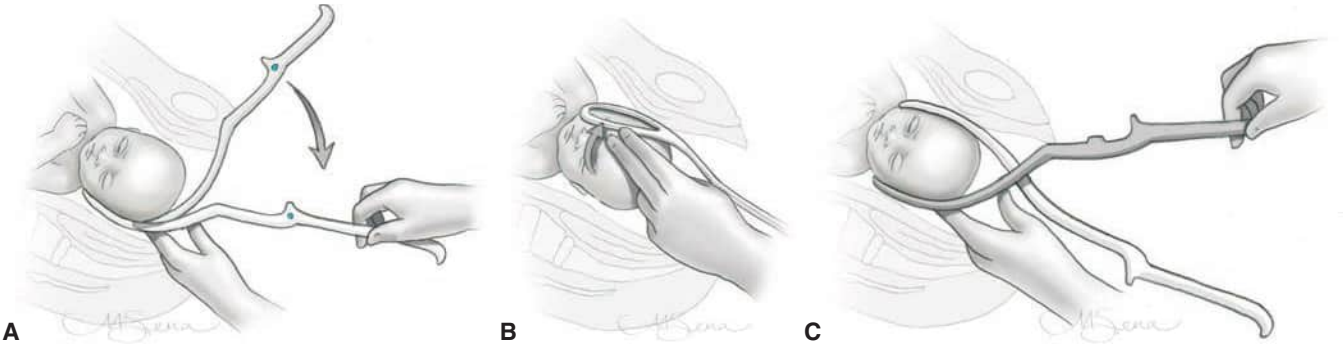


FIGURE 29-13 **A.** Application of the right branch of the Kielland forceps to a head in LOT position. The knob on this branch (*colored blue*) will ultimately face the occiput. **B.** The right branch is wandered to its final position behind the symphysis. **C.** Insertion of the left branch of the Kielland forceps directly posterior along the hollow of the sacrum. This branch is inserted to the maternal right of the anterior branch to aid in engaging the sliding lock. (Reproduced with permission from Yeomans ER: Operative vaginal delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

hand supinates, to direct this palm upward. Simultaneously, two fingers of the right hand press against the lambdoid suture ridge. This ensures that the fetal head turns with the blades and does not slip. As a newer adjunct, abdominal sonography can follow and document head rotation (Hinkson, 2021).

The second type of blade application introduces the anterior blade with its cephalic curve directed upward to curve under the symphysis. After it has been advanced far enough toward the upper vagina, it is turned on its long axis through 180 degrees to adapt the cephalic curvature to the head. The second blade is introduced posteriorly, and the branches are locked.

After rotation of the fetal occiput into the anterior pelvis, two acceptable methods for delivery are available. In one, the operator applies traction on the Kielland forceps using a bimanual grip described previously for conventional forceps (p. 539). When the posterior fontanel has passed under the subpubic arch, the handles can be elevated to the horizontal, but no further. Raising the handles above the horizontal may cause vaginal sulcus tears because of the reverse pelvic curve (Dennen, 1955). Alternatively, the Kielland forceps can be removed after rotation and replaced with conventional forceps. With this approach, moderate traction is first employed to seat the head before switching instruments.

Face Presentations

With a mentum anterior face presentation, OVD is an option. The blades are applied to the sides of the head along the occipitomental diameter, with the pelvic curve directed toward the neck (see Fig. 29-1). Downward traction is exerted until the chin appears under the symphysis. Then, by an upward movement, the face is slowly extracted, with the nose, eyes, brow, and occiput appearing in succession over the anterior margin of the perineum. *Forceps should not be applied to the mentum posterior presentation because vaginal delivery is impossible except in very small fetuses.*

VACUUM-ASSISTED DELIVERY

Vacuum Extractor Design

With vacuum-assisted OVD, suction is created within a cup placed on the fetal scalp such that traction on the cup aids fetal birth. In the United States, *vacuum extractor* is the preferred term, whereas in Europe it is commonly called a *ventouse* (Fig. 29-14). Theoretical benefits of this tool compared with forceps include simpler requirements for precise positioning on the fetal head and avoidance of space-occupying blades within the vagina to help mitigate maternal trauma.

Vacuum devices contain a cup, shaft, handle, and vacuum generator. Vacuum cups are metal or plastic and differ in their shape, size, and reusability. In the United States, plastic cups are generally preferred. Of these, the soft cup is a pliable bell-shaped dome, whereas the rigid type has a firm flattened mushroom-shaped cup and circular ridge around the cup rim (Table 29-2). When compared, rigid mushroom cups generate significantly more traction force (Hofmeyr, 1990; Muise, 1993). With OP positions or with asynclitism, the flatter cup also permits improved placement at the flexion point, which is typically less accessible with these head positions. The trade-off is that the flatter cups have higher scalp laceration rates. Thus, many manufacturers recommend soft bell cups for more straightforward OA deliveries.

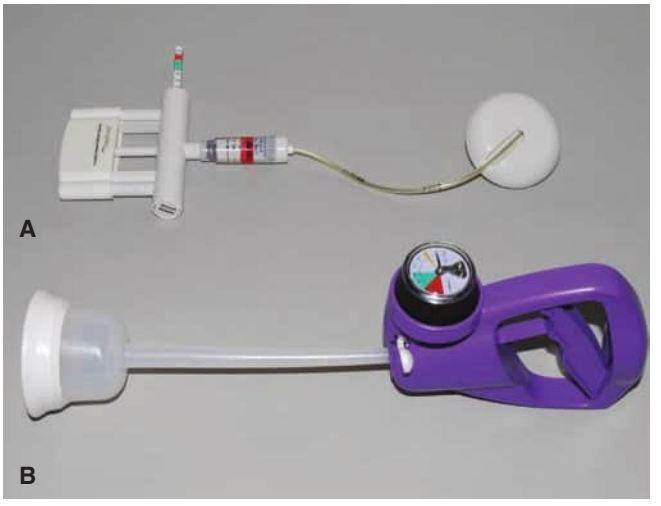


FIGURE 29-14 Vacuum delivery systems. **A.** The *Kiwi OmniCup* contains a handheld vacuum-generating pump, which is attached via flexible tubing to a rigid plastic mushroom cup. **B.** The *Mityvac Mystic II MitySoft Bell Cup* has a soft bell cup attached by a semirigid shaft to a handheld pump.

TABLE 29-2. Vacuum Cups for Operative Vaginal Delivery

Cup Style	Manufacturer
Soft Bell Cup	
GentleVac	OB Scientific
Kiwi ProCup	Clinical Innovations
MitySoft	CooperSurgical
Pearl Edge	CooperSurgical
Mityvac Reusable Silicone[a]	CooperSurgical
Secure Cup	Utah Medical Products
Soft Touch	Utah Medical Products
Tender Touch	Utah Medical Products
Tender Touch Ultra	Utah Medical Products
Velvet Touch[a]	Utah Medical Products
Silc Cup	Medela
CaesAid[a]	Medela
Rigid Mushroom Cup	
Flex Cup	Utah Medical Products
M-Style	CooperSurgical
Super M-Style	CooperSurgical
M-Select[b]	CooperSurgical
Kiwi OmniCup[b]	Clinical Innovations
Kiwi Omni-MT	Clinical Innovations
Kiwi Omni-C[c]	Clinical Innovations
Bird Cup[b]	Medela
Malmström Cup	Medela

[a]Reusable cups.
[b]Suitable for occiput posterior positions or asynclitism.
[c]For extractions through a hysterotomy incision during cesarean delivery.

Several investigators have compared outcomes with various rigid and soft cups. Metal cups yield higher success rates but greater rates of scalp injuries, including cephalohematomas (O'Mahony, 2010). In another study, Kuit and colleagues (1993) found that the only advantage of the soft cups was a lower incidence of scalp injury. In a review, Vacca (2002) concluded that fewer scalp lacerations occurred with the soft cup, but that the rate of cephalohematomas and subgaleal hemorrhage was similar between soft and rigid cups. Importantly, high-pressure vacuum generates large amounts of force regardless of the cup used (Duchon, 1998).

Aside from the cup, the shaft that connects the cup and handle may be flexible or semiflexible. Tubing-like flexible shafts may be preferred for OP positions or asynclitism to permit better seating of the cup. Last, the vacuum generator may be handheld and actuated by the operator, or it may be held and operated by an assistant.

Technique

An important step in vacuum-assisted OVD is proper cup placement over the *flexion point*. This pivot point maximizes traction, minimizes cup detachment, flexes the neck, and delivers the smallest head diameter through the pelvic outlet. This improves success rates, lowers scalp injury rates, and lessens perineal trauma because the smallest head diameter distends the vulva (Baskett, 2008).

The flexion point is found along the sagittal suture, approximately 3 cm from the posterior fontanel's center and approximately 6 cm from the anterior fontanel's center. Because most cup diameters measure 5 to 6 cm, when properly placed, the cup rim lies at the posterior fontanel's border and 3 cm from the anterior fontanel (Fig. 29-15). Placement of the cup more anteriorly on the fetal cranium—near the anterior fontanel—is ideally avoided as it leads to neck extension during traction unless the fetus is small. Such placement delivers a wider head diameter through the vaginal opening. Last, asymmetrical placement relative to the sagittal suture may worsen asynclitism. Cup placement in OA positions is seldom difficult. In contrast, if the indication for delivery is failure to descend caused by occipital malposition, cup positioning can be difficult.

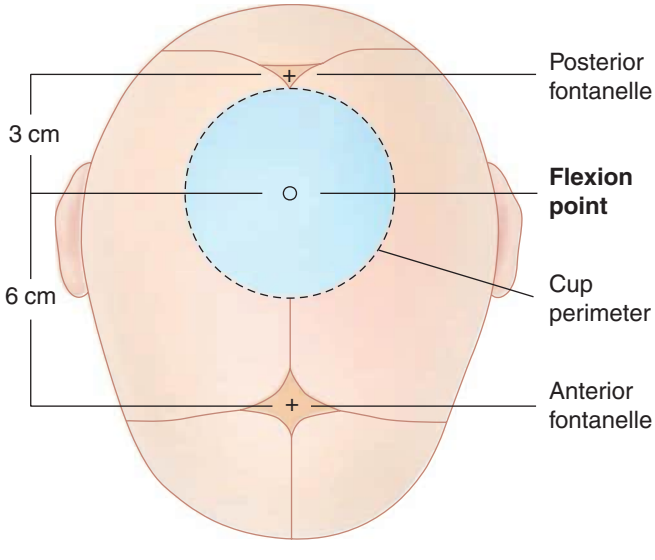


FIGURE 29-15 Drawing demonstrates correct cup placement at the flexion point. Along the sagittal suture, this spot lies 3 cm from the posterior fontanel and 6 cm from the anterior fontanel.

TABLE 29-3. Vacuum Pressure Conversions

mm Hg	cm Hg	Inches Hg	lb/in^2	kg/cm^2
100	10	3.9	1.9	0.13
200	20	7.9	3.9	0.27
300	30	11.8	5.8	0.41
400	40	15.7	7.7	0.54
500	50	19.7	9.7	0.68
600	60	23.6	11.6	0.82

During cup placement, maternal soft tissue entrapment predisposes the mother to lacerations and virtually ensures cup dislodgement, colloquially called a "pop off." Thus, the entire cup circumference should be palpated both before and after the vacuum has been created and again prior to traction to exclude such entrapment. Gradual vacuum creation is advocated by some and is generated by increasing the suction in increments of 0.2 kg/cm^2 every 2 minutes until a total negative pressure of 0.8 kg/cm^2 is reached (Table 29-3). That said, other studies have shown that negative pressure can be increased to 0.8 kg/cm^2 in <2 minutes without a significant difference in efficacy or in maternal and fetal outcomes (Suwannachat, 2011, 2012).

Once suction is created, the instrument handle is grasped, and traction is initiated. Similar to forceps delivery, traction angles mirror that in Figure 29-8 and should be steady without jerking or rocking. The number of needed pulls increases with higher station but typically ranges from one to four. Efforts are intermittent, and each pull is coordinated with maternal pushing. Manual torque to the cup is avoided as it can cause cup displacement or cephalohematomas and, with metal cups, "cookie-cutter"–type scalp lacerations. Thus, OA oblique positions are corrected not by rotation, but solely by downward outward traction. Similarly, for OP positions, rotational forces should not be applied. Instead, with correct flexion point placement and line of traction, the head will usually rotate by itself (van den Akker, 2019).

During pulls, the operator should place the nondominant hand within the vagina, with the thumb on the extractor cup and one or more fingers on the fetal scalp. So positioned, descent of the presenting part can be judged and the traction angle can be adjusted with head descent. In addition, the relationship of the cup edge to the scalp can be assessed to help detect cup separation.

Between contractions, some physicians will lower the suction levels to decrease scalp injury rates, whereas others will maintain suction in cases with a nonreassuring FHR to aid rapid delivery. No differences in maternal or fetal outcome were noted if the vacuum level was decreased between contractions or if an effort was made to prevent fetal loss of station (Bofill, 1997). Once the head is delivered, the vacuum pressure is relieved and the cup removed.

Vacuum extraction should be considered a trial. Without early and clear evidence of descent toward delivery, an

alternative delivery approach should be adopted. As a general guideline, progressive descent should accompany each traction attempt. Neither data nor consensus are available regarding the number of pulls required to effect delivery, the maximum number of cup pop-offs that can be tolerated, or optimal total duration of the procedure. Some manufacturers have recommendations regarding these (Clinical Innovations, 2018; CooperSurgical, 2018).

During a vacuum-assisted delivery trial, cup dislodgement due to technical failure or less than optimal placement should not be equated with dislodgement under ideal conditions of exact cup placement and optimal vacuum maintenance. Technical failures may merit either additional attempts at cup placement or, alternatively, a trial of forceps (Ezenagu, 1999; Williams, 1991). The least desirable cases are those in which traction without progress or multiple disengagements occur following correct cup application and appropriate traction. As with forceps, clinicians should embrace a willingness to abandon attempts at vacuum-assisted delivery if satisfactory progress is not made (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

TRAINING

As the OVD rate has declined, so have opportunities for resident training (Fitzwater, 2015; Kyser, 2014). In accredited programs, the median number of these procedures completed by trainees has reached critically low levels, and for recent graduates it approximated only 20 (Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education, 2019; Dildy, 2016). For residents completing training in 2021, the Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education (2020) minimum requirement is 15 procedures.

To adapt, residency programs should have readily available skilled operators to teach these procedures by simulation as well as through actual cases (Spong, 2012). In one study, a 59-percent increase in forceps deliveries over 2 years was related to a single experienced and proactive instructor assigned to teach forceps to residents in labor and delivery (Solt, 2011).

In another, following implementation of a formal education program that included a manikin and pelvic model simulation, rates of neonatal morbidity and of severe maternal cervical, labial, and vaginal lacerations declined. However, OASIS rates were unchanged (Cheong, 2004). Gossett and associates (2016) found a 22-percent reduction in the OASIS rate following an OVD simulation curriculum.

REFERENCES

Åberg K, Norman M, Ekéus C: Preterm birth by vacuum extraction and neonatal outcome: a population-based cohort study. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 14:42, 2014

Åberg K, Norman M, Pettersson K, et al: Protracted vacuum extraction and neonatal intracranial hemorrhage among infants born at term: a nationwide case-control study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 98(4):523, 2019

Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education: Case log minimum numbers: obstetrics and gynecology. 2020. Available at: https://www.acgme.org/Portals/0/PFAssets/ProgramResources/220_Ob_Gyn_Minimum_Numbers_Announcement.pdf?ver=2018-06-25-104354-993. Accessed July 23, 2020

Accreditation Council for Graduate Medical Education: Obstetrics and gynecology case logs. 2019. Available at: https://www.acgme.org/Portals/0/PDFs/220_National_Report_Program_Version_2018-2019.pdf. Accessed July 23, 2020

Aiken AR, Aiken CE, Alberry MS, et al: Management of fetal malposition in the second stage of labor: a propensity score analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(3):355.e1, 2015

Alexander JM, Leveno KJ, Hauth JC, et al: Failed operative vaginal delivery. Obstet Gynecol 114(5):1017, 2009

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Safe prevention of the primary cesarean delivery. Obstetric Care Consensus No. 1, March 2014, Reaffirmed 2019

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Operative vaginal birth. Practice Bulletin No. 219, April 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention and management of obstetrical lacerations at vaginal birth. Practice Bulletin No. 198, June 2018, Reaffirmed 2020b

Anim-Somuah M, Smyth RM, Cyna AM, et al: Epidural versus non-epidural or no analgesia for pain management in labour Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD000331, 2018

Baerthlein WC, Moodley S, Stinson SK: Comparison of maternal and neonatal morbidity in midforceps delivery and midpelvis vacuum extraction. Obstet Gynecol 67(4):594, 1986

Bahl R, Patel RR, Swingler R, et al: Neurodevelopmental outcome at 5 years after operative delivery in the second stage of labor: a cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197:147, 2007

Bahl R, Van de Venne M, Macleod M, et al: Maternal and neonatal morbidity in relation to the instrument used for mid-cavity rotational operative vaginal delivery: a prospective cohort study. BJOG 120(12):1526, 2013

Bailit JL, Grobman WA, Rice MM, et al: Evaluation of delivery options for second-stage events. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(5):638.e1, 2016

Barth WH Jr: Persistent occiput posterior. Obstet Gynecol 125(3):695, 2015

Bashore RA, Phillips WH Jr, Brinkman CR III: A comparison of the morbidity of midforceps and cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 162(6):1428, 1990

Baskett TF, Fanning CA, Young DC, et al: A prospective observational study of 1000 vacuum assisted deliveries with the OmniCup device. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 30(7):573, 2008

Ben-Haroush A, Melamed N, Kaplan B, et al: Predictors of failed operative vaginal delivery: a single-center experience. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197:308.e1, 2007

Bertholdt C, Gauchotte E, Dap M, et al: Predictors of successful manual rotation for occiput posterior positions. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 144(2):210, 2019

Blanc J, Castel P, Mauviel F, et al: Prophylactic manual rotation of occiput posterior and transverse positions to decrease operative delivery: the PROPOP randomized clinical trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol May 24, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Bofill JA, Rust OA, Schorr SJ, et al: A randomized trial of two vacuum extraction techniques. Obstet Gynecol 89(5 Pt 1):758, 1997

Bols EM, Hendriks EJ, Berghmans BC, et al: A systematic review of etiological factors for postpartum fecal incontinence. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 89(3):302, 2010

Bradley MS, Kaminski RJ, Streitman DC, et al: Effect of rotation on perineal lacerations in forceps-assisted vaginal deliveries. Obstet Gynecol 122(1):132, 2013

Broman SH, Nichols PL, Kennedy WA: Preschool IQ: prenatal and early developmental correlates. Hillside, L. Erlbaum Associates, 1975

Burke N, Field K, Mujahid F, et al: Use and safety of Kielland's forceps in current obstetric practice. Obstet Gynecol 120(4):766, 2012

Cheong YC, Abdullahi H, Lashen H, et al: Can formal education and training improve the outcome of instrumental delivery? Eur J Obstet Gynecol 113:139, 2004

Cibils LA, Ringler GE: Evaluation of midforceps delivery as an alternative. J Perinat Med 18(1):5, 1990

Clinical Innovations: Kiwi complete vacuum delivery system instructions for use. 2018. Available at: clinicalinnovations.com/wp-content/uploads/2015/10/Kiwi-M_ME-IFU.pdf. Accessed August 13, 2020

Contag SA, Clifton RG, Bloom SL, et al: Neonatal outcomes and operative vaginal delivery versus cesarean delivery. Am J Perinatol 27(6):493, 2010

Cooper Surgical: Mityvac vacuum-assisted delivery system. 2018. Available at: www.coopersurgical.com/product-resources/5cf330cb-141e-4573-83ca-f67b4147ba4f_Mityvac_MitySoft_Bell_Cup_Instruction_for_Use.pdf. Accessed August 13, 2020

Dall'Asta A, Ghi T, Pedrazzi G, et al: Does vacuum delivery carry a higher risk of shoulder dystocia? Review and meta-analysis of the literature. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 204:62, 2016

Damron DP, Capeless EL: Operative vaginal delivery: a comparison of forceps and vacuum for success rate and risk of rectal sphincter injury. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:907, 2004

de Leeuw JW, de Wit C, Kuijken JP, et al: Mediolateral episiotomy reduces the risk for anal sphincter injury during operative vaginal delivery. BJOG 115:104, 2008
DeLancey JO, Morgan DM, Fenner DE, et al: Comparison of levator ani muscle defects and function in women with and without pelvic organ prolapse. Obstet Gynecol 109:295, 2007
Demissie K, Rhoads GG, Smulian JC, et al: Operative vaginal delivery and neonatal and infant adverse outcomes: population based retrospective analysis. BMJ 329(7456):24, 2004
Dennen EH: Forceps Delivery. Philadelphia, F.A. Davis Company, 1955
Dierker LJ, Rosen MG, Thompson K, et al: Midforceps deliveries: long-term outcome of infants. Am J Obstet Gynecol 154:764, 1986
Dierker LJ, Rosen MG, Thompson K, et al: The midforceps: maternal and neonatal outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 152(2):176, 1985
Dietz HP, Simpson JM: Levator trauma is associated with pelvic organ prolapse. BJOG 115:979, 2008
Dildy GA, Belfort MA, Clark SL: Obstetric forceps: a species on the brink of extinction. Obstet Gynecol 128(3):436, 2016
Dolan LM, Hilton P: Obstetric risk factors and pelvic floor dysfunction 20 years after first delivery. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 21:535, 2010
Ducarme G, Hamel JF, Bouet PE, et al: Maternal and neonatal morbidity after attempted operative vaginal delivery according to fetal head station. Obstet Gynecol 126(3):521, 2015
Duchon MA, DeMund MA, Brown RH: Laboratory comparison of modern vacuum extractors. Obstet Gynecol 72:155, 1998
Duggal N, Mercado C, Daniels K, et al: Antibiotic prophylaxis for prevention of postpartum perineal wound complications: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 111(6):1268, 2008
Dupuis O, Silveira R, Dupont C, et al: Comparison of "instrument-associated" and "spontaneous" obstetric depressed skull fractures in a cohort of 68 neonates. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192(1):165, 2005
Evers EC, Blomquist JL, McDermott KC, et al: Obstetrical anal sphincter laceration and anal incontinence 5–10 years after childbirth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(5):425.e1, 2012
Ezenagu LC, Kakaria R, Bofill JA: Sequential use of instruments at operative vaginal delivery: is it safe? Am J Obstet Gynecol 180:1446, 1999
Fitzwater JL, Owen J, Ankumah NA, et al: Nulliparous women in the second stage of labor: changes in delivery outcomes between two cohorts from 2000 and 2011. Obstet Gynecol 126(1):81, 2015
Friedman AM, Ananth CV, Prendergast E, et al: Evaluation of third-degree and fourth-degree laceration rates as quality indicators. Obstet Gynecol 125(4):927, 2015
Friedman EA, Sachtleben-Murray MR, Dahrouge D, et al: Long-term effects of labor and delivery on offspring: a matched-pair analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 150:941, 1984
Friedman T, Eslick GD, Dietz HP: Delivery mode and the risk of levator muscle avulsion: a meta-analysis. Int Urogynecol J 30(6):901, 2019
Gardella C, Taylor M, Benedetti T, et al: The effect of sequential use of vacuum and forceps for assisted vaginal delivery on neonatal and maternal outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185(4):896, 2001
Gartland D, MacArthur C, Woolhouse H, et al: Frequency, severity and risk factors for urinary and faecal incontinence at 4 years postpartum: a prospective cohort. BJOG 123(7):1203, 2016
Ghi T, Eggebø T, Lees C, et al: ISUOG practice guidelines: intrapartum ultrasound. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 52:128, 2018
Gilstrap LC 3rd, Hauth JC, Schiano S, et al: Neonatal acidosis and method of delivery. Obstet Gynecol 63(5):681, 1984
Gordon MT, DeLancey JO, Renfroe A, et al: Development of anatomically based customizable three-dimensional finite-element model of pelvic floor support system: POP-SIM1.0. Interface Focus 9(4):20190022, 2019
Gossett DR, Gilchrist-Scott D, Wayne DB, et al: Simulation training for forceps-assisted vaginal delivery and rates of maternal perineal trauma. Obstet Gynecol 128(3):429, 2016
Gurol-Urganci I, Cromwell DA, Edozien LC, et al: Third- and fourth-degree perineal tears among primiparous women in England between 2000 and 2012: time trends and risk factors. BJOG 120(12):1516, 2013
Gyhagen M, Bullarbo M, Nielsen T, et al: The prevalence of urinary incontinence 20 years after childbirth: a national cohort study in singleton primiparae after vaginal or caesarean delivery. BJOG 120:144, 2013
Hagadorn-Freathy AS, Yeomans ER, Hankins GD: Validation of the 1988 ACOG forceps classification system. Obstet Gynecol 77:356, 1991
Halscott TL, Reddy UM, Landy HJ, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes by attempted mode of operative delivery from a low station in the second stage of labor. Obstet Gynecol 126(6):1265, 2015
Handa VL, Blomquist JL, Roem J, et al: Pelvic floor disorders after obstetric avulsion of the levator ani muscle. Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg 25(1):3, 2019
Hinkson L, Henrich W, Tutschek B: Intrapartum ultrasound during rotational forceps delivery: a novel tool for safety, quality control and teaching. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(1):93.e1, 2021
Hofmeyr GJ, Gobetz L, Sonnendecker EW, et al: New design rigid and soft vacuum extractor cups: a preliminary comparison of traction forces. BJOG 97(8):681, 1990
Jangö H, Langhoff-Roos J, Rosthøj S, et al: Modifiable risk factors of obstetric anal sphincter injury in primiparous women: a population-based cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210(1):59.e1, 2014
Knight M, Chiocchia V, Partlett C, et al: Prophylactic antibiotics in the prevention of infection after operative vaginal delivery (ANODE): a multicentre randomised controlled trial. Lancet 393(10189):2395, 2019
Kudish B, Blackwell S, Mcneeley SG, et al: Operative vaginal delivery and midline episiotomy: a bad combination for the perineum. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195(3):749, 2006
Kuit JA, Eppinga HG, Wallenburg HC, et al: A randomized comparison of vacuum extraction delivery with a rigid and a pliable cup. Obstet Gynecol 82:280, 1993
Kyser KL, Lu X, Santillan D, et al: Forceps delivery volumes in teaching and nonteaching hospitals: are volumes sufficient for physicians to acquire and maintain competence? Acad Med 89(1):71, 2014
Landy HJ, Laughon SK, Bailit JL, et al: Characteristics associated with severe perineal and cervical lacerations during vaginal delivery. Obstet Gynecol 117(3):627, 2011
Le Ray C, Deneux-Tharaux C, Khireddine I, et al: Manual rotation to decrease operative delivery in posterior or transverse positions. Obstet Gynecol 122(3):634, 2013
Le Ray C, Serres P, Schmitz T, et al: Manual rotation in occiput posterior or transverse positions. Obstet Gynecol 110:873, 2007
Leijonhufvud A, Lundholm C, Cnattingius S, et al: Risks of stress urinary incontinence and pelvic organ prolapse surgery in relation to mode of childbirth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(1):70.e1, 2011
Levin G, Elchalal U, Yagel S, et al: Risk factors associated with subgaleal hemorrhage in neonates exposed to vacuum extraction. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 98(11):1464, 2019
Lewicky-Gaupp C, Leader-Cramer A, Johnson LL, et al: Wound complications after obstetric anal sphincter injuries. Obstet Gynecol 125(5):1088, 2015
Liu EH, Sia AT: Rates of caesarean section and instrumental vaginal delivery in nulliparous women after low concentration epidural infusions or opioid analgesia: systematic review. BMJ 328(7453):1410, 2004
Lowe B: Fear of failure: a place for the trial of instrumental delivery. BJOG 94:60, 1987
MacArthur C, Wilson D, Herbison P, et al: Faecal incontinence persisting after childbirth: a 12-year longitudinal study. BJOG 120(2):169, 2013
MacArthur C, Wilson D, Herbison P, et al: Urinary incontinence persisting after childbirth: extent, delivery history, and effects in a 12-year longitudinal cohort study. Prolong Study Group. BJOG 123(6):1022, 2016
Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJ, et al: Births: final data for 2015. Natl Vital Stat Rep 66(1):1, 2017
Miller ES, Lai Y, Bailit J, et al: Duration of operative vaginal delivery and adverse obstetric outcomes. Am J Perinatol 37(5):503, 2020
Muise KL, Duchon MA, Brown RH: The effect of artificial caput on performance of vacuum extractors. Obstet Gynecol 81(2):170, 1993
Mulder F, Schoffelmeer M, Hakvoort R, et al: Risk factors for postpartum urinary retention: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 119(12):1440, 2012
Muraca GM, Skoll A, Lisonkova S, et al: Perinatal and maternal morbidity and mortality among term singletons following midcavity operative vaginal delivery versus caesarean delivery. BJOG 125(6):693, 2018
Murphy DJ, Libby G, Chien P, et al: Cohort study of forceps delivery and the risk of epilepsy in adulthood. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:392, 2004
Murphy DJ, Macleod M, Bahl R, et al: A cohort study of maternal and neonatal morbidity in relation to use of sequential instruments at operative vaginal delivery. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 156(1):41, 2011
Nelson RL, Furner SE, Westercamp M, et al: Cesarean delivery for the prevention of anal incontinence. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD006756, 2010
Nilsen ST: Boys born by forceps and vacuum extraction examined at 18 years of age. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 63:549, 1984
Nygaard IE, Rao SS, Dawson JD: Anal incontinence after anal sphincter disruption: a 30-year retrospective cohort study. Obstet Gynecol 89:896, 1997
O'Callaghan ME, MacLennan AH, Gibson CS, et al: Epidemiologic associations with cerebral palsy. Obstet Gynecol 118(3):576, 2011
O'Mahony F, Hofmeyr GJ, Menon V: Choice of instruments for assisted vaginal delivery. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD005455, 2010
Osterman MJ, Martin JA, Menacker F: Expanded health data from the new birth certificate, 2006. Natl Vital Stat Rep 58(5):1, 2009

Palatnik A, Grobman WA, Hellendag MG, et al: Predictors of failed operative vaginal delivery in a contemporary obstetric cohort. Obstet Gynecol 127(3):501, 2016

Pearl ML, Roberts JM, Laros RK, et al: Vaginal delivery from the persistent occiput posterior position: influence on maternal and neonatal morbidity. J Reprod Med 38:955, 1993

Pifarotti P, Gargasole C, Folcini C, et al: Acute post-partum urinary retention: analysis of risk factors, a case-control study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 289(6):1249, 2014

Ramphul M, Kennelly MM, Burke G, et al: Risk factors and morbidity associated with suboptimal instrument placement at instrumental delivery: observational study nested within the Instrumental Delivery & Ultrasound randomised controlled trial ISRCTN 72230496. BJOG 122(4):558, 2015

Robertson PA, Laros RK, Zhao RL: Neonatal and maternal outcome in low-pelvic and mid-pelvic operative deliveries. Am J Obstet Gynecol 162:1436, 1990

Rortveit G, Daltveit AK, Hannestad YS, et al: Urinary incontinence after vaginal delivery or cesarean section. N Engl J Med 348:9000, 2003

Schuit E, Kwee A, Westerhuis ME, et al: A clinical prediction model to assess the risk of operative delivery. BJOG 119(8):915, 2012

Seidman DS, Laor A, Gale R, et al: Long-term effects of vacuum and forceps deliveries. Lancet 337:1583, 1991

Shaffer BL, Cheng YW, Vargas JE, et al: Manual rotation to reduce caesarean delivery in persistent occiput posterior or transverse position. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 24(1):65, 2011

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Staat B, Combs CA: SMFM special statement: operative vaginal delivery: checklists for performance and documentation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(5):B15, 2020

Solt I, Jackson S, Moore T, et al: Teaching forceps: the impact of proactive faculty. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(5):448.e1, 2011

Spiliopoulos M, Kareti A, Jain NJ, et al: Risk of peripartum hysterectomy by mode of delivery and prior obstetric history: data from a population-based study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 283(6):1261, 2011

Spong CY, Berghella V, Wenstrom KD, et al: Preventing the first cesarean delivery: summary of a Joint Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Workshop. Obstet Gynecol 120(5):1181, 2012

Stock L, Basham E, Gossett DR, et al: Factors associated with wound complications in women with obstetric anal sphincter injuries (OASIS). Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(4):327.e1, 2013a

Stock SJ, Josephs K, Farquharson S, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes of successful Kielland's rotational forceps delivery. Obstet Gynecol 121(5):1032, 2013b

Suwannachat B, Laopaiboon M, Tonmat S, et al: Rapid versus stepwise application of negative pressure in vacuum extraction-assisted vaginal delivery: a multicentre randomised controlled non-inferiority trial. BJOG 118(10):1247, 2011

Suwannachat B, Lumbiganon P, Laopaiboon M: Rapid versus stepwise negative pressure application for vacuum extraction assisted vaginal delivery. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD006636, 2012

Tempest N, Hart A, Walkinshaw S, et al: A re-evaluation of the role of rotational forceps: retrospective comparison of maternal and perinatal outcomes following different methods of birth for malposition in the second stage of labor. BJOG 120(10):1277, 2013

Towner D, Castro MA, Eby-Wilkens E, et al: Effect of mode of delivery in nulliparous women on neonatal intracranial injury. N Engl J Med 341:1709, 1999

Towner DR, Ciotti MC: Operative vaginal delivery: a cause of birth injury or is it? Clin Obstet Gynecol 50(3):563, 2007

Vacca A: Vacuum-assisted delivery. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 16:17, 2002

van Bavel J, Hukkelhoven CW, de Vries C, et al: The effectiveness of mediolateral episiotomy in preventing obstetric anal sphincter injuries during operative vaginal delivery: a ten-year analysis of a national registry. Int Urogynecol J 29(3):407, 2018

van den Akker T: Vacuum extraction for non-rotational and rotational assisted vaginal birth. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 56:47, 2019

Verhoeven CJ, Nuij C, Janssen-Rolf CR, et al: Predictors for failure of vacuum-assisted vaginal delivery: a case-control study. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 200:29, 2016

Volløyhaug I, Mørkved S, Salvesen Ø, et al: Forceps delivery is associated with increased risk of pelvic organ prolapse and muscle trauma: a cross-sectional study 16–24 years after first delivery. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 46(4):487, 2015

Walsh CA, Robson M, McAuliffe FM: Mode of delivery at term and adverse neonatal outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 121(1):122, 2013

Wan L, Xia W, Zhang J: Effect of perineum protection cooperated by two operators in the forceps-assisted vaginal delivery: a case-control study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 12:1, 2020

Wen SW, Liu S, Kramer MS, et al: Comparison of maternal and infant outcomes between vacuum extraction and forceps deliveries. Am J Epidemiol 153(2):103, 2001

Werner EF, Janevic TM, Illuzzi J, et al: Mode of delivery in nulliparous women and neonatal intracranial injury. Obstet Gynecol 118(6):1239, 2011

Wesley B, van den Berg B, Reece EA: The effect of operative vaginal delivery on cognitive development. Am J Obstet Gynecol 166:288, 1992

Wesley BD, van den Berg BJ, Reece EA: The effect of forceps delivery on cognitive development. Am J Obstet Gynecol 169(5):1091, 1993

Williams MC, Knuppel RA, O'Brien WF, et al: A randomized comparison of assisted vaginal delivery by obstetric forceps and polyethylene vacuum cup. Obstet Gynecol 78:789, 1991

Yeomans ER: Operative vaginal delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017

Yeomans ER: Operative vaginal delivery. Obstet Gynecol 115(3):645, 2010

CHAPTER 30

Cesarean Delivery and Peripartum Hysterectomy

In the United States, the cesarean delivery rate rose most dramatically from 4.5 percent in 1970 to 32.9 percent in 2009. The rate has since plateaued and was 31.9 percent in 2018 (Martin, 2019). Some indications for performing cesarean delivery are shown in Table 30-1. More than 85 percent of these operations are performed for four reasons—prior cesarean delivery, labor dystocia or arrest, fetal jeopardy, or abnormal fetal presentation. The latter three compose the main indications for primary cesarean delivery (Barber, 2011; Boyle, 2013). Efforts to lower these rates are outlined in *Safe Prevention of the Primary Cesarean Delivery* by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b).

Reasons for persistently elevated cesarean rates are not completely understood, but some explanations include the following:

1. Women are having fewer children, thus, a greater percentage of births are among nulliparas, who are at increased risk for cesarean delivery.
2. Average maternal age is rising, and older women, especially older nulliparas, have a higher cesarean delivery risk.
3. Electronic fetal monitoring use is widespread and associated with a higher cesarean delivery rate compared with intermittent fetal heart rate auscultation.
4. Most breech fetuses are now delivered by cesarean.
5. The frequency of operative vaginal delivery has declined.
6. Obesity, which is a cesarean delivery risk, has reached epidemic proportions.
7. Rates of cesarean delivery in women with preeclampsia have risen, whereas labor induction rates for these patients have declined.
8. The vaginal birth after cesarean (VBAC) rate has decreased from a high of 28 percent in 1996 to 13.3 percent in 2018 (Martin, 2019).
9. Assisted reproductive technology is more widely used and is linked with greater cesarean delivery rates (Luke, 2019).

DEFINITIONS

Cesarean delivery defines the birth of a fetus by laparotomy and then hysterotomy. This definition is not applied to removal of the fetus from the abdominal cavity in the case of uterine rupture or of abdominal pregnancy. Rarely, hysterotomy is performed in a woman who has just died or in whom death is expected soon—*postmortem* or *perimortem cesarean delivery* (Chap. 50, p. 897).

In some cases, abdominal hysterectomy is indicated after delivery. When performed at the time of cesarean delivery, the operation is *cesarean hysterectomy*. If done shortly after vaginal delivery, it is *postpartum hysterectomy*. *Peripartum hysterectomy* is a broader term that combines these two. In most cases, *total hysterectomy* is performed and removes the uterine body and cervix. *Supracervical hysterectomy* is selected less often and removes only the uterine body. With either, adnexa are not usually

TABLE 30-1. Some Indications for Cesarean Delivery

Maternal
Prior cesarean delivery
Abnormal placentation
Maternal request
Prior classical hysterotomy
Unknown uterine scar type
Prior uterine incision extension
Uterine incision dehiscence
Prior full-thickness myomectomy
Genital tract obstructive mass
Invasive cervical cancer
Prior trachelectomy
Permanent cerclage
Prior pelvic reconstructive surgery
Prior significant perineal trauma
Pelvic deformity
HSV or HIV infection
Cardiac or pulmonary disease
Cerebral aneurysm or arteriovenous malformation
Pathology requiring concurrent intraabdominal surgery
Perimortem cesarean delivery
Maternal-Fetal
Cephalopelvic disproportion
Failed operative vaginal delivery
Placenta previa or vasa previa
Placental abruption
Fetal
Nonreassuring fetal status
Malpresentation
Macrosomia
Congenital anomaly
Abnormal umbilical cord Doppler study
Thrombocytopenia
Prior neonatal birth trauma

HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; HSV = herpes simplex virus.

excised. In most instances, a *simple hysterectomy*, which is also a type I hysterectomy, is performed. However, for women with invasive cervical cancer, *radical hysterectomy* removes the uterus, parametrium, and proximal vagina to achieve tumor excision with negative margins. For cases of placenta percreta that extend toward the pelvic sidewall, similar radical excision of the parametrium may be needed.

CESAREAN DELIVERY RISKS

To provide accurate informed consent, knowledge of maternal and neonatal risks and benefits with surgery is essential. In broad terms, cesarean delivery generally has higher maternal surgical risks for the current and subsequent pregnancies compared with spontaneous vaginal birth. This is balanced against lower rates of perineal injury and short-term pelvic floor disorders. For the neonate, cesarean delivery generally offers lower rates of birth trauma and stillbirth but greater rates of initial respiratory difficulties.

Maternal Mortality and Morbidity

For the mother, death attributable solely to cesarean delivery is rare in the United States. A review of nearly 1.5 million pregnancies found maternal mortality rates of 2.2 per 100,000 cesarean deliveries compared with 0.2 per 100,000 vaginal births (Clark, 2008). In a metaanalysis of 203 studies, Guise and coworkers (2010) reported a maternal mortality rate of 13 per 100,000 with elective repeat cesarean compared with 4 per 100,000 with trial of labor.

Some element of this risk may stem from the underlying indication for the cesarean delivery. For example, long first-stage labor increases not only cesarean risk but also rates of maternal fever and postpartum hemorrhage (Blankenship, 2020). Additionally, in a study of more than 100,000 deliveries in China, where cesarean birth without a medical indication is common, the maternal mortality rate was not higher in those with nonindicated cesarean delivery than in women with spontaneous vaginal birth (Hou, 2017).

Similar to mortality rates, the overall frequencies of some maternal morbidities are increased with cesarean delivery. Villar and associates (2007) reported that maternal morbidity rates were twofold higher with cesarean delivery than with vaginal birth. Principal among these are infection, hemorrhage, and venous thromboembolism (VTE). In addition, anesthetic complications, which also rarely include death, have a greater incidence with cesarean delivery compared with vaginal birth (Cheesman, 2009; Hawkins, 2011). Adjacent organs infrequently may be injured, which is described in detail later (p. 563).

Women who undergo a cesarean delivery are much more likely to be delivered by a repeat operation in subsequent pregnancies. For women undergoing subsequent cesarean, the maternal risks just described are even greater (Cahill, 2006; Marshall, 2011; Silver, 2006). Specifically outlined in Chapter 31 (p. 580), abnormal placentation, wound and uterine infections, adjacent organ injury, cesarean hysterectomy, and blood transfusion are among the morbidity that accrues with multiple subsequent cesarean operations.

As an advantage, cesarean delivery is associated with lower rates of urinary incontinence and pelvic organ prolapse than is vaginal birth (Gyhagen, 2013a,b; Handa, 2011). Rates of anal incontinence appear uninfluenced by a vaginal or cesarean route (Blomquist, 2018; Nelson, 2019). In subgroup evaluation, operative vaginal delivery does carry an overall greater anal incontinence risk, which likely stems from higher sphincter injury rates with these procedures (Chap. 29, p. 535).

Pelvic floor advantages persist to some degree over time, but cesarean delivery is not totally protective. Moreover, longitudinal studies suggest that initial pelvic floor advantages gained from cesarean delivery are lost as women age (Dolan, 2010; MacArthur, 2011, 2013). During their State-of-the-Science Conference, the National Institutes of Health panel (2006) summarized that stress urinary incontinence rates after elective cesarean delivery are lower than those following vaginal delivery. However, the duration of this protection is unclear, particularly in older

and multiparous populations. Defining women who would be at highest long-term risk for pregnancy-related pelvic floor disorders might allow accurate delivery counseling (Jelovsek, 2018).

Neonatal Morbidity

Cesarean delivery is associated with a lower rate of fetal trauma (Linder, 2013; Moczygemba, 2010). Alexander and colleagues (2006) found that fetal injury complicated 1 percent of cesarean deliveries. Skin laceration was most common, but others included cephalohematoma, clavicular fracture, brachial plexopathy, skull fracture, and facial nerve palsy. Cesarean deliveries following a failed operative vaginal delivery attempt had the highest injury rate. The lowest rate—0.5 percent—occurred in the elective cesarean delivery group. That said, Worley and associates (2009) found that approximately a third of women who were delivered at Parkland Hospital entered spontaneous labor at term, and 96 percent of these delivered vaginally without adverse neonatal outcomes.

Cesarean Delivery on Maternal Request

Some women request elective cesarean delivery. Data regarding the true incidence of *cesarean delivery on maternal request (CDMR)* are poor. An older estimate in the United States was 5 percent (Declercq, 2005).

Reasons for the request include protection of pelvic floor support, convenience, fear of childbirth, and reduced risk of fetal injury. One retrospective study of more than 66,000 Chinese parturients compared outcomes of those who elected planned vaginal birth or requested primary cesarean delivery (Liu, 2015). Short-term serious maternal morbidity and neonatal mortality rates were similar. For the newborns, rates of birth trauma, infection, and hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy were low in both groups but statistically lower with cesarean delivery. Respiratory distress syndrome rates were greater in the CDMR cohort. A smaller study comparing these two routes of delivery support these findings (Larsson, 2011).

The debate surrounding CDMR includes two medical points: the concept of informed free choice by the woman, and the autonomy of the physician in offering CDMR. To address this, the National Institutes of Health (2006) held a State-of-the-Science Conference on Cesarean Delivery on Maternal Request. Notably, most of the maternal and neonatal outcomes examined had insufficient data to permit recommendations. Indeed, one of the main conclusions of the conference was that more high-quality research is needed to fully evaluate the issue. Guidelines from the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) note that CDMR should not be performed before 39 weeks' gestation. It is ideally avoided in women desiring several children because of the earlier-described morbidity from accruing cesarean operations.

PATIENT PREPARATION

Delivery Availability

No nationally recognized standard of care currently dictates the acceptable time interval to begin cesarean delivery. Previously, a 30-minute decision-to-incision interval was recommended. However, Bloom and colleagues (2006) evaluated nearly 3000 cesarean deliveries performed for emergency indications. They reported that failure to achieve a cesarean delivery decision-to-incision time <30 minutes was not associated with a negative neonatal outcome. A subsequent systematic review echoed this finding (Tolcher, 2014). Despite this, when faced with an acute, catastrophic deterioration in fetal condition, cesarean delivery usually is indicated as rapidly as possible, and thus purposeful delays are inappropriate. The American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) recommend that facilities giving obstetrical care should have the ability to initiate cesarean delivery in a time frame that best incorporates maternal and fetal risks and benefits.

Informed Consent

Informed consent is a process and not merely a medical document. The consenting conversation should enhance a woman's awareness of her diagnosis and contain a discussion of medical and surgical care alternatives, procedure goals and limitations, and operative risks. For women with a prior cesarean delivery, the option of a trial of labor should be included for suitable candidates. For those desiring permanent sterilization or intrauterine device (IUD) insertion, consenting for these can be completed concurrently (Chaps. 38 and 39, pp. 665 and 684).

An informed patient may decline a particular recommended intervention, and a woman's decision-making autonomy must be respected. In the medical record, providers should document the reasons for refusal and should note that the intervention's value and the health consequences of not proceeding with it have been explained.

For Jehovah's Witnesses, informed consent discussions regarding blood products ideally begin early in pregnancy. Acceptable blood products vary widely among individual women, and a preoperative checklist of approved products allows superior preparation (Hubbard, 2015). In general, red cells, white cells, platelets, and plasma are considered primary blood components and are declined. However, certain clotting factors or cell fractions may be acceptable (Lawson, 2015). Before and after surgery, iron, folate, and, if necessary, erythropoietin are accepted agents to help maximize hemoglobin levels. Perioperatively, phlebotomy is limited, and pediatric collection tubes are preferable. Intraoperative options include prompt treatment of atony to limit blood loss and use of topical hemostatic agents, tranexamic acid, and desmopressin to promote clot formation. Red blood cell salvage can provide autologous donation. Normovolemic hemodilution and controlled hypotensive or hypothermic anesthesia can limit red cell losses. To minimize uncontrolled vessel bleeding, uterine artery embolization, occlusive vascular balloons, and other options are described in Chapter 44 (p. 779) (Scharman, 2017).

Timing of Scheduled Cesarean Delivery

With elective delivery before 39 completed weeks, adverse neonatal sequelae from neonatal immaturity are appreciable (Tita, 2009). To avoid these, assurance of fetal maturity before

scheduled elective surgery is essential. Supporting criteria include corroborative ultrasound measurements obtained prior to 20 weeks' gestation, fetal heart tones heard for the past 30 weeks, and passage of 36 weeks since an initial positive pregnancy test result (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017).

Preoperative Care

Current perioperative care is guided by evidence-based enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) recommendations. Among these, solid food intake is stopped at least 6 hours before the procedure. Uncomplicated patients may consume moderate amounts of clear liquids up to 2 hours before surgery (American Society of Anesthesiologists, 2016). Bowel preparation is not recommended (Wilson, 2018).

The woman scheduled for cesarean delivery typically is admitted the day of surgery and evaluated by the obstetrical and anesthesia teams. Recently performed hematocrit and indirect Coombs test are reviewed. If the latter is positive, compatible blood availability must be ensured.

Regional analgesia is preferred for cesarean delivery. To minimize the lung injury risk from rare aspiration, gastric acid is ideally buffered. An oral antacid is consumed shortly before regional analgesia or induction of general anesthesia. One example is Bicitra, 30 mL orally in a single dose. This can be coupled with an intravenous (IV) dose of an H_2-receptor antagonist, which also raises gastric pH (Wilson, 2018).

Once the woman is supine, a wedge beneath the right hip and lower back creates a left lateral tilt to aid venous return and avoid hypotension. Data are insufficient to determine the value of fetal monitoring before scheduled cesarean delivery in women without risk factors. Our practice is to obtain a 5-minute tracing prior to elective cases. At minimum, fetal heart sounds should be documented in the operating room prior to surgery.

Of further preparations, hair removal at the surgical site does not lower surgical site infection (SSI) rates (Kowalski, 2016). However, if hair is obscuring, it is removed the day of surgery by clipping, which is associated with fewer SSIs than shaving (Tanner, 2011). Chemical depilation the night before surgery compared with clipping has similar SSI rates (Lefebvre, 2015). An electrosurgical grounding pad is placed near the surgical incision and typically on the lateral thigh. At Parkland Hospital, we typically insert an indwelling bladder catheter to collapse the bladder away from the hysterotomy incision, to avert urinary retention secondary to regional analgesia, and to allow accurate postoperative urine measurement. Small studies show that catheterization may be withheld in hemodynamically stable women. Catheter-related discomfort can be avoided, but urinary tract infection rates are not lower (Abdel-Aleem, 2014).

The risk of VTE is increased with pregnancy. In the United States in 2014, women with cesarean delivery had a VTE rate of 8 per 10,000, which almost doubled the rate for those with vaginal birth (Abe, 2019). Accordingly, for all women not already receiving thromboprophylaxis, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020c) recommends initiation of pneumatic compression stockings before cesarean delivery. These are usually discontinued once the woman ambulates. Consensus varies among organizations, and the American College of Chest Physicians suggests only early ambulation for women without risk factors who are undergoing cesarean delivery (Bates, 2012). For women already receiving prophylaxis or those with increased risk factors, they support escalation of prophylaxis. Last, the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists (2015) is the most conservative and suggest pharmacological prophylaxis for the largest proportion of patients. These various methods and recommendations are discussed in Chapter 55 (p. 989).

Some women scheduled for cesarean delivery have a comorbidity that requires specific management in anticipation of surgery. Among others, these include insulin-requiring diabetes, coagulopathy or thrombophilia, chronic corticosteroid use, and significant reactive airway disease. Surgical preparations are discussed in the respective chapters covering these topics.

Infection Prevention

Antibiotic Prophylaxis

Cesarean delivery is considered a clean contaminated case, and postoperative febrile morbidity is common. Numerous trials show that a single dose of an antibiotic given at the time of cesarean delivery significantly decreases infectious morbidity (Smaill, 2014). Although more obvious for women in active labor who then require cesarean delivery, this practice also pertains to gravidas undergoing elective surgery. Depending on drug allergies, most recommend a single IV dose of a β-lactam antibiotic—either a cephalosporin or extended-spectrum penicillin. A 1-g dose of cefazolin (Ancef) is an efficacious and cost-effective choice. Additional doses are considered in cases with blood loss >1500 mL or with duration longer than 3 hours. Recommendations for a 2- or 3-g cefazolin dose in obese parturients are conflicting (Ahmadzia, 2015; Maggio, 2015; Swank, 2015; Young, 2015). The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommends a 2-g dose for weights ≥80 kg and 3 g for those ≥120 kg (Berríos-Torres, 2017). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020d) recognizes either dose as suitable for women ≥80 kg. One pharmacokinetic analysis in obese women showed sufficient tissue levels with a 2-g dose for cesarean deliveries lasting 1.5 hours. Authors recommended consideration for redosing in obese women if surgeries were longer (Grupper, 2017).

Evidence also supports extending the antibiotic spectrum (Markwei, 2021; Tita, 2008). One large randomized trial added azithromycin, 500 mg IV, to standard prophylaxis prior to cesarean delivery for women in labor or with ruptured membranes (Tita, 2016). Rates of SSIs and endometritis were significantly lower in the extended-spectrum group compared with those in the standard prophylaxis cohort.

In pregnant women with a history of infection with methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), a single, 15-mg/kg dose of vancomycin can be added to the standard prophylaxis. Decolonization plays a limited role but may be considered prior to a planned cesarean delivery in women with known MRSA colonization (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020d).

Significant β-lactam allergy manifests as anaphylaxis, angioedema, respiratory distress, or urticaria. This merits prophylaxis with a single, 900-mg IV dose of clindamycin combined with a weight-based, 5-mg/kg dose of an aminoglycoside as an alternative. The 900-mg clindamycin dose is also used for obese patients. Some studies link higher SSI rates to regimens that lack a β-lactam (Wilhelm, 2020). Antepartum penicillin-allergy evaluation by a specialist may redefine the significance of the patient's prior reaction. Advantageously, this clarification may remove an allergy label and expanded options (Wolfson, 2021).

Antibiotic administration before surgical incision lowers postoperative infection rates without adverse neonatal effects compared with drug administration after umbilical cord clamping (Mackeen, 2014b; Sullivan, 2007). Prophylaxis is ideally administered within the 60 minutes prior to the start of planned cesarean delivery. For emergent delivery, antibiotics are given as soon as feasible.

Preoperative preparation of the abdominal wall skin immediately prior to surgery can help prevent SSIs. Chlorhexidine-alcohol or povidone-iodine solutions are suitable, but data favor chlorhexidine (Hadiati, 2020; Tolcher, 2019). However, adding a wiping of the skin with chlorhexidine the night before surgery was no better than placebo (Stone, 2020). Once abdominal preparation is completed and dry, surgical drapes cover the patient. One type has a cut-out window in the lower abdomen that is surrounded by an adhesive border. Others are *adhesive incisional drapes*, in which the skin and plastic drape must be incised together. The latter may slightly raise SSI rates (Eckler, 2019; Hadiati, 2020).

Although not our practice, preoperative vaginal cleansing with a 1-percent povidone-iodine scrub lowered endometritis and SSI rates in some studies (Haas, 2020; Roeckner, 2019). With povidone allergy, 4-percent chlorhexidine gluconate solution is an alternative. Last, some early evidence may support extending oral antibiotic prophylaxis for 48 hours postcesarean in obese women to lower SSIs (Valent, 2017).

Antibiotic prophylaxis against infective endocarditis is not recommended for most cardiac conditions. Exceptions are women with repaired or unrepaired cyanotic heart disease, prosthetic valves, or both. Prior infective endocarditis or cardiac transplantation with resulting valve regurgitation are others (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020d). Drug infusion is 30 to 60 minutes prior to expected delivery (Table 52-9, p. 935). Cesarean infection prophylaxis regimens also serve as appropriate endocarditis coverage.

Other Preventions

Glycemic control in diabetics lowers wound infection rates and is emphasized in Chapter 60 (p. 1068). Smoking is another modifiable risk (Avila, 2012). Intraoperative normothermia lowers wound infection rates in general surgery cases (Balki, 2020; Berríos-Torres, 2017). This tenet is logically extrapolated to cesarean delivery (Caughey, 2018).

In children delivered by cesarean, some evidence shows higher asthma and allergy rates (Kristensen, 2016). Gut microbiome differences between vaginal and cesarean birth groups are a suggested cause (Shao, 2019). With the hope to improve neonatal microbiota, swabbing the newborn mouth with a gauze that was incubated in the maternal vagina 1 hour before surgery has been described in preliminary studies. However, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019c) does not encourage this practice due to few data and the potential for transmission of harmful organisms.

Surgical Safety

The Joint Commission (2020) describes a protocol to prevent surgical errors. For cesarean delivery, all relevant documents are verified immediately before surgery, and a "time out" is completed. The "time out" requires attention of the entire team to confirm that the patient, site, and procedure are correct. Important discussions also include introduction of the patient-care team members, verification of prophylactic antibiotics, estimation of procedure length, and communication of anticipated complications. Additionally, requests for special instrumentation should be addressed preoperatively to prevent potential patient compromise and intraoperative delays.

Surgical fires are a specific safety focus. As prevention, surgeons ideally assess the fire risk at the procedure's start, allow adequate drying of alcohol-based skin antiseptics, and keep ignition sources off the patient or drapes when not in use (Food and Drug Administration, 2018; Wolf, 2013).

An instrument, sponge, and needle count before and after surgery is essential. Moreover, active communication during surgery should clearly convey items added to the operative field. At surgery completion, if counts are not reconciled, portable radiographic imaging for retained objects is done.

CESAREAN DELIVERY TECHNIQUE

Laparotomy

As with all surgery, a clear understanding of relevant anatomy is essential (Chap. 2, p. 12). For entry into the abdomen, a suprapubic transverse incision or a midline vertical one is chosen for cesarean delivery. Suitable transverse incisions are Pfannenstiel or Maylard incisions, and the Pfannenstiel type is selected most frequently.

Transverse incisions follow Langer lines of skin tension, and thus exert less stress on the closed wound. Compared with vertical ones, Pfannenstiel incisions offer superior cosmesis and lower incisional hernia rates. The Pfannenstiel incision, however, is often discouraged for cases in which a large operating space is essential or in which access to the upper abdomen may be needed. With transverse incisions, because of the layers created during incision of the internal and external oblique aponeuroses, purulent fluid can collect between these. Therefore, some favor a midline vertical incision for cases with high infection risks. Emergent entry is typically faster with vertical incision during primary and repeat cesarean delivery (Wylie, 2010). Last, neurovascular structures, which include the ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric nerves and superficial and inferior epigastric vessels, are often encountered with transverse incisions. Logically, bleeding, wound hematoma, and neurological disruption may more frequently complicate these incisions compared with vertical ones. The best incision for the morbidly

obese parturient is unclear (Smid, 2016). Our preference for women with morbid obesity is a periumbilical midline vertical incision (Chap. 51, p. 909).

The Maylard incision differs mainly from the Pfannenstiel in that the rectus abdominis muscle bellies and their investing rectus sheath are transected horizontally to widen the operating space. It is technically more difficult due to required muscle cutting and ligation of the inferior epigastric arteries, which lie laterally to these muscle bellies.

Once access is gained, metal handheld retractors provide exposure for hysterotomy. One metaanalysis with nearly 1700 women showed no lowering of postcesarean SSI rates with a disposable plastic barrier retractor (Alexis-O) (Waring, 2018).

Transverse Incisions

With the Pfannenstiel incision, the skin and subcutaneous tissue are incised using a low, transverse, slightly curvilinear incision. This is made at the pubic hairline, which is typically 3 cm above the superior border of the symphysis pubis. The incision is extended laterally to accommodate delivery—12 to 15 cm is typical.

Sharp dissection is continued through the subcutaneous layer to the fascia. The superficial epigastric vessels can usually be identified halfway between the skin and fascia, several centimeters from the midline, and these are coagulated.

The fascia is then incised sharply at the midline. The anterior abdominal fascia is typically composed of two visible layers, the aponeurosis from the external oblique muscle and a fused layer containing aponeuroses of the internal oblique and transverse abdominis muscles. Ideally, the two layers are individually incised during lateral extension of the fascial incision. The inferior epigastric vessels usually lie outside the lateral border of the rectus abdominis muscle and beneath the fused aponeuroses of the internal oblique and transverse abdominis muscles. Thus, although infrequently required, further lateral extension of the fascial incision may encounter these vessels. In this case, vessels ideally are identified and coagulated or ligated to prevent bleeding and vessel retraction.

Once the fascia is incised, the inferior fascial edge is grasped with Kocher clamps and elevated by an assistant as the operator separates the fascial sheath from the underlying rectus abdominis muscle either bluntly or sharply until the superior border of the symphysis pubis is reached. Next, the superior fascial edge is grasped and again, separation of fascia from the rectus muscle is completed. Blood vessels coursing between the sheath and muscles are clamped, cut, and ligated, or they are coagulated with an electrosurgery blade. Meticulous hemostasis is imperative to lower rates of incisional hematoma and infection. The fascial separation progresses cephalad and laterally to create a semicircular area above the transverse incision with a radius of approximately 8 cm. This will vary depending on fetal size. The rectus abdominis and pyramidalis muscles are separated in the midline to expose the transversalis fascia and peritoneum.

The transversalis fascia and preperitoneal fat are bluntly dissected away to reach the underlying peritoneum. The peritoneum near the upper end of the incision is opened carefully, either bluntly or by elevating it with two hemostats placed approximately 2 cm apart. This upper site lowers cystotomy risks. The tented fold of peritoneum between the clamps is examined and palpated to ensure that omentum, bowel, or bladder is not adjacent. The peritoneum is then incised. As the incision is extended cephalad above the arcuate line, the transverse fibers of the posterior rectus sheath are seen and are cut along with the peritoneum. The peritoneal incision is then extended downward to just above the peritoneal reflection over the bladder. Importantly, in women with prior intraabdominal surgery, including cesarean delivery, omentum or bowel may be adhered to the undersurface of the peritoneum. In women with obstructed labor, the bladder may be pushed remarkably cephalad.

Midline Vertical Incision

This incision begins 2 to 3 cm above the superior margin of the symphysis. It should be sufficiently long to allow fetal delivery, and 12 to 15 cm is typical. Sharp or electrosurgical blade dissection through the subcutaneous layers ultimately exposes the anterior rectus sheath. A small opening is made sharply with scalpel in the upper half of the linea alba. Placement here helps avoid potential cystotomy. Index and middle fingers are placed beneath the fascia, and the fascial incision is extended first superiorly and then inferiorly with scissors. Midline separation of the rectus muscles and pyramidalis muscles and peritoneal entry are similar to those just described for the Pfannenstiel incision.

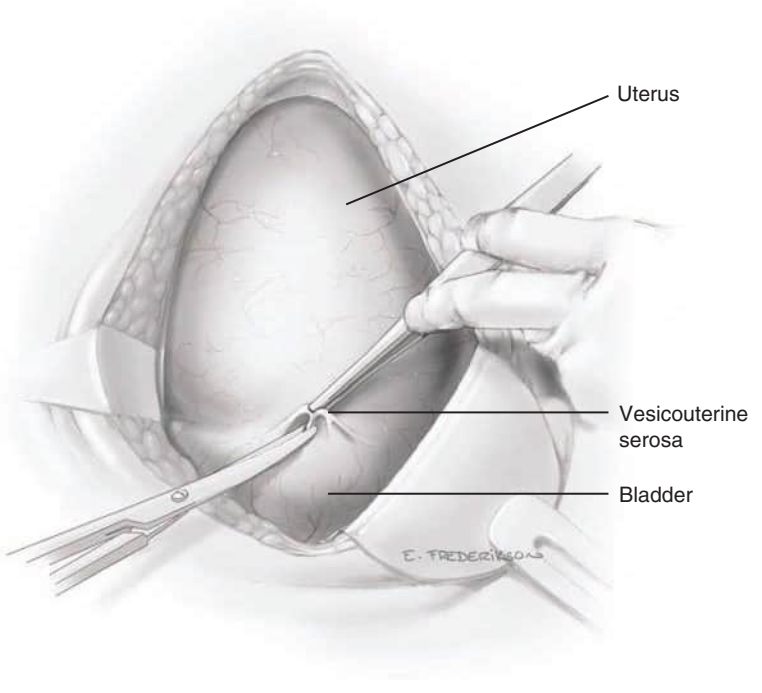


FIGURE 30-1 The loose peritoneum above the bladder reflection is grasped with forceps and incised with Metzenbaum scissors.

Hysterotomy

Most often, the lower uterine segment is incised transversely as described by Kerr in 1921. Occasionally, vertical incision confined solely to the lower uterine segment may be elected (Krönig, 1912). In contrast, a *classical incision* begins as a low vertical incision, which is then extended cephalad into the active portion of the uterine corpus. Last, a fundal or even posterior uterine incision may be selected for cases with placenta accreta syndrome.

Low Transverse Cesarean Incision

For most cesarean deliveries, this incision is preferred. Compared with a classical incision, it repairs easily, causes less incision-site bleeding, and promotes less bowel or omentum adherence to the myometrial incision. Located in the inactive segment, it is also less likely to rupture during a subsequent pregnancy.

Before hysterotomy, the surgeon palpates the fundus to identify degrees of uterine rotation. The uterus may be rotated so that one round ligament is more anterior and closer to the midline (Chap. 3, p. 46). In such cases, the uterus can be manually reoriented and held to permit centering of the incision. This avoids incision extension into and laceration of the adjacent uterine artery. A moist sponge may be used to pack protruding bowel away from the operative field.

The reflection of peritoneum at the upper margin of the bladder and overlying the lower uterine segment is grasped in the midline with forceps and incised transversely with scissors (Fig. 30-1). Following this initial incision, scissors are inserted between peritoneum and lower-uterine-segment myometrium. Open scissors are pushed laterally from the midline on each side. This transverse peritoneal incision extends almost the full length of the lower uterine segment. As the lateral margin on each side is approached, the scissors are directed slightly cephalad (Fig. 30-2). The lower edge of peritoneum is elevated, and the bladder is gently separated from the underlying lower uterine segment with blunt or sharp dissection within this vesicouterine space (Fig. 30-3). This bladder flap creation effectively moves the bladder away from the planned hysterotomy site. It also helps prevent bladder laceration if an unintended inferior hysterotomy extension occurs during fetal delivery. If dense adhesions complicate vesicouterine space dissection, sharp dissection is preferred. If unclear, the bladder and its upper border can be identified by distending or "back filling" it with fluid instilled through a Foley catheter (Saaqib, 2020).

In general, this caudad separation of bladder does not exceed 5 cm and usually is less. However, in instances in which cesarean hysterectomy is planned or anticipated, extended caudad bladder dissection is recommended to aid total hysterectomy and decrease the risk of cystotomy.

Some surgeons do not create a bladder flap. The main advantage is a shorter skin incision-to-delivery time. However, data supporting this practice are currently limited (O'Neill, 2014; Tuuli, 2012).

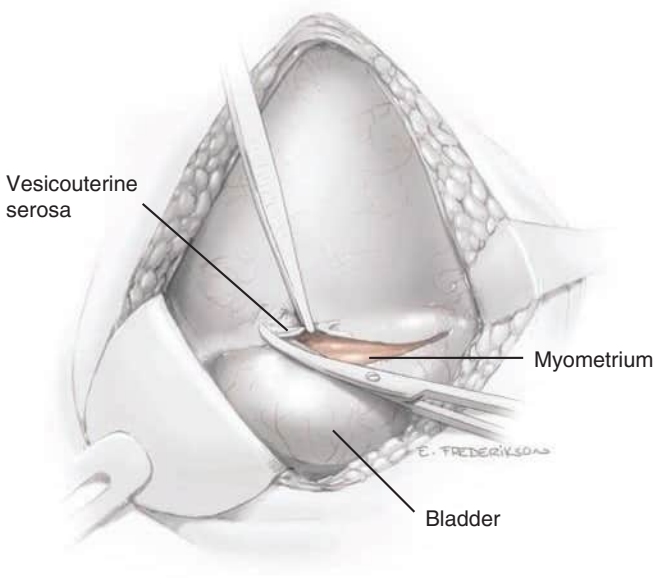


FIGURE 30-2 This peritoneal edge is elevated and incised laterally.

Uterine Incision. The uterus is entered through the lower uterine segment. Digital palpation to find the physiological border between firmer upper segment myometrium and the more flexible lower segment can guide placement. This is often at the level of the bladder flap incision.

For women with advanced or complete cervical dilation, the hysterotomy is placed relatively higher. Failure to adjust increases the risk of lateral extension of the incision into the

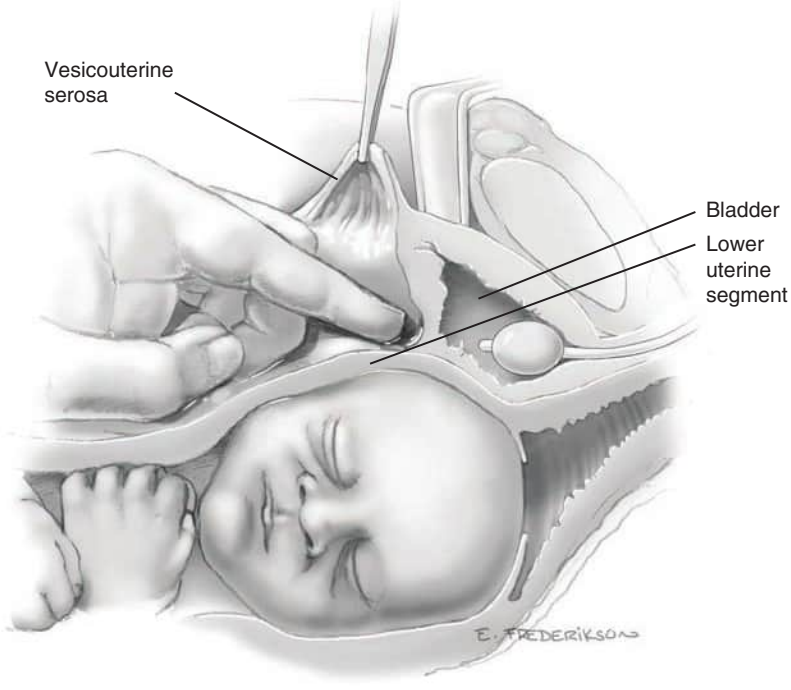


FIGURE 30-3 Cross section shows blunt dissection of the bladder off the uterus to expose the lower uterine segment.

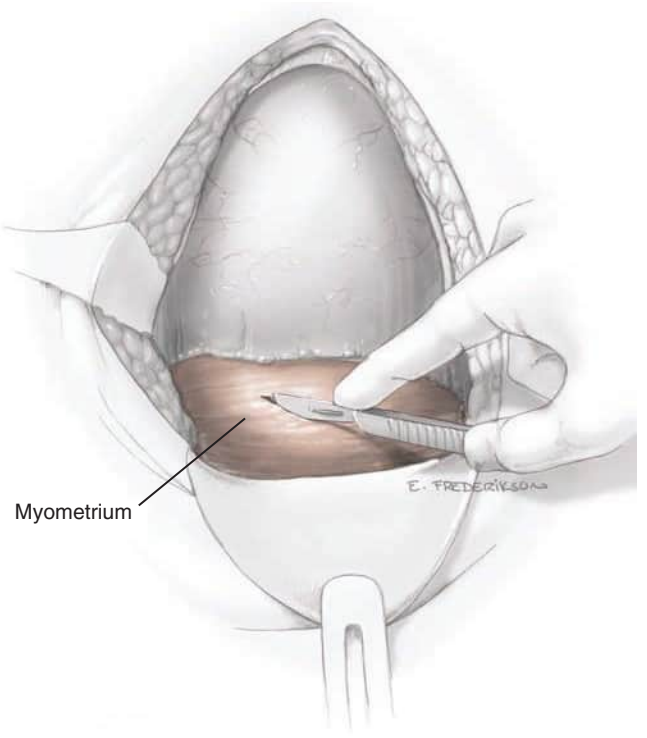


FIGURE 30-4 The myometrium is incised with shallow strokes to avoid cutting the fetal head.

uterine arteries. It may also lead to incision of the cervix or vagina rather than the lower uterine segment. Such incisions into the cervix distort postoperative cervical anatomy.

The uterus can be incised by various techniques. Each is initiated by using a scalpel to transversely incise the exposed lower uterine segment for 1 to 2 cm in the midline (Fig. 30-4). Repetitive shallow strokes help avoid fetal laceration. As the myometrium thins, a fingertip can then bluntly enter the uterine cavity. Once the uterus is entered, the hysterotomy is lengthened by simply spreading the incision, using lateral and slightly upward pressure applied with each index finger (Fig. 30-5). Instead, some evidence supports widening the lower-uterine-segment incision by pulling with fingers in a cephalocaudad direction to help lower hysterotomy extension rates (Morales, 2019; Xodo, 2016).

The goal is to create an incision sufficiently wide to deliver the presenting fetal part yet avoid overextending the incision. Extensions usually tear downward into the lower uterine segment or laterally into the uterine vessels. Extensive inferior tears may include the cervix or vagina. Risk factors for extensions include occiput posterior fetal head position, primary cesarean delivery, and advanced first-stage or second-stage labor (de la Torre, 2006; Karavani, 2020). Specific maneuvers to ameliorate this last high-risk setting are discussed in the next section.

Alternatively, if the lower uterine segment is thick and unyielding, cutting laterally and then slightly upward with bandage scissors will lengthen the incision. Importantly, when scissors are used, the index and middle fingers of the nondominant

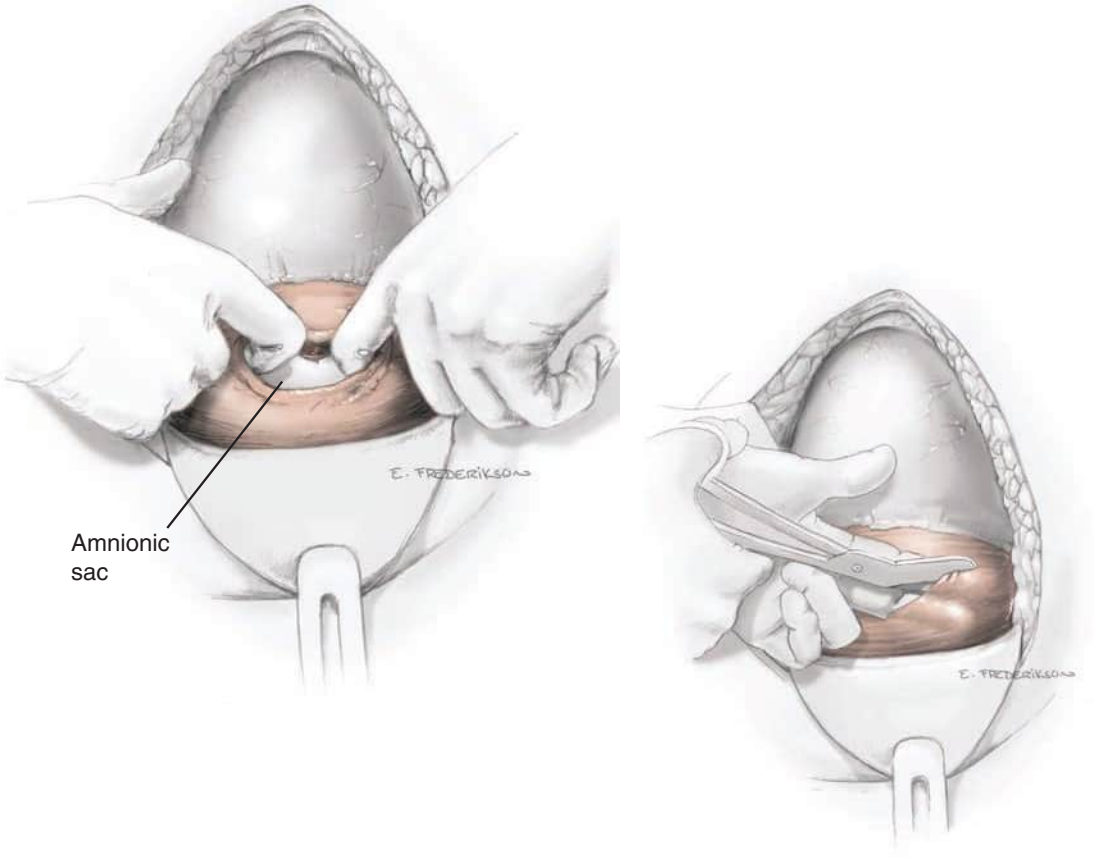


FIGURE 30-5 After entering the uterine cavity, the incision is extended laterally with fingers or with bandage scissors (*inset*).

hand are insinuated beneath the myometrium and above fetal parts to help avert fetal laceration. Comparing blunt and sharp expansion of the initial uterine incision, blunt stretch is associated with fewer unintended incision extensions, shorter operative time, and less blood loss. However, the rates of infection and need for transfusion do not differ (Asıcıoğlu, 2014; Saad, 2014).

During hysterotomy creation, if the placenta lies in the incision line, it must be either detached or incised. Placental function is thereby compromised, and thus delivery is expedited.

At times, a low transverse hysterotomy is selected but provides inadequate room for delivery. In such instances, one corner of the hysterotomy incision is extended cephalad into the contractile portion of the myometrium—a *J incision*. If this is completed bilaterally, a *U incision* is formed. Last, some prefer to extend in the midline—a *T incision*. As expected, these have been linked with higher intraoperative blood loss (Boyle, 1996; Patterson, 2002).

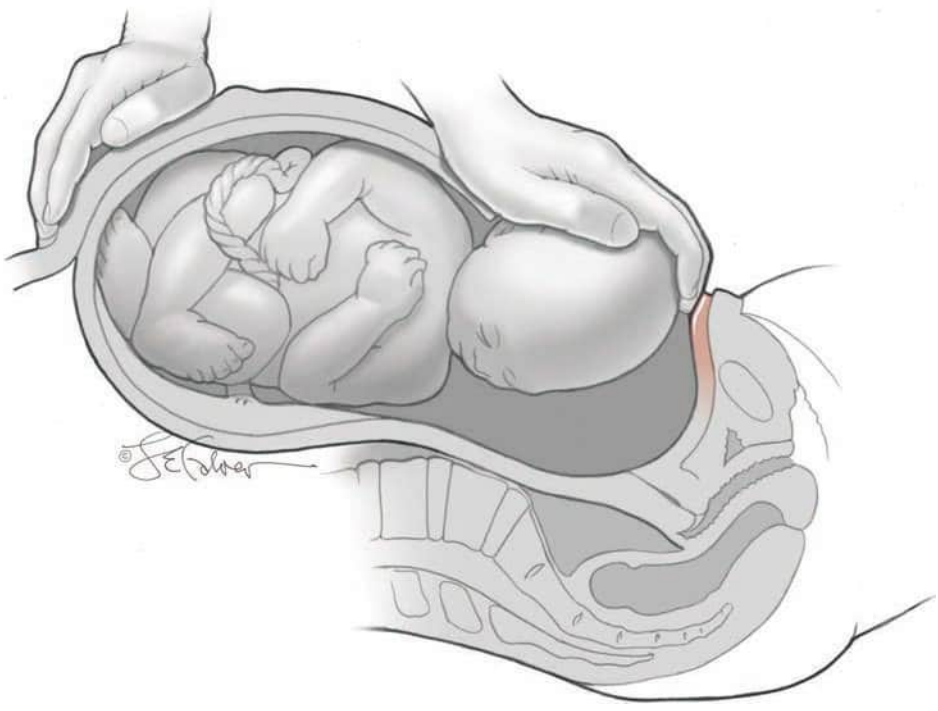


FIGURE 30-6 Delivery of the fetal head. (Figures 30-6 to 30-8: Reproduced with permission from Johnson DD: Cesarean delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

J-, U-, and T-incisions extend into the contractile portion, and a subsequent trial of labor after cesarean (TOLAC) is more likely to be complicated by uterine rupture. Similarly, from limited data, inferior hysterotomy extensions also are associated with higher rupture rates, and in our practice these preclude TOLAC (Goldfarb, 2011). The Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists (2015) notes insufficient evidence to support the general safety of TOLAC in women with a prior significant uterine extension and cautions for decisions to be individualized. Last, a prior classical incision, described later, or a fundal incision substantially raises the rupture risk during subsequent TOLAC. Thus, following a primary cesarean delivery complicated by these exceptional incision types, a conversation disclosing these events and their significance should ensue with the patient and are carefully described in the operative report.

Delivery of the Fetus.

With a cephalic presentation, a hand is slipped into the uterine cavity between the symphysis and fetal head. The head is elevated gently with the fingers and palm through the incision. Once the head enters the incision, delivery may be aided by modest fundal pressure (Fig. 30-6).

After a long labor with cephalopelvic disproportion, the fetal head may be tightly wedged in the birth canal. This situation raises the risk of hysterotomy extension, of associated blood loss, and of fetal skull fracture. First, a "push" method may be used. With this, upward pressure exerted by a hand in the vagina by an assistant will help to dislodge the head and push it cephalad. If this is anticipated, a patient in frog-leg position may allow easier vaginal access.

Second, as an alternative, a "pull" method grasps the fetal legs and brings them through the hysterotomy. The fetus is then delivered as one would complete a breech extraction. Support for this latter approach comes from small randomized trials and retrospective cohort studies (Berhan, 2014; Jeve, 2016). The main advantage appears to be lower uterine extension rates.

Another pull method attempts to free the head by placing a palm on each fetal shoulder and gently elevating them. Last, a least-common method uses a "fetal pillow." This is a distensible intravaginal balloon that is positioned below the head and then inflated to elevate the fetal head. Evidence for its superiority to the push method is limited and conflicting (Sacre, 2021; Seal, 2016).

Conversely, in women without labor, the fetal head may be unmolded and lack a leading cephalic point. The round head may be difficult to lift through the uterine incision in a relatively thick lower segment that is unattenuated by labor. In such instances, either forceps or a vacuum device may be used to deliver the fetal head. For this, the fetal head is manually grasped and turned to an occiput transverse position. In this example, the head is left OT (LOT) position. Two or more fingers of the right hand are introduced inside the hysterotomy and behind the fetal head (Fig. 30-7). Fingers of the left hand grasp the handle of the forceps. The blade's toe is gently introduced between the hand and fetal head. It is curved inward between the fetal head and the palmar surface of the fingers. For the upper blade, two or more fingers of the left hand are inserted into the right posterolateral aspect of the hysterotomy. The forceps handle is grasped by the right hand. The blade toe

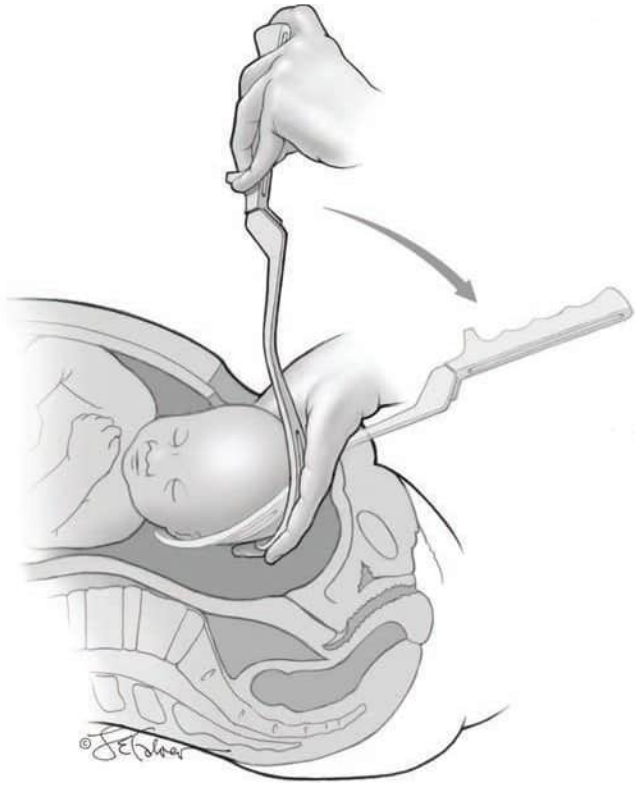


FIGURE 30-7 To place the first forceps blade, the operator's palm is slipped beneath the head. It is guided along the palm to ultimately lie across the fetal malar and lower parietal bone as in vaginal forceps application.

is then gently introduced along the posterior left lower uterine segment wall. It is curved inward between the fetal face and the palmar surface of the fingers (Fig. 30-8A). The fingers of the left hand are moved beneath the lower edge of this blade. Upward pressure against this edge will sweep or wander the blade into position. As the blade reaches its final position, the shank and handle come to rest in the midline, and the two handles are articulated (Fig. 30-8B). Traction is up and out to guide the occiput through the hysterotomy. Concurrent, gentle fundal pressure can be applied by an assistant.

After head delivery, a finger is passed across the fetal neck to determine whether it is encircled by one or more umbilical cord loops. If present, these are slipped over the head. The head is rotated to an occiput transverse position, which aligns the fetal bisacromial diameter vertically. The sides of the head are grasped with two hands, and gentle axial traction is applied until the anterior shoulder enters the hysterotomy incision. Next, by upward axial traction, the posterior shoulder is delivered. During delivery, abrupt or powerful lateral force is avoided to avert brachial plexus injury. With steady outward traction, the rest of the body then readily follows. Gentle fundal pressure may aid this.

With some exceptions, current American Heart Association recommends against routine neonatal suctioning immediately after birth, even with meconium present (Wyckoff, 2015). A fuller discussion of this and delayed umbilical cord clamping is found in Chapter 27 (p. 500). Specific to cesarean delivery, delayed clamping does not lower maternal hemoglobin levels on the first postoperative day (Jenusaitis, 2020; Purisch, 2019).

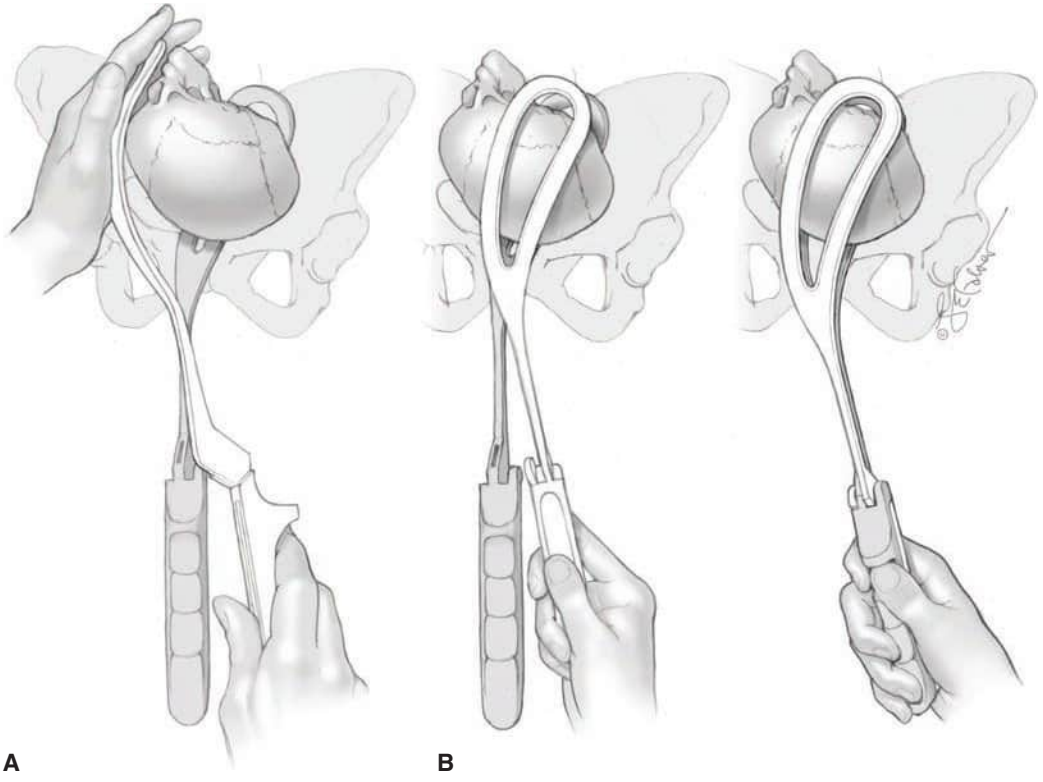


FIGURE 30-8 **A.** To apply the second blade, the operator's hand is inserted into the posterolateral aspect of the hysterotomy. The forceps blade is slipped inward across the palm. This hand then guides the blade to overlie the upper malar and parietal bones. **B.** Once positioned, the handles are interlocked. Slight upward and outward traction is used to lift the head through the incision.

After the umbilical cord is clamped, the newborn is given to the team member who will conduct care.

Comparing elective cesarean under neuraxial anesthesia and spontaneous vaginal deliveries, studies show that the need for neonatal resuscitation is not practically different between the two (Gordon, 2005). The American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) recommend that "a qualified person who is skilled in neonatal resuscitation should be in the delivery room." At Parkland Hospital, pediatric nurse practitioners attend uncomplicated, scheduled cesarean deliveries. Notably, as anticipated neonatal risks rise, so too should the resuscitative skills of the attendants (Wyckoff, 2015).

To promote breastfeeding, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) recommends skin-to-skin contact between newborn and mother in the delivery room. Although most randomized trials focus on vaginal birth, several small studies support such contact following cesarean delivery, and this is our practice (Frederick, 2020; Moore, 2016). Breastfeeding can be initiated the day of surgery.

Delivery of the Placenta. The uterine incision is observed for any vigorously bleeding sites. These should be quickly clamped with Pennington or ring forceps. Although some surgeons may prefer manual removal of the placenta, spontaneous delivery prompted by some gentle steady cord traction may reduce the risk of operative blood loss and infection (Anorlu, 2008; Baksu, 2005). Traction is coupled with fundal massage to hasten placental separation and delivery (Fig. 30-9).

Immediately after delivery and quick gross inspection of the placenta for missing portions, the uterine cavity is suctioned and wiped out with a gauze sponge to remove avulsed membranes, vernix, and clots. In the past, double-gloved fingers or ring forceps placed through the hysterotomy incision were used to dilate a closed cervix. This does not reduce infection or postpartum hemorrhage rates and is not our practice (Kirscht, 2017; Liabsuetrakul, 2018).

To help prevent uterine atony after birth, an IV infusion containing two ampules or 20 units of oxytocin per liter of crystalloid is infused at 10 mL/min. Some prefer higher infusion rates, however, nondilute boluses are avoided because of associated hypotension (Roach, 2013). Once the uterus contracts satisfactorily, the rate can be reduced. Although not available in the United States, an alternative is *carbetocin*, which is a longer-acting oxytocin derivative. It provides suitable, albeit more expensive, hemorrhage prophylaxis (Kalafat, 2021). Other choices for hemorrhage prophylaxis include misoprostol (Cytotec) and the ergots, namely methylergonovine (Methergine) and ergonovine (Ergotrate). A combination agent of oxytocin plus ergonovine (Syntometrine) is used outside the United States. Of agents, the World Health Organization (2018) recommends oxytocin for first-line use. Last, tranexamic acid (TXA) can be added to a standard oxytocin infusion to help prevent blood loss. Despite early encouraging evidence, methodology flaws have been cited (Franchini, 2018; Ker, 2016). With TXA in one large trial, rates of estimated blood loss >1000 mL or red-cell transfusion were lower than with placebo. But, TXA did not lower rates of common blood loss–related secondary clinical outcomes (Sentilhes, 2021). In contrast to prevention, treatment of atony is found in Chapter 42 (p. 734).

Uterine Repair. After placental delivery, the uterus is lifted through the incision and onto the draped abdominal wall. We favor exteriorizing and believe a relaxed, atonic uterus can be recognized quickly and massage applied. Incision and bleeding points are more easily visualized and repaired, especially if extensions were torn or the patient is obese. Adnexal exposure is superior, and thus, tubal sterilization is easier. In contrast, some clinicians prefer to close the hysterotomy with the uterus in situ. Comparing these two approaches, the Coronis Collaborative Group (2013) trial randomly assigned nearly 5000 parturients and found no differences in the endometritis or transfusion rate. In one large metaanalysis, nausea and vomiting and associated pain rates were comparable with either method (Zaphiratos, 2015).

Before hysterotomy closure, IUD insertion, if planned, is completed (Chap. 38, p. 668). Our practice is to perform a primary needle and sponge count prior to uterine incision closure completion. For closure, one end of the uterine incision is grasped to stabilize and maneuver the incision. The uterine incision is then closed with one or two layers of continuous 0- or no. 1 absorbable suture (Fig. 30-10). Chromic catgut suture is used by many, but some prefer synthetic delayed-absorbable polyglactin 910 (Vicryl). In subsequent pregnancy,

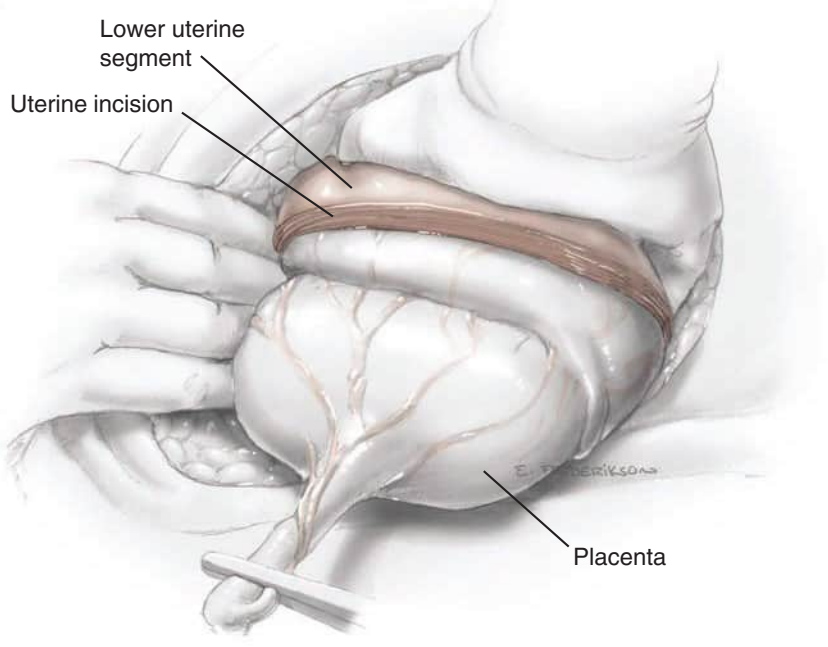


FIGURE 30-9 Placenta bulging through the uterine incision as the uterus contracts. A hand gently massages the fundus to help aid spontaneous placental separation.

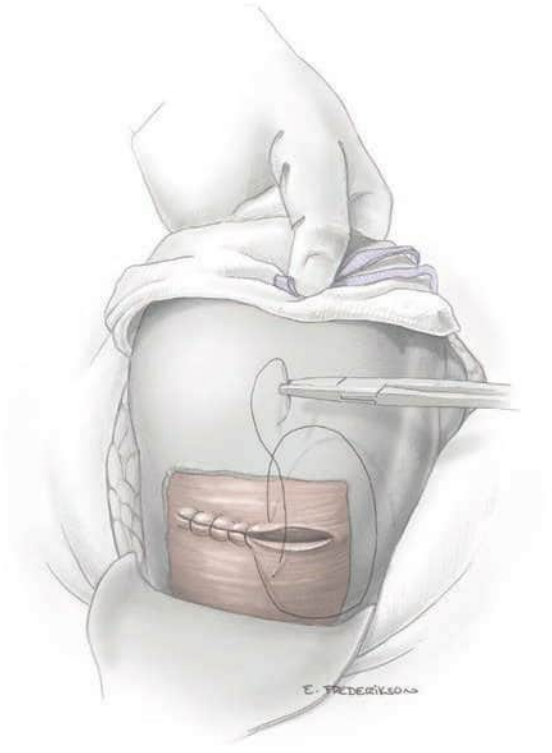


FIGURE 30-10 The cut edges of the uterine incision are approximated with a running, locking suture.

neither suture type is superior in mitigating against greater rates of adverse pregnancy outcomes such as uterine incision rupture (CORONIS Collaborative Group, 2016).

Single-layer closure is typically faster and is not associated with higher rates of infection or transfusion (CAESAR Study Collaborative Group, 2010; Dodd, 2014; Roberge, 2014). Moreover, most studies observed that the number of layers does not significantly affect complication rates in the next pregnancy (Chapman, 1997; CORONIS Collaborative Group, 2016; Durnwald, 2003). One randomized trial with nearly 1600 parturients found a slightly greater formation rate of cesarean scar niches at 3 months after double-layer closure (Stegwee, 2021).

At Parkland Hospital, we use a one-layer uterine closure with chromic catgut. The initial suture is placed just beyond one end of the uterine incision. A continuous, locking suture line for hemostasis is performed, and each suture penetrates the full myometrial thickness. The suture line then extends to a point just beyond the incision's opposite end. If bleeding sites or defects persist after a single layer, more sutures are required. Another layer of running suture or individually targeted figure-eight or mattress stitches are options.

Although not our routine practice, the peritoneum in the anterior cul-de-sac can be approximated with a continuous 2-0 chromic catgut suture line. Multiple randomized trials suggest that omission of this step causes no postoperative complications (Grundsell, 1998; Irion, 1996; Nagele, 1996). If tubal sterilization is planned, it is completed as described in Chapter 39 (p. 683).

Adhesions

Following cesarean delivery, adhesions commonly form within the vesicouterine space or between the anterior abdominal wall and uterus. With each successive pregnancy, the percentage of affected women and adhesion severity rise (Morales, 2007; Tulandi, 2009). Adhesions can significantly lengthen incision-to-delivery time and total operative time (Rossouw, 2013; Sikirica, 2012). Rates of cystotomy and bowel injury also are raised because of adhesive disease (Rahman, 2009; Silver, 2006).

Intuitively, scarring can be reduced by handling tissues delicately, achieving hemostasis, and minimizing tissue ischemia, infection, and foreign-body reaction. Most recent data on short- and long-term outcomes show no benefit to peritoneal closure (CAESAR Study Collaborative Group, 2010; CORONIS Collaborative Group, 2013, 2016; Kapustian, 2012). Similarly, most studies show no benefit from placement of an adhesion barrier at the hysterotomy site (Edwards, 2014; Kiefer, 2016).

Abdominal Closure

Any laparotomy sponges are removed, and the paracolic gutters and cul-de-sac are gently suctioned of blood and amniotic fluid. Some surgeons irrigate the gutters and cul-de-sac, especially in the presence of infection or meconium. Routine irrigation in low-risk women, however, leads to greater intraoperative nausea but not to lower postoperative infection rates (Eke, 2016; Viney, 2012).

Prior to abdominal closure, correct sponge and instrument counts are verified. The rectus abdominis muscle bellies are allowed to fall into place. The overlying rectus fascia is closed by a continuous, nonlocking technique with a delayed-absorbable suture. In patients with a higher risk for infection, monofilament suture may be preferable to braided material.

The subcutaneous tissue usually need not be closed if it is <2 cm thick. With thicker layers, however, closure is recommended to minimize seroma and hematoma formation, which can lead to wound infection, disruption, or both (Bohman, 1992; Chelmow, 2004). Adding a subcutaneous drain does not prevent significant wound complications (Hellums, 2007; Ramsey, 2005).

Skin is closed with a running subcuticular stitch of 4-0 delayed-absorbable suture, with adhesive glue, or with staples. In comparison, final cosmetic results and infection rates appear similar, skin suturing takes longer, but wound separation rates are higher with metal staples (Basha, 2010; Figueroa, 2013; Mackeen, 2014a, 2015). Poliglecaprone 25 (Monocryl) or polyglactin 910 (Vicryl) are both suitable (Tuuli, 2016). Outcomes with 2-octyl cyanoacrylate adhesive (Dermabond) were equivalent to sutures for Pfannenstiel incisions (Daykan, 2017; Siddiqui, 2013). A sterile thin abdominal wound dressing is sufficient. In obese women, most evidence favors against a negative-pressure wound vacuum atop the closed skin incision compared with a standard wound dressing to lower wound infection rates (Gillespie, 2021; Hussamy, 2019; Tuuli, 2020).

Joel-Cohen and Misgav Ladach Techniques

The Pfannenstiel-Kerr technique just described has been used for decades. Others include the more recent Joel-Cohen and Misgav Ladach techniques (Holmgren, 1999). These differ from traditional Pfannenstiel-Kerr entry mainly by their initial incision placement and greater use of blunt dissection.

The Joel-Cohen technique creates a straight 10-cm transverse skin incision 3 cm below the level of the anterior superior

iliac spines (Olofsson, 2015). The subcutaneous tissue layer is opened sharply 2 to 3 cm in the midline. This is carried down, without lateral extension, to the fascia. A small transverse incision is made in the fascia, and curved Mayo scissors are pushed laterally on each side and beneath intact subcutaneous fat to incise the fascia. With this incision completed, an index finger from each hand is inserted between the rectus abdominis muscle bellies and beneath the fascia. One finger is moved cranially and the other caudally, in opposition, to separate the bellies and further open the fascial incision. Then, a finger from each hand hooks under each belly to stretch the muscles laterally. The peritoneum is entered sharply, and this incision is sharply extended cephalocaudad. Entry with the Misgav Ladach technique differs in that the peritoneum is entered bluntly (Holmgren, 1999).

Modifications to the Joel-Cohen method abound. For emergency delivery, we begin along a line somewhat lower on the abdomen and similar to that for Pfannenstiel incision. For speed, we extend the initial fascial incision bluntly by hooking index fingers in the fascial incision's lateral corners and pulling laterally (Hofmeyr, 2009; Oloffson, 2015). Index fingers insinuated between the rectus bellies then move cephalocaudad in opposition to separate the muscle bellies. Blunt index-finger dissection enters the peritoneum, and again, cranial and caudad opposing stretch lengthens the peritoneal incision. Last, all the layers of the abdominal wall are grasped together and pulled laterally in opposition to further open the operating space.

These techniques have been associated with shorter operative times and with lower rates of intraoperative blood loss and postoperative pain (Mathai, 2013). They may, however, prove difficult for women with preexisting anterior rectus fibrosis and peritoneal adhesions (Bolze, 2013).

Classical Cesarean Incision

Indications. This incision is usually avoided because it encompasses the active upper uterine segment and thus is prone to rupture with subsequent pregnancies. Some indications stem from difficulty in exposing or safely entering the lower uterine segment. For example, a densely adhered bladder from previous surgery is encountered; a *leiomyoma* occupies the lower uterine segment; or the cervix is currently invaded by cancer. Women with prior radical trachelectomy for cervix cancer are usually delivered by classical incision. Massive maternal obesity can preclude safe access to the lower uterine segment. A classical incision is also preferred for placenta previa with anterior implantation, especially those complicated by placenta accreta syndrome. In extreme cases of this, the typical classical hysterotomy may be placed even higher in the uterine body or posteriorly to avoid the placenta. Fetuses with cephalic presentation are then delivered in a manner similar to total breech extraction.

In other instances, fetal indications dictate the need. *Transverse lie of a large fetus*, especially if the membranes are ruptured and the shoulder is impacted in the birth canal, usually requires a classical incision. Second, with a fetus presenting as a back-down transverse lie, the back precludes easy grasping of a leg through a transverse uterine incision for breech delivery. Here, a classical incision provides superior room. Third, in instances when the fetus is very small and breech, a classical incision may be preferable (Osmundson, 2013). In such cases, the poorly developed lower uterine segment provides inadequate space for the manipulations required for breech delivery. Or, less commonly, the small fetal head may become entrapped by a contracting uterine fundus following membrane rupture. With multiple fetuses, a classical incision again may provide needed room for extraction of fetuses that may be malpositioned or preterm (Osmundson, 2015). A large fetal malformation or conjoined twins may require the added space afforded by a classical incision.

Uterine Incision and Repair. A vertical uterine incision is initiated with a scalpel beginning as low as possible and preferably within the lower uterine segment (Fig. 30-11). If adhesions, insufficient exposure, a tumor, or placenta percreta preclude development of a bladder flap, then the incision is made above the level of the bladder. Described earlier (p. 553), back filling the bladder may aid this.

Once the uterus is entered with a scalpel, the incision is extended cephalad with bandage scissors until it is long enough to permit fetal delivery. With scissor use, the fetus can be better protected from laceration. Fingers of the surgeon's nondominant hand are insinuated between the myometrium and fetus to prevent scissor cuts. As the incision is opened, numerous large vessels that bleed profusely are commonly encountered within the myometrium. The remainder of fetal and placental delivery mirrors that with a low transverse hysterotomy.

For incision closure, one method employs a layer of 0- or no. 1 chromic catgut with a running stitch to approximate the

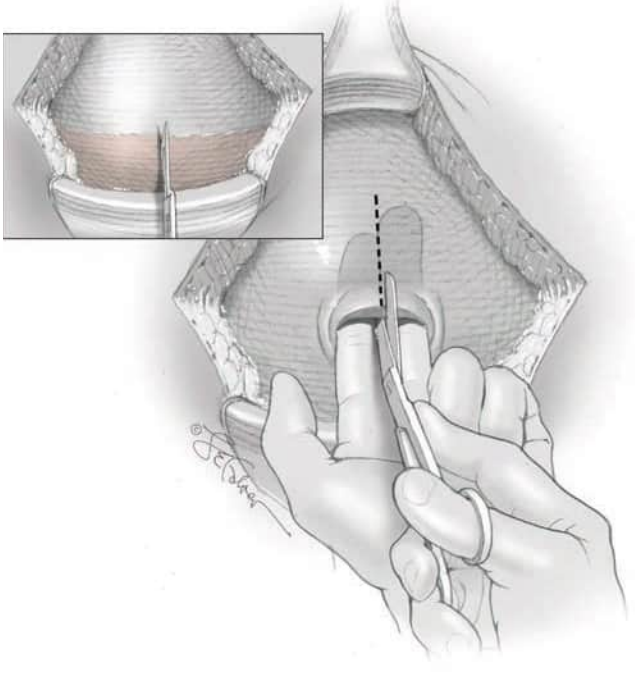


FIGURE 30-11 An initial small vertical hysterotomy incision is made in the lower uterine segment. Fingers are insinuated between the myometrium and fetus to avoid fetal laceration. Scissors extend the incision cephalad as needed for delivery. (Figures 30-11 and 30-12: Reproduced with permission from Johnson DD: Cesarean delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

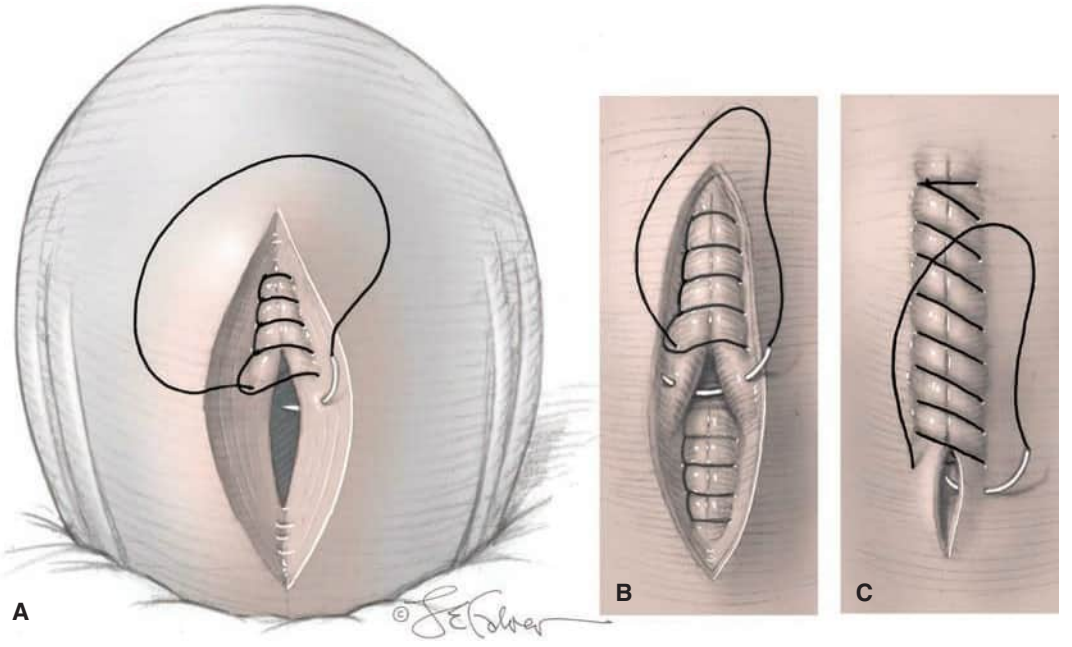


FIGURE 30-12 Classical incision closure. The deeper half (**A**) and superficial half (**B**) of the incision are closed in a running fashion. The serosa is then closed (**C**).

deeper length of the incision (Fig. 30-12). The outer layer of myometrium is then closed along its length with similar suture and with a running suture line. To achieve good approximation and to prevent the suture from tearing through the myometrium, it is helpful to have an assistant relieve tension by compressing the uterus on each side of the wound toward the midline as each stitch is placed.

PERIPARTUM HYSTERECTOMY

Indications

Hysterectomy is most commonly performed to arrest or prevent hemorrhage from intractable uterine atony, surgical trauma/tears, or abnormal placentation (Bateman, 2012; Kallianidis, 2020). It is more often completed during or after cesarean delivery but may be needed following vaginal birth. Among all deliveries, the peripartum hysterectomy rate in the United States approximates 1 per 1000 births and has risen significantly during the past few decades (Bateman, 2012; Govindappagari, 2016). During a 25-year period, the rate of peripartum hysterectomy at Parkland Hospital was 1.7 per 1000 births (Hernandez, 2012). Most of this rise is attributed to the increasing rates of cesarean delivery and its associated complications in subsequent pregnancy (Flood, 2009; Orbach, 2011). Of hysterectomies, approximately one half to two thirds are total, whereas the remaining cases are supracervical (Rossi, 2010; Shellhaas, 2009).

Major complications of peripartum hysterectomy include greater blood loss and risk of urinary tract damage. Blood loss is usually appreciable because hysterectomy is being performed for hemorrhage that frequently is torrential, and the procedure itself is associated with substantial bleeding. Although many cases with hemorrhage cannot be anticipated, those with abnormal implantation are often identified antepartum. Preparations for placenta accreta syndrome are discussed in Chapter 43 (p. 763) and are outlined by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018).

An important factor affecting the cesarean hysterectomy complication rate is whether the operation is performed electively or emergently. With anticipated or planned cesarean hysterectomy, rates of blood loss, blood transfusion, and urinary tract complications are lower those with emergent procedures (Briery, 2007; Glaze, 2008).

Hysterectomy Technique

Total or supracervical hysterectomy is performed using standard operative techniques. Adequate exposure is essential, but initially, placement of a self-retaining retractor such as a Balfour is not necessary. Rather, satisfactory exposure is obtained with cephalad traction on the uterus by an assistant, along with handheld Richardson or Deaver retractors. The bladder flap is deflected caudad to the level of the cervix if possible to permit total hysterectomy. In cases in which cesarean hysterectomy is planned or strongly suspected, extended bladder flap dissection is ideally completed before initial hysterotomy. Later attempts at bladder dissection may be obscured by bleeding, or excess blood may be lost during this dissection.

After cesarean delivery, the placenta is typically removed. In cases of placenta accreta syndrome for which hysterectomy is already planned, the placenta is usually left undisturbed in situ. If the hysterotomy incision is bleeding appreciably, it can be quickly reapproximated with full-thickness sutures, or Pennington or sponge forceps can be applied for hemostasis. If bleeding is minimal, neither maneuver is necessary.

The round ligament is divided close to the uterus between clamps, and each pedicle is ligated (Fig. 30-13). Either 0 or no.

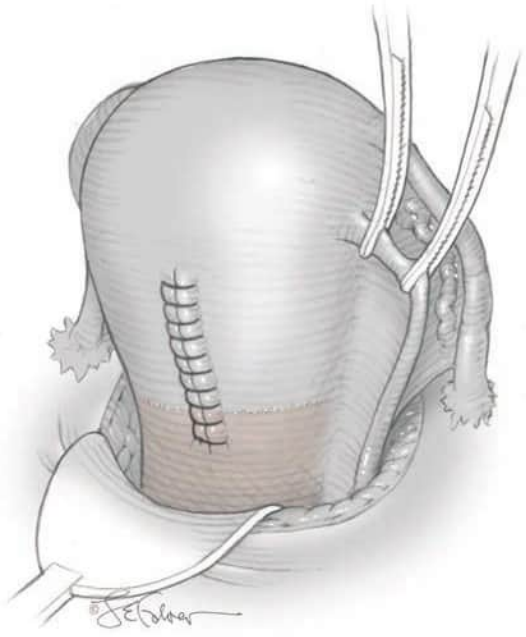


FIGURE 30-13 The round ligaments are clamped, ligated, and transected bilaterally. (Figures 30-13 to 30-21: Reproduced with permission from Cunningham FG, Gilstrap LC III: Peripartum hysterectomy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

1 suture can be used in either chromic gut or delayed-absorbable material. Division of the round provides access to the anterior leaf of the broad ligament, which is incised downward to meet the former bladder flap incision. The posterior leaf of the broad ligament adjacent to the uterus is bluntly or sharply perforated at a point beneath the fallopian tube, uteroovarian ligament, and ovarian vessels (Fig. 30-14). These structures together are then divided between sturdy clamps placed close to the uterus (Fig. 30-15). The lateral pedicle is doubly ligated. The medial clamp remains and is removed later with the entire uterine specimen. The posterior leaf of the broad ligament

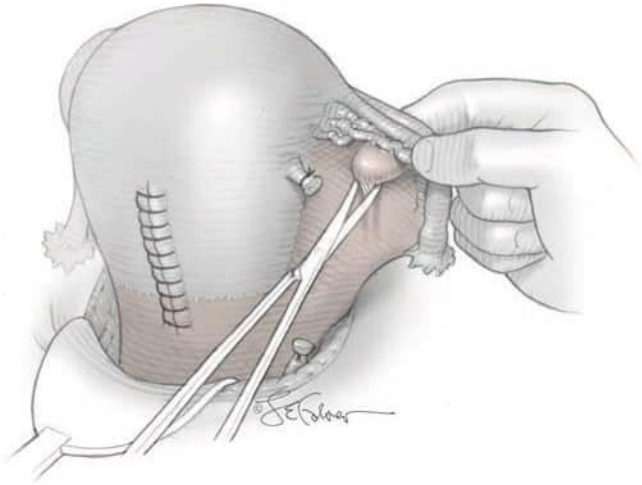


FIGURE 30-14 The posterior leaf of the broad ligament adjacent to the uterus is perforated just beneath the fallopian tube, uteroovarian ligaments, and ovarian vessels.

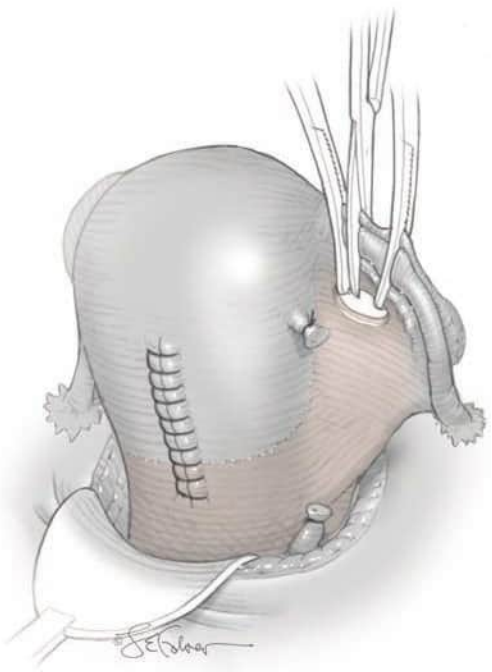


FIGURE 30-15 The uteroovarian ligament and fallopian tube are clamped and cut. The lateral pedicle is doubly ligated.

is then incised caudad toward the uterosacral ligaments (Fig. 30-16). The bladder and attached peritoneal flap are further deflected and dissected as needed. If the bladder flap is densely adhered, as it may be after previous hysterotomy incisions, careful sharp dissection is employed (Fig. 30-17).

Special care is required from this point on to avoid injury to the ureters, which pass beneath the uterine arteries. To help accomplish this, an assistant places constant traction to pull the

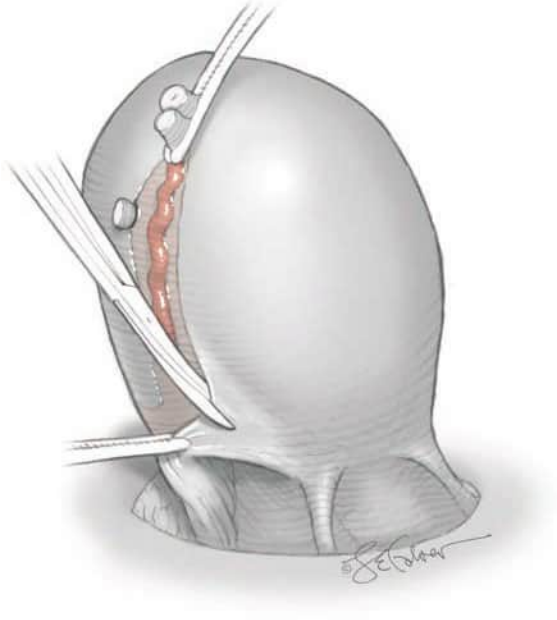


FIGURE 30-16 The posterior leaf of the broad ligament is divided inferiorly toward the uterosacral ligament.

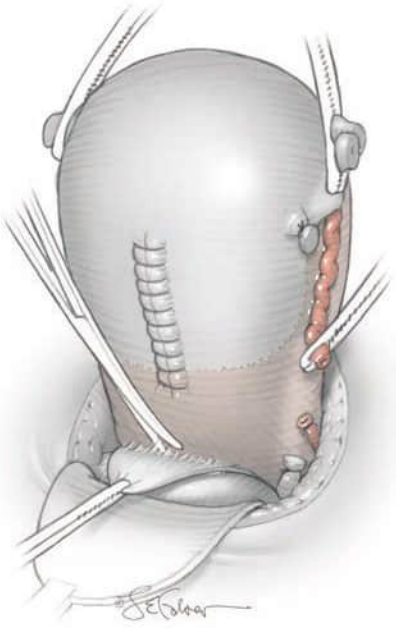


FIGURE 30-17 The bladder is dissected sharply from the lower uterine segment.

uterus in the direction away from the side on which the uterine vessels are being ligated. The ascending uterine artery and veins on either side are identified. These vessels are then clamped adjacent to the uterus (Fig. 30-18). For security, some may prefer two lateral clamps. The medial-most clamp helps prevent back bleeding from the uterus. The uterine vessels are divided, and the lateral tissue pedicle is doubly suture ligated. The medial clamp remains for later removal with the specimen. After securing the uterine vessels on one side, the round ligament, adnexal pedicle, and uterine vessels are then addressed on the contralateral side.

In cases with profuse hemorrhage, time and rapid hemostasis can be gained by quickly clamping and dividing all of the just-described pedicles. Once all are clamped, the surgical team can then return to ligate each pedicle individually.

Total Hysterectomy

Even if total hysterectomy is planned, we find it technically easier in many cases to finish the operation after amputating the uterine fundus and placing Ochsner or Kocher clamps on the cervical stump for traction and hemostasis. Self-retaining retractors also may be placed at this time. To remove the cervix, the bladder is mobilized further if needed. This carries the ureters caudad as the bladder is retracted beneath the symphysis. Bladder retraction can also help prevent laceration or suturing of the bladder during cervical excision and vaginal cuff closure.

The cardinal ligament, the uterosacral ligaments, and the many large vessels within these ligaments are clamped systematically with sturdy Heaney-type curved or straight clamps (Fig. 30-19). The clamps are placed as close to the cervix as possible, taking care not to include excessive tissue in each clamp. The tissue between the pair of clamps is incised, and the lateral pedicle is suture ligated. These steps are repeated caudally and bilaterally until the level of the lateral vaginal fornix is reached on each side. In this way, the descending branches of the uterine vessels are clamped, cut, and ligated as the cervix is separated from the cardinal ligaments.

If the cervix is effaced and dilated considerably, its softness may obscure palpable identification of the cervicovaginal junction. The junction location can be ascertained either through the open hysterotomy incision or through a vertical uterine incision made anteriorly in the midline at the level of the ligated uterine vessels. A finger is directed inferiorly through the incision to identify the free margin of the dilated, effaced cervix. The contaminated glove is replaced. Another useful method to

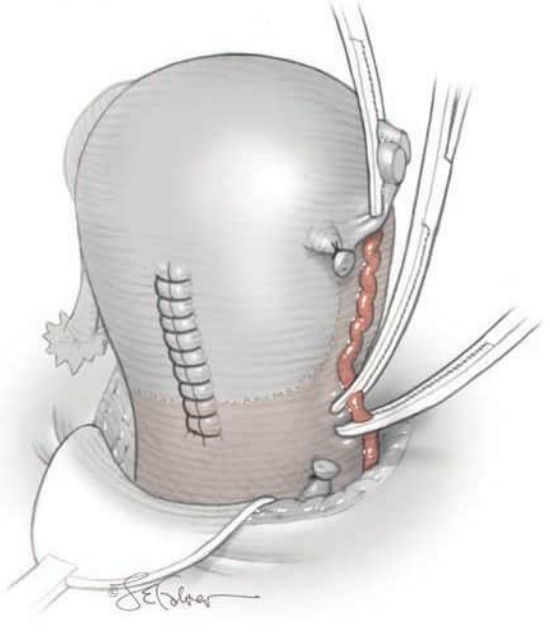


FIGURE 30-18 The uterine vessels are clamped. Once divided, the lateral vascular pedicle is doubly ligated to ensure hemostasis.

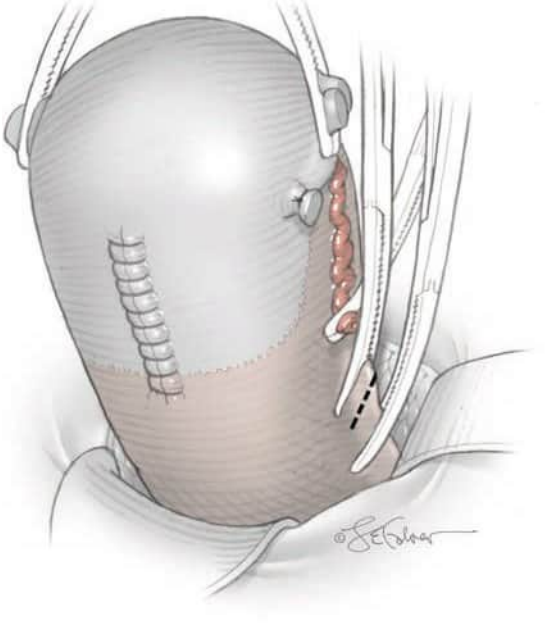


FIGURE 30-19 The cardinal ligaments are clamped, incised, and ligated.

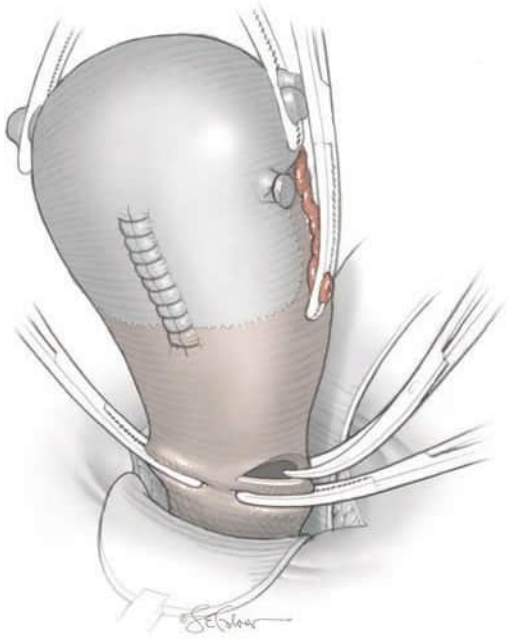


FIGURE 30-20 A curved clamp is placed across the lateral vaginal fornix below the level of the cervix, and the tissue incised medially to the point of the clamp.

identify the cervical margins in cases of planned hysterectomy is to transvaginally place four metal skin clips or brightly colored sutures at 12, 3, 6, and 9 o'clock positions on the cervical edges.

Immediately below the level of the cervix, a curved clamp is placed across the lateral vaginal fornix on each side, and the vagina is incised above the clamp (Fig. 30-20). The cervix is inspected to ensure that it has been completely removed. A transfixing suture is used for vaginal cuff closure as each clamp is removed. Interrupted stitches may be added to approximate the middle portion of the cuff (Fig. 30-21). Each lateral vaginal fornix is secured to the uterosacral ligaments to mitigate later vaginal prolapse. For cuff closure, some surgeons instead prefer to close the vagina by apposing the anterior and posterior vaginal walls with interrupted figure-eight sutures or running suture line.

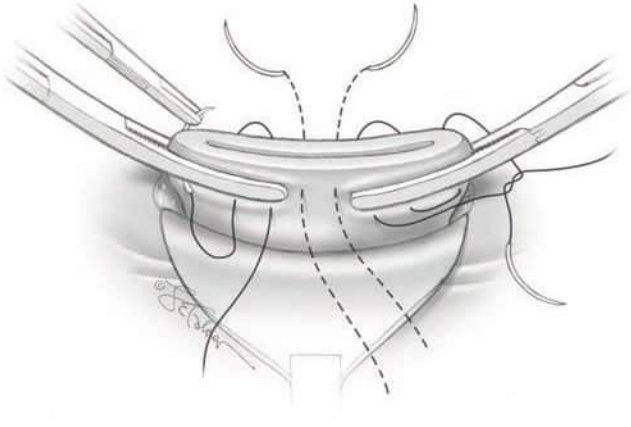


FIGURE 30-21 A transfixing stitch is placed on each side to close the lateral vaginal cuff. Interrupted stitches (dotted lines) may be needed to close any midline gap.

All sites are examined carefully for bleeding. One technique is to perform a systematic bilateral survey from the fallopian tube and ovarian ligament pedicles to the vaginal vault and bladder flap. Bleeding sites are ligated with care to avoid the ureters. The abdominal wall normally is closed in layers, as previously described for cesarean delivery (p. 558).

Supracervical Hysterectomy

To perform a subtotal hysterectomy, the uterine body is amputated immediately above the level of uterine artery ligation. The cervical stump may be closed with a continuous or interrupted suture line of chromic catgut or delayed-absorbable material. Subtotal hysterectomy is often all that is necessary to stop hemorrhage. It may be preferred for women who would benefit from a shorter surgery or for those with extensive adhesions that threaten significant urinary tract injury.

Salpingo-oophorectomy

Because of the large adnexal vessels and their close proximity to the uterus, it may be necessary to remove one or both adnexa to obtain hemostasis. Briery and colleagues (2007) reported unilateral or bilateral oophorectomy in a fourth of cases. Preoperative counseling for anticipated hysterectomy should include this possibility.

■ Urinary Tract or Bowel Injury

These injuries are rare during cesarean delivery. The bladder laceration rate approximates 2 injuries per 1000 cesarean deliveries, whereas that for ureteral trauma nears 0.3 events per 1000 cases (Güngördük, 2010; Oliphant, 2014). Bowel is damaged in about 1 in 1000 cesarean deliveries (Silver, 2006).

Cystotomy

Bladder laceration most commonly occurs during blunt or sharp dissection in the vesicouterine space to create the bladder flap, during peritoneal cavity entry, and during hysterotomy (Phipps, 2005; Rahman, 2009). Risks are prior cesarean delivery; comorbid adhesive disease; emergency cesarean delivery; cesarean hysterectomy, especially cases with morbidly adherent placenta; and surgery in second-stage labor compared with first-stage (Alexander, 2007; Salman, 2017; Silver, 2006).

Bladder injury is typically identified intraoperatively, and a clear-fluid gush or the Foley bulb are indicators. In suspected cases, cystotomy can be confirmed with retrograde instillation of fluid through a Foley catheter and into the bladder. Dilute sterile infant formula is a common, available option. Methylene blue–stained saline is another. Leakage of the indicator fluid aids laceration identification and delineation of its borders. The dome is lacerated most often, and trigone injuries make up the remainder (Phipps, 2005; Salman, 2017).

Prior to cystotomy repair, ureters are examined, and urine jets from each orifice are sought. Inspection can be done directly through the cystotomy, if at the dome. A separate diagnostic extraperitoneal cystotomy may be preferable if the laceration nears the trigone. To aid viewing, urine jets can be colored by IV dye, as described in the next section.

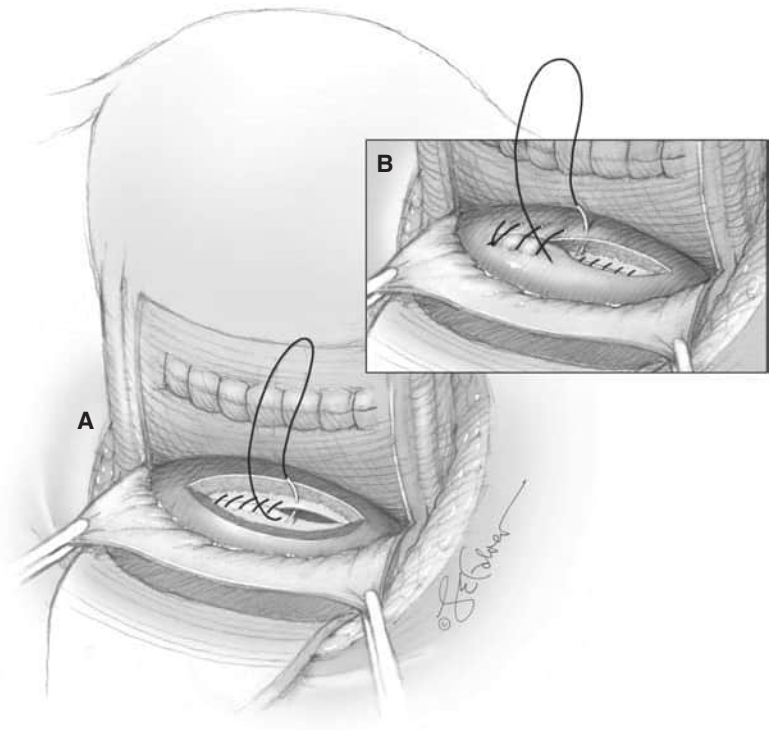


FIGURE 30-22 Cystotomy repair. **A.** The primary layer inverts the bladder mucosa with running or interrupted sutures of 3-0 delayed-absorbable or absorbable suture. **B.** Second and possibly a third layer approximate the bladder muscularis to reinforce the incision closure. (Reproduced with permission from Balgobin S: Urologic and gastrointestinal injuries. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

Once ureteral patency is confirmed, the bladder can be closed with a two- or three-layer running closure using a 3-0 absorbable or delayed-absorbable suture (Fig. 30-22). The first layer inverts the mucosa into the bladder. Subsequent layers reapproximate the bladder muscularis. After the final layer, the bladder is filled with a marker fluid to demonstrate repair integrity. Leaking defects are closed with interrupted reinforcing stitches.

Postoperative care requires continuous bladder drainage for 7 to 14 days to permit healing and minimize the risk of fistula formation. Uropathogen prophylaxis during this drainage is not required. Prior to catheter removal, cystourethrography may not be needed for a simple, single laceration measuring under 1 cm (Glaser, 2019).

Larger lacerations in or near the trigone require careful attention. Specialists may be consulted, and in preparation, ureteral catheters, described in the next section, can be assembled. Ureteral orifices are directly inspected to document jets from both. If not seen, a ureteral catheter may be passed through the cystotomy and into each orifice to confirm patency. Once this is confirmed, repair should not disrupt the ureteral orifices, and stents may remain to ensure their patency.

Unrecognized cystotomy can manifest postoperatively as hematuria, oliguria, abdominal pain, ileus, ascites, peritonitis, fever, urinoma, or fistula. For diagnosis, retrograde cystography or abdominal computed tomography (CT) with cystography can be used (Tarney, 2013). Cystoscopy is also an option but may require a procedural room. Once cystotomy is identified, prompt repair is indicated (Balgobin, 2017).

Ureteral Injury

The ureter may be at risk during cesarean hysterectomy, especially those complicated by placenta accreta syndrome. (Woldu, 2014). Although not our practice, some advocate preoperative ureteral catheter placement to aid intraoperative ureter identification (Eller, 2009; Matsubara, 2013). Organization guidelines recommend individualization of this practice depending on anticipated placenta accreta syndrome complexity (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018; Collins, 2019). Further, initial dorsal lithotomy positioning of the patient for these cases can permit cystoscopy. Aside from hysterectomy, the ureter is also at risk during repair of hysterotomy extensions into the broad ligament or vagina (Safrai, 2020).

If ureteral injury is suspected, IV dye is administered, and the pelvis is directly inspected for extravasation. Of options, 50 mg of IV methylene blue may be given over 5 minutes. However, methylene blue carries the potential for inciting methemoglobinemia in patients with glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency. Another option is 25 or 50 mg of IV 10-percent sodium fluorescein, which stains bright yellow (Espaillat-Rijo, 2016; Grimes, 2017).

Next, brisk dye-stained urine jets are sought from each orifice to exclude ureteral kinking or ligation. Orifice viewing may be via cystoscopy, if available; through a comorbid traumatic cystotomy; or through an intentional diagnostic cystotomy. For the last, a midline extraperitoneal cystotomy in the bladder dome gives excellent exposure. Sluggish or absent jets may reflect patient hypovolemia, and ongoing volume resuscitation may yield expected orifice jets. If not, consultation with a specialist is typically requested to exclude ureteral injury.

While waiting, catheters and stents can be assembled. Semantically, *ureteral catheters* are diagnostic tools, and typically are inserted and removed in the same therapeutic intervention. Most stents are designed to remain indwelling for prolonged ureteral drainage. Both types are hollow to permit radiopaque medium injection and to allow urine egress through or around them (Corton, 2020).

To exclude ureteral obstruction, a 4F to 6F open-ended or whistle-tip catheter is threaded into one orifice. Once inserted, the catheter is advanced to the level of suspected obstruction. If the tool threads easily up toward the renal pelvis, obstruction is unlikely. In most, ureteral injury occurs at or below the pelvic brim, and the distance from the ureteral orifice to the brim approximates 13 cm (Jackson, 2019). Failure to easily advance the catheter may indicate ureteral kinking, ligation, or crush injury. The appearance of the catheter in the abdominal cavity indicates partial or complete transection (Balgobin, 2017).

Repair of ureteral injuries is dependent upon the type of injury and location.

First, kinked or ligated ureters can be relieved by release of ensnaring sutures. Crush injuries are inspected to ensure vital tissue. In these cases, stents are left to avert ureteral stricture. Ureteral stents range from 4F to 7F. Stents vary in length from 20 to 30 cm, and a 24-cm or 26-cm length is appropriate for most adults. Double-pigtail or double-J stents describe their tip shape, and the ends coil within the renal pelvis and bladder, respectively, to prevent stent migration (Corton, 2020). A Foley catheter remains for 7 to 10 days, and the ureteral stents are removed via cystoscopy after 14 days. Intravenous pyelography (IVP) is usually not necessary before removal of the stent if it was placed as a precautionary measure after relatively minor injury (Davis, 1999).

Crush injuries with devascularization, thermal injury, or transection require more extensive repair. If a healthy-appearing ureter can be reimplanted into the bladder without undue tension, then ureteroneocystostomy is preferable. For more proximal injuries, a ureteroureterostomy, a psoas hitch, or a Boari flap may be needed. An explanation of these more extensive procedures is found in *Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics*, 3rd edition (Balgobin, 2017).

Unrecognized ureteral injury can mimic that of cystotomy with the addition of possible costovertebral angle tenderness. CT urography is a preferred initial diagnostic tool (Sharp, 2016). The duration of time from injury to identification directs repair. Those identified early are often suitable for immediate repair.

Bowel Injury

Serosal tears represent weak points in the small bowel. If obstruction develops postoperatively, these weak spots may perforate, leading to peritonitis. If serosal tears are few, they can be oversewn with either a fine absorbable or nonabsorbable suture (Davis, 1999). More significant lacerations are often repaired in consultation with a general surgeon or gynecologic oncologist.

POSTOPERATIVE CARE

Euvolemia Evaluation

During and after cesarean delivery, requirements for IV fluids can vary considerably. Current ERAS strategies aim for euvolemic replacement (Caughey, 2018). Administered fluids consist of either lactated Ringer solution or a similar crystalloid solution with 5-percent dextrose. Blood loss with uncomplicated cesarean delivery approximates 1000 mL. The average-sized woman with a hematocrit of 30 percent or more and with a normally expanded blood and extracellular fluid volume most often will tolerate blood loss up to 2000 mL without difficulty. Unappreciated bleeding through the vagina during the procedure, bleeding concealed in the uterus after its closure, or both commonly lead to underestimation.

Blood loss averages 1500 mL with elective cesarean hysterectomy, although this is variable (Pritchard, 1965). Most peripartum hysterectomies are unscheduled, and blood loss in these cases is correspondingly greater. Thus, in addition to close monitoring of vital signs and urine output, the hematocrit should be determined intra- or postoperatively as indicated.

Recovery Suite

The amount of vaginal bleeding is closely monitored for at least an hour in the immediate postoperative period. The uterine fundus is also identified frequently by palpation to ensure that the uterus remains firmly contracted. Criteria for transfer to the postpartum ward include minimal bleeding, stable vital signs, and adequate urine output.

Hospital Care until Discharge

Analgesia, Vital Signs, Intravenous Fluids

Several schemes are suitable for postoperative pain control. First, adding intrathecal opioid or epidural opioid such as morphine to neuraxial analgesia can provide 12 to 24 hours of postoperative relief (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a; Caughey, 2018). Sedation and respiratory depression rise with increasing intrathecal opioid doses. Postoperative monitoring protocols reflect this and are outlined in Chapter 25 (p. 472) (Bauchat, 2019). Other potential side effects include pruritus, nausea, or vomiting (Sultan, 2016). Despite these, long-acting neuraxial analgesia is recommended instead of intermittent parental opioid dosing (American Society of Anesthesiologists, 2016). For additional relief, nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) can alternate with acetaminophen (Ong, 2010). Breakthrough pain can be relieved by oxycodone 2.5 to 5 mg every 4 hours (Bollag, 2021). Neonatal sedation is a concern, and total oxycodone doses higher 30 mg/d are not recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). Instead, for severe breakthrough pain, intramuscular (IM) meperidine, 50 to 75 mg every 3 to 4 hours, or IM morphine, 10 to 15 mg every 3 to 4 hours, is an option.

For those without neuraxial anesthesia, a transversus abdominis place (TAP) block can be considered (Fig. 2-2, p. 14). Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) also is reasonable. One PCA regimen uses IV morphine given as needed as a 1-mg dose with a 6-minute lockout interval and maximum dose of 30 mg in 4 hours. An additional 2-mg booster dose is permitted for a maximum of two doses.

After transfer to her room, the woman is assessed at least hourly for 4 hours, and thereafter at intervals of 4 hours. Deep breathing and coughing are encouraged to prevent atelectasis. Vital signs, uterine tone, urine output, and vaginal and incisional bleeding are evaluated. The hematocrit is routinely measured the morning after surgery. It is checked sooner if blood loss was significant or if postoperative hypotension, tachycardia, oliguria, or other evidence suggests hypovolemia. If the hematocrit is significantly lower than the preoperative level, the measurement is repeated and a search for the cause is instituted. Clinical and objective thresholds for transfusion are described fully in Chapter 44 (p. 771). If ongoing blood loss is not expected, iron therapy is preferred to transfusion.

Postpartum, the patient begins to mobilize and excrete her physiologically expanded extravascular volume. Thus, maintenance IV fluid proves adequate after surgery until consistent oral intake is reestablished. If urine output falls below 30 mL/hr, however, a woman should be reevaluated promptly. The cause of the oliguria may range from unrecognized blood loss to an antidiuretic effect from infused oxytocin.

Women undergoing unscheduled cesarean delivery may have pathological retention or constriction of the extracellular fluid compartment caused by severe preeclampsia, sepsis syndrome, vomiting, prolonged labor without adequate fluid intake, or increased blood loss. Women with these complications are generally observed in the recovery room until improved.

Bladder and Bowel Function

A Foley catheter is often required to accurately assess urinary output. For women not needing such monitoring, organizations differ in their recommendations. The Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology suggests removal after 6 to 12 hours and cites the urinary retention risks associated with long-acting neuraxial anesthesia (Bollag, 2021). The ERAS Society recommends immediate postoperative removal (Macones, 2019). The prevalence of urinary retention following cesarean delivery approximates 5 percent (Chap. 36, p. 643). Failure to progress in labor and postoperative narcotic analgesia are identified risks (Chai, 2008; Liang, 2007).

In uncomplicated cases, liquids or solid food may be offered within hours of surgery and advanced as tolerated (Guo, 2015; Macones, 2019). Some degree of adynamic ileus follows virtually every laparotomy but is negligible after most cesarean deliveries. Postoperative ileus symptoms include abdominal distention, colic, and an inability to pass flatus or stool. With persistent nausea and vomiting or with prolonged bowel function delay, radiological imaging may help exclude bowel obstruction. A plain abdominal radiograph is a frequent first choice. However, in the general population, this study is diagnostic in only 50 to 60 percent of small-bowel obstruction (SBO) cases (Maglinte, 1997). Thus, a radiograph may best serve as a triage tool in cases in which ileus is the suspected diagnosis. Notably, an enlarged postpartum uterus can compress the rectosigmoid and prevent it from filling with gas. Thus, findings suggesting a distal colonic obstruction may confuse true cases of transient ileus (Kammen, 2000). CT with IV and oral contrast provides greater accuracy for SBO diagnosis. Last, although uncommon, an unrecognized bowel injury may underlie otherwise unexplained fever and bowel dysfunction. Again, CT would be the more diagnostic examination.

For treatment of ileus, IV fluids compensate for poor oral intake and losses from emesis. Electrolyte imbalances are corrected to improve bowel motility and avoid bowel edema. Nasogastric decompression is necessary only with persistent vomiting or severe distention.

For prevention, surgical goals strive to minimize bowel manipulation, avoid excess IV fluids or profound hypovolemia, and limit surgery length (Bragg, 2015). After surgery, gum chewing enhances early bowel function recovery (Ciardulli, 2018). Among studies, chewing was initiated immediately or up to 12 hours later, lasted 15 to 60 minutes, and was repeated in at least three sessions daily (Pereira Gomes Morais, 2016).

Ambulation and Wound Care

As discussed earlier, women undergoing cesarean delivery have an increased VTE risk compared with those delivering vaginally (Chap. 55, p. 989). Early ambulation lowers this risk. Walking to the bathroom begins, initially with assistance. Brief walks are encouraged. For women with marked abdominal laxity, an abdominal binder can aid comfortable deep coughing and ambulation. Evidence supporting routine application for all parturients is limited and conflicting (Chankhunaphas, 2020; Gillier, 2016).

Although not evidence based, we remove the surgical dressing after 24 hours and inspect the incision daily. One small randomized trial showed no wound healing effects if removed at 6 hours (Peleg, 2016). By the third postpartum day, showering does not harm the incision. Prior to this, a plastic covering can maintain dryness during showers. If used, staples are often removed on the fourth postoperative day. In their place, tape strips can remain for 1 week to reinforce skin edge integrity. If potential superficial wound separation, without infection, is a concern, staples can remain for 7 to 10 days.

Hospital Discharge

For uncomplicated cesarean delivery, the average hospitalization length is 3 to 4 days (Buie, 2010). Data from studies suggest that earlier discharge is feasible for properly selected women and newborns (Bayoumi, 2016; Tan, 2012). Protocols ideally include earlier reevaluation for neonatal jaundice. However, discharge before 96 hours leads to a greater neonatal readmission rate (Jones, 2020).

Activities during the first week are limited to self-care and newborn care with assistance. Driving can be resumed when pain does not limit the ability to brake quickly and when narcotic medications are not in use. In women with cesarean delivery, intercourse was resumed in 44 percent by 6 weeks postpartum, 81 percent by 3 months, and 97 percent at 1 year (McDonald, 2013). After the puerperium, the quality of sexual functioning does not differ between those undergoing spontaneous vaginal birth or cesarean delivery (Chang, 2015; Fehniger, 2013; Rogers, 2014). Return to work is variable. Six weeks is commonly cited, although many women use the Family and Medical Leave Act to allow up to 12 weeks for recovery and newborn bonding.

REFERENCES

Abdel-Aleem H, Aboelnasr MF, Jayousi TM, et al: Indwelling bladder catheterisation as part of intraoperative and postoperative care for caesarean section. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD010322, 2014

Abe K, Kuklina EV, Hooper WC, et al: Venous thromboembolism as a cause of severe maternal morbidity and mortality in the United States. Semin Perinatol 43(4):200, 2019

Ahmadzia HK, Patel EM, Joshi D, et al: Obstetric surgical site infections: 2 grams compared with 3 grams of cefazolin in morbidly obese women. Obstet Gynecol 126(4):708, 2015

Alexander JM, Leveno KJ, Hauth J, et al: Fetal injury associated with cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 108(4):885, 2006

Alexander JM, Leveno KJ, Rouse DJ, et al: Comparison of maternal and infant outcomes from primary cesarean delivery during the second compared with first stage of labor. Obstet Gynecol 109(4):917, 2007

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Elk Grove, American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Placenta accreta spectrum. Obstetric Care Consensus No. 7, 2018
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Obstetric analgesia and anesthesia. Practice Bulletin No. 209, March 2019a
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Safe prevention of the primary cesarean delivery. Obstetric Care Consensus No. 1, March 2014, Reaffirmed 2019b
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Vaginal seeding. Committee Opinion No. 725, November 2017, Reaffirmed 2019c
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Cesarean delivery on maternal request. Committee Opinion No. 761, December 2018, Reaffirmed 2020a
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Optimizing support for breastfeeding as part of obstetric practice. Committee Opinion No. 756, September 2018, Reaffirmed 2020b
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Thromboembolism in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 196, June 2018, Reaffirmed 2020c
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Use of prophylactic antibiotics in labor and delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 199, August 2018, Reaffirmed 2020d
American Society of Anesthesiologists: Task Force on Obstetrical Anesthesia: practice guidelines for obstetrical anesthesia. Anesthesiology 124:270, 2016
Anorlu RI, Maholwana B, Hofmeyr GJ: Methods of delivering the placenta at caesarean section. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD004737, 2008
Asıcıoğlu O, Güngördük K, Asıcıoğlu BB, et al: Unintended extension of the lower segment uterine incision at cesarean delivery: a randomized comparison of sharp versus blunt techniques. Am J Perinatol 31(10):837, 2014
Avila C, Bhangoo R, Figueroa R, et al: Association of smoking with wound complications after cesarean delivery. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(8):1250, 2012
Baksu A, Kalan A, Ozkan A, et al: The effect of placental removal method and site of uterine repair on postcesarean endometritis and operative blood loss. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 84(3):266, 2005
Balgobin S: Urologic and gastrointestinal injuries. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2017
Balki I, Khan JS, Staibano P, et al: Effect of perioperative active body surface warming systems on analgesic and clinical outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Anesth Analg 131(5):1430, 2020
Barber EL, Lundsberg LS, Belanger K, et al: Indications contributing to the increasing cesarean delivery rate. Obstet Gynecol 118(1):29, 2011
Basha SL, Rochon ML, Quiñones JN, et al: Randomized controlled trial of wound complication rates of subcuticular suture vs staples for skin closure at cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203(3):285.e1, 2010
Bateman BT, Mhyre JM, Callaghan WM, et al: Peripartum hysterectomy in the United States: nationwide 14 year experience. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(1):63.e1, 2012
Bates SM, Greer IA, Middeldorp S, et al: VTE, thrombophilia, antithrombotic therapy, and pregnancy: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines. Chest 141(2 Suppl):e691S, 2012
Bauchat JR, Weiniger CF, Sultan P, et al: Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology consensus statement: monitoring recommendations for prevention and detection of respiratory depression associated with administration of neuraxial morphine for cesarean delivery analgesia: Anesth Analg 129(2):458, 2019
Bayoumi YA, Bassiouny YA, Hassan AA, et al: Is there a difference in the maternal and neonatal outcomes between patients discharged after 24 h versus 72 h following cesarean section? A prospective randomized observational study on 2998 patients. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(8):1339, 2016
Berhan Y, Berhan A: A meta-analysis of reverse breech extraction to deliver a deeply impacted head during cesarean delivery. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 124(2):99, 2014
Berríos-Torres SI, Umscheid CA, Bratzler DW, et al: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention guideline for the prevention of surgical site infection, 2017. JAMA Surg 152(8):784, 2017
Blankenship SA, Raghuraman N, Delhi A, et al: Association of abnormal first stage of labor duration and maternal and neonatal morbidity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(3):445.e1, 2020
Blomquist JL, Muñoz A, Carroll M: Association of delivery mode with pelvic floor disorders after childbirth. JAMA 320(23):2438, 2018
Bloom SL, Leveno KJ, Spong CY, et al: Decision-to-incision times and maternal and fetal outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 108(1):6, 2006
Bohman VR, Gilstrap L, Leveno K, et al: Subcutaneous tissue: to close or not to close at cesarean section. Am J Obstet Gynecol 166:407, 1992
Bollag L, Lim G, Sultan P, et al: Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology: consensus statement and recommendations for enhanced recovery after cesarean. Anesth Analg 132(5):1362, 2021
Bolze PA, Massoud M, Gaucherand P, et al: What about the Misgav-Ladach surgical technique in patients with previous cesarean sections? Am J Perinatol 30(3):197, 2013
Boyle A, Reddy UM, Landy HJ, et al: Primary cesarean delivery in the United States. Obstet Gynecol 122(1):33, 2013
Boyle JG, Gabbe SG: T and J vertical extensions in low transverse cesarean births. Obstet Gynecol 87(2):238, 1996
Bragg D, El-Sharkawy AM, Psaltis E, et al: Postoperative ileus: recent developments in pathophysiology and management. Clin Nutr 34(3):367, 2015
Briery CM, Rose CH, Hudson WT, et al: Planned vs emergent cesarean hysterectomy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197(2):154.e1, 2007
Buie VC, Owings MF, DeFrances CJ, et al: National Hospital Discharge Survey: 2006 summary. National Center for Health Statistics. Vital Health Stat 13(168):1, 2010
CAESAR Study Collaborative Group: Caesarean section surgical techniques: a randomised factorial trial (CAESAR). BJOG 117(11):1366, 2010
Cahill AG, Stamilio DM, Odibo AO, et al: Is vaginal birth after cesarean (VBAC) or elective repeat cesarean safer in women with a prior vaginal delivery? Am J Obstet Gynecol 195(4):1143, 2006
Caughey AB, Wood SL, Macones GA, et al: Guidelines for intraoperative care in cesarean delivery: Enhanced Recovery after Surgery Society recommendations (Part 2). Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(6):533, 2018
Chai AH, Wong T, Mak HL, et al: Prevalence and associated risk factors of retention of urine after caesarean section. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 194(4):537, 2008
Chang SR, Chen KH, Ho HN, et al: Depressive symptoms, pain, and sexual dysfunction over the first year following vaginal or cesarean delivery: a prospective longitudinal study. Int J Nurs Stud 52(9):1433, 2015
Chankhunaphas W, Charoenkwan K.: Effect of elastic abdominal binder on pain and functional recovery after caesarean delivery: a randomised controlled trial. J Obstet Gynaecol 40(4):473, 2020
Chapman SJ, Owen J, Hauth JC: One versus two-layer closure of a low transverse cesarean: the next pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 89:16, 1997
Cheesman K, Brady JE, Flood P, et al: Epidemiology of anesthesia-related complications in labor and delivery, New York State, 2002–2005. Anesth Analg 109:1174, 2009
Chelmow D, Rodriguez EJ, Sabatini MM: Suture closure of subcutaneous fat and wound disruption after cesarean delivery: a meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 103:974, 2004
Ciardulli A, Saccone G, Di Mascio D, et al: Chewing gum improves postoperative recovery of gastrointestinal function after cesarean delivery: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized trials. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(14):1924, 2018
Clark SL, Belfort MA, Dildy GA, et al: Maternal death in the 21st century: causes, prevention, and relationship to cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199(1):36.e1, 2008
Collins SL, Alemdar B, van Beekhuizen HJ, et al: Evidence-based guidelines for the management of abnormally invasive placenta: recommendations from the International Society for Abnormally Invasive Placenta. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(6):511, 2019
CORONIS Collaborative Group, Abalos E, Addo V, et al: Caesarean section surgical techniques: 3 year follow-up of the CORONIS fractional, factorial, unmasked, randomised controlled trial. Lancet 388(10039):62, 2016
CORONIS Collaborative Group, Abalos E, Addo V, et al: Caesarean section surgical techniques (CORONIS): a fractional, factorial, unmasked, randomised controlled trial. Lancet 382(9888):234, 2013
Corton MM, Schaffer JI: Surgeries for pelvic floor disorders. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2020
Davis JD: Management of injuries to the urinary and gastrointestinal tract during cesarean section. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 26(3):469, 1999
Daykan Y, Sharon-Weiner M, Pasternak Y, et al: Skin closure at cesarean delivery, glue versus subcuticular sutures: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(4):406.e1, 2017
Declercq E, Menacker F, MacDorman M: Rise in "no indicated risk" primary caesareans in the United States, 1991–2001: cross sectional analysis. BMJ 330(7482):71, 2005
de la Torre L, González-Quintero VH, Mayor-Lynn K, et al: Significance of accidental extensions in the lower uterine segment during cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194(5):e4, 2006
Dodd JM, Anderson ER, Gates S, et al: Surgical techniques for uterine incision and uterine closure at the time of caesarean section. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD004732, 2014

Dolan LM, Hilton P: Obstetric risk factors and pelvic floor dysfunction 20 years after first delivery. Int Urogynecol J 21(5):535, 2010
Durnwald C, Mercer B: Uterine rupture, perioperative and perinatal morbidity after single-layer and double-layer closure at cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:925, 2003
Eckler R, Quist-Nelson J, Saccone G, et al: Adhesive incisional drapes during cesarean delivery for preventing wound infection: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol X 4:100090, 2019
Edwards RK, Ingersoll M, Gerkin RD, et al: Carboxymethylcellulose adhesion barrier placement at primary cesarean delivery and outcomes at repeat cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 123(5):923, 2014
Eke AC, Shukr GH, Chaalan TT, et al: Intra-abdominal saline irrigation at cesarean section: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(10):1588, 2016
Eller AG, Porter TF, Soisson P, et al: Optimal management strategies for placenta accreta. BJOG 116(5):648, 2009
Espaillat-Rijo L, Siff L, Alas AN, et al: Intraoperative cystoscopic evaluation of ureteral patency: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 128(6):1378, 2016
Fehniger JE, Brown JS, Creasman JM, et al: Childbirth and female sexual function later in life. Obstet Gynecol 122(5):988, 2013
Figueroa D, Jauk VC, Szychowski JM, et al: Surgical staples compared with subcuticular suture for skin closure after cesarean delivery: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 121(1):33, 2013
Flood KM, Said S, Geary M, et al: Changing trends in peripartum hysterectomy over the last 4 decades. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(6):632.e1, 2009
Food and Drug Administration: Recommendations to reduce surgical fires and related patient injury: FDA safety communication. 2018. Available at: https://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/Safety/AlertsandNotices/ucm608637.htm. Accessed February 6, 2019
Franchini M, Mengoli C, Cruciani M, et al: Safety and efficacy of tranexamic acid for prevention of obstetric haemorrhage: an updated systematic review and meta-analysis. Blood Transfus 16(4):329, 2018
Frederick A, Fry T, Clowtis L: Intraoperative mother and baby skin-to-skin contact during cesarean birth: systematic review. MCN Am J Matern Child Nurs 45(5):296, 2020
Gillespie BM, Webster J, Ellwood D, et al: Closed incision negative pressure wound therapy versus standard dressings in obese women undergoing caesarean section: multicentre parallel group randomised controlled trial. BMJ 373:n893, 2021
Gillier CM, Sparks JR, Kriner R, et al: A randomized controlled trial of abdominal binders for the management of postoperative pain and distress after cesarean delivery. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 133(2):188, 2016
Glaser LM, Milad MP: Bowel and bladder injury repair and follow-up after gynecologic surgery. Obstet Gynecol 133(2):313, 2019
Glaze S, Ekwalanga P, Roberts G, et al: Peripartum hysterectomy: 1999 to 2006. Obstet Gynecol 111(3):732, 2008
Goldfarb I, Henry D, Dumont O, et al: Inadvertent hysterotomy extension at cesarean delivery and risk of uterine rupture in the next pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(1, Suppl): S266, 2011
Gordon A, McKechnie EJ, Jeffery H: Pediatric presence at cesarean section: justified or not? Am J Obstet Gynecol 193(3 pt 1):599, 2005
Govindappagari S, Wright JD, Ananth CV, et al: Risk of peripartum hysterectomy and center hysterectomy and delivery volume. Obstet Gynecol 128(6):1215, 2016
Grimes CL, Patankar S, Ryntz T, et al: Evaluating ureteral patency in the post-indigo carmine era: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(5):601.e1, 2017
Grundsell HS, Rizk DE, Kumar RM: Randomized study of non-closure of peritoneum in lower segment cesarean section. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 77:110, 1998
Grupper M, Kuti JL, Swank ML, et al: Population pharmacokinetics of cefazolin in serum and adipose tissue from overweight and obese women undergoing cesarean delivery. J Clin Pharmacol 57(6):712, 2017
Guise JM, Denman MA, Emeis C, et al: Vaginal birth after cesarean: new insights on maternal and neonatal outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 115(6):1267, 2010
Güngördük K, Asıcıoğlu O, Celikkol O, et al: Iatrogenic bladder injuries during caesarean delivery: a case control study. J Obstet Gynaecol 30(7):667, 2010
Guo J, Long S, Li H, et al: Early versus delayed oral feeding for patients after cesarean. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 128(2):100, 2015
Gyhagen M, Bullarbo M, Nielsen TF, et al: Prevalence and risk factors for pelvic organ prolapse 20 years after childbirth: a national cohort study in singleton primiparae after vaginal or caesarean delivery. BJOG 120(2):152, 2013a
Gyhagen M, Bullarbo M, Nielsen TF, et al: The prevalence of urinary incontinence 20 years after childbirth: a national cohort study in singleton primiparae after vaginal or caesarean delivery. BJOG 120(2):144, 2013b
Haas DM, Morgan S, Contreras K: Vaginal preparation with antiseptic solution before cesarean section for preventing postoperative infections. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD007892, 2020
Hadiati DR, Hakimi M, Nurdiati DS, et al: Skin preparation for preventing infection following caesarean section. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD007462, 2020
Handa VL, Blomquist JL, Knoepp LR, et al: Pelvic floor disorders 5–10 years after vaginal or cesarean childbirth. Obstet Gynecol 118(4):777, 2011
Hawkins JL, Chang J, Palmer SK, et al: Anesthesia-related maternal mortality in the United States: 1979–2002. Obstet Gynecol 117(1):69, 2011
Hellums EK, Lin MG, Ramsey PS: Prophylactic subcutaneous drainage for prevention of wound complications after cesarean delivery—a metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197(3):229, 2007
Hernandez JS, Nuangchamnong N, Ziadie M, et al: Placental and uterine pathology in women undergoing peripartum hysterectomy. Obstet Gynecol 119(6):1137, 2012
Hofmeyr JG, Novikova N, Mathai M, et al: Techniques for cesarean section. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(5):431, 2009
Holmgren G, Sjöholm L, Stark M: The Misgav Ladach method for cesarean section: method description. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 78(7):615, 1999
Hou L, Hellerstein S, Vitonis A, et al: Cross sectional study of mode of delivery and maternal and perinatal outcomes in mainland China. PLoS One 12(2):e0171779, 2017
Hubbard R, Waters JH, Yazer MH: Heterogeneity in blood product acceptance among antenatal patients of the Jehovah's Witness faith. Obstet Gynecol 126(5):974, 2015
Hussamy DJ, Wortman AC, McIntire DD, et al: Closed incision negative pressure therapy in morbidly obese women undergoing cesarean delivery: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 134(4):781, 2019
Irion O, Luzuy F, Beguin F: Nonclosure of the visceral and parietal peritoneum at caesarean section: a randomised controlled trial. Br J Obstet Gynaecol 103:690, 1996
Jackson LA, Ramirez DM, Carrick KS, et al: Gross and histologic anatomy of the pelvic ureter: clinical applications to pelvic surgery. Obstet Gynecol 133(5):896, 2019
Jelovsek JE, Chagin K, Gyhagen M, et al: Predicting risk of pelvic floor disorders 12 and 20 years after delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(2):222.e1, 2018
Jenusaitis L, Keplinger KB, Dean K, et al: Impact of a delayed cord clamping protocol on maternal and neonatal outcomes in patients undergoing term cesarean section. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med December 7, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Jeve YB, Navti OB, Konje JC: Comparison of techniques used to deliver a deeply impacted fetal head at full dilation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 123(3):337, 2016
Johnson DD: Cesarean delivery. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2017
Jones E, Taylor B, MacArthur C, et al: Early postnatal discharge for infants: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 146(3):e20193365, 2020
Kalafat E, Gokce A, O'Brien P, et al: Efficacy of carbetocin in the prevention of postpartum hemorrhage: a systematic review and Bayesian meta-analysis of randomized trials. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(14):2303, 2021
Kallianidis AF, Maraschini A, Danis J, et al: Epidemiological analysis of peripartum hysterectomy across nine European countries. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(10):1364, 2020
Kammen BF, Levine MS, Rubesin SE, et al: Adynamic ileus after caesarean section mimicking intestinal obstruction: findings on abdominal radiographs. Br J Radiol 73(873):951, 2000
Kapustian V, Anteby EY, Gdalevich M, et al: Effect of closure versus nonclosure of peritoneum at cesarean section on adhesions: a prospective randomized study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(1):56.e1, 2012
Karavani G, Chill HH, Reuveni-Salzman A: Risk factors for uterine incision extension during cesarean delivery. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med June 24, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Ker K, Shakur H, Roberts I: Does tranexamic acid prevent postpartum haemorrhage? A systematic review of randomised controlled trials. BJOG 123(11):1745, 2016
Kerr JM: The lower uterine segment incision in conservative caesarean section. J Obstet Gynaecol Br Emp 28:475, 1921
Kiefer DG, Muscat JC, Santorelli J, et al: Effectiveness and short-term safety of modified sodium hyaluronic acid-carboxymethylcellulose at cesarean delivery: a randomized trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(3):373.e1, 2016
Kirscht J, Weiss C, Nickol J, et al: Dilatation or no dilatation of the cervix during cesarean section (Dondi Trial): a randomized controlled trial. Arch Gynecol Obstet 295(1):39, 2017

Kowalski TJ, Kothari SN, Mathiason MA, et al: Impact of hair removal on surgical site infection rates: a prospective randomized noninferiority trial. J Am Coll Surg 223(5):704, 2016
Kristensen K, Henriksen L: Cesarean section and disease associated with immune function. J Allergy Clin Immunol 137:587, 2016
Krönig B: Transperitonealer cervikaler Kaiserschnitt. In: Doderlein A, Krönig B (eds): Operative Gynäkologie, 3rd ed. Leipzig, Thieme, 1912
Larsson C, Saltvedt S, Wiklund I, et al: Planned vaginal delivery versus planned caesarean section: short-term medical outcome analyzed according to intended mode of delivery. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 33(8):796, 2011
Lawson T, Ralph C: Perioperative Jehovah's Witnesses: a review. Br J Anaesth 115(5):676, 2015
Lefebvre A, Saliou P, Lucet JC, et al: Preoperative hair removal and surgical site infections: network meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. J Hosp Infect 91(2):100, 2015
Liabsuetrakul T, Peeyananjarassri K: Mechanical dilatation of the cervix during elective caeserean section before the onset of labour for reducing postoperative morbidity. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD008019, 2018
Liang CC, Chang SD, Chang YL, et al: Postpartum urinary retention after cesarean delivery. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 99(3):229, 2007
Linder N, Linder I, Fridman E, et al: Birth trauma—risk factors and short-term neonatal outcome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(15):1491, 2013
Liu X, Landon MB, Cheng W, et al: Cesarean delivery on maternal request in China: what are the risks and benefits? Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(6):817.e1, 2015
Luke B, Brown MB, Wantman E, et al: Risk of severe maternal morbidity by maternal fertility status: a US study in 8 states. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(2):195.e1, 2019
MacArthur C, Glazener C, Lancashire R, et al: Exclusive caesarean section delivery and subsequent urinary and faecal incontinence: a 12-year longitudinal study. BJOG 118(8):1001, 2011
MacArthur C, Wilson D, Herbison P, et al: Faecal incontinence persisting after childbirth: a 12 year longitudinal study. BJOG 120(2):169, 2013
Mackeen AD, Khalifeh A, Fleisher J, et al: Suture compared with staple skin closure after cesarean delivery: a randomized controlled trial Obstet Gynecol 123(6):1169, 2014a
Mackeen AD, Packard RE, Ota E, et al: Timing of intravenous prophylactic antibiotics for preventing postpartum infectious morbidity in women undergoing cesarean delivery. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 12:CD009516, 2014b
Mackeen AD, Schuster M, Berghella V: Suture versus staples for skin closure after cesarean: a metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(5):621.e1, 2015
Macones GA, Caughey AB, Wood SL, et al: Guidelines for postoperative care in cesarean delivery: Enhanced Recovery after Surgery (ERAS) Society recommendations (part 3). Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(3):247.e1, 2019
Maggio L, Nicolau DP, DaCosta M, et al: Cefazolin prophylaxis in obese women undergoing cesarean delivery: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 125(5):1205, 2015
Maglinte DD, Balthazar EJ, Kelvin FM, et al: The role of radiology in the diagnosis of small bowel obstruction. AJR Am J Roentgenol 168(5):1171, 1997
Markwei MT, Babatunde I, Rathi N, et al: Preincision adjunctive prophylaxis for cesarean deliveries a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol May 5, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]
Marshall NE, Fu R, Guise JM: Impact of multiple cesarean deliveries on maternal morbidity: a systematic review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(3):262.e1, 2011
Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJ: Births: final data for 2018. Natl Vital Stat Rep 68(13):1, 2019
Mathai M, Hofmeyr GJ, Mathai NE: Abdominal surgical incisions for caesarean section. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD004453, 2013
Matsubara S, Kuwata T, Usui R, et al: Important surgical measures and techniques at cesarean hysterectomy for placenta previa accreta. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 92(4):372, 2013
McDonald EA, Brown SJ: Does method of birth make a difference to when women resume sex after childbirth? BJOG 120(7):823, 2013
Moczygemba CK, Paramsothy P, Meikle S, et al: Route of delivery and neonatal birth trauma. Am J Obstet Gynecol 202(4):361.e1, 2010
Moore ER, Bergman N, Anderson GC, et al: Early skin-to-skin contact for mothers and their healthy newborn infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD003519, 2016
Morales A, Reyes O, Cárdenas G: Type of blunt expansion of the low transverse uterine incision during caesarean section and the risk of postoperative complications: a prospective randomized controlled trial. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 41(3):306, 2019
Morales KJ, Gordon MC, Bates GW Jr: Postcesarean delivery adhesions associated with delayed delivery of infant. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196(5):461.e1, 2007
Nagele F, Karas H, Spitzer D, et al: Closure or nonclosure of the visceral peritoneum at cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:1366, 1996
National Institutes of Health: State-of-the-Science Conference Statement on Cesarean Delivery on Maternal Request. NIH Consens Sci Statements 23(1):1, 2006
Nelson RL, Go C, Darwish R, et al: Cesarean delivery to prevent anal incontinence: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Tech Coloproctol 23(9):809, 2019
Oliphant SS, Bochenska K, Tolge ME, et al: Maternal lower urinary tract injury at the time of cesarean delivery. Int Urogynecol J 25(12):1709, 2014
Olofsson P: Opening of the abdomen ad modum Joel Cohen, Joel-Cohen, Joel Joel-Cohen, or just Cohen? Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 94(2):224, 2015
O'Neill HA, Egan G, Walsh CA, et al: Omission of the bladder flap at caesarean section reduces delivery time without increased morbidity: a meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 174:20, 2014
Ong CK, Seymour RA, Lirk P, et al: Combining paracetamol (acetaminophen) with nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs: a qualitative systematic review of analgesic efficacy for acute postoperative pain. Anesth Analg 110:1170, 2010
Orbach A, Levy A, Wiznitzer A, et al: Peripartum cesarean hysterectomy: critical analysis of risk factors and trends over the years. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 24(3):480, 2011
Osmundson SS, Garabedian MJ, Lyell DJ: Risk factors for classical hysterotomy by gestational age. Obstet Gynecol 122:845, 2013
Osmundson SS, Garabedian MJ, Yeaton-Massey A, et al: Risk factors for classical hysterotomy in twin pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 125(3):643, 2015
Patterson LS, O'Connell CM, Baskett TF: Maternal and perinatal morbidity associated with classic and inverted T cesarean incisions. Obstet Gynecol 100(4):633, 2002
Peleg D, Eberstark E, Warsof SL, et al: Early wound dressing removal after scheduled cesarean delivery: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(3):388.e1, 2016
Pereira Gomes Morais E, Riera R, Porfírio GJ, et al: Chewing gum for enhancing early recovery of bowel function after caesarean section. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD011562, 2016
Phipps MG, Watabe B, Clemons JL, et al: Risk factors for bladder injury during cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 105(1):156, 2005
Pritchard JA: Changes in the blood volume during pregnancy and delivery. Anesthesiology 26:393, 1965
Purisch SE, Ananth CV, Arditi B, et al: Effect of delayed vs immediate umbilical cord clamping on maternal blood loss in term cesarean delivery: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA 322(19):1869, 2019
Rahman MS, Gasem T, Al Suleiman SA, et al: Bladder injuries during cesarean section in a university hospital: a 25-year review. Arch Gynecol Obstet 279(3):349, 2009
Ramsey PS, White AM, Guinn DA, et al: Subcutaneous tissue reapproximation, alone or in combination with drain, in obese women undergoing cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 105(5 Pt 1):967, 2005
Roach MK, Abramovici A, Tita AT: Dose and duration of oxytocin to prevent postpartum hemorrhage: a review. Am J Perinatol 30(7):523, 2013
Roberge S, Demers S, Berghella V, et al: Impact of single- vs double-layer closure on adverse outcomes and uterine scar defect: a systematic review and metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(5):453, 2014
Roeckner JT, Sanchez-Ramos L, Mitta M, et al: Povidone-iodine 1% is the most effective vaginal antiseptic for preventing post-cesarean endometritis: a systematic review and network meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(3):261.e1, 2019
Rogers RG, Leeman LM, Borders N, et al: Contribution of the second stage of labour to pelvic floor dysfunction: a prospective cohort comparison of nulliparous women. BJOG 121(9):1145, 2014
Rossi AC, Lee RH, Chmait RH: Emergency postpartum hysterectomy for uncontrolled postpartum bleeding: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 115(3):637, 2010
Rossouw JN, Hall D, Harvey J: Time between skin incision and delivery during cesarean. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 121(1):82, 2013
Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists: Birth after previous caesarean birth. Green-Top Guideline No. 45, October 2015
Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists: Reducing the risk of venous thromboembolism during pregnancy and the puerperium. Green-Top Guideline No. 37a, April 2015
Saad AF, Rahman M, Costantine MM, et al: Blunt versus sharp uterine incision expansion during low transverse cesarean delivery: a metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(6):684.e1, 2014
Saaqib S, Iqbal A, Naheed M, et al: A randomized controlled trial of cystoinflation to prevent bladder injury in the adhesive disease of multiple caesarean sections. Sci Rep 10(1):15297, 2020

Sacre H, Bird A, Clement-Jones M, et al: Effectiveness of the fetal pillow to prevent adverse maternal and fetal outcomes at full dilatation cesarean section in routine practice. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 100(5):949, 2021
Safrai M, Stern S, Gofrit ON, et al: Urinary tract injuries during cesarean delivery: long-term outcome and management. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med October 4, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Salman L, Aharony S, Shmueli A, et al: Urinary bladder injury during cesarean delivery: maternal outcome from a contemporary large case series. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 213:26, 2017
Scharman CD, Burger D, Shatzel JJ, et al: Treatment of individuals who cannot receive blood products for religious or other reasons. Am J Hematol 92(12):1370, 2017
Seal SL, Dey A, Barman SC, et al: Randomized controlled trial of elevation of the fetal head with a fetal pillow during cesarean delivery at full cervical dilatation. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 133(2):178, 2016
Sentilhes L, Sénat MV, Le Lous M, et al: Tranexamic acid for the prevention of blood loss after cesarean delivery N Engl J Med 384(17):1623, 2021
Shao Y, Forster SC, Tsaliki E, et al: Stunted microbiota and opportunistic pathogen colonization in caesarean-section birth. Nature 574(7776):117, 2019
Sharp HT, Adelman MR. Prevention, recognition, and management of urologic injuries during gynecologic surgery. Obstet Gynecol 127(6):1085, 2016
Shellhaas CS, Gilbert S, Landon MB, et al: The frequency and complication rates of hysterectomy accompanying cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 114(2 Pt 1):224, 2009
Siddiqui DS, Lacuna EM, Chen HY, et al: Skin closure of Pfannenstiel incision with Dermabond, staples, or suture during cesarean delivery: experience of a single attending. Am J Perinatol 30(3):219, 2013
Sikirica V, Broder MS, Chang E, et al: Clinical and economic impact of adhesiolysis during repeat cesarean delivery. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91(6):719, 2012
Silver RM, Landon MB, Rouse DJ, et al: Maternal morbidity associated with multiple repeat cesarean deliveries. Obstet Gynecol 107:1226, 2006
Smaill FM, Grivell RM: Antibiotic prophylaxis versus no prophylaxis for preventing infection after cesarean section. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD007482, 2014
Smid MC, Smiley SG, Schulkin J, et al: The problem of the pannus: physician preference survey and a review of the literature on cesarean skin incision in morbidly obese women. Am J Perinatol 33(5):463, 2016
Stegwee SI, van der Voet LF, Ben AJ, et al: Effect of single- versus double-layer uterine closure during caesarean section on postmenstrual spotting (2Close): multicentre, double-blind, randomised controlled superiority trial. BJOG 128(5):866, 2021
Stone J, Bianco A, Monro J, et al: Study to reduce infection prior to elective cesarean deliveries (STRIPES): a randomized clinical trial of chlorhexidine. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(1):113.e1, 2020
Sullivan SA, Smith T, Chang E, et al: Administration of cefazolin prior to skin incision is superior to cefazolin at cord clamping in preventing postcesarean infectious morbidity: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196:455, 2007
Sultan P, Halpern SH, Pushpanathan E, et al: The effect of intrathecal morphine dose on outcomes after elective cesarean delivery: a meta-analysis. Anesth Analg 123(1):154, 2016
Swank ML, Wing DA, Nicolau DP, et al: Increased 3-gram cefazolin dosing for cesarean delivery prophylaxis in obese women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(3):415.e1, 2015
Tan PG, Norazilah MJ, Omar SZ: Hospital discharge on the first compared with the second day after a planned cesarean delivery: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 120(6):1273, 2012
Tanner J, Norrie P, Melen K: Preoperative hair removal to reduce surgical site infection. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD004122, 2011
Tarney CM: Bladder injury during cesarean delivery. Curr Womens Health Rev 9(2):70, 2013
The Joint Commission: The universal protocol. 2020. Available at: https://www.jointcommission.org/standards/universal-protocol/. Accessed December 1, 2020
Tita AT, Hauth JC, Grimes A, et al: Decreasing incidence of postcesarean endometritis with extended-spectrum antibiotic prophylaxis. Obstet Gynecol 111(1):51, 2008
Tita AT, Landon MB, Spong CY, et al: Timing of elective repeat cesarean delivery at term and neonatal outcomes. N Engl J Med 360(2):111, 2009
Tita AT, Szychowski JM, Boggess K, et al: Adjunctive azithromycin prophylaxis for cesarean delivery. N Engl J Med 375(13):1231, 2016
Tolcher MC, Johnson RL, El-Nashar SA, et al: Decision-to-incision time and neonatal outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 123(3):536, 2014
Tolcher MC, Whitham MD, El-Nashar SA, et al: Chlorhexidine-alcohol compared with povidone-iodine preoperative skin antisepsis for cesarean delivery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Perinatol 36(2):118, 2019
Tulandi T, Agdi M, Zarei A, Miner L, et al: Adhesion development and morbidity after repeat cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(1):56.e1, 2009
Tuuli MG, Liu J, Tita AT, et al: Effect of prophylactic negative pressure wound therapy vs standard wound dressing on surgical-site infection in obese women after cesarean delivery: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA 324(12):1180, 2020
Tuuli MG, Odibo AO, Fogertey P, et al: Utility of the bladder flap at cesarean delivery: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 119(4):815, 2012
Tuuli MG, Stout MJ, Martin S, et al: Comparison of suture materials for subcuticular skin closure at cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(4):490.e1, 2016
Valent AM, DeArmond C, Houston JM, et al: Effect of post-cesarean delivery oral cephalexin and metronidazole on surgical site infection among obese women: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA 318(11):1026, 2017
Villar J, Carroli G, Zavaleta N, et al: Maternal and neonatal individual risks and benefits associated with caesarean delivery: multicentre prospective study. BJM 335:1025, 2007
Viney R, Isaacs C, Chelmow D: Intra-abdominal irrigation at cesarean delivery: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 119(6):1106, 2012
Waring GJ, Shawer S, Hinshaw K: The use of O-ring retractors at caesarean section: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 228:209, 2018
Wilhelm NB, Bonsall TJ, Miller CL: The effect of beta-lactam allergy status on the rate of surgical site infections: a retrospective cohort study. Ann Surg June 3, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Wilson RD, Caughey AB, Wood SL, et al: Guidelines for antenatal and preoperative care in cesarean delivery: Enhanced Recovery after Surgery Society recommendations (Part 1). Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(6):523.e1, 2018
Woldu SL, Ordonez MA, Devine PC, et al: Urologic considerations of placenta accreta: a contemporary tertiary care institutional experience. Urol Int 93(1):74, 2014
Wolf O, Weissman O, Harats M, et al: Birth wind and fire: raising awareness to operating room fires during delivery. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(13):1303, 2013
Wolfson AR, Mancini CM, Banerji A, et al: Penicillin allergy assessment in pregnancy: safety and impact on antibiotic use. J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract 9(3):1338, 2021
World Health Organization: WHO recommendations: uterotonics for the prevention of postpartum haemorrhage. Geneva, WHO, 2018
Worley KC, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: The prognosis for spontaneous labor in women with uncomplicated term pregnancies: implications for cesarean delivery on maternal request. Obstet Gynecol 113(4):812, 2009
Wyckoff MH, Aziz K, Escobedo MB, et al: Part 13: Neonatal resuscitation: 2015 American Heart Association guidelines update for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. Circulation 132(18 Suppl 2):S543, 2015
Wylie BJ, Gilbert S, Landon MB, et al: Comparison of transverse and vertical skin incision for emergency cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 115(6):1134, 2010
Xodo S, Saccone G, Cromi A, et al: Cephalad-caudad versus transverse blunt expansion of the low transverse uterine incision during cesarean delivery. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 202:75, 2016
Young OM, Shaik IH, Twedt R, et al: Pharmacokinetics of cefazolin prophylaxis in obese gravidae at time of cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(4):541.e1, 2015
Zaphiratos V, George RB, Boyd JC, et al: Uterine exteriorization compared with in situ repair for cesarean delivery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Can J Anaesth 62(11):1209, 2015

CHAPTER 31

Prior Cesarean Delivery

By the beginning of the 20th century, cesarean delivery had become a relatively safe procedure. However, rupture of the uterine scar with subsequent labor was appreciated early. This danger resulted in the oft-quoted remark by Cragin (1916) that "Once a cesarean, always a cesarean." During the intervening 50 years, enthusiasm developed to allow many of these women to be delivered vaginally. But, as chronicled next, this support has waned during the past three decades. So, as we reach the 100-year mark of Cragin's pronouncement, the issue remains largely unsettled.

100 YEARS OF CONTROVERSY

Despite Cragin's early philosophy, some practitioners did allow labor in a subsequent pregnancy after a cesarean delivery. Eastman (1950) described a 30-percent postcesarean vaginal delivery rate at Johns Hopkins Hospital. He also reported a 2-percent uterine rupture rate and associated 10-percent maternal mortality rate. As modern techniques made cesarean delivery safer, observational studies during the 1960s suggested that postcesarean vaginal delivery was a reasonable option (Pauerstein, 1966, 1969). Germane to this is that through the 1960s, the overall cesarean delivery rate approximated only 5 percent. Since then, as the primary cesarean rate has escalated, the repeat cesarean delivery rate followed (Rosenstein, 2013).

During the 1980s, a National Institutes of Health (NIH) Consensus Development Conference on Vaginal Birth After Cesarean (1981) was convened, and the participants questioned the necessity of routine repeat cesarean delivery. With support and encouragement from the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (1988, 1994), enthusiastic attempts were begun to increase the practice rate of *vaginal birth after cesarean—VBAC*. These attempts were highly successful, and VBAC rates rose from 3.4 percent in 1980 to a peak of 28.3 percent in 1996. This rate and a concomitant decline in total cesarean delivery rate for the United States, are shown in Figure 31-1. Also, a new lexicon was developed to describe these practices and outcomes (Table 31-1).

However, with the higher postcesarean vaginal delivery rate, reports of uterine rupture-related maternal and perinatal morbidity and mortality began to appear (McMahon, 1996; Sachs, 1999). These complications dampened prevailing enthusiasm for a *trial of labor after cesarean section (TOLAC)*. They also prompted the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (1998) to caution that such trials should be attempted only in appropriately equipped institutions with physicians *readily available* to provide emergency care. Less than a year later, the College (1999) recommended that physicians should be *immediately available* when pursuing a TOLAC. Many believe that this one-word change—from *readily* to *immediately* available—was an impetus for the resulting decade-long decline in national VBAC rates illustrated in Figure 31-1 (Cheng, 2014; Leeman, 2013).

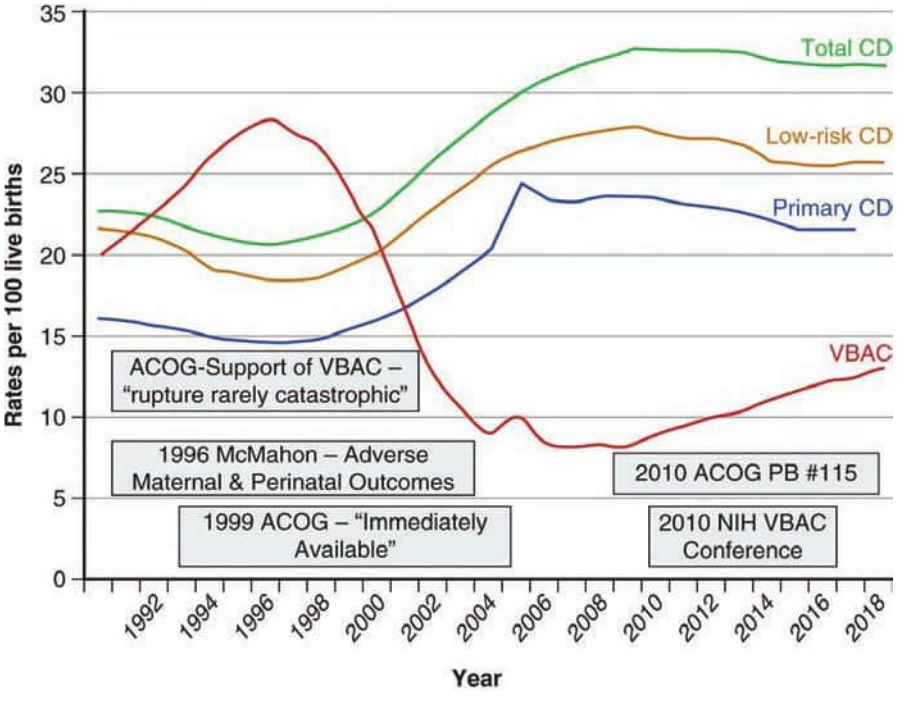


FIGURE 31-1 Total, primary, and low-risk cesarean delivery (CD) rates and vaginal birth after previous cesarean (VBAC) rates in the United States, 1989–2018. Epochs denoted within rectangles represent contemporaneous ongoing events related to these rates. ACOG = American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists; NIH = National Institutes of Health; PB = practice bulletin. (Data from Hamilton, 2015, 2016; Martin, 2019; National Institutes of Health: NIH Consensus Development Conference, 2010.)

Using birth certificate data for 2013, Curtin and associates (2015) reported that only 1 in 5 women with one prior cesarean delivery attempted a TOLAC. In women with two or more prior cesarean deliveries, less than 1 in 10 women attempt a TOLAC, and half resulted in successful vaginal deliveries. At Parkland Hospital, although only 15 percent of women choose a TOLAC, the VBAC rate is 86 percent.

Thus, multiple interrelated factors—both medical and nonmedical—undoubtedly contributed to declining VBAC rates. Because of this, in 2010 the NIH convened a Consensus Development Conference Panel to study the issue. The panel report included a contemporaneous summary concerning the risks and benefits of repeat cesarean versus vaginal delivery. These findings were subsequently described and coupled with current recommendations by various professional organizations. As shown in Figure 31-1, it would seem that this report was followed by a slight rise in the VBAC rate.

In a cross-sectional analysis between 1990 and 2009, the proportion of women with a prior cesarean delivery who underwent a TOLAC peaked in 1995, and slightly more than half of these women chose this option (Fig. 31-2). After this, the proportion of women *attempting* TOLAC declined to a nadir of 16 percent in 2006 and subsequently rose to 21 percent through 2009. Additionally, the percentage of VBACs reached its peak of 70 percent in 2000 but subsequently declined to a nadir of 38 percent in 2006 (Uddin, 2013).

TABLE 31-1. Acronyms Used to Describe Management of Women with a Prior Cesarean Delivery

CD: cesarean delivery
TOL: trial of labor
VBAC: vaginal birth after CD
TOLAC: trial of labor after CD
Failed TOLAC: resulting in CD
Successful TOLAC: resulting in VBAC
ERCD: elective repeat cesarean delivery
Scheduled ERCD: CD planned before labor
Unscheduled ERCD: planned scheduled CD but indications for early delivery, e.g., spontaneous labor, abruption, etc.
Uterine rupture:
Complete: all uterine wall layers separated
Incomplete: uterine dehiscence with uterine muscle separated but peritoneum intact

INFLUENCING FACTORS

For the woman with a prior cesarean delivery, planning for future pregnancies and delivery route should begin with preconceptional counseling and be addressed again early in prenatal care. Importantly, decisions made throughout pregnancy regarding delivery mode are subject to continuing revisions as dictated by exigencies that arise during pregnancy. Assuming no mitigating circumstances, there are two basic choices. First,

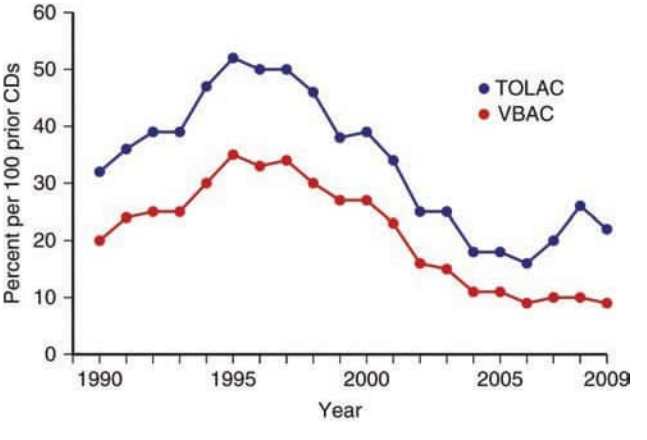


FIGURE 31-2 Percentage of women with a prior cesarean delivery who attempted a trial of labor (TOLAC) compared with the successful vaginal delivery (VBAC) rate for the United States 1990–2009. (Data from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention; National Center for Health Statistics; Curtin, 2015; Simon, 2013; Uddin, 2013).

TABLE 31-2. Some Factors That Influence a Successful Trial of Labor in a Woman with Prior Cesarean Delivery (CD)

Low-Risk	Favors Success	Increased Failure Rate	High-Risk[a]
Transverse incision	Teaching hospital	Single mother	Classical or T incision
Prior vaginal delivery	White race	Advanced maternal age	Prior uterine rupture
Appropriate counseling	Spontaneous labor	Macrosomic fetus	Patient refusal
Sufficient personnel and equipment	Prior indication of fetal malpresentation	Obesity	Transfundal surgery
	1 or 2 prior low transverse incisions	Current breech	Obstetrical contraindication, e.g., previa
	Nonrecurrent indication	Multifetal pregnancy	Prior open maternal–fetal surgery
	Current preterm pregnancy	Preeclampsia	Inadequate obstetrical or anesthesia staff coverage
		EGA >40 weeks	
		Low vertical incision	
		Unknown incision	
		Labor induction	
		Medical disease	
		Multiple prior CDs	
		Education <12 years	
		Short interdelivery interval	
		Liability concerns	

[a]Most consider these absolute contraindications.
EGA = estimated gestational age.

a *TOLAC* offers the goal of achieving a *VBAC*. If cesarean delivery becomes necessary during the trial, it is a *failed TOLAC*. A second choice is *elective repeat cesarean delivery (ERCD)*. This includes scheduled cesarean delivery as well as unscheduled but planned cesarean delivery for spontaneous labor or another delivery indication.

The decision regarding delivery mode should weigh clinical factors known to influence TOLAC success as well as benefits and risks (Table 31-2). As expected, TOLAC rates vary between institutions and providers. Last, economics, staffing, and medicolegal factors also may shape the decision to offer TOLAC.

DELIVERY ROUTE RISKS

As evidence mounted that the uterine rupture risk might be greater than expected, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (1988, 1994, 1998, 1999, 2015, 2019a,d) issued updated bulletins supporting TOLAC but also urging a more cautious approach. *It is problematic that both options have risks and benefits to mother and fetus but that these are not always congruent.*

Maternal Risks

Rates of uterine rupture and associated complications clearly are increased with TOLAC. As shown in Table 31-1, uterine rupture typically is classified as either: (1) *complete*, when all uterine wall layers are separated, or (2) *incomplete*, when the uterine muscle is separated but the visceral peritoneum is intact. Incomplete rupture is also commonly referred to as *uterine dehiscence* (Chap. 42, p. 742). It is these risks that underpin most of the angst in attempting TOLAC. Despite this, some argue that these factors should weigh only minimally in the decision because their absolute risk is low. For example, a systematic review by Guise and coworkers (2010) concludes that the uterine rupture risk was significantly elevated in women undergoing TOLAC—absolute risk of 0.47 percent and relative risk of 20.7—compared with women choosing ERCD.

The Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units (MFMU) Network conducted a prospective study at 19 medical centers (Landon, 2004). Shown in Table 31-3 are outcomes of nearly 18,000 women attempting TOLAC that were compared with those of more than 15,000 gravidas undergoing ERCD. The absolute risk of uterine rupture was 0.7 percent compared with no reported uterine ruptures in the ERCD cohort. Various reports suggest either no or an increased mortality risk for ERCD compared with attempted TOLAC (Guise, 2010; Wen, 2004).

Maternal morbidity estimates also are conflicting. The review by Guise and coworkers (2010) observed no significant differences in hysterectomy or transfusion risk. But, another metaanalysis reported that women undergoing TOLAC were approximately half as likely to require transfusion or hysterectomy compared with those undergoing ERCD (Mozurkewich, 2000). Conversely, in the MFMU Network study, the risks for transfusion and infection were significantly greater for women attempting TOLAC (Landon, 2004). A recent large retrospective Canadian cohort study compared maternal and neonatal outcomes (Young, 2018). The absolute rates of severe maternal morbidity and mortality were low. However, women attempting TOLAC had significantly higher adjusted risk ratios of uterine rupture (6.41), severe postpartum hemorrhage with transfusion (2.80), and composite maternal morbidity (1.96) compared with women who underwent ERCD. This disparity is also found among other studies. Importantly, compared with a successful TOLAC, the risk of these major complications was fivefold greater with a failed TOLAC (Rossi, 2008).

TABLE 31-3. Complications in Women with a Prior Cesarean Delivery Enrolled in the Study by the NICHD MFMU, 1999–2002

Complication	TOLAC n = 17,898 No. (%)	ERCD n = 15,801 No. (%)	Odds Ratio (95% CI)	*p* value
Maternal				
Uterine rupture	124 (0.7)	0	NA	<.001
Uterine dehiscence	119 (0.7)	76 (0.5)	1.38 (1.04–1.85)	.03
Hysterectomy	41 (0.2)	47 (0.3)	0.77 (0.51–1.17)	.22
Thromboembolic disease	7 (0.04)	10 (0.1)	0.62 (0.24–1.62)	.32
Transfusion	304 (1.7)	158 (1.0)	1.71 (1.41–2.08)	<.001
Uterine infection	517 (2.9)	285 (1.8)	1.62 (1.40–1.87)	<.001
Death	3 (0.02)	7 (0.04)	0.38 (0.10–1.46)	.21
Perinatal				
Antepartum stillbirth[a]				
37–38 weeks	18 (0.4)	8 (0.1)	2.93 (1.27–6.75)	.008
≥39 weeks	16 (0.2)	5 (0.1)	2.70 (0.99–7.38)	.07
Intrapartum stillbirth[a]	2	0	NA	NS
Term HIE[a]	12 (0.08)	0	NA	<.001
Term neonatal death[a]	13 (0.08)	7 (0.05)	1.82 (0.73–4.57)	.19

[a]Denominator is 15,338 for the TOLAC group and 15,014 for the ERCD group.
CD = cesarean delivery; CI = confidence interval; ERCD = elective repeat cesarean delivery; HIE = hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy; NA = not applicable; MFMU = Maternal–Fetal Medicine Units Network; NICHD = National Institute of Child Health and Human Development; NS = not significant; TOLAC = trial of labor after cesarean delivery.

Perinatal Risks

In the Canadian study cited previously, rates of composite severe neonatal morbidity and mortality were higher among women delivering after an attempted VBAC compared with those delivering by ERCD—adjusted odds ratio (aOR) 1.49 (Young, 2018). In this study failed VBAC was also associated with a significantly increased rate of neonatal death—aOR 3.22. Both the prospective MFMU Network study shown in Table 31-3 and review by Guise (2010) found significantly higher *perinatal mortality* rates with TOLAC compared with ERCD. In the latter review, the perinatal mortality rate with TOLAC was 0.13 percent compared with 0.05 percent for ERCD. In the Canadian study cited previously, adjusted risk ratios for neonatal death (3.22) and for composite severe neonatal morbidity and mortality (1.49) were significantly higher among women delivering after an attempted TOLAC compared with those delivering by ERCD (Young, 2018). In another study of nearly 25,000 women with a prior cesarean delivery, the TOLAC-related perinatal death rate was 1.3 per 1000 among 15,515 women (Smith, 2002). Although this absolute risk is small, it is 11 times greater than the perinatal risk found in 9014 women with ERCD.

TOLAC also appears to be associated with a higher risk of *hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy (HIE)* compared with that for ERCD. The MFMU Network study reported the incidence of encephalopathy at term to be 46 per 100,000 TOLACs compared with zero cases in women undergoing ERCD (Landon, 2004). In the review by Guise (2010), the absolute risk of *transient tachypnea of the newborn* was slightly higher with ERCD compared with TOLAC—4.2 versus 3.6 percent. But, neonatal bag and mask ventilation was used more often in newborns delivered following TOLAC than in those delivered by ERCD—5.4 versus 2.5 percent. The 5-minute Apgar scores or neonatal intensive care unit admission rates for newborns delivered by TOLAC did not differ from those delivered by ERCD.

TRIAL OF LABOR SELECTION CONSIDERATIONS

Both patients and providers ideally would like individualized risks when counseling regarding the chance of successful TOLAC. However, few high-quality data guide selection of suitable TOLAC candidates. Several TOLAC/VBAC calculators can be used at entry to prenatal care and again at the time of labor to assist in successful TOLAC prediction. However, these have not been validated as predictors of adverse maternal outcomes, such as uterine rupture. Similarly, algorithms and nomograms to aid prediction fail to demonstrated reasonable prognostic value (Grobman, 2007b, 2008, 2021; Metz, 2013; Wyckoff, 2020). Lipschuetz and colleagues (2020) applied newer statistical analysis techniques to help improve prognostic accuracy.

Despite the limitations of these predictive tools, several points are pertinent to candidate evaluation and are described subsequently. Current recommendations of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019d) are that most

TABLE 31-4. Types of Prior Uterine Incisions and Estimated Risks for Uterine Rupture

Prior Incision	Estimated Rupture Rate (%)
One low transverse	0.2–0.9
Multiple low transverse	0.9–1.8
Low-vertical[a]	1–7
Classical	2–9
T-shaped	4–9
Prior preterm CD	"Increased"
Prior uterine rupture	
Lower segment	2–6
Upper uterus	9–32

[a]See text for definition.
CD = cesarean delivery.
Data from the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017; Cahill, 2010b; Chauhan, 2002; Landon, 2006; Macones, 2005a,b; Martin, 1997; Miller, 1994; Sciscione, 2008; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2012; Tahseen, 2010.

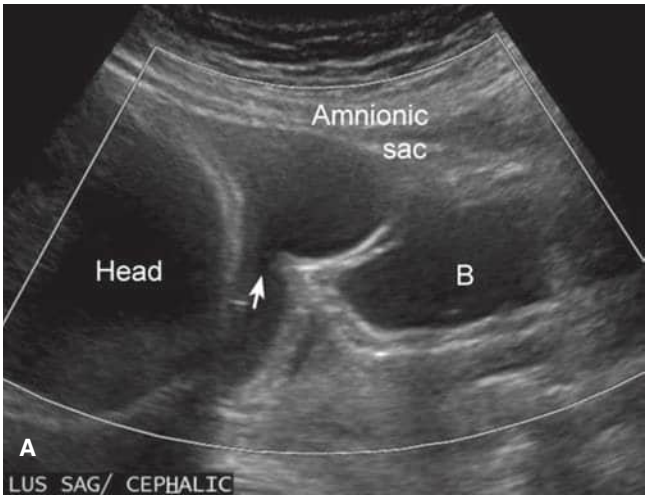
women with one prior low transverse hysterotomy are candidates, and if appropriate, they should be counseled regarding both TOLAC and ERCD options. It is further recommended that home birth is a contraindication for TOLAC.

■ Prior Uterine Incision

Prior Incision Type

The type and number of prior cesarean deliveries are overriding factors in recommending TOLAC (see Table 31-2). And these caveats aim to avoid intrapartum uterine rupture. As shown in Table 31-4, women with one prior low transverse hysterotomy have the lowest risk of symptomatic scar separation. However, asymptomatic dehiscence or complete rupture is still a concern in these women (Fig. 31-3). The uterine rupture risk in women with a prior vertical incision that did not extend into the fundus is unclear. Martin (1997) and Shipp (1999) and their associates reported that these low vertical uterine incisions do not have a higher risk for rupture compared with low transverse incisions. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2015) concluded that although evidence is limited, women with a prior vertical incision in the lower uterine segment without fundal extension may be candidates for TOLAC. This is in contrast to prior classical or T-shaped uterine incisions, which are considered by most as contraindications to labor.

The highest risks are with prior vertical incisions extending into the fundus. Importantly, women with a classical uterine scar may rupture before labor onset, and this may even occur before term. Chauhun and colleagues (2002) reviewed 157 women with a prior classical cesarean incision. They used a policy of fetal lung maturity assessment at 36 weeks and then delivery if mature. With a mean gestational age of 35.6 weeks at delivery, they reported one uterine rupture at 29 weeks that resulted in fetal death; 9-percent uterine dehiscence rate; and 25-percent risk of maternal morbidity. For a woman with a



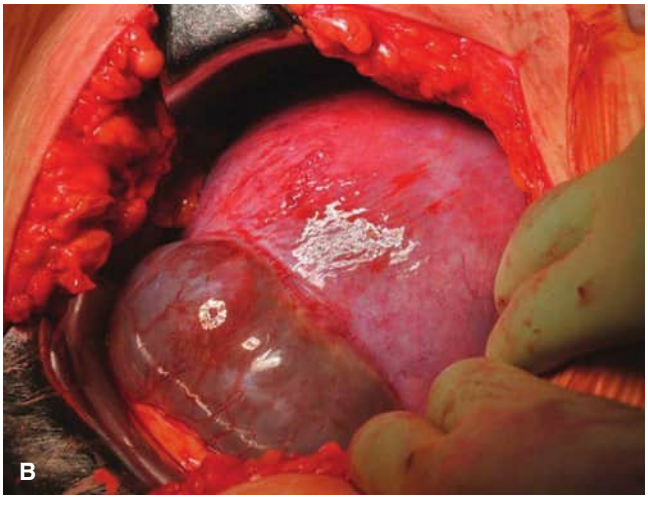


FIGURE 31-3 Extensive "uterine window" in a woman at term with one prior low transverse cesarean delivery. **A.** Transabdominal sonogram shows the uterine defect (*arrow*), bulging amnionic sac, and adjacent anatomy. B = Bladder. **B.** At the time of cesarean delivery, the amnionic sac is seen protruding through the defect and is visible beneath the thin vesicocervical peritoneum. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Angela Seasley.)

prior classical cesarean delivery, the authors concluded that uterine rupture and dehiscence are neither predictable nor preventable despite early delivery. The risk for earlier rupture is even greater in women who have undergone open maternal-fetal surgery (Chmait, 2019; Goodnight, 2019). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021) recommends delivery between $36^{0/7}$ and $37^{0/7}$ weeks for a prior classical incision.

Although few indications dictate a primary classical incision, 53 percent of women undergoing cesarean delivery between $24^{0/7}$ weeks and $25^{6/7}$ weeks have such an incision (Osmundson, 2013). By 28 weeks' gestation, the risk drops to 35 percent and declines to <10 percent by 32 weeks. The likelihood of classical uterine incision is also increased by noncephalic presentations. In those instances—for example, preterm breech fetus with an undeveloped lower segment—the "low vertical" incision almost invariably extends into the active segment. From their review, Moramarco and colleagues (2020) reported that prior preterm

classical cesarean delivery was associated with a 1-percent risk for rupture. Lannon and coworkers (2015) compared 456 women with a prior periviable cesarean delivery with more than 10,000 women whose prior cesarean delivery was done at term. The uterine rupture rate was 1.8 percent in the prior periviable group and 0.4 percent in the prior term group. Of the uterine ruptures in the periviable group, half were in women whose prior uterine incision was described as low transverse. Harper and associates (2009) did not confirm these findings.

The type of uterine incision cannot be confirmed in all women. Unless clinical circumstances raise concern for a prior classical uterine incision, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019d) consider these women as potential TOLAC candidates.

Special consideration is given to women with uterine malformations who have undergone cesarean delivery. Earlier reports suggested that the uterine rupture risk in a subsequent pregnancy was greater than the risk in those with a normal uterus and a prior low transverse hysterotomy (Ravasia, 1999). However, in a study of 103 women with müllerian duct anomalies, there were no cases of uterine rupture (Erez, 2007).

Prior Incision Closure

As discussed in Chapter 30 (p. 558), the low transverse uterine incision can be sutured in either one or two layers. One metaanalysis compared single- versus double-layer closure and locking versus nonlocking suture for uterine closure (Roberge, 2014). The uterine dehiscence or rupture rates for these closures did not differ significantly. Both single-layer closure and closure that locked the first layer, however, were associated with a reduced myometrial thickness during subsequent sonographic measurement. In contrast, Bennich and coworkers (2016) reported that a double-layer closure did not increase the residual myometrial thickness when saline contrast sonography was done several months postpartum. Our practice at Parkland Hospital is to routinely suture the lower-segment incision with one running, locking suture line.

Number of Prior Cesarean Incisions

At least three studies report a doubling or tripling of the uterine rupture rate in women with two compared with one prior transverse hysterotomy (Macones, 2005a; Miller, 1994; Tahseen, 2010). In contrast, an analysis of the MFMU Network database did not confirm this (Landon, 2006). Namely, in 975 women with multiple prior cesarean deliveries, the rupture rate was 0.9 percent and not significantly different from the 0.7-percent rate in 16,915 women with a single prior operation.

Imaging of Prior Incision

Sonographic measurement of a prior hysterotomy incision has been used to predict rupture risk. Large defects in a nonpregnant uterus forecast a greater risk (Osser, 2011). Naji and coworkers (2013a,b) found that the *residual myometrial thickness* decreased as pregnancy progressed and that rupture risk correlated positively with a thinner scar.

Jastrow and colleagues (2010a) did a systematic review of women with a prior low transverse hysterotomy incision who underwent third-trimester sonographic evaluation. They concluded that a uterine scar defect was strongly predicted by a thin lower uterine segment. They defined this segment as the smallest measurement between urine in the maternal bladder and amniotic fluid. That said, they could not find an ideal threshold value to recommend safe TOLAC. This same group subsequently recruited 1856 women contemplating vaginal birth after a single low transverse incision, and they sonographically measured lower uterine segment thickness between $34^{0/7}$ and $38^{6/7}$ weeks (Jastrow, 2016). Women were grouped into three risk categories for uterine rupture during TOLAC based on measurements: high risk <2.0 mm; intermediate risk 2.0 to 2.4 mm; and low risk ≥2.5 mm. The TOLAC rates were 9, 42, and 61 percent in the three categories, respectively. Of the 984 TOLACs, there were no symptomatic uterine ruptures. At Parkland Hospital, we do not assess the lower uterine segment in women with a prior cesarean delivery.

Prior Uterine Rupture

Women who have previously sustained a uterine rupture are at greater risk for recurrence. As shown in Table 31-4, those with a prior lower-segment rupture have up to a 6-percent recurrence risk, whereas prior upper-segment rupture confers a 9- to 32-percent risk (Reyes-Ceja, 1969; Ritchie, 1971). Sheth (1968) described outcomes of 21 subsequent pregnancies in 13 women who underwent uterine rupture repair. Rupture recurred in four pregnancies—approximately 20 percent. Usta and colleagues (2007) reported similar results. Fox and associates (2014) reported 14 women with prior uterine rupture and 30 women with prior uterine dehiscence. In 60 subsequent pregnancies, they noted no uterine ruptures or severe complications if women underwent ERCD prior to labor onset or immediately at the onset of preterm labor. Delivery is recommended between $36^{0/7}$ and $37^{0/7}$ weeks' gestation (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021).

Interdelivery Interval

Magnetic resonance imaging studies of myometrial healing suggest that complete uterine involution and restoration of anatomy may require at least 6 months (Dicle, 1997). As a potential risk for uterine rupture, the relationship between interdelivery interval and uterine rupture in 2409 women with one prior cesarean delivery was examined (Shipp, 2001). There were 29 women with a uterine rupture—1.4 percent. Interdelivery intervals ≤18 months were associated with a threefold greater risk of symptomatic rupture during a subsequent TOLAC compared with intervals >18 months. Similarly, Stamilio and associates (2007) noted a threefold augmented risk of uterine rupture in women with an interpregnancy interval <6 months compared with one ≥6 months.

Prior Vaginal Delivery

Prior vaginal delivery, either before or after a cesarean birth, significantly improves the prognosis for a successful TOLAC (Grinstead, 2004; Hendler, 2004; Mercer, 2008). Prior vaginal delivery also lowers the TOLAC-related risk of subsequent uterine rupture and other morbidities (Cahill, 2006; Hochler, 2014; Zelop, 1999).

Prior Cesarean Delivery Indication

Women with a nonrecurring indication—for example, breech presentation—have the highest successful TOLAC rate—nearly 90 percent (Wing, 1999). Those with a prior cesarean delivery for fetal compromise have an approximately 80-percent VBAC rate, and for those done for labor arrest, VBAC rates approximate only 60 percent (Bujold, 2001; Peaceman, 2006).

Prior second-stage cesarean delivery can be associated with second-stage uterine rupture in a subsequent pregnancy (Jastrow, 2013). A secondary analysis of the MFMU Cesarean Registry revealed that a prolonged second stage of labor—exceeding 3 hours—during TOLAC will often lead to VBAC. However, adverse maternal outcomes including uterine rupture or dehiscence were observed to be more common as the second stage lengthens (Hehir, 2018).

Fetal Size and Lie

Most studies show that increasing fetal size is inversely related to VBAC rates. The risk for uterine rupture is less robustly linked. Zelop and colleagues (2001) studied outcomes of almost 2750 women undergoing TOLAC, and the uterine rupture rate increased—albeit not significantly—with rising fetal weight. The rate was 1.0 percent for fetal weight <4000 g, 1.6 percent for >4000 g, and 2.4 percent for >4250 g. Similarly, others have found associated increased risks for uterine rupture with fetuses >4000 g (Jastrow, 2010b). With preterm fetuses, compared with term ones, women who attempt a TOLAC have similar or higher VBAC rates and lower uterine rupture rates (Durnwald, 2006; Quiñones, 2005).

Few studies address the choice of TOLAC for a singleton term breech fetus. Very limited data suggest a possible link with adverse perinatal outcome (Azria, 2012; Macharey, 2017). Data supporting external cephalic version for breech presentation with a prior cesarean scar also are limited and are derived from small studies (Impey, 2018; Weill, 2017). From these, version success and adverse event rates appear comparable with women without a prior cesarean delivery. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020) does not consider a prior uterine incision to be a contraindication for attempted version. At Parkland Hospital, we do not attempt version or vaginal breech delivery in these women.

Multifetal Gestation

Twin pregnancy does not appear to increase the risk of uterine rupture. In one study of 1850 women with twins, the VBAC rate was 45 percent, and the rupture rate was 0.9 percent (Ford, 2006). Similar studies by Cahill (2005) and Varner (2007) and their coworkers reported rupture rates of 0.7 to 1.1 percent and VBAC rates of 75 to 85 percent. According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019d), women with twins and a prior low transverse hysterotomy can safely undergo TOLAC.

Maternal Obesity

Multiple studies have reported an inverse relationship between prepregnancy body mass index (BMI) and successful TOLAC rates (Juhasz, 2005; Wu, 2019). Hibbard and associates (2006) reported the following rates: 85 percent with a normal BMI, 78 percent with a BMI between 25 and 30, 70 percent with a BMI between 30 and 40, and 61 percent with a BMI ≥40.

Fetal Death

Most women with a prior cesarean delivery and fetal death in the current pregnancy would prefer a vaginal delivery. Although fetal concerns are obviated, available data suggest that maternal risks are increased. Nearly 46,000 women with a prior cesarean delivery in the MFMU Network database had a total of 209 fetal deaths at an average gestational age of 32.8 weeks (Ramirez, 2010). Of the 158 women who elected TOLAC, the VBAC rate was 87 percent. In the entire TOLAC group, the uterine rupture rate was 2.4 percent, and in 116 women who underwent an induction of labor, the rupture rate was 3.4 percent. Labor induction for second-trimester fetal demise has a low complication rate (Bahar, 2021).

LABOR AND DELIVERY CONSIDERATIONS

Timing

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) recommends delaying nonmedically indicated deliveries until 39 completed weeks of gestation or beyond. Data from Tita and colleagues in Figure 31-4 show significant and appreciable adverse neonatal morbidity has been reported with ERCD before 39 completed weeks (Chiossi, 2013; Clark, 2009). Thus, if ERCD is planned, it is essential that the fetus be mature. Conversely, delaying delivery beyond 40 weeks is associated with higher neonatal morbidity rates.

Accurate pregnancy dating is paramount prior to ERCD. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019c) offers guidelines to assist in accurate pregnancy dating using a combination of last menstrual period and sonography. The most accurate method to confirm or establish gestational age is by sonographic measurement of an early embryo-fetus.

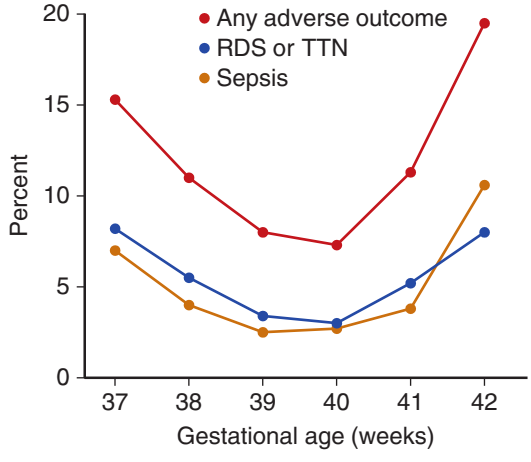


FIGURE 31-4 Neonatal morbidity rates seen with 13,258 elective repeat cesarean deliveries. Any adverse outcome includes death. Sepsis includes suspected and proven. RDS = respiratory distress syndrome; TTN = transient tachypnea of the newborn.

Intrapartum Care

Because uterine rupture during TOLAC may be unpredictable, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019d) recommends that labor in women attempting TOLAC should be undertaken in facilities that can provide emergency cesarean delivery for situations associated with immediate threats to the life of the women or her fetus. If those resources are not available, the College recommends discussion of the hospital's resources and availability of providers with the patient considering TOLAC. Ultimately, the best alternative may be referral to an institution with resources appropriate for TOLAC.

Some argue that these provisions deny women full access to choices. For example, in an earlier survey of Ohio hospitals, 15 percent of Level I, 63 percent of Level II, and 100 percent of Level III institutions met these requirements (Lavin, 2002). Moreover, an obstetrical anesthesia workforce survey reported that due to staffing limitations, TOLAC was allowed in only 88 percent of hospitals with ≥1500 annual deliveries, in 59 percent of those with 500 to 1499 deliveries, and in 43 percent of those with <500 deliveries (Traynor, 2016).

Cervical Ripening and Labor Stimulation

Labor induction is associated with a higher TOLAC failure rate compared with spontaneous labor. The risks for uterine rupture, however, are less clear with induction or augmentation, with the exception of prostaglandin E_1 (PGE_1)—misoprostol—which is contraindicated (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019d). Of other considerations, induction or augmentation is ideally avoided in women with an unknown prior incision type, an unfavorable cervix, or pregnancy >40 weeks. At Parkland Hospital we do not induce or augment labor pharmacologically in women electing TOLAC. Instead, we attempt induction only by amniotomy.

Oxytocin

Use of oxytocin for labor induction or augmentation has been *implicated* in increased uterine rupture rates in women undergoing TOLAC (Zelop, 1999). In the MFMU Network study reported by Landon (2004), uterine rupture was more frequent in women induced with oxytocin alone—1.1 percent—compared with those presenting in spontaneous labor—0.4 percent. Labor augmentation was associated with uterine rupture in 0.9 percent. Among women in this cohort without a prior vaginal delivery, the uterine rupture risk associated with oxytocin induction was 1.8 percent—a fourfold greater risk compared with spontaneous labor (Grobman, 2007a). In contrast, in one case-control study, induction was not associated with a higher rupture risk (Harper, 2012a). Cahill (2008) and Goetzl (2001) and their coworkers reported a dose-related risk of rupture with oxytocin.

Prostaglandins

Various prostaglandin preparations commonly employed for cervical ripening or labor induction are discussed in Chapter 26 (p. 489). Wing and colleagues (1998) compared misoprostol versus oxytocin for labor induction in women with a prior cesarean delivery. They terminated their trial after two of the first 17 women assigned to misoprostol developed a uterine rupture. Other studies confirmed this. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019d) recommends that misoprostol should not be used for cervical ripening or labor induction in women at term with a prior cesarean delivery or major uterine surgery.

Studies using other prostaglandin agents for labor induction are contradictory. Ravasia and coworkers (2000) compared uterine rupture rates in 172 women given PGE_2 gel with 1544 women in spontaneous labor. The rupture rate of 2.9 percent was significantly greater in women treated with PGE_2 gel compared with 0.9 percent in those with spontaneous labor. Lydon-Rochelle and associates (2001) found similar results. In the MFMU Network study cited previously, however, the uterine rupture rate was 1.4 percent when any prostaglandin was used in combination with oxytocin (Landon, 2004). But, in the subgroup of 227 women in whom labor was induced with a prostaglandin alone, there were no ruptures. Similar findings were reported with intravaginal prostaglandins, which were not associated with a greater uterine rupture risk (Macones, 2005b). These latter investigators, along with Kayani and colleagues (2005), found that sequential use of a prostaglandin followed by oxytocin was associated with a threefold greater rupture risk compared with spontaneous labor.

Mechanical Methods

In a retrospective study of 2479 women with a prior cesarean delivery, the uterine rupture risk using a transcervical Foley catheter for labor induction (1.6 percent) was not significantly greater than that with spontaneous labor (1.1 percent)—or with amniotomy with or without oxytocin (1.2 percent) (Bujold, 2004). In 101 women induced with a balloon catheter, a 50-percent successful TOLAC rate and no uterine ruptures was reported (Sarreau 2020). In contrast, Hoffman and coworkers (2004) described 138 women who underwent preinduction cervical ripening with a Foley catheter compared with 536 women who entered labor spontaneously. The inordinately high intrapartum uterine rupture rate of 6.5 percent following Foley catheter cervical ripening was greater than the 1.9-percent rate with spontaneous labor.

Epidural Analgesia

Concerns that epidural analgesia for labor might mask the pain of uterine rupture have not been verified. Fewer than 10 percent of women with scar separation experience pain and bleeding, and fetal heart rate decelerations are the most likely sign of rupture (Kieser, 2002). That said, Cahill and associates (2010a) documented that more frequent episodes of epidural catheter dosing were associated with increasing uterine rupture rates. VBAC rates are similar, and in some cases higher, among women with labor epidural analgesia compared with those using other analgesia forms (Landon, 2005). Perhaps related, almost a fourth of VBAC deliveries were completed with either forceps or vacuum (Inbar, 2017). The American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) have concluded that epidural analgesia may safely be used during TOLAC.

Uterine Scar Exploration

Following VBAC, some clinicians routinely document the integrity of a prior scar by placing a hand through the dilated cervix and along the inner surface of the lower uterine segment. But, routine uterine exploration is considered by others to be unnecessary. In a longitudinal study of 3469 women who had a VBAC, seven uterine dehiscences and one uterine rupture yielded an overall event rate of 0.23 percent (Silberstein, 1998). These investigators concluded that transcervical evaluation need only be performed for those with severe third-stage bleeding.

Currently, the benefits of routine scar evaluation in the asymptomatic woman are unclear, however, surgical correction of a dehiscence is necessary for associated significant bleeding. At Parkland Hospital, we routinely examine the lower uterine segment following a VBAC and document its integrity. A large tear, a breach into the peritoneal cavity, and presence of active bleeding favor a decision for laparotomy and repair.

UTERINE SCAR RUPTURE

Diagnosis

Progress of labor in women attempting TOLAC is similar to normal labor, and no specific pattern presages uterine rupture (Graseck, 2012; Harper, 2012b). Before hypovolemic shock develops, symptoms and physical findings in women with uterine rupture may appear bizarre unless the possibility is kept in mind. For example, hemoperitoneum from a ruptured uterus may result in diaphragmatic irritation with pain referred to the chest. This may suggest a diagnosis of pulmonary or amnionic fluid embolism instead of uterine rupture. As the example shown in Figure 31-5, the most common sign of uterine rupture is a nonreassuring fetal heart rate pattern with variable decelerations that may evolve into late decelerations and bradycardia. In one report of 36 cases during TOLAC, fetal signs of uterine rupture were evident in 24, maternal signs in eight, and a combination of maternal and fetal in three (Holmgren, 2012). Few women experience cessation of contractions following uterine rupture, and the use of intrauterine pressure catheters does not assist reliably in the diagnosis (Rodriguez, 1989).

The clinical appearance of uterine rupture associated with a TOLAC may mirror that of placental abruption but with little appreciable pain or tenderness. Also, because most women in labor are treated for discomfort with either narcotics or epidural analgesia, pain and tenderness may not be readily apparent. Ultimately, the diagnosis of uterine rupture becomes evident because of fetal distress and occasionally because of maternal hypovolemia from concealed hemorrhage.

If the fetal presenting part has already entered the pelvis with labor, loss of station may be detected by pelvic examination. If the fetus is partly or totally extruded from the uterine rupture site, abdominal palpation or vaginal examination may be helpful to identify the presenting part, which will have moved away from the pelvic inlet. A firm contracted uterus may at times be felt alongside the fetus. Emergent sonography in the labor unit may be helpful.

Management

With rupture and expulsion of the fetus into the peritoneal cavity, the chances for intact fetal survival are poor. *Fetal condition depends on the degree to which the placental implantation remains intact, although this can change within minutes.* The only chance of intact fetal survival is afforded by immediate delivery—most often by laparotomy—otherwise, hypoxia is inevitable. If rupture is followed by total placental separation, very few neurologically intact fetuses will be salvaged.

Thus, even in the best of circumstances, some fetal outcomes will be impaired. The Utah experiences are instructive here (Holmgren, 2012). Of the 35 laboring patients with uterine rupture, the decision-to-delivery time was <18 minutes in 17, and none of these infants had an adverse neurological outcome. Of the 18 born >18 minutes from decision time, the three infants with long-term neurological impairments were delivered at 31, 40, and 42 minutes. There were no deaths, but severe neonatal neurological morbidity developed in 8 percent of this group of 35 women with uterine rupture. Importantly, delivery within 30 minutes did not prevent every case of low cord pH or low 5-minute Apgar score. When uterine rupture was identified and delivery was accomplished is less than 30 minutes, there was no long-term neonatal morbidity. In the MFMU Network study cited earlier, seven of the 114 uterine ruptures associated with TOLAC—6 percent—were complicated by development of neonatal encephalopathy (Spong, 2007).

Neonatal mortality rate is likewise increased several fold. In a study using the Swedish Birth Registry, the risk of neonatal death following uterine rupture was 5 percent (Kaczmarczyk, 2007).

Maternal deaths from uterine rupture are uncommon. Of 2.5 million women who gave birth in Canada between 1991 and 2001, there were 1898 cases of uterine rupture, and four of these—0.2 percent—resulted in maternal death (Wen, 2005). In other regions of the world, however, maternal mortality rates are

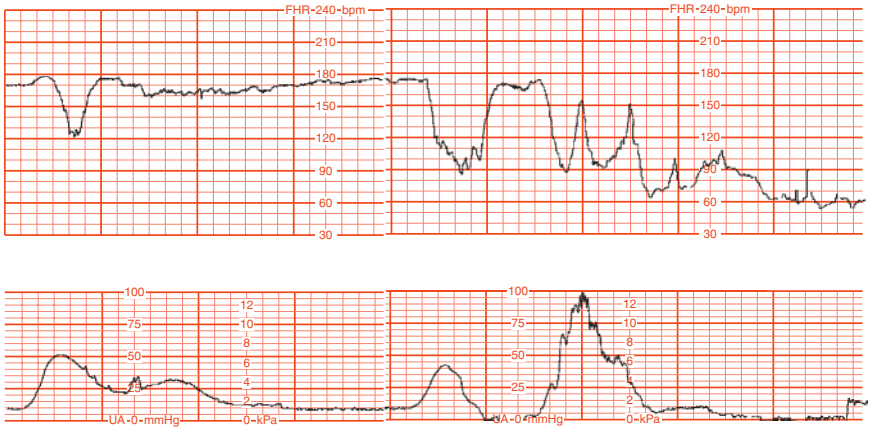


FIGURE 31-5 Fetal heart rate tracing in a woman whose uterus ruptured during labor while pushing. The rupture apparently stimulated a reflex push, after which uterine tone diminished and fetal bradycardia worsened.

much higher. From rural India, the maternal mortality rate associated with uterine rupture was 30 percent (Chatterjee, 2007).

Following complete rupture during TOLAC, hysterectomy may be required. In selected cases, however, suture repair with uterine preservation may be performed. Subsequent pregnancy following such repair was described earlier (p. 576). Bladder injury may be comorbid, and interrogation of its integrity is prudent (Chap. 30, p. 563) (Phipps, 2005; Webb, 2000).

MULTIPLE REPEAT CESAREAN DELIVERIES

The incidences of some common complications for women with a prior transverse cesarean delivery who undergo an ERCD were shown in Table 31-3 (Landon, 2004). Rates of these complications and of other serious maternal morbidity rise with the number of prior cesarean deliveries (Marshall, 2011).

First, the incidence of *placenta accreta spectrum (PAS)*, which includes placenta accreta, increta, or percreta increases markedly with the number of previous hysterotomies. In an MFMU Network cohort of 30,132 women who had from one to six repeat cesarean deliveries, a significant association between an accruing number of cesarean deliveries and PAS in women with placenta previa was noted (Fig. 31-6) (Silver, 2006). The PAS rate grew from 11 percent for women with a placenta previa undergoing their second cesarean delivery to 67 percent for women undergoing their fifth (Fig. 43-12, p. 761). Indeed, almost half of cesarean

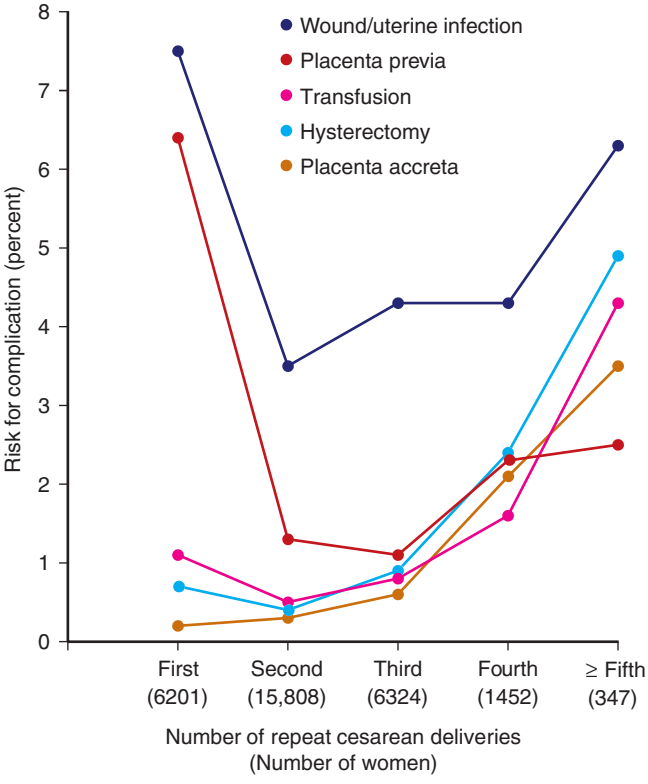


FIGURE 31-6 Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units Network: rates of some complications with increasing number of repeat cesarean deliveries.

TABLE 31-5. Some Recommendations of Professional Societies Concerning TOLAC

	Counseling	Facilities	Other
ACOG (2019d)	Offer to most women with 1 prior LTCD; consider for 2 prior LTCDs	Safest with ability for immediate CD; patients should be allowed to accept increased risk when not available	Not precluded: twins, macrosomia, prior low vertical or unknown incision type
SOGC	Offer to women with 1 prior LTCS; with >1 prior CD then VBAC likely successful but increased risks	Should deliver in hospital in which timely CD is available; the woman and provider must be aware of hospital resources and availability of obstetrical, anesthetic, pediatric, and operating room staff	Oxytocin or Foley catheter induction safe, but PGs not recommended; macrosomia, diabetes, postterm pregnancy, twins are not contraindications
RCOG (2015)	Offer to most women with singleton, cephalic fetus at ≥37 weeks with 1 prior LTCD; with >1 prior CD then VBAC likely successful but increased risks, offer after counseling by senior obstetrician, VBAC checklists should be considered	Suitable delivery suite with continuous intrapartum care and monitoring; immediate cesarean delivery and advanced neonatal resuscitation	Uncertainty about safety and efficacy with postterm, twin gestation, macrosomia, and advanced maternal age; induction and augmentation associated with two- to threefold increased risk of uterine rupture

ACOG = American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists; CD = cesarean delivery; LTCS = low transverse cesarean delivery; PG = prostaglandins; RCOG = Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists; SOGC = Society of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists of Canada; TOLAC = trial of labor after cesarean delivery; VBAC = vaginal birth after cesarean.

TABLE 31-6. Conservative Approach to TOLAC

Review and follow ACOG guidelines
Education and counseling
Preconceptionally
Provide ACOG patient pamphlet
Prenatal care: early counseling and delivery planning
Develop preliminary delivery plan
Revisit delivery plan at least each trimester
Be willing to alter decision
Confirm facility capabilities
Risk assessment
Review and document operative note(s)
Review relative/absolute contraindications
Reconsider risks as pregnancy progresses
Careful consideration and counseling if:
>1 prior transverse CD, unknown incision, twins, macrosomia
Labor and delivery
Review previous medical records/operative notes
Cautions for induction: unfavorable cervix, high station
Consider AROM
Avoid prostaglandins
Respect oxytocin and know when to quit
Continuous EFM
Beware of abnormal labor progress
Respect EFM pattern abnormalities
Be ready to abandon TOLAC
Recommend against home birth

ACOG = American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists; AROM = artificial rupture of membranes; CD = cesarean delivery; EFM = electronic fetal monitoring; TOLAC = trial of labor following cesarean delivery.

hysterectomies done at Parkland Hospital are in women with one or more prior cesarean deliveries (Hernandez, 2013).

Other maternal morbidity data come from the same MFMU Network cohort and are shown in Figure 31-6 (Silver, 2006). In addition, rates of bowel or bladder injury, admission to an intensive care unit or need for ventilator therapy, maternal mortality, and length of surgery and hospitalization showed significantly rising trends. Similar results have been reported by others (Nisenblat, 2006; Usta, 2005). More difficult to quantify are risks for bowel obstruction and pelvic pain from peritoneal adhesive disease, both of which increase after each successive cesarean delivery (Andolf, 2010; Mankuta, 2013).

From the United Kingdom Obstetric Surveillance System (UKOSS), adverse sequelae in women with five or more cesarean deliveries were described (Cook, 2013). These women had significantly higher rates of morbidity compared with those with one prior operation. Specifically, the major hemorrhage rate increased 18-fold; visceral damage, 17-fold; critical care admissions, 15-fold; and delivery <37 weeks, sixfold. Much of this morbidity was in the 18 percent who had a placenta previa or PAS. This same study showed higher neonatal complication rates stemming mainly from indicated premature delivery.

VAGINAL BIRTH AFTER CESAREAN—2021

Unfortunately for women and their providers, no large randomized trials compare maternal or neonatal outcomes in those pursuing either TOLAC or ERCD. Most studies have compared *actual* routes of delivery rather than the *intended* route of delivery. Thus, we agree with Scott (2011) regarding a common-sense approach. The woman—and if she wishes, her partner—are encouraged to actively participate with the provider in an informed-consent discussion. Patient decision aids often assist shared decision making (Poprzenczny, 2020). Although the absolute rates of adverse maternal and neonatal outcomes are low, TOLAC is associated with a higher rate of both maternal and neonatal morbidity and mortality compared with ERCD.

Counseling should include documentation of the prior uterine incision and discussion of risks, benefits, and probable outcomes associated with TOLAC or ERCD. This includes consideration of risks involving future pregnancies. Ideally, counseling begins preconceptionally and continues throughout pregnancy, with flexible options extending up to delivery. For women who desire TOLAC despite a factor that increases their specific risk, additions to the consent form are recommended by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019d). Bonanno and colleagues (2011) have provided such an example. Tsakiridis and coworkers (2018) have compared national guidelines of societies in the United States, Canada, and the United Kingdom. A composite of these recommendations of professional society guidelines is shown in Table 31-5 (Dy, 2019). Guidelines that tend to be more conservative are shown in Table 31-6.

REFERENCES

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Elk Grove Village, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for vaginal delivery after a previous cesarean birth. Committee Opinion No. 64, October 1988

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Vaginal delivery after previous cesarean birth. Committee Opinion No. 143, October 1994

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Vaginal birth after previous cesarean delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 2, October 1998

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Vaginal birth after previous cesarean delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 5, July 1999

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 115, August 2010, Reaffirmed 2015

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 184, November 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Avoidance of nonmedically indicated early term deliveries and associated neonate morbidity. Committee Opinion No. 765, February 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Method for estimating the due date. Committee Opinion No. 700, May 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Vaginal birth after previous cesarean delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 205, February 2019d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: External cephalic version. Practice Bulletin No. 221, April 2020

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Medically indicated late-preterm and early-term deliveries. Committee Opinion No. 831, June 2021

Arlier S, Seyfettinoğlu S, Yilmaz E, et al: Incidence of adhesions and maternal and neonatal morbidity after repeat cesarean section. Arch Gynecol Obstet 295(2):303, 2017

Azria E, Le Meaux JP, Khoshnood B, et al: Factors associated with adverse perinatal outcomes for term breech fetuses with planned vaginal delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(4):285.e1, 2012

Bahar R, Alexandroni H, Karavani G, et al: Safety of medical second trimester abortions for women with prior cesarean sections. Arch Gynecol Obstet 303:1217, 2021

Bennich G, Rudnicki M, Wilken-Jensen C, et al: Impact of adding a second layer to a single unlocked closure of a cesarean uterine incision: randomized controlled trial. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 47(4):417, 2016

Bonanno C, Clausing M, Berkowitz R: VBAC: a medicolegal perspective. Clin Perinatol 38:217, 2011

Bujold E, Blackwell SC, Gauthier RJ: Cervical ripening with transcervical Foley catheter and the risk of uterine rupture. Obstet Gynecol 103(1):18 2004

Bujold E, Gauthier RJ: Should we allow a trial of labor after a previous cesarean for dystocia in the second stage of labor? Obstet Gynecol 98:652, 2001

Cahill A, Stamilio DM, Paré E, et al: Vaginal birth after cesarean (VBAC) attempt in twin pregnancies: is it safe? Am J Obstet Gynecol 193:1050, 2005

Cahill AG, Odibo AO, Allswroth JE, et al: Frequent epidural dosing as a marker for impending uterine rupture in patients who attempt vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 202:355.e1, 2010a

Cahill AG, Stamilio DM, Odibo A, et al: Is vaginal birth after cesarean (VBAC) or elective repeat cesarean safer in women with a prior vaginal delivery? Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:1143, 2006

Cahill AG, Tuuli M, Odibo AO, et al: Vaginal birth after caesarean for women with three or more prior caesareans: assessing safety and success. BJOG 117:422, 2010b

Cahill AG, Waterman BM, Stamilio DM, et al: Higher maximum doses of oxytocin are associated with an unacceptably high risk for uterine rupture in patients attempting vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199:32.e1, 2008

Chatterjee SR, Bhaduri S: Clinical analysis of 40 cases of uterine rupture at Durgapur Subdivisional Hospital: an observational study. J Indian Med Assoc 105:510, 2007

Chauhan SP, Magann EF, Wiggs CD, et al: Pregnancy after classic cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 100:946, 2002

Cheng Y, Snowden J, Cottrell E, et al: Trends in proportions of hospitals with VBAC: impact of ACOG guidelines. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210:S241, 2014

Chiossi G, Lai Y, Landon MB, et al: Timing of delivery and adverse outcomes in term singleton repeat cesarean deliveries. Obstet Gynecol 121:561, 2013

Chmait RH, Kontopoulos EV, Quintero RA: Uterine legacy of open maternal-fetal surgery: preterm uterine rupture. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(5):535, 2019

Clark SL, Miller DD, Belfort MA, et al: Neonatal and maternal outcomes associated with elective term delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(2):156.e1, 2009

Cook J, Javis S, Knight M, et al: Multiple repeat caesarean section in the UK: incidence and consequences to mother and child. A national, prospective, cohort study. BJOG 120(1):85, 2013

Curtin SC, Gregory KD, Korst LL, et al: Maternal morbidity for vaginal and cesarean deliveries, according to previous cesarean history: new data from the birth certificate. 2013. Natl Vital Stat Rep 62(4):1, 2015

Cragin E: Conservatism in obstetrics. N Y Med J 104:1, 1916

Dicle O, Kücükler C, Pirnar T: Magnetic resonance imaging evaluation of incision healing after cesarean sections. Eur Radiol 7:31, 1997

Durnwald CP, Rouse DJ, Leveno KJ, et al: The Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units Cesarean Registry: safety and efficacy of a trial of labor in preterm pregnancy after a prior cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:1119, 2006

Dy J, DeMeester S, Lipworth H, et al: No. 382-trial of labour after caesarean. J Obstet Gynecaecol Can 41(7):992, 2019

Eastman NJ: Williams Obstetrics, 10th ed. New York, Appleton-Century-Crofts, 1950

Erez O, Dulder D, Novack L, et al: Trial of labor and vaginal birth after cesarean section in patients with uterine müllerian anomalies: a population-based study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196:537.e1, 2007

Ford AA, Bateman BT, Simpson LL: Vaginal birth after cesarean delivery in twin gestations: a large, nationwide sample of deliveries. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:1138, 2006

Fox NS, Gerber RS, Mourad M, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in patients with prior uterine rupture or dehiscence. Obstet Gynecol 123(4):785, 2014

Goetzl L, Shipp TD, Cohen A, et al: Oxytocin dose and the risk of uterine rupture in trial of labor after cesarean. Obstet Gynecol 97:381, 2001

Goodnight WH, Bahtiyar O, Bennett KA, et al: Subsequent pregnancy outcomes after open maternal-fetal surgery for myelomeningocele. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220:494.e1, 2019

Graseck AS, Odibo AO, Tuuli M, et al: Normal first stage of labor in women undergoing trial of labor after cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 119(4):732, 2012

Grinstead J, Grobman WA: Induction of labor after one prior cesarean: predictors of vaginal delivery. Obstet Gynecol 103:534, 2004

Grobman WA, Gilbert S, Landon MB, et al: Outcomes of induction of labor after one prior cesarean. Obstet Gynecol 109:262, 2007a

Grobman WA, Lai Y, Landon MB, et al: Development of a nomogram for prediction of vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 109:806, 2007b

Grobman WA, Lai Y, Landon MB, et al: Prediction of uterine rupture associated with attempted vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199:30.e1, 2008

Grobman WA, Sandoval G, Rice MM, et al: Prediction of a vaginal birth after cesarean in term gestation. A calculator without race and ethnicity. Am J Obstet Gynecol May 24, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Guise JM, Denman MA, Emeis C, et al: Vaginal birth after cesarean: new insights on maternal and neonatal outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 115:1267, 2010

Hamilton BE, Martin JA, Osterman MJ, et al: Births: final data for 2014. Natl Vital Stat Rep 64(12):1, 2015

Hamilton BE, Martin JA, Osterman MJ: Births: preliminary data for 2015. Natl Vital Stat Rep 65(3):1, 2016

Harper LM, Cahill AG, Boslaugh S, et al: Association of induction of labor and uterine rupture in women attempting vaginal birth after cesarean: a survival analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206:51.e1, 2012a

Harper LM, Cahill AG, Roehl KA, et al: The pattern of labor preceding uterine rupture. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(3):210.e1, 2012b

Harper LM, Cahill AG, Stamilio DM, et al: Effect of gestational age at the prior cesarean delivery on maternal morbidity in subsequent VBAC attempt. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(3):276.e1, 2009

Hehir MP, Rouse DJ, Miller RS, et al: Second-stage duration and outcomes among women who labored after a prior cesarean delivery Obstet Gynecol 131:514, 2018

Hendler I, Bujold E: Effect of prior vaginal delivery or prior vaginal birth after cesarean delivery on obstetric outcomes in women undergoing trial of labor. Obstet Gynecol 104(2):273, 2004

Hernandez JS, Wendel GD, Sheffield JS: Trends in emergency peripartum hysterectomy at a single institution: 1988–2009. Am J Perinatol 30:365, 2013

Hibbard JU, Gilbert S, Landon MB, et al: Trial of labor or repeat cesarean delivery in women with morbid obesity and previous cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 108:125, 2006

Hochler H, Yaffe H, Schwed P, et al: Safety of a trial of labor after cesarean delivery in grandmultiparous women. Obstet Gynecol 123:304, 2014

Hoffman MK, Sciscione A, Srinivasana M, et al: Uterine rupture in patients with a prior cesarean delivery: the impact of cervical ripening. Am J Perinatol 21(4):217, 2004

Holmgren C, Scott JR, Porter TF, et al: Uterine rupture with attempted vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 119:725, 2012

Impey OR, Greenwood CE, Impey LW: External cephalic version after previous cesarean section: a cohort study of 100 consecutive attempts. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol. 231:210, 2018

Inbar R, Mazaaki S, Kalter A, et al: Trial of labour after caesarean (TOLAC) is associated with increased risk for instrumental delivery. J Obstet Gynaecol 37(1):44, 2017

Jastrow N, Chailet N, Roberge S, et al: Sonographic lower uterine segment thickness and risk of uterine scar defect: a systematic review. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 32(4):321, 2010a

Jastrow N, Demers S, Chaillet N, et al: Lower uterine segment thickness to prevent uterine rupture and adverse perinatal outcomes: a multicenter prospective study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(5):604.e1, 2016

Jastrow N, Demers S, Gauthier RI, et al: Adverse obstetric outcomes in women with previous cesarean for dystocia in second stage labor. Am J Perinatol 30:173, 2013

Jastrow N, Robere S, Gauthier RJ, et al: Effect of birth weight on adverse obstetric outcomes in vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 115(2):338, 2010b

Juhasz G, Gyamfi C, Gyamfi P, et al: Effect of body mass index and excessive weight gain on success of vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 106:741, 2005

Kaczmarczyk M, Sparén P, Terry P, et al: Risk factors for uterine rupture and neonatal consequences of uterine rupture: a population-based study of successive pregnancies in Sweden. BJOG 114:1208, 2007

Kayani SI, Alfirevic Z: Uterine rupture after induction of labour in women with previous caesarean section. BJOG 112:451, 2005

Kieser KE, Baskett TF: A 10-year population-based study of uterine rupture. Obstet Gynecol 100:749, 2002

Landon MB, Hauth JC, Leveno KJ, et al: Maternal and perinatal outcomes associated with a trial of labor after prior cesarean delivery. N Engl J Med 351:2581, 2004

Landon MB, Leindecker S, Spong CY, et al: The MFMU Cesarean Registry: factors affecting the success of trial of labor after previous cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193:1016, 2005

Landon MB, Spong CY, Thom E, et al: Risk of uterine rupture with a trial of labor in women with multiple and single prior cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 108:12, 2006
Lannon SM, Guthrie KA, Vanderhoeven JP, et al: Uterine rupture risk after periviable cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 125:1095, 2015
Lavin JP, DiPasquale L, Crane S, et al: A state-wide assessment of the obstetric, anesthesia, and operative team personnel who are available to manage the labors and deliveries and to treat the complications of women who attempt vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 187:611, 2002
Leeman LM, Beagle M, Espey E, et al: Diminishing availability of trial of labor after cesarean delivery in New Mexico hospitals. Obstet Gynecol 122:242, 2013
Lipschuetz M, Guedalia J, Rottenstreich A, et al: Prediction of vaginal birth after cesarean deliveries using machine learning. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(6):613.e1, 2020
Lydon-Rochelle M, Holt VL, Easterling TR, et al: Risk of uterine rupture during labor among women with a prior cesarean delivery. N Engl J Med 345:3, 2001
Macharey G, Gissler M, Rahkonen L, et al: Breech presentation at term and associated obstetric risks factors-a nationwide population based cohort study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 295(4):833, 2017
Macones GA, Cahill A, Pare E, et al: Obstetric outcomes in women with two prior cesarean deliveries: is vaginal birth after cesarean delivery a viable option? Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:1223, 2005a
Macones GA, Peipert J, Nelson DB, et al: Maternal complications with vaginal birth after cesarean delivery: a multicenter study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193:1656, 2005b
Marshall NE, Fu R, Guise JM: Impact of multiple cesarean deliveries on maternal morbidity: a systematic review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205:262.e1, 2011
Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJ: Births in the United States, 2018. NCHS Data Brief 346:1, 2019
Martin JN, Perry KG, Roberts WE, et al: The care for trial of labor in the patients with a prior low-segment vertical cesarean incision. Am J Obstet Gynecol 177:144, 1997
McMahon MJ, Luther ER, Bowes WA Jr, et al: Comparison of a trial of labor with an elective second cesarean section. N Engl J Med 335:689, 1996
Mercer BM, Gilbert S, Landon MB, et al: Labor outcomes with increasing number of prior vaginal births after cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 111:285, 2008
Metz TD, Stoddard GJ, Henry E, et al: Simple, validated vaginal birth after cesarean delivery prediction model for use at the time of admission. Obstet Gynecol 122:571, 2013
Miller DA, Diaz FG, Paul RH: Vaginal birth after cesarean: a 10-year experience. Obstet Gynecol 84(2):255, 1994
Moramarco V, Korale Liyanage S, Ninan K, et al: Classical cesarean: what are the maternal and infant risks compared with low transverse cesarean in preterm birth, and subsequent uterine rupture? A systematic review and meta-analysis. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 42(2):179, 2020
Mozurkewich EL, Hutton EK: Elective repeat cesarean delivery versus trial of labor: a meta-analysis of the literature from 1989 to 1999. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183(5):1187, 2000
Naji O, Daemen A, Smith A, et al: Changes in cesarean section scar dimensions during pregnancy: a prospective longitudinal study. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 41(5):556, 2013a
Naji O, Wynants L, Smith A, et al: Predicting successful vaginal birth after cesarean section using a model based on cesarean scar features examined using transvaginal sonography. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 41(6):672, 2013b
National Institutes of Health: Consensus Development Conference of Cesarean Childbirth, September 1980. NIH Pub No. 82–2067, Bethesda, NIH, 1981
National Institutes of Health Consensus Development Conference Panel: National Institutes of Health Consensus Development Conference statement: Vaginal birth after cesarean: new insights. March 8–10, 2010. Obstet Gynecol 115:1279, 2010
Nisenblat V, Barak S, Griness OB, et al: Maternal complications associated with multiple cesarean deliveries. Obstet Gynecol 108:21, 2006
Osmundson SS, Garabedian MJ, Lyell DJ: Risk factors for classical hysterotomy by gestational age. Obstet Gynecol 122:845, 2013
Osser OV, Valentin L: Clinical importance of appearance of cesarean hysterotomy scar at transvaginal ultrasonography in nonpregnant women. Obstet Gynecol 117:525, 2011
Pauerstein CJ: Once a section, always a trial of labor? Obstet Gynecol 28:273, 1966
Pauerstein CJ, Karp L, Muher S: Trial of labor after low segment cesarean section. S Med J 62:925, 1969
Peaceman AM, Gersnoviez R, Landon MB, et al: The MFMU cesarean registry: impact of fetal size on trial of labor success for patients with previous cesarean for dystocia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:1127, 2006
Phipps MG, Watabe B, Clemons JL, et al: Risk factors for bladder injury during cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 105(1):156, 2005
Poprzeczny AJ, Stocking K, Showell M, et al: Patient decision aids to facilitate shared decision making in obstetrics and gynecology: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 135(2):444, 2020
Quiñones JN, Stamilio DM, Paré E, et al: The effect of prematurity on vaginal birth after cesarean delivery: success and maternal morbidity. Obstet Gynecol 105:519, 2005
Ramirez MM, Gilbert S, Landon MB, et al: Mode of delivery in women with antepartum fetal death and prior cesarean delivery. Am J Perinatol 27:825, 2010
Ravasia DJ, Brain PH, Pollard JK: Incidence of uterine rupture among women with müllerian duct anomalies who attempt vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181:877, 1999
Ravasia DJ, Wood SL, Pollard JK: Uterine rupture during induced trial of labor among women with previous cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:1176, 2000
Reyes-Ceja L, Cabrera R, Insfran E, et al: Pregnancy following previous uterine rupture: study of 19 patients. Obstet Gynecol 34:387, 1969
Ritchie EH: Pregnancy after rupture of the pregnant uterus: a report of 36 pregnancies and a study of cases reported since 1932. J Obstet Gynaecol Br Commonw 78:642, 1971
Roberge S, Demers S, Bergella V, et al: Impact of single- vs double-layer closure on adverse outcomes and uterine scar defect: a systematic review and metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211:453, 2014
Rodriguez MH, Masaki DI, Phelan JP, et al: Uterine rupture: are intrauterine pressure catheters useful in the diagnosis? Am J Obstet Gynecol 161:666, 1989
Rosenstein MG, Kuppermann M, Gregorich SE, et al: Association between vaginal birth after cesarean delivery and primary cesarean delivery rates. Obstet Gynecol 122:1010, 2013
Rossi AC, D'Addario V: Maternal morbidity following a trial of labor after cesarean section vs elective repeat cesarean delivery: a systematic review with metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199(3):224, 2008
Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists: Birth after previous caesarean birth. Green-top Guideline No. 45, October 2015
Sachs BP, Koblin C, Castro MA, et al: The risk of lowering the cesarean-delivery rate. N Engl J Med 340:5, 1999
Sarreau M, Isly H, Poulain P, et al: Balloon catheter vs oxytocin alone for induction of labor in women with a previous cesarean section: a randomized controlled trial. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(2):259, 2020
Sciscione AC, Landon MB, Leveno KJ, et al: Previous preterm cesarean delivery and risk of subsequent uterine rupture. Obstet Gynecol 111:648, 2008
Scott JR: Vaginal birth after cesarean delivery: a common-sense approach. Obstet Gynecol 118:342, 2011
Sheth SS: Results of treatment of rupture of the uterus by suturing. J Obstet Gynaecol Br Commonw 75:55, 1968
Shipp TD, Zelop CM, Repke JT, et al: Interdelivery interval and risk of symptomatic uterine rupture. Obstet Gynecol 97:175, 2001
Shipp TD, Zelop CM, Repke JT, et al: Intrapartum uterine rupture and dehiscence in patients with prior lower uterine segment vertical and transverse incisions. Obstet Gynecol 94:735, 1999
Silberstein T, Wiznitzer A, Katz M, et al: Routine revision of uterine scar after cesarean section: has it ever been necessary? Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 78:29, 1998
Silver RM, Landon MB, Rouse DJ, et al: Maternal morbidity associated with multiple repeat cesarean deliveries. Obstet Gynecol 207:1226, 2006
Simon AE, Uddin SG: National trends in primary cesarean delivery, labor attempts, and labor success, 1990–2010. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(6):554.e1, 2013
Smith GC, Pell JP, Cameron AD, et al: Risk of perinatal death associated with labor after previous cesarean delivery in uncomplicated term pregnancies. JAMA 287:2684, 2002
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Counseling and management of women with prior classical cesarean delivery. Contemp OB/GYN 57(6):26, 2012
Spong CY, Landon MB, Gilbert S, et al: Risk of uterine rupture and adverse perinatal outcome at term after cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 110:801, 2007
Stamilio DM, DeFranco E, Paré E, et al: Short interpregnancy interval. Risk of uterine rupture and complications of vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 110, 1075, 2007
Tahseen S, Griffiths M: Vaginal birth after two caesarean sections (VBAC-2)—a systematic review with meta-analysis of success rate and adverse outcomes of VBAC-2 versus VBAC-1 and repeat (third) caesarean sections. BJOG 117:5, 2010

Tita AT, Landon MB, Spong CY, et al: Timing of elective repeat cesarean delivery at term and neonatal outcomes. N Engl J Med 360(2):111, 2009

Traynor AJ, Aragon M, Ghosh D, et al: Obstetric Anesthesia Workforce Survey: a 30-year update. Anesth Analg 122(6):1939, 2016

Tsakiridis I, Mamopoulos A, Athanasiadis A, et al: Vaginal birth after previous cesarean birth: a comparison of 3 national guidelines. Obstet Gynecol Surv 73(9):537, 2018

Tulandi T, Agdi M, Zarei A, et al: Adhesion development and morbidity after repeat cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(1):56, 2009

Uddin SF, Simon AE: Rates and success rates of trial of labor after cesarean delivery in the United States, 1990–2009. Matern Child Health J 17:1309, 2013

Usta IM, Hamdi MA, Abu Musa AA, et al: Pregnancy outcome in patients with previous uterine rupture. Acta Obstet Gynecol 86:172, 2007

Usta IM, Hobeika EM, Abu-Musa AA, et al: Placenta previa-accreta: risk factors and complications. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193:1045, 2005

Varner MW, Thom E, Spong CY, et al: Trial of labor after one previous cesarean delivery for multifetal gestation. Obstet Gynecol 110:814, 2007

Webb JC, Gilson G, Gordon L: Late second stage rupture of the uterus and bladder with vaginal birth after cesarean section: a case report and review of the literature. J Matern Fetal Med 9(6):362, 2000

Weill Y, Pollack RN: The efficacy and safety of external cephalic version after a previous caesarean delivery. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 57(3):323, 2017

Wen SW, Huang L, Liston R, et al: Severe maternal morbidity in Canada, 1991–2001. CMAJ 173:759, 2005

Wen SW, Rusen ID, Walker M, et al: Comparison of maternal mortality and morbidity between trial of labor and elective cesarean section among women with previous cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191(4):1263, 2004

Wing DA, Lovett K, Paul RH: Disruption of prior uterine incision following misoprostol for labor induction in women with previous cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 91:828, 1998

Wing DA, Paul RH: Vaginal birth after cesarean section: selection and management. Clin Obstet Gynecol 42:836, 1999

Wu Y, Kataria Y, Wang Z, et al: Factors associated with successful vaginal birth after a cesarean section: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 19(1):360, 2019

Wyckoff ET, Cua GM, Gibson DJ, et al: Efficacy of the NICHD vaginal birth after cesarean delivery calculator: a single center experience. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(4):553, 2020

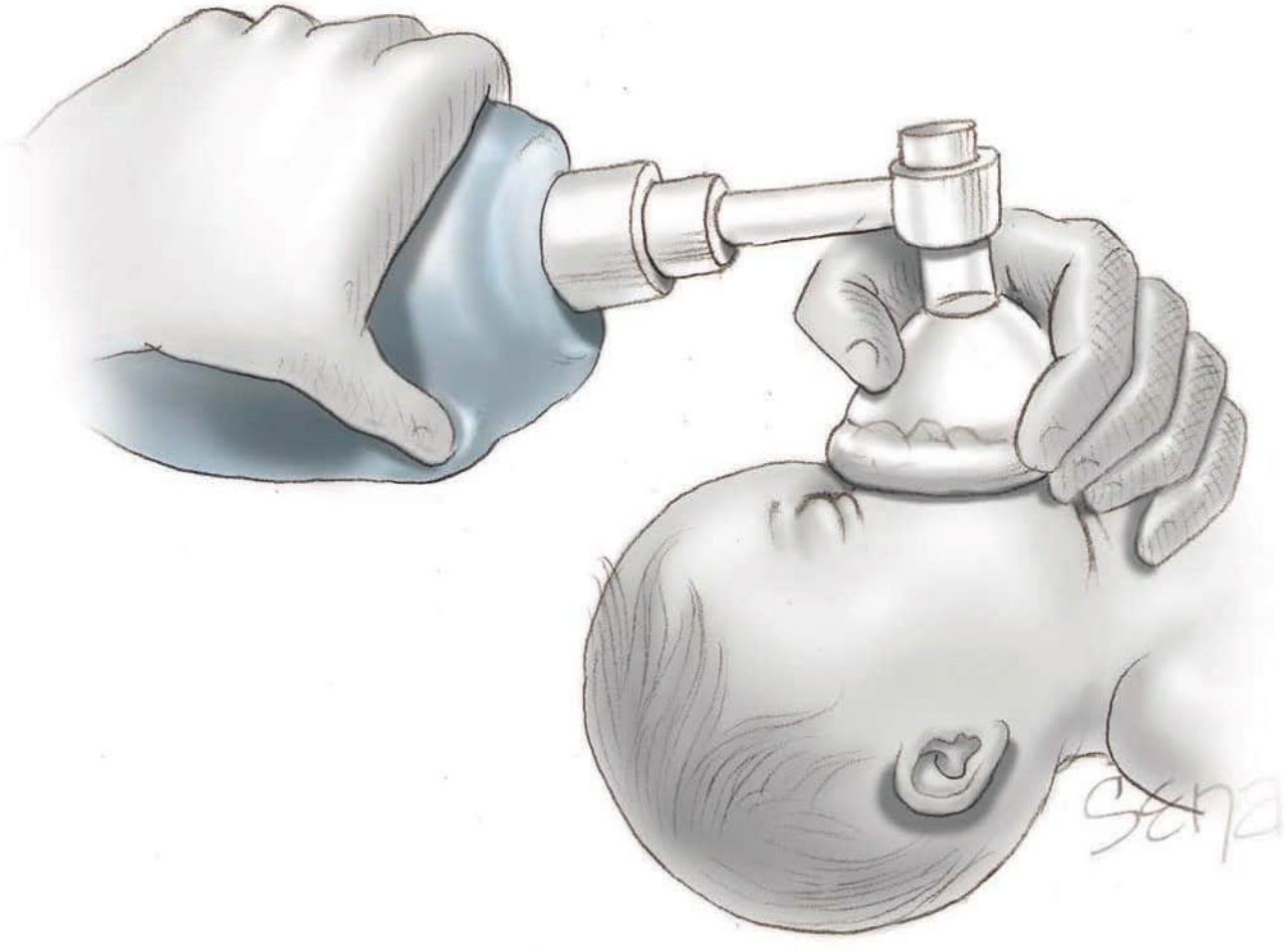
Young CB, Liu S, Muraca GM, et al: Mode of delivery after a previous cesarean birth, and associated maternal and neonatal morbidity. CMAJ 190(18):E556, 2018

Zelop CM, Shipp TD, Repke JT, et al: Outcomes of trial of labor following previous cesarean delivery among women with fetuses weighing >4000 g. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185:903, 2001

Zelop CM, Shipp TD, Repke JT, et al: Uterine rupture during induced or augmented labor in gravid women with one prior cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181:882, 1999

SECTION 9

THE NEWBORN



CHAPTER 32

The Newborn

In most instances at delivery, the newborn is healthy and vigorous, but at times, special care may be needed. For this reason, the American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017a) recommend that every birth should be attended by at least one qualified individual. This person should be skilled in the initial steps of newborn care and positive-pressure ventilation, and their only responsibility is management of the newborn. This usually is a pediatrician, nurse practitioner, anesthesiologist, nurse anesthetist, or specially trained nurse. However, in their absence, the responsibility for neonatal resuscitation falls to the obstetrical attendant. Thus, obstetricians should be well versed in measures for immediate care of the newborn.

The number and qualifications of personnel who attend the delivery will vary depending on the anticipated risk, the number of babies, and the hospital setting. A qualified team with full resuscitation skills should be present for high-risk deliveries and immediately available for every resuscitation. This team should not be on call at home or in a remote area of the hospital. Moreover, team training through frequent simulation practice is recommended for all who may be called to attend deliveries (Aziz, 2020).

TRANSITION TO AIR BREATHING

Immediately following birth, the newborn must promptly convert from placental to pulmonary gas exchange. Pulmonary vascular resistance must fall, pulmonary perfusion must rapidly rise, and unique fetal vascular shunts must begin to close to separate the systemic and pulmonary circulations. These shunts include the patent ductus arteriosus and patent foramen ovale, described in Chapter 7 (p. 128). Lung aeration is not only critical for pulmonary gas exchange. Specifically, recent studies suggest that it is responsible for initiating cardiovascular changes at birth (Hooper, 2019).

In utero, the fetal lungs are filled with amnionic fluid, which must be cleared quickly for air breathing. Various means contribute, and these mechanisms may depend on gestational age and mode of delivery. First, in term fetuses, a large release of fetal adrenaline late in labor stimulates pulmonary epithelial cells to stop secreting and instead to start reabsorbing lung liquid due to sodium-channel activation (te Pas, 2008). This mechanism is likely a minor one, as blockade of the receptors for sodium-channel activation reduces or delays but does not prevent liquid clearance from the lungs at birth (Buchiboyina, 2017).

As a second method, mechanical forces aid lung fluid clearance. Early reports described expulsion of lung liquid by compression of the fetal thorax and abdomen as they passed through the birth canal (Karlberg, 1962; Saunders, 1978). By this mechanism, up to a third of lung liquid is expelled in a jet of fluid from the nose and mouth once the respiratory tract is exposed to the lower outside pressure. However, it appears that uterine contractions force a change in fetal posture, which compresses the thorax and raises intrathoracic pressures. This expels lung liquid early in labor more so than the "vaginal squeeze" theory (Hooper, 2019; te Pas, 2008; Vyas, 1981).

In a third mechanism, a significant amount of lung liquid is cleared after birth (Hooper, 2019). In animal studies, most lung aeration occurs during inspiration—within three to five

breaths after birth (Hooper, 2007). The transpulmonary pressure gradient during inspiration promotes movement of fluid into the interstitial tissue. No liquid clears between breaths. From the interstitium, fluid is gradually cleared, probably by the pulmonary circulation and lymphatic vessels. It is possible for lung interstitial tissue pressure to rise to a point that fluid can actually move back into the airspaces during expiration unless positive end-expiratory pressure opposes liquid reentry (Siew, 2009). This may contribute to development of *transient tachypnea of the newborn*.

As fluid is replaced by air, compression of the pulmonary vasculature is reduced considerably, and in turn, resistance to blood flow is lowered. With the fall in pulmonary arterial blood pressure, the ductus arteriosus normally closes.

High, negative intrathoracic pressures are required to permit the initial entry of air into the fluid-filled alveoli. Normally, from the first breath after birth, progressively more residual air accumulates in the lung. With each successive breath, lower pulmonary opening pressure is required. In the normal mature newborn, by approximately the fifth breath, pressure-volume changes achieved with each respiration are very similar to those of the adult. Thus, the breathing pattern shifts from shallow episodic inspirations characteristic of the fetus to regular, deeper inhalations.

As a last mechanism, surfactant is synthesized by type II pneumocytes. It lowers alveolar surface tension and helps maintain lung inflation by preventing alveolar collapse. Insufficient surfactant, which is common in preterm neonates, leads promptly to respiratory distress syndrome (Chap. 34, p. 615).

In utero, umbilical venous return is the main source of preload for the left ventricle. Namely, the fetal pulmonary blood flow is very low due to high pulmonary vascular resistance and is unable to provide sufficient venous return to maintain left ventricular output (Hooper, 2019).

Clamping the umbilical cord reduces preload for the left ventricle and thus reduces cardiac output. Until the lungs aerate and pulmonary blood flow increases, the reduced cardiac output will manifest as bradycardia. If cord clamping is delayed until after the lungs have aerated, the transition is smoother and cardiac output does not fall (Bhatt, 2013). This understanding has led to interest in delayed (physiological) cord clamping, especially if it can be done after successful inflation of the lung. Specialized resuscitation trolleys have been developed to aid this practice, and several international randomized trials are underway.

CARE IN THE DELIVERY ROOM

The International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation (ILCOR) updated its scientific review for neonatal delivery room care and resuscitation (Wyckoff, 2020). This review is used by the American Academy of Pediatrics and the American Heart Association to develop the neonatal resuscitation guidelines for North America (Aziz, 2020).

Immediate Care

Before and during delivery, several determinants of neonatal well-being are carefully considered. Risk factors can include: (1) poor maternal health status; (2) prenatal complications, including any suspected fetal malformations; (3) preterm gestational age; (4) labor complications; (5) long duration of labor and ruptured membranes; (6) anesthesia that may affect placental perfusion; (7) difficult delivery; and (8) various medications given during labor and their dosages, administration routes, and timing.

When risk factors are present, neonatal resuscitation providers should be present for the delivery. This team readies equipment, ensures that adequate personnel are present, delegates roles and responsibilities, and considers contingency plans to stabilize the newborn. In preparation, a neonatal provider will ask the delivery provider regarding expected gestational age, amnionic fluid color, additional maternal and fetal risk factors, and the management plan for umbilical cord clamping (Weiner, 2021). Several neonatal conditions are associated with a nonvigorous presentation. These may include immaturity, hypoxemia or acidosis from any cause, sepsis, recent drugs administered to the mother, meconium-stained amnionic fluid, and central nervous system developmental abnormalities. Those related to the respiratory tract are lung abnormalities, upper airway obstruction, pneumothorax, and meconium aspiration.

Umbilical Cord Management

Obstetrical and pediatric care teams should ideally discuss plans regarding umbilical cord management prior to delivery. Deferred cord clamping provides transfusion of placental blood to the newborn. In term neonates, delaying cord clamping by 30 to 60 seconds raises hemoglobin levels at birth and improves iron stores during infancy. The only reported negative outcome is hyperbilirubinemia and a higher subsequent rate of phototherapy (Gomersall, 2021). In preterm neonates, deferred cord clamping may reduce rates of blood transfusion, intraventricular hemorrhage, and necrotizing enterocolitis and improves survival rates (Seidler, 2021).

Delayed cord clamping should be performed in preterm and term newborns who do not require resuscitation at birth. There should be no delay if a newborn requires resuscitation or if placental abruption, cord avulsion, or bleeding placenta previa or vasa previa complicates delivery. Cord milking is a reasonable alternative to immediate cord clamping for late preterm and term newborns. It should be avoided in neonates <28 weeks' gestation (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a; Gomersall, 2021; Seidler, 2021).

Newborn Resuscitation

Approximately 10 percent of newborns require some degree of active resuscitation to stimulate breathing, and 1 percent need extensive care. Perhaps not coincidentally, the neonatal death rate with home birth in the United States is small but still fourfold greater than attended hospital births (Grünebaum, 2020).

When deprived of adequate gas exchange, either before or after birth, neonates demonstrate a well-defined sequence of events leading to apnea (Fig. 32-1). With oxygen deprivation and carbon dioxide (CO_2) elevation, there is a transient period of rapid breathing, and if it persists, breathing stops, which

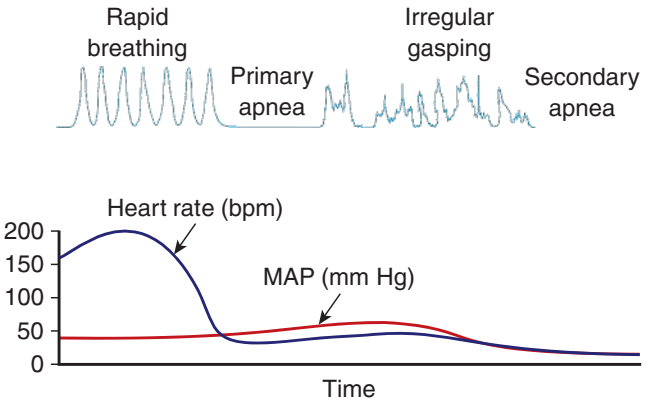


FIGURE 32-1 Physiological changes associated with primary and secondary apnea in the newborn. bpm = beats per minute; HR = heart rate; MAP = mean arterial pressure. (Reproduced with permission from Kattwinkel J: Textbook of Neonatal Resuscitation, 6th ed. Elk Grove Village, American Academy of Pediatrics and American Heart Association, 2010.)

is termed *primary apnea*. This stage is accompanied by a fall in heart rate and loss of neuromuscular tone. Simple stimulation will usually reverse primary apnea. If oxygen deprivation and asphyxia persist, however, the newborn will develop deep gasping respirations, followed by *secondary apnea*. This latter stage is associated with a further decline in heart rate, fall in blood pressure, and loss of neuromuscular tone. Neonates in secondary apnea will not respond to stimulation and will not spontaneously resume respiratory efforts. Unless ventilation is assisted, death follows.

Clinically, primary and secondary apneas are initially indistinguishable. When a response to stimulation is not immediate, resuscitation with effective ventilation of the apneic newborn must begin quickly. Effective positive-pressure ventilation is the most critical intervention in neonatal resuscitation.

Resuscitation Protocol

Initial Assessment

Immediately after birth and usually during the delay for umbilical cord clamping, newborn tone, respiratory effort, and heart rate are evaluated (Fig. 32-2). Most term neonates are vigorous by 10 to 30 seconds after birth (Ersdal, 2012). For these, initial steps of warming the newborn can be done on the mother's chest or abdomen. Direct skin-to-skin contact with the mother and drying and covering the newborn with a warm blanket will help maintain euthermia (36.5 to 37.5°C). A vigorously crying newborn does not require routine oral suctioning (Aziz 2020; Foster, 2017). Instead, bulb suctioning to remove secretions is best reserved for those who cannot clear secretions on their own due to apnea or copious secretions. Additional routine care steps include drying, gentle stimulation by rubbing the newborn's back, and continued observation during the transition period.

If not vigorous or if preterm, the neonate is carried to a prewarmed radiant warmer for initial newborn care steps. The initial wet birth blanket is removed to allow newborn drying. Cold stress is associated with multiple neonatal morbidities and

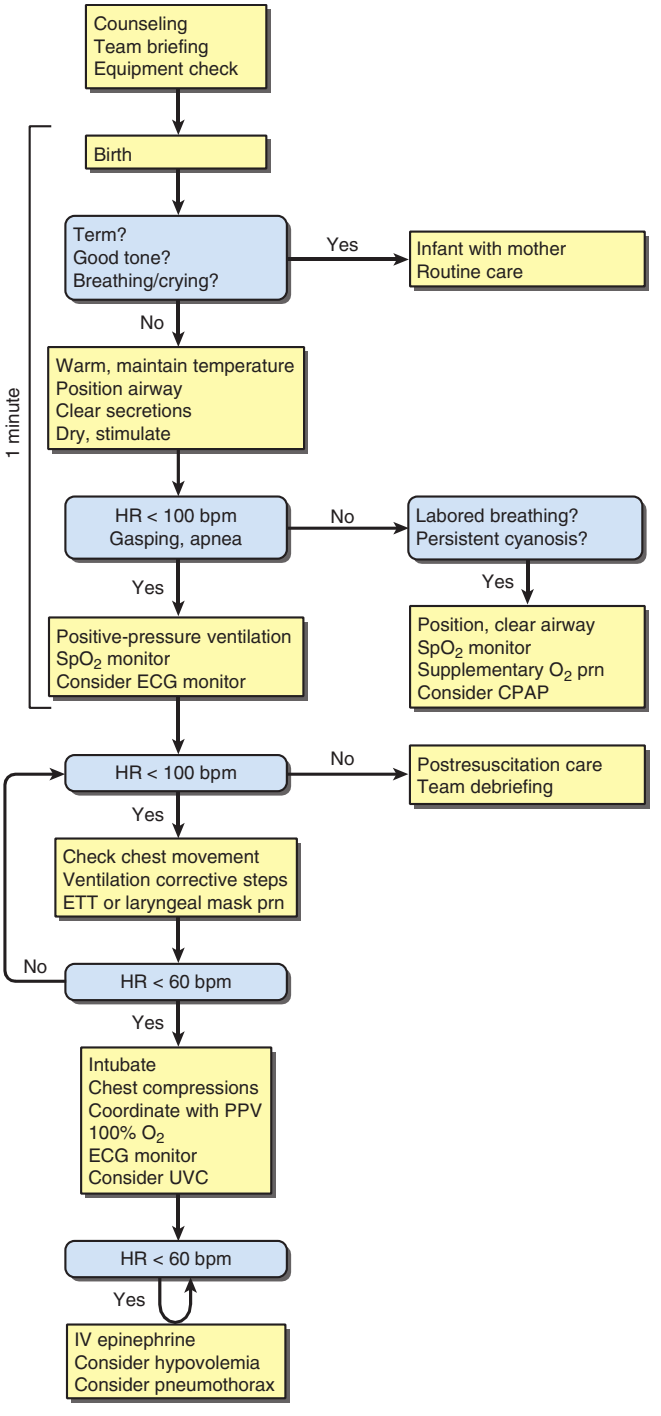


FIGURE 32-2 Algorithm for resuscitation of the newborn based on the International Liaison Committee on Resuscitation scientific review and recommended by the American Academy of Pediatrics and American Heart Association (Aziz, 2020; Wyckoff, 2020). bpm = beats per minute; CPAP = continuous positive airway pressure; ECG = electrocardiogram; ETT = endotracheal tube; HR = heart rate; IV = intravenous; PPV = positive-pressure ventilation; SpO_2 = peripheral oxygen saturation; UVC = umbilical venous catheter.

mortality. Preterm infants are particularly vulnerable, and special steps can help maintain euthermia. These are providing a warm delivery room (>25°C), covering the neonatal head with either a plastic or wool hat, applying polyethylene plastic "ponchos" or wraps to slow evaporative heat losses, using chemically

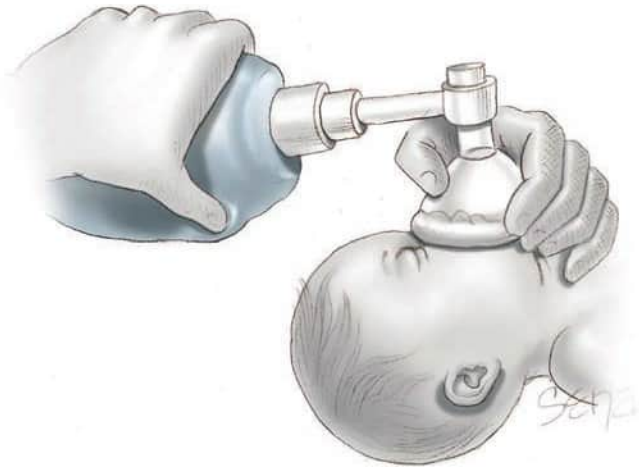


FIGURE 32-3 Correct use of bag-and-mask ventilation. The head should be in a sniffing position with the tip of the nose pointing to the ceiling. The neck should not be hyperextended.

activated thermal mattresses to reduce conductive heat loss, and administering warm, humidified respiratory gases during respiratory stabilization (Aziz, 2020; Wyckoff, 2020).

At the radiant warmer, newborns are positioned with mild neck extension to maximally open the airway. If the newborn is apneic or has copious secretions that obstruct the airway, then a bulb syringe or suction catheter can help clear the mouth and the nose. Routine intubation and suctioning of meconium-stained amnionic fluid is not recommended for the nonvigorous newborn (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a; Wyckoff, 2020). Intubation and suction are reserved for suspected airway obstruction. Meconium-stained amnionic fluid is a significant risk factor for the need for advanced resuscitation. In rare circumstances, the meconium-stained fluid can obstruct the newborn's airway and necessitate intubation and tracheal suctioning (Aziz, 2020; Wyckoff, 2020).

After completion of the initial stabilization steps, persisting apnea, gasping respirations, or heart rate ≤100 beats per minute (bpm) should prompt immediate administration of positive-pressure ventilation with room air (Fig. 32-3). This should be started by 60 seconds of life, if not sooner, once the initial steps are completed.

Mask Ventilation

Assisted ventilation by facemask at a rate of 40 to 60 breaths per minute is recommended as an initial resuscitation step. Oxygen saturation is monitored by pulse oximetry. Supplemental oxygen can be given in graduated, rising percentages to maintain oxygen saturation values within a normal range. Percentage goals rise progressively with accruing minutes of life (Table 32-1) (Weiner, 2021). Adequate ventilation is best indicated by an improved heart rate. A colorimetric end-tidal carbon dioxide ($ETCO_2$) monitor that lies between the positive-pressure device and facemask serves as a helpful adjunct to detect successful gas exchange during mask ventilation.

TABLE 32-1. Oxygen Saturation Goals per Minute of Life

1 min	60–65%
2 min	65–70%
3 min	70–75%
4 min	75–80%
5 min	80–85%
10 min	85–95%

If the heart rate remains ≤100 beats per minute after 5 to 10 positive pressure breaths, and the attempted ventilation is inadequate, then further corrective steps should begin. These can be remembered by the mnemonic MR. SOPA (Table 32-2) (Weiner, 2021). The two most common problems are mask leak due to an ineffective seal and malposition of the airway (Schmölzer, 2019). Mask positioning should maintain an open mouth. This provides a superior conduit for gas transfer than the narrow-caliber nares. If the other corrective steps do not raise the heart rate, either intubation with an endotracheal tube or placement of a supraglottic airway is required.

Alternative Airway

If mask ventilation is ineffective or prolonged, an alternative airway is placed. For tracheal intubation, a laryngoscope with a straight blade—size 0 for a preterm newborn and size 1 for a term neonate—is used. Gentle cricoid pressure may be useful. An increasing heart rate and $ETCO_2$ detection after several breaths are the primary methods to confirm intubation of the trachea and not the esophagus. One can also look for symmetrical chest wall motion; auscultate for equal breath sounds, especially in the axillae; and auscultate for the absence of breath sounds or gurgling over the stomach.

Once in place, the tube is used for tracheal suctioning only for a suspected obstructed airway. Otherwise, an appropriate positive-pressure device (self-inflating bag, flow-inflating bag, or T-piece resuscitator) is attached to the endotracheal tube (Roehr, 2021). Ventilation breaths are delivered at a rate of 40 to 60 per minute with a force adequate to stabilize the heart

TABLE 32-2. Ventilation Corrective Steps (MR. SOPA)

M—Mask adjustment	Check the mask seal and reapply if needed
R—Reposition airway	Ensure the newborn is truly in the open airway position with mild neck extension
S—Suction mouth and nose	Remove obstructing secretions
O—Open the mouth	Avoid closing the mouth during efforts to achieve a good mask seal
P—Pressure increase	Increase the inflation pressure
A—Advanced airway	If all prior steps fail to achieve chest rise, then intubate or place a laryngeal mask or other supraglottic airway

rate. In term newborns, opening pressures of 30 to 40 cm H_2O typically will expand the alveoli without causing barotrauma. Once the lung is inflated, less pressure is typically needed (20 to 25 cm H_2O). For preterm neonates, pressures of 20 to 25 cm H_2O are typically used. Increases in heart rate and peripheral oxygen saturation (SpO_2) levels to acceptable ranges reflect a positive response.

Chest Compressions

Most commonly, effective ventilation is all that is required to stabilize the newborn in the delivery room. If the heart rate remains <60 bpm despite ventilation corrective steps, including placement of an endotracheal tube, chest compressions are initiated. Once the endotracheal tube is secured, compressions are done from the head of the bed rather than the side so that space is opened up for a provider to have umbilical venous access. When compressions are initiated, the oxygen concentration is increased to 100 percent. With the two-thumb compression method, hands encircle the chest, while the thumbs depress the sternum. Compressions are delivered on the lower third of the sternum at a depth sufficient to generate a palpable pulse. This is typically one third of the anterior-posterior diameter of the chest. Compared with other techniques, this method offers less provider fatigue over time, yields higher generated perfusion pressures, and lessens hand malpositioning that could cause traumatic injury (Kapadia, 2012).

A 3:1 compressions-to-ventilation ratio is recommended, and 90 compressions and 30 breaths achieve approximately 120 events each minute. Coordinated chest compressions and ventilations should continue until the spontaneous heart rate is ≥60 bpm (Wyckoff, 2020).

If the heart rate remains ≤60 bpm after adequate ventilation and chest compressions, intravenously administered epinephrine is indicated. The recommended intravenous dose is 0.01 to 0.03 mg/kg. Epinephrine may be given through the endotracheal tube if venous access has not been established, but its action is less reliable (Isayama, 2020). If given through the endotracheal tube, higher doses are employed—0.05 to 0.1 mg/kg.

Resuscitation Discontinuation

ILCOR concludes that it is reasonable to discontinue resuscitative efforts for a neonate who remains without a heartbeat despite at least 20 minutes of continuous and adequate resuscitative efforts (Wyckoff, 2020). Notably, the decision to continue or discontinue resuscitative efforts must be individualized. The time was recently lengthened due to reports of some newborns enrolled in therapeutic hypothermia trials who had a 10-minute Apgar score of 0 yet survived without disability. This suggests the need for caution in limiting resuscitation to 10 minutes (Foglia, 2020).

EVALUATION OF NEWBORN CONDITION

■ Apgar Score

The scoring system described by Dr. Virginia Apgar in 1953 remains a useful clinical tool to classify newborn health immediately after birth and to assess the effectiveness of resuscitative measures (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021b). During scoring, each of five easily identifiable characteristics—heart rate, respiratory effort, muscle tone, reflex irritability, and color—is assessed and assigned a value of 0, 1, or 2 (Table 32-3). In the currently recommended expanded form, concurrent resuscitation interventions also are recorded over time. The total score, based on the sum of the five components, is determined in all neonates at 1 and 5 minutes after delivery. In those with a score <7, the score may be calculated at further 5-minute intervals until a 20-minute Apgar score is assigned or resuscitation efforts are halted (Weiner, 2021).

In an analysis of more than 150,000 newborns delivered at Parkland Hospital, Casey and associates (2001b) assessed the significance of the 5-minute score for predicting survival during the first 28 days of life. They found that in term neonates, the

TABLE 32-3. 20-Minute Expanded Apgar Score

Sign	0 point	1 point	2 point	1 min	5 min	10 min	15 min	20 min
Color	Blue or pale	Acrocyanotic	Completely pink					
Heart rate	Absent	<100/min	>100/min					
Reflex irritability	No response	Grimace	Cry or active withdrawal					
Muscle tone	Limp	Some flexion	Active motion					
Respiration	Absent	Weak cry; hypoventilation	Good, crying					
			Total					
Comments:			**Resuscitation**					
			Minutes	1	5	10	15	20
			Oxygen					
			PPV/CPAP					
			ETT					
			Chest compressions					
			Epinephrine					

CPAP = continuous positive airway pressure; ETT = endotracheal tube; PPV = positive-pressure ventilation.

risk of neonatal death was approximately 1 in 5000 for those with Apgar scores of 7 to 10. This risk compares with a mortality rate of 25 percent for term newborns with 5-minute scores ≤3. Low 5-minute scores were comparably predictive of neonatal death in preterm neonates. Similarly, an analysis of more than 113,000 preterm neonates ranging from 22 to 36 weeks' gestation found that Apgar scores at 5 and 10 minutes provided prognostic information for neonatal survival rates across gestational-age strata (Cnattingius, 2020). Thus, the Apgar scoring system remains relevant for the prediction of neonatal survival.

Apgar scores alone are not predictive of hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy (HIE). However, in cohorts of babies diagnosed with HIE based on umbilical cord blood pH and standardized neurologic examinations, low 10-minute Apgar scores are significantly associated with school-age outcomes (Natarajan, 2013).

Previously, many groups established erroneous definitions of asphyxia based solely on low Apgar scores. These prompted the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and American Academy of Pediatrics (2021b) to issue a series of joint opinions with important caveats regarding Apgar score limitations. Certain elements of the Apgar score are partially dependent on the physiological maturity of the newborn, and a healthy, preterm neonate may receive a low score only because of immaturity. Other influencing factors include fetal malformations, maternal medications, and infection. Thus, it is inappropriate to use an Apgar score alone to diagnose asphyxia. Moreover, the Apgar score alone cannot establish hypoxia as the cause of cerebral palsy, as discussed in Chapter 33 (p. 604).

Umbilical Cord Blood Acid–Base Studies

Blood taken from umbilical vessels may be used for acid–base studies to assess the metabolic status of the neonate. Blood collection is performed following delivery by immediately isolating a 10- to 20-cm segment of cord with two clamps placed near the neonate and another two clamps positioned nearer the placenta. The cord is then cut between the two proximal clamps and then the two distal clamps (Blickstein, 2007).

Arterial blood is drawn from the isolated cord segment into a 1- to 2-mL commercially prepared plastic syringe containing lyophilized heparin or a similar syringe that has been flushed with a heparin solution containing 1000 U/mL. Once sampling is completed, the needle is capped and the syringe transported, on ice, to the laboratory. Although efforts should be made for prompt transport, neither the pH nor partial pressure of CO_2 (P_{CO_2}) values change significantly in blood kept at room temperature for up to 60 minutes (Lynn, 2007). Mathematical models have been developed that allow reasonable prediction of birth acid–base status in properly collected cord blood samples analyzed as late as 60 hours after delivery (Chauhan, 1994). Notably, acid–base measurements can show significant variances between different analyzing devices (Mokarami, 2012).

Fetal Acid–Base Physiology

The fetus produces both carbonic and organic acids. Carbonic acid (H_2CO_3) forms from oxidative metabolism of CO_2. The fetus usually rapidly clears CO_2 through the placental circulation. If CO_2 clearance drops, carbonic acid levels rise. This often follows impaired placental exchange. When H_2CO_3 accumulates in fetal blood and organic acids do not concurrently rise, the result is *respiratory acidemia*.

In contrast, organic acids primarily include lactic and β-hydroxybutyric acids. Levels of these increase with persistent placental exchange impairment, and they result from anaerobic glycolysis. These organic acids are cleared slowly from fetal blood. When they accumulate, without a concurrent increase in H_2CO_3, the result is *metabolic acidemia*. With the development of metabolic acidemia, bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) levels drop because it is used to buffer the organic acid. A rise in H_2CO_3 concentrations accompanied by greater organic acid levels, reflected by decreased HCO_3^- levels, causes *mixed respiratory-metabolic acidemia*.

In the fetus, respiratory and metabolic acidemia and ultimately tissue acidosis are most likely part of a progressively worsening continuum. This is different from adult pathophysiology, in which distinct conditions result either in respiratory acidosis—for example, pulmonary disease, or in metabolic acidosis—for example, diabetes. In the fetus, the placenta serves as both the lungs and, to a certain degree, the kidneys. One principal cause of fetal acidemia is a drop in uteroplacental perfusion. This creates retention of CO_2, that is, respiratory acidemia, and if protracted and severe enough, yields a mixed or metabolic acidemia.

Assuming that maternal pH and blood gases are normal, the actual pH of fetal blood depends on the proportion of carbonic and organic acids and the amount of bicarbonate, which is the major buffer in blood. This can best be illustrated by the Henderson–Hasselbalch equation:

$$\text{pH} = \text{pK} + \log \frac{[\text{base}]}{[\text{acid}]} \text{ or, } \text{pH} = \text{pK} + \log \frac{HCO_3^-}{H_2CO_3}$$

For clinical purposes, HCO_3^- represents the metabolic component and is reported in mEq/L. The H_2CO_3 concentration reflects the respiratory component and is reported as the P_{CO_2} in mm Hg. Thus:

$$\text{pH} = \text{pK} + \log \frac{\text{metabolic } (HCO_3^- \text{ mEq/L})}{\text{respiratory } (P_{CO_2} \text{ mm Hg})}$$

The result of this equation is a pH value. Because pH is a logarithmic term, it does not give a linear measure of acid accumulation. For example, a change in hydrogen ion concentration associated with a fall in pH from 7.0 to 6.9 is almost twice that which is associated with a fall in pH from 7.3 to 7.2. For this reason, the change in base—termed *delta base*—offers a more linear measure of the degree of accumulation of metabolic acid (Armstrong, 2007). The delta base is a calculated number used as a measure of the change in buffering capacity of bicarbonate (HCO_3^-). The formula for calculating the base excess (BE) is as follows:

$$\text{BE} = 0.02786 \times P_{CO_2} \times 10^{(\text{pH} - 6.1)} \times 13.77 \times \text{pH} - 124.58$$

Shown in Figure 32-4 is a nomogram from which these can be calculated if only two parameters are known. For example, the HCO_3^- concentration declines with a metabolic acidemia as it is consumed to maintain a normal pH. A base deficit develops when the HCO_3^- concentration drops below normal levels, and a

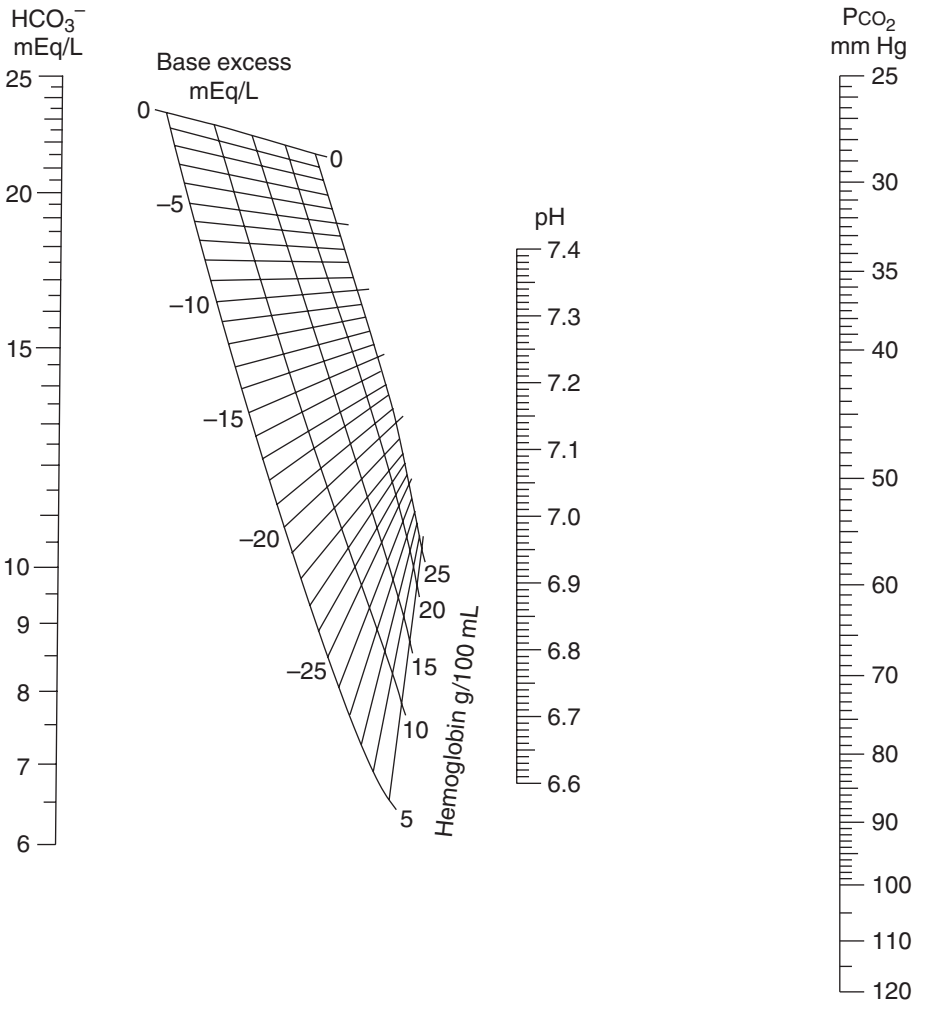


FIGURE 32-4 Nomogram for determining the delta base. (Reproduced with permission from Siggaard-Anderson O: Blood acid–base alignment nomogram. Scand J Clin Lab Invest. 1963;15:211–7.)

base excess occurs when HCO_3^- values are above normal. Importantly, a mixed respiratory–metabolic acidemia with a large base deficit and a low HCO_3^-, for example 12 mmol/L, is more often associated with a depressed neonate than is a mixed acidemia with a minimal base deficit and a more nearly normal HCO_3^- level.

Clinical Significance of Acidemia

Fetal oxygenation and pH generally decline during the course of normal labor. Normal umbilical cord blood pH and blood gas values at delivery in term newborns are summarized in Table 32-4. Similar values have been reported for preterm neonates (Ramin, 1989; Skiold, 2017). The lower limits of normal pH in the newborn range from 7.05 to 7.16 for newborns 28 to 42 weeks' gestation at birth, with some variation based on gestational age (Skiold, 2017). Thus, these values should be considered to define neonatal acidemia. Even so, most fetuses will tolerate intrapartum acidemia with a pH as low as 7.00 without incurring neurological impairment (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2014; Lee, 2020). That said, in a study of newborns with

TABLE 32-4. Umbilical Cord Blood pH and Blood Gas Values in Normal Term Newborns

Values	Ramin, 1989[a] Spontaneous Delivery n = 1292[c]	Riley, 1993[b] Spontaneous Delivery n = 3522[c]	Kotaska, 2010[b] Spontaneous Delivery n = 303[d]	Kotaska, 2010[e] Cesarean Delivery n = 189[d]
Arterial Blood				
pH	7.28 (0.07)	7.27 (0.069)	7.26 (7.01–7.39)	7.3 (7.05–7.39)
Pco_2 (mm Hg)	49.9 (14.2)	50.3 (11.1)	51 (30.9–85.8)	54 (37.5–79.5)
HCO_3^- (mEq/L)	23.1 (2.8)	22.0 (3.6)	—	—
Base excess (mEq/L)	−3.6 (2.8)	−2.7 (2.8)	—	—
Venous Blood				
pH	—	7.34 (0.063)	7.31 (7.06–7.44)	7.34 (7.10–7.42)
Pco_2 (mm Hg)	—	40.7 (7.9)	41 (24.9–70.9)	44 (29.1–70.2)
HCO_3^- (mEq/L)	—	21.4 (2.5)	—	—
Base excess (mEq/L)	—	−2.4 (2)	—	—

[a]Newborns of selected women with uncomplicated vaginal deliveries.
[b]Newborns of unselected women with vaginal deliveries.
[c]Data shown as mean (SD).
[d]Data shown as range with 2.5 or 97.5 percentile.
[e]Cesarean delivery—labor not stated.
From Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2012; Watson, 2006.

a pH <7.0 from Parkland Hospital, the incidences of neonatal deaths—8 percent, intensive care admissions—39 percent, intubations—14 percent, and seizures—13 percent, were notable (Goldaber, 1991). In a study of more than 51,000 term newborns, the incidence of neonatal encephalopathy in those with a birth pH <7.0 was 3 percent (Yeh, 2012). Even those who had normal 5-minute Apgar scores but who had an arterial cord pH values <7.0 experienced a higher risk of morbidity. This included respiratory distress, neonatal intensive care unit admission, and sepsis (Sabol, 2016). Faster acidemia resolution after birth is associated with better outcome (Casey, 2001a).

Respiratory Acidemia

Acute interruption in placental gas exchange is accompanied by subsequent CO_2 retention and respiratory acidemia. The most common antecedent factor is transient umbilical cord compression. Generally, respiratory acidemia is not harmful to the fetus (Low, 1994).

The degree to which pH is affected by P_{CO_2}—the respiratory component of the acidosis—can be calculated. First, the upper normal neonatal P_{CO_2} value of about 50 mm Hg is subtracted from the cord blood gas P_{CO_2} value. Each additional 10 mm Hg P_{CO_2} increment will lower the pH by 0.08 units (Eisenberg, 1987). Thus, in a mixed respiratory–metabolic acidemia, the benign respiratory component can be calculated. As an example, acute cord prolapse during labor prompts cesarean delivery of a neonate 20 minutes later. The umbilical artery blood gas pH was 6.95 and the P_{CO_2} was 90 mm Hg. The degree to which the cord compression and subsequent impairment of CO_2 exchange affected the pH is calculated using the relationship given earlier and shown below.

$$90 \text{ mm Hg} - 50 \text{ mm Hg} = 40 \text{ mm Hg excess } CO_2$$

$$\text{To correct pH: } (40 \div 10) \times 0.08 = 0.32;\ 6.95 + 0.32 = 7.27$$

Thus, the pH before cord prolapse was approximately 7.27, well within normal limits. Thus, the low pH resulted from respiratory acidosis.

Metabolic Acidemia

The fetus begins to develop metabolic acidemia when oxygen deprivation is sufficiently long and severe to require anaerobic metabolism for cellular energy needs. Low and associates (1997) defined fetal acidosis as a base deficit ≥12 mmol/L, and severe fetal acidosis as a base deficit ≥16 mmol/L. In the Parkland study of more than 150,000 newborns cited earlier, metabolic acidemia was defined using umbilical cord blood gas thresholds that were two standard deviations below the mean (Casey, 2001b). Thus, metabolic acidemia was an umbilical artery blood pH <7.00 accompanied by a P_{CO_2} ≤76.3 mm Hg, with higher values indicating a respiratory component; HCO_3^- concentration ≤17.7 mmol/L; and base deficit ≥10.3 mEq/L. From the standpoint of *possible* neurological injury, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2014) defines metabolic acidosis as umbilical arterial pH <7.0 and a base deficit ≥12 mmol/L.

Metabolic acidemia is associated with a high rate of multiorgan dysfunction. In rare cases, such hypoxia-induced metabolic acidemia may be so severe that it causes subsequent hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy (Chap. 33, p. 601). Severe metabolic acidosis is poorly predictive of subsequent neurological impairment in the term neonate (Cahill, 2017). In fact, a fetus without such acidemia cannot by definition have suffered recent hypoxic-induced injury. In preterm infants, newborn acid–base status is more closely linked to intraventricular hemorrhage, periventricular leukomalacia, and poorer long-term neurological outcomes (Baalbaki, 2021; Morgan, 2017).

Associations between metabolic acidemia, low Apgar scores, and neonatal death have been described in term and preterm newborns (Morgan, 2015). Regarding term neonates, the risk of neonatal death was more than 3200-fold greater in term neonates with metabolic acidemia and 5-minute scores ≤3 compared with those with a 5-minute Apgar score ≥7 (Casey, 2001b).

Recommendations for Cord Blood Gas Determinations

In some centers, cord gas analysis is performed in all neonates at birth (Morgan, 2015; Sabol, 2016). Cost-effectiveness analysis for universal cord blood gas measurement suggests benefit and potential cost savings (White, 2016). It seems reasonable to obtain cord blood gas determinations for intrapartum cases of cesarean delivery for fetal compromise, abnormal fetal heart rate tracing, fever, and low 5-minute Apgar score. Multifetal gestation and severely growth-restricted fetuses are others.

Although umbilical cord acid–base blood determinations are poorly predictive of either immediate or long-term adverse neurological outcome, they provide the most objective evidence of the fetal metabolic status at birth.

PREVENTIVE CARE

Eye Infection Prophylaxis

Ophthalmia neonatorum is mucopurulent conjunctivitis of newborns. Gonococcal and chlamydial infections are among the most common causes (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2021b).

Neisseria gonorrhoeae infection acquired at birth was a common cause of childhood blindness in the past. Gonococcal prophylaxis is now mandatory for all neonates in most states (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017a). For *prophylaxis* soon after delivery, 0.5-percent erythromycin ophthalmic ointment is recommended (U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, 2019).

For a neonate born to a mother with untreated gonorrhea, *treatment* of presumptive neonatal gonococcal conjunctivitis is a single ceftriaxone dose, 25 to 50 mg/kg, intravenously or intramuscularly, not to exceed 125 mg intramuscularly (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2021b). Before treatment, neonatal testing for both gonococcal and chlamydia infections should be obtained.

With *chlamydial conjunctivitis*, adequate neonatal prophylaxis is challenging. Ideally, prenatal screening and treatment for *Chlamydia trachomatis* obviates conjunctival infection (Hammerschlag, 2011) (Chap. 68, p. 1212). In neonates delivered vaginally of mothers with an active chlamydial infection, 30 to 50 percent will develop conjunctivitis (Zikic, 2018).

Prophylactic topical eye treatments do not reliably reduce the incidence of chlamydial conjunctivitis.

Conjunctivitis in a newborn up to age 3 months should prompt consideration for chlamydial infection (Moore, 2015). Treatment for neonatal chlamydial conjunctivitis is oral erythromycin base or ethylsuccinate, 50 mg/kg/d given daily and divided into four doses for 14 days. Another is oral azithromycin, 20 mg/kg given as a single daily dose for 3 days. A second course may be required since the efficacy of erythromycin therapy approximates only 80 percent. Posttreatment follow-up of these infants is recommended (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2021b).

Hepatitis B Immunization

Routine immunization with thimerosal-free vaccine against hepatitis B within the first 24 hours of life is standard practice for all medically stable newborns with birthweights >2000 g (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017b). If the mother is seropositive for hepatitis B surface antigen, the neonate is also passively immunized with hepatitis B immune globulin. For high-risk or even all seropositive women during pregnancy, some advocate treatment with antiviral nucleoside or nucleotide analogues to minimize fetal transmission (Dunkelberg, 2014) (Chap. 58, p. 1038).

Vitamin K

Supplemental vitamin K injection will prevent vitamin K deficiency bleeding of the newborn (Chap. 33, p. 606). A single intramuscular dose of vitamin K, 0.5 to 1 mg, is given within 1 hour of birth (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017a).

COVID-19

The novel SARS-CoV-2 virus is very contagious, spreads person to person, and can cause severe morbidity or mortality. Thus, birth attendants at the delivery of a mother with COVID-19 should implement airborne and contact isolation precautions to protect themselves during potentially aerosolizing resuscitation procedures (Edelson, 2020).

National data suggest that approximately 2 percent of newborns of women who test positive for SARS-CoV-2 near delivery have also tested positive in the first 24 to 96 hours of life (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2021a). Newborn death directly attributable to perinatal infection with SARS-CoV-2 is rare in the United States. However, evidence suggests that symptomatic maternal infection at delivery is associated with increased risks of preterm birth and perinatal morbidity (Chap. 67, p. 1188).

Infected mothers should wear a mask while holding their newborn. A mother who is acutely ill with COVID-19 may be unable to care for her neonate and may need temporary separation until she improves. Mothers who are infected but who are not acutely ill can room-in with their well newborn but should maintain a reasonable distance from their babies when possible. Breastfeeding while wearing a mask and maintaining good hand hygiene is suitable (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). The newborn should be tested at least once for SARS-CoV-2 prior to discharge (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2021a).

Newborn Screening

Mass-screening tests are available for 35 newborn conditions, and these are recommended by the Advisory Committee on Heritable Disorders in Newborns and Children (2018). Shown in Table 32-5, many are mandated by various state laws. Most states require that all tests in the core panel be performed. Supplemental conditions—*secondary conditions*—are listed on the Advisory Committee's website. Some states require some of these in addition to their mandated core panel. Each practitioner should be familiar with their individual state requirements, which are available at: babysfirsttest.org/newborn-screening/states.

TABLE 32-5. Newborn Screening Core Panel

Organic Acid Metabolism	Fatty Acid Metabolism	Amino Acid Metabolism	Others
Isovaleric acidemia	Medium-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency	Phenylketonuria	Biotinidase deficiency
Propionic acidemia	Very long-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency	Maple syrup urine disease	Galactosemia
Glutaric acidemia type I	Long-chain 3-OH acyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency	Homocystinuria	Hearing loss
β-Ketothiolase deficiency	Trifunctional protein deficiency	Citrullinemia, type I	Cystic fibrosis
3-Hydroxy-3-methylglutaric aciduria	Carnitine uptake defect	Argininosuccinic	Critical congenital heart disease
Holocarboxylase synthase deficiency	**Endocrine Disorders**	Tyrosinemia, type I	Severe combined immunodeficiency
3-Methylcrotonyl-CoA carboxylase deficiency	Congenital hypothyroidism	**Hemoglobin Disorders**	Glycogen storage disease, type II
Methylmalonic acidemia (methylmalonyl-CoA mutase)	Congenital adrenal hyperplasia	SS disease	Mucopolysaccharidosis, type 1
Methylmalonic acidemia (cobalamin disorder)		S-β-thalassemia	X-linked adrenoleukodystrophy
		SC disease	Spinal muscular atrophy

From Advisory Committee on Heritable Disorders in Newborns and Children, 2018; Watson, 2006.

ROUTINE NEWBORN CARE

Gestational Age Estimation

Newborn gestational age can be estimated very soon after delivery. The relationship between gestational age and birthweight can identify neonates at risk for complications. For example, neonates who are either small or large for gestational age are at greater risk for hypoglycemia and polycythemia, and measurements of blood glucose and hematocrit are indicated.

Care of Skin and Umbilical Cord

All excess vernix, blood, and meconium is gently wiped off after delivery while keeping the newborn warm. Any remaining vernix is readily absorbed and disappears within 24 hours. The first bath is postponed until the neonate's temperature is stable.

Aseptic precautions are observed in the immediate care of the cord. The American Academy of Pediatrics (2017a) has concluded that keeping the cord dry is sufficient care. The umbilical cord begins to lose water from its Wharton jelly shortly after birth. Within 24 hours, the cord stump loses its characteristic bluish-white, moist appearance and soon becomes dry and black. Within several days to weeks, the stump sloughs and leaves a small, granulating wound, which after healing forms the umbilicus. Separation usually takes place within the first 2 weeks. The umbilical cord dries more quickly and separates more readily when exposed to air (López-Medina, 2020). Thus, a dressing is not recommended.

In resource-poor countries, local antimicrobial prophylaxis is reasonable (Salam, 2014). The World Health Organization (2014) recommends cleansing with chlorhexidine in situations in which hygienic conditions are poor or infection rates are high.

Despite precautions, a serious umbilical infection—*omphalitis*—sometimes develops. The most likely offending organisms are *Staphylococcus aureus*, group A and B streptococcus, and gram-negative rods such as *Escherichia coli* (Stewart, 2016). Typical signs of cellulitis and stump discharge usually aid diagnosis. Mild erythema and some bleeding at the stump site with cord detachment is common, but some cases present with no outward signs.

Feeding and Weight Loss

Exclusive breastfeeding is preferred for the newborn's first 6 months. In 2020, 84 percent of U.S. newborns were initially breastfed, 58 percent were still nursing at 6 months, and 35 percent at 1 year (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020). In many hospitals, breastfeeding begins in the delivery room. Most term newborns thrive best when fed 8 to 12 times daily for approximately 15 minutes each episode. Preterm or growth-restricted newborns require feedings at shorter intervals. Breastfeeding is discussed further in Chapter 36 (p. 639).

Because most neonates actually receive little nutriment for the first 3 or 4 days of life, they progressively lose weight until the flow of maternal milk is established or other feeding is instituted. Preterm neonates lose relatively more weight and regain their birthweight more slowly. Conversely, growth-restricted but otherwise healthy newborns regain their initial weight more quickly than those born preterm. With proper nourishment, birthweight of term newborns usually is regained by 10 days.

Stools and Urine

For the first 2 or 3 days after birth, the colon contains soft, brown-green meconium. This consists of desquamated epithelial cells from the intestinal tract, mucus, epidermal cells, and lanugo (fetal hair) that have been swallowed along with amnionic fluid. The characteristic color results from bile pigments. During fetal life and for a few hours after birth, the intestinal contents are sterile, but bacteria quickly colonize the bowel contents.

Meconium stooling is seen in 90 percent of newborns within the first 24 hours and in most of the rest within 36 hours. Usually, newborns first void shortly after birth but may not until the second day. Meconium and urine passage indicates patency of the gastrointestinal and urinary tracts, respectively. Failure of the newborn to stool or urinate after these times suggests a congenital defect, such as Hirschsprung disease, imperforate anus, or posterior urethral valve. After the third or fourth day, as a result of milk ingestion, meconium is replaced by light-yellow, softer, homogeneous feces.

Neonatal Hyperbilirubinemia

Between the second and fifth day of life approximately one third of all neonates develop physiological jaundice of the newborn. It has special significance considering most hospitals have policies for early discharge. Guidelines regarding standard phototherapy equipment and monitoring, as well as treatment recommendations per gestational age, hour of life, and risk factors are used (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017a). Hyperbilirubinemia is discussed further in Chapter 33 (p. 606).

Male Circumcision

Indications

Neonatal circumcision of male newborns has been a controversial topic in the United States for at least 35 years. Even so, scientific evidence supports several medical benefits that include prevention of phimosis, paraphimosis, and balanoposthitis. Circumcision also lowers the incidence of penile cancer and of cervical cancer among their sexual partners. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2011) estimates that the newborn male circumcision rate has declined over the past decades in the United States, and rates vary widely by region. From a national database, the overall circumcision rate decreased from 57 percent in 2003 to 52 percent in 2016 (Jacobson, 2021).

The American Academy of Pediatrics Task Force on Circumcision (2012) concluded that health benefits of newborn male circumcision outweigh the risks. Specific benefits include prevention of urinary tract infections, penile cancer, and transmission of some sexually transmitted infections, including HIV (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017a). Thus, access to the procedure is justified for families who choose it. The Task Force stopped short of recommending circumcision for *all* newborns.

Surgical Technique

Circumcision is performed only in a healthy neonate. Other contraindications include any genital abnormalities such as hypospadias and a family history of a bleeding disorder, unless excluded in the newborn.

The Task Force (2012) recommends procedural analgesia. Various pain relief techniques include lidocaine-prilocaine topical cream, local analgesia infiltration, dorsal penile nerve block, or ring block. The dorsal penile nerve block or the ring block is superior to topical analgesia. The use of a pacifier dipped in sucrose is a useful adjunct to these methods (Rossi 2021).

After appropriate penile cleansing, the ring block places a wheal of 1-percent lidocaine at the base of the penis and then advances the needle in a 180-degree arc around the base of the penis. The needle is advanced first to one side and then to the other to achieve a circumferential ring of analgesia. The maximum dose of lidocaine is 1.0 mL. *No vasoactive compounds such as epinephrine should ever be added to a local analgesic agent for circumcision.*

The most commonly used instruments are shown in Figure 32-5 and are Gomco and Mogen clamps and the Plastibell device. Compared with the Gomco procedure, Kaufman and colleagues (2002) reported that the Mogen technique required less time to perform and was associated with less apparent discomfort for the newborn. Regardless of the method used, the goal is to remove enough shaft skin and inner preputial epithelium so that the glans is exposed sufficiently to prevent phimosis. Suitable technique ensures that: (1) the amount of external skin to be removed must be accurately estimated, (2) the preputial orifice must be dilated to visualize the glans and ensure that it is normal, (3) the inner preputial epithelium must be freed from the glans epithelium, and (4) the circumcision device must be left in place long enough to produce hemostasis before excising the prepuce (Omole, 2020).

The risks for bleeding, infection, and hematoma formation are low. Unusual complications include distal glans amputation, acquisition of HIV infection or other sexually transmitted infection, meatal stenosis, penile denudation, penile destruction with electrosurgical coagulation, subsequent epidermal inclusion cyst and urethrocutaneous fistula, and ischemia following the inappropriate use of lidocaine with epinephrine (El Bcheraoui, 2014; Pippi-Salle, 2013; Omole, 2020).

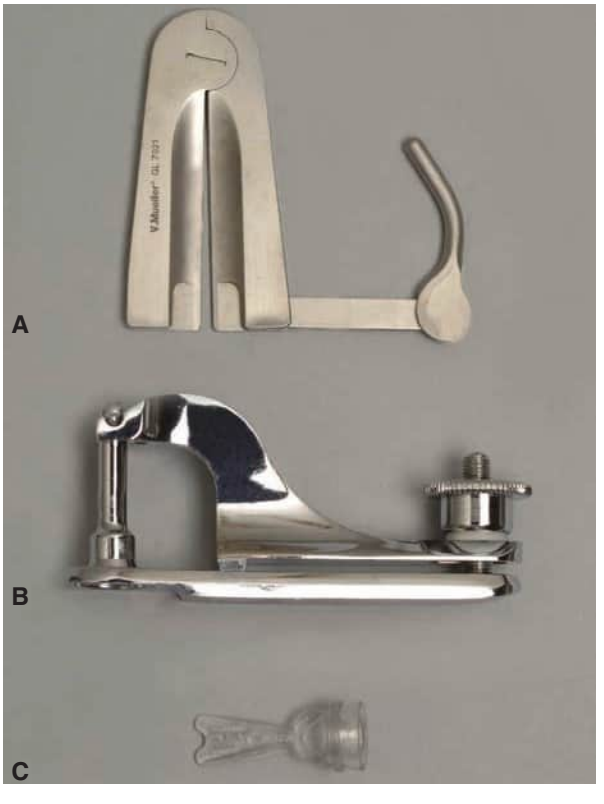


FIGURE 32-5 Three different tools used for circumcision. **A.** Mogen clamp. The arms of the clamp open to a 3-mm maximum width. **B.** Gomco clamp, assembled. **C.** Plastibell device.

Rooming In and Hospital Discharge

Hospital *rooming in* places newborns in their mothers' rooms instead of central nurseries. This practice attempts to make all phases of childbearing as natural as possible. It aims to foster early mother-child relationships and establish effective breast feeding practices. By 24 hours, the mother is generally fully ambulatory. Thereafter, she can usually provide routine care for herself and her newborn.

Traditionally, the newborn is discharged with its mother, and in most cases, maternal stay has determined that of the neonate. From 1970 to the mid-1990s, average maternal postpartum length of stay declined steadily, and many mothers were discharged before 48 hours. The World Health Organization (2014) cites a minimal stay of only 24 hours. Although it is clear that most newborns can be safely discharged within 48 hours, this is not uniformly true. When Belgium recently reduced postpartum stays by 1 day, rates of neonatal readmission for jaundice and dehydration increased (Plusquin, 2020). Using Washington state data, Malkin and coworkers (2000) found that the 28-day mortality rate was increased fourfold in newborns discharged within 30 hours of birth, and the 1-year mortality rate grew twofold. Safe discharge for late-preterm newborns has special concerns (Whyte, 2012).

Because of the increased scrutiny regarding short hospital stays, federal legislation—*The Newborns' and Mothers' Health Protection Act of 1996*—was enacted to prohibit insurers from restricting hospital stays for mothers and newborns to less than 2 days for vaginal delivery or 4 days for cesarean delivery. In an analysis of more than 662,000 births in California, Datar and Sood (2006) found that readmission rates declined by 9, 12, and 20 percent, respectively, at 1, 2, and 3 years after the legislation was implemented.

REFERENCES

Advisory Committee on Heritable Disorders in Newborns and Children: Recommended uniform screening panel. 2018. Available at: http://www.hrsa.gov/advisory-committees/heritable-disorders/rusp/index.html. Accessed June 16, 2021

American Academy of Pediatrics: FAQs: management of infants born to mothers with suspected or confirmed COVID-19. 2021a. Available at https://services.aap.org/en/pages/2019-novel-coronavirus-covid-19-infections/clinical-guidance/faqs-management-of-infants-born-to-covid-19-mothers/. Accessed June 16, 2021

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Care of the newborn. In Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Elk Grove Village, AAP, 2017a

American Academy of Pediatrics, Committee on Infectious Diseases, Committee on Fetus and Newborn: Elimination of perinatal hepatitis B: providing the first vaccine dose within 24 hours of birth. Pediatrics 140(3):e20171870, 2017b

American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Infectious Diseases: Red Book: Report of the Committee on Infectious Diseases. Elk Grove Village, AAP, 2021b

American Academy of Pediatrics Task Force on Circumcision: Circumcision policy statement. Pediatrics 130(3):585, 2012

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Executive summary: neonatal encephalopathy and neurologic outcome, second edition. Report of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' Task Force on Neonatal Encephalopathy. Obstet Gynecol 123(4):896, 2014

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Delayed umbilical cord clamping after birth. Committee Opinion No. 814, December 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: General information regarding pregnant individuals and COVID-19. 2020b. Available at: https://www.acog.org/clinical/clinical-guidance/practice-advisory/articles/2020/03/novel-coronavirus-2019. Accessed June 16, 2021

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Delivery of a newborn with meconium-stained amniotic fluid. Committee Opinion No. 689, April 2017, Reaffirmed 2021a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, American Academy of Pediatrics: The Apgar score. Committee Opinion No. 644, October 2015, Reaffirmed 2021b

Apgar V: A proposal for a new method of evaluation of the newborn infant. Curr Res Anesth Analg 32:260, 1953

Armstrong L, Stenson BJ: Use of umbilical cord blood gas analysis in the assessment of the newborn. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 92:430, 2007

Aziz K, Lee HC, Escobedo MB, et al: Part 5: Neonatal resuscitation: 2020 American Heart Association guidelines for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and emergency cardiovascular care. Circulation 142:S524, 2020

Baalbaki SH, Wood SL, Tita AT, et al: Predicting long-term neurodevelopmental outcomes in very preterm neonates by umbilical cord gas parameters. Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 3(1):100248, 2021

Bhatt S, Alison BJ, Wallace EM, et al: Delaying cord clamping until ventilation onset improves cardiovascular function at birth in preterm lambs. J Physiol 591(8):2113, 2013

Blickstein I, Green T: Umbilical cord blood gases. Clin Perinatol 34(3):451, 2007

Buchiboyina A, Jasani B, Deshmukh M, et al: Strategies for managing transient tachypnoea of the newborn—a systematic review. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30:1524, 2017

Cahill AG, Mathur AM, Smyser CD, et al: Neurologic injury in acidemic term infants. Am J Perinatol 34(7):668, 2017

Casey BM, Goldaber KG, McIntire DD, et al: Outcomes among term infants when two-hour postnatal pH is compared with pH at delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 184:447, 2001a

Casey BM, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: The continuing value of the Apgar score for the assessment of newborn infants. N Engl J Med 344:467, 2001b

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Breastfeeding report card: United States, 2020. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/breastfeeding/data/reportcard.htm. Accessed June 6, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Trends in in-hospital newborn male circumcision—United States, 1999–2010. MMWR 60(34):1167, 2011

Chauhan SP, Cowan BD, Meydrech EF, et al: Determination of fetal acidemia at birth from a remote umbilical arterial blood gas analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 170:1705, 1994

Cnattingius S, Johansson S, Razaz N: Apgar score and risk of neonatal death among preterm infants. N Engl J Med 383(1):49, 2020

Datar A, Sood N: Impact of postpartum hospital-stay legislation on newborn length of stay, readmission, and mortality in California. Pediatrics 118:63, 2006

Dunkelberg JC, Berkley EM, Thiel KW, et al: Hepatitis B and C in pregnancy: a review and recommendations for care. J Perinatol 34(12):882, 2014

Edelson DP, Sasson C, Chan PS, et al: Interim guidance for basic and advanced life support in adults, children, and neonates with suspected or confirmed COVID-19. Circulation 141(25):e933, 2020

Eisenberg MS, Cummins RO, Ho MT: Code Blue: Cardiac Arrest and Resuscitation. Philadelphia, Saunders, 1987

El Bcheraoui C, Zhang X, Cooper CS, et al: Rates of adverse events associated with male circumcision in U.S. medical settings, 2001 to 2010. JAMA Pediatr 168(7):625, 2014

Ersdal HL, Mduma E, Svensen E, et al: Early initiation of basic resuscitation interventions including face mask ventilation may reduce birth asphyxia related mortality in low-income countries: a prospective descriptive observational study. Resuscitation 83(7):869, 2012

Foglia EE, Weiner G, de Almeida MF, et al: Duration of resuscitation at birth, mortality, and neurodevelopment: a systematic review. Pediatrics 146(3:e20201449, 2020

Foster JP, Dawson JA, Davis PG et al: Routine oro/nasopharyngeal suction versus no suction at birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD010332, 2017

Goldaber KG, Gilstrap LC III, Leveno KJ, et al: Pathologic fetal acidemia. Obstet Gynecol 78:1103, 1991

Gomersall J, Berber S, Middleton P, et al: Umbilical cord management at term and late preterm birth: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 147(3):e2020015404, 2021

Grünebaum A, McCullough LB, Orosz B, et al: Neonatal mortality in the United States is related to location of birth (hospital versus home) rather than the type of birth attendant. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(2):254.e1, 2020

Hammerschlag MR: Chlamydial and gonococcal infections in infants and children. Clin Infect Dis 53(3):S99, 2011

Hooper SB, Kitchen MJ, Wallace MJ, et al: Imaging lung aeration and lung liquid clearance at birth. FASEB J 21(12):3329, 2007

Hooper SB, Roberts C, Dekker J, et al: Issues in cardiopulmonary transition at birth. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 24:101033, 2019

Isayama T, Mildenhall L, Schmolzer GM, et al: The route, dose, and interval of epinephrine for neonatal resuscitation: a systematic review. Pediatrics 146:(4):e20200586, 2020

Jacobson DL, Balmert LC, Holl JL, et al: Nationwide circumcision trends: 2003 to 2016. J Urol 205(1):257, 2021

Kapadia V, Wyckoff MH: Chest compressions for bradycardia or asystole in neonates. Clin Perinatol 39(4):833, 2012

Karlberg P, Adams FH, Geubelle F, et al: Alteration of the infant's thorax during vaginal delivery. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 41:223, 1962

Kattwinkel J: Textbook of Neonatal Resuscitation, 6th ed. Elk Grove Village, American Academy of Pediatrics and American Heart Association, 2010

Kaufman GE, Cimo S, Miller LW, et al: An evaluation of the effects of sucrose on neonatal pain with 2 commonly used circumcision methods. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:564, 2002

Kotaska K, Urinovska R, Klapkova E, et al: Re-evaluation of cord blood arterial and venous reference ranges for pH, pO_2, pCO_2, according to spontaneous or cesarean delivery. J Clin Lab Anal 24(5):300, 2010

Lee JH, Jung J, Park H, et al: Umbilical cord arterial blood gas analysis in term singleton pregnancies: a retrospective analysis over 11 years. Obstet Gynecol Sci 63(3):293, 2020

López-Medina MD, López-Araque AB, Linares-Abad M, et al: Umbilical cord separation time, predictors and healing complications in newborns with dry care. PLoS One 15(1): e0227209, 2020

Low JA, Lindsay BG, Derrick EJ: Threshold of metabolic acidosis associated with newborn complications. Am J Obstet Gynecol 177:1391, 1997

Low JA, Panagiotopoulos C, Derrick EJ: Newborn complications after intrapartum asphyxia with metabolic acidosis in the term fetus. Am J Obstet Gynecol 170:1081, 1994

Lynn A, Beeby P: Cord and placenta arterial gas analysis: the accuracy of delayed sampling. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 92(4):F281, 2007

Malkin JD, Garber S, Broder MS, et al: Infant mortality and early postpartum discharge. Obstet Gynecol 96:183, 2000

Mokarami P, Wiberg N, Olofsson P: An overlooked aspect on metabolic acidosis at birth: blood gas analyzers calculate base deficit differently. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91(5):574, 2012

Moore DL, MacDonald NE, Canadian Paediatric Society Infectious Disease and Immunization Committee: Preventing ophthalmia neonatorum. Paediatr Child Health 20(2):93, 2015

Morgan JL, Casey BM, Bloom SL, et al: Metabolic acidemia in live births at 35 weeks of gestation or greater. Obstet Gynecol 126(2):279, 2015

Morgan JL, Nelson DB, Casey BM, et al: Impact of metabolic acidemia at birth on neonatal outcomes in infants born before 34 weeks' gestation. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(16):1902, 2017

Natarajan G, Shankaran S, Laptook AR, et al: Apgar scores at 10 min and outcomes at 6–7 years following hypoxic-ischaemic encephalopathy. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 98:F473, 2013

Omole F, Smith W, Carter-Wicker K: Newborn circumcision techniques. Am Fam Physician 101(11):680, 2020

Pippi-Salle JL, Jesus LE, Lorenzo AJ, et al: Glans amputation during routine neonatal circumcision: mechanism of injury and strategy for prevention. J Pediatr Urol 9:763, 2013

Plusquin C, Uvin V, Drakopoulos P, et al: Reduction of hospital stay at maternity unit: an evaluation of the impact on maternal and neonatal readmission. J Obstet Gynaecol 40(1):46, 2020.

Ramin SM, Gilstrap LC, Leveno KJ, et al: Umbilical artery acid–base status in the preterm infant. Obstet Gynecol 74:256, 1989

Riley RJ, Jonson JW: Collecting and analyzing cord blood gases. Clin Obstet Gynecol 36:13, 1993

Roehr CC, Davis PG, Weiner GM, et al: T-piece resuscitator or self-inflating bag during neonatal resuscitation: a scoping review. Pediatr Res 89:760, 2021

Rossi S, Buonocore G, Bellieni CV: Management of pain in newborn circumcision: a systematic review. Eur J Pediatr 180(1):13, 2021

Sabol BA, Caughey AB: Acidemia in neonates with a 5-minute Apgar score of 7 or greater—what are the outcomes? Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(4):486 e481, 2016

Salam RA, Mansoor T, Mallick D, et al: Essential childbirth and postnatal interventions for improved maternal and neonatal health. Reprod Health 11 Suppl 1:S3, 2014

Saunders RA, Milner AD: Pulmonary pressure/volume relationships during the last phase of delivery and the first postnatal breaths in human subjects. J Pediatr 93:667, 1978

Schmölzer GM, Morley CJ, Kamlin OC: Enhanced monitoring during neonatal resuscitation. Semin Perinatol 43(8):151177, 2019

Seidler AL, Gyte GML, Rabe H, et al: Umbilical cord management for newborns <34 weeks' gestation: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 147(3):e20200576, 2021

Siew ML, te Pas AB, Wallace MJ, et al: Positive end-expiratory pressure enhances development of a functional residual capacity in preterm rabbits ventilated from birth. J Appl Physiol (1985) 106(5):1487, 2009

Siggaard-Anderson O: Blood acid–base alignment nomogram. Scand J Clin Lab Invest 15:211, 1963

Skiold B, Petersson G, Ahlberg M, et al: Population-based reference curve for umbilical cord arterial pH in infants born at 28 to 42 weeks. J Perinatol 37:254, 2017

Stewart D, Benitz W, AAP Committee on Fetus and Newborn: Umbilical cord care in the newborn infant. Pediatrics 138(3):e20162149, 2016

te Pas AB, Davis PG, Hooper SB, et al: From liquid to air: breathing after birth. J Pediatr 152(5):607, 2008

U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, Curry SJ, Krist AH, et al: Ocular prophylaxis for gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force reaffirmation recommendation statement. JAMA 321(4):394, 2019

Watson MS, Mann MY, Lloyd-Puryear MA, et al: Newborn screening: towards a uniform screening panel and system. Executive summary. Genet Med 8(Suppl 5):1S, 2006

Vyas H, Milner AD, Hopkins IE: Intrathoracic pressure and volume changes during the spontaneous onset of respiration in babies born by cesarean section and by vaginal delivery. J Pediatr 99(5):787, 1981

Weiner GM, Zaichkin J: Textbook of Neonatal Resuscitation. 8th ed. Elk Grove Village, American Academy of Pediatrics, 2021

White CR, Doherty DA, Cannon JW, et al: Cost effectiveness of universal umbilical cord blood gas and lactate analysis in a tertiary level maternity unit. J Perinat Med 44(5):573, 2016

Whyte RK: Neonatal management and safe discharge of late and moderate preterm infants. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 17(3):153, 2012

World Health Organization: Postnatal care of the mother and newborn, 2013. Geneva, WHO, 2014

Wyckoff MH, Wyllie J, Aziz K, et al: Neonatal life support: 2020 International Consensus on Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care Science with Treatment Recommendations. Circulation 142:S185, 2020

Yeh P, Emary K, Impey L: The relationship between umbilical cord arterial pH and serious adverse neonatal outcome: analysis of 51,519 consecutive validated samples. BJOG 119(7):824, 2012

Zikic A, Schünemann H, Wi T, et al: Treatment of neonatal chlamydial conjunctivitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Pediatric Infect Dis Soc 7(3):e107, 2018

CHAPTER 33

Complications of the Term Newborn

Term newborns are susceptible to various illnesses and injuries. In many instances, clinical manifestations of these disorders are extensions of pathological effects already incurred by the fetus. A common example is the newborn who is depressed and acidotic because of intrapartum septicemia. Susceptibility varies depending upon gestational age, and those more common in term newborns are considered here. Those more frequent in preterm neonates are discussed in Chapter 34. Specific disorders that are the direct consequence of maternal diseases are discussed in pertinent chapters.

RESPIRATORY DISTRESS

At the time of delivery, the newborn must convert rapidly to air breathing as described in Chapter 32 (p. 586). With inspiration, alveoli expand, lung fluid is cleared, and surfactant prevents alveolar collapse. Interference with these functions can create respiratory insufficiency. The neonate demonstrates hypoxemia and compensatory tachypnea, nasal flaring, chest wall retractions, and grunting. In preterm neonates, this is often caused by lung immaturity and insufficient surfactant—*respiratory distress syndrome (RDS)*, which is discussed in Chapter 34 (p. 615).

As fetuses approach term, surfactant deficiency as a cause of respiratory distress diminishes. The leading causes in term newborns are transient tachypnea of the newborn (TTN), meconium aspiration syndrome, pneumonia, and pneumothorax. Less common etiologies are RDS, persistent pulmonary hypertension, acid/base disturbances, central nervous system (CNS) insults, and congenital chest, respiratory tract, CNS, or cardiac anomalies (Alhassen, 2021).

Following birth, successful neonatal transition to air breathing may be delayed. With longer delays, evaluations to identify the cause of respiratory distress are warranted. The initial neonatal evaluation includes chest radiographs. Complete blood count or C-reactive protein levels and blood cultures are obtained to identify infection. Arterial blood gas assessments can define respiratory status and direct oxygenation care.

In general, treatment of respiratory distress is supportive with oxygen therapy provided as needed. Depending on the etiology and severity, continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) or mechanical ventilation may be needed. Nutritional intake may be oral, gavage, or intravenous depending on the degree of neonatal tachypnea. High respiratory rates can limit effective breastfeeding and raise aspiration risk.

Transient Tachypnea of the Newborn

TTN is benign, self-limited, and stems from slow clearance of fetal lung fluid after birth. Neonates of any gestational age can be affected. However, delivery before 39 weeks' gestation raises risk, and rates vary inversely with gestational age. Other risk factors are cesarean delivery without labor, male gender, perinatal asphyxia, and large- or small-for-gestational-age birthweight. Maternal gestational diabetes or asthma are others.

TTN is a diagnosis of exclusion. Thus, the evaluation outlined in the last section excludes pathological sources.

Treatment is supportive with oxygen therapy as needed. Most TTN cases resolve within 48 hours.

Respiratory Distress Syndrome

This condition stems from surfactant deficiency and has a relatively low incidence at term (Berthelot-Ricou, 2012). Risks include male gender, white race, and maternal diabetes (Anadkat, 2012; Li, 2019). Less frequently, rare mutations in genes that code for surfactant protein synthesis may contribute. Four are *surfactant protein B*, *surfactant protein C*, *adenosine triphosphate (ATP)-binding cassette subfamily A member 3 (ABCA3)*, and *thyroid transcription factor 1* genes (Liszewski, 2017). Regardless of etiology, when surfactant secretion is diminished, the pulmonary pathophysiology, clinical course, and management are similar to that for preterm infants. Treatment includes CPAP or mechanical ventilation and potentially surfactant replacement either through an endotracheal tube or by less invasive surfactant techniques (Chap. 34, p. 616). Bacterial pneumonia, especially related to group B *Streptococcus* in a newborn is often clinically and radiographically indistinguishable from RDS. Thus, empirical antibiotics are often added to respiratory management. The prognosis in term newborns with RDS largely depends on the cause, severity, and response to treatment.

Antenatal maternal corticosteroid treatment is employed for threatened preterm birth and described in Chapter 45 (p. 802). In late-preterm fetuses 34 to 37 weeks' gestation, this therapy also enhances surfactant synthesis (Gyamfi-Bannerman, 2016). At Parkland Hospital, corticosteroids are not given in the late-preterm period for this indication. Neonatal hypoglycemia is a concern with such treatment, and long-term effects are unknown. However, data indicate that hypoglycemia, if promptly treated, creates no adverse sequelae (McKinlay, 2015).

Meconium Aspiration Syndrome

The physiology of meconium passage and amnionic fluid contamination is considered in Chapter 24 (p. 458). In some instances, inhalation of meconium-stained fluid at or near delivery causes acute airway obstruction, chemical pneumonitis, surfactant dysfunction or inactivation, and pulmonary hypertension (Vain, 2017). If severe, hypoxemia may lead to neonatal death or long-term neurological sequelae in survivors.

Meconium-stained fluid in labor is common. Fortunately, severe aspiration leading to overt respiratory failure is much less frequent. In one study, the incidence of severe disease was 4 cases per 1000 newborn hospital discharges, and rates rise progressively from 37 to 43 weeks' gestation (Thornton, 2019). Mortality rates depend on severity.

Fetal morbidity is more often associated with thicker meconium content. Presumably, in most cases, amnionic fluid is ample to dilute the meconium to permit prompt clearance by normal fetal physiological mechanisms. Meconium aspiration syndrome still occasionally develops with light staining. Many newborns are affected after a normal labor and uncomplicated delivery. However, some associated obstetrical factors include postterm pregnancy and fetal-growth restriction. These fetuses are at highest risk because diminished amnionic fluid and labor with cord compression or uteroplacental insufficiency are often comorbid. These can enhance the likelihood of meconium passage that is thick and undiluted (Leveno, 1984).

Prevention

Previously, aspiration was thought to be stimulated by fetal hypoxic episodes, and fetal heart rate tracing abnormalities were used to identify fetuses at greatest risk during labor. Unfortunately, this was found to be an unreliable predictor (Dooley, 1985). As another potential prevention, oropharyngeal suctioning at the perineum was standard care for a time. However, this was abandoned when evidence failed to support a reduction in meconium aspiration syndrome incidence or severity (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021b; Vain, 2004). From other studies, endotracheal intubation and suctioning for both vigorous and nonvigorous meconium-stained neonates provides no benefit and is no longer recommended as a routine (Trevisanuto, 2020; Wiswell, 2000; Wyckoff, 2020). Because neonates born through meconium may need effective positive pressure ventilation for stabilization, it is still critical that pediatric providers attend such deliveries (Aziz, 2020).

Intrapartum amnioinfusion has been used successfully in laboring women with diminished amnionic fluid volume to help resolve frequent variable fetal heart rate decelerations (Chap. 24, p. 459). Earlier, it was also studied as a preventive measure in labors complicated by meconium staining. This practice fails to lower rates of meconium aspiration syndrome in settings with standard peripartum surveillance (Hofmeyr, 2014). A trial was conducted with almost 2000 women at 36 weeks' gestation or later and in whom labor was complicated by thick meconium (Fraser, 2005). The perinatal death rate with and without amnioinfusion was 0.05 percent in both groups. Rates of moderate or severe meconium aspiration also were not significantly different in those with (4.4 percent) and without (3.1 percent) amnioinfusion. Last, cesarean delivery rates were similar—32 versus 29 percent, respectively.

Treatment

Ventilatory support including CPAP, intubation, and mechanical ventilation is carried out as needed (Pandita, 2018). Because some aspects of meconium aspiration syndrome are caused by surfactant deficiency, replacement therapy is beneficial (Natarajan, 2016a). In a review of randomized trials, authors found that surfactant replacement may reduce the need for extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) but did not lower the mortality rate (El Shahed, 2014). Inhaled corticosteroids may partially ameliorate the severity of meconium aspiration syndrome, but neither inhaled or systemic corticosteroids consistently improve critical outcomes (Garg, 2016; Yeung, 2021). Newborns with meconium aspiration syndrome and pulmonary hypertension are often treated with inhaled nitric oxide, which reduces rates of death and need for ECMO (Vain, 2017). ECMO therapy is reserved for neonates who remain poorly oxygenated despite maximal ventilatory assistance (Hirakawa, 2017). The proportion that requires ECMO treatment varies. From the California Perinatal Quality Care Collaborative, 0.35 percent of more than 5100 cases of meconium aspiration syndrome required

ECMO treatment. The associated mortality rate was 5.3 percent (Kalra, 2020).

NEONATAL ENCEPHALOPATHY AND CEREBRAL PALSY

Few events evoke more apprehension in parents and obstetricians than the specter of "brain injury," which immediately prompts concerns for disabling cerebral palsy and intellectual disability. Although most brain disorders or injuries are less profound, history has helped to perpetuate the more dismal outlook. In his first edition of this textbook, Williams (1903) limited discussions of brain injury to those sustained from birth trauma. When later editions introduced the concept that *asphyxia neonatorum* was another cause of cerebral palsy, this too was linked to traumatic birth. Even as brain damage caused by traumatic delivery became uncommon during the ensuing decades, the belief—albeit erroneous—was that intrapartum events caused most neurological disability. This was a major reason for the escalating cesarean delivery rate beginning in the 1970s. Unfortunately, because the genesis of cerebral palsy occurs long before labor in most cases, cesarean delivery did little to mitigate cerebral palsy risks. Cerebral palsy rates have remained the same for 50 years despite a sixfold rise in cesarean birth rates (MacLennan, 2015).

These realizations stimulated scientific investigations to determine the etiopathogenesis of fetal brain disorders, including those leading to cerebral palsy. Seminal observations, including those of Nelson and Ellenberg (1984, 1985, 1986a), are discussed subsequently. These investigators are appropriately credited with proving that these neurological disorders are due to complex multifactorial processes caused by a combination of genetic, physiological, environmental, and obstetrical factors. Importantly, these studies showed that few neurological disorders are associated with peripartum events. However, continuing international interest was garnered to codify the potential role of intrapartum events. In 2000, a task force of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists was appointed to study neonatal encephalopathy and cerebral palsy. The multispecialty coalition reviewed data and provided criteria to define various neonatal brain disorders. Their findings were promulgated by the American Academy of Pediatrics and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2003).

Ten years later, a second task force updated the findings (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2014a). The 2014 Task Force findings are more circumspect in contrast to the earlier ones. Specifically, more limitations are cited in identifying cause(s) of peripartum *hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy (HIE)* compared with other etiologies of neonatal encephalopathy. The 2014 Task Force recommends multidimensional assessment of each affected infant. They add the caveat that no one strategy is infallible, and thus no single strategy will achieve 100-percent certainty in attributing a cause to neonatal encephalopathy.

Neonatal Encephalopathy

The 2014 Task Force defined neonatal encephalopathy as a syndrome of neurological dysfunction identified in the earliest days of life in neonates born at ≥35 weeks' gestation. It is manifested by seizures or subnormal levels of consciousness and is often accompanied by difficulty with initiating and maintaining respiration and by depressed tone and reflexes. The incidence of encephalopathy has been cited to be 1 to 2 cases per 1000 term liveborn neonates, and it is much more frequent in preterm newborns (Ensing, 2015; Laptook, 2016; Novak, 2018; Ravichandran, 2020). The 2014 Task Force concluded that many etiologies may lead to encephalopathy and cerebral palsy, however, it focused on HIE and causes that were thought to be incurred intrapartum. To identify affected infants, a thorough evaluation is necessary and includes maternal history, obstetrical antecedents, intrapartum factors, placental pathology, and newborn course. These are complemented by laboratory and neuroimaging findings.

Three clinically defined levels categorize encephalopathy. *Mild encephalopathy* is characterized by hyperalertness, irritability, jitteriness, and hypertonia and hypotonia. *Moderate encephalopathy* shows lethargy, abnormal tone, and occasional seizures. *Severe encephalopathy* is manifest by coma, multiple seizures, and recurrent apnea.

The 2014 Task Force also concluded that of the several forms of cerebral palsy, only the *spastic quadriplegic* type can result from acute peripartum ischemia. Other forms—*hemiparetic* or *hemiplegic cerebral palsy, spastic diplegia,* and *ataxia*—are unlikely to result from an intrapartum event. Purely dyskinetic or ataxic cerebral palsy, especially when accompanied by a learning disorder, usually has a genetic origin (Nelson, 2015).

Criteria for Hypoxic-Ischemic Encephalopathy

The 2014 Task Force radically revised the 2003 criteria used to define an acute peripartum event that is consistent with HIE and neonatal encephalopathy. These are outlined in Table 33-1 and are considered with the following caveats (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2014b).

First, *Apgar scores* that are low at 5 and 10 minutes are associated with greater risk for neurological impairment. Low scores stem from many causes, and most of these infants will not develop cerebral palsy. With a 5-minute Apgar ≥7, it is unlikely that peripartum HIE caused cerebral palsy.

Acid-base study results define a second HIE criterion. Low pH and high base deficit levels raise the likelihood that neonatal encephalopathy was caused by HIE. Decreasing pH levels form a continuum of increasing risk, but most acidemic neonates will be neurologically normal (Lee, 2020b). A cord artery pH ≥7.2 is very unlikely to be associated with HIE.

Magnetic resonance (MR) imaging or *MR spectroscopy (MRS)* is the best modality with which to visualize findings consistent with HIE. The 2014 Task Force concluded that cranial sonography and computed tomography (CT) lack sensitivity in the term newborn. Normal imaging findings after the first 24 hours of life, however, effectively exclude a hypoxic-ischemic cause of encephalopathy. MR imaging between 24 and 96 hours may be more sensitive for the timing of peripartum cerebral injury, and MR imaging at 7 to 21 days following birth is the best technique to delineate the full extent of cerebral injury.

Last, *multisystem involvement* of injury is consistent with HIE. These include renal, gastrointestinal, hepatic, or cardiac

TABLE 33-1. Findings Consistent with an Acute Peripartum or Intrapartum Event Leading to Hypoxic-Ischemic Encephalopathy

Neonatal Findings
Apgar score: <5 at 5 and 10 minutes
Umbilical arterial acidemia: pH <7.0 and/or base deficit ≥12 mmol/L
Neuroimaging evidence of acute brain injury: MR imaging or MRS consistent with HIE
Multisystem involvement consistent with HIE
Type and Timing of Contributing Factors
Sentinel hypoxic or ischemic event occurring immediately before or during delivery
Fetal heart rate monitor patterns consistent with an acute peripartum or intrapartum event

HIE = hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy; MR = magnetic resonance; MRS = magnetic resonance spectroscopy.

injury; hematological abnormalities; or combinations of these. The severity of neurological injury does not necessarily correlate with injuries to these other systems.

The 2014 Task Force also found that certain contributing factors may be consistent with an acute peripartum event. Of these, *sentinel events* are considered adverse obstetrical events that may lead to catastrophic clinical outcomes. Examples include ruptured uterus, severe placental abruption, cord prolapse, and amnionic fluid embolism. Martinez-Biarge and associates (2012) studied almost 58,000 deliveries and identified 192 cases with one of these sentinel events. Of these 192 fetus/newborns, 6 percent died intrapartum or in the early neonatal period, and 10 percent developed neonatal encephalopathy. Other risk factors for neonatal acidosis include prior or emergent cesarean delivery, maternal age ≥35 years, maternal obesity, thick meconium, chorioamnionitis, and general anesthesia (Johansson, 2018; Johnson, 2014; Nelson, 2014).

Differentiating an *abnormal fetal heart rate (FHR) tracing* on presentation versus one that develops subsequently also was emphasized by the 2014 Task Force. A category 1 or 2 FHR tracing associated with Apgar scores ≥7 at 5 minutes, normal cord gases (±1 SD), or both are not consistent with an acute HIE event (Graham, 2014). An FHR pattern at the time of presentation with persistently minimal or absent variability and lacking accelerations, with duration ≥60 minutes, and even without decelerations is suggestive of an already compromised fetus (Chap. 24, p. 450). The 2014 Task Force further recommended that with these findings present, if fetal well-being cannot be established, the woman should be evaluated for the method and timing of delivery.

Prevention

In term newborns, one of the best-studied interventions for neonatal HIE is postnatally induced hypothermia. Cooling initiated within the first 6 hours of life to a level of 33.5°C for 72 hours reduces death and moderate to severe neurological disability in term newborns (Jacobs, 2013; Natarajan, 2016b). One metaanalysis of more than 1500 neonates concluded that hypothermia improves survival rates and neurodevelopment by 24 months of age (Jacobs, 2013). This neuroprotection extends to childhood (Azzopardi, 2014; Guillet, 2012; Shankaran, 2012). MR imaging studies have demonstrated a slowing of diffusional abnormalities and fewer infarctions with hypothermia (Bednarek, 2012; Natarajan, 2016b). Longer or deeper cooling does not offer additional protection compared with standard cooling (Shankaran, 2017).

Importantly, hospitals should develop plans for timely transfer of encephalopathic newborns to a cooling center for evaluation and possible treatment. A trial of "late" hypothermia, with cooling initiated after 6 hours of life, showed some benefit. However, brain protection was not as robust as with cooling initiated in the first 6 hours (Laptook, 2017).

Since therapeutic hypothermia is not completely protective, adjuvant therapies are being explored. In preclinical HIE models, erythropoietin has both early and late beneficial effects. These include antiapoptosis and antiinflammatory effects and greater neurogenesis, oligodendrogenesis, and angiogenesis (McAdams, 2016). One metaanalysis of small clinical trials evaluating this therapy for neuroprophylaxis reports some reductions in cognitive impairment and cerebral palsy rates (Razak, 2019). A large national trial has completed enrollment and is in the follow-up phase (Juul, 2018). Other adjuvant therapies under investigation are allopurinol, xenon, melatonin, and stem cell therapies (McAdams, 2016).

■ Cerebral Palsy

This term refers to a group of nonprogressive disorders of movement or posture caused by abnormal development or damage to brain centers for motor control. Cerebral palsy is further classified by the type of neurological dysfunction—spastic, dyskinetic, or ataxic—and by the number and distribution of limbs involved—quadriplegia, diplegia, hemiplegia, or monoplegia. Together, the major types are *spastic quadriplegia*—the most common—which has a strong association with mental retardation and seizure disorders; *diplegia,* which is common in preterm or low-birthweight neonates; *hemiplegia; choreoathetoid types;* and *mixed varieties.* Although epilepsy and intellectual disability frequently accompany cerebral palsy, these two disorders seldom are associated with perinatal asphyxia in the absence of cerebral palsy.

Incidence and Epidemiological Correlates

According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2021), the prevalence of cerebral palsy in the United States

approximates 3 cases in 1000 children. *It is crucial to emphasize that this rate is derived from all children—including those born preterm.* Because of the remarkably greater survival rates of the latter currently, and despite the elevated cesarean delivery rate, the overall rate of cerebral palsy has remained essentially unchanged (Fig. 33-1). For example, neonates born at 23 to 27 weeks' gestation in a Swedish birth cohort had a cerebral palsy incidence of 105 cases per 1000 infants alive at 1 year (Hafström, 2018). Similar findings have been reported for Australian births (Smithers-Sheedy, 2016). In absolute numbers, term newborns constitute half of cerebral palsy cases because preterm births are proportionately far fewer. It is again emphasized that most studies of cerebral palsy rates have not made distinctions between term and preterm neonates.

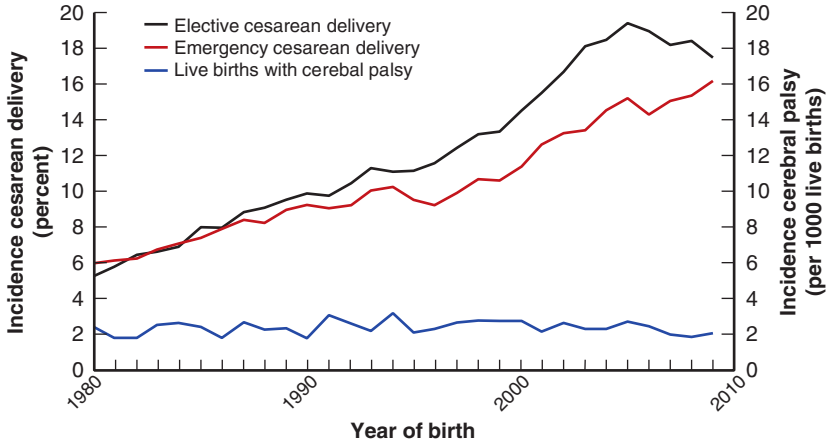


FIGURE 33-1 Elective and emergency cesarean deliveries and live births with cerebral palsy. (Reproduced with permission from Nelson KB, Blair E: Prenatal factors in singletons with cerebral palsy born at or near term, N Engl J Med. 2015 Sep 3;373(10):946–953.)

As noted earlier, Nelson and Ellenberg (1984, 1985, 1986a) made many fundamental observations concerning cerebral palsy. Their initial studies emanated from data from the Collaborative Perinatal Project. This included children from almost 54,000 pregnancies who were followed until age 7. They found that the most frequently associated risk factors for cerebral palsy were: (1) evidence of genetic abnormalities such as maternal mental retardation or fetal congenital malformations; (2) birthweight <2000 g; (3) birth before 32 weeks; and (4) perinatal infection. They also found that obstetrical complications were not strongly predictive, and only a fifth of affected children had markers of perinatal asphyxia. *For the first time, solid evidence supported that the cause of most cases of cerebral palsy was unknown, and importantly, only a small proportion stemmed from neonatal HIE.* Equally importantly, no foreseeable single intervention would likely prevent a large proportion of cases.

Numerous studies have since confirmed many of these findings and have identified an imposing list of other risk factors (Table 33-2). As expected, preterm birth continues to be the single most important risk (Nelson, 2015). Small-for-gestational-age neonates also are at higher risk. In one study, cerebral palsy was due to antepartum factors in more than 90 percent of growth-restricted newborns (Stoknes, 2012).

Many other placental and neonatal risk factors are associated with neurodevelopmental abnormalities (MacLennan, 2015). Some placental factors are discussed further in Chapter 6 (p. 111). One example is the substantively greater risk from chorioamnionitis (Shevell, 2014; Shi, 2017). Of neonatal causes, one is arterial ischemic stroke, which may be associated with inherited fetal thrombophilias (Harteman, 2013; Wanenaar, 2018). Additionally, newborns with isolated congenital heart lesions have an elevated risk for microcephaly, possibly due to chronic fetal hypoxemia (Barbu, 2009). Other miscellaneous etiologies of cerebral palsy include fetal anemia, twin-twin transfusion syndrome, intrauterine transfusions, and fetal alcohol syndrome (DeJong, 2012; Nelson, 2015; O'Leary, 2012; Rossi, 2011; Schou, 2019).

Apart from these causes, intrapartum hypoxemia was linked to only a few cases of cerebral palsy by the National Collaborative Perinatal Project. The contribution of HIE to subsequent neurological disorders was discussed earlier. The 2003 Task Force applied these criteria to more contemporaneous outcomes and determined that only 1.6 cases of cerebral palsy per 10,000 deliveries are attributable solely to intrapartum hypoxia.

TABLE 33-2. Perinatal Risk Factors Reported to Be Increased in Children with Cerebral Palsy

Risk Factors	Risk Ratio	95% CI
Hydramnios	6.9	1.0–49.3
Placental abruption	7.6	2.7–21.1
Interval between pregnancies <3 mo or >3 yr	3.7	1.0–4.4
Spontaneous preterm labor	3.4	1.7–6.7
Preterm delivery at 23–27 weeks	78.9	56.5–110
Breech or face presentation, transverse lie	3.8	1.6–9.1
Severe birth defect	5.6	8.1–30.0
Nonsevere birth defect	6.1	3.1–11.8
Time to cry >5 minutes	9.0	4.3–18.8
Obesity	1.2–2	1.1–2.8
Low placental weight	3.6	1.5–8.4
Placental infarction	2.5	1.2–5.3
Chorioamnionitis		
Clinical	2.4	1.5–3.8
Histological	1.8	1.2–2.9
Others[a]	—	—

[a]Includes respiratory distress syndrome, meconium aspiration, emergent cesarean or operative vaginal delivery, hypoglycemia, gestational hypertension, hypotension, advanced maternal age, genetic factors, twins, thrombotic states, nighttime delivery, seizures, fetal-growth restriction, male gender, and nulliparity.
CI = confidence interval.
From Ahlin, 2013; Blair, 2011; McIntyre, 2013; Moster, 2008; Nelson, 2015; O'Callaghan, 2011; Shatrov, 2010; Takenouchi, 2012; Torfs, 1990; Villamor, 2017; Wu, 2012.

This finding is supported by a study of nearly 1000 infants in which fetal-growth restriction and birth defects recognized by age 6 years were more substantial contributors to cerebral palsy and neonatal death than potentially asphyxial birth events and inflammation (McIntyre, 2013).

Intrapartum Fetal Heart Rate Monitoring

Despite persistent attempts to validate continuous intrapartum electronic FHR monitoring as effective to prevent adverse perinatal outcomes, evidence does not support its ability to predict or reduce cerebral palsy risk (Alfirevic, 2017). Moreover, no specific FHR patterns is predictive of cerebral palsy, and no relationship has been found between the clinician's response to abnormal patterns and neurological outcome. Efforts using computer-assisted analysis of FHR tracings have not enhanced predictions (Alfirevic, 2017; INFANT Collaborative Group, 2017). Indeed, an abnormal heart rate pattern in fetuses that ultimately develop cerebral palsy may reflect a preexisting neurological abnormality (Phelan, 1994). Because of these studies, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a; 2021a) concludes that electronic FHR monitoring does not reduce the incidence of long-term neurological impairment.

Apgar Scores

In general, 1- and 5-minute Apgar scores are poor predictors of long-term neurological impairment (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021c). However, if the 5-minute Apgar score is ≤3, neonatal death or the risk of neurological sequelae rises substantially (Chen, 2020; Nelson, 1984). In a Swedish study, 5 percent of such children subsequently required special schooling (Stuart, 2011). In a Scottish study, the incidence of these low Apgar scores was 0.3 percent in more than 750,000 children who were born at term and were in national school census records. Low Apgar score was strongly associated in a dose-dependent manner with the need for additional educational support in later life, after adjusting for confounding factors. The strongest association was for the support of physical and motor impairments and was followed by visual, hearing, and cognitive impairments (Tweed, 2016).

Persistence past 5 minutes of these extremely low scores correlates strongly with a higher risk for neurological morbidity and death (Foglia, 2020). This of course is not absolute, and the 2003 Task Force cited a 10-percent risk for cerebral palsy for neonates with 10-minute scores of 0 to 3. For 15-minute scores ≤2, the cited mortality rate was 53 percent, and cerebral palsy rate was 36 percent. For 20-minute scores ≤2, the mortality rate was 60 percent, and cerebral palsy rate was 57 percent. Outcomes from a Norwegian population study of neonates who were born from low-risk pregnancies and who had low 5-minute Apgar scores are shown in Table 33-3 (Moster, 2001).

Umbilical Cord Blood Gas Studies

Objective evidence of metabolic acidosis, that is, cord arterial blood pH <7.0 and base deficit ≥12 mmol/L, is a risk factor for encephalopathy and for cerebral palsy (p. 601). The risk accrues as acidosis worsens. From one review of 51 studies, low pH in arterial umbilical cord blood correlates with greater risk for neonatal encephalopathy and cerebral palsy (Malin, 2010). When used alone, however, these determinations are not accurate in predicting long-term neurological sequelae (Yeh, 2012).

TABLE 33-3. Comparison of Mortality and Morbidity in Norwegian Infants Weighing >2500 g According to 5-Minute Apgar Scores

Outcome	Apgar 0–3 (%)	Apgar 7–10 (%)	Relative Risk (95% CI)
Number	292	233, 500	
Mortality rates			
Neonatal	16.5	0.05	386 (270–552)
Infant	19.2	0.3	76 (56–103)
1–8 yr	3	0.2	18 (8–39)
Morbidity rates			
Cerebral palsy	6.8	0.09	81 (48–128)
Mental retardation	1.3	0.1	9 (3–29)
Other neurological	4.2	0.5	9 (5–17)
Non-neurological	3.4	2.0	2 (0.8–5.5)

CI = confidence interval.

Data from several studies corroborate that a pH <7.0 is the threshold for clinically significant acidemia (Gilstrap, 1989; Goldaber, 1991). The likelihood of neonatal death grows as the cord artery pH falls to ≤7.0. Casey and colleagues (2001) reported that when the pH was ≤6.8, the neonatal mortality rate rose 1400-fold. When the cord pH was ≤7.0 *and* the 5-minute Apgar score was 0 to 3, the risk of neonatal death rose 3200-fold.

In a study from Oxford, the rate of adverse neurological outcomes was 0.36 percent with pH <7.1 and was 3 percent with pH <7.0 (Yeh, 2012). A systematic review that includes 12 studies suggests that cord blood lactate levels also help predict neonatal outcomes (Allanson, 2017).

Nucleated Red Blood Cells and Lymphocytes

Both immature red cells and lymphocytes enter the circulation of term newborns in response to hypoxia or hemorrhage. During the past two decades, quantification of these cells has been proposed as a measure of hypoxia, but not all studies support this premise (Boskabadi, 2017; Silva, 2006; Walsh, 2011, 2013).

Neuroimaging Studies in Encephalopathy and Cerebral Palsy

Various neuroimaging techniques have provided important insight into the etiology and evolution of perinatal HIE and later cerebral palsy. Findings vary by fetal age, and the preterm neonatal brain responds differently to an ischemic episode than that of a term newborn. Other factors include insult severity and duration and restoration of cerebrovascular hypoperfusion. *Thus, precise timing of an injury with neuroimaging studies is not a realistic goal.* Moreover, the grade of neonatal encephalopathy, that is, mild, moderate, or severe, does not correlate with MR imaging findings (Walsh, 2017).

Neuroimaging in the Neonatal Period

The 2014 Task Force concluded that for term newborns, imaging studies are helpful in timing an injury, but they provide only a time window that is imprecise. The 2014 Task Force reported that these head imaging techniques provide the following information:

1. Neonatal sonography findings are generally normal on the day of birth. With injury, the thalami and basal ganglia become increasingly echogenic beginning at approximately 24 hours. This progresses over 2 to 3 days and persists for 5 to 7 days.
2. CT images are usually normal the first day in term newborns. With injury, the thalami or basal ganglia show decreased density beginning at approximately 24 hours, and this persists for 5 to 7 days.
3. MR imaging will detect some abnormalities on the first day. Within 24 hours, MR imaging may show restricted water diffusion that peaks at approximately 5 days and disappears within 2 weeks. T1- and T2-weighted images display variable abnormalities, which have an onset from less than 24 hours to several days. In a study of 175 term neonates with acute encephalopathy, MR imaging that showed basal ganglia lesions accurately predicted motor impairment at 2 years of age (Martinez-Biarge, 2012).

Neuroimaging in Older Children with Cerebral Palsy

Imaging studies performed in children diagnosed with cerebral palsy frequently show abnormal findings. Wu and associates (2006) used CT or MR imaging to study 273 children who were born after 36 weeks' gestation and who were later diagnosed with cerebral palsy. Although a third of these imaging studies were normal, focal arterial infarction was seen in 22 percent; brain malformations in 14 percent; and periventricular white-matter injuries in 12 percent. In another study of 351 children with cerebral palsy, of whom approximately half were born near term, MR imaging findings were abnormal in 88 percent (Bax, 2006). One MR imaging study found pathological findings in 84 percent of children with spastic quadriplegia (Robinson, 2008). Remember, the 2014 Task Force concluded that this neurological lesion correlated with neonatal encephalopathy.

Imaging techniques in older children also help define the timing of fetal or perinatal cerebral injury. Due to concerns regarding the radiation exposure of CT scans, MR imaging is more often used. Wiklund and coworkers (1991a,b) studied 83 children between ages 5 and 16 years who were born at term and who developed hemiplegic cerebral palsy. Nearly 75 percent had abnormal CT findings, and these investigators concluded that more than half had CT changes that suggested a *prenatal injury.* Approximately 20 percent were attributed to a *perinatal injury.*

■ Intellectual Disability and Seizure Disorders

These both frequently accompany cerebral palsy. However, when either manifests alone, it is seldom caused by perinatal hypoxia (Nelson, 1984, 1986a, 2015). Severe mental disability has a prevalence of 3 cases per 1000 children, and its most frequent causes are chromosomal, gene mutation, and other congenital malformations. Last, preterm birth also is associated with these (Hientz, 2018).

The major predictors of seizure disorders are fetal malformations—cerebral and noncerebral; family history of seizures; and neonatal seizures (Nelson, 1986b; Pisani, 2015). Neonatal encephalopathy causes a small proportion of seizure disorders. Reports from the Neonatal Research Network and other studies conclude that increasing severity of encephalopathy correlates best with seizures (Glass, 2011; Kwon, 2011).

Autism Spectrum Disorders

According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the frequency of autism spectrum disorders is 15 cases per 1000 8-year-old children (Christensen, 2016). Although these may be associated with maternal metabolic conditions, none has been linked convincingly to peripartum events (Krakowiak, 2012).

NEONATAL ABSTINENCE SYNDROME

This is a drug-withdrawal syndrome that most commonly follows in-utero exposure to maternal opioids. It also can complicate exposure to alcohol or benzodiazepines. The syndrome shows hypertonia, autonomic instability, irritability, poor sucking reflex, and seizures (Finnegan, 1975). Its incidence has risen six- to sevenfold during the past decade, coincidental with growing opioid use. For example, 4 percent of all neonatal intensive care unit days in 2013 were attributed to care of these affected newborns (Tolia, 2015).

Care includes close observation, and pharmacotherapy is usually given. In addition to morphine and methadone, other treatment may include phenobarbital, benzodiazepines, and clonidine (Tolia, 2015). More recently, buprenorphine compared with morphine was reported to result in shorter lengths of treatment and hospital stays (Kraft, 2017; Lee, 2019). Consensus is lacking regarding the most effective regimen. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the American Society of Addiction Medicine (2019c) have taken the lead in screening, intervention, and treatment of opioid use disorders in pregnant women (Chap. 64, p. 1150).

HEMATOLOGICAL DISORDERS

Obstetricians should be familiar with a few neonatal disorders of erythrocytes, platelets, and coagulation. Many of these manifest in the fetus and persist in the newborn.

■ Anemia

After 35 weeks' gestation, the mean cord hemoglobin concentration approximates 17 g/dL, and values below 14 g/dL are considered abnormal. In newborns, delayed umbilical cord clamping raises hemoglobin levels at birth and improves iron stores in the first several months. A review of nearly 9200 late-preterm and term deliveries found delayed cord clamping was associated with a mean neonatal hemoglobin rise of 1.2 g/dL at birth (Gomersall, 2021). However, rates of infant anemia at 6 months were similar in groups with or without delayed cord clamping. Moreover, this practice raises the incidence of hyperbilirubinemia that

requires phototherapy but does not prolong hospital stay. Discussed further in Chapter 27 (p. 500), the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020) recommends a 30- to 60-second delay in cord clamping in all healthy newborns.

Significant neonatal anemia may predate or follow delivery. First, neonatal anemia may reflect an extension of antenatal fetal anemia. General etiological groups are immune-medicated red cell destruction, aneuploidy, hematology-related genetic defects, fetomaternal hemorrhage, fetal infection, and placental abnormalities such as chorioangioma or twin anastomotic defects.

Second, at delivery, acute anemia with hypovolemia can follow laceration of the placenta, fetal vessel, or umbilical cord. Intracranial or extracranial injury or trauma to fetal intraabdominal organs also can cause hemorrhage with acute anemia (Malec, 2020).

Polycythemia

Neonatal polycythemia can be associated with chronic or acute fetal hypoxia, twin anemia-polycythemia syndrome, maternal diabetes or hypertension, placental- and fetal-growth restriction, aneuploidy, and delayed cord clamping. When the hematocrit rises above 65, blood viscosity markedly increases. Routine neonatal screening is not recommended in newborns without symptoms (Remon, 2011). Frequent signs are hypotonia, a ruddy complexion (plethora), respiratory distress with cyanosis, jitteriness, or hypoglycemia. Because of the shorter life span of macrocytic fetal erythrocytes, hyperbilirubinemia commonly follows. Associated blood hyperviscosity can lead to end-organ damage and neurodevelopmental harm. Isovolemic partial exchange transfusion (PET) with saline can lower the hematocrit and improve symptoms, however, it is not neuroprotective and has associated complications (Dempsey, 2006). From limited data, PET is often reserved for neonates with acute symptoms or hypoglycemia (Hopewell, 2011).

Hyperbilirubinemia

Excessive serum bilirubin levels can be neurotoxic for newborns. In fetuses, hepatic maturation is incomplete, and some unconjugated bilirubin is cleared by placental transfer to be conjugated and excreted by the mother. After delivery, clearance relies on neonatal hepatic function, and thus varying degrees of neonatal hyperbilirubinemia arise. Even in the mature newborn, serum bilirubin levels usually increase for 3 to 4 days to reach up to 10 mg/dL. After this, concentrations usually fall rapidly. In approximately 15 percent of term newborns, bilirubin levels cause jaundice. Of risks, polycythemia, hemolysis such as from ABO incompatibility or glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, and extravasation of blood such as from a cephalohematoma all raise bilirubin burden. Decreased bilirubin clearance is seen with prematurity.

With excessive serum bilirubin levels, toxicity has two forms. *Acute bilirubin encephalopathy* develops in the first days of life and may cause hypotonia, poor feeding, lethargy, and abnormal auditory-evoked responses. Immediate recognition and treatment will usually mitigate progressive neurotoxicity.

The chronic form is termed *kernicterus*. With this, profound neuronal degeneration follows bilirubin deposition and staining of the basal ganglia and hippocampus. Survivors have spasticity, muscular incoordination, and varying degrees of mental deficiencies. Continuing hemolysis is a risk factor for kernicterus (El Houchi, 2017; Vandborg, 2012).

Initial prevention emphasizes effective breastfeeding to avoid neonatal dehydration. Surveillance for jaundiced skin is recommended at the same time other newborn vital signs are obtained. Moreover, prior to hospital discharge, universal screening of total serum bilirubin assessment from blood or more commonly by transcutaneous bilirubinometry is done (Maisels, 2009). The latter is a handheld meter that directs light into the skin and measures the intensity of specific returned wavelengths.

Once diagnosed, various forms of phototherapy are used to treat neonatal hyperbilirubinemia. These "bili-lights" emit a spectrum of 460 to 490 nm, which augments bilirubin oxidation to enhance its renal clearance and lower serum levels. Sunlight filtered to remove ultraviolet light can be used in resource-poor countries (Slusher, 2015). Light that penetrates the skin also raises peripheral blood flow, which further enhances photo-oxidation.

For term newborns, the American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) stress early detection and prompt phototherapy to prevent bilirubin encephalopathy. Despite these measures, bilirubin encephalopathy persists, and this is somewhat related to early hospital discharges (Kuzniewicz, 2014). In the United States, hospitalizations for kernicterus in term newborns were 5 cases per 100,000 in 1988 (Burke, 2009). Since then, this rate has dropped to 0.4 to 2.7 cases per 100,000 births (Watchko, 2013). Legislation to minimize brief postpartum hospital stays may be contributory (Chap. 36, p. 645).

Vitamin K Deficiency Bleeding

Newborns are vitamin K deficient due to insufficient antenatal liver stores, limited synthesis in an initially sterile gut, and low vitamin K content in breast milk. *Vitamin K deficiency bleeding (VKDB)* describes spontaneous internal or external bleeding, and its onset is grouped as early, classic, or late onset. Most cases result from abnormally low levels of the vitamin K–dependent clotting factors. Early onset is within the first 24 hours, and one cause is maternal vitamin K deficiency. Classic hemorrhagic disease is usually apparent between days 2 and 7 of life in neonates not given vitamin K prophylaxis at delivery. Delayed hemorrhage may occur at 2 to 12 weeks in exclusively breastfed infants.

The American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) recommend routine prophylaxis with a single, intramuscular, 0.5- to 1-mg dose of vitamin K_1 (phytonadione). Oral administration is less effective, and maternal vitamin K administration results in very little transport to the fetus (Sankar, 2016). Evidence does not support initial links with vitamin K and childhood leukemia (Fear, 2003; Roman, 2002).

Hemorrhagic disease of the newborn includes VKDB but also bleeding from other etiologies. These include congenital clotting factor deficiency, disseminated intravascular coagulopathy, birth trauma, and thrombocytopenia.

Thrombocytopenia

Abnormally low platelet concentrations in term newborns are often categorized as *early onset*, within the first 72 hours, and *late onset* thereafter. In the term neonate, causes include immune disorders, infections, inherited platelet defects, or congenital syndromes (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b; Cremer, 2016). Of immunologic sources, neonatal thrombocytopenia stemming from alloimmunization or from maternal idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura are described in Chapter 18 (p. 359). Neonatal lupus syndrome can also show thrombocytopenia (Chap. 62, p. 1113). With all these, antiplatelet IgG transferred to the fetus may cause accelerated platelet destruction.

Alternatively, thrombocytopenia can be an extension of fetal infection with B19 parvovirus, cytomegalovirus, toxoplasmosis, and others discussed in Chapters 67 and 68. Neonatal thrombocytopenia has been reported with maternal antiretroviral therapy for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection (Smith, 2016). Term newborns with sepsis can have accelerated platelet consumption (Eissa, 2013). Last, inherited platelet disorders are described in Chapter 59 (p. 1059).

NEWBORN INJURIES

Incidence

Birth injury can complicate any term delivery, and from population studies, its incidence approximates 2 percent of deliveries (Linder, 2012; Sauber-Schatz, 2010). Imprecision in these numbers may stem from lumping of major and minor injuries and trauma definitions. In one population study from Washington State, the rate of neonatal birth trauma declined by 14 percent and from 5.3 events per 1000 live births in 2004 to 4.5 in 2013 (Wen, 2017). Major injury rates were highest with forceps or vacuum delivery and substantially lower for all caesarean delivery categories.

Cranial Injuries

The fetal head has considerable plasticity and can undergo appreciable molding during labor. However, traumatic head injuries can occur and result in bony fracture or in intracranial or extracranial hemorrhage. With intra- and extracranial hemorrhages, anatomical location defines their classification (Table 33-4).

Intracranial Hemorrhage

Most aspects of neonatal intracranial hemorrhage are related to gestational age. Of the categories shown in Table 33-4, the term newborn may suffer subdural and intracerebral hemorrhages most often. Intraventricular, subarachnoid, or cerebellar hemorrhages are more frequent in the preterm neonate. In those born preterm, blood pressure instability, hypoxia, and ischemia are prominent causes and described in Chapter 34 (p. 618). In term neonates, birth trauma is the most frequent etiology. Other uncommon causes or contributors include acquired or congenital fetal coagulopathy, vascular anomaly, tumor, genetic mutation, and infection (Tan, 2018). *Importantly, in some newborns, intracranial hemorrhage may follow an apparently uneventful vaginal delivery, and no cause is found.*

Term newborns with intracranial hemorrhage may initially display seizures, apnea or tachypnea, poor feeding, and temperature instability (Ou-Yang, 2010). Imaging options are

TABLE 33-4. Major Types of Cranial Hemorrhage

Type	Collection Site	Associations in Term Neonates	Clinical Outcomes
INTRACRANIAL			
Epidural	Between periosteum and dura mater	Difficult or prolonged birth Idiopathic	Usually good
Subdural	Between dura and arachnoid mater		
Subarachnoid	Between arachnoid and pia mater		
Intraventricular	Ventricles (lateral, 3rd, or 4th)	Birth trauma, hypoxia, or coagulation dysfunction	Variable; worse with high IVH grade and thalamic source
Intracerebral	Cerebral parenchyma	Coagulation dysfunction, vascular anomalies, intrapartum factors	Variable; affected by size, location, or comorbid hydrocephalus
Intracerebellar	Cerebellar parenchyma	Abnormal FHR, OVD, resuscitation required	Variable; affected by size and comorbid lesions
EXTRACRANIAL			
Cephalohematoma	Subperiosteal	OVD, especially VAD Dystocia	Good; risk of anemia or hyperbilirubinemia
Subgaleal	Between galea aponeurotica and periosteum	OVD, especially VAD Dystocia	Variable; worse with associated acidosis, hypovolemia, and comorbid lesions

OVD = operative vaginal delivery; VAD = vacuum-assisted delivery.

sonography or CT, but MR imaging is often preferred. With most lesions, treatment is supportive and nonsurgical. However, acute hydrocephalus, rising intracranial pressure, or mass effects are infrequent complications that can prompt surgery (Tan, 2018).

Names of intracranial lesions reflect anatomy. First, the meninges forms from the dura, arachnoid, and pia mater, and the dura mater is the external layer. *Subdural hemorrhage* collects between the dura and arachnoid mater. Prolonged and difficult delivery can produce cranial molding, dural stretch, and tearing of bridging veins in the subdural space (Towner, 1999; Hong, 2018). Asymptomatic subdural hemorrhage can also accompany uneventful vaginal or cesarean delivery (Rooks, 2008). In asymptomatic newborns, prognosis is good (Zamora, 2021). Poorer outcome may attend those with comorbid conditions or lesions (Hong, 2018).

Less commonly, *subarachnoid hemorrhage* collects between the arachnoid and pia mater. Rarely, *epidural hemorrhage* collects outside the dura mater and beneath the periosteum. In both these hemorrhage types, risks, mechanisms, and recovery are similar to subdural hemorrhage (Hong, 2018; Shah, 2016).

Intraventricular hemorrhage is less common in term than preterm newborns. Described in Chapter 34 (p. 618), the vascular germinal matrix is a vulnerable site for preterm neonates but has mainly regressed by term. Instead, the choroid plexus, thalamus, or residual germinal matrix are bleeding sources at term. Etiology can include birth trauma, hypoxia, or coagulation dysfunction. Additional rare causes are listed in this section's first paragraph. However, in small case series, one to two thirds had no identified antecedent (Roland, 1990; Wu, 2003). Prognosis varies, and worse outcomes are associated with advanced hemorrhage grade or thalamic hemorrhage (Kaur, 2020).

Intracerebral hemorrhage or *neonatal hemorrhagic stroke* is uncommon at term. Risk factors are coagulation defects, vascular anomalies, and intrapartum factors that include FHR abnormalities and low Apgar scores. Trauma is less often implicated (Cole, 2017).

Intracerebellar hemorrhage is infrequent in the term newborn. In one series, associated factors were FHR abnormalities, operative vaginal delivery, emergent cesarean delivery, and delivery-room resuscitation (Limperopoulos, 2009). Prognosis with both intracerebral and intracerebellar hemorrhages is affected by lesion size, presence of additional hemorrhage sites, and associated hydrocephalus or elevated intracranial pressure.

Extracranial Hemorrhage

These blood collections accumulate outside the calvarium (see Table 33-4). From its most superficial surface inward, the scalp consists of skin, subcutaneous tissue, galea aponeurotica, subgaleal space, and calvarium periosteum (Fig. 33-2). The galea aponeurotica is dense fibrous tissue, whereas the subgaleal space contains loose, fibroareolar tissue. Traversing across the subgaleal space are *emissary veins*, which connect the dural sinuses inside the skull with superficial scalp veins.

Caput succedaneum is soft-tissue edema of the scalp. It forms from repetitive contractions that press the head against an unyielding cervix. The caput is maximal at birth, rapidly grows smaller, and usually disappears within hours or days.

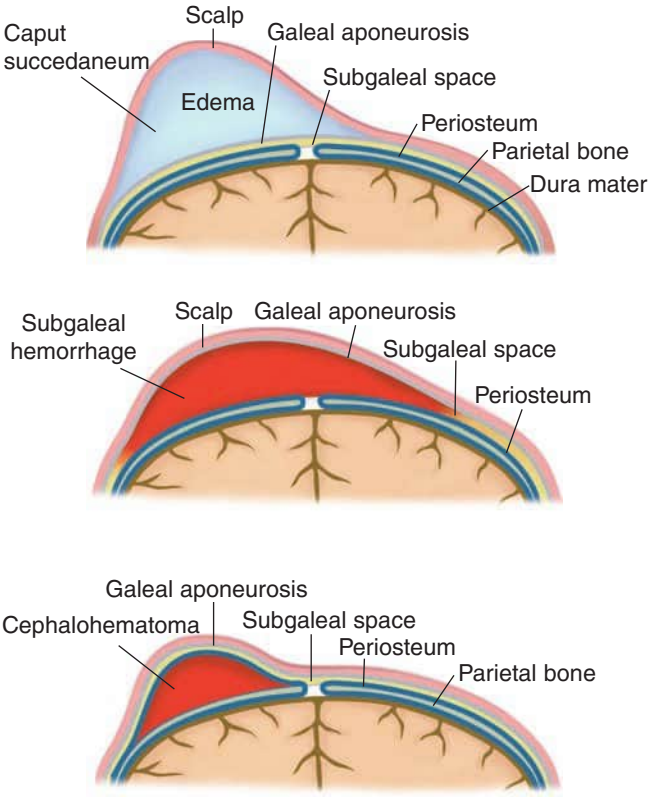


FIGURE 33-2 Schematic of extracranial lesions in the neonate that include caput succedaneum, subgaleal hemorrhage, and cephalohematoma.

Cephalohematoma is a cranial subperiosteal hematoma. It has an incidence of 1 percent and makes up a large percentage of birth injuries (Werner, 2011; Kekki, 2020). It usually develops in the setting of dystocia or operative vaginal delivery. Vacuum-assisted births have a greater association than births by forceps or cesarean delivery (Alexander, 2006; Werner, 2011). Cephalohematoma develops from shearing forces during labor and delivery, which lacerate the emissary or diploic veins. Fortunately, the densely adhered periosteum impedes rapid enlargement and limits final hematoma size. Hemorrhage can be over one or both parietal bones, but collections do not cross suture lines. A cephalohematoma may not be apparent until hours after delivery, when bleeding is sufficient to raise the periosteum. After it is identified, it often grows larger and persists for weeks or even months, and bleeding may cause anemia or hyperbilirubinemia. Outcomes are good in the absence of additional injuries. Rare hematoma complications are infection or calcification (Kandemirli, 2020; Zimmermann, 2016).

Subgaleal hemorrhage is rare and results from emissary vein laceration and bleeding between the galea aponeurotica and the skull periosteum. Both the galea aponeurotica and subgaleal space span across the occipital, parietal, and frontal bones. Because of its loose areolar tissue and large surface area, significant blood volumes can collect in this potential space and may extend from the neck to the orbits and laterally to the temporal fascia above the ears (Modanlou, 2016). Resulting hypovolemia

can lead to shock and significant morbidity, and cited mortality rates approximate 15 percent (El Dib, 2019; Lee, 2018; Swanson, 2011). Other findings are seizures, enlarging head circumference, and respiratory distress. The subgaleal hemorrhage rate is 0.05 percent with spontaneous birth but is ten times greater with vacuum-assisted delivery (Colditz, 2015). The most frequent associate is operative vaginal delivery, especially with vacuum devices, but cases can follow spontaneous vaginal or cesarean delivery (Christensen, 2011).

In general, diagnosis of extracranial lesions begins with head ultrasound (Bansal, 2018). This may be sufficient for cephalohematomas. CT or MR imaging may benefit those with subgaleal hemorrhage to exclude comorbid cranial injuries.

Skull Fractures

These are rare but are especially worrisome because of their association with intracranial hemorrhage. The incidence of birth-related skull fractures approximates 1 case per 100,000 births (Högberg, 2020). Operative vaginal delivery is an associated factor (Dupuis, 2005). However, cases can also attend spontaneous or cesarean delivery (Fig. 33-3) (Dolivet, 2018; Merhar, 2016). In these, fracture may result from tight skull compression against the bony pelvis, by hand pressure used by the surgeon to lift the head at cesarean delivery, or from transvaginally applied upward hand pressure by an assistant. Fractures are diagnosed with radiographs or CT. Depending on type, a fracture may be managed expectantly or require surgery. Prognosis is mainly influenced by comorbid intra- or extracranial injuries.

Spinal Cord Injury

Overstretch of the spinal cord and its associated hemorrhage and edema are rare. The cervical spine is most often injured, and excessive traction, rotation, or hyperextension during shoulder dystocia manipulations, breech vaginal delivery, and operative vaginal delivery are implicated (Lee, 2020a; Menticoglou, 1995). Upper cervical spinal cord injury is often fatal, and survivors can be quadriplegic (Lee, 2020a). Immediate treatment has included ventilator support coupled with corticosteroids or therapeutic hypothermia.

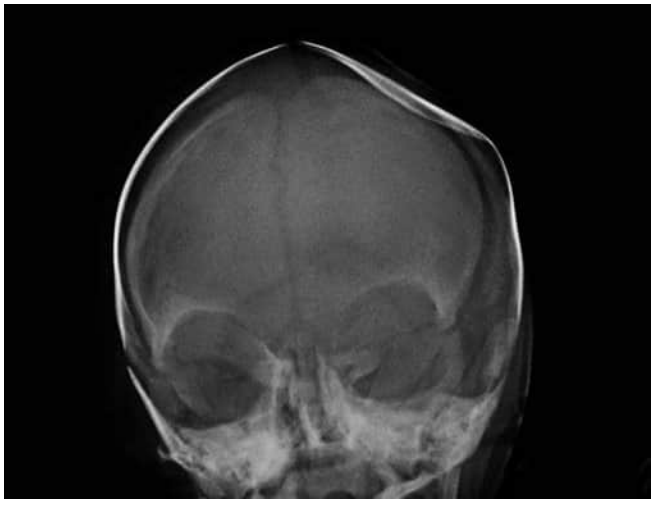


FIGURE 33-3 Depressed skull fracture evident immediately after cesarean delivery. Labor had progressed, and the head was deep in the pelvis. Dislodgment of the head from the birth canal was performed by an assistant using manual pressure upward through the vagina. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Kimberly M. Spoonts.)

Peripheral Nerve Injuries

Brachial Plexopathy

Injury can involve a single nerve or can affect a nerve root, plexus, or trunk. Trauma to the brachial plexus is infrequent. In one database study, the rate was 1 case per 1000 term births in the United States. The incidence was 1.3 per 1000 vaginal deliveries and 0.2 per 1000 cesarean deliveries (Chen, 2021). Shoulder dystocia, labor dystocia, and breech delivery are risks (Johnson, 2020).

With plexopathy, the injury damages the nerve roots that supply the brachial plexus—$C_{5–8}$ and T_1. With hemorrhage and edema, axonal function may be temporarily impaired, but the recovery chances are good. However, with avulsion, the prognosis for complete recovery is poor. Damage to the $C_{5–6}$ nerve roots can cause *Erb palsy*. Injuries with breech delivery are normally of this type, whereas the more extensive and persistent lesions can follow difficult cephalic deliveries. The latter are more often forceps or vacuum-assisted vaginal deliveries (Wilson, 2016). The $C_{5–6}$ roots join to form the upper trunk of the plexus, and injury leads to paralysis of the deltoid, infraspinatus, and flexor muscles of the forearm. The affected arm is held straight and internally rotated, the elbow is extended, and the wrist and fingers flexed. Finger function usually is retained.

Damage to the C_8-T_1 roots supplying the lower plexus results in *Klumpke palsy,* in which the hand is flaccid. With total involvement of all brachial plexus nerve roots, flaccidity of the arm and hand results. Rarely, with severe injury, phrenic nerve damage can cause ipsilateral diaphragm paralysis, or injury to sympathetic nerve fibers can cause *Horner syndrome*, which manifests as ptosis, miosis, and anhidrosis (Rizeq, 2020). Clavicle or humeral fracture can be comorbid, and clinical concern may prompt chest radiography. MR imaging may be obtained with concern for nerve avulsion (Govindan, 2019).

Because of the importance of brachial plexopathy, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2014b) convened a task force to review extant studies. This Task Force concluded that shoulder dystocia cannot be accurately predicted, but in most cases, axonal death does not occur and the prognosis is good. Lindqvist and associates (2012) reported complete recovery in 86 percent of children with $C_{5–6}$ trauma, which was the most common injury, and in 38 percent of those with $C_{5–7}$ damage. However, those with global $C_{5–8}$–T_1 injuries always had permanent disability.

Early physical therapy is initiated to prevent contractures or joint deformity. Maintaining passive joint motion, promoting extremity use, strengthening affected muscles, and providing compensatory techniques are goals (Smith, 2018). Severe injuries may require surgical exploration and nerve reconstruction, usually at 3 to 6 months (Vuillermin, 2016; Wilson, 2016).

FIGURE 33-4 Left facial nerve injury. Classically, the eye fails to close tightly, the labionasal fold is lost, and the mouth pulls to the unaffected side during crying. This was almost completely resolved two days after delivery.

Facial Paralysis

The facial nerve can be injured as it emerges from the stylomastoid foramen, and this may cause facial paralysis (Fig. 33-4). From one series, the incidence was 0.3 cases per 1000 term births (Al Tawil, 2010). Of these vaginal births, forceps were used in one fourth, and three fourths followed spontaneous birth. Pressure from the forceps blade or the bony pelvis, respectively, are suggested injury mechanisms. It can follow cesarean delivery (Alexander, 2006). Spontaneous recovery within a few days is the rule, however, permanent paralysis has been described (Al Tawil, 2010).

Fractures

Most long-bone fractures follow difficult deliveries, however, this is not always the case. At minimum, palpation of the clavicles and long bones is indicated for all newborns after a difficult delivery. Overlying crepitation or irregularity will prompt radiography.

Clavicular fractures are common, unpredictable, and unavoidable complications of normal birth (Ahn, 2015; Roberts, 1995). Their incidence approximates 5 cases in 1000 live births (Kekki, 2020; Linder, 2012). Rates are tenfold higher with vaginal birth than with cesarean delivery (Ahn, 2015). With vaginal birth, shoulder dystocia is an association (Högberg, 2020). With cesarean delivery, greater birth weight is a factor (Choi, 2017).

Humeral fractures and *femoral fractures* are rare. For the humerus, associated settings are breech delivery or posterior arm delivery during shoulder dystocia release (Rietberg, 2003; von Heideken, 2020). Those of the femur are usually associated with breech presentation. Because most breech-presenting fetuses now undergo cesarean delivery, most of these fractures are associated with this mode (Kancherla, 2012). As potential prevention for both fracture types, careful splinting of the bone along its long axis and avoiding perpendicular forces during extraction are encouraged.

Last, *rib fractures* are rare at term. In one series, none was associated with cardiopulmonary resuscitation (Högberg, 2020). Instead, compression forces to the chest during difficult birth or shoulder dystocia are implicated (van Rijn, 2009).

Soft Tissue Injury

Conceivably, any fetal organ or part could be injured with either vaginal or cesarean delivery. Intraabdominal hemorrhage is rare and most often stems from the liver, spleen, or adrenal glands, which are disproportionally large in the newborn. Risks are difficult delivery, especially those presenting breech; cardiac resuscitation; macrosomia; or pathologic enlargement of the involved organ (Schullinger, 1993). Retroperitoneal bleeding with these may manifest as bruising of the flanks, umbilicus, groin, upper thigh, or scrotum (Akin 2011; Heyman, 2011; Raveenthiran, 2008). Pale skin, distended abdomen, and falling hematocrit reflect associated hypovolemia. Treatment involves hemodynamic resuscitation and control of bleeding.

Congenital Deformity Injuries

In *congenital torticollis*, one sternocleidomastoid muscle fails to elongate sufficiently. The head gradually turns toward the side of the injury. Its etiology is unclear. Some cases are associated with breech presentation, operative vaginal birth, or difficult delivery. However, many follow uncomplicated birth, and intrauterine positioning, genetics, and ischemia are some suggested theories (Hardgrib, 2017; Sargent, 2019). Early physical therapy is recommended (Kaplan, 2018).

With *congenital deformations*, a normally developed fetal structure becomes deformed usually by restrictive intrauterine mechanical forces. Common factors are chronic oligohydramnios, multifetal gestation, or abnormally shaped or small uterine cavity. Some mechanical deformations include *talipes equinovarus* (clubfoot) and *oligohydramnios sequence* (Hall, 2014; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2019). The latter may lead to pulmonary hypoplasia and deformations of the head, face, skin, and limbs. This sequence and talipes can also be associated with genetic abnormalities or malformations and are discussed in Chapters 14 and 15 (p. 260 and 303).

Last, *congenital hip dislocation* is strongly associated with an in-utero breech presentation (Yang, 2019). Physical examination screening for all newborns is recommended. Treatment may include observation or bracing (Shaw, 2016).

REFERENCES

Ahlin K, Himmelmann K, Hagberg G, et al: Cerebral palsy and perinatal infection in children born at term. Obstet Gynecol 122:41, 2013

Ahn ES, Jung MS, Lee YK, et al: Neonatal clavicular fracture: recent 10 year study. Pediatr Int 57(1):60, 2015

Akin MA, Coban D, Doganay S, et al: Intrahepatic and adrenal hemorrhage as a rare cause of neonatal anemia. J Perinat Med 39(3):353, 2011

Alexander JM, Leveno KJ, Hauth J, et al: Fetal injury associated with cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 108:885, 2006

Alfirevic Z, Devane D, Gyte GM, et al: Continuous cardiotocography (CTG) as a form of electronic fetal monitoring (EFM) for fetal assessment during labour. Cochrane Database System Rev 2:CD006066, 2017

Alhassen Z, Vali P, Guglani L, et al: Recent advances in pathophysiology and management of transient tachypnea of newborn. J Perinatol 41(1):6, 2021

Allanson ER, Waqar T, White C, et al: Umbilical lactate as a measure of acidosis and predictor of neonatal risk: a systematic review. BJOG 124(4):584, 2017

Al Tawil K, Saleem N, Kadri H, et al: Traumatic facial nerve palsy in newborns: is it always iatrogenic? Am J Perinatol 27:711, 2010

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for perinatal care, 8th ed. Elk Grove Village, AAP, 2017

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Neonatal encephalopathy and cerebral palsy. Defining the pathogenesis and pathophysiology. Elk Grove Village, AAP, 2003

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Neonatal encephalopathy and neurologic outcome, second edition. Report of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' Task Force on Neonatal Encephalopathy. Obstet Gynecol 123(4):896, 2014a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Neonatal brachial plexus palsy. Report of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' Task Force on Neonatal Brachial Plexus Palsy. Obstet Gynecol 123(4):902, 2014b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Intrapartum fetal heart rate monitoring: nomenclature, interpretation, and general management principles. Practice Bulletin No. 106, July 2009, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Thrombocytopenia in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 207, February 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, American Society of Addiction Medicine: Opioid use disorder in pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 711, August 2017, Reaffirmed 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Delayed umbilical cord clamping after birth. Committee Opinion No. 814, November 2017, Reaffirmed 2020

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Approaches to limit intervention during labor and birth. Committee Opinion No. 766, December 2018, Reaffirmed 2021a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Delivery of a newborn with meconium-stained amniotic fluid. Committee Opinion No. 689, March 2017, Reaffirmed 2021b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, American Academy of Pediatrics: The Apgar score. Committee Opinion No. 644, October 2015, Reaffirmed 2021c

Anadkat KS, Kuzniewicz MW, Chaudhari BP, et al: Increased risk for respiratory distress among white, male, late preterm and term infants. J Perinatol 32(10):750, 2012

Aziz K, Lee HC, Escobedo MB, Hoover AV, et al: Part 5: Neonatal Resuscitation: 2020 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. Circulation 142:S524, 2020

Azzopardi D, Strohm B, Marlow N, et al: Effects of hypothermia for perinatal asphyxia on childhood outcomes. N Engl J Med 371(2):140, 2014

Bansal AG, Oudsema R, Masseaux JA, et al: US of pediatric superficial masses of the head and neck. Radiographics 38(4):1239, 2018

Barbu D, Mert I, Kruger M, et al: Evidence of fetal central nervous system injury in isolated congenital heart defects: microcephaly at birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(1):43.e1, 2009

Bax M, Tydeman C, Flodmark O: Clinical and MRI correlates of cerebral palsy: the European cerebral palsy study. JAMA 296:1602, 2006

Bednarek N, Mathur A, Inder T, et al: Impact of therapeutic hypothermia on MRI diffusion changes in neonatal encephalopathy. Neurology 78:1420, 2012

Berthelot-Ricou A, Lacroze V, Courbiere B, et al: Respiratory distress syndrome after elective caesarean section in near term infants: a 5-year cohort study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(2):176, 2012

Blair E, de Groot JH, Nelson KD: Placental infarction identified by macroscopic examination and risk of cerebral palsy in infants at 35 weeks of gestational age and over. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(2):124.e1, 2011

Boskabadi H, Zakerihamid M, Sadeghian MH, et al: Nucleated red blood cells count as a prognostic biomarker in predicting the complications of asphyxia in neonates. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(21):2551, 2017

Burke BL, Robbins JM, Bird TM, et al: Trends in hospitalizations for neonatal jaundice and kernicterus in the United States, 1988–2005. Pediatrics 123(2):524, 2009

Casey BM, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: The continuing value of the Apgar score for the assessment of newborn infants. N Engl J Med 344:467, 2001

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Data and statistics for cerebral palsy. 2016. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/cp/data.html. Accessed June 2021

Chen HY, Blackwell SC, Chauhan SP. Association between Apgar score at 5 minutes and adverse outcomes among low-risk pregnancies. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 16:1, 2020

Chen HY, Blackwell SC, Yang LJ, et al: Neonatal brachial plexus palsy: associated birth injury outcomes, hospital length of stay and costs. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med February 25, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Choi HA, Lee YK, Ko SY, et al: Neonatal clavicle fracture in cesarean delivery: incidence and risk factors. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(14):1689, 2017

Christensen DL, Baio J, Van Naarden Braun K, et al: Prevalence and characteristics of autism spectrum disorder among children 8 years—Autism and Developmental Disabilities Monitoring Network, 11 sites, United States, 2012. MMWR 65(3):1, 2016

Christensen RD, Baer VL, Henry E: Neonatal subgaleal hemorrhage in a multihospital healthcare system: prevalence, associations, and outcomes. Eur J Neonatol Res 1:4, 2011

Colditz MJ, Lai MM, Cartwright DW, et al: Subgaleal haemorrhage in the newborn: a call for early diagnosis and aggressive management. J Paediatr Child Health 51(2):140, 2015

Cole L, Dewey D, Letourneau N, et al: Clinical characteristics, risk factors, and outcomes associated with neonatal hemorrhagic stroke: a population-based case-control study. JAMA Pediatr 171(3):230, 2017

Cremer M, Sallmon H, Kling PJ, et al: Thrombocytopenia and platelet transfusion in the neonate. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 21(1):10, 2016

DeJong EP, Lindenburg IT, van Klink JM, et al: Intrauterine transfusion for parvovirus B19 infection: long term neurodevelopmental outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(3):204.e1, 2012

Dempsey EM, Barrington K: Short and long term outcomes following partial exchange transfusion in the polycythaemic newborn: a systematic review. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 91(1):F2, 2006

Dolivet E, Delesalle C, Morello R, et al: A case-control study about foetal trauma during caesarean delivery. J Gynecol Obstet Hum Reprod 47(7):32, 2018

Dooley SL, Pesavento DJ, Depp R, et al: Meconium below the vocal cords at delivery: correlation with intrapartum events. Am J Obstet Gynecol 153:767, 1985

Dupuis O, Silveira R, Dupont C, et al: Comparison of "instrument-associated" and "spontaneous" obstetric depressed skull fractures in a cohort of 68 neonates. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:165, 2005

Eissa DS, El-Farrash RA: New insights into thrombopoiesis in neonatal sepsis. Platelets 24(2):122, 2013

El-Dib M, Parziale MP, Johnson L, et al: Encephalopathy in neonates with subgaleal hemorrhage is a key predictor of outcome. Pediatr Res 86(2):234, 2019

El Shahed AI, Dargaville PA, Ohlsson A, et al: Surfactant for meconium aspiration syndrome in term and late preterm infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 12:CD002054, 2014

Ensing S, Abu-Hanna A, Schaaf JM, et al: Trends in birth asphyxia, obstetric interventions and perinatal mortality among term singletons: a nationwide cohort study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 28(6):632, 2015

Fear NT, Roman E, Ansell P, et al: Vitamin K and childhood cancer: a report from the United Kingdom Childhood Cancer Study. Br J Cancer 89(7):1228, 2003

Finnegan LP, Connaughton JF Jr, Kron RE, et al: Neonatal abstinence syndrome: assessment and management. Addict Dis 2:141, 1975

Foglia EE, Weiner G, de Almeida MF, et al: Duration of resuscitation at birth, mortality, and neurodevelopment: a systematic review. Pediatrics 146(3):e20201449, 2020

Fraser WD, Hofmeyr J, Lede R, et al: Amnioinfusion for the prevention of the meconium aspiration syndrome. Amnioinfusion Trial Group. N Engl J Med 353:909, 2005

Garg N, Choudhary M, Sharma D, et al: The role of early inhaled budesonide therapy in meconium aspiration in term newborns: a randomized control study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(1):36, 2016

Gilstrap LC III, Leveno KJ, Burris J, et al: Diagnosis of asphyxia on the basis of fetal pH, Apgar score, and newborn cerebral dysfunction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 161:825, 1989

Glass HG, Hong KJ, Rogers EE, et al: Risk factors for epilepsy in children with neonatal encephalopathy. Pediatr Res 70(5):535, 2011

Goldaber KG, Gilstrap LC III, Leveno KJ, et al: Pathologic fetal acidemia. Obstet Gynecol 78:1103, 1991

Gomersall J, Berber S, Middleton P, et al: Umbilical cord management at term and late preterm birth: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 147(3):e2020015404, 2021

Govindan M, Burrows HL: Neonatal brachial plexus injury. Pediatr Rev 40(9):494, 2019

Graham EM, Adami RR, McKenney SL, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of fetal heart rate monitoring in the identification of neonatal encephalopathy. Obstet Gynecol 124(3):507, 2014

Guillet R, Edwards AD, Thoresen M, et al: Seven-to-eight year follow-up of the CoolCap trial of head cooling for neonatal encephalopathy. Pediatr Res 71(12):205, 2012

Gyamfi-Bannerman C, Blackwell TS, Tita AT, et al: Antenatal betamethasone for women at risk for late preterm delivery. N Engl J Med 374(14):1311, 2016
Hafström M, Källén K, Serenius F, et al: Cerebral palsy in extremely preterm infants. Pediatrics 141(1):e20171433, 2018
Hall JG: Oligohydramnios sequence revisited in relationship to arthrogryposis, with distinctive skin changes. Am J Med Genet A 164A(11):2775, 2014
Hardgrib N, Rahbek O, Møller-Madsen B, et al: Do obstetric risk factors truly influence the etiopathogenesis of congenital muscular torticollis? J Orthop Traumatol 18(4):359, 2017
Harteman J, Groenendaal F, Benders M, et al: Role of thrombophilic factors in full-term infants with neonatal encephalopathy. Pediatr Res 73(1):80, 2013
Heyman S, Vervloessem D: Bryant's and Stabler's signs after a difficult delivery. N Engl J Med 365:1824, 2011
Hintz SR, Vohr BR, Bann CM, et al: Preterm neuroimaging and school-age cognitive outcomes. Pediatrics 142(1):e20174058, 2018
Hirakawa E, Ibara S, Tokuhisa T, et al: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in 61 neonates: single-center experience. Pediatr Int 59(4):438, 2017
Hofmeyr GJ, Xu H, Eke AC: Amnioinfusion for meconium-stained liquor in labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 23:CD000014, 2014
Högberg U, Fellman V, Thiblin I, et al: Difficult birth is the main contributor to birth-related fracture and accidents to other neonatal fractures. Acta Paediatr 109(10):2040, 2020
Hong HS, Lee JY: Intracranial hemorrhage in term neonates. Childs Nerv Syst 34(6):1135, 2018
Hopewell B, Steiner LA, Ehrenkranz RA, et al: Partial exchange transfusion for polycythemia hyperviscosity syndrome. Am J Perinatol 28(7):557, 2011
INFANT Collaborative Group: Computerised interpretation of fetal heart rate during labour (INFANT): a randomised controlled trial. Lancet 389(10080):1719, 2017
Jacobs SE, Berg M, Hunt R, et al: Cooling for newborns with hypoxic ischaemic encephalopathy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev (1):CD003311, 2013
Johansson S, Sandström A, Cnattingius S: Maternal overweight and obesity increase the risk of fetal acidosis during labor. J Perinatol 38(9):1144, 2018
Johnson C, Burd I, Northington F, et al: Clinical chorioamnionitis is associated with a more severe metabolic acidosis in neonates with suspected hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210:S205, 2014
Johnson GJ, Denning S, Clark SL, et al: Pathophysiologic origins of brachial plexus injury. Obstet Gynecol 136(4):725, 2020
Juul SE, Comstock BA, Heagerty PJ, et al: High-dose erythropoietin for asphyxia and encephalopathy (HEAL): a randomized controlled trial—background, aims, and study protocol. Neonatology 113(4):3315, 2018
Kalra VK, Lee HC, Sie L, et al: Change in neonatal resuscitation guidelines and trends in incidence of meconium aspiration syndrome in California. J Perinatol 40(1):46, 2020
Kancherla R, Sankineani SR, Naranje S, et al: Birth-related femoral fracture in newborns: risk factors and management. J Child Orthop 6(3):177, 2012
Kandemirli SG, Cingoz M, Bilgin C, et al: Temporal evolution of imaging findings in ossified cephalohematoma. Craniofac Surg 31(4):e375, 2020
Kaplan SL, Coulter C, Sargent B: Physical therapy management of congenital muscular torticollis: a 2018 evidence-based clinical practice guideline from the APTA Academy of Pediatric Physical Therapy. Pediatr Phys Ther 30(4):240, 2018
Kaur A, Luu TM, Shah PS, et al: Neonatal Intraventricular Hemorrhage and Hospitalization in Childhood. Pediatr Neurol 103:35, 2020
Kekki M, Salonen A, Tihtonen K, et al: The incidence of birth injuries decreased in Finland between 1997 and 2017: a nationwide register study. Acta Paediatr 109(12):2562, 2020
Kraft WK, Adeniyl-Jones SC, Chervoneva I, et al: Buprenorphine for the treatment of the neonatal abstinence syndrome. N Engl J Med 376(24):2341, 2017
Krakowiak P, Walker CK, Bremer AA, et al: Maternal metabolic conditions and risk for autism and other neurodevelopmental disorders. Pediatrics 129(5):1, 2012
Kuzniewicz MW, Wickremasinghe AC, Wu YW, et al: Incidence, etiology, and outcomes of hazardous hyperbilirubinemia in newborns. Pediatrics 134(3):504, 2014
Kwon JM, Guillet R, Shankaran S, et al: Clinical seizures in neonatal hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy have no independent impact on neurodevelopmental outcome: secondary analyses of data from the Neonatal Research Network hypothermia trial. J Child Neurol 26:322, 2011
Laptook AR: Birth asphyxia and hypoxic-ischemic brain injury in the preterm infant. Clin Perinatol 43(3):529, 2016
Laptook AR, Shankaran S, Tyson JE, et al: Effect of therapeutic hypothermia initiated after 6 hours of age on death or disability among newborns with hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA 318(16):1550, 2017
Lee CC, Chou IJ, Chang YJ, et al: Unusual presentations of birth related cervical spinal cord injury. Front Pediatr 8:514, 2020a
Lee JH, Jung J, Park H, et al: Umbilical cord arterial blood gas analysis in term singleton pregnancies: a retrospective analysis over 11 years. Obstet Gynecol Sci 63(3):293, 2020b
Lee JJ, Chen J, Eisler L, et al: Comparative effectiveness of opioid replacement agents for neonatal opioid withdrawal syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Perinatol 39(11):1535, 2019
Lee SJ, Kim JK, Kim SJ: The clinical characteristics and prognosis of subgaleal hemorrhage in newborn. Korean J Pediatr 61(12):387, 2018
Leveno KJ, Quirk JG Jr, Cunningham FG, et al: Prolonged pregnancy. I. Observations concerning the causes of fetal distress. Am J Obstet Gynecol 150:465, 1984
Li Y, Wang W, Zhang D: Maternal diabetes mellitus and risk of neonatal respiratory distress syndrome: a meta-analysis. Acta Diabetol 56(7):729, 2019
Limperopoulos C, Robertson RL, Sullivan NR, et al: Cerebellar injury in term infants: clinical characteristics, magnetic resonance imaging findings, and outcome. Pediatr Neurol 41(1):1, 2009
Linder I, Melamed N, Kogan A, et al: Gender and birth trauma in full-term infants. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(9):1603, 2012
Lindqvist PG, Erichs K, Molnar C, et al: Characteristics and outcome of brachial plexus birth palsy in neonates. Acta Paediatr 101(6):579, 2012
Liszewski MC, Stanescu AL, Phillips G, et al: Distress in neonates: underlying causes and current imaging assessment. Radiol Clin North Am 55(4):629, 2017
MacLennan AH, Thompson SC, Gecz J: Cerebral palsy: causes, pathways, and the role of genetic variants. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(6):779, 2015
Maisels MJ, Bhutani VK, Bogen D, et al: Hyperbilirubinemia in the newborn infant >or = 35 weeks' gestation: an update with clarifications. Pediatrics 124(4):1193, 2009
Malec L: Nonimmune anemias. Clin Perinatol 47(1):143, 2020
Malin GL, Morris RK, Khan KS: Strength of association between umbilical cord pH and perinatal and long term outcomes: systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ 340:c1471, 2010
Martinez-Biarge M, Madero R, Gonzalez A, et al: Perinatal morbidity and risk of hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy associated with intrapartum sentinel events. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(2):148, 2012
McAdams RM, Juul SE. Neonatal encephalopathy: update on therapeutic hypothermia and other novel therapeutics. Clin Perinatol 43(3):485, 2016
McIntyre S, Blair E, Badawi N, et al: Antecedents of cerebral palsy and perinatal death in term and late preterm singletons. Obstet Gynecol 122:869, 2013
McKinlay CJ, Alsweiler JM, Ansell JM, et al: Neonatal glycemia and neurodevelopmental outcomes at 2 years. N Engl J Med 373(16):1507, 2015
Menticoglou SM, Perlman M, Manning FA: High cervical spinal cord injury in neonates delivered with forceps: report of 15 cases. Obstet Gynecol 86:589, 1995
Merhar SL, Kline-Fath BM, Nathan AT, et al: Identification and management of neonatal skull fractures. J Perinatol 36(8):640, 2016
Modanlou H, Hutson S, Merritt AT: Early blood transfusion and resolution of disseminated intravascular coagulation associated with massive subgaleal hemorrhage. Neonatal Netw 35(1):37, 2016
Moster D, Lie RT, Irgens LM: The association of the Apgar score with subsequent death and cerebral palsy: a population-based study in term infants. J Pediatr 138(6):798, 2001
Moster D, Lie RT, Markestad T: Long-term medical and social consequences of preterm birth. N Engl J Med 359:262, 2008
Natarajan CK, Sankar MJ, Jain K, et al: Surfactant therapy and antibiotics in neonates with meconium aspiration syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Perinatol 36(Suppl 1):S49 2016a
Natarajan G, Pappas A, Shankaran S: Outcomes in childhood following therapeutic hypothermia for neonatal hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy (HIE). Semin Perinatol 40(8):549, 2016b
Nelson DB, Lucke AM, McIntire DD, et al: Obstetric antecedents to body cooling treatment of the newborn infant. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211:115, 2014
Nelson KB, Blair E: Prenatal factors in singletons with cerebral palsy born at or near term. N Engl J Med 373(10):946, 2015
Nelson KB, Ellenberg JH: Antecedents of cerebral palsy: multivariate analysis of risk. N Engl J Med 315:81, 1986a
Nelson KB, Ellenberg JH: Antecedents of cerebral palsy: univariate analysis of risks. Am J Dis Child 139:1031, 1985
Nelson KB, Ellenberg JH: Antecedents of seizure disorders in early childhood. Am J Dis Child 140:1053, 1986b
Nelson KB, Ellenberg JH: Obstetric complications as risk factors for cerebral palsy or seizure disorders. JAMA 251:1843, 1984
Novak CM, Ozen M, Burd I: Perinatal brain injury: mechanisms, prevention, and outcomes. Clin Perinatol 45(2):357, 2018

O'Callaghan M, MacLennan A: Cesarean delivery and cerebral palsy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 122:1169, 2013
O'Leary CM, Watson L, D'Antoine H, et al: Heavy maternal alcohol consumption and cerebral palsy in the offspring. Dec Med Child Neurol 54:224, 2012
Ou-Yang MC, Huang CB, Huang HC, et al: Clinical manifestations of symptomatic intracranial hemorrhage in term neonates: 18 years of experience in a medical center. Pediatr Neonatol 51(4):208, 2010
Pandita A, Murki S, Oleti TP, et al: Effect of nasal continuous positive airway pressure on infants with meconium aspiration syndrome: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA Pediatr 172(2):161, 2018
Phelan JP, Ahn MO: Perinatal observations in forty-eight neurologically impaired term infants. Am J Obstet Gynecol 171:424, 1994
Pisani F, Facini C, Pavlidis E, et al: Epilepsy after neonatal seizures: literature review. Eur J Paediatr Neurol 19(1):6, 2015
Raveenthiran V, Cenita S, Viswanathan P: Stabler's sign revisited in a spontaneously ruptured neuroblastoma of the newborn. Am J Perinatol 25(1):17, 2008
Ravichandran L, Allen VM, Allen AC, et al: Incidence, intrapartum risk factors, and prognosis of neonatal hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy among infants born at 35 weeks gestation or more. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 42(12):1489, 2020
Razak A, Hussain A: Erythropoietin in perinatal hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Perinat Med 47(4):478, 2019
Remon JI, Raghavan A, Maheshwari A: Polycythemia in the newborn. NeoReviews 12(1):e20, 2011
Rietberg CC, Elferink-Stinkens PM, Brand R, et al: Term breech presentation in The Netherlands from 1995 to 1999: mortality and morbidity in relation to the mode of delivery of 33824 infants. BJOG 110(6):604, 2003
Rizeq YK, Many BT, Vacek JC, et al: Diaphragmatic paralysis after phrenic nerve injury in newborns. J Pediatr Surg 55(2):240, 2020
Roberts SW, Hernandez C, Maberry MC, et al: Obstetric clavicular fracture: the enigma of normal birth. Obstet Gynecol 86(6):978, 1995
Robinson MN, Peake LJ, Ditchfield MR, et al: Magnetic resonance imaging findings in a population-based cohort of children with cerebral palsy. Dev Med Child Neurol 51(1):39, 2008
Roland EH, Flodmark O, Hill A: Thalamic hemorrhage with intraventricular hemorrhage in the full-term newborn. Pediatrics 85(5):737, 1990
Roman E, Fear NT, Ansell P, et al: Vitamin K and childhood cancer: analysis of individual patient data from six case-control studies. Br J Cancer 86(1):63, 2002
Rooks VJ, Eaton JP, Ruess L, et al: Prevalence and evolution of intracranial hemorrhage in asymptomatic term infants. AJNR Am J Neuroradiol 29(6):1082, 2008
Rossi AC, Vanderbilt D, Chmait RH: Neurodevelopmental outcomes after laser therapy for twin-twin transfusion syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 118(5):1145, 2011
Sankar MJ, Chandrasekaran A, Kumar P, et al: Vitamin K prophylaxis for prevention of vitamin K deficiency bleeding: a systematic review. J Perinatol 36 (Suppl 1):S29, 2016
Sargent B, Kaplan SL, Coulter C, et al: Congenital muscular torticollis: bridging the gap between research and clinical practice. Pediatrics 144(2):e20190582, 2019
Sauber-Schatz EK, Markovic N, Weiss HB, et al: Descriptive epidemiology of birth trauma in the United States in 2003. Paediatr Perinat Epidemiol 24(2):116, 2010
Schou KV, Lando AV, Ekelund CK, et al: Long-term neurodevelopmental outcome of monochorionic twins after laser therapy or umbilical cord occlusion for twin-twin transfusion syndrome. Fetal Diagn Ther 46(1):20, 2019
Schullinger JN: Birth trauma. Pediatr Clin North Am 40(6):1351, 1993
Shah NA, Wusthoff CJ: Intracranial hemorrhage in the neonate. Neonatal Netw 35(2):67, 2016
Shankaran S, Laptook AR, Pappas A, et al: Effect of depth and duration of cooling on death or disability at age 18 months among neonates with hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA 318(1):57, 2017
Shankaran S, Pappas A, McDonald SA, et al: Childhood outcomes after hypothermia for neonatal encephalopathy. N Engl J Med 366(22):2085, 2012
Shatrov JG, Birch SC, Lam FT, et al: Chorioamnionitis and cerebral palsy: a meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 116:387, 2010
Shaw BA, Segal LS: Evaluation and referral for developmental dysplasia of the hip in infants. Pediatrics 138(6):e20163107, 2016
Shevell A, Wintermark P, Benini R, et al: Chorioamnionitis and cerebral palsy: lessons from a patient registry. Eur J Paediatr Neurol 18(3):301, 2014
Shi Z, Ma L, Luo K, et al: Chorioamnionitis in the development of cerebral palsy: a meta-analysis and systematic review. Pediatrics 139(6):e2016378, 2017
Silva AM, Smith RN, Lehmann CU, et al: Neonatal nucleated red blood cells and the prediction of cerebral white matter injury in preterm infants. Obstet Gynecol 107:550, 2006
Slusher TM, Olusanya BO, Vreman HJ, et al: A randomized trial of phototherapy with filtered sunlight in African neonates. N Engl J Med 373(12):1115, 2015
Smith BW, Daunter AK, Yang LJ, et al: An update on the management of neonatal brachial plexus palsy—replacing old paradigms: a review. JAMA Pediatr 172(6):585, 2018
Smith C, Weinberg A, Forster JE, et al: Maternal lopinavir-ritonavir is associated with fewer adverse events in infants than nelfinavir or atazanavir. Infect Dis Obstet Gynecol 2016:9848041, 2016
Smithers-Sheedy H, McIntyre S, Gibson C, et al: A special supplement: findings from the Australian Cerebral Palsy Register, birth years 1993 to 2006. Dev Med Child Neurol 58(Suppl 2):5, 2016
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, McKinney J, Rac MW, et al: Congenital talipes equinovarus (clubfoot). Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(6):B10, 2019
Stoknes M, Andersen GL, Dahlseng MO, et al: Cerebral palsy and neonatal death in term singletons born small for gestational age. Pediatrics 130(6):e1629, 2012
Stuart A, Olausson PO, Kallen K: Apgar scores at 5 minutes after birth in relation to school performance at 16 years of age. Obstet Gynecol 118(2 Pt 1):201, 2011
Swanson AE, Veldman A, Wallace EM, et al: Subgaleal hemorrhage: risk factors and outcomes. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91(2):260, 2012
Takenouchi T, Kasdorf E, Engel M, et al: Changing pattern of perinatal brain injury in term infants in recent years. Pediatr Neurol 46(2):106, 2012
Tan AP, Svrckova P, Cowan F, et al: Intracranial hemorrhage in neonates: a review of etiologies, patterns and predicted clinical outcomes. Eur J Paediatr Neurol 22(4):690, 2018
Thornton PD, Campbell RT, Mogos MF, et al: Meconium aspiration syndrome: incidence and outcomes using discharge data. Early Hum Dev 136:21, 2019
Tolia VN, Patrick SW, Bennett MM, et al: Increasing incidence of the neonatal abstinence syndrome in U.S. neonatal ICUs. N Engl J Med 372(22):2118, 2015
Torfs CP, van den Berg B, Oechsli FW, et al: Prenatal and perinatal factors in the etiology of cerebral palsy. J Pediatr 116:615, 1990
Towner D, Castro MA, Eby-Wilkens E, et al: Effect of mode of delivery in nulliparous women on neonatal intracranial injury. N Engl J Med 341(23):1709, 1999
Tweed EJ, Mackay DF, Nelson SM, et al: Five-minute Apgar score and educational outcomes: retrospective cohort study of 751,369 children. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 101(2):F121, 2016
Vain NE, Batton DG: Meconium "aspiration" (or respiratory distress associated with meconium-stained amniotic fluid?). Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 22(4):214, 2017
Vain NE, Szyld EG, Prudent LM, et al: Oropharyngeal and nasopharyngeal suctioning of meconium-stained neonates before delivery of their shoulders: multicenter, randomized controlled trial. Lancet 364:597, 2004
Vandborg PK, Hansen BM, Greisen G, et al: Follow-up of neonates with total serum bilirubin levels ≥25 mg/dL: a Danish population-based study. Pediatrics 130(1):61, 2012
van Rijn RR, Bilo RA, Robben SG: Birth-related mid-posterior rib fractures in neonates: a report of three cases (and a possible fourth case) and a review of the literature. Pediatr Radiol 39(1):30, 2009
Villamor E, Tedroff K, Peterson M, et al: Association between maternal body mass index in early pregnancy and incidence of cerebral palsy. JAMA 317(9):925, 2017
von Heideken J, Thiblin I, Högberg U: The epidemiology of infant shaft fractures of femur or humerus by incidence, birth, accidents, and other causes. BMC Musculoskelet Disord 21(1):840, 2020
Vuillermin C, Bauer AS: Boston Children's Hospital approach to brachial plexus birth palsy. J Pediatr Orthop B 25(4):296, 2016
Wagenaar N, Martinez-Biarge M, van der Aa NE, et al: Neurodevelopment after perinatal arterial ischemic stroke. Pediatrics 142(3):e20174164, 2018
Walsh B, Boylan G, Dempsey E, et al: Association of nucleated red blood cells and severity of encephalopathy in normothermic and hypothermic infants. Acta Paediatr 102(2):e64, 2013
Walsh BH, Bovian GB, Murray DM: Nucleated red blood cells and early EEG: predicting Sarnat stage and two year outcome. Early Hum Dev 87(5):335, 2011
Walsh BH, Neil J, Morey J, et al: The frequency and severity of magnetic resonance imaging abnormalities in infants with mild neonatal encephalopathy. J Pediatr 187:26, 2017
Watchko JF, Tiribelli C: Bilirubin-induced neurologic damage—mechanisms and management approaches. N Engl J Med 369:21, 2013

Wen Q, Muraca GM, Ting J, et al: Temporal trends in severe maternal and neonatal trauma during childbirth: a population-based observational study. BMJ Open 8:e020578, 2018

Werner EF, Janevic TM, Illuzzi J, et al: Mode of delivery in nulliparous women and neonatal intracranial injury. Obstet Gynecol 118(6):1239, 2011

Wiklund LM, Uvebrant P, Flodmark O: Computed tomography as an adjunct in etiological analysis of hemiplegic cerebral palsy. I: Children born preterm. Neuropediatrics 22:50, 1991a

Wiklund LM, Uvebrant P, Flodmark O: Computed tomography as an adjunct in etiological analysis of hemiplegic cerebral palsy; II. Children born at term. Neuropediatrics 22:121, 1991b

Williams JW: Obstetrics: a textbook for the use of students and practitioners. New York, Appleton, 1903

Wilson TJ, Chang KW, Chauhan SP, et al: Peripartum and neonatal factors associated with the persistence of neonatal brachial plexus palsy at 1 year: a review of 382 cases. J Neurosurg Pediatr 17(5):618, 2016

Wiswell TE, Gannon CM, Jacob J, et al: Delivery room management of the apparently vigorous meconium-stained neonate: results of the multicenter, international collaborative trial. Pediatrics 105(1 Pt 1):1, 2000

Wu YW, Bauer LA, Ballard RA, et al: Erythropoietin for neuroprotection in neonatal encephalopathy: safety and pharmacokinetics. Pediatrics 130(4):683, 2012

Wu YW, Croen LA, Shah SJ, et al: Cerebral palsy in a term population: risk factors and neuroimaging findings. Pediatrics 118:691, 2006

Wu YW, Hamrick SE, Miller SP, et al: Intraventricular hemorrhage in term neonates caused by sinovenous thrombosis. Ann Neurol 54(1):123, 2003

Wyckoff MH, Wyllie J, Aziz K, et al: Neonatal life support: 2020 International Consensus on Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care Science with Treatment Recommendations. Circulation 142:S185, 2020

Yang S, Zusman N, Lieberman E, et al: Developmental dysplasia of the hip. Pediatrics 143(1):e20181147, 2019

Yeh P, Emary K, Impey L: The relationship between umbilical cord arterial pH and serious adverse neonatal outcome: analysis of 51,519 consecutive validated samples. BJOG 119(7):824, 2012

Yeung T, Jasani B, Shah PS: Steroids for the management of neonates with meconium aspiration syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Indian Pediatr 58(4):370, 2021

Zamora C, Sams C, Cornea EA, et al: Subdural hemorrhage in asymptomatic neonates: neurodevelopmental outcomes and MRI findings at 2 years. Radiology 298(1):173, 2021

Zimmermann P, Duppenthaler A: Infected cephalhaematoma in a five-week-old infant—case report and review of the literature. BMC Infect Dis 16(1):636, 2016

CHAPTER 34

The Preterm Newborn

At the time of this textbook's first edition in 1903, preterm delivery was often followed by neonatal death. However, subsequent scientific innovation has advanced the threshold of viability to 22 to 24 weeks' gestation (Watkins, 2020). Moreover, the overall survival rate for preterm neonates <29 weeks' gestation approaches 80 percent (Travers 2018). Still, the preterm newborn is susceptible to many serious medical complications both early and later in life (Table 34-1).

The complications of prematurity can be serious, and this is reflected in overall neonatal mortality rates. In 2018, two thirds of all infant deaths in the United States were in the 10 percent born before 37 weeks (Ely, 2020; Hamilton, 2021). Fortunately, rates of preterm birth have declined from approximately 12 percent in 2007 to 10 percent in 2020. The rate of early preterm births (<34 weeks' gestation) declined from 2.77 to 2.69 percent, which is the lowest level reported since 2007 (Hamilton, 2021).

RESPIRATORY DISTRESS SYNDROME

The seminal complication of the preterm newborn is *respiratory distress syndrome (RDS)*. This results from immature lungs that are unable to sustain necessary oxygenation due to surfactant deficiency. The resulting hypoxia can be associated with pulmonary hypertension and neurologic damage such as cerebral palsy. In addition, hyperoxia, a side effect of RDS treatment, contributes to other preterm morbidities including bronchopulmonary dysplasia, necrotizing enterocolitis, periventricular leukomalacia, and retinopathy of prematurity.

Etiopathogenesis

To provide blood gas exchange immediately following delivery, the lungs must rapidly fill with air while being cleared of fluid. Concurrently, pulmonary arterial blood flow must rise. Although some of the fluid is expelled as the chest is compressed during vaginal delivery, most is absorbed through the pulmonary lymphatics via complex mechanisms described in Chapter 32 (p. 586). Sufficient surfactant, synthesized by type II pneumocytes, is essential to stabilize the air-expanded alveoli. This lipoprotein lowers surface tension and thereby prevents lung collapse during expiration (Chap. 7, p. 131). If surfactant is inadequate, hyaline membranes form in the distal bronchioles and alveoli, and RDS develops. Although

TABLE 34-1. Complications of Prematurity

Respiratory distress syndrome (RDS)
Bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD)
Pneumothorax
Pneumonia/sepsis
Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA)
Necrotizing enterocolitis (NEC)
Retinopathy of prematurity (ROP)
Intraventricular hemorrhage (IVH)
Periventricular leukomalacia (PVL)
Cerebral palsy (CP)
Neurodevelopmental Impairment (NDI)

RDS is generally a disease of preterm neonates, it can develop in term newborns, especially with sepsis, pneumonia, or meconium aspiration. In these cases, surfactant can be inactivated by inflammation and/or the presence of meconium (Chap. 33, p. 600).

With inadequate surfactant, alveoli are unstable and collapse with the low pressures of end expiration. Pneumocyte nutrition is compromised by hypoxia and systemic hypotension. Partial persistence of the fetal circulation may lead to pulmonary hypertension and a relative right-to-left shunt. Eventually, alveolar cells undergo ischemic necrosis. When oxygen therapy is initiated, the pulmonary vascular bed dilates, and the shunt reverses. Protein-filled fluid leaks into the alveolar ducts, and the cells lining the ducts slough. Hyaline membranes composed of fibrin-rich protein and cellular debris line the dilated alveoli and terminal bronchioles. The epithelium underlying the membrane becomes necrotic. At autopsy, with histological staining of lung tissue with hematoxylin-eosin, these membranes appear amorphous and eosinophilic, like hyaline cartilage. Because of this, respiratory distress syndrome is also termed *hyaline membrane disease*.

Clinical Course

In typical RDS, tachypnea develops, the chest wall retracts, and expiration is accompanied by nostril flaring and by grunting—in an attempt to provide a positive end-expiratory pressure to prevent lung collapse. Shunting of blood through nonventilated lung contributes to hypoxemia and to metabolic and respiratory acidosis. Poor peripheral circulation and systemic hypotension may be evident. The typical chest radiograph shows a diffuse reticulogranular infiltrate and an air-filled tracheobronchial tree—*air bronchograms* (Fig. 34-1).

Respiratory insufficiency can also be caused by sepsis, pneumonia, meconium aspiration, pneumothorax, persistent fetal circulation, heart failure, and congenital malformations involving thoracic structures, such as diaphragmatic hernia (Chap. 33, p. 599). Common mutations in surfactant protein production and the phospholipid transporter (ABCA3) are rare causes of RDS (Singh, 2021).

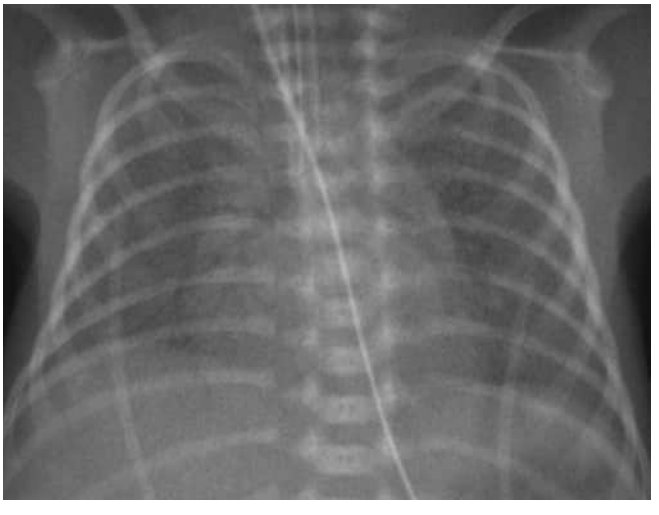


FIGURE 34-1 Chest radiograph of a preterm newborn with moderate respiratory distress syndrome. Note the diffuse granularity throughout the lungs and mild, central, air bronchograms. The lungs are only eight ribs expanded despite mechanical ventilation.

Treatment

An important factor influencing survival is neonatal intensive care. Although hypoxemia prompts application of supplemental oxygen, excess oxygen can damage the pulmonary epithelium, retina, and other immature tissues. Despite this, advances in mechanical ventilation technology have improved neonatal survival rates. For example, *continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP)* prevents the collapse of unstable alveoli. This allows high concentrations of inspired oxygen to be reduced, thereby minimizing its toxicity. To help limit the need for tracheal intubation and intermittent positive-pressure ventilation, CPAP has been studied in well-designed trials (Morley, 2008; SUPPORT Study Group, 2010b). An initial CPAP strategy coupled with subsequent selective surfactant use is a beneficial alternative to immediate intubation and surfactant for neonates of extremely early gestational age (Wyckoff, 2020). Less-invasive surfactant administration techniques allow surfactant delivery while maintaining the preterm newborn on CPAP. Such methods reduce the need for intubation and mechanical ventilation in the first 72 hours and decrease rates of death or bronchopulmonary dysplasia (Abdel-Latif, 2021).

Mechanical ventilation has undoubtedly improved survival rates, but it is an important factor in the genesis of chronic lung disease of prematurity—*bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD)*. Namely, mechanical ventilation places a newborn at risk for barotrauma and volutrauma. Moreover, hyperoxia can create reactive oxygen species that trigger inflammation. Infection also can be contributory. In affected newborns, alveolar and pulmonary vascular development is disrupted, leading to hypoxia, hypercarbia, and chronic oxygen dependence. It can also affect adult lung function (Thébaud, 2019). BPD remains the most frequent complication of extreme preterm birth (Stoll, 2015).

High-frequency oscillatory ventilation is an alternative to conventional mechanical ventilation for preterm newborns. However, benefits and risks vary considerably between studies (Cools, 2015). Similarly, thus far, the evidence for *high-frequency jet ventilation* is not superior to conventional ventilation for this population (Rojas-Reyes, 2015).

In the past, ventilator-dependent preterm neonates were often treated with *glucocorticoids* to prevent and treat BPD. This differs from antenatal use, described in the next sections. The American Academy of Pediatrics now recommends against routine neonatal corticosteroid use because of limited benefits and greater rates of impaired motor and cognitive function and school performance in exposed newborns (Watterberg, 2010). The risk of adverse neurodevelopment is highest if dexamethasone is given to preterm newborns at low risk of BPD. Attempts have been made to identify the highest-risk neonates for whom the benefits would exceed the risks (Cuna, 2018). Different types of corticosteroids, with various timing and administration routes, have been studied. Current trials are focused on corticosteroids, mixed with surfactant, delivered intratracheally directly to the lung. This approach may avoid some systemic adverse effects of corticosteroids (Cheong, 2019).

In other efforts to prevent BPD, early animal studies demonstrated significant improvements in lung function with weeks of *inhaled nitric oxide* (McCurnin, 2005). Despite initial enthusiasm, clinical trials failed to demonstrate a consistent benefit (Greenough, 2020). A National Institutes of Health (NIH) consensus statement concluded that the available data do not support its use to prevent or treat BPD (Cole, 2011).

Caffeine has been used widely to treat apnea of prematurity, but it also has bronchodilatory effects. One large randomized trial of caffeine versus placebo showed lower BPD rates, improved neurodevelopmental outcomes during early childhood, and good evidence of safety up to 11 years (Schmidt, 2006, 2012, 2017). This therapy is now widely used for newborns weighing ≤1250 g.

The antioxidant *vitamin A* is necessary for normal lung growth and the integrity of respiratory tract epithelial cells. Preterm newborns have low vitamin A levels at birth, and this is associated with a greater risk of developing BPD. Randomized trials support the use of vitamin A to modestly reduce BPD rates for very-low-birthweight neonates weighing <1500 g (Darlow, 2016). Unfortunately, production shortages have limited the use of vitamin A prophylaxis in the past decade.

Surfactant Prophylaxis and Rescue Therapy

Surfactant replacement was established decades ago as an effective and safe therapy for RDS. Surfactant improves mortality rates, reduces the need for ventilation, and improves short-term outcomes for low-birth-weight neonates (Hentschel, 2020). It is standard therapy for newborn RDS (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017).

Exogenous surfactant products are most commonly delivered via endotracheal tube to help treat RDS. They contain biological or animal surfactants such as bovine—*Survanta*, calf—*Infasurf*, or porcine—*Curosurf*. One Cochrane review found that animal-derived surfactants led to better outcomes than synthetic ones, which do not contain important surfactant proteins (Ardell, 2015). Currently, no synthetic surfactants are available, yet newer ones are in testing (Hentschel, 2020).

For rescue surfactant therapy, less invasive methods of delivery to spontaneously breathing preterm neonates have been developed. These include surfactant application into the pharynx, surfactant nebulization, and application via laryngeal mask (Hentschel, 2020). Administration of surfactant via a thin catheter while maintaining the newborn on CPAP is associated with reduced risk of death or BPD, lower intubation rate in the first 72 hours, reduced incidence of major complications, and a reduced in-hospital mortality rate compared with administration via an endotracheal tube (Abdel-Latif, 2021).

Surfactant has been used for *prophylaxis* of preterm, at-risk newborns. Given together, antenatal corticosteroids and postnatal surfactant result in an even greater reduction in the overall death rate. However, randomized trials indicate that in populations with high use of antenatal corticosteroids and routine use of CPAP in the delivery room, prophylactic surfactant is no longer beneficial and is associated with greater risk of death or BPD (Rojas-Reyes, 2012; Sardesai, 2017).

Prevention

Antenatal Corticosteroids

More than two decades ago, the NIH (2000) concluded that a single course of antenatal corticosteroid therapy reduces RDS and intraventricular hemorrhage rates in preterm neonates born between 24 and 34 weeks' gestation (p. 619). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) considers all women at risk for preterm birth in this gestational-age range to be potential candidates for therapy. It also may be *considered* for pregnant women starting at 23 weeks' gestation who are at risk of preterm delivery within 7 days. For the periviable fetus, other management guidelines are listed in Table 45-4 (p. 786). Administration of corticosteroids for pregnant women during the periviable period who are at risk of preterm delivery within 7 days should be linked to a family's decision regarding resuscitation and should be considered in that context. Thus, as survival at even earlier gestations improves, the threshold for administration may decrease as well.

Administration of antenatal corticosteroids to women at risk for late-preterm delivery (34 to 36 weeks' gestation) reduces the rate of neonatal respiratory complications (Gyamfi-Bannerman, 2016). *Consideration* of a single course of betamethasone for women at risk for late-preterm delivery is supported by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a). Based on data presented in Chapter 45 (p. 802), at Parkland Hospital, this is not currently our practice.

Amniocentesis to Assess Fetal Lung Maturity

Amniocentesis to assess fetal lung maturity was used previously to predict the neonatal risk for RDS. However, this use of amniocentesis to guide delivery decisions in any clinical situation of pregnancy is not currently supported or recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a,b).

NECROTIZING ENTEROCOLITIS

This newborn bowel disorder has clinical findings that include abdominal distention, emesis, ileus, bilious gastric aspirates, and bloody stools. Often, radiological images show *pneumatosis intestinalis*, which is bowel wall gas derived from invading bacteria (Fig. 34-2). Other classic imaging findings include hepatobiliary gas and pneumoperitoneum. Bowel perforation necessitates prompt resection.

Necrotizing enterocolitis (NEC) is seen primarily in low-birthweight newborns but occasionally in mature neonates. Hypothesized causes include perinatal hypotension, hypoxia, sepsis, umbilical catheterization, exchange transfusions, blood transfusions, and the feeding of cow milk and hypertonic solutions (Neu, 2011). The pathophysiology is thought to be multifactorial, and genetic disposition, intestinal immaturity, imbalance in microvascular tone, abnormal microbial colonization in the intestine, exposure to enteral feeds, and highly immunoreactive intestinal mucosa play potential roles (Bazacliu, 2019; Neu, 2011).

Medical treatment includes abdominal decompression, bowel rest, broad-spectrum antibiotics, and parenteral nutrition. Surgery

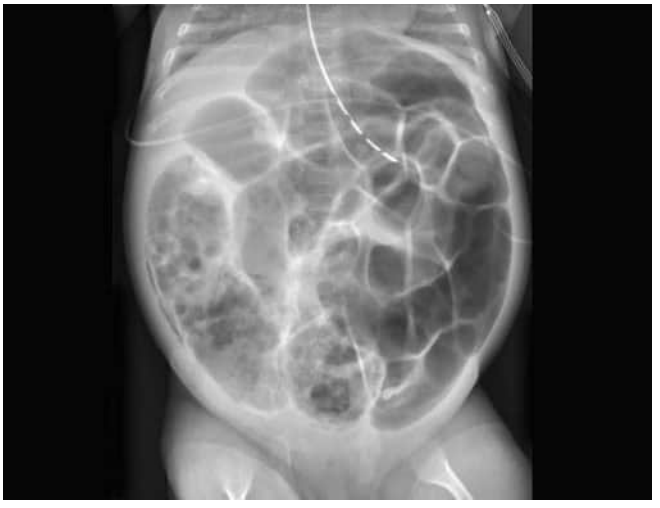


FIGURE 34-2 Abdominal radiograph of a preterm newborn with necrotizing enterocolitis. Note the distended air-filled loops of large and small bowel. Significant pneumatosis intestinalis, which is intramural bowel gas, is visualized within the right lower quadrant and within the pelvis. Not seen here, an associated finding is air in the portal veins of the liver.

is reserved for neonates with intestinal perforation or deteriorating clinical or biochemical status. Possible surgical procedures include drain placement, exploratory laparotomy with resection of diseased bowel, or enterostomy with creation of a stoma (Neu, 2011).

RETINOPATHY OF PREMATURITY

By 1950, this condition, formerly known as *retrolental fibroplasia,* became the largest single cause of blindness in this country. After the discovery that the disease resulted from hyperoxemia, its frequency declined but began to rise again with the increasing survival rates of extremely preterm newborns.

Normally, the fetal retina vascularizes centrifugally from the optic nerve starting at approximately the fourth month, and this continues until shortly after birth. During vascularization, excessive oxygen induces severe retinal vasoconstriction, which leads to endothelial damage and vessel obliteration. This is followed by subsequent aberrant neovascularization, in which the new vessels penetrate the retina and extend into the vitreous. Here, they are prone to leak proteins or to burst and bleed. Adhesions can form to detach the retina. Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) contributes to normal angiogenesis and is upregulated during retinopathy of prematurity (ROP) development (Hellström, 2019). This understanding has opened new avenues of treatment with anti-VEGF therapies.

The precise levels of hyperoxemia that can be sustained without causing ROP are unknown. After birth, there is a "relative" hyperoxia compared with in-utero oxygen content, even in newborns not exposed to higher inspired oxygen concentrations. To better understand the oxygen saturation threshold necessary to minimize ROP without raising rates of other adverse outcomes, the Neonatal Research Network performed a randomized trial of oxygenation in 1316 neonates born between 24 and 27 weeks' gestation (SUPPORT Study Group, 2010a). The two target ranges of oxygen saturation were 85 to 89 percent in one arm and 91 to 95 percent in the other arm. These targets were both commonly employed in neonatal intensive care units. Death before discharge occurred significantly more frequently in the lower-oxygen saturation group—20 versus 16 percent. However, severe ROP among survivors developed significantly less often in the lower-oxygen saturation group—8.6 versus 17.9 percent.

BRAIN DISORDERS

Central nervous system injury usually creates different neuroanatomical sequelae in preterm newborns compared with those at term (Chap. 33, p. 607). In preterm neonates, cerebral lesions detected by neuroimaging include intraventricular hemorrhage, cerebellar hemorrhage, periventricular hemorrhagic infarction, cystic periventricular leukomalacia, and diffuse white matter injury. All of these are strongly associated with adverse neurodevelopmental outcomes (Kwon, 2014).

Cranial sonography remains the preferred approach for detecting frequently occurring brain abnormalities and acute events in the preterm neonate. It is readily available and reliable for detecting common abnormalities and monitoring brain growth. Because cystic injuries may take 2 to 5 weeks to evolve, serial scans are obtained during this time. In those whose findings are transient and resolve in the neonatal period, prognosis is improved compared with infants whose lesions remain and evolve. At the same time, however, between 4 and 10 percent of prematurely born children may develop cerebral palsy (CP) in the absence of lesions. Put another way, 90 to 96 percent of preterm newborns with CP have cerebral lesions that are detectable using cranial sonography.

Intracranial Hemorrhage

There are five major categories of intracranial hemorrhage in the neonate (Table 33-4, p. 607) (Volpe, 2016). *Primary subarachnoid hemorrhage* is more common in those born preterm and is frequently benign. *Cerebellar hemorrhage* is also more frequent in preterm neonates and is increasingly recognized as a cause of serious sequelae. *Intraventricular hemorrhage (IVH)* is almost exclusively seen in preterm newborns, is relatively common, and can have serious effects (Hintz, 2015, 2018). *Subdural hemorrhages* are more frequent in term newborns and can be serious (Chap. 33, p. 608). *Miscellaneous intraparenchymal hemorrhage* is also more frequent in those born at term and is of variable concern.

Intraventricular Hemorrhage

The germinal matrix is a highly cellular and vascular region of the developing brain located beneath the lateral ventricles. In preterm neonates, the germinal matrix capillary network is fragile for several reasons. First, the subependymal germinal matrix provides poor support for the vessels coursing through it. Second, venous anatomy in this region causes stasis and congestion, which makes vessels susceptible to bursting if intravascular pressure rises. Third, vascular autoregulation is impaired in the preterm neonate (Verhagen, 2014; Volpe, 2016).

If fragile capillaries in the germinal matrix rupture, blood escapes into the ventricular system—*intraventricular hemorrhage (IVH)*. This may dilate the ventricle, which then can obstruct venous drainage of the surrounding tissue. As a result, venous infarction and hemorrhage, termed *periventricular hemorrhagic infarction*, may follow.

Risk of severe IVH is inversely related to gestational age (Stoll, 2015). IVH is a serious complication of preterm neonates born before 32 weeks and is particularly frequent in those born before 27 weeks. The germinal matrix involutes between 34 and 36 weeks' gestation. Thus, IVH is infrequent after that period of brain development (Guillot, 2020). Most hemorrhages develop within 72 hours of birth (Hand, 2020). Because IVH usually is recognized within 3 days of delivery, its genesis is sometimes erroneously attributed to birth events. It is important to realize that *prelabor* IVH also can occur (Dunbar, 2021).

The pathogenesis of IVH is multifactorial and includes hypoxic-ischemic events, carbon dioxide elevations, anatomical factors, blood pressure instability, coagulopathy, genetic factors, and many others (Gilard, 2020; Leijser, 2019). Moreover, preterm birth is frequently associated with infection, which further predisposes to endothelial activation, platelet adherence, and thrombi (Villamor-Martinez, 2018). Respiratory distress and mechanical ventilation are commonly associated factors (Leijser, 2019).

Almost half of hemorrhages are clinically silent. Most small germinal matrix hemorrhages and those confined to the cerebral ventricles resolve without impairment. But, nearly half do show some sign of neurological impairment (Leijser, 2019). Survivors of extensive periventricular/intraventricular hemorrhage can have major neurodevelopmental handicaps (Mukerji, 2015). Large lesions can result in hydrocephalus or in degenerated cystic areas termed *periventricular leukomalacia (PVL)*, discussed later. Importantly, the extent of PVL correlates with CP risk (Dorner, 2018).

Incidence and Severity

IVH incidences vary according to gestational age at birth. Severe IVH rates have declined (Handley, 2018; Yeo, 2020). From the Neonatal Research Network, the incidence from 1993 to 2012 for neonates <29 weeks' gestation dropped from 19 to 13 percent (Stoll, 2015). In 2012, the incidence ranged from 11 percent in those born at 23 weeks to only 5 percent for those born at 28 weeks.

The severity of IVH can be assessed by neuroimaging studies. Papile and coworkers (1978) devised the most widely used grading scheme to quantify the lesion extent and estimate prognosis. Since the initial report, the Papile classification has been modified (Hand, 2020):

- *Grade I*—hemorrhage is limited to the germinal matrix
- *Grade II*—IVH occupies 10 to 50 percent of the ventricular area
- *Grade III*—hemorrhage with >50 percent of the ventricular area involved
- *Parenchymal hemorrhage (previously called Grade IV)*—most likely attributable to hemorrhagic venous infarction rather than extension of IVH into the parenchyma.

Antenatal Corticosteroids

If given at least 48 hours before delivery, corticosteroids prevent or reduce the incidence of severe IVH (Battarbee, 2020). A Consensus Development Conference of the NIH (1994) concluded that such therapy reduced rates of mortality, RDS, and IVH in preterm neonates born between 24 and 32 weeks' gestation. A second consensus statement by the NIH (2000) recommended that repeated courses of corticosteroids not be given (Chap. 45, p. 803).

Subsequently, the Maternal–Fetal Medicine Units Network reported that repeated corticosteroid courses were associated with some improved preterm neonatal outcomes, but also with reduced birthweight and increased risk for fetal-growth restriction (Wapner, 2006). Surveillance of this cohort through age 2 to 3 years found that children exposed to repeated versus single-dose corticosteroid courses did not differ significantly in physical or neurocognitive measures (Wapner, 2007). It was worrisome, however, that infants exposed to multiple courses had a nonsignificant 5.7-fold relative risk of CP.

At the same time, the 2-year follow-up of the Australian Collaborative Trial was reported by Crowther and coworkers (2007). In more than 1100 newborns, the incidence of CP was almost identical—4.2 versus 4.8 percent—in those given repeated versus single-course corticosteroids, respectively. More recently, it was reported that for those born before 28 weeks' gestation, if 10 days or more had passed since betamethasone administration, the incidence of severe IVH was higher (Liebowitz, 2016). This is not a consistent finding in all studies (Battarbee, 2020).

The most recent recommendations from the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) are for a single course of corticosteroids for pregnant women between $24^{0/7}$ weeks and $33^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation who are at risk for preterm delivery. They further note that those given their initial course more than 14 days prior and who have imminent risk of preterm delivery may receive a second "rescue" course.

Other Preventive Methods

Although antenatal *magnesium sulfate* for those at risk for preterm delivery does not reduce the incidence of IVH, it does offer protection from neurodevelopmental impairment (Shepherd, 2018). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) recommends its use for this indication, as discussed further in Chapter 45 (p. 803). Antenatal *vitamin K* and *phenobarbital* and postnatal phenobarbital have not consistently reduced the incidence of IVH in studies (Crowther, 2010a,b; Smit, 2013). Although *vitamin E* reduced IVH rates, the associated risk for sepsis was increased (Brion, 2003). Metaanalyses of the many randomized trials of postnatal *indomethacin* and other prostaglandin inhibitors show inconsistent results regarding reductions in IVH rates (Fowlie, 2010; Mitra, 2018). None has shown improvements in neurodevelopmental impairment.

The benefits of cesarean delivery compared with vaginal birth to lower IVH rates remains controversial. One metaanalysis reported that cesarean delivery for very-low-birthweight neonates had no effect on rates of severe IVH but did reduce

overall IVH rates (Barzilay, 2016). The benefits of cesarean delivery to lower IVH rates in breech and growth-restricted fetuses are unclear from current observational data (Baalbaki, 2018). Prospective trials are needed.

Delayed umbilical cord clamping compared to immediate cord clamping has been reported to reduce the risk for any grade of IVH in preterm newborns but has not reduced rates of severe IVH (Rabe, 2019; Seidler, 2021). In preterm neonates, deferred cord clamping may also raise hemoglobin and hematocrit levels and improve survival rates (Seidler, 2021). Cord milking is associated with higher rates of severe IVH in neonates <28 weeks' gestation and should be avoided (Katheria, 2019; Wyckoff, 2020).

Periventricular Leukomalacia

This histological description refers to cystic areas deep in brain white matter that develop after hemorrhagic or ischemic infarction. Tissue ischemia leads to regional necrosis. Because brain tissue does not regenerate and the preterm neonate has minimal gliosis, these irreversibly damaged areas appear as echolucent cysts in neuroimaging studies. Generally, they require at least 2 weeks to form but may develop as late as 4 months after the initial insult. Thus, their presence at birth may help to determine the timing of an inciting event.

CEREBRAL PALSY

This group of conditions is characterized by chronic movement or posture abnormalities that are cerebral in origin, arise early in life, and are nonprogressive (Nelson, 2003). Epilepsy and mental retardation frequently accompany CP. Its cause differs in preterm and term neonates, and the latter is described in Chapter 33 (p. 602).

CP is commonly classified by the type of neurological dysfunction—spastic, dyskinetic, or ataxic—and by the number and distribution of limbs involved—quadriplegia, diplegia, hemiplegia, or monoplegia.

- *Spastic quadriplegia* has a strong association with developmental retardation and epilepsy. Spastic quadriplegia is the most severe form of spastic CP and affects all four limbs, the trunk, and the face.
- *Spastic diplegia* is common in preterm or low-birthweight neonates. In this CP type, muscle stiffness is mainly in the legs, and the arms are less or not involved. Affected persons might have difficulty walking because tight extremity muscles cause their legs to pull together, turn inward, and cross at the knees.
- *Spastic hemiplegia* affects only one side of a person's body, and the arm is affected usually more than the leg.
- *Dyskinetic CP* includes *athetoid, choreoathetoid, and dystonic cerebral* forms. Poor control of hand, arm, feet, and leg movements make sitting and walking difficult. Movements may be slow and writhing or rapid and jerky.
- *Ataxic CP* manifests as problems with balance and coordination.
- *Mixed CP* manifests with symptoms of more than one CP type. The most common type is spastic–dyskinetic CP (National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke, 2020).

Incidence

According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2020a), the prevalence of CP in the United States approximates 3 cases in 1000 children. Hafström and coworkers (2018) reported the 6-year follow-up of all babies born at gestational ages <28 weeks in Sweden from 2004 to 2007. The CP rate overall was 10.5 percent, and no linear association was found between gestational age at birth and CP rates in this cohort.

Risks

Intraventricular Hemorrhage

Various clinical and pathological data link CP with associated severe IVH (grade III or IV) and resulting PVL. Low-grade IVH is generally considered benign, but it is associated with higher rates of CP in school-aged children born extremely preterm (Hollebrandse, 2021). Higher IVH grades are associated with even greater rates.

Ischemia

Preterm newborns are susceptible to brain ischemia and PVL. This is in part due to immature cerebral vasculature and an immature cerebrovascular autoregulation system that is pressure passive. In response to systemic hypotension, preterm infants cannot increase cerebral perfusion to border-zone regions of the brain supplied by the immature penetrating cerebral vasculature (Novak, 2018). This triggers a cascade of events caused by hypoxia–ischemia that results in pyramidal tract damage, which can cause spastic diplegia.

Perinatal Infection/Inflammation

PVL is associated with infection and inflammation. In one study of 753 neonates born between 24 and 32 weeks' gestation, 9 percent developed PVL (Zupan, 1996). Those born before 28 weeks, those who had inflammatory events during the last days to weeks before delivery, and those who had both were at highest risk. In another study, PVL was strongly associated with prolonged membrane rupture, chorioamnionitis, and neonatal hypotension (Perlman, 1996). Bailis and coworkers (2008) reported that chronic—and not acute—placental inflammation was associated with PVL. In another study of 3094 singletons born before 33 weeks' gestation, 15 percent had evidence of clinical chorioamnionitis (Soraisham, 2009). Compared with noninfected infants, cases complicated by infection had significantly higher rates of IVH—22 versus 12 percent.

Fetal infection may be a key element in the pathway between preterm birth and CP (Burd, 2012; Leviton, 2010, Novack, 2018). As discussed in Chapter 45 (p. 789), chorioamnionitis is a major cause of spontaneous preterm delivery. In the pathway proposed in Figure 34-3, antenatal reproductive tract infection evokes the production of cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor (TNF) and interleukins 1, 6, and 8. These in turn stimulate prostaglandin production and preterm labor. Preterm fetal intracranial blood vessels are susceptible to rupture and damage, and the cytokines that stimulate preterm labor also have direct toxic effects on oligodendrocytes and myelin. Vessel rupture, tissue hypoxia, and cytokine-mediated

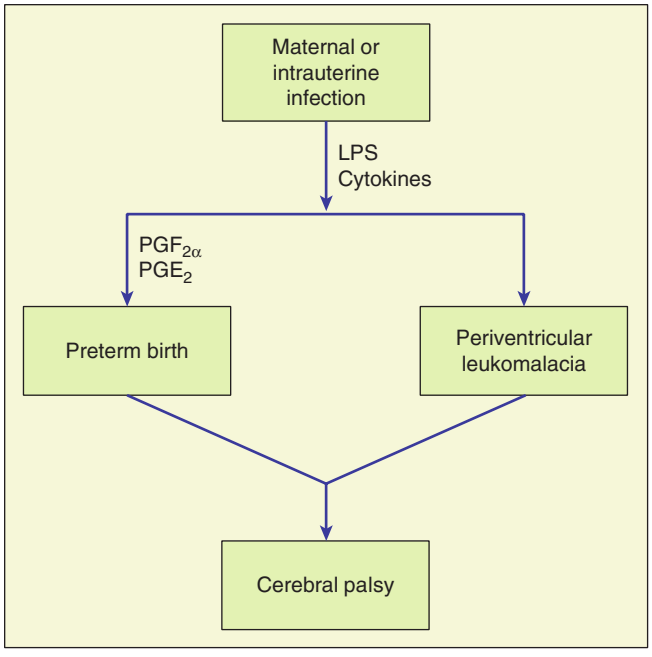


FIGURE 34-3 Schematic representation of the hypothesized pathway between maternal or intrauterine infection and preterm birth or periventricular leukomalacia. Both potentially lead to cerebral palsy. LPS = lipopolysaccharide; PG = prostaglandin.

damage result in massive neuronal cell death. Glutamate is released, which stimulates membrane receptors to allow excess calcium to enter the neurons. High intracellular calcium levels are toxic to white matter, and glutamate may be directly toxic to oligodendrocytes (Khwaja, 2008). Inflammation induced by the activation of microglia and macrophages with the production and release of proinflammatory cytokines, chemokines, proteases, complement factors, excitotoxic amino acids, reactive oxygen species, and nitric oxide further exacerbates secondary brain injury (Novack, 2018).

Many studies show that infection and cytokines can directly damage the immature brain (Chau, 2014; Yoon, 1997a). TNF and interleukin 6 were more frequently found in the brains of infants who died with PVL (Yoon, 1997b). Cytokines are strongly linked to white matter lesions even when organisms cannot be demonstrated (Yoon, 2000).

■ Prevention—Neuroprotection

The benefits of antenatal magnesium sulfate and corticosteroids are well described (Gentle, 2020). Another potential neuroprotective therapy is *erythropoiesis-stimulating agents (ESAs)* such as erythropoietin and darbepoetin. In addition to stimulating erythropoiesis, ESAs protect the developing brain in animal models (Wassink, 2017). One recent metaanalysis found decreased rates of IVH and PVL in preterm neonates treated with ESAs soon after birth. The effects on neurodevelopmental impairment are unclear (Ohlsson, 2020). In one large trial, early high-dose erythropoietin compared with placebo did not lower the risk of severe neurodevelopmental impairment or death at age 2 years (Juul, 2020). A large trial of the longer-acting darbepoetin has completed enrollment and is in the follow-up phase (clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01471015). Last, discussed in Chapter 33 (p. 602) for neonates >36 weeks, induced hypothermia for neuroprotection is not recommended for preterm newborns. This stems from their different pattern of gray and white matter injury and their greater susceptibility to cold stress. The exact gestational age for which therapeutic cooling for hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy (HIE) would provide more benefit than harm is unknown. A trial of cooling for neonates born at $33^{0/7}$ to $35^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation with moderate/severe HIE has completed enrollment and is in the follow-up phase.

REFERENCES

Abdel-Latif ME, Davis PG, Wheeler KI, et al: Surfactant therapy via thin catheter in preterm infants with or at risk of respiratory distress syndrome. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD011672, 2021

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Neonatal complications. In Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Elk Grove Village, AAP, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Antenatal corticosteroid therapy for fetal maturation. Committee Opinion No. 713. August 2017, Reaffirmed 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Magnesium sulfate before anticipated preterm birth for neuroprotection. Committee Opinion No. 455, March 2010, Reaffirmed 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Avoidance of nonmedically indicated early-term deliveries and associated neonatal morbidities. Committee Opinion No. 765, January 2019, Reaffirmed 2021a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Medically indicated late-preterm and early-term deliveries. Committee Opinion No. 831, June 2021b

Ardell S, Pfister RH, Soll R: Animal derived surfactant extract versus protein free synthetic surfactant for the prevention and treatment of respiratory distress syndrome. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD000144, 2015

Baalbaki SH, Kuper SG, Wang MJ, et al: Impact of intended mode of delivery on outcomes in preterm growth-restricted fetuses. Am J Perinatol 35(7):605, 2018

Bailis A, Maleki Z, Askin F, et al: Histopathological placental features associated with development of periventricular leukomalacia in preterm infants. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199(6):S43, 2008

Barzilay E, Gadot Y, Koren G: Safety of vaginal delivery in very low birthweight vertex singletons: a meta-analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(22):3724, 2016

Battarbee AN, Ros ST, Esplin MS, et al: Optimal timing of antenatal corticosteroid administration and preterm neonatal and early childhood outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 2(1):100077, 2020

Bazacliu C, Neu J. Pathophysiology of necrotizing enterocolitis: an update. Curr Pediatr Rev 15(2):68, 2019

Brion LP, Bell EF, Raghuveer TS: Vitamin E supplementation for prevention of morbidity and mortality in preterm infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD003665, 2003

Burd I, Balakrishnan B, Kannan S: Models of fetal brain injury, intrauterine inflammation, and preterm birth. Am J Reprod Immunol 67(4):287, 2012

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Data and statistics for cerebral palsy. 2020. Available at: www.cdc.gov/ncbddd/cp/data.html. Accessed June 30, 2021

Chau V, McFadden DE, Poskitt KJ, et al: Chorioamnionitis in the pathogenesis of brain injury in preterm infants. Clin Perinatol 41(1):83, 2014

Cheong JL, Doyle LW: Long-term effects of postnatal corticosteroids to prevent or treat bronchopulmonary dysplasia: balancing the risks and benefits. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 24(3):197, 2019

Cole FS, Alleyne C, Barks JD et al: NIH Consensus Development Conference statement: inhaled nitric-oxide therapy for premature infants. Pediatrics 127:363, 2011

Cools F, Offringa M, Askie LM: Elective high frequency oscillatory ventilation versus conventional ventilation for acute pulmonary dysfunction in preterm infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD000104, 2015

Crowther CA, Crosby DD, Henderson-Smart DJ: Phenobarbital prior to preterm birth for preventing neonatal periventricular haemorrhage. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD000164, 2010a

Crowther CA, Crosby DD, Henderson-Smart DJ: Vitamin K prior to preterm birth for preventing neonatal periventricular haemorrhage. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD000229, 2010b

Crowther CA, Doyle LW, Haslam RR, et al: Outcomes at 2 years of age after repeat doses of antenatal corticosteroids. N Engl J Med 357:1179, 2007

Cuna A, Liu C, Govindarajan S, et al: Usefulness of an online risk estimator for bronchopulmonary dysplasia in predicting corticosteroid treatment in infants born preterm. J Pediatr 197:23, 2018

Darlow BA, Graham PJ, Rojas-Reyes MX: Vitamin A supplementation to prevent mortality and short- and long-term morbidity in very low birth weight infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD000501, 2016

Dorner RA, Burton VJ, Allen MC, et al: Preterm neuroimaging and neurodevelopmental outcome: a focus on intraventricular hemorrhage, post-hemorrhagic hydrocephalus, and associated brain injury. J Perinatol 38(11):1431, 2018

Dunbar MJ, Woodward K, Leijser LM, et al: Antenatal diagnosis of fetal intraventricular hemorrhage: systematic review and meta-analysis. Dev Med Child Neurol 63(2):144, 2021

Ely DM, Driscoll AK: Infant mortality in the United States, 2018: data from the period linked birth/infant death file. Natl Vital Stat Rep 69(7):1, 2020

Fowlie PW, Davis PG, McGuire W: Prophylactic intravenous indomethacin for preventing mortality and morbidity in preterm infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD000174, 2010

Gentle SJ, Carlo WA, Tan S, et al: Association of antenatal corticosteroids and magnesium sulfate therapy with neurodevelopmental outcome in extremely preterm children. Obstet Gynecol 135(6):1377, 2020

Gilard V, Tebani A, Bekri S, et al: Intraventricular hemorrhage in very preterm infants: a comprehensive review. J Clin Med 9(8):2447, 2020

Greenough A, Decobert F, Field D, et al: Inhaled nitric oxide (iNO) for preventing prematurity-related bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD): 7-year follow-up of the European Union Nitric Oxide (EUNO) trial. J Perinat Med 49(1):104, 2020

Guillot M, Chau V, Lemyre B: Routine imaging of the preterm neonatal brain. Paediatr Child Health 25(4):249, 2020

Gyamfi-Bannerman C, Thom EA, Blackwell SC, et al: Antenatal betamethasone for women at risk for late preterm delivery. N Engl J Med 374(14):1311, 2016

Hafström M, Källén K, Serenius F, et al: cerebral palsy in extremely preterm infants. Pediatrics 141(1):e20171433, 2018

Hamilton BE, Martin JA, Osterman MJ: Births: provisional data for 2020. 2021. Available at: https://stacks.cdc.gov/view/cdc/104993. Accessed June 30, 2021

Hand IL, Shellhaas RA, Milla SS: Routine neuroimaging of the preterm brain. Pediatrics 146(5):e2020029082, 2020

Handley SC, Passarella M, Lee HC, et al: Incidence trends and risk factor variation in severe intraventricular hemorrhage across a population based cohort. J Pediatr 200:24, 2018

Hellström A, Hård AL: Screening and novel therapies for retinopathy of prematurity—a review. Early Hum Dev 138:104846, 2019

Hentschel R, Bohlin K, van Kaam A, et al: Surfactant replacement therapy: from biological basis to current clinical practice. Pediatr Res 88:176, 2020

Hintz SR, Barnes PD, Bulas D, et al: Neuroimaging and neurodevelopmental outcome in extremely preterm infants. Pediatrics 135(1):e32, 2015

Hintz SR, Vohr BR, Bann CM, et al: Preterm neuroimaging and school-age cognitive outcomes. Pediatrics 142(1):e20174058, 2018

Hollebrandse NL, Spittle AJ, Burnett AC, et al: School-age outcomes following intraventricular haemorrhage in infants born extremely preterm. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 106(1):42021, 2021.

Juul SE, Comstock BA, Wadhawan R, et al: A randomized trial of erythropoietin for neuroprotection in preterm infants. N Engl J Med 382(3):233, 2020

Katheria A, Reister F, Essers J, et al: Association of umbilical cord milking vs delayed umbilical cord clamping with death or severe intraventricular hemorrhage among preterm infants. JAMA 322(19):1877, 2019

Khwaja O, Volpe JJ: Pathogenesis of cerebral white matter injury of prematurity. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 93(2):F153, 2008

Kwon SH, Vasung L, Ment LR et al: The role of neuroimaging in predicting neurodevelopmental outcomes of preterm neonates. Clin Perinatol 41(1):257, 2014

Leijser LM, de Vries LS: Preterm brain injury: germinal matrix-intraventricular hemorrhage and post-hemorrhagic ventricular dilatation. Handb Clin Neurol 162:173, 2019

Leviton A, Allred EN, Kuban KC, et al: Microbiologic and histologic characteristics of the extremely preterm infant's placenta predict white matter damage and later cerebral palsy. The ELGAN study. Pediatr Res 67:95, 2010

Liebowitz M, Clyman R: Antenatal betamethasone: a prolonged time interval from administration to delivery is associated with an increased incidence of intraventricular hemorrhage before 28 weeks gestation. J Pediatr 177:114, 2016

McCurnin DC, Pierce RA, Chang LY, et al: Inhaled NO improves early pulmonary function and modifies lung growth and elastin deposition in a baboon model of neonatal chronic lung disease. Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol 288:L540, 2005

Mitra S, Florez ID, Tamayo ME, et al: Association of placebo, indomethacin, ibuprofen, and acetaminophen with closure of hemodynamically significant patent ductus arteriosus in preterm infants: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA 319(12):1221, 2018

Morley CJ, Davis PG, Doyle LW et al: Nasal CPAP or intubation at birth for very preterm infants. N Engl J Med 358:700, 2008

Mukerji A, Shah V, Shah PS: Periventricular/intraventricular hemorrhage and neurodevelopmental outcomes: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 136(6):1132, 2015

National Institutes of Health: Antenatal corticosteroids revisited: repeat courses. NIH Consensus Statement 17(2):1, 2000

National Institutes of Health: The effects of corticosteroids for fetal maturation on perinatal outcomes. NIH Consensus Statement 12(2):1, 1994

National Institute of Neurological Disorders and Stroke: Cerebral palsy: hope through research. 2020. Available at: www.ninds.nih.gov/Disorders/Patient-Caregiver-Education/Hope-Through-Research/Cerebral-Palsy-Hope-Through-Research. Accessed June 30, 2021

Nelson KB: Can we prevent cerebral palsy? N Engl J Med 349:1765, 2003

Neu J, Walker WA: Necrotizing enterocolitis. N Engl J Med 364:255, 2011

Novak CM, Ozen M, Burd I: Perinatal brain injury: mechanisms, prevention, and outcomes. Clin Perinatol 45(2):357, 2018

Ohlsson A, Aher SM: Early erythropoiesis-stimulating agents in preterm or low birth weight infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD004863, 2020

Papile LA, Burstein J, Burstein R, et al: Incidence and evolution of subependymal and intraventricular hemorrhage: a study of infants with birth weights less than 1500 gm. J Pediatr 92:529, 1978

Perlman JM, Risser R, Broyles RS: Bilateral cystic leukomalacia in the premature infant: associated risk factors. Pediatrics 97:822, 1996

Rabe H, Gyte GM, Díaz-Rossello JL, et al: Effect of timing of umbilical cord clamping and other strategies to influence placental transfusion at preterm birth on maternal and infant outcomes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 9:CD003248, 2019

Rojas-Reyes MX, Morley CJ, Soll R: Prophylactic versus selective use of surfactant in preventing morbidity and mortality in preterm infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD000510, 2012

Rojas-Reyes MX, Orrego-Rojas PA. Rescue high-frequency jet ventilation versus conventional ventilation for severe pulmonary dysfunction in preterm infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD000437, 2015

Sardesai S, Biniwale M, Wertheimer F, et al: Evolution of surfactant therapy for respiratory distress syndrome: past, present, and future. Pediatr Res 81(1–2):240, 2017

Schmidt B, Anderson PJ, Doyle LW, et al: Survival without disability to age 5 years after neonatal caffeine therapy for apnea of prematurity. JAMA 307(3):275, 2012

Schmidt B, Roberts RS, Anderson PJ, et al: Academic performance, motor function, and behavior 11 years after neonatal caffeine citrate therapy for apnea of prematurity: an 11-year follow-up of the CAP Randomized Clinical Trial. JAMA Pediatr 171(6):564, 2017

Schmidt B, Roberts RS, Davis P, et al: Caffeine therapy for apnea of prematurity. N Engl J Med 354(20):2112, 2006

Schmidt S, Norman M, Misselwitz B, et al: Mode of delivery and mortality and morbidity for very preterm singleton infants in a breech position: a European cohort study. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 234:96, 2019

Seidler AL, Gyte GML, Rabe H, et al: Umbilical cord management for newborns < 34 weeks' gestation: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 147(3):e20200576, 2021

Shepherd E, Salam RA, Middleton P, et al: Neonatal interventions for preventing cerebral palsy: an overview of Cochrane Systematic Reviews. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD012409, 2018

Singh J, Jaffe A, Schultz A, et al: Surfactant protein disorders in childhood interstitial lung disease. Eur J Pediatr 180(9):2711, 2021

Smit E, Odd D, Whitelaw A: Postnatal phenobarbital for the prevention of intraventricular haemorrhage in preterm infants. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD001691, 2013

Soraisham AS, Singhal N, McMillan DD, et al: A multicenter study on the clinical outcome of chorioamnionitis in preterm infants. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200:372.e1, 2009

Stoll BJ, Hansen NI, Bell EF, et al: Trends in care practices, morbidity, and mortality of extremely preterm neonates, 1993–2012. JAMA 314(10):1039, 2015

SUPPORT Study Group of the Eunice Kennedy Shriver NICHD Neonatal Research Network, Carlo WA, Finer NN, et al: Target ranges of oxygen saturation in extremely preterm infants. N Engl J Med 362(21):1959, 2010a

SUPPORT Study Group of the Eunice Kennedy Shriver NICHD Neonatal Research Network, Finer NN, Carlo WA, et al: Early CPAP versus surfactant in extremely preterm infants. N Engl J Med 362(21):1970, 2010b

Thébaud B, Goss KN, Laughon M, et al: Bronchopulmonary dysplasia. Nat Rev Dis Primers 5(1):78, 2019

Travers CP, Carlo WA, McDonald SA, et al: Mortality and pulmonary outcomes of extremely preterm infants exposed to antenatal corticosteroids. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(1):130.e1, 2018

Verhagen EA, Hummel LA, Bos AF, et al: Near-infrared spectroscopy to detect absence of cerebrovascular autoregulation in preterm infants. Clin Neurophysiol 125(1):47, 2014

Villamor-Martinez E, Fumagalli M, Mohammed Rahim O, et al: Chorioamnionitis is a risk factor for intraventricular hemorrhage in preterm infants: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Front Physiol 9:1253, 2018

Volpe JJ: Neurology of the Newborn, 6th ed. Philadelphia, Elsevier, 2016

Wapner RJ, Sorokin Y, Mele L, et al: Long-term outcomes after repeated doses of antenatal corticosteroids. N Engl J Med 357:1190, 2007

Wapner RJ, Sorokin Y, Thom EA, et al: Single versus weekly courses of antenatal corticosteroids: evaluation of safety and efficacy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:633, 2006

Wassink G, Davidson JO, Dhillon SK, et al: Partial white and grey matter protection with prolonged infusion of recombinant human erythropoietin after asphyxia in preterm fetal sheep. J Cereb Blood Flow Metab 37(3):1080, 2017

Watkins PL, Dagle JM, Bell EF, et al: outcomes at 18 to 22 months of corrected age for infants born at 22 to 25 weeks of gestation in a center practicing active management. J Pediatr 217:52, 2020

Watterberg KL, American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Fetus and Newborn: Policy statement—postnatal corticosteroids to prevent or treat bronchopulmonary dysplasia. Pediatrics 126(4):800, 2010

Wyckoff MH, Wyllie J, Aziz K, et al: Neonatal life support: 2020 International Consensus on Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care Science with Treatment Recommendations. Circulation 142:S185, 2020

Yeo KT, Thomas R, Chow SS, et al: Australian and New Zealand Neonatal Network. Improving incidence trends of severe intraventricular haemorrhages in preterm infants <32 weeks gestation: a cohort study. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 105(2):145, 2020

Yoon BH, Kim CJ, Romero R, et al: Experimentally induced intrauterine infection causes fetal brain white matter lesions in rabbits. Am J Obstet Gynecol 177:797, 1997a

Yoon BH, Romero R, Kim CJ, et al: High expression of tumor necrosis factor-alpha and interleukin-6 in periventricular leukomalacia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 177:406, 1997b

Yoon BH, Romero R, Park JS, et al: Fetal exposure to an intra-amniotic inflammation and the development of cerebral palsy at the age of three years. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:675, 2000

Zupan V, Gonzalez P, Lacaze-Masmonteil T, et al: Periventricular leukomalacia: risk factors revisited. Dev Med Child Neurol 38:1061, 1996

CHAPTER 35

Stillbirth

Perinatal mortality combines fetal and neonatal deaths and is one measure of healthcare quality before, during, and after delivery. Fetal mortality data from the National Vital Statistics system are usually presented for fetal deaths after the 20-week threshold. Using this threshold, the numbers of fetal deaths in the United States in 2013 slightly surpassed numbers of neonatal deaths when considering fetal deaths beyond 20 weeks (Fig. 35-1) (MacDorman, 2015a).

DEFINITIONS

As discussed in Chapter 1 (p. 3), the current definition of fetal death adopted in the United States by the National Center for Health Statistics is based on one recommended by the World Health Organization (MacDorman, 2015a). It states that "*Fetal death means death prior to complete expulsion or extraction from the mother of a product of human conception irrespective of the duration of pregnancy and which is not an induced termination of pregnancy. The death is indicated by the fact that after such expulsion or extraction, the fetus does not breathe or show any other evidence of life such as beating of the heart, pulsation of the umbilical cord, or definite movement of voluntary muscles. Heartbeats are to be distinguished from transient cardiac contractions; respirations are to be distinguished from fleeting respiratory efforts or gasps.*"

Reporting requirements for fetal deaths in the United States are determined by each state, and thus criteria differ. Most states mandate reporting of deaths of fetuses that are 20 weeks' gestation or older or have a minimum birthweight of 350 g, which roughly equates to that at 20 weeks—or a combination of both. However, evidence shows that not all required fetal deaths are reported, especially at earlier gestational ages (MacDorman, 2015a).

Similarly, comparisons of rates among countries are limited by incomplete fetal death data. Internationally, less than 5 percent of neonatal deaths have formalized documentation (Lawn, 2016). Further, comparative analyses using birthweight versus gestational age among countries yield discordant results. In the

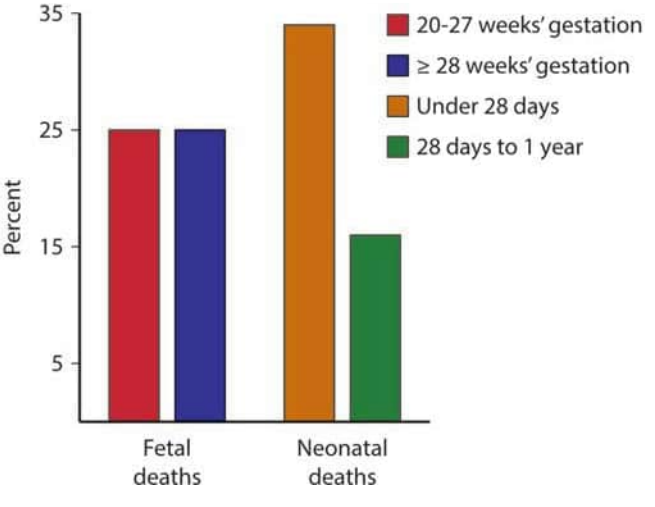


FIGURE 35-1 Distribution of fetal and neonatal deaths in the United States, 2013. (Data from MacDorman, 2015a.)

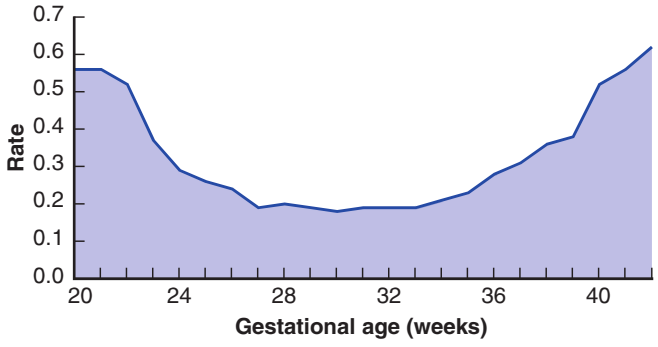


FIGURE 35-2 National Vital Statistics Report: fetal mortality rate per 1000 births by weeks' gestation. (Data from MacDorman, 2015a.)

United States, if stillbirth were defined by a birthweight ≥500 g, the stillbirth rate would be reduced by 40 percent compared with a 20-week-age defined cohort (Blencowe, 2016).

Three fetal mortality epochs are generally recognized. *Early* describes deaths before 20 completed weeks' gestation; *intermediate* for those between 20 and 27 weeks; and *late* for those ≥28 weeks. The fetal mortality rate in each epoch has changed little since 2006. As shown in Figure 35-2, fetal death rates are highest at the earliest and latest gestational ages, which suggests etiological differences.

ETIOLOGIES

To ascertain stillbirth causes in racially and geographically diverse populations in the United States, the *Eunice Kennedy Shriver* National Institute of Child Health and Human Development (NICHD) organized the Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network Writing Group (2011b). The group examined reasons for death at 20 weeks' gestation or later between 2006 and 2008 in 59 tertiary care and community hospitals in five states. Standardized evaluations included autopsy, placental histology, and testing of maternal or fetal blood/tissues, including fetal karyotyping. Evaluations were performed in 500 women with 512 stillbirths. Of these losses, 83 percent were before labor. Causes were divided into eight categories (Table 35-1). These categories were then classified as probable, possible, or unknown causes. As an example, diabetes was considered a *probable cause* if the fetus had diabetic embryopathy with lethal anomalies or if the mother had diabetic ketoacidosis. It was a *possible cause* if the mother had poor glycemic control and the fetus had abnormal growth. A probable or possible source was identified in 76 percent of cases. This proportion is similar to that from Australia using a comparable national audit tool (Lehner, 2019).

This Network study is unprecedented in the United States for several reasons. It was a population-based cohort of stillbirths, in which all underwent systematic and thorough evaluation. Each assigned cause of fetal death is reasonably straightforward and comprehensible except for "placental abnormalities." This category contains uteroplacental insufficiency and a few other less clearly defined placental entities. This aside, the leading reasons for fetal death were obstetrical and primarily included abruption, multifetal gestation complications, and spontaneous labor or ruptured membranes before viability. Structural anomaly was another (Son, 2021a). This study also illustrated that systematic evaluation may identify a likely cause in approximately three fourths of stillbirths. This high rate emphasizes the importance of standardized evaluation. However, a Cochrane database study concluded that evidence specifically from randomized trials to support specific tests for stillbirth evaluation was lacking (Wojcieszek, 2018b).

RISK FACTORS

Many factors are associated with an increased stillbirth risk (Table 35-2). Major associations include sociodemographic factors such as non-Hispanic black women, who have higher incidences of hypertension, diabetes, placental abruption, and preterm premature rupture of membranes (Healy, 2006). Other common associations are maternal age at either end of the spectrum, obesity, preeclampsia, diabetes, substance use, and late-term pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; Page, 2018). Multifetal pregnancies, especially monochorionic gestations, are high risk (Korlesky, 2019). Women with prior adverse pregnancy outcomes—such as stillbirth, preterm birth, or growth restriction—also carry an increased risk (Reddy, 2010; Varner, 2014). Pregnancies complicated by current fetal-growth restriction are particularly vulnerable because of their associations with hypertension, diabetes,

TABLE 35-1. Causes of 512 Stillbirths in the Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network Study

Cause	Percent	Examples
Obstetrical complications	29	Placental abruption, multifetal gestation, ruptured membranes at 20–24 weeks
Placental abnormalities	24	Uteroplacental insufficiency, maternal vascular disorders
Fetal malformations	14	Major structural abnormalities and/or genetic abnormalities
Infection	13	Involving the fetus or placenta
Umbilical cord abnormalities	10	Prolapse, stricture, thrombosis
Hypertensive disorders	9	Preeclampsia, chronic hypertension
Medical complications	8	Diabetes, antiphospholipid antibody syndrome
Undetermined	24	Not applicable

Percentages are rounded and total more than 100 percent because some stillbirths had more than one cause.
Overall, a probable or possible cause was identified in 76 percent of stillbirths.

TABLE 35-2. Maternal Risk Factors and Estimated Stillbirth Rate

Condition	Estimated Rate (per 1000 births)
All pregnancies	6.4
Low-risk pregnancies	4.0–5.5
Hypertensive disorders	
Chronic hypertension	6–25
Preeclampsia	
Nonsevere	9–51
Severe	12–29
Diabetes: insulin requiring	6–35
SLE	40–150
Renal disease	15–200
Thyroid disease	12–20
Cholestasis of pregnancy	12–30
Smoking >10 cigarettes	10–15
Obesity	
BMI 25–29.9 kg/m^2	12–15
BMI >30	13–18
Education (<12 yr vs ≥12 yr)	10–13
Fetal-growth restriction	10–47
Prior fetal-growth restriction	12–30
Late-term pregnancy	14–40
Oligohydramnios	14
Antiphospholipid syndrome	NS
Prior stillbirth	9–20
Multifetal gestation	
Twins	12
Triplets	34
Maternal age	
35–39 yr	11–14
≥49 yr	11–21
Black women (versus white)	12–14

BMI = body mass index; NS = not stated; SLE = systemic lupus erythematosus.
Adapted from American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; Fretts, 2005; Malacova, 2018; Muglu, 2019; Rosenstein, 2014.

fetal infection, autoimmune disorders, and chronic renal disease (Brackett, 2020; Silver, 2018). Recently, the SARS-CoV-2 pandemic has posed both direct and indirect risks for adverse perinatal outcomes. Data are mixed as to whether rates of stillbirth have been higher during the pandemic (Khalil, 2020; Srivastava, 2021; Simon, 2021; Son, 2021b). Some suggest greater risks in low-source countries (Leisher, 2021). Although with recognized limitations, these findings merit further investigation regarding perinatal care during this pandemic (Hu, 2021; Rasmussen, 2020). In 245 gravidas with SARS-CoV-2 infection at Parkland Hospital, the stillbirth rate was not increased compared with that in gravidas with negative test results during the same period.

To help lower stillbirth rates, two major studies assessed whether risk factors could be identified either before or shortly after pregnancy confirmation. In the first, Reddy and colleagues (2010) analyzed data from the NICHD Consortium on Safe Labor. Briefly, the pregnancy outcomes of 206,969 women delivered between 2002 and 2008 at 19 hospitals in the United States were analyzed. When stillbirths were apportioned according to gestational age, most occurred primarily at term. These investigators concluded that their results did not support routine antenatal surveillance for any demographic risk factors.

The second analysis of risk factors was included in the Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network study described earlier (2011a). The validity of stillbirth prediction was assessed based on risks identified in early pregnancy. They found that pregnancy factors known at the start of pregnancy accounted for only a small proportion of stillbirth risk. Indeed, except for prior stillbirth or pregnancy loss from causes such as preterm birth or fetal-growth restriction, other risks had limited predictive value. Prior stillbirth as a risk for recurrence has been emphasized by others (Lamont, 2015; Sharma, 2006). Specifically, the stillbirth risk was fivefold higher in women with a prior stillbirth. From another report, prior preterm birth, fetal-growth restriction, preeclampsia, and placental abruption were strongly associated with subsequent stillbirth (Rasmussen, 2009).

EVALUATION OF THE STILLBORN FETUS

Clinical Examination

Determining the cause of fetal death aids maternal coping, helps assuage perceived guilt, permits more accurate counseling regarding recurrence risk, and may prompt intervention to prevent a recurrent outcome. Identification of inherited syndromes also assists other family members. Important tests include autopsy, chromosomal analysis, and pathological examination of the placenta, cord, and chorioamnionic membranes (Pinar, 2014). Page and coworkers (2017) found placental pathology and fetal autopsy to be the most useful.

Clinically, the fetal weight, head circumference, and length and the placental weight are measured (Fig. 35-3). Photographs are taken of the extremities and palms. Frontal plus profile views of the whole fetus and face also are obtained. A full radiograph of the fetus—a *fetogram*—may be performed (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020). Postnatal magnetic resonance (MR) imaging, radiographs, or sonography may be especially important if parents decline a full autopsy (McPherson, 2017; Shruthi, 2018). Findings are documented in the medical record, and relevant ante- and intrapartum events are delineated.

The reported incidence of fetal anomalies varies. For example, Faye-Petersen and colleagues (1999) reported that if autopsy and chromosomal studies are performed, up to 35 percent of stillborn fetuses were discovered to have major structural anomalies. Approximately 20 percent had dysmorphic features or skeletal anomalies, and 8 percent had chromosomal abnormalities (Pauli, 1994; Saller, 1995). As shown in Table 35-1, however, the incidence of structural anomalies in the Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network (2011b) was only 14 percent.

Laboratory Evaluation

In the absence of anatomical dysmorphology, up to 5 percent of stillborn fetuses will have a chromosomal abnormality (Korteweg, 2008). Previously, karyotyping all stillborn fetuses

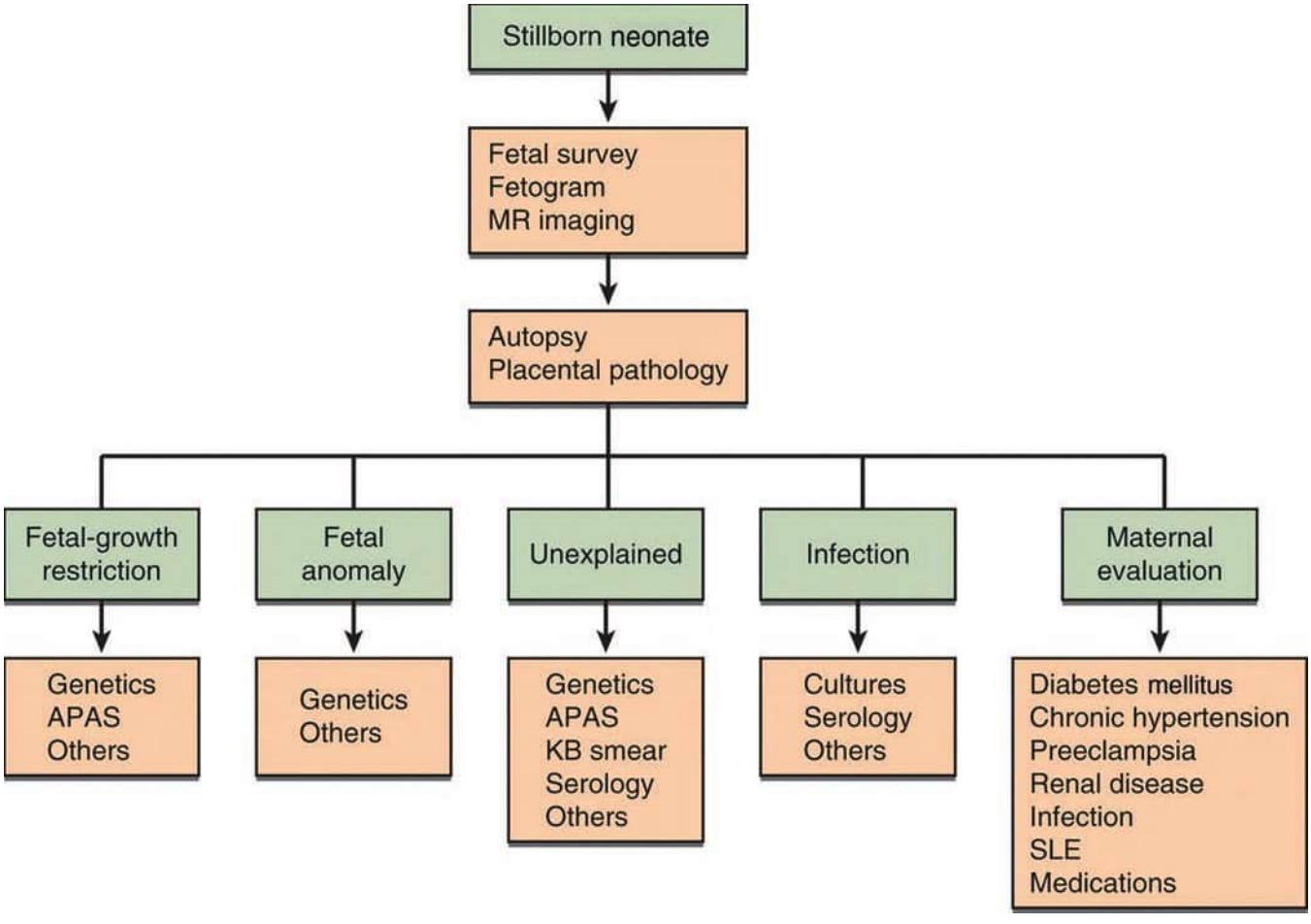


FIGURE 35-3 Flow chart for stillbirth evaluation. APAS = antiphospholipid antibody syndrome; KB = Kleihauer-Betke; MR = magnetic resonance; SLE = systemic lupus erythematosus. (From American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; Page, 2017, 2018.)

was standard practice, but whole-genome sequencing—such as with *chromosomal microarray analysis (CMA)*—is now recommended for stillborns (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; Holmes, 2018; Martinez-Portilla, 2019). Described further in Chapter 16 (p. 325), this technique does not require dividing cells. This is especially helpful because culturing of macerated fetal tissue is frequently unsuccessful (Reddy, 2012).

Looking to the future, Stanley and associates (2020) evaluated exome sequencing in 246 unexplained stillbirths to search for disease-causing variants in the coding region of the genome. These investigators found that 8.5 percent of stillbirths with a normal chromosomal microarray and without probable maternal or obstetrical causes were probably attributable to mendelian disorders. These findings suggest that a portion of stillbirth cases is caused by pathological variants in genes known to underlie disorders in infants and adults. In addition, a similar number of cases are caused by loss-of-function variants in genes that are critical to in-utero survival but not currently known to be associated with stillbirth. Thus, the full phenotypic spectrum of many known mendelian disorders is not fully understood without the inclusion of cases resulting in stillbirth (Wojcik, 2020).

To take fetal samples, a provider must obtain appropriate parental consent. Any type of fetal or placental tissue or amnionic fluid can be submitted for genetic testing using CMA (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018). Contamination with maternal tissue or blood is ideally avoided. Specimens are collected by sterile technique and kept at room temperature. If fetal blood cannot be withdrawn from the umbilical cord or heart, at least one of the following can be sent for testing: (1) placental block measuring 1 × 1 cm taken below the cord insertion site in a specimen not fixed in formalin; (2) 1.5-cm-long umbilical cord segment; or (3) internal fetal tissue sample from the costochondral junction, fascia lata, or patella. Tissue is washed with sterile saline and suspended in Ringer solution, or sterile cytogenetic medium. Formalin or alcohol kills viable cells.

If conventional karyotyping is the only test available and the death is recent, amnionic fluid can be obtained by amniocentesis. This is particularly valuable if delivery is not expected imminently. As such, these cells provide a greater likelihood of cell growth and eventual results compared with tissue harvested after delivery.

Maternal blood is obtained for Kleihauer-Betke staining; for antiphospholipid antibody and lupus anticoagulant testing if indicated; and for serum glucose measurement to exclude overt diabetes (Silver, 2013). Testing for syphilis is reasonable if no prior screen has been performed, if the patient has exposure risk factors, or if patient, fetus, or placenta show suggestive findings, described in Chapter 68 (p. 1208) (Page, 2017).

Although some have recommended routine evaluation of heritable thrombophilias, no evidence supports the clinical

efficiency of screening in an unselected population. Silver and colleagues (2016) found that most maternal and fetal thrombophilias were not associated with stillbirth and recommended against routine testing. This is echoed by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020).

Placental Examination

Gross and microscopical examination of the placenta, membranes, and cord by a perinatal pathologist is ideal. Numerous maternal and fetal disorders can be identified. Cord knotting and placental microvascular abnormalities are examples and discussed in Chapter 6 (p. 107). Implicated infections are described in Chapters 67 and 68.

Autopsy

Parents are encouraged to allow a full autopsy, which is more likely to yield valuable data. Pinar and coworkers (2012) provide the autopsy protocol used by the Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network. An analysis of 400 consecutive fetal deaths in Wales showed that autopsy altered the presumed cause of death in 13 percent and provided new data in another 26 percent (Cartlidge, 1995). Other investigators have found that autopsy results changed the recurrence risk estimates and parental counseling in 25 to 50 percent of cases (Faye-Petersen, 1999; Silver, 2007). Miller and associates (2016) reported that placental examination with autopsy altered future medical management in 45 percent of cases. Limited autopsy protocols can also yield valuable information. Of components, external examination combined with photography, radiography, MR imaging, bacterial cultures, and selective use of chromosomal and histopathological studies often aids determination.

According to one survey, most hospitals do not audit stillbirths (Goldenberg, 2013). In other centers, including ours, maternal records and autopsy findings are reviewed monthly by a stillbirth committee composed of obstetricians, maternal-fetal medicine specialists, neonatologists, geneticists, and perinatal pathologists. If possible, the cause of death is assigned from available evidence. Most importantly, parents are then contacted and offered counseling regarding the cause of death, the potential recurrence risk, and possible strategies to avoid recurrence (Page, 2020).

PERINATAL CARE

Fetal death is psychologically traumatic for a woman and her family. Further stressors include an interval of more than 24 hours between the diagnosis of fetal death and labor induction; not seeing her neonate for as long as she desires; having no tokens of remembrance; and poor communication with caregivers (Heazell, 2016; Siassakos, 2018). Seeing and holding a stillborn neonate assists parental psychological well-being (Kingdon, 2015). Unfortunately, few obstetrical providers receive formal training in perinatal bereavement care (Nuzum, 2014). At Parkland Hospital, care is coordinated through a dedicated nursing team affiliated with labor and delivery. Intervention includes time with the neonate, keepsake items, photographs, chaplaincy consultation, and bereavement support information. These principles dovetail with the recent global consensus recommendations for bereavement care (Shakespeare, 2020). A woman experiencing a stillbirth or early miscarriage is at increased risk for depression and posttraumatic stress disorder and should be closely monitored (Nelson, 2013) (Chap. 64, p. 1145).

Distinct from stillbirth, fetuses with life-limiting conditions and short survival also merit special consideration. Conceptually, *perinatal palliative care* provides obstetrical and neonatal care to maximize the comfort and quality of life for these newborns (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019). Components of this care include review of the diagnosis, creation of a birth plan, bereavement counseling, and consultation with neonatal services. This care is typically provided by a team that is able to offer medical, psychological, and spiritual support. During planning, parents' values, goals, and fears are a focus.

PRIOR STILLBIRTH

The woman with a prior stillbirth has a substantial risk for a recurrence (see Table 35-2). Preterm or growth-restricted stillborn fetuses magnify this risk (Malacova, 2018). In one cohort of 43 women with a recurrent stillbirth, most fetuses died before 28 weeks' gestation (Fig. 35-4) (Whitham, 2020).

An outlined approach for women with a prior stillbirth is shown in Table 35-3. Importantly, these recommendations are based primarily on limited or inconsistent scientific evidence or on expert opinions. Few studies address management of affected women (Wojcieszek, 2018a).

Very few risk factors for stillbirth are modifiable (Whitham, 2020). Intuitively some such as hypertension or diabetes warrant disease-specific prevention strategies. Women with a prior fetal death due to placental insufficiency also are at increased risk for subsequent adverse perinatal outcomes (Monari, 2016). According to Reddy (2007), almost half of fetal deaths are associated with growth restriction, and thus sonographic anatomical assessment beginning at midpregnancy is recommended. This is followed by serial growth studies beginning at 28 weeks. Detection of growth restriction may lead to

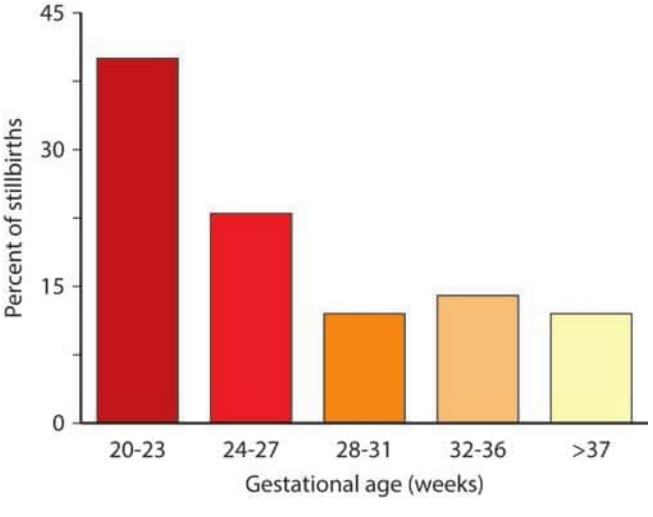


FIGURE 35-4 Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network: gestational age distribution of recurrent stillbirths.

TABLE 35-3. Management of Subsequent Pregnancy after Stillbirth

Preconceptional or Initial Prenatal Visit
Detailed medical and obstetrical history
Review evaluation of prior stillbirth
Determination of recurrence risk
Discuss recurrence of comorbid obstetrical complications
Smoking cessation
Preconceptional weight loss in obese women
Genetic counseling if familial genetic condition exists
Diabetes screen
Screen for antiphospholipid antibodies
Reassurance

First Trimester
Dating sonography
First-trimester screen: PAPP-A, hCG, cfDNA, NT
Reassurance

Second Trimester
Sonographic anatomy survey at 18–20 weeks' gestation
Maternal serum screening (quadruple) *or* single-marker AFP if first-trimester screening elected
Possible uterine artery Doppler studies at 22–24 weeks
Reassurance

Third Trimester
Sonographic screening for fetal-growth restriction, starting at 28 weeks
Kick counts starting at 28 weeks
Antepartum fetal surveillance starting at 32 weeks *or* 1–2 weeks earlier than prior stillbirth
Reassurance

Delivery
Labor induction at 39 weeks
Delivery before 39 weeks for obstetrical indications

AFP = alpha-fetoprotein; cfDNA = cell-free DNA; hCG = human chorionic gonadotropin; NT = nuchal translucency; PAPP–A = pregnancy-associated plasma protein-A.
Adapted from American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; Reddy, 2007.

iatrogenic prematurity and its associated long-term childhood consequences but to fewer intrauterine deaths (Andreasen, 2021).

Weeks and associates (1995) evaluated fetal biophysical testing in 300 women whose only indication was prior stillbirth. There was one subsequent stillbirth, and only three fetuses had abnormal testing results before 32 weeks. Notably, the gestational age of the prior stillborn fetus did not relate to the incidence or timing of abnormal test results or fetal jeopardy in the subsequent pregnancy. These investigators concluded that antepartum surveillance should begin at 32 weeks' gestation or later in the otherwise healthy woman with a history of stillbirth. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020) support this, with the caveat that it increases the iatrogenic preterm delivery rate. Although fetal movement counting strategies are routinely employed and described in Chapter 20 (p. 384), few data guide its use in clinical practice for those with a prior stillbirth (Mangesi, 2015). Unless other indications intervene, delivery at 39 weeks' gestation is recommended. This timing minimizes fetal mortality rates, although the degree of risk reduction may be greater for older women (Page, 2013). Labor induction is suitable, and cesarean delivery is reserved for those with a contraindication to induction.

CHANGES IN STILLBIRTH RATES

As noted, following declines through 2011, the United States fetal mortality rate has changed little (Middleton, 2018). Interpretation of these rates in the context of changing healthcare strategies has spawned debate. One example is the trend against nonmedically indicated deliveries before 39 weeks' gestation and its subsequent effect on term stillbirth rates (Middleton, 2018). This practice's value for neonatal outcome is described in Chapter 26 (p. 486). To analyze whether implementation of this 39-week rule has altered the term stillbirth rate, data from 45 states and the District of Columbia were examined (Nicholson, 2016). The proportion of births before 39 weeks progressively declined from 2007 and 2013, but the term stillbirth rate increased. This suggests that the 39-week rule may cause unintended harm. One review of studies with 15 million pregnancies showed that the prospective risk of stillbirth rose from 0.11 per 1000 births at 37 weeks to 3.18 per 1000 births at 42 weeks (Muglu, 2019).

MacDorman and associates (2015b) also evaluated trends in stillbirth rates by gestational ages in the United States between 2006 and 2012. They used a "traditional stillbirth rate," which was calculated using a denominator composed of the live-birth number *plus* the stillbirth number at a given gestational age. They found increased rates at 24 to 27, 34 to 36, and 38 weeks' gestation. Alternatively, no differences were found in "prospective stillbirth rates." These rates were calculated using a denominator composed of the number of women who are pregnant at a given gestational age for weeks 21 through 42. The discrepancies in stillbirth rates appear to primarily derive from the decline in the birth numbers in the preterm and early-term gestational ages.

In sum, implementation of the 39-week rule has reduced the number of elective births before 39 weeks' gestation, although an unintended consequence may be an increase in term stillbirths—especially among women with medical complications. The importance of induction before 39 weeks in pregnant women with complications to prevent stillbirth is underscored by Little and colleagues (2015). These authors performed a retrospective multistate analysis of early-term deliveries—$37^{0/7}$ to $38^{6/7}$ weeks—from 2005 to 2011. They noted a decline in the number of early-term deliveries during this time but not a significant change in the term stillbirth rates. There was, however, a 25-percent rise in the rate of term, singleton stillbirths among women with diabetes, and this was attributed to clinicians misapplying early-term delivery policies to high-risk women. Undoubtedly, continued surveillance of stillbirth rates is warranted for both high- and low-risk pregnancies at the state and national level.

REFERENCES

Adhikari EH, Moreno W, Zofkie AC, et al: Pregnancy outcomes among women with and without severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 infection. JAMA Netw Open 3(11): e2029256, 2020

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prenatal diagnostic testing for genetic disorders. Practice Bulletin No. 162, May 2016, Reaffirmed 2018

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Perinatal palliative care. Committee Opinion No. 786, August 2019

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Management of stillbirth. Obstetric Care Consensus No. 10, February 2020

Andreasen LA, Tabor A, Nøgaard LN, et al: Detection of growth-restricted fetuses during pregnancy is associated with fewer intrauterine deaths but increased adverse childhood outcomes: an observational study. BJOG 128(1):77, 2021

Blencowe H, Cousens S, Bianchi JF, et al: National, regional, and worldwide estimates of stillbirth rates in 2015, with trends from 2000: a systematic analysis. Lancet Glob Health 4(2):e98, 2016

Brackett EE, Hall ES, DeFranco EA, et al: Factors associated with occurrence of stillbirth before 32 weeks of gestation in a contemporary cohort. Am J Perinatol July 31, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]

Cartlidge PH, Stewart JH: Effect of changing the stillbirth definition on evaluation of perinatal mortality rates. Lancet 346:486, 1995

Faye-Petersen OM, Guinn DA, Wenstrom KD: Value of perinatal autopsy. Obstet Gynecol 94(6):915, 1999

Fretts RC: Etiology and prevention of stillbirth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193(6):1923, 2005

Goldenberg RL, Farrow V, McClure EM, et al: Stillbirth: knowledge and practice among U.S. obstetrician-gynecologists. Am J Perinatol 30(10):813, 2013

Gregory EC, Drake P, Martin JA: Lack of change in perinatal mortality in the United States, 2014–2016. NCHS Data Brief, August 2018

Healy AJ, Malone FD, Sullivan LM, et al: Early access to prenatal care: implications for racial disparity in perinatal mortality. Obstet Gynecol 107(3):625, 2006

Heazell AEP, Siassakos D, Blencowe H, et al: Stillbirths: economic and psychosocial consequences. Lancet 387(10018):604, 2016

Holmes LB, Nasri H, Beroukhim R, et al: Stillborn infants: associated malformations. Birth Defects Res 110(2):114, 2018

Hu YJ, Wake M, Saffery R: Clarifying the sweeping consequences of COVID-19 in pregnant women, newborns, and children with existing cohorts. JAMA Pediatr 175(2):117, 2021

Khalil A, von Dadelszen P, Draycott T, et al: Change in the incidence of stillbirth and preterm delivery during the COVID-19 pandemic. JAMA 324(7):705, 2020

Kingdon C, Givens JL, O'Donnell E, et al: Seeing and holding Baby: systematic review of clinical management and parental outcomes after stillbirth. Birth 42(3):206, 2015

Korlesky C, McPherson E: Early demise of twins in a cohort of stillbirths and second trimester miscarriages. Am J Med Genet A 179(3):350, 2019

Korteweg FJ, Bouman K, Erwich JJ, et al: Cytogenetic analysis after evaluation of 750 fetal deaths. Obstet Gynecol 111:865, 2008

Lamont K, Scott NW, Jones GT, et al: Risk of recurrent stillbirth: systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ 350:h3080, 2015

Lawn JE, Blencowe H, Waiswa P, et al: Stillbirths: rates, risk factors, and acceleration towards 2030. Lancet 387(10018):587, 2016

Lehner C, Harry A, Pelecanos A, et al: The feasibility of a clinical audit tool to investigate stillbirth in Australia–a single centre experience. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 59(1):59, 2019

Leisher SH, International Stillbirth Alliance: COVID-19 and maternal and perinatal outcomes Lancet Glob Health 9(8):e1061, 2021

Little SE, Zera CA, Clapp MA, et al: A multi-state analysis of early-term delivery trends and the association with term stillbirth. Obstet Gynecol 126(6):1138, 2015

MacDorman MF, Gregory EC: Fetal and perinatal mortality, United States, 2013. Natl Vital Stat Rep 64(8):1, 2015a

MacDorman MF, Reddy UM, Silver RM: Trends in stillbirth by gestational age in the United States, 2006–2012. Obstet Gynecol 126(6):1146, 2015b

Malacova E, Regan A, Nassar N, et al: Risk of stillbirth, preterm delivery, and fetal growth restriction following exposure in a previous birth: systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 125(2):183, 2018

Mangesi L, Hofmeyr GJ, Smith V, et al: Fetal movement counting for assessment of fetal wellbeing. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD004909, 2015

Martinez-Portilla RJ, Pauta M, Hawkins-Villarreal A, et al: Added value of chromosomal microarray analysis over conventional karyotyping in stillbirth work-up: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 53(5):590, 2019

McPherson E, Nestoridi E, Heinke D, et al: Alternatives to autopsy for fetal and early neonatal (perinatal) deaths: insights from the Wisconsin stillbirth service program. Birth Defects Res 109(18):1430, 2017

Middleton P, Shepherd E, Crowther CA: Induction of labour for improving birth outcomes for women at or beyond term. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD004945, 2018

Miller ES, Minturn L, Linn R, et al: Stillbirth evaluation: a stepwise assessment of placental pathology and autopsy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214:115, 2016

Monari F, Pedrielli G, Vergani P, et al: Adverse perinatal outcome in subsequent pregnancy after stillbirth by placental vascular disorders. PLoS One 11(5):e0155761, 2016

Muglu J, Rather H, Arroyo-Manzano D, et al: Risks of stillbirth and neonatal death with advancing gestation at term: a systematic review and meta-analysis of cohort studies of 15 million pregnancies. PLoS Med 16(7):e1002838, 2019

Nelson DB, Freeman MP, Johnson NL, et al: A prospective study of postpartum depression in 17,648 parturients. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(12):1155, 2013

Nicholson JM, Kellar LC, Ahmad S, et al: US term stillbirth rates and the 39-week rule: a cause for concern? Am J Obstet Gynecol 214:621, 2016

Nuzum D, Meaney S, O'Donoghue K: The impact of stillbirth on consultant obstetrician gynaecologists: a qualitative study. BJOG 121:1020, 2014

Page JM, Christiansen-Lindquist L, Thorsten V, et al: Diagnostic tests for evaluation of stillbirth: results from the Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network. Obstet Gynecol 129(4):699, 2017

Page JM, Silver RM: Evaluation of stillbirth. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 30:130, 2018

Page JM, Silver RM: Stillbirth: evaluation and follow-up. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 47(3):439, 2020

Page JM, Snowden JM, Cheng YW, et al: The risk of stillbirth and infant death by each additional week of expectant management stratified by maternal age. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(4):375.e1, 2013

Pauli RM, Reiser CA: Wisconsin Stillbirth Service Program: II. Analysis of diagnoses and diagnostic categories in the first 1,000 referrals. Am J Med Genet 50:135, 1994

Pinar H, Goldenberg RL, Koch MA, et al: Placental findings in singleton stillbirths. Obstet Gynecol 123:325, 2014

Pinar H, Koch MA, Hawkins H, et al: The stillbirth collaborative research network postmortem examination protocol. Am J Perinatol 29:187, 2012

Rasmussen S, Irgens LM, Skjaerven R, et al: Prior adverse pregnancy outcome and the risk of stillbirth. Obstet Gynecol 114(6):1259, 2009

Rasmussen SA, Jamieson DJ: Caring for women who are planning a pregnancy, pregnant, or postpartum during the COVID-19 pandemic. JAMA 324(2):190, 2020

Reddy UM: Prediction and prevention of recurrent stillbirth. Obstet Gynecol 110:1151, 2007

Reddy UM, Laughon SK, Sun L, et al: Prepregnancy risk factors for antepartum stillbirth in the United States. Obstet Gynecol 116:1119, 2010

Reddy UM, Page GP, Saade GR, et al: Karyotype versus microarray testing for genetic abnormalities after stillbirth. N Engl J Med 367(23):2185, 2012

Rosenstein MG, Snowden JM, Cheng YW, et al: The mortality risk of expectant management compared with delivery stratified by gestational age and race and ethnicity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(6):660.e1, 2014

Saller DN Jr, Lesser KB, Harrel U, et al: The clinical utility of the perinatal autopsy. JAMA 273:663, 1995

Shakespeare C, Merriel A, Bakhbakhi D, et al: The RESPECT Study for consensus on global bereavement care after stillbirth. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 149(2):137, 2020

Sharma PP, Salihu HM, Oyelese Y, et al: Is race a determinant of stillbirth recurrence? Obstet Gynecol 107(2 Pt 1):391, 2006

Shruthi M, Gupta N, Jana M, et al: Comparative study of conventional and virtual autopsy using postmortem MRI in the phenotypic characterization of stillbirths and malformed fetuses. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 51(2):236, 2018

Siassakos D, Jackson S, Gleeson K, et al: All bereaved parents are entitled to good care after stillbirth: a mixed-methods multicentre study (INSIGHT). BJOG 125(2):160, 2018

Silver RM: Examining the link between placental pathology, growth restriction, and stillbirth. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 49:89, 2018

Silver RM: Fetal death. Obstet Gynecol 109:153, 2007

Silver RM, Parker CB, Reddy UM, et al: Antiphospholipid antibodies in stillbirth. Obstet Gynecol 122(3):641, 2013

Silver RM, Saade GR, Thorsten V, et al: Factor V Leiden prothrombin G20210A, and methylene tetrahydrofolate reductase mutations and stillbirth: the Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215:468, 2016

Simon E, Cottenet J, Mariet AS, et al: Impact of the COVID-19 pandemic on preterm birth and stillbirth: a nationwide, population-based retrospective cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 225(3):347, 2021

Son SL, Allshouse AA, Page JM, et al: Stillbirth and fetal anomalies: secondary analysis of a case-control study BJOG 128(2):252, 2021a

Son M, Gallagher K, Lo JY, et al: Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic and pregnancy outcomes in a U.S. population. Obstet Gynecol 138(4):542, 2021b

Srivastava K. Covid-19: why has India had a spike in stillbirths? BMJ 374:n2133, 2021

Stanley KE, Giordano J, Throsten V, et al: Causal genetic variants in stillbirth. N Engl J Med 383(12):1107, 2020

Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network Writing Group: Association between stillbirth and risk factors known at pregnancy confirmation. JAMA 306(22):2469, 2011a

Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network Writing Group: Causes of death among stillbirths. JAMA 306(22):2459, 2011b

Varner JW, Silver RM, Rowland Hogue CJ, et al: Association between stillbirth and illicit drug use and smoking during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 123:113, 2014

Weeks JW, Asrat T, Morgan MA, et al: Antepartum surveillance for a history of stillbirth: when to begin? Am J Obstet Gynecol 172:486, 1995

Whitman M, Gammon E, Chronister BC, et al: Risk factors for recurrent stillbirth (SB): results from the Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network (SCRN). Abstract No. 161, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:S116 2020

Wojcieszek AM, Shepherd E, Middleton P, et al: Care prior to and during subsequent pregnancies following stillbirth for improving outcomes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 12:CD012203, 2018a

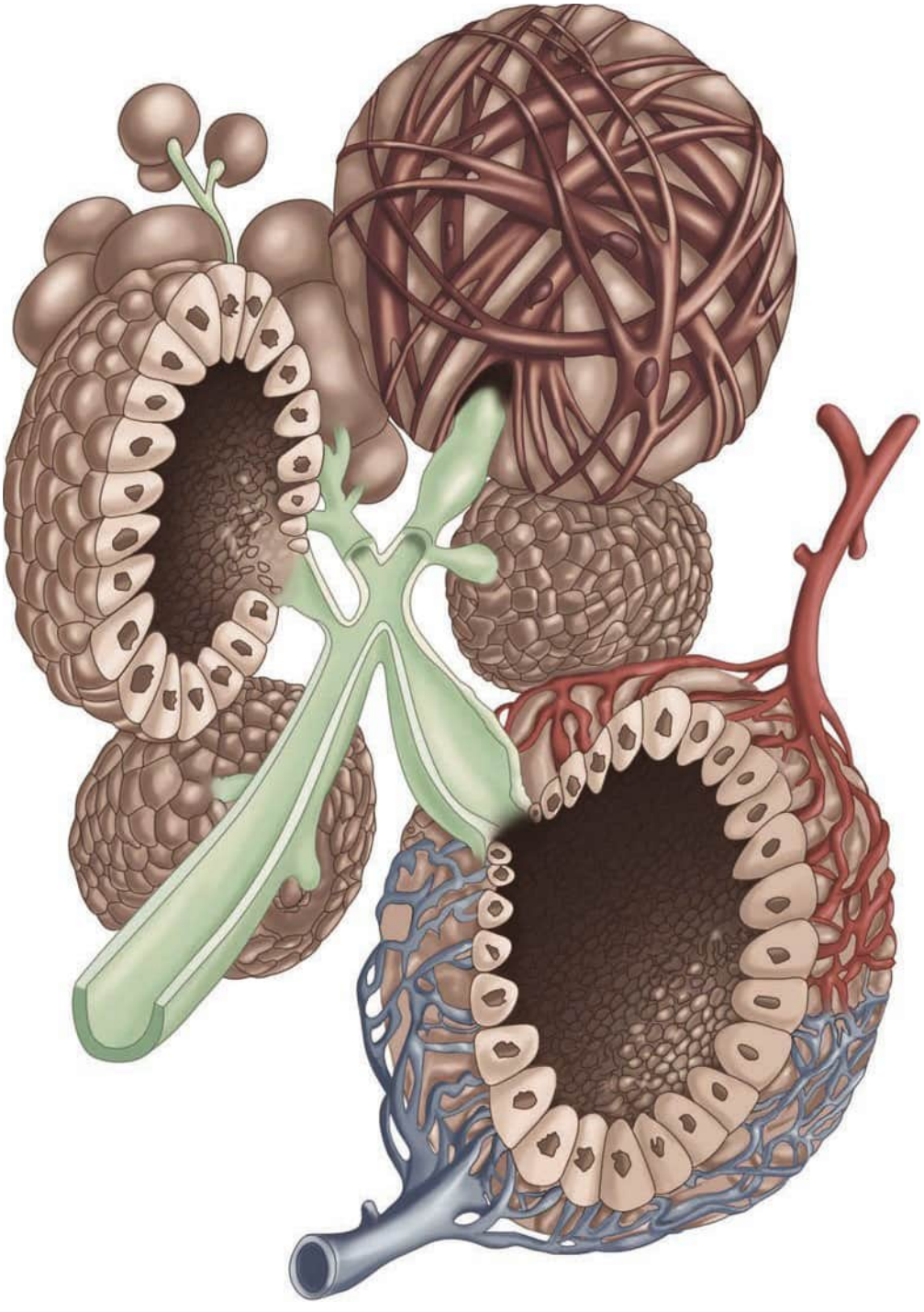
Wojcieszek AM, Shepherd, Middleton P, et al: Interventions for investigating and identifying the causes of stillbirth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD012504, 2018b

Wojcik M: Genomic insights into stillbirth. N Engl J Med 383(12):1182, 2020

This page intentionally left blank

SECTION 10

THE PUERPERIUM



CHAPTER 36

The Puerperium

The word *puerperium* is derived from Latin—*puer*, child + *parus*, bringing forth. It defines the time following delivery during which pregnancy-induced maternal anatomical and physiological changes return to the nonpregnant state. Its duration is inexact but is considered to last between 4 and 6 weeks. Although much less complex compared with pregnancy, the puerperium has appreciable changes, and maternal morbidity is surprisingly common. For example, in a survey of 1246 British mothers, 3 percent required hospital readmission within 8 weeks (Thompson, 2002). Moreover, almost three fourths of women continue to have health problems for up to 18 months (Glazener, 1995). Of self-reported concerns, pain, breastfeeding, and psychosocial topics are prominent. Table 36-1 lists data on these from the Pregnancy Risk Assessment Surveillance System—PRAMS—of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

THE FOURTH TRIMESTER

Because the weeks following childbirth are a critical period for the woman and her infant, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a) promulgated the concept of a "fourth trimester." This concept reinforces the importance of the 12 weeks following birth, and components of this model are outlined in Table 36-2. Thus, the comprehensive postpartum visit includes a full assessment of physical, social, and psychological well-being.

An initial visit is recommended at 3 weeks postdelivery and a final summary visit at 12 weeks. Between this time, visits can be added as needed. For example, women with chronic hypertension, overt diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and depression may require additional multidisciplinary care during this period. For all puerpera, a discussion of positive lifestyle changes can be initiated. This time also affords the opportunity to update immunizations (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019). At the end of the 12-week fourth

TABLE 36-1. Concerns Raised by Women in the Puerperium

Concerns	Percent
Pain after cesarean delivery	58
Feeling stressed	54
Breastfeeding issues	48
Perineal pain after vaginal delivery	41
Need for social support	32
Inadequate education about newborn care	21
Help with postpartum depression	10
Perceived need for extended hospital stay	8
Need for maternal insurance coverage postpartum	6

From Childbirth Connection, 2013a,b; Kanotra, 2007.

TABLE 36-2. Components of Postpartum Care for the Fourth Trimester

Care team
Postpartum visits
Lactation support
Infant feeding plan
Reproductive life plan
Contraception
Pregnancy complications
Cardiovascular risk assessment
Mental health
Postpartum problems
Chronic conditions

trimester, follow-up then transitions into well-woman care, ongoing primary or specialty care, and when necessary, preconceptional counseling (Chap. 9, p. 165).

REPRODUCTIVE TRACT INVOLUTION

Birth Canal

Return of the tissues in the birth canal to the nonpregnant state begins soon after delivery. The vagina and its outlet gradually diminish in size but rarely regain their nulliparous dimensions. Rugae begin to reappear by the third week but are less prominent than before. The hymen is represented by several small tags of tissue, which scar to form the myrtiform caruncles. The vaginal epithelium reflects the hypoestrogenic state, and it does not begin to proliferate until 4 to 6 weeks. This timing is usually coincidental with resumed ovarian estrogen production. Lacerations or stretching of the perineum during delivery can lead to vaginal outlet relaxation. Some damage to the pelvic floor may be inevitable, and parturition predisposes to pelvic organ prolapse (Chap. 30, p. 548).

Uterus

The massively augmented uterine blood flow necessary to maintain pregnancy derives from significant hypertrophy and remodeling of pelvic vessels. After delivery, their caliber gradually diminishes to approximately that of the prepregnant state. Within the puerperal uterus, larger blood vessels become obliterated by hyaline changes. They are gradually resorbed and replaced by smaller ones. Minor vestiges of the larger vessels, however, may persist for years.

During labor and vaginal delivery, the margin of the dilated cervix, which corresponds to the external os, may be lacerated. The cervical opening contracts slowly, and for a few days immediately after labor, it readily admits two fingers. By the end of the first week, this opening narrows, the cervix thickens, and the endocervical canal reforms. The external os does not completely resume its pregravid appearance. It remains somewhat wider, and typically, ectocervical depressions at the site of lacerations become permanent. These changes are characteristic of a parous cervix (Fig. 36-1). Cervical epithelium also undergoes

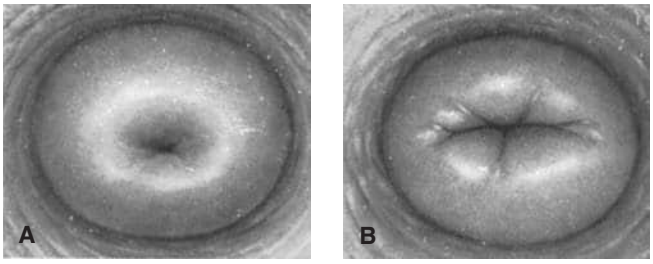


FIGURE 36-1 Common appearance of nulliparous **(A)** and parous **(B)** cervices.

considerable remodeling. This actually may be salutary because almost half of women have regression of high-grade dysplasia following delivery (Ahdoot, 1998; Kaneshiro, 2005).

After delivery, the fundus of the contracted uterus lies slightly below the umbilicus. It consists mostly of myometrium covered by serosa and internally lined by decidua. The markedly attenuated lower uterine segment contracts and retracts, but not as forcefully as the uterine corpus. During the next few weeks, the lower segment is converted from a clearly distinct substructure large enough to accommodate the fetal head to a barely discernible uterine isthmus located between the corpus and internal cervical os. Immediately postpartum, the anterior and posterior walls, which lie in close apposition, are each 4 to 5 cm thick (Buhimschi, 2003). At this time, the uterus weighs approximately 1000 g.

Myometrial involution is a truly remarkable feat of destruction or deconstruction that begins as soon as 2 days after delivery (Williams, 1931). The total number of myocytes does not decline appreciably—rather, their size decreases markedly. Weights from removed uteri approximate 500 g by 1 week postpartum, 300 g by 2 weeks, and at 4 weeks, involution is complete and the uterus weighs approximately 100 g (Williams, 1931). After each successive delivery, the uterus is usually slightly larger than before the most recent pregnancy.

Sonographic Findings

Uterine involution and declining uterine volume is best measured by sonography (Fig. 36-2) (Wataganara, 2015). With

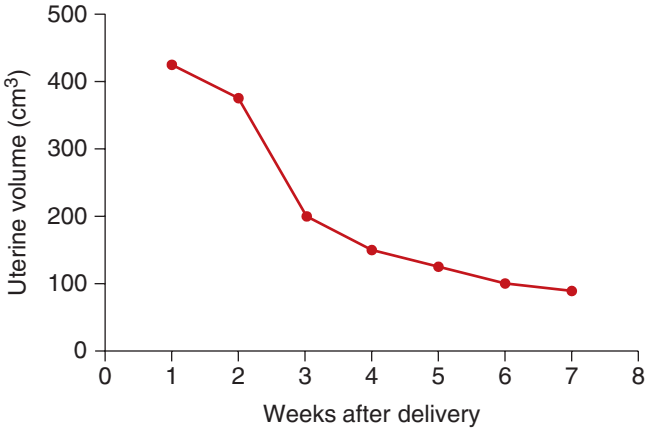


FIGURE 36-2 Pattern of uterine involution through 7 weeks postpartum as estimated by sonography.

this, estimates again show uterine size declines of more than half, from 450 to 200 g, in the first 2 weeks. Sonographically, the uterus and endometrium return to the pregravid size by 8 weeks postpartum. Complete involution in the multiparous uterus is longer than for the nulliparous organ (Paliulyte, 2017). In the event of a cesarean delivery, the residual myometrial thickness over the uterine incision is thicker if a two-layer closure was used (Roberge, 2016).

In a study of 42 normal puerperas, fluid in the endometrial cavity was noted in 78 percent of women at 2 weeks, 52 percent at 3 weeks, 30 percent at 4 weeks, and 10 percent at 5 weeks (Tekay, 1993). Belachew and coworkers (2012) used three-dimensional sonography and visualized intracavitary tissue matter in a third on day 1, 95 percent on day 7, 87 percent on day 14, and 28 percent on day 28. By day 56, the small cavity was empty.

Doppler ultrasound of the uterine artery shows continuously increasing vascular resistance throughout the first 7 weeks postpartum (Sohn, 1988; Wataganara, 2015). Uterine artery flow impedance does not differ between women undergoing vaginal versus cesarean delivery (Baron, 2016).

Decidual and Endometrial Regeneration

Because separation of the placenta and membranes involves the spongy layer, the decidua basalis is not sloughed. The in situ decidua varies markedly in thickness, it has an irregular jagged border, and it is infiltrated with blood, especially at the placental site. Within 2 or 3 days after delivery, the remaining decidua becomes differentiated into two layers. The superficial layer becomes necrotic and is sloughed in the lochia. The basal layer adjacent to the myometrium remains intact and is the source of new endometrium. Decidual vessels are near normal by delivery and endovascular trophoblasts are diminished. These vessels and the spiral arteries also undergo involution (Zhang, 2018).

Endometrial regeneration is rapid, except at the placental site. Within a week or so, the free surface becomes covered by epithelium. Sharman (1953) identified a fully restored endometrium in all biopsy specimens obtained from the 16th day onward. Histological endometritis is part of the normal reparative process. Also, microscopic inflammatory changes characteristic of noninfectious acute salpingitis are seen in almost half of women between 5 and 15 days (Andrews, 1951).

Clinical Aspects

Afterpains. Several clinical findings coincide with uterine involution. In primiparas, the uterus tends to remain tonically contracted following delivery. In multiparas, however, it often contracts vigorously at intervals and gives rise to *afterpains*, which are similar to but milder than labor contractions. These are more pronounced as parity increases and worsen when the newborn suckles, likely because of oxytocin release (Holdcroft, 2003). Usually, afterpains decrease in intensity and become mild by the third day. We have encountered unusually severe and persistent afterpains in women with postpartum uterine infections (Chap. 37, p. 651).

Lochia. Early in the puerperium, sloughing of decidual tissue results in a vaginal discharge of variable quantity. The discharge is termed *lochia* and contains erythrocytes, shredded decidua, epithelial cells, and bacteria. For the first few days after delivery, there is blood sufficient to color it red—*lochia rubra.* After 3 or 4 days, lochia becomes progressively pale in color—*lochia serosa.* After approximately the 10th day, because of an admixture of leukocytes and reduced fluid content, lochia assumes a white or yellow-white color—*lochia alba.* The average duration of lochial discharge ranges from 24 to 36 days (Fletcher, 2012). Because of this expected leukocyte component, saline preparations of lochia for microscopic evaluation in cases of suspected puerperal metritis are typically uninformative.

PLACENTAL SITE INVOLUTION

Complete extrusion of the placental site takes up to 6 weeks (Williams, 1931). Immediately after delivery, the placental site is approximately palm-sized. Within hours of delivery, it normally contains many thrombosed vessels that ultimately undergo organization. By the end of the second week, it measures 3 to 4 cm in diameter.

Placental site involution is an exfoliation process, which is prompted in great part by undermining of the implantation site by new endometrial proliferation (Williams, 1931). Thus, involution is not simply absorption in situ. Exfoliation consists of both extension and "downgrowth" of endometrium from the margins of the placental site, as well as "upward" development of endometrial tissue from the glands and stroma left deep in the decidua basalis after placental separation. Anderson and Davis (1968) concluded that placental site exfoliation results from sloughing of infarcted and necrotic superficial tissues followed by a remodeling process.

Subinvolution

In some cases, uterine involution is hindered because of incompletely remodeled spiral arteries, retained placental fragments, or infection. Such *subinvolution* is accompanied by varied intervals of prolonged lochia and by irregular or excessive uterine bleeding. During bimanual examination, the uterus is larger and softer than would be expected.

Inadequate conversion of spiral arteries into remodeled uteroplacental arteries can cause subinvolution (Kavalar, 2012). These noninvoluted vessels are filled with thromboses and lack an endothelial lining. Perivascular trophoblasts are also identified in the vessel walls, which suggests an aberrant interaction between uterine and trophoblast cells.

With bleeding, pelvic sonography may help differentiate subinvolution from retained placenta. Characteristic findings of retained products include a thickened endometrium or endometrial mass (Fig. 36-3). Vascularity within this area increases the likelihood of retained products (Sellmyer, 2013). Comparatively, subinvolution is characterized by an enlarged uterus with tubular hypoechoic areas in the myometrium. These tubular structures reflect neovascularization and dilated uterine vessels.

For treatment, uterotonics are recommended by many but their efficacy is questionable (Hoyveda, 2001; American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017d). At Parkland hospital, conservative management is undertaken with methylergonovine

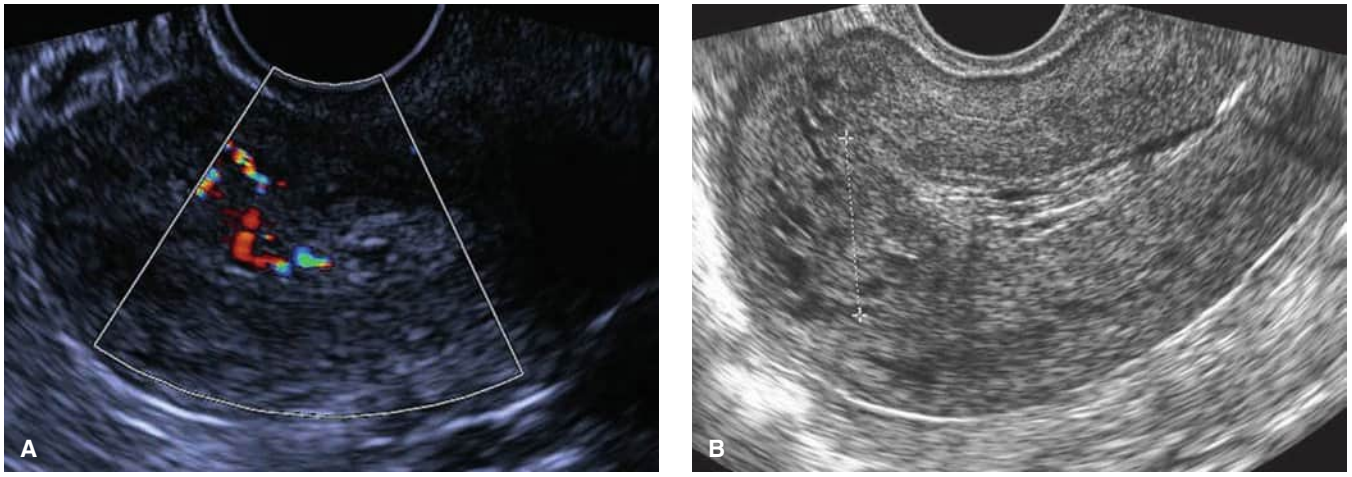


FIGURE 36-3 Sonographic appearance of puerperal uterine complications. **A.** Retained products of conception. Tissue vascularity is highlighted here by color Doppler. **B.** Retained clot marked by calipers shows mixed echogenicity in a woman with subinvolutional hemorrhage. Anechoic cystic areas within the fundal myometrium reflect dilated vessels.

(Methergine) 0.2 mg orally every 3 to 4 hours for 24 to 48 hours. For initially brisk bleeding, an intramuscular dose of methylergonovine may be coupled with an infusion of synthetic oxytocin (Pitocin) (20 units in 1 L crystalloid).

For cases with suspected comorbid infection, antimicrobial therapy usually leads to a good response. Wager and associates (1980) reported that a third of late cases of postpartum metritis are caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis.* Empirical therapy with azithromycin or doxycycline usually prompts resolution regardless of bacterial etiology. At our institution, common oral options taken twice daily for 7 to 10 days include azithromycin, 500 mg; amoxicillin-clavulanate (Augmentin), 875 mg; or doxycycline, 100 mg.

Late Postpartum Hemorrhage

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017d) defines *secondary postpartum hemorrhage* as bleeding 24 hours to 12 weeks after delivery. Clinically worrisome uterine hemorrhage develops within 1 to 2 weeks in perhaps 1 percent of women. Such bleeding most often stems from abnormal involution of the placental site. It occasionally is caused by retention of a placental fragment or by a uterine artery pseudoaneurysm. Rarely, retained products may undergo necrosis with fibrin deposition and neovascularization, thus forming a *placental polypoid mass.* Severe hemorrhage occurs in only 6 percent of these cases due to rupture of blood vessels (Marques, 2011). Sonographically, a discrete hypervascular endometrial mass that may extend into the myometrium is visualized (Fig. 36-4). As discussed in Chapter 59 (p. 1062), delayed postpartum hemorrhage may also be caused by von Willebrand disease or other inherited coagulopathies (Lipe, 2011).

In our experiences, few women with delayed hemorrhage are found to have retained placental fragments. Thus, we and others do not routinely perform curettage (Lee, 1981). Another concern is that curettage may worsen bleeding by avulsing part of the implantation site. Thus, in a stable patient, if sonographic examination shows an empty cavity, then oxytocin, methylergonovine, or a prostaglandin analogue is given. Suitable dosing is found in Table 13-3 (p. 240). Antimicrobials are added if uterine infection is suspected. If large clots are seen in the uterine cavity with sonography, then *gentle* suction curettage is considered. Otherwise, curettage is carried out only if appreciable bleeding persists or recurs after medical management.

URINARY TRACT

Normal pregnancy-induced glomerular hyperfiltration persists during the puerperium but returns to prepregnancy baseline by 2 weeks (Hladunewich, 2004). Parturition induces a transient rise in excretion of glomerular podocytes (Furuta, 2017). Dilated ureters and renal pelves return to their prepregnant state by 2 to 8 weeks postpartum. Because of this dilated collecting system, coupled with residual urine and bacteriuria in a traumatized bladder, symptomatic urinary tract infection remains a concern in the puerperium.

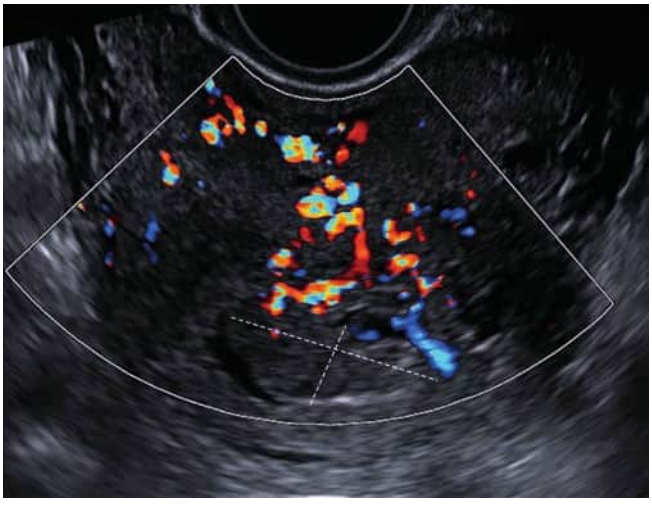


FIGURE 36-4 Sonogram of a polypoid placental mass with color Doppler applied. The mass is demarcated by the dashed white lines. Hypervascularity is seen extending from the mass into the myometrium.

Funnell and colleagues (1954) used cystoscopy immediately postpartum and described varying degrees of submucosal hemorrhage and edema. Bladder trauma is associated most closely with labor length and thus to some degree accompanies normal vaginal delivery. Postpartum, the bladder has a greater capacity and a relative insensitivity to intravesical pressure. Consequently, overdistention, incomplete emptying, and excessive residual urine are frequent (Buchanan, 2014; Mulder, 2014). Acute urinary retention is more common with epidural or narcotic analgesia (Kandadai, 2014). The management of urinary retention is discussed later (p. 643).

Stress urinary incontinence during the puerperium may occur in 5 percent of women (Wang, 2017). Much attention has been given to the potential for subsequent development of urinary incontinence and other pelvic floor disorders in the years following delivery (Colla, 2018). A more detailed discussion is found in Chapter 30 (p. 548).

PERITONEUM AND ABDOMINAL WALL

The broad and round ligaments require considerable time to recover from stretching and loosening during pregnancy. The abdominal wall remains soft and flaccid as a result of ruptured elastic fibers in the skin and prolonged distention by the gravid uterus. If the abdomen is unusually lax or pendulous, an ordinary girdle is often satisfactory. An abdominal binder is another temporary measure. Several weeks are required for these structures to return to normal, and exercise aids recovery. These may be started anytime following vaginal delivery. After cesarean delivery, a 6-week interval to allow anterior abdominal wall fascia to heal and abdominal soreness to diminish is reasonable. Silvery abdominal striae commonly develop as *striae gravidarum* (Chap. 4, p. 55). Except for these, the abdominal wall usually resumes its prepregnancy appearance. When muscles remain atonic, however, the abdominal wall also remains lax.

Marked separation of the rectus abdominis muscles—*diastasis recti*—may result. This separation develops from a gradual thinning and widening of the linea alba and is coupled with a general laxity of the ventral abdominal wall muscles. Importantly, musculofascial continuity and lack of a true hernia sac differentiates this from a ventral hernia (Mommers, 2017).

BLOOD AND BLOOD VOLUME

Hematological and Coagulation Changes

Marked leukocytosis and thrombocytosis may occur during and after labor. The white blood cell count seldom exceeds 25,000/μL, and the rise is predominantly due to granulocytes (Arbib, 2016; Sanci, 2017). A relative lymphopenia and an absolute eosinopenia is typical. Normally, during the first few postpartum days, hemoglobin concentration and hematocrit decrease moderately. If they fall much below prelabor levels, a considerable amount of blood has been lost.

By the end of pregnancy, laboratory values that assess coagulation are altered (Kenny, 2015). These changes are discussed in Chapter 4 (p. 61) and listed in the Appendix (p. 1228). Many extend variably in the puerperium. For example, a markedly higher plasma fibrinogen level is maintained at least through the first week. This contributes to hypercoagulability (Chap. 55, p. 975). As one result, the pregnancy-associated risks for deep-vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism persist in the 12 weeks following childbirth (Kamel, 2014).

Pregnancy-Induced Hypervolemia

When the amount of blood attained by normal pregnancy hypervolemia is lost as postpartum hemorrhage, the woman almost immediately regains her nonpregnant blood volume (Chap. 42, p. 732). If less has been lost at delivery, blood volume generally nearly returns to its nonpregnant level by 1 week after delivery. Cardiac output usually remains elevated for 24 to 48 hours postpartum and declines to nonpregnant values by 10 days (Robson, 1987). Heart rate changes follow this pattern, and blood pressure similarly returns to nonpregnant values (Fig. 36-5). Correspondingly, systemic vascular resistance remains in the lower range characteristic of pregnancy for 2 days postpartum and then begins to steadily rise to normal nonpregnant values (Hibbard, 2015). Despite this, Morris and coworkers (2015) found that reduced arterial stiffness persists following pregnancy. They suggest a significant favorable effect of pregnancy on maternal cardiovascular remodeling. This may represent a mechanism by which preeclampsia risk is reduced in subsequent pregnancies.

Postpartum Diuresis

Normal pregnancy is associated with appreciable extracellular sodium and water retention, and postpartum diuresis is a physiological reversal of this process. Chesley and associates (1959) demonstrated an approximate 2 liter decline in sodium space during the first week postpartum. This corresponds with loss of residual pregnancy hypervolemia. In preeclampsia, pathological retention of fluid antepartum and then its normal diuresis postpartum may be prodigious (Chap. 41, p. 724).

Postpartum diuresis results in a relatively rapid weight loss of 2 to 3 kg, which is additive to the 5 to 6 kg incurred by delivery and normal blood loss. Weight loss from pregnancy itself likely peaks by the end of the second week postpartum.

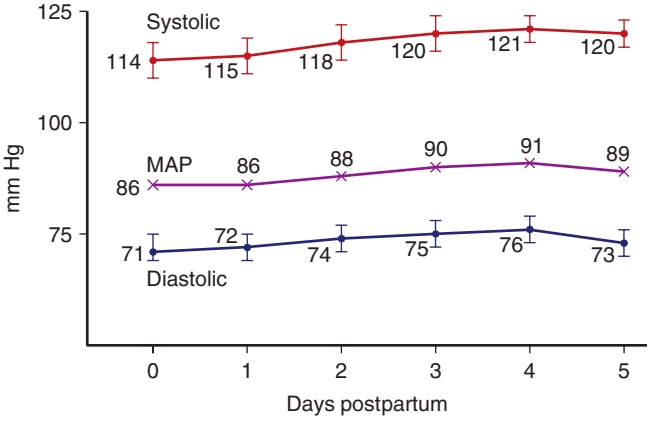


FIGURE 36-5 During the early puerperium, blood pressure normally rises toward nonpregnant values. MAP = mean arterial pressure.

Any residual weight compared with prepregnancy values probably represents fat stores that will persist.

LACTATION AND BREASTFEEDING

Breast Anatomy and Secretory Products

Each mature mammary gland or breast is composed of 15 to 25 lobes. They are arranged radially and are separated from one another by varying amounts of fat. Each lobe consists of several lobules, which in turn are composed of numerous alveoli. Each alveolus is provided with a small duct that joins others to form a single larger duct for each lobe (Fig. 36-6). These *lactiferous ducts* open separately on the nipple, where they may be distinguished as small but distinct orifices. The alveolar secretory epithelium synthesizes the various milk constituents.

After delivery, the breasts begin to secrete *colostrum*, which is a deep-yellow liquid. It usually can be expressed from the nipples by the second postpartum day. Compared with mature milk, colostrum is rich in immunological components and contains more minerals and amino acids (Y de Vries, 2018). It also has more protein, much of which is globulin, but less sugar and fat. Secretion persists for 5 to 14 days, with gradual conversion to mature milk by 4 to 6 weeks. The colostrum content of immunoglobulin A (IgA) offers the newborn protection against enteric pathogens. Other host resistance factors found in colostrum and milk include complement, macrophages, lymphocytes, lactoferrin, lactoperoxidase, and lysozymes.

TABLE 36-3. Average Composition of Human Breast Milk

Fat	g/100 mL
Total	4.2
Fatty acids	Trace
PUFA	0.6
Cholesterol	0.016
Protein	g/100 mL
Total	1.1
Casein	0.3
α-Lactalbumin	0.3
Lactoferrin	0.2
Carbohydrate	g/100 mL
Lactose	7
Oligosaccharides	0.5

PUFA = Polyunsaturated fatty acids.

A lactating mother produces upwards of 600 mL of milk daily, and maternal gestational weight gain has little impact on its quantity or quality. Mature milk is a complex and dynamic biological fluid that includes fat, proteins, carbohydrates, bioactive factors, minerals, vitamins, hormones, and many cellular products (Table 36-3). The contents and concentrations of human milk change even during a single feed and are influenced by maternal diet and by newborn age, health, and needs. Milk is isotonic with plasma, and lactose accounts for half of the osmotic pressure. Essential amino acids are derived from blood, and nonessential amino acids are derived in part from blood or synthesized in the mammary gland. Most milk proteins are unique and include alpha-lactalbumin, beta-lactoglobulin, and casein. Fatty acids are synthesized in the alveoli from glucose and are secreted by an apocrine-like process. Variable amounts of most vitamins are found in human milk. Vitamin K is virtually absent, and thus, an intramuscular dose is given to the newborn (Chap. 33, p. 606). Vitamin D content is low, and newborn supplementation is recommended by the American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017).

Whey is milk serum and contains large amounts of interleukin-6 and other chemokines (Polat, 2016). Human milk has a whey-to-casein ratio of 60:40, which is considered ideal for absorption. *Prolactin* appears to be actively secreted into breast milk. *Epidermal growth factor* has been identified, and because it is not destroyed by gastric proteolytic enzymes, it may be absorbed to promote growth and maturation of newborn intestinal mucosa. Other critical components in human milk include melatonin and oligosaccharides.

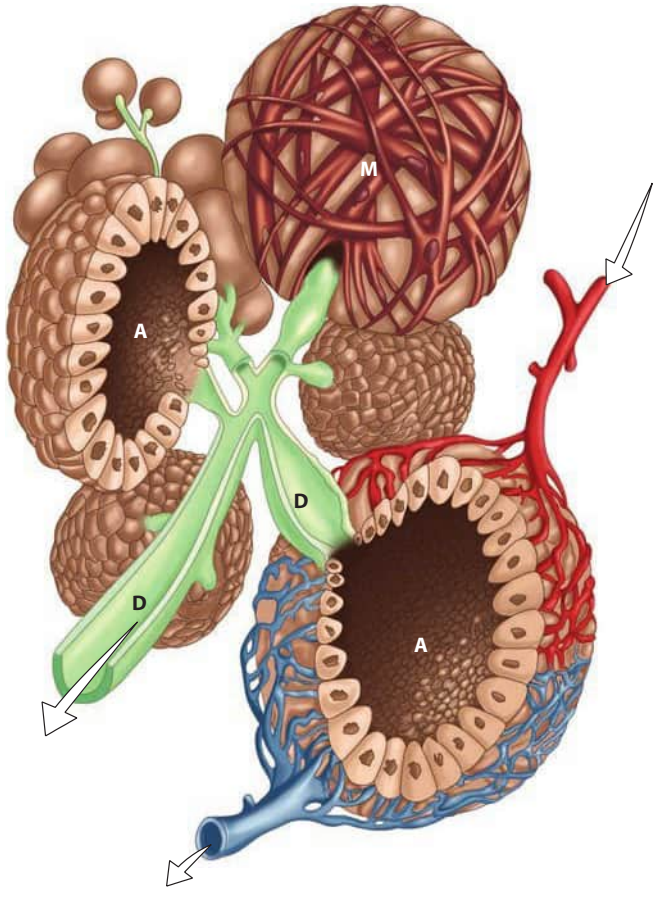


FIGURE 36-6 Schematic of the alveolar and ductal system during lactation. Note the myoepithelial fibers (*M*) that surround the outside of the uppermost alveolus. The secretions from the glandular elements are extruded into the lumen of the alveoli (*A*) and ejected by the myoepithelial cells into the ductal system (*D*), which empties through the nipple. Arterial blood supply to the alveolus is identified by the upper right arrow and venous drainage by the arrow beneath.

Lactation Endocrinology

The precise humoral and neural mechanisms involved in lactation are complex. Progesterone, estrogen, and placental lactogen, as well as prolactin, cortisol, and insulin, appear to act in concert to stimulate the growth and development of the milk-secreting apparatus (Stuebe, 2014). With delivery, the maternal serum levels of progesterone and estrogen decline abruptly and profoundly. This drop removes the inhibitory influence of progesterone on alpha-lactalbumin production and stimulates lactose synthase to raise milk lactose levels. Progesterone withdrawal also allows prolactin to act unopposed in its stimulation of alpha-lactalbumin production. Activation of calcium-sensing receptors in mammary epithelial cells downregulates parathyroid hormone–related protein (PTHrP) and increases calcium transport into milk (Vanhouten, 2013). Serotonin also is produced in mammary epithelial cells and has a role in maintaining milk production (Collier, 2012).

The intensity and duration of subsequent lactation are controlled, in large part, by the repetitive stimulus of suckling and emptying of milk from the breast. Prolactin is essential for lactation, and women with extensive pituitary necrosis—*Sheehan syndrome*—do not lactate (Chap. 61, p. 1104). Although plasma prolactin levels fall after delivery to levels lower than during pregnancy, each act of suckling triggers a rise in levels. Presumably a stimulus from the breast curtails the release of dopamine—also known as *prolactin-inhibiting factor*—from the hypothalamus. In turn, this transiently induces increased prolactin secretion.

The posterior pituitary secretes oxytocin in pulsatile fashion. This stimulates milk expression from a lactating breast by causing contraction of myoepithelial cells in the alveoli and small milk ducts (see Fig. 36-6). Milk ejection, or *letting down*, is a reflex initiated especially by suckling, which stimulates the posterior pituitary to liberate oxytocin. The reflex may even be provoked by an infant cry and can be inhibited by maternal fright or stress (Stuebe, 2014).

Immunological Consequences of Breastfeeding

Human milk contains several protective immunological substances, including secretory IgA and growth factors. The antibodies in human milk are specifically directed against maternal environmental antigens such as *Escherichia coli* (Macpherson, 2017). According to the CDC, breastfeeding decreases the incidence of ear, respiratory, and gastrointestinal infections; necrotizing enterocolitis; and sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS) (Perrine, 2015). Breastfeeding is especially important for immunity in preterm infants (Lewis, 2017).

Much attention has been directed to the role of maternal breast milk lymphocytes in neonatal immunological processes. Milk contains both T and B lymphocytes, but the T lymphocytes appear to differ from those found in blood. Specifically, milk T lymphocytes are almost exclusively composed of cells that exhibit specific membrane antigens. These memory T cells appear to be an avenue for the neonate to benefit from the maternal immunological experience.

TABLE 36-4. Advantages of Breastfeeding

Nutritional
Immunological
Developmental
Psychological
Social
Economic
Environmental
Optimal growth and development
Decrease risks for acute and chronic diseases

Lactation

The ideal time to begin breastfeeding is within an hour of birth. Human milk is ideal food for newborns in that it provides age-specific nutrients, immunological factors, and antibacterial substances. Milk also contains factors that act as biological signals for promoting cellular growth and differentiation. A list of the advantages of breastfeeding is shown in Table 36-4. Lactation has long-term benefits for both the mother and the infant. For example, women who breastfeed have a lower risk of breast and reproductive cancer. Children who were breastfed have higher adult intelligence scores independent of a wide range of possible confounding factors (Jong, 2012; Kramer, 2008). In the short term, lactation is associated with less postpartum weight retention (Baker, 2008). In addition, rates of SIDS are significantly lower among breast-fed infants. Bartek and colleagues (2013) estimate that a 90-percent breastfeeding rate for 12 months would save more than $3 billion annually in excess infant and maternal morbidity costs. For all these reasons, the American Academy of Pediatrics and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) support the World Health Organization (2011) recommendations of exclusive breastfeeding for up to 6 months.

Currently, 55 percent of women breastfeed at 6 months compared with a Healthy People 2020 goal of 61 percent. (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists 2018b). The Baby-Friendly Hospital Initiative is an international program to raise rates of exclusive breastfeeding and to extend its duration. It is based on the World Health Organization (2018) *Ten Steps to Successful Breastfeeding* (Table 36-5). Worldwide, almost 20,000 hospitals are deemed "baby-friendly," however, only 15 to 20 percent of hospitals in the United States are so designated (Baby-Friendly USA, 2018; Perrine, 2015). In a large population-based study done in the United States, fewer than two thirds of term neonates were exclusively breastfed at the time of discharge (McDonald, 2012). By 3 months, according to the CDC, less than half of these infants are exclusively breastfed (Olaiya, 2016).

Various individual resources are available online for lactating mothers from the American Academy of Pediatrics (www.aap.org) and La Leche League International (www.llli.org).

Breast Care

The nipples require little attention other than cleanliness and attention to skin fissures. Fissured nipples render lactation

TABLE 36-5. Ten Steps to Successful Breastfeeding

1. Have a written breastfeeding policy that is regularly communicated to all health-care staff
2. Train all staff in skills necessary to implement this policy
3. Inform all pregnant women about the benefits and management of breastfeeding
4. Help mothers initiate breastfeeding within an hour of birth
5. Show mothers how to breastfeed and how to sustain lactation, even if they should be separated from their infants
6. Feed newborns nothing but breast milk, unless medically indicated, and prioritize donor breast milk when supplementation is needed
7. Practice rooming-in, which allows mothers and newborns to remain together 24 hours a day
8. Encourage breastfeeding on demand
9. Give no artificial pacifiers to breastfeeding newborns
10. Help start breastfeeding support groups and refer mothers to them

Adapted from the World Health Organization, 2018.

painful, and they may have a deleterious influence on milk production. These cracks also provide a portal of entry for pyogenic bacteria. Because dried milk is likely to accumulate and irritate the nipples, washing the areola with water and mild soap is helpful before and after nursing. When the nipples are irritated or fissured, some recommend topical lanolin and a nipple shield for 24 hours or longer (Dennis, 2014). If fissuring is severe, the newborn should not be permitted to nurse on the affected side. Instead, the breast is emptied regularly with a pump until the lesions are healed.

Poor latching of the neonate to the breast can create such fissures. For example, the newborn may take into its mouth only the nipple, which is then is forced against the hard palate during suckling. Ideally, the nipple and areola are both taken in to evenly distribute suckling forces. Moreover, the force of the hard palate against the lactiferous sinuses aids their efficient emptying, while the nipple is thereby positioned closer to the soft palate.

Breastfeeding Contraindications

Lactation is contraindicated in women who take street drugs or do not control their alcohol use; have an infant with galactosemia; have human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection; have active, untreated tuberculosis; take certain medications; or are undergoing breast cancer treatment (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017). Breastfeeding has been recognized for some time as a mode of HIV transmission and is proscribed in developed countries in which adequate nutrition is otherwise available (Chap. 68, p. 1222). Other viral infections do not contraindicate lactation. For example, with maternal cytomegalovirus infection, both virus and antibodies are present in breast milk. And, although hepatitis B virus is excreted in milk, breastfeeding is not contraindicated if hepatitis B immune globulin is given to the newborns of affected mothers. Maternal hepatitis C infection is not a contraindication because breastfeeding has not been shown to transmit infection. Women with active herpes simplex virus may suckle their infants if there are no breast lesions and if particular care is directed to hand washing before nursing. From the CDC (2021a), those with COVID-19 should wear a mask and practice hand-hygiene.

Drugs Secreted in Milk

Most drugs given to the mother are secreted in breast milk, although the amount ingested by the infant typically is small. Factors influencing drug excretion include plasma concentration, degree of protein binding, plasma and milk pH, degree of ionization, lipid solubility, and molecular weight (Rowe, 2013). The ratio of drug concentration in breast milk to that in maternal plasma is the *milk-to-plasma drug-concentration ratio.* Ideally, to minimize infant exposure, medication selection favors drugs with a shorter half-life, poorer oral absorption, and lower lipid solubility. If multiple daily drug doses are required, each is taken by the mother *after* the closest feed. Single daily-dosed drugs may be taken just before the longest infant sleep interval—usually at bedtime.

Only a few drugs are absolutely contraindicated while breastfeeding (American Academy of Pediatrics and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017). Cytotoxic drugs may interfere with cellular metabolism and potentially cause immune suppression or neutropenia, affect growth, and at least theoretically, increase the childhood cancer risk. Examples include cyclophosphamide, cyclosporine, doxorubicin, methotrexate, and mycophenolate (Briggs, 2017). If a medication presents a concern, its importance should be ascertained. A provider can also seek a safer alternative or determine if neonatal exposure can be minimized if the medication dose is taken immediately after each breastfeeding session. Last, recreational drugs such as marijuana and alcohol should be avoided (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017c; Metz, 2018). Data on individual drugs are available through the National Institutes of Health website, LactMed, which can be found at www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK501922/.

Radioactive isotopes of copper, gallium, indium, iodine, sodium, and technetium rapidly appear in breast milk. Consultation with a nuclear medicine specialist is recommended before performing a diagnostic study with these isotopes (Chap. 49, p. 875). Ideally, a radionuclide with the shortest excretion time in breast milk is selected. The mother should pump her breasts before the study and store enough milk in a freezer to feed the infant. After the study, she should pump her breasts to maintain milk production but discard all milk produced during

the time that radioactivity is present. This ranges from 15 hours to 2 weeks, depending on the isotope used. Importantly, radioactive iodine concentrates and persists in the thyroid. Its special considerations are discussed in Chapter 66 (p. 1174). For magnetic resonance (MR) imaging, breastfeeding should not be interrupted after gadolinium administration (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017a).

Breast Engorgement

This is common in women who do not breastfeed. It is typified by milk leakage and breast pain, which peak 3 to 5 days after delivery. Up to half of affected women require analgesia for breast pain relief, and as many as 10 percent report severe pain for up to 14 days.

Evidence is insufficient to firmly support any specific treatment (Mangesi, 2016). That said, breasts can be supported with a well-fitting brassiere, breast binder, or sports bra. Cool packs and oral analgesics for 12 to 24 hours aid discomfort. Pharmacological or hormonal agents in general are not recommended to suppress lactation.

Fever caused by breast engorgement was common before the renaissance of breastfeeding. In one study, 13 percent of puerperas with engorgement had fever ranging from 37.8 to 39°C (Almeida, 1986). Fever seldom persists for longer than 4 to 16 hours. The incidence and severity of engorgement and of the fever associated with it are much lower if women breastfeed. Other causes of fever, especially those due to infection, must be excluded. *Mastitis* is infection of the mammary parenchyma and is relatively common in lactating women (Chap. 37, p. 659).

Other Lactation Issues

With *inverted nipples*, lactiferous ducts open directly into a depression at the center of the areola. With these depressed nipples, nursing is difficult. If the depression is not deep, milk sometimes can be drawn out by a breast pump. If instead the nipple is greatly inverted, daily attempts are made during the last few months of pregnancy to draw or "tease" the nipple out with the fingers.

Extra breasts—*polymastia*, or extra nipples—*polythelia*, may develop along the former embryonic mammary ridge. Also termed the *milk line*, this line extends from the axilla to the groin bilaterally. In some women, rests of accessory breast tissue can be found in the mons pubis or vulva (Wagner, 2013). In the general population, the incidence of accessory breast tissue ranges from 0.22 to 6 percent (Loukas, 2007). These breasts may be so small as to be mistaken for pigmented moles, or if without a nipple, for lymphadenopathy or lipoma. Polymastia has no obstetrical significance, although occasionally enlargement of these accessory breasts during pregnancy or engorgement postpartum may result in patient discomfort and anxiety.

Galactocele is a milk duct that becomes obstructed by inspissated secretions. The amount is ordinarily limited, but an excess may form a fluctuant mass—a galactocele—that can cause pressure symptoms and have the appearance of an abscess. It may resolve spontaneously or require aspiration.

Among individuals, the volume of milk secreted varies markedly. This depends not on general maternal health but on breast glandular development. Rarely, there is complete lack of mammary secretion—*agalactia*. Occasionally, mammary secretion is excessive—*polygalactia*.

Lactation-Associated Osteoporosis

This is a rare disorder of unknown etiology that may be associated with severe back pain or vertebral fractures (Li, 2018; Zhang, 2017). Preliminary studies indicate that bisphosphonates are effective in its management. However, for almost all women, lactation is not associated with later-onset osteoporosis (Crandall, 2017). Pregnancy-associated osteoporosis is discussed in Chapter 61 (p. 1100).

HOSPITAL CARE

For 2 hours after delivery, blood pressure and pulse are taken every 15 minutes, at minimum. Temperature is assessed every 4 hours for the first 8 hours and then at least every 8 hours subsequently (American Academy of Pediatrics and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017). If regional analgesia or general anesthesia was used for labor or delivery, the mother should be observed in an appropriately equipped and staffed recovery area. Expected anesthesia recovery and complications are described in Chapter 25 (p. 473).

Because the likelihood of significant hemorrhage is greatest immediately postpartum, vaginal bleeding is closely monitored. The uterine fundus is palpated to ensure that it is well contracted. If relaxation is detected, the uterus should be massaged through the abdominal wall until it remains contracted. Uterotonics also are sometimes required. Blood may accumulate within the uterus without external bleeding. This may be detected early by uterine enlargement during fundal palpation in the first postdelivery hours. Postpartum hemorrhage is discussed in Chapter 41.

Early ambulation within a few hours after delivery is encouraged. An attendant should be present for at least the first time, in case the woman becomes syncopal. The many confirmed advantages of early ambulation include fewer bladder complications, less frequent constipation, and reduced rates of puerperal venous thromboembolism. As discussed, deep-vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism are common in the puerperium. In our audits of puerperal women at Parkland Hospital, the frequency of venous thromboembolism is extremely low. We attribute this to early ambulation. Risk factors and other measures to diminish the frequency of thromboembolism are discussed in Chapter 55 (p. 984).

Diets need not be restricted for women who give birth vaginally. Generally, two hours after uncomplicated vaginal delivery, a woman is allowed to eat. With lactation, the level of calories and protein consumed during pregnancy is increased slightly as recommended by the Food and Nutrition Board of the National Research Council (Chap. 10, p. 184). If the mother does not breastfeed, dietary requirements are the same as for a nonpregnant woman. We recommend oral iron supplementation for at least 3 months after delivery and hematocrit evaluation at the first postpartum visit.

As noted earlier, profound drops in estrogen levels follow removal of the placenta. Reminiscent of the menopause,

postpartum women may experience hot flushes, especially at night. Importantly, the patient's temperature is assessed to differentiate these physiological vasomotor events from infection.

In women with migraines, dramatic hypoestrogenism may trigger headaches. Importantly, severe headaches should be differentiated from postdural puncture headache or hypertensive complications. Care varies depending on headache severity. Mild headaches may respond to analgesics such as ibuprofen or acetaminophen. For more severe headaches, oral or systemic narcotics can be used. Alternatively, a triptan, such as sumatriptan (Imitrex), can relieve headaches by causing intracranial vasoconstriction, and it is breastfeeding compatible.

Perineal Care

The woman is instructed to clean the vulva from anterior to posterior—the vulva toward the anus. A cool pack applied to the perineum may help reduce edema and discomfort during the first 24 hours if there is a perineal laceration or an episiotomy. Most women also appear to obtain a measure of relief from the periodic application of a local anesthetic spray. *Severe perineal, vaginal, or rectal pain always warrants careful inspection and palpation.* Severe discomfort usually indicates a problem, such as a hematoma within the first day or so and infection after the third or fourth day (Chap. 37, p. 657 and Chap. 42, p. 740). Beginning approximately 24 hours after delivery, moist heat as provided by warm sitz baths can reduce local discomfort. Tub bathing after uncomplicated delivery is allowed. The episiotomy incision normally is firmly healed and nearly asymptomatic by the third week.

Rarely, the cervix, and occasionally a portion of the uterine body, may protrude from the vulva following delivery. This is accompanied by variable degrees of anterior and posterior vaginal wall prolapse. Symptoms include a palpable mass at or past the introitus, voiding difficulties, or pressure. Puerperal procidentia typically improves with time as the weight of the uterus lessens with involution. As a temporizing measure for pronounced prolapse, the uterus can be replaced and held in position with a space-filling pessary, such as a donut type.

Rectal veins are often congested at term. Thrombosis of these hemorrhoids is common and may be promoted by second-stage pushing. Treatment includes topically applied anesthetics, warm soaks, and stool-softening agents. Nonprescription topical preparations containing corticosteroids, astringents, or phenylephrine are often used. However, no randomized studies support their efficacy compared with symptomatic care.

Bladder Function

In most delivery units, intravenous fluids are infused during labor and for an hour or so after vaginal delivery. Oxytocin, in doses that have an antidiuretic effect, is typically infused postpartum, and rapid bladder filling is common. Moreover, both bladder sensation and capability to empty spontaneously may be diminished by components of the labor and delivery process. Thus, urinary retention and bladder overdistention is common in the early puerperium. The incidence in more than 5500 women studied with a bladder scanner was 5 percent (Buchanan, 2014). It is much less clinically. Risk factors that increased the likelihood of retention include primiparity, epidural analgesia, cesarean delivery, perineal lacerations, operative vaginal delivery, catheterization during labor, and prolonged second-stage labor (Stephansson, 2016; Wang, 2017).

Prevention of bladder overdistention demands observation after delivery to ensure that the bladder does not overfill and that it empties adequately with each voiding. The enlarged bladder can be palpated suprapubically, or it is evident abdominally indirectly as it elevates the fundus above the umbilicus. Most currently use an automated sonography system to detect high bladder volumes and thus postpartum urinary retention (Buchanan, 2014).

If a woman has not voided within 4 hours after delivery, it is likely that she cannot. If she has trouble voiding initially, she also is likely to have further trouble. First, an examination for perineal and genital-tract hematomas is completed, as these may be contributory. With an overdistended bladder, an indwelling catheter should be placed and left until the factors causing retention have abated. Even without a demonstrable cause, it usually is best to leave the catheter in place for at least 24 hours. This prevents recurrence and allows recovery of normal bladder tone and sensation.

When the catheter is removed, a voiding trial is completed to demonstrate an ability to void appropriately. If a woman cannot void after 4 hours, urine volumes are measured sonographically. If more than 200 mL, the bladder is not functioning appropriately, and the catheter is replaced and remains for another 24 hours. Although rare, if retention persists after a second voiding trial, an indwelling catheter and leg bag can be elected, and the patient returns in 1 week for an outpatient voiding trial. In a study of 27 women with a protracted course, all resumed normal voiding by 3 weeks postpartum (Mevorach Zussman, 2020).

During a voiding trial, if less than 200 mL of urine is obtained, the catheter can be removed and the bladder subsequently monitored clinically and sonographically as described earlier. Harris and coworkers (1977) reported that 40 percent of such women develop bacteriuria, and thus a single dose or short course of antimicrobial therapy against uropathogens is reasonable after the catheter is removed.

Pain, Mood, and Cognition

Discomfort and its causes following cesarean delivery are considered in Chapter 30 (p. 565). During the first few days after vaginal delivery, the mother may be uncomfortable because of afterpains, episiotomy and lacerations, breast engorgement, and at times, postdural puncture headache. Mild analgesics containing codeine, ibuprofen, or acetaminophen, preferably in combinations, are given as frequently as every 4 hours during the first few days.

It is important to screen the postpartum woman for depression (Mangla, 2019). Commonly, mothers exhibit some degree of depressed mood a few days after delivery. Termed *postpartum blues,* this likely is the consequence of several factors. These include the emotional letdown that follows the excitement and fears experienced during pregnancy and delivery, discomforts of the early puerperium, fatigue from sleep deprivation, anxiety over the ability to provide appropriate newborn care, and

body image concerns. In most women, effective treatment includes anticipation, recognition, and reassurance. This disorder is usually mild and self-limited to 2 to 3 days, although it sometimes lasts for up to 10 days. Should these moods persist or worsen, an evaluation for symptoms of major depression is done (Chap. 64, p. 1145).

Last, postpartum hormonal changes in some women may affect brain function. Bannbers and colleagues (2013) observed a functional decline in executive function in postpartum women.

Neuromusculoskeletal Problems

Obstetrical Neuropathies

Pressure on branches of the lumbosacral nerve plexus during labor may manifest as complaints of intense neuralgia or cramplike pains extending down one or both legs as soon as the head descends into the pelvis. If the nerve is injured, pain may continue after delivery, and variable degrees of sensory loss or muscle paralysis can result. In some cases, there is footdrop, which can be secondary to injury at the level of the lumbosacral plexus, sciatic nerve, or common fibular (peroneal) nerve (Bunch, 2014). Components of the lumbosacral plexus cross the pelvic brim and can be compressed by the fetal head or by forceps. The common fibular nerves may be externally compressed when the legs are positioned in stirrups, especially during prolonged second-stage labor.

Obstetrical neuropathy is relatively infrequent. Evaluation of more than 6000 puerperas found that approximately 1 percent had a confirmed nerve injury (Wong, 2003). Lateral femoral cutaneous neuropathies were the most common (24 percent), followed by femoral neuropathies (14 percent). A motor deficit accompanied a third of injuries. Nulliparity, prolonged second-stage labor, and pushing for a long duration in the semi-Fowler position were risk factors. The median duration of symptoms was 2 months, and the range was 2 weeks to 18 months.

Injury of the iliohypogastric and ilioinguinal nerves may occur with cesarean delivery (Rahn, 2010; Yazici Yilmaz, 2018). We have rarely encountered lumbar arachnoiditis following epidural analgesia causing severe bilateral neuropathic pain.

Musculoskeletal Injuries

Pain in the pelvic girdle, hips, or lower extremities may follow stretching or tearing injuries sustained at normal or difficult delivery. MR imaging is often informative when clinical examination is normal (Miller, 2015). Most injuries resolve with antiinflammatory agents and physical therapy. Rarely, there may be septic pyomyositis such as with iliopsoas muscle abscess (Nelson, 2010; Young, 2010).

Separation of the symphysis pubis or one of the sacroiliac synchondroses during labor leads to pain and marked interference with locomotion (Fig. 36-7). Estimates of the frequency of this event vary widely from 1 in 600 to 1 in 30,000 deliveries (Reis, 1932; Taylor, 1986). In our experiences, symptomatic separations are uncommon. Their onset of pain is often acute during delivery, but symptoms may manifest either antepartum or up to 48 hours postpartum (Snow, 1997). Radiography is typically used for evaluation. The normal distance of the symphyseal joint is 0.4 to 0.5 cm, and symphyseal separation >1 cm is diagnostic for diastasis. Treatment is generally conservative, with rest in a lateral decubitus position and an appropriately fitted pelvic binder (Lasbleiz, 2017). Surgery is occasionally necessary in some symphyseal separations >4 cm (Kharrazi, 1997). The recurrence risk is high in subsequent pregnancies, and Culligan and associates (2002) recommend consideration for cesarean delivery.

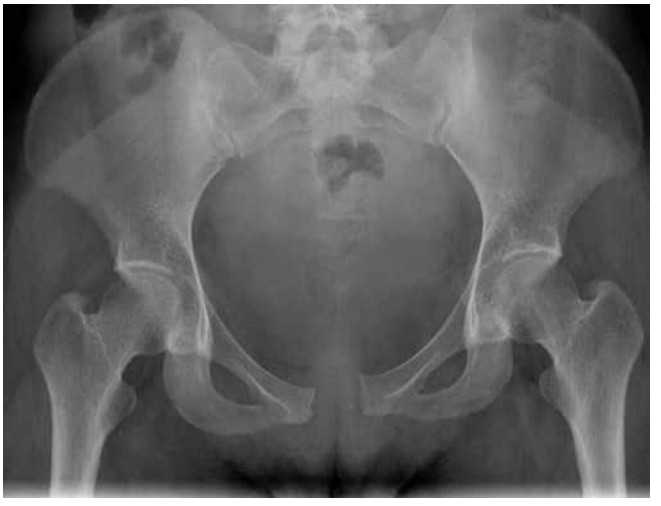


FIGURE 36-7 Pubic symphyseal separation found on the first postpartum day following vaginal delivery of a 2840-g newborn. The patient had pain over the pubic bone and pain with ambulation. A shuffling gait was noted, and she had difficulty with leg elevation when supine. The patient was treated with physical therapy and analgesics. A pelvic binder was applied, and a rolling walker was provided. She improved quickly and was discharged home on postpartum day 5.

In rare cases, fractures of the sacrum or pubic ramus are caused by even uncomplicated deliveries (Alonso-Burgos, 2007; Speziali, 2015). Discussed in Chapter 61 (p. 1100), the latter is more likely with osteoporosis associated with heparin or corticosteroid therapy. In rare but serious cases, bacterial osteomyelitis—*osteitis pubis*—can be devastating. Lawford and coworkers (2010) reported such a case that caused massive vulvar edema.

Immunizations

The D-negative woman who is not isoimmunized and whose newborn is D-positive is given 300 μg of anti-D immune globulin shortly after delivery (Chap. 18, p. 357). Women who are not already immune to rubella or varicella are excellent candidates for vaccination before discharge (Swamy, 2015). Those who have not received a tetanus/diphtheria (Tdap/Td) or influenza vaccine should be given these (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017e) (Table 10-7, p. 189). The CDC (2021b) recommends the COVID-19 vaccine, and includes breastfeeding women. Morgan and colleagues (2015) reported that implementation of a best-practices alert in the electronic medical record was associated with a Tdap immunization rate of 97 percent at Parkland Hospital. When permissible by law, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019) recommends standing orders for indicated immunizations.

Contraception

During the hospital stay, a concerted effort is made to provide family planning education. Various forms of contraception are discussed throughout Chapter 38 and sterilization procedures in Chapter 39. The immediate puerperium is an ideal time for consideration of long-acting reversible contraception—LARC (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017b).

Women not breastfeeding have return of menses usually within 6 to 8 weeks. At times, however, it is difficult clinically to assign a specific date to the first menstrual period after delivery. A minority of women bleed small to moderate amounts intermittently starting soon after delivery. Ovulation occurs at a mean of 7 weeks but ranges from 5 to 11 weeks (Perez, 1972). That said, ovulation before 28 days has been described (Hytten, 1995). Thus, conception is possible during the early puerperium. *Women who become sexually active during the puerperium and who do not desire to conceive should initiate contraception.* Kelly and associates (2005) reported that by the third month postpartum, 58 percent of adolescents had resumed sexual intercourse, but only 80 percent of these were using contraception. Because of this, many recommend LARC during the puerperium.

Women who breastfeed ovulate much less frequently compared with those who do not, but variation is great. Timing of ovulation depends on individual biological variation and the intensity of breastfeeding. Lactating women may first menstruate as early as the second or as late as the 18th month after delivery. Campbell and Gray (1993) analyzed daily urine specimens in 92 lactating women. Breastfeeding in general delays resumption of ovulation, although it does not invariably forestall it. Other findings in their study included the following:

1. Resumption of ovulation was frequently marked by return of normal menstrual bleeding.
2. Breastfeeding episodes lasting 15 minutes seven times daily delayed ovulation resumption.
3. Ovulation can occur without bleeding.
4. Bleeding can be anovulatory.
5. The risk of pregnancy in breastfeeding women was approximately 4 percent per year.

For the breastfeeding woman, progestin-only contraceptives, such as progestin pills, depot medroxyprogesterone, or progestin implants or IUDs, do not affect the quality or quantity of milk. Not available in the United States, success with the progesterone-releasing vaginal ring also has been described (Carr, 2016). These may be initiated any time during the puerperium. Estrogen-progestin contraceptives likely reduce the quantity of breast milk, but under the proper circumstances, they too can be used by lactating women. These hormonal methods are discussed in Chapter 38 (p. 671).

Hospital Discharge

Following uncomplicated vaginal delivery, hospitalization is seldom warranted for more than 48 hours. Hospital stay length following labor and delivery is now regulated by federal law (Chap. 32, p. 596). Currently, the norms are hospital stays up to 48 hours following uncomplicated vaginal delivery and up to 96 hours following uncomplicated cesarean delivery (American Academy of Pediatrics and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017; Blumenfield, 2015). Earlier hospital discharge is acceptable for appropriately selected women if they desire it. A woman should receive instructions concerning anticipated normal physiological puerperal changes, including lochia patterns, weight loss from diuresis, and milk let-down. She also should receive instructions concerning fever, excessive vaginal bleeding, or leg pain, swelling, or tenderness. Persistent headaches, shortness of breath, or chest pain warrant immediate concern.

HOME CARE

Coitus

No evidence-based data guide resumption of coitus after delivery, and practices are individualized (Minig, 2009). After 2 weeks, coitus may be resumed *based on desire and comfort.* Wallwiener and colleagues (2017) reported that 60 percent of women resumed sexual activity by 1 week and 80 percent by 4 months. They also reported that a third of these women had sexual dysfunction.

Intercourse too soon may be unpleasant, if not painful, and this may be related to episiotomy incisions or perineal lacerations. In a study of women without an episiotomy, only 0.4 percent of those with a first- or second-degree tear had dyspareunia (Ventolini, 2014). Conversely, in primiparas with an episiotomy, 67 percent had sexual dysfunction at 3 months, 31 percent at 6 months, and 15 percent at 12 months (Chayachinda, 2015). Only 40 percent of women with an anal sphincter injury had resumed intercourse by 12 weeks (Leader-Cramer, 2016). Last, dyspareunia was also common following cesarean delivery (McDonald, 2015).

Postpartum, the vulvovaginal epithelium is thin, and very little lubrication follows sexual stimulation. This stems from the hypoestrogenic state following delivery, which lasts until ovulation resumes. It may be particularly problematic in breastfeeding women who are hypoestrogenic for many months postpartum (Palmer, 2003). For treatment, small amounts of topical estrogen cream can be applied daily for several weeks to vulvar tissues. Additionally, vaginal lubricants may be used with coitus.

This same thinning of the vulvovaginal epithelium can lead to dysuria. Topical estrogen can again be offered once cystitis is excluded.

Follow-Up Care

By discharge, women who had an uncomplicated vaginal delivery can resume most activities, including bathing, driving, and household functions. Despite this, Tulman and Fawcett (1988) reported that only half of mothers regained their usual level of energy by 6 weeks. Women who delivered vaginally were twice as likely to have normal energy levels at this time compared with those with a cesarean delivery. Ideally, the care and nurturing of the infant should be provided by the mother with ample help from the father. Jimenez and Newton (1979) tabulated cross-cultural information on 202 societies from various international geographical regions. Following childbirth, most

societies did not restrict work activity, and approximately half expected a return to full duties within 2 weeks. Wallace and coworkers (2013) reported that 80 percent of women who worked during pregnancy resume work by 1 year after delivery.

Discussed on page 634, during this fourth trimester, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a) recommends a comprehensive visit within 12 weeks after delivery. This has proved quite satisfactory to identify abnormalities beyond the immediate puerperium and to initiate contraceptive practices.

REFERENCES

Ahdoot D, Van Nostrand KM, Nguyen NJ, et al: The effect of route of delivery on regression of abnormal cervical cytologic findings in the postpartum period. Am J Obstet Gynecol 178:1116, 1998

Almeida OD Jr, Kitay DZ: Lactation suppression and puerperal fever. Am J Obstet Gynecol 154:940, 1986

Alonso-Burgos A, Royo P, Diaz L, et al: Labor-related sacral and pubic fractures. J Bone Joint Surg 89:396, 2007

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Washington, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for diagnostic imaging during pregnancy and lactation. Committee Opinion No. 723, October 2017a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Long-acting reversible contraception: implants and intrauterine devices. Practice Bulletin No. 186, November 2017b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Marijuana use during pregnancy and lactation. Committee Opinion No. 722, October 2017c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Postpartum hemorrhage. Practice Bulletin No. 183, October 2017d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Update on immunization and pregnancy: tetanus, diphtheria, and pertussis vaccine. Committee Opinion No. 718, September 2017e

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Optimizing postpartum care. Committee Opinion No. 736, May 2018a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Optimizing support for breastfeeding as part of obstetric practice. Committee Opinion No. 756, October 2018b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologist: Immunization implementation strategies for Obstetricians-Gynecologists. Committee Opinion No. 772, March 2019

Anderson WR, Davis J: Placental site involution. Am J Obstet Gynecol 102:23, 1968

Andrews MC: Epithelial changes in the puerperal fallopian tube. Am J Obstet Gynecol 62:28, 1951

Arbib N, Aviram A, Gabbay Ben-Ziv R, et al: The effect of labor and delivery on white blood cell count. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(18):2904, 2016

Baby-Friendly USA: Celebrating 500 baby-friendly designated facilities in the United States. 2018. Available at: www.babyfriendlyusa.org/news/baby-friendly-usa-celebrates-major-milestone-of-500-baby-friendly-designatedfacilities-in-the-united-states/. Accessed July 1, 2019

Baker JL, Gamborg M, Heitmann BL, et al: Breastfeeding reduces postpartum weight retention. Am J Clin Nutr 88(6):1543, 2008

Bannbers E, Gingnell M, Engman J, et al: Prefrontal activity during response inhibition decreases over time in the postpartum period. Behav Brain Res 241:132, 2013

Baron J, Hershkovitz R, Baumfeld Y, et al: Postpartum uterine artery blood flow impedance following cesarean section or vaginal delivery. J Clin Ultrasound 44(5):278, 2016

Bartek MC, Stuebe AM, Schwarz EB, et al: Cost analysis of maternal disease associated with suboptimal breastfeeding. Obstet Gynecol 122:111, 2013

Belachew J, Axelsson O, Mulic-Lutvica A, et al: Longitudinal study of the uterine body and cavity with three-dimensional ultrasonography in the puerperium. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91(10):1184, 2012

Blumenfield YJ, El-sayed YY, Lyell DJ, et al: Risk factors for prolonged postpartum length of stay following cesarean delivery. Am J Perinatol 32:825, 2015

Briggs GG, Freeman RK, Towers CV, et al: Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation, 11th ed. Philadelphia, Wolters Kluwer, 2017

Buchanan J, Beckmann M: Postpartum voiding dysfunction: identifying the risk factors. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 54(1):41, 2014

Buhimschi CS, Buhimschi IA, Malinow AM, et al: Myometrial thickness during human labor and immediately postpartum. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:553, 2003

Bunch K, Hope E: An uncommon case of bilateral peroneal nerve palsy following delivery: a case report and review of the literature. Case Rep Obstet Gynecol 2014:746480, 2014

Campbell OM, Gray RH: Characteristics and determinants of postpartum ovarian function in women in the United States. Am J Obstet Gynecol 169:55, 1993

Carr SL, Gaffield ME, Dragoman MV, et al: Safety of the progesterone-releasing vaginal ring (PVR) among lactating women. Contraception 94(3): 253, 2016

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Care for breastfeeding people. 2021a. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/hcp/care-for-breastfeeding-women.html. Accessed October 11, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: COVID-19 vaccines while pregnant or breastfeeding. 2021b. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/vaccines/recommendations/pregnancy.html. Accessed October 8, 2021

Chayachinda C, Titapant V, Ungkanungdecha A: Dyspareunia and sexual dysfunction after vaginal delivery in Thai primiparous women with episiotomy. J Sex Med 12(5):1275, 2015

Chesley LC, Valenti C, Uichano L: Alterations in body fluid compartments and exchangeable sodium in early puerperium. Am J Obstet Gynecol 77: 1054, 1959

Childbirth Connection: Listening to mothers III: Pregnancy and birth. 2013a. Available at: www.nationalpartnership.org/our-work/resources/health-care/maternity/listening-to-mothers-iii-pregnancy-and-birth-2013.pdf. Accessed February 11, 2020

Childbirth Connection: Listening to mothers III: New mothers speak out. 2013b. Available at: www.nationalpartnership.org/our-work/resources/health-care/maternity/listening-to-mothers-iii-new-mothers-speak-out-major-findings-2013.pdf. Accessed February 11, 2020

Colla C, Paiva LL, Ferla L, et al: Pelvic floor dysfunction in the immediate puerperium, and 1 and 3 months after vaginal or cesarean delivery. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 143(1):94, 2018

Collier RJ, Hernandez LL, Horseman ND: Serotonin as a homeostatic regulator of lactation. Domest Anim Endocrinol 43(2):161, 2012

Crandall CJ, Liu J, Cauley J, et al: Association of parity, breastfeeding, and fractures in the women's health observation study. Obstet Gynecol 130(1):171, 2017

Culligan P, Hill S, Heit M: Rupture of the symphysis pubis during vaginal delivery followed by two subsequent uneventful pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 100:1114, 2002

Dennis CL, Jackson K, Watson J: Interventions for treating painful nipples among breastfeeding women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 12:CD007366, 2014

Fletcher S, Grotegut CA, James AH: Lochia patterns among normal women: a systematic review. J Womens Health (Larchmt) 21(12):1290, 2012

Funnell JW, Klawans AH, Cottrell TL: The postpartum bladder. Am J Obstet Gynecol 67:1249, 1954

Furuta I, Zhai T, Umazume T, et al: Effects of childbirth on podocyturia in women with normotensive, uncomplicated pregnancies. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol 312(6):F112, 2017

Glazener CM, Abdalla M, Stroud P, et al: Postnatal maternal morbidity: extent, causes, prevention and treatment. BJOG 102:282, 1995

Harris RE, Thomas VL, Hui GW: Postpartum surveillance for urinary tract infection: patients at risk of developing pyelonephritis after catheterization. South Med J 70:1273, 1977

Hibbard JU, Schroff SG, Cunningham FG: Cardiovascular alterations in normal and preeclamptic pregnancy. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Hladunewich MA, Lafayette RA, Derby GC, et al: The dynamics of glomerular filtration in the puerperium. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol 286:F496, 2004

Holdcroft A, Snidvongs S, Cason A, et al: Pain and uterine contractions during breast feeding in the immediate post-partum period increase with parity. Pain 104:589, 2003

Hoyveda F, MacKenzie IZ: Secondary postpartum hemorrhage: incidence, morbidity, and current management. BJOG 108:927, 2001

Hytten F: The Clinical Physiology of the Puerperium. London, Farrand Press, 1995

Jimenez MH, Newton N: Activity and work during pregnancy and the postpartum period: a cross-cultural study of 202 societies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 135:171, 1979

Jong DE, Kikkert HR, Fidler V, et al: Effects of long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acid supplementation of infant formula on cognition and behavior at 9 years of age. Dev Med Child Neurol 54(12):1102, 2012
Kamel H, Navi B, Sriram N, et al: Risk of a thrombotic event after the 6-week postpartum period. N Engl J Med 370:1307, 2014
Kandadai P, Kandadai V, Saini J, et al: Acute urinary retention after cesarean delivery: a case-control study. Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg 20(5):276, 2014
Kaneshiro BE, Acoba JD, Holzman J, et al: Effect of delivery route on natural history of cervical dysplasia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192(5):1452, 2005
Kanotra S, D'Angelo D, Phares T, et al: Challenges faced by new mothers in the early postpartum period: An analysis of comment data from the 2000 Pregnancy Risk Assessment Monitoring Systems (PRAMS) survey. Matern Child Health J 11(6):549, 2007
Kavalar R, Arko D, Fokter Dovnik N, et al: Subinvolution of placental bed vessels: case report and review of the literature. Wien Klin Wochenschr 124(19–20):725, 2012
Kelly LS, Sheeder J, Stevens-Simon C: Why lightning strikes twice: postpartum resumption of sexual activity during adolescence. J Pediatr Adolesc Gynecol 18:327, 2005
Kenny LC, McCrae KR, Cunningham FG: Platelets, coagulation, and the liver. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015
Kharrazi FD, Rodgers WB, Kennedy JG, et al: Parturition-induced pelvic dislocation: a report of four cases. J Orthop Trauma 11:277, 1997
Kramer MS, Aboud F, Mironova E, et al: Breastfeeding and child cognitive development: new evidence from a large randomized trial. Arch Gen Psychiatry 65(5):578, 2008
Lasbleiz J, Sevestre FX, Moquet PY: Using an elastic band device after a severe obstetric pubic symphyseal separation: clinical and imaging evaluation. Obstet Gynecol 130(3):625, 2017
Lawford AM, Scott K, Lust K: A case of massive vulvar oedema due to septic pubic symphysitis complicating pregnancy. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 50(6):576, 2010
Leader-Cramer A, Kentaon K, Davé B, et al: Factors associated with timing of return to intercourse after obstetric anal sphincter injuries. J Sex Med 13(10):1523, 2016
Lee CY, Madrazo B, Drukker BH: Ultrasonic evaluation of the postpartum uterus in the management of postpartum bleeding. Obstet Gynecol 58:227, 1981
Lewis ED, Richard C, Larsen BM, et al: The importance of human milk for immunity in preterm infants. Clin Perinatol 44(1):23, 2017
Li LJ, Zhang J, Gao P, et al: Clinical characteristics and bisphosphonates treatment of rare pregnancy- and lactation-associated osteoporosis. Clin Rheumatol 37(11):3141, 2018
Lipe BC, Dumas MA, Ornstein DL: Von Willebrand disease in pregnancy. Hematol Oncol Clin North Am 25(2):335, 2011
Loukas M, Clarke P, Tubbs RS: Accessory breasts: a historical and current perspective. Am Surg 73(5):525, 2007
Macpherson AJ, de Agüero MG, Ganal-Vonarburg SC: How nutrition and the maternal microbiota shape the neonatal immune system. Nat Rev Immunol 17(8):508, 2017
Mangesi L, Zakarija-Grkovic I: Treatment for breast engorgement during lactation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD006946, 2016
Mangla K, Hoffman MC, Trumpff C, et al: Maternal self-harm deaths: an unrecognized and preventable outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(4):295, 2019
Marques K, Looney C, Hayslip C et al: Modern management of hypervascular placental polypoid mass following spontaneous abortion: a case report and literature review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(2):e9, 2011
McDonald EA, Gartland D, Small R, et al: Dyspareunia and childbirth: a prospective cohort study. BJOG 122:672, 2015
McDonald SD, Pullenayegum E, Chapman B, et al: Prevalence and predictors of exclusive breastfeeding at hospital discharge. Obstet Gynecol 119(6): 1171, 2012
Metz TD, Borgett LM: Marijuana use in pregnancy and while breastfeeding. Obstet Gynecol 132(5):1198, 2018
Mevorach Zussman N, Gonen N, Kovo M, et al: Protracted postpartum urinary retention—a long-term problem or a transient condition? Int Urogynecol J 31(3):513, 2020
Miller JM, Low LK, Zielinski R, et al: Evaluating maternal recovery from labor and delivery: bone and levator ani injuries. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213:188e1, 2015
Minig L, Trimble EL, Sarsotti C, et al: Building the evidence base for postoperative and postpartum advice. Obstet Gynecol 114(4):892, 2009
Mommers EH, Ponten JE, Al Omar AK, et al: The general surgeon's perspective of rectusdiastasis. A systematic review of treatment options. Surg Endosc 31(12):4934, 2017
Morgan JL, Baggari SR, Chung W, et al: Association of a Best-Practice Alert and prenatal administration with tetanus toxoid, reduced diphtheria toxoid, and acellular pertussis vaccination rates. Obstet Gynecol 126(2):333, 2015
Morris EA, Hale SA, Badger GJ, et al: Pregnancy induces persistent changes in vascular compliance in primiparous women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(5):633.e1, 2015
Mulder FE, Hakvoort RA, Schoffelmeer MA, et al: Postpartum urinary retention: a systematic review of adverse effects and management. Int Urogynecol J 25(12):1605, 2014
Nelson DB, Manders DB, Shivvers SA: Primary iliopsoas abscess and pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 116(2 Pt 2):479, 2010
Olaiya O, Dee DL, Sharma AJ, et al: Maternity care practices and breastfeeding among adolescent mothers aged 12–19 years—United States, 2009–2011. MMWR 65(2):17, 2016
Paliulyte V, Drasutiene GS, Ramasauskaite D, et al: Physiological uterine involution in primiparous and multiparous women: ultrasound study. Obstet Gynecol Int 2017:6739345, 2017
Palmer AR, Likis FE: Lactational atrophic vaginitis. J Midwifery Womens Health 48:282, 2003
Perez A, Vela P, Masnick GS, et al: First ovulation after childbirth: the effect of breastfeeding. Am J Obstet Gynecol 114:1041, 1972
Perrine CG, Galuska DA, Dohack JL, et al: Vital signs: improvements in maternity care policies and practices that support breastfeeding—United States, 2007–2013. MMWR 64:1112, 2015
Polat A, Tunc T, Erdem G, et al: Interleukin-8 and its receptors in human milk from mothers of full-term and premature infants. Breastfeed Med 11:247, 2016
Rahn DD, Phelan JN, Roshanravan SM, et al: Anterior abdominal wall nerve and vessel anatomy: clinical implications for gynecologic surgery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 202(3):234.e1, 2010
Reis RA, Baer JL, Arens RA, et al: Traumatic separation of the symphysis pubis during spontaneous labor: with a clinical and x-ray study of the normal symphysis pubis during pregnancy and the puerperium. Surg Gynecol Obstet 55:336, 1932
Roberge S, Demers S, Girard M, et al: Impact of uterine closure on residual myometrial thickness after cesarean: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(4):507.e1, 2016
Robson SC, Dunlop W, Hunter S: Haemodynamic changes during the early puerperium. BMJ (Clin Res Ed) 294:1065, 1987
Rowe H, Baker T, Hale TW: Maternal medication, drug use and breastfeeding. Pediatr Clin North Am 6(1):275, 2013
Sanci M, Töz E, Ince O, et al: Reference values for maternal total and differential leukocyte counts in different trimesters of pregnancy and the initial postpartum period in western Turkey. J Obstet Gynecol 37(5):571, 2017
Sellmyer MA, Desser TS, Maturen KE, et al: Physiologic, histologic, and imaging features of retained products of conception. Radiographics 33(3):781, 2013
Sharman A: Postpartum regeneration of the human endometrium. J Anat 87:1, 1953
Snow RE, Neubert AG: Peripartum pubic symphysis separation: a case series and review of the literature. Obstet Gynecol Surv 52:438, 1997
Sohn C, Fendel H, Kesternich P: Involution-induced changes in arterial uterine blood flow [German]. Z Geburtshilfe Perinatol 192:203, 1988
Speziali A, Tei MM, Placella G, et al: Postpartum sacral stress fracture. Case Rep Orthop 2015:704393, 2015
Stephansson O, Sandström A, Petersson G, et al: Prolonged second stage of labour, maternal infectious disease, urinary retention and other complications in the early postpartum period. BJOG 123(4):608, 2016
Stuebe AM: Enabling women to achieve their breastfeeding goals. Obstet Gynecol 123:643, 2014
Swamy G, Heine RP: Vaccinations for pregnant women. Obstet Gynecol 125:212, 2015
Taylor RN, Sonson RD: Separation of the pubic symphysis. An underrecognized peripartum complication. J Reprod Med 31:203, 1986
Tekay A, Jouppila P: A longitudinal Doppler ultrasonographic assessment of the alterations in peripheral vascular resistance of uterine arteries and ultrasonographic findings of the involuting uterus during the puerperium. Am J Obstet Gynecol 168(1 Pt 1):190, 1993
Thompson JF, Roberts CL, Currie M, et al: Prevalence and persistence of health problems after childbirth: associations with parity and method of birth. Birth 29:83, 2002
Tulman L, Fawcett J: Return of functional ability after childbirth. Nurs Res 37:77, 1988
Vanhouten JN, Wysolmerski JJ: The calcium-sensing receptor in the breast. Best Prac Res Clin Endocrinol Metab 27(3)403, 2013
Ventolini G, Yaklic JL, Galloway ML, et al: Obstetric vulvar lacerations and postpartum dyspareunia. J Reprod Med 59(11-12):560, 2014

Wager GP, Martin DH, Koutsky L, et al: Puerperal infectious morbidity: relationship to route of delivery and to antepartum *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection. Am J Obstet Gynecol 138:1028, 1980

Wagner IJ, Damitz LA, Carey E, et al: Bilateral accessory breast tissue of the vulva: a case report introducing a novel labiaplasty technique. Ann Plast Surg 70(5):549, 2013

Wallace M, Saurel-Cubizolles MJ, EDEN mother–child cohort study group: Returning to work one year after childbirth: data from the mother-child cohort EDEN. Matern Child Health J 17(8):1432, 2013

Wallwiener S, Müller M, Doster A, et al: Sexual activity and sexual dysfunction of women in the perinatal period: a longitudinal study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 295(4):873, 2017

Wang H, Ghoniem G: Postpartum stress urinary incontinence, is it related to vaginal delivery? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(13):1552, 2017

Wataganara T, Phithakwatchara N, Komoltri C, et al: Functional three-dimensional sonographic study of the postpartum uterus. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 28(18):2221, 2015

Williams JW: Regeneration of the uterine mucosa after delivery with especial reference to the placental site. Am J Obstet Gynecol 22:664, 1931

Wong CA, Scavone BM, Dugan S, et al: Incidence of postpartum lumbosacral spine and lower extremity nerve injuries. Obstet Gynecol 101:279, 2003

World Health Organization: Exclusive breastfeeding for six months best for babies everywhere. 2011. Available at: www.who.int/mediacentre/news/statements/2011/breastfeeding_20110115/en/. Accessed July 1, 2019

World Health Organization: Protecting, promoting, and supporting breastfeeding in facilities providing maternity and newborn services: the revised Baby-friendly Hospital Initiative 2018. Geneva, World Health Organization, 2018

Yazici Yilmaz F, Aydogan Mathyk B, Yildiz S, et al: Postoperative pain and neuropathy after caesarean operation featuring blunt or sharp opening of the fascia: a randomised, parallel group, double-blind study. J Obstet Gynecol 38(7):933, 2018

Y de Vries J, Pundir S, Mckenzie E, et al: Maternal circulating vitamin status and colostrum vitamin composition in healthy lactating women-a systematic approach. Nutrients 10(6):E687, 2018

Young OM, Werner E, Sfakianaki AK: Primary psoas muscle abscess after an uncomplicated spontaneous vaginal delivery. Obstet Gynecol 116(2 Pt 2):477, 2010

Zhang M, Chen P, Li B, et al: Approach to the patient with pregnancy and lactation-associated osteoporosis: a case report and a review of the literature. Medicine (Baltimore) 96(46):e8671, 2017

Zhang P: Decidual vasculopathy in preeclampsia and spiral artery remodeling revisited: shallow invasion versus failure of involution. AJP Rep 8(4):e241, 2018

CHAPTER 37

Puerperal Infection

Women are susceptible to several potentially serious complications during the fourth trimester. Many of these conditions are encountered during pregnancy, and others are unique to the puerperium. Historically, infection was the most important source of postpartum maternal morbidity and mortality, since emphasized by the studies of Semmelweis and Lister (Kadar, 2021). Puerperal infections include pelvic infections, mastitis, and breast abscesses. Discussed in their respective chapters, cardiovascular disease (Chap. 52, p. 915), venous thromboembolism (Chap. 55, p. 980), and hemorrhage (Chap. 42, p. 731) currently are leading noninfectious puerperal complications (Callaghan, 2012; Creanga, 2017). However, the incidence of postpartum hospitalization due to sepsis is rising. Other puerperal issues and their management are discussed in Chapter 36.

PUERPERAL PELVIC INFECTIONS

Traditionally, the term *puerperal infection* describes any bacterial infection of the genital tract after delivery. Infection, preeclampsia, and obstetrical hemorrhage formed the lethal triad of maternal death causes before and during the 20th century. Fortunately, maternal mortality from puerperal infection is uncommon because of effective antibiotics. Creanga and associates (2017) reported results from the Pregnancy Mortality Surveillance System, which contained 4693 pregnancy-related maternal deaths in the United States from 2006 through 2010. Infection caused 13.6 percent of the deaths and was the second leading etiology. In an analysis of the North Carolina population, Berg and colleagues (2005) reported that 40 percent of infection-related maternal deaths were preventable.

Puerperal Fever

Several infective and noninfective factors cause *puerperal fever* defined by a temperature of 38.0°C (100.4°F) or higher. Using this conservative definition, Filker and Monif (1979) reported that only approximately 20 percent of women febrile within the first 24 hours after vaginal delivery were subsequently diagnosed with pelvic infection. This value was 70 percent in those undergoing cesarean delivery. *Most persistent fevers after childbirth are caused by genital tract infection.* Of note, spiking fevers ≥39°C within the first 24 hours postpartum may be associated with virulent pelvic infection caused by group A streptococcus (p. 651).

Other sources of puerperal fever include breast engorgement, urinary infections, episiotomy and abdominal incisions, perineal lacerations, and postcesarean respiratory complications. Approximately 15 percent of women who do not breastfeed develop fever from *breast engorgement*. "Breast fever" rarely exceeds 39°C in the first few postpartum days and usually lasts <24 hours. The incidence of fever is lower in breastfeeding women (Chap. 36, p. 642). Postpartum *urinary infections* are

uncommon because of the normal diuresis. *Acute pyelonephritis* has a variable clinical picture. The first sign of renal infection may be fever, followed later by costovertebral angle tenderness, nausea, and vomiting. *Atelectasis* following general anesthesia for cesarean delivery is caused by hypoventilation and is best prevented by coughing and deep breathing on a fixed schedule following surgery. Fever with atelectasis is due to infection triggered by proliferation of normal flora distal to obstructing mucus plugs.

Uterine Infection

Postpartum uterine infection has been called *endometritis*, *endomyometritis*, and *endoparametritis.* Following vaginal delivery, infection involves not only the decidua but also the myometrium and parametrial tissues. Infection after cesarean delivery is essentially a surgical site infection involving the incised myometrium. In either case, we prefer the inclusive term *metritis with pelvic cellulitis*.

Predisposing Factors

Route of delivery is the single most significant risk factor for the development of uterine infection (Boggess, 2017; Moulton, 2018). In women undergoing cesarean delivery, rehospitalization rates for wound complications and metritis are higher than those with a vaginal birth (Axelsson, 2018; Fein, 2019). In the French Confidential Enquiry on Maternal Deaths, Deneux-Tharaux and coworkers (2006) cited a nearly 25-fold greater infection-related mortality rate with cesarean delivery.

With vaginal delivery, women delivered at Parkland Hospital have a 1- to 2-percent incidence of metritis. This rate rises to 5 to 6 percent in those with ruptured membranes, prolonged labor, and multiple cervical examinations. If intrapartum chorioamnionitis is present, the risk of persistent uterine infection has exceeded 13 percent (DeNoble, 2019; Maberry, 1991). These figures are similar to those reported by the Maternal Fetal Medicine Units Network from a cohort of more than 115,000 women in whom the overall pelvic infection rate approximated 5 percent (Grobman, 2015).

With operative vaginal delivery, women carry higher risks for metritis and perineal infections than spontaneous birth (Mohamed-Ahmed, 2019). Notably, these deliveries are often implemented in the context of prolonged labor, which is a known metritis risk. One study of 3500 such women showed that those receiving a single dose of prophylactic antibiotics had a lower maternal infection rate (Knight, 2019). Infections include those of the urinary tract, uterus, or perineal wound. Labor lengths were not presented, but in approximately 50 percent of participants, "failure to progress" was the operative vaginal delivery indication. Moreover, 10 percent of women had rupture of membranes lengths between 24 and 48 hours. The contribution of these, rather than the delivery mode, will require further investigation before this prophylaxis is widely adopted solely for the indication of operative vaginal delivery.

With cesarean delivery, hysterotomy is associated with significant infectious morbidity. In the 1970s, pelvic infection complicated 50 percent of cesarean deliveries at Parkland Hospital. Fortunately, antimicrobial prophylaxis has done more to decrease the incidence and severity of postcesarean infections than any other intervention in the past 30 years. Thus, a single dose of perioperative antibiotics is recommended for all women undergoing cesarean delivery (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018b). Such practices lower the puerperal pelvic infection risk by 65 to 75 percent (Smaill, 2014). β-lactam antimicrobials are superior to other agents, and elements of this prophylaxis are outlined in Chapter 30 (p. 551) (Harris, 2019). Important risk factors for infection following surgery include prolonged labor, membrane rupture, multiple cervical examinations, and internal fetal monitoring.

Regardless of delivery route, pelvic infection generally is more frequent in women of lower socioeconomic status (Maharaj, 2007). Except in extreme cases usually not seen in developed countries, it is uncommon that anemia or poor nutrition predispose to infection. *Bacterial colonization* of the lower genital tract with certain microorganisms—for example, group B streptococcus, *Chlamydia trachomatis*, *Mycoplasma hominis*, *Ureaplasma urealyticum*, and *Gardnerella vaginalis*—has been associated with an increased postpartum infection risk (Andrews, 1995; Jacobsson, 2002; Watts, 1990). Other factors associated with a greater risk include general anesthesia, significant hysterotomy extension, young maternal age, nulliparity, prolonged labor induction, chorioamnionitis, obesity, and meconium-stained amnionic fluid (Acosta, 2012; Leth, 2011; Patel, 2019; Siriwachirachai, 2014).

Microbiology

Common Pathogens. Most pelvic infections are caused by bacteria indigenous to the genital tract and listed in Table 37-1. Most of these infections are polymicrobial, which enhances bacterial synergy. Other factors that promote virulence are hematomas and devitalized tissue. Although the cervix and vagina routinely harbor bacteria, the uterine cavity is usually sterile before rupture of the amnionic sac. As the consequence of labor and delivery and associated manipulations, anaerobic and aerobic bacteria contaminate the amnionic fluid and uterus.

TABLE 37-1. Bacteria Commonly Responsible for Female Genital Infections

Aerobes

Gram-positive cocci: group A, B, and D streptococci, enterococcus, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Staphylococcus epidermidis*

Gram-negative bacteria: *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella*, *Proteus* spp.

Gram-variable—*Gardnerella vaginalis*

Others

Mycoplasma spp., *Chlamydia trachomatis*, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*

Anaerobes

Cocci: *Peptostreptococcus*, *Peptococcus* spp.

Others: *Clostridium*, *Bacteroides*, *Fusobacterium*, *Mobiluncus* spp.

Prior to the routine use of antimicrobial prophylaxis, Gilstrap and Cunningham (1979) cultured amnionic fluid obtained at cesarean delivery from women in labor with membranes ruptured more than 6 hours. All had bacterial growth, and an average of 2.5 organisms was identified from each specimen. Anaerobic and aerobic organisms were found in 63 percent, anaerobes alone in 30 percent, and aerobes alone in only 7 percent. Anaerobes included *Peptostreptococcus* and *Peptococcus* species in 45 percent, *Bacteroides* species in 9 percent, and *Clostridium* species in 3 percent. Clostridial species rarely cause puerperal infections, but infections can be severe in those cases (Herrera, 2016). Aerobes included *Enterococcus* in 14 percent, group B *Streptococcus* in 8 percent, and *Escherichia coli* in 9 percent of isolates. Sherman and associates (1999) later showed that bacterial isolates at cesarean delivery correlated with those taken from women with metritis at 3 days postpartum. Group B streptococci, *E coli*, and enterococci are some of the more common blood culture isolates with metritis (Cape, 2013; O'Higgins, 2014). In the past 15 years, skin and soft-tissue infections due to methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (*MRSA*) have become prevalent (Chap. 67, p. 1196). However, *MRSA* is more commonly implicated in abdominal and perineal incisional infections and less often in puerperal metritis (Anderson, 2007; Patel, 2007).

Group A β-hemolytic streptococcal infections have a reported incidence of 1 in 1220 births (Rottenstreich, 2019). During the past 25 years, group A streptococcus has been reported to cause a toxic shock–like syndrome and life-threatening infection (Donders, 2021; Gustafson, 2017; Shinar, 2016). In reviews by Crum (2002) and Udagawa (1999), group A streptococcal infections manifested before, during, or within 12 hours of delivery. Affected women had a maternal mortality rate of almost 90 percent, and the fetal mortality rate exceeded 50 percent.

The role of other organisms in the etiology of these infections is unclear. Observations of Chaim and coworkers (2003) suggest that heavy cervical colonization of *U urealyticum* may contribute to metritis development. To counter this potential pathogen, azithromycin-based extended-spectrum antibiotic prophylaxis reduces postoperative cesarean delivery infections from 12 to 6 percent compared with β-lactam agents alone (Harper, 2017; Tita, 2016). Chlamydial infections have been implicated in late-onset, indolent metritis (Ismail, 1985). Last, Jacobsson and colleagues (2002) reported a threefold higher risk of puerperal infection in a group of Swedish women in whom bacterial vaginosis was identified in early pregnancy (Chap. 68, p. 1216).

Bacterial Cultures. Routine genital tract cultures obtained before treatment serve little clinical use and add significant costs. Women with a temperature >102°F are more likely to have bacteremia (Easter, 2017). Even so, routine blood cultures seldom modify care. In two studies done before perioperative prophylaxis was used, blood cultures were positive in 13 percent of women with postcesarean metritis at Parkland Hospital and in 24 percent of those at Los Angeles County Hospital (Cunningham, 1978; DiZerega, 1979). In a later Finnish study, bacteremia was identified in only 5 percent of women with puerperal sepsis (Kankuri, 2003). Exceptions might be women with exceedingly high temperature spikes that may signify virulent infection with group A streptococci (Chap. 50, p. 890).

Pathogenesis and Clinical Course

Puerperal infection following vaginal delivery primarily involves the placental implantation site, decidua and adjacent myometrium, or cervicovaginal lacerations. The pathogenesis of uterine infection following cesarean delivery is that of an infected surgical incision. Bacteria that colonize the cervix and vagina gain access to the uterus during labor. Postpartum, they invade devitalized uterine tissue. Parametrial cellulitis follows with infection of the pelvic retroperitoneal fibroareolar connective tissue. With early treatment, infection is contained within the parametrial and paravaginal tissue, but it may extend deep into the pelvis.

Fever is the most important criterion for the diagnosis of postpartum metritis. Intuitively, the degree of fever is believed proportional to the extent of infection and sepsis. Temperatures usually are 38 to 39°C, and temperatures >39°C suggest bacteremia or endotoxemia (Easter, 2017; Suffredini, 1989). Women usually complain of abdominal pain, and parametrial tenderness is elicited on abdominal and bimanual examination. Leukocytosis may range from 15,000 to 30,000 cells/μL, but recall that cesarean delivery itself raises the leukocyte count. Although an offensive odor can develop, many women have foul-smelling lochia without evidence for infection, and vice versa. Some other infections, notably those caused by group A β-hemolytic streptococci, may be associated with scant, odorless lochia (Anderson, 2014).

Treatment

If metritis develops following vaginal delivery, treatment with an oral or intramuscular antimicrobial agent may be sufficient (Meaney-Delman, 2015). For moderate to severe infections, however, intravenous therapy with a broad-spectrum antibiotic regimen is indicated. Improvement occurs in 48 to 72 hours in nearly 90 percent of women treated with one of several regimens discussed below. Persistent fever after this interval mandates a careful search for causes of refractory pelvic infection. These include a parametrial phlegmon—an area of intense cellulitis; an abdominal incisional or pelvic abscess or infected hematoma; and septic pelvic thrombophlebitis. In our experience, persistent fever is seldom due to antimicrobial-resistant bacteria or due to drug side effects. The woman may be discharged home after she has been afebrile for at least 24 hours, and further oral antimicrobial therapy is not needed (Mackeen, 2015).

Choice of Antimicrobials. Therapy is empirical and initial treatment is directed against the mixed flora shown in Table 37-1. For infections following vaginal delivery, as many as 90 percent of women respond to regimens such as ampicillin plus gentamicin. In contrast, anaerobic coverage is included for infections following cesarean delivery (Table 37-2).

In 1979, DiZerega and coworkers compared the effectiveness of clindamycin plus gentamicin with that of penicillin G plus gentamicin for treatment of pelvic infections following cesarean delivery. Women given the clindamycin-gentamicin regimen had a 95-percent response rate, and this regimen is still considered by most to be the standard by which others are measured (Mackeen, 2015). Despite this standard therapy, enterococcal cultures may be persistently positive. The addition

TABLE 37-2. Antimicrobial Regimens for Pelvic Infections Following Cesarean Delivery

Regimen	Comments
Clindamycin + gentamicin	"Gold standard," 90–97% efficacy, once-daily gentamicin dosing acceptable ***Plus*** Ampicillin added to regimen with sepsis or suspected enterococcal infection
Clindamycin + aztreonam	Gentamicin substitute for renal insufficiency
Extended-spectrum penicillins	Piperacillin, piperacillin/tazobactam, ampicillin/sulbactam, ticarcillin/clavulanate
Cephalosporins	Cefotetan, cefoxitin, cefotaxime, ceftriaxone
Vancomycin	Added to other regimens for suspected *Staphylococcus aureus* infections
Metronidazole + ampicillin + gentamicin	Metronidazole has excellent anaerobic coverage
Carbapenems	Imipenem/cilastatin, meropenem, ertapenem; all reserved for special indications

of ampicillin, either initially or following no response after 48 to 72 hours, targets enterococci (Brumfield, 2000).

Many authorities recommend periodical monitoring of serum gentamicin levels. At Parkland Hospital, we do not routinely do so if a woman has adequate renal function, which is evidenced by a normal serum creatinine level. Once-daily dosing versus multiple dosing with gentamicin provides adequate serum levels, and either method has similar cure rates (Livingston, 2003). In the event of diminished glomerular filtration, some recommend a combination of clindamycin and a second-generation cephalosporin, because of potential nephrotoxicity and ototoxicity with gentamicin. Instead, others recommend a combination of clindamycin and aztreonam—the latter is a monobactam compound with activity similar to the aminoglycosides.

The spectra of *β-lactam antimicrobials* include activity against many anaerobic pathogens. Some examples include cephalosporins such as cefoxitin, cefotetan, cefotaxime, and ceftriaxone. Extended-spectrum penicillins are piperacillin, ticarcillin, and mezlocillin. β-lactam antimicrobials are inherently safe and, except for allergic reactions, are free of major toxicity. The *β-lactamase inhibitors* clavulanic acid, sulbactam, and tazobactam have been combined with ampicillin, amoxicillin, ticarcillin, and piperacillin to extend their spectra. *Metronidazole* has superior in vitro activity against most anaerobes. This agent given with ampicillin and an aminoglycoside provides coverage against most organisms encountered in serious pelvic infections. It is also used second line to treat some cases of *Clostridioides difficile* colitis.

Imipenem and similar antimicrobials are in the carbapenem family. These offer broad-spectrum coverage against most organisms associated with metritis. Imipenem coupled with *cilastatin* inhibits the antibiotic's renal metabolism. Because of imipenem's higher cost, it is reasonable from both a medical and an economic standpoint to reserve this drug for serious nonobstetrical infections.

Vancomycin is a glycopeptide antimicrobial active against gram-positive bacteria. It is used in lieu of β-lactam therapy for a patient with a type 1 allergic reaction and given for suspected infections due to *S aureus* and to treat *C difficile* colitis (Chap. 57, p. 1019).

Perioperative Prophylaxis

The use of periprocedural techniques for infection prevention is common in obstetrics (Table 37-3). Numerous studies show that prophylactic antibiotics at the time of cesarean delivery reduce wound and postpartum pelvic infection rates (Carter, 2017; Smaill, 2014). The observed benefit applies to both elective and nonelective cesarean delivery. As noted from preliminary data, antimicrobials may decrease pelvic infection rates after operative vaginal delivery (p. 650). However, data are insufficient to suggest prophylactic antimicrobials lower infection rates after spontaneous vaginal delivery, repair of all episiotomies, or manual extraction of the placenta (Bonet 2017a,b; Chongsomchai, 2014). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a) concluded that a single antibiotic dose with third- and fourth-degree perineal laceration is reasonable and has evidenced-based support.

Single-dose prophylaxis with a 2-g dose of a first-generation cephalosporin is ideal. This regimen has similar efficacy of broad-spectrum agents or multiple-dose regimens (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018b). For obese women, evidence supports a 3-g dose of cefazolin to reach optimal tissue concentrations (Swank, 2015). Some evidence supports addition of azithromycin to lower postcesarean uterine infection rates (Markwei, 2021; Pierce, 2021; Tita, 2016). Women colonized with *MRSA* are given vancomycin

TABLE 37-3. Various Prophylactic Methods for Decreasing Pelvic and Wound Infection Rates Following Delivery

Route	Method	Study Results
Routine delivery	Peripartum antimicrobials	Limited evidence, may reduce risk (Bonet, 2017a)
Episiotomy	Perioperative prophylaxis	Insufficient evidence (Bonet, 2017b)
Operative vaginal delivery	Peripartum antimicrobials	Limited evidence, may reduce risk (Knight, 2019)
Cesarean delivery	Perioperative antimicrobial prophylaxis	Decreased 70–80% (Carter, 2017; Smaill, 2014)
Cesarean delivery	Skin preparation	Decreased incidence (Hadiati, 2018)

in addition to a cephalosporin (Chap. 67, p. 1196). It is controversial whether the infection rate is reduced further if the antimicrobial is given before the skin incision compared with after umbilical cord clamping (Baaqeel, 2013; Macones, 2012; Sun, 2013; Ward, 2016). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018b) has concluded that the evidence favors predelivery administration.

Most women with a stated allergy to penicillin are not prone to developing anaphylaxis. Without a history of anaphylaxis, most of these women can safely be given a cephalosporin (Chap. 30, p. 551). If not, then vancomycin is given along with clindamycin and gentamicin (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018b).

Preoperative abdominal skin preparation decreases the risk for pelvic and wound infections (Hadiati, 2018). Skin preparation with chlorhexidine-alcohol is superior to iodine-alcohol for preventing surgical-site infections (Tuuli, 2016). Additive beneficial effects may be gained by preoperative vaginal cleansing with povidone-iodine rinse or application of metronidazole gel (Caissutti, 2017; Felder, 2019; Haas, 2018).

Other Methods of Prophylaxis. Several studies have addressed the value of prenatal cervicovaginal cultures. These are obtained in the hope of identifying pathogens that might be eradicated to lower incidences of preterm labor, chorioamnionitis, and puerperal infections. Unfortunately, treatment of asymptomatic vaginal infections does not prevent these complications. For asymptomatic bacterial vaginosis, Carey and associates (2000) reported no beneficial effects for women treated. For asymptomatic *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection, a similar postpartum infection rate was found in women treated in the second trimester compared with placebo-treated women (Klebanoff, 2001).

Technical maneuvers done to alter the postcesarean infection rate have been studied (Chap. 30, p. 551). Allowing the placenta to separate spontaneously and exteriorizing the uterus to close the hysterotomy may reduce the infection risk (Jacobs-Jokhan, 2004; Lasley, 1997). However, changing gloves after placental delivery, cleaning the intrauterine cavity, and dilating the lower segment and cervix do not alter the infection rate (Atkinson, 1996; Eke, 2019; Liabsuetrakul, 2018). No differences were found in postoperative infection rates when single- and two-layer uterine closures were compared (Hauth, 1992). Similarly, infection rates are not affected by closure versus nonclosure of the peritoneum (Bamigboye, 2014; Tulandi, 2003). Importantly, closure of subcutaneous tissue in obese women does not lower the wound infection rate, but it does decrease the wound separation incidence (Chelmow, 2004). Similarly, skin closure with staples versus suture has a greater incidence of noninfectious skin separation (Mackeen, 2012; Tuuli, 2011).

Complications of Uterine and Pelvic Infections

Metritis responds to antimicrobial treatment within 48 to 72 hours in more than 90 percent of women. In some of the remainder, any of several complications may arise. These include wound infection, complex pelvic infection such as a phlegmon or an abscess, and septic pelvic thrombophlebitis (Brown, 1999; Jaiyeoba, 2012). As with other aspects of puerperal infections, the incidence and severity of these complications are reduced by perioperative antimicrobial prophylaxis.

Abdominal Incisional Infections

Wound infection is a common cause of persistent fever in women treated for metritis. Incisional infection risk factors include obesity, diabetes, corticosteroid therapy, immunosuppression, anemia, hypertension, and hematoma formation from inadequate hemostasis. If prophylactic antimicrobials are given, the incidence of wound infection following cesarean delivery ranges from 2 to 10 percent depending on risk factors (Andrews, 2003; Chaim, 2000). From our experiences at Parkland Hospital, the incidence is closer to 2 percent, but this risk rises with increasing body mass (Hussamy, 2018).

Incisional abscesses that develop following cesarean delivery usually cause persistent fever or fever that begins on approximately the fourth day. The wound is erythematous and drains pus. Organisms that cause wound infections are generally the same as those isolated from amnionic fluid at cesarean delivery, however, hospital-acquired pathogens also may be causative.

Treatment includes antimicrobials and surgical drainage and debridement of devitalized tissue. This typically requires spinal analgesia or general anesthesia. The fascia is carefully inspected to document integrity. Local wound care thereafter is completed twice daily. Before each dressing change, procedural analgesia is tailored to wound size and location, and oral, intramuscular, or intravenous dosage routes are suitable. Topical lidocaine also may be added. Necrotic tissue is removed, and the wound is repacked with moist gauze. At 4 to 6 days, healthy granulation tissue is typically present, and secondary en bloc closure of the open layers can usually be accomplished (Wechter, 2005). As shown in Figure 37-1, a polypropylene or

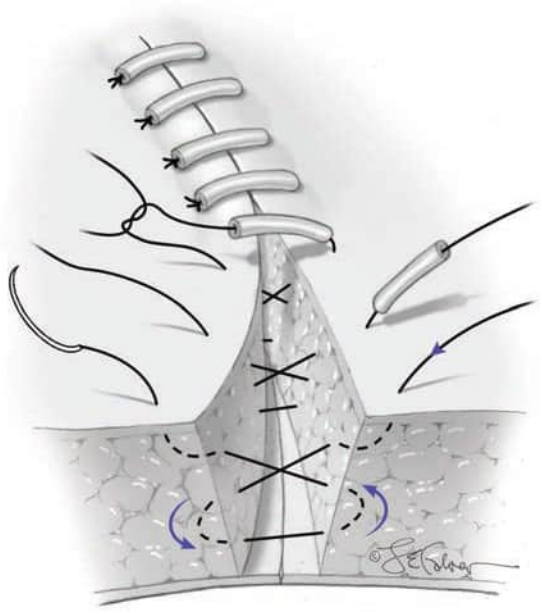


FIGURE 37-1 Secondary abdominal wound closure technique. (Reproduced with permission from Worley KC: Postoperative complications. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al [eds]: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017).

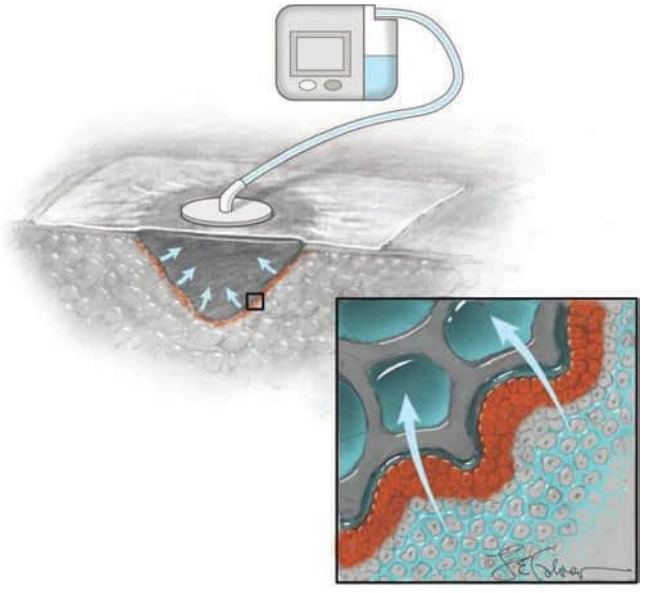


FIGURE 37-2 Theoretical effects of negative-pressure wound therapy include macro- and microdeformation, removal of tissue fluid, and creation of a warm and moist environment. As shown in the inset, tissue fluid is drawn out by suction tubing. It travels through the porous sponge dressing that fills the wound and into an adjacent collection canister. As healing progresses, a layer of granulation tissue (*red*) forms at the wound-sponge interface. (Reproduced with permission from Cunningham FG: Surgical instruments. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al [eds]: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

nylon suture of appropriate gauge enters 2 to 3 cm from one wound edge. It crosses the wound to incorporate the full wound thickness and emerges 3 cm from the other wound edge. These are placed in series to close the opening. In most cases, sutures may be removed on postprocedural day 10.

Vacuum-Assisted Wound Closure

This system promotes healing by applying negative pressure to the wound (Fig. 37-2). The technique is variably referred to as *vacuum-assisted closure (VAC), topical negative pressure (TNP)*, and *negative-pressure wound therapy (NPWT)*. Negative-pressure systems are used for open wounds after infection or for prophylaxis against wound disruption. Mouës and colleagues (2011) confirmed that NPWT enhances blood flow to the wound, promotes angiogenesis, induces cellular proliferation, and shrinks wound size. Several systems are available and widely accepted, despite meager formal evidence for clinical efficacy.

Open abdominal wounds once infection has cleared or an "open surgical abdomen" is a major indication for NPWT. Vacuum therapy is the most efficient method of temporary abdominal closure for patients with open abdominal wounds (Bruhin, 2014; Quyn, 2012). However, no trials have compared vacuum-assisted wound closure with conventional wound care after cesarean delivery. Also, these devices are used for closure of perineal wounds resulting from infected episiotomies, hematomas, or abscesses (Aviki, 2015). Very few randomized trials have compared vacuum-assisted wound closure with conventional wound care (Kawakita, 2021; Yu, 2018).

Prophylaxis. Negative-pressure devices are also marketed to prevent wound infections in incisions closed to heal by primary intention. Such prophylactic use in 441 obese women undergoing cesarean delivery has been evaluated in two large randomized trials. Hussamy and associates (2019) found in obese women that the incidence of wound morbidity was similar in the standard dressing group compared with the NPWT group (Table 37-4). The second trial was a multicenter study from Denmark of 876 obese women (Hyldig, 2019). In the NPWT group, the surgical site infection rate was 4.6 percent compared with 9.2 percent in the group of women treated with standard dressing. Similarly, a systematic review found use of prophylactic NPWT reduced wound complications (Yu, 2018). The cost effectiveness of these systems is inconclusive in multiple studies (Echebiri, 2015; Lewis, 2014). Smid and coworkers (2017) questioned the effectiveness of such therapy. Because of these uncertainties, we agree with Tuuli (2019) that routine use of prophylactic NPWT needs more evaluation before its widespread acceptance.

Fascial Dehiscence

This separation of the fascial layer is a serious complication, and bowel evisceration can be comorbid. Wound infection and obesity are prominent risk factors (Poole, 1985; Subramaniam, 2014). For example, McNeeley and associates (1998) reported a fascial dehiscence rate of approximately 1 per 300 operations in almost 9000 women undergoing cesarean delivery. Two thirds of the 27 fascial dehiscences in this study were associated with concurrent fascial infection and tissue necrosis.

Fascial dehiscence generally presents within the first 7 to 10 postoperative days. Superficial disruption of the subcutaneous layer and extensive leakage of peritoneal fluid or purulent drainage are indicative. In unclear cases, CT scanning may be elected preoperatively, if obtained expeditiously.

Dehiscence is a surgical emergency. If abdominal contents have eviscerated, sterile towels or gauze soaked in saline can be used early to cover and gently replace bowel or omentum. Broad-spectrum antibiotics are generally recommended to minimize ensuing peritonitis.

Given the high mortality risk associated with fascial dehiscence and bowel evisceration, examination under anesthesia to estimate the extent of separation is often warranted. Surgery aims to assess bowel health, debride necrotic wound tissue, and close the fascia, if possible. For closure, an interrupted mass closure using a no. 2 permanent suture is recommended typically (Fig. 37-3). In cases with infection, the subcutaneous layers are left to close secondarily. General surgery consultation is considered if bowel ischemia or difficult fascial closure is anticipated.

■ Necrotizing Fasciitis

This uncommon severe wound infection is associated with high mortality rates. In obstetrics, necrotizing fasciitis may involve abdominal incisions, or it may complicate episiotomy or other perineal lacerations. As the name implies, tissue necrosis is significant. Of the risk factors for fasciitis summarized by Owen and Andrews (1994), diabetes, obesity, and hypertension are increasingly common in gravidas. Like pelvic infections, this wound complication usually is polymicrobial and caused by

TABLE 37-4. Randomized Trial of Prophylactic Incisional Negative-Pressure Wound Therapy (iNPWT) Versus Standard Surgical Dressing for Morbidly Obese Women Undergoing Cesarean Delivery

Factor	iNPWT (N = 222)	Standard (N = 219)	Significance
BMI at delivery	46.6 ± 6.0	45.8 ± 5.8	NS
Cesarean delivery			
Primary	43%	37%	$p = 0.18$
Secondary	57%	63%	$p = 0.18$
Scheduled	32%	33%	$p = 0.99$
Unscheduled	68%	67%	$p = 0.99$
Pfannenstiel	23%	28%	$p = 0.29$
Vertical midline	77%	72%	$p = 0.29$
Incision			
Depth	5.5 ± 1.7	5.3 ± 1.8	$p = 0.19$
Length	14.5 ± 2.5	14.6 ± 2.9	$p = 0.74$
Wound morbidity			
Cellulitis	32%	38%	RR = 0.7 (95% CI, 0.3 – 1.7)
Superficial SSI	54%	61%	RR = 0.8 (95% CI, 0.4 – 1.5)
Dehiscence	11%	2%	RR = 3.9 (95% CI, 0.4 – 194)
Composite outcome	17%	19%	RR = 0.9 (95% CI, 0.5 – 1.4)
Readmission	5%	4%	RR = 1.3 (95% CI, 0.5 – 3.5)
Reoperation	6%	5%	RR = 1.4 (95% CI, 0.6 – 3.5)

BMI = body mass index; CI, confidence interval; NS = not significant; RR = relative risk; SSI = surgical site infection.
Data from Hussamy, 2018, 2019.

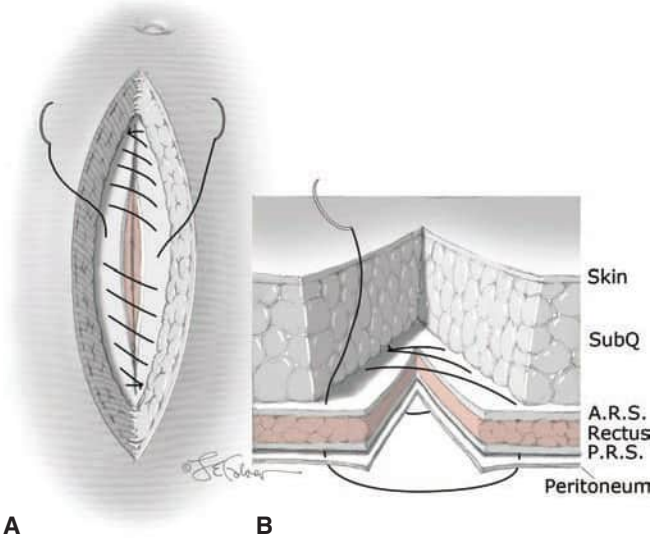


FIGURE 37-3 Mass closure: each stitch is placed 1.5 to 2 cm from the wound edge **(A)** and incorporates the peritoneum, rectus muscle, and rectus sheath **(B)**. Stitches are spaced 1 cm apart along the length of the incision. A.R.S. = anterior rectus sheath; P.R.S. = posterior rectus sheath; SubQ = subcutaneous layer. (Reproduced with permission from Cundiff GW: Incisions and closures. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al [eds]: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

organisms that make up the normal vaginal flora. In some cases, however, infection is caused by a single virulent bacterial species such as group A β-hemolytic streptococcus (Anderson, 2014; Rimawi, 2012). Occasionally, rarely encountered pathogens cause necrotizing infections (Chong, 2016; Swartz, 2004).

Goepfert and coworkers (1997) described nine cases of necrotizing fasciitis in more than 5000 cesarean deliveries. The infection was fatal in two women—one with metastatic breast cancer and the other with sepsis. In another report, Schorge and colleagues (1998) described five women with fasciitis following cesarean delivery. None of these women had predisposing risk factors, and none died.

Infection may involve skin, superficial and deep subcutaneous tissues, and any of the abdominopelvic fascial layers. In some cases, muscle also is involved—*myofasciitis*. Most of these necrotizing infections do not cause symptoms until 3 to 5 days after delivery. Some virulent infections develop earlier. Clinical findings vary, and it is frequently difficult to differentiate more innocuous superficial wound infections from a deep fascial one. If myofasciitis progresses, the woman may become ill from septicemia. A high index of suspicion, with surgical exploration if the diagnosis is uncertain, may be lifesaving (Goh, 2014). We aggressively pursue early exploration (Chap. 50, p. 890).

Successful treatment of necrotizing soft-tissue infections involves early diagnosis, source control by surgical

debridement, antimicrobials, and intensive care (Gallup, 2002; Goh, 2014; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2019). Surgery includes thorough debridement of all infected tissue, leaving wide margins of healthy bleeding tissue. This may include extensive abdominal or vulvar debridement and excision of abdominal, thigh, or buttock fascia. Death is virtually universal without surgical treatment, and rates approach 50 percent even if exhaustive debridement is performed (Johnson, 2020). With substantial resection, synthetic mesh may ultimately be required later to close the fascial incision once infection is cleared (Gallup, 2002; McNeeley, 1998).

■ Peritonitis and Adnexal Abscesses

Following cesarean delivery, peritonitis is infrequent. It almost always is preceded by metritis, especially cases with uterine incisional necrosis and dehiscence. However, it may stem from a ruptured adnexal abscess or an inadvertent intraoperative bowel injury. Perforative appendicitis also can cause peritonitis (Chap. 57, p. 1024). In these cases, prompt surgical treatment is usually indicated.

After vaginal delivery, peritonitis is rarely encountered, and many such cases are due to virulent strains of group A β-hemolytic streptococci or similar organisms. Importantly, abdominal rigidity may not be prominent with puerperal peritonitis because of physiological abdominal wall laxity from pregnancy. Pain may be severe, but frequently, the first symptoms of peritonitis are those of *adynamic ileus.* Marked bowel distention may develop, which is unusual after vaginal birth. Normally, if the infection begins in an intact uterus and extends into the peritoneum, antimicrobial treatment alone suffices.

An *ovarian abscess* rarely develops in the puerperium. These are presumably caused by bacterial invasion through an opening in the ovarian capsule (Wetchler, 1985). The abscess is usually unilateral, and women typically present 1 to 2 weeks after delivery. Rupture is common, and peritonitis may be severe.

■ Parametrial Phlegmon

For some women in whom metritis develops following cesarean delivery, parametrial cellulitis is intense and forms an area of induration—a *phlegmon*—within the leaves of the broad ligament (Fig. 37-4). These infections are considered when fever persists longer than 72 hours despite intravenous antimicrobial therapy (Brown, 1999; DePalma, 1982).

Phlegmons are usually unilateral, and they frequently are limited to the parametrium at the base of the broad ligament. If the inflammatory reaction is more intense, cellulitis extends along natural lines of cleavage. The most common form of extension is laterally along the broad ligament, with a tendency to extend to the pelvic sidewall. Occasionally, posterior extension may involve the rectovaginal septum, producing a firm mass posterior to the cervix. In most women, clinical improvement follows continued treatment with a broad-spectrum antimicrobial regimen. Typically, fever resolves in 5 to 7 days.

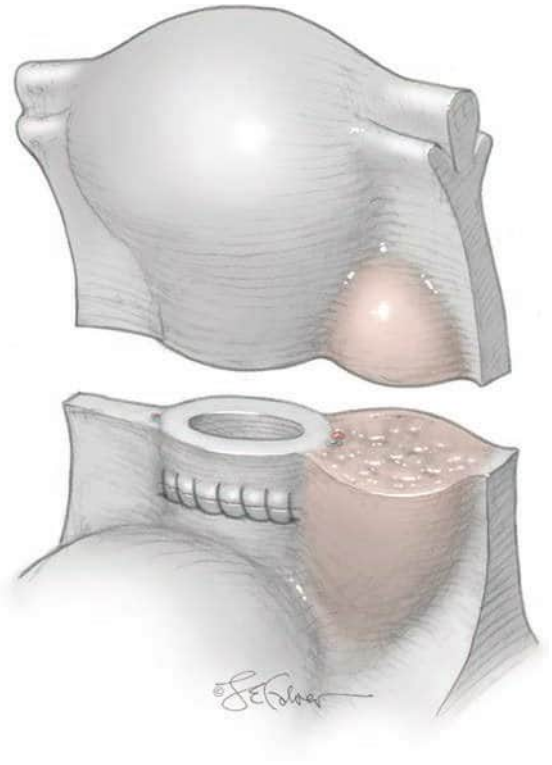


FIGURE 37-4 Left-sided parametrial phlegmon: cellulitis causes induration in the parametrium adjacent to the hysterotomy incision. (Reproduced with permission from Worley KC: Postoperative complications. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al [eds]: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017).

Severe cellulitis of the uterine incision may ultimately lead to necrosis and separation (Treszezamsky, 2011). Extrusion of purulent material causes intraabdominal abscess formation and peritonitis as described above. Surgery is reserved for women in whom uterine incisional necrosis is suspected. For most, hysterectomy and surgical debridement are needed. These cases are difficult because the cervix and lower uterine segment are involved with an intense inflammatory process that extends to the pelvic sidewall. The adnexa are seldom involved, and one or both ovaries can usually be conserved. Blood loss is often appreciable, and transfusion is common.

Imaging Studies

Persistent puerperal infections can be evaluated using computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance (MR) imaging (Wang, 2020). Brown and associates (1991) used CT imaging in women in whom pelvic infection was refractory to antimicrobial therapy given for 5 days. They found at least one abnormal radiological finding in 75 percent of these women, and most were nonsurgical lesions. Fishel Bartal and colleagues (2018) reported abnormal CT findings in almost 60 percent of women with refractory fever persisting >3 days. Pelvic fluid collections were seen in 22 percent, and surgical intervention was prompted in 8 percent. Thus, imaging can be used to dissuade surgical exploration in most cases.

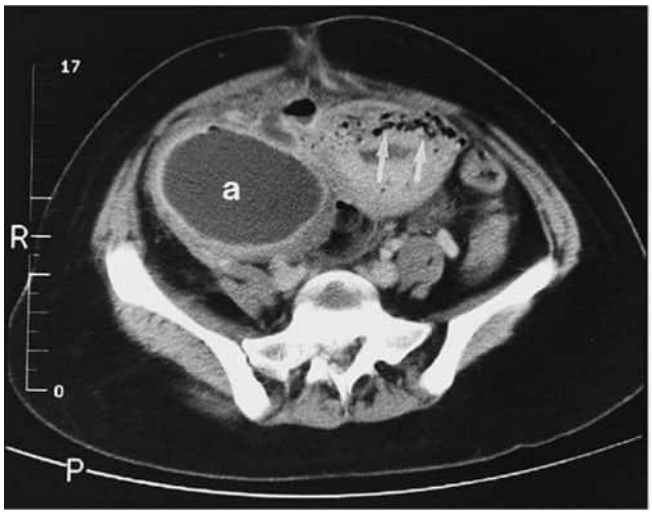


FIGURE 37-5 Pelvic computed tomography scan showing necrosis of the uterine incision with gas in the myometrium (*arrows*). A large abscess (*a*) fills the right parametrium.

Uterine incisional dehiscence such as shown in Figure 37-5 can sometimes be confirmed based on CT images. These findings must be interpreted within the clinical context because apparent uterine incisional defects thought to represent edema can be seen even after uncomplicated cesarean delivery. Shown in Figure 37-6 is a necrotic hysterotomy incision, which had leaked into the peritoneal cavity.

Occasionally, a parametrial phlegmon may suppurate, forming a fluctuant broad ligament abscess that may point above the inguinal ligament. These abscesses can dissect anteriorly and be amenable to CT-directed needle drainage. A *psoas abscess* is rare, and despite antimicrobial therapy, percutaneous drainage may be required to effectively treat it (Shahabi, 2002; Swanson, 2008). If a phlegmon involving the rectovaginal septum suppurates, surgical drainage is easily effected by colpotomy. Absorption of the induration may require several days to weeks.

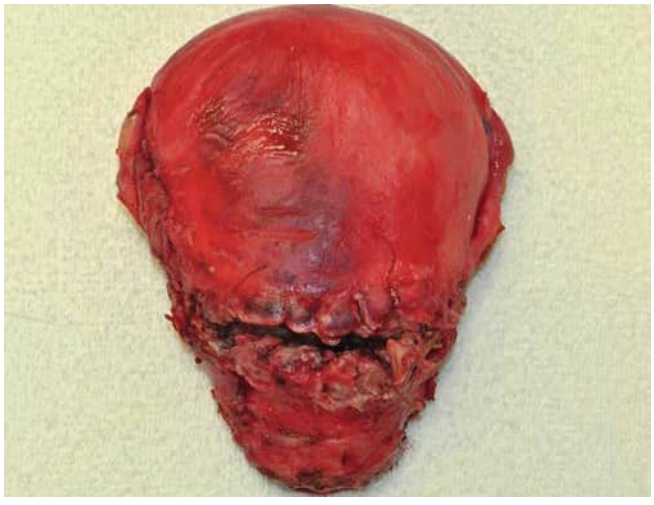


FIGURE 37-6 Necrotic hysterotomy infection. Severe cellulitis of the uterine incision resulted in dehiscence with subsequent leakage into the peritoneal cavity. Hysterectomy was required for sufficient debridement of necrotic tissue. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Denisse Holcomb.)

Septic Pelvic Thrombophlebitis

Suppurative thrombophlebitis was a frequent complication in the preantibiotic era, and septic embolization was common. However, with the advent of antimicrobial therapy, the mortality rate and need for surgical therapy for these infections diminished. Septic phlebitis arises as an extension along venous routes and may cause thrombosis. Lymphangitis often coexists. The ovarian veins may then become involved because they drain the upper uterus and therefore the placental implantation site. The experiences of Witlin and Sibai (1995) and Brown and coworkers (1999) suggest that puerperal septic thrombophlebitis is likely to involve one or both ovarian venous plexuses. In a fourth of women, the clot extends into the inferior vena cava and occasionally to the renal vein.

The incidence of septic phlebitis varies in several reports. In a 5-year survey of 45,000 women who were delivered at Parkland Hospital, Brown and workers (1999) found an incidence of 1 case per 9000 vaginal births and 1 per 800 cesarean deliveries. In a cohort of 16,650 women undergoing primary cesarean delivery, Rouse and coworkers (2004) reported an incidence of 1 case per 400 surgeries. Incidences approximated 1 per 175 cesarean deliveries if chorioamnionitis was antecedent, but only 1 per 500 if there was no intrapartum infection.

Except for chills and occasional lower quadrant pain, women with septic thrombophlebitis usually lack symptoms (Wouterlood, 2021). The diagnosis can be confirmed by pelvic CT or MR imaging (Fig. 37-7). Using either, Brown and coworkers (1999) found that 20 percent of 69 women with persistent fever following >5 days of antimicrobial therapy for metritis had septic pelvic thrombophlebitis. In a later study, Fischel Bartal and associates (2018) reported that 6 percent of women with refractory fever ≥3 days had septic phlebitis. These women normally have symptomatic improvement with antimicrobial treatment, however, they continue to have fever.

Treatment with heparin is controversial. In a randomized study of 14 women, the addition of heparin to antimicrobial therapy for septic pelvic thrombophlebitis did not hasten recovery or improve outcome (Brown, 1999). We and others are of the opinion that heparin is unnecessary (Witlin, 1995). Others, however, continue to recommend anticoagulation (Klima, 2008; Lenz, 2017). Certainly, no evidence supports long-term anticoagulation (Brown, 2018).

Perineal Infections

Episiotomy infections are uncommon, because the operation is now performed less frequently (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018a; Dillon, 2019). Reasons for this are discussed in Chapter 27 (p. 510). In an older study, Owen and Hauth (1990) described only 10 episiotomy infections in 20,000 women delivered vaginally. With infection, however, dehiscence is a concern. Ramin and colleagues (1992) reported an episiotomy dehiscence rate of 0.5 percent at Parkland Hospital, and 80 percent of these were infected. Uygur and associates (2004) reported a 1-percent dehiscence rate and attributed two thirds to infection.

When the anal sphincter is disrupted at delivery, the subsequent infection rate is higher and is likely influenced by intrapartum antimicrobial treatment (Buppasiri, 2014; Stock, 2013).

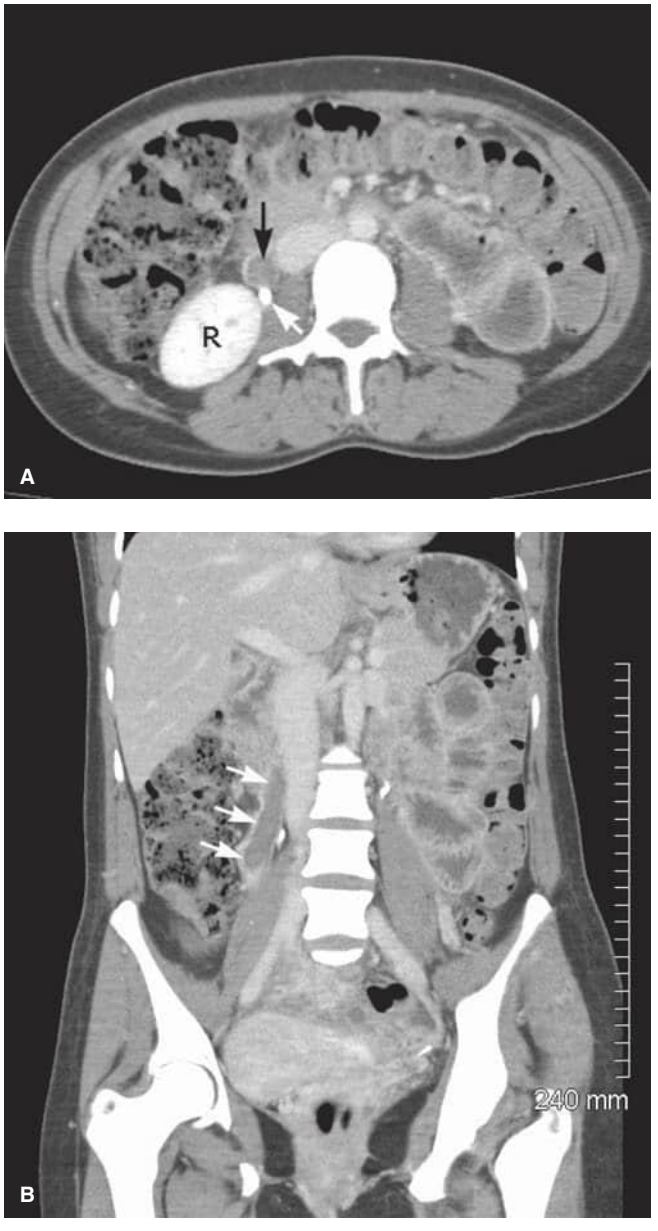


FIGURE 37-7 Septic ovarian vein thrombosis—contrast-enhanced computed tomography scan: **A.** Enlarged right ovarian vein filled with low-density thrombus (*black arrow*). Contrast is seen in ureter (*white arrow*). *R* = lower pole, right kidney. **B.** Coronal image demonstrates enlarged right ovarian vein filled with low-density thrombus (*arrows*). (B: Reproduced with permission from Dr. April Bailey in Worley KC: Postoperative complications. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al [eds]: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

Lewicky-Gaupp and colleagues (2015) reported a 20-percent infection rate when the sphincter was torn. Goldaber and coworkers (1993) described fourth-degree lacerations in 390 parturients, of whom 5.4 percent had morbidity. In these women, 2.8 percent had infection and dehiscence, 1.8 percent had only dehiscence, and 0.8 percent only infection.

Pathogenesis and Clinical Course

As noted, perineal laceration infection may be complicated by dehiscence. Other factors for separation include coagulation disorders, smoking, and human papillomavirus infection (Ramin, 1994). No data suggest that dehiscence is related to faulty repair.

With infection, local pain and dysuria, with or without urinary retention, are frequent symptoms. Ramin and colleagues (1992) reported that the most common findings were pain in 65 percent, purulent discharge in 65 percent, and fever in 44 percent. In extreme cases, the entire vulva may become edematous, ulcerated, and covered with exudate. Although life-threatening, septic shock or necrotizing fasciitis is rare (p. 654).

Vaginal lacerations may also become infected directly or by extension from the perineum. The epithelium becomes red and swollen and may then become necrotic and slough. Parametrial extension can lead to lymphangitis. Cervical lacerations are seldom noticeably infected, but instead may manifest as metritis. Deep lacerations that extend directly into the base of the broad ligament may become infected and cause lymphangitis, parametritis, and bacteremia.

Treatment

Infected episiotomies are managed similar to other infected surgical wounds. In women with obvious cellulitis but no purulence, close observation and broad-spectrum antimicrobial therapy alone may be appropriate. With purulence, drainage is established, and in most cases, sutures are removed and the infected wound debrided. With dehiscence, local wound care is coupled with intravenous antimicrobials. Hauth and associates (1986) were the first to advocate for early episiotomy repair after infection subsided. Hankins and colleagues (1990) described successful early repair in 94 percent of women, and the average duration from dehiscence to repair was 6 days. The two women with failures developed a pinpoint rectovaginal fistula that was treated with a small rectal flap. Other studies have shown similar high rates with early repair (Ramin, 1992; Uygur, 2004).

Before performing early repair, diligent preparation is essential (Table 37-5). The surgical wound must be properly cleaned and cleared of infection. Once the surface of the wound is free

TABLE 37-5. Preoperative Protocol for Early Repair of Episiotomy Dehiscence

Open wound, remove sutures, begin intravenous antimicrobials
Initiate wound care:
Institute sitz bath several times daily or hydrotherapy
Provide adequate analgesia or anesthesia—regional analgesia or general anesthesia may be necessary for initial debridements
Scrub wound twice daily with a povidone-iodine solution
Debride necrotic tissue
Close wound when afebrile and pink, healthy granulation tissue present
Provide enemas prior to fourth-degree repair
Institute postoperative stool softeners; normal diet, nothing per vagina or rectum

of exudate and covered by pink granulation tissue, secondary repair can be accomplished. The tissue must be adequately mobilized, with special attention to identify and mobilize the anal sphincter muscle. A tension-free suture line is essential to avoid repeated dehiscence. Secondary closure of the wound is accomplished in layers, as described for primary episiotomy closure (Chap. 27, p. 510). Postoperative care includes local wound care, stool softeners, and nothing per vagina or rectum until healed. Hard stools risk wound disruption, but liquid stool can seep between sutures to reincite infection. Thus, soft formed stools are the goal.

■ Toxic Shock Syndrome

This acute febrile illness with severe multisystem derangement has a case-fatality rate of 10 to 15 percent. Usual findings are fever, headache, mental confusion, diffuse macular erythematous rash, nausea, vomiting, watery diarrhea, and marked hemoconcentration. Renal failure followed by hepatic failure, disseminated intravascular coagulation, and circulatory collapse may progress in rapid sequence. During recovery, the rash-covered areas desquamate. In early investigations of toxic shock syndrome (TSS), *Staphylococcus aureus* was recovered from almost all afflicted persons. Specifically, a staphylococcal exotoxin, termed *toxic shock syndrome toxin 1 (TSST-1)*, was found to cause the clinical manifestations by provoking profound endothelial injury. A very small amount of TSST-1 can activate T cells to create a "cytokine storm" (Heying, 2007; Que, 2005). Toxic shock syndrome has also been reported with *MRSA* (Deguchi, 2018).

Subsequent investigations have also implicated virulent group A β-hemolytic streptococcal infection (Anderson, 2014; Rottenstreich, 2019; Shinar, 2016). Heavy colonization or infection is complicated in some cases by *streptococcal toxic shock syndrome,* which is produced when pyrogenic exotoxin is elaborated. Serotypes M1 and M3 are particularly virulent (Beres, 2004; Okumura, 2004). Last, almost identical findings of toxic shock have been reported in pregnant women with *Clostridium sordellii* and *novyi* colonization (Herrera, 2016; Robbie, 2000).

Thus, in some cases of toxic shock syndrome, infection is not apparent, and colonization of a mucosal surface is the presumed source (Olp, 2020). At least 10 to 20 percent of pregnant women have vaginal colonization with *S aureus.* And *Clostridium perfringens* and *sordellii* are cultured from 3 to 10 percent of asymptomatic women (Chong, 2016). Thus, it is not surprising that the disease develops in postpartum women when growth of vaginal bacteria is abundant (Chen, 2006; Guerinot, 1982).

Delayed diagnosis and treatment are associated with maternal mortality (Schummer, 2002). Crum and colleagues (2002) described a neonatal death following antenatal toxic shock syndrome. Principal therapy is supportive, while allowing reversal of capillary endothelial injury. Antimicrobial therapy includes coverage against staphylococcal and streptococcal species. With evidence of pelvic infection, antimicrobial therapy must also include agents used for polymicrobial infections. Women with these infections may require wound debridement and possibly hysterectomy. Because the toxin is so potent, the mortality rate is correspondingly high (Hotchkiss, 2003).

BREAST INFECTIONS

Parenchymal infection of the mammary glands is a rare antepartum complication, but the postpartum incidence of mastitis approximates 3 percent (Lee, 2010). No evidence supports use of prophylactic measures to prevent breast infection (Crepinsek, 2012). Risk factors include nursing difficulties, cracked nipples, and oral antibiotic therapy (Branch-Elliman, 2012; Mediano, 2014).

Symptoms of suppurative mastitis seldom appear before the end of the first week postpartum and usually are not seen until the third or fourth week. Infection almost invariably is unilateral, and marked engorgement usually precedes inflammation. Symptoms include chills or actual rigors, which are soon followed by fever and tachycardia. Pain is severe, and the breast(s) becomes hard and red. Approximately 10 percent of women with mastitis develop an abscess. Detection of fluctuation may be difficult, and sonography is usually diagnostic (Fig. 37-8). Although rare, toxic shock syndrome from mastitis caused by *S aureus* has been reported (Demey, 1989; Fujiwara, 2001).

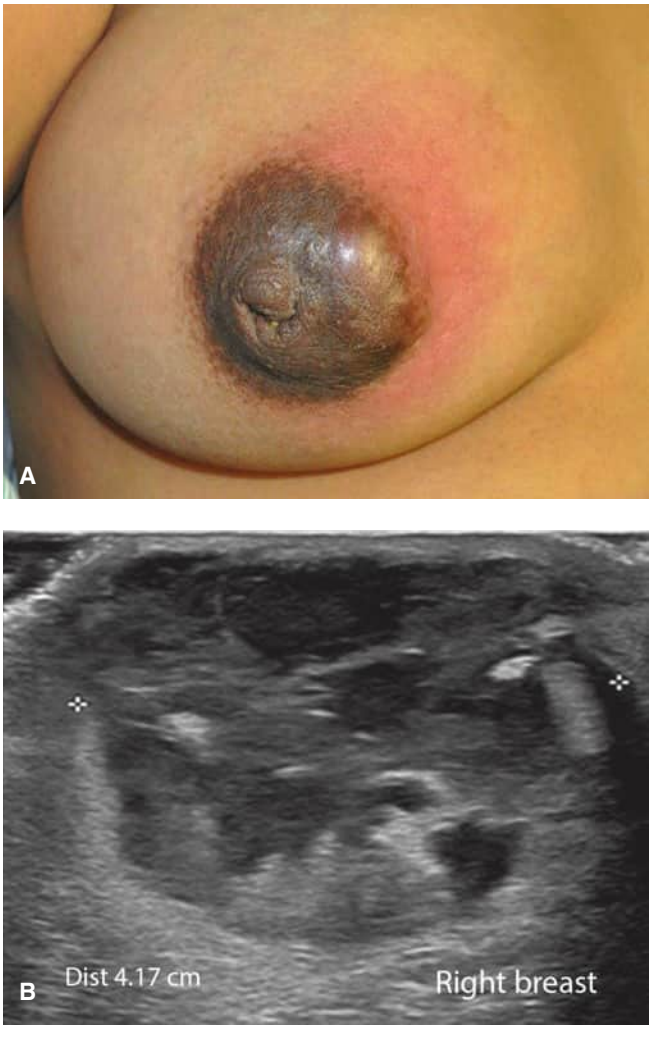


FIGURE 37-8 Puerperal mastitis with breast abscess. **A.** Indurated, erythematous skin overlies the area of right-sided breast infection. **B.** Sonographic picture of this 5-cm abscess.

Etiology

S aureus, especially *MRSA*, is the most commonly isolated organism in breast infections. Matheson and coworkers (1988) found it in 40 percent of women with mastitis. Other commonly isolated organisms are coagulase-negative staphylococci and viridans streptococci. The immediate source of mastitis-causing organisms is almost always the newborn's nose and throat. Bacteria enter the breast through the nipple at fissures or small abrasions. The infecting organism can usually be cultured from milk.

At times, suppurative mastitis reaches epidemic levels among nursing mothers. Such outbreaks most often coincide with the appearance of a new strain of antibiotic-resistant staphylococcus. A contemporaneous example is *MRSA*, which has rapidly become the most commonly isolated staphylococcal species in some areas (Berens, 2010; Klevens, 2007). At Parkland Hospital from 2000 to 2004, Laibl and associates (2005) reported that a fourth of community-acquired *MRSA* isolates were from pregnant or postpartum women with mastitis. Hospital-acquired *MRSA* may cause mastitis when the newborn becomes colonized after contact with nursery personnel who are colonized (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2006). Stafford and colleagues (2008) found a higher incidence of recurrent abscess in those with *MRSA*-associated mastitis.

Management

Provided that appropriate therapy for mastitis is started before suppuration begins, the infection usually resolves within 48 hours. Many recommend that milk be expressed from the affected breast onto a swab and cultured before beginning therapy. Bacterial identification and antimicrobial sensitivities can provide information for a successful program of nosocomial infection surveillance (Lee, 2010).

The most effective treatment has not been clarified (Jahanfar, 2013). Thus, the initial antimicrobial choice is influenced by current experience with staphylococcal infections at a given institution. Dicloxacillin, 500 mg orally four times daily, may be started empirically. Erythromycin is given to women who are penicillin sensitive. If the infection is caused by resistant, penicillinase-producing staphylococcus species or if resistant organisms are suspected while awaiting the culture results, then vancomycin, clindamycin, or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole is given (Sheffield, 2013). Although clinical response may be prompt, treatment is recommended for 10 days.

Marshall and coworkers (1975) demonstrated the importance of continued breastfeeding. They reported that of 65 women with mastitis, the only three who developed abscesses were among the 15 women who quit breastfeeding. Vigorous milk expression may be sufficient treatment alone (Thomsen, 1984). Sometimes the infant will not nurse on the inflamed breast. This probably is not related to any changes in the milk taste but is secondary to engorgement and edema, which can make the areola harder to grip. Pumping can alleviate this. When nursing bilaterally, it is best to begin suckling on the uninvolved breast. This allows let-down to commence before moving to the tender breast.

In resource-poor countries, breastfeeding in women infected with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) is not contraindicated. However, in the setting of mastitis or breast abscess, it is recommended to stop feeding from the infected breast. This is because HIV RNA levels rise in affected breast milk. These levels return to baseline after symptoms resolve (Semrau, 2013).

Breast Abscess

In a population-based study of nearly 1.5 million Swedish women, the incidence of breast abscess was 0.1 percent (Kvist, 2005). An abscess should be suspected when defervescence does not follow within 48 to 72 hours of treatment or when a mass is palpable. Again, sonographic imaging is valuable. Breast abscesses can be large, and in one case report, 2 L of pus were released (Martic, 2012). Traditional therapy has been surgical drainage, which usually requires general anesthesia. The incision ideally is placed along Langer skin lines for a cosmetic result (Stehman, 1990). In early cases, a single incision over the most dependent portion of fluctuation is usually sufficient. Multiple abscesses require several incisions and disruption of loculations. The resulting cavity is loosely packed with gauze, which should be replaced at the end of 24 hours by a smaller pack.

More recently, sonographically guided needle aspiration using local analgesia has become favored (Patani, 2018). This has an 80- to 90-percent success rate (Geiss, 2014). In a randomized trial, Naeem and colleagues (2012) compared surgical drainage with aspiration. At 8 weeks, they found 93 percent undergoing aspiration were healed compared with 77 percent undergoing surgical drainage. Sonographic findings, initial choice of antimicrobials, and infecting organism do not predict aspiration failure (David, 2018).

Other etiologies should be considered in the setting of a nonhealing abscess. Rarely, *granulomatous mastitis* presents as puerperal mastitis (Ding, 2021 Freeman, 2017). Cancer or tuberculosis are other considerations (Wu, 2020).

REFERENCES

Acosta CD, Bhattacharya S, Tuffnell D, et al: Maternal sepsis: a Scottish population-based case-control study. BJOG 119(4):474, 2012

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention and management of obstetrical lacerations at vaginal birth. Practice Bulletin No. 198, June 2018a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Use of prophylactic antibiotics in labor and delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 199, August 2018b

Anderson BL: Puerperal group A streptococcal infection: beyond Semmelweis. Obstet Gynecol 123(4):874, 2014

Anderson DJ, Sexton DJ, Kanafani ZA, et al: Severe surgical site infection in community hospitals: epidemiology, key procedures, and the changing prevalence of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol 28 (9):1047, 2007

Andrews WW, Hauth JC, Cliver SP, et al: Randomized clinical trial of extended spectrum antibiotic prophylaxis with coverage for *Ureaplasma urealyticum* to reduce post-cesarean delivery endometritis. Obstet Gynecol 101:1183, 2003

Andrews WW, Shah SR, Goldenberg RL, et al: Association of post-cesarean delivery endometritis with colonization of the chorioamnion by *Ureaplasma urealyticum*. Obstet Gynecol 85:509, 1995

Atkinson MW, Owen J, Wren A, et al: The effect of manual removal of the placenta on post-cesarean endometritis. Obstet Gynecol 87:99, 1996

Aviki EM, Batalden RP, del Carmen MG, et al: Vacuum-assisted closure for episiotomy dehiscence. Obstet Gynecol 126(3):530, 2015

Axelsson D, Brynhildsen J, Blomberg M: Postpartum infection in relation to maternal characteristics, obstetric interventions, and complications. J Perinat Med 46(3):271, 2018

Baaqeel H, Baaqeel R: Timing of administration of prophylactic antibiotics for caesarean section: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 120(6): 661, 2013

Bamigboye AA, Hofmeyr GJ: Closure versus non-closure of the peritoneum at caesarean section. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD000163, 2014

Berens P, Swaim L, Peterson B: Incidence of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in postpartum breast abscesses. Breastfeed Med 5(3):113, 2010

Beres SB, Sylva GL, Sturdevant DE, et al: Genome-wide molecular dissection of serotype M3 group A *Streptococcus* strains causing two epidemics of invasive infections. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 101:11833, 2004

Berg CJ, Harper MA, Atkinson SM, et al: Preventability of pregnancy-related deaths: results of a state-wide review. Obstet Gynecol 106:1228, 2005

Boggess KA, Tita A, Jauk V, et al: Risk factors for postcesarean maternal infection in a trial of extended-spectrum antibiotic prophylaxis. Obstet Gynecol 129(3):481, 2017

Bonet M, Ota E, Chibueze CE, et al: Antibiotic prophylaxis for episiotomy repair following vaginal birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD012136, 2017a

Bonet M, Ota E, Chibueze CE, et al: Routine antibiotic prophylaxis after normal vaginal birth for reducing maternal infectious morbidity. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD012137, 2017b

Branch-Elliman W, Golen TH, Gold HS, et al: Risk factors for *Staphylococcus aureus* postpartum breast abscess. Clin Infect Dis 54(1):71, 2012

Brown CE, Cunningham FG: Ovarian vein thrombosis: incidence of recurrent venous thromboembolism and survival. Obstet Gynecol 131(4):740, 2018

Brown CE, Dunn DH, Harrell R, et al: Computed tomography for evaluation of puerperal infection. Surg Gynecol Obstet 172:2, 1991

Brown CE, Stettler RW, Twickler D, et al: Puerperal septic pelvic thrombophlebitis: incidence and response to heparin therapy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181:143, 1999

Bruhin A, Ferreira F, Chariker M, et al: Systematic review and evidence based recommendations for the use of negative pressure wound therapy in the open abdomen. Int J Surg 12(10)1105, 2014

Brumfield CG, Hauth JC, Andrews WW: Puerperal infection after cesarean delivery: evaluation of a standardized protocol. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:1147, 2000

Buppasiri P, Lumbiganon P, Thinkhamrop J, et al: Antibiotic prophylaxis for third- and fourth–degree perineal tear during vaginal birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD005125, 2014

Caissutti C, Saccone G, Zullo F, et al: Vaginal cleansing before cesarean delivery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 130(3):527, 2017

Callaghan WM, Creanga AA, Kuklina EV: Severe maternal morbidity among delivery and postpartum hospitalizations in the United States. Obstet Gynecol 120:1029, 2012

Cape A, Tuomala RE, Taylor C, et al: Peripartum bacteremia in the era of group B streptococcus prophylaxis. Obstet Gynecol 121(4):812, 2013

Carey JC, Klebanoff MA, Hauth JC, et al: Metronidazole to prevent preterm delivery in pregnant women with asymptomatic bacterial vaginosis. N Engl J Med 342:534, 2000

Carter EB, Temming LA, Fowler S, et al: Evidence-based bundles and cesarean delivery surgical site infections: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 130(4):735, 2017

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Community-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infection among healthy newborns—Chicago and Los Angeles County, 2004. MMWR 55(12):329, 2006

Chaim W, Bashiri A, Bar-David J, et al: Prevalence and clinical significance of postpartum endometritis and wound infection. Infect Dis Obstet Gynecol 8:77, 2000

Chaim W, Horowitz S, David JB, et al: *Ureaplasma urealyticum* in the development of postpartum endometritis. Eur J Obstet Reprod Biol 15:145, 2003

Chelmow D, Rodriguez EJ, Sabatini MM: Suture closure of subcutaneous fat and wound disruption after cesarean delivery: a meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 103:974, 2004

Chen KT, Huard RC, Della-Latta P, et al: Prevalence of methicillin-sensitive and methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in pregnant women. Obstet Gynecol 108:482, 2006

Chong E, Winikoff B, Charles D, et al: Vaginal and rectal *Clostridium sordellii* and *Clostridium perfringens* presence among women in the United States. Obstet Gynecol 127:360, 2016

Chongsomchai C, Lumbiganon P, Laopaiboon M: Prophylactic antibiotics for manual removal of retained placenta in vaginal birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD004904, 2014

Creanga AA, Syverson C, Seed K, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2011–2013. Obstet Gynecol 130(2):366, 2017

Crepinsek MA, Crowe L, Michener K, et al: Interventions for preventing mastitis after childbirth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD007239, 2012

Crum NF, Chun HM, Gaylord TG, et al: Group A streptococcal toxic shock syndrome developing in the third trimester of pregnancy. Infect Dis Obstet Gynecol 10:209, 2002

Cunningham FG: Surgical instruments. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017

Cunningham FG, Hauth JC, Strong JD, et al: Infectious morbidity following cesarean: comparison of two treatment regimens. Obstet Gynecol 52:656, 1978

David M, Handa P, Castaldi M: Predictors of outcomes in managing breast abscesses—a large retrospective single-center analysis. Breast J 24(5):755, 2018

Deguchi Y, Horiuchi Y, Shojima K, et al: Postpartum methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* toxic shock syndrome caused by a perineal infection. Case Rep Obstet Gynecol 2018:2670179, 2018

Demey HE, Hautekeete MI, Buytaert P, et al: Mastitis and toxic shock syndrome. A case report. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 68:87, 1989

Deneux-Tharaux C, Carmona E, Bouvier-Colle MH, et al: Postpartum maternal mortality and cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 108:541, 2006

DeNoble AE, Heine RP, Dotters-Katz SK: Chorioamnionitis and infectious complications after vaginal delivery. Am J Perinatol 36(14):1437, 2019

DePalma RT, Cunningham FG, Leveno KJ, et al: Continuing investigation of women at high risk for infection following cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 60:53, 1982

Dillon SJ, Nelson DB, Spong CY, et al: Episiotomy: evolution of a common obstetric practice at a single public hospital. Abstract No. 801, Am J Obstet Gynecol 220:S523, 2019

Ding ST, Gao YJ, Qin CX, et al: Granulomatous mastitis in multiparae during pregnancy and lactation: observational study (STROBE compliant). Medicine (Baltimore) 100:e25912, 2021

DiZerega G, Yonekura L, Roy S, et al: A comparison of clindamycin-gentamicin and penicillin gentamicin in the treatment of post–cesarean section endomyometritis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 134:238, 1979

Donders G, Greenhouse P, Donders F, et al: Genital tract GAS infection ISIDOG guidelines. J Clin Med 10:2043, 2021

Easter SR, Molina RL, Venkatesh KK, et al: Clinical risk factors associated with peripartum maternal bacteremia. Obstet Gynecol 130(4):710, 2017

Echebiri NC, McDoom MM, Aalto MM, et al: Prophylactic use of negative pressure wound therapy after cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 125(2):299, 2015

Eke AC, Drnec S, Buras A, et al: Intrauterine cleaning after placental delivery at cesarean section: a randomized controlled trial. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(2):236, 2019

Felder L, Paternostro A, Quist-Nelson J, et al: Implementation of vaginal cleansing prior to cesarean delivery to decrease endometritis rates. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(12):1997, 2019

Fein AW, Wen T, D'Alton ME, et al: Risk factors and temporality for postpartum infection readmissions. Abstract No. 618, Am J Obstet Gynecol 220:S409, 2019

Filker RS, Monif GR: Postpartum septicemia due to group G streptococci. Obstet Gynecol 53:28S, 1979

Fishel Bartal M, Sibai BM, Ben-Mayor Bashi T, et al: Abdominal computed tomography (CT) scan in the evaluation of refractory puerperal fever: impact on management. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(4):577, 2020

Freeman CM, Xia BT, Wilson GC, et al: Idiopathic granulomatous mastitis: a diagnostic and therapeutic challenge. Am J Surg 214(4):701, 2017

Fujiwara Y, Endo S: A case of toxic shock syndrome secondary to mastitis caused by methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*. Kansenshogaku Zasshi 75:898, 2001

Gallup DG, Freedman MA, Meguiar RV, et al: Necrotizing fasciitis in gynecologic and obstetric patients: a surgical emergency. Am J Obstet Gynecol 187(2)305, 2002

Geiss CS, Golshan M, Flaherty K, et al: Clinical experience with aspiration of breast abscesses based on size and etiology at an academic medical center. J Clin Ultrasound 42(9):513, 2014

Gilstrap LC III, Cunningham FG: The bacterial pathogenesis of infection following cesarean section. Obstet Gynecol 53:545, 1979

Goepfert AR, Guinn DA, Andrews WW, et al: Necrotizing fasciitis after cesarean section. Obstet Gynecol 89:409, 1997

Goh T, Goh LG, Ang CH, et al: Early diagnosis of necrotizing fasciitis. Br J Surg 101(1):e119, 2014

Goldaber KG, Wendel PJ, McIntire DD, et al: Postpartum perineal morbidity after fourth degree perineal repair. Am J Obstet Gynecol 168:489, 1993

Grobman WA, Bailit JL, Rice MM, et al: Racial and ethnic disparities in maternal morbidity and obstetric care. Obstet Gynecol 125(6):1460, 2015

Guerinot GT, Gitomer SD, Sanko SR: Postpartum patient with toxic shock syndrome. Obstet Gynecol 59:43S, 1982

Gustafson LW, Blaakær Helming RB: Group A streptococci infection. A systematic clinical review exemplified by cases from on obstetric department. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 215:33, 2017

Haas DM, Morgan S, Contreras K: Vaginal preparation with antiseptic solution before cesarean section for preventing postoperative infections. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD007892, 2018

Hadiati DR, Hakimi M, Nurdiati DS, et al: Skin preparation for preventing infection following cesarean section. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD007462, 2018

Hankins GD, Hauth JC, Gilstrap LC III, et al: Early repair of episiotomy dehiscence. Obstet Gynecol 75:48, 1990

Harper LM, Kilgore M, Szychowski JM, et al: Economic evaluation of adjunctive azithromycin prophylaxis for cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 130(2):328, 2017

Harris BS, Hopkins MK, Villers MS, et al: Efficacy of non-beta-lactam antibiotics for prevention of cesarean delivery surgical site infections. AJP Rep 9(2):e167, 2019

Hauth JC, Gilstrap LC III, Ward SC, et al: Early repair of an external sphincter ani muscle and rectal mucosal dehiscence. Obstet Gynecol 67:806, 1986

Hauth JC, Owen J, Davis RO: Transverse uterine incision closure: one versus two layers. Am J Obstet Gynecol 167:1108, 1992

Herrera C, Meehan R, Podduturi V, et al: Maternal death due to *Clostridium novyi* in an injection drug user. Obstet Gynecol 128(4):876, 2016

Heying R, van de Gevel J, Que YA, et al: Fibronectin-binding proteins and clumping factor A in *Staphylococcus aureus* experimental endocarditis: FnBPA is sufficient to activate human endothelial cells. Thromb Haemost 97:617, 2007

Hotchkiss RS, Karl IE: The pathophysiology and treatment of sepsis. N Engl J Med 348:2, 2003

Hussamy DJ, Wortman AC, McIntire DD, et al: A randomized trial of closed incision negative pressure therapy in morbidly obese women undergoing cesarean delivery. [Abstract No. 45]. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218:S35, 2018

Hussamy DJ, Wortman AC, McIntire DD, et al: Closed incision negative pressure therapy in morbidly obese women undergoing cesarean delivery: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 134:781, 2019

Hyldig N, Vinter CA, Kruse M, et al: Prophylactic incisional negative pressure wound therapy reduces the risk of surgical site infection after caesarean section in obese women: a pragmatic randomised clinical trial. BJOG 126(5):628, 2019

Ismail MA, Chandler AE, Beem ME: Chlamydial colonization of the cervix in pregnant adolescents. J Reprod Med 30:549, 1985

Jacobs-Jokhan D, Hofmeyr G: Extra-abdominal versus intra-abdominal repair of the uterine incision at caesarean section. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD000085, 2004

Jacobsson B, Pernevi P, Chidekel L, et al: Bacterial vaginosis in early pregnancy may predispose for preterm birth and postpartum endometritis. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 81:1006, 2002

Jahanfar S, Ng CJ, Teng CL: Antibiotics for mastitis in breastfeeding women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD005458, 2013

Jaiyeoba O: Postoperative infections in obstetrics and gynecology. Clin Obstet Gynecol 55(4):904, 2012

Johnson O, Pouncey AL, Gardiner S, et al: A woman with spreading erythema after cesarean section. BMJ 368:m445, 2020

Kadar N: Vindicating a traduced genius: Ignaz Philipp Semmelweis (1818–1865). Am J Obstet Gynecol 225:310, 2021

Kankuri E, Kurki T, Carlson P, et al: Incidence, treatment and outcome of peripartum sepsis. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 82:730, 2003

Kawakita T, Iqbal SN, Overcash RT: Negative pressure wound therapy system in extremely obese women after cesarean delivery compared with standard dressing. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(4):634, 2021

Klebanoff MA, Carey JC, Hauth JC, et al: Failure of metronidazole to prevent preterm delivery among pregnant women with asymptomatic *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection. N Engl J Med 345:487, 2001

Klevens RM, Morrison MA, Nadle J, et al: Invasive methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infections in the United States. JAMA 298:1763, 2007

Klima DA, Snyder TE: Postpartum ovarian vein thrombosis. Obstet Gynecol 111:431, 2008

Knight M, Chiocchia V, Partlett C, et al: Prophylactic antibiotics in the prevention of infection after operative vaginal delivery (ANODE): a multicentre randomised controlled trial. Lancet 393(10189):2395, 2019

Kvist LJ, Rydhstroem H: Factors related to breast abscess after delivery: a population-based study. BJOG 112:1070, 2005

Laibl VR, Sheffield JS, Roberts S, et al: Clinical presentation of community-acquired methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 106:461, 2005

Lasley DS, Eblen A, Yancey MK, et al: The effect of placental removal method on the incidence of postcesarean infections. Am J Obstet Gynecol 176(6):1250, 1997

Lee IW, Kang L, Hsu HP, et al: Puerperal mastitis requiring hospitalization during a nine-year period. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203(4):332, 2010

Lenz CJ, Wysokinski WE, Henkin S, et al: Ovarian vein thrombosis: incidence of recurrent venous thromboembolism and survival. Obstet Gynecol 130(5):1127, 2017

Leth RA, Uldbjerg N, Norgaard M, et al: Obesity, diabetes, and the risk of infections diagnosed in hospital and post-discharge infections after cesarean section: a prospective cohort study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 90(5):501, 2011

Lewicky-Gaupp C, Leader-Cramer A, Johnson LL, et al: Wound complications after obstetric anal sphincter injuries. Obstet Gynecol 125(5):1088, 2015

Lewis LS, Convery PA, Bolac CS, et al: Cost of care using prophylactic negative pressure wound vacuum on closed laparotomy incisions. Gynecol Oncol 132(3):684, 2014

Liabsuetrakul T, Peeyananjarassri K: Mechanical dilatation of the cervix at non-labour caesarean section for reducing postoperative morbidity. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD008019, 2018

Livingston JC, Llata E, Rinehart E, et al: Gentamicin and clindamycin therapy in postpartum endometritis: the efficacy of daily dosing versus dosing every 8 hours. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:149, 2003

Maberry MC, Gilstrap LC III, Bawdon RE, et al: Anaerobic coverage for intra-amnionic infection: maternal and perinatal impact. Am J Perinatol 8:338, 1991

Mackeen AD, Berghella V, Larsen ML: Techniques and materials for skin closure in caesarean section. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD003577, 2012

Mackeen AD, Packard RE, Ota E, et al: Antibiotic regimens for postpartum endometritis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD001067, 2015

Macones GA, Cleary KL, Parry S, et al: The timing of antibiotics at cesarean: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Perinatol 29(4):273, 2012

Maharaj D: Puerperal pyrexia: a review. Part II: Obstet Gynecol Surv 62:400, 2007

Markwei MT, Babatunde I, Rathi N, et al: Preincision adjunctive prophylaxis for cesarean deliveries a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol May 5, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Marshall BR, Hepper JK, Zirbel CC: Sporadic puerperal mastitis—an infection that need not interrupt lactation. JAMA 344:1377, 1975

Martic K, Vasilj O: Extremely large breast abscess in a breastfeeding mother. J Hum Lact 28(4):460, 2012

Matheson I, Aursnes I, Horgen M, et al: Bacteriological findings and clinical symptoms in relation to clinical outcome in puerperal mastitis. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 67:723, 1988

McNeeley SG Jr, Hendrix SL, Bennett SM, et al: Synthetic graft placement in the treatment of fascial dehiscence with necrosis and infection. Am J Obstet Gynecol 179:1430, 1998

Meaney-Delman D, Bartlett LA, Gravett MG, et al: Oral and intramuscular treatment options for early postpartum endometritis in low-resource settings: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 125(4):789, 2015

Mediano P, Fernandez L, Rodriguez JM, et al: Case-control study of risk factors for infectious mastitis in Spanish breastfeeding women. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 14:195, 2014

Mohamed-Ahmed O, Hinshaw K, Knight M: Operative vaginal delivery and post-partum infection. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 56:93, 2019

Moulton LJ, Eric Jelovsek J, Lachiewicz M, et al: A model to predict risk of postpartum infection after caesarean delivery. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(18):2409, 2018

Mouës CM, Heule F, Hovius SE: A review of topical negative pressure therapy in wound healing: sufficient evidence? Am J Surg 201(4):544, 2011

Naeem M, Rahimnajjad MK, Rahimnajjad NA, et al: Comparison of incision and drainage against needle aspiration for the treatment of breast abscess. Am Surg 78(11):1224, 2012

O'Higgins AC, Egan AF, Murphy OC, et al: A clinical review of maternal bacteremia. Int Gynaecol Obstet 124(3):226, 2014

Okumura K, Schroff R, Campbell R, et al: Group A streptococcal puerperal sepsis with retroperitoneal involvement developing in a late postpartum woman: case report. Am Surg 70:730, 2004

Olp RJ, Chamales IA, Schmiedecke SS: A case study of puerperal group A streptococcal infection complicated by toxic shock syndrome. Am J Perinatol Rep 10:e1, 2020

Owen J, Andrews WW: Wound complications after cesarean section. Clin Obstet Gynecol 27:842, 1994

Owen J, Hauth JC: Episiotomy infection and dehiscence. In Gilstrap LC III, Faro S (eds): Infections in Pregnancy. New York, Liss, 1990, p 61

Patani N, MacAskill F, Eshelby S, et al: Best-practice care pathway for improving management of mastitis and breast abscess. Br J Surg 105(12):1615, 2018

Patel M, Kumar RA, Stamm AM, et al: USA300 genotype community-associated methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* as a cause of surgical site infection. J Clin Microbiol 45 (10):3431, 2007

Patel SS, Koelper NC, Srinivas SK, et al: Adverse maternal outcomes associated with uterine extensions at the time of cesarean delivery. Am J Perinatol 36(8):785, 2019

Pierce SL, Bisson CM, Dubois ME, et al: Clinical effectiveness of adding azithromycin to antimicrobial prophylaxis for cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 225:335.e1, 2021

Poole GV Jr: Mechanical factors in abdominal wound closure: the prevention of fascial dehiscence. Surgery 97(6):631, 1985
Que YA, Haefliger JA, Piroth L, et al: Fibrinogen and fibronectin binding cooperative for valve infection and invasion in *Staphylococcus aureus* experimental endocarditis. J Exp Med 201:1627, 2005
Quyn AJ, Johnston C, Hall D, et al: The open abdomen and temporary abdominal closure systems—historical evolution and systematic review. Colorectal Dis 14(8):e429, 2012
Ramin SM, Gilstrap LC III: Episiotomy and early repair of dehiscence. Clin Obstet Gynecol 37:816, 1994
Ramin SM, Ramus R, Little B, et al: Early repair of episiotomy dehiscence associated with infection. Am J Obstet Gynecol 167:1104, 1992
Rimawi BH, Soper DE, Eschenbach DA: Group A streptococcal infections in obstetrics and gynecology. Clin Obstet Gynecol 55(4):864, 2012
Robbie LA, Dummer S, Booth NA, et al: Plasminogen activator inhibitor 2 and urokinase-type plasminogen activator in plasma and leucocytes in patients with severe sepsis. Br J Haematol 109:342, 2000
Rottenstreich A, Benenson S, Levin G, et al: Risk factors, clinical course and outcomes of pregnancy-related group A streptococcal infections: retrospective 13-year cohort study. Clin Microbiol Infect 25(2):251.e1, 2019
Rouse DJ, Landon M, Leveno KJ, et al: The Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units cesarean registry: chorioamnionitis at term and its duration—relationship to outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:211, 2004
Schorge JO, Granter SR, Lerner LH, et al: Postpartum and vulvar necrotizing fasciitis: early clinical diagnosis and histopathologic correlation. J Reprod Med 43:586, 1998
Schummer W, Schummer C: Two cases of delayed diagnosis of postpartal streptococcal toxic shock syndrome. Infect Dis Obstet Gynecol 10:217, 2002
Semrau K, Kuhn L, Brooks DR, et al: Dynamics of breast milk HIV-1 RNA with unilateral mastitis or abscess. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 62(3):348, 2013
Shahabi S, Klein JP, Rinaudo PF: Primary psoas abscess complicating a normal vaginal delivery. Obstet Gynecol 99:906, 2002
Sheffield JS: Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in obstetrics. Am J Perinatol 30(2):125, 2013
Sherman D, Lurie S, Betzer M, et al: Uterine flora at cesarean and its relationship to postpartum endometritis. Obstet Gynecol 94:787, 1999
Shinar S, Foulks Y, Amit S, et al: Clinical characteristics of and preventative strategies for peripartum group A streptococcal infections. Obstet Gynecol 127(2):227, 2016
Siriwachirachai T, Sangkomkamhang US, Lumbiganon P, et al: Antibiotics for meconium-stained amniotic fluid in labour for preventing maternal and neonatal infections. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 12:CD007772, 2014
Smaill FM, Grivell RM: Antibiotic prophylaxis versus no prophylaxis for preventing infection after cesarean section. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD007482, 2014
Smid MC, Dotters-Katz SK, Grace M, et al: Prophylactic negative pressure wound therapy for obese women after cesarean delivery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 130(5):969, 2017
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM), Plante LA, Pacheco LD, et al: SMFM Consult Series #47: sepsis during pregnancy and the puerperium. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(4):B2, 2019
Stafford I, Hernandez J, Laibl V, et al: Community-acquired methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* among patients with puerperal mastitis requiring hospitalization. Obstet Gynecol 112(3):533, 2008
Stehman FB: Infections and inflammations of the breast. In Hindle WH (ed): Breast Disease for Gynecologists. Norwalk, Appleton & Lange, 1990, p 151
Stock L, Basham E, Gossett DR, et al: Factors associated with wound complications in women with obstetric and sphincter injuries (OASIS). Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(4):327.e1, 2013
Subramaniam A, Jauk VC, Figueroa D, et al: Risk factors for wound disruption following cesarean delivery. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 27(12):1237, 2014
Suffredini AF, Fromm RE, Parker MM, et al: The cardiovascular response of normal humans to the administration of endotoxin. N Engl J Med 321(5):280, 1989
Sun J, Ding M, Liu J, et al: Prophylactic administration of cefazolin prior to skin incision versus antibiotics at cord clamping in preventing postcesarean infectious morbidity: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Gynecol Obstet Invest 75(3):175, 2013
Swank ML, Wing DA, Nicolau DP, et al: Increased 3-gram cefazolin dosing for cesarean delivery prophylaxis in obese women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(3):415.e1, 2015
Swanson A, Lau KK, Kornman T, et al: Primary psoas muscle abscess in pregnancy. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 48(6):607, 2008
Swartz MN: Cellulitis. N Engl J Med 350:904, 2004
Tita A, Szychowski J, Boggess K, et al: Adjunctive azithromycin prophylaxis for cesarean delivery. N Engl J Med 375(13):1231, 2016
Thomsen AC, Espersen T, Maigaard S: Course and treatment of milk stasis, noninfectious inflammation of the breast, and infectious mastitis in nursing women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 149:492, 1984
Treszezamsky AD, Feldman D, Sarabanchong VO: Concurrent postpartum uterine and abdominal wall dehiscence and *Streptococcus anginosus* infection. Obstet Gynecol 118(2):449, 2011
Tulandi T, Al-Jaroudi D: Nonclosure of peritoneum: a reappraisal. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:609, 2003
Tuuli M: Prophylactic negative pressure wound therapy at caesarean: are we there yet? BJOG 126(5):635, 2019
Tuuli MG, Liu J, Stout MJ, et al: A randomized trial comparing skin antiseptic agents at cesarean delivery. N Engl J Med 374(7):647, 2016
Tuuli MG, Rampersad RM, Carbone JF, et al: Staples compared with subcuticular suture for skin closure after cesarean delivery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 117(3):682, 2011
Udagawa H, Oshio Y, Shimizu Y: Serious group A streptococcal infection around delivery. Obstet Gynecol 94:153, 1999
Uygur D, Yesildaglar N, Kis S, et al: Early repair of episiotomy dehiscence. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 44:244, 2004
Wang SS, Shum D, Kennedy A: Imaging of postpartum/peripartum complications. Radiol Clin North Am 58:431, 2020
Ward E, Duff P: A comparison of 3 antibiotic regimens for prevention of postcesarean endometritis: an historical cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(6):751.e1, 2016
Watts DH, Krohn MA, Hillier SL, et al: Bacterial vaginosis as a risk factor for post-cesarean endometritis. Obstet Gynecol 75:52, 1990
Wechter ME, Pearlman MD, Hartmann KE: Reclosure of the disrupted laparotomy wound. A systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 106:376, 2005
Wetchler SJ, Dunn LJ: Ovarian abscess. Report of a case and a review of the literature. Obstet Gynecol Surv 40:476, 1985
Witlin AG, Sibai BM: Postpartum ovarian vein thrombosis after vaginal delivery: a report of 11 cases. Obstet Gynecol 85:775, 1995
Worley KC: Postoperative complications. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017
Wouterlood MA, Malhame I, Levesque, K, et al: Pregnancy-associated pelvic vein thrombosis: insights from a multicenter case series. J Thromb Haemost 19:1926, 2021
Wu JM, Turashvili G: Cystic neutrophilic granulomatous mastitis: an update. J Clin Pathol 73(8):445, 2020
Yu L, Kronen RJ, Simon LE, et al: Prophylactic negative-pressure wound therapy after cesarean is associated with reduced risk of surgical site infection: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(2):200.e1, 2018

CHAPTER 38

Contraception

The puerperium offers an excellent opportunity to provide effective contraception. For mothers who are nursing exclusively, ovulation during the first 10 weeks after delivery is unlikely. Nursing, however, is not a reliable method of family planning for women whose infants breastfeed only during the day. Moreover, waiting for first menses involves a risk of pregnancy, because ovulation usually antedates menstruation. Certainly, after the first menses, contraception is essential unless the woman desires pregnancy.

Nearly half of all pregnancies each year in the United States are unintended (Finer, 2016). These may follow contraceptive method failure or stem from lack of contraceptive use. For those seeking contraception, effective options are available (Table 38-1). Among these, estimated failure rates of perfect and typical use during the first year differ widely (Trussell, 2018). Efficacy tiers reflect these failure rates, and implants and intrauterine devices (IUDs) are found in the top tier (Steiner, 2006). They effectively drop unintended pregnancy rates and are considered long-acting reversible contraception (LARC). Clinicians provide counseling on *all* options and encourage LARC for appropriate candidates (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019d).

No contraceptive method is completely without side effects, but contraception usually poses less risk than pregnancy. However, some disorders or medications can raise the risks of certain contraceptives. The World Health Organization (2015) has provided guidelines for the use of effective reversible contraceptive methods by women with various health conditions. Individual countries have subsequently modified these guidelines. The *United States Medical Eligibility Criteria (US MEC)* was updated in 2016 by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and is available at their website (Curtis, 2016b).

In the US MEC, reversible contraceptive methods are organized into six groups: levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system (LNG-IUS), copper intrauterine devices (Cu-IUDs), implants, depot medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA), progestin-only pills (POPs), and combination hormonal contraceptives (CHCs). This last group includes combination oral contraceptives (COCs), rings, and patches. For a given health condition, each method is categorized 1 through 4. The score describes the safety profile for a typical woman with that condition: (1) no restriction of method use, (2) method advantages outweigh risks, (3) method risks outweigh advantages, and (4) method poses an unacceptable health risk.

Alternatively, depending on the underlying disorder or patient desire, male or female sterilization may be a preferred or recommended permanent contraceptive method. These options are discussed in Chapter 39.

INTRAUTERINE DEVICES

The five IUDs currently approved for use in the United States are *chemically active* and continually elute either copper or a progestin. All have a flexible, T-shaped, polyethylene frame

TABLE 38-1. Contraceptive Failure Rates of Reversible Methods During the First Year and Use Rates[a]

Method	Perfect Use	Typical Use	Percent Use[b]
Top tier (most effective)			
Intrauterine devices:			11.8
52-mg LNG-IUS	0.1	0.1	–
T380A Cu-IUD	0.6	0.8	–
Etonogestrel implant	0.1	0.1	2.6
Female sterilization	0.5	0.5	21.8
Male sterilization	0.1	0.15	6.5
Second tier (very effective)			
Combination pill	0.3	7	24.9
Vaginal ring	0.3	7	2.4
Patch	0.3	7	0.2
DMPA	0.2	4	3.9
Progestin-only pill	0.3	7	0.4
Third tier (effective)			
Condom			14.6
Male	2	13	–
Female	5	21	–
Diaphragm + spermicides[c]	16	24	–
Fourth tier (least effective)			
Spermicides[c]	18	28	–
Sponge[c]			–
Multiparas	20	27	–
Nulliparas	9	14	–

[a]Among women in the United States using contraception.
[b]This sum totals less than 100% as withdrawal (8.1%) and natural family planning (2.2%) values are not presented in the table.
[c]Combined into "other method" category, which has a use rate of 0.6%.
Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; DMPA = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; LNG-IUS = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system.
From Guttmacher Institute, 2020; Hall, 2012; Kavanaugh, 2018; Steiner, 2006; Trussell, 2018.

compounded with barium to render them radiopaque. The progestin-eluting devices are similarly shaped, but each differs by size, string color, longevity, and presence or absence of a silver band at the junction of the stem and arms (Table 38-2). Among these, smaller-sized devices are thought to better fit a nulliparous uterus (Gemzell-Danielsson, 2012). In contrast, the copper device, the T380A IUD named *ParaGard,* contains a thin copper strand wound around its stem and a copper bracelet on each arm.

■ Contraceptive Action

The contraceptive mechanism of IUDs is not precisely defined, but prevention of fertilization is now favored. Within the uterus, an intense local endometrial inflammatory response is induced, especially by the Cu-IUD. Inflammatory fluid fills the uterine cavity and fallopian tubes to decrease sperm and egg viability (Ortiz, 2007). Also, in the unlikely event that fertilization does occur, the same inflammatory actions are directed against the blastocyst. With the LNG-IUS, progestin release atrophies the endometrium to hinder normal implantation and creates scant viscous cervical mucus to obstruct sperm motility (Apter, 2014; Silverberg, 1986). The above effects are considered primary because ovulation inhibition is inconsistent with the LNG-IUS and lacking with the Cu-IUD (Nilsson, 1984).

■ Method-specific Adverse Effects

Ectopic Pregnancy

In the past, IUDs were perceived to increase the risk of ectopic pregnancy, but this has since been clarified. Specifically, IUDs provide effective contraception and lower the absolute number of ectopic pregnancies by half compared with the rate in noncontracepting women (World Health Organization, 1985). But, the IUD mechanisms of action are more effective in preventing *intrauterine* implantation. Thus, if an IUD fails, a higher proportion of pregnancies are likely to be ectopic (Furlong, 2002; Teal, 2019).

Lost Device

Expulsion of an IUD from the uterus is most common during the first month. Thus, women are examined approximately 4 to 6 weeks following IUD insertion, usually after menses, to identify the tails trailing from the cervix. Following this, a woman is instructed to palpate the strings each month after menses. Regardless of IUD type, the cumulative 3-year expulsion rate

TABLE 38-2. Properties of Intrauterine Devices

Active Agent	Quantity of Active Agent	Width × Height (mm)	Inserter Tube Diameter (mm)	FDA-approved Duration of Use (yr)	String Color	Silver Ring	Brand Name
LNG	52 mg	32 × 32	4.4	5	Tan	No	Mirena
LNG	52 mg	32 × 32	4.8	6	Blue	No	Liletta
LNG	19.5 mg	28 × 30	3.8	5	Blue	Yes	Kyleena
LNG	13.5 mg	28 × 30	3.8	3	Tan	Yes	Skyla, Jaydess
Copper	380 mm^3	32 × 36	4.4	10	White	No	ParaGard

FDA = U.S. Food and Drug Administration; LNG = levonorgestrel.

approximates 10 percent following nonpuerperal insertion (Madden, 2014; Simonatto, 2016).

If the tail of an IUD cannot be visualized, the device may have been expelled, may have perforated the uterus, or may be malpositioned. Alternatively, the device may be normally positioned with its tail folded within the endocervical canal or uterine cavity. To investigate, after excluding pregnancy, a cytological brush can be twirled within the endocervical canal to entangle the strings and bring them gently into the vagina. If unsuccessful, the uterine cavity is probed gently with a Randall stone clamp or with a specialized rod with a terminal hook to retrieve the strings.

One should not assume that a device has been expelled unless it was seen. Thus, if tails are not visible and the device is not felt by gentle probing of the uterine cavity, transvaginal sonography (TVS) can be used to ascertain if the device lies within the uterus. Although traditional TVS will document IUD position adequately in most cases, three-dimensional TVS offers improved views (Moschos, 2011). If sonography is inconclusive or if no device is seen, a plain radiograph of the abdominopelvis is taken. Computed tomography (CT) scanning or magnetic resonance (MR) imaging is an alternative depending on coexisting pregnancy and study access. MR imaging at 1.5 or 3 Tesla with an IUD in place is safe (Ciet, 2015).

Perforation

During sounding or IUD insertion, the uterus may be perforated, which is identified by the tool traveling farther than expected based on initial bimanual uterine examination. Rates approximate 1 case per 1000 insertions, and risks include puerperal insertion and breastfeeding (Barnett, 2017; Kaislasuo, 2012).

With acute perforation, the fundus is the more common site, and bleeding is often minimal due to myometrial contraction around the puncture site. If no brisk bleeding is noted from the os following removal of the wounding tool, patient observation alone is reasonable. Rarely, lateral perforations may lacerate the uterine artery, and subsequent heavy bleeding prompts laparoscopy or laparotomy for control.

With occult perforation, a device can penetrate the myometrium to varying degrees. Abdominal pain, uterine bleeding, or missing strings are clues, and imaging described in the last section is a primary step (Kaislasuo, 2013). A device with an arm partially embedded can sometimes be removed transcervically with steady traction. Otherwise, IUDs with a mainly intrauterine location are usually removed hysteroscopically. Devices that have nearly or completely perforated through the uterine wall are more easily extracted laparoscopically. Devices often embed on posterior cul-de-sac structures and omentum, but bowel and bladder perforations are possible (Şengül, 2014; Zeino, 2011).

Menstrual Changes

Dysmenorrhea and irregular bleeding can complicate IUD use. These can be treated with some degree of success by nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) or tranexamic acid, which is an antifibrinolytic (Friedlander, 2015). Of IUD types, heavy bleeding more often complicates Cu-IUD use and may cause iron-deficiency anemia, for which oral iron salts are given. With the LNG-IUS, irregular spotting for up to 6 months after placement often gives way to progressive amenorrhea, which is reported by approximately 10 percent of women after year 1 and 35 percent after 3 years (Goldthwaite, 2019). This is frequently associated with improved dysmenorrhea.

Infection

The risk of upper genital tract device-related infection is greatest during the first 3 weeks following IUD insertion (Farley, 1992; Turok, 2016). Pathogens include *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Chlamydia trachomatis*, and vaginal flora. Women at risk for sexually transmitted diseases (STDs) should be screened either before or at the time of IUD insertion (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2015). That said, device insertion need not be delayed while awaiting STD or Pap test results in asymptomatic women (Birgisson, 2015). If these bacteria are subsequently found, the IUD may remain and treatment may be prescribed. Routine antimicrobial prophylaxis before insertion is not recommended (Grimes, 2012). Bacterial endocarditis prophylaxis is not needed with insertion (Nishimura, 2017).

After the first month, infection risk is not elevated in IUD users who would otherwise be at low risk of STDs. Correspondingly, IUDs cause little, if any, increase in infertility rates in these low-risk patients (Hubacher, 2001). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) recommends that women at low risk for STDs, including adolescents, be considered good candidates for IUDs. The IUD is also safe and effective in women with immunosuppression, including human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection (Tepper, 2016a). Moreover, IUD use does not appear to raise HIV acquisition rates (Curtis, 2020).

If infection does develop, it may take several forms and typically requires broad-spectrum antibiotics. *Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)* without abscess is treated with antibiotics. There are theoretical concerns that a coexistent IUD may worsen the infection or delay resolution. A provider may choose to remove an IUD in this setting, although growing evidence supports allowing device retention during treatment in those with mild or moderate PID (Curtis, 2016a; Tepper, 2013). If infection fails to improve during 48 to 72 hours of treatment, the device is removed. *Tuboovarian abscess* can complicate PID and is treated aggressively with intravenous broad-spectrum antibiotics and IUD removal. Last, *septic abortion* mandates immediate uterine evacuation and antibiotics.

Actinomyces israelii is a gram-positive, slow-growing, anaerobic, indigenous vaginal bacterium. It is frequently identified in the vaginal flora or on the Pap smears of IUD users (Curtis, 1981; Kim, 2014). If found, an asymptomatic woman may retain her IUD and does not require antibiotics (Lippes, 1999; Westhoff, 2007a). However, with infection in a woman who harbors *Actinomyces* species, the device is removed and antibiotics with gram-positive coverage are given. Early findings with infection include fever, weight loss, abdominal pain, and abnormal uterine bleeding or discharge.

Pregnancy with an IUD

For women who become pregnant despite an IUD, ectopic pregnancy and pelvic infection each must be excluded. Pregnant women with a retained IUD and infection are treated with broad-spectrum antibiotics and prompt uterine evacuation.

For those with intrauterine pregnancy without infection, the IUD tail can be grasped, and the IUD removed by gentle outward traction. This action reduces rates of subsequent abortion, chorioamnionitis, and preterm birth (Brahmi, 2012). Specifically, in one cohort, a 54-percent abortion rate and 17-percent preterm delivery rate was noted if the device remained in situ. More favorably, rates of 25 percent and 4 percent, respectively, resulted from prompt Cu-IUD removal (Tatum, 1976). Few data guide management with the LNG-IUS, and most practice extrapolates from copper devices.

If the tail is not visible, attempts to locate and remove the device may result in abortion. Some case reports and small series describe sonography or hysteroscopy to assist difficult device removals, but this is not our practice (Pérez-Medina, 2014; Schiesser, 2004). In women who give birth with a device in place, appropriate steps should be taken at delivery to identify and remove the IUD.

Intrauterine Device Insertion

Timing

Before insertion, IUD contraindications are sought (Table 38-3). Candidates are counseled, and written consent obtained.

To reduce expulsion rates, IUD insertion traditionally has followed complete uterine involution and is termed *interval* placement. Instead, immediately following miscarriage, surgical abortion, or delivery, an IUD may be inserted in the absence of overt infection (Roe, 2019; Whitaker, 2018). Also, early insertion 1 week after mifepristone and completed medical abortion has been described (Sääv, 2012; Shimoni, 2011). Compared with interval insertion, the IUD expulsion rate is slightly higher with *immediate* placement, defined as the first 10 minutes after placenta delivery. The highest rates are with *early* placement, defined as later than 10 minutes but within the first month postpartum (Jatlaoui, 2018). The higher US MEC scores seen in Table 38-4 reflect these early-placement expulsion risks.

TABLE 38-3. Contraindications to IUD Use

Both IUD Types
Pregnancy or suspicion of pregnancy
Distorted uterine cavity
Acute PID
Postpartum/postabortal endometritis in past 3 months
Uterine bleeding of unknown etiology
Acute untreated LGT infection
Conditions linked to pelvic infection risk[a]
Allergy to device components
Coexisting retained IUD

Specific to Cu-IUD
Known or suspected uterine or cervical cancer
Wilson disease

Specific to LNG-IUS
Prior PID unless a subsequent IUP has occurred
Known or suspected uterine or cervical neoplasia
Acute liver disease or benign/malignant liver tumor
Known or suspected current or prior breast cancer or other progestin-sensitive cancer

[a]These include multiple sexual partners, severe immune compromise, intravenous drug use, and recent PID or endometritis.
Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; IUD = intrauterine device; IUP = intrauterine pregnancy; LGT = lower genital tract; LNG-IUS = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system; PID = pelvic inflammatory disease.
Bayer HealthCare Pharmaceuticals, 2017; CooperSurgical, 2020.

TABLE 38-4. U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria Category of Contraceptive Methods Related to Breastfeeding and Time After Delivery

Method CHCs[a]	Cat.	DMPA, POPs, Implants	Cat.	LNG-IUS	Cat.	Cu-IUD	Cat.
Breastfeeding		Breastfeeding		± Breastfeeding[c]		± Breastfeeding[c]	
<21 d	4	<1 month	2	<10 mins	2	<10 min	1
21 d to <30 d	3	≥1 month	1	10 mins to ≤4 wks	2	10 min to ≤4 wks	2
30–42 d[b]	2			≥4 wks	1	≥4 wks	1
>42 d	2			Puerperal sepsis	4	Puerperal sepsis	4
Nonbreastfeeding		Nonbreastfeeding	1				
<21 d	4						
21–42 d[b]	2						
>42 d	1						

[a]Combined hormonal contraceptive (CHC) group includes pills, vaginal ring, and patch.
[b]Associated risks that increase puerperal category score include: age ≥35, transfusion at delivery, body mass index ≥30, postpartum hemorrhage, cesarean delivery, smoking, preeclampsia.
[c]With or without breastfeeding.
Cat. = category; Cu-IUD = copper-containing intrauterine device; DMPA = depot medroxyprogesterone acetate; LNG-IUS = levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system; POPs = progestin-only pills.
From Curtis, 2016b; Kapp, 2009b.

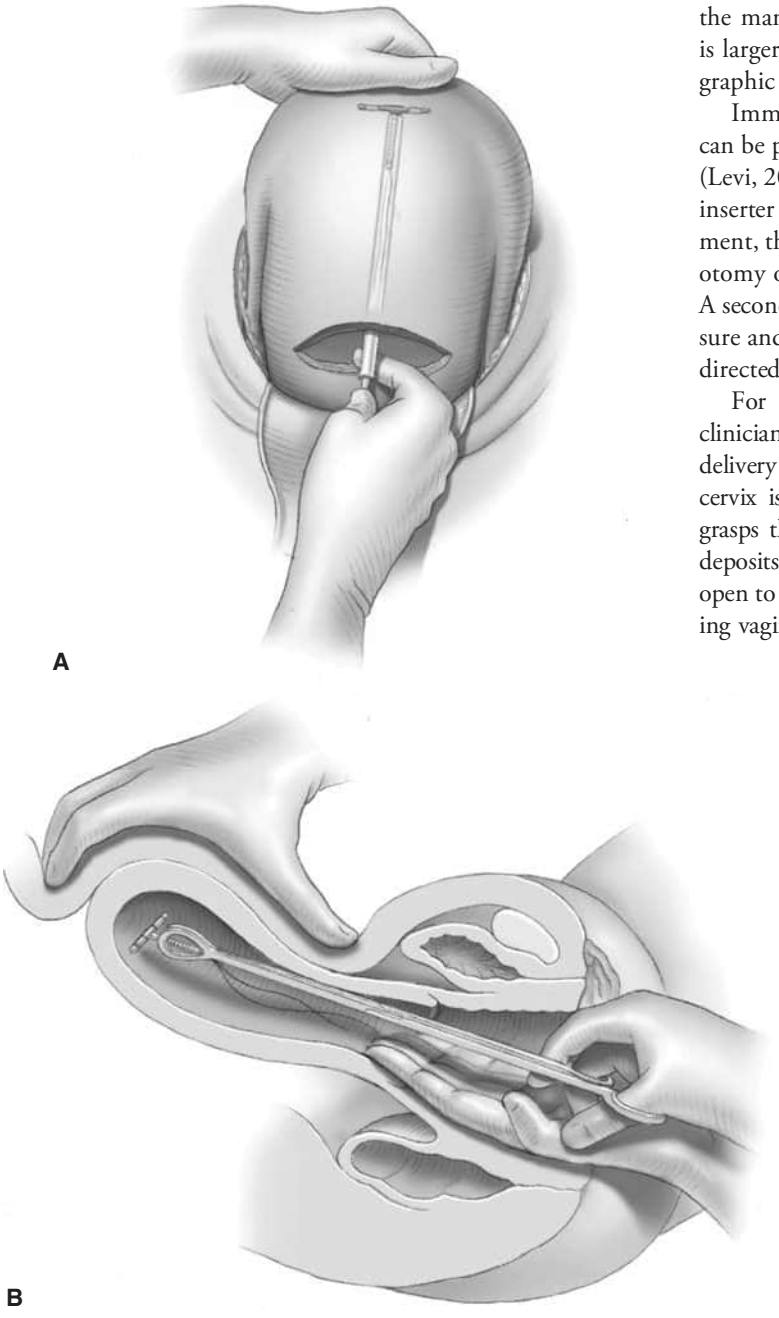


FIGURE 38-1 A. Intrauterine device (IUD) insertion at cesarean delivery. The device inserter guides the device to the uterine fundus. A hand at the fundus can provide back pressure to stabilize the uterus during insertion. **B.** IUD insertion after vaginal delivery. Ring forceps direct the device to the uterine fundus. Back pressure against the fundus by an abdominal hand can help guide positioning. (Reproduced with permission from Stuart GS, Hoffman BL: Puerperal sterilization. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw Hill; 2017.)

However, the number of women in immediate-placement groups who ultimately receive and retain an IUD is greater than in groups scheduled for interval placement, because some fail to return for insertion (Bednarek, 2011; Chen, 2010).

Postpregnancy Insertion Techniques

With immediate insertion, techniques depend on uterine size. After first-trimester evacuation, the IUD can be placed using the manufacturer's standard instructions. If the uterine cavity is larger, the IUD can be placed using ring forceps with sonographic guidance (Fox, 2011).

Immediately following vaginal or cesarean delivery, an IUD can be placed by a hand, by its inserter tube, or by ring forceps (Levi, 2015). The arms of the IUD need not be folded into the inserter tube prior to insertion. During cesarean delivery placement, the hand or inserter travels through the unsutured hysterotomy opening to deposit the device at the fundus (Fig. 38-1). A second hand cupping the outer fundus can provide back pressure and stabilize the uterus during insertion. Strings are gently directed but not pulled toward the cervix.

For instrumented insertion following vaginal delivery, the clinician resterilizes the vulva and changes gloves after placental delivery but before perineal repairs. The anterior lip of the floppy cervix is held with ring forceps. A second ring forceps gently grasps the IUD stem, guides it up into the uterine cavity, and deposits it at the fundus. During forceps removal, the jaws remain open to avoid ensnaring the strings. For manual insertion following vaginal delivery, the provider holds the IUD between fingers to deposit the device. In either case, back pressure against the fundus by an abdominal hand can guide fundal positioning (Stuart, 2017).

Interval Insertion Technique

For placement not related to pregnancy, insertion near the end of normal menstruation, when the cervix is usually softer and somewhat more dilated, may be easier and also helps exclude early pregnancy. However, for the woman who is sure she is not pregnant and does not want to be pregnant, insertion is done at any time.

To ease insertional pain, applying lidocaine-prilocaine cream locally or placing paracervical blockade can be helpful (Akers, 2017; Samy, 2019). Bimanual pelvic examination delineates uterine position and size. Abnormalities are evaluated, as they may contraindicate insertion. Mucopurulent cervicitis or significant vaginitis is appropriately treated and resolved before IUD insertion.

The ectocervix is cleansed with an antiseptic solution, and sterile instruments are used. A tenaculum is placed on the cervical lip, and the endocervical canal and uterine cavity are straightened by applying gentle outward traction. A uterine sound is guided into the cavity to identify its direction and depth. Specific steps of Cu-IUD and LNG-IUS insertions are outlined in their respective package inserts.

Following insertion, only the threads should be visible trailing from the cervix. These are trimmed to allow 3 to 4 cm to protrude into the vagina, and their length is recorded. An oral NSAID can be used for cramping after insertion (Ngo, 2015).

If improper device positioning is suspected, placement should be confirmed, using sonography if necessary. If the IUD is not positioned completely within the uterus, it is removed and replaced with a new device. An expelled or partially expelled device should not be reinserted.

PROGESTIN-ONLY CONTRACEPTIVES

Actions and Side Effects

Progestin-only contraceptives include implants, injectables, and pills. These suppress luteinizing hormone (LH) to block ovulation, cervical mucus thickens to retard sperm passage, and atrophy renders the endometrium unfavorable for implantation. Fertility is restored rapidly following cessation except for DMPA, described later (Mansour, 2011).

After placenta delivery, progesterone withdrawal may contribute to lactogenesis, and early progestin use theoretically could hinder breastmilk establishment. Although studies support the safety of early puerperal use of progestins, this theoretical risk is still reflected in their higher US MEC score (see Table 38-4) (Carmo, 2017; Phillips, 2016).

For all progestin-only methods, irregular uterine bleeding is the most frequent adverse event prompting discontinuation. Often, counseling and reassurance is sufficient. In others, troublesome bleeding may be improved by combining the progestin method with a 2-week course of estrogen or with a short course of NSAIDs (Abdel-Aleem, 2013). A few cycles of COCs combined with DMPA or an implant is another option. Fortunately, with prolonged use, progestins induce endometrial atrophy, which can lead to sustained amenorrhea. For the informed patient, this is often an advantage. Iron-deficiency anemia is also less likely.

Most progestin-only contraceptive methods do not significantly affect lipid metabolism, glucose levels, hemostatic factors, liver function, thyroid function, or blood pressure (Dorflinger, 2002). However, the increased low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol and decreased high-density lipoprotein (HDL) cholesterol levels seen with DMPA are less desirable for women with cardiovascular disease risks (Kongsayreepong, 1993).

Risks for genital tract, liver, or breast neoplasia are not increased with progestin-only methods (Samson, 2016; Wilailak, 2012; World Health Organization, 1991a,b, 1992). Weight gain and bone fracture are not prominent side effects of this contraceptive group, except for DMPA, discussed later (Lopez, 2012, 2013). Functional ovarian cysts are seen more often in women using progestin-only agents, although intervention is not usually required (European Society of Human Reproduction and Embryology, 2001). Last, concern for a higher depression rate is not supported by recent studies (Skovlund, 2016; Worly, 2018).

Progestin Contraindications

Current pregnancy, breast cancer, acute liver disease, liver tumors, and undiagnosed abnormal genital bleeding are absolute contraindications. For Nexplanon and DMPA, their manufacturers also add current or past history of thromboembolic disorders (Merck, 2019; Pfizer, 2017). However, for women with these disorders, the US MEC considers progestin-containing methods category 2 (Curtis, 2016b).

Progestin Implants

These thin, pliable, progestin-containing cylinders can be implanted in the upper arm to release contraceptive hormone over several years. Implants are an effective, top-tier method (Mommers, 2012; Sivin, 1998; Steiner, 2010).

These systems are placed subdermally on the inner arm approximately 8 cm from the elbow. Implants vary in their insertion technique, and manufacturer instructions should be consulted. After their expiration date, implants are removed, and may be replaced at the same site or in the opposite arm.

Nexplanon is a single-rod etonogestrel implant that releases at least 30 µg of hormone daily and may be used for 3 years. The inserter design assists with subdermal positioning and averting deeper placement. Nexplanon replaced *Implanon*, which is still approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) but no longer distributed by the manufacturer.

Levonorgestrel implants are two-rod systems available outside the United States and contain a total LNG dose of 150 mg. *Jadelle* provides contraception for 5 years. It is approved by the FDA but not marketed in the United States. *Sino-implant II* provides 3 years of contraception (Steiner, 2019).

Method-specific Adverse Effects

In addition to the hormonal side effects listed earlier, the implants themselves can cause adverse events. These complicate approximately 1 percent of implant insertions and 5 percent of removals (Creinin, 2017; Reed, 2019). Of serious events, branches of the medial antebrachial cutaneous nerve and median nerve can be injured during an implant insertion that is too deep or during exploration for implant removal (Laumonerie, 2018). Thus, implants found deep in muscle or near neurovascular structures are best removed by surgeons with a clear understanding of upper arm anatomy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a).

Nonpalpable devices are not uncommon and require imaging for localization prior to attempted removal. Nexplanon is radiopaque and can be imaged by two-dimensional x-ray views. Implanon is not radiopaque, and sonography using a 10- to 15-MHz linear array transducer or MR imaging is needed (Correia, 2012; Shulman, 2006). Rarely, an implant can migrate to distant sites such as the lung (Kang, 2017). If imaging fails to locate an implant, etonogestrel blood levels can help verify that the implant is indeed in situ. This assay must be coordinated with the manufacturer (877-888-4231).

Implant Insertion

The etonogestrel implant is ideally inserted within 5 days of menses onset. With LNG-releasing implants, contraception is established within 24 hours if inserted within the first 7 days of the menstrual cycle. For transitioning methods, an implant is placed on the day of the first placebo COC pill; on the day that the next DMPA injection would be due; or within 24 hours of the last POP (Merck, 2019). In women certain that they are not pregnant, insertion at other times of the cycle is followed by an additional method that serves as a back-up method for 7 days. Postabortion or postpartum, an implant may be inserted before discharge home (Madden, 2012; Sothornwit, 2017).

For insertion, the supine patient positions her nondominant arm against the bed so that the arm is abducted and the elbow is flexed. With a sterile pen, the insertion site is marked 8 to 10 cm proximal to the humerus' medial condyle and 3 to

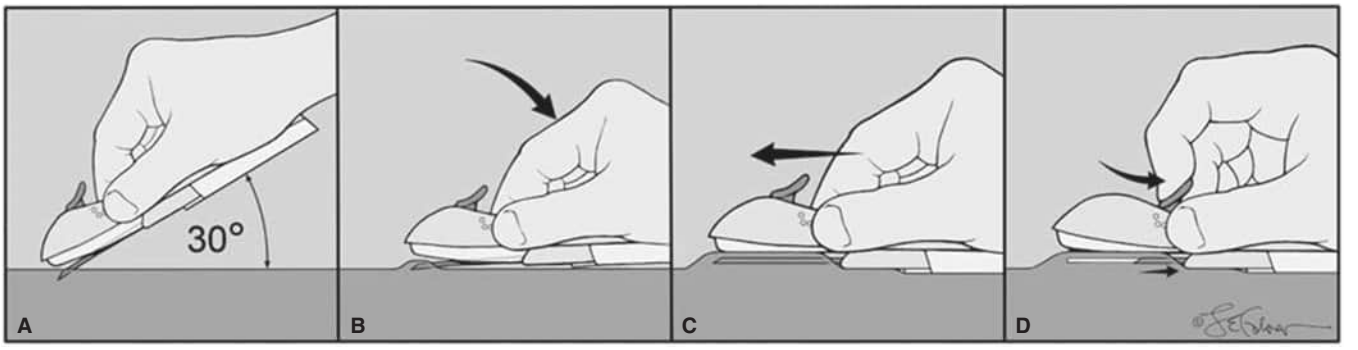


FIGURE 38-2 Nexplanon insertion. A sterile pen marks the insertion site, which is 8 to 10 cm proximal to the medial humeral condyle. A second mark is placed 4 cm proximally along the arm's long axis. The area is cleaned aseptically, and a 1-percent lidocaine anesthetic track is injected along the planned insertion path. **A.** The insertion device is grasped at its gripper bubbles found on either side, and the needle cap is removed outward. The device can be seen within the needle bore. The needle bevel then pierces the skin at a 30-degree angle. **B.** Once the complete bevel is subcutaneous, the needle is quickly angled downward to lie horizontally. **C.** Importantly, the skin is tented upward by the needle as the needle is slowly advanced horizontally and subdermally. **D.** Once the needle is completely inserted, the lever on the top of the device is pulled backward toward the operator. This retracts the needle and thereby deposits the implant. The device is then lifted away from the skin. After placement, both patient and operator should palpate the 4-cm implant.

5 cm posterior to the groove between biceps and triceps muscles (Iwanaga, 2019). A second mark is placed 4 cm proximal to the first and serves as a guide for the insertion path along the arm's long axis. The Nexplanon is inserted using sterile technique. The area is cleansed aseptically, and a 1-percent lidocaine anesthetic track is injected beneath the skin along the planned insertion path. The implant is then placed as shown in Figure 38-2. After placement, both patient and provider should palpate and identify both ends of the 4-cm implant. To minimize bruising at the site, a pressure bandage is created around the arm and is removed the following day.

With implant extraction, the removal site is first cleansed with antiseptic. The proximal end of the implant is depressed with a finger to allow the distal end to lift up toward the skin. After anesthetizing the skin over this bulge, the skin is incised 2 mm toward the elbow along the arm's long axis. The implant's proximal butt is then pushed toward this incision. Once visible, the implant's distal end is grasped with a hemostat and removed. Superficial adhesions surrounding an implant are common and are dissected away with hemostat tips.

■ Injectable Progestin Contraceptives

DMPA, 150 mg every 3 months, and norethisterone enanthate, 200 mg every 2 months, are two intramuscular injectable progestin-only contraceptives used worldwide. Of the two, DMPA is available in the United States and marketed as *Depo-Provera*. DMPA is injected into the deltoid or gluteus muscle, but massage is avoided to ensure that the drug is released slowly. A subcutaneous version, *depo-subQ provera 104*, is injected into the subcutaneous tissue of the anterior thigh or abdomen every 3 months. This form may be self-administered (Curtis, 2021).

Initial injection is given within the first 5 days following menses onset. Serum levels sufficient for contraception are present by 24 hours. Thus, no additional contraceptive method is required for initiation within this window. Limited data support a *quick start*, or initiation of DMPA regardless of cycle day. If so implemented, investigators recommend an initial negative pregnancy test result before injection, a supplemental contraceptive method during the 7 days following injection, and a second pregnancy test after 3 to 6 weeks to identify an early pregnancy (Sneed, 2005). Conceptions during DMPA use do not have higher fetal anomaly rates (Katz, 1985).

Method-specific Adverse Effects

Unique to DMPA, prolonged anovulation can follow discontinuation and results in delayed fertility resumption (Paulen, 2009). After injections are stopped, a fourth of patients do not resume regular menses for up to 1 year (Gardner, 1970). Thus, DMPA may be less ideal for women who plan to use birth control only briefly before attempting conception.

As with other progestins, DMPA is not associated with cardiovascular events or stroke in otherwise healthy women. However, in those with severe hypertension, a higher risk of stroke has been found in DMPA users (World Health Organization, 1998). The US MEC authors express concerns regarding DMPA's hypoestrogenic effects and reduced HDL levels for women with vascular disease or multiple cardiovascular disease risks (Curtis, 2016b).

Weight gain is generally attributed to DMPA, and ranges from 1 to 3 kg in the first year (Dianat, 2019). In long-term users, bone density loss is also greater than in nonusers (Petitti, 2000; Scholes, 1999). It is somewhat reassuring that bone loss appears to slowly reverse after cessation (Clark, 2006; Scholes, 2002). In 2004, the FDA added a black box warning to DMPA labeling, which notes that this concern is probably most relevant for adolescents, who are building bone mass, and perimenopausal women, who will soon have increased bone loss during menopause. Despite this, DMPA should not be restricted in those high-risk groups (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b).

■ Progestin-only Pills

Also called *mini-pills*, this group contains norethindrone-only, desogestrel-only, and drospirenone-only pills. Of these, each

norethindrone-only pill provides 0.35 mg of hormone and is taken daily and continuously. This specific drug does not reliably inhibit ovulation. Efficacy stems from cervical mucus thickening and endometrial atrophy. Because mucus changes are not sustained, these pills are best taken at the same time each day. If the pill is taken even 3 hours late (missed-pill window), a backup form of contraception is used for the next 48 hours.

In contrast, the drospirenone-only pill marketed as *Slynd* delivers 4 mg of hormone and is taken for 24 consecutive days out of a 28-day cycle. Progestin withdrawal during the last 4 days aims to minimize irregular bleeding (Archer, 2015). Both drospirenone and desogestrel pills alter mucus and endometrium *plus* reliably inhibit ovulation. *Slynd* offers a 24-hour missed-pill window, which mirrors that of COC pills (Duijkers, 2016).

Drospirenone is structurally similar to spironolactone. It displays antiandrogenic activity, provides an antialdosterone action to minimize water retention, and has antimineralocorticoid properties that may, in theory, cause potassium retention and hyperkalemia (Krattenmacher, 2000). Thus, contraindications are renal or adrenal insufficiency in addition to traditional progestin contraindications, listed earlier (p. 669). Serum potassium level monitoring is recommended in the first month for patients chronically treated with any drug associated with potassium retention. These include NSAIDs, angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, angiotensin II antagonists, heparin, aldosterone antagonists, and potassium-sparing diuretics.

Last, desogestrel-only pills contain 0.075 mg of hormone and are used daily and continuously. Its missed-pill window is 12 hours. These are not available in the United States.

TABLE 38-5. Estrogen and Progestins Used in FDA-Approved Combination Oral Contraceptive Pills

Estrogen Type (Pill Dose)	Paired Progestin[a]
Ethinyl estradiol 10 μg	Norethindrone acetate
Ethinyl estradiol 20 μg	Desogestrel Drospirenone Levonorgestrel Norethindrone acetate
Ethinyl estradiol 25 μg	Desogestrel Norgestimate
Ethinyl estradiol 30–35 μg	Desogestrel Drospirenone Ethynodiol diacetate Levonorgestrel Norethindrone Norethindrone acetate Norgestimate Norgestrel
Ethinyl estradiol 50 μg	Ethynodiol diacetate Norgestrel
Estradiol valerate 2 mg Estetrol 14.2 mg Mestranol 50 μg	Dienogest Drospirenone Norethindrone

[a]Progestins are listed alphabetically.
FDA = U.S. Food and Drug Administration.

COMBINATION HORMONAL CONTRACEPTIVES

Mechanism of Action

The most important contraceptive effect of both the estrogen and progestin components of CHCs is suppression of hypothalamic gonadotropin-releasing factors to inhibit ovulation. The progestin also thickens cervical mucus to retard sperm passage and renders the endometrium unfavorable for implantation. Estrogen stabilizes the endometrium, which prevents intermenstrual bleeding—also known as *breakthrough bleeding*. This benefit is termed *cycle control*. The net effect is an extremely effective yet highly reversible contraceptive method.

Combination Oral Contraceptive Pills

Composition

COCs are marketed in various estrogen and progestin combinations (Table 38-5). Ethinyl estradiol is the most common estrogen present in formulations in the United States. Less frequently, mestranol, estetrol, or estradiol valerate is used. Unwanted effects most often attributed to the estrogen component are breast tenderness, weight gain, nausea, and headache.

COCs contain one of several progestins that are structurally related to progesterone, testosterone, or spironolactone. Thus, these progestins bind variably to progesterone, androgen, glucocorticoid, and mineralocorticoid receptors. These affinities explain many pill-related side effects and are often used to compare one progestin with another. However, the advantage of one progestin over another is less apparent clinically (Lawrie, 2011; Moreau, 2007).

To minimize adverse effects, estrogen and progestin content in COCs has dropped remarkably. Currently, the lowest acceptable dose is limited by the ability to prevent pregnancy yet maintain cycle control. Thus, the daily estrogen content varies from 10 to 50 μg of ethinyl estradiol, and most contain ≤35 μg.

In a few COCs, inert placebo pills have been replaced by tablets containing iron. These have the suffix Fe added to their name. Instead, *Beyaz* and *Sayfral* have a form of folate—*levomefolate calcium*—within both its active and placebo pills.

With COCs termed *monophasic*, the progestin dose remains constant. In others, the dose frequently is varied, and term *biphasic, triphasic,* or *quadriphasic* is used depending on the number of dose changes within one cycle. In some formulations, the estrogen dose also varies. In general, phasic pills aim to reduce the total progestin content and associated side effects per cycle without sacrificing contraceptive efficacy or cycle control. The theoretical advantage of this approach, however, has not been borne out clinically (Moreau, 2007). Cycle control also appears similar among mono-, bi-, and triphasic pills (van Vliet, 2011a,b,c).

Administration

Hormones are taken daily for a specified time (21 to 81 days) and then replaced by placebo for a specified time (4 to 7 days), which is called the *pill-free interval*. During these pill-free days, bleeding prompted by hormonal withdrawal is expected.

With the trend toward lower estrogen doses, follicular growth and ovulation may occur. To counter this, the active-pill duration in some formulations is extended to 24 days. In comparison, these 24/4 regimens perform similarly to 21/7 regimens (Anttila, 2011; Marr, 2012).

Longer durations of active hormone are designed to minimize the number of withdrawal bleeding episodes. This practice has similar efficacy and safety profiles compared with traditional administration (Edelman, 2014). These *extended-cycle* products produce a 13-week cycle, that is, 12 weeks of hormone use, followed by a week for withdrawal menses. Instead, the product *Amethyst* provides continuous active hormone pills for 365 days each year. These extended-cycle and continuous regimens may be especially suited for women with significant menstrual symptoms (Mendoza, 2014).

Women ideally begin COCs on the first day of a menstrual cycle. In such cases, a back-up method is unnecessary. With the more traditional "Sunday start," women begin pills on the first Sunday that follows menses onset, and a back-up method is added for 1 week. If menses begin on a Sunday, pills are begun that day and no back-up method is required. Alternatively, with a quick start, COCs are started on any day, commonly the day prescribed. A back-up method is added for 1 week (Westhoff, 2007b). If the woman is unknowingly already pregnant, COCs are not teratogenic (Rothman, 1978; Savolainen, 1981). A missed menses after COC initiation should prompt pregnancy testing. Similar initiation methods are used for contraceptive vaginal rings or patches.

For maximum efficiency, pills are best taken at the same time each day. If one dose is missed, the missed pill is taken immediately; the scheduled dose for that day is taken on time; and then daily pills are continued. If two or more doses are missed, the most recent missed pill is taken immediately; the scheduled dose for that day is taken on time; and a back-up method is used for 7 days while daily pills are then continued (Curtis, 2016a). If withdrawal bleeding fails to occur during the pill-free interval, a woman should continue her pills but exclude pregnancy.

With COC initiation, spotting or bleeding is common. It does not reflect contraceptive failure and typically resolves within one to three cycles. If unscheduled bleeding persists, those with bleeding during the first part of a pill pack may benefit from an increase in the estrogen dose, whereas those with bleeding during the second part may improve with a higher progestin dose (Nelson, 2011).

Method-specific Effects

Altered Drug Efficacy

Some drugs decrease COC effectiveness, and choosing another contraceptive method is preferable. Most notable are rifampin/rifabutin, but other antibiotics are not implicated (Simmons, 2018). Cytochrome P450–inducing anticonvulsants are another group and include phenytoin, phenobarbital, primidone, carbamazepine, oxcarbazepine, topiramate, rufinamide, and felbamate (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). Some antiretroviral drugs, mainly among the protease inhibitor group, can interact with COCs. A rapidly evolving list is provided by the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (2019).

In obese women, COCs are effective (Simmons, 2016). With the *Ortho Evra* transdermal patch, however, obesity may alter pharmacokinetics and lower efficacy (p. 674).

On the other hand, some COCs lower the actions of certain drugs. Notably, lamotrigine efficacy is lowered by COCs (Gaffield, 2011).

Metabolic Changes, Risks, and Benefits

The hormones in COCs can induce metabolic changes that may aggravate underlying medical conditions. Most of the contraindications to COCs reflect these metabolic alterations (Table 38-6).

Hepatic angiotensinogen synthesis is augmented by COCs. Its conversion by renin to angiotensin I may be associated with pill-induced hypertension. Thus, patients return 8 to 12 weeks after COC initiation for evaluation of blood pressure and other symptoms. However, women using low-dose COC formulations rarely develop clinically significant hypertension (Chasan-Taber, 1996).

In women with well-controlled hypertension, COC use is linked to greater risks than in nonusers for stroke, acute myocardial infarction, and peripheral arterial disease, and in these women, COCs are considered US MEC category 3 (Curtis, 2016b). Severe forms of hypertension, especially those with end-organ involvement, preclude COC use.

The estrogen component of COCs boosts hepatic production of fibrinogen and many of the clotting factors. Deep-vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism rates are increased in women who use COCs (Stadel, 1981). These events are estrogen-dose related, and rates have substantively declined with lower-dose formulations containing 10 to 35 μg of ethinyl estradiol. The general-population risk of venous thromboembolism (VTE) is 4 to 5 events per 100,000 woman-years. The incidence of VTE with COC use increases three- to fivefold compared with nonusers (Shaw, 2013; van Hylckama Vlieg,

TABLE 38-6. Contraindications to the Use of Combination Oral Contraceptive Pills

Pregnancy
Uncontrolled hypertension
Smokers older than 35 years
Diabetes with vascular involvement
Cerebrovascular or coronary artery disease
Migraines with associated focal neurologic deficits
Thrombophlebitis or thromboembolic disorders
History of deep-vein thrombophlebitis or thrombotic disorders
Thrombogenic heart arrhythmias
Thrombogenic cardiac valvulopathies
Undiagnosed abnormal genital bleeding
Known or suspected breast carcinoma
Cholestatic jaundice of pregnancy or jaundice with pill use
Hepatic adenomas and carcinomas
Cirrhosis or active liver disease with abnormal liver function
Known or suspected estrogen-dependent neoplasia

2009). Obesity raises the general VTE risk, which is compounded by COCs (Horton, 2016; Suchon, 2016). Accordingly, in an obese woman, COCs are considered a US MEC category 2. VTE rates are also significantly increased in women smokers older than 35 years, and COCs are not recommended. Those most at risk for VTE include women with thrombophilias (ESHRE Capri Workshop Group, 2013). Moreover, COC use during the month before a major operative procedure appears to double the risk for postoperative VTE (Robinson, 1991). Thus, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021) recommends balancing the risks of VTE and the degree of postoperative immobility with the risk of unintended pregnancy during the 4 to 6 weeks required to reverse the thrombogenic effects of COCs before surgery. In the early puerperium, VTE risks are also increased, and COCs are not recommended early (see Table 38-4).

Certain progestins within COC are also linked with greater VTE rates. A slightly higher VTE risk with drospirenone-containing COCs has been shown in two studies. In response, an assessment of benefits and VTE risks in users of these pills has been emphasized (Food and Drug Administration, 2012; Jick, 2011; Parkin, 2011). Desogestrel and gestodene are also implicated and carry similarly elevated risks (Stegeman, 2013; Vinogradova, 2015).

For women with prior myocardial infarction, COCs should not be considered. Also, for women with multiple cardiovascular risk factors, which include smoking, hypertension, older age, dyslipidemias, and diabetes, the risk for myocardial infarction outweighs the benefits of this method. For women with no cardiovascular risks, low-dose oral contraceptives are not associated with an increased risk of myocardial infarction (Margolis, 2007; World Health Organization, 1997).

For nonsmoking women younger than 35, stroke is rare (World Health Organization, 1996). COCs are associated with a small increased risk for ischemic stroke (Chan, 2004; Lidegaard, 2012). Rates rise significantly for women who have hypertension, who smoke, or who have migraine headaches with visual aura or other focal neurological changes *and* use COCs (MacClellan, 2007; Tepper, 2016b). The evidence for stroke risk in migraineurs without aura is less clear (Etminan, 2005; Schürks, 2009). COC initiation may be considered for women with preexisting migraines without aura if they are otherwise healthy, younger, normotensive nonsmokers. For women with prior stroke, COCs should not be considered to avoid repeat events.

Regarding carbohydrate metabolism, the risk of developing diabetes is not increased with COC use (Kim, 2002). For diabetic women, COCs may be used in nonsmokers with disease duration <20 years and without associated vascular disease, nephropathy, retinopathy, or neuropathy (Curtis, 2016b). In general, COCs raise serum triglycerides and total and HDL cholesterol levels but lower LDL cholesterol concentrations. Last, studies do not support a connection between COCs and weight gain (Gallo, 2014).

Regarding neoplasia, COCs offer a protective effect against ovarian and endometrial cancers (Collaborative Group on Epidemiological Studies of Ovarian Cancer, 2008; Tsilidis, 2011). As an exception, the relative risk of cervical dysplasia and cervical cancer is higher in current COC users, but this declines after use is discontinued. Following 10 or more years, risk returns to that of never users (International Collaboration of Epidemiological Studies of Cervical Cancer, 2007). It is unclear whether COCs contribute to breast cancer development. Major studies show no risk or a small risk among current users, which drops with time following cessation (Collaborative Group on Hormonal Factors in Breast Cancer, 1996; Hannaford, 2007; Marchbanks, 2002).

COCs are not a risk for liver tumors (Heinemann, 1998; Maheshwari, 2007). For women with known tumors, COCs may be used in those with focal nodular hyperplasia, but avoided in those with benign hepatic adenoma and hepatocellular carcinoma (Kapp, 2009c). Rates of colorectal cancer appear to be reduced in ever users (Bosetti, 2009; Luan, 2015).

Of other potential effects, cholestasis and cholestatic jaundice are uncommon and resolve when COCs are discontinued. In women who have active hepatitis, COCs should not be initiated, but these may be continued in women who experience a flare of their liver disease while already taking COCs. Use of progestin-only contraception in these women is not restricted. Moreover, COCs are suitable for women who have recovered. Mild compensated cirrhosis does not limit the use of COCs or progestin-only methods. With severe decompensated disease, all hormonal methods are avoided (Kapp, 2009a).

Chloasma, which is hyperpigmentation of the face and forehead, is more likely in women who demonstrated such a change during pregnancy. This is less common with low-dose estrogen formulations.

Previously, COCs were used to treat functional ovarian cysts. However, data do not support use of current low-dose COC formulations to resolve or prevent these (European Society of Human Reproduction and Embryology, 2001; Grimes, 2014).

Last, many noncontraceptive benefits are associated with COC use (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018). COCs are often selected for these effects, even in those without contraceptive needs. First, dysmenorrhea and heavy menstrual bleeding declines. COCs also elevate hepatic production of sex hormone–binding globulin. This binds bioavailable testosterone to diminish the action of androgens. Thus, conditions such as acne and hirsutism can improve. For women with premenstrual dysphoric disorder, drospirenone-containing COCs can lessen symptoms (Pearlstein, 2005; Yonkers, 2005).

Intravaginal Rings

NuvaRing is a flexible clear intravaginal ring that measures 54 mm in diameter and 4 mm in cross section. Its core releases ethinyl estradiol and etonogestrel, which are absorbed across the vaginal epithelium. *Annovera* is a new ring that releases ethinyl estradiol and segesterone acetate. Colored white, it measures 56 mm in diameter and 8.4 mm in cross section.

For both, the ring is inserted within 5 days of menses onset and, after 3 weeks of use, is removed for 1 week to allow withdrawal bleeding. *Nuvaring* is single use, and after menses, a new ring is placed. In contrast, after removal and washing, the same *Annovera* ring is reinserted for another 3 weeks. One ring can function for 13 such cycles (Nelson, 2019).

With insertion, the ring is compressed and advanced into the vagina, but no specific final orientation within the vagina is

required. Patient satisfaction is high with this method, although vaginitis, ring-related events, and leukorrhea are more common than with COCs (Gemzell-Danielsson, 2019; Oddsson, 2005). A ring may be used concurrently with vaginal medications or with a tampon (Verhoeven, 2004a,b). However, with *Annovera*, miconazole suppositories raised hormone levels. These were not altered with miconazole cream, and thus cream or oral antifungals are preferable (Simmons, 2018). Partners may feel the ring during intercourse (Dieben, 2002). If this is bothersome, the ring may be removed for intercourse but should be replaced within 3 hours for *Nuvaring* and within 2 hours for *Annovera* to maintain efficacy.

Transdermal Patches

The *Ortho Evra* patch and its generic *Xulane* each contain ethinyl estradiol and norelgestromin. A newer patch, *Twirla*, releases ethinyl estradiol and levonorgestrel. Either patch may be applied to the buttocks, upper outer arm, lower abdomen, or upper torso, but the breasts are avoided. Rates of application-site skin reaction are low (Kaunitz, 2015; Smallwood, 2001). If a patch is so poorly adhered that it requires reinforcement with tape, it should be replaced. Women can wear the patch in saunas and whirlpools without decreased efficacy (Abrams, 2001; Archer, 2013). However, with *Twirla*, swimming is limited to 30 minutes.

Initiation of the patch is the same as for COCs, and a new patch is applied weekly for 3 weeks, followed by a patch-free week to allow withdrawal bleeding. In general, the transdermal patches and vaginal rings produce metabolic changes, side effects, and efficacy rates comparable to those with COC pills.

However, the *Ortho Evra* patch has been associated with a higher VTE risk in some but not all studies (Cole, 2007; Jick, 2010; Lidegaard, 2011). Labeling for the patch states that the risk for VTE may be increased compared with COCs, and relative risk estimates range from 1.2 to 2.2. In addition, obesity—90 kg or greater—may be associated with a higher risk for patch contraceptive failure (Zieman, 2002).

In contrast, the LNG-containing patch showed comparable VTE rates compared with COCs in one randomized trial (Kaunitz, 2015). Moreover, efficacy was similar between obese and normal-weight users.

BARRIER METHODS

Male Condom

For many years, male and female condoms, vaginal diaphragms, and periodic abstinence have been used for contraception with variable success. When used properly, condoms provide considerable but not absolute protection against a broad range of STDs, including HIV (Eaton, 2014). Contraceptive efficacy of the male condom is enhanced by a reservoir tip and by the addition of a spermicide. Adjunct lubricant and spermicides should be water-based because oil-based products degrade latex.

For individuals sensitive to latex, condoms made from lamb intestines are effective, but they do not provide infection protection. Instead, nonallergenic condoms made of polyurethane or of synthetic elastomers are available. Polyurethane condoms are effective against STDs but have a higher breakage and slippage rate compared with latex condoms (Gallo, 2015).

Female Condom

The only female condom available in the United States is marketed as the *FC2 Female Condom*. It contains a nitrile sheath and outer ring and a flexible polyurethane inner ring. Its open ring remains outside the vagina, whereas its closed internal ring is fitted under the symphysis like a diaphragm (Fig. 38-3). The inner and outer sheath are covered with silicone-based lubricant, and other-based lubricants can be added. Male condoms should not be used concurrently because simultaneous use creates friction that leads to condom slipping, tearing, and displacement. Following use, the female condom outer ring should be twisted to seal the condom so that no semen spills. As an added value, the female condom may offer some protection against STDs (Minnis, 2005).

Diaphragm plus Spermicide

The diaphragm consists of a latex dome of various diameters supported by a circular latex-covered metal spring. It is effective when used in combination with water-based spermicidal jelly or cream, which is applied into the dome cup and along the device rim. The diaphragm is then positioned so that the cup faces the cervix and the cervix is partitioned effectively from the remainder of the vagina and the penis. In this fashion, the centrally placed spermicide is held against the cervix. When appropriately positioned, one rim is lodged deep in the posterior vaginal fornix, and the opposite rim fits behind the inner surface of the symphysis and immediately below the urethra. If a diaphragm is too small, it will not remain in place. If it is too large, it is uncomfortable when forced into position. Coexistent pelvic organ prolapse typically leads to instability and expulsion. Because size and spring flexibility must be individualized, the diaphragm is fitted by providers and available only by prescription.

The diaphragm and spermicide can be inserted hours before intercourse. If more than 6 hours elapse, the diaphragm can remain but additional spermicide is placed in the vagina for maximum protection. Spermicide is reapplied before each coital episode. The diaphragm is not removed for at least 6 hours after intercourse. Because toxic shock syndrome has been described following its use, it may be worthwhile to remove the diaphragm at 6 hours, or at least the next morning, to minimize this rare event. Diaphragm use is associated with a slightly greater rate of urinary infections, presumably from urethral irritation by the ring under the symphysis.

Cervical Cap

FemCap is the only cervical cap currently available in the United States. Made of silicone rubber, it has a sailor-cap shape with a dome that covers the cervix and a flared brim, which allows the cap to be held in place by the upper vagina's muscular walls. Available in 22-, 26-, and 30-mm sizes, it is used with a spermicide applied once at insertion to both

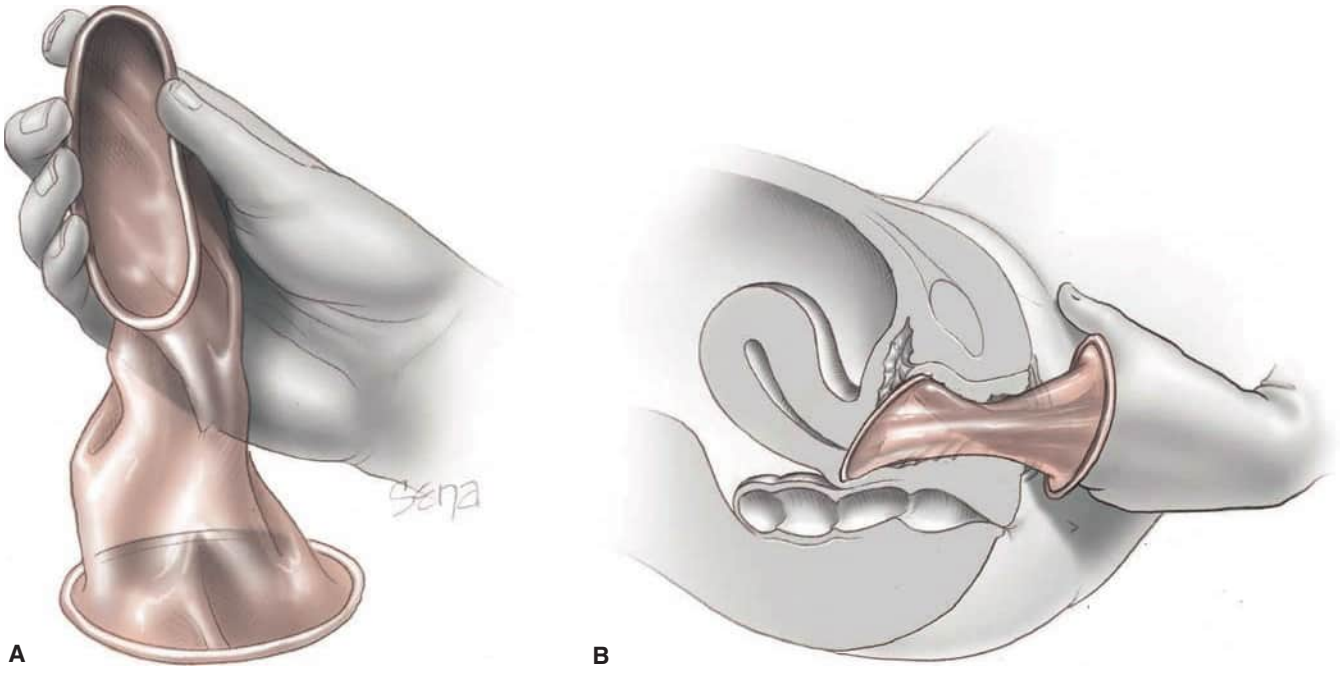


FIGURE 38-3 *FC2 Female Condom* insertion and positioning. **A.** The inner ring is squeezed for insertion. The sheath is inserted similarly to a diaphragm. **B.** The inner ring is pushed inward with an index finger.

sides of the dome cup. For contraception, it should remain in place for 6 hours following coitus and may remain for up to 48 hours. Even with proper fitting and correct use, pregnancy rates with this method are higher than those with the diaphragm (Gallo, 2012).

FERTILITY AWARENESS–BASED METHODS

These attempt to identify the fertile days each cycle and advise sexual abstinence during these days. Fertility awareness–based methods (FABMs) as a group have a 15-percent pregnancy rate with typical use (Trussell, 2018). Some smartphone applications aim to assist these practices (Berglund Scherwitzl, 2017; Jennings, 2019).

The *Standard Days Method* counsels women to avoid unprotected intercourse during cycle days 8 through 19. For successful use, women must have regular monthly cycles of 26 to 32 days. Those who use this method can mark a calendar or can use *Cycle-Beads*, which is a ring of counting beads, to keep track of their days.

The *TwoDay Method* relies on awareness of vaginal wetness, which reflects changes in the amount and quality of cervical mucus at different times in the menstrual cycle. Intercourse is considered safe if a woman did not note mucus on the day of planned intercourse or the day prior.

The *Symptothermal Method* combines changes in cervical mucus—onset of the fertile period; changes in basal body temperature—end of the fertile period; and calculations to estimate ovulation. A sustained 0.4°F rise in the basal body temperature usually precedes ovulation. For maximum efficacy, the woman must abstain from intercourse from the first day of menses through the third day after the temperature increase. Overall, this method is more complex to learn and apply, and it does not appreciably improve efficacy.

SPERMICIDES

Most spermicides contain nonoxynol-9 and are sold over-the-counter as creams, jellies, suppositories, films, and foams. They are a less effective method but provide a chemical spermicidal action and a physical barrier to sperm penetration. Their duration of maximal effectiveness is usually no more than 1 hour, and these do not offer STD protection. If pregnancy does occur, nonoxynol-9 is not teratogenic (Briggs, 2017).

In 2020, a vaginal contraceptive gel containing lactic acid, citric acid, and potassium bitartrate was FDA approved as *Phexxi*. As an acidifying agent, it resists the buffering effect of semen and thereby allows the vagina's normally acidic pH to work as a spermicide (Garg, 2001; Nelson, 2018). This pH effect also has potential as a microbicide, which warrants additional study.

Ideally, either agent is deposited high in the vagina up to 1 hour before coitus. Thereafter, each must be reinserted before repeat intercourse.

■ Contraceptive Sponge

The *Today* contraceptive sponge is an over-the-counter, one-size-fits-all device. The nonoxynol-9–impregnated polyurethane disc is 2.5 cm thick and 5.5 cm wide. One side has a dimple that faces the cervix, and the other has a satin loop for removal. The sponge can be inserted up to 24 hours prior to intercourse, and while in place, it provides contraception regardless of coital frequency. It should remain in place for 6 hours after intercourse. Pregnancy is prevented primarily by the spermicide and to a lesser extent by covering the cervix and absorbing semen.

Although the sponge is possibly more convenient than the diaphragm or condom, it is less effective than either (Kuyoh, 2013). Most common causes for method discontinuance are pregnancy, discomfort, or vaginitis (Beckman, 1989). Although toxic shock syndrome has been reported with the contraceptive sponge, it is rare, and evidence suggests that the sponge may actually limit production of the responsible staphylococcal exotoxin (Remington, 1987). Still, it is recommended that the sponge not be used during menses or the puerperium.

EMERGENCY CONTRACEPTION

Following unprotected sexual intercourse, several emergency contraception (EC) regimens substantially lower the likelihood of an unwanted pregnancy. Current methods include COCs, a progestin, a selective progesterone-receptor modulator (SPRM), and the Cu-IUD (Table 38-7). Notably, the single-dose LNG pill is available over-the-counter without a prescription to all reproductive-aged individuals. Patients can obtain information regarding EC by calling 888-NOT-2-LATE or accessing The Emergency Contraception Website: http://not-2-late.com. Although not yet adopted as EC, early efficacy data find the LNG-IUS not inferior to the Cu-IUD for EC (Turok, 2021).

Hormonal Emergency Contraception

Except for allergy to a particular component, no conditions in the US MEC contraindicate hormonal EC methods. Moreover, clinical examination or pregnancy testing is not required before EC provision (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). With all methods, dosing begins as early as possible and ideally within 72 hours of unprotected coitus. It may be given up to 120 hours after coitus (Fine, 2010; Rodrigues, 2001; von Hertzen, 2002).

The major mechanism with all hormonal regimens is inhibition or delay of ovulation. Of oral methods, failure rates are lowest with ulipristal (1 to 2 percent) and greatest with the Yuzpe method (2 to 3.5 percent) (Cleland, 2014). If EC fails to prevent pregnancy or is mistimed, no associations with major congenital malformation or pregnancy complications have been noted with these hormonal methods (Jatlaoui, 2016; Levy, 2014). With EC administration, nausea and vomiting can be an important side effect. Accordingly, an oral antiemetic may be prescribed at least 1 hour before each dose (Rodriguez, 2013). If a woman vomits within 2 hours of a dose, the dose is repeated.

For subsequent coitus, a barrier method is recommended until long-term contraception is begun. If not, EC can be repeated within a given menstrual cycle. Quick start initiation of contraceptive methods is suitable and is discussed in the respective method sections. Notably, because ulipristal competes at the progesterone receptor, a 5-day delay is recommended before starting progestin-containing contraceptives.

Copper-containing Intrauterine Devices

For women who are candidates, Cu-IUD insertion is the most effective EC method and provides an effective 10-year form of contraception. If an IUD is placed up to 5 days after unprotected coitus, the pregnancy rate approximates only 0.1 percent (Cleland, 2012; Wu, 2010).

TABLE 38-7. Emergency Contraception Methods and Some Brand-Name Examples

Method	Formulation	Pills per Dose	Number of Doses[a]
Progestin-only Pill			
Plan B One-Step	1.5 mg LNG	1	1
PRM Pill			
Ella	30 mg ulipristal acetate	1	1
COC Pills[b]			
Ogestrel	50 μg EE + 0.5 mg norgestrel[c]	2	2
Cryselle, Low-Ogestrel	30 μg EE + 0.3 mg norgestrel[c]	4	2
Enpresse (orange), Trivora (pink)	30 μg EE + 0.125 mg LNG	4	2
Levora, Seasonale	30 μg EE + 0.15 mg LNG	4	2
Aviane, LoSeasonique (orange)	20 μg EE + 0.1 mg LNG	5	2
Copper-containing IUD			
Paragard T380A			

[a]Doses taken 12 hours apart.
[b]COCs method, also known as the Yuzpe method, aims to provides a minimum of 100 μg of EE and 0.5 mg of LNG or 1.0 mg of norgestrel in each of the two doses. A listing of other suitable COCs and dosing is found at https://ec.princeton.edu/questions/dose.html#dose.
[c]Norgestrel contains two isomers, and only one of these isomers is bioactive, namely levonorgestrel. Thus, the amount of norgestrel needed for efficacy is twice that of the levonorgestrel-based regimens.
COC = combination oral contraceptive; EE = ethinyl estradiol; IUD = intrauterine device; LNG = levonorgestrel; PRM = progesterone-receptor modulator.

REFERENCES

Abdel-Aleem H, d'Arcangues C, Vogelsong KM, et al: Treatment of vaginal bleeding irregularities induced by progestin only contraceptives. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD003449, 2013

Abrams LS, Skee DM, Natarajan J, et al: Pharmacokinetics of norelgestromin and ethinyl estradiol delivered by a contraceptive patch (Ortho Evra/Evra) under conditions of heat, humidity, and exercise. J Clin Pharmacol 41(12):1301, 2001

Abrams LS, Skee DM, Wong FA, et al: Pharmacokinetics of norelgestromin and ethinyl estradiol from two consecutive contraceptive patches. J Clin Pharmacol 41:1232, 2001

Akers AY, Steinway C, Sonalkar S, et al: Reducing pain during intrauterine device insertion: a randomized controlled trial in adolescents and young women. Obstet Gynecol 130(4):795, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Noncontraceptive use of hormonal contraceptives. Practice Bulletin No. 110, January 2010, Reaffirmed 2018

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Clinical challenges of long-acting reversible contraceptive methods. Committee Opinion No. 672, September 2016, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Depot medroxyprogesterone acetate and bone effects. Committee Opinion No. 602, June 2014, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Emergency contraception. Practice Bulletin No. 152, September 2015, Reaffirmed 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Long-acting reversible contraception: implants and intrauterine devices. Practice Bulletin No. 186, November 2017, Reaffirmed 2019d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Adolescents and long-acting reversible contraception: implants and intrauterine devices. Committee Opinion No. 735, May 2018, Reaffirmed 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Gynecologic management of adolescents and young women with seizure disorders. Committee Opinion No. 806, May 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention of venous thromboembolism in gynecologic surgery. Practice Bulletin No. 232, July 2021

Anttila L, Bachmann G, Hernádi L, et al: Contraceptive efficacy of a combined oral contraceptive containing ethinyl oestradiol 20 μg/drospirenone 3 mg administered in a 24/4 regimen: a pooled analysis of four open-label studies. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 155(2):180, 2011

Apter D, Gemzell-Danielsson K, Hauck B, et al: Pharmacokinetics of two low-dose levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine systems and effects on ovulation rate and cervical function: pooled analyses of phase II and III studies. Fertil Steril 101(6):1656, 2014

Archer DF, Ahrendt HJ, Drouin D: Drospirenone-only oral contraceptive: results from a multicenter noncomparative trial of efficacy, safety and tolerability. Contraception 92(5):439, 2015

Archer DF, Stanczyk FZ, Rubin A, et al: Pharmacokinetics and adhesion of the Agile transdermal contraceptive patch (AG200-15) during daily exposure to external conditions of heat, humidity and exercise. Contraception 87(2):212, 2013

Barnett C, Moehner S, Do Minh T, et al: Perforation risk and intra-uterine devices: results of the EURAS-IUD 5-year extension study. Eur J Contracept Reprod Health Care 22(6):424, 2017

Bayer HealthCare Pharmaceuticals: Mirena: highlights of prescribing information. 2017. Available at: https://labeling.bayerhealthcare.com/html/products/pi/Mirena_PI.pdf. Accessed August 15, 2020

Beckman LJ, Murray J, Harvey SM: The contraceptive sponge: factors in initiation and discontinuation of use. Contraception 40:481, 1989

Bednarek PH, Creinin MD, Reeves MF, et al: Immediate versus delayed IUD insertion after uterine aspiration. N Engl J Med 364(23):2208, 2011

Berglund Scherwitzl E, Lundberg O, Kopp Kallner H, et al: Perfect-use and typical-use Pearl Index of a contraceptive mobile app. Contraception 96(6):420, 2017

Birgisson NE, Zhao Q, Secura GM, et al: Positive testing for *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* and *Chlamydia trachomatis* and the risk of pelvic inflammatory disease in IUD users. J Womens Health 24(5):354, 2015

Bosetti C, Bravi F, Negri E, et al: Oral contraceptives and colorectal cancer risk: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Hum Reprod Update 15(5):489, 2009

Brahmi D, Steenland MW, Renner RM, et al: Pregnancy outcomes with an IUD in situ: a systematic review. Contraception 85(2):131, 2012

Briggs GG, Freeman RK, Towers CV, et al: Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation, 11th ed. Philadelphia, Wolters Kluwer, 2017

Carmo LSMP, Braga GC, Ferriani RA, et al: Timing of etonogestrel-releasing implants and growth of breastfed infants: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 130(1):100, 2017

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2015. MMWR 64(3):1, 2015

Chan WS, Ray J, Wai EK, et al: Risk of stroke in women exposed to low-dose oral contraceptives: a critical evaluation of the evidence. Arch Intern Med 164:741, 2004

Chasan-Taber L, Willett WC, Manson JE, et al: Prospective study of oral contraceptives and hypertension among women in the United States. Circulation 94:483, 1996

Chen BA, Reeves MF, Hayes JL, et al: Postplacental or delayed insertion of the levonorgestrel intrauterine device after vaginal delivery: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 116(5):1079, 2010

Ciet P, Litmanovich DE: MR safety issues particular to women. Magn Reson Imaging Clin N Am 23(1):59, 2015

Clark MK, Sowers M, Levy B, et al: Bone mineral density loss and recovery during 48 months in first-time users of depot medroxyprogesterone acetate. Fertil Steril 86:1466, 2006

Cleland K, Raymond EG, Westley E, et al: Emergency contraception review: evidence-based recommendations for clinicians. Clin Obstet Gynecol 57(4):741, 2014

Cleland K, Zhu H, Goldstuck N, et al: The efficacy of intrauterine devices for emergency contraception: a systematic review of 35 years of experience. Hum Reprod 27(7):1994, 2012

Cole JA, Norman H, Doherty M, et al: Venous thromboembolism, myocardial infarction, and stroke among transdermal contraceptive system users. Obstet Gynecol 109:339, 2007

Collaborative Group on Epidemiological Studies of Ovarian Cancer, Beral V, Doll R, et al: Ovarian cancer and oral contraceptives: collaborative reanalysis of data of 45 epidemiological studies including 23,257 women with ovarian cancer and 87,303 controls. Lancet 371:303, 2008

Collaborative Group on Hormonal Factors in Breast Cancer: Breast cancer and hormonal contraceptives: collaborative reanalysis of individual data on 53,297 women with breast cancer and 100,239 women without breast cancer from 54 epidemiological studies. Lancet 347:1713, 1996

CooperSurgical: Paragard: highlights of prescribing information. 2020. Available at: https://www.paragard.com/wp-content/uploads/2018/10/PARAGARD-PI.pdf. Accessed August 15, 2020

Correia L, Ramos AB, Machado AI, et al: Magnetic resonance imaging and gynecological devices. Contraception 85(6):538, 2012

Creinin MD, Kaunitz AM, Darney PD, et al: The US etonogestrel implant mandatory clinical training and active monitoring programs: 6-year experience. Contraception 95(2):205, 2017

Curtis EM, Pine L: *Actinomyces* in the vaginas of women with and without intrauterine contraceptive devices. Am J Obstet Gynecol 140:880, 1981

Curtis KM, Hannaford PC, Rodriguez MI, et al: Hormonal contraception and HIV acquisition among women: an updated systematic review. BMJ Sex Reprod Health 46(1):8, 2020

Curtis KM, Jatlaoui TC, Tepper NK, et al: U.S. selected practice recommendations for contraceptive use, 2016. MMWR 65(4):1, 2016a

Curtis KM, Nguyen A, Reeves JA, et al: Update to U.S. selected practice recommendations for contraceptive use: self-administration of subcutaneous depot medroxyprogesterone acetate. MMWR 70(20):739, 2021

Curtis KM, Tepper NK, Jatlaoui TC, et al: U.S. medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use, 2016. MMWR 65(3):1, 2016b

Dianat S, Fox E, Ahrens KA, et al: Side effects and health benefits of depot medroxyprogesterone acetate: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 133(2):332, 2019

Dieben TO, Roumen FJ, Apter D: Efficacy, cycle control, and user acceptability of a novel combined contraceptive vaginal ring. Obstet Gynecol 100:585, 2002

Dorflinger LJ: Metabolic effects of implantable steroid contraceptives for women. Contraception 65(1):47, 2002

Duijkers IJM, Heger-Mahn D, Drouin D, Colli E, Skouby S. Maintenance of ovulation inhibition with a new progestogen-only pill containing drospirenone after scheduled 24-h delays in pill intake. Contraception 93(4):303, 2016

Eaton EF, Hoesley CJ: Barrier methods for human immunodeficiency virus prevention. Infect Dis Clin North Am 28(4):585, 2014

Edelman A, Micks E, Gallo MF, et al: Continuous or extended cycle vs. cyclic use of combined hormonal contraceptives for contraception. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD004695, 2014

ESHRE Capri Workshop Group: Venous thromboembolism in women: a specific reproductive health risk. Hum Reprod Update 19(5):471, 2013

Etminan M, Takkouche B, Isorna FC, et al: Risk of ischaemic stroke in people with migraine: systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies. BMJ 330:63, 2005

European Society of Human Reproduction and Embryology—ESHRE Capri Workshop Group: Ovarian and endometrial function during hormonal contraception. Hum Reprod 16(7):1527, 2001

Farley TM, Rosenberg MJ, Rowe PJ, et al: Intrauterine devices and pelvic inflammatory disease: an international perspective. Lancet 339:785, 1992

Fine P, Mathé H, Ginde S, Cullins V, Morfesis J, Gainer E. Ulipristal acetate taken 48–120 hours after intercourse for emergency contraception. Obstet Gynecol 115(2 Pt 1):257, 2010

Finer LB, Zolna MR: Declines in unintended pregnancy in the United States, 2008–2011. N Engl J Med 374(9):843, 2016

Food and Drug Administration: FDA Drug Safety Communication: Updated information about the risk of blood clots in women taking birth control pills containing drospirenone. 2012. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm299305.htm. Accessed July 7, 2016

Fox MC, Oat-Judge J, Severson K, et al: Immediate placement of intrauterine devices after first and second trimester pregnancy termination. Contraception 83(1):34, 2011

Friedlander E, Kaneshiro B. Therapeutic options for unscheduled bleeding associated with long-acting reversible contraception. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 42(4):593, 2015

Furlong LA: Ectopic pregnancy risk when contraception fails. J Reprod Med 47:881, 2002

Gaffield ME, Culwell KR, Lee CR: The use of hormonal contraception among women taking anticonvulsant therapy. Contraception 83(1):16, 2011

Gallo MF, Grimes DA, Lopez LM, et al: Non-latex versus latex male condoms for contraception. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD003550, 2006, Reaffirmed 2015

Gallo MF, Grimes DA, Schulz KF: Cervical cap versus diaphragm for contraception. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD003551, 2002, Reassessed 2012

Gallo MF, Lopez LM, Grimes DA, et al: Combination contraceptives: effects on weight. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD003987, 2014

Gardner JM, Mishell DR Jr: Analysis of bleeding patterns and resumption of fertility following discontinuation of a long-acting injectable contraceptive. Fertil Steril 21:286, 1970

Garg S, Anderson RA, Chany CJ, et al. Properties of a new acid-buffering bioadhesive vaginal formulation (ACIDFORM). Contraception 64(1):67, 2001

Gemzell-Danielsson K, Schellschmidt I, Apter D: A randomized, phase II study describing the efficacy, bleeding profile, and safety of two low-dose levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine contraceptive systems and Mirena. Fertil Steril 97(3):616, 2012

Gemzell-Danielsson K, Sitruk-Ware R, Creinin MD, et al: Segesterone acetate/ethinyl estradiol 12-month contraceptive vaginal system safety evaluation. Contraception 99(6):323, 2019

Goldthwaite LM, Creinin MD: Comparing bleeding patterns for the levonorgestrel 52 mg, 19.5 mg, and 13.5 mg intrauterine systems. Contraception 100(2):128, 2019

Grimes DA, Jones LB, Lopez LM, et al: Oral contraceptives for functional ovarian cysts. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD006134, 2014

Grimes DA, Lopez LM; Schulz KF: Antibiotic prophylaxis for intrauterine contraceptive device insertion. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD001327, 2001, Reaffirmed 2012

Guttmacher Institute: Contraceptive use in the United States. 2020. Available at: https://www.guttmacher.org/fact-sheet/contraceptive-use-united-states. Accessed August 21, 2020

Hall KS, Trussell J, Schwarz EB: Progestin-only contraceptive pill use among women in the United States. Contraception 86(6):653, 2012

Hannaford PC, Selvaraj S, Elliott AM, et al: Cancer risk among users of oral contraceptives: cohort data from the Royal College of General Practitioners' oral contraception study. BMJ 335:651, 2007

Heinemann LA, Weimann A, Gerken G, et al: Modern oral contraceptive use and benign liver tumors: the German Benign Liver Tumor Case-Control Study. Eur J Contracept Reprod Health Care 3:194, 1998

Horton LG, Simmons KB, Curtis KM: Combined hormonal contraceptive use among obese women and risk for cardiovascular events: a systematic review. Contraception 94(6):590 2016

Hubacher D, Lara-Ricalde R, Taylor DJ, et al: Use of copper intrauterine devices and the risk of tubal infertility among nulligravid women. N Engl J Med 345:561, 2001

International Collaboration of Epidemiological Studies of Cervical Cancer: Cervical cancer and hormonal contraceptives: collaborative reanalysis of individual data for 16,573 women with cervical cancer and 35,509 women without cervical cancer from 24 epidemiological studies. Lancet 370:1609, 2007

Iwanaga J, Fox MC, Rekers H, Schwartz L, Tubbs RS. Neurovascular anatomy of the adult female medial arm in relationship to potential sites for insertion of the etonogestrel contraceptive implant. Contraception 100(1):26, 2019

Jatlaoui TC, Riley H, Curtis KM: Safety data for levonorgestrel, ulipristal acetate and Yuzpe regimens for emergency contraception. Contraception 93(2):93, 2016

Jatlaoui TC, Whiteman MK, Jeng G, et al: Intrauterine device expulsion after postpartum placement: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 132(4):895, 2018

Jennings V, Haile LT, Simmons RG, et al: Perfect- and typical-use effectiveness of the Dot fertility app over 13 cycles: results from a prospective contraceptive effectiveness trial. Eur J Contracept Reprod Health Care 24(2):148, 2019

Jick SS, Hagberg KW, Kaye JA: ORTHO EVRA and venous thromboembolism: an update. Contraception 81(5):452, 2010

Jick SS, Hernandez RK: Risk of non-fatal venous thromboembolism in women using oral contraceptives containing drospirenone compared with women using oral contraceptives containing levonorgestrel: case-control study using United States claims data. BMJ 340:d2151, 2011

Kaislasuo J, Suhonen S, Gissler M, et al: Intrauterine contraception: incidence and factors associated with uterine perforation–a population-based study. Hum Reprod 27(9):2658, 2012

Kaislasuo J, Suhonen S, Gissler M, et al: Uterine perforation caused by intrauterine devices: clinical course and treatment. Hum Reprod 28(6):1546, 2013

Kang S, Niak A, Gada N, et al: Etonogestrel implant migration to the vasculature, chest wall, and distant body sites: cases from a pharmacovigilance database. Contraception 96(6):439, 2017

Kapp N, Curtis KM: Hormonal contraceptive use among women with liver tumors: a systematic review. Contraception 80(4):387, 2009a

Kapp N, Curtis KM: Intrauterine device insertion during the postpartum period: a systematic review. Contraception 80(4):327, 2009b

Kapp N, Tilley IB, Curtis KM: The effects of hormonal contraceptive use among women with viral hepatitis or cirrhosis of the liver: a systematic review. Contraception 80(4):381, 2009c

Katz Z, Lancet M, Skornik J, et al: Teratogenicity of progestogens given during the first trimester of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 65(6):775, 1985

Kaunitz AM, Archer DF, Mishell DR Jr, et al: Safety and tolerability of a new low-dose contraceptive patch in obese and nonobese women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(3):318.e1, 2015

Kim C, Siscovick DS, Sidney S, et al: Oral contraceptive use and association with glucose, insulin, and diabetes in young adult women: the CARDIA Study. Coronary Artery Risk Development in Young Adults. Diabetes Care 25:1027, 2002

Kim YJ, Youm J, Kim JH, et al: *Actinomyces*-like organisms in cervical smears: the association with intrauterine device and pelvic inflammatory diseases. Obstet Gynecol Sci 57(5):393, 2014

Kongsayreepong R, Chutivongse S, George P, et al: A multicentre comparative study of serum lipids and apolipoproteins in long-term users of DMPA and a control group of IUD users. World Health Organization. Task Force on Long-Acting Systemic Agents for Fertility Regulation Special Programme of Research, Development and Research Training in Human Reproduction. Contraception 47(2):177, 1993

Krattenmacher R: Drospirenone: pharmacology and pharmacokinetics of a unique progestogen. Contraception 62:29, 2000

Kuyoh MA, Toroitich-Ruto C, Grimes DA, et al: Sponge versus diaphragm for contraception. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD003172, 2013

Lammer EJ, Cordero JF: Exogenous sex hormone exposure and the risk for major malformations. JAMA 255:3128, 1986

Laumonerie P, Blasco L, Tibbo ME, et al: Peripheral nerve injury associated with a subdermal contraceptive implant: illustrative cases and systematic review of literature. World Neurosurg 111:317, 2018

Lawrie TA, Helmerhorst FM, Maitra NK, et al: Types of progestogens in combined oral contraception: effectiveness and side-effects. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD004861, 2011

Levi EE, Stuart GS, Zerden ML, et al: Intrauterine device placement during cesarean delivery and continued use 6 months postpartum: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 126(1):5, 2015

Levy DP, Jager M, Kapp N, et al: Ulipristal acetate for emergency contraception: postmarketing experience after use by more than 1 million women. Contraception 89(5):431, 2014

Lidegaard Ø, Løkkegaard E, Jensen A, et al: Thrombotic stroke and myocardial infarction with hormonal contraception. N Engl J Med 366(24):2257, 2012

Lidegaard Ø, Nielsen LH, Skovlund CW, et al: Risk of venous thromboembolism from use of oral contraceptives containing different progestogens and oestrogen doses: Danish cohort study, 2001–9. BMJ 343:d6423, 2011

Lippes J: Pelvic actinomycosis: a review and preliminary look at prevalence. Am J Obstet Gynecol 180:265, 1999

Lopez LM, Chen M, Mullins S, et al: Steroidal contraceptives and bone fractures in women: evidence from observational studies. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD009849, 2012

Lopez LM, Edelman A, Chen M, et al: Progestin-only contraceptives: effects on weight. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD008815, 2013

Luan NN, Wu L, Gong TT, et al: Nonlinear reduction in risk for colorectal cancer by oral contraceptive use: a meta-analysis of epidemiological studies. Cancer Causes Control 26(1):65, 2015

MacClellan LR, Giles W, Cole J, et al: Probable migraine with visual aura and risk of ischemic stroke: the Stroke Prevention in Young Women Study. Stroke 38:2438, 2007

Madden T, Eisenberg DL, Zhao Q, et al: Continuation of the etonogestrel implant in women undergoing immediate postabortion placement. Obstet Gynecol 120(5):1053, 2012
Madden T, McNicholas C, Zhao Q, et al: Association of age and parity with intrauterine device expulsion. Obstet Gynecol 124(4):718, 2014
Madden T, Proehl S, Allsworth JE, et al: Naproxen or estradiol for bleeding and spotting with the levonorgestrel intrauterine system: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(2):129.e1, 2012
Maheshwari S, Sarraj A, Kramer J, et al: Oral contraception and the risk of hepatocellular carcinoma. J Hepatol 47:506, 2007
Mansour D, Gemzell-Danielsson K, Inki P, et al: Fertility after discontinuation of contraception: a comprehensive review of the literature. Contraception 84(5):465, 2011
Marchbanks PA, McDonald JA, Wilson HG, et al: Oral contraceptives and the risk of breast cancer. N Engl J Med 346(26):2025, 2002
Margolis KL, Adami HO, Luo J, et al: A prospective study of oral contraceptive use and risk of myocardial infarction among Swedish women. Fertil Steril 88:310, 2007
Marr J, Gerlinger C, Kunz M: A historical cycle control comparison of two drospirenone-containing combined oral contraceptives: ethinyl estradiol 30 μg/drospirenone 3 mg administered in a 21/7 regimen versus ethinyl estradiol 20 μg/drospirenone 3 mg administered in a 24/4 regimen. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 162(1):91, 2012
Mendoza N, Lobo P, Lertxundi R, et al: Extended regimens of combined hormonal contraception to reduce symptoms related to withdrawal bleeding and the hormone-free interval: a systematic review of randomised and observational studies. Eur J Contracept Reprod Health Care 19(5):321, 2014
Merck: Nexplanon: highlights of prescribing information. 2019. Available at: https://www.merck.com/product/usa/pi_circulars/n/nexplanon/nexplanon_pi.pdf. Accessed August 21, 2020
Minnis AM, Padian NS: Effectiveness of female controlled barrier methods in preventing sexually transmitted infections and HIV: current evidence and future research directions. Sex Transm Infect 81(3):193, 2005
Mommers E, Blum GF, Gent TG, et al: Nexplanon, a radiopaque etonogestrel implant in combination with a next-generation applicator: 3-year results of a noncomparative multicenter trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(5):388.e1, 2012
Moreau C, Trussell J, Gilbert F, et al: Oral contraceptive tolerance: does the type of pill matter? Obstet Gynecol 109:1277, 2007
Moschos E, Twickler DM: Does the type of intrauterine device affect conspicuity on 2D and 3D ultrasound? AJR Am J Roentgenol 196(6):1439, 2011
Nelson AL, Cwiak C: Combined oral contraceptives (COCs). In Hatcher RA, Trussell J, Nelson AL, et al (eds): Contraceptive Technology, 20th ed. New York, Ardent Media, 2011
Nelson AL: An overview of properties of Amphora (Acidform) contraceptive vaginal gel. Expert Opin Drug Saf 17(9):935, 2018
Nelson AL: Comprehensive overview of the recently FDA-approved contraceptive vaginal ring releasing segesterone acetate and ethinylestradiol: A new year-long, patient controlled, reversible birth control method. Expert Rev Clin Pharmacol 12(10):953, 2019
Ngo LL, Ward KK, Mody SK: Ketorolac for pain control with intrauterine device placement: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 126(1):29, 2015
Nilsson CG, Lähteenmäki PL, Luukkainen T: Ovarian function in amenorrheic and menstruating users of a levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine device. Fertil Steril 41(1):52, 1984
Nishimura RA, Otto CM, Bonow RO, et al: 2017 AHA/ACC focused update of the 2014 AHA/ACC Guideline for the Management of Patients with Valvular Heart Disease: A Report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. Circulation 135(25):e1159, 2017
Oddsson K, Leifels-Fischer B, Wiel-Masson D, et al: Superior cycle control with a contraceptive vaginal ring compared with an oral contraceptive containing 30 microg ethinylestradiol and 150 microg levonorgestrel: a randomized trial. Hum Reprod 20:557, 2005
Ortiz ME, Croxatto HB: Copper-T intrauterine device and levonorgestrel intrauterine system: biological bases of their mechanism of action. Contraception 75:S16, 2007
Parkin L, Sharples K, Hernandez RK, et al: Risk of venous thromboembolism in users of oral contraceptives containing drospirenone or levonorgestrel: nested case-control study based on UK General Practice Research Database. BMJ 340:d2139, 2011
Paulen ME, Curtis KM: When can a woman have repeat progestogen-only injectables–depot medroxyprogesterone acetate or norethisterone enantate? Contraception 80(4):391, 2009
Pearlstein TB, Bachmann GA, Zacur HA, et al: Treatment of premenstrual dysphoric disorder with a new drospirenone-containing oral contraceptive formulation. Contraception 72:414, 2005
Pérez-Medina T, Sancho-Saúco J, Ríos M, et al: Hysteroscopy in pregnancy-related conditions: descriptive analysis in 273 patients. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 21(3):417, 2014
Petitti DB, Piaggio G, Mehta S, et al: Steroid hormone contraception and bone mineral density: a cross-sectional study in an international population. The WHO Study of Hormonal Contraception and Bone Health. Obstet Gynecol 95(5):736, 2000
Pfizer: Depo-Provera (medroxyprogesterone acetate) injectable suspension: highlights of prescribing information. 2017. Available at: https://labeling.pfizer.com/ShowLabeling.aspx?id=522. Accessed August 21, 2020
Phillips SJ, Tepper NK, Kapp N, et al: Progestogen-only contraceptive use among breastfeeding women: a systematic review. Contraception 94(3):226, 2016
Raps M, Curvers J, Helmerhorst FM, et al: Thyroid function, activated protein C resistance and the risk of venous thrombosis in users of hormonal contraceptives. Thromb Res 133(4):640, 2014
Reed S, Do Minh T, Lange JA, et al: Real world data on Nexplanon® procedure-related events: final results from the Nexplanon Observational Risk Assessment study (NORA). Contraception 100(1):31, 2019
Remington KM, Buller RS, Kelly JR: Effect of the Today contraceptive sponge on growth and toxic shock syndrome toxin-1 production by *Staphylococcus aureus*. Obstet Gynecol 69:563, 1987
Robinson GE, Burren T, Mackie IJ, et al: Changes in haemostasis after stopping the combined contraceptive pill: implications for major surgery. BMJ 302:269, 1991
Rodrigues I, Grou F, Joly J: Effectiveness of emergency contraceptive pills between 72 and 120 hours after unprotected sexual intercourse. Am J Obstet Gynecol 184(4):531, 2001
Rodriguez MI, Godfrey EM, Warden M, et al: Prevention and management of nausea and vomiting with emergency contraception: a systematic review. Contraception 87(5):583, 2013
Roe AH, Bartz D: Society of family planning clinical recommendations: contraception after surgical abortion. Contraception 99(1):2, 2019
Rothman KJ, Louik C: Oral contraceptives and birth defects. N Engl J Med 299:522, 1978
Sääv I, Stephansson O, Gemzell-Danielsson K: Early versus delayed insertion of intrauterine contraception after medical abortion—a randomized controlled trial. PLoS One 7(11):e48948, 2012
Samson M, Porter N, Orekoya O, et al: Progestin and breast cancer risk: a systematic review. Breast Cancer Res Treat 155(1):3, 2016
Samy A, Abbas AM, Mahmoud M, et al: Evaluating different pain lowering medications during intrauterine device insertion: a systematic review and network meta-analysis. Fertil Steril 111(3):553, 2019
Savolainen E, Saksela E, Saxen L: Teratogenic hazards of oral contraceptives analyzed in a national malformation register. Am J Obstet Gynecol 140:521, 1981
Schiesser M, Lapaire O, Tercanli S, et al: Lost intrauterine devices during pregnancy: maternal and fetal outcome after ultrasound-guided extraction. An analysis of 82 cases. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 23:486, 2004
Scholes D, LaCroix AS, Ichikawa LE, et al: Injectable hormone contraception and bone density: results from a prospective study. Epidemiology 13:581, 2002
Scholes D, LaCroix AS, Ott SM, et al: Bone mineral density in women using depot medroxyprogesterone acetate for contraception. Obstet Gynecol 93:233, 1999
Schürks M, Rist PM, Bigal ME, et al: Migraine and cardiovascular disease: systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ 339:b3914, 2009
Şengül Ö, Dilbaz B, Kavak D, et al: J Surgical management of extrauterine mislocated intrauterine contraceptive devices and related risks. Obstet Gynaecol 34(1):70, 2014
Shaw KA, Edelman AB: Obesity and oral contraceptives: a clinician's guide. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab 27(1):55, 2013
Shimoni N, Davis A, Ramos ME, et al: Timing of copper intrauterine device insertion after medical abortion: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 118(3):623, 2011
Shulman LP, Gabriel H: Management and localization strategies for the nonpalpable Implanon rod. Contraception 73:325, 2006
Silverberg SG, Haukkamaa M, Arko H, et al: Endometrial morphology during long-term use of levonorgestrel releasing intrauterine devices. Int J Gynecol Pathol 5:235, 1986
Simmons KB, Edelman AB: Hormonal contraception and obesity. Fertil Steril 106(6):1282, 2016
Simmons KB, Kumar N, Plagianos M, et al: Effects of concurrent vaginal miconazole treatment on the absorption and exposure of Nestorone® (segesterone acetate) and ethinyl estradiol delivered from a contraceptive vaginal ring: a randomized, crossover drug-drug interaction study. Contraception 97(3):270, 2018
Simonatto P, Bahamondes MV, Fernandes A, et al: Comparison of two cohorts of women who expulsed either a copper-intrauterine device or

a levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 42(5):554, 2016
Sivin I, Campodonico I, Kiriwat O, et al: The performance of levonorgestrel rod and Norplant contraceptive implants: a 5 year randomized study. Hum Reprod 13(12):3371, 1998
Skovlund CW, Mørch LS, Kessing LV, et al: Association of hormonal contraception with depression. JAMA Psychiatry 73(11):1154, 2016
Smallwood GH, Meador ML, Lenihan JP, et al: Efficacy and safety of a transdermal contraceptive system. Obstet Gynecol, 98 (5 Pt. 1) 799, 2001
Sneed R, Westhoff C, Morroni C, et al: A prospective study of immediate initiation of depot medroxyprogesterone acetate contraceptive injection. Contraception 71(2):99, 2005
Sothornwit J, et al: Immediate versus delayed postpartum insertion of contraceptive implant for contraception. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4(4):CD011913, 2017
Stadel BV: Oral contraceptives and cardiovascular disease. N Engl J Med 305:612, 1981
Stegeman BH, de Bastos M, Rosendaal FR, et al: Different combined oral contraceptives and the risk of venous thrombosis: systematic review and network meta-analysis. BMJ 347:f5298, 2013
Steiner M, Lopez M, Grimes D, et al: Sino-implant (II)—a levonorgestrel releasing two-rod implant: systematic review of the randomized controlled trials. Contraception 81(3)197, 2010
Steiner MJ, Brache V, Taylor D, et al: Randomized trial to evaluate contraceptive efficacy, safety and acceptability of a two-rod contraceptive implant over 4 years in the Dominican Republic. Contracept X 1(100006): 1, 2019
Steiner MJ, Trussell J, Mehta N, et al: Communicating contraceptive effectiveness: a randomized controlled trial to inform a World Health Organization family planning handbook. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195(1):85, 2006
Stuart GS, Hoffman BL: Puerperal sterilization. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017
Suchon P, Al Frouh F, Henneuse A, et al: Risk factors for venous thromboembolism in women under combined oral contraceptive. The PILl Genetic Risk Monitoring (PILGRIM) Study. Thromb Haemost 115(1):13, 2016
Tatum HJ, Schmidt FH, Jain AK: Management and outcome of pregnancies associated with Copper-T intrauterine contraceptive device. Am J Obstet Gynecol 126:869, 1976
Teal SB, Turok DK, Chen BA, et al: Five-year contraceptive efficacy and safety of a levonorgestrel 52-mg intrauterine system. Obstet Gynecol 133(1):63, 2019
Tepper NK, Curtis KM, Nanda K, et al: Safety of intrauterine devices among women with HIV: a systematic review. Contraception 94(6):713, 2016a
Tepper NK, Steenland MW, Gaffield ME, et al: Retention of intrauterine devices in women who acquire pelvic inflammatory disease: a systematic review. Contraception 87(5):655, 2013
Tepper NK, Whiteman MK, Zapata LB, et al: Safety of hormonal contraceptives among women with migraine: a systematic review. Contraception 94(6):630, 2016b
Trussell J, Aikens AR, Micks E, et al: Efficacy, safety, and personal considerations. In Hatcher RA, Nelson AL, Trussell J, et al (eds): Contraceptive Technology, 21st ed. New York, Ayer Company, 2018, p 100
Tsilidis KK, Allen NE, Key TJ, et al: Oral contraceptive use and reproductive factors and risk of ovarian cancer in the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition. Br J Cancer 105(9):1436, 2011
Turok DK, Eisenberg DL, Teal SB, et al: A prospective assessment of pelvic infection risk following same-day sexually transmitted infection testing and levonorgestrel intrauterine system placement. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(5):599.e1, 2016
Turok DK, Gero A, Simmons RG, et al: Levonorgestrel vs. copper intrauterine devices for emergency contraception. N Engl J Med 384(4):335, 2021
US Department of Health and Human Services: Guidelines for the use of antiretroviral agents in adults and adolescents with HIV. 2019. Available at: https://clinicalinfo.hiv.gov/sites/default/files/inline-files/AdultandAdolescentGL.pdf. Accessed October 17, 2020
van Hylckama Vlieg A, Helmerhorst FM, Vandenbroucke JP, et al: The venous thrombotic risk of oral contraceptives, effects of oestrogen dose and progestogen type: results of the MEGA case-control study. BMJ 339:b2921, 2009
Van Vliet HA, Grimes DA, Helmerhorst FM, et al: Biphasic versus monophasic oral contraceptives for contraception. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD002032, 2006, Reaffirmed 2011a
Van Vliet HA, Grimes DA, Lopez LM, et al: Triphasic versus monophasic oral contraceptives for contraception. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD003553, 2011b
Van Vliet HA, Raps M, Lopez LM, et al: Quadriphasic versus monophasic oral contraceptives for contraception. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD009038, 2011c
Verhoeven CH, Dieben TO: The combined contraceptive vaginal ring, NuvaRing, and tampon co-usage. Contraception 69(3):197, 2004a
Verhoeven CH, van den Heuvel MW, Mulders TM, et al: The contraceptive vaginal ring, NuvaRing, and antimycotic co-medication. Contraception 69(2):129, 2004b
Vinogradova Y, Coupland C, Hippisley-Cox J: Use of combined oral contraceptives and risk of venous thromboembolism: nested case-control studies using the Research and CPRD data-bases. BMJ 350:h2135, 2015
von Hertzen H, Piaggio G, Ding J, et al: Low dose mifepristone and two regimens of levonorgestrel for emergency contraception: a WHO multicentre randomised trial. WHO Research Group on Post-ovulatory Methods of Fertility Regulation. Lancet 360(9348):1803, 2002
Westhoff C, Heartwell S, Edwards S, et al: Initiation of oral contraceptive using a quick start compared with a conventional start: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 109:1270, 2007b
Westhoff C: IUDs and colonization or infection with *Actinomyces*. Contraception 75:S48, 2007a
Whitaker AK, Chen BA: Society of family planning guidelines: postplacental insertion of intrauterine devices. Contraception 97(1):2, 2018
Wilailak S, Vipupinyo C, Suraseranivong V, et al: Depot medroxyprogesterone acetate and epithelial ovarian cancer: a multicentre case-control study. BJOG 119(6):672, 2012
World Health Organization: A multinational case-control study of ectopic pregnancy. Clin Reprod Fertil 3:131, 1985
World Health Organization: Acute myocardial infarction and combined oral contraceptives: results of an international multi-center case-control study. Lancet 349:1202, 1997
World Health Organization: Cardiovascular disease and use of oral and injectable progestogen-only contraceptives and combined injectable contraceptives. Results of an international, multicenter, case-control study. Contraception 57:315, 1998
World Health Organization: Depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) and risk of endometrial cancer. Int J Cancer 49:186, 1991a
World Health Organization: Depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) and risk of liver cancer. Int J Cancer 49(2):182, 1991b
World Health Organization: Depot-medroxyprogesterone acetate (DMPA) and risk of invasive squamous cell cervical cancer. Contraception 45(4): 299, 1992
World Health Organization: Ischaemic stroke and combined oral contraceptives: results of an international, multi-center case-control study. Lancet 348:498, 1996
World Health Organization: Medical Eligibility for Contraceptive Use, 5th ed. Geneva, World Health Organization, 2015
Worly BL, Gur TL, Schaffir J: The relationship between progestin hormonal contraception and depression: a systematic review. Contraception 97(6):478, 2018
Wu S, Godfrey EM, Wojdyla D, et al: Copper T380A intrauterine device for emergency contraception: a prospective, multicentre, cohort clinical trial. BJOG 117(10):1205, 2010
Yonkers KA, Brown C, Pearlstein TB, et al: Efficacy of a new low-dose oral contraceptive with drospirenone in premenstrual dysphoric disorder. Obstet Gynecol 106:492, 2005
Zeino MY, Wietfeldt ED, Advani V, et al: Laparoscopic removal of a copper intrauterine device from the sigmoid colon. JSLS 15(4):568, 2011
Zieman M, Guillebaud J, Weisberg E, et al: Contraceptive efficacy and cycle control with the Ortho Evra/Evra transdermal system: the analysis of pooled data. Fertil Steril 77:S13, 2002

CHAPTER 39

Sterilization

Among women using contraception in the United States, 28 percent rely on either male or female sterilization (Kavanaugh, 2018). Tubal interruption or excision is suitable for those requesting sterilization and who clearly understand its permanence and its difficult and often unsuccessful reversal. Alternative contraceptive choices also should be presented. Ultimately, following provision of information, patient autonomy and her decision for sterilization should be respected (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017, 2019).

Female sterilization is usually accomplished by occlusion, excision, or division of the fallopian tubes. *Puerperal sterilization* procedures follow cesarean or vaginal delivery and approximately 7 percent of all live births in the United States (Moniz, 2017). *Nonpuerperal tubal sterilization* is done at a time unrelated to recent pregnancy and is also termed *interval sterilization*. More recently, consideration of total salpingectomy for sterilization and for ovarian cancer risk reduction is now recommended (p. 682).

PUERPERAL TUBAL STERILIZATION

Timing

Several days postpartum, the uterine fundus lies at the level of the umbilicus, and fallopian tubes are accessible directly beneath the abdominal wall. Moreover, abdominal laxity allows easy repositioning of the incision over each uterine cornu.

On our service, puerperal tubal ligation is performed the morning after delivery by a surgical team designated solely to this role. This timing minimizes hospital stay but lowers the likelihood that postpartum hemorrhage would complicate recovery following surgery. The status of the newborn also can be better ascertained before surgery. In contrast, some prefer to perform sterilization immediately following delivery and use neuraxial analgesia already placed for labor. Designating these postpartum surgeries as nonelective can help lessen barriers. This is especially so for high-volume labor and delivery units, which typically prioritize their limited operating-room availability for intrapartum procedures (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021). From one large series, postpartum tubal ligation was a safe, reasonable option, regardless of body mass index (Byrne, 2020).

Method Selection

In general for postpartum sterilization, a midtubal segment of tube is excised, and the severed ends seal by fibrosis and peritoneal regrowth. Commonly used methods include the Parkland, Pomeroy, and modified Pomeroy techniques. Less often, Filshie clips are used, and evidence points to slightly decreased efficacy (Madari, 2011; Rodriquez, 2011, 2013). Also, in the absence of uterine or other pelvic disease, hysterectomy solely for sterilization is difficult to justify because of its significantly higher risk for surgical morbidity compared with tubal sterilization.

Most pelvic serous cancers are thought to originate from the distal fallopian tube (Erickson, 2013). Because of this, although currently theoretical, evidence suggests that bilateral salpingectomy may lower these ovarian cancer rates (Falconer, 2015; Lessard-Anderson, 2014). With this knowledge, the Society of Gynecologic Oncologists (Walker, 2015) and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) recommend consideration of salpingectomy to lower these

cancer risks. Specifically, for women at average risk of ovarian cancer, risk-reducing salpingectomy should be discussed and considered with abdominopelvic surgery, with hysterectomy, or in lieu of tubal ligation.

In the discussion of salpingectomy, several points are instructive. First, the lifetime risk for ovarian cancer approximates 1 percent (National Cancer Institute, 2019). Data from epidemiologic studies show that tubal interruption alone offers an approximate 30-percent decline in ovarian cancer rates (Rice, 2012; Sieh, 2013). Salpingectomy may reduce the risk by 42 to 78 percent (Gockley, 2018). However, no prospective studies of sufficient size or duration have yet been done to demonstrate the true risk and benefit ratio for women at low risk of ovarian cancer. Also, few data describe the effects on ovarian reserve from tubal blood supply disruption. In small studies comparing the two surgeries, no differences in antimüllerian hormone levels, which are a measure of ovarian reserve, were found (Findley, 2013; Ganer Herman, 2017). In other comparisons, total salpingectomy at cesarean delivery takes 5 to 10 minutes longer than partial salpingectomy (Ferrari, 2019; Powell, 2017). Blood loss rates are comparable or slightly higher but do not lead to higher transfusion rates or greater postsurgical declines in hematocrit values. Only a few small studies have evaluated salpingectomy following vaginal delivery (Danis, 2016; Powell, 2017).

Technique

Spinal analgesia is typically selected for cases scheduled on the first postpartum day. General anesthesia may be less desirable due to residual pregnancy-related aspiration risks (Bucklin, 2003). If done more proximate to delivery, the same epidural catheter used for labor analgesia can be used for sterilization analgesia. Generally, with thrombocytopenia-related conditions, platelet levels should be >70,000 for spinal blockade (Chap. 25, p. 478). The bladder is emptied before surgery to avoid its laceration. A full bladder can also push the fundus and tubes above the umbilicus and incision. Considered a clean case, antibiotic prophylaxis is not required.

To begin, a small infraumbilical incision is ideal for several reasons. As noted, the fundus in most cases lies near the umbilicus. Second, the umbilicus usually remains the thinnest portion of the anterior abdominal wall and requires less subcutaneous dissection to reach the linea alba fascia. Third, an infraumbilical incision offers fascia with sufficient integrity to provide a closure with minimal risk for later incisional hernia. Last, incisions that follow the natural curve of the lower umbilical skin fold yield suitable cosmesis. A 2- to 3-cm transverse or vertical skin incision is usually sufficient for normal-weight women. For obese women, a 4- to 5-cm incision may be needed for adequate abdominal access.

Beneath this incision, the subcutaneous tissue is bluntly separated to reach the linea alba fascia. For this, an Allis clamp can be opened and closed as downward pressure is exerted. Similarly, the blades of two army-navy retractors both pulling in downward yet opposite directions can part the subcutaneous layer. Clearing this fatty tissue away from the fascia isolates the fascia for incision and for later closure without intervening fat, which may impede wound healing.

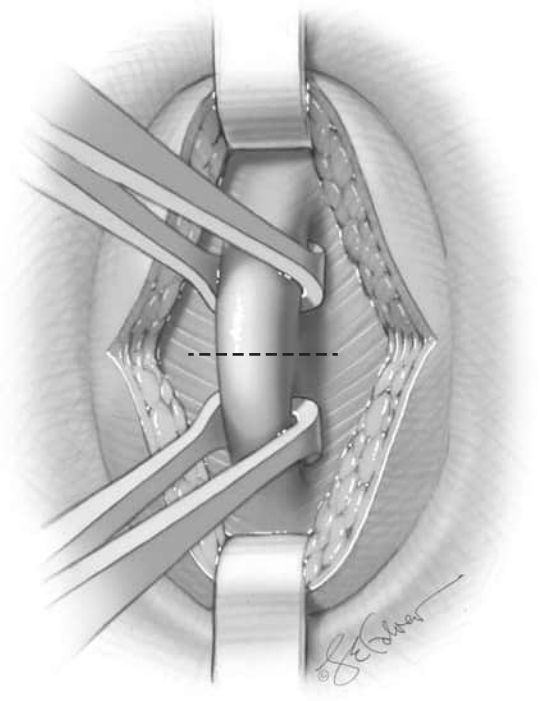


FIGURE 39-1 Fascia is grasped by two Allis clamps and elevated away from viscera beneath. Planned fascial incision is marked by dashed line. (Modified and reproduced with permission from Kho KA: Diagnostic and operative laparoscopy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap, III, et al [eds]: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

The fascial incision may be transverse or vertical and follows the same orientation of the skin incision. For this, once the linea alba is reached, it is grasped with two Allis clamps—one placed on either side of the planned fascial incision (Fig. 39-1). The purchase of tissue with each clamp should be substantial and creates a small roll of fascia to be incised. Often, the peritoneum is incorporated simultaneously and entered. If not, the peritoneum is grasped with two hemostats and sharply cut. Others may prefer to bluntly enter with a single index finger. Notably, if the initial fascial incision is too small, it can be extended with curved Mayo scissors.

Adequate exposure is critical, and army-navy or appendiceal retractors are suitable. For obese women, a slightly larger incision and narrow deeper retractors may be needed. If bowel or omentum is obstructing, Trendelenburg position can help displace these cephalad. Digitally packing with a single, moist, fanned-out piece of surgical gauze also can be used, but a hemostat should always be attached to the distal end to avert its intraabdominal retention. At times, mechanically tilting the entire table to the opposite side of the tube being exposed also can assist tube isolation.

The fallopian tube is identified and grasped at its midportion with a Babcock clamp. A second slightly more distal clamp grasps the tube, which is similarly lifted. This allows the fimbriated end to be seen. Such confirmation prevents confusing the round ligament for the fallopian tube. A common reason for sterilization failure is ligation of the wrong structure, typically the round ligament. If the tube is inadvertently dropped, it is mandatory to repeat this identification process. Surgical steps for ligation are outlined in Figures 39-2 and 39-3.

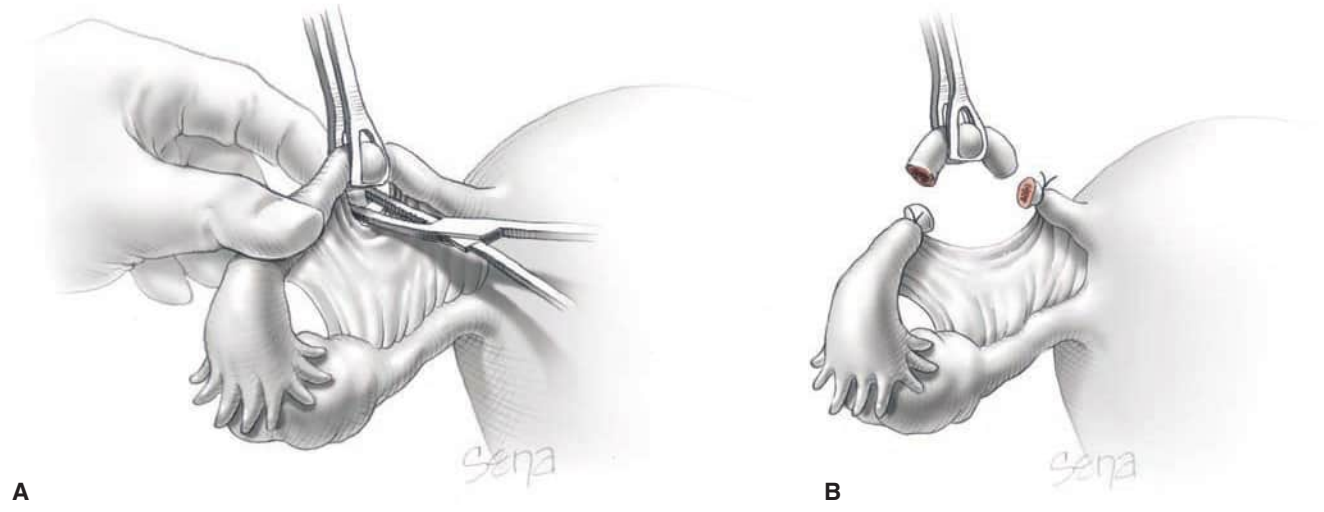


FIGURE 39-2 Parkland method. **A.** An avascular site in the mesosalpinx adjacent to the fallopian tube is perforated with a small hemostat. The jaws are opened to separate the fallopian tube from the adjacent mesosalpinx for approximately 2.5 cm. **B.** The isolated tubal portion is ligated proximally and distally with 0-chromic suture. The intervening segment of approximately 2 cm is excised, and the excision site is inspected for hemostasis. This method was designed to avoid the initial intimate proximity of the cut ends of the fallopian tube inherent with the Pomeroy procedure. (Reproduced with permission from Hoffman BL, Hamid CA, Corton MM: Surgeries for benign gynecologic conditions. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al: Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

For total salpingectomy, the umbilical incision generally will need to be larger to allow an adequate view of the tube and mesosalpinx and to place clamps (Fig. 39-4). The entire mesosalpinx must be divided to free the fallopian tube. Thus, risks include bleeding from the often large, congested mesosalpingeal veins, control of which requires extension of the laparotomy incision or even an adnexectomy. Some prefer to use a bipolar electrosurgical coagulation device (LigaSure, ENSEAL), which seals and divides the mesosalpinx simultaneously. This may add speed but also expense.

After surgery, diet is given as tolerated, and walking is encouraged. Ileus is infrequent and should prompt concern for bowel injury, albeit rare. Most women have an uncomplicated course and are discharged on the first postoperative day.

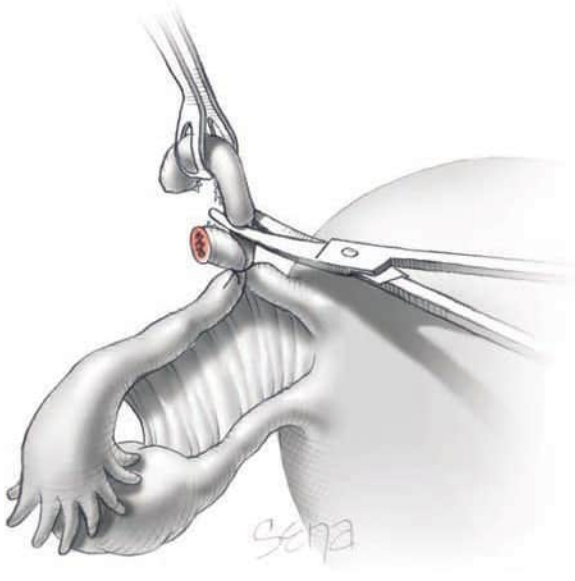


FIGURE 39-3 Pomeroy method. During ligation of a midsegment tubal loop, plain catgut is used to ensure prompt absorption of the ligature and subsequent separation of the severed tubal ends. (Reproduced with permission from Hoffman BL, Hamid CA, Corton MM: Surgeries for benign gynecologic conditions. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al: Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2020.)

NONPUERPERAL TUBAL STERILIZATION

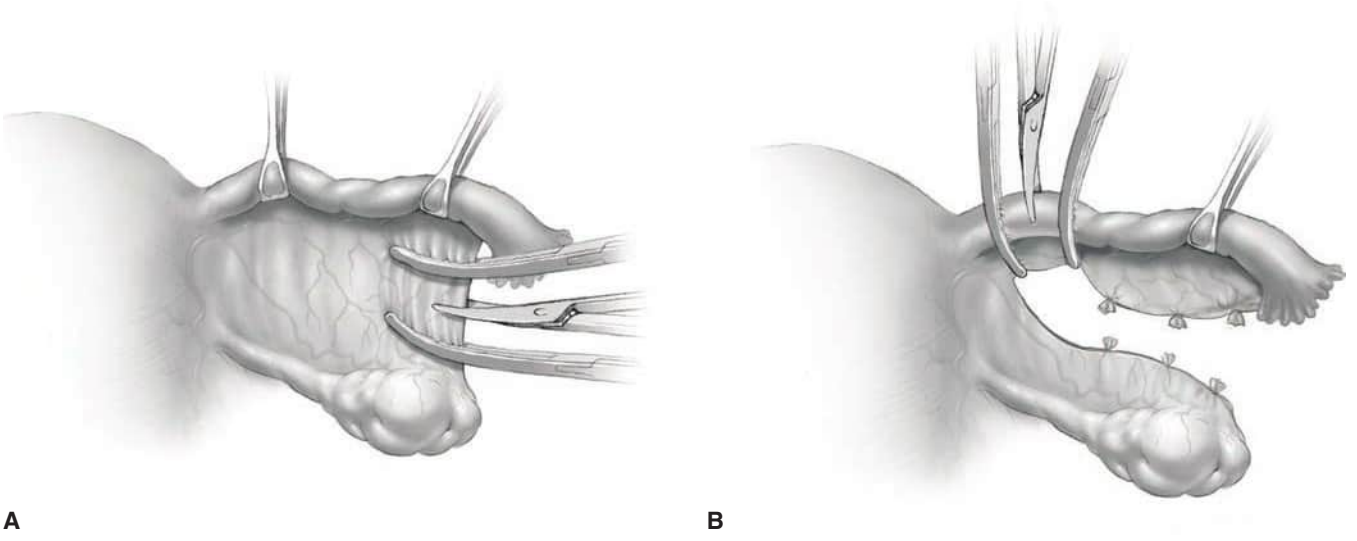
These techniques and other modifications basically consist of (1) ligation and resection at laparotomy as described earlier for puerperal sterilization; (2) application of permanent rings, clips, or inserts to the fallopian tubes by laparoscopy or hysteroscopy; or (3) electrocoagulation of a tubal segment, usually through a laparoscope. A detailed description and illustration of these can be found in *Williams Gynecology*, 4th edition (Kho, 2020).

In the United States, a laparoscopic approach to interval tubal sterilization is the most common. The procedure is frequently performed in an ambulatory surgical setting under general anesthesia. In almost all cases, the patient can be discharged within several hours. Minilaparotomy using a 3-cm suprapubic incision also is popular, especially in resource-poor countries. Major morbidity is rare with either minilaparotomy or laparoscopy. Although not often used, the peritoneal cavity can be entered through the posterior vaginal fornix via colpotomy to perform tubal interruption.

LONG-TERM COMPLICATIONS

Contraceptive Failure

Pregnancy following sterilization is infrequent. The Collaborative Review of Sterilization (CREST) study followed 10,863 women



A B

FIGURE 39-4 A. With salpingectomy, the mesosalpinx is sequentially clamped, cut, and ligated. **B.** At the cornu, clamps are placed across the fallopian tube and its adjacent mesosalpinx prior to tubal transection. (Reproduced with permission from Stuart GS: Puerperal sterilization. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap, III, et al [eds]: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

who had undergone tubal sterilization from 1978 through 1986 (Peterson, 1996). The cumulative failure rate for the various tubal procedures was 18.5 per 1000 or approximately 0.5 percent. The study found puerperal sterilization to be highly effective. The 5-year failure rate was 5 per 1000, and at 12 years, it was 7 per 1000.

Puerperal sterilization fails for two major reasons. First, surgical errors include transection of the round ligament or only partial transection of the tube. For this reason, both tubal segments are submitted for pathological confirmation. Second, a fistulous tract or spontaneous reanastomosis may form between the severed tubal stumps.

Approximately 30 percent of pregnancies that follow failed tubal sterilization are ectopic. This rate is 20 percent for those following a postpartum procedure (Peterson, 1996, 1997). Thus, any symptoms of pregnancy in a woman after tubal sterilization must be investigated to exclude ectopic pregnancy.

Other Effects

Women who have undergone tubal sterilization are highly unlikely to subsequently have salpingitis (Levgur, 2000). Most studies also find that rates of heavy menstrual or intermenstrual bleeding are not increased following the procedure (DeStefano, 1985; Peterson, 2000; Shy, 1992). Moreover, in the CREST study, Costello (2002) found that tubal ligation did not change sexual interest or pleasure in 80 percent of women. In most of the 20 percent of women who did report a change, positive effects were 10 to 15 times more likely.

Invariably, some women express regrets regarding sterilization, and this is especially true if it is performed at a younger age (Curtis, 2006; Kelekçi, 2005). In the CREST study, Jamieson (2002) reported that 7 percent of women who had undergone tubal ligation had regrets by 5 years. This is not limited to their own sterilization, because 6.1 percent of women whose husbands had undergone vasectomy had similar regrets.

Tubal Sterilization Reversal

No woman should undergo tubal sterilization believing that subsequent fertility is guaranteed either by surgery or by assisted reproductive technologies. Both approaches are technically difficult, expensive, and not always successful. In general, pregnancy rates after tubal reversal favor women with 7 cm of remaining tube, with age younger than 35 years, with a short time from antecedent sterilization, and with isthmic–isthmic repairs. With reanastomosis via laparotomy, rates of live births range from 44 to 82 percent (Deffieux, 2011; Malacova, 2015). The rate of ectopic pregnancy is 2 to 10 percent after reanastomosis (American Society for Reproductive Medicine, 2015). With reanastomosis to reverse *Essure* sterilization, the subsequent live birth rates range from 0 to 27 percent (Fernandez, 2014; Monteith, 2014).

TRANSCERVICAL STERILIZATION

A transcervical approach to reach the tubal ostia can be used for sterilization. However, no methods using this approach are currently approved in the United States.

Mechanical methods employ insertion of a device into the proximal fallopian tubes via hysteroscopy. Both the Essure system and the Adiana Permanent Contraception system have been removed from the U.S. market. The Adiana is a cylindrical, nonabsorbent silicone elastomer matrix that once inserted stimulates tissue ingrowth to occlude the tubal lumen (Hologic, 2012).

The Essure Permanent Birth Control System is a long, slender, coiled, metallic tubal insert. Once placed, fibroblastic proliferation within the device similarly causes tubal occlusion. With this method, contraceptive failure rates range from <1 percent to 5 percent (Gariepy, 2014; Munro, 2014).

Chronic pelvic pain after hysteroscopic sterilization may develop in 2 to 6 percent of those with Essure inserts (Chudnoff, 2015; Kamencic, 2016; Yunker, 2015). Pain may stem

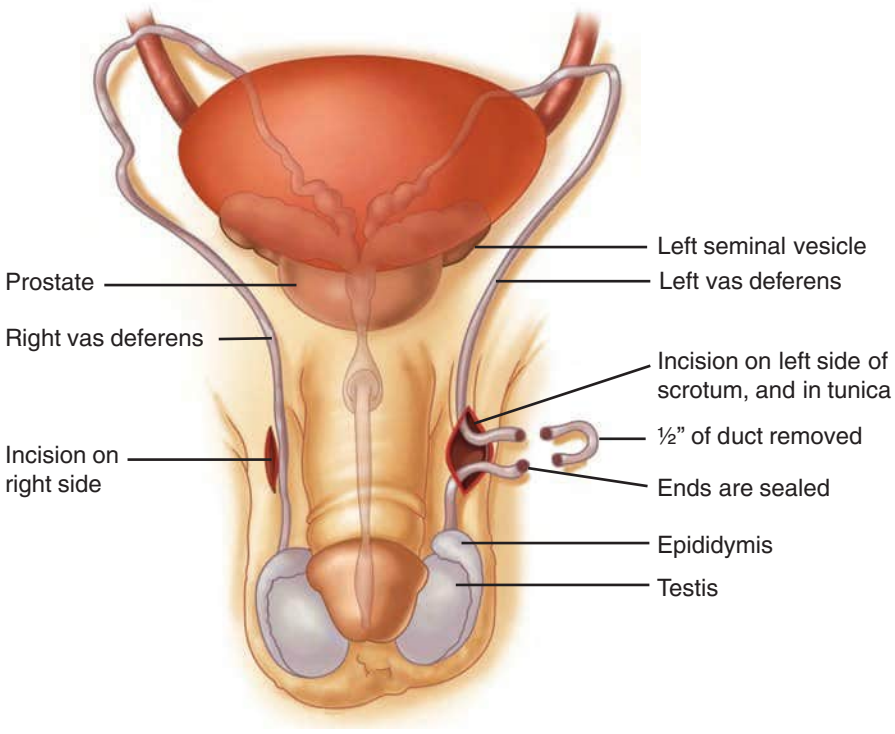


FIGURE 39-5 Anatomy of male reproductive system showing procedure for vasectomy.

from tubal perforation, device migration, or the device itself (Adelman, 2014). For those desiring removal, proximal linear salpingostomy and device removal is feasible (Kho, 2020). Importantly, device removal is not curative in all symptomatic patients (Clark, 2017; Maassen, 2019). Other cited adverse events include abnormal bleeding and allergy or hypersensitivity reaction to its components (Al-Safi, 2013; Mao, 2015).

Chemical agents may also be placed into the uterine cavity or tubal ostia to incite an inflammatory response to cause tubal occlusion. Used in lower-resource areas, one method employs an intrauterine device–type inserter to place quinacrine pellets into the uterine fundus. From randomized trials, pregnancy rates were 1 and 12 percent at 1 and 10 years, respectively (Sokal, 2008). The World Health Organization (2009) has recommended against quinacrine use because of carcinogenesis concerns. Evidence is contradictory, and some consider it a potential option for resource-poor countries (Lippes, 2015).

VASECTOMY

Currently, up to a half million men in the United States undergo vasectomy each year (Barone, 2006; Eisenberg, 2010). And, 5 percent of women rely on this method for contraception (Daniels, 2015). For sterilization, the vas deferens lumen is disrupted to block the passage of sperm from the testes (Fig. 39-5).

Vasectomy is safer than female tubal sterilization because it is less invasive and is performed with local analgesia (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). In a review that compared the two, female tubal sterilization had a 20-fold higher complication rate and a 10- to 37-fold higher failure rate (Hendrix, 1999).

One disadvantage is that sterilization following vasectomy is not immediate. Sperm stored in the reproductive tract beyond the interrupted vas deferens takes approximately 3 months or 20 ejaculations for complete release. The American Urological Association recommends a postprocedural semen analysis at 8 to 16 weeks to document sterility (Sharlip, 2012). Before azoospermia is documented, another form of contraception should be used.

The failure rate for vasectomy during the first year is 9.4 per 1000 procedures but only 11.4 per 1000 at 2, 3, and 5 years (Jamieson, 2004). Failures result from unprotected intercourse too soon after ligation, incomplete vas deferens occlusion, or recanalization (Awsare, 2005; Deneux-Tharaux, 2004).

Reanastomosis of the vas deferens can be completed most effectively using microsurgical techniques. Conception rates following reversal are adversely affected by longer duration from vasectomy, poor sperm quality found at reversal, and type of reversal procedure required (American Society for Reproductive Medicine, 2008).

REFERENCES

Al-Safi ZA, Shavell VI, Hobson DT, et al: Analysis of adverse events with Essure hysteroscopic sterilization reported to the Manufacturer and User Facility Device Experience database. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 20(6):825, 2013

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Sterilization of women: ethical issues and considerations. Committee Opinion No. 695, April 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Benefits and risks of sterilization. Practice Bulletin No. 208, February 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Opportunistic salpingectomy as a strategy for epithelial ovarian cancer prevention. Committee Opinion No. 774, March 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Access to postpartum sterilization. Committee Opinion No. 827, March 2021

American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Vasectomy reversal. Fertil Steril 90:S78, 2008

American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Role of tubal surgery in the era of assisted reproductive technology: a committee opinion. Fertil Steril 103(6):e37, 2015

Awsare N, Krishnan J, Boustead GB, et al: Complications of vasectomy. Ann R Coll Surg Engl 87:406, 2005

Barone MA, Hutchison PL, Johnson CH, et al: Vasectomy in the Unites States, 2002. J Urol 176:232, 2006

Bucklin BA: Postpartum tubal ligation: timing and other anesthetic considerations. Clin Obstet Gynecol 46(3):657, 2003

Byrne JJ, Smith EM, Saucedo AM, et al: Examining the association of obesity with postpartum tubal ligation. Obstet Gynecol 136(2):342, 2020

Chudnoff SG, Nichols JE Jr, Levie M: Hysteroscopic Essure inserts for permanent contraception: extended follow-up results of a phase III multicenter international study. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 22(6):951, 2015

Clark NV, Rademaker D, Mushinski AA, et al: Essure removal for the treatment of device-attributed symptoms: an expanded case series and follow-up survey. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 24(6):971, 2017

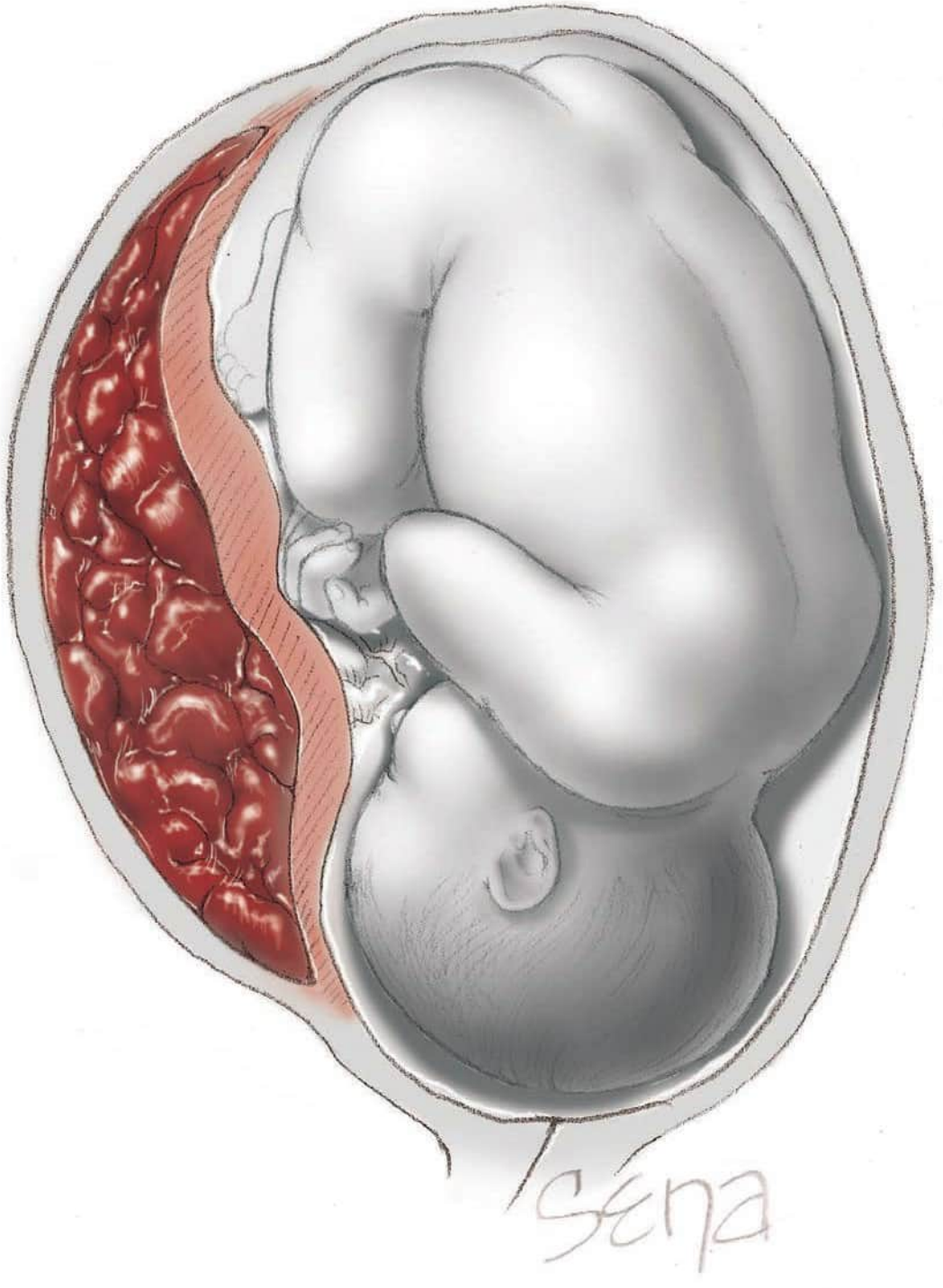
Costello C, Hillis S, Marchbanks P, et al: The effect of interval tubal sterilization on sexual interest and pleasure. Obstet Gynecol 100:3, 2002

Curtis KM, Mohllajee AP, Peterson HB: Regret following female sterilization at a young age: a systematic review. Contraception 73:205, 2006

Daniels K, Daugherty J, Jones J, et al: Current contraceptive use and variation by selected characteristics among women aged 15–44: United States, 2011–2013. Natl Health Stat Report 86:1, 2015
Danis RB, Della Badia CR, Richard SD: Postpartum permanent sterilization: could bilateral salpingectomy replace bilateral tubal ligation? J Minim Invasive Gynecol 23(6):928, 2016
Deffieux X, Morin Surroca M, Faivre E, et al: Tubal anastomosis after tubal sterilization: a review. Arch Gynecol Obstet 83(5):1149, 2011
Deneux-Tharaux C, Kahn E, Nazerali H, et al: Pregnancy rates after vasectomy: a survey of U.S. urologists. Contraception 69:401, 2004
DeStefano F, Perlman JA, Peterson HB, et al: Long term risk of menstrual disturbances after tubal sterilization. Am J Obstet Gynecol 152:835, 1985
Eisenberg ML, Lipshultz LI: Estimating the number of vasectomies performed annually in the United States: data from the National Survey of Family Growth. J Urol 184(5):2068, 2010
Erickson BK, Conner MG, Landen CN Jr: The role of the fallopian tube in the origin of ovarian cancer. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(5):409, 2013
Falconer H, Yin L, Grönberg H, et al: Ovarian cancer risk after salpingectomy: a nationwide population-based study. J Natl Cancer Inst 107(2), 2015
Fernandez H, Legendre G, Blein C, et al: Tubal sterilization: pregnancy rates after hysteroscopic versus laparoscopic sterilization in France, 2006–2010. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 180:133, 2014
Ferrari F, Forte S, Prefumo F, et al: Opportunistic salpingectomy during postpartum contraception procedures at elective and unscheduled cesarean delivery. Contraception 99(6):373, 2019
Findley AD, Siedhoff MT, Hobbs KA, et al: Short-term effects of salpingectomy during laparoscopic hysterectomy on ovarian reserve: a pilot randomized controlled trial. Fertil Steril 100(6):1704, 2013
Ganer Herman H, Gluck O, Keidar R, et al: Ovarian reserve following cesarean section with salpingectomy vs tubal ligation: a randomized trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(4):472, 2017
Gariepy AM, Creinin MD, Smith KJ, et al: Probability of pregnancy after sterilization: a comparison of hysteroscopic versus laparoscopic sterilization. Contraception 90(2):174, 2014
Gockley AA, Elias KM: Fallopian tube tumorigenesis and clinical implications for ovarian cancer risk-reduction. Cancer Treat Rev 69:66, 2018
Hendrix NW, Chauhan SP, Morrison JC: Sterilization and its consequences. Obstet Gynecol Surv 54:766, 1999
Hoffman BL, Hamid CA, Corton MM: Surgeries for benign gynecologic disorders. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2020
Hologic: Hologic announces second quarter fiscal 2012 operating results. 2012. Available online at: investors.hologic.com/press-releases/press-release-details/2012/Hologic-Announces-Second-Quarter-Fiscal-2012-Operating-Results/default.aspx. Accessed September 23, 2019
Jamieson DJ, Costello C, Trussell J, et al: The risk of pregnancy after vasectomy. Obstet Gynecol 103:848, 2004
Jamieson DJ, Kaufman SC, Costello C, et al: A comparison of women's regret after vasectomy versus tubal sterilization. Obstet Gynecol 99:1073, 2002
Kavanaugh ML, Jerman J: Contraceptive method use in the United States: trends and characteristics between 2008, 2012 and 2014. Contraception 97(1):14, 2018
Kelekçi S, Erdemoglu E, Kutluk S, et al: Risk factors for tubal ligation: regret and psychological effects. Impact of Beck Depression Inventory. Contraception 71:417, 2005
Kho KA: Diagnostic and operative laparoscopy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2017
Kho KA, Rogers DE: Minimally invasive surgery. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Halvorson LM, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 4th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2020
Lessard-Anderson CR, Handlogten KS, Molitor RJ, et al: Effect of tubal sterilization technique on risk of serous epithelial ovarian and primary peritoneal carcinoma. Gynecol Oncol 135(3):423, 2014
Levgur M, Duvivier R: Pelvic inflammatory disease after tubal sterilization: a review. Obstet Gynecol Surv 55:41, 2000
Lippes J: Quinacrine sterilization (QS): time for reconsideration. Contraception 92(2):91, 2015
Kamencic H, Thiel L, Karreman E, et al: Does Essure cause significant de novo pain? A retrospective review of indications for second surgeries after Essure placement. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 23(7):1158, 2016
Maassen LW, van Gastel DM, Haveman I, et al: Removal of Essure sterilization devices: a retrospective cohort study in the Netherlands. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 26(6):1056, 2019
Madari S, Varma R, Gupta J: A comparison of the modified Pomeroy tubal ligation and Filshie clips for immediate postpartum sterilisation: a systematic review. Eur J Contracept Reprod Health Care 16(5):341, 2011
Malacova E, Kemp-Casey A, Bremner A, et al: Live delivery outcome after tubal sterilization reversal: a population-based study. Fertil Steril 104(4):92, 2015
Mao J, Pfeifer S, Schlegel P, et al: Safety and efficacy of hysteroscopic sterilization compared with laparoscopic sterilization: an observational cohort study. BMJ 351:h5162, 2015
Moniz MH, Chang T, Heisler M, et al: Inpatient postpartum long-acting reversible contraception and sterilization in the United States, 2008–2013. Obstet Gynecol 129(6):1078, 2017
Monteith CW, Berger GS, Zerden ML: Pregnancy success after hysteroscopic sterilization reversal. Obstet Gynecol 124(6):1183, 2014
Munro MG, Nichols JE, Levy B, et al: Hysteroscopic sterilization: 10-year retrospective analysis of worldwide pregnancy reports. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 21(2):245, 2014
National Cancer Institute: DevCan—probability of developing or dying of cancer. Available at: surveillance.cancer.gov/devcan/. Accessed September 24, 2019
Peterson HB, Jeng G, Folger SG, et al: The risk of menstrual abnormalities after tubal sterilization. N Engl J Med 343:1681, 2000
Peterson HB, Xia Z, Hughes JM, et al: The risk of ectopic pregnancy after tubal sterilization. U.S. Collaborative Review of Sterilization Working Group. N Engl J Med 336(11):762, 1997
Peterson HB, Xia Z, Hughes JM, et al: The risk of pregnancy after tubal sterilization: findings from the U.S. Collaborative Review of Sterilization. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:1161, 1996
Powell CB, Alabaster A, Simmons S, et al: Salpingectomy for sterilization: change in practice in a large integrated health care system, 2011–2016. Obstet Gynecol 130(5):961, 2017
Rice MS, Murphy MA, Tworoger SS: Tubal ligation, hysterectomy and ovarian cancer: a meta-analysis. J Ovarian Res 5(1):13, 2012
Rodriguez MI, Edelman AB, Kapp N: Postpartum sterilization with the titanium clip: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 118(1):143, 2011
Rodriguez MI, Seuc A, Sokal DC: Comparative efficacy of postpartum sterilisation with the titanium clip versus partial salpingectomy: a randomised controlled trial. BJOG 120(1):108, 2013
Sharlip ID, Belker AM, Honig S, et al: Vasectomy: AUA guideline. Outcomes of microsurgical vasovasostomy for vasectomy reversal: a meta-analysis and systematic review. J Urol 188(6 Suppl):2482, 2012
Shy KK, Stergachis A, Grothaus LG, et al: Tubal sterilization and risk of subsequent hospital admission for menstrual disorders. Am J Obstet Gynecol 166:1698, 1992
Sieh W, Salvador S, McGuire V, et al: Tubal ligation and risk of ovarian cancer subtypes: a pooled analysis of case-control studies. Int J Epidemiol 42(2):579, 2013
Sokal DC, Hieu do T, Loan ND, et al: Contraceptive effectiveness of two insertions of quinacrine: results from 10-year follow-up in Vietnam. Contraception 78:61, 2008
Stuart GS: Puerperal sterilization. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2017
Walker JL, Powell CB, Chen LM, et al: Society of Gynecologic Oncology recommendations for the prevention of ovarian cancer. Cancer 121(13):2108, 2015
World Health Organization: The safety of quinacrine when used as a method of non-surgical sterilization in women. Interim statement. Geneva, WHO, 2009
Yunker AC, Ritch JM, Robinson EF, et al: Incidence and risk factors for chronic pelvic pain after hysteroscopic sterilization. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 22(3): 390, 2015

SECTION 11

OBSTETRICAL COMPLICATIONS



CHAPTER 40

Preeclampsia Syndrome

Hypertensive disorders include preeclampsia, gestational hypertension, and chronic hypertension and complicate up to 10 percent of pregnancies. As a group, they are one member of the deadly triad—along with hemorrhage and infection—that contributes greatly to maternal morbidity (Judy, 2019).

Preeclampsia, either alone or superimposed on chronic hypertension, is the most dangerous. In the United States from 2011 to 2015, 7 percent of pregnancy-related maternal deaths were caused by preeclampsia or eclampsia (Petersen, 2019). Most hypertension-related deaths are deemed preventable (Katsuragi, 2019). In response, Joint Commission (2019) accredited hospitals are now required to track their recognition and timely treatment of hypertension.

In 2018, a workshop to study preeclampsia was convened by the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute. This builds on the prior work of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' Task Force on Hypertension in Pregnancy (2013). Its purpose was to review topics regarding all aspects of preeclampsia and to recommend future research areas. Many of these topics are discussed throughout this chapter and Chapter 41.

TERMINOLOGY AND DIAGNOSIS

To codify the classification of hypertensive disorders of pregnancy, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2013, 2020) describes four types of hypertensive disease:

1. Preeclampsia and eclampsia syndrome
2. Chronic hypertension of any etiology
3. Preeclampsia superimposed on chronic hypertension
4. Gestational hypertension, in which definitive evidence for the preeclampsia syndrome does not develop and hypertension resolves by 12 weeks postpartum.

This classification aims to differentiate preeclampsia syndrome, which is potentially more ominous, from other hypertensive disorders.

Diagnosis of Hypertensive Disorders

Hypertension is diagnosed empirically when systolic and diastolic blood pressures exceed 140 mm Hg and 90 mm Hg, respectively. Korotkoff phase V is used to define diastolic pressure.

Previously for pregnant women, increases of 30 mm Hg systolic or 15 mm Hg diastolic above blood pressure values taken at midpregnancy had also been used as diagnostic criteria, even when absolute values were <140/90 mm Hg. These incremental changes are no longer used to define hypertension. However, blood pressure surveillance in these gravidas is reasonable because eclamptic seizures develop in some whose blood pressures have stayed below 140/90 mm Hg (Alexander, 2006).

In other cases, mean arterial pressures that suddenly rise but that still lie in normal range—"delta hypertension"—may signify preeclampsia (Macdonald-Wallis, 2012; Zeeman, 2007). We use this term to describe a relatively acute rise in blood pressure in individual patients, albeit some still with pressures <140/90 mm Hg (Fig. 40-1). Some of these

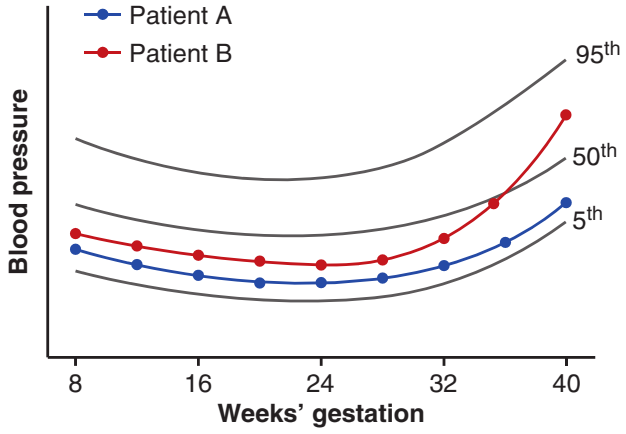


FIGURE 40-1 Schematic of normal reference ranges for mean arterial blood pressure changes across pregnancy. Patient A (*blue*) has mean blood pressures near the 20th percentile throughout pregnancy. Patient B (*red*) has a similar pattern with mean pressures at the 25th percentile until approximately 36 weeks' gestation, at which time her blood pressure begins to rise. By term, it is substantively higher and in the 75th percentile, but she is still considered "normotensive." This increase from the 25th to 75th percentile can be termed "delta hypertension."

women will go on to have obvious preeclampsia, and some even develop eclamptic seizures or hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, and low platelet count (HELLP) syndrome.

Historically, systolic and diastolic blood pressure levels of 140/90 mm Hg have been arbitrarily used since the 1950s to define "hypertension" in nonpregnant individuals. However, these levels were selected by insurance companies to characterize a population of middle-aged men. It seems more realistic to define normal-range blood pressures for specific populations—such as young, healthy, pregnant women (Lu, 2019; Reddy, 2020). To provide such data, >1000 women were recently studied longitudinally through pregnancy (Green, 2020). Data of this type may shape future thresholds.

Gestational Hypertension

Women with gestational hypertension have blood pressures that reach 140/90 mm Hg or greater for the first time after midpregnancy but lack proteinuria. Almost half of affected women subsequently develop preeclampsia (Jim, 2017). Even so, when blood pressure rises appreciably, it is dangerous to both mother and fetus to ignore this elevation only because proteinuria has not yet developed (Fishel Bartal, 2020). As Chesley (1985) emphasized, 10 percent of eclamptic seizures develop before overt proteinuria can be detected. Gestational hypertension is reclassified by some as *transient hypertension* if preeclampsia does not develop and blood pressure returns to normal by 12 weeks postpartum.

Preeclampsia Syndrome

Preeclampsia is best described as a pregnancy-specific syndrome that can affect virtually every organ system. Although preeclampsia is more than simply gestational hypertension with proteinuria, the appearance of protein remains a primary diagnostic criterion. It is an objective marker and reflects the system-wide endothelial leak that characterizes the preeclampsia syndrome. Last, preeclampsia can be divided into early onset, <34 weeks; late onset, ≥34 weeks; preterm onset, <37 weeks; and term onset, ≥37 weeks (Burton, 2019; Poon, 2019).

In some women with preeclampsia, neither overt proteinuria nor fetal-growth restriction are features (Sibai, 2009). Because of this, the Task Force (2013) suggests other diagnostic criteria, some of which are shown in Table 40-1. Multiorgan involvement may be reflected by thrombocytopenia, renal dysfunction, hepatocellular necrosis, central nervous system perturbations, or pulmonary edema.

The markers listed in Table 40-1 help also to classify preeclampsia syndrome severity. Although many use a dichotomous "mild" and "severe" classification, the Task Force (2013) discourages the use of "mild preeclampsia." It is problematic

TABLE 40-1. Classification and Diagnosis of Pregnancy-Associated Hypertension

Condition	Criteria Required
Gestational hypertension	BP >140/90 mm Hg after 20 weeks in previously normotensive women
Preeclampsia: Hypertension plus	
Proteinuria	≥300 mg/24h, or Urine protein: creatinine ratio ≥0.3, or Dipstick 1+ persistent[a]
	or
Thrombocytopenia	Platelets <100,000/μL
Renal insufficiency	Creatinine >1.1 mg/dL or doubling of baseline[b]
Liver involvement	Serum transaminase levels[c] twice normal
Cerebral symptoms	Headache, visual disturbances, convulsions
Pulmonary edema	—

[a]Recommended only if sole available test.
[b]No prior renal disease.
[c]Aspartate transaminase (AST) or alanine transaminase (ALT).
BP = blood pressure.

TABLE 40-2. Indicators of Severity of Gestational Hypertensive Disorders[a]

Abnormality	Nonsevere[b]	Severe
Diastolic BP	<110 mm Hg	≥110 mm Hg
Systolic BP	<160 mm Hg	≥160 mm Hg
Proteinuria[c]	None to positive	None to positive
Headache	Absent	Present
Visual disturbances	Absent	Present
Upper abdominal pain	Absent	Present
Oliguria	Absent	Present
Convulsion (eclampsia)	Absent	Present
Serum creatinine	Normal	Elevated
Thrombocytopenia (<100,000/μL)	Absent	Present
Serum transaminase elevation	Minimal	Marked
Fetal-growth restriction	Absent	Present
Pulmonary edema	Absent	Present
Gestational age	Late	Early

[a]Compare with criteria in Table 40-1.
[b]Includes "mild" and "moderate" hypertension not specifically defined.
[c]Most disregard degrees of proteinuria to classify as nonsevere or severe.
BP = blood pressure.

that there are criteria for the diagnosis of "severe" preeclampsia, but the binary default classification is either implied or specifically termed "mild," "less severe," or "nonsevere" (Alexander, 2003; Lindheimer, 2008). No consensus criteria define "moderate" preeclampsia, which is an elusive third category. We use the criteria recommended by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020), some of which are listed in Table 40-2 and categorize disease as "severe" versus "nonsevere."

Some symptoms are considered ominous. *Headaches* or *visual disturbances* can precede *eclampsia*, which is a convulsion in a woman with preeclampsia that is not attributable to another cause. The seizures are generalized and may appear before, during, or after labor. The proportion that develops seizures later—after 48 hours postpartum—approximates 10 percent (Sibai, 2005; Zwart, 2008). Another symptom, *epigastric or right upper quadrant pain*, frequently accompanies hepatocellular necrosis, ischemia, and hepatic edema. Elevated serum hepatic transaminase levels can be one marker. Last, *thrombocytopenia* also signifies worsening preeclampsia. It represents platelet activation and aggregation and microangiopathic hemolysis. Other factors indicative of severe preeclampsia include renal or cardiac involvement. When these signs and symptoms are profound, they likely cannot be temporized, and delivery will more likely be required. Importantly, differentiating nonsevere and severe gestational hypertension or preeclampsia can be misleading because what might be apparently mild disease may progress rapidly to severe disease.

Preeclampsia Superimposed on Chronic Hypertension

Any chronic hypertensive disorder predisposes a woman to develop superimposed preeclampsia syndrome. Chronic underlying hypertension is diagnosed in women with documented blood pressures ≥140/90 mm Hg before pregnancy or before 20 weeks' gestation, or both. Thus, in women who are not first seen until after midpregnancy, hypertensive disorders can be difficult to classify. For example, a woman with previously undiagnosed chronic vascular disease who is seen before 20 weeks frequently has blood pressures within normal range. During the third trimester, however, as blood pressures return to their originally hypertensive levels, it may be difficult to determine whether hypertension is chronic or induced by pregnancy. Even a careful search for evidence of preexisting end-organ damage may be futile, as many of these women have mild disease and no evidence of ventricular hypertrophy, retinal vascular changes, or renal involvement.

In 20 to 50 percent of women with chronic hypertension, blood pressure rises to obviously abnormal levels, typically after 24 weeks' gestation. If new-onset or worsening baseline hypertension is accompanied by new-onset proteinuria or other findings listed in Table 40-1, superimposed preeclampsia is diagnosed (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). Compared with "pure" preeclampsia, superimposed preeclampsia commonly develops earlier in pregnancy. It tends to be more severe and more often is accompanied by fetal-growth restriction. The same criteria shown in Table 40-2 also further characterize the severity of superimposed preeclampsia.

INCIDENCE AND RISK FACTORS

Preeclampsia is identified in 5 to 8 percent of all pregnancies (Jim, 2017; Poon, 2019). Young and nulliparous women are particularly vulnerable, whereas older women are at greater risk for chronic hypertension with superimposed preeclampsia (Sheen, 2020). In one review of global studies, the incidence of preeclampsia in nulliparas ranged from 3 to 10 percent (Staff, 2015). In multiparas, the incidence ranges from 2 to 5 percent (Jim, 2017; Poon, 2019).

The incidence of preeclampsia is also influenced by race, ethnicity, and genetic predisposition. In one study by the Maternal–Fetal Medicine Units (MFMU) Network, the incidence of preeclampsia was 5 percent in white, 9 percent in Hispanic, and 11 percent in African American nulliparas (Myatt, 2012a,b). In addition, black women carry higher risk for associated severe adverse outcomes (Gyamfi-Bannerman, 2020).

For several clinical factors, Bartsch and associates (2016) extracted data from more than 25 million pregnancies and calculated relative risks (Table 40-3). Major risks include older age, nulliparity, obesity, diabetes, and chronic hypertension. Another is preeclampsia and especially HELLP syndrome in a prior pregnancy (Malström, 2020). Underlying metabolic syndrome, hyperhomocysteinemia, or chronic kidney disease are others (Masoudian, 2016; Wiles, 2020).

Of lesser factors, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) seropositivity, sleep-disordered breathing, and a male fetus

TABLE 40-3. Selected Clinical Risk Factors for Preeclampsia

Risk Factor	Pooled Unadjusted Relative Risk[a]
Nulliparity	2.1 (1.9–2.4)
Age >35	1.2 (1.1–1.3)
BMI >30	2.8 (2.6–3.1)
Multifetal gestation	2.9 (2.6–3.1)
Prior abruption	2.0 (1.4–2.7)
Diabetes	3.7 (3.1–4.3)
Prior preeclampsia	8.4 (7.1–9.9)
CHTN	5.1 (4.0–6.5)
Prior stillbirth	2.4 (1.7–3.4)
Chronic kidney disease	1.8 (1.5–2.1)
ART	1.8 (1.6–2.1)
SLE	2.5 (1.0–6.3)
APA	2.8 (1.8–4.3)

[a]95% confidence interval.
APA = antiphospholipid antibody; ART = assisted reproductive technology; BMI = body mass index; CHTN = chronic hypertension; SLE = systemic lupus erythematosus.

pose a slightly higher risk (Facco, 2017; Jaskolka, 2017; Sansone, 2016). Previously affected family members are another, and maternal and fetal genetics are assuming greater predictive importance (Burton, 2019; Gray, 2018; Phipps, 2019). Last, preeclampsia frequently complicates the "mirror syndrome" (Chap. 18, p. 364) (Trad, 2021). Although smoking during pregnancy causes various adverse pregnancy outcomes, ironically, it lowers the risk for hypertension during pregnancy.

For eclampsia, seizure incidence has declined in areas where health care is more readily available. In countries with adequate resources, the incidence averages 1 case in 2000 to 3000 deliveries (Jaatinen, 2016; O'Connor, 2013; Schaap, 2019). At Parkland Hospital, the incidence has declined appreciably during the past decade and approximates 1 case in 2000 births (Fig. 40-2). This frequency may be related to improved access to prenatal care and our active management approach (Chap. 41, p. 717).

ETIOPATHOGENESIS

The mechanisms by which pregnancy incites or aggravates hypertension remain unsolved. Any satisfactory theory concerning the origins of preeclampsia must account for the observation that gestational hypertensive disorders are more likely to develop in women with the following characteristics:

- Exposure to chorionic villi for the first time
- Exposure to a superabundance of chorionic villi, as with twins or hydatidiform mole
- Preexisting conditions associated with endothelial cell activation or inflammation
- Genetic predisposition to hypertension developing during pregnancy.

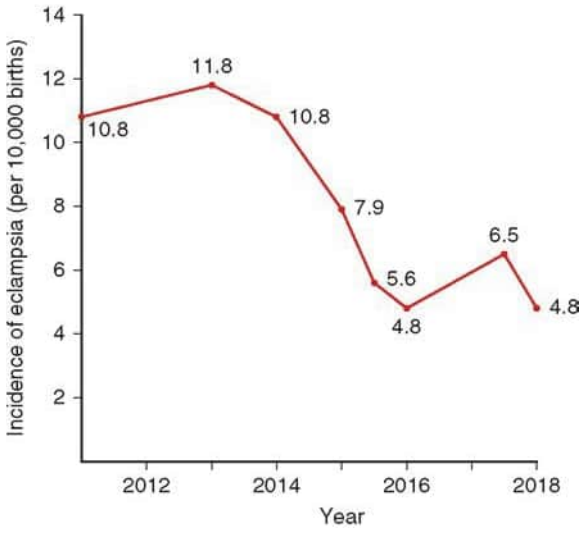


FIGURE 40-2 Incidence of eclampsia per 10,000 deliveries at Parkland Hospital ($p < 0.05$ for trend).

A fetus is not a requisite for preeclampsia to develop. Although chorionic villi are essential, they need not be intrauterine. For example, preeclampsia can develop with an advanced abdominal pregnancy (Worley, 2008). Regardless of precipitating etiology, the cascade of promoting events leads to systemic vascular endothelial damage, vasospasm, plasma transudation, and ischemic and thrombotic sequelae.

Phenotypic Expression

This varies widely for preeclampsia, and phenotype is affected by the degree of remodeling of uterine spiral arterioles by endovascular trophoblasts. This process underlies the "two-stage disorder" theory of preeclampsia pathogenesis. According to Redman and coworkers (2015), stage I—the placental syndrome—is caused by faulty endovascular trophoblastic remodeling that downstream causes stage II—the maternal syndrome. Importantly, stage II can be modified by maternal conditions that also manifest endothelial cell activation or inflammation. These include chronic hypertension, renal disease, obesity, immunological or connective tissue disorders, and diabetes.

Such staging is artificial, and preeclampsia syndrome presents a spectrum of disease (Burton, 2019). Moreover, "isoforms" likely exist and are discussed subsequently. Differences include maternal and fetal characteristics, placental findings, genetic factors, and early- versus late-onset disease (Gray, 2018; Phipps, 2019; Poon, 2019).

Etiology

Of suggested mechanisms to explain the cause of preeclampsia, primary ones include:

- Placental implantation with abnormal trophoblastic invasion of uterine vessels
- Dysfunctional immunological tolerance between maternal, paternal (placental), and fetal tissues

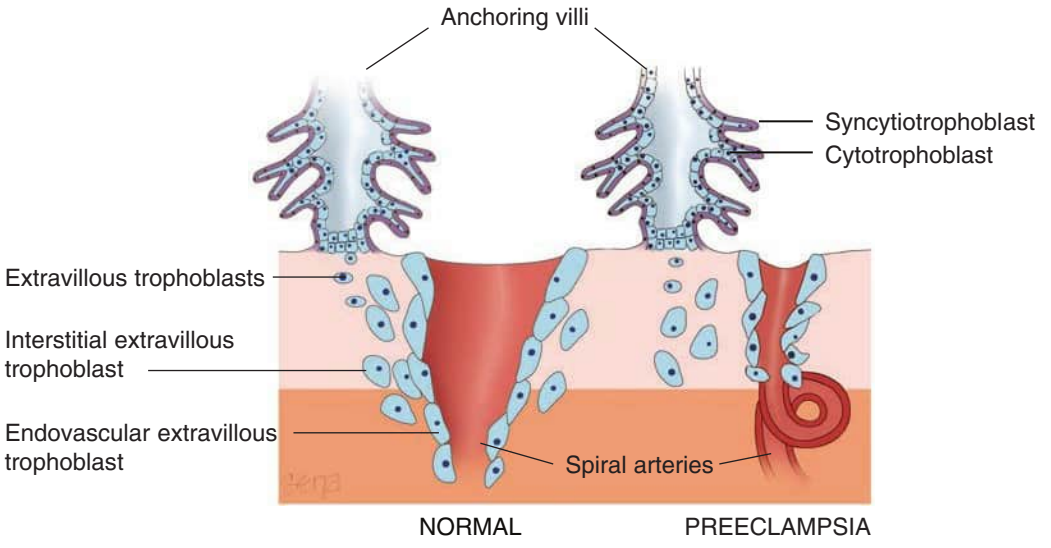


FIGURE 40-3 Schematic representation of normal placental implantation shows proliferation of extravillous trophoblasts from an anchoring villus. These trophoblasts invade the decidua and extend into the walls of the spiral arteriole to replace the endothelium and muscular wall to create a dilated low-resistance vessel. With preeclampsia, there is defective implantation characterized by incomplete invasion of the spiral arteriolar wall by extravillous trophoblasts. This results in a small-caliber vessel with high resistance to flow.

- Maternal maladaptation to cardiovascular or inflammatory changes of normal pregnancy
- Genetic factors that include predisposing genes and epigenetic influences.

Stage I—Placental Syndrome

Normal placental implantation, as discussed in Chapter 5 (p. 90), is characterized by extensive remodeling of the spiral arterioles within the decidua basalis (Fig. 40-3). In this "placental bed," endovascular trophoblasts replace the vascular endothelial and muscular linings. This advantageously enlarges arteriole diameter (Brosens, 2019). Veins are invaded only superficially. In some preeclampsia cases, but not all, trophoblastic invasion may be incomplete. With this, decidual vessels, but not myometrial vessels, become lined with endovascular trophoblasts. The deeper myometrial arterioles thus do not lose their endothelial lining and musculoelastic tissue. As a result, their mean external diameter is only half that of corresponding vessels in normal placentas (Fisher, 2015). This mechanism is more prevalent in women with early-onset preeclampsia (Khodzhaeva, 2016). Evidence suggests a critical role for soluble antiangiogenic growth factors in this faulty endovascular remodeling (McMahon, 2014).

From placental electron microscopy studies, early preeclamptic changes include endothelial damage, insudation of plasma constituents into vessel walls, myointimal cell proliferation, and medial necrosis (De Wolf, 1980). Hertig (1945) referred to lipid accumulation in myointimal cells and macrophages as *atherosis*. These findings are more common in placentas from women diagnosed with preeclampsia before 34 weeks' gestation (Nelson, 2014). Acute placental vascular atherosis may also identify a group of women at greater risk for atherosclerosis and cardiovascular disease later in life (Staff, 2015) (Chap. 41, p. 726). In pregnancy, abnormally narrow spiral arteriole lumens likely impair placental blood flow, reduce perfusion, and create a hypoxic environment (Burton, 2019).

At this point, these changes incite a systemic inflammatory response, which is stage II or the maternal syndrome. Defective placentation is posited to further predispose affected women to gestational hypertension, preeclampsia syndrome, preterm delivery, fetal growth-restriction, and placental abruption (Brosens, 2019; Labarrere, 2017; Nelson, 2014).

Immunological Factors

Maternal immune tolerance to paternally derived placental and fetal antigens is discussed in Chapter 5 (p. 85). Loss of this tolerance is another cited theory for preeclampsia (Erlebacher, 2013). Certainly, histological changes at the maternal–placental interface in those with preeclampsia suggest acute graft rejection.

Tolerance dysregulation might also explain the elevated risk when the paternal antigenic load is increased. One example is complete molar pregnancies, which have diploid complement of chromosomes solely from the father. Those with later-stage moles, have a high incidence of early-onset preeclampsia.

Women with a trisomy 13 fetus also have a 30- to 40-percent incidence of preeclampsia. The gene for one preeclampsia-linked factor, *soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase 1*, is on chromosome 13 (Bdolah, 2006). These women have elevated serum levels of antiangiogenic factors, which can affect the placenta (p. 694). Last, women previously exposed to paternal antigens, such as a prior pregnancy with the same partner, may be "immunized" against preeclampsia. Conversely, multiparas impregnated by a new partner have a greater risk of preeclampsia (Mostello, 2002).

Burton and colleagues (2019) reviewed the possible role of immune maladaptation in preeclampsia pathophysiology. In women destined to have preeclampsia, extravillous trophoblasts early in pregnancy express reduced amounts of immunosuppressive nonclassic human leukocyte antigen G (HLA-G). Black women more commonly have the 1597ΔC gene allele,

which is associated with incomplete HLA-G expression and may predispose to preeclampsia (Loisel, 2013). This immune maladaptation may contribute to the defective placental vascularization seen with preeclampsia.

As discussed in Chapter 4 (p. 61), T-helper (Th) lymphocytes during normal pregnancy are produced so that type 2 activity is increased in relation to type 1. This is the so-called *type 2 bias* (Phipps, 2019; Redman, 2015). Th2 cells promote humoral immunity, whereas Th1 cells stimulate inflammatory cytokine secretion (Ma, 2019). Beginning in the early second trimester in women who develop preeclampsia, Th1 action is increased.

Genetic Factors

Preeclampsia appears to be a multifactorial, polygenic disorder. In one study of almost 1.2 million Swedish births, a genetic association was found for gestational hypertension and for preeclampsia (Nilsson, 2004). Ward and Taylor (2015) cite an incident risk for preeclampsia of 20 to 40 percent for daughters of preeclamptic mothers; 11 to 37 percent for sisters of preeclamptic women; and 22 to 47 percent for twins. Ethnoracial factors are important and evidenced by the high incidence of preeclampsia in African American women. Latina women have a lower incidence because of interactions of American Indian and white race genes (Shahabi, 2013).

The hereditary predisposition for preeclampsia likely stems from interactions of literally hundreds of inherited genes—both maternal and paternal—that control many enzymatic and metabolic functions throughout every organ system (Burton, 2019; Triche, 2014). Plasma-derived factors may induce some of these genes in preeclampsia (Leseva, 2020; Mackenzie, 2012). Thus, the clinical manifestation in any given woman with the preeclampsia syndrome will reflect a spectrum. In this regard, phenotypic expression will differ among similar genotypes depending on interactions with environmental components (Yang, 2013).

Hundreds of genes have been studied for their possible association with preeclampsia (Buurma, 2013; Sakowicz, 2016; Ward, 2015). However, because of the complex phenotypic expression of preeclampsia, it is doubtful that any one candidate gene will be found responsible. Last, a preeclampsia predisposition has also been linked to genes of the fetus (Burton, 2019; Gray, 2018; Leseva, 2020).

■ Stage II—Maternal Syndrome

Endothelial Cell Activation

Inflammatory changes are believed to be a continuation of the placental syndrome. In response to ischemia or other inciting causes, placental factors are released and initiate a series of events (Burton, 2019; Davidge, 2015). Thus, antiangiogenic and metabolic factors and other inflammatory leukocyte mediators are thought to provoke the systemic *endotheliopathy*, which is used synonymously here with *endothelial cell activation or dysfunction*. Injury to systemic endothelial cells is seen as a centerpiece of preeclampsia pathogenesis (Burton, 2019; Phipps, 2019).

Cellular dysfunction may result from an extreme activated state of leukocytes in the maternal circulation (Gervasi, 2001). Briefly, cytokines such as tumor necrosis factor α (TNF-α) and the interleukins may contribute to the systemic oxidative stress associated with preeclampsia. This is characterized by generation of highly toxic oxygen radicals. These injure systemic vascular endothelial cells, lower nitric oxide production by these cells, and interfere with prostaglandin balance. Other sequelae include production of the lipid-laden macrophage foam cells seen in placental atherosis; activation of systemic microvascular coagulation, which is manifested by thrombocytopenia; and greater systemic capillary permeability, which is reflected by edema and proteinuria.

Intact endothelium has anticoagulant properties. Also, systemic endothelial cells, by releasing nitric oxide, blunt the response of vascular smooth muscle to agonists. Injured or activated endothelial cells may produce less nitric oxide and may secrete substances that promote coagulation and vasopressor sensitivity. Further evidence of endothelial activation includes changes in glomerular capillary endothelial morphology, greater capillary permeability, and elevated blood concentrations of substances associated with endothelial activations. Likely, multiple factors in the plasma of preeclamptic women combine to exert these vasoactive effects (Myers, 2007; Walsh, 2009).

Vasospasm and Hypertension

Vasospasm has long been associated with preeclampsia. Systemic endothelial activation causes vasospasm, which elevates resistance to produce hypertension. Concurrently, systemic endothelial cell injury promotes interstitial leakage, and platelets and fibrinogen are deposited in the subendothelial space. Endothelial junctional proteins are also disrupted, and the subendothelial region of resistance arteries undergoes ultrastructural change (Suzuki, 2003; Wang, 2002). The much larger venous circuit is similarly involved.

With diminished blood flow because of maldistribution from vasospasm and interstitial leakage, ischemia of the surrounding tissues can cause necrosis, hemorrhage, and other end-organ disturbances. One important clinical correlate to these changes is the markedly attenuated blood volume seen in women with severe preeclampsia (Zeeman, 2009).

Increased Pressor Responses

As discussed in Chapter 4 (p. 53), pregnant women normally develop refractoriness to infused vasopressors (Abdul-Karim, 1961). Women with early preeclampsia, however, have enhanced vascular reactivity to infused norepinephrine and angiotensin II (Raab, 1956; Talledo, 1968). Moreover, increased sensitivity to angiotensin II clearly precedes the onset of gestational hypertension (Gant, 1974). Paradoxically, women who develop preterm preeclampsia have lower circulating levels of angiotensin II (Chase, 2017).

Numerous *prostaglandins* are thought to be central to preeclampsia syndrome pathophysiology. Specifically, the blunted pressor response seen in normal pregnancy is at least partially due to diminished vascular responsiveness mediated by endothelial prostaglandin synthesis. For example, compared with normal pregnancy, endothelial prostacyclin (PGI_2) production is lower in preeclampsia. This action appears to be mediated by

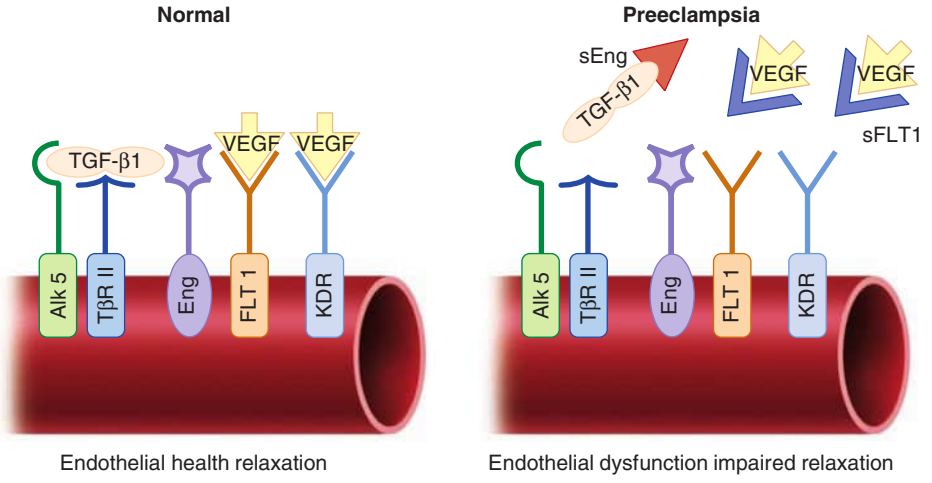


FIGURE 40-4 Schematic of receptor blocking action of soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase 1 (sFlt-1) and soluble endoglin (sENG).

phospholipase A_2 (Davidge, 2015). At the same time, thromboxane A_2 secretion by platelets is increased, and the prostacyclin: thromboxane A_2 ratio declines. The net result favors greater sensitivity to infused angiotensin II and vasoconstriction (Spitz, 1988). These changes appear as early as 22 weeks in gravidas who later develop preeclampsia (Chavarria, 2003).

Nitric oxide is a potent vasodilator and is synthesized from l-arginine by endothelial cells. Inhibition of nitric oxide synthesis raises mean arterial pressure, lowers heart rate, and reverses the pregnancy-induced refractoriness to vasopressors. Nitric oxide likely is the compound that maintains the normal low-pressure vasodilated state characteristic of normal fetoplacental perfusion (Myatt, 1992). Nitric oxide mediates the effects of placental growth factor (PlGF) and vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) in vitro (Zhang, 2017). The effects of nitric oxide production in preeclampsia are unclear. It appears that the syndrome is associated with decreased endothelial nitric oxide synthase expression and thus lower nitric oxide activity (Davidge, 2015).

Endothelins are 21-amino-acid peptides and potent vasoconstrictors. Endothelin l (ET-1) is the primary isoform produced by human endothelium (Karumanchi, 2016a). Plasma ET-1 levels are elevated in normotensive pregnant women. Women with preeclampsia have even higher levels, and these peptides may mediate renal injury (Phipps, 2019). Woman with preeclampsia develop functional autoantibodies to the endothelin and angiotensin II receptors (Buttrup, 2018). Interestingly, treatment of preeclamptic women with magnesium sulfate lowers ET-1 concentrations (Sagsoz, 2003). In animal studies, sildenafil reduces ET-1 concentrations (Gillis, 2016).

Angiogenic and Antiangiogenic Factors

Placental vasculogenesis is evident by 21 days after conception. The list of pro- and antiangiogenic substances involved in placental vascular development is extensive, and the VEGF and angiopoietin families are the most studied. Angiogenic imbalance describes excessive amounts of antiangiogenic factors, which are thought to be stimulated by worsening hypoxia at the uteroplacental interface. Trophoblast of women destined to develop preeclampsia overproduce at least two antiangiogenic peptides that enter the maternal circulation (Karumanchi, 2016b).

First, *soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase 1 (sF1t-1)* is a soluble variant of the membrane-bound receptor for VEGF. As depicted in Figure 40-4, elevated maternal sFlt-1 levels inactivate and reduce circulating PlGF and VEGF concentrations, leading to endothelial dysfunction (Phipps, 2019). As shown in data from Myatt and coworkers (2013), sFlt-1 levels begin to rise in maternal serum months before preeclampsia is evident (Fig. 40-5). These high levels in the second trimester are associated with a much higher risk for preeclampsia development (Haggerty, 2012; March, 2015). This elevation from normal levels appears even sooner with early-onset disease (Vatten, 2012). These factors are also

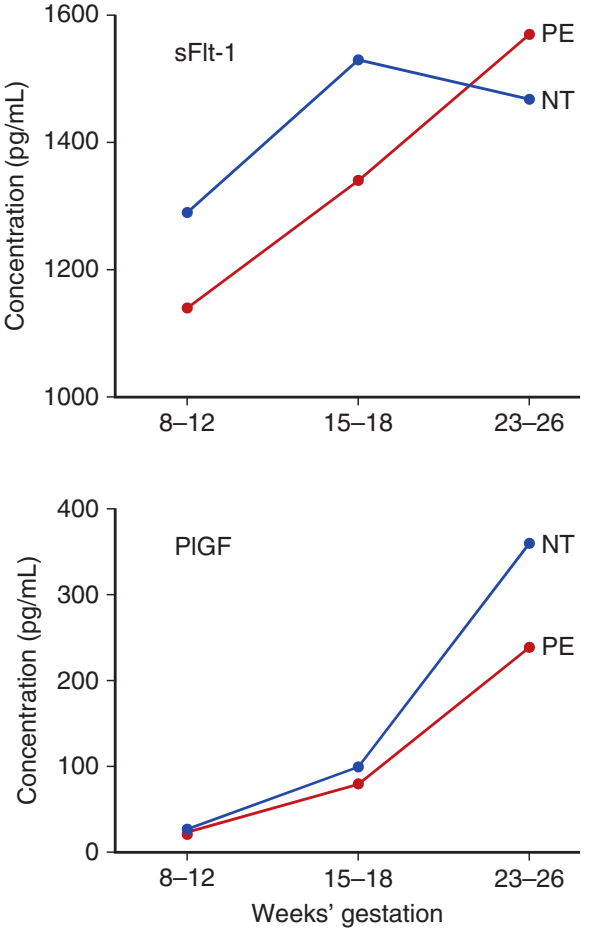


FIGURE 40-5 Angiogenic and antiangiogenic factors in normotensive (NT) and preeclamptic (PE) women across pregnancy. Both pairs of factors are significantly divergent by 23 to 26 weeks' gestation. sFlt-1 = soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase 1; PlGF = placental growth factor.

operative in pregnancies complicated by fetal-growth restriction (Herraiz, 2012).

A second antiangiogenic peptide, *soluble endoglin (sEng)*, inhibits various transforming growth factor beta (TGF-β) isoforms from binding to endothelial receptors (see Fig. 40-4). Endoglin is one of these receptors. Decreased binding to endoglin diminishes endothelial nitric oxide-dependent vasodilation. Serum levels of sEng also begin to rise months before clinical preeclampsia develops (Haggerty, 2012).

Simultaneously elevated levels of sFlt-1 and sEng are associated with more severe forms of preeclampsia (Phipps, 2019). In one systematic review, third-trimester increases in sFlt-1 levels and lower PlGF concentrations were found to correlate with preeclampsia development after 25 weeks' gestation (Widmer, 2007). From another study, doubling of sFlt-1 and sEng expression increased the preeclampsia risk by 39 and 74 percent, respectively (Haggerty, 2012). The cause of placental overproduction of antiangiogenic proteins remains an enigma. Concentrations of the soluble forms are not higher in fetal circulation or amnionic fluid of preeclamptic women, and their levels in maternal blood dissipate after delivery (Staff, 2007).

Clinical use of antiangiogenic protein levels to predict and diagnosis preeclampsia is being evaluated (p. 703). Moreover, one preliminary report described therapeutic apheresis to reduce sFlt-1 levels (Thadhani, 2016).

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Cardiovascular System

Disturbances in the cardiovascular system are common with preeclampsia syndrome. These are related to: (1) greater cardiac afterload imposed by hypertension; (2) cardiac preload, which is reduced by a pathologically diminished volume expansion during pregnancy and which is increased by administration of intravenous crystalloid or oncotic solutions; and (3) endothelial activation leading to leakage of intravascular fluid into the extracellular space.

Hemodynamic Changes and Cardiac Function

The cardiovascular aberrations of pregnancy-related hypertensive disorders vary. Modifying factors include preeclampsia severity, degree of hypertension, presence of underlying chronic disease, and the point in the clinical spectrum in which these are studied. In some women, these cardiovascular changes may precede hypertension (Easterling, 1990; Khalil, 2012; Melchiorre, 2013). Nevertheless, with the clinical onset of preeclampsia, cardiac output declines, due at least in part to greater peripheral resistance (Ferrazzi, 2018).

Myocardial Function

Serial echocardiographic studies document diastolic dysfunction in up to 45 percent of women with preeclampsia (Guirguis, 2015; Vaught, 2018). With this dysfunction, ventricles do not properly relax and cannot fill appropriately. In some affected women, functional differences persist up to 4 years after delivery (Evans, 2011; Orabona, 2017). Diastolic dysfunction stems from ventricular remodeling, which is a maladaptive response to the increased afterload of preeclampsia and aims to maintain normal contractility. High levels of antiangiogenic proteins may be contributory (Shahul, 2016). In otherwise healthy gravidas, these changes are usually inconsequential. But in those with underlying ventricular dysfunction—for example, concentric ventricular hypertrophy from chronic hypertension—further diastolic dysfunction may cause cardiogenic pulmonary edema (Wardhana, 2018). This is discussed further in Chapters 50 (p. 883) and 52 (p. 916).

Ventricular Function

Despite the relatively high frequency of diastolic dysfunction with preeclampsia, clinical cardiac function in most affected women is appropriate (Hibbard, 2015). In some preeclamptic women, high-sensitivity cardiac troponin levels are slightly elevated (Morton, 2018). With severe preeclampsia, amino-terminal pro–brain natriuretic peptide (NT–pro-BNP) levels are increased (Zachary, 2017).

Women with preeclampsia syndrome usually have slightly hyperdynamic ventricular function (Fig. 40-6). Both these and normotensive pregnant women have a cardiac output that is appropriate for left-sided filling pressures. This pressure can be altered by intravenous fluid volumes. Thus, aggressive hydration results in overtly *hyperdynamic* ventricular function. This is accompanied by elevated pulmonary capillary wedge pressures, and pulmonary edema may develop despite normal ventricular function. This is partly because of an alveolar endothelial-epithelial leak, and it is compounded by decreased oncotic pressure from a low serum albumin concentration. In sum, aggressive fluid administration to otherwise normal women with severe preeclampsia substantially elevates normal left-sided filling

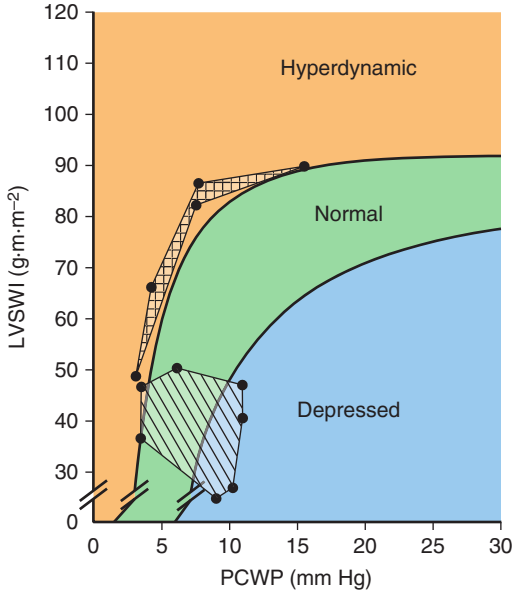


FIGURE 40-6 Ventricular function in normally pregnant women (*striped area*) and in women with eclampsia (*boxed area*) is plotted on a Braunwald ventricular function curve. Normal values are from Clark, 1989, and those for eclampsia are from Hankins, 1984. PCWP = pulmonary capillary wedge pressure; LVSWI = left ventricular stroke work index.

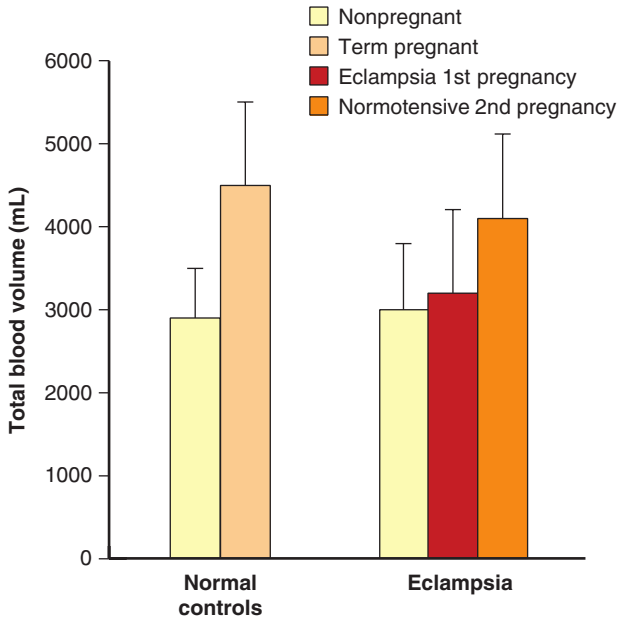


FIGURE 40-7 Total blood volumes in normotensive women compared with those with eclampsia. The vertical extensions are one standard deviation from the mean. In the eclamptic women, note the minimally increased blood volume compared with a subsequent normotensive pregnancy.

pressures and raises a physiologically normal cardiac output to hyperdynamic levels.

Blood Volume

In those with eclampsia, *hemoconcentration* is a hallmark feature (Pritchard, 1984). Data from Zeeman and associates (2009) show that normally expected pregnancy blood volume expansion is severely curtailed (Fig. 40-7). Women of average size have a nonpregnant blood volume of 3000 mL, and during the last several weeks of a normal pregnancy, this averages 4500 mL (Chap. 4, p. 59). With eclampsia, however, much or all of the anticipated 1500 mL excess is lost. Such hemoconcentration results from generalized vasospasm that follows endothelial activation and then from leakage of plasma into the interstitial space. In women with preeclampsia—depending on its severity—hemoconcentration is usually not as marked.

These changes have substantial clinical consequences. Women with severe hemoconcentration are unduly sensitive to blood loss at delivery that otherwise may be considered normal. Vasospasm and endothelial leakage of plasma persist for a variable time after delivery as the endothelium is restored to normal. As this takes place, vasoconstriction reverses, and as the blood volume reexpands, the hematocrit usually falls from dilution. *Importantly, a substantive cause of this fall in hematocrit frequently is the blood loss incurred at delivery.*

Hematological Changes

Thrombocytopenia

The platelet count is routinely measured in women with any form of gestational hypertension. The frequency and intensity of thrombocytopenia vary and are dependent on the severity and duration of preeclampsia (Hellmann, 2007; Hupuczi, 2007). Overt thrombocytopenia—defined by a platelet count <100,000/μL—reflects severe disease (see Table 40-2). In general, the lower the platelet count, the higher the likelihood of maternal and fetal morbidity and mortality. In most cases, delivery is advisable because thrombocytopenia usually worsens.

After delivery, the platelet count may continue to decline for the first day or so. It then usually rises progressively to reach a normal level within 3 to 5 days. As discussed later, in some instances with HELLP syndrome, the platelet count continues to fall after delivery. If this nadir is delayed until 48 to 72 hours, preeclampsia syndrome may be incorrectly attributed to one of the thrombotic microangiopathies (Chap. 59, p. 1060).

Another platelet alteration is platelet activation and increased α-degranulation. This leads to release of β-thromboglobulin and factor 4 and to enhanced platelet clearance (Kenny, 2015). Platelet volume concomitantly increases as young platelets are released (Bellos, 2018). Paradoxically, in most studies, in vitro platelet aggregation is reduced compared with the normal increase that is characteristic of pregnancy. This likely is due to platelet "exhaustion" following in-vivo activation. Although the cause is unknown, immunological processes or simply platelet deposition at sites of endothelial damage may be implicated. Levels of platelet-bound and circulating platelet-bindable immunoglobulins are elevated, which suggests platelet surface alterations. Abnormally low platelet levels do not develop in the fetuses of women with preeclampsia despite severe maternal thrombocytopenia (Kenny, 2015; Pritchard, 1987). Thus, thrombocytopenia in a hypertensive woman is not a fetal indication for cesarean delivery.

Hemolysis

Severe preeclampsia is frequently accompanied by hemolysis, which manifests as elevated serum lactate dehydrogenase levels and reduced haptoglobin levels (Burwick, 2018). Other evidence comes from schizocytosis, spherocytosis, and reticulocytosis in peripheral blood (Cunningham, 1985; Pritchard, 1954, 1976). Red cell distribution width (RDW) reflects variability in the size of circulating red blood cells, and RDW is higher in preeclamptic women (Adam, 2019). These derangements result in part from *microangiopathic hemolysis* caused by endothelial disruption with platelet adherence and fibrin deposition. Cunningham and coworkers (1995) postulated that erythrocyte morphological changes were partially caused by serum lipid alterations. Related, substantively decreased long-chain fatty acid content is found in erythrocytes of women with preeclampsia (Mackay, 2012).

After early reports of hemolysis and thrombocytopenia with severe preeclampsia, descriptions were added of abnormally elevated serum liver transaminase levels that indicated hepatocellular necrosis (Chesley, 1978). Weinstein (1982) referred to this combination of events as the *HELLP syndrome* (p. 699).

Coagulation Changes

Subtle changes consistent with intravascular coagulation commonly are found with preeclampsia and eclampsia (Cunningham, 2015; von Dadelszen, 2018). Some include elevated factor VIII

consumption, increased levels of fibrinopeptides A and B and of D-dimers, and reduced concentrations of the regulatory proteins—antithrombin III and proteins C and S. Coagulation aberrations generally are mild and seldom clinically significant (Kenny, 2015; Pritchard, 1984). Unless placental abruption is comorbid, plasma fibrinogen levels do not differ remarkably from levels found in normal pregnancy (Cunningham, 2015). As preeclampsia worsens, so do abnormal findings with *thromboelastography*, which is described in Chapter 44 (p. 774) (Pisani-Conway, 2013). Despite these changes, routine laboratory assessments of coagulation, such as prothrombin time (PT), activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT), and plasma fibrinogen level, are not required in the management of pregnancy-associated hypertensive disorders.

Endocrine and Hormonal Alterations

Plasma levels of *renin*, *angiotensin II*, *aldosterone*, *deoxycorticosterone*, and *atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP)* are substantively augmented during normal pregnancy. ANP is released during atrial wall stretching from blood volume expansion, and it responds to cardiac contractility (Chap. 4, p. 65). Serum ANP levels rise in pregnancy, and its secretion is further enhanced in preeclampsia (Gu, 2018). Levels of its precursor—*proatrial natriuretic peptide*—also are elevated in preeclampsia. *Vasopressin* levels are similar in nonpregnant, in normally pregnant, and in preeclamptic women, although its metabolic clearance is elevated in the latter two (Dürr, 1999).

Fluid and Electrolyte Alterations

In women with severe preeclampsia, the volume of *extracellular fluid*, which manifests as edema, is usually much greater than that in normal pregnant women. The mechanism responsible for pathological fluid retention is endothelial injury and subsequent extravasation of intravascular fluid. Affected women also have reduced plasma oncotic pressure. This further displaces intravascular fluid into the surrounding interstitium. In women with preeclampsia, electrolyte concentrations do not differ appreciably from those of normal pregnant women.

Following an eclamptic convulsion, the *serum pH* and *bicarbonate concentration* are lowered due to lactic acidosis and compensatory respiratory loss of carbon dioxide. The intensity of acidosis relates to the amount of lactic acid produced—metabolic acidosis—and the rate at which carbon dioxide is exhaled—respiratory acidosis.

Kidney

During normal pregnancy, renal blood flow and glomerular filtration rate (GFR) rise appreciably (Chap. 4, p. 68). With preeclampsia, several reversible physiological changes ensue. Of clinical importance, renal perfusion and GFR are slightly reduced. Most of the decrement in GFR is from increased renal afferent arteriolar resistance that may be elevated up to fivefold (Conrad, 2015; Cornelis, 2011).

Morphological changes are characterized by *glomerular endotheliosis*, which blocks filtration (Phipps, 2019). Diminished filtration causes serum creatinine levels to rise to values seen in nonpregnant individuals, that is, 1 mg/mL, and sometimes higher. Acute kidney injury is discussed subsequently.

Plasma uric acid concentration is typically elevated in preeclampsia. The elevation exceeds that attributable to the reduced GFR and likely is also due to enhanced tubular reabsorption (Chesley, 1945). At the same time, preeclampsia is associated with diminished urinary excretion of calcium, perhaps because of greater tubular reabsorption (Taufield, 1987).

Proteinuria

Detection of proteinuria helps to establish the diagnosis of preeclampsia (see Table 40-1). Abnormal protein excretion is empirically defined by 24-hour urinary excretion exceeding 300 mg; a spot urine protein: creatinine ratio ≥0.3; or persistent protein values of 30 mg/dL (1+ dipstick) in random urine samples. Although worsening or nephrotic-range proteinuria was in the past considered by most to be a sign of severe disease, this does not appear to be the case (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2013; Bartal, 2020).

Problematically, the optimal method of establishing abnormal levels of either urine protein or albumin remains to be defined. For a 24-hour quantitative specimen, the consensus threshold value is ≥300 mg/24 h (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2013; Bartal, 2020). Using a urinary protein excretion threshold of 165 mg in a 12-hour sample shows equivalent efficacy (Stout, 2015).

Determination of urinary protein: creatinine ratio may supplant the cumbersome 24-hour quantification (Morris, 2012). In one systematic review, random urine protein:creatinine ratios <130 to 150 mg/g, that is, 0.13 to 0.15, indicate a low likelihood of proteinuria exceeding 300 mg/d (Papanna, 2008). Ratios <0.08 or >1.19 have negative and positive predictive values of 86 and 96 percent, respectively (Stout, 2013). However, midrange ratios, for example, 300 mg/g or 0.3, have poor sensitivity and specificity. Any midrange ratio should be repeated, and if persistent, a 24-hour urine collection for measurement of protein excretion should be considered.

With urine dipstick assessment, results depend on urine concentration and are notorious for false-positive and -negative results. A concentrated urine specimen may show a dipstick value of 1+ to 2+ in women who actually excrete <300 mg/d.

Importantly, proteinuria may develop late, and some women may already be delivered or have had an eclamptic convulsion before it appears. At presentation, 10 to 15 percent of women with HELLP syndrome do not have proteinuria (Sibai, 2004). In another report, 17 percent of women with eclampsia did not have proteinuria by the time of seizures (Zwart, 2008).

Anatomical Changes

Sheehan and Lynch (1973) frequently found microscopic changes that were identified at autopsy in the kidneys of eclamptic women. Glomeruli are enlarged by approximately 20 percent, they are "bloodless," and capillary loops variably are dilated and contracted. Endothelial cells are swollen—termed *glomerular capillary endotheliosis* (Spargo, 1959). Such swelling may be severe enough to block or partially block the capillary

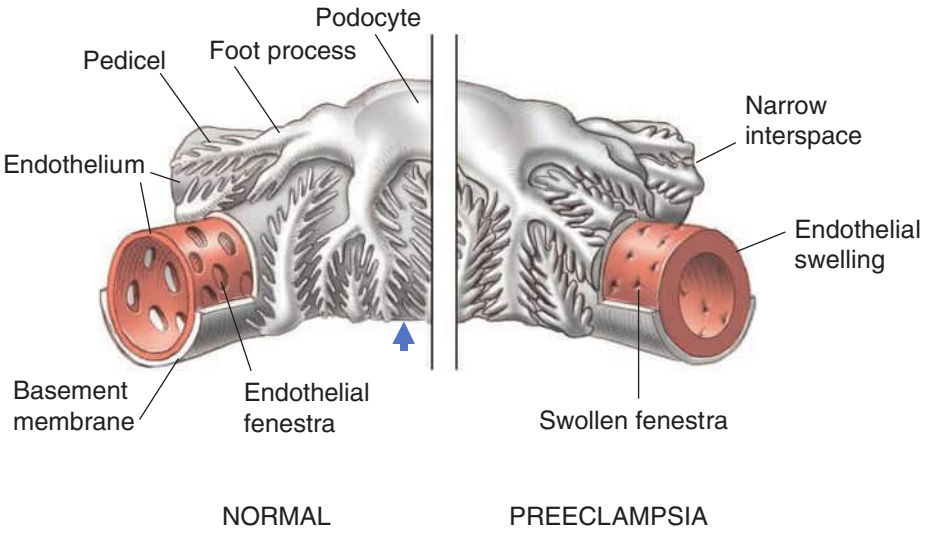


FIGURE 40-8 Schematic showing glomerular capillary endotheliosis. The capillary of the normal glomerulus shown on the left has wide endothelial fenestrations, and the pedicels emanating from the podocytes are widely spaced (*arrow*). The illustration on the right is of a glomerulus with changes induced by the preeclampsia syndrome. The endothelial cells are swollen and their fenestrae narrowed, as are the pedicels that now abut each other.

lumens (Fig. 40-8). Last, homogeneous subendothelial deposits of proteins and fibrin-like material are seen (Hecht, 2017).

Endothelial swelling may result from angiogenic protein "withdrawal." This is caused by the complexing of free angiogenic proteins with a compatible circulating antiangiogenic protein receptor (see Fig. 40-4). The angiogenic proteins are crucial for podocyte health, and their inactivation leads to podocyte dysfunction and endothelial swelling (Conrad, 2015; Phipps, 2019). Eclampsia is characterized by greater excretion of these epithelial podocytes (White, 2014).

Acute Kidney Injury

In one study, preeclampsia syndrome caused acute kidney injury (AKI) in 5 percent of patients and in 14 percent of those with HELLP syndrome (Novotny, 2020). With severe preeclampsia, Rodriguez and colleagues (2021) reported AKI in 15 percent of women in a study from Parkland Hospital. In most, AKI was stage 1. In another study of 72 women with preeclampsia and renal failure, half had HELLP syndrome, and a third had placental abruption (Drakeley, 2002). In a review of 183 women with HELLP syndrome, 5 percent had AKI (Haddad, 2000). Of those with renal injury, half had placental abruption, and most had postpartum hemorrhage. Abnormal renal values usually begin to normalize 10 days or later after delivery (Cornelis, 2011; Spaan, 2012). Although mild degrees of AKI are encountered, clinically apparent acute tubular necrosis is almost invariably induced by comorbid hemorrhage and subsequent hypovolemia and hypotension (Chap. 43, p. 753).

To evaluate AKI etiology clinically, urine electrolytes may be obtained. Results with preeclampsia reflect an *intrarenal* cause. In most with preeclampsia, the urine sodium concentration is elevated. Instead, changes that indicate a *prerenal* mechanism include increase urine osmolality, elevated urine: plasma creatinine ratio, and low fractional excretion of sodium.

In response to oliguria, sodium-containing crystalloid temporarily improves urine output. However, rapid infusions may cause clinically apparent pulmonary edema (p. 695). Intensive intravenous fluid therapy is not indicated as "treatment" for women with preeclampsia and oliguria, unless urine output is diminished from hemorrhage or fluid loss from vomiting or fever. In nonpregnant individuals, intravenous saline infusions have demonstrated a negative impact on renal function. However, at Parkland Hospital, transition from Ringer lactate to normal saline did not significantly impair renal function in women with preeclampsia (Yule, 2020).

Liver

Hepatic changes are common in women with severe preeclampsia syndrome. Several gross and microscopic anatomical derangements lead to elevated serum hepatic transaminase levels. This *transaminitis* indicates hepatocellular injury and is a marker for severe preeclampsia. Values are seldom more than 500 U/L, but levels exceeding 2000 U/L have been reported (Chap. 58, p. 1031). In general, serum concentrations inversely follow platelet levels, and they both usually return to normal levels within 3 days after delivery.

Anatomical Changes

Regions of periportal hemorrhage in the liver periphery typify the hepatic lesions of eclampsia (Hecht, 2017; Sheehan, 1973). Extensive involvement such as shown in Figure 40-9 is

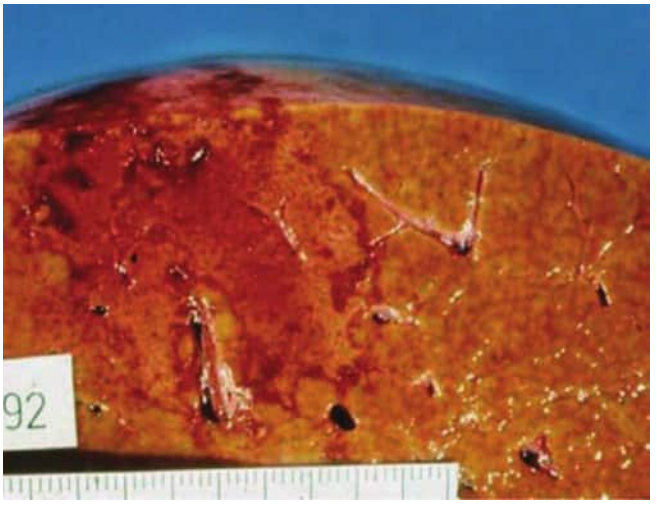


FIGURE 40-9 Hepatic section from a woman with HELLP syndrome who died of aspiration pneumonia. There are areas of ischemia and infarction, and histopathological examination showed periportal hemorrhages.

unusual. Sheehan and Lynch (1973) described that some degree of hepatic infarction accompanied hemorrhage in almost half of women who died with eclampsia. These findings corresponded with reports during the 1960s that described elevated serum hepatic transaminase levels. Pritchard and associates (1954) described hemolysis and thrombocytopenia with eclampsia. This constellation of hemolysis, hepatocellular necrosis, and thrombocytopenia was later termed HELLP syndrome. Similarities with hepatic sinusoidal obstruction are reviewed by von Salmuth and coworkers (2020).

Liver involvement with preeclampsia may clinically display several manifestations. First, pain is considered a sign of severe disease. It typically manifests as moderate to severe right upper quadrant or midepigastric pain and tenderness. These women usually have elevated serum aspartate transaminase (AST) or alanine transaminase (ALT) levels. In some cases, however, the amount of hepatic tissue involved with infarction may be surprisingly extensive yet still clinically insignificant. To study this, we performed magnetic resonance (MR) imaging in 16 women with HELLP syndrome (Nelson, 2018). All but two had evidence of acute liver injury, and the volume of involvement correlated with serum AST levels. Frank infarction is unusual, and in our experiences, it may be worsened or precipitated by hypotension from obstetrical hemorrhage. It occasionally causes hepatic failure—also called *shock liver* (Morgan, 2019; Yoshihara, 2016).

Hepatic Hematoma

In another presentation, periportal hemorrhage and infarction may extend to develop a hepatic hematoma. This in turn can extend to form a subcapsular hematoma that may rupture. Computed tomography (CT) scanning or MR imaging greatly aids diagnosis (Fig. 40-10). Unruptured hematomas are probably more common than clinically suspected and are more likely to be found with HELLP syndrome (Nelson, 2018). Although once considered a surgical condition, current management of a hepatic hematoma is usually observation unless bleeding is ongoing. In some cases, however, prompt surgical intervention or angiographic embolization may be lifesaving (Chandrasekaran, 2020). In one review of 180 cases of hepatic hematoma or rupture, 94 percent of affected gravidas had HELLP syndrome, and in 90 percent of the total, the capsule had ruptured (Vigil-De Gracia, 2012). The maternal mortality rate was 22 percent, and the perinatal mortality rate was 31 percent. Another review of 73 cases found similar outcomes (Gupta, 2021). In rare cases, liver transplantation is necessary (Escobar Vidarte, 2019).

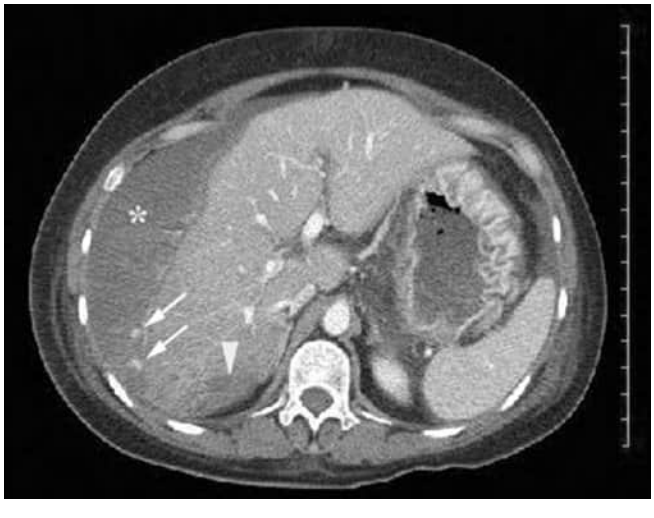


FIGURE 40-10 Abdominal CT imaging performed postpartum in a woman with severe HELLP syndrome and right-upper quadrant pain. A large subcapsular hematoma (*asterisk*) is seen confluent with intrahepatic infarction and hematoma (*arrowhead*). Numerous flame-shaped hemorrhages are seen at the hematoma interface (*arrows*).

Acute fatty liver of pregnancy is sometimes confused with preeclampsia (Byrne, 2020; Nelson, 2013). It too has an onset in late pregnancy, and often hypertension, elevated serum transaminase and creatinine levels, and thrombocytopenia are comorbid. In distinction, the hallmark of acute fatty liver is marked liver dysfunction. Liver function overall is usually normal in HELLP syndrome. Table 58-1 (p. 1031) highlights these clinical differences.

No convincing data link *pancreatic involvement* with preeclampsia syndrome. In 407 women with severe preeclampsia, the incidence was 1 percent (Sang, 2019). That said, the occasional case of concurrent hemorrhagic pancreatitis is likely unrelated (Lynch, 2015). In our experiences from Parkland Hospital, lipase and amylase levels are seldom elevated in women with preeclampsia (Nelson, 2018).

HELLP Syndrome

This acronym stands for hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, and low platelet count. No strict definition of the syndrome is universally accepted, and thus its reported incidence varies.

In women with preeclampsia, those with HELLP syndrome typically have worse outcomes than those without it (Martin, 2012, 2013). In the previously noted study of 183 women with HELLP syndrome, 40 percent had adverse outcomes, and two mothers died (Haddad, 2000). Complications included eclampsia in 6 percent, placental abruption—10 percent, AKI—5 percent, and pulmonary edema—10 percent. Stroke, hepatic hematoma, coagulopathy, acute respiratory distress syndrome, and sepsis were other complications. In one review of 693 women with HELLP syndrome, 10 percent had concurrent eclampsia (Keiser, 2011). Obstetrical outcomes also may suffer. In one study comparing women with HELLP against those with preeclampsia, rates of eclampsia were greater with HELLP—15 versus 4 percent; preterm birth—93 versus 78 percent; and perinatal mortality—9 versus 4 percent, respectively (Sep, 2009). Because of these marked clinical differences, some postulate that HELLP syndrome has a distinct pathogenesis (Reimer, 2013; Vaught, 2016).

■ Central Nervous System

Headaches and visual symptoms are common with severe preeclampsia, and associated convulsions define eclampsia. The earliest anatomical descriptions of brain involvement came from autopsy specimens, but CT and MR imaging and Doppler studies have added important insights.

Neuroanatomical Lesions

From early anatomical descriptions, brain pathology accounted for only approximately a third of fatal cases, such as the one shown in Figure 40-11. In fact, most deaths were from pulmonary edema, and brain lesions were coincidental. Thus, although gross intracerebral hemorrhage was seen in up to 60 percent of eclamptic women, it was fatal in only half of these (Richards, 1988). With data from Sheehan and Lynch (1973) shown in Figure 40-12, cortical and subcortical petechial hemorrhages are other principal lesions found at autopsy in women with eclampsia. The classic microscopic vascular lesions consist of fibrinoid necrosis of the arterial wall and perivascular microinfarcts and hemorrhages. Other lesions include nonhemorrhagic areas of "softening" throughout the brain, hemorrhages in the white matter, and subcortical edema (Hecht, 2017; Willard, 2018). Hemorrhage in the basal ganglia or pons, often with rupture into the ventricles, may develop.

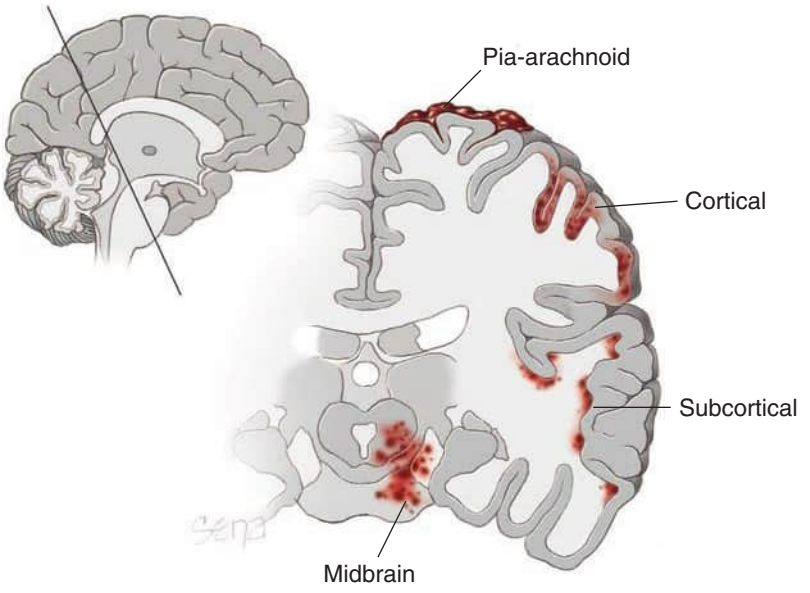


FIGURE 40-12 Composite illustration showing location of cerebral hemorrhages and petechiae in women with eclampsia. Insert shows the level of the brain from which the main image was constructed.

Cerebrovascular Pathophysiology

Clinical, pathological, and neuroimaging findings have led to two general theories to explain cerebral abnormalities with eclampsia. Endothelial cell dysfunction likely plays a key role in both. The first theory suggests that in response to acute and severe hypertension, cerebrovascular overregulation leads to vasospasm and eventual tissue infarction (Trommer, 1988). Little objective evidence supports this mechanism.

The second theory is that sudden elevations in systemic blood pressure exceed the normal cerebrovascular autoregulatory capacity (Schwartz, 2000). Regions of forced vasodilation and vasoconstriction develop, especially in arterial boundary zones. At the capillary level, disruption of end-capillary pressure causes increased hydrostatic pressure, hyperperfusion, and extravasation of plasma and red cells through endothelial tight-junction openings. This leads to *vasogenic edema*.

Most likely, the true mechanism combines these two. Thus, a preeclampsia-associated interendothelial cell leak develops at blood pressure levels much lower than those that usually cause vasogenic edema, and this is coupled with a loss of upper-limit autoregulation (Fugate, 2015; Zeeman, 2009). As shown in Figure 40-13, these abnormalities manifest as the *posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome (PRES).* Lesions principally involve the occipital and parietal cortices, but other areas are often involved, although less extensively (Edlow, 2013; Zeeman, 2004a).

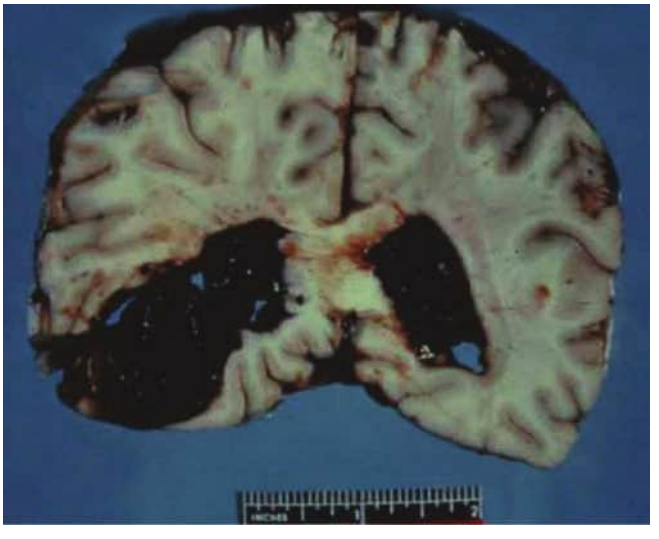


FIGURE 40-11 This autopsy brain slice shows a fatal hypertensive hemorrhage in a primigravida with eclampsia.

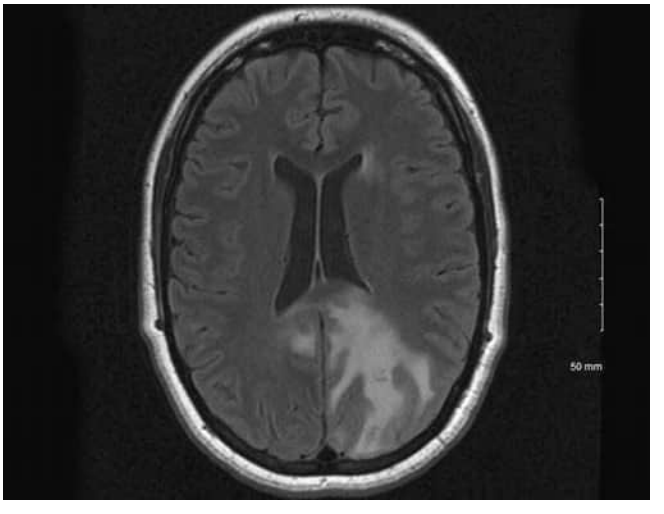


FIGURE 40-13 Cranial magnetic resonance imaging in a nullipara with eclampsia. This T2-FLAIR image shows an occipital lesion consistent with posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome (PRES). FLAIR = fluid-attenuated inversion recovery.

Cerebral Blood Flow

Autoregulation is the mechanism by which cerebral blood flow remains relatively constant despite alterations in cerebral perfusion pressure. In nonpregnant individuals, this mechanism protects the brain from hyperperfusion when mean arterial pressures increase up to 160 mm Hg. These pressures are far greater than those seen in most women with eclampsia. Thus, to explain eclamptic seizures, it was theorized that autoregulation must be altered by pregnancy. Some investigators have shown impaired autoregulation in women with preeclampsia (Bergman, 2021b; Janzarik, 2014). When studied 2 to 3 years postpartum, women who had preeclampsia had returned to normal autoregulation (Janzarik, 2018).

Zeeman and associates (2003) showed that cerebral blood flow during the first two trimesters of normal pregnancy is similar to nonpregnant values. But during the last trimester, flow significantly drops by 20 percent. They found greater cerebral blood flow in this trimester in women with severe preeclampsia compared with flow in normotensive pregnant women (Lee, 2019; Zeeman, 2004b). Taken together, these findings suggest that eclampsia occurs when cerebral hyperperfusion forces capillary fluid interstitially because of endothelial damage. This leak leads to perivascular edema. Some data suggest that the blood-brain barrier is not impaired, but in-vitro studies may indicate increased permeability (Bergman, 2021a; Burwick, 2018).

Neurological Manifestations

Several neurological manifestations typify the preeclampsia syndrome. Each signifies severe involvement and requires immediate attention.

First, *headache and scotomata* are thought to arise from cerebrovascular hyperperfusion that has a predilection for the occipital lobes. In women preceding an eclamptic convulsion, up to 75 percent have headaches, and 20 to 30 percent have visual changes (Sibai, 2005; Zwart, 2008). The headaches vary in severity and persistence. In our experiences, they are unique in that they do not usually respond to traditional analgesia but frequently improve after magnesium sulfate infusion.

Convulsions are diagnostic for eclampsia. These are caused by abnormal excessive or synchronous neural activity in the brain. Evidence suggests that extended seizures can cause significant brain injury and later brain dysfunction.

Blindness and *generalized cerebral edema* are discussed in subsequent sections. Last, women with eclampsia have been shown to have some cognitive decline when studied 5 to 10 years following the involved pregnancy (Bergman, 2021c). This is discussed further in Chapter 41 (p. 727).

Neuroimaging Studies

With CT imaging, localized hypodense lesions are frequently seen with eclampsia at the gray- and white-matter junction and primarily in the parietooccipital lobes. Frontal and inferior temporal lobes, the basal ganglia, and thalamus are other sites (Brown, 1988). These hypodense areas correspond to petechial hemorrhages and local edema. Edema of the occipital lobes or diffuse cerebral edema may cause blindness, lethargy, and confusion (Cunningham, 2000). Widespread edema can appear as marked compression or even obliteration of the cerebral ventricles. Such women may develop signs of impending life-threatening transtentorial herniation.

Several MR imaging acquisitions are used to study women with eclampsia (Singh, 2021). Common findings are hyperintense T2 lesions in the subcortical and cortical regions of the parietal and occipital lobes, which reflect PRES (see Fig. 40-13). The basal ganglia, brainstem, and cerebellum are other involved sites (Brewer, 2013; Zeeman, 2004a). PRES lesions are almost universal in women with eclampsia, and their incidence in women with severe preeclampsia approximates 20 percent (Hosapatna Basavarajappa, 2020; Mayama, 2016). Although usually reversible, a fourth of these hyperintense lesions with eclampsia have restricted diffusion that signify cerebral infarctions. These have persistent MR imaging findings (Loureiro, 2003; Zeeman, 2004a).

Visual Changes and Blindness

Retinal artery and venular calibers are decreased in women with preeclampsia (Soma-Pillay, 2018). These changes, along with visual cortex involvement, can cause scotomata, blurred vision, or diplopia, which is common with severe preeclampsia and eclampsia. These symptoms usually improve with magnesium sulfate therapy, or lowered blood pressure, or both.

Blindness is rare with preeclampsia alone, but it complicates up to 15 percent of women with eclampsia (Cunningham, 1995). It can develop a week or more following delivery. Blindness is usually reversible and may arise from three potential areas. These are the occipital lobe's visual cortex, the lateral geniculate nuclei, and the retina.

Occipital blindness is also called *amaurosis*. With MR imaging, affected women usually have evidence of extensive occipital lobe vasogenic edema. Of 15 women cared for at Parkland Hospital, occipital blindness lasted from 4 hours to 8 days, but it resolved completely in all cases (Cunningham, 1995). Rarely, extensive cerebral infarctions may result in total or partial visual defects.

In the retina, ischemia, infarction, or serous detachment may occur (Handor, 2014). Retinal infarction, termed *Purtscher retinopathy*, is rare (Fig. 40-14). *Serous retinal detachment* is usually unilateral and seldom causes total visual loss. Asymptomatic serous retinal detachment is relatively common with preeclampsia (Gupta, 2019). In most cases of eclampsia-associated blindness, visual acuity subsequently improves (Mandura, 2021). If blindness is caused by retinal artery occlusion, vision may be permanently impaired (Roos, 2012).

Cerebral Edema

Manifestations that suggest widespread cerebral edema are worrisome. During 13 years at Parkland Hospital, 10 of 175 women with eclampsia were diagnosed with symptomatic cerebral edema (Cunningham, 2000). Symptoms ranged from lethargy, confusion, and blurred vision to obtundation and coma. In most cases, symptoms waxed and waned. Of these 10, three became comatose and had imaging findings of transtentorial herniation. One woman died.

Mental status changes generally correlated with the degree of involvement seen with CT and MR imaging studies. *These women are very susceptible to sudden and severe blood pressure*

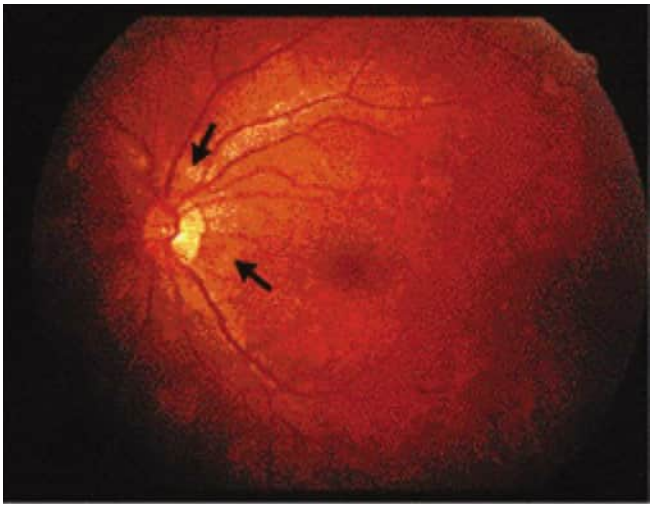


FIGURE 40-14 Purtscher retinopathy caused by choroidal ischemia and infarction in preeclampsia syndrome. Ophthalmoscopy shows scattered yellowish, opaque lesions of the retina (*arrows*). (Reproduced with permission from Lam, DS, Chan W: Images in clinical medicine. Choroidal ischemia in preeclampsia. N Engl J Med 344(10):739, 2001).

elevations, which can acutely worsen the already widespread vasogenic edema. Thus, careful blood pressure control is essential.

■ Uteroplacental Perfusion

Compromised uteroplacental perfusion is almost certainly a major contributor to the increased perinatal morbidity and mortality rates associated with preeclampsia syndrome (Harmon, 2015). Contributing defects in endovascular trophoblastic invasion were discussed earlier (p. 692). Thus, measurement of uterine, intervillous, and placental blood flow would likely be informative. Attempts to assess these in humans have been hampered. Barriers include the placenta's inaccessibility, the complexity of its venous effluent, and the need for invasive techniques or radioisotopes.

As a surrogate, sonographic measurement of uterine artery blood flow velocity can estimate resistance to uteroplacental blood flow. Vascular resistance is estimated by comparing arterial systolic and diastolic velocity waveforms (Chap. 14, p. 262). By the completion of placentation, impedance to uterine artery blood flow is markedly decreased, but with abnormal placentation, abnormally high resistance persists (Everett, 2012; Napolitano, 2012). In earlier studies, peak systolic:diastolic velocity ratios from uterine and umbilical arteries in preeclamptic pregnancies were measured. In some cases, but not all, resistance was higher (Ferrazzi, 2018; Trudinger, 1990).

Another Doppler waveform, termed uterine artery "notching," has been linked with increased risks for preeclampsia or fetal-growth restriction (Groom, 2009). However, in one MFMU Network study, notching had a low predictive value except for early-onset, severe disease (Myatt, 2012a).

Resistance in *uterine spiral arteries* also has been measured. In one study, mean resistance values were greater in all women with preeclampsia compared with those in normotensive controls (Matijevic, 1999). Another study used MR imaging and other techniques to assess placental perfusion ex vivo in the myometrial arteries removed from women with preeclampsia or fetal-growth restriction (Ong, 2003). In both conditions, myometrial arteries exhibited similar vascular responses.

Despite these findings, evidence for compromised uteroplacental circulation is found in only a few women who later develop preeclampsia. Indeed, when preeclampsia develops during the third trimester, only a third of women with severe disease have abnormal uterine artery velocimetry (Li, 2005). In a study of 50 women with HELLP syndrome, only a third had abnormal uterine artery waveforms (Bush, 2001). In general, the extent of abnormal waveforms correlates with severity of fetal involvement (Ghidini, 2008; Groom, 2009).

These sonographic findings have value for prediction of fetal-growth restriction but not preeclampsia (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b; Demers, 2019). Several other flow velocity waveforms have been investigated for preeclampsia prediction. However, none is suitable for clinical use (De Kat, 2019; Townsend, 2018).

Fetal-growth Restriction

Discussed in detail in Chapter 47, this potential consequence of preeclampsia can serve as one severity indicator (see Table 40-2). Namely, poor growth is usually confined to fetuses of women destined to develop severe preeclampsia (Mateus, 2019). Perry and colleagues (2020) reported that pregnancies complicated by fetal-growth restriction more likely had maternal hemodynamic indices similar to preeclampsia. Measures showed higher mean arterial pressure, greater systemic vascular resistance, lower cardiac output, and elevated uterine artery pulsatility index. Fetuses born to preeclamptic mothers have cardiac remodeling similar to growth-restricted fetuses (Youseff, 2020).

PREDICTION

Some biological markers implicated in the genesis of the preeclampsia syndrome have been measured to help predict its development. Although most have been evaluated in the first half of pregnancy, some have been tested as predictors of severity in the third trimester. Still others have been used to forecast recurrent preeclampsia. Overall, these efforts have resulted in testing strategies with poor sensitivity and poor positive predictive values for preeclampsia (Conde-Agudelo, 2015; De Kat, 2019). *Currently, no screening tests for preeclampsia are predictably reliable, valid, and economical.*

Because combinations of tests and risk factors might be superior to single predictors, some have developed multivariable screening algorithms (Boutin, 2021; Brunelli, 2020; Copel, 2020; Serra, 2020; Snell, 2020). One first-trimester screening protocol using serum sFlt-1 levels has been proposed (Pihl, 2020). Other examples are midpregnancy algorithms (Black, 2020; Peguero, 2021; Stepan, 2020). None has been adequately verified sufficiently for widespread clinical use (Capriglione, 2020).

■ Vascular Resistance Testing and Placental Perfusion

Most tests in this category are cumbersome, time consuming, and inaccurate. To evaluate blood pressure changes, three tests

assess the blood pressure rise in response to a stimulus. In one, women at 28 to 32 weeks' gestation rest in the left lateral decubitus position and then roll to lie supine. With this *roll-over test*, rising blood pressure in response to the maneuver signifies a positive test. The *isometric exercise* test employs the same principle by squeezing a handball. The *angiotensin II infusion test* provides incrementally higher doses intravenously, and the hypertensive response is quantified. Sensitivities of all three tests range from 55 to 70 percent, and specificities approximated 85 percent (Conde-Agudelo, 2015).

Uterine artery Doppler velocimetry is posited to reflect faulty trophoblastic invasion of the spiral arteries. The poor predictive value of this for preeclampsia was described in the Uteroplacental Perfusion section (p. 702).

Fetal-Placental Unit Endocrine Function

Several serum analytes have been proposed to help predict preeclampsia. Newer ones are continually added. In general, none of these tests is clinically beneficial for hypertension prediction.

Renal Function Tests

Hyperuricemia results from reduced uric acid clearance caused by diminished glomerular filtration, increased tubular reabsorption, and decreased secretion. In one study, the sensitivity of serum uric acid levels to detect preeclampsia ranged from 0 to 55 percent, and specificity was 77 to 95 percent (Cnossen, 2006). These are seldom used to diagnose preeclampsia (Chescheir, 2019).

Isolated gestational proteinuria is a risk factor for preeclampsia (Jayaballa, 2015; Morgan, 2016). But, as a predictive test for preeclampsia, microalbuminuria has sensitivities ranging from 7 to 90 percent and specificities spanning 29 to 97 percent (Conde-Agudelo, 2015).

Endothelial Dysfunction and Oxidative Stress

Endothelial activation and inflammation are major participants in preeclampsia pathophysiology. Levels of some implicated compounds are elevated in the blood of affected women and have been assessed as predictors.

Fibronectins are high-molecular-weight glycoproteins released from endothelial cells and extracellular matrix following endothelial injury. In one systematic review, however, neither cellular nor total fibronectin levels were clinically useful to predict preeclampsia (Leeflang, 2007).

Thrombocytopenia and *platelet dysfunction* are integral features of preeclampsia. Platelet activation causes their augmented destruction and lower blood concentrations. Platelet volume is increased because of platelet immaturity, and platelet volume has been described to be an early predictor of preeclampsia (Bellos, 2019; Mayer-Pickel, 2021). Although markers of coagulation activation described earlier (p. 696) are elevated, they substantively overlap with levels in normotensive pregnant women (von Dadelszen, 2018).

Of *oxidative stress markers*, higher levels of lipid peroxides coupled with decreased antioxidant activity can be seen with preeclampsia. Other markers are *iron*, *transferrin*, *and ferritin*; *resistin*; *hyperhomocysteinemia*; *blood lipids*; and antioxidants such as *ascorbic acid* and *vitamin E* (Christiansen, 2015; Conde-Agudelo, 2015; Mackay, 2012; Mignini, 2005). However, none has sufficient predictive value.

Angiogenic and Antiangiogenic Factor Imbalance

An imbalance in angiogenic and antiangiogenic factors is convincingly linked to preeclampsia pathogenesis (p. 694). Serum levels of VEGF and PlGF begin to drop before clinical preeclampsia develops. At the same time, levels of some antiangiogenic factors, such as sFlt-1 and sEng, begin to rise. Factor levels and ratios differ significantly between women with preeclampsia and those who are normotensive. These show especially good predictive performance with early-onset preeclampsia (Burton, 2019; Cerdeira, 2019; Phipps, 2019; Stepan, 2020).

These tests also can serve as diagnostic adjuncts (Duhig, 2019; Zeisler, 2016). First, they may aid differentiating between preeclampsia and mimics that include chronic hypertension, chronic kidney disease, systemic lupus erythematosus, and immunological thrombocytopenia. These tests can also help differentiate mild and severe disease. These plus other multiple markers will likely have a future role in first-trimester preeclampsia screening (Sovio, 2019).

Other Markers

Cell-free DNA (cfDNA) of placental origin can be detected in maternal plasma (Chap. 16, p. 327). It is hypothesized that cfDNA is released in preeclampsia by accelerated apoptosis of cytotrophoblasts. However, one MFMU Network study found no correlation between total cfDNA levels and preeclampsia prediction (Silver, 2017).

Other investigated markers include glycosylated hemoglobin A1c, serum cystatin-c, and first-trimester estimated placental volume (Bellos, 2019; Cavero-Redondo, 2018; Kim, 2021). Proteomic, metabolomic, and transcriptomic technologies can be employed to study serum and urinary proteins and cellular metabolites. Preliminary studies indicate their potential predictive value (Bahado-Singh, 2013; Ma, 2014).

PREVENTION

Various strategies used to prevent or modify preeclampsia severity have been evaluated. Some are listed in Table 40-4. With the possible exception of aspirin, none is convincingly and reproducibly effective.

Dietary and Lifestyle Modifications

A *low-salt* diet was one of the earliest researched preventions but is not supported by data (De Snoo, 1937). Of studies, one randomized trial showed that a sodium-restricted diet was ineffective in preventing preeclampsia (Knuist, 1998).

Regular exercise during pregnancy is linked to a lower risk of developing preeclampsia (Barakat, 2016; Morris, 2017). In one

TABLE 40-4. Some Methods to Prevent Preeclampsia That Have Been Evaluated in Randomized Trials

Dietary manipulation: low-salt diet, calcium or fish oil supplementation
Exercise: physical activity, stretching
Cardiovascular drugs: diuretics, antihypertensive drugs
Antioxidants: ascorbic acid (vitamin C), α-tocopherol (vitamin E), vitamin D
Antithrombotic drugs: low-dose aspirin, aspirin/dipyridamole, aspirin + heparin, aspirin + ketanserin

Modified from Jim, 2017; Staff, 2015.

systematic review, a similar trend toward risk reduction with exercise was noted (Kasawara, 2012). Only a few studies have been randomized.

Somewhat related, one retrospective cohort study of 677 nonhypertensive women were hospitalized for bed rest because of threatened preterm delivery (Abenhaim, 2008). When outcomes of these women were compared with those of the general obstetrical population, bed rest was associated with a significantly reduced risk of developing preeclampsia (relative risk 0.27). From two small randomized trials, prophylactic bed rest for 4 to 6 hours daily at home was successful in significantly lowering the preeclampsia incidence in women with normal blood pressures (Meher, 2006). Currently, the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020) does not recommend reduced activity for women with hypertensive disorders or for prevention of preeclampsia.

Calcium supplementation has been studied, but in one trial of more than 4500 low-risk nulliparas, supplementation failed to decrease the risk for preeclampsia or pregnancy-associated hypertension (Levine, 1997). Similar findings were reported from another trial (Hofmeyer, 2019). In aggregate, most trials show that unless women are calcium deficient, supplementation offers no benefits (Palacios, 2019; Sanchez-Ramos, 2017).

Subclinical hypothyroidism is associated with increased preeclampsia risk. This insufficiency has been postulated to stem from iodine deficiency, but a recent metaanalysis found no association between iodine sufficiency and preeclampsia (Businge, 2021). *Folic acid* was evaluated in a randomized trial (Wen, 2018). Nearly 2500 high-risk women were given a 4-mg folic acid dose daily or placebo. The incidence of preeclampsia in both groups approximated 14 percent.

Cardioprotective fatty acids found in some fish likely prevent inflammation-mediated atherogenesis. Thus, it was posited that they might also prevent preeclampsia. However, randomized trials conducted thus far show no such benefits from fish oil supplementation (Zhou, 2012). In one longitudinal cohort study, a seafood diet, compared with a western one, provided a protective effect against preeclampsia (Ikem, 2019).

Antihypertensive Drugs

Because of the prior purported benefits of sodium restriction for preeclampsia prevention, diuretic therapy became popular with the advent of chlorothiazide in 1957 (Flowers, 1962). In one metaanalysis of nine randomized trials with more than 7000 pregnancies, women given diuretics had a lower incidence of edema and hypertension but not of preeclampsia (Churchill, 2007). Because women with chronic hypertension are at high risk for preeclampsia, several randomized trials have evaluated various antihypertensive drugs to reduce the incidence of superimposed preeclampsia (Chap. 41, p. 713). A critical analysis of these trials by Staff and coworkers (2015) failed to demonstrate benefits for this goal.

Antioxidants

Data imply that an imbalance between oxidant and antioxidant activity plays a role in preeclampsia pathogenesis. Thus, naturally occurring antioxidants—vitamins C, D, and E—might reduce such oxidation. Several randomized studies have assessed antioxidant vitamin supplementation for women at high risk for preeclampsia (Burton, 2019; Villar, 2009). The Combined Antioxidant and Preeclampsia Prediction Studies (CAPPS) by the MFMU Network included almost 10,000 low-risk nulliparas (Roberts, 2010). None of these studies showed reduced preeclampsia rates in women supplemented with vitamins C and E compared with those given placebo.

Statins were proposed to prevent preeclampsia because they stimulate heme oxygenase-1 expression, which inhibits sF1t-1 release. Early animal data suggest that statins may prevent hypertensive disorders of pregnancy (Lewis, 2017). The MFMU Network plans a randomized trial to test pravastatin for prevention, and a pilot study is completed (Costantine, 2016).

Metformin inhibits *hypoxic inducible factor 1α* by lowering mitochondrial electron transport chain activity. It reduces sFlt-1 and sEng activity and thus has potential to prevent preeclampsia (Brownfoot, 2016). In a preliminary study, prediabetic women were given metformin or placebo throughout pregnancy, and metformin-treated women had a lower incidence of severe preeclampsia (Racine, 2021). However, other clinical studies are lacking.

Antithrombotic Agents

Preeclampsia is characterized by vasospasm, endothelial cell dysfunction, inflammation, and activation of platelets and the coagulation–hemostasis system. Other sequelae include placental infarction and spiral artery thrombosis (Nelson, 2014). Thus, antithrombotic agents have been evaluated to prevent preeclampsia. Low-molecular-weight heparin has been studied in randomized trials. In a subsequent metaanalysis using individual data from 963 women, the risk for recurrent preeclampsia, abruption, or fetal-growth restriction was similar in women receiving heparin or placebo (Rodger, 2016).

Low-dose Aspirin

In low doses of 50 to 150 mg daily, *aspirin* effectively inhibits platelet thromboxane A_2 biosynthesis. It has minimal effects on vascular prostacyclin production. Still, several clinical trials have shown limited benefits in preeclampsia prevention. In a randomized trial from the MFMU Network, risks for adverse outcomes were not significantly reduced with aspirin therapy (Caritis, 1998). This study was followed by numerous similar studies and metaanalyses.

In another randomized trial of more than 1600 women at high risk for preterm preeclampsia, oral low-dose aspirin was given daily from 11 to 14 weeks' gestation until 36 weeks to prevent recurrence (Rolnik, 2017). The rate of preterm preeclampsia recurrence was 1.6 percent in the aspirin group compared with 4.3 percent in the placebo arm. In a metaanalysis, Roberge and colleagues (2017) found that aspirin prophylaxis initiated before 16 weeks' gestation was associated with a significant risk reduction—approximately 60 percent—of preeclampsia and fetal-growth restriction. At the same time, however, Meher and associates (2017) performed an individual participant data metaanalysis and reported a much lower—approximately 10 percent—risk reduction. Effects were significant whether therapy was initiated before or after 16 weeks' gestation.

In a subsequent metaanalysis, Roberge and coworkers (2018) found that aspirin prophylaxis given starting ≤16 weeks' gestation reduced the risk of preterm, but not term, preeclampsia. Turner and colleagues (2020) reported that aspirin improved some perinatal outcomes independent of effects on preeclampsia risk. But to the contrary, the review by Chaemsaithong and coworkers (2020) found no benefits even when low-dose aspirin was given before 11 weeks' gestation.

Based on these data, the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force (2021) recommends low-dose aspirin prophylaxis for women at high risk for preeclampsia. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018, 2020) now recommends low-dose aspirin be given between 12 and 28 weeks' gestation to help prevent preeclampsia in high-risk women. Candidates include those with ≥1 of the following: prior preeclampsia, chronic hypertension, overt diabetes, renal disease, autoimmune disorders, and multifetal gestation. Supplementation may be *considered* for those with more than one of these qualities: nulliparous, aged older than 35 years, obese, family history of preeclampsia, vulnerable sociodemographics, and prior low-birthweight or growth-restricted neonate. These results have also raised the question as to whether all pregnant women should be given aspirin (Ayala, 2019).

Low-dose aspirin coupled with heparin mitigates thrombotic sequelae in women with lupus anticoagulant (Chap. 62, p. 1116). Because of a similarly high prevalence of placental thrombotic lesions found with severe preeclampsia, trials have assessed the possible merits of such treatments for women with prior preeclampsia. In two randomized trials, women with a history of early-onset preeclampsia were given aspirin alone or a regimen of enoxaparin plus aspirin (Groom, 2017; Haddad, 2016). Outcomes were similar. Low-molecular-weight heparin, with or without aspirin, may decrease the risk for preeclampsia in high-risk women (de Vries, 2012; Wang, 2020).

REFERENCES

Abdul-Karim R, Assali NS: Pressor response to angiotonin in pregnant and nonpregnant women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 82:246, 1961

Abenhaim HA, Bujold E, Benjamin A, et al: Evaluating the role of bedrest on the prevention of hypertensive disease of pregnancy and growth restriction. Hypertens Pregnancy 27(2):197, 2008

Adam I, Mutabingwa TK, Malik EM: Red cell distribution width and preeclampsia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Clin Hypertens 25:15, 2019

Alexander JM, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ, et al: Magnesium sulfate for the prevention of eclampsia in women with mild hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:S89, 2003

Alexander JM, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ, et al: Selective magnesium sulfate prophylaxis for the prevention of eclampsia in women with gestational hypertension. Obstet Gynecol 108: 826, 2006

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Hypertension in pregnancy. Report of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' Task Force on Hypertension in Pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 122:1122, 2013

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Low-dose aspirin use during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 743, June, 2018

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Chronic hypertension in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 203, January 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Obstetric analgesia and anesthesia. Practice Bulletin No. 209, February 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Gestational hypertension and preeclampsia. Practice Bulletin No. 222, June 2020

Ayala NK, Rouse DJ: A nudge toward universal aspirin for preeclampsia prevention. Obstet Gynecol 133(4):725, 2019

Bahado-Singh RO, Akolekar R, Mandal R, et al: First-trimester metabolomic detection of late-onset preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(1):58e1, 2013

Baltajian K, Bajracharya S, Salahuddin S, et al: Sequential plasma angiogenic factors levels in women with suspected preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(1):89.e1, 2016

Barakat R, Pelaez M, Cordero Y, et al: Exercise during pregnancy protects against hypertension and macrosomia: randomized clinical trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214:649.e1, 2016

Bartsch E, Medcalf KE, Park AL, et al: Clinical risk factors for preeclampsia determined in early pregnancy: systematic review and meta-analysis of large cohort studies. BMJ 353:il753, 2016

Bdolah Y, Palomaki GE, Yaron Y, et al: Circulating angiogenic proteins in trisomy 13. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194(1):239, 2006

Bellos I, Fitrou G, Daskalakis G, et al: Serum cystatin-c as predictive factor of preeclampsia: a metaanalysis of 27 observational studies. Pregnancy Hypertens 16:97, 2019

Bergman L, Acurio J, Leon J, et al: Preeclampsia and increased permeability over the blood-brain barrier: a role of vascular endothelial growth receptor 2. Am J Hypertens 34(1):73, 2021a

Bergman L, Cluver C, Carlberg N, et al: Cerebral perfusion pressure and autoregulation in eclampsia—a case control study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 225(2):185.e1, 2021b

Bergman L, Thorgeirsdottir L, Elden H, et al: Cognitive impairment in preeclampsia complicated by eclampsia and pulmonary edema after delivery. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 100(7):1280, 2021c

Black C, Rolnik DL, Al-Amin A, et al: Prediction of preterm preeclampsia at midpregnancy using a multivariable screening algorithm. Aust N S J Obstet Gynaecol 60(5):675, 2020

Boutin A, Gasse C, Guerby P, et al: First-trimester preterm preeclampsia screening in nulliparous women: the great obstetrical syndrome (GOS) study. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 43(1):43, 2021

Brewer J, Owens MY, Wallace K, et al: Posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome in 46 of 47 patients with eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(6):468e1, 2013

Brosens I, Puttemans P, Benagiano G: Placental bed research: 1. The placental bed. From spiral arteries remodeling to the great obstetrical syndromes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(5):437, 2019

Brown CE, Purdy P, Cunningham FG: Head computed tomographic scans in women with eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 159(4):915, 1988

Brownfoot FC, Hastie R, Hannan NJ, et al: Metformin as a prevention and treatment for preeclampsia: effects on soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase 1 and soluble endoglin secretion and endothelial dysfunction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(3):356.el, 2016

Brunelli E, Seidenari A, Germano C, et al: External validation of a simple risk score based on the ASPRE trial algorithm for preterm preeclampsia considering maternal characteristics in nulliparous pregnant women: a multicentric retrospective cohort study. BJOG 127(10):1210, 2020

Burton GJ, Redman CW, Roberts JM, et al: Preeclampsia: pathophysiology and clinical implications. BMJ 366:12381, 2019
Burwick RM, Rincon M, Beeraka SS, et al: Evaluation of hemolysis as a severe feature of preeclampsia. Hypertension 72(2):460, 2018
Bush KD, O'Brien JM, Barton JR: The utility of umbilical artery Doppler investigation in women with HELLP (hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelet count) syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 184:1087, 2001
Businge C, Usenbo A, Longo-Mbenza B, et al: Insufficient iodine nutrition status and the risk of preeclampsia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ Open 11(2):e043505, 2021
Buttrup LS, Wallukat G, Schimke I, et al: Functional autoantibodies against endothelin-l receptor type A and angiotensin II receptor type 1 in patients with preeclampsia. Pregnancy Hypertens Oct 14:189, 2018
Buurma AJ, Turner RJ, Driessen JH, et al: Genetic variants in preeclampsia: a meta-analysis. Hum Reprod Update 19(3):289, 2013
Byrne JJ, Seasely A, Nelson DB, et al: Comparing acute fatty liver of pregnancy from hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets syndrome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 19:1, 2020
Capriglione S, Plotti F, Terranova C, et al: Preeclampsia and the challenge of early prediction: reality or utopia? State of art and critical review of literature. J Matern Fetal Neonatal 33(4):677, 2020
Caritis S, Sibai B, Hauth J, et al: Low-dose aspirin to prevent preeclampsia in women at high risk. National Institute of Child Health and Human Development Network of Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units. N Engl J Med 338(11):70, 1998
Cavero-Redondo I, Martinez-Vizcaino V, Soriano-Cano A, et al: Glycated haemoglobin A1c as a predictor of preeclampsia in type 1 diabetic pregnant women: a systematic review and metaanalysis. Pregnancy Hypertens 14:49, 2018
Cerdeira AS, O'Sullivan J, Ohuma EO, et al: Randomized interventional study on prediction of preeclampsia/eclampsia in women with suspected preeclampsia. Hypertension 74(4):983, 2019
Chaemsaithong P, Cuenca-Gomez D, Plana MN, et al: Does low-dose aspirin initiated before 11 weeks' gestation reduce the rate of preeclampsia? Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(5):437, 2020
Chandrasekaran D, Simon R: Hepatic complications in preeclampsia. Clin Obstet Gynecol 63(1):165, 2020
Chase VL, McBride CA, Badger GJ, et al: Association of pre- pregnancy and longitudinal change in angiotensin-II with preterm preeclampsia. Abstract No. 934, Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:S530, 2017
Chavarria ME, Lara-González L, González-Gleason A, et al: Prostacyclin/thromboxane early changes in pregnancies that are complicated by preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:986, 2003
Chescheir NC: Serum uric acid measurement in women with hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 134(3): 636, 2019
Chesley LC: Diagnosis of preeclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 65:423, 1985
Chesley LC (ed): Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy. Appleton Century—Crofts, New York, 1978
Chesley LC, Williams LO: Renal glomerular and tubular function in relation to the hyperuricemia of preeclampsia and eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 50:367, 1945
Christiansen M, Hedley PL, Placing S, et al: Maternal serum resistin is reduced in first trimester preeclampsia pregnancies and is a marker of clinical severity. Hypertens Pregnancy 34(4):422, 2015
Churchill D, Beever GD, Meher S, et al: Diuretics for preventing preeclampsia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD004451, 2007
Cnossen JS, de Ruyter-Hanhijarvi H, van der Post JA, et al: Accuracy of serum uric acid determination in predicting pre-eclampsia: a systematic review. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 85(5):519, 2006
Conde-Agudelo A, Romero R, Roberts JM: Tests to predict preeclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015
Conrad KP, Stillman I, Lindheimer MD: The kidney in normal pregnancy and preeclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015
Copel JA, Platt LD, Hobbins JC, et al: Gottesfe1d-Hohler memorial foundation risk assessment for early onset preeclampsia in the United States. Obstet Gynecol 135(1):36, 2020
Cornelis T, Odutayo A, Keunen J, et al: The kidney in normal pregnancy and preeclampsia. Semin Nephrol 31(1):4, 2011
Costantine MM, Cleary K, Hebert MF, et al: Safety and pharmacokinetics of pravastatin used for the prevention of preeclampsia in high-risk pregnant women: a pilot randomized controlled trial Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(6):720.e1, 2016
Cunningham FG, Fernandez CO, Hernandez C: Blindness associated with preeclampsia and eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 172:1291, 1995
Cunningham FG, Lowe T, Guss S, et al: Erythrocyte morphology in women with severe preeclampsia and eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 153:358, 1985
Cunningham FG, Nelson DB: Disseminated intravascular coagulation syndromes in obstetrics. Obstet Gynecol 126(5):999, 2015
Cunningham FG, Twickler D: Cerebral edema complicating eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:94, 2000
Davidge S, de Groot C, Taylor RN: Endothelial cell dysfunction and oxidative stress. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015
De Kat AC, Hirst J, Woodward M, et al: Prediction models for preeclampsia: a systematic review. Pregnancy Hypertens 16:48, 2019
Demers S, Boutin A, Gassee C, et al: First-trimester uterine artery Doppler for the prediction of preeclampsia in nulliparous women: the great obstetrical syndrome study. Am J Perinatal 36(9):930, 2019
De Snoo K: The prevention of eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 34:911, 1937
de Vries JI, van Pampus MG, Hague WM: Low-molecular-weight heparin added to aspirin in the prevention of recurrent early- onset pre-eclampsia in women with inheritable thrombophilia: the FRUIT-RCT. J Thromb Haemost 10(1):64, 2012
De Wolf F, De Wolf-Peeters C, Brosens I, et al: The human placental bed: electron microscopic study of trophoblastic invasion of spiral arteries. Am J Obstet Gynecol 137:58, 1980
Drakeley AJ, Le Roux PA, Anthony J, et al: Acute renal failure complicating severe preeclampsia requiring admission to an obstetric intensive care unit. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:253, 2002
Drassinower D, Friedman AM, Levin H, et al: Does magnesium exposure affect neonatal resuscitation? Am J Obstet Gynecol 213:424.e1, 2015
Duckworth S, Griffin M, Seed PT, et al: Diagnostic biomarkers in women with suspected preeclampsia in a prospective multicenter study. Obstet Gynecol 128(2):245, 2016
Duhig KE, Myers J, Seed PT, et al: Placental growth factor testing to assess women with suspected preeclampsia: a multi centre, pragmatic, stepped-wedge cluster-randomised controlled trial. Lancet 393(10183):1807, 2019
Dürr JA, Lindheimer MD: Control of volume and body tonicity. In Lindheimer MD, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 2nd ed. Stamford, Appleton & Lange, 1999
Easterling TR, Benedetti TJ, Schmucker BC, et al: Maternal hemodynamics in normal and preeclamptic pregnancies: a longitudinal study. Obstet Gynecol 76:1061, 1990
Edlow JA, Caplan LR, O'Brien K, et al: Diagnosis of acute neurological emergencies in pregnant and postpartum women. Lancet Neurol 12(2):175, 2013
Erlebacher A: Immunology of the maternal-fetal interface. Ann Rev Immunol 31:387, 2013
Escobar Vidarte MF, Montes D, Perez A, et al: Hepatic rupture associated with preeclampsia, report of three cases and literature review. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(16):2767, 2019
Evans CS, Gooch L, Flotta D, et al: Cardiovascular system during the postpartum state in women with a history of preeclampsia. Hypertension 58:57, 2011
Everett TR, Mahendru AA, McEniery CM, et al: Raised uterine artery impedance is associated with increased maternal arterial stiffness in the late second trimester. Placenta 33(7):572, 2012
Facco FL, Parker CB, Reddy UM, et al: Association between sleep- disordered breathing and hypertensive disorders of pregnancy and gestational diabetes mellitus. Obstet Gynecol 129(1):31, 2017
Ferrazzi E, Stampalija T, Monasta L, et al: Maternal hemodynamics: a method to classify hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(1):124.e1, 2018
Fishel Bartal M, Lindheimer MD, Sibai BM: Proteinuria during pregnancy: definition, pathophysiology, methodology, and clinical significance. Am J Obstet Gynecol September 1, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Fisher S, Roberts JM: The placenta in normal pregnancy and preeclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015
Flowers CE, Grizzle JE, Easterling WE, et al: Chlorothiazide as a prophylaxis against toxemia of pregnancy. A double-blind study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 84:919, 1962
Fugate JE, Rabinstein AA: Posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome: clinical and radiological manifestations, pathophysiology, and outstanding questions. Lancet Neurol 14(9):914, 2015
Gant NF, Chand S, Worley RJ, et al: A clinical test useful for predicting the development of acute hypertension in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 120:1, 1974
Gervasi MT, Chaiworapongsa T, Pacora P, et al: Phenotypic and metabolic characteristics of monocytes and granulocytes in preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185:792, 2001

Ghidini A, Locatelli A: Monitoring of fetal well-being: role of uterine artery Doppler. Semin Perinatol 32:258, 2008
Gillis EE, Mooney JN, Garrett MR, et al: Sildenafil treatment ameliorates the maternal syndrome of preeclampsia and rescues fetal growth in the Dahl salt-sensitive rat. Hypertension 67:647, 2016
Gray KJ, Saxena R, Karumanchi A: Genetic predisposition to preeclampsia is conferred by fetal DNA variants near FLT1, a gene involved in the regulation of angiogenesis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(2):211, 2018
Green LJ, Mackillop LH, Salvi D, et al: Gestation-specific vital sign reference ranges in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 135(3):653, 2020
Groom K, McCowan L, MacKay L, et al: Enoxaparin for the prevention of preeclampsia and intrauterine growth restriction in women with a history: a randomized trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(3):296.e1, 2017
Groom KM, North RA, Stone PR, et al: Patterns of change in uterine artery Doppler studies between 20 and 24 weeks of gestation and pregnancy outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 113(2):332, 2009
Gu Y, Thompson D, Xu J, et al: Aberrant proatrial natriuretic peptide/corin/natriuretic peptide receptor signaling is present in maternal vascular endothelium in preeclampsia. Pregnancy Hypertens 11:1, 2018
Guirguis GF, Aziz MM, Boccia Liang C, et al: Is preeclampsia an independent predictor of diastolic dysfunction: a retrospective cohort study. Pregnancy Hypertens 5(4):359, 2015
Gupta R, Sheidow T: Bilateral serous retinal detachment in association with preeclampsia. Can J Ophthalmol 54(3):e98, 2019
Gyamfi-Bannerman C, Pandita A, Miller EC, et al: Preeclampsia outcomes at delivery and race. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(21):3619, 2020
Haddad B, Barton JR, Livingston JC, et al: Risk factors for adverse maternal outcomes among women with HELLP (hemolysis, e1evated liver enzymes, and low plate1et count) syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:444, 2000
Haddad B, Winer N, Chitrit Y, et al: Enoxaparin and aspirin compared with aspirin alone to prevent placenta—mediated pregnancy complications. Obstet Gynecol 128(5):1053, 2016
Haggerty CL, Seifert ME, Tang G: Second trimester antiangiogenic proteins and preeclampsia. Pregnancy Hypertens 2(2):158, 2012
Handor H, Daoudi R: Images in clinical medicine. Hypertensive retinopathy associated with preeclampsia. N Engl J Med 370(8):752, 2014
Harmon QE, Huang L, Umbach DM, et al: Risk of fetal death with preeclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 125(3):628, 2015
Hecht JL, Ordi J, Carrilho C, et al: The pathology of eclampsia: an autopsy series. Hypertens Pregnancy 36:259, 2017
Heilmann L, Rath W, Pollow K: Hemostatic abnormalities in patients with severe preeclampsia. Clin Appl Thromb Hemost 13: 285, 2007
Herraiz I, Escribano D, Gómez—Arriaga PI, et al: Predictive value of sequential mode1s of uterine artery Doppler in pregnancies at high risk for pre—eclampsia. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 40(1):68, 2012
Hertig AT: Vascular pathology in the hypertensive albuminuric toxemias of pregnancy. Clinics 4:602, 1945
Hibbard JU, Shroff SG, Cunningham FG: Cardiovascular alterations in normal and preeclamptic pregnancy. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015
Hofmeyer GJ, Betran AP, Singata-Mad1ik M, et al: Prepregnancy and early pregnancy calcium supplementation among women at high risk of preeclampsia: a multicentre, double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 393(10169):330, 2019
Hosapatna Basavarajappa D, Saha PK, Baga R, et al: Neuroradiological perspectives of severe preeclampsia and eclampsia spectrum corre1ation from posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome. Pregnancy Hypertens 7(20):119, 2020
Hupuczi P, Nagy B, Sziller I, et al: Characteristic laboratory changes in pregnancies complicated by HE1LP syndrome. Hypertens Pregnancy 26:389, 2007
Ikem E, Halldorsson TI, Birgisdöttir BE, et al: Dietary patterns and the risk of pregnancy-associated hypertension in the Danish National Birth Cohort: a prospective longitudinal study. BJOG 126(5):663, 2019
Jaatinen N, Ekholm E: Eclampsia in Finland: 2006 to 2010. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 95(7):787, 2016
Janzarik WG, Ehlers E, Ehmann R, et al: Dynamic cerebral autoregulation in pregnancy and the risk of preeclampsia. Hypertension 63:161, 2014
Janzarik WG, Gerber A, Markfeld-Erol F, et al: No long-term impairment of cerebral autoregulation after preeclampsia. Pregnancy Hypertens 13:171, 2018
Jaskolka D, Retnakaran R, Zinman B, et al: Fetal sex and maternal risk of preeclampsia/eclampsia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 124(4):553, 2017
Jayaballa M, Sood S, Alahakoon I, et al: Microalbuminuria is a predictor of adverse pregnancy outcomes including preeclampsia. Pregnancy Hypertens 5(4):303, 2015
Jim B, Karaumanchi SA: Preeclampsia: Pathogenesis, prevention, and long-term consequences. Semin Nephrol 37(4):386, 2017
Joint Commission: R3 Report, Provision of care, treatment, and services standards for maternal safety. August 21, 2019
Judy AE, McCain CL, Lawton ES, et al: Systolic hypertension, preeclampsia-re1ated mortality, and stroke in California. Obstet Gynecol 133(6):1151, 2019
Karumanchi GA, Granger JP: Preeclampsia and pregnancy-re1ated hypertensive disorders. Hypertension 67:238, 2016a
Karumanchi SA: Angiogenic factors in preeclampsia from diagnosis to therapy. Hypertension 67:1072, 2016b
Kasawara KT, do Nascimento SL, Costa ML, et al: Exercise and physical activity in the prevention of preeclampsia: systematic review. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91(10):1147, 2012
Katsuragi S, Tanaka H, Hasegawa J, et al: Analysis of preventability of hypertensive disorder in pregnancy-re1ated maternal death using the nationwide registration system of maternal deaths in Japan. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(20):3420, 2019
Keiser S, Owens M, Parrish M, et al: HELLP syndrome with and without eclampsia. Am J Perinatol 28(3):187, 2011
Kenny L, McCrae K, Cunningham FG: Plate1ets, coagulation, and the liver. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015
Khalil A, Akolekar R, Synge1aki A, et al: Maternal hemodynamics at 11–13 weeks' gestation and risk of pre-eclampsia. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 40(1):28, 2012
Khan KS, Wojdyla D, Say L, et al: WHO analysis of causes of maternal death: a systematic review. Lancet 367:1066, 2006
Khodzhaeva ZS, Kogan YA, Shmakov RG, et al: Clinical and pathogenetic features of early- and late-onset preeclampsia. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(18):2980, 2016
Kim YR, Jung I, Park G, et al: First-trimester screening for early preeclampsia risk using maternal characteristics and estimate placental volume. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(7):1155, 2021
Knuist M, Bonse1 GJ, Zondervan HA, et al: Low sodium diet and pregnancy-induced hypertension: a multicentre randomized controlled trial. BJOG 105:430, 1998
Labarrere CA, DiCarlo HL, Bammerlin E, et al: Failure of physiologic transformation of spiral arteries, endothe1ial and trophoblast ce1l activation, and acute atherosis in the basal plate of the placenta. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:287.e1, 2017
Lam DS, Chan W: Images in clinical medicine. Choroidal ischemia in preeclampsia. N Engl J Med 344(10):739, 2001
Lee YJ, Lee S, Jo HN, et al: Alterations in transcranial Doppler indices of pregnant women with complicated preeclampsia. Pregnancy Hypertens January; 15:189, 2019
Leeflang MM, Cnossen JS, van der Post JA, et al: Accuracy of fibronectin tests for the prediction of pre-eclampsia: a systematic review. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 133(1):12, 2007
Leseva MN, Binder AM, Ponsonby AL, et al: Differential gene expression and limited epigenetic dysregulation at the maternofetal interface in preeclampsia. Hum Mol Genet 29(2):335, 2020
Levine RJ, Hauth JC, Curet LB, et al: Trial of calcium to prevent preeclampsia. N Engl J Med 337:69, 1997
Lewis AR, Afroze SH, Wesley KB, et al: Pravastatin protects cytotrophoblasts from a hyperglycemia-induced preeclampsia phenotype. Abstract No. 879, Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:S502, 2017
Li H, Gudnason H, Olofsson P, et al: Increased uterine artery vascular impedance is re1ated to adverse outcome of pregnancy but is present in only one-third of late third-trimester preeclampsia women. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 25:459, 2005
Lindheimer MD, Taler SJ, Cunningham FG: Hypertension in pregnancy [Invited Am Soc Hypertension position paper]. J Amer Soc Hypertens 2:848, 2008
Loisel DA, Billstrand C, Murray K, et al: The maternal HLA-G 1597 DC null mutation is associated with increased risk of preeclampsia and reduced HLA-G expression during pregnancy in African-American women. Mol Hum Reprod 19(3):144, 2013
Loureiro R, Leite CC, Kahhale S, et al: Diffusion imaging may predict reversible brain lesions in eclampsia and severe preeclampsia: initial experience. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:1350, 2003
Lu Y, Lu C, Ji X, et al: Roles of microRNAs in preeclampsia. J Ce1l Physiol 234(2):1052, 2019
Lynch TA, Dexter SC: Alcoholic pancreatitis masquerading as preeclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 126(6):1276, 2015
Ma K, Jin H, Hu R, et al: A proteomic analysis of placental trophoblastic ce1ls in preeclampsia—eclampsia. Ce1l Biochem Biophys 69(2):247, 2014

Ma Y, Ye Y, Zhang J, et al: Immune imbalance is associated with the deve1opment of preeclampsia. Medicine (Baltimore) 98(14):e15080, 2019
Macdonald-Wallis C, Lawlor DA, Fraser A, et al: Blood pressure change in normotensive, gestational hypertensive, preeclamptic, and essential hypertensive pregnancies. Hypertension 59(6):1241, 2012
Mackay VA, Huda SS, Stewart FM, et al: Preeclampsia is associated with compromised maternal synthesis of long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids, leading to offspring deficiency. Hypertension 60(4):1078, 2012
Mackenzie RM, Sandrim VC, Carty DM, et al: Endothe1ial FOS expression and preeclampsia. BJOG 119(13):1564, 2012
Malmström, Håberg SE, Morken NH: Probability and outcomes of second pregnancy after HELLP syndrome in the first: a population-based registry study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(9):1206, 2020
Mandura RA: Bilateral serous retinal detachment and posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome precipitated by eclamptic attack. Cureus 13(2):e13444, 2021
March MI, Geahchan C, Wenger J, Raghuraman N, et al: Circulating angiogenic factors and the risk of adverse outcomes among Haitian women with preeclampsia. PLoS One 10(5):e0126815, 2015
Martin JN Jr, Brewer JM, Wallace K, et al: HELLP syndrome and composite major maternal morbidity: importance of Mississippi classification System. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(12):1201, 2013
Martin JN Jr, Owens MY, Keiser SD, et al: Standardized Mississippi protocol treatment of 190 patients with HELLP syndrome: slowing disease progression and preventing new major maternal morbidity. Hypertens Pregnancy 31(1):79, 2012
Masoudian P, Nasr A, de Nanassy J: Oocyte donation pregnancies and the risk of preeclampsia or gestation hypertension: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(3):328, 2016
Mateus J, Newman RB, Zhang C, et al: Fetal growth patterns in pregnancy-associated hypertensive disorders: NICHD fetal growth studies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(6):635.e1, 2019
Matijevic R, Johnston T: In vivo assessment of failed trophoblastic invasion of the spiral arteries in preeclampsia. BJOG 106:78, 1999
Mayama M, Uno K, Tano S, et al: Incidence of posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome in eclamptic and patients with preeclampsia with neurologic symptoms. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(2):239e1, 2016
Mayer-Pickel K, Stern C, Eberhard K, et al: Comparison of mean platelet volume (MPV) and sFlt-1/PlGF ratio as predictive markers for preeclampsia. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(9):1407, 2021
McMahon K, Karumanchi SA, Stillman IE, et al: Does soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase-1 regulate placental invasion? Insight from the invasive placenta. Am J Obstet Gynecol 10:66e1, 2014
Meher S, Duley L: Rest during pregnancy for preventing preeclampsia and its complications in women with normal blood pressure. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 19:CD005939, 2006
Meher S, Duley L, Hunter K, et al: Antiplatelet therapy before or after 16 weeks' gestation for preventing preeclampsia: an individual participant data meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(2):121, 2017
Melchiorre K, Sutherland G, Sharma R, et al: Mid-gestational maternal cardiovascular profile in preterm and term preeclampsia: a prospective study. BJOG 120(4):496, 2013
Mignini LE, Latthe PM, Villar J, et al: Mapping the theories of preeclampsia: the role of homocysteine. Obstet Gynecol 105:411, 2005
Morgan JL, Nelson DB, Roberts SW, et al: Association of baseline proteinuria and adverse outcomes in pregnant women with treated chronic hypertension. Obstet Gynecol 128(2):270, 2016
Morgan K, Della Torre M, Whelan AR, et al: A case of massive hepatic infarction in a patient with HELLP syndrome. AJP Rep 9(1):e84, 2019
Morris E, McBride CA, Badger GJ, et al: Prepregnancy fitness and risk of hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. Abstract No. 853, Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:S488, 2017
Morris RK, Riley RD, Doug M, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of spot urinary protein and albumin to creatinine ratios for detection of significant proteinuria or adverse pregnancy outcome in patients with suspected pre-eclampsia: a systematic review and metaanalysis. BMJ 345:e4342, 2012
Morton A, Morton A: High sensitivity cardiac troponin I levels in preeclampsia. Pregnancy Hypertens 13:79, 2018
Mostello D, Catlin TK, Roman L, et al: Preeclampsia in the parous woman: who is at risk? Am J Obstet Gynecol 187:425, 2002
Myatt L, Brewer AS, Langdon G, et al: Attenuation of the vasoconstrictor effects of thromboxane and endothelin by nitric oxide in the human fetal–placental circulation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 166:224, 1992
Myatt L, Clifton R, Roberts J, et al: Can changes in angiogenic biomarkers between the first and second trimesters of pregnancy predict development of preeclampsia in a low-risk nulliparous patient population? BJOG 120(10):1183, 2013
Myatt L, Clifton RG, Roberts JM, et al: First-trimester prediction of preeclampsia in nulliparous women at low risk. Obstet Gynecol 119(6):2012a
Myatt L, Clifton RG, Roberts JM, et al: The utility of uterine artery Doppler velocimetry in prediction of preeclampsia in a low-risk population. Obstet Gynecol 120(4):815, 2012b
Myers JE, Hart S, Armstrong S, et al: Evidence for multiple circulating factor in preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196(3):266.e1, 2007
Napolitano R, Thilaganathan B: Mean, lowest, and highest pulsatility index of the uterine artery and adverse pregnancy outcome in twin pregnancies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(6):e8, 2012
Nelson DB, Byrne JJ, Cunningham FG: Acute fatty liver of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 137(3):535, 2021
Nelson DB, Kjan A, Bailey A, et al: Liver injury in hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets syndrome measured by diffusion-weighted magnetic resonance imaging. Am J Perinatol 35:741, 2018
Nelson DB, Yost NP, Cunningham FG: Acute fatty liver of pregnancy: clinical outcomes and expected duration of recovery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(5):456e1, 2013
Nelson DB, Ziadie MS, McIntire DD, et al: Placental pathology suggesting that preeclampsia is more than one disease. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210:66e1, 2014
Nilsson E, Ros HS, Cnattingius S, et al: The importance of genetic and environmental effects for pre—eclampsia and gestational hypertension: a family study. BJOG 111:200, 2004
Novotny S, Lee-Plenty N, Wallace K, et al: Acute kidney injury associated with preeclampsia or hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets syndrome. Pregnancy Hypertens 19:94, 2020
O'Connor HD, Hehir MP, Kent EM, et al: Eclampsia: trends in incidence and outcomes over 30 years. Am J Perinatol 30(8):661, 2013
Ong SS, Moore RJ, Warren AY, et al: Myometrial and placental artery reactivity alone cannot explain reduced placental perfusion in preeclampsia and intrauterine growth restriction. BJOG 110(10):909, 2003
Orabona R, Vizzardi E, Sciatti E, et al: Insights into cardiac alterations after preeclampsia: an echocardiographic study. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 49(1):124, 2017
Palacios C, Kostiuk LK, Pefia-Rosas J P: Vitamin D supplementation for women during pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD008873, 2019
Palatnik A, Grobman WA, Miller ES: Is a history of preeclampsia associated with an increased risk of a small for gestational age infant in a future pregnancy? Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(3):355e1, 2016
Papanna R, Mann LK, Kouides RW, et al: Protein/creatinine ratio in preeclampsia: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 112: 135, 2008
Peguero A, Fernandez-Blanco L, Mazarico E, et al: Added prognostic value of longitudinal changes of angiogenic factors in early-onset-severe preeclampsia: a prospective cohort study. BJOG 128(2):158, 2021
Perry H, Lehmann H, Mantovani E, et al: Are maternal hemodynamic indices markers of fetal growth restriction in pregnancies with small-for-gestational-age fetus? Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 55(2):210, 2020
Petersen EE, Davis NL, Goodman D, et al: Vital signs: pregnancy- related deaths, United States, 2011—2015, and strategies for prevention, 13 states, 2013—2017. MMWR 68(18):423, 2019
Phipps EA, Thadhani R, Benzing T, et al: Preeclampsia: pathogenesis, novel diagnostics and therapies. Nat Rev Nephrol 15(5):275, 2019
Pihl K, Sørensen S, Stener Jørgensen F: Prediction of preeclampsia in nulliparous women according to first trimester maternal factors and serum markers. Fetal Diagn Ther 47(4):277, 2020
Pisani-Conway C, Simhan H: Does abnormal hemostasis as reflected by a thromboelastogram (TEC) correlate with preeclampsia disease severity? Abstract No. 621, Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(1 suppl):S264, 2013
Poon LC, Shennan A, Hyett JA, et al: The International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) initiative on preeclampsia: a pragmatic guide for first-trimester screening and prevention. Int J Gynecol Obstet 145 (Suppl 1):1, 2019
Pritchard JA, Cunningham FG, Mason RA: Coagulation changes in eclampsia: their frequency and pathogenesis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 124:855, 1976
Pritchard JA, Cunningham FG, Pritchard SA, et al: How often does maternal preeclampsia-eclampsia incite thrombocytopenia in the fetus? Obstet Gynecol 69:292, 1987
Pritchard JA, Cunningham FG, Pritchard SA: The Parkland Memorial Hospital protocol for treatment of eclampsia: evaluation of 245 cases. Am J Obstet Gynecol 148(7):951, 1984
Pritchard JA, Weisman R Jr, Ratnoff OD, et al: Intravascular hemolysis, thrombocytopenia and other hematologic abnormalities associated with severe toxemia of pregnancy. N Engl J Med 250:87, 1954
Raab W, Schroeder G, Wagner R, et al: Vascular reactivity and electrolytes in normal and toxemic pregnancy. J Clin Endocrinol 16:1196, 1956
Racine JL, Adams JH, Antony KM, et al: Metformin exposure and risk of hypertensive disorders of pregnancy in patients with type 2 diabetes. Am J Perinatol May 3, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Ravichangran J, Woon SY, Quek YS, et al: High-sensitivity cardiac troponin I levels in normal and hypertensive pregnancy. Am J Med 132(3):362, 2019
Reddy M, Rolnik DL, Harris K, et al: Challenging the definition of hypertension in pregnancy: Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:606.e1, 2020
Redman CW, Sargent IL, Taylor RN: Immunology of abnormal pregnancy and preeclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015a
Reimer T, Rohrmann H, Stubert J, et al: Angiogenic factors and acute-phase proteins in serum samples of preeclampsia and HELLP syndrome patients: a matched-pair analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(3):263, 2013
Richards A, Graham DI, Bullock MR: Clinicopathological study of neurological complications due to hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 51:416, 1988
Roberge A, Nicolaides K, Demers S, et al: The role of aspirin dose on the prevention of preeclampsia and fetal growth restriction: systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(2):110, 2017
Roberge S, Bujold E, Nicolaides KH: Aspirin for the prevention of preterm and term preeclampsia: systematic review and metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(3):287, 2018
Roberts JM, Myatt L, Spong CY, et al: Vitamins C and E to prevent complications of pregnancy-associated hypertension. N Engl J Med 362(14):1282, 2010
Rodger MA, Gris JC, de Vries JI, et al: Low-molecular-weight- heparin and recurrent placenta-mediated pregnancy complications: a meta-analysis of individual patient data from randomised controlled trials. Lancet 388(10060): 2629, 2016
Rodriguez AN, Nelson DB, Spong CY, et al: Acute kidney injury in pregnancies complicated by preeclampsia with severe features. Abstract No. 1012. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220:S627, 2021
Rolnik DL, Wright D, Poon LC, et al: Aspirin versus placebo in pregnancies at high risk for preterm preeclampsia. N Engl J Med 377:613, 2017
Roos NM, Wiegman MJ, Jansonius NM, et al: Visual disturbance in (pre) eclampsia. Obstet Gynecol Surv 67(4):242, 2012
Sagsoz N, Kucukozkan T: The effect of treatment on endothelin-1 concentration and mean arterial pressure in preeclampsia and eclampsia. Hypertens Pregnancy 22:185, 2003
Sakowicz A, Hejduk P, Pietrucha T, et al: Finding NEMO in preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214:538e1, 2017
Sanchez-Ramos L, Roeckner JT, Kaunitz AM: Which agent most effectively prevents preeclampsia? A systematic review with multi-treatment comparison (network meta-analysis) of large multicenter randomized controlled trials. Abstract No. 883, Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:S504, 2017
Sang C, Wang S, Zhang Z, et al: Characteristics and outcome of severe preeclampsia/eclampsia concurrent with or complicated by acute pancreatitis: a report of five cases and literature review. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(4):633, 2019
Sansone M, Sarno L, Saccone G, et al: Risk of preeclampsia in human immunodeficiency virus-infected pregnant women. Obstet Gynecol 127(6):1027, 2016
Schaap TP, van den Akker T, Zwart JJ, et al: A national surveillance approach to monitor incidence of eclampsia: the Netherlands Obstetric Surveillance System. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 98(3):342, 2019
Schwartz RB, Feske SK, Polak JF, et al: Preeclampsia-eclampsia: clinical and neuroradiographic correlates and insights into the pathogenesis of hypertensive encephalopathy. Radiology 217:371, 2000
Sep S, Verbeek J, Spaanderman M, et al: Clinical differences between preeclampsia and the HELLP syndrome suggest different pathogeneses. Reprod Sci 16:176A, 2009
Serra B, Mendoza M, Scazzocchio E, et al: A new model for screening for early-onset preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:608.e1, 2020
Shahabi A, Wilson ML, Lewinger JP, et al: Genetic admixture and risk of hypertensive disorders of pregnancy among Latinas in Los Angeles County. Epidemiology 24(2):285, 2013
Shahul S, Medvedofsky D, Wenger JB, et al: Antiangiogenic factors and myocardial dysfunction. Hypertension 67:1273, 2016
Sheehan HL, Lynch JB (eds): Cerebral lesions. In: Pathology of Toxaemia of Pregnancy. Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1973
Sheen JJ, Huang Y, Andrikopoulou M, et al: Maternal age and preeclampsia outcomes during delivery hospitalizations. Am J Perinatol 37(1):44, 2020
Sibai BM: Diagnosis, controversies, and management of the syndrome of hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelet count. Obstet Gynecol 103:981, 2004
Sibai BM: Diagnosis, prevention, and management of eclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 105:402, 2005
Sibai BM, Stella CL: Diagnosis and management of atypical preeclampsia-eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(5):481e.1, 2009
Silver RM, Myatt L, Hauth JC, et al: Cell-free total and fetal DNA in first trimester maternal serum and subsequent development of preeclampsia. Am J Perinatol 34(2):191, 2017
Singh S, Mohakud S, Nail S, et al: Predictors of posterior reversible encephalopathy syndrome in women with hypertension in pregnancy: a prospective observational study. Pregnancy Hypertens 23:191, 2021
Snell KI, Allotey J, Smuk M, et al: External validation of prognostic models predicting preeclampsia: individual participant data meta-analysis. BMC Med 18(1):302, 2020
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Lauder J, Sciscione A, et al: The role of activity restriction in obstetric management. Consult Series #50, August 2020
Soma-Pillay P, Pillay R, Wong TT, et al: The effect of preeclampsia on retinal microvascular caliber at delivery and postpartum. Obstetric Medicine 11(3):116, 2018
Sovio U, Smith G: Evaluation of a simple risk score to predict preterm preeclampsia using maternal characteristics: a prospective cohort study. BJOG 126(8):963, 2019
Spaan JJ, Ekhart T, Spaanderman ME, et al: Renal function after preeclampsia: a longitudinal pilot study. Nephron Clin Pract 120(3):c156, 2012
Spargo B, McCartney CP, Winemiller R: Glomerular capillary endotheliosis in toxemia of pregnancy. Arch Pathol 68:593, 1959
Spitz B, Magness RR, Cox SM: Low-dose aspirin. I. Effect on angiotensin II pressor responses and blood prostaglandin concentrations in pregnant women sensitive to angiotensin II. Am J Obstet Gynecol 159(5):1035, 1988
Staff AC, Braekke K, Johnsen GM, et al: Circulating concentration of soluble endoglin (CD105) in fetal and maternal serum and in amniotic fluid in preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197(2):176.e1, 2007
Staff AC, Sibai BM, Cunningham FG: Prevention of preeclampsia and eclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015
Stepan H, Hund M, Andraczek T: Combining biomarkers to predict pregnancy complications and redefine preeclampsia: the angiogenic-placental syndrome. Hypertension 75(4):918, 2020
Stout MJ, Conner SN, Colditz GA, et al: The utility of 12-hour urine collection for the diagnosis of preeclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 126(4):731, 2015
Stout MJ, Scifres CM, Stamilio DM: Diagnostic utility of urine protein-to-creatinine ratio for identifying proteinuria in pregnancy. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(1):66, 2013
Suzuki Y, Yamamoto T, Mabuchi Y, et al: Ultrastructural changes in omental resistance artery in women with preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:216, 2003
Talledo OE, Chesley LC, Zuspan FP: Renin-angiotensin system in normal and toxemic pregnancies. III. Differential sensitivity to angiotensin II and norepinephrine in toxemia of pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 100:218, 1968
Taufield PA, Ales KL, Resnick LM, et al: Hypocalciuria in preeclampsia. N Engl J Med 316:715, 1987
Thadhani R, Hagmann H, Schaarschmidt W, et al: Removal of soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase-1 by dextran sulfate apheresis in preeclampsia. J Am Soc Nephrol 27(3):903, 2016
Townsend R, Khalil A, Premakurnar Y, et al: Prediction of preeclampsia: review of reviews. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 54(1):16, 2019
Trad A, Czeresnia R, Elrefaei A, et al: What do we know about the diagnosis and management of mirror syndrome? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med March 15, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]
Triche EW, Uzun A, DeWan AT, et al: Bioinformatic approach to the genetics of preeclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 123(6):1155, 2014
Trommer BL, Homer D, Mikhael MA: Cerebral vasospasm and eclampsia. Stroke 19:326, 1988
Trudinger BJ, Cook CM: Doppler umbilical and uterine flow waveforms in severe pregnancy hypertension. BJOG 97:142, 1990
Turner JM, Robertson NT, Hartel G, et al: Impact of low-dose aspirin on adverse perinatal outcome: meta-analysis and meta-regression. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 55(2):157, 2020
U.S. Preventive Task Force: Aspirin use to prevent morbidity and mortality from preeclampsia: preventive medication. Available at: www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/uspstf/draft-recommendation/aspirin-use-to-prevent-preeclampsia-and-related-morbidity-and-mortality-preventive-medication1#fullrecommendationstart. Accessed May 25, 2021
Vatten LJ, Asvold BO, Eskild A: Angiogenic factors in maternal circulation and preeclampsia with or without fetal growth restriction. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91(12):1388, 2012
Vaught AJ, Gavriilaki E, Hueppchen N, et al: Direct evidence of complement activation in HELLP syndrome: a link to atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome. Exp Hematol 44:390, 2016
Vaught AJ, Kovell LC, Szymanski LM, et al: Acute cardiac effects of severe preeclampsia. JACC 72(1):2, 2018

Vigil-De Gracia P, Ortega-Paz L: Preeclampsia/eclampsia and hepatic rupture. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 118(3):186, 2012

Villar J, Purwar M, Merialdi M, et al: World Health Organisation multicentre randomised trial of supplementation with vitamins C and E among pregnant women at high risk for pre—eclampsia in populations of low nutritional status from developing countries. BJOG 116(6):780, 2009

von Dadelszen P, Firoz T, Donnay F, et al: Preeclampsia in low and middle income countries—health services lessons learned from the PRE-EMPT (PRE-eclampsia monitoring, prevention, and treatment) Project. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 34(10):917, 2012

von Dadelszen P, Magee LA, Benton SJ, et al: Activated protein C as disease-modifying therapy in antenatal preeclampsia: an open-label, single arm safety and efficacy trial. Pregnancy Hypertens 13:121, 2018

Von Salmuth V, van der Heiden Y, Bekkers I, et al: The role of hepatic sinusoidal obstruction in the pathogenesis of the hepatic involvement in HELLP syndrome: exploring the literature. Pregnancy Hypertens 19:37, 2020

Walsh SW: Plasma from preeclamptic women stimulates transendothelial migration of neutrophils. Reprod Sci 16(3):320, 2009

Wang X, Gao H: Prevention of preeclampsia in high risk patients with low-molecular-weight heparin: a metaanalysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(13):2202, 2020

Wang Y, Gu Y, Granger DN, et al: Endothelial junctional protein redistribution and increased monolayer permeability in human umbilical vein endothelial cells isolated during preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:214, 2002

Ward K, Taylor RN: Genetic factors in the etiology of preeclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Wardhana MP, Dachlan EG, Dekker G: Pulmonary edema in preeclampsia: an Indonesian case-control study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(6):689, 2018

Weinstein L: Syndrome of hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes and low platelet count: a severe consequence of hypertension in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 142:159, 1982

Wen SW, White RR, Rybak N, et al: Effect of high dose folic acid supplementation in pregnancy on preeclampsia (FACT): double blind, phase III, randomised controlled, international, multicentre trial. BMJ 362:k3478, 2018

White WM, Garrett AT, Craici IM, et al: Persistent urinary podocyte loss following preeclampsia may reflect subclinical renal injury. PLoS One 9(3):e92693, 2014

Widmer M, Villar J, Benigni A, et al: Mapping the theories of preeclampsia and the role of angiogenic factors. Obstet Gynecol 109:169, 2007

Wiles K, Chappell LC, Lightstone L, et al: Updates in diagnosis and management of preeclampsia in women with CKD. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 15(9):1371, 2020

Willard N, Honce J, Kleinschmidt-DeMasters B: PRES: review of histological features. J Neuropathol Exp Neurol 77(2):100, 2018

Worley LC, Hnat MD, Cunningham FG: Advanced extrauterine pregnancy: diagnostic and therapeutic challenges. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198(3):297e1, 2008

Yang J, Pearl M, DeLorenze GN, et al: Racial-ethnic differences in midtrimester maternal serum levels of angiogenic and anti-angiogenic factors. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215:359e1, 2016

Yoshihara M, Mayama M, Ukai M, et al: Fulminant liver failure resulting from massive hepatic infarction associated with hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets syndrome. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 42(10):1375, 2016

Youssef L, Miranda J, Paules C, et al: Fetal cardiac remodeling and dysfunction is associated with both preeclampsia and fetal growth restriction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(1):79.e1, 2020

Yule CS, Ambia AM, Duryea EL, et al: The effect of normal saline on renal function and electrolytes in women with preeclampsia. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med November 18, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]

Zachary S, Rubeo ZS, Jortani SA: The association of N-terminal pro-brain natriuretic peptide with severe preeclampsia, HELLP syndrome, and eclampsia Abstract No. 990, Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:S557, 2017

Zeeman G, Alexander JM, Vollaard E, et al: "Delta eclampsia"—a hypertensive encephalopathy of pregnancy in "normotensive" women. Abstract No. 479, Am J Obstet Gynecol 197(6 Supp I): S140, 2007

Zeeman GG, Alexander JM, McIntire DD, et al: Homocysteine plasma concentration levels for the prediction of preeclampsia in women with chronic hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:574, 2003

Zeeman GG, Cunningham FG, Pritchard JA: The magnitude of hemoconcentration with eclampsia. Hypertens Pregnancy 28(2):127, 2009

Zeeman GG, Fleckenstein JL, Twickler DM, et al: Cerebral infarction in eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190:714, 2004a

Zeeman GG, Hatab M, Twickler DM: Increased cerebral blood flow in preeclampsia with magnetic resonance imaging. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191(4):1425, 2004b

Zeisler H, Llurba E, Chantraine F, et al: Predictive value of the sFlt-1: PlGF ration in women with suspected preeclampsia. N Engl J Med 374:13, 2016

Zhang H, Chen J, Sheibani L, et al: Pregnancy augments VEGF-stimulated in vitro angiogenesis and vasodilator (NO and H2S) production in human uterine artery endothelial cells. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 102(7):2382, 2017

Zhou SJ, Yelland L, McPhee AJ, et al: Fish-oil supplementation in pregnancy does not reduce the risk of gestational diabetes or preeclampsia. Am J Clin Nutr 95(6):1378, 2012

Zwart JJ, Richters A, Öry F, et al: Eclampsia in The Netherlands. Obstet Gynecol 112:820, 2008

CHAPTER 41

Clinical Management of the Preeclampsia Syndrome

Preeclampsia remains one of the leading causes of death and severe maternal morbidity. This chapter discusses many clinical aspects of the preeclampsia syndrome and its management after recognition. Also presented are the long-term consequences that may accrue in affected women. The pathophysiology of preeclampsia was detailed in Chapter 40.

DIAGNOSIS AND EVALUATION

Diagnosis

In routine prenatal care, gravidas are seen more often during the third trimester, and this aids early detection of preeclampsia. However, it cannot always be diagnosed definitively. Increases in systolic and diastolic blood pressure can be either normal physiological changes or signs of developing pathology.

Women without overt hypertension, but in whom the early development of preeclampsia is suspected, are seen more frequently. Heightened surveillance permits recognition of ominous changes in blood pressure, critical laboratory findings, and clinical signs and symptoms. Outpatient surveillance continues unless overt hypertension, proteinuria, headache, visual changes, or epigastric pain supervene. At Parkland Hospital, women with new-onset overt hypertension—either diastolic pressures ≥90 mm Hg or systolic pressures ≥140 mm Hg—are admitted to exclude preeclampsia or to define its severity.

Evaluation

With hospitalization, a systematic evaluation begins:

- Detailed examination, which is coupled with daily scrutiny for headache, visual changes, or epigastric pain
- Daily weight measurement to identify rapid weight gain
- Quantification of proteinuria or a urine protein: creatinine ratio
- Blood pressure readings with an appropriate-size cuff every 4 hours, unless previously elevated, which would mandate more frequent readings
- Measurements of serum creatinine and hepatic transaminase levels and a hemogram that includes a platelet count. The frequency of testing is determined by hypertension severity. Although some recommend assessment of serum uric acid and lactate dehydrogenase levels and coagulation, their value has been questioned (Chescheir, 2019; Conde-Agudelo, 2015)
- Evaluation of fetal size and well-being and amnionic fluid volume
- Reduced physical activity may have benefits, although evidence is not robust.

Still investigational as a clinical tool, measurements of *placental growth factor (PlGF)* and *soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase 1 (sF1t-1)* levels will likely be available to help predict preeclampsia (Barton, 2020; Chappell, 2013; Zeisler, 2016). Chapter 40 (p. 694) describes their role in preeclampsia genesis.

In sum, evaluation goals are early identification of preeclampsia and then management until timely delivery. Complete

abatement of all signs and symptoms is uncommon until after delivery. If severe preeclampsia is diagnosed using the criteria in Table 40-2 (p. 690), further management is subsequently described.

Consideration for Delivery

With gestational hypertension, its morbidity and management vary depending on hypertension severity, presence of preeclampsia, and gestational age of the fetus. The basic management objectives for any pregnancy complicated by preeclampsia are: (1) termination of pregnancy with the least possible trauma to mother and fetus, (2) birth of a healthy newborn that subsequently thrives, and (3) complete restoration of health to the mother. In many with preeclampsia, especially those at or near term, all three objectives are served equally well by induction of labor.

Termination of pregnancy is the only known cure for preeclampsia. Headache, visual changes, or epigastric pain are indicative that convulsions may be imminent, and oliguria is another ominous sign. Severe preeclampsia almost always demands anticonvulsant and antihypertensive therapy, followed by delivery. Treatment for eclampsia is identical. Prime objectives are to forestall convulsions, control blood pressure to prevent intracranial hemorrhage and serious damage to other organs, and deliver a healthy newborn. This is true even when the cervix is unfavorable. Labor induction is carried out, usually with preinduction cervical ripening (Chap. 26, p. 488).

Concerns stemming from an unfavorable cervix, a perceived sense of urgency because of preeclampsia severity, and a need to coordinate neonatal intensive care have led some to advocate for cesarean delivery. In an earlier study from Parkland Hospital, Alexander and colleagues (1999) reviewed 278 singleton liveborn neonates weighing 750 to 1500 g delivered of women with severe preeclampsia. In half of the women, labor was induced, and induction was successful in accomplishing vaginal delivery in a third. Similar data were reported from the Consortium on Safe Labor (Coviello, 2019). In this study, half of 914 women with severe preeclampsia underwent induction, and half of these were delivered vaginally. Others have reported similar observations (Alanis, 2008; Roland, 2017). For these reasons, we attempt labor induction and reserve cesarean delivery for other obstetrical indications.

With preeclampsia without severe features, optimal delivery timing has not been widely studied. A randomized trial of 756 women with mild preeclampsia supported delivery after 37 weeks' gestation (Koopmans, 2009). This practice is also supported by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a). At Parkland Hospital, we deliver women with preeclampsia without severe features at 38 weeks' gestation.

With a preterm fetus, the tendency is to delay delivery to help reduce the risk of neonatal death or serious morbidity from prematurity. Such a policy certainly is justified in milder cases. Assessments of fetal well-being and placental function are performed, especially when the fetus is immature. To assess these, most recommend frequent performance of nonstress testing or biophysical profiles, which are described in Chapter 20 (p. 392). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021a,b) recommends consideration for antenatal surveillance twice weekly for those with gestational hypertension and nonsevere features and daily testing for those with severe features.

With late-preterm fetuses, that is, those between 34 and 36 weeks' gestation, the decision to deliver is less clear (Barton, 2011; Langenveld, 2011). The Dutch HYPITAT-II study randomly assigned women with nonsevere hypertension between 34 and 37 weeks to immediate delivery or to expectant management (Broekhuijsen, 2015). Immediate delivery reduced the risks for adverse maternal outcomes—1.1 versus 3.1 percent. However, it increased the risk for neonatal respiratory distress syndrome— 5.7 versus 1.7 percent.

In a more recent study, 901 women at 34 to <37 weeks' gestation with nonsevere preeclampsia were randomly assigned to early delivery or expectant management (Chappell, 2019). A third of each group self-stratified into intervals of 34, 35, and 36 weeks' gestation. For women in the immediate delivery group, rates of the primary maternal outcomes, which were features of severe preeclampsia, were significantly lower than in the expectant group. Conversely, rates of adverse perinatal outcomes, which were perinatal deaths or neonatal unit admission, were significantly greater in the immediate delivery group. Similar findings were reported by other (Bernardes, 2019; Chatzakis, 2021). Last, the PEACOCK study found that angiogenic biomarkers did not help determine the need for delivery in late-preterm preeclampsia (Duhig, 2021). At Parkland Hospital, we favor an active management approach given the maternal risks of expectant management. However, if preeclampsia is nonsevere, we routinely induce after 38 completed weeks.

Inpatient or Outpatient Care

For women with mild to moderate stable hypertension, whether or not preeclampsia has been confirmed, monitoring is continued. During surveillance, reduced physical activity throughout much of the day, at least intuitively, seems reasonable. Complete bed rest was not recommended in the prior consensus work of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' Task Force on Hypertension in Pregnancy (2013). Also, the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020b) suggests that activity restriction not be prescribed for women with hypertensive disorders. Complete bed rest is pragmatically unachievable because of the severe restrictions it places on otherwise well women. It likely also predisposes to thromboembolism (Knight, 2007; McCarty-Singleton, 2014).

To reduce activity, several studies have addressed the benefits of inpatient care and outpatient management. The concept of prolonged hospitalization for women with hypertension arose during the 1970s. At Parkland Hospital, an inpatient antepartum unit was established in 1973 by Dr. Peggy Whalley to provide care for such women. Initial results from this unit were reported by Hauth (1976) and Gilstrap (1978) and their coworkers. Most hospitalized women have a beneficial response characterized by amelioration or improvement of hypertension. *These women are not "cured," and nearly 90 percent have recurrent hypertension before or during labor.* By 2020, more than 10,000 nulliparas with mild to moderate, early-onset hypertension during pregnancy had

TABLE 41-1. Randomized Clinical Trials Comparing Hospitalization Versus Routine Care for Women with Mild Gestational Hypertension or Preeclampsia

	Maternal Characteristics—Admission					Maternal Characteristics—Delivery				Perinatal Outcomes		
Study Groups	No.	$Para_0$ (%)	Chronic HTN (%)	EGA (wk)	Prot (%)	EGA (wk)	<37 wk (%)	<34 wk (%)	Mean Hosp (d)	Mean BW (g)	SGA (%)	PMR (%)
Crowther (1992)	218[a]											
Hospitalization	110	13	14	35.3	0	38.3	12	1.8	22.2	3080	14	0
Outpatient	108	13	17	34.6	0	38.2	22	3.7	6.5	3060	14	0
Turnbull (2004)	374[b]											
Hospitalization	125	63	0	35.9	22	39	—	—	8.5	3330	3.8	0
Day Unit	249	62	0	36.2	22	39.7	—	—	7.2	3300	2.3	0

[a]Excluded women with proteinuria at study entry.
[b]Included women with ≤1+ proteinuria.
BW = birthweight; EGA = estimated gestational age; Hosp = hospital; HTN = hypertension; $Para_0$= nulliparas; PMR = perinatal mortality rate; Prot = proteinuria; SGA = small for gestational age.

been managed successfully in this unit. This relatively simple unit requires modest nursing care, no drugs other than iron and folate supplements, and few essential laboratory tests. Provider costs—not charges—for this care are minimal compared with the cost of neonatal intensive care for a preterm neonate. Importantly, thromboembolic disease has been rare in these women.

Many clinicians believe that further hospitalization is not warranted if hypertension abates within a few days, and this has emboldened third-party payers to deny inpatient reimbursement. Consequently, many women with mild to moderate hypertension are managed at home. For women in vulnerable sociodemographic home situations, this strategy may not be feasible. In other groups, outpatient management may continue as long as preeclampsia syndrome does not worsen and fetal jeopardy is not suspected. Decreased activity is recommended, and women are encouraged to report symptoms. Home blood pressure and urine protein monitoring or frequent evaluations by a visiting nurse may be beneficial.

To assess this approach, 1182 nulliparas with mild gestational hypertension—20 percent had proteinuria—were managed with home care (Barton, 2002). Their mean gestational ages were 32 to 33 weeks at enrollment and 36 to 37 weeks at delivery. Severe preeclampsia developed in approximately 20 percent, two women had eclampsia, and 3 percent developed hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, and low platelet count (HELLP) syndrome. Perinatal outcomes were generally good. In approximately 20 percent, fetal growth was restricted, and the perinatal mortality rate was 4.2 deaths in 1000 births.

Table 41-1 presents two studies that compare continued hospitalization and outpatient care. In the first trial, after hospital evaluation, 218 women with mild gestational nonproteinuric hypertension were randomly assigned to continued hospitalization versus home care (Crowther, 1992). The mean hospitalization duration was 22.2 days for women with inpatient management compared with only 6.5 days in the home care group. Severe hypertension and preterm delivery before 34 and before 37 weeks' gestation were significantly increased twofold in the outpatient group. Despite this, maternal and newborn outcomes were otherwise similar.

Another approach, popular in Europe, is day care. In the second trial (Table 41-1), 374 women with gestational hypertension were randomized to either day care or inpatient care (Turnbull, 2004). Almost 95 percent had mild to moderate hypertension and 86 women had ≥1+ proteinuria. There were no perinatal deaths, and none of the women developed eclampsia or HELLP syndrome. Costs for either scheme were not significantly different, and general satisfaction favored day care.

In sum, either inpatient or close outpatient management is appropriate for a woman with mild de novo hypertension, including those with nonsevere preeclampsia. Keys to success are close surveillance and patients with home support and access to care.

Antihypertensive Therapy for Mild to Moderate Hypertension

Antihypertensive drugs have been evaluated to prolong pregnancy or modify perinatal outcomes in pregnancies complicated by various hypertensive disorders. Treatment for women with *chronic hypertension* complicating pregnancy is discussed in Chapter 53 (p. 949). Drug treatment for early mild preeclampsia has been disappointing (Table 41-2). Sibai and associates (1987a) reported that women given labetalol had significantly lower mean blood pressures than those given a placebo. However, mean pregnancy prolongation, gestational age at delivery, and birthweights did not differ between groups. The cesarean delivery rate and the number of newborns admitted to special-care nurseries also were similar. *The frequency of growth-restricted neonates was doubled in women given labetalol compared with placebo—19 versus 9 percent.*

The three other studies listed in Table 41-2 compare labetalol or a calcium-channel blocker drugs against placebo. Except for fewer episodes of severe hypertension, none of these studies showed any benefits from antihypertensive treatment (Magee, 2015). One review of 49 randomized trials of antihypertensive therapy for mild to moderate gestational hypertension compared with either no treatment or placebo reached similar conclusions (Abalos, 2014).

TABLE 41-2. Randomized Placebo-Controlled Trials of Antihypertensive Therapy for Early Mild Gestational Hypertension

Study	Study Drug (No.)	Pregnancy Prolonged (d)	Severe HTN[a] (%)	Cesarean Delivery (%)	Placental Abruption (%)	Mean Birthweight (g)	Growth Restriction (%)	Neonatal Deaths (No.)
Sibai (1987a)[a] 200 inpatients	Labetalol (100)	21.3	5	36	2	2205	19[c]	1
	Placebo (100)	20.1	15[c]	32	0	2260	9	0
Sibai (1992)[b] 200 outpatients	Nifedipine (100)	22.3	9	43	3	2405	8	0
	Placebo (100)	22.5	18[c]	35	2	2510	4	0
Pickles (1992) 144 outpatients	Labetalol (70)	26.6	9	24	NS	NS	NS	NS
	Placebo (74)	23.1	10	26	NS	NS	NS	NS
Wide-Swensson (1995) 111 outpatients	Isradipine (54)	23.1	22	26	NS	NS	NS	0
	Placebo (57)	29.8	29	19	NS	NS	NS	0

[a]All women had preeclampsia.
[b]Includes postpartum hypertension.
[c]$p < 0.5$ when study drug compared with placebo.
HTN = hypertension; NS = not stated.

Expectant Management of Preterm Severe Preeclampsia

Up through the early 1990s, women with severe preeclampsia were usually immediately delivered. Subsequently, however, another approach for women with preterm severe preeclampsia was studied. The aim of "expectant" management was to improve neonatal outcome without compromising maternal safety. This approach always includes careful daily—and usually more frequent—inpatient monitoring of the mother and her fetus.

Theoretically, antihypertensive therapy has potential application when severe preeclampsia develops before intact neonatal survival is expected. Such management has been controversial and is potentially dangerous (Churchill, 2018). In one of the first studies, Sibai and the Memphis group (1985) attempted to prolong pregnancy because of fetal immaturity in 60 women with severe preeclampsia between 18 and 27 weeks. *The results were disastrous.* The perinatal mortality rate was 87 percent. Although no mothers died, 13 suffered placental abruption, 10 had eclampsia, three developed renal failure, two had hypertensive encephalopathy, one had an intracerebral hemorrhage, and another had a ruptured hepatic hematoma.

Because of their early study, the Memphis group redefined criteria and performed a randomized trial of aggressive versus expectant management for 95 women who had severe preeclampsia but with more advanced gestations of 28 to 32 weeks (Sibai, 1994). *Women with HELLP syndrome were excluded from this trial.* Aggressive management included glucocorticoid administration for fetal lung maturation followed by delivery in 48 hours. Expectantly managed women were observed at bed rest and given either labetalol or nifedipine orally for severe hypertension. In this study, pregnancy was prolonged for a mean of 15.4 days in the expectant management group. An overall improvement in neonatal outcomes also was reported.

In women expectantly managed at 23 to 34 weeks' gestation, serious complications have included placental abruption, HELLP syndrome, pulmonary edema, renal failure, and eclampsia (Table 41-3). Moreover, perinatal mortality rates averaged 90 per 1000 births. Fetal-growth restriction was common, and in studies from The Netherlands, it was an astounding 94 percent (Ganzevoort, 2005a,b). Perinatal mortality rates were disproportionately high in these growth-restricted neonates (Haddad, 2007; Shear, 2005).

Following these experiences, expectant management became more commonly practiced, with the caveat that women with HELLP syndrome or growth-restricted fetuses were usually excluded. More recently, a prospective comparative study reported that expectant management of women with "stable" HELLP syndrome at <34 weeks may benefit mother and fetus (Cavaignac-Vitalis, 2019). The MEXPRE Latin Study was a multicenter trial that randomly assigned 267 women with severe preeclampsia at 28 to 32 weeks' gestation to prompt delivery or to expectant management (Vigil-De Gracia, 2013). The perinatal mortality rate approximated 90 per 1000 in each group, and the composite neonatal morbidity outcome was not improved with expectant management. Conversely, fetal-growth restriction—22 versus 9 percent—and placental abruption—7.6 versus 1.5 percent—were significantly higher in the group managed expectantly.

Churchill and colleagues (2018) performed a Cochrane Database review of six randomized trials of interventionist versus

TABLE 41-3. Maternal and Perinatal Outcomes with Expectant Management of Severe Preeclampsia from 23 to 34 Weeks

			Maternal Outcomes (%)					Perinatal Outcomes (%)	
Study	No.	Days Gained	Placental Abruption	HELLP	Pulm. Edema	AKI	Eclampsia	FGR	PMR
Ganzevoort (2005a,b)	216	11	1.8	18	3.6	NS	1.8	94	18
Bombrys (2009)	66	5	11	8	9	3	0	27	1.5
Abdel-Hady (2010)	211	12	3.3	7.6	0.9	6.6	0.9	NS	48
Vigil-De Gracia (2013)	131	10.3	7.6	14	1.5	4.5	0.8	22	8.7
Mooney (2016)	108	5[b]	NS	11	NS	NS	2	~36	4.6
Hoshino (2019)	79	8.5	12	12	4	3	3	NS	0
Cavaignac-Vitalis (2019)[a]	87	6[b]	NS	100	0	NS	3.5	NS	9.3
Total	892								
Range		5-12	1.8–12	7.6–100	0.9–4.0	3–6.6	0.9–18	27–94	1.5–48

[a]All had HELLP syndrome at enrollment.
[b]Median.
AKI = acute kidney injury; EGA = estimated gestational age; FGR = fetal -growth restriction; HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count; NS = not stated; PMR = perinatal mortality rate; Pulm. = pulmonary.

expectant care for severe preeclampsia between 24 and 34 weeks. Their review had findings similar to those in Table 41-3 and suggested that expectant management was beneficial to perinatal outcome. However, data were insufficient to establish conclusions on maternal health.

Expectant Management of Midtrimester Preeclampsia

Several small studies have focused on expectant management of severe preeclampsia syndrome before 28 weeks' gestation. In one review of eight such studies, maternal complications were common among nearly 200 women with severe preeclampsia with an onset <26 completed weeks (Bombrys, 2009). Because no neonates survived when delivered before 23 weeks, most experts recommend pregnancy termination in these cases. For women with slightly more advanced pregnancies, however, the decision is less clear. For example, at 23 weeks' gestation, the perinatal survival rate was 18 percent, but long-term perinatal morbidity is yet unknown. For women with pregnancies at 24 to 26 weeks, perinatal survival approaches 60 percent, and it averages almost 90 percent for those at 26 weeks.

As shown in Table 41-4, maternal complications—especially HELLP syndrome—were commonplace and one mother died. Perinatal mortality exceeded 50 percent. At this time, no comparative studies attest to perinatal benefits of such expectant treatment versus early delivery in the face of serious maternal complications, which approach rates of 50 percent.

Corticosteroids for Lung Maturation

To enhance fetal lung maturation, glucocorticoids have been administered to women with severe hypertension who are remote from term. Treatment does not seem to worsen maternal hypertension, and a lower incidence of respiratory distress and

TABLE 41-4. Pregnancy Outcomes with Expectant Management of Women with Severe Midtrimester Preeclampsia[a]

			Maternal Outcomes (%)						
Study	No.	EGA	Prolonged Pregnancy[b]	HELLP	Pulm. Edema	Placental Abruption	Eclampsia	Death	Perinatal Mortality
Gaugler-Senden (2006)	26	<26 wk	24 d[b]	16	4	0	5	1	23/28
Budden (2006)	31	<25 wk	~12 d[b]	20	0	0	0	0	22/31
Bombrys (2008)	46	<27 wk	6 d[c]	11	2	6	1	NS	22/51
Abdel-Hady (2010)	61	24–28 wk	12 d[b]	6	0	4	0	0	29/61
Belghiti (2011)	51	<26 wk	7 d[c]	5	2	3	0	0	31/53

[a]Includes women with superimposed preeclampsia.
[b]Mean.
[c]Median.
EGA = estimated gestational age; NS = not stated; Pulm. = pulmonary edema.

improved fetal survival rates have been cited. That said, only one randomized trial has evaluated corticosteroids given to hypertensive women for fetal lung maturation. This trial included 218 women who had severe preeclampsia between 26 and 34 weeks' gestation and who were randomly assigned to betamethasone or placebo administration (Amorim, 1999). Rates of neonatal complications that included respiratory distress, intraventricular hemorrhage, and death were reduced significantly when betamethasone was given compared with placebo. *On the heavily weighted negative side, there were two maternal deaths and 18 stillbirths.* We add these findings to buttress our unenthusiastic acceptance of attempts to prolong gestation in many of these women (Alexander, 2015; Bloom, 2003).

Corticosteroids to Ameliorate HELLP Syndrome

Several observational studies have indicated that corticosteroid therapy would ameliorate facets of the HELLP syndrome (Añez-Aguayo, 2018; Martin, 2016). Subsequently, at least three randomized trials aimed to evaluate the benefits of glucocorticoids given to improve the laboratory abnormalities associated with HELLP syndrome. Fonseca and associates (2005) randomly assigned 132 women with HELLP syndrome to either dexamethasone or placebo administration. Outcomes assessed included hospitalization length, recovery time of abnormal laboratory test results, resolution of clinical parameters, and complications that included acute renal failure, pulmonary edema, eclampsia, and death. None of these was significantly different between the two groups. In another study, 105 postpartum women with HELLP syndrome were assigned to dexamethasone or placebo treatment. Katz and colleagues (2008) found no advantage to dexamethasone (Fig. 41-1). In the third study, preeclamptic women were given either placebo or methylprednisolone if their platelet count was between 50,000 and 150,000/μL (Pourrat, 2016). Again, no benefits were gained from corticosteroid therapy. A Bolivian study did show benefits from corticosteroid therapy, however, it was not randomized (Añez-Aguayo, 2018). Because of these findings, the 2013 Task Force does not recommend corticosteroid treatment to improve thrombocytopenia with HELLP syndrome.

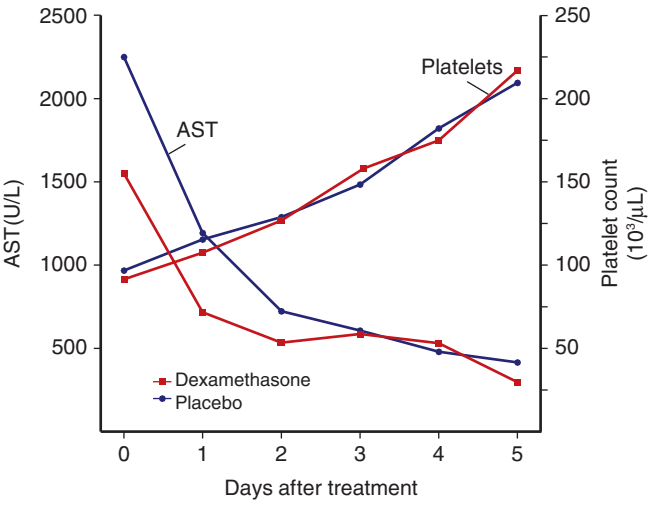


FIGURE 41-1 Recovery times for platelet counts and serum aspartate transaminase (AST) levels in women with HELLP syndrome assigned to receive treatment with dexamethasone or placebo.

Expectant Management Recommendations

Taken in toto, these studies do not show overwhelming benefits of expectant management of severe preeclampsia in women with gestations from 24 to 32 weeks compared with maternal risks. Despite these caveats, the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2011) has determined that such management is a reasonable alternative in selected women with severe preeclampsia before 34 weeks (Fig. 41-2). The Task Force

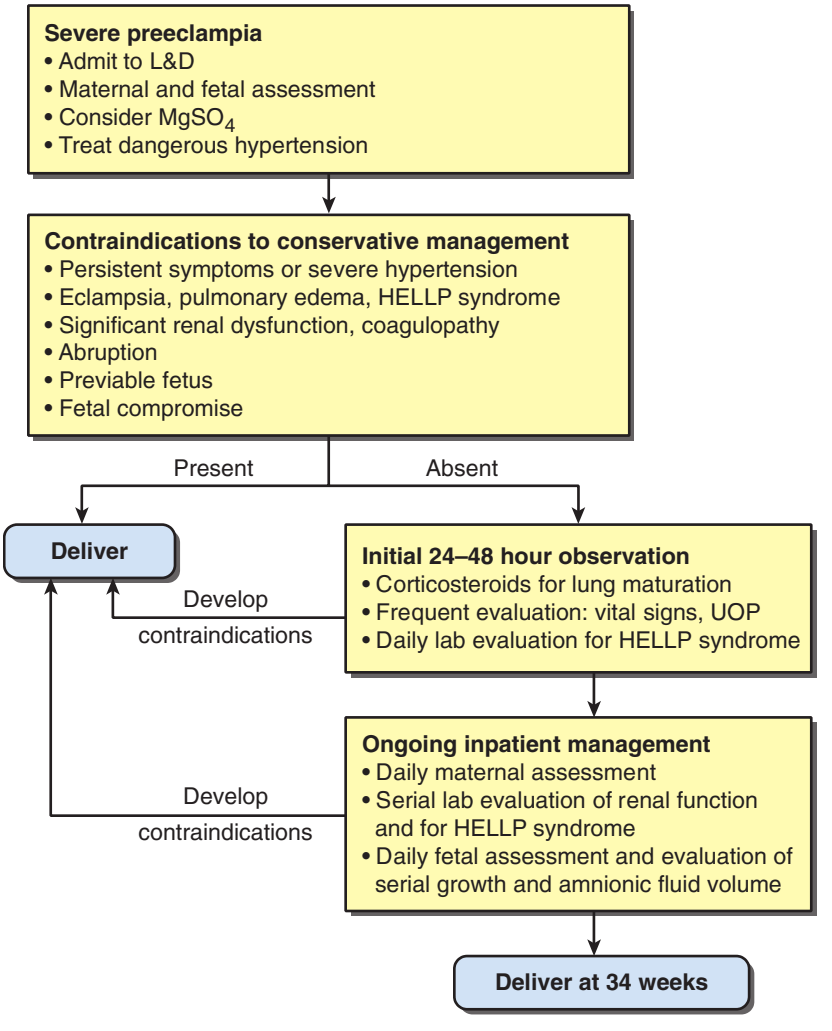


FIGURE 41-2 Clinical management algorithm for severe preeclampsia at <34 weeks. HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count; L & D = labor and delivery; $MgSO_4$= magnesium sulfate; UOP = urine output.

TABLE 41-5. Indications for Delivery in Women <34 Weeks' Gestation Managed Expectantly

Prompt Delivery After Maternal Stabilization and After Single-dose Corticosteroid Therapy for Lung Maturation:[a]
Uncontrolled severe hypertension
Persistent headaches, refractory to treatment
Persistent epigastric pain
Eclampsia
HELLP syndrome
Pulmonary edema
Placental abruption
Disseminated intravascular coagulation
Stroke
Myocardial infarction
Nonreassuring fetal status
Fetal demise
Delay Delivery 48 hr If Possible to Allow Corticosteroid Therapy for Lung Maturation:
Preterm ruptured membranes or labor
Fetal-growth restriction
Oligohydramnios
Reversed end-diastolic Doppler flow in umbilical artery
Worsening renal dysfunction

[a]Inital dose only, do not delay delivery.
HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count.
From American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2011.

(2013) supports this recommendation. As shown in Table 41-5, such management calls for inpatient maternal and fetal surveillance with delivery prompted by evidence for worsening severe preeclampsia or maternal or fetal compromise. Although attempts are made for vaginal delivery in most cases, the likelihood of cesarean delivery rises with decreasing gestational age.

Our view is more conservative. Undoubtedly, the overriding reason to terminate pregnancies with severe preeclampsia is maternal safety. Indeed, it seems obvious that a delay to prolong gestation in women with severe preeclampsia may have serious maternal consequences. These observations are even more pertinent when considered with the absence of convincing evidence that perinatal outcomes are markedly improved by the average prolongation of pregnancy by approximately 1 week. If undertaken, the caveats that mandate delivery shown in Table 41-5 should be strictly heeded.

Experimental Therapies

In preliminary studies, therapies have been used to lower serum levels of antiangiogenic factors in hopes to mitigate their adverse actions. Some of these include *therapeutic apheresis* to lower sFlt-1 levels (Thadhani, 2016; Winkler, 2018). Another novel therapy uses RNA molecules to silence placental sFlt-1 (Turanov, 2018). The *proton-pump inhibitor* esomeprazole was studied in women with early-onset preeclampsia (Cluver, 2018). *Sildenafil citrate*, a phosphodiesterase inhibitor, has been provided to promote vasodilation (Trapani, 2016; Vigil-De Gracia, 2016). Other studies compared *recombinant antithrombin infusion* with placebo (Paidas, 2020). In general, none of these therapies has shown promise.

SEVERE PREECLAMPSIA AND ECLAMPSIA

Classification of preeclampsia with severe features is summarized in Table 40-2 (p. 690). Briefly, features include systolic blood pressure ≥160 mm Hg or diastolic pressure ≥110 mm Hg; liver derangement with transaminitis; thrombocytopenia; renal insufficiency; pulmonary edema; new-onset headache; or visual changes. Eclampsia is defined by new-onset tonic-clonic, focal, or multifocal seizures in the absence of other causes.

Eclampsia

The development of eclampsia appreciably raises the risk to mother and fetus (Fishel-Bartal, 2020). In an earlier report, Mattar and Sibai (2000) described outcomes in 399 consecutive women with eclampsia from 1977 through 1998. Major maternal complications included placental abruption—10 percent, neurological deficits—7 percent, aspiration pneumonia—7 percent, pulmonary edema—5 percent, cardiopulmonary arrest—4 percent, and acute kidney injury (AKI)—4 percent. Moreover, 1 percent of these women died. Several subsequent reports similarly described excessive maternal morbidity and mortality rates with eclampsia that also included HELLP syndrome, pulmonary embolism, and stroke (Andersgaard, 2006; Knight, 2007).

Almost without exception—but at times unnoticed—preeclampsia precedes convulsions. Eclampsia is most common in the last trimester and becomes increasingly frequent as term approaches. Postpartum, the incidence of eclampsia has declined during the past decade. Improved access to prenatal care, earlier detection of antepartum preeclampsia, and prophylactic use of magnesium sulfate are explanations (Chames, 2002). Other diagnoses should be considered in women with convulsions more than 48 hours postpartum or in women with focal neurological deficits, prolonged coma, or atypical eclampsia.

Clinical Findings with Eclampsia

Eclamptic seizures may be violent, and the woman must be protected, especially her airway. So forceful are the muscular movements that the woman may throw herself out of her bed, and if not protected, her tongue is bitten by the violent action of the jaws (Fig. 41-3). This phase, in which the muscles alternately contract and relax, may last approximately a minute.

Gradually, the muscular movements become smaller and less frequent, and finally the woman lies motionless.

After a seizure, the woman is postictal, but in some, a coma of variable duration ensues. When the convulsions are infrequent, the woman usually recovers some degree of consciousness after each attack. As the woman arouses, a semiconscious combative state may ensue. In severe cases, coma persists from one convulsion to another, and death may result.

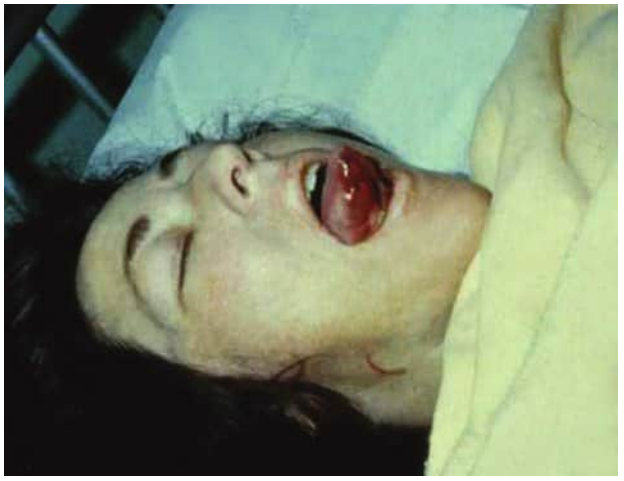


FIGURE 41-3 Hematoma of tongue from laceration during an eclamptic convulsion. Thrombocytopenia may have contributed to the bleeding.

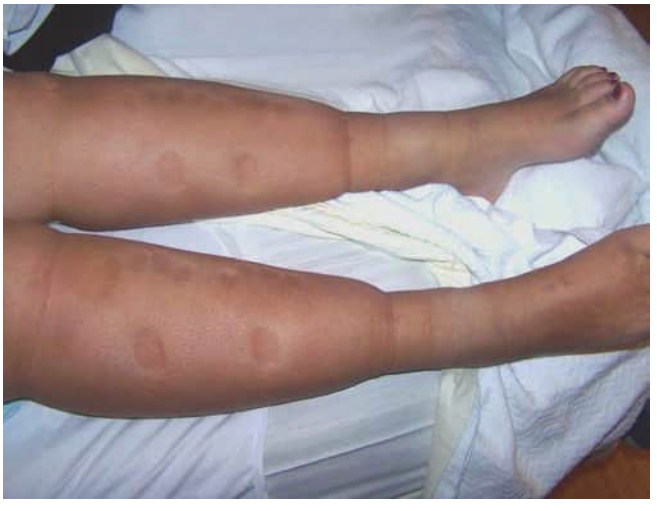


FIGURE 41-4 Severe edema in a young nullipara with antepartum preeclampsia. Fingerprint indentations from clinical assessment can be seen on both shins. Rings at the ankles formed from elastic sock bands. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Nidhi Shah.)

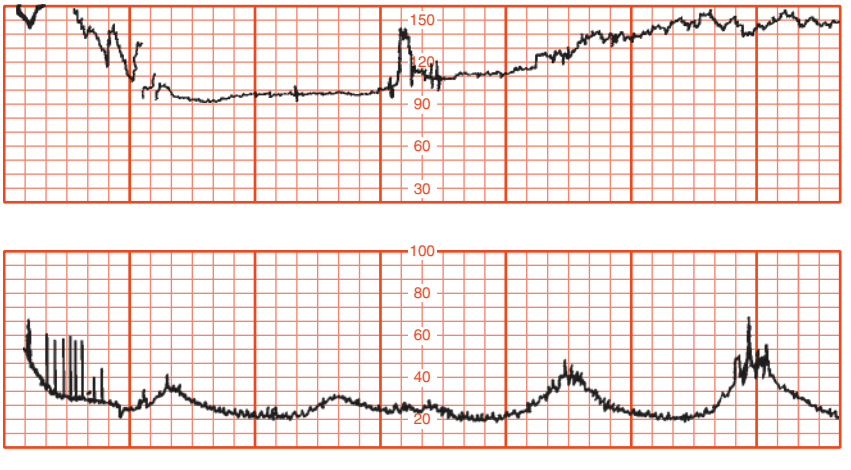


FIGURE 41-5 Fetal heart rate tracing shows fetal bradycardia following an intrapartum eclamptic convulsion. Bradycardia resolved and beat—to—beat variability returned approximately 5 minutes following the seizure.

Rarely, a single convulsion may be followed by coma from which the woman may never emerge. As a rule, however, death does not occur until after frequent convulsions. Last, and also rarely, convulsions continue unabated—*status epilepticus*—and require deep sedation and even general anesthesia to obviate anoxic encephalopathy.

The respiratory rate after an eclamptic convulsion usually rises and may reach 50 or more per minute in response to hypercarbia, lactic acidemia, and transient hypoxia. Cyanosis may be observed in severe cases. High fever is a grave sign as it likely emanates from cerebrovascular hemorrhage.

Proteinuria is usually present, and a fourth of women with severe preeclampsia have some degree of AKI (Rodriguez, 2021). Urine output may be diminished appreciably, and occasionally anuria develops. Hemoglobinuria may be seen, but hemoglobinemia is rare. Edema may be pronounced (Fig. 41-4).

With severe preeclampsia, urinary output rises after delivery and is usually an early sign of improvement. With renal dysfunction, serum creatinine levels are serially monitored. Proteinuria and edema ordinarily disappear within a week postpartum. In most cases, blood pressure returns to normal within a few days to 2 weeks after delivery (Berks, 2009). As subsequently discussed, persisting and severe hypertension likely predicts underlying chronic vascular disease.

In antepartum eclampsia, labor may begin spontaneously shortly after convulsions ensue and may progress rapidly. If the seizures develop during labor, contractions may increase in frequency and intensity, and the duration of labor may be shortened. Because of maternal hypoxemia and lactic acidemia caused by convulsions, fetal bradycardia often follows a seizure (Fig. 41-5). In our experiences, the fetal heart rate usually recovers within 2 to 10 minutes. If it persists more than 10 minutes, another cause of bradycardia, such as placental abruption, should be considered.

Pulmonary edema may follow shortly after eclamptic convulsions or several hours later. This complication is further explored on page 724.

Occasionally, sudden death occurs synchronously with an eclamptic seizure, or it follows shortly thereafter. Most often in these cases, a massive cerebral hemorrhage is the cause (Fig. 40-11, p. 700). Hemiplegia may result from sublethal hemorrhage. Cerebral hemorrhages are more likely in older women with underlying chronic hypertension. For women with a neurological deficit after an eclamptic seizure, consideration is given for emergent cranial computed tomography (CT) scanning. Up to 5 percent of women with eclampsia have altered consciousness, including persistent coma, following a seizure. This may be due to extensive cerebral edema, and associated transtentorial herniation may cause death (Cunningham, 2000). In approximately 10 percent of eclamptic women, some degree of blindness follows a seizure. The causes of impaired vision which usually improves postpartum, are discussed in Chapter 40 (p. 701).

Rarely, eclampsia is followed by psychosis, and the woman becomes violent. This may last for several days to 2 weeks. The prognosis for return to normal function is good, provided mental illness was not preexisting. It is presumed to be similar to postpartum psychosis discussed in Chapter 64 (p. 1148). Antipsychotic medications have been effective in the few cases of posteclampsia psychosis treated at Parkland Hospital.

Generally, eclampsia is more likely to be diagnosed too frequently rather than overlooked. Epilepsy, encephalitis, meningitis, brain tumor, neurocysticercosis, amnionic fluid embolism, postdural puncture cephalalgia, and ruptured cerebral aneurysm during late pregnancy or in the puerperium may simulate eclampsia. Until other such causes are excluded, however, all pregnant women with convulsions should be considered to have eclampsia. As a pragmatic rule, loading with magnesium sulfate should be considered while alternate diagnoses are explored.

MANAGEMENT OF SEVERE PREECLAMPSIA-ECLAMPSIA

Most eclampsia regimens in the United States adhere to a similar philosophy:

- Control or prevent convulsions using an intravenous loading dose of magnesium sulfate. This is followed by maintenance dosing, usually given intravenously
- Provide intermittent antihypertensive medication to lower dangerously high blood pressure
- Avoid diuretics unless pulmonary edema is obvious; limit intravenous fluid administration unless fluid loss is excessive; and avoid hyperosmotic agents
- Deliver the fetus to resolve preeclampsia.

Magnesium Sulfate

This parenterally administered agent is an effective anticonvulsant and avoids producing central nervous system depression. It may be given intravenously by continuous infusion or intramuscularly by intermittent injection (Table 41-6). A third option is intermittent, intravenous, 2-g injections (Easterling, 2018). Dosages for severe preeclampsia mirror those for eclampsia. Because labor and delivery is a more likely time for seizures to develop, women with severe preeclampsia or eclampsia usually are given magnesium sulfate during labor and for 24 hours postpartum. In the United States, magnesium sulfate is almost universally administered intravenously. Of concern, magnesium sulfate solutions, although inexpensive to prepare, are not readily available in all parts of the developing world. Even if solutions are available, the technology to infuse them may not be. Thus, the drug can be administered intramuscularly, and this is as effective as intravenous infusion (Pritchard, 1955, 1975, 1984; Salinger, 2013).

Magnesium sulfate is not given to treat hypertension. Magnesium ion most likely exerts a specific anticonvulsant action on the cerebral cortex. Typically, the mother stops convulsing after the initial 4-g loading dose. By an hour or two, she regains consciousness sufficiently to be oriented to place and time.

The magnesium sulfate dosage regimens presented in Table 41-6 usually result in increased plasma magnesium levels. Data from Brookfield and associates (2016) are illustrated in Figure 41-6. When magnesium sulfate is given to arrest an eclamptic seizure, up to 15 percent of women will have a subsequent convulsion. If so, an additional 2-g dose of magnesium sulfate in a 20-percent solution is slowly administered intravenously. In a small woman, this additional 2-g dose may be used once, but it can be given twice if needed in a larger woman. In

TABLE 41-6. Magnesium Sulfate Dosage Schedule for Severe Preeclampsia and Eclampsia

Continuous Intravenous (IV) Infusion
Give 4- to 6-g loading dose of magnesium sulfate diluted in 100 mL of IV fluid administered over 15–20 min
Begin 2 g/hr in 100 mL of IV maintenance infusion. Some recommend 1 g/hr
Monitor for magnesium toxicity:
Assess deep tendon reflexes periodically
Some measure serum magnesium level at 4–6 hr and adjust infusion to maintain levels between 4 and 7 mEq/L (4.8–8.4 mg/dL)
Measure serum magnesium levels if serum creatinine ≥1.0 mg/dL
Magnesium sulfate is discontinued 24 hr after delivery
Intermittent Intramuscular Injections
Give 4 g of magnesium sulfate ($MgSO_4 7H_2O$ USP) as a 20% solution intravenously at a rate not to exceed 1 g/min
Follow promptly with 10 g of 50% magnesium sulfate solution, one half (5 g) injected deeply in the upper outer quadrant of each buttock through a 3-inch-long 20-gauge needle. (Addition of 1.0 mL of 2% lidocaine minimizes discomfort.) If convulsions persist after 15 min, give up to 2 g more intravenously as a 20% solution at a rate not to exceed 1 g/min. If the woman is large, up to 4 g may be given slowly.
Every 4 hr thereafter, give 5 g of 50% solution of magnesium sulfate injected deeply in the upper outer quadrant of alternate buttocks, but only after ensuring that:
The patellar reflex is present,
Respirations are not depressed, and
Urine output the previous 4 hr exceeded 100 mL
Magnesium sulfate is discontinued 24 hr after delivery

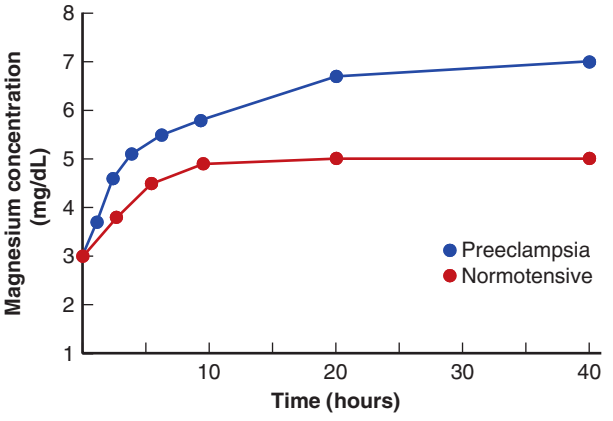


FIGURE 41-6 Serum magnesium concentration in normotensive and preeclamptic women following a 4-g loading dose of magnesium sulfate and 2 g/h infusion.

only 5 of 245 women with eclampsia at Parkland Hospital was it necessary to use alternative supplementary anticonvulsant medication to control seizures (Pritchard, 1984). For these, a small dose of a short-acting benzodiazepine such as midazolam or lorazepam is given intravenously. Their prolonged use is avoided because of an associated higher mortality rate from aspiration pneumonia (Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, 2006).

Maintenance magnesium sulfate therapy has traditionally been continued for 24 hours after delivery. For eclampsia that develops postpartum, magnesium sulfate is administered for 24 hours after the onset of convulsions. A few investigators have truncated this therapy duration to 12 hours and reported no seizures (Anjum, 2016; Ehrenberg, 2006; Kashanian, 2016). Outcomes have also been reported when magnesium sulfate therapy was stopped after delivery (Ludmir, 2017; Vigil-De Gracia, 2018). These studies are relatively small, and the abbreviated magnesium sulfate regimens need further study before being routinely implemented.

Pharmacology and Toxicology

Parenterally administered magnesium is cleared almost totally by renal excretion, and magnesium clearance rate is approximately a third of glomerular filtration rate (GFR) determined by creatinine clearance. Magnesium intoxication is unusual when the GFR is normal or only slightly reduced. Adequate urine output usually correlates with preserved GFR. That said, magnesium excretion is not urine flow dependent, and urinary volume per unit time does not, per se, predict renal function. *Thus, serum creatinine levels must be measured to confirm a decreased GFR.*

Eclamptic convulsions are almost always prevented or arrested by plasma magnesium levels maintained at 4 to 7 mEq/L, 4.8 to 8.4 mg/dL, or 2.0 to 3.5 mmol/L. However, one review of magnesium pharmacokinetics showed that most regimens result in much lower serum magnesium levels (Okusanya, 2016). This was especially true if only 1 g/hr was infused (Yefet, 2017). Importantly, the obesity epidemic has affected these observations (Cunningham, 2016). Tudela and colleagues (2013) described our results from Parkland Hospital with magnesium administration to obese women. More than 60 percent of women who had a body mass index (BMI) >30 kg/m^2 and who were receiving a 2-g/hr dose had subtherapeutic levels at 4 hours. Thus, most obese women would require 3 g/hr to maintain effective plasma levels. That said, most currently do not recommend routine magnesium level measurements (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a; Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, 2006).

Patellar reflexes disappear when the plasma magnesium level reaches 10 mEq/L—approximately 12 mg/dL—presumably because of a curariform action. This sign serves to warn of impending magnesium toxicity. When plasma levels rise above 10 mEq/L, breathing weakens. At 12 mEq/L or higher levels, respiratory paralysis and respiratory arrest follow (Somjen, 1966). *Treating with calcium gluconate or calcium chloride, 1 g intravenously, coupled with magnesium sulfate discontinuation, usually reverses mild to moderate respiratory depression.* One of these agents should be readily available whenever magnesium is being infused. Unfortunately, the effects of intravenously administered calcium may be short-lived if a steady-state toxic magnesium level has been reached. For severe respiratory depression and arrest, prompt tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation are lifesaving. Direct toxic effects on the myocardium from high levels of magnesium sulfate are uncommon (Morisaki, 2000).

Because magnesium is cleared almost exclusively by renal excretion, our described dosages of magnesium sulfate will become excessive if the GFR is substantially decreased. The initial 4- or 6-g loading dose of magnesium sulfate can be safely administered regardless of renal function. It is important to administer the standard loading dose and not to reduce it. A loading dose achieves the desired therapeutic level, and the infusion maintains the steady-state level. *Thus, only the maintenance infusion rate should be altered for those with a diminished GFR.* Renal function is estimated by measuring plasma creatinine. Whenever plasma creatinine levels are >1.0 mg/mL, serial serum magnesium levels are determined to guide the infusion rate (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

After a 4-g intravenous dose is administered during 15 minutes, mean arterial pressure falls slightly and is accompanied by a 13-percent rise in cardiac index (Cotton, 1986b). Thus, magnesium lowers systemic vascular resistance and mean arterial pressure. At the same time, cardiac output is increased. These findings are coincidental with transient nausea and flushing, and the cardiovascular effects persist for only 15 minutes despite continued magnesium infusion. Magnesium-induced vasodilation is weaker in placental vessels because of diminished calcium-channel activity (Tang, 2018).

Thurnau and coworkers (1987) showed that magnesium therapy led to a small but significant rise in the cerebrospinal fluid's total magnesium concentration. The magnitude was directly proportional to the corresponding serum concentration.

Other Effects

Magnesium has anticonvulsant and neuroprotective effects in animal models. Some proposed mechanisms of action include: (1) reduced presynaptic release of the neurotransmitter glutamate, (2) blockade of glutamatergic *N*-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors, (3) potentiation of adenosine action, (4) improved

calcium buffering by mitochondria, and (5) blockage of calcium entry via voltage-gated channels (Arango, 2008; Wang, 2012).

In the uterus, relatively high serum magnesium concentrations depress myometrial contractility. Inhibition of uterine contractility is magnesium dose dependent, and serum levels of at least 8 to 10 mEq/L are needed to inhibit uterine contractions (Watt-Morse, 1995). With the suggested magnesium sulfate regimens for seizure prevention, prolonged myometrial depression has not been observed. A transient decline in activity during and immediately after the initial intravenous loading dose can be seen (Leveno, 1998; Witlin, 1997). Blood loss at delivery is not increased by standard magnesium sulfate treatment (Graham, 2016).

■ Neuroprophylaxis—Prevention of Seizures

Several randomized trials have tested the efficacy of seizure prophylaxis for women with gestational hypertension, with or without proteinuria. In all, magnesium sulfate was superior to the comparator agent to prevent eclampsia. Four of the larger studies are summarized in Table 41-7. In the study from Parkland Hospital, magnesium sulfate therapy was superior to phenytoin to prevent seizures in women with gestational hypertension or preeclampsia (Lucas, 1995). In another study, magnesium sulfate and nimodipine, which is a calcium-channel blocking drug with specific cerebral vasodilator activity, were compared in 1650 women with severe preeclampsia (Belfort, 2003). The rate of eclampsia was more than threefold higher for women allocated to the nimodipine group—2.6 versus 0.8 percent.

The largest comparative study was *Magnesium Sulfate for Prevention of Eclampsia* reported by the Magpie Trial Collaboration Group (2002). More than 10,000 women with severe preeclampsia from 33 countries were randomly allocated to treatment with magnesium sulfate or placebo. Women given magnesium had a 58-percent significantly lower risk of eclampsia than those given placebo. Maternal mortality and placental abruption rates also were decreased. Child behavior at 18 months did not differ between groups (Smyth, 2009).

Who Should Be Given Magnesium Sulfate?

Magnesium will prevent proportionately more seizures in women with correspondingly worse disease. However, severity is difficult to quantify, and thus deciding which woman might benefit most from neuroprophylaxis is sometimes difficult. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) recommends that women with either eclampsia or severe preeclampsia should be given magnesium sulfate prophylaxis. Again, criteria that establish "severity" are not universal.

Thus, the conundrum is whether women with "nonsevere" gestational hypertension or preeclampsia should receive magnesium neuroprophylaxis. We found that approximately 1 woman in 100 who has nonsevere preeclampsia but who is not given magnesium sulfate prophylaxis can be expected to have a seizure. A fourth of these women likely will require emergent cesarean delivery and be exposed to the attendant maternal and perinatal morbidity from general anesthesia. From this, the major question regarding management of nonsevere gestational hypertension remains whether it is acceptable to avoid unnecessary treatment of 99 women to risk eclampsia in one. The answer appears to be yes, as suggested by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a). At Parkland Hospital, our policy is to give magnesium neuroprophylaxis to women with preeclampsia with severe features, and conservatively to those with proteinuria hypertension (Table 40-1, p. 689).

Fetal and Neonatal Effects

Magnesium administered parenterally promptly crosses the placenta to achieve equilibrium in fetal serum and less so in amnionic fluid (Gortzak-Uzan, 2005; Narasimhulu, 2017). Magnesium sulfate has small but significant effects on the fetal heart rate pattern and specifically on beat-to-beat variability

TABLE 41-7. Randomized Comparative Trials of Prophylaxis with Magnesium Sulfate and Placebo or Another Anticonvulsant in Women with Gestational Hypertension

Study/Inclusions	No. with Seizures/Total No. Treated (%)		
	Magnesium Sulfate	Control	Comparison[a]
Lucas (1995) Gestational hypertension[b]	0/1049	Phenytoin 10/1089 (0.9)	$p < 0.001$
Coetzee (1998) Severe preeclampsia	1/345 (0.3)	Placebo 11/340 (3.2)	RR = 0.09 (0.1–0.69)
Altman (2002)[c] Severe preeclampsia	40/5055 (0.8)	Placebo 96/5055 (1.9)	RR = 0.42 (0.26 – 0.60)
Belfort (2003) Severe preeclampsia	7/831 (0.8)	Nimodipine 21/819 (2.6)	RR = 0.33 (0.14–0.77)

[a]All comparisons significant $p < 0.05$.
[b]Included women with and without proteinuria and those with all severities of preeclampsia.
[c]Magpie Trial Collaboration Group, 2002.
RR = relative risk.

(Hallak, 1999). One study showed a lower baseline heart rate that was within the normal range; decreased variability; and fewer prolonged decelerations (Duffy, 2012).

Overall, maternal magnesium therapy appears safe for perinates (Drassinower, 2015). One study of more than 1500 exposed preterm neonates found no association between the need for neonatal resuscitation and cord blood magnesium levels (Johnson, 2012). Still, a few neonatal adverse events are associated with its use. In a Parkland Hospital study of 6654 mostly term, exposed newborns, 6 percent had hypotonia (Abbassi-Ghanavati, 2012). In addition, exposed neonates had lower 1- and 5-minute Apgar scores, a higher intubation rate, and more admissions to the special care nursery. Neonatal depression occurs only if hypermagnesemia at delivery is severe.

Observational studies suggest a protective effect of magnesium against the development of cerebral palsy in very-low-birthweight newborns (Crowther, 2017). These beneficial effects may extend to growth-restricted fetuses. Randomized trials have also assessed neuroprotective effects for preterm neonates, and findings are discussed in Chapter 45 (p. 803). One review expanded this possibility to include term newborns, but data were insufficient to draw conclusions (Nguyen, 2013).

Maternal Safety and Efficacy

The multinational Eclampsia Trial Collaborative Group study (1995) involved 1687 women with eclampsia randomly allocated to one of three different anticonvulsant regimens: magnesium sulfate, diazepam, or phenytoin (Table 41-8). In aggregate, magnesium sulfate therapy was associated with a significantly lower incidence of recurrent seizures (9.7 percent) compared with women given phenytoin (28 percent) or diazepam (17 percent). Moreover, the aggregate maternal death rate of 3.2 percent with magnesium sulfate was significantly lower than that of 5.2 percent for the other two regimens.

Severe Hypertension Treatment

Dangerous hypertension can cause cerebrovascular hemorrhage and hypertensive encephalopathy, and it can trigger eclamptic convulsions. Other complications are placental abruption and congestive heart failure induced by elevated hypertensive afterload. Studies highlight the importance of treating systolic hypertension when blood pressures are >160 mm Hg (Judy, 2019; Martin, 2005, 2016).

Because of these serious sequelae, the Working Group for the National High Blood Pressure Education Program (2000) and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) recommend treatment to lower systolic pressures to a level ≤160 mm Hg and diastolic pressures to ≤110 mm Hg. Lower diastolic pressures can compromise placental perfusion.

From other observations, it seems likely that at least half of serious hemorrhagic strokes associated with preeclampsia are in women with chronic hypertension (Cunningham, 2005; Zofkie, 2018). Long-standing hypertension results in development of *Charcot–Bouchard aneurysms* in the deep penetrating arteries of the lenticulostriate branch of the middle cerebral arteries. These vessels supply the basal ganglia, putamen, thalamus, adjacent deep white matter, pons, and deep cerebellum. These unique aneurysmal weakenings predispose these small arteries to rupture during sudden hypertensive episodes.

Several drugs are available to rapidly lower dangerously elevated blood pressure in women with pregnancy-associated hypertension. Hydralazine, labetalol, and nifedipine are recommended as first-line agents by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a). Evidence supports their value to decrease stroke risk (Cleary, 2018).

All three agents have equivalent efficacy. Comparative studies of hydralazine and labetalol show similar results (Mable, 1987; Umans, 2015). Hydralazine causes significantly more maternal tachycardia and palpitations, whereas labetalol more frequently leads to maternal hypotension and bradycardia. Randomized trials that compared nifedipine with labetalol found neither drug definitively superior, but nifedipine lowered blood pressure more quickly (Gainder, 2019; Zulfeen, 2019). Both drugs are associated with a reduced frequency of fetal heart rate accelerations (Cahill, 2013). Last, a study comparing nifedipine and hydralazine showed similar efficacy (Sharma, 2017).

A few other generally available antihypertensive agents have been tested in clinical trials but are not widely used (Umans, 2015). These include verapamil, nitroglycerin, nitroprusside, ketanserin, nicardipine, and nimodipine (Belfort, 2003; Cornette, 2016). Experimental antihypertensive drugs may eventually be useful for preeclampsia treatment (Lam, 2013).

Hydralazine

This antihypertensive agent is administered intravenously or intramuscularly. An initial 5- to 10-mg dose can act as rapidly

TABLE 41-8. Randomized Comparative Trials of Magnesium Sulfate versus Phenytoin and Diazepam to Prevent Recurrent Eclamptic Convulsions

	Magnesium Sulfate	Phenytoin	Diazepam
Recurrent seizures[a]	60/453 (13%)	126/452 (28%)	—
	22/388 (5.6%)	—	66/389 (17%)
Maternal deaths[b]	10/388 (2.6%)	20/387 (5.2%)	—
	17.453 (3.8%)	—	24/452 (5.3%)

[a]All comparisons $p < 0.01$.
[b]Individual comparisons nonsignificant, combined comparison $p < 0.05$.

TABLE 41-9. Antihypertensive Agents for Urgent Control of Severe Hypertension

Drug	Dose	Side Effects
Hydralazine	5 mg IV or IM followed by 10-mg doses at 15–20 min intervals for up to 3 doses ***or*** Constant infusion 0.5–10 mg/hr	Tachycardia, headaches, hypotension
Labetalol	10 mg IV followed by 20 mg IV in 20 min, then 40 mg IV, then 80 mg IV ***or*** Constant infusion 1–2 mg/min	Asthma precipitation, bradycardia, hypotension
Nifedipine	10 mg orally followed by 20 mg doses at 20 min × 2	Tachycardia, headaches

IM = intramuscular; IV = intravenous

as 10 minutes. If needed, this is followed by 10-mg doses at 15- to 20-minute intervals until a satisfactory response is achieved (Table 41-9). Although we will administer a third dose, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) recommends labetalol therapy if severe hypertension persists after the second dose. Another regimen continuously infuses hydralazine at a rate of 0.5 to 10 mg/hr.

For higher blood pressures, the tendency to give a larger initial dose of hydralazine should be avoided. The response to 5- to 10-mg doses cannot be predicted by hypertension severity. Thus, our protocol is to always administer 5 mg as the initial dose. An adverse response to exceeding this initial dose is shown in Figure 41-7. This woman had chronic hypertension complicated by severe superimposed preeclampsia, and hydralazine was injected more frequently than recommended. Her blood pressure in less than 1 hour dropped from 270/150 mm Hg to 110/80 mm Hg. Fetal heart rate decelerations characteristic of uteroplacental insufficiency became evident. Decelerations persisted until her blood pressure was raised with rapid crystalloid infusion. In some cases, this fetal response to diminished uterine perfusion may be confused with placental abruption and may result in unnecessary and potentially dangerous emergency cesarean delivery.

Labetalol

This effective intravenous antihypertensive agent is an α- and nonselective β-blocker. Some prefer its use to hydralazine because of fewer side effects. Importantly, labetalol is usually not given to asthmatic women.

At Parkland Hospital, we give 10 mg intravenously initially. If blood pressure has not declined to suitable levels in 10 minutes, 20 mg is given. The next 10-minute incremental dose is 40 mg and is followed by another 40 mg if needed. If a salutary response is not achieved, an 80-mg dose is provided (see Table 41-9). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) recommends starting with a 10- to 20-mg intravenous bolus. If not effective, this is followed by 20 to 80 mg every 10 to 30 minutes. If hypertension persists, hydralazine is then given.

Nifedipine

This calcium-channel blocking agent is given initially as a 10- to 20-mg oral dose of immediate release medication. If necessary after 20 minutes, a 10- to 20-mg oral dose is repeated. With an unsatisfactory response, labetalol is provided. *Nifedipine given sublingually is no longer recommended.* This route is associated with dangerously rapid and extensive effects.

Diuretics

Potent loop diuretics can further compromise placental perfusion. Immediate effects include redistribution of intravascular volume, which most often is already reduced in severe preeclampsia (p. 724). Thus, before delivery, diuretics are not used to lower blood pressure (Zeeman, 2009; Zondervan, 1988). Furosemide or similar drugs are used before delivery

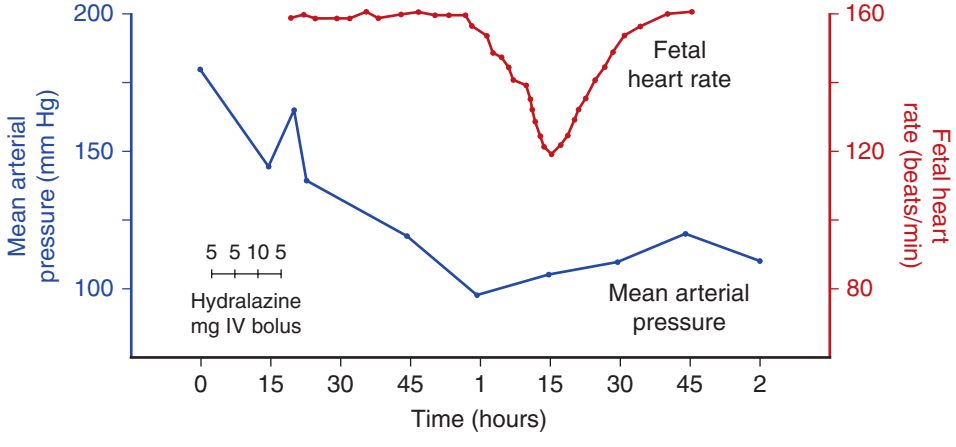


FIGURE 41-7 Hydralazine was given at 5-minute intervals instead of 15-minute intervals. The mean arterial pressure dropped from 180 to 90 mm Hg within 1 hour and was associated with fetal bradycardia. Rapid crystalloid infusion raised the mean pressure to 115 mm Hg, and the fetus recovered.

solely to treat pulmonary edema. Discussed on page 725, they may have a role in treatment of postpartum hypertension.

Fluid Therapy

Crystalloid solution is administered routinely at a rate between 60 and 125 mL per hour, unless fluid loss is unusual from vomiting, diarrhea, diaphoresis, or excessive blood loss. Oliguria is common with severe preeclampsia. Coupled with the knowledge that maternal blood volume is likely constricted compared with that of normal pregnancy, it is tempting to administer intravenous fluids more vigorously. However, controlled, conservative fluid administration is preferred for the typical woman with severe preeclampsia. These gravidas already have excessive extracellular fluid that has inappropriately extravasated from the intravascular compartment.

Infusion of large fluid volumes enhances the maldistribution and thereby elevates the risk of pulmonary and cerebral edema (Sciscioner, 2003; Zinaman, 1985). Thus, for preeclamptic women with anuria, small incremental boluses can be given to maintain urine output above 30 mL/hr. Diminished intravascular volume from hemorrhage or fluid loss from vomiting or fever can similarly be replaced by gradual incremental boluses of crystalloid. For labor analgesia with neuraxial analgesia, crystalloid solutions are infused slowly in graded amounts (Chap. 25, p. 479).

Pulmonary Edema

Women with severe preeclampsia who develop pulmonary edema most often do so postpartum (Cunningham, 1986, 2012). With pulmonary edema in the eclamptic woman, aspiration of gastric contents, which may be the result of convulsions, anesthesia, or oversedation, should be excluded. Otherwise, in women with severe preeclampsia, three common causes of pulmonary edema are pulmonary capillary permeability edema, cardiogenic edema, or their combination.

First, in women with preeclampsia, both increased capillary permeability and greater extravascular fluid oncotic pressure are found (Brown, 1989; Øian, 1986). If intravenous fluid replacement is vigorous, pulmonary congestion can follow.

Second, in some women, pulmonary edema may be caused by ventricular failure from increased afterload that results from severe hypertension. Such pulmonary edema from ventricular failure is more common in morbidly obese women and in those with chronic hypertension.

Invasive Hemodynamic Monitoring

Knowledge concerning cardiovascular and hemodynamic pathophysiological alterations associated with severe preeclampsia–eclampsia has accrued from studies done using invasive monitoring and a pulmonary artery catheter (Fig. 40-5, p. 694). Two conditions frequently cited as indications are preeclampsia associated with oliguria or with pulmonary edema (Clark, 2010). Somewhat ironically, it is usually vigorous treatment of the former that results in most cases of the latter. The Task Force (2013) recommends against routine invasive monitoring. This is best reserved for women with severe preeclampsia and with accompanying cardiac disease, renal disease, or both or with refractory hypertension, oliguria, and pulmonary edema. Preliminary data from studies using a *noninvasive cardiac monitoring system* need to be verified before widespread clinical application (Lavie, 2018).

Plasma Volume Expansion

Because the preeclampsia syndrome is associated with hemoconcentration, some have infused various fluids, starch polymers, albumin concentrates, or combinations to expand blood volume. Older studies describe serious complications—especially pulmonary edema—with volume expansion (Benedetti, 1985; Sibai, 1987b).

The Amsterdam randomized study reported by Ganzevoort and coworkers (2005a,b) was a well-designed investigation done to evaluate volume expansion. A total of 216 women with severe preeclampsia were enrolled between 24 and 34 weeks' gestation. The study included women whose preeclampsia was complicated by HELLP syndrome, eclampsia, pulmonary edema, or fetal-growth restriction. In the group randomly assigned to volume expansion, each woman was given 250 mL of 6-percent hydroxyethyl starch infused over 4 hours twice daily. Pregnancy outcomes were compared with a control group, and none of these were significantly different. Importantly, serious maternal morbidity and a substantive perinatal mortality rate accompanied their expectant management.

Analgesia and Anesthesia

During the past 25 years, the use of neuraxial analgesia for women with preeclampsia syndrome has proved ideal. Randomized studies attest to its safety, and these trials are fully described in Chapter 25 (p. 478).

Initial problems with neuraxial analgesia included hypotension and diminished uterine perfusion caused by sympathetic blockade in preeclamptic women, who already have attenuated hypervolemia. However, slow induction of epidural analgesia with dilute solutions of anesthetic agents counter the need for rapid infusion of large volumes of crystalloid or colloid to prevent maternal hypotension (Hogg, 1999; Wallace, 1995). Importantly, epidural blockade avoids general anesthesia, in which the stimulation of tracheal intubation may cause sudden severe hypertension. Such blood pressure spikes can cause pulmonary edema, cerebral edema, or intracranial hemorrhage. Last, tracheal intubation may be particularly difficult and thus hazardous in women with airway edema due to preeclampsia (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b).

Judicious fluid administration is essential in women with severe preeclampsia who receive regional analgesia. Vigorous crystalloid infusion with epidural blockade in women with severe preeclampsia elevates pulmonary capillary wedge pressures (Newsome, 1986). Aggressive volume replacement in preeclamptic women raises their risk for pulmonary edema, especially in the first 72 hours postpartum (Clark, 1985; Cotton, 1986a). Last, most cases of pharyngolaryngeal edema are related to aggressive volume therapy (Heller, 1983). In sum, general anesthesia, epidural analgesia, or combined spinal-epidural analgesia are acceptable for women severe preeclampsia if steps are taken to ensure a careful approach to the selected method. At Parkland Hospital, a gentle bolus is given accompanying epidural placement (Chap. 25, p. 479).

■ Blood Loss at Delivery

Hemoconcentration or lack of normal pregnancy-induced hypervolemia is an almost predictable feature of severe preeclampsia–eclampsia (Fig. 40-7, p. 696) (Zeeman, 2009). *These women, who consequently lack normal pregnancy hypervolemia, may poorly tolerate even normal blood loss.* Thus, an appreciable fall in blood pressure soon after delivery most often means excessive blood loss and not sudden resolution of vasospasm and endothelial damage. When oliguria follows delivery, the hematocrit should be evaluated frequently to help detect excessive blood loss. If identified, hemorrhage should be treated appropriately by crystalloid and blood transfusion.

■ Persistent Severe Postpartum Hypertension

Postpartum, 8 percent of women develop de novo hypertension (Goel, 2015). At times, controlling severe hypertension may be difficult or intravenous hydralazine or labetalol or oral immediate-release nifedipine are being used repeatedly. In these cases, oral maintenance regimens can be given. Examples include labetalol or another β-blocking agent; nifedipine extended release; amlodipine; or another calcium-channel blocking agent (Sharma, 2017). Women so treated are less likely to require readmission (Stamilio, 2021; Wen, 2019). The Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020a) has developed a check list for postpartum care of women with hypertensive disorders.

Persistent hypertension is likely aggravated by pathological interstitial fluid that is now returning to the intravascular compartment, by underlying chronic hypertension, or by both (Sibai, 2012; Tan, 2002). Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs do not aggravate postpartum hypertension (Anastasio, 2018; Penfield, 2019). In some women with chronic hypertension and left-ventricular hypertrophy, severe postpartum hypertension can cause pulmonary edema from cardiac failure (Cunningham, 1986, 2019; Sibai, 1987a).

Furosemide

Severe hypertension persists depending on the onset and length of extracellular fluid mobilization and diuresis. Thus, it seems logical that furosemide-augmented diuresis might serve to hasten blood pressure control (Ascarelli, 2005). In one randomized trial of 384 women with hypertensive disorders of pregnancy, a cohort that received furosemide postpartum had significantly lower blood pressures at 7 days—6 versus 14 percent—compared with women who received placebo (Lopes Perdigao, 2021). The need for antihypertensive treatment to be given at discharge in the furosemide group also was significantly reduced. In another randomized study, women with severe postpartum preeclampsia received nifedipine plus furosemide or nifedipine alone. The furosemide regimen significantly lowered the need for additional antihypertensive agents—8 versus 26 percent, respectively (Veena, 2017). Conversely, in one study, *torsemide* had no significant benefits (Viteri, 2018).

We use a simple method to estimate excessive extracellular fluid. The *postpartum weight* is compared with the most recent *prenatal weight*, either from the last clinic visit or from admission for delivery. Typically, soon after delivery, maternal weight should be reduced by at least 10 to 15 pounds depending on newborn and placental weight, amnionic fluid volume, and blood loss. Because of various interventions, especially intravenous crystalloid infusions given with labor epidural analgesia or during operative vaginal or cesarean delivery, women with severe preeclampsia often have an immediate postpartum weight *in excess of their last prenatal weight*. If this weight increase is associated with severe persistent postpartum hypertension, diuresis with intravenous furosemide can be helpful in controlling blood pressure.

Thrombotic Microangiopathy

Occasionally, women have an atypical syndrome in which severe preeclampsia–eclampsia persists despite delivery. Martin and associates (1995) described 18 such women whom they encountered during a 10-year period. They advocate single or multiple plasma exchange for these women. In some cases, 3 L of plasma was exchanged three times before a response was forthcoming. This is a 36- to 45-donor-unit exposure for each patient. Others have described plasma exchange performed in postpartum women with HELLP syndrome (Förster, 2002; Obeidat, 2002). In all of these cases, however, the distinction between HELLP syndrome and thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura or hemolytic uremic syndrome was not clear (Tsai, 2016). In our experiences with more than 55,000 women with gestational hypertension among nearly 500,000 pregnancies cared for at Parkland Hospital through 2021, we have encountered very few women with persistent postpartum hypertension, thrombocytopenia, and renal dysfunction who were diagnosed as having a thrombotic microangiopathy (Dashe, 1998).

Reversible Cerebral Vasoconstriction Syndrome

This is another cause of persistent hypertension, "thunderclap" headaches, seizures, and central nervous system findings. *Reversible cerebral vasoconstriction syndrome* is characterized by diffuse segmental constriction of cerebral arteries and may be associated with ischemic and hemorrhagic strokes. This syndrome has several inciting causes that include pregnancy and particularly preeclampsia (Ducros, 2012). It is more frequent in women, and long-term sequelae are uncommon. However, in some cases, vasoconstriction may be so severe as to cause cerebral ischemia and infarction (Boitet, 2020). We have encountered only a few women with a stroke cause by this arteriopathy (Zofkie, 2019). The most appropriate management is unclear (Cho, 2019).

LONG-TERM CONSEQUENCES

■ Future Pregnancies

Women with preeclampsia during an index pregnancy are at risk for hypertensive and other disorders in subsequent pregnancies and later in life (Wang, 2021). In some, but not all women, the risk for hypertension is higher in the first 6 months postpartum (Giorgione, 2021; Mulder, 2021). Even in subsequent nonhypertensive pregnancies, women who had preterm preeclampsia have a higher risk for preterm birth and growth-restricted neonates (Connealy, 2014; Palatnik, 2016). Generally, the earlier preeclampsia is diagnosed during the index pregnancy, the greater the likelihood of recurrence. Women with preeclampsia

TABLE 41-10. Some Long-Term Consequences in Women with Preeclampsia Syndrome

Obstetrical
- Hypertensive disorders
- Preterm delivery
- Fetal-growth restriction

Cardiovascular
- Chronic hypertension
- Ischemic heart disease
- Atherosclerosis
- Coronary artery calcification
- Cardiomyopathy
- Thromboembolism
- Peripheral vascular disease

Renal
- Glomerular dysfunction
- Proteinuria

Neurovascular
- Stroke
- Retinal detachment
- Diabetic retinopathy
- Dementia
- Seizure disorder
- Retinopathy

Metabolic
- Type 2 diabetes
- Metabolic syndrome
- Dyslipidemia
- Obesity

TABLE 41-11. Long-Term Cardiovascular Morbidities After Recurrent Preeclampsia Compared with a Single Pregnancy with Preeclampsia and a Subsequent Normal Pregnancy

Morbidity (No. of Studies)	Recurrent (No.)	Single (No.)	Risk Ratio[a]
Hypertension (7)	2186	5589	2.33
IHD (3)	428	977	2.40
Heart failure (2)	160	298	2.88
CVA (2)	196	616	1.69
Cardiovascular event (2)	1278	5909	1.57

[a]All p values <0.0002.
CVA = cerebrovascular accident; IHD = ischemic heart disease.

near term had a recurrence risk of 23 percent, but nulliparas diagnosed with preeclampsia before 30 weeks had a recurrence risk as high as 40 percent (Bramham, 2011; Sibai 1986, 1991).

As perhaps expected, women with HELLP syndrome have a substantive risk for recurrence in subsequent pregnancies. Even if HELLP syndrome does not recur with subsequent pregnancies, again incidences of preterm delivery, fetal-growth restriction, placental abruption, and cesarean delivery are increased (Habli, 2009; Malmström, 2020).

Cardiovascular Morbidity

The preeclampsia syndrome is also a marker for subsequent long-term cardiovascular morbidity (Table 41-10) (Hammad, 2020; Stuart, 2018; Wang, 2021). Thus, women with hypertension identified during pregnancy should be evaluated during the first several months postpartum.

The Working Group of the NHBPEP (2000) concluded that hypertension attributable to pregnancy should resolve within 12 weeks of delivery, and hypertension persisting beyond this time is considered chronic (Chap. 53, p. 944). The Magpie Trial Follow-Up Collaborative Group (2007) reported that 20 percent of 3375 preeclamptic women seen at a median of 26 months postpartum had hypertension. From one metanaalysis, a 28-percent incidence of hypertension was found within 2 years of deliveries complicated by preeclampsia (Giorgione, 2021). From a Danish registry and after a mean of almost 15 years, the incidence of chronic hypertension was fivefold higher in those who had gestational hypertension, fourfold greater after mild preeclampsia, and sixfold higher after severe preeclampsia compared with women without hypertension in pregnancy (Lykke, 2009).

Any hypertension during pregnancy is a risk marker for cardiovascular morbidity in later life (Wang, 2021). As shown in data from Brouwers and coworkers (2018), the risk is greater in women with recurrent preeclampsia (Table 41-11). In a study from Iceland, the prevalence of ischemic heart disease—24 versus 15 percent, and of stroke—9.5 versus 6.5 percent, were increased in women who had gestational hypertension compared with normotensive controls (Arnadottir, 2005). In a Swedish population study of more than 400,000 women, those with recurrent preeclampsia had systolic dysfunction and a greater incidence of ischemic heart disease (Valensise, 2016). Diastolic dysfunction also is more common (Bokslag, 2018). Preeclampsia is also a risk for coronary artery calcification and idiopathic cardiomyopathy (Gammill, 2018; White, 2016).

Women who have preeclampsia and who develop chronic hypertension later in life have an increased ventricular mass index before they become hypertensive (Ghossein-Doha, 2013). Last, in at least some women with prior preeclampsia, hypertensive cardiovascular pathologies appear to have begun near the time of *their own* births. A similar phenomenon is associated with preterm birth and with fetal-growth disorders.

Other cofactors or comorbidities are related to acquisition of these long-term adverse outcomes (Gastrich, 2012; Harskamp, 2007; Hermes, 2012; Spaan, 2012). These include the metabolic syndrome, diabetes, obesity, dyslipidemia, and atherosclerosis (Catzov, 2021; Cho, 2019; Kajantie, 2017). Women with pregnancy-associated hypertension are at increased risk for type 2 diabetes (Stuart, 2018). Preeclampsia predisposes for later diabetic retinopathy and retinal detachment (Auger, 2017; Beharier, 2016).

Renal Sequelae

Preeclampsia is a marker for subsequent renal disease. Almost 15 percent of women with prior preeclampsia have renal dysfunction (Lopes van Balen, 2017). This may be related to AKI associated with preeclampsia (Novotny, 2020; Rodriquez, 2021). In a Danish study with more than a million women, the chronic renal disease rate was sixfold greater in those who had preeclampsia (Kristensen, 2019). These data need to be considered in light of the findings that 15 to 20 percent of women with preeclampsia who undergo renal biopsy have evidence of chronic renal disease (Chesley, 1978). In another long-term study, women with prior preeclampsia were significantly more likely to be chronically hypertensive—55 versus 7 percent—compared with control women. They also had higher peripheral vascular and renovascular resistance and decreased renal blood flow. These data do not permit conclusions as to cause versus effect (Spaan, 2009).

Central Nervous System Sequelae

Eclamptic seizures were once believed to have no significant long-term CNS sequelae. However, this likely is not the case (Bergman, 2021c; Theilen, 2016). Recall that almost all eclamptic women have multifocal areas of perivascular edema, and approximately a fourth also have areas of cerebral infarction (Zeeman, 2004).

In several long-term studies in women with severe preeclampsia and eclampsia, white-matter lesions in the brain that followed eclamptic convulsions persist (Aukes, 2009, 2012). Specifically, with magnetic resonance (MR) imaging, 40 percent of women with prior eclampsia had more numerous and larger aggregate white-matter lesions compared with 17 percent of normotensive control women. These white-matter lesions were also found in women with preeclampsia without convulsions (Aukes, 2012). Others found temporal lobe white-matter changes and reduced cortical volume in women with prior preeclampsia (Siepmann, 2017).

In some, but not all studies, women with prior eclampsia had subjectively impaired cognitive functioning and increased risk for dementia (Basit, 2018; Elharram, 2018). They also had a modest increase in the frequency of seizure disorders (Nerenberg, 2017). In another study, women with prior eclampsia had lower vision-related quality of life compared with control women (Wiegman, 2012).

REFERENCES

Abalos E, Duley L, Steyn DW, et al: Antihypertensive drug therapy for mild to moderate hypertension during pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD002252, 2014

Abbassi-Ghanavati M, Alexander JM, McIntire DD: Neonatal effects of magnesium sulfate given to the mother. Am J Perinatol 29(10):795, 2012

Abdel-Hady ES, Fawzy M, El-Negri M, et al: Is expectant management of early-onset severe preeclampsia worthwhile in low-resource settings? Arch Gynecol Obstet 282(1):23, 2010

Alanis MC, Robinson CJ, Hulsey TC, et al: Early-onset severe preeclampsia: induction of labor vs elective cesarean delivery and neonatal outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199:262e1, 2008

Alexander JM, Bloom SL, McIntire DD, et al: Severe preeclampsia and the very low-birthweight infant: is induction of labor harmful? Obstet Gynecol 93:485, 1999

Alexander JM, Cunningham FG: Management. In: Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Altman D, Carroli G, Duley L, et al: Do women with pre-eclampsia, and their babies, benefit from magnesium sulphate? The Magpie Trial: a randomised placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 359(9321):1877, 2002

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Hypertension in pregnancy. Report of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' Task Force on Hypertension in Pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 122:1122, 2013

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Gestational hypertension and preeclampsia. Practice Bulletin No. 222, June 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Obstetric analgesia and anesthesia. Practice Bulletin No. 209, February 2019, Reaffirmed 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Antepartum fetal surveillance. Practice Bulletin No. 145, June 2021a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Indications for outpatient antepartum fetal surveillance. Practice Bulletin No. 145, June 2021b

Amorim MM, Santos LC, Faündes A: Corticosteroid therapy for prevention of respiratory distress syndrome in severe preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 180:1283, 1999

Anastasio HB, Campbell LE, Buermeyer A, et al: Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug administration and postpartum blood pressure in women with hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 132(6):1471, 2018

Andersgaard AB, Herbst A, Johansen M, et al: Eclampsia in Scandinavia: incidence, substandard care, and potentially preventable cases. Acta Obstet Gynecol 85:929, 2006

Anez-Aguayo M, Vigil-De Garcia: Dexamethasone in HELLP syndrome: experience in Bolivia. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(1):1, 2018

Anjum S, Goel N, Shrama R, et al: Maternal outcomes after 12 hours and 24 hours of magnesium sulfate therapy for eclampsia. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 132(1):68, 2016

Arango ME, Mejia-Mantilla JH: Magnesium for acute traumatic brain injury. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 4:CD005400, 2008

Arnadottir GA, Geirsson RT, Arngrimsson R, et al: Cardiovascular death in women who had hypertension in pregnancy: a case- control study. BJOG 112:286, 2005

Ascarelli MH, Johnson V, McCreary H, et al: Postpartum preeclampsia management with furosemide: a randomized clinical trial. Obstet Gynecol 105:29, 2005

Auger N, Fraser WD, Paradis G, et al: Preeclampsia and long—term risk of maternal retinal disorders. Obstet Gynecol 129(1):42, 2017

Aukes AM, de Groot JC, Aarnoudse JG, et al: Brain lesions several years after eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(5):504.e1, 2009

Aukes AM, de Groot JC, Wiegman MJ, et al: Long-term cerebral imaging after preeclampsia. BJOG 119(9):1117, 2012

Barton JR, Woelkers DA, Newman RB, et al: Placental growth factor predicts time to delivery in women with signs or symptoms of early preterm preeclampsia: a prospective multicenter study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 229:259.e1, 2020

Barton CR, Barton JR, O'Brien JM, et al: Mild gestational hypertension: differences in ethnicity are associated with altered outcomes in women who undergo outpatient treatment. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:896, 2002

Barton J, Barton L, Istwan N, et al: Elective delivery at $34^{0}/^{7}$ to $36^{6}/^{7}$ weeks' gestation and its impact on neonatal outcomes in women with stable mild gestational hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(1):44e1, 2011

Basit S, Wohlfahrt J, Boyd HA: Preeclampsia and risk of dementia later in life: a nationwide cohort study. BMJ 363:k4109, 2018

Beharier O, Davidson E, Sergienko R, et al: Preeclampsia and future risk for maternal ophthalmic complications. Am J Perinatol 33(7):703, 2016

Belfort M, Anthony J, Saade G, et al: A comparison of magnesium sulfate and nimodipine for the prevention of eclampsia. N Engl J Med 348:304, 2003

Belghiti J, Kayem G, Tsatsaris V, et al: Benefits and risks of expectant management of severe preeclampsia at less than 26 weeks gestation: the impact of gestational age and severe fetal growth restriction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(5):465.e1, 2011

Benedetti TJ, Kates R, Williams V: Hemodynamic observations in severe preeclampsia complicated by pulmonary edema. Am J Obstet Gynecol 152:330, 1985

Berks D, Steegers EA, Molas M, et al: Resolution of hypertension and proteinuria after preeclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 114(6):1307, 2009

Bernardes TP, Zwertbroek EF, Broekhuijsen K, et al: Delivery or expectant management for prevention of adverse maternal and neonatal outcomes in hypertensive disorders of pregnancy: an individual participant data meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 53(4):43, 2019

Bloom SL, Leveno KJ: Corticosteroid use in special circumstances: preterm ruptured membranes, hypertension, fetal growth restriction, multiple fetuses. Clin Obstet Gynecol 46:150, 2003

Boitet R, de Gaalon S, Duflos C, et al: Long-term outcomes after reversible cerebral vasoconstriction syndrome. Stroke 51(2):670, 2020

Bokslag A, Franssen C, Alma LJ, et al: Early-onset preeclampsia predisposes to preclinical diastolic left ventricular dysfunction in the fifth decade of life: An observational study. PLoS One 13(6):e0198908, 2018

Bombrys AE, Barton JR, Habli M, Sibai BM: Expectant management of severe preeclampsia at 27(0/7) to 33(6/7) weeks' gestation: maternal and perinatal outcomes according to gestational age by weeks at onset of expectant management. Am J Perinatol 26: 441, 2009

Bombrys AE, Barton JR, Nowacki EA, et al: Expectant management of severe preeclampsia at less than 27 weeks' gestation: maternal and perinatal outcomes according to gestational age by weeks at onset of expectant management. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199:247.e1, 2008

Bramham K, Briley AL, Seed P, et al: Adverse maternal and perinatal outcomes in women with previous preeclampsia: a prospective study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(6):512e1, 2011

Broekhuijsen K, van Baaren GJ, van Pampus MG, et al: Immediate delivery versus expectant monitoring for hypertensive disorders of pregnancy between 34 and 37 weeks of gestation (HYPITAT-II): an open—label, randomised controlled trial. Lancet 385(9986):2492, 2015

Brookfield KF, Su F, Elkomy MH, et al: Pharmacokinetics and placental transfer of magnesium sulfate in pregnant women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214:737e1, 2016

Brouwers L, van der Meiden-van Roest AJ, Savelkoul C, et al: Recurrence of preeclampsia and the risk of future hypertension and cardiovascular disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 125(13):1642, 2018

Brown MA, Zammit VC, Lowe SA: Capillary permeability and extracellular fluid volumes in pregnancy-induced hypertension. Clin Sci 77:599, 1989

Budden A, Wilkinson L, Buksh MJ, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women presenting with pre-eclampsia at less than 25 weeks gestation. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 46(5):407, 2006

Cahill A, Odibo A, Roehl K, et al: Impact of intrapartum antihypertensives on electronic fetal heart rate (EFM) patterns in labor. Abstract No. 615, Am J Obstet Gynecol 208 (1 Suppl):S262, 2013

Catzov JM, McNeil RB, Marsh DJ, et al: Early pregnancy atherogenic profile in a first pregnancy and hypertension risk 2 to 7 years after delivery. J Am Heart Assoc 10(5):e017216, 2021

Cavaignac-Vitalis M, Vidal F, Simon-Toulza C, et al: Conservative versus active management in HELLP syndrome: results from a cohort study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(11):1769, 2019

Chames MC, Livingston JC, Ivester TS, et al: Late postpartum eclampsia: a preventable disease? Am J Obstet Gynecol 186: 1174, 2002

Chappell LC, Brocklehurst P, Green ME, et al: Planned early delivery or expectant management for late preterm pre-eclampsia (PHOENIX): a randomised controlled trial. Lancet 394(10204):1181, 2019

Chappell LC, Brocklehurst P, Green ME, et al: Planned early delivery or expectant management for late preterm pre-eclampsia (PHOENIX): a randomised controlled trial Lancet 394(10204):1181, 2019

Chappell LC, Duckworth S, Seed P T, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of placental growth factor in women with suspected preeclampsia: a prospective multicenter study. Circulation 128 (19):2121, 2013

Chatzakis CV, Liberis A, Zavlanos A, et al: Early delivery or expectant management for later preterm preeclampsia: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Act Obstet Gynecol Scand 100(8):1392, 2021

Chescheir NC: Serum uric acid measurement in women with hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 134(3): 636, 2019

Chesley LC (ed): Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy. Appleton Century—Crofts, New York, 1978

Cho GJ, Jung US, Sim JY, et al: Is preeclampsia itself a risk factor for the development of metabolic syndrome after delivery? Obstet Gynecol 62(4):233, 2019

Churchill D, Duley L, Thornton JG, et al: Interventionist versus expectant care for severe preeclampsia between 24 and 34 weeks' gestation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10: CD003106, 2018

Clark SL, Dildy GA III: Pulmonary artery catheterization. In: Belfort M, Saade GR, Foley MR, et al (eds): Critical Care Obstetrics, 5th ed. West Sussex, Wiley-Blackwell, 2010

Clark SL, Divon MY, Phelan JP: Preeclampsia/eclampsia: hemodynamic and neurologic correlations. Obstet Gynecol 66:337, 1985

Cleary KL, Siddiq Z, Ananth VC, et al: Use of antihypertensive medications during delivery hospitalizations complicated by preeclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 131(3):441, 2018

Cluver CA, Hannan NJ, van Papendorp E, et al: Esomeprazole to treat women with preterm preeclampsia: a randomized placebo controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 19(4):388, 2018

Coetzee EJ, Dommisse J, Anthony J: A randomised controlled trial of intravenous magnesium sulphate versus placebo in the management of women with severe pre-eclampsia. BJOG 105(3):300, 1998

Conde-Agudelo A, Romero R, Roberts JM: Tests to predict preeclampsia. In: Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Connealy B, Carreno C, Kase B, et al: A history of prior preeclampsia as a risk factor for preterm birth. Am J Perinatol 31(6):483, 2014

Cornette J, Buijs EA, Duvekot JJ, et al: Hemodynamic effects of intravenous nicardipine in severely preeclamptic women with a hypertensive crisis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 47(1):89, 2016

Cotton DB, Jones MM, Longmire S, et al: Role of intravenous nitroglycerine in the treatment of severe pregnancy-induced hypertension complicated by pulmonary edema. Am J Obstet Gynecol 154:91, 1986a

Cotton DB, Longmire S, Jones MM, et al: Cardiovascular alterations in severe pregnancy-induced hypertension: effects of intravenous nitroglycerin coupled with blood volume expansion. Am J Obstet Gynecol 154:1053, 1986b

Coviello EM, Iqbal SN, Grantz KL, et al: Early preterm preeclampsia outcomes by intended mode of delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(1):100.e1, 2019

Crowther CA, Bouwmeester AM, Ashurst HM: Does admission to hospital for bed rest prevent disease progression or improve fetal outcome in pregnancy complicated by non-proteinuric hypertension? BJOG 99:13, 1992

Cunningham FG: Peripartum cardiomyopathy: we've come a long way, but…. Obstet Gynecol 120(5):992, 2012

Cunningham FG: Severe preeclampsia and eclampsia: systolic hypertension is also important. Obstet Gynecol 105(2):237, 2005

Cunningham FG, Byrne JJ, Nelson DB: Peripartum cardiomyopathy. Obstet Gynecol 133(1):167, 2019

Cunningham FG, Nelson DB: Magnesium sulphate: too much of a good thing? BJOG 123:356, 2016

Cunningham FG, Pritchard JA, Hankins GD, et al: Peripartum heart failure: idiopathic cardiomyopathy or compounding cardiovascular events? Obstet Gynecol 67:157, 1986

Cunningham FG, Twickler D: Cerebral edema complicating eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:94, 2000

Dashe JS, Ramin SM, Cunningham FG: The long-term consequences of thrombotic microangiopathy (thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura and hemolytic uremic syndrome) in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 91:662, 1998

Ducros A: Reversible cerebral vasoconstriction syndrome. Lancet Neurol 11(10):906, 2012

Duffy CR, Odibo AO, Roehl KA, et al: Effect of magnesium sulfate on fetal heart rate patterns in the second stage of labor. Obstet Gynecol 119(6):1129, 2012

Duhig KE, Seed PT, Placzek A, et al: Prognostic indicators of severe disease in late preterm preeclampsia to guide decision making on timing of delivery: the PEACOCK study. Pregnancy Hypertens 24:90, 2021

Easterling TR, Benedetti TJ, Schmucker BC, et al: Maternal hemodynamics in normal and preeclamptic pregnancies: a longitudinal study. Obstet Gynecol 76:1061, 1990

Ehrenberg HM, Mercer BM: Abbreviated postpartum magnesium sulphate therapy for women with mild preeclampsia: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 108(4):833, 2006

Elharram M, Dayan N, Kaur A, et al: Long-term cognitive impairment after preeclampsia: a systematic review and metaanalysis. Obstet Gynecol 132(2):355, 2018

Eclampsia Trial Collaborative Group: Which anticonvulsant for women with eclampsia? Evidence from the collaborative eclampsia trial. Lancet 345:1455, 1995

Fishel-Bartal M, Sibai BM: Eclampsia in the 21st century. Am J Obstet Gynecol 9378(20):31128, 2020

Fonseca JE, Méndez F, Cataho C, et al: Dexamethasone treatment does not improve the outcome of women with HELLP syndrome: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomized clinical trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193:1591, 2005

Förster JG, Peltonen S, Kaaja R, et al: Plasma exchange in severe postpartum HELLP syndrome. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 46:955, 2002

Gainder S, Thakur M, Saha SC, et al: To study the changes in fetal hemodynamics with intravenous labetalol or nifedipine in acute severe hypertension. Pregnancy Hypertens 15:12, 2019

Gammill HS, Chettier R, Brewer A, et al: Cardiomyopathy and preeclampsia. Circulation 138(21):2359, 2018

Ganzevoort W, Rep A, Bonsel GJ, et al: A randomized trial of plasma volume expansion in hypertensive disorders of pregnancy: influence on the pulsatile indices of the fetal umbilical artery and middle cerebral artery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:233, 2005a

Ganzevoort W, Rep A, PERTA investigators, et al: A randomized controlled trial comparing two temporizing management strategies, one with and one without plasma volume expansion, for severe and early onset pre-eclampsia. BJOG 112:1337, 2005b

Gastrich MD, Gandhi SK, Pantazopoulos J, et al: Cardiovascular outcomes after preeclampsia or eclampsia complicate myocardial infarction or stroke. Obstet Gynecol 120(4):823, 2012

Gaugler-Senden IP, Huijssoon AG, Visser W, et al: Maternal and perinatal outcome of preeclampsia with an onset before 24 weeks' gestation. Audit in a tertiary referral center. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 128:216, 2006

Ghossein-Doha C, Peeters L, van Jeijster S, et al: Hypertension after pre-eclampsia is preceded by changes in cardiac structures and function. Hypertension 62(2):382, 2013

Gilstrap LC, Cunningham FG, Whalley PJ: Management of pregnancy-induced hypertension in the nulliparous patient remote from term. Semin Perinatol 2:73, 1978

Giorgione V, Ridder A, Kalafat E, et al: Incidence of postpartum hypertension within 2 years of a pregnancy complicated by preeclampsia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 128(3):495, 2021

Goel A, Maski MR, Bajracharya S, et al: Epidemiology and mechanisms of de novo and persistent hypertension in the postpartum period. Circulation 132(18):1726, 2015

Gortzak-Uzan L, Mezad D, Smolin A: Increasing amniotic fluid magnesium concentrations with stable maternal serum levels. A prospective clinical trial. J Reprod Med 50:817, 2005

Graham NM, Gimovsky AC, Roman A, et al: Blood loss at cesarean delivery in women on magnesium sulfate for preeclampsia. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(11):1817, 2016

Habli M, Eftekhari N, Wiebracht E, et al: Long-term maternal and subsequent pregnancy outcomes 5 years after hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets (HELLP) syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(4):385.e1, 2009

Haddad B, Kayem G, Deis S, et al: Are perinatal and maternal outcomes different during expectant management of severe preeclampsia in the presence of intrauterine growth restriction? Am J Obstet Gynecol 196:237.e1, 2007
Hallak M, Martinez-Poyer J, Kruger ML, et al: The effect of magnesium sulfate on fetal heart rate parameters: a randomized, placebo-controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181:1122, 1999
Hammad IA, Meeks H, Fraser A, et al: Risks of cause-specific mortality in offspring of pregnancies complicated by hypertensive disease of pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:75e.1, 2020
Harskamp RE, Zeeman GG: Preeclampsia: at risk for remote cardiovascular disease. Am J Med Sci 334(4):291, 2007
Hauth JC, Cunningham FG, Whalley PJ: Management of pregnancy- induced hypertension in the nullipara. Obstet Gynecol 48: 253, 1976
Heller PJ, Scheider EP, Marx GF: Pharyngo-laryngeal edema as a presenting symptom in preeclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 62:523, 1983
Hermes W, Ket JC, van Pampus MG, et al: Biochemical cardiovascular risk factors after hypertensive pregnancy disorders: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol Surv 67(12):793, 2012
Hogg B, Hauth JC, Caritis SN, et al: Safety of labor epidural anesthesia for women with severe hypertensive disease. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181:1096, 1999
Hoshino A, Obata S, Tochio A, et al: Efficacy of expectant management of severe preeclampsia and preeclampsia superimposed on chronic hypertension before 34 weeks gestation. Pregnancy Hypertens 15:177, 2019
Johnson LH, Mapp DC, Rouse DJ: Association of cord blood magnesium concentration and neonatal resuscitation. J Pediatr 160(4):573, 2012
Judy AE, McCain CL, Lawton ES, et al: Systolic hypertension, preeclampsia-re1ated mortality, and stroke in California. Obstet Gynecol 133(6):1151, 2019
Kajantie E, Osmond C, Eriksson JG: Gestational hypertension is associated with increased risk of type 2 diabetes in adult offspring: the He1sinki Birth Cohort Study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(3):281.e1, 2017
Kashanian M, Koohpayehzadeh J, Sheikhansari N, et al: A comparison between the two methods of magnesium sulfate administration for duration of 12 versus 24 h after de1ivery in patients with severe preeclampsia. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(14):2282, 2016
Katz L, de Amorim MM, Figueroa JN, et al: Postpartum dexamethasone for women with hemolysis, e1evated liver enzymes, and low plate1ets (HE1LP) syndrome: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, randomized clinical trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198:283.e1, 2008
Knight M, UK Obstetric Surveillance System (UKOSS): Eclampsia in the United Kingdom 2005. BJOG 114:1072, 2007
Koopmans CM, Bijlenga D, Groen H, et al: Induction of labour versus expectant monitoring for gestational hypertension or mild pre-eclampsia after 36 weeks' gestation (HYPITAT): a multicentre, open-labe1 randomized controlled trial. Lancet 374(9694):979, 2009
Kristensen JH, Basit S, Wohlfahrt J, et al: Preeclampsia and risk of later kidney disease: nationwide cohort study. BMJ 365:1516, 2019
Lam DS, Chan W: Images in clinical medicine. Choroidal ischemia in preeclampsia. N Engl J Med 344(10):739, 2001
Langenve1d J, Rave1li AC, van Kaam AH, et al: Neonatal outcome of pregnancies complicated by hypertensive disorders between 34 and 37 weeks of gestation: a 7 year retrospective analysis of national registry. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(6):540.e1, 2011
Lavie A, Ram M, Lev S, et al: Maternal cardiovascular hemodynamics in normotensive versus preeclamptic pregnancies: a prospective longitudinal study using a noninvasive cardiac system (NICaS™) BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 18(1):229, 2018
Leveno KJ, Alexander JM, McIntire DD, et al: Does magnesium sulfate given for prevention of eclampsia affect the outcome of labor? Am J Obstet Gynecol 178:707, 1998
Lopes van Balen VA, Spaan JJ, Corne1is T, et al: Prevalence of chronic kidney disease after preeclampsia. J Nephrol 30(3):403, 2017
Lopes Perdigao J, Lewey J, Hirshberg A, et al: Furosemide for acce1erated recovery of blood pressure postpartum: a randomized placebo controlled trial. Hypertension 77(5):1517, 2021
Lucas MJ, Leveno KJ, Cunningham FG: A comparison of magnesium sulfate with phenytoin for the prevention of eclampsia. N Engl J Med 333:201, 1995
Ludmir J, Vigil-De Gracia P, Mag-Pip (Magnesium postpartum in preeclampsia) study group: Is magnesium sulfate use of benefit postpartum? A randomized controlled trial. Abstract No. 4, Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:S3, 2017
Lykke JA, Langhoff-Roos J, Sibai BM, et al: Hypertensive pregnancy disorders and subsequent cardiovascular morbidity and type 2 diabetes me1litus in the mother. Hypertension 53:944, 2009
Mable WC, Gonzalez AR, Sibai BM, et al: A comparative trial of labetalol and hydralazine in the acute management of severe hypertension complicating pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 70:328, 1987
Magee LA, von Dade1szen P, Rey E, et al: Less-tight versus tight control of hypertension in pregnancy. N Engl J Med 372(5):407, 2015
Magpie Trial Collaboration Group: Do women with preeclampsia, and their babies, benefit from magnesium sulphate? The Magpie Trial: a randomised placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 359:1877, 2002
Magpie Trial Follow-Up Collaborative Group: The Magpie Trial: a randomized trial comparing magnesium sulphate with placebo for preeclampsia. Outcome for women at 2 years. BJOG 114:300, 2007
Malmström, Håberg SE, Morken NH: Probability and outcomes of second pregnancy after HE1LP syndrome in the first: a population-based registry study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(9):1206, 2020
Martin JN Jr: Severe systolic hypertension and the search for safer motherhood. Semin Perinatol 40(2):119, 2016
Martin JN Jr, Files JC, Blake PG, et al: Postpartum plasma exchange for atypical preeclampsia–eclampsia as HELLP (hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets) syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 172:1107, 1995
Martin JN Jr, Thigpen BI, Moore RC, et al: Stroke and severe preeclampsia and eclampsia: a paradigm shift focusing on systolic blood pressure. Obstet Gynecol 105(2):246, 2005
Mattar F, Sibai BM: Eclampsia. VIII. Risk factors for maternal morbidity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:307, 2000
McCarty-Singleton S, Sciscione AS: Maternal activity restriction in pregnancy and the prevention of preterm birth: an evidence-based review. Clin Obstet Gynaecol 57:616, 2014
Mooney SS, Lee RM, Tong S, et al: Expectant management of severe preterm preeclampsia: a comparison of maternal and fetal indications for delivery. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(23):3821, 2016
Morisaki H, Yamamoto S, Morita Y, et al: Hypermagnesemia-induced cardiopulmonary arrest before induction of anesthesia for emergency cesarean section. J Clin Anesth 12(3):224, 2000
Mulder EG, Ghossein-Doha C, Crutsen J, et al: Effect of pregnancy prolongation in early-onset-preeclampsia on postpartum maternal cardiovascular, renal and metabolic function in primiparous women: an observational study. BJOG 128(1):121, 2021
Narasimhulu D, Brown A, Egbert NM, et al: Maternal magnesium therapy, neonatal serum magnesium concentration and immediate neonatal outcomes. J Perinatol 37(12):1297, 2017
National High Blood Pressure Education Program: Working group report on high blood pressure in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:51, 2000
Nerenberg KA, Park AL, Vigod SN, et al: Long-term risk of a seizure disorder after eclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 130(6):1327, 2017
Newsome LR, Bramwell RS, Curling PE: Severe preeclampsia: hemodynamic effects of lumbar epidural anesthesia. Anesth Analg 65:31, 1986
Nguyen TM, Crowther CA, Wilkinson D, et al: Magnesium sulfate for women at term for neuroprotection of the fetus. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD009395, 2013
Novotny S, Lee-Plenty N, Wallace K, et al: Acute kidney injury associated with preeclampsia or hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets syndrome. Pregnancy Hypertens 19:94, 2020
Obeidat B, MacDougall J, Harding K: Plasma exchange in a woman with thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura or severe preeclampsia eclampsia. BJOG 109:961, 2002
Øian P, Maltau JM, Noddleland H, et al: Transcapillary fluid balance in preeclampsia. BJOG 93:235, 1986
Okusanya BO, Oladapo OT, Long O, et al: Clinical pharmacokinetic properties of magnesium sulphate in women with preeclampsia and eclampsia. BJOG 123(3):356, 2016
Paidas MJ, Tita AT, Macones GA, et al: Prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled evaluation of the pharmacokinetics, safety and efficacy of recombinant antithrombin versus placebo in preterm preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(5):739.e1, 2020
Penfield CA, McNulty JA, Oakes MC, et al: Ibuprofen and postpartum blood pressure in women with hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 134(6):1219, 2019
Pickles CJ, Broughton Pipkin F, Symonds EM: A randomised placebo controlled trial of labetalol in the treatment of mild to moderate pregnancy induced hypertension. BJOG 99(12):964, 1992
Pourrat O, Dorey M, Ragot S, et al: High-dose methylprednisolone to prevent platelet decline in preeclampsia: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 128:153, 2016
Pritchard JA: The use of magnesium ion in the management of eclamptogenic toxemias. Surg Gynecol Obstet 100:131, 1955
Pritchard JA, Cunningham FG, Pritchard SA: The Parkland Memorial Hospital protocol for treatment of eclampsia: evaluation of 245 cases. Am J Obstet Gynecol 148(7):951, 1984
Pritchard JA, Pritchard SA: Standardized treatment of 154 consecutive cases of eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 123(5):543, 1975
Rodriguez AN, Nelson DB, Spong CY, et al: Acute kidney injury in pregnancies complicated by preeclampsia with severe features. Abstract No. 1012. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220:S627, 2021

Roland C, Warshak CR, DeFranco EA: Success of labor induction for preeclampsia at preterm and term gestational ages. J Perinatol 37(6):636, 2017
Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists: The management of severe pre-eclampsia. RCOG Guideline 10A:1, 2006
Salinger DH, Mundie S, Regi A, et al: Magnesium sulphate for prevention of eclampsia: are intramuscular and intravenous regimens equivalent? A population pharmacokinetic study. BJOG 120(7):894, 2013
Sciscione AC, Ivester T, Largoza M, et al: Acute pulmonary edema in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 101:511, 2003
Sharma KJ, Greene N, Kilpatrick SJ: Oral labetalol compared to oral nifedipine for postpartum hypertension: a randomized controlled trial. Hypertens Pregnancy 36(1):44, 2017
Shear RM, Rinfret D, Leduc L: Should we offer expectant management in cases of severe preterm preeclampsia with fetal growth restriction? Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:1119, 2005
Sibai BM: Etiology and management of postpartum hypertension and preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(6):470, 2012
Sibai BM, Barton JR, Akl S, et al: A randomized prospective comparison of nifedipine and bed rest versus bed rest alone in the management of preeclampsia remote from term. Am J Obstet Gynecol 167(1):879, 1992
Sibai BM, El-Nazer A, Gonzalez-Ruiz A: Severe preeclampsia- eclampsia in young primigravid women: subsequent pregnancy outcome and remote prognosis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 155:011, 1986
Sibai BM, Gonzalez AR, Mable WC, et al: A comparison of labetalol plus hospitalization versus hospitalization alone in the management of preeclampsia remote from term. Obstet Gynecol 70:323, 1987a
Sibai BM, Mable BC, Harvey CJ, et al: Pulmonary edema in severe preeclampsia-eclampsia: analysis of thirty-seven consecutive cases. Am J Obstet Gynecol 156:1174, 1987b
Sibai BM, Mercer B, Sarinoglu C: Severe preeclampsia in the second trimester: recurrence risk and long—term prognosis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 165:1408, 1991
Sibai BM, Mercer BM, Schiff E, et al: Aggressive versus expectant management of severe preeclampsia at 28 to 32 weeks' gestation: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 171:818, 1994
Sibai BM, Spinnato JA, Watson DL, et al: Eclampsia. IV. Neurological findings and future outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 15:184, 1985
Siepmann T, Boardman H, Bilderbeck A, et al: Long-term cerebral white and gray matter changes after preeclampsia. Neurology 88(13):1256, 2017
Smyth RM, Spark P, Armstrong N, et al: Magpie Trial in the UK: methods and additional data for women and children at 2 years following pregnancy complicated by preeclampsia. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 9:15, 2009
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Gibson KS, Hameed AB: Special statement: checklist for postpartum discharge of women with hypertensive disorders. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(4):B18, 2020a
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Lauder J, Sciscione A, et al: The role of activity restriction in obstetric management. Consult Series No. 50, August 2020b
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Sibai BM: Evaluation and management of severe preeclampsia before 34 weeks' gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(3):191, 2011
Somjen G, Hilmy M, Stephen CR: Failure to anesthetize human subjects by intravenous administration of magnesium sulfate. J Pharmacol Exp Ther 154(3):652, 1966
Spaan JJ, Ekhart T, Spaanderman ME, et al: Remote hemodynamics and renal function in formerly preeclamptic women. Obstet Gynecol 113:853, 2009
Spaan JJ, Sep SJ, Lopes van Balen V, et al: Metabolic syndrome as a risk factor for hypertension after preeclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 120(2 Pt 1):311, 2012
Stamilio DM, Beckham AJ, Boggess KA, et al: Risk factors for postpartum readmission for preeclampsia or hypertension before delivery discharge among low-risk women: a case-control study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 3(3):100317, 2021
Stuart JJ, Tanz LJ, Missmer SA, et al: Hypertensive disorders of pregnancy and maternal cardiovascular disease risk factor development: an observational cohort study. Ann Intern Med 169(4):224, 2018
Tan LK, de Swiet M: The management of postpartum hypertension. BJOG 109(7):733, 2002
Tang J, He A, Li N, et al: Magnesium sulfate—mediated vascular relaxation and calcium channel activity in placental vessels different from nonplacental vessels. J Am Heart Assoc 7(14):e009896, 2018
Thadhani R, Hagmann H, Schaarschmidt W, et al: Removal of soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase-l by dextran sulfate apheresis in preeclampsia. J Am Soc Nephrol 27(3):903, 2016
Theilen LH, Fraser A, Hollingshaus MS, et al: All-cause and cause-specific mortality after hypertensive disease of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 128(2):238, 2016
Thurnau GR, Kemp DB, Jarvis A: Cerebrospinal fluid levels of magnesium in patients with preeclampsia after treatment with intravenous magnesium sulfate: a preliminary report. Am J Obstet Gynecol 157:1435, 1987
Tsai HM, Kuo E: From gestational hypertension and preeclampsia to atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome. Obstet Gynecol 127:907, 2016
Tudela CM, McIntire DD, Alexander JM: Effect of maternal body mass index on serum magnesium levels given for seizure prophylaxis. Obstet Gynecol 121(2 Pt 1):314, 2013
Turanov M, Lo A, Hassier MR, et al: RNAi modulation of placental sFLT1 for the treatment of preeclampsia. Nat Biotechnol November 19, 2018 [Epub ahead of print]
Turnbull DA, Wilkinson C, Gerard K, et al: Clinical, psychosocial, and economic effects of antenatal day care for three medical complications of pregnancy: a randomized controlled trial of 395 women. Lancet 363:1104, 2004
Umans JG, Abalos E: Cunningham FG: Antihypertensive treatment. In: Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015
Valensise H, Lo Presti D, Gagliardi G, et al. Persistent maternal cardiac dysfunction after preeclampsia identifies patients at risk for recurrent preeclampsia. Hypertension 67(4):748, 2016
Veena P, Lakshimdeepthi P, Raghavan SS: Furosemide in postpartum management of severe preeclampsia: a randomized controlled trial. Hypertens Preg 36:84, 2017
Vigil-De Gracia P, Ludmir J: Perinatal and hemodynamic evaluation of sildenafil citrate for preeclampsia treatment: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 128(5): 1181, 2016
Vigil-De Gracia P, Ludmir J, Ng J, et al: Is there benefit to continue magnesium sulphate postpartum in women receiving magnesium sulphate before delivery? A randomised controlled study. BJOG 125(10):1304, 2018
Vigil-De Gracia P, Tejada OR, Minaca AC, et al: Expectant management of severe preeclampsia remote from term: the MEXPRE Latin Study, a randomized multicenter clinical trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209:425e1, 2013
Wallace DH, Leveno KJ, Cunningham FG, et al: Randomized comparison of general and regional anesthesia for cesarean delivery in pregnancies complicated by severe preeclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 86:193, 1995
Wang Y, Arvizu A, Rich-Edwards J, et al: Hypertensive disorders of pregnancy and subsequent risk of premature mortality. J Am Coll Cardiol 77(10):1302, 2021
Wang LC, Huang C Y, Want HK, et al: Magnesium sulfate and nimesulide have synergistic effects on rescuing brain damage after transient focal ischemia. J Neurotrauma 29(7):1518, 2012
Watt-Morse ML, Caritis SN, Kridgen PL: Magnesium sulfate is a poor inhibitor of oxytocin-induced contractility in pregnant sheep. J Matern Fetal Med 4:139, 1995
Wen SW, White RR, Rybak N, et al: Effect of high dose folic acid supplementation in pregnancy on preeclampsia (FACT): double blind, phase III, randomised controlled, international, multi centre trial. BMJ 362:k3478, 2018
White WM, Mielke MM, Araoz PA, et al: A history of preeclampsia is associated with a risk for coronary artery calcification 3 decades later. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(4):519.e1, 2016
Wide-Swensson DH, Ingemarsson I, Lunell NO, et al: Calcium channel blockade (isradipine) in treatment of hypertension in pregnancy: a randomized placebo-controlled study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 173(1):872, 1995
Wiegman MJ, de Groot JC, Jansonius NM, et al: Long-term visual functioning after eclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 119(5): 959, 2012
Winkler K, Contini C, Konig B, et al: Treatment of very preterm preeclampsia via heparin-mediated extracorporeal LDL-precipitation (H.E.L.P.) apheresis: The Freiburg preeclampsia H.E.L.P.-Apheresis study. Pregnancy Hypertens 12:136, 2018
Witlin AG, Friedman SA, Sibai BA: The effect of magnesium sulfate therapy on the duration of labor in women with mild preeclampsia at term: a randomized, double-blind, placebo- controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 176:623, 1997
Yefet E, Braester Y, Suleiman A, et al: The effect of magnesium sulfate at 1 gram versus 2 grams maintenance doses on serum magnesium concentrations and adverse effects profile in women with severe preeclampsia. Abstract No. 884, Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:S504, 2017
Zeeman GG, Cunningham FG, Pritchard JA: The magnitude of hemoconcentration with eclampsia. Hypertens Pregnancy 28(2):127, 2009
Zeeman GG, Fleckenstein JL, Twickler DM, et al: Cerebral infarction in eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190:714, 2004
Zeisler H, Llurba E, Chantraine F, et al: Predictive value of the sFlt-1:PIGF ratio in women with suspected preeclampsia. N Engl J Med 374:13, 2016
Zinaman M, Rubin J, Lindheimer MD: Serial plasma oncotic pressure levels and echoencephalography during and after delivery in severe preeclampsia. Lancet 1:1245, 1985
Zofkie A, Cunningham FG: 33-year single center experience with pregnancy-associated strokes. Abstract No. 799, Am J Obstet Gynecol 218:S476, 2018
Zondervan HA, Oosting J, Smorenberg-Schoorl ME, et al: Maternal whole blood viscosity in pregnancy hypertension. Gynecol Obstet Invest 25:83, 1988
Zulfeen M, Tatapudi R, Sowjanya R: IV labetalol and oral nifedipine in acute control of severe hypertension in pregnancy—a randomized controlled trial. Eur J Obstet Reprod Biol 236:46, 2019

CHAPTER 42

Causes of Obstetrical Hemorrhage

In addition to hypertension and infection, obstetrical hemorrhage remains among the infamous triad of maternal death causes. Of more than 7000 pregnancy-related maternal deaths in the United States from 2006 to 2015, hemorrhage was a direct cause in 11 percent (Creanga, 2015, 2017; Petersen, 2019). Hemorrhage is also the single most important cause of maternal death worldwide (Goffman, 2016; Oladapo, 2016). Notably, perhaps a third of severe cases of hemorrhage are likely preventable (Lepine, 2020).

These statistics have prompted several organizations to develop programs to prevent hemorrhage-related maternal morbidity. In the United States, one example is the Alliance for Innovation on Maternal Health (AIM) (2015), with its intent to standardize recognition, response, and reporting of obstetrical hemorrhage. The Joint Commission (2019) has also implemented standards under the Provision of Care, Treatment, and Services chapter for obstetrical hemorrhage—the R3 Report. Our following three chapters align with these.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Mechanisms of Normal Hemostasis

Near term, an incredible amount of blood—at least 600 mL/min—flows through the spiral arteries and into the intervillous space (Pates, 2010). Averaging 120 in number, the spiral arteries lack a muscular layer because of their remodeling by trophoblasts and thereby form a low-pressure system. With placental separation, vessels at the implantation site are avulsed. Hemostasis is achieved first by myometrial contraction, which directly compresses the arteries. Compression is followed by clotting and eventually by obliteration of vessel lumens.

If, after delivery, the myometrium contracts vigorously, substantial hemorrhage from the placental implantation site is unlikely. *Importantly, an intact coagulation system is not necessary for postpartum hemostasis unless there are lacerations in the uterus, birth canal, or perineum.* However, fatal postpartum hemorrhage can result from uterine atony despite normal coagulation.

Definition and Incidence

Historically, postpartum hemorrhage has been defined as blood losses ≥500 mL after the third stage of labor. This is problematic because almost half of all women delivered vaginally shed that amount of blood or more when losses are carefully measured. Moreover, approximately 5 percent of women delivering vaginally lose >1000 mL of blood (Fig. 42-1) (Pritchard, 1962). Almost a third of women undergoing cesarean delivery have blood loss >1000 mL. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) now defines postpartum hemorrhage as cumulative blood loss >1000 mL or blood loss accompanied by signs and symptoms of hypovolemia.

In a Maternal-Fetal Network Units study of more than 115,000 deliveries, the incidence of hemorrhage with vaginal

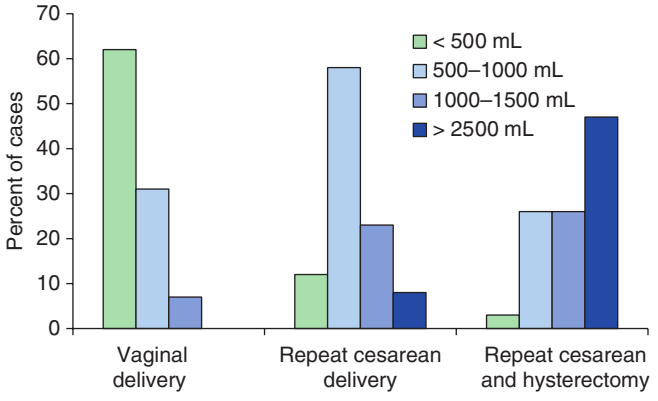


FIGURE 42-1 Measured blood loss with vaginal delivery, repeat cesarean delivery, and repeat cesarean delivery plus hysterectomy.

delivery was 5.3 percent, and it was 10.5 percent for cesarean delivery (Yee, 2019). Importantly, hemorrhage is underreported. From the National Hospital Discharge Summary database, the reported postpartum hemorrhage incidence between 2001 and 2005 was only 2.6 percent (Berg, 2009).

Blood Loss Assessment

At delivery, visual estimation is often used as a *qualitative* measure of blood loss. However, this method is more likely to under estimate the actual blood loss when volumes are high and to over estimate it when volumes are low (Al Kadri, 2011; Natrella, 2018). Thus, estimated blood loss that is considered greater than "average" should alert the provider.

Instead, different methods can be used as *quantitative* measures. First, gravimetric measurement weighs blood-soaked items and subtracts pre-use dry weights. Another evolving tool uses a tablet-device camera and colorimetric analysis to calculate blood loss (Spies, 2020; Venkatesh, 2020). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) recognizes the use of quantitative methods to help identify severe hemorrhage.

Intrapartum, quantitative measurement is more accurate than visual estimation, but the effectiveness of these methods on clinical outcomes has not been demonstrated. A Cochrane Review of three trials found no differences between subjective and objective methods when comparing outcomes that included need for transfusion, plasma expanders, or uterotonics (Diaz, 2018).

Postpartum, retrospective estimation also can be informative. The blood volume of a pregnant woman with normal pregnancy-induced hypervolemia usually rises by 50 percent. However, individual increases range from 30 to 60 percent, that is, 1500 to 2000 mL for an average-sized woman (Pritchard, 1965). The equation to calculate blood volume is shown in Table 42-1. It is axiomatic that a normal pregnant woman tolerates, without any decrease in postpartum hematocrit, blood loss at delivery that approaches the volume of blood that was added during pregnancy. Thus, if blood loss is less than the pregnancy-added volume, the hematocrit remains the same acutely and during the first several days postpartum. It then rises as nonpregnant plasma volume levels return during the next week or so. *Whenever the postpartum hematocrit is lower than one obtained on admission for delivery, blood loss can be estimated as the sum of the calculated pregnancy-added volume plus 500 mL for each 3-volume-percent decline of the hematocrit.*

For research and clinical care initiatives, excessive blood loss has been estimated by several methods (Coviello, 2019; Saoud, 2019). Tita and colleagues (2012) used a 6-volume-percent drop in the postpartum hematocrit to define clinically significant blood loss with vaginal delivery. This decline easily signifies a >1000-mL blood loss in the average-sized woman. They documented this amount in a fourth of women.

Another marker used to estimate hemorrhage incidence is the transfusion rate. In the study by Tita just cited, more than 6 percent of women who delivered vaginally underwent blood transfusion. In a study of more than 66,000 women delivered at Parkland Hospital, 2.3 percent overall were given

TABLE 42-1. Calculation of Maternal Total Blood Volume

Nonpregnant blood volume[a]:

$$\frac{[\text{Height (inches)} \times 50] + [\text{Weight (pounds)} \times 25]}{2} = \text{Blood volume (mL)}$$

Pregnancy blood volume:
Average increase is 30 to 60 percent of calculated nonpregnant volume
Increases across gestational age and plateaus at approximately 34 weeks' gestation
Usually larger with low-normal-range hematocrit (~30) and smaller with high-normal-range hematocrit (~40)
Average increase is 40 to 80 percent with multifetal gestation
Average increase is less with preeclampsia – volumes vary inversely with severity

Postpartum blood volume with serious hemorrhage:
Assume acute return to nonpregnant total volume after volume resuscitation
Pregnancy hypervolemia cannot be restored postpartum

[a]Formula arrived at by measuring blood volume and blood loss in more than 100 women using ^{51}Cr-labeled erythrocytes.
Data from Hernandez, 2012; Pritchard, 1962.

blood transfusions for hypovolemia (Hernandez, 2012). Half of these women had undergone cesarean delivery. Importantly, for those transfused, these investigators calculated blood loss to average approximately 3500 mL!

The need for blood transfusion is now followed as a *severe maternal morbidity (SMM)* indicator. The heightened awareness of SMM is outlined in Chapter 1 (p. 5). Transfusions represent more than 80 percent of total SMM rates. The incidence of *massive transfusion* for postpartum hemorrhage has been reported to be from 25 to 65 per 100,000 births (Green, 2016; Ramler, 2019). However, defining healthcare quality using transfusion as an SMM metric is problematic. First, this metric is solely derived from administrative billing codes. Second, transfusion rates may be skewed based on the hospital's case-mix (Bailit, 2013). This can distort values for regional referral centers that care for women at high risk for hemorrhage, such as those with placenta accreta spectrum.

Risk Factors

Hemorrhage can manifest at any time during pregnancy, delivery, or the puerperium. Contributions to maternal death from some of these causes of are shown in Figure 42-2. The Joint Commission (2019) requires accredited delivery services to employ tools that evaluate maternal hemorrhage risk on admission to labor and delivery and postpartum. Several methods are available, and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' (2019b) scoring tool stratifies risk using several obstetrical factors listed in Table 42-2. Unfortunately, these scoring systems only modestly predict hemorrhage (Chu, 2020). Kawakita and colleagues (2019) examined three commonly referenced tools and found moderate performance in identifying women at risk during cesarean delivery. In contrast, the Association of Women's Health, Obstetric and Neonatal Nurses (AWHONN) risk assessment tool was predictive of those at high risk (Colalillo, 2021).

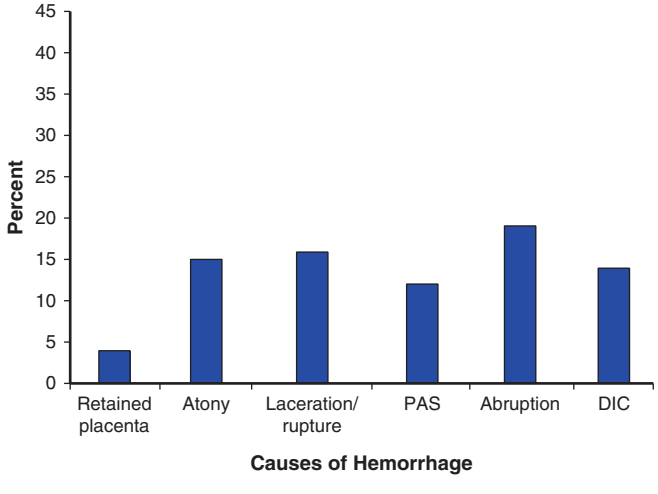


FIGURE 42-2 Contributions to maternal death from various causes of obstetrical hemorrhage. Percentages are approximations because of different classification schemata used. DIC = disseminated intravascular coagulopathy; PAS = placenta accreta spectrum. (Data from Al-Zirqi, 2008; Berg, 2010; Creanga, 2015; Zwart, 2008.)

TABLE 42-2. Obstetrical Hemorrhage: Causes, Predisposing Factors, and Vulnerable Patients

Abnormal Placentation
- Placenta previa
- Placental abruption
- Placenta accreta spectrum
- Ectopic pregnancy
- Hydatidiform mole

Injuries to the Birth Canal
- Episiotomy and lacerations
- Forceps or vacuum delivery
- Cesarean delivery or hysterectomy
- Uterine rupture
  - Previously scarred uterus
  - High parity
  - Tachysystole
  - Obstructed labor
  - Intrauterine manipulation
  - Midforceps rotation
  - Breech extraction

Obstetrical Factors
- Obesity
- Previous postpartum hemorrhage
- Early preterm pregnancy
- Sepsis
- Preeclampsia/eclampsia

Vulnerable Patients
- Chronic renal insufficiency
- Constitutionally small size

Uterine Atony
- Uterine overdistention
  - Large fetus
  - Multiple fetuses
  - Hydramnios
  - Retained clots
- Labor induction
- Anesthesia or analgesia
  - Halogenated agents
  - Regional analgesia with hypotension
- Labor abnormalities
  - Rapid labor
  - Prolonged labor
  - Augmented labor
  - Chorioamnionitis
- Previous uterine atony
- Parity: primiparity, high parity

Coagulation Defects—Intensify Other Causes
- Massive transfusions
- Placental abruption
- Sepsis
- HELLP syndrome
- Acute fatty liver
- Anticoagulant treatment
- Congenital coagulopathies
- Amnionic fluid embolism
- Prolonged retention of dead fetus
- Saline-induced abortion

HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count.

Timing of Hemorrhage

Obstetrical hemorrhage is traditionally classified as *antepartum*—such as with placenta previa or placental abruption, or as *postpartum*—commonly caused by uterine atony or genital tract lacerations. In individual women, however, these terms are nonspecific, and it is reasonable to specify the cause and gestational age as descriptors.

With antepartum hemorrhage, timing may give a clue to its cause. Many aspects of bleeding during the first half of pregnancy from abortion or ectopic pregnancy are covered in Chapters 11 and 12. Discussions that follow concern pregnancies with a viable-size fetus. *In these cases, rapid assessment should always consider the deleterious fetal effects of maternal hemorrhage.*

During active labor, slight vaginal bleeding is common. This "bloody show" is the consequence of cervical effacement and dilation and concurrent tearing of small vessels. However, with uterine bleeding above the cervix, placental abruption, placenta

previa, and vasa previa must be considered. The first two are presented in Chapter 43 and vasa previa is discussed in Chapter 6 (p. 115). In some women, especially those with a placenta previa, cervical varicosities may bleed (O'Brien, 2013).

Near term in many women, the source of uterine bleeding is not identified, bleeding ceases, and no apparent anatomical cause is found at delivery. In most of these cases, bleeding likely originated from a slight marginal placental separation. *Despite this, any pregnancy with antepartum bleeding remains at higher risk for an adverse outcome even though bleeding has stopped and placenta previa has been excluded sonographically.*

Bleeding after midpregnancy is associated with several adverse outcomes. The Canadian Perinatal Network described 806 women with hemorrhage between 22 and 28 weeks' gestation (Sabourin, 2012). Placental abruption (32 percent), previa (21 percent), and cervical bleeding (6.6 percent) were the most frequent causes identified. In a third, no cause was found. Of all women, 44 percent were delivered before 29 weeks' gestation. In more than 68,000 women in Scotland, the incidence of antepartum hemorrhage after the first trimester was 11 percent (Bhandari, 2014). These women were at significantly higher risk for preterm birth, labor induction, and postpartum hemorrhage.

With postpartum hemorrhage, the source in most cases can and should be determined. Frequent causes are uterine atony with placental site bleeding, genital tract trauma, or both. Postpartum hemorrhage is usually obvious. Important exceptions are unrecognized intrauterine and intravaginal blood accumulation and uterine rupture with intraperitoneal or retroperitoneal bleeding. Another consideration is an expanding vulvar or vaginal hematoma (p. 740). Initial evaluation includes attempts to differentiate uterine atony from genital tract lacerations. For this, risk factors are sought, the lower genital tract is examined, and uterine tone is assessed. Atony is identified by a boggy, soft uterus during bimanual examination and by expression of clots and hemorrhage during uterine massage.

Persistent bleeding despite a firm, well-contracted uterus suggests that hemorrhage most likely is from lacerations. Bright red blood further suggests arterial bleeding. *To confirm that lacerations are a source of bleeding, careful inspection of the vagina, cervix, and uterus is essential.* Examination is easier if regional analgesia is employed. Transfer from a labor and delivery room to an operative suite also may be prudent. If there are no lower genital tract lacerations and the uterus is contracted, yet supracervical bleeding persists, manual exploration of the uterus is done to exclude a uterine tear (Kaplanoglu, 2016). This also is completed routinely after internal podalic version or breech extraction. Some perform this after successful vaginal birth after cesarean, and this is our practice. *Late postpartum hemorrhage* describes bleeding after the first 24 hours. Found in up to 1 percent of women, one risk factor is postpartum hemorrhage at the time of delivery (Fein, 2021). Delayed hemorrhage may be serious and is discussed in Chapter 36 (p. 637).

Appreciation of Estimated Blood Loss

As discussed, visual blood loss estimates are often inaccurate, especially with excessive bleeding. Instead of sudden and massive hemorrhage, postpartum bleeding is frequently steady. If bleeding from atony or laceration persists, it may appear to be only moderate at any given instant but may continue until serious hypovolemia develops. In some cases, after placental separation, blood may not escape vaginally but instead may collect within the uterine cavity, which can become distended by 1000 mL or more of blood. Moreover, postpartum uterine massage will be ineffective if applied to a roll of abdominal fat mistaken for the uterus. All of these factors can lead to an underappreciation of the magnitude of hemorrhage over time.

The effects of hemorrhage depend mainly on the maternal nonpregnant blood volume and the corresponding degree of pregnancy-induced hypervolemia. Small women—even those with appropriate pregnancy-induced hypervolemia—do not tolerate more than seemingly average blood loss. Some gravidas may be particularly susceptible to hemorrhage because their blood volume expansion is less than expected. An example is women with severe preeclampsia or eclampsia, who are more vulnerable to hemorrhage because they frequently do not have a normal blood volume accrual. Specifically, Zeeman and associates (2009) documented a mean increase above nonpregnant volume of only 10 percent in eclamptic women (Chap. 40, p. 693). Another example is the moderate to severe curtailing of pregnancy-induced volume expansion in women with chronic renal insufficiency (Chap. 56, p. 1004). *When excessive hemorrhage is suspected in these high-risk women, crystalloid and blood are promptly administered for suspected hypovolemia.*

A treacherous feature of postpartum hemorrhage is the failure of the pulse and blood pressure to undergo more than moderate alterations until large amounts of blood have been lost. The normotensive woman initially may actually become somewhat hypertensive from catecholamine release in response to hemorrhage. Importantly, women with preeclampsia may become "normotensive" despite remarkable hypovolemia. Accordingly, hypovolemia may not be recognized until very late.

UTERINE ATONY

Third-stage Labor Management

The most frequent cause of obstetrical hemorrhage is failure of the uterus after delivery to contract sufficiently and arrest bleeding from vessels at the placental implantation site (Yee, 2019). That said, some bleeding is inevitable during third-stage labor as the placenta begins to separate. Blood from the implantation site may escape into the vagina immediately—the *Duncan mechanism* of placental separation, or it remains concealed behind the placenta and membranes until the placenta is delivered—the *Schultze mechanism.* Placental descent is signified by a slack umbilical cord. After signs of placental separation, the uterus should be massaged if it is not contracted firmly. *Importantly, separation and delivery of the placenta by cord traction, especially when the uterus is atonic, may cause uterine inversion.*

Following placental delivery, the fundus is always palpated to confirm that the uterus is well contracted. If it is not firm,

vigorous fundal massage usually prevents postpartum hemorrhage from atony (Hofmeyr, 2013). Concurrent administration of a uterotonic agent, discussed in the next sections, is another recommended preventive measure.

Risk Factors

In many women with known risks, uterine atony can at least be anticipated. However, as discussed earlier (p. 733), risk-based scoring systems have limited value. In one study, up to half of women with atony after cesarean delivery had no risk factors (Rouse, 2006). The magnitude of risk for atony imposed by each of the factors shown in Table 42-2 varies considerably between reports. *Primiparity* and *high parity* are two factors (Driessen, 2011). In one study, the incidence of postpartum hemorrhage rose from 0.3 percent in women of low parity to 1.9 percent with parity of four or greater. It was 2.7 percent with parity of seven or greater (Babinszki, 1999). The *overdistended uterus* is prone to hypotonia after delivery, and thus women with a large fetus, multiple fetuses, or hydramnios carry greater risk (Blitz, 2019). *Labor abnormalities* predispose to atony and include hyper- or hypotonic labor. Similarly, *labor induction* or *augmentation* with either prostaglandins or oxytocin is more likely to be followed by atony (Driessen, 2011). The frequency of hemorrhage increases with third-stage labor lasting >20 minutes (Frolova, 2016). Last, the woman who has had a *prior postpartum hemorrhage* is at risk for recurrence.

Evaluation and Management

To improve immediate postpartum care, clinical safety bundles provide a standardized response (Fig. 42-3). In principle, all of these programs suggest notifying unit personnel, activating resources, and standardizing management. With immediate postpartum hemorrhage, careful inspection aims to exclude birth canal laceration. In some cases, bleeding is caused by retained placental fragments, and placental inspection after delivery should be routine. If a defect is seen, the uterus should be manually explored and the fragment removed. Occasionally, retention of a *succenturiate lobe* may cause postpartum hemorrhage (Chap. 6, p. 108). During examination for lacerations and causes of atony, the uterus is massaged and uterotonic agents are administered.

Manual Removal of the Placenta

If heavy bleeding persists after delivery of the newborn but while the placenta remains partially or totally attached, then manual placental removal is indicated (Cummings, 2016; Frolova, 2016). For this, adequate analgesia is mandatory, and aseptic surgical technique is used. As illustrated in Figure 27-8 (p. 508), the fingertips of one hand, with fingers approximated, are insinuated between the uterine wall and placenta. A sweeping forward motion in this plane will peel the placenta off its uterine attachment. After its removal, trailing membranes are carefully teased free from the decidua using ring forceps as needed. Another method to clear membranes is to wipe out the uterine cavity with a gauze-wrapped hand. Bierer forceps guided by ultrasound to remove retained placenta also has been described (Siegel, 2020).

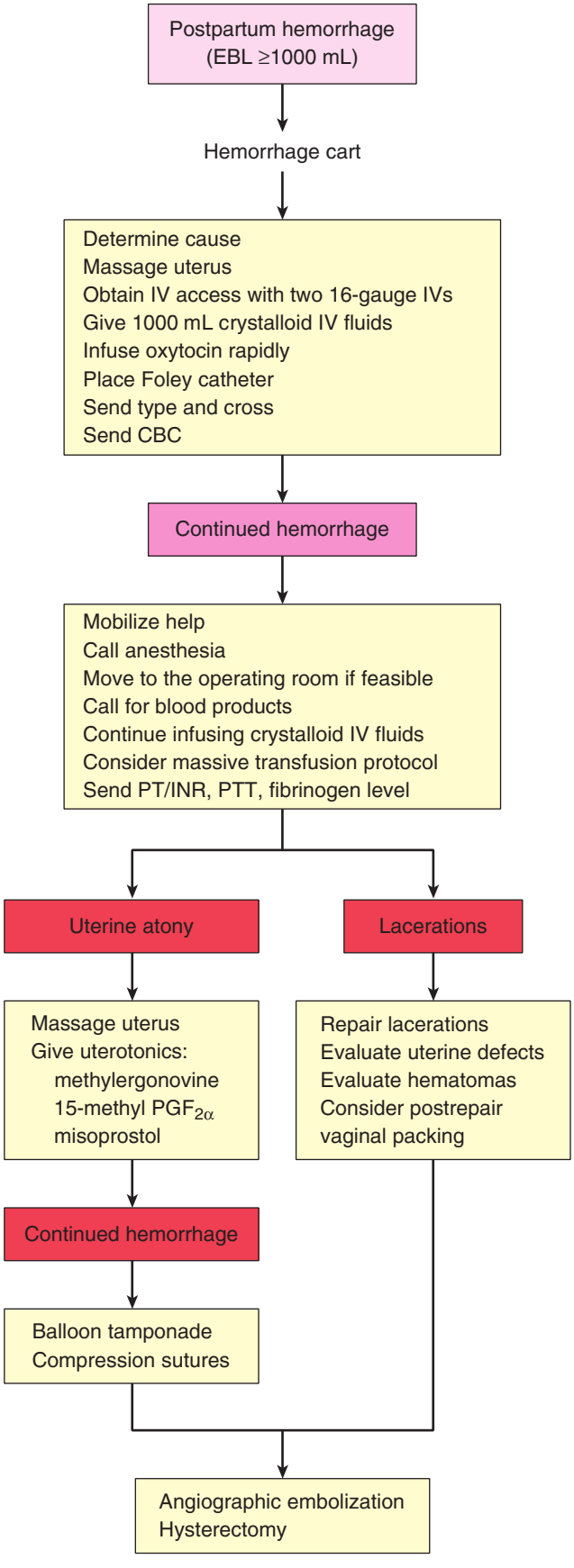


FIGURE 42-3 Parkland Hospital algorithm for management of postpartum hemorrhage. CBC = complete blood count; EBL = estimated blood loss; INR = international normalized ratio; IV = intravenous; PT = prothrombin time; PTT = partial thromboplastin time.

Some administer a single dose of intravenous antibiotics after manual uterine exploration, however, one systematic review of observational studies found no benefits (Chibueze, 2015). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) concluded that data neither support nor refute this practice. The World Health Organization (WHO) (2015) recommends ampicillin or cefazolin antimicrobial prophylaxis after manual placenta removal. At Parkland Hospital, we routinely provide a single dose of cefazolin after manual exploration.

Uterotonic Agents

Several compounds can be used to prompt the postpartum uterus to contract. One of these is routinely selected and given to *prevent* postpartum bleeding. Choices for prophylaxis include oxytocin (Pitocin); the ergots, namely ergonovine (Ergotrate) and methylergonovine (Methergine); or misoprostol (Cytotec) (Chap. 27, p. 507). The WHO (2018) recommends oxytocin for first-line use for prophylaxis. For administration, 20 units of oxytocin in 1000 mL of crystalloid solution is effective and given intravenously (IV) at 10 mL/min for a dose of 200 mU/min. Higher concentrations are minimally more efficient (Tita, 2012). A summary of oxytocin administration regimens is found in the Practice Brief of the Association of Women's Health Objective and Neonatal Nurses—AWHONN (2014). In those without IV access, oxytocin may be given intramuscularly (IM). Adnan and colleagues (2018) found the IV route to more effectively prevent severe hemorrhage compared with IM administration. *Oxytocin is never given as an undiluted bolus dose because serious hypotension or cardiac arrhythmias can develop.*

Most agents for prevention of atony are also used to *treat* it. For atony, IV oxytocin is continued or may be initiated if not selected initially. It is considered first-line treatment by the WHO (2012). If bleeding and atony are refractory, an agent from a different group can be added (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a).

Ergot alkaloids have been used for centuries to treat uterine atony. If atony persists despite oxytocin and other preventive measures, ergot derivatives can be used for second-line treatment. Given parenterally, these drugs rapidly stimulate tetanic uterine contractions and act for approximately 45 minutes (Schimmer, 2011). A common regimen is 0.2 mg of either drug given IM. Methergine can be repeated at 2- to 4-hour intervals as needed. *A caveat is that ergot agents, especially given IV, may cause dangerous hypertension, especially in women with preeclampsia.* Severe hypertension is also seen with concomitant use of protease inhibitors given for human immunodeficiency viral (HIV) infection. These adverse effects notwithstanding, it is speculative whether ergot derivatives offer superior therapeutic effects compared with oxytocin.

Other second-line agents for atony have included the E- and F-series prostaglandins. Carboprost tromethamine (Hemabate) is the 15-methyl derivative of prostaglandin $F_{2\alpha}$. It is approved for uterine atony treatment in a dose of 250 μg (0.25 mg) given IM. This dose can be repeated if necessary, at 15- to 90-minute intervals up to a maximum of eight doses. Observational data indicate an 88-percent success rate (Oleen, 1990).

Carboprost causes side effects in approximately 20 percent of women. These include, in descending order of frequency, diarrhea, hypertension, vomiting, fever, flushing, and tachycardia. Another pharmacological effect is pulmonary airway and vascular constriction. Thus, carboprost should not be used for asthmatic women or those with pulmonary hypertension, including women those with suspected amnionic fluid embolism (p. 745). It has also been reported to cause arterial oxygen desaturation that averaged 10 percent (Hankins, 1988). We have occasionally encountered severe hypertension with carboprost given to women with preeclampsia. Other relative contraindications to carboprost include renal, liver, and cardiac disease (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a).

Misoprostol is a synthetic prostaglandin E_1 analogue. In a Cochrane review, Mousa and associates (2014) reported no added benefits for misoprostol use for treatment compared with oxytocin or ergonovine. If misoprostol is used to treat atony, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) recommends a dose of 600 to 1000 μg rectally, orally, or sublingually.

Dinoprostone (*Cervidil, Prepidil*) is prostaglandin E_2. It may also be used off label for atony treatment and is given as a 20-mg suppository per rectum or per vagina every 2 hours. It typically causes diarrhea, which is problematic for the rectal route, whereas vigorous vaginal bleeding may preclude its use per vagina. Hypotension, which is commonly encountered with hemorrhage, is considered a contraindication by some. For this reason, this agent is not deployed for hemorrhage management at Parkland Hospital. IV prostaglandin E_2—*sulprostone*—is used in Europe, but it is not available in the United States.

Tranexamic Acid

This antifibrinolytic agent has been evaluated to treat postpartum hemorrhage. In the randomized WOMAN trial of gravidas with hemorrhage following vaginal birth or during cesarean delivery, mortality rates from obstetrical hemorrhage were 1.2 percent in those given a 1-g IV tranexamic acid dose plus traditional care for bleeding. This rate was significantly lower than the 1.7-percent death rate in women given traditional care alone (WOMAN Trial Collaborators, 2017). Another study of women with hemorrhage following vaginal birth found that rates of progression to severe PPH, of transfusion, and of peripartum hysterectomy were lower in the TXA group compared with the traditional-care group (Ducloy-Bouthors, 2011). Use of tranexamic acid in hemorrhage is discussed further in Chapter 44 (p. 773).

Bleeding Unresponsive to Uterotonic Agents

If bleeding persists after initial measures for atony, the following management steps are performed immediately and simultaneously:

1. Begin bimanual uterine compression, which is easily done and controls most cases of continuing hemorrhage (Fig. 42-4). This technique is not simply fundal massage. The posterior uterine wall is massaged by one hand on the abdomen, while the other hand is made into a fist and placed into the vagina. This fist kneads the anterior uterine wall through the anterior vaginal wall, and the uterus is compressed between the two hands.
2. Mobilize the emergent-care obstetrical team and call for whole blood or packed red cells.

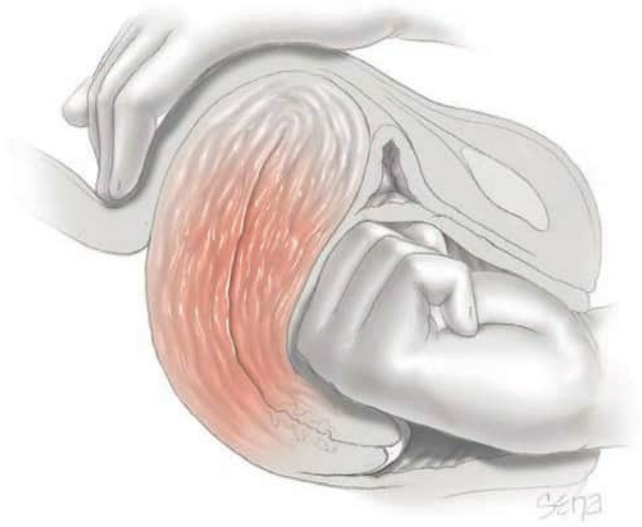


FIGURE 42-4 Bimanual compression for uterine atony. The uterus is positioned with the fist of one hand in the anterior fornix pushing against the anterior wall, which is held in place by the other hand on the abdomen. The abdominal hand is also used for uterine massage.

3. Request urgent help from the anesthesia team.
4. Secure at least two large-bore IV catheters so that crystalloid with oxytocin can be continued simultaneously with blood products. Insert a Foley catheter for continuous urine output monitoring.
5. Begin volume resuscitation with rapid IV crystalloid infusion (p. 734).
6. With sedation, analgesia, or anesthesia established and now with optimal exposure, once again manually explore the uterine cavity for retained placental fragments and for uterine abnormalities, including lacerations or rupture.
7. Thoroughly inspect the cervix and vagina again for lacerations that may have escaped attention.
8. Administer blood transfusions if the woman is still unstable or if bleeding persists (Chap. 44, p. 771).

At this juncture, after causes other than atony have been excluded and after hypovolemia is reversed, several other measures are considered if bleeding continues (Merriam, 2020). Their use depends on several factors such as parity, desire for sterilization, and experience with each method.

Balloon Tamponade and Surgical Procedures. For this, the tip of a 24F to 30F Foley catheter with a 30-mL balloon is guided into the uterine cavity and filled with 60 to 80 mL of saline. The open tip permits continuous drainage of blood from the uterus. We have experienced balloon rupture when more than 50 mL was instilled into the balloon, thus a 34F Foley with a 60-ml balloon can be used. If bleeding subsides, the catheter is typically removed after 12 to 24 hours. Similar devices for tamponade include Sengstaken-Blakemore, Rusch, and ebb balloons and condom catheters (Antony, 2017; Kondoh, 2019). Antibiotic prophylaxis using cefazolin, 1 gram every 8 hours until removal, has recently been suggested to reduce risk of postpartum endometritis (Martingano, 2020).

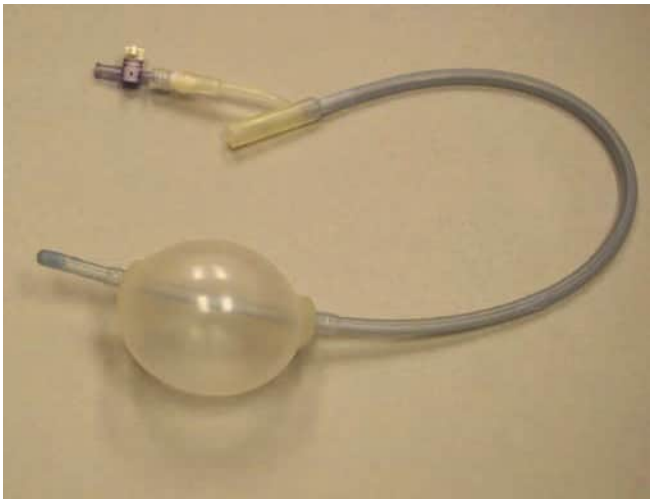


FIGURE 42-5 Intrauterine Bakri balloon for postpartum hemorrhage.

Instead, specially constructed intrauterine balloons are available to treat hemorrhage from uterine atony and other causes. A *Bakri Postpartum Balloon* or *BT-Cath* may be inserted and inflated to tamponade the endometrial cavity and stop bleeding (Fig. 42-5). Insertion requires two or three team members. The first performs abdominal sonography during the procedure. The second places the deflated balloon into the uterus and stabilizes it. The third member instills fluid to inflate the balloon, rapidly infusing at least 150 mL followed by further instillation over a few minutes for a total of 300 to 500 mL to arrest hemorrhage. It is reasonable to remove the balloon after approximately 12 hours (Einerson, 2017).

In small studies evaluating uterine balloons for all causes, the success rate approximated 85 percent (Kaya, 2016; Said Ali, 2021; Vintejoux, 2015). From their review, Suarez and associates (2020) used balloon tamponade in 4729 women and reported a similar success rate. At least one case of uterine rupture with a balloon has been reported (Ngyuen, 2018). Combinations of balloon tamponade and uterine compression sutures also have been described (Diemert, 2012; Yoong, 2012).

Failure of uterotonic agents and tamponade requires more invasive methods. These include uterine compression sutures, major pelvic vessel ligation, angiographic embolization, and hysterectomy. These are discussed in detail in Chapters 44 (p. 778). Peripartum hysterectomy is illustrated in Chapter 30 (p. 560).

UTERINE INVERSION

Puerperal inversion of the uterus is one of the classic hemorrhagic disasters encountered in obstetrics. Unless promptly recognized and managed appropriately, associated bleeding often is massive. Risk factors include alone or in combination: (1) placental implantation at the fundus, (2) uterine atony, (3) cord traction applied *before* placental separation, and (4) abnormally adherent placentation seen with placenta accreta spectrum disorders (Chap. 43, p. 759). Other risk factors are a short cord, uterine wall weakening at the implantation site, uterine tumors, and excessive fundal pressure (Wendel, 2018).

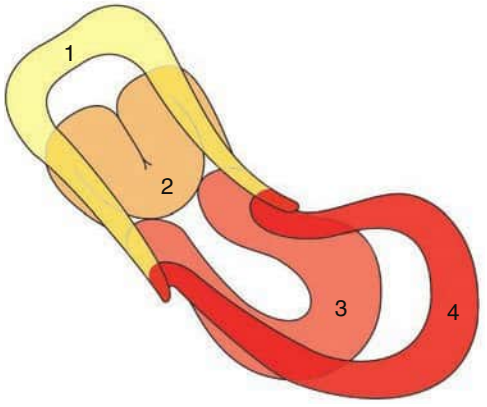


FIGURE 42-6 Progressive degrees of uterine inversion.

Depending on which of these factors are contributory, the incidence and severity of uterine inversion varies and can be progressive (Fig. 42-6). The worst scenario is complete inversion with the uterus protruding from the birth canal (Fig. 42-7).

The incidence of uterine inversion ranges from 1 case in 2000 to 1 in 20,000 vaginal deliveries (Coad, 2017; Witteveen, 2013). Our experiences at Parkland Hospital correspond with the higher 1:2000 incidence. This is despite our policy of discouraging placental delivery by cord traction alone, and before certainty of its separation. It is unknown if *active management of third-stage labor* with cord traction applied ostensibly *after* signs of placental separation raises the likelihood of uterine inversion (Deneux-Tharaux, 2013; Prick, 2013).

Recognition and Management

Immediate recognition of uterine inversion improves the chances of a quick resolution and good outcome. If initially unrecognized, continued hemorrhage likely will prompt closer examination of the birth canal. Although complete inversion is usually evident, the partially inverted uterus can be mistaken for a uterine myoma, and sonography can aid differentiation (Pan, 2015; Smulian, 2013). Many cases are associated with immediate life-threatening hemorrhage, and a fourth require blood replacement (Coad, 2017).

Once any degree of uterine inversion is recognized, several steps must be implemented urgently and simultaneously:

1. Immediate assistance is summoned, including obstetrical and anesthesia personnel.
2. Blood is brought to the delivery suite for potential use.
3. Two large-bore IV infusion systems are secured to begin rapid crystalloid infusion to treat hypovolemia while awaiting arrival of blood products.
4. The woman is evaluated for emergency general anesthesia.
5. If the recently inverted uterus has not contracted and retracted completely and if the placenta has already separated, the uterus may often be replaced simply by pushing up on the inverted fundus with the palm of the hand and fingers in the direction of the long axis of the vagina (Fig. 42-8). Some use two fingers rigidly extended to push the center of the fundus upward. *Care is taken not to apply so much pressure as to perforate the uterus with the fingertips.*
6. If the placenta is still attached, attempts are made to reposition the uterus with the placenta in situ. In theory, the uterus contracts to a lesser degree and placenta-site blood loss is less with an attached placenta. At this time a trial of an intravenously administered tocolytic drug may aid uterine relaxation and repositioning. Of options, a 250-μg subcutaneous dose of terbutaline, a 50- to 100-μg IV dose of nitroglycerin, or a 4-g IV dose of magnesium sulfate are suitable (Catanzarite, 1986; Dufour, 1997). If these fail to provide sufficient relaxation, then a rapid-acting halogenated inhalational

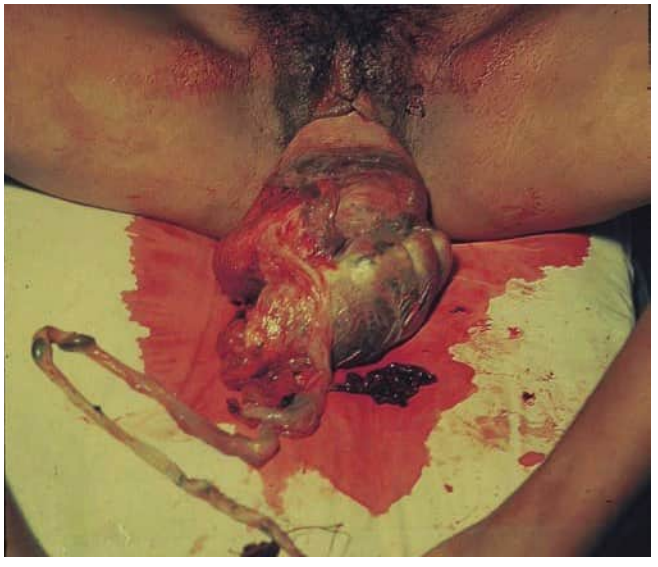


FIGURE 42-7 Maternal death during home delivery caused by exsanguination from uterine inversion, which stemmed from a fundally implanted placenta increta.

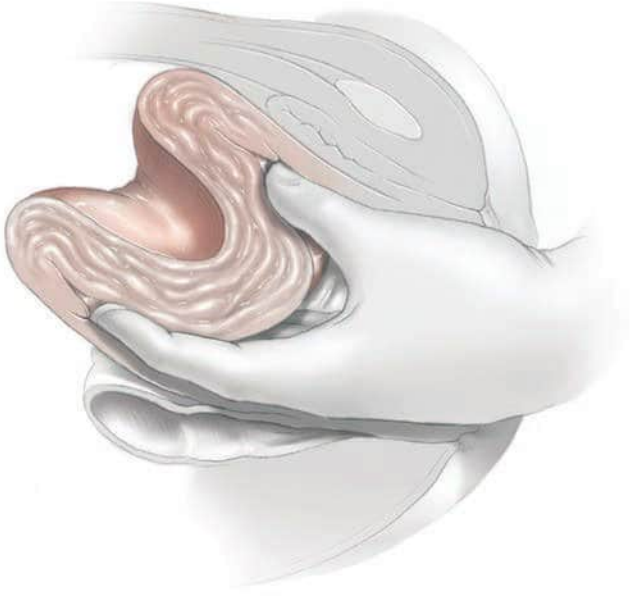


FIGURE 42-8 Incomplete uterine inversion can be repositioned by using the abdominal hand for palpation of the crater-like depression while simultaneously gently pushing the inverted fundus upward.

agent is administered by anesthesia staff. After the uterus is replaced, the placenta is carefully manually removed.

7. If uterine repositioning fails with the placenta attached, it is peeled off, and uterine repositioning is attempted again.
8. Once the uterus is restored to its normal configuration, tocolysis is stopped, oxytocin is then infused, and other uterotonic agents may be given as described for atony (p. 735). Meanwhile, the operator maintains the fundus in its normal anatomical position while applying bimanual compression to control further hemorrhage until the uterus is well contracted (see Fig. 42-4). The operator continues to monitor the uterus transvaginally for evidence of subsequent inversion. A Bakri balloon has been used by some to maintain the repositioned uterus (Haeri, 2015; Ida, 2015).

■ Surgical Intervention

In most cases, the inverted uterus can be restored to its normal position by the just-described techniques. Occasionally, manual replacement fails. One cause is a dense myometrial constriction ring. At this point, laparotomy is imperative. The anatomical configuration found at surgery can be confusing as shown in Figure 42-9. During laparotomy and after tocolysis is given, a combined effort is made to reposition the uterus by concurrently pushing upward from below and pulling upward from above. Application of atraumatic clamps to each round ligament and upward traction may be helpful—the *Huntington procedure*. In some cases, placing a deep traction suture in the inverted fundus or grasping it with tissue forceps may help but can be technically difficult. If a constriction ring still prohibits repositioning, a sagittal surgical cut—*Haultain incision*—is made posteriorly through the muscular ring to release it. The exposed fundus can then be reinverted (Sangwan, 2009).

After uterine replacement, tocolytics are stopped, and oxytocin and other uterotonic agents are given. If the Haultain method is used, the uterine incision is repaired. Risks of separation of this posterior hysterotomy incision during subsequent pregnancy, labor, and delivery are unknown (Wendel, 2018). Further illustration and discussion are found in *Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics*, 3rd edition (Timofeev, 2017).

In some cases, the uterus will again invert almost immediately after repositioning. With this problem, uterine compression sutures can be used to prevent another inversion (Matsubara, 2009; Mondal, 2012). Occasionally, chronic puerperal uterine inversion may become apparent weeks after delivery.

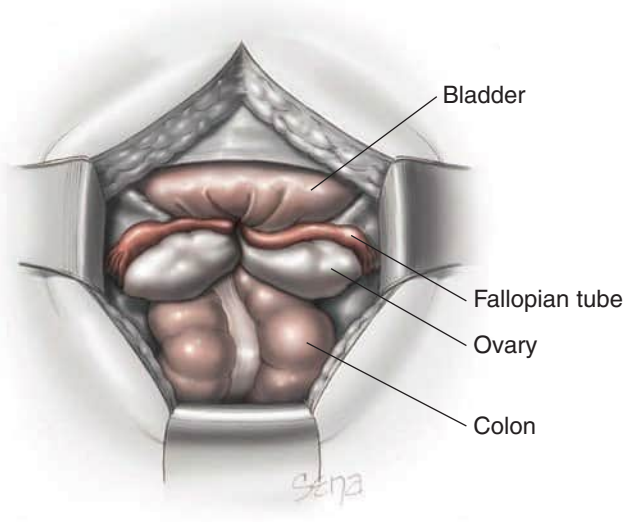


FIGURE 42-9 Surgical anatomy of a completely inverted uterus viewed from above at laparotomy.

BIRTH CANAL INJURIES

■ Vulvovaginal Lacerations

Childbirth is invariably associated with trauma to the uterus and cervix, vagina, and perineum. Injuries range from minor mucosal tears to lacerations that create life-threatening hemorrhage or hematomas. According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a), up to 80 percent of women sustain some type of laceration at vaginal birth. These may lie proximally or distally along the lower genital tract.

Small tears of the vaginal wall near the urethra are relatively common. They are often superficial with little to no bleeding but occasionally require fine-gauge absorbable sutures for hemostasis. Those large enough to require extensive repair are typically associated with short-term voiding difficulty, and an indwelling bladder catheter will obviate this.

Deeper perineal lacerations are usually accompanied by varying degrees of injury to the outer third of the vagina. Some extend to involve the anal sphincter or varying depths of the vaginal walls. Repair of these perineal lacerations is detailed in Chapter 27 (p. 510).

Lacerations involving the middle or upper third of the vagina usually are comorbid with injuries of the perineum or cervix. These sometimes are missed unless inspection is thorough. Those that extend upward usually are longitudinal. They may follow spontaneous delivery but frequently result from injuries sustained during operative vaginal delivery. Most involve deeper underlying tissues and thus usually cause significant hemorrhage, which is controlled by suture repair. For this, effective analgesia or anesthesia, clear visualization, capable assistance, and sufficient resuscitation of hypovolemia are mandatory.

Extensive vaginal or cervical tears should prompt a careful search for evidence of retroperitoneal hemorrhage or of peritoneal perforation with hemorrhage. Intrauterine exploration is also considered to exclude uterine tears or rupture (Conrad, 2015). If peritoneal perforation or uterine rupture is strongly suspected, laparotomy is reasonable (Rafi, 2010). As discussed later (p. 742), imaging and potential embolization may be suitable for large retroperitoneal hematomas.

■ Cervical Lacerations

Superficial lacerations of the cervix can be seen on close inspection in more than half of all vaginal deliveries. Most of these measure <0.5 cm and seldom require repair. Deeper lacerations are less frequent, but even these may be unnoticed. Such lacerations are more likely to be associated with vacuum- or

forceps-assisted vaginal delivery (Fong, 2014). Due to ascertainment bias, variable incidences are described. For example, with close inspection, the incidence of cervical lacerations in the Consortium on Safe Labor database was 1 percent in nulliparas and 0.5 percent in multiparas (Landy, 2011). But, the overall incidence in a study of more than 81,000 Israeli women was only 0.16 percent (Melamed, 2009).

Cervical lacerations are not usually problematic unless they cause hemorrhage or extend to the vagina. Rarely, the cervix may be entirely or partially avulsed from the vagina in the anterior, posterior, or lateral fornices, an injury termed *colporrhexis*. Another rare injury is avulsion of the entire vaginal portion of the cervix—*annular* or *circular detachment*. These injuries sometimes follow forceps deliveries performed through an incompletely dilated cervix and with the blades applied against the cervix. In some women, cervical tears reach into the lower uterine segment and involve the uterine artery and its major branches. They occasionally extend into the peritoneal cavity. More severe lacerations usually manifest as external hemorrhage or as a hematoma, however, they may occasionally be unsuspected. In the Israeli study just cited, almost 11 percent of women with a cervical laceration required blood transfusions (Melamed, 2009).

At times, the edematous anterior cervical lip is compressed between the fetal head and maternal symphysis pubis. This usually is of little consequence and resolves spontaneously. Rarely, this causes severe ischemia, and the anterior lip may undergo necrosis and later separate from the rest of the cervix.

As with vulvovaginal lacerations, cervical tears can be more fully appreciated with adequate exposure, which may be best attained with transfer to an operating room. An assistant applies firm downward pressure on the uterus, while the operator exerts gentle traction on the lips of the cervix with ring forceps. A second assistant can provide even better exposure with right-angle vaginal wall retractors or Breisky vaginal retractors. Yankauer or other suction tips also can aid viewing.

In general, cervical lacerations of 1 to 2 cm are not repaired unless they are bleeding. Such tears heal rapidly and ultimately form an irregular, sometimes stellate-appearing, external cervical os (Fig. 36-1, p. 635).

Deep cervical tears usually require surgical repair. When the laceration is limited to the cervix or even when it extends somewhat into the vaginal fornix, satisfactory results are obtained by suturing the cervix after bringing it into view as depicted in Figure 42-10. While cervical lacerations are repaired, any associated vaginal lacerations or an episiotomy may be tamponaded with gauze packs to arrest their bleeding. Because hemorrhage usually comes from the upper angle of the wound, the first suture using 2–0 chromic or polyglactin is placed in tissue above the angle. Subsequently, either interrupted or continuous locking sutures are serially placed outward toward the operator. If the uterus is involved and hemorrhage persists, some of the surgical and angiographic methods described in Chapter 44 (p. 777) may be necessary to obtain hemostasis. Following cervical lacerations, subsequent pregnancy outcomes include excessive recurrent lacerations, cervical incompetence, preterm labor, cesarean delivery, and severe perineal lacerations (Hamou, 2020).

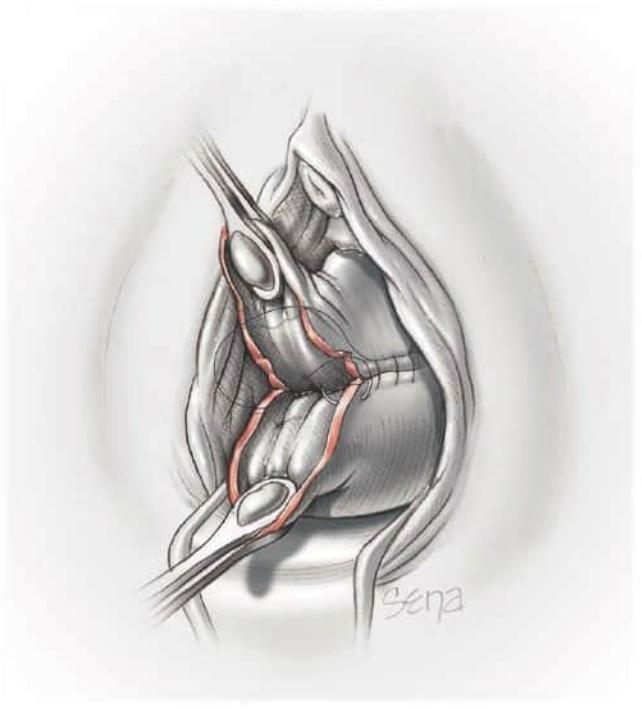


FIGURE 42-10 Repair of cervical laceration with appropriate surgical exposure. Continuous absorbable sutures are placed beginning at the upper angle of the laceration.

Puerperal Hematomas

Pelvic hematomas can have several anatomical manifestations following childbirth. One classification is anatomical and describes vulvar, vulvovaginal, paravaginal, and retroperitoneal hematomas. Vulvar hematomas may involve the vestibular bulb or branches of the pudendal artery, which are the inferior rectal, perineal, and clitoral arteries (Fig. 42-11). Paravaginal hematomas may involve the descending branch of the uterine artery. In some cases, a torn vessel lies above the pelvic fascia, and a *supralevator hematoma* develops. These can extend into the upper portion of the vaginal canal and may almost occlude its lumen. Continued bleeding may dissect retroperitoneally to form a mass palpable above the inguinal ligament. In some cases, it may even dissect up behind the ascending colon to the hepatic flexure (Rafi, 2010).

Risks for puerperal hematomas include vaginal or perineal laceration, episiotomy, or operative vaginal delivery (Iskender, 2016). Any hematoma can also develop following stretch and rupture of a blood vessel without an associated laceration (Alturki, 2018; Lee, 2020). This may be especially true with forceps delivery. Occasionally, they are associated with an underlying coagulopathy (Chap. 44, p. 775).

Diagnosis

Perineal, vulvar, and paravaginal hematomas can develop rapidly and frequently cause excruciating pain (Fig. 42-12). A tense, tender swelling of varying size rapidly develops, encroaches on the vaginal lumen, and causes overlying skin or epithelium to become ecchymotic. A paravaginal hematoma may escape detection initially. However, symptoms of pelvic

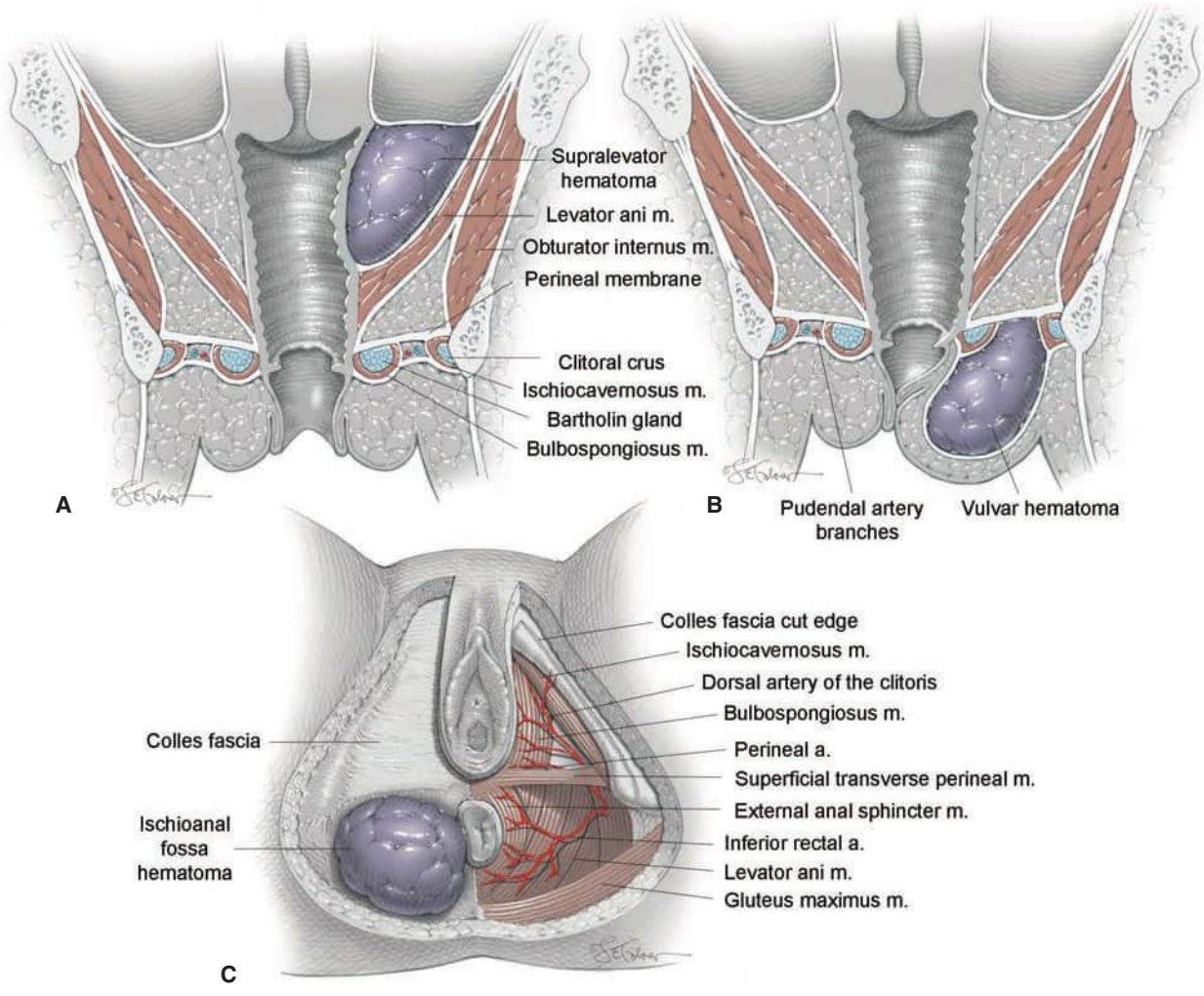


FIGURE 42-11 Schematic drawing showing types of puerperal hematomas. **A.** Coronal view showing a supralevator hematoma. **B.** Coronal view showing a hematoma in the urogenital triangle. **C.** Perineal view showing anal triangle anatomy and an ischioanal fossa hematoma. (Reproduced with permission from Cunningham FG: Genital tract lacerations and hematomas. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017a.)

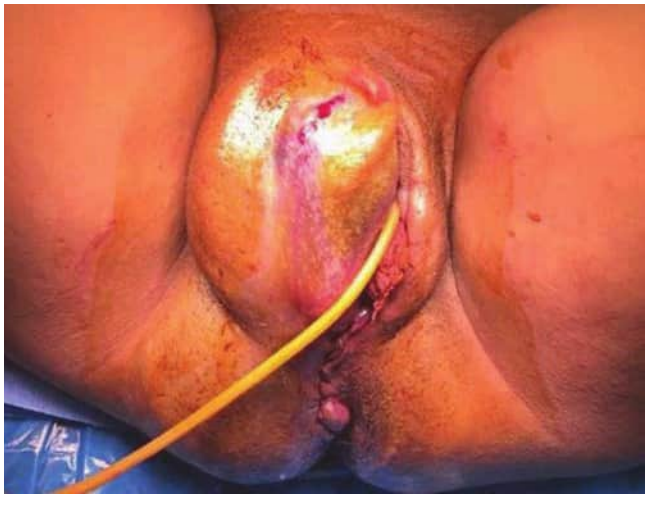


FIGURE 42-12 Right vulvar hematoma that required evacuation. A Foley catheter was placed for bladder drainage. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Emily H. Adhikari.)

pressure, pain, or inability to void should prompt evaluation. Others may go undetected until other measures of hypovolemia become evident. With a supralevator extension, the hematoma extends upward in the paravaginal space and between the leaves of the broad ligament. The hematoma may escape detection until it can be felt on abdominal palpation or until hypovolemia develops. Imaging with sonography or computed tomographic scanning may be useful (Cichowski, 2017; Kawamura, 2014).

Management

Small hematomas often remain contained and show minimal expansion. In others, the tissues overlying an expanding hematoma may rupture from pressure necrosis. In some, profuse hemorrhage may follow, but in other cases, the hematoma drains in the form of large clots and old blood. In those that involve the paravaginal space and extend above the levator sling, retroperitoneal bleeding may be massive and occasionally fatal. In rare instances, we encountered hematomas that rebled up to 2 weeks postpartum (Cunningham, 2017).

Vulvovaginal hematomas are managed according to their size, location, duration since delivery, and expansion. If bleeding ceases, then small- to moderate-sized hematomas may be treated expectantly until absorbed. Cool packs and analgesics are supportive care, and an inability to void merits catheter drainage. But, if pain is severe or if the hematoma continues to enlarge, surgical exploration is preferable. *Blood loss with large puerperal hematomas is nearly always considerably more than the clinical estimate.* Hypovolemia is common, and transfusions are frequently required when surgical repair is necessary.

For repair, an incision is made at the point of maximal distention, blood and clots are evacuated, and bleeding points ligated. Often, no distinct bleeding vessels are identified. The cavity may then be obliterated in layers with absorbable sutures. With this, layered tissue closure acts to tamponade low-pressure bleeding. With vaginal hematomas, the vagina is packed with 1 to 2 gauze roll(s) for 12 to 24 hours, and the number of rolls is recorded. Supralevator hematomas are more difficult to treat. Although some can be evacuated by vulvar or vaginal incisions, laparotomy or angiographic embolization are considerations if bleeding continues.

Embolization has become popular for management of some puerperal hematomas. This is especially true for supralevator or retroperitoneal hematomas. Embolization can be used primarily, or more likely secondarily, if surgical attempts at hemostasis have failed or if the hematoma is difficult to access surgically (Distefano, 2013; Lee, 2012; Poujade, 2012). The use of a Bakri balloon for a paracervical hematoma also has been described (Gizzo, 2013; Grönvall, 2014). Last, ultrasound-guided drainage of a recurrent supralevator hematoma has been reported (Mukhopadhyay, 2015).

UTERINE RUPTURE

Predisposing Factors

Uterine rupture is another event that may lead to potentially catastrophic hemorrhage. Rupture may be *primary*, defined as occurring in a previously intact or unscarred uterus. More often, rupture is *secondary* and associated with a preexisting incision, anomaly, or injury of the myometrium (Table 42-3).

The contribution of each of these underlying causes has evolved during the past 50 years. Before 1960, when cesarean delivery was infrequent and women of great parity were numerous, primary uterine rupture predominated. As the incidence of cesarean delivery rose, and especially as a subsequent trial of labor in these women became prevalent through the 1990s, uterine rupture through the cesarean hysterotomy scar became the preeminent cause (Chang, 2020; Gibbins, 2015; Mone, 2016).

Concurrent with the diminished enthusiasm for a trial of labor after cesarean delivery (TOLAC), incidence trends for the two types of rupture have again changed. In a study of 3942 cases of uterine rupture in more than 15 million women, only approximately half were in women with a prior cesarean delivery (Yao, 2017). The International Network of Obstetric Survey Systems (INOSS) identified 864 complete uterine ruptures in more than 2.6 million deliveries (Vanderberghe, 2019). The overall prevalence was 3 cases per 10,000 births. In women without a prior cesarean delivery, the prevalence was 0.6 per 10,000 births, and it was 22 per 10,000 in those with a prior cesarean delivery. This is similar to the recent overall rate of 5 cases per 10,000 births at Parkland Hospital. During this time, there were 40 cases of uterine rupture, and despite a very conservative TOLAC policy, 25 of the 40 events were in women with a prior hysterotomy.

TABLE 42-3. Some Causes of Uterine Rupture

Preexisting Uterine Injury or Anomaly	Uterine Injury or Abnormality Incurred in Current Pregnancy
Surgery involving the myometrium:	**Before delivery:**
Cesarean delivery or hysterotomy	Persistent, intense, spontaneous contractions
Previously repaired uterine rupture	Labor stimulation: oxytocin or prostaglandins
Myomectomy incision through or to the endometrium	Intraamnionic instillation: saline or prostaglandins
Deep cornual resection of interstitial fallopian tube	Perforation by internal uterine pressure catheter
Operative hysteroscopy	External trauma: sharp or blunt
Metroplasty	External version
Sharp or blunt trauma—assaults, vehicular accidents, bullets, knives	Uterine overdistention: hydramnios, multifetal pregnancy
Silent rupture in previous pregnancy	**During delivery:**
Congenital:	Internal version of second twin
Pregnancy in rudimentary uterine horn	Difficult forceps delivery
Defective connective tissue—Marfan or Ehlers-Danlos syndrome	Breech extraction
	Fetal anomaly distending the lower segment
	Vigorous uterine pressure during delivery
	Difficult manual removal of placenta
	Acquired:
	Placental accreta spectrum
	Gestational trophoblastic neoplasia
	Adenomyosis
	Sacculation of entrapped retroverted uterus

The current lower incidence of women of great parity also has lowered the primary-rupture rate. In this regard, advancing maternal age may be a greater risk factor (Hochler, 2020). Another risk is excessive or inappropriate uterine stimulation with oxytocin. This previously frequent cause has mostly disappeared. In an analysis of three trials comparing contemporaneous high- and low-dose oxytocin regimens for labor induction in those with an unscarred uterus, the rate of uterine rupture did not differ between groups (Budden, 2014). The rate of rupture, however, is increased with sequential induction of labor with prostaglandins and oxytocin in those both with and without prior cesarean delivery (Al-Zirqi, 2017).

Other operations that traumatize the myometrium include uterine curettage or perforation, endometrial ablation, myomectomy, operative hysteroscopy, or prior uterine rupture (Frank, 2018; Zhao, 2019). Uterine rupture is also linked with disorders associated with connective tissue weakness (Cauldwell, 2019a,b; Noh, 2013). Another report described rupture in a woman with prior childhood pelvic radiotherapy (Huarte Cignada, 2020).

Blunt abdominal trauma also can rupture a substantially gravid uterus (Miller, 1996). Thus, pregnant women in the later second- and third trimesters who sustain such trauma are ideally monitored for signs of uterine rupture. Specific monitoring protocols are outlined in Chapter 50 (p. 896).

Uncommon causes today are those due to internal podalic version and extraction, difficult forceps delivery, breech extraction, and unusual fetal enlargement such as with hydrocephalus. In one unusual case, fundal rupture followed spontaneous labor in a woman with an abdominal cerclage (Dandapani, 2019). Rupture associated with multifetal pregnancy or uterine anomalies also is rare (Bankada, 2015; Tarney, 2013; Tola, 2014). Although rare, rudimentary uterine horns are especially susceptible and described in Chapter 3 (p. 43). Discussed in Chapter 43 (p. 760), placenta percreta may cause focal myometrial weakness and rupture (Sun, 2016).

Pathogenesis

Rupture of the previously intact uterus during labor most often involves the thinned-out lower uterine segment. When the rent is in the immediate vicinity of the cervix, it frequently extends transversely or obliquely. When the rent forms in the portion of the uterus adjacent to the broad ligament, the tear is usually longitudinal (Fig. 42-13). Although these tears develop primarily in the lower uterine segment, they can extend upward into the active segment or downward through the cervix and into the vagina. In some cases, the bladder also may be lacerated.

If the rupture is of sufficient size, the uterine contents will usually escape into the peritoneal cavity. If the presenting fetal part is firmly engaged, however, then only a portion of the fetus may be extruded from the uterus. Fetal prognosis is largely dependent on the size of the rent, the degree of placental separation, the magnitude of maternal hypovolemia, and the rapidity of diagnosis and response (Al-Zirqi, 2018; Rottenstreich, 2021). In some cases, the overlying peritoneum remains intact, and this usually is accompanied by hemorrhage that extends into the broad ligament to cause a large retroperitoneal hematoma.

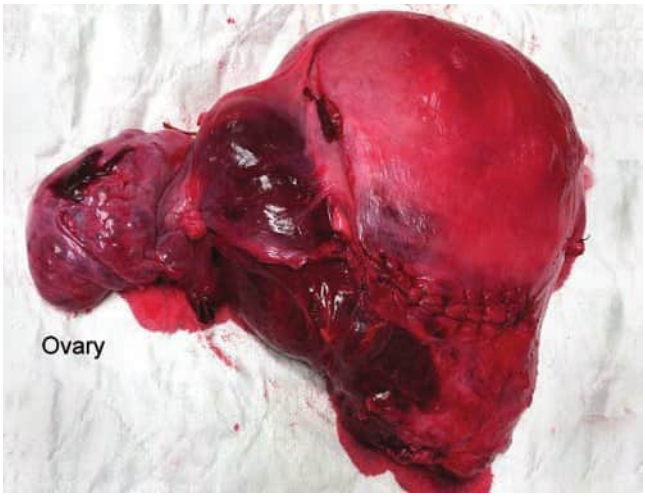


FIGURE 42-13 Peripartum hysterectomy specimen. A right broad ligament hematoma is seen lateral to the closed hysterotomy incision and medial to the ovary. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Emily H. Adhikari.)

Following vaginal delivery in an unscarred uterus, we and others have occasionally encountered cases of an incomplete tear on the inside of the uterus that extends vertically into the active segment to cause profuse hemorrhage (Conrad, 2015). These tears are usually not visible from below but are found at the time of hysterectomy for intractable bleeding despite a contracted uterus. Hemorrhage with this type of tear can be torrential, and bleeding is usually not slowed until the uterine artery pedicles are clamped bilaterally.

Management and Outcomes

The varied clinical presentations of uterine rupture and its management are discussed in detail in Chapter 31 (p. 579). In the most recent national maternal mortality statistics, uterine rupture accounted for nearly 10 percent of hemorrhage-associated deaths (Creanga, 2015, 2017). Maternal morbidity includes hysterectomy that may be necessary to control hemorrhage. Rates of perinatal mortality and morbidity, which may include severe neurological impairment, also are high (Al-Zirqi, 2018; Rottenstreich, 2021). Table 42-4 lists some perinatal outcomes in 72 women with uterine rupture. Last, maternal obesity comorbid with uterine rupture is associated with increased rates of adverse neonatal outcomes (Yao, 2017). With prior rupture and a subsequent pregnancy, Fox (2020) recommends cesarean delivery prior to labor or at the onset of preterm labor.

AMNIONIC FLUID EMBOLISM

Pathophysiology

This syndrome usually is caused by intravenous embolization of meconium-laden amnionic fluid. It results in rapid cardiorespiratory collapse and profound consumptive coagulopathy. The understanding of the mechanism of injury for amnionic fluid embolism (AFE) has evolved. Early theories proposed that amnionic fluid and debris entered the maternal circulation and obstructed pulmonary artery flow, which led to hypoxia, right

TABLE 42-4. Some Maternal and Perinatal Outcomes in 72 Women with Uterine Rupture

Outcomes	Parkland Hospital[a]	Australia-New Zealand[b]
Number	40	32
Maternal		
Blood loss	2500 mL[c]	2580 mL[d]
Transfusions	55%	63%
Hysterectomy	27%	10%
ICU admission	17%	NS
Perinatal		
Cord artery pH	7.07[c]	NS
Cord pH <7.0	35%	NS
5-min Apgar <7	25%	NS
NNICU	47%	13%
HIE	15%	NS
Death	5%	16%

[a]Date from Yule, 2019.
[b]Data from Chang, 2020.
[c]Median.
[d]Mean.
HIE = hypoxic ischemic encephalopathy; ICU = intensive care unit; NNICU = neonatal intensive care unit; NS = not stated.

heart failure, and death. However, during normal delivery, amnionic fluid commonly enters maternal circulation through venous channels at the placental implantation site or small lacerations. Accordingly, squames, fetal cells, and trophoblasts can often be identified in maternal peripheral blood at delivery (Clark, 1986; Lee, 1986). And, at least in experimental animals, infused clear amnionic fluid is generally innocuous, even in large amounts (Adamsons, 1971; Stolte, 1967).

Instead, meconium-laden amnionic fluid is likely a potent cause of symptomatic AFE (Hankins, 1993). Disruption of the maternal-fetal interface allows material from the fetal compartment to enter maternal circulation. This dyad leads to abnormal activation of proinflammatory mediator systems, similar to the systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS), and causes initial, transient pulmonary vasoconstriction and hypertension (Bernstein, 2019). Pulmonary hypertension causes acute right ventricular failure, which is followed by hemodynamic collapse from right ventricular infarction, interventricular septum displacement, and decreased left-sided cardiac output (Pacheco, 2020). This right and then left ventricular dysfunction leads to cardiogenic pulmonary edema and systemic hypotension. Acute respiratory failure with severe hypoxemia from shunting develops. Notably, the resulting multiorgan dysfunction is an interrelated process, with both the cardiac and pulmonary systems affecting each other.

Women who survive beyond these first phases invariably develop the third component of the classic triad—a consumptive coagulopathy. Material from the fetal compartment that contains tissue factor then activates factor VII. This leads to the development of disseminated intravascular coagulation. The rapidity of the coagulopathy is amazing (Fig. 42-14).

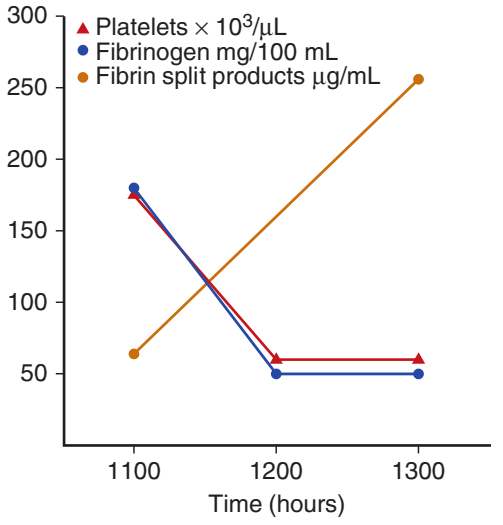


FIGURE 42-14 Fatal amnionic fluid embolism. Results of some coagulation studies show an abrupt drop in plasma fibrinogen levels and platelet count but an extremely elevated serum fibrin split product level.

To those who succumb, postmortem histopathological findings may be obvious. However, detection of squames and keratin may require special stains, and even then, debris may not be seen. In one study, fetal elements were detected in 75 percent of autopsies and in 50 percent of specimens prepared from concentrated buffy coat aspirates taken antepartum from a pulmonary artery catheter (Clark, 1995).

Incidence and Risk Factors

Most reports describe an AFE frequency of 1 to 2 cases per 100,000 births (Clark, 2014; Fitzpatrick, 2019; Knight, 2010). The case-fatality rate in all of these studies ranges from 11 to 43 percent. From another perspective, AFE caused 5 to 15 percent of all pregnancy-related deaths in the United States, Canada, and France (Bonnet, 2018; Kramer, 2012; Petersen, 2019).

Predisposing conditions are rapid labor, meconium-stained amnionic fluid, and tears into uterine and other large pelvic veins that permit an exchange of fluids between the maternal and fetal compartment (Society of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2016). Other commonly cited risks include older maternal age; postterm pregnancy; labor induction or augmentation; eclampsia; cesarean, forceps, or vacuum delivery; placental abruption or previa; and hydramnios (Indraccolo, 2018; Knight, 2012; Kramer, 2012). The associations of uterine hypertonus appears to be the *effect* rather than the *cause* because uterine blood flow ceases when intrauterine pressures exceed 35 to 40 mm Hg. Thus, a hypertonic contraction would be the *least* likely circumstance for amnionic fluid and other debris to enter uterine veins (Clark, 1985). For this reason, hypertonus from oxytocin does not seem implicated.

Diagnosis

The classic triad of abrupt hemodynamic and respiratory compromise along with consumptive coagulopathy underpins its diagnosis (Pacheco, 2020). Proposed criteria for AFE diagnosis

TABLE 42-5. Diagnostic Criteria for Amnionic Fluid Embolism

Clinical onset during labor or within 30 minutes of placental delivery
Abrupt onset of cardiorespiratory arrest, or both hypotension and respiratory compromise
Overt disseminated intravascular coagulopathy
No fever ≥38°C

Adapted from Clark, 2016; Pacheco, 2020.

are shown in Table 42-5. In a French study, only 60 percent of women with autopsy-confirmed AFE had all four criteria (Bonnet, 2018). The classic example is dramatic, and a woman in the late stages of labor or immediately postpartum begins gasping for air. Seizures or cardiorespiratory arrest rapidly follow and are accompanied by massive hemorrhage from consumptive coagulopathy (Bernstein, 2019; Tanaka, 2017). Clinical manifestations vary, and we and others have managed several women in whom otherwise uncomplicated vaginal or cesarean delivery was followed by severe acute consumptive coagulopathy without overt cardiorespiratory difficulties. In these women, consumptive coagulopathy appears to be the *forme fruste* of AFE (Kramer, 2012; Porter, 1996).

In such cases, other sources of acute cardiac or respiratory failure should be considered. These include myocardial infarction, pulmonary or air embolism, high spinal blockage, eclampsia, and anaphylactic shock (Bernstein, 2019). In some cases, the temporal relationship of events aids diagnosis. *Unfortunately, no specific diagnostic laboratory test confirms or refutes the diagnosis of AFE, and it remains a clinical diagnosis*. Importantly, women suffering from excessive blood loss and resulting coagulopathy may be misdiagnosed with AFE, when the true culprit is unrecognized or underappreciated hemorrhage (Clark, 2016). In either event, a woman with cardiopulmonary compromise should receive immediate resuscitation (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2016).

Management

The initial period of systemic and pulmonary hypertension with AFE is transient. Thus, immediate high-quality cardiopulmonary resuscitation and advanced cardiac life support must be initiated without delay (Pacheco, 2020; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2016). These are discussed in detail in Chapter 50 (p. 897). Coagulopathy is managed as described in Chapter 44 (p. 777).

If resuscitation is successful, hemodynamic instability is common in survivors. Both fever and hyperoxia will worsen ischemia-reperfusion injury to the brain. A suitable goal for temperature is 36°C and for mean arterial pressure is 65 mm Hg (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2016). Additional supportive care measures such as intubation are usually necessary. During the phase of right ventricular failure, inotropic agents such as dobutamine may improve right heart output, and later systemic hypotension should be treated with vasopressors such as norepinephrine. Excess fluid administration is discouraged because it can worsen dilation of an already engorged right ventricle, which may cause right-sided myocardial infarction and interventricular septum displacement.

Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) has been described in the treatment of AFE (Bernstein, 2019; Webster, 2020). Further discussed in Chapter 50 (p. 886), venovenous ECMO is used for severe hypoxemic respiratory failure, without right or left ventricular failure. Venoarterial ECMO is less readily available and used for impending cardiac arrest and ventricular failure. One recent review of outcomes in 20 women with AFE managed with ECMO reported a maternal mortality rate of only 15 percent. The authors concluded that publication biases may have overestimated the favorable outcomes (Viau-Lapointe, 2019).

Either immediately after cardiopulmonary collapse or during the ensuing phases of injury, a coagulopathy develops in most cases from activation of factor VII and X. This may be exacerbated by ongoing hemorrhage, and a common source is uterine atony. Thus, immediate evaluation of coagulation parameters is indicated with concurrent management of bleeding.

Clinical Outcomes

Most reports describe significant maternal and perinatal mortality with AFE. This is likely influenced by underdiagnosis and reporting biases that favor the most severe cases with the highest mortality rates. From a California database of 1.1 million deliveries, the mortality rate with AFE was 60 percent (Gilbert, 1999). In the INOSS database, maternal mortality rates ranged from 30 to 41 percent (Fitzpatrick, 2019). Death can be rapid, and in one study, 12 of the 34 women died within 30 minutes (Weiwen, 2000). The mortality rate is highest in women who present with cardiac arrest—89 percent (Fitzpatrick, 2019).

Survivors commonly have profound neurological impairment. Clark (1995) observed that only 8 percent of women who lived despite cardiac arrest survived without neurological injury. In a report of 20 cases, the maternal mortality rate was 15 percent, and 40 percent of survivors had neurological disability (Skolnik, 2019). Overall, the prognosis appears to be more associated with disease severity and the attendant cardiac arrest than with any specific treatment modality (Clark, 2014; Fitzpatrick, 2019).

As perhaps expected, perinatal outcomes also are poor and are inversely related to the maternal cardiac arrest-to-delivery interval. Even so, the neonatal survival rate is 70 percent, but unfortunately, up to half of survivors suffer residual neurological impairment. In a Canadian study, 28 percent of neonates were considered to be asphyxiated at birth (Kramer, 2012).

REFERENCES

Adamsons K, Mueller-Heubach E, Myers RE: The innocuousness of amniotic fluid infusion in the pregnant rhesus monkey. Am J Obstet Gynecol 109:977, 1971

Adnan N, Conian-Trant R, McCormick C, et al: Intramuscular versus intravenous oxytocin to prevent postpartum haemorrhage at vaginal delivery: randomised controlled trial. BMJ 362:k3546, 2018

Al-Kadri HM, Al Anazi BK, Tamin HM: Visual estimation versus gravimetric measurement of postpartum blood loss: a prospective cohort study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 283(6):1207, 2011

Alliance for Innovation on Maternal Health: Obstetric hemorrhage patient safety bundle. 2015. Available at: https://safehealthcareforeverywoman.org/aim/patient-safety-bundles/maternal-safety-bundles/obstetric-hemorrahage-patient-safety-bundle-2/. Accessed February 27, 2021

Al-Zirqi I, Daltveit AK, Forsén L, et al: Risk factors for complete uterine rupture. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(2):165.el, 2017

Al-Zirqi I, Daltveit AK, Vangen S: Infant outcome after complete uterine rupture. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219:109.el, 2018

Al-Zirqi I, Vangen S, Forsen L, et al: Prevalence and risk factors of severe obstetric haemorrhage. BJOG 115:1265, 2008

Alturki F, Ponette V, Boucher LM: Spontaneous retroperitoneal hematomas following uncomplicated vaginal deliveries: a case report and literature review. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 40(6):712, 2018

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Postpartum hemorrhage. Practice Bulletin No. 183, October 2017, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Quantitative blood loss in obstetric hemorrhage. Committee Opinion No. 794, November, 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention and management of obstetric lacerations at vaginal delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 198, August 2018, Reaffirmed 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Use of prophylactic antibiotics in labor and delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 199, August 2018, Reaffirmed 2020b

Antony KM, Racusin DA, Belfort MA, et al: Under pressure: intraluminal filling pressures of postpartum hemorrhage tamponade balloons. AJP Rep 7(2):e86, 2017

Association of Women's Health, Obstetric and Neonatal Nurses: Guidelines for oxytocin administration after birth. AWHONN PB No. 2 JOGNN 44:161, 2014

Babinszki A, Kerenyi T, Torok O, et al: Perinatal outcome in grand and great-grand multi parity: effects of parity on obstetric risk factors. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181:669, 1999

Bailit JL, Grobman WA, Rice MM, et al: Risk-adjusted models for adverse obstetric outcomes and variation in risk-adjusted outcomes across hospitals. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(5):446.e1, 2013

Bankada V, Purra P, Ningappa AM, et al: A rare case of bilateral broad ligament haematoma in twin pregnancy. J Clin Diagn Res 9(10):QD03, 2015

Berg CJ, Callaghan WM, Syverson C, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 1998–2005. Obstet Gynecol 116(6):1302, 2010

Berg CJ, MacKay AP, Qin C, et al: Overview of maternal morbidity during hospitalizations for labor and delivery in the United States. 1993–1997 and 2001–2005. Obstet Gynecol 113(5):1075, 2009

Bernstein SN, Cudemus-Deseda GA, Ortiz V E, et al: Case 33–2019: a 35-year old woman with cardiopulmonary arrest during cesarean section. N Engl J Med 381(17):1664, 2019

Bhandari S, Raja EA, Shetty A, et al: Maternal and perinatal consequences of antepartum haemorrhage of unknown origin. BJOG 121(1):44, 2014

Blitz MJ, Yukhayev A, Pachtman SL, et al: Twin pregnancy and risk of postpartum hemorrhage. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 5:1, 2019

Bonnet MP, Zlotnik D, Saucedo M, et al: Maternal death due to amniotic fluid embolism: a national study in France. Anesth Analg 126(1):175, 2018

Budden A, Chen LJ, Henry A: High-dose versus low-dose oxytocin infusion regimens for induction of labour at term. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD009701, 2014

Catanzarite VA, Moffitt KD, Baker ML: New approaches to the management of acute puerperal uterine inversion. Obstet Gynecol 68(3 Suppl):7S, 1986

Cauldwell M, Steer PJ, Curtis SL: Maternal and fetal outcomes in pregnancies complicated by Marfan syndrome. Heart 105(22):1725, 2019a

Cauldwell M, Steer PJ, Curtis S, et al: Maternal and fetal outcomes in pregnancies complicated by the inherited aortopathy Loeys-Dietz syndrome. BJOG 126(8):1025, 2019b

Chang YH: Uterine rupture over 11 years: a retrospective descriptive study. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 60(5):709, 2020

Chibueze EC, Parsons AJ, Ota E, et al: Prophylactic antibiotics for manual removal of retained placenta during vaginal birth: a systematic review of observational studies and meta-analysis. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 15:313, 2015

Chu T, Rodriguez AN, Kleinmann W, et al: Correlation of postpartum hemorrhage risk stratification with calculated blood loss greater than 1000 milliliters. Abstract No. 1092, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(1):S673, 2020

Cichowski S, Rogers RG: Managing complications of perineal lacerations. Contemp Ob/Gyn 62:22, 2017

Clark SL: Amniotic fluid embolism. Obstet Gynecol 123:337, 2014

Clark SL, Hankins GD, Dudley DA, et al: Amniotic fluid embolism: analysis of the National Registry. Am J Obstet Gynecol 172:1158, 1995

Clark SL, Pavlova Z, Greenspoon J, et al: Squamous cells in the maternal pulmonary circulation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 154:104, 1986

Clark SL, Phelan JP, Yeh SY: Hypogastric artery ligation for obstetric hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 66:353, 1985

Clark SL, Romero R, Dildy GA, et al: Proposed diagnostic criteria for the case definition of amniotic fluid embolism in research studies. Am J Obstet Gynecol October, 2016

Coad S, Dahlgren L, Hutcheson JA: Risk and consequences of puerperal uterine inversion in the United States, 2004–2013. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217:377, 2017

Colalillo E, Sparks A, Phillips J, et al: Obstetric hemorrhage risk assessment tool predicts composite maternal morbidity. Sci Rep 11(1):14709, 2021

Conrad LB, Groome KJ, Black DR: Management of persistent postpartum hemorrhage caused by inner myometrial lacerations. Obstet Gynecol 126(2):266, 2015

Coviello E, Igbal S, Kawakita T, et al: Effect of implementing quantitative blood loss assessment at the time of delivery. Am J Perinatol 36(13):1332, 2019

Creanga AA, Berg CJ, Syverson C, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2006–2010. Obstet Gynecol 125(1):5, 2015

Creanga AA, Berg CJ, Syverson C, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2011–2013. Obstet Gynecol 130:366, 2017

Cummings K, Doherty DA, Magann EF, et al: Timing of manual placenta removal to prevent postpartum hemorrhage: is it time to act? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(24):3930, 2016

Cunningham FG: Genital tract lacerations and hematomas. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2017

Dandapani M, Pflugner LP, Fanning NS: Uterine rupture at term in a patient with abdominal cerclage. Obstet Gynecol 133(5):940, 2019

Deneux-Tharaux C, Sentilhes L, Maillard F, et al: Effect of routine controlled cord traction as part of the active management of the third stage of labour on postpartum hemorrhage: multicentre randomized controlled trial (TRACOR). BMJ 346:f1541, 2013

Diaz V, Abalos E, Carroli G: Methods for blood loss estimation after vaginal birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 9:CD010980, 2018

Diemert A, Ortmeyer G, Hollwitz B, et al: The combination of intrauterine balloon tamponade and the B-Lynch procedure for the treatment of severe postpartum hemorrhage. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(1):65.e1, 2012

Distefano M, Casarella L, Amoroso S, et al: Selective arterial embolization as a first-line treatment for postpartum hematomas. Obstet Gynecol 121(2 Pt 2 Supp I):443, 2013

Driessen M, Bouvier-Colle MH, Dupont C, et al: Postpartum hemorrhage resulting from uterine atony after vaginal delivery. Factors associated with severity. Obstet Gynecol 117(1):21, 2011

Ducloy-Bouthors AS, Jude B, Duhamel A: High-dose tranexamic acid reduces blood loss in postpartum haemorrhage. Crit Care 15(2):R117, 2011

Dufour P, Vinatier D, Puech F: The use of intravenous nitroglycerin for cervico-uterine relaxation: a review of the literature. Arch Gynecol Obstet 261(1):1, 1997

Einerson BD, Son M, Schneider P, et al: The association between intrauterine balloon tamponade duration and postpartum hemorrhage outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:300.e1, 2017

Fein A, Wen T, Wright JD, et al: Postpartum hemorrhage and risk for postpartum readmission. J Matern Fetal Neonatal 34(2):187, 2021

Fitzpatrick KE, van den Akker T, Bloemenkamp KW, et al: Risk factors, management, and outcomes of amniotic fluid embolism: a multicountry, population-based cohort and nested case-control study. PLoS Med 16(11):e1002962, 2019

Fong A, Wu E, Pan D, et al: Temporal trends and morbidities of vacuum, forceps, and combined use of both. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 27(8):1886, 2014

Fox NS: Pregnancy outcomes in patients with prior uterine rupture or dehiscence: a 5-year update. Obstet Gynecol 135(1):211, 2020

Frank ZC, Caughey AB: Pregnancy in women with a history of uterine rupture. Obstet Gynecol Surv 73(12):703, 2018

Frolova Al, Stout MJ, Tuuli MG, et al: Duration of the third stage of labor and risk of postpartum hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 127(5):951, 2016

Gibbins KJ, Weber T, Holmgren CM, et al: Maternal and fetal morbidity associated with uterine rupture of the unscarred uterus. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(3):382.e1, 2015

Gilbert WM, Danielsen B: Amniotic fluid embolism: decreased mortality in a population-based study. Obstet Gynecol 93:973, 1999

Gizzo S, Saccardi C, Patrelli TS, et al: Bakri balloon in vaginal-perineal hematomas complicating vaginal delivery: a new therapeutic approach. J Low Genit Tract Dis 17:125, 2013

Goffman D, Nathan L, Chazotte C: Obstetric hemorrhage: a global review. Semin Perinatol 40(2):96, 2016

Green L, Knight M, Seeney FM, et al: The epidemiology and outcomes of women with postpartum haemorrhage requiring massive transfusion with eight or more units of red cells: a national cross-sectional study. BJOG 123(13):2164, 2016

Grönvall M, Tikkanen M, Metsätähti M, et al: Pelvic arterial embolization in severe obstetric hemorrhage. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 93(7):716, 2014
Haeri S, Rais S, Monks B: Intrauterine tamponade balloon use in the treatment of uterine inversion. BMJ Case Rep January 6, 2015
Hamou B, Sheiner E, Coreanu T, et al: Intrapartum cervical lacerations and their impact on future pregnancy outcome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(5):883, 2020
Hankins GD, Berryman GK, Scott RT Jr, et al: Maternal arterial desaturation with 15-methyl prostaglandin F2 alpha for uterine atony. Obstet Gynecol 72: 367, 1988
Hankins GD, Snyder RR, Clark SL, et al: Acute hemodynamic and respiratory effects of amniotic fluid embolism in the pregnant goat model. Am J Obstet Gynecol 168(4):1113, 1993
Hernandez JS, Alexander JM, Sarode R, et al: Calculated blood loss in severe obstetric hemorrhage and its relation to body mass index. Am J Perinatol 29(7):557, 2012
Hochler H, Wainstock T, Lipschuetz M, et al: Grandmultiparity, maternal age, and the risk for uterine rupture–a multicenter cohort study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(2):267, 2020
Hofmeyr GJ, Abdel-Aleem H, Abde1-A1eem MA: Uterine massage for preventing postpartum haemorrhage. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD006431, 2013
Huarte Cignada M, Estaun Echavarren C, Garcia Jimenez A, et al: Spontaneous uterine rupture in the second trimester in a patient with previous pelvic radiotherapy in childhood: a case report. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 42(1):84, 2020
Ida A, Ito K, Kubota Y, et al: Successful reduction of acute puerperal uterine inversion with the use of a Bakri postpartum balloon. Case Rep Obstet Gynecol 2015:424891, 2015
Indraccolo U, Battistoni C, Mastrantonio I, et al: Risk factors for fatality in amniotic fluid embolism: a systematic review and analysis of a data pool. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(5):661, 2018
Iskender C, Topcu HO, Timur H, et al: Evaluation of risk factors in women with puerperal genital hematomas. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(9):1435, 2016
Kaplanoglu M, Kaplanoglu D, Bulbul M, et al: Inner myometrial laceration—an unusual presentation of antepartum and postpartum hemorrhage: case reports and review of the literature. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(16):2621, 2016
Kawakita T, Mokhtari N, Huang JC, et al: Evaluation of risk assessment tools for severe postpartum hemorrhage in women undergoing cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 134(6):1308, 2019
Kawamura Y, Kondoh E, Hamanishi J, et al: Treatment decision- making for postpartum hemorrhage using dynamic contrast-enhanced computed tomography. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 40(1):67, 2014
Kaya B, Guralp O, Tuten A, et al: Which uterine sparing technique should be used for uterine atony during cesarean section? The Bakri balloon or the B-Lynch suture? Arch Gynecol Obstet 294(3):511, 2016
Knight M, Berg C, Brocklehurst P, et al: Amniotic fluid embolism incidence, risk factors and outcomes: a review and recommendations. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 12:7, 2012
Knight M, Tuffnell D, Brocklehurst P, et al: Incidence and risk factors for amniotic-fluid embolism. Obstet Gynecol 115(5):910, 2010
Kondoh E, Chigusa Y, Ueda A, et al: Novel intrauterine balloon tamponade systems for postpartum hemorrhage. Gynecol Scand 98(12):1612, 2019
Kramer MS, Rouleau J, Liu S, et al: Amniotic fluid embolism: incidence, risk factors, and impact on perinatal outcomes. BJOG 119(7):1144, 2012
Landy HJ, Laughon K, Bailit JL, et al: Characteristics associated with severe perineal and cervical lacerations during vaginal delivery. Obstet Gynecol 117(3):627, 2011
Lee HJ, Na ED, Kim HC, et al: Massive broad ligament hematoma caused by spontaneous uterine artery rupture after uncomplicated vaginal delivery. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 27(2):250, 2020
Lee HY, Shin JH, Kim J, et al: Primary postpartum hemorrhage: outcome of pelvic arterial embolization in 251 patients at a single institution. Radiology 264(3):903, 2012
Lee W, Ginsburg KA, Cotton DB, et al: Squamous and trophoblastic cells in the maternal pulmonary circulation identified by invasive hemodynamic monitoring during the peripartum period. Am J Obstet Gynecol 155:999, 1986
Lepine SJ, Geller SE, Pledger M, et al: Severe maternal morbidity due to obstetric haemorrhage: potential preventability. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 60(2):212, 2020
Martingano D, Mitrofanova A, Kin AF, et al: Antibiotic prophylaxis during intrauterine balloon tamponade following vaginal deliveries with postpartum hemorrhage. Abstract No. 381, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(1):S253, 2020
Matsubara S, Yano H, Taneichi A, et al: Uterine compression suture against impending recurrence of uterine inversion immediately after laparotomy positioning. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 35(4):819, 2009
Melamed N, Ben-Haroush A, Chen R, Kaplan B, et al: Intrapartum cervical lacerations: characteristics, risk factors, and effects on subsequent pregnancies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(4):388.e1, 2009
Merriam AA, Huang Y, Wright JD, et al: Use of uterine tamponade and interventional radiology procedures during delivery hospitalizations. Obstet Gynecol 135(3):674, 2020
Miller DA, Paul RH: Rupture of the unscarred uterus. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:345, 1996
Mondal PC, Ghosh D, Santra D, et al: Role of Hayman technique and its modification in recurrent puerperal uterine inversion. Obstet Gynaecol Res 38(2):438, 2012
Mone F, Elsayed S, McAuliffe FM, et al: Uterine rupture—when, why and emerging trends in an Irish population. Abstract No. 433, Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(1):S238, 2016
Mousa HA, Blum J, Abou El Senoun G, et al: Treatment for primary postpartum haemorrhage. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD003249, 2014
Mukhopadhyay D, Jennings PE, Banerjee M, et al: Ultrasound—guided drainage of supralevator hematoma in a hemodynamically stable patient. Obstet Gynecol 126(6):1188, 2015
Natrella M, Di Naro E, Loverro M, et al: The more you lose the more you miss: accuracy of postpartum blood loss visual estimation. A systematic review of the literature. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(1):106, 2018
Nguyen KT, Lozada MJ, Gorrindo P, et al: Massive hemorrhage from suspected iatrogenic uterine rupture. Obstet Gynecol 132(6):149, 2018
Noh JJ, Park CH, Jo MH, et al: Rupture of an unscarred uterus in a woman with long-term steroid treatment for systemic lupus erythematosus. Obstet Gynecol 122(2 Pt 2):472, 2013
O'Brien B, Smoleneic J: Cervical varicosities and placenta praevia. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 53(5):451, 2013
Oladapo OT, Adetoro OO, Ekele BA, et al: When getting there is not enough: a nationwide cross-sectional study of 998 maternal deaths and 1451 near-misses in public tertiary hospitals in a low-income country. BJOG 123(6):928, 2016
Oleen MA, Mariano J P: Controlling refractory atonic postpartum hemorrhage with Hemabate sterile solution. Am J Obstet Gynecol 162:205, 1990
Pan J, Zhou L, Huang A, et al: Sonographic diagnosis of complete uterine inversion: an unusual case. Clin Exp Obstet Gynecol 42(2):240, 2015
Pates JA, Hatab MR, McIntire DD, et al: Determining uterine blood flow in pregnancy with magnetic resonance imaging. Magn Reson Imaging 28(4):507, 2010
Pacheco LD, Clark SL, Klassen M, et al: Amniotic fluid embolism: principles of early clinical management. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(1):48, 2020
Petersen EE, Davis NL, Goodman D, et al: Vital signs: pregnancy related deaths, United States, 2011–2015, and strategies for prevention, 13 states, 2013–2017. MMWR 68(35):423, 2019
Porter TF, Clark SL, Dildy GA, et al: Isolated disseminated intravascular coagulation and amniotic fluid embolism. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:486, 1996
Poujade O, Zappa M, Letendre I, et al: Predictive factors for failure of pelvic arterial embolization for postpartum hemorrhage. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 117(2):119, 2012
Prick BW, Vos AA, Hop WC, et al: The current state of active third stage management to prevent postpartum hemorrhage: a cross-sectional study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 92(11):1277, 2013
Pritchard JA: Changes in the blood volume during pregnancy and delivery. Anesthesiology 26:393, 1965
Pritchard JA, Baldwin RM, Dickey JC, et al: Blood volume changes in pregnancy and the puerperium, 2. Red blood cell loss and changes in apparent blood volume during and following vaginal delivery, cesarean section, and cesarean section plus total hysterectomy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 84:1271, 1962
Rafi J, Muppala H: Retroperitoneal haematomas in obstetrics: literature review. Arch Gynecol Obstet 281(3):435, 2010
Ramler PI, van den Akker T, Henriquez D, et al: Women receiving massive transfusion due to postpartum hemorrhage: a comparison over time between two nationwide cohort studies. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 98(6):795, 2019
Rottenstreich M, Rotem R, Hirsch A, et al: Delayed diagnosis of intrapartum uterine rupture-maternal and neonatal consequences. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(5):708, 2021
Rouse DJ, MacPherson C, Landon M, et al: Blood transfusion and cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 108:891, 2006
Sabourin JN, Lee T, Magee LA, et al: Indications for, timing of, and modes of delivery in a national cohort of women admitted with antepartum hemorrhage at 22+0 to 28+6 weeks' gestation. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 34(11):1043, 2012
Said Ali A, Faraag E, Mohammed M, et al: The safety and effectiveness of Bakri balloon in the management of postpartum hemorrhage: a systematic review. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(2):300, 2021
Sangwan N, Nanda S, Singhal S, et al: Puerperal uterine inversion associated with unicornuate uterus. Arch Gynecol Obstet 280(4):625, 2009

Saoud F, Stone A, Nutter A, et al: The validation of a new method to assess estimated blood loss in the obstetric population undergoing cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(3):267.e1, 2019

Schimmer BP, Parker KL: Contraception and pharmacotherapy of obstetrical and gynecological disorders. In Brunton LL, Chabner BA, Knollmann BC (eds): Goodman and Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics, 12th ed. New York, McGraw Hill, 2011

Siegel MR, Drey E, Rosenstein MG: The use of bierer forceps to treat retained placenta after vaginal delivery. Abstract No. 830, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:S521, 2020

Skolnik S, Ioscovich A, Eidelman LA, et al: Anesthetic management of amniotic fluid embolism a multi-center, retrospective, cohort study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(8):1262, 2019

Smulian JC, DeFu1vio JD, Diven L, et al: Sonographic findings in acute uterine inversion. J Clin Ultrasound 41(7):453, 2013

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Pacheco LK, Saade G, et al: Amniotic fluid embolism; diagnosis and management. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(2):B16, 2016

Spies N, Woolfolk C, Macones GA, et al: Can machine-learning predict the need for postpartum transfusion with clinical knowledge at the time of delivery? Abstract No. 57, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(1):S49, 2020

Stolte L, van Kessel H, Seelen J, et al: Failure to produce the syndrome of amniotic fluid embolism by infusion of amniotic fluid and meconium into monkeys. Am J Obstet Gynecol 98:694, 1967

Suarez S, Conde-Agudelo A, Borovac-Pinheiro A, et al: Uterine balloon tamponade for the treatment of postpartum hemorrhage: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(4):293.e1, 2020

Sun JN, Zhang BL, Yu HY, et al: Spontaneous uterine rupture due to placenta percreta during pregnancy. Am J Emerg Med 34(9):1918.e1, 2016

Tanaka H, Katsuragi S, Osato K, et al: Value of fibrinogen in cases of maternal death related to amniotic fluid embolism. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(24):2940, 2017

Tarney CM, Whitecar P, Sewell M, et al: Rupture of an unscarred uterus in a quadruplet pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 121(2 Pt 2 Suppl 1):483, 2013

The Joint Commission: R3 Report: requirement, rationale, reference. Issue 24, 2019

Tita AT, Szychowski JM, Rouse DJ, et al: Higher-dose oxytocin and hemorrhage after vaginal delivery. Obstet Gynecol 119(2 Pt 1):293, 2012

Tola EN: First trimester spontaneous uterine rupture in a young woman with uterine anomaly. Case Rep Obstet Gynecol 2014:967386, 2014

Vandenberghe G, Bioemenkamp K, Beriage S, et al: The International Network of Obstetric Survey Systems study of uterine rupture: a descriptive multi-country population-based study. BJOG 126(3):370, 2019

Venkatesh KK, Strauss R, Grotegut C, et al: Machine learning- based prediction models for postpartum hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 135(4):935, 2020

Viau-Lapointe J, Filewod N: Extracorporeal therapies for amniotic fluid embolism. Obstet Gynecol 134(5):989, 2019

Vintejoux E, Ulrich D, Mousty E, et al: Success factors for Bakri balloon usage secondary to uterine atony: a retrospective, multicenter study. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 55(6):572, 2015

Webster CM, Smith KA, Manuck TA: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in pregnant and postpartum women: a ten-year case series. Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 2(2):100108, 2020

Weiwen Y: Study of the diagnosis and management of amniotic fluid embolism: 38 cases of analysis. Obstet Gynecol 95:385, 2000

Wendel MP, Shnaekel KL, Magann EF: Uterine inversion: a review of a life-threatening obstetrical emergency. Obstet Gynecol Surv 73(7):411, 2018

Witteveen T, van Stralen G, Zwart J, et al: Puerperal uterine inversion in the Netherlands: a nationwide cohort study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 92(3):334, 2013

WOMAN Trial Collaborators: Effect of early tranexamic acid administration on mortality, hysterectomy, and other morbidities in women with post-partum haemorrhage (WOMAN): an international, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 389(10084):2105, 2017

World Health Organization: WHO recommendations for prevention and treatment of maternal peripartum infections. Geneva, WHO, 2015

World Health Organization: WHO recommendations for the prevention and treatment of postpartum haemorrhage. Geneva, WHO, 2012

World Health Organization: WHO recommendations: uterotonics for the prevention of postpartum haemorrhage. Geneva, WHO, 2018

Yao R, Goetziner KR, Crimmins SD, et al: Association of maternal obesity with maternal and neonatal outcomes in cases of uterine rupture. Obstet Gynecol 129:683, 2017

Yee LM, McGee P, Bailit JL, et al: Daytime compared with nighttime differences in management and outcomes of postpartum hemorrhage Obstet Gynecol 133(1):155, 2019

Yoong W, Ridout A, Memtsa M, et al: Application of uterine compression suture in association with intrauterine balloon tamponade ("uterine sandwich") for postpartum hemorrhage. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91(1):147, 2012

Yule CS, Happe KK, McIntire DD, et al: The impact of uterine rupture on perinatal outcomes. Presented at the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Annual Meeting, Nashville TN, May 2019

Timofeev J, Zahn CM: Uterine inversion. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2017

Zeeman GG, Cunningham FG, Pritchard JA: The magnitude of hemoconcentration with eclampsia. Hypertens Pregnancy 28(2):127, 2009

Zhao B, Wang Y, Zhang Y: Uterine rupture in patients with a history of laparoscopy or hysteroscopy procedures: three case reports. Medicine (Baltimore) 98(20):e15491, 2019

Zwart JJ, Richters JM, Öry F, et al: Severe maternal morbidity during pregnancy, delivery and puerperium in the Netherlands: a nationwide population-based study of 371,000 pregnancies. BJOG 115:842, 2008

CHAPTER 43

Hemorrhagic Placental Disorders

Hemorrhage following partial or complete separation of the placenta can be torrential. Recall that the amount of blood flowing through the intervillous space at term exceeds 600 mL/min (Pates, 2010). In the second half of pregnancy, three placental disorders contribute substantially to maternal mortality rates. These include placental abruption, placenta previa, and placenta accreta spectrum.

The contributions of hemorrhagic placental disorders to maternal mortality are discussed in Chapter 1 (p. 7) and Chapter 42 (p. 733). The management and clinical experience with these disorders span more than a generation. Placental abruption, for example, has been emphasized in this text for more than 50 years beginning with the work of Dr. Jack Pritchard. Now more common than years past, placenta accreta spectrum is another substantial threat to maternal well-being.

PLACENTAL ABRUPTION

Etiopathogenesis

Separation of the placenta—either partially or totally—from its implantation site before delivery is called *placental abruption* or *abruptio placentae*. From Latin, the latter translates as "rending asunder of the placenta," which denotes a sudden accident, which is characteristic of most cases. In the purest sense, the cumbersome—and thus seldom used—term *premature separation of the normally implanted placenta* is most descriptive because it excludes separation of a placenta previa.

Abruption likely begins with rupture of a decidual spiral artery and hemorrhage into the decidual basalis. The subsequent expanding retroplacental hematoma splits the decidua and leaves a thin layer adherent to the myometrium. The decidual hematoma grows to lift away and compress the adjacent placenta. In some cases that are associated with preeclampsia, impaired trophoblastic invasion with subsequent atherosis is one underlying predisposition (Brosens, 2011). Inflammation or infection also may be contributory (Mhatre, 2016). However, histological findings cannot be used to determine the timing of the abruption (Chen, 2017).

In the early stages of placental abruption, clinical symptoms may be absent. Even with continued bleeding and placental separation, placental abruption can still be either total or partial (Fig. 43-1). With either, bleeding typically insinuates itself between the membranes and uterine wall, ultimately escaping through the cervix to cause *external hemorrhage*. Less often, the blood is retained, leading to *concealed hemorrhage* and delayed diagnosis. The delay translates into greater maternal and fetal hazards. With concealed hemorrhage, the likelihood of consumptive coagulopathy is also increased. This is because increased pressure within the intervillous space, caused by the expanding retroplacental clot, forces more placental thromboplastin into the maternal circulation (Chap. 44, p. 775).

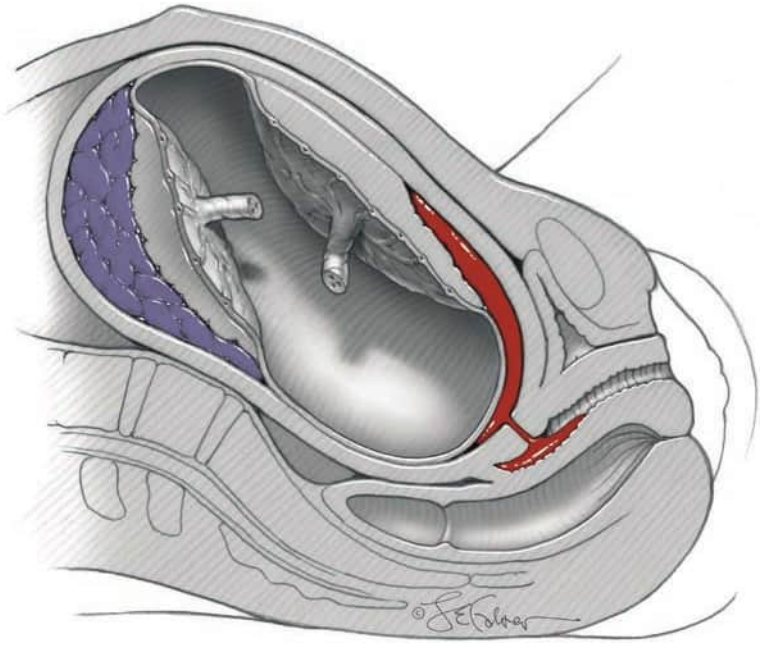


FIGURE 43-1 Schematic of placental abruption. Shown to the left is total placental abruption with concealed hemorrhage. To the right is a partial abruption with blood and clots that dissect between membranes and decidua to reach the internal cervical os and then the vagina.

Traumatic Abruption

External trauma—usually from motor vehicle crashes or aggravated assault—can cause placental separation. The frequency of abruption originating from trauma varies. Importantly, abruption can stem from relatively minor trauma (Huls, 2018). The clinical presentation and consequences of these abruptions differ somewhat from spontaneous cases. For example, associated fetomaternal hemorrhage, while seldom clinically significant with most spontaneous abruptions, is more common with trauma because of concomitant placental tears or "fractures" (Fig. 50-10, p. 895). In eight women with traumatic placental abruption cared for at Parkland Hospital, we found fetal-to-maternal hemorrhage of 80 to 100 mL in three (Stettler, 1992). Importantly, in some cases of trauma, a nonreassuring fetal heart rate tracing may not be accompanied by other evidence of placental separation. A sinusoidal tracing is one example. Following blunt abdominal trauma, uterine contractions are the single most important predictor of placental abruption (Greco, 2019). Traumatic abruption is considered in more detail in Chapter 50 (p. 894).

Most blood in the retroplacental hematoma in a nontraumatic placental abruption is maternal. This is because hemorrhage derives from separation within the maternal decidua, and placental villi are usually initially intact. In 78 women at Parkland Hospital with a nontraumatic placental abruption, fetal-to-maternal hemorrhage was documented in only 20 percent. All of these had <10 mL fetal blood loss (Stettler, 1992). In another series of 68 women with a placental abruption, fetal cells were found in peripheral blood in only 4 percent (Atkinson, 2015).

Placental abruption can create a visible circumscribed depression on the maternal surface of a freshly delivered placenta. These depressions usually measure a few centimeters in diameter and are covered by dark, clotted blood. Because several minutes are required for these anatomical changes to materialize, a very recently separated placenta may appear totally normal at delivery. Our experiences are like those of Benirschke and associates (2012) in that the "age" of the retroplacental clot cannot be determined exactly. In the example shown in Figure 43-2, a large dark clot is well formed. It has depressed the placental bulk and likely is at least several hours old.

Defining placental abruption severity is problematic. We consider placental abruption severe when the fetus dies. However, maternal and fetal complications are frequently serious even with a liveborn fetus. Ananth and coworkers (2016) have defined severe placental abruption as displaying one or more of the following: (1) maternal sequelae that include disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), shock, transfusion, hysterectomy, renal failure, or death; (2) fetal complications such as nonreassuring fetal status, growth restriction, or death; or (3) neonatal outcomes that include death, preterm delivery, or growth restriction.

Chronic Abruption

When placental separation is not followed by delivery, the placental abruption is termed chronic. Some of these cases begin early in pregnancy. Dugoff and coworkers (2004) observed an association between some abnormally elevated maternal serum aneuploidy markers and subsequent abruption. Others have correlated first- and second-trimester bleeding with third-trimester placental abruption (Ananth, 2006; Weiss, 2004). In some cases, chronic abruption and oligohydramnios develop and are called the *chronic abruption–oligohydramnios sequence* (CAOS) (Elliott, 1998). Even later in pregnancy, hemorrhage with retroplacental hematoma formation is occasionally arrested completely without delivery. These women may have

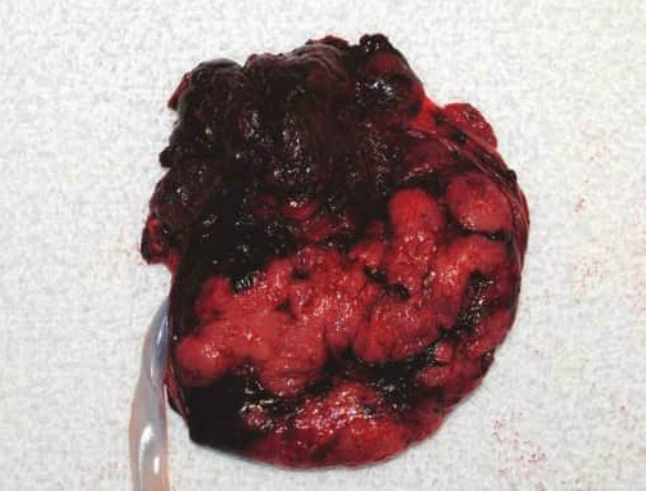


FIGURE 43-2 Partial placental abruption with a dark adherent clot.

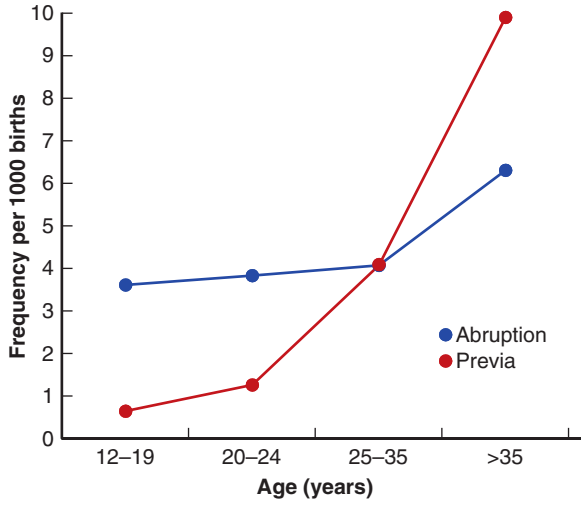


FIGURE 43-3 Frequency of placental abruption and placenta previa by maternal age at Parkland Hospital from 2000 through 2015.

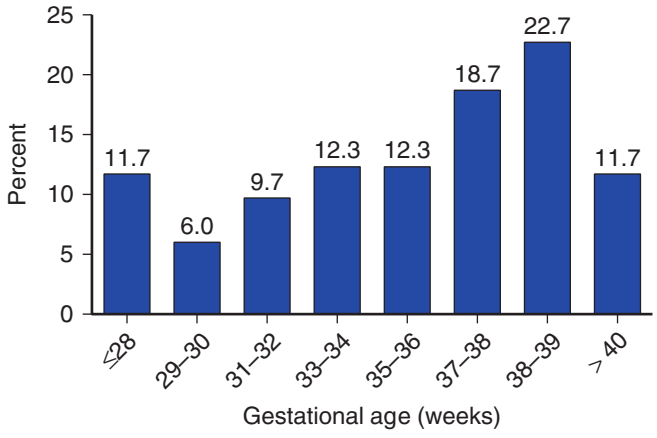


FIGURE 43-4 Frequency of placental abruption by gestational age at Parkland Hospital.

abnormally elevated levels of maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein (MSAFP) or placenta-specific RNAs as markers of the event (Miura, 2017; Ngai, 2012).

Frequency

The reported incidence of placental abruption varies because of differing criteria used for diagnosis. Its frequency averages 0.5 percent or 1 case in 200 deliveries. From one database of more than 125 million births from 1979 through 2010, the incidence of placental abruption was nearly 1 percent (Hill, 2020). In more than 250,000 deliveries at Parkland Hospital from 2000 through 2015, the incidence of placental abruption averaged 1 case in 290 births (Fig. 43-3).

The frequency of placental abruption has risen in this country, and most of this increase is in black women (Ananth, 2005, 2016). This disproportion may be explained in part by the conservative management of early-onset preeclampsia in some institutions (Chap. 41, p. 714). At Parkland Hospital, however, the frequency of severe placental abruption has declined. Specifically, with placental abruption so extensive as to kill the fetus, the incidence was 0.24 percent or 1 case in 420 births from 1956 through 1967 (Pritchard, 1967). Through 2020, this same frequency dropped to 0.05 percent or 1 case in 2060 births. This likely reflects a concurrent decline in the number of high-parity women giving birth and rise in the availability of prenatal care and emergency transportation.

Perinatal Morbidity and Mortality

Overall, perinatal outcomes are influenced by gestational age, and the frequency of placental abruption rises across the third trimester. As seen in Figure 43-4, more than half of the placental abruptions at Parkland Hospital developed at gestational ages ≥37 weeks' gestation. Perinatal mortality and morbidity, however, are more common with earlier abruptions and with concomitant preeclampsia (Furukawa, 2015; Han, 2019). Of other related factors, major fetal congenital anomalies have greater association with placental abruption (Riihimäki, 2013).

Although the rates of fetal death have declined, the contribution of abruption as a cause of stillbirth remains prominent because other causes also have decreased. For example, since the early 1990s, 10 to 12 percent of all third-trimester stillbirths at Parkland Hospital have been the consequence of placental abruption. In a review of more than 15 million singleton births between 1995 and 1998 in the United States, the perinatal mortality rate associated with placental abruption was 119 death per 1000 births. This was higher than the rate of 8 deaths per 1000 births in the general obstetrical population (Salihu, 2005).

Neonatal deaths also are common following placental abruption. At Parkland Hospital, 15 percent of liveborn neonates die. Perinatal morbidity also is common in this group (Downes, 2017). Moreover, associated childhood mortality mainly stems from birth-related asphyxia and prematurity (Riihimäki, 2018). In one series, 20 percent of 43 liveborn neonates had severe fetal acidemia following placental abruption, and 20 percent of survivors developed cerebral palsy (Matsuda, 2013). In another study of 84 liveborns, 29 (35 percent) had an umbilical artery pH <7.00 (Onishi, 2019). Ananth and coworkers (2017) attribute some of the adverse neurodevelopmental outcomes to preterm delivery.

Predisposing Factors

Demographic Factors

Several predisposing factors raise the placental abruption risk (Table 43-1). *Advancing maternal age* is one risk, although data regarding women of great parity are conflicting (see Fig. 43-3) (Okby, 2017). Race or ethnicity also appears important (Eubanks, 2021). In an earlier study, in almost 366,000 deliveries at Parkland Hospital, abruption severe enough to kill the fetus was most common in black and white women—1 case in 200 births; less so in Asian women—1 in 300; and least common in Latinas—1 in 350 (Pritchard, 1991). A *familial association* was found from one Norwegian population-based registry (Rasmussen, 2009). In this study, if a woman had a severe abruption, the risk for her sister was doubled. Candidate genes involved in mitochondrial biogenesis and oxidative phosphorylation pathways, which confer risk for placental abruption, have been described (Workalemahu, 2018).

TABLE 43-1. Risk Factors for Placental Abruption

Risk Factor	Relative Risk
Prior abruption	10–188
Increased age and parity	1.3–2.3
Preeclampsia	2.1–4.0
Chronic hypertension	1.8–3.0
Chorioamnionitis	3.0
Preterm ruptured membranes	2.4–4.9
Multifetal gestation	2–8
Low birthweight	14.0
Hydramnios	1.9
Cigarette smoking	1.4–1.9
Single umbilical artery	3.4
Cocaine use	—
Uterine leiomyoma	2.6
Subchorionic hematoma	5.7

Data from Aviram, 2015; Downes, 2017; Gutvirtz, 2016; Khazaei, 2019; Kortekaas, 2020; Morgan, 2016; Ruiter, 2015; Tuuli, 2011.

Pregnancy-associated Hypertension

Some form of hypertension is the most frequent condition associated with placental abruption. This includes gestational hypertension, preeclampsia, chronic hypertension, or a combination. The hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count (HELLP) syndrome carries an increased risk for placental abruption. Moreover, expectant management of preeclampsia in significantly preterm pregnancies was complicated by placental abruption in 4 percent (Shoopala, 2019). In a report by Pritchard and colleagues (1991) that described 408 women with placental abruption and fetal demise, hypertension was apparent in half once hypovolemia was corrected. Half of these latter women—a fourth of all 408—had chronic hypertension. Examined another way, one Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units (MFMU) Network study found that 1.5 percent of pregnant women with chronic hypertension suffered placental abruption (Sibai, 1998). At Parkland Hospital, the placental abruption frequency in women with treated chronic hypertension and significant proteinuria was almost 1 percent. This incidence compared with the 0.3-percent incidence in women with treated hypertension without substantial proteinuria (Morgan, 2016).

Chronic hypertension with superimposed preeclampsia or with fetal-growth restriction confers an even greater risk (Lueth, 2020). Even so, the severity of hypertension does not necessarily correlate with abruption incidence (Morgan, 2016; Zetterstrom, 2005). However, women with preeclampsia that experience placental abruption have worse maternal, fetal, and neonatal outcomes compared with women experiencing abruption alone (Han, 2019). The long-term effects of these associations are apparent from the significantly elevated cardiovascular mortality risk in women with prior abruption, with or without chronic hypertension (DeRoo, 2016; Pariente, 2013). Observations from the Magpie Trial Collaborative Group suggest that women with preeclampsia, with or without chronic hypertension, given magnesium sulfate may have a reduced risk for abruption (Altman, 2002). Last, Roberge and colleagues (2018), performed a metaanalysis and reported that a 100-mg daily aspirin may decrease the incidence of placental abruption.

Preterm Prelabor Ruptured Membranes

The placental abruption risk substantially rises when placental membranes rupture before term. (Hackney, 2016). Of 756 women with ruptured membranes between 20 and 36 weeks' gestation, 5 percent developed an abruption (Major, 1995). The frequency was 17 percent with previable prelabor ruptured membranes (Kibel, 2016). The risk for abruption with preterm membrane rupture is further elevated with comorbid infection (Ananth, 2004). In one cohort study of pregnancies ≥34 weeks' gestation, the placental abruption rate was eightfold higher if hydramnios was comorbid (Aviram, 2015). From a metaanalysis of 10 studies that included term and preterm gestational ages, hydramnios was associated with a twofold greater rate of placental abruption (Khazaei, 2019). Abrupt uterine decompression during membrane rupture may be an inciting factor.

Prior Abruption

Many of the predisposing factors in women with a history of an abruption are chronic conditions, and in these cases, placental abruption has a high recurrence rate. Women with abruption and fetal death have a recurrence rate of 12 percent, and half of these abruptions caused another fetal death (Pritchard, 1970). Furuhashi and colleagues (2002) reported a 22-percent recurrence rate, and half recurred at a gestational age 1 to 3 weeks earlier than the first abruption. In one longitudinal Dutch study, Ruiter and coworkers (2015) cited a recurrence risk of 5.8 percent. In a population-based study of 767,000 pregnancies, the authors found a sevenfold higher risk for recurrence of a "mild" abruption and twelvefold risk for a "severe" abruption (Rasmussen, 2009). For women who had two severe abruptions, the risk for a third was increased 50-fold.

Management of a pregnancy subsequent to an abruption is difficult because another separation may suddenly occur, even remote from term. In many of these recurrences, evaluation of fetal well-being is almost always reassuring beforehand. Thus, antepartum fetal testing is usually not predictive. Because term abruptions tend to be recurrent, Ruiter and coworkers (2015) recommend labor induction at 37 weeks' gestation. It seems reasonable to induce labor at 38 completed weeks if other complications do not develop beforehand.

Other Associations

Of these listed in Table 43-1, cigarette smoking is linked to an elevated risk for placental abruption (Eubanks, 2021). One metaanalysis of 1.6 million pregnancies in smokers found a twofold risk (Ananth, 1999). This risk was five- to eightfold if smokers had chronic hypertension, severe preeclampsia, or both. Similar findings are reported by others (Hogberg, 2007; Kaminsky, 2007). *Cocaine abuse* is linked, and in one series of 50 women who abused cocaine during pregnancy, eight had a stillbirth caused by placental abruption (Bingol, 1987).

Of potential serum markers, MSAFP, inhibin, and pregnancy-associated plasma protein in abnormal levels carry increased

risk (Ananth, 2017). Indeed, preliminary data shows that MSAFP levels >280 μg/L in the third trimester may be predictive (Ngai, 2012). Subclinical hypothyroidism or high levels of antithyroid antibodies have been associated with a two- to threefold higher risk for placental abruption (Abbassi-Ghanavati, 2010; Maraka, 2016). Lupus anticoagulant is associated with maternal floor infarction of the placenta but is less so with typical abruptions. Women affected by some of the thrombophilias have higher associated rates of thromboembolic events during pregnancy, however, no convincing evidence supports a link between thrombophilias and placental abruption (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019; 2020).

Diagnosis

The signs and symptoms of placental abruption can vary considerably. Classically, affected women have a sudden onset of abdominal pain, vaginal bleeding, and uterine tenderness. In an earlier study, 78 percent had vaginal bleeding, 66 percent had uterine tenderness or back pain, and 60 percent had a nonreassuring fetal status (Hurd, 1983). Other findings included frequent contractions and persistent hypertonus. However, in a fifth, preterm labor was diagnosed, and placental abruption was not suspected until fetal distress or death followed.

In some women, external bleeding can be profuse, yet placental separation may not be so extensive as to compromise the fetus. In others, external bleeding is absent, but the placenta is sufficiently sheared off to kill the fetus—a concealed abruption. In either case, bleeding can be massive and leads to hypovolemic shock. In an earlier report from Parkland Hospital, Pritchard and Brekken (1967) described 141 women with abruption so severe as to kill the fetus. Blood loss in these women often amounted to at least half of their pregnant blood volume.

Consumptive Coagulopathy

With placental abruption, some degree of intravascular coagulation is almost universal. Placental abruption is the most common cause of clinically profound consumptive coagulopathy in obstetrics and probably in all specialties (Cunningham, 2015). A primary consequence of intravascular coagulation is the activation of plasminogen to plasmin, which then lyses fibrin microemboli to maintain microcirculatory patency. With placental abruption severe enough to kill the fetus, pathological levels of fibrinogen–fibrin degradation products and D-dimers are almost always found in maternal serum (Erez, 2015). Their quantification is not clinically useful.

In a third of women with an abruption severe enough to kill the fetus, the plasma fibrinogen level will be <150 mg/dL. These levels are dependent on the maternal preabruption fibrinogen level, and thus higher levels are "protective" (Cunningham, 2015; Wang, 2016). Clinically significant low levels may cause troublesome surgical bleeding, and measurement of levels assists fibrinogen-replacement efforts. Levels of several other coagulation factors also are variably decreased. These are not specifically measured in DIC, but factors are replaced empirically with fresh frozen plasma as a part of massive transfusion protocols (Chap. 44, p. 772). In addition, thrombocytopenia, sometimes profound, may accompany severe hypofibrinogenemia and can be common after repeated blood transfusions. This "dilutional coagulopathy" is additive to DIC (Chap. 44, p. 772).

Consumptive coagulopathy is more likely with a concealed abruption because intrauterine pressure is higher. This forces more thromboplastin into the large veins draining the implantation site. With a partial abruption and a live fetus, severe coagulation defects are less common. Our experience has been that if serious coagulopathy develops, it is usually evident by the time abruption symptoms appear. In one unusual case, a woman cared for at Parkland Hospital presented with a nosebleed. She had no pain or vaginal bleeding, but her fetus was dead. Her blood did not clot, and the plasma fibrinogen level was 25 mg/dL. A total placental abruption was confirmed at delivery.

Couvelaire Uterus

At the time of cesarean delivery, it is not uncommon to find widespread extravasation of blood into the uterine musculature and beneath the serosa (Fig. 43-5). This phenomenon is named after Couvelaire, who in the early 1900s termed it *uteroplacental apoplexy*. These myometrial hemorrhages may incite uterine atony, but are not a sole indication for hysterectomy. Effusions of blood may collect beneath the tubal serosa, between the leaves of the broad ligaments, in the ovaries, or in the peritoneal cavity.

End-organ Injury

Acute kidney injury (AKI) is a general term describing renal dysfunction from many causes (Chap. 56, p. 1006). Delayed or incomplete treatment of hypovolemia is one. However, even with placental abruption complicated by severe DIC, prompt and vigorous treatment with blood and crystalloid solutions usually prevents significant renal dysfunction. The risk for renal injury with placental abruption rises when preeclampsia

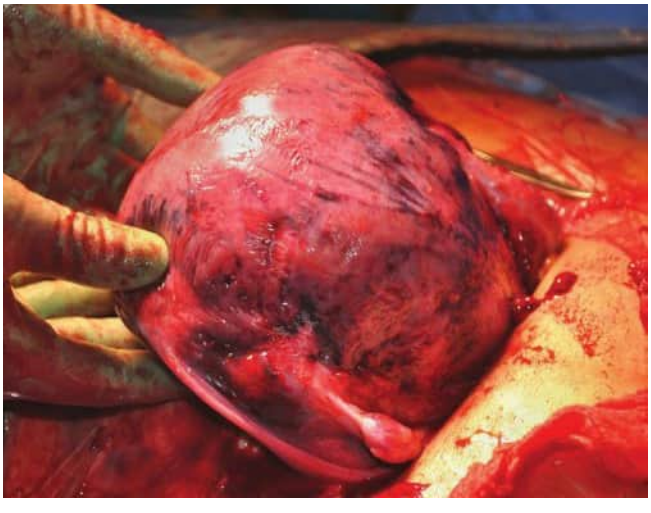


FIGURE 43-5 Couvelaire uterus from total placental abruption after cesarean delivery. Blood markedly infiltrates the myometrium to reach the serosa. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Steven Blaine Holloway.)

coexists (Alexander, 2015; Drakeley, 2002). Most cases of AKI are reversible, do not require dialysis, and generally have good long-term outcomes (Arazi, 2015). However, irreversible acute cortical necrosis occasionally stems from placental abruption (Gopalakrishnan, 2015).

Rarely, pituitary failure—*Sheehan syndrome*—follows severe intrapartum or early postpartum hemorrhage. Described in Chapter 61 (p. 1104), the exact pathogenesis is not well understood, especially because endocrine abnormalities are infrequent even in women who suffer catastrophic hemorrhage (Matsuwaki, 2014).

Differential Diagnosis

Severe placental abruption usually is obvious. However, less severe forms are not always recognized with certainty, and the diagnosis becomes one of exclusion. Unfortunately, no laboratory tests or other diagnostic methods accurately confirm lesser degrees of placental separation. Sonography has limited use because the placenta and fresh clots may have similar imaging characteristics. In a study of 149 women with a suspected placental abruption, the sensitivity for sonography was only 24 percent (Glantz, 2002). Thus, negative findings with sonographic examination do not exclude placental abruption. Conversely, magnetic resonance (MR) imaging is highly sensitive for placental abruption and should be considered if the diagnostic information would change management (Masselli, 2011). Last, elevated serum levels of D-dimers may be suggestive, but this has not been adequately tested.

Thus, in the woman with vaginal bleeding and a live fetus, placenta previa and other bleeding causes are sought with clinical and sonographic evaluation. It has long been taught—perhaps with some justification—that painful uterine bleeding signifies placental abruption, whereas painless uterine bleeding indicates placenta previa. The differential diagnosis is usually not this straightforward, and labor accompanying previa may cause pain that suggests placental abruption. Conversely, pain from placental abruption may mimic normal labor, or it may be painless, especially with a posterior placenta. At times, the vaginal bleeding source remains obscure even after delivery.

■ Management

Treatment varies depending on maternofetal clinical condition, gestational age, and amount of associated hemorrhage. With a living viable-aged fetus and with vaginal delivery not imminent, emergency cesarean delivery is chosen by most. In some women, fetal compromise will be evident as shown in Figure 43-6. When evaluating fetal status, sonographic confirmation of fetal heart activity may be necessary because sometimes an electrode applied directly to a dead fetus will provide misleading information by recording the maternal heart rate (Chap. 24, p. 447).

If the fetus has died or if it is not considered sufficiently mature to live outside the uterus, vaginal birth is preferable for the mother. In either case, prompt and intensive resuscitation with blood products and crystalloids is begun. These measures are lifesaving for the mother and hopefully for her fetus. If the diagnosis of placental abruption is uncertain and the fetus is alive and without evidence of compromise, close observation may be warranted provided that immediate intervention is available. Colón and coworkers (2016) performed a randomized trial and found no benefits to magnesium sulfate tocolysis given to women with a preterm "nonsevere" abruption at 24 to 34 weeks' gestation.

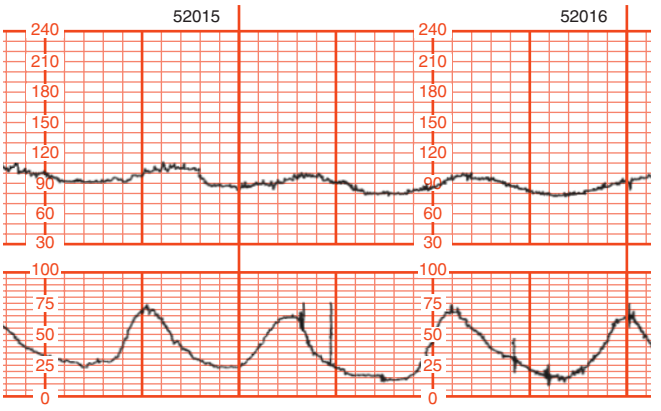


FIGURE 43-6 Placental abruption with fetal compromise. Lower panel: Uterine hypertonus with a baseline pressure of 20 to 25 mm Hg and frequent contractions peaking at approximately 75 mm Hg. Upper panel: The fetal heart rate demonstrates baseline bradycardia with repetitive late decelerations.

Cesarean Delivery

The compromised fetus is usually best served by cesarean delivery, and the speed of response is an important factor in perinatal outcomes. In one study of 33 singleton pregnancies with a clinically overt placental abruption and fetal bradycardia, 15 of the 22 neurologically intact survivors were delivered within a 20-minute decision-to-delivery interval (Kayani, 2003). However, eight of 11 infants who died or developed cerebral palsy were delivered after a 20-minute intervals. Onishi and colleagues (2019) also found a significant negative correlation between these intervals and cord arterial pH. At Parkland Hospital, placental abruption was one of the most powerful antecedents to body-cooling treatment for neonatal encephalopathy (Nelson, 2014).

A major hazard to cesarean delivery is imposed by clinically significant consumptive coagulopathy. Preparations include two large-bore intravenous catheters and plans for blood and component replacement. Measures of hemoglobin, platelet, and fibrinogen levels as well as protime (PT) and partial thromboplastin time (PTT) guide product replacement.

Vaginal Delivery

If the fetus has died, vaginal delivery is usually preferred. As reviewed earlier, hemostasis at the placental implantation site depends primarily on myometrial contraction and not blood coagulability. Thus, after vaginal delivery, uterotonic agents and uterine massage are used to stimulate myometrial contractions. Uterine muscle fibers compress placental site vessels and prompt hemostasis even if coagulation is defective. In some instances, vaginal delivery may not be preferable, even with a dead fetus. One example is brisk hemorrhage that cannot be successfully managed by vigorous blood replacement. Others

are the myriad obstetrical complications that prohibit vaginal delivery in general. In some women with extensive placental abruption, labor tends to be rapid because the uterus is usually persistently hypertonic (see Fig. 43-6). This can magnify fetal compromise. In some cases, baseline intraamnionic pressures reach 50 mm Hg or higher, and with contractions, pressures may attain levels exceeding 100 mm Hg. Overall, however, first- and second-stage labor does not appear to be shorter than usual (Downes, 2017).

Early amniotomy has long been championed in the management of placental abruption. This ostensibly achieves better spiral artery compression to diminish implantation site bleeding and reduce thromboplastin infusion into the maternal vascular system. Although evidence supporting this theory is lacking, membrane rupture may hasten delivery. However, if the fetus is small, the intact sac may be more efficient in promoting cervical dilation. If rhythmic uterine contractions are not superimposed on baseline hypertonus, oxytocin is given in standard doses. No data indicate that oxytocin augments thromboplastin escape into the maternal circulation to worsen coagulopathy. In light of hypertonus associated with placental abruption, misoprostol may be a less favored induction agent due to its association with uterine tachysystole.

In the past, some had set arbitrary time limits to permit vaginal delivery. Instead, experiences illustrate that maternal outcome depends on the diligence with which adequate fluid and blood replacement therapy are pursued rather than on the interval to delivery. Observations from Parkland Hospital described by Pritchard and Brekken (1967) are similar to those from the University of Virginia reported by Brame and associates (1968). Specifically, women with severe abruption who were transfused during 18 hours or more before delivery had similar outcomes to those in whom delivery was accomplished sooner.

Expectant Management

If possible, delaying delivery may benefit an immature fetus. In one series, 43 women with placental abruption before 35 weeks' gestation were expectantly managed, and 31 of them were given tocolytic therapy (Bond, 1989). The mean interval until delivery for all 43 approximated 12 days. Cesarean delivery was performed in 75 percent, and there were no stillbirths. As discussed earlier, women with a very early abruption may develop *chronic abruption–oligohydramnios sequence*. In one report, four women with an abruption at a mean gestational age of 20 weeks subsequently developed oligohydramnios and delivered at an average gestational age of 28 weeks (Elliott, 1998). In another description of 256 women with an abruption at <28 weeks' gestation, a mean of 1.6 weeks was gained (Sabourin, 2012). Of the group, 65 percent were delivered before 29 weeks, and half of all women underwent emergent cesarean delivery.

Unfortunately, even continuous fetal heart rate monitoring does not guarantee universally good outcomes. A normal tracing may precede sudden further separation with instant fetal compromise. In some of these, if the separation is sufficient, the fetus will die before it can be delivered. Tocolysis is advocated by some for suspected abruption if the fetus does not display compromise. Some investigators have observed that tocolysis improved outcomes in a highly selected cohort of women with preterm pregnancies (Bond, 1989; Combs, 1992). In another study, Towers and coworkers (1999) administered magnesium sulfate, terbutaline, or both to 95 of 131 women with abruption diagnosed before 36 weeks' gestation. The perinatal mortality rate was 5 percent in both groups with or without tocolysis. Similar results were reported from a randomized trial (Colón, 2016). A clinical consideration to the use of tocolytic agents, such as terbutaline, is that the drug-induced tachycardia may mask maternal compromise. We are of the opinion that suspected placental abruption contraindicates tocolytic agent use.

PLACENTA PREVIA

Classification

The Latin *previa* means going *before*, and in this sense, the placenta goes before the fetus into the birth canal. *Placenta previa* describes a placenta that is implanted somewhere in the lower uterine segment, either over or very near the internal cervical os. Because these anatomical relationships cannot always be precisely defined and because they frequently change across pregnancy, terminology can sometimes be confusing.

Terminology for placenta previa has evolved, and the National Institutes of Health (NIH)-sponsored Fetal Imaging Workshop (Reddy, 2014) recommends the following classification:

- Placenta previa: the internal os is covered partially or completely by placenta (Figs. 43-7 and 43-8). In the past, these were further classified as either total or partial previa.
- Low-lying placenta: implantation in the lower uterine segment is such that the placental edge does not cover the internal os but lies within a 2-cm wide perimeter around the os. A previously used term, *marginal previa*, described a placenta that was at the edge of the internal os but did not overlie it.

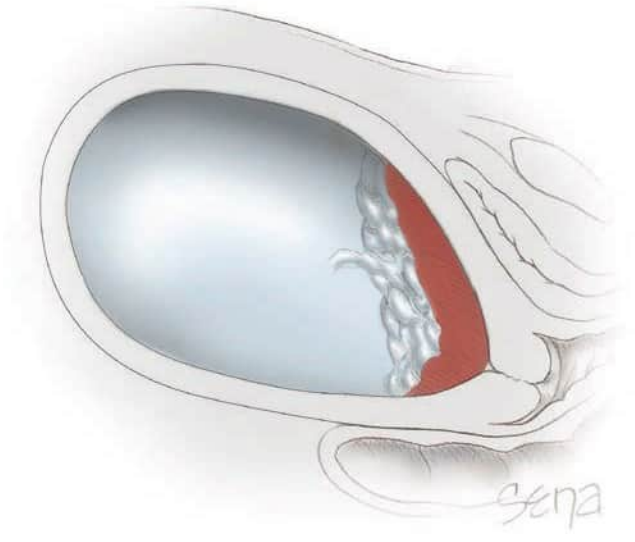


FIGURE 43-7 Placenta previa showing that copious hemorrhage could be anticipated with any cervical dilation.

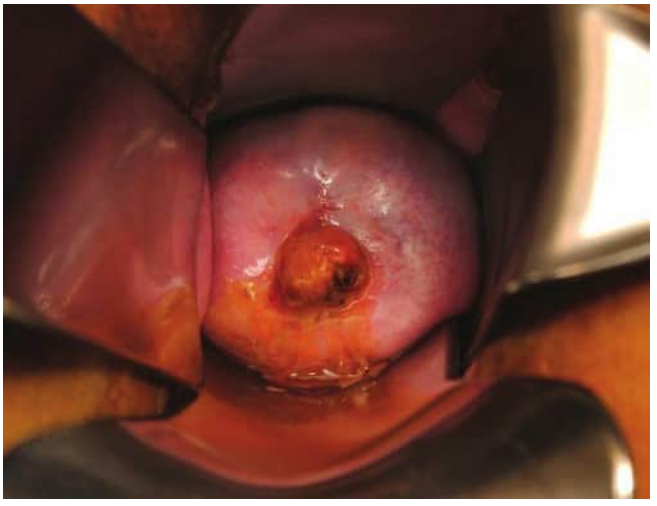


FIGURE 43-8 On speculum examination, placenta is visible protruding through the cervical os. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Maureen E. Flowers.)

Clearly, the classification of some cases will depend on cervical dilation at the time of assessment. For example, a low-lying placenta at 2-cm dilation may become a partial placenta previa at 4-cm dilation because the cervix has opened to expose the placental edge. Conversely, a placenta previa that appears to be total before cervical dilation may become partial at 4-cm dilation because the cervical opening now extends beyond the edge of the placenta. *Digital palpation in an attempt to ascertain these changing relations between the placental edge and internal os as the cervix dilates usually causes severe hemorrhage!*

With any degree of placenta previa, a certain amount of spontaneous placental separation is inevitable during lower uterine segment remodeling and cervical dilation. Although this frequently causes bleeding and thus technically constitutes a placental abruption, this term is usually not applied in these instances.

Somewhat but not always related is *vasa previa*, in which fetal vessels course through membranes and present at the cervical os. Vasa previa has been reviewed by the Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine (2015) and is discussed in Chapter 6 (p. 115).

Placental Migration

Beginning with the use of sonography in obstetrics, the term *placental migration* was coined to describe the apparent movement of the placenta away from the internal os (King, 1973). Obviously, the placenta does not actually move, and the mechanism of apparent movement is not completely understood. To begin with, migration is clearly a misnomer, because decidual invasion anchors chorionic villi.

Explanations of placental migration are likely additive. First, apparent movement of the low-lying placenta relative to the internal os is related to the imprecision of two-dimensional sonography. Second, as pregnancy progresses, growth of the lower and upper uterine segments differs. With greater blood flow in the upper uterus, placental growth toward this supply, termed *trophotropism*, is thus more likely directed toward the fundus. Many of those placentas that "migrate" most likely never were circumferentially implanted with true villous invasion that reached the internal cervical os. *Importantly, a low-lying placenta or placenta previa is less likely to "migrate" if there is a prior cesarean delivery scar*.

The frequency of placental migration has been quantified. In one study of 4300 women at midpregnancy, 12 percent had a low-lying placenta (Sanderson, 1991). Of placentas not covering the internal os, previa did not persist, and none subsequently had placental hemorrhage. Conversely, approximately 40 percent of placentas that covered the os at midpregnancy continued to do so until delivery. Thus, placentas that lie close to but not over the internal os until the early third trimester are unlikely to persist as a previa by term (Heller, 2014; Parrott, 2015). The chance that placenta previa persists increases with a hysterotomy scar (Kohari, 2012; Oyelese, 2006).

Incidence and Associated Factors

The incidence of placenta previa has risen during the past 30 years. Reported incidences average about 0.4 percent or 1 case per 250 to 400 deliveries (Hill, 2020). The frequency at Parkland Hospital from 1988 through 2003 for nearly 250,000 births was 2.6 cases per 1000. For the 2004 to 2020 epoch, it rose to 3.8 cases per 1000. Similar frequencies have been reported from Austria, Finland, and Israel (Kollmann, 2016; Räisänen, 2014; Rosenberg, 2011).

Several demographic factors may contribute to this higher rate of placenta previa. First, maternal age increases the frequency (Biro, 2012; Roberts, 2012). In the First- and Second-Trimester Evaluation of Risk (FASTER) trial, which included more than 36,000 women, the frequency of previa was 0.5 percent for women <35 years compared with 1.1 percent in those ≥35 years (Cleary–Goldman, 2005). At Parkland Hospital, the incidence ranged from a rate of approximately 0.65 cases per 1000 births for women ≤19 years to almost 10 cases per 1000 births for women older than 35.

Multiparity also elevates the rate of placenta previa (Räisänen, 2014). Obviously, the effects of advancing maternal age and parity are confounding. Still, Babinszki and colleagues (1999) reported that the 2.2-percent incidence in women with parity of five or greater was significantly higher than that of women with lower parity. The interpregnancy interval does not affect this rate (Fox, 2015).

Cigarette smoking increases the relative risk of placenta previa at least twofold (Usta, 2005). It has been postulated that carbon monoxide hypoxemia causes compensatory placental hypertrophy and greater surface area. Smoking may also be related to decidual vasculopathy.

Several clinical characteristics also raise placenta previa risks. Foremost, women with one or more *prior cesarean deliveries* are at greater risk for subsequent placental disorders that include placenta previa, placental abruption, or placenta accreta spectrum (PAS) (Gibbins, 2018; Klar, 2014). The cumulative risks for placenta previa that accrue with the increasing number of cesarean deliveries are extraordinary. In one MFMU Network study of 30,132 women undergoing cesarean delivery, the incidence was 1.3 percent for those with only one prior cesarean

delivery, but it was 3.4 percent if there were six or more prior cesareans (Silver, 2006). In a retrospective cohort of nearly 400,000 women who were delivered of two consecutive singletons, those with a cesarean delivery for the first pregnancy had a 1.6-fold greater rate for previa in the second pregnancy (Gurol-Urganci, 2011). These same investigators reported a 1.5-fold higher rate from six similar population-based studies. This risk is increased eightfold in women with parity greater than four and who have more than four prior cesarean deliveries (Gilliam, 2002).

Importantly, women with a prior uterine incision and placenta previa have an increased likelihood that cesarean hysterectomy will be necessary because of associated PAS (p. 761). In one study, 6 percent of women with a primary cesarean delivery for placenta previa required a hysterectomy. This rate was 25 percent for women with a placenta previa undergoing repeat cesarean delivery (Frederiksen, 1999).

Multifetal gestation raises placenta previa risk (Ananth, 2003a; Luke, 2017a). Compared with monochorionic twins, dichorionic ones show higher rates, which perhaps stems from having two implantation sites (Weis, 2012).

MSAFP levels, if abnormally elevated for otherwise unexplained reasons during prenatal screening, raise the risk for placenta previa and a host of other abnormalities. Moreover, women with a placenta previa and comorbid MSAFP level >2.0 multiples of the median (MoM) at 16 weeks' gestation were at greater risk for late-pregnancy bleeding and preterm birth (Chap. 17, p. 338).

Assisted reproductive technology (ART) used for conception elevates placenta previa rates. Some of this association may derive from overlapping effects. First, older women constitute a significant portion of patients electing ART (Luke, 2017b). Second, even adjusting for multifetal gestation, ART is still associated with higher previa rates (Karami, 2018). Last, in one systematic review including nearly 256,000 births, uterine leiomyomas were associated with higher placenta previa rates (Jenabi, 2019).

Clinical Features

Painless bleeding is the most characteristic event with placenta previa. Bleeding usually does not develop until near the end of the second trimester or later, but it can begin even before midpregnancy. Undoubtedly, some late abortions are caused by an abnormally located placenta. Initial bleeding from a previa usually begins without warning, and this *sentinel bleed* is rarely so profuse as to prove fatal. Usually it ceases, only to recur. However, in perhaps 10 percent of women, particularly those with a placenta implanted near but not over the cervical os, bleeding is delayed until labor onset. Bleeding at this time varies in degree, and it may mimic placental abruption.

In cases in which the placenta is located over the internal os, a specific sequence of events leads to bleeding. First, the uterine body remodels to form the lower uterine segment. With this, the internal os dilates, and some of the implanted placenta inevitably separates. Bleeding that ensues is augmented by the inherent inability of myometrial fibers in the lower uterine segment to contract and thereby constrict torn vessels. Similarly, bleeding from this lower-segment implantation site also frequently continues after placental delivery. Last, lacerations in the friable cervix and lower segment will bleed. These may be especially problematic following manual removal of a somewhat adhered placenta.

Cervical length may alter the clinical course. Stafford (2010) but not Trudell (2013), both with their associates, found that a placenta previa and a third-trimester cervical length <30 mm increased the risks for hemorrhage, uterine activity, and preterm birth. Similarly, Friszer (2013) but not Trudell (2013), both with their coworkers, showed that women admitted for bleeding had a greater chance of delivery in the subsequent 7 days when the cervical length measured <25 mm sonographically.

Placenta accreta spectrum is a frequent and serious complication associated with placenta previa. This abnormal placental attachment derives in part from poorly developed decidua that lines the lower uterine segment. Biswas and coworkers (1999) performed placental bed biopsies in 50 women with a placenta previa and in 50 control women. Infiltration of spiral arterioles by trophoblastic giant cells, rather than by the expected endovascular trophoblast cells, was found in half of specimens. In contrast, only 20 percent of biopsies from normally implanted placentas had these changes. In another study of 514 cases of placenta previa, abnormal placental attachment was identified in 7 percent (Frederiksen, 1999). As discussed, placenta previa overlying a prior cesarean incision conveys a particularly high risk for PAS.

Coagulopathy rarely complicate placenta previa, even when implantation site separation is extensive (Cunningham, 2015). Placental thromboplastin, which incites the intravascular coagulation seen with placental abruption, is presumed to readily escape through the cervical canal rather than be forced into the maternal circulation. The paucity of large myometrial veins in this area also may be protective.

Diagnosis

For uterine bleeding after midpregnancy, placenta previa and placental abruption are always considered. In one Canadian study, placenta previa accounted for 21 percent of women admitted from 22 to 28 weeks' gestation with vaginal bleeding (Sabourin, 2012). Previa should not be excluded until sonographic evaluation has clearly proved its absence. If sonography is not readily available, diagnosis by digital cervical examination is done in an operating room and with preparations in place for operative delivery. We call these preparations a *double set-up technique*. *Even the gentlest examination can cause torrential hemorrhage.*

Using standard sonographic techniques, quick and accurate placental localization can be accomplished (American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, 2018). This is usually done with transabdominal sonography. If the placenta clearly overlies the cervix or if it lies away from the lower uterine segment, the examination has excellent sensitivity and negative predictive value (Olive, 2006; Quant, 2014). Obese women may hinder clear viewing of the lower uterine segment. A full bladder may artificially elongate the cervix and compress the lower uterine

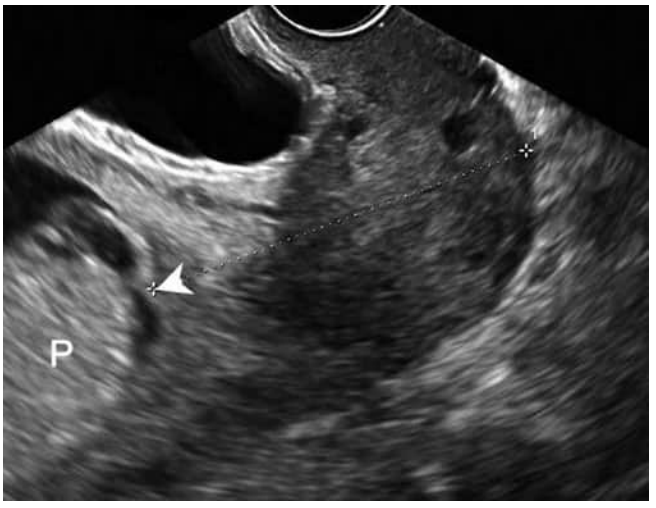


FIGURE 43-9 In this transvaginal image at 21 weeks' gestation, the posterior placenta (*P*) completely covers the internal cervical os (*arrowhead*). The dotted line represents the cervical canal.

segment to give the impression that the placenta overlies the cervix.

If placental location remains unclear, transvaginal sonography is the most accurate sonographic method and is safe even with vaginal bleeding (Fig. 43-9). In a comprehensive study, the internal os was visualized in all cases with transvaginal sonography but in only 30 percent with transabdominal sonography (Farine, 1988). As discussed, if the placental edge lies <2 cm from the internal os, but not covering it, the placenta is considered low lying (Reddy, 2014). In the absence of any other indication, sonography need not be frequently repeated simply to document placental position. At Parkland Hospital, women with placenta previa identified at 18 to 22 weeks' gestation and a prior cesarean delivery are reevaluated sonographically at 28 weeks and again at 32 weeks if it persists. Those with a placenta previa but without prior cesarean delivery undergo reimaging at 32 weeks. Restriction of activity is not necessary unless a previa persists beyond 28 weeks' gestation or if clinical findings such as bleeding or contractions develop before this time. At 32 weeks' gestation, if the placental edge is still <2 cm from the os, transvaginal sonography is repeated at 36 weeks' gestation.

Using MR imaging, several investigators report excellent visualization of placental abnormalities. However, it is unlikely that this modality will replace sonography for routine evaluation anytime soon given availability and cost differences compared with sonography. However, MR imaging is useful for evaluation of PAS (p. 761).

■ Management

Care with placenta previa is individualized, and three prominent factors include fetal maturity, associated labor, and bleeding severity. In one study of 214 women with a placenta previa, 43 percent had an emergency delivery, and half of these were preterm (Ruiter, 2015). Instead, if active bleeding subsides and the fetus is immature, close observation in an obstetrical unit is indicated. Data are sparse regarding tocolytic administration for uterine contractions. Although robust randomized trials are lacking, Bose and colleagues (2011) recommend that if tocolytics are given, they be limited to 48 hours of administration. As noted earlier, the physiological cardiovascular responses to tocolytic agents that include hypotension and tachycardia can mask maternal compromise. We categorically recommend against their use in this setting.

After bleeding has ceased for approximately 2 days and the fetus is judged to be healthy, a woman can usually be discharged home with instructions for "pelvic rest." The Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine (2018) does not recommend routine cervical length screening in these women. Importantly, the woman and her family must appreciate the possibility of recurrent bleeding and be prepared for immediate transport back to the hospital. In other cases, prolonged hospitalization may be necessary.

The frequency of emergency delivery in women with placenta previa ranges from 25 to 40 percent (Erfani, 2019; Gibbons, 2018). In properly selected patients, however, long-term inpatient care does not appear to add benefits compared with outpatient management (Neilson, 2003). In one randomized study of 53 women who had a bleeding previa at 24 to 36 weeks' gestation, maternal or fetal morbidity rates did not differ between management methods (Wing, 1996). Of all study women, 60 percent had recurrent bleeding, and half eventually required expeditious cesarean delivery.

For women who are near term and who are not bleeding, plans are made for scheduled cesarean delivery. A planned delivery in a controlled setting is optimal, and timing balances fetal immaturity against antepartum hemorrhage. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine (2021) recommend delivery for otherwise uncomplicated placenta previa between $36^{0/7}$ and $37^{6/7}$ weeks. At Parkland Hospital, we usually perform elective cesarean delivery at $38^{0/7}$ weeks. Recommendations for delivery of women with PAS are outlined in that section.

■ Delivery

Practically all women with placenta previa undergo cesarean delivery. Some recommend a vertical laparotomy incision to provide rapid entry if bleeding is torrential or if generous operating space is required for hysterectomy. As discussed, cesarean delivery is emergently performed in more than half because of hemorrhage, for which about a fourth require blood transfusion (Sabourin, 2012). Although a low transverse hysterotomy is usually possible, this may cause fetal bleeding if the placenta is implanted anteriorly and the placenta is incised. In such cases, fetal delivery should be expeditious (Silver, 2015a). Thus, a vertical uterine incision may be preferable in some instances. In either case, even when the incision extends through the placenta, maternal or fetal outcomes are rarely compromised.

Following placental removal, the implantation site may bleed uncontrollably due to poorly contracted smooth muscle, which is characteristic of the lower uterine segment. If hemostasis at the placental implantation site cannot be obtained by uterotonic agent administration and pressure, it can be oversewn with no. 0 chromic sutures. Cho and associates (1991) described placing interrupted sutures at 1-cm intervals to form

a circle around the bleeding portion of the lower segment to control hemorrhage. Others have reported success with compression sutures that traverse and compress the anterior and posterior uterine wall (Mohamed, 2019; Sallam, 2019).

Of other methods, Bakri or Foley balloon tamponade used alone or coupled with compression sutures has been described (Albayrak, 2011; Diemert, 2012). Other surgical options are bilateral uterine or internal iliac artery ligation, illustrated in Chapter 44 (p. 779). Pelvic artery embolization also has gained acceptance. Yu and colleagues (2020) performed a randomized trial of perioperative prophylactic internal iliac artery balloon occlusion during cesarean delivery for placenta previa and found that deployment did not reduce postpartum hemorrhage or alter maternal or neonatal morbidity.

If these more conservative methods fail and bleeding is brisk, hysterectomy is necessary. Placenta previa—especially with PAS—currently is a common indication for peripartum hysterectomy at Parkland Hospital and other institutions (Jakobsson, 2015; Wong, 2011). In cases without PAS, the reported incidence of hysterectomy with placenta previa is 2 percent (Gibbins, 2018).

Thus, it is not possible to accurately estimate the effect on the hysterectomy rate from placenta previa alone without considering the associated PAS. *Again, for women whose placenta previa is implanted anteriorly at the site of a prior uterine incision, the likelihood of an associated morbidly adherent placenta and need for hysterectomy is increased.* In a study of 318 peripartum hysterectomies performed in the United Kingdom, 40 percent were done for abnormal placentation (Knight, 2007). At Parkland Hospital, 44 percent of cesarean hysterectomies were done for bleeding placenta previa or for PAS (Wortman, 2015). The technique for peripartum hysterectomy is described in Chapter 30 (p. 560).

■ Maternal and Perinatal Outcomes

Placenta previa and coexistent PAS both contribute substantively to maternal morbidity and mortality rates. The maternal mortality ratio is increased approximately threefold for women with a placenta previa (Gibbins, 2018). In a report of 5367 maternal deaths in the United States from 2006 to 2013, placenta previa alone accounted for nearly 3 percent of deaths from hemorrhage (Creanga, 2014, 2017).

The report from the Consortium on Safe Labor emphasizes the ongoing perinatal morbidity with placenta previa (Lai, 2012). In these cases, preterm delivery continues to be a major cause of perinatal death (Balachandar, 2020; Nørgaard, 2012; Salihu, 2003). Ananth and colleagues (2003b) reported a comparably elevated risk of neonatal death even for fetuses who delivered at term. This is at least partially related to the fetal anomaly rate, which is two- to threefold higher in pregnancies with placenta previa (Crane, 1999; Kancherla, 2015).

The association of fetal-growth restriction with placenta previa is likely minimal after controlling for gestational age. In a population-based cohort of more than 500,000 singleton births, most low-birthweight newborns associated with placenta previa resulted from preterm birth (Ananth, 2001). From their large metaanalysis, Balayla and coworkers (2019) found a slightly increased frequency of fetal-growth restriction. At least two other studies reported an elevated risk (Räisänen, 2014; Weiner, 2016). Apparently, fetal growth effects are similar with placenta previa and PAS (Jauniaux, 2019).

PLACENTA ACCRETA SPECTRUM

The term *placenta accreta spectrum (PAS)* describes aberrant placentation characterized by abnormally implanted, invasive, or adhered placenta. Derivation of accreta comes from the Latin *ac- + crescere*—to adhere or become attached to (Benirschke, 2012). It is also referred to as the morbidly adherent placenta, and in Europe it is referred to as a *pernicious placenta previa with accreta* and *abnormally adherent placenta*.

■ Etiopathogenesis

The major clinical problem is placental failure to separate normally from the myometrium after fetal delivery. This abnormal adherence stems in part from partial or total absence of the decidua basalis and imperfect development of the fibrinoid or Nitabuch layer, described in Chapter 5 (p. 85). If the decidual spongy layer is lacking either partially or totally, the physiological line of cleavage is absent, and some or all cotyledons are densely anchored. Microscopically, placental villi attach to smooth muscle fibers rather than to decidual cells. This decidual deficiency then prevents normal separation after delivery. The surface area involved at the implantation site and the depth of trophoblast ingrowth vary between women, but all affected placentas can potentially cause significant hemorrhage.

Data now suggest that PAS is not solely caused by the decidua's anatomical deficiency. Indeed, the cytotrophoblasts may control decidual invasion through factors such as angiogenesis (Duzyj, 2018; Goh, 2016). Moreover, some tissue specimens show immunologically mediated "hyperinvasiveness" (Harris, 2019). Some genes that code for remodeling and for adherence may be highly expressed (Matsukawa, 2019; Shainker, 2020). Myometrial fibers attached to the basal plate in an antecedent pregnancy are predictive markers for a subsequent PAS (Linn, 2015; Miller, 2016). This implies an antecedent "constitutional endometrial defect" in most cases. The greater risk conveyed by previous surgical uterine trauma may be partially explained by an enhanced vulnerability to trophoblast invasion (Einerson, 2020; Jauniaux, 2018).

This association with prior trauma is reinforced by the close relationship between *cesarean scar pregnancy (CSP)* and later development of PAS in the same pregnancy. Indeed, accruing evidence suggests that CSP and PAS lie on a spectrum and that CSP is a precursor (Happe, 2020; Timor-Tritsch, 2019). Described in Chapter 12 (p. 229), early rupture and hemorrhage with CSP are not uncommon, and women often elect pregnancy-terminating interventions to avoid these (Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine, 2020; Timor-Tritsch, 2019).

■ Classification

Variants of PAS are classified by the depth of trophoblastic growth (Figs. 43-10 and 43-11). *Placenta accreta* indicates that

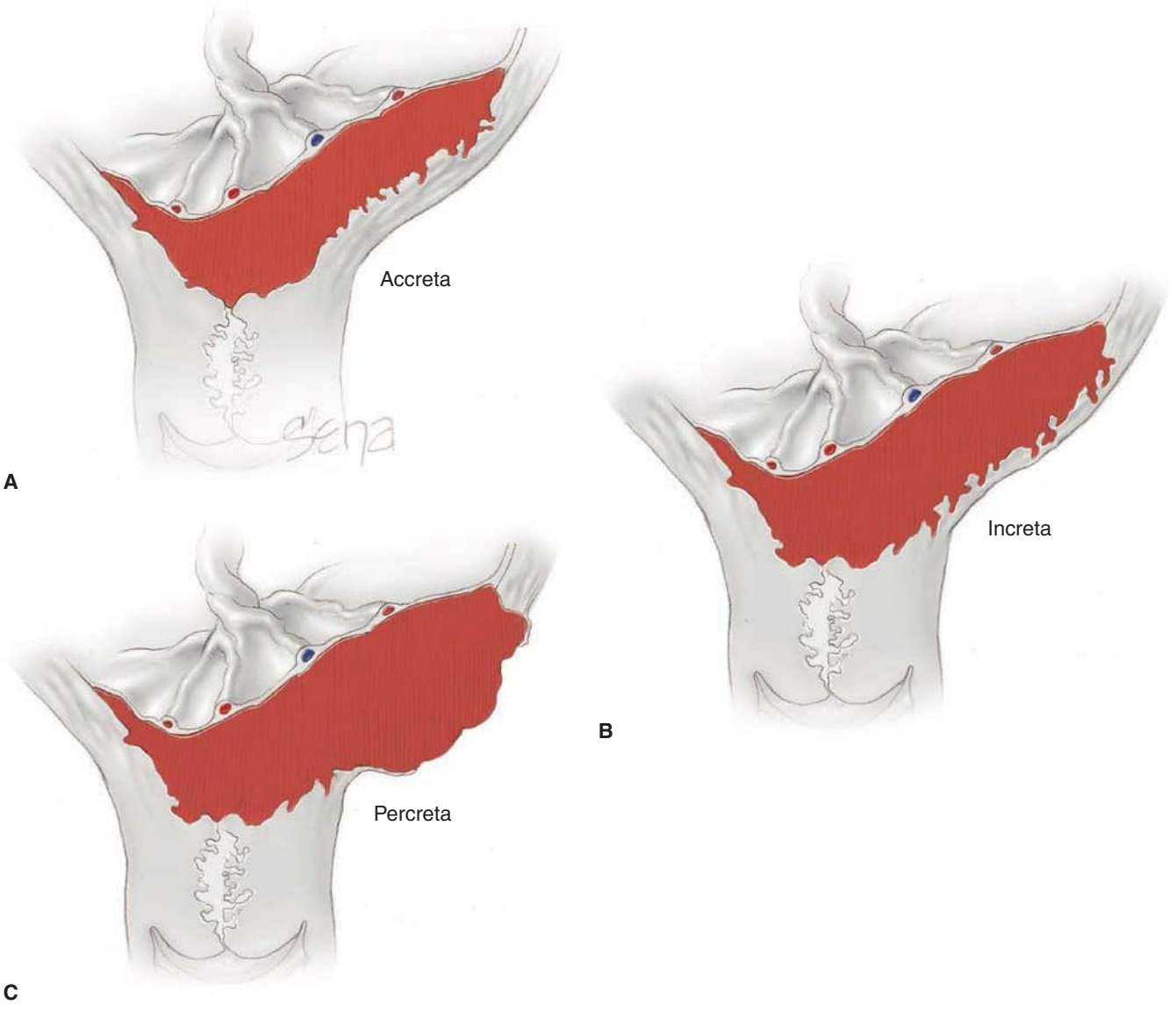


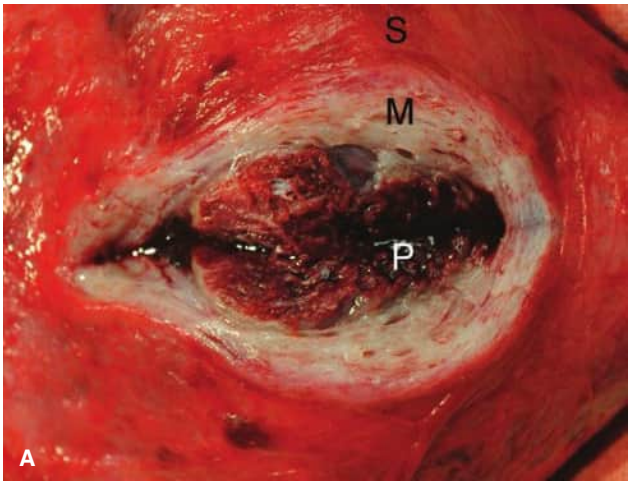
FIGURE 43-10 Placenta accreta spectrum. **A.** Placenta accreta. **B.** Placenta increta. **C.** Placenta percreta.

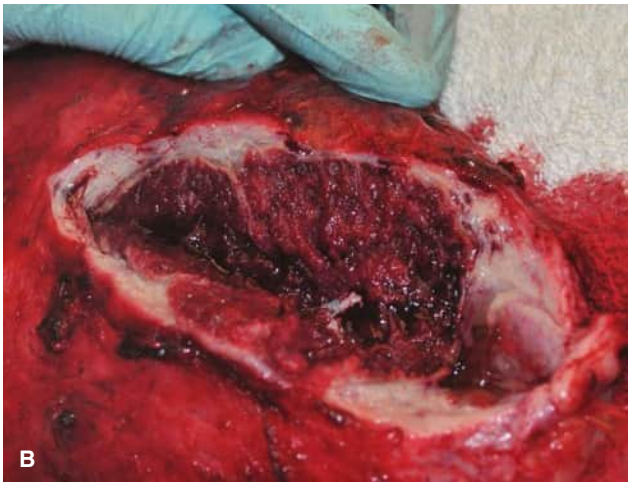
villi are attached to the myometrium. With *placenta increta*, villi actually invade the myometrium, and *placenta percreta* defines villi that penetrate through the myometrium and to or through the serosa (Silver, 2018). In clinical practice, these three variants are encountered in an approximate ratio of 80:15:5, respectively (Wong, 2008). At a referral center, however, the distribution was 22, 24, and 54 percent respectively (Birgani, 2020). In all three varieties, abnormal adherence may involve all lobules—*total placenta accreta*. If all or part of a single lobule is abnormally attached, it is described as *focal placenta accreta*. Histological diagnosis cannot be made from the placenta alone, and myometrial samples are necessary for confirmation (Jauniaux, 2021). Terminology for consistent classification has been lacking because of varying clinical criteria and lack of detailed pathological examinations. To alleviate this, the International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) has recently proposed a clinical classification system for PAS (Jauniaux, 2019).

Incidence and Risk Factors

Decades ago, the frequency of PAS was 1 in 20,000 births (McKeogh, 1951). As late as 1971, Hellman and Pritchard in the 14th edition of *Williams Obstetrics* described PAS as the subject of case reports. Since then, the incidence has grown remarkably in direct relationship to the rising cesarean delivery rate. For example, the incidence was 1 case in 2500 births in the 1980s, but it was 1 case per 731 births in a report from the MFMU Network comprising 115,502 women (Bailit, 2015). From the Nationwide Inpatient Sample, the PAS rate was an astounding 1 case in 270 births (Mogos, 2016).

This rising frequency has made PAS one of the most formidable problems in obstetrics. Of 5367 pregnancy-related maternal deaths in the United States from 2006 to 2013, 13 percent were due to hemorrhage caused by PAS (Creanga, 2015, 2017). In addition, PAS is a leading cause of hemorrhage and emergency peripartum hysterectomy (Awan, 2011; Eller, 2011; Rossi, 2010). The American College of Obstetricians and





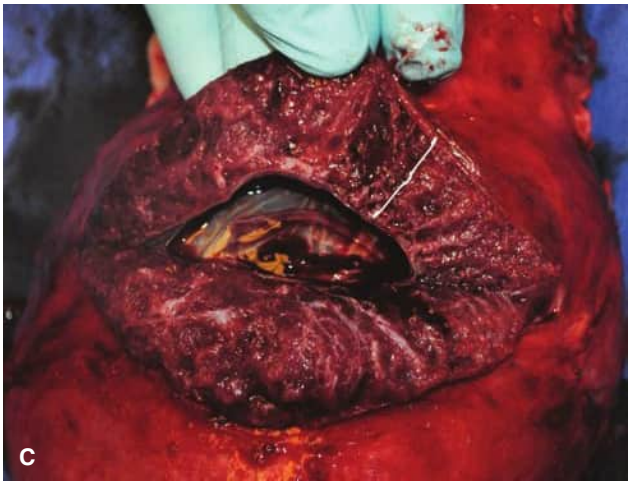


FIGURE 43-11 Varying degrees of myometrial invasion with placenta accreta spectrum disorders. Incisions begin on the serosal surface and extend through to the placenta. **A.** In this case, the myometrium (M) shows minimal invasion by the placenta (*P*). S = uterine serosa. **B.** A greater degree of myometrial invasion is seen here. **C.** In this example, the placenta (brackets) extends to the serosal edge, held by the surgeon's hand. No myometrium remains at this site. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. C. Edward Wells in Cunningham FG: Placenta previa and morbidly adherent placenta. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd edition. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2017.)

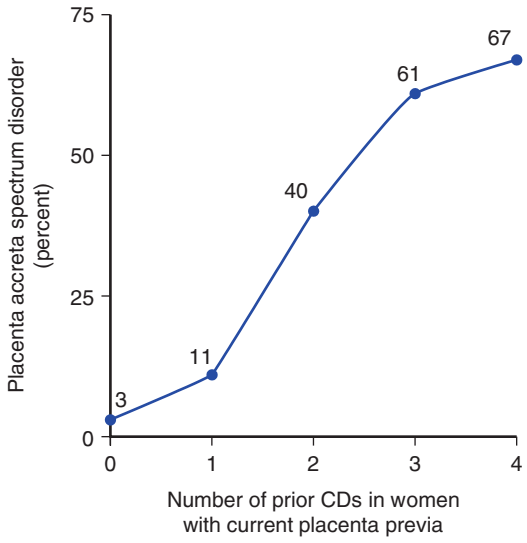


FIGURE 43-12 Frequency of placenta accreta spectrum in women with one to four prior cesarean deliveries (CDs) and now with a placenta previa.

Gynecologists and the Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine (2018) have outlined optimal management. The International Society for Abnormally Invasive Placenta also has published guidelines (Collins, 2019).

In subsequent pregnancies following PAS, recurrence risks are high. Women in whom hysterectomy is avoided have an estimated 20-percent incidence of recurrence (Cunningham, 2016; Roeca, 2017). Some evidence shows that these women also have greater risks for placenta previa, uterine rupture, manual placental removal, preterm delivery, and hysterectomy (Baldwin, 2020; Eshkoli, 2013).

PAS risk factors are similar to those for placenta previa (p. 756). Shown in Figure 43-12, the two most important elements are an associated placenta previa, a prior cesarean delivery, or more likely both (Klar, 2014; Silver, 2006). A classical hysterotomy incision has a higher risk for subsequent PAS than a lower uterine segment one (Gyamfi-Bannerman, 2012). Of women with a prior cesarean delivery, almost half had myometrial fibers seen microscopically adhered to the placenta (Hardardottir, 1996; Miller, 2016). Dysfunctional decidua may also follow other myometrial trauma such as curettage or endometrial ablation (Baldwin, 2018; Gill, 2015). ART is an independent risk factor for PAS (Salmanian, 2020).

Other risk markers are prenatal MSAFP and human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) used to screen for neural-tube defects and aneuploidies. In one study of more than 9300 women screened at 14 to 22 weeks' gestation, the risk for PAS was eightfold higher with MSAFP levels >2.5 MoM, and it was increased fourfold with maternal serum free β-hCG levels >2.5 MoM (Hung, 1999).

■ Diagnosis

With first- and second-trimester PAS, hemorrhage usually stems from a coexisting placenta previa. Such bleeding will typically prompt evaluation, and ideally sonography is used (Chantraine, 2013; Jauniaux, 2018).

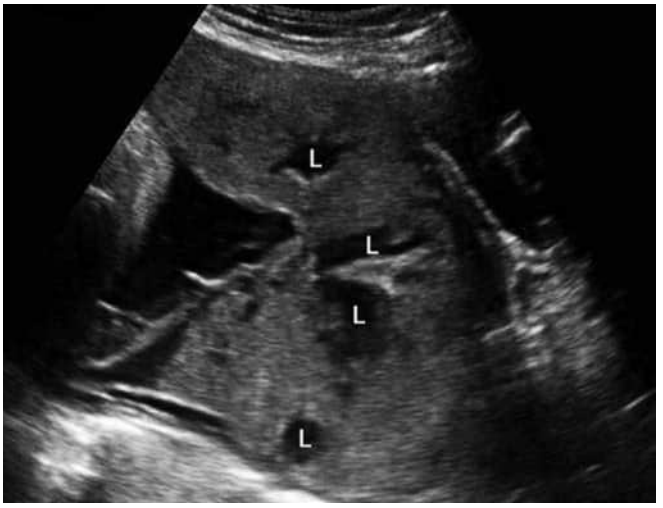


FIGURE 43-13 Transabdominal sonogram of placental percreta shows multiple and massive placental "lakes" or "lacunae" (*L*).

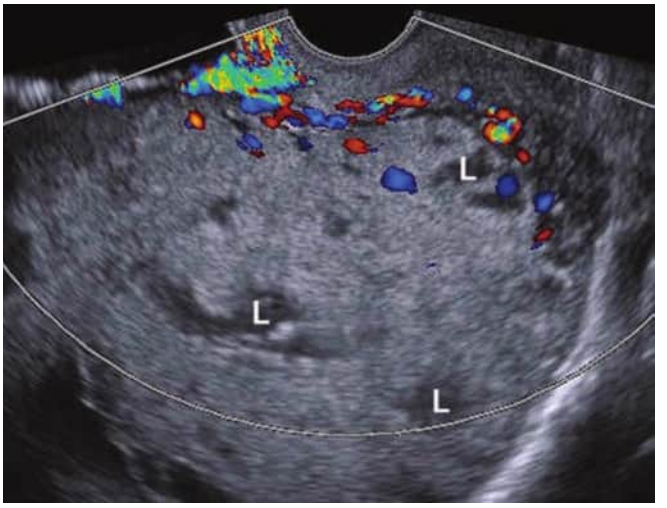


FIGURE 43-14 Transvaginal sonogram of placental invasion with a placenta percreta. Retroplacental vessels (color Doppler) invade the myometrium, and abnormal intraplacental venous lakes (*L*) are commonly seen in this setting.

With lesser degrees of bleeding, first-trimester measurement of the smallest myometrial thickness can help predict the later risk for peripartum hysterectomy with PAS (Happe, 2020). In a screening study of more than 22,000 singleton pregnancies at 11 to 13 weeks' gestation, 6 percent were at high risk for PAS (Panaiotova, 2019). However imaging was less than perfect to identify all of these placentas early. Subsequently, only 14 had a suspected clinical diagnosis, and 13 of these were confirmed at delivery.

Five characteristic sonographic findings suggest PAS: (1) placental lacunae; (2) thinning of the retroplacental myometrium; (3) disruption of the bladder-uterine serosal interface; (4) bridging vessels from the placenta to the bladder-serosal interface; and (5) placental bulge that pushes outward and distorts the contour of the uterus (Fig. 43-13). In a metaanalysis, the sensitivities of these criteria to identify placenta accreta, increta, and percreta were 91, 93, and 89 percent, respectively. Corresponding specificities were 97, 98, and 99 percent, respectively (Pagani, 2018).

These figures may be overestimated because of clinical bias and considerable interobserver variability (Silver, 2018). Some investigators report fewer spectacular results with sonography (Jauniaux, 2016; Primo, 2014). Bowman and colleagues (2014) described the sensitivity of sonography to be 54 percent; specificity, 88 percent; positive predictive value, 82 percent; negative predictive value, 65 percent; and accuracy, 65 percent. Location affects sonographic accuracy. Posterior placental location is associated with delayed diagnosis and increased surgical complications (Morgan, 2019; Tinari, 2021). In one study, the detection rate was 90 percent for anterior placenta accreta compared with 50 percent for posterior ones (Pilloni, 2016). Nageotte (2014) concluded that identification of PAS with sonography should be interpreted with clinical and operative findings.

Better results have been found by some using three-dimensional (3-D) sonography and power Doppler (Collins, 2015). We too have found that the addition of Doppler color flow mapping aids prediction of myometrial invasion (Fig. 43-14). Invasion is suspected if the distance between the uterine serosa–bladder wall interface and the retroplacental vessels measures <1 mm and if large intraplacental lacunae are seen (Rac, 2015a; Twickler, 2000). In another study, hypervascularity of the uterine serosa–bladder wall interface had the highest positive and negative predictive values for placenta percreta (Cali, 2013). Intracervical lakes also have been reported with placenta percreta (di Pasquo, 2020).

Yule and coworkers (2020) reported that the *placenta accreta index* was useful for diagnosis. This index incorporates the number of prior cesarean deliveries, placental location, lacunae, bridging vessels, and smallest myometrial distance. These investigators are also exploring first-trimester color mapping to develop a quantification algorithm (Yule 2021).

To further delineate anatomy, MR imaging can be added. We and others use it to identify invasion of adjacent structures (Chalubinski, 2013; Reddy, 2014). Interobserver variability was reported to be excellent to diagnose PAS and assess invasion depth. There was less agreement in assessing topography of invasion (Finazzo, 2020). Using MR imaging, Mori and colleagues (2020) described a high prevalence of pelvic parasitic arteries with PAS. However, not all investigators have found MR imaging to be beneficial (Einerson, 2018).

Although gadolinium is usually not added during pregnancy, this contrast may enhance images (Millischer, 2017). Lax and coworkers (2007) described three MR imaging findings that suggest PAS: uterine bulging, dark intraplacental bands on T2-weighted imaging, and heterogeneous signal intensity within the placenta indicative of lacunae. Some recommend MR imaging if sonography results are inconclusive or there is a posterior previa (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018; Silver, 2018).

Management

Preoperative assessment ideally begins once a possible PAS is recognized antenatally. *A major decision concerns the timing and the ideal facility for delivery.* Considerations include appropriate

TABLE 43-2. Criteria to Consider for Delivery of Placenta Accreta Spectrum (PAS) in a Center of Excellence

Sonogram findings suspicious for PAS
Placenta previa with abnormal ultrasound appearance
Placenta previa with 2 to 3 prior cesarean deliveries
Prior classical cesarean delivery and anterior placentation
Prior endometrial ablation or pelvic irradiation
Inability to adequately evaluate or exclude PAS
Any other reason to suspect PAS

surgical, anesthesia, intensive care, and blood banking capabilities. An obstetrical surgeon or gynecological oncologist and surgical, urological, and interventional radiological consultants should be available (Collins, 2019; Shamshirsaz, 2018). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018) and the Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine recommend planned delivery in a tertiary-care facility. In some, specially designed teams have been assembled and are on call (Shamshirsaz, 2018). A metaanalysis described the improved maternal outcomes with such management (Bartels, 2018).

Silver and colleagues (2015b) have provided requisites for accreta centers of excellence and their criteria to consider transfer to a higher level-of-care hospital (Table 43-2). If possible, delivery is best scheduled for peak availability of all resources and team members. Even so, a third of cases require unscheduled delivery, and contingency plans should be ready (Pettit, 2019). Women who refuse blood or its derivatives pose especially difficult management dilemmas (Barth, 2011).

Delivery Timing

In one study, 40 percent of women with PAS had bleeding mandating unplanned delivery prior to 34 weeks' gestation. Timing balances fetal immaturity against adverse maternal consequences of hemorrhage and emergency cesarean delivery (Perlman, 2017; Pettit, 2019). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018; 2021) recommends individualization and suggests delivery between $34^{0/7}$ and $35^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation. They cite a decision-analysis study that justifies elective delivery without fetal lung maturity testing after 34 completed weeks (Robinson, 2010). The Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine (2018) recommends delivery between 34 and 37 weeks. Two earlier surveys found that most practitioners do not deliver these women until 36 weeks or later (Esakoff, 2012; Wright, 2013). At Parkland Hospital, we generally schedule these procedures after 36 completed weeks but are prepared also to manage them in nonelective situations (Rac, 2015b).

In some cases, PAS is not recognized until laparotomy. If resources are inadequate to surgically manage the percreta and if the woman is stable and not bleeding, the fetus is not delivered. The abdominal incision is closed, and she is transferred to a tertiary-care facility.

Preoperative Prophylactic Catheterization

In cases that may involve the ureters, catheterization may aid their dissection or identification. However, these catheters overall do not lower urinary tract injury rates (Crocetto, 2021). Some, but not all, advocate preoperative ureteral catheterization (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018; Eller, 2011). The role of catheters for ureteral injury repair is outlined in Chapter 30 (p. 564).

With a*rterial catheterization*, balloon-tipped catheters aim to mitigate blood loss and thereby enhance surgical visibility. Catheters are advanced preoperatively into the internal iliac arteries and are inflated after fetal delivery to occlude pelvic blood flow (Ballas, 2012; Desai, 2012; Zhou, 2021). Some prefer an infrarenal aortic balloon occlusion catheter (Mei, 2020). Alternatively, the catheters can be used to deliver occluding emboli to bleeding arterial sites (Mei, 2018). Others have concluded that these procedures offer borderline efficacy and have serious risks (Chen, 2020; Makary, 2019; Mohr-Sasson, 2020). Rare complications have included thrombosis of the common iliac artery (Bishop, 2011). At this time, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018) concludes that a firm recommendation cannot be made for or against intra-arterial catheter use. Similarly, there are no obvious benefits to prophylactic internal iliac artery ligation in this setting (Po, 2012; Yu, 2020).

Cesarean Delivery and Hysterectomy

Before commencing with delivery, the risk of hysterectomy to prevent exsanguination should be estimated. Some of these abnormal placentations, especially if partial, may be amenable to placental delivery with hemostatic suture placement. Confirmation of a percreta or increta almost always mandates hysterectomy. Because the scope of invasion may not be apparent before delivery of the fetus, some complete a number of dissection steps early. This also minimizes blood loss during potentially tedious dissection after hysterotomy and if the placenta bleeds. Thus, an attempt can be made to create a wide bladder flap before making the hysterotomy incision (Cunningham, 2017). The round ligaments are divided, and the lateral edges of the peritoneal reflection are dissected downward. If possible, these incisions are extended to encircle the entire placental implantation site that visibly occupies the prevesical space and posterior bladder wall. Following this, a classical hysterotomy, transverse fundal, or high posterior incision is made to avoid the placenta (Kotsuji, 2013).

After fetal delivery, the extent of placental invasion is assessed without attempts at manual placental removal. In a report from the United Kingdom, attempts at partial or total placental removal prior to hysterectomy were associated with twice as much blood loss (Fitzpatrick, 2014). Generally speaking, with obvious percreta or increta, hysterectomy is usually the best course, and the placenta is left in situ. With more extensive placental ingrowth, bleeding may be minimal until manual placental removal is attempted. Unless there is spontaneous separation with bleeding that mandates emergency hysterectomy, the operation begins after full assessment is made. Cesarean hysterectomy is carried out as described in Chapter 30 (p.560).

With heavy bleeding, successful treatment depends on immediate blood replacement and other measures that can include uterine or internal iliac artery ligation, balloon occlusion, or

TABLE 43-3. Steps in Cesarean Hysterectomy for Management of Placenta Percreta

Midline vertical laparotomy and midline hysterotomy: enter uterus to avoid placenta

Superior devascularization: divide and ligate uteroovarian pedicles and round ligaments

Retroperitoneal dissection: incise down to paravesical space; consider cephalad dissection to expose ureters and bifurcation of common iliac arteries

Bladder dissection: progress lateral to medial and down to vaginal fornices; associated with troublesome venous bleeding

Colpotomy: inferior dissection of extremely vascular paravesical space may cause significant hemorrhage

embolization. In some cases, the operation is made easier by performance of a supracervical hysterectomy (Levin, 2020). Kingdom and colleagues (2020) have described a modified radical hysterectomy for PAS (Table 43-3). This technique is also detailed in *Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics*, 3rd edition (Cunningham, 2017). Because of a high risk for postoperative venous thromboembolism, consideration is given for thromboprophylaxis (Silver, 2018).

Conservative Management

Occasionally, it may be possible to trim the umbilical cord, repair the hysterotomy incision, leave the placenta in situ, and not pursue hysterectomy (Sentilhes, 2021). This option may be used for women in whom abnormal placentation was not suspected before cesarean delivery and in whom uterine closure stops bleeding. After this, she can be transferred to a higher level-of-care facility for definitive management. Another consideration is the woman with a strong desire for fertility and who has received extensive counseling. Resection of the adherent placenta and underlying myometrium has been advocated as a uterine-sparing technique (Palacios-Jaraquemada, 2020).

Conservative management was reviewed by Perez-Delboy (2014) and Fox (2015) and their colleagues. In some of these cases, the placenta spontaneously resorbed between 1 and 12 months with a mean of 6 months. Numerous complications can occur and include sepsis, coagulopathy, pulmonary embolism, and arteriovenous malformation (Fox, 2015; Judy, 2015; Roach, 2015). In other cases, sutures are placed through the outside wall of the uterus overlying the placental bed. Shih and associates (2019) described this using a Nausicaa procedure.

In some of these women, a subsequent hysterectomy—either planned or prompted by bleeding or infection—is performed days to weeks postpartum when blood loss might be less (Al-Khan, 2014; Sentilhes, 2009, 2021; Zuckerwise, 2020). In some studies, 20 percent or fewer of women ultimately required hysterectomy (Bretelle, 2007; Kutuk, 2018). In other reports, however, up to 60 percent eventually required emergency hysterectomy (Clausen, 2013; Pather, 2014). Evidence that treatment with methotrexate aids resorption is lacking. Last, for women in whom the placenta is left in situ, serial serum β-hCG measurements are not informative, and serial sonographic or MR imaging is recommended (Timmermans, 2007; Worley, 2008).

At this time, we agree with the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018) that leaving the placenta in situ should be considered investigational. Exceptions permit transfer to a higher level of care. Guidelines from the International Society for Abnormally Invasive Placenta are more permissive (Collins, 2019).

TABLE 43-4. Selected Maternal Outcomes in Women with Placenta Accreta Spectrum Identified Prenatally and Delivered in Tertiary-Care Units

Outcome[a]	San Diego[b] n = 62	Utah[c] n = 60	Houston[d] n = 189	Adelaide[e] n = 67	Montreal[f] n = 42
Gestational age (wk)	33.0 ± 1.1	34 (17–41)	34 (32, 35)	35 (32, 36)	NS
Operating time (min)	194 ± 1.6	NS	NS	NS	112 ± 49
Transfusions	~75%	70%	NS	43%	34%
RBC (units)	4.7 ± 2.2	≥4 (30%)	2 (0–5)	4 (3, 6)	4
Bladder injury	23%	37%	3.7%	6%	13%
ICU admission	72%	30%	100%	NS	9%
LOS (days)	7.4 ± 1.8	3–13	NS	7.9	5.2

[a]Outcomes shown as mean ± 1 SD; median (range).
[b]Data from Warshak, 2010.
[c]Data from Eller, 2011.
[d]Data from Erfani, 2019.
[e]Data from Yasin, 2019.
[f]Data from Mitric, 2019.
ICU = intensive care unit; LOS = length of stay; NS = not stated; RBC = red blood cells.

Pregnancy Outcomes

In sum, PAS can have disastrous outcomes for both mother and fetus. Although the depth of placental invasion does not correspond with perinatal outcome, it is of paramount maternal significance. Table 43-4 displays outcomes of women at tertiary-care hospitals and in whom the PAS diagnosis was usually made preoperatively. Despite these advantages, complications included hemorrhage, urinary tract injury, intensive care unit admission, secondary surgical procedures, and maternal death. Some of these same reports chronicle outcomes in a second cohort of women in whom care was not given at a tertiary-care facility or in whom the diagnosis of percreta was not made until delivery, or both. In these cohorts, morbidity and mortality rates were higher (Erfani, 2019).

REFERENCES

Abbassi-Ghanavati M, Casey BM, Spong CY, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with thyroid peroxidase antibodies. Obstet Gynecol 116: 381, 2010

Albayrak M, Ozdemir I, Koc O, et al: Postpartum haemorrhage from the lower uterine segment secondary to placenta previa/accreta: successful conservative management with Foley balloon tamponade. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 51(4):377, 2011

Alexander JM, Cunningham FG: Management. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Al-Khan A, Gupta V, Illsley NP, et al: Maternal and fetal outcomes in placenta accreta after institution of team-managed care. Reprod Sci 21(6):761, 2014

Altman D, Carroli G, Duley L, et al: Do women with preeclampsia, and their babies, benefit from magnesium sulphate? The Magpie Trial: a randomised placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 359:1877, 2002

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine: Placenta accreta spectrum. Obstetric Care Consensus No. 7, November, 2018

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Antiphospholipid syndrome. Practice Bulletin No. 132, December 2012, Reaffirmed 2019

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Inherited thrombophilias in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 197, June 2018, Reaffirmed 2020

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Medically indicated late-preterm and early-term deliveries. Committee Opinion No. 818, January 2021

American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine: AIUM-ACR-ACOG-SMFM-SRU practice parameter for the performance of standard diagnostic obstetric ultrasound examinations. J Ultrasound Med 37(11):e13, 2018

Ananth CV, Demissie K, Smulian JC, et al: Placenta previa in singleton and twin births in the United States, 1989 through 1998: a comparison of risk factor profiles and associated conditions. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188(1):275, 2003a

Ananth CV, Demissie K, Smulian JC, et al: Relationship among placenta previa, fetal growth restriction, and preterm delivery: a population-based study. Obstet Gynecol 98:299, 2001

Ananth CV, Friedman AM, Lavery JA, et al: Neurodevelopmental outcomes in children in relation to placental abruption. BJOG 124(3):463, 2017

Ananth CV, Getahun D, Peltier MR et al: Placental abruption in term and preterm gestations. Obstet Gynecol 107:785, 2006

Ananth CV, Lavery JA, Vintzileos AM, et al: Severe placental abruption: clinical definition and associations with maternal complications. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(2):272.e1, 2016

Ananth CV, Oyelese Y, Srinivas N, et al: Preterm premature rupture of membranes, intrauterine infection, and oligohydramnios: risk factors for placental abruption. Obstet Gynecol 104:71, 2004

Ananth CV, Oyelese Y, Yeo L, et al: Placental abruption in the United States, 1979 through 2001: temporal trends and potential determinants. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192(1):191, 2005

Ananth CV, Smulian JC, Vintzileos AM: Incidence of placental abruption in relation to cigarette smoking and hypertensive disorders during pregnancy: a meta-analysis of observational studies. Obstet Gynecol 93:622, 1999

Ananth CV, Smulian JC, Vintzileos AM: The effect of placenta previa on neonatal mortality: a population-based study in the United States, 1989 through 1997. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:1299, 2003b

Arazi ES, Kessous R, Shoham-Vardi I, et al: Is there an association between a history of placental abruption and long-term maternal renal complications? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 28(14):1641, 2015

Atkinson AL, Santolaya-Forgas J, Matta P, et al: The sensitivity of the Kleihauer-Betke test for placental abruption. J Obstet Gynaecol 35(2):139, 2015

Aviram A, Salzer L, Hiersch L, et al: Association of isolated polyhydramnios at or beyond 34 weeks of gestation and pregnancy outcome. Obstet Gynecol 125(4):825, 2015

Awan N, Bennett MJ, Walters WA: Emergency peripartum hysterectomy: a 10-year review at the Royal Hospital for Women, Sydney. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 51(3):210, 2011

Babinszki A, Kerenyi T, Torok O, et al: Perinatal outcome in grand and great-grand multi parity: effects of parity on obstetric risk factors. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181: 669, 1999

Bailit JL, Grobman WA, Rice MM, et al: Morbidly adherent placenta treatments and outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 125(3):683, 2015

Balachandar K, Melov SJ, Nayyar R: The risk of adverse maternal outcomes in cases of placenta praevia in an Australian population between 2007 and 2017. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 60(6):890, 2020

Balayla J, Desilets J, Shrem G: Placenta previa and the risk of intrauterine growth restriction (IUGR): a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Perinat Med 47(6):577, 2019

Baldwin HJ, Nippita TA, Torvaldsen S, et al: Outcomes of subsequent births after placenta accreta spectrum. Obstet Gynecol 136(4):745, 2020

Baldwin HJ, Patterson JA, Nippita TA, et al: Antecedents of abnormally invasive placenta in primiparous women. Obstet Gynecol 131(2):227, 2018

Ballas J, Hull AD, Saenz, et al: Preoperative intravascular balloon catheters and surgical outcomes in pregnancies complicated by placenta accreta: a management paradox. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(3):216.e1, 2012

Bartels HC, Rogers AC, O'Brien D, et al: Association of implementing a multidisciplinary team approach in the management of morbidly adherent placenta with maternal morbidity and mortality. Obstet Gynecol 132(5):1167, 2018

Barth WH Jr, Kwolek CJ, Abrams JL, et al: Case records of the Massachusetts General Hospital. Case 23—2011. A 40-year-old pregnant woman with placenta accreta who declined blood products. N Engl J Med 365(4):359, 2011

Benirschke K, Burton, Baergen RN: Pathology of the Human Placenta, 6th ed. New York, Springer, 2012, p 204

Bingol N, Fuchs M, Diaz V, et al: Teratogenicity of cocaine in humans. J Pediatr 110:93, 1987

Birgani S, Salmanian B, Shamshirsaz AA, et al: Placenta accreta spectrum FIGO clinical classification in association with histopathological findings. Abstract No. 588, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:S588, 2020

Biro MA, Davey MA, Caro Ian M, et al: Advanced maternal age and obstetric morbidity for women giving birth in Victoria, Australia: a population-based study. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 52(3):229, 2012

Bishop S, Butler K, Monaghan S, et al: Multiple complications following the use of prophylactic internal iliac artery balloon catheterization in a patient with placenta percreta. Int J Obstet Anesth 20(1):70, 2011

Biswas R, Sawhney H, Dass R, et al: Histopathological study of placental bed biopsy in placenta previa. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 78:173, 1999

Bond AL, Edersheim TG, Curry L, et al: Expectant management of abruptio placentae before 35 weeks' gestation. Am J Perinatol 6:121, 1989

Bose DA, Assel BG, Hill JB, et al: Maintenance tocolytics for preterm symptomatic placenta previa: a review. Am J Perinatol 28(1):45, 2011

Bowman ZS, Eller AG, Kennedy AM, et al: Accuracy of ultrasound for the prediction of placenta accreta. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(2): 177.e1, 2014

Brame RG, Harbert GM Jr, McGaughey HS Jr, et al: Maternal risk in abruption. Obstet Gynecol 31:224, 1968

Bretelle F, Courbiére B, Mazouni C, et al: Management of placenta accreta: morbidity and outcome. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 133(1):34, 2007

Brosens I, Pijnenborg R, Vercruysse L, et al: The "great obstetrical syndromes" are associated with disorders of deep placentation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(3):193, 2011

Cali G, Biambanco L, Puccio G, et al: Morbidly adherent placenta: evaluation of ultrasound diagnostic criteria and differentiation of placenta accreta from percreta. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 41(4):406, 2013

Chalubinski KM, Pils S, Klein K, et al: Prenatal sonography can predict the degree of placental invasion. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 42(5):518, 2013

Chantraine F, Braun T, Gonser M, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of abnormally invasive placenta reduces maternal peripartum hemorrhage and morbidity. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 92(4):439, 2013

Chen AL, Goldfarb IT, Scourtas AO, et al: The histologic evolution of revealed, acute abruptions. Hum Pathol 67:187, 2017

Chen M, Liu X, You Y, et al: Internal iliac artery balloon occlusion for placenta previa and suspected placenta accreta: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 135(5):1112, 2020

Cho JY, Kim SJ, Cha KY, et al: Interrupted circular suture: bleeding control during cesarean delivery in placenta previa accreta. Obstet Gynecol 78:876, 1991

Clausen C, Stensballe J, Albrechtsen CK, et al: Balloon occlusion of the internal iliac arteries in the multidisciplinary management of placenta percreta. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 92(4):386, 2013

Cleary-Goldman J, Malone FD, Vidaver J, et al: Impact of maternal age on obstetric outcome. Obstet Gynecol 105:983, 2005

Collins SL, Alemdar B, van Beekhuizen HJ, et al: Evidence-based guidelines for the management of abnormally invasive placenta: recommendations from the International Society for Abnormally Invasive Placenta. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(6):511, 2019

Collins SL, Stevenson GN, Al-Khan A, et al: Three-dimensional power Doppler ultrasonography for diagnosing abnormally invasive placenta and quantifying the risk. Obstet Gynecol 126(3):645, 2015

Colón I, Berletti M, Garabedian MJ, et al: Randomized, double-blinded trial of magnesium sulfate tocolysis versus intravenous normal saline for preterm nonsevere placental abruption. Am J Perinatol 33(7):696, 2016

Combs CA, Nyberg DA, Mack LA, et al: Expectant management after sonographic diagnosis of placental abruption. Am J Perinatol 9:170, 1992

Crane JM, Van Den Hof MC, Dodds L, et al: Neonatal outcomes with placenta previa. Obstet Gynecol 93:541, 1999

Creanga AA, Bateman BT, Kuklina EV, et al: Racial and ethnic disparities in severe maternal morbidity: a multistate analysis, 2008–2010. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210(5):435.e1, 2014

Creanga AA, Berg CJ, Syverson C, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2006–2010. Obstet Gynecol 125(1):5, 2015

Creanga AA, Berg CJ, Syverson C, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2011–2013. Obstet Gynecol 130:366, 2017

Crocetto F, Esposito R, Saccone G, et al: Use of routine ureteral stents in cesarean hysterectomy for placenta accreta. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(3):386, 2021

Cunningham FG: Placenta previa and morbidly adherent placentae In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2017

Cunningham FG, Nelson DB: Disseminated intravascular coagulation syndromes in obstetrics. Obstet Gynecol 126(5):999, 2015

Cunningham KM, Anwar A, Lindow SW: The recurrence risk of placenta accreta following uterine conserving management. J Neonatal Perinatal Med 8(4):293, 2016

DeRoo L, Skjaervan R, Wilcox A, et al: Placental abruption and long-term maternal cardiovascular disease mortality: a population-based registry study in Norway and Sweden. Eur J Epidemiol 31(5):501, 2016

Desai N, Tam HT, Fleischer A: Prophylactic arterial catheterization may improve operative morbidity in suspected placenta accreta and reduce the need for hysterectomy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(1):S44, 2012

Diemert A, Ortmeyer G, Hollwitz B, et al: The combination of intrauterine balloon tamponade and the B-Lynch procedure for the treatment of severe postpartum hemorrhage. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(1):65.e1, 2012

di Pasquo E, Ghi T, Cali G, et al: Intracervical lakes as sonographic marker of placenta accreta spectrum disorder in patients with placenta previa or low-lying placenta. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 55(4):460, 2020

Downes KL, Grantz KL, Shenassa ED: Maternal, labor, delivery, and perinatal outcomes associated with placental abruption: a systematic review. Am J Perinatol 34:935, 2017

Drakeley AJ, Le Roux PA, Anthony J, et al: Acute renal failure complicating severe preeclampsia requiring admission to an obstetric intensive care unit. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:253, 2002

Dugoff L, Hobbins JC, Malone FD, et al: First trimester maternal serum PAPPA and free-beta subunit human chorionic gonadotropin concentrations and nuchal translucency are associated with obstetric complications: a population-based screening study (The FASTER Trial). Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:1446, 2004

Duzyj CM, Buhimschi IA, Laky CA, et al: Extravillous trophoblast invasion in placenta accreta is associated with differential local expression of angiogenic and growth factors: a cross-sectional study. BJOG 125(11):1441, 2018

Einerson BD, Comstock J, Silver RM, et al: Placenta accreta spectrum disorder: uterine dehiscence, not placental invasion. Obstet Gynecol 135(5):1104, 2020

Einerson BD, Rodriguez CE, Kennedy AM, et al: Magnetic resonance imaging is often misleading when used as an adjunct to ultrasound in the management of placenta accreta spectrum disorders. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(6):618.e1, 2018

Eller AG, Bennett MA, Sharshiner M, et al: Maternal morbidity in cases of placenta accreta managed by a multidisciplinary care team compared with standard obstetric care. Obstet Gynecol 117 (2 Pt 1):331, 2011

Elliott JP, Gilpin B, Strong TH Jr, et al: Chronic abruption—oligohydramnios sequence. J Reprod Med 43:418, 1998

Erez O, Mastrolia SA, Thachil J: Disseminated intravascular coagulation in pregnancy: insights in pathophysiology, diagnosis and management. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(4):452, 2015

Erfani H, Kassir E, Fox KA, et al: Placenta previa without morbidly adherent placenta: comparison of characteristics and outcomes between planned and emergent deliveries in a tertiary center. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(6):906, 2019

Erfani H, Fox KA, Clark SL, et al: Maternal outcomes in unexpected placenta accreta spectrum disorders: single-center experience with a multidisciplinary team. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(4):337.e1, 2019

Esakoff TF, Handler SJ, Granados JM, et al: PAMUS: placenta accreta management across the United States. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25:761, 2012

Eshkoli T, Weintraub AY, Sergienko R, et al: Placenta accreta: risk factors, perinatal outcomes, and consequences for subsequent births. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(3):219.e1, 2013

Eubanks AA, Walz S, Thiel LM: Maternal risk factors and neonatal outcomes in placental abruption among patients with equal access to health care. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(13):2101, 2021

Farine D, Fox HE, Jakobson S, et al: Vaginal ultrasound for diagnosis of placenta previa. Am J Obstet Gynecol 159:566, 1988

Finazzo F, D'Antonio F, Masselli G, et al: Interobserver variability in MRI assessment of the severity of placenta accreta spectrum disorders. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 55(4):467, 2020

Fitzpatrick K, Sellers S, Spark P, et al: The management and outcomes of placenta accreta, increta, and percreta in the UK: a Population-based descriptive study. BJOG 121(1):62, 2014

Fox K, Shamshirsaz A, Salmanian B, et al: Is interpregnancy interval a predictor of severity of invasion in morbidly adherent placenta? Abstract No. 821, Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(1):s395, 2015

Frederiksen MC, Glassenberg R, Stika CS: Placenta previa: a 22-year analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 180:1432, 1999

Friszer S, Le Ray C, Tort J, et al: Symptomatic placenta praevia: short cervix at admission is a predictive factor for delivery within 7 days. Abstract No. 158, Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(1):S78, 2013

Furuhashi M, Kurauchi O, Suganuma N: Pregnancy following placental abruption. Arch Gynecol Obstet 267:11, 2002

Furukawa S, Doi K, Furuta K, et al: The effect of placental abruption on the outcome of extremely premature infants. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 28(6):705, 2015

Gibbins KJ, Einerson BD, Varner MI, et al: Placenta previa and maternal hemorrhagic morbidity. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(4):494, 2018

Gill LA, Baldwin E, Lessard-Anderson C, et al: Septic abortion with placenta accreta in pregnancy after endometrial ablation. Obstet Gynecol 125(4):822, 2015

Gilliam M, Rosenberg D, Davis F: The likelihood of placenta previa with greater number of cesarean deliveries and higher parity. Obstet Gynecol 99:976, 2002

Glantz C, Purnell L: Clinical utility of sonography in the diagnosis and treatment of placental abruption. J Ultrasound Med 21:837, 2002

Goh WA, Zalud I: Placenta accreta: diagnosis, management and the molecular biology of the morbidly adherent placenta. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(11):1795, 2016

Gopalakrishnan N, Dhanapriya J, Muthkumar P, et al: Acute kidney injury in pregnancy—a single center experience. Ren Fail 37(9):1476, 2015

Greco PS, Day LJ, Pearlman MD: Guidance for evaluation and management of blunt abdominal trauma in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 134(6):1343, 2019

Gurol-Urganci I, Cromwell DA, Edozien LC, et al: Risk of placenta previa in second birth after first birth cesarean section. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 11:95, 2011

Gutvirtz G, Walfisch A, Beharier O, et al: Isolated single umbilical artery is an independent risk factor for perinatal mortality and adverse outcomes in term neonates. Arch Gynecol Obstet 294(5):931, 2016

Gyamfi-Bannerman C, Gilbert S, Landon MB, et al: Risk of uterine rupture and placenta accreta with prior uterine surgery outside of the lower segment. Obstet Gynecol 120(6):1332, 2012

Hackney DN, Kuo K, Petersen RJ, et al: Determinants of the competing outcomes of intrauterine infection, abruption, or spontaneous preterm birth after preterm premature rupture of membranes. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(2):258, 2016

Han M, Lui D, Zeb S, et al: Are maternal and neonatal outcomes different in placental abruption between women with and without preeclampsia? Placenta 85:69, 2019

Happe SK, Rac MW, Moschos E, et al: Prospective first-trimester ultrasound imaging of low implantation and placenta accreta spectrum. J Ultrasound Med 39(10):1907, 2020

Hardardottir H, Borgida AE, Sanders MM, et al: Histologic myometrial fibers adherent to the placenta: impact of method of placental removal. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:358, 1996
Harris LK, Benagiano M, D'Elios MM, et al: Placental bed research: 2. Functional and immunological investigations of the placental bed. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(5):457, 2019
Heller HT, Mullen KM, Gordon RW, et al: Outcomes of pregnancies with a low-lying placenta diagnosed on second-trimester sonography. J Ultrasound Med 33(4):691, 2014
Hill JM, Yadava S, Patrick HS, et al: Pregnancy complications among women diagnosed with placenta previa and placental abruption. Abstract No. 446, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:S92, 2020
Hogberg V, Rasmussen S, Irgens L: The effect of smoking and hypertensive disorders on abruptio placentae in Norway 1999–2002. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 86:304, 2007
Huls CK, Detlefs C: Trauma in pregnancy. Semin Perinatol 42(1):13, 2018
Hung TH, Shau WY, Hsieh CC, et al: Risk factors for placenta accreta. Obstet Gynecol 93:545, 1999
Hurd WW, Miodovnik M, Hertzberg V, et al: Selective management of abruptio placentae: a prospective study. Obstet Gynecol 61:467, 1983
Jakobsson M, Tapper AM, Colmorn LB, et al: Emergency peripartum hysterectomy: results from the prospective Nordic Obstetric Surveillance Study (NOSS). Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 94(7):745, 2015
Jauniaux E, Collins S, Burton GJ: Placenta accreta spectrum: pathophysiology and evidence-based anatomy for prenatal ultrasound imaging. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(1):75, 2018
Jauniaux E, Collins SL, Jurkovic D, et al: Accreta placentation: a systematic review of prenatal ultrasound imaging and grading of villous invasiveness. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(6):712, 2016
Jauniaux E, Dimitrova I, Kenyon N, et al: Impact of placenta previa with placenta accreta spectrum disorder on fetal growth. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 54(5):643, 2019
Jauniaux E, Hecht JL: Perinatal diagnosis of placenta accreta spectrum disorders in the twenty-first century: visual inspection at birth is not enough. BJOG 128(2):328, 2021
Jenabi E, Fereidooni B: The uterine leiomyoma and placenta previa: a meta-analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(7):1200, 2019
Judy AE, Lyell DJ, Druzin ML, et al: Disseminated intravascular coagulation complicating the conservative management of placenta percreta. Obstet Gynecol 126(5):1016, 2015
Kaminsky LM, Ananth CV, Prasad V, et al: The influence of maternal cigarette smoking on placental pathology in pregnancies complicated by abruption. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197:275.e1, 2007
Kancherla V, Räisänen S, Gissler M, et al: Placenta previa and risk of major congenital malformations among singleton births in Finland. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 103(6):527, 2015
Karami M, Jenabi E, Fereidooni B: The association of placenta previa and assisted reproductive techniques: a meta-analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(14):1940, 2018
Kayani SI, Walkinshaw SA, Preston C: Pregnancy outcome in severe placental abruption. BJOG 110:679, 2003
Khazaei S, Jenabi E: The association between polyhydramnios and the risk of placenta abruption: a meta-analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med Jan 24:1, 2019
Kibel M, Asztalos E, Barrett J, et al: Outcomes of pregnancies complicated by preterm premature rupture of membranes between 20 and 24 weeks of gestation. Obstet Gynecol 128:313, 2016
King DL: Placental migration demonstrated by ultrasonography. Radiology 109:167, 1973
Kingdom JC, Hobson SR, Murji A, et al: Minimizing surgical blood loss at cesarean hysterectomy for placenta previa with evidence of placenta increta or placenta percreta: the state of play in 2020. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(3):322, 2020
Klar M, Michels KB: Cesarean section and placental disorders in subsequent pregnancies—a meta-analysis. J Perinat Med 42(5): 571, 2014
Knight M, UKOSS: Peripartum hysterectomy in the UK: management and outcomes of the associated haemorrhage. BJOG 114:1380, 2007
Kohari KS, Roman AS, Fox NS, et al: Persistence of placenta previa in twin gestations based on gestational age at sonographic detection. J Ultrasound Med 31(7):985, 2012
Kollmann M, Gaulhofer J, Lang U, et al: Placenta previa: incidence, risk factors and outcome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(9):1395, 2016
Kortekaas JC, Kazemier BM, Keulen JK, et al: Risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes of late- and postterm pregnancies in advanced maternal age: a national cohort study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(8):1022, 2020
Kotsuji F, Nishihima K, Kurokawa T, et al: Transverse uterine fundal incision for placenta praevia with accreta, involving the entire anterior uterine wall: a case series. BJOG 120(9):1144, 2013
Kutuk MS, Ak M, Ozgun MT: Leaving the placenta in situ versus conservative and radical surgery in the treatment of placenta accreta spectrum disorders. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 140: 338, 2018
Lai J, Caughey AB, Qidwai GI, et al: Neonatal outcomes in women with sonographically identified uterine leiomyomata. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(6):710, 2012
Lax A, Prince MR, Mennitt KW, et al: The value of specific MRI features in the evaluation of suspected placental invasion. Magn Reson Imaging 25:87, 2007
Levin G, Rottenstreich A, Benshushan A, et al: The role of supracervical hysterectomy in reducing blood products requirement in the management of placenta accreta: a case control study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(15):2522, 2020
Linn RL, Miller ES, Lim G, et al: Adherent basal plate myometrial fibers in the delivered placenta as a risk factor for development of subsequent placenta accreta. Placenta 36(12):1419, 2015
Lueth A, Blue NR, Silver RM: Placental abruption in nulliparous women. Abstract No. 1186, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:S729, 2020
Luke B, Gopal D, Cabral H, et al: Adverse pregnancy, birth, and infant outcomes in twins: effects of maternal fertility status and infant gender combinations; the Massachusetts Outcomes Study of Assisted Reproductive Technology. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(3):330.e1, 2017a
Luke B, Gopal D, Cabral H, et al: Pregnancy, birth, and infant outcomes by maternal fertility status: the Massachusetts Outcomes Study of Assisted Reproductive Technology. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(3):327.el, 2017b
Major CA, deVeciana M, Lewis DF, et al: Preterm premature rupture of membranes and abruptio placentae: is there an association between these pregnancy complications? Am J Obstet Gynecol 172:672, 1995
Makary M, Chowdary P, Westgate JA: Vascular balloon occlusion and planned caesarean hysterectomy for morbidly adherent placenta: a systematic review. J Obstet Gynaecol 59(5):608, 2019
Maraka S, Ospina NM, O'Keeffe DT, et al: Subclinical hypothyroidism in pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Thyroid 26(4):580, 2016
Masselli G, Brunelli R, Di Tola M, et al: MR imaging in the evaluation of placental abruption: correlation with sonographic findings. Radiology 259(1):222, 2011
Matsuda Y, Ogawa M, Konno J, et al: Prediction of fetal academia in placental abruption. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 13:156, 2013
Matsukawa S, Sumigama S, Kotani T, et al: Possible association between cathepsin V and the development of placenta accreta spectrum disorders. Gynecol Obstet Invest 84(4):396, 2019
Matsuwaki T, Khan KN, Inoue T, et al: Evaluation of obstetrical factors related to Sheehan syndrome. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 40(1):46, 2014
McKeogh RP, D'Errico E: Placental accreta: clinical manifestations and conservative management. N Engl J Med 245:159, 1951
Mei Y, Luo D, Lin Y: Clinical application of prophylactic internal iliac artery balloon occlusion combined with uterine artery embolization in patients with abnormally invasive placenta. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(24):3287, 2018
Mei Y, Luo D, Wei S, et al: Comparison of emergency cesarean hysterectomy with and without prophylactic placement of intravascular balloon catheters in patients with placenta accreta spectrum. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med September 20, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Mhatre MV, Potter JA, Lockwood CJ, et al: Thrombin augments LPS-induced human endometrial endothelial ell inflammation via PARK1 activation. Am J Reprod Immunol 76(1):29, 2016
Miller ES, Linn RL, Ernst LM: Does the presence of placental basal plate myometrial fibers in a prior pregnancy improve prediction of placenta accreta? BJOG 123(13):2140, 2016
Millischer AE, Solomon LJ, Porcher R, et al: Magnetic resonance imaging for abnormally invasive placenta: the added value of intravenous gadolinium injection. BJOG 124(1): 88, 2017
Mitric C, Desilets J, Baayla J, et al: Surgical management of the placenta accreta spectrum: an institutional experience. Obstet Gynaecol Can 41(11):1551, 2019
Miura K, Higashijima A, Murakami Y, et al: Circulating levels of pregnancy-associated, placenta-specific microRNAs in pregnant women with placental abruption. Reprod Sci 24(1):148, 2017
Mogos MF, Salemi JL, Ashley M, et al: Recent trends in placenta accreta in the United States and its impact on maternal-fetal morbidity and healthcare-associated costs, 1998–2011. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 29(7):1077, 2016
Mohamed MA, Mohammed AH: Parallel vertical compression sutures to control bleeding in cases of placenta previa and accreta. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(4):641, 2019
Mohr-Sasson A, Hochman R, Anteby M, et al: Cesarean delivery with and without uterine artery embolization for the management of placenta accreta spectrum disorder—a comparative study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(10):1374, 2020

Morgan EA, Sidebottom A, Vacquier M, et al: The effect of placental location in cases of placenta accreta spectrum. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(4):357, 2019

Morgan JL, Nelson DB, Roberts SW, et al: The impact of baseline proteinuria in pregnant women with treated chronic hypertension. Obstet Gynecol 128:270, 2016

Mori K, Saida T, Hoshiai S, et al: High prevalence of intrapelvic parasitic arteries in patients with placenta accreta spectrum: a case-control study using unenhanced magnetic resonance angiography. Clin Imaging 65:50, 2020

Nageotte MP: Always be vigilant for placenta accreta. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(2):87, 2014

Neilson JP: Interventions for suspected placenta praevia. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD001998, 2003

Nelson DB, Lucke AM, McIntire DD, et al: Obstetric antecedents to body-cooling treatment of the newborn infant. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211:155.el, 2014

Ngai I, Bernstein P, Chazotte C, et al: Maternal serum alpha fetoprotein (MSAFP) and placental abruption. Abstract No. 122, Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(1):S66, 2012

Nørgaard LN, Pinborg A, Lidegaard Ø, et al: A Danish national cohort study on neonatal outcome in singleton pregnancies with placenta previa. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91(5):546, 2012

Okby R, Atawaz AA, Wainstock T, et al: Placental abruption in twin pregnancies, risk factors and perinatal outcomes. Abstract No. 978, Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:S551, 2017

Olive EC, Roberts CL, Nassar N, et al: Test characteristics of placental location screening by transabdominal ultrasound at 18–20 weeks. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 28(7):944, 2006

Onishi K, Tsuda H, Furna K, et al: The impact of the abruption severity and the onset-to-delivery time on the maternal and neonatal outcomes of placental abruption. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med Mar 8:1, 2019

Oyelese Y, Smulian JC: Placenta previa, placenta accreta, and vasa previa. Obstet Gynecol 107:927, 2006

Pagani G, Cali G, Acharya G, et al: Diagnostic accuracy of ultrasound in detecting the severity of abnormally invasive placentation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 97(1):325, 2018

Palacios-Jaraquemada JM, Fiorillo A, Hamer J, et al: Placenta accreta spectrum: a hysterectomy can be prevented in almost 80% of cases using a resective-reconstructive technique. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med January 26, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]

Panaiotova J, Tokunaka M, Krajewska K, et al: Screening for morbidly adherent placenta in early pregnancy. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 53(1):101, 2019

Pariente G, Shoham-Vardi I, Kessous R, et al: Placental abruption as a marker for long term cardiovascular mortality: a follow-up period of more than a decade. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(1):S62, 2013

Parrott J, Holland M: Second-trimester marginal previa: is follow-up necessary? Abstract No. 653, Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(1):S322, 2015

Pates JA, Hatab MR, McIntire DD, et al: Determining uterine blood flow in pregnancy with magnetic resonance imaging. Magn Reson Imaging 28(4):507, 2010

Pather S, Strockyj S, Richards A, et al: Maternal outcome after conservative management of placenta percreta at caesarean section: a report of three cases and a review of the literature. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 54(1):84, 2014

Perez-Delboy A, Wright JD: Surgical management of placenta accreta: to leave or remove the placenta? BJOG 121:163, 2014

Perlman NC, Little SE, Thomas A, et al: Patient selection for later delivery timing with suspected previa-accreta. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 96(8):1021, 2017

Pettit KE, Stephenson ML, Truong YN, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes among scheduled versus unscheduled deliveries in women with prenatally diagnosed, pathologically proven placenta accreta. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(6):927, 2019

Pilloni E, Alemanno MG, Gaglioti P, et al: Accuracy of ultrasound in antenatal diagnosis of placental attachment disorders. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 47(3):302, 2016

Po LK, Simons ME, Levinsky ES: Concealed postpartum hemorrhage treated with transcatheter arterial embolization. Obstet Gynecol 120(2 Pt 2):461, 2012

Primo LF, Arbogast K, Digiacomo T, et al: Placenta accreta: can we forecast its arrival? Obstet Gynecol 123(Suppl 1):166, 2014

Pritchard JA, Brekken AL: Clinical and laboratory studies on severe abruptio placentae. Am J Obstet Gynecol 97:681, 1967

Pritchard JA, Cunningham FG, Pritchard SA, et al: On reducing the frequency of severe abruptio placentae. Am J Obstet Gynecol 165:1345, 1991

Pritchard JA, Mason R, Corley M, et al: Genesis of severe placental abruption. Am J Obstet Gynecol 108:22, 1970

Quant HS, Friedman AM, Wang E, et al: Transabdominal sonography as a screening test for second-trimester placenta previa. Obstet Gynecol 13(3):628, 2014

Rac MW, Dashe JS, Wells CE, et al: Ultrasound predictors of placental invasion: the Placenta Accreta Index. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212:343, 2015a

Rac MW, Wells CE, Twicker DM, et al: Placenta accreta and vaginal bleeding according to gestational age at delivery. Obstet Gynecol 125(4):808, 2015b

Räisänen S, Kancherla V, Kramer MR, et al: Placenta previa and the risk of delivering a small-for-gestational-age newborn. Obstet Gynecol 124(2 Pt 1):285, 2014

Rasmussen S, Irgens LM: Occurrence of placental abruption in relatives. BJOG 116:693, 2009

Reddy UM, Abuhamad AZ, Levine D, et al: Fetal imaging: executive summary of a joint Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, Society for Maternal—Fetal Medicine, American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, American College of Radiology, Society for Pediatric Radiology, and Society of Radiologists in Ultrasound Fetal Imaging Workshop. Obstet Gynecol 123(5):1070, 2014

Riihimäki O, Metsäranta M, Paavonen J, et al: Placental abruption and child mortality. Pediatrics 142(2):e20173915, 2018

Riihimäki O, Metsäranta M, Ritvanen A, et al: Increased prevalence of major congenital anomalies in births with placental abruption. Obstet Gynecol 122(2 Pt 1):268, 2013

Roach MK, Thomassee MS: Acquired uterine arteriovenous malformation and retained placenta increta. Obstet Gynecol 126(3):642, 2015

Roberge S, Bujold E, Nicolaides KH: Meta—analysis on the effect of aspirin use for prevention of preeclampsia on placenta abruption and antepartum hemorrhage. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(5):483, 2018

Roberts CL, Algert CS, Warrendorf J, et al: Trends and recurrence of placenta previa: a population-based study. Aust NZJ Obstet Gynaecol 52(5):483, 2012

Robinson CJ, Villers MS, Johnson DD, et al: Timing of elective repeat cesarean delivery at term and neonatal outcomes: a cost analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 202(6):632, 2010

Roeca C, Little SE, Carusi D: Pathologically diagnosed accrete and hemorrhagic morbidity in a subsequent pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 129(2):321, 2017

Rosenberg T, Pariente G, Sergienko R, et al: Critical analysis of risk factors and outcome of placenta previa. Arch Gynecol Obstet 284(1):47, 2011

Rossi AC, Lee RH, Chmait RH: Emergency postpartum hysterectomy for uncontrolled postpartum bleeding: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 115(3):637, 2010

Ruiter L, Ravelli AC, de Graaf IM, et al: Incidence and recurrence rate of placental abruption: a longitudinal linked national cohort study in the Netherlands. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(4): 573.el, 2015

Sabourin JN, Lee T, Magee LA, et al: Indications for timing of, and modes of delivery in a national cohort of women admitted with antepartum hemorrhage at 22+0 to 28+6 weeks' gestation. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 34(11):1043, 2012

Salihu HM, Bekan B, Aliyu MH, et al: Perinatal mortality associated with abruptio placenta in singletons and multiples. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193:198, 2005

Salihu HM, Li Q, Rouse DJ, et al: Placenta previa: neonatal death after live births in the United States. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:1305, 2003

Sallam HF, Shady NW: A sandwich technique (N & H variation technique) to reduce blood loss during cesarean delivery for complete placenta previa: a randomized controlled trial. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(19):3145, 2019

Salmanian B, Fox KA, Arian S, et al: In vitro fertilization as an independent risk factor for placenta accreta spectrum. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(4):568.e1, 2020

Sanderson DA, Milton PJ: The effectiveness of ultrasound screening at 18–20 weeks' gestational age for predication of placenta previa. J Obstet Gynaecol 11:320 1991

Sentilhes L, Gromez A, Clavier E, et al: Predictors of failed pelvic arterial embolization for severe postpartum hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 113:992, 2009

Sentilhes L, Kayem G, Mattuizzi A: Conservative approach: intentional retention of the placenta. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 72:52, 2021

Shainker SA, Silver RM, Modest AM, et al: Placenta accreta spectrum: biomarker discovery using plasma proteomics. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(3):433.e1, 2020

Shamshirsaz AA, Fox KA, Erfani H, et al: Outcomes of planned compared with urgent deliveries using a multidisciplinary team approach for morbidly adherent placenta. Obstet Gynecol 131(2):234, 2018

Shih JC, Liu KL, Kang J, et al: "Nausicaa" compression suture: a simple and effective alternative to hysterectomy in placenta accreta spectrum and other causes of severe postpartum haemorrhage. BJOG 126(3):412, 2019

Shoopala HM, Hall DR: Re-evaluation of abruptio placentae and other maternal complications during expectant management of early onset preeclampsia. Pregnancy Hypertens 16:38, 2019

Sibai BM, Lindheimer M, Hauth J, et al: Risk factors for preeclampsia, abruptio placentae, and adverse neonatal outcomes among women with chronic hypertension. N Engl J Med 339:667, 1998

Silver RM: Abnormal placentation: placenta previa, vasa previa, and placenta accreta. Obstet Gynecol 126(3):654, 2015a

Silver RM, Branch DW: Placenta accreta spectrum. N Engl J Med 378(16):152, 2018

Silver RM, Fox KA, Barton JR, et al: Center of excellence for placenta accreta. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(5):561, 2015b

Silver RM, Landon MB, Rouse DJ, et al: Maternal morbidity associated with multiple repeat cesarean deliveries. Obstet Gynecol 107:1226, 2006

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Gyamfi-Bannerman C: Management of bleeding in the late preterm period. Consult Series No. 44, Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(1):B2, 2018

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Miller R, Timor-Tritsch IE, et al: Cesarean scar pregnancy. Consult Series No. 49, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(5):B2, 2020

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Sinkey RG, Odibo AO, et al: Diagnosis and management of vasa previa. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(5):615, 2015

Stafford IA, Dashe JS, Shivvers SA, et al: Ultrasonographic cervical length and risk of hemorrhage in pregnancies with placenta previa. Obstet Gynecol 116(3):595, 2010

Stettler RW, Lutich A, Pritchard JA, et al: Traumatic placental abruption: a separation from traditional thought. Presented at the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Clinical Meeting, April 27, 1992

Timmermans S, van Hof AC, Duvekot JJ: Conservative management of abnormally invasive placentation. Obstet Gynecol Surv 62:529, 2007

Timor-Tritsch IE, Monteagudo A, Cali G, et al: Cesarean scar pregnancies: diagnosis and pathogenesis. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 46(4):797, 2019

Tinari S, Buca D, Cali G, et al: Risk factors, histopathology and diagnostic accuracy in posterior placenta accreta spectrum disorders: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 57(6):903, 2021

Towers CV, Pircon RA, Heppard M: Is tocolysis safe in the management of third-trimester bleeding? Am J Obstet Gynecol 180:1572, 1999

Trudell A, Stout M, Cahill A, et al: Second trimester cervical length and persistence of placental previa in the third trimester. Abstract No. 91, Presented at the 33rd Annual Meeting of the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, February 11–16, 2013

Tuuli MG, Norman SM, Odibo AO, et al: Perinatal outcomes in women with subchorionic hematoma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 117(5):1205, 2011

Twickler DM, Lucas MJ, Balis AB, et al: Color flow mapping for myometrial invasion in women with a prior cesarean delivery. J Matern Fetal Med 9:330, 2000

Usta IM, Hobeika EM, Abu Musa AA, et al: Placenta previa- accreta: risk factors and complications. Am J Obstet Gynecol Rev 193:1045, 2005

Wang L, Matsunaga S, Mikami Y, et al: Pre-delivery fibrinogen predicts adverse maternal or neonatal outcomes in patients with placental abruption. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 42(7):796, 2016

Warshak CR, Ramos GA, Eskander R, et al: Effect of predelivery diagnosis in 99 consecutive cases of placenta accreta. Obstet Gynecol 115(1):65, 2010

Weiner E, Miremberg H, Grinstein E, et al: The effect of placenta previa on fetal growth and pregnancy outcome in correlation with placental pathology. J Perinatol 36(12):1073, 2016

Weis MA, Harper LM, Roehl KA, et al: Natural history of placenta previa in twins. Obstet Gynecol 120(4):753, 2012

Weiss JL, Malone FD, Vidaver J, et al: Threatened abortion: a risk factor for poor pregnancy outcome, a population-based screening study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190:745, 2004

Wing DA, Paul RH, Millar LK: Management of the symptomatic placenta previa: a randomized, controlled trial of inpatient versus outpatient expectant management. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:305, 1996

Wong HS, Cheung YK, Zuccollo J, et al: Evaluation of sonographic diagnostic criteria for placenta accreta. J Clin Ultrasound 36(9):551, 2008

Wong TY: Emergency peripartum hysterectomy: a 10-year review in a tertiary obstetric hospital. N Z Med J 124(1345):34, 2011

Workalemahu T, Enquobahrie DA, Gelaye B, et al: Abruptio placentae risk and genetic variations in mitochondrial biogenesis and oxidative phosphorylation: replication of a candidate gene association study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219:617.e1, 2018

Worley KC, Hnat MD, Cunningham FG: Advanced extrauterine pregnancy: diagnostic and therapeutic challenges. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198:297.e1, 2008

Wortman A, Schaefer S, Wilson K, et al: Maternal morbidity associated with placenta previa with and without placental invasion. Abstract No. 601, Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(1):S299, 2015

Wright JD, Silver RM, Bonanno C, et al: Practice patterns and knowledge of obstetricians and gynecologists regarding placenta accreta. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(16):1602, 2013

Yasin N, Slade L, Atkinson E, et al: The multidisciplinary management of placenta accreta spectrum (PAS) within single tertiary centre: a ten-year experience. Aust N Z Obstet Gynaecol 59(4):550, 2019

Yu SC, Cheng YK, Tse WT, et al: Perioperative prophylactic internal iliac artery balloon occlusion in the prevention of postpartum hemorrhage in placenta previa: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(1):117.e1, 2020

Yule CS, Happe SK, Rac M, et al: Placenta accreta index predicts placenta accreta spectrum severe enough to result in hysterectomy. Abstract No. 140, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(1):S105, 2020

Yule CS, Lewis MA, Do QN, et al: Transvaginal color mapping ultrasound in the first trimester predicts placenta accreta spectrum: a retrospective cohort study. J Ultrasound Med March 16, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Zetterstrom K, Lindeberg SN, Haglund B, et al: Maternal complications in women with chronic hypertension: a population-based cohort study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 84:419, 2005

Zhou X, Sun X, Wang M, et al: The effectiveness of prophylactic internal iliac artery balloon occlusion in the treatment of patients with pernicious placenta previa coexisting with placenta accreta. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(1):93, 2021

Zuckerwise LC, Craig AM, Newton JM, et al: Outcomes following a clinical algorithm allowing for delayed hysterectomy in the management of severe placenta accreta spectrum. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:179.e1, 2020

CHAPTER 44

Management of Obstetrical Hemorrhage

Recognition of obstetrical hemorrhage severity is crucial to its management. However, visual estimates, especially when blood losses are excessive, are notoriously inaccurate. In many cases, true volume losses are often two to three times the clinical estimate. Moreover, in obstetrics, part and sometimes even all of the lost blood may be concealed. Estimation is further complicated in that peripartum hemorrhage also includes the pregnancy-augmented blood volume. After pregnancy hypervolemia is lost at delivery, blood loss can be estimated by calculating 500 mL loss for each 3 volume percent drop in hematocrit. Its nadir depends on the speed of resuscitation with intravenous crystalloids and blood products. *With ongoing blood loss, the real-time hematocrit is at its maximum whenever measured in the delivery, operating, or recovery room.*

Prudently, if blood loss is considered more than average, the hematocrit is determined, and plans are made for close observation for potential physiological deterioration. Blood loss determination as recommended by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) is discussed in detail in Chapter 42. Urine output measured hourly is one of the most important "vital signs." *Unless diuretic agents are given—and these are seldom indicated with active bleeding—accurately measured urine flow reflects renal perfusion. This in turn reflects perfusion of other vital organs.* The volume of urine output should be ≥30 mL/hr and preferably ≥50 mL/hr.

Another important factor to consider with management of hemorrhage is whether there are adequate procoagulants to achieve clot formation and stability. Many cases of severe obstetrical hemorrhage are further complicated by disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), in which blood has dysfunctional coagulation (p. 775).

MANAGEMENT OF HEMORRHAGE

Hypovolemic Shock

Shock from hemorrhage evolves through several stages (Cannon, 2018). Early, the mean arterial pressure, stroke volume, cardiac output, central venous pressure, and pulmonary capillary wedge pressure decline. Greater differences in arteriovenous oxygen content values reflect enhanced tissue oxygen extraction, although overall oxygen consumption falls.

Blood flow to capillary beds is controlled by arterioles, which are resistance vessels and partially controlled by the central nervous system (CNS). However, approximately 70 percent of total blood volume is contained in venules, which are passive resistance vessels controlled by humoral factors. Thus, the catecholamine release during hemorrhage prompts greater venular tone, and this provides an autotransfusion from this capacitance reservoir. This volume boost is accompanied by compensatory rises in heart rate, systemic and pulmonary vascular resistance, and myocardial contractility. At the same time, selective, CNS-mediated arteriolar constriction or relaxation, termed autoregulation, preferentially redistributes cardiac output and blood volume. Thus, more blood flow is diverted to the heart, brain, and adrenal glands, whereas perfusion to the kidneys, splanchnic beds, muscles, skin, and uterus is relatively diminished.

When the blood volume deficit exceeds approximately 25 percent, compensatory mechanisms usually are inadequate to maintain cardiac output and blood pressure. Importantly, additional small losses of blood will now cause rapid clinical

deterioration. Following an initial augmented total oxygen extraction by maternal tissue, maldistribution of blood flow results in local tissue hypoxia and metabolic acidosis. This creates a vicious cycle of vasoconstriction, organ ischemia, and cellular death.

Hemorrhage also activates lymphocytes and monocytes, which in turn prompts endothelial cell activation and platelet aggregation (Cannon, 2018). This endotheliopathy promotes release of vasoactive mediators that occlude small vessels and further impair microcirculatory perfusion. Comorbid preeclampsia or sepsis also leads to loss of capillary endothelial integrity, additional loss of intravascular volume into the extracellular space, and platelet aggregation. These then can incite DIC.

The pathophysiological events just described create important but often overlooked extracellular fluid and electrolyte shifts involved in both the genesis and successful treatment of hypovolemic shock. These include changes in the cellular transport of various ions such as sodium and water into skeletal muscle as well as potassium loss. Replacement of extracellular fluid and intravascular volume are both necessary. Patient survival rates are enhanced in acute hemorrhagic shock if blood plus crystalloid solution are given compared with blood transfusions alone.

Fluid Resuscitation

Whenever excessive blood loss is suspected, steps are simultaneously taken to identify the bleeding source and to begin resuscitation. Refer to the algorithm for hemorrhage management (Fig. 42-3, p. 735). If the woman is undelivered, restoration of blood volume benefits both mother and fetus. It also prepares for emergent delivery. If she is postpartum, immediately identifying uterine atony, retained placental fragments, or genital tract lacerations is essential. One or two large-bore intravenous infusion systems are ideally established promptly, crystalloid solutions are rapidly infused, and blood products are ordered. An operating room is readied, and a surgical and anesthesia team are quickly assembled. Specific management of hemorrhage is further dependent on its etiology. A neonatal resuscitation team is included if imminent delivery is planned.

Serious hemorrhage demands prompt and adequate refilling of the intravascular compartment with crystalloid solutions. These rapidly equilibrate into the extravascular space, and only 20 percent of crystalloid remains intravascular in critically ill patients after 1 hour (Zuckerbraun, 2010). *Because of this, initial fluid is infused in a volume two to three times the estimated blood loss.*

Crystalloid Versus Colloid Solutions

Resuscitation of hypovolemic shock with colloid versus crystalloid solutions has been debated. In a Cochrane review of resuscitation of nonpregnant critically ill patients, Lewis and coworkers (2018) found selection of colloids versus crystalloids probably makes little or no difference to mortality rates. Similar results were found in the Saline versus Albumin Fluid Evaluation (SAFE) randomized trial of almost 7000 nonpregnant patients (Finfer, 2004). At Parkland Hospital, acute volume resuscitation is preferably done with crystalloid solutions and blood.

Either a saline-based or a balanced crystalloid solution may be infused. The latter includes Ringer lactate and Plasma-Lyte solutions, which have electrolyte compositions similar to plasma. In some studies, but not in all, balanced crystalloid solutions were found to be superior to saline-based ones (Semler, 2018; Yule, 2020). Excessive saline-based crystalloid solution can theoretically lead to hyperchloremic acidosis. In comparisons, the difficulty lies in separating the effects of the underlying pathophysiology driving the acidosis.

Blood Replacement

Type and Screen Versus Crossmatch

A blood type and antibody screen should be performed for any woman at significant risk for hemorrhage. Because prediction of women at risk for postpartum hemorrhage is poor, we perform type and screen in all women upon admission to labor and delivery. Screening involves mixing maternal serum with standard reagent red cells that carry antigens to which most of the common clinically significant antibodies react. Instead, crossmatching involves the use of actual donor erythrocytes rather than the standardized red cells. This process is efficient, and only 0.03 to 0.07 percent of patients identified as having no antibodies are subsequently found to them (Boral, 1979). *Importantly, administration of screened blood rarely results in adverse clinical sequelae.*

Transfusion Thresholds

The hematocrit level or hemoglobin concentration threshold that mandates blood transfusion is controversial (Bienstock, 2021). Cardiac output does not substantively drop until the hemoglobin concentration falls to approximately 7 g/dL or when the hematocrit approximates 20 volume percent. Military combat trauma units have used a target hematocrit of 21 volume percent, and at this level, most experts recommend consideration of red cell transfusion (Carson, 2017; Kogutt, 2019). In general, with ongoing obstetrical hemorrhage, we recommend rapid blood infusion when the hematocrit is <25 volume percent. Other decision-modifying factors are whether the fetus is undelivered; surgery is imminent or ongoing operative blood loss is expected; or maternal hypoxia, vascular collapse, or other factors are present.

Limited data address these issues. In a study from the Canadian Critical Care Trials Group, nonpregnant patients were randomly assigned to restrictive red cell transfusions to maintain hemoglobin concentration >7 g/dL or to liberal transfusions to maintain the hemoglobin level at 10 to 12 g/dL. The 30-day mortality rate was similar—19 versus 23 percent—in the restrictive versus liberal groups, respectively (Hébert, 1999). Transfusion therapy in nonpregnant patients with septic shock had similar mortality rates when 7 g/dL was compared with 9 g/dL as targets for transfusions (Holst, 2014). *The number of units transfused in a given woman to reach a target hematocrit depends on her body mass and on the expectations of additional blood loss.*

Blood Component Products

The content and effects of transfusion of various blood components are shown in Table 44-1. Because whole blood is rarely available, most women with obstetrical hemorrhage and ongoing

TABLE 44-1. Blood Products Commonly Transfused in Obstetrical Hemorrhage

Product	Volume per Unit	Contents per Unit	Effect on Hemorrhage
Whole blood	About 50 mL: Hct ~40 percent	RBCs, plasma, 600–700 mg fibrinogen, no platelets	Restores blood volume and fibrinogen, increases Hct 3–4 volume percent per unit
Packed RBCs	250–300 mL: Hct ~55–80 percent	RBCs, minimal fibrinogen, no platelets	Increases Hct 3–4 volume percent per unit
FFP	About 250 mL; 30-minute thaw	Colloid, 600–700 mg fibrinogen, no platelets	Restores circulating volume and fibrinogen
Cryoprecipitate	About 15 mL, frozen	One unit has 200 mg fibrinogen, other clotting factors, no platelets	15–20 units or 3–4 g will increase baseline fibrinogen ~150 mg/dL
Platelets	About 50 mL, stored at room temperature	One unit raises platelet count ~5000/μL; single-donor apheresis bag preferable	6–10 units transfused; single-donor bag preferable to raise platelets ~50,000 μ/L

FFP = fresh-frozen plasma; Hct = hematocrit; RBCs = red blood cells.

massive blood loss are given packed red cells, crystalloid solutions, and blood components. As subsequently discussed, many institutions use *massive transfusion protocols (MTPs)* designed to anticipate all facets of massive obstetrical hemorrhage. These protocols commonly contain plasma, cryoprecipitate, and platelets in various ratios (Cunningham, 2015; Shields, 2011).

Several studies have assessed plasma:red cell ratios with MTPs used in civilian trauma units and military combat hospitals (Hardin, 2014; Rahouma, 2018). Patients receiving a massive transfusion—defined as 10 or more units of blood—had much higher survival rates as the ratio of plasma to red cell units neared 1:1.4, that is, one unit of plasma given for each 1.4 units of packed red cells. By way of contrast, the highest mortality group had a ratio of 1:8.

From the foregoing, when red cell replacement exceeds five units or so, evaluation of platelet count, clotting studies, and plasma fibrinogen concentration is reasonable (Bienstock, 2021; Pacheco, 2019). In the woman with obstetrical hemorrhage, the platelet count should be maintained >50,000/μL by the infusion of platelet concentrates. A fibrinogen level <150 mg/dL or a sufficiently prolonged PT or PTT in a woman with surgical bleeding is an indication for replacement. Fresh-frozen plasma is administered in doses of 10 to 15 mL/kg, or alternatively, cryoprecipitate is infused (see Table 44-1).

At Parkland Hospital, we use a standardized response to active hemorrhage. If whole blood is not available, the following escalation of blood products is applied: 2 units packed red blood cells, and if continued bleeding, 2 units packed red blood cells and 2 units fresh-frozen plasma are automatically ordered. Beyond this, MTP is initiated.

Whole Blood and Packed Red Blood Cells

Compatible whole blood is ideal for management of severe obstetrical hemorrhage. It has a shelf life of 40 days, and 70 percent of the transfused red cells function for at least 24 hours following transfusion. One unit raises the hematocrit by 3 to 4 volume percent. Important for obstetrical hemorrhage, whole blood replaces many coagulation factors needed in obstetrics—especially fibrinogen—and its plasma treats hypovolemia. A collateral derivative is that women with severe hemorrhage are resuscitated with fewer blood donor exposures than with packed red cells and components.

Experience at Parkland Hospital supports the preferable use of whole blood for massive hemorrhage (Alexander, 2009; Hernandez, 2012). Of more than 66,000 deliveries, women with obstetrical hemorrhage treated with whole blood had significantly lower incidences of severe maternal morbidity that included renal failure, acute respiratory distress syndrome, pulmonary edema, hypofibrinogenemia, intensive care unit admissions, or maternal death compared with those given packed red cells and component therapy. One unit of packed erythrocytes is derived from one unit of whole blood to have a hematocrit of 55 to 80 volume percent. One unit will increase the hematocrit by 3 to 4 volume percent depending on the size of the woman.

Dilutional Coagulopathy

A major drawback of massive hemorrhage treatment with crystalloid solutions and packed red blood cells is depletion of platelets and clotting factors. Discussed later, this can lead to a dilutional coagulopathy that is clinically indistinguishable from DIC (Cunningham, 2015; Hossain, 2013). Thrombocytopenia is the most frequent coagulation defect found with blood loss and multiple transfusions. In addition, packed red cells have only very small amounts of soluble clotting factors, and stored whole blood is deficient in platelets and in factors V, VIII, and XI. Thus, *hypofibrinogenemia* and prolongation of the prothrombin (PT) and partial thromboplastin times (PTT) are other sequelae. Because many causes of obstetrical hemorrhage also cause DIC, the distinction between dilutional and consumptive coagulopathy can be confusing. Fortunately, treatment for both is similar.

Platelets

Platelet transfusions are considered with ongoing obstetrical hemorrhage if the platelet count falls below 50,000/μL (Kenny,

2015). In the nonsurgical patient, bleeding is rarely encountered if the platelet count is 10,000/μL or higher (Murphy, 2010). The preferable source of platelets is one "bag" obtained by single-donor apheresis. This contains the equivalent of one unit each from six individual donors. Depending on maternal size, each single-donor-apheresis, six-unit bag raises the platelet count by approximately 20,000/μL. If these bags are not available, then individual-donor platelet units are used, and six to eight such units are generally transfused.

Importantly, the donor plasma in platelet units must be compatible with recipient erythrocytes. Further, because some red blood cells are invariably transfused along with the platelets, only units from D-negative donors should be given to D-negative recipients.

Fresh-frozen Plasma

This component is prepared by separating plasma from whole blood and then freezing it. Approximately 30 minutes are required for frozen plasma to thaw. It is a source of all stable and labile clotting factors, including fibrinogen. Thus, it is often used for treatment of women with consumptive or dilutional coagulopathy. *Plasma is not a suitable volume expander in the absence of specific clotting factor deficiencies.* It is considered in a bleeding woman with a fibrinogen level <150 mg/dL or with an abnormal PT or PTT.

An alternative to frozen plasma is *liquid plasma (LQP)*. This never-frozen plasma is stored at 1 to 6^0 C for up to 40 days, and its use compares favorably with fresh-frozen plasma (Backholder, 2017). Liquid plasma is not universally available in many centers.

Cryoprecipitate and Fibrinogen Concentrate

Each unit of cryoprecipitate is prepared from one unit of fresh-frozen plasma. Each 10- to 15-mL unit contains at least 200 mg of fibrinogen along with factor VIII:C, factor VIII:von Willebrand factor, factor XIII, and fibronectin (American Association of Blood Banks, 2017). It is usually given as a "pool" or "bag" using an aliquot of fibrinogen concentrate taken from 8 to 120 donors. Cryoprecipitate is an ideal source of fibrinogen when levels are dangerously low and surgical incisions show oozing. Because of transit time, the return of cryoprecipitate to transfusion services is often not feasible and is considered wastage if not deployed. Nearly 17 percent of ordered cryoprecipitate has been reported to be wasted in labor and delivery units, and this is the most commonly wasted product (Yee, 2019). Another alternative is virus-inactivated fibrinogen concentrate (Ng, 2020). These pooled fibrinogen products are marketed as *RiaSTAP* and *Fibryna*. Each gram of concentrate raises the plasma fibrinogen level approximately 40 mg/dL. These concentrates are used to treat congenital hypofibrinogenemia syndromes.

Recombinant Activated Factor VII

This synthetic vitamin K–dependent protein is available as *NovoSeven*. Recombinant activated factor VII (rFVIIa) binds to exposed tissue factor at the injury site to generate thrombin that activates platelets and the coagulation cascade. Since its introduction, rFVIIa has been used to help control hemorrhage from surgery, trauma, and obstetrical causes (Goodnough, 2016; Murakami, 2015). Many Level I trauma centers include it in MTPs. Importantly, rFVIIa will not be effective if the plasma fibrinogen level is <50 mg/dL or the platelet count is <30,000/μL.

One concern with rFVIIa is associated arterial—and to a lesser degree—venous thrombosis. In a review of 35 randomized trials, arterial thromboembolism developed in 55 percent (Levi, 2010). A second concern is that it has been found to have only marginal efficacy (Pacheco, 2019).

Tranexamic Acid

Normally, plasminogen binds with tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) to form plasmin. This binding degrades fibrin into fibrinogen–fibrin degradation products and leads to clot lysis. Instead, tranexamic acid (TXA) reversibly binds to plasminogen, and thereby blocks plasmin binding to fibrin. Fibrin strands are not broken, and a clot persists to slow down bleeding.

Ahmadzia and coworkers (2021) recently reported the pharmacodynamics of TXA at cesarean delivery using rotational thromboelastometry. TXA inhibited tPA-induced clot lysis in a dose-dependent manner. In the randomized WOMAN trial of gravidas with hemorrhage following vaginal birth or during cesarean delivery, mortality rates from obstetrical hemorrhage were 1.2 percent in those given a 1-g intravenous TXA dose plus traditional care for bleeding. This rate was statistically lower than the 1.7-percent death rate in women given traditional care alone (WOMAN Trial Collaborators, 2017). The trial was carried out in developing nations and because of the results, the drug is recommended by the World Health Organization (2017). In a large randomized trial of tranexamic acid given for *prophylaxis*, the drug did not decrease the rate of postpartum hemorrhage following vaginal delivery (Sentilhes, 2018). In the Tranexamic Acid for Preventing Postpartum Hemorrhage Following a Cesarean Delivery—TRAAP2 trial—women undergoing cesarean delivery who were given tranexamic acid prophylaxis had a lower incidence of red-cell transfusions (Sentilhes, 2021).

Gayet-Ageron and coworkers (2018) conducted a metaanalysis with more than 1000 patients with postpartum hemorrhage treated with TXA. They also analyzed data from two randomized trials that included more than 40,000 women treated with TXA. They concluded that treatment must be given soon after bleeding onset to reduce maternal mortality rates. Shakur and colleagues (2018) performed a Cochrane database review and also concluded that early TXA administration decreases maternal deaths.

Most of these studies were conducted in impoverished countries, and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) does not recommend TXA for either prophylaxis or first-line treatment of obstetrical hemorrhage. If used, administration within 3 hours of delivery is recommended.

Massive Transfusion Protocols

As noted, these protocols are initiated once four to five units of packed red cells have been given within 2 hours or so. These protocols speed blood product delivery to provide early resuscitation and help avoid dilutional coagulopathy. Once activated, packed red cells, plasma, platelets, and fibrinogen are given set ratios (Table 44-2). Some protocols include rFVIIa, TXA, or prothrombin complex concentrates (Jackson, 2018).

The data supporting the superiority of MTPs compared with traditional component replacement to improve survival

TABLE 44-2. Parkland Hospital Obstetrical Massive Transfusion Protocol

Round No.	PRBC 5 Units	FFP 3 Units	Plts 6-Pack	Cryo 1 Unit
1	X	X	—	—
2	X	X	X	—
3	X	X	—	X
4	X	X	X	—
5	X	X	—	—
6	X	X	X	X
7	X	X	—	—
8	X	X	X	—

Cryo = cryoprecipitate; FFP = fresh-frozen plasma; Plts = platelets; PRBC = packed red blood cells.

rates in obstetrical studies are limited. Most reports describe nonpregnant trauma victims, but some observational studies address obstetrical hemorrhage (Green, 2016; Pacheco, 2016).

Viscoelastic Assays

Thromboelastography (TEG) and *rotational thromboelastometry (ROTEM)* are point-of-care tests that assess coagulation in whole blood during massive transfusions. These tests work by analyzing both clot formation and breakdown in a whole blood sample from a given patient. Testing produces a profile of coagulation dynamics, and displayed values indicate the speed and quality of clot formation (Fig. 44-1). These assays provide information regarding time to clot formation, clot strength, and fibrinolysis (Arnolds, 2020). Currently, they guide blood product replacement in trauma, liver transplant, and cardiac surgery patients. Studies of TEG and ROTEM techniques in pregnant women have confirmed the hypercoagulable state of pregnancy and provide reference ranges for use in this population (Lee, 2021; McNamara, 2019; Pacheco, 2019).

Although promising, they also have several limitations. For example, they are less informative in a woman with torrential hemorrhage in whom clotting function would need to be measured minute-by-minute. They cannot be used to detect disorders of primary hemostasis (Solomon, 2012). A major drawback is the risk of misinterpretation when tests are used by inadequately trained personnel. Although use is gaining favor, we and others recommend further study before these tests are widely applied for obstetrical hemorrhage treatment (Amgalan, 2020). We have found this testing modality to be more applicable after initial management of hemorrhage and with intensive care recovery than during acute hemorrhage.

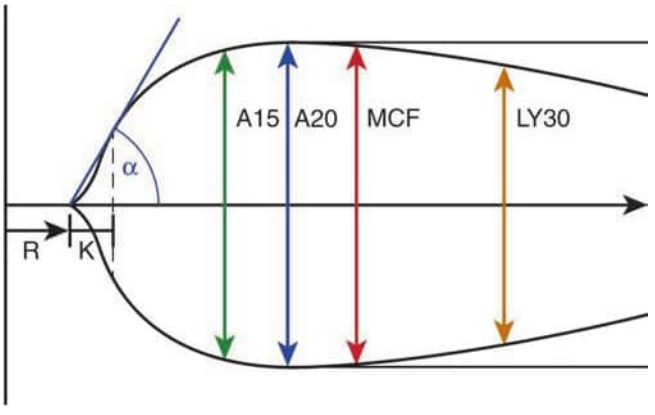


FIGURE 44-1 Normal thromboelastograph (TEG). R (reaction time: start of test to clot forming. K (clotting time): from start to 20 mm amplitude. Alpha (α) angle: speed of fibrin formation. A15, A20: amplitude at 15 and 20 minutes. MCF: maximum clot firmness. LY30: amount of clot lysed at 30 minutes.

Cell Salvage and Autologous Transfusion

Preoperative patient phlebotomy and *autologous blood storage* for transfusion in obstetrics has been disappointing. Exceptions are women with a rare blood type or with unusual antibodies (Pacheco, 2013; Sullivan, 2019).

Intraoperative blood salvage with reinfusion is considered a safe intervention in obstetrical patients. This practice may aid women declining transfusion (Chap. 30, p. 549). Prior concern centered on amnionic fluid contamination and embolism (Dhariwal, 2014; Goucher, 2015). To evaluate benefits, one trial randomly assigned 3028 women at risk for hemorrhage and undergoing cesarean delivery either to routine care or to cell salvage. The rate of nonautologous donor blood transfusion was not significantly reduced in the cell salvage group—2.5 versus 3.5 percent (Khan, 2017). In another study, Sullivan and colleagues (2019) routinely set up most cesarean deliveries for autologous transfusions and reported a lower rate of nonautologous donor transfusion. Similar to prior reports, no cases of amnionic fluid embolism were reported in these two studies.

■ Transfusion Complications

Of serious known risks, *transfusion of an incompatible blood component* may result in acute hemolysis. If severe, this can cause DIC, acute kidney injury, and death. Preventable errors responsible for most of these reactions frequently include mislabeling of a specimen or incorrectly transfusing a patient not slated for those products.

The rate of such errors in the United States is estimated to be 1 case in 14,000 units, but these events are likely underreported (Lerner, 2010). A transfusion reaction is characterized by fever, hypotension, tachycardia, dyspnea, chest or back pain, flushing, severe anxiety, and hemoglobinuria. Immediate supportive measures include stopping the transfusion, treating hypotension and hyperkalemia, provoking diuresis, and alkalinizing the urine.

Transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI) and *transfusion-associated circulatory overload (TACO)* are the most common causes of transfusion-related mortality (Semple, 2019). Affected women characteristically have severe dyspnea, hypoxia, and pulmonary edema that develop within 6 hours of transfusion (Peters, 2015). Of the two, TACO is more common, and its incidence nears 1 percent. TRALI is estimated to complicate at least 1 in 12,000 transfusions (Carson, 2017). Although their pathogenesis is incompletely understood, injury to the pulmonary capillaries may arise from human leukocyte antigen (HLA) antibodies and human neutrophil antibodies (HNA) in donor plasma (McCullough, 2016). Management is supportive and may include mechanical ventilation (Chap. 50, p. 885).

Bacterial infection from transfusion of a contaminated blood component is unusual because organism growth is discouraged by refrigeration. The most often implicated contaminants of red cells include *Yersinia*, *Pseudomonas*, *Serratia*, *Acinetobacter*, and *Escherichia* species. The more important risk is from bacterial contamination of platelets, which are stored at room temperature. Current estimates are that 1 in 1000 to 2000 platelet units are contaminated. Death from transfusion-related sepsis is 1 case in 17,000 transfused single-donor platelets and 1 case in 61,000 transfused apheresis-donor packs (Lerner, 2010).

Viral infection risks from transfusion have been curtailed. The estimated risk of human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) or of hepatitis C virus infection in screened blood is 1 case in 1 to 2 million transfused units (Carson, 2017). The estimated hepatitis B transmission rate is <1 case in 100,000 transfused units (Jackson, 2003). Because of the high prevalence of the virus, cytomegalovirus-infected leukocytes are often transfused.

Risks for transmitting West Nile virus, parvovirus B19, human T-lymphotropic virus type 1, and toxoplasmosis are slight (American Association of Blood Banks, 2013; Foroutan-Rad, 2016). Although rare, Zika virus has emerged as another relevant transfusion-transmitted infection (Motta, 2016). Collection of all whole blood components now includes testing for Zika virus (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2018). At this time, transmission of SARS-CoV-2 virus from a COVID-positive donor is hypothetical (Leblanc, 2020).

OBSTETRICAL COAGULOPATHIES

The terms *consumptive coagulopathy*, *defibrination syndrome*, and *disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC)* are often used interchangeably, but distinctions are important. Actual consumption of procoagulants within the intravascular tree results in a consumptive coagulopathy. In contrast, massive loss of procoagulants from hemorrhage results in a dilutional coagulopathy. Semantics aside, consumptive coagulopathy culminates in a systemic intravascular activation that completely disrupts natural hemostasis. As a result, an ineffective balance of natural anticoagulant mechanisms leads to widespread fibrin deposition that can cause multiorgan failure (Levi, 2016).

Pregnancy-induced Coagulation Changes

During normal pregnancy, the balance between coagulation and fibrinolysis changes to create a procoagulant state. Changes that promote coagulation include appreciable elevation in the plasma concentrations of factors I (fibrinogen), VII, VII, IX, and X. A partial list of these normal values is found in the Appendix (p. 1228). Concurrently, levels of plasminogen, which lyses fibrin, rise considerably. However, plasminogen activator inhibitor 1 and 2 (PAI-1 and PAI-2) levels also increase. Thus, plasmin activity usually declines until after delivery (Hale, 2012; Hui, 2012). As shown in Figure 4-7, (p. 62), mean platelet count drops by 10 percent during pregnancy, and platelet activation is enhanced (Kenny, 2015; Reese, 2018).

The net results of these changes include greater levels of fibrinopeptide A, β-thromboglobulin, platelet factor 4, and fibrinogen–fibrin degradation products, which includes D-dimers. In addition to lower concentrations of the anticoagulant protein S, pregnancy-related hypercoagulability, and decreased fibrinolysis, there is augmented—yet compensated—intravascular coagulation that may function to maintain the uteroplacental interface.

Disseminated Intravascular Coagulation

Because of the many definitions and variable severity, the incidence of consumptive coagulopathy in gravidas varies and ranges from 0.03 to 0.35 percent (Erez, 2014; Rattray, 2012). For example, some degree of significant coagulopathy is found in virtually all cases of placental abruption and amnionic fluid embolism. Other instances in which frequently occurring but less recognized degrees of coagulation activation can be found include sepsis; thrombotic microangiopathies; acute kidney injury; acute fatty liver; severe preeclampsia; and hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count (HELLP) syndrome (Cunningham, 2015).

When consumptive coagulopathy is severe, the likelihood of maternal and perinatal morbidity and mortality rises. In one study of 49 cases, antecedent causes included those listed above, and 59 percent received blood transfusions, 18 percent underwent hysterectomy, 6 percent required renal dialysis, and three mothers died (Rattray, 2012). In this series, the perinatal mortality rate was 30 percent. From 2010 to 2011, DIC was the second most common severe maternal morbidity indicator (Creanga, 2014). DIC was associated with nearly a fourth of maternal deaths during this study period. Despite these statistics, consumptive coagulopathy as the sole cause of maternal death is uncommon and accounts for only 0.2 percent of pregnancy-related deaths in the United States (Creanga, 2015).

Activation of Normal Coagulation

Instead of the "waterfall" sequential activation of the clotting cascade, a current theory proposes that *tissue factor*—an integral membrane glycoprotein—serves as the principal initiator of coagulation (Levi, 2016). Coagulation then moves forward but incorporates a feedback loop. To begin, tissue factor forms complexes with factor VII/VIIa to activate factors IX and X. Tissue factor is found in highly vascularized organs such as the brain, lungs, and placenta; in amnionic fluid; and in certain other cells (Kuczyfiski, 2002; Østerud, 2006; Uszyfiski, 2001).

Tissue factor–factor VIIa complexes ultimately generate activated factor X (Xa) to initiate clotting. Subsequently, the previously labeled "intrinsic" pathway amplifies this process. Specifically, the initial thrombin produced directly activates factor XI by providing a feedback amplification loop (Fig. 44-2). The end result of this amplified coagulation process is fibrin formation. This is then counterbalanced by the fibrinolytic system, in which plasminogen is activated. Even this process is tied initially to tissue factor. The final product is fibrin degradation products, sometimes called fibrin split products, which include D-dimers.

Activation of Pathological Coagulation

With DIC, pathological entities prompt tissue factor release from subendothelial tissue and stimulated monocytes, which in

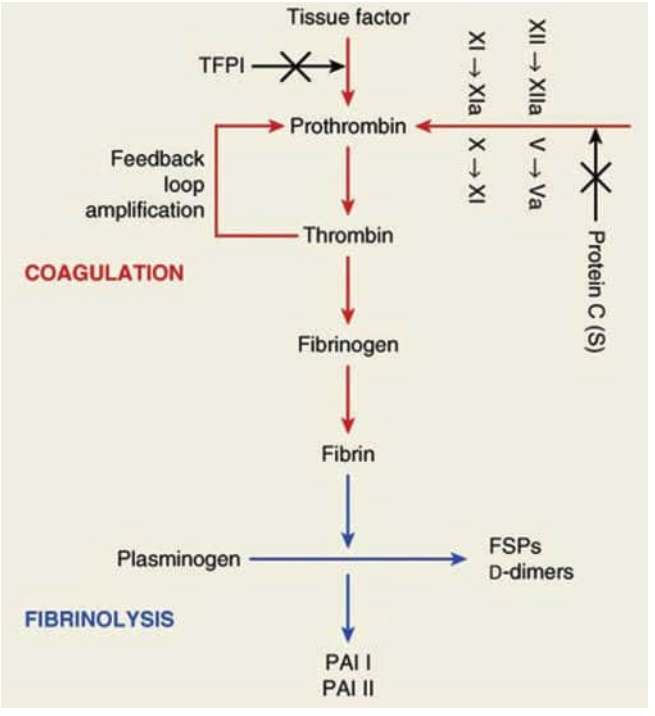


FIGURE 44-2 Coagulation pathway schematic. FSP = fibrin split products; PAI = plasminogen activator inhibitor; TFPI = tissue factor pathway inhibitor.

turn provoke cytokine release from the endothelium. With generalized endothelial activation, diffuse activation of coagulation follows. This pathological cycle of coagulation and fibrinolysis becomes clinically important when coagulation factors and platelets are sufficiently depleted to create consumptive coagulopathy.

Purpura fulminans is a severe—often lethal—form of consumptive coagulopathy. It is caused by microthrombi in small blood vessels leading to skin necrosis and sometimes vasculitis. Debridement of large areas of skin over the extremities and buttocks frequently requires treatment in a burn unit. Rarely, four-extremity amputation is required (Bhatti, 2019). Purpura fulminans usually complicates sepsis in women with heterozygous protein C deficiencies and low protein C serum levels (Bhatti, 2019; Levi, 2016). Importantly, homozygous protein C or S deficiency results in neonatal purpura fulminans, which is fatal (Chap. 55, p. 976).

Inciting Conditions

Several obstetrical syndromes can trigger consumptive coagulopathy. Of these, *placental abruption* is the most common cause of severe consumptive coagulopathy in obstetrics and is discussed more fully in Chapter 43 (p. 749). With *preeclampsia*, *eclampsia*, and *HELLP syndrome*, endothelial activation is a hallmark. Perhaps 10 percent of HELLP cases have some disseminated coagulation (Haram, 2017). In general, the clinical severity of preeclampsia is directly correlated with thrombocytopenia and fibrin degradation products (Gedik 2017; Kenny, 2015). That said, intravascular coagulation is seldom severe enough to be clinically worrisome (Pritchard, 1976). Acute fatty liver of pregnancy also causes intravascular coagulation in addition to decreased procoagulant synthesis (Chap. 58, p. 1034).

Amnionic fluid embolism is usually caused by intravenous embolization of meconium-laden amnionic fluid. It results in rapid cardiorespiratory collapse and profound consumptive coagulopathy. The Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2021) has developed a checklist for the initial management of amnionic fluid embolism. It is discussed in Chapter 42 (p. 745).

Sepsis stemming from various infections can be accompanied by endo-or exotoxin release. Although a feature of sepsis syndrome includes activation of coagulation, seldom does sepsis alone cause massive procoagulant consumption. *Escherichia coli* bacteremia is frequently seen with antepartum pyelonephritis and puerperal infections, however, accompanying consumptive coagulopathy is usually not severe. Some notable exceptions are septicemia caused by exotoxins released from group A *Streptococcus pyogenes*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, or *Clostridium perfringens*, *C sordellii*, or *C novyi* (Herrera, 2016; Pritchard, 1971). Treatment of sepsis and septic shock is discussed in Chapter 50 (p. 889). *Septic abortion*—especially associated with these organisms—can incite coagulation and worsen hemorrhage.

Second-trimester induced abortions can stimulate intravascular coagulation even in the absence of sepsis. Ben-Ami and associates (2012) described a 1.6-percent incidence in 1249 late-second-trimester pregnancies terminated by dilation and evacuation. Two thirds were done for fetal demise, which may have contributed to coagulopathy (Kerns, 2019). Another source of intense coagulation is instillation of hypertonic solutions to effect midtrimester abortions. These are not commonly used currently for pregnancy terminations. The mechanism is thought to initiate coagulation by thromboplastin release into maternal circulation from the placenta, fetus, and decidua by the necrobiotic effect of hypertonic solutions.

Prolonged retention of a dead fetus is an unusual cause of consumptive coagulopathy today. Namely, fetal death can be easily confirmed, and highly effective methods for labor induction are available. Moreover, if the dead fetus is undelivered, most women enter spontaneous labor within 2 weeks and gross disruption of maternal coagulation rarely develops before 4 weeks (Pritchard, 1959, 1973). After 1 month, however, almost a fourth will develop consumptive coagulopathy.

Diagnosis

Bioassay is an excellent method to detect or suspect clinically significant coagulopathy. Excessive bleeding at sites of modest trauma characterizes defective hemostasis. Examples include persistent bleeding from venipuncture sites, nicks from preoperative shaving, trauma from bladder catheterization, and spontaneous bleeding from the gums, nose, or gastrointestinal tract. Purpura or petechiae at pressure sites such as sphygmomanometer cuffs or tourniquets suggest significant thrombocytopenia. Any surgical procedure provides the ultimate bioassay and elicits generalized oozing from abdominal wall layers, the retroperitoneal space, the episiotomy, or incisions and dissections for cesarean delivery or hysterectomy.

Of laboratory tests, fibrinogen and D-dimer levels can be informative. In late pregnancy, plasma fibrinogen levels typically have risen to 300 to 600 mg/dL. Thus, even with severe consumptive coagulopathy, levels may sometimes be

sufficiently high to protect against clinically harmful hypofibrinogenemia. For example, defibrination caused by a placental abruption might lower an initial fibrinogen level of 600 mg/dL to 250 mg/dL. Although this would indicate massive fibrinogen consumption, levels are still adequate to promote clinical coagulation. The clinically impactful threshold usually approximates 150 mg/dL. The effects of serious hypofibrinogenemia—less than 50 mg/dL—can be illustrated with clinical *thrombin clot test*. With low fibrinogen levels, the clot formed from whole blood in a glass phlebotomy tube will initially be soft and cannot retract in volume. Instead, during the next half hour, *platelet-induced* clot retraction ensues, and this causes a tighter clot to form.

As depicted in Figure 44-2, fibrinolysis cleaves fibrin into various fibrin degradation products, and one of the smaller ones is the D-dimer. Several sensitive assays contain monoclonal antibodies specific for D-dimers (Johnson, 2019). Assay values are almost always abnormally high with clinically significant consumptive coagulopathy. At least in obstetrical disorders, quantification does not correlate with outcomes. Examples of the magnitude of fibrin split product elevations in various obstetrical coagulopathies are shown in Figure 44-3.

Thrombocytopenia is likely if petechiae are abundant or if clotted blood fails to retract within an hour or so. Confirmation is provided by a low platelet count. If severe preeclampsia syndrome is comorbid, qualitative platelet dysfunction may coexist (Chap. 40, p. 696).

Prothrombin time (PT) and *partial thromboplastin time (PTT)* are standard coagulation tests. Prolongation may stem from very low fibrinogen concentrations, from appreciably reduced levels of the procoagulants needed to generate thrombin, or from large amounts of circulating fibrinogen–fibrin degradation products.

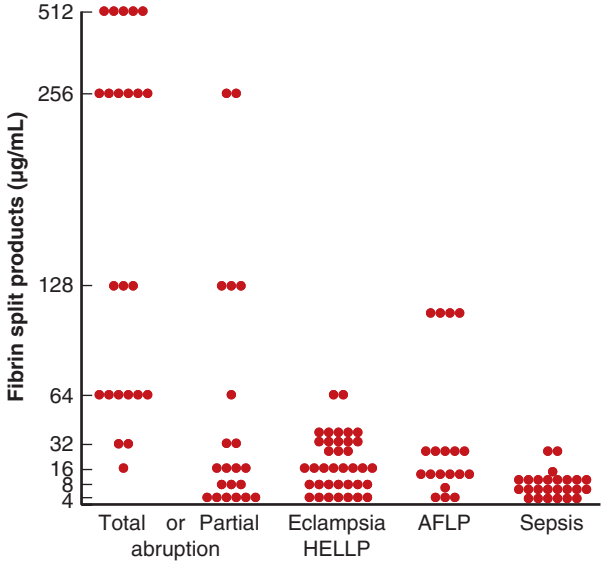


FIGURE 44-3 Quantification of fibrin split products in various obstetrical syndromes that cause disseminated intravascular coagulation. AFLP = acute fatty liver of pregnancy; HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count. (Reproduced with permission from Cunningham FG, Nelson DB: Disseminated intravascular coagulation syndromes in obstetrics. Obstet Gynecol. 2015 Nov;126(5):999–1011)

Thromboelastometry and *thromboelastography* are point-of-care tests used as adjuncts to conventional laboratory studies (McNamara, 2019; Pacheco, 2019). Their current role may serve to guide blood product replacements as discussed earlier (p. 774). Using many of these tests, several organizations have attempted to establish a more uniform definition of DIC. One is the International Society on Thrombosis and Haemostasis (ISTH) scoring system. The score is used only after a condition known to cause intravascular coagulation is identified and is calculated using a combination of laboratory tests. Composite ISTH-DIC scores <5 suggest nonovert DIC, whereas scores ≥5 are compatible with overt DIC. A scoring system for nonovert DIC has been developed by Alhousseini and coworkers (2020). These scoring systems have not been applied widely in obstetrics (Hizkiyahu, 2019; Jonard, 2016; Nelson, 2014).

General Management

To halt ongoing defibrination, identifying and removing the inciting source is a priority. With incisions or extensive lacerations accompanied by severe hemorrhage, rapid replacement of procoagulants is usually indicated. Vigorous restoration and maintenance of the circulation to treat hypovolemia cannot be overemphasized. Adequate perfusion restores hepatic and endothelial synthesis of procoagulants and permits prompt removal of activated coagulation factors, fibrin, and fibrin degradation products by the reticuloendothelial system.

Aside from these fundamental steps, few other agents have proved soundly effective. Although its use is seemingly counterintuitive, unfractionated heparin has now been abandoned. Other agents not recommended for first-line use include tranexamic acid or epsilon-aminocaproic acid, both antifibrinolytic agents (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a; Pacheco, 2017). This is because the fibrinolytic system is necessary for dissolution of widespread fibrin thromboses caused by generalized intravascular coagulation (Levi, 2016). Discussed earlier (p. 773), recombinant factor VIIa (rFVIIa) can be used to help control severe obstetrical hemorrhage from other causes. However, current clinical evidence is insufficient to make firm recommendations on its administration for obstetrical coagulopathies.

SURGICAL MANAGEMENT OF HEMORRHAGE

Several invasive procedures can help to arrest severe postpartum hemorrhage. A report from the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality concluded that most studies addressing these methods are of poor quality (Likis, 2015). In one study of 6660 women with postpartum hemorrhage, 4 percent underwent an invasive procedure, and 1 percent had a hysterectomy (Kayem, 2016). The failure rate of conservative surgical and embolization procedures was 15 percent.

Of specific methods, use of uterine balloon tamponade for treatment of atony has doubled in the past decade (Merriam, 2020; Suarez, 2020). It is described in Chapter 42 (p. 737).

For low-pressure bleeding, topical hemostatic agents can be used to control persistent surgical oozing. These were

reviewed by Stachowicz and colleagues (2020). Other than for cesarean hysterectomy, these are seldom used in obstetrical hemorrhage.

Uterine Compression Sutures

This surgical technique uses a no. 2 chromic suture to compress the anterior and posterior uterine walls together (B-Lynch, 1997). Because they give the appearance of suspenders, they are also called braces (Fig. 44-4). Several modifications of the B-Lynch technique have been described (Gilmandyar, 2019; Matsubara, 2013; Nelson, 2007).

B-Lynch sutures are mainly used to treat atony. These may help diminish DIC-associated bleeding, while coagulation is corrected by transfusion. Success rates vary by indication. For example, B-Lynch (2005) cited 948 cases with only 7 failures. Conversely, in other series, overall failure rates were 20 to 25 percent (Kaya, 2016; Kayem, 2011).

Some unique complications can rarely follow compression sutures (Matsubara, 2013). Most involve variations of

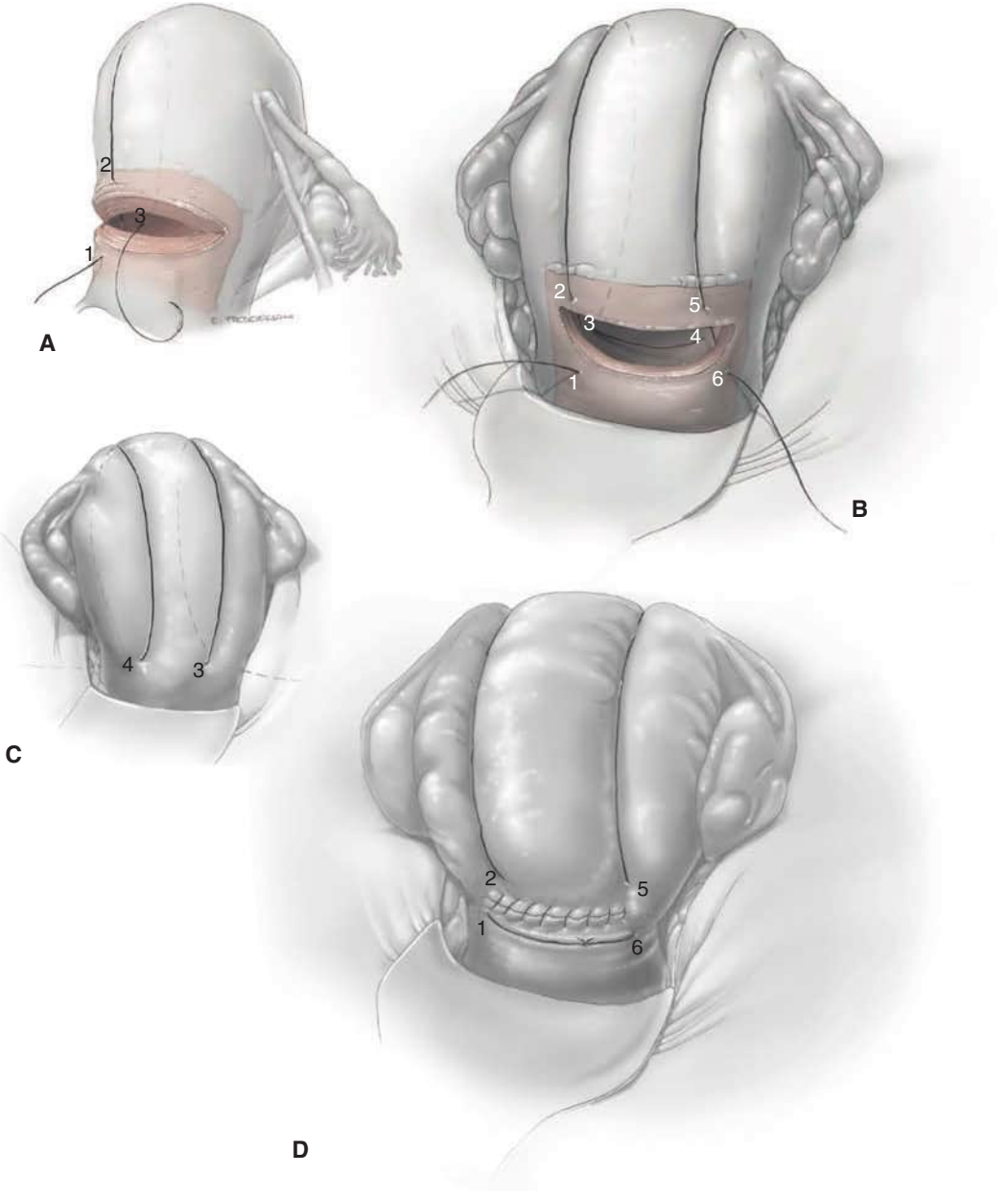


FIGURE 44-4 Uterine compression suture or "brace." The B-Lynch suture technique is illustrated from an anterior view of the uterus in Figures **A**, **B**, and **D** and a posterior view in Figure **C**. The numbers denote the sequential path of the suture and are shown in more than one figure. **Step 1.** Beginning below the incision, the needle pierces the lower uterine segment to enter the uterine cavity. **Step 2.** The needle exits the cavity above the incision. The suture then loops up and around the fundus to the posterior uterine surface. **Step 3.** The needle pierces the posterior uterine wall to reenter the uterine cavity. The suture then traverses to the opposite side within the cavity. **Step 4.** The needle exits the uterine cavity through the posterior uterine wall. From the back of the uterus, the suture loops up and around the fundus to the front of the uterus. **Step 5.** The needle pierces the myometrium above the incision to reenter the uterine cavity. **Step 6.** The needle exits below the incision, and the sutures at points 1 and 6 are tied below the incision. The hysterotomy incision is then closed in the usual fashion.

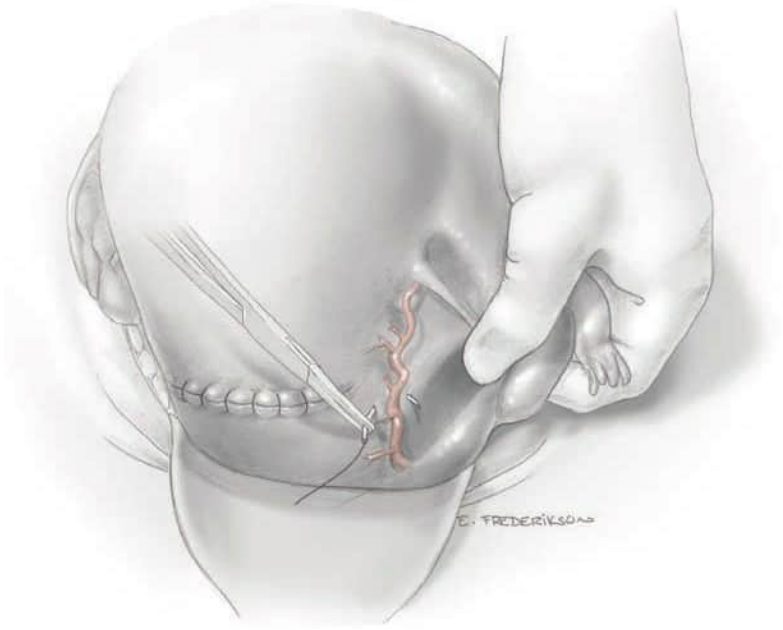


FIGURE 44-5 Uterine artery ligation. The suture goes through the lateral uterine wall anteriorly, curves posteriorly, and then re-enters anteriorly. When tied, it encompasses the uterine artery.

uterine ischemic necrosis with peritonitis (Gottlieb, 2008; Joshi, 2004; Treloar, 2006). In most cases, subsequent pregnancies are uneventful if compression sutures are used (An, 2013). A few women with B-Lynch sutures, however, developed uterine wall defects or uterine cavity synechiae (Akoury, 2008; Alouini, 2011; Ibrahim, 2013).

Artery Ligation

Ligation of arterial blood flow to the uterus can halt or diminish obstetrical hemorrhage. Common indications include uterine hysterotomy incision laceration, uterine atony, and abnormal placentation.

Uterine artery ligation may be unilateral or bilateral and is used mainly for lacerations at the lateral part of a hysterotomy incision (Fig. 44-5). In our experiences, this procedure is less helpful for other hemorrhage etiologies. In rare cases with torrential hemorrhage from placenta accreta syndrome, a tourniquet wrapped around the lower uterine segment may slow bleeding sufficiently while resuscitation ensues and dissection for hysterectomy is performed.

Internal iliac artery ligation may also be unilateral or bilateral. For years, ligation has been used to reduce pelvic hemorrhage. However, the procedure may be technically difficult and is successful in only half of cases (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a; Bienstock, 2021). Wei and colleagues (2019) reported it to be successful for improved hemostasis with placenta previa. It is not particularly helpful for abating hemorrhage with postpartum atony (Clark, 1985).

For internal iliac ligation, adequate exposure is obtained by opening the peritoneum over the common iliac artery and dissecting down to the bifurcation of the external and internal iliac arteries (Fig. 44-6). Branches distal to the external iliac arteries are palpated to verify pulsations at or below the inguinal area. Ligation of the internal iliac artery at a point 5 cm distal to the common iliac bifurcation will usually avoid the internal iliac artery's posterior division branches (Bleich, 2007). The areolar sheath of the artery is incised longitudinally, and a right-angle clamp is carefully passed just beneath the artery from lateral to medial. Care must be taken not to perforate contiguous large veins, especially the internal iliac vein. Suture—usually nonabsorbable—is passed under the artery with a clamp, and the vessel is then securely ligated.

The most important mechanism of action with internal iliac artery ligation is an 85-percent reduction in pulse pressure in those arteries distal to the ligation (Burchell, 1968). This converts an arterial pressure system into one with pressures approaching those in the venous circulation. This creates vessels more amenable to hemostasis via pressure and clot formation.

Even bilateral internal iliac artery ligation does not appear to interfere with subsequent reproduction. Nizard and colleagues (2003) reported subsequent pregnancy in 17 such women. From a total of 21 pregnancies, 13 were normal, 3 ended with miscarriage, 3 were terminated, and 2 were ectopic.

Angiographic Embolization

This modality is now used for many causes of intractable hemorrhage when surgical access is difficult. Its use has increased remarkably in the past decade (Merriam, 2020). In more than

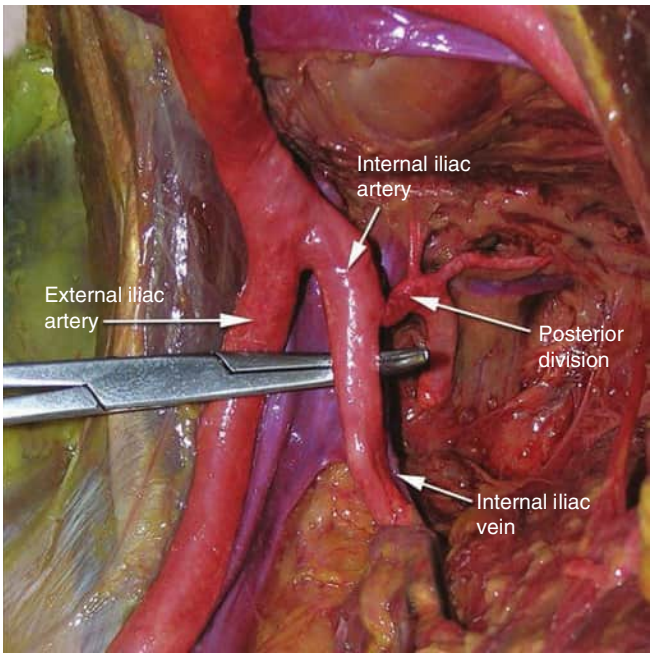


FIGURE 44-6 Ligation of the right internal iliac artery. Unembalmed cadaveric dissection shows the right-angle clamp passing underneath the anterior division of the internal iliac artery just distal to its posterior division. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Marlene Corton.)

500 pregnancy-related cases, embolization was effective in 90 percent (Grönvall, 2014; Lee, 2012; Poujade, 2011; Zhang, 2015). After his review, Rouse (2013) concluded that embolization can be used to arrest refractory postpartum hemorrhage. Other reports have been less enthusiastic. Fertility is not impaired, and many subsequent successful pregnancies have been reported (Fiori, 2009; Kolomeyevskaya, 2009). *An important caveat for these procedures is that women with hemodynamic instability related to active bleeding should not be removed from the operating room*.

Complications are relatively uncommon but can be severe. Case reports detail instances of iatrogenic iliac artery rupture, uterine ischemic necrosis, and uterine infection (Grönvall, 2014; Katakam, 2009; Nakash, 2012). A rare case of massive buttock necrosis and paraplegia followed bilateral internal iliac artery embolization (Al-Thunyun, 2012). A myometrial defect in subsequent pregnancy also has been reported (Choo, 2019).

In a few instances, massive blood loss and difficult surgical dissection is anticipated. The use of balloon-tipped catheters preoperatively inserted into the iliac or uterine arteries is described in management of placenta accreta spectrum (Chap. 43, p. 759).

Aortic Compression

Prophylactic use of an aortic balloon occlusion device has been reported to reduce blood loss and the need for hysterectomy (Chen, 2019). Also known as *resuscitative endovascular balloon occlusion of the aorta* (*REBOA*), such occlusion lowers the perfusion pressure distally, increases cardiac afterload, and redistributes blood volume to the heart and brain (Cannon, 2018). Prolonged occlusion can result in lower limb ischemia requiring amputation. Whittington and colleagues (2020) described its successful prophylactic use in 11 women with placenta accreta spectrum disorders.

Instead, manual compression of the aorta above the sacral promontory can be used in cases in which pelvic hemorrhage is torrential. If the abdomen is closed, pressure placed above the umbilicus reduces blood pressure distally (Barbieri, 2018).

Pelvic Packing

If hysterectomy fails to curtail hemorrhage, then pelvic packing with gauze and termination of the operation may be considered (Pacheo, 2018; Touhami, 2018). Rolls of gauze are packed to provide constant local pressure. In some cases, this may serve as a temporizing step prior to interventional embolization. In other cases, packing alone may be left for 48 to 72 hours. If the patient is stable and bleeding appears to have stopped, packing is removed. In one review of 104 cases, the success rate was 79 percent. Packing failed in 24 patients, and 13 of these women died, yielding an overall mortality rate of 13 percent (Touhami, 2018).

The *umbrella* or *parachute pack* uses a similar concept (Logothetopulos, 1926). Although seldom used today, it can be lifesaving if all other measures have failed, especially in low-resource areas (Dildy, 2006; Touhami, 2018). The pack is constructed of a sturdy sterile plastic bag that is filled with gauze rolls that are unwound and knotted together. Sufficient rolls are used to provide adequate volume in the bag to fill the pelvis. The pack is introduced transabdominally with the stalk exiting the vagina. Mild traction is applied by tying the stalk to a 1-liter fluid bag, which is hung over the foot of the bed. The umbrella pack is removed vaginally after 24 hours.

REFERENCES

Ahmadzia HK, Luban NL, Li S, et al: Optimal use of intravenous tranexamic acid for hemorrhage prevention in pregnant women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 225(1):85.e1, 2021

Akoury H, Sherman C: Uterine wall partial thickness necrosis following combined B-Lynch and Cho square sutures for the treatment of primary postpartum hemorrhage. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 30:421, 2008

Alexander JM, Sarode R, McIntire DD, et al: Use of whole blood in the management of hypovolemia due to obstetric hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 113:1320, 2009

Alhousseini A, Romero R, Benshalom-Tirosh N, et al: Nonovert disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) in pregnancy: a new scoring system for the identification of patients at risk for obstetrical hemorrhage requiring blood product transfusion. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med February 3, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]

Alouini S, Coly S, Megier P, Lemaire B, et al: Multiple square sutures for postpartum hemorrhage: results and hysteroscopic assessment. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(4):335, 2011

Al-Thunyan A, Al-Meshal O, Al-Hussainan H, et al: Buttock necrosis and paraplegia after bilateral internal iliac artery embolization for postpartum hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 120(2 Pt 2):468, 2012

American Association of Blood Banks: Circular of information for the use of human blood and blood components. 2017. Available at: https://www.aabb.org/docs/default-source/default-document-library/resources/circular-of-information-10-17.pdf. Accessed February 14, 2021

American Association of Blood Banks: Human parvovirus B19. 2013. Available at: https://www.aabb.org/tm/eid/Documents/Human—Parvovirus—B19.pdf. Accessed February 14, 2021

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Postpartum hemorrhage. Practice Bulletin No. 183, October 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Quantitative blood loss in obstetric hemorrhage. Committee Opinion No. 794, December 2019b

Amgalan A, Allen T, Othman M, et al: Systematic review of viscoelastic testing (TEG/ROTEM) in obstetrics and recommendations from the Women's SSC of the ISTH. J Thromb Haemost 18(8):1813, 2020

An GH, Ryu HM, Kim My, et al: Outcomes of subsequent pregnancies after uterine compression sutures for postpartum hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 122(3):565, 2013

Arnolds DE, Scavone BM: Thromboelastographic assessment of fibrinolytic activity in postpartum hemorrhage: a retrospective single-center observational study. Anesth Analg 131(5):1373, 2020

Backholder L, Green L, Huish S, et al: A paired comparison of thawed and liquid plasma. Transfusion 57:881, 2017

Barbieri RL: Postpartum hemorrhage: aortic compression to reduce pelvic bleeding. OBG Management 30(10):10, 2018

Ben-Ami I, Fuchs N, Schneider D, et al: Coagulopathy associated with dilation and evacuation for second-trimester abortion. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91(1):10, 2012

Bhatti UF, Williams AM, Raghavendran K, et al: Four-extremity amputation following disseminated intravascular coagulation and purpura fulminans. BMJ Case Rep 12(3):e228028, 2019

Bienstock JL, Ahizechukwu C, Eke C, et al: Postpartum hemorrhage. N Engl J Med 384:1635, 2021

Bleich AT, Rahn DD, Wieslander CK, et al: Posterior division of the internal iliac artery: anatomic variations and clinical applications. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197:658.e1, 2007

B-Lynch C: Partial ischemic necrosis of the uterus following a uterine brace compression suture. BJOG 112:126, 2005

B-Lynch CB, Coker A, Laval AH, et al: The B-Lynch surgical technique for control of massive postpartum hemorrhage: an alternative to hysterectomy? Five cases reported. BJOG 104:372, 1997

Boral LI, Hill SS, Apollon CJ, et al: The type and antibody screen, revisited. Am J Clin Pathol 71:578, 1979

Burchell RC: Physiology of internal iliac artery ligation. J Obstet Gynaecol Br Commonw 75:642, 1968

Cannon JW: Hemorrhagic shock. N Engl J Med 378(4):370, 2018

Carson JL, Triulzi DJ, Ness PM: Indications for and adverse effects of red-cell transfusion. N Engl J Med 377:13, 2017

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Zika and blood transfusions. 2018. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/zika/transmission/blood-transfusion.html. Accessed February 14, 2021

Chen L, Wang X, Wang H, et al: Clinical evaluation of prophylactic abdominal aortic balloon occlusion in patients with placenta accreta: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 19(1):30, 2019

Choo S, Wiseman D, MacMillan J, et al: Myometrial defect in a subsequent pregnancy after uterine artery embolization for postpartum hemorrhage, in the absence of leiomyomas or previous uterine surgery. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 42(2):173, 2019

Clark SL, Phelan JP, Yeh SY: Hypogastric artery ligation for obstetric hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 66:353, 1985

Creanga AA, Bateman BT, Kuklina EV, et al: Racial and ethnic disparities in severe maternal morbidity: a multistate analysis, 2008–2010. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210(5):435.e1, 2014

Creanga AA, Berg CJ, Syverson C, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2006–2010. Obstet Gynecol 125(1):5, 2015

Cunningham FG, Nelson DB: Disseminated intravascular coagulation syndromes in obstetrics. Obstet Gynecol 126(5):999, 2015

Dhariwal SK, Khan KS, Allard S, et al: Does current evidence support the use of intraoperative cell salvage in reducing the need for blood transfusion in caesarean section? Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 26(6):425, 2014

Dildy GA, Scott AR, Saffer CS: An effective pressure pack for severe pelvic hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 108(5):1222, 2006

Erez O, Novack L, Beer—Weisel R, et al: DIC score in pregnant women—a population based modification of the International Society on Thrombosis and Hemostasis score. PLoS One 9:e93240, 2014

Finfer S, Bellomo R, Boyce N, et al: A comparison of albumin and saline for fluid resuscitation in the intensive care unit. N Engl J Med 350:2247, 2004

Fiori O, Deux JF, Kambale JC, et al: Impact of pelvic arterial embolization for intractable postpartum hemorrhage on fertility. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200:384.e1, 2009

Foroutan-Rad M, Majidan H, Dalvand S, et al: Toxoplasmosis in blood donors: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Transfus Med Rev 30(3):116, 2016

Gayet-Ageron A, Prieto—Merino D, Ker K, et al: Effect of treatment delay on the effectiveness and safety of anti-fibrinolytics in acute severe haemorrhage: a meta-analysis of individual patient-level data from 40 to 138 bleeding patients. Lancet 391(10116):125, 2018

Gedik E, Yücel N, Sahin T, et al: Hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelet syndrome: outcomes for patients admitted to intensive care at a tertiary referral hospital. Hypertens Pregnancy 36(1):21, 2017

Gilmandyar D, Thornburg LL: Surgical management of postpartum hemorrhage. Semin Perinatol 43(1):27, 2019

Goodnough LT, Levy JH: The judicious use of recombinant factor VIIa. Semin Thromb Hemost 42(2):125, 2016

Gottlieb AG, Pandipati S, Davis KM, et al: Uterine necrosis. A complication of uterine compression sutures. Obstet Gynecol 112:429, 2008

Goucher H, Wong CA, Patel SK, et al: Cell salvage in obstetrics. Anesth Analg 121(2):465, 2015

Green L, Knight M, Seeney FM, et al: The epidemiology and outcomes of women with postpartum haemorrhage requiring massive transfusion with eight or more units of red cells: a national cross-sectional study. BJOG 123(13):2164, 2016

Grönvall M, Tikkanen M, Metsätähti M, et al: Pelvic arterial embolization in severe obstetric hemorrhage. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 93(7):716, 2014

Hale SA, Sobel B, Benvenuto A, et al: Coagulation and fibrinolytic system protein profiles in women with normal pregnancies and pregnancies complicated by hypertension. Pregnancy Hypertens 2(2):152, 2012

Haram K, Mortensen JH, Mastrolia SA, et al: Disseminated intravascular coagulation in the HELLP syndrome: how much do we-really know? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(7):779, 2017

Hardin MO, Ritchie JD, Aden JK, et al: Plasma-to-red cell ratio and mechanism of injury in massively transfused combat casualties. Mil Med 179(1):92, 2014

Hébert PC: Anemia and red cell transfusion in critical care. Transfusion Requirements in Critical Care Investigators and the Canadian Critical Care Trials Group. Minerva Anestesiol 65(6):293, 1999

Hernandez JS, Alexander JM, Sarode R, et al: Calculated blood loss in severe obstetric hemorrhage and its relation to body mass index. Am J Perinatol 29(7):557, 2012

Herrera C, Meehan R, Poddutori V, et al: Maternal deaths due to *Clostridium novyi* in an injection drug user. Obstet Gynecol 128:876, 2016

Hizkiyahu R, Rabinovich A, Thachil J, et al: Modified ISTH pregnancy-specific DIC score in parturients with liver rupture: population-based case series. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(15):2517, 2019

Holst LB, Haase N, Wetterslev J, et al: Lower versus higher hemoglobin threshold for transfusion in septic shock. N Engl J Med 371(15):1381, 2014

Hossain N, Paidas MJ: Disseminated intravascular coagulation. Semin Perinatol 37(4):257, 2013

Hui C, Lili M, Libin C, et al: Changes in coagulation and hemodynamics during pregnancy: a prospective longitudinal study of 58 cases. Arch Gynecol Obstet 285(5):1231, 2012

Ibrahim MI, Raafat TA, Ellaithy MI, et al: Risk of postpartum uterine synechiae following uterine compression suturing during postpartum haemorrhage. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynecol 53(1):37, 2013

Jackson BR, Busch MP, Stramer SL, et al: The cost-effectiveness of NAT for HTV, HCV, and HBV in whole-blood donations. Transfusion 43:721, 2003

Jackson D, DeLoughery TG: Postpartum hemorrhage: management of massive transfusion. Obstet Gynecol Surv 73(7):418, 2018

Johnson ED, Schell JC, Rodgers GM: The D-dimer assay. Am J Hematol 94:833, 2019

Jonard M, Ducloy-Bouthors AS, Fourrier F: Comparison of two diagnostic scores of disseminated intravascular coagulation in pregnant women admitted to the ICU. PLoS One 11(11):e016647, 2016

Joshi MM, Shrivastava M: Partial ischemic necrosis of the uterus following a uterine brace compression suture. BJOG 111:279, 2004

Katakam N, Vitthala S, Sasson S, et al: Complications and failure of uterine artery embolization for intractable postpartum haemorrhage. BJOG 116(6):863, 2009

Kaya B, Guralp O, Tuten A, et al: Which uterine sparing technique should be used for uterine atony during cesarean section? The Bakri balloon or the B-Lynch suture? Arch Gynecol Obstet 294(3):511, 2016

Kayem G, Dupont C, Bouvier-Colle MH, et al: Invasive therapies for primary postpartum haemorrhage: a population-based study in France. BJOG 123(4):598, 2016

Kayem G, Kurinczuk JJ, Alfirevic A, et al: Uterine compression sutures for the management of severe postpartum hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 117(1):14, 2011

Kenny L, McCrae K, Cunningham FG: Platelets, coagulation, and the liver. In Taylor R, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertension in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Kerns JL, Ti A, Aksel S, et al: Disseminated intravascular coagulation and hemorrhage after dilation and evacuation abortion for fetal death. Obstet Gynecol 134(4):708, 2019

Khan KS, Moore PAS, Wilson MJ, et al: Cell salvage and donor blood transfusion during cesarean section: A pragmatic, multicentre randomised controlled trial (SALVO). PLoS Med 14(12):e1002471, 2017

Kogutt BK, Vaught AJ: Postpartum hemorrhage: blood product management and massive transfusion. Semin Perinatol 43(1):44, 2019

Kolomeyevskaya NV, Tanyi JL, Coleman NM, et al: Balloon tamponade of hemorrhage after uterine curettage for gestational trophoblastic disease. Obstet Gynecol 113:557, 2009

Kuczyfiski J, Uszyfiski W, Zekanowska E, et al: Tissue factor (TF) and tissue factor pathway inhibitor (TFPI) in the placenta and myometrium. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 105:15, 2002

Leblanc JF, Germain M, Delage G, et al: Risk of transmission of severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 by transfusion: a literature review. Transfusion 60(12):3046, 2020

Lee HJ, Kim M, Lim B, et al: Transcatheter arterial embolization in the management of postpartum hemorrhage due to genital tract injury after vaginal delivery. J Vasc Interv Radiol 32(1):99, 2021

Lee HY, Shin JH, Kim J, et al: Primary postpartum hemorrhage: outcome of pelvic arterial embolization in 251 patients at a single institution. Radiology 264(3):903, 2012

Lerner NB, Refaai MA, Blumberg N: Red cell transfusion. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman M, Beutler K, et al (eds): Williams Hematology, 8th ed. New York, McGraw Hill, 2010, p 2287

Levi M, Levy JH, Andersen H F, et al: Safety of recombinant activated factor VI I in randomized clinical trials. N Engl J Med 363(19):1791, 2010

Levi M, Seligsohn U: Disseminated intravascular coagulation. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman M, Prchal JT, et al (eds): In Williams Hematology, 9th ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2016, p 2199

Lewis SR, Pritchard MW, Evans DJ, et al: Colloids versus crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill patients. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD000567, 2018

Likis FE, Sathe NA, Morgans AK, et al: Management of postpartum hemorrhage. Comparative Effectiveness Reviews, No. 151, Rockville, Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, 2015

Logothetopulos K: Eine absolut sichere blutstillungsmethode bei vagina len und abdominal en gynakologischen operationen. Zentralbl Gynakol 50:3202, 1926

Matsubara S, Yano H, Ohkuchi A, et al: Uterine compression suture for postpartum hemorrhage: an overview. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 92(4):378, 2013

McCullough J, Refaai MA, Cohn CS: Blood procurement and red cell transfusion. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman MA, Prchal JJ, et al (eds): Williams Hematology, 9th ed. McGraw Hill Education, 2016, p 2374

McNamara H, Kenyon C, Smith R, et al: Four years' experience of a ROTEM® guided algorithm for treatment of coagulopathy in obstetric haemorrhage. Anesthesia 74(8):984, 2019
Merriam AA, Huang Y, Wright JD, et al: Use of uterine tamponade and interventional radiology procedures during delivery hospitalizations. Obstet Gynecol 135(3):674, 2020
Motta IJ, Spencer BR, Cordeiro da Silva SGI et al: Evidence for transmission of Zika virus by platelet transfusion. N Engl J Med 375(11):1101, 2016
Murakami M, Kobayashi T, Kubo T, et al: Experience with recombinant activated factor VI I for severe postpartum hemorrhage in Japan, investigated by Perinatology Committee, Japan Society of Obstetrics and Gynecology. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 41(8):1161, 2015
Murphy M, Vassallo R: Preservation and clinical use of platelets. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman M, Beutler K, et al (eds): Williams Hematology, 8th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2010
Nakash A, Tuck S, Davies N: Uterine sepsis with uterine artery embolization in the management of obstetric bleeding. J Obstet Gynecol 32(1):26, 2012
Nelson DB, Lucke AM, McIntire DD, et al: Obstetric antecedents to body-cooling treatment of the newborn infant. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211:155.el, 2014
Nelson WL, O'Brien JM: The uterine sandwich for persistent uterine atony: combining the B-Lynch compression suture and an intrauterine Bakri balloon. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196(5):e9, 2007
Ng KT, Yap JL, Kwok PE: The effect of fibrinogen concentrate on postoperative blood loss: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. J Clin Anesth 63:109782, 2020
Nizard J, Barrinque L, Frydman R, et al: Fertility and pregnancy outcomes following hypogastric artery ligation for severe postpartum haemorrhage. Hum Reprod 18:844, 2003
Østerud B, Bjorklid E: Sources of tissue factor. Semin Thromb Hemost 32(1):11, 2006
Pacheco LD, Hankins GV, Saad AF, et al: Tranexamic acid for the management of obstetric hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 130:765, 2017
Pacheco LD, Lozada MJ, Saade GR, et al: Damage control surgery for obstetric hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 132(2):423, 2018
Pacheco LD, Saade GR, Costantine MM, et al: An update on the use of massive transfusion protocols in obstetrics. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(3):340, 2016
Pacheco LD, Saade GR, Costantine MM, et al: The role of massive transfusion protocols in obstetrics. Am J Perinatol 30(1):1, 2013
Pacheco LD, Saade GR, Hankins GD: Medical management of postpartum hemorrhage: an update. Semin Perinatol 43(1):22, 2019
Peters Al, Van Stein D, Vlaar AP: Antibody-mediated transfusion-related acute lung injury: from discovery to prevention. Br J Haematol 170(5):597, 2015
Poujade O, Grossetti A, Mougel L, et al: Risk of synechiae following uterine compression sutures in the management of major postpartum haemorrhage. BJOG 118(4):433, 2011
Pritchard JA: Fetal death in utero. Obstet Gynecol 14:573, 1959
Pritchard JA: Haematological problems associated with delivery, placental abruption, retained dead fetus, and amniotic fluid embolism. Clin Haematol 2:563, 1973
Pritchard JA, Cunningham FG, Mason RA: Coagulation changes in eclampsia: their frequency and pathogenesis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 124:855, 1976
Pritchard JA, Whalley PJ: Abortion complicated by *Clostridium perfringens* infection. Am J Obstet Gynecol 111:484, 1971
Rahouma M, Kamei M, Jodeh D, et al: Does a balanced transfusion ratio of plasma to packed red blood cells improve outcomes in both trauma and surgical patients? A meta-analysis of randomized controlled trails and observational studies. Am J Surg 216(2):342, 2018
Rattray DD, O'Connell CM, Baskett TF: Acute disseminated intravascular coagulation in obstetrics: a tertiary centre population review (1980 to 2009). J Obstet Gynaecol Can 34(4):341, 2012
Reese JA, Peck JD, Deschamps DR, et al: Platelet counts during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 379(1):32, 2018
Rouse DJ: Epidemiological investigation of a temporal increase in atonic postpartum haemorrhage: a population-based retrospective cohort study. Obstet Gynecol 122(3):693, 2013
Saraiya M, Green CA, Berg CJ, et al: Spontaneous abortion- related deaths among women in the United States—1981–1991. Obstet Gynecol 94:172, 1999
Sathe NA, Likis FE, Young JL, et al: Procedures and uterine- sparing surgeries for managing postpartum hemorrhage: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol Surv 71(2):99, 2016
Semler MW, Self WH, Wanderer JP, et al: Balanced crystalloids versus saline in critically ill adults. N Engl J Med 378(9):829, 2018
Semple JW, Rebetz J, Kapur R: Transfusion-associated circulatory overload and transfusion-related acute lung injury. Blood 133(17):1840, 2019
Sentilhes L, Senat MV, Le Lous M, et al: Tranexamic acid for the prevention of blood loss after cesarean delivery. N Engl J Med 384:1623, 2021
Sentilhes L, Winer N, Azria E, et al: Tranexamic acid for the prevention of blood loss after vaginal delivery. N Engl J Med 379(8):731, 2018
Shakur H, Beaumont D, Pavord S, et al: Anti fibrinolytic drugs for treating primary postpartum haemorrhage. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD012964, 2018
Shields LE, Smalarz K, Reffigee L, et al: Comprehensive maternal hemorrhage protocols improve patient safety and reduce utilization of blood products. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205:368.el, 2011
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Patient safety and quality committee, Combs CA, Montgomery DM, et al: Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine special statement: checklist for initial management of amniotic fluid embolism. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(4):B29, 2021
Solomon C, Collis RE, Collins PW: Haemostatic monitoring during postpartum haemorrhage and implications for management. Br J Anesth 109(6):851, 2012
Stachowicz AM, Whiteside JL: Topical hemostatic agents in gynecologic surgery for benign indications. Obstet Gynecol 135(2):463, 2020
Suarez S, Conde-Agudelo A, Borovac-Pinheiro A, et al: Uterine balloon tamponade for the treatment of postpartum hemorrhage: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(4):293.e1, 2020
Sullivan IJ, Ralph CJ: Obstetric intra-operative cell salvage: a review of an established cell salvage service with 1170 reinfused cases. Anaesthesia 74(8):976, 2019
Touhami O, Bouzid A, Ben Marzouk S, et al: Pelvic packing for intractable obstetric hemorrhage after emergency peripartum hysterectomy: a review. Obstet Gynecol Surv 73(2):110, 2018
Treloar EJ, Anderson RS, Andrews HG, et al: Uterine necrosis following B-Lynch suture for primary postpartum haemorrhage. BJOG 113:486, 2006
Uszyfiski M, Zekanowska E, Uszyfiski W, et al: Tissue factor (TF) and tissue factor pathway inhibitor (TFPI) in amniotic fluid and blood plasma: implications for the mechanism of amniotic fluid embolism. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 95:163, 2001
Wei Y, Luo J, Luo D: Comparison of efficacy between internal iliac artery and abdominal aorta balloon occlusions in pernicious placenta previa patients with placenta accreta. Gynecol Obstet Invest 84(4):343, 2019
Whittington JR, Pagen ME, Nevil BD, et al: Risk of vascular complications in prophylactic compared to emergent resuscitative endovascular balloon occlusion of the aorta (REBOA) in the management of placenta accreta spectrum. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med August 11, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
WOMAN Trial Collaborators Effect of early tranexamic acid administration on mortality, hysterectomy, and other morbidities in women with postpartum haemorrhage (WOMAN): an international, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 389(10084):2105, 2017
World Health Organization: WHO recommendation on tranexamic acid for the treatment of postpartum haemorrhage. Geneva, WHO, 2017
Yee LM, McGee P, Bailit JL, et al: Daytime compared with nighttime differences in management and outcomes of postpartum hemorrhage. Obstet Gynecol 133(1):155, 2019
Yule CS, Ambia A, Duryea E, et al: The effect of normal saline on renal function and electrolytes in women with preeclampsia. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med November 18, 2020
Zhang E, Liu L, Owen R: Pelvic artery embolization in the management of obstetrical hemorrhage: predictive factors for clinical outcomes. Cardiovasc Intervent Radiol 38(6):1477, 2015
Zuckerbraun BS, Peitzman AB, Billiar TR: Shock. In Brunicardi FC, Andersen DK, Billiar TR, et al (eds): Schwartz's Principles of Surgery, 9th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2010

CHAPTER 45

Preterm Birth

Preterm birth is a substantial global health issue with significant consequences to the newborn, family, and society. Preterm delivery affects nearly 15 million births worldwide, is the leading cause of death in children younger than 5 years, and remains a prominent issue in obstetrics (Chawanpaiboon, 2019). Although the burden of preterm birth is clear, defining the biology of human parturition and identifying strategies to reduce preterm birth rates remain elusive.

DEFINITION OF PRETERM BIRTH

Preterm birth is delivery before 37 completed weeks, that is, before $36^{6/7}$ weeks. Subdivisions vary among organizations. According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021b), births occurring between 34 and 36 completed weeks are considered *late preterm*. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recognizes this late preterm definition but also labels births before $33^{6/7}$ weeks as *early preterm* (Martin, 2021). Instead, the World Health Organization (2018) defines births before 28 completed weeks as *extremely preterm*, those from 28 to 32 weeks as *very preterm*, and from 32 to 37 weeks as *moderate to late preterm*.

These definitions lack a functional basis and should be distinguished from the concept of *prematurity*, which represents incomplete development of various organ systems at birth. For example, the lungs are particularly affected and may be susceptible to the respiratory distress syndrome (Chap. 34, p. 615). Similarly, neonates born before term can be small or large for gestational age but are still preterm by definition. *Low birthweight* refers to neonates weighing 1500 to 2500 g; *very low birthweight* describes those between 1000 and 1500 g; and *extremely low birthweight* refers to those <1000 g (World Health Organization, 2019).

PRETERM BIRTH RATE TRENDS

In the United States, the preterm birth rate rose from 10.02 percent in 2018 to 10.23 percent for 2019. When interpreting these data, important factors and trends merit discussion. First, during the past two decades, the percentage of preterm neonates fell from 2007 to 2014 but has since risen (Martin, 2021). Some argue that the rate drop reflected changes in obstetrical dating criteria rather than true declines (Frey, 2016). Specifically, beginning in 2014, the National Center for Health Statistics transitioned to a new standard for estimating newborn gestational age for birth certificate completion (Martin, 2015). The new measure, which is the *obstetrical estimate* of gestational age at delivery, replaced calculations based on the date of the *last menstrual period*. These measures differ and do not provide equivalent absolute numerical comparisons of preterm

birth rates. *Thus, current national data are now not directly comparable to previously reported preterm birth rates.*

Although the percentage of neonates born early preterm rose slightly, the rise in the overall preterm rate from 2018 to 2019 was due primarily to the increase in late-preterm births. Rates of these preterm births have gradually risen since 2013 (Martin, 2021). Notably, national data do not separate spontaneous preterm births from those that may be prompted for medical indication.

One disturbing aspect of preterm birth rate trends in the United States is persistent disparities. Rates of preterm birth among black women are markedly elevated above those for white and Hispanic women (Martin, 2021). Some investigators attribute this to differing socioeconomical circumstances (Collins, 2007; Leveno, 2009). The rates of preterm birth in the United States are also higher compared with those in other industrialized countries (Ananth, 2009; Delnord, 2017). Internationally, preterm birth rates also are rising (Chawanpaiboon, 2019).

Last, births in singleton pregnancies should be analyzed separately from *all* births. Namely, multifetal gestations have a shorter average gestational length and raise preterm birth rates (Martin, 2021).

PRETERM NEWBORN MORBIDITY AND MORTALITY

In 2018 in the United States, 21,498 infants died in their first year of life, and 66 percent of infant deaths were among those born preterm. Gestational age at delivery and the risk of neonatal morbidity and mortality are inversely related. Namely, neonates born in the early-preterm period make up the smallest proportion of births, but these infants experience disproportionately higher rates of prematurity-related complications, including death (Table 45-1) (Ely, 2020). For context, the infant mortality rate in those born at less than 28 weeks' gestation was *186 times higher* than in those born at 37 to 41 weeks in the United States in 2018.

TABLE 45-1. Infant Mortality Rates in the United States in 2018

	Live Births	Infant Deaths
Total infants	3,791,712	21,498
Gestational age (weeks)		
<34	104,031	12,004
34–36	275,746	2263
<37	379,777	14,267
37–38	1,005,405	3135
39–41	2,292,705	3843
≥42	11,318	61

The joint effect of gestational age and infant condition at birth also has been examined. Data from the Swedish Medical Birth Register correlated Apgar scores at 5 and 10 minutes in preterm neonates across gestational ages. The relative risk of death consistently increased with decreased Apgar scores (Cnattingius, 2020). Low Apgar scores in preterm newborns may reflect biological immaturity rather than fetal depression. However, Apgar scores and changes in the score between 5 and 10 minutes were associated with neonatal mortality among preterm newborns.

Preterm neonates who survive are at risk for a range of short- and long-term morbidities, largely due to organ system immaturity (Table 45-2) (Eichenwald, 2008). That said, remarkable strides have been made in neonatal survival for those born preterm. In a study of more than 18,000 newborns weighing between 400 and 1500 g or aged between 22 and

TABLE 45-2. Major Short- and Long-Term Problems in Very-Low-Birthweight Infants

Organ or System	Short-Term Problems	Long-Term Problems
Pulmonary	Respiratory distress syndrome, air leak, bronchopulmonary dysplasia, apnea of prematurity	Bronchopulmonary dysplasia, reactive airway disease, asthma
Gastrointestinal or nutritional	Hyperbilirubinemia, feeding intolerance, necrotizing enterocolitis, growth failure	Failure to thrive, short-bowel syndrome, cholestasis
Immunological	Hospital-acquired infection, immune deficiency, perinatal infection	Respiratory syncytial virus infection, bronchiolitis
Central nervous system	Intraventricular hemorrhage, periventricular leukomalacia, hydrocephalus	Cerebral palsy, hydrocephalus, cerebral atrophy, neurodevelopmental delay, hearing loss
Ophthalmological	Retinopathy of prematurity	Blindness, retinal detachment, myopia, strabismus
Cardiovascular	Hypotension, patent ductus arteriosus, pulmonary hypertension	Pulmonary hypertension, systemic hypertension, hypertension in adulthood
Renal	Water and electrolyte imbalance, acid-base disturbances	Hypertension in adulthood
Hematological	Iatrogenic anemia, need for frequent transfusions, anemia of prematurity	
Endocrinological	Hypoglycemia, transiently low thyroxine levels, cortisol deficiency	Impaired glucose regulation, increased insulin resistance

32 weeks' gestation, survival rates were analyzed as a function of both birthweight *and* gestational age (Fanaroff, 2007). After achieving a birthweight ≥1000 g, a gestational age ≥28 weeks for females, or age ≥30 weeks for males, survival rates reach 95 percent.

Threshold of Viability

Births once considered to be "abortuses" because the fetus weighed <500 g are now classified as live births. In the United States in 2019, 5189 live births weighed <500 g (Martin, 2021). Fortunately, perinatal and neonatal care has advanced tremendously for these births. As a result, the *threshold of viability,* which is the lower limit of fetal maturation compatible with extrauterine survival, has been reassessed. Currently, the threshold of viability lies between $20^{0/7}$ and $25^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation. Neonates born in this *periviable period* are vulnerable because of their immature organ systems. Complications include brain injury and sepsis, both described in Chapter 34, (p. 618). To guide obstetrical decision-making and care of these fetuses, a national perinatal workshop convened in 2013 (Raju, 2014). The executive summary statement from this meeting served as the foundation for an Obstetric Care Consensus document (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019d).

Periviable Neonatal Survival

Delivery before 23 weeks' gestation often results in death, and survival rates approximate 5 to 10 percent (Fig. 45-1). Among survivors, morbidity is significant. Practices regarding active resuscitation vary between institutions and may explain the differing perinatal outcomes among these. Neonatal survival rates also vary among international comparisons, and rates at 24 weeks' gestation range from 35 to 84 percent (Helenius, 2017).

A retrospective analysis of infants born at the University of Iowa from 2006 to 2015 at 22 to 25 weeks' gestation underscores this issue (Watkins, 2020). After excluding anomalous fetuses, death in the delivery room, and parental request for palliation, the neurodevelopmental outcomes were analyzed for 169 of 214 survivors at 18 to 22 months. Active management was defined as antenatal corticosteroids and resuscitation when desired by the parents. The survival rate was lower in neonates born at 22 to 23 weeks' than at 24 to 25 weeks' gestation. However, mild or no neurodevelopmental impairment was reported in 64 percent of the surviving 22- to 23-week infants.

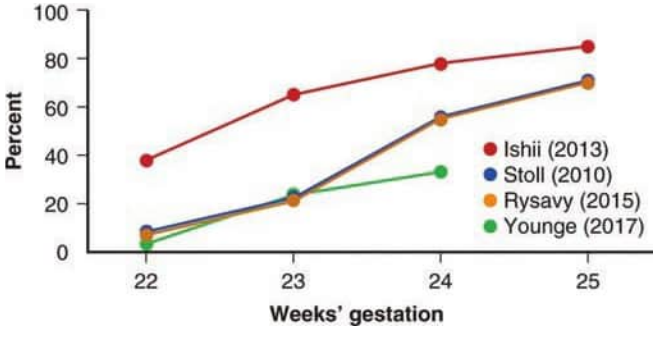


FIGURE 45-1 Neonatal survival rates according to condition at birth and gestational age. Ishii (2013) data curve reflects liveborn survival rates; Stoll (2010) curve reflects liveborn survival rates; Rysavy (2015) curve reflects overall survival rates; Younge (2017) curve reflects survival and neurodevelopmental outcomes.

An important caveat when examining perinatal outcomes, however, is ascertainment bias. For example, the mean survival rate is 45 percent if the denominator is all live births compared with 72 percent if the denominator is only newborns admitted to neonatal intensive care (Guillen, 2011). Another source of bias is use of multicenter datasets with considerable differences in obstetrical and early neonatal interventions (Stoll, 2010).

To evaluate contemporaneous outcomes of neonates born at 22 to 24 weeks, the National Institute of Child Health and Human Development (NICHD) Neonatal Research Network reported both survival and neurodevelopmental outcomes across consecutive birth-year epochs of 2000 to 2003, 2004 to 2007, and 2008 to 2011 in infants aged 18 to 22 months (Younge, 2017). The percentage of infants who survived rose significantly from 30 percent in 2000 to 2003 to 36 percent in 2008 to 2011. The percentage of infants who survived without neurodevelopmental impairment also significantly grew from 16 percent to 20 percent during the same time period. Although rates of survival without neurodevelopmental impairment increased over time for those born at 23 and 24 weeks, only 1 percent of infants born at 22 weeks survived without neurodevelopmental impairment (Younge, 2017).

Somewhat similar results were published from Sweden. This report details a national population-based study of all neonates born at 22 to 26 weeks. Rates of survival to 1 year from 2004 to 2007 were compared with rates from 2014 to 2016. Survival rates at 1 year among live-born neonates at 22 to 26 weeks' gestation significantly improved during the later period (Table 45-3) (Norman, 2019).

Clinical Management

The Periviable Birth Obstetric Care Consensus document also addresses management options based on the clinical characteristics of a given pregnancy. Nonmodifiable factors are fetal gender, weight, and plurality. Potentially modifiable antepartum and intrapartum factors include the location of delivery, intent to intervene by cesarean delivery, and administration of antenatal corticosteroids (Table 45-4). Postnatal management addresses the initiation or withdrawal of intensive care after birth.

Cesarean delivery at the threshold of viability is controversial. If the fetus-neonate is perceived to be too immature for aggressive support, cesarean delivery for common indications such as breech presentation or nonreassuring fetal heart rate patterns might be preempted. Moreover, observational studies have been inconsistent in demonstrating a benefit of cesarean delivery for the sole indication of periviability. Moreover, cesarean delivery may predispose the gravida to adverse intraoperative events and morbidity (Bertholdt, 2018; Blanc, 2019).

In a study of 2906 singletons between $24^{0/7}$ and $31^{6/7}$ weeks eligible for attempted vaginal birth, 84 percent of cephalic presenting fetuses were delivered vaginally (Reddy, 2012). Neonatal mortality rates did not differ compared with those associated with planned cesarean delivery. For *breech*

TABLE 45-3. One-Year Survival Among Infants Delivered at 22–26 Weeks' Gestational Age in Sweden

	22 Weeks' Gestation No./Total (%)		23 Weeks' Gestation No./Total (%)		24 Weeks' Gestation No./Total (%)	
	2004–2007	2014–2016	2004–2007	2014–2016	2004–2007	2014–2016
All Deliveries						
Stillbirths	91/140 (65)	52/148 (35)	82/183 (45)	59/207 (29)	47/191 (25)	68/260 (26)
Live born	49/140 (35)	96/148 (65)	101/183 (55)	148/207 (71)	144/191 (75)	192/260 (74)
1-yr Survival						
NICU admission	5/17 (29)	29/50 (58)	53/81 (65)	91/138 (66)	96/132 (73)	151/191 (79)
Live born[a]	5/49 (10)	29/96 (30)	53/101 (52)	91/148 (61)	96/144 (67)	151/192 (79)
All deliveries[b]	5/140 (3.6)	29/148 (20)	53/183 (29)	91/207 (44)	96/191 (50)	151/260 (58)
1-yr Survival; No Major Morbidity[c]						
NICU admission	1/5 (20)	5/29 (17)	9/53 (17)	25/91 (28)	30/96 (31)	60/151 (40)
Live born[d]	1/49 (2.0)	5/96 (5.2)	9/101 (8.9)	25/148 (17)	30/144 (21)	60/192 (31)

	25 Weeks' Gestation No./Total (%)		26 Weeks' Gestation No./Total (%)		22–26 Gestation (all infants) No./Total (%)	
	2004–2007	2014–2016	2004–2007	2014–2016	2004–2007	2014–2016
All Deliveries						
Stillbirths	45/250 (18)	58/277 (21)	39/245 (16)	36/304 (12)	304/1009 (30)	273/1196 (23)
Live born	205/250 (82)	219/277 (79)	206/245 (84)	268/304 (88)	705/1009 (70)	923/1196 (77)
1-yr Survival						
NICU admission	167/200 (84)	193/219 (88)	176/204 (86)	247/267 (93)	497/634 (78)	711/865 (82)
Live born[a]	167/205 (81)	193/219 (88)	176/206 (85)	247/268 (92)	497/705 (70)	711/923 (77)
All deliveries[b]	167/250 (67)	193/277 (70)	176/245 (72)	247/304 (81)	497/1009(49)	711/1196 (59)
1-y Survival; No Major Morbidity[c]						
NICU admission	75/167 (45)	104/193 (54)	111/176 (63)	161/247 (65)	226/497 (45)	355/711 (50)
Live born[d]	75/205 (37)	104/219 (47)	111/206 (54)	161/268 (60)	226/705 (32)	355/923 (38)

[a]Primary outcome.
[b]Includes stillbirths.
[c]Major neonatal morbidity defined as intraventricular hemorrhage grade 3 or 4; periventricular leukomalacia; necrotizing enterocolitis; retinopathy of prematurity stage 3, 4, or 5; or severe bronchopulmonary dysplasia.
[d]Secondary outcome.
NICU = neonatal intensive care unit.

TABLE 45-4. General Guidance for Threatened Periviable Birth

	Weeks' Gestation			
	<22	$22^{0/7}$– $22^{6/7}$	$23^{0/7}$– $23^{6/7}$	$24^{0/7}$ +
Assess neonate for resuscitation	Not recommended	Consider	Consider	Recommended
Corticosteroid therapy	Not recommended	Not recommended	Consider	Recommended
Tocolysis to allow CS therapy	Not recommended	Not recommended	Consider	Recommended
MS for neuroprotection	Not recommended	Not recommended	Consider	Recommended
Antibiotics for PPROM	Consider	Consider	Consider	Recommended
GBS prophylaxis	Not recommended	Not recommended	Consider	Recommended
CD for fetal indication	Not recommended	Not recommended	Consider	Consider[a]/recommended

[a]CD is considered for fetuses $24^{0/7}$– $24^{6/7}$ but recommend for those $25^{0/7}$ weeks and older.
CD = cesarean delivery; CS = corticosteroid; GBS = Group B streptococcus; MS = magnesium sulfate; PPROM = preterm prelabor rupture of membranes.

presentations, however, relative risk for mortality was threefold higher with attempted vaginal delivery. In another study, Werner and colleagues (2013) analyzed 20,231 newborns delivered at 24 to 34 weeks. Cesarean delivery did not protect against poor outcomes such as neonatal death, intraventricular hemorrhage, seizures, respiratory distress, and subdural hemorrhage.

From these findings, the Obstetric Care Consensus proposes that cesarean delivery be *considered* for fetal indications at $23^{0/7}$ to $24^{6/7}$ weeks. However, before 22 weeks, this route is reserved only for maternal indications. As emphasized by the authors of the Iowa report cited earlier, providing active management—such as antenatal corticosteroids—can be uncoupled from the decision of cesarean in the periviable period (Watkins, 2020). That said, the frequency of cesarean in the 23rd week has increased in the United States following publication of the perinatal workshop executive summary in 2014 (Rossi, 2019).

It is difficult to summarize the current practices of obstetrical care in the management of the periviable pregnancy given its continued rapid evolution. Moreover, it appears that maternal and neonatal interventions are shifting during the 22- to 23-week gestational age period. Data from the National Center for Health Statistics show that rates of at least one maternal or neonatal intervention were 38.9 percent and 78.3 percent for 22 and 23 weeks' gestation, respectively (Hajdu, 2020).

In this uncertain environment, individualized, patient-centered care with a multidisciplinary team remains essential. This is particularly relevant given that nearly 20 percent of women may have serious morbidity with delivery during the periviable period (Rossi, 2018).

For cases with threatened periviable delivery, neonatal and perinatal consultation aids informed decision-making and helps form expectations for the family. For fetuses with a life-limiting condition, such as extreme prematurity, *perinatal palliative care* is a strategy that emphasizes comfort (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). Care team members can include obstetric and neonatal professionals, chaplaincy, and mental health specialists.

Late-preterm Birth

As discussed, neonates born between 34 and 36 weeks' gestation account for more than 70 percent of all preterm births (Fig. 45-2) (Martin, 2021). Most of the increase in the total preterm birth rate for the United States 2018 to 2019 was among neonates born at 34 to 36 weeks. To estimate the risks associated with late-preterm births, investigators analyzed neonatal mortality and morbidity rates at 34, 35, and 36 weeks compared with those of births at term at Parkland Hospital (McIntire, 2008). Approximately 3 percent of all births during the study period were between 24 and 32 weeks, and 9 percent were during the late-preterm period. Thus, and similar to the national rates, late-preterm births accounted for three fourths of all preterm births. Approximately 80 percent of these resulted from idiopathic spontaneous preterm labor or prematurely ruptured membranes (Fig. 45-3). Other obstetrical complications were implicated in the remaining 20 percent of cases. Rates of morbidity and mortality were greater in these late-preterm newborns compared with rates in term ones (Table 45-5) (McIntire, 2008). Similarly, Tomashek (2007) reported higher neonatal mortality rates for late-preterm newborns. Rates of adverse neurodevelopment outcomes also are increased in these late-preterm infants (Petrini, 2009). Taken together, these findings suggest that a health-care focus on prematurity should include these late-preterm births.

CAUSES OF PRETERM BIRTH

Four direct causes for preterm births in the United States include (1) spontaneous unexplained preterm labor with intact membranes, (2) idiopathic preterm prelabor rupture of membranes, (3) delivery for maternal or fetal indications, and (4) twins and higher-order multifetal births. Of all preterm births, 30 to 35 percent are indicated, 40 to 45 percent are due to spontaneous preterm labor, and 30 to 35 percent follow preterm membrane rupture (Goldenberg, 2008). More than

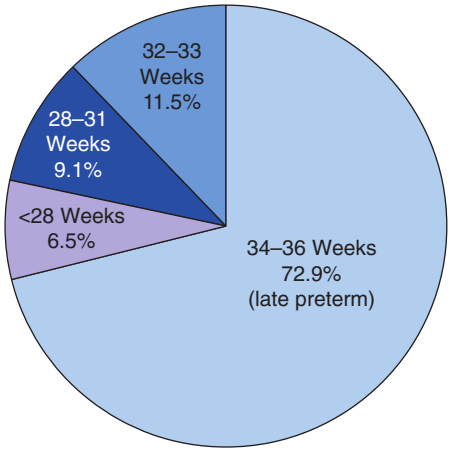


FIGURE 45-2 Distribution of preterm births by gestational age in the United States in 2019.

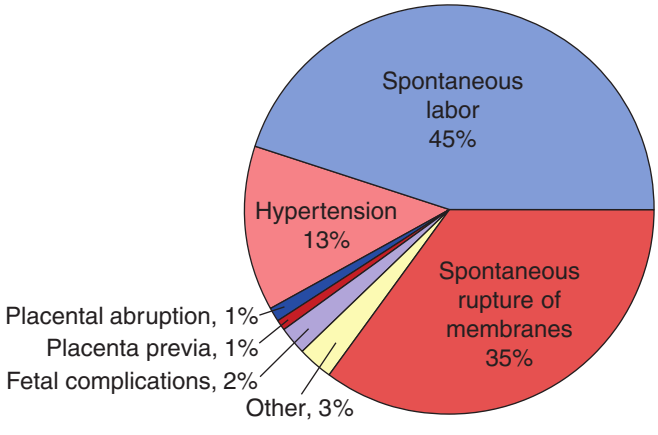


FIGURE 45-3 Obstetrical complications associated with 21,771 late-preterm births at Parkland Hospital.

TABLE 45-5. Neonatal Outcomes in Live Births Delivered Late Preterm Compared with Referent Group at 39 Weeks

	Weeks' Gestation			
	34	35	36	39
Neonatal death rate per 1000 live births (no.)				
	1.1	1.5	0.5	0.2
Morbidity (%)				
Resp. distress				
Ventilator	3.3[a]	1.7[a]	0.8[a]	0.3
TTN	2.4[a]	1.6[a]	1.1[a]	0.4
IVH				
Grades 1, 2	0.5[a]	0.2[a]	0.06[a]	0.01
Grades 3, 4	0	0.02	0.01	0.004
Sepsis				
Work-up	31[a]	22[a]	15[a]	12
Proven	0.5[a]	0.4[a]	0.2[b]	0.1
Phototherapy	6.1[a]	3.5[a]	2.0[a]	1
NEC	0.09[a]	0.02[b]	0.01	0.001
5-min Apgar ≤3	0.1	0.2[a]	0.9	0.06
Intubation	1.4[a]	0.8[b]	0.6	0.6
≥1 of above	34[a]	24[a]	17[a]	14

[a] $p < .001$ compared with the 39 weeks referent.
[b] $p < .05$ compared with the 39 weeks referent.
IVH = intraventricular hemorrhage; NEC = necrotizing enterocolitis; Resp. = respiratory; TTN = transient tachypnea

98 percent of triplets and 60 percent of twins are born preterm (Martin, 2021).

At term, a common parturition pathway is activated physiologically and leads to labor. For preterm labor, several disease processes are thought to activate one or more of the components of this common pathway (Romero, 2014). Put another way, preterm labor is not simply labor that starts too soon. This paradigm is supported by the rationale that causes of preterm birth have multiple, often interacting, antecedents and contributing factors that lead to a heterogenous syndrome (Deindl, 2020; Esplin, 2016). Analogous to other complex disease processes, multiple coexistent genetic alterations, bacterial and viral colonization, and diverse environmental factors may lead to preterm birth (Bayar, 2020; Mekonnen, 2021; Volozonoka, 2020). These multiple factors continue to pose challenges in identifying predictive biomarkers in blood, urine, or cervicovaginal fluid, despite significant technical advances in multiomic approaches (Ghaemi, 2021; Jehan, 2020; Peterson, 2020; Parry, 2020).

■ Spontaneous Preterm Labor

Pregnancies with spontaneous preterm labor yet intact fetal membranes must be distinguished from those complicated by ruptured membranes. Even so, spontaneous preterm labor does not constitute a homogeneous group. Evidence suggests it is a syndrome attributable to multiple pathological processes (Romero, 2014). Among the more common associated findings

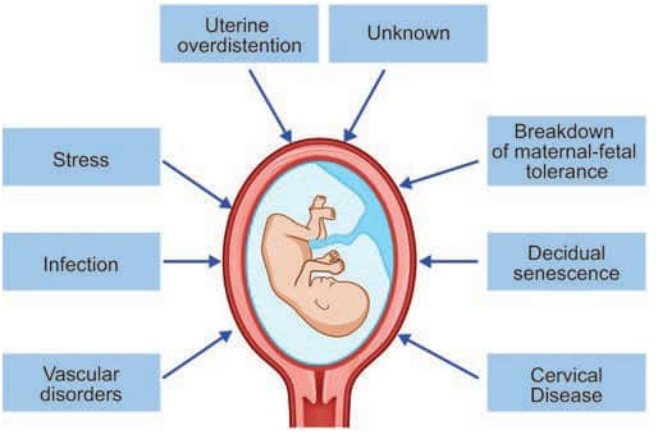


FIGURE 45-4 Proposed mechanisms of disease implicated in spontaneous preterm labor. Genetic and environmental factors are likely contributors to each mechanism.

are multifetal pregnancy, intrauterine infection, bleeding, placental infarction, premature cervical dilation, cervical insufficiency, hydramnios, uterine fundal abnormalities, and fetal anomalies. Severe maternal illness from infections, autoimmune diseases, and gestational hypertension also elevate preterm labor risks.

These processes culminate in a common end point of premature cervical dilation, effacement, and activation of uterine contractions. Importantly, the actual process of preterm labor should be considered a final step stemming from progressive or acute changes that could be initiated days or even weeks before labor onset. Diverse pathways to instigate parturition exist and are dependent on the etiology of preterm birth (Fig. 45-4) (Romero, 2014). Major causes include uterine overdistention, premature cervical changes, infection, and maternal–fetal stress. Genetic and environmental factors likely contribute to each mechanism.

Uterine Overdistention

Multifetal pregnancy and hydramnios are well-recognized risks for preterm birth. With these, *uterine overdistention* imparts greater stress on the myometrium. In nonhuman primates, inflation of intraamnionic balloons can stimulate uterine contractility, preterm labor, and an "inflammatory pulse." Similar inflammatory responses have been observed in the amnion of women with polyhydramnios and twins (Adams Waldorf, 2015).

Early uterine overdistention likely acts to initiate expression of contraction-associated proteins in the myometrium. These genes include those coding for gap-junction proteins, oxytocin receptors, and prostaglandin synthase (Korita, 2002; Lyall, 2002; Sooranna, 2004). Excessive uterine distention also leads to early activation of the placental–fetal endocrine cascade (Chap. 21, p. 407). Taken together, mechanical stress-induced distension and activation of endocrine cascades both lead to premature activation of inflammatory responses that result in uterine contractile activation (Gomez-Lopez, 2014; Stephen, 2015). A possible compensatory response to uterine distention is tissue remodeling and muscle growth (Adams Waldorf, 2015).

Cervical Dysfunction

In most cases, premature cervical remodeling precedes labor onset. In some instances, cervical dysfunction of the epithelia or its stromal extracellular matrix is the underlying cause (Nallasamy, 2017). Importantly, an intact cervical epithelial barrier is critical to prevent ascending infection. For example, loss of hyaluronan in cervical epithelia or colonization of group B streptococcus (GBS) enhances risk of preterm birth (Akgul, 2014; Coleman, 2021). GBS has the unique ability to synthesize the hyaluronan-degrading enzyme hyaluronidase to aid bacterial ascension (Vornhagen, 2017). Second, the mechanical competence of the cervix can be reduced. Genetic mutations in components of collagen and elastic fibers or proteins required for their assembly can be risk factors for cervical insufficiency and preterm birth (Nallasamy, 2017; Volozonoka, 2020).

Infection

Of all the mechanisms listed in Figure 45-4, only intraamnionic infection has been causally linked to spontaneous preterm delivery (Romero, 2014). Bacteria can gain access to intrauterine tissues through (1) transplacental transfer of maternal systemic infection, (2) flow of infection via the fallopian tubes, or (3) ascending infection with bacteria from the vagina and cervix. Because the lower pole of the fetal membrane–decidual junction is contiguous with the cervical canal orifice, this anatomical arrangement provides a passageway for microorganisms. Ascending infection is considered to be the most common entry route where microorganisms colonize the cervix, decidua, and possibly the membranes, and then may enter the amnionic sac.

Colonization with an infectious agent has been detected in 25 to 40 percent of all preterm deliveries (Goldenberg, 2008). In some instances, histological evidence of microbial inflammation is found in the fetal membranes, decidua, or umbilical cord. Other cases are deemed sterile intraamnionic inflammation. Despite the substantial association of infection with preterm birth, the cellular and molecular mechanisms underlying inflammation-driven preterm birth remain undefined (Cappelletti, 2020; Purisch, 2017).

Current data suggest that microbial invasion of the reproductive tract is sufficient to induce infection-mediated preterm birth. The level and kinetics of inflammation can vary between a polymicrobial or single-microbe exposure (Tong, 2021). Affected women are more likely to develop clinical chorioamnionitis and rupture of membranes compared with women whose cultures are sterile. Moreover, their neonates are also more likely to have perinatal complications such as neonatal sepsis (Villamor-Martinez, 2020). Although the clinical course is more severe when intraamnionic infection is obvious, inflammation in the absence of detectable intraamnionic microorganisms—termed *sterile intraamnionic inflammation*—is also a risk factor for an inflammatory response (Motomura, 2021). In sum, the earlier the onset of preterm labor, the greater the likelihood of underlying infection (Goldenberg, 2000; Goncalves, 2002).

Paradoxically, the incidence of culture-positive amnionic fluid collected by amniocentesis during spontaneous labor at term is similar to that with preterm labor (Gomez, 1994; Romero, 1993). It has been suggested that at term, amnionic fluid is infiltrated by bacteria as a consequence of labor, whereas in preterm pregnancies, bacteria represent an inciting cause. Thus, fetal infection, as defined by bacteria detected within amnionic fluid, has differing etiologies and consequences.

With chorioamnionitis, microbes may invade only maternal tissue and not amnionic fluid. Despite this, endotoxins can stimulate amnionic cells to secrete cytokines that enter amnionic fluid. This scenario may serve to explain the apparently contradictory observations concerning an association between amnionic fluid cytokines and preterm labor in cases in which microbes are not detected in the amnionic fluid.

Inflammatory Responses. These responses drive the pathogenesis of infection-induced preterm labor. Lipopolysaccharide (LPS) or other toxins elaborated by bacteria are recognized by receptors such as *toll-like receptors (TLRs)* (Janssens, 2003). These receptors are present on mononuclear phagocytes, decidual cells, cervical epithelia, and trophoblasts (Gonzalez, 2007; Holmlund, 2002). The expression of TLRs on maternal immune cells is necessary to recognize inflammatory stimuli in inflammation-mediated preterm birth (Cappelletti, 2020). Activation of TLRs induces a signaling cascade that activates production of chemokines such as interleukin 8 (IL-8) and cytokines such as IL-1β. Activation also recruits immune cells into the reproductive tract. Cytokines are produced by immune cells and by cells within the cervix, decidua, membranes, or fetus itself.

LPS-induced production of IL-1β in turn promotes a series of responses that include (1) increased synthesis of others, that is, IL-6, IL-8, and tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α); (2) proliferation, activation, and migration of leukocytes; (3) modifications in extracellular matrix proteins; and (4) mitogenic and cytotoxic effects such as fever and acute-phase response (El-Bastawissi, 2000). In many tissues, including myometrium, decidua, and amnion, IL-1β also promotes prostaglandin formation that induces cervical ripening and loss of myometrial quiescence (Challis, 2002; Keelan, 2003). The importance of prostaglandins to infection-mediated preterm birth is supported by the observation that prostaglandin inhibitors can reduce the rate of LPS-induced preterm birth in both the mouse and nonhuman primate (Gravett, 2007; Timmons, 2014). Inhibition of cyclooxygenase 2 prevents inflammation-mediated preterm labor in the mouse. For these reasons, clinical approaches described on page 806 are being explored.

Proteases such as matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) also are induced by inflammatory cytokines and function to break down extracellular matrix components such as collagen or elastic fibers. This disrupts the structural integrity of fetal membranes or the cervix. Current evidence from animal and human studies suggests that many aspects of infection-mediated preterm birth differ from pathways that regulate term parturition (Hamilton, 2012; Shynlova, 2013a,b; Willcockson, 2018).

Origin of Cytokines. Secretion of uterine cytokines is likely important for preterm labor. Cytokines produced in maternal decidua and myometrium have effects confined to that side, whereas cytokines produced in the membranes or in cells within the amnionic fluid will not be transferred to maternal tissues.

In general, resident and invading leukocytes produce the bulk of cytokines in cases of inflammation resulting from infection.

The presence of cytokines in amnionic fluid and their association with preterm labor is well documented. But, their exact cellular origin—with or without recoverable microorganisms—is not well defined. Amnionic fluid cytokines are most likely secreted by mononuclear phagocytes or neutrophils activated and recruited into the amnionic fluid (Tong, 2020). Thus, the amount of amnionic fluid IL-1β would be determined by the number of leukocytes recruited, their activational status, or the effect of amnionic fluid constituents on their IL-1β secretion rate.

Microbiota. Mucosal immunity and barrier function of the cervicovaginal epithelia, the vaginal microbiota composition, and their interplay among differing populations are major research topics (Elovitz, 2019; Fettweis, 2019; Serrano, 2019). To explore these, advanced genomic analysis techniques are used and show that the nonpregnant vagina hosts a complex microbial community (Gajer, 2012; White, 2011). And, the vaginal microbiome changes during normal pregnancy (Stout, 2017). Specifically, the diversity of microbe populations are reduced during pregnancy and become more stable.

Some but not all studies report an increased population of certain microbes—for example, *Gardnerella vaginalis* and *Ureaplasma urealyticum*—in women with preterm birth (Donders, 2009; Nelson, 2014). In contrast, Schuster and coworkers (2020) reported that asymptomatic vaginal *Candida* colonization was not associated with preterm birth. Differences in populations studied, preterm birth definitions, and data analysis complicate interpretation of these data. Currently, the strongest evidence for the role of the microbiome in preterm birth relates to the vaginal microbiota. The most consistent finding across almost all studies is the benefit of a vaginal microbiota characterized by *Lactobacillus crispatus* (Bayar, 2020).

Aagaard and colleagues (2014) suggested that the placenta contains a microbiome akin to the oral microbiome. Subsequent studies, however, have failed to confirm this (Lauder, 2016; Theis, 2019). Recently, de Goffau and associates (2019) found no evidence of bacteria in most of 537 placental samples from both complicated and uncomplicated pregnancies. Almost all samples pointed to acquisition of bacteria during labor and delivery or to contamination of laboratory reagents with the exception of *Streptococcus agalactiae*. *Thus, the human placenta does not appear to have a relevant microbiome* (Bayar, 2020).

■ Preterm Prelabor Rupture of Membranes

Previously referred to as preterm *premature* rupture of membranes, preterm *prelabor* rupture of membranes (PPROM) defines spontaneous membrane rupture before 37 completed weeks and before labor onset (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020g). Such rupture likely has various causes, but intrauterine infection, oxidative stress–induced DNA damage, and premature cellular senescence are major predisposing events (Dutta, 2016; Mercer, 2003). Associated risk factors are similar to those at term and include lower socioeconomical status, low body mass index, nutritional deficiencies, and cigarette smoking. Women with PPROM carry an enhanced risk for recurrence during a subsequent pregnancy (Bloom, 2001). Despite these known risk factors, none are identified in many cases.

Bacterial cultures of amnionic fluid support a role for infection in PPROM. One review of 18 studies and almost 1500 women with PPROM found that bacteria were isolated from amnionic fluid in a third of cases (Goncalves, 2002). Microbiome-mediated preterm birth and PPROM are current research areas (Bayar, 2020). One goal is to identify early risk markers for PPROM.

Molecular Changes

In pregnancies with PPROM, the amnion exhibits a higher degree of cell death and more apoptosis markers than in term amnion (Arechavaleta-Velasco, 2002; Fortunato, 2003). In vitro studies indicate that apoptosis is likely regulated by bacterial endotoxin, IL-1β, and TNF-α. In addition, oxidative stress initiated by events other than infection can induce DNA damage, premature senescence, and subsequent inflammation and proteolysis that leads to PPROM (Menon, 2020).

With membrane rupture, thrombin activity rises, which activates MMPs and prostaglandin synthesis. Studies by Mogami (2013) provide a mechanism by which bacterial endotoxin or TNF-α elicits release of fetal fibronectin (fFN) by amnion epithelial cells. The fFN then binds toll-like receptor 4 in the amnion mesenchymal cells to activate signaling cascades. These result in augmented prostaglandin E (PGE_2) synthesis and elevated activity of MMPs. Increasing prostaglandin levels promote cervical ripening and uterine contractions. Greater MMP concentrations allow collagen breakdown in the fetal membranes, resulting in premature rupture. Last, proteins involved in collagen synthesis or promoting its tensile strength are altered in membranes with premature rupture (Wang, 2006). Recently, Blois and associates (2020) introduced the concept of *galectins*, a family of glycan-binding proteins. They may serve as a mediator in fetal-maternal immune tolerance and work to prevent microbial infections that lead to preterm birth.

Both preterm labor and PPROM arise from distinct pathophysiological pathways but share inflammation as a common underlying mechanism. Excellent reviews are presented by Menon (2020) and Diemert (2020) and their coworkers.

■ Maternal-Fetal Stress

In this context, stress is defined as a condition that disturbs the normal physiological or psychological functioning of an individual. Since the 1940s, the association of maternal stress with birth outcomes has been explored. Results vary partly because of methodological difference in measuring stress (Hong, 2021). Quantitative measure is difficult, but considerable evidence shows that psychosocial stress in the form of racial discrimination—especially in black populations—results in poor health outcomes, including preterm birth (Salow, 2018). Psychological duress can include childhood stress, depression, or posttraumatic stress syndrome (Gillespie, 2017; Goldstein, 2017; Venkatesh, 2016). In one review of more than 50 studies, a significant link was found between low birthweight and preterm

birth in women impacted by intimate partner violence (Donovan, 2016).

One potential mechanism for stress-induced preterm birth is premature activation of the placental–adrenal endocrine axis. Another mechanism by which stress may translate to preterm birth is premature cellular senescence. As part of normal physiology, aging of fetal and decidual cells precipitates release of uterotonic signals for uterine activation at term. The interplay between preterm birth and maternal stress was recently reviewed by Hong and colleagues (2021).

CONTRIBUTING FACTORS

Several factors associated with preterm birth include pregnancy factors, lifestyle and behaviors, genetic and demographic features, and aspects of obstetrical history (Table 45-6). Disentangling association from causation remains a dilemma.

Prior Preterm Birth

The most important risk factor for preterm labor is a prior preterm birth. Data from nearly 16,000 women delivered at Parkland Hospital are instructive (Bloom, 2001). Namely, the recurrent preterm delivery risk for women with a preterm first delivery was threefold greater than that of women whose first neonate was born at term. More than a third of women whose first two newborns were preterm subsequently delivered a third preterm newborn. Most—70 percent—of the recurrent births occurred within 2 weeks of the gestational age of the prior preterm delivery. The causes of prior preterm delivery also recurred. Although women with prior preterm births are clearly at risk for recurrence, they represented only 10 percent of the total preterm births. Expressed another way, 90 percent of the preterm births at Parkland Hospital could not be predicted based on a history of preterm birth. Others have confirmed the importance of prior *spontaneous* preterm birth (Laughon, 2014). Moreover, prior *indicated* preterm birth was strongly associated with subsequent spontaneous preterm birth. Variable definitions of spontaneous and indicated may explain this association.

Ultimately, risk of recurrent preterm birth is influenced by three factors: the frequency of prior preterm deliveries, severity as measured by gestational age, and the order in which the prior preterm delivery occurred (McManemy, 2007). That is, an individual woman's risk for recurrent preterm birth is influenced by her past number and sequence of preterm and term births. For example, a risk of recurrent preterm birth for a gravida 3 para 2 woman with a prior preterm birth followed by a term birth is less than that for a woman with a prior term birth followed by preterm birth. Thus, the influence of reproductive history has a profound prognostic significance for risk of recurrence. This may also influence the supposed benefit attributed to interventions described later.

TABLE 45-6. Factors That May Contribute to the Genesis of Preterm Labor

Factor	Examples
Prior preterm birth	Spontaneous, indicated
Lifestyle	Smoking, poor diet, illicit drug use, stress, heavy physical activity
Genetic	Recurrent, familial, ethnoracial, immunoregulatory genes
Infection	*Mycoplasma* spp., bacterial vaginosis
Periodontal disease	Gingivitis
Interpregnancy interval	Long or short

Pregnancy Factors

Of these, *threatened abortion* in early pregnancy is associated with higher rates of later adverse outcomes. Weiss (2004) reported outcomes in nearly 14,000 women with vaginal bleeding at 6 to 13 weeks' gestation. Both light and heavy bleeding were associated with subsequent preterm labor, placental abruption, and pregnancy loss before 24 weeks. *Birth defects* in the fetus also may predispose to preterm birth. In a secondary analysis of data from the First- and Second-Trimester Evaluation of Risk (FASTER) trial, birth defects were associated with preterm birth and low-birthweight neonates (Dolan, 2007). Multifetal gestation is another well-recognized associate. Importantly, preterm delivery continues to be the major cause of the excessive perinatal morbidity and mortality for these pregnancies.

Lifestyle Factors

Extremes of maternal weight—both underweight and obese mothers—have an enhanced risk of preterm birth (Cnattingius, 2013; Girsen, 2016). Other maternal factors implicated include young or advanced maternal age, poverty, short stature, and vitamin C deficiency (Casanueva, 2005; Goldenberg, 2008; Leveno, 2009). Cigarette smoking, inadequate maternal weight gain, and illicit drug use affect the incidence and outcome of low-birthweight neonates (Chap. 47, p. 825).

Studies of work and physical activity related to preterm birth have yielded conflicting results (Goldenberg, 2008). Some evidence suggests that working long hours, fixed night shifts, and hard physical labor are probably linked to a higher risk of preterm birth (Cai, 2020). However, aerobic exercise in normal-weight women with uncomplicated singleton pregnancies appears to be safe and not associated with preterm birth (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020f; Di Mascio, 2016). One metaanalysis of physical activity found that leisure-time physical activity was associated with a reduced risk of preterm birth (Aune, 2017).

Because of the observational nature of many of the studies with the potential for confounding, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) has offered guidance for employment considerations during pregnancy. It is emphasized that accommodations that allow a woman to keep working are the most reliable way to guarantee pay, benefits, and job protection.

Genetic Factors

Evidence for a genetic component to preterm birth is supported by familial recurrent preterm births (Crider, 2005).

Genome-wide studies have identified genetic variants associated with gestational duration and preterm birth (Zhang, 2017). Common variants in *EBF1*, *EEFSEC*, and *AGTR2* genes have an association with preterm birth. Data sets, however, included only women with European ancestry, and thus future efforts will ideally include other populations. Recent large-scale transcriptome studies have identified additional loci associated with gestation length (Marinić, 2021; Sakabe, 2020).

Periodontal Disease

Gingivitis is a chronic anaerobic inflammation that affects as many as 50 percent of pregnant women in the United States (Goepfert, 2004). One metaanalysis of 17 studies showed that periodontal disease was significantly associated with preterm birth (Vergnes, 2007). To better study this relationship, 813 pregnant women between 13 and 17 weeks' gestation who had periodontal disease were randomly assigned to treatment during pregnancy or postpartum. Treatment during pregnancy improved periodontal disease, however, it failed to significantly alter preterm birth rates (Michalowicz, 2006). A workshop of the European Federation of Periodontology and the American Academy of Periodontology reaffirmed this position (Sanz, 2013).

Interpregnancy Interval

In one metaanalysis, intervals <18 months and >59 months were associated with greater risks for both preterm birth and small-for-gestational-age newborns (Conde-Agudelo, 2006). The causal effect of short interpregnancy intervals, however, has been questioned (Ball, 2014). A recent cohort study of more than three million births across four countries, including the United States, found that associations between interpregnancy intervals and preterm birth are modified by whether the previous pregnancy was preterm (Marinovich, 2021).

Infection

Antimicrobial Prophylaxis

As discussed on page 789, a link between some cases of preterm birth and infection seems irrefutable (Goldenberg, 2008). In several studies, antimicrobial treatment has been given to prevent preterm labor that was thought to stem from microbial invasion. Some of these strategies have targeted *Mycoplasma* species.

First, Andrews and associates (2006) reported results of a randomized trial in which they provided a course of azithromycin plus metronidazole every 4 months to 241 nonpregnant women whose last pregnancy resulted in spontaneous delivery before 34 weeks. Approximately 80 percent of the women with subsequent pregnancies had received study drug within 6 months of their subsequent conception. Such interconceptional antimicrobial treatment did not reduce the rate of recurrent preterm birth. From a subgroup analysis of this data, Tita and coworkers (2007) concluded that such use of antimicrobials may be harmful.

In another randomized study, 2661 women were given placebo or metronidazole plus erythromycin between 20 and 24 weeks' gestation followed by ampicillin plus metronidazole during labor (Goldenberg, 2006). This antimicrobial regimen did not reduce the rate of preterm birth or histological chorioamnionitis. As discussed later, antibiotic prophylaxis to prevent preterm birth is not currently recommended in women with preterm labor and intact membranes (Flenady, 2013).

Bacterial Vaginosis

In this condition, normal, hydrogen peroxide–producing, lactobacillus-predominant vaginal flora is replaced with anaerobes. For nearly 40 years, bacterial vaginosis has been recognized to be associated with spontaneous abortion, preterm labor, rupture of membranes, chorioamnionitis, and amnionic fluid infection (Gravett, 1986; Hillier, 1995). Unfortunately, screening and treatment have not prevented preterm birth (Haahr, 2016). Moreover, microbial resistance or antimicrobial-induced change in the vaginal flora results from regimens intended to eliminate bacterial vaginosis (Beigi, 2004; Carey, 2005).

COVID-19

Early reports suggested an increase in rates of preterm birth in pregnant women with COVID-19. However, population-level data show conflicting results on the changes, if any, in preterm birth rates (Berghella, 2020; Hedermann, 2021; Main, 2021). At Parkland Hospital, Adhikari and colleagues (2020) did not identify higher rates of preterm birth in 252 women with COVID-19 compared with 3122 gravidas who tested negative. However, women with severe infection are often delivered preterm for maternal indications (Pierce-Williams, 2020).

DIAGNOSIS

Symptoms

Contractions, pelvic pressure, menstrual-like cramps, watery vaginal discharge, and lower back pain are typical symptoms of preterm labor. These can also be seen with normal pregnancy and may be minimized by patients and providers. Early differentiation between true and false labor is difficult—especially before demonstrable cervical effacement and dilation. Uterine activity alone can be misleading because of *Braxton Hicks contractions* (Chap. 4, p. 52). Accordingly, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020e) defines preterm labor to be regular contractions accompanied by a change in cervical dilation, effacement, or both or to be regular contractions and cervical dilation of at least 2 cm at initial presentation.

Chao (2011) prospectively studied 843 women with a singleton fetus who presented to Parkland Hospital with preterm labor symptoms between $24^{0/7}$ and $33^{6/7}$ weeks, intact membranes, and cervical dilation <2 cm. Those whose cervix remained <2 cm were sent home with a diagnosis of false preterm labor. When analyzed against the general obstetrical population, women sent home had a similar rate of birth before 34 weeks—2 versus 1 percent. However, these women did have significantly higher rates of birth between 34 and 36 weeks—5 percent compared with 2 percent. Women with cervical dilation of 1 cm at discharge were significantly more likely to

deliver before 34 weeks compared with women without cervical dilation—5 percent versus 1 percent. Almost 90 percent of the 1-cm group delivered within 21 days of the initial presentation.

Cervical Change

Asymptomatic cervical dilation after midpregnancy is suspected to be a preterm delivery risk factor. Multiparity alone is not sufficient to explain cervical dilation discovered early in the third trimester. Cook (1996) longitudinally evaluated cervical status with transvaginal sonography between 18 and 30 weeks' gestation in nulliparas and multiparas who all subsequently gave birth at term. Cervical length and diameter were identical in both groups throughout these critical weeks. In a study from Parkland Hospital, routine digital cervical examinations were performed between 26 and 30 weeks in 185 asymptomatic women. Approximately 25 percent of women whose cervix was dilated 2 or 3 cm delivered before 34 weeks (Leveno, 1986a). Other investigators have verified cervical dilation as a predictor of increased preterm delivery risk (Copper, 1995).

Although women with dilation and effacement in the third trimester are at greater risk for preterm birth, detection does not necessarily improve pregnancy outcome. In one randomized study, 2719 women undergoing routine cervical examinations at each prenatal visit were compared with 2721 gravidas in whom serial examinations were not performed. Knowledge of antenatal cervical dilation did not affect any pregnancy outcome related to preterm birth or the frequency of interventions for preterm labor (Buekens, 1994). Thus, it seems that prenatal cervical examinations in asymptomatic women are neither beneficial nor harmful. Numerous cervical imaging technologies are under investigation for early, accurate prediction of cervical changes associated with preterm birth (Pizzella, 2020).

Ambulatory Uterine Monitoring

An external tocodynamometer belted around the abdomen and connected to an electronic waist recorder allows a woman to ambulate while uterine activity is recorded. Results are transmitted via telephone daily. Women are educated concerning signs and symptoms of preterm labor, and clinicians are kept apprised of their progress. The 1985 approval of this monitor by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) prompted its widespread clinical use. Subsequently, it was proven that this expensive and time-consuming system did not reduce preterm birth rates (Collaborative Home Uterine Monitoring Study Group, 1995; Iams, 2002). Despite technology improvements, use of such monitoring is discouraged (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021c).

Biomarkers

Because clinical symptoms alone are not predictive of preterm birth, surrogate biomarkers have been evaluated. These include fetal fibronectin (fFN), phosphorylated insulin-like growth factor–binding protein 1 (phIGFBP-1), and placental alpha microglobulin 1 (PAMG-1). Their performance varies between studies and is influenced by demographic and other factors (Melchor, 2018).

Fetal Fibronectin

This glycoprotein is produced in 20 different molecular forms by various cell types, including hepatocytes, fibroblasts, endothelial cells, and fetal amnion cells. Present in high concentrations in maternal blood and amnionic fluid, fFN is thought to function in intercellular adhesion during implantation and in maintenance of placental adherence to uterine decidua (Leeson, 1996). Detected in cervicovaginal secretions in women who have normal pregnancies with intact membranes at term, fFN appears to reflect stromal remodeling of the cervix before labor. Qualitative and quantitative fFN levels are measured using enzyme-linked immunosorbent assays, and values exceeding 50 ng/mL are considered positive. Sample contamination by amnionic fluid and maternal blood should be avoided. Interventional studies based on fFN screening results in asymptomatic women have not demonstrated improved perinatal outcomes (Andrews, 2003; Esplin, 2017). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021c) does not recommend screening with fFN tests. In one review of 16 trials involving management based upon fFN results, the low quality of existing evidence and need for cost-effectiveness analyses were noted (Berghella, 2019).

Cervical Length Measurement

Progressively shorter cervical canals assessed sonographically are associated with increased rates of preterm birth (Iams, 1996). The sonographic technique is described in Chapter 14 (p. 254). The Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2016b) has provided guidance for proper cervical length measurement and recommends that sonographers and practitioners obtain specific training through accreditation programs in the acquisition and interpretation of cervical length images.

Transvaginal cervical sonography is not affected by maternal obesity, cervix position, or shadowing from the fetal presenting part. Because of the inability to easily distinguish the lower uterine segment from the cervix in early gestation, transvaginal cervical length assessment is typically performed after 16 weeks' gestation. Such interrogation is currently limited to singleton gestations and not recommended for multifetal gestations outside of research trials (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021c).

Indications for cervical length measurement are controversial. For those women with a history of prior spontaneous preterm birth, the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2016b) recommends transvaginal cervical length screening. And, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021c) now also recommends screening for this indication. In women with singleton pregnancies but without a history of prior preterm birth, the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine and the College view cervical length screening as reasonable yet acknowledges that this remains an area of debate.

Biomarkers have been incorporated with hopes to improve screening performance. Esplin and colleagues (2017) prospectively studied 9410 nulliparas with singleton pregnancies. Universal screening of sonographically measured cervical length and quantitative measurement of vaginal fFN levels were evaluated as predictors of women who would spontaneously

deliver before 37 weeks. These measures had poor predictive performance as a screening test. Based on these findings, routine use of these screening tests in a low-risk population is not recommended. Of other markers, PAMG-1 has emerged as superior to predict potential preterm birth compared with fFN, particularly among symptomatic women (Nikolova, 2018; Pirjani, 2019; Wing, 2017). Incorporating results of cervicovaginal fluid proteomic markers and microRNAs obtained from peripheral blood also has been assessed (Parry, 2020; Winger, 2020). Although evidence seems promising, any firm recommendations should await larger clinical trials (Jones, 2020). This is particularly important given the challenges with accuracy and utility of screening, especially in low-risk women, who represent most of the population with preterm birth.

A second concern with screening is the efficacy of interventions to improve perinatal outcomes once cervical length screening, biomarkers, or both have isolated at-risk women. Cervical cerclage or vaginal progesterone have been evaluated, and their efficacy is described in the next section.

Bloom and Leveno (2017) subsequently critiqued the use of transvaginal cervical length screening in low-risk women and the promulgation of consensus guidelines. They highlighted the staggering costs encumbering the healthcare system in the United States as a result of such strategies. Similar concerns were raised by Kuusela and associates (2021) who evaluated cervical length screening among 11,456 asymptomatic gravidas.

PRETERM BIRTH PREVENTION

Prevention of preterm birth remains an elusive goal. Yet, experts continue to debate the optimal strategies to prevent or manage preterm birth (Medley, 2018). Dietary supplementations, for example, have not shown benefit (Makrides, 2019; Palacios, 2019). Still, recent reports suggest that prevention in selected populations may be achievable (Breslin, 2020; Goodfellow, 2021).

Cervical Cerclage

Cerclage placement may be used to prevent preterm birth in at least three circumstances. First, the procedure may benefit women who have a history of recurrent second-trimester loss and who are diagnosed with cervical insufficiency. A second instance is the woman identified during sonographic examination to have a short cervix. The third indication is a "rescue" cerclage, done emergently when cervical incompetence is recognized in women with threatened preterm labor. Cerclage placement in twin pregnancies for clinical indications is an evolving area (Li, 2019; Roman, 2020). In this chapter, however, cerclage placement will be in the context of a singleton pregnancy.

An accurate history is critical for management decisions. For recurrent abortion from cervical incompetence, historical clues are outlined in Chapter 11 (p. 205). For women with a short cervix incidentally detected by sonography, the benefit of cerclage placement appears directly related to whether the woman has a history of prior preterm birth. In those without a prior preterm birth, cerclage for a sonographically detected short cervix alone offers no advantage (Berghella, 2017). To and associates (2004) screened 47,123 women and randomly assigned the 253 women with a cervix measuring <15 mm, with or without a history of preterm birth, to cerclage or no cerclage groups. The frequency of preterm delivery before 33 weeks did not differ significantly between the two cohorts.

In contrast, women with a sonographically diagnosed short cervix *and* a history of preterm birth may benefit. Owen and colleagues (2009) randomly assigned 302 women with prior preterm birth plus a short cervix—defined as length <25 mm—to cerclage or no-procedure groups. The primary study outcome was not supported by the intervention. However, women with a cervical length <15 mm delivered before 35 weeks significantly less often following cerclage compared with women with no cerclage—30 versus 65 percent. This study suggested that recurrent preterm birth could be prevented in a subset of women with asymptomatic singleton gestations with both previous preterm birth and short cervical length.

These findings prompted a reassessment by Berghella and coworkers (2011), who performed a metaanalysis using individual patient data (Fig. 45-5). The primary outcomes from the included trials did not support cerclage placement. However, these investigators concluded that cerclage significantly prevented preterm birth and improved composite perinatal mortality and morbidity outcomes in women with prior spontaneous preterm birth, singleton gestation, and cervical length <25 mm.

One caveat in the interpretation of this cerclage data is the influence of obstetrical history. For example, all of the trials comprising the metaanalysis included preterm birth as early as 16 to 17 weeks' gestation. Defining these early second-trimester losses as preterm births, rather than cervical incompetence, is problematic. Thus, it is difficult to distinguish whether these women were treated in the context of cervical incompetence or of preterm labor at 16 weeks. Nonetheless, based on these findings, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021c) concluded that in women with a singleton pregnancy, prior spontaneous preterm birth, cervical length <25 mm, and gestational age <24 weeks, cerclage placement may be considered versus vaginal progesterone (p. 797).

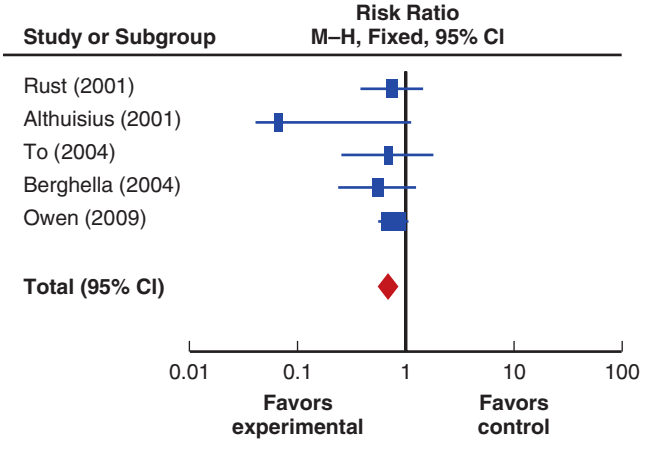


FIGURE 45-5 Cerclage versus no cerclage for prevention of recurrent preterm birth in women with a cervical length <25 mm. Forest plot analysis of composite perinatal mortality and morbidity. CI = confidence interval; M-H = Mantel-Haenszel.

Technique

The operative placement of cervical cerclage is shown in Chapter 11 (p. 206). Several emerging trends, however, merit comment. For example, indication for cerclage placement may influence selection of suture material (Battarbee, 2019). Tocolysis and antibiotics with cerclage placement is another controversy (Eleje, 2020). In a retrospective report of 142 cases, 72 received perioperative prophylaxis, which consisted of perioperative cefazolin and indomethacin, during physical examination–indicated cerclage placement. This practice was associated with a significant prolongation in gestational latency (Premkumar, 2020). At Parkland Hospital, we have not adopted such practices. Last, for women with a history of a failed cerclage, transabdominal cerclage appears to be superior to vaginal cerclage (Shennan, 2020).

Prophylaxis with Progestogen Compounds

In most mammals, *progesterone withdrawal* is considered to be a parturition-triggering event. During human parturition, however, maternal, fetal, and amnionic fluid progesterone levels remain elevated. It has been proposed that human parturition involves functional progesterone withdrawal mediated by decreased activity of progesterone receptors (Chap. 21, p. 406). It follows conceptually that progesterone administration may prevent preterm labor. This hypothesis has stimulated several studies of both 17-alpha hydroxyprogesterone caproate and vaginally administered progesterone in women with varying risks for preterm birth.

At present, reported benefits of either progestogen therapy are largely limited to women with singleton pregnancies. Progestogen prophylaxis specifically in multifetal gestations has not lowered preterm birth rates (Caritis, 2009; Dodd, 2019; Rehal, 2020; Rouse, 2007). Accordingly, both the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021c) and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020b) support the use of progestogen therapy for prevention of preterm birth in select women with singleton pregnancies despite the challenges chronicled (Nelson, 2021). Either a history of prior preterm birth or no prior preterm birth but a sonographically identified short cervix is a criterion.

Prior Preterm Birth and Progestogen Compounds

The synthetic progestogen 17-alpha-hydroxyprogesterone caproate (17-OHPC) is the focus of current controversy. It remains the first, and only, drug approved by the FDA for prevention of recurrent preterm birth. This therapy was originally approved in 2011 through an accelerated process for orphan drugs and based on the findings of Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units (MFMU) Network study, described next. However, this approval and justification for continued use is now disputed (Chang, 2020; Food and Drug Administration, 2019, 2020; Greene, 2020; Nelson, 2021).

Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units Network Trial

In the MFMU Network trial, 463 women with a prior preterm birth were randomly assigned to receive weekly intramuscular injections of inert oil placebo or 17-OHPC from 16 through 36 weeks' gestation (Meis, 2003). Recurrence of preterm birth rates were 36 percent in women receiving 17-OHPC and 55 percent in those given placebo. This study was challenged because of the unexpectedly high preterm delivery rate in the placebo arm (Romero, 2013). One explanation for this high rate was asymmetry in the risks of recurrence. Indeed, 41 percent of the placebo group had ≥2 prior preterm births compared with only 28 percent in the 17-OHPC group. Another concern was that the injection dosage of 17-OHPC, which was 250 mg weekly, was empirically chosen (Caritis, 2012, 2014). Because of these reported challenges, the FDA granted approval but called for a confirmatory randomized clinical trial before final FDA approval (Food and Drug Administration, 2019). The multicenter, international, randomized trial was launched in 2009 but required 9 years to complete (Blackwell, 2020).

Pricing Concerns

Following the accelerated approval, drug-overpricing claims prompted concern (Cohen, 2011; Romero, 2013). In 2011, the FDA gave temporary approval to KV Pharmaceutical to market 17-OHPC under the brand name *Makena*. Because regulations prohibited compounding, there was no competitor for this relatively inexpensive drug, and *Makena* was priced at $1500 per injection. This caused widespread concern because the cumulative cost of *Makena* would be more than $30,000 per pregnancy.

Parkland Hospital, given these pricing concerns, contracted a local compounding pharmacy to provide 250-mg, single-dose vials of 17-OHPC in sesame oil at a cost of $25 per dose. Nelson and colleagues (2017) reported their findings from this program in a prospective study of 430 women given this compounded 17-OHPC. It was ineffective for prevention of recurrent preterm birth at 35 weeks or less compared with a historical cohort from Parkland Hospital. Moreover, 17-OHPC did not significantly reduce the rates of recurrent preterm birth regardless of prior preterm birth number or sequence. Moreover, plasma concentrations of 17-OHPC were not different at 24 weeks or 32 weeks between women delivered at ≤35 weeks and those delivered later.

Metabolism

Despite its widespread use, the mechanism of action for 17-OHPC remains unknown. Sharma and associates (2008) reported that the metabolism of 17-OHPC was predominantly mediated by the CYP3A enzymatic system. Thus, other agents that induce or inhibit this system or hepatic impairment may alter drug levels. They also showed that 17-OHPC is not converted after administration to the progesterone metabolite 17α-hydroxyprogesterone. The relative binding affinity of 17-OHPC to progesterone receptors approximates only 30 percent of that by progesterone (Attardi, 2007).

Caritis and colleagues (2012) examined 61 women receiving 17-OHPC therapy and found that the half-life was relatively long (median 16.2 days). Pharmacokinetic parameters were affected by maternal body habitus and varied widely between subjects. In addition, 17-OHPC crossed the placental barrier and was detectible in cord plasma 44 days after the

last maternal injection (Caritis, 2012). Despite this, evidence to date suggests that 17-OHPC is safe for the fetus (Food and Drug Administration, 2019). No abnormalities, including abnormal genitalia, were found in a 48-month follow-up study of infants exposed in the 2003 MFMU Network trial (Northen, 2007). Simons and coworkers (2021) also reported no effect of progestogens on child development in a systematic review comprising numerous developmental measurements.

PROLONG Trial

The FDA-required confirmatory trial was the PROLONG trial and completed in October 2018. A total of 1708 women were randomly assigned in a 2:1 ratio to receive 17-OHPC or placebo. This trial had two primary endpoints, which were birth <35 weeks' gestation and a neonatal composite. Data were analyzed for 1651 of the liveborn neonates (Table 45-7) (Blackwell, 2020). Progesterone was not effective in preventing recurrent preterm birth. In the analysis of various secondary outcomes, 17-OHPC treatment also lacked efficacy.

TABLE 45-7. Perinatal Outcomes of PROLONG Trial

Outcomes	17-OHPC n = 1130	Placebo n = 578	Relative Risk
Number assessed	1,113	574	0.95
PTB <$35^{0/7}$ wk	122 (11.0)	66 (11.5)	
Spontaneous	93 (8.4)	51 (8.9)	0.93
Indicated	28 (2.5)	14 (2.4)	1.03
Number assessed	1,112	572	
PTB <$37^{0/7}$ wk	257 (23.1)	125 (21.9)	1.06
Spontaneous	209 (18.8)	98 (17.1)	1.10
Indicated	46 (4.1)	26 (4.5)	0.91
Number assessed	1,116	574	0.92
PTB <$32^{0/7}$ wk	54 (4.8)	30 (5.2)	
Spontaneous	38 (3.4)	22 (3.8)	0.88
Indicated	15 (1.3)	7 (1.2)	1.11
Composite M&M	61 (5.6)	28 (5.0)	1.12
Death	6 (0.5)	3 (0.5)	0.98
BPD	6 (0.5)	1 (0.2)	3.02
RDS	54 (4.9)	26 (4.7)	1.06
NEC	2 (0.2)	2 (0.4)	0.5
IVH, grade 3 or 4	2 (0.2)	1 (0.2)	0.99
Sepsis	5 (0.5)	3 (0.5)	0.84

17-OHPC = 17-hydroxyprogesterone caproate; BPD = bronchopulmonary dysplasia; IVH = intraventricular hemorrhage; M&M = mortality and morbidity; NEC = necrotizing enterocolitis; PTB = preterm birth; RDS = respiratory distress syndrome.

FDA Recommendations

In October 2019, the FDA convened an Advisory Committee meeting to review 17-OHPC and the new data. Efficacy, side effects, and several subgroup analyses were studied, and none supported 17-OHPC efficacy (Fig. 45-6). The FDA concluded that the PROLONG trial did not demonstrate a treatment benefit of 17-OHPC in reducing the neonatal composite index or the rate of spontaneous preterm birth prior to 35 weeks' gestation. The Advisory Committee recommended to withdraw approval. In November 2020, the Center for Drug Evaluation and Research proposed that *Makena* (17-OHPC) be withdrawn from the market (Food and Drug Administration, 2020).

Response to the FDA position has been mixed. Both the American College of Obstetricians (2019a, 2021a) and Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020b) have issued statements endorsing continued use of 17-OHPC for prevention of recurrent preterm birth in women with singleton pregnancies. Endorsements by these organizations continue after publication of a metaanalysis by the Evaluating Progestogens for Preventing Preterm birth International Collaborative (EPPPIC)

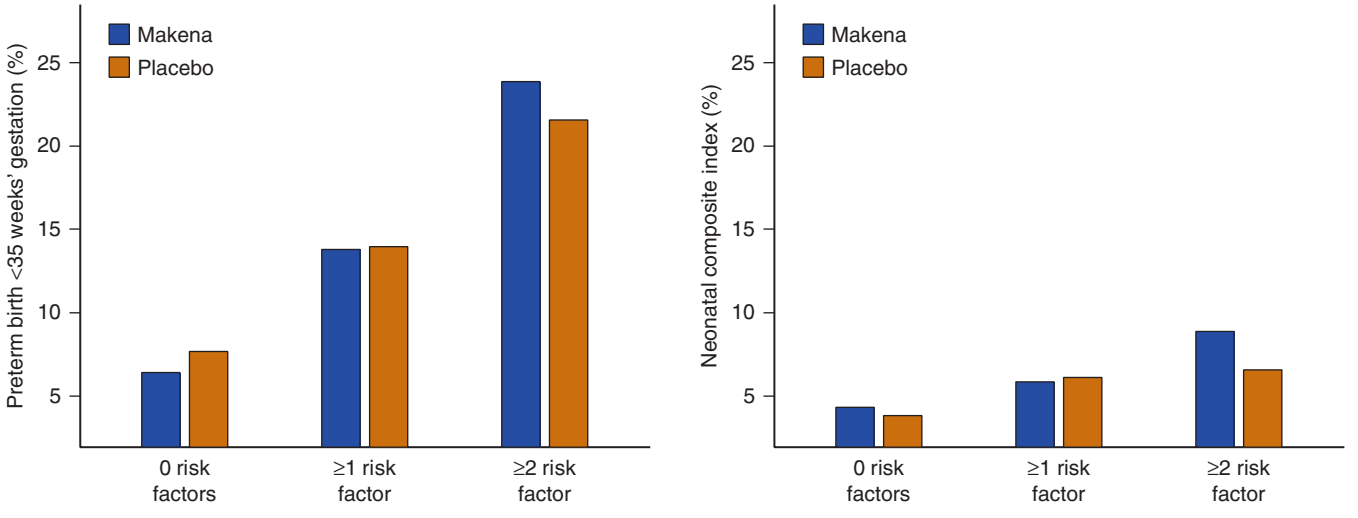


FIGURE 45-6 In analysis of co-primary endpoints for the PROLONG Trial, five of the included defining risk factors were noted to be different from those in the Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units Network trial (see text). These are black race, >1 prior spontaneous preterm birth, single or without a partner, substance use during pregnancy, and ≤12 years of formal education. The three groups examined in this post-hoc composite risk profile analysis were those with no risk factors, those with ≥1 risk factor, and those with ≥2 risk factors. Makena is the brand name of 17-OHPC.

Group (2021). These investigators summarized that vaginal progesterone and 17-OHPC both reduced birth rates before 34 weeks' gestation in high-risk singleton pregnancies. Notably, the findings for 17-OHPC did not reach statistical significance. Moreover, this metaanalysis grouped together trials of patients with differing risk profiles. It combined women with and without a prior preterm birth as well as women with and without a short cervix.

These positions have stimulated several dueling commentaries regarding its use (Chang, 2020; Godlewski, 2020; Greene, 2020; Sibai, 2020). At this time, the FDA has not withdrawn the accelerated approval. If formally withdrawn, however, a consequence may be continued "off-label" use, with the caveat that insurers may not provide payment coverage.

Progesterone Prophylaxis with Shortened Cervix

Three randomized trials are at the center of whether progestogen therapy should be used in women without prior preterm births but who have a shortened cervix (Table 45-8). In the first trial, 250 women with short cervices measuring ≤15 mm identified during routine prenatal care were nightly given 200-mg micronized progesterone vaginal capsules or placebo from 24 to 34 weeks' gestation (Fonseca, 2007). The rate of spontaneous delivery <34 weeks was significantly reduced by progesterone therapy. Importantly, this trial included nulliparas and also those with twins or prior preterm birth.

In the second trial, 465 women with a short cervix—10 to 20 mm—were given vaginal progesterone gel, 90 mg daily, or placebo (Hassan, 2011). Those receiving progesterone had significantly lower rates of preterm birth <33 weeks. This trial also included nulliparas and women with prior preterm births. According to Likis and colleagues (2012), the heterogeneity of these first two studies that included women with varied indications for progestogen treatment, combined with the fact that outcomes were not reported by risk factors such as nulliparity, made it impossible to interpret the efficacy of progesterone for specific indications.

The third study randomly assigned administration of 17-OHPC intramuscular injection or placebo between 16 and $22^{3/7}$ weeks' gestation to nulliparas with a singleton gestation and a cervical length <30 mm detected sonographically (Grobman, 2012). Treatment with 17-OHPC did not reduce the frequency of preterm birth <37 weeks. Regardless of cervical length, 17-OHPC was ineffective.

From these, vaginal progesterone, but not intramuscular 17-OHPC, appears to benefit women with a sonographically measured short cervix. Romero and Stanczyk (2013) provided a review to explain the conflicting evidence and argued that naturally occurring progesterone, which is used in the vaginal preparations, is not the same as synthetic 17-OHPC. Likewise, Furcron and coworkers (2015) found that 17-OHPC did not have local antiinflammatory effects at the maternal-fetal interface or cervix. Further, 17-OHPC did not protect against endotoxin-induced preterm birth.

From all these studies, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021c) concluded that universal cervical length screening in women without a prior preterm birth is not mandatory. However, this screening strategy could be considered in the context of treatment with vaginal progesterone.

Because of the preliminary results suggesting success of vaginally administered progesterone, the OPPTIMUM study was carried out—does progesterone prophylaxis to prevent preterm labor improve outcome? (Norman, 2016). High-risk women were defined as those with a prior spontaneous birth ≤34 weeks or with a cervical length ≤25 mm or a positive fFN test result combined with other clinical risk factors for preterm birth.

The primary outcomes of OPPTIMUM were unique in that both immediate obstetrical and childhood outcomes were examined. These were fetal death or birth <34 weeks; a composite of death, brain injury, or bronchopulmonary dysplasia; and a standardized cognitive score at age 2 years. Contrary to earlier reports, vaginal progesterone was not associated with a lower risk of preterm birth or composite neonatal adverse outcomes. In children at 2 years, vaginal progesterone had no long-term benefit or harm.

Progestogens Summary

Thus, evidence remains conflicting as to the efficacy of progestogens across various indications. Some have attempted to

TABLE 45-8. Randomized Trials of Progestogen Compounds Given Prophylactically to Prevent Preterm Labor

Investigator	Women Randomized	Cervical Length[a]	Progestogen Compound	Progestogen vs Placebo
Fonseca (2007)	n = 250; 5% nulliparous, 10% twins, 15% prior PTB; 8 hospitals: UK, Greece, Brazil, Chile	<15 mm	Progesterone, 200-mg vaginal capsules daily	Delivery <34 weeks: 19% vs 34%, $p = .02$
Hassan (2011)	n = 465; singletons only; 55% nulliparous; 13% prior PTB; 44 hospitals in 10 countries	10–20 mm	Progesterone, 90-mg vaginal gel daily	Delivery <33 weeks: 9% vs 16%, $p = .02$
Grobman (2012)	n = 657; singletons only; nulliparous only; 14 centers across US	<30 mm	17-OHPC, 250 mg IM weekly	Delivery <37 weeks: 25% vs 24%, p = NS

[a]Determined sonographically.
17-OHPC = 17-hydroxyprogesterone caproate; IM = intramuscularly; NS = nonsignificant; PTB = preterm birth; UK = United Kingdom; US = United States.

resolve these issues through systematic review and metaanalysis (Conde-Agudelo, 2018; da Fonseca, 2020; Jarde, 2019; Prior, 2017; Romero, 2018). However, virtually all evidence supporting progestogen use for a specific indication can be challenged in some way. At this time, we agree with Norman and colleagues (2016) that the results of recent studies should prompt a major review of progesterone use for preterm birth prophylaxis, a search to identify specific women who might benefit, and a redoubling of efforts to find alternative strategies to prevent preterm birth in women at risk.

Geography-based Public Health-care Programs

A well-organized prenatal system can lower preterm birth rates in high-risk indigent populations (Creasy, 1980). For example, in the Parkland Hospital prenatal clinic system, a declining preterm birth rate between 1988 and 2006 coincided with a substantial rise in prenatal visit attendance (Fig. 45-7) (Leveno, 2009). In the early 1990s, a concerted effort was made to improve access by creating seamless care that began with antenatal enrollment and extended through delivery and the puerperium. Prenatal clinics were placed strategically throughout Dallas County to provide convenient access for patients. Prenatal protocols are used by nurse practitioners at all clinic sites to guarantee homogeneous care. Women with high-risk pregnancy complications are referred to a hospital-based central clinic system. Here, maternal-fetal medicine clinics operate each weekday and are staffed by residents and midwives who are supervised by fellows and faculty.

A similar obstetrical care system for indigent women at the University of Alabama at Birmingham also has produced salutary results (Tita, 2011). Given the recent emphasis on access to care, especially among underserved minorities, these experiences remain relevant (United States Congress, 2019).

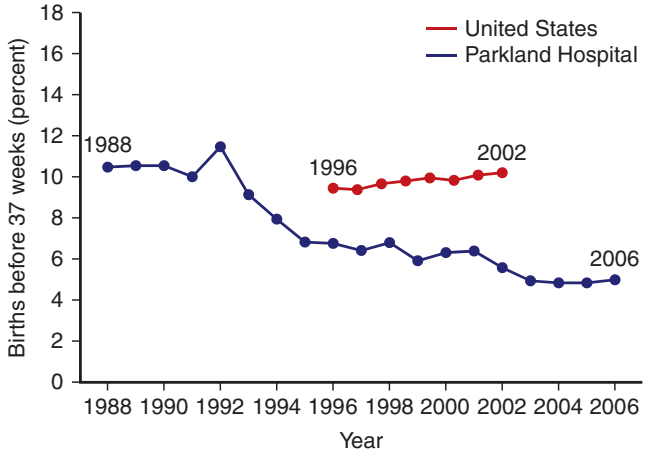


FIGURE 45-7 Percentage of births before 37 weeks' gestation at Parkland Hospital from 1988 to 2006 compared with that in the United States from 1996 to 2002. Analysis in both cohorts was limited to singleton liveborn infants ≥500 g who received prenatal care. (Reproduced with permission from Leveno KJ, McIntire DD, Bloom SL, et al: Decreased preterm births in an inner-city public hospital. Obstet Gynecol. 2009 Mar;113(3):578–584.)

Prenatal care is an important component of a comprehensive public health-care system that at least partially affects the preterm birth rate.

Aspirin

Acetylsalicylic acid (ASA) is a cyclooxygenase inhibitor with antiinflammatory and antiplatelet properties that has been used in pregnancy most commonly to prevent or delay onset of preeclampsia (Chap. 41, p. 705). Data now suggest that low-dose aspirin may also reduce spontaneous preterm birth rates (Andrikopoulou, 2018). In one randomized study of 11,976 nulliparas in six low- and middle-income countries, women were randomly assigned to receive low-dose aspirin (81 mg) or placebo initiated between $6^{0/7}$ and $13^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation (Hoffman, 2020). Low-dose aspirin decreased the incidence of birth <37 weeks and reduced the perinatal mortality rate. Although this trial did not differentiate spontaneous from indicated preterm birth, it requires replication in high-resource settings. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020c) does not recommend low-dose aspirin prophylaxis to prevent spontaneous preterm birth in the absence of preeclampsia risk factors.

MANAGEMENT OF PRETERM PRELABOR RUPTURE OF MEMBRANES

Methods used to diagnose ruptured membranes are detailed in Chapter 22 (p. 426). A history of vaginal leakage of fluid, either as a continuous stream or a gush, should prompt a speculum examination to visualize gross vaginal pooling of amnionic fluid, clear fluid from the cervical canal, or both. Confirmation of rupture of membranes is usually accompanied by sonographic examination to assess amnionic fluid volume, to identify the presenting part, and if not previously determined, to estimate gestational age. Once PPROM is identified, the general scheme shown in Table 45-9 can guide management.

Natural History

The time from PPROM to delivery is inversely related to the gestational age at which rupture occurs. Very few days are gained if membranes rupture during the third trimester compared with midpregnancy (Fig. 45-8) (Carroll, 1995).

In an earlier study from Parkland Hospital, 298 consecutive women with spontaneously ruptured membranes between 24 and 34 weeks' gestation were analyzed (Cox, 1988). PPROM constituted 1.7 percent of pregnancies during the study period. At the time they presented, 76 percent of the women were already in labor, and 5 percent were delivered for other complications. Thus, only 19 percent initially were suitable for expectant management. Ultimately, delivery was delayed 48 hours or more after membrane rupture in only 7 percent of the total study cohort. None of the neonates in this group died. This contrasted with a neonatal death rate of 8 percent in preterm newborns delivered within 48 hours of membrane rupture. Others have reported similar results (Nelson, 1994).

TABLE 45-9. Management of Prelabor Rupture of Membranes

$37^{0/7}$ weeks' gestation or older
- Deliver
- GBS prophylaxis as indicated (Table 67-3, p. 1195)
- Treat any intraamnionic infection

$34^{0/7}$–$36^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation
- Expectant management or deliver
- Neonatal consultation
- Consider single course of corticosteroids:
  - No prior corticosteroids
  - No chorioamnionitis
  - ≥24 hr anticipated from administration to delivery
  - <7 d anticipated from administration to delivery
- For delivery, GBS prophylaxis as indicated; For expectant care, GBS screening
- Treat any intraamnionic infection and deliver

$24^{0/7}$–$33^{6/7}$ weeks
- Expectant management, if no maternofetal indications favoring delivery
- Neonatal and perinatal consultations
- Single course of corticosteroids; rescue course suitable but not supported by robust data
- GBS screening on admission; for delivery, GBS prophylaxis as indicated
- Antibiotics recommended to prolong latency
- For pregnancies $<32^{0/7}$ weeks, magnesium sulfate for neuroprotection before anticipated delivery
- Treat any intraamnionic infection and deliver

Periviable: See Table 45-4

GBS = group B streptococcus.
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists 2019b; 2020g,h.

Hospitalization

Most clinicians hospitalize women with PPROM. Concerns regarding the costs of lengthy hospitalizations are usually moot, because most women enter labor within a week or less after membrane rupture. Carlan and coworkers (1993) randomly assigned 67 women with PPROM at <37 weeks' gestation to home or hospital management. The mean gestational age was 31 weeks. No benefits were found for hospitalization, and maternal hospital stays were reduced by 50 percent in those sent home—14 versus 7 days. Importantly, the investigators emphasized that this study was too small to conclude that home management was safe in regard to umbilical cord prolapse.

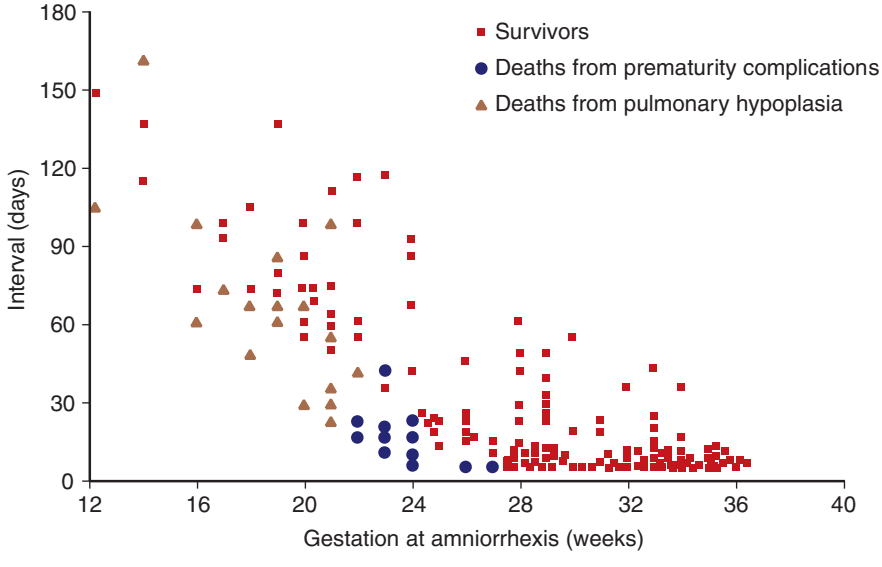


FIGURE 45-8 Relationship of time between preterm membrane rupture and delivery in 172 singleton pregnancies. (Reproduced with permission from Carroll SG, Blott M, Nicolaides KH: Preterm prelabor amniorrhexis: Outcome of live births. Obstet Gynecol 1995 Jul;86(1):18–25.)

If hospitalization is chosen, no consensus guides the optimal frequency of inpatient assessment. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020g) notes that an acceptable strategy would include periodic sonograms for fetal growth, fetal heart rate monitoring, and clinical surveillance for maternal infection—particularly fever. During the periviable period and at gestation ages before interventions would be planned, a short period of initial observation and consideration of outpatient monitoring in select cases is reasonable. Hospitalization would then be practiced at the time of viability.

Intentional Delivery

Before the mid-1970s, labor was usually induced in women with PPROM because of sepsis fears. Maternal infection risk and fetal prematurity risk vary according to the gestational age at membrane rupture, and management decisions incorporate this data. With periviable pregnancy, Morales (1993b) expectantly managed 94 singleton pregnancies with PPROM before 25 weeks. The average time gained was 11 days. Although 41 percent of infants survived to age 1 year, only 27 percent of the original cohort were neurologically normal. Similar results were reported by Farooqi (1998) and Winn (2000) and their colleagues. Management of these early pregnancies is discussed on page 785.

For PPROM in general, two randomized trials in the 1990s compared labor induction with expectant management (Cox, 1995; Mercer, 1993). In both of these studies, the balance of risk and benefit was difficult to ascertain, as neither immediate delivery nor expectant management was superior for neonatal outcomes. Lieman and associates (2005) found that neonatal outcomes did not improve with expectant management beyond 33 weeks. McElrath and coworkers (2003) found that prolonged latency after membrane rupture was not associated with a greater incidence of fetal neurological damage. An important correlate is that infection—specifically chorioamnionitis—is a recognized risk factor for neonatal neurological injury (Gaudet, 2001; Wu, 2000).

Bond and colleagues (2017) compared planned early birth with expectant management for women with PPROM before 37 weeks' gestation. They evaluated 12 randomized trials totaling 3617 women and 3628 newborns. No clinically important differences in the incidence of neonatal sepsis between women who immediately delivered and those managed expectantly were identified. Although the incidence of chorioamnionitis was lower, neonates of women randomized to early birth were more likely to be born at an earlier gestational age and encountered attendant perinatal sequelae. The authors concluded that in women with rupture of membranes before 37 weeks' gestation without contraindications to continuing the pregnancy, a policy of expectant management with careful monitoring was associated with better outcomes for both the mother and newborn. A subsequent metaanalysis of late-preterm prelabor rupture of membranes by Quist-Nelson and coworkers (2018) noted that immediate delivery and expectant management resulted in comparable rates of the composite of adverse neonatal outcomes.

Because of conflicting data and the controversies of immediate delivery compared with expectant management, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020g) cannot make firm recommendations. Clearly, gestational age is an important consideration. At $24^{0/7}$ to $33^{6/7}$ weeks, expectant management in the absence of nonreassuring fetal status, clinical chorioamnionitis, or placental abruption is recommended. At $34^{0/7}$ to $36^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation, delivery was once recommended, however, it is now considered reasonable to offer either expectant management or immediate delivery following consideration of risks and benefits, counseling, and shared decision-making. Expectant management should not go beyond $37^{0/7}$ weeks' gestation. Based upon limitations of access to care and resources, our current practices at Parkland Hospital continue to favor immediate delivery after 34 weeks' gestation.

Expectant Management

Several considerations arise during expectant management of PPROM (Boettcher, 2020; Shaddeau, 2020). One is digital cervical examination. Alexander and colleagues (2000) analyzed findings in women with membrane rupture expectantly managed between 24 and 32 weeks' gestation. They compared those who had one or two digital cervical examinations with women who were not examined. Those who were examined had a rupture-to-delivery interval of 3 days compared with 5 days in those not examined. This difference did not worsen maternal or neonatal outcomes. At Parkland Hospital, digital cervical examination is used judiciously in PPROM cases.

Rupture of membranes following second-trimester amniocentesis is uncommon (Chap. 17, p. 345). Compared with women with spontaneous rupture during the second trimester, Borgida and associates (2000) found that pregnancies complicated by PPROM after genetic amniocentesis resulted in significantly better perinatal outcomes. The perinatal survival rate was 91 percent. After counseling, affected women are typically managed expectantly as outpatients with serial surveillance of amnionic fluid volume and self-assessment of temperature (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020g). In the series cited above, the mean time to documentation of a normal amnionic fluid volume after amniocentesis approximated 2 weeks.

Tocolysis given with PPROM has been reported in few studies. In women with ruptured membranes and lack of labor, prophylactic tocolysis does not improve neonatal outcomes but is associated with greater chorioamnionitis rates (Mackeen, 2014). Similarly, therapeutic tocolysis—for those with ruptured membranes and labor—has not provided significant perinatal benefit (Garite, 1987).

Management of PPROM in the woman who has undergone cervical cerclage is complex (American College of Obstetricians, 2020g). McElrath and associates (2002) studied 114 women with a cerclage in place who later had ruptured membranes before 34 weeks. They were compared with 288 controls. Pregnancy outcomes were equivalent in both groups. Cerclage retention for more than 24 hours after PPROM may be associated with pregnancy prolongation, however, intrauterine infection and its consequences are risks (Giraldo-Isaza, 2011; Laskin, 2012). At Parkland Hospital, cerclage retention in the absence of infection or labor is currently practiced with close clinical surveillance in those with PPROM.

With PPROM in pregnancies before 26 weeks, the volume of amnionic fluid remaining after rupture appears to have prognostic importance (Carroll, 1995; Hadi, 1994). Although varied by report, current rates of pulmonary hypoplasia with PPROM before 24 weeks among surviving neonates can be as high as 30 percent (Kiver, 2018). This suggests that 23 weeks reflects a threshold for lung hypoplasia development (Chap. 7, p. 131). Further, when contemplating early expectant management, oligohydramnios and resultant limb compression deformities are influencing considerations.

For neonates born to women who have active herpetic lesions and who are expectantly managed, the infectious morbidity risk appears to be outweighed by risks associated with preterm birth (Chap. 68, p. 1216) (Major, 2003). Lewis and associates (2007) found that expectant management of women

with PPROM and noncephalic presentation was associated with a higher rate of umbilical cord prolapse, especially before 26 weeks.

Tissue sealants are often used to gain surgical hemostasis. Limited reports describe their use for repair of fetal membranes (Chap. 11, p. 203). Crowley and coworkers (2016) concluded that available data are currently insufficient to assess the value of sealing procedures for PPROM. We do not use these agents for this indication.

Clinical Chorioamnionitis

Infection is a major concern with membrane rupture. Although some cases remain subclinical, if chorioamnionitis is diagnosed, prompt efforts to effect delivery, preferably vaginally, are initiated. Because maternal leukocytosis alone is not a consistent finding, *fever is the only reliable indicator for the diagnosis of chorioamnionitis*. Institutional practices and protocols vary in defining the temperature threshold. Traditionally, a temperature ≥38°C (100.4°F) accompanying ruptured membranes has implied infection. At Parkland Hospital, we still adhere to this criterion.

In 2015, a workshop sponsored by the NICHD was convened and suggested renaming this condition *intraamnionic infection and inflammation—triple I* (Higgins, 2016). The merits of this terminology have been questioned (Barth, 2016). Nonetheless, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) revised both the definitions and temperature thresholds for intraamnionic infection. Using these new definitions, the diagnosis of suspected intraamnionic infection is made when the maternal temperature is ≥39.0°C or when the maternal temperature is 38.0 to 38.9°C and one additional clinical risk factor is present. The latter include low parity, multiple digital examinations, internal uterine and fetal monitors, meconium-stained amnionic fluid, and the presence of certain genital tract pathogens, such as group B streptococcus (GBS) and sexually transmitted agents. Isolated maternal fever is defined as any maternal temperature between 38.0°C and 38.9°C with no additional risk factors present, and with or without persistent temperature elevation.

With chorioamnionitis, fetal and neonatal morbidity are substantively increased. Alexander and colleagues (1998) studied 1367 very-low-birthweight neonates delivered at Parkland Hospital. Approximately 7 percent were born to women with overt chorioamnionitis, and their outcomes were compared with similar newborns without clinical infection. Those in the infected group had higher incidences of sepsis, respiratory distress, early-onset seizures, intraventricular hemorrhage, and periventricular leukomalacia. Yoon and colleagues (2000) found that intraamnionic infection in preterm neonates was associated with increased rates of cerebral palsy. In one study of more than 11 million singleton live births in the United States from 1995 to 1997, 1.6 percent of gravidas had fever during labor. This was a strong predictor of infection-related death in both term and preterm neonates (Petrova, 2001).

Antimicrobial Therapy

Various antimicrobials have been evaluated to forestall preterm delivery. Mercer and associates (1995) reviewed 13 randomized trials that evaluated antibiotics for PPROM before 35 weeks. Their metaanalysis indicated that only three of 10 outcomes were *possibly* benefited: (1) fewer women developed chorioamnionitis, (2) fewer newborns developed sepsis, and (3) pregnancy was more often prolonged 7 days in women given antibiotics. However, rates of other neonatal outcomes, including survival and respiratory distress, were unaffected.

In an MFMU Network trial, women with membrane rupture between 24 and 32 weeks' gestation were randomly assigned to expectant management combined with placebo or to a 7-day antibiotic regimen. Treatment included intravenous ampicillin plus erythromycin every 6 hours for 48 hours, which was followed by oral amoxicillin plus erythromycin, every 8 hours for 5 days. Neither tocolytics nor corticosteroids were given. Antimicrobial-treated women had significantly fewer newborns with respiratory distress, necrotizing enterocolitis, and composite adverse outcomes (Mercer, 1997). The latency period was also significantly longer. Specifically, 50 percent of women given an antimicrobial regimen remained undelivered after 7 days of treatment compared with only 25 percent of those given placebo. Also, a significantly greater number of treated pregnancies were undelivered at 14 and 21 days. Cervicovaginal GBS colonization did not alter these results.

Other studies have examined the efficacy of shorter treatment lengths and different antimicrobial combinations. Three-day treatments compared with 7-day regimens using either ampicillin or ampicillin-sulbactam appear equally effective in regard to perinatal outcomes (Lewis, 2003; Segel, 2003). Similarly, erythromycin compared with placebo offered a range of significant neonatal benefits. The substitution of azithromycin for erythromycin does not appear to impact maternal or neonatal outcomes, and the former has an improved side-effect profile (Dotters-Katz, 2020). An amoxicillin-clavulanate regimen is not recommended, however, because of its association with an increased incidence of neonatal necrotizing enterocolitis (Kenyon, 2004).

Some predicted that prolonged antimicrobial therapy in such pregnancies might have unwanted consequences (Carroll, 1996; Mercer, 1999). Stoll and associates (2002) studied 4337 neonates weighing from 400 to 1500 g and born from 1998 to 2000. Their outcomes were compared with those of 7606 neonates of similar birthweight born from 1991 to 1993 and prior to the practice of antibiotic prophylaxis. The overall rate of early-onset sepsis did not change between these two epochs. But, the rate of GBS sepsis dropped from 5.9 per 1000 births in the earlier group to 1.7 per 1000 births in the later group. Comparing these same epochs, the rate of *Escherichia coli* sepsis, however, rose from 3.2 to 6.8 per 1000 births. Almost 85 percent of isolates from the more recent cohort were resistant to ampicillin. Neonates with early-onset sepsis were more likely to die, especially if they were infected with coliforms. Long term, Kenyon and coworkers (2008a) found that antimicrobials given for women with PPROM had no effect on the health of children at age 7 years.

Corticosteroid Therapy

A single course of corticosteroids is recommended for pregnant women with PPROM between $24^{0/7}$ and $34^{0/7}$ weeks' gestation

(American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020g). A single course of corticosteroids as early as $23^{0/7}$ weeks in those at risk for preterm delivery within 7 days may be considered. A similar controversy is found at the other end of the gestational age spectrum, $34^{0/7}$ to $36^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation and with rescue therapy (p. 803). These issues were summarized by Battarbee (2020) in a recent review.

MANAGEMENT OF PRETERM LABOR WITH INTACT MEMBRANES

Women with signs and symptoms of preterm labor with intact membranes are managed similarly to those with PPROM. If possible, delivery before 34 weeks' gestation is delayed. Drugs used to abate or suppress preterm uterine contractions are subsequently discussed.

Amniocentesis to Detect Infection

One of every 10 women with preterm labor and intact membranes will have intraamnionic infection that is largely subclinical (Yoon, 2019). Because of this, several tests have been used to diagnose intraamnionic infection (Andrews, 1995; Romero, 1993; Yoon, 1996). Although such infection can be identified with a positive test result, routine amniocentesis offers little value.

Corticosteroid Therapy

Glucocorticosteroids were found to accelerate lung maturation in preterm sheep fetuses, and Liggins and Howie (1972) evaluated them to treat women with preterm labor. Corticosteroid therapy was effective in lowering the incidence of respiratory distress syndrome (RDS) and neonatal mortality rates if birth was delayed for at least 24 hours after *initiation* of betamethasone. Infants exposed to corticosteroids in these early studies have now been followed into adulthood with no ill effects detected.

In 1995, a National Institutes of Health (NIH) Consensus Development Conference panel recommended corticosteroids for fetal lung maturation in threatened preterm birth. A subsequent NIH Conference (2000) summarized that data were insufficient to assess corticosteroid effectiveness in pregnancies complicated by hypertension, diabetes, multifetal gestation, fetal-growth restriction, or fetal hydrops. It was concluded, however, that administering corticosteroids to these women is reasonable.

One metaanalysis of 30 studies totaling 7774 women and 8158 infants quantified the benefit of a single course of corticosteroids (Roberts, 2017). Treatment was associated with lower rates of perinatal death, neonatal death, RDS, intraventricular hemorrhage, necrotizing enterocolitis, mechanical ventilation, and systemic infection in the first 48 hours of life. No obvious benefits were gained for chronic lung disease, death in childhood, or neurodevelopmental delay in childhood. Therapy was not associated with chorioamnionitis.

Parenthetically, corticosteroids given prophylactically to women at risk of preterm birth in low- and middle-income countries actually *increased* perinatal mortality rates (Althabe, 2015). Because of this unexpected finding, a multicountry randomized trial comparing dexamethasone to placebo and involving pregnant women between $26^{0/7}$ and $33^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation was recently completed (WHO ACTION Trials Collaborators, 2020). The trial was stopped early due to benefits of dexamethasone, which resulted in a significantly lower risk of stillbirth or neonatal death. The discrepancy between the two reports was attributed to inaccuracies in gestational age assessment (Rohwer, 2020).

A single course of corticosteroids is currently recommended for women between 24 and 34 weeks' gestation who are at risk for delivery within 7 days (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a). This recommendation for premature twins has been challenged (Viteri, 2016). For pregnancies at 23 weeks and at risk of delivery within 7 days, a single course of corticosteroids may be considered (p. 785). Administration of corticosteroids during the periviable period is linked to parental decisions regarding resuscitation and should be considered in that context (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019d).

Agent Selection

Betamethasone and dexamethasone are glucocorticoids that appear equivalent in stimulating fetal lung maturation (Murphy, 2007). Reduced rates of major preterm neonatal morbidities and increased rates of survival without neurosensory disability at age 2 years do not differ between them (Crowther, 2019; Elimian, 2007). A treatment course may be two 12-mg doses of betamethasone, and each dose is given intramuscularly 24 hours apart. With dexamethasone, 6-mg doses are given intramuscularly every 12 hours for four doses. Because treatment for less than 24 hours may be beneficial and reduce neonatal morbidity and mortality rates, a first dose of antenatal corticosteroids is administered regardless of the ability to complete additional doses before delivery (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

Late-preterm Delivery

Antenatal betamethasone has been compared against placebo for neonates that are likely to deliver in the late-preterm period (Gyamfi-Bannerman, 2016). Although only 60 percent of 2831 women received both injections, the rate of respiratory complications measured as a composite outcome was significantly lower with corticosteroid use compared with placebo—11.6 versus 14.4 percent. Because of these findings, *consideration* for administration of a single course of betamethasone for women between $34^{0/7}$ and $36^{6/7}$ weeks is advocated by both the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2016a).

Adoption of this practice has not been universal because of both short- and long-term neonatal safety concerns (Crowther, 2016; Kamath-Rayne, 2016). Specifically, in the newborns receiving betamethasone, rates of hypoglycemia were significantly greater (Gyamfi-Bannerman, 2016). Neonatal hypoglycemia is particularly worrisome for possible adverse long-term consequences that include developmental delay (Kerstjens, 2012). Another caveat is that the largest effects of betamethasone included a reduction in transient tachypnea of the newborn

(TTN), which is a self-limited condition with little clinical significance (Kamath-Rayne, 2016). Specifically, the rates of TTN were 6.7 and 9.9 percent in those given betamethasone and placebo, respectively. These rates are three- to fourfold higher than those reported by the Consortium on Safe Labor (2010). The latter was a retrospective, observational study from 19 hospitals across the United States that included 233,844 deliveries. Because of these issues, we do not provide corticosteroids beyond 34 weeks at Parkland Hospital at this time.

Repeated Courses

A single dose of intramuscular corticosteroids has been compared with repeated courses for lung maturation in two major randomized trials. Both found that repeated courses reduced neonatal respiratory morbidity rates, but the long-term consequences were much different. In one study, all women were given a primary course of betamethasone. If the preterm delivery risk persisted, they were assigned to serial weekly doses of betamethasone or placebo. These investigators found no adverse effects in the infants followed to age 2 years (Crowther, 2007).

In the second study, 495 women were randomly assigned to receive a single corticosteroid course that contained two doses or assigned to repeated courses that were given weekly (Wapner, 2007). In infants exposed to repeated courses, a nonsignificant rise in the cerebral palsy rate was identified. Still, exposure to the doubled betamethasone dose was worrisome because some experimental evidence supports the view that adverse effects are dose dependent (Bruschettini, 2006). We agree with Stiles (2007) who summarized these two studies as "early gain, long-term questions." At Parkland Hospital, our practice is to follow the recommendations of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) for single-course therapy.

Rescue Therapy

This refers to administration of a second corticosteroid dose when delivery becomes imminent and more than 7 days have elapsed since the initial dose. In one randomized trial, 326 women received placebo or a single 12-mg dose of betamethasone (Peltoniemi, 2007). Paradoxically, the rescue dose of betamethasone increased the risk of RDS. In another randomized study of 437 women with gestations <33 weeks, Garite and associates (2009) reported significantly lower rates of respiratory complications and neonatal composite morbidity with rescue corticosteroids versus placebo. Rates of perinatal mortality and other morbidities, however, did not differ. Another study found that treated infants had improved respiratory compliance (McEvoy, 2010). In a metaanalysis, Crowther and colleagues (2011) concluded that a single rescue course of corticosteroids should be considered in women whose prior course was administered at least 7 days previously and who were <34 weeks' gestation.

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) notes that a single rescue course of antenatal corticosteroids *should be considered* in women with fetuses <34 weeks' gestation whose prior course was administered at least 7 days previously. Effects of rescue therapy beyond 34 weeks are unknown. At Parkland Hospital, we currently do not provide additional courses of corticosteroids beyond the initial single-course therapy.

Magnesium Sulfate for Neuroprotection

Very-low-birthweight neonates whose mothers were treated with magnesium sulfate for preterm labor or preeclampsia were found to have a reduced incidence of cerebral palsy at 3 years (Grether, 2000; Nelson, 1995). Because of this, randomized trials were designed to investigate this hypothesis. In one trial, 1063 women at risk of delivery before 30 weeks' gestation were given magnesium sulfate or placebo (Crowther, 2003). Magnesium exposure improved some perinatal outcomes. Namely, rates of both neonatal death and cerebral palsy were lower in the magnesium-treated group. However, this study was not sufficiently powered. The multicenter French trial reported by Marret and associates (2008) had similar problems.

More convincing evidence for magnesium neuroprotection came from the randomized MFMU Network study—*Beneficial Effects of Antenatal Magnesium Sulfate—BEAM—study* (Rouse, 2008). In the study, 2241 women at imminent risk for preterm birth between 24 and 31 weeks' gestation were assigned to magnesium sulfate or placebo. Magnesium sulfate was given as a 6-g bolus over 20 to 30 minutes and was followed with a maintenance infusion of 2 g/hr. Magnesium sulfate was actually infusing at the time of delivery in approximately half of the treated women. Infusion continuation protocols vary by institution, including ours. In the BEAM study, after 12 hours with no signs of imminent delivery, the infusion was stopped and resumed if delivery again seemed imminent. If >6 hours had passed since discontinuation, another loading dose was given.

A 2-year assessment was available for 96 percent of the children in the BEAM trial (Table 45-10) (Rouse, 2008). The results can be interpreted differently depending on statistical methodologies employed. Some interpret these findings to mean that magnesium sulfate infusion prevents cerebral palsy regardless of the gestational age at which therapy is given. Those with a differing view conclude that this trial only supports use of magnesium sulfate for prevention of cerebral palsy potentially before 28 weeks.

Subsequently, Doyle and associates (2009) reviewed five randomized trials to assess neuroprotective effects. A total of 6145 infants were studied, and these reviewers concluded that magnesium sulfate exposure compared with no exposure significantly lowered risks for cerebral palsy. Rates of other neonatal morbidities did not differ significantly. It was calculated that treatment given to 63 women would prevent one case of cerebral palsy.

Controversy surrounding magnesium sulfate efficacy for neuroprotection prompted a debate at the 2011 annual meeting of the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine. Rouse (2011) spoke for the benefits of magnesium sulfate, whereas Sibai (2011) challenged that the reported benefits were falsely positive due to random statistical error in the metaanalysis by Doyle (2009). Another peculiarity is the apparent lack of dose-response for efficacy (McPherson, 2014).

Because none of the individual studies found a benefit from magnesium sulfate for fetal neuroprotection, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020d,g) concluded

TABLE 45-10. Magnesium Sulfate for the Prevention of Cerebral Palsy[a]

Perinatal Outcome[a]	Treatment		
	Magnesium Sulfate No. (%)	Placebo No. (%)	Relative Risk (95% CI)
Infants with 2-year follow-up	1041 (100)	1095 (100)	—
Fetal or infant death	99 (9.5)	93 (8.5)	1.12 (0.85–1.47)
Moderate or severe cerebral palsy:			
Overall	20/1041 (1.9)	3/1095 (3.4)	0.55 (0.32–0.95)
<28–31 weeks[b]	12/442 (2.7)	30/496 (6)	0.45 (0.23–0.87)
≥24–27 weeks[b]	8/599 (1.3)	8/599 (1.3)	1.00 (0.38–2.65)

[a]Selected results from the Beneficial Effects of Antenatal Magnesium Sulfate (BEAM) Study.
[b]Weeks' gestation at randomization.
CI = confidence index.

that those electing prophylaxis should develop specific guidelines, and this includes those with PPROM. In a recent prospective observational study of infants born at $22^{0/7}$ to $26^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation, exposure to both corticosteroids and magnesium sulfate was associated with lower rates of neurodevelopmental impairment and death compared with corticosteroids alone (Gentle, 2020). At Parkland Hospital, for the periviable fetus, we individualize management as shown in Table 45-4.

Antimicrobial Treatment

Results have been disappointing in studies of antibiotics given to *arrest* preterm labor. From one Cochrane metaanalysis, antimicrobial prophylaxis given to women with intact membranes did not reduce preterm birth rates or affect other clinically important short-term outcomes (Flenady, 2013). However, rates of short- and longer-term harm were higher for children of mothers exposed to antibiotics.

In the ORACLE Collaborative Group study of 6295 women with spontaneous preterm labor, intact membranes, but without evidence of infection, women were randomly assigned to receive antimicrobial or placebo therapy (Kenyon, 2001). The primary outcomes of neonatal death, chronic lung disease, and major cerebral abnormality were similar in both groups. In a follow-up of the ORACLE II trial, fetal exposure to antimicrobials in this setting was associated with an increased cerebral palsy rate at age 7 years compared with that in children without fetal exposure (Kenyon, 2008b). Moreover, although preterm birth is associated with bacterial vaginosis, treatment with clindamycin in more recent randomized trials has failed to lower preterm birth rates (Bellad, 2018; Subtil, 2018). Importantly, antimicrobial use described here is distinct from that given for GBS prophylaxis (Chap. 67, p. 1195).

Bed Rest

This has been one of the most often prescribed interventions, yet one of the least supported by evidence (McCall, 2013). An earlier systematic review concluded that evidence neither supported nor refuted bed rest for preterm birth prevention (Sosa, 2004). Moreover, possible harms are thromboembolic events, deconditioning, and bone loss (Kovacevich, 2000; Promislow, 2004). Grobman and associates (2013) reported that women with activity restriction were nearly 2.5 times more likely to have a preterm birth before 34 weeks. This finding, however, may reflect ascertainment bias. That is, women with restricted activity may have been assigned to bed rest because they were viewed to have a greater risk for preterm delivery. The Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020a) and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020f) recommend against activity restriction to reduce preterm birth rates.

Cervical Pessaries

Silicone rings, such as the Arabin pessary, have been used to support the cervix in women with a sonographically short cervix. In one study, 385 women with a cervical length ≤25 mm were provided a silicone pessary or expectant management (Goya, 2012). Newborns spontaneously delivered before 34 weeks' gestation in 6 percent of women in the pessary group compared with 27 percent in the expectant management group. In another randomized trial, almost 100 women with a cervical length <25 mm at 20 to 24 weeks' gestation received either pessaries or expectant management (Hui, 2013). The pessary did not lower the rate of delivery <34 weeks. Others have reported similar findings (Nicolaides, 2016). Moreover, authors of a recent systematic review totaling 4687 women and 7167 infants found that current evidence does not support pessary use to prevent preterm birth or improve perinatal outcomes in singleton or twin gestations with a short cervix or in unselected twin gestations (Conde-Agudelo, 2020). The Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2017) currently recommends pessary prophylaxis only within research protocols.

Emergency or Rescue Cerclage

Some evidence supports the concept that cervical incompetence and preterm labor lie along a spectrum leading to preterm delivery. Consequently, cerclage placement after preterm labor begins to manifest clinically has been studied. Importantly, for

women with labor and active cervical change, cerclage is contraindicated.

In one study, 23 women with cervical incompetence before 27 weeks' gestation were randomly assigned to bed rest, with or without an adjunctive emergency McDonald cerclage (Althuisius, 2003). Delivery delay was significantly greater in the cerclage group compared with those assigned to bed rest alone—54 versus 24 days, respectively. Terkildsen and coworkers (2003) studied 116 women who underwent second-trimester emergency cerclage. Nulliparity, membranes extending beyond the external cervical os, and cerclage before 22 weeks' gestation were associated with a significantly lower chance of significant pregnancy continuation. More recently, a multicenter randomized trial assessed women with twin pregnancies and asymptomatic cervical dilation of 1 to 5 cm between $16^{0/7}$ and $23^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation (Roman, 2020). From a total of 30 enrolled women, 17 women received physical examination-indicated cerclage, and 13 women received no cerclage. Of note, all women who underwent cerclage received indomethacin and antibiotics. In the cerclage group, the preterm birth rate was significantly decreased at all evaluated gestational ages, and specifically, cerclage lowered the birth rate for those <28 weeks by 50 percent. From these limited reports, for women facing a poor pregnancy prognosis due to cervical dilation at midgestation, emergency or rescue cerclage with appropriate counseling is reasonable. At this time, however, it is unclear if such interventions truly confer a benefit or merely increase the risk of membrane rupture and infection (Hawkins, 2017).

■ Tocolysis

Although several drugs have been used to prevent or inhibit preterm labor, none is completely effective. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020e) has concluded that tocolytic agents do not markedly prolong gestation but may delay delivery in some women for up to 48 hours. This may allow transport to an obstetrical center with higher-level neonatal care and permit time for a course of corticosteroid therapy. Although delivery may be delayed to administer corticosteroids, evidence does not support that tocolytic therapy has any direct favorable effect on neonatal outcomes or that any prolongation of pregnancy afforded by tocolytics alone translates into statistically significant neonatal benefit.

Beta-adrenergic agonists, magnesium sulfate, calcium-channel blockers, or indomethacin are the recommended tocolytic agents for short-term use. The gestational age range for tocolytic use is debatable (Mendez-Figueroa, 2020). But, because the perinatal outcomes in preterm neonates are generally good after 34 weeks' gestation, most do not recommend use of tocolytics after 33 weeks.

In many women, tocolytics stop contractions temporarily but rarely prevent preterm birth. Moreover, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020e) has concluded that maintenance therapy with tocolytics is ineffective for preventing preterm birth. No trial has ever convincingly shown reduced rates of any important adverse outcome by a tocolytic drug compared with placebo (Walker, 2016).

β-Adrenergic Receptor Agonists

Several compounds stimulate β-adrenergic receptors to reduce intracellular ionized calcium levels and prevent activation of myometrial contractile proteins (Chap. 21, p. 403). Of β-mimetic drugs in the United States, ritodrine and terbutaline have been used in obstetrics, but only ritodrine is FDA-approved for preterm labor.

Ritodrine was voluntarily withdrawn from the United States market in 2003, but a discussion of ritodrine is included here to present issues with β-mimetic drug use. In a randomized trial at Parkland Hospital, intravenous ritodrine delayed delivery for 24 hours but without other benefits (Leveno, 1986b). Additional studies confirmed a delivery delay up to 48 hours (Canadian Preterm Labor Investigators Group, 1992).

Importantly, β-agonist infusion resulted in serious and even fatal maternal side effects. Pulmonary edema is a special concern, and its cause is multifactorial. Risk factors include tocolytic therapy with β-agonist drugs, multifetal gestation, concurrent corticosteroid therapy, tocolysis for more than 24 hours, and intravenous infusion of large volumes of crystalloid. β-Agonist agents cause retention of sodium and water, and with time—usually 24 to 48 hours—these can cause volume overload (Hankins, 1988). The drugs have been implicated in increased capillary permeability, cardiac rhythm disturbances, and myocardial ischemia. For example, in an earlier study, tocolysis was the third most common cause of acute respiratory distress and death in pregnant women during a 14-year period in Mississippi (Perry, 1998).

Terbutaline is commonly used in the United States to forestall preterm labor. Like ritodrine, it may cause pulmonary edema (Angel, 1988). Low-dose terbutaline can be administered long-term by subcutaneous pump, but randomized trials fail to show benefit for such therapy (Guinn, 1998; Wenstrom, 1997). Oral terbutaline also is ineffective (How, 1995; Parilla, 1993). In one trial, 203 women with arrested preterm labor at 24 to 34 weeks' gestation were randomly assigned to receive 5-mg terbutaline tablets or placebo every 4 hours (Lewis, 1996). Of outcomes, delivery rates at 1 week, median days of pregnancy extension, mean gestational age at delivery, and incidence of preterm labor relapse were similar in both groups.

Because of serious maternal side effects, the FDA (2011) issued a warning regarding terbutaline use for preterm labor. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020e) recommends only short-term inpatient use of terbutaline as a tocolytic or as acute therapy for uterine tachysystole. Subcutaneous dosages of 0.25 mg are commonly used for the latter indication.

Magnesium Sulfate

Ionic magnesium in a sufficiently high concentration can alter myometrial contractility. It functions as a calcium antagonist, and when given in pharmacological doses, it may inhibit labor. Magnesium sulfate treatment has been associated with pulmonary edema (Samol, 2005). As discussed in Chapter 41 (p. 720), this has not been our experience at Parkland Hospital with treatment of tens of thousands of preeclamptic women with intramuscular or intravenous magnesium sulfate.

In one randomized trial, 54 women with preterm labor received magnesium sulfate, ritodrine, or placebo. Few differences in outcomes were identified (Cotton, 1984). Cox and coworkers (1990) randomly assigned 156 women to receive magnesium sulfate or infusions of normal saline. Magnesium sulfate–treated women and their neonates had identical outcomes compared with those given placebo. Because of these findings, this method of tocolysis was abandoned at Parkland Hospital. Similarly, Crowther and associates (2014) concluded that magnesium sulfate to treat preterm labor was ineffective and potentially harmful. Last, the FDA (2013) has warned against prolonged use of magnesium sulfate given to arrest preterm labor because of bone thinning and fractures in fetuses exposed for more than 5 to 7 days. This was attributed to low calcium levels in the fetus. Yule and associates (2020) demonstrated the influence of magnesium sulfate on maternal serum calcium levels.

Prostaglandin Inhibitors

These compounds are intimately involved in the contractions of normal labor (Chap. 21, p. 413). Antagonists act by inhibiting prostaglandin synthesis or by blocking their action on target organs.

Indomethacin, a nonselective cyclooxygenase inhibitor, was first used as a tocolytic in one study of 50 women (Zuckerman, 1974). Studies that followed reported the efficacy of indomethacin in halting contractions and delaying preterm birth (Muench, 2003; Niebyl, 1980). Morales and coworkers (1989, 1993a), however, compared indomethacin with either ritodrine or magnesium sulfate and found no difference in their efficacy to forestall preterm delivery. Berghella and associates (2006) reviewed four trials of indomethacin given to women with a sonographically determined short cervix and found such therapy to be ineffective to halt labor. But, as discussed earlier, its use with cerclage is gaining favor.

Most studies have limited indomethacin use to 24 to 48 hours because of concerns for oligohydramnios, which can develop with therapeutic doses. If amnionic fluid is monitored, oligohydramnios can be detected early, and it is reversible with drug discontinuation. There has also been considerable debate on the association of necrotizing enterocolitis or early ductus arteriosus closure and use of indomethacin (Doni, 2020; Hammers, 2015; Muench, 2001). Two metaanalyses of the effects of antenatal indomethacin on neonatal outcomes had conflicting findings (Amin, 2007; Loe, 2005). In one review of 20 studies, cyclooxygenase inhibitors, including indomethacin, provided no clear benefit compared with placebo or any other tocolytic agent (Reinebrant, 2015).

Calcium-channel Blockers

Myometrial activity is directly related to cytoplasmic free calcium, and reduced calcium concentrations inhibit contractions. Calcium-channel blockers inhibit, by various mechanisms, calcium entry through cell membrane channels.

From study results, calcium-channel blockers, especially nifedipine, are safer and more effective tocolytic agents than β-agonist drugs (King, 2003; Papatsonis, 1997). Comparing magnesium sulfate and nifedipine, one study of 192 women at 24 to 33 weeks' gestation found no substantial differences in efficacy or adverse effects (Lyell, 2007). Comparing nifedipine and atosiban in 145 women with preterm labor between 24 and 33 weeks, another randomized study showed that neither agent was superior to delay delivery. Neonatal morbidity rates were equivalent (Salim, 2012).

Flenady and coworkers (2014b) reviewed 38 trials of calcium-channel blockers for preterm labor and concluded that these agents have benefits compared with placebo. It is problematic, however, that this conclusion stemmed from a trial with unclear risk of selection bias and a three-arm study of 84 women that was not blinded (Ara, 2008; Zhang, 2002). More recently, Hawkins and associates (2021) performed a randomized, placebo-controlled trial of nifedipine for acute tocolysis of preterm labor at Parkland Hospital. Acute tocolysis with nifedipine did not affect preterm birth rates. However, the study results were obtained following an interim analysis demonstrating futility for study continuation.

Importantly, the combination of nifedipine and magnesium sulfate for tocolysis is potentially dangerous. Ben-Ami (1994) and Kurtzman (1993) and their coworkers reported that nifedipine enhances the neuromuscular blocking effects of magnesium, which can interfere with pulmonary and cardiac function. In one small study of 54 women with preterm labor who received either magnesium sulfate plus nifedipine or no tocolytic, neither benefit nor harm was found (How, 2006).

Other Agents

Atosiban is a nonapeptide oxytocin analogue and an oxytocin-receptor antagonist that is used in European countries to forestall labor. In randomized trials, atosiban failed to improve relevant neonatal outcomes and was linked with significant neonatal morbidity (Flenady, 2014a; Moutquin, 2000; Romero, 2000). The FDA has denied approval of atosiban for use in the United States because of these findings.

Nitric oxide donors are potent smooth-muscle relaxants that affect the vasculature, gut, and uterus. In randomized clinical trials, nitroglycerin administered orally, transdermally, or intravenously was ineffective or showed no superiority compared with other tocolytics. In addition, maternal hypotension is a common side effect (Bisits, 2004; Lees, 1999).

■ Labor and Delivery

Fetal heart rate and uterine contractions are monitored with preterm labor. We prefer continuous electronic monitoring. Fetal tachycardia, especially with ruptured membranes, suggests sepsis. Some evidence supports that intrapartum acidemia may intensify some of the neonatal complications usually attributed to preterm delivery. For example, Morgan and associates (2017) found that metabolic acidemia significantly raised the risks related to prematurity in neonates delivered <34 weeks' gestation. Low and colleagues (1995) observed that intrapartum acidosis—umbilical artery blood pH <7.0—had an important role in neonatal complications. GBS infections are common and dangerous in the preterm neonate, and antimicrobial prophylaxis should be provided (Chap. 67, p. 1195).

For delivery, perinatal outcome data do not support routine episiotomy or forceps delivery to protect the "fragile" preterm

fetal head. Staff proficient in resuscitative techniques commensurate with the gestational age and fully oriented to any specific problems should be present at delivery. The importance of specialized personnel and facilities for preterm newborn care is underscored by the improved survival rates of these neonates when delivered in tertiary-care centers. For community-based hospitals, multidisciplinary team-based simulation for preterm delivery can improve performance (Barbato, 2020).

Preterm newborns frequently have intracranial germinal matrix bleeding that can extend to more serious intraventricular hemorrhage. It was hypothesized that cesarean delivery to obviate trauma from labor and vaginal delivery might prevent these complications. This has not been validated by subsequent studies (Malloy, 1991). At Parkland Hospital, cesarean delivery is reserved for usual obstetrical indications.

REFERENCES

Aagaard K, Ma J, Antony KM, et al: The placenta harbors a unique microbiome. Sci Transl Med 6(237):234ra65, 2014

Adams Waldorf KM, Singh N, Mohan AR, et al: Uterine overdistention induces preterm labor mediated by inflammation: observations in pregnant women and nonhuman primates. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(6):830.e1, 2015

Adhikari EH, Moreno W, Zofkie AC, et al: Pregnancy outcomes among women with and without severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 infection. JAMA Netw Open 3(11):e2029256, 2020

Akgul Y, Word RA, Ensign LM, et al: Hyaluronan in cervical epithelia protects against infection-mediated preterm birth. J Clin Invest 124(12):5481, 2014

Alexander JM, Gilstrap LC, Cox SM, et al: Clinical chorioamnionitis and the prognosis for very low birthweight infants. Obstet Gynecol 91:725, 1998

Alexander JM, Mercer BM, Miodovnik M, et al: The impact of digital cervical examination on expectantly managed preterm ruptured membranes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:1003, 2000

Althabe F, Belizán JM, McClure EM, et al: A population-based, multifaceted strategy to implement antenatal corticosteroid treatment versus standard care for the reduction of neonatal mortality due to preterm birth in low-income and middle-income countries: the ACT cluster-randomised trial. Lancet 385(9968):629, 2015

Althuisius SM, Dekker G, Hummel P, et al: Cervical incompetence prevention randomized cerclage trial: emergency cerclage with bed rest versus bed rest alone. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:907, 2003

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Clinical guidance for integration of the findings of the PROLONG study: progestin's role in optimizing neonatal gestation. Practice advisory. 2019a. Available at: http://www.acog.org/clinical/clinical-guidance/practice-advisory/articles/2019/10/clinical-guidance-for-integration-of-the-findings-of-the-prolong-study. Accessed March 13, 2021

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Intrapartum management of intraamniotic infection. Committee Opinion No. 712, August 2017, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Perinatal palliative care. Committee Opinion No. 786, August 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Periviable birth. Obstetric Care Consensus No. 6, October 2017, Reaffirmed 2019d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Antenatal corticosteroid therapy for fetal maturation. Committee Opinion No. 713, August 2017, Reaffirmed 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Employment considerations during pregnancy and the postpartum period. Committee Opinion No. 733, April 2018, Reaffirmed 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Low-dose aspirin use during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 743, June 2018, Reaffirmed 2020c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Magnesium sulfate before anticipated preterm birth for neuroprotection. Committee Opinion No. 455, March 2010, Reaffirmed 2020d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Management of preterm labor. Practice Bulletin No. 171, October 2016, Reaffirmed 2020e

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Physical activity and exercise during pregnancy and the postpartum period. Committee Opinion No. 804, April 2020f

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prelabor rupture of membranes. Practice Bulletin No. 217, February 2020g

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention of group B streptococcal early-onset disease in newborns. Committee Opinion No. 797, February 2020h

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Clinical guidance for the integration of the findings of the EPPPIC meta-analysis: Evaluating Progestogens for Preventing Preterm Birth International Collaborative. 2021a. Available at: www.acog.org/clinical/clinical-guidance/practice-advisory/articles/2021/03/clinical-guidance-for-the-integration-of-the-findings-of-the-epppic-meta-analysis-evaluating-progestogens-for-preventing-preterm-birth-international-collaborative. Accessed April 28, 2021

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Medically indicated late-preterm and early-term deliveries. Committee Opinion No. 818, February 2021b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prediction and prevention of spontaneous preterm birth. Practice Bulletin No. 234, August 2021c

Amin SB, Sinkin RA, Glantz C: Metaanalysis of the effect of antenatal indomethacin on neonatal outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197:486, 2007

Ananth CV, Liu S, Joseph KS, et al: A comparison of foetal and infant mortality in the United States and Canada. Int J Epidemiol 38(2):480, 2009

Andrews WW, Goldenberg RL, Hauth JC, et al: Interconceptional antibiotics to prevent spontaneous preterm birth: a randomized clinical trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194:617, 2006

Andrews WW, Hauth JC, Goldenberg RL, et al: Amniotic fluid interleukin-6: correlation with upper genital tract microbial colonization and gestational age in women delivered after spontaneous labor versus indicated delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 173:606, 1995

Andrews WW, Sibai BM, Thom EA, et al: Randomized clinical trial of metronidazole plus erythromycin to prevent spontaneous preterm delivery in fetal fibronectin-positive women. Obstet Gynecol 101:847, 2003

Andrikopoulou M, Purisch SE, Handal-Orefice R, et al: Low-dose aspirin is associated with reduced spontaneous preterm birth in nulliparous women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(4):399, e1, 2018

Angel JL, O'Brien WF, Knuppel RA, et al: Carbohydrate intolerance in patients receiving oral tocolytics. Am J Obstet Gynecol 159:762, 1988

Ara I, Banu H: A prospective randomised trial of nifedipine versus placebo in preterm labour. Bangladesh J Obstet Gynaecol 23(2):61, 2008

Arechavaleta-Velasco F, Mayon-Gonzalez J, Gonzalez-Jimenez M, et al: Association of type II apoptosis and 92-kDa type IV collagenase expression in human amniochorion in prematurely ruptured membranes with tumor necrosis factor receptor-1 expression. J Soc Gynecol Investig 9:60, 2002

Attardi BJ, Zeleznik A, Simhan H, et al: Comparison of progesterone and glucocorticoid receptor binding and stimulation of gene expression by progesterone, 17-alpha hydroxyprogesterone caproate, and related progestins. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197(6):599.e1, 2007

Aune D, Schlesinger S, Henriksen T, et al: Physical activity and the risk of preterm birth: a systematic review and meta-analysis of epidemiological studies. BJOG 124(12):1816, 2017

Ball SJ, Pereira G, Jacoby P, et al: Re-evaluation of link between interpregnancy interval and adverse birth outcomes: retrospective cohort study matching two intervals per mother. BMJ 349:g4333, 2014

Barbato AL, Wetzel EA, Li W, et al: Simulation education for preterm infant delivery room management at community hospitals. Pediatrics 146(6):e20193688, 2020

Barth WH Jr: Lost in translation: the changing language of our specialty. Obstet Gynecol 127(3):423, 2016

Battarbee AN, Pfister A, Manuck TA: Suture thickness and transvaginal cervical cerclage outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 1(4):100056, 2019

Battarbee AN: Use of antenatal corticosteroids in preterm prelabor rupture of membranes. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 47(4):587, 2020

Bayar E, Bennett PR, Chan D, et al: The pregnancy microbiome and preterm birth. Semin Immunopathol 42(4):487, 2020

Beigi RH, Austin MN, Meyn LA, et al: Antimicrobial resistance associated with the treatment of bacterial vaginosis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:1124, 2004

Bellad MB, Hoffman MK, Mallapur AA, et al: Clindamycin to reduce preterm birth in a low resource setting: a randomised placebo-controlled clinical trial. BJOG 125(12):1601, 2018

Ben-Ami M, Giladi Y, Shalev E: The combination of magnesium sulphate and nifedipine: a cause of neuromuscular blockade. BJOG 101:262, 1994

Berghella V, Boelig R, Roman A, et al: Decreased incidence of preterm birth during coronavirus disease 2019 pandemic. Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 2(4):100258, 2020

Berghella V, Ciardulli A, Rust OA, et al: Cerclage for sonographic short cervix in singleton gestations without prior spontaneous preterm birth: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials using individual patient-level data. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 50(5):569, 2017

Berghella V, Rafael TJ, Szychowski JM, et al: Cerclage for short cervix on ultrasonography in women with singleton gestations and previous preterm birth: a meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 117(3):663, 2011

Berghella V, Rust OA, Althuisius SM: Short cervix on ultrasound: does indomethacin prevent preterm birth? Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:809, 2006

Berghella V, Saccone G: Fetal fibronectin testing for reducing the risk of preterm birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD006843, 2019

Bertholdt C, Menard S, Delorme P, et al: Intraoperative adverse events associated with extremely preterm cesarean deliveries. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 97(5):608, 2018

Bisits A, Madsen G, Knox M, et al: The randomized nitric oxide tocolysis trial (RNOTT) for the treatment of preterm labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:683, 2004

Blackwell SC, Gyamfi-Bannerman C, Biggio JR Jr, et al: 17-OHPC to prevent recurrent preterm birth in singleton gestations (PROLONG study): a multicenter, international, randomized double-blind trial. Am J Perinatol 37(2):127, 2020

Blanc J, Resseguier N, Goffinet F, et al: Association between gestational age and severe maternal morbidity and mortality of preterm cesarean delivery: a population-based cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(4):399.e1, 2019

Blois SM, Velohren S, We G, et al: Role of galectin-glycan circuits in reproduction: from healthy pregnant to preterm birth (PTB). Semin Immunopathol 42(4):469, 2020

Bloom SL, Leveno KJ: Unproven technologies in maternal-fetal medicine and the high cost of US health care. JAMA 317(10):1025, 2017

Bloom SL, Yost NP, McIntire DD, et al: Recurrence of preterm birth in singleton and twin pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 98:379, 2001

Boettcher LB, Clark EA: Neonatal and childhood outcomes following preterm premature rupture of membranes. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 47(4):671, 2020

Bond DM, Middleton P, Levett KM, et al: Planned early birth versus expectant management for women with preterm prelabour rupture of membranes prior to 37 weeks' gestation for improving pregnancy outcome. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD004735, 2017

Borgida AF, Mills AA, Feldman DM, et al: Outcome of pregnancies complicated by ruptured membranes after genetic amniocentesis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183(4):937, 2000

Breslin N, Gyamfi-Bannerman C: Current preterm birth prevention strategies. Clin Perinatol 47(4):705, 2020

Bruschettini M, van den Hove DL, Gazzolo D, et al: Lowering the dose of antenatal steroids: the effects of a single course of betamethasone on somatic growth and brain cell proliferation in the rat. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194:1341, 2006

Buekens P, Alexander S, Boutsen M, et al: Randomised controlled trial of routine cervical examinations in pregnancy. Lancet 344:841, 1994

Cai C, Vandermeer B, Khurana R, et al: The impact of occupational activities during pregnancy on pregnancy outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(3):224, 2020

Canadian Preterm Labor Investigators Group: Treatment of preterm labor with the beta-adrenergic agonist ritodrine. N Engl J Med 327:308, 1992

Cappelletti M, Doll JR, Stankiewicz TE, et al: Maternal regulation of inflammatory cues is required for induction of preterm birth. JCI Insight 5(22):e138812, 2020

Carey JC, Klebanoff MA: Is a change in the vaginal flora associated with an increased risk of preterm birth? Am J Obstet Gynecol 192(4):1341, 2005

Caritis SN, Rouse DJ, Peaceman AM, et al: Prevention of preterm birth in triplets using 17alpha-hydroxyprogesterone caproate. Obstet Gynecol 113:285, 2009

Caritis SN, Sharma S, Venkataramanan R, et al: Pharmacology and placental transport of 17-hydroxyprogesterone caproate in singleton gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(5):398.e1, 2012

Caritis SN, Venkataramanan R, Thom E, et al: Relationship between 17-alpha hydroxyprogesterone caproate concentration and spontaneous preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210(2):128.e1, 2014

Carlan SJ, O'Brien WF, Parsons MT, et al: Preterm premature rupture of membranes: a randomized study of home versus hospital management. Obstet Gynecol 81:61, 1993

Carroll SG, Blott M, Nicolaides KH: Preterm prelabor amniorrhexis: outcome of live births. Obstet Gynecol 86:18, 1995

Carroll SG, Papaionnou S, Ntumazah IL, et al: Lower genital tract swabs in the prediction of intrauterine infection in preterm prelabour rupture of the membranes. BJOG 103:54, 1996

Casanueva E, Ripoll C, Meza-Camacho C, et al: Possible interplay between vitamin C deficiency and prolactin in pregnant women with premature rupture of membranes: facts and hypothesis. Med Hypotheses 64:241, 2005

Challis JR, Sloboda DM, Alfaidy N, et al: Prostaglandins and mechanisms of preterm birth. Reproduction 124:1, 2002

Chang CY, Nguyen CP, Wesley B, et al: Withdrawing approval of Makena—a proposal from the FDA Center for Drug Evaluation and Research. N Engl J Med 383(24):e131, 2020

Chao TT, Bloom SL, Mitchell JS, et al: The diagnosis and natural history of false preterm labor. Obstet Gynecol 118(6):1301, 2011

Chawanpaiboon S, Vogel JP, Moller AB, et al: Global, regional, and national estimates of levels of preterm birth in 2014: a systematic review and modelling analysis. Lancet Glob Health 7(1):e37, 2019

Cnattingius S, Johansson S, Razaz N: Apgar score and risk of neonatal death among preterm infants. N Engl J Med 383(1):49, 2020

Cnattingius S, Villamor E, Johansson S, et al: Maternal obesity and risk of preterm delivery. JAMA 309(22):2362, 2013

Cohen AW, Copel JA, Macones GA, et al: Unjustified increase in cost of care resulting from U.S. Food and Drug Administration approval of Makena (17α-hydroxyprogesterone caproate). Obstet Gynecol 117(6):1408, 2011

Coleman M, Armistead B, Orvis A, et al: Hyaluronidase impairs neutrophil function and promotes group B *Streptococcus* invasion and preterm labor in nonhuman primates. mBio 12(1):e03115, 2021

Collaborative Home Uterine Monitoring Study Group: A multicenter randomized controlled trial of home uterine monitoring: active versus sham device. Am J Obstet Gynecol 173:1170, 1995

Collins JW Jr, David RJ, Simon DM, et al: Preterm birth among African American and white women with a lifelong residence in high-income Chicago neighborhoods: an exploratory study. Ethn Dis 17(1):113, 2007

Conde-Agudelo A, Romero R, Da Fonseca E, et al: Vaginal progesterone is as effective as cervical cerclage to prevent preterm birth in women with a singleton gestation, previous spontaneous preterm birth, and a short cervix: updated indirect comparison meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(1):10, 2018

Conde-Agudelo A, Romero R, Nicolaides KH: Cervical pessary to prevent preterm birth in asymptomatic high-risk women: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(1):42, 2020

Conde-Agudelo A, Rosas-Bermúdez A, Kafury-Goeta AC: Birth spacing and risk of adverse perinatal outcomes: a meta-analysis. JAMA 295:1809, 2006

Consortium on Safe Labor: Respiratory morbidity in late preterm births. JAMA 304(4):419, 2010

Cook CM, Ellwood DA: A longitudinal study of the cervix in pregnancy using transvaginal ultrasound. BJOG 103:16, 1996

Copper RL, Goldenberg RL, Dubard MB, et al: Cervical examination and tocodynamometry at 28 weeks' gestation: prediction of spontaneous preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 172:666, 1995

Cotton DB, Strassner HT, Hill LM, et al: Comparison between magnesium sulfate, terbutaline and a placebo for inhibition of preterm labor: a randomized study. J Reprod Med 29:92, 1984

Cox SM, Leveno KJ: Intentional delivery versus expectant management with preterm ruptured membranes at 30–34 weeks' gestation. Obstet Gynecol 86:875, 1995

Cox SM, Sherman ML, Leveno KJ: Randomized investigation of magnesium sulfate for prevention of preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 163:767, 1990

Cox SM, Williams ML, Leveno KJ: The natural history of preterm ruptured membranes: what to expect of expectant management. Obstet Gynecol 71:558, 1988

Creasy RK, Gummer BA, Liggins GC: System for predicting spontaneous preterm birth. Obstet Gynecol 55(6):692, 1980

Crider KS, Whitehead N, Buus RM: Genetic variation associated with preterm birth: a HuGE review. Genet Med 7(9):593, 2005

Crowley AE, Grivell RM, Dodd JM: Sealing procedures for preterm prelabour rupture of membranes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD010218, 2016

Crowther CA, Ashwood P, Andersen CC, et al: Maternal intramuscular dexamethasone versus betamethasone before preterm birth (ASTEROID): a multicentre, double-blind, randomised controlled trial. Lancet Child Adolesc Health 3(11):769, 2019

Crowther CA, Brown J, McKinlay CJ, et al: Magnesium sulphate for preventing preterm birth in threatened preterm labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD001060, 2014

Crowther CA, Doyle LW, Haslam RR, et al: Outcomes at 2 years of age after repeat doses of antenatal corticosteroids. N Engl J Med 357:1179, 2007

Crowther CA, Harding JE: Antenatal glucocorticoids for late preterm birth. N Engl J Med 374(14):1376, 2016

Crowther CA, Hiller JE, Doyle LW, et al: Effect of magnesium sulfate given for neuroprotection before preterm birth: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 290:2669, 2003

Crowther CA, McKinlay CJ, Middleton P, et al: Repeat doses of prenatal corticosteroids for women at risk for preterm birth for improving neonatal health outcomes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD003935, 2011
da Fonseca EB, Damião R, Moreira DA: Preterm birth prevention. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 69:40, 2020
De Goffau MC, Lager S, Sovio U, et al: Human placenta has no microbiome but can contain potential pathogens. Nature 572(7769):329, 2019
Deindl P, Diemert A: From structural modalities in perinatal medicine to the frequency of preterm birth. Semin Immunopathol 42(4):377, 2020
Delnord M, Hindori-Mohangoo AD, Smith LK, et al: Variations in very preterm birth rates in 30 high-income countries: are valid international comparisons possible using routine data. BJOG 124(5):785, 2017
Di Mascio D, Magro-Malosso ER, Saccone G, et al: Exercise during pregnancy in normal-weight women and risk of preterm birth: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(5):561, 2016
Diemert A, Arck PC: Preterm birth: pathogenesis and clinical consequences revisited. Semin Immunopathol 42(4):375, 2020
Dodd JM, Grivell RM, Obrien CM, et al: Prenatal administration of progestogens for preventing spontaneous preterm birth in women with a multiple pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD012024, 2019
Dolan SM, Gross SJ, Merkatz IR, et al: The contribution of birth defects to preterm birth and low birth weight. Obstet Gynecol 110:318, 2007
Donders GG, Van Calsteren K, Bellen G, et al: Predictive value for preterm birth of abnormal vaginal flora, bacterial vaginosis and aerobic vaginitis during the first trimester of pregnancy. BJOG 116(10):1315, 2009
Doni D, Paterlini G, Locatelli A, et al: Effects of antenatal indomethacin on ductus arteriosus early closure and on adverse outcomes in preterm neonates. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(4):645, 2020
Donovan BM, Spracklen CN, Schweizer ML, et al: Intimate partner violence during pregnancy and the risk for adverse infant outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 123(8):1289, 2016
Dotters-Katz S: Antibiotics for prophylaxis in the setting of preterm prelabor rupture of membranes. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 47(4):595, 2020
Doyle LW, Crowther CA, Middleton S, et al: Magnesium sulfate for women at risk of preterm birth for neuroprotection of the fetus. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD004661, 2009
Dutta EH, Behnia F, Boldogh I, et al: Oxidative stress damage-associated molecular signaling pathways differentiate spontaneous preterm birth and preterm premature rupture of the membranes. Mol Hum Reprod 22(2):143, 2016
Eichenwald EC, Stark AR: Management and outcomes of very low birth weight. N Engl J Med 358(16):1700, 2008
El-Bastawissi AY, Williams MA, Riley DE, et al: Amniotic fluid interleukin-6 and preterm delivery: a review. Obstet Gynecol 95:1056, 2000
Eleje GU, Eke AC, Ikechebelu JI, et al: Cervical stitch (cerclage) in combination with other treatments for preventing spontaneous preterm birth in singleton pregnancies. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 9:CD012871, 2020
Elimian A, Garry D, Figueroa R, et al: Antenatal betamethasone compared with dexamethasone (Betacode Trial): a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 110:26, 2007
Elovitz MA, Gajer P, Riis V, et al: Cervicovaginal microbiota and local immune response modulate the risk of spontaneous preterm delivery. Nat Commun 10(1):1305, 2019
Ely DM, Driscoll AK: Infant mortality in the United States, 2018: data from the period linked birth/infant death file. Natl Vital Stat Rep 69(7):1, 2020
EPPPIC Group: Evaluating Progestogens for Preventing Preterm birth International Collaborative (EPPPIC): meta-analysis of individual participant data from randomised controlled trials. Lancet 397(10280):1183, 2021
Esplin MS, Elovitz MA, Iams JD, et al: Predictive accuracy of serial transvaginal cervical lengths and quantitative vaginal fetal fibronectin levels for spontaneous preterm birth among nulliparous women. JAMA 317(10):1047, 2017
Esplin MS: The importance of clinical phenotype in understanding and preventing spontaneous preterm birth. Am J Perinatol 33(3):236, 2016
Fanaroff AA, Stoll BJ, Wright LL, et al: Trends in neonatal morbidity and mortality for very low birthweight infants. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196:e1.147, 2007
Farooqi A, Holmgren PA, Engberg S, et al: Survival and 2-year outcome with expectant management of second trimester rupture of membranes. Obstet Gynecol 92:895, 1998
Fettweis JM, Serrano MG, Brooks JP, et al: The vaginal microbiome and preterm birth. Nat Med 25(6):1012, 2019
Flenady V, Hawley G, Stock OM, et al: Prophylactic antibiotics for inhibiting preterm labour with intact membranes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 12:CD000246, 2013
Flenady V, Reinebrant HE, Liley HG, et al: Oxytocin receptor antagonists for inhibiting preterm labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD004452, 2014a
Flenady V, Wojcieszek AM, Papatsonis DN, et al: Calcium channel blockers for inhibiting preterm labour and birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD002255, 2014b
Fonseca EB, Celik E, Para M, et al: Progesterone and the risk of preterm birth among women with a short cervix. N Engl J Med 357:462, 2007
Food and Drug Administration: CDER proposes withdrawal of approval for Makena. 2020. Available at: www.fda.gov/drugs/drug-safety-and-availability/cder-proposes-withdrawal-approval-makena. Accessed March 13, 2021
Food and Drug Administration: FDA drug safety communication: FDA recommends against prolonged use of magnesium sulfate to stop pre-term labor due to bone changes in exposed babies. 2013. Available at: www.fda.gov/drugs/drug-safety-and-availability/fda-drug-safety-communication-fda-recommends-against-prolonged-use-magnesium-sulfate-stop-pre-term. Accessed March 24, 2021
Food and Drug Administration: FDA drug safety communication: new warnings against use of terbutaline to treat preterm labor. 2011. Available at: www.fda.gov/drugs/drugsafety/ucm243539.htm. Accessed March 24, 2021
Food and Drug Administration: Makena (hydroxyprogesterone caproate injection). New Drug Application 021945/Supplement 023. 2019. Available at: www.fda.gov/media/132431/download. Accessed March 24, 2021
Fortunato SJ, Menon R: IL-1 beta is a better inducer of apoptosis in human fetal membranes than IL-6. Placenta 24:922, 2003
Frey HA, Klebanoff MA: The epidemiology, etiology, and costs of preterm birth. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 21(2):68, 2016
Furcron AE, Romero R, Plazyo O, et al: Vaginal progesterone, but not 17α-hydroxyprogesterone caproate, has antiinflammatory effects at the murine maternal-fetal interface. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(6):846.e1, 2015
Gajer P, Brotman RM, Bai G, et al: Temporal dynamics of the human vaginal microbiota. Sci Transl Med 4(132):132ra52, 2012
Garite TJ, Keegan KA, Freeman RK, et al: A randomized trial of ritodrine tocolysis versus expectant management in patients with premature rupture of membranes at 25 to 30 weeks of gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 157:388, 1987
Garite TJ, Kurtzman J, Maurel K, et al: Impact of a "rescue course" of antenatal corticosteroids: a multicenter randomized placebo-controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200:248.e.1, 2009
Gaudet LM, Smith G: Cerebral palsy and chorioamnionitis: the inflammatory cytokine link. Obstet Gynecol Surv 56(7):433, 2001
Gentle SJ, Carlo WA, Tan S, et al: Association of antenatal corticosteroids and magnesium sulfate therapy with neurodevelopmental outcome in extremely preterm children. Obstet Gynecol 135(6):1377, 2020
Ghaemi MS, Tarca AL, Romero R, et al: Proteomic signatures predict preeclampsia in individual cohorts but not across cohorts-implications for clinical biomarker studies. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med March 2, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]
Gillespie SL, Christian LM, Alston AD, et al: Childhood stress and birth timing among African American women: cortisol as biological mediator. Psychoneuroendocrinology 84:32, 2017
Giraldo-Isaza MA, Berghella V: Cervical cerclage and preterm PROM. Clin Obstet Gynecol 54(2):313, 2011
Girsen AI, Mayo JA, Carmichael SL, et al: Women's prepregnancy underweight as a risk factor for preterm birth: a retrospective study. BJOG 123(12):2001, 2016
Godlewski BJ, Sobolik LI, King VJ, et al: Accelerated approval of 17α-hydroxyprogesterone caproate: a cautionary tale. Obstet Gynecol 135(5):1207, 2020
Goepfert AR, Jeffcoat MK, Andrews W, et al: Periodontal disease and upper genital tract inflammation in early spontaneous preterm birth. Obstet Gynecol 104:777, 2004
Goldenberg RL, Culhane JF, Iams JD, et al: Preterm birth 1: epidemiology and causes of preterm birth. Lancet 371:75, 2008
Goldenberg RL, Hauth JC, Andrews WW: Intrauterine infection and preterm delivery. N Engl J Med 342:1500, 2000
Goldenberg RL, Mwatha A, Read JS, et al: The HPTN 024 Study: the efficacy of antibiotics to prevent chorioamnionitis and preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194:650, 2006
Goldstein B, Bradley B, Ressler KJ, et al: Associations between posttraumatic stress disorder, emotion dysregulation, and alcohol dependence symptoms among inner city females. J Clin Psychol 73(3):319, 2017
Gomez R, Romero R, Glasasso M, et al: The value of amniotic fluid interleukin-6, white blood cell count, and gram stain in the diagnosis of microbial invasion of the amniotic cavity in patients at term. Am J Reprod Immunol 32:200, 1994
Gomez-Lopez N, StLouis D, Lehr MA, et al: Immune cells in term and preterm labor. Cell Mol Immunol 11(6):571, 2014
Goncalves LF, Chaiworapongsa T, Romero R: Intrauterine infection and prematurity. Ment Retard Dev Disabil Res Rev 8:3, 2002

Gonzalez JM, Xu H, Ofori E, et al: Toll-like receptors in the uterus, cervix, and placenta: is pregnancy an immunosuppressed state? Am J Obstet Gynecol 197(3):296, 2007

Goodfellow L, Care A, Alfirevic Z: Controversies in the prevention of spontaneous preterm birth in asymptomatic women: an evidence summary and expert opinion. BJOG 128(2):177, 2021

Goya M, Pratcorona L, Merced C, et al: Cervical pessary in pregnant women with a short cervix (PECEP): an open-label randomised controlled trial. Lancet 379(9828):1790, 2012

Gravett MG, Adams KM, Sadowsky DW, et al: Immunomodulators plus antibiotics delay preterm delivery after experimental intraamniotic infection in a nonhuman primate model. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197(5):518.e1, 2007

Gravett MG, Nelson HP, DeRouen T, et al: Independent associations of bacterial vaginosis and *Chlamydia trachomatis* infection with adverse pregnancy outcome. JAMA 256(14):1899, 1986

Greene MF, Klebankoff MA, Harrington D: Preterm birth and 17OHP-why the FDA should not withdraw approval. N Engl J Med 383(24):e130, 2020

Grether JK, Hoogstrate J, Walsh-Greene E, et al: Magnesium sulfate for tocolysis and risk of spastic cerebral palsy in premature children born to women without preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:717, 2000

Grobman WA, Gilbert SA, Iams JD, et al: Activity restriction among women with a short cervix. Obstet Gynecol 121:1181, 2013

Grobman WA, Thom EA, Spong CY, et al: 17alpha-Hydroxyprogesterone caproate to prevent prematurity in nulliparas with cervical length less than 30 mm. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(5):390e.1, 2012

Guillen Ú, DeMauro S, Ma L, et al: Survival rates in extremely low birthweight infants depend on the denominator: avoiding potential for bias by specifying denominators. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205:328.e1, 2011

Guinn DA, Goepfert AR, Owen J, et al: Terbutaline pump maintenance therapy for prevention of preterm delivery: a double-blind trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 179:874, 1998

Gyamfi-Bannerman C, Thom EA, Blackwell SC, et al: Antenatal betamethasone for women at risk for late preterm delivery. N Engl J Med 374(14):1311, 2016

Haahr T, Ersbøll AS, Karlsen MA, et al: Treatment of bacterial vaginosis in pregnancy in order to reduce the risk of spontaneous preterm delivery – a clinical recommendation. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 95(8):850, 2016

Hadi HA, Hodson CA, Strickland D: Premature rupture of the membranes between 20 and 25 weeks' gestation: role of amniotic fluid volume in perinatal outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 170:1139, 1994

Hajdu SA, Rossi RM, DeFranco EA: factors associated with maternal and neonatal interventions at the threshold of viability. Obstet Gynecol 135(6):1398, 2020

Hamilton S, Oomomian Y, Stephen G, et al: Macrophages infiltrate the human and rat decidua during term and preterm labor: evidence that decidual inflammation precedes labor. Biol Reprod 86(2):39, 2012

Hammers AL, Sanchez-Ramos L, Kaunitz AM: Antenatal exposure to indomethacin increases the risk of severe intraventricular hemorrhage, necrotizing enterocolitis, and periventricular leukomalacia: a systematic review with metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212:505.e1, 2015

Hankins GD, Hauth JC, Cissik JH, et al: Effects of ritodrine hydrochloride on arteriovenous blood gas and shunt in healthy pregnant yellow baboons. Am J Obstet Gynecol 158:658, 1988

Hassan SS, Romero R, Vidyadhari D, et al: Vaginal progesterone reduces the rate of preterm birth in women with sonographic short cervix: a multicenter, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 38:18, 2011

Hawkins JS, Wells CE, Casey BM, et al: Nifedipine for acute tocolysis of preterm labor: a placebo-controlled randomized trial. Obstet Gynecol 138(1):73, 2021

Hawkins JS: Lower genital tract procedures. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017

Hedermann G, Hedley PL, Bækvad-Hansen M, et al: Danish premature birth rates during the COVID-19 lockdown. Arc Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 106(1):93, 2021

Helenius K, Sjörs G, Shah PS, et al: Survival in very preterm infants: an international comparison of 10 national neonatal networks. Pediatrics 140(6):e20171264, 2017

Higgins RD, Saade G, Polin RA, et al: Evaluation and management of women and newborns with a maternal diagnosis of chorioamnionitis: summary of a workshop. Obstet Gynecol 127(3):426, 2016

Hillier SL, Nugent RP, Eschenbach DA, et al: Association between bacterial vaginosis and preterm delivery of a low-birthweight infant. N Engl J Med 333:1737, 1995

Hoffman MK, Goudar SS, Kodkany BS, et al: Low-dose aspirin for the prevention of preterm delivery in nulliparous women with a singleton pregnancy (ASPIRIN): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 395(10220):285, 2020

Holmlund U, Cabers G, Dahlfors AR, et al: Expression and regulation of the pattern recognition receptors Toll-like receptor-2 and Toll-like receptor-4 in the human placenta. Immunology 107:145, 2002

Hong X, Bartell TR, Wang X: Gaining a deeper understanding of social determinants of preterm birth by integrating multi-omics data. Pediatr Res 89(2):336, 2021

How HY, Hughes SA, Vogel RL, et al: Oral terbutaline in the outpatient management of preterm labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 173:1518, 1995

How HY, Zafaranchi L, Stella CL, et al: Tocolysis in women with preterm labor between $32^{0/7}$ and $34^{6/7}$ weeks of gestation: a randomized controlled pilot study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194:976, 2006

Hui SY, Chor CM, Lau TK, et al: Cerclage pessary for preventing preterm birth in women with a singleton pregnancy and a short cervix at 20 to 24 weeks: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Perinatol 30:283, 2013

Iams JD, Goldenberg RL, Meis PJ, et al: The length of the cervix and the risk of spontaneous premature delivery. N Engl J Med 334:567, 1996

Iams JD, Newman RB, Thom EA, et al: Frequency of uterine contractions and the risk of spontaneous preterm birth. N Engl J Med 346:250, 2002

Ishii N, Kono Y, Yonemoto N, et al: Outcomes of infants born at 22 and 23 weeks' gestation. Pediatrics 132(1):62, 2013

Janssens S, Beyaert R: Role of Toll-like receptors in pathogen recognition. Clin Microbiol Rev 16:637, 2003

Jarde A, Lutsiv O, Beyene J, et al: Vaginal progesterone, oral progesterone, 17-OHPC, cerclage, and pessary for preventing preterm birth in at-risk singleton pregnancies: an updated systematic review and network meta-analysis. BJOG 126(5):556, 2019

Jehan F, Sazawal S, Baqui AH, et al: Multiomics characterization of preterm birth in low- and middle-income countries. JAMA Netw Open 3(12):e2029655, 2020

Jones EO, Liew ZQ, Rust OA: The short cervix: a critical analysis of diagnosis and treatment. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 47(4):545, 2020

Kamath-Rayne BD, Rozance PJ, Goldenberg RL, et al: Antenatal corticosteroids beyond 34 weeks gestation: what do we do now? Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(4):423, 2016

Keelan JA, Blumenstein M, Helliwell RJ, et al: Cytokines, prostaglandins and parturition—a review. Placenta 24:S33, 2003

Kenyon S, Boulvain M, Neilson J: Antibiotics for preterm rupture of the membranes: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 104:1051, 2004

Kenyon S, Pike K, Jones DR, et al: Childhood outcomes after prescription of antibiotics to pregnant women with preterm rupture of the membranes: 7-year follow-up of the ORACLE I trial. Lancet 372:1310, 2008a

Kenyon S, Pike K, Jones DR, et al: Childhood outcomes after prescription of antibiotics to pregnant women with spontaneous preterm labour: 7-year follow-up of the ORACLE II trial. Lancet 372:1319, 2008b

Kenyon SL, Taylor DJ, Tarnow-Mordi, et al: Broad-spectrum antibiotics for spontaneous preterm labour: the ORACLE II randomized trial. Lancet 357:989, 2001

Kerstjens JM, Bocca-Tjeertes IF, de Winter AF, et al: Neonatal morbidities and developmental delay in moderately preterm-born children. Pediatrics 130(2):e265, 2012

King JF, Flenady V, Papatsonis D, et al: Calcium channel blockers for inhibiting preterm labour: a systematic review of the evidence and a protocol for administration of nifedipine. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 43:192, 2003

Kiver V, Boos V, Thomas A, et al: Perinatal outcomes after previable preterm premature rupture of membranes before 24 weeks gestation. J Perinat Med 46(5):555, 2018

Korita D, Sagawa N, Itoh H, et al: Cyclic mechanical stretch augments prostacyclin production in cultured human uterine myometrial cells from pregnant women: possible involvement of up-regulation of prostacyclin synthase expression. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 87:5209, 2002

Kovacevich GJ, Gaich SA, Lavin JP, et al: The prevalence of thromboembolic events among women with extended bed rest prescribed as part of the treatment for premature labor or preterm premature rupture of membranes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:1089, 2000

Kurtzman JL, Thorp JM Jr, Spielman FJ, et al: Do nifedipine and verapamil potentiate the cardiac toxicity of magnesium sulfate? Am J Perinatol 10:450, 1993

Kuusela P, Jacobsson B, Hagberg H, et al: Second trimester transvaginal ultrasound measurement of cervical length for prediction of preterm birth: a blinded prospective multicentre diagnostic accuracy study. BJOG 128(2):195, 2021

Laskin MD, Yinon Y, Whittle WL: Preterm premature rupture of membranes in the presence of cerclage: is the risk for intra-uterine infection and adverse neonatal outcome increased. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(4):424, 2012

Lauder AP, Roche AM, Sherrill-Mix S, et al: Comparison of placenta samples with contamination controls does not provide evidence for a distinct placenta microbiota. Microbiome 4(1):29, 2016

Laughon SK, Albert PS, Leishear K, et al: The NICHD Consecutive Pregnancies Study: recurrent preterm delivery by subtype. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210(2):131.e1, 2014
Lees CC, Lojacono A, Thompson C, et al: Glyceryl trinitrate and ritodrine in tocolysis: an international multicenter randomized study. Obstet Gynecol 94:403, 1999
Leeson SC, Maresh MJ, Martindale EA, et al: Detection of fetal fibronectin as a predictor of preterm delivery in high risk symptomatic pregnancies. BJOG 103:48, 1996
Leveno KJ, Cox K, Roark ML: Cervical dilatation and prematurity revisited. Obstet Gynecol 68(3):434, 1986a
Leveno KJ, Klein VR, Guzick DS, et al: Single-centre randomised trial of ritodrine hydrochloride for preterm labour. Lancet 1:1293, 1986b
Leveno KJ, McIntire DD, Bloom SL, et al: Decreased preterm births in an inner-city public hospital. Obstet Gynecol 113(3):578, 2009
Lewis DF, Adair CD, Robichaux AG, et al: Antibiotic therapy in preterm premature rupture of membranes: are seven days necessary? A preliminary, randomized clinical trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:1413, 2003
Lewis DF, Robichaux AG, Jaekle RK, et al: Expectant management of preterm premature rupture of membranes and nonvertex presentation: what are the risks? Am J Obstet Gynecol 196:566, 2007
Lewis R, Mercer BM, Salama M, et al: Oral terbutaline after parenteral tocolysis: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 175:834, 1996
Li C, Shen J, Hua K: Cerclage for women with twin pregnancies: a systematic review and metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(6):543, 2019
Lieman JM, Brumfield CG, Carlo W, et al: Preterm premature rupture of membranes: is there an optimal gestational age for delivery? Obstet Gynecol 105:12, 2005
Liggins GC, Howie RN: A controlled trial of antepartum glucocorticoid treatment for prevention of the respiratory distress syndrome in premature infants. Pediatrics 50:515, 1972
Likis FE, Velez Edwards DR, Andrews JC, et al: Progestogens for preterm birth prevention. Obstet Gynecol 120:897, 2012
Loe SM, Sanchez-Ramos L, Kaunitz AM: Assessing the neonatal safety of indomethacin tocolysis: a systematic review with meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 106:173, 2005
Low JA, Panagiotopoulos C, Derrick EJ: Newborn complication after intrapartum asphyxia with metabolic acidosis in the preterm fetus. Am J Obstet Gynecol 172:805, 1995
Lyall F, Lye S, Teoh T, et al: Expression of Gsalpha, connexin-43, connexin-26, and EP1, 3, and 4 receptors in myometrium of prelabor singleton versus multiple gestations and the effects of mechanical stretch and steroids on Gsalpha. J Soc Gynecol Investig 9:299, 2002
Lyell DJ, Pullen K, Campbell L, et al: Magnesium sulfate compared with nifedipine for acute tocolysis of preterm labor: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 1108:61, 2007
Mackeen AD, Seibel-Seamon J, Muhammad J, et al: Tocolytics for preterm premature rupture of membranes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD007062, 2014
Main EK, Change SC, Carpenter AM, et al: Singleton preterm birth rates for racial and ethnic groups during the coronavirus disease 2019 pandemic in California. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(2): 239, 2021
Major CA, Towers CW, Lewis DF, et al: Expectant management of preterm premature rupture of membranes complicated by active recurrent genital herpes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:1551, 2003
Makrides M, Best K, Yelland L, et al: A randomized trial of prenatal n-3 fatty acid supplementation and preterm delivery. N Engl J Med 381(11):1035, 2019
Malloy MH, Onstad L, Wright E: The effect of cesarean delivery on birth outcome in very low birth weight infants. Obstet Gynecol 77:498, 1991
Marinić M, Mika K, Chigurupati S, et al: Evolutionary transcriptomics implicates *HAND2* in the origins of implantation and regulation of gestation length. Elife 10:e61257, 2021
Marinovich ML, Regan AK, Gissler M, et al: Associations between interpregnancy interval and preterm birth by previous preterm birth status in four high-income countries: a cohort study. BJOG 128(7):1134, 2021.
Marret S, Marpeau L, Bénichou J: Benefit of magnesium sulfate given before very preterm birth to protect infant brain. Pediatrics 121(1):225, 2008
Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJ, et al: Births: final data for 2019. Natl Vital Stat Rep 70(2):1, 2021
Martin JA, Osterman MJ, Kirmeyer SE, et al: Measuring gestational age in vital statistics data: transitioning to the obstetric estimate. Natl Vital Stat Rep 64(5):1, 2015
McCall CA, Grimes DA, Drapkin Lyerly A: "Therapeutic" bed rest in pregnancy unethical and unsupported by data. Obstet Gynecol 121:1305, 2013
McElrath TF, Allred E, Leviton A: Prolonged latency after preterm premature rupture of membranes: an evaluation of histologic condition and intracranial ultrasonic abnormality in the neonate born at <28 weeks of gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:794, 2003
McElrath TF, Norwitz ER, Lieberman ES, et al: Perinatal outcome after preterm premature rupture of membranes with in situ cervical cerclage. Am J Obstet Gynecol 187:1147, 2002
McEvoy C, Schilling D, Segel S, et al: Improved respiratory compliance in preterm infants after a single rescue course of antenatal steroids: a randomized trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 202(6):544.e1, 2010
McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: Neonatal mortality and morbidity rates in later preterm births compared with births at term. Obstet Gynecol 111:35, 2008
McManemy J, Cooke E, Amon E, et al: Recurrence risk for preterm delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196(6):576.e1, 2007
McPherson JA, Rouse DJ, Grobman WA, et al: Association of duration of neuroprotective magnesium sulfate infusion with neonatal and maternal outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 124(4):749, 2014
Medley N, Poljak B, Mammarella S, et al: Clinical guidelines for prevention and management of preterm birth: a systematic review. BJOG 125(1):1361, 2018
Meis PJ, Klebanoff M, Thom E, et al: Prevention of recurrent preterm delivery by 17alpha-hydroxyprogesterone caproate. N Engl J Med 348:2379, 2003
Mekonnen ZK, Oehlert JW, Eskenazi B, et al: The relationship between air pollutants and maternal socioeconomic factors on preterm birth in California urban counties. J Expo Sci Environ Epidemiol 31:503, 2021.
Melchor JC, Khalil A, Wing D, et al: Prediction of preterm delivery in symptomatic women using PAMG-1, fetal fibronectin and phIGFBP-1 tests: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 52(4):442, 2018
Mendez-Figueroa H, Chauhan SP: Tocolytic therapy in preterm premature rupture of membranes. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 47(4):569, 2020
Menon R, Behnia F, Polettini J, et al: Novel pathways of inflammation in human fetal membranes associated with preterm birth and preterm prelabor rupture of the membranes. Semin Immunopathol 42(4):431, 2020
Mercer BM, Arheart KL: Antimicrobial therapy in expectant management of preterm premature rupture of the membranes. Lancet 346:1271, 1995
Mercer BM, Carr TL, Beazley DD, et al: Antibiotic use in pregnancy and drug-resistant infant sepsis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181:816, 1999
Mercer BM, Crocker LG, Boe NM, et al: Induction versus expectant management in premature rupture of the membranes with mature amniotic fluid at 32 to 36 weeks: a randomized trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 169:775, 1993
Mercer BM, Miodovnik M, Thurnau GR, et al: Antibiotic therapy for reduction of infant morbidity after preterm premature rupture of the membranes. JAMA 278:989, 1997
Mercer BM: Preterm premature rupture of the membranes. Obstet Gynecol 101:178, 2003
Michalowicz BS, Hodges JS, DiAngelis AJ, et al: Treatment of periodontal disease and the risk of preterm birth. N Engl J Med 355:1885, 2006
Mogami H, Kishore AH, Shi H, et al: Fetal fibronectin signaling induces matrix metalloproteases and cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) in amnion cells and preterm birth in mice. J Biol Chem 288(3):1953, 2013
Morales WJ, Madhav H: Efficacy and safety of indomethacin compared with magnesium sulfate in the management of preterm labor: a randomized study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 169:97, 1993a
Morales WJ, Smith SG, Angel JL, et al: Efficacy and safety of indomethacin versus ritodrine in the management of preterm labor: a randomized study. Obstet Gynecol 74:567, 1989
Morales WJ, Talley T: Premature rupture of membranes at <25 weeks: a management dilemma. Am J Obstet Gynecol 168:503, 1993b
Morgan JL, Nelson DB, Casey BM, et al: Impact of metabolic acidemia at birth on neonatal outcomes in infants born before 34 weeks' gestation. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(16):1902, 2017
Motomura K, Romero R, Galaz J, et al: RNA Sequencing reveals distinct immune responses in the chorioamniotic membranes of women with preterm labor and microbial or sterile intra-amniotic inflammation. Infect Immun 89(5):e00819, 2021
Moutquin JM, Sherman D, Cohen H, et al: Double-blind, randomized, controlled trial of atosiban and ritodrine in the treatment of preterm labor: a multicenter effectiveness and safety study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:1191, 2000
Muench MV, Baschat AA, Kopelman J, et al: Indomethacin therapy initiated before 24 weeks of gestation for the prevention of preterm birth. Obstet Gynecol 101:65S, 2003
Muench MV, Harman CR, Baschat AA, et al: Early fetal exposure to long term indomethacin therapy to prevent preterm delivery: neonatal outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185:S149, 2001
Murphy KE: Betamethasone compared with dexamethasone for preterm birth: a call for trials. Obstet Gynecol 110:7, 2007
Nallasamy S, Mahendroo M: Distinct roles of cervical epithelia and stroma in pregnancy and parturition. Semin Reprod Med 35(2):190, 2017

National Institutes of Health: Antenatal corticosteroids revisited: repeat courses. NIH Consens Statement 17(2):1, 2000
Nelson DB, Hanlon A, Nachamkin I, et al: Early pregnancy changes in bacterial vaginosis-associated bacteria and preterm delivery. Paediatr Perinat Epidemiol 28(2):88, 2014
Nelson DB, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: A chronicle of the 17OHP-C story to prevent recurrent preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(2):175, 2021
Nelson DB, McIntire DD, McDonald J, et al: 17-alpha hydroxyprogesterone caproate did not reduce the rate of recurrent preterm birth in a prospective cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(6):600.e1, 2017
Nelson KB, Grether JK: Can magnesium sulfate reduce the risk of cerebral palsy in very-low-birthweight infants? Pediatrics 95:263, 1995
Nelson LH, Anderson RL, O'Shea M, et al: Expectant management of preterm premature rupture of the membranes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 171:350, 1994
Nicolaides KH, Syngelaki A, Poon LC, et al: A randomized trial of a cervical pessary to prevent preterm singleton birth. N Engl J Med 374(11):1044, 2016
Niebyl JR, Blake DA, White RD, et al: The inhibition of premature labor with indomethacin. Am J Obstet Gynecol 136:1014, 1980
Nikolova T, Uotila J, Nikolova N, et al: Prediction of spontaneous preterm delivery in women presenting with premature labor: a comparison of placenta alpha microglobulin-1, phosphorylated insulin-like growth factor binding protein-1, and cervical length. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(6):610.e1, 2018
Norman JE, Marlow N, Messow CM, et al: Vaginal progesterone prophylaxis for preterm birth (the OPPTIMUM study): a multicenter, randomized, double-blind trial. Lancet 387(10033):2106, 2016
Norman M, Hallberg B, Abrahamsson T, et al: Association between year of birth and 1-year survival among extremely preterm infants in Sweden during 2004–2007 and 2014–2016. JAMA 321(12):1188, 2019
Northen AT, Norman GS, Anderson K, et al: Follow-up of children exposed in utero to 17 alpha-hydroxyprogesterone caproate compared with placebo. Obstet Gynecol 110(4):865, 2007
Owen J, Hankins G, Iams JD, et al: Multicenter randomized trial of cerclage for preterm birth prevention in high-risk women with shortened mid-trimester cervical length. Am J Obstet Gynecol 201(4):375.e1, 2009
Palacios C, Kostiuk LK, Peña-Rosas JP: Vitamin D supplementation for women during pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD008873, 2019
Papatsonis DN, Van Geijn HP, Ader HJ, et al: Nifedipine and ritodrine in the management of preterm labor: a randomized multicenter trial. Obstet Gynecol 90:230, 1997
Parilla BV, Dooley SL, Minogue JP, et al: The efficacy of oral terbutaline after intravenous tocolysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 169:965, 1993
Parry S, Leite R, Esplin MS, et al: Cervicovaginal fluid proteomic analysis to identify potential biomarkers for preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(5):493.e1, 2020
Peltoniemi OM, Kari MA, Tammela O, et al: Randomized trial of a single repeat dose of prenatal betamethasone treatment in imminent preterm birth. Pediatrics, 119:290, 2007
Perry KG Jr, Martin RW, Blake PG, et al: Maternal mortality associated with adult respiratory distress syndrome. South Med J 91(5):441, 1998
Peterson LS, Stelzer IA, Tsai AS, et al: Multiomic immune clockworks of pregnancy. Semin Immunopathol 42(4):397, 2020
Petrini JR, Dias T, McCormick MC, et al: Increased risk of adverse neurological development for late preterm infants. J Pediatr 154(2):169, 2009
Petrova A, Demissie K, Rhoads GG, et al: Association of maternal fever during labor with neonatal and infant morbidity and mortality. Obstet Gynecol 98:20, 2001
Pierce-Williams RA, Burd J, Felder L, et al: Clinical course of severe and critical coronavirus disease 2019 in hospitalized pregnancies: a United States cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 2(3):100134, 2020
Pirjani R, Moini A, Almasi-Hashiani A, et al: Placenta alpha microglobulin-1 (PartoSure) test for the prediction of preterm birth: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med November 17, 2019 [Epub ahead of print]
Pizzella S, El Helou N, Chubiz J, et al: Evolving cervical imaging technologies to predict preterm birth. Semin Immunopathol 42(4):385, 2020
Premkumar A, Sinha N, Miller ES, et al: Perioperative use of cefazolin and indomethacin for physical examination-indicated cerclages to improve gestational latency. Obstet Gynecol 135(6):1409, 2020
Prior M, Hibberd R, Asemota N, et al: Inadvertent P-hacking among trials and systematic reviews of the effect of progestogens in pregnancy? A systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 124(7):1008, 2017
Promislow JH, Hertz-Picciotto I, Schramm M, et al: Bed rest and other determinants of bone loss during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:1077, 2004
Purisch SE, Gyamfi-Bannerman C: Epidemiology of preterm birth. Semin Perinatol 41(7):387, 2017
Quist-Nelson J, de Ruigh AA, Seidler AL, et al: Immediate delivery compared with expectant management in late preterm prelabor rupture of membranes: an individual participant data meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 131(2):269, 2018
Raju TN, Mercer BM, Burchfield DJ, et al: Periviable birth: executive summary of a joint workshop by the Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, American Academy of Pediatrics, and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Obstet Gynecol 123(5):1083, 2014
Reddy UM, Zhang J, Sun L, et al: Neonatal mortality by attempted route of delivery in early preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207:117.e1, 2012
Rehal A, Benkó Z, De Paco Matallana C, et al: Early vaginal progesterone versus placebo in twin pregnancies for the prevention of spontaneous preterm birth: a randomized, double-blind trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(1):86.e1, 2020
Reinebrant HE, Pileggi-Castro C, Romero CL, et al: Cyclo-oxygenase (COX) inhibitors for treating preterm labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD001992, 2015
Roberts D, Brown J, Medley N, et al: Antenatal corticosteroids for accelerating fetal lung maturation for women at risk of preterm birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD004454, 2017
Rohwer AC, Oladapo OT, Hofmeyr GJ: Strategies for optimizing antenatal corticosteroid administration for women with anticipated preterm birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD013633, 2020
Roman A, Zork N, Haeri S, et al: Physical examination-indicated cerclage in twin pregnancy: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(6):902.e1, 2020
Romero R, Conde-Agudelo A, Da Fonseca E, et al: Vaginal progesterone for preventing preterm birth and adverse perinatal outcomes in singleton gestations with a short cervix: a meta-analysis of individual patient data. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(2):161, 2018
Romero R, Dey SK, Fisher SJ: Preterm labor: one syndrome, many causes. 345(6198):760, 2014
Romero R, Nores J, Mazor M, et al: Microbial invasion of the amniotic cavity during term labor. Prevalence and clinical significance. J Reprod Med 38:543, 1993
Romero R, Sibai BM, Sanchez-Ramos L, et al: An oxytocin receptor antagonist (atosiban) in the treatment of preterm labor: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial with tocolytic rescue. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:1173, 2000
Romero R, Stanczyk FZ: Progesterone is not the same as 17α-hydroxyprogesterone caproate: implications for obstetrical practice. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(6):421, 2013
Rossi RM, DeFranco EA: Maternal complications associated with periviable birth. Obstet Gynecol 132(1):107, 2018
Rossi RM, Hall E, DeFranco EA: Contemporary trends in cesarean delivery utilization for live births between 22 0/7 and 23 6/7 weeks of gestation. Obstet Gynecol 133(3):451, 2019
Rouse DJ, Caritis SN, Peaceman AM, et al: A trial of 17alpha-hydroxyprogesterone caproate to prevent prematurity in twins. N Engl J Med 357:454, 2007
Rouse DJ, Hirtz DG, Thom E, et al: A randomized, controlled trial of magnesium sulfate for the prevention of cerebral palsy. N Engl J Med 359:895, 2008
Rouse DJ: Magnesium sulfate for fetal neuroprotection. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(4):296, 2011
Rysavy MA, Li L, Bell EF: Between-hospital variation in treatment and outcomes in extremely preterm infants. N Engl J Med 372(19):1801, 2015
Sakabe NJ, Aneas I, Knoblauch N, et al: Transcriptome and regulatory maps of decidua-derived stromal cells inform gene discovery in preterm birth. Sci Adv 6(49):eabc8696, 2020
Salim R, Garmi G, Zohar N, et al: Nifedipine compared with atosiban for treating preterm labor: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 120(6):1323, 2012
Salow AD, Pool LR, Grobman WA, et al: Associations of neighborhood-level racial residential segregation with adverse pregnancy outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(3):351.e1, 2018
Samol JM, Lambers DS: Magnesium sulfate tocolysis and pulmonary edema: the drug or the vehicle? Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:1430, 2005
Sanz M, Kornman K, Working group 3 of the joint EFP/AAP workshop: Periodontitis and adverse pregnancy outcomes: consensus report of the Joint EFP/AAP Workshop on Periodontitis and Systemic Diseases. J Periodontol 84(4 Suppl):S164, 2013
Schuster HJ, de Jonghe BA, Limpens J, et al: Asymptomatic vaginal Candida colonization and adverse pregnancy outcomes including preterm birth: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 2(3):100163, 2020

Segel SY, Miles AM, Clothier B, et al: Duration of antibiotic therapy after preterm premature rupture of fetal membranes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:799, 2003
Serrano MG, Parikh HI, Brooks JP, et al: Racioethnic diversity in the dynamics of the vaginal microbiome during pregnancy. Nat Med 25(6):1001, 2019
Shaddeau AK, Burd I: Antenatal monitoring after preterm rupture of membranes. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 47(4):625, 2020
Sharma S, Ou J, Strom S, et al: Identification of enzymes involved in the metabolism of 17alpha-hydroxyprogesterone caproate: an effective agent for prevention of preterm birth. Drug Metab Dispos 36(9):1896, 2008
Shennan A, Chandiramani M, Bennett P, et al: MAVRIC: a multicenter randomized controlled trial of transabdominal vs transvaginal cervical cerclage. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(3):261.e1, 2020
Shynlova O, Nedd-Roderique T, Li Y, et al: Infiltration of myeloid cells into decidua is a critical early event in the labour cascade and post-partum uterine remodeling. J Cell Mol Med 17(2):311, 2013a
Shynlova O, Nedd-Roderique T, Li Y, et al: Myometrial immune cells contribute to term parturition, preterm labour and post-partum involution in mice. J Cell Mol Med 17(1):90, 2013b
Sibai B, Saade GR, Das AF: Re-examining the Meis trials for evidence of false-positive results. Obstet Gynecol 136(3):622, 2020
Sibai BM: Magnesium sulfate for neuroprotection in patients at risk for early preterm delivery: not yet. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(4):296, 2011
Simons NE, Leeuw M, Hooft JV, et al: The long-term effect of prenatal progesterone treatment on child development, behavior and health: a systematic review. BJOG 128(6):964, 2021.
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, McIntosh J, Feltovich H, et al: The role of routine cervical length screening in selected high- and low-risk women for preterm birth prevention. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(3):B2, 2016b
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Implementation of the use of antenatal corticosteroids in the late preterm birth period in women at risk for preterm delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(2):B13, 2016a
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: SMFM statement: use of 17-alpha hydroxyprogesterone caproate for prevention of recurrent preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(1):B16, 2020b
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine Consult Series #50: the role of activity restriction in obstetric management: (replaces consult number 33, August 2014). Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(2):B2, 2020a
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: The role of cervical pessary placement to prevent preterm birth in clinical practice. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(3):B8, 2017
Sooranna SR, Lee Y, Kim LU, et al: Mechanical stretch activates type 2 cyclooxygenase via activator protein-1 transcription factor in human myometrial cells. Mol Hum Reprod 10:109, 2004
Sosa C, Althabe F, Belizan J, et al: Bed rest in singleton pregnancies for preventing preterm birth. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD003581, 2004
Stephen GL, Lui S, Hamilton SA, et al: Transcriptomic profiling of human choriodecidua during term labor: inflammation as a key driver of labor. Am J Reprod Immunol 73(1):36, 2015
Stiles AD: Prenatal corticosteroids—early gain, long-term questions. N Engl J Med 357:1248, 2007
Stoll BJ, Hansen N, Fanaroff AA, et al: Changes in pathogens causing early-onset sepsis in very-low-birth-weight infants. N Engl J Med 347:240, 2002
Stoll BJ, Hansen NI, Bell EF, et al: Neonatal outcomes of extremely preterm infants from the NICHD Neonatal Research Network. Pediatrics 126:443, 2010
Stout MJ, Zhou Y, Wylie KM, et al: Early pregnancy vaginal microbiome trends and preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(3):356.e1, 2017
Subtil D, Brabant G, Tilloy E, et al: Early clindamycin for bacterial vaginosis in pregnancy (PREMEVA): a multicentre, double-blind, randomised controlled trial. Lancet 392(10160):2018
Terkildsen MF, Parilla BV, Kumar P, et al: Factors associated with success of emergent second-trimester cerclage. Obstet Gynecol 101:565, 2003
Theis KR, Romero R, Winters AD, et al: Does the human placenta delivered at term have a microbiota? Results of cultivation, quantitative real-time PCR, 16S rRNA gene sequencing, and metagenomics. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(3):267.e1, 2019
Timmons BC, Reese J, Socrate S, et al: Prostaglandins are essential for cervical ripening in LPS-mediated preterm birth but not term or antiprogestin-driven preterm ripening. Endocrinology 155(1):287, 2014
Tita A, Owen J, Cliver S, et al: Decreasing temporal trends in adjusted preterm birth among women receiving prenatal care at a university-based health system. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204:S183, 2011
Tita AT, Cliver SP, Goepfert AR, et al: Clinical trial of interconceptional antibiotics to prevent preterm birth: subgroup analyses and possible adverse antibiotic-microbial interaction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196:367, 2007
To MS, Alfirevic Z, Heath VC, et al: Cervical cerclage for prevention of preterm delivery in women with short cervix: randomized controlled trial. Lancet 363(9424):1849, 2004
Tomashek KM, Shapiro-Mendoza CK, Davidoff MJ, et al: Differences in mortality between late-preterm and term singleton infants in the United States, 1995–2002. J Pediatr 151:450, 2007
Tong M, Abrahms VM: Neutrophils in preterm birth: friend or foe? Placenta 102:17, 2020
Tong M, Hanna SE, Abrahams VM: Polymicrobial stimulation of human fetal membranes induce neutrophil activation and neutrophil extracellular trap release. J Reprod Immunol 145:103306, 2021
United States Congress: Hearing on improving maternal health: legislation to advance prevention efforts and access to care. 2019. Available at https://energycommerce.house.gov/committee/-activity/hearings/hearing-on-improving-maternal-health-legislation-to-advance-prevention. Accessed March 13, 2021
Venkatesh KK, Riley L, Castro VM, et al: Association of antenatal depression symptoms and antidepressant treatment with preterm birth. Obstet Gynecol 127(5):926, 2016
Vergnes JN, Sixou M: Preterm low birthweight and maternal periodontal status: a meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196:135.e1, 2007
Villamor-Martinez E, Lubach GA, Rahim OM, et al: Association of histological and clinical chorioamnionitis with neonatal sepsis among preterm infants: a systematic review, meta-analysis, and meta-regression. Front Immunol 11:972, 2020
Viteri OA, Blackwell SC, Chauhan SP, et al: Antenatal corticosteroids for the prevention of respiratory distress syndrome in premature twins. Obstet Gynecol 128(3):583, 2016
Volozonoka L, Rots D, Kempa I, et al: Genetic landscape of preterm birth due to cervical insufficiency: comprehensive gene analysis and patient next-generation sequencing data interpretation. PLoS One 15(3):e0230771, 2020
Vornhagen J, Adams Waldorf KM, Rajagopal L: Perinatal group B streptococcal infections: virulence factors, immunity, and prevention strategies. Trends Microbiol 25(11):919, 2017
Walker KF, Thornton JG: Tocolysis and preterm labour. Lancet 387(10033): 2068, 2016
Wang H, Parry S, Macones G, et al: A functional SNP in the promoter of the SERPINH1 gene increases risk of preterm premature rupture of membranes in African Americans. PNAS 103:13463, 2006
Wapner RJ, Sorokin Y, Mele L, et al: Long-term outcomes after repeat doses of antenatal corticosteroids. N Engl J Med 357:1190, 2007
Watkins PL, Dagle JM, Bell EF, et al: Outcomes at 18 to 22 months of corrected age for infants born at 22 to 25 weeks of gestation in a center practicing active management. J Pediatr 217:52, 2020
Weiss JL, Malone FD, Vidaver J, et al: Threatened abortion: a risk factor for poor pregnancy outcome, a population-based screening study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190:745, 2004
Wenstrom K, Weiner CP, Merrill D, et al: A placebo controlled randomized trial of the terbutaline pump for prevention of preterm delivery. Am J Perinatol 14:87, 1997
Werner EF, Han CS, Savitz DA, et al: Health outcomes for vaginal compared with cesarean delivery of appropriately grown preterm neonates. Obstet Gynecol 121:1195, 2013
White BA, Creedon DJ, Nelson KE, et al: The vaginal microbiome in health and disease. Trends Endocrinol Metab 22(10):389, 2011
WHO ACTION Trials Collaborators, Oladapo OT, Vogel JP, et al: Antenatal dexamethasone for early preterm birth in low-resource countries. N Engl J Med 383(26):2020
Willcockson AR, Nandu T, Liu CL, et al: Transcriptome signature identifies distinct cervical pathways induced in lipopolysaccharide-mediated preterm birth. Biol Reprod 98(3):408, 2018
Wing DA, Haeri S, Silber AC, et al: Placental alpha microglobulin-1 compared with fetal fibronectin to predict preterm delivery in symptomatic women. Obstet Gynecol 130(6):1183, 2017
Winger EE, Reed JL, Ji X, et al: MicroRNAs isolated from peripheral blood in the first trimester predict spontaneous preterm birth. PLoS One 15(8):e0236805, 2020
Winn HN, Chen M, Amon E, et al: Neonatal pulmonary hypoplasia and perinatal mortality in patients with mid-trimester rupture of amniotic membranes—a critical analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:1638, 2000
World Health Organization: International statistical classification of diseases and related health problems, 11th revision. 2019. Available at: www.who.int/classifications/classification-of-diseases. Accessed April 27, 2021
World Health Organization: Preterm birth. 2018. Available at: www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/preterm-birth. Accessed March 26, 2021
Wu YW, Colford JM Jr: Chorioamnionitis as a risk factor for cerebral palsy: a meta-analysis. JAMA 284(11):1417, 2000

Yoon BH, Romero R, Park JS, et al: Fetal exposure to an intra-amniotic inflammation and the development of cerebral palsy at the age of three years. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:675, 2000

Yoon BH, Romero R, Park JY, et al: Antibiotic administration can eradicate intra-amniotic infection or intra-amniotic inflammation in a subset of patients with preterm labor and intact membranes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(2):141.e1, 2019

Yoon BH, Yang SH, Jun JK, et al: Maternal blood C-reactive protein, white blood cell count, and temperature in preterm labor: a comparison with amniotic fluid white blood cell count. Obstet Gynecol 87:231, 1996

Younge N, Goldstein RF, Bann CM, et al: Survival and neurodevelopmental outcomes among periviable infants. N Engl J Med 376(7):617, 2017

Yule CS, Ambia AM, Duryea EL, et al: The effect of normal saline on renal function and electrolytes in women with preeclampsia. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med November 18, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]

Zhang G, Feenstra B, Bacelis J, et al: Genetic associations with gestational duration and spontaneous preterm birth. N Engl J Med 377(12):1156, 2017

Zhang X, Liu M: Clinical observations on the prevention and treatment of premature labor with nifedipine. [Chinese] Hua Xi Yi Ke Da Xue Xue Bao 33(2):288, 2002

Zuckerman H, Reiss U, Rubinstein I: Inhibition of human premature labor by indomethacin. Obstet Gynecol 44:787, 1974

CHAPTER 46

Postterm Pregnancy

The adjectives *postterm*, *prolonged*, *postdates*, and *postmature* are used interchangeably to describe pregnancies that have exceeded a duration considered to be the upper limit of normal. We eschew use of the term *postdates* because the real issue in many postterm pregnancies is uncertainty in the estimated date of delivery (EDD). *Postmature* is reserved for the uncommon clinical fetal syndrome in which the newborn has recognizable features indicating a pathologically prolonged pregnancy. Thus, *postterm* or *prolonged pregnancy* is our preferred term for an extended pregnancy.

The definition of postterm pregnancy is one that exceeds $42^{0/7}$ weeks or is ≥294 days from the first day of the last menstrual period (LMP). Importantly, this is 42 "completed weeks." Pregnancies between $41^{1/7}$ and $41^{6/7}$ weeks, although in the 42nd week, do not complete 42 weeks until the seventh day has elapsed. These are considered *late term* (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019e, 2020b).

ESTIMATED GESTATIONAL AGE

The current definition of postterm pregnancy assumes that ovulation occurs 2 weeks after the LMP. Thus, some pregnancies may not actually be postterm because of error in menstrual date recall or delayed ovulation. Even with exactly recalled menstrual dates, there still is imprecision, and first-trimester sonography is the most accurate method to establish or confirm gestational age (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b, 2020b). Several studies support this (Bennett, 2004; Joseph, 2007). If available, gestational ages calculated from the LMP and from the first accurate ultrasound are reconciled as shown in Table 14-1 (p. 248), and the EDD is recorded (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c).

INCIDENCE

Of the 3.75 million neonates born in the United States during 2019, 0.3 percent were delivered at ≥42 weeks (Martin, 2021). This rate has declined because of improved pregnancy dating accuracy and earlier intervention. To identify predisposing factors for postterm pregnancy, one analysis of the Danish Birth Cohort found only prepregnancy body mass index ≥25 and nulliparity to be significantly associated (Olesen, 2006). Others reported similar associations (Arrowsmith, 2011; Mission, 2015). Nulliparas with a long midpregnancy cervical length (third or fourth quartile) are twice as likely to deliver after 42 weeks (van der Ven, 2016). Last, the risk for adverse pregnancy outcomes in postterm pregnancies increases with advancing maternal age (Kortekaas, 2020).

The tendency for some mothers to have repeated postterm births suggests that some prolonged pregnancies are biologically determined. In one study, if a mother and daughter had a prolonged pregnancy, the risk for the daughter to have a subsequent postterm pregnancy was significantly increased

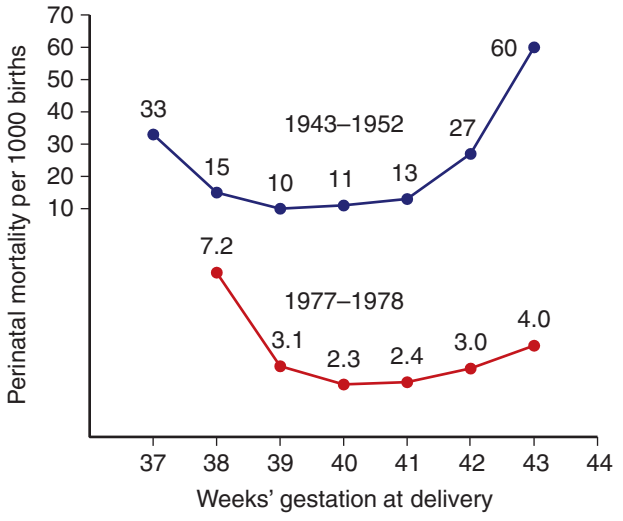


FIGURE 46-1 Perinatal mortality rates in late pregnancy according to gestational age of all births in Sweden during 1943–1952 compared with those during 1977–1978. The partially compressed scale is used for convenience in depiction. (Adapted from Bakketeig, 1991; Lindell, 1956.)

(Oberg, 2013). Maternal, not paternal, genes influence prolonged pregnancy (Laursen, 2004). For example, genes from one locus of chromosome 2q13 are associated with gestational duration (Liu, 2019). As discussed in Chapter 5 (p. 102), rare fetal-placental factors that predispose to postterm pregnancy include anencephaly, adrenal hypoplasia, and X-linked placental sulfatase deficiency (Ayyavoo, 2014; MacDonald, 1965).

PERINATAL MORTALITY AND MORBIDITY

Rates of stillbirth, neonatal death, and infant morbidity all rise after the EDD. Data from times before widespread intervention for postterm pregnancies are most illustrative. In two large Swedish studies, the perinatal mortality rate reached a nadir at 39 to 40 weeks' gestation and rose thereafter (Fig. 46-1). This trend is also reported for the United States (MacDorman, 2009). The major causes of morbidity in these studies include gestational hypertension, prolonged labor with cephalopelvic disproportion, birth injuries, and hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy (Table 46-1). Similar outcomes were reported in 78,022 women with postterm pregnancies delivered before routine labor induction was adopted in Denmark (Olesen, 2003). A slight increase in cerebral palsy rates and two-point lower intelligence quotient (IQ) scores have been reported in postterm births (Moster, 2010; Williams, 2020; Yang, 2010). Conversely, data do not associate autism with postterm birth (Gardener, 2011).

Alexander and colleagues (2000a) reviewed 56,317 singleton pregnancies delivered at ≥40 weeks between 1988 and 1998 at Parkland Hospital. Labor was induced in 35 percent of pregnancies completing 42 weeks. The rate of cesarean delivery for dystocia or fetal distress was significantly greater at 42 weeks compared with earlier gestations. More newborns of postterm pregnancies were admitted to intensive care units. Notably, the incidence of neonatal seizures and deaths was doubled at 42 weeks.

TABLE 46-1. Adverse Maternal and Perinatal Outcomes Associated with Postterm Pregnancy

Maternal	Perinatal
Fetal macrosomia	Stillbirth
Oligohydramnios	Postmaturity syndrome
Preeclampsia	NICU admission
Cesarean delivery	Meconium aspiration syndrome
Labor dystocia	Neonatal convulsions
Fetal jeopardy	Hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy
Shoulder dystocia	Birth injuries
Postpartum hemorrhage	Infection
Forceps delivery	Childhood obesity
Perineal lacerations	

NICU = neonatal intensive care unit.
From Amark, 2021; Kortekaas, 2020; Lindquist, 2021; MacDorman, 2009; Maoz, 2019; Middleton, 2018; Olesen, 2003.

Smith (2001) has challenged analyses such as these because the population at risk for perinatal mortality in a given week consists of all ongoing pregnancies rather than just the births in a given week. He calculated perinatal mortality rates using only births in a given week of gestation from 37 to 43 completed weeks compared with the cumulative probability—the *perinatal index*—of death when all ongoing pregnancies are included in the denominator. Using this computation, delivery at 38 weeks' gestation had the lowest risk for perinatal death. In current practice, perinatal death is balanced against morbidity associated with immaturity. This shapes the rationale for delaying delivery until 39 weeks' gestation unless a comorbidity warrants earlier intervention (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019d).

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Postmaturity Syndrome

The postmature newborn is unique, and features include wrinkled, patchy, peeling skin; a long, thin body that suggests wasting; and advanced maturity in that the neonate is open-eyed, unusually alert, and appears old and worried (Fig. 46-2). Skin wrinkling can be prominent on the palms and soles, and nails are typically long. Most postmature neonates are not technically growth restricted because their birthweight seldom falls below the 10th percentile for gestational age (Chap. 47, p. 825). However, severe growth restriction—which logically must have preceded completion of 42 weeks—may be present.

The incidence of postmaturity syndrome in newborns at 41, 42, or 43 weeks, respectively, has not been conclusively determined, but the syndrome complicates 10 to 20 percent of pregnancies at 42 completed weeks (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). Associated oligohydramnios substantially raises the likelihood of postmaturity. Trimmer and associates (1990) reported that 88 percent of fetuses were postmature if there was oligohydramnios, defined by a sonographic maximal vertical amnionic fluid pocket that measured ≤1 cm at 42 weeks.

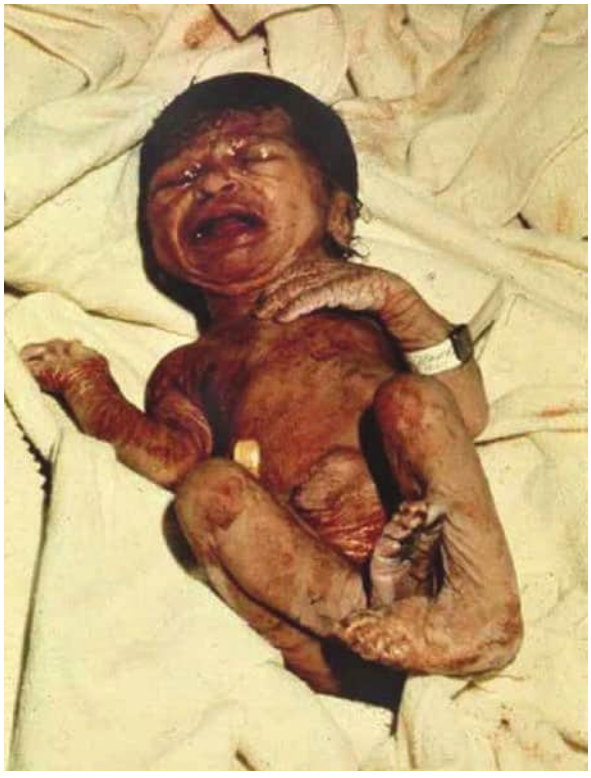


FIGURE 46-2 Postmaturity syndrome. Neonate delivered at 43 weeks' gestation with thick, viscous meconium coating the desquamating skin. Note the long, thin appearance and wrinkling of the hands.

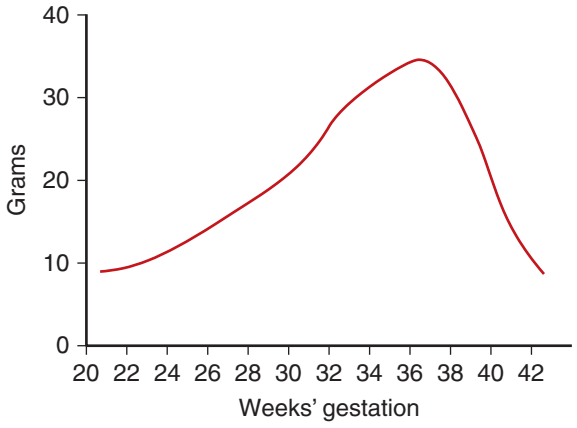


FIGURE 46-3 Mean daily fetal growth during previous week of gestation. (Redrawn from Hendricks CH: Patterns of fetal and placental growth: the second half of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 24:357, 1964.)

Placental Dysfunction

Many believe that postterm pregnancy is an abnormal state. Redman and Staff (2015) suggest that limited placental capacity, characterized by dysfunctional syncytiotrophoblast, explains the greater risks of the postmaturity syndrome. A murine model of stillborn fetuses supports this theory (Rahman, 2017).

Clifford (1954) proposed that the associated skin changes follow loss of the protective effects of vernix caseosa. He also attributed the postmaturity syndrome to placental senescence, although he did not find placental degeneration histologically. Still, the concept that postmaturity stems from placental insufficiency has persisted despite an absence of morphological or significant quantitative findings (Larsen, 1995; Redman, 2015; Rushton, 1991). However, the rate of placental apoptosis—programmed cell death—is significantly greater at 41 to 42 completed weeks compared with that at 36 to 39 weeks (Smith, 1999). Several proapoptotic genes such as *kisspeptin* are upregulated in postterm placental explants compared with the same genes in term ones (Torricelli, 2012). The clinical significance of such apoptosis is unclear.

Jazayeri and coworkers (1998) investigated cord blood erythropoietin levels in 124 appropriately grown newborns delivered from 37 to 43 weeks. The only known stimulator of erythropoietin is decreased partial oxygen pressure. Thus, they sought to assess whether fetal oxygenation was compromised due to placental aging in postterm pregnancies. All women had an uncomplicated labor and delivery. Cord blood erythropoietin levels were significantly elevated in pregnancies reaching 41 weeks or more. Although Apgar scores and acid-base studies were normal, these researchers concluded that fetal oxygenation was decreased in some postterm gestations.

However, the postterm fetus typically continues to gain weight and thus be unusually large at birth. This suggests that placental function is not severely compromised. Indeed, continued fetal growth is the norm—albeit at a slower rate beginning at 37 completed weeks (Fig. 46-3). Nahum and associates (1995) confirmed that fetal growth continues until at least 42 weeks. However, umbilical blood flow does not increase concomitantly (Link, 2007).

Fetal Distress and Oligohydramnios

The principal reasons for increased risks to postterm fetuses were described by Leveno and colleagues (1984). Both antepartum fetal jeopardy and intrapartum nonreassuring fetal status were found to be the consequence of cord compression associated with oligohydramnios. In their analysis of 727 postterm pregnancies, intrapartum nonreassuring fetal status detected with electronic monitoring was not associated with late decelerations characteristic of uteroplacental insufficiency. Instead, one or more prolonged decelerations such as shown in Figure 46-4 preceded three fourths of emergency cesarean deliveries for nonreassuring fetal heart rate tracings. In all but two cases, there were also variable decelerations. Another common fetal heart rate pattern, although not ominous by itself, was the saltatory baseline. As described in Chapter 24 (p. 453), these findings are consistent with cord occlusion as the proximate cause of the nonreassuring tracings. Other correlates included oligohydramnios and viscous meconium. Schaffer and coworkers (2005) implicated a nuchal cord in abnormal intrapartum fetal heart rate patterns, meconium, and compromised newborn condition in prolonged pregnancies.

Normally, the volume of amnionic fluid continues to decline after 38 weeks, and logically oligohydramnios may become problematic. Moreover, meconium release into an already reduced amnionic fluid volume results in thick, viscous fluid that may cause *meconium aspiration syndrome* (Chap. 33, p. 600). The risk for this increases to 5 percent at 42 weeks (Ward, 2020).

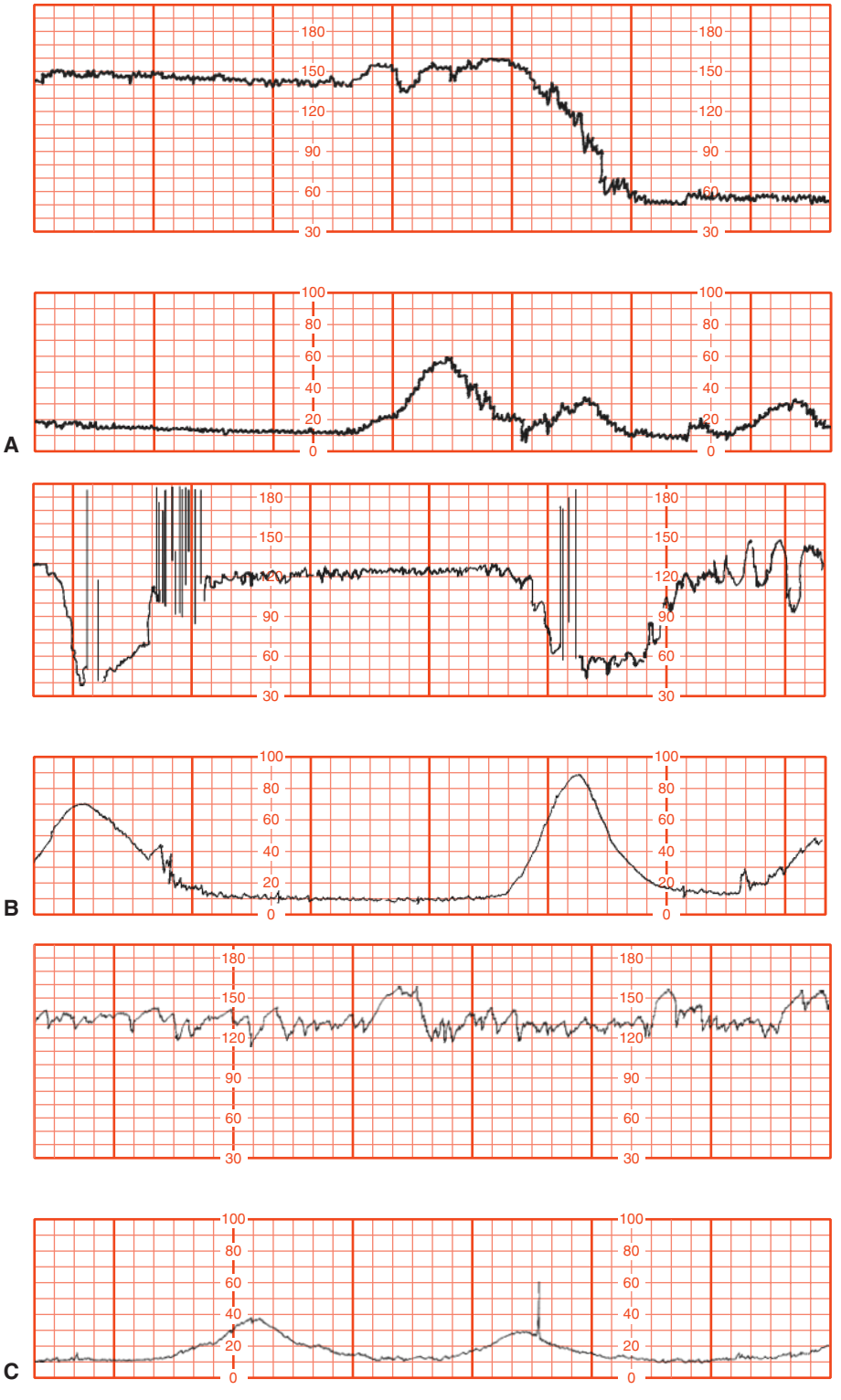


FIGURE 46-4 A. Prolonged fetal heart rate deceleration before emergency cesarean delivery in a postterm pregnancy with oligohydramnios. **B.** Variable decelerations in a postterm pregnancy with oligohydramnios. **C.** Saltatory baseline fetal heart rate showing oscillations exceeding 20 bpm and associated with oligohydramnios in a postterm pregnancy. (Reproduced with permission from Leveno KJ, Quirk JG, Cunningham FG, et al: Prolonged pregnancy, I. Observations concerning the causes of fetal distress, Am J Obstet Gynecol. 1984 Nov 1;150(5 Pt 1):465–473.)

Fetal-growth Restriction

In the late 1990s, the clinical significance of fetal-growth restriction in the otherwise uncomplicated pregnancy became more fully appreciated. Data from the National Swedish Medical Birth Registry showed that stillbirths were more common among growth-restricted newborns who were delivered after 42 weeks (Clausson, 1999; Divon, 1998). Indeed, a third of postterm stillborn neonates were growth restricted. During this time in Sweden, labor induction and antenatal fetal testing usually commenced at 42 weeks. In a study from Parkland Hospital, Alexander and colleagues (2000d) analyzed outcomes for 355 neonates from gestations ≥42 weeks and with birthweights <3rd percentile. These outcomes were compared with those of 14,520 similarly aged newborns above the 3rd percentile. Morbidity and mortality rates were significantly higher in the growth-restricted neonates. Moreover, a fourth of all stillbirths associated with prolonged pregnancy were in this comparatively small number of growth-restricted fetuses.

COMPLICATIONS

Oligohydramnios

Recognized postterm complications include oligohydramnios and fetal macrosomia. In 38 postterm pregnancies, Trimmer and colleagues (1990) sonographically measured hourly fetal urine production using sequential bladder volume measurements. Diminished urine production was found to be associated with oligohydramnios. Using Doppler waveforms, Oz and associates (2002) concluded that fetal renal blood flow is reduced in postterm pregnancies complicated by oligohydramnios. The lack of increasing umbilical blood flow postterm may be a possible cause (Link, 2007).

Diminished amnionic fluid volume at any gestational age signifies increased fetal risk. Unfortunately, an exact method to define this decreased volume is lacking. Currently, sonographic measurement of the deepest vertical pocket or calculation of the amnionic

fluid index (AFI) are options (Chap. 14, p. 257). One study of postterm pregnancies attempted to determine which amnionic fluid volume criteria best predicted normal and abnormal outcomes (Fischer, 1993). The smaller the amnionic fluid pocket, the greater the likelihood of clinically significant oligohydramnios. However, normal amnionic fluid volume did not preclude abnormal outcomes. One randomized trial assigned 500 women with postterm pregnancies to assessment using either AFI or the deepest vertical pocket (Alfirevic, 1997). The authors concluded that the AFI overestimated the number of abnormal outcomes in postterm pregnancies.

Regardless of the criteria used to diagnose oligohydramnios in postterm pregnancies, most investigators have found a higher incidence of some measure of "fetal compromise" during labor. Thus, oligohydramnios by most definitions is a clinically meaningful finding. Conversely, reassurance of continued fetal well-being in the presence of "normal" amnionic fluid volume is tenuous. This may be related to how quickly pathological oligohydramnios can develop.

Macrosomia

The velocity of fetal weight gain peaks at approximately 37 weeks (see Fig. 46-3). Although growth velocity slows at that time, most fetuses continue to gain weight. According to Duryea and associates (2014), the 95th percentile at 42 weeks is 4475 g. Even so, in one study, brachial plexus injury was not related to postterm gestation (Walsh, 2011).

Intuitively, it seems that both maternal and fetal morbidity associated with macrosomia would be mitigated with timely induction to preempt further growth. This, however, does not appear to be the case. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) concludes that current evidence does not support such a practice in women at term with suspected fetal macrosomia. Moreover, the College notes that in the absence of diabetes, vaginal delivery is not contraindicated for women with an estimated fetal weight up to 5000 g (Chap. 27, p. 501). Obvious problems with all such recommendations are substantive variations in fetal weight estimation.

ANTEPARTUM MANAGEMENT

After completing 42 weeks, labor induction is recommended to help avoid the just-described morbidity and mortality. For late-term gestations, some intervention is indicated, but the method and timing are not unanimous. The decision focuses on whether labor induction is warranted or if expectant management with fetal surveillance is best. In a survey done more than 15 years ago, 73 percent of members of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists reported routinely induced women at 41 weeks (Cleary-Goldman, 2006). Most of the remainder performed twice-weekly fetal antepartum testing until 42 completed weeks.

Induction Factors

A cervix that is soft, dilated, and effaced improves labor induction success. However, investigators have used differing criteria in studies of prolonged pregnancy. Harris and coworkers (1983) defined an unfavorable cervix by a Bishop score <7 and reported this in 92 percent of women at 42 weeks (Chap. 26, p. 488). Others found that 40 percent of women with a 41-week gestation had an "undilated cervix" (Hannah, 1992). In a study of 800 women undergoing induction for postterm pregnancy at Parkland Hospital, women without cervical dilation had a twofold higher cesarean delivery rate for "dystocia" (Alexander, 2000b). Instead, a cervical length ≤3 cm measured with transvaginal sonography predicted successful induction (Yang, 2004). In a similar study, cervical length ≤25 mm positively predicted spontaneous labor or successful induction (Vankayalapati, 2008).

Several investigators have evaluated prostaglandin E_2 (PGE_2) and E_1 (PGE_1) for induction in women with an unfavorable cervix and postterm pregnancy. A study by the Maternal–Fetal Medicine Units Network (1994) found that PGE_2 gel was not more effective than placebo. Alexander and associates (2000c) treated 393 women with a postterm pregnancy with PGE_2, regardless of cervical "favorability," and reported that almost half of the 84 women with cervical dilation of 2 to 4 cm entered labor with PGE_2 use alone. Prostaglandins and other agents used for cervical ripening are discussed in Chapter 26 (p. 488).

Sweeping or stripping of the membranes to induce labor and thereby prevent postterm pregnancy has been evaluated. A metaanalysis of 44 studies found that membrane stripping slightly increased spontaneous labor and lowered induction rates (Finucane, 2020). However, this practice did not lower the cesarean delivery rate. Other trials have found that sweeping membranes did not reduce the need to induce labor (Hill, 2008; Kashanian 2006; Wong, 2002). Drawbacks of membrane stripping included pain, vaginal bleeding, and irregular contractions without labor.

The station of the fetal head within the pelvis is another predictor of successful postterm pregnancy induction. Shin and colleagues (2004) studied 484 nulliparas who underwent induction after 41 weeks' gestation. The cesarean delivery rate was directly related to station. The rate was 6 percent if the vertex before induction was at –1 station; 20 percent at –2 station; 43 percent at –3 station; and 77 percent at –4 station.

Induction versus Fetal Testing

The less than optimal benefits from induction with an unfavorable cervix lead some clinicians to prefer fetal antepartum testing beginning at 41 completed weeks. In a Canadian study, 3407 women were randomly assigned at ≥41 weeks to induction or to fetal testing (Hannah, 1992). Labor induction resulted in a small but significant reduction in the cesarean delivery rate compared with fetal testing—21 versus 24 percent, respectively. There were only two stillbirths in the fetal testing group.

The Maternal–Fetal Medicine Network then performed a randomized trial of induction versus fetal testing beginning at 41 weeks' gestation (Gardner, 1996). Fetal surveillance included nonstress testing and sonographic estimation of amnionic fluid volume performed twice weekly in 175 women. Perinatal outcomes were compared with those of 265 women also at 41 weeks but randomly assigned to induction with or without

TABLE 46-2. Selected Maternal and Perinatal Outcomes from SWEPIS Trial

Outcome	Induction (n = 1381)	Expectant (n = 1379)	*p* value
Maternal			
Gestational age (days)	289 ± 1.3	292 ± 2.7	—
Labor (hours)	7.1 ± 5.4	8.3 ± 5.9	<0.001
Cesarean delivery	10.4%	10.7%	0.79
Operative vaginal delivery	6.4%	6.6%	0.87
Perinatal			
Primary composite	2.4%	2.2%	0.9
Perinatal mortality	0	6/1000	0.03
Meconium aspiration	0.1%	0.2%	1.00
Macrosomia (>4500 g)	4.9%	8.3%	<0.001
NICU stay (days)	3.4 ± 3	4.6 ± 5.6	NS

g = grams; NICU = neonatal intensive care unit; NS = not significant; SWEPIS = SWEdish Post-term Induction Study.

cervical ripening. There were no perinatal deaths, and the cesarean delivery rate did not differ between groups. The results of this study support the validity of either management scheme.

In another study of women reaching 41 completed weeks' gestation, those who entered spontaneous labor prior to $42^{0/7}$ weeks had a lower cesarean delivery rate than those who did not spontaneously labor but who underwent induction after $42^{0/7}$ weeks (Alexander, 2001). Cesarean delivery rates were significantly increased—19 versus 14 percent—in the induced group because of failure to progress.

A study from Denmark is also instructive (Zizzo, 2017). In 2011, the Danish national guidelines were changed from labor induction at $42^{0/7}$ weeks with no fetal surveillance to labor induction at $41^{2/7}$ to $41^{6/7}$ weeks with fetal surveillance beginning at $41^{0/7}$ weeks. They compared two 3-year epochs—one before and one after 2011. The rate of pregnancies that progressed past $42^{0/7}$ weeks decreased from 2.85 to 0.62 percent. Concurrently, as expected, the induction rate rose significantly, and this was accompanied by a drop in the perinatal mortality rate—22 to 13 per 1000 births. The cesarean delivery rate was not changed. A similar before-and-after observational study reported that induction at ≥42 weeks' gestation was associated with a significantly lower cesarean delivery rate—15 versus 19.4 percent (Bleicher, 2017).

To further address the question, the SWEdish Post-term Induction Study—SWEPIS—was a randomized trial that included 2760 low-risk pregnancies at 41 weeks' gestation. The trial compared outcomes with induction of labor at 41 weeks against expectant management and induction at 42 weeks. As shown in Table 46-2, maternal and perinatal outcomes were not different with the exception of perinatal mortality and macrosomia (Wennerholm, 2019). The study was stopped early because of a significantly higher perinatal mortality rate in the expectantly management group. The investigators concluded that these results should be interpreted with caution because the primary composite outcomes were not significantly different.

Management Strategies

At this time, evidence is insufficient to mandate a management strategy between 40 and 42 completed weeks. Thus, induction of labor or initiation of fetal surveillance at 41 weeks' gestation is a reasonable option. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2021) suggest that fetal surveillance should be done once or twice weekly beginning at 41 0/7 weeks. After completing 42 weeks, labor induction is recommended. A management algorithm by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) is summarized in Figure 46-5. In light of the recent studies that show an increased stillbirth rate associated with expectant management at 41 weeks, it is likely that routine induction will eventually become preferable in most circumstances.

When gestational age is uncertain, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) recommends delivery at 41 weeks' gestation using the best clinical estimate of gestational age. The College also recommends against amniocentesis for fetal lung maturity.

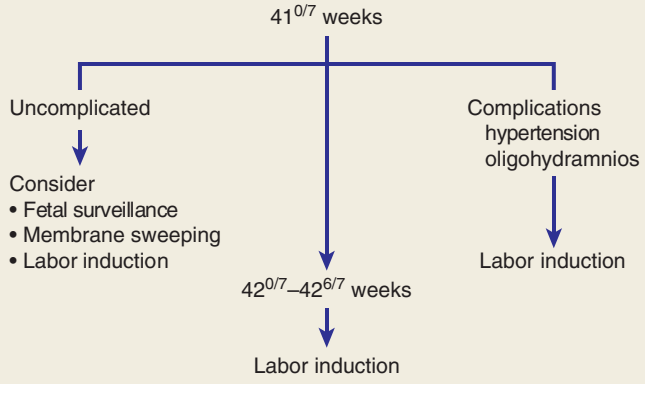


FIGURE 46-5 Algorithm for management of postterm pregnancy.

INTRAPARTUM MANAGEMENT

Labor is a particularly dangerous time for the postterm fetus. Thus, women whose pregnancies are known or suspected to be postterm ideally come to the hospital as soon as they suspect labor. While being evaluated for active labor, fetal heart rate and uterine contractions are monitored electronically for variations consistent with fetal compromise (Chap. 24, p. 457).

During labor, the decision to perform amniotomy is problematic. Further reduction in fluid volume following amniotomy can enhance the possibility of cord compression. Conversely, after membrane rupture, a scalp electrode and an intrauterine pressure catheter can be placed. These usually provide more precise data concerning fetal heart rate and uterine contractions. Amniotomy also aids identification of thick meconium.

Thick meconium in the amnionic fluid is particularly worrisome. The viscosity probably signifies the lack of liquid and thus oligohydramnios. Aspiration of thick meconium may cause severe pulmonary dysfunction and neonatal death (Chap. 33, p. 600). According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a), amnioinfusion does not prevent meconium aspiration syndrome. However, it remains a reasonable treatment approach for repetitive variable decelerations (Chap, 24, p. 459). Suctioning the pharynx once the head is delivered is not recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a; Wyckoff, 2020). If the depressed newborn has meconium-stained fluid, intubation is performed.

The likelihood of a successful vaginal delivery is reduced appreciably for the nullipara who is in early labor with thick, meconium-stained amnionic fluid. Thus, if a woman is remote from delivery, strong consideration should be given to prompt cesarean delivery, especially when cephalopelvic disproportion is suspected or either hypotonic or hypertonic dysfunctional labor is evident. Some practitioners choose to avoid oxytocin use in these cases.

REFERENCES

Alexander JM, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: Forty weeks and beyond: pregnancy outcomes by week of gestation. Obstet Gynecol 96(2):291, 2000a

Alexander JM, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: Postterm pregnancy: does induction increase cesarean rates? J Soc Gynecol Invest 7:79A, 2000b

Alexander JM, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: Postterm pregnancy: is cervical "ripening" being used in the right patients? J Soc Gynecol Invest 7:247A, 2000c

Alexander JM, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: Prolonged pregnancy: induction of labor and cesarean births. Obstet Gynecol 97(6):911, 2001

Alexander JM, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: The effect of fetal growth restriction on neonatal outcome in postterm pregnancy. Abstract No. 463. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:S148, 2000d

Alfirevic Z, Luckas M, Walkinshaw SA, et al: A randomized comparison between amniotic fluid index and maximum pool depth in the monitoring of postterm pregnancy. BJOG 104(2):207, 1997

Amark H, Pilo C, Varli IH: Stillbirth in term and late term gestations in Stockholm during a 20-year period, incidence and causes. PLos One 16:e0251965, 2021

American College of Obstetrics and Gynecologists: Delivery of a newborn with meconium-stained amniotic fluid. Committee Opinion No. 689, March 2017, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Management of suboptimally dated pregnancies. Committee Opinion No. 688, March 2017, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, American Institute of Ultrasound in Medicine, Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine: Methods for estimating the due date. Committee Opinion No. 700, May 2017, Reaffirmed 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Avoidance of nonmedically indicated early-term deliveries and associated neonatal morbidities. Committee Opinion No. 765, November 2013, Reaffirmed 2019d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Definition of term pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 579, November 2013, Reaffirmed 2019e

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Indications for outpatient antenatal fetal surveillance. Committee Opinion No. 828, June 2021

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Macrosomia. Practice Bulletin No. 216, January 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Management of late-term and postterm pregnancies. Practice Bulletin No. 146, August 2014, Reaffirmed 2020b

Arrowsmith S, Wray S, Quenby S: Maternal obesity and labour complications following induction of labour in prolonged pregnancy. BJOG 118(5):578, 2011

Ayyavoo A, Derraik JG, Hofman PL, et al: Postterm births: are prolonged pregnancies too long? J Pediatr 164(3):647, 2014

Bakketeig LS, BergsjØ P: Post-term pregnancy: magnitude of the problem. In Chalmers I, Enkin M, Keirse M (eds): Effective Care in Pregnancy and Childbirth. Oxford, Oxford University Press, 1991, p 765

Bennett KA, Crane JM, O'Shea P, et al: First trimester ultrasound screening is effective in reducing postterm labor induction rates: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190(4):1077, 2004

Bleicher I, Vinter D, Iofe A, et al: When should pregnancies that extended beyond term be induced? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(2):219, 2017

Clausson B, Cnattingus S, Axelsson O: Outcomes of postterm births: the role of fetal growth restriction and malformations. Obstet Gynecol 94:758, 1999

Cleary-Goldman J, Bettes B, Robinon JN, et al: Postterm pregnancy: practice patterns of contemporary obstetricians and gynecologists. Am J Perinatol 23:15, 2006

Clifford SH: Postmaturity with placental dysfunction. Clinical syndromes and pathologic findings. J Pediatr 44(1):1, 1954

Divon MY, Haglund B, Nisell H, et al: Fetal and neonatal mortality in the postterm pregnancy: the impact of gestational age and fetal growth restriction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 178(4):726, 1998

Duryea EL, Hawkins JS, McIntire DD, et al: A revised birth weight reference for the United States. Obstet Gynecol 124(1):16, 2014

Finucane EM, Murphy DJ, Biesty LM, et al: Membrane sweeping for induction of labour. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD000451, 2020

Fischer RL, McDonnell M, Bianculli KW, et al: Amniotic fluid volume estimation in the postdate pregnancy: a comparison of techniques. Obstet Gynecol 81:698, 1993

Fraser WD, Hofmeyr J, Lede R, et al: Amnioinfusion for the prevention of the meconium aspiration syndrome. N Engl J Med 353(9):909, 2005

Gardener H, Spiegelman D, Buka SL: Perinatal and neonatal risk factors for autism: a comprehensive meta-analysis. Pediatrics 128(2):344, 2011

Gardner M, Rouse D, Goldenberg R, et al: Cost comparison of induction of labor at 41 weeks versus expectant management in the postterm pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 174:351, 1996

Hannah ME, Hannah WJ, Hellman J, et al: Induction of labor as compared with serial antenatal monitoring in post-term pregnancy. N Engl J Med 326(24):1587, 1992

Harris BA Jr, Huddleston JF, Sutliff G, et al: The unfavorable cervix in prolonged pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 62(2):171, 1983

Hendricks CH: Patterns of fetal and placental growth: the second half of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 24:357, 1964

Hill MJ, McWilliams GC, Garcia-Sur, et al: The effect of membrane sweeping on prelabor rupture of membranes: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 111(6):1313, 2008

Jazayeri A, Tsibris JC, Spellacy WN: Elevated umbilical cord plasma erythropoietin levels in prolonged pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 92(1):61, 1998

Joseph KS, Huang L, Liu S, et al: Reconciling the high rates of preterm and postterm birth in the United States. Obstet Gynecol 109(4):798, 2007

Kashanian M, Aktarian A, Baradaron H, et al: Effect of membrane sweeping at term pregnancy on duration of pregnancy and labor induction: a randomized trial. Gynecol Obstet Invest 62(1):41, 2006

Kortekaas JC, Kazemier BM, Keulen JKJ, et al: Risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes of late- and postterm pregnancies in advanced maternal age: a national cohort study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scan 99(8):1022, 2020

Larsen LG, Clausen HV, Andersen B, et al: A stereologic study of postmature placentas fixed by dual perfusion. Am J Obstet Gynecol 172:500, 1995

Laursen M, Bille C, Olesen AW, et al: Genetic influence on prolonged gestation: a population-based Danish twin study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190(2):489, 2004

Leveno KJ, Quirk JG, Cunningham FG, et al: Prolonged pregnancy, I. Observations concerning the causes of fetal distress. Am J Obstet Gynecol 150:465, 1984
Lindell A: Prolonged pregnancy. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 35(2):136, 1956
Lindquist AC, Hastie RM, Hiscock RJ, et al: Risk of major labour-related complications for pregnancies progressing to 42 weeks or beyond. BMC Med 19:126, 2021
Link G, Clark KE, Lang U: Umbilical blood flow during pregnancy: evidence for decreasing placental perfusion. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196(5)489.e1, 2007
Liu X, Helenius D, Skotte L, et al: Variants in the fetal genome near pro-inflammatory cytokine genes on 2q13 associate with gestational duration. Nat Commun 10(1):3927, 2019
MacDonald PC, Siiteri PK: Origin of estrogen in women pregnant with an anencephalic fetus. J Clin Invest 44(3):465, 1965
MacDorman MF, Kirmeyer S: Fetal and perinatal mortality, United States, 2005. Natl Vital Stat Rep 57(8):1, 2009
Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJK, et al: Births: final data for 2019. Natl Vital Stat Rep 70(2):1, 2021
Maternal–Fetal Medicine Units Network: A clinical trial of induction of labor versus expectant management in postterm pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 170(3):716, 1994
Maoz O, Wainstock T, Sheiner E, et al: Immediate perinatal outcomes of post-term deliveries. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(11):1847, 2019
Middleton P, Shepherd E, Morris J, et al: Induction of labour for improving birth outcomes for women at or beyond 37 weeks' gestation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD004945, 2020
Mission JF, Marshall NE, Caughey AB: Pregnancy risks associated with obesity. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 42(2):335, 2015
Moster D, Wilcox AJ, Vollset SE, et al: Cerebral palsy among term and post-term births. JAMA 304(9):976, 2010
Nahum GG, Stanislaw H, Huffaker BJ: Fetal weight gain at term: linear with minimal dependence on maternal obesity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 172(5):1387, 1995
Oberg AS, Frisell T, Svensson AC, et al: Maternal and fetal genetic contributions to postterm birth: familial clustering in a population-based sample of 475,429 Swedish births. Am J Epidemiol 177(6):531, 2013
Olesen AW, Westergaard JG, Olsen J: Perinatal and maternal complications related to postterm delivery: a national register-based study, 1978–1993. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189(1):227, 2003
Olesen AW, Westergaard JG, Olsen J: Prenatal risk indicators of a prolonged pregnancy. The Danish Birth Cohort 1998–2001. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 85(11):1338, 2006
Oz AU, Holub B, Mendilcioglu I, et al: Renal artery Doppler investigation of the etiology of oligohydramnios in postterm pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 100(4):715, 2002
Rahman A, Cahill LS, Zhou YQ, et al: A mouse model of antepartum stillbirth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(4):443.e1, 2017
Redman CW, Staff AC: Preeclamptic biomarkers, syncytiotrophoblast stress, and placental capacity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213 (4 Suppl):S9.e1, 2015
Rushton DI: Pathology of placenta. In Wigglesworth JS, Singer DB (eds): Textbook of Fetal and Perinatal Pathology. Boston, Blackwell, 1991, p 171
Schaffer L, Burkhardt T, Zimmerman R, et al: Nuchal cords in term and postterm deliveries—do we need to know? Obstet Gynecol 106(1):23, 2005
Shin KS, Brubaker KL, Ackerson LM: Risk of cesarean delivery in nulliparous women at greater than 41 weeks' gestational age with an unengaged vertex. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190(1):129, 2004
Smith GC: Life-table analysis of the risk of perinatal death at term and post term in singleton pregnancies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 184(3):489, 2001
Smith SC, Baker PN: Placental apoptosis is increased in postterm pregnancies. BJOG 106(8):861, 1999
Torricelli M, Novembri R, Conti N, et al: Correlation with kisspeptin in post-term pregnancy and apoptosis. Reprod Sci 19(10):1133, 2012
Trimmer KJ, Leveno KJ, Peters MT, et al: Observation on the cause of oligohydramnios in prolonged pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 163:1900, 1990
Van der Ven AJ, van Os MA, Kleinrouweler CE, et al: Midpregnancy cervical length in nulliparous women and its association with postterm delivery and intrapartum cesarean delivery. Am J Perinatol 33(1):40, 2016
Vankayalapati P, Sethna F, Roberts N, et al: Ultrasound assessment of cervical length in prolonged pregnancy: prediction of spontaneous onset of labor and successful vaginal delivery. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 31(3):328, 2008
Ward C, Caughey AB: The risk of meconium aspiration syndrome (MAS) increases with gestational age at term. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med March 31, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Walsh JM, Kandamany N, Shuibhne NN, et al: Neonatal brachial plexus injury: comparison of incidence and antecedents between 2 decades. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(4):324, 2011
Wennerholm UB, Saltvedt S, Wessberg A, et al: Induction of labour at 41 weeks versus expectant management and induction of labour at 42 weeks (SWEdish Post-term Induction Study, SWEPIS): multicentre, open label, randomised, superiority trial. BMJ 367:I6131, 2019
Williams AG, Odd D: Investigating the association between post-term birth and long term cognitive, developmental and educational impacts: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(7):1253, 2020
Wong SF, Hui SK, Choi H, et al: Does sweeping of membranes beyond 40 weeks reduce the need for formal induction of labour? BJOG 109(6):632, 2002
Wyckoff MH, Wyllie J, Aziz K, et al: Neonatal life support: 2020 International Consensus on Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care Science with Treatment Recommendations. Circulation 142:S185, 2020
Yang S, Platt RW, Kramer MS: Variation in child cognitive ability by week of gestation among healthy term births. Am J Epidemiol 171(4):399, 2010
Yang SH, Roh CR, Kim JH: Transvaginal ultrasonography for cervical assessment before induction of labor. J Ultrasound Med 23(3):375, 2004
Zizzo AR, Kirkegaard I, Pinborg A, et al: Decline in stillbirths and perinatal mortality after implementation of a more aggressive induction policy in post-date pregnancies: a nationwide register study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 96(7):862, 2017

CHAPTER 47

Fetal-Growth Disorders

Disorders of fetal growth occur at both ends of the spectrum, either fetal-growth restriction or macrosomia. Each poses concern because of associated morbidities and potential mortality. However, in both categories most of these newborns are ultimately deemed normal and healthy but merely constitutionally small or large. The clinical challenge thus lies in the evaluation and management of suspected fetal-growth disorders.

NORMAL FETAL GROWTH

Fetal growth may be divided into three phases. The initial phase of hyperplasia occurs in the first 16 weeks and is characterized by a rapid rise in cell number. The second phase, which extends up to 32 weeks' gestation, includes both cellular hyperplasia and hypertrophy. After 32 weeks, fetal mass accrues by cellular hypertrophy, and it is during this phase that most fetal fat and glycogen accumulate. The corresponding fetal-growth rates during these three phases approximate 5 g/d at 15 weeks' gestation, 15 g/d at 24 weeks', and 30 g/d at 34 weeks' (Grantz, 2018; Williams, 1982).

In the National Institute of Child Health and Human Development Fetal Growth Studies, serial sonographic evaluations were performed in 1733 nonobese, low-risk pregnancies at 12 sites across the United States (Grantz, 2018). As shown in Figure 47-1, growth velocity peaked at 35 weeks' gestation (Grantz, 2018).

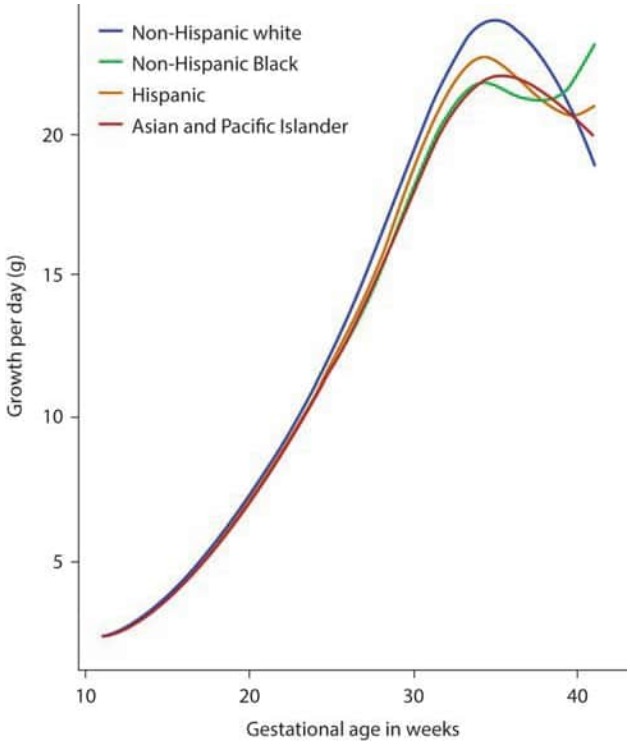


FIGURE 47-1 Fetal weight gain in grams per day by race/ethnicity throughout gestation.

The investigators demonstrated that fetal growth varies considerably and that it is *not* highly correlated with fetal birthweight percentile. Some fetuses with initial estimated weights below the 5th percentile maintained their growth velocity and ultimately weighed more at birth than other fetuses whose weight percentiles were initially higher but whose growth was slower. Such findings support our understanding that large and small fetal weight percentiles reflect constitutional size in some but indicate disordered growth in others. They further highlight the importance of serial sonography when abnormal growth is a concern.

Normal Birthweight

Accurate gestational age assessment is critical for determining whether birthweight is normal. Current normative data are based on birthweights from pregnancies in which gestational age is established using an *obstetrical estimate* that includes sonography and discussed in Chapter 14 (p. 248) (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b). The birthweight percentiles shown in Table 47-1 were derived using data from more than 3 million liveborn singletons delivered across the United States in 2011 (Duryea, 2014). As shown in Figure 47-2, use of a birthweight percentile curve in which gestational age is based on a last menstrual period alone yields significantly larger weights for a given gestational age, particularly in the preterm period. The accuracy of a birthweight reference thus has potential to affect the prevalence of neonates diagnosed as small or large for gestational age.

The curve by Duryea and associates (2014) is most accurately termed a *population reference*, rather than a *standard*. A population reference incorporates pregnancies of varying risks, along with the resulting outcomes, both normal and abnormal. In contrast, a standard incorporates normal pregnancies with normal outcomes. Because population references include preterm births, which are more likely to be growth restricted, it has been argued that the associated birthweight data overestimate impaired fetal growth (Mayer, 2013; Zhang, 2010).

TABLE 47-1. 2011 Gestational Age Birthweight (g) Percentiles for 3,252,011 Singleton Live Births in the United States

	Percentile				
Age (wk)	5th	10th	50th	90th	95th
24	539	567	680	850	988
25	540	584	765	938	997
26	580	637	872	1080	1180
27	650	719	997	1260	1467
28	740	822	1138	1462	1787
29	841	939	1290	1672	2070
30	952	1068	1455	1883	2294
31	1080	1214	1635	2101	2483
32	1232	1380	1833	2331	2664
33	1414	1573	2053	2579	2861
34	1632	1793	2296	2846	3093
35	1871	2030	2549	3119	3345
36	2117	2270	2797	3380	3594
37	2353	2500	3025	3612	3818
38	2564	2706	3219	3799	3995
39	2737	2877	3374	3941	4125
40	2863	3005	3499	4057	4232
41	2934	3082	3600	4167	4340
42	2941	3099	3686	4290	4474

From Duryea, 2014, with permission.

FIGURE 47-2 Fetal-growth curves for births in the United States in 2011. Curves vary depending on whether gestational age was calculated from the last menstrual period or from an improved obstetrical estimate, derived in part using sonography. (Modified with permission from Duryea EL, Hawkins JS, McIntire DD, et al: A revised birth weight reference for the United States. Obstet Gynecol. 2014 Jul;124(1):16–22.)

Physiology of Fetal Growth

Fetal development is believed to be determined by maternal provision of substrate and its placental transfer, whereas fetal growth potential is governed by the genome. The precise cellular and molecular mechanisms leading to normal fetal growth are incompletely understood. Considerable evidence supports the role of insulin and insulin-like growth factors in fetal growth and weight gain regulation (Luo, 2012). These growth factors are produced by virtually all organs and are potent stimulators of cell division and differentiation. Other hormones implicated in fetal growth include leptin and other adipokines, which are derived from adipose tissue. Fetal leptin concentrations rise during gestation, and they correlate both with birthweight and with neonatal fat mass (Briffa, 2015; Ökdemir, 2018; Simpson, 2017).

Both excessive and diminished maternal glucose availability also have the potential to affect fetal growth (Chap. 7, p. 135). That said, growth-restricted neonates do not typically show pathologically low glucose concentrations in cord blood (Pardi, 2006). Fetal-growth restriction in response to glucose deprivation generally results only after long-term severe maternal caloric deprivation (Lechtig, 1975). Conversely, hyperglycemia more consistently results in excessive growth. The Hyperglycemia and Adverse Pregnancy Outcomes (HAPO) Study Cooperative Research Group (2008) found that elevated cord C-peptide levels, which reflect fetal hyperinsulinemia, are associated with greater birthweight. This relationship was noted even in women with maternal glucose levels below the threshold for diabetes.

Excessive transfer of lipids has similarly been implicated in fetal overgrowth (Delhaes, 2018). Free or nonesterified fatty acids in maternal plasma may be transferred to the fetus via facilitated diffusion or after liberation of fatty acids from triglycerides by trophoblastic lipases (Gil-Sánchez, 2012). Independent of prepregnancy body mass index (BMI), higher maternal free fatty acid levels during the latter half of pregnancy correlate with birthweight (Crume, 2015). Greater intake of certain fatty acids, particularly omega-3, is associated with greater birthweight (Calabuig-Navarro, 2016).

Placental fatty acid metabolism and transfer may be dysregulated in fetal-growth restriction and in maternal conditions associated with fetal overgrowth. For example, levels of endothelial lipase are reduced with deficient fetal growth, and this enzyme is overexpressed in placentas of women with diabetes (Gauster, 2007, 2011). Others have reported that diabetes and obesity are associated with altered placental lipid-transport gene expression (Segura, 2017). Obesity is also linked with greater expression of fatty acid binding/transport proteins within the trophoblast (Myatt, 2016). These alterations lead to an abnormal accumulation of lipids that can result in pathological placental inflammation and dysfunction (Calabuig-Navarro, 2016; Myatt, 2016; Yang, 2016).

FETAL-GROWTH RESTRICTION

Fundamental to understanding fetal-growth restriction (FGR) is an appreciation of the strengths and limitations of its defining criteria. A diagnosis based on *estimated fetal weight* alone does not indicate disease but rather a fetus that is in an at-risk category. Benefits of definitions such as the one used by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists are ease of application and promotion of consistency across care settings. However, if applied to an otherwise low-risk population, a 10th-percentile threshold will label nearly 10 percent of fetuses as growth restricted, although most are merely *constitutionally small* rather than compromised. Moreover, a threshold will fail to identify at-risk fetuses with a weight above that threshold but who have not reached their growth potential. Thus, the definition is intended to strike a balance between false-positive and false-negative diagnoses.

Definition

Various criteria and thresholds have been used to define FGR. These have included estimated fetal weights (EFW) below the 3rd, 5th, or 10th percentiles; similar abdominal circumference (AC) percentiles; a specified decline in the EFW percentile or AC percentile over serial assessments; and various abnormal Doppler findings (Lees, 2020). All definitions are based solely on prenatal sonography and rely on accurate gestational age assessment.

Currently, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021a) and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020) recommend defining FGR as either an EFW <10th percentile for gestational age or an AC <10th percentile for gestational age. Use of the AC threshold may correctly identify one additional small-for-gestational age (SGA) newborn for every 14 sonograms performed in the last month of pregnancy (Blue, 2018). Importantly, management recommendations are further stratified based on lower percentile thresholds and findings such as oligohydramnios or abnormal umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry, as discussed subsequently (p. 829).

To more precisely identify growth-restricted fetuses, investigators have derived customized growth charts that incorporate variables such as maternal height and weight, race or ethnicity, parity, and fetal sex. However, customized growth curves do not improve outcomes and thus are not recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a; Chiossi, 2017; Costantine, 2013; Grobman, 2013; Zhang, 2011).

FGR should be differentiated from SGA, which is a postnatal designation based on birthweight percentile. When considering FGR *detection*, investigators study the proportion of SGA neonates identified as FGR during prenatal sonography. However, FGR often does not equate to SGA because of the inherent error of sonographic measurement. One population-based study of routine third-trimester sonography found that 50 percent of those with suspected FGR had birthweights above the 10th percentile (Monier, 2015). Those with false-positive diagnoses of FGR were delivered 2 weeks earlier in gestation, which raises concerns about potential iatrogenic sequelae of routine screening.

Importantly, as many as 70 percent of SGA newborns are not pathologically growth restricted. Indeed, such children have normal outcomes and are thought to be appropriately grown when maternal ethnic group, parity, weight, and height are considered (Unterscheider, 2015). In a Swedish study of 130,000 term births, the maternal and paternal birthweights were estimated to account for 6 and 3 percent of variance in birthweight, respectively (Mattsson, 2013). Additionally, as shown in Figure 47-3, most adverse outcomes occur in newborns smaller

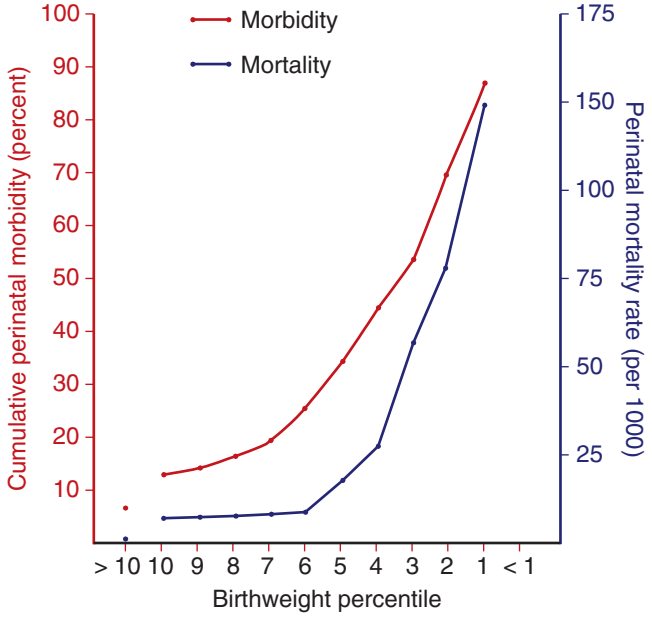


FIGURE 47-3 Relationship between birthweight percentile and perinatal mortality and morbidity rates in 1560 small-for-gestational-age fetuses. A progressive increase in both mortality and morbidity rates is observed as birthweight percentile decreases.

than the 3rd percentile (Manning, 1995). In a review of more than 80,000 singleton term births from Parkland Hospital, McIntire and colleagues (1999) found that neonatal mortality and most neonatal morbidity rates rose only at birthweights at or below the 3rd percentile.

Small-but-normal neonates do not show evidence of the postnatal metabolic derangements commonly associated with deficient fetal growth. Moreover, these intrinsically small newborns remain significantly smaller during surveillance to 2 years compared with appropriate-for-gestational-age sized neonates. However, they do not show differences in measures of metabolic risk that included glucose and insulin levels (Milovanovic, 2012). As discussed later, true SGA newborns carry short- and long-term metabolic risks.

Detection

Identification of truly impaired fetal growth remains a challenge. Ideally, it involves detecting fetuses who meet the aforementioned definition and also discerning those at risk for compromise. There are three main tenets:

1. The diagnosis relies on accurate gestational age assessment, optimally confirmed with sonography in the first or early second trimester (Table 14-1, p. 248). If gestational age is uncertain and the diagnosis is suspected, serial sonography is considered.
2. In low-risk pregnancies, the diagnosis is suspected based on clinical abdominal examination after 24 weeks' gestation in which the fundal height lags by ≥3 cm. Sonography is then performed.
3. If the pregnancy is at risk for FGR, based on factors reviewed in the next section, sonography is considered to assist with detection. This is performed at approximately 32 weeks' gestation. Care is individualized, and in some cases sonography may be needed every 4 weeks to assess fetal growth. One example of the latter is twin gestations, because fundal height cannot evaluate individual twin growth (Chap. 48, p. 851).

Uterine Fundal Height

At each prenatal visit after 20 weeks' gestation, fundal height is assessed to *screen* for fetal-growth impairment (Chap. 10, p. 182). The measurement in centimeters approximates the gestational age in weeks. The uterine size-date discrepancy may be unrelated to fetal size. However, if the measurement differs by ≥3 cm in the absence of an obvious explanation, sonography is generally performed.

Serial fundal height measurement is the only routine screening for FGR that is endorsed by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2021a). International consensus also indicates that carefully performed serial fundal height measurements are a simple, safe, inexpensive, and reasonably accurate method to screen for FGR (McCowan, 2018).

Limitations of fundal height screening are well documented. The overall sensitivity of fundal height to detect FGR ranges from 11 to 25 percent (Goetzinger, 2012; Grantz, 2021; Roex, 2012; Sparks, 2011). Detection rates are lower in obese women than in those with normal BMI (Goetzinger, 2012).

Sonographic Assessment

Studies of routine screening for FGR using third-trimester sonography have yielded variable results, and detection of SGA neonates ranges from <20 percent to >60 percent (Hammad, 2016; Monier, 2015; Sovio, 2015; Wanyonyi, 2021). One reason for poor detection is that sonography performed at any point in gestation will fail to detect pregnancies in which FGR develops *later*. Also, it will miss those needing delivery for FGR *before* the sonographic examination was performed. Compounding this is that EFW is an imperfect metric. Given that most SGA neonates are constitutionally small, it is not unexpected that the recurrence risk for FGR approximates 20 percent. Many of these cases are merely smaller mothers having smaller healthy children in successive pregnancies.

Routine third-trimester sonography to assess fetal growth is not recommended because it has not been demonstrated to improve outcomes (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a). Indeed, a Cochrane database analysis of 13 trials with 34,980 women found that routine late-pregnancy ultrasound for a low-risk or an unselected population was not associated with maternal or fetal benefit (Bricker, 2015).

Pathophysiology

Fetal-growth restriction is one of the "major obstetrical syndromes" associated with defects in early placentation (Brosens, 2015). Mechanisms leading to abnormal trophoblastic invasion are likely multifactorial, and both vascular and immunological etiologies have been proposed. For example, *atrial natriuretic peptide converting enzyme*, also known as *corin*, plays a critical role in trophoblastic invasion and remodeling of the uterine spiral arteries (Cui, 2012). These processes are impaired in corin-deficient mice, which also develop evidence of preeclampsia. Moreover, mutations in the gene for corin are reported in women with preeclampsia (Chen, 2015).

Several immunological abnormalities are associated with FGR. This raises the prospect of maternal rejection of the "paternal semiallograft." Rudzinski and colleagues (2013) studied C4d, a component of complement that is associated with humoral rejection of transplanted tissues. They found this to be highly associated with chronic villitis—88 percent of cases versus only 5 percent of controls—and with reduced placental weight. In a study of 10,204 placentas, chronic villitis was associated with placental hypoperfusion, fetal acidemia, and FGR and its sequelae (Greer, 2012). Kim and coworkers (2015) extensively reviewed chronic inflammatory placental lesions and their association with fetal-growth restriction, preeclampsia, and preterm birth.

Risk Factors

Risk factors for impaired fetal growth may be divided into three overlapping categories or "compartments": those in the mother, the fetus, or the placenta. Some of these are depicted in Figure 47-4. Many causes of FGR are prospectively considered risk factors, because impaired fetal growth is not consistent in all affected women.

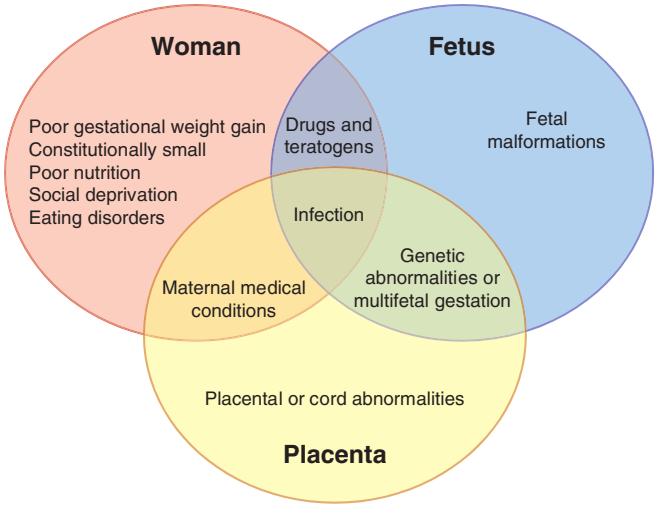


FIGURE 47-4 Risk factors and causes of impaired fetal growth centering on the mother, fetus, and placenta.

Gestational Weight Gain and Nutrition

Maternal weight gain during pregnancy is positively correlated with fetal size (Hutcheon, 2019). Among women with gestational diabetes, gestational weight gain is also associated with both neonatal birthweight and adiposity (Blackwell, 2016). In contrast, a gestational weight gain during the second and third trimesters that is less than that recommended by the Institute of Medicine is associated with increased risk of an SGA neonate in women of all weight categories except class II or III obesity (Durie, 2011) (Chap. 10, p. 183). The best-documented effect of famine on fetal growth was in the winter of 1944 in Holland. For 6 months, the German occupation army restricted dietary intake to 500 kcal/d for civilians, including pregnant women. As a result, the average birthweight declined by 250 g (Stein, 1975).

Undernourished women may benefit from micronutrient supplementation. In one study, almost 32,000 Indonesian women were randomly assigned to receive micronutrient supplementation or only iron and folate tablets (Prado, 2012). Offspring of those receiving the supplement had lower risks of early infant mortality and low birthweight and had improved childhood motor and cognitive abilities. A Cochrane review of 20 trials involving 141,849 women concluded that supplementation of micronutrients may lower the risk of low birthweight (Keats, 2019). The importance of antenatal vitamins and trace metals is discussed in Chapter 10 (p. 185).

Socioeconomic Factors

The effect of social deprivation on birthweight is interconnected with lifestyle factors such as smoking, alcohol or other substance abuse, and poor nutrition. With appropriate modifying interventions, women with psychosocial factors were significantly less likely to deliver a low-birthweight newborn and also had fewer preterm births and other pregnancy complications (Coker, 2012).

Food insecurity, late entry into prenatal care, and limited access to healthcare are all contributors to fetal-growth restriction (Bryant, 2010). Hall (2020) found that in a military population with equal access to healthcare, racial differences in late entry to prenatal care and FGR persist. An Australian study showed that the proportion of pregnancies affected by fetal-growth restriction increased as levels of social disadvantage rose (Langridge, 2011).

Vascular and Renal Disease

Especially when complicated by superimposed preeclampsia, chronic vascular disease commonly restricts fetal growth (Chap. 53, p. 948). Maternal vascular disease as evidenced by abnormal uterine artery Doppler velocimetry early in pregnancy is associated with higher rates of preeclampsia, SGA neonates, and delivery before 34 weeks (He, 2020; Poon, 2019). Using Washington state birth certificate data, Leary and colleagues (2012) found that maternal ischemic heart disease was associated with a 16-percent risk of having an SGA newborn.

Chronic renal insufficiency is frequently associated with underlying hypertension and vascular disease. Nephropathies are commonly accompanied by restricted fetal growth (Cunningham, 1990; Feng, 2015; Saliem, 2016). These relationships are considered further in Chapter 56 (p. 1004).

Pregestational Diabetes

Fetal-growth restriction in newborns of women with diabetes may be related to congenital malformations or may follow substrate deprivation from advanced maternal vascular disease (Chap. 60, p. 1072). The likelihood of restricted growth increases with worsening White classification, particularly nephropathy (Klemetti, 2016). That said, the prevalence of serious vascular disease associated with diabetes in pregnancy is low.

Chronic Hypoxia

Conditions associated with chronic hypoxia include asthma, maternal cyanotic heart disease, other chronic pulmonary disease, cigarette smoking, and living at high altitude. When exposed to a chronically hypoxic environment, some fetuses have significantly reduced birthweight. Smoking causes a dose-dependent reduction in fetal growth, resulting in an average birthweight 200 g below that of newborns of nonsmokers (D'Souza, 1981). For each 1000-meter rise in altitude, the birthweight declined 150 g in a study of more than 1.8 million births in Austria (Waldhoer, 2015).

Anemia

In most cases, maternal anemia does not impair fetal growth. Exceptions include sickle-cell disease and other inherited anemias (Desai, 2017; Thame, 2016). Importantly, curtailed maternal blood-volume expansion is linked to FGR (de Haas, 2017; Stott, 2017). This is further discussed in Chapter 4 (p. 59).

Antiphospholipid Syndrome

Adverse obstetrical outcomes including fetal-growth restriction have been associated with three types of antiphospholipid antibodies: *anticardiolipin antibodies, lupus anticoagulant*, and *anti-β2 glycoprotein-I antibodies*. Mechanistically, a "two-hit" hypothesis suggests that initial endothelial damage is then followed by intervillous placental thrombosis. More specifically, oxidative damage to certain membrane proteins is followed by antiphospholipid antibody binding, which leads to immune-complex formation and ultimately to thrombosis (Giannakopoulos, 2013). This syndrome is considered in detail in Chapters 55 (p. 979) and 62 (p. 1115). Women with more than one type of antiphospholipid

antibody are at higher risk for FGR compared with those with only one antibody (Saccone, 2017). Also, *anti-β_2 glycoprotein-I antibodies* may have a stronger association with FGR, particularly early-onset disease.

Placental, Cord, and Uterine Abnormalities

Several placental abnormalities are associated with poor fetal growth, which is presumed secondary to uteroplacental insufficiency. These are discussed further throughout Chapter 6 and include chronic placental abruption, extensive infarction, chorioangioma, velamentous cord insertion, and umbilical artery thrombosis. Abnormal placental implantation leading to endothelial dysfunction may also limit fetal growth (Brosens, 2015). This pathology is implicated in pregnancies complicated by preeclampsia (Chap. 40, p. 694). Last, some uterine malformations are linked to impaired fetal growth (Chap. 3, p. 43).

Multifetal Gestation

Pregnancy with two or more fetuses is more likely to be complicated by diminished growth of one or more fetuses compared with that of singletons (Fig. 47-5). Serial sonography is recommended for this reason. With the understanding that normal twin growth may be less than that of singletons, we use a chorionicity-specific twin nomogram to diagnose FGR at Parkland Hospital. Discordance in estimated fetal weight also is considered when evaluating twin growth (Chap. 48, p. 851).

Medications and Other Substances

Fortunately, most medications do not affect fetal growth. Selected medications and other substances that have been associated with FGR due to fetotoxicity are discussed in Chapter 8. Examples include cyclophosphamide and other antineoplastic drugs, significant lead exposure, and drugs such as cocaine and methamphetamine. Alcohol and tobacco each have potent effects on fetal growth. FGR is included among the diagnostic criteria for fetal alcohol syndrome, and cigarette smoking is associated with a two- to threefold increased risk of FGR (Werler, 1997).

Maternal and Fetal Infections

Viral, bacterial, protozoan, and spirochetal infections have been implicated in up to 5 percent of FGR cases and are discussed in Chapters 67 and 68. The best known of these are *rubella* and *cytomegalovirus infection*. Both promote calcifications in the fetus that are associated with cell death, and infection earlier in pregnancy correlates with worse outcomes. Toda and colleagues (2015) described a Vietnamese epidemic in which 39 percent of 292 term newborns with congenital rubella syndrome were low birthweight. In one study of 238 primary cytomegalovirus infections, no severe cases were observed when infection occurred after 14 weeks' gestation (Picone, 2013). These investigators later identified sonographic findings in 30 of 69 cases of congenital infection, and growth restriction was noted in 30 percent of these 30 cases (Picone, 2014).

Tuberculosis and *syphilis* also are associated with poor fetal growth. Both extrapulmonary and pulmonary tuberculosis are linked with low birthweight (Chap. 54, p. 965). Sobhy (2017) analyzed 13 studies that included a total of 3384 women with active tuberculosis. The odds ratio was 1.7 for low birthweight. The etiology is uncertain, however, the adverse effects on maternal health, compounded by effects of poor nutrition and poverty, are important (Jana, 2012). Congenital syphilis is more common, and paradoxically, the placenta is almost always larger and heavier than normal due to edema and perivascular inflammation (Chap. 68, p. 1208). Congenital syphilis is strongly linked with preterm birth and thus low-birthweight newborns (Sheffield, 2002).

Congenital infection with *toxoplasma gondii* is associated with FGR. Capobiango (2014) described 31 Brazilian pregnancies complicated by congenital toxoplasmosis. Only 13 percent were treated antepartum for toxoplasmosis, and low birthweight complicated nearly 40 percent of all the pregnancies. *Congenital malaria* may similarly cause low birthweight and poor fetal growth. Briand and colleagues (2016) emphasize the importance of prophylaxis early in pregnancy for women at risk.

Congenital Malformations

In a classic review of more than 13,000 fetuses with major malformations and chromosomal abnormalities, the rate of growth restriction was double the population prevalence (Khoury, 1988). The birth defect most strongly linked with FGR is gastroschisis. Nelson (2015) reviewed 111 fetuses with gastroschisis and found that a third had birthweights <10th percentile. Congenital cardiac abnormalities are also associated with a slight increase in FGR risk. In a recent review of 1789 singleton neonates with isolated congenital cardiac abnormalities, the prevalence of SGA was 13 percent, which was 3 percent higher than the general-population risk (Ghanchi, 2021). With few exceptions, the identification of growth restriction in the setting of a structural malformation further increases the risk for an underlying genetic syndrome. If not already performed, amniocentesis with chromosomal microarray analysis should be offered.

Genetic Abnormalities

Many genetic syndromes are strongly linked with prenatal-growth impairment or postnatal failure to thrive. Among live-born neonates with autosomal trisomies, trisomy 21 is associated with an SGA prevalence of 15 to 30 percent (Herrera, 2020; Khoury, 1988). With trisomies 13 and 18, the risk of SGA is significantly greater, 50 percent and >80 percent, respectively (Khoury, 1988). In trisomy 18, the combination of fetal abnormalities plus FGR and hydramnios is particularly common. The crown-rump length in fetuses with trisomy 18 and 13, unlike

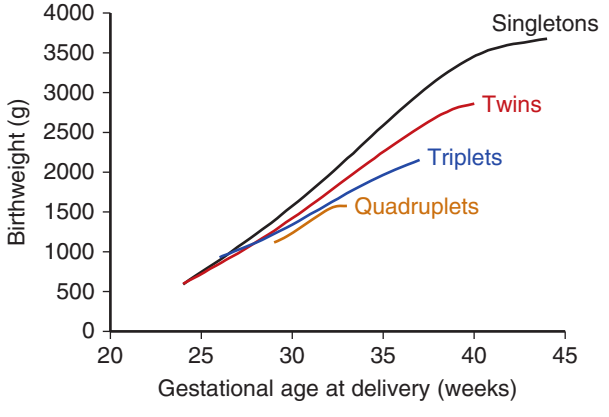


FIGURE 47-5 Birthweight and gestational age relationships in multifetal gestations without malformations delivered at Parkland Hospital.

that with trisomy 21, is also typically shorter than expected (Bahado-Singh, 1997; Schemmer, 1997). Poor fetal growth similarly complicates Turner syndrome, and the severity correlates with increasing haploinsufficiency of the short arm of the X chromosome (Fiot, 2016). In contrast, poor growth is not characteristic of an increased number of X chromosomes (Ottesen, 2010; Wigby, 2016). Discussed in Chapter 16 (p. 318), *confined placental mosaicism* is a recognized cause of FGR.

Management

If FGR is detected, efforts are made to assess the fetal condition and search for possible causes. The risk for stillbirth is increased, and early-onset growth restriction is especially problematic. General tenets of management include serial evaluation of fetal growth every 3 weeks and at least weekly evaluation of amnionic fluid and umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry. A fetus with slow but progressing EFW is more reassuring than one that has plateaued growth. This is supplemented with antepartum evaluation of fetal well-being, which is usually nonstress testing or biophysical profile (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a) (Chap. 20, p. 387). Consideration is also given to performing a detailed fetal anatomic survey and amniocentesis to assess for underlying genetic abnormalities or infection—particularly with early-onset FGR. A management algorithm is shown in Figure 47-6.

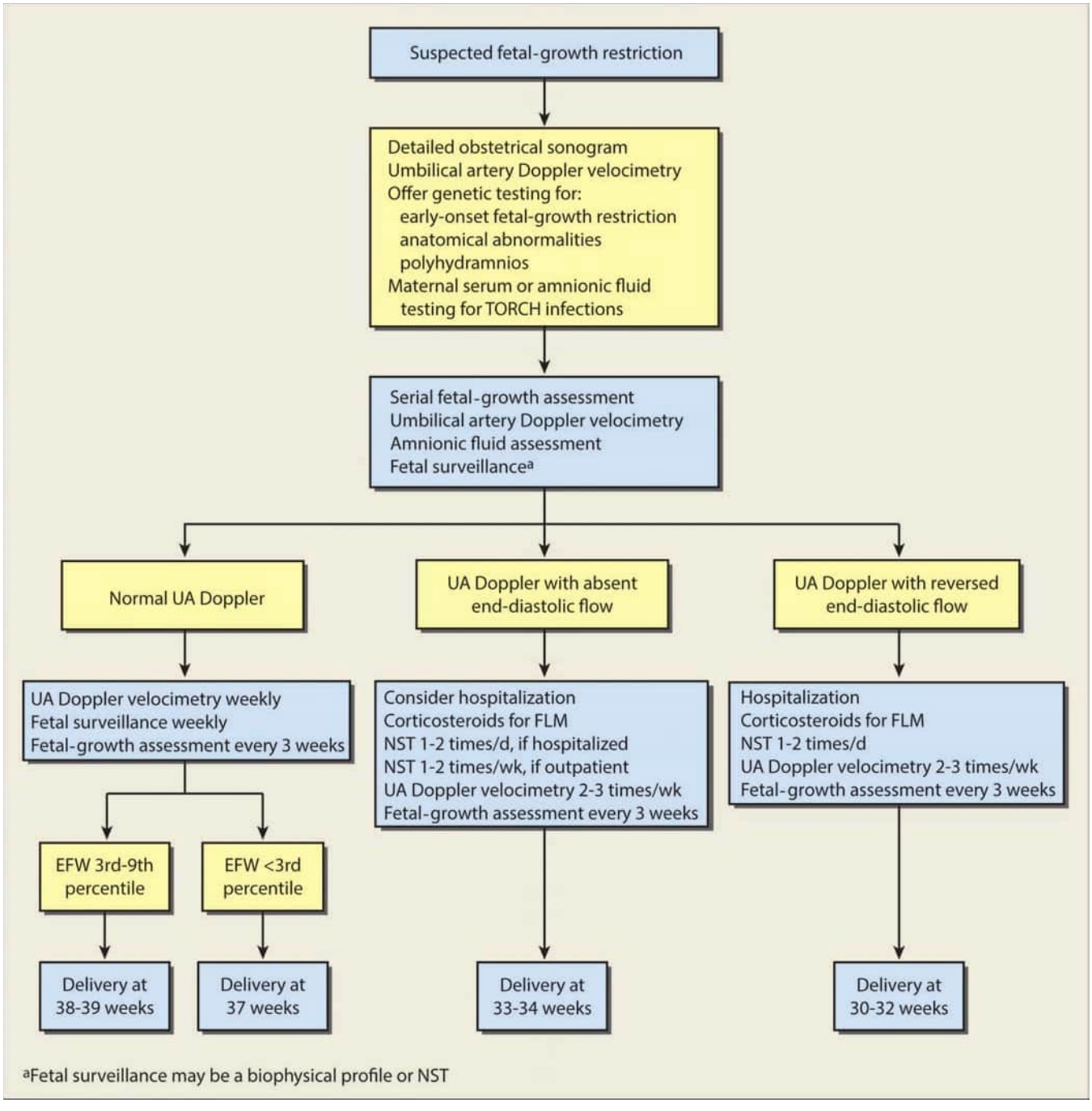


FIGURE 47-6 Algorithm for management of fetal-growth restriction. EFW = estimated fetal weight; FLM = fetal lung maturity; NST = nonstress test; TORCH = toxoplasmosis, other, rubella, cytomegalovirus, herpesvirus; UA = umbilical artery.

Delivery timing balances the risks of fetal death with the hazards of preterm birth. Several multicenter studies address these problems, but unfortunately, none has elucidated the optimal timing of delivery. For the preterm fetus, the only randomized trial of delivery timing is the Growth Restriction Intervention Trial (GRIT) (Thornton, 2004). This trial involved 548 women between 24 and 36 weeks' gestation. Women were randomly assigned to immediate delivery or to delayed delivery until the situation worsened. The primary outcome was perinatal death or disability after reaching age 2 years. Mortality rates did not differ through 2 years of age. Moreover, children aged 6 to 13 years did not show clinically significant differences between the two groups (Walker, 2011). The Disproportionate Intrauterine Growth Intervention Trial at Term (DIGITAT) study examined the delivery timing of growth-restricted fetuses who were 36 weeks' gestation or older. The 321 enrolled women were randomly assigned to labor induction or to expectant management. Composite neonatal morbidity rates did not differ, except that neonatal admissions were lower after 38 weeks' gestation in a secondary analysis (Boers, 2010, 2012). Secondary analyses of DIGITAT did not identify a clear subgroup that benefited from labor induction, and neurodevelopmental and behavioral outcomes at age 2 were similar in both groups (Tajik, 2014; Van Wyk, 2012).

Doppler Velocimetry

Umbilical artery Doppler flow studies are central to the evaluation and management of the fetus with growth restriction (Chap. 14, p. 262). Abnormalities represent the negative progression from fetal adaptation to failure. Specifically, initially increased impedance to flow in the umbilical artery may progress to absent end-diastolic flow and then reversed end-diastolic flow (Fig. 47-7). This negative progression correlates with hypoxia, acidosis, and fetal death. In one prospective series of 1116 fetuses with EFW <10th percentile, only 1 percent of those with normal umbilical artery Doppler studies had adverse outcomes compared with 12 percent of fetuses with Doppler abnormalities (O'Dwyer, 2014). The stillbirth risk in the setting of absent and reversed end-diastolic flow is 7 percent and 19 percent, respectively (Caradeux, 2018). Because of these findings, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021a,b) and Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020) recommend serial umbilical artery Doppler studies in the management of FGR.

Doppler abnormalities in other vessels may convey information regarding pathophysiology, but interrogation of these is not recommended for routine management of the pregnancy complicated by FGR (American college of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2020). Doppler abnormalities of the *ductus venosus* (Fig. 14-12, p. 264) reflect increased central venous pressure from decreased cardiac compliance and higher right ventricular end-diastolic pressure. Fetuses with abnormal ductus venosus Doppler flow have a 20-percent risk for stillbirth, and this increases to 46 percent in cases with a reversed A-wave (Caradeux, 2018). Second, pulsatile flow in the umbilical vein waveform (Fig. 14-12) indicates cardiac dysfunction. Last, cerebral vasodilation is the fetal adaptative response to hypoxemia in the setting of growth restriction. The cerebroplacental ratio (CPR)—defined as middle cerebral artery pulsatility index divided by umbilical artery pulsatility index—is a measure of this adaptation and may be abnormal in severe cases of FGR. An abnormal CPR <1 has been associated with greater risk for earlier delivery, lower birthweight, cesarean delivery, neonatal intensive care unit admission, and perinatal death (DeVore, 2015; Flood, 2014). However, a metaanalysis of 18,731 fetuses found the CPR was not predictive of adverse perinatal outcomes (Vollgraff, 2021).

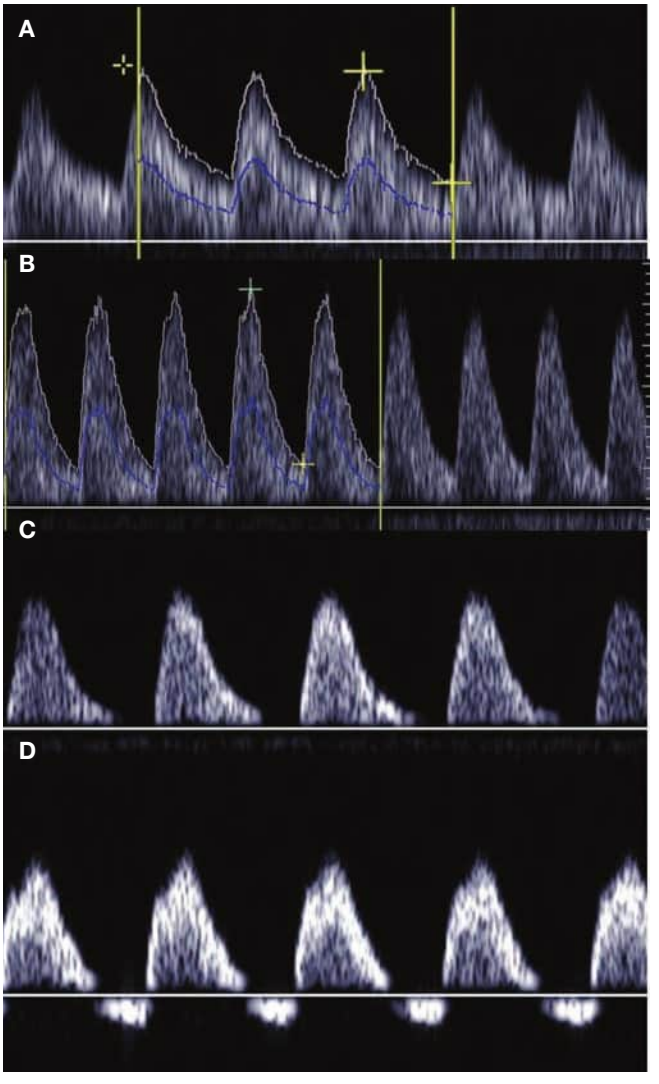


FIGURE 47-7 Doppler velocity waveforms. **A.** Normal waveform with normal S/D ratio. **B.** Increased impedance to flow with abnormally elevated S/D ratio. **C.** Absent end-diastolic flow. **D.** Reversed end-diastolic flow.

Management of the Near-term Fetus

Delivery of a suspected growth-restricted fetus with normal umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry, normal amnionic fluid volume, and reassuring fetal testing can likely be deferred until 37 to 38 weeks' gestation (see Fig. 47-6). Expectant management can be guided using antepartum evaluation of fetal well-being described in Chapter 20. If oligohydramnios is present, delivery between $36^{0/7}$ and $37^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation is recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021c;

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2020). With a normal fetal heart rate pattern, vaginal delivery is planned. Notably, some of these fetuses do not tolerate labor.

Management of the Fetus Remote from Term

If growth restriction is identified in a fetus before 34 weeks, and amnionic fluid volume and fetal surveillance findings are normal, observation is recommended. As long as interval fetal growth and fetal surveillance test results are normal, pregnancy is allowed to continue (see Fig. 47-6). Reassessment of fetal growth is typically made no sooner than 3 weeks later. Weekly outpatient assessment of umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry and amnionic fluid volume is combined with fetal well-being testing. If umbilical artery Doppler studies indicate absent or reversed end-diastolic flow, inpatient surveillance is undertaken. During hospitalization, more frequent sonographic evaluations and antenatal testing of fetal well-being and close proximity to labor and delivery are advantages.

With growth restriction remote from term, no specific treatment ameliorates the condition. Evidence does not support diminished activity or bed rest to accelerate growth or improve outcomes. Nutrient supplementation, attempts at plasma volume expansion, oxygen therapy, antihypertensive drugs, heparin, and aspirin are all ineffective (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a).

Management decisions hinge on assessment of the relative risks of fetal death during expectant management versus the risks from preterm delivery. Reassuring results from fetal well-being tests may allow observation with continued maturation. However, long-term neurological outcome, which theoretically may suffer from additional weeks in an inhospitable intrauterine environment, is a concern (Baschat, 2014; Lees, 2015; Thornton, 2004). Baschat and associates (2009) showed that neurodevelopmental outcome at 2 years in growth-restricted fetuses was best predicted by birthweight and gestational age. Doppler abnormalities are generally not associated with poor childhood cognitive developmental scores among low-birthweight fetuses delivered in the third trimester (Llurba, 2013). These findings emphasize that adverse neurodevelopmental outcomes cannot always be predicted.

Intrapartum Management

When lagging fetal growth is the result of placental insufficiency due to poor maternal perfusion or reduction of functional placenta, the fetal condition may be aggravated by labor. Equally important, oligohydramnios raises the likelihood of cord compression during labor. For these and other reasons, the frequency of cesarean delivery is increased.

The risk of neonatal hypoxia or meconium aspiration is also greater. Thus, care for the newborn should be provided immediately by an attendant who can skillfully clear the airway and ventilate a neonate as needed (Chap. 32, p. 586). The severely growth-restricted newborn is particularly susceptible to hypothermia and may also develop other metabolic derangements such as hypoglycemia, polycythemia, and hyperviscosity. Risk is greatest at the lowest extremes of birthweight (Baschat, 2009, 2014; Llurba, 2013).

Outcomes

Lessons learned from SGA neonates inform concerns about FGR. More than 50 years ago, Battaglia and Lubchenco (1967) classified SGA neonates as those whose weights were below the 10th percentile for their gestational age. The mortality rate of SGA neonates born at 38 weeks was 1 percent compared with 0.2 percent in those with larger birthweights. More recent data also indicate that the overall stillbirth rate among SGA neonates approximates 1 percent, which is twice as high as the population prevalence (Getahun, 2007).

The risk for abnormal neurological development also is greater in SGA neonates. In an analysis of nearly 3000 newborns born before 27 weeks' gestation, those weighing <10th percentile had a nearly fourfold higher risk of neonatal death or neurodevelopmental impairment and a nearly threefold greater risk of cerebral palsy compared with non-SGA neonates (De Jesus, 2013). In another analysis of more than 91,000 otherwise uncomplicated pregnancies, newborns with birthweights <5th percentile had a higher risk of low 5-minute Apgar score, respiratory distress, necrotizing enterocolitis, and neonatal sepsis than appropriate-weight neonates. The risks of stillbirth and neonatal death were sixfold and fourfold higher, respectively (Mendez-Figueroa, 2016).

Newborns at the lowest birthweight percentiles are at greatest risk for adverse outcome. In one study of more than 44,561 neonates, only 14 percent of those weighing <1st percentile at birth survived to discharge (Griffin, 2015). Poor motor, cognitive, language and attention, and behavioral outcomes in growth-restricted newborns unfortunately persist into early childhood and adolescence (Baschat, 2014; Levine, 2015; Rogne, 2015).

Early-onset Growth Restriction

Perinatal morbidities are further increased in the 30 percent of FGR pregnancies diagnosed prior to 32 weeks' gestation (Savchev, 2014). Thus, this gestational age is used to demarcate early-onset from late-onset growth restriction (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2020). Early-onset FGR is typically more severe and more commonly associated with placental dysfunction and maternal hypertension than late-onset growth restriction (Aviram, 2019; Dall'Asta, 2017). Pregnancies with early-onset FGR have greater rates of umbilical artery Doppler abnormalities compared with those with late onset. Similar to pregnancies complicated by preeclampsia, increased maternal serum levels of antiangiogenic factors that include soluble vascular endothelial growth factor receptor 1 (sVEGFR-1) and soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase 1 (sFlt-1) are reported in pregnancies complicated by early-onset growth restriction (Kingdom, 2018; Korzeniewski, 2016) (Chap. 40, p. 694).

Barker Hypothesis

Thirty years ago, Barker (1992) hypothesized that *adult* mortality and morbidity are related to fetal and infant health. This includes both under- and overgrowth. In the context of FGR, numerous reports describe a relationship between suboptimal fetal nutrition and a higher risk of subsequent adult hypertension, atherosclerosis, type 2 diabetes, and metabolic

derangement (Colella, 2018; Jornayvaz, 2016). The degree to which low birthweight mediates adult disease is controversial, as weight gain in early life also appears important (Breij, 2014; Kerkhof, 2012; McCloskey, 2016).

Evidence suggests that FGR may affect organ development, particularly that of the heart. Individuals with low birthweight demonstrate cardiac structural changes and dysfunction that persist through childhood, adolescence, and adulthood (Crispi, 2018). In one study, 80 infants who were born SGA before 34 weeks' gestation were compared at 6 months with 80 normally grown infants (Cruz-Lemini, 2016). The ventricle in SGA infants was more globular, resulting in systolic and diastolic dysfunction. In another study, echocardiography in 418 adolescents showed that low birthweight was associated with a thicker left ventricular posterior wall (Hietalampi, 2012). However, these findings have unclear long-term significance (Cohen, 2016).

Growth restriction is also associated with postnatal structural and functional renal changes. Luyckx and Brenner (2015) concluded that both low and high birthweight, maternal obesity, and gestational diabetes adversely affect in-utero development of the kidney and its health into adulthood. However, other variables that include childhood nutrition, acute kidney injury, excessive childhood weight gain, and obesity also worsen long-term renal function.

Prevention

Ideally, prevention begins before conception. Maternal medical conditions are treated, and medications are modified to help lower FGR risks. Smoking cessation is critical. Other risk factors are tailored to the maternal condition, such as antimalarial prophylaxis for women living in endemic areas and correction of nutritional deficiencies. Treatment of mild to moderate hypertension does not reduce the incidence of SGA newborns (Chap. 53, p. 950).

Currently, no pharmacologic therapies prevent growth restriction. Considerable study of low-dose aspirin therapy has not demonstrated consistent benefit in low-risk pregnancies. Daily aspirin therapy did not reduce the risk for SGA neonates in a randomized trial of 1700 women (Rolnik, 2017). Two large metaanalyses involving more than 20,000 women did find that low-dose aspirin was associated with a significantly lower risk of FGR, whether initiated prior to or after 16 weeks' gestation (Meher, 2017; Roberge, 2017). A Cochrane database analysis showed a small reduction in the risk of SGA neonates with maternal aspirin therapy (Duley, 2019). However, these studies included women at risk for preeclampsia, and the modest decrease in the risk for growth restriction was a secondary finding. Because evidence in women without risk factors for preeclampsia is lacking, aspirin therapy for the prevention of FGR is not recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a, 2021a; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2020)

FETAL MACROSOMIA

Definition

The term *macrosomia* is used rather imprecisely to describe a fetus whose estimated weight exceeds a threshold—typically 4000 g, 4500 g, or even 5000 g (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). Although obstetricians generally agree that neonates weighing <4000 g are not excessively large, a similar consensus has not been reached for the definition of macrosomia.

TABLE 47-2. Birthweight Distribution of 354,509 Liveborn Infants at Parkland Hospital between 1988 and 2012

	Births		Maternal Diabetes	
Birthweight (g)	No.	%	No.	%
500–3999	322,074	90.9	13,365	86.2
4000–4249	19,106	5.4	1043	6.7
4250–4499	8391	2.4	573	3.7
4500–4649	3221	0.9	284	1.8
4750–4999	1146	0.3	134	0.7
5000–5249	385	0.1	57	0.4
5250–5499	127	0.04	31	0.2
5500 or more	59	0.02	14	0.09
Total	354,509		15,501	

Large for gestational age (LGA) denotes a fetus or newborn whose weight exceeds the 90th percentile for gestational age. Similar to SGA, the term LGA does not imply that growth is necessarily abnormal. Indeed, most such neonates are simply constitutionally larger than their peers. The 90th percentile for birthweight at 39 weeks' gestation approximates 3900 g (Duryea, 2014). Thus, most LGA neonates would not meet any of the common definitions of macrosomia.

In the United States in 2019, 6.4 percent of all newborns weighed 4000 to 4499 g; 0.9 percent weighed 4500 to 4999 g; and 0.1 percent were born weighing ≥5000 g (Martin, 2021). Similarly, during a 30-year period at Parkland Hospital, during which more than 350,000 singletons were born, only 1.4 percent of neonates weighed ≥4500 g (Table 47-2). We are of the view that the upper limit of fetal growth, above which growth can be deemed abnormal, is likely to be two standard deviations above the mean. This represents perhaps 3 percent of births. At 40 weeks, such a threshold would correspond to approximately 4500 g.

Detection

Because current methods fail to accurately estimate excessive fetal size, macrosomia cannot be definitively diagnosed until delivery (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). Inaccuracy in estimates of fetal weight, by either fundal height measurement or sonography, are often attributable to maternal obesity. In one study of 502 patients with sonographic estimated fetal weights >4000 g within 2 weeks of delivery, the risk of birthweight overestimation was >50 percent (Zafman, 2020). Of those who underwent cesarean delivery for suspected LGA, almost 30 percent delivered a neonate weighing <4000 g.

Pathophysiology

Particularly in women with diabetes and elevated cord blood levels of insulin-like growth factor 1, fetal macrosomia is asso-

TABLE 47-3. Risk Factors for Fetal Macrosomia

Obesity
Diabetes
Postterm gestation
Multiparity
Large size of parents
Advancing maternal age
Previous macrosomic infant
Racial and ethnic factors

ciated with greater neonatal fat mass and morphological heart changes. Pedersen (1954) first proposed that hyperglycemia leads to fetal hyperinsulinemia and fetal overgrowth. This has been extended to organ dysmorphia, for example, increased interventricular septal thickness in neonates of mothers with gestational diabetes (Aman, 2011; Garcia-Flores, 2011). The cardiopulmonary vasculature also is adversely affected by diabetes in pregnancy. In 3277 cases of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn, maternal obesity, diabetes, and both deficient and excessive fetal growth were independent risk factors (Steurer, 2017). Long-term metabolic consequences of fetal macrosomia in the setting of maternal obesity are discussed in Chapter 51 (p. 907).

Risk Factors

Some factors associated with fetal macrosomia are listed in Table 47-3. Many are interrelated. Advancing age usually correlates with multiparity and risk for diabetes, and obesity is similarly associated with diabetes. In one study, the birth prevalence of macrosomia exceeded 24 percent among obese women in China, and macrosomia rates were approximately 2.5-fold higher for prolonged pregnancy and gestational diabetes (Wang, 2017). As shown in Table 47-2, maternal diabetes is strongly associated with neonates weighing >4000 g. In a prospective study of 682 consecutive pregnancies complicated by diabetes, women with type 1 diabetes were significantly more likely than women with type 2 diabetes to have a neonate weighing above the 90th and 97.7th percentiles (Murphy, 2011). Higher third-trimester glucose concentration correlates with fetal macrosomia, and hemoglobin A_{1c} and fasting glucose values are independent predictors of macrosomia risk (Cyganek, 2017). Notably, maternal diabetes is associated with only a small percentage of the total number of LGA newborns.

Management

Several interventions have been proposed to interdict suspected or "impending" fetal overgrowth. Exercise in pregnancy is beneficial to the mother, does not increase the risk for growth impairment, and decreases macrosomia risk. One metaanalysis of 28 studies involving 5322 women concluded that exercise reduces the risk of an LGA newborn or birthweight >4000 g without raising the risk of an SGA neonate or birthweight <2500 g (Wiebe, 2015). Similarly, others have concluded that aerobic exercise increases the likelihood of a normal weight neonate (Di Mascio, 2016; Perales, 2016).

For women with diabetes, insulin therapy and glycemic control may lower the prevalence of neonatal macrosomia but have not consistently translated into reduced cesarean delivery rates. Fetal macrosomia, irrespective of the diagnosis of diabetes mellitus, is strongly associated with maternal obesity and excessive gestational weight gain (Durie, 2011; Durst, 2016; Harper, 2015). Currently recommended weight gains for pregnancy according to maternal BMI are described in Chapter 10 (p. 183).

"Prophylactic" Labor Induction

Some clinicians have induced labor when fetal macrosomia was suspected in nondiabetic women. The rationale for this approach was to obviate further fetal growth and, in theory, reduce the risk of delivery complications or cesarean delivery. In a systematic review of 11 studies of expectant management compared with labor induction for suspected macrosomia, labor induction significantly increased cesarean delivery rates without improving perinatal outcomes (Sanchez-Ramos, 2002). In contrast, Magro-Malosso and colleagues (2017) performed a metaanalysis of four randomized trials involving 1190 women and concluded that labor induction at ≥38 weeks' gestation for suspected macrosomia significantly reduces the frequency of fetal overgrowth and fractures. In one of these studies, 822 women with suspected LGA fetuses were randomly assigned either to early-term delivery or to expectant management (Boulvain, 2015). There was a higher rate of vaginal delivery that was marginally significant and a lower composite measure of morbidity. The authors cautioned that any benefits should be balanced with the risks of early-term labor induction and delivery. Namely, a review of early-term births indicates that elective delivery before 39 weeks' gestation does not improve maternal outcomes and is associated with worse neonatal outcomes (Tita, 2016). We agree with the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a, 2020b) that current evidence does not support a policy for early labor induction or delivery before 39 weeks' gestation.

Elective Cesarean Delivery

With the delivery of macrosomic neonates, shoulder dystocia and its attendant risks described in Chapter 27 (p. 501) are major concerns. That said, 9 percent of these injuries still follow cesarean delivery (Johnson, 2020). Therefore, planned cesarean delivery on the basis of suspected macrosomia to prevent brachial plexopathy is an unreasonable strategy in the *general population* (Chauhan, 2005). Ecker and coworkers (1997) analyzed 80 cases of brachial plexus injury in 77,616 consecutive newborns at Brigham and Women's Hospital. They concluded that an excessive number of otherwise unnecessary cesarean deliveries would be needed to prevent a single brachial plexus injury in neonates born to women without diabetes. Others echoed these sentiments in their analysis of nondiabetic mothers (Rouse, 1996; Van der Looven, 2020).

Conversely, planned cesarean delivery may be a reasonable strategy for *diabetic* women with an estimated fetal weight >4250 or >4500 g. Conway and Langer (1998) described a protocol of routine cesarean delivery for sonographic estimates of ≥4250 g in diabetic women. This management significantly lowered the shoulder dystocia rate from 2.4 to 1.1 percent.

TABLE 47-4. Maternal and Fetal Outcomes for 208,090 Pregnancies Delivered at Parkland Hospital from 1998 through 2012

Outcome[a]	<4000 g n = 187,119	4000–4499 g n = 17,750	4500–4999 g n = 2849	≥5000 g n = 372	*p* value
Cesarean total	46,577 (25)	5,362 (30)	1204 (42)	224 (60)	<0.001
Scheduled	12,564 (7)	1,481 (8)	316 (11)	65 (17)	<0.001
Dystocia	7589 (4)	1388 (8)	337 (12)	46 (12)	<0.001
Shoulder dystocia	437 (0)	366 (2)	192 (7)	56 (15)	<0.001
3rd- or 4th-degree laceration	7296 (4)	932 (5)	190 (7)	37 (10)	<0.001
Labor induction	26,118 (13)	2499 (14)	420 (15)	39 (10)	0.141
Prolonged second stage	6905 (4)	899 (5)	147 (5)	14 (4)	<0.001
Chorioamnionitis	13,448 (7)	1778 (10)	295 (10)	35 (9)	<0.001
pH <7.0	925 (0.5)	96 (0.6)	20 (0.7)	4 (1.1)	0.039
Apgar <7 @ 5 minutes	1898 (1.0)	80 (0.5)	22 (0.8)	10 (2.7)	<0.001
ICN admission	4266 (2.2)	123 (0.7)	36 (1.3)	9 (2.4)	<0.001
Fractured clavicle	1880 (1.0)	616 (3.5)	125 (4.4)	16 (4.3)	<0.001
Mechanical ventilation	2305 (1.2)	54 (0.3)	11 (0.4)	9 (2.4)	<0.001
Hypoglycemia	480 (0.2)	89 (0.5)	31 (1.1)	12 (3.2)	<0.001
Hyperbilirubinemia	5829 (3.0)	305 (1.7)	60 (2.1)	12 (3.2)	<0.001
Erb palsy	470 (0.2)	224 (1.3)	74 (2.6)	22 (5.9)	<0.001
Neonatal death	402 (0.2)	3 (0)	2 (0.1)	1 (0.3)	<0.001

[a]Outcome data presented as n (%).
ICN = intensive care nursery.

In summary, we agree with the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists that elective delivery for the fetus that is suspected to be overgrown is inadvisable, particularly before 39 weeks' gestation. Last, we also conclude that elective cesarean delivery is not indicated when estimated fetal weight is <5000 g among women without diabetes and <4500 g among women with diabetes (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a, 2020b).

Outcomes

The adverse consequences of excessive fetal growth are considerable. Neonates with a birthweight of at least 4000 g have cesarean delivery rates exceeding 50 percent. This is particularly true with maternal obesity or diabetes or with birthweights >5000 g (Cordero, 2015; Crosby, 2017; Hehir, 2015). Neonatal morbidity is higher in LGA neonates compared with those with lower birthweights. Macrosomic newborns have higher rates of shoulder dystocia, obstetrical brachial plexus injuries, and birth fractures (Beta, 2019; Chauhan, 2017). Rates of shoulder dystocia vary greatly and can reach nearly 30 percent for macrosomic neonates when maternal diabetes is comorbid (Cordero, 2015). In general obstetrical populations that include diabetic mothers, dystocia rates are at least 5 percent for neonates with birthweights ≥5000 g (Crosby, 2017; Hehir, 2015). The risk for stillbirth is greater with macrosomia, and this risk rises with increasing birth weight (Salihu, 2020). Rates of postpartum hemorrhage, perineal laceration, and maternal infection, which are related complications, also are higher in mothers delivering overgrown newborns. Table 47-4 shows maternal and neonatal outcomes by birthweight for neonates >4000 g delivered at Parkland Hospital.

REFERENCES

Aman J, Hansson U, Ostlund I, et al: Increased fat mass and cardiac septal hypertrophy in newborn infants of mothers with well-controlled diabetes during pregnancy. Neonatology 100(2):147, 2011

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Macrosomia. Practice Bulletin No. 216, December 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Methods for estimating the due date. Committee Opinion No. 700, May 2017, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Low-dose aspirin use during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 743, June 2018, Reaffirmed 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Shoulder dystocia. Practice Bulletin No. 178, May 2017, Reaffirmed 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Fetal growth restriction. Practice Bulletin No. 227, January 2021a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Indications for outpatient antenatal fetal surveillance. Committee Opinion No. 828, May 2021b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Medically indicated late-preterm and early-term deliveries. Committee Opinion No. 831, January 2021c

Aviram A, Sherman C, Kingdom J, et al: Defining early vs late fetal growth restriction by placental pathology. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 98(3):365, 2019

Bahado-Singh RO, Lynch L, Deren O, et al: First-trimester growth restriction and fetal aneuploidy: the effect of type of aneuploidy and gestational age. Am J Obstet Gynecol 176(5):976, 1997

Barker DJ (ed): Fetal and Infant Origins of Adult Disease. London, BMJ Publishing, 1992

Baschat AA: Neurodevelopment after fetal growth restriction. Fetal Diagn Ther 36:136, 2014

Baschat AA, Viscardi RM, Hussey-Gardner B, et al: Infant neurodevelopment following fetal growth restriction: relationship with antepartum surveillance parameters. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 33(1):44, 2009

Battaglia FC, Lubchenco LO: A practical classification of newborn infants by weight and gestational age. J Pediatr 71(2):159, 1967

Beta J, Khan N, Khalil A, et al: Maternal and neonatal complications of fetal macrosomia: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 54(3):308-318, 2019

Blackwell SC, Landon MB, Mele L, et al: Relationship between excessive gestational weight gain and neonatal adiposity in women with mild gestational diabetes mellitus. Obstet Gynecol 128:1325, 2016

Blue NR, Beddow ME, Savabi M, et al: A comparison of methods for the diagnosis of fetal growth restriction between the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Obstet Gynecol 131(5):835, 2018

Boers KE, van Wyk L, van der Post JA, et al: Neonatal morbidity after induction vs expectant monitoring in intrauterine growth restriction at term: a subanalysis of the DIGITAT RCT. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206:344.e1, 2012

Boers KE, Vijgen SM, Bijlenga D, et al: Induction versus expectant monitoring for intrauterine growth restriction at term: randomised equivalence trial (DIGITAT). BMJ 341:c7087, 2010

Boulvain M, Senat MV, Perrotin F, et al: Induction of labour versus expectant management for large-for-date fetuses: a randomised controlled trial. Lancet 385:2600, 2015

Breij LM, Kerkhof GF, Hokken-Koelega AC: Accelerated infant weight gain and risk for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in early adulthood. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 99:1189, 2014

Briand V, Saal J, Ghafari C, et al: Fetal growth restriction is associated with malaria in pregnancy: a prospective longitudinal study in Benin. J Infect Dis 214:417, 2016

Bricker L, Medley N, Pratt JJ: Routine ultrasound in late pregnancy (after 24 weeks' gestation). Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD001451, 2015

Briffa JF, McAinch AJ, Romano T, et al: Leptin in pregnancy and development: a contributor to adulthood disease? Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab 308:E335, 2015

Brosens I, Benagiano G, Brosens JJ: The potential perinatal origin of placentation disorders in the young primigravida. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212:580, 2015

Bryant AS, Worjoloh A, Caughey AB, et al: Racial/ethnic disparities in obstetric outcomes and care: prevalence and determinants. Am J Obstet Gynecol 202(4):335, 2010

Calabuig-Navarro V, Puchowicz M, Glazebrook P, et al: Effect of ω-3 supplementation on placental lipid metabolism in overweight and obese women. Am J Clin Nutr 103:1064, 2016

Capobiango JD, Breganó RM, Navarro IT, et al: Congenital toxoplasmosis in a reference center of Paraná, Southern Brazil. Braz J Infect Dis 18:364, 2014

Caradeux J, Martinez-Portilla RJ, Basuki TR, et al: Risk of fetal death in growth-restricted fetuses with umbilical and/or ductus venosus absent or reversed end-diastolic velocities before 34 weeks of gestation: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(2S):S774, 2018

Chauhan SP, Grobman WA, Gherman RA, et al: Suspicion and treatment of the macrosomic fetus: a review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193(2):332, 2005

Chauhan SP, Rice MM, Grobman WA, et al: Neonatal morbidity of small- and large-for-gestational-age neonates born at term in uncomplicated pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 130(3):511, 2017

Chen S, Cao P, Dong N, et al: PCSK6-mediated corin activation is essential for normal blood pressure. Nat Med 21:1048, 2015

Chiossi G, Pedroza C, Costantine MM, et al: Customized versus population-based growth charts to identify neonates at risk of adverse outcomes: a systematic review and Bayesian meta-analysis of observational studies. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 50(2):156, 2017

Cohen E, Wong FY, Horne RS, Yiallourou SR: Intrauterine growth restriction: impact on cardiovascular development and function throughout infancy. Pediatr Res 79:821, 2016

Coker AL, Garcia LS, Williams CM, et al: Universal psychosocial screening and adverse pregnancy outcomes in an academic obstetric clinic. Obstet Gynecol 119(6):1180, 2012

Colella M, Frérot A, Novais AR, et al: Neonatal and long-term consequences of fetal growth restriction. Curr Pediatr Rev 14(4):212, 2018

Conway DL, Langer O: Elective delivery of infants with macrosomia in diabetic women: reduced shoulder dystocia versus increased cesarean deliveries. Am J Obstet Gynecol 178(5):922, 1998

Cordero L, Paetow P, Landon MB, et al: Neonatal outcomes of macrosomic infants of diabetic and non-diabetic mothers. J Neonatal Perinatal Med 8:105, 2015

Costantine MM, Mele L, Landon MB, et al: Customized versus population approach for evaluation of fetal overgrowth. Am J Perinatol 30:565, 2013

Crispi F, Miranda J, Gratacós E: Long-term cardiovascular consequences of fetal growth restriction: biology, clinical implications, and opportunities for prevention of adult disease. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(2S):S869, 2018

Crosby DA, Ahmed S, Razley A, et al: Obstetric and neonatal characteristics of pregnancy and delivery for infant birthweight ≥5.0 kg. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(24):2961, 2017

Crume TL, Shapiro AL, Brinton JT, et al: Maternal fuels and metabolic measures during pregnancy and neonatal body composition: the healthy start study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 100:1672, 2015

Cruz-Lemini M, Crispi F, Valenzuela-Alcaraz B, et al: Fetal cardiovascular remodeling persists at 6 months in infants with intrauterine growth restriction. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 48:349, 2016

Cui Y, Wang W, Dong N, et al: Role of corin in trophoblast invasion and uterine spiral artery remodelling in pregnancy. Nature 484(7393):246, 2012

Cunningham FG, Cox SM, Harstad TW, et al: Chronic renal disease and pregnancy outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 163(2):453, 1990

Cyganek K, Skupien J, Katra B, et al: Risk of macrosomia remains glucose-dependent in a cohort of women with pregestational type 1 diabetes and good glycemic control. Endocrine 55(2):447, 2017

Dall'Asta A, Brunelli V, Prefumo F, et al: Early onset fetal growth restriction. Matern Health Neonatol Perinatol 3:2, 2017

de Haas S, Ghossein-Doha C, van Kuijk SM, et al: Physiologic adaptation of maternal plasma volume during pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 49(2):177, 2017

De Jesus LC, Pappas A, Shankaran S, et al: Outcomes of small for gestational age infants born at <27 weeks' gestation. J Pediatr 163:55.e1, 2013

Delhaes F, Giza SA, Koreman T, et al: Altered maternal and placental lipid metabolism and fetal fat development in obesity: current knowledge and advances in non-invasive assessment. Placenta. 69:118, 2018

Desai G, Anand A, Shah P, et al: Sickle cell disease and pregnancy outcomes: a study of the community-based hospital in a tribal block of Gujarat, India. J Health Popul Nutr 36:3, 2017

DeVore GR: The importance of the cerebroplacental ratio in the evaluation of fetal well-being in SGA and AGA fetuses. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(1):5, 2015

Di Mascio D, Magro-Malosso R, Saccone G, et al: Exercise during pregnancy in normal-weight women and risk of preterm birth: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(5):561, 2016

D'Souza SW, Black P, Richards B: Smoking in pregnancy: associations with skinfold thickness, maternal weight gain, and fetal size at birth. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed) 282(6277):1661, 1981

Duley L, Meher S, Hunter KE, et al: Antiplatelet agents for preventing pre-eclampsia and its complications. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2019(10):CD004659, 2019

Durie DE, Thornburg LL, Glantz JC: Effect of second-trimester and third-trimester rate of gestational weight gain on maternal and neonatal outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 118(3):569, 2011

Durst JK, Sutton AL, Cliver SP, et al: Impact of gestational weight gain on perinatal outcomes in obese women. Am J Perinatol 33:849, 2016

Duryea EL, Hawkins JS, McIntire DD, et al: A revised birth weight reference for the United States. Obstet Gynecol 124:16, 2014

Ecker JL, Greenberg JA, Norwitz ER, et al: Birthweight as a predictor of brachial plexus injury. Obstet Gynecol 89(5 pt 1):643, 1997

Feng Z, Minard C, Raghavan R: Pregnancy outcomes in advanced kidney disease. Clin Nephrol 83:272; 2015

Fiot E, Zenaty D, Boizeau P, et al: X-chromosome gene dosage as a determinant of impaired pre and postnatal growth and adult height in Turner syndrome. Eur J Endocrinol 174:281, 2016

Flood K, Unterscheider J, Daly S, et al: The role of brain sparing in the prediction of adverse outcomes in intrauterine growth restriction: results of the multicenter PORTO Study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(3):288, 2014

Garcia-Flores J, Jañez M, Gonzalez MC, et al: Fetal myocardial morphological and functional changes associated with well-controlled gestational diabetes. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 154(1):24, 2011

Gauster M, Hiden U, Blaschitz A, et al: Dysregulation of placental endothelial lipase and lipoprotein lipase in intrauterine growth-restricted pregnancies. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 92(6):2256, 2007

Gauster M, Hiden U, van Poppel M, et al: Dysregulation of placental endothelial lipase in obese women with gestational diabetes mellitus. Diabetes 60(10):2457, 2011

Getahun D, Ananth CV, Kinzler WL: Risk factors for antepartum and intrapartum stillbirth: a population-based study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196(6):499, 2007

Ghanchi A, Rahshenas M, Bonnet D, et al: Prevalence of growth restriction at birth for newborns with congenital heart defects: a population-based prospective cohort study EPICARD. Front Pediatr 9:676994, 2021

Giannakopoulos B, Krilis SA: The pathogenesis of the antiphospholipid syndrome. N Engl J Med 368(11):1033, 2013

Gil-Sánchez A, Koletzko B, Larqué E: Current understanding of placental fatty acid transport. Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care 15(3):265, 2012

Goetzinger KR, Tuuli MG, Odibo AO, et al: Screening for fetal growth disorders by clinical exam in the era of obesity. J Perinatol 33(5):352, 2012

Grantz KL, Kim S, Grobman WA, et al: Fetal growth velocity: the NICHD fetal growth studies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219:285, 2018

Grantz KL, Ortega-Villa AM, Pugh SJ, et al: Combination of fundal height and ultrasound to predict small for gestational age at birth. Am J Perinatol May 3, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Greer LG, Ziadie MS, Casey BM, et al: An immunologic basis for placental insufficiency in fetal growth restriction. Am J Perinatol 29(7):533, 2012

Griffin IJ, Lee HC, Profit J, et al: The smallest of the small: short-term outcomes of profoundly growth restricted and profoundly low birth weight preterm infants. J Perinatol 35:503, 2015
Grobman WA, Lai Y, Rouse DJ, et al: The association of cerebral palsy and death with small-for-gestational-age birthweight in preterm neonates by individualized and population-based percentiles. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(4):340.e1, 2013
Hall C, Bukowinski AT, McGill AL, et al: Racial disparities in prenatal care utilization and infant small for gestational age among active duty US military women. Matern Child Health J 24(7):885, 2020
Hammad IA, Chauhan CP, Mlynarczyk M, et al: Uncomplicated pregnancies and ultrasounds for fetal growth restriction: a pilot randomized clinical trial. Am J Perinatol 6(1):e83, 2016
HAPO Study Cooperative Research Group: Hyperglycemia and adverse pregnancy outcomes. N Engl J Med 358(19):1991, 2008
Harper LM, Tita A, Biggio JR: The Institute of Medicine guidelines for gestational weight gain after a diagnosis of gestational diabetes and pregnancy outcomes. Am J Perinatol 32:239, 2015
He B, Hu C, Zhou Y: First-trimester screening for fetal growth restriction using Doppler color flow analysis of the uterine artery and serum PAPP-A levels in unselected pregnancies. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 12:1, 2020
Hehir MP, Mchugh AF, Maguire PJ, et al: Extreme macrosomia—obstetric outcomes and complications in birthweights >5000 g. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 55:42, 2015
Herrera CL, Hussamy DJ, McIntire DD, et al: Femur length parameters in fetuses with Down syndrome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(15):2516, 2020
Hietalampi H, Pahkala K, Jokinen E, et al: Left ventricular mass and geometry in adolescence: early childhood determinants. Hypertension 60(5):1266, 2012
Hutcheon JA, Stephansson O, Cnattingius S, et al: Is the association between pregnancy weight gain and fetal size casual?: a re-examination using a sibling comparison design. Epidemiology 30(2):234, 2019
Jana N, Barik S, Arora N, et al: Tuberculosis in pregnancy: the challenges for South Asian countries. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 38(9):1125, 2012
Johnson GJ, Denning S, Clark SL, et al: Pathophysiologic origins of brachial plexus injury. Obstet Gynecol 136(4):725, 2020
Jornayvaz FR, Vollenweider P, Bochud M, et al: Low birth weight leads to obesity, diabetes and increased leptin levels in adults: the CoLaus study. Cardiovasc Diabetol 15:73, 2016
Keats EC, Haider BA, Tam E, et al: Multiple-micronutrient supplementation for women during pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3(3):CD004905, 2019
Kerkhof GF, Willemsen RH, Leunissen RW, et al: Health profile of young adults born preterm: negative effects of rapid weight gain in early life. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 97(12):4498, 2012
Khoury MJ, Erickson JD, Cordero JF, et al: Congenital malformations and intrauterine growth retardation: a population study. Pediatrics 82(1):83, 1988
Kim CJ, Romero R, Chaemsaithong P, et al: Chronic inflammation of the placenta: definition, classification, pathogenesis, and clinical significance. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2213:S53, 2015
Kingdom JC, Audette MC, Hobson SR, et al: A placenta clinic approach to the diagnosis and management of fetal growth restriction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(2S):S803, 2018
Klemetti MM, Laivuori H, Tikkanen M, et al: White's classification and pregnancy outcome in women with type 1 diabetes: a population-based cohort study. Diabetologia 59(1):92, 2016
Korzeniewski SJ, Romero R, Chaiworapongsa T, et al: Maternal plasma angiogenic index-1 (placental growth factor/soluble vascular endothelial growth factor receptor-1) is a biomarker for the burden of placental lesions consistent with uteroplacental underperfusion: a longitudinal case-cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(5):629, 2016
Langridge AT, Li J, Nassar N, et al: Community-level socioeconomic inequalities in infants with poor fetal growth in Western Australia, 1984 to 2006. Ann Epidemiol 21(7):473-80, 2011
Leary PJ, Leary SE, Stout KK, et al: Maternal, perinatal, and post neonatal outcomes in women with chronic heart disease in Washington State. Obstet Gynecol 120:1283, 2012
Lechtig A, Delgado H, Lasky RE, et al: Maternal nutrition and fetal growth in developing societies. Am J Dis Child 129(5):434, 1975
Lees CC, Stampalija T, Baschat A, et al: ISUOG Practice Guildelines: diagnosis and management of small-for-gestational-age fetus and fetal growth restriction. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 56(2):298, 2020
Lees CC, Marlow N, van Wassenaer-Leemhuis A, et al: 2 year neurodevelopmental and intermediate perinatal outcomes in infants with very preterm fetal growth restriction (TRUFFLE): a randomised trial. Lancet 385:2162, 2015
Levine TA, Grunau RE, McAuliffe FM, et al. Early childhood neurodevelopment after intrauterine growth restriction: a systematic review. Pediatrics 135:126, 2015
Llurba E, Baschat AA, Turan OM, et al: Childhood cognitive development after fetal growth restriction. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 41(4):383, 2013
Luo ZC, Nuyt AM, Delvin E, et al: Maternal and fetal IGF-I and IGF-II levels, fetal growth, and gestational diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 97(5):1720, 2012
Luyckx VA, Brenner BM: Birth weight, malnutrition and kidney-associated outcomes-a global concern. Nat Rev Nephrol 11:135, 2015
Magro-Malosso ER, Saccone G, Chen M, et al: Induction of labour for suspected macrosomia at term in non-diabetic women: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. BJOG 124:414, 2017
Manning FA (ed): Intrauterine growth retardation. In Fetal Medicine Principles and Practice. Norwalk, Appleton & Lange, 1995
Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJ, et al: Births: final data for 2019. Natl Vital Stat Rep 70(2):1, 2021
Mattsson K, Rylander L: Influence of maternal and paternal birthweight on offspring birthweight—a population-based intergenerational study. Paediatr Perinat Epidemiol 27(2):138, 2013
Mayer C, Joseph KS: Fetal growth: a review of terms, concepts and issues relevant to obstetrics. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 41(2):136, 2013
McCloskey K, Burgner D, Carlin JB, et al: Infant adiposity at birth and early postnatal weight gain predict increased aortic intima-media thickness at 6 weeks of age: a population-derived cohort study. Clin Sci 130:443, 2016
McCowan LM, Figueras F, Anderson NH: Evidence-based national guidelines for the management of suspected fetal growth restriction: comparison, consensus, and controversy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(2S):S855, 2018
McIntire DD, Bloom SL, Casey BM, et al: Birthweight in relation to morbidity and mortality among newborn infants. N Engl J Med 340(16):1234, 1999
Meher S, Duley L, Hunter K, et al: Antiplatelet therapy before or after 16 weeks' gestation for preventing preeclampsia: an individual participant data meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(2):121, 2017
Mendez-Figueroa H, Truong VT, Pedroza C, et al: Small-for-gestational-age infants among uncomplicated pregnancies at term: a secondary analysis of 9 Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units Network studies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215:628.e1, 2016
Milovanovic I, Njuieyon F, Deghmoun S, et al: Innate small babies are metabolically healthy children. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 97(12):4407, 2012
Monier I, Blondel B, Ego A, et al: Poor effectiveness of antenatal detection of fetal growth restriction and consequences for obstetric management and neonatal outcomes: a French national study. BJOG 122(4):518, 2015
Murphy HR, Steel SA, Roland JM, et al: East Anglia Study Group for Improving Pregnancy Outcomes in Women with Diabetes (EASIPOD). Obstetric and perinatal outcomes in pregnancies complicated by Type 1 and Type 2 diabetes: influences of glycaemic control, obesity and social disadvantage. Diabet Med 28(9):1060, 2011
Myatt L, Maloyan A: Obesity and placental function. Semin Reprod Med 34:42, 2016
Nelson DB, Martin R, Twickler DM, et al: Sonographic detection and clinical importance of growth restriction in pregnancies with gastroschisis. J Ultrasound Med 34:2217, 2015
Ökdemir D, Hatipoğlu N, Kurtoğlu S, et al: The role of irisin, insulin and leptin in maternal and fetal interaction. J Clin Res Pediatr Endocrinol 10(4):307, 2018
Ottesen AM, Aksglaede L, Garn I, et al: Increased number of sex chromosomes affects height in a nonlinear fashion: a study of 305 patients with sex chromosome aneuploidy. Am J Med Genet A 152A:1206, 2010
Pardi G, Cetin I: Human fetal growth and organ development: 50 years of discoveries. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194(4):1008, 2006
Pedersen J: Weight and length at birth of infants of diabetic mothers. Acta Endocrinol (Copenh) 16:330, 1954
Perales M, Santos-Lozano A, Ruiz JR, et al: Benefits of aerobic or resistance training during pregnancy on maternal health and perinatal outcomes: a systematic review. Early Hum Dev 94:43, 2016
Picone O, Teissier N, Cordier AG, et al: Detailed in utero ultrasound description of 30 cases of congenital cytomegalovirus infection. Prenat Diagn 34:518, 2014
Picone O, Vauloup-Fellous C, Cordier AG, et al: A series of 238 cytomegalovirus primary infections during pregnancy: description and outcome. Prenat Diagn 2:1, 2013
Poon LC, Shennan A, Hyett JA, et al: The International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) initiative on pre-eclampsia: a pragmatic guide for first-trimester screening and prevention. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 145 Suppl 1(Suppl 1):1, 2019
Prado EL, Alcock KJ, Muadz H, et al: Maternal multiple micronutrient supplements and child cognition: a randomized trial in Indonesia. Pediatrics 130(3):e536, 2012

Roberge S, Nicolaides K, Demers S, et al: The role of aspirin dose on the prevention of preeclampsia and fetal growth restriction: systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(2):110, 2017

Roex A, Nikpoor P, van Eerd E, et al: Serial plotting on customized fundal height charts results in doubling of the antenatal detection of small for gestational age fetuses in nulliparous women. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 52(1):78, 2012

Rogne T, Engstrøm AA, Jacobsen GW, et al: Fetal growth, cognitive function, and brain volumes in childhood and adolescence. Obstet Gynecol 125:673, 2015

Rolnik DL, Wright D, Poon LC, et al: Aspirin versus Placebo in Pregnancies at High Risk for Preterm Preeclampsia. N Engl J Med 377(7):613, 2017

Rouse DJ, Owen J, Goldenberg RL, et al: The effectiveness and costs of elective cesarean delivery for fetal macrosomia diagnosed by ultrasound. JAMA 276(2):1480, 1996

Rudzinski E, Gilroy M, Newbill C, et al: Positive C4d immunostaining of placental villous syncytiotrophoblasts supports host-versus-graft rejection in villitis of unknown etiology. Pediatr Dev Pathol 16(1):7, 2013

Saccone G, Berghella V, Maruotti GM, et al: Antiphospholipid antibody profile based obstetric outcomes of primary antiphospholipid syndrome: the PREGNANTS study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(5):525, 2017

Saliem S, Patenaude V, Abenhaim HA: Pregnancy outcomes among renal transplant recipients and patients with end-stage renal disease on dialysis. J Perinat Med 44:321, 2016

Salihu HM, Dongarwar D, King LM, et al: Phenotypes of fetal macrosomia and risk of stillbirth among term deliveries over the previous four decades. Birth 47(2):202, 2020

Sanchez-Ramos L, Bernstein S, Kaunitz AM: Expectant management versus labor induction for suspected fetal macrosomia: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 100(5 pt 1):997, 2002

Savchev S, Figueras F, Sanz-Cortes M, et al: Evaluation of an optimal gestational age cut-off for the definition of early- and late-onset fetal growth restriction. Fetal Diagn Ther 36(2):9, 2014

Schemmer G, Wapner RJ, Johnson A, et al: First-trimester growth patterns of aneuploid fetuses. Prenat Diagn 17(2):155, 1997

Segura MT, Demmelmair H, Krauss-Etschmann S, et al: Maternal BMI and gestational diabetes alter placental lipid transporters and fatty acid composition. Placenta 57:144, 2017

Sheffield JS, Sánchez PJ, Morris G, et al: Congenital syphilis after maternal treatment for syphilis during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186(3):569, 2002

Simpson J, Smith AD, Fraser A, et al: Programming of adiposity in childhood and adolescence: associations with birth weight and cord blood adipokines. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 102(2):499, 2017

Sobhy S, Babiker Z, Zamora J, et al: Maternal and perinatal mortality and morbidity associated with tuberculosis during pregnancy and the postpartum period: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 124(5):727, 2017

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Martins JG, Biggio JR, et al: Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine consult series #52: diagnosis and management of fetal growth restriction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(4):B2, 2020

Sovio U, White IR, Dacey A, et al: Screening for fetal growth restriction with universal third trimester ultrasonography in nulliparous women in the Pregnancy Outcome Prediction (POP) study: a prospective cohort study. Lancet 386:2089, 2015

Sparks TN, Cheng YW, McLaughlin B, et al: Fundal height: a useful screening tool for fetal growth? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 24(5):708, 2011

Stein Z, Susser M, Saenger G, et al: Famine and Human Development: The Dutch Hunger Winter of 1944–1945. New York, Oxford University Press, 1975

Steurer MA, Jelliffe-Pawlowski LL, Baer RJ, et al: Persistent Pulmonary Hypertension of the Newborn in Late Preterm and Term Infants in California. Pediatrics 139(1):e20161165, 2017

Stott D, Papastefanou I, Paraschiv D, et al: Longitudinal maternal haemodynamics in fetal growth restriction in pregnancies at high risk for placental insufficiency. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 49(6):761, 2017

Tajik P, van Wyk L, Boers KE, et al: Which intrauterine growth restricted fetuses at term benefit from early labour induction? A secondary analysis of the DIGITAT randomised trial. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 172:20, 2014

Thame MM, Singh-Minott I, Osmond C, et al: Pregnancy in sickle cell-haemoglobin C (SC) disease. A retrospective study of birth size and maternal weight gain. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 203:16, 2016

Thornton JG, Hornbuckle J, Vail A, et al: Infant well-being at 2 years of age in the Growth Restriction Intervention Trial (GRIT): multicenter randomized controlled trial. Lancet 364(9433):513, 2004

Tita AT: What we have learned about scheduling elective repeat cesarean delivery at term. Semin Perinatol 40:287, 2016

Toda K, Reef S, Tsuruoka M, et al: Congenital rubella syndrome (CRS) in Vietnam 2011–2012−CRS epidemic after rubella epidemic in 2010–2011. Vaccine 33:3673, 2015

Unterscheider J, O'Donoghue K, Malone FD: Guidelines of fetal growth restriction: a comparison of recent national publications. Am J Perinatol 32:307, 2015

Van der Looven R, Le Roy L, Tanghe E, et al: Risk factors for neonatal brachial plexus palsy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Dev Med Child Neurol 62(6):673, 2020

van Wyk L, Boers KE, van der Post JA, et al: Effects on (neuro)developmental and behavioral outcome at 2 years of age of induced labor compared with expectant management in intrauterine growth-restricted infants: long-term outcomes of the DIGITAT trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(5):406.e1, 2012

Vollgraff CA, van Osch IR, Heymans MW, et al: Cerebroplacental ratio in predicting adverse perinatal outcome: a meta-analysis of individual participant data. 128(2):226, 2021

Waldhoer T, Klebermass-Schrehof K: The impact of altitude on birth weight depends on further mother- and infant-related factors: a population-based study in an altitude range up to 1600 m in Austria between 1984 and 2013. J Perinatol 35:689, 2015

Walker DM, Marlow N, Upstone L, et al: The Growth Restriction Intervention Trial: long-term outcomes in a randomized trial of timing of delivery in fetal growth restriction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(1):34.e1, 2011

Wang D, Hong Y, Zhu L, et al: Risk factors and outcomes of macrosomia in China: a multicentric survey based on birth data. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30:623, 2017

Wanyyonyi SZ, Orwa J, Ozelle H, et al: Routine third-trimester ultrasound for the detection of small-for-gestational age in low-risk pregnancies (ROTTUS study): randomized controlled trial. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 57(6):910, 2021

Werler MM: Teratogen update: smoking and reproductive outcomes. Teratology 55(6):382, 1997

Wiebe HW, Boulé NG, Chari R, et al: The effect of supervised prenatal exercise on fetal growth: a meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 125:1185, 2015

Wigby K, D'Epagnier C, Howell S, et al: Expanding the phenotype of Triple X syndrome: a comparison of prenatal versus postnatal diagnosis. Am J Med Genet A 170:2870, 2016

Williams RL, Creasy RK, Cunningham GC, et al: Fetal growth and perinatal viability in California. Obstet Gynecol 59:624, 1982

Yang X, Li M, Haghiac M, Catalano PM, et al: Causal relationship between obesity-related traits and TLR4-driven responses at the maternal-fetal interface. Diabetologia 59:2459, 2016

Zafman KB, Bergh E, Fox NS: Accuracy of sonographic estimated fetal weight in suspected macrosomia: the likelihood of overestimating and underestimating the true birthweight. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(6):967, 2020

Zhang J, Merialdi M, Platt LD, et al: Defining normal and abnormal fetal growth: promises and challenges. Am J Obstet Gynecol 202(6):522, 2010

Zhang J, Mikolajczyk R, Grewal J, et al: Prenatal application of the individualized fetal growth reference. Am J Epidemiol 173(5):539, 2011

CHAPTER 48

Multifetal Pregnancy

Multifetal pregnancies may result from two or more fertilization events, from a single fertilization followed by a splitting of the zygote, or both. In part because of infertility therapy, the twin birth rate in the United States was 3.2 percent in 2019. For higher-order multifetal births, the number peaked in 1998 at 0.2 percent of all births. Subsequent efforts in the reproductive endocrinology community to curb this rate have led to declines. Specifically, the rate of triplets or more declined by 55 percent from 1998 to 2019 (Martin, 2021).

Multifetal gestations remain problematic for both the mother and her fetuses. For the fetus, multifetal births accounted for 3 percent of all live births in 2013 but for 15 percent of all infant deaths. Specifically, the infant mortality rate for twins was more than four times the rate for singletons, and for triplets it was 12-fold higher (Matthews, 2015). Neonates from multifetal gestations also make up a disproportionate percentage of very-low-birthweight newborns in the United States (Martin, 2021). These two outcomes in singletons and twins from Parkland Hospital are shown in Table 48-1. Risks for congenital malformations and preterm birth are greater with multifetal gestation and discussed later.

The mother may also experience higher morbidity and mortality rates, and these rise with the number of fetuses (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2019). In one study of more than 44,000 multifetal pregnancies, the risks for preeclampsia, postpartum hemorrhage, and maternal death were twofold higher than these rates in singleton gestations (Walker, 2004). Rates of placenta previa and placenta accreta spectrum are increased (Miller, 2021a). Moreover, compared with rates for singletons,

TABLE 48-1. Selected Outcomes in Singleton and Twin Pregnancies Delivered at Parkland Hospital from 1988 through 2021

Outcome	Singletons (No.)	Twins (No.)
Pregnancies	456,120	5366
Births[a,b]	456,120	10,732
Stillbirths	2532 (5.6)	258 (24.0)
Neonatal deaths	918 (2.1)	186 (18.2)
Perinatal deaths	3453 (7.6)	444 (41.4)
Very low birthweight (<1500 g)	4450 (10.0)	1109 (108.8)

[a]Birth data are represented as number (per 1000).
[b]Denominator for neonatal deaths and very low birthweight is liveborn infants.
Data from Dr. Don McIntire.

the peripartum hysterectomy rate was threefold greater for twins and 24-fold higher for triplets or quadruplets in one study (Francois, 2005).

MECHANISMS OF MULTIFETAL GESTATIONS

Dizygotic versus Monozygotic Twinning

Multifetal gestations are often described by *zygosity*, *amnionicity*, and *chorionicity*, which are the number of zygotes, amnions, and chorions, respectively. Twin fetuses most often result from fertilization of two separate ova, which yields *dizygotic* or *fraternal twins*. Less often, twins arise from a single fertilized ovum that then divides to create *monozygotic* or *identical twins*.

Dizygotic twins are not in a strict sense true twins because they result from the maturation and fertilization of two ova during a single ovulatory cycle. Genetically, these twins are like any other pair of siblings. Twins of opposite sex are almost always dizygotic. Rarely, somatic mutations or chromosome aberration in one monozygotic twin can yield differing gender karyotype or phenotype. For example, postzygotic loss of the Y chromosome in one 46,XY twin creates a phenotypically female twin with 45,X Turner syndrome.

Monozygotic twins, although they have the same genetic heritage, also are usually not identical. For example, the division of one fertilized zygote into two does not necessarily yield equal sharing of protoplasmic material. In addition, monozygotic twins may be discordant for genetic mutations because of a postzygotic mutation, or they may have the same genetic disease but with marked variability in its expression. In female fetuses, skewed lyonization can produce differential expression of X-linked traits or diseases. Last, sesquizygosity is a rare event of dispermic fertilization that leads to monozygotic twins. Some cases may have sex discordance (Gabbett, 2019).

Monozygotic Twinning

Mechanisms underlying monozygotic twinning are poorly understood. One association is assisted reproductive technology (ART) and in-vitro fertilization (IVF). The monozygotic twinning incidence is twofold greater in pregnancies conceived using blastocyst transfer compared with transfer of a later-stage embryo. The predisposition to splitting may stem from culture media effects (Busnelli, 2019).

The outcome of the monozygotic twinning process depends on when division occurs as depicted in Figure 48-1. If zygotes divide within the first 72 hours after fertilization, two embryos, two amnions, and two chorions develop, and a *monozygotic, dichorionic, diamnionic* twin gestation evolves. Two distinct placentas or a single, fused placenta may develop. If division occurs between days 4 through 8, a *monozygotic, monochorionic, diamnionic* twin pregnancy results. By 8 days, the chorion and the amnion have already differentiated, and division results in two embryos within a common amnionic sac, which is a *monozygotic, monochorionic, monoamnionic* twin gestation. Conjoined twins result if division initiates later.

Rarely, monochorionic twins may be dizygotic. Mechanisms are unclear. In one review of 31 cases, nearly 80 percent were conceived after ART procedures, and 90 percent were associated with chimerism (Peters, 2017).

Factors Affecting Twinning

Dizygotic twinning is much more common than monozygotic splitting of a single oocyte, and its incidence is positively influenced by infertility treatment and by maternal age, race, heredity, and size. By contrast, the frequency of monozygotic twin births is relatively constant worldwide—approximately one set per 250 births. This incidence is generally independent of most demographic factors, except ART.

Of *infertility therapies*, ovulation induction with clomiphene citrate or with follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) plus human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) remarkably enhances the likelihood of multiple concurrent ovulations. Moreover, with IVF, the greater the number of embryos that are transferred, the greater the risk of twins or more. In 2017, ART contributed to 1.9 percent of all newborns in the United States and to 14.7 percent of all neonates in multifetal gestations (Sunderam, 2020). The American Society for Reproductive Medicine (2017) revised their guidelines regarding the number of embryos or blastocysts transferred during IVF to reduce the incidence of multifetal pregnancies. For example, women younger than 35 years are encouraged to receive a single-embryo transfer, regardless of embryo stage. These practices have effectively lowered multifetal rates (Martin, 2021).

Advancing maternal age and *delayed childbearing* are other important risk factors (Adashi, 2018; Otta, 2016). One explanation is FSH levels, which rise with age and lead to greater ovarian stimulation (Beemsterboer, 2006). Higher levels of FSH have been linked with dizygotic twinning (Lambalk, 1998). Another explanation may be a higher use of ART in older women. *Paternal age* has also been linked to twinning, but its effect is felt to be small (Abel, 2012).

Different races and ethnic groups vary in their frequency of multifetal births. In the United States in 2019, the twin birth rate was 4.1 percent in black women, 3.3 percent in whites, and 2.5 in Hispanics (Martin, 2021). In one rural community in Nigeria, twinning occurred once in every 20 births (Knox, 1960). These marked differences in twinning frequency may stem from racial variations in FSH levels (Nylander, 1973).

Heredity is another factor, and maternal influence appears to supersede that of the father. In a study of 4000 genealogical records, women who themselves were a dizygotic twin gave birth to twins at a rate of one set per 58 births (White, 1964). Women who were not a twin, but whose husbands were a dizygotic twin, gave birth to twins at a rate of one set per 116 pregnancies. Genome-wide association studies have identified potentially contributory genes, and two are related to FSH (Mbarek, 2016). However, the contribution of these variants to the overall incidence of twinning is likely small (Hoekstra, 2008).

Maternal size is another risk factor. Nylander (1971) showed an increasing gradient in the twinning rate in taller, heavier women. These had a twinning rate 25 to 30 percent higher than short, nutritionally deprived women. Likewise, another study found an association between greater maternal weight

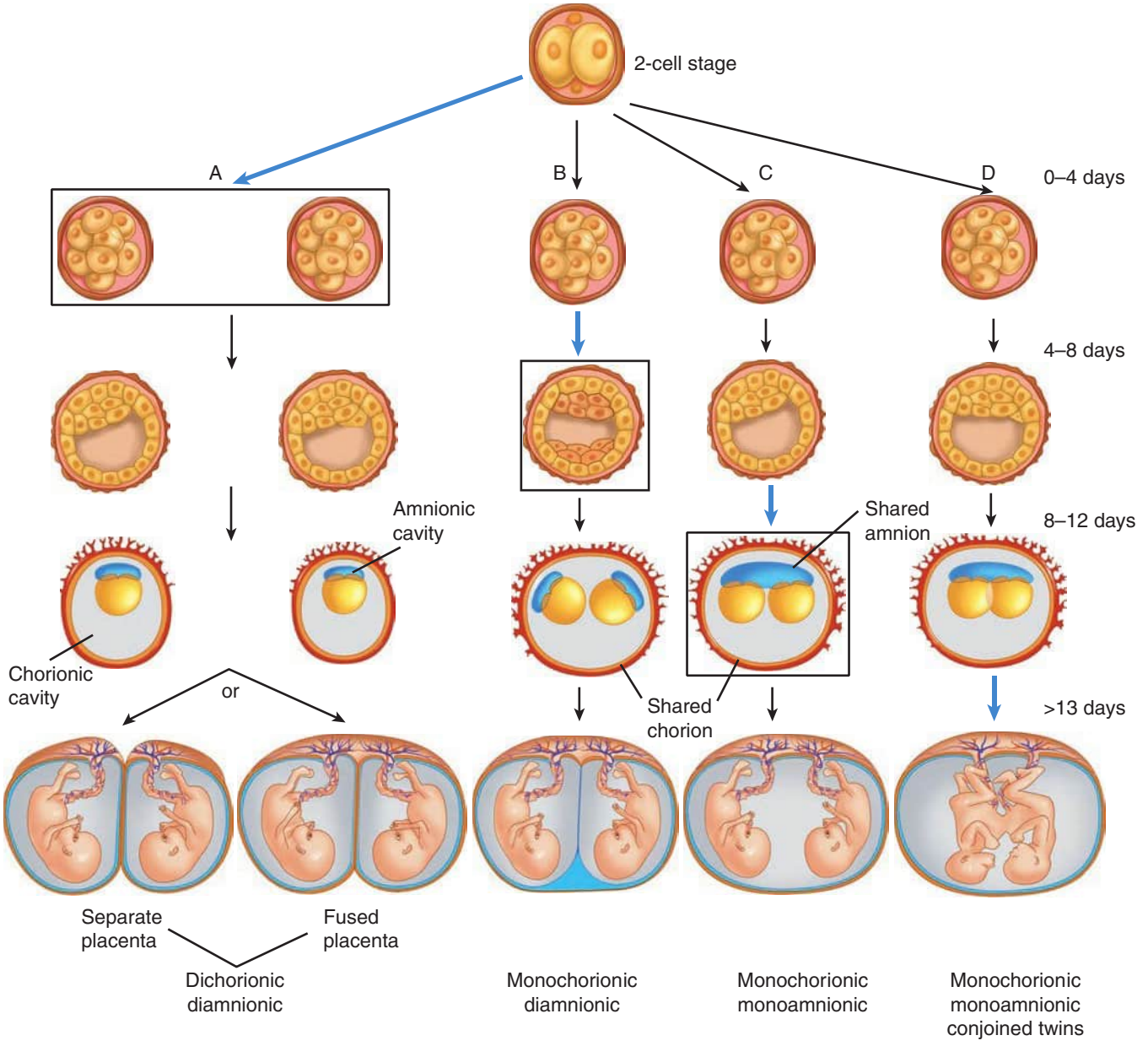


FIGURE 48-1 Mechanism of monozygotic twinning. Black boxing and blue arrows in columns A, B, and C indicate timing of division. **A.** At 0 to 4 days postfertilization, an early conceptus may divide into two. Division at this early stage creates two chorions and two amnions (dichorionic, diamnionic). Placentas may be separate or fused. **B.** Division between 4 to 8 days leads to formation of a blastocyst with two separate embryoblasts (inner cell masses). Each embryoblast will form its own amnion within a shared chorion (monochorionic, diamnionic). **C.** Between 8 and 12 days, the amnion and amnionic cavity form above the germinal disc. Embryonic division leads to two embryos with a shared amnion and shared chorion (monochorionic, monoamnionic). **D.** Differing theories explain conjoined twin development. One describes an incomplete splitting of one embryo into two. The other describes fusion of a portion of one embryo from a monozygotic pair onto the other.

and dizygotic twinning (Reddy, 2005). Evidence acquired during and after World War II suggests that twinning correlates more with nutrition than with body size. Widespread undernourishment in Europe during those years was associated with a marked fall in the dizygotic twinning rate (Bulmer, 1959).

■ Superfecundation and Superfetation

Superfecundation is fertilization of two ova within the same menstrual cycle but not at the same coitus nor necessarily by sperm from the same male. The latter leads to *heteropaternity* (Silver, 2021).

In *superfetation*, an interval as long as or longer than a menstrual cycle intervenes between fertilizations. Superfetation is not known to occur spontaneously and is likely due to ART (Lantieri, 2010). Pseudo-superfetation often results from markedly unequal growth of twins with the same gestational age.

DIAGNOSIS OF MULTIFETAL GESTATION

■ Clinical Evaluation

Early diagnosis can help with management of the associated risks posed by twins. Accurate fundal height measurement can

TABLE 48-2. Incidence of Some Complications Related to Twin Characteristics

Type of Twinning	Twins	Rates of Twin-Specific Complications in Percent			
		Fetal-Growth Restriction	Preterm Delivery[a]	Placental Vascular Anastomosis	Perinatal Mortality
Dizygotic	80	25	40	0	10–12
Monozygotic	20	40	50	—	15–18
Diamnionic/dichorionic	6–7	30	40	0	18–20
Diamnionic/monochorionic	13–14	50	60	100	30–40
Monoamnionic/monochorionic	<1	40	60–70	80–90	58–60
Conjoined	0.002 to 0.008	—	70–80	100	70–90

[a]Delivery before 37 weeks.

be an initial tool. With multiples, uterine size is typically larger during the second trimester than that expected for a singleton. In one study, fundal heights obtained between 20 and 30 weeks' gestation averaged 5 cm greater in twins than in singletons (Rouse, 1993).

Palpation of fetal parts to diagnose twins before the third trimester is difficult. Even then, obesity or hydramnios can hinder assessment. Palpating two fetal heads strongly supports the diagnosis. Moreover, a hand-held Doppler ultrasonic unit may isolate two fetal heartbeats if their rates are clearly distinct from each other and from the mother.

Overall, however, clinical criteria alone to diagnose multifetal gestations is unreliable. In the Routine Antenatal Diagnostic Imaging with Ultrasound (RADIUS) trial, for 37 percent of women who did not have a screening ultrasound examination, their twin pregnancy was not diagnosed until 26 weeks' gestation. In 13 percent of unscanned women, their multifetal gestation was identified only during their admission for delivery (LeFevre, 1993).

■ Sonography

Sonographic examination should detect practically all sets of twins. Further, it should aim to determine fetal number, estimated gestational age, chorionicity, and amnionicity. Importantly, the risk for many twin-specific complications varies in relation to these (Table 48-2) (Hack, 2008; Manning, 1995).

With sonography, separate gestational sacs, if present, can be identified early in twin pregnancy (Fig. 48-2). Subsequently, each fetal head should be seen in two perpendicular planes to avoid mistaking a fetal trunk for a second fetal head. Ideally, two fetal heads or two abdomens are seen in the same image plane to avoid scanning the same fetus twice and interpreting it as twins. Higher-order multifetal gestations are more challenging to evaluate. Even in the first trimester, identifying the actual number of fetuses and their position can be difficult. This determination is especially important if selective reduction is considered (p. 858).

In determining chorionicity, sonography's accuracy diminishes as gestational age advances. It has a 98-percent accuracy in the first trimester but may be incorrect in up to 10 percent of second-trimester examinations. Overall, chorionicity can be correctly determined with sonography before 24 weeks in approximately 95 percent of cases (Emery, 2015; Lee, 2006).

The sonographic features that are used to determine chorionicity vary according to gestational age. Early in the first trimester, the number of chorions equates to the number of

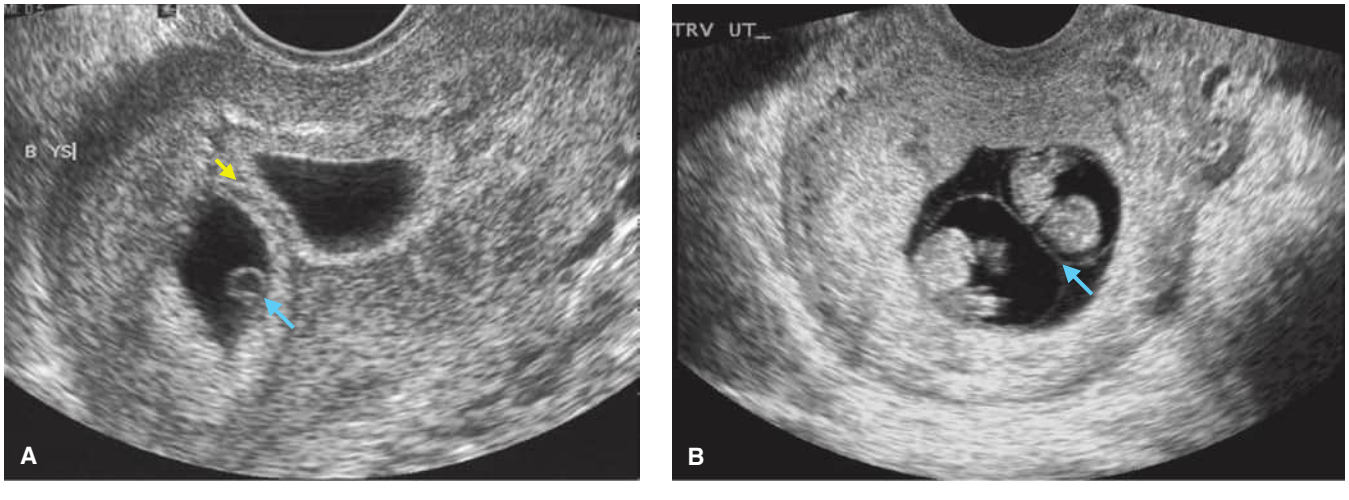


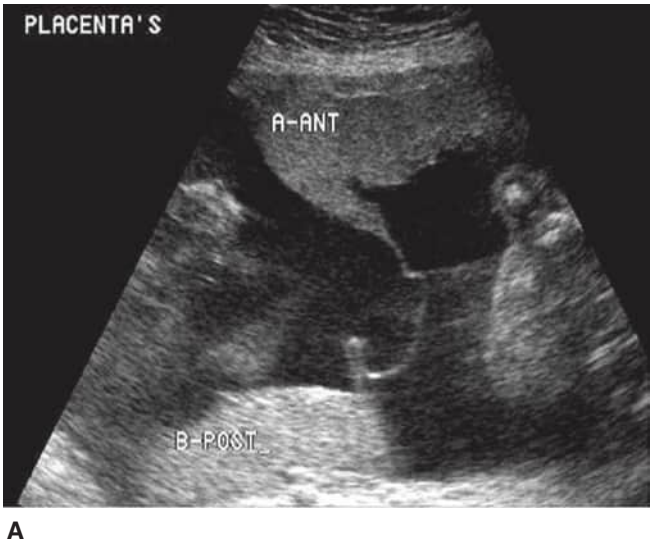
FIGURE 48-2 Sonograms of first-trimester twins. **A.** Dichorionic diamnionic twin pregnancy at 6 weeks' gestation. Note the thick dividing chorion (*yellow arrow*). One of the yolk sacs is indicated (*blue arrow*). **B.** Monochorionic diamnionic twin pregnancy at 8 weeks' gestation. Note the thin amnion encircling each embryo, resulting in a thin dividing membrane (*blue arrow*).

gestational sacs. A thick band of chorion that separates two gestational sacs signals a dichorionic pregnancy, whereas monochorionic twins have a single gestational sac. If the gestation is monochorionic diamnionic, it may be difficult to visualize the thin intervening amnion before 8 weeks' gestation. If the intervening membrane is difficult to visualize, the number of yolk sacs *usually* correlates with the number of amnions. However, the number of yolk sacs as a predictor of amnionicity may not always be accurate (Shen, 2006). Although uncommonly seen early, cord entanglement identifies a monoamnionic gestation.

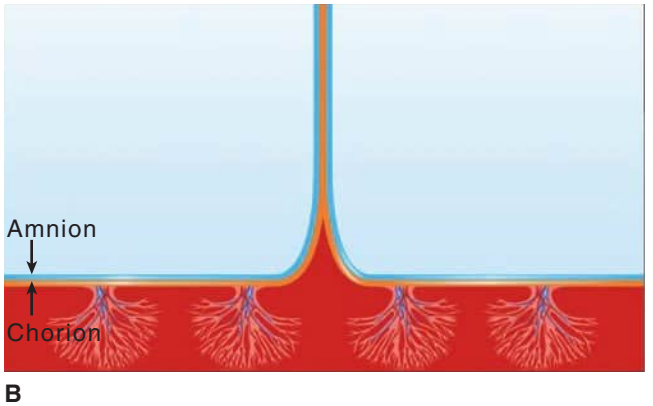
At 10 to 14 weeks' gestation, sonographic assessment of chorionicity may be determined using four features. These are the number of placental masses, presence of an intervening membrane dividing the sacs, thickness of that membrane, and fetal gender (Emery, 2015; Khalil, 2016). First, two separate placentas suggest dichorionicity. The converse is not necessarily true, such as cases with a single fused placental mass. Second, identification of a thick dividing membrane—generally ≥2 mm—supports a presumed diagnosis of dichorionicity. In a dichorionic pregnancy, this visualized membrane is composed of four layers—two amnions and two chorions. Also, the *twin peak sign*—also called *lambda* or *delta sign*—is seen by examining the point of origin of the dividing membrane on the placental surface. The peak appears as a triangular projection of placental tissue extending a short distance between the layers of the dividing membrane (Fig. 48-3).

In contrast, monochorionic pregnancies have a dividing membrane that is so thin (generally <2 mm) that it may not be seen until the second trimester. The relationship between the membranes and placenta without apparent extension of placenta between the dividing membranes is called the *T sign* (Fig. 48-4). Evaluation of the dividing membrane can establish chorionicity in more than 99 percent of pregnancies in the first trimester (Maruotti, 2016; Miller, 2012). Lack of a dividing membrane signals a monochorionic monoamnionic gestation.

Last, twins with differing gender indicates a dichorionic (and dizygotic) gestation. Rare exceptions were described earlier (p. 839).

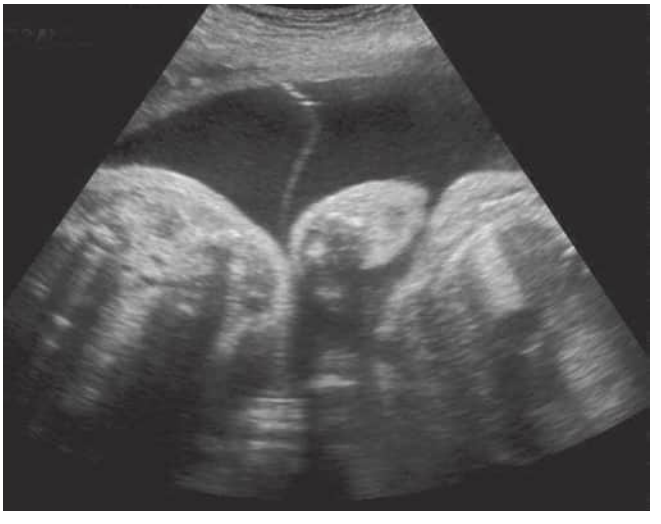


A

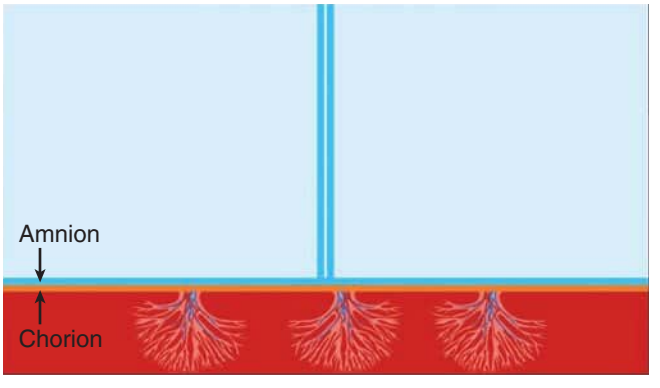


B

FIGURE 48-3 A. Sonographic image of the "twin-peak" sign, also termed the "lambda sign," in a 24-week gestation. At the top of this sonogram, tissue from the anterior placenta is seen extending downward between the amnion layers. This sign confirms dichorionic twinning. **B.** The "twin-peak" sign is seen at the bottom of this schematic diagram. The triangular portion of placenta insinuates between the amniochorion layers.



A



B

FIGURE 48-4 A. Sonographic image of the "T" sign in a monochorionic diamnionic gestation at 30 weeks. At the top of this sonogram, the two apposed amnion layers are seen as the thin line extending downward. **B.** Schematic diagram of the "T" sign. Twins are separated only by a membrane created by the juxtaposed amnion of each twin. A "T" is formed at the point at which amnions meet the placenta.

■ Other Diagnostic Aids

Magnetic resonance (MR) imaging may help delineate complications in monochorionic twins, including conjoined twins (Hu, 2006). Abdominal radiography can be used if fetal number in a higher-order multifetal gestation is uncertain. However, radiographs generally have limited utility and lead to an incorrect diagnosis if fetuses move during the exposure.

No biochemical test reliably identifies multifetal gestations. Serum levels of β-hCG and of maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein (MSAFP) are usually higher, but ranges may overlap with those of singletons.

■ Placental Examination

Careful visual examination of the placenta and membranes after delivery can establish zygosity and chorionicity in many cases. First, the placenta is gently delivered to preserve the attachment of the amnion and chorion. With one common amnionic sac or with juxtaposed amnions not separated by chorion, the fetuses are monozygotic (see Fig. 48-1). If adjacent amnions are separated by chorion, the fetuses could be either dizygotic or monozygotic, but dizygosity is more common (Fig. 48-5). If the neonates are of the same sex, blood typing of cord blood samples may be helpful. Different genders or blood types reflects dizygosity, although the same gender or blood type in each fetus does not confirm monozygosity. Postnatal zygosity genetic testing is available, and the benefits and ethics have been debated (Brown, 2015; Craig, 2015).

MATERNAL PHYSIOLOGICAL ADAPTATIONS

The physiological burdens of pregnancy and likelihood of serious maternal complications are typically greater with multifetal gestations than with singleton ones. In the first trimester and with its higher serum β-hCG levels, multifetal gestations often cause nausea and vomiting. In women carrying more than one fetus, blood volume expansion is greater and averages 50 to 60 percent compared with 40 to 50 percent in those with a singleton (Pritchard, 1965). This augmented hypervolemia teleologically offsets blood loss with vaginal delivery of twins, which is twice that with a single fetus. Although red cell mass also accrues, it does so proportionately less in twin pregnancies. Combined with greater iron and folate requirements, this predisposes to anemia.

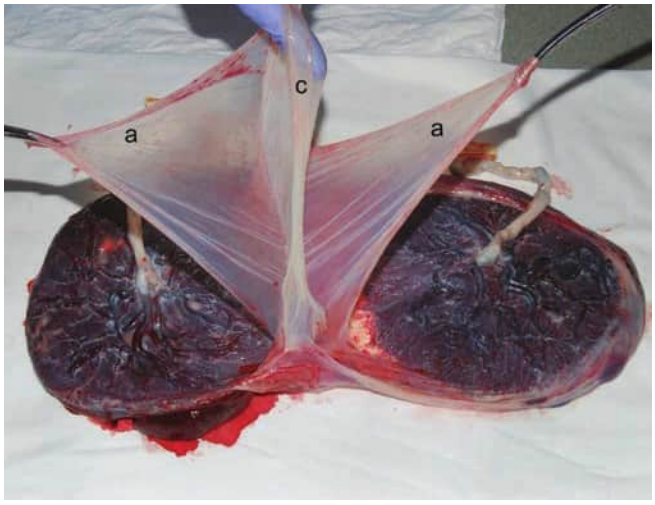


FIGURE 48-5 Dichorionic diamnionic twin placenta. The membrane partition that separated twin fetuses is elevated and consists of chorion (*c*) between two amnions (*a*).

Women carrying twins also have a typical pattern of blood pressure change. One study assessed serial blood pressures in more than 13,000 singleton and twin pregnancies (MacDonald-Wallis, 2012). As early as 8 weeks' gestation, the diastolic blood pressure in women with twins was lower than that with singleton pregnancies. It generally rose by a greater degree at term. An earlier study demonstrated that this later rise was at least 15 mm Hg in 95 percent of women with twins compared with only 54 percent of women with a singleton (Campbell, 1986).

Hypervolemia along with decreased vascular resistance has an impressive effect on cardiac function. In one study of 119 women with twins, cardiac output rose another 20 percent above that in women with a singleton (Kametas, 2003). Similarly, a study of serial maternal echocardiography examinations found a greater elevation in cardiac output in 20 women with uncomplicated twin pregnancies (Kuleva, 2011). Both studies found that the augmented cardiac output was predominantly due to greater stroke volume rather than higher heart rate. Vascular resistance was significantly lower in twin gestations throughout pregnancy compared with singleton ones. In a study of 30 uncomplicated twin pregnancies, this same group of investigators identified progressive diastolic dysfunction from the first to third trimester. The dysfunction subsequently normalized after delivery (Ghi, 2015).

Uterine growth in a multifetal gestation is substantively greater than in a singleton one. The uterus and its nonfetal contents may achieve a volume of 10 L or more and weigh in excess of 20 pounds. Especially with monozygotic twins, excessive amounts of amnionic fluid may rapidly accumulate. In these circumstances, maternal abdominal viscera and lungs can be appreciably compressed and displaced by the expanding uterus. As a result, the size and weight of the large uterus may preclude more than a sedentary existence for these women.

Rarely, maternal renal function can become seriously impaired, most likely as the consequence of obstructive uropathy (Jena, 1996). Hydramnios is a common associate, and therapeutic amniocentesis may provide relief for the mother, may improve obstructive uropathy, and possibly may lower rates of preterm labor or rupture of membranes. Unfortunately, hydramnios often develops remote from term and rapidly reaccumulates.

PREGNANCY COMPLICATIONS

Several complications, discussed next, complicate multifetal pregnancy. Others are preterm birth and discordant fetal growth, which are discussed in later sections.

■ Spontaneous Abortion and Vanishing Fetus

Among twins, monochorionic twins have significantly higher early fetal loss rates than dichorionic pairs (D'Antonio, 2013).

Twins achieved through ART may be at greater risk for abortion compared with those conceived spontaneously (Szymusik, 2012). However, among ART-conceived gestations, twins have lower miscarriage rates than singletons (Matias, 2007).

In some cases, only one fetus is spontaneously lost. As a result, the incidence of twins in the first trimester is much greater than the incidence of twins at birth. Estimates suggest that while 1 in 8 *pregnancies* begin multifetal, only 1 in 80 *births* are multifetal (Corsello, 2010). Sonography studies in the first trimester have shown that one twin dies and "vanishes" before the second trimester in 10 to 40 percent of all twin pregnancies (Brady, 2013; Harris, 2020). The incidence is higher following ART conception.

A vanishing fetus is more common in higher-order multiples. In one study of spontaneous reduction in 709 multifetal pregnancies before 12 weeks' gestation, one or more embryos died in 36 percent of twin pregnancies, in 53 percent of triplet pregnancies, and in 65 percent of quadruplet pregnancies (Dickey, 2002). Interestingly, in one study, ultimate pregnancy duration and birthweight were inversely related to initial gestational sac number regardless of the final number of fetuses at delivery (Seong, 2020). This effect was most pronounced in twins who started as quadruplets. Evidence for adverse immediate and long-term effects of twin spontaneous reduction on the remaining pregnancy is conflicting (Harris, 2020; McNamara, 2016).

Spontaneous reduction of a twin gestation may affect prenatal screening results. In one study of ART-conceived gestations, 56 twin pregnancies with a single early demise and 897 singleton gestations were compared (Gjerris, 2009). First-trimester serum marker concentrations did not differ between the groups if the embryonic loss was identified before 9 weeks' gestation. If diagnosed after 9 weeks, the marker levels were higher and less precise. With a vanishing twin, first-trimester maternal serum levels of the pregnancy-associated plasma protein A (PAPP-A) can be elevated. Second-trimester MSAFP and dimeric inhibin A levels also can be higher (Huang, 2015). Early loss of one twin may also affect noninvasive prenatal testing using cell-free DNA (cfDNA) (Chap. 17, p. 336). In one report, 15 percent of the false-positive results were attributed to this effect (Futch, 2013). The development of single-nucleotide polymorphism technology for cfDNA testing holds promise in better identifying these cases (Curnow, 2015). Thus, a spontaneously reduced abortus is ideally identified to help avoid confusion with results from aneuploidy and neural-tube defect screening.

Congenital Malformations

The incidence of these is appreciably higher in multifetal gestations compared with singleton ones. In one study, the congenital malformation rate was 406 per 10,000 twins compared with 238 per 10,000 singletons (Glinianaia, 2008). This rate in monochorionic twins was almost twice that of dichorionic twin gestations. One large study between 1998 and 2010 found that twins had a 73-percent greater risk of congenital heart disease than singletons. The occurrence risk and concordance were substantially higher among monochorionic twins (Best, 2015; Gijtenbeek, 2019).

From a 30-year European registry of multifetal births, structural anomaly rates rose steadily from 2.2 percent in 1987 to 3.3 percent in 2007 (Boyle, 2013). Yet, during this time, the proportion of dizygotic twins grew by 30 percent, whereas the proportion of monozygotic twins remained stable. This higher risk of congenital malformations in dizygotic twins over time correlated with increased availability of ART. An increase in birth defect rates related to ART has been reported (Wen, 2020). However, if data are adjusted for maternal age or duration of subfertility, the risk of congenital anomalies does not appear to be increased by ART (Zhu, 2006).

Low Birthweight

Multifetal gestations are more likely to be low birthweight than singleton pregnancies due to restricted fetal growth and preterm delivery. Birthweights in twins closely paralleled those of singletons until 28 to 30 weeks' gestation. Thereafter, twin birthweights progressively lagged (Fig. 48-6). Beginning at 35 to 36 weeks' gestation, twin birthweights clearly diverge from those of singletons. Thus, abnormal growth should be diagnosed only when fetal size is less than expected for *multifetal gestation*. Accordingly, twin and triplet growth curves have been developed (Kim, 2010; Odibo, 2013; Vora, 2006). To confirm suitable growth in dichorionic pairs, we perform sonography every 4 weeks, starting at 16 to 20 weeks. Monochorionic twins are imaged every 2 weeks for twin-twin transfusion syndrome (p. 848). To identify suspected fetal-growth restriction, we use the standards of birthweight for twin gestations stratified by placental chorionicity (Ananth, 1998).

Hypertension

Compared with mothers of singletons, those with multifetal gestations are more likely to develop a pregnancy-associated hypertensive disorder, and the incidence further rises with advancing fetal number (Day, 2005). In one analysis, 14 percent of parturients with twins developed a hypertensive disorder

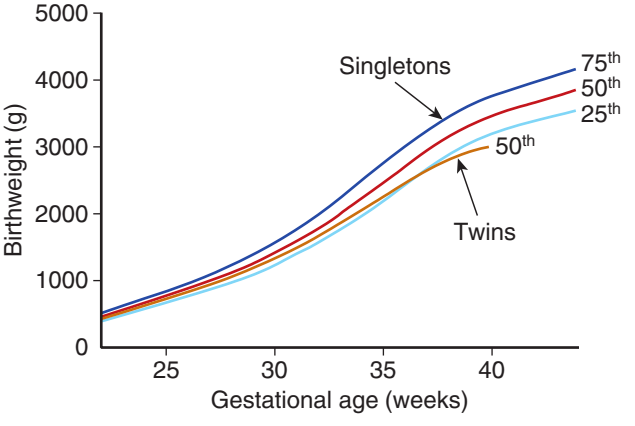


FIGURE 48-6 Birthweight percentiles (25th to 75th) for 357,205 singleton neonates compared with the 50th birthweight percentile for 3714 twins, Parkland Hospital 1988–2012. Infants with major malformations, pregnancies complicated by stillbirth, and twin gestations with >25 percent discordance also were excluded. (Data from Dr. Don McIntire.)

of pregnancy (Aviram, 2021). No specific zygosity confers a greater rate of these disorders (Lučovnik, 2016). However, with twins and gestational diabetes, the preeclampsia incidence is increased (Dave, 2021). Similar to singleton pregnancies with hypertensive disorders, fetal-growth restriction is a potential outcome (Proctor, 2019) (Chap. 40, p. 702).

Data suggest that rising fetal number and levels of antiangiogenic factor play roles in preeclampsia pathogenesis in multiples (Chap. 40, p. 694). Nonhypertensive women with twins compared with those with singletons have higher levels of the antiangiogenic factors *soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase 1 (sFlt-1)* and *soluble endoglin* and lower levels of proangiogenic *placental growth factor (PlGF)* (Faupel-Badger, 2015). In women with twins *and* preeclampsia in one study, both sFlt-1 levels and sFlt-1/PlGF ratios rose and PlGF concentrations declined compared with *normotensive* women with twins (Rana, 2012). Aspirin therapy is recommended to help prevent preeclampsia and is discussed with prenatal care (p. 853).

Long-term Infant Development

In cohort studies evaluating twin and singletons, academic performance is similar and is unaffected by ART-assisted conception (Christensen, 2006; Spangmose, 2017). For mono- or dichorionic pairs born preterm, neurodevelopment at 2 years was reported to be similar (Tosello, 2021).

However, among normal-birthweight neonates, the cerebral palsy (CP) risk is twofold higher among multifetal pregnancies compared with singletons. In term and preterm neonates from 12 large CP registries, the overall CP rate was 1.6 per 1000 singleton live births and 7 per 1000 live births from multifetal pregnancies (Perra, 2021). In this and another registry study, the higher CP rate in multifetal gestations was attributed mainly to prematurity (Sellier, 2021) (Chap. 34, p. 620). Fetal-growth restriction, congenital anomalies, twin-twin transfusion syndrome, and fetal demise of a co-twin are other potential contributors.

UNIQUE FETAL COMPLICATIONS

Several unique complications arise in multifetal pregnancies. These are described in twins but also can be found in higher-order multifetal gestations. Most fetal complications attributed to the twinning process itself are seen with monozygotic twins. Their pathogenesis is best understood after reviewing the possibilities shown in Figure 48-1.

Monoamnionic Twins

These twins make up less than 1 percent of all twin pregnancies and 4 percent of monochorionic pairs (Chitrit, 2021; Sebire, 2000). However, they have high rates of many significant complications.

Fetal loss rates in monoamnionic twins are substantial. Among fetuses alive before 16 weeks' gestation, less than half survive to the neonatal period. Fetal abnormalities and spontaneous miscarriage contribute to most losses (Prefumo, 2015). A high perinatal death rate is attributable to preterm birth, twin-twin transfusion syndrome, cord entanglement, birthweight discordance, and congenital anomalies (Buca, 2020; Saccone, 2020).

Congenital anomaly rates in monoamnionic twins reach 18 to 28 percent (Post, 2015). Concordance of anomalies is found in only approximately one quarter of cases. Because of the greater risk of cardiac anomalies, fetal echocardiography is indicated. Of note, monoamnionic twins are by definition monozygotic and thus presumed to be genetically identical, except in rare cases (Zwijnenburg, 2010). Interestingly, the risk for Down syndrome in each fetus of the monozygotic pair is similar to or lower than the risk in maternal age-matched singletons (Sparks, 2016).

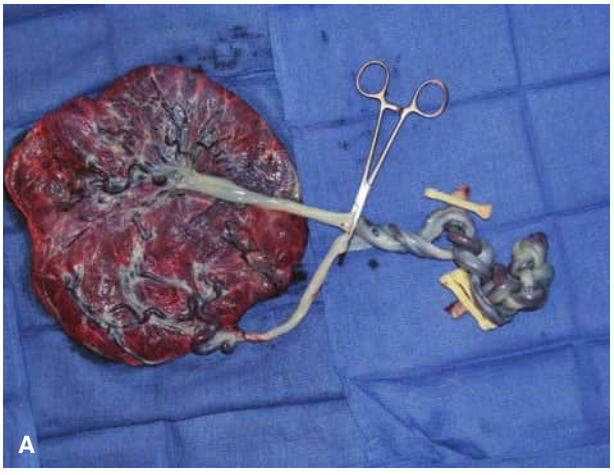
Twin-twin transfusion syndrome rates in monoamnionic twins are lower than in monochorionic diamnionic pregnancies (Murgano, 2020). This may be due to the near universal presence in monoamnionic twins of arterioarterial anastomoses, which are presumed to be protective (Hack, 2009). Nonetheless, twin-twin transfusion syndrome surveillance is recommended and described in that section.

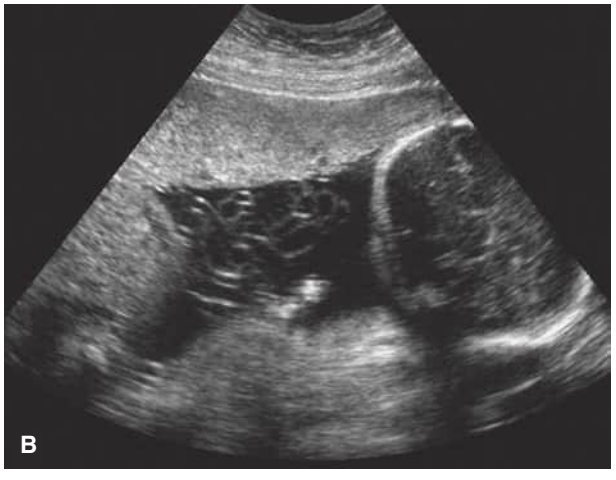
Umbilical cord entanglement is a frequent event (Fig. 48-7). Although color-flow Doppler sonography can help diagnose entanglement, factors that lead to pathological umbilical vessel constriction are unknown. Fetal death from cord entanglement is thus unpredictable, and monitoring for this is relatively ineffective. Moreover, studies of inpatient or outpatient fetal surveillance of monoamnionic twin pregnancies show conflicting data. Heyborne and coworkers (2005) reported no stillbirths in 43 women admitted at 26 to 27 weeks' gestation for daily fetal surveillance. Conversely, 13 fetuses died in 44 women managed as outpatients. In the MONOMONO Working Group (2019) study of 195 women with these twins, the fetal death rate was 3.3 percent in 75 mothers admitted at 24 to 29 weeks' gestation compared with 10.8 percent in the 120 gravidas monitored outpatient. Notably, no fetal deaths occurred after 32 weeks' gestation in either group. Last, Van Mieghem and associates (2014) found the risk of "potentially preventable death" was not significantly different in women with inpatient (2.1 percent) or outpatient (4.7 percent) fetal surveillance.

In the United States, mothers with monoamnionic twins are often admitted at 24 to 28 weeks' gestation to begin 1 hour of daily fetal heart rate monitoring (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021b). Optimal surveillance is unclear and may include nonstress testing or biophysical profile assessment (Chap. 20, p. 386). Betamethasone, discussed later, is considered to promote pulmonary maturation (p. 855). If fetal testing remains reassuring and no other intervening indications arise, cesarean delivery is performed at $32^{0/7}$ to $34^{0/7}$ weeks' gestation. To help manage these many care items, the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020) offers a prenatal checklist.

Unique and Aberrant Twinning

Several aberrations in monozygotic twinning result in a spectrum of fetal malformations. These are traditionally ascribed to incomplete splitting of an embryo into two separate twins. However, they theoretically may result from early secondary





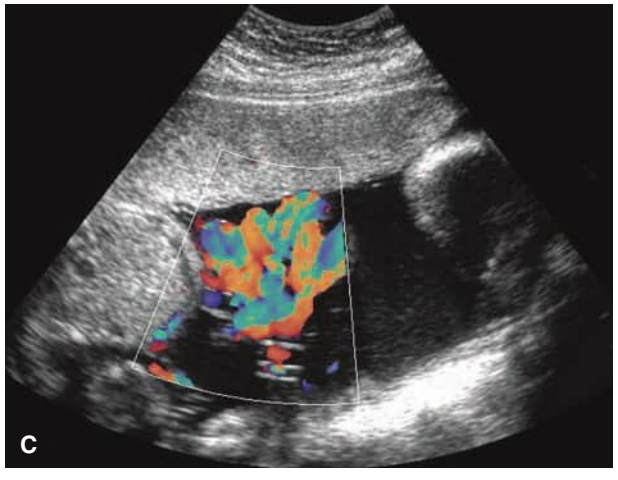


FIGURE 48-7 Monochorionic monoamnionic cord entanglement. **A.** Despite marked knotting of the cords, vigorous twins were delivered by cesarean. **B.** Preoperative sonogram of this pregnancy shows entwined cords. **C.** This finding is accentuated with application of color Doppler. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Julie Lo.)

fusion of two separate embryos. These separated embryos are either symmetrical or asymmetrical. The spectrum of asymmetrical twinning includes external parasitic twins, fetus-in-fetu, and twin reversed-arterial-perfusion (TRAP) sequence, which is described later (p. 850).

Conjoined Twins

Joining of the twins may begin at either pole and produce characteristic forms depending on which body parts are joined or shared (Fig. 48-8) (Spencer, 2000). The frequency of conjoined twins has a prevalence of 1.5 in 100,000 births, and thoracopagus is the most common type (Mutchinick, 2011).

Conjoined twins can be identified using sonography in the first trimester (Chen, 2011). This provides an opportunity for parents to decide whether to continue the pregnancy. During sonographic interrogation, fetal poles are seen to be closely associated and do not change relative position from one another (Fig. 48-9). Other clues are more than three vessels in the umbilical cord, fewer limbs than expected, spine hyperflexion, bifid fetal pole, and increased nuchal thickness. Three-dimensional ultrasound, color Doppler, and MR imaging are valuable adjuncts to clarify shared organs (Baken, 2013).

Postnatal surgical separation may be successful if essential organs are not shared. Conjoined twins may have discordant structural anomalies that further complicate decisions about whether to continue the pregnancy. Consultation with a pediatric surgeon often assists with parental decisions.

Viable-aged conjoined twins should be delivered by cesarean. For pregnancy termination, however, vaginal delivery is possible because the union is often pliable. Still, dystocia is common, and vaginal delivery may be traumatic to the uterus or cervix.

External Parasitic Twins and Fetus-in-fetu

Attached to a relatively normal twin, an *external parasitic twin* is a grossly defective fetus or merely fetal parts. It usually consists of externally attached supernumerary limbs, often with some viscera. Classically, however, a functional heart or brain is absent. Parasitic twins are believed to derive from a dead defective twin, whose surviving tissue attaches to and receives vascular support from the normal co-twin (Spencer, 2001). In one study, parasitic twins accounted for 4 percent of all conjoined twins (Mutchinick, 2011).

With *fetus-in-fetu*, one embryo may enfold early within its co-twin and mainly intraabdominally. Normal development of this rare parasitic twin usually arrests in the first trimester. Thus, normal spatial arrangement and many organs are lacking. Classically, vertebral or axial bones are found in the fetiform mass, whereas a heart and brain are absent. These masses are thought to be a monozygotic, monochorionic diamnionic twin gestation and are typically supported by large parasitic vessels to the host (McNamara, 2016).

Monochorionic Twins and Vascular Anastomoses

All monochorionic placentas likely share some anastomotic connections. With rare exceptions, anastomoses between twins are unique to monochorionic twin placentas. However, the number, size, and direction of these seemingly haphazard connections vary markedly (Fig. 48-10). In one analysis of more than 200 monochorionic placentas, the median number of anastomoses was eight (Zhao, 2013).

Anastomoses may be artery-to-artery, vein-to-vein, or artery-to-vein communications and are located on the chorionic

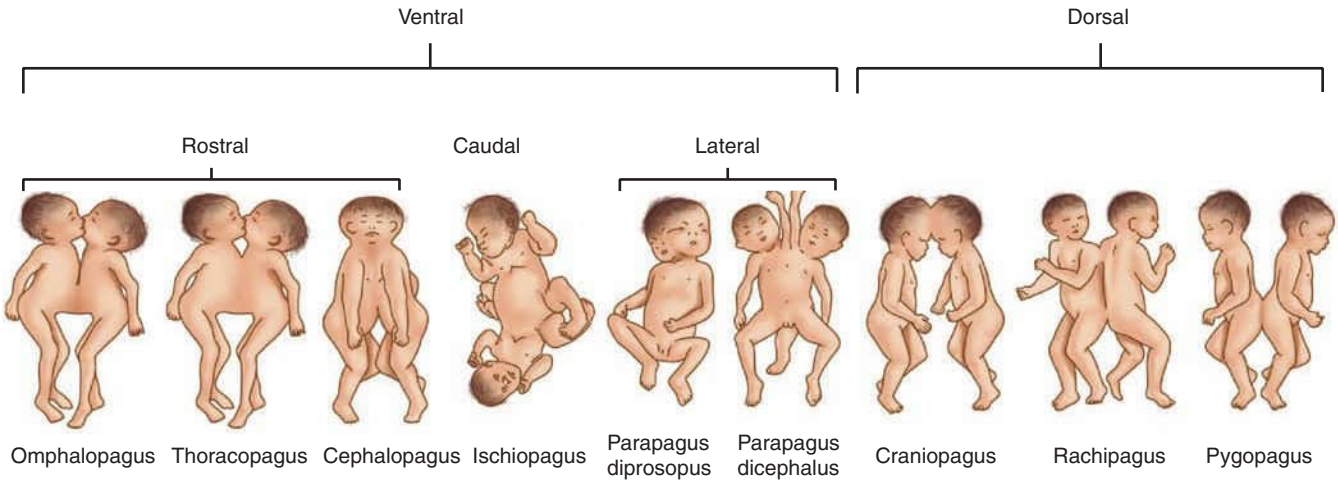


FIGURE 48-8 Types of conjoined twins.

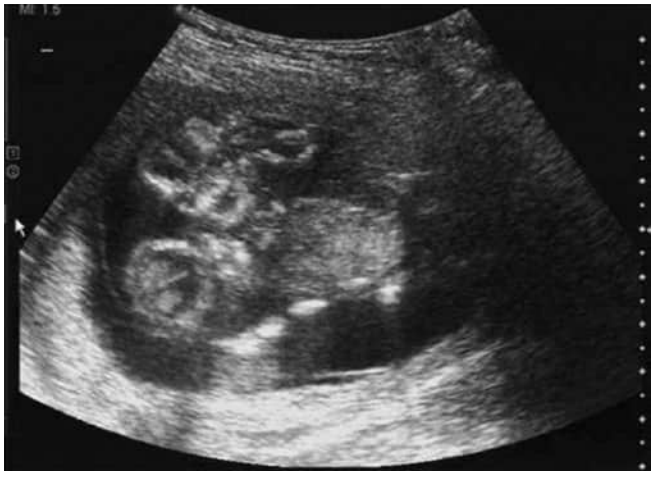


FIGURE 48-9 Sonogram of a conjoined twin pregnancy at 13 weeks' gestation. These thoracoomphalopagus twins have two heads but a shared chest and abdomen.

surface of the placenta. In contrast to these superficial connections, deep artery-to-vein communications can extend through the capillary bed of a given villus (Fig. 48-11). These deep arteriovenous anastomoses create a common villous compartment or "third circulation" that has been identified in approximately half of monochorionic twin placentas.

Whether these anastomoses are dangerous to either twin depends on the degree to which they are hemodynamically balanced. In those with significant pressure or flow gradients, a shunt will develop between fetuses. This chronic fetofetal transfusion may result in several clinical syndromes that include *twin-twin transfusion syndrome (TTTS), twin anemia–polycythemia sequence (TAPS),* and *twin reversed-arterial-perfusion (TRAP) sequence*.

Twin-Twin Transfusion Syndrome

In this syndrome, blood is transfused from a donor twin to its recipient sibling such that the donor may eventually become

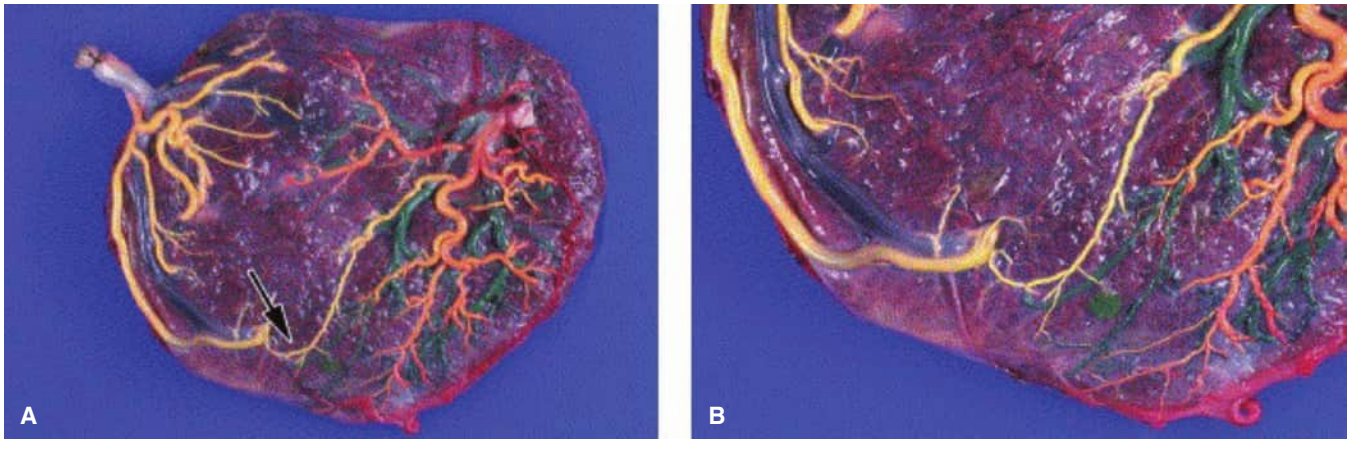


FIGURE 48-10 Shared placenta from pregnancy complicated by twin-twin transfusion syndrome. The following color code was applied for injection. Left twin: yellow = artery, blue = vein; right twin: red = artery, green = vein. **A.** Part of the arterial network of the right twin is filled with yellow dye, due to the presence of a small artery-to-artery anastomosis (*arrow*). **B.** Close-up of the lower portion of the placenta displays the yellow dye-filled anastomosis. (Reproduced with permission from De Paepe ME, DeKoninck P, Friedman RM: Vascular distribution patterns in monochorionic twin placentas, Placenta. 2005 Jul;26(6):471–475.)

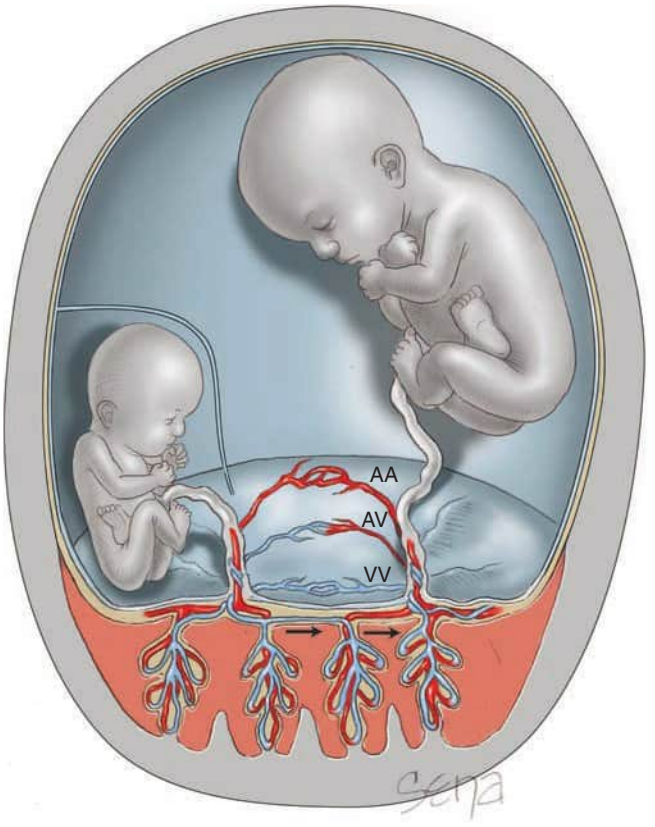


FIGURE 48-11 Anastomoses between twins may be artery-to-vein (AV), artery-to-artery (AA), or vein-to-vein (VV). Schematic representation of an AV anastomosis in twin-twin transfusion syndrome that forms a "common villous district" or "third circulation" deep within the villous tissue. Blood from a donor twin may be transferred to a recipient twin through this shared circulation. This transfer leads to a growth-restricted discordant donor twin (*left*) with markedly reduced amnionic fluid, causing it to be "stuck."

anemic and its growth may be restricted. In contrast, the recipient becomes polycythemic and may develop circulatory overload with heart failure manifest as hydrops. Classically, the donor twin is smaller and pale, and its recipient sibling is larger and has volume excess. As a result, the recipient neonate may suffer hyperviscosity and occlusive complications. Polycythemia in the recipient twin may also lead to severe hyperbilirubinemia and kernicterus (Chap. 33, p. 606). TTTS complicates 10 to 15 percent of monochorionic twins (Marwan, 2019).

Chronic TTTS results from unidirectional flow through deep arteriovenous anastomoses. Deoxygenated blood from a *donor* placental artery is pumped into a cotyledon shared by the recipient (see Fig. 48-11). Once oxygen exchange is completed in the chorionic villus, the oxygenated blood leaves the cotyledon via a placental vein of the *recipient* twin. Unless compensated—typically through superficial arterioarterial anastomoses—this unidirectional flow leads to volume depletion in the donor and volume excess in the recipient (Lewi, 2013).

TTTS typically presents in midpregnancy when the donor fetus becomes oliguric from hypovolemia and decreased renal perfusion (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2013). This fetus develops oligohydramnios, and the recipient fetus develops severe hydramnios, presumably due to increased urine production from hypervolemia. Virtual absence of amnionic fluid in the donor sac prevents fetal motion, giving rise to the descriptive term *stuck twin* or *polyhydramnios–oligohydramnios syndrome—"poly–oli."* This amnionic fluid imbalance is associated with growth restriction, contractures, and pulmonary hypoplasia in the donor twin, and premature rupture of the membranes and heart failure in the recipient.

Fetal Brain Damage. Cerebral palsy, microcephaly, porencephaly, and multicystic encephalomalacia are serious complications associated with placental vascular anastomoses. The exact pathogenesis of neurological damage is not fully understood but is likely caused by ischemic necrosis leading to cavitary brain lesions. In the donor twin, ischemia results from hypotension, anemia, or both. In the recipient, ischemia develops from blood pressure instability and episodes of profound hypotension (Lopriore, 2011). Cerebral lesions may also be associated with preterm delivery (Chap. 34, p. 618). In one review of 315 liveborn fetuses from pregnancies with TTTS, cerebral abnormalities were found in 8 percent (Quarello, 2007).

If one twin of an affected pregnancy dies, blood is acutely transfused from high-pressure vessels of the living twin through anastomoses to low-resistance vessels of the dead twin. This leads rapidly to hypovolemia and possible ischemic antenatal brain damage in the survivor (Fusi, 1990, 1991). A less likely cause is emboli of thromboplastic material originating from the dead fetus.

The acuity of hypotension following the death of one twin with TTTS makes successful intervention for the survivor nearly impossible. Even with delivery immediately after a co-twin demise is recognized, the hypotension that occurs at the moment of death has likely already caused irreversible brain damage (Langer, 1997; Wada, 1998). As such, immediate delivery is not considered beneficial in the absence of another indication.

Diagnosis. TTTS is diagnosed based on two sonographic criteria (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2013). First, a monochorionic pregnancy is identified. Second, hydramnios defined by a largest vertical pocket >8 cm in one sac and oligohydramnios defined by a largest vertical pocket <2 cm in the other twin is found. Growth discordance or growth restriction may be found with TTTS, but these per se are not considered diagnostic criteria.

Organizations that include the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021b), Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine (2013), and North American Fetal Therapy Network recommend sonographic surveillance of pregnancies at risk for TTTS (Emery, 2015). These examinations begin at approximately 16 weeks' gestation, and studies are performed every 2 weeks. In one study of 108 monochorionic twin pairs, a sonographic evaluation interval >2 weeks was associated with a higher Quintero stage at the time of TTTS diagnosis (Thorson, 2011).

Once identified, TTTS is typically classified by the Quintero (1999) staging system (Fig. 48-12):

- Stage I—discordant amnionic fluid volumes as described in the earlier paragraph, but urine is still visible sonographically within the bladder of the donor twin

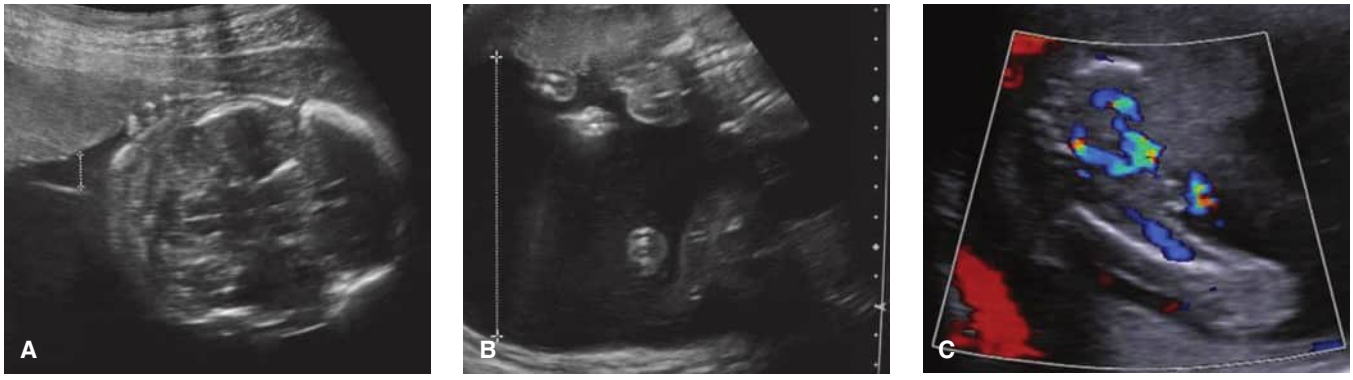


FIGURE 48-12 A. Sonogram of stage I TTTS at 19 weeks' gestation. Oligohydramnios in the donor twin sac causes the membrane to essentially wrap around the "stuck twin" and suspend it from the anterior uterine wall. **B.** In this same pregnancy, hydramnios is seen in the recipient twin sac. The measured pocket exceeds 10 cm. **C.** Stage II TTTS in a donor twin at 17 weeks' gestation. Color Doppler highlights the arteries that outline the fetal bladder, which contains no urine.

- Stage II—criteria of stage I, but urine is not visible within the donor bladder
- Stage III—criteria of stage II and abnormal Doppler studies of the umbilical artery, ductus venosus, or umbilical vein
- Stage IV—ascites or frank hydrops in either twin
- Stage V—demise of either fetus.

In addition to these criteria, cardiac function of the recipient twin also declines with TTTS (Wohlmuth, 2018). Although fetal echocardiographic findings are not part of the Quintero staging system, many centers routinely perform fetal echocardiography for TTTS. Theoretically, earlier diagnosis of fetal cardiomyopathy may identify pregnancies that would benefit from early intervention (Votava-Smith, 2015). One measure, the *myocardial performance index (MPI)*, is a Doppler index of each ventricle's function. Scoring systems that include cardiac function have been developed, but their usefulness to predict outcomes remains controversial (Miller, 2021b; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2013).

Management and Prognosis. The prognosis for multifetal gestations complicated by TTTS is related to Quintero stage and gestational age at presentation. Some stage I cases remain stable or regress without intervention. However, 60 percent progress (Emery, 2016; Stirnemann, 2021). Conversely, outcomes in those identified at stage III or higher are much worse, and the perinatal loss rate is 70 to 100 percent without intervention (Miller, 2021b; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2013).

Several therapies available for TTTS include laser ablation of vascular placental anastomoses, amnioreduction, and selective feticide. Similar to amniocentesis (Chap. 17, p. 344), amnioreduction is needle drainage of excess amnionic fluid.

These techniques have been evaluated in randomized trials. The Eurofetus trial included 142 women with severe TTTS diagnosed before 26 weeks' gestation. Participants were randomly assigned to laser ablation of vascular anastomoses or to serial amnioreduction (Senat, 2004). Laser ablation yielded a 76-percent rate of survival to age 6 months for at least one twin compared with a 51-percent rate with amnioreduction. Analyses of most randomized studies confirm better neonatal outcomes with laser therapy compared with selective amnioreduction (Marwan, 2019; Roberts, 2008; Rossi, 2008, 2009). However, evaluation of twins from the Eurofetus trial through 6 years of age did not demonstrate an additional survival benefit beyond 6 months or improved neurological outcomes in those treated with laser (Salomon, 2010). At this time, laser ablation of anastomoses is preferred for severe TTTS (stages II–IV). Optimal therapy for stage I disease is controversial, and laser ablation or expectant surveillance is an option (Emery, 2015; Stirnemann, 2021).

Of techniques, an ablation method may laser individual anastomoses or may ablate the entire vascular equator. This equator is the border between twin vasculature on the chorionic surface. Equatorial ablation, which is referred to as a *Solomon technique*, reduces the likelihood of TTTS recurrence. This method also lowers rates of TAPS, which can be a laser-therapy sequelae and described next (Slaghekke, 2014).

After laser therapy, close ongoing surveillance is necessary. Weekly ultrasound and Doppler studies are recommended (Marwan, 2019; Miller 2021b). These evaluations monitor fetal growth, amnionic fluid volumes, placental function, and anemia. Delivery timing is usually influenced by TTTS recurrence, fetal-growth restriction, or by abnormal Doppler velocimetry values, which reflect poor placental function (Chap. 47, p. 830).

Another treatment option, selective fetal reduction, has generally been considered if severe amnionic fluid and growth disturbances develop before 20 weeks. In such cases, both fetuses typically will die without intervention. Any substance injected into one twin may affect the other twin because of shared circulations. Thus, for the fetus chosen for reduction, feticidal methods aim to occlude the umbilical vein or umbilical cord. Radiofrequency ablation, fetoscopic ligation, or coagulation with laser, monopolar, or bipolar energy are options (Challis, 1999; Chang, 2009; Parra-Cordero, 2016). Even after these procedures, however, risks to the remaining fetus are still appreciable (Rossi, 2009). Early termination of the entire pregnancy is yet another option.

Twin Anemia–Polycythemia Sequence

Chronic fetofetal transfusion underlies this form, which is characterized by significant hemoglobin differences between donor and recipient twins. Similar to TTTS, the donor twin

in spontaneous TAPS is anemic and usually smaller than the recipient twin, which is polycythemic. However, TAPS lacks the discrepancies in amnionic fluid volumes typical of TTTS. *Spontaneous* TAPS can develop at any gestational age and complicates 1 to 6 percent of monochorionic twins (Marwan, 2019). *Iatrogenic* TAPS develops in up to 13 percent of pregnancies after laser ablation of the placenta and usually develops within 5 weeks of a procedure (Lewi, 2013; Tollenaar, 2021). In iatrogenic TAPS, the former TTTS recipient twin usually becomes anemic, whereas the former donor becomes polycythemic (Tollenaar, 2016).

Sonographically measuring blood flow velocity in the fetal middle cerebral artery (MCA) can accurately identify fetal anemia (Chap. 14, 262). Antenatally, TAPS is diagnosed by discordant MCA peak systolic velocity (PSV) values between twins. Specifically, an MCA-PSV value that is >1.5 multiples of the median (MoM) in the donor twin and <1.0 MoM in the recipient twin (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2013). Others have suggested alternative threshold values (Khalil, 2020; Tollenaar, 2019).

A staging system for TAPS has been proposed, and higher stage is associated with increased perinatal mortality rate (Slaghekke, 2010; Tollenaar, 2021). Screening for *spontaneous* TAPS is controversial, as improvements in perinatal outcomes have not been demonstrated (Khalil, 2016; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2013).

Management options include expectant care, delivery, laser surgery, intrauterine transfusion, selective feticide, and pregnancy termination. A clinical trial evaluating fetoscopic laser therapy for TAPS is currently ongoing. Antenatal surveillance mirrors that just described for TTTS. Again, delivery timing is usually influenced by worsening fetal growth or by abnormal Doppler velocimetry values. Postnatal treatment often requires blood transfusion for the donor twin and partial exchange transfusion of the recipient twin.

Twin Reversed-arterial-perfusion Sequence

Also known as *acardiac twinning*, this rare, serious complication of monochorionic multifetal gestation has an estimated incidence of 1 case in 35,000 births. With classic TRAP sequence, the twin pair is a normally formed donor twin that shows features of heart failure and a grossly malformed recipient twin that lacks a heart (acardius) and other structures. In one theory, the TRAP sequence is caused by a large artery-to-artery placental shunt, often also accompanied by a vein-to-vein shunt (Fig. 48-13). Within the single, shared placenta, arterial perfusion pressure of the donor twin exceeds that in the recipient twin. The recipient thus receives reversed blood flow containing deoxygenated arterial blood from its co-twin (Lewi, 2013). This "used" arterial blood reaches the recipient twin through its umbilical arteries and preferentially goes to its iliac vessels. Thus, only the lower body is perfused, and disrupted growth and development of the upper body follows. In these cases, failed head growth is called *acardius acephalus*; a partially developed head with identifiable limbs is called *acardius myelacephalus*; and failure of any recognizable structure to form is *acardius amorphous,* which is shown in Figure 48-14. Because of this vascular connection, the normal donor twin must not

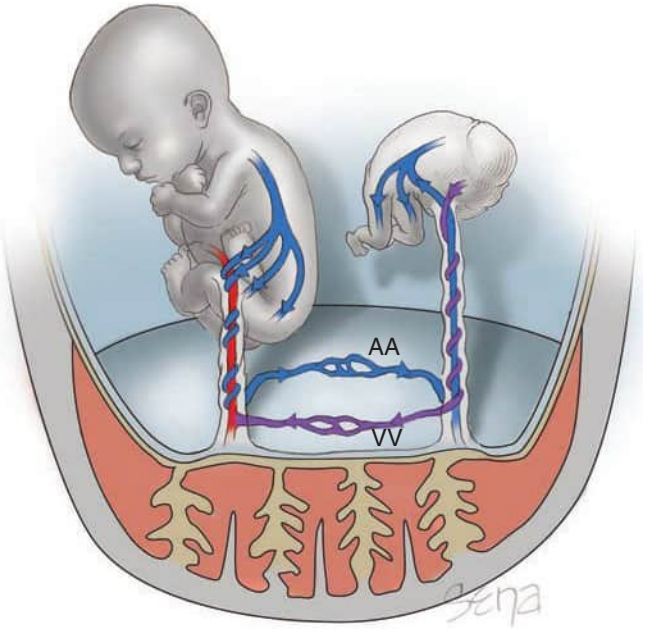


FIGURE 48-13 Twin reversed-arterial-perfusion sequence. In the TRAP sequence, there is usually a normally formed donor twin that has features of heart failure, and a recipient twin that lacks a heart. It is hypothesized that the TRAP sequence follows a large artery-to-artery placental shunt, often also accompanied by a vein-to-vein shunt. Within the single, shared placenta, perfusion pressure of the donor twin overpowers that in the recipient twin, who thus receives reverse blood flow from its twin sibling. The "used" arterial blood that reaches the recipient twin preferentially goes to its iliac vessels and thus perfuses only the lower body. This disrupts growth and development of the upper body.

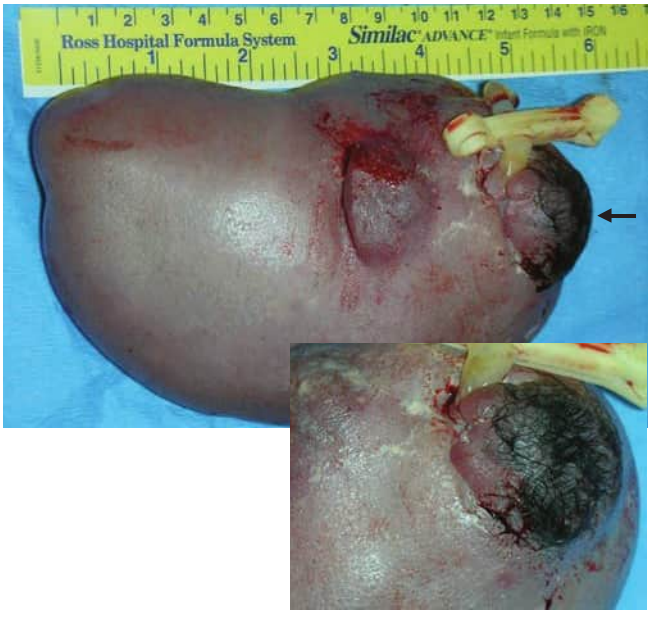


FIGURE 48-14 Photograph of an acardiac twin weighing 475 grams. The underdeveloped head is indicated by the black arrow, and its details are shown in the inset. A yellow clamp is seen on its umbilical cord. Its viable donor co-twin was delivered vaginally at 36 weeks and weighed 2325 grams. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Michael D. Hnat.)

only support its own circulation but also must pump blood to and through the underdeveloped acardiac recipient. This may lead to cardiomegaly and high-output heart failure in the donor twin (Fox, 2007; Marwan, 2019).

In the past, the donor-twin mortality rate exceeded 50 percent. This stemmed largely from complications of prematurity or from a prolonged high-output state leading to cardiac failure (Dashe, 2001). Risk is directly related to size of the acardiac twin. When the acardiac twin is large, treatment is generally offered. Radiofrequency ablation (RFA) is the preferred modality of therapy, and contemporary reports now suggest improved perinatal outcomes. The North American Fetal Therapy Network reviewed their experiences with 98 cases from 1998 to 2008 in which RFA of the umbilical cord was performed. Median gestational age at delivery was 37 weeks' gestation, and 80 percent of donor neonates survived (Lee, 2013).

Hydatidiform Mole with Coexisting Normal Fetus

This rare gestation contains one normal fetus, and its co-twin is a complete molar pregnancy. It must be differentiated from a partial molar pregnancy, which is a singleton, triploid fetus and its placenta composed of molar tissue (Fig. 13-4, p. 238).

Diagnosis in the first half of pregnancy is common. Sonographically, a normal-appearing twin is accompanied by its co-twin, which is a large placenta containing multiple small anechoic cysts. Often, these pregnancies are terminated, but pregnancy continuation is increasingly adopted. The live birth rate from one review was 50 percent (Zilberman, 2020). The risk of gestational trophoblastic neoplasia (GTN), which is a malignant sequelae of hydatidiform mole, is similar whether the pregnancy is terminated or not (Massardier, 2009; Sebire, 2002). Given the limited number of cases, robust data for firm recommendations are lacking. Discussed in Chapter 13 (p. 237), complications of expectant management include vaginal bleeding, hyperemesis gravidarum, thyrotoxicosis, and early-onset preeclampsia. Many of these complications result in preterm birth with its attendant adverse perinatal outcomes. Logically, close antepartum and postpartum surveillance is needed for those continuing the pregnancy. Postpartum GTN surveillance is essential and described in Chapter 13 (p. 240).

DISCORDANT GROWTH

Fetal size inequality develops in approximately 15 percent of twin gestations (Miller, 2012). Generally, as the weight difference within a twin pair grows, the perinatal mortality rate rises proportionately. Earlier discordancy and monochorionicity pose increased mortality risks for the smaller twin. Specifically, with discordant growth identified at or before 20 weeks' gestation in studies, 8 to 15 percent of the growth-restricted fetuses die (Couck, 2020; Curado, 2020; D'Antonio, 2018).

Pathogenesis

The etiology of growth discordance in monochorionic twins likely differs from that in dichorionic twins. First, in monochorionic twins, the single placenta is not always equally shared, and this leads to higher discordant growth rates than in dichorionic pairs (Fig. 48-15). In cases with TTTS, discordancy in monochorionic twins is usually attributed to placental anastomoses that cause a perfusion imbalance between twins. Reduced perfusion of the donor twin can diminish placental and fetal growth (Lewi, 2013). Last, monochorionic twins at times can be discordant in size because they are discordant for structural anomalies.

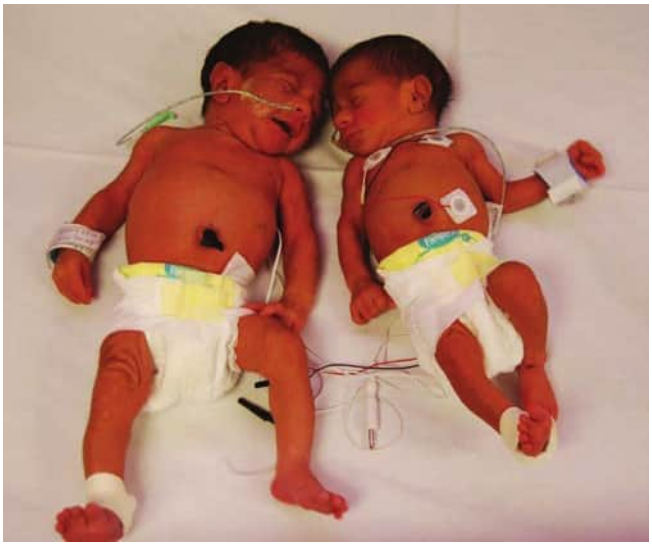


FIGURE 48-15 Marked growth discordance in monochorionic twins. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Laura Greer.)

In dichorionic twins, discordancy may result from various factors. Dizygotic fetuses may have different genetic growth potential, especially if they are of opposite genders. Second, because the placentas are separate and require more implantation space, one placenta might have a suboptimal implantation site. Additionally, umbilical cord abnormalities such as velamentous insertion, marginal insertion, or vasa previa may play a role (Chap. 6, p. 114). One study showed that the incidence of severe discordancy is twice as great in triplets as it is in twins (Bagchi, 2006). This supports the view that in-utero crowding promotes multifetal growth restriction. Placental pathology may be contributory. In one study of 668 twin placentas, a strong relationship between histological placental abnormalities and birthweight discordancy was observed in dichorionic but not monochorionic twin pregnancies (Kent, 2012).

Diagnosis

Antenatal size discordancy between twins can be best determined sonographically. Crown-rump length differences are not reliable predictors for birthweight discordance (Miller, 2012). Thus, most discordancy surveillance begins after the first trimester. One common method uses sonographic fetal biometry to compute an estimated weight for each twin (Chap. 15, p. 274). Percent discordancy is then calculated as the weight of the larger twin minus the weight of the smaller twin, divided by the weight of the larger twin. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021b) defines discordance as an estimated fetal weight difference >20 percent.

Management

The risk for adverse perinatal outcomes in the setting of growth discordance remains controversial. Some suggest that twin gestations with discordant growth between two fetuses that are appropriately grown for gestational age are not at increased risk for adverse outcomes (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021b; Appleton, 2007). Others have shown an increased risk for adverse fetal outcomes but not for poor neonatal outcomes (Amaru, 2004; D'Antonio, 2018). However, accumulated data suggest that weight discordancy exceeding 25 to 30 percent most accurately predicts an adverse perinatal outcome (Cohen, 2001; Chen, 2019). At Parkland Hospital, twin weight-discordancy values from 1370 delivered twin pairs were stratified by percentage increments (Hollier, 1999). The incidence of respiratory distress syndrome, intraventricular hemorrhage, seizures, periventricular leukomalacia, sepsis, and necrotizing enterocolitis rose directly with the percentage of weight discordancy. Rates of these conditions grew substantially if discordancy exceeded 25 percent. The relative risk of fetal death increased significantly to 5.6 if weight discordancy was >30 percent and rose to 18.9 if >40 percent.

Nonstress testing and biophysical profile assessment have all been recommended in management of twin growth discordancy. If significant discordancy is identified in a monochorionic twin pair, umbilical artery Doppler studies in the smaller fetus may help guide management (Gratacós, 2007). Data are limited to establish the optimal timing of delivery of twins with size discordancy alone. At advanced gestational ages, delivery can be pursued.

Selective Fetal-growth Restriction

Restricted growth of one twin fetus is termed *selective fetal-growth restriction (sFGR)* and usually develops late in the second and early third trimester. Some diagnose sFGR if the abdominal circumference (AC) measurement difference exceeds 20 mm or if fetal-growth discordance is >20 percent (Khalil, 2019). If sFGR is diagnosed, weekly testing of fetal well-being, evaluation of amnionic fluid volume, and umbilical artery Doppler velocimetry are undertaken. Investigators have correlated Doppler results with placental findings and with the degree of sFGR to predict fetal outcome (Gratacós, 2012). These correlations have yielded categories of sFGR.

- Type I shows positive end-diastolic flow, a smaller degree of weight discordance, and a relatively benign clinical course.
- Type II displays persistently absent end-diastolic flow in the smaller twin and carries a high risk of deterioration and demise.
- Type III has intermittently absent or reversed end-diastolic flow. Because of large artery-to-artery anastomoses associated with the placentas in this last category, type III is associated with a lower risk of deterioration than type II. In all evaluated cases, unequally shared placenta was noted to some degree.

Serial evaluation of fetal growth is performed every 3 weeks (Chap 47, p. 829). At Parkland Hospital, daily inpatient surveillance is undertaken in women with fetal-growth restriction in one twin or with twin discordancy exceeding 25 percent in the setting of a twin with restricted growth.

FETAL DEMISE

At any time during multifetal pregnancy, one or more fetuses may die, either simultaneously or sequentially. Most causes stem from complications of fetal anomaly or chorionicity. Related to the latter, compared with dichorionic twins, monochorionic pairs suffer higher rates of sFGR, TTTS, or TAPS from unequal vascular anastomoses, and monoamnionic pairs can die from cord entanglement.

When death is early, it may manifest as a vanishing twin (p. 843). For the survivor, the risk of death after the first trimester is not increased, and the pregnancy requires no additional surveillance for this specific indication. In a slightly more advanced gestation, the dead fetus may be compressed appreciably—*fetus compressus,* or it may be flattened remarkably through desiccation—*fetus papyraceus* (Fig. 48-16).

In gestations past 20 weeks, the stillbirth rate in twins in the United States was 1.4 percent of live births and exceeded the 0.6-percent rate in singletons (MacDorman, 2015). After a *single intrauterine fetal demise (sIUFD)* in these later gestations, risks to the remaining co-twin include death, preterm birth, and neurological injury (D'Antonio, 2017; Mackie, 2019). With the last, acute hypovolemia from volume shifts within placental anastomoses occurs immediately, and neurological injury is not preventable.

Related to co-twin death, monochorionic diamnionic twins with an sIUFD were 16 times more likely to experience death of the co-twin than were dichorionic twins with an sIUFD in one large series (Morikawa, 2012). In most studies, the rate of co-twin demise after sIUFD declines after 26 to 28 weeks' gestation and with advancing gestational age (Mackie, 2019; McPherson, 2012; Southwest Thames Obstetric Research Collaborative, 2012; Wood, 2014).

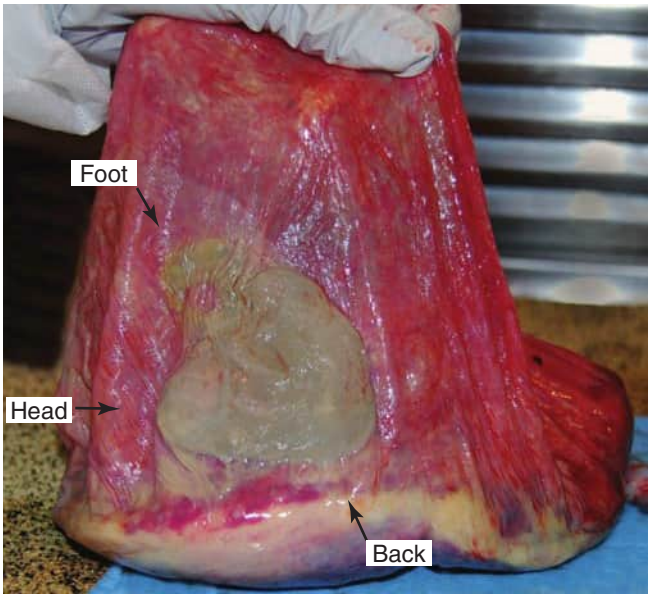


FIGURE 48-16 This fetus papyraceus is a tan ovoid mass compressed against the fetal membranes. Anatomical parts can be identified as marked. Demise of this twin had been noted during sonographic examination performed at 17 weeks' gestation. Its viable co-twin delivered at 40 weeks. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Michael V. Zaretsky.)

The rate of preterm birth following sIUFD is increased but is similar between mono- and dichorionic twins. Advancing rates are seen at later gestational ages (D'Antonio, 2017; Ong, 2006).

The neurological prognosis for a surviving co-twin is influenced by chorionicity. In one review of diamnionic twin pregnancies complicated by sIUFD *before* 34 weeks, neurodevelopmental morbidity was 29 percent in monochorionic twins and was threefold higher than in dichorionic gestations (Mackie, 2019). In other series with sIUFD *after* 34 weeks, the likelihood of neurological deficits was essentially the same between monochorionic and dichorionic twin pregnancies (Hillman, 2011).

Because of this significant neurological risk, if one fetus of a monochorionic twin gestation dies after the first trimester but before viability, pregnancy termination can be considered (Blickstein, 2013). After viability, ultimate delivery timing balances the risk of prematurity against co-twin demise. Early management emphasizes maternal and co-twin safety and gestation prolongation (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021b). Antenatal corticosteroids for survivor lung maturity can be considered. For sIUFD occurring after 34 weeks' gestation, delivery is reasonable (Spong, 2011).

Last, the death of one fetus could theoretically trigger coagulation defects in the mother. Only a few cases of maternal coagulopathy after a single fetal death in a twin pregnancy have been reported. This is probably because the surviving twin is usually delivered within a few weeks of the demise (Eddib, 2006).

PRENATAL CARE

At Parkland Hospital clinics, women with multifetal gestations are seen every 2 weeks beginning at 22 weeks' gestation. One imperative is preterm delivery prevention, and a digital cervical examination is performed at each visit to screen for cervical shortening or dilation.

The maternal diet should provide additional requirements for calories, protein, minerals, vitamins, and essential fatty acids. The Institute of Medicine (IOM) (2009) recommends a 37- to 54-lb weight gain for women with twins and a normal body mass index. The daily recommended augmented caloric intake for women with twins is 40 to 45 kcal/kg/d. Diets contain 20 percent protein, 40 percent carbohydrate, and 40 percent fat divided into three meals and three snacks daily. Based on upper-intake levels from the Food and Nutrition Board of the IOM, one review endorsed supplementation of calcium, magnesium, zinc, and vitamins C, D, and E (Goodnight, 2009).

Discussed in Chapter 40 (p. 705), low-dose aspirin prophylaxis is recommended in women at high risk of preeclampsia, which includes those with a multifetal pregnancy (LeFevre, 2014). An 81-mg oral daily dose is initiated between 12 and 28 weeks' gestation and is continued until delivery (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b).

Prenatal screening for fetal aneuploidy is carried out as described in Chapter 17 (p. 334). Thus, the combined test or secondary screening is done and interpreted with value thresholds set for multifetal pregnancies. Noninvasive prenatal screening with cfDNA also is acceptable (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020d; Judah, 2021; Khalil, 2021). Interpretation caveats for those with a vanishing twin were described earlier (p. 844).

To screen for structural anomalies, a midpregnancy anatomic sonography survey is performed. In addition, monochorionic twins undergo echocardiography because of an increased risk for cardiac anomalies (Bahtiyar, 2007). As noted earlier (p. 844), fetal growth is assessed with sonography. Amnionic fluid volume is quantified using the deepest vertical pocket in each sac. A measurement <2 cm is considered oligohydramnios, and a measurement >8 cm is considered hydramnios (Duryea, 2017; Hernandez, 2012).

Twin pregnancies are at increased risk for stillbirth compared to singleton gestations. The intrauterine fetal death rate is two- to threefold higher in monochorionic pregnancies compared with dichorionic gestations (Lee, 2008; Morikawa, 2012). Cheong-See and colleagues (2016) reported a higher stillbirth rate in monochorionic gestations compared with dichorionic gestations beyond 34 weeks' gestation. Outpatient weekly nonstress test or biophysical profile may help lower the rate of intrauterine death in twin gestations (Booker, 2015; Burgess, 2014). Weekly antenatal surveillance is undertaken at 36 weeks' gestation for uncomplicated dichorionic pregnancies and at 32 weeks' gestation or uncomplicated monochorionic gestations (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a). However, all antenatal testing schemes have high false-positive rates. In cases of abnormal testing in one twin and normal results in another, iatrogenic preterm delivery remains a major concern. Therefore, patients are carefully counseled prior to initiating antenatal testing in twins.

PRETERM BIRTH

Gestational length shortens and preterm birth risk rises with accruing fetal number. In 2019 in the United States, the preterm birth rate in twins and triplets was 60 and 98 percent, respectively (Martin, 2021). One review showed that approximately 60 percent of preterm births in twins are indicated, a third result from spontaneous labor, and 10 percent follow preterm prelabor rupture of membranes (PPROM) (Chauhan, 2010).

Of risks, preterm birth rates vary with chorionicity and are higher with monochorionic compared with dichorionic twins. Other implicated factors are prior preterm birth, adolescence, nulliparity, obesity, and diabetes (Marleen, 2018, 2021).

Prediction

One goal of multifetal prenatal care is to identify women likely to experience preterm delivery. To and associates (2006) sonographically measured cervical length in 1163 twin pregnancies at 22 to 24 weeks' gestation. Rates of preterm delivery before 32 weeks were 66 percent in those with cervical lengths of 10 mm; 24 percent for lengths of 20 mm; and only 1 percent for lengths of 40 mm. In one review, a cervical length <20 mm was most accurate for predicting birth before 34 weeks' gestation. The specificity was 97 percent, and positive likelihood ratio was 9.0 (Conde-Agudelo, 2010). Notably, a closed

internal os by digital examination predicted postponed delivery equally well as the combination of a normal sonographically measured cervical length and negative fetal fibronectin test result (McMahon, 2002).

Unfortunately, cervical length assessment in twin pregnancies has not led to improved outcomes (Gordon, 2016). The Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine (2016) recommends against routine cervical length screening in multifetal gestations.

Fetal fibronectin levels also may predict preterm birth (Marleen, 2020). Again, neonatal outcomes are not improved in twins, and this screening tool is not recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021b).

Prevention

Bed Rest

In general, most strategies for preterm birth prevention are ineffective for singleton and multifetal pregnancies (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021b). Of options, bed rest with or without hospitalization does not prolong multifetal pregnancy. In one metaanalysis, the practice did not reduce the risk of preterm birth (da Silva Lopes, 2017). At Parkland Hospital, elective hospitalization was compared with outpatient management, and no advantages were found (Andrews, 1991). Importantly, however, almost half of women managed as outpatients required admission for specific indications such as hypertension or threatened preterm delivery.

Limited physical activity, early work leave, more frequent health-care visits, serial sonographic examinations, and structured maternal education regarding preterm delivery risks have been advocated to reduce preterm birth rates in women with multiple fetuses. However, little evidence suggests that these practices substantially change this outcome.

Prophylactic Tocolysis

This has not been studied extensively in multifetal pregnancies. In one review of prophylactic oral beta-mimetic therapy that included 374 twin pregnancies, treatment did not reduce the rate of twins delivering before 37 or before 34 weeks' gestation (Yamasmit, 2015). In light of the Food and Drug Administration warning against the use of oral terbutaline because of maternal side effects, the prophylactic use of beta-mimetic drugs in multifetal gestations seems unwarranted.

Progesterone Therapy

17-alpha-hydroxyprogesterone caproate (17-OHPC) injections are not effective for multifetal gestations (Caritis, 2009; Combs, 2011; Rouse, 2007). Moreover, women carrying twins and having a cervical length <36 mm or a length <25 mm did not benefit despite their greater risk for preterm birth (Durnwald, 2010; Senat, 2013).

Vaginal micronized progesterone in various formulations in randomized studies has also proved ineffective for preterm birth prevention before 34 weeks in a general twin population (Norman, 2009; Rode, 2011). For women with a short cervix, subgroup analysis and a metaanalysis show conflicting results regarding benefits (D'Antonio, 2021; Klein, 2011; Rehal, 2021). At Parkland Hospital, current management of multifetal gestations does not typically include any progesterone therapy.

Cervical Cerclage

Prophylactic cerclage does not improve perinatal outcome in women with twin pregnancies. Studies have included women with and without a short cervix (D'Antonio, 2021; Jarde, 2017; Newman, 2002). *Physical examination–indicated cerclage* in women with a second-trimester twin gestation and a dilated cervix may be beneficial. Roman and coworkers (2016, 2020) reported that women undergoing rescue cerclage plus prophylactic antibiotic and indomethacin administration before 24 weeks' gestation had lower preterm birth and perinatal mortality rates than those without a cerclage.

Pessary

The silicone Arabin vaginal pessary encircles and theoretically compresses the cervix, alters the inclination of the cervical canal, and relieves direct pressure on the internal cervical os. In a study of its use in women with a short cervix between 18 and 22 weeks' gestation, a subgroup analysis of 23 women with twins showed a significant reduction in the delivery rate before 32 weeks compared with the rate in 23 control pregnancies (Arabin, 2003). In another randomized trial of twins, women treated with a cervical pessary had significantly fewer births before 34 weeks (Goya, 2016).

Other randomized studies comparing pessary against expectant care are less favorable. In one trial with 1180 uncomplicated twin pregnancies, pessary use failed to alter the preterm birth rate (Nicolaides, 2016). Another trial of 813 unselected women had similar findings. However, delivery rates before 32 weeks were lower—29 versus 14 percent—in a subset of women with a cervical length <38 mm (Liem, 2013). Instead, other trials show no benefit from pessary use in this subgroup (Nicolaides, 2016; Norman, 2021). At this time, pessary use is not recommended by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021b).

Treatment

Tocolytic therapy to help halt preterm labor in multifetal pregnancy does not measurably improve neonatal outcomes (Canadian Preterm Labor Investigators Group, 1992; Yamasmit, 2015). Moreover, tocolytic therapy in women with a multifetal pregnancy entails higher maternal risk than in singleton pregnancy. This stems in part from augmented pregnancy-induced hypervolemia, which raises cardiac demands and increases the susceptibility to iatrogenic pulmonary edema (Chap. 50, p. 883). In one study, all women with a multifetal gestation treated with a beta-mimetic drug for preterm labor had more cardiovascular complications—43 versus 4 percent—than women with singletons (Gabriel, 1994). In a retrospective analysis, nifedipine tocolysis in 58 singleton and 32 twin pregnancies led to higher incidences of side effects such as maternal tachycardia in women with twins—19 versus 9 percent (Derbent, 2011).

Antenatal corticosteroids for fetal lung maturation have not been well studied in multifetal gestations. Of studies, many compare outcomes among singletons and twins whose

mothers either did or did not receive this therapy. In one large retrospective study evaluating betamethasone, neonatal morbidity rates were reduced in both twin and singleton treated groups (Melamed, 2016). Another similar comparison found reduced rates of periventricular hemorrhage rates in treated groups but not improved respiratory distress syndrome (RDS) rates (Gonçalves-Ferri, 2021). Similarly, in another study, short-term neurological outcome was better in treated twin and singletons, but rates of mortality, RDS, and cerebral palsy were not reduced (Ushida, 2020). However, in one study solely with twins, the rate of RDS or of composite neonatal morbidity was not lower with corticosteroid therapy (Viteri, 2016). These authors posited pharmacokinetics in twin gestation as a potential explanation. Currently, recommended use of agents is the same for multifetal and singleton gestations (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021b). This therapy is described fully in Chapter 45 (p. 802).

Preterm Prelabor Membrane Rupture

The frequency of PPROM rises with increasing plurality. In a population-based study of more than 290,000 live births, the proportion of preterm birth complicated by PPROM was 13 percent in singletons. This rate was 17, 20, 20, and 100 percent in twins, triplets, quadruplets, and higher-order multiples, respectively (Pakrashi, 2013). For both twin and singleton pregnancies, most studies show comparable neonatal risk with expectant management, which is outlined in Chapter 45 (p. 798) (Kibel, 2017). However, the time between births, often termed *latency*, is shorter with twins. With PPROM after 24 weeks' gestation, the median number of days to subsequent delivery was 4 days for twins compared with 7 days for singletons in one study (Madden, 2021). After 30 weeks' gestation, this latency for twins is significantly shortened (Mercer, 1993).

Delayed Delivery of Second Twin

Rarely, after preterm birth of one fetus, it may be advantageous for undelivered fetus(es) to remain in utero. This may be especially so at periviable gestational ages. However, this advantage must be balanced against substantial maternal risk. In one systematic review, nearly 40 percent of mothers suffered complications with delayed delivery (Cheung, 2020). These include infection, postpartum hemorrhage, and placental abruption.

From population-based data of delayed deliveries, the median latency duration was 6 days (range 6 to 107 days) in 200 twin pregnancies (Zhang, 2004). In all studies, retained fetuses had better overall survival rates than the first-born neonate. In one series of 38 twins, the mean latency was 19 days. Of first-born twins born at <25 weeks' gestation, none survived, but 50 percent of their co-twins did. Beyond 25 weeks, survival rates were 65 for first-born and 95 percent for second-born twins (Arabin, 2009). In their series of 28 twin pairs, cerclage, antibiotic therapy, and tocolysis did not improve outcomes (Fayad 2003).

If delayed delivery is attempted, counseling should include the potential for serious maternal complications. The range of gestational age for which benefits outweigh the risks for delayed delivery is likely narrow, and gestations of 22 to 24 weeks would seem the most probable to benefit (Oyelese, 2005). In our experience, good candidates for delayed delivery are rare.

LABOR AND DELIVERY

Delivery Timing

Several factors affect this timing and include gestational age, fetal growth, maternal complications, lung maturity, and stillbirth risk. The substantially greater stillbirth rate in monochorionic monoamnionic twins was discussed earlier (p. 845). In dichorionic diamnionic twins, stillbirth rates rose to 10.6 deaths per 1000 pregnancies at $38^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation in a systematic review of more than 30,000 twin pairs. The peak rate in monochorionic diamnionic twins was 9.6 deaths per 1000 pregnancies at $37^{6/7}$ weeks (Cheong-See, 2016).

In uncomplicated twins, stillbirth risk is balanced against the morbidity of prematurity. Pulmonary maturation is usually synchronous in twins and occurs several weeks earlier than in singletons (Leveno, 1984). However, in some cases, pulmonary function may differ. With sFGR, the smaller, stressed twin has lower rates of RDS but higher rates of bronchopulmonary dysplasia (Groene, 2021).

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021b) recommends delivery at $38^{0/7}$ to $38^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation for uncomplicated dichorionic diamnionic twin pregnancies. Uncomplicated monochorionic diamnionic twin pregnancies can be delivered between $34^{0/7}$ and $37^{6/7}$ weeks. For monochorionic monoamnionic twin pregnancies, delivery is recommended at $32^{0/7}$ to $34^{0/7}$ weeks. At Parkland Hospital, we generally follow these recommendations and do not routinely deliver monochorionic diamnionic twin pregnancies before 37 weeks unless another obstetrical indication develops.

Preparations

A litany of complications may be encountered during labor and delivery of multiple fetuses. Rates of uterine contractile dysfunction, abnormal fetal presentation, umbilical cord prolapse, placenta previa, placental abruption, emergent operative delivery, and postpartum hemorrhage rates from uterine atony are higher. Moreover, second twins at term have worse composite neonatal outcomes compared with outcomes of their co-twin regardless of delivery method (Smith, 2007; Thorngren-Jerneck, 2001). All of these must be anticipated, and thus certain precautions and special arrangements are prudent. These include the following:

1. An appropriately trained obstetrical attendant should remain with the mother throughout labor. Continuous electronic monitoring is preferable. If membranes are ruptured and the cervix dilated, the presenting fetus is monitored internally.

2. An intravenous infusion system capable of delivering fluid rapidly is established. In the absence of hemorrhage, lactated Ringer or an aqueous dextrose solution is infused at a rate of 60 to 125 mL/hr.
3. Blood for transfusion is readily available if needed.
4. An obstetrician skilled in intrauterine identification of fetal parts and in intrauterine manipulation of a fetus should be present.
5. A sonography machine is readily available to evaluate the presentation and position of the fetuses during labor and to image the remaining fetus after delivery of the first.
6. An anesthesia team is immediately available in the event that emergent cesarean delivery is necessary or that intrauterine manipulation is required for vaginal delivery.
7. For each fetus, at least one attendant who is skilled in resuscitation and care of newborns and who has been appropriately informed of the case should be immediately available.
8. The delivery area should provide adequate space for the nursing, obstetrical, anesthesia, and pediatric team members to work effectively. Equipment must be on site to provide emergent anesthesia, operative intervention, and maternal and neonatal resuscitation.

Analgesia and Anesthesia

For multifetal pregnancies, decisions regarding analgesia and anesthesia must factor planned route of delivery. Other potential problems may stem from preterm labor, preeclampsia, desultory labor, need for intrauterine manipulation, and postpartum uterine atony and hemorrhage.

Labor epidural analgesia is ideal because it provides excellent pain relief and can be rapidly extended cephalad if internal podalic version or cesarean delivery is required. If general anesthesia becomes necessary for intrauterine manipulation during vaginal birth, uterine relaxation can be accomplished rapidly with a halogenated inhalation agent (Chap. 25, p. 481). Some clinicians use intravenous or sublingual nitroglycerin or intravenous terbutaline to achieve uterine relaxation. If used, these agents are usually best administered by the anesthesia team.

Fetal Presentation

For labor and delivery, the fetal presentations are best determined sonographically. If active labor is confirmed, the decision for vaginal or cesarean delivery is reached, and fetal presentation is a major factor. Among the possible presentation combinations, those most common at admission for delivery are cephalic-cephalic, cephalic-breech, and cephalic-transverse. At Parkland Hospital between 2008 and 2013, 71 percent of twin pregnancies had a cephalic presentation of the first fetus at the time of labor and delivery admission. During parturition, fetal presentation of a second twin can be unstable. For them, compound or footling breech presentations and face or brow attitudes are relatively common and even more so if fetuses are small or numerous, amnionic fluid is excessive, or maternal parity is high. Cord prolapse also is frequent in these circumstances.

Delivery Route

Cephalic First Twin

With *cephalic–cephalic presentation*, general consensus supports consideration of vaginal birth in a laboring woman near term (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021b; D'Alton, 2010). From studies, planned cesarean delivery does not improve neonatal outcome when both twins are cephalic (de Castro, 2016; Schmitz, 2017). With trials of labor, vaginal delivery rates approximate 80 percent.

With *cephalic–noncephalic* presentation, the optimal delivery route remains controversial. Patient selection and provider expertise with vaginal breech delivery is crucial and described in Chapter 28 (p. 527). As a result, one common option is cesarean delivery of both twins. Less often, after spontaneous vaginal delivery of a first twin, intrapartum external cephalic version of the second twin can be performed. In case series, this practice, compared with internal podalic version, was associated with higher rates of intrapartum cesarean delivery and fetal distress (Gocke, 1989; Smith 1997). With internal podalic version, a hand placed into the uterus grasps fetal feet to deliver the fetus by breech extraction (Fig. 48-17). Last and least desirable is vaginal delivery of the first but cesarean delivery of the second twin due to intrapartum complications. These are umbilical cord prolapse, placental abruption, contracting cervix, or nonreassuring fetal heart rate. Most but not all studies report the worst composite fetal outcomes for this scenario (Alexander, 2008; Rossi, 2011).

For cephalic–noncephalic twins, each with birthweights >1500 g and gestational ages >32 weeks, several reports attest to the safety of vaginal delivery. In one study of 5915 pregnancies with a cephalic first twin and either cephalic or noncephalic second twin, 25 percent planned for cesarean delivery (Schmitz, 2017). The other 75 percent planned a trial of vaginal delivery, which was successful in 80 percent. Interestingly, perinatal mortality and morbidity rates were significantly higher in the planned cesarean delivery group delivered at <37 weeks—5.2 versus 3.0 percent, respectively. Additionally, for those delivered vaginally, neonatal outcomes were similar for second

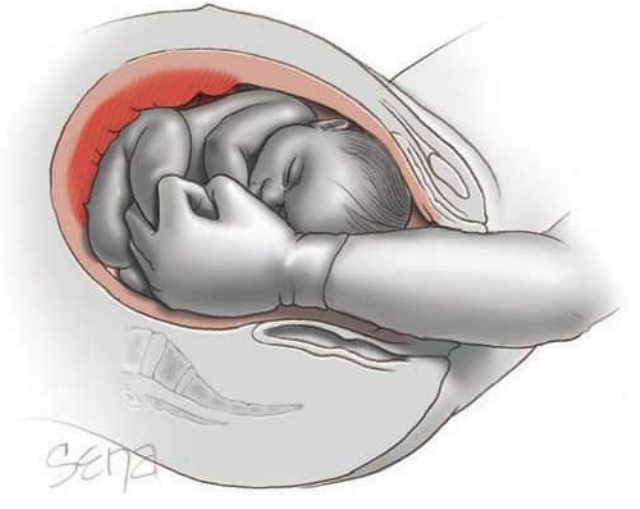


FIGURE 48-17 Internal podalic version. Upward pressure on the head by an abdominal hand is applied (not shown) as downward traction is exerted on the feet.

twins that were cephalic or noncephalic (Schmitz, 2018). The Twin Birth Study had similar inclusion criteria and randomly assigned women to planned vaginal or planned cesarean delivery. Perinatal outcomes were similar in both groups. For those delivered vaginally, neonatal outcomes were similar for second twins that were cephalic or noncephalic (Barrett, 2013).

For neonates weighing <1500 g compared with those weighing more, comparable or even better fetal outcomes with vaginal delivery compared with cesarean delivery have been reported (Mol, 2020; Sentilhes, 2015). However, rates of urgent operations for the second twin may be higher (Hiersch, 2021).

Other investigators advocate cesarean delivery for both fetuses of a cephalic–noncephalic twin pair (Armson, 2006; Hoffmann, 2012). Yang and coworkers (2005a,b) studied 15,185 cephalic–noncephalic pairs. The risks of asphyxia-related neonatal deaths and morbidity were higher in the group in which both twins were delivered vaginally compared with the group in which both twins were delivered surgically.

Breech First Twin

Problems with the first twin presenting as a breech are similar to those encountered with a singleton breech fetus. First, the fetal body can be small, and delivery of the extremities and trunk through an inadequately effaced and dilated cervix can leave the relatively larger head trapped above the cervix. This is more likely when disproportion between the head and body is significant. Examples are preterm or growth-restricted fetuses or those with macrocephaly from hydrocephaly. Second, umbilical cord prolapse is an ever-present risk. Last, twin fetuses may become locked together during delivery if the first presents breech and the second cephalic. As the breech of the first twin descends through the birth canal, the chin locks between the neck and chin of the second cephalic-presenting co-twin. This phenomenon is rare, and Cohen and coworkers (1965) described it only once in 817 twin gestations.

If these problems are anticipated or identified, cesarean delivery is often preferred with a viable-sized fetus. Even without these problems, many obstetricians perform cesarean delivery if the first twin presents as breech, and this is our practice. However, data support the safety of vaginal delivery for twins older than 32 weeks and weighing >1500 g (Blickstein, 2000). In one study, cesarean delivery was planned in 1169 such pairs. Vaginal delivery was planned in 298 pairs and was successful in 64 percent. Cesarean delivery of the second twin was done in 1 percent. Neonatal mortality or morbidity measures did not differ between delivery groups (Korb, 2020).

Labor Augmentation or Induction

In general, active labor with twins progresses more slowly in both nulliparas and multiparas compared with that in singletons (Hochler, 2021). Second-stage labor of the first twin also is longer (Levin, 2021).

In women with twins who meet all criteria for oxytocin administration, *labor augmentation* is suitable (Chap. 26, p. 492). For *labor induction*, studies have found that oxytocin alone or in combination with cervical ripening can safely be used in twin gestations (Hamou, 2016; Ko, 2014). Compared with prelabor cesarean delivery, others have found higher maternal morbidity rates with labor induction, and ultimate cesarean delivery rates approximate 40 percent (Dougan, 2020; Grossman, 2021). In an analysis of twin births in the United States, induction rates of twin pregnancies have declined from nearly 14 percent in 1999 to 10 percent in 2008 (Lee, 2011). Generally, at Parkland Hospital we do not augment or induce labor in women with a multifetal gestation. Concerns include risks for uterine rupture from an overdistended uterus and postpartum hemorrhage. In suitable candidates with a strong desire for vaginal birth, amniotomy induction has been one option.

Vaginal Delivery

After delivery of the firstborn, one clamp is placed near the neonate, and another is placed nearer the placenta. Until the last fetus is delivered, each cord must remain clamped to prevent fetal hypovolemia and anemia caused by blood leaving the placenta via anastomoses and then through an unclamped cord. Cord blood is generally not collected until after delivery of all fetuses. After the second neonate is delivered, *two* plastic clamps are placed on the placenta's cord to differentiate it from the first. In higher-order deliveries, color-tagged or alphabetically labeled clamps can be simpler than adding additional clamps. This same practice holds for cesarean delivery. At this time, evidence is insufficient to recommend for or against delayed umbilical cord clamping in multifetal gestations (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

Following vaginal delivery of the first twin, the presenting part of the second twin, its size, and its relationship to the birth canal should be quickly ascertained by combined abdominal, vaginal, and, at times, intrauterine examination. Sonography is a valuable aid. If the fetal head or the breech is fixed in the birth canal, moderate fundal pressure is applied and membranes are ruptured. Immediately afterward, digital examination of the cervix is repeated to exclude cord prolapse. Labor is allowed to resume. If contractions do not begin within approximately 10 minutes, dilute oxytocin may be used to stimulate contractions.

The preferred interval between delivery of the first and second twins is frequently cited as <30 minutes. In some studies, longer intertwin intervals are associated with poorer outcome of the second twin (Leung, 2002; Stein, 2008). Others have correlated fetal heart rate tracing abnormalities during the intertwin interval rather than its length with poorer outcome (Algeri, 2019).

If the occiput or breech presents immediately over the pelvic inlet, but is not fixed in the birth canal, the presenting part can often be guided into the pelvis by one hand in the vagina, while a second hand on the uterine fundus exerts moderate pressure caudally. A presenting shoulder may be gently converted into a cephalic presentation. Alternatively, with abdominal manipulation, an assistant can guide the presenting part into the pelvis. Sonography can aid guidance and allow heart rate monitoring.

If the occiput or breech is not over the pelvic inlet and cannot be so positioned by gentle pressure or if appreciable uterine bleeding develops, delivery of the second twin can be problematic. To obtain a favorable outcome, an obstetrician skilled in intrauterine fetal manipulation and anesthesia personnel skilled

in providing anesthesia to effectively relax the uterus for vaginal delivery of a noncephalic second twin are essential (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021b). To take maximum advantage of the dilated cervix before the uterus contracts and the cervix retracts, delay should be avoided. Prompt cesarean delivery of the second fetus is preferred if no one present is skilled in the performance of internal podalic version or if anesthesia that will provide effective uterine relaxation is not immediately available.

Trial of Labor after Cesarean Delivery

The main concern with trial of labor after cesarean delivery (TOLAC) is uterine rupture from a distended uterus. One metaanalysis found rates of rupture and of successful vaginal birth were comparable with those for TOLAC in singleton gestations (Kabiri, 2019). Other studies also support the safety of TOLAC for selected women with twins (Cahill, 2005; Ford, 2006). In one assessment of 186 women undergoing TOLAC, two thirds delivered both twins vaginally. Of failed attempts, 45 percent underwent cesarean for delivery of the second twin (Varner, 2005). According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019), evidence currently does not suggest an increased risk of uterine rupture, and women with twins and one previous cesarean delivery with a low transverse incision may be considered TOLAC candidates. At Parkland Hospital, we recommend repeat cesarean delivery.

Cesarean Delivery Technique

Several unusual intraoperative problems can arise during cesarean delivery of twins or higher-order multiples. Supine hypotension is common, and thus gravidas are positioned in a left lateral tilt to deflect uterine weight off the aorta. A low transverse hysterotomy is preferable if the incision can be made large enough to allow atraumatic delivery of all fetuses. Piper forceps can be used if a second twin is presenting breech. In some cases, a vertical hysterotomy beginning as low as possible in the lower uterine segment may be advantageous. For example, if a fetus is transverse with its back down and the arms are inadvertently delivered first, it is much easier and safer to extend a vertical uterine incision upward than to extend a transverse incision laterally or to make a "T" incision vertically.

Triplet or Higher-order Gestation

Fetal heart rate monitoring during labor with triplet pregnancies is challenging. A scalp electrode can be attached to the presenting fetus, but it is difficult to ensure that the other two fetuses are each being monitored separately. With vaginal delivery, the first neonate is usually born with little or no manipulation. Subsequent fetuses, however, are delivered according to the presenting part. This often requires complicated obstetrical maneuvers such as total breech extraction with or without internal podalic version or even cesarean delivery. Associated with malposition of fetuses is an increased incidence of cord prolapse. Moreover, reduced placental perfusion and hemorrhage from separating placentas are more likely during delivery.

Data from the Consortium on Safe Labor found that only 17 percent of women with triplet gestation attempting vaginal birth were actually delivered vaginally. In these births, composite neonatal morbidity rates were increased (Lappen, 2016). In 7000 triplet pregnancies, vaginal delivery also was associated with a higher perinatal mortality rate (Vintzeleos, 2005). For all these reasons, we deliver most pregnancies complicated by three or more fetuses by cesarean delivery. Vaginal delivery is reserved for those circumstances in which survival is not expected because fetuses are markedly immature or abnormal or maternal complications make cesarean delivery hazardous to the mother. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2009) national data show that 94 percent of triplets are delivered by cesarean.

Other cases series describe more positive outcomes (Grobman, 1998; Peress, 2019). In sum, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021b) notes vaginal birth may be considered for uncomplicated triplet pregnancies, if the first fetus is cephalic and attendants are experienced with multifetal vaginal birth. As with twins, candidate fetuses should weigh >1500 g.

REDUCING FETAL NUMBER

For multifetal gestations, *multifetal pregnancy reduction (MPR)* aims to lower fetal number to improve survival rates of the remaining fetuses. Instead, with *selective reduction*, early pregnancy intervention focuses on a fetus with an anomaly or serious health risk. With *selective termination*, the indications are analogous to those for selective reduction, but interventions are performed at a later gestational age (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020c).

Selective reduction or MPR is typically done in the late first trimester. This gestational age is chosen because most spontaneous abortions have already occurred, the remaining fetuses are large enough to be evaluated sonographically, the amount of devitalized fetal tissue remaining after the procedure is small, and the risk of aborting the entire pregnancy as a result of the procedure is low.

Skill in sonographically guiding needles through the mother's abdomen and uterus is required. For reductions of fetuses with their own chorion, potassium chloride is used and is injected into the fetal heart or thorax. Entering or traversing the sacs of fetuses picked for retention is avoided. For monochorionic fetuses and potentially shared vasculature, cord-occlusion is used, and with radiofrequency ablation (RFA), the needle is inserted into the intrafetal portion of the umbilical cord.

Before reduction procedures, discussion should include the morbidity and mortality rates associated with expectant care, entire pregnancy termination, or selective fetal reduction (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020c). With these options, specific risks include (1) loss of all remaining fetuses, (2) abortion or retention of the wrong fetus, (3) damage without death to a fetus, (4) preterm labor, (5) fetuses with discordant or growth restriction, and (6) maternal complications. With reduction procedures, uncommon potential complications are infection, hemorrhage, or disseminated intravascular coagulopathy because of retained products of conception.

Multifetal Pregnancy Reduction

In most cases of MPR, higher-order gestations are reduced by one or more fetuses. With triplets, reduction to twins or a singleton lowers the rate of preterm birth before 34 weeks compared with expectant management. Miscarriage rates are not higher (Anthoulakis, 2017; Morlando, 2015). With even higher-order multiples, spontaneous loss and preterm birth rates also decline after MPR (Evans, 2014; Liu, 2020).

Twin gestations also may be reduced to a singleton pregnancy. Maternal comorbidities or concerns for monochorionic twin complications, described earlier, are frequent indications (Rao, 2021; Vieira, 2019).

Selective Reduction or Selective Termination

If multiple fetuses are discordant for anatomical or genetic anomalies, elimination of the abnormal fetus is an option. Other indications are severe TTTS, TAPS, TRAP, or sFGR. Because abnormalities are often not fully delineated until the second trimester, selective termination is performed later in gestation than selective reduction and entails greater risk. This procedure is therefore usually not performed unless the abnormality is severe but not lethal. In some cases, termination is considered because the abnormal fetus may jeopardize the normal one.

REFERENCES

Abel EL, Kruger ML: Maternal and paternal age and twinning in the United States, 2004–2008. J Perinat Med 40:237, 2012

Adashi EY, Gutman R: Delayed childbearing as a growing, previously unrecognized contributor to the national plural birth excess. Obstet Gynecol 132(4):999, 2018

Alexander JM, Leveno KJ, Rouse D, et al: Cesarean delivery for the second twin. Obstet Gynecol 112(4):748, 2008

Algeri P, Callegari C, Bernasconi DP, et al: Neonatal hypoxia of the second twin after vaginal delivery of the first twin: what matters? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(17):2889, 2019

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Vaginal birth after cesarean delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 205, January 2019

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Delayed umbilical cord clamping after birth. Committee Opinion No. 814, November 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Low-dose aspirin use during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 743, June 2018, Reaffirmed 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Multifetal pregnancy reduction. Committee Opinion No. 719, September 2017, Reaffirmed 2020c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Screening for fetal chromosomal abnormalities. Practice Bulletin No. 226, August 2020d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Indications for outpatient antenatal fetal surveillance. Committee Opinion No. 828, June 2021a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Multifetal gestations: twin, triplet, and higher-order multifetal pregnancies. Practice Bulletin No. 231, May 2021b

American Society for Reproductive Medicine, Society for Assisted Reproductive Technology: Guidance on the limits to the number of embryos to transfer: a committee opinion. Fertil Steril 107(4):901, 2017

Amaru RC, Bush MC, Berkowitz RL, et al: Is discordant growth on twins an independent risk factor for adverse neonatal outcome? Obstet Gynecol 103(1):71, 2004

Ananth CV, Vintzileos AM, Shen-Schwarz S, et al: Standards of birth weight in twin gestations stratified by placental chorionicity. Obstet Gynecol 91(6):917, 1998

Andrews WW, Leveno KJ, Sherman ML, et al: Elective hospitalization in the management of twin pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 77:826, 1991

Anthoulakis C, Dagklis T, Mamopoulos A, et al: Risks of miscarriage or preterm delivery in trichorionic and dichorionic triplet pregnancies with embryo reduction versus expectant management: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Hum Reprod 32(6):1351, 2017

Appleton C, Pinto L, Centeno M, et al: Near term twin pregnancy: clinical relevance of weight discordance at birth. J Perinat Med 35:62, 2007

Arabin B, Halbesma JR, Vork F, et al: Is treatment with vaginal pessaries an option in patients with a sonographically detected short cervix? J Perinat Med 31:122, 2003

Arabin B, van Eyck J: Delayed-interval delivery in twin and triplet pregnancies: 17 years of experience in 1 perinatal center. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(2):154.e1, 2009

Armson BA, O'Connell C, Persad V, et al: Determinants of perinatal mortality and serious neonatal morbidity in the second twin. Obstet Gynecol 108(3 Pt 1):556, 2006

Aviram A, Berger H, Abdulaziz KE, et al: Outcomes associated with hypertensive disorders of pregnancy in twin compared with singleton gestations. Obstet Gynecol 138(3):449, 2021

Bagchi S, Salihu HM: Birth weight discordance in multiple gestations: occurrence and outcomes. J Obstet Gynaecol 26(4):291, 2006

Bahtiyar MO, Dulay AT, Weeks BP, et al: Prevalence of congenital heart defects in monochorionic/diamniotic twin gestations: a systematic literature review. J Ultrasound Med 26(11):1491, 2007

Baken L, Rousian M, Kompanje EJ, et al: Diagnostic techniques and criteria for first-trimester conjoined twin documentation: a review of the literature illustrated by three recent cases. Obstet Gynecol Surv 68(11):743, 2013

Barrett JF, Hannah ME, Hutton EK, et al: A randomized trial of planned cesarean or vaginal delivery for twin pregnancy. N Engl J Med 369:1295, 2013

Beemsterboer SN, Homburg R, Gorter NA, et al: The paradox of declining fertility but increasing twinning rates with advancing maternal age. Hum Reprod 21:1531, 2006

Best KE, Rankin J: Increased risk of congenital heart disease in twins in the North of England between 1998 and 2010. Heart 101(22):1807, 2015

Blickstein I, Goldman RD, Kupferminc M: Delivery of breech first twins: a multicenter retrospective study. Obstet Gynecol 95:37, 2000

Blickstein I, Perlman S: Single fetal death in twin gestations. J Perinat Med 41:65, 2013

Booker W, Fox NS, Gupta S, et al: Antenatal surveillance in twin pregnancies using the biophysical profile. J Ultrasound Med 34(11):2071, 2015

Boyle B, McConkey R, Garne E, et al: Trends in the prevalence, risk and pregnancy outcome of multiple births with congenital anomaly: a registry-based study in 14 European countries 1984–2007. BJOG 120:707, 2013

Brady PC, Correia KF, Missmer SA, et al: Early β-human chorionic gonadotropin trends in vanishing twin pregnancies. Fertil Steril 100(1):116, 2013

Brown R: Zygosity testing should be encouraged for all same-sex twins: AGAINST: benefit of this knowledge should be weighed against potential pitfalls. BJOG 122(12):1641, 2015

Buca D, Di Mascio D, Khalil A, et al: Neonatal morbidity of monoamniotic twin pregnancies: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Perinatol July 28, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]

Bulmer MG: The effect of parental age, parity, and duration of marriage on the twinning rate. Hum Genet 23:454, 1959

Burgess JL, Unal ER, Nietert PJ, et al: Risk of late-preterm stillbirth and neonatal morbidity for monochorionic and dichorionic twins. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210(6):578, 2014

Busnelli A, Dallagiovanna C, Reschini M, et al: Risk factors for monozygotic twinning after in vitro fertilization: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Fertil Steril 111(2):302, 2019

Cahill A, Stamilio DM, Paré E, et al: Vaginal birth after cesarean (VBAC) attempt in twin pregnancies: is it safe? Am J Obstet Gynecol 193:1050, 2005

Campbell DM: Maternal adaptation in twin pregnancy. Semin Perinatol 10:14, 1986

Canadian Preterm Labor Investigators Group: Treatment of preterm labor with the beta-adrenergic agonist ritodrine. N Engl J Med 327(5):308, 1992

Caritis SN, Rouse DJ, Peaceman AM, et al: Prevention of preterm birth in triplets using 17 alpha-hydroxyprogesterone caproate: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 113(2 Pt 1):285, 2009

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Quickstats: percentage of live births by cesarean delivery, by plurality—United States, 1996, 2000, and 2006. MMWR 58(19):542, 2009

Challis D, Gratacos E, Deprest JA: Cord occlusion techniques for selective termination in monochorionic twins. J Perinat Med 27:327, 1999

Chang E, Park M, Kim Y, et al: A case of successful selective abortion using radio-frequency ablation in twin pregnancy suffering from severe twin to twin transfusion syndrome. J Korean Med Sci 24:513, 2009

Chauhan SP, Scardo JA, Hayes E, et al: Twins: prevalence, problems, and preterm births. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203(4):305, 2010

Chen CP, Hsu CY, Su JW, et al: Conjoined twins detected in the first trimester: a review. Taiwan J Obstet Gynecol 50(4):424, 2011

Chen X, Zhou Q, Xiao X, et al: The value of ultrasound in predicting isolated intertwin discordance and adverse perinatal outcomes. Arch Gynecol Obstet 99(2):459, 2019

Cheong-See F, Schuit E, Arroyo-Manzano D, et al: Prospective risk of stillbirth and neonatal complications in twin pregnancies: systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ 354:i4353, 2016

Cheung KW, Seto MT, Wang W, et al: Effect of delayed interval delivery of remaining fetus(es) in multiple pregnancies on survival: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(4):306, 2020

Chitrit Y, Korb D, Morin C, et al: Perinatal mortality and morbidity, timing and route of delivery in monoamniotic twin pregnancies: a retrospective cohort study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 303(3):685, 2021

Christensen K, Petersen I, Skytthe A, et al: Comparison of academic performance of twins and singletons in adolescence: follow-up study. BMJ 333:1095, 2006

Cohen M, Kohl SG, Rosenthal AH: Fetal interlocking complicating twin gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 91:407, 1965

Cohen SB, Elizur SE, Goldenberg M, et al: Outcome of twin pregnancies with extreme weight discordancy. Am J Perinatol 18(8):427, 2001

Combs CA, Garite T, Maurel K, et al: 17-Hydroxyprogesterone caproate for twin pregnancy: a double-blind, randomized clinical trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(3):221.e1, 2011

Conde-Agudelo A, Romero R, Hassan SS, et al: Transvaginal sonographic cervical length for the prediction of spontaneous preterm birth in twin pregnancies: a systematic review and metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203:128.e1, 2010

Corsello G, Piro E: The world of twins: an update. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 23(S3):59, 2010

Craig JM, Segal NL, Umstad MP, et al: Zygosity testing should be encouraged for all same-sex twins: FOR: A genetic test is essential to determine zygosity. BJOG 122(12):1641, 2015

Couck I, Ponnet S, Deprest J, et al: Outcome of monochorionic twin pregnancy with selective fetal growth restriction at 16, 20 or 30 weeks according to new Delphi consensus definition. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 56(6):821, 2020

Curado J, Sileo F, Bhide A, et al: Early- and late-onset selective fetal growth restriction in monochorionic diamniotic twin pregnancy: natural history and diagnostic criteria. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 55(5):661, 2020

Curnow KJ, Wilkins-Haug L, Ryan A, et al: Detection of triploid, molar, and vanishing twin pregnancies by a single-nucleotide polymorphism-based noninvasive prenatal test. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(1):79.e1, 2015

D'Alton ME: Delivery of the second twin. Obstet Gynecol 115(2):221, 2010

D'Antonio F, Berghella V, Di Mascio D, et al: Role of progesterone, cerclage and pessary in preventing preterm birth in twin pregnancies: a systematic review and network meta-analysis. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 261:166, 2021

D'Antonio F, Khalil A, Dias T, et al: Early fetal loss in monochorionic and dichorionic twin pregnancies: analysis of the Southwest Thames Obstetric Research Collaborative (STORK) multiple pregnancy cohort. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 41(6):632, 2013

D'Antonio F, Odibo AO, Prefumo F, et al: Weight discordance and perinatal mortality in twin pregnancy: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 52(1):11, 2018

D'Antonio F, Thilaganathan B, Dias T, et al: Influence of chorionicity and gestational age at single fetal loss on risk of preterm birth in twin pregnancy: analysis of STORK multiple pregnancy cohort. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 50(6):72, 2017

da Silva Lopes K, Takemoto Y, Ota E, et al: Bed rest with and without hospitalisation in multiple pregnancy for improving perinatal outcomes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD012031, 2017

Dashe JS, Fernandez CO, Twickler DM: Utility of Doppler velocimetry in predicting outcome in twin reversed-arterial perfusion sequence. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185(1):135, 2001

Dave ED, Bodnar LM, Vani K, et al: Perinatal outcomes in twin pregnancies complicated by gestational diabetes. Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 3(5):100396, 2021

Day MC, Barton JR, O'Brien JM, et al: The effect of fetal number on the development of hypertensive conditions of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 106(5 Pt 1):927, 2005

de Castro H, Haas J, Schiff E, et al: Trial of labour in twin pregnancies: a retrospective cohort study. BJOG 126(6):940, 2016

De Paepe ME, DeKoninck P, Friedman RM: Vascular distribution patterns in monochorionic twin placentas. Placenta 26(6):471, 2005

Derbent A, Simavli S, Gumus I, et al: Nifedipine for the treatment of preterm labor in twin and singleton pregnancies. Arch Gynecol Obstet 284:821, 2011

Dickey RP, Taylor SN, Lu PY, et al: Spontaneous reduction of multiple pregnancy: incidence and effect on outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:77, 2002

Dougan C, Gotha L, Melamed N, et al: Cesarean delivery or induction of labor in pre-labor twin gestations: a secondary analysis of the twin birth study. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 20(1):702, 2020

Durnwald CP, Momirova V, Rouse DJ, et al: Second trimester cervical length and risk of preterm birth in women with twin gestations treated with 17-α hydroxyprogesterone caproate. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 23(12):1360, 2010

Duryea EL, Happe SK, McIntire DD, et al: Sonography interval and the diagnosis of twin-twin transfusion syndrome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(6):640, 2017

Eddib A, Rodgers B, Lawler J, et al: Monochorionic pseudomonoamniotic twin pregnancy with fetal demise of one twin and development of maternal consumptive coagulopathy. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 28:735, 2006

Emery SP, Bahriyar MO, Dashe JS, et al: The North American Fetal Therapy Network Consensus Statement: prenatal management of uncomplicated monochorionic gestations. Obstet Gynecol 125(5):1236, 2015

Emery SP, Hasley SK, Catov JM, et al: North American Fetal Therapy Network: intervention vs expectant management for stage I twin-twin transfusion syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(3):346, 2016

Evans MI, Andriole S, Britt DW: Fetal reduction: 25 years' experience. Fetal Diagn Ther 35(2):69, 2014

Faupel-Badger JM, McElrath TF, Lauria M, et al: Maternal circulating angiogenic factors in twin and singleton pregnancies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(5):636.e1, 2015

Fayad S, Bongain A, Holhfeld P, et al: Delayed delivery of second twin: a multicentre study of 35 cases. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 109(1):16, 2003

Ford AA, Bateman BT, Simpson LL: Vaginal birth after cesarean delivery in twin gestations: a large, nationwide sample of deliveries. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:1138, 2006

Fox H, Sebire NJ: Pathology of the Placenta, 3rd ed. Philadelphia, Saunders, 2007

Francois K, Ortiz J, Harris C, et al: Is peripartum hysterectomy more common in multiple gestations? Obstet Gynecol 105:1369, 2005

Fusi L, Gordon H: Twin pregnancy complicated by single intrauterine death. Problems and outcome with conservative management. BJOG 97:511, 1990

Fusi L, McParland P, Fisk N, et al: Acute twin-twin transfusion: a possible mechanism for brain-damaged survivors after intrauterine death of a monochorionic twin. Obstet Gynecol 78:517, 1991

Futch T, Spinosa J, Bhatt S, et al: Initial clinical laboratory experience in noninvasive prenatal testing for fetal aneuploidy from maternal plasma DNA samples. Prenat Diagn 33(6):569, 2013

Gabbett MT, Laporte J, Sekar R, et al: Molecular support for heterogonesis resulting in sesquizygotic twinning. N Eng J Med 380(9):842, 2019

Gabriel R, Harika G, Saniez D, et al: Prolonged intravenous ritodrine therapy: a comparison between multiple and singleton pregnancies. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 57:65, 1994

Ghi T, degli Esposti D, Montaguti E, et al: Maternal cardiac evaluation during uncomplicated twin pregnancy with emphasis on the diastolic function. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(3):376, 2015

Gijtenbeek M, Shirzada MR, Ten Harkel AD, et al: Congenital heart defects in monochorionic twins: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Clin Med 8(6):902, 2019

Gjerris AC, Loft A, Pinborg A, et al: The effect of a "vanishing twin" on biochemical and ultrasound first trimester screening markers for Down's syndrome in pregnancies conceived by assisted reproductive technology. Hum Reprod 24(1):55, 2009

Glinianaia SV, Rankin J, Wright C: Congenital anomalies in twins: a register-based study. Hum Reprod 23:1306, 2008

Gocke SE, Nageotte MP, Garite T, et al: Management of the nonvertex second twin: primary cesarean section, external version, or primary breech extraction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 161(1):111, 1989

Gonçalves-Ferri WA, Martinez FE, Martins-Celini FP, et al: Evaluation of the effectiveness of antenatal corticoid in preterm twin and single pregnancies: a multicenter cohort study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med June 22, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Goodnight W, Newman R: Optimal nutrition for improved twin pregnancy outcome. Obstet Gynecol 114:1121, 2009

Gordon MC, McKenna DS, Stewart TL, et al: Transvaginal cervical length scans to prevent prematurity in twins: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(2):277.e1, 2016

Goya M, de la Calle M, Pratcorona L, et al: Cervical pessary to prevent preterm birth in women with twin gestation and sonographic short cervix: a multicenter randomized controlled trial (PECEP-Twins). Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(2):145, 2016

Gratacós E, Lewi L, Muñoz B, et al: A classification system for selective intrauterine growth restriction in monochorionic pregnancies according

to umbilical artery Doppler flow in the smaller twin. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 30(1):28, 2007
Gratacós E, Ortiz JU, Martinez JM: A systematic approach to the differential and management of the complications of monochorionic twin pregnancies. Fetal Diagn Ther 32(3):145, 2012
Grobman WA, Peaceman AM, Haney EI, et al: Neonatal outcomes in triplet gestations after a trial of labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 179(4):942, 1998
Groene SG, Spekman JA, Te Pas AB, et al: Respiratory distress syndrome and bronchopulmonary dysplasia after fetal growth restriction: lessons from a natural experiment in identical twins. EClinicalMedicine 32:100725, 2021
Grossman TB, Tesfamariam R, Chasen ST, et al: Maternal morbidity of induction of labor compared to planned cesarean delivery in twin gestations. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(21):3562, 2021
Hack KE, Derks JB, Elias SG, et al: Increased perinatal mortality and morbidity in monochorionic versus dichorionic twin pregnancies: clinical implications of a large Dutch cohort study. BJOG 115:58, 2008
Hack KE, van Gemert MJ, Lopriore E, et al: Placental characteristics of monoamniotic twin pregnancies in relation to perinatal outcome. Placenta 30(1):62, 2009
Hamou B, Wainstock T, Mastrolia SA, et al: Induction of labor in twin gestation: lessons from a population based study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(24):3999, 2016
Harris AL, Sacha CR, Basnet KM, et al: Vanishing twins conceived through fresh in vitro fertilization. Obstet Gynecol 135(6):1426, 2020
Hernandez JS, Twickler DM, McIntire DD, et al: Hydramnios in twin gestations. Obstet Gynecol 120(4):759, 2012
Heyborne KD, Porreco RP, Garite TJ, et al: Improved perinatal survival of monoamniotic twins with intensive inpatient monitoring. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192(1):96, 2005
Hiersch L, Shah PS, Khurshid F, et al: Mode of delivery and neonatal outcomes in extremely preterm vertex/nonvertex twins. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(6):613.e1, 2021
Hillman SC, Morris RK, Kilby MD: Co-twin prognosis after single fetal death. A systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 118(4):928, 2011
Hochler H, Guedalia J, Lipschuetz M, et al: Normal labor curve in twin gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol August 4, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]
Hoekstra C, Zhao ZZ, Lambalk CB, et al: Dizygotic twinning. Hum Reprod Update 14:37, 2008
Hoffmann E, Oldenburg A, Rode L, et al: Twin births: cesarean section or vaginal delivery? Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91(4):463, 2012
Hollier LM, McIntire DD, Leveno KJ: Outcome of twin pregnancies according to intrapair birth weight differences. Obstet Gynecol 94:1006, 1999
Hu LS, Caire J, Twickler DM: MR findings of complicated multifetal gestations. Pediatr Radiol 36:76, 2006
Huang T, Boucher K, Aul R, et al: First and second trimester maternal serum markers in pregnancies with a vanishing twin. Prenat Diagn 35(1):90, 2015
Institute of Medicine and National Research Council: Weight Gain During Pregnancy: Reexamining the Guidelines. Washington, DC, National Academies Press, 2009
Jarde A, Lutsiv O, Park CK, et al: Preterm birth prevention in twin pregnancies with progesterone, pessary, or cerclage: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 124(8):1163, 2017
Jena M, Mitch WE: Rapidly reversible acute renal failure from ureteral obstruction in pregnancy. Am J Kidney Dis 28(3):457, 1996
Judah H, Gil MM, Syngelaki A, et al: Cell-free DNA testing of maternal blood in screening for trisomies in twin pregnancy: updated cohort study at 10–14 weeks and updated meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 58(2):178, 2021
Kabiri D, Masarwy R, Schachter-Safrai N, et al: Trial of labor after cesarean delivery in twin gestations: systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(4):336, 2019
Kametas NA, McAuliffe F, Krampl E, et al: Maternal cardiac function in twin pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 102:806, 2003
Kaufman D, Du L, Velcek F, et al: Fetus-in-fetu. J Am Coll Surg 205(2):378, 2007
Kent EM, Breathnach FM, Gillan JE, et al: Placental pathology, birthweight discordance, and growth restriction in twin pregnancy: results of the ESPRIT Study. Am J Obstet 207(3):220.e1, 2012
Khalil A, Archer R, Hutchinson V, et al: Noninvasive prenatal screening in twin pregnancies with cell-free DNA using the IONA test: a prospective multicenter study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 225(1)79.e1, 2021
Khalil A, Beune I, Hecher K, et al: Consensus definition and essential reporting parameters of selective fetal growth restriction in twin pregnancy: a Delphi procedure. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 53(1):47, 2019
Khalil A, Gordijn S, Ganzevoort W, et al: Consensus diagnostic criteria and monitoring of twin anemia polycythemia sequence: a Delphi procedure. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 56:388, 2020
Khalil A, Rodgers M, Baschat A, et al: ISUOG Practice Guidelines: role of ultrasound in twin pregnancy. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 47(2):247, 2016
Kibel M, Barrett J, Tward C, et al: The natural history of preterm premature rupture of membranes in twin pregnancies. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(15):1829, 2017
Kim JH, Park SW, Lee JJ: Birth weight reference for triples in Korea. J Korean Med Sci 25:900, 2010
Klein K, Rode L, Nicolaides KH, et al: Vaginal micronized progesterone and risk of preterm delivery in high-risk twin pregnancies: secondary analysis of a placebo-controlled randomized trial and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 38(3):281, 2011
Knox G, Morley D: Twinning in Yoruba women. J Obstet Gynaecol Br Emp 67:981, 1960
Ko HJ, Jun JK: Clinical factors associated with failed trials of labor in late preterm and term twin pregnancies. J Perinat Med 42(4):449, 2014
Korb D, Goffinet F, Bretelle F, et al: First twin in breech presentation and neonatal mortality and morbidity according to planned mode of delivery. Obstet Gynecol 135(5):1015, 2020
Kuleva M, Youssef A, Maroni E, et al: Maternal cardiac function in normal twin pregnancy: a longitudinal study. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 38:575, 2011
Lambalk CB, Boomsma DI, De Boer L, et al: Increased levels and pulsatility of follicle-stimulating hormone in mothers of hereditary dizygotic twins. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 83(2):481, 1998
Langer B, Boudier E, Gasser B, et al: Antenatal diagnosis of brain damage in the survivor after the second trimester death of a monochorionic monoamniotic co-twin: case report and literature review. Fetal Diagn Ther 12:286, 1997
Lantieri T, Revelli A, Gaglioti P, et al: Superfetation after ovulation induction and intrauterine insemination performed during an unknown ectopic pregnancy. Reprod Biomed Online 20(5):664, 2010
Lappen JR, Hackney DN, Bailit JL: Maternal and neonatal outcomes of attempted vaginal compared with planned cesarean delivery in triplet gestations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(4):493.e1, 2016
Lee H, Bebbington M, Crombleholme TM, et al: The North American Fetal Therapy Network Registry data on outcomes of radiofrequency ablation for twin-reversed arterial perfusion sequence. Fetal Diagn Ther 33(4):224, 2013
Lee HC, Gould JB, Boscardin WJ, et al: Trends in cesarean delivery for twin births in the United State 1995–2008. Obstet Gynecol 118(5):1095, 2011
Lee YM, Clery-Goldman J, Thaker HM, et al: Antenatal sonographic prediction of twin chorionicity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195(3):863, 2006
Lee YM, Wylie BJ, Simpson LL, et al: Twin chorionicity and the risk of stillbirth. Obstet Gynecol 111:301, 2008
LeFevre ML, Bain RP, Ewigman BG, et al: A randomized trial of prenatal ultrasonographic screening: impact on maternal management and outcomes. RADIUS (Routine Antenatal Diagnostic Imaging with Ultrasound) Study Group. Am J Obstet Gynecol 169(3):483, 1993
LeFevre ML, U.S. Preventive Services Task Force: Low-dose aspirin use for the prevention of morbidity and mortality from preeclampsia: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force recommendation statement. Ann Intern Med 161(11):819, 2014
Leung TY, Tam WH, Leung TN, et al: Effect of twin-to-twin delivery interval on umbilical cord blood gas in the second twins. BJOG 109(1):63, 2002
Leveno KJ, Quirk JG, Whalley PJ, et al: Fetal lung maturation in twin gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 148:405, 1984
Levin G, Meyer R, Many A, et al: Length of the second stage of labor in women delivering twins. Obstet Gynecol 137(4):664, 2021
Lewi L, Deprest J, Hecher K: The vascular anastomoses in monochorionic twin pregnancies and their clinical consequences. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(1):19, 2013
Liem S, Schuit E, Hegerman M, et al: Cervical pessaries for prevention of preterm birth in women with a multiple pregnancy (ProTWIN): a multicenter, open-label randomised controlled trial. Lancet 382(9901):1341, 2013
Liu Y, Wang XT, Li HY, et al: Safety and efficacy of higher order multifetal pregnancy reduction: a single-center retrospective study. AJP Rep 10(3):e228, 2020
Lopriore E, Oepkes D: Neonatal morbidity in twin-twin transfusion syndrome. Early Hum Dev 87:595, 2011
Lučovnik M, Blickstein I, Lasič M, et al: Hypertensive disorders during monozygotic and dizygotic twin gestations: a population-based study. Hypertens Pregnancy 135(4):542, 2016
MacDonald-Wallis C, Lawlor DA, Fraser A, et al: Blood pressure change in normotensive, gestational hypertensive, preeclamptic, and essential hypertensive pregnancies. Hypertension 59:1241, 2012
MacDorman MF, Reddy UM, Silver RM: Trends in stillbirth by gestational age in the United States, 2006–2012. Obstet Gynecol 126(6):1146, 2015

Mackie FL, Rigby A, Morris RK, et al: Prognosis of the co-twin following spontaneous single intrauterine fetal death in twin pregnancies: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 126(5):569, 2019
Madden N, Andrikopoulou M, Overton E, et al: Latency period after preterm premature rupture of membranes: singletons versus twins. Am J Perinatol April 20, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]
Manning FA (ed): Fetal biophysical profile scoring. In Fetal Medicine: Principles and Practices. Norwalk, Appleton & Lange, 1995
Marleen S, Dias C, Nandasena R, et al: Association between chorionicity and preterm birth in twin pregnancies: a systematic review involving 29,864 twin pregnancies. BJOG 128(5):788, 2021
Marleen S, Dias C, MacGregor R, et al: Biochemical predictors of preterm birth in twin pregnancies: a systematic review involving 6077 twin pregnancies. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 250:130, 2020
Marleen S, Hettiarachchi J, Dandeniya R, et al: Maternal clinical predictors of preterm birth in twin pregnancies: a systematic review involving 2,930,958 twin pregnancies. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 230:159, 2018
Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJ, et al: Births: final data for 2019. Natl Vital Stat Rep 70(2):1, 2021
Maruotti GM, Saccone G, Morlando M, et al: First-trimester ultrasound determination of chorionicity in twin gestations using the lambda sign: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 202:66, 2016
Marwan AI, Zaretsky M, Feltis B: Complex multigestational anomalies. Semin Pediatr Surg 28(4):150825, 2019
Massardier J, Golfner F, Journet D, et al: Twin pregnancy with complete hydatidiform mole and coexistent fetus obstetrical and oncological outcomes in a series of 14 cases. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 143:84, 2009
Matias A, La Sala GB, Blickstein I: Early loss rates of entire pregnancies after assisted reproduction are lower in twin than in singleton pregnancies. Fertil Steril 88(5):1452, 2007
Matthews TJ, MacDorman MF, Thoma ME: Infant mortality statistics from the 2013 period linked birth/infant death data set. Natl Vital Stat Rep 64(9):1, 2015
Mbarek H, Steinberg S, Nyholt DR, et al: Identification of common genetic variants influencing spontaneous dizygotic twinning and female fertility. Am J Hum Genet 98(5):898, 2016
McMahon KS, Neerhof MG, Haney EI, et al: Prematurity in multiple gestations: identification of patients who are at low risk. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:1137, 2002
McNamara HC, Kane SC, Craig JM, et al: A review of the mechanisms and evidence for typical and atypical twinning. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(2):172, 2016
McPherson JA, Odibo AO, Shanks AL, et al: Impact of chorionicity on risk and timing of intrauterine fetal demise in twin pregnancies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(3):190.e1, 2012
Melamed N, Shah J, Yoon EW, et al: The role of antenatal corticosteroids in twin pregnancies complicated by preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(4):482.e1, 2016
Mercer BM, Crocker LG, Pierce WF, et al: Clinical characteristics and outcome of twin gestation complicated by preterm premature rupture of the membranes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 168(5):1467, 1993
Miller HE, Leonard SA, Fox KA, et al: Placenta accreta spectrum among women with twin gestations. Obstet Gynecol 137(1):132, 2021a
Miller J, Chauhan SP, Abuhamad AZ: Discordant twins: diagnosis, evaluation and management. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(1):10, 2012
Miller JL: Twin to twin transfusion syndrome. Transl Pediatr 10(5):1518, 2021b
Mol BW, Bergenhenegouwen L, Ensing S, et al: The impact of mode of delivery on the outcome in very preterm twins. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(12):2089, 2020
MONOMONO Working Group: Inpatient vs outpatient management and timing of delivery of uncomplicated monochorionic monoamniotic twin pregnancy: the MONOMONO study. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 53(2):175, 2019
Morikawa M, Yamada T, Yamada T, et al: Prospective risk of stillbirth: monochorionic diamniotic twins vs dichorionic twins. J Perinat Med 40:245, 2012
Morlando M, Ferrara L, D'Antonio F, et al: Dichorionic triplet pregnancies: risk of miscarriage and severe preterm delivery with fetal reduction versus expectant management. Outcomes of a cohort study and systematic review. BJOG 122(8):1053, 2015
Murgano D, Khalil A, Prefumo F, et al: Outcome of twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome in monochorionic monoamniotic twin pregnancy: systematic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 55(3):310, 2020
Mutchinick OM, Luna-Munoz L, Amar E, et al: Conjoined twins: a worldwide collaborative epidemiological study of the international clearinghouse for birth defects surveillance and research. Am J Med Genet C Semin Med Genet 157C(4):274, 2011
Newman RB, Krombach S, Myers MC, et al: Effect of cerclage on obstetrical outcome in twin gestations with a shortened cervical length. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:634, 2002
Nicolaides KH, Syngelaki A, Poon LC, et al: Cervical pessary placement for prevention of preterm birth in unselected twin pregnancies: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(1):3.e1, 2016
Norman JE, Mackenzie F, Owen P, et al: Progesterone for the prevention of preterm birth in twin pregnancy (STOPPIT): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study and meta-analysis. Lancet 373:2034, 2009
Norman JE, Norrie J, MacLennan G, et al: The Arabin pessary to prevent preterm birth in women with a twin pregnancy and a short cervix: the STOPPIT 2 RCT. Health Technol Assess 25(44):1, 2021
Nylander PP: Biosocial aspects of multiple births. J Biosoc Sci 3:29, 1971
Nylander PP: Serum levels of gonadotropins in relation to multiple pregnancy in Nigeria. BJOG 80:651, 1973
Odibo AO, Cahill AG, Goetzinger KR, et al: Customized growth charts for twin gestations to optimize identification of small-for-gestational age fetuses at risk of intrauterine fetal death. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 41:637, 2013
Ong SS, Zamora J, Khan KS, et al: Prognosis for the co-twin following single-twin death: a systematic review. BJOG 113:992, 2006
Otta E, Fernandes ES, Acquaviva TG, et al: Twinning and multiple birth rates according to maternal age in the city of Sao Paulo, Brazil: 2003–2014. Twin Res Hum Genet 19(6):679, 2016
Oyelese Y, Ananth CV, Smulian JC, et al: Delayed interval delivery in twin pregnancies in the United States: impact on perinatal mortality and morbidity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192(2):439, 2005
Pakrashi T, Defranco EA: The relative proportion of preterm births complicated by premature rupture of membranes in multifetal gestations: a population-based study. Am J Perinatol 30:69, 2013
Parra-Cordero M, Bennasar M, Martínez JM, et al: Cord occlusion in monochorionic twins with early selective intrauterine growth restriction and abnormal umbilical artery doppler: a consecutive series of 90 cases. Fetal Diagn Ther 39(3):186, 2016
Peress D, Dude A, Peaceman A, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes in triplet gestations by trial of labor versus planned cesarean delivery. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(11):1874, 2019
Perra O, Rankin J, Platt MJ, et al: Decreasing cerebral palsy prevalence in multiple births in the modern era: a population cohort study of European data. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 106(2):125, 2021
Peters HE, König TE, Verhoven MO, et al: Unusual twinning resulting in chimerism: a systematic review on monochorionic dizygotic twins. Twin Res Hum Genet 20(2):161, 2017
Post A, Heyborne K: Managing monoamniotic twin pregnancies. Clin Obstet Gynecol 58(3):643, 2015
Prefumo F, Fichera A, Pagani G, et al: The natural history of monoamniotic twin pregnancies: a case series and systematic review of the literature. Prenat Diagn 35(3):274, 2015
Pritchard JA: Changes in blood volume during pregnancy. Anesthesiology 26:393, 1965
Proctor LK, Kfouri J, Hiersch L, et al: Association between hypertensive disorders and fetal growth restriction in twin compared with singleton gestations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(3):251.e1, 2019
Quarello E, Molho M, Ville Y: Incidence, mechanisms, and patterns of fetal cerebral lesions in twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 20:589, 2007
Quintero RA, Morales WJ, Allen MH, et al: Staging of twin-twin transfusion syndrome. J Perinatol 19:550, 1999
Rana S, Hacker MR, Modest AM, et al: Circulating angiogenic factors and risk of adverse maternal and perinatal outcomes in twin pregnancies with suspected preeclampsia: novelty and significance. Hypertension 60:451, 2012
Rao MM, Vieira L, Kaplowitz ME, et al: Elective fetal reduction by radiofrequency ablation in monochorionic diamniotic twins decreases adverse outcomes compared to ongoing monochorionic diamniotic twins. Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 3(6):100447, 2021
Reddy UM, Branum AM, Klebanoff MA: Relationship of maternal body mass index and height to twinning. Obstet Gynecol 105(3):593, 2005
Rehal A, Benkő Z, De Paco Matallana C, et al: Early vaginal progesterone versus placebo in twin pregnancies for the prevention of spontaneous preterm birth: a randomized, double-blind trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(1):86.e1, 2021
Roberts D, Gates S, Kilby M, et al: Interventions for twin-twin transfusion syndrome: a Cochrane review. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 31:701, 2008
Rode L, Klein K, Nicolaides KH, et al: Prevention of preterm delivery in twin gestations (PREDICT): a multicenter, randomized, placebo-controlled trial

on the effect of vaginal micronized progesterone. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 38:272, 2011
Roman A, Rochelson B, Martinelli P, et al: Cerclage in twin pregnancy with dilated cervix between 16 to 24 weeks of gestation: retrospective cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(1):98.e1, 2016
Roman A, Zork N, Haeri S, et al: Physical examination-indicated cerclage in twin pregnancy: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(6):902.e1, 2020
Rossi AC, D'Addario V: Laser therapy and serial amnioreduction as treatment for twin-twin transfusion syndrome: a metaanalysis and review of literature. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198:147, 2008
Rossi AC, D'Addario V: Umbilical cord occlusion for selective feticide in complicated monochorionic twins: a systematic review of literature. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(2):123, 2009
Rossi AC, Mullin PM, Chmait RH: Neonatal outcomes of twins according to birth order, presentation and mode of delivery: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 118(5):523, 2011
Rouse DJ, Caritis SN, Peaceman AM, et al: A trial of 17alpha-hydroxyprogesterone caproate to prevent prematurity in twins. N Engl J Med 357:454, 2007
Rouse DJ, Skopec GS, Zlatnik FJ: Fundal height as a predictor of preterm twin delivery. Obstet Gynecol 81:211, 1993
Saccone G, Khalil A, Thilaganathan B, et al: Weight discordance and perinatal mortality in monoamniotic twin pregnancy: analysis of MONOMONO, NorSTAMP and STORK multiple-pregnancy cohorts. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 55(3):332, 2020
Salomon LJ, Örtqviast L, Aegerter P, et al: Long-term developmental follow-up of infants who participated in a randomized clinical trial of amniocentesis vs laser photocoagulation for the treatment of twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203(5):444.e1, 2010
Schmitz T, Korb D, Battie C, et al: Neonatal morbidity associated with vaginal delivery of noncephalic second twins. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(4):449.e1, 2018
Schmitz T, Prunet C, Azria E, et al: Association between planned cesarean delivery and neonatal mortality and morbidity in twin pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 129(6):986, 2017
Sebire NJ, Foskett M, Paradinas FJ, et al: Outcome of twin pregnancies with complete hydatidiform mole and healthy co-twin. Lancet 359:2165, 2002
Sebire NJ, Souka A, Skentou H, et al: First trimester diagnosis of monoamniotic twin pregnancies. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 16(3):223, 2000
Sellier E, Goldsmith S, McIntyre S, et al: Cerebral palsy in twins and higher multiple births: a Europe-Australia population-based study. Dev Med Child Neurol 63(6):712, 2021
Senat MV, Deprest J, Boulvain M, et al: Endoscopic laser surgery versus serial amnioreduction for severe twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome. N Engl J Med 351:136, 2004
Senat MV, Porcher R, Winer N, et al: Prevention of preterm delivery by 17alpha-hydroxyprogesterone caproate in asymptomatic twin pregnancies with a short cervix: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(3):194.e1, 2013
Sentilhes L, Oppenheimer A, Bouhours AC, et al: Neonatal outcome of very preterm twins: policy of planned vaginal or cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(1):73.e1, 2015
Seong J, Han Y, Kim M, et al: The risk of preterm birth in vanishing twin: a multicenter prospective cohort study. PLoS One 15(5):e0233097, 2020
Shen O, Samueloff A, Beller U, et al: Number of yolk sacs does not predict amnionicity in early first-trimester monochorionic multiple gestations. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 27(1):53, 2006
Silver IA, Nedelec JL, Segal NL, et al: Heteropaternal siblings misclassified as dizygotic twins: a potential biasing factor for heritability estimates? Behav Genet 51(2):137, 2021
Slaghekke F, Kist WJ, Oepkes D, et al: Twin anemia-polycythemia sequence: diagnostic criteria, classification, perinatal management and outcome. Fetal Diagn Ther 27(4):181, 2010
Slaghekke F, Lopriore E, Lewi L, et al: Fetoscopic laser coagulation of the vascular equator versus selective coagulation for twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome: an open-label randomised controlled trial. Lancet 383(9935):2144, 2014
Smith GC, Fleming KM, White IR: Birth order of twins and risk of perinatal death related to delivery in England, Northern Ireland, and Wales, 1994–2003: retrospective cohort study. BMJ 334(7593):576, 2007
Smith SJ, Zebrowitz J, Latta RA: Method of delivery of the nonvertex second twin: a community hospital experience. J Matern Fetal Med 6(3):146, 1997
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Grantz KL, Kawakita T, et al: SMFM Special Statement: state of the science on multifetal gestations: unique considerations and importance. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(2):B2, 2019
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Hoskins IA, Combs CA: SMFM Special Statement: updated checklists for management of monochorionic twin pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(5):B16, 2020
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, McIntosh J, Feltovich H, et al: The role of routine cervical length screening in selected high- and low-risk women for preterm birth prevention. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(3):B2, 2016
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Simpson LL: Twin-twin transfusion syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(1):3, 2013
Southwest Thames Obstetric Research Collaborative (STORK): Prospective risk of late stillbirth in monochorionic twins: a regional cohort study. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 39(5):500, 2012
Spangmose AL, Malchau SS, Schmidt L, et al: Academic performance in adolescents born after ART-a nationwide registry-based cohort study. Hum Reprod 32(2):447, 2017
Sparks TN, Norton ME, Flessel M, et al: Observed rate of Down syndrome in twin pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 128(5):1127, 2016
Spencer R: Parasitic conjoined twins: external, internal (fetuses in fetu and teratomas), and detached (acardiacs). Clin Anat 14:428, 2001
Spencer R: Theoretical and analytical embryology of conjoined twins: part I: embryogenesis. Clin Anat 13(1):36, 2000
Spong CY, Mercer BM, D'Alton M, et al: Timing of indicated late-preterm and early-term birth. Obstet Gynecol 118(2 Pt 1):323, 2011
Stein W, Misselwitz B, Schmidt S: Twin-to-twin delivery time interval: influencing factors and effect on short term outcome of the second twin. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 87(3):346, 2008
Stirnemann J, Slaghekke F, Khalek N, et al: Intrauterine fetoscopic laser surgery versus expectant management in stage 1 twin-to-twin transfusion syndrome: an international randomized trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(5):528, 2021
Sunderam S, Kissin DM, Zhang Y, et al: Assisted reproductive technology surveillance—United States, 2017. MMWR 69(9):1, 2020
Szymusik I, Kosinska-Kaczynska K, Bomba-Opon D, et al: IVF versus spontaneous twin pregnancies—which are at higher risk of complications? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(12):2725, 2012
Thorngren-Jerneck K, Herbst A: Low 5-minute Apgar score: a population-based register study of 1 million term births. Obstet Gynecol 98(1):65, 2001
Thorson HL, Ramaeker DM, Emery ST: Optimal interval for ultrasound surveillance in monochorionic twin gestations. Obstet Gynecol 117(1):131, 2011
To MS, Fonseca EB, Molina FS, et al: Maternal characteristics and cervical length in the prediction of spontaneous early preterm delivery in twins. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194(5):1360, 2006
Tollenaar LS, Lopriore E, Middeldorp JM, et al. Improved prediction of twin anemia—polycythemia sequence by delta middle cerebral artery peak systolic velocity: new antenatal classification system. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 53:788, 2019
Tollenaar LS, Slaghekke F, Lewi L, et al: Spontaneous twin anemia polycythemia sequence: diagnosis, management, and outcome in an international cohort of 249 cases. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(2):213, 2021
Tollenaar LS, Slaghekke F, Middeldorp JM, et al: Twin anemia polycythemia sequence: current views on pathogenesis, diagnostic criteria, perinatal management, and outcome. Twin Res Hum Genet 19(3):222, 2016
Tosello B, Garbi A, Blanc J, et al: The impact of chorionicity on pregnancy outcome and neurodevelopment at 2 years old among twins born preterm: the EPIPAGE-2 cohort study. BJOG 128(2):281, 2021
Ushida T, Kotani T, Sadachi R, et al: Antenatal corticosteroids and outcomes in preterm twins. Obstet Gynecol 135(6):1387, 2020
Van Mieghem T, De Heus R, Lewi L, et al: Prenatal management of monoamniotic twin pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 124(3):498, 2014
Varner MW, Leindecker S, Spong CY, et al: The Maternal-Fetal Medicine Unit Cesarean Registry: trial of labor with a twin gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193:135, 2005
Vieira LA, Warren L, Pan S, et al: Comparing pregnancy outcomes and loss rates in elective twin pregnancy reduction with ongoing twin gestations in a large contemporary cohort. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(3):253.e1, 2019
Vintzileos AM, Ananth CV, Kontopoulos E, et al: Mode of delivery and risk of stillbirth and infant mortality in triplet gestations: United States, 1995 through 1998. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:464, 2005
Viteri OA, Blackwell SC, Chauhan SP, et al: Antenatal corticosteroids for the prevention of respiratory distress syndrome in premature twins. Obstet Gynecol 128(3):583, 2016
Vora NL, Ruthazer R, House M, et al: Triplet ultrasound growth parameters. Obstet Gynecol 107:694, 2006
Votava-Smith JK, Habli M, Cnota JF, et al: Diastolic dysfunction and cerebrovascular redistribution precede overt recipient twin cardiomyopathy in early-stage twin-twin transfusion syndrome. J Am Soc Echocardiogr 28(5):533, 2015

Wada H, Nunogami K, Wada T, et al: Diffuse brain damage caused by acute twin-twin transfusion during late pregnancy. Acta Paediatr Jpn 40:370, 1998

Walker MC, Murphy KE, Pan S, et al: Adverse maternal outcomes in multifetal pregnancies. BJOG 111:1294, 2004

Wen SW, Miao Q, Taljaard M, et al: Associations of assisted reproductive technology and twin pregnancy with risk of congenital heart defects. JAMA Pediatr 174(5):446, 2020

White C, Wyshak G: Inheritance in human dizygotic twinning. N Engl J Med 271:1003, 1964

Wohlmuth C, Boudreaux D, Moise KJ Jr, et al: Cardiac pathophysiology in twin-twin transfusion syndrome: new insights into its evolution. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 51(3):341, 2018

Wood S, Tang S, Ross S, et al: Stillbirth in twins, exploring the optimal gestational age for delivery: a retrospective cohort study. BJOG 121(10):1284, 2014

Yamasmit W, Chaithongwongwatthana S, Tolosa JE, et al: Prophylactic oral betamimetics for reducing preterm birth in women with a twin pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 12:CD004733, 2015

Yang Q, Wen SW, Chen Y, et al: Neonatal death and morbidity in vertex-nonvertex second twins according to mode of delivery and birth weight. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192(3):840, 2005a

Yang Q, Wen SW, Chen Y, et al: Occurrence and clinical predictors of operative delivery for the vertex second twin after normal vaginal delivery of the first twin. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192(1):178, 2005b

Zhang J, Hamilton B, Martin J, et al: Delayed interval delivery and infant survival: a population-based study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191(2):470, 2004

Zhao DP, de Villiers SF, Slaghekke F, et al: Prevalence, size, number and localization of vascular anastomoses in monochorionic placentas. Placenta 34:589, 2013

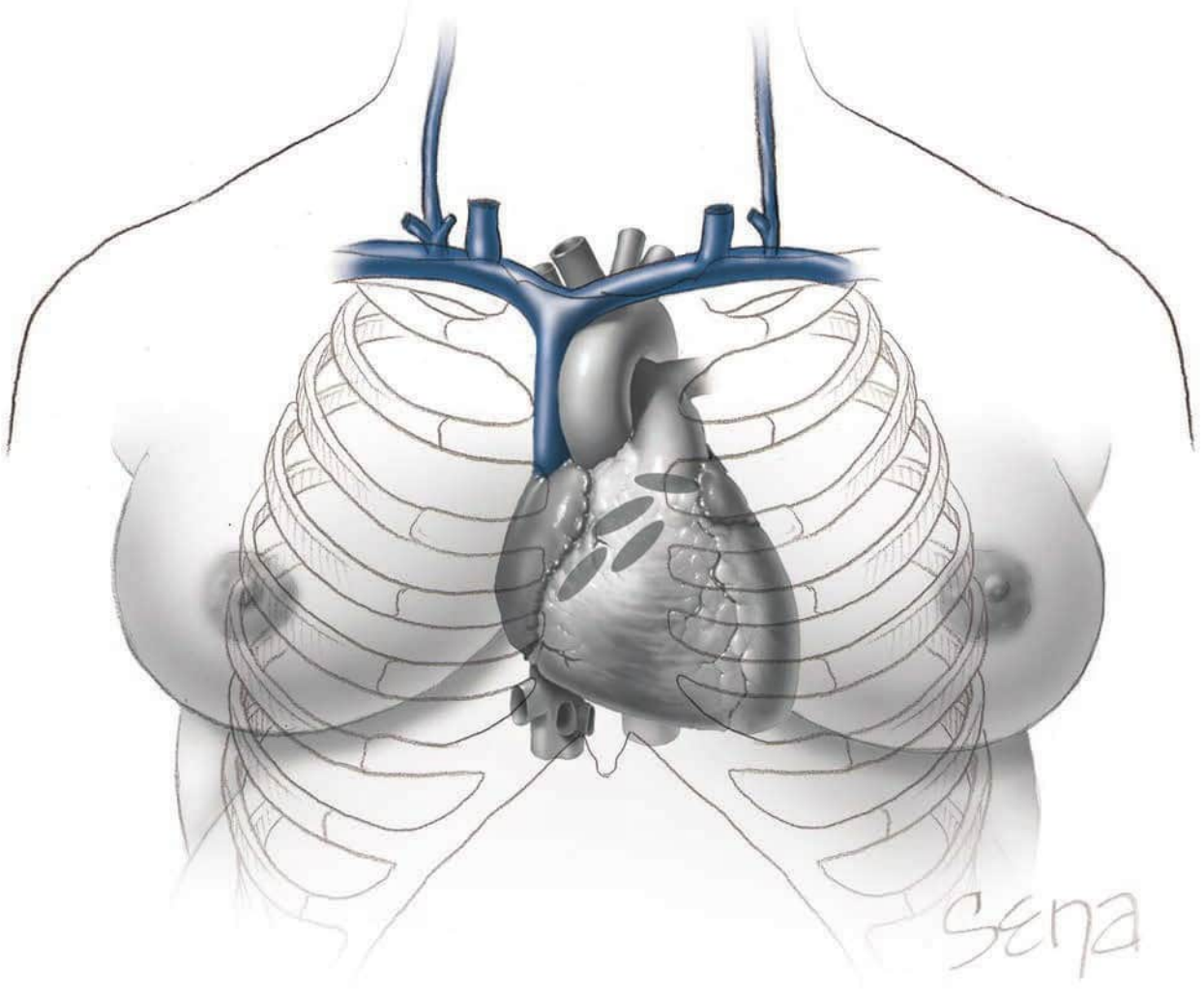
Zhu JL, Basso O, Obel C, et al: Infertility, infertility treatment, and congenital malformations: Danish national birth cohort. BMJ 333(7570):679, 2006

Zilberman N, Maymon R, Melcer Y, et al: Obstetric outcomes of twin pregnancies presenting with a complete hydatidiform mole and coexistent normal fetus: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 127(12):1450, 2020

Zwijnenburg PJ, Meijiers-Heijboer H, Boomsma DI: Identical but not the same: the value of discordant monozygotic twins in genetic research. Am J Med Genet B Neuropsychiatr Genet 153B(6):1134, 2010

SECTION 12

MEDICAL AND SURGICAL COMPLICATIONS



CHAPTER 49

General Considerations and Maternal Evaluation

Pregnant women are susceptible to any medical and surgical disorder that can affect women of childbearing age. Chronic illnesses often precede pregnancy, and an acute condition can complicate an otherwise normal pregnancy. Both chronic and acute disorders raise the risk for antepartum hospitalization. Approximately 10 per 100 pregnant women incur an antepartum admission, and one third are for nonobstetrical conditions that include renal, pulmonary, and infectious diseases (Gazmararian, 2002). The hospitalization rate due to trauma approximates 4 admissions per 1000 deliveries (Kuo, 2007). Those with intellectual and developmental disabilities have a higher incidence of hospitalization (Mitra, 2018). Last, 1 to 2 percent of pregnant women will undergo a nonobstetrical surgical procedure (Tolcher, 2018).

Obstetricians should have a working knowledge of the wide-ranging medical disorders common to childbearing-aged women. Many of these are within the purview of the general obstetrician. Other disorders, however, will warrant consultation with specialists in maternal-fetal medicine, and still others require a multidisciplinary team. The latter may include internists and medical subspecialists, surgeons, and anesthesiologists (Levine, 2016). The Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2014) has redefined aspects of maternal care and proposed conditions requiring specialized care.

Treatment should never be withheld because a woman is pregnant. To ensure this and allow for individualized care, several questions must be addressed:

- What management would be recommended if the woman were not pregnant?
- If the proposed management is different because the woman is pregnant, can this be justified?
- What are the risks and benefits to the mother and her fetus, and are they counter to each other?
- Can an individualized management plan be devised that balances risks versus benefits?

MATERNAL PHYSIOLOGY AND LABORATORY VALUES

Pregnancy induces physiological changes in virtually all organ systems. Many of these are discussed in Chapter 4 and in the subsequent chapters in this section. In turn, numerous laboratory test results also are normally altered. Some values would be considered abnormal in the nonpregnant woman. Conversely, some may appear to be within a normal range but are decidedly abnormal for the gravida. These changes may complicate the evaluation of coexisting conditions. To aid interpretation, normal laboratory values in pregnancy are listed in the Appendix (p. 1227).

MEDICATIONS

Fortunately, most medications needed to treat frequently encountered illnesses in pregnancy can be given with relative safety (Briggs, 2017). That said, notable exceptions are

considered in Chapter 8 and throughout this text. The risks and benefits of medication use during pregnancy and lactation are outlined in drug labels using the Pregnancy and Lactation Labeling Rule (PLLR) requirement from the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA).

NONOBSTETRICAL SURGERY

The chances of adverse maternal and perinatal outcomes following nonobstetrical surgery during pregnancy are relatively low and cannot be separated from risks of the underlying condition (Balinskaite, 2017). However, risks are likely greater with complications. Compared with simple appendicitis, perforated appendicitis with feculent peritonitis has significantly higher maternal and perinatal morbidity and mortality rates even if surgical and anesthetic techniques are flawless. Moreover, procedure-related complications may adversely affect outcomes. For example, a woman who has uncomplicated removal of an inflamed appendix may suffer aspiration of acidic gastric contents during tracheal intubation or extubation.

Maternal Morbidity

The most frequent nonobstetrical surgical procedures performed during pregnancy are appendectomy, cholecystectomy, and adnexal surgery (Vujic, 2019; Yu, 2018). Postoperative complications in nonpregnant patients can similarly harm gravid women. However, data comparing these complications in these two groups are conflicting. The National Surgical Quality Improvement Program showed that morbidity and mortality rates from nonobstetrical surgery did not differ between pregnant and nonpregnant women (Moore, 2015). In a Taiwanese cohort of nearly 5600 gravidas, the infectious postoperative complication rate was slightly higher and the mortality rate was fourfold greater than those rates in nonpregnant women (Huang, 2016).

The reported postoperative complication rate in gravidas approximates 5 percent, and the maternal mortality rate in these cases is <1 percent (Huang, 2016; Vujic, 2019). Moreover, preoperative infection, specifically sepsis, is associated with a higher risk of maternal death (Erekson, 2012).

Perinatal Morbidity

Excessive perinatal morbidity associated with nonobstetrical surgery is also attributable in many cases to the disease itself rather than to surgery and anesthesia. Two- to threefold elevated risks for spontaneous abortion, preterm delivery, preeclampsia, and cesarean delivery have been reported (Yu, 2018). Balinskaite and associates (2017) identified a greater risk of fetal death, preterm birth, fetal-growth restriction, and cesarean delivery in 47,628 women undergoing nonobstetrical surgery. Most of these complications developed in cases performed emergently (Vujic, 2019). The Swedish Birth Registry provides valuable data comparing perinatal outcomes in women undergoing surgery with those of the general obstetrical population (Table 49-1) (Mazze, 1989). The incidences of congenital malformations and stillbirth were not significantly different from those of nonexposed newborns. However, incidences of low birthweight, preterm birth, and neonatal death were significantly higher. Increased neonatal death rates were largely due to prematurity.

TABLE 49-1. Birth Outcomes in 5405 Pregnant Women Undergoing Nonobstetrical Surgery

Outcome	Rate	*p* value[a]
Stillbirth	0.7%	NS
Major malformation	1.9%	NS
Preterm <37 wk	7.5%	<0.05
Birthweight <1500 g	1.2%	<0.05
Birthweight <2500 g	6.6%	<0.05
Neonatal death by 7 days	1.1%	<0.05

[a]Compared with 720,000 pregnancies in women without surgery.
NS = not significant.

Fetal abnormality rates are not associated with maternal surgery in early pregnancy. Källén and Mazze (1990) reported a *nonsignificant* relationship between elevated neural-tube defect rates and operations performed at 4 to 5 weeks' gestation. A large database study found no evidence that anesthetic agents were teratogenic (Czeizel, 1998). According to Briggs and coworkers (2017), most inhalation anesthetic agents appear safe.

More recently, concerns of neurodevelopmental harm with the use of anesthetics for obstetrical or fetal surgery have been raised. In 2016, the FDA issued a warning regarding impaired brain development in children following in utero exposure to inhaled isoflurane, sevoflurane, and desflurane as well as intravenous propofol and midazolam. Such risks appear to accrue after 3 hours or more of exposure (Olutoye, 2018).

LAPAROSCOPIC SURGERY

In the first trimester, laparoscopy is the most common procedure used for diagnosis and management of several surgical disorders. In 2017, the Society of American Gastrointestinal and Endoscopic Surgeons (SAGES) updated its recommendations concerning laparoscopy use in pregnant women (Table 49-2) (Pearl, 2017).

For pregnancy in general, laparotomy also is common. One 5-year study of almost 1300 pregnant women reported that open appendectomy was performed in 36 percent of 857 gravidas compared with only 17 percent of nonpregnant patients. Of those undergoing cholecystectomy, an open approach was used in 10 percent of 436 pregnant women compared with 5 percent of nonpregnant women (Silvestri, 2011). In a study from Japan, Shigemi and colleagues (2019) described 6018 pregnant women undergoing abdominal surgery—4047 by laparotomy and 1971 by laparoscopy. Operative times, hospital stay lengths, and rates of adverse fetal events and blood transfusion were all greater in the laparotomy group (Table 49-3). Others instead report equally satisfactory outcomes with either approach (Cox, 2016; Lee, 2019). Randomized

TABLE 49-2. Some Guidelines from the Society of American Gastrointestinal Endoscopic Surgeons (SAGES) for Laparoscopic Surgery in Pregnant Women

Indications—same as for nonpregnant women
Investigation of acute abdominal processes
Excision of an adnexal mass
Appendectomy, cholecystectomy, nephrectomy, adrenalectomy, splenectomy

Technique
Position: lateral recumbent
Entry: open Hasson technique, careful Veress needle, or optical trocar; fundal height may alter insertion site selection
Secondary trocars: direct visualization for placement; gravid uterus may alter insertion site selection
CO_2 insufflation pressures: 10–15 mm Hg
Monitoring: capnography intraoperatively, FHR assessment pre- and postoperatively
Perioperative pneumatic compression devices and early postoperative ambulation

CO_2 = carbon dioxide; FHR = fetal heart rate.

trials to compare benefits and risks of laparoscopy versus laparotomy during pregnancy are needed, but implementation seems unfeasible (Bunyavejchevin, 2013; Lee, 2019).

For adnexal mass surgery in pregnancy, laparoscopy is preferred, and several studies confirm its relative safety (Daykan, 2016; Webb, 2015). In addition, laparoscopic splenectomy, adrenalectomy, and nephrectomy also have been described in pregnant women (Asizare, 2014; Dong, 2014; Miller, 2012).

When first used, 26 to 28 weeks became the upper gestational-age limit recommended. However, as experience has accrued, many now describe laparoscopic surgery performed in the third trimester (Shigemi, 2019). In one report, a third of gravidas undergoing laparoscopic cholecystectomy or appendectomy were >26 weeks' gestation (Rollins, 2004). No serious adverse sequelae are linked to these procedures, and laparoscopy can safely be performed in all trimesters.

Hemodynamic Effects

Precise effects of laparoscopy in the human fetus are unknown, but animal investigations are informative. During laparoscopy, required abdominal insufflation causes hemodynamic changes that are summarized in Table 49-4. Reedy and associates (1995) studied baboons at the human equivalent of 22 to 26 weeks' gestation. No substantive physiological changes were found with insufflation pressures of 10 mm Hg, but 20 mm Hg caused significant maternal cardiovascular and respiratory changes after 20 minutes. These included faster respiratory rate, respiratory acidosis, diminished cardiac output, and increased pulmonary artery and capillary wedge pressures. In pregnant ewes, uteroplacental blood flow declines when intraperitoneal insufflation pressure exceeded 15 mm Hg (Barnard, 1995; Hunter, 1995). This stemmed from decreased perfusion pressure and elevated placental vessel resistance (see Table 49-4).

In women, cardiorespiratory changes are generally not severe if insufflation pressures remain <15 mm Hg. Despite maintaining these low insufflation pressures in women at midpregnancy, the cardiac index dropped 26 percent after 5 minutes of insufflation and 21 percent after 15 minutes (Steinbrook, 2001). Even so, mean arterial pressures, systemic vascular resistance, and heart rate did not change significantly.

TABLE 49-3. Comparative Outcomes in Pregnant Women Undergoing Abdominal Surgery

Factor	Open	LSC	*p* value
Primary outcome[a]	1.3%	0.36%	<0.05
Transfusion rate	2.3%	0.41%	0.002
Operative time	115 min	95 min	<0.001
Hospital stay	9.2 d	5.9 d	<0.001

[a]Includes miscarriage, stillbirth, or preterm delivery.
LSC = laparoscopically.

Technique

The following is an overview of laparoscopic technique in pregnancy. For a detailed description and illustrations refer to Chapter 15 in *Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics,* 3rd edition (Kho, 2017).

Preparation for laparoscopy differs little from that used for laparotomy. Bowel cleansing is not needed but may aid visualization and manipulations by emptying the colon. Nasogastric or orogastric decompression reduces the risk of stomach trocar puncture and aspiration. Aortocaval compression is avoided by a left-lateral tilt of the patient's body. Positioning of the lower extremities in boot-type stirrups maintains access to the vagina for fetal sonographic assessment or *manual* uterine displacement. Intrauterine manipulators are logically avoided. Pregnancy-related hypercoagulability combined with pneumoperitoneum-associated, lower-extremity venous stasis raises venous thromboembolism risks. Prophylactic pneumatic compression devices are wrapped around the calves during patient positioning.

Most reports describe the use of general endotracheal anesthesia with monitoring of end-tidal carbon dioxide—$EtCO_2$ (Hong, 2006; Ribic-Pucelj, 2007). With controlled ventilation, $EtCO_2$ is maintained between 30 and 35 mm Hg.

Beyond the first trimester, technical modifications of standard pelvic laparoscopic entry are required to avoid uterine

TABLE 49-4. Physiological Effects of CO_2 Insufflation of the Peritoneal Cavity

System	Effects[a]	Mechanisms	Possible Maternal-Fetal Effects
Respiratory	Increased $Paco_2$; decreased pH	CO_2 absorption	Hypercarbia, acidosis
Cardiovascular	Increased: heart rate; systemic vascular resistance; pulmonary, central venous, and mean arterial pressures	Hypercarbia and increased intraabdominal pressure	Uteroplacental hypoperfusion—possible fetal hypoxia, acidosis, and hypoperfusion[b]
	Decreased cardiac output	Decreased venous return	
Blood flow	Decreased splanchnic flow with hypoperfusion of liver, kidneys, and gastrointestinal organs	Increased intraabdominal pressure	As above
	Decreased venous return from lower extremities	Increased intraabdominal pressure	As above
	Increased cerebral blood flow	Hypercarbia possibly from shunting due to splanchnic tamponade	Increased CSF pressure[b]

[a]Effects intensified when insufflation pressure >20 mm Hg in baboons (Reedy, 1995).
[b]Data primarily from animal studies.
CO_2 = carbon dioxide; CSF = cerebrospinal fluid; $Paco_2$ = partial pressure of CO_2.
Data from O'Rourke, 2006; Reynolds, 2003.

puncture or laceration (Fig. 49-1). Many recommend open entry techniques to avoid perforations of the uterus, pelvic vessels, and adnexa. With the method described by Hasson (1971, 1974), the abdomen is incised at or above the umbilicus, and the peritoneal cavity entered under direct visualization (Fig. 49-2). At this point, the cannula is connected to the insufflation system, and a 12–mm Hg pneumoperitoneum is created. The initial insufflation should be conducted slowly to allow for prompt assessment and reversal of any untoward pressure-related effects. Gas leakage around the cannula is managed by tightening the surrounding skin with a towel clamp. Insertion of secondary trocars into the abdomen is most safely performed under direct laparoscopic viewing. Single-port surgery also has been described (Dursun, 2013).

In more advanced pregnancies, direct entry through a left upper quadrant port in the midclavicular line, 2 cm beneath the costal margin, may better avoid the fundus (Donkervoort, 2011; Stepp, 2004). Known as the *Palmer point*, this entry site is also used in gynecological laparoscopy because visceroparietal adhesions infrequently form here (Vilos, 2007).

Gasless laparoscopy is a less commonly selected alternative approach that uses a rod with intraabdominal fan-blade-shaped

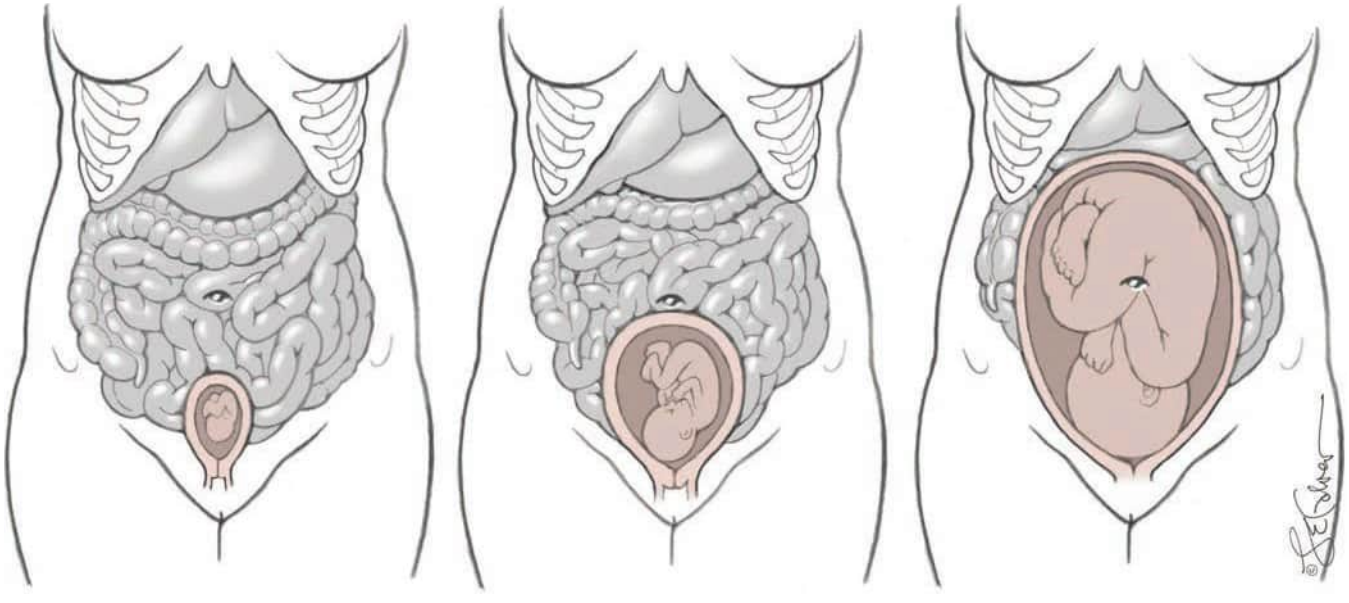


FIGURE 49-1 Pregnant uterus at 10, 20, and 36 weeks' gestation depicting distortion of other intraperitoneal organs. (Reproduced with permission from Kho KA: Diagnostic and operative laparoscopy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

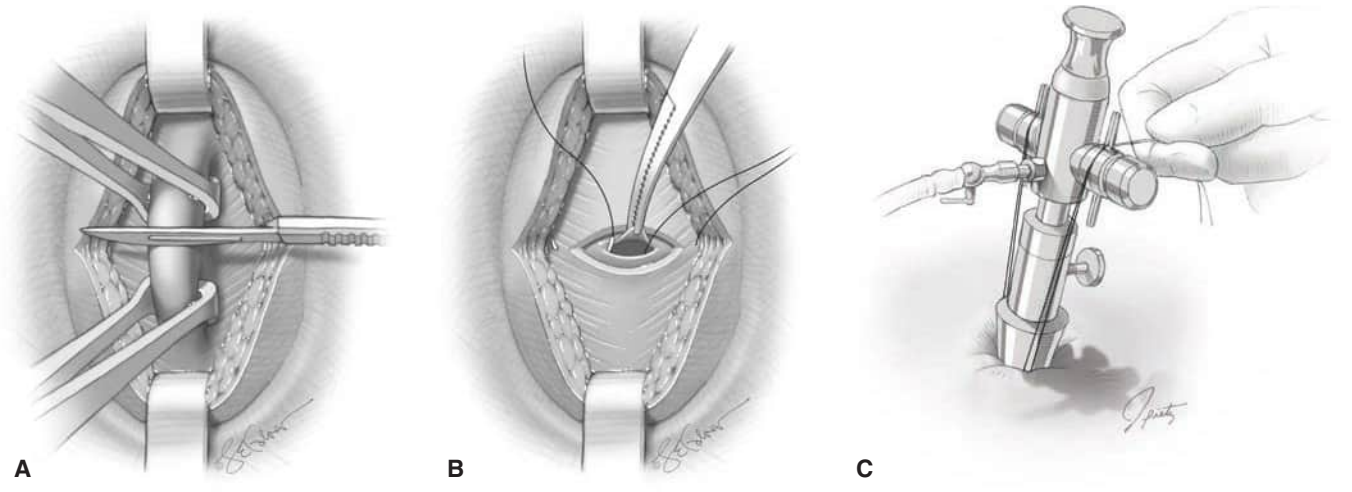


FIGURE 49-2 Hasson open entry technique for laparoscopic instrument placement. **A.** Fascia grasped with two Allis clamps and elevated prior to sharp incision. **B.** Two fascial stitches incorporate the peritoneum and fascia. **C.** These fascial sutures are wrapped around holders of the Hasson cannula to anchor it in place. (Reproduced with permission from Kho KA: Diagnostic and operative laparoscopy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

retractors. When opened, these allow the abdominal wall to be lifted upward. It avoids the typical laparoscopic cardiovascular changes because abdominal wall elevation is created by retraction rather than insufflation (Phupong, 2007).

■ Complications

Risks inherent to any abdominal endoscopic procedure are probably slightly greater during pregnancy. The obvious unique one is perforation of the pregnant uterus with a trocar or Veress needle (Kizer, 2011; Mala, 2014). That said, reported complications are infrequent (Choi, 2021; Koo, 2012; Post, 2019).

■ Perinatal Outcomes

Perinatal outcomes in women are limited to observational studies. Reedy and colleagues (1997) used the updated Swedish Birth Registry database to analyze a 20-year period with more than 2 million deliveries. Of 2181 laparoscopic procedures, most were performed during the first trimester. Perinatal outcomes for these women were compared with those of all women in the database and those undergoing open surgical procedures. These investigators confirmed the earlier findings of an increased risk of low birthweight, preterm delivery, and fetal-growth restriction with surgery during pregnancy. Differences were not found, however, in outcomes of women undergoing laparoscopy versus laparotomy. An observational study of 262 women undergoing surgery for an adnexal mass noted similar findings (Koo, 2012). Although the abortion and stillbirth rates are low with abdominal surgery, laparotomy has more adverse outcomes compared with laparoscopy (see Table 49-3).

RADIOGRAPHY

Imaging modalities are used as adjuncts for diagnosis and therapy during pregnancy. Options include sonography, radiography, computed tomography (CT), and magnetic resonance (MR) imaging. Of these, radiography is the most problematic. Inevitably, some radiographic procedures are performed before recognition of early pregnancy, usually because of trauma or serious illness (Herfel, 2018). Fortunately, most diagnostic radiographic procedures are associated with minimal fetal risks. However, as with medications, these procedures may lead to a needless therapeutic abortion because of patient or physician anxiety or to litigation if pregnancy outcome is adverse.

The American College of Radiology (ACR) has addressed the growing concern of collective radiation doses in all fields of medicine (Amis, 2007). More recent publications have been in support of FDA efforts to decrease radiation exposure and to reduce the number of unnecessary examinations. Recommendations also include considerations for radiosensitive populations, such as children and pregnant or potentially pregnant women. At our institutions, special recommendations are made for gravidas. Radiation exposure values and duration are recorded and monitored in high-exposure areas such as CT and fluoroscopy units. Last, consultation with the radiologist is advised (Chansakul, 2017).

■ Ionizing Radiation

The term *radiation* refers to energy transmission and thus is applied to x-rays and also to microwaves, ultrasound, diathermy, and radio waves. Of these, x-rays and gamma rays have short wavelengths with very high energy and are ionizing radiation forms. The other four energy forms have rather long wavelengths and low energy (Brent, 2009).

Ionizing radiation can directly damage DNA or can create free hydroxyl radicals that in turn damage DNA (Hall, 1991; National Research Council, 1990). Methods of measuring the effects of x-rays are summarized in Table 49-5. The standard terms used are *exposure* (in air), *dose* (to tissue), and *relative effective dose* (to tissue accounting for biological effects). In the range of

TABLE 49-5. Some Measures of Ionizing Radiation

Exposure	Number of ions produced by x-rays per kg of air Unit: roentgen (R)
Dose	Amount of energy deposited per kg of tissue Modern unit: gray (Gy) (1 Gy = 100 rad) (1000 mGy = 1 Gy) Traditional unit: rad
Relative effective dose	Amount of energy deposited per kg of tissue normalized for biological effectiveness (1000 mSv = 1 Sv) Modern unit: sievert (Sv) (1 Sv = 100 rem) Traditional unit: rem

energies for diagnostic x-rays, the dose is now expressed in grays (Gy), and the relative effective dose is expressed in sieverts (Sv). These can be used interchangeably. For consistency, all doses discussed subsequently are expressed in currently used units of gray (1 Gy = 100 rad) or sievert (1 Sv = 100 rem). To convert, 1 Sv = 100 rem = 100 rad.

As noted, x- and gamma-radiation at high doses can damage DNA, and this yields two biological effects in the fetus (Brent, 2009). These are *deterministic effects* and *stochastic effects*.

Deterministic Effects

One potential harm of radiation exposure is deterministic, which may result in abortion, growth restriction, congenital malformations, or intellectual disability. These deterministic effects are threshold effects, and the threshold level is the *NOAEL—no observed adverse effect level* (Brent, 2009). Although controversial, the NOAEL concept supports that there is no risk below the threshold dose of 0.05 Gy or 5 rad. It also suggests that the threshold for gross fetal malformations is more likely to be 0.2 Gy (20 rad) (Lowe, 2020).

The deterministic effects of ionizing radiation have been extensively studied for cell damage that leads to disordered embryogenesis. These have been assessed in animal models as well as in Japanese atomic bomb survivors and the Oxford Survey of Childhood Cancers (Sorahan, 1995). Other sources have confirmed prior observations and provide additional information (Groen, 2012).

Animal Studies

In the mouse model, the lethality risk is highest during the preimplantation period, which extends up to 10 days postconception (Kanter, 2014). Blastomere destruction caused by chromosomal damage is the likely cause (Hall, 1991).

During organogenesis, high-dose radiation—1 Gy or 100 rad—is more likely to cause malformations and growth restriction and less likely to be lethal. Studies of brain development suggest effects on neuronal development and a window of cortical sensitivity in early and midfetal periods. Instead, acute low-dose ionizing radiation appears to have no deleterious effects (Howell, 2013).

Human Data

Data on adverse human effects of high-dose ionizing radiation mostly derive from the atomic bomb survivors of Hiroshima and Nagasaki (Greskovich, 2000; Otake, 1987). The International Commission on Radiological Protection (2003) confirmed initial studies showing that the risk of severe intellectual disability was greatest between 8 and 15 weeks' gestation (Table 49-6) (American College of Radiology, 2018). The mean decrease in intelligence quotient (IQ) scores was 25 points per Gy or 100 rad. The dose response appears linear, but it is unclear whether there is a threshold dose. At <8 weeks' or >25 weeks' gestation, a higher risk of intellectual disability in humans has not been documented, even with doses exceeding 0.5 Gy or 50 rad (International Commission on Radiological Protection, 2003). Most estimates err on the conservative side by assuming a linear nonthreshold hypothesis. In a study of fetuses exposed to a low radiation dose in the first trimester, Guilbaud and colleagues

TABLE 49-6. Deterministic Effects of Ionizing Radiation in Pregnancy

GA (wks)	CA (wks)	<50 mGy (<5 rad)	50–100 mGy (5–10 rad)	>100 mGy (>10 rad)
0–2	—	None	None	None
3–4	1–2	None	Probably none	Low risk of spontaneous abortion
5–10	3–8	None	Potential uncertain and probably too subtle to be clinically detectable	Possible malformations increasing in likelihood as dose increases
11–17	9–15	None	Potential uncertain and probably too subtle to be clinically detectable	Risk of decreased IQ or of mental retardation, increasing in frequency and severity with increasing dose
18–27	16–25	None	None	IQ deficits not detectable at diagnostic doses
>27	>25	None	None	None applicable to diagnostic exposures

CA = conceptional age; GA = gestational age; IQ = intelligence quotient.

(2019) did not find an increased risk for miscarriage, congenital anomalies, or fetal-growth restriction.

Reports have described high-dose radiation used to treat women for malignancy, menorrhagia, and uterine myomas. Dekaban (1968) described 22 infants with microcephaly, intellectual disability, or both following exposure in the first half of pregnancy to an estimated 2.5 Gy or 250 rad for *therapeutic* radiation. These doses are also carcinogenic for the fetus (Brent, 2015).

Summary of Fetal Radiation Exposure

From 8 to 15 weeks' gestation, the fetus is most susceptible to radiation-induced intellectual disability (see Table 49-6). Whether this is a threshold or nonthreshold linear function of dose is unresolved. The Committee on Biological Effects (1990) estimates the risk of severe intellectual disability to be as low as 4 percent for 0.1 Gy (10 rad) and as high as 60 percent for 1.5 Gy (150 rad). Recall that these doses are 2 to 100 times higher than those considered maximal from diagnostic radiation. Importantly, cumulative doses from multiple procedures may reach the harmful range, especially at 8 to 15 weeks' gestation. At 16 to 25 weeks' gestation, the risk is less, and there is no proven risk before 8 weeks or after 25 weeks (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017).

Embryofetal risks from low-dose diagnostic radiation appear to be minimal. Current evidence suggests that risks for malformations, growth restriction, or spontaneous abortion are not increased from a radiation dose of less than 0.05 Gy (5 rad). Brent (2009) concluded that gross congenital malformation rates would not be greater with exposure to less than 0.2 Gy (20 rad). Diagnostic radiographs seldom exceed 0.1 Gy (10 rad) and thus, these procedures are unlikely to cause deterministic effects (Strzelczyk, 2007). As emphasized by Groen and coworkers (2012), 0.1 Gy is the radiation equivalent to that from more than 1000 chest x-rays.

Stochastic Effects

These effects refer to random, presumably unpredictable oncogenic or mutagenic effects of radiation exposure. Stochastic effects concern associations between fetal diagnostic radiation exposure and increased risk of childhood cancers or genetic diseases. Excess cancers can result from in utero exposure to doses as low as 0.01 Sv or 1 rad (Doll, 1997; National Research Council, 2006). The estimated risk of childhood cancer following fetal exposure to 0.03 Gy or 3 rad doubles the background risk of 1 cancer in 600 exposed fetuses to that of 2 in 600 (Hurwitz, 2006).

In one report, in utero radiation exposure was linked to 10 solid cancers in adults from age 17 to 45 years. There was a dose-response relationship as previously noted at the 0.1 Sv or 10 rem threshold. These cancers likely are associated with a complex series of interactions between DNA and ionizing radiation. These interactions make it more problematic to predict cancer risk from low-dose radiation of less than 10 rem. Importantly, below doses of 0.1 to 0.2 Sv, evidence of a carcinogenic effect is not convincing (Brent, 2009, 2014; Preston, 2008; Strzelczyk, 2007).

X-Ray Dosimetry

Estimates of dose to the uterus and embryo for various frequently used radiographic examinations are summarized in Table 49-7. Imaging of maternal body parts farthest from the uterus results in a very small dose of radiation scatter to the embryo or fetus. The size of the woman, radiographic technique, and equipment performance are other variables (Wagner, 1997). Thus, data in the table serve only as guidelines. When the radiation dose for a specific individual is required, a medical physicist should be consulted. The Health Physics Society lists answers to questions commonly asked by patients (Health Physics Society, 2020).

TABLE 49-7. Dose to the Uterus for Common Radiologic Procedures

Study	View	Dose[a] per View (mGy)	No. Films[b]	Dose (mGy)
Skull[c]	AP, PA, Lat	<0.0001	4.1	<0.0005
Chest	AP, PA[c], Lat[d]	<0.0001–0.0008	1.5	0.0002–0.0007
Mammogram[d]	CC, Lat	<0.0003–0.0005	4.0	0.0007–0.002
Lumbosacral spine[e]	AP, Lat	1.14–2.2	3.4	1.76–3.6
Abdomen[e]	AP		1.0	0.8–1.63
Intravenous pyelogram[e]	3 views		5.5	6.9–14
Hip[b] (single)	AP	0.7–1.4	2.0	1–2
	Lat	0.18–0.51		

[a]Calculated for x-ray beams with half-value layers ranging from 2 to 4 mm aluminum equivalent.
[b]Based on data and methods reported by Laws, 1978.
[c]Entrance exposure data from Conway, 1989.
[d]Estimates based on compilation of above data.
[e]Based on NEXT data reported in National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements, 1989.
AP = anterior-posterior; CC = cranial-caudal; Lat = lateral; PA = posterior-anterior.

Therapeutic Radiation

The Radiation Therapy Committee Task Group of the American Association of Physics in Medicine emphasizes careful individualization of cancer radiotherapy for the pregnant woman (Stovall, 1995). In some cases, shielding of the fetus and other safeguards can be employed (Fenig, 2001; Nuyttens, 2002). However, in other instances, the fetus will be exposed to dangerous radiation doses, and a carefully designed plan must be improvised (Prado, 2000). Models that estimate the fetal dose given during maternal brain radiotherapy or tangential breast irradiation have been developed (Mazonakis, 2017). The adverse pregnancy outcomes that occur years after abdominopelvic radiotherapy are detailed in Chapter 66 (p. 1164). (Brent, 2015; Wo, 2009).

Diagnostic Radiation

Radiographs

To estimate fetal risk, approximate x-ray dosimetry must be known. According to the American College of Radiology, no single diagnostic procedure results in a radiation dose significant enough to threaten embryo-fetal well-being (Hall, 1991).

For standard radiographs, dosimetry is presented in Table 49-7. In pregnancy, the anterior-posterior-view chest radiograph is the most common study, and fetal exposure is exceptionally small—0.0007 Gy or 70 mrad. The dose with one abdominal radiograph is higher—0.001 Gy or 100 mrad—because the embryo or fetus lies directly in the x-ray beam path. The standard intravenous pyelogram may exceed 0.005 Gy or 500 mrad because of several exposures. The one-shot pyelogram described in Chapter 56 (p. 999) is useful when urolithiasis or other causes of urinary tract obstruction are unproven by sonography. Mammography and most "trauma series" radiographs of an extremity, skull, or rib deliver low doses because of distance from the fetus (Cepeda-Martins, 2021; Shakerian, 2015).

Fluoroscopy and Angiography

Dosimetry calculations are much more difficult with these procedures because of variations in the number of radiographs obtained, total fluoroscopy time, and fluoroscopy time during which the fetus lies in the radiation field. As shown in Table 49-8, the range varies. Although the FDA limits the exposure rate for conventional fluoroscopy such as barium studies, special-purpose systems such as angiography units have the potential for much higher exposure.

Angiography and vascular embolization may occasionally be necessary for trauma and for serious maternal disorders. As before, a greater distance from the embryo or fetus lowers the exposure and risk.

Computed Tomography

In a recent report describing nearly 3.5 million pregnancies, the use of CT imaging from 1996 to 2016 increased fivefold (Kwan, 2019). These studies are usually performed by obtaining a spiral of 360-degree images that are postprocessed in multiple planes. Of these, the axial image remains the most frequently obtained. Multidetector CT (MDCT) images are now standard for common clinical indications. The most recent detectors have more channels, and these multidetector protocols may result in higher dosimetry compared with prior CT imaging techniques. Several imaging parameters have an effect on exposure (Brenner, 2007). These include pitch, kilovoltage, tube current, collimation, slice number, tube rotation, and total acquisition time. If a study is performed with and without contrast, the dose is doubled because twice as many images are obtained. Fetal exposure also varies with maternal size and fetal size and position. As with plain radiography, the closer the target area is to the fetus, the greater the delivered dose.

Cranial CT imaging for evaluation of neurological disorders and eclampsia is the most frequently performed CT study in gravidas (Chaps. 41, p. 718 and 63, p. 1126). Nonenhanced CT scanning is often used to detect acute hemorrhage within the epidural, subdural, or subarachnoid spaces (Fig. 49-3). Radiation dosage is negligible because of distance from the fetus (Goldberg-Stein, 2012).

Abdominal procedures are more problematic. Hurwitz and associates (2006) employed a 16-channel multidetector scanner to calculate fetal exposure at 0 and 3 months' gestation using a phantom model. Calculations were made for three commonly requested procedures in pregnant women (Table 49-9). The study showed their pulmonary embolism protocol has the same dosimetry exposure as the ventilation-perfusion (V/Q) lung scan discussed subsequently. Although the appendicitis protocol has the highest radiation exposure, it is very useful clinically when MR imaging is not available. Using a greater pitch markedly decreases the dosimetry and yields a sensitivity of 92 percent, a specificity of 99 percent, and a negative-predictive value of 99 percent (Lazarus, 2007). This is discussed further in Chapter 55 (p. 987).

TABLE 49-8. Estimated X-Ray Doses to the Uterus/Embryo from Common Fluoroscopic Procedures

Procedure	Dose to Uterus (mGy)	Fluoroscopic Exposure in Seconds (SD)
Cerebral angiography[a]	<0.1	—
Cardiac angiography[b,c]	0.65	223 (± 118)
Single-vessel PTCA[b,c]	0.60	1023 (± 952)
Double-vessel PTCA[b,c]	0.90	1186 (± 593)
Upper gastrointestinal series[d]	0.56	136
Barium swallow[b,e]	0.06	192
Barium enema[b,f,g]	20–40	289–311

[a]Wagner, 1997.
[b]Calculations based on data of Gorson, 1984.
[c]Finci, 1987.
[d]Suleiman, 1991.
[e]Based on female data from Rowley, 1987.
[f]Assumes embryo in radiation field for entire examination.
[g]Bednarek, 1983.
PTCA = percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty; SD = standard deviation.

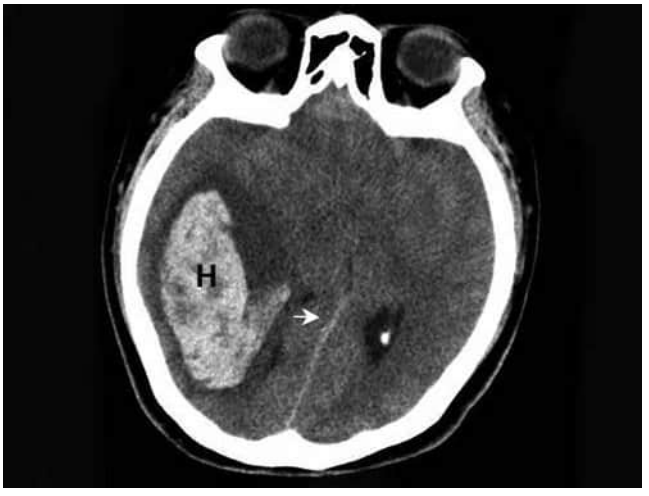


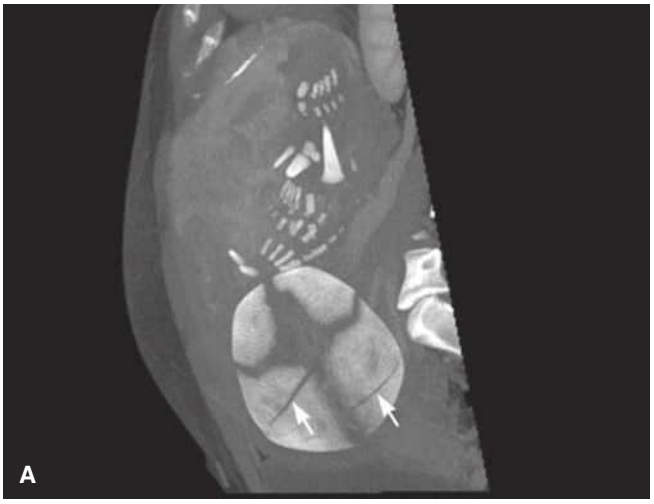
FIGURE 49-3 An image from a noncontrast computed tomography head study demonstrates a large right-sided frontoparietal temporal intraparenchymal hematoma (*H*). The midline (*arrow*) is shifted to the left due to mass effect from the hematoma. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Amanda Zofkie.)

For suspected urolithiasis, the multidetector-scan protocol is used if sonography is nondiagnostic. White and coworkers (2007) identified urolithiasis in 13 of 20 women with gestations aged an average of 26 weeks. Last, as shown in Figure 49-4, abdominal tomography is performed if indicated in the pregnant woman with severe trauma (Herfel, 2018; Shakerian, 2015).

Most experience with chest CT imaging is with cases of suspected pulmonary embolism. Historically, pulmonary scintigraphy—the V/Q scan—was recommended for pregnant women by 70 percent of radiologists and chest CT angiography by 30 percent (Stein, 2007). However, most currently agree that multidetector-CT pulmonary angiography (CTPA) has improved accuracy because of increasingly faster acquisition times (Brown, 2014). Despite advances in technology, scintigraphy is still recommended by the American Thoracic Society for gravidas with a normal chest x-ray (Leung, 2012). A higher use rate for CTPA has been reported, and dosimetry similar to that with V/Q scintigraphy has been emphasized (Brenner, 2007; Greer, 2015; Tromeur, 2019). The rapid turnaround time with current CTPA protocols at most hospitals has advanced its selection as the preferred modality (Sheen, 2018). The algorithm in the YEARS study describes

TABLE 49-9. Estimated Radiation Dosimetry with 16-Channel Multidetector Computed-Tomographic (MDCT) Imaging Protocols

	Dosimetry (mGy)	
Protocol	Preimplantation	3 Months' Gestation
Pulmonary embolism	0.20–0.47	0.61–0.66
Renal stone	8–12	4–7
Appendix	15–17	20–40



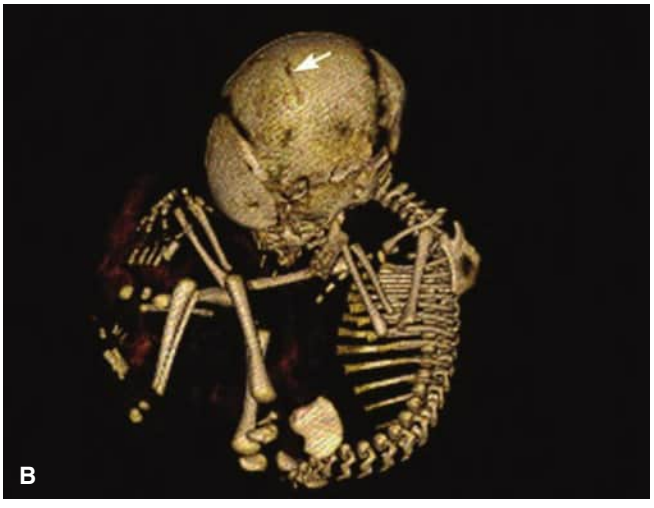


FIGURE 49-4 This woman in her third trimester was involved in a high-speed motor vehicle accident. **A.** Maximum intensity projection acquired for maternal indications readily identifies fetal skull fractures (*arrows*). **B.** 3-D reformatted CT image in a bone algorithm demonstrates the fetal skeleton from data acquired during the maternal examination. Again, the arrow marks one fracture site. (Reproduced with permission from Bailey AA, Twickler DM: Perioperative imaging. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017. Photo contributor: Dr. Travis Browning.)

the use of D-dimer values and clinical criteria to define a subgroup of gravidas warranting further imaging. Thus, the number of indicated CTPA studies resulting from this algorithm is markedly reduced (van der Pol, 2019). In pregnancy, although a negative D-dimer test is helpful, these levels may be normally elevated with increasing gestation and certain maternal complications (Chap. 55, p. 982).

Of other aspects in study selection, the fetal radiation doses are lower with CT pulmonary angiography (CTPA) compared with the V/Q scan. However, maternal chest radiation doses are substantially higher with CTPA (van Mens, 2017). The most recent ongoing Optimised Computed Tomography Pulmonary Angiography in Pregnancy Quality and Safety (OPTICA) study is a prospective trial

using a uniform low-dose CTPA protocol to enable definitive recommendations. Until results are known, our reduced-exposure CTPA protocol is recommended as the initial preferred imaging modality in suspected pulmonary embolism (Chap. 55, p. 987).

CT pelvimetry is used by some before attempting breech vaginal delivery (Chap. 28, p. 522). The fetal dose approaches 0.015 Gy or 1.5 rad, but use of a low-exposure technique may reduce this to 0.0025 Gy or 0.25 rad.

Radiographic Contrast Agents

These can be given intravenously or taken orally. Intravenous contrast agents are considered category B by the FDA. These agents are iodinated and of low osmolality, and thus they cross the placenta to the fetus. With water-soluble iodinated contrast, no cases of neonatal hypothyroidism or other adverse effects have been documented (American College of Obstetrics and Gynecology, 2017). Oral contrast preparations, typically containing iodine or barium, have minimal systemic absorption, and are unlikely to affect the fetus.

Nuclear Medicine Studies

These studies are performed by "tagging" a radioactive element to a carrier that can be injected, inhaled, or swallowed. For example, the radioisotope technetium-99m (Tc-99m) may be tagged to red blood cells, sulfur colloid, or pertechnetate. The method used to tag the agent determines fetal radiation exposure. The amount of placental transfer is obviously important, but maternal renal clearance is also factored because of fetal proximity to her bladder. Measurement of radioactive technetium is based on its decay, and the units used are the curie (Ci) or the Becquerel (Bq). Dosimetry is usually expressed in millicuries (mCi). The effective tissue dose is expressed in sievert units (Sv) with conversion of 1 Sv = 100 rem = 100 rad (see Table 49-5).

Depending on the physical and biochemical properties of a radioisotope, an average fetal exposure can be calculated (Wagner, 1997; Zanzonico, 2000). Commonly used radiopharmaceuticals and estimated absorbed fetal doses are given in Table 49-10. The radionuclide dose should be kept as low as possible (Zanotti-Fregonara, 2017). Exposures vary with gestational age and are greatest earlier in pregnancy for most radiopharmaceuticals. One exception is the later effect of iodine-131 on the fetal thyroid (Wagner, 1997).

In a V/Q scan, perfusion is measured with injected Tc-99m macroaggregated albumin, and ventilation is measured with inhaled xenon-127 or xenon-133. Fetal exposure with either is negligible (Chan, 2002; Mountford, 1997).

Thyroid scanning with iodine-123 or iodine-131 seldom is indicated in pregnancy. However, with the trace diagnostic doses used, fetal risk is minimal. In contrast, therapeutic doses of radioiodine to treat maternal Graves disease or thyroid cancer may cause fetal thyroid ablation and cretinism.

The sentinel lymphoscintigram is a commonly used preoperative study in nonpregnant women to detect the axillary lymph node most likely to have metastases from breast cancer. Tc-99m–sulfur colloid is used in this diagnostic study (Newman, 2007; Spanheimer, 2009). The calculated dose approximates 0.014 mSv or 1.4 mrad, which should not preclude its safe use during pregnancy.

SONOGRAPHY

The development of sonography for study of the fetus and mother is one of the greater achievements in obstetrics. The technique has become virtually indispensable in everyday practice. Its wide-ranging clinical uses are further discussed in Chapters 14 and 15 and in other sections of this book.

MAGNETIC RESONANCE IMAGING

Magnetic resonance technology does not use ionizing radiation, and its use in pregnancy is constantly evolving (Gopireddy, 2021; Mervak, 2019). Advantages include sharp resolution at soft-tissue interfaces, ability to characterize tissue composition, and acquisition of images in any plane—particularly axial, sagittal, and coronal. A portion of Chapter 14 (p. 263) is devoted to mechanisms that generate MR images, and imaging examples are provided throughout this book.

■ Safety

The update of the expert panel on MR safety of the ACR was summarized by Kanal and colleagues (2013). The panel concluded that no harmful human effects are reported from MR imaging. Similar conclusions were reached by the International Society for Ultrasound in Obstetrics and Gynecology (2017).

When operated within standardized limits, maternal and fetal imaging can be safely performed at clinical magnet strengths—3 tesla (T) and below. MR imaging can be used regardless of trimester: (1) if the information cannot be obtained with another nonionizing modality, namely sonography; (2) if the study results will guide maternal or fetal management during pregnancy; and (3) if the imaging cannot be delayed until the woman is no longer pregnant. The decision to use a magnetic field strength >1.5 T may be made for specific maternal indications. Early work also suggests imaging at 3 T is safe and it improves fetal assessment (Chartier, 2019; Victoria, 2016). No demonstrable fetal heart rate pattern changes occur during MR imaging of gravidas (Vadeyar, 2000). Last, studies evaluating children exposed in utero have shown no deleterious effects (Kok, 2004; Reeves, 2010).

Contraindications to MR imaging include internal cardiac pacemakers, neurostimulators, implanted defibrillators and infusion pumps, cochlear implants, shrapnel or other metal in biologically sensitive areas, some intracranial aneurysm clips, and any metallic foreign body in the eye. Of more than 51,000 nonpregnant patients scheduled for MR imaging, one study found that only 0.4 percent had an absolute contraindication to the procedure (Dewey, 2007).

TABLE 49-10. Radiopharmaceuticals Used in Nuclear Medicine Studies

Study	Estimated Activity Administered per Examination (mCi)[a]	Weeks' Gestation[b]	Dose to Uterus/ Embryo (mSv)[c]
Brain	20 mCi ^{99m}Tc DTPA	<12	8.8
		12	7[c]
Hepatobiliary	5 mCi ^{99m}Tc sulfur colloid	12	0.45
	5 mCi ^{99m}Tc HIDA		1.5
Bone	20 mCi ^{99m}Tc phosphate	<12	4.6
Pulmonary			
Perfusion	3 mCi ^{99m}Tc-macroaggregated albumin	Any	0.45–0.57 (combined)
Ventilation	10 mCi ^{133}Xe gas		
Renal	20 mCi ^{99m}Tc DTPA	<12	8.8
Abscess or tumor	3 mCi ^{67}Ga citrate	<12	7.5
Cardiovascular	20 mCi ^{99m}Tc-labeled red blood cells	<12	5
	3 mCi ^{210}Tl chloride	<12	11
		12	6.4
		24	5.2
		36	3
Thyroid	5 mCi $^{99m}TcO_4$	<8	2.4
	0.3 mCi ^{123}I (whole body)[d]	1.5–6	0.10
	0.1 mCi ^{131}I		
	Whole body	2–6	0.15
	Whole body	7–9	0.88
	Whole body	12–13	1.6
	Whole body	20	3
	Thyroid-fetal	11	720
	Thyroid-fetal	12–13	1300
	Thyroid-fetal	20	5900
Sentinel lymphoscintigram	5 mCi ^{99m}Tc sulfur colloid (1–3 mCi)		5

[a]mCi = millicuries. To convert to mrad, multiply by 100.
[b]Exposures are generally greater prior to 12 weeks compared with increasing gestational ages.
[c]Some measurements account for placental transfer.
[d]The uptake and exposure of ^{131}I increases with gestational age.
DPTA = diethylenetriaminepentaacetic acid; Ga = gallium; HIDA = hepatobiliary iminodiacetic acid; I = iodine; mCi = millicurie; mSv = millisievert; Tc = technetium; TcO_4 = pertechnetate; Tl = thallium.
Data from Adelstein, 1999; Bailey, 2017; Schwartz, 2003; Stather, 2002; Wagner, 1997; Zanzonico, 2000.

■ Contrast Agents

Several different elemental *gadolinium chelates* are used to create paramagnetic contrast. These cross the placenta and are found in the fetus and placenta and are concentrated in amnionic fluid (Oh, 2015). In doses approximately 10 times the normal human dose, a gadolinium-based contrast agent caused slight developmental delay in rabbit fetuses. Inadvertant fetal exposure usually occurs in early pregnancy (Bird, 2019). The American College of Radiology cites a study of 26 women given a gadolinium derivative in the first trimester without adverse fetal effects (Kanal, 2013). Despite this, routine use of gadolinium is not recommended unless potential benefits outweigh fetal risks (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017; American College of Radiology, 2020; Briggs, 2017). This recommendation stems from a possible dissociation of the toxic gadolinium ion from its ligand within amnionic fluid and thus potential prolonged exposure of the fetus.

■ Maternal Indications

In some cases, MR imaging may complement CT, and in others, MR imaging is preferable (Mervak, 2019). MR imaging

is also a superb tool to evaluate the maternal abdomen and retroperitoneal space. One example is evaluation of right lower quadrant pain in pregnancy, specifically with suspected appendicitis (Aguilera, 2018; Tsai, 2017). It can aid detection and localization of adrenal, renal, and gastrointestinal lesions as well as pelvic masses in pregnancy (Boyd, 2012; Raj, 2020; Tica, 2013).

Maternal central nervous system abnormalities, such as brain tumors or spinal trauma, are more clearly seen with MR imaging. This makes it invaluable in the diagnosis of neurological emergencies (Edlow, 2013). Other modalities include MR urography for renal urolithiasis and cardiac MR for investigating normal physiology, complex defects, and cardiomyopathies (Mullins, 2012; Nelson, 2015; Stewart, 2016). The application of cardiovascular MR imaging in pregnant women is expanding (Ducas, 2019).

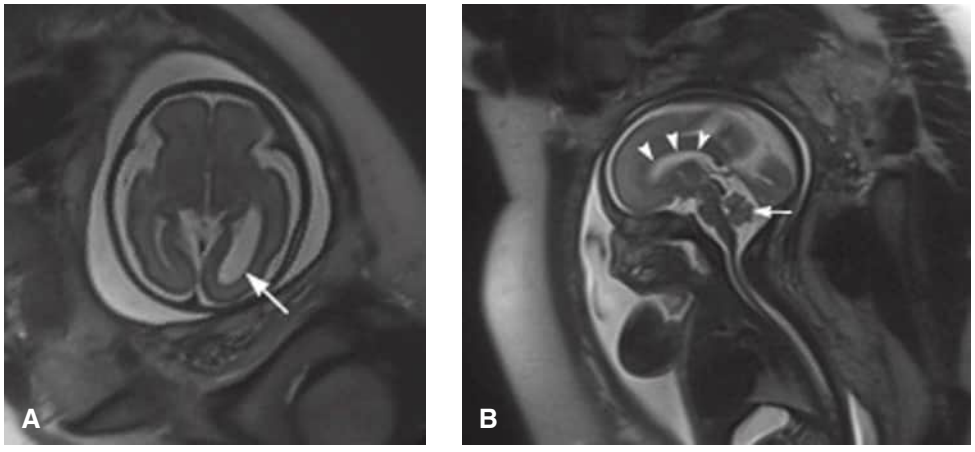


FIGURE 49-5 Nullipara with a 27 weeks' gestation. **A.** Axial T2-weighted MR image shows mild fetal unilateral ventriculomegaly involving the left lateral ventricle (*arrow*). **B.** Sagittal T2-weighted MR image demonstrates normal development of the corpus callosum (*arrowheads*) and vermis (*arrow*).

MR imaging helps also evaluate many pregnancy-specific disorders. It is chosen by many to determine the degree and extent of invasion in placenta accreta spectrum (Chap. 43, p. 762). As discussed in Chapter 40 (p. 701), MR imaging has provided important insights into the pathophysiology of preeclampsia (Nelander, 2018; Zeeman, 2014). As discussed in Chapter 37 (p. 656), CT and MR imaging are useful for puerperal infection evaluation, but MR imaging provides better visualization of the bladder flap area following cesarean delivery (Brown, 1999; Twickler, 1997). Last, preliminary studies of placental function with MR imaging are promising (Hutter, 2019).

■ Fetal Indications

Fetal MR imaging provides a complement to sonography (Laifer-Narin, 2007; Sandrasegaran, 2006). According to Zaretsky and associates (2003a), MR imaging can be used to display almost all elements of the standard fetal anatomical survey. Moreover, the quality of three-dimensional anatomical reconstruction with MR fetal imaging is superb (Werner, 2019). The most frequent fetal indications are evaluation of complex abnormalities of the brain, chest, and genitourinary systems (Williams, 2017). Reichel (2003) and Twickler (2002) and their colleagues have validated its use for fetal central nervous system anomalies and biometry (Fig. 49-5). Others have described MR imaging of fetuses with suprarenal masses or with renal anomalies and oligohydramnios (Castro, 2019; Hawkins, 2008). Fetal weight estimation may be more accurate with MR imaging than with sonography (Kadji, 2019; Zaretsky, 2003b). And MR imaging has been shown to accurately identify fetal anemia requiring transfusions (Jørgensen, 2019).

Fetal movement is problematic for MR imaging, but faster acquisitions eliminate the problem. Morphology is primarily assessed with fast T2-weighted sequences such as half-Fourier acquisition single shot turbo spin echo (HASTE) or single shot fast spin echo (SSFSE). Fetal indications and findings of MR imaging are discussed more extensively in Chapter 14 (p. 266) and throughout this book.

IMAGING DURING PREGNANCY

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) has reviewed the effects of radiographic, sonographic, and magnetic-resonance exposure during pregnancy. Its suggested guidelines are shown in Table 49-11.

TABLE 49-11. Guidelines for Diagnostic Imaging During Pregnancy and Lactation

Sonography and magnetic resonance (MR) imaging are not associated with fetal risk and are preferred options for imaging in pregnancy
In general, radiation exposure during radiography, computed tomography (CT), or nuclear medicine imaging delivers a dose much lower than that associated with fetal harm. If needed to supplement sonography or MR imaging or if more readily available, these should not be withheld
With MR imaging, gadolinium contrast use should be restricted unless it significantly improves diagnostic accuracy to benefit fetal or maternal outcome
Breastfeeding should not be interrupted after gadolinium administration

REFERENCES

Adelstein SJ: Administered radionuclides in pregnancy. Teratology 59:236, 1999

Aguilera F, Gilchrist BF, Farkas DT: Accuracy of MRI in diagnosing appendicitis during pregnancy. Am Surg 84(8):1326, 2018

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for diagnostic imaging during pregnancy and lactation. Committee Opinion No. 723, October 2017

American College of Radiology: ACR manual on contrast media. Version 10.3, 2020

American College of Radiology: ACR-SPR practice parameter for imaging pregnant or potentially pregnant adolescents and women with ionizing radiation. Resolution 39, Revised 2018

Amis ES Jr, Butler PF, Applegate KE, et al: American College of Radiology white paper on radiation dose in medicine. J Am Coll Radiol 4(5):272, 2007

Asizare M, 2015; Alipour M, Taghavi M, et al: Bilateral laparoscopic adrenalectomy in a pregnant women with Cushing's syndrome. Urol J 11(5):1911, 2014

Bailey AA, Twickler DM: Perioperative imaging. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017

Balinskaite V, Bottle A, Sodhi V, et al: The risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes following nonobsteric surgery during pregnancy: estimates from a retrospective cohort study of 6.5 million pregnancies. Ann Surg 266(2):260, 2017

Barnard JM, Chaffin D, Droste S, et al: Fetal response to carbon dioxide pneumoperitoneum in the pregnant ewe. Obstet Gynecol 85:669, 1995

Bednarek DR, Rudin S, Wong, et al: Reduction of fluoroscopic exposure for the air-contrast barium enema. Br J Radiol 56:823, 1983

Bird ST, Gelperin K, Sahin L, et al: First-trimester exposure to gadolinium-based contrast agents: a utilization study of 4.6 million U.S. pregnancies. Radiology 293(1):193, 2019

Boyd CA, Benarroch-Gampel J, Kilic G, et al: Pancreatic neoplasms in pregnancy: diagnosis, complications, and management. J Gastrointest Surg 16(5):1064, 2012

Brenner DJ, Hall JH, Phil D: Computed tomography—an increasing source of radiation exposure. N Engl J Med 357:2277, 2007

Brent RL: Carcinogenic risks of prenatal ionizing radiation. Semin Fetal Neonatal Med 19(3):203, 2014

Brent RL: Saving lives and changing family histories: appropriate counseling of pregnant women and men and women of reproductive age, concerning risk of diagnostic radiation exposure during and before pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(1):4, 2009

Brent RL: Protection of the gametes embryo/fetus from prenatal radiation exposure. Health Phys 108(2):242, 2015

Briggs GG, Freeman RK, Towers CV, et al: Drugs in pregnancy and lactation, 11th ed. Philadelphia, Wolters Kluwer, 2017

Brown AM, Cronin CG, NiMhuircheartaigh J, et al: Evaluation of imaging quality of pulmonary 64-MDCT angiography in pregnancy and puerperium. AJR Am J Roentgenol 202(1):60, 2014

Brown CE, Stettler RW, Twickler D, et al: Puerperal septic pelvic thrombophlebitis: incidence and response to heparin therapy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181:143, 1999

Bunyavejchevin S, Phupong V: Laparoscopic surgery for presumed benign ovarian tumor during pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD005459, 2013

Castro P, Paula Matos A, Werner H, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of suprarenal mass by magnetic resonance imaging: a case series. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(22):3882, 2019

Cepeda-Martins AR, De Maria S, Alonso J, et al: Assessment of the uterine dose in digital mammography and digital breast tomosynthesis. Radiography (Lond.) September 23, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Chan WS, Ray JG, Murray S, et al: Suspected pulmonary embolism in pregnancy. Arch Intern Med 152:1170, 2002

Chansakul T, Young GS: Neuroimaging in pregnant women. Semin Neurol 37(6):712, 2017

Chartier AL, Bouvier MJ, McPherson DR, et al: The safety of maternal and fetal MRI at 3 T. AJR Am J Roetgenol 213(5):1170, 2019

Choi HN, Ng BR, Arafat Y, et al: Evaluation of safety and foeto-maternal outcomes following non-obstetric surgery in pregnancy: a retrospective single-site Australian study. ANZ J Surg 91:627, 2021

Committee on Biological Effects of Ionizing Radiation: Other somatic and fetal effects. In BEIR V: Effects of Exposure to Low Levels of Ionizing Radiation. Washington, National Academy Press, 1990

Conway A: The uncertain effects of small radiation doses. Radiogr Today 55(624):59, 1989

Cox TC, Huntington CR, Blair LJ, et al: Laparoscopic appendectomy and cholecystectomy versus open: a study in 1999 pregnant patients. Surg Endosc 30(2):593, 2016

Czeizel AE, Pataki T, Rockenbauer M: Reproductive outcome after exposure to surgery under anesthesia during pregnancy. Arch Gynecol Obstet 261:193, 1998

Daykan Y, Klein Z, Bugin R, et al: Ovarian torsion during pregnancy—perinatal and delivery outcome after surgical treatment. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214:S110, 2016

Dekaban AS: Abnormalities in children exposed to x-irradiation during various stages of gestation: tentative timetable of radiation injury to the human fetus. J Nucl Med 9:471, 1968

Dewey M, Schink T, Dewey CF: Frequency of referral of patients with safety-related contraindications to magnetic resonance imaging. Eur J Radiol 63(1):124, 2007

Doll R, Wakeford R: Risk of childhood cancer from fetal irradiation. Br J Radiol 70:130, 1997

Dong D, Li H: Diagnosis and treatment of pheochromocytoma during pregnancy. J Matern Neonatal Med 27(18):1930, 2014

Donkervoort SC, Boerma D: Suspicion of acute appendicitis in the third trimester of pregnancy: pros and cons of a laparoscopic procedure. JSLS 15(3):379, 2011

Ducas R, Nguyen ET, Wald RM: Contemporary considerations for the use of cardiovascular magnetic resonance imaging during pregnancy. Obstet Med 12(4):158, 2019

Dursun P, Gülümser C, Cağlar M, et al: Laparoendoscopic single-site surgery for acute adnexal pathology during pregnancy: preliminary experience. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(13):1282, 2013

Edlow JA, Caplan LR, O'Brien K, et al: Diagnosis of acute neurological emergencies in pregnant and postpartum women. Lancet Neurol 12(2):175, 2013

Erekson EA, Brousseau EC, Dick-Biascoechea MA, et al: Maternal postoperative complications after nonobstetertic antenatal surgery. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med. 25(12):2639, 2012

Fenig E, Mishaeli M, Kalish Y, et al: Pregnancy and radiation. Cancer Treat Rev 27:1, 2001

Finci L, Meier B, Steffenino G, et al: Radiation exposure during diagnostic catheterization and single- and double-vessel percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty. Am J Cardiol 60:1401, 1987

Gazmararian JA, Petersen R, Jamieson DJ, et al: Hospitalizations during pregnancy among managed care enrollees. Obstet Gynecol 100:94, 2002

Goldberg-Stein SA, Liu B, Hahn PF, et al: Radiation dose management: part 2, estimating fetal radiation risk from CT during pregnancy. AJR Am J Roentgenol 198(4):W352, 2012

Gopireddy DR, Le R, Virakar ME, et al: Magnetic resonance imaging evaluation of ectopic pregnancy: a value-added review. J Comput Assist Tomog 45:374, 2021

Gorson RO, Lassen M, Rosenstein M: Patient dosimetry in diagnostic radiology. In Waggener RG, Kereiakes JG, Shalek R (eds): Handbook of Medical Physics, Vol II. Boca Raton, CRC Press, 1984

Greer IA: Clinical practice. Pregnancy complicated by venous thrombosis. N Engl J Med 373(6):540, 2015

Greskovich JF, Macklis RM: Radiation therapy in pregnancy: risk calculation and risk minimization. Semin Oncol 27:633, 2000

Groen RS, Bae JY, Lim KJ: Fear of the unknown: ionizing radiation exposure during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(6):456, 2012

Guilbaud L, Beghin D, Dhombres F, et al: Pregnancy outcome after first trimester exposure to ionizing radiations. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Biol 232:18, 2019

Hall EJ: Scientific view of low-level radiation risks. Radiographics 11:509, 1991

Hasson HM: A modified instrument and method for laparoscopy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 110:886, 1971

Hasson HM: Open laparoscopy: a report of 150 cases. J Reprod Med 12:234, 1974

Hawkins JS, Dashe JS, Twickler DM: Magnetic resonance imaging diagnosis of severe fetal renal anomalies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198:328.e1, 2008

Healthy Physics Society: Radiology and the pregnant patients Q&A. 2020. Available at http://hps.org/physicians/radiology_pregnant_patient_qa.html. Accessed April 21, 2020.

Herfel ES, Hill JH, Lieber M: Radiography evaluation of the pregnant trauma patient: what are we willing to miss? Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 228:325, 2018

Hong JY: Adnexal mass surgery and anesthesia during pregnancy: a 10-year retrospective review. Int J Obstet Anesth 15:212, 2006

Howell EK, Gaschak SP, Griffith KD: Radioadaptive response following in utero low-dose irradiation. Radiat Res 179(1):29, 2013

Huang SY, Lo PH, Liu WM, et al: Outcomes after nonobstetric surgery in pregnant patients: a nationwide study. Mayo Clin Proc 91(9):1166, 2016

Hunter JG, Swanstrom L, Thornburg K: Carbon dioxide pneumoperitoneum induces fetal acidosis in a pregnant ewe model. Surg Endosc 9:272, 1995

Hurwitz LM, Yoshizumi T, Reiman RE, et al: Radiation dose to the fetus from body MDCT during early gestation. AJR Am J Roentgenol 186:871, 2006
Hutter J, Slator PJ, Jackson L, et al: Multi-modal functional MRI to explore placental function over gestation. Magn Reson Med 81(2):1191, 2019
International Commission on Radiological Protection: Biological effects after prenatal irradiation (embryo and fetus). IRCP Publication 90, Ann IRCP, September/December 2003
International Society of Ultrasound in Obstetrics and Gynecology: Performance of fetal magnetic resonance imaging. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 49:671, 2017
Jørgensen DS, Vejlstrup N, Rode L, et al: Magnetic resonance imaging: a new tool to optimize the prediction of fetal anemia? Fetal Diagn Ther 46(4):257, 2019
Kadji C, Cannie MM, Resta S, et al: Magnetic resonance imaging for prenatal estimation of birth weight in pregnancy: review of available data, techniques, and future perspectives. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(5):428, 2019
Källén B, Mazze RI: Neural tube defects and first trimester operations. Teratology 41:717, 1990
Kanal E, Barkovich AJ, Bell C, et al: American College of Radiology guidance document on MR safe practices: 2013. J Magn Reson Imaging 37:501, 2013
Kanter DJ, O'Brien MB, Shi XH, et al: The impact of ionizing radiation on placental trophoblasts. Placenta 35(2):85, 2014
Kho KA: Diagnostic and operative laparoscopy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017
Kizer NT, Powell MA: Surgery in the pregnant patient. Clin Obstet Gynecol 54(4):633, 2011
Kok RD, de Vries MM, Heerschap A, et al: Absence of harmful effects of magnetic resonance exposure at 1.5 T in utero during the third trimester of pregnancy: a follow-up study. Magn Reson Imaging 22(6):851, 2004
Koo YJ, Kim HJ, Lim KT, et al: Laparotomy versus laparoscopy for the treatment of adnexal masses during pregnancy. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynecol 52:34, 2012
Kuo C, Jamieson DJ, McPheeters ML, et al: Injury hospitalizations of pregnant women in the United States, 2002. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196:161, 2007
Kwan ML, Miglioretti DL, Marlow EC, et al: Trend in medical imaging during pregnancy in the United States and Ontario, Canada, 1996 to 2016. JAMA Netw Open 2(7):e197249, 2019
Laifer-Narin S, Budorick NE, Simpson LL, et al: Fetal magnetic resonance imaging: a review. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 19:151, 2007
Laws PW, Rosenstein M: A somatic dose index for diagnostic radiology. Health Phys 35(5):629, 1978
Lazarus E, Mayo-Smith WW, Mainiero MB, et al: CT in the evaluation of nontraumatic abdominal pain in pregnant women. Radiology 244:784, 2007
Lee SH, Lee JY, Choi YY, et al: Laparoscopic appendectomy versus open appendectomy for suspected appendicitis during pregnancy: a systematic review and updated meta-analysis. BMC Surg 19(1):41, 2019
Leung AN, Bull TM, Jaeschke R, et al: American Thoracic Society documents: an official American Thoracic Society/Society of Thoracic Radiology Clinical Practice Guidelines—evaluation of suspected pulmonary embolism in pregnancy. Radiology 262(2):635, 2012
Levine LD, Schulkin J, Mercer BM, et al: Role of the hospital and maternal fetal medicine physician in obstetrical inpatient care. Am J Perinatol 33(2):123, 2016
Lowe SA: Ionizing radiation for maternal medical indications. Prenat Diagn 40(9):1150, 2020
Magin RL, Le JK, Klintsova A, et al: Biological effects of long duration, high-field (4T) MRI on growth and development in the mouse. J Magn Res Imaging 12(1):140, 2000
Mala T, Harsem NK, Rostad S, et al: Perforation of the pregnant uterus during laparoscopy for suspected internal herniation after gastric bypass. Case Rep Obstet Gynecol 2014:720181, 2014
Mazonakis M, Damilakis J: Estimation and reduction of the radiation dose to the fetus from external-beam radiotherapy. Phys Med 43:148, 2017
Mazze RI, Källén B: Reproductive outcome after anesthesia and operation during pregnancy: a registry study of 5405 cases. Am J Obstet Gynecol 161:1178, 1989
Mervak BM, Altun E, McGinty KA, et al: MRI in pregnancy: indications and practical considerations. J Magn Reson Imaging 49(3):621, 2019
Miller MA, Mazzaglia PJ, Larson L, et al: Laparoscopic adrenalectomy for pheochromocytoma in a twin gestation. J Obstet Gynaecol 32(2):186, 2012
Mitra M, Parish SL, Clements KM, et al: Antenatal hospitalization among U.S. women with intellectual and developmental disabilities: a retrospective cohort study. Am J Intellect Dev Disabil 123(5):399, 2018
Moore HB, Juarez-Colunga E, Bronsert M, et al: Effect of pregnancy on adverse outcomes after general surgery. JAMA Surg 150(7):637, 2015
Mountford PJ: Risk assessment of the nuclear medicine patient. Br J Radiol 100:671, 1997
Mullins JK, Semins MJ, Hayams ES, et al: Half Fourier single-shot turbo-echo magnetic resonance urography for the evaluation of suspected renal colic in pregnancy. Urology 79(6):1252, 2012
National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements: Medical X-ray, electron beam and gamma-ray protection for energies up to 50 MeV. Report No. 102, Bethesda, 1989
National Research Council: Health effects of exposure to low levels of ionizing radiation BEIR V. Committee on the Biological Effects of Ionizing Radiations. Board on Radiation Effects Research Commission on Life Sciences. Washington, National Academy Press, 1990
Nelander M, Hannsberger D, Sundström-Poromaa I, et al: Assessment of cerebral perfusion and edema in preeclampsia with intravoxel incoherent motion MRI. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 97(10):1212, 2018
Nelson DB, Stewart RD, Matulevicius SA, et al: The effects of maternal position and habitus on maternal cardiovascular parameters as measured by cardiac magnetic resonance. Am J Perinatol 32(14):1318, 2015
Newman EA, Newman LA: Lymphatic mapping techniques and sentinel lymph node biopsy in breast cancer. Surg Clin North Am 87:353, 2007
Nuyttens JJ, Prado KL, Jenrette JM, et al: Fetal dose during radiotherapy: clinical implementation and review of the literature. Cancer Radiother 6:352, 2002
Oh KY, Roberts VH, Schabel MC, et al: Gadolinium chelate contrast material in pregnancy: fetal biodistribution in the nonhuman primate. Radiology 276(1):110, 2015
Olutoye OA, Baker BW, Belfort MA, et al: Food and Drug Administration warning on anesthesia and brain development: implications for obstetric and fetal surgery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(1):98, 2018
O'Rourke N, Kodali BS: Laparoscopic surgery during pregnancy. Curr Opin Anaesthesiol 19:254, 2006
Otake M, Yoshimaru H, Schull WJ: Severe mental retardation among the prenatally exposed survivors of the atomic bombing of Hiroshima and Nagasaki: a comparison of the old and new dosimetry systems. Radiation Effects Research Foundation, Technical Report No. 16–87, 1987
Pearl JP, Price RR, Tonkin AE, et al: SAGES guidelines for the use of laparoscopy during pregnancy. Surg Endosc 31(10):3767, 2017
Phupong V, Bunyavejchewin S: Gasless laparoscopic surgery for ovarian cyst in a second trimester pregnant patient with a ventricular septal defect. Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech 17:565, 2007
Post RJ, Friedrich E, Amaya KE, et al: Inadvertent perforation of a gravid uterus during laparoscopy. JSLS 23(3):1, 2019
Prado KL, Nelson SJ, Nuyttens JJ, et al: Clinical implementation of the AAPM Task Group 36 recommendations on fetal dose from radiotherapy with photon beams: a head and neck irradiation case report. J Appl Clin Med Phys 1(1):1, 2000
Preston DL, Cullings H, Suyama A, et al: Solid cancer incidence in atomic bomb survivors exposed in utero or as young children. J Natl Cancer Inst 100:428, 2008
Raj MH, Mullins JN, Chi JM, et al: The utility of abdominopelvic CT in pregnant patients with abdominal pain and a negative or inconclusive abdominal MRI. Clin Imaging 59(1):88, 2020
Reedy MB, Galan HL, Bean-Lijewski JD, et al: Maternal and fetal effects of laparoscopic insufflation in the gravid baboon. J Am Assoc Gynecol Laparosc 2:399, 1995
Reedy MB, Källén B, Kuehl TJ: Laparoscopy during pregnancy: a study of five fetal outcome parameters with use of the Swedish Health Registry. Am J Obstet Gynecol 177:673, 1997
Reeves MJ, Brandreth M, Whitby EH, et al: Neonatal cochlear function: measurement after exposure to acoustic noise during in utero MR imaging. Radiology 257(3):802, 2010
Reichel TF, Ramus RM, Caire JT, et al: Fetal central nervous system biometry on MR imaging. AJR Am J Roentgenol 180:1155, 2003
Reynolds JD, Booth JV, de la Fuente S, et al: A review of laparoscopy for non-obstetric-related surgery during pregnancy. Curr Surg 60:164, 2003
Ribic-Pucelj M, Kobal B, Peternelj-Marinsek S: Surgical treatment of adnexal masses in pregnancy: indications, surgical approach and pregnancy outcome. J Reprod Med 52:273, 2007
Rollins MD, Chan KJ, Price RR: Laparoscopy for appendicitis and cholelithiasis during pregnancy. Surg Endosc 18:237, 2004
Rowley KA, Hill SJ, Watkins RA, et al: An investigation into the levels of radiation exposure in diagnostic examinations involving fluoroscopy. Br J Radiol 60:167, 1987
Sandrasegaran K, Lall CG, Aisen AA: Fetal magnetic resonance imaging. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 18:605, 2006
Schwartz JL, Mozurkewich EL, Johnson TM: Current management of patients with melanoma who are pregnant, want to get pregnant, or do not want to get pregnant. Cancer 97:2130, 2003

Shakerian R, Thomson BN, Judson R, et al: Radiation fear: impact on compliance with trauma imaging guidelines in the pregnant patient. J Trauma Acute Care Surg 78(1):88, 2015

Sheen JJ, Haramati LB, Natenzon A, et al: Performance of low-dose perfusion scintigraphy and CT pulmonary angiography for pulmonary embolism in pregnancy. Chest 153(1):152, 2018

Shigemi D, Aso S, Matsui H, et al: Safety of laparoscopic surgery for benign diseases during pregnancy: a nationwide retrospective cohort study. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 26(3):501, 2019

Silvestri MT, Pettker CM, Brousseau EC, et al: Morbidity of appendectomy and cholecystectomy in pregnant and nonpregnant women. Obstet Gynecol 118(6):1261, 2011

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM), Sciscione A, Berghella V, et al: Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM) Special Report: the maternal-fetal medicine subspecialists' role within a health care system. Am J Obstet Gynecol 21(6):607, 2014

Sorahan T, Lancashire RJ, Temperton DH, et al: Childhood cancer and paternal exposure to ionizing radiation: a second report from the Oxford Survey of Childhood Cancers. Am J Ind Med 28(1):71, 1995

Spanheimer PM, Graham MM, Sugg SL, et al: Measurement of uterine radiation exposure from lymphoscintigraphy indicates safety of sentinel lymph node biopsy during pregnancy. Ann Surg Oncol 16(5):1143, 2009

Stather JW, Phipps AW, Harrison JD, et al: Dose coefficients for the embryo and fetus following intakes of radionuclides by the mother. J Radiol Prot 22:1, 2002

Stein PD, Woodard PK, Weg JG, et al: Diagnostic pathways in acute pulmonary embolism: recommendations of the PIOPED II investigators. Radiology 242(1):15, 2007

Steinbrook RA, Bhavani-Shankar K: Hemodynamics during laparoscopic surgery in pregnancy. Anesth Analg 93:1570, 2001

Stepp K, Falcone T: Laparoscopy in the second trimester of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 31:485, 2004

Stewart RD, Nelson DB, Matulevicius SA, et al: Cardiac magnetic resonance to assess the impact of maternal habitus on cardiac remodeling during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(5):640.e1, 2016

Stovall M, Blackwell CR, Cundif J, et al: Fetal dose from radiotherapy with photon beams: report of AAPM Radiation Therapy Committee Task Group No. 36. Med Phys 22:63, 1995

Strzelczyk J, Damilakis J, Marx MV, et al: Facts and controversies about radiation exposure, part 2: low-level exposures and cancer risk. J Am Coll Radiol 4:32, 2007

Suleiman OH, Anderson J, Jones B, et al: Tissue doses in the upper gastrointestinal examination. Radiology 178(3):653, 1991

Tica AA, Tica OS, Saftoiu A, et al: Large pancreatic mucinous cystic neoplasm during pregnancy: what should be done? Gynecol Obstet Invest 75(2):132, 2013

Tolcher MC, Fisher WE, Clark SL: Nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 132(2):395, 2018

Tromeur C, van der Pol LM, Le Roux PY, et al: Computed tomography pulmonary angiography versus ventilation-perfusion lung scanning for diagnosing pulmonary embolism during pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Haematologica 104(1):176, 2019

Tsai R, Raptis C, Fowler KJ, et al: MRI of suspected appendicitis during pregnancy: interradiologist agreement, indeterminate interpretation, and the meaning of non-visualization of the appendix. Br J Radiol 90:1079, 2017

Twickler DM, Reichel T, McIntire DD, et al: Fetal central nervous system ventricle and cisterna magna measurements by magnetic resonance imaging. Am J Obstet Gynecol 187:927, 2002

Twickler DM, Setiawan AT, Evans R, et al: Imaging of puerperal septic thrombophlebitis: a prospective comparison of MR imaging, CT, and sonography. AJR Am J Roentgenol 169:1039, 1997

Vadeyar SH, Moore RJ, Strachan BK, et al: Effect of fetal magnetic resonance imaging on fetal heart rate patterns. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:666, 2000

van der Pol LM, Tromeur C, Bistervels IM, et al: Pregnancy-adapted YEARS algorithm for diagnosis of suspected pulmonary embolism. N Engl J Med 380(12):139, 2019

van Mens TE, Scheres LJ, de Jong PG, et al: Imaging for the exclusion of pulmonary embolism in pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD011053, 2017

Victoria T, Johnson AM, Edgar JC, et al: Comparison between 1.5-T and 3-T MRI for fetal imaging: is there an advantage to imaging with a higher field strength? AJR Am J Roentgenol 206:195, 2016

Vilos GA, Ternamian A, Dempster J, et al: Laparoscopic entry: a review of techniques, technologies, and complications. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 29:433, 2007

Vujic J, Marsoner K, Lipp-Pump AH, et al: Non-obstetric surgery during pregnancy—an eleven-year retrospective analysis. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 19(1):382, 2019

Wagner LK, Lester RG, Saldana LR: Exposure of the Pregnant Patient to Diagnostic Radiation. Philadelphia, Medical Physics Publishing, 1997

Webb KE, Sakhel K, Chauhan SP, et al: Adnexal mass during pregnancy: a review. Am J Perinatol 32(11):1010, 2015

Werner H, Marcondes M, Daltro P, et al: Three-dimensional reconstruction of fetal abnormalities using ultrasonography and magnetic imaging. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(20):3502, 2019

White WM, Zite NB, Gash J, et al: Low-dose computer tomography for the evaluation of flank pain in the pregnant population. J Endourol 21:1255, 2007

Williams F, Griffiths PD: In utero MR imaging in fetuses at high risk of lissencephaly. Br J Radiol 90(1072):20160902, 2017

Wo JY, Viswanathan AN: Impact of radiotherapy on fertility, pregnancy, and neonatal outcomes in female cancer patients. Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 73(5):1304, 2009

Yu CH, Weng SF, Ho CH, et al: Pregnancy outcomes following nonobstetric surgery during gestation: a nationwide population-based case-control study in Taiwan. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 18(1):460, 2018

Zanotti-Fregonara P, Hindie E: Performing nuclear medicine examinations in pregnant women. Phys Med 43:159, 2017

Zanzonico PB: Internal radionuclide radiation dosimetry: a review of basic concepts and recent developments. J Nucl Med 41:297, 2000

Zaretsky M, McIntire DD, Twickler DM: Feasibility of the fetal anatomic and maternal pelvic survey by magnetic resonance imaging at term. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:997, 2003a

Zaretsky M, Reichel TF, McIntire DD, et al: Comparison of magnetic resonance imaging to ultrasound in the estimation of birth weight at term. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:1017, 2003b

Zeeman GG, Cipolla MJ, Cunningham FG: Cerebrovascular (patho)physiology in preeclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG, et al (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Elsevier, 2014, p 269

CHAPTER 50

Critical Care and Trauma

Treatment of the critically ill pregnant woman has improved over the past three decades with advances in intensive care capabilities. To achieve optimal outcomes, severe medical, surgical, and obstetrical disorders complicating pregnancy are frequently managed by a multidisciplinary team. Importantly, obstetricians and these other health-care team members must have a working knowledge of the unique considerations for pregnancy (Padilla, 2021). Some discussed in Chapter 49 include pregnancy-induced physiological changes, alterations in normal laboratory values, and consideration for the second patient—the fetus. Because critically ill women are usually young and healthy, their prognosis is generally good (Gaffney, 2014).

CRITICAL CARE

Despite noted gains, evidence suggests that severe morbidity rates are increasing (Friedman, 2016). In the United States, 1 to 3 percent of pregnant women require critical care services each year. The risk of death during such admissions ranges from 2 to 11 percent (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). Black women and Medicaid recipients are disparately affected (Wen, 2020).

Those with pregnancy-associated complications—especially hemorrhage, sepsis, and hypertension—have the greatest need for intensive care (Chantry, 2015; Guntupalli, 2015a,b). That said, many antepartum admissions are for nonobstetrical reasons, and these include diabetes, pneumonia or asthma, heart disease, chronic hypertension, pyelonephritis, and thyrotoxicosis (Guntupalli, 2015b; Zeeman, 2006). Cardiac disease is the leading non-obstetrical indication for intensive care unit (ICU) admission (Small, 2012). In instances of life-threatening hemorrhage, surgical procedures may be necessary, and close proximity to an operating room is paramount. For women who are undelivered, fetal well-being also is better served by this close proximity, especially because many are delivered preterm (Kilpatrick, 2016).

Organization of Critical Care

The concept and development of critical care for all aspects of medicine and surgery began in the 1960s. As a part of this effort, the National Institutes of Health held a Consensus Conference (1983) and the Society of Critical Care Medicine (1988, 1999) established guidelines for ICUs. Especially pertinent to obstetrics, these costly units prompted the evolution of a step-down *intermediate care unit*. These latter units were designed for patients who did not require intensive care but who needed a higher level of treatment than that provided on a general ward. The American College of Critical Care Medicine and the Society of Critical Care Medicine (1998) have published guidelines for these units (Table 50-1).

Obstetrical Critical Care

Although critical care for obstetrical patients has generally evolved along the path described in the last section, no detailed guidelines

TABLE 50-1. Guidelines for Conditions That Could Qualify for Intermediate Care

Cardiac: evaluation for possible infarction, stable infarction, stable arrhythmias, mild to moderate congestive heart failure, hypertensive urgency without end-organ damage
Pulmonary: stable patients for weaning and chronic ventilation, patients with potential for respiratory failure who are otherwise stable
Neurological: stable central nervous system, neuromuscular, or neurosurgical conditions that require close monitoring
Drug overdose: hemodynamically stable
Gastrointestinal: stable bleeding, liver failure with stable vital signs
Endocrinological: diabetic ketoacidosis, thyrotoxicosis that requires frequent monitoring
Surgical: postoperative from major procedures or complications that require close monitoring
Miscellaneous: early sepsis, patients who require closely titrated intravenous fluids, pregnant women with severe preeclampsia or other medical problems

From the American College of Critical Care Medicine, 1998; Nasraway, 1998.

direct this care. Most hospitals employ a blend of these concepts, and in general, units can be divided into three types.

First, medical and surgical ICUs in most hospitals care for severely ill obstetrical patients. These are staffed by specialists often certified in critical care medicine. Admissions or transfers to these units are situation-specific and based on the acuity of care needed and on the ability of the facility to provide it. For example, pregnant women who require ventilatory support, invasive monitoring, or pharmacological support of circulation are typically transferred to an ICU (Chantry, 2015). In an earlier review of more than 25 tertiary-care referral institutions, approximately 0.5 percent of obstetrical patients were transferred to these ICU types (Zeeman, 2006).

A second option is the obstetrical *intermediate care unit*. Sometimes referred to as a *high-dependency care unit*, this type is found at Parkland Hospital. Located within the labor and delivery unit, it has designated rooms staffed by experienced personnel. This two-tiered system incorporates the guidelines for intermediate and intensive care. Care is provided by maternal-fetal medicine specialists, obstetricians, and nurses with experience in critical care obstetrics. As needed, this team is expanded to include other obstetricians and anesthesiologists, hospitalists, gynecological oncologists, pulmonologists, cardiologists, surgeons, and other medical and surgical subspecialists (Stevens, 2015). Many tertiary-care centers have developed similar intermediate care units and use selected triage to ICUs.

Last, a few services have a full-care ICU as described first. However, it is distinctly operated by obstetrical and anesthesia personnel near the labor and delivery unit (Zeeman, 2003, 2006).

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) has summarized critical obstetrical care implementation depending on hospital size and technical facilities. For intrahospital transfers, the federal Emergency Medical Treatment and Labor Act (EMTALA) guidelines must be followed. Moreover, according to the American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017), the minimal monitoring required for a critically ill patient during transport includes continuous pulse oximetry, electrocardiography, and regular assessment of vital signs. Patients must have secure venous access, and those who are mechanically ventilated must have endotracheal tube position confirmed and secured. Left uterine displacement and supplemental oxygen is applied routinely during transport of antepartum patients. Continuous fetal heart rate or tocodynamic monitoring is individualized.

Severe Maternal Morbidity

Childbirth can result in significant morbidity for the pregnant woman. To help address this, *severe maternal morbidity (SMM)* was developed as a population-based monitoring standard for the most common of these complications (Callaghan, 2012). An overall SMM rate is derived from 18 SMM indicators, which are abstracted from International Classification of Diseases-10 (ICD-10) codes in administrative databases. SMM rates for an individual indicator also may be informative. Some indicators are found in Table 50-1, and the full list is available at www.cdc.gov/reproductivehealth/maternalinfanthealth/smm/severe-morbidity-ICD.htm. Several of these are included in this chapter, whereas others are addressed in specific chapters on their topic.

The goal of SMM monitoring is to identify opportunities for intervention and prevention. Despite its promise, limitations should be recognized. First, the rate does not factor underlying patient comorbidities and obstetrical risks. Thus, a tertiary-care center that serves as a referral center for women with placenta accreta spectrum will understandably have higher blood transfusion rates. Second, the ICD-10 indicators for existing SMM events are not comprehensive. For example, only codes for *total* abdominal hysterectomy are currently included in the SMM rate, whereas *supracervical* hysterectomy is not. With these limitations in mind, caution should be exercised when using SMM as a quality metric to compare hospitals (Callaghan, 2012).

Hemodynamic Changes in Pregnancy

Data obtained during pregnancy with pulmonary artery catheterization (PAC) have contributed immensely to the understanding of normal pregnancy hemodynamics and pathophysiology of common obstetrical conditions. Clark and coworkers (1989) used PAC to obtain cardiovascular measurements in healthy

TABLE 50-2. Formulas for Deriving Various Cardiopulmonary Parameters

Mean arterial pressure (MAP) (mm Hg) = [SBP + 2 (DBP)] ÷ 3
Cardiac output (CO) (L/min) = heart rate × stroke volume
Stroke volume (SV) (mL/beat) = CO/HR
Stroke index (SI) (mL/beat/m^2) = stroke volume/BSA
Cardiac index (CI) (L/min/m^2) = CO/BSA
Systemic vascular resistance (SVR) (dyn × s × cm^{-5}) = [(MAP − CVP)/CO] × 80
Pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) (dyn × s × cm^{-5}) = [(MPAP − PCWP)/CO] × 80

BSA = body surface area (m^2); CVP = central venous pressure (mm Hg); DBP = diastolic blood pressure; HR = heart rate (beats/min); MAP = mean systemic arterial pressure (mm Hg); MPAP = mean pulmonary artery pressure (mm Hg); PCWP = pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (mm Hg); SBP = systolic blood pressure.

pregnant women and again in these same women when nonpregnant (Chap. 4, p. 64). Other evaluated conditions include preeclampsia-eclampsia, acute respiratory distress syndrome, and amnionic-fluid embolism (Clark, 1997; Cunningham, 1987; Hankins, 1985). Because of these studies, most have concluded that such monitoring is seldom necessary (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2013, 2019a, 2020; Magder, 2015).

Formulas for deriving some hemodynamic parameters are shown in Table 50-2. These measurements can be indexed for body size by dividing by body surface area. Normal values for nonpregnant adults are used, but with the caveat that these may not necessarily reflect changes induced by the low-resistance uteroplacental circulation.

Cardiac complications are a common indication for ICU admission of pregnant women (Guntupalli, 2015b). Evaluation of cardiac function is frequently performed using echocardiography. This technology is indispensable in interrogating cardiac anatomy and especially right-ventricular function (Krishnan, 2015; Thiele, 2015). It is considered in more detail in Chapter 52 (p. 918), and some normal values are listed in the Appendix (p. 1233).

Given the association of cardiac dysfunction with maternal morbidity and mortality, efforts have strived to expand cardiac monitoring by including noninvasive cardiac output monitoring (NICOM). With this tool, a small electrical current is applied to the chest, and voltage signals are captured by four skin sensors arranged in a box on the chest. Compared with Doppler echocardiography, NICOM significantly overestimates stroke volume and cardiac output (McLaughlin, 2017). This modality has not yet been widely adopted for use in the obstetrical population.

ACUTE PULMONARY EDEMA

The incidence of pulmonary edema complicating pregnancy averages 1 in 500 deliveries at tertiary referral centers. Of the two general etiologies, *cardiogenic*, namely, *hydrostatic edema* is caused by high pulmonary capillary hydraulic pressures. The other is *noncardiogenic*, that is, *permeability edema* caused by capillary endothelial and alveolar epithelial damage. In pregnancy, noncardiogenic pulmonary edema is more common. More than half of pregnant women who develop pulmonary edema have some degree of sepsis in conjunction with tocolysis, severe preeclampsia, or obstetrical hemorrhage combined with vigorous fluid therapy (O'Dwyer, 2015; Pordeus, 2018).

In one study, the etiologies of pulmonary edema were hypertension, cardiogenic, or both, and iatrogenic fluid overload (Pordeus, 2018). In another study of 53 cases, 83 percent were caused by hypertensive disorders; 11 percent, cardiac events; and 6 percent, sepsis (O'Dwyer, 2015). Although used less commonly today, tocolytic therapy with β-mimetic drugs was the cause of up to 40 percent of pulmonary edema cases (Gandhi, 2014; Jenkins, 2003).

■ Noncardiogenic Permeability Edema

Endotheliopathy is the common denominator that is associated with preeclampsia, sepsis, and acute hemorrhage—or frequently combinations thereof—and they are the most common predisposing factors to pulmonary edema (Table 50-3). These clinical scenarios are often associated with corticosteroids given to induce fetal lung maturation along with vigorous fluid replacement and tocolytic therapy (Thornton, 2011). Parenteral β-agonists are indisputedly linked to pulmonary edema. Some studies have also associated magnesium sulfate given for preeclampsia (Gandhi, 2014; Wilson, 2014; Xiao, 2014). Combined therapy is causative.

■ Cardiogenic Hydrostatic Edema

Ventricular failure causing pulmonary edema in pregnancy is usually associated with some form of hypertension, hemorrhage and anemia, and sepsis (Cunningham, 2019; Vaught, 2018).

TABLE 50-3. Some Causes and Associated Factors for Pulmonary Edema in Pregnancy

Noncardiogenic permeability edema: endotheliopathy with capillary-alveolar leakage
Preeclampsia syndrome
Acute hemorrhage
Sepsis: pyelonephritis, metritis
Tocolytic therapy: β-mimetics, $MgSO_4$
Aspiration pneumonitis
Vigorous intravenous fluid therapy
Pancreatitis
Cardiogenic pulmonary edema: myocardial failure with hydrostatic edema from excessive pulmonary capillary pressure
Hypertensive cardiomyopathy
Obesity: adipositas cordis
Left-sided valvular disease
Vigorous intravenous fluid therapy
Pulmonary hypertension

Although it can be due to congenital or acquired anatomical defects, diastolic dysfunction is frequently from chronic hypertension, obesity, or both (Jessup, 2003; Kenchaiah, 2002). In these women, acute systolic hypertension exacerbates diastolic dysfunction and causes pulmonary edema (Dennis, 2012; Vaught, 2018). In two studies of pregnant women with preeclampsia and pulmonary edema, half of them were undelivered (Gandhi, 2014; Pordeus, 2018).

Diagnosis

Clinical examination is confirmed by chest radiographs. Bedside lung sonography may be helpful to detect fluid in the interstitial space and alveoli (Pachtman, 2017). In many cases, when echocardiography is done later, systolic function is normal as measured by ejection fraction.

In addition, ventricular myocytes and fibroblasts secrete *brain natriuretic peptide (BNP)* and *atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP)* with the distention seen in heart failure. In nonpregnant patients, concentrations <100 pg/mL have an excellent negative predictive value, and levels >500 pg/mL have an excellent positive predictive value. It is problematic that levels frequently are 100 to 500 pg/mL and thus are nondiagnostic. Moreover, concentrations of N-terminal BNP and ANP are both elevated with preeclampsia (Szabo, 2014; Tihtonen, 2007). Normal values are discussed in Chapter 4 (p. 65), and those for normal pregnancy are given in the Appendix (p. 1231).

Management

Acute pulmonary edema requires emergency care. Oxygen therapy is initiated and furosemide is given in periodic 20- to 40-mg intravenous doses as needed. For oxygen delivery, nasal cannula, simple masks, and nonrebreathing masks are first-line systems. Both nasal cannula and simple mask allow mixing of supplemental oxygen with room air. Consequently, oxygen administration is imprecise (Bateman, 1998). A nonrebreathing mask has valves that limit the mixing of exhaled gas and room air with the oxygen supply. Flow rates up to 10 to 15 L/min may be achieved, and oxygen concentrations approach 95 percent (Boumphrey, 2003). As a treatment goal, a pulse oximetry reading >92 percent reflects adequate oxygenation.

Further treatment depends on whether a woman is ante- or postpartum. A live fetus prohibits the use of cardioactive drugs that might rapidly lower peripheral resistance and in turn severely diminish uteroplacental circulation. The cause of cardiogenic failure is determined by echocardiography, which will help direct further therapy. *Importantly, acute pulmonary edema is not an indication for emergency cesarean delivery*.

ACUTE RESPIRATORY DISTRESS SYNDROME

Acute lung injury that causes a form of severe permeability pulmonary edema and respiratory failure is termed *acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)*. This is a pathophysiological continuum from mild pulmonary insufficiency to dependence on high inspired oxygen concentrations and mechanical ventilation. Uniform criteria for its diagnosis are lacking, and thus the incidence is variably reported for pregnancy. Rush and colleagues (2017) queried the nationwide inpatient samples of more than 5.4 million pregnancies and cited an incidence of 60 ventilated cases per 100,000 births. They found an overall mortality rate of 9 percent. This rate is much higher if caused or complicated by sepsis. Last, if ARDS develops antepartum, the perinatal mortality rate is correspondingly high.

Definitions

Physiological criteria required for diagnosis of acute lung injury are study dependent. In general, less precise terms are used for clinical care. Clinical findings include dyspnea, tachypnea, and oxygen desaturation. Most investigators define ARDS as radiographically documented pulmonary infiltrates, a ratio of arterial oxygen tension to the fraction of inspired oxygen (Pao_2:Fio_2) <200, and no evidence of heart failure (Baron, 2018). Revised by international consensus, the *Berlin Definition* includes categories of mild, moderate, and severe (Fan, 2018).

Etiopathogenesis

ARDS begins with an acute lung injury from various causes (Table 50-4). More than half of pregnant women with ARDS have some combination of sepsis, hemorrhage, shock, and fluid overload. Diffuse infectious pneumonia and sepsis are two of the most frequent single-agent causes. Because it is common, influenza pneumonitis often is a cause. Other etiologies such as pneumococcal, metapneumovirus, and Legionnaire disease also are encountered (Close, 2016; Fuchs, 2017). Of sepsis causes, pyelonephritis, puerperal pelvic infection, and chorioamnionitis are the most frequent. The contribution of *transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI)* is unclear (Chap. 44, p. 774).

TABLE 50-4. Some Causes of Acute Lung Injury and Respiratory Failure

Pneumonia: bacterial, viral, aspiration
Sepsis: chorioamnionitis, pyelonephritis, puerperal infection, septic abortion
Hemorrhage: shock, massive transfusion, transfusion-related acute lung injury (TRALI)
Preeclampsia syndrome
Tocolytic therapy
Embolism: amnionic fluid, trophoblastic disease, air, fat
Connective tissue disease
Substance abuse
Irritant inhalation and burns
Pancreatitis
Drug overdose
Fetal surgery
Trauma
Sickle-cell disease
Miliary tuberculosis
Cerebral hemorrhage

From Baron, 2018; Duarte, 2014; Lapinsky, 2015; Sibai, 2014; Snyder, 2013; Zeeman, 2006.

Endothelial injury in the lung capillaries releases cytokines that recruit neutrophils to the inflammation site. Here, they elaborate more cytokines to worsen tissue injury. Three stages describe ARDS development (Baron, 2018). First, the *exudative phase* follows widespread injury to the alveolar epithelium and to the microvascular endothelium, including the pulmonary vasculature. This endotheliopathy results in increased pulmonary capillary permeability, surfactant loss or inactivation, diminished lung volume, and vascular shunting that creates arterial hypoxemia. Next, the *proliferative phase* usually begins approximately 7 days later and lasts up to 21 days. Most patients recover during this phase. Last, the *fibrotic phase* results from healing. Despite these insults, the long-term prognosis for pulmonary function is surprisingly good (Baron, 2018; Herridge, 2003).

Clinical Course

With pulmonary injury, the clinical condition depends largely on the insult magnitude, the ability to compensate for it, and the disease stage. At first, physical examination findings are absent, except perhaps hyperventilation, and arterial oxygenation usually is adequate. With worsening, clinical and radiological evidence for pulmonary edema, decreased lung compliance, and increased intrapulmonary blood shunting become apparent. Progressive alveolar and interstitial edema develops, and inflammatory cells and erythrocytes extravasate. Ideally, pulmonary injury is identified at this early stage, and specific therapy is directed at the underlying insult.

Further progression to acute respiratory failure is characterized by marked dyspnea, tachypnea, and hypoxemia. Additional functional lung volume loss results in worsening of pulmonary compliance and greater shunting. Diffuse abnormalities are heard by auscultation, and a chest radiograph characteristically demonstrates bilateral lung involvement (Fig. 50-1). At this phase, the injury ordinarily would be lethal without ventilatory support. When shunting exceeds 30 percent, severe refractory hypoxemia develops. Comorbid metabolic and respiratory acidosis can result in myocardial irritability, dysfunction, and cardiac arrest.

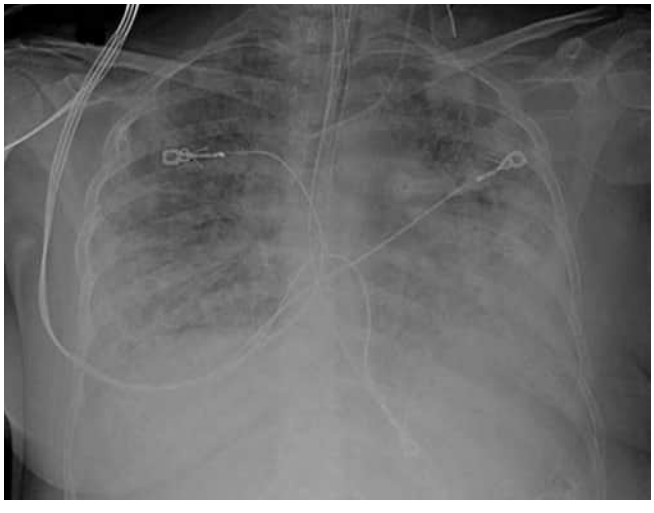


FIGURE 50-1 Anteroposterior chest radiograph of a second-trimester pregnant woman with marked bilateral parenchymal and pleural opacification secondary to acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS).

Management

ARDS mortality rates have declined because of advances in critical care medicine (Baron, 2018; Fan, 2018). Management requires close attention to recognizing and treating underlying medical and surgical disorders. In cases of severe acute lung injury, providing adequate oxygenation of peripheral tissues is balanced against ventilatory maneuvers that further aggravate lung injury. At least intuitively, increasing oxygen delivery should produce a corresponding rise in tissue uptake, but this is difficult to measure. Support of systemic perfusion with intravenous crystalloid and blood is imperative. Because sepsis is commonplace in lung injury, aggressive antimicrobial therapy is given for infection, and any necrotic tissues are debrided. Oxygen delivery can be greatly improved by correcting anemia. Specifically, each gram of hemoglobin carries 1.25 mL of oxygen when 90-percent saturated. By comparison, raising the arterial Pao_2 from 100 to 200 mm Hg results in the transport of only 0.1 mL of additional oxygen for each 100 mL of blood.

Reasonable goals in caring for the woman with severe lung injury are a Pao_2 of 60 mm Hg or 90-percent oxygen saturation using an inspired oxygen content <50 percent and positive end-expiratory pressures <15 mm Hg. With regard to the pregnancy, it remains controversial whether delivery of the fetus improves maternal oxygenation (Mallampalli, 2010). In a study of 29 women undergoing mechanical ventilation, 10 were delivered while intubated (Lapinsky, 2015). Respiratory function modestly improved in half, but no factors were identified that predicted a better outcome.

Mechanical Ventilation

Noninvasive ventilation, that is, positive-pressure ventilation by face mask, may be effective in some women in early stages of pulmonary insufficiency (Duarte, 2014). *Conventional ventilation* is done with tracheal intubation. Early intubation is preferred in the gravida if respiratory failure is more likely than not and especially if it appears imminent. Because of the physiological changes outlined in Chapter 4 (p. 67), $Paco_2$ is normally reduced in a gravida relative to a nonpregnant woman. Thus, intubation should be considered when $Paco_2$ levels reach 35 to 40 mm Hg.

Mechanical ventilation is used to assist or replace spontaneous respiration (Celli, 2018). It improves oxygenation by its application of high-oxygen-content gas and positive pressure. Many successful formulas for mechanical ventilation are employed, and initially a tidal volume ≤6 mL/kg is optimal (Fan, 2018; Schwaiberger, 2016). Adjustments are made to obtain a Pao_2 >60 mm Hg or a hemoglobin oxygen saturation ≥90 percent and to reach a $Paco_2$ of 35 to 45 mm Hg. Lower Pao_2 levels are avoided, because placental perfusion may be impaired.

The mode is the manner in which ventilator breaths are triggered, cycled, and limited. Three commonly used ventilation modes of include *assist-control*, *intermittent mandatory*, and *pressure-support ventilation*. Although not a support mode,

continuous positive airway pressure can be used in patients with an intact ventilatory system who require little ventilatory support.

Pregnancy

In a study of 51 women with ARDS, almost half had severe preeclampsia, and most required intubation postpartum. Eleven were delivered while being ventilated, and another six were discharged undelivered (Jenkins, 2003). Two mothers died, and this included a woman who died as a complication of tocolytic treatment. In a multicenter report, Lapinsky and associates (2015) described 29 pregnant women undergoing mechanical ventilation for various indications. Only a few had severe ARDS, and the mortality rate was 10 percent. Ten women delivered while being ventilated, but this had little beneficial effect on their respiratory status.

Positive End-Expiratory Pressure

With severe lung injury and high intrapulmonary shunt fractions, it may not be possible to provide adequate oxygenation with usual ventilatory pressures, even with 100-percent oxygen. Positive end-expiratory pressure is usually successful in decreasing the shunt by recruiting collapsed alveoli. At low levels of 5 to 15 mm Hg, positive pressure can typically be used safely. At higher levels, impaired right-sided venous return can result in decreased cardiac output, lowered uteroplacental perfusion, alveolar overdistention, falling compliance, and barotrauma (Celli, 2018; Schwaiberger, 2016).

Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation

As discussed in Chapter 33 (p. 600), extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) has been successfully used for neonatal meconium aspiration syndrome. Some preliminary observations suggest that veno-venous ECMO may be useful in adults with ARDS (Combes, 2018; Ende, 2016; Matthay, 2018). In one case series, 12 pregnant women with influenza-induced lung failure were treated with ECMO, and of four maternal deaths, three were due to anticoagulation-related hemorrhage (Nair, 2011). ECMO use also has been reported for status asthmaticus (Clifford, 2018; Steinack, 2017). In multiple reviews, ECMO was used mostly for ARDS, and the maternal and perinatal mortality rate approximated 30 percent (Liu, 2018; Ramanathan, 2020; Saad, 2016). Maternal survival appears to be significantly lower compared with nonpregnant women requiring ECMO (Webster, 2019).

Fetal Oxygenation

The propensity of the hemoglobin molecule to release oxygen is described by the *oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve* (Fig. 50-2). For clinical purposes, the curve can be divided into an upper oxygen association curve representing the alveolar-capillary environment and a lower oxygen dissociation portion representing the tissue-capillary environment. Shifts of the curve have their greatest effect at the steep portion because they affect oxygen delivery. A rightward shift is associated with decreased hemoglobin affinity for oxygen and hence greater tissue-capillary oxygen interchange. Hypercapnia, metabolic acidosis, fever, and increased 2,3-diphosphoglycerate levels produce rightward

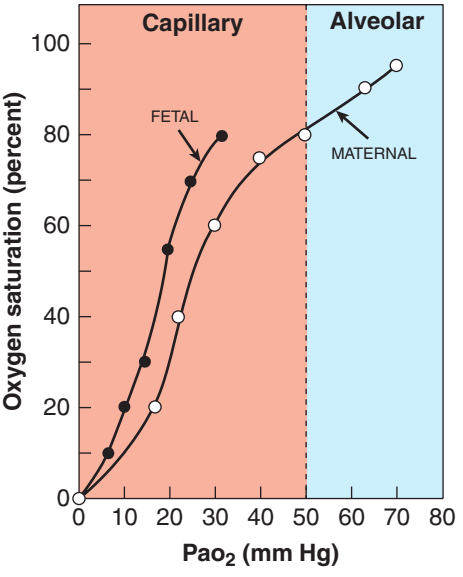


FIGURE 50-2 Oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve. With higher oxygen tension (Pao_2) in the pulmonary alveoli, adult hemoglobin is maximally saturated compared with that at the lower oxygen tension in the tissue capillaries. Note that at any given oxygen tension, fetal hemoglobin carries more oxygen than adult hemoglobin, as indicated by percent saturation.

shifts. During normal pregnancy, the erythrocyte concentration of 2,3-diphosphoglycerate rises by approximately 30 percent, which favors oxygen delivery.

Fetal hemoglobin has a higher oxygen affinity than adult hemoglobin. As seen in Figure 50-2, its oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve is positioned to the left of the adult curve. To achieve 50-percent hemoglobin saturation in the mother, the Pao_2 must be 27 mm Hg compared with only 19 mm Hg in the fetus. Under normal physiological conditions, the fetus is constantly on the dissociation, or tissue, portion of the curve. Even with severe maternal lung disease and very low Pao_2 levels, oxygen displacement to fetal tissues is favored. For example, in pregnant women who live at high altitudes, and despite a maternal Pao_2 of only 60 mm Hg, the fetal Pao_2 is equivalent to that seen at sea level (Subrevilla, 1971).

Intravenous Fluids

Although mortality rates are similar, conservative versus liberal fluid management is associated with fewer days of mechanical ventilation (Wiedemann, 2006). Some normal pregnancy-induced physiological changes predispose to a greater risk of permeability edema from vigorous fluid therapy. Serum albumin concentration determines colloid oncotic pressure (COP), and 1 g/dL exerts approximately 6 mm Hg of pressure. As discussed in Chapter 4 (p. 70), serum albumin concentrations normally drop in pregnancy. This results in a decline in COP from 28 mm Hg in the nonpregnant woman to 23 mm Hg at term and to 17 mm Hg in the puerperium (Dennis, 2012). With preeclampsia, endotheliopathy causes extravascular albumin loss and lowered serum albumin levels. These changes have a significant clinical effect on the *colloid oncotic pressure/wedge pressure gradient*. Normally, this gradient exceeds 8 mm Hg. However, when it is ≤4 mm Hg, the risk for pulmonary edema rises due

to Starling forces. Finally, no benefits are gained by albumin versus crystalloid infusions in these women (Uhlig, 2014).

Long-Term Outcomes

Most patients with ARDS regain nearly normal lung function (Baron, 2018). In nonpregnant subjects, however, risks for impaired global cognitive function at 3 and 12 months are significant (Pandharipande, 2013). Moreover, return to basic normal activity is delayed 1 to 2 years. In a 5-year follow-up study, Herridge and coworkers (2011) reported normal lung function but significant exercise limitation as well as physical and psychological sequelae. Long-term follow-up studies of pregnant women who recover from ARDS are lacking.

SEPSIS AND SEPTIC SHOCK

Sepsis is defined as infection with organ dysfunction, and *septic shock* manifests with unresponsive hypotension (Cecconi, 2018). The Third International Consensus Definition—"Sepsis-3"—denotes clinical criteria for sepsis to include suspected infection and acute organ dysfunction (Seymour, 2018). Use of the terms *systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS)* and *severe sepsis* are no longer recommended. The syndrome is induced by a systemic inflammatory response to bacteria or viruses or their by-products such as endotoxins or exotoxins. Its severity is a continuum (Fig. 50-3). In an analysis of 55 million births, Kendle and associates (2019) found an incidence of 2.4 cases per 10,000 deliveries. The Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine cites the incidence to be 4 to 10 cases per 10,000 births. According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), infection and sepsis caused 12 percent of pregnancy-related deaths in the United States from 2013 to 2017 (Petersen, 2019).

Infections that most commonly cause sepsis syndrome in obstetrics are pyelonephritis (Chap. 56, p. 997), chorioamnionitis and puerperal sepsis (Chap. 37, p. 651), pneumonia (Chap. 54, p. 962), septic abortion (Chap. 11, p. 203), and necrotizing fasciitis (Chap. 37, p. 654). Septic shock is defined by the need for vasopressor therapy despite fluid resuscitation. The mortality rate for this in nonpregnant patients is 20 percent (Snyder, 2013). The maternal mortality risk from sepsis is significantly underestimated (Bauer, 2015; Chebbo, 2016). However, most evidence indicates that case-fatality rates are lower for pregnant women compared with age-matched nonpregnant controls (Kidson, 2018).

Etiopathogenesis

Most information concerning sepsis pathogenesis derives from study of lipopolysaccharide (LPS), which is the endotoxin portion of gram-negative bacteria. The lipid A moiety is bound by mononuclear blood cells, becomes internalized, and stimulates release of mediators and a series of complex downstream perturbations. Clinical aspects of sepsis manifest when cytokines that have endocrine, paracrine, and autocrine actions are released (Seymour, 2018; Suffredini, 1989).

Although sepsis in obstetrics may be caused by several pathogens, most cases stem from a small group. Sepsis and bacteremia complicating pyelonephritis are commonly caused by *Escherichia coli* and *Klebsiella* species (Cunningham, 1987; Snyder, 2013). Although pelvic infections are usually polymicrobial, bacteria that cause severe sepsis are frequently endotoxin-producing Enterobacteriaceae, and most commonly *E coli* (Eschenbach, 2015). Other pelvic pathogens are aerobic and anaerobic streptococci, *Bacteroides* species, and *Clostridium* species. Of these, group A streptococcal infections are a significant source of infection (Leonard, 2019). Some strains of group

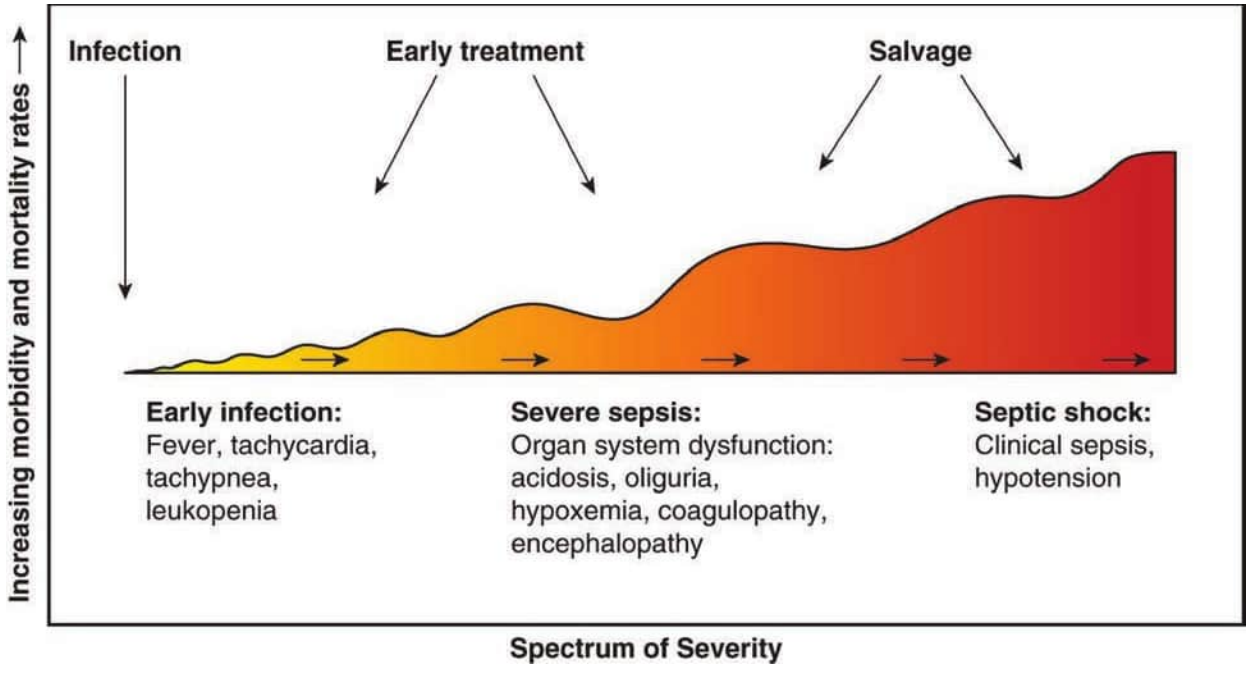


FIGURE 50-3 Sepsis begins with a systemic inflammatory response to infection that may progress to septic shock.

TABLE 50-5. Clinical Manifestations of Sepsis

Central nervous system: confusion, delirium, somnolence, coma, combativeness, fever, hypothermia
Cardiovascular: tachycardia, hypotension
Pulmonary: tachypnea, arteriovenous shunting with dysoxia and hypoxemia, exudative infiltrates from endothelial-alveolar damage, pulmonary hypertension
Gastrointestinal: gastroenteritis—nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea; ileus; hepatocellular necrosis—jaundice, transaminitis
Renal: prerenal oliguria, azotemia, acute kidney injury, proteinuria
Hematological: leukocytosis or leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, activation of coagulation with disseminated intravascular coagulation
Endocrinological: hyperglycemia, adrenal insufficiency
Cutaneous: acrocyanosis, erythroderma, bullae, digital gangrene

A β-hemolytic streptococci and *Staphylococcus aureus*—including community-acquired methicillin-resistant *S aureus* strains (CA-MRSA)—produce a superantigen that activates T cells to rapidly cause all features of sepsis. This manifests as *toxic shock syndrome*, which is discussed further in Chapter 37 (p. 659) (Moellering, 2011; Soper, 2011).

Potent bacterial exotoxins also can cause severe sepsis syndrome. Examples include exotoxins from *Clostridium perfringens* or *sordellii,* toxic shock syndrome toxin 1 (TSST-1) from *S aureus*, and toxic shock–like exotoxin from group A β-hemolytic streptococci (Herrera, 2016; Kaiser, 2018). These last exotoxins cause rapid and extensive tissue necrosis and gangrene, especially of the postpartum uterus, and may cause profound cardiovascular collapse and maternal death. In a review discussed subsequently, the maternal mortality rate from these infections was 58 percent (Yamada, 2010).

Sepsis begins with an inflammatory response that is directed against microbial endotoxins and exotoxins. CD4 T cells and leukocytes are stimulated to produce proinflammatory compounds that include tumor necrosis factor α (TNF-α), several interleukins, and other cytokines, proteases, oxidants, and bradykinin that result in a "cytokine storm." Many other cellular reactions then follow and include stimulation of pro- and anti-inflammatory compounds, procoagulant activity, gene activation, receptor regulation, and immune suppression (Seymour, 2018). It is also likely that interleukin 6 (IL-6) mediates myocardial suppression (Pathan, 2004).

The pathophysiological response to this cascade is selective vasodilation with maldistribution of blood flow. Leukocyte and platelet aggregation cause capillary plugging. Worsening endotheliopathy causes profound permeability, capillary leakage, and interstitial fluid accumulation. Depending on the degree of endothelial injury and inflammatory response, a pathophysiological and clinical continuum evolves as depicted in Figure 50-3. The clinical syndrome begins with subtle signs of sepsis from infection and terminates with septic shock. In its early stages, clinical shock results primarily from lowered systemic vascular resistance that is not compensated fully by increased cardiac output. Hypoperfusion worsens lactic acidosis, decreases tissue oxygen extraction, and leads to end-organ dysfunction that includes acute lung and kidney injury. Finally, *septic cardiomyopathy* with global involvement is common with severe sepsis (Beesley, 2018; Martin, 2018).

Clinical Manifestations

Sepsis has myriad clinical manifestations that, at least in part, are dependent on the specific invading microorganism and its particular endo- or exotoxins. Some of the general effects of LPS are shown in Table 50-5.

Thus, although capillary leakage initially causes hypovolemia, if intravenous crystalloid is given at this point, sepsis hemodynamically can be described as a high-cardiac-output, low-systemic-vascular-resistance condition (Fig. 50-4).

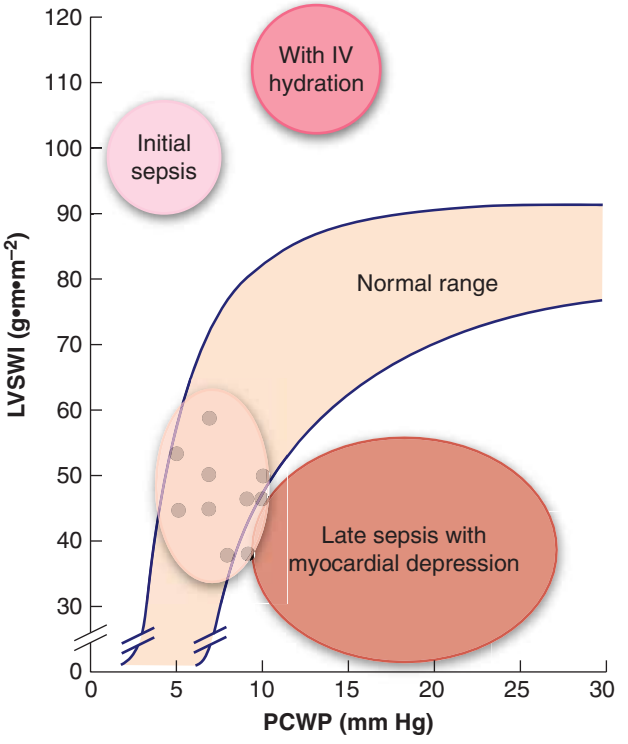


FIGURE 50-4 Hemodynamic effects of sepsis. Values for normal women at term are shown by dots. With early sepsis, there is high cardiac output and low vascular resistance. With fluid resuscitation, cardiac output increases even more, but so does capillary hydraulic pressure. With continued sepsis, there may be myocardial depression to further increase capillary hydraulic pressure. Decreased plasma oncotic pressure (serum albumin [g] × 6 mm Hg) contributes to interstitial lung fluid and endo/epithelial leak causes alveolar flooding. IV = intravenous; LVSWI = left ventricular stroke work index; PCWP = pulmonary capillary wedge pressure.

Concomitantly, pulmonary hypertension develops, and despite the high cardiac output, severe sepsis also causes myocardial depression (Seymour, 2018). This is often referred to as the *warm phase* of septic shock. These findings are the most common cardiovascular manifestations of early sepsis, but they can be accompanied by some of the other clinical or laboratory aberrations listed in the prior section.

The response to initial intravenous hydration may be prognostic. Most pregnant women who have early sepsis show a salutary response with crystalloid and antimicrobial therapy, and if indicated, debridement of infected tissue. Conversely, if following vigorous fluid infusion, septic shock results, then the prognosis is more guarded. At this juncture, if β-adrenergic inotropic agents fail to improve cardiovascular status, this indicates severe and unresponsive extracellular fluid extravasation with vascular insufficiency, overwhelming myocardial depression, or both. Oliguria and continued peripheral vasoconstriction characterize a secondary, *cold phase* of septic shock that is rarely survived. Another poor prognostic sign is continued renal, pulmonary, and cerebral dysfunction once hypotension is corrected (Chebbo, 2016; Seymour, 2018). The average risk of death rises by 15 to 20 percent with failure of each organ system.

Management

In 2004, an international consensus effort was launched as the *Surviving Sepsis Campaign* (Dellinger, 2013). The cornerstone of management was termed *early goal-directed therapy (EGDT)*, which stressed prompt recognition of serious bacterial infection and close monitoring of vital signs and urine flow. After three multicenter trials did not show that this protocol improved survival rates, this strategy is no longer recommended (PRISM Investigators, 2017; Seymour, 2018).

Similar conclusions were reached with sets of early warning systems in obstetrics (Edwards, 2015; Mhyre, 2014). *Modified Early Warning Score (MEWS)* failed to predict sepsis in obstetrical populations with positive predictive values as low as 1 to 2 percent (Lappen, 2010). Reasons for such poor performance in pregnant women include physiological changes of vital signs; relatively fewer comorbidities in a younger, healthier population; and predominantly genitourinary infections. Thus, current efforts such as the *Sepsis in Obstetrics Score* have been designed to identify women who benefit from ICU admission early in their hospital course (Albright, 2017). However, the validity of these findings beyond a single center and against controls is yet unstudied.

Still, the major tenets of EGDT are employed for sepsis treatment. Management of sepsis stresses prompt administration of broad-spectrum antimicrobials, collection of specimens for culture, serum lactate level measurement, an intravenous fluid bolus, and vasopressors as needed (Seymour, 2018). An algorithm for management of sepsis is shown in Figure 50-5. The three basic steps are performed as simultaneously as possible and include evaluation of the sepsis source and its sequelae, cardiopulmonary function assessment, and immediate management. The most important step in sepsis management is rapid infusion of 2 L and sometimes as many as 4 to 6 L of crystalloid fluids to restore renal perfusion in severely affected women (Vincent, 2013). Simultaneously, appropriately chosen broad-spectrum antimicrobials are begun, preferentially within 1 hour (Chen, 2019; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2019). Because hemoconcentration is caused by the capillary leak, if anemia coexists, blood is given. Specific thresholds for gravidas are lacking. In a group of nonpregnant individuals admitted to an ICU, maintaining the hemoglobin concentration ≥9 g/dL did not have superior outcomes compared with levels ≥7 g/dL (Holst, 2014). That said, fetal oxygenation is improved by the higher concentration, as discussed earlier (p. 886).

The use of a colloid solution such as hetastarch is controversial (Seymour, 2018). One Scandinavian randomized trial comparing hydroxyethyl starch and Ringer acetate solutions reported a higher mortality rate with the starch solution (Perner, 2012). Another study found equivalent results with 6-percent hydroxyethyl starch compared with normal saline (Myburgh, 2012). Additionally, albumin was not found to be superior to crystalloids (Caironi, 2014).

Aggressive volume replacement ideally is promptly followed by urinary output of at least 30 and preferably 50 mL/h, as well as other indicators of improved perfusion. If not, vasoactive drug therapy is considered (Pacheco, 2014). As discussed, mortality rates are high when sepsis is further complicated by respiratory or renal failure. With severe sepsis, damage to pulmonary capillary endothelium and alveolar epithelium causes alveolar flooding and pulmonary edema. This may occur even with low or normal pulmonary capillary wedge pressures, as with the ARDS (p. 884). Therefore, in some women, mechanical ventilation is indicated.

Broad-spectrum antimicrobials are chosen empirically based on the probable source of infection. They are given promptly in maximal doses after appropriate cultures are taken of blood, urine, or exudates not contaminated by normal flora. In severe sepsis, appropriate and early empirical coverage results in better survival rates (Seymour, 2017, 2018). Acute pyelonephritis is usually caused by Enterobacteriaceae, as discussed in Chapter 56 (p. 997). For pelvic infections, empirical selection of a regimen such as ampicillin, gentamicin, plus clindamycin, which in sum covers aerobic and anaerobic pathogens, generally suffices (Chap. 37, p. 651). Associated incisional and other soft-tissue infections are increasingly likely to be caused by MRSA, thus vancomycin may be added (Klevens, 2007). With septic abortion or deep fascial infections, a Gram-stained smear may be helpful in identifying *Clostridium* species or group A streptococcal organisms.

Surgical Treatment

Continuing sepsis may prove fatal, and debridement of necrotic tissue or drainage of purulent material is crucial (Pacheco, 2014). Puerperal pelvic infections include metritis and infections of perineal lacerations or of hysterotomy or laparotomy incisions. If complicated by abscess, these may require drainage. With a septic abortion, uterine contents must be removed expeditiously by curettage as described in Chapter 11 (p. 203). Hysterectomy is seldom indicated unless gangrene has resulted.

For women with pyelonephritis, continuing sepsis should prompt a search for obstruction caused by calculi or by a perinephric or intrarenal phlegmon or abscess. Renal sonography or "one-shot" pyelography can help diagnose obstruction and calculi. With obstruction, ureteral catheterization, percutaneous nephrostomy, or flank exploration may be lifesaving (Chap. 56, p. 998).

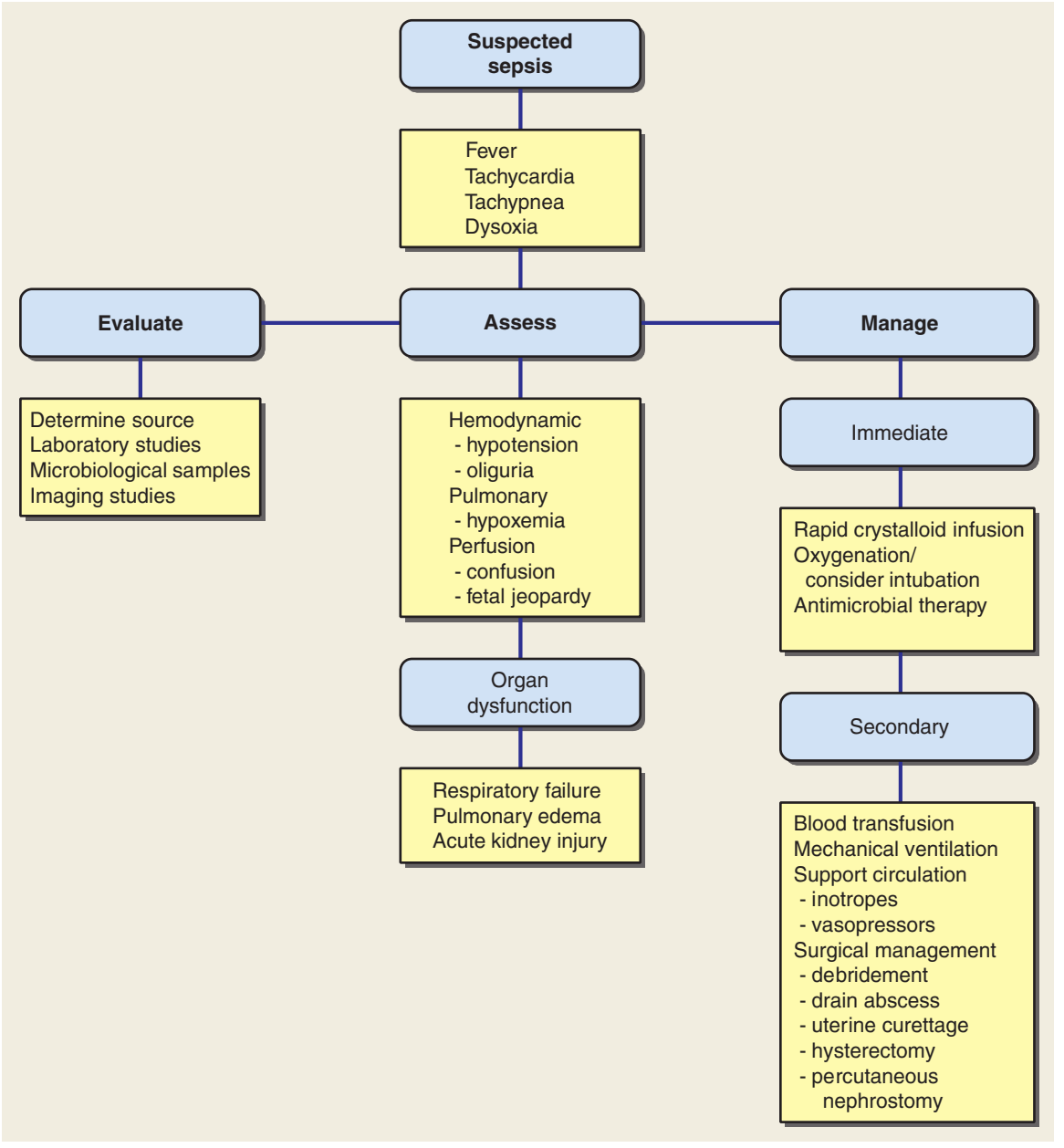


FIGURE 50-5 Algorithm for evaluation and management of sepsis. Rapid and aggressive implementation is paramount for success. The three steps—Evaluate, Assess, and Manage—are carried out as simultaneously as possible.

Computed tomography (CT) or magnetic-resonance imaging aids identification of a renal phlegmon or abscess.

Puerperal Infections. Most cases of puerperal pelvic sepsis are clinically manifested in the first several postpartum days, and intravenous antimicrobial therapy without tissue debridement is generally curative. At least four exceptions are notable.

First, massive uterine myonecrosis can be caused by group A β-hemolytic streptococcal or clostridial infections (Kaiser, 2018; Soper, 2011). Those with early-onset disease present with findings listed in Table 50-6. The mortality rate in these women with gangrene, shown in Figure 50-6 is high, and prompt hysterectomy may be lifesaving. Group A β-hemolytic streptococci and clostridial colonization or infection also cause toxic-shock syndrome without obvious gangrene (Mason, 2012). These are due to either streptococcal toxic shock syndrome–like toxin or clostridial exotoxin that evolved from *S aureus* (Chap. 37, p. 659). In many of these cases, bacteremia and widespread tissue invasion develops, but uterine and abdominal incisions are intact. If uterine necrosis can be excluded—usually by CT scanning—then in our experiences, as well as in others, hysterectomy may not be necessary (Soper, 2011). Still, these infections can be highly lethal (Chen, 2019; Yamada, 2010).

A second exception, necrotizing fasciitis of the episiotomy site or of the abdominal surgical incision, is a surgical emergency. Described by Gallup and coworkers (2002), these infections are aggressively managed as discussed in Chapter 37 (p. 655). In one instance, Sinha and colleagues (2015) described a woman with *Fournier gangrene* who required radical debridement and colostomy.

TABLE 50-6. Clinical Findings in 126 Women with Group A β-Hemolytic Streptococcal Infection

High fever
Respiratory symptoms
Gastrointestinal symptoms
Uterine hypertonus
Uterine tenderness
Capillary leak
Dyspnea, cough
Pulmonary edema
Bloating, distention
Shock

Data from Kaiser, 2018; Yamada, 2010.

Third, persistent or aggressive postpartum uterine infection with necrosis, uterine incision dehiscence, and severe peritonitis may lead to sepsis (Chap. 37, p. 651). In this regard, women following cesarean delivery who are suspected of having peritonitis should be carefully evaluated for uterine incisional necrosis or bowel perforation. These infections tend to be less aggressive than necrotizing group A streptococcal infections and develop later postpartum. CT imaging of the abdomen and pelvis can frequently disclose these. If either is suspected, timely surgical exploration is considered. With uterine incision necrosis, hysterectomy is usually necessary (Fig. 37-5, p. 657). Last, peritonitis and sepsis much less commonly may result from a ruptured parametrial, intraabdominal, or ovarian abscess (Chap. 37, p. 656).

Adjunctive Therapy

A woman with severe sepsis is supported with continuing crystalloid infusion, blood transfusions, and ventilation. In some cases, other measures are needed. Vasoactive drugs are not given unless aggressive fluid treatment fails to correct hypotension and perfusion abnormalities. First-line vasopressors are norepinephrine and vasopressin (Seymour, 2018). According to the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2019), norepinephrine has been studied most in pregnant women.

Glucocorticoid use in this setting remains controversial, and some but not all studies show a favorable effect (Marik, 2018; Venkatesh, 2018). In a recent study by Annane and colleagues (2018), hydrocortisone plus fludrocortisone compared with placebo resulted in a significantly lower mortality rate at 90 days. Thus, low-dose corticosteroid therapy can be considered with septic shock (Suffredini, 2018).

Endotoxin stimulates endothelial cells to upregulate tissue factor and thus procoagulant production (Cunningham, 2015). Consumptive coagulopathy associated with sepsis is discussed in Chapter 44 (p. 776). At the same time, endotoxin decreases the anticoagulant action of activated protein C. Several agents developed to block coagulation, however, do not improve outcomes. Last, induced hypothermia does not improve survival in patients with septic shock and respiratory failure (Itenov, 2018).

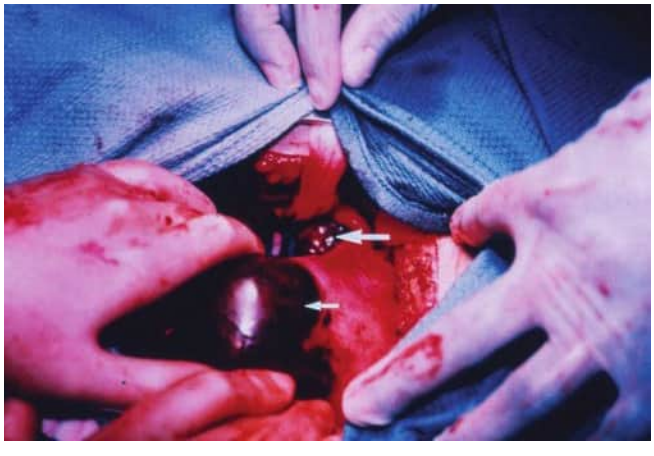


FIGURE 50-6 A fatal case of group A β-hemolytic *Streptococcus pyogenes* puerperal infection following an uncomplicated vaginal delivery at term. The infection caused uterine gangrene and overwhelming sepsis. Arrows point to overtly "ballooned-out" black gangrenous areas of the postpartum uterus at the time of laparotomy for hysterectomy.

TRAUMA

Depending on definitions used, 10 to 20 percent of gravidas suffer physical trauma (Al-Thani, 2018; Mendez-Figueroa, 2017). Moreover, injury-related deaths are the most commonly identified nonobstetrical cause of maternal mortality (Huls, 2018; La Rosa, 2020). According to Deshpande and coworkers (2017), pregnant victims of trauma are twice as likely to die compared with nonpregnant affected women. In an audit from Parkland Hospital, motor vehicle accidents and falls accounted for 85 percent of injuries sustained by gravidas (Hawkins, 2007). From the National Violent Death Reporting System, Palladino and colleagues (2011) found 2 pregnancy-associated suicides per 100,000 live births. The rate was 3 per 100,000 for pregnancy-associated homicides. Notably, intimate partner violence may be linked to these suicides (Chisholm, 2017). Last, injury prevention and education of high-risk patients may help decrease morbidity rates (Globevnik, 2018).

■ Intimate Partner Violence

According to the CDC, intimate partner violence (IPV) describes physical, sexual, or psychological harm by a current or former partner or spouse (Breiding, 2015). Such violence affects 1 in 5 women in their lifetime (Miller, 2019). One goal in violence prevention for *Healthy People 2020* is the reduction of physical abuse directed at women by male partners.

Even more appalling is that IPV continues during pregnancy (Hahn, 2018). Abuse is linked to poverty, poor education, and use of tobacco, alcohol, and illicit drugs. Unfortunately, abused women tend to remain with their abusers, and one major risk factor for intimate partner homicide is prior IPV (Globevnik, 2018). Last, women seeking pregnancy termination have a higher incidence of IPV (Bourassa, 2007).

In one study, pregnant women hospitalized in California as a result of assault had significantly increased perinatal morbidity rates (El Kady, 2005). Immediate sequelae were uterine rupture, preterm delivery, and maternal and perinatal death. Subsequent outcomes included higher rates of placental abruption, preterm

TABLE 50-7. Guidelines for Prophylaxis Against Sexually Transmitted Disease in Pregnant Victims of Sexual Assault

Prophylaxis Against	Regimen[a]	Alternative
Neisseria gonorrhoeae	Ceftriaxone 250 mg IM single dose ***plus*** Azithromycin 1 g single dose	Cefixime 400 mg single dose ***plus*** azithromycin 1 g single dose
Chlamydia trachomatis	Azithromycin 1 g single dose[b] ***or*** Amoxicillin 500 mg three times daily for 7 days	Erythromycin-base 500 mg four times daily for 7 days
Trichomonas vaginalis	Metronidazole 2 g single dose ***or*** Tinidazole 2 g single dose	Metronidazole 500 mg twice daily for 7 days
Hepatitis B (HBV)	If not previously vaccinated, give first dose HBV vaccine IM, repeat at 1–2 and 4–6 months	
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)	If exposure ≤72 h ago, consider antiretroviral prophylaxis if risk for HIV exposure is high	Tenofovir disoproxil fumarate/emtricitabine (Truvada) once daily plus raltegravir 400 mg (Isentress) twice daily for 28 days

[a]Oral administration unless otherwise stated.
[b]For nonpregnant women, doxycycline, 100 mg orally twice daily for 7 days, can be given instead.
IM = intramuscularly.
From Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2015, 2016.

and low-birthweight newborns, and other adverse outcomes. Silverman and associates (2006) reported similar results from the Pregnancy Risk Assessment Monitoring System. In a meta-analysis, women suffering IPV had threefold increased risk for perinatal death (Pastor-Moreno, 2020).

The American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) recommend universal screening for IPV at the initial prenatal visit, during each trimester, and again at the postpartum visit (Chap. 10, p. 180). A challenge in these recommendations is that women who refuse to answer the screening question for IPV may be most at risk (Yost, 2005). Moreover, the woman who is physically abused tends to present late, if at all, for prenatal care.

Sexual Assault

The lifetime prevalence of sexual assault in the United States is 20 percent (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c; Vrees, 2017). Satin and associates (1992) reviewed more than 5700 female sexual assault victims in Dallas County and reported that 2 percent were pregnant. Associated physical trauma is common. From a forensic standpoint, the evidence collection protocol is not altered (Linden, 2011).

In addition to attention to physical injuries, exposure to sexually transmitted diseases must be considered. The CDC (2015, 2016) recommends antimicrobial prophylaxis against gonorrhea, chlamydial infection, and trichomoniasis (Table 50-7). At Parkland Hospital, we also offer at-risk exposed assault victims HIV prophylaxis. If the woman is not pregnant, another very important aspect is emergency contraception, as recommended by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a; 2019c) and discussed in Chapter 38 (p. 676).

Last, the importance of psychological counseling for the rape victim and her family cannot be overemphasized. As discussed in Chapter 64 (p. 1142), a 30- to 35-percent lifetime risk each for posttraumatic stress disorder, major depression, and suicide contemplation follows sexual assault (Linden, 2011).

Automobile Accidents

At least 3 percent of pregnant women are involved in motor vehicle accidents each year in the United States. These crashes account for 90 percent of nonviolent blunt trauma in pregnancy (Sakamoto, 2019). Thus, they are the most common causes of serious, life-threatening, or fatal blunt trauma during pregnancy (Al-Thani, 2018; Greco, 2019; Petrone, 2017). Mattox and Goetzl (2005) report these accidents to be the leading cause of traumatic fetal deaths as well. This also was true from our experiences from Parkland Hospital (Hawkins, 2007). As with all motor vehicle crashes, alcohol use is often associated. Up to half of accidents occur without seat-belt use, and many of these deaths would likely be preventable by the three-point restraints shown in Figure 50-7 (Schuster, 2016). Seat belts prevent contact with the steering wheel, and they reduce abdominal impact pressure.

Original concerns regarding injuries caused by airbag deployment have been somewhat allayed. In a retrospective cohort study that included 2207 pregnant women in crashes with airbag deployment, perinatal outcomes were not clinically different from 1141 controls without airbags (Schiff, 2010). Importantly, 96 percent of both groups used seat belts. Logically, it appears that injuries with airbag deployment are related to the severity of the crash (Mendez-Figueroa, 2017).

Other Blunt Trauma

Some other common causes of blunt trauma are falls and aggravated assaults. In the California review reported by El

FIGURE 50-7 Illustration showing correct use of three-point automobile restraint. The upper belt is *above* the uterus, and the lower belt fits snugly across the upper thighs and well *below* the uterus.

Kady and associates (2005), approximately a third of pregnant women who were hospitalized for trauma suffered intentionally inflicted injuries. Less common are blast or crush injury.

With blunt trauma, intraabdominal injuries can be serious. Even so, bowel injuries are less frequent because of the protective effect of a large uterus. Still, diaphragmatic, splenic, liver, and kidney damage also may be sustained. Particularly worrisome is the specter of amnionic-fluid embolism, which has been reported with even mild trauma (Ellingsen, 2007; Pluymakers, 2007). Retroperitoneal hemorrhage is likely more common than in nonpregnant women (Takehana, 2011).

Orthopedic injuries also are encountered with some regularity (Desai, 2007). From the Parkland Hospital trauma unit, 6 percent of 1682 pregnant women evaluated had orthopedic injuries. Additionally, this subset was at increased risk for placental abruption, preterm delivery, and perinatal mortality. In a review of 101 pelvic fractures during pregnancy, the maternal mortality rate was 9 percent, and the fetal rate was 35 percent (Leggon, 2002). In another study of pelvic and acetabular fractures during 15 pregnancies, one maternal and four fetal deaths were reported (Almog, 2007). Last, head trauma and neurosurgical care raise unique issues (Qaiser, 2007).

Fetal Injury and Death

Perinatal death rates rise with the severity of maternal injuries. Fetal death is more likely with direct fetoplacental injury, maternal shock, pelvic fracture, maternal head injury, or hypoxia (Mendez-Figueroa, 2017; Pearlman, 2008). In an earlier study, motor vehicle accidents caused 82 percent of fetal deaths from trauma. Death resulted from placental injury in half and from uterine rupture in 4 percent (Weiss, 2001).

Although uncommon, fetal skull and brain injuries are more likely if the head is engaged and the maternal pelvis is fractured. Conversely, fetal head injuries, presumably from a contrecoup effect, may be sustained in unengaged vertex or nonvertex presentations. Fetal skull fractures are rare and best seen using CT imaging (Sadro, 2012). One example is shown in Figure 50-8.

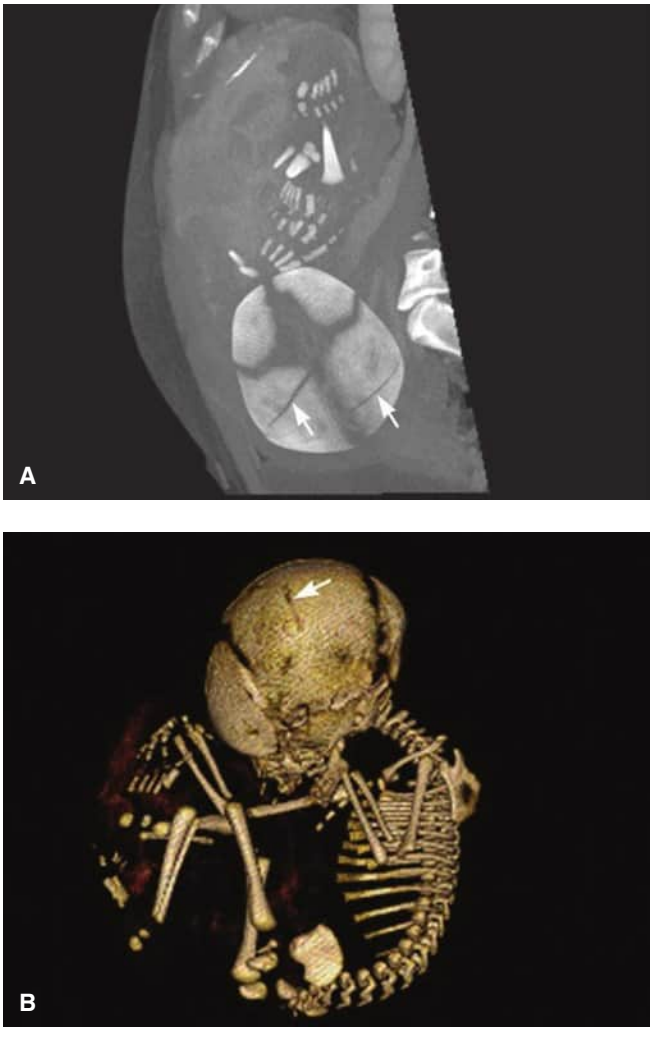


FIGURE 50-8 This woman in her third trimester was involved in a high-speed motor vehicle accident. **A.** Maximum intensity projection acquired for maternal indications readily identifies fetal skull fractures (*arrows*). **B.** Three-dimensional reformatted computed tomography (CT) image in a bone algorithm demonstrates the fetal skeleton from data acquired during the maternal examination. Again, the arrow marks one fracture site. (Photograph contributed by Dr. Travis Browning. Reproduced with permission from Bailey AA, Twickler DM: Perioperative imaging. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al [eds]: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

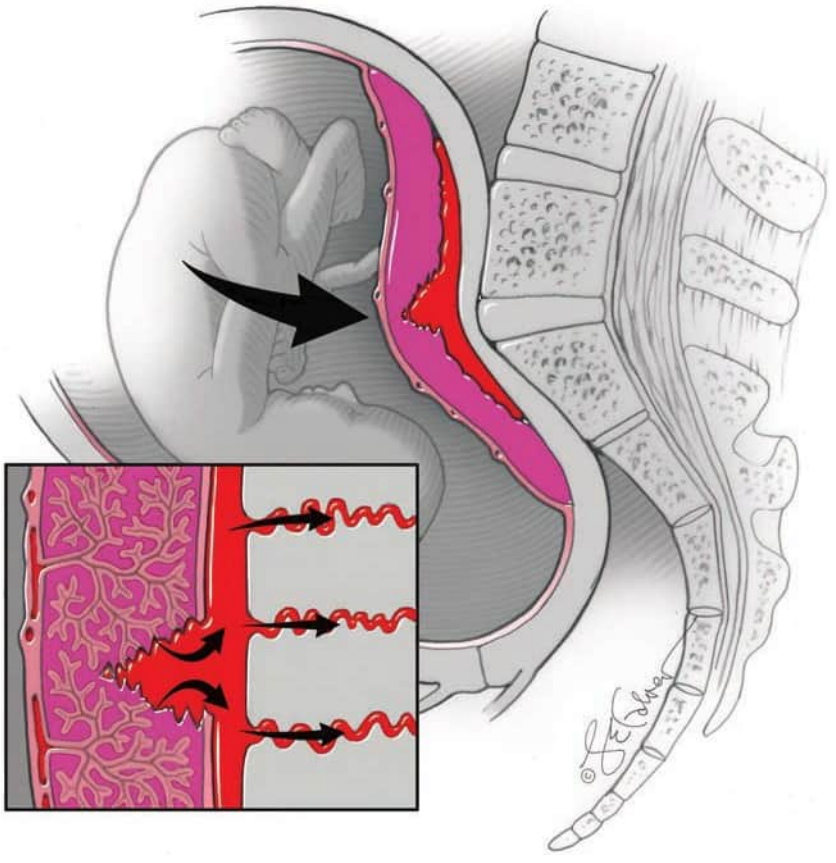


FIGURE 50-9 Mechanism of placental tear or "fracture" caused by a coup-contrecoup injury. Although not shown here, forward momentum of the uterus at the time of initial impact propels it forward. This is followed by a contrecoup, in which forces are directed backward. In this image, the inelastic placenta fractures against the sacral promontory. During each phase, tremendous intraabdominal pressure is generated that can lead to abruption, shown here as blood collecting in the retroplacental space. **Inset**. Blood can be forced into placental bed venules and enter maternal circulation. Such maternofetal hemorrhage may be identified with Kleihauer-Betke testing.

Intracranial hemorrhage may be another sequela (Gherman, 2014). Other injuries have included fetal decapitation or incomplete midabdominal fetal transection at midpregnancy (Rowe, 1996; Weir, 2008).

Placental Injuries

Catastrophic events that potentially accompany blunt trauma include placental abruption or placental tear or both. Placental abruption caused by trauma is likely due to deformation of the elastic myometrium around the relatively inelastic placenta (Crosby, 1968). This may result from a deceleration injury as the forward-moving uterus meets the immovable steering wheel or seat belt. Instead, placental injury may follow a contrecoup injury, which is illustrated in Figure 50-9.

Some degree of abruption complicates 1 to 6 percent of minor injuries and up to 50 percent of major ones (Schiff, 2002). Abruption is more likely if vehicle speed exceeds 30 mph (Reis, 2000).

Clinical findings with traumatic abruption may be similar to those for spontaneous placental abruption (Chap. 42, p. 753). Kettel and coworkers (1988) emphasized that traumatic abruption may be occult and not accompanied by uterine pain, tenderness, or bleeding. In our experiences with 13 such women at Parkland Hospital, 11 had uterine tenderness, but only five had vaginal bleeding. Because traumatic abruption is more likely to be concealed and generate higher intrauterine pressures, associated coagulopathy is more often seen than with atraumatic abruption (Cunningham, 2015). Partial separation also may generate uterine activity, which is described more fully later (p. 896). Evidence of fetal compromise such as fetal tachycardia, sinusoidal pattern, late decelerations, acidosis, and fetal death are other worrisome features. CT imaging has been shown to be accurate for diagnosis of traumatic abruption (Kopelman, 2013, 2016; Sadro, 2012). However, because routine placental evaluation by radiologists is not common, these authors did not advocate for CT screening for abruption.

With a placental tear, life-threatening fetal hemorrhage may follow, and blood enters either the amnionic sac or maternal circulation. As shown in Figure 50-10, the tear is linear or stellate. Also shown is a Kleihauer-Betke stain of maternal blood that is used to quantify fetomaternal hemorrhage. A small amount of fetal-maternal bleeding has been described in up to a third of trauma cases, and in 90 percent of these, the volume is <15 mL (Pearlman, 1990). Parenthetically, atraumatic placental abruption is much less often associated with significant fetomaternal hemorrhage because only minimal fetal blood enters into the intervillous space. With traumatic abruption, however, massive fetomaternal hemorrhage may follow. In one study, the risk of associated uterine contractions and preterm labor was 20-fold if there was evidence for a fetomaternal bleed (Muench, 2004). With severe fetal bleeding, long-term adverse neurological outcomes are frequent (Kadooka, 2014).

Uterine Rupture

Blunt trauma leads to uterine rupture in <1 percent of severe cases (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017a; Greco, 2019). Rupture is more likely in a previously scarred uterus and is usually associated with a direct impact of substantial force. Decelerative forces following a 25-mph collision can generate up to 500 mm Hg of intrauterine pressure in a properly restrained woman (Crosby, 1968). Clinical findings may be identical to those for placental abruption with an intact uterus, and maternal and fetal deterioration are inevitable. Weir and colleagues (2008) described supracervical uterine avulsion and fetal transection at 22 weeks.

Penetrating Trauma

In a study of 321 pregnant women with abdominal trauma, Petrone (2011) reported a 9-percent incidence of penetrating

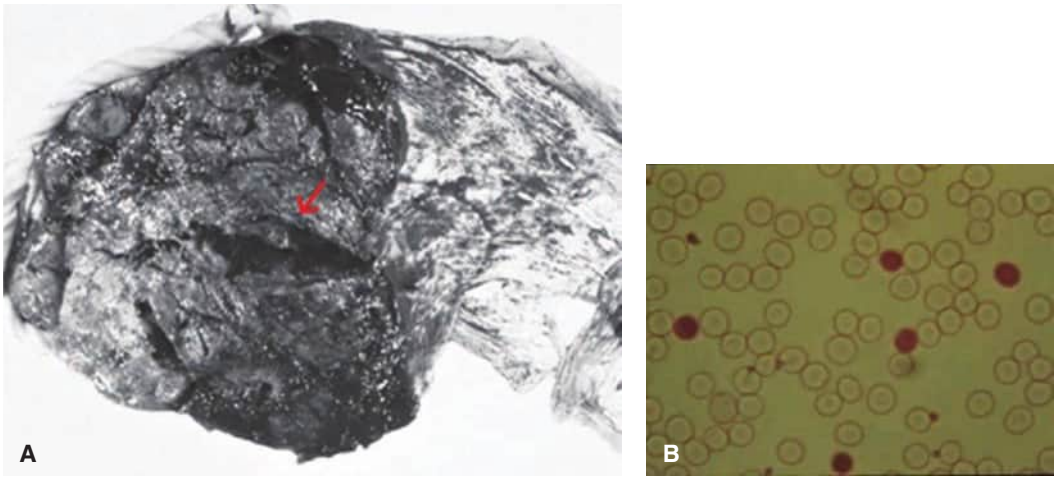


FIGURE 50-10 A. Partial placental abruption in which the adherent blood clot has been removed. Note the laceration of the placenta (*arrow*), which caused fetal death from massive fetomaternal hemorrhage. **B.** Kleihauer–Betke stain of a peripheral smear of maternal blood from the same woman. The dark cells containing hemoglobin that constituted 4.5 percent of red blood cells are fetal in origin, whereas the empty cells are maternal.

injuries. Of these, 77 percent were gunshot wounds, and 23 percent were stab wounds. The incidence of maternal visceral injury with penetrating trauma is only 15 to 40 percent compared with 80 to 90 percent in nonpregnant individuals (Stone, 1999). However, the large, intervening uterus is disproportionately involved (Awwad, 1994). When the uterus sustains penetrating wounds, the fetus is more likely than the mother to be seriously injured. The fetus sustains injury in two thirds of cases, whereas maternal visceral damage is seen in only 20 percent. Still, their seriousness is underscored in that maternal-fetal mortality rates are significantly higher than those seen with blunt abdominal injuries. Specifically, maternal mortality rates were 7 versus 2 percent, and fetal mortality rates were 73 versus 10 percent, respectively.

Management of Trauma

As discussed, maternal and fetal outcomes are directly related to injury severity. That said, commonly used methods of severity scoring do not account for the significant morbidity and mortality rates related to placental abruption and thus to pregnancy outcomes. In a study of 582 pregnant women hospitalized for injuries, the injury severity score did not accurately predict adverse pregnancy outcomes (Schiff, 2005). Importantly, relatively minor injuries were associated with preterm labor and placental abruption. In a study of 317 women at ≥24 weeks' gestation who had "minor trauma," 14 percent had clinically significant uterine contractions requiring extended fetal evaluation past 4 hours (Cahill, 2008).

With few exceptions, treatment priorities in injured pregnant women are multidisciplinary (MacArthur, 2019; Mendez-Figueroa, 2017). Primary goals are to evaluate and stabilize maternal injuries. Attention to fetal assessment during the acute evaluation may divert attention from life-threatening maternal injuries (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017). Basic rules of resuscitation include ventilation, arrest of hemorrhage, and treatment of hypovolemia with crystalloid and blood products. After midpregnancy, the large uterus is positioned off the great vessels to relieve vessel compression, which decreases cardiac output (Nelson, 2015).

Following emergency resuscitation, fractures, internal injuries, bleeding sites, and placental, uterine, and fetal trauma are sought (Greco, 2019; MacArthur, 2019). Radiography is not proscribed, but special attention is given each indication. Not surprisingly, one report observed that pregnant trauma victims had less radiation exposure than nonpregnant controls (Ylagan, 2008). Some advocate screening abdominal sonography followed by CT scanning for positive sonographic findings (Saphier, 2014). Procedures used include the *FAST scan—focused assessment with sonography for trauma.* This is a 5-minute, four- to six-view imaging study that evaluates perihepatic, perisplenic, pelvic, and pericardial views (Mendez-Figueroa, 2017). In nonpregnant women, if fluid is seen in the upper abdominal views, the hemoperitoneum volume is >500 mL (Fig. 50-11)

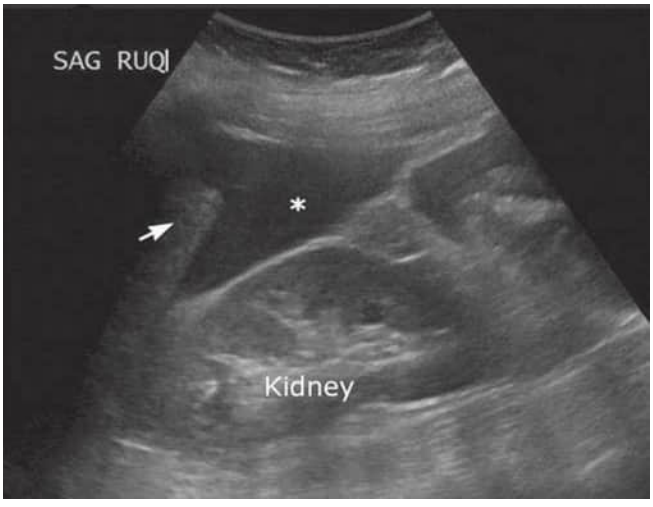


FIGURE 50-11 Fast scan. Upper quadrant scans show free fluid (blood) between the liver and kidney (Morison pouch) and around the spleen. The patient had 2500 mL of blood in the peritoneal cavity. (Reproduced with permission from Mendez-Figueroa H, Rouse DJ: Trauma in pregnancy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al [eds]: Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2017.)

(Branney, 1995; Rodgerson, 2001). Importantly, this amount has not been corroborated for pregnancy. In some cases, open peritoneal lavage may be informative (Tsuei, 2006).

Penetrating injuries in most cases must be evaluated using radiography. Because clinical response to peritoneal irritation is blunted during pregnancy, an aggressive approach to exploratory laparotomy is pursued. Whereas exploration is mandatory for abdominal gunshot wounds, some clinicians advocate close observation for selected stab wounds. Diagnostic laparoscopy also has been used (Chap. 49, p. 868).

Cesarean Delivery

The necessity for cesarean delivery depends on several factors. Laparotomy itself is not an indication for hysterotomy. Some considerations include gestational age, fetal condition, extent of uterine injury, and whether the large uterus hinders adequate management of other intraabdominal injuries (Tsuei, 2006).

Electronic Monitoring

Because fetal well-being may reflect the status of the mother, fetal monitoring is another "vital sign" that helps evaluate the extent of maternal injuries. Even if the mother is stable, electronic monitoring may suggest placental abruption. In a study by Pearlman and coworkers (1990), no woman had an abruption if uterine contractions were less often than every 10 minutes within the 4 hours after trauma was sustained. Almost 20 percent of women who had contractions more frequently than every 10 minutes in the first 4 hours had an associated placental abruption. In these cases, abnormal tracings were common and included fetal tachycardia and late decelerations. Conversely, no adverse outcomes were reported in women who had normal monitor tracings (Connolly, 1997). Importantly, if tocolytics are used for these contractions, they may obfuscate findings, and we do not recommend them.

Because placental abruption usually develops early following trauma, fetal monitoring is begun as soon as the mother is stable. The ideal duration of posttrauma monitoring is not precisely known. From data just cited, observation for 4 hours is reasonable if the fetal heart rate tracing is normal and no other sentinel findings such as contractions, uterine tenderness, or bleeding are noted. Certainly, monitoring should be continued as long as there are uterine contractions, nonreassuring fetal heart patterns, vaginal bleeding, uterine tenderness or irritability, serious maternal injury, or ruptured membranes (Mendez-Figueroa, 2017). In rare cases, placental abruption has developed days after trauma (Higgins, 1984).

Fetal-Maternal Hemorrhage

It is unclear whether routine use of the Kleihauer-Betke or an equivalent test in pregnant trauma victims might modify adverse outcomes associated with fetal anemia, cardiac arrhythmias, and death (Pak, 1998). In a retrospective review of 125 pregnant women with blunt injuries, the Kleihauer-Betke test was judged to be of little value during acute trauma management (Towery, 1993). Others have reached similar conclusions, although a positive test result with fetal cells composing 0.1 percent predicted uterine contractions or preterm labor (Muench, 2003, 2004).

For the woman who is D-negative, administration of anti-D immunoglobulin should be considered (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017b). This may be omitted if a test result for fetal bleeding is negative. Even with anti-D immunoglobulin, alloimmunization may still develop if the fetal-maternal hemorrhage exceeds 15 mL of fetal cells. Immunoglobulin dose calculations are described in Chapter 18 (p. 357).

For the pregnant trauma patient, confirmation of current tetanus immunization status is pertinent. When indicated, a dose of tetanus toxoid, reduced diphtheria toxoid, and acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccine is preferred for its neonatal pertussis immunity benefits (Chap. 10, p. 188).

THERMAL INJURY

Treatment of the burned gravida is similar to that for nonpregnant individuals (Correia-Sa, 2021). It is generally agreed that pregnancy does not alter maternal outcome from thermal injury compared with that of nonpregnant women of similar age. As perhaps expected, maternal and fetal survival parallels the percentage of burned surface area. Karimi and colleagues (2009) reported higher mortality rates for both with burns from suicide attempts and inhalational injuries. The composite mortality rate for more than 200 women from six studies rose in a linear fashion as the percentage of burned body surface area increased (Fig. 50-12). For 20-, 40-, and 60-percent burns, the maternal mortality rates were approximately 4, 30, and 93 percent, respectively. The corresponding fetal mortality rates were 20, 48, and 96 percent, respectively. With severe burns, the woman usually enters labor spontaneously within a few days to a week and often delivers a stillborn. Contributory factors are hypovolemia, pulmonary injury, septicemia, and the burn-associated, intense catabolic state (Radosevich, 2013).

Following serious abdominal burns, skin contractures that develop may be painful during a subsequent pregnancy and may even require surgical decompression and split-skin autografts (Mitsukawa, 2015; Radosevich, 2013). Loss or distortion of nipples may cause problems in breastfeeding. Mitsukawa and associates (2015) reported that contracture release was indicated with scars spanning >75 percent of the total abdominal area. Alternatively, normal abdominal tissue expansion due to

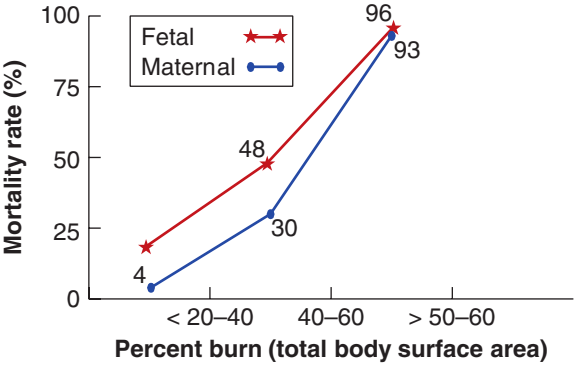


FIGURE 50-12 Maternal and fetal mortality rates by burn severity in 211 women. (Data from Akhtar, 1994; Amy, 1985; Mabrouk, 1977; Maghsoudi, 2006; Rayburn, 1984; Rode, 1990.)

pregnancy appears to be an excellent source for obtaining skin grafts postpartum to correct scar deformities at other body sites (Del Frari, 2004).

■ Electrical and Lightning Injuries

Earlier case reports suggested a high fetal mortality rate with electric shock (Fatovich, 1993). In a prospective cohort study, however, Einarson and associates (1997) showed similar perinatal outcomes in 31 injured women compared with those of noninjured controls. They concluded that traditional 110-volt North American electrical current likely is less dangerous than the 220-volt currents available in Europe. Thermal burns with electrocution may be extensive, and a woman with brain death from cardiac arrest has been described (Sparic, 2014).

The pathophysiological effects of lightning injuries can be devastating. García Gutiérrez and colleagues (2005) reviewed 13 case reports of lightning injuries during pregnancy and cited a 50-percent stillbirth rate.

CARDIOPULMONARY RESUSCITATION

Maternal cardiac arrest complicates from 1 in 12,000 to 36,000 delivery admissions (Balki, 2017; Beckett, 2017; Zelop, 2018). The most common causes are hemorrhage, anesthesia, heart failure, amnionic-fluid embolism, and sepsis. Shown in Table 50-8 is the alphabetical A–H checklist of cardiac arrest causes. General topics regarding planning and equipment have been reviewed by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018b) and the Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology (Lipman, 2014).

Special considerations for cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) conducted in the second half of pregnancy are outlined in the American Heart Association 2010 guidelines (Jeejeebhoy, 2015). The committee acknowledges the following as standards: (1) relieve possible vena caval compression by left lateral uterine displacement; (2) administer 100-percent oxygen; (3) establish intravenous access above the diaphragm; (4) assess for hypotension that warrants therapy, which is defined as systolic blood pressure <100 mm Hg or <80 percent of baseline; and (5) review possible causes of critical illness and treat these as early as possible.

TABLE 50-8. Possible Etiologies for Cardiac Arrest During Pregnancy

Anesthesia: high neuraxial block, intravenous local anesthetic, airway complications
Accidents: trauma
Bleeding: atony, abnormal placentation, DIC
Cardiovascular: valvar or congenital heart disease, arrhythmias, ischemia, aortic dissection
Drugs: tocolysis, overdose, anaphylaxis, uterotonics, magnesium sulfate
Embolism: venous, amnionic fluid
Fever: sepsis, viral syndromes, ARDS
General: metabolic abnormalities, hypocalcemia or hyperkalemia with massive hemorrhage
Hypertension: shock, preeclampsia syndrome, HELLP syndrome

ARDS = acute respiratory distress syndrome; DIC = disseminated intravascular coagulation; HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver transaminases, low platelets.
Adapted from Jeejeebhoy, 2015; Soar, 2021; Zelop, 2018.

TABLE 50-9. High-Quality Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation in Pregnancy

Components
Place provider hands in lower half of sternum
Displace uterus laterally during resuscitation
Provide rapid chest compressions (100 per minute)
Achieve a compression depth of at least 2 inches
Assure adequate chest recoil between compressions
Minimize interruptions of chest compressions
Avoid prolonged pulse checks (no more than 5–10 seconds)
Resume chest compressions immediately after defibrillating
Switch provider of compressions every 2 minutes to avoid fatigue

The position of the heart for external compressions is not different from that in nonpregnant women (Holmes, 2015). In nonpregnant women, external chest compressions result in a cardiac output that is approximately 30 percent of normal. However, in late pregnancy, this may be less because of uterine aortocaval compression (Nelson, 2015). Thus, uterine displacement should accompany other resuscitative efforts. This can be accomplished by tilting the operating table laterally, by placing a wedge under the right hip, or by pushing the uterus to the left manually (Rose, 2015). Components of high-quality cardiopulmonary resuscitation in pregnancy are shown in Table 50-9 (Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine, 2018).

■ Perimortem Cesarean Delivery

The maternal survival rate from cardiac arrest is 60 to 70 percent, and many deaths are associated with out-of-hospital arrest (Beckett, 2017; He, 2021). Because of pregnancy-induced hindrances on CPR efforts, emergent *perimortem cesarean delivery* for improved maternal resuscitation and fetal salvage is recommended by most. Specifically, the American Heart Association and the Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology recommend operative delivery within 4 to 5 minutes of beginning CPR if the fetus is viable and circulation is not restored (Zelop, 2018). In women delivered by perimortem cesarean, neurologically intact neonatal survival and the cardiac arrest-to-delivery interval are inversely related (Beckett, 2017; Katz, 2012). Specifically, of newborns delivered within 5 minutes of arrest, 98 percent are neurologically intact; within 6 to 15 minutes, 83 percent are intact; within 16 to 25 minutes, 33 percent are intact; and within 26 to 35 minutes, only 25 percent are intact (Clark, 1997).

This serious and sometimes contentious issue is far from evidence based. For example, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) recommends *consideration* for

perimortem cesarean delivery beginning at 4 minutes. Katz and associates (2005) reviewed 38 perimortem cesarean deliveries with a "large selection bias." They concluded that these reports supported—but "fell far from proving"—that perimortem cesarean delivery within 4 minutes of maternal cardiac arrest improves maternal and fetal outcomes. Even so, as emphasized by Clark (1997) and Rose (2015) and their coworkers, and in our experiences, these goals rarely can be met in actual practice. For example, many cases of cardiac arrest occur in uncontrolled circumstances, and thus, the time to CPR initiation alone would consume the first 5 minutes. Thus "crash" cesarean delivery would supersede resuscitative efforts, would possibly be done without appropriate anesthesia or surgical equipment, and might lead to otherwise preventable maternal death. Moreover, the distinction between a perimortem versus postmortem cesarean operation is imperative (Katz, 2012; Rose, 2015). Last, in the balance, any choice *may* favor survival of the mother over the fetus, or vice versa, and thus there are immediate unresolvable ethical concerns. Katz (2012) and Zelop and colleagues (2018) have provided scholarly reviews of perimortem cesarean delivery.

Successful CPR can have morbid complications. Severe neurological injury is the most feared (Romagano, 2017). Cox and coworkers (2018) described liver lacerations in 3 of 7 survivors. Takotsubo cardiomyopathy also has been reported (Kraft, 2017).

Maternal Brain Death

Occasionally, a pregnant woman with a supposedly healthy intact fetus will be kept on somatic support to await fetal viability or maturity. This is discussed in Chapter 63 (p. 1138).

ENVENOMATION

According to their review, Brown and coworkers (2013) reported that clinically significant envenomations in pregnant women are from snakes, spiders, scorpions, jellyfish, and hymenoptera. This last group includes bees, wasps, hornets, and ants. Adverse outcomes are related to maternal effects. Available evidence supports a venom-specific approach that incorporates symptomatic care, antivenom administration when appropriate, anaphylaxis treatment, and fetal assessment (Ghosh, 2018). One management scheme for North American snakebites was provided by Lei and associates (2015).

REFERENCES

Akhtar MA, Mulawkar PM, Kulkarni HR: Burns in pregnancy: effect on maternal and fetal outcomes. Burns 20:351, 1994

Albright CM, Has P, Rouse DJ, et al: Internal validation of the sepsis in obstetrics score to identify risk of morbidity from sepsis in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 130(4):747, 2017

Almog G, Liebergall M, Tsafrir A, et al: Management of pelvic fractures during pregnancy. Am J Orthop 36:E153, 2007

Al-Thani H, El-Menyar A, Sathian B, et al: Blunt traumatic injury during pregnancy: a descriptive analysis from a level 1 trauma center. Eur J Trauma Emerg Surg 45(3):393, 2019

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Washington, 2017

American College of Critical Care Medicine, Society of Critical Care Medicine: Guidelines on admission and discharge for adult intermediate care units. Crit Care Med 26:607, 1998

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Hypertension in pregnancy: report of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' task force on hypertension in pregnancy. Executive summary. Obstet Gynecol 122:1122, 2013

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Critical care in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 170, October 2016, Reaffirmed 2017a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention of Rh D alloimmunization. Practice Bulletin No. 181, August 2017b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Emergency contraception. Practice Bulletin No. 152, September 2015, Reaffirmed 2018a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Preparing for clinical emergencies in obstetrics and gynecology. Committee Opinion No. 590, March 2014, Reaffirmed 2018b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Critical care in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 211, April 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Sexual assault. Committee Opinion No. 777, April 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Gestational hypertension and preeclampsia. Practice Bulletin No. 222, May 2020

Amy BW, McManus WF, Goodwin CW, et al: Thermal injury in the pregnant patient. Surg Gynecol Obstet 161:209, 1985

Annane D, Renault A, Brun-Buisson C, et al: Hydrocortisone plus fludrocortisone for adults with septic shock. N Engl J Med 378(9):809, 2018

Awwad JT, Azar GB, Seoud MA, et al: High-velocity penetrating wounds of the gravid uterus: Review of 16 years of civil war. Obstet Gynecol 83(2):259, 1994

Bailey AA, Twickler DM: Perioperative imaging. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017

Balki M, Liu S, León JA, et al: Epidemiology of cardiac arrest during hospitalization for delivery in Canada: a nationwide study. Anesth Analg 124(3):890, 2017

Baron RM, Levey BD: Acute respiratory distress syndrome: In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2030

Bauer ME, Lorenz RP, Bauer ST, et al: Maternal deaths due to sepsis in the state of Michigan, 1999–2006. Obstet Gynecol 126(4):747, 2015

Beckett VA, Knight M, Sharpe P: The CAPS Study: incidence, management and outcomes of cardiac arrest in pregnancy in the UK: a prospective, descriptive study. BJOG 124(9):1374, 2017

Beesley SJ, Weber G, Sarge T, et al: Septic cardiomyopathy. Crit Care Med 46(4):625, 2018

Bourassa D, Bérubé J: The prevalence of intimate partner violence among women and teenagers seeking abortion compared with those continuing pregnancy. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 29:415, 2007

Branney SW, Wolfe RE, Moore EE, et al: Quantitative sensitivity of ultrasound in detecting free intraperitoneal fluid. J Trauma 40(6):1052, 1995

Breiding MJ, Basile KC, Smith SG, et al: Intimate partner violence surveillance: uniform definitions and recommended data elements. Version 2.0, 2015. Available at: www.cdc.gov/violenceprevention/pdf/intimatepartnerviolence.pdf. Accessed October 9, 2019

Brown SA, Seifert SA, Rayburn WF: Management of envenomations during pregnancy. Clin Toxicol 51:3, 2013

Cahill AG, Bastek JA, Stamilio DM, et al: Minor trauma in pregnancy—is the evaluation unwarranted? Am J Obstet Gynecol 198:208.e1, 2008

Caironi P, Tognoni G, Masson S, et al: Albumin replacement in patients with severe sepsis or septic shock. N Engl J Med 370(15):1412, 2014

Callaghan WM, Creanga AA, Kuklina EV: Severe maternal morbidity among delivery and postpartum hospitalizations in the United States. Obstet Gynecol 120(5):1029, 2012

Cecconi M, Evans L, Levy M, et al: Sepsis and septic shock. Lancet 392(10141):75, 2018

Celli BR: Mechanical ventilatory support. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2035

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2015. MMWR 64(3):1, 2015

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Updated guidelines for antiretroviral postexposure prophylaxis after sexual, injection drug use, or other nonoccupational exposure to HIV-United States, 2016. MMWR 65:458, 2016

Chantry AA, Deneux-Tharaux C, Bonnet MP, et al: Pregnancy-related ICU admissions in France: trends in rate and severity, 2006–2009. Crit Care Med 43:78, 2015

Chebbo A, Tan S, Kassis C, et al: Maternal sepsis and septic shock. Crit Care Clin 32(1):119, 2016

Chen AX, Simpson SQ, Pallin DJ: Sepsis guidelines. N Engl J Med 380(14):1369, 2019

Chisholm CA, Bullock L, Ferguson JEJ II, et al: Intimate partner violence and pregnancy: epidemiology and impact. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(2):141, 2017
Clark SL, Cotton DB, Hankins GD, et al: Critical Care Obstetrics, 3rd ed. Boston, Blackwell Science, 1997
Clark SL, Cotton DB, Lee W, et al: Central hemodynamic assessment of normal term pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 161:1439, 1989
Clifford C, Mhatre M, Craigo S: Successful use of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for status asthmaticus in a woman with a periviable pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 132(4):1007, 2018
Close A, Gimovsky A, Macri C: Adult respiratory distress disorders due to Legionnaires disease in pregnancy: a case report. J Reprod Med 61(1–2):83, 2016
Combes A, Hajage D, Capellier G, et al: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for severe acute respiratory distress syndrome. N Engl J Med 378(21):1965, 2018
Connolly AM, Katz VL, Bash KL, et al: Trauma and pregnancy. Am J Perinatol 14:331, 1997
Correia-Sa I, Marques M, Horta R, et al: Experience in management of burn injury during pregnancy in a burn unit. J Burn Care Res 42:232, 2021
Cox TR, Crimmins SD, Shannon AM, et al: Liver lacerations as a complication of CPR during pregnancy. Resuscitation 122:121, 2018
Crosby WM, Snyder RG, Snow CC, et al: Impact injuries in pregnancy, 1. Experimental studies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 101:100, 1968
Cunningham FG, Byrne JJ, Nelson DB: Peripartum cardiomyopathy. Obstet Gynecol 133(1):167, 2019
Cunningham FG, Lucas MJ, Hankins GD: Pulmonary injury complicating antepartum pyelonephritis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 156:797, 1987
Cunningham FG, Nelson DB: Disseminated intravascular coagulation syndromes in obstetrics. Obstet Gynecol 126:999, 2015
Del Frari B, Pulzl P, Schoeller T, et al: Pregnancy as a tissue expander in the correction of a scar deformity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190:579, 2004
Dellinger RP, Levy MM, Rhodes A, et al: Surviving Sepsis Campaign: international guidelines for management of severe sepsis and septic shock: 2012. Crit Care Med 41(580), 2013
Dennis AT, Solnordal CB: Acute pulmonary oedema in pregnant women. Anaesthesia 67(6):646, 2012
Desai P, Suk M: Orthopedic trauma in pregnancy. Am J Orthop 36:E160, 2007
Deshpande NA, Kucirka LM, Smith RN, et al: Pregnant trauma victims experience nearly 2-fold higher mortality compared to their nonpregnant counterparts. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(5):590.e1, 2017
Duarte AG: ARDS in pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 57(4):862, 2014
Edwards SE, Grobman WA, Lappen JR, et al: Modified obstetric early warning scoring systems (MOEWS): validating the diagnostic performance for severe sepsis in women with chorioamnionitis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(4):536.e1, 2015
Einarson A, Bailey B, Inocencion G, et al: Accidental electric shock in pregnancy: a prospective cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 176:678, 1997
El Kady D, Gilbert WM, Xing G, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes of assaults during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 105:357, 2005
Ellingsen CL, Eggebo TM, Lexow K: Amniotic fluid embolism after blunt abdominal trauma. Resuscitation 75(1):180, 2007
Ende H, Varelmann D: Respiratory considerations including airway and ventilation issues in critical care obstetric patients. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 43(4):699, 2016
Eschenbach DA: Treating spontaneous and induced septic abortions. Obstet Gynecol 125(5):1042, 2015
Fan E, Brodie D, Slutsky AS: Acute respiratory distress syndrome: advances in diagnosis and treatment. JAMA 319(7):698, 2018
Fatovich DM: Electric shock in pregnancy. J Emerg Med 11:175, 1993
Friedman AM, Ananth CV, Huang Y, et al: Hospital delivery volume, severe obstetrical morbidity, and failure to rescue. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(6):795.e1, 2016
Fuchs A, McLaren R Jr, Saunders P, et al: Human metapneumovirus infection and acute respiratory distress syndrome during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 130(3):630, 2017
Gaffney A: Critical care in pregnancy—is it different? Semin Perinatol 38(6):329, 2014
Gallup DG, Freedman MA, Meguiar RV, et al: Necrotizing fasciitis in gynecologic and obstetric patients: a surgical emergency. Am J Obstet Gynecol 187:305, 2002
Gandhi S, Sun D, Park AL, et al: The Pulmonary Edema Preeclampsia Evaluation (PEPE) Study. J Obstet Gynaecol 36(12):1065, 2014
García Gutiérrez JJ, Meléndez J, Torrero JV, et al: Lightning injuries in a pregnant woman: a case report and review of the literature. Burns 31:1045, 2005
Gherman RB, Chauhan SP: Placental abruption and fetal intraventricular hemorrhage after airbag deployment: a case report. J Reprod Med 59(9–10):501, 2014
Ghosh N, Henderson JA, Kim HG, et al: Rattlesnake envenomation in the third trimester of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 132(3):682, 2018
Globevnik Vilikonja V, Lučovnik M, Premru Sršen T, et al: Violence before pregnancy and the risk of violence during pregnancy. J Perinat Med 46(1):29, 2018
Greco PS, Day LJ, Pearlman MD: Guidance for evaluation and management of blunt abdominal trauma in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 134:1343, 2019
Grobman WA, Bailit JL, Rice MM, et al: Can differences in obstetric outcomes be explained by differences in the care provided? The MFMU Network APEX study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 21(2):147e.1, 2014
Guntupalli KK, Hall N, Karnard DR, et al: Critical illness in pregnancy: part I: an approach to a pregnant patient in the ICU and common obstetric disorders. Chest 148(4):1093, 2015a
Guntupalli KK, Karnad DR, Bandi V, et al: Critical illness in pregnancy: part II: common medical conditions complicating pregnancy and puerperium. Chest 148(5):1333, 2015b
Hahn CK, Gilmore AK, Aguayo RO, et al: Perinatal intimate partner violence. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 45(3):535, 2018
Hankins GD, Wendel GD, Leveno KJ, et al: Myocardial infarction during pregnancy. A review. Obstet Gynecol 65:139, 1985
Hawkins JS, Casey BM, Minei J, et al: Outcomes after trauma in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197:S92, 2007
He F, Li RR, Liu PS, et al: Maternal cardiac arrest: a retrospective analysis. BJOG 128:1200, 2021
Herrera C, Meehan R, Podduturi V, et al: Maternal death due to Clostridium novyi in an injection drug user. Obstet Gynecol 128(4):876, 2016
Herridge MS, Cheung AM, Tansey CM, et al: One-year outcomes in survivors of the acute respiratory distress syndrome. N Engl J Med 348:683, 2003
Herridge MS, Tansey CM, Matté A, et al: Functional disability 5 years after acute respiratory distress syndrome. N Engl J Med 364(14):1293, 2011
Higgins SD, Garite TJ: Late abruptio placentae in trauma patients: implications for monitoring. Obstet Gynecol 63:10S, 1984
Holmes S, Kirkpatrick IDC, Zelop CM, et al: MRI evaluation of maternal cardiac displacement in pregnancy: implications for cardiopulmonary resuscitation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213:401.e1, 2015
Holst LB, Haase N, Wetterslev J, et al: Lower versus higher hemoglobin threshold for transfusion in septic shock. N Engl J Med 371(15):1381, 2014
Huls CK, Detlefs C: Trauma in pregnancy. Semin Perinatol 42(1):13, 2018
Itenov TS, Johansen ME, Bestle M, et al: Induced hypothermia in patients with septic shock and respiratory failure (CASS): a randomised, controlled, open-label trial. Lancet Respir Med 6(3):183, 2018
Jeejeebhoy FM, Zelop CM, Lipman S, et al: Cardiac arrest in pregnancy. Circulation 132(18):1747, 2015
Jenkins TM, Troiano NH, Graves CR, et al: Mechanical ventilation in an obstetric population: characteristics and delivery rates. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:439, 2003
Jessup M, Brozena S: Heart failure. N Engl J Med 348:2007, 2003
Kadooka M, Kato H, Kato A, et al: Effects of neonatal hemoglobin concentration on long-term outcome of infants affected by fetomaternal hemorrhage. Early Hum Dev 90(9):431, 2014
Kaiser JE, Bakian AV, Silver RM, et al: Clinical variables associated with adverse maternal outcomes in puerperal group A streptococci infection. Obstet Gynecol 132(1):179, 2018
Karimi H, Momeni M, Momeni M, et al: Burn injuries during pregnancy in Iran. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 104(2):132, 2009
Katz V, Balderston K, DeFreest M: Perimortem cesarean delivery: were our assumptions correct? Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:1916, 2005
Katz VL: Perimortem cesarean delivery: its role in maternal mortality. Semin Perinatol 36(1):68, 2012
Kenchaiah S, Evans JC, Levy D, et al: Obesity and the risk of heart failure. N Engl J Med 347:305, 2002
Kendle AM, Salemi JL, Tanner JP, et al: Delivery-associated sepsis: trends in prevalence and mortality. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(4):391.e1, 2019
Kettel LM, Branch DW, Scott JR: Occult placental abruption after maternal trauma. Obstet Gynecol 71:449, 1988
Kidson KM, Henderson WR, Hutcheon JA: Case fatality and adverse outcomes are reduced in pregnant women with severe sepsis or septic shock compared with age-matched comorbid-matched nonpregnant women. Crit Care Med 46(11):1775, 2018
Kilpatrick SJ, Abreo A, Gould J, et al: Confirmed severe maternal morbidity is associated with high rate of preterm. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(2):233.e1, 2016
Klevens RM, Morrison MA, Nadle J, et al: Invasive methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infections in the United States. JAMA 298 (15):1763, 2007
Kopelman TR, Bogert JN, Walters JW, et al: Computed tomographic imaging interpretation improves fetal outcomes after maternal trauma. J Trauma Acute Care Surg 81(6):1131, 2016

Kopelman TR, Manriquez NE, Gridley M, et al: The ability of computed tomography to diagnose placental abruption in the trauma patient. J Trauma Acute Care Surg 74(1):236, 2013

Kraft K, Graf M, Karch M, et al: Takotsubo syndrome after cardiopulmonary resuscitation during emergency cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 129(3):521, 2017

Krishnan S, Schmidt GA: Acute right ventricular dysfunction: real-time management with echocardiography. Chest 147(3):835, 2015

La Rosa M, Loaiza S, Zambrano MA, et al: Trauma in pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 63(2):447, 2020

Lapinsky SE, Rojas-Suarez JA, Crozier TM, et al: Mechanical ventilation in critically-ill pregnant women: a case series. Int J Obstet Anesth 24:323, 2015

Lappen JR, Keene M, Lore M, et al: Existing models fail to predict sepsis in an obstetric population with intrauterine infection. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203(6):537.e1, 2010

Leggon RE, Wood GC, Indeck MC: Pelvic fractures in pregnancy: factors influencing maternal and fetal outcomes. J Trauma 53:796, 2002

Lei C, Badowski NJ, Auerbach PS, et al: Disorders caused by venomous snakebites and marine animal exposures. In Kasper DL, Fauci AS, Hauser SL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 19th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2015, p 2736

Leonard A, Wright A, Saavedra-Campos M, et al: Sever group A streptococcal infections in mothers and their newborns in London and the South East, 2010–2016: assessment of risk and audit of public health management. BJOG 126(1):44, 2019

Linden JA: Care of the adult patient after sexual assault. N Engl J Med 365(9): 834, 2011

Lipman S, Cohen S, Einav S, et al: The Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology consensus statement on the management of cardiac arrest in pregnancy. Anesth Analg 118(5):1003, 2014

Liu C, Sun W, Wang C, et al: Delivery during extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) support of pregnant woman with severe respiratory distress syndrome caused by influenza: a case report and review of the literature. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(15):2570, 2019

Mabrouk AR, el-Feky AE: Burns during pregnancy: a gloomy outcome. Burns 23:596, 1977

MacArthur B, Foley M, Gray K, et al: Trauma in pregnancy: a comprehensive approach to the mother and fetus. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(5):465, 2019

Magder S: Invasive hemodynamic monitoring. Crit Care Clin 31(1):67, 2015

Maghsoudi H, Samnia R, Garadaghi A, et al: Burns in pregnancy. Burns 32: 246, 2006

Mallampalli A, Hanania A, Guntupalli KK: Acute lung injury and acute respiratory distress syndrome. In Belfort MA, Saade GR, Foley MR, et al (eds): Critical Care Obstetrics, 5th ed. Hoboken, Wiley-Blackwell, 2010, p 338

Marik PE: The role of glucocorticoids as adjunctive treatment for sepsis in the modern era. Lancet Respir Med 6(10):793, 2018

Martin L, Derwall M, Al Zoubi S, et al: The SEPTIC HEART current understanding of molecular mechanisms and clinical implications. Chest 155(2):427, 2019

Mason KL, Aronoff DM: Postpartum group A *Streptococcus* sepsis and maternal immunology. Am J Reprod Immunol 67(2):91, 2012

Matsushita H, Harada A, Sato T, et al: Fetal intracranial injuries following motor vehicle accidents with airbag deployment. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 40(2):599, 2014

Matthay MA: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for severe acute respiratory distress syndrome. N Engl J Med 379(9):884, 2018

Mattox KL, Goetzl L: Trauma in pregnancy. Crit Care Med 33:S385, 2005

Mendez-Figueroa H, Rouse DJ: Trauma in pregnancy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017, p. 276

McLaughlin K, Wright SP, Kingdom JC, et al: Clinical validation of non-invasive cardiac output monitoring in healthy pregnant women. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 39(11):1008, 2017

Mhyre JM, Tsen LC, Einav S, et al: Cardiac arrest during hospitalization for delivery in the United States, 1998–2011. Anesthesiology 120(4):810, 2014

Miller E, McCaw B: Intimate partner violence. N Engl J Med 380(9):850, 2019

Mitsukawa N, Saiga A, Satoh K: Protocol of surgical indications for scar contracture release before childbirth: women with severe abdominal scars after burn injuries. J Plast Surg Hand Surg 49(1):32, 2015

Moellering RC Jr, Abbott GF, Ferraro MJ: Case 2–2011: a 30-year-old woman with shock after treatment for a furuncle. N Engl J Med 364(3):266, 2011

Muench M, Baschat A, Kush M, et al: Maternal fetal hemorrhage of greater than or equal to 0.1 percent predicts preterm labor in blunt maternal trauma. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:S119, 2003

Muench MV, Baschat AA, Reddy UM, et al: Kleihauer-Betke testing is important in all cases of maternal trauma. J Trauma 57:1094, 2004

Myburgh JA, Finfer S, Bellomo R, et al: Hydroxyethyl starch or saline for fluid resuscitation in intensive care. N Engl J Med 367(20):1901, 2012

Nair P, Davies AR, Beca J, et al: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for severe ARDS in pregnant and postpartum women during the 2009 H1N1 pandemic. Intensive Care Med 37(4):648, 2011

Nasraway SA, Cohen IL, Dennis RC, et al: Guidelines on admission and discharge for adult intermediate care units. Crit Care Med 26(3):607, 1998

National Institutes of Health: Critical Care Medicine Consensus Conference. JAMA 250:798, 1983

Nelson DB, Stewart RD, Matulevicius SA, et al: The effects of maternal position and habitus on maternal cardiovascular parameters as measured by cardiac magnetic resonance. Am J Perinatol 32:1318, 2015

O'Dwyer SL, Gupta M, Anthony J: Pulmonary edema in pregnancy and the puerperium: a cohort study of 53 cases. J Perinat Med 43:675, 2015

Pacheco LD, Saade GR, Hankins GD: Severe sepsis during pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 57(4):827, 2014

Pachtman S, Koenig S, Meirowitz N: Detecting pulmonary edema in obstetric patients through point-of-care lung ultrasonography. Obstet Gynecol 129(3):525, 2017

Padilla C, Markwei M, Easter SR, et al: Critical care in obstetrics: a strategy for addressing maternal mortality. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224:567, 2021

Pak LL, Reece EA, Chan L: Is adverse pregnancy outcome predictable after blunt abdominal trauma? Am J Obstet Gynecol 179:1140, 1998

Palladino CL, Singh V, Campbell J, et al: Homicide and suicide during the perinatal period. Obstet Gynecol 118(5):1056, 2011

Pandharipande PP, Girad TD, Jackson A, et al: Long-term cognitive impairment after critical illness. N Engl J Med 369:1306, 2013

Pastor-Moreno G, Ruiz-Perez I, Henares-Montiel J, et al: Intimate partner violence during pregnancy and risk of fetal and neonatal death: a metaanalysis with socioeconomic context indicators. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(2):123, 2020

Pathan N, Hemingway CA, Alizadeh AA, et al: Role of interleukin 6 in myocardial dysfunction of meningococcal septic shock. Lancet 363:203, 2004

Pearlman MD, Klinch KD, Flannagan CAC: Fetal outcome in motor-vehicle crashes: effects of crash characteristics and maternal restraint. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198(4):450.e1, 2008

Pearlman MD, Tintinalli JE, Lorenz RP: A prospective controlled study of outcome after trauma during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 162:1502, 1990

Petersen EE, Davis NL, Goodman D, et al: Vital signs: pregnancy-related deaths, United States, 2011–2015, and strategies for prevention, 13 states, 2013–2017. MMWR 68:423, 2019

Perner A, Naase N, Guttormsen, et al: Hydroxyethyl starch 130/0.4 versus Ringer's acetate in severe sepsis. N Engl J Med 367(2):124, 2012

Petrone P, Jiménez-Morillas P, Axelrad A, et al: Traumatic injuries to the pregnant patient: a critical literature review. Eur J Trauma Surg 45(3):383, 2019

Petrone P, Talving P, Browder T, et al: Abdominal injuries in pregnancy: a 155-month study at two level 1 trauma centers. Injury 42(1):47, 2011

Pluymakers C, De Weerdt A, Jacquemyn Y, et al: Amniotic fluid embolism after surgical trauma: two case reports and review of the literature. Resuscitation 72(2):324, 2007

Pordeus ACB, Katz L, Soares MC, et al: Acute pulmonary edema in a obstetric intensive care unit: a case series study. Medicine (Baltimore) 97(28):e11508, 2018

PRISM Investigators, Rowan KM, Angus DC, et al: Early, goal-directed therapy for septic shock—a patient-level meta-analysis. N Engl J Med 376(23):2223, 2017

Qaiser R, Black P: Neurosurgery in pregnancy. Semin Neurol 27:476, 2007

Radosevich MA, Finegold H, Goldfarb W, et al: Anesthetic management of the pregnant burn patient: excision and grafting to emergency cesarean section. J Clin Anesth 25(7):582, 2013

Ramanathan K, Tan CS, Rycus P, et al: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in pregnancy: an analysis of the extracorporeal life support organization registry. Crit Care Med 48(5):696, 2020

Rayburn W, Smith B, Feller I, et al: Major burns during pregnancy: effects on fetal well-being. Surg Gynecol Obstet 63:392, 1984

Reis PM, Sander CM, Pearlman MD: Abruptio placentae after auto accidents. A case control study. J Reprod Med 45:6, 2000

Rode H, Millar AJ, Cywes S, et al: Thermal injury in pregnancy—the neglected tragedy. S Afr Med J 77:346, 1990

Rodgerson JD, Heegaard WG, Plummer D, et al: Emergency department right upper quadrant ultrasound is associated with a reduced time to diagnosis and treatment of ruptured ectopic pregnancies. Acad Emerg Med 8(4):331, 2001

Romagano MP, Scorza WE, Lammers SE, et al: Treatment of a pregnant patient in a persistent vegetative state. Obstet Gynecol 129(1):107, 2017

Rose CH, Faksh A, Traynor KD, et al: Challenging the 4- to 5-minute rule: from perimortem cesarean to resuscitative hysterotomy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(5):653, 2015

Rowe TF, Lafayette S, Cox S: An unusual fetal complication of traumatic uterine rupture. J Emerg Med 14:173, 1996

Rush B, Martinka P, Kilb B, et al: Acute respiratory distress syndrome in pregnant women. Obstet Gynecol 129(3):530, 2017
Saad AF, Rahman M, Maybauer DM, et al: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in pregnant and postpartum women with H1N1-related acute respiratory distress syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 127(2):247, 2016
Sadro CT, Zins AM, Debiec K, et al: Case report: lethal fetal head injury and placental abruption in a pregnant trauma patient. Emerg Radiol 19(2):175, 2012
Sakamoto J, Michels C, Eisfelder B, et al: Trauma in pregnancy. Emerg Med Clin North Am 37(2):317, 2019
Saphier NB, Kopelman TR: Traumatic Abruptio Placenta Scale (TAPS): a proposed grading system of computed tomography evaluation of placental abruption in the trauma patient. Emerg Radiol 21(1):17, 2014
Satin AJ, Ramin JM, Paicurich J, et al: The prevalence of sexual assault: a survey of 2404 puerperal women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 167:973, 1992
Schiff MA, Holt VL: Pregnancy outcomes following hospitalization for motor vehicle crashes in Washington State from 1989 to 2001. Am J Epidemiol 161:503, 2005
Schiff MA, Holt VL, Daling JR: Maternal and infant outcomes after injury during pregnancy in Washington state from 1989 to 1997. J Trauma 53:939, 2002
Schiff MA, Mack CD, Kaufman RP, et al: The effect of air bags on pregnancy outcomes in Washington state: 2002–2005. Obstet Gynecol 115(1):85, 2010
Schuster M, Becker N, Mackeen AD: Blunt trauma in pregnancy. Abstract No. 363. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214:S203, 2016
Schwaiberger D, Karcz M, Menk M, et al: Respiratory failure and mechanical ventilation in the pregnant patient. Crit Care Clin 32(1):85, 2016
Seymour CW, Angus DC: Sepsis and septic shock. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2044
Seymour CW, Gesten F, Prescott HC, et al: Time to treatment and mortality during mandated emergency care for sepsis. N Engl J Med 376(23):2235, 2017
Sibai BM, Viteri OA: Diabetic ketoacidosis in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 123:167, 2014
Silverman JG, Decker MR, Reed E, et al: Intimate partner violence victimization prior to and during pregnancy among women residing in 26 U.S. states: associations with maternal and neonatal death. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:140, 2006
Sinha R, Arachchi A, Lee P, et al: Fournier gangrene in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 125(6):1342, 2015
Small MJ, James AH, Kershaw T, et al: Near-miss maternal mortality: cardiac dysfunction as the principal cause of obstetric intensive care unit admissions. Obstet Gynecol 119(2 Pt 1):250, 2012
Snyder CC, Barton JR, Habli M, et al: Severe sepsis and septic shock in pregnancy: indications for delivery and maternal and perinatal outcomes. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(5):503, 2013
Soar J, Becker LB, Berg KM, et al: Cardiopulmonary resuscitation in special circumstances. Lancet 298:1257, 2021
Society of Critical Care Medicine: Guidelines for intensive care unit admission, discharge, and triage. Crit Care Med 27(3):633, 1999
Society of Critical Care Medicine: Recommendations for intensive care unit admission and discharge criteria. Crit Care Med 16(8):807, 1988
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM), Pacheco LD, Saade G, et al: Amniotic fluid embolism: diagnosis and management. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(2):B16, 2016
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM), Plante LA, Pacheco LD, et al: SMFM Consult Series #47: sepsis during pregnancy and the puerperium. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(4):B2, 2019
Soper DE, Lee SI, Kim JY, et al: Case 35–2011: a 33-year-old woman with postpartum leukocytosis and gram-positive bacteremia. N Engl J Med 365(20):1916, 2011
Sparic R, Berisavac I, Kadija S, et al: Accidental electrocution in pregnancy. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 126(2):181, 2014
Steinack C, Lenherr R, Hendra H, et al: The use of life-saving extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) for pregnant woman with status asthmaticus. J Asthma 54(1):84, 2017
Stevens TA, Swaim LS, Clark SL: The role of obstetrics/gynecology hospitalists in reducing maternal mortality. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 42(3):463, 2015
Stone IK: Trauma in the obstetric patient. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 26:459, 1999
Subrevilla LA, Cassinelli MT, Carcelen A, et al: Human fetal and maternal oxygen tension and acid-base status during delivery at high altitude. Am J Obstet Gynecol 111:1111, 1971
Suffredini AF: A role for hydrocortisone therapy in septic shock? N Engl J Med 378(9):860, 2018
Suffredini AF, Fromm RE, Parker MM, et al: The cardiovascular response of normal humans to the administration of endotoxin. N Engl J Med 321(5):280, 1989
Szabo G, Molvarec A, Nagy B, et al: Increased B-type natriuretic peptide levels in early-onset versus late-onset preeclampsia. Clin Chem Lab Med 52:281, 2014
Takehana CS, Kang YS: Acute traumatic gonadal vein rupture in a pregnant patient involved in a major motor vehicle collision. Emerg Radiol 18(4):349, 2011
Thiele RH, Bartels K, Gan TJ: Cardiac output monitoring: a contemporary assessment and review. Crit Care Med 43(1):177, 2015
Thornton CE, von Dadelszen P, Makris A, et al: Acute pulmonary oedema as a complication of hypertension during pregnancy. Hypertens Pregnancy 30(2):169, 2011
Tihtonen KM, Kööbi T, Vuolteenaho O, et al: Natriuretic peptides and hemodynamics in preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 196:328, 2007
Towery R, English TP, Wisner D: Evaluation of pregnant women after blunt injury. J Trauma 35:731, 1993
Tsuei BJ: Assessment of the pregnant trauma patient. Injury Int J Care Injured 37:367, 2006
Uhlig C, Silva PL, Deckert S, et al: Albumin versus crystalloid solutions in patients with the acute respiratory distress syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Crit Care 18(1):R10, 2014
Vaught AJ, Kovell LC, Szymanski LM, et al: Acute cardiac effects of severe pre-eclampsia. J Am Coll Cardiol 72(1):1, 2018
Venkatesh B, Finfer S, Cohen J, et al: Adjunctive glucocorticoid therapy in patients with septic shock. N Engl J Med 378(9):797, 2018
Vincent JL, De Backer D: Circulatory shock. N Engl J Med 369:1726, 2013
Vrees RA: Evaluation and management of female victims of sexual assault. Obstet Gynecol Surv 72(1):39, 2017
Webster CM, Manuck T: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in pregnant and postpartum women: a ten-year cohort. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(1): S545, 2019
Weir LF, Pierce BT, Vazquez JO: Complete fetal transection after a motor vehicle collision. Obstet Gynecol 111(2):530, 2008
Weiss HB, Songer TJ, Fabio A: Fetal deaths related to maternal injury. JAMA 286:1863, 2001
Wen T, Syeda SK, Kern-Goldberger A, et al: Socioeconomic and racial disparities in intesive care level utilization in a national sample. Abst. No. 686 Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:s434, 2020
Wiedemann HP, Wheeler AP, Bernard GR, et al: Comparison of two fluid-management strategies in acute lung injury. N Engl J Med 354(24):2213, 2006
Wilson MS, Ingersoll M, Meschter E, et al: Evaluating the side effects of treatment for preterm labor in a center that uses "high-dose" magnesium sulfate. Am J Perinatol 31(8):711, 2014
Xiao C, Gangal M, Abenhaim HA: Effect of magnesium sulfate and nifedipine on the risk of developing pulmonary edema in preterm births. J Perinat Med 42(5):585, 2014
Yamada T, Yamada T, Yamamura MK, et al: Invasive group A streptococcal infection in pregnancy. J Infect 60(6):417, 2010
Ylagan MV, Trivedi N, Basu T, et al: Radiation exposure in the pregnant trauma patient: implications for fetal risk counseling. Abstract No. 320. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199(6):S100, 2008
Yost NP, Bloom SL, McIntire DD, et al: A prospective observational study of domestic violence during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 106(1):61, 2005
Zeeman GG: Obstetric critical care: a blueprint for improved outcomes. Crit Care Med 34:S208, 2006
Zeeman GG, Wendel GD Jr, Cunningham FG: A blueprint for obstetric critical care. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:532, 2003
Zelop CM, Einav S, Mhyre JM, et al: Cardiac arrest during pregnancy: ongoing clinical conundrum. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(1):52, 2018

CHAPTER 51

Obesity

Extensive weight gain is a major health problem today in many affluent societies. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) (2020) reported the prevalence in the United States during 2017 to 2018 to be 42 percent among all adults. The adverse health aspects of obesity are staggering and include increased risks for type 2 diabetes, heart disease, hypertension, and osteoarthritis. Importantly, obese women and their fetuses are predisposed to numerous pregnancy-related complications and to long-term morbidity and mortality.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Definitions and Prevalence

Of systems to classify obesity, the *body mass index (BMI)*, also known as the *Quetelet index*, is most often used. The BMI is calculated as weight in kilograms divided by the square of the height in meters (kg/m^2). Calculated BMI values are available in various chart and graphic forms (Fig. 51-1). The National Institutes of Health (2000) classifies adults according to BMI as follows: *normal* is 18.5 to 24.9 kg/m^2, *overweight* is 25 to 29.9 kg/m^2, and *obese* is ≥30 kg/m^2. Obesity is further divided into: *class 1* is 30 to 34.9 kg/m^2, *class 2* is 35 to 39.9 kg/m^2, and *class 3* is ≥40 kg/m^2. Class 3 obesity is often referred to as *morbid* obesity, and *supermorbid* obesity describes a BMI ≥50 kg/m^2.

Using these definitions, from 2015 to 2016 in the United States, among girls and women, the prevalence of obesity rose with age and varied among ethnicities (Fig. 51-2) (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020). Overall, severity also advances with increasing poverty. Last, a genetic predisposition has been identified (Locke, 2015; Shungin, 2015).

Adipose Pathophysiology

Fat tissue is much more complex than merely its energy storage function. Many fat tissue cells communicate with all other tissues via endocrine and paracrine factors, which are cytokines specifically termed *adipokines*, *lipokines*, and *exosomal microRNAs* (Scheja, 2019). Some of these with metabolic functions include adiponectin, leptin, tumor necrosis factor α (TNF-α), interleukin 6 (IL-6), resistin, visfatin, apelin, vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), lipoprotein lipase, and insulin-like growth factor. Adiponectin is a principal adipokine. It enhances insulin sensitivity, blocks hepatic glucose release, and has cardioprotective effects on circulating plasma lipids. An adiponectin deficit is linked with diabetes, hypertension, endothelial cell activation, and cardiovascular disease.

Cytokines that result in insulin resistance are leptin, resistin, TNF-α, and IL-6, and higher levels of these are found during pregnancy. Indeed, adipokines, especially the inflammatory cytokines, may be the primary stimulant of insulin resistance (Yang, 2016). Conversely, adiponectin has antiinflammatory and insulin-sensitizing roles and is negatively regulated by fat mass. Perivascular adipose tissue also serves as a signaling mediator in regulating vascular function (Ahmadieh, 2020). Placental production of these adipokines is also important (Sartori, 2016) (Chap. 5, p. 99).

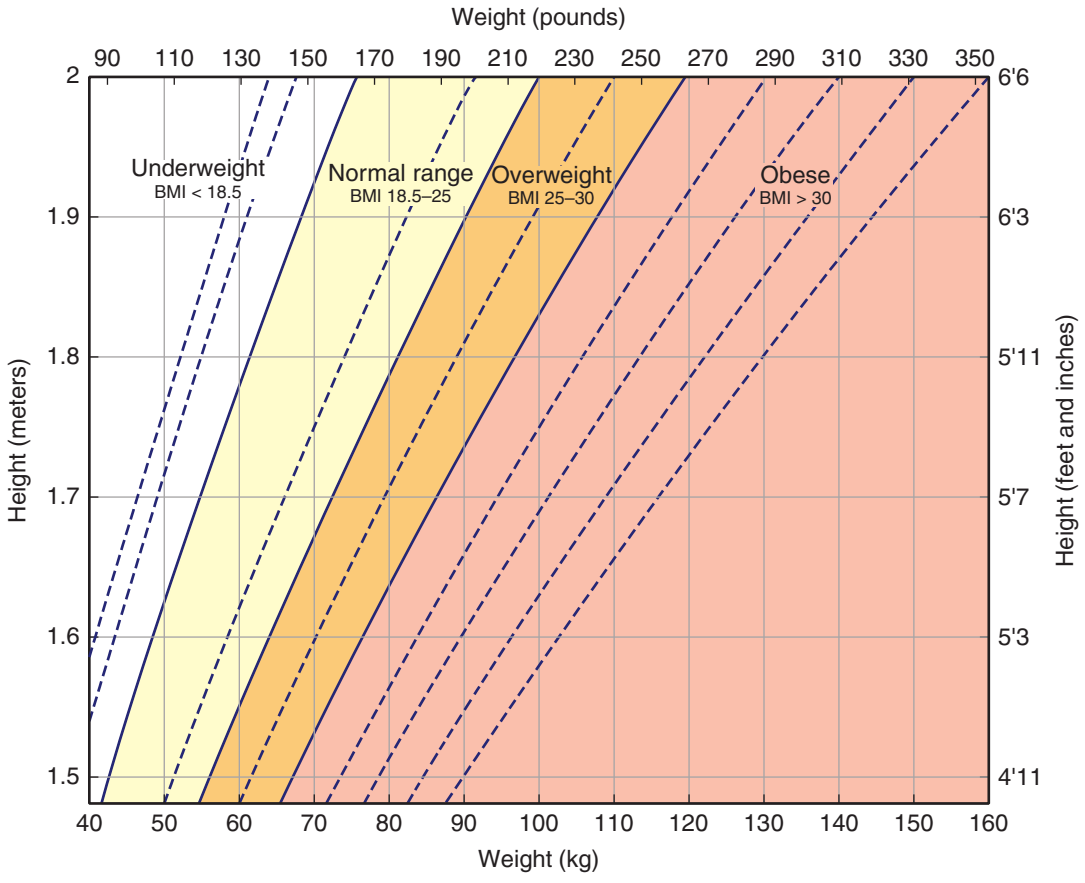


FIGURE 51-1 Chart for estimating body mass index (BMI). To find the BMI category for a particular subject, locate the point at which the height and weight intersect.

Metabolic Syndrome

Given its multifaceted endocrine and paracrine functions, the detrimental effects of excessive adipose tissue are not surprising (Gilmore, 2015). Obesity interacts with inherited factors to cause insulin resistance. This resistance is characterized by impaired glucose metabolism and a predisposition to type 2 diabetes. Insulin resistance also causes several subclinical abnormalities that predispose to cardiovascular disease and accelerate its onset. The most important among these are type 2 diabetes, dyslipidemia, and hypertension, which are constituents of the *metabolic syndrome*.

Criteria to define this syndrome are found in Table 51-1. Waist circumference is the preferred measurement for screening, but any three of five factors listed are sufficient to diagnose the metabolic syndrome. Notably, most patients with type 2 diabetes have metabolic syndrome according to these criteria. Also, obese women with hypertension typically demonstrate elevated plasma insulin levels.

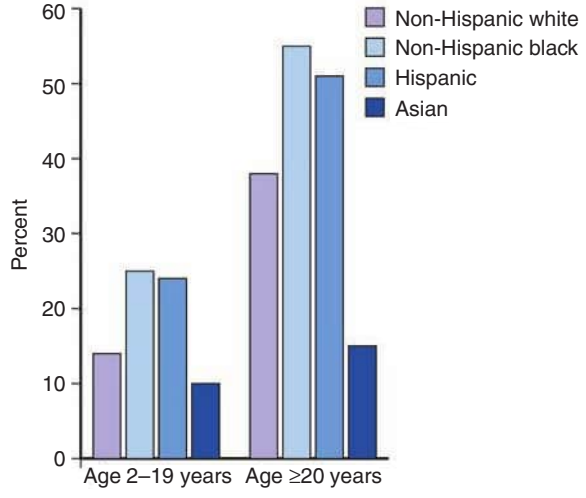


FIGURE 51-2 Prevalence of obesity in the United States by race: United States 2015–2016.

TABLE 51-1. Criteria for Diagnosis of the Metabolic Syndrome

Patients with three or more of the following:	
Elevated waist circumference[a]	
Elevated triglycerides[b]:	≥150 mg/dL
Reduced high-density lipoprotein cholesterol[b]:	
	<40 mg/dL in males
	<50 mg/dL in females
Elevated blood pressure[b]:	systolic ≥130 mm Hg and/or
	diastolic ≥ 85 mm Hg
Elevated fasting glucose[b]:	≥100 mg/dL

[a]According to country- and population-specific thresholds.
[b]Those with normal values while taking medications are considered to meet these criteria.
From the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, 2019.

The National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) of the CDC documented an overall prevalence of 34 percent for the metabolic syndrome in the United States by 2012 (Moore, 2017). As expected, the prevalence rose with age. It was 20 percent for those aged 18 to 29 years and was 36 percent for those aged 30 to 49 years.

Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease

Generally speaking, visceral adiposity correlates with hepatic fat content (Cornier, 2011). With obesity, excessive fat accumulates in the liver and is termed *hepatic steatosis*. This is also called *nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD)*. In persons with the metabolic syndrome, steatosis can progress to *nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH)* and then potentially to cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. It is the major cause of cirrhosis and liver cancer, and annual medical costs of NAFLD in the United States exceed $100 billion (Diehl, 2017). Moreover, NAFLD is strongly associated with cardiovascular disease (Targher, 2016). These interactions are explored further in Chapter 58 (p. 1040).

Obesity-associated Morbidity

Obese individuals suffer well-known consequences such as glucose intolerance, hypertension, dyslipidemia, and metabolic syndrome. Furthermore, metabolic syndrome and obesity are linked with cardiovascular disease, including myocardial infarction, atrial fibrillation, heart failure, and stroke (Koliaki, 2019). Excessive adiposity raises blood pressure and accounts for up to 75 percent of primary hypertension (Hall, 2019). Insulin resistance and metabolic syndrome cause structural cerebral changes in the hippocampus and lower executive functioning and memory in adults (Kullman, 2016). And cytokine-induced osteoarthritis has long been linked to obesity (Tu, 2019).

Because of the foregoing, it is not surprising that obesity is associated with higher rates of all-cause early mortality. Cardiovascular mortality data from 19 prospective studies are shown in Figure 51-3 (Gonzalez, 2010). In these and other studies, mortality risk from cardiovascular disease and cancer grew proportionally with increasing BMI. However, an obesity paradox—whereby certain groups actually derive a survival advantage from being obese—is hypothesized (Hainer, 2013). Despite this, the health benefits of weight normalization are well documented (Cheung, 2017).

Obesity Treatment

Weight loss is tremendously difficult. If achieved, long-term maintenance poses equally daunting challenges. Obstetrician-gynecologists are encouraged to aid weight loss in obese adult women. Successful approaches include behavioral, pharmacological, and surgical techniques or a combination of these (Dixon, 2016; Heymsfield, 2017). Dietary changes and exercise reduce weight and rates of the associated metabolic syndrome (Garvey, 2016; Martin, 2018). When used in conjunction with bariatric surgery, glucose control in those with type 2 diabetes is improved. However, both surgical and medical interventions are associated with appreciable long-term failure rates. Indeed, the failure rate is 50 percent in patients with diabetes undergoing bariatric surgery (Mingrone, 2015).

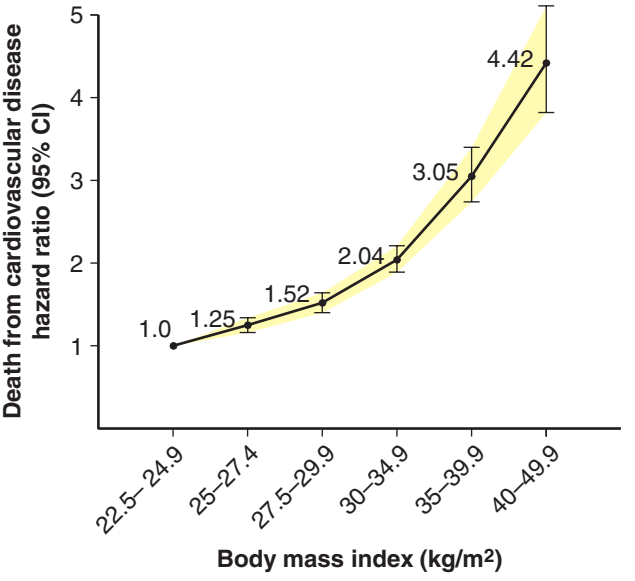


FIGURE 51-3 Estimated hazard ratios (95% CI) for death due to cardiovascular disease according to body mass index among 1.46 million white adult men and women.

PREGNANCY AND OBESITY

Obese women unequivocally have reproductive disadvantages (Lainez, 2019). This translates into difficulty in achieving pregnancy, early and recurrent pregnancy loss, preterm delivery, and several obstetrical, medical, and surgical complications with pregnancy, labor, delivery, and the puerperium (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021). Also, oral contraceptive pill failure and associated thromboembolism may be more likely. Second-trimester surgical abortion in obese women also carries an increased complication risk (Mark, 2018). Last, infants—and later, adult children—of obese mothers have correspondingly higher morbidity rates (Godfrey, 2017; He, 2020).

Obesity complicating pregnancy has grown substantially in this country. Our experiences at Parkland Hospital over three epochs are shown in Figure 51-4. Most recently, obese women constitute >60 percent of pregnant gravidas in our health system.

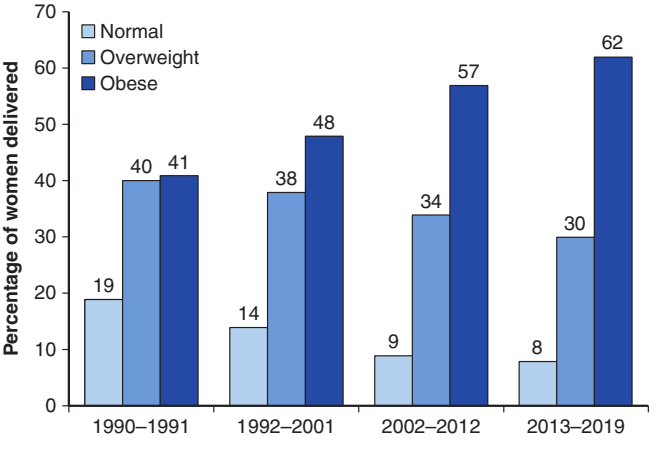


FIGURE 51-4 Increasing prevalence of obesity during four epochs in pregnant women classified at the time of their first prenatal visit at Parkland Hospital.

TABLE 51-2. Adverse Pregnancy Effects in Overweight and Obese Women

Complication	Prevalence (%) Normal BMI 18.5–24.9 n = 621,048	Prevalence (%) with Odds Ratios[a] Overweight BMI 25–29.9 n = 228,945	Obese BMI >30 n = 78,043
Gestational diabetes	2.3	4.3 (OR 1.91, 1.86–1.96)	8.6 (OR 4.04, 3.94–4.15)
Preeclampsia	2.7	4.3 (OR 1.60, 1.56–1.64)	8.1 (OR 3.17, 3.08–3.25)
Preterm birth	3.8	4.1 (OR 1.09, 1.05–1.13)	4.8 (OR 1.28, 1.23–1.34)
Labor induction	20.9	23.8 (OR 1.19, 1.17–1.21)	29.7 (OR 1.60, 1.57–1.64)
Prelabor or elective cesarean delivery	6.6	8.3 (OR 1.28, 1.26–1.31)	11.5 (OR 1.85, 1.81–1.89)
Cesarean delivery	25.2	31.5 (OR 1.37, 1.34–1.39)	39.3 (OR 1.92, 1.88–1.96)
Shoulder dystocia	2.0	2.4 (OR 1.22, 1.17–1.28)	2.3 (OR 1.14, 1.08–1.21)
Postpartum hemorrhage	6.7	8.4 (OR 1.29, 1.26–1.31)	8.7 (OR 1.34, 1.31–1.37)
Pelvic infection	0.6	0.7 (OR 1.16, 1.06–1.26)	0.8 (OR 1.28, 1.15–1.43)
Wound infection or complication	0.4	0.5 (OR.1.42, 1.28–1.58)	1.0 (OR 2.70, 2.42–3.01)
Large for gestational age	8.7	13.1 (OR 1.57, 1.54–1.61)	16.3 (OR 2.04, 1.99–2.10)
Macrosomia	2.0	3.6 (OR 1.81, 1.74–1.88)	5.1 (OR 2.60, 2.50–2.71)
Stillbirth	0.3	1.8 (OR 5.89, 5.57–6.22)	0.5 (OR 1.71, 1.56–1.87)

[a]Odds ratios with 95% CI are significant when compared to normal BMI group.
BMI = body mass index.
Data from Kim, 2016; Lisonkova, 2017; Ovesen, 2011; Santos, 2019; Schummers, 2015.

Maternal Morbidity

For *overweight* women, higher rates of adverse outcomes complicate pregnancy. Shown in Table 51-2 are results from five studies including more than 1 million singleton pregnancies. Although not as magnified as in the obese cohort, rates of almost all complications are significantly greater in *overweight* women than in those with normal BMI.

For *obese* women, definitions used in studies of adverse outcomes vary widely, and BMIs from >30 kg/m^2 to >50 kg/m^2 have served as thresholds (Crane, 2013; Pratt, 2020; Stamilio, 2014). In one study, Mariona (2017) reviewed maternal deaths in Michigan and found that the maternal mortality rate was nearly fourfold higher in obese women. Women with supermorbid obesity experience very high rates of maternal and neonatal complications including preeclampsia, macrosomia, and cesarean delivery, along with higher rates of neonatal meconium aspiration, ventilator support, and neonatal death (Marshall, 2014; Smid, 2016). Data from one large study are shown in Figure 51-5 (Weiss, 2004).

Especially striking are the markedly elevated rates of hypertension and gestational diabetes. As discussed previously, obesity and the metabolic syndrome are characterized by insulin resistance, which creates low-grade inflammation, endothelial activation, and increased sodium reabsorption (Hall, 2019). These latter effects play a central role in preeclampsia (Chap. 40, p. 691). The overwhelming association between rising maternal BMI and the incidence of preeclampsia is depicted in Figure 51-6 (HAPO Study Cooperative Research Group,

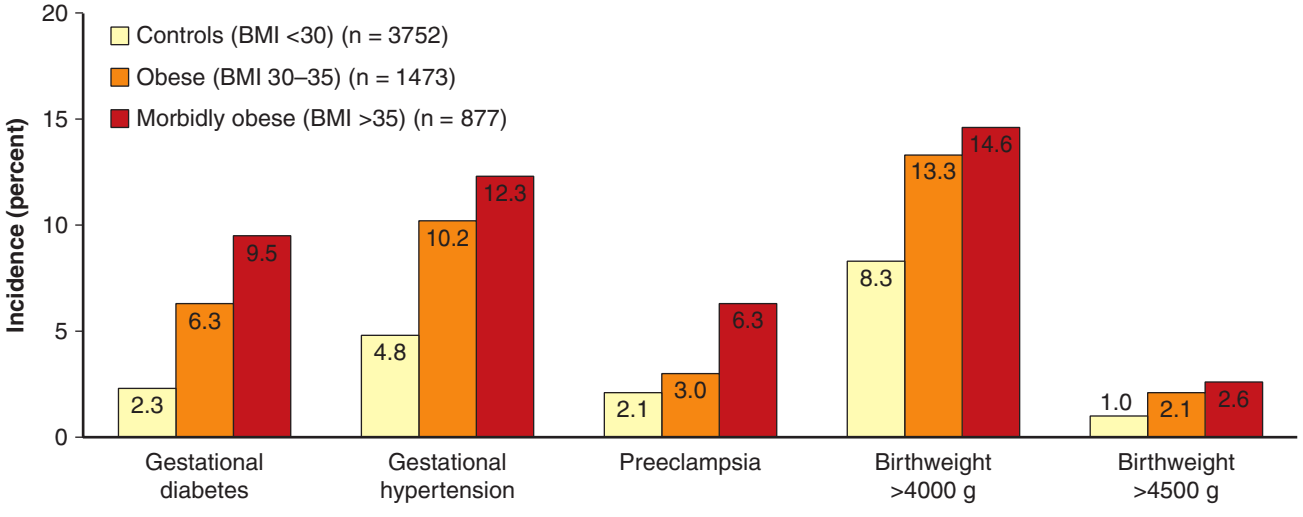


FIGURE 51-5 Incidence of selected pregnancy outcomes in women enrolled in the FASTER (First-and Second-Trimester Evaluation of Risk) trial according to BMI.

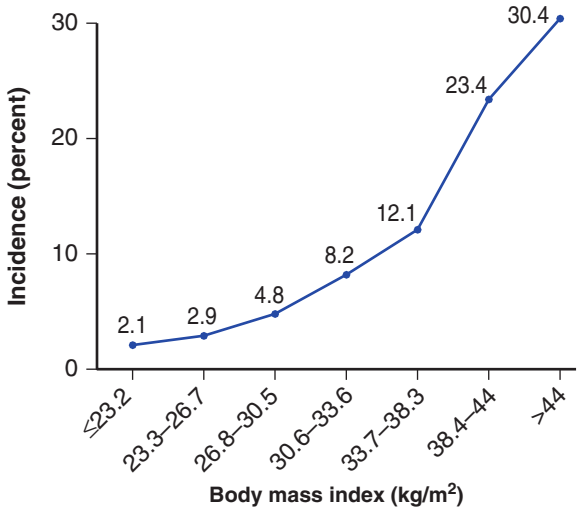


FIGURE 51-6 Hyperglycemia and Adverse Pregnancy Outcome (HAPO) study: frequency of preeclampsia according to BMI.

2008). The risks for hypertension are highest in women with a BMI >50 kg/m^2 (Pratt, 2020). Similar observations were reported from a large Canadian study and by the Safe Labor Consortium (Kim, 2016; Schummers, 2015).

Obesity and hypertension are common cofactors in peripartum heart failure (Cunningham, 2012). Stewart and colleagues (2016) used magnetic resonance imaging to prospectively study the effect of obesity on cardiac remodeling in pregnancy. Concentric remodeling, which was considered abnormal, was greater in overweight or obese women (Fig. 51-7). This, however, regressed to normal by 3 months postpartum. Triebwasser and coworkers (2019) found that women with abnormal cardiac remodeling had a higher incidence of pregnancy-associated hypertensive disorders.

Obesity and gestational diabetes are inextricably linked as shown in Table 51-2. Their coexistence and associated adverse pregnancy outcomes are discussed in Chapter 60 (p. 1068). Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease is associated with several adverse pregnancy outcomes (Chap. 58, p. 1040). In a cohort of women

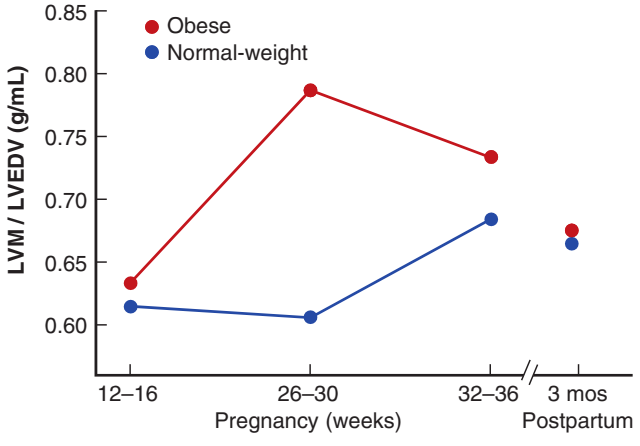


FIGURE 51-7 Geometric changes of ventricular remodeling across pregnancy in obese and normal-weight women determined by cardiac MR imaging. LVM = left ventricular mass, LVEDV = left ventricular end-diastolic volume.

with NAFLD, risks for preeclampsia, preterm birth, low-birthweight neonates, cesarean delivery, and gestational diabetes were elevated (Hagström, 2016). In one prospective study of 476 pregnancies, first-trimester sonographic evidence of maternal NAFLD was strongly associated with gestational diabetes (De Souza, 2016a,b). Meyer and associates (2013) found that overweight and obese gravidas had a higher proportion of low-density lipoprotein III (LDL-III) compared with that of normal-weight women. LDL-III predominance is a hallmark of the ectopic liver fat accumulation that is typical of NAFLD. At Parkland Hospital, we are now frequently encountering obese gravidas who have NAFLD and evidence of steatohepatitis manifest by elevated serum hepatic transaminase levels. In rare cases, liver biopsy is necessary to exclude other causes for these findings.

Quality-of-life measures also are negatively affected by obesity during pregnancy (Ruhstaller, 2017). One systematic review found significantly higher risks of depression in overweight and obese women during and after pregnancy (Molyneaux, 2014). Obese women were also significantly more likely to experience anxiety during pregnancy.

Perinatal Mortality

Stillbirths are more prevalent as the degree of obesity accrues (Schummers, 2015). In a review of almost 100 studies, obesity was the highest-ranking modifiable risk factor for stillbirth (Flenady, 2011). In women with supermorbid obesity compared with normal-weight gravidas, Yao and associates (2014) found 5.7 and 13.6-fold higher stillbirth rates at 39 and 41 weeks' gestation, respectively. Remarkably, 25 percent of term stillbirths in this study involved obese women. Chronic hypertension with superimposed preeclampsia associated with obesity is one cause of excessive stillbirths. These fetal deaths may be associated with placental lesions of decidual arteriopathy and infarctions (Avagliano, 2020).

Evaluating perinatal death rates, Lindam and coworkers (2016) reported that high maternal BMI in early pregnancy was a risk factor. The risk of neonatal death also is greater for obese women (Johansson, 2014; Meehan, 2014). Last, one study found that accruing weight between pregnancies is a risk factor for perinatal mortality, whereas weight loss between pregnancies for overweight women lowers this risk (Cnattingius, 2016).

Perinatal Morbidity

Both fetal and neonatal complication rates are increased in obese women. Two important and interrelated cofactors that contribute to excessive rates of perinatal morbidity are chronic hypertension and diabetes, both of which are associated with maternal obesity. These comorbidities each may play a role in the higher rates of fetal-growth restriction and indicated preterm birth that are seen in obese women (Liu, 2019; Tanner, 2020). Perinates of obese women with preterm prematurely ruptured membranes have a higher incidence of respiratory complications than those born to normal-weight women (Lynch, 2020). Pregestational diabetes also raises the birth defect rate, and gestational diabetes is complicated by excessive numbers of large-for-gestational-age and macrosomic fetuses (Chap. 47, p. 833).

Even when diabetes and hypertension are not considered, the prevalence of neonatal morbidity is greater in offspring

of obese women (Kim, 2016; Polnaszek, 2018; Schummers, 2015). The propensity for preterm birth may be related to increased adipokines and cytokines causing chronic inflammation (Tersigni, 2020). The group from MetroHealth Medical Center in Cleveland has extensively studied prepregnancy obesity, gestational weight gain, and diabetes and their relationship to adverse pregnancy outcomes and to greater newborn weight and fat mass (Catalano, 2015; Ma, 2016; Yang, 2016). Although each of these variables is associated with larger and more corpulent newborns, prepregnancy BMI and its effect on inflammation and placental gene expression has the strongest influence on the prevalence of macrosomic neonates.

Rates of birth defects also are higher with obesity (Auger, 2019). For neural-tube defects, elevated risks of 1.2-, 1.7-, and 3.1-fold have been described for overweight, obese, and severely obese women, respectively (Rasmussen, 2008). The National Birth Defect Prevention Study reported a correlation between BMI and congenital heart defects (Gilboa, 2010). However, this may be related to diabetes as a cofactor (Biggio, 2010). Importantly, obesity degrades the accuracy of obstetrical ultrasound examination and antepartum identification of birth defects (Adekola, 2015; Dashe, 2009; Yaqub, 2021).

Long-term Offspring Morbidity

Obese women beget obese children, who themselves become obese adults. Catalano and coworkers (2009) studied offspring at a mean age of 9 years and found a direct association with maternal prepregnancy obesity and childhood obesity. They also reported associations with central obesity, elevated systolic blood pressure, increased insulin resistance, and lipid abnormalities—all elements of the metabolic syndrome. Reynolds and associates (2013) reported higher rates of cardiovascular disease and all-cause mortality in 37,709 adult offspring of overweight and obese mothers. Similar cardiometabolic health effects in offspring were echoed by Gaillard and colleagues (2016). Other data suggest that excessive maternal weight gain in pregnancy may predict obesity in adult offspring (Lawrence, 2014). Last, rates of glucose intolerance and metabolic syndrome are higher among offspring of obese women (Gaillard, 2016).

The potential biological mechanisms of these associations are unclear. But such studies raise the possibility of *fetal programming*, that is, the fetal environment may lead to adverse adult health outcomes. Elucidation is limited by insufficient data regarding the influence of maternal and genetic predisposition compared with the diet and activity environment of the infant and child (Gluck, 2009). The science of *epigenetics* has provided some support for the possibility that perturbations of the maternal–fetal environment can adversely alter postdelivery events (Kitsiou-Tzeli, 2017).

ANTEPARTUM MANAGEMENT

Maternal Weight Gain

The Institute of Medicine (2009) has updated its previous maternal weight gain determinants (Table 10-4, p. 183). For overweight women, weight gain of 15 to 25 pounds is suggested. For obese women, the Institute recommends a gain of 11 to 20 pounds. Intuitively, maternal weight must increase sufficiently to provide for fetal and placental tissue accrual and for amnionic fluid and maternal blood volume expansion. Thus, maternal weight loss during pregnancy is discouraged. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021) endorses these guidelines.

It is emphasized that these recommendations were issued without firm scientific evidence to support them, and their value remains unproven (Comstock, 2019; Most, 2019). For example, recent studies differ with respect to the effect of insufficient weight gain for obese women. Bodnar and colleagues (2016) reported no greater risk for low-birthweight or small-for-gestational-age newborns among 47,494 obese women who had inadequate weight gain during pregnancy. Bogaerts and associates (2015) also found that even weight loss among obese women did not yield poor fetal growth. In contrast, however, Hannaford and coworkers (2017) reported that obese women who gained less than the Institute recommendations were almost three times more likely to deliver a small-for-gestational-age neonate. Another study similarly found an almost twofold greater risk of growth-restricted newborns among obese women who lost weight during pregnancy (Cox Bauer, 2016).

Excessive gestational weight gain may portend greater risks for the obese mother. Berggren and coworkers (2016) noted that overweight and obese women accrued maternal fat with excessive gestational weight gain. From another analysis, overall higher rates of hypertensive disorders, cesarean delivery, and fetal overgrowth and lower rates of spontaneous preterm birth and fetal undergrowth were found among women gaining more than recommended (Johnson, 2013). However, when analyzed according to BMI category, significantly higher rates of preeclampsia, cesarean delivery, and fetal overgrowth were identified among the 1937 overweight women, but not the 1445 obese women, who gained excess weight. Last, overweight and obese women have excessive postpartum weight retention (Siegel, 2020).

Dietary Intervention

Several dietary interventions can help limit and achieve the weight gain targets listed in the previous section. Options include lifestyle changes such as changes in physical activity. In one randomized trial of exercise in 300 overweight women, risks for gestational diabetes were lowered (Wang, 2017). In other trials, however, dietary intervention had no effect on weight gain (Okasene-Gafa, 2019; Seneviratne, 2016). Also, a Cochrane database analysis of 11,444 women suggests that lifestyle interventions confer only a modest reduction in maternal weight gain, and their benefits for fetal overgrowth, cesarean delivery rate, and adverse neonatal outcome are not significant (Muktabhant, 2015). Last, metformin treatment for obese pregnant women does not improve pregnancy outcomes (Dodd, 2018).

Regarding neonatal outcomes, the poor success of lifestyle interventions during pregnancy has been attributed to their late introduction. In this regard, it is presumed that early gene expression within the placenta has already been programmed (Catalano, 2015).

Prenatal Care

Close prenatal monitoring detects most early signs of diabetes or hypertension. Early gestational diabetes screening did not result in less morbidity compared with standard screening (Harper, 2020). Obstructive sleep apnea is common in obese women (Dominquez, 2018). Standard screening tests for fetal anomalies are sufficient, while remembering the sonographic limitations for fetal anomaly detection in this group. Even so, ultrasound predicts fetal weight accurately in these women (O'Brien, 2020). Accurate fetal-growth surveillance in obese women usually requires serial sonographic assessment. Dude and coworkers (2019) reported that ultrasound as a detection tool had high specificity but poor sensitivity for growth restriction and a low positive predictive value for macrosomia. Antepartum external fetal heart rate monitoring is likewise more difficult.

INTRAPARTUM MANAGEMENT

Obesity poses increased risk for multiple labor or intrapartum complications. These include postterm pregnancy or labor abnormalities (Carpenter, 2016; Shenouda, 2020). In one study of 143,519 women, the odds of spontaneous labor at term in obese women was approximately half that of normal-weight women (Denison, 2008). In an analysis of more than 5000 parturients, women with a BMI >30 kg/m^2 had a longer duration and slower early progression of first-stage labor (Norman, 2012). Epidural analgesia apparently does not affect the length of labor in obese women (Polónia Valente, 2020).

Labor Induction

As shown in Table 51-2, compared with normal-weight women, obese women are nearly twice as likely to undergo labor induction (Denison, 2008). However, obese women are more likely to experience a failed induction, and this risk rises with increasing obesity (Kerbage, 2020). The duration of labor resulting in vaginal delivery lengthens with increasing maternal BMI (Carlhäll, 2020). In a retrospective analysis of 470 nulliparous women with a BMI >30 kg/m^2, those who underwent labor induction at 39 weeks' gestation had a greater cesarean delivery rate—26 versus 40 percent compared with a cohort expectantly managed (Wolfe, 2014). In a study of 485 women with class III obesity, the overall cesarean delivery rate after failed induction was 49 percent (Paidas Teefey, 2020). The rate was 46 percent for those with a BMI 30–40, 63 percent for a BMI 40–50, and 69 percent for a BMI >60.

Although perhaps not unexpected, these findings have been challenged. Lee and associates (2016) reviewed statistics from 74,725 deliveries in obese women and reported that elective induction at 37 to 39 weeks' gestation was actually associated with a lower cesarean delivery rate. Additionally, in a secondary analysis of one randomized trial, obese nulliparas who were randomly assigned to Foley catheter cervical ripening plus misoprostol for labor induction had a reduced labor duration and lower rate of cesarean delivery compared with those given solely misoprostol (Seasely, 2021). These conflicting results highlight the difficulties faced by obstetricians as they contemplate the seemingly competing interests of the fetus and the obese mother.

Anesthesia Risks

Obese women present anesthesia challenges that include difficult epidural and spinal analgesia placement and complications from failed or difficult intubations. Evaluation of gravidas with supermorbid obesity by the anesthesiologist is recommended during prenatal care or upon arrival to the labor unit (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b).

Regional analgesia for morbidly obese women is associated with longer neuraxial procedure times and more failed placement attempts (Li, 2019). Importantly, however, spinal analgesia in obese women for cesarean delivery does not appear to have greater benefits than combined spinal-epidural. One study comparing single-shot spinal analgesia and combined spinal-epidural analgesia found that both methods could be placed with equal expediency and efficacy in morbidly obese gravidas (Ross, 2014).

Obese women who undergo neuraxial analgesia that is complicated by relative hypotension more frequently have neonates with umbilical artery cord blood acidemia, which probably stems from delayed delivery. One study of 572 obese women showed that cord blood pH significantly dropped and base deficit rose with increasing BMI (Edwards, 2013). The rate of gases with a pH <7.1 doubled from 3.5 percent for a BMI <25 kg/m^2 to 7.1 percent for a BMI ≥40 kg/m^2. Anesthetic risks and complications are discussed in Chapter 25.

Cesarean Delivery

As shown in Table 51-2, rates of cesarean delivery are significantly greater in obese women compared with normal-weight gravidas. In an analysis of 226,958 women, cesarean delivery rates rose significantly for overweight (34 percent), class I (38 percent), class II (43 percent), and class III (50 percent) obesity (Schummers, 2015). Our experiences at Parkland Hospital are similar (Fig. 51-8). Moreover, obese women had less composite morbidity when labor was attempted compared with cesarean delivery (Gibbs Pickens, 2018; Grasch, 2017). More worrisome is that obese women also have higher rates of *emergency* cesarean delivery, and obesity lengthens times for decision-to-incision and for delivery (Girsen, 2014; Pulman, 2015).

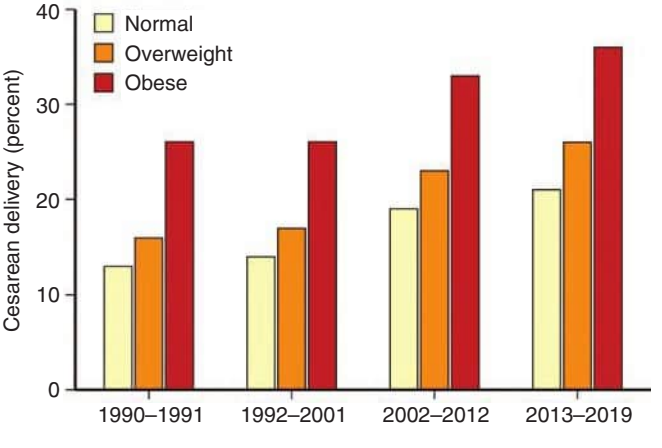


FIGURE 51-8 Cesarean delivery rates in more than 300,000 women according to BMI categories over a 30-year period at Parkland Hospital.

Discussed in Chapter 31 (p. 577), the incidence of failed trial of labor after cesarean is higher in obese women (Grasch, 2017; Wilson, 2020). Women who gain weight between pregnancies also have significantly lower rates of vaginal birth after cesarean.

Surgical Concerns

For cesarean delivery, forethought is given to optimal placement and type of abdominal incision to provide access to the fetus and to effect the best wound closure. We prefer a vertical incision in obese women to provide the most direct access (Fig. 51-9). Others prefer a low transverse abdominal incision, with or without rostral taping of the pendulous abdomen (Karimyar, 2020; Lakhi, 2018). Individual differences in maternal body habitus preclude naming any one approach as superior (Turan, 2016). Some observational studies have compared wound outcomes associated with vertical and transverse skin incisions, but results are conflicting as to a superior option (Karimyar, 2020; Marrs, 2014; Sutton, 2016).

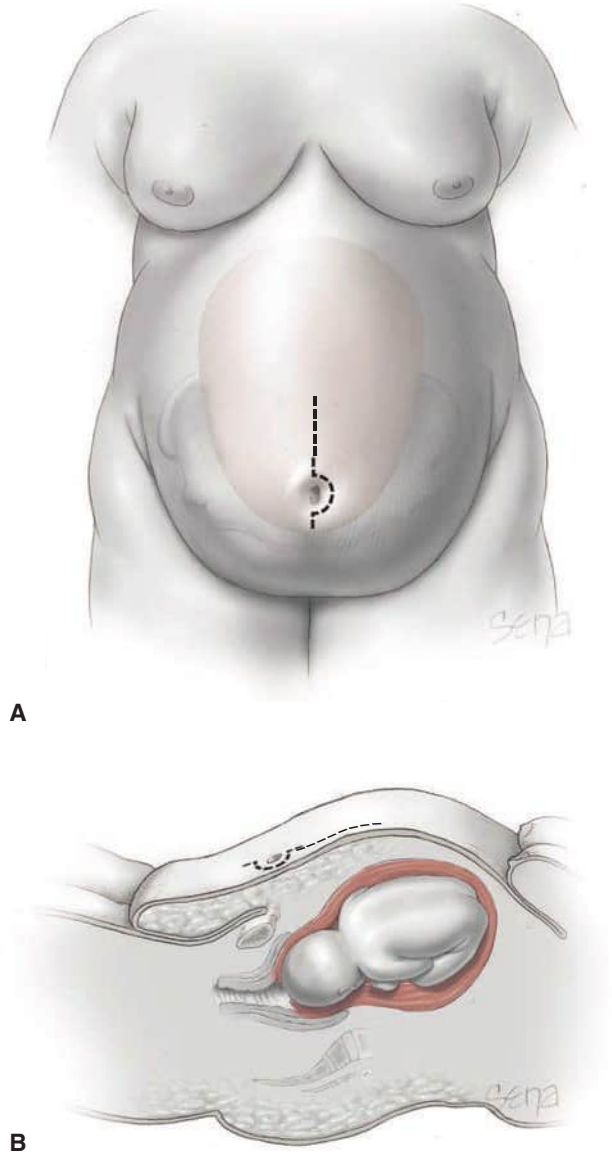


FIGURE 51-9 Abdominal incision for the obese woman. **A.** Frontal view. The dotted line indicates an appropriate skin incision for abdominal entry relative to the panniculus. As shown by the uterus in the background, selection of this periumbilical site permits access to the lower uterine segment. **B.** Sagittal view.

The frequency of abdominal wound infections is directly related to BMI. Conner and associates (2014) found the risk of wound infection is threefold higher—23 versus 7 percent—in women with supermorbid obesity compared with nonobese patients. Among women with a BMI >45 kg/m^2, reported wound complication rates range from 14 to 19 percent (Smid, 2015; Stamilio, 2014). Comorbid diabetes apparently raises this risk (Leth, 2011). Other studies describe wound complication rates ranging from 2 to >40 percent in obese women (Conner, 2014; Marrs, 2014; Smid, 2015; Thornburg, 2012).

Several interventions may be preventive. Closure of subcutaneous tissue when at least 2 cm deep reduces wound complication rates (Tipton, 2011). Steel staples and subcuticular skin closure produce identical results (Zaki, 2018). Studies have also examined the use of higher doses of perioperative prophylactic antibiotics. Pharmacokinetic studies indicate that tissue concentrations of prophylactic antibiotics are lower with increasing BMI (Pevzner, 2011; Young, 2015). One prospective study showed that a 3-g dose of cefazolin resulted in higher tissue concentrations compared with a 2-g dose (Swank, 2015). A retrospective analysis of 335 women with a median weight of 310 pounds found that the higher dose of cefazolin did not result in fewer surgical site infections (SSIs) (Ahmadzia, 2015). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020) recognizes either 2- or 3-g doses of cefazolin as suitable for those with weights ≥80 kg. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention recommends a 2-g dose for weights ≥80 kg and 3-g dose for those ≥120 kg (Berríos-Torres, 2017). One pharmacokinetic analysis in obese women showed sufficient tissue levels with a 2-g dose for cesarean deliveries lasting 1.5 hours. Authors recommended consideration for redosing in obese women if surgeries were longer (Grupper, 2016). Last, some early evidence may support extending oral antibiotic prophylaxis for 48 hours postcesarean in obese women to lower SSIs (Valent, 2017). Obese women administered preoperative cephalosporin prophylaxis had a surgical infection rate of 13.4 percent compared with a rate of 6.4 percent for those given a 2-day *postoperative* course of oral cephalexin and metronidazole in addition to routine preoperative prophylaxis.

Negative-pressure wound therapy (NPWT) also has been used prophylactically (Mark, 2014). To address this, Hussamy and colleagues (2019) designed a randomized trial of NPWT versus routine dressing in 441 obese women undergoing cesarean delivery. Such therapy did not significantly lower the postoperative wound complication rate compared with routine care—17 versus 19 percent, respectively. A subsequent report confirmed these findings (Tuuli, 2020).

For the obese woman who is delivered vaginally, puerperal tubal sterilization is safe regardless of BMI (Byrne, 2020). These procedures are described in Chapter 39. The risks for postpartum venous thromboembolism are increased in obese women. This is despite the fact that velocity of lower-extremity blood flow is increased in obese pregnant women (Dutta, 2020). As discussed in Chapter 55 (p. 990), thromboprophylaxis is controversial. To lower thromboembolic complications, graduated

compression stockings, hydration, and early mobilization after cesarean delivery in obese women are recommended by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b). If there are additional risk factors other than class III obesity, the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020) recommends enoxaparin. We do not routinely use thromboprophylaxis for obesity alone at Parkland Hospital. This practice has recently been confirmed by Lu and associates (2021).

BARIATRIC SURGERY

Several surgical procedures are designed to treat morbid obesity either by diminishing gastric volume (*restrictive*) or by bypassing gastrointestinal absorption (*restrictive malabsorptive*). In nonpregnant patients, these procedures serve to improve or resolve diabetes, hyperlipidemia, hypertension, and obstructive sleep apnea and to reduce risks of myocardial infarction and death (Beamish, 2016).

Restrictive Procedures

Of options, the approved laparoscopic adjustable silicone gastric banding (LASGB) procedure—*LAPBAND*—places a band 2 cm below the gastroesophageal junction to create a small stomach pouch above the ring. The ring diameter is controlled by a saline reservoir in the band.

These procedures can have positive effects on pregnancy outcomes. One study compared pregnancy outcomes in bariatric surgery patients whose surgery was done after the first pregnancy. Following bariatric surgery, the incidences of hypertension, gestational diabetes, and preterm birth were significantly lower in the bariatric surgery patients (Ibiebele, 2020). The results from these and other studies are shown in Table 51-3.

Deflation of the band during pregnancy affects maternal and fetal weight gain. Pilone and coworkers (2014) studied 22 pregnancies after band placement and reported that all women underwent full deflation of the band in the first trimester and gained an average of 14.7 kg during pregnancy. In another study, 42 women underwent deflation of the band, whereas 54 women maintained band inflation. A deflated band was associated with higher mean maternal weight gain—15.4 kg versus 7.6 kg, increased birthweight—3712 versus 3380 g, and a twofold greater risk of macrosomia compared with an inflated band (Cornthwaite, 2015). Rarely, the band may slip due to nausea and vomiting, especially with advancing gestation or after delivery (Pilone, 2014; Schmitt, 2016; Suffee, 2012). One fetus suffered a fatal cerebral hemorrhage caused by maternal vitamin K deficiency secondary to prolonged vomiting due to band slippage that created a gastric outlet obstruction (Van Mieghem, 2008).

TABLE 51-3. Pregnancy Outcomes Following Bariatric Surgery

Outcome[a]	Gastric Banding[b]	Gastric Bypass[c]
Hypertension	11%	4%
Gestational diabetes	7%	4%
Cesarean delivery	35%	33%
Mean birthweight	3206 g	3084 g
Low birthweight	7%	11%
Stillbirth	3/1000	3/1000

[a]Data not reported identically—frequencies are approximations.
[b]Data from Adams, 2015; Bar-Zohar, 2006; Carelli, 2011; Dixon, 2005; Ducarme, 2013; Facchiano, 2012; Lapolla, 2010; Pilone, 2014; Sheiner, 2009.
[c]Data from Adams, 2015; Ducarme, 2013; Facchiano, 2012; González, 2015; Kwong, 2018; Sheiner, 2009.

Restrictive Malabsorptive Procedures

The laparoscopically performed *Roux-en-Y* gastric bypass is the most commonly used procedure for gastric restriction and selective malabsorption. Pregnancy outcomes are changed remarkably following Roux-en-Y bypass (Adams, 2015). As shown in Table 51-3, rates of hypertension, gestational diabetes, and fetal macrosomia are reduced.

Serious complications with bypass operations are uncommon, however, upper abdominal pain is frequent in pregnancy and may be associated with internal herniation, which is protrusion of the bowel through a window defect in the mesentery. Petersen and associates (2017) described outcomes in a birth cohort including 139 pregnancies. Upper abdominal pain complicated 46 percent, and a third of these had internal herniation. The preterm birth rate was 14 of 64 among those with upper abdominal pain versus 1 of 75 in those without pain. Intussusception and small bowel obstruction can develop from internal herniation, and maternal deaths from herniation and obstruction are reported (Moore, 2004; Renault, 2012). Bowel obstruction is notoriously difficult to diagnose during pregnancy (Vannevel, 2016; Wax, 2013).

Pregnancy

Because of its associated health successes, bariatric surgery is popular, and many women subsequently become pregnant (Narayanan, 2016). From studies, fertility improves and obstetrical complication rates decline in women after bariatric surgery compared with morbidly obese controls (Getahun, 2021; Kominiarek, 2017; Yi, 2015). In one of these studies, despite surgical treatment, almost half of 670 women were still obese at the time of their first pregnancy after bypass (Johansson, 2015). Nevertheless, the frequency of large-for-gestational-age newborns dropped from 22 to 8.6 percent and of small-for-gestational-age neonates rose from 7.6 to 15.6 percent. In a systematic review, Kwong and colleagues (2018) confirmed these fetal weight trends after bariatric surgery. According to Maric and colleagues (2020), fetuses are smaller because of lower maternal glucose levels rather than alterations of the fetoplacental circulation. Also, risks for diabetes and preeclampsia were reduced. Last, evidence suggests that the risk for congenital anomalies is decreased (Auger, 2019; Neovius, 2019).

Currently, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) recommends that women who have undergone bariatric surgery be assessed for vitamin and nutritional

sufficiency. When indicated, vitamins B_{12} and D, folic acid, and calcium supplementation are given. Vitamin A deficiency also is possible (Chagas, 2013). Women with a gastric band should be monitored by their bariatric team during pregnancy because band adjustments may be necessary. Last, special vigilance for signs of internal herniation with intestinal obstruction is encouraged (Stuart, 2017; Wax, 2013).

REFERENCES

Adams TD, Hammoud AO, Davidson LE, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes for pregnancies before and after gastric bypass surgery. Int J Obes (Lond) 39:686, 2015

Adekola H, Soto E, Dai J, et al: Optimal visualization of the fetal four-chamber and outflow tract views with transabdominal ultrasound in the morbidly obese: are we there yet? J Clin Ultrasound 43:548, 2015

Ahmadieh S, Kim HW, Weintraub NL: Potential role of perivascular adipose tissue in modulating atherosclerosis. Clin Sci 134(1):3, 2020

Ahmadzia HK, Patel EM, Joshi D, et al: Obstetric surgical site infections: 2 grams compared with 3 grams of cefazolin in morbidly obese women. Obstet Gynecol 126:708, 2015

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Obstetric analgesia and anesthesia. Practice Bulletin No. 209, February 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Use of prophylactic antibiotics in labor and delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 199, August 2018, Reaffirmed 2020

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Obesity in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 230, May 2021

Auger N, Bilodeau-Bertrans MN, Tith RM, et al: Bariatric surgery and the risks of congenital anomalies in subsequent pregnancies. Am J Clin Nutr 110(5):1168, 2019

Avagliano L, Monari F, Po G, et al: The burden of placental histopathology in still births associated with maternal obesity. Am J Clin Pathol 154(2):225, 2020

Bar-Zohar D, Azem F, Klausner J, et al: Pregnancy after laparoscopic adjustable gastric banding: perinatal outcome is favorable also for women with relatively high gestational weight gain. Surg Endosc 20:1580, 2006

Beamish AJ, Olbers T, Kelly AS, et al: Cardiovascular effects of bariatric surgery. Nat Rev Cardiol 13:730, 2016

Berggren EK, Groh-Wargo S, Presley L, et al: Maternal fat, but not lean, mass is increased among overweight/obese women with excess gestational weight gain. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214:745.e1, 2016

Berríos-Torres SI, Umscheid CA, Bratzler DW, et al: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention guideline for the prevention of surgical site infection, 2017. JAMA Surg 152(8):784, 2017

Biggio JR Jr, Chapman V, Neely C, et al: Fetal anomalies in obese women: the contribution of diabetes. Obstet Gynecol 115:290, 2010

Bodnar LM, Pugh SJ, Lash TL, et al: Low gestational weight gain and risk of adverse perinatal outcomes in obese and severely obese women. Epidemiology 27:894, 2016

Bogaerts A, Ameye L, Martens E, et al: Weight loss in obese pregnant women and risk for adverse perinatal outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 125:566, 2015

Byrne JJ, Smith EM, Saucedo AM, et al: Examining the association of obesity with postpartum tubal ligation. Obstet Gynecol 136(1):1, 2020

Carelli AM1, Ren CJ, Youn HA, et al: Impact of laparoscopic adjustable gastric banding on pregnancy, maternal weight, and neonatal health. Obes Surg 21:1552, 2011

Carlhäll S, Källén K, Blomberg M: The effect of maternal body mass index on duration of induced labor. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(5):669, 2020

Carpenter JR: Intrapartum management of the obese gravida. Clin Obstet Gynecol 59:172, 2016

Catalano P, deMouzon SH: Maternal obesity and metabolic risk to the offspring: why lifestyle interventions have not achieved the desired outcomes. Int J Obes (Lond) 39:642, 2015

Catalano PM, Farrell K, Thomas A, et al: Perinatal risk factors for childhood obesity and metabolic dysregulation. Am J Clin Nutr 90:1303, 2009

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Overweight and obesity. 2020. Available at:www.cdc.gov/obesity. Accessed December 7, 2020

Chagas CB, Saunders C, Pereira S, et al: Vitamin A deficiency in pregnancy: perspectives after bariatric surgery. Obes Surg 23:249, 2013

Cheung YM, Joham A, Marks S, et al: The obesity paradox: an endocrine perspective. Intern Med J 47(7):727, 2017

Cnattingius S, Villamor E: Weight change between successive pregnancies and risks of stillbirth and infant mortality: a nationwide cohort study. Lancet 387:558, 2016

Comstock SS: Time to change weight gain recommendations for pregnant women with obesity. J Clin Invest 129(11):4567, 2019

Conner SN, Verticchio JC, Tuuli MG, et al: Maternal obesity and risk of postcesarean wound complications. Am J Perinatol 31:299, 2014

Cornier MA, Després JP, Davis N, et al: Assessing adiposity: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. Circulation 124:1996, 2011

Cornthwaite K, Jefferys A, Lenguerrand E, et al: One size does not fit all. Management of the laparoscopic adjustable gastric band in pregnancy: a national prospective cohort study. Lancet 385 Suppl 1:S32, 2015

Cox Bauer CM, Bernhard KA, Greer DM, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes in obese women who lose weight during pregnancy. J Perinatol 36:278, 2016

Crane JM, Murphy P, Burrage L, et al: Maternal and perinatal outcomes of extreme obesity in pregnancy. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 35: 606, 2013

Cunningham FG: Peripartum cardiomyopathy: we've come a long way, but…. Obstet Gynecol 120(5):992, 2012

Dashe JS, McIntire DD, Twickler DM: Effect of maternal obesity on the ultrasound detection of anomalous fetuses. Obstet Gynecol 113:1001, 2009

De Gonzalez AB, Hartge P, Cherhan JR, et al: Body mass index and mortality among 1.46 million white adults. N Engl J Med 363:23, 2010

De Souza LR, Berger H, Retnakaran R, et al: Hepatic fat and abdominal adiposity in early pregnancy together predict impaired glucose homeostasis in mid-pregnancy. Nutr Diabetes 6:e229, 2016a

De Souza LR, Berger H, Retnakaran R, et al: Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease in early pregnancy predicts dysglycemia in mid-pregnancy: prospective study. Am J Gastroenterol 111:665, 2016b

Denison FC, Price J, Graham C, et al: Maternal obesity, length of gestation, risk of postdates pregnancy and spontaneous onset of labour at term. BJOG 115:720, 2008

Diehl AM, Day C: Cause, pathogenesis, and treatment of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. N Engl J Med 377(21):2063, 2017

Dixon JB: Obesity in 2015: advances in managing obesity. Nat Rev Endocrinol 12:65, 2016

Dodd JM, Grivell RM, Deussen AR, et al: Metformin for women who are overweight or obese during pregnancy for improving maternal and infant outcomes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD01054, 2018

Dominguez JE, Grotegut CA, Cooter M, et al: Screening extremely obese pregnant women for obstructive sleep apnea. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(6):613.e1, 2018

Ducarme G, Parisio L, Santulli P, et al: Neonatal outcomes in pregnancies after bariatric surgery: a retrospective multi-centric cohort study in three French referral centers. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26:275, 2013

Dude AM, Davis B, Delaney K, et al: Identifying fetal growth disorders using ultrasound in obese nulliparous women. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 1:1, 2019

Dutta EH, Burns RN, Pacheco LD, et al: Lower extremity blood flow velocity in obese versus nonobese pregnant women. Am J Perinatol 37(4):384, 2020

Edwards RK, Cantu J, Cliver S, et al: The association of maternal obesity with fetal pH and base deficit at cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 122(2 Pt 1):262, 2013

Facchiano E, Iannelli A, Santulli P, et al: Pregnancy after laparoscopic bariatric surgery: comparative study of adjustable gastric banding and Roux-en-Y gastric bypass. Surg Obes Relat Dis 8:429, 2012

Flenady V, Koopmans L, Middleton P, et al: Major risk factors for stillbirth in high-income countries: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet 377:1331, 2011

Gaillard R, Welten M, Oddy WH, et al: Associations of maternal prepregnancy body mass index and gestational weight gain with cardio-metabolic risk factors in adolescent offspring: a prospective cohort study. BJOG 123:207, 2016

Garvey WT, Mechanick JI, Brett EM, et al: American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and American College of Endocrinology comprehensive clinical practice guidelines for medical care of patients with obesity. Endocr Pract 22:842, 2016

Getahun D, Fassett MJ, Jacobsen SJ, et al: Perinatal outcomes after bariatric surgery. Am J Obstet Gynecol June 30, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Gibbs Pickens CM, Kramer MR, Howards PP, et al: Term elective induction of labor and pregnancy outcomes among obese women and their offspring. Obstet Gynecol 131:12, 2018

Gilboa SM, Correa A, Botto LD, et al: Association between prepregnancy body mass index and congenital heart defects. Am J Obstet Gynecol 202:51.e1, 2010

Gilmore LA, Klempel-Donchenko M, Redman LM: Pregnancy as a window to future health: excessive gestational weight gain and obesity. Semin Perinatol 39:296, 2015

Girsen AI, Osmundson SS, Naqvi M, et al: Body mass index and operative times at cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 124:684, 2014

Gluck ME, Venti CA, Lindsay RS, et al: Maternal influence, not diabetic intrauterine environment, predicts children's energy intake. Obesity 17:772, 2009
Godfrey KM, Reynolds RM, Prescott SL, et al: Influence of maternal obesity on the long-term health of offspring. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 5:53, 2017
González I, Rubio MA, Cordido F, et al: Maternal and perinatal outcomes after bariatric surgery: a Spanish multicenter study. Obes Surg 25:436, 2015
Grasch JL, Thompson JL, Newton JM, et al: Trial of labor compared with cesarean delivery in superobese women. Obstet Gynecol 130(5):994, 2017
Grupper M, Kuti JL, Swank ML, et al: Population pharmacokinetics of cefazolin in serum and adipose tissue from overweight and obese women undergoing cesarean delivery. J Clin Pharmacol 57(6):712, 2017
Hagström H, Höijer J, Ludvigsson JF, et al: Adverse outcomes of pregnancy in women with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Liver Int 36:268, 2016
Hainer V, Aldhoon-Hainerová I: Obesity paradox does exist. Diabetes Care 36 Suppl 2:S276, 2013
Hall JE, do Carmo JM, da Silva AA, et al: Obesity, kidney dysfunction and hypertension: mechanistic links. Nat Rev Nephrol 15(6):367, 2019
Hannaford KE, Tuuli MG, Odibo L, et al: Gestational weight gain: association with adverse pregnancy outcomes. Am J Perinatol 34:147, 2017
HAPO Study Cooperative Research Group, Metzger BE, Lowe LP, et al: Hyperglycemia and adverse pregnancy outcomes. N Engl J Med 358(19):1991, 2008
Harper LM, Jauk V, Longo S, et al: Early gestational diabetes screening in obese women: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(5):495.e1, 2020
He Y, Tian J, Blizzard L, et al: Associations of childhood adiposity and changes in adiposity status from childhood to adulthood with pregnancy hypertension. Pregnancy Hypertens 19:218, 2020
Heymsfield SB, Wadden TA: Mechanisms, pathophysiology, and management of obesity. N Engl J Med 376(3):254, 2017
Hussamy DJ, Wortman AC, McIntire DD, et al: Closed incision negative pressure therapy in morbidly obese women undergoing cesarean delivery: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 134(4):781, 2019
Ibiebele I, Gallimore F, Schnitzler M, et al: Perinatal outcomes following bariatric surgery between a first and second pregnancy: a population data linkage study. BJOG 127(3):345, 2020
Institute of Medicine, National Research Council, Rasmussen KM, et al (eds): Weight Gain during Pregnancy: Reexamining the Guidelines. Washington, National Academy of Sciences, 2009
Johansson K, Cnattingius S, Näslund I, et al: Outcomes of pregnancy after bariatric surgery. N Engl J Med 372:814, 2015
Johansson S, Villamor E, Altman M, et al: Maternal overweight and obesity in early pregnancy and risk of infant mortality: a population based cohort study in Sweden. BMJ 349:g6572, 2014
Johnson J, Clifton RG, Roberts JM, et al: Pregnancy outcomes with weight gain above or below the 2009 Institute of Medicine guidelines. Obstet Gynecol 121:969, 2013
Karimyar T, Leonardo P: Surgery in the obese pregnant patient. Clin Obstet Gynecol 63(2):416, 2020
Kerbage Y, Senat MV, Drumez E, et al: Risk factors for failed induction of labor among pregnant women with Class III obesity. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 99(5):637, 2020
Kim SS, Zhu Y, Grantz KL, et al: Obstetric and neonatal risks among obese women without chronic disease. Obstet Gynecol 128:104, 2016
Kitsiou-Tzeli S, Tzetis M: Maternal epigenetics and fetal and neonatal growth. Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes 24:43, 2017
Koliaki C, Liatis S, Kokkinos A: Obesity and cardiovascular disease: revisiting an old relationship. Metabolism 92:98, 2019
Kominiarek MA, Jungheim ES, Hoeger KM, et al: American Society for Metabolic and Bariatric Surgery position statement on the impact of obesity and obesity treatment on fertility and fertility therapy. Endorsed by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the Obesity Society. Surg Obes Relat Dis 13(5):750, 2017
Kullmann S, Heni M, Hallschmid M, et al: Brain insulin resistance at the crossroads of metabolic and cognitive disorders in humans. Physiol Rev 96(4):1169, 2016
Kwong W, Tomlinson G, Feig DS: Maternal and neonatal outcomes after bariatric surgery; a systematic review and meta-analysis: do the benefits outweigh the risks? Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(6):573, 2018
Lainez NM, Coss D: Obesity, Neuroinflammation, and reproductive function. Endocrinology 160(11):2719, 2019
Lakhi NA, Williamson K, Moretti ML: An original suprapannicular incision technique for cesarean delivery in the morbidly obese parturient. Obstet Gynecol 132(3):619, 2018
Lapolla A, Marangon M, Dalfrà MG, et al: Pregnancy outcome in morbidly obese women before and after laparoscopic gastric banding. Obes Surg 20:1251, 2010
Lawrence GM, Shulman S, Friedlander Y, et al: Associations of maternal prepregnancy and gestational body size with offspring longitudinal change in BMI. Obesity (Silver Spring) 22:1165, 2014
Lee VR, Darney BG, Snowden JM, et al: Term elective induction of labour and perinatal outcomes in obese women: retrospective cohort study. BJOG 123:271, 2016
Leth RA, Uldbjerg N, Norgaard M, et al: Obesity, diabetes, and the risk of infections diagnosed in hospital and post-discharge infections after cesarean section: a prospective cohort study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 90(5):501, 2011
Li M, Ni X, Xu Z, et al: Ultrasound assisted technology versus the conventional landmark location method in spinal anesthesia for cesarean delivery in obese parturients: a randomized controlled trial. Anesth Analg 129(1):155, 2019
Lindam A, Johansson S, Stephansson O, et al: High maternal body mass index in early pregnancy and risks of stillbirth and infant mortality—a population-based sibling study in Sweden. Am J Epidemiol 184:98, 2016
Lisonkova S, Muraca GM, Potts J, et al: Association between prepregnancy body mass index and severe maternal morbidity. JAMA 318:1777, 2017
Liu B, Xu G, Sun Y, et al: Association between maternal pre-pregnancy obesity and preterm birth according to maternal age and race or ethnicity: a population-based study. Lance Diabetes Endocrinol 7(9):707, 2019
Locke AE, Kahali B, Berndt SI, et al: Genetic studies of body mass index yield new insights for obesity biology. Nature 518:197, 2015
Lu MY, Blanchard CT, Ausbeck EB, et al: Evaluation of a risk-stratified, heparin-based, obstetric thromboprophylaxis protocol. Obstet Gynecol 138(4):530, 2021
Lynch TA, Malshe A, Colihan S, et al: Impact of maternal obesity on perinatal outcomes in preterm prelabor rupture of membranes ≥34 weeks. Am J Perinatol 37(5):467, 2020
Ma RC, Schmidt MI, Tam WH, et al: Clinical management of pregnancy in the obese mother: before conception, during pregnancy, and postpartum. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 4:1037, 2016
Maric T, Kanu C, Muller DC, et al: Fetal growth and fetoplacental circulation in pregnancies following bariatric surgery: a prospective study. BJOG 127:839, 2020
Mariona FG: Does maternal obesity impact pregnancy-related deaths? Michigan experience. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(9):1060, 2017
Mark KS, Alger L, Terplan M: Incisional negative pressure therapy to prevent wound complications following cesarean section in morbidly obese women: a pilot study. Surg Innov 21:345, 2014
Mark KS, Bragg B, Talaie T, et al: Risk of complication during surgical abortion in obese women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(2):238.e1, 2018
Marrs CC, Moussa HN, Sibai BM, et al: The relationship between primary cesarean delivery skin incision type and wound complications in women with morbid obesity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210:319.e1, 2014
Marshall NE, Guild C, Cheng YW, et al: The effect of maternal body mass index on perinatal outcomes in women with diabetes. Am J Perinatol 31:249, 2014
Martin CA, Gowda U, Smith BJ et al: Systematic review of the effect of lifestyle interventions on the components of the metabolic syndrome in South Asian migrants. J Immigr Minor Health 20(1):231, 2018
Meehan S, Beck CR, Mair-Jenkins J, et al: Maternal obesity and infant mortality: a meta-analysis. Pediatrics 133:863, 2014
Meyer BJ, Stewart FM, Brown EA, et al: Maternal obesity is associated with the formation of small dense LDL and hypoadiponectinemia in the third trimester. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 98:643, 2013
Mingrone G, Panunzi S, De Gaetano A, et al: Bariatric-metabolic surgery versus conventional medical treatment in obese patients with type 2 diabetes: 5 year follow-up of an open-label, single-centre, randomised controlled trial. Lancet 386:964, 2015
Molyneaux E, Poston L, Ashurst-Williams S, et al: Obesity and mental disorders during pregnancy and postpartum: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 123:857, 2014
Moore JX, Chaudhary N, Akinyemiju T, et al: Metabolic syndrome prevalence by race/ethnicity and sex in the United States, National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 1988–2012. Prev Chronic Dis 14:160287, 2017
Moore KA, Ouyang DW, Whang EE: Maternal and fetal deaths after gastric bypass surgery for morbid obesity. N Engl J Med 351:721, 2004
Most J, Amant MS, Hsia DS, et al: Evidence-based recommendations for energy intake in pregnant women with obesity. J Clin Invest 130:4682, 2019
Muktabhant B, Lawrie TA, Lumbiganon P, et al: Diet or exercise, or both, for preventing excessive weight gain in pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD007145, 2015

Narayanan RP, Syed AA: Pregnancy following bariatric surgery—medical complications and management. Obes Surg 26:2523, 2016
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (NHLBI): Metabolic syndrome. 2019. Available at: www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health-topics/metabolic-syndrome. Accessed December 7, 2020
National Institutes of Health: The practical guide: identification, evaluation, and treatment of overweight and obesity in adults. NIH Publication 00–4084. Bethesda, National Institutes of Health, 2000
Neovius M, Pasternak B, Näslund I, et al: Association of maternal gastric bypass surgery with offspring birth defects. JAMA 322(15):1515, 2019
Norman SM, Tuuli MG, Obido AO, et al: The effects of obesity on the first stage of labor. Obstet Gynecol 120:130, 2012
O'Brien CM, Louise J, Deussen A, et al: In overweight and obese women, fetal ultrasound biometry accurately predicts newborn measures. Aust N Z Obstet Gynaecol 60(1):101, 2020
Okesene-Gafa KAM, Li M, McKinlay CJD, et al: Effect of antenatal dietary interventions in maternal obesity on pregnancy weight-gain and birthweight: healthy mums and babies (HUMBA) randomized trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(2):152.e1, 2019
Ovesen P, Rasmussen S, Kesmodel U: Effect of prepregnancy maternal overweight and obesity on pregnancy outcome. Obstet Gynecol 118(2 Pt 1): 305, 2011
Paidas Teefey C, Reforma L, Koelper NC, et al: Risk factors associated with cesarean delivery after induction of labor in women with class III obesity. Obstet Gynecol 135(3):542, 2020
Petersen L, Lauenborg J, Svare J, et al: The impact of upper abdominal pain during pregnancy following a gastric bypass. Obes Surg 27(3):688, 2017
Pevzner L, Swank M, Krepel C, et al: Effects of maternal obesity on tissue concentrations of prophylactic cefazolin during cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 117:877, 2011
Pilone V, Hasani A, Di Micco R, et al: Pregnancy after laparoscopic gastric banding: maternal and neonatal outcomes. Int J Surg 12 Suppl 1:S136, 2014
Polnaszek BE, Raghuraman N, Lopez JD, et al: Neonatal morbidity in the offspring of obese women without hypertension or diabetes. Obstet Gynecol 132(4):835, 2018
Polönia Valente R, Santos P, Ferraz T, et al: Effect of obesity on labor duration among nulliparous women with epidural analgesia. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(13):2195, 2020
Pratt A, Howat P, Hui L: Maternal and perinatal outcomes for women with body mass index ≥50 kg/m^2 in a non-tertiary hospital setting. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 60(3):361, 2020
Pulman KJ, Tohidi M, Pudwell J, et al: Emergency caesarean section in obese parturients: Is a 30-minute decision-to-incision interval feasible? J Obstet Gynaecol Can 37:988, 2015
Rasmussen SA, Chu SY, Kim SY, et al: Maternal obesity and risk of neural tube defects: a metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198(6):611, 2008
Renault K, Gyrtrup HJ, Damgaard K, et al: Pregnant women with fatal complication after laparoscopic Roux-en-Y gastric bypass. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 91:873, 2012
Reynolds RM, Allan KM, Raja EA, et al: Maternal obesity during pregnancy and premature mortality from cardiovascular event in adult offspring: follow-up of 1 323 275 person years. BMJ 347:f4539, 2013
Ross VH, Dean LS, Thomas JA, et al: A randomized controlled comparison between combined spinal-epidural and single-shot spinal techniques in morbidly obese parturients undergoing cesarean delivery: time for initiation of anesthesia. Anesth Analg 118:168, 2014
Ruhstaller KE, Elovitz MA, Stringer M, et al: Obesity and the association with maternal mental health symptoms. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 10:1, 2017
Santos S, Voerman E, Amiano P, et al: Impact of maternal body mass index and gestational weight gain on pregnancy complications: an individual participant data meta-analysis of European, North American and Australian cohorts. BJOG 126(8):984, 2019
Sartori C, Lazzeroni P, Merli S: From placenta to polycystic ovarian syndrome: the role of adipokines. Mediators Inflamm 2016:4981916, 2016
Scheja L, Heeren J: The endocrine function of adipose tissues in health and cardiometabolic disease. Nat Rev Endocrinol 15(9):507, 2019
Schmitt F, Topart P, Salle A, et al: Early postpartum gastric band slippage after bariatric surgery in an adolescent obese girl. J Surg Case Rep 2016(9), 2016
Schummers L, Hutcheon JA, Bodnar LM, et al: Risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes by prepregnancy body mass index: a population-based study to inform prepregnancy weight loss counseling. Obstet Gynecol 125:133, 2015
Seasely AR, Xue Y, Ausbeck EB, et al: Outpatient cervical ripening with foley catheter for elective induction of labor (eIOL) in obese nulliparas. Abstract No. 341. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224:S224, 2021
Seneviratne SN, Jiang Y, Derraik J, et al: Effects of antenatal exercise in overweight and obese pregnant women on maternal and perinatal outcomes: a randomised controlled trial. BJOG 123:588, 2016
Sheiner E, Balaban E, Dreiher J, et al: Pregnancy outcome in patients following different types of bariatric surgeries. Obes Surg 19:1286, 2009
Shenouda C, Wijesooriya A, Toufeili A, et al: Labor progression in obese women: are women with increased body mass index having unnecessary caesarean sections? J Obstet Gynaecol Can 42(3):293, 2020
Shungin D, Winkler TW, Croteau-Chonka DC, et al: New genetic loci link adipose and insulin biology to body fat distribution. Nature 518:187, 2015
Siegel AM, Tucker A, Adkins LD, et al: Postpartum weight loss in women with class-III obesity: do they lose what they gain? Am J Perinatol 37(1):53, 2020
Smid MC, Kearney MS, Stamilio DM: Extreme obesity and postcesarean wound complications in the Maternal-Fetal Medicine Unit cesarean registry. Am J Perinatol 32:1336, 2015
Smid MC, Vladutiu CJ, Dotters-Katz SK, et al: Maternal super obesity and neonatal morbidity after term cesarean delivery. Am J Perinatol 33:1198, 2016
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM), Pacheco LD, Saade G, et al: Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM) Consult Series #51: thromboembolism prophylaxis for cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(2):B11, 2020
Stamilio DM, Scifres CM: Extreme obesity and postcesarean maternal complications. Obstet Gynecol 124(2 Pt 1):227, 2014
Stewart RD, Nelson DB, Matulevicius SA, et al: Cardiac magnetic resonance imaging to assess the impact of maternal habitus on cardiac remodeling during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214:640.e1, 2016
Stuart A, Kallen K: Risk of abdominal surgery in pregnancy among women who have undergone bariatric surgery. Obstet Gynecol 129:887, 2017
Suffee MT, Poncelet C, Barrat C: Gastric band slippage at 30 weeks' gestation: diagnosis and laparoscopic management. Surg Obes Relat Dis 8(3):366, 2012
Sutton AL, Sanders LB, Subramaniam A, et al: Abdominal incision selection for cesarean delivery of women with class III obesity. Am J Perinatol 33:547, 2016
Swank ML, Wing DA, Nicolau DP, et al: Increased 3-gram cefazolin dosing for cesarean delivery prophylaxis in obese women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213:415.e1, 2015
Tanner LD, Brock C, Chauhan SP: Severity of fetal growth restriction stratified according to maternal obesity J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 1:1, 2020
Targher G, Byrne CD, Lonardo A, et al: Non-alcoholic fatty liver disease and risk of incident cardiovascular disease: a meta-analysis. J Hepatol 65:589, 2016
Tersigni C, Neri C, D'Ippolito S, et al: Impact of maternal obesity on the risk of preterm delivery: insights into pathogenic mechanisms. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 17:1, 2020
Thornburg LL, Linder MA, Durie DE, et al: Risk factors for wound complications in morbidly obese women undergoing primary cesarean delivery. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25:1544, 2012
Tipton AM, Cohen SA, Chelmow D: Wound infection in the obese pregnant woman. Semin Perinatol 35:345, 2011
Triebwasser JE, Kazzi NG, Davis NB, et al: Cardiac remodeling in morbidly obese women and its association with adverse perinatal outcomes. Pregnancy Hypertens 17:104, 2019
Tu C, He J, Wu B, et al: An extensive review regarding the adipokines in the pathogenesis and progression of osteoarthritis. Cytokine 113:1, 2019
Turan OM, Rosenbloom J, Galey JL, et al: The relationship between rostral retraction of the pannus and outcomes at cesarean section. Am J Perinatol 33:951, 2016
Tuuli MG, Liu J, Tita A, et al: Effect of prophylactic negative pressure wound therapy vs standard wound dressing on surgical-site infection in obese women after cesarean delivery: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA 324(12):1180, 2020
Valenti AM, DeArmond C, Houston JM, et al: Effect of post-cesarean delivery cephalexin and metronidazole on surgical site infection among obese women. A randomized trial. JAMA 318:1026, 2017
Van Mieghem T, Van Schoubroeck D, Depiere M, et al: Fetal cerebral hemorrhage caused by vitamin K deficiency after complicated bariatric surgery. Obstet Gynecol 112:434, 2008
Vannevel V, Jans G, Bialecka M, et al: Internal herniation in pregnancy after gastric bypass. A systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 127:1013, 2016

Wang C, Wei Y, Zhang X, et al: A randomized clinical trial of exercise during pregnancy to prevent gestational diabetes mellitus and improve pregnancy outcome in overweight and obese women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:340, 2017

Wax JF, Pinette MG, Cartin A: Roux-en-Y gastric bypass-associated bowel obstruction complicating pregnancy—an obstetrician's map to the clinical minefield. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208:265, 2013

Weiss JL, Malon FD, Emig D, et al: Obesity, obstetric complications and cesarean delivery rate—a population based screening study. FASTER Research Consortium. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190:1091, 2004

Wilson E, Sivanesan K, Veerasingham M: Rates of vaginal birth after caesarean section: what chance do obese women have? Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 60(1):88, 2020

Wolfe H, Timofeev J, Tefera E, et al: Risk of cesarean in obese nulliparous women with unfavorable cervix: elective induction vs expectant management at term. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211:53.e1, 2014

Yang X, Li M, Haghiac M, et al: Causal relationship between obesity-related traits and TLR-4-driven responses at the maternal-fetal interface. Diabetologia 59:2459, 2016

Yao R, Ananth CV, Park BY, et al: Obesity and the risk of still birth: a population-based cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210:457.e1, 2014

Yaqub M, Kelly B, Noble JA, et al: The effect of maternal body mass index on fetal ultrasound image quality. Am J Obstet Gynecol 225(2):200, 2021

Yi XY, Li QF, Zhang J, et al: A meta-analysis of maternal and fetal outcomes of pregnancy after bariatric surgery. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 130:3, 2015

Young OM, Shaik IH, Twedt R, et al: Pharmacokinetics of Cefazolin prophylaxis in obese gravidae at time of cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213:541.e1, 2015

Zaki MN, Wing DA, McNulty JA: Comparison of staples vs subcuticular suture in class III obese women undergoing cesarean: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(4):451.e1, 2018

CHAPTER 52

Cardiovascular Disorders

In an analysis of maternal mortality in the United States between 2011 and 2013, deaths related to hemorrhage, hypertensive disorders, and embolism showed declining rates. In contrast, deaths attributable to cardiovascular diseases are rising and are responsible for one fourth of all pregnancy-related mortalities (Creanga, 2017; Petersen, 2019). Recent development of state-level maternal mortality review committees have emphasized this issue and highlighted the relatively protracted timeline of illness. Up to a year after delivery, cardiac events were among the leading causes of death for women in Texas in 2013 (Texas Maternal Morbidity Task Force, 2020). These disorders account also for significant maternal morbidity and are a common reason for intensive care unit admissions (Small, 2012).

Cardiovascular disease complicates 1 to 4 percent of pregnancies in the United States (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019). The increasing prevalence is likely multifactorial and includes the higher rates of obesity, hypertension, and diabetes (Klingberg, 2017). According to the National Center for Health Statistics, almost half of adults aged 20 and older have at least one risk factor for cardiovascular disease (Fryar, 2012). Another related reason is delayed childbearing. Last, as discussed subsequently (p. 927), an increasing number of women with congenital heart disease are now becoming pregnant.

The importance of heart disease and its adverse effect on pregnancy morbidity and mortality led the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists to create a Task Force on Pregnancy and Heart Disease. Its purpose is to emphasize the prevalence and effect of heart disease in pregnancy, provide guidance for risk factor identification, outline common cardiovascular disorders, provide recommendations for management, and develop a comprehensive interpregnancy plan. Multidisciplinary care is essential (Quinones, 2021).

PHYSIOLOGICAL CONSIDERATIONS IN PREGNANCY

Cardiovascular Physiology

The marked pregnancy-induced anatomical and functional changes in cardiac physiology can have a profound, negative effect on underlying heart disease. These changes are discussed in detail in Chapter 4 (p. 62), and some are listed in Table 52-1

TABLE 52-1. Hemodynamic Changes in 10 Normal Pregnant Women at Term Compared with Repeat Values Obtained 12 Weeks Postpartum

Parameter	Change (%)
Cardiac output	+43
Heart rate	+17
Left ventricular stroke work index	+17
Vascular resistance	
Systemic	−21
Pulmonary	−34
Mean arterial pressure	+4
Colloid osmotic pressure	−14

(Clark, 1989). Importantly, cardiac output increases approximately 40 percent during pregnancy. Almost half of this total takes place by 8 weeks' gestation and is maximal by midpregnancy (Capeless, 1989). This early rise stems from augmented stroke volume, which results from lowered vascular resistance. Later in pregnancy, resting pulse and stroke volume are even higher because of greater end-diastolic ventricular volume that results from augmented pregnancy blood volume. These adaptations are even more profound in multifetal pregnancies (Ghi, 2019). Intrinsic left ventricular contractility does not change, and thus normal left ventricular function is maintained during pregnancy. Namely, pregnancy is not characterized by hyperdynamic function or a high cardiac-output state.

Women with underlying cardiac disease may not always accommodate these changes, and ventricular dysfunction leads to cardiogenic heart failure. A few women with severe cardiac dysfunction can experience evidence of heart failure before midpregnancy. In others, heart failure may develop after 28 weeks' gestation, when pregnancy-induced hypervolemia and cardiac output reach their maximum. In most, however, heart failure develops peripartum, when labor, delivery, and several common obstetrical conditions add undue cardiac burdens. Some of the latter include preeclampsia, hemorrhage and anemia, and sepsis.

■ Ventricular Function in Pregnancy

Ventricular volumes and mass accrue to accommodate pregnancy-induced hypervolemia. This is reflected by greater end-systolic and end-diastolic dimensions. At the same time, however, septal thickness and ejection fraction are unchanged. This is because these alterations are accompanied by substantive ventricular remodeling—*plasticity*—which is characterized by eccentric expansion of left-ventricular mass that averages 30 to 35 percent near term. All of these adaptations return to prepregnancy values within a few months postpartum.

Certainly for clinical purposes, ventricular function during pregnancy is normal as estimated by the *Braunwald ventricular function* graph (Fig. 4-9, p. 63). Thus, for given filling pressures, cardiac output is appropriate and allows eudynamic cardiac function during pregnancy. Esoteric changes in pregnancy-related cardiac physiology continue to be clarified. In nonpregnant subjects with a normal heart who sustain a high-output state, the left ventricle undergoes *longitudinal remodeling*, and echocardiographic functional indices of its deformation show normal values. In pregnancy, the ventricle instead undergoes *spherical remodeling*, and the calculated indices that measure longitudinal deformation are depressed. Thus, normal nonpregnant indices are likely less accurate when used to assess function in pregnant women because they do not account for the spherical remodeling (Savu, 2012; Stewart, 2016).

Adjusting for these geometrical changes, Melchiorre and coworkers (2016) studied normal cardiac echocardiographic findings in 559 nulliparas at four points during pregnancy and again at 1 year postpartum. At term, significant chamber diastolic dysfunction was present in 18 percent and impaired myocardial relaxation was evident in 28 percent of the women. Also, a significant proportion of women demonstrated a drop in stroke volume index and a tendency toward eccentric remodeling. These findings suggest cardiovascular maladaptation to the expanded volume demands in a substantial proportion of apparently normal pregnancies. Significant dyspnea at rest was reported by 7.4 percent of the women at term, most of whom had chamber diastolic dysfunction. Cardiac function and all signs of dyspnea fully recovered at 1 year postpartum.

Cardiac magnetic resonance (MR) imaging increasingly is used to evaluate cardiac structure and function. Stewart and associates (2016) performed cardiac MR imaging studies in 23 women longitudinally across pregnancy and at 12 weeks postpartum. Compared with studies performed at 12 to 16 weeks' gestation, left ventricular mass grew significantly for both normal-weight and overweight women. The calculated geometrical ratio of left ventricular mass to left ventricular end-diastolic volume demonstrated concentric remodeling throughout gestation, which resolved by 12 weeks' postpartum. The right ventricle also undergoes remodeling (Martin, 2017). These observations likely mean that pregnancy causes a mixture of eccentric and concentric ventricular remodeling.

DIAGNOSIS OF HEART DISEASE

The physiological adaptations of normal pregnancy can induce symptoms and alter clinical findings that may confound the diagnosis of heart disease. For example, in normal pregnancy, functional systolic heart murmurs are common, respiratory effort is accentuated, edema frequently accrues in lower extremities after midpregnancy, and fatigue and exercise intolerance often develop. Some systolic flow murmurs can be loud, and normal changes in the various heart sounds depicted in Figure 52-1 may erroneously suggest cardiac disease. In contrast, clinical findings that are more likely to suggest heart disease are listed in Table 52-2.

■ Diagnostic Studies

Noninvasive cardiovascular studies such as electrocardiography, chest radiography, and echocardiography will provide the data necessary for cardiac functional evaluation in most women.

In the *electrocardiogram (ECG)*, an average 15-degree left-axis deviation is found as the diaphragm is elevated in advancing pregnancy. Other findings are described in Figure 52-2

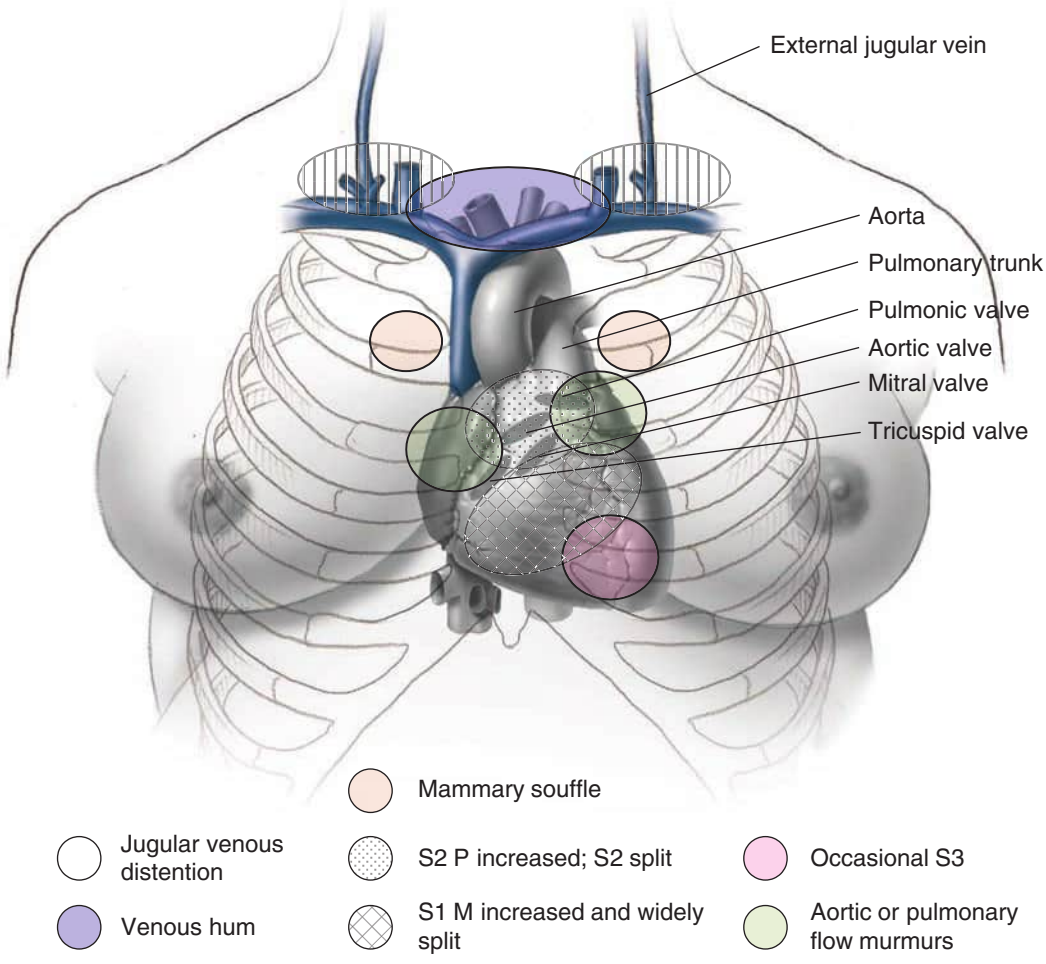


FIGURE 52-1 Normal cardiac examination findings in the pregnant woman. S_1 = first sound; M_1 = mitral first sound; S_2 = second sound; P_2 = pulmonary second sound. (Data from Gei, 2001; Hytten, 1991.)

TABLE 52-2. Clinical Indicators of Heart Disease During Pregnancy

Symptoms
Progressive dyspnea or orthopnea
Nocturnal cough
Hemoptysis
Syncope
Chest pain
Clinical Findings
Cyanosis
Clubbing of fingers
Persistent neck vein distention
Systolic murmur grade 3/6 or greater
Diastolic murmur
Cardiomegaly
Persistent tachycardia and/or arrhythmia
Persistent split second sound
Fourth heart sound
Criteria for pulmonary hypertension

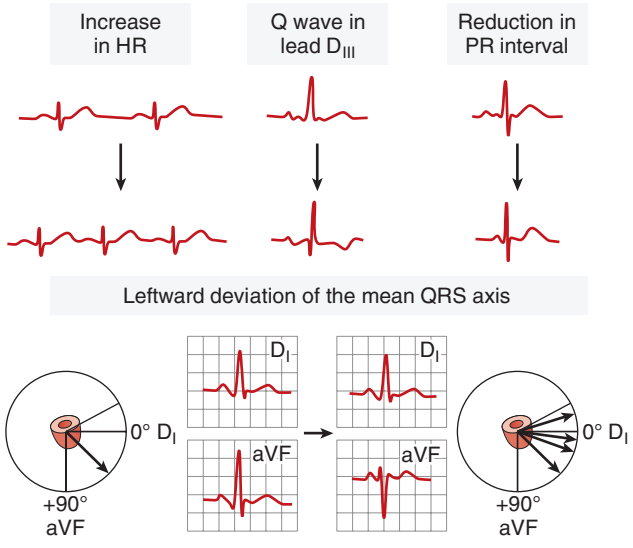


FIGURE 52-2 Normal electrocardiograph (ECG) adaptations during pregnancy, including a reduced mean PR interval, increased heart rate, left axis deviation, inverted or flattened T waves, and a Q wave in lead D_{III}. HR = heart rate. (Reproduced with permission from Angeli F, Angeli E, Verdecchia P: Electrocardiographic changes in hypertensive disorders of pregnancy, Hypertens Res 2014 Nov;37(11):973–975.)

(Angeli, 2014). Pregnancy does not alter voltage findings. Atrial and ventricular premature contractions are relatively frequent.

With *radiography*, anteroposterior (AP) and lateral chest radiographs are useful, and when a lead apron shield is used, fetal radiation exposure is minimal. Gross cardiomegaly can usually be excluded, but slight heart enlargement is poorly detected because the heart silhouette normally is larger in pregnancy. This is accentuated further with a portable posterior-anterior chest radiograph.

Echocardiography is now widely used and permits accurate diagnosis of most heart diseases during pregnancy. Some normal pregnancy-induced changes include a small increase in the dimensions of all cardiac chambers, a slight but significant growth in left ventricular mass, and greater tricuspid and mitral valve regurgitation (Grewal, 2014). Of note, systolic function normally does not change and ejection fraction is preserved. Late geometric changes such as interventricular septum dimension (IV_d) are likely to be abnormal before changes in ejection fraction. Savu (2012) and Vitarelli (2011) and their colleagues have provided normal echocardiographic parameters for pregnancy, which are listed in the Appendix (p. 1233). In some situations, such as complex congenital heart disease, *transesophageal echocardiography* may be useful.

Cardiovascular MR imaging, compared with echocardiography, is associated with higher reproducibility and is less hindered by ventricular geometry and body habitus. It is useful for assessment of the right ventricle and visualization of congenital heart lesions and myocarditis (Herrey, 2019; Martin, 2017). Ducas and coworkers (2014) have published normal reference values for pregnancy.

Exercise stress testing is an objective assessment of maternal functional capacity. It is also useful to diagnose exercise-induced arrhythmias. Stress testing can be performed in women with known heart disease prior to pregnancy or, if necessary, in the asymptomatic pregnant women (Regitz-Zagrosek, 2018). Dennis and associates (2019) have described findings in normal pregnant women using the *6-minute walk test*.

Myocardial perfusion studies using albumin or red cells tagged with technetium-99m are rarely needed during pregnancy to evaluate ventricular function. That said, the estimated fetal radiation exposure from nuclear medicine studies of myocardial perfusion is negligible (Chap. 49, p. 875). *Cardiac catheterization* with limited fluoroscopy time also is safe to perform. During coronary angiography, the mean radiation exposure to the unshielded abdomen is 1.5 mGy, and less than 20 percent of this reaches the fetus (Regitz-Zagrosek, 2018). Shortening the fluoroscopic time may help to minimize radiation exposure (Raman, 2015; Tuzcu, 2015). In women with clear indications, any minimal theoretical fetal risk is outweighed by maternal benefits, and such studies should be performed as indicated.

■ Functional Classification of Heart Disease

Pregnancy is a stress test of cardiovascular reserve. However, no clinically applicable test accurately measures functional cardiac capacity. The clinical classification of the New York Heart Association (NYHA) is based on past and present disability and is uninfluenced by physical signs:

- Class I. *Uncompromised—no limitation of physical activity:* These women do not have symptoms of cardiac insufficiency or experience anginal pain.
- Class II. *Slight limitation of physical activity:* These women are comfortable at rest, but with ordinary physical activity, discomfort in the form of excessive fatigue, palpitation, dyspnea, or anginal pain results.
- Class III. *Marked limitation of physical activity:* These women are comfortable at rest, but less than ordinary activity causes excessive fatigue, palpitation, dyspnea, or anginal pain.
- Class IV. *Severely compromised—inability to perform any physical activity without discomfort:* Symptoms of cardiac insufficiency or angina may develop even at rest. If any physical activity is undertaken, discomfort is increased.

At least four predictive systems detect and classify heart disease in pregnant women. These include CARPREG I and II, ZAHARA, and the World Health Organization (WHO) system (Wolfe, 2019). Of these, the most comprehensive risk stratification system is the modified WHO Risk Classification of Cardiovascular Disease and Pregnancy (Table 52-3). This classification system was validated in an international cohort of 2742 pregnant women with heart disease (van Hagen, 2016). It is especially useful for assessing maternal risk and for preconceptional counseling. Lu (2015) and Pijuan-Domènech (2015) and their colleagues concluded that the modified WHO classification provides the greatest predictive accuracy for cardiac complications during pregnancy.

GENERAL PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS

■ Preconceptional Counseling

Women with severe heart disease will benefit immensely from counseling before pregnancy, and they usually are referred for maternal-fetal medicine or cardiology consultation (Clark, 2012; Wolfe, 2019). Optimizing cardiac function to mitigate complications during pregnancy is the goal. Maternal mortality rates generally correlate directly with functional classification, however, this relationship may change as pregnancy progresses. Siu and coworkers (2001b) observed significant worsening of NYHA class in 4.4 percent of 579 pregnancies in which the baseline class was I or II.

As described later, some women have life-threatening cardiac abnormalities that can be reversed by corrective surgery, and subsequent pregnancy becomes less dangerous. In other cases, such as women with mechanical valves taking warfarin, fetal teratogenic concerns predominate. Last, because many congenital heart lesions are inherited as polygenic characteristics, some women with congenital heart lesions give birth to similarly affected neonates. This risk varies widely based on the specific abnormality (Table 52-4) (Lupton, 2002).

Risk Factors

According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019), four maternal risk factors are linked to

TABLE 52-3. World Health Organization (WHO) Risk Classification of Cardiovascular Disease and Pregnancy with Management Recommendations

Risk Category	Associated Conditions
WHO 1—Morbidity or mortality risk no higher than general population	Uncomplicated, small, or mild: Pulmonary stenosis Patent ductus arteriosus Mitral valve prolapse with no more than trivial mitral regurgitation Successfully repaired simple lesions: Ostium secundum atrial septal defect Ventricular septal defect Patent ductus arteriosus Total anomalous pulmonary venous drainage Isolated ventricular extrasystoles and atrial ectopic beats
• Cardiology consultation once or twice during pregnancy. Local hospital care suitable	
WHO 2—Small increase in risk of maternal mortality and moderate increase in morbidity risk	If otherwise uncomplicated: Unoperated atrial or ventricular septal defect Repaired Fallot tetralogy Most arrhythmias Turner syndrome without aortic dilation
• Cardiology consultation each trimester. Local hospital care suitable	
WHO 2 or 3—Intermediate increase in maternal mortality risk and moderate to severe rise in morbidity risk	Mild left ventricular impairment Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy Native or tissue disease not considered WHO 1 or 4 Marfan syndrome without aortic dilation Repaired coarctation Prior heart transplantation
• Cardiology consultation bimonthly. Care at referral hospital	
WHO 3—Significantly increased risk of maternal mortality and severe increase in morbidity risk	Mechanical valve Systemic right ventricle Post-Fontan operation Unrepaired cyanotic heart disease Other complex congenital heart disease Moderate left ventricular impairment Prior peripartum cardiomyopathy with no residual effect Moderate mitral stenosis Severe asymptomatic aortic stenosis Moderate aortic dilation (40–50 mm) Ventricular tachycardia
• Cardiology consultation monthly or bimonthly. Care at tertiary-care hospital	
WHO 4—Very high risk of maternal mortality or severe morbidity; pregnancy contraindicated and termination discussed	Pulmonary arterial hypertension Severe systemic ventricular dysfunction (NYHA III–IV or LVEF <30%) Prior peripartum cardiomyopathy with residual effects Severe left heart obstruction Severe aortic dilation Severe coarctation Fontan procedure with residual complications
• Pregnancy contraindicated • If pregnancy occurs, cardiology consultation monthly. Care at tertiary-care hospital	

Summarized from European Society of Gynecology, 2018; Nanna, 2014; Thorne, 2006.

TABLE 52-4. Risks for Fetal Heart Lesions Related to Affected Family Members

Cardiac Lesion	Congenital Heart Disease in Fetus (%)		
	Previous Sibling Affected	Father Affected	Mother Affected
Aortic stenosis	2	3	15–18
Pulmonary stenosis	2	2	6–7
Ventricular septal defect	3	2	10–16
Atrial septal defect	2.5	1.5	5–11
Patent ductus arteriosus	3	2.5	4
Coarctation of the aorta	NS	NS	14
Fallot tetralogy	2.5	1.5	2–3
Marfan syndrome	NS	50	50

NS = not stated.

cardiovascular disease morbidity and mortality: (1) *race/ethnicity*, with morbidity highest in African-American women; (2) *age*, with increased morbidity in women older than 40 years; (3) *hypertension* of all varieties; (4) *obesity*, with higher morbidity associated with increasing degrees of obesity (Ackerman, 2019). To these, social and health disparities could be added because lower income, food and housing insecurity, and lack of childcare are directly linked to underutilization of prenatal care (Gadson, 2017). In turn, lack of prenatal care is a risk factor for maternal morbidity and mortality (Howland, 2019).

Antepartum Care

In most instances, management involves a team approach with an obstetrician, cardiologist, anesthesiologist, and other specialists as needed. With complex lesions or other high-risk cases, evaluation by a multidisciplinary team is recommended early in pregnancy. Both prognosis and management are influenced by the type and severity of the specific lesion and by the maternal functional classification. In some, pregnancy termination may be advisable.

With rare exceptions, women in NYHA class I and most in class II negotiate pregnancy without morbidity. Special attention is directed toward both prevention and early recognition of heart failure. Of specific risks, infection with sepsis can precipitate decompensation. Also, bacterial endocarditis is a deadly complication of valvular heart disease (p. 934). Each woman is instructed to avoid contact with persons who have respiratory infections, including the common cold, and to immediately report any evidence for infection. Pneumococcal vaccine, if not previously administered, and yearly influenza vaccine are recommended (Chap. 10, p. 188).

Cigarette smoking is prohibited. Illicit drug use may be particularly harmful, an example being the cardiovascular effects of cocaine or amphetamines. In addition, intravenous drug use raises the infective endocarditis risk.

Fortunately, gravidas in NYHA class III and IV are uncommon today. In the Canadian study, only 3 percent of the approximately 600 pregnancies were complicated by NYHA class III heart disease, and no women had class IV when first seen (Siu, 2001b). If a woman chooses pregnancy, she must understand the risks and is encouraged to be compliant with planned care. In some women, prolonged hospitalization or bed rest is often necessary.

Labor and Delivery

In general, vaginal delivery is preferred, and labor induction is usually safe (Thurman, 2017). From the large Registry on Pregnancy and Cardiac Disease, Ruys and associates (2015) compared pregnancy outcomes between 869 women who had a planned vaginal delivery and 393 gravidas who had a planned cesarean delivery. Planned cesarean delivery conferred no advantage for maternal or neonatal outcome. Similar results were reported from Brigham and Women's Hospital (Easter, 2020).

Cesarean delivery is usually limited to obstetrical indications, and considerations are given for the specific cardiac lesion, overall maternal condition, and availability of experienced anesthesia personnel and hospital capabilities. Some of these women tolerate major surgical procedures poorly and are best delivered in a unit experienced with management of complicated cardiac disease. Occasionally, pulmonary artery catheterization may be needed for hemodynamic monitoring (Chap. 50, p. 883). In our experiences, however, invasive monitoring is rarely indicated.

Based on her review, Simpson (2012) recommends cesarean delivery for women with the following: (1) dilated aortic root >4 cm or aortic aneurysm; (2) acute severe congestive heart failure; (3) recent myocardial infarction; (4) severe symptomatic aortic stenosis; (5) need for emergency valve replacement immediately after delivery; and (6) warfarin administration within 2 weeks of delivery due to fetal risk for intracerebral hemorrhage because the fetal liver takes up to 2 weeks to metabolize warfarin. Although we agree with most of these, we have some caveats. For congestive heart failure, we prefer aggressive medical stabilization of pulmonary edema followed by vaginal delivery if possible.

During labor, the mother with significant heart disease should be kept in a semirecumbent position with a lateral tilt. Vital signs are taken frequently between contractions. Elevations in pulse rate much above 100 beats per minute (bpm) or respiratory rate above 24 breaths per minute, particularly when associated with dyspnea, may suggest impending ventricular failure. For evidence of cardiac decompensation, intensive medical management must be instituted immediately. Delivery itself does not necessarily improve the maternal condition and, in fact, may worsen it. Moreover, emergency cesarean delivery may be particularly hazardous. Clearly, both maternal and fetal status must be considered in the decision to hasten delivery under these circumstances.

Analgesia and Anesthesia

Relief from pain and from apprehension is important. Although intravenous analgesics provide satisfactory pain relief for some women, continuous epidural analgesia is recommended for most. The major problem with conduction analgesia is maternal

hypotension (Chap. 25, p. 473). This is especially dangerous in women with intracardiac shunts in whom flow may be reversed. Hypotension can also be life-threatening if there is pulmonary arterial hypertension or aortic stenosis. In these, ventricular output is dependent on adequate preload. In women with these conditions, narcotic regional analgesia; low-dose, slow-infusion epidural; or general anesthesia may be preferable.

For vaginal delivery in women with only mild cardiovascular compromise, epidural analgesia given with intravenous sedation often suffices. This minimizes intrapartum cardiac output fluctuations and allows forceps or vacuum-assisted delivery. Incrementally dosed subarachnoid blockade is approached especially cautiously in women with significant heart disease due to associated hypotension. For cesarean delivery, epidural analgesia is preferred by most clinicians with caution for its use with pulmonary arterial hypertension (p. 932).

Intrapartum Heart Failure

From the Nationwide Inpatient Sample, one fourth of cases of heart failure during pregnancy were encountered intrapartum (Mogos, 2018). Women with underlying cardiovascular disorders are at higher risk (Schlichting, 2019). The physiological stress and fluid shifts associated with labor and delivery explain this risk. Catecholamine release due to pain and second stage Valsalva increase left ventricular work, which can precipitate heart failure (Anthony, 2016).

Obstetrical complications can either advance or precipitate heart failure. Preeclampsia is common and may provoke afterload failure (Vaught, 2018). Findings from the Registry on Pregnancy and Cardiac Disease indicate that women with preexisting heart disease who develop preeclampsia have a 30-percent risk of developing heart failure during pregnancy (Ruys, 2014). Obesity is another common cofactor (Vonck, 2019). Also, high-output states caused by hemorrhage and acute anemia elevate cardiac workload and magnify the physiological effects of compromised ventricular function. Similarly, infection and sepsis increase cardiac output and oxygen utilization and depress myocardial function.

Chronic hypertension with superimposed preeclampsia is the most frequent cause of heart failure in pregnancy in numerous populations. Many of these women have preexisting concentric left ventricular hypertrophy (Ambia, 2017, 2018). In some, mild antecedent undiagnosed hypertension causes covert cardiomyopathy, and when superimposed preeclampsia develops, together they may cause otherwise inexplicable peripartum heart failure. Obesity is frequently comorbid with chronic hypertension, and it also is associated with ventricular hypertrophy (Kenchaiah, 2002).

Cardiovascular decompensation during labor may manifest as pulmonary edema with hypoxia or as hypotension, or both. The proper therapeutic approach depends on the specific hemodynamic status and the underlying cardiac lesion. Continuous pulse oximetry and invasive blood pressure monitoring with an arterial line is helpful in some cases (Easter, 2020) In general, pulmonary edema due to fluid overload is often best treated with aggressive diuresis. If precipitated by tachycardia, heart rate control with β-blocking agents is preferred. However, unless the underlying pathophysiology is understood and the cause of the decompensation is clear, empirical therapy may be hazardous. Details of heart failure management and specific cardiovascular disorders are discussed below.

Puerperium

Women who have shown little or no evidence of cardiac compromise during pregnancy, labor, or delivery may still decompensate postpartum (Mogos, 2018). Fluid mobilized into the intravascular compartment and reduced peripheral vascular resistance place higher demands on myocardial performance. Therefore, meticulous care is continued into the puerperium (Sliwa, 2018; Zeeman, 2006). Postpartum hemorrhage, anemia, infection, and thromboembolism are much more serious complications with heart disease. Indeed, these factors often act in concert to precipitate postpartum heart failure. In addition, sepsis and severe preeclampsia cause or worsen pulmonary edema because of endothelial activation and capillary-alveolar leakage. For example, women with pregnancy-associated hypertensive diseases have a greater risk for readmission for heart failure within 90 days of delivery (Nizamuddin, 2019).

For puerperal tubal sterilization after vaginal delivery, the procedure can be delayed up to several days to ensure that the mother has normalized hemodynamically and that she is afebrile, not anemic, and ambulatory. For those desiring future fertility, contraception is crucial (Abarbanell, 2019; Sobhani, 2019). Detailed contraceptive advice is available in the *U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use* guidelines (Curtis, 2016). These are discussed in Chapter 38 (p. 664).

HEART FAILURE

Primary structural or functional cardiac disorders can lead to this clinical syndrome caused by impaired ventricular function. Mitral stenosis, pulmonary hypertension, and peripartum cardiomyopathy are some examples. Chronic pressure overload leads to ventricular dilation and impaired function over time. Associated perinatal mortality rates are high (Bright, 2021).

Diagnosis

Heart failure is best thought of as chronic underlying ventricular myopathy with episodic worsening causing clinical symptoms (Packer, 2019). Thus, failure can have a gradual onset or may present as acute "flash" pulmonary edema. In pregnant women, onset is most likely at the end of the second or beginning of the third trimester and peripartum (Ruys, 2014). Of symptoms, dyspnea is universal and others are orthopnea, palpitations, substernal chest pain, nocturnal cough, and a sudden decline in the ability to complete usual duties. Clinical findings include persistent basilar rales, hemoptysis, progressive edema, tachypnea, and tachycardia. According to Malhamé and associates (2019), serum levels of brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) are variably elevated (Appendix, p. 1231). Cardiomegaly and pulmonary edema are hallmark radiographic findings. Acutely, there is usually systolic failure. Echocardiography may show an ejection fraction <0.45 or a fractional shortening <30 percent, or both, and an end-diastolic dimension >2.7 cm/m^2 (Hibbard, 1999).

Coincidental diastolic failure also may be found, depending on the underlying cause (Redfield, 2016). Last, the cause of ventricular dysfunction—such as valvular abnormalities or concentric hypertrophy—may become apparent.

Management

Pulmonary edema from heart failure usually responds promptly with diuretic administration to reduce preload. Recall that furosemide (Lasix) is a potent venodilator in addition to its diuretic action. Hypertension is common in pregnancy, and afterload reduction is accomplished with hydralazine, nifedipine, or another vasodilator. Angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors are withheld until after delivery because of marked fetal effects (Chap. 8, p. 150). β-blocking agents lower mortality rates in the setting of heart failure, and carvedilol (Coreg) is commonly used in pregnancy. Last, digoxin provides inotropic support and is associated with decreased hospitalizations. With chronic heart failure, the incidence of associated thromboembolism is high, and therefore prophylactic heparin is often recommended.

Left ventricular assist devices are now employed more frequently for acute and chronic heart failure treatment. A few reports describe their use during pregnancy (Hamdan, 2017; Makdisi, 2017). *Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO)* was reported to be lifesaving in a woman with fulminating peripartum cardiomyopathy, and it may be used in women with pulmonary hypertension (Meng, 2017; Pacheco, 2018).

SURGICALLY CORRECTED HEART DISEASE

Most clinically significant congenital heart lesions are repaired during childhood. Those frequently not diagnosed until adulthood include atrial septal defects, pulmonic stenosis, bicuspid aortic valve, and aortic coarctation (Brickner, 2014). In some cases, the defect is mild and does not require repair. In others, a significant anomaly is amenable to corrective surgery, performed ideally before pregnancy. Rarely, surgical corrections are necessary during pregnancy.

Valve Replacement Before Pregnancy

Numerous reports describe subsequent pregnancy outcomes in women who have a prosthetic mitral or aortic valve placed before pregnancy. From one review, the overall estimated maternal mortality rate was 1.2 percent (Lawley, 2015). Using the Registry of Pregnancy and Cardiac Disease, the maternal mortality rate was 1.4 percent in women with a mechanical heart valve and 1.5 percent in women with a tissue heart valve (van Hagen, 2015). Compared with the general maternal mortality rate measured per 100,000 births, this risk is more than 50-fold higher (Chap. 1, p. 4).

The type of valve, either mechanical or bioprosthetic, is paramount. From the just-described cohort, mechanical heart valve thrombosis complicated 4.7 percent. Only 58 percent of women with a mechanical heart valve had a pregnancy free of serious adverse events compared with 79 percent of patients with a tissue heart valve (Table 52-5) (van Hagen, 2015). A study of 417 women showed that pregnancy loss occurred in 61 and 15 percent with mechanical and bioprosthetic valves, respectively (Batra, 2018). Anticoagulation is a requisite with mechanical valves because of thrombosis risks, and its complications are described in the next section. Thus, pregnancy is undertaken only after serious consideration for women with a mechanical valve.

TABLE 52-5. Selected Outcomes in Pregnancies Complicated by Heart-Valve Replacement

Outcome	Mechanical Valve (n = 212)	Tissue Valve (n = 134)
Maternal mortality	3 (1.4)	2 (1.5)
Heart failure	162 (7.5)	1 (8.2)
Thrombotic complication	13 (6.1)	1 (0.7)
Hemorrhagic complication	49 (23)	7 (5.1)
Pregnancy loss <24 weeks	33 (15.6)	2 (1.5)
Stillbirth	6 (2.8)	0 (0)
Preterm birth <37 weeks	29 (18)	24 (19)

Data presented as n (%).

Bouhout and associates (2014) reported the outcomes of 27 pregnancies in 14 women who underwent an *aortic valve* replacement prior to pregnancy. Seven of the 27 pregnancies occurred in five women with a mechanical valve. Complications in this group included two embolic myocardial infarctions and one each of miscarriage, postpartum hemorrhage, placental abruption, and preterm birth. In the bioprosthetic group, there were nine miscarriages.

Adverse maternal and fetal outcomes plague also women with a *mechanical mitral valve*. In one report of 28 pregnancies, Vause and colleagues (2017) described severe maternal morbidity and mortality in 57 percent. A review of pregnancy outcomes in 800 women reported similar results (Steinberg, 2017).

Porcine tissue mitral valves are safer during pregnancy, primarily because thrombosis is rare, and anticoagulation is not required (see Table 52-5). However, valvular dysfunction with cardiac deterioration poses a serious risk. Another drawback is that bioprostheses are less durable than mechanical ones, and valve replacement longevity averages 10 to 15 years. Batra and coworkers (2018) concluded that pregnancy accelerated the risk for subsequent replacement.

Anticoagulation

This is critical for women with mechanical valves. Unfortunately, warfarin is the most effective anticoagulant for preventing maternal thromboembolism but causes harmful fetal effects. As seen in Table 52-6, anticoagulation with heparin is less hazardous for the fetus, however, the risk of maternal thromboembolic complications is increased (Steinberg, 2017). As a compromise, some use heparin in early pregnancy, and then transition to warfarin in the second trimester.

Warfarin is teratogenic and causes miscarriages, stillbirths, and fetal malformations (Chap. 8, p. 156). In one study of

TABLE 52-6. Maternal and Fetal Composite Outcomes in 800 Women with a Mechanical Heart Value Receiving Anticoagulation

Treatment	Composite Adverse Outcome (%)	
	Maternal[a]	Fetal[b]
VKA	5	39
LMWH	16	14
LMWH[c] followed by VKA	16	16
UFH[c] followed by VKA	16	34

[a]Maternal death, valve failure, thromboembolism.
[b]Miscarriage, fetal death, congenital malformation.
[c]During first trimester.
LMWH = low-molecular-weight heparin; UFH = unfractionated heparin; vitamin K antagonist.

71 women given warfarin throughout pregnancy, the rates of miscarriage were 32 percent; stillbirth, 7 percent; and embryopathy, 6 percent (Cotrufo, 2002). The risk was highest when the mean daily dose of warfarin exceeded 5 mg. Similarly, the American College of Cardiology and the American Heart Association estimate that the risk of embryopathy is dose dependent, and the risk is <3 percent if the warfarin dose is ≤5 mg/d (Nishimura, 2014). Women treated with <5 mg/d of warfarin had fetal risks similar to the low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH) regimen (Steinberg, 2017). If the dosage is >5 mg/d, the risk of embryopathy exceeds 8 percent.

Anticoagulation for mechanical valves using *low-dose* unfractionated heparin (UFH) is definitely inadequate and carries a high associated maternal mortality rate (Chan, 2000; Iturbe-Alessio, 1986). Even *full* anticoagulation with either UFH or one of the LMWHs is associated with valvular thrombosis (Leyh, 2002, 2003; Rowan, 2001). However, compliance with dosing and therapeutic monitoring may have contributed (McLintock, 2014). Therefore, if full anticoagulation with dose-adjusted UFH or LMWH is used, meticulous monitoring is recommended. The activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) should be at least 2 times control or anti-Xa levels should be 0.8 to 1.2 U/mL at 4 to 6 hours postdose (Nishimura, 2014).

Recommendations for Anticoagulation

Several different treatment options exist, although all are principally based on consensus opinion, and none is completely ideal. Warfarin and LMWH are associated with fewer valve thromboses and therefore favored over subcutaneous UFH (D'Souza, 2017). In addition, therapeutic subcutaneous UFH dosing is difficult to achieve due to lower peak plasma concentrations in pregnant women, especially with advancing gestation (Barbour, 1995; Brancazio, 1995). One guideline from the American College of Cardiology and the American Heart Association offers different treatment options based on trimester and baseline warfarin dose (Nishimura, 2014). Figure 52-3 displays a treatment algorithm based on these guidelines. All recommendations also include aspirin 75 to 100 mg orally daily.

Vaginal or cesarean delivery is ideally scheduled to allow controlled discontinuation of anticoagulation and partial reversal of its effects. This also permits administration of regional anesthesia, which requires a degree of coagulation to avoid epidural hematoma formation (Chap. 25, p. 478). If delivery intervenes while the anticoagulant is still effective, and extensive bleeding is encountered, protamine sulfate is given intravenously to reverse heparin effects. Patients should be counseled that in these situations regional anesthesia may not safely be possible.

Following vaginal delivery, anticoagulant therapy with warfarin or heparin may be restarted 6 hours later, usually with no problems. Following cesarean delivery, full anticoagulation is withheld, but the optimal duration is unclear. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a) recommends resuming UFH or LMWH 6 to 12 hours after cesarean delivery. At Parkland Hospital, however, we wait at least 24 hours following a major surgical procedure given inherent bleeding risks. Following first-trimester dilation and curettage heparin is begun immediately.

Warfarin, LMWH, and UFH are compatible with breastfeeding. They do not accumulate in breast milk and thus do not induce anticoagulant effects in the newborn (Briggs, 2022).

Cardiac Surgery During Pregnancy

Although usually postponed until after delivery, valve replacement or other cardiac surgery during pregnancy may be lifesaving. Several reviews confirm that such surgery is associated with major maternal and fetal morbidity (Liu, 2021). Elassy and associates (2014) described 23 women who underwent urgent open cardiac surgery for severe valve malfunction. Two women and 10 fetuses—all at a gestational age below 28 weeks—died before hospital discharge. Only six fetuses were delivered at term. In a review of 154 women undergoing bypass surgery during pregnancy, the maternal mortality rate was 11 percent, and the fetal loss rate was 33 percent (Jha, 2018). To optimize outcomes, Chandrasekhar and coworkers (2009) recommend that surgery be elective when possible, pump flow rate should remain >2.5 L/min/m^2, perfusion pressure should exceed 70 mm Hg, and hematocrit should be kept >28 percent.

Pregnancy after Heart Transplantation

Many successful pregnancies have followed cardiac transplantation (D'Souza, 2018; Macera, 2018). Current recommendations from the International Society of Heart and Lung Transplantation do not discourage pregnancy in stable heart transplant recipients who are more than 1 year posttransplant (Costanzo, 2010). Obviously, a highly specialized level of care and multidisciplinary team is necessary.

The transplanted heart appears to respond normally to pregnancy-induced alterations (Cowan, 2012). Despite this, complications are common during pregnancy. Of 103 pregnancies in 57 heart recipients from the National Transplantation Pregnancy Registry, almost half developed hypertension, and 11 percent suffered at least one rejection episode during pregnancy (Coscia, 2010). They were usually delivered by cesarean at a mean of 37 weeks' gestation. Life expectancy following heart transplantation is known to be limited. At follow-up,

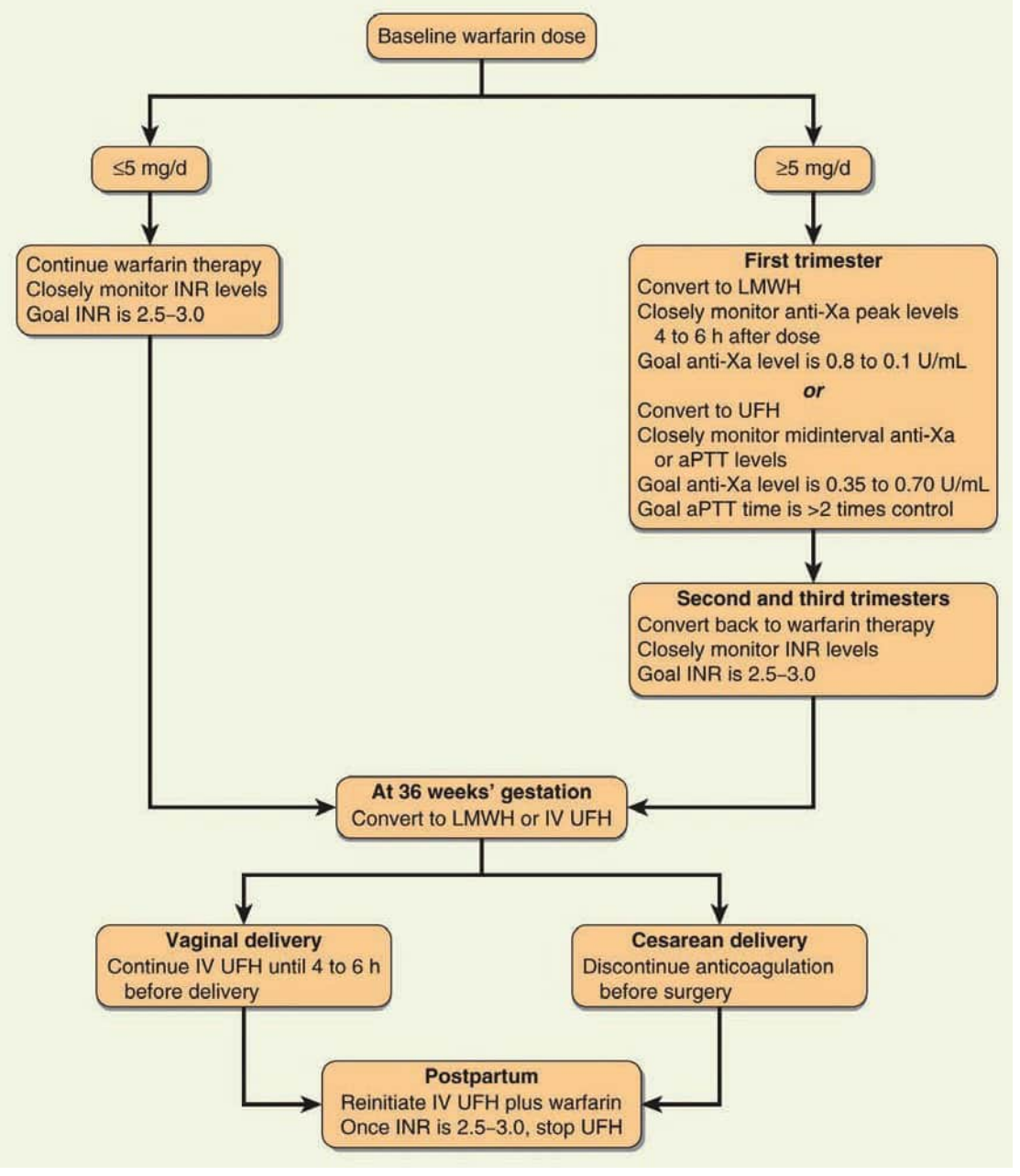


FIGURE 52-3 Algorithm for anticoagulation in gravidas with a mechanical heart valve. INR = international normalized ratio; IV = intravenous; LMWH = low-molecular-weight heparin; aPTT = activated partial thromboplastin time; UFH = unfractionated heparin. (From Elkayam, 2020; Nishimura, 2014; Roeder, 2011.)

at least 16 women had died more than 2 years postpartum. In another small study, pregnancy itself did not worsen long-term survival rates (Dagher, 2018).

VALVULAR HEART DISEASE

Rheumatic fever is uncommon in the United States because of less crowded living conditions, penicillin availability, and evolution of nonrheumatogenic streptococcal strains. Still, it remains the chief cause of serious mitral valvular disease in women of childbearing age in the nonindustrialized world (Liaw, 2021; van Hagen, 2018).

Mitral Stenosis

Rheumatic endocarditis causes most mitral stenosis lesions. The normal mitral valve surface area is 4.0 cm^2, and when stenosis narrows this to <2.5 cm^2, symptoms usually develop. The contracted valve impedes blood flow from the left atrium to the ventricle.

With more severe stenosis, the left atrium dilates, left atrial pressure is chronically elevated, and significant pulmonary hypertension develops (Table 52-7) (Galiè, 2016). These women have a relatively fixed cardiac output, and thus the increased preload of normal pregnancy and other factors that raise cardiac output may cause ventricular failure and

TABLE 52-7. Major Cardiac Valve Disorders

Type	Cause	Pathophysiology	Pregnancy
Mitral stenosis	Rheumatic valvulitis	LA dilation and passive pulmonary hypertension Atrial fibrillation	Heart failure from fluid overload, tachycardia
Mitral insufficiency	Rheumatic valvulitis Mitral valve prolapse LV dilation	LV dilation and eccentric hypertrophy	Ventricular function improves with afterload decrease
Aortic stenosis	Congenital bicuspid valve	LV concentric hypertrophy, decreased cardiac output	Moderate stenosis is tolerated; severe is life-threatening with decreased preload, e.g., obstetrical hemorrhage or regional analgesia
Aortic insufficiency	Rheumatic valvulitis Connective tissue disease Congenital	LV hypertrophy and dilation	Ventricular function improves with afterload decrease
Pulmonary stenosis	Rheumatic valvulitis Congenital	Severe stenosis associated with RA and RV enlargement	Mild stenosis usually well tolerated; severe stenosis associated with right heart failure and atrial arrhythmias

LA = left atrium; LV = left ventricle; RA = right atrium; RV = right ventricle.

pulmonary edema. Cardiac failure develops for the first time during pregnancy in one fourth of women with mitral stenosis (Caulin-Glaser, 1999). The resulting pulmonary venous hypertension and pulmonary edema create symptoms of dyspnea, fatigue, palpitations, cough, and hemoptysis. The classic murmur may not be heard in some women, and this clinical picture at term may be confused with idiopathic peripartum cardiomyopathy (Cunningham, 1986, 2019).

Also with significant stenosis, tachycardia shortens ventricular diastolic filling time and elevates the mitral gradient. This too may lead to pulmonary edema, and therefore, sinus tachycardia is often treated prophylactically with β-blocking agents. Atrial tachyarrhythmias, including fibrillation, are common in mitral stenosis and are treated aggressively. Atrial fibrillation predisposes to mural thrombus formation and cerebrovascular embolization that can cause stroke (Chap. 63, p. 1132). Atrial thrombosis can also develop despite a sinus rhythm (Hameed, 2005).

Pregnancy Outcomes

In general, complications are directly associated with the degree of valvular stenosis. Women with a mitral-valve area <2 cm^2 are at greatest risk (Siu, 2001b). In one study of 273 gravidas with mitral stenosis, 43 percent developed heart failure, and almost a fourth of these women required admission (van Hagen, 2018). For women with severe stenosis, half developed heart failure, and one woman died. Fetal-growth restriction was more common in women with a mitral valve area <1.0 cm^2.

Prognosis also is related to maternal functional capacity. Among 486 pregnancies complicated by rheumatic heart disease—predominantly mitral stenosis—8 of 10 maternal deaths were in women in NYHA classes III or IV (Sawhney, 2003).

Management

Limited physical activity is generally recommended in women with mitral stenosis. If symptoms of pulmonary congestion develop, activity is further reduced, dietary sodium is restricted, and diuretics are given. Also, β-blocker drug therapy slows the ventricular response to activity. If new-onset atrial fibrillation develops, intravenous verapamil, 5 to 10 mg, is given, or electrocardioversion is performed. For chronic fibrillation, digoxin, a β-blocker, or a calcium-channel blocker can slow ventricular response. Therapeutic anticoagulation is indicated with persistent fibrillation, left atrial thrombus, and/or a history of embolism (Nanna, 2014).

Surgical intervention is considered for women with symptomatic severe mitral stenosis. Other candidates are those with mitral-valve area 1.5 to 2.0 cm^2 complicated by recurrent systemic embolization or severe pulmonary hypertension. Balloon valvuloplasty is preferred if the valve is pliable (Bui, 2014). In one review of 71 pregnant women with severe mitral stenosis and heart failure who underwent percutaneous valvuloplasty, 98 percent were either NYHA class I or II by the time of delivery (Esteves, 2006). At a mean of 44 months, the total event-free maternal survival rate was 54 percent. However, eight women required another surgical intervention. All of the 66 newborns who were delivered at term had normal growth and development.

Labor and delivery are particularly stressful for women with symptomatic mitral stenosis. Pain, exertion, and anxiety cause tachycardia with possible rate-related heart failure. Epidural analgesia for labor is ideal. Fluid overload should be avoided, and these women are best managed on the "dry" side. As shown in Figure 52-4 uterine contractions raise cardiac output by increasing circulating blood volume. Abrupt expansion in preload may elevate pulmonary capillary wedge pressure and cause pulmonary edema. Wedge pressures rise immediately postpartum. One hypothesis for this suggests that the loss of the low-resistance placental circulation couples with venous "autotransfusion" from a now-empty, contracted uterus and from the lower extremities and pelvis (Clark, 1985). Thus, pulmonary edema may manifest immediately postpartum.

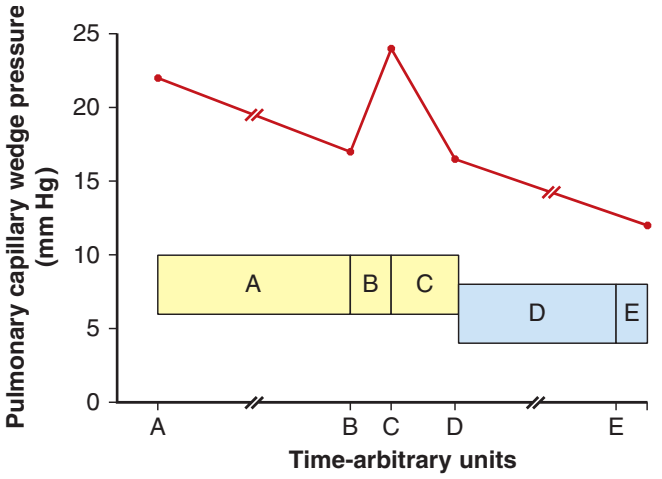


FIGURE 52-4 Mean pulmonary capillary wedge pressure measurements (*red graph line*) in eight women with mitral valve stenosis. Shaded yellow and blue boxes are mean (± 1 SD) pressures in nonlaboring normal women at term. **A.** First-stage labor. **B.** Second-stage labor 15 to 30 minutes before delivery. **C.** Postpartum 5 to 15 minutes. **D.** Postpartum 4 to 6 hours. **E.** Postpartum 18 to 24 hours. (Data from Clark, 1985, 1989.)

Most prefer vaginal delivery in women with mitral stenosis. Elective induction is reasonable so that labor and delivery are attended by a scheduled, experienced team. With severe stenosis and chronic heart failure, insertion of a pulmonary artery catheter may help guide management.

■ Mitral Insufficiency

A trivial degree of mitral insufficiency is found in most normal patients. But if mitral valve leaflets align improperly during systole, abnormal degrees of mitral regurgitation can develop. This is eventually followed by left ventricular dilation and eccentric hypertrophy (see Table 52-7). *Acute mitral insufficiency* is caused by chordae tendineae rupture, papillary muscle infarction, or leaflet perforation from infective endocarditis. *Chronic mitral regurgitation*, in contrast, may derive from rheumatic fever, connective tissue diseases, mitral valve prolapse, or left ventricular dilation of any etiology—for example, dilated cardiomyopathy. Less common causes include a calcified mitral annulus, possibly some appetite suppressants, and in older women, ischemic heart disease. Mitral valve vegetations—*Libman-Sacks endocarditis*—are relatively common in women with antiphospholipid antibodies (Shroff, 2012). These sometimes coexist with systemic lupus erythematosus (Chap. 62, p. 1114).

In nonpregnant patients, symptoms from mitral valve insufficiency are rare, and valve replacement is seldom indicated unless infective endocarditis develops. During pregnancy, mitral regurgitation is similarly well tolerated, probably because the lowered systemic vascular resistance yields less regurgitation. In the report by van Hagen and associates (2018), of 117 women with moderate or severe regurgitation, 23 percent developed heart failure during pregnancy. Occasionally tachyarrhythmias or severely depressed systolic function require treatment.

■ Mitral Valve Prolapse

This diagnosis implies the presence of a pathological connective tissue disorder—often termed *myxomatous degeneration*—which may involve the valve leaflets, the annulus, or the chordae tendineae. Mitral insufficiency may develop. Most women with mitral valve prolapse are asymptomatic and are diagnosed during routine examination or echocardiography. The few women with symptoms have anxiety, palpitations, atypical chest pain, dyspnea with exertion, and syncope (Guy, 2012).

Pregnant women with mitral valve prolapse rarely have cardiac complications. Hypervolemia may even improve alignment of the mitral valve, and women without pathological myxomatous degeneration generally have excellent pregnancy outcomes (Leśniak-Sobelga, 2004). For women who are symptomatic, β-blocking drugs diminish sympathetic tone, relieve chest pain and palpitations, and reduce the risk of life-threatening arrhythmias.

■ Aortic Stenosis

Since the decline in incidence of rheumatic disease, congenital bicuspid valve is now the most frequent cause of aortic stenosis in young women in the United States (Carabello, 2017). A normal aortic valve has an area of 3 to 4 cm^2, with a pressure gradient <5 mm Hg. If the valve area is <1 cm^2, flow is severely obstructed, and progressive pressure overload on the left ventricle develops. Concentric left ventricular hypertrophy follows, and if it is severe, end-diastolic pressures become elevated, ejection fraction decreases, and cardiac output is reduced (see Table 52-7). Severity is estimated by peak velocity of flow across the aortic valve. Mild stenosis has a peak velocity of 2–2.9 m/s, moderate 3-3.9 m/s, and severe ≥4 m/s. Corresponding mean pressure gradients are <20, 20–39, and ≥40 mm Hg, respectively (Carabello, 2017). Characteristic manifestations develop late and include chest pain, syncope, heart failure, and sudden death from arrhythmias. In asymptomatic patients, the mortality rate is 1 percent per year, but with symptoms it increases to 25 percent per year. Thus, valve replacement is indicated for symptomatic patients.

Pregnancy

In one single-center study, aortic stenosis accounted for 15 percent of cases of congenital heart disease in 178 pregnant women (Kim, 2019). That said, clinically significant aortic stenosis is infrequent during pregnancy. Mild to moderate degrees of stenosis are well tolerated. Severe disease is life-threatening and carries a 6-percent mortality risk (Lin, 2017). The principal underlying hemodynamic problem is the fixed cardiac output associated with severe stenosis. During pregnancy, several common events acutely lower preload further and thus aggravate the fixed cardiac output. These include vena caval occlusion from the gravid uterus, regional analgesia, sepsis, and hemorrhage. From the earlier-cited Canadian study, complication rates were higher if the aortic valve area measured <1.5 cm^2 (Siu, 2001b).

Management

For asymptomatic women with aortic stenosis, no treatment except close observation is required. Management of a symptomatic

woman is undertaken in conjunction with a cardiologist and includes strict limitation of activity and cautious use of diuretics. If symptoms persist, surgical intervention or preterm delivery may be considered. Catheter-based valvuloplasty is associated with risks to both the mother and fetus and shows poor long-term efficacy (Pessel, 2014). Namely, the aortic valve can again narrow or new aortic regurgitation may develop. The alternative surgical approach—valve replacement—is associated with significant risk of fetal demise due to the hypotension associated with cardiac bypass. Transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVR) has been performed in low-risk nonpregnant women, but there is little experience with this procedure during pregnancy (Hodson, 2016; Mack, 2019). Accordingly, the American College of Cardiology, the American Heart Association, and the European Society of Cardiology recommend delaying conception until after surgical correction for severe aortic stenosis (Nishimura, 2014; Regitz-Zagrosek, 2018). For those with uncorrected severe symptomatic aortic stenosis, cesarean delivery is preferred. For asymptomatic women with severe stenosis, care is individualized. In nonsevere stenosis, vaginal delivery is preferred (Regitz-Zagrosek, 2018).

For women with critical aortic stenosis, intensive monitoring during labor is essential. Pulmonary artery catheterization may be helpful because of the narrow margin separating fluid overload from hypovolemia. Women with aortic stenosis are dependent on adequate end-diastolic ventricular filling pressures to maintain cardiac output and systemic perfusion. Abrupt drops in end-diastolic volume may result in hypotension, syncope, myocardial infarction, and sudden death. Thus, avoiding diminished ventricular preload and maintaining cardiac output are key. During labor and delivery, affected women are best managed on the "wet" side. This provides a margin of safety in intravascular volume in anticipation of possible hemorrhage. In women with a competent mitral valve, pulmonary edema is rare.

During labor, narcotic or low-dose, slow-infusion epidural analgesia seems ideal and avoids potentially hazardous hypotension. Easterling and coworkers (1988) studied the effects of epidural analgesia in five women with severe stenosis and demonstrated immediate and profound effects from decreased filling pressures. Xia and colleagues (2006) emphasize slow administration of dilute local anesthetic agents into the epidural space. In hemodynamically stable women, forceps or vacuum delivery is used only for standard obstetrical indications. In those experiencing dizziness, shortness of breath, or tachycardia with pushing, an operative vaginal delivery is preferred.

Aortic Insufficiency

Aortic valve regurgitation or insufficiency allows diastolic flow of blood from the aorta back into the left ventricle. Frequent causes of insufficiency are rheumatic fever, connective tissue abnormalities, and congenital lesions (Carabello, 2017). With Marfan syndrome, the aortic root may dilate and create regurgitation (p. 936). Acute insufficiency may also develop with bacterial endocarditis or aortic dissection. Last, aortic and mitral valve insufficiency have both been linked to the appetite suppressants fenfluramine and dexfenfluramine and to the ergot-derived dopamine agonists cabergoline and pergolide (Schade, 2007; Zanettini, 2007). With chronic insufficiency, left ventricular hypertrophy and dilation develop. Slow-onset fatigue, dyspnea, and pulmonary edema follows ventricular dilation with subsequent rapid deterioration (see Table 52-7).

Aortic insufficiency is generally well tolerated during pregnancy. Like mitral valve insufficiency, reduced vascular resistance is thought to improve hemodynamic function. If symptoms of heart failure develop, diuretics are given, and bed rest is encouraged.

Pulmonic Stenosis

This lesion is usually congenital and may be associated with Fallot tetralogy or Noonan syndrome (Chikwe, 2017). The greater hemodynamic burden of pregnancy can precipitate right-sided heart failure or atrial arrhythmias in women with severe stenosis. Surgical correction ideally is done before pregnancy, but if symptoms progress, a balloon valvuloplasty may be necessary antepartum (Galal, 2015; Siu, 2001a).

In studying pregnancy outcomes, Drenthen and associates (2006) found infrequent cardiac complications in 81 pregnancies in 51 Dutch women with pulmonic stenosis. The NYHA classification worsened in two women, and nine experienced palpitations or arrhythmias. No changes in pulmonary valvular function or other adverse cardiac events were reported. However, noncardiac complication rates were significant—17 percent had preterm delivery, 15 percent had hypertension, and 4 percent developed thromboembolism.

CONGENITAL HEART DISEASE

The incidence of congenital heart disease in the United States approximates 1.9 percent of live births, and half of these are moderate to severe forms (Lin, 2017). With modern surgeries, approximately 90 percent of those born with congenital heart disease survive to childbearing age, and it is now the most common type of heart disease encountered during pregnancy (Hopkins, 2018). Specifically, analysis from the United States Nationwide Inpatient Sample database showed a linear rise in the prevalence of congenital heart disease between 2000 and 2010—from 6.4 to 9.0 per 10,000 women admitted for delivery (Thompson, 2015).

The odds of obstetrical and perinatal complications are increased two- to threefold in women with congenital heart disease compared with unaffected women (Ramage, 2019). Also, the maternal mortality rate was higher for women with congenital heart disease at 178 per 100,000 deliveries compared with 7 per 100,000 deliveries in unaffected gravidas (Thompson, 2015).

Atrial Septal Defects

A patent foramen ovale (PFO) is a persisting incompetence of the fossa ovale, and this flap has the potential to open under increased hydrostatic pressure. Of all adults, approximately one fourth have this defect (Silvestry, 2015). The small risk of PFO-related stroke, discussed subsequently, is likely higher in

pregnant than in nonpregnant women and mainly attributed to normal pregnancy hypercoagulability (Chen, 2016). Preventive PFO repair is not recommended (Kernan, 2014).

An atrial septal defect (ASD) is a true hole in the septum. The secundum-type defect accounts for 70 percent, and associated mitral valve myxomatous abnormalities with prolapse are common. Most ASDs are typically asymptomatic until the third or fourth decade of life (Lin, 2017). If an ASD is discovered in adulthood, most recommend repair.

Pregnancy with an unrepaired ASD is well tolerated unless pulmonary hypertension has developed, but this is uncommon (Bredy, 2018). Medical treatment during pregnancy is indicated for congestive heart failure or an arrhythmia. The risk of endocarditis with an ASD is negligible.

With the potential to shunt blood from right to left, a *paradoxical embolism* is possible. A venous thrombus enters the systemic arterial circulation through the ASD, causing an embolic stroke (Bredy, 2018). For this reason, filters should be placed on intravenous access sites. In a gravida with an ASD but without current venous thromboembolism (VTE), the decision to add anticoagulant prophylaxis to counter this potential embolism risk is problematic. However, for a pregnant woman with an ASD who is immobile or has another risk factor for thromboembolism, compression stockings and prophylactic heparin are reasonable.

Ventricular Septal Defects

These lesions close spontaneously during childhood in 90 percent of cases. Of the four main ventricular septal defect (VSD) types, most defects are paramembranous. This location is well below the outlet valves yet above the ventricular musculature. The degree of associated left-to-right shunt and physiological derangements are related to lesion size. In general, if the defect measures <1.25 cm^2, pulmonary hypertension and heart failure do not develop. If the effective defect size exceeds that of the aortic valve orifice, symptoms rapidly develop. For these reasons, most children undergo surgical repair before pulmonary hypertension develops. Adults with unrepaired large defects develop left ventricular failure and pulmonary hypertension and have a high incidence of bacterial endocarditis (Brickner, 2014).

Pregnancy is well tolerated with small- to moderate-sized VSD shunts. However, if pulmonary arterial pressures reach systemic levels, flow is reversed or bidirectional—*Eisenmenger syndrome* (p. 929). If this cyanotic condition develops, the maternal and fetal mortality rates are significantly higher, and thus pregnancy is generally not advisable (Lin, 2017). Bacterial endocarditis is more common with unrepaired defects, and antimicrobial prophylaxis is often required (p. 934). As shown in Table 52-4, 16 percent of offspring born to these women also have a VSD.

Atrioventricular Septal Defects

An atrioventricular (AV) septal defect is characterized by a common, ovoid AV junction. These account for approximately 3 percent of all congenital cardiac malformations and are distinct from isolated ASDs or VSDs. This defect is associated with aneuploidy, Eisenmenger syndrome, and other malformations (Foeller, 2018). Compared with simple septal defects, complications are more frequent during pregnancy. In a review of 48 pregnancies in 29 affected women, complications included persistent deterioration of NYHA class in 23 percent, significant arrhythmias in 19 percent, and heart failure in 2 percent (Drenthen, 2005). Congenital heart disease was identified in 15 percent of the offspring.

Persistent (Patent) Ductus Arteriosus

The ductus connects the proximal left pulmonary artery to the descending aorta just distal to the left subclavian artery. Functional closure of the ductus from vasoconstriction occurs shortly after term birth. The physiological consequences with its persistence are related to its size. Most significant lesions are repaired in childhood. However, in women with an unrepaired ductus, pulmonary hypertension, heart failure, or cyanosis will develop if systemic blood pressure falls and blood flow reverses from the pulmonary artery into the aorta (Foeller, 2018). A sudden blood pressure decline at delivery—such as with regional analgesia or hemorrhage—may lead to fatal collapse. Therefore, hypotension is avoided but treated vigorously if it develops. Prophylaxis for bacterial endocarditis is indicated at delivery for unrepaired defects (p. 934). As shown in Table 52-4, the incidence of inheritance approximates 4 percent.

Cyanotic Heart Disease

Cyanosis develops when congenital heart lesions produce right-to-left shunting of blood past the pulmonary capillary bed. The classic and most commonly encountered lesion in adults and during pregnancy is the *Fallot tetralogy* (Foeller, 2018). This is characterized by a large VSD, pulmonary stenosis, right ventricular hypertrophy, and an overriding aorta that receives blood from both the right and left ventricles. The magnitude of the shunt varies inversely with systemic vascular resistance. Hence, during pregnancy, when peripheral resistance decreases, shunt flow increases and cyanosis worsens.

Generally, women with cyanotic heart disease do poorly during pregnancy. Those with concomitant Eisenmenger syndrome are at greatest risk (p. 929). With uncorrected Fallot tetralogy, maternal mortality rates approach 10 percent. For fetal outcome, there is a relationship between chronic hypoxemia, polycythemia, and complications such as miscarriage and perinatal morbidity. When hypoxemia is intense enough to stimulate a rise in hemoglobin concentration >20 g/dL, pregnancy wastage is virtually 100 percent (Lin, 2017).

Although not all cyanotic lesions are repairable, with satisfactory surgical correction before pregnancy, maternal and fetal outcomes are much improved. In a review of 197 pregnancies in 99 women with surgically corrected Fallot tetralogy, pregnancy was usually well tolerated, and no mothers died (Cauldwell, 2017). Still, almost 9 percent of pregnancies were complicated by adverse cardiac events including new-onset or worsening arrhythmias and heart failure (Balci, 2011; Kamiya, 2012).

Some women with *Ebstein anomaly*, characterized by a malpositioned and malformed tricuspid valve, may reach

reproductive age. The right ventricle is small and the right atrium is severely dilated. Right-sided heart failure is common. These women are very preload dependent, and pregnancy-induced hypervolemia can worsen the tricuspid regurgitation (Kanoh, 2018). Arrhythmias also are common, especially Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome (p. 936). Vaginal delivery seems preferable in most cases. In the absence of cyanosis, heart failure, or significant arrhythmias, affected women usually tolerate pregnancy well (Safi, 2016).

■ Pregnancy after Surgical Repair

Transposition of the Great Vessels

Pregnancy following *arterial switch operation* for transposition is associated with good outcomes. A major concern is fatal arrhythmias that usually are precipitated by exercise (Lin, 2017). Earlier studies cited a relatively high rate of heart failure and arrhythmias, but more recent studies have favorable pregnancy outcomes (Trigas, 2014). In one study of 20 pregnancies, there were three cases of heart failure (Horiuchi, 2019). Stoll and coworkers (2018) reported no adverse cardiac events in 25 pregnancies.

Of other defects, repaired *truncus arteriosus* and *double-outlet right ventricle* with subsequent successful, although eventful, pregnancies have been described (Drenthen, 2008; Hoendermis, 2008). Ironically, preconceptional counseling did little to dissuade these women from childbearing (Cauldwell, 2016).

Single Functional Ventricle

With *hypoplastic left heart syndrome*, most affected women are now expected to survive into adulthood (Davis, 2018). Frequently, these women become pregnant, and those who have undergone a *Fontan repair* carry a particularly higher risk for complications. In brief, this procedure involves diverting blood via a surgical anastomosis from the vena cava to the pulmonary artery without passing through the right ventricle. Blood flows passively to the pulmonary vasculature. Preload drives circulation in the Fontan circuit, and thus patients are sensitive to volume changes (Moroney, 2018).

From their review of 255 pregnancies in 133 women, Garcia-Ropero and colleagues (2018) reported 115 miscarriages (45 percent) and 19 elective terminations (7 percent). Cardiac complications included arrhythmias in 8 percent and heart failure in 4 percent of pregnancies. Among 133 live births, there were 68 preterm births (59 percent) and 7 perinatal deaths (6 percent). Postpartum venous thromboembolism also is common (Moroney, 2020).

Similar complications attend a maternal *systemic right ventricle*, that is, one in which the right ventricle rather than the left pumps blood to the systemic circulation (Khan, 2015).

■ Eisenmenger Syndrome

This describes secondary pulmonary hypertension that arises from any cardiac lesion. The most common underlying defects are ASD, VSD, and persistent ductus arteriosus (Fig. 52-5).

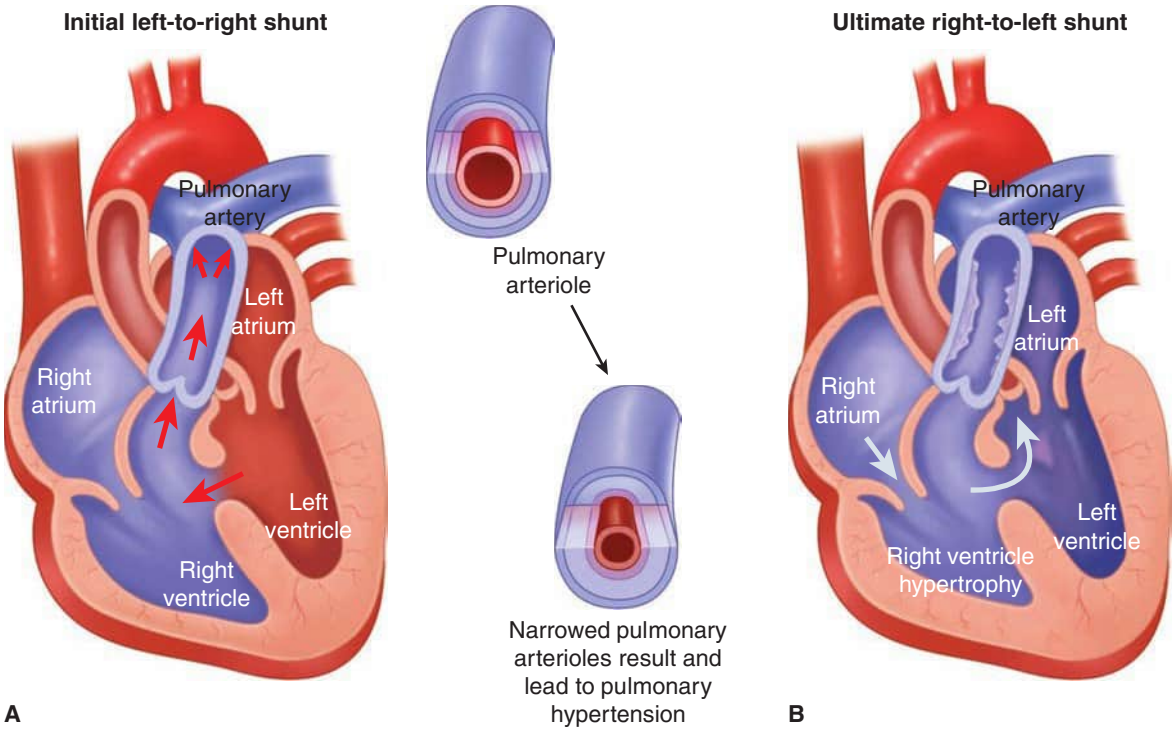


FIGURE 52-5 Eisenmenger syndrome due to a ventricular septal defect (VSD). **A.** Substantial left-to-right shunting through the VSD leads to morphological changes in the smaller pulmonary arteries and arterioles. Specifically, medial hypertrophy, intimal cellular proliferations, and fibrosis lead to narrowing or closure of the vessel lumen. These vascular changes create pulmonary hypertension and a resultant reversal of the intracardiac shunt **(B)**. With sustained pulmonary hypertension, extensive atherosclerosis and calcification often develop in the large pulmonary arteries. Although a VSD is shown here, Eisenmenger syndrome may also develop in association with a large atrial septal defect or persistent ductus arteriosus.

The syndrome develops when pulmonary vascular resistance exceeds systemic resistance and leads to concomitant right-to-left shunting. Patients are asymptomatic for years, but eventually pulmonary hypertension becomes severe enough to cause this shunting.

Pregnant women with Eisenmenger syndrome tolerate hypotension poorly, and death usually is caused by right ventricular failure with cardiogenic shock. In a review of 73 pregnancies, Weiss and associates (1998) cited a 36-percent maternal death rate. Three of 26 deaths were antepartum, and the remainder of women died intrapartum or within a month of delivery. In another study of 13 gravidas, one mother died 17 days after delivery, and there were five perinatal deaths (Wang, 2011). Last, in a series of 11 pregnancies in China, four mothers died (Duan, 2016). *Given such poor outcomes for both mother and fetus, Eisenmenger syndrome is considered to be an absolute contraindication to pregnancy* (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019; Foeller, 2018; Meng, 2017).

PULMONARY HYPERTENSION

Normal resting mean pulmonary artery pressure is 12 to 16 mm Hg. Most define *pulmonary hypertension* in nonpregnant individuals as a resting mean pulmonary pressure >25 mm Hg (Franco, 2019). Pulmonary vascular resistance in late normal pregnancy approximates 80 dyne/sec/cm^{-5}, which is 34-percent less than the nonpregnant value of 120 dyne/sec/cm^{-5} (Clark, 1989).

Physiologically, pregnancy is associated increased cardiac output, and in healthy gravidas, pulmonary vascular resistance decreases to help accommodate this (Clark, 1989). With pulmonary hypertension, the stiff pulmonary vasculature does not allow the normal fall in pulmonary vascular resistance. Thus, the normal increased cardiac output actually leads to further pulmonary artery pressure elevation and then eventually to right heart failure. With failure, the interventricular septum bulges leftward to impair left ventricular diastolic filling, which compromises cardiac output (Gei, 2014; Pieper, 2011).

The current clinical classification system, shown in Table 52-8, contains five groups of disorders that cause pulmonary hypertension (Galiè, 2016). Important prognostic and therapeutic distinctions separate group 1 pulmonary arterial hypertension and the other groups. Group 1, which is more common in nonpregnant women, indicates that a specific disease affects pulmonary arterioles. It includes idiopathic or primary pulmonary arterial hypertension as well as those cases secondary to a known cause such as connective tissue disease. For example, approximately a third of women with scleroderma and 10 percent with systemic lupus erythematosus have pulmonary arterial hypertension (Franco, 2019). Other causes in young women are human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, sickle-cell disease, and thyrotoxicosis.

In pregnant women, group 2 disorders are the most common. These are secondary to pulmonary *venous* hypertension caused by left-sided atrial, ventricular, or valvular disorders. A typical example is mitral stenosis discussed earlier (p. 924). In contrast, groups 3 through 5 are seen infrequently in young otherwise healthy women.

Diagnosis and Prognosis

Symptoms may be vague, and dyspnea with exertion is the most frequent. With group 2 disorders, orthopnea and nocturnal dyspnea are also usually present. Angina and syncope occur when right ventricular output is fixed, and they suggest advanced disease. Chest radiography often shows enlarged pulmonary hilar arteries and attenuated peripheral markings. It may also disclose parenchymal causes of hypertension. Noninvasive echocardiography can provide an estimate of pulmonary artery pressures, although cardiac catheterization remains the standard for measurement. In studies of pregnant women who underwent both echocardiography and cardiac catheterization, pulmonary artery pressures were significantly overestimated by echocardiography in approximately a third of cases (Herrera, 2020; Wylie, 2007).

Regardless of the etiology, the final common pathway of pulmonary hypertension is right heart failure and death. The average survival length after diagnosis is <4 years (Krexi, 2015). That said, longevity depends on the severity and cause of pulmonary hypertension at discovery. As discussed later, some disorders respond to medical interventions, which may improve quality of life. Preconceptional and contraceptive counseling are imperative (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019).

Pregnancy

The maternal mortality rate is appreciable in affected women, and this is especially so with idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension (Martin, 2019). In the past, the ability to accurately identify causes and assess disease severity were often poor. Thus, although most severe cases of idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension had the worst prognosis, it was erroneously assumed that all types of pulmonary hypertension were equally dangerous. With widespread use of echocardiography, less-severe lesions with a better prognosis are now discernible. The maternal mortality rate for pulmonary hypertension has improved. In one study, it was 25 percent during the decade ending in 2007 compared with 38 percent for the decade ending in 1996 (Bédard, 2009). Importantly, almost 80 percent of the deaths were during the first month postpartum. Meng and associates (2017) reported mortality rates of 23 percent with group 1 and 5 percent with the other groups. Mortality risk correlates positively with advancing pulmonary hypertension severity, which is characterized by Eisenmenger syndrome, severe hypertension, and higher NYHA class (Keepanasseril, 2019; Sun, 2018). In an audit of 47 pregnancies in women with pulmonary hypertension at Parkland Hospital, the maternal mortality rate was 9 percent (Herrera, 2020). Of four deaths, three women had severe hypertension. A striking example of right ventricular hypertrophy in one of these women who died is shown in Figure 52-6.

Pregnancy is contraindicated with severe disease. This is especially true in women with pulmonary arterial changes, which develop in most group 1 cases. With milder disease from other causes—group 2 being the most common—the prognosis is better. With the more frequent use of echocardiography and pulmonary artery catheterization in young women with

TABLE 52-8. Comprehensive Clinical Classification of Pulmonary Hypertension of the European Society of Cardiology and the European Respiratory Society

1. Pulmonary arterial hypertension
- Idiopathic
- Heritable
- Drug and toxin induced
- Associated with connective tissue disease, HIV infections, portal hypertension, congenital heart diseases, schistosomiasis

1′ Pulmonary venoocclusive disease and/or pulmonary capillary hemangiomatosis
- Idiopathic
- Heritable
- Drugs, toxins and radiation induced
- Associated with connective tissue disease, HIV infection

1″ Persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn

2. Pulmonary hypertension due to left heart disease
- Left ventricular systolic dysfunction
- Left ventricular diastolic dysfunction
- Valvular disease
- Congenital/acquired left heart inflow/outflow tract obstruction and congenital cardiomyopathies
- Congenital/acquired pulmonary vein stenosis

3. Pulmonary hypertension due to lung diseases and/or hypoxia
- Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
- Interstitial lung disease
- Other pulmonary diseases with mixed restrictive and obstructive pattern
- Sleep-disoriented breathing
- Alveolar hypoventilation disorder
- Chronic exposure to high altitude
- Developmental lung diseases

4. Chronic thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension/other pulmonary artery obstructions
- Chronic thromboembolic pulmonary hypertension
- Other pulmonary artery obstructions, i.e., tumors, arteritis, pulmonary stenosis, parasites

5. Pulmonary hypertension with unclear and/or multifactorial mechanisms
- Hematological disorders: chronic hemolysis, myeloproliferative disorders, splenectomy
- Systemic disorders: sarcoidosis, pulmonary histiocytosis, neurofibromatosis
- Metabolic disorders: glycogen storage disease, Gaucher disease, thyroid disorders
- Others: fibrosing mediastinitis, chronic renal failure

HIV = human immunodeficiency virus.
Adapted from Galiè, 2016.

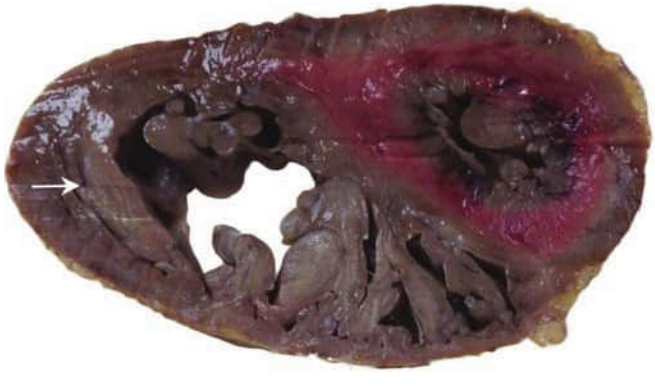


FIGURE 52-6 Cross-sectional display of right cardiac dysmorphology in a pregnant woman who died from undiagnosed primary pulmonary hypertension. There is prominent dilation of the right ventricle with right ventricular hypertrophy (*arrow*).

heart disease, we have identified women with mild to moderate pulmonary hypertension who tolerate pregnancy, labor, and delivery well (Herrera, 2020).

■ Management

Treatment of symptomatic pregnant women includes limiting activity and avoiding supine position later in gestation. Diuretics, supplemental oxygen, and pulmonary vasodilator drugs are standard therapy for symptoms. Some recommend anticoagulation. Several reports describe the successful use of intravenous pulmonary artery vasodilators (Foeller, 2018; Franco, 2019). Prostacyclin analogues that can be administered parenterally include epoprostenol (Flolan) and treprostinil (Remodulin), whereas iloprost (Ventavis) is inhaled. Each has been used in pregnancy. Inhaled nitric oxide is an option that has been

employed in cases of acute cardiopulmonary decompensation. As reviewed by Običan and Cleary (2014), phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitors, such as sildenafil (Viagra), cause vasodilation of both the pulmonary and systemic vascular beds and have an inotropic effect on the hypertrophic right ventricle. This also has been used to advantage during pregnancy (Meng, 2017). Bosentan—an endothelin-receptor antagonist, and riociguat—a soluble guanylate cyclase stimulator, are teratogenic in mice and contraindicated in pregnancy (Franco, 2019).

During labor and delivery, supplemental oxygen is given to maintain >90 percent saturation. These women are at greatest risk when venous return and right ventricular filling are diminished. To avoid hypotension, assiduous attention is given to epidural analgesia induction, fluid therapy, and blood loss prevention and treatment at delivery (Martin, 2019; Meng, 2017).

CARDIOMYOPATHIES

The American Heart Association defines these as a heterogeneous group of myocardial diseases associated with mechanical and/or electrical dysfunction (Narula, 2017). Affected women usually have inappropriate ventricular hypertrophy or dilation. Cardiomyopathies stem from varied causes, and the most frequent is genetic. Of the two major divisions, *primary cardiomyopathies* are solely or predominantly confined to the heart muscle. Examples are hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, dilated cardiomyopathies, and peripartum cardiomyopathy. *Secondary cardiomyopathies* result from generalized systemic disorders that produce pathological myocardial involvement. Diabetes, systemic lupus erythematosus, chronic hypertension, and thyroid disorders are representative conditions.

Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy

This disorder affects approximately 1 in 500 adults (Herrey, 2014). Characterized by cardiac hypertrophy, myocyte disarray, and interstitial fibrosis, the condition in up to 60 percent of affected patients is caused by mutations in genes that encode cardiac sarcomere proteins. In such cases, inheritance is autosomal dominant, and genetic screening is complex (Cirino, 2019; Elliott, 2014). Other genetic and nongenetic etiologies underlie 5 to 10 percent of cases, and the cause is unknown in approximately 25 percent. The resulting myocardial muscle abnormality is typified by left ventricular myocardial hypertrophy with a pressure gradient against left ventricular outflow. Diagnosis is established by echocardiographic identification of a hypertrophied and nondilated left ventricle in the absence of other cardiovascular conditions.

Most affected women are asymptomatic, but dyspnea, anginal or atypical chest pain, syncope, and arrhythmias may develop. Complex arrhythmias may progress to sudden death, which is the most frequent cause of death. Asymptomatic patients with runs of ventricular tachycardia are especially prone to sudden death. Symptoms usually worsen with exercise.

Studies that include more than 700 pregnancies in 500 women indicate an overall relatively good prognosis (Schaufelberger, 2019). In a systematic review with 237 women with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy who had a combined 408 pregnancies, the maternal mortality rate was 0.5 percent (Schinkel, 2014). Worsening of symptoms or other complications developed in 29 percent, and 26 percent delivered preterm.

Management is similar to that for aortic stenosis (p. 926). Controlling heart rate and avoiding preload and afterload reduction are therapy basics. Strenuous exercise is prohibited during pregnancy. Abrupt positional changes are avoided to prevent reflex vasodilation and decreased preload. If symptoms develop, especially angina, β-adrenergic or calcium-channel blocking drugs are given. Drugs that evoke diuresis or reduce vascular resistance are generally not used because they decrease preload. But if these are necessary, women should be closely monitored. The delivery route is determined by obstetrical indications. Choice of anesthesia is controversial, and some consider general anesthesia the safest. Regional analgesia can be used with carefully titrated, adequate intravascular volume to maintain left ventricular filling pressure. Neonates rarely demonstrate inherited lesions at birth.

Dilated Cardiomyopathy

This is characterized by left and/or right ventricular enlargement and reduced systolic function in the absence of coronary, valvular, congenital, or systemic disease known to cause myocardial dysfunction. Although there are many known inherited and acquired causes of dilated cardiomyopathy, the etiology remains undefined in approximately half of cases (Schaufelberger, 2019). Some result from viral infections, including myocarditis and HIV. Other causes, which are potentially reversible, include alcoholism, cocaine abuse, coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19), and thyroid disease.

In affected gravidas, the rate of major adverse cardiovascular events in pregnancy ranges from 25 to 40 percent (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019; Grewal, 2009). Heart failure and arrhythmias are the most common, and women with preexisting moderate or severe left ventricular dysfunction or NYHA functional class III or IV are at greatest risk. Dilated cardiomyopathy is managed with therapy for standard heart failure and for the specific underlying etiology (Bozkurt, 2016).

Peripartum Cardiomyopathy

This disorder is similar to other forms of nonischemic dilated cardiomyopathy except for its unique relationship with pregnancy. Peripartum cardiomyopathy shares a genetic predisposition with both familial and sporadic idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy (Cunningham, 2019; Ware, 2016). It is a diagnosis of exclusion following a concurrent evaluation for peripartum heart failure.

Although the term *peripartum cardiomyopathy* has been used widely, until recently, little evidence supported a unique pregnancy-induced cardiomyopathy. Pearson (2000) reported findings of a workshop of the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute that established the following diagnostic criteria:

Development of cardiac failure in the last month of pregnancy or within 5 months after delivery (Fig. 52-7),

- Absence of an identifiable cause for the cardiac failure,
- Absence of recognizable heart disease prior to the last month of pregnancy, and

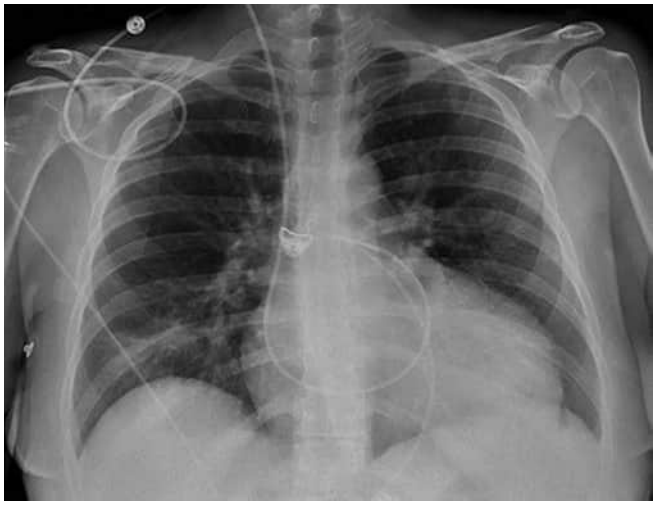


FIGURE 52-7 Peripartum cardiomyopathy with mild pulmonary edema. Chest radiograph of a woman with an abnormally enlarged heart and mild perihilar opacification consistent with dilated cardiomyopathy.

- Left ventricular systolic dysfunction demonstrated by classic echocardiographic criteria. These include depressed ejection fraction or fractional shortening along with a dilated left ventricle.

The incidence of peripartum cardiomyopathy varies considerably and depends on the population studied and the diligence of the search for a cause. The average frequency in the United States is 1 per 1000 to 4000 births (Cruz, 2018; Cunningham, 2019).

The etiology of peripartum cardiomyopathy remains unknown, and proposed causes include viral myocarditis, abnormal immune response to pregnancy, aberrant response to the greater hemodynamic burden of pregnancy, hormonal interactions, malnutrition, inflammation, and apoptosis. The current theory regarding pathophysiology is that of a "two-hit hypothesis" (Cruz, 2018; Ricke-Hoch, 2020). In this regard, peripartum cardiomyopathy affects genetically susceptible women who have one of several cardiac gene mutations to include *TTNC1*, *TTN*, and *STAT3*. Pregnancy at term is further characterized by prodigious secretion of prolactin by the maternal pituitary. At the same time, the placenta secretes high levels of the antiangiogenic molecule *soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase (sFlt-1)*. Although a number of putative triggering events have been hypothesized, a 16-kDa prolactin fragment—*vasoinhibin*—acts to cause myocardial damage with clinically apparent ventricular dysfunction. This is made worse by high levels of sFlt-1, which is superabundant in women with preeclampsia, multifetal pregnancy, or both. Bromocriptine therapy has been evaluated because it inhibits prolactin secretion, and preliminary studies support its use (Haghikia, 2019). For the same reason, it is also reasonable to proscribe breastfeeding.

Hypertensive disorders frequently coexist with peripartum cardiomyopathy, and another proposed mechanism links peripartum cardiomyopathy to preeclampsia (Cunningham, 2019). Antiangiogenic factors are known to be associated with preeclampsia and can induce peripartum cardiomyopathy in susceptible mice. Thus, cardiomyopathy may be precipitated by antiangiogenic factors in a genetically predisposed host because of insufficient proangiogenic factors.

Ntusi and coworkers (2015) analyzed the clinical features of women with peripartum cardiomyopathy compared with those with hypertensive heart failure. All women with peripartum cardiomyopathy became symptomatic in the postpartum period, whereas 85 percent of women with hypertensive heart failure developed symptoms antepartum. Peripartum cardiomyopathy was significantly linked with twin gestation, smoking, and echocardiographic abnormalities. In contrast, hypertensive heart failure patients more often had a family history of hypertension, hypertension and preeclampsia in a prior pregnancy, and left ventricular hypertrophy.

Management

Management of peripartum cardiomyopathy is the same as that of heart failure, and described earlier (p. 922). Therapy is aimed at volume overload, afterload reduction, rhythm control, and inotropic support (Davis, 2020). In addition, β-blocker therapy is used to decrease mortality rates. Anticoagulation with LMWH is considered when the ejection fraction reaches 30 to 35 percent because of the increased risk for left ventricular thrombi (Bauersachs, 2016; Bozkurt, 2016).

In one pilot study, bromocriptine resulted in higher rates of left ventricular recovery at 6 months and lower mortality rates (Sliwa, 2010). A larger study of 115 women showed no difference in full restoration of left ventricular function between those treated and untreated with bromocriptine (Haghikia, 2013). Another investigation of 63 women showed no difference in left ventricular function improvement with short-term versus long-term bromocriptine therapy (Hilfiker-Kleiner, 2017). The use of bromocriptine as adjuvant therapy is considered experimental at this time.

Prognosis

Approximately half of women suffering from peripartum cardiomyopathy recover baseline ventricular function within 6 months of delivery. This rate is lower in obese women (Davis, 2018). In a group of 100 women with newly diagnosed peripartum cardiomyopathy, 72 percent had a left ventricular ejection fraction ≥50 percent at 1 year postpartum (McNamara, 2015). Recovery to this level occurred in almost 90 percent of women whose baseline ejection fraction was at least 30 percent. This is compared with <40 percent in women whose baseline ventricular ejection fraction was <30 percent. Recovery was also related to the baseline left ventricular end-diastolic diameter. Event-free survival at 1 year occurred in 93 percent. Six women experienced nine major events that included four deaths, four left ventricular assist device implantations, and one heart transplantation. Li and colleagues (2016) also found that a baseline left ventricular ejection fraction <34 percent and a BNP level >1860 pg/mL were associated with an approximately threefold greater risk of persistent left ventricular systolic dysfunction. The mortality rate approaches 5 to 10 percent at 1 year in women with persistent cardiac failure (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019).

Long-term follow-up was reported in 28 women with a median surveillance of 91 months (Ersbøll, 2018). Although

most women were asymptomatic, compared with controls, they had lower ejection fractions, less maximal exercise capacity, and subtle diastolic dysfunction.

Subsequent Pregnancy

From the largest studies on the topic, approximately a third of women with a history of peripartum cardiomyopathy will suffer relapse with worsening of symptoms and deterioration of left ventricular function during another pregnancy (Elkayam, 2014a). The risk of relapse in women with persistent left ventricular dysfunction is substantially higher than in those who have recovered normal ventricular function before a subsequent pregnancy (Hilfiker-Kleiner, 2017). However, normalization of left ventricular function does not guarantee an uncomplicated pregnancy, because approximately 20 percent of these women are at risk for deterioration in that function (Codsi, 2018).

■ Other Cardiomyopathy Types

Arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia is a unique cardiomyopathy defined histologically by progressive replacement of right ventricular myocardium with adipose and fibrous tissue. It has an estimated population prevalence of 1 in 5000, predisposes to ventricular tachyarrhythmias, and is a cause of sudden death, particularly in younger individuals (Agir, 2014). Studies of pregnancies in affected women reported symptoms, including heart failure, in 18 to 33 percent of pregnancies (Schaufelberger, 2019). Based on their systematic review, Krul and coworkers (2011) counsel against pregnancy.

Restrictive cardiomyopathy is probably the least common type. This inherited cardiomyopathy is characterized by a ventricular filling pattern in which worsening myocardial stiffness raises ventricular pressure precipitously and allows only a small filling volume (Elliott, 2008). Pregnancy is not advised because of the severe clinical course and poor prognosis in general.

Takotsubo cardiomyopathy is a rare form of acute reversible left ventricular apical wall ballooning (Kraft, 2017). It is considered to be "stress induced" and appears to be more common with preeclampsia and cesarean delivery. Myocardial infarction must be excluded (Oindi, 2019).

INFECTIVE ENDOCARDITIS

Persons at greatest risk for endocarditis are those with congenital heart lesions, intravenous drug use, degenerative valve disease, and intracardiac devices (Karchmer, 2018). *Subacute bacterial endocarditis* usually stems from a low-virulence bacterial infection superimposed on an underlying structural lesion. These are usually native valve infections. Organisms that cause indolent endocarditis are most often viridans-group streptococci or *Staphylococcus* or *Enterococcus* species. Among intravenous drug abusers and those with catheter-related infections, *Staphylococcus aureus* predominates. With prosthetic valve infections, *Staphylococcus epidermidis* is a frequent cause. *Streptococcus pneumoniae* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* may occasionally cause acute, fulminating disease. Others have reported other *Neisseria* species, group B streptococcus, and *Escherichia coli* endocarditis during pregnancy or peripartum.

■ Diagnosis and Management

Infective endocarditis symptoms vary and often develop insidiously. Fever, often with chills, is seen in 80 to 90 percent of cases; a murmur is heard in up to 85 percent; and anorexia, fatigue, and other constitutional symptoms are common (Karchmer, 2018). Clinical clues are anemia, proteinuria, and manifestations of embolic lesions that include petechiae, focal neurological changes, chest or abdominal pain, and extremity ischemia. In some cases, heart failure develops. Symptoms may persist for several weeks before the diagnosis is found, and a high index of suspicion is necessary.

Diagnosis is made using the *Duke-Li classification*, which combines microbiology and imaging criteria with five minor criteria (Iung, 2019). Echocardiography may be diagnostic, but lesions <2 mm or those on the tricuspid valve may be missed. If uncertain, transesophageal echocardiography is accurate and informative. Importantly, a negative echocardiographic study does not exclude endocarditis.

Treatment is primarily medical, and ascertainment of the infecting organism and its sensitivities is imperative for antimicrobial selection. Guidelines for appropriate antibiotic treatment are published by professional societies and updated regularly (Habib, 2015; Karchmer, 2018). Recalcitrant bacteremia and heart failure due to valvular dysfunction are a few reasons for which persistent infection may require valve replacement (Iung, 2019).

■ Pregnancy

Infective endocarditis is uncommon during pregnancy and the puerperium. In an earlier period, the incidence of endocarditis at Parkland Hospital approximated 1 in 16,000 births (Cox, 1988). With the current opioid use disorder epidemic, endocarditis may become more frequent (Prasad, 2019). Associated maternal and fetal mortality rates are from 25 to 35 percent (Dagher, 2021; Habib, 2015). In one review, risk factors were intravenous drug use (14 percent), congenital heart disease (12 percent), and rheumatic heart disease (12 percent). The most common pathogens were streptococcal (43 percent) and staphylococcal (26 percent) species. Among 51 pregnancies, the maternal mortality rate was 11 percent (Kebed, 2014).

■ Endocarditis Prophylaxis

For years, patients with any heart valve problem were given periprocedural antibiotics for endocarditis prophylaxis. Currently, however, recommendations are more stringent. The American Heart Association recommends prophylaxis for dental procedures in those with: (1) a prosthetic valve or prosthetic material used in a valve repair, (2) prior endocarditis, (3) unrepaired cyanotic heart defect or repaired lesion with residual defect at prosthetic sites, and (4) valvulopathy after heart transplantation (Nishimura, 2017). In the absence of pelvic infection, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018b) does not recommend endocarditis prophylaxis for either vaginal or cesarean delivery, except with the lesions cited above.

Pregnant women at highest risk for endocarditis are those with cyanotic cardiac disease, prosthetic valves, or both.

TABLE 52-9. Single-Dose Antibiotic Prophylaxis for Infective Endocarditis in High-Risk Patients

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018b)
Standard (IV): ampicillin 2 g ***or*** cefazolin or ceftriaxone 1 g
Penicillin-allergic (IV): cefazolin or ceftriaxone 1 g ***or*** clindamycin 600 mg
Oral: amoxicillin 2 g
American Heart Association/European Society of Cardiology (Karchmer, 2018)
Standard: amoxicillin 2 g PO ***or*** ampicillin 2 g IV or IM
Penicillin-allergic: clarithromycin or azithromycin 500 mg PO; cephalexin 2 g PO; clindamycin 600 mg PO, IV, or IM; ***or*** cefazolin or ceftriaxone 1 g IV or IM

IM = intramuscularly; IV = intravenously; PO = per os (orally).
Cefazolin or ceftriaxone given 30 minutes, and all others given 1 hour prior to procedure.

Table 52-9 shows prophylactic regimens for women not already receiving intrapartum antimicrobial therapy for another indication that would also provide coverage against endocarditis. These are administered as close to 30 to 60 minutes before the anticipated delivery time as is feasible.

ARRHYTHMIAS

Both preexisting and new-onset cardiac arrhythmias are often encountered during pregnancy, labor, delivery, and the puerperium. They are usually benign and their incidence in pregnancy appears to be increasing (MacIntyre, 2018). The mechanism(s) responsible for the higher incidence are not clear. From some studies, estradiol and progesterone are proarrhythmic. Estrogen augments the number of adrenergic receptors in the myocardium, and adrenergic responsiveness seems to be greater in pregnancy (Enriquez, 2014). Perhaps the normal but mild hypokalemia of pregnancy and/or the physiological rise in heart rate serves to induce arrhythmias. Alternatively, detection of arrhythmias may be greater because of the frequent visits in routine prenatal care.

Bradyarrhythmias

Slow heart rhythms, including complete heart block, are compatible with a successful pregnancy outcome (Keepanasseril, 2015). Some women with complete heart block have syncope during labor and delivery, and occasionally temporary cardiac pacing is necessary. In our experiences and from others, women with permanent artificial pacemakers usually tolerate pregnancy well (Hidaka, 2011). With fixed-rate devices, cardiac output apparently is increased by augmented stroke volume.

Patients with pacemakers or other electrical implants require special precautions during surgery. Stray current may be interpreted as an intracardiac signal by the implanted device and lead to pacing changes. In addition, myocardial burns may result from conduction of electrosurgical current to the pacing electrode rather than to the grounding pad. With these devices, preventive steps include cardiology consultation; bipolar electrosurgery or Harmonic scalpel use rather than monopolar current; if needed, minimal monopolar settings; continuous cardiac and pulse oximetry monitoring; contingency plans for arrhythmias; and close proximity of active (electrosurgical pencil) and return (electrosurgical grounding pad) electrodes (Crossley, 2011).

Supraventricular Tachycardias

The most common arrhythmia seen in reproductive-aged women is *paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia (SVT)*. The prevalence during pregnancy is 24 cases per 100,000 hospital admissions, and approximately 20 percent will experience symptomatic exacerbations during pregnancy (Enriquez, 2014). Interestingly, the mean heart rate of pregnant women with paroxysmal SVT is 184 bpm compared with 166 bpm in nonpregnant affected women (Yu, 2015). In one study, approximately half of women with paroxysmal SVT had an initial onset during pregnancy (Bánhidy, 2015). Notably, maternal paroxysmal SVT was associated with a twofold higher risk of septal cardiac defects, particularly secundum atrial septal defects, in their offspring.

For acute SVT treatment, vagal maneuvers, which include Valsalva maneuver, carotid sinus massage, bearing down, and immersion of the face in ice water, raise vagal tone and block the atrioventricular node. Intravenous adenosine is a short-acting endogenous nucleotide that also blocks AV nodal conduction. Our experiences are similar to those of others in that adenosine is safe and effective for cardioversion in hemodynamically stable gravidas (Page, 2015). Transient fetal bradycardia has been described with adenosine (Dunn, 2000).

If pharmacological therapy is ineffective or contraindicated, the American College of Cardiology and the American Heart Association recommend synchronized cardioversion in pregnant women with hemodynamically unstable SVT (Page, 2015). Although electrical cardioversion with standard energy settings is not contraindicated in pregnancy, vigilance is important. Barnes and colleagues (2002) described a case in which direct current cardioversion led to a sustained uterine contraction and fetal bradycardia. As an aside, pregnancy has no effect on the operation of implantable cardioverter-defibrillator devices (Boulé, 2014).

If cardioversion fails or is unsafe because of concurrent thrombus, then long-term anticoagulation and heart rate control with medication are necessary (DiCarlo-Meacham, 2011). Other treatment options recommended by the American College of Cardiology and the American Heart Association (Page, 2015) include:

- Intravenous metoprolol or propranolol when adenosine is ineffective or contraindicated,

- Intravenous verapamil when adenosine and β-blocking agents are ineffective or contraindicated,
- Intravenous procainamide,
- Intravenous amiodarone for potentially life-threatening SVT and when other therapies are ineffective or contraindicated.

Atrial fibrillation and *atrial flutter* rarely present for the first time during pregnancy. A new-onset atrial fibrillation should prompt a search for underlying etiologies that include cardiac anomalies, hyperthyroidism, pulmonary embolism, drug toxicity, and electrolyte disturbances (MacIntyre, 2018). Major complications include embolic stroke. When associated with mitral stenosis, pulmonary edema may develop in later pregnancy if the ventricular rate is increased. Unstable patients are treated with cardioversion and rate control.

Pregnancy may predispose otherwise asymptomatic women with *Wolff-Parkinson-White (WPW) syndrome* to exhibit arrhythmias. In a study of women with asymptomatic or mildly symptomatic disease, half developed SVT for the first time, and the other half experienced an increase in their attack rate (Kounis, 1995). In some patients, accessory pathway ablation may be indicated. Patients with Ebstein anomaly are prone to have WPW syndrome. Driver and associates (2015) have provided a review.

Ventricular Tachycardia

This form of arrhythmia is uncommon but potentially fatal in healthy young women without underlying heart disease. Brodsky and coworkers (1992) described seven pregnant women with new-onset ventricular tachycardia and reviewed 23 reports. Most of these women were not found to have structural heart disease. In 14 cases, tachycardia was precipitated by physical exercise or psychological stress. Abnormalities found included two cases of myocardial infarction, two of prolonged QT interval, and one of anesthesia-provoked tachycardia. They concluded that pregnancy events precipitated the tachycardia and recommended β-blocking agents for control. As previously discussed (p. 934), *arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia* will result occasionally in ventricular tachyarrhythmias. If unstable, emergency cardioversion is indicated, and standard adult energy settings are adequate (Lin, 2015).

Prolonged QT-Interval

The *long QT syndrome* is the most frequent inherited channelopathy (MacIntyre, 2018). This conduction anomaly may predispose individuals to a potentially fatal ventricular arrhythmia known as *torsades de pointes*. Two studies comprised of 502 pregnant women with long QT syndrome both reported a significant rise in cardiac events postpartum but not during pregnancy (Rashba, 1998; Seth, 2007). The normal elevation in heart rate during pregnancy may be partially protective. Paradoxically, β-blocking agents—preferably propranolol—lower the risk of torsades de pointes in patients with long QT syndrome and should be continued throughout pregnancy and the puerperium (Ishibashi, 2017). Importantly, many medications, including some used during pregnancy, such as the erythromycins and many antiemetics, may predispose to QT prolongation. For opioid-addicted women, the use of methadone to treat withdrawal symptoms may be problematic (Bogen, 2017). Last, Cuneo and colleagues (2020) observed an eightfold risk for stillbirth in women with long QT syndrome (Chap. 35, p. 624).

DISEASES OF THE AORTA

Aortic Dissection

Marfan syndrome and coarctation are two aortic diseases that place the pregnant woman at greater risk for aortic dissection (Russo, 2017). Indeed, half of dissection cases in young women are related to pregnancy (O'Gara, 2004). Other risk factors are bicuspid aortic valve and Turner, Noonan, Loeys-Dietz, or Ehlers-Danlos syndrome (Cauldwell, 2019b; Russo, 2018). Pregnancy-related cardiac guidance for women with Turner syndrome is outlined in Chapter 3 (p. 37). Although the mechanism(s) involved are unclear, the initiating event is a tear in the intimal layer of the aorta, followed by hemorrhage into the media, and finally rupture.

In most cases, aortic dissection presents with severe chest pain described as ripping, tearing, or stabbing. Diminution or loss of peripheral pulses coupled with a recently acquired aortic insufficiency murmur is an important physical finding. The differential diagnosis of aortic dissection in pregnancy includes myocardial infarction, pulmonary embolism, pneumothorax, aortic valve rupture, and obstetrical catastrophes such as placental abruption and uterine rupture.

More than 90 percent of patients with aortic dissection have an abnormal chest radiograph. Aortic angiography is the most definitive method for diagnosis confirmation. However, sonography, computed tomography, and MR imaging are used more frequently depending on the clinical urgency.

Initial medical treatment is given to lower blood pressure. Proximal dissections most often need to be resected, and the aortic valve replaced if necessary. Distal dissections are more complex, and many may be treated medically. Among *nonpregnant* patients with abdominal aortic aneurysms <5.5 cm, survival is not improved by immediate elective repair compared with surveillance and delayed repair. Karthikesalingam and associates (2016) suggest that the size threshold for aneurysm repair should be revisited.

Marfan Syndrome

This autosomal dominant connective tissue disorder has an incidence of 1 per 3000 to 5000 individuals and is without racial or ethnic predilection (Azizad-Pinto, 2017). As discussed in Chapter 62 (p. 1121), Marfan syndrome is caused by any of more than 1000 mutations in the fibrillin (*FBN1*) gene. It is characterized by generalized tissue weakness that can result in dangerous cardiovascular complications. All tissues are involved, and other frequent defects include joint laxity and scoliosis. Progressive aortic dilation causes aortic valve insufficiency, and infective endocarditis or mitral valve prolapse with insufficiency may be comorbid. Aortic dilation and dissecting aneurysm are the most serious abnormalities. Early death is due to either a dissecting aneurysm or to valvular insufficiency and heart failure.

During pregnancy, the primary concern with Marfan syndrome is aortic dissection (Curry, 2014; Russo, 2017). A study using the Nationwide Inpatient Sample from 2003 to 2010 described 339 deliveries in women with Marfan syndrome. There was one maternal death and six (1.8 percent) aortic dissections (Hassan, 2015). From the United Kingdom, Cauldwell and colleagues (2019a) described 258 pregnancies in 151 affected women. Although no women died, 1.9 percent had an aortic dissection.

The aortic root usually measures approximately 2 cm, and during normal pregnancy, it expands slightly. With Marfan syndrome, aortic root repair is recommended at diameters of 4.0 to 4.5 cm (Azizad-Pinto, 2017). The guidelines of the American College of Cardiology, the American Heart Association, and the American Association of Thoracic Surgeons advise prophylactic aortic repair in women considering pregnancy if the diameter of the ascending aorta exceeds 4 cm (Hiratzka, 2010). The guidelines of the European Society of Cardiology advise repair of the aorta at diameters >4.5 cm (Regitz-Zagrosek, 2018). Surgical repair is also considered using a formula indexed to height because shorter patients have dissection at a smaller diameter (Bradley, 2014).

For pregnant women with known thoracic aortic root or ascending aortic dilation, monthly or bimonthly echocardiographic measurements of the ascending aortic dimensions are recommended to detect expansion (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019). Prophylactic β-blocking agents have become standard for gravidas with Marfan syndrome because they reduce hemodynamic stress on the ascending aorta and slow the dilation rate. Ideally, pregnant women with aortic aneurysms are delivered at facilities in which cardiothoracic surgery is available. Vaginal delivery with regional analgesia and an assisted second stage seem safe for women with an aortic root diameter <4 cm.

Cesarean delivery may be considered for values between 4.0 and 4.5 cm. When the aortic root measures >4.5 cm, elective cesarean delivery is recommended, and direct replacement of the proximal aorta with a prosthetic graft can be considered (Regitz-Zagrosek, 2018). Successful aortic root replacement during pregnancy has been described, but the surgery has also been associated with fetal hypoxic-ischemic encephalopathy (Seeburger, 2007). Several case reports describe emergency cesarean deliveries in women with acute type A dissections that were repaired successfully at the time of delivery (Guo, 2011; Haas, 2011; Papatsonis, 2009).

To evaluate obstetrical outcomes, investigators for one study of 63 women with Marfan syndrome analyzed their 142 pregnancies. Of 111 pregnancies progressing past 20 weeks' gestation, 15 percent delivered preterm, and 5 percent had preterm prematurely ruptured membranes (Meijboom, 2006). There were eight perinatal deaths, and half of the neonatal survivors were subsequently diagnosed with Marfan syndrome.

Aortic Coarctation

In this relatively rare lesion, the aorta is abnormally narrowed and is often accompanied by abnormalities of other large arteries. A fourth of affected patients have a bicuspid aortic valve, and another 10 percent have cerebral artery aneurysms. Other associated lesions are persistent ductus arteriosus, septal defects, and Turner syndrome. The collateral circulation arising above the coarctation remodels and expands, often strikingly, to cause localized erosion of rib margins by hypertrophied intercostal arteries. Typical findings include hypertension in the upper extremities but normal or decreased pressures in the lower extremities. Some have described diagnosis during pregnancy using MR imaging (Sherer, 2002; Zwiers, 2006). Jimenez-Juan and associates (2014) found that aortic diameter measured by MR imaging and the risk of adverse events during pregnancy were inversely correlated. Of note, no adverse outcomes occurred if the minimum diameter at the coarctation exceeded 15 mm.

Major complications with aortic coarctation include congestive heart failure after long-standing severe hypertension, bacterial endocarditis of an associated bicuspid aortic valve, and aortic rupture. Antihypertensive therapy using β-blocking drugs is usually required because hypertension may worsen in pregnancy. Aortic rupture is more likely late in pregnancy or early puerperium. Cerebral hemorrhage from *circle of Willis aneurysms* also may occur. According to the World Health Organization, severe coarctation should preclude pregnancy (Foeller, 2018).

In one study of outcomes from 188 pregnancies, a third of women had hypertension that was related to significant coarctation gradients, and one woman died from dissection at 36 weeks' gestation (Beauchesne, 2001). In 700 deliveries complicated with coarctation, hypertensive complications of pregnancy were increased three- to fourfold (Krieger, 2011). Importantly, almost 5 percent of women with coarctation had an adverse cardiovascular outcome—maternal death, heart failure, arrhythmia, cerebrovascular or other embolic event—compared with only 0.3 percent of controls. Of women with coarctation, 41 percent underwent cesarean delivery compared with 26 percent of controls.

Congestive heart failure demands vigorous efforts to improve cardiac function and may warrant pregnancy interruption. In this setting, some authors recommend that resection of the coarctation be undertaken to protect against the possibility of a dissecting aneurysm and aortic rupture. This poses significant perfusion risk, especially for the fetus, because all the arterial collaterals must be clamped for variable periods.

ISCHEMIC HEART DISEASE

Pregnant women with coronary artery disease commonly have the classic risk factors of family history, diabetes, smoking, hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and obesity (Tripathi, 2019). The rate of ischemic heart disease is estimated to be 10 cases per 100,000 pregnancy and postpartum hospitalizations (Smilowitz, 2018; Tripathi, 2019). Although relatively rare, the risk of acute myocardial infarction is approximately threefold higher in pregnant women compared with nonpregnant women of similar age (Elkayam, 2014b).

Acute Coronary Syndrome

Myocardial infarction (MI) is the end result of an acute coronary syndrome. It can result from coronary artery atherosclerosis,

dissection, embolism, spasm, or arteritis (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019; Cauldwell, 2020). The mortality rate with MI in pregnancy is higher compared with age-matched nonpregnant women. In a Nationwide Inpatient Sample study totaling 859 pregnancies complicated by acute MI, the death rate was 5.1 percent (James, 2006). Women who sustain an infarction <2 weeks before delivery are at especially high risk of death due to the greater myocardial demand of labor and delivery (Esplin, 1999).

In a systematic review of 150 cases, most women developed an acute MI during the third trimester or postpartum (Elkayam, 2014b). Approximately three fourths presented with ST segment-elevation MI (STEMI). The leading mechanisms of acute infarction included *spontaneous coronary dissection* (43 percent) and *atherosclerotic disease* (27 percent). Significant complications included heart failure (38 percent), recurrent angina or infarction (19 percent), and ventricular arrhythmias (12 percent). The maternal and fetal mortality rates were 7 and 5 percent, respectively.

Diagnosis of acute coronary syndrome during pregnancy does not differ from that in nonpregnant patients and is based on clinical presentation, characteristic ECG changes, and evidence of myocardial necrosis reflected by elevated serum high-sensitivity troponin I levels (Pacheco, 2014). Consider that troponin I levels are greater, however, in preeclamptic and hypertensive women compared with normotensive gravidas (Ravichandran, 2019).

With spontaneous coronary artery dissection, establishing the diagnosis requires an increased index of suspicion in the women presenting with chest pain (Codsi, 2016). For this condition, coronary angiography is considered the diagnostic gold standard and should be expeditiously performed if acute coronary syndrome—either MI or unstable angina—is present (Hayes, 2018).

Treatment of acute MI is similar to that for nonpregnant patients (Pacheco, 2014). Several reports describe successful percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty and stent placement during pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019). Cardiopulmonary resuscitation may be required, as described in Chapter 50 (p. 897). If the infarct has healed sufficiently, cesarean delivery is reserved for obstetrical indications, and epidural analgesia is ideal for labor.

■ Pregnancy with Prior Ischemic Heart Disease

Ischemic heart disease is characteristically progressive, and because it is usually associated with hypertension or diabetes, pregnancy in most of these women seems inadvisable. In an earlier review of 30 pregnancies in women who had sustained an *infarction remote from pregnancy*, none of the women died, four had congestive heart failure, and four had worsening angina during pregnancy (Vinatier, 1994). Pombar and coworkers (1995) evaluated outcomes of women with diabetes-associated ischemic heart disease and infarction. Three had undergone coronary artery bypass grafting before pregnancy. Of 17 women, eight died during pregnancy. Certainly, pregnancy raises cardiac workload, and these investigators concluded that ventricular performance should be assessed using ventriculography, radionuclide studies, echocardiography, or coronary angiography before conception. Without significant ventricular dysfunction, pregnancy will likely be tolerated. For the woman who becomes pregnant before these studies are performed, echocardiography is done. Exercise tolerance testing may be indicated, and radionuclide ventriculography exposes the fetus to minimal radiation (Chap. 49, p. 875).

COMMON OBSTETRICAL MEDICATIONS

Common medications used in pregnancy require special consideration in women with cardiac conditions. Terbutaline causes vasodilation and tachycardia, which can be dangerous in patients with mitral and aortic stenosis. Nifedipine for hypertension control or tocolysis results in hypotension that can have negative consequences for patients with aortic stenosis, pulmonary hypertension, and Eisenmenger syndrome. Postpartum hemorrhage should be managed aggressively, and methylergonovine generally is a safe choice. Prostaglandin $F_{2\alpha}$ may cause pulmonary shunting and bronchospasm, which results in elevation of pulmonary artery pressure. Consideration is given to the vasodilatory effects of hydralazine in conditions such as hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Hydralazine also causes tachycardia. The β-blocking agent labetalol is a safe choice unless there is ventricular failure. In general, oxytocin and magnesium sulfate have minimal cardiac effects.

REFERENCES

Abarbanell G, Tepper NK, Farr SL: Safety of contraceptive use among women with congenital heart disease: a systematic review. Congenit Heart Dis 14(3):331, 2019

Ackerman CM, Platner MH, Spatz ES, et al: Severe cardiovascular morbidity in women with hypertensive diseases during delivery hospitalization. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(6):582.e1, 2019

Agir A, Bozyel S, Celikyurt U: Arrhythmogenic right ventricular cardiomyopathy in pregnancy. Int Heart J 55(4):372, 2014

Ambia AM, Morgan JL, Wells CE, et al: Perinatal outcomes associated with abnormal cardiac remodeling in women with treated chronic hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(5):519.e1, 2018

Ambia AM, Morgan JL, Wilson KL, et al: Frequency and consequences of ventricular hypertrophy in pregnant women with treated chronic hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(4):467.e1, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Thromboembolism in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 196, June 2018a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Use of prophylactic antibiotics in labor and delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 199, August 2018b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Pregnancy and heart disease. Practice Bulletin No. 212, May 2019

Angeli F, Angeli E, Verdecchia P: Electrocardiographic changes in hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. Hypertens Res 37(11):973, 2014

Anthony J, Sliwa K: Decompensated Heart Failure in Pregnancy. Card Fail Rev 2(1):20, 2016

Arbustini E, Serio A, Favalli A, et al: Dilated cardiomyopathy. In Fuster V, Harrington RA, Narula J, et al (eds): Hurst's The Heart, 14th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017, p 1468

Azizad-Pinto P, Tapson VF: Rheumatologic diseases and the cardiovascular system. In Fuster V, Harrington RA, Narula J, et al (eds): Hurst's The Heart, 14th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017, p 2302

Balci A, Drenthen W, Mulder BJ, et al: Pregnancy in women with corrected tetralogy of Fallot: occurrence and predictors of adverse events. Am Heart J 161:307, 2011

Bánhidy F, Ács N, Puhó EH, et al: Paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia in pregnant women and birth outcomes of their children: a population-based study. Am J Med Genet A 167A(8):1779, 2015

Barbour LA, Smith JM, Marlar RA. Heparin levels to guide thromboembolism prophylaxis during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 173(6):1869, 1995

Barnes EJ, Eben F, Patterson D: Direct current cardioversion during pregnancy should be performed with facilities available for fetal monitoring and emergency caesarean section. BJOG 109:1406, 2002
Bates SM, Greer IA, Middleldorp S, et al: VTE, thrombophilia, antithrombotic therapy, and pregnancy. Chest 141:e691S, 2012
Batra J, Itagaki S, Egorova NN, et al: Outcome and long-term effects of pregnancy in women with biologic and mechanical valve prostheses. Am J Cardiol 122(10):1738, 2018
Bauersachs J, Arrigo M, Hilfiker-Kleiner D, et al: Current management of patients with severe acute peripartum cardiomyopathy: practical guidance from the Heart Failure Association of the European Society of Cardiology Study Group on peripartum cardiomyopathy. Eur J Heart Fail 18:1096, 2016
Beauchesne LM, Connolly HM, Ammash NM, et al: Coarctation of the aorta: outcome of pregnancy. J Am Coll Cardiol 38:1728, 2001
Bédard E, Dimopoulos K, Gatzoulis MA: Has there been any progress made on pulmonary outcomes among women with pulmonary arterial hypertension? Eur Heart J 30:256, 2009
Bogen DL, Hanusa BH, Perel JM, et al: Corrected QT interval and methadone does and concentrations in pregnant and postpartum women. J Clin Psychiatry 78(8):e1013, 2017
Bouhout I, Poirier N, Mazine A, et al: Cardiac, obstetric, and fetal outcomes during pregnancy after biological or mechanical aortic valve replacement. Can J Cardiol 30(7):801, 2014
Boulé S, Ovart L, Marquié C, et al: Pregnancy in women with an implantable cardioverter-defibrillator: is it safe? Europace 16(11):1587, 2014
Bozkurt B, Colvin M, Cook J, Current diagnostic and treatment strategies for specific dilated cardiomyopathies: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. Circulation 134(23):e579, 2016
Bradley EA, Zaidi AN, Goldsmith P, et al: Major adverse maternal cardiovascular-related events in those with aortopathies. What should we expect? Int J Cardiol 177(1):229, 2014
Brancazio LR, Roperti KA, Stierer R, et al: Pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics of subcutaneous heparin during the early third trimester of pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 173(4):1240, 1995
Bredy C, Mongeon FP, Leduc L, et al: Pregnancy in adults with repaired/unrepaired atrial septal defect. J Thorac Dis 10(Suppl 24):S2945, 2018
Brickner ME: Cardiovascular management in pregnancy: congenital heart disease. Circulation 130(3):273, 2014
Briggs GG, Towers CV, Forinash AB: Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation, 12th ed. Philadelphia, Wolters Kluwer, 2022
Bright RA, Lima FV, Avila C, et al: Maternal heart failure. J Am Heart Assoc 10(14):e021019, 2021
Brodsky M, Doria R, Allen B, et al: New-onset ventricular tachycardia during pregnancy. Am Heart J 123:933, 1992
Bui AH, O'Gara PT, Economy KE, et al: Clinical problem-solving. A tight predicament. N Engl J Med 371(10):953, 2014
Capeless EL, Clapp JF: Cardiovascular changes in early phase of pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 161:1449, 1989
Carabello BA, Hahn RT: Aortic valve disease. In Fuster V, Harrington RA, Narula J, et al (eds): Hurst's The Heart, 14th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017, p 1196
Cauldwell M, Quail MA, Smith GS, et al: Effect of pregnancy on ventricular and aortic dimensions in repaired tetralogy of Fallot. J Am Heart Assoc 6(7):1, 2017
Cauldwell M, Steer PJ, Curtis S, et al: Maternal and fetal outcomes in pregnancies complicated by Marfan syndrome. Heart 105(22):1725, 2019a
Cauldwell M, Steer PJ, Curtis S, et al: Maternal and fetal outcomes in pregnancies complicated by the inherited aortopathy Loeys-Dietz syndrome. BJOG 126(8):1025, 2019b
Cauldwell M, Steer PJ, von Klemperer K, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes in women with a history of coronary artery disease. Heart 106(5):380, 2020
Cauldwell M, von Klemperer K, Uebing A, et al: A cohort study of women with a Fontan circulation undergoing preconception counseling. Heart 102(27):534, 2016
Caulin-Glaser T, Setaro JF: Pregnancy and cardiovascular disease. In Burrow GN, Duffy TP (eds): Medical Complications During Pregnancy, 5th ed. Philadelphia, Saunders, 1999
Chan WS, Anand S, Ginsberg JS: Anticoagulation of pregnant women with mechanical heart valves: a systematic review of the literature. Arch Intern Med 160:191, 2000
Chandrasekhar S, Cook CR, Collard CD: Cardiac surgery in the parturient. Anesth Analg 108:777, 2009
Chen L, Deng W, Palacios I, et al: Patent foramen ovale (PFO), stroke and pregnancy. J Investig Med 64(5):992, 2016
Chikwe JY, Castillo JG: Ticispid and pulmonary valve disease. In Fuster V, Harrington RA, Narula J, et al (eds): Hurst's The Heart, 14th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017, p 1260
Cirino AL, Seidman CE, Ho CY: Genetic testing and counseling for hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Cardiol Clin 37(1):35, 2019
Clark SL, Cotton DB, Lee W, et al: Central hemodynamic assessment of normal term pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 161:1439, 1989
Clark SL, Hankins GD: Preventing maternal death: 10 clinical diamonds. Obstet Gynecol 119:360, 2012
Clark SL, Phelan JP, Greenspoon J, et al: Labor and delivery in the presence of mitral stenosis: central hemodynamic observations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 152:984, 1985
Codsi E, Rose CH, Blauwet LA: Subsequent pregnancy outcomes in patients with peripartum cardiomyopathy. Obstet Gynecol 131(2):322, 2018
Codsi E, Tweet MS, Rose CH, et al: Spontaneous coronary artery dissection in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 128(4):731, 2016
Coscia LA, Constaniescu S, Mortiz MJ, et al: Report from the National Transplantation Pregnancy Registry (NTPR): outcomes of pregnancy after transplantation. In: Terasaki PI, Cecka JM, editors. Clinical Transplants 2010. Los Angeles (CA): Terasaki Foundation Laboratory; 2011. p. 65
Costanzo MR, Dipchand A, Starling R, et al: The International Society of Heart and Lung Transplantation guidelines for the heart transplant recipient. J Heart Lung Transplant 29(8):914, 2010
Cotrufo M, De Feo M, De Santo LS, et al: Risk of warfarin during pregnancy with mechanical valve prostheses. Obstet Gynecol 99:35, 2002
Cowan SW, Davison JM, Doria C, et al: Pregnancy after cardiac transplantation. Cardiol Clin 30(3):441, 2012
Cox SM, Hankins GD, Leveno KJ, et al: Bacterial endocarditis: a serious pregnancy complication. J Reprod Med 33:671, 1988
Creanga AA, Syverson CJ, Seed K, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2011–2013. Obstet Gynecol 130(2):366, 2017
Crossley GH, Poole JE, Rozner MA, et al: The Heart Rhythm Society (HRS)/American Society of Anesthesiologists (ASA) Expert Consensus Statement on the perioperative management of patients with implantable defibrillators, pacemakers and arrhythmia monitors: facilities and patient management. Heart Rhythm 8(7):1114, 2011
Cruz MO, Briller J, Hibbard JU: New insights in peripartum cardiomyopathy. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 45(2):281, 2018
Cuneo BF, Kaizer AM, Ann Clur S, et al: Mothers with long QT syndrome are at increased risk for fetal death: findings from a multicenter international study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:263.e1, 2020
Cunningham FG, Byrne JJ, Nelson DB: Peripartum cardiomyopathy. Obstet Gynecol 133(1):167, 2019
Cunningham FG, Pritchard JA, Hankins GD, et al: Peripartum heart failure: idiopathic cardiomyopathy or compounding cardiovascular events? Obstet Gynecol 67:157, 1986
Curry RA, Gelson E, Swan L, et al: Marfan syndrome and pregnancy: maternal and neonatal outcomes. BJOG 121(5):610, 2014
Curtis KM, Tepper NK, Jatlaoui TC, et al: U.S. medical eligibility criteria for contraceptive use, 2016. MMWR 65(3):1, 2016
Dagher MM, Eichenberger EM, Adddae-Konadu KI, et al: Maternal and fetal outcomes associated with infective endocarditis in pregnancy. Clin Infect Dis June 10, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]
Dagher O, Alami Laroussi N, Carrier M, et al: Pregnancy after heart transplantation: a well-thought-out decision? The Quebec provincial experience – a multi-centre cohort study. Transpl Int 31:977, 2018
Davis MB, Arany Z, McNamara DM, et al: Peripartum cardiomyopathy: JACC state-of-the-art review. J Am Coll Cardiol 75(2):207, 2020
Davis MB, Rogers IS: Pregnancy after Fontan palliation: caution when details are lost in translation. Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes 11(5):e004734, 2018
Dennis AT, Salman M, Paxton E, et al: Resting hemodynamics and response to exercise using the 6-minute walk test in late pregnancy: an international prospective multicenter study. Anesth Analg 129(2):450, 2019
DiCarlo-Meacham LT, Dahlke LC: Atrial fibrillation in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 117:389, 2011
Drenthen W, Pieper PG, Roos-Hesselink JW, et al: Non-cardiac complications during pregnancy in women with isolated congenital pulmonary valvar stenosis. Heart 92:1838, 2006
Drenthen W, Pieper PG, van der Tuuk K, et al: Cardiac complications relating to pregnancy and recurrence of disease in the offspring of women with atrioventricular septal defects. Eur Heart J 26:2581, 2005
Drenthen W, Pieper PG, van der Tuuk K, et al: Fertility, pregnancy and delivery in women after biventricular repair for double outlet right ventricle. Cardiology 109:105, 2008
Driver K, Chisholm CA, Darby AE, et al: Catheter ablation of arrhythmia during pregnancy. J Cardiovasc Electrophysiol 26(6):698, 2015
D'Souza R, Soete E, Silversides CK, et al: Pregnancy outcomes following cardiac transplantation. J Obstet Gynecol Can 40(5):566, 2018

D'Souza R, Ostro J, Shah PS, et al: Anticoagulation for pregnant women with mechanical heart valves: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Eur Heart J 38(19):150, 2017
Duan R, Xu X, Wang X, et al: Pregnancy outcome in women with Eisenmenger's syndrome: a case series from west China. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 16(1):356, 2016
Ducas RA, Elliot JE, Melnyk SF, et al: Cardiovascular magnetic resonance in pregnancy: insights from the Cardiac Hemodynamic Imaging and Remodeling in Pregnancy (CHIRP) study. J Cardiovasc Magn Reson 16:1, 2014
Dunn JS Jr, Brost BC: Fetal bradycardia after IV adenosine for maternal PSVT. Am J Emerg Med 18:234, 2000
Easter SR, Rouse CE, Duarte V, et al: Planned vaginal delivery and cardiovascular morbidity in pregnant women with heart disease. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(1):77, 2020
Easter SR, Valente AM: Creating a multidisciplinary pregnancy heart team. Curr Treat Options Cardiovasc Med 22(1):3, 2020
Easterling TR, Chadwick HS, Otto CM, et al: Aortic stenosis in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 72:113, 1988
Elassy SMR, Elmidany AA, Elbawab HY: Urgent cardiac surgery during pregnancy: a continuous challenge. Ann Thorac Surg 97(5):1624, 2014
Elkayam U: Pregnancy in the patient with prosthetic heart valve. In Elkayam U (ed): Cardiac Problems in Pregnancy, 4th edition. Hoboken, Wiley Blackwell, 2020, p 90
Elkayam U: Risk of subsequent pregnancy in women with a history of peripartum cardiomyopathy. J Am Coll Cardiol 64(15):1629, 2014a
Elkayam U, Jalnapurkar S, Barakkat MN, et al: Pregnancy-associated acute myocardial infarction: a review of contemporary experience in 150 cases between 2006 and 2011. Circulation 129(16):1695, 2014b
Elliott P, Andersson B, Arbustini E, et al: Classification of the cardiomyopathies: a position statement from the European Society of Cardiology working group on myocardial and pericardial diseases. Euro Heart J 29:270, 2008
Elliott PM, Anastasakis A, Borger MA, et al: 2014 ESC Guidelines on diagnosis and management of hypertrophic cardiomyopathy: the Task Force for the Diagnosis and Management of Hypertrophic Cardiomyopathy of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). Eur Heart J 35(39):2733, 2014
Enriquez AD, Economy KE, Tedrow UB: Contemporary management of arrhythmias during pregnancy. Circ Arrhythm Electrophysiol 7(5):961, 2014
Ersbøll AS, Bojer AS, Hauge MG, et al: Long-term cardiac function after peripartum cardiomyopathy and preeclampsia: a Danish nationwide, clinical follow-up study using maximal exercise testing and cardiac magnetic resonance imaging. J Am Heart Assoc 7(20):e008991, 2018
Esplin S, Clark SL: Ischemic heart disease and myocardial infarction during pregnancy. Contemp Ob/Gyn 44:27, 1999
Esteves CA, Munoz JS, Braga S, et al: Immediate and long-term follow-up of percutaneous balloon mitral valvuloplasty in pregnant patients with rheumatic mitral stenosis. Am J Cardiol 98:812, 2006
Foeller ME, Foeller TM, Druzin M: Maternal congenital heart disease in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 45(2):267, 2018
Franco V, Ryan JJ, McLaughlin VV: Pulmonary hypertension in women. Heart Fail Clin 15(1):137, 2019
Fryar CD, Chen T, Li X: Prevalence of uncontrolled risk factors for cardiovascular disease: United States, 1999–2010. NCHS Data Brief 103:1, 2012
Gadson A, Akpovi E, Mehta PK: Exploring the social determinants of racial/ethnic disparities in prenatal care utilization and maternal outcome. Semin Perinatol 41(5):308, 2017
Galal MO, Jadoon S, Momenah TS: Pulmonary valvuloplasty in a pregnant woman using sole transthoracic echo guidance: technical considerations. Can J Cardiol 31(1):103.e5, 2015
Galiè N, Humbert M, Vachiery JL, et al: 2015 ESC/ERC guidelines for the diagnosis and treatment of pulmonary hypertension: the Joint Task Force for the Diagnosis and Treatment of Pulmonary Hypertension of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and the European Respiratory Society (ERS): endorsed by: Association for European Paediatric and Congenital Cardiology (AEPC), International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation (ISHLT). Eur Heart J 37(1):67, 2016
Garcia-Ropero A, Baskar S, Roos Hesselink JW, et al: Pregnancy in women with a Fontan circulation: a systematic review of the literature. Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes 11(5):e004575, 2018
Gei A, Montúfar-Rueda C: Pulmonary hypertension and pregnancy: an overview. Clin Obstet Gynecol 57(4):806, 2014
Gei AF, Hankins GD: Cardiac disease and pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 28:465, 2001
Ghi T, Dall'Asta A, Franchi L, et al: The effect of chorionicity on maternal cardiac adaptation to uncomplicated twin pregnancy: a prospective longitudinal study. Fetal Diagn Ther 45(6):394, 2019
Grewal J, Silversides CK, Colman JM: Pregnancy in women with heart disease: risk assessment and management of heart failure. Heart Fail Clin 10(1):117, 2014
Guo C, Xu D, Wang C: Successful treatment for acute aortic dissection in pregnancy—Bentall procedure concomitant with cesarean section. J Cardiothorac Surg 6:139, 2011
Guy TS, Hill AC: Mitral valve prolapse. Annu Rev Med 63:277, 2012
Haas S, Trepte C, Rybczynski M, et al: Type A aortic dissection during late pregnancy in a patient with Marfan syndrome. Can J Anesth 58:1024, 2011
Habib G, Lancellotti P, Antunes MJ, et al: 2015 ESC Guidelines of the management of infective endocarditis: the TASK Force for the Management of Infective Endocarditis of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC). Endorsed by: European Association for Cardio-Thoracic Surgery (EACTS), the European Association of Nuclear Medicine (EANM). Eur Heart J 36(44):3075, 2015
Haghikia A, Podewski E, Libhaber E, et al: Phenotyping and outcome on contemporary management in a German cohort of patients with peripartum cardiomyopathy. Basic Res Cardiol 108(4):366, 2013
Haghikia A, Schwab J, Vogel-Claussen J, et al: Bromocriptine treatment in patients with peripartum cardiomyopathy and right ventricular dysfunction. Clin Res Cardiol 108(3):290, 2019
Hamdan R, Nassar P, Zein A, et al: Peripartum cardiomyopathy, place of drug therapy, assist devices, and outcome after left ventricular assistance. J Crit Care 37:185, 2017
Hameed A, Akhter M, Bitar F, et al: Left atrial thrombosis in pregnant women with mitral stenosis and sinus rhythm. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193:501, 2005
Hassan N, Patenaude V, Oddy L, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in Marfan syndrome: a retrospective cohort study. Am J Perinatol 30(2):123, 2015
Hayes SN, Kim ES, Saw J, et al: Spontaneous coronary artery dissection: current state of the science: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association. Circulation 137(19):e523, 2018
Herrera CL, Schell RC, McIntire DD, et al: Pulmonary hypertension complicating pregnancy: cardiac remodeling and residual concerns. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med November 23, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Herrey AS: Pregnancy in inherited and acquired cardiomyopathies. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 28(4):563, 2014
Herrey AS, Francis JM, Hughes M, et al: Cardiovascular magnetic resonance can be undertaken in pregnancy and guide clinical decision-making in this patient population. Eur Heart J Cardoivasc Imaging 20(3):291, 2019
Hibbard JU, Lindheimer M, Lang RM: A modified definition for peripartum cardiomyopathy and prognosis based on echocardiography. Obstet Gynecol 94:311, 1999
Hidaka N, Chiba Y, Fukushima K, et al: Pregnant women with complete atrioventricular block: perinatal risks and review of management. Pacing Clin Electrophysiol 34:1161, 2011
Hilfiker-Kleiner D, Hadhikia A, Berliner D, et al: Bromocriptine for the treatment of peripartum cardiomyopathy: a multicentre randomized study. Eur Heart J 38(35):2671, 2017
Hiratzka LF, Bakris GL, Beckman JA, et al: 2010 ACCF/AHA/AATS/ACRA/ASA/SCA/SCAI/SIR/STS/SVM guidelines for the diagnosis and management of patients with thoracic aortic disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines, American Association for Thoracic Surgery, American College of Radiology, American Stroke Association, Society of Cardiovascular Anesthesiologists, Society for Cardiovascular Angiography and Interventions, Society of Interventional Radiology, Society of Thoracic Surgeons, and Society of Vascular Medicine. Circulation 121(13):e266, 2010
Hodson R, Kirker E, Swanson J, et al: Transcatheter aortic valve replacement during pregnancy. Circ Cardiovasc Interv 9(10):e004006, 2016
Hoendermis ES, Drenthen W, Sollie KM, et al: Severe pregnancy-induced deterioration of truncal valve regurgitation in an adolescent patient with repaired truncus arteriosus. Cardiology 109:177, 2008
Hopkins MK, Goldstein SA, Ward CC, et al: Evaluation and management of maternal congenital heart disease: a review. Obstet Gynecol Surv 73(2):116, 2018
Horiuchi C, Kamiya CA, Ohuchi H, et al: Pregnancy outcomes and mid-term prognosis in women after arterial switch operation for dextro-transposition of the great arteries—tertiary hospital experiences and review of literature. J Cardiol 73(3):247, 2019
Howland RE, Angley M, Won SH, et al: Determinants of severe maternal morbidity and its racial/ethnic disparities in New York City, 2008–2012. Matern Child Health J 23(3):346, 2019
Hytten FE, Chamberlain G: Clinical Physiology in Obstetrics. Oxford, Blackwell, 1991
Ishibashi K, Aiba T, Kamiya C, et al: Arrhythmia risk and β-blocker therapy in pregnant women with long QT syndrome. Heart 103(17):1374, 2017

Iturbe-Alessio I, Fonseca MD, Mutchinik O, et al: Risks of anticoagulant therapy in pregnant women with artificial heart valves. N Engl J Med 315:1390, 1986
Iung B, Duval X: Infective endocarditis: innovations in the management of an old disease. Nat Rev Cardiol 16(10):623, 2019
James AH, Jamison MG, Biswas MS, et al: Acute myocardial infarction in pregnancy: a United States population-base study. Circulation 113:1564, 2006
Jimenez-Juan L, Krieger EV, Valente AM, et al: Cardiovascular magnetic resonance imaging predictors of pregnancy outcomes in women with coarctation of the aorta. Eur Heart J Cardiovasc Imaging 15(3):299, 2014
Jha N, Jha AK, Chand Chauhan R, et al: Maternal and fetal outcome after cardiac operations during pregnancy: a meta-analysis. Ann Thorac Surg 106(2):618, 2018
Kamiya CA, Iwamiya T, Neki R, et al: Outcome of pregnancy and effects on the right heart in women with repaired tetralogy of Fallot. Circ J 76(4):957, 2012
Kanoh M, Inai K, Shinohara T, et al: Influence of pregnancy on cardiac function and hemodynamics in women with Ebstein's anomaly. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 97:1025, 2018
Karchmer A: Infective endocarditis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Ksaper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2305
Karthikesalingam A, Vidal-Diez A, Holt PJ, et al: Thresholds for abdominal aortic aneurysm repair in England and the United States. N Engl J Med 375(21):2051, 2016
Kebed KY, Bishu K, Al Adham RI, et al: Pregnancy and postpartum infective endocarditis: a systematic review. Mayo Clin Proc 89(8):1143, 2014
Keepanasseril A, Maurya DK, Suriya Y, et al: Complete atrioventricular block in pregnancy: report of seven pregnancies in a patient without pacemaker. BMJ Case Rep 2015: bcr2014208618, 2015
Keepanasseril A, Pillai AA, Yavanasuriya J, et al: Outcome of pregnancies in women with pulmonary hypertension: a single centre experience from South India. BJOG 126(Suppl 4):43, 2019
Kenchaiah S, Evans JC, Levy D, et al: Obesity and the risk of heart failure. N Engl J Med 347:305, 2002
Kernan WN, Ovbiagele B, Black HR, et al: Guidelines for the prevention of stroke in patients with stroke and transient ischemic attack: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. Stroke 45(7):2160, 2014
Khan A, Kim YY: Pregnancy in complex CHD: focus on patients with Fontan circulation and patients with a systemic right ventricle. Cardiol Young 25(8):1608, 2015
Kim YY, Goldberg LA, Awh K, et al: Accuracy of risk prediction scores in pregnant women with congenital heart disease. Congenit Heart Dis 14(3):470, 2019
Klingberg S, Brekke HK, Winkvist A, et al: Parity, weight change, and maternal risk of cardiovascular events. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(2):172.e1, 2017
Kounis NG, Zavras GM, Papadaki PJ, et al: Pregnancy-induced increase of supraventricular arrhythmias in Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome. Clin Cardiol 18(3):137, 1995
Kraft K, Graf M, Karch M, et al: Takotsubo syndrome after cardiopulmonary resuscitation during emergency cesarean delivery. Obstet Gynecol 129:521, 2017
Krexi D, Sheppard MN: Pulmonary hypertensive vascular changes in lungs of patients with sudden unexpected death. Emphasis on congenital heart disease, Eisenmenger syndrome, postoperative deaths, and death during pregnancy and postpartum. J Clin Pathol 68(1):18, 2015
Krieger EV, Landzberg MJ, Economy KE, et al: Comparison of risk of hypertensive complications of pregnancy among women with versus without coarctation of the aorta. Am J Cardiol 107:1529, 2011
Krul SP, van der Smag JJ, van den Berg MP, et al: Systematic review of pregnancy in women with inherited cardiomyopathies. Euro J Heart Failure 13:584, 2011
Lawley CM, Lain SJ, Algert CS, et al: Prosthetic heart valves in pregnancy, outcomes for women and their babies: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 122(11):1446, 2015
Leśniak-Sobelga A, Tracz W, Kostkiewicz M, et al: Clinical and echocardiographic assessment of pregnant women with valvular heart disease—maternal and fetal outcome. Int J Cardiol 94:15, 2004
Leyh RG, Fischer S, Ruhparwar A, et al: Anticoagulation for prosthetic heart valves during pregnancy: is low-molecular-weight heparin an alternative?. Eur J Cardiothorac Surg 21:577, 2002
Leyh RG, Fischer S, Ruhparwar A, et al: Anticoagulation therapy in pregnant women with mechanical valves. Arch Gynecol Obstet 268:1, 2003
Li W, Li H, Long Y: Clinical characteristics and long-term predictors of persistent left ventricular systolic dysfunction in peripartum cardiomyopathy. Can J Cardiol 32:362, 2016
Liaw J, Walker B, Hall L, et al: Rheumatic heart disease in pregnancy and neonatal outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PLos One 16:e0253581, 2021
Lin JP, Aboulhosn JA, Child JS: Congenital heart disease in adolescents and adults. In Fuster V, Harrington RA, Narula J, et al (eds): Hurst's The Heart, 14th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017, p 1363
Lin LT, Tsui KH, Change R, et al: Management of recurrent and refractory ventricular tachycardia in pregnancy. Taiwan J Obstet Gynecol 54(3):319, 2015
Lindley KJ, Conner SN, Cahill AG: Adult congenital heart disease in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 70(6):397, 2015
Liu Y, Han F, Zhuang J, et al: Cardiac operation under cardiopulmonary bypass during pregnancy. J Cardiothorac Surg 15:92, 2021
Lu CW, Shih JC, Chen SY, et al: Comparison of 3 risk estimation methods for predicting cardiac outcomes in pregnant women with congenital heart disease. Circ J 79(7):1609, 2015
Lupton M, Oteng-Ntim E, Ayida G, et al: Cardiac disease in pregnancy. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 14:137, 2002
Macera F, Occhi L, Masciocco G, et al: A new life: motherhood after heart transplantation. A single-center experience and review of literature. Transplantation 102(9):1538, 2018
MacIntyre C, Iwuala C, Parkash R: Cardiac arrhythmias and pregnancy. Curr Treat Options Cardiovasc Med 20(8):63, 2018
Mack MJ, Leon MB, Thourani VH, et al: Transcatheter aortic-valve replacement with a balloon-expandable valve in low-risk patients. N Engl J Med 380(18):1695, 2019
Makdisi G, Jan MY, Dungy-Poythress L, et al: Successful delivery in a patient with left ventricular assist devise and unplanned pregnancy. Ann Thorac Surg 104(1):e31, 2017
Malhamé I, Hurlburt H, Larson L, et al: Sensitivity and specificity of B-type natriuretic peptide in diagnosing heart failure in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 134(3):440, 2019
Martin RB, Nelson DB, Stewart R, et al: Impact of pregnancy on maternal cardiac atria. Am J Perinatol 34(11):1097, 2017
Martin SR, Edwards A: Pulmonary hypertension and pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 134(5):974, 2019
McLintock C: Thromboembolism in pregnancy: challenges and controversies in the prevention of pregnancy-associated venous thromboembolism and management of anticoagulation in women with mechanical prosthetic heart valves. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynecol 28(4):519, 2014
McNamara DM, Elkayam U, Alharethi R, et al: Clinical outcomes for peripartum cardiomyopathy in North America: results of the IPAC study (investigations of pregnancy-associated cardiomyopathy). J Am Coll Cardiol 66(8):905, 2015
Meijboom LJ, Drenthen W, Pieper PG, et al: Obstetric complications in Marfan syndrome. Intl J Cardiol 110:53, 2006
Melchiorre K, Sharma R, Khalil A, et al: Maternal cardiovascular function in normal pregnancy: evidence of maladaptation to chronic volume overload. Hypertension 67(4):754, 2016
Meng ML, Landau R, Viktorsdottir O, et al: Pulmonary hypertension in pregnancy: a report of 49 cases at four tertiary North American sites. Obstet Gynecol 129(3):511, 2017
Mogos MF, Piano MR, McFarlin BL, et al: Heart failure in pregnant women: a concern across the pregnancy continuum. Circ Heart Fail 11(1):e004005, 2018
Moroney E, Posma E, Dennis A, et al: Pregnancy in a woman with a Fontan circulation: a review. Obstet Med 11(1):6, 2018
Moroney E, Zannino D, Cordina R, et al: Does pregnancy impact subsequent health outcomes in the maternal Fontan circulation? Int J Cardiol 15(301):67, 2020
Nanna M, Stergiopoulos K: Pregnancy complicated by valvular heart disease: an update. J Am Heart Assoc 3:e000712, 2014
Narula J, Maron BJ, Narula N, et al: Classification of cardiomyopathies. In Fuster V, Harrington RA, Narula J, et al (eds): Hurst's The Heart, 14th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017, p 1197
Nishimura RA, Otto CM, Bonow RO, et al: 2014 AHA/ACC guidelines for the management of patients with valvular heart disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. J Thorac Cardiovasc 148(1):e1, 2014
Nishimura RA, Otto CM, Bonow RO, et al: 2017 AHA/ACC focused update of the 2014 AHA/ACC guideline for the management of patients with valvular heart disease: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. Circulation 135(25):e1159, 2017
Nizamuddin J, Gupta S, Patel V, et al: Hypertensive disease of pregnancy increase risk of readmission with heart failure: a national readmissions database study. Mayo Clin Proc 94(5):811, 2019

Ntusi NB, Badri M, Gumedze F, et al: Pregnancy-associated heart failure: a comparison of clinical presentation and outcome between hypertensive heart failure of pregnancy and idiopathic peripartum cardiomyopathy. PLoS One 10(8):e0133466, 2015
Običan SG, Cleary KL: Pulmonary arterial hypertension in pregnancy. Semin Perinatol 35(5):289, 2014
O'Gara PT, Greenfield AJ, Afridi NA, et al: Case 12–2004: a 38-year-old woman with acute onset of pain in the chest. N Engl J Med 350:16, 2004
Oindi FM, Sequeira E, Sequira HR, et al: Takotsubo cardiomyopathy in pregnancy: a case report and literature review. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 19(1):89, 2019
Pacheco LD, Saade GR, Hankins GD: Acute myocardial infarction during pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 57(4):835, 2014
Pacheco LD, Saade GR, Hankins GD: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) during pregnancy and postpartum. Semin Perinatol 42(1):21, 2018
Packer M: Why are physicians so confused about acute heart failure? N Engl J Med 38(18):776, 2019
Page RL, Joglar JA, Caldwell MA, et al: 2015 ACC/AHA/HRS guideline for the management of adult patients with supraventricular tachycardia: executive summary. Circulation 133:e471, 2015
Papatsonis DNM, Heetkamp A, van den Hombergh C, et al: Acute type A aortic dissection complicating pregnancy at 32 weeks: surgical repair after cesarean section. Am J Perinatol 26:153, 2009
Pappone C, Santinelli V, Manguso F, et al: A randomized study of prophylactic catheter ablation in asymptomatic patients with the Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome. N Engl J Med 349:1803, 2003
Pearson GD, Veille JC, Rahimtoola S, et al: Peripartum cardiomyopathy. National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute and Office of Rare Diseases (National Institutes of Health) workshop recommendations and review. JAMA 283:1183, 2000
Petersen EE, Davis NL, Goodman D, et al: Vital signs: pregnancy-related deaths, United States, 2011–2015, and strategies for prevention, 13 states, 2013–2017. MMWR 68(18):423, 2019
Pessel C, Bonanno C: Valve disease in pregnancy. Semin Perinatal 38(5):273, 2014
Pieper PG, Hoendermis ES. Pregnancy in women with pulmonary hypertension. Neth Heart J 19(12):504, 2011
Pijuan-Domènech A, Galian L, Goya M, et al: Cardiac complications during pregnancy are better predicted with the modified WHO risk score. Int J Cardiol 195:149, 2015
Pombar X, Strassner HT, Fenner PC: Pregnancy in a woman with class H diabetes mellitus and previous coronary artery bypass graft: a case report and review of the literature. Obstet Gynecol 85:825, 1995
Prasad M, Jones M: Medical complications of opioid use disorder in pregnancy. Semin Perinatol 43(3):162, 2019
Quinones JN, Walheim L, Rochon M, et al: Impact of type of maternal cardiovascular disease on pregnancy outcomes among women managed in a multidisciplinary cardio-obstetrics program. Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 3(4):100377, 2021
Ramage K, Grabowska K, Silversides C, et al: Association of adult congenital heart disease with pregnancy, maternal, and neonatal outcomes. JAMA Netw Open 2(5):e193667, 2019
Raman AS, Sharma S, Hariharan: Minimal use of fluoroscopy to reduce fetal radiation exposure. Tex Heart Inst J 42(2):152, 2015
Rashba EJ, Zareba W, Moss AJ, et al: Influence of pregnancy on the risk for cardiac events in patients with hereditary long QT syndrome. Circulation 97:451, 1998
Ravichandran J, Woon SY, Quek YS, et al: High-sensitivity cardiac troponin I levels in normal and hypertensive pregnancy. Am J Med 132(3):362, 2019
Redfield MM: Heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. N Engl J Med 375(19):1868, 2016
Regitz-Zagrosek V, Roos-Hesselink JW, Bauersachs J, et al: 2018 ESC guidelines for the management of cardiovascular diseases during pregnancy. ESC Scientific Document Group. Eur Heart J 39:3165, 2018
Ricke-Hoch M, Pfeffer TJ, Hilfiker-Kleiner D: Peripartum cardiomyopathy: basic mechanisms and hope for new therapies. Cardiovasc Res 116(3):520, 2020
Roeder HA, Kuller JA, Barker PC, et al: Maternal valvular heart disease in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 66(9):561, 2011
Rowan JA, McCowan LM, Raudkivi PJ, et al: Enoxaparin treatment in women with mechanical heart valves during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185:633, 2001
Russo ML, Gandhi M, Morris SA: Aortic dissection in pregnancy—a Texas population-based study. Abstract No. 769, Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:S445, 2017
Russo ML, Sukhavasi N, Mathur V, et al: Obstetric management of Loeys-Dietz syndrome. Obstet Gynecol 131(6):1080, 2018
Ruys TP, Roos-Hesselink JW, Hall R, et al: Heart failure in pregnant women with cardiac disease: data from the ROPAC. Heart 100(3):231, 2014
Ruys TP, Roos-Hesselink JW, Pijuan-Domènech A, et al: Is a planned caesarean section in women with cardiac disease beneficial? Heart 101(7):530, 2015
Safi LM, Liberthson RR, Bhatt A: Current management of Ebstein's anomaly in the adult. Curr Treat Options Cardiovasc Med 18(9):56, 2016
Savu O, Jurcuţ R, Giuşcă S, et al: Morphological and functional adaptation of the maternal heart during pregnancy. Circ Cardiovasc Imaging 5:289, 2012
Sawhney H, Aggarwal N, Suri V, et al: Maternal and perinatal outcome in rheumatic heart disease. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 80:9, 2003
Schade R, Andersohn F, Suissa S, et al: Dopamine agonists and the risk of cardiac-valve regurgitation. N Engl J Med 356:29, 2007
Schaufelberger M: Cardiomyopathy and pregnancy. Heart 105(20):1543, 2019
Schinkel AF: Pregnancy in women with hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. Cardio Rev 22(5):217, 2014
Schlichting LE, Insaf TZ, Zaidi AN, et al: Maternal comorbidities and complications of delivery in pregnant women with congenital heart disease. J Am Coll Cardiol 73(17):2181, 2019
Seeburger J, Wilhelm-Mohr F, Falk V: Acute type A dissection at 17 weeks of gestation in a Marfan patient. Ann Thorac Surg 83:674, 2007
Seth R, Moss AJ, McNitt S, et al: Long QT syndrome and pregnancy. J Am Coll Cardiol 49:1092, 2007
Sherer DM: Coarctation of the descending thoracic aorta diagnosed during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 100:1094, 2002
Shroff H, Benenstein R, Freedberg R, et al: Mitral valve Libman-Sacks endocarditis visualized by real time three-dimensional transesophageal echocardiography. Echocardiography 29:E100, 2012
Silvestry FE, Cohen MS, Armsby LB, et al: Guidelines for the echocardiographic assessment of atrial septal defect and patent foramen ovale: from the American Society of Echocardiography and Society for Cardiac Angiography and Interventions. J Am Soc Echocardiogr 28(8):910, 2015
Simpson LL: Maternal cardiac disease: update for the clinician. Obstet Gynecol 119:345, 2012
Siu SC, Colman JM: Congenital heart disease: heart disease and pregnancy. Heart 85:710, 2001a
Siu SC, Sermer M, Colman JM, et al: Prospective multicenter study of pregnancy outcomes in women with heart disease. Circulation 104:515, 2001b
Sliwa K, Azibani F, Baard J, et al: Reducing late maternal death due to cardiovascular disease—a pragmatic pilot study. Int J Cardiol 272:70, 2018
Sliwa K, Blauwet L, Tibazarwa K, et al: Evaluation of bromocriptine in the treatment of acute severe peripartum cardiomyopathy: a proof-of-concept pilot study. Circulation. 121(13):1465, 2016
Small MJ, James AH, Kershaw T, et al: Near-miss maternal mortality: cardiac dysfunction as the principal cause of obstetric intensive care unit admissions. Obstet Gynecol 119:250, 2012
Smilowitz NR, Gupta N, Guo Y, et al: Acute myocardial infarction during pregnancy and the puerperium in the United States. Mayo Clin Proc 93(10):1404, 2018
Sobhani NC, Schultz H, Kheiwa A, et al: Contraceptive choices in the immediate postpartum period in women with cardiac disease. Am J Cardiol 123(8):1364, 2019
Steinberg ZL, Dominguez-Islas CP, Otto CM, et al: Maternal and fetal outcomes of anticoagulation in pregnant women with mechanical heart valves. J Am Coll Cardiol 69(22):2681, 2017
Stewart RD, Nelson DB, Matulevicious SA, et al: Cardiac magnetic resonance imaging to assess the impact of maternal habitus on cardiac remodeling during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(5):640.e1, 2016
Stoll VM, Drury NE, Thorne S, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with transposition of the great arteries after an arterial switch operation. JAMA Cardiol 3(11):1119, 2018
Sun X, Feng J, Shi J: Pregnancy and pulmonary hypertension: an exploratory analysis of risk factors and outcomes. Medicine (Baltimore) 97(44):e13035, 2018
Texas Maternal Mortality and Morbidity Task Force: Maternal Mortality and Morbidity Task Force and Department of State Health Services Joint Biennial Report, 2020. Available at: https://www.dshs.texas.gov/mch/pdf/DSHS-MMMRC-2020-UPDATED-11282020.pdf. Accessed October 23, 2021
Thompson JL, Kuklina EV, Bateman BT, et al: Medical and obstetric outcomes among pregnant women with congenital heart disease. Obstet Gynecol 126(2):346, 2015
Thorne S, MacGregor A, Nelson-Piercy C: Risks of contraception and pregnancy in heart disease. Heart 92(10):152, 2006
Thurman R, Zaffar N, Sayyer P, et al: Labour profile and outcomes in pregnant women with heart disease. Abstract No. 799, Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:S459, 2017

Trigas V, Nagdyman N, Pildner von Steinburg S , et al: Pregnancy-related obstetric and cardiologic problems in women after atrial switch operation for transposition of the great arteries. Circ J 78(2):443, 2014

Tripathi B, Kumar V, Pitiliya A, et al: Trends in incidence and outcomes of pregnancy-related acute myocardial infarction (from a Nationwide Inpatient Sample database). Am J Cardiol 123(8):1220, 2019

Tuzcu V, Gul EE, Erdem A, et al: Cardiac interventions in pregnant patients without fluoroscopy. Pediatr Cardiol 36(6):1304, 2015

van Hagen IM, Boersma E, Johnson MR, et al: Global cardiac risk assessment in the Registry of Pregnancy and Cardiac disease: results of a registry from the European Society of Cardiology. Eur J Heart Fail 18(5):523, 2016

van Hagen IM, Roose-Hesselink JW, Ruys TP, et al: Pregnancy in women with a mechanical heart valve: data of the European Society of Cardiology Registry of Pregnancy and Cardiac Disease (ROPAC). Circulation 132(2):132, 2015

van Hagen IM, Torne SA, Taha N, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with rheumatic mitral valve disease: results from the registry of pregnancy and cardiac disease. Circulation 137(8):806, 2018

Vaught AJ, Kovell LC, Szymanski LM, et al: Acute cardiac effects of severe pre-eclampsia. J Am Coll Cardiol 72(1):1, 2018

Vause S, Clarke B, Tower CL, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with mechanical prosthetic heart valves: a prospective descriptive population based study using the United Kingdom Obstetric Surveillance System (UKOSS) data collection system. BJOG 124(9):1411, 2017

Vinatier D, Virelizier S, Depret-Mosser S, et al: Pregnancy after myocardial infarction. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 56:89, 1994

Vitarelli A, Capotosto L: Role of echocardiography in the assessment and management of adult congenital heart disease in pregnancy. Int J Cardiovasc Imaging 27:843, 2011

Vonck S, Lanssens D, Staelens AS, et al: Obesity in pregnancy causes a volume overload in third trimester. Eur J Clin Invest 49(11), 2019

Wang H, Zhang W, Liu T: Experience of managing pregnant women with Eisenmenger's syndrome: maternal and fetal outcome in 13 cases. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 37:64, 2011

Ware JS, Seidman JG, Arany Z: Shared genetic predisposition in peripartum and dilated cardiomyopathies. N Engl J Med 374(26):2601, 2016

Weiss BM, Zemp L, Seifert B, et al: Outcome of pulmonary vascular disease in pregnancy: a systematic overview from 1978 through 1996. J Am Coll Cardiol 31:1650, 1998

Wolfe DS, Hameed AB, Taub CC, et al: Addressing maternal mortality: the pregnant cardiac patient. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(2):167.e1, 2019

Wylie BJ, Epps KC, Gaddipati S, et al: Correlation of transthoracic echocardiography and right heart catheterization in pregnancy. J Perinat Med 35(6):497, 2007

Xia VW, Messerlian AK, Mackley J, et al: Successful epidural anesthesia for cesarean section in a parturient with severe aortic stenosis and a recent history of pulmonary edema—a case report. J Clin Anesth 18:142, 2006

Yu M, Yi K, Zhou L, et al: Pregnancy increases heart rates during paroxysmal supraventricular tachycardia. Can J Cardiol 31(6):820.e5, 2015

Zanettini R, Antonini A, Gatto G, et al: Valvular heart disease and the use of dopamine agonists for Parkinson's disease. N Engl J Med 356:39, 2007

Zeeman GG: Obstetric critical care: a blueprint for improved outcomes. Crit Care Med 34:S208, 2006

Zwiers WJ, Blodgett TM, Vallejo MC, et al: Successful vaginal delivery for a parturient with complete aortic coarctation. J Clin Anesth 18:300, 2006

CHAPTER 53

Chronic Hypertension

In reproductive-aged women, the prevalence of hypertension approximates 6 percent (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2017). Thus, not surprisingly, chronic hypertension is one of the most common serious complications encountered during pregnancy. In one study of more than 56 million births, the incidence was 1.8 percent (Bateman, 2012). Chronic hypertension complicated 2.3 percent of pregnancies in data from the Medicaid Analytic Extract (Bateman, 2015). Despite an increasing prevalence from 1970 to 2010, optimal management has not been well studied (Ananth, 2019).

Chronic hypertension usually improves during early pregnancy. This is followed by variable behavior later in pregnancy and may include development of superimposed preeclampsia. The latter carries significant risks for maternal and perinatal morbidity and mortality.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Blood pressure is a polygenic biological variant that differs between populations. Numerous epigenetic factors also influence penetrance differences between individuals. Moreover, clinical features such as increasing age and weight correlate positively with rising pressures. Last, resting blood pressure measurements do not reflect daily activities. Therefore, adults have a broad range of normal blood pressure values, which makes defining hypertension difficult.

Definition and Classification

Chronic hypertension would logically be defined as some level of sustained resting blood pressure that is associated with acute or long-term adverse effects. Most consider 140/90 mm Hg as the upper limit of normal. In the United States, these values were derived primarily from life insurance actuarial tables constructed using data from white adult males. These "norms" disregard ethnicity, gender, and other covariants. The importance of race is emphasized by Kotchen (2018), who cites the incidence of hypertension—defined as blood pressure >140/90 mm Hg—to be 34 percent in blacks, 29 percent in whites, and 21 percent in Mexican Americans.

For many years, the Joint National Committee promulgated guidelines for diagnosis, classification, and management of chronic hypertension. Recently, a coalition led by the American College of Cardiology and the American Heart Association published criteria for the diagnosis of hypertension (Table 53-1) (Whelton, 2018).

TABLE 53-1. Criteria for Diagnosis of Hypertension

Blood Pressure (mm Hg)			Nonpregnant ACC/AHA	Pregnant ACOG
SBP		DBP		
<120	and	<80	Normal	Normal
120–129	and	<80	Elevated	Normal
130–139	or	80–89	Stage 1 HTN	Normal
140–159	or	≥90	Stage 2 HTN	Mild to moderate HTN
≥160	or	≥110	Stage 2 HTN	Severe HTN

ACC = American College of Cardiology; ACOG = American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists; AHA = American Heart Association; DBP = diastolic blood pressure; HTN = hypertension; SBP = systolic blood pressure.

Treatment and Benefits for Nonpregnant Adults

Chronic hypertension accounts for nearly 15 percent of deaths worldwide (Kotchen, 2018). Long term, hypertension raises substantively the risk of cardiovascular disease, coronary heart disease, congestive heart failure, stroke, renal failure, peripheral arterial disease, and mortality. These risks decline with treatment of otherwise normal adults who have sustained hypertension.

Based on these benefits, current guidelines recommend antihypertensive therapy for stage 1 hypertension in nonpregnant adults with risk factors for current or future cardiovascular disease. However, given the different diagnostic criteria in pregnancy (see Table 53-1), the best management for women being treated and contemplating pregnancy, for those undergoing treatment who become pregnant, or for those first identified to have chronic hypertension during pregnancy is unknown (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018a; August, 2015). In these women, the benefits and safety of instituting antihypertensive therapy are less clear, as subsequently discussed.

Preconceptional Counseling

Women with chronic hypertension ideally undergo counseling before pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018b). Initial questions ascertain hypertension duration, degree of blood pressure control, and current therapy. Home measurement devices are checked for accuracy. General health, daily activities, and dietary habits also are assessed (Table 53-2). Women who require multiple medications for control or who have poorly controlled pressures carry greater risk for adverse pregnancy outcomes. Patient counseling should disclose maternal and fetal risks, which are detailed in later sections (pp. 946 and 948).

For hypertensive women with disease exceeding 5 years or with comorbid diabetes, cardiovascular and renal function are assessed (August, 2015; Chahine, 2019). Renal function is evaluated by serum creatinine measurement and urine spot protein/creatinine ratio measurement. If the ratio is abnormally high (>0.3), proteinuria can be further quantified with a 24-hour urine collection (Kuper, 2016; Morgan, 2016a).

Women with evidence of organ dysfunction or those with prior adverse events such as a stroke, myocardial infarction, arrhythmias, or ventricular failure carry markedly higher risks for a recurrence or worsening dysfunction during pregnancy. Specific preconceptional guidance for these conditions is found in Chapters 63 (p. 1132) and 52 (p. 918), respectively. Although poorly controlled hypertension is considered a contraindication for pregnancy by some, there is no consensus. Women who maintain persistent systolic pressures ≥160 mm Hg or diastolic pressures ≥110 mm Hg despite therapy; require multiple antihypertensive agents; have a serum creatinine level >2 mg/dL; or have a history of prior stroke, myocardial infarction, or cardiac failure must be counseled regarding the marked risks to themselves and to their fetus. These are described in the next sections.

PREGNANCY CONSIDERATIONS

Diagnosis and Evaluation

Chronic hypertension is diagnosed if it precedes pregnancy or if it is identified before 20 weeks' gestation. Prior to this gestational age, preeclampsia is rarely seen (Chap 40, p. 690). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a, 2020) defines hypertension as a systolic pressure ≥140 mm Hg or a diastolic pressure ≥90 mm Hg (see Table 53-1). In suspected

TABLE 53-2. Lifestyle Modifications for Hypertensive Patients

Weight reduction: BMI ≤25 kg/m^2
Consume a dietary pattern that emphasizes intake of vegetables, fruits, and whole grains; includes low-fat dairy products, poultry, fish, legumes, nontropical vegetable oils, and nuts; and limits sweets and red meats. Examples are DASH, USDA Food Pattern, or the AHA Diet
Lower sodium intake: consume no more than 2400 mg/d; 1500 mg/d desirable
Engage in aerobic physical activity three to four sessions per week, lasting on average 40 minutes per session, and involving moderate- to vigorous-intensity physical activity
Moderation of alcohol consumption: ≤1 drink daily (none when pregnant)

AHA = American Heart Association; DASH = Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension; USDA = United States Department of Agriculture.
Summarized from Kotchen, 2018; Whelton, 2018.

cases of "white-coat" hypertension, serial ambulatory monitoring can be considered. In some women without overt chronic hypertension, a history of repeated pregnancies complicated by gestational hypertension, with or without preeclampsia, may be elicited. Either is a risk factor for latent chronic hypertension. This is especially true for prior preeclampsia and particularly for early-onset preeclampsia (van Eerden, 2018). In many ways, gestational hypertension is analogous to gestational diabetes. Women with the former have a *chronic hypertensive diathesis*, in which heredity and epigenetics play a major role.

Although uncommon, secondary causes of hypertension are always a possibility in affected women. Thus, chronic renal disease, obstructive sleep apnea, connective tissue disease, primary aldosteronism, Cushing syndrome, pheochromocytoma, and myriad other causes are considered during evaluation (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018a). That said, most pregnant women with antecedent hypertension will have otherwise uncomplicated disease. The hypertensive disorders that uniquely complicate pregnancy are discussed in Chapter 40.

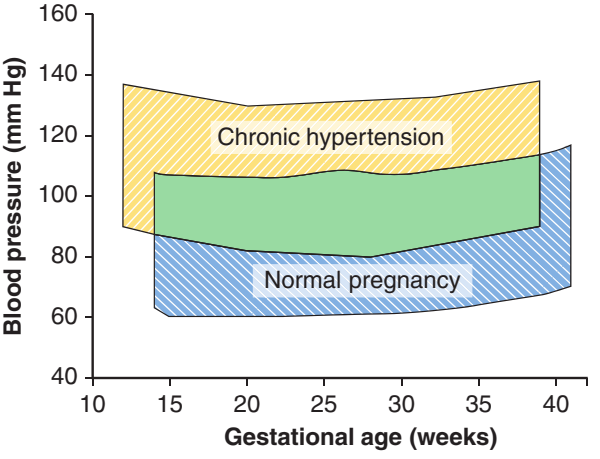


FIGURE 53-1 Mean systolic and diastolic blood pressures across pregnancy in 107 untreated chronically hypertensive women (*yellow*) compared with blood pressures across pregnancy in 4589 healthy nulliparas (*blue*). (Data from August, 2015; Levine, 1997; Sibai, 1990.)

■ Risk Factors

Several factors increase the likelihood that pregnant women will have chronic hypertension. Three of those most frequently cited are ethnicity, obesity, and diabetes. As previously noted, black women are more commonly affected. Related to this, hundreds of blood pressure–related phenotypes and genomic regions have been identified (Ward, 2015). Obesity may raise the prevalence of chronic hypertension tenfold (Chap. 51, p. 904). In addition, obese women are more likely to develop superimposed preeclampsia (Ornaghi, 2018).

The *metabolic syndrome* is a clinical cluster that includes hypertension, high blood sugar, excess fat at the waist, and abnormal cholesterol or triglyceride levels. This constellation is a risk marker for superimposed preeclampsia and for persistent postpartum hypertension (Jeyabalan, 2015). Diabetes is also prevalent in chronically hypertensive women, and its interplay with obesity and preeclampsia is prominent (Leon, 2016). The most frequent comorbidities associated with chronic hypertension are pregestational diabetes—6.6 percent, thyroid disorders—4.1 percent, and collagen vascular disease—0.6 percent (Bateman, 2012).

■ Physiological Effects of Chronic Hypertension

Blood pressure decreases in the first trimester due to a 30-percent drop in systemic vascular resistance. In most women with chronic hypertension, this decline is followed by a rise in blood pressure during the third trimester (Fig. 53-1). Women with chronic hypertension have persistently elevated vascular resistance and possibly reduced intravascular volume expansion (Tihtonen, 2007). Moreover, in women with superimposed preeclampsia, arterial mechanical properties are most marked (Hibbard, 2015).

ADVERSE PREGNANCY EFFECTS

Chronic hypertension is associated with adverse maternal and perinatal outcomes listed in Table 53-3. Rates of these complications positively correlate with the severity and duration of prepregnancy hypertension. Elevated blood pressure defined by criteria in Table 53-1 may herald adverse outcomes similar to those in women with chronic hypertension defined by criteria of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (Keene, 2019; Sutton, 2018). Development of superimposed preeclampsia, particularly early-onset disease, is especially dangerous.

■ Maternal Morbidity and Mortality

Most women with satisfactorily controlled hypertension and no end-organ damage will do well in pregnancy. Complications are more likely with severe baseline hypertension and documented end-organ damage, especially ventricular hypertrophy and hypertensive glomerulosclerosis (Ambia, 2018, 2019; Morgan, 2016b). Women with chronic hypertension have higher rates of stroke, pulmonary edema, and renal failure (Gilbert, 2007; Zofkie, 2018). These observations were verified in the report from the Nationwide Patient Sample (Bateman, 2012).

TABLE 53-3. Some Adverse Effects of Chronic Hypertension on Maternal and Perinatal Outcomes

Maternal	Perinatal
Superimposed preeclampsia	Stillbirth
HELLP syndrome	Fetal-growth restriction
Placental abruption	Preterm delivery
Pulmonary edema	Neonatal death
Stroke	Neonatal morbidity
Acute kidney injury	Congenital anomalies
Heart failure	
Hypertensive cardiomyopathy	
Myocardial infarction	
Maternal death	

HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count.

In this study, hypertension complications included pulmonary edema—1.5 per 1000, stroke—2.7 per 1000, mechanical ventilation—3.8 per 1000, acute kidney injury—5.9 per 1000, and maternal mortality—0.4 per 1000. In another report, the maternal mortality rate was greater in women with severe hypertension (Akbar, 2019). Peripartum cardiomyopathy is another associated risk (Cunningham, 2019).

Dangerous blood pressure elevation can develop with chronic hypertension. Systolic pressure ≥160 mm Hg or diastolic pressure ≥110 mm Hg will rapidly cause renal or cardiopulmonary dysfunction or cerebral hemorrhage (Clark, 2012). In addition to hypertensive heart failure mentioned above, coronary artery and aortic dissection have been described (Faden, 2016; Weissman-Brenner, 2004). With superimposed preeclampsia or eclampsia, the maternal prognosis is poor unless the pregnancy is ended (Becker, 2018). Placental abruption is a common and serious complication (p. 946).

Chronic hypertension is associated with a fivefold higher risk for maternal death (Gilbert, 2007). In the United States from 2011 to 2013, hypertensive disorders, including chronic hypertension and preeclampsia syndrome, accounted for 7.4 percent of 2009 pregnancy-related deaths (Creanga, 2017). Undoubtedly related were other causes of death such as cardiovascular conditions—15.5 percent, cerebrovascular accidents—6.6 percent, and cardiomyopathy—11 percent. Moodley (2007) reported similar findings in 3406 maternal deaths from South Africa.

Superimposed Preeclampsia

The reported incidence of superimposed preeclampsia varies from 20 to 50 percent because it is not precisely defined (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018a, 2020; Bramham, 2016; Moussa, 2017). In a Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units Network trial, superimposed preeclampsia was diagnosed in 25 percent of hypertensive gravidas (Caritis, 1998). August and colleagues (2015) hypothesize that this predilection may stem from similar genetic, biochemical, and metabolic abnormalities.

The risk for superimposed preeclampsia positively correlates with the severity of baseline hypertension and the need for antihypertensive therapy (Ankumah, 2014; Morgan, 2016a). Preliminary observations indicate that pregnant women with initial blood pressures ≥130/80 mm Hg early in pregnancy have excessive rates of preeclampsia (Greiner, 2020; Keene, 2019; Roman, 2020). Moreover, compared with women who do not develop preeclampsia, these pressures nadir earlier in gestation (Fig. 53-2) (Morgan, 2016a). The preeclampsia risk is even greater if end-organ damage, such as baseline proteinuria, is present.

Prediction

Thus far, individual predictive tests for superimposed preeclampsia have been disappointing (Conde-Agudelo, 2015; Correa, 2016). First-trimester serum markers used for aneuploidy screening are one group (Chap. 17, p. 338). Of these, inhibin A levels are reduced in patients destined to develop preeclampsia, but its low sensitivity makes it clinically unuseful (Sibai, 2008; Zeeman, 2003). Similarly, maternal serum pregnancy-associated plasma protein-A (PAPP-A) levels are decreased in the first trimester of pregnancies that are later complicated by preeclampsia (Tan, 2018). Of angiogenic and antiangiogenic factors, low plasma levels of placental growth factor (PlGF) and high levels of soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase-1 (sFlt-1) have been associated with superimposed preeclampsia development (Binder 2020; Nzelu, 2020). Last, the umbilical artery pulsatility index appears to be elevated in the first trimester of these pregnancies (O'Gorman, 2016). Combining all these factors may be useful in predicting superimposed preeclampsia (O'Gorman, 2016; Stepan, 2020).

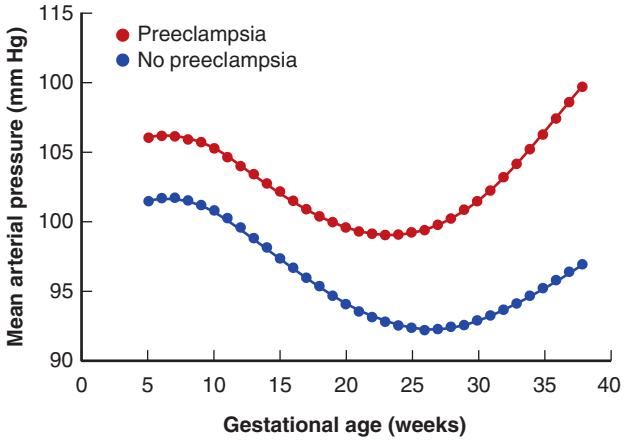


FIGURE 53-2 Blood pressure trends in treated, chronically hypertensive women with and without superimposed preeclampsia. Mean maternal pressures (MAPs) at entry ($p = 0.002$) and throughout gestation ($p < 0.001$) are significantly different for each group. MAP nadir at 23.3 weeks (95% CI, 22.5–24.1) for superimposed preeclampsia versus 26.4 weeks (95% CI, 22.5–27.6) for those without preeclampsia is significant (3.1 weeks, 95% CI, 2.3–4.3).

Prevention

Trials using various medications to prevent preeclampsia in women with chronic hypertension show little or no benefit. Low-dose aspirin has been evaluated most frequently (Mol, 2016; Staff, 2015). The U.S. Preventive Services Task Force concluded with "moderate certainty" that treatment with low-dose aspirin for chronically hypertensive women at high risk for preeclampsia is beneficial (Henderson, 2014). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a) subsequently recommended initiating 81 mg between 12 and 28 weeks' gestation and continuing therapy until delivery for these at-risk gravidas.

Antioxidants to prevent preeclampsia have been studied. Spinnato and coworkers (2007) randomly assigned 311 women with chronic hypertension to treatment with vitamins C and E or with a placebo. A similar number in both groups developed preeclampsia—17 versus 20 percent, respectively.

Placental Abruption

Chronic hypertension increases the risk two- to threefold for premature placental separation. This event's harms are detailed in Chapter 43 (p. 753). The general obstetrical population risk is 1 abruption in 200 to 300 pregnancies, and in women with

chronic hypertension, this rises to 1 in 60 to 120 pregnancies (Ankumah, 2014; Cruz, 2011; Magee, 2015). Most abruptions affect women with worsening hypertension or superimposed preeclampsia. Vigil-De Gracia and associates (2004) reported an 8.4-percent risk in women with severe hypertension.

Perinatal Morbidity and Mortality

Rates of almost all adverse perinatal outcomes are greater in women with chronic hypertension than in normotensive gravidas. Those who develop preeclampsia have substantially higher adverse outcome rates. As shown in Figure 53-3, adverse outcome rates rise incrementally with increasing blood pressures (Ankumah, 2014). There is evidence to suggest that chronic hypertension—treated or untreated—is associated with congenital anomalies (Battarbee, 2020). Data from untreated women help tease away drug effects on organogenesis. Bateman and coworkers (2015) found an odds ratio of 1.5 for cardiac defects. A systematic review noted a comparable risk ratio of 1.4 (Ramakrishnan, 2015). From one large birth defect study, five cases of fetal esophageal atresia were found in those with untreated hypertension and yielded an adjusted odds ratio of 3.2 (van Gelder, 2015).

The stillbirth frequency with chronic hypertension is substantively greater, and common etiologies include superimposed severe preeclampsia, abruption, and fetal-growth restriction. Rates range from 15 to 24 deaths per 1000 births (Ahmad, 2012; Ankumah, 2014; Bateman, 2012). Low-birthweight neonates also are common and result from fetal-growth restriction, indicated preterm delivery, or both (see Fig. 53-3).

The incidence of fetal-growth restriction averages 20 percent. Zetterström and colleagues (2006) reported a 2.5-fold risk for fetal-growth restriction in 2754 chronically hypertensive Swedish women compared with the risk in normotensive gravidas. Another study of 1609 Dutch nulliparas showed a 1.3-fold greater risk (Broekhuijsen, 2012). As with other complications, fetal-growth dysfunction is more likely in those who develop superimposed preeclampsia. In one study, the incidence of growth-restricted fetuses born to women with superimposed preeclampsia was almost 50 percent compared with only 21 percent in chronically hypertensive women without preeclampsia

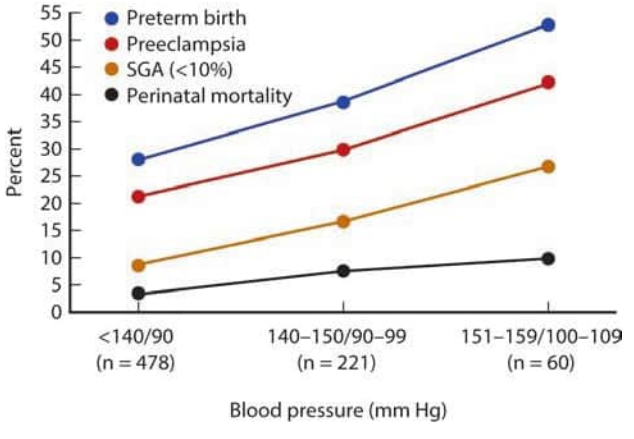


FIGURE 53-3 Frequency of selected adverse maternal and perinatal outcomes by blood pressure stratification in women with mild chronic hypertension. SGA = small for gestational age.

(Chappell, 2008). Last, women with chronic hypertension severe enough to warrant treatment had an 11-percent incidence of fetal-growth restriction sufficiently severe to yield birthweights ≤3rd percentile (Morgan, 2016a). Thus, neonates born to these women have a correspondingly high rate of intensive-care unit (ICU) admission.

All of these adverse perinatal effects of chronic hypertension contribute to the greater perinatal mortality rate, which is two- to fourfold higher than the rate in nonaffected gravidas (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018a). Stratified by severity, the perinatal death rate was 31 per 1000 births in those with mild hypertension, 72 per 1000 births with moderate disease, and 100 per 1000 births in women with severe chronic hypertension (Ankumah, 2014). In a study from Parkland Hospital, the perinatal mortality rate was 32 per 1000 births in women with hypertension severe enough to require treatment (Morgan, 2016a). As expected, the highest rates are in women who develop superimposed preeclampsia, for whom the risk doubles (Al Khalaf, 2021; Grover, 2021).

If diabetes coexists with chronic hypertension, preterm delivery, fetal-growth restriction, and perinatal mortality rates are increased even more (Yanit, 2012). Last, children born to women with chronic hypertension have long-term endocrine and metabolic morbidities, specifically obesity (Imterat, 2020). This epigenetic effect of hypertension and of other maternal chronic diseases is detailed in Chapter 47 (p. 831).

MANAGEMENT DURING PREGNANCY

Chronic hypertension management aims to prevent moderate or severe hypertension, to delay or dampen superimposed preeclampsia, and to reduce rates of adverse maternal or perinatal outcomes. Blood pressure self-monitoring is encouraged, but for accuracy, automated devices must be properly calibrated (Whelton, 2018). Dietary counseling and reduction of behaviors such as tobacco, alcohol, cocaine, or other substance use serve as early interventions. A low-sodium diet and low-dose aspirin are others (Battarbee, 2020; Chaemsaithong, 2020). Last, pharmacologic therapy is instituted to maintain blood pressures within suitable ranges, which are outlined later (p. 951).

Some women—especially those with long-term or untreated hypertension—have complications that raise the risk of adverse pregnancy events. Concentric ventricular hypertrophy and proteinuria are concerns in these women. (Ambia, 2017, 2019; Kim, 2016; Morgan, 2016a,b). Thus, early in prenatal care, cardiovascular and renal baseline functions are assessed with echocardiogram and a 24-hour urine collection for protein measurement.

Antihypertensive Drugs

Treatment of hypertension during pregnancy has included every drug class, but information is still limited regarding safety and efficacy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists 2013, 2018a). Some commonly used drugs are listed in Table 53-4 and the following summary is abstracted from several sources, including the 2020 Prescribers' Digital Reference. Possible fetal effects of many of these drugs are also discussed in Chapter 8.

TABLE 53-4. Some Antihypertensive Drugs Used for Treatment of Chronic Hypertension During Pregnancy[a]

Drug	Comment
Adrenergic-receptor agents[b]	
β-blockers: propranolol, metoprolol	Avoid with asthma, decompensated heart function
α/β-blocker: labetalol	
α-agonist: methyldopa	Less effective for severe hypertension; sedative side effects
Calcium-channel blocking agents[b]	
Nifedipine, amlodipine, verapamil	Avoid with tachycardia
Diuretic[c]	
Hydrochlorothiazide	Begin before 20 weeks' gestation
Vasodilating agent[c]	
Hydralazine	Hypertension complicated by cardiac or renal dysfunction; less effective with severe hypertension

[a]Drugs compatible with pregnancy (Briggs, 2022).
[b]First-line agents.
[c]Second-line agents.

Adrenergic Receptor–Blocking Agents

Peripherally acting β-adrenergic-receptor blockers cause a generalized decline in sympathetic tone and lower cardiac output. Examples are propranolol (Inderal) and metoprolol (Lopressor, Toprol). Atenolol is not recommended because of its link with fetal-growth restriction (Bello, 2021). Labetalol (Normodyne) is an α/β-adrenergic blocker that is considered safe. Clonidine (Catapres) and α-methyldopa (Aldomet) act *centrally* by reducing sympathetic outflow to effect a generalized decreased vascular tone. Drugs in this class most frequently used in pregnancy are methyldopa and labetalol (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018a).

Calcium Channel–Blocking Agents

These drugs are divided into three subclasses based on their calcium-channel actions. Common agents include nifedipine (Procardia, Adalat)—a dihydropyridine—and verapamil (Calan)—a phenylalkyl amine derivative. These agents have negative inotropic effects and thus worsen ventricular dysfunction and congestive heart failure. Theoretically, they may potentiate the vasoactive actions of magnesium sulfate administered for eclampsia neuroprophylaxis. Webster and coworkers (2017) found nifedipine equally effective as labetalol for treatment of chronic hypertension in pregnancy. However, those treated with nifedipine advantageously had less blood pressure variation than those treated with labetalol (Shawkat, 2018). Although data are limited, calcium channel–blocking agents appear to be safe therapy for chronic hypertension during pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018a; Briggs, 2022).

Diuretics

Thiazide diuretics are sulfonamides, and these were the first drug group used to successfully treat chronic hypertension. These agents and loop-acting diuretics such as furosemide (Lasix) are commonly used in nonpregnant patients. Short term, they provide sodium and water diuresis with volume depletion. Over time, there is *sodium escape,* and volume depletion partially corrects. Some aspect of lowered peripheral vascular resistance likely contributes to their effectiveness in reducing long-term morbidity (Umans, 2015).

Thiazide drugs may be mildly diabetogenic, and the normal expected volume expansion of pregnancy may be curtailed (Sibai, 1984). Although rates of adverse perinatal outcomes are not greater with diuretic use, concerns have curtailed diuretic use as first-line therapy for chronic hypertension in pregnancy and particularly after 20 weeks' gestation (Working Group Report, 2000). Overall, thiazide diuretics are considered safe in pregnancy (Briggs, 2022).

Vasodilators

Hydralazine (Apresoline) relaxes arterial smooth muscle and has been used parenterally for decades to safely treat severe peripartum hypertension (Chap. 41, p. 722). However, oral hydralazine monotherapy for chronic hypertension is not generally used because of its weak antihypertensive effects and resultant tachycardia. It is employed as an effective vasodilator adjunct for long-term use with other antihypertensives in women with chronic renal insufficiency or ventricular dysfunction.

Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme Inhibitors

These drugs inhibit the conversion of angiotensin-I to the potent vasoconstrictor angiotensin-II. They can cause severe fetal malformations when given in the second and third trimesters. These include oligohydramnios, hypocalvaria, and renal dysfunction (Chap. 8, p. 150). Some preliminary studies also suggest teratogenic effects (Hoeltzenbein, 2018). They are not recommended at any time during pregnancy (Briggs, 2022).

Angiotensin-receptor blockers act in a similar manner. However, instead of blocking the production of angiotensin-II, they inhibit binding to its receptor. They are presumed to have the same adverse fetal effects as angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors and also are contraindicated in pregnancy.

Antihypertensive Treatment in Pregnancy

Mild or Moderate Hypertension

Initiating or continuing prepregnancy antihypertensive treatment during pregnancy is debatable for women with mild or moderate hypertension (see Table 53-1). In older observational reports, most pregnancy outcomes were generally good in women with untreated mild to moderate hypertension. However, these studies were relatively small and had widely varying inclusion and outcome criteria. More recently, a Cochrane review of approximately 5000 women with mild to moderate hypertension reported that the risk for severe hypertension in these individuals with initially milder hypertension declined with therapy (Abalos, 2018). The frequencies of superimposed preeclampsia, preterm birth, small-for-gestational age newborns, and perinatal mortality, however, did not differ.

Lowering blood pressure can theoretically decrease uteroplacental perfusion and lead to small-for-gestational age neonates. von Dadelszen and coworkers (2000) found that the decline in mean arterial pressure associated with antihypertensive therapy was linked to a higher frequency of small-for-gestational age newborns. Other studies both confirm and refute these findings (Mitchell, 2019; Morgan, 2020). In two of the larger randomized trials, the incidence of growth restriction was not higher in women randomly assigned to treatment (Gruppo di Studio Ipertensione in Gravidanza, 1998; Sibai, 1990). Conversely, worsening blood pressure itself is associated with abnormal fetal growth. Also, some suggest that the drugs have a direct fetal action (Umans, 2015). Therefore, the question regarding treatment of mild to moderate chronic hypertension in pregnancy is yet to be resolved.

Severe Chronic Hypertension

As classified by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a), severe hypertension includes a systolic pressure ≥160 mm Hg or a diastolic pressure ≥110 mm Hg. Treatment should be initiated for persistent severe hypertension to reduce maternal morbidity and mortality risks (Akbar, 2019). In women with cardiovascular or renal end-organ damage, treatment may be instituted at systolic pressures ≥140 to 150 mm Hg or diastolic pressures ≥90 to 100 mm Hg in an attempt to mitigate further damage.

Women whose hypertension is severe enough to require antihypertensive therapy or cause end-organ damage carry an increased risk for superimposed preeclampsia. In an older study, Sibai and coworkers (1986) described outcomes from 44 pregnancies in women whose blood pressure at 6 to 11 weeks' gestation was ≥170/110 mm Hg. All were given oral treatment with α-methyldopa and hydralazine to maintain pressures <160/110 mm Hg. Half of these women developed superimposed preeclampsia, and all adverse perinatal outcomes were in this group. Conversely, those women with severe chronic hypertension who did not develop superimposed preeclampsia had reasonably good outcomes. Morgan and colleagues (2016a) confirmed these findings in their study of 447 women requiring treatment for chronic hypertension prior to 20 weeks.

Cardiac abnormalities and renal insufficiency resulting from uncontrolled hypertension raise the risk for adverse pregnancy outcomes. Women with baseline proteinuria >300 mg/d have higher rates of superimposed preeclampsia, preterm birth, and small-for-gestational age neonates compared with those whose 24-hour protein excretion is <300 mg/d (Table 53-5) (Morgan, 2016b). Abnormal cardiac remodeling and left ventricular hypertrophy also are associated with superimposed preeclampsia, preterm birth, and neonatal ICU admission (Ambia, 2018, 2019).

"Tight Control"

During the past decade, the concept of *tight control* of blood pressure has been advocated to optimize maternal and perinatal outcomes. Such control is analogous to that of glycemic control for diabetes management. The observational study by

TABLE 53-5. Selected Pregnancy Outcomes in Women with Chronic Hypertension with and without Baseline Proteinuria[a] and Who Were Treated During Pregnancy

Outcome	Baseline Proteinuria[a]	No Proteinuria	*p* value
Superimposed preeclampsia	79%	49%	<0.001
Abruption	0	1%	0.45
EGA at delivery (mean)[b]	35.1 ± 4.3 wk	37.2 ± 3.3 wk	<0.001
≤30 weeks	18%	6%	0.001
≤34 weeks	34%	17%	0.005
≤37 weeks	48%	26%	0.002
Birthweight (mean)[b]	2379 ± 1028 g	2814 ± 807 g	<0.001
≤3rd percentile	20%	9%	0.01
≤10th percentile	41%	22%	<0.001
Perinatal mortality	36/1000	31/1000	0.47

[a]Defined as ≥300 mg/d protein excretion before 20 weeks' gestation.
[b]Mean ± standard deviations.
EGA = estimated gestational age.

Ankumah and colleagues (2014) noted earlier lends credence to tighter blood pressure control. They showed that the adverse pregnancy outcome risk was lower when blood pressures before 20 weeks' gestation were <140 mm Hg compared with higher-pressure categories and increasing blood pressures.

Unfortunately, those observations were not confirmed. Magee and associates (2015) randomized 987 women to either less-tight or tight control of hypertension. Except for a lower rate of severe hypertension in the tightly controlled group, other outcomes between these two groups did not differ (Table 53-6). Analyzing the same cohort, no gestational age was identified at which tight control was preferable (Pels, 2018). A systematic review reported similar results (Panaitesc, 2017). At this time, no proven benefits or risks are attributed to "tight"—target diastolic pressure <85 mm Hg—versus "less-tight"—target diastolic pressure <100 mm Hg—control of chronic hypertension during pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a). A randomized trial—Project CHAP—is ongoing to help address this question (U.S. National Library of Medicine, 2020).

Recommendations for Therapy

Until the treatment of uncomplicated mild to moderate chronic hypertension in pregnancy is confirmed to have benefits, it seems reasonable to follow the guidelines of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a) and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2015). Thus, pregnant women with *severe hypertension* must be treated for maternal neuro-, cardio-, and renoprotection. Treatment is also mandatory for women with prior adverse outcomes such as a stroke, myocardial infarction, and evidence for cardiac or renal dysfunction.

Many find it reasonable to begin antihypertensive treatment in otherwise healthy pregnant women with persistent systolic pressures >150 mm Hg or diastolic pressures >95 to 100 mm Hg (August, 2015; Webster, 2017). Drugs commonly used are listed in Table 53-4. At Parkland Hospital, we initiate treatment with antihypertensive agents at blood pressures ≥150/100 mm Hg. Our preferred regimens include monotherapy with a β-blocking drug such as labetalol or a calcium channel–blocking agent such as nifedipine or amlodipine (Norvasc). Adjunct therapy with a thiazide diuretic seems reasonable for women in the first half of pregnancy. This is more beneficial in black women, in whom the prevalence of salt-sensitive chronic hypertension is high.

Controversy surrounds women who present early in pregnancy and who are already taking antihypertensive drugs (Rezk, 2016). According to the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a) and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2015), for women with mild to moderate hypertension, it is *reasonable* to discontinue medications during the first trimester and to restart them if blood pressures approach the severe range. At Parkland Hospital, we continue treatment if the woman is already taking medications when she presents for prenatal care. As exceptions, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors and angiotensin-receptor blockers are stopped.

Some women will have persistently worrisome hypertension despite usual therapy. In these women, development of superimposed preeclampsia becomes a primary concern and is detailed next. Other possibilities include inaccurate blood pressure measurements, suboptimal treatment, illicit drug use, and antagonizing substances such as chronic ingestion of nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) (Moser, 2006; Sowers, 2005).

TABLE 53-6. Selected Maternal and Perinatal Outcomes in Pregnant Women with Chronic Hypertension According to Less-Tight versus Tight Control

Outcome	Less-Tight Control	Tight Control
Maternal		
Placental abruption	2.2%	2.3%
Severe hypertension[a]	41%	28%
Preeclampsia	49%	46%
HELLP syndrome	1.8%	0.4%
Perinatal		
Deaths	28/1000	23/1000
Weight <10th percentile	16%	20%
Weight <3rd percentile	4.7%	5.3%
Respiratory problem	17%	14%

[a]p <0.001, all other comparisons p >0.05.
HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count.

Superimposed Preeclampsia

As discussed in Chapter 40 (p. 690), conditions that support the diagnosis of superimposed preeclampsia include worsening hypertension, new-onset proteinuria, neurological symptoms such as severe headaches and visual disturbances, generalized edema, oliguria, and certainly, convulsions or pulmonary edema. These same criteria apply to women with chronic hypertension.

However, preeclampsia can be difficult to diagnose in a chronically hypertensive woman. First, blood pressures may increase during pregnancy in women with chronic hypertension alone and without superimposed preeclampsia. This is most commonly encountered near the end of the second trimester. In the absence of other supporting criteria for superimposed preeclampsia, this likely represents the higher end of the normal blood-pressure curve shown in Figure 53-1. In such women, if preeclampsia is excluded, it is reasonable to begin or to increase the dose of antihypertensive therapy.

As a second diagnostic obstacle, many chronically hypertensive patients have preexisting end-organ damage and laboratory values that mimic preeclampsia. New-onset proteinuria is consistent with the diagnosis of superimposed preeclampsia. However, this is not applicable to women who have underlying renal disease with chronic proteinuria (Cunningham, 1990; Morgan, 2016b). In these women, diagnosing superimposed preeclampsia based on worsening proteinuria is problematic. Laboratory abnormalities that support preeclampsia include rising serum creatinine or hepatic transaminase levels, thrombocytopenia, or any of the facets of HELLP (hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count) syndrome. For women with chronic

hypertension and superimposed preeclampsia with severe features, magnesium sulfate for maternal neuroprophylaxis is recommended (Chap. 41, p. 719).

Expectant Management of Early-Onset Preeclampsia

Given that 40 to 50 percent of cases of superimposed preeclampsia develop early and before 37 weeks, considerations for expectant management to allow fetal maturation may be reasonable (Harper, 2016). However, most maternal outcomes are better when women with superimposed preeclampsia are delivered, even when the fetus is markedly preterm. Increased risk for placental abruption, cerebral hemorrhage, and peripartum heart failure attend delivery delays (Cunningham, 1986, 2005; Martin, 2005). And prolonged expectant management is associated with an increased risk of maternal cardiac disease in the ensuing years (Rosenbloom, 2020). In a study from Magee-Women's Hospital, 42 of 68 carefully selected women with a median gestational age of 31.6 weeks were expectantly managed (Samuel, 2011). Despite liberal criteria to mandate delivery, 17 percent of these mothers developed either placental abruption or pulmonary edema. The latency period was extended by a mean of 10 days. There were no perinatal deaths, however, neonatal outcomes were no better than those in the group delivered immediately. Women with superimposed preeclampsia before 34 weeks' gestation may be candidates for expectant management at facilities with adequate maternal and neonatal ICU resources (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018a). At Parkland Hospital, we pursue delivery when superimposed preeclampsia is diagnosed.

Fetal Assessment

Because of greater stillbirth and fetal-growth restriction risks, antepartum fetal surveillance is recommended for women with chronic hypertension. However, data are limited regarding which subpopulations with chronic hypertension benefit most. The ideal test, testing interval, and gestational age of initiation are other unknowns (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018a; Freeman, 2008).

All women with chronic hypertension should undergo a sonographic fetal-growth assessment in the third trimester. Additionally, Chahine and colleagues (2019) recommend that women with low-risk disease undergo weekly antepartum testing. They defined low-risk by four criteria: (1) women ≤35 years of age, (2) mild- to moderate-range blood pressures not requiring medication, (3) no prior hypertension-related adverse pregnancy outcomes, and (4) no end-organ damage. For antepartum testing, a nonstress test or a biophysical profile is suitable (Chap. 20, p. 392).

Women with high-risk disease fail to meet these four criteria. For them, sonography and antepartum testing are considered earlier, and the value of these tools to assess fetal-growth restriction is detailed in Chapter 47 (p. 830). One surveillance algorithm for suspected fetal-growth restriction is outlined in Figure 47-6 (p. 829).

Delivery Timing

For women with mild to moderate chronic hypertension who have an otherwise uncomplicated pregnancy, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a) recommends waiting for delivery until 37 to 38 weeks' gestation. Women taking antihypertensive drugs are not delivered before $37^{0/7}$ weeks, and those not receiving drug treatment are delivered no earlier than $38^{0/7}$ weeks. A nationally convened consensus committee recommended consideration for delivery at 38 to 39 weeks, that is, ≥37 completed weeks (Spong, 2011). A large population-based Canadian study showed similar results (Ram, 2018). Expectant management beyond 39 weeks' gestation is associated with an increasing incidence of severe preeclampsia, and planned delivery before 37 weeks was associated with a rise in rates of adverse neonatal outcomes (Harper, 206).

For women who have fetal-growth restriction, the decision to deliver incorporates clinical judgment. Maternal health is balanced against estimated fetal weight, gestational age, and chance of neonatal survival.

Intrapartum Considerations

For women with chronic hypertension, obstetrical factors dictate delivery route. Magnesium sulfate is not given unless there is superimposed severe preeclampsia. Epidural analgesia is ideal but does not substantively lower blood pressure. A trial of labor induction is preferable, and many of these women will deliver vaginally (Alexander, 1999; Atkinson, 1995). Similarly, for the growth-restricted fetus, delivery route is based on obstetrical factors. However, many fetuses with growth restriction exhibit nonreassuring fetal heart rate patterns and require cesarean delivery (McKinney, 2016).

For women with superimposed preeclampsia, intrapartum management mirrors that described in Chapter 41 (p. 719). These women may have a longer first-stage labor (Bregand-White, 2017). Epidural analgesia for labor and delivery is optimal, but it is not provided with the intent to treat hypertension (Lucas, 2001). That said, women with superimposed preeclampsia are more sensitive to the acute hypotensive effects of epidural analgesia (Vricella, 2012). Magnesium sulfate neuroprophylaxis is initiated for eclampsia prevention. Severe hypertension—diastolic blood pressure ≥110 mm Hg or systolic pressure ≥160 mm Hg—is treated with either intravenous hydralazine, intravenous labetalol, or oral nifedipine. Some prefer to treat women when the diastolic pressure reaches 100 to 105 mm Hg. Vigil-De Gracia and coworkers (2006) randomly assigned 200 gravidas to receive intravenous hydralazine or labetalol to acutely lower severe high blood pressure. Outcomes were similar except for significantly higher rates of maternal palpitations and tachycardia with hydralazine and significantly greater rates of neonatal hypotension and bradycardia with labetalol.

Postpartum Care

Prevention and management of adverse postpartum complications is similar in women with severe chronic hypertension and in those with severe preeclampsia–eclampsia. For persistent severe hypertension, consideration is given to causes such as pheochromocytoma or Cushing disease (Sibai, 2012). In women with chronic end-organ damage, certain complications

are more common. These include cerebral or pulmonary edema, heart failure, renal dysfunction, or cerebral hemorrhage, especially within the first 48 hours after delivery. These frequently are preceded by sudden elevations of mean arterial blood pressure, especially of the systolic component (Cunningham, 2000, 2005; Martin, 2005).

Following delivery, as maternal peripheral resistance rises, left ventricular workload also grows. This elevation is further aggravated by appreciable and pathological amounts of interstitial fluid that are mobilized to be excreted as endothelial disruption from preeclampsia resolves. In these women, sudden hypertension—either moderate or severe—may exacerbate diastolic dysfunction, cause systolic dysfunction, and lead to pulmonary edema (Cunningham, 1986; Gandhi, 2001). Prompt hypertension control, along with furosemide-evoked diuresis, usually quickly resolves pulmonary edema.

The antihypertensive regimen given antepartum may be continued in the puerperium. In untreated women, labetalol or nifedipine can also be used for persistent hypertension (Sharma, 2017). It also is possible in many women to forestall postpartum hypertension by administering intravenous or oral furosemide to augment normal postpartum diuresis. In one study, 20 mg oral furosemide given daily for 5 days to postpartum women with severe preeclampsia aided blood pressure control (Ascarelli, 2005). A recent randomized trial showed that daily furosemide decreased the need for antihypertensive therapy at hospital discharge (Perdigao, 2020). Daily weights are helpful in this regard. On average, a woman should weigh 15 pounds less immediately after delivery. Excessive extracellular fluid can then be estimated by comparing her last prenatal weight plus 15 pounds against the puerpera's current weight.

Some evidence supports that *chronic* ingestion of NSAIDs in the puerperium elevates blood pressure in women with severe preeclampsia (Vigil-De Gracia, 2017). This may not be problematic if these drugs are given only intermittently and as needed (Blue, 2018). Postpartum admission rates for severe hypertension approximate 1.5 percent (Chornock, 2021).

Discussion of postpartum contraception may begin prior to delivery. As described in Chapter 38 (p. 672), certain methods are less ideal or contraindicated for some women with chronic hypertension. Moreover, for puerpera at highest risk for future pregnancy complications, the Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine (2019) encourages immediate postpartum long-acting reversible contraceptive (LARC) insertion for suitable candidates.

Long-Term Prognosis

Women with chronic hypertension are at high risk for lifetime cardiovascular complications, especially when accompanied by diabetes, obesity, and the metabolic syndrome. Persistent hypertension 3 years after severe preeclampsia was associated with a thicker left-ventricular septum compared with women who became normotensive (Vaught, 2019). The lifetime cardiovascular morbidity and mortality risks associated with hypertensive disorders of pregnancy are discussed in Chapter 41 (p. 726) (Wu, 2021).

REFERENCES

Abalos E, Duley L, Steyn DW, et al: Antihypertensive drug therapy for mild to moderate hypertension during pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD002252, 2014

Ahmad AS, Samuelsen SO: Hypertensive disorders in pregnancy and fetal death at different gestational lengths: a population study of 2 121 371 pregnancies. BJOG 119(12):1521, 2012

Akbar MA, Adibrata MA, Aditiawarman, et al: Maternal and perinatal outcome related to severity of chronic hypertension in pregnancy. Pregnancy Hypertens 16:154, 2019

Alexander JM, Bloom SL, McIntire DD, et al: Severe preeclampsia and the very low birth weight infant: is induction of labor harmful?. Obstet Gynecol 93:485, 1999

Al Khalaf SY, O'Reilly EJ, Barrett FM, et al: Impact of chronic hypertension and antihypertensive treatment on adverse perinatal outcomes: systematic review and meta-analysis. J Am Heart Assoc 10(9):e018494, 2021

Ambia AM, Morgan JL, Wells CE, et al: Perinatal outcomes associated with abnormal cardiac remodeling in women with treated chronic hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218(5):519.e1, 2018

Ambia AM, Morgan JL, Wilson KL, et al: Frequency and consequences of ventricular hypertrophy in pregnant women with treated chronic hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217:467.e1, 2017

Ambia AM, Nelson DB, Morgan JL, et al: Maternal interventricular septum thickness and association with perinatal outcomes. Abstract No. 827. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218:S539, 2019

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Chronic hypertension in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 203, December 2018a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Pregnancy counseling. Committee Opinion No. 762, December 2018b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Gestational hypertension and preeclampsia. Practice Bulletin No. 220, 2020

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Task Force on Hypertension in Pregnancy: Chronic hypertension in pregnancy and superimposed preeclampsia. In: Hypertension in Pregnancy. Report of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' Task Force on Hypertension in Pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 122(5):1122, 2013

Ananth CV, Duzyj CM, Yadava S, et al: Changes in the prevalence of chronic hypertension in pregnancy, United States, 1970 to 2010. Hypertension 74(5):1089, 2019

Ankumah NA, Cantu J, Jauk V, et al: Risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes in women with mild chronic hypertension before 20 weeks of gestation. Obstet Gynecol 123(5):966, 2014

Ascarelli MH, Johnson V, McCreary H, et al: Postpartum preeclampsia management with furosemide: a randomized clinical trial. Obstet Gynecol 105(1):29, 2005

Atkinson MW, Guinn D, Owen J, et al: Does magnesium sulfate affect the length of labor induction in women with pregnancy-associated hypertension? Am J Obstet Gynecol 173(4):1219, 1995

August P, Jeyabalan A, Roberts JM: Chronic hypertension and pregnancy. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG, et al (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Bateman BT, Bansil P, Hernandez-Diaz S, et al: Prevalence, trends, and outcomes of chronic hypertension: a nationwide sample of delivery admissions. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(2):134.e1, 2012

Bateman BT, Huybrechts KF, Fischer MA, et al: Chronic hypertension in pregnancy and the risk of congenital malformations: a cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212:337.e1, 2015

Battarbee AN, Sinkey RG, Harper LM, et al: Chronic hypertension in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:532, 2020

Becker DA, Machemehl HC, Biggio JR, et al: Pregnancy outcomes of exacerbated chronic hypertension compared with superimposed preeclampsia. Am J Perinatol 36(8):872, 2019

Bellos I, Pergialiotis V, Papapanagiotou A, et al: Comparative efficacy and safety of oral antihypertensive agents in pregnant women with chronic hypertension: a network metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 225:525, 2021

Binder J, Kalafat E, Palmrich P, et al: Angiogenic markers and their longitudinal change for predicting adverse outcomes in pregnant women with chronic hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 225:305, 2020

Blue NR, Murray-Krezan C, Drake-Lavelle S, et al: Effect of ibuprofen vs acetaminophen on postpartum hypertension in preeclampsia with severe features: a double-masked, randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218:616e.1, 2018

Bramham K, Hladunewich MA, Jim B, et al: Pregnancy and kidney disease. NephSAP Nephrology Assessment Program 15(2):1, 2016

Bregand-White JM, Kominiarek MA, Hibbard JU: Hypertension and patterns of induced labor at term. Pregnancy Hypertens 10:57, 2017

Briggs GG, Towers CV, Forinash AB: Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation, 12th ed. Philadelphia, Wolters Kluwer, 2022

Broekhuijsen K, Langeveld J, van den Berg P, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes in pregnancy in women with chronic hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206:S344, 2012

Caritis S, Sibai B, Hauth J, et al: Low-dose aspirin to prevent preeclampsia in women at high risk. N Engl J Med 338(11):701, 1998

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Hypertensive prevalence among adults: United States 2015–2016. NCHS Data Brief No. 289, October 2017

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Vital signs: prevalence, treatment, and control of hypertension—United States, 1999–2002 and 2005–2008. MMWR 60(4):1, 2011

Chaemsaithong P, Cuenca-Gomez D, Plana MN, et at: Does low-dose aspirin initiated before 11 weeks' gestation reduce the rate of preeclampsia? Am J Obstet Gynecol 220:437, 2020

Chahine KM, Sibai BM: Chronic hypertension in pregnancy: new concepts for classification and management. Am J Perinatol 36:161, 2019

Chappell LC, Enye S, Seed P, et al: Adverse perinatal outcomes and risk factors for preeclampsia in women with chronic hypertension: a prospective study. Hypertension 51(4):1002, 2008

Chornock R, Iqbal N, Kawakita T: Racial disparity in postpartum readmission due to hypertension among women with pregnancy-associated hypertension. Am J Perinatol 38:1297, 2021

Clark SL, Hankins GD: Preventing maternal death. 10 clinical diamonds. Obstet Gynecol 119(2):360, 2012

Conde-Agudelo A, Romero R, Roberts JM: Tests to predict preeclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG, et al (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Correa PJ, Palmeiro Y, Soto MJ, et al: Etiogpathogenesis, prediction, and prevention of preeclampsia. Hypertens Pregnancy 35(3):280, 2016

Creanga AA, Syverson C, Seed K, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2011–2013. Obstet Gynecol 130(2):366, 2017

Cruz MO, Gao W, Hibbard JU: Obstetrical and perinatal outcomes among women with gestational hypertension, mild preeclampsia, and mild chronic hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205:260.e1, 2011

Cunningham FG: Severe preeclampsia and eclampsia: systolic hypertension is also important. Obstet Gynecol 105:237, 2005

Cunningham FG, Byrne JJ, Nelson DB: Peripartum cardiomyopathy. Obstet Gynecol 133(1):167, 2019

Cunningham FG, Cox SM, Harstad TW, et al: Chronic renal disease and pregnancy outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 163:453, 1990

Cunningham FG, Pritchard JA, Hankins GD, et al: Idiopathic cardiomyopathy or compounding cardiovascular events?. Obstet Gynecol 67:157, 1986

Cunningham FG, Twickler D: Cerebral edema complicating eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182(1):94, 2000

Faden MS, Bottega N, Benjamin A, et al: A nationwide evaluation of spontaneous coronary artery dissection in pregnancy and the puerperium. Heart 102(24):1974, 2016

Freeman RK: Antepartum testing in patients with hypertensive disorders in pregnancy. Semin Perinatol 32(4):271, 2008

Gandhi SK, Powers JC, Nomeir A, et al: The pathogenesis of acute pulmonary edema associated with hypertension. N Engl J Med 344(1):17, 2001

Gilbert WM, Young AL, Danielsen B: Pregnancy-outcomes in women with chronic hypertension: a population-based study. J Reprod Med 52(11):1046, 2007

Greiner K, Speranza R, Rincon M, et al: Stage 1 hypertension and association with adverse outcomes in women with hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. Abstract No. 703. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:S445, 2020

Grover S, Brandt JS, Reddy UM, et al: Chronic hypertension, perinatal mortality and the impact of preterm delivery: a population-based study. BJOG September 18, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Gruppo di Studio Ipertensione in Gravidanza: Nifedipine versus expectant management in mild to moderate hypertension in pregnancy. BJOG 105(7):718, 1998

Harper LM, Biggio JR, Anderson S, et al: Gestational age of delivery in pregnancies complicated by chronic hypertension. Obstet Gynecol 127(6):1101, 2016

Henderson JT, Whitlock EP, O'Connor E, et al: Low-dose aspirin for prevention of morbidity and mortality from preeclampsia: a systematic evidence review for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Ann Intern Med 160(10):695, 2014

Hibbard JU, Shroff SG, Cunningham FG: Cardiovascular alterations in pregnancy and preeclamptic pregnancy. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG, et al (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Hoeltzenbein M, Tissen-Diabaté T, Fietz AK, et al: Increased rate of birth defects after first trimester use of angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors—treatment of hypertension related? An observational cohort study. Hypertens 13:65, 2018

Imterat M, Wainstock T, Landau D, et al: Maternal chronic hypertension elevates the risk for long-term selected endocrine and metabolic morbidity in the offspring, particularly childhood obesity. Child Obes 16(6):421, 2020

Jeyabalan A, Hubel CA, Roberts JM: Metabolic syndrome and preeclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG, et al (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Keene K, Morris EA, McBride CA, et al: Re-defining chronic hypertension in pregnancy. Abstract No. 452. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220:S304, 2019

Kim MJ, Seo J, Cho KI, et al: Echocardiographic assessment of structural and hemodynamic changes in hypertension-related pregnancy. J Cardiovasc Ultrasound 24:28, 2016

Kotchen TA: Hypertensive vascular disease. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 1890

Kuper SG, Tita AT, Youngstrom ML, et al: Baseline renal function tests and adverse outcomes in pregnant patients with chronic hypertension. Obstet Gynecol 128:93, 2016

Leon MG, Moussa HN, Longo M, et al: Rate of gestational diabetes mellitus and pregnancy outcomes in patients with chronic hypertension. Am J Perinatol 33(8):745, 2016

Levine RJ, Hauth JC, Curet LB, et al: Trial of calcium to prevent preeclampsia. N Engl J Med 337(2):69, 1997

Lucas MJ, Sharma SK, McIntire DD, et al: A randomized trial of labor analgesia in women with pregnancy-induced hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185(4):970, 2001

Magee LA, von Dadelszen P, Rey E, et al: Less-tight versus tight control of hypertension in pregnancy. N Engl J Med 372(5):407, 2015

Martin JN Jr, Thigpen BD, Moore RC, et al: Stroke and severe preeclampsia and eclampsia: a paradigm shift focusing on systolic blood pressure. Obstet Gynecol 105(2):246, 2005

McKinney D, Boyd H, Langager A, et al: The impact of fetal growth restriction on latency in the setting of expectant management of preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(3):395, 2016

Mitchell CJ, Tita A, Anderson SB, et al: Adverse outcomes with maternal blood pressure less than 140/90 in pregnancy complicated by hypertension. Am J Perinatol 36(13):1394, 2019

Mol BW, Roberts CT, Thangaratinam S, et al: Pre-eclampsia. Lancet 387(10022):999, 2016

Moodley J: Maternal deaths due to hypertensive disorders in pregnancy: Saving Mothers report 2002–2004. Cardiovasc J Afr 18:358, 2007

Morgan JA, McDaniel MS, Cormier CM: Chronic hypertension in pregnancy: are outcomes the same in patients who require antihypertensives? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med October 22, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]

Morgan JL, Nelson DB, Roberts SW, et al: Blood pressure profiles across pregnancy in women with chronic hypertension. Am J Perinatol 33(12):1128, 2016a

Morgan JL, Nelson DB, Roberts SW, et al: The association of baseline proteinuria and adverse pregnancy outcomes in pregnant women with treated chronic hypertension. Obstet Gynecol 128:270, 2016b

Moser M, Setaro JF: Resistant or difficult-to-control hypertension. N Engl J Med 355:385, 2006

Moussa HN, Leon MG, Marti A, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with preeclampsia superimposed on chronic hypertension with and without severe features. Am J Perinatol 34(4):403, 2017

Nzelu D, Biris D, Karampitsakos T, et al: First trimester serum angiogenic and anti-angiogenic factors in women with chronic hypertension for the prediction of preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(4):374, 2020

O'Gorman N, Wright D, Syngelaki A, et al: Competing risks model in screening for preeclampsia by maternal factors and biomarkers at 11–13 weeks gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(1):103, 2016

Ornaghi S, Algeri P, Todyrenchuk L, et al: Impact of excessive pre-pregnancy body mass index and abnormal gestational weight gain on pregnancy outcomes in women with chronic hypertension. Hypertens 12:90, 2018

Panaitescu AM, Roberge S, Nicolaides KH: Chronic hypertension: effect of blood pressure control on pregnancy outcome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(5):857, 2017

Pels A, Moi BW, Singer J, et al: Influence of gestational age at initiation of antihypertensive therapy: secondary analysis of CHIPS trial data (Control of Hypertension in Pregnancy Study). Hypertension 71(6):1170, 2018

Perdigao JL, Lewey J, Hirshberg A, et al: Furosemide for Accelerated Recovery of Blood Pressure Postpartum: a randomized placebo controlled trial (FoR BP). Abstract No. LB 4. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:S759, 2020

Ram M, Berger H, Geary M, et al: Timing of delivery in women with chronic hypertension. Obstet Gynecol 132(3):669, 2018

Ramakrishnan A, Lee LJ, Mitchell LE, et al: Maternal hypertension during pregnancy and the risk of congenital heart defects in offspring: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Pediatr Cardiol 36(7):1442, 2015

Rezk M, Eliakwa H, Gamal A, et al: Maternal and fetal morbidity following discontinuation of antihypertensive drugs in mild to moderate chronic hypertension: a 4-year observational study. Pregnancy Hypertens 6:291, 2016

Roman T, Martin E, Prewit EB, et al: Risk of preeclampsia in women diagnosed with hypertension using revised guidelines versus contemporary diagnostic criteria. Abstract No. 900. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:S559, 2020

Rosenbloom JI, Lewkowitz AK, Lindley AK, et al: Expectant management of hypertensive disorders of pregnancy and future cardiovascular morbidity. Obstet Gynecol 135:27, 2020

Samuel A, Lin C, Parviainen K, et al: Expectant management of preeclampsia superimposed on chronic hypertension. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 24(7):907, 2011

Sharma KJ, Greene N, Kilpatrick SJ: Oral labetalol compared to oral nifedipine for postpartum hypertension: a randomized controlled trial. Hypertens 36(1):44, 2017

Shawkat E, Mistry H, Chmiel C, et al: The effect of labetalol and nifedipine MR on blood pressure in women with chronic hypertension in pregnancy. Pregnancy Hypertens 11:92, 2018

Sibai BM: Etiology and management of postpartum hypertension-preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206(6):470, 2012

Sibai BM, Anderson GD: Pregnancy outcome of intensive therapy in severe hypertension in first trimester. Obstet Gynecol 67(4):517, 1986

Sibai BM, Grossman RA, Grossman HG: Effects of diuretics on plasma volume in pregnancies with long-term hypertension. Am J Obstet Gynecol 150(7):831, 1984

Sibai BM, Koch MA, Freire S, et al: Serum inhibin A and angiogenic factor levels in pregnancies with previous preeclampsia and/or chronic hypertension: are they useful markers for prediction of subsequent preeclampsia? Am J Obstet Gynecol 199(3):268.e1, 2008

Sibai BM, Mabie WC, Shamsa F, et al: A comparison of no medication versus methyldopa or labetalol in chronic hypertension during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 162(4):960, 1990

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: SMFM statement: benefit of antihypertensive therapy for mild-to-moderate chronic hypertension during pregnancy remains uncertain. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(1):3, 2015

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Vricella LK, Gawron LM, et al: Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM) Consult Series #48: Immediate postpartum long-acting reversible contraception for women at high-risk for medical complications. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(5):B2, 2019

Sowers JR, White WB, Pitt B, et al: The effects of cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory therapy on 24-hour blood pressure in patients with hypertension, osteoarthritis, and type 2 diabetes mellitus. Arch Intern Med 165(2):161, 2005

Spinnato JA 2nd, Freire S, Pinto E, Silva JL, et al: Antioxidant therapy to prevent preeclampsia: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 110(6):1311, 2007

Spong CY, Mercer BM, D'Alton M, et al: Timing of indicated late-preterm and early-term birth. Obstet Gynecol 118(2 Pt 1):323, 2011

Staff CA, Sibai BM, Cunningham FG: Prevention of preeclampsia and eclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG, et al (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Stepan H, Hund M, Andraczek T: Combining biomarkers to predict pregnancy complications and redefine preeclampsia: the angiogenic-placental syndrome. Hypertension 75(4):918, 2020

Sutton EF, Hauspurg A, Caritis SN, et al: Maternal outcomes with lower range stage 1 hypertension. Obstet Gynecol 132(4):843, 2018

Tan MY, Syngelaki A, Poon LC, et al: Screening for pre-eclampsia by maternal factors and biomarkers at 11–13 weeks' gestation. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 52(2):186, 2018

Tihtonen K, Kööbi T, Huhtala H, et al: Hemodynamic adaptation during pregnancy in chronic hypertension. Hypertens Pregnancy 26(3):315, 2007

Umans JG, Abalos E, Cunningham FG: Antihypertensive treatment. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG, et al (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

U.S. National Library of Medicine: Chronic Hypertension and Pregnancy (CHAP) Project (CHAP). 2020. Available at: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02299414. Accessed May 4, 2020

van Eerden L, de Groot CJ, Zeeman GG, et al: Subsequent pregnancy outcome after mid-trimester termination of pregnancy for preeclampsia. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 58(2):204, 2018

van Gelder MM, Van Bennekom CM, Louik C, et al: Maternal hypertensive disorders, antihypertensive medication use, and the risk of birth defects: a case control-study. BJOG 122(7):1002, 2015

Vaught AJ, Kovell LC, Vaidya D, et al: Echocardiographic markers aid in risk stratification with persistent hypertension after preeclamptic pregnancy, Abstract No. 429. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220:S290, 2019

Vigil-De Gracia P, Lasso M, Montufar-Rueda C: Perinatal outcome in women with severe chronic hypertension during the second half of pregnancy. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 85(2):139, 2004

Vigil-De Gracia P, Lasso M, Ruiz E, et al: Severe hypertension in pregnancy: hydralazine or labetalol a randomized clinical trial. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 128(1–2):157, 2006

Vigil-De Gracia P, Solis V, Ortega N: Ibuprofen versus acetaminophen as a post-partum analgesic for women with severe pre-eclampsia: randomized clinical study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(11):1279, 2017

von Dadelszen P, Ornstein MP, Bull SB, et al: Fall in mean arterial pressure and fetal growth restriction in pregnancy hypertension: a meta-analysis. Lancet 355(9198):87, 2000

Vricella LK, Louis JM, Mercer BM, et al: Epidural-associated hypotension is more common among severely preeclamptic patients in labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(4):335.e1, 2012

Ward K, Taylor RN: Genetic factors in the etiology of preeclampsia/eclampsia. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG, et al (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. Amsterdam, Academic Press, 2015

Webster LM, Myers JE, Nelson-Piercy C, et al: Labetalol versus nifedipine as antihypertensive treatment for chronic hypertension in pregnancy: a randomized controlled trial. Hypertension 70:915, 2017

Weissman-Brenner A, Schoen R, Divon MY: Aortic dissection in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 103:1110, 2004

Whelton PK, Carey RM, Aronow WS, et al: 2017 ACC/AHA/AAPA/ABC/ACPM/AGS/APhA/ASH/ASPC/NMA/PCNA guideline for the prevention, detection, evaluation, and management of high blood pressure in adults: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. J Am Coll Cardiol 71:e127, 2018

Working Group Report on High Blood Pressure in Pregnancy: Report of the National High Blood Pressure Education Program Working Group on High Blood Pressure in Pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:S1, 2000

Wu MY, Hu PJ, Wong CS, et al: Long-term clinical outcome of major adverse vascular events after hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 137:285, 2021

Yanit KE, Snowden JM, Cheng YW, et al: The impact of chronic hypertension and pregestational diabetes on pregnancy outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(4):333.e1, 2012

Zeeman GG, Alexander JM, McIntire DD, et al: Inhibin-A and superimposed preeclampsia in women with chronic hypertension. Obstet Gynecol 101(2):232, 2003

Zetterström K, Lindeberg SN, Haglund B, et al: Chronic hypertension as a risk factor for offspring to be born small for gestational age. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 85(9):1046, 2006

Zofkie A, Cunningham FG: 33-year single center experience with pregnancy-associated strokes. Abstract No. 799. Am J Obstet Gynecol 218:S476, 2018

CHAPTER 54

Pulmonary Disorders

During pregnancy, pulmonary disorders are frequently encountered. In one study, asthma and community-acquired pneumonia accounted for almost 10 percent of nonobstetrical antepartum hospitalizations (Gazmararian, 2002). Pregnant women, especially those in the last trimester, tolerate lung disease poorly because of important pregnancy-induced changes in ventilatory physiology (Han, 2018). Lung volumes and capacities are significantly altered. In turn, these shift gas concentrations and acid-base values in blood. These important and sometimes marked changes are reviewed in Chapter 4 (p. 66), and normal values for blood gas can be found in the Appendix (p. 1232). Some of these can be summarized as follows:

1. *Vital capacity* and *inspiratory capacity* increase by approximately 20 percent by late pregnancy.
2. *Expiratory reserve volume* declines from 1300 mL to approximately 1100 mL.
3. Progesterone-driven respiratory stimulation raises *tidal volume* approximately 40 percent.
4. *Minute ventilation* increases 30 to 40 percent due to higher tidal volume. As a result, arterial partial pressure of oxygen (Pao_2) rises from 100 to 105 mm Hg.
5. Expanded metabolic demands cause a 30-percent increase in *carbon dioxide (CO_2) production*. But, because of its concomitantly greater diffusion capacity and hyperventilation, the $Paco_2$ is reduced from 40 to 32 mm Hg.
6. *Residual volume* diminishes approximately 20 percent from 1500 mL to 1200 mL.
7. An expanding uterus and higher intraabdominal pressure lower *chest wall compliance* by one third. This causes a 10- to 25-percent reduction in *functional residual capacity*—the sum of expiratory reserve and residual volumes.

Beginning at 14 to 16 weeks' gestation *forced vital capacity* and *peak expiratory flow* progressively increase (Grindheim, 2012). The result of these pregnancy-induced changes is substantively greater ventilation due to deeper but not more frequent breathing. This is thought to be stimulated by basal oxygen consumption, which incrementally rises from 20 to 40 mL/min in the second half of pregnancy.

ASTHMA

Pathophysiology

Asthma is a chronic inflammatory airway syndrome with a major hereditary component. Polymorphism genes on chromosome 5q that include cytokine gene clusters, β-adrenergic and glucocorticoid receptor genes, and the T-cell antigen receptor gene are associated with greater airway responsiveness and persistent subacute inflammation (Barnes, 2018). Racial differences are seen, and morbidity rates are disproportionately higher in black compared with white women (Kodadhala,

2018). Asthma is etiologically and clinically heterogeneous, and an environmental allergic stimulant such as influenza or cigarette smoke serves as a promoter for susceptible individuals.

The hallmarks of asthma are reversible airway obstruction from bronchial smooth muscle contraction, vascular congestion, tenacious mucus, and mucosal edema. Stimuli cause acute infiltration of eosinophils, mast cells, and T lymphocytes. Inflammatory mediators produced by these and other cells include histamine, leukotrienes, prostaglandins, cytokines, immunoglobulin E (IgE), and many others. F-series prostaglandins and ergonovine exacerbate asthma, and these commonly used uterotonics are avoided if possible.

Clinical Course

Asthma manifestations range from mild wheezing to severe bronchoconstriction, which obstructs airways and decreases airflow. This lowers the forced expiratory volume in 1 second/forced vital capacity (FEV_1/FVC) ratio and the peak expiratory flow rate (PEFR). The work of breathing progressively increases, and patients note chest tightness, wheezing, or breathlessness. Subsequent worsening of oxygenation primarily reflects ventilation–perfusion mismatching. This results from an uneven distribution of airway narrowing.

Varied manifestations of asthma have led to a classification system that considers severity, onset, and duration of symptoms (Table 54-1). With persistent or worsening bronchial obstruction, clinical stages progress as shown in Figure 54-1. Hypoxia initially is mitigated by hyperventilation, which maintains the Pao_2 within a normal range but lowers $Paco_2$, creating respiratory alkalosis. As airway narrowing worsens, the degree of ventilation–perfusion defects is accentuated, and arterial hypoxemia ensues. With severe obstruction, fatigue causes early CO_2 retention and impairs ventilation. Because of hyperventilation, this may only be seen initially as the $Paco_2$ returning to the normal range. With continuing obstruction, respiratory failure follows.

These changes are generally reversible and well tolerated by the healthy nonpregnant individual. However, even early asthma stages may be dangerous for the pregnant woman and her fetus. This is because diminished functional residual capacity and greater pulmonary shunting render the gravida more susceptible to hypoxia and hypoxemia.

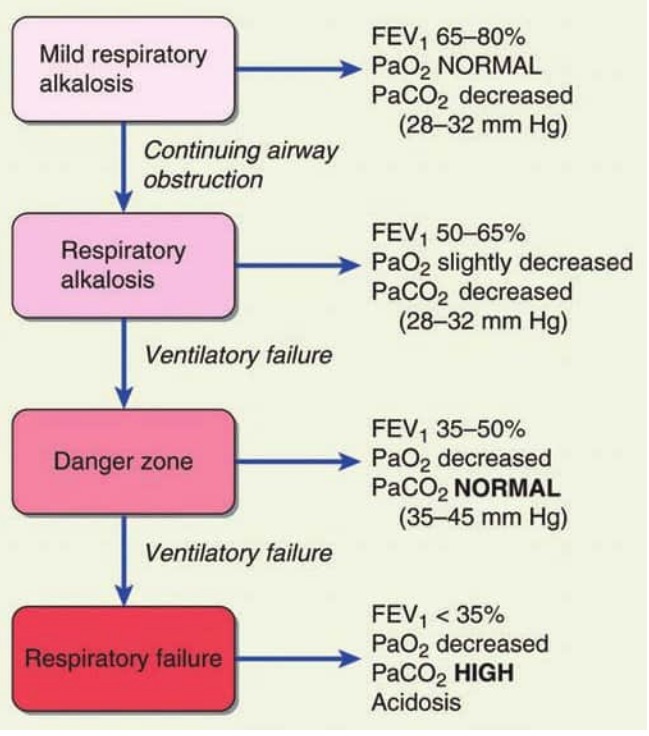


FIGURE 54-1 Clinical stages of asthma. FEV_1 = forced expiratory volume in 1 second.

Effects of Pregnancy on Asthma

Chronic asthma or an acute exacerbation affects up to 8 percent of gravidas (Baghlaf, 2019; Flores, 2020; Mazurek, 2018). Pulmonary function changes in pregnancy are more pronounced in asthmatics compared with healthy women (Zairina, 2015). Despite this, pregnancy has an unpredictable effect on underlying asthma. In a review of more than

TABLE 54-1. Classification of Asthma Severity

	Severity			
		Persistent		
Component	Intermittent	Mild	Moderate	Severe
Symptoms	≤2 d/wk	>2 d/wk, not daily	Daily	Throughout day
Nocturnal awakenings	≤2×/mo	3–4×/mo	>1×/wk, not nightly	Often 7×/wk
Short-acting β-agonist for symptoms	≤2 d/wk	≥2 d/wk, but not >1×/d	Daily	Several times daily
Interference with normal activity	None	Minor limitation	Some limitation	Extremely limited
Lung function	Normal between exacerbations			
FEV_1	>80% predicted	≥80% predicted	60–80% predicted	<60% predicted
FEV_1/FVC	Normal	Normal	Reduced 5%	Reduced >5%

FEV_1 = forced expiratory volume in 1 second; FVC = forced vital capacity.
From National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, 2007.

2000 gravidas, approximately a third each improved, remained unchanged, or clearly worsened (Gluck, 2006). Exacerbations are more common with severe disease (Ali, 2013). In a study by Schatz and associates (2003), baseline severity correlated with asthma morbidity during pregnancy. With mild disease, 13 percent of women had an exacerbation and 2.3 percent required admission; with moderate disease, these numbers were 26 and 7 percent; and for severe asthma, 52 and 27 percent. Others have reported similar findings (Charlton, 2013; Hendler, 2006).

Intrapartum exacerbation rates are controversial. In one study, 20 percent of women with mild or moderate asthma had an intrapartum exacerbation (Schatz, 2003). Mabie and coworkers (1992) reported an 18-fold greater exacerbation risk following cesarean versus vaginal delivery. Conversely, Wendel and colleagues (1996) reported exacerbations at the time of delivery in only 1 percent of asthmatics.

Pregnancy Outcome

Asthma remains a potential risk factor for worse pregnancy outcomes despite continued improvements in treatment. Data from two large studies are shown in Table 54-2. The incidences of small-for-gestational-age neonates and perinatal mortality also are significantly greater in women with asthma (Kemppainen, 2018). However, these findings are not consistent among all studies. A study of approximately 3000 pregnancies complicated by asthma showed higher rates of maternal pneumonia and cesarean delivery but not of perinatal mortality (Shaked, 2019). In a European report of 37,585 pregnancies of women with asthma, the risks for most obstetrical complications were not increased (Tata, 2007). Blais and associates (2013) noted that the incidence of spontaneous abortion may be slightly greater in women with asthma.

TABLE 54-2. Maternal and Perinatal Outcomes in Women with Asthma

Asthmatics[a]	Odds Ratio (95% CI)
Maternal outcomes	
Hemorrhage	1.09 (1.03–1.16)
Gestational diabetes	1.10 (1.03–1.19)
Chorioamnionitis	1.12 (1.09–1.15)
Preeclampsia	1.14 (1.06–1.22)
Placental abruption	1.22 (1.09–1.36)
Placenta previa	1.30 (1.08–1.56)
ICU admission	1.34 (1.04–1.72)
Pulmonary embolism	1.71 (1.05–2.79)
Perinatal outcomes	
SGA neonates	1.10 (1.05–1.16)
Preterm delivery	1.17 (1.12–1.23)
Preterm PROM	1.18 (1.07–1.30)
Anomalies	1.48 (1.04–2.09)

[a]Compared with outcomes in 206,468 nonasthmatic women.
CI = confidence interval; ICU = intensive care unit; PROM = premature rupture of membranes; SGA = small for gestational age.
Data from Baghlaf, 2019; Mendola, 2013, 2014.

Some evidence suggests that severe disease, poor control, or both is linked to higher morbidity rates. In a study by the Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units (MFMU) Network, delivery before 37 weeks' gestation was not more frequent in pregnancies of women with asthma compared with controls (Dombrowski, 2004). However, for women with severe asthma, the rate was approximately twofold higher. The MFMU Network study suggests also a direct relationship of baseline pregnancy FEV_1 with birthweight and an inverse relationship with rates of gestational hypertension and preterm delivery (Schatz, 2006). Kemppainen and coworkers (2018) found that women requiring treatment for asthma during pregnancy are at greater risk for adverse perinatal outcomes.

Maternal morbidity rises markedly with status asthmaticus and includes life-threatening complications such as muscle fatigue with respiratory arrest, pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum, acute cor pulmonale, and cardiac arrhythmias. Not surprisingly, maternal and perinatal mortality rates rise substantively when mechanical ventilation is required.

Fetal Effects

Animal and human studies suggest that development of maternal respiratory alkalosis leads to fetal hypoxemia well before the alkalosis compromises maternal oxygenation (Rolston, 1974). Theories hypothesize that the fetus is jeopardized by decreased uterine blood flow, reduced maternal venous return, and an alkaline-induced leftward shift of the oxyhemoglobin dissociation curve (Chap. 50, p. 886). The fetal response to maternal hypoxemia is lower umbilical blood flow, higher systemic and pulmonary vascular resistance, and decreased cardiac output. Several studies cited above confirm that fetal-growth restriction rates rise with asthma severity. Because the fetus may be seriously compromised, aggressive management is necessary. Monitoring the fetal response is, in effect, an indicator of maternal status. A return of moderate variability or accelerations in the fetal heart rate is an indicator of improving maternal oxygen status.

Possible teratogenic or adverse fetal effects of drugs given to control asthma are a concern. Several reports show a slightly greater risk for abnormalities such as cleft lip and palate and autism spectrum disorders, but further verification is necessary (Eltonsy, 2016; Gidaya, 2016; Murphy, 2013b; Wang, 2014). It is worrisome that up to half of women discontinue essential treatment between 5- and 13-weeks' gestation (Enriquez, 2006).

■ Clinical Evaluation

The subjective severity of asthma frequently does not correlate with objective measures of airway function or ventilation. Clinical examination also can be an inaccurate predictor, but useful signs include labored breathing, tachycardia, pulsus paradoxus, prolonged expiration, and use of accessory muscles. Signs of a potentially fatal exacerbation include central cyanosis and altered consciousness.

Pulmonary function testing should be routine in the management of asthma. Sequential measurement of the FEV_1 or of the PEFR is the best measure of severity (see Table 54-1).

An FEV_1 <1 L, or <20 percent of predicted value, correlates with severe disease defined by hypoxia, poor response to therapy, and a high relapse rate. The PEFR correlates well with the FEV_1, and it can be measured reliably with inexpensive portable meters. It is advantageous for each woman to determine her own baseline when asymptomatic to compare with values when symptomatic.

Management of Chronic Asthma

Asthma management by an experienced team produces better outcomes (Lim, 2014; Wendel, 1996). Management guidelines include:

1. Patient education about general asthma management and its effect on pregnancy (Bonham, 2018; Robijn, 2019).
2. Avoidance or control of precipitating environmental factors. Viral infections that include the common cold are frequent triggers (Ali, 2013; Murphy, 2013a). Influenza and pneumococcal vaccination is encouraged.
3. Objective assessment of pulmonary function with PEFR or FEV_1 and of fetal status with serial growth ultrasound and antepartum testing if indicated (Chap. 20, p. 392).
4. Pharmacological therapy with appropriate combinations and doses to provide baseline control and treat exacerbations. Periodic medication reviews are helpful to avoid noncompliance (Robijn, 2019).
5. Treatment of related disorders including smoking, depression, rhinitis, and gastroesophageal reflux (Bonham, 2018).

In general, women with moderate to severe asthma ideally measure and record either their FEV_1 or PEFR twice daily. The FEV_1 ideally is >80 percent of predicted. For PEFR, predicted values range from 380 to 550 L/min. Each woman has her own baseline value, and therapeutic adjustments can be made using this (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019). Another described method is a management algorithm using fractional exhaled nitric oxide (FeNO) as a noninvasive marker of airway inflammation (Powell, 2011). Asthma exacerbations were reduced by 50 percent with this approach (Clifton, 2019).

Agents for Chronic Treatment

Selection depends on disease severity. No therapeutic regimen for management of asthma in pregnancy is universally accepted (Bain, 2014). β-agonists help abate bronchospasm, and corticosteroids treat inflammation. Stepwise regimens recommended for outpatient management are listed in Figure 54-2.

For mild intermittent asthma, short-acting inhaled β-agonists as needed are usually sufficient. Table 54-3 lists suitable agents.

For persistent asthma, most inhaled corticosteroids (ICS) are administered twice daily. The goal is to reduce β-agonists use for symptomatic relief. Initial low-dose ICS may be augmented to medium-ranging dosing if the moderate or severe symptoms shown in Table 54-1 persist. A case-control study from Canada with a cohort of more than 15,600 nonpregnant women with asthma showed that ICS reduced hospitalizations by 80 percent (Blais, 1998). At Parkland Hospital, Wendel and colleagues (1996) achieved a 55-percent reduction in readmissions when severe exacerbations were treated with ICS. In one study of nonpregnant subjects with mild asthma, as-needed budesonide-formoterol, which is an aerosol ICS and β-agonist combination, was superior to albuterol alone to prevent exacerbations (Beasley, 2019). This is incorporated in new guidelines (Cloutier, 2020).

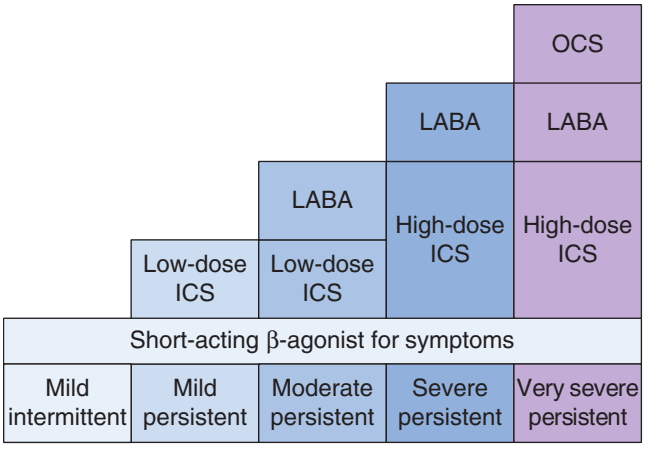


FIGURE 54-2 Stepwise approach to asthma treatment. ICS = inhaled corticosteroids; LABA = long-acting β-agonists; OCS = oral corticosteroids. (Barnes, 2018; National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, 2007.)

Theophylline has been used less frequently since ICS became available. Minimal benefit is gained with these compounds, and they have a high rate of side effects. However, some theophylline derivatives are considered useful for oral maintenance therapy if the initial response to ICS and β-agonists is not optimal (Barnes, 2018).

Of other agents, antileukotrienes inhibit leukotriene synthesis and include zileuton, zafirlukast, and montelukast. These drugs are given orally or by inhalation for prevention, but they are ineffective for acute disease (Barnes, 2018). For maintenance, they are used in conjunction with ICS to allow minimal corticosteroid dosing. Approximately half of individuals with asthma will improve with these drugs. However, they are less effective than ICS, and experience with their use in pregnancy is limited (Fanta, 2009). Last, cromones, which are mast cell degranulation inhibitors, are ineffective for acute asthma. They are used primarily to treat childhood asthma.

Vitamin D

Epidemiological data support an association between vitamin D insufficiency and asthma severity. The proposed mechanism is modulation of immunological pathways that diminish inflammatory responses (Pfeffer, 2018). Jensen and coworkers (2019) reported that pregnant women with asthma have low vitamin D levels. One systematic review suggested that increasing maternal vitamin D intake might prevent childhood asthma (Shi, 2021). Adams and colleagues (2021) reported an association between decreased maternal vitamin D levels and childhood wheezing. However, a randomized trial with antenatal vitamin D supplementation showed no lowering of childhood asthma risks at 6 years of age (Brustad, 2019).

TABLE 54-3. Chronic Asthma Treatment

Agent[a]	Brand Name	Available Doses per Puff	Dosage		
SABA Inhaler					
Albuterol	Proventil HFA, Ventolin HFA, ProAir HFA	90 μg	1-2 puffs every 4–6 hr		
Levalbuterol	Xopenex HFA	45 μg	1–2 puffs every 4–6 hr		
ICS Inhaler[b]			**Daily Corticosteroid Dosing**		
			Low	**Medium**	**High**
Beclomethasone HFA	QVAR	40, 80 μg	80–240 μg	>240–480 μg	>480 μg
Budesonide DPI	Pulmicort	90, 180, 200 μg	180–600 μg	>600–1200 μg	>1200 μg
Ciclesonide HFA	Alvesco	80, 160 μg	80–160 μg	>160–320 μg	>320 μg
Flunisolide HFA	Aerospan	80 μg	320 μg	>320–640 μg	>640 μg
Fluticasone furoate DPI	Arnuity Ellipta	100, 200 μg daily	100 μg	NA	200 μg
Fluticasone propionate DPI	Flovent Diskus	50, 100, 250 μg	100–300 μg	>300–500 μg	>500 μg
Fluticasone propionate HFA	Flovent HFA	44, 110, 220 μg	88–264 μg	>264–440 μg	>440 μg
Mometasone DPI	Asmanex	110, 220 μg	110–220 μg	330–440 μg	>440 μg
Mometasone HFA	Asmanex HFA	100, 200 μg	200 μg	400 μg	>400 μg
LABA /ICS Inhaler[b]					
Budesonide/formoterol	Symbicort	80/4.5, 160/4.5 μg	320/18 μg	>320/18–640/18 μg	>640/18 μg
Fluticasone/salmeterol DPI	Advair Diskus	100/50, 250/50, 500/50 μg	100/50–350/100 μg	350/100–500/100 μg	>500/50 μg
Fluticasone/salmeterol HFA	Advair HFA	45/21, 115/21, 230/21 μg	100/50–250/50 μg	300/50–500/50 μg	>500/50 μg
Fluticasone/salmeterol DPI	AirDuo Respiclick	55/14, 113/14, 232/14 μg	110/28 μg	226/28 μg	464/28 μg
Fluticasone/vilanterol	Breo Ellipta	100/25, 200/25 μg daily	100/25 μg	NA	200/25 μg
Mometasone/formoterol	Dulera	110/5, 200/5 μg	NA	400/20 μg	800/20 μg

[a]Agents in each group are arranged alphabetically.
[b]Twice daily dosing unless otherwise stated.
DPI = dry powder inhaler; HFA = hydrofluoroalkane (an aerosol propellant); hr = hour; ICS = inhaled corticosteroid; LABA = long-acting beta agonist; NA = not applicable; SABA = short-acting beta agonist.
American Academy of Allergy Asthma & Immunology, 2020; National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, 2007; Therapeutic Research Center, 2017.

Management of Acute Asthma

Early Treatment

Treatment of acute asthma during pregnancy is similar to that for the nonpregnant patient (Figure 54-3). Importantly, the threshold for hospitalization is significantly lower. Intravenous (IV) hydration may help clear pulmonary secretions, and supplemental oxygen is given by mask. The therapeutic aim is to maintain the Pao_2 >60 mm Hg, and preferably normal, along with 90- to 95-percent oxygen saturation. Baseline pulmonary function testing includes FEV_1 or PEFR. Continuous pulse oximetry and electronic fetal monitoring, depending on gestational age, may provide useful information. Arterial blood gas analysis aides in assessing the severity of an acute attack by providing objective assessment of maternal oxygenation, ventilation, and acid-base status (see Fig. 54-1). However, Wendel and associates (1996) found that *routine* arterial blood gas analysis did not help to manage most pregnant women who required admission for asthma control. If used, the results must be interpreted in relation to normal values for pregnancy. For example, a $Paco_2$ >35 mm Hg with a pH <7.35 is consistent with hyperventilation and CO_2 retention in a pregnant woman. Antibiotics are not given unless pneumonitis is comorbid (p. 962) (Terraneo, 2014).

First-line therapy for acute asthma includes a short-acting β-adrenergic agonist, such as terbutaline, albuterol, isoetharine, epinephrine, isoproterenol, or metaproterenol, which are given subcutaneously, taken orally, or inhaled. In severely ill women, these drugs can be given intravenously (Barnes, 2018).

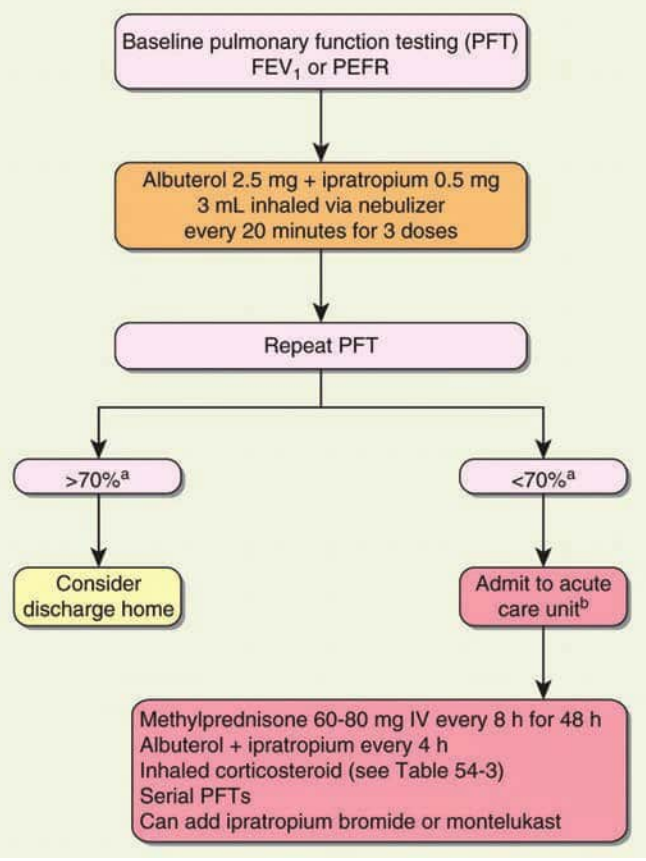


FIGURE 54-3 Protocol for management of acute asthma at Parkland Hospital. [a]Of predicted value. [b]Labor & delivery unit, recovery area, or intensive care unit. FEV_1 = forced expiratory volume at 1 second; PEFR = peak expiratory flow rate (liters per minute).

Systemic corticosteroids are given early to all patients with severe acute asthma. One regimen is oral prednisone or prednisolone or IV methylprednisolone in a dose of 30 to 45 mg daily for 5 to 10 days without tapering (Barnes, 2018). At Parkland Hospital, we use a higher daily IV dose (see Figure 54-3). Because their onset of action is several hours, corticosteroids are given initially along with β-agonists for severe acute asthma. If the response is unsatisfactory, a nebulized anticholinergic drug may be added. These drugs act to relax smooth muscle and diminish mucus. By nebulizer, a 0.5-mg dose of ipratropium bromide is provided every 20 minutes as needed for three consecutive doses. Additional doses every 6 to 8 hours can be used (National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute, 2007). Also, for severe exacerbations, IV magnesium sulfate or theophylline may prove efficacious.

Further management depends on the severity and response to therapy. If initial therapy with a β-agonist is associated with FEV_1 or PEFR improvement to a level >70 percent of baseline, discharge can be considered. For the woman with obvious respiratory distress or with an FEV_1 or PEFR <70 percent of predicted after three doses of a β-agonist, admission is usually advisable (Lazarus, 2010). Intensive therapy is continued with short-acting inhaled β-agonists, IV corticosteroids, inhaled anticholinergics, and close observation for worsening respiratory distress or fatigue in breathing (Racusin, 2013). The woman is cared for in the delivery unit or an intermediate or intensive care unit (ICU) (Dombrowski, 2006; Zeeman, 2003).

Status Asthmaticus and Respiratory Failure

Severe asthma of any type not responding after 30 to 60 minutes of intensive therapy is termed *status asthmaticus*. Generally, management of nonpregnant patients with status asthmaticus in an intensive care setting results in a good outcome. In pregnant women, consideration should be given to early intubation when maternal respiratory status worsens despite aggressive treatment (see Fig. 54-1). Fatigue, CO_2 retention, and hypoxemia are indications for mechanical ventilation (Chan, 2015). In refractory cases, venovenous extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) has been successfully used for status asthmaticus during pregnancy (Clifford, 2018; Steinack, 2017).

■ Labor and Delivery

For the laboring patient who has symptomatic asthma, the PEFR or FEV_1 is determined on admission, and serial measurements are taken. Maintenance medications are continued through delivery, and stress-dose corticosteroids are not necessary (Sylvester-Armstrong, 2020).

Oxytocin or prostaglandins E_1 or E_2 can be used for cervical ripening and induction. A non-histamine-releasing narcotic such as fentanyl may be preferable to meperidine for labor, and epidural analgesia is ideal. For surgical delivery, conduction analgesia is preferred because tracheal intubation can trigger severe bronchospasm. Postpartum hemorrhage is treated with oxytocin or prostaglandin E_1 (misoprostol) or E_2 (dinoprostone [Prostin]). Prostaglandin $F_{2\alpha}$ (Hemabate) is contraindicated because it may cause significant bronchospasm.

ACUTE BRONCHITIS

Large airway infection is manifest by cough without pneumonitis. It is common in adults, especially in winter months. Infections are usually caused by viruses, and of these, influenza A and B, parainfluenza, respiratory syncytial, coronavirus, adenovirus, and rhinovirus are frequent isolates (Irwin, 2018). Bacterial agents causing community-acquired pneumonia are rarely implicated. The cough of acute bronchitis persists for 10 to 20 days and occasionally lasts for a month or longer. Evidence supporting the benefits of antimicrobial therapy is limited (Smith, 2017). As supportive care, cough suppressants containing dextromethorphan and expectorants with guaifenesin appear safe in pregnancy (Briggs, 2022).

PNEUMONIA

Infection of the lungs is a leading cause of death in the United States (Heron, 2017). Current classification includes *community-acquired pneumonia (CAP),* which is typically encountered in healthy young women, including gravidas. Patients in outpatient care facilities develop an infection that more closely resembles *hospital-acquired pneumonia (HAP)* (Mandell, 2018).

In most cases of CAP, the offending pathogen is not identified. In a study from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), pathogens were identified in only 38 percent of nearly 2500 adults with pneumonia (Jain, 2015). These

included viruses in 23 percent, bacteria in 11 percent, both in 3 percent, and fungi or protozoa in 1 percent. These percentages changed in 2020 due to the COVID-19 pandemic (p. 964). Half of bacterial isolates were *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.

Pneumonia in pregnant women is relatively common (Brito, 2011; Sheffield, 2009). Gazmararian and coworkers (2002) reported that pneumonia accounts for 4.2 percent of antepartum admissions for nonobstetrical complications. Pneumonia is also a frequent indication for postpartum readmission (Belfort, 2010). Admission rates for respiratory illnesses during influenza season are higher than rates in the remaining months.

Regardless of etiology, mortality from pneumonia is infrequent in young women. However, during pregnancy, severe pneumonitis with appreciable loss of ventilatory capacity is less well tolerated (Callaghan, 2015; Rogers, 2010). Hypoxemia and acidosis are also poorly accommodated by the fetus, and they may stimulate preterm labor after midpregnancy. Because many cases of pneumonia follow viral upper respiratory illnesses, worsening or persistence of symptoms may represent developing pneumonia. Any gravida suspected of having pneumonia should undergo chest radiography.

Bacterial Pneumonia

Many bacteria that cause CAP, such as *S pneumoniae*, are part of the normal flora. Some factors that perturb the symbiotic relationship between colonizing bacteria and mucosal phagocytic defenses include acquisition of a virulent strain or bacterial infections following a viral infection. Cigarette smoking and chronic bronchitis favor colonization with *S pneumoniae*, *Haemophilus influenzae*, and *Legionella* species. Other risk factors include asthma, binge drinking, and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection (Mandell, 2018).

Incidence and Causes

Pregnancy itself does not appear to predispose to pneumonia. Jin and associates (2003) reported the antepartum hospitalization rate for pneumonia to be 1.5 per 1000 deliveries—almost identical to the rate of 1.47 per 1000 for nonpregnant women. Similarly, among 75,000 pregnancies at Parkland Hospital, the incidence was 1.5 per 1000 (Yost, 2000). As discussed, at least half are caused by viruses—influenza A and B, metapneumovirus, adenovirus, and respiratory syncytial virus (Mandell, 2018). A fourth are bacterial, and *S pneumoniae* causes half of these. Community-acquired methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (CA-MRSA) has emerged as a common pathogen that may cause necrotizing pneumonia (Moran, 2013). Occasionally, Legionnaires disease is encountered (Close, 2016).

Diagnosis

Typical symptoms of pneumonia include cough, dyspnea, sputum production, and pleuritic chest pain. Mild upper respiratory symptoms and malaise precede these symptoms, and mild leukocytosis is usually present. Chest radiography is essential for diagnosis (Fig. 54-4). Radiographical findings do not accurately predict the etiology, and as discussed, the responsible pathogen is often not identified. Tests to identify a specific agent are optional (Mandell, 2018). Sputum cultures, polymerase chain reaction (PCR) tests, serological testing, cold agglutinin identification, and tests for bacterial antigens are not routinely recommended. Exceptions are rapid PCR testing of nasal swab samples for influenza A and B and for COVID-19. An assay to screen for all three is available. Determination of serum procalcitonin levels did not improve diagnostic efficacy (Huang, 2018).

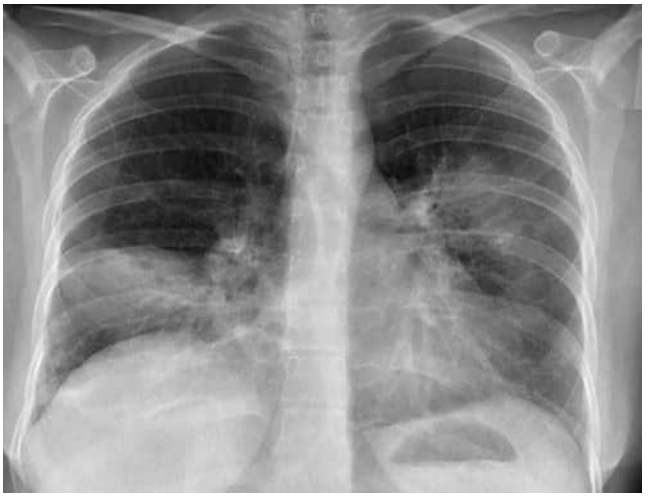


FIGURE 54-4 Chest radiograph in a pregnant woman with right middle lobe and left upper lobe pneumonia. Rounded right middle lobe and left apical infiltrates are consistent with the diagnosis.

Management

Many healthy young adults can be safely treated as outpatients, and the pneumonia severity index (PSI) and the CURB-65 scoring system are guides to admission (Mandell, 2018). Neither has been studied in pregnancy, and at Parkland Hospital, we hospitalize all gravidas with radiographically proven pneumonia. Outpatient therapy or 23-hour observation with optimal follow-up are reasonable options. Table 54-4 displays risk factors that should prompt consideration for hospitalization (Mandel, 2018).

With severe disease, admission to an ICU or intermediate care unit is advisable. Approximately 20 percent of pregnant women with pneumonia admitted to Parkland Hospital require this level of care (Zeeman, 2003). Severe pneumonia is a relatively common cause of acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) during pregnancy, and mechanical ventilation may become necessary (Chap. 50, p. 885). In a review of 51 gravidas who required mechanical ventilation, 12 percent had pneumonia (Jenkins, 2003). Still, their mortality rate is lower than that for other causes of ARDS (Rush, 2017).

TABLE 54-4. Risk Factors for Early Deterioration in Community-Acquired Pneumonia

Respiratory rate ≥30/min
Arterial O_2 saturation <90%
Hypothermia: core temperature <36°C
Hypotension requiring aggressive fluid resuscitation
Multilobular infiltrates
Leukopenia: <4000/μL
Thrombocytopenia: <100,000/μL
Confusion/disorientation

TABLE 54-5. Empirical Inpatient Antimicrobial Treatment for Community-Acquired Pneumonia in Pregnancy[a]

Uncomplicated, otherwise healthy[b,c]

Macrolides[c]: clarithromycin, 500 mg twice daily or azithromycin, 500 mg daily. Both have IV and oral forms

Plus

Oseltamivir, 75 mg orally twice daily for 5 d for suspected influenza A infection

Severe pneumonia[d]

Respiratory fluoroquinolones: moxifloxacin, 400 mg daily or levofloxacin, 750 mg daily. Both have IV and oral forms

or

β-lactams: ampicillin/sulbactam, 3 g IV every 6 hr; ceftriaxone, 1–2 g daily; ceftaroline, 600 mg IV every 12 hr; or cefotaxime, 1–2 g every 8 hr. The β-lactam should be coupled with a macrolide above

Plus

Oseltamivir, as above, for suspected influenza A infection

[a]Antibiotics are discontinued after 5 to 7 days in those afebrile for 48 to 72 hours.
[b]Use as inpatient or outpatient regimen.
[c]Doxycycline may be given instead if postpartum.
[d]See Table 54-4 for criteria.
ER = extended release; IV = intravenous.

Initial antimicrobial and antiviral treatment is empirical (Mandell, 2018). In most otherwise healthy pregnant women, bacterial pneumonias are caused by pneumococci, *Mycoplasma*, or *Chlamydophila*. Monotherapy initially is with a macrolide (Table 54-5). Yost and colleagues (2000) reported that erythromycin monotherapy, given intravenously and then orally, was effective in all but one of 99 pregnant women with uncomplicated pneumonia. During influenza season, we routinely administer oseltamivir (Tamiflu) along with empirical therapy for bacterial pneumonia.

For women with more severe disease according to criteria in Table 54-4, Mandell and Wunderink (2018) recommend: (1) a respiratory fluoroquinolone or (2) a macrolide plus a preferred β-lactam (see Table 54-5). Resistance of pneumococcal isolates to macrolides will favor fluoroquinolone regimens. The teratogenicity risk of fluoroquinolones is low, and these should be given if indicated (Briggs, 2022). If MRSA is suspected, IV vancomycin, 15 mg/kg every 12 hours, or linezolid, 600 mg every 12 hours, is added (Metlay, 2019).

Clinical improvement is usually evident in 48 to 72 hours with resolution of fever in 2 to 4 days. With improvement, patients can be transitioned to oral forms. Treatment of uncomplicated pneumonia is recommended for 5 to 7 days total (Musher, 2014). Patients should be afebrile for 48 to 72 hours and demonstrate signs of clinical stability before therapy is discontinued. Radiographic abnormalities may take up to 6 weeks to completely resolve (Torres, 2008).

Worsening disease is a poor prognostic feature, and serial radiography is recommended if fever persists. Even with improvement, however, approximately 20 percent of women develop a pleural effusion. Treatment failure may occur in up to 15 percent of cases, and a wider antimicrobial regimen and more extensive diagnostic testing is warranted. For example, in some cases, computed tomography of the chest may be necessary to identify empyema that requires drainage.

Pregnancy Outcome

Maternal and perinatal morbidity and mortality rates from pneumonia remain formidable. In five studies with a total of 632 women published after 1990, almost 7 percent required intubation and mechanical ventilation, and the maternal mortality rate was 0.8 percent.

In up to a third of cases of acute lung infection, prematurely ruptured membranes and preterm delivery are frequent complications (Getahun, 2007; Shariatzadeh, 2006). Likely related to these, older studies report a twofold increase in rates of low-birthweight neonates (Sheffield, 2009). In one population-based study from Taiwan of nearly 219,000 births, incidences of preterm and growth-restricted newborns and of preeclampsia and cesarean delivery were significantly higher (Chen, 2012).

Prevention

Two pneumococcal vaccines are available—a 23-serotype preparation (PPSV23 [Pneumovax]) and a newer 13-serotype vaccine (PCV13 [Prevnar 13]). PPSV23 is 60- to 70-percent protective, and its use lowers emergence of drug-resistant pneumococci. Neither vaccine is recommended for healthy pregnant women. However, for gravidas with chronic diabetes mellitus or with chronic heart, lung, or liver disease, one lifetime dose of PPSV23 is suggested, if not previously provided. Moreover, for women with chronic immunocompromise, generalized malignancy, chronic renal disease, cochlear implant, or asplenia, such as with sickle-cell disease, one lifetime PCV13 dose is followed by one PPSV23 dose at least 8 weeks later and then again 5 years later if not provided previously (Freedman, 2021).

■ Influenza Pneumonia

Influenza A and B are RNA viruses that cause potentially epidemic respiratory infection, including pneumonitis, in the

winter months. The virus is spread by aerosolized droplets and quickly infects ciliated columnar epithelium, alveolar cells, mucus gland cells, and macrophages.

Clinical Presentation

Each year, 10 percent of pregnant women develop influenza (Cantu, 2013). Disease onset follows 1 to 4 days after exposure, and common symptoms include fever, cough, myalgia, and chills (Wright, 2018). In most healthy adults, infection is self-limited. Pneumonia is the most frequent complication and mimics bacterial pneumonia. According to the CDC, infected pregnant women are more likely to be hospitalized and admitted to an ICU (Lindley, 2019). Others have corroborated these observations (Mertz, 2019; Prasad, 2019). At Parkland Hospital during the 2003–2004 influenza season, pneumonia developed in 12 percent of pregnant women with influenza (Rogers, 2010).

The 2009–2010 pandemic with the influenza (A/H1N1) pdm09 strain was particularly severe (Rasmussen, 2014). In an MFMU Network study, 10 percent of pregnant or postpartum women admitted with H1N1 influenza were cared for in an ICU, and 11 percent of these patients died (Varner, 2011). Risk factors included advanced pregnancy, smoking, and chronic hypertension. Overall, influenza accounted for 12 percent of pregnancy-related deaths during the 2009–2010 pandemic (Callaghan, 2015). During the 2013–2014 influenza season, a fourth of pregnant women admitted to California ICUs died (Louie, 2015). ECMO may be lifesaving (Anselmi, 2015; Saad, 2016).

Rapid PCR testing of nasal swab samples for influenza A and B is available. Primary influenza pneumonitis is characterized by sparse sputum production and radiographic interstitial infiltrates (Wright, 2018). More commonly, secondary or mixed pneumonia develop from bacterial superinfection by streptococci or staphylococci after 2 to 3 days of initial clinical improvement. The CDC (2007) reported several cases in which CA-MRSA caused influenza-associated pneumonitis with a case-fatality rate of 25 percent.

Management

Supportive treatment is recommended for uncomplicated influenza, and early antiviral therapy is effective (Oboho, 2016; Wright, 2018). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018a) recommends treatment of all pregnant women with suspected or proven influenza. This is regardless of rapid influenza testing, which can have false-negative results (Datkhaeva, 2019). Hospitalization is considered for severely ill women and for those with pneumonia. Influenza hospitalization rates for those with advanced pregnancy are higher compared with nonpregnant women (Dodds, 2007; Schanzer, 2007).

Treatment is with neuraminidase inhibitors, which interfere with release of progeny virus from infected host cells and thus prevent infection of new host cells. The preferred agent is oseltamivir (Tamiflu), which is given orally, 75 mg twice daily. An alternative is zanamivir (Relenza), which is given by inhalation, 10 mg twice daily. Recommended treatment duration with either is 5 days. Last, peramivir (Rapivab) may be given as a 600-mg IV dose over 15 to 30 minutes. All shorten the course of illness by 1 to 2 days, and they probably reduce the risk for pneumonitis (Belgi, 2014; Muthuri, 2014). Few data guide use of these agents in pregnant women, but the drugs are not teratogenic in animal studies and are considered low risk (Briggs, 2022). Recently, the endonuclease inhibitor baloxavir marboxil (Xofluza) was approved for use in nonpregnant individuals but is not recommended for pregnant women.

Prevention

Vaccination against influenza A is recommended by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018b) and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2019a). During the 2018–2019 flu season, the CDC reported that only half of pregnant women received the influenza vaccine (Lindley, 2019). In a recent survey, however, O'Leary and colleagues (2019) reported a 10-percent vaccine refusal rate in office practices.

Any inactivated influenza vaccines (IIV) or recombinant influenza vaccine (RIV) may be used and is given once each flu season. Live attenuated influenza vaccine (LAIV) should not be used in pregnancy (Freedman, 2021). Prenatal vaccination affords some temporary protection for infants (Madhi, 2014; Munoz, 2019; Tita, 2016). The vaccine has not been linked with birth defects or adverse childhood health effects at 5 years of age (Briggs, 2022; Conlin, 2018; Walsh, 2019). In one case-control study, an association with vaccination and miscarriage was found (Donahue, 2017). However, the observations were not definite and should not alter clinical practice (Rasmussen, 2019; Sperling, 2018). Effects on pregnancy outcomes are discussed in more detail in Chapter 67 (p. 1187).

A second coronavirus—Middle East Respiratory Syndrome (MERS-CoV)—originated in Saudi Arabia in 2013. Fortunately, the epidemic was contained and short lived.

Coronavirus

The first coronaviral infection in China in 2002 that caused severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) was termed SARS-CoV. It caused atypical pneumonitis with a case-fatality rate of approximately 10 percent (Dolin, 2012). SARS in pregnancy had a case-fatality rate of up to 40 percent (Maxwell, 2017). Ng and associates (2006) reported that the placentas from 7 of 19 cases showed abnormal intervillous or subchorionic fibrin deposition in three, and extensive fetal thrombotic vasculopathy in two.

In the winter of 2019–2020, a second worldwide outbreak of a genetically similar virus originated in China. This was Coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV2) known as COVID-19. Illness severity ranges from mild common-cold symptoms to severe pneumonia or acute respiratory distress syndrome (Rasmussen, 2020). From 18 affected pregnancies, the clinical course of COVID-19 is similar to that seen in nonpregnant women. However, preterm labor appears to be an associated risk (Chen, 2020; Zhu, 2020).

To minimize transmission of COVID-19, inpatient guidelines recommend caring for an affected patient in a negative-pressure airborne infection isolation room (AIIR) or transfer to an equipped facility. The potential for vertical transmission (mother–to–newborn) transmission is currently unclear Breslin, 2020). Neonates are suspected to have infection. Thus, isolation of the newborn from other neonates is recommended.

A newborn may room in with its mother, who practices hand hygiene and wears a mask (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021; Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020).

Varicella Pneumonia

Infection with varicella-zoster virus, the same agent responsible for chickenpox, results in pneumonitis in 5 percent of gravidas (Harger, 2002). Diagnosis and management are considered in Chapter 67 (p. 1186).

Pneumocystis Pneumonia

Fungal and yeast infections are usually of greatest consequence in immunocompromised hosts, especially in women with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). Of these, lung infection with *Pneumocystis jirovecii*, formerly called *Pneumocystis carinii*, is a common complication. The opportunistic yeast-like fungus causes interstitial pneumonia characterized by dry cough, tachypnea, dyspnea, and diffuse radiographic infiltrates. This organism is identified by polymerase chain reaction testing of bronchoalveolar lavage secretions or, when necessary, tissue staining of biopsy specimens (Morris, 2018). More common in HIV-infected persons, its incidence has risen in other immunocompromised groups (Rego de Figueiredo, 2019).

In a report from the AIDS Clinical Trials Centers, pneumocystis pneumonia was the most frequent HIV-related disorder in pregnant women (Stratton, 1992). Ahmad and associates (2001) reviewed 22 cases during pregnancy and cited a 50-percent mortality rate. Treatment is with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for 14 to 21 days. Alternative agents include sulfadiazine plus pyrimethamine. Glucocorticoids also improve survival rates. Echinocandins have been used successfully in nonpregnant patients (Huang, 2019). Tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation may be required in some cases.

For prophylaxis, several international health agencies recommend one double-strength trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole tablet orally daily for certain groups of HIV-infected pregnant women. These include women with $CD4^+$ T-lymphocyte counts $<200/\mu L$, those whose $CD4^+$ T lymphocytes constitute <14 percent, or if there is an AIDS-defining illness, particularly oropharyngeal candidiasis (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021).

Fungal Pneumonia

Any of several fungi can cause pneumonia. In pregnancy, this is usually seen in women with HIV infection or other sources of immunocompromise. In uncompromised women, infection is usually mild and self-limited. It is characterized initially by cough and fever, and dissemination is infrequent (Mansour, 2015).

Histoplasmosis and *blastomycosis* do not appear to be more frequent or more severe during pregnancy (Youssef, 2013). Data concerning *coccidioidomycosis* are conflicting (Bercovitch, 2011; Patel, 2013). In a case-control study from an endemic area, pregnancy was a significant risk factor for disseminated disease (Rosenstein, 2001). In another study, however, Caldwell and coworkers (2000) identified 32 serologically confirmed cases during pregnancy and documented dissemination in only three. Women with associated erythema nodosum have a better prognosis, whereas mediastinal lymphadenopathy may more likely reflect disseminated disease (Mayer, 2013). Last, Crum and Ballon-Landa (2006) reviewed 80 cases of antepartum coccidioidomycosis and found that almost all women diagnosed in the third trimester had disseminated disease. Although the overall maternal mortality rate was 40 percent, it was 20 percent for 29 cases reported since 1973. Spinello (2007) and Bercovitch (2011) with their colleagues provide reviews of coccidioidomycosis in pregnancy.

Most cases of *cryptococcosis* reported during pregnancy manifest as meningitis. Otherwise healthy pregnant women occasionally have cryptococcal pneumonia (Asadi Gharabaghi, 2014). Diagnosis is difficult because clinical presentation is similar to that of other community-acquired pneumonias.

Itraconazole is the preferred therapy for most disseminated fungal infections (Edwards, 2018). Pregnant women have also been given IV amphotericin B or ketoconazole (Lewis, 2018; Paranyuk, 2006; Pilmis, 2015). Amphotericin B has been used extensively in pregnancy with no embryofetal effects. Early in pregnancy, fluconazole and ketoconazole may be embryotoxic in large doses. In the first trimester, these two and itraconazole are ideally avoided if possible (Briggs, 2022).

Three echinocandin derivatives—*caspofungin*, *micafungin*, and *anidulafungin*—are effective for invasive candidiasis (Edwards, 2018). They are embryotoxic and teratogenic in laboratory animals and use in human pregnancies has not been reported (Briggs, 2022).

TUBERCULOSIS

It is estimated that a third of the world population is infected with *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* (Getahun, 2015). In the United States, it is uncommon and is a disease of the elderly, the urban poor, minority groups, and patients with HIV infection (Raviglione, 2018). According to the CDC (2019b), the incidence of *active tuberculosis* in this country has plateaued since 2000, and immigrants account for more than half of active cases. Individuals born in the United States have newly acquired infection, whereas foreign-born persons usually have reactivation of latent infection.

Infection begins with inhalation of mycobacteria, which incites a granulomatous pulmonary reaction. In >90 percent of patients, infection is contained and is dormant for long periods (Getahun, 2015). In those who are immunocompromised, tuberculosis becomes reactivated to cause clinical disease. Active disease manifests usually as cough with minimal sputum production, low-grade fever, hemoptysis, and weight loss. Various infiltrative patterns are seen on chest radiograph, and cavitation or mediastinal lymphadenopathy may be associated. Stained smears of sputum reveal acid-fast bacilli (AFB) in approximately two thirds of culture-positive individuals. Forms of extrapulmonary tuberculosis include lymphadenitis, pleural, genitourinary, skeletal, meningeal, gastrointestinal, and miliary or disseminated (Raviglione, 2018). Silent endometrial tuberculosis can cause tubal infertility (Levison, 2010).

Tuberculosis and Pregnancy

The considerable influx of women into the United States from Asia, Africa, Mexico, and Central America has been accompanied by an increased frequency of tuberculosis in pregnancy. The prevalence of tuberculosis was 7.1 cases per 100,000 pregnancy-related hospitalizations (Dennis, 2018). Sackoff and associates (2006) reported positive tuberculin test results in half of 678 foreign-born women attending prenatal clinics in New York City. At Jackson Memorial Hospital in Miami, 21 percent of 207 pregnant women with HIV infection had a positive skin test result (Schulte, 2002).

One review of 3384 pregnant women showed that 72 percent of active disease is pulmonary (Sobhy, 2017). It also confirmed earlier studies that showed greater adverse maternal and perinatal outcomes (Table 54-6). Others have found similar untoward effects (Dennis, 2018; El-Messidi, 2016). From her review, Efferen (2007) cited twofold greater rates of low birthweight, preterm delivery, and preeclampsia. The perinatal mortality rate was almost tenfold higher. Conversely, treated tuberculosis is usually associated with good pregnancy outcomes (Moro, 2018; Taylor, 2013).

Extrapulmonary tuberculosis is less common, although its incidence appears to be rising (El-Messidi, 2016). Llewelyn and colleagues (2000) reported that 9 of 13 pregnant women with extrapulmonary disease had delayed diagnoses. In the review cited above, 5.8 percent of women had extrapulmonary infections, and they had worse outcomes (Sobhy, 2017). Jana and coworkers (1999) described outcomes in 33 pregnant women with renal, intestinal, and skeletal tuberculosis, and a third had low-birthweight newborns. Prevost and Fung Kee Fung (1999) reviewed 56 cases of tuberculous meningitis in which a third of mothers died. Spinal tuberculosis may cause paraplegia, but vertebral fusion may prevent it from becoming permanent (Badve, 2011). Psoas abscess develops in 5 percent of those with spinal infections (Nigam, 2013). Other presentations include widespread intraperitoneal tuberculosis simulating ovarian carcinomatosis or degenerating leiomyoma, and hyperemesis gravidarum stemming from tubercular meningitis (Kutlu, 2007; Moore, 2008; Sherer, 2005).

TABLE 54-6. Adverse Maternal and Perinatal Outcomes in 3384 Pregnancies Complicated by Active Tuberculosis

Outcomes	Odds Ratio[a](95% CI)
Maternal	
Cesarean delivery	2.1 (1.17–3.79)
ARDS	2.8 (1.35–6.10)
Anemia	3.8 (2.21–6.71)
Pneumonia	8.4 (5.8–12.3)
Miscarriage	9.0 (4.93–16.7)
Prenatal Admission	9.6 (2.3–40.6)
Perinatal	
Preterm birth	1.6 (1.2–2.4)
Low birthweight	1.7 (1.2–2.4)
Anomalies	1.8 (1.24–2.62)
Fetal distress	2.3 (1.2–4.5)
Mortality	4.2 (4.9–11.8)

[a]Compared with women without tuberculosis.
ARDS = acute respiratory distress syndrome.
Data from El-Messidi, 2016; Sobhy, 2017.

Diagnosis

For latent tuberculosis, two testing types are used. One is the time-honored *tuberculin skin test (TST),* and the others are *interferon-gamma release assays (IGRAs),* which are becoming preferred (Lewinsohn, 2017; Sosa, 2019). IGRAs are blood tests that measure interferon-gamma release in response to antigens present in *M tuberculosis* but not in *bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG)* vaccine.

The alternative is skin testing, for which the preferred antigen is *purified protein derivative (PPD)* of intermediate strength of 5 tuberculin units. If the intracutaneously applied test result is negative, no further evaluation is needed. A positive skin test result measures ≥5 mm in diameter and requires evaluation for active disease, including a chest radiograph. For active infection, nucleic acid amplification testing and mycobacterial culture is recommended (Raviglione, 2018).

Clinicians should promptly contact their state health department for cases of suspected or confirmed active tuberculosis. Health departments can assist in providing patient and public health management. This often includes *directly observed therapy (DOT)* to ensure regimen compliance (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2013a). Each state's control office can be found at www.cdc.gov/tb/links/tboffices.htm.

Treatment

Latent Infection

In nonpregnant, tuberculin-positive patients younger than 35 years with no evidence of active disease, treatment is given to substantially reduce the risk that their latent infection will progress to active disease. The preferred therapy is one of three rifamycin-based regimens with or without isoniazid for 3 to 4 months duration (Sterling, 2020). Alternatively, isoniazid, 300 mg orally daily, is given for 6 to 9 months. Isoniazid has been used for decades, and it is considered safe in pregnancy (Briggs, 2022; Moro, 2018). However, for gravidas with latent infection, most recommend that isoniazid therapy be delayed until after delivery (Hill, 2019). Some even recommend withholding treatment until 3 to 6 months after delivery because of a possibly increased isoniazid-induced hepatitis risk in postpartum women. Serum levels of hepatic transaminases should be monitored with isoniazid therapy.

Compliance is a major problem with postpartum therapy. Only 10 to 18 percent of postpartum patients complete treatment (Cruz, 2005; Sackoff, 2006). One obvious disconnect is that care for tuberculosis is given in health systems apart from prenatal care (Zenner, 2012). In a decision model, Boggess and colleagues (2000) reported fewer cases of tuberculosis if treatment for a positive tuberculin skin test result occurred antepartum.

There are exceptions to delayed treatment for latent infection in pregnancy. Recent skin test convertors are treated antepartum because the incidence of active infection is 5 percent in the first year (Zumla, 2013). Skin-test-positive women exposed to active infection are also treated because the incidence of infection is 0.5 percent per year. Last, women with HIV infection are treated because they have an approximate 10-percent annual risk of active disease.

Active Infection

Regimens. Resistance to antituberculosis drugs has led to emergence of *multidrug-resistant tuberculosis (MDR-TB)* strains. The World Health Organization (2017) recommends isoniazid, rifampin, ethambutol, and pyrazinamide together for 6 months for nonpregnant persons. These are used until susceptibility studies are performed (Nahid, 2016). Pyridoxine is added to help prevent isoniazid-associated neuropathy. A newer 4-month isoniazid, rifapentine, moxifloxacin, and pyrazinamide regimen was not inferior to the standard one (Dorman, 2021).

During pregnancy, in the first 2-month *bactericidal phase*, isoniazid, rifampin, and ethambutol are given. This is followed by a 7-month *continuation phase* with isoniazid and rifampin (Raviglione, 2018). A few reports describe MDR-TB during pregnancy, and treatment options have been reviewed (Esmail, 2018). Treatment should be undertaken in consultation with infectious disease and the local health department. Breastfeeding is not prohibited during antituberculous therapy. If neonatal therapy is indicated, medication levels in breast milk are inadequate for this.

Treatment of active disease is of special concern in HIV-infected women who are antiretroviral naïve. In these circumstances, beginning concomitant therapy with antituberculosis and antiretroviral therapy can cause the *immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS)* with toxic drug effects (Lai, 2016). That said, some studies support administration of antiretroviral therapy 2 to 4 weeks after beginning antituberculosis therapy (Blanc, 2011; Havlir, 2011). Also, rifampin or rifabutin may be contraindicated if certain protease inhibitors or nonnucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors are used. If there is resistance to rifabutin or rifampin, then pyrazinamide therapy is given. Of the second-line regimens, the aminoglycosides—streptomycin, kanamycin, amikacin, and capreomycin—are ototoxic to the fetus and are contraindicated (Briggs, 2022).

Transmission Prevention. Inpatient airborne precautions should be initiated for any patient with suspected active pulmonary tuberculosis or for patients who remain infectious despite treatment. Precautions include rooming in a negative-pressure room. Patients are encouraged to wear surgical masks during interactions, and health-care workers should don personally fitted N95 respirator masks. Patients undergoing treatment can be considered noninfectious: (1) after 2 weeks of DOT treatment compliance, (2) after three consecutive AFB-negative sputum smears, or (3) after clinical improvement evidenced by absent fever and resolving cough (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2013b).

Neonatal Tuberculosis

Tuberculous bacillemia can infect the placenta, but the fetus infrequently becomes infected. *Congenital tuberculosis* applies also to newborns who are infected by aspiration of infected secretions at delivery. Each route constitutes approximately half of the cases. Neonatal tuberculosis simulates other congenital infections and manifests with hepatosplenomegaly, respiratory distress, fever, and lymphadenopathy (Yeh, 2019).

Cantwell and colleagues (1994) reviewed 29 cases of congenital tuberculosis. Only 12 of the mothers had active infection, and tuberculosis was frequently demonstrated by postpartum endometrial biopsy. Adhikari and associates (1997) described 11 South African postpartum women whose endometrial biopsy was culture-positive. Six of their neonates had congenital tuberculosis.

Neonatal infection is unlikely if the mother with active disease is treated before delivery or if her sputum culture is negative. Most experts recommend isolation of the susceptible newborn from the mother suspected of having active disease. If the mother is infectious, 3 to 6 months of isoniazid prophylaxis is given to the newborn. In an older study, the risk of disease in the untreated infant born to a woman with active infection was 50 percent in the first year (Jacobs, 1988).

SARCOIDOSIS

This is a chronic, multisystem inflammatory disease of unknown etiology characterized by an accumulation of T-helper lymphocytes and phagocytes within noncaseating granulomas (Baughman, 2018; Spagnolo, 2018). Predisposition to the disease is genetically determined and characterized by an exaggerated response of helper T lymphocytes to environmental triggers. Pulmonary involvement is most common, followed by skin, eyes, lymph nodes, and then all other organ systems. The prevalence of sarcoid in the United States is 20 to 60 cases per 100,000, with equal sex distribution. It is more than 10 times more common for blacks than for whites. Most patients are between 20 and 40 years at disease presentation.

Pulmonary symptoms are dominant, and more than 90 percent of patients have an abnormal chest radiograph at some point. *Interstitial pneumonitis* is the hallmark of pulmonary involvement, and half of affected patients develop permanent radiological changes. *Lymphadenopathy*, especially of the mediastinum, is present in 75 to 90 percent of cases. A third each have uveitis and skin involvement, the latter usually manifest as *erythema nodosum*. In women, sarcoid causes approximately 10 percent of cases of erythema nodosum (Mert, 2007). Importantly, any other organ system may be involved. Confirmation of the diagnosis is with biopsy—preferably a lymph node. However, because the lung may be the only obviously involved organ, tissue acquisition is often difficult.

The overall prognosis for sarcoidosis is good, and it resolves without treatment in 50 percent of patients. Still, quality of life is diminished, and in 20 percent chronic organ dysfunction, albeit mild and nonprogressive, persists (Spagnolo, 2018). Approximately 5 percent die because of their disease.

Glucocorticoids are the most widely used treatment for symptomatic disease. Permanent organ derangement is seldom reversed by their use (Spagnolo, 2018). Thus, the decision to treat is based on symptoms, physical findings, chest radiograph,

TABLE 54-7. Maternal and Perinatal Adverse Outcomes in 678 Women with Sarcoidosis

Outcomes	Odds Ratio[a] (95% CI)
Preeclampsia	1.62 (1.18–2.22)
Preterm delivery	1.73 (1.40–2.15)
Deep-vein thrombosis	4.92 (1.58–15.33)
Eclampsia	5.27 (1.69–16.40)
Pulmonary embolism	6.68 (3.99–11.21)

[a]Compared with 7,094,000 women without sarcoidosis.
CI = confidence interval.

and pulmonary function tests. Unless respiratory symptoms are prominent, therapy is usually withheld for a several-month observation period. If inflammation does not subside, prednisone, 20 to 40 mg/d, is given daily and tapered to <10 mg by 6 months (Baughman, 2018). For those with an inadequate response, immunosuppressive or cytotoxic agents and cytokine modulators can be used.

Sarcoidosis and Pregnancy

Because it is uncommon and frequently benign, sarcoidosis is not often diagnosed in pregnancy. In a study of the Nationwide Inpatient Sample, the incidence was 9.6 cases per 100,000 births (Hadid, 2015). Meningitis, heart failure, and neurosarcoidosis complicating pregnancy have been described (Cardonick, 2000; Maisel, 1996; Wallmüller, 2012). Many small studies report benign associations between sarcoidosis and pregnancy. However, Table 54-7 displays the increased incidences of both maternal and fetal adverse outcomes found in a Nationwide Inpatient Sample study of 678 cases (Hadid, 2015). Risks for preeclampsia and preterm delivery were approximately twofold greater. Risks for eclampsia, deep-vein thrombosis, and pulmonary embolism were five- to sevenfold higher.

Active sarcoidosis is treated using the same guidelines as for nongravid women. Severe disease warrants serial pulmonary function determination. Symptomatic uveitis, constitutional symptoms, and pulmonary symptoms are treated with prednisone.

CYSTIC FIBROSIS

Pathophysiology

Cystic fibrosis is an autosomal recessive exocrinopathy and is one of the most common fatal genetic disorders in Caucasians. Cystic fibrosis is caused by one of more than 2000 mutations in a 230-kb gene on the long arm of chromosome 7 (Sorscher, 2018). The normal peptide gene product functions as a chloride channel and is termed the *cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator (CFTR)*. Mutations in the chloride channel alters epithelial transport of electrolytes in CFTR-secretory cells. Affected sites include the sinuses, lung, pancreas, liver, and reproductive tract.

Exocrine gland ductal obstruction develops from thick, viscid secretions. In the lung, submucosal glandular ducts are affected. Eccrine sweat gland abnormalities are the basis for the diagnostic *sweat test*, characterized by elevated sodium, potassium, and chloride levels in sweat.

Lung involvement is commonplace and is usually the cause of death. Bronchial gland hypertrophy with mucous plugging and small-airway obstruction leads to subsequent infection that ultimately causes chronic bronchitis and bronchiectasis. For complex and not completely explicable reasons, chronic inflammation is caused by *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*, *S aureus*, *and H influenzae*. Acute and chronic parenchymal inflammation ultimately causes extensive fibrosis, and along with airway obstruction, ventilation–perfusion mismatch develops. Pulmonary insufficiency is the end result. Currently, the median predicted survival is 37 years, and nearly 80 percent of females with cystic fibrosis now survive to adulthood (Patel, 2015).

As discussed in Chapter 17 (p. 342), phenotypes vary widely, even among homozygotes for the common Phe508del (ΔF508) mutation. Disease severity depends on which two alleles are inherited, and approximately 10 percent are disease-causing mutations (Sorscher, 2018). Homozygosity for ΔF508 is one of the most severe, and 90 percent of individuals with clinical disease carry at least one F508 allele.

Preconceptional Counseling

Women with clinical cystic fibrosis are subfertile because of tenacious cervical mucus. Traxler and colleagues (2019) recommend in-depth preconceptional counseling regarding contraception. Males have oligospermia or aspermia from associated *congenital bilateral absence of the vas deferens (CBAVD)*, and 98 percent are infertile (Ahmad, 2013). Despite this, the North American Cystic Fibrosis Foundation estimated that 4 percent of affected women become pregnant every year (Edenborough, 1995). The endometrium and tubes express some CFTR but are functionally normal, and the ovaries do not express the *CFTR* gene. Both intrauterine insemination and in vitro fertilization can be successful for affected women. Important factors are the long-term prognosis for the parent(s) and mutation transmission to their offspring.

Screening

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020) recommends that carrier screening be offered to *all* women, affected by cystic fibrosis or not, who are currently pregnant or considering conception (Chap. 17, p. 342). The CDC also added cystic fibrosis to newborn screening programs (Chap. 32, p. 594). The CFTR2 website (www.cftr2.org) helps delineate which gene variants have a clear disease-causing role and which are benign mutations.

Prenatal Care

Pregnancy outcome is inversely related to severity of lung dysfunction. Advanced chronic lung disease, hypoxia, and frequent infections may prove deleterious. At least in the past, *cor pulmonale* was common, but even that does not preclude successful pregnancy (Cameron, 2005). In some women, *pancreatic dysfunction* may cause malnutrition. Approximately 10 percent have pregestational diabetes (Reynaud, 2017). Otherwise normal pregnancy-induced insulin resistance frequently

results in gestational diabetes after midpregnancy. In one study of 48 pregnancies, half had pancreatic insufficiency, and a third required insulin (Thorpe-Beeston, 2013).

Cystic fibrosis is not affected by pregnancy. Early reports of a deleterious effect on the course of cystic fibrosis were related to severe disease (Olson, 1997). When matched with nonpregnant women by disease severity, some reports indicate no deleterious effects on long-term survival (Schechter, 2013).

Management

Prepregnancy counseling is imperative. Women who choose to become pregnant require close surveillance for development of superimposed infection, diabetes, and heart failure. Serial pulmonary function testing assists management and estimates prognosis. If the FEV_1 is at least 50 percent, women usually tolerate pregnancy well (Reynaud, 2020). Emphasis is placed on postural drainage, bronchodilator therapy, and infection control.

β-Adrenergic bronchodilators help control airway constriction. Inhaled recombinant human deoxyribonuclease I improves lung function by reducing sputum viscosity (Sorscher, 2018). Inhaled 7-percent saline produces short- and long-term benefits. Nutritional status is assessed, and appropriate dietary counseling given. Calcium and vitamin D are given for poor bone mineralization. Pancreatic insufficiency requires replacement of oral pancreatic enzymes. Promising new therapy to correct CFTR protein dysfunction has been recently described. Using a combination of "CFTR correctors" (tezacaftor–ivacaftor congeners), patients homozygous for the Phe508del mutation significantly benefitted (Davies, 2018; Keating, 2018). No reports of these drugs are available regarding pregnant women.

Infection is heralded by increasing cough and mucus production. Oral semisynthetic penicillins or cephalosporins usually suffice to treat staphylococcal infections. *Pseudomonas* infection is problematic, and inhaled tobramycin and colistin have been used successfully to control this organism. Serious pulmonary infections are treated with immediate hospitalization and aggressive therapy. The threshold for hospitalization with other complications is low. For labor and delivery, epidural analgesia is recommended (Deighan, 2014).

Pregnancy Outcome

Earlier reports chronicled the poor maternal and perinatal outcomes in affected women (Cohen, 1980; Kent, 1993). More recent reports describe better outcomes, but there still are serious complications (Schlüter, 2019). Disease severity is now quantified by pulmonary function studies, which are the best predictor of pregnancy and long-term maternal outcome. One report of 69 pregnancies found that if prepregnancy FEV_1 was <60 percent of predicted, the risk for preterm delivery, respiratory complications, and death of the mother within a few years of childbirth was substantive (Edenborough, 2000). Others report similar findings (Fitzsimmons, 1996; Thorpe-Beeston, 2013).

Of 75 pregnancies from the French Cystic Fibrosis Registry, almost 20 percent of newborns were delivered preterm, and 30 percent had growth restriction (Gillet, 2002). The one maternal death was due to *Pseudomonas* sepsis in a woman whose prepregnancy FEV_1 was 60 percent. Long-term, however, 17 percent of women died, and four infants had confirmed cystic fibrosis. Meconium peritonitis is found in 10 to 20 percent of affected fetuses (Boczar, 2015; Terlizzi, 2016). In a more recent report from the French registry, women with pregestational diabetes had outcomes similar to those without diabetes (Reynaud, 2017).

TABLE 54-8. Odds Ratios for Maternal Complications in 1119 Pregnant Women with Cystic Fibrosis Compared with Controls

Complication	Odds Ratio
Asthma	5
Thrombophilia	6
Diabetes	14
Acute kidney injury	16
Respiratory failure	30
Mechanical ventilation	32
Pneumonia	69
Death	125

Patel and associates (2015) queried the National Inpatient Sample database and reported that the prevalence of cystic fibrosis in pregnancy had a significant linear rise from 2000 to 2010. They analyzed 1119 affected women and reported a litany of risks (Table 54-8). In contrast, perinatal outcomes were surprisingly good.

Lung Transplantation

Cystic fibrosis is a common antecedent disease leading to lung transplantation. Gyi and coworkers (2006) reviewed 10 pregnancies in women following transplantation and reported nine liveborn neonates. Maternal outcomes were less favorable. Of the three gravidas who developed rejection during pregnancy, all had progressively declining pulmonary function and died of chronic rejection by 38 months after delivery. More recent international data show a median survival of 10.5 years in patients living beyond the first year (Yusen, 2015).

CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING

Carbon monoxide is a ubiquitous gas, and most nonsmoking adults have a carbon monoxyhemoglobin saturation of 1 to 3 percent. In cigarette smokers, levels may be 5 to 15 percent, and polycythemia is comorbid. Carbon monoxide is the most frequent cause of poisoning worldwide (Stoller, 2007). Toxic levels are often encountered in inadequately ventilated areas warmed by space heaters.

Carbon monoxide is particularly toxic because it is odorless and tasteless and has a high affinity for hemoglobin binding. Thus, it displaces oxygen and impedes its transfer with resultant hypoxia. Besides acute sequelae including death and anoxic encephalopathy, cognitive defects develop in as many as half of patients following loss of consciousness or in those with carbon monoxide levels >25 percent (Weaver, 2002). Hypoxic brain

damage has a predilection for the cerebral cortex and white matter and for the basal ganglia (Lo, 2007; Prockop, 2007). A Parkinson syndrome sometimes follows after recovery.

Pregnancy and Carbon Monoxide Poisoning

Through several physiological alterations, the rate of endogenous carbon monoxide production almost doubles in normal pregnancy (Longo, 1977). Although the pregnant woman is not more susceptible to carbon monoxide poisoning, the fetus does not tolerate excessive exposure (Friedman, 2015; Nowadly, 2018). With chronic exposure, maternal symptoms usually appear when the carboxyhemoglobin concentration is 5 to 20 percent. Symptoms include headache, weakness, dizziness, physical and visual impairment, palpitations, and nausea and vomiting. With acute exposure, concentrations of 30 to 50 percent produce symptoms of impending cardiovascular collapse. Levels >50 percent may be fatal for the mother.

Because hemoglobin F has an even higher affinity for carbon monoxide, fetal carboxyhemoglobin levels are 10 to 15 percent higher than those in the mother. This may be due to facilitated diffusion (Longo, 1977). Importantly, the half-life of carboxyhemoglobin is 2 hours in the mother but 7 hours in the fetus. Carbon monoxide is bound so tightly to hemoglobin F, the fetus may be hypoxic even before maternal carbon monoxide levels are appreciably elevated. Several anomalies are associated with embryonic exposure, and anoxic encephalopathy is the primary sequela of later fetal exposure (Alehan, 2007; Nowadly, 2018).

Treatment

For all victims, treatment of carbon monoxide poisoning is supportive along with immediate administration of 100-percent inspired oxygen. Indications for hyperbaric oxygen treatment in nonpregnant individuals are unclear (Kao, 2005). Weaver and associates (2002) reported that hyperbaric oxygen treatment minimized the incidence of cognitive defects in adults at both 6 weeks and 1 year compared with normobaric oxygen. Hyperbaric oxygen is generally recommended in pregnancy if carbon monoxide exposure has been "significant" (Aubard, 2000; Ernst, 1998). The problem is how to define significant exposure (Friedman, 2015). Although maternal carbon monoxide levels are not accurately predictive of those in the fetus, some clinicians recommend hyperbaric therapy if maternal levels exceed 15 to 20 percent. Towers and Corcoran (2009) described affected fetuses to have an elevated baseline heart rate, diminished variability, and absent accelerations and decelerations with fetal monitoring. Treatment of the affected newborn with hyperbaric oxygen also is controversial (Bar, 2007).

Elkharrat and coworkers (1991) described successful hyperbaric treatments in 44 pregnant women. In another report, a woman's abnormal neurological and cardiopulmonary findings abated in a parallel fashion with resolution of associated fetal heart rate variable decelerations (Silverman, 1997). Greingor and coworkers (2001) used 2.5-atm hyperbaric 100-percent oxygen for 90 minutes in a 21-week-pregnant woman who was delivered of a healthy neonate at term. The Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society (2021) has a list of accredited facilities.

REFERENCES

Adams SN, Adjent MA, Gebretsadik T, et al: Prenatal vitamin D levels and child wheeze and asthma. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(3):323, 2021

Adhikari M, Pillay T, Pillay DG: Tuberculosis in the newborn: an emerging disease. Pediatr Infect Dis J 16:1108, 1997

Ahmad A, Ahmed A, Patrizio P: Cystic fibrosis and fertility. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 25(3):167, 2013

Ahmad H, Mehta NJ, Manikal VM, et al: Pneumocystis carinii pneumonia in pregnancy. Chest 120:666, 2001

Alehan F, Erol I, Onay OS: Cerebral palsy due to nonlethal maternal carbon monoxide intoxication. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 79(8):614, 2007

Ali Z, Ulrik CS: Incidence and risk factors for exacerbations of asthma during pregnancy. J Asthma Allergy 6:53, 2013

American Academy of Allergy Asthma & Immunology: Drug guide. 2020. Available at: https://www.aaaai.org/Tools-for-the-Public/Drug-Guide. Accessed October 15, 2021

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Assessment and treatment of pregnant women with suspected or confirmed influenza. Committee Opinion No. 753, October 2018a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Influenza vaccination during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 732, April 2018b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Asthma in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 90, February 2008, Reaffirmed 2019

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Carrier screening for genetic conditions. Committee Opinion No. 691, March 2017, Reaffirmed 2020

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Practice advisory: novel coronavirus 2019 (COVID-19). 2021. Available at: www.acog.org/Clinical-Guidance-and-Publications/Practice-Advisories/Practice-Advisory-Novel-Coronavirus2019. Accessed October 15, 2021

Anselmi A, Ruggieri VG, Letheulle J, et al: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in pregnancy. J Card Surg 30(10):781, 2015

Asadi Gharabaghi M, Allameh SF: Primary pulmonary cryptococcosis. BMJ Case Rep 2014:pii: bcr2014203821, 2014

Aubard Y, Magne I: Carbon monoxide poisoning in pregnancy. BJOG 107:833, 2000

Badve SA, Ghate SD, Badve MS, et al: Tuberculosis of spine with neurological deficit in advanced pregnancy: a report of three cases. Spine J 11(1):e9, 2011

Baghlaf H, Spence AR, Czuzoj-Shulman N, et al: Pregnancy outcomes among women with asthma. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(8):1325, 2019

Bain E, Pierides KL, Clifton VL, et al: Interventions for managing asthma in pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD010660, 2014

Bar R, Cohen M, Bentur Y, et al: Pre-labor exposure to carbon monoxide: should the neonate be treated with hyperbaric oxygenation? Clin Toxicol 45(5):579, 2007

Barnes PJ: Asthma. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al: Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 1957

Baughman RP, Lower EE: Sarcoidosis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al: Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2600

Beasley R, Holliday M, Reddel HK, et al: Controlled trial of Budesonide-Formoterol as needed for mild asthma. N Engl J Med 380(21):2020, 2019

Belfort MA, Clark SL, Saade GR, et al: Hospital readmission after delivery: evidence for an increased incidence of nonurogenital infection in the immediate postpartum period. Am J Obstet Gynecol 202:35.e1, 2010

Belgi RH, Venkataramanan R, Caritis SN, et al: Oseltamivir for influenza in pregnancy. Semin Perinatol 38(8):503, 2014

Bercovitch RS, Catanzaro A, Schwartz BS, et al: Coccidioidomycosis during pregnancy: a review and recommendations for management. Clin Infect Dis 53(4):363, 2011

Blais L, Kettani FZ, Forget A: Relationship between maternal asthma, its severity and control and abortion. Hum Reprod 28(4):908, 2013

Blais L, Suissa S, Boivin JF, et al: First treatment with inhaled corticosteroids and the prevention of admissions to hospital for asthma. Thorax 53:1025, 1998

Blanc FX, Sok T, Laureillard D, et al: Earlier versus later start of antiretroviral therapy in HIV-infected adults with tuberculosis. N Engl J Med 365(16):1471, 2011

Boczar M, Sawicka E, Zybert K: Meconium ileus in newborns with cystic fibrosis—results of treatment in the group of patients operated on in the years 2000–2014. Dev Period Med 19(1):32, 2015

Boggess KA, Myers ER, Hamilton CD: Antepartum or postpartum isoniazid treatment of latent tuberculosis infection. Obstet Gynecol 96:747, 2000
Bonham CA, Patterson KC, Strek ME: Asthma outcomes and management during pregnancy. Chest 153(2):515, 2018
Breslin N, Baptiste C, Gyamfi-Bannerman C, et al: COVID-19 infection among asymptomatic and symptomatic pregnant women: Two weeks of confirmed presentations to an affiliated pair of New York City hospitals. Am J Obstet Gynecol April 6. 2020
Briggs GG, Towers CV, Forinash CV: Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation, 12th ed. Philadelphia, Wolters-Kluwer, 2022
Brito V, Niederman MS: Pneumonia complicating pregnancy. Clin Chest Med 32:121, 2011
Brustad N, Eliasen AU, Stokholm J, et al: High-dose vitamin D supplementation during pregnancy and asthma in offspring at the age of 6 years. JAMA 321(10):1003, 2019
Caldwell JW, Asura EL, Kilgore WB, et al: Coccidioidomycosis in pregnancy during an epidemic in California. Obstet Gynecol 95:236, 2000
Callaghan WM, Creanga AA, Jamieson DJ: Pregnancy-related mortality resulting from influenza in the United States during the 2009–2010 pandemic. Obstet Gynecol 126:486, 2015
Cameron AJ, Skinner TA: Management of a parturient with respiratory failure secondary to cystic fibrosis. Anaesthesia 60:77, 2005
Cantu J, Tita AT: Management of influenza in pregnancy. Am J Perinatol 30:99, 2013
Cantwell MF, Shehab ZM, Costello AM, et al: Congenital tuberculosis. N Engl J Med 330:1051, 1994
Cardonick EH, Naktin J, Berghella V: Neurosarcoidosis diagnosed during pregnancy by thoracoscopic lymph node biopsy. J Reprod Med 45:585, 2000
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Severe methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus community-acquired pneumonia associated with influenza—Louisiana and Georgia—December 2006–January 2007. MMWR 56(14):325, 2007
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Treatment of tuberculosis disease. In Introduction to the Core Curriculum on Tuberculosis: What the Clinician Should Know, 6th ed. 2013a
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Tuberculosis infection control. In Introduction to the Core Curriculum on Tuberculosis: What the Clinician Should Know, 6th ed. 2013b
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Influenza (flu) vaccine and pregnancy. 2019a. Available at: www.cdc.gov/vaccines/pregnancy/hcp-toolkit/flu-vaccine-pregnancy.html. Accessed October 16, 2021
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Tuberculosis (TB). 2019b. Available at: www.cdc.gov/tb/statistics/surv/surv2018. Accessed October 16, 2021
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Evaluation and management considerations for neonates at risk for COVID-19. 2020. Available at: www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/hcp/caring-for-newborns.html. Accessed October 15, 2021
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Guidelines for prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in adults and adolescents with HIV. 2021. Available at: clinicalinfo.hiv.gov/sites/default/files/guidelines/documents/Adult_OI.pdf. Accessed October 15, 2021
Chan AL, Juarez MM, Gidwani N, et al: Management of critical asthma syndrome during pregnancy. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol 45(1)45, 2015
Charlton RA, Hutchison A, Davis KJ, et al: Asthma management in pregnancy. PLoS One 8(4):e60247, 2013
Chen H, Guo J, Wang C, et al: Clinical characteristics and intrauterine vertical transmission potential of COVID-19 infection in nine pregnant women: a retrospective review of medical records. Lancet 395(10226):809, 2020
Chen YH, Keller J, Wang IT, et al: Pneumonia and pregnancy outcomes: a nationwide population-base study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207:288.e1, 2012
Clifford C, Mhatre M, Craigo S: Successful use of extracorporeal membrane oxygenation for status asthmaticus in a woman with a periviable pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 132(4):1007, 2018
Clifton VL: Managing asthma in pregnancy: effects on future child health. Lancet Respir Med 7(6):485, 2019
Close A, Gimovsky A, Macri C: Adult respiratory distress due to Legionnaires disease in pregnancy: a case report. J Reprod Med 61(1–2):83, 2016
Cloutier MM, Baptist AP, Blake KV, et al: 2020 focused updates to the asthma management guidelines: a report from the National Asthma Education and Prevention Program Coordinating Committee Expert Panel Working Group. J Allergy Clin Immunol 146(6):1217, 2020
Cohen LF, di Sant Agnese PA, Friedlander J: Cystic fibrosis and pregnancy: a national survey. Lancet 2:842, 1980
Conlin AM, Bukowinski AT, Levine JA, et al: A follow-up comparative safety analysis of pandemic H1N1 vaccination during pregnancy and risk of infant birth defects among U.S. military mothers. Vaccine 36(20):2855, 2018
Crum NF, Ballon-Landa G: Coccidioidomycosis in pregnancy: case report and review of the literature. Am J Med 119:993, 2006
Cruz CA, Caughey AB, Jasmer R: Postpartum follow-up of a positive purified protein derivative (PPD) among an indigent population. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:1455, 2005
Datkhaeva I, Has P, Fitzgerald K, et al: Outcomes of a negative rapid influenza diagnostic test in pregnant women. Am J Perinatol 36(1):90, 2019
Davies JC, Moskowitz SM, Brown C, et al: VX-659-tezacaftor-ivacaftor in patients with cystic fibrosis and one or two phe508del alleles. N Engl J Med 379(17):1599, 2018
Deighan M, Ash S, McMorrow R: Anaesthesia for parturients with severe cystic fibrosis: a case series. Int J Obstet Anesth 23(1):75, 2014
Dennis EM, Hao Y, Tamambang M, et al: Tuberculosis during pregnancy in the United States: racial/ethnic disparities in pregnancy complications and in-hospital death. PLoS One 13(3):e0194836, 2018
Dodds L, McNeil SA, Fell DB, et al: Impact of influenza exposure on rates of hospital admissions and physician visits because of respiratory illness among pregnant women. CMAJ 17:463, 2007
Dolin R: Common viral respiratory infections. In Longo D, Fauci A, Kasper D, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 18th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2012, p 1485
Dombrowski MP: Asthma and pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 108:667, 2006
Dombrowski MP, Schatz M, Wise R, et al: Asthma during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 103:5, 2004
Donahue JG, Kieke BA, King JP, et al: Association of spontaneous abortion with receipt of inactivated influenza vaccine containing H1N1pdm09 in 2010–11 and 2011–12. Vaccine 35(40):5314, 2017
Dorman SE, Nahid P, Kurbatova EV, et al: Four-month rifapentine regimens with or without moxifloxacin for tuberculosis. N Engl J Med 384(18):1705, 2021
Edenborough FP, Mackenzie WE, Stableforth DE: The outcome of 72 pregnancies in 55 women with cystic fibrosis in the United Kingdom 1977–1996. BJOG 107:254, 2000
Edenborough FP, Stableforth DE, Webb AK, et al: The outcome of pregnancy in cystic fibrosis. Thorax 50:170, 1995
Edwards JE: Diagnosis and treatment of fungal infections. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al: Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 1515
Efferen LS: Tuberculosis and pregnancy. Curr Opin Pulm Med 13:205, 2007
Elkharrat D, Raphael JC, Korach JM, et al: Acute carbon monoxide intoxication and hyperbaric oxygen in pregnancy. Intensive Care Med 17:289, 1991
El-Messidi A, Czuzoj-Shulman N, Spence AR, et al: Medical and obstetric outcomes among pregnant women with tuberculosis: a population-based study of 7.8 million births. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(6):797.e1, 2016
Eltonsy S, Blais L: Asthma during pregnancy and congenital malformations: the challenging task of separating the medication effect from asthma itself. J Allergy Clin Immunol 137(5):1623, 2016
Enriquez R, Pingsheng W, Griffin MR, et al: Cessation of asthma medication in early pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:149, 2006
Ernst A, Zibrak JD: Carbon monoxide poisoning. N Engl J Med 339:1603, 1998
Esmail A, Sabur NF, Okpechi I, et al: Management of drug-resistant tuberculosis in special sub-populations including those with HIV co-infection, pregnancy, diabetes, organ-specific dysfunction, and in the critically ill. J Thorac Dis 10(5):3102, 2018
Fanta CH: Asthma. N Engl J Med 360:1002, 2009
Finland M, Dublin TD: Pneumococcic pneumonias complicating pregnancy and the puerperium. JAMA 112:1027, 1939
Fitzsimmons SC, Fitzpatrick S, Thompson D, et al: A longitudinal study of the effects of pregnancy on 325 women with cystic fibrosis. Pediatr Pulmonol l13:99, 1996
Flores KF, Bandoli G, Chambers CD, et al: Asthma prevalence among women aged 18 to 44 in the United States: national health and nutrition examination survey 2001–2016. J Asthma 57(7):693, 2020
Freedman MS, Ault K, Bernstein H: Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices recommended immunization schedule for adults aged 19 years or older—United States, 2021. MMWR 70(6):193, 2021
Friedman P, Guo XM, Stiller RJ, et al: Carbon monoxide exposure during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 70(11):705, 2015
Gazmararian JA, Petersen R, Jamieson DJ, et al: Hospitalizations during pregnancy among managed care enrollees. Obstet Gynecol 100:94, 2002
Getahun D, Ananth CV, Oyelese Y, et al: Acute and chronic respiratory diseases in pregnancy: associations with spontaneous premature rupture of membranes. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 20:669, 2007
Getahun H, Matteelli A, Chaisson R, et al: Latent *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* infection. N Engl J Med 372:2127, 2015

Gidaya NB, Lee BK, Burstyn I, et al: In utero exposure to β-2-adrenergic receptor agonist drugs and risk for autism spectrum disorders. Pediatrics 137(2):1, 2016
Gillet D, de Brackeleer M, Bellis G, et al: Cystic fibrosis and pregnancy. Report from French data (1980–1999). BJOG 109:912, 2002
Gluck JC, Gluck PA: The effect of pregnancy on the course of asthma. Immunol Allergy Clin North Am 26:63, 2006
Greingor JL, Tosi JM, Ruhlmann S, et al: Acute carbon monoxide intoxication during pregnancy. One case report and review of the literature. Emerg Med J 18:399, 2001
Grindheim G, Toska K, Estensen ME, et al: Changes in pulmonary function during pregnancy: a longitudinal cohort study. BJOG 119:94, 2012
Gyi KM, Hodson ME, Yacoub MY: Pregnancy in cystic fibrosis lung transplant recipients: case series and review. J Cyst Fibros 5(3):171, 2006
Hadid V, Patenaude V, Oddy L, et al: Sarcoidosis and pregnancy: obstetrical and neonatal outcomes in a population-based cohort of 7 million births. J Perinat Med 43(2):201, 2015
Han Y, Lee JH, Chang JH, et al: Clinical features and outcomes in patients with pulmonary complications during pregnancy and peripartum. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(7):1191, 2020
Harger JH, Ernest JM, Thurnau GR, et al: Risk factors and outcome of varicella-zoster virus pneumonia in pregnant women. J Infect Dis 185:422, 2002
Havlir DV, Kendall MA, Ive P, et al: Timing of antiretroviral therapy for HIV-1 infection and tuberculosis. N Engl J Med 365(16):1482, 2011
Hendler I, Schatz M, Momirova V, et al: Association of obesity with pulmonary and nonpulmonary complications of pregnancy in asthmatic women. Obstet Gynecol 108(1):77, 2006
Heron M: Deaths: leading causes for 2015. Natl Vital Stat Rep 66(5):1, 2017
Hill WC, Paruolo JB, Giovino AC: Prophylaxis for tuberculosis in pregnant women. Clin Obstet Gynecol 62(4):846, 2019
Huang DT, Yealy DM, Filbin MR, et al: Procalcitonin-guided use of antibiotics for lower respiratory tract infection. N Engl J Med 379(3):236, 2018
Huang YS, Liu CE, Lin SP, et al: Echinocandins as alternative treatment for HIV-infected patients with Pneumocystis pneumonia. AIDS 33(8):1345, 2019
Irwin RS, French CL, Change AB, et al: Classification of cough as a symptom in adults and management algorithms: CHEST guideline and expert panel report. Chest 153(1):196, 2018
Jacobs RF, Abernathy RS: Management of tuberculosis in pregnancy and the newborn. Clin Perinatol 15:305, 1988
Jain S, Self WH, Wunderink RG, et al: Community-acquired pneumonia requiring hospitalization among U.S. adults. N Engl J Med 373:415, 2015
Jana N, Vasishta K, Saha SC, et al: Obstetrical outcomes among women with extrapulmonary tuberculosis. N Engl J Med 341:645, 1999
Jenkins TM, Troiano NH, Grave CR, et al: Mechanical ventilation in an obstetric population: characteristics and delivery rates. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:549, 2003
Jensen ME, Murphy VE, Gibson PG, et al: Vitamin D status in pregnant women with asthma and its association with adverse respiratory outcomes during infancy. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(11):1820, 2019
Jin Y, Carriere KC, Marrie TJ, et al: The effects of community-acquired pneumonia during pregnancy ending with a live birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:800, 2003
Kao LW, Nañagas KA: Carbon monoxide poisoning. Med Clin North Am 89(6):1161, 2005
Keating D, Marigowda G, Burr L, et al: VX-445-tezacaftor-ivacaftor in patients with cystic fibrosis and one or two Phe508del Alleles. N Engl J Med 379(17):1612, 2018
Kemppainen M, Lahesmaa-Korpinen AM, Kauppi P, et al: Maternal asthma is associated with increased risk of perinatal mortality. PLoS One 13(5):e0197593, 2018
Kent NE, Farquharson DF: Cystic fibrosis in pregnancy. Can Med Assoc J 149:809, 1993
Kodadhala V, Obi J, Wessly P, et al: Asthma-related mortality in the United States, 1999 to 2015: A multiple causes of death analysis. Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol 120(6):614, 2018
Kutlu T, Tugrul S, Aydin A, et al: Tuberculosis meningitis in pregnancy presenting as hyperemesis gravidarum. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 20:357, 2007
Lai RP, Meintjes G, Wilkinson RJ: HIV-1 tuberculosis-associated immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome. Semin Immunopathol 38(2):185, 2016
Lazarus SC: Emergency treatment of asthma. N Engl J Med 363(8):755, 2010
Levison JH, Barbieri RL, Katx JT, et al: Hard to conceive. N Engl J Med 363(10):965, 2010
Lewinsohn DM, Leonard MK, LoBue PA, et al: Official American Thoracic Society/Infectious Diseases Society of America/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention clinical practice guidelines: diagnosis of tuberculosis in adults and children. Clin Infect Dis 65(2):111, 2017
Lewis PO, Khan I, Patel P: Successful stepdown treatment of pulmonary histoplasmosis with thrice-weekly liposomal amphotericin B in a hospital-associated outpatient infusion centre: a case report. J Clin Pharm Ther 43(2):269, 2018
Lim AS, Stewart K, Abramson MJ, et al: Multidisciplinary approach to management of maternal asthma (MAMMA): a randomized controlled trial. Chest 145(5):1046, 2014
Lindley MD, Kahn KE, Bardenheier BH, et al: Burden and prevention of influenza and pertussis among pregnant women and infants-United States. MMWR 68:885, 2019
Llewelyn M, Cropley I, Wilkinson RJ, et al: Tuberculosis diagnosed during pregnancy: a prospective study from London. Thorax 55:129, 2000
Lo CP, Chen SY, Lee KW, et al: Brain injury after acute carbon monoxide poisoning: early and late complications. AJR Am J Roentgenol 189(4):W205, 2007
Longo L: The biologic effects of carbon monoxide on the pregnant woman, fetus and newborn infant. Am J Obstet Gynecol 129:69, 1977
Louie JK, Sailbay CJ, Kang M, et al: Pregnancy and severe influenza infection in the 2013–2014 influenza season. Obstet Gynecol 125(1):184, 2015
Mabie WC, Barton JR, Wasserstrum N, et al: Clinical observations on asthma in pregnancy. J Matern Fetal Med 1:45, 1992
Madhi SA, Cutland CL, Kuwanda L, et al: Influenza vaccination of pregnant women and protection of their infants. N Engl J Med 371(10):918, 2014
Maisel JA, Lynam T: Unexpected sudden death in a young pregnant woman: unusual presentation of neurosarcoidosis. Ann Emerg Med 28:94, 1996
Mandell LA, Wunderink R: Pneumonia. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al: Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 908
Mansour MK, Ackman JB, Branda JA, et al: Case 32–2015: a 57-year-old man with severe pneumonia and hypoxemic respiratory failure. New Engl J Med 373:1554, 2015
Maxwell C, McGeer A, Tai KF, et al: No. 225-management guidelines for obstetric patients and neonates born to mothers with suspected or probable severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS). J Obstet Gynaecol Can 39(8):e130 2017
Mayer AP, Morris MF, Panse PM, et al: Does the presence of mediastinal adenopathy confer a risk for disseminated infection in immunocompetent persons with pulmonary coccidioidomycosis? Mycoses 56(2):145, 2013
Mazurek JM, Syamlal G: Prevalence of asthma, asthma attacks, and emergency department visits for asthma among working adults–national health interview survey, 2011–2016. MMWR 67(13):377, 2018
Mendola P, Laughon SK, Männistö TI, et al: Obstetric complications among US women with asthma. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(2):127.e1, 2013
Mendola P, Männistö TI, Leishear K, et al: Neonatal health of infants born to mothers with asthma. J Allergy Clin Immunol 133(1):85, 2014
Mert A, Kumbasar H, Ozaras R, et al: Erythema nodosum: an evaluation of 100 cases. Clin Exp Rheumatol 25:563, 2007
Mertz D, Lo CK, Lytvyn L, et al: Pregnancy as a risk factor for severe influenza infection: an individual participant data meta-analysis. BMC Infect Dis 19(1):683, 2019
Metlay JP, Waterer GW, Long AC, et al: Diagnosis and treatment of adults with community-acquired pneumonia. An official clinical practice guideline of the American Thoracic Society and Infectious Diseases Society of America. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 200(7):e45, 2019
Moore AR, Rogers FM, Dietrick D, et al: Extrapulmonary tuberculosis in pregnancy masquerading as a degenerating leiomyoma. Obstet Gynecol 111(2): 551, 2008
Moran GJ, Rothman RE, Volturo GA: Emergency management of community-acquired bacterial pneumonia: what is new since the 2007 Infectious Diseases Society of America/American Thoracic Society guidelines. Am J Obstet Gynecol 31:602, 2013
Moro RN, Scott NA, Vernon A, et al: Exposure to latent tuberculosis treatment during pregnancy. The PREVENT TB and the iAdhere trials. Ann Am Thorac Soc 15(5):570, 2018
Morris A, Masur H: *Pneumocystis* infections. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al: Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 1847
Munoz FM, Jamieson DJ: Maternal immunization. Obstet Gynecol 133(4):739, 2019
Murphy VE, Powell H, Wark PA: A prospective study of respiratory viral infection in pregnant women with and without asthma. Chest 144(2):420, 2013a
Murphy VE, Wang G, Namazy JA, et al: The risk of congenital malformations, perinatal mortality and neonatal hospitalization among pregnant women with asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 120(7):812, 2013b
Musher DM, Thorner AR: Community-acquired pneumonia. N Engl J Med 371:1619, 2014

Muthuri SG, Venkatesan S, Myles PR, et al: Effectiveness of neuraminidase inhibitors in reducing mortality in patients admitted to hospital with influenza A H1N1pdm09 virus infection: a meta-analysis of individual participant data. Lancet Respir Med 2:395, 2014
Nahid P, Dorman SE, Alipanah N, et al: Executive summary: Official American Thoracic Society/Centers for Disease Control and Prevention/Infection Diseases Society of America clinical practice guidelines: treatment of drug-susceptible tuberculosis. Clin Infect Dis 63(7):853, 2016
National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute: Expert panel report 3: guidelines for the diagnosis and management of asthma, 2007. Available at: www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health-topics/guidelines-for-diagnosis-management-of-asthma. Accessed January 10, 2020
Ng WF, Wong SF, Lam A, et al: The placentas of patients with severe acute respiratory syndrome: a pathophysiological evaluation. Pathology 38:210, 2006
Nigam A, Prakash A, Pathak P, et al: Bilateral psoas abscess during pregnancy presenting as an acute abdomen: atypical presentation. BMJ Case Rep 2013:pii:bcr2013200860, 2013
Nowadly C, Johnson-Arbor K, Boyle A: Severe unintentional first trimester carbon monoxide poisoning: case report. Undersea Hyperb Med 45(4):453, 2018
Oboho IK, Reed C, Gargiullo P, et al: Benefit of early initiation of influenza antiviral treatment to pregnant women hospitalized with laboratory-confirmed influenza. J Infect Dis 214(4):507, 2016
O'Leary ST, Riley LE, Lindley MC, et al: Obstetrician-Gynecologists' strategies to address vaccine refusal among pregnant women. Obstet Gynecol 133(1):40, 2019
Olson GL: Cystic fibrosis in pregnancy. Semin Perinatol 21:307, 1997
Paranyuk Y, Levine G, Figueroa R: *Candida* septicemia in a pregnant woman with hyperemesis receiving parenteral nutrition. Obstet Gynecol 107:535, 2006
Patel EM, Swamy GK, Heine RP, et al: Medical and obstetric complications among pregnant women with cystic fibrosis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212:98.e1, 2015
Patel S, Lee RH: The case of the sinister spores: the patient was hospitalized for a menacing infection in the second trimester of pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(5):417.e1, 2013
Pfeffer PE, Hawrylowicz CM: Vitamin D in asthma: mechanisms of action and considerations for clinical trials. Chest 153(5):1229, 2018
Pilmis B, Jullien V, Sobel J, et al: Antifungal drugs during pregnancy: an updated review. J Antimicrob Chemother 70(1):14, 2015
Powell H, Murphy VE, Taylor DR, et al: Management of asthma in pregnancy guided by measurement of fraction of exhaled nitric oxide: a double-blind, randomised controlled trial. Lancet 378(9795):983, 2011
Prasad N, Huang QS, Wood T, et al: Influenza-associated outcomes among pregnant, postpartum, and nonpregnant women of reproductive age. J Infect Dis 219(12):1893, 2019
Prevost MR, Fung Kee Fung KM: Tuberculous meningitis in pregnancy—implications for mother and fetus: case report and literature review. J Matern Fetal Med 8:289, 1999
Prockop LD, Chichkova RI: Carbon monoxide intoxication: an updated review. J Neurol Sci 262(1–2):122, 2007
Racusin DA, Fox KA, Ramin SM: Severe acute asthma. Semin Perinatol 37(4):234, 2013
Rasmussen SA, Jamieson DJ: 2009 H1N1 Influenza and pregnancy—5 years later. N Engl J Med 371:1373, 2014
Rasmussen SA, Jamieson DJ: Influenza and pregnancy: no time for complacency. Obstet Gynecol 133(1):23, 2019
Rasmussen SA, Smulian JC, Lednicky JA, et al: Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) and pregnancy: what obstetricians need to know. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(5):415, 2020
Raviglione MC: Tuberculosis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al: Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 1236
Rego de Figueiredo I, Vieira Alves R, Drummond Borges D, et al: Pneumocystosis pneumonia: a comparison study between HIV and non-HIV immunocompromised patients. Pulmonology 25(5):271, 2019
Reynaud Q, Poupon-Bourdy S, Rabilloud M, et al: Pregnancy outcome in women with cystic fibrosis-related diabetes. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 96(10):1223, 2017
Reynaud Q, Rousset Jablonski C, Poupon-Bourdy S, et al: Pregnancy outcome in women with cystic fibrosis and poor pulmonary function. J Cyst Fibros 19(1):80, 2020
Robijn AL, Jensen ME, Gibson PG, et al: Trends in asthma self-management skills and inhaled corticosteroid use during pregnancy and postpartum from 2004 to 2017. J Asthma 56(6):594, 2019
Rogers VL, Sheffield JS, Roberts SW, et al: Presentation of seasonal influenza A in pregnancy: 2003–2004 influenza season. Obstet Gynecol 115(5):924, 2010
Rolston DH, Shnider SM, de Lorimer AA: Uterine blood flow and fetal acid–base changes after bicarbonate administration to the pregnant ewe. Anesthesiology 40:348, 1974
Rosenstein NE, Emery KW, Werner SB, et al: Risk factors for severe pulmonary and disseminated coccidioidomycosis: Kern County, California, 1995–1996. Clin Infect Dis 32:708, 2001
Rush B, Martinka P, Kilb B, et al: Acute respiratory distress syndrome in pregnant women. Obstet Gynecol 129(3):530, 2017
Saad AF, Rahman M, Maybauer DM, et al: Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in pregnant and postpartum women with H1N1-related acute respiratory distress syndrome. Obstet Gynecol 127:241, 2016
Sackoff JE, Pfieffer MR, Driver CR, et al: Tuberculosis prevention for non-U.S.-born pregnant women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194:451, 2006
Schanzer DL, Langley JM, Tam TW: Influenza-attributed hospitalization rates among pregnant women in Canada 1994–2000. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 29:622, 2007
Schatz M, Dombrowski MP, Wise R, et al: Asthma morbidity during pregnancy can be predicted by severity classification. J Allergy Clin Immunol 112:283, 2003
Schatz M, Dombrowski MP, Wise R, et al: Spirometry is related to perinatal outcomes in pregnant women with asthma. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194:120, 2006
Schechter MS, Quittner AL, Konstan MW, et al: Long-term effects of pregnancy and motherhood on disease outcomes of women with cystic fibrosis. Ann Am Thorac Soc 10(3):213, 2013
Schlüter DK, Griffiths R, Adam A, et al: Impact of cystic fibrosis on birthweight: a population based study of children in Denmark and Wales. Thorax 74(5):447, 2019
Schulte JM, Bryan P, Dodds S, et al: Tuberculosis skin testing among HIV-infected pregnant women in Miami, 1995 to 1996. J Perinatol 22:159, 2002
Shaked E, Wainstock T, Sheiner E, et al: Maternal asthma: pregnancy course and outcome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(1):103, 2019
Shariatzadeh MR, Marrie TJ: Pneumonia during pregnancy. Am J Med 119:872, 2006
Sheffield JS, Cunningham FG: Management of community-acquired pneumonia in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 114(4):915, 2009
Sherer DM, Osho JA, Zinn H, et al: Peripartum disseminated extrapulmonary tuberculosis simulating ovarian carcinoma. Am J Perinatol 22:383, 2005
Shi D, Wang D, Meng Y, et al: Maternal vitamin D intake during pregnancy and risk of asthma and wheeze in children: a systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(4):653, 2021
Silverman RK, Montano J: Hyperbaric oxygen treatment during pregnancy in acute carbon monoxide poisoning. A case report. J Reprod Med 42:309, 1997
Smith SM, Fahey T, Smucny J, et al: Antibiotics for acute bronchitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD000245, 2017
Sobhy S, Babiker Z, Zamora J, et al: Maternal and perinatal mortality and morbidity associated with tuberculosis during pregnancy and the postpartum period: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 124(4):727, 2017
Sorscher EJ: Cystic fibrosis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al: Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 1986
Sosa LI, Njie GJ, Lobato MN, et al: Tuberculosis screening, testing, and treatment of U.S. health care personnel: recommendations from the National Tuberculosis Controllers Association and CDC, 2019. MMWR 68(19):439, 2019
Spagnolo P, Rossi G, Trisolini R, et al: Pulmonary sarcoidosis. Lancet Respir Med 6(5):389, 2018
Sperling RS, Riley LE, Immunization and Emerging Infections Expert Work Group: influenza vaccination, pregnancy safety, and risk of early pregnancy loss. Obstet Gynecol 131(5):799, 2018
Spinello IM, Johnson RH, Baqi S: Coccidioidomycosis and pregnancy: a review. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1111:358, 2007
Steinack C, Lenherr R, Hendra H, et al: The use of life-saving extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) for pregnant woman with status asthmaticus. J Asthma 54(1):84, 2017
Sterling TR, Njie G, Zenner D, et al: Guidelines for the treatment of latent tuberculosis infection: recommendations from thhe National Tuberculosis Controllers Association and CDC, 2020. MMWR 69(1):1, 2020
Stoller KP: Hyperbaric oxygen and carbon monoxide poisoning: a critical review. Neurol Res 29(2):146, 2007
Stratton P, Mofenson LM, Willoughby AD: Human immunodeficiency virus infection in pregnant women under care at AIDS Clinical Trials Centers in the United States. Obstet Gynecol 79:364, 1992

Sylvester-Armstrong KR, Duff P, Genç MR: Are peripartum stress-dose steroids necessary? Obstet Gynecol 135(3):522, 2020

Tata LJ, Lewis SA, McKeever TM, et al: A comprehensive analysis of adverse obstetric and pediatric complications in women with asthma. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 175:991, 2007

Taylor AW, Mosimaneotsile B, Mathebula U, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in HIV-infected women receiving long-term isoniazid prophylaxis for tuberculosis and antiretroviral therapy. Infect Dis Obstet Gynecol 2013:195637, 2013

Terlizzi V, Sciarrone A, Cook AC, et al: Extensive myocardial infarction in a fetus with cystic fibrosis and meconium peritonitis. J Ultrasound Med 35(8):1826, 2016

Terraneo S, Polverino E, Cilloniz C, et al: Severity and outcomes of community acquired pneumonia in asthmatic patients. Respir Med 108(11):1713, 2014

Therapeutic Research Center: inhaled corticosteroid dose comparison in asthma. 2017. Available at: https://www.epocrates.com/sites/default/files/res/dacc/2017/InhaledCorticosteroidDoseComparePL1704.pdf. Accessed February 24, 2020

Thorpe-Beeston JG, Madge S, Gyi K, et al: The outcome of pregnancies in women with cystic fibrosis—single centre experience 1998–2011. BJOG 120(3):354, 2013

Tita AT, Andrews WW: Influenza vaccination and antiviral therapy in pregnant women. J Infect Dis 214(4):505, 2016

Torres A, Menéndez R: Hospital admission in community-acquired pneumonia. [Spanish]. Med Clin (Barc) 131(6):216, 2008

Towers CV, Corcoran VA: Influence of carbon monoxide poisoning on the fetal heart monitor tracing: a report of 3 cases. J Reprod Med 54(3):184, 2009

Traxler SA, Chavez V, Hadijiliadis D, et al: Fertility considerations and attitudes about family planning among women with cystic fibrosis. Contraception 100(3):228, 2019

Undersea and Hyperbaric Medical Society: Chamber directory. 2021. Available at: www.uhms.org/resources/chamber-directory.html. Accessed October 15, 2021

Varner MW, Rice MM, Anderson B, et al: Influenza-like illness in hospitalized pregnant and postpartum women during the 2009–20120 H1N1 pandemic. Obstet Gynecol 118(3):593, 2011

Wallmüller C, Domanovits H, Mayr FB, et al: Cardiac arrest in a 35-year-old pregnant woman with sarcoidosis. Resuscitation 83(6):e151, 2012

Walsh LK, Donelle J, Dodds L, et al: Health outcomes of young children born to mothers who received 2009 pandemic H1N1 influenza vaccination during pregnancy: retrospective cohort study. BMJ 366:l4151, 2019

Wang G, Murphy VE, Namazy J, et al: The risk of maternal and placental complications in pregnant women with asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 27(9):934, 2014

Weaver LK, Hopkins RO, Chan KJ, et al: Hyperbaric oxygen for acute carbon monoxide poisoning. N Engl J Med 347:1057, 2002

Wendel PJ, Ramin SM, Hamm CB, et al: Asthma treatment in pregnancy: a randomized controlled study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 175:150, 1996

World Health Organization: Guidelines for treatment of drug-susceptible tuberculosis and patient care (2017 update). 2017. Available at: https://www.who.int/tb/publications/2017/dstb_guidance_2017/en/. Accessed February 17, 2020

Wright PF: Influenza. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al: Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 1382

Yeh JJ, Lin SC, Lin WC: Congenital tuberculosis in a neonate: a case report and literature review. Front Pediatr 7:255, 2019

Yost NP, Bloom SL, Richey SD, et al: An appraisal of treatment guidelines for antepartum community-acquired pneumonia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183: 131, 2000

Youssef D, Raval B, El-Abbassi A, et al: Pulmonary blastomycosis during pregnancy: case report and review of the literature. Tenn Med 106(3):37, 2013

Yusen RD, Edwards LB, Kucheryavaya AY, et al: The registry of the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation: thirty-second official adult lung and heart-lung transplantation report—2015; focus theme: early graft failure. J Heart Lung Transplant 34(10):1264, 2015

Zairina E, Abramson MJ, McDonald CF, et al: A prospective cohort study of pulmonary function during pregnancy in women with and without asthma. J Asthma 12:1, 2015

Zeeman GG, Wendel GD, Cunningham FG: A blueprint for obstetrical critical care. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:532, 2003

Zenner D, Kruijshaar ME, Andrews N, et al: Risk of tuberculosis in pregnancy: a national, primary care-based cohort and self-controlled case series study. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 185(7):779, 2012

Zhu H, Wang L, Fang C, et al: Clinical analysis of 10 neonates born to mothers with 2019-nCoV pneumonia. Transl Pediatr 9(1):51, 2020

Zumla A, Raviglione M, Hafner R, et al: Tuberculosis. N Engl J Med 368:745, 2013

CHAPTER 55

Thromboembolic Disorders

During the past century, the frequency of venous thromboembolism (VTE) during the puerperium decreased remarkably as early ambulation became routine practice. Despite this and other advances in prevention and treatment, thromboembolism remains a leading cause of maternal morbidity and mortality (Abe, 2019). Thrombotic pulmonary embolism accounted for almost 10 percent of pregnancy-related deaths in the United States between 2011 and 2015 (Creanga, 2017; Petersen, 2019).

The absolute incidence of VTE during pregnancy is low—1 or 2 cases per 1000 pregnancies. However, the risk is approximately five times higher than that among women who are not pregnant (Greer, 2015). Approximately equal numbers of cases are identified antepartum and in the puerperium. But deep-vein thrombosis alone is more frequent antepartum, and pulmonary embolism is more common postpartum. During the first 6 weeks of the puerperium, the estimated incidence of a thromboembolic complication is 22 events per 100,000 deliveries. Although still elevated, the risk falls to approximately 3 cases per 100,000 deliveries during the second 6-week postpartum period (Kamei, 2014). As many as 2 percent of these women have postthrombotic syndrome (Govindappagari, 2020).

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Rudolf Virchow (1856) postulated that stasis, local trauma to the vessel wall, and hypercoagulability predisposed to venous thrombosis. During pregnancy, the risk for each of these rises. Compression of the pelvic veins and inferior vena cava by the enlarging uterus renders the lower extremity venous system particularly vulnerable to stasis. Marik and Plante (2008) cite a 50-percent reduction in venous flow velocity in the legs that lasts from the early third trimester until 6 weeks postpartum. This stasis is the most constant predisposing risk factor for venous thrombosis. Venous stasis, delivery, preeclampsia, and sepsis contribute to endothelial cell injury. Last, as listed in the Appendix (p. 1228), the synthesis of most clotting factors is markedly enhanced during pregnancy and favors coagulation.

Risk factors for developing VTE during pregnancy are shown in Table 55-1. The most important of these is a personal history of thrombosis. Specifically, 15 to 25 percent of all VTE cases during pregnancy are recurrent events (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). Another important individual risk factor is a genetically determined thrombophilia. An estimated 20 to 50 percent of women who develop a venous thrombosis during pregnancy or postpartum have an identifiable underlying procoagulant genetic disorder (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

Calculated risks for thromboembolism are approximately doubled in women with multifetal gestation, anemia, hyperemesis, hemorrhage, cesarean delivery, obesity, preeclampsia, and postpartum infection (Waldman, 2013). Scheres and

TABLE 55-1. Some Risk Factors Associated with an Increased Risk for VTE

Obstetrical	General
Cesarean delivery	Age 35 years or older
Cesarean hysterectomy	Anatomical anomaly[a]
Diabetes mellitus	Antiphospholipid antibodies
Hemorrhage and anemia	Connective tissue disease
Hyperemesis	Dehydration
Immobility—prolonged bed rest	Hormonal contraceptives
Multifetal gestation	Hospitalization
Multiparity	Immobility
Preeclampsia	Infection and inflammatory disease
Puerperal infection	Inflammatory bowel disease
Stillbirth	Malignancy
	Nephrotic syndrome
	Obesity
	Orthopedic procedures
	Paraplegia
	Prior VTE
	Sickle-cell disease
	Smoking
	Surgery
	Thrombophilia

[a]Includes May-Thurner syndrome (iliac vein compression syndrome).
VTE = venous thromboembolism.

coworkers (2020) had similar observations for women with preeclampsia. Risks were significantly higher among women who had a stillbirth or who underwent peripartum hysterectomy. Last, as discussed in Chapter 57 (p. 1021), inflammatory bowel disease increases the risk two- to threefold (Kim, 2019).

THROMBOPHILIAS

Several important regulatory proteins act as inhibitors in the coagulation cascade (Fig. 55-1). Normal values for many of these proteins during pregnancy are found in the Appendix (p. 1228). Inherited or acquired deficiencies of these inhibitory proteins are collectively referred to as *thrombophilias*. These can lead to hypercoagulability and recurrent VTE (Connors, 2017). Although these disorders are collectively present in approximately 15 percent of white European populations, they are responsible for approximately 50 percent of all thromboembolic events during pregnancy (Pierangeli, 2011). Some aspects of the more common inherited thrombophilias related to VTE are summarized in Table 55-2.

Inherited Thrombophilias

Patients with inherited thrombophilic disorders often have a family history of thrombosis. These mutations are also found in up to half of all patients who present with VTE before the age of 45 years, particularly in those whose event occurred in the absence of well-recognized risk factors. Of greatest significance is a family history of sudden death due to pulmonary embolism or a history of multiple family members requiring long-term anticoagulation therapy because of recurrent thrombosis (Connors, 2017).

Antithrombin Deficiency

Synthesized in the liver, antithrombin is one of the most important inhibitors of thrombin and inactivates thrombin and factor Xa (Rhéaume, 2016). Notably, the rate of antithrombin interaction with its target is accelerated over 1000–fo1d by heparin. Antithrombin deficiency may result from hundreds of different mutations that are almost always autosomal dominant. Type I deficiency results from reduced synthesis of biologically normal antithrombin, and type II deficiency is characterized by normal levels of antithrombin with reduced functional activity.

Homozygous antithrombin deficiency is lethal. Heterozygous deficiency affects approximately 1 in 2500 individuals. It is the most thrombogenic of the heritable coagulopathies. The risk for thrombosis correlates with the degree of deficiency. Antithrombin deficiency is associated with a 25- to 50-fold higher relative risk of VTE in the general population and a sixfold increased risk of thromboembolic complications during pregnancy (Ilonczai, 2015). As shown in Table 55-2, those affected have an inordinately high risk of VTE during pregnancy.

Sabadell and associates (2010) studied the outcomes of 18 pregnancies complicated by antithrombin deficiency. Twelve of these women were treated with therapeutic doses of low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH). Three of the untreated patients suffered a thromboembolic episode compared with none in the treated group. Untreated women also had a 50-percent risk of stillbirth and fetal-growth restriction. By comparison, none of the treated women had a stillbirth, but a fourth developed fetal-growth restriction. Abbattista and coworkers (2020) reported a 7-percent risk of VTE for women treated with LMWH during pregnancy and a 12-percent risk for those not treated. Similar results were reported by Ilonczai and colleagues (2015). Last, Garcia-Botella and associates (2016) described a mesenteric vein thrombosis in a pregnant woman with antithrombin deficiency.

Given such risk, affected women are managed during pregnancy with anticoagulation regardless of whether they have had a prior thrombosis (Abbattista, 2020; Bates, 2018). When anticoagulation is necessarily withheld, such as during surgery or delivery, or if VTE develops in an anticoagulated woman, treatment with recombinant human antithrombin may be protective (Paidas, 2016).

Protein C Deficiency

When thrombin is bound to thrombomodulin on endothelial cells of small vessels, its procoagulant activities are neutralized. This binding also activates protein C, a natural anticoagulant. It, in the presence of protein S, controls thrombin generation, in part, by inactivating factors Va and VIIIa (see Fig. 55-1). Protein C activity increases modestly but significantly throughout the first half of pregnancy, and some have speculated that this augmentation may play a role in maintaining early pregnancy through both anticoagulant and inflammatory regulatory pathways (Said, 2010).

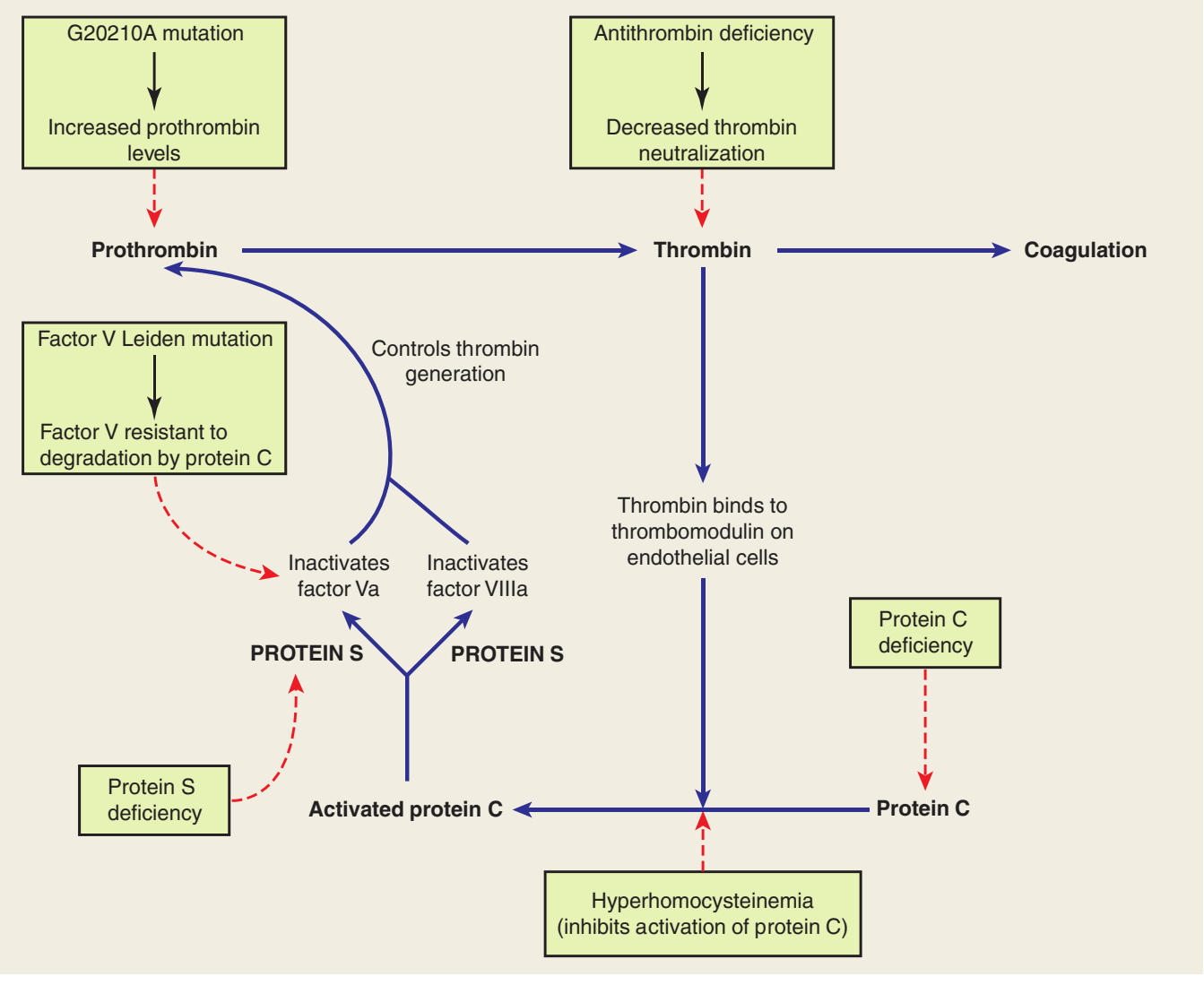


FIGURE 55-1 Inherited thrombophilias and their effect(s) on the coagulation cascade.

TABLE 55-2. Inherited Thrombophilias and Their Association with Venous Thromboembolism (VTE) in Pregnancy

	VTE Risk per Pregnancy (%)		
	No History	Prior VTE	Family History
Factor V Leiden heterozygote	0.5–3.1	10	0.06–1.2
Factor V Leiden homozygote	2.2–1.4	17	1–16
Prothrombin gene heterozygote	0.4–2.6	>10	0–0.73
Prothrombin gene homozygote	2–4	>17	1.6
Factor V Leiden/prothrombin double heterozygote	8.2	>20	0–2.4
Antithrombin deficiency	0.2–1.16	40	0–8
Protein C deficiency	0.1–5.4	4–17	0–5
Protein S deficiency	0.1–6.6	0–22	0–1.5
Hyperhomocysteinemia	0	0	<1

Data from Abbattista, 2020; American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a; Bates, 2018; Croles, 2017.

More than 160 different autosomal dominant mutations for the protein C gene have been described (Louis-Jacques, 2016). The prevalence of heterozygous protein C deficiency is 2 to 3 per 1000, but many of these individuals do not have a thrombosis history because the phenotypic expression is highly variable. These prevalence estimates correspond with functional activity threshold values of 50 to 60 percent, which are used by most laboratories. As shown in Table 55-2, these are associated with a six- to twelvefold higher risk for VTE (Lockwood, 2012). The rare cases of homozygous protein C deficiency may cause fatal neonatal purpura fulminans. Last, sepsis can result in purpura fulminans in the adult with heterozygous protein C deficiency (Bendapudi, 2021).

Protein S Deficiency

This circulating anticoagulant is activated by protein C, which enhances the capacity of protein S to inactivate factors Va and VIIIa (see Fig. 55-1). Protein S deficiency may be caused by more than 130 different mutations, with an aggregate heterozygous prevalence of approximately 0.3 to 1.3 per 1000 individuals (Louis-Jacques, 2016). Protein S deficiency may be measured by antigenically determined free, functional, and total S levels. All three decline substantively during normal gestation (Appendix, p. 1228). Thus, the diagnosis in pregnant women—as well as in those taking certain oral contraceptives—is difficult. If screening during pregnancy is necessary, threshold values for free protein S antigen levels in the second and third trimesters have been identified at <30 percent and <24 percent, respectively. The risk of VTE in pregnancy is increased severalfold (see Table 55-2). Among those with a positive family history, the VTE risk in pregnancy is 6 to 7 percent (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

Conard and coworkers (1990) described thrombosis in five of 29 pregnant women with protein S deficiency. They, as well as Burneo and colleagues (2002), reported maternal cerebral vein thrombosis. Neonatal homozygous protein S deficiency is usually associated with purpura fulminans, the fatal clinical phenotype.

Factor V Leiden Mutation

This is the most prevalent of the known thrombophilia syndromes and is characterized by resistance of plasma to the anticoagulant effects of activated protein C. There are several mutations that create this resistance, but the most common is the factor V Leiden mutation. This missense mutation results from a substitution of glutamine for arginine at position 506 in the factor V polypeptide. As a result of this mutation, activated factor V is neutralized approximately tenfold more slowly by activated protein C (see Fig. 55-1). This leads to enhanced thrombin generation.

Heterozygous inheritance of factor V Leiden is the most common heritable thrombophilia. It is found in 3 to 15 percent of select European populations, 1.2 percent of African Americans, and 2.2 of Hispanic Americans, but is virtually absent in African blacks and Asians (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). Women who are heterozygous for factor V Leiden account for approximately 40 percent of VTE cases during pregnancy. However, the actual risk among pregnant women who are heterozygous and who do not have a personal history or a first-degree relative with a thrombotic episode before age 50 years is 5 to 12 events per 1000 births (see Table 55-2). In contrast, this risk is at least 10 percent among pregnant women with a personal or family history. Pregnant women who are homozygous without a personal or family history have a 1- to 4-percent risk for VTE, whereas those with such a history have an approximately 17-percent risk (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

Diagnosis during pregnancy is performed by DNA analysis for the mutant factor V gene. Bioassay is not used because of the normal resistance that develops after early pregnancy from alterations in other coagulation protein concentrations. Of note, activated protein C resistance can also be caused by antiphospholipid syndrome, which is described on page 979 and also detailed in Chapter 62 (p. 1114).

To assess the prognostic significance of maternal factor V Leiden mutation during pregnancy, Kjellberg and associates (2010) compared the outcomes of 491 carriers with those of 1055 controls. All three of the thromboembolic events occurred among the carriers. But, preterm birth rates, birthweights, or hypertensive complication rates did not differ between the two groups. In a prospective observational study of almost 5000 women conducted by the Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units Network, the heterozygous mutant gene incidence was 2.7 percent (Dizon-Townson, 2005). Of three pulmonary emboli and one deep-vein thrombosis cases—a rate of 0.8 per 1000 pregnancies—none was among these carriers. Moreover, in the heterozygous women, the risks of preeclampsia, placental abruption, fetal-growth restriction, or pregnancy loss were not elevated. The investigators concluded that universal prenatal screening for the Leiden mutation and prophylaxis for carriers without a prior VTE is not indicated.

Prothrombin G20210A Mutation

This missense mutation in the prothrombin gene leads to excessive accumulation of prothrombin, which may be converted to thrombin. Prothrombin levels are increased approximately 30 percent in heterozygotes and 70 percent in homozygotes (MacCallum, 2014). As with factor V Leiden, a personal or family history of VTE in a first-degree relative before age 50 years raises the risk of VTE during pregnancy (see Table 55-2). For a heterozygous carrier with such a history, the risk exceeds 10 percent. Without such a history, heterozygous carriers of the mutation have less than a 1-percent risk of VTE during pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

Silver and coworkers (2010) tested nearly 4200 women for the prothrombin G20210A mutation. A total of 157—or 3.8 percent—of the women carried the mutation, and only one of these was homozygous. Carriers had similar rates of pregnancy loss, preeclampsia, fetal-growth restriction, and placental abruption compared with noncarriers. Three thromboembolic events occurred in women who tested negative for the mutation.

Homozygous patients, or those who are doubly heterozygous for a G20210A mutation with a factor V Leiden mutation, have a greater thromboembolism risk than heterozygous

carriers (Connors, 2017). Others have provided detailed information on pregnancy outcomes in women with such rare compound thrombophilias (Carroll, 2018; Lim, 2016).

Hyperhomocysteinemia

The most common cause of elevated homocysteine is the C667T thermolabile mutation of the 5, 10– methylene–tetrahydrofolate reductase (MTHFR) enzyme. Inheritance is autosomal recessive. Elevated homocysteine levels may also result from deficiency of one of several enzymes involved in methionine metabolism and from correctible nutritional deficiencies of folic acid, vitamin B_6, or vitamin B_{12}. During normal pregnancy, mean homocysteine plasma concentrations decline and make a diagnosis difficult (Lockwood, 2002).

A metaanalysis by den Heijer and associates (2005) reported an association between MTHFR polymorphisms and a slightly greater risk for thrombosis in international studies, but no such association was found in North American studies (den Heijer, 2005). The authors speculated that folic acid supplementation could explain the difference. Recall that folic acid serves as a cofactor in the remethylation reaction of homocysteine to methionine. Similarly, the American College of Chest Physicians posited that the lack of an association with thromboembolism could reflect the physiological reductions in homocysteine levels associated with pregnancy as well as the effects of widespread prenatal folic acid supplementation (Bates, 2012). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) has concluded that there is insufficient evidence to support assessment of MTHFR polymorphisms or measurement of fasting homocysteine levels in the evaluation for VTE.

Other Thrombophilia Mutations

Protein Z is a vitamin K–dependent protein that serves as a cofactor in factor Xa inactivation. Studies have found that low protein Z levels are associated with an elevated thromboembolism risk in nonpregnant patients and may be implicated in the pathogenesis of poor pregnancy outcomes (Almawi, 2013). Similarly, *plasminogen activator inhibitor type 1 (PAI-I)* is an important regulator of fibrinolysis. Certain polymorphisms in the gene promoter have been associated with slightly higher VTE risks. Although these thrombophilias may exacerbate risk among patients when coinherited with other thrombophilias, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) has concluded that evidence to recommend screening is insufficient.

Acquired Thrombophilias

Some examples of acquired hypercoagulable states include antiphospholipid syndrome (APS), heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, and cancer.

Antiphospholipid Syndrome

This prothrombotic disorder can affect both the venous and arterial circulations. The deeper veins of the lower limbs and the cerebral arterial circulation are the most frequent sites of venous and arterial thrombosis, respectively (Garcia, 2018; Konkle, 2018). Besides thrombosis, the other major clinical manifestations of APS are adverse obstetrical outcomes (Table 11-4, p. 205). Criteria for APS include (1) at least one otherwise unexplained fetal death at or beyond 10 weeks; (2) at least one preterm birth before 34 weeks' gestation because of eclampsia, severe preeclampsia, or placental insufficiency; or (3) at least three unexplained consecutive spontaneous abortions before 10 weeks. The syndrome is discussed in detail in Chapter 62 (p. 1114).

Testing for antiphospholipid antibodies should be performed in women with an unexplained arterial or venous thromboembolism or a history of one fetal loss or three or more recurrent embryonic or fetal losses (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). At this time, preterm severe preeclampsia and early-onset placental insufficiency do not support such testing. That said, there is evidence that antiphospholipid positivity confers a worse prognosis for pregnancies complicated by HELLP syndrome (Pécourt, 2021). These patients should be tested for the presence of three factors: (1) lupus anticoagulant, (2) anticardiolipin immunoglobulin G and M (IgG and IgM) antibodies, and (3) anti-β2 glycoprotein-I IgG and IgM antibodies. If any of these laboratory test results are positive, a confirmatory test is performed 12 weeks later (Connors, 2017).

Based on their study of 750 singleton pregnancies complicated by APS, Saccone and colleagues (2017) found that anticardiolipin antibody is the most common sole antiphospholipid antibody present. Women with APS have a 5- to 12-percent risk of thrombosis during pregnancy or the puerperium. Indeed, up to 25 percent of these thrombotic events occur during pregnancy or in the puerperium.

Thrombophilias and Pregnancy Complications

Contrary to past teaching, no definite causal link between inherited thrombophilias and adverse pregnancy outcomes exists (Ormesher, 2017). The confusion was caused by a number of observational studies that were later followed by large prospective cohort studies. Currently, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) does not recommend inherited thrombophilia screening for women with a history of fetal loss or adverse pregnancy outcomes such as fetal-growth restriction, placental abruption, and preeclampsia.

There are no convincing data that link inherited thrombophilias and fetal loss. It follows that there is no benefit to aspirin or heparin therapy as might accrue for recurrent pregnancy loss due to antiphospholipid antibodies (Chap. 62, p. 1116). Stillbirths also are not more common with heterozygous mutations, but there is a weak association with homozygous factor V Leiden mutation (Silver, 2016). Last, there is insufficient evidence to screen for inherited thrombophilias in women with a fetal death (Arachchillage, 2019).

Fetal-growth restriction also is not more common with inherited thrombophilias (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a; Infante-Rivard, 2002). Likewise, there have been a number of prospective cohort studies that showed no association of inherited thrombophilias with *placental abruption* (Dizon-Townson, 2005; Silver, 2010). Conversely,

Alfirevic and coworkers (2002) reported an association with these and both heterozygosity and homozygosity for factor V Leiden mutations as well as heterozygous prothrombin G20210A mutation.

Studies showing an association of inherited thrombophilias and preeclampsia also are conflicting (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). One large systematic review and metaanalysis of nearly 22,000 women did not show an association between factor V Leiden or prothrombin gene mutations with preeclampsia (Rodger, 2010). Similarly, a more recent prospective study failed to show an association between preeclampsia and 12 hereditary thrombophilias (Fernandez Arias, 2019).

Thus, because of uncertainties in the magnitude of risk and in the benefits of prophylaxis given to prevent pregnancy complications in women with heritable thrombophilias, it remains unproven that universal screening is indicated (Louis-Jacques, 2016). In contrast, the association between APS and adverse pregnancy outcomes—including fetal loss, recurrent pregnancy loss, and preeclampsia—is much stronger (Liu, 2019).

Thrombophilia Screening

Given the relatively high incidence of thrombophilia in the population and the low incidence of VTE, universal screening during pregnancy is not cost-effective. Thus, a selective screening strategy is required. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) recommends that thrombophilia screening be considered in the following clinical circumstances: (1) a personal history of VTE with or without a recurrent risk factor such as fractures, surgery, or prolonged immobilization; and (2) a first-degree relative (parent or sibling) with a history of a high-risk inherited thrombophilia. As discussed previously, testing for inherited thrombophilias in women who have experienced recurrent fetal loss or adverse pregnancy outcomes is not recommended.

Methods of screening for the more common inherited thrombophilias are shown in Table 55-3. Whenever possible, laboratory testing is performed at least 6 weeks after the thrombotic event, while the patient is not pregnant, and when she is not receiving anticoagulation or hormonal therapy. Last, screening for hyperhomocysteinemia is not recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

DEEP-VEIN THROMBOSIS

Clinical Presentation

During pregnancy, most venous thromboses are confined to the deep veins of the lower extremity. Most of these are located in the iliofemoral and iliac veins without involvement of the calf veins (Chan, 2010). In contrast, in the general population, more than 80 percent of deep-vein thromboses involve calf veins (Huisman, 2015). The vast majority are left sided (Blanco-Molina, 2007). Greer (2003) hypothesizes that this results from compression of the left iliac vein by the right iliac and ovarian arteries, both of which cross the vein only on the left side. Yet, as described in Chapter 56 (p. 994), the ureter is compressed more on the right side.

Signs and symptoms vary depending on the degree of occlusion and the intensity of the inflammatory response. Classically, thrombosis involving the lower extremity is abrupt in onset, and there is pain and edema of the leg and thigh. The thrombus typically involves much of the deep-venous system to the iliofemoral region. Occasionally, reflex arterial spasm causes a pale, cool extremity with diminished pulsations. Calf measurements may identify a discordance in size. Alternatively, there may be appreciable clot, yet little pain, heat, or swelling. Importantly, calf pain, either spontaneous or in response to squeezing or to Achilles tendon stretching—*Homans sign*—may be caused by a strained muscle or contusion. *Importantly, 30 to 60 percent of women with a confirmed lower-extremity acute deep-vein thrombosis (DVT) have an asymptomatic pulmonary embolism* (p. 986).

Diagnosis

Clinical diagnosis of DVT is difficult without testing and is confirmed in only 10 percent of cases (Hull, 1990). Another

TABLE 55-3. How to Test for Thrombophilias

Thrombophilia	Testing Method	Is Testing Reliable During Pregnancy?	Is Testing Reliable During Acute Thrombosis?	Is Testing Reliable with Anticoagulation?
Factor V Leiden mutation	Activated protein C resistance assay (second generation)	Yes	Yes	No
	If abnormal: DNA analysis	Yes	Yes	Yes
Prothrombin gene mutation G20210A	DNA analysis	Yes	Yes	Yes
Protein C deficiency	Protein C activity (<65%)	Yes	No	No
Protein S deficiency	Functional assay (<55%)	No[a]	No	No
Antithrombin deficiency	Antithrombin activity (<60%)	Yes	No	No

[a]If screening in pregnancy is necessary, cutoff values for free protein S antigen levels in the second and third trimesters have been identified at less than 30% and less than 24%, respectively.

Reproduced with permission from American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' Committee on Practice Bulletins–Obstetrics. ACOG Practice Bulletin No. 197: Inherited Thrombophilias in Pregnancy, Obstet Gynecol 2018 Jul;132(1):e18-e34.

challenge is that many of the common diagnostic tests that have been investigated extensively in nonpregnant patients have not been validated appropriately in pregnancy (Huisman, 2015). Shown in Figure 55-2 is one diagnostic algorithm that can be used for evaluation of pregnant women. With a few modifications, we follow a similar evaluation at Parkland Hospital.

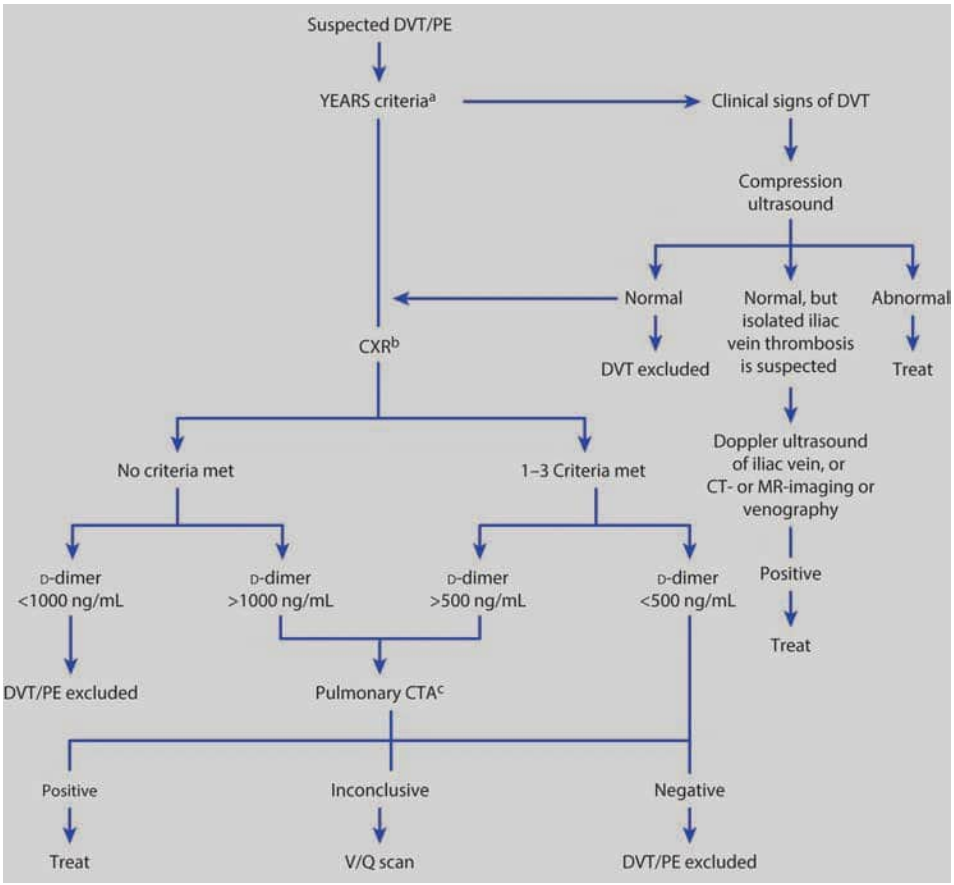


FIGURE 55-2 Algorithm to evalate suspected venous thromboembolism in pregnancy depending upon number of YEARS criteria met. Evidence of DVT should prompt compression ultrasound. [a]The three YEARS criteria are clinical signs of DVT, hemoptysis, and PE as the most likely diagnosis. [b]The American Thoracic Society and Society of Thoracic Radiology recommend CXR; [c]The American Society of Hematology recommends pulmonary V/Q scanning. CT = computed tomography; CTA = computed tomography angiography; CXR = chest x-ray; DVT = deep-vein thrombosis; MR = magnetic resonance; PE = pulmonary embolism; V/Q scan = ventilation perfusion scan. (From Bates, 2018; Guyatt, 2012; Leung, 2011; van der Hulle, 2019; van der Pol, 2019.)

Compression Ultrasonography

With suspected DVT, the initial diagnostic test recommended is compression ultrasonography of the proximal leg veins (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). The diagnosis is based on the noncompressibility and typical echoarchitecture of a thrombosed vein. For *nonpregnant* patients with suspected thrombosis, the safety of withholding anticoagulation for 1 week has been established in the setting of a normal compression ultrasound examination (Birdwell, 1998). Serial compression examinations are then performed because isolated undetected calf thromboses that ultimately extend into the proximal veins will do so within 1 to 2 weeks of presentation in approximately a fourth of patients. In *pregnant* women, however, normal findings with ultrasonography do not always exclude a pulmonary embolism. This is because the thrombosis may have already embolized or because it arose from iliac or other deep-pelvic veins, which are less accessible to ultrasound evaluation.

Two studies are helpful for evaluating whether serial examinations are necessary for pregnant women suspected of having a DVT. Chan and associates (2013) studied 221 pregnant and postpartum women presenting with a suspected DVT. The 205 women with a negative initial study result underwent serial testing, which was negative in all cases. Of these, one woman had a pulmonary embolism 7 weeks later. Le Gal and colleagues (2012) studied 210 pregnant and postpartum women with a suspected DVT. Of these, 177 women without a DVT were not anticoagulated and did not undergo serial testing. Two had an objectively confirmed thrombosis diagnosed within 3 months. In sum, these data suggest that a negative single complete compression ultrasonography study may safely exclude the diagnosis of DVT in most pregnant women.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

This imaging technique allows excellent delineation of anatomical detail above the inguinal ligament. Thus, in many cases, magnetic resonance (MR) imaging is immensely useful for diagnosis of iliofemoral and pelvic vein thrombosis. The venous system can also be reconstructed using MR venography (Chap. 49, p. 875). MR imaging is 100-percent sensitive and 90-percent specific for detection of venographically proven DVT in nonpregnant patients (Erdman, 1990). Importantly, almost half of those without DVT were found to have nonthrombotic conditions that included cellulitis, myositis, edema, hematomas, and superficial phlebitis.

D-dimer Screening Tests

These specific fibrin degradation products are generated when fibrinolysin (plasminogen) degrades fibrin, as occurs in thromboembolism. Their measurement is usually incorporated into diagnostic algorithms for VTE in nonpregnant patients (Righini, 2018). This method was shown to be accurate in the YEARS study (van der Hulle, 2017). Screening with the D-dimer test in pregnancy, however, is problematic for several reasons. Depending

on assay sensitivity, D-dimer serum levels rise with gestational age along with substantively elevated plasma fibrinogen concentrations (Appendix, p. 1228) (Johnson, 2019). Levels are also affected by multifetal gestation and cesarean delivery (Hu, 2020; Miyamoto, 2020). Last, D-dimer concentrations can also be elevated in pregnancy complications such as placental abruption, preeclampsia, and sepsis (Cunningham, 2015).

Three large prospective studies have evaluated D-dimer testing in pregnant women to diagnose VTE. Righini and colleagues (2018) found that D-dimer measurement, bilateral leg ultrasound, and computed tomography-angiogram safely ruled out VTE. Subsequently, van der Pol and coworkers (2019) used a pregnancy-adapted YEARS algorithm to diagnose suspected pulmonary embolism. The algorithm used D-dimer measurements and clinical suspicion to confirm VTE. With none of the clinical criteria present, and with the D-dimer level <1000 ng/mL, or with one or more clinical criteria present and with the D-dimer level <500 ng/mL, pulmonary embolism was safely excluded (see Fig. 55-2). Last, the DiPEP study showed that neither clinical risk factors nor D-dimer levels were accurate in identifying pulmonary embolism in pregnant women (Goodacre, 2019). They concluded that pregnant women with suspected pulmonary embolism should all undergo imaging studies.

The findings of the YEARS study and subsequent others will no doubt guide care. However, currently the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) recommends against the use of D-dimer assays to diagnose VTE in pregnant women. We agree, and in our view, these positive results need to be duplicated before adaptation of their widespread use in pregnant women. Still, a negative D-dimer assay should be reassuring, unless VTE is the most likely diagnosis (Viau-Lapointe, 2020).

Management of Venous Thromboembolism

Optimal management of VTE during pregnancy has not undergone major clinical study to provide evidence-based practices. There is, however, consensus for treatment with anticoagulation and limited activity. Thrombophilia testing does not change treatment (Connors, 2017). Anticoagulation is initiated with either unfractionated heparin (UFH) or LMWH (Table 55-4). Although either type is acceptable, most recommend one of the LMWHs (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b; Kearon, 2016). The American Society of Hematology recommends preferential use of LMWH during pregnancy because of better bioavailability, longer plasma half-life, more predictable dose response, reduced risks of osteoporosis and thrombocytopenia, and less frequent dosing (Bates, 2018).

TABLE 55-4. Anticoagulation Regimen Definitions

Anticoagulation Regimen	Definition
Prophylactic LMWH[a]	Enoxaparin, 40 mg SC once daily Dalteparin, 5000 units SC once daily Nadroparin, 2850 units SC once daily Tinzaparin, 4500 units SC once daily
Therapeutic LMWH[b]	Enoxaparin, 1 mg/kg every 12 hours Dalteparin, 200 units/kg once daily Tinzaparin, 175 units/kg once daily Dalteparin, 100 units/kg every 12 hours Target an anti-Xa level in the therapeutic range of 0.6–1.0 units/mL 4 hours after last injection for twice daily regimen; slightly higher doses may be needed for a once-daily regimen.
Prophylactic UFH	UFH, 5000–7000 units SC every 12 hours in first trimester UFH 7500–10,000 units SC every 12 hours in the second trimester UFH, 10,000 units SC every 12 hours in the third trimester, unless the aPTT is elevated
Adjusted dose (therapeutic) UFH[b]	UFH, 10,000 units or more SC every 12 hours in doses adjusted to target aPTT in the therapeutic range (1.5–2.5 × control) 6 hours after injection
Postpartum anticoagulation	Prophylactic, intermediate, or adjusted-dose LMWH for 6–8 weeks as indicated. Oral anticoagulants may be considered postpartum based upon planned duration of therapy, lactation, and patient preference.
Surveillance	Clinical vigilance and appropriate objective investigation of women with symptoms suspicious of deep vein thrombosis or pulmonary embolism. VTE risk assessment should be performed prepregnancy or early in pregnancy and repeated if complications develop, particularly those necessitating hospitalization or prolonged immobility.

[a]Although at extremes of body weight, modification of dose may be required.
[b]Also referred to as weight adjusted, full treatment dose.
aPTT = activated partial thromboplastin time; INR = international normalized ratio; LMWH = low-molecular-weight heparin; SC = subcutaneously; UFH = unfractionated heparin.
Reproduced with permission from American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists' Committee on Practice Bulletins–Obstetrics. ACOG Practice Bulletin No. 197: Inherited Thrombophilias in Pregnancy, Obstet Gynecol 2018 Jul;132(1):e18-e34.

The duration of full anticoagulation varies, and no studies have defined the optimal duration for pregnancy-related thromboembolism. In nonpregnant patients, evidence supports a minimum treatment duration of 3 months (Kearon, 2012). For pregnant patients, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) recommends therapeutic anticoagulation for 3 to 6 months followed by intermediate or prophylactic therapy for the duration of pregnancy and the postpartum period. If the woman is not breastfeeding, direct acting oral agents can be considered (p. 985).

Recall that pulmonary embolism develops in as many as 60 percent of patients with untreated venous thrombosis, and anticoagulation decreases this risk to less than 5 percent. In nonpregnant patients, the mortality rate with a pulmonary embolism approximates 1 percent (Douketis, 1998; Pollack, 2011).

With DVT, over several days, leg pain dissipates. After symptoms have abated, graded ambulation is begun. Elastic stockings are fitted, and anticoagulation is continued. Recovery to this stage usually takes 7 to 10 days. Graduated compression stockings can be continued for 2 years after the diagnosis to reduce the incidence of postthrombotic syndrome (Brandjes, 1997). Symptoms include chronic leg paresthesias or pain, intractable edema, skin changes, and leg ulcers. According to the American Society of Hematology, catheter-directed thrombolytic therapy does not mitigate against this complication (Bates, 2018).

Unfractionated Heparin

This agent should be considered for the initial treatment of thromboembolism and in situations in which delivery, surgery, or thrombolysis may be necessary (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). UFH can be administered by one of two alternatives: (1) initial intravenous therapy followed by adjusted-dose subcutaneous UFH given every 12 hours; or (2) twice-daily, adjusted-dose subcutaneous UFH with doses adjusted to prolong the activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) into the therapeutic range 6 hours post injection (Table 55-5).

For intravenous therapy, several protocols are acceptable. In general, if UFH is used, it is initiated with a bolus intravenous dose of 70 to 100 U/kg, which is 5000 to 10,000 U. This is followed by continuous intravenous infusions beginning at 1000 U/hr or 15 to 20 U/kg/hr. This infusion rate is titrated to achieve an aPTT 1.5 to 2.5 times control values (Linnemann, 2016). Intravenous anticoagulation is maintained for about 5 to 7 days, after which treatment is converted to subcutaneous heparin to maintain the aPTT to at least 1.5 to 2.5 times control throughout the dosing interval. For women with lupus anticoagulant, aPTT does not accurately assess heparin anticoagulation, and thus anti–factor Xa levels are preferred.

Low-molecular-weight Heparin

This is a family of derivatives of unfractionated heparin, and their molecular weights average 4000 to 5000 daltons compared with 12,000 to 16,000 daltons for conventional heparin. None of these heparins cross the placenta, and all exert their anticoagulant activity by activating antithrombin. UFH has equivalent activity against factor Xa and thrombin compared with LMWHs, which have greater activity against factor Xa than against thrombin. They also have a more predictable anticoagulant response and fewer bleeding complications than UFH because of their better bioavailability, longer half-life, dose-independent clearance, and decreased interference with platelets (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b; Bates, 2018). Their longer half-life prohibits neuraxial analgesia in laboring women. LMWH compounds are cleared by the kidneys and must be used cautiously when there is renal dysfunction.

Several studies have shown that VTE is treated effectively with LMWH (Quinlan, 2004; Tapson, 2008). Using serial venograms, Breddin and associates (2001) observed that these compounds were more effective than UFH in reducing thrombus size without increasing mortality rates or major bleeding complications. Several different treatment regimens using LMWH for treatment of acute VTE are listed in Table 55-4 (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b).

Whether LMWH requires adjustments during the course of pregnancy is controversial (Berresheim, 2014). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) recommends monitoring with an anti-Xa level 4 hours after an injection with dose adjustment to maintain a therapeutic level. Large studies using clinical end points that demonstrate an optimal therapeutic range or show that dose adjustments increase therapy, safety, or efficacy are lacking. Accordingly, the American Society of Hematology and others have concluded that routine monitoring with anti-Xa levels is difficult to justify (Bates, 2018; McDonnell, 2017).

In general, heparin pharmacokinetics includes more rapid clearance of heparins as pregnancy progresses. The peaks of anti-Xa activity of enoxaparin (Lovenox) across pregnancy are shown in Figure 55-3. Similarly, tinzaparin (Innohep) with a dosage of 75 to 175 U/kg/d was necessary to achieve peak anti–factor Xa levels of 0.1 to 1.0 U/mL (Smith, 2004). In studies

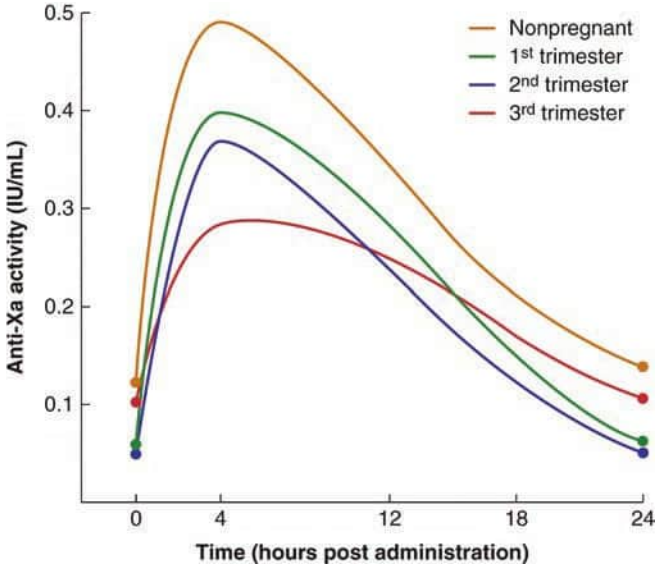


FIGURE 55-3 Anti–factor Xa activity with repeated daily administration of 40 mg enoxaparin subcutaneously in nonpregnant women and those from each trimester (Data from Lebaudy, 2008).

TABLE 55-5. Some Recommendations for Thromboprophylaxis During Pregnancy

Clinical Scenario	Pregnancy		Postpartum	
	ACOG[a]	ASH[b]	ACOG[a]	ASH[b]
Prior single VTE				
Risk factor no longer present	Surveillance only	Surveillance only	Surveillance *or* prophylactic heparin with additional risk factors[f]	Prophylactic *or* intermediate-dose heparin
Pregnancy- or estrogen-related or no known association	Prophylactic *or* intermediate-dose heparin	Prophylactic *or* intermediate-dose heparin	Prophylactic, intermediate, *or* therapeutic-dose heparin	Prophylactic *or* intermediate-dose heparin
Associated with a high-risk thrombophilia[d] or affected first-degree relative	Prophylactic, intermediate, *or* therapeutic-dose heparin	NSS	Prophylactic, intermediate, *or* therapeutic-dose heparin	Prophylactic *or* intermediate-dose heparin
Associated with a low-risk thrombophilia[e]	Prophylactic *or* intermediate-dose heparin	NSS	Prophylactic *or* intermediate-dose heparin	Prophylactic *or* intermediate-dose heparin
Two or more prior VTEs with or without thrombophilia				
Not receiving long-term anticoagulation	Intermediate *or* therapeutic-dose heparin	NSS	Intermediate *or* therapeutic-dose heparin	Prophylactic *or* intermediate-dose heparin
Receiving long-term anticoagulation	Therapeutic-dose heparin	Therapeutic-dose heparin	Resume long-term anticoagulation	Resume long-term anticoagulation
No prior VTE				
No thrombophilia	Surveillance	NSS	Surveillance *or* prophylactic heparin with additional risk factors[f]	NSS
High-risk thrombophilia	Surveillance only *or* prophylactic-dose heparin	Surveillance	Prophylactic *or* intermediate-dose heparin	Prophylactic heparin
Positive family history VTE *and* low-risk thrombophilia[c]	Surveillance *or* prophylactic-dose heparin	Surveillance	Prophylactic *or* intermediate-dose heparin	Surveillance
Low-risk thrombophilia	Surveillance	Surveillance	Surveillance; prophylactic-dose heparin with additional risk factors[f]	Surveillance
Compound heterozygous thrombophilia	Prophylactic *or* intermediate-dose heparin	Prophylactic heparin	Prophylactic *or* intermediate-dose heparin	Prophylactic heparin
Antiphospholipid antibodies				
History of VTE	Prophylactic heparin (?plus low-dose aspirin)	NSS	Prophylactic heparin; referral to specialist[g]	NSS
No prior VTE	Surveillance *or* prophylactic heparin plus low-dose aspirin with recurrent pregnancy loss or stillbirth[f]	NSS	Prophylactic heparin plus low-dose aspirin × 6 weeks with recurrent pregnancy loss or stillbirth[g]	NSS

[a]American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists 2020a,b.
[b]American Society of Hematology (Bates, 2018).
[c]Postpartum treatment levels should be ≥ antepartum treatment.
[d]Antithrombin deficiency; doubly heterozygous or homozygous for prothrombin 20210A and factor V Leiden.
[e]Heterozygous factor V Leiden or prothrombin 20210A; protein S or C deficiency.
[f]First-degree relative with VTE at <50 years; other major thrombotic risk factors, e.g., obesity, prolonged immobility.
[g]Women with antiphospholipid syndrome should not use estrogen-containing contraceptives.
[h]Treatment is recommended if the diagnosis of antiphospholipid syndrome is based on three or more prior pregnancy losses.
NSS = not specifically stated; VTE = venous thromboembolism.
Prophylactic, intermediate-, and adjusted-dose regimens are listed in Table 55-4.

of dalteparin (Fragmin) pharmacokinetics, conventional starting doses of dalteparin—100 U/kg every 12 hours—were likely insufficient to maintain full anticoagulation in pregnant women (Barbour, 2004; Jacobsen, 2003). Thus, slightly higher doses than that shown in Table 55-4 may be required.

Any concerns regarding teratogenicity of enoxaparin have been obviated (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b; Bates, 2021). A comprehensive study of 1267 pregnant women treated with tinzaparin found no cases of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, maternal deaths, or complications from regional analgesia (Nelson-Piercy, 2011). A total of 43 women (3.4 percent) required medical intervention for bleeding. Of 15 stillbirths, four were judged as possibly being related to tinzaparin use. LMWHs have been judged to be safe during breastfeeding (Bates, 2018).

Labor and Delivery

Women receiving either therapeutic or prophylactic anticoagulation should be converted from LMWH to the shorter-half-life UFH in the last month of pregnancy or sooner if delivery appears imminent. The purpose of conversion to UFH has less to do with any risk of maternal bleeding at the time of delivery, but rather with neuraxial blockade complicated by an epidural or spinal hematoma (Chap. 25, p. 478). The Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology recommends that UFH low-dose thromboprophylaxis be withheld for 4 to 6 hours; UFH intermediate-dose thromboprophylaxis for 12 hours; and UFH therapeutic dose for 24 hours before neuraxial analgesia (Leffert, 2018). For LMWH, the Society recommends to withhold low doses for 12 hours; intermediate doses 12 to 24 hours; and therapeutic doses 24 hours.

If a woman begins labor while taking UFH, clearance can be verified by an aPTT. Reversal of heparin with protamine sulfate—1 mg per 100 units heparin with a maximum dose of 50 mg—is rarely required and is not indicated with a prophylactic dose of heparin. For women in whom anticoagulation therapy has temporarily been discontinued, pneumatic compression devices are recommended.

Warfarin Compounds

Vitamin K antagonists are generally contraindicated because they readily cross the placenta and cause fetal death and malformations from hemorrhages. This is discussed in detail in Chapter 8 (p. 156). Their sole antepartum use is in women with a mechanical heart valve (Daughety, 2020). These compounds do not accumulate in breast milk and are thus safe during breastfeeding.

Postpartum venous thrombosis is usually treated with intravenous heparin and oral warfarin initiated simultaneously. The initial dose of warfarin is 5 to 10 mg for the first 2 days. Subsequent doses are titrated to achieve an international normalized ratio (INR) of 2 to 3. To avoid paradoxical thrombosis and skin necrosis from the early antiprotein C effect of warfarin, these women are maintained on therapeutic doses of UFH or LMWH for 5 days and until the INR is in a therapeutic range for 2 consecutive days (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b).

Treatment in the puerperium may require larger doses of anticoagulant. Brooks and colleagues (2002) compared anticoagulation in postpartum women with that of age-matched nonpregnant controls. The former required a significantly larger median total dose of warfarin—45 versus 24 mg—and a longer time—7 versus 4 days—to achieve the target INR.

Direct-acting Oral Anticoagulants

Of these newer oral anticoagulants, dabigatran (Pradaxa) inhibits thrombin and rivaroxaban (Xarelto) and apixaban (Eliquis) inhibit factor Xa. These agents are becoming the drugs of choice for nonpregnant subjects with thromboembolism (Kruger, 2019). Currently, very few reports address these newer agents during pregnancy and breastfeeding, and thus the human reproductive risks are essentially unknown (Lameijer, 2018; Rosenbloom, 2019). Despite this, the GARFIELD-VTE study reported that direct-acting oral anticoagulant use in pregnant women was gaining favor (Jerjes-Sanchez, 2021). Dabigatran crosses the placenta, however, it is unknown whether any of these agents are excreted in breast milk (Bapat, 2014). At this time, because of the potential for infant harm, a decision should be made to either avoid breastfeeding or use an alternative anticoagulant, such as warfarin, in breastfeeding women (Bates, 2021; Kruger, 2019).

■ Complications of Anticoagulation

Three significant complications associated with anticoagulation are hemorrhage, thrombocytopenia, and osteoporosis. The latter two are unique to heparin, and their risk may be reduced with LMWHs. The most serious complication is hemorrhage, which is more likely if there has been recent surgery or lacerations. Troublesome bleeding is also more likely if the heparin dosage is excessive. Unfortunately, management schemes using laboratory testing to identify when a heparin dosage is sufficient to inhibit further thrombosis, yet not cause serious hemorrhage, have been discouraging.

Heparin-induced Thrombocytopenia

There are two types—the most common is a nonimmune, benign, reversible thrombocytopenia that develops within the first few days of therapy and resolves in approximately 5 days without therapy cessation. The second is the severe form of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia, which results from an immune reaction involving IgG antibodies directed against complexes of platelet factor 4 and heparin. The diagnosis of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) is based on a drop in the platelet count of more than 50 percent or thrombosis beginning 5 to 10 days after the start of heparin in association with the appearance of platelet-activating HIT antibodies. The fall in platelet count in HIT occurs rapidly—over a period of 1 to 3 days—and is assessed relative to the highest platelet count after the start of heparin. The typical nadir is 40,000 to 80,000 platelets per microliter (Greinacher, 2015).

Although the incidence of HIT is approximately 3 to 5 percent in nonpregnant individuals, it is <0.1 percent in obstetrical patients (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). Fausett and coworkers (2001) reported no cases among 244 heparin-treated gravidas compared with 10 among 244 nonpregnant patients. Accordingly, the American

College of Chest Physicians recommends against platelet count monitoring when the risk of HIT is considered to be <1 percent (Linkins, 2012). In others, they suggest monitoring every 2 or 3 days from day 4 until 14.

Women with a presumptive diagnosis of HIT should have laboratory testing for antiplatelet antibodies or by functional assays. However, these tests often require several days to return results, so initial management should be directed by clinical findings. Heparin therapy is stopped, and alternative anticoagulation initiated. LMWH may not be entirely safe because it has some cross reactivity with UFH. The American Society of Hematology recommends use of fondaparinux (Arixtra), which is a pentasaccharide factor Xa inhibitor (Bates, 2018). Successful use in pregnancy has been reported (De Carolis, 2015; Elsaigh, 2015). Last, platelet transfusions are avoided (Greinacher, 2015).

Heparin-induced Osteoporosis

Bone loss may develop with long-term heparin administration—usually 6 months or longer—and is more prevalent in cigarette smokers. UFH can cause osteopenia, and this is less likely with LMWHs. Women treated with any heparin should be encouraged to take an oral daily 1500-mg calcium supplement (Cunningham, 2005; Lockwood, 2012).

■ Anticoagulation and Abortion

The treatment of DVT with heparin does not preclude pregnancy termination by careful curettage. After the products are removed without trauma to the reproductive tract, full-dose heparin can be restarted in several hours.

■ Anticoagulation and Delivery

The effects of heparin on blood loss at delivery depend on several variables: (1) dose, route, and timing of administration; (2) number and depth of incisions and lacerations; (3) intensity of postpartum myometrial contractions; and (4) presence of other coagulation defects. Blood loss should not be greatly increased with vaginal delivery if there are no lacerations, and the uterus promptly contracts. Unfortunately, such ideal circumstances do not always prevail. Thus, heparin therapy generally is stopped during labor and delivery.

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) recommends restarting UFH or LMWH no sooner than 4 to 6 hours after vaginal delivery or 6 to 12 hours after cesarean delivery. From their review, Moriuchi and associates (2019) found that *thromboprophylaxis* started within 24 hours after cesarean delivery was safe. At Parkland Hospital, we wait at least 24 hours to restart therapeutic-dose heparin after cesarean delivery or after vaginal delivery with significant lacerations.

SUPERFICIAL VENOUS THROMBOPHLEBITIS

Thrombosis limited strictly to the superficial veins of the saphenous system is typically associated with varicosities or as a sequela of an indwelling intravenous catheter. It is treated with analgesia, elastic support, heat, and rest. Superficial vein thrombosis raises the risk of DVT four- to six-fold. In a metaanalysis of nonpregnant patients with thrombophlebitis, 18 percent had a concomitant DVT and 7 percent had a pulmonary embolism (Di Minno, 2016). Although controversial, the American Society of Hematology suggests LMWH therapy (Bates, 2018).

PULMONARY EMBOLISM

Although it causes approximately 10 percent of maternal deaths, pulmonary embolism is relatively uncommon during pregnancy and the puerperium. According to Marik and Plante (2008), 70 percent of gravidas presenting with a pulmonary embolism have associated clinical evidence of DVT. And recall that between 30 and 60 percent of women with a DVT will have a coexisting silent pulmonary embolism.

■ Clinical Presentation

In almost 2500 nonpregnant patients with a proven pulmonary embolism, symptoms included dyspnea in 82 percent, chest pain in 49 percent, cough in 20 percent, syncope in 14 percent, and hemoptysis in 7 percent (Goldhaber, 1999). Other predominant clinical findings typically include tachypnea, apprehension, and tachycardia. In some cases, an accentuated pulmonic closure sound, rales, and/or friction rub is heard.

Right axis deviation and T-wave inversion in the anterior chest leads may be evident on the electrocardiogram. In most cases, chest radiography results are normal. In others, nonspecific findings may include atelectasis, an infiltrate, cardiomegaly, or an effusion. Vascular markings in the lung region supplied by the obstructed artery can be lost. Although most women are hypoxemic, a normal arterial blood gas analysis does not exclude pulmonary embolism. Approximately a third of young patients have P_{O2} values >80 mm Hg. Thus, the alveolar- arterial oxygen tension difference is a more useful indicator of disease. More than 86 percent of patients with acute pulmonary embolism will have an alveolar-arterial difference >20 mm Hg (Lockwood, 2012). Even with massive pulmonary embolism, signs, symptoms, and laboratory data to support the diagnosis may be deceptively nonspecific.

■ Massive and Submassive Pulmonary Embolism

Defined as embolism causing hemodynamic instability, these account for 5 to 10 percent of cases (Handal-Örefice, 2019). Acute mechanical obstruction of the pulmonary vasculature causes increased vascular resistance and pulmonary hypertension followed by acute right ventricular dilation. In otherwise healthy patients, significant pulmonary hypertension does not develop until 60 to 75 percent of the pulmonary vascular tree is occluded (Guyton, 1954). Moreover, circulatory collapse requires 75- to 80-percent obstruction. This is depicted in Figure 55-4 and emphasizes that most acutely symptomatic emboli are large and likely a saddle embolism (Singhal, 1973). These are suspected when the pulmonary artery pressure is substantively increased as estimated by echocardiography.

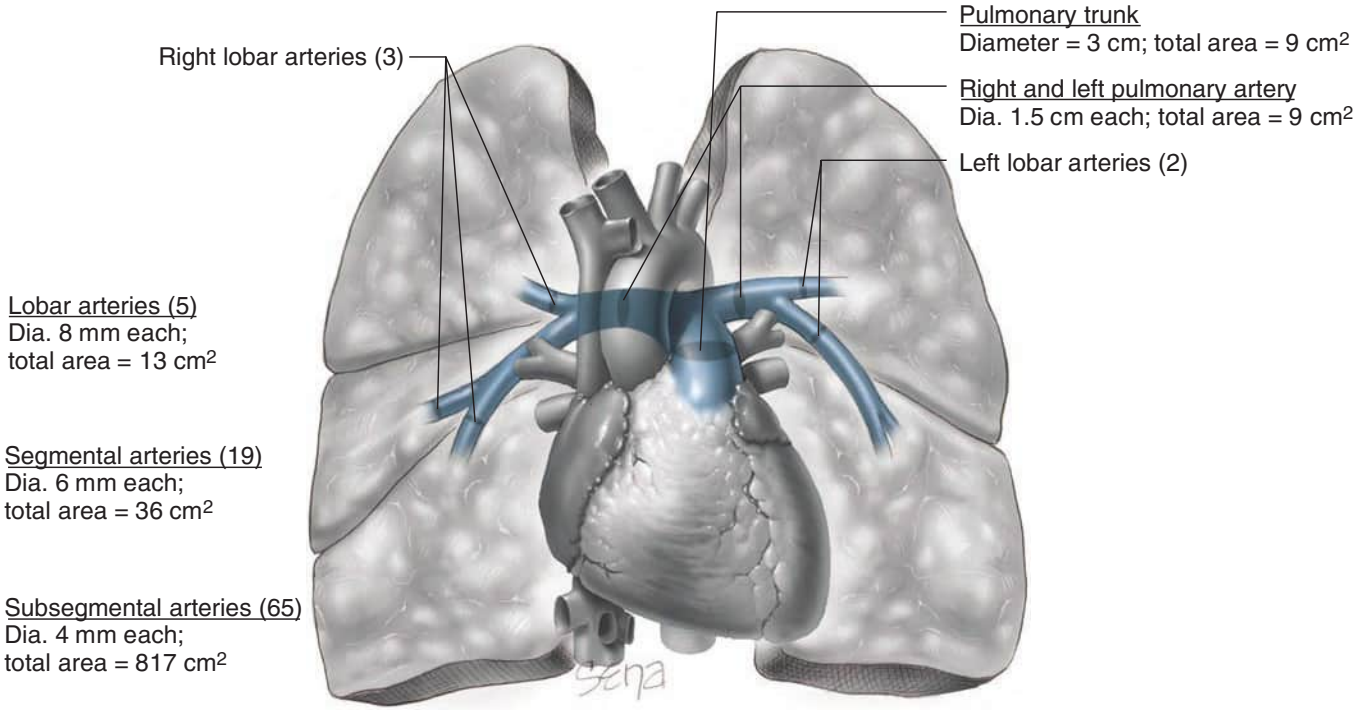


FIGURE 55-4 Schematic of pulmonary arterial circulation. Note that the cross-sectional area of the pulmonary trunk and the combined pulmonary arteries is 9 cm. A large saddle embolism could occlude 50 to 90 percent of the pulmonary tree, causing hemodynamic instability. As the arteries give off distal branches, the total surface area rapidly increases, that is, 13 cm for the combined five lobar arteries, 36 cm for the combined 19 segmental arteries, and more than 800 cm for the total 65 subsegmental arterial branches. Thus, hemodynamic instability is less likely with emboli past the lobar arteries.

Submassive embolism is diagnosed when there is evidence of right ventricular dysfunction (Handal-Örefice, 2019). The mortality rate approaches 25 percent, which compares with a 1-percent rate without such dysfunction (Kinane, 2008). It is important in these cases to infuse crystalloids carefully and to support blood pressure with vasopressors. Aggressive intravenous fluid infusion has been associated with worsening right-sided ventricular dysfunction (Konstantides, 2014). As discussed on page 988, oxygen treatment, tracheal intubation, and mechanical ventilation are completed preparatory to thrombolysis, filter placement, or embolectomy.

■ Diagnosis

In most cases, recognition of a pulmonary embolism requires a high index of suspicion that prompts objective evaluation. Exposure of the mother and fetus to ionizing radiation is a concern when investigating a suspected pulmonary embolism during pregnancy. However, this concern is largely overruled by the hazards of missing a potentially fatal diagnosis. Moreover, erroneously assigning a diagnosis of pulmonary embolism to a pregnant woman is also fraught with problems. It unnecessarily exposes the mother and fetus to the risks of anticoagulation treatment and will impact delivery plans, future contraception, and thromboprophylaxis during subsequent pregnancies. Therefore, investigations should aim for diagnostic certainty (Cohen, 2020).

Diagnosis of a pulmonary embolism follows the same algorithm as for DVT shown in Figure 55-2. In addition to compression ultrasound of the extremities, if a pulmonary embolism is suspected, chest x-ray and electrocardiogram may be revealing. Echocardiography is useful to detect other conditions that mimic pulmonary embolism—acute myocardial infarction, pericardial tamponade, and aortic dissection. Further imaging with computed tomography (CT) scanning, MR imaging, or ventilation-perfusion lung scanning confirms the diagnosis (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). As discussed later (p. 988), the American Society of Hematology recommends lung scanning as the first-line diagnostic tool (Bates, 2018). At Parkland Hospital we preferentially use CT-pulmonary angiography for suspected pulmonary embolism.

Computed Tomographic Pulmonary Angiography

Multidetector CT-pulmonary angiography (CTPA) is the most commonly employed technique to diagnose pulmonary embolism in nonpregnant patients. The technique is described further in Chapter 49 (p. 874), and an imaging example is shown in Figure 55-5. The estimated fetal radiation exposure averages 0.45 to 0.6 mGy. The estimated maternal breast dose is 10 to 70 mGy (Waksmonski, 2014).

CTPA has many advantages, but we find that the higher resolution allows detection of previously inaccessible smaller distal emboli that have uncertain clinical significance. Similar observations have been reported by others (Anderson, 2007; Hall, 2009). Bourjeily and colleagues (2012) performed a follow-up study of 318 pregnant women who had a negative CTPA performed for a suspected pulmonary embolism. All

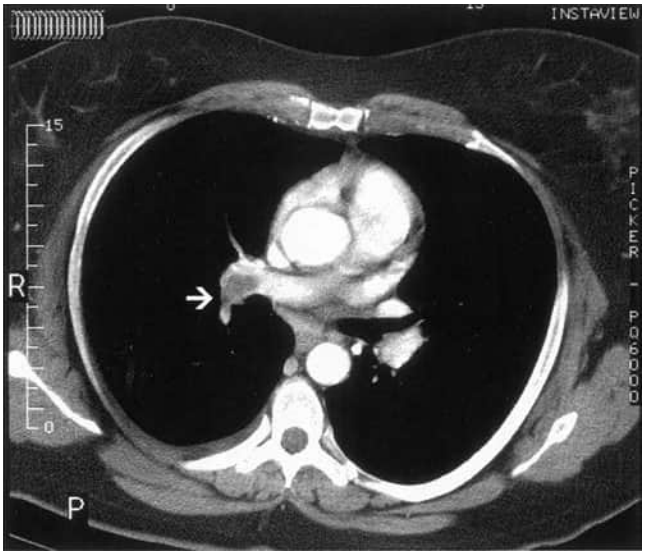


FIGURE 55-5 Axial image of the chest from a four-channel multidetector spiral computed tomographic scan performed after administration of intravenous contrast. There is enhancement of the pulmonary artery with a large thrombus on the right (*arrow*) consistent with pulmonary embolism. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Michael Landay.)

were seen 3 months following their initial presentation or at 6 weeks postpartum. None of these women were subsequently diagnosed with a thromboembolism.

Ventilation-Perfusion Scintigraphy Lung Scan

This technique involves a small dose of radiotracer such as intravenously administered technetium-99m macroaggregated albumin. There is negligible fetal and maternal breast radiation exposure—0.1 to 0.4 mGy. The scan may not provide a definite diagnosis because many other conditions can cause perfusion defects. Examples are pneumonia or local bronchospasm. Chan and coworkers (2002) found that a fourth of ventilation-perfusion scans in pregnant women were nondiagnostic. In these instances, CTPA is preferred (Tromeur, 2017).

To compare the performance of lung scintigraphy and CTPA, Revel and associates (2011) evaluated 137 pregnant women with suspected pulmonary embolism. The two modalities performed comparably and had no significant differences between the proportions of positive, negative, or indeterminate results. Specifically, the proportion of indeterminate results for both approximated 20 percent, Similarly, one systematic review concluded that both CTPA and lung scintigraphy seem appropriate for exclusion of pulmonary embolism during pregnancy (van Mens, 2017).

Intravascular Pulmonary Angiography

This requires catheterization of the right side of the heart and is considered the reference test for pulmonary embolism. With newer-generation multidetector CT scanners, however, the role of invasive pulmonary angiography has been questioned. This is especially true given the higher radiation exposure for the fetus (Konstantinides, 2014). Other detractions are that it can be time consuming, uncomfortable, and associated with dye-induced allergy and renal failure. It is reserved for confirmation when less invasive tests are equivocal.

Management

Immediate treatment for pulmonary embolism is full anticoagulation similar to that for DVT as discussed on page 982 and shown in Table 55-4. There are several complementary procedures that may be indicated.

Vena Caval Filters

The woman who has very recently suffered a pulmonary embolism and who must undergo cesarean delivery presents a particularly serious problem. Reversal of anticoagulation may be followed by another embolus, and surgery while fully anticoagulated frequently results in life-threatening hemorrhage or troublesome hematomas. In these cases, placement of a vena caval filter should be considered before surgery (Marik, 2008). Moreover, in the very infrequent circumstances in which heparin therapy fails to prevent recurrent pulmonary embolism from the pelvis or legs or in which embolism develops from these sites despite heparin treatment, a vena caval filter may also be indicated. Such filters can also be used following massive emboli in patients who are not candidates for thrombolysis.

The device is inserted through either the jugular or femoral vein and can be inserted during labor (Jamjute, 2006). Routine filter placement has no added advantage to heparin given alone (Decousus, 1998). Retrievable filters may be used as short-term protection and then removed 1 to 2 weeks later (Liu, 2012). From their systematic review, Harris and colleagues (2016) found that complication rates in pregnant women with vena caval filters are comparable to those in nonpregnant patients. In another series of 24 filters placed in obstetrical patients, 29 percent had complications including removal failure (Rottenstreich, 2019).

Thrombolysis

Compared with heparin, thrombolytic agents provide more rapid lysis of pulmonary clots and improvement of pulmonary hypertension in life-threatening cases (Bates, 2021; Goldhaber, 2018). In one study of nonpregnant patients receiving heparin for an acute submassive pulmonary embolism, those receiving the recombinant tissue plasminogen activator *alteplase* had a lower risk of death or treatment escalation (Konstantinides, 2002). One metaanalysis of trials involving nonpregnant patients reported that the risk of recurrence or death was significantly lower in patients given thrombolytic agents and heparin compared with those given heparin alone—10 versus 17 percent (Agnelli, 2002). Importantly, however, there were five—2 percent—fatal bleeding episodes in the thrombolysis group and none in the heparin-only group.

There have been several case reports and reviews of thrombolysis in pregnant women. Leonhardt and coworkers (2006) identified 28 reports of tissue plasminogen activator use during pregnancy. Ten cases were for thromboembolism. Complication rates were similar to those in nonpregnant patients, and the authors concluded that such therapy should not be withheld during pregnancy if indicated. Akazawa and Nishida

(2017) reviewed 13 cases of systemic thrombolytic therapy administered during the first 48 hours after delivery. Blood transfusion was required in five of the eight cesarean deliveries, including three cases of hysterectomy and two cases of hematoma drainage. Sousa-Gomes and associates (2019) reviewed outcomes in 141 pregnant women undergoing thrombolysis for VTE or stroke. Maternal death complicated 3 percent of cases, and major bleeding occurred in 9 percent.

Embolectomy

Given the efficacy of thrombolysis and filters, surgical embolectomy is uncommonly indicated. Published experience with emergency embolectomy during pregnancy is limited to case reports (Colombier, 2015; Saeed, 2014). From their review, Ahearn and colleagues (2002) found that although the operative risk to the mother is reasonable, the stillbirth rate is 20 to 40 percent.

THROMBOPROPHYLAXIS

A Cochrane review of guidelines for thromboprophylaxis in pregnancy concluded that there is a lack of overall agreement about which women should be offered thromboprophylaxis (Middleton, 2021). The American Society of Hematology summarized that evidence-based recommendations rely largely on observational studies and on data extrapolated from nonpregnant patients. In many cases, this led them to *suggest*—rather than *recommend*—various schemes for thromboprophylaxis (Bates, 2018). In an earlier study, Cleary-Goldman and coworkers (2007) surveyed 151 fellows of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and reported that intervention without a clear indication is common. Table 55-5 lists several consensus recommendations for thromboprophylaxis. In some cases, more than one option is listed, thus illustrating the confusion that currently reigns. It is important to emphasize that the decision to treat with anticoagulation in pregnancy is influenced by personal VTE history, family history of VTE, severity of thrombophilias, and additional risk factors such as obesity, cesarean delivery, or prolonged immobility (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

■ Prior Venous Thromboembolism

In general, either antepartum surveillance or heparin prophylaxis is recommended for women with prior VTE but without a recurrent risk factor. Tengborn and associates (1989), however, suggested that such management may not be effective. They reported outcomes in 87 pregnant Swedish women who had prior thromboembolic disease and were not tested for thrombophilias. Despite unfractionated heparin prophylaxis, which was usually 5000 U twice daily, 15 percent developed antepartum VTE recurrence. This compared with 12 percent not given heparin.

Brill-Edwards and colleagues (2000) prospectively studied 125 pregnant women with a single prior VTE. Antepartum heparin was not given, but anticoagulant therapy was given for 4 to 6 weeks postpartum. Six women had a recurrent venous thrombosis, but there were no recurrences in women without a known thrombophilia or whose prior thrombosis was associated with a temporary risk factor. A study of 88 women without antiphospholipid antibodies and who were not given antithrombotic prophylaxis reported a subsequent pregnancy- or puerperium-related VTE in 22 percent (De Stefano, 2006). Of 20 women whose original thrombosis was associated with a transient risk factor—not including pregnancy or oral contraceptive use—there were no recurrences during pregnancy, but two during the puerperium. These findings imply that women with a prior thrombosis in association with a thrombophilia or in the absence of a temporary risk factor generally should be given both antepartum and postpartum prophylaxis (Connors, 2017). These data also suggest that for women with a prior VTE, antithrombotic prophylaxis during pregnancy could be tailored according to the circumstances of the original event.

It is important to emphasize that VTE may recur despite antithrombotic prophylaxis. A study of 270 women who had at least one previous VTE found that 10 percent suffered a recurrent VTE (Galambosi, 2014). Twelve of these recurrences occurred early in pregnancy before the initiation of antithrombotic prophylaxis, and 16 occurred despite prophylactic use of LMWH.

Our practice at Parkland Hospital for many years for women with a history of prior VTE was to administer subcutaneous UFH, 5000 to 7500 units two to three times daily. More recently, we have used 40 mg of enoxaparin given subcutaneously daily with transition to UFH near delivery. With either regimen, the recurrence of documented DVT embolization has been uncommon.

■ Cesarean Delivery

The risk for DVT and especially for fatal thromboembolism rises many fold following cesarean delivery compared with that after vaginal delivery. When considering that a third of women giving birth in the United States yearly undergo cesarean delivery, pulmonary embolism is understandably a major cause of maternal mortality (Creanga, 2017; Petersen, 2019). That said, the lack of consensus described earlier by Middleton and coworkers (2021) creates considerable variation in the current recommendations promulgated by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, the Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, and the American College of Chest Physicians (Palmerola, 2016).

Adherence to individual society guidelines following cesarean delivery confers a greater risk in some instances. According to the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020), if American College guidelines were followed, only 1 percent of these women would be candidates for thromboprophylaxis. Almost 85 percent of the same cohort would be given thromboprophylaxis following Royal College guidelines and about 35 percent if American College of Chest Physician guidelines were followed. Some comparisons of these thromboprophylaxis guidelines are shown in Table 55-6.

Since 2011, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) recommends placement of pneumatic compression devices before cesarean delivery for all women not already receiving thromboprophylaxis. This recommendation was based primarily on consensus and expert opinion. For patients

TABLE 55-6. Thromboprophylaxis Guidelines for Women Undergoing Cesarean Delivery

Organization	Recommendations	Risk Factors
ACOG[a]	Pneumatic compression devices for all Pharmacological prophylaxis for risk factors	Risk factors not defined; individualize therapy
SMFM[b]	Pneumatic compression devices for all Prophylactic LMWH Intermediate-dose LMWH Individualized therapy	History of VTE Thrombophilia without history of a VTE Class III obesity with a thrombophilia or history of a VTE Combination of the above factors
RCOG[c]	Prophylactic LMWH for 10 days	Cesarean during labor BMI >40 kg/m^2 Medical comorbidities *or* 2 or more of the following: age >35, parity >3, obesity, smoker, varicose veins, systemic infection, preeclampsia, preterm delivery, stillbirth, operative vaginal delivery, PPH, prolonged admission
	Prophylactic LMWH for 6 weeks	Prior VTE High-risk thrombophilia Low-risk thrombophilia and family history of VTE Antenatal LMWH therapy

[a]ACOG = American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b.
[b]SMFM = Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2020.
[c]RCOG = Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists, 2015.
BMI = body mass index; CHF = congestive heart failure; DM = diabetes mellitus; IBD = inflammatory bowel disease; LMWH = low-molecular-weight heparin; PPH = postpartum hemorrhage; VTE = venous thromboembolism

undergoing cesarean delivery with additional risk factors for thromboembolism, both pneumatic compression devices and UFH or LMWH may be recommended. The College stipulated that cesarean delivery in an emergency setting should not be delayed because of the time necessary to begin thromboprophylaxis.

Implementation of this strategy by the Hospital Corporation of America, the largest for-profit obstetrical health care delivery system in the United States, was associated with a reduction in deaths from pulmonary embolism from 7 of 458,097 cesarean births to 1 of 465,880 cesarean births (Clark, 2011, 2014).

In 2016, the National Partnership for Maternal Safety published several consensus recommendations for the prevention of maternal VTE (D'Alton, 2016). These recommendations included expanded use of antenatal thromboprophylaxis for women hospitalized 3 days or longer, expanded use of prophylaxis during and after vaginal delivery, and expanded use of pharmacological prophylaxis to most women after cesarean delivery. In response, Sibai and Rouse (2016) expressed concern that these new recommendations derive from sparse data of questionable applicability to obstetrical patients. They called for better quality evidence to measure the benefits, harms, and costs of increased pharmacological thromboprophylaxis. As aptly expressed by Macones (2017), "an intervention, such as increased postcesarean pharmacologic thromboprophylaxis, where there are legitimate concerns about efficacy and safety, requires a much higher degree of evidence before a national guideline is implemented." We agree with these sentiments.

REFERENCES

Abbattista M, Gianiello F, Novembrino C, et al: Risk of pregnancy-related venous thromboembolism and obstetrical complications in women with inherited type I antithrombin deficiency: a retrospective, single-centre, cohort study. Lancet Haematol 7(4):e320, 2020

Abe K, Kuklina EV, Hooper WC, et al: Venous thromboembolism as a cause of severe maternal morbidity and mortality in the United States. Semin Perinatal 43(4):e320, 2019

Agnelli G, Becattini C, Kirschstein T: Thrombolysis vs heparin in the treatment of pulmonary embolism. Arch Intern Med 162: 2537, 2002

Ahearn GS, Hadjiliadis D, Govert JA, et al: Massive pulmonary embolism during pregnancy successfully treated with recombinant tissue plasminogen activator. Arch Intern Med 162:1221, 2002

Akazawa M, Nishida M: Thrombolysis with intravenous recombinant tissue plasminogen activator during early postpartum period: a review of the literature. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 96(5):529, 2017

Alfirevic Z, Roberts D, Martlew V: How strong is the association between maternal thrombophilia and adverse pregnancy outcome? A systematic review. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 101:6, 2002

Almawi WY, Al-Shaikh FS, Melemedjian OK, et al: Protein Z, an anticoagulant protein with expanding role in reproductive biology. Reproduction 146(2):R73, 2013

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Inherited thrombophilias in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 197, June 2018. Reaffirmed 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Thromboembolism in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 196, June 2018. Reaffirmed 2020b

Anderson DR, Kahn SR, Rodger MA, et al: Computed tomographic pulmonary angiography vs ventilation-perfusion lung scanning in patients with suspected pulmonary embolism: a randomized controlled trial. JAMA 298:2743, 2007

Arachchillage DR, Makris M: Inherited thrombophilia and pregnancy complications: should we test? Semin Thromb Hemost 45(1):50, 2019

Bapat P, Kedar R, Lubetsky A, et al: Transfer of dabigatran and dabigatran etexilate mesylate across the dually perfused human placenta. Obstet Gynecol 123(6):1256, 2014

Barbour LA, Oja JL, Schultz LK: A prospective trial that demonstrates that dalteparin requirements increase in pregnancy to maintain therapeutic levels of anticoagulation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:1024, 2004

Bates SM: Pulmonary embolism in pregnancy. Semin Respir Crit Care Med 42(2):284, 2021

Bates SM, Greer IA, Middledorp S, et al: VTE, thrombophilia, antithrombotic therapy, and pregnancy. Chest 141:e691S, 2012

Bates SM, Rajasekhar A, Middeldorp S, et al: American Society of Hematology 2018 guidelines for management of venous thromboembolism: venous thromboembolism in the context of pregnancy. Blood Adv 2(22):3317, 2018

Bendapudi PK, Whalen MJ, Lahoud-Rahme M, et al: Case 7–2021: a 19-year-old man with shock, multiple organ failure, and rash. N Engl J Med 384(30):953, 2021

Berresheim M, Wilkie J, Nerenberg KA, et al: A case series of LMWH use in pregnancy: should trough anti-Xa levels guide dosing? Thromb Res 134(6):1234, 2014

Birdwell BG, Raskob GE, Whitsett TL, et al: The clinical validity of normal compression ultrasonography in outpatients suspected of having deep venous thrombosis. Ann Intern Med 128:1, 1998

Blanco-Molina A, Trujillo-Santos J, Criado J, et al: Venous thromboembolism during pregnancy or postpartum: findings from the RIETE Registry. Thromb Haemost 97:186, 2007

Bourjeily G, Khalil H, Raker C, et al: Outcomes of negative multidetector computed tomography with pulmonary angiography in pregnant women suspected of pulmonary embolism. Lung 190:105, 2012

Brandjes DP, Buller HR, Heijboer H, et al: Randomised trial of effect of compression stockings in patients with symptomatic proximal-vein thrombosis. Lancet 349:759, 1997

Breddin HK, Hach-Wunderle V, Nakov R, et al: Effects of a low-molecular-weight heparin on thrombus regression and recurrent thromboembolism in patients with DVT. N Engl J Med 344:626, 2001

Brill-Edwards P, Ginsberg JS, Gent M, et al: Safety of withholding heparin in pregnant women with a history of venous thromboembolism. N Engl J Med 343:1439, 2000

Brooks C, Rutherford JM, Gould J, et al: Warfarin dosage in postpartum women: a case-control study. Br J Obstet Gynaecol 109:187, 2002

Burneo JG, Elias SB, Barkley GL: Cerebral venous thrombosis due to protein S deficiency in pregnancy. Lancet 359:892, 2002

Carroll R, Rebarber A, Booker W, et al: Double versus single thrombophilias during pregnancy. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(19):2590, 2018

Chan WS, Ray JG, Murray S, et al: Suspected pulmonary embolism in pregnancy. Arch Intern Med 162:1170, 2002

Chan WS, Spencer FA, Ginsberg JS: Anatomic distribution of deep vein thrombosis in pregnancy. CMAJ 182:657, 2010

Chan WS, Spencer FA, Lee AY, et al: Safety of withholding anticoagulation in pregnant women with suspected deep vein thrombosis following negative serial compression ultrasound and iliac vein imaging. CMAJ 185(4):E194, 2013

Clark SL, Christmas JT, Frye DR, et al: Maternal mortality in the United States: predictability and the impact of protocols on fatal postcesarean pulmonary embolism and hypertension-related intracranial hemorrhage. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211:32, 2014

Clark SL, Meyers JA, Frye DK, et al: Patient safety in obstetrics—the Hospital Corporation of America experience. Am J Obstet Gynecol 204(4):283, 2011

Cleary-Goldman J, Bettes B, Robinson JN, et al: Thrombophilia and the obstetric patient. Obstet Gynecol 110:669, 2007

Cohen SL, Feizullayeva C, McCandish JA, et al: Comparison of international societal guidelines for the diagnosis of suspected pulmonary embolism during pregnancy. Lancet Haematol 7(3):e247, 2020

Colombier S, Niclauss L: Successful surgical pulmonary embolectomy for massive perinatal embolism after emergency cesarean section. Ann Vasc Surg 29(7):1452.e1, 2015

Conard J, Horellou MH, Van Dreden P, et al: Thrombosis and pregnancy in congenital deficiencies in AT III, protein C or protein S: study of 78 women. Thromb Haemost 63:319, 1990

Connors JM: Thrombophilia testing and venous thrombosis. N Engl J Med 377(12):1177, 2017

Creanga AA, Syverson C, Seed K, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2011–2013. Obstet Gynecol 130(2):366, 2017

Croles FN, Nasserinejad K, Duvekot JJ, et al: Pregnancy, thrombophilia, and the risk of a first venous thrombosis: systematic review and Bayesian meta-analysis. BMJ 359:j4452, 2017

Cunningham FG: Screening for osteoporosis. N Engl J Med 353:1975, 2005

Cunningham FG, Nelson DB: Disseminated intravascular coagulation syndromes in obstetrics. Obstet Gynecol 126(5):999, 2015

D'Alton ME, Friedman AM, Smiley RM, et al: National partnership for maternal safety: consensus bundle on venous thromboembolism. Obstet Gynecol 128(4):688, 2016

Daughety MM, Zilberman-Rudenko J, Shatzel JJ, et al: Management of anticoagulation in pregnant women with mechanical heart valves. Obstet Gynecol Surv 75(3):190, 2020

De Carolis S, di Pasquo E, Rossi E, et al: Fondaparinux in pregnancy: could it be a safe option? A review of the literature. Thromb Res. 135(6):1039, 2015

De Stefano V, Martinelli I, Rossi E, et al: The risk of recurrent venous thromboembolism in pregnancy and puerperium without antithrombotic prophylaxis. Br J Haematol 135:386, 2006

Decousus H, Leizorovicz A, Parent F, et al: A clinical trial of vena caval filters in the prevention of pulmonary embolism in patients with proximal deep-vein thrombosis. N Engl J Med 338:409, 1998

Den Heijer M, Lewington S, Clarke R: Homocysteine, MTHRF and risk of venous thrombosis: a meta-analysis of published epidemiological studies. Thromb Haemost 3:292, 2005

Di Minno MN, Ambrosino P, Ambrosini F, et al: Prevalence of deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism in patients with superficial vein thrombosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Thromb Haemost 14(5):964, 2016

Dizon-Townson D, Miller C, Sibai B, et al: The relationship of the factor V Leiden mutation and pregnancy outcomes for mother and fetus. Obstet Gynecol 106:517, 2005

Douketis JD, Kearon C, Bates S, et al: Risk of fatal pulmonary embolism in patients with treated venous thromboembolism. JAMA 279:458, 1998

Elsaigh E, Thachil J, Nash MJ, et al: The use of fondaparinux in pregnancy. Br J Haematol 168(5):762, 2015

Erdman WA, Jayson HT, Redman HC, et al: Deep venous thrombosis of extremities: role of MR imaging in the diagnosis. Radiology 174:425, 1990

Fausett MB, Vogtlander M, Lee RM, et al: Heparin-induced thrombocytopenia is rare in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185:148, 2001

Fernandez Arias M, Mazarico E, Gonzalex A, et al: Genetic risk assessment of thrombophilia in patients with adverse obstetric outcomes. PLoS One 14(2):e0211114, 2019

Galambosi PJ, Ulander VM, Kaaja RJ: The incidence and risk factors of recurrent venous thromboembolism during pregnancy. Thromb Res 134(2):240, 2014

Garcia D, Erkan D: Diagnosis and management of the antiphospholipid syndrome. N Engl J Med 378(21):2010, 2018

García-Botella A, Asenjo S, De la Morena-Barrio ME, et al: First case with antithrombin deficiency, mesenteric vein thrombosis and pregnancy: multidisciplinary diagnosis and successful management. Thromb Res 144:72, 2016

Goldhaber SZ, Visani L, De Rosa M: Acute pulmonary embolism: Clinical outcomes in the International Cooperative Pulmonary Embolism Registry (ICOPER). Lancet 353:1386, 1999

Goodacre S, Horspool K, Nelson-Piercy C, et al: The DiPEP study: an observational study of the diagnostic accuracy of clinical assessment, D-dimer and chest x-ray for suspected pulmonary embolism in pregnancy and postpartum. BJOG 126:383, 2019

Govindappagari S, O'Shaughnessy FO, Huang Y, et al: Obstetric thromboembolism and risk for post-thrombotic syndrome in months and years after delivery. Abstract No. 112, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:S89, 2020

Greer IA: Clinical practice. Pregnancy complicated by venous thrombosis. N Engl J Med 373(6):540, 2015

Greer IA: Prevention and management of venous thromboembolism in pregnancy. Clin Chest Med 24:123, 2003

Greinacher A: Heparin induced thrombocytopenia. N Engl J Med 373(3):252, 2015

Guyatt GH, Akl EA, Crowther M, et al: Executive summary: antithrombotic therapy and prevention of thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. Chest 141:7S, 2012

Guyton AC, Lindsey AW, Gilluly JJ: The limits of right ventricular compensation following acute increase in pulmonary circulatory resistance. Circ Res 2:326, 1954

Hall WB, Truitt SG, Scheunemann LP, et al: The prevalence of clinically relevant incidental findings on chest computed tomographic angiograms ordered to diagnose pulmonary embolism. Arch Intern Med 169:1961, 2009

Handal-Orefice RC, Moroz LA: Pulmonary embolism management in the critical care setting. Semin Perinatol 43(4):205, 2019
Harris SA, Velineni R, Davies AH: Inferior vena cava filters in pregnancy: a systematic review. J Vasc Interv Radiol 27(3):354, 2016
Hu W, Wang Y, Li J, et al: The predictive value of d-Dimer test for venous thromboembolism during puerperium: a prospective cohort study. Clin Appl Thromb Hemost 26:1076029620901786, 2020
Huisman MV, Klok FA: Current challenges in diagnostic imaging of venous thromboembolism. Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program 2015:202, 2015
Hull RD, Raskob GF, Carter CJ: Serial IPG in pregnancy patients with clinically suspected DVT: clinical validity of negative findings. Ann Intern Med 112:663, 1990
Ilonczai P, Oláh Z, Selmeczi A, et al: Management and outcomes of pregnancies in women with antithrombin deficiency: a single-center experience and review of literature. Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis 26(7):798, 2015
Infante-Rivard C, Rivard G, Yotov W, et al: Absence of association of thrombophilia polymorphisms with intrauterine growth restriction. N Engl J Med 347(1):19, 2002
Jacobsen AF, Qvigstad E, Sandset PM: Low molecular weight heparin (dalteparin) for the treatment of venous thromboembolism in pregnancy. BJOG 110:139, 2003
Jamjute P, Reed N, Hinwood D: Use of inferior vena cava filters in thromboembolic disease during labor: case report with a literature review. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 19:741, 2006
Jerjes-Sánchez C, Rodriguez D, Farjat E, et al: Pregnancy-associated venous thromboembolism: insights from GARFILED-VTE. TH Open 5(1):e24, 2021
Johnson ED, Schell JC, Rodgers GM: The D-dimer assay. Am J Hematol 94(7):833, 2019
Kamei H, Navi BB, Sriram N, et al: Risk of a thrombotic event after the 6-week postpartum period. N Engl J Med 370(14):1307, 2014
Kearon C, Akl EA, Comerota AJ, et al: Antithrombotic therapy for VTE disease: antithrombotic therapy and prevention of thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. Chest 141:e419S, 2012
Kearon C, Akl EA, Ornelas J, et al: Antithrombotic therapy for VTE disease: CHEST guidelines and expert panel report. Chest 149(2):315, 2016
Kim YH, Pfaller B, Marson A, et al: The risk of venous thromboembolism in women with inflammatory bowel disease during pregnancy and the postpartum period: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Medicine (Baltimore) 98(38):e17309, 2019
Kinane TB, Grabowski EF, Sharma A, et al: Case 7–2008: a 17-year-old girl with chest pain and hemoptysis. N Engl J Med 358:941, 2008
Kjellberg U, van Rooijen M, Bremme K, et al: Factor V Leiden mutation and pregnancy-related complications. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203:469.e1, 2010
Konstantinides S, Geibel A, Heusel G, et al: Heparin plus alteplase compared with heparin alone in patients with submassive pulmonary embolism. N Engl J Med 347:1143, 2002
Konstantinides SV, Torbicki A, Agnelli G, et al: 2014 ESC guidelines on the diagnosis and management of acute pulmonary embolism. Eur Heart J 35(43):3033, 2014
Kruger PC, Eikelboom JW, Douketis JD, et al: Deep vein thrombosis: update on diagnosis and management. Med J Aust 210(11):516, 2019
Lameijer H, Aalberts J, van Veldhuisen D, et al: Efficacy and safety of direct oral anticoagulants during pregnancy; a systematic literature review. Thromb Res 169:123, 2018
Le Gal G, Kercret G, Yahmed KB, et al: Diagnostic value of single complete compression ultrasonography in pregnant and postpartum women with suspected deep vein thrombosis: prospective study. BMJ 344:e2635, 2012
Lebaudy C, Hulot J, Amoura Z, et al: Changes in enoxaparin pharmacokinetics during pregnancy and implications for antithrombotic therapeutic strategy. Clin Pharmacol Ther 84(3):370, 2008
Leffert L, Butwick A, Carvalho B, et al: The Society for Obstetric Anesthesia and Perinatology consensus statement on the anesthetic management of pregnancy and postpartum women receiving thromboprophylaxis or higher dose anticoagulants. Anesth Analg 126(3):928, 2018
Leonhardt G, Gaul C, Nietsch HH, et al: Thrombolytic therapy in pregnancy. J Thromb Thrombolysis 21:271, 2006
Leung AN, Bull TM, Jaeschke R, et al: An official American Thoracic Society/Society of Thoracic Radiology Clinical Practice Guideline: evaluation of suspected pulmonary embolism in pregnancy. Am J Respir Crit Care Med 184:1200, 2011
Lim MY, Deal AM, Musty MD, et al: Thrombophilic risk of individuals with rare compound factor V Leiden and prothrombin G20210A polymorphisms: an international case series of 100 individuals. Eur J Haematol 97(4):353, 2016
Linkins L-A, Dans AL, Moores LK, et al: Treatment and prevention of heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. Chest 141:e495S, 2012
Linnemann B, Scholz U, Rott H, et al: Treatment of pregnancy-associated venous thromboembolism-position paper from the Working Group in Women's Health of the Society of Thrombosis and Haemostasis (GTH). Vasa 45(2):103, 2016
Liu L, Sun D: Pregnancy outcomes in patients with primary antiphospholipid syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Medicine (Baltimore) 98(20):e15733, 2019
Liu Y, Sun Y, Zhang S, et al: Placement of a retrievable inferior vena cava filter for deep venous thrombosis in term pregnancy. J Vasc Surg 55:1042, 2012
Lockwood C: Thrombosis, thrombophilia, and thromboembolism: clinical updates in women's health care. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Vol. VI, No. 4, October 2007, Reaffirmed 2012
Lockwood CJ: Inherited thrombophilias in pregnant patients: detection and treatment paradigm. Obstet Gynecol 99:333, 2002
Louis-Jacques AF, Maggio L, Romero ST: Prenatal screening for thrombophilias. Clin Lab Med 36(2):421, 2016
MacCallum P, Bowles L, Keeling D: Diagnosis and management of heritable thrombophilias. BMJ 349:g4387, 2014
Macones GA: Patient safety in obstetrics. More evidence, less emotion. Obstet Gynecol 103(2):257, 2017
Marik PE, Plante LA: Venous thromboembolic disease and pregnancy. N Engl J Med 359:2025, 2008
McDonnell BP, Glennon K, McTiernan A, et al: Adjustment of therapeutic LMWH to achieve specific target anti-FXa activity does not affect outcomes in pregnant patients with venous thromboembolism. J Thromb Thrombolysis 43(1):105, 2017
Middleton P, Shepherd E, Gomersall J: Venous thromboembolism prophylaxis for women at risk during pregnancy and the early postnatal period. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD001689, 2021
Miyamoto K, Komatus H, Nagaya Y, et al: Changes in serum D-dimer level and effect of enoxaparin sodium after a cesarean section: a retrospective study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 11:1, 2020
Moriuchi K, Chigusa Y, Kondoh E, et al: Enoxaparin administration within 24 hours of caesarean section: a 6-year single-centre experience and patient outcomes. J Obstet Gynecol 39(4):451, 2019
Nelson-Piercy C, Powrie R, Borg JY, et al: Tinzaparin use in pregnancy: an international, retrospective study of the safety and efficacy profile. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 159:293, 2011
Ormesher L, Simcox LE, Tower C, et al: To test or not to test, the arguments for and against thrombophilia testing in obstetrics. Obstet Med 10(2):61, 2017
Paidas MJ, Triche EW, James AH, et al: Recombinant human antithrombin in pregnant patients with hereditary antithrombin deficiency: integrated analysis of clinical data. Am J Perinatol 33(4):343, 2016
Palmerola KL, D'Alton ME, Brock CO, et al: A comparison of recommendations for pharmacologic thromboembolism prophylaxis after caesarean delivery from three major guidelines. BJOG 123:2157, 2016
Pécourt M, Yelnik C, Ghesquiere L, et al: Is the presence of antiphospholipid antibodies a poor prognostic factor for patients with HELLP syndrome? Am J Obstet Gynecol April 1, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]
Petersen EE, Davis NL, Goodman D, et al: Vital signs: pregnancy-related deaths, United States, 2011–2015, and strategies for prevention, 13 states, 2013–2017. MMWR 68:423, 2019
Pierangeli SS, Leader B, Barilaro G, et al: Acquired and inherited thrombophilia disorders in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 38:271, 2011
Pollack CV, Schreiber D, Goldhaber SZ, et al: Clinical characteristics, management, and outcomes of patients diagnosed with acute pulmonary embolism in the emergency department. JACC 57:700, 2011
Quinlan DJ, McQuillan A, Eikelboom JW: Low-molecular-weight heparin compared with intravenous unfractionated heparin for treatment of pulmonary embolism: a meta-analysis of randomized, controlled trials. Ann Intern Med 140:143, 2004
Revel MP, Cohen S, Sanchez O, et al: Pulmonary embolism during pregnancy: diagnosis with lung scintigraphy or CT angiography? Radiology 258:590, 2011
Rhéaume M, Weber F, Durand M, et al: Pregnancy-related venous thromboembolism risk in asymptomatic women with antithrombin deficiency: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 127(4):649, 2016
Righini M, Robert-Ebadi H, Elias A, et al: Diagnosis of pulmonary embolism during pregnancy: a multicenter prospective management outcome study. Ann Intern Med 169(11):766, 2018
Rodger M: Evidence base for the management of venous thromboembolism in pregnancy. Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program 2010:173, 2010
Rosenbloom JI, Macones GA: Future research directions for prevention and treatment of obstetric venous thromboembolism. Semin Perinatol 43(4):213, 2019

Rottenstreich A, Kalish Y, Elchalal U, et al: Retrievable inferior vena cava filter utilization in obstetric patients. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(18):3045, 2019

Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists: Reducing the risk of venous thromboembolism during pregnancy and the puerperium (Green-top Guidelines no. 37a). April, 2015

Sabadell J, Casellas M, Alijotas-Reig J, et al: Inherited antithrombin deficiency and pregnancy: maternal and fetal outcomes. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 149:47, 2010

Saccone G, Berghella V, Maruotti GM, et al: Antiphospholipid antibody profile based obstetric outcomes of primary antiphospholipid syndrome: the PREGNANTS study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(5):525.e1, 2017

Saeed G, Möller M, Neuzner J, et al: Emergent surgical pulmonary embolectomy in a pregnant woman: case report and literature review. Tex Heart Inst J 41(2):188, 2014

Said JM, Ignjatovic V, Monagle PT, et al: Altered reference ranges for protein C and protein S during early pregnancy: implications for the diagnosis of protein C and protein S deficiency during pregnancy. Thromb Haemost 103:984, 2010

Scheres LJJ, Lijfering WM, Groenwegan NF, et al: Hypertensive complications of pregnancy and risk of venous thromboembolism. Hypertension 75(3):781, 2020

Sibai BM, Rouse DJ: Pharmacologic thromboprophylaxis in obstetrics: broader use demands better data. Obstet Gynecol 128(4):681, 2016

Silver RM, Saade GR, Thorsten V, et al: Factor V Leiden, prothrombin G20210A, and methylene tetrahydrofolate reductase mutations and stillbirth: the Stillbirth Collaborative Research Network. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(4):468.e1, 2016

Silver RM, Zhao Y, Spong CY, et al: Prothrombin gene G20210A mutation and obstetric complications. Obstet Gynecol 115:14, 2010

Singhal S, Henderson R, Horsfield K, et al: Morphometry of the human pulmonary arterial tree. Circ Res 33:190, 1973

Smith MP, Norris LA, Steer PJ, et al: Tinzaparin sodium for thrombosis treatment and prevention during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190:495, 2004

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM); Pacheco LD, Saade G, et al: Thromboembolism prophylaxis for cesarean delivery. Consult Series #5. August, 2020

Sousa-Gomes M, Guimarães M, Montenegro N: Thrombolysis in pregnancy: a literature review. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(14):2418, 2019

Tapson VF: Acute pulmonary embolism. N Engl J Med 358:1037, 2008

Tengborn L, Bergqvist D, Matzsch T, et al: Recurrent thromboembolism in pregnancy and puerperium: is there a need for thromboprophylaxis? Am J Obstet Gynecol 160:90, 1989

Tromeur C, van der Pol LM, Klok FA, et al: Pitfalls in the diagnostic management of pulmonary embolism in pregnancy. Thromb Res 151 Suppl 1:S86, 2017

Van der Hulle T, Cheung W, Kooij S, et al: Simplified diagnostic management of suspected pulmonary embolism (the YEARS study): a prospective, multicentre, cohort study. Lancet 390(10091):289, 2017

Van der Pol LM, Tromeur C, Bistervels IM, et al: Pregnancy-adapted YEARS algorithm for diagnosis of suspected pulmonary embolism. N Engl J Med 380(12):1139, 2019

van Mens TE, Scheres LJ, de Jong PG, et al: Imaging for the exclusion of pulmonary embolism in pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD011053, 2017

Viau-Lapointe J, Pier-Arsenault M: New evidence in diagnosis of pulmonary embolism during pregnancy. Obstet Med 13(3):120, 2020

Virchow R: Gesammelte Abhandlungen zur wissenschaftlichen Medizin. Frankfurt: Medinger Sohn & Co., 1856, p 219

Waksmonski CA: Cardiac imaging and functional assessment I pregnancy. Semin Perinatol 38(5):240, 2014

Waldman M, Sheiner E, Vardi IS: Can we profile patients at risk for thromboembolic events after delivery: a decade of follow up. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208:S234, 2013

CHAPTER 56

Renal and Urinary Tract Disorders

Disorders of the kidneys and urinary tract are commonly encountered in pregnancy. Some precede pregnancy—one example is nephrolithiasis. Pregnancy-induced changes may predispose to the development or worsening of urinary tract disorders—an example is the markedly increased risk for pyelonephritis. Last, renal pathology unique to pregnancy, such as preeclampsia, can develop. In one Australian study, kidney disorders had an incidence of 0.3 percent in 407,580 births (Fitzpatrick, 2019).

PREGNANCY-INDUCED URINARY TRACT CHANGES

During normal pregnancy, significant changes in both structure and function take place in the urinary tract (Chap. 4, p. 67). The kidneys become larger, and dilation of the renal calyces and ureters can be striking. Some dilation develops before 14 weeks and likely is due to progesterone-induced relaxation of the muscularis. More marked dilation is apparent beginning in midpregnancy and stems from ureteral compression, especially on the right side. *Vesicoureteral reflux* also occurs during pregnancy. Important consequences of these physiological changes are an increased risk of upper urinary infection and erroneous interpretation of studies.

Evidence of functional renal hypertrophy becomes apparent very soon after conception. Glomeruli are larger, although cell numbers are not greater (Strevens, 2003). Intrarenal vasodilation lowers resistance of both afferent and efferent arterioles, and leads to higher effective renal plasma flow and glomerular filtration (Helal, 2012; Hussein, 2014). By 12 weeks' gestation, the glomerular filtration rate (GFR) is already 20 percent above nonpregnant values (Hladunewich, 2004). Ultimately, renal plasma flow rises by 40 percent and GFR by 65 percent. Consequently, serum concentrations of creatinine and urea decline substantively across pregnancy. Thus, values within a nonpregnant normal range may be abnormal for pregnancy (Appendix, p. 1232). Other alterations include those related to acid–base homeostasis and osmoregulation.

Assessment of Renal Function During Pregnancy

Urinalysis results are essentially unchanged during normal pregnancy, except for occasional glucosuria. In nondiabetic gravidas, glucosuria is thought to stem from a pregnancy-related reduced rate of renal tubular glucose reabsorption (Welsh, 1960). This normal physiological change may add confusion and concerns for a gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM) diagnosis. Indeed, 1+ or greater urine dipstick readings have been associated with subsequent GDM diagnosis later in pregnancy. Despite this association, urine dipstick testing alone shows poor sensitivity

to diagnose GDM (Buhlin, 2004; Olagbuji, 2015). For women with glucosuria, no guidelines in the United States direct practice, but in the United Kingdom, early oral glucose testing is considered for those with an isolated 2+ or repetitive 1+ urine dipstick readings (National Institute for Health And Clinical Excellence, 2015). This seems to be a reasonable approach.

Protein excretion is slightly elevated, but it seldom reaches levels that are detected by usual screening methods. Higby and colleagues (1994) reported 24-hour protein excretion in normal pregnancy to be 115 mg, with a 95-percent confidence level of 260 mg/d (Chap. 4, p. 68). This value did not significantly differ by trimester. Albumin constitutes only a small part of total protein excretion, and amounts range from 5 to 30 mg/d. From their review, Airoldi and Weinstein (2007) concluded that proteinuria must exceed 300 mg/d to be considered abnormal. Many consider 500 mg/d to be important with gestational hypertension. As an initial surrogate for 24-hour collections, quantification of the urinary protein-to-creatinine ratio in a spot urine sample is helpful in estimating a 24-hour protein excretion rate. The ratio is nearly the same numerically as the number of grams of protein excreted in urine per day. This measurement is best obtained from a first morning void. Surprisingly, women with lower urinary tract infections do not have more proteinuria (Stephens, 2019).

Blood is another urinalysis marker. In one study, 3 percent of 4307 nulliparas who were screened before 20 weeks' gestation had *idiopathic hematuria*, defined as 1+ or greater blood on urine dipstick (Stehman-Breen, 2002). These women had a twofold higher risk of developing preeclampsia. However, the link between preeclampsia and hematuria has not been found by all (Brown, 2005; Shahriaki, 2016). In another study of 1000 women screened during pregnancy, Brown and coworkers (2005) reported a 15-percent incidence of dipstick microscopic hematuria. Most women had trace levels of hematuria, and the false-positive rate with this tool was 40 percent. Notably, other elements such as vitamin C, povidone-iodine, myoglobin, free hemoglobin can produce false-positive results. Thus, positive dipstick results should prompt formal urinalysis. Microscopic hematuria is defined as >3 red blood cells (RBCs) per high-powered field (HPF).

For verified asymptomatic microscopic hematuria, few guidelines direct the best evaluation. History and physical often point to benign causes. If not, initial exclusion of infection by urinalysis or culture is reasonable. For early glomerular disease, serum creatinine and blood urea nitrogen levels, a spot protein-to-creatinine ratio or 24-hour urine collection, and urinalysis with examination of urine sediment can aid diagnosis. With this last step, proteinuria, dysmorphic RBCs, and cellular casts are characteristics. To help exclude neoplastic or stone disease, magnetic resonance urography (MRU) of the upper and lower urinary tract and cystoscopy is suitable in pregnancy (Davis, 2012). However, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) recommends against the last steps to exclude cancer for asymptomatic, low-risk, never-smoking women younger than 50 years who have ≤25 RBCs seen per HPF.

If the serum creatinine level in pregnancy persistently exceeds 0.9 mg/dL (75 µmol/L), intrinsic renal disease should be suspected (Wiles, 2019a). In these cases, some determine the creatinine clearance as an estimate of the GFR.

Of imaging tools, *sonography* informs on renal size, relative consistency, and elements of obstruction. Full-sequence *intravenous pyelography* is not done routinely. However, the clinical situation may warrant *one-shot pyelography*, in which contrast medium injection is followed after 30 minutes by one or two abdominal radiographs (Chap. 49, p. 873). Magnetic resonance (MR) imaging of renal masses provides excellent results due to its excellent resolution at soft-tissue interfaces (Putra, 2009). *Cystoscopy* is performed for the same indications as in the nonpregnant population. *Ureteroscopy* similarly may be indicated and carries an approximate 5-percent complication rate during stone removal during pregnancy (Johnson, 2012).

Although relatively safe during pregnancy, *renal biopsy* usually is postponed unless results may change therapy. From a review of 243 biopsies in pregnant women, the incidence of complications was 7 percent compared with 1 percent in postpartum women (Piccoli, 2013). Lindheimer and colleagues (2013) recommend its consideration for those with rapid deterioration of renal function of unclear etiology or with symptomatic nephrotic syndrome. We have found biopsy helpful in selected cases to direct management. Renal biopsy performed in *normal* pregnant volunteers showed that approximately 50 percent had slight to moderate glomerular endotheliosis (Strevens, 2003). In contrast, all 27 women with proteinuric hypertension had moderate to severe endotheliosis.

Pregnancy After Unilateral Nephrectomy

After removal of one kidney, a remaining normal kidney provides augmented compensatory renal function. With pregnancy, this is further amplified. Functional evaluation of the remaining kidney is essential, even though most women have no difficulty in pregnancy. At minimum, the serum creatinine level is measured and a urine spot protein:creatinine ratio is determined. No long-term permanent consequences accompany kidney donation done before pregnancy. However, the incidence of subsequent preeclampsia is greater (Davis, 2019; Steele, 2019; Vannevel, 2018).

URINARY TRACT INFECTIONS

Asymptomatic or *covert bacteriuria* is frequent in pregnancy and is an infection precursor. True infections of the urinary tract are the most prevalent bacterial infections during pregnancy. Symptomatic infection includes *cystitis*, or it may involve the renal calyces, pelvis, and parenchyma to cause *pyelonephritis*.

Organisms from the normal perineal flora cause urinary infections. *Escherichia coli* strains most commonly cause nonobstructive pyelonephritis. In approximately 90 percent of these organisms, *adhesins* such as P- and S-fimbriae are present. These are cell-surface protein structures that enhance bacterial adherence to vaginal and uroepithelial cells and virulence (Hooton, 2012; Spurbeck, 2011). Maternal deaths have been attributed to *E coli* bearing Dr^+ and P adhesins (Sledzińska, 2011).

Urinary stasis, vesicoureteral reflux, and diabetes mellitus predispose to symptomatic upper urinary infections. Moreover, data suggest that pregnant women have more severe sequelae from urosepsis. As one influence, the T helper cell (Th1:Th2)

ratio of normal pregnancy is reversed (Chap. 4, p. 61). Additionally, various perturbations of cytokine expression have been reported (Chaemsaithong, 2013).

In the puerperium, several risk factors also predispose a woman to urinary infections. Bladder sensitivity to intravesical fluid tension is often diminished as a consequence of labor trauma or conduction analgesia (Chap. 36, p. 638). Also, the sensation of bladder distention can be masked by discomfort from an episiotomy, periurethral laceration, or vaginal wall hematoma. Normal postpartum diuresis, while usually protective, may worsen bladder overdistention, and catheterization performed to relieve retention may lead to urinary infection.

Asymptomatic Bacteriuria

This refers to persistent, actively multiplying bacteria within the urinary tract in asymptomatic women. It is defined as one or more bacterial species that has a count $\geq 10^5$ colony-forming units/mL determined by urine culture of a voided specimen (Infectious Disease Society of America, 2019). Its prevalence in sexually active nonpregnant women is 2 to 6 percent (Hooten, 2000; Nicolle, 2003). The highest incidence is in African-American multiparas with sickle-cell trait, and the lowest incidence is in affluent white women of low parity. Asymptomatic infection is also more common in women with diabetes (Schneeberger, 2014). In most women, bacteriuria is recurrent or persistent, and thus it frequently is discovered during prenatal care. The incidence during pregnancy is similar to that in nonpregnant women and varies from 2 to 7 percent (Nicolle, 2003).

Bacteriuria is typically already present at the time of the first prenatal visit. An initial positive urine culture result should prompt treatment, after which, fewer than 1 percent of women develop a symptomatic UTI (Whalley, 1967). It may be prudent to treat lower concentrations, because pyelonephritis develops in some women with colony counts of only 20,000 to 50,000 organisms/mL (Lucas, 1993).

Significance

If asymptomatic bacteriuria (ASB) is not treated, approximately 25 percent of affected women will develop symptomatic infection during pregnancy. Eradication of bacteriuria with antimicrobial agents prevents most of these. The American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017), as well as the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force (2019), recommend screening for bacteriuria at the first prenatal visit (Chap. 10, p. 181). Standard urine cultures may not be cost effective when the prevalence is low. Instead, less expensive screening tests such as the leukocyte esterase and nitrite dipstick are cost-effective (Chu, 2018). At Parkland Hospital, culture screening is done because of a 5- to 8-percent prevalence of bacteriuria. Susceptibility determination is not necessary because initial treatment is empirical (Hooton, 2012). Last, a special agar-coated dipstick culture technique has excellent positive and negative predictive values (Rogozińska, 2016).

Other than pyelonephritis prevention, it is unclear whether ASB treatment provides other benefits. In many studies, there was no distinction from symptomatic infection. For example, in a cohort of 25,746 mother-newborn pairs, Schieve and coworkers (1994) reported UTI to be associated with increased risks for low-birthweight neonates, preterm delivery, pregnancy-associated hypertension, and anemia. These findings vary from those of Gilstrap and colleagues (1981b) and Whalley (1967), who studied asymptomatic infection. A California database study reported 160,000 women with UTIs were treated in the emergency department or hospital (Baer, 2021). These presumed symptomatic infections were associated with a 1.4-fold higher preterm delivery rate in those <37 weeks.

Treatment

Bacteriuria responds to empirical treatment with any of several antimicrobial regimens listed in Table 56-1. *E coli* is the most common species isolated in pregnant women (Le Blanc, 1964; Nicolle, 2003). Selection can be based on in vitro susceptibilities. However, in our extensive experience, empirical oral treatment for 10 days with nitrofurantoin macrocrystals, 100 mg at bedtime, is usually effective. Lumbiganon and associates (2009) reported satisfactory results with a 7-day oral course of nitrofurantoin, 100 mg given twice daily. Single-dose antimicrobial therapy also has been used with success for bacteriuria. The important caveat is that, regardless of regimen given, the recurrence rate approximates 30 percent. This may indicate covert upper tract infection and the need for longer therapy.

TABLE 56-1. Oral Antimicrobial Agents Used for Treatment of Pregnant Women with Asymptomatic Bacteriuria

Single-dose treatment
Amoxicillin, 3 g
Ampicillin, 2 g
Cephalosporin, 2 g
Nitrofurantoin, 200 mg
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, 320/1600 mg
3-day course
Amoxicillin, 500 mg three times daily
Ampicillin, 250 mg four times daily
Cephalosporin, 250 mg four times daily
Nitrofurantoin, 50 to 100 mg four times daily or 100 mg twice daily
Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole, 160/800 mg two times daily
Other
Nitrofurantoin, 100 mg four times daily for 10 days
Nitrofurantoin, 100 mg twice daily for 5 to 7 days
Nitrofurantoin, 100 mg at bedtime for 10 days
For treatment failures
Nitrofurantoin, 100 mg four times daily for 21 days
Suppression for bacterial persistence or recurrence
Nitrofurantoin, 100 mg at bedtime for remainder of pregnancy

Periodic surveillance is necessary to prevent recurrent UTIs (Schneeberger, 2015). The first recurrence is considered a treatment failure and extended therapy for 21 days is considered. For women with persistent or frequent ASB, suppressive therapy for the remainder of pregnancy can be given. We routinely use nitrofurantoin, 100 mg orally at bedtime. Its rare but serious side effects are pulmonary and hepatic toxicity.

Cystitis and Urethritis

According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 7.2 percent of pregnant women were treated as an outpatient for a UTI in 2014 (Ailes, 2018). Cystitis is characterized by dysuria, urgency, and frequency but causes few associated systemic findings. Pyuria and bacteriuria are usually found. Microscopic hematuria is common, and occasionally gross hematuria stems from hemorrhagic cystitis. Although cystitis is usually uncomplicated, the upper urinary tract may become involved by ascending infection. Almost 40 percent of pregnant women with acute pyelonephritis have preceding symptoms of lower tract infection (Gilstrap, 1981a).

Women with cystitis respond readily to any of several regimens. Most of the three-day regimens listed in Table 56-1 are usually 90-percent effective. Single-dose therapy is less effective, and if it is used, concomitant pyelonephritis must be confidently excluded.

Lower urinary tract symptoms with pyuria accompanied by a sterile urine culture may be from urethritis caused by *Chlamydia trachomatis*. Mucopurulent cervicitis usually coexists, and azithromycin therapy is effective (Chap. 68, p. 1212).

Acute Pyelonephritis

Infection of the renal parenchyma is the most common serious nonobstetrical medical complication of pregnancy. One study of the Nationwide Inpatient Sample found that nearly 29,000 hospitalizations in 2006 were for acute pyelonephritis in pregnancy (Jolley, 2012). The highest rates were noted for adolescents at 17.5 per 1000 and for Hispanic women at 10.1 per 1000. In another study of more than 70,000 pregnancies in a managed care organization, 3.5 percent of antepartum admissions were for urinary infections (Gazmararian, 2002). The seriousness is underscored by the observations of Snyder and coworkers (2013) that pyelonephritis was the leading cause of septic shock during pregnancy. Moreover, in a 2-year audit of admissions to the Parkland Hospital Obstetrical Intermediate Care Unit, 12 percent of antepartum admissions were for sepsis caused by pyelonephritis (Zeeman, 2003). Of concern, maternal urosepsis may be related to an increased incidence of cerebral palsy in preterm newborns (Jacobsson, 2002). Fortunately, data do not suggest serious long-term maternal sequelae (Raz, 2003).

Clinical Findings

Renal infection develops more frequently in the second half of pregnancy, and nulliparity and young age are risk factors (Hill, 2005). Pyelonephritis is unilateral and right-sided in more than half of cases, and it is bilateral in a fourth. Its abrupt onset is marked by fever, shaking chills, and aching pain in one or both lumbar regions. Anorexia, nausea, and vomiting may worsen dehydration. Tenderness usually can be elicited by percussion in one or both costovertebral angles. The urinary sediment contains many leukocytes, frequently in clumps, and numerous bacteria. The differential diagnosis includes, among others, labor, chorioamnionitis, appendicitis, placental abruption, or infarcted leiomyoma.

Bacteremia is demonstrated in 15 to 20 percent of these women. *E coli* is isolated from urine or blood in 70 to 80 percent of infections, *Klebsiella pneumoniae* in 3 to 5 percent, *Enterobacter* or *Proteus* species in 3 to 5 percent, and gram-positive organisms, including group B *Streptococcus* and *Staphylococcus aureus*, in up to 10 percent of cases (Hill, 2005; Wing, 2000). Evidence of sepsis is common, and this is discussed in detail in Chapter 50 (p. 888).

During care, plasma creatinine is monitored, because 5 percent of pregnant women develop renal dysfunction despite aggressive fluid resuscitation (Hill, 2005). Follow-up studies have demonstrated that this endotoxin-induced damage is reversible in the long term (Whalley, 1975). In up to 10 percent of women, varying degrees of respiratory insufficiency, including frank pulmonary edema, may result from endotoxin-induced alveolar injury (Cunningham, 1987; Sheffield, 2005; Snyder, 2013). In some cases, pulmonary injury may be so severe that it causes *acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS)*.

Uterine activity from endotoxins is common and is related to fever severity. In a study by Millar and associates (2003), women with pyelonephritis averaged 5 contractions per hour at admission, and this declined to 2 per hour within 6 hours of intravenous fluid and antimicrobial administration. β-agonist therapy for tocolysis raises the likelihood of respiratory insufficiency from permeability edema because of the sodium- and fluid-retaining properties of those agents (Chap. 50, p. 883). In one study, the incidence of pulmonary edema in women with pyelonephritis who were given β-agonists was 8 percent—a fourfold increase compared with that expected (Towers, 1991).

Endotoxin-induced *hemolysis* is common, and approximately a third of patients with pyelonephritis develop anemia (Cox, 1991). With recovery, hemoglobin regeneration is normal because acute infection does not affect erythropoietin production (Cavenee, 1994).

Management

One scheme for management of acute pyelonephritis is shown in Table 56-2. Although we obtain blood cultures when the patient temperature exceeds 39°C, prospective trials show them to be of limited clinical utility (Wing, 2000). *Intravenous hydration to ensure adequate urinary output is the cornerstone of treatment.* Antimicrobials also are begun promptly with the caution that they may initially worsen endotoxemia from bacterial lysis. Ongoing surveillance for worsening of sepsis is monitored by serial determinations of urinary output, blood pressure, pulse, temperature, and oxygen saturation. High fever should be lowered with a cooling blanket and acetaminophen. This is especially important in early pregnancy because of possible teratogenic effects of hyperthermia.

TABLE 56-2. Management of the Pregnant Woman with Acute Pyelonephritis

Hospitalize patient
Obtain urine and blood cultures
Evaluate hemogram, serum creatinine, and electrolytes
Monitor vital signs frequently, including urinary output—consider indwelling catheter
Establish urinary output ≥50 mL/h with IV crystalloid solution
Administer IV antimicrobial therapy (see text)
Obtain chest radiograph if there is dyspnea or tachypnea
Repeat hematology and chemistry studies in 48 h
Change to oral antimicrobials when afebrile
Discharge when afebrile 24 h, consider antimicrobial therapy for 7-10 d
Repeat urine culture 1–2 wks after antimicrobial therapy completed

IV = intravenous.
From Lucas, 1994; Sheffield, 2005.

Antimicrobial therapy usually is empirical, and ampicillin plus gentamicin; cefazolin or ceftriaxone; or an extended-spectrum antibiotic were all 95-percent effective in randomized trials (Sanchez-Ramos, 1995; Wing, 1998, 2000). Fewer than half of *E coli* strains are sensitive to ampicillin in vitro, but gentamicin plus ampicillin or plus a cephalosporin generally have a synergistic effect and excellent activity (Johnson, 2018). Serum creatinine levels are monitored if nephrotoxic drugs are given. Initial treatment at Parkland Hospital is ampicillin plus gentamicin. Some recommend suitable substitutes if bacterial studies show in vitro resistance. With any of the regimens discussed, response is usually prompt, and 95 percent of women are afebrile by 72 hours (Hill, 2005; Wing, 2000). After discharge, most recommend oral therapy to complete 10 to 14 days (Hooton, 2012; Johnson, 2018).

Recurrent infection—either covert or symptomatic—is common and develops in 30 to 40 percent of women following completion of pyelonephritis treatment. Unless other measures are taken to ensure urine sterility, nitrofurantoin, 100 mg orally at bedtime given for the remainder of the pregnancy, reduces bacteriuria recurrence.

Persistent Infection

Generally, stepwise defervescence of approximately 1°F per day follows intravenous hydration and antimicrobial therapy. Upwards of 20 percent of women are febrile for more than 4 days (Valent, 2017). With persistent spiking fever or lack of clinical improvement by 48 to 72 hours, urinary tract obstruction, calculi, or abscess is considered (Johnson, 2018). In these women, renal sonography is recommended to search for these.

Obstruction manifests by abnormal ureteral or pyelocaliceal dilation. Nephrolithiasis, however, is not always seen in a renal sonogram (Butler, 2000; Maikranz, 1987). If stones are strongly suspected despite a nondiagnostic sonographic examination, a plain abdominal radiograph will identify nearly 90 percent. Another option is the modified *one-shot intravenous pyelography* (p. 995) (Butler, 2000). Last, persistent infection can be due to an intrarenal or perinephric abscess or phlegmon (Cox, 1988; Rafi, 2012). MR imaging is preferred for abscess detection if renal sonography is nonconclusive (Rubilotta, 2014).

Obstruction relief is important, and we have found that percutaneous nephrostomy is preferable because the stents are more easily replaced. Another method is cystoscopic placement of a double-J ureteral stent. These stents are usually left in place until after delivery and often become encrusted and need replacing (Lindquester, 2021). Last, in some women, surgical removal of stones may be needed (p. 1000). Renal abscesses larger than 3 cm may necessitate percutaneous drainage or surgical treatment (Coelho, 2007; Mandal, 2017; Siegel, 1996).

Outpatient Management of Pyelonephritis

This is an option for nonpregnant women with uncomplicated pyelonephritis (Fox, 2017; Johnson, 2018). Wing and colleagues (1999) described such management in 92 pregnant women who were first given in-hospital intramuscular ceftriaxone, two 1-g doses 24 hours apart. At this point, one third of the group was considered suitable for outpatient therapy, and these women were randomly assigned either to discharge and oral antimicrobials or to continued hospitalization with intravenous therapy. A third of the outpatient management group was unable to adhere to the treatment regimen and was admitted. These findings suggest that outpatient management of pyelonephritis is applicable only to very few pregnant women.

■ Reflux Nephropathy

This refers to loss of nephron mass from patchy interstitial scarring and tubular atrophy due to high-pressure reflux of sterile urine from the bladder to the kidneys. In adults, long-term complications include hypertension, which may be severe if renal damage is demonstrable (Beck, 2018). Moreover, reports describing 879 pregnancies in 432 women with reflux nephropathy indicate that impaired renal function and bilateral renal scarring were associated with higher rates of pregnancy-associated hypertensive disorders (Attini, 2018). Many also had surgical correction of reflux as children, and these women commonly have bacteriuria when pregnant (Mor, 2003). In other women with reflux nephropathy, no clear history implicates recurrent cystitis, acute pyelonephritis, or obstructive disease (Gebäck, 2016). Chronic renal disease and pregnancy outcome is discussed further later (p. 1003).

NEPHROLITHIASIS

Kidney stones develop in 9 percent of women during their lifetime with an average age of onset in the third decade (Curhan, 2018). Calcium salts make up approximately 80 percent of stones, and hyperparathyroidism should be excluded. Calcium oxalate stones are most common in young nonpregnant women, but in pregnancy most stones—65 to 75 percent—are calcium phosphate or hydroxyapatite (Tan, 2013).

Nephrolithiasis is more common in women with prior pregnancies than in nulligravidas. Normal physiological changes of the urinary system may promote stone formation, and elevation of urinary pH reduces calcium phosphate solubility (Reinstatler, 2017). More than half of patients who have a stone typically form another stone within 10 years.

Contrary to past teachings, a low-calcium diet *promotes* stone formation. Current recommendations to prevent recurrences include hydration and a diet low in sodium and protein (Curhan, 2018). Thiazide diuretics also diminish stone formation. In general, obstruction, infection, intractable pain, and heavy bleeding are indications for stone removal. Extraction by a flexible basket via cystoscopy, although used less often than in the past, is still a reasonable consideration for pregnant women. In nonpregnant patients, stone destruction by *lithotripsy* is preferred to surgical therapy in most cases. Limited information guides the use of lithotripsy during pregnancy, and it is not generally recommended.

■ Stone Disease During Pregnancy

The reported incidence of stone disease complicating pregnancy varies widely. At the low end, Butler and coworkers (2000) found an incidence of 0.3 admissions per 1000 pregnancies in more than 186,000 deliveries at Parkland Hospital. In an Israeli study, the incidence in nearly 220,000 pregnancies was 0.8 per 1000 (Rosenberg, 2011). Most stone episodes are diagnosed in the second and third trimesters of pregnancy (Dai, 2021). Bladder stones are rare, but recurrent infection and labor obstructed by stones have been reported (Ait Benkaddour, 2006; Ruan, 2011).

Data are conflicting whether women with kidney stones have an increased risk for adverse pregnancy outcomes. Swartz and colleagues (2007) reported a preterm delivery rate of 10.6 percent in women with nephrolithiasis compared with 6.4 percent in normal controls. A nationwide case-control study from Taiwan also reported 20- to 40-percent increases in low-birthweight newborns and preterm births (Chung, 2013). To the contrary, a case-control study from Hungary reported that pregnancy outcomes, including preterm delivery, were similar in women with and without stone disease (Banhidy, 2007). Comparable conclusions were drawn from the Israeli study noted earlier (Rosenberg, 2011). Women who have formed stones prior to pregnancy have a higher incidence of gestational diabetes and preeclampsia (Tangren, 2018).

Diagnosis

More than 90 percent of pregnant women with nephrolithiasis present with pain. However, some evidence suggests that pregnant women may have fewer symptoms with stone passage because of normal urinary tract dilation (Tan, 2013). Gross hematuria is less common than in nonpregnant women and has an incidence of 2 to 23 percent (Butler, 2000; Lewis, 2003).

Sonography is the first-line study to visualize stones, but as discussed above, many are undetected (McAleer, 2004). Abnormal urinary tract dilation or absent ureteral "jets" of urine into the bladder are indirect indicators of urolithiasis (Fig. 56-1). If abnormal dilation is seen but no stone is visualized, one-shot pyelography may be useful.

Helical computed tomography (CT) scanning is preferred imaging for nonpregnant individuals. In pregnancy, MR imaging is the second-line test following a nondiagnostic sonographic evaluation (Masselli, 2013). However, if CT imaging is needed, White and colleagues (2007) recommend unenhanced helical CT and cite an average fetal radiation dose to be 7 mGy.

Management

Treatment depends on symptoms and gestational age (Semins, 2013). Intravenous hydration and analgesics are given. Patients strain collected urine to identify passed stones. In half of women with symptomatic stones, infection will be identified, and this is treated vigorously. Although calculi infrequently cause symptomatic obstruction during pregnancy, persistent pyelonephritis should prompt a search for obstruction due to nephrolithiasis.

Approximately 75 percent of symptomatic women will improve with conservative therapy, and the stone usually passes spontaneously (Tan, 2013). Others require an invasive procedure such as ureteral stenting, ureteroscopy, percutaneous nephrostomy, transureteral laser lithotripsy, or basket extraction (Butler, 2000; Hosseini, 2017). Watterson and coworkers

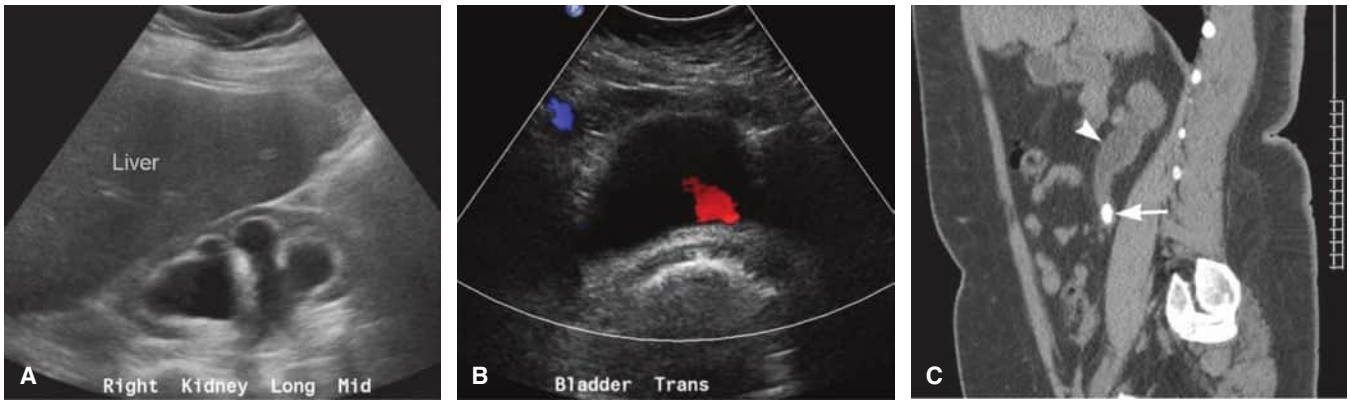


FIGURE 56-1 **A.** Sonographic image of the right upper quadrant demonstrates severe hydronephrosis and thinned echogenic renal parenchyma. **B.** Application of color Doppler during sonography of the bladder reveals a urine jet (*red streak*) from the left ureteral orifice. No flow was noted from the right orifice during observation. **C.** Sagittal CT image shows an obstructing stone in the mid right ureter (*arrow*) and hydroureteronephrosis (*arrow head*).

(2002) described successful transureteral holmium:YAG laser lithotripsy in nine of 10 women. Ultimately, less than 2 percent of symptomatic pregnant women require surgical exploration following one of the procedures listed above (Swartz, 2007). The need for fluoroscopy limits the utility of percutaneous nephrolithotomy. Extracorporeal shock-wave lithotripsy is contraindicated in pregnancy.

PREGNANCY AFTER RENAL TRANSPLANTATION

In 2020, more than 100,000 registrants were waiting for renal transplantations through the Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network—OPTN (2020). The 1-year graft survival rate is 95 percent for those from living donors and is 90 percent from deceased donors. Survival rates approximately doubled in the 1990s, due in large part to the introduction of cyclosporine and muromonab-CD3 (Orthoclone OKT3) to prevent and treat organ rejection. The latter is a monoclonal antibody against the CD3 receptor of T cells. Since then, mycophenolate mofetil and tacrolimus have further reduced acute rejection episodes. However, the former is teratogenic (Briggs, 2017). In the report from the National Transplant Pregnancy Registry, 23 percent of fetuses exposed to mycophenolate had birth defects (Coscia, 2010). Importantly, resumption of renal function after transplantation promptly restores fertility in reproductive-aged women (Yaprak, 2019). Thus, these women should be counseled to use contraception, especially those treated with mycophenolate. In one study, more than half of transplant recipients reported that they were not counseled regarding contraception (French, 2013).

Pregnancy Outcomes

Women with solid organ transplant have higher severe maternal morbidity rates (Sabr, 2019). Deshpande and associates (2011) reviewed the outcomes of more than 4700 pregnancies in renal transplant recipients. Approximately 70 percent of pregnancies resulted in a live birth. However, rates of preeclampsia, gestational diabetes, and preterm delivery were substantially greater. Similar outcomes were described for the Australian and New Zealand Transplant Registry (Wyld, 2013). In the United Kingdom, Bramham and colleagues (2013) identified a live-birth rate that exceeded 90 percent in renal transplant recipients. Half were delivered before 37 weeks' gestation, but only 9 percent before 32 weeks. Low birthweight complicated half of pregnancies, and growth restriction complicated 25 percent. Notably, the incidence of fetal malformations was not increased, except in those who took mycophenolate mofetil.

The incidence of preeclampsia is high in all transplant recipients. In the UK National Cohort Study reported by Bramham and associates (2013), the incidence of preeclampsia was 22 percent. From their review, Josephson and McKay (2011) cite an incidence of one third of pregnancies but question the validity of this frequency. Importantly, in some cases, rejection is difficult to distinguish from preeclampsia. That said, the incidence of rejection episodes approximates only 2 percent (Bramham, 2013). Viral infections—especially polyomavirus hominis 1, also called *BK virus*—are frequent. In addition, gestational diabetes is found in approximately 5 percent. Both are likely related to immunosuppression therapy. Similar outcomes have been reported by several other investigators (Al Duraihimh, 2008; Cruz Lemini, 2007; Ghafari, 2008).

The Italian Society of Nephrology recommends that women who have undergone transplantation satisfy several requisites before attempting pregnancy (Cabiddu, 2018). First, women should be in good general health for at least 1 to 2 years after transplantation. Second, renal function should be stable. Parameters include a GFR ≥60 mL/min, serum creatinine level <2 mg/dL, and proteinuria <500 mg/d. Third, there should be no recent evidence for graft rejection and no treatment with teratogenic drugs. Last, hypertension should be absent or well controlled.

Cyclosporine and tacrolimus are given routinely to renal transplantation recipients. Coincident with expected pregnancy-related intravascular volume expansion, cyclosporine blood levels decline during pregnancy. However, this was not reported to be associated with rejection episodes (Thomas, 1997). Unfortunately, these agents are nephrotoxic and may also cause renal hypertension. In fact, they likely contribute substantively to the chronic renal disease that develops in 10 to 20 percent of patients with nonrenal solid organ transplantation (Goes, 2007).

Concern persists regarding the possible late effects in offspring subjected to immunosuppressive therapy in utero. These include malignancy, germ cell dysfunction, and malformations in the children of the offspring. In addition, cyclosporine is secreted in breast milk (Moretti, 2003). In two small studies, these children had normal neurological and intellectual function (Morales-Buenrostro, 2019; Schreiber-Zamora, 2019).

Last, pregnancy-induced renal hyperfiltration theoretically may impair long-term graft survival. However, Sturgiss and Davison (1995) found no evidence for this in one study of 34 allograft recipients followed for a mean of 15 years.

Management

Close surveillance is necessary. Covert bacteriuria is treated, and if it is recurrent, suppressive treatment is given for the remainder of the pregnancy. Serial hepatic enzyme concentrations and blood counts are monitored for toxic effects of azathioprine and cyclosporine. Some recommend measurement of serum cyclosporine levels. Gestational diabetes is more common if corticosteroids are taken, and in these cases overt diabetes must be excluded with glucose tolerance testing done at the initiation of prenatal care. Surveillance for opportunistic infections from herpesvirus, cytomegalovirus, and toxoplasmosis is important because these infections are common. Some recommend surveillance for BK virus in women known to be infected, however, diagnosis and treatment are problematic.

Renal function is monitored, and the GFR usually increases 20 to 25 percent. If a significant rise in the serum creatinine level is detected, its cause must be determined. Possibilities include acute rejection, cyclosporine toxicity, preeclampsia, infection, and urinary tract obstruction. Evidence of pyelonephritis or graft rejection should prompt admission for aggressive management. Imaging studies and kidney biopsy may be indicated.

The woman is carefully monitored for development or worsening of underlying hypertension, and especially of superimposed preeclampsia. Management of hypertension during pregnancy is the same as for patients without an organ transplant (Chap. 53, p. 950).

Vigilant fetal surveillance is indicated because of the higher incidences of fetal-growth restriction and preterm delivery. Although cesarean delivery is reserved for obstetrical indications, occasionally the transplanted kidney obstructs labor, and the overall cesarean delivery rate approaches 80 percent (Bramham, 2013; Madej, 2018; Rocha, 2013).

POLYCYSTIC KIDNEY DISEASE

This usually autosomally dominant systemic disease primarily affects the kidneys. Its basic pathophysiology is a *ciliopathy* that affects renal tubules, although only approximately 5 percent develop cysts (Zhou, 2018). The incidence is about 1 in 1000 births and it causes approximately 5 to 10 percent of end-stage renal disease in the United States. Although genetically heterogeneous, almost 85 percent of cases are due to *PKD1* gene mutations on chromosome 16, and the other 15 percent to *PKD2* mutations on chromosome 4. Prenatal diagnosis is available if the mutation has been identified in a family member or if linkage has been established in the family. Preimplantation genetic screening reduces the risk of affected fetuses to 1 to 2 percent (Murphy, 2018).

Renal complications more commonly affect men than women, and symptoms usually appear in the third or fourth decade. Flank pain, hematuria, proteinuria, abdominal masses, and associated calculi and infection are frequent findings. Hypertension develops in 75 percent, and progression to renal failure is a major problem. Superimposed acute renal failure also may develop from infection or obstruction from ureteral angulation. Specifically, renal cyst may displace and create angles along the normal ureteral course.

Other organs are commonly involved. Asymptomatic *hepatic cysts* coexist in a third of patients with polycystic kidneys. Hepatic involvement is more common and more aggressive in women than in men. Approximately 10 percent of patients with polycystic kidney disease die from rupture of an associated *intracranial berry aneurysm*. Up to a fourth of patients have *cardiac valvular lesions*, which include mitral valve prolapse and mitral, aortic, and tricuspid valvular incompetence.

Pregnancy Outcomes

The prognosis for pregnancy in women with polycystic kidney disease depends on the degree of associated hypertension and renal insufficiency. Urinary infections are common. Chapman and coworkers (1994) compared pregnancy outcomes in 235 affected women who had 605 pregnancies with those of 108 unaffected family members who had 244 pregnancies. Composite perinatal complication rates were similar—33 versus 26 percent—but hypertension, including preeclampsia, was more common in women with polycystic kidneys. Pregnancy does not seem to accelerate the natural disease course (Lindheimer, 2007).

GLOMERULAR DISEASES

The glomerulus and its capillaries are subject to numerous conditions and agents that can lead to acute and chronic diseases. Glomerular damage can be caused by toxins or infections or from systemic disorders such as hypertension or diabetes. It may also be idiopathic. When there is capillary inflammation, the process is termed *glomerulonephritis*, and in many of these cases, an autoimmune process is involved. Glomerular disease or glomerulonephritis may result from a single stimulus such as that following group A streptococcal infections. It may also be a manifestation of a multisystem disease such as systemic lupus erythematosus or diabetes (Blom, 2017).

Persistent glomerulonephritis eventually leads to decline of renal function. Progression is variable and often does not become apparent until chronic renal insufficiency is diagnosed. Lewis and Neilsen (2018) group glomerular injuries into six syndromes based on clinical patterns (Table 56-3). Some underlying disorders—examples include infections, vasculitides, and diabetes—can result in one clinical pattern in different individuals. Last, disorders within each of these categories

TABLE 56-3. Patterns of Clinical Glomerulonephritis

Acute nephritic syndromes: poststreptococcal, infective endocarditis, SLE, antiglomerular basement membrane disease, IgA nephropathy, ANCA vasculitis, Henoch-Schönlein purpura, cryoglobulinemia, membranoproliferative and mesangioproliferative glomerulonephritis
Pulmonary-renal syndromes: Goodpasture, ANCA vasculitis, Henoch-Schönlein purpura, cryoglobulinemia
Nephrotic syndromes: minimal change disease, focal segmental glomerulosclerosis, membranous glomerulonephritis, diabetes, amyloidosis, others
Basement membrane syndromes: antiglomerular basement membrane disease, others
Glomerular vascular syndromes: atherosclerosis, chronic hypertension, sickle-cell disease, thrombotic microangiopathies, antiphospholipid antibody syndrome, ANCA vasculitis, others
Infectious disease–associated syndromes: poststreptococcal, infective endocarditis, HIV, HBV, HCV, syphilis, others

ANCA = antineutrophilic cytoplasmic antibodies; HBV = hepatitis B virus; HCV = hepatitis C virus; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; IgA = immunoglobulin A; SLE = systemic lupus erythematosus.

may be seen in young women, and thus, these may already be established before pregnancy or may first manifest then.

As with any renal disorder, goals to achieve optimal pregnancy outcomes aim to stabilize rapid disease progression, minimize proteinuria with use of appropriate immunosuppressive agents, control hypertension, and delay pregnancy until these are achieved.

Acute Nephritic Syndromes

Acute glomerulonephritis may result from any of several causes (see Table 56-3). The clinical presentation usually includes hypertension, hematuria, red-cell casts, pyuria, and proteinuria. Varying degrees of renal insufficiency and salt and water retention result in edema, hypertension, and circulatory congestion (Lewis, 2018). The prognosis and treatment of nephritic syndromes depends on their etiology. Some recede spontaneously or with treatment. However, in some patients, *rapidly progressive glomerulonephritis* leads to end-stage renal failure. In others, *chronic glomerulonephritis* develops and manifests as slowly progressive renal disease.

The prototype is *acute poststreptococcal glomerulonephritis*, which is historically interesting because it was confused with eclampsia until the mid-1800s. *Immunoglobulin A (IgA) nephropathy*, also known as *Berger disease*, is the most common form of acute glomerulonephritis worldwide (Blom, 2017). The isolated form of IgA nephropathy occurs sporadically, and it may be related to *Henoch-Schönlein purpura* as the systemic form. Another isolated nephritis type may be due to anti–glomerular basement membrane antibodies, which are typically IgG. These IgG antibodies may also involve the lungs to manifest as a pulmonary-renal syndrome with alveolar hemorrhage, which is termed *Goodpasture syndrome*.

Pregnancy

Acute nephritic syndromes during pregnancy can be difficult to differentiate from severe preeclampsia. One example is systemic lupus erythematosus with a flare during the second half of pregnancy (Zhao, 2013). In some cases, renal biopsy may be necessary to determine etiology and direct management (Lindheimer, 2013; Ramin, 2006). This is discussed further in Chapter 62 (p. 1112).

Whatever the underlying etiology, glomerular diseases have profound effects on pregnancy outcome. In an older study, Packham and coworkers (1989) described 395 pregnancies in 238 women with *primary* glomerulonephritis diagnosed before pregnancy. The most common lesions identified by biopsy were membranous glomerulonephritis, IgA glomerulonephritis, and diffuse mesangial glomerulonephritis. Although most of these women had normal renal function, half developed hypertension, a fourth was delivered preterm, and the perinatal mortality rate after 28 weeks' gestation was 80 per 1000. As expected, the worst perinatal outcomes were in women with impaired renal function, early or severe hypertension, and nephrotic-range proteinuria. O'Shaughnessy and colleagues (2017) confirmed these findings. In 48 pregnancies complicated by glomerulonephritis, a third developed preeclampsia, 39 percent had a doubling of protein excretion, and 27 percent had a ≥50-percent rise in serum creatinine levels. Half of the pregnancies ended in preterm birth and 13 percent in perinatal death.

Similar outcomes have been reported for pregnancies in women with IgA nephropathy. From one review of 376 pregnancies, investigators reported a perinatal mortality rate of 12-percent; preterm delivery, 9 percent; low birthweight, 10 percent; and preeclampsia, 7 percent (Liu, 2016). Progression of renal insufficiency during pregnancy is controversial. From their reports, Su and coworkers (2017), but not Wang and colleagues (2019), found that women with IgA nephropathy had renal insufficiency progression during pregnancy.

Nephrotic Syndromes

Heavy proteinuria is the hallmark of the nephrotic syndromes. Several primary and secondary kidney disorders cause immunological- or toxic-mediated injury and glomerular capillary-wall breakdown that allows excessive filtration of plasma proteins. In addition to heavy urine protein excretion, the syndrome is characterized by hypoalbuminemia, hypercholesterolemia, and edema. Hypertension is frequently comorbid. This, coupled with albumin nephrotoxicity, contributes to eventual renal insufficiency.

Some of the more common causes of the nephrotic syndrome are listed in Table 56-4. Treatment depends on etiology, and renal biopsy will disclose microscopic abnormalities that may help direct care. Edema is problematic, especially during pregnancy. Normal amounts of dietary protein of high biological value are encouraged, and this practice contrasts with high-protein diets, which increase proteinuria. The incidence of thromboembolism is greater and varies with the severity of hypertension, proteinuria, and renal insufficiency (Spotti, 2019). Renal vein thrombosis is particularly worrisome, although both arterial and venous thromboses may develop. Explanations for this risk are platelet hyperactivity, urinary loss of antithrombotic factors, and increased production of prothrombotic factors by the liver (Mirrakhimov, 2014). Some recommend that

TABLE 56-4. Causes of the Nephrotic Syndrome in Adults

Focal segmental glomerulosclerosis (FSGS) (35%): viruses, hypertension, reflux nephropathy, sickle-cell disease
Membranous glomerulonephritis (~20%): idiopathic (most cases), malignancy, infection, connective tissue diseases
Minimal change disease (MCD) (10–15%): primary idiopathic (most cases), drug-induced (NSAIDs), allergies, viral infections
Diabetic nephropathy: most common cause of ESRD
Glomerular deposition diseases: light-chain, amyloidosis

ESRD = end-stage renal disease; NSAIDs = nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs.

women with a serum albumin <2 g/dL or 24-hour urinary protein excretion >3.5 g should be given thromboprophylaxis throughout pregnancy (Blom, 2017). Some cases of nephrosis from primary glomerular disease respond to glucocorticosteroids and other immunosuppressants or cytotoxic drug therapy. In most cases caused by infection or drugs, proteinuria recedes once the underlying cause is corrected.

Pregnancy

Maternal and perinatal outcomes in women with a nephrotic syndrome depend on its underlying cause and severity. Whenever possible, these should be ascertained, and renal biopsy may be indicated to determine if there is a treatable etiology. Half of women with nephrotic-range proteinuria will have higher daily protein excretion as pregnancy progresses (Packham, 1989). In women with nephrosis cared for at Parkland Hospital, we reported that two thirds had protein excretion that exceeded 3 g/d (Stettler, 1992). At the same time, however, if these women had only mild degrees of renal dysfunction, they displayed a normally augmented GFR across pregnancy (Cunningham, 1990).

Management of edema during pregnancy can be particularly challenging, as it is intensified by normally rising hydrostatic pressure in the lower extremities. In some women, massive vulvar edema may develop in those with comorbid conditions such as diabetes, syphilis, preeclampsia, and others (Fig. 56-2) (Jakobi, 1995). Another major problem is that up to half of these women with nephrosis have chronic hypertension that may require treatment (Chap. 53, p. 950). In these, as well as in previously normotensive women, preeclampsia is common and often develops early in pregnancy (Morgan, 2016).

Most women with a nephrotic syndrome who do not have severe hypertension or renal insufficiency will have successful pregnancy outcomes. Conversely, if there is renal insufficiency, moderate to severe hypertension, or both, the prognosis is much worse. Our experiences caring for such women with 65 pregnancies at Parkland Hospital showed that complications are frequent (Stettler, 1992). Protein excretion during pregnancy averaged 4 g/d, and a third of the women had classic nephrotic syndrome.

FIGURE 56-2 Massive vulvar edema in a pregnant woman with marked proteinuria due to preeclampsia.

Some degree of renal insufficiency was seen in 75 percent, chronic hypertension in 40 percent, and persistent anemia in 25 percent. Importantly, preeclampsia developed in 60 percent, and 45 percent had preterm deliveries. Even so, after excluding abortions, 53 of 57 neonates were born alive. De Castro and associates (2017) reported similar results from 26 pregnancies complicated by a mean protein excretion of 8 g/d.

Long-Term Outcomes

Women identified to have nephrotic syndromes either before or during pregnancy are at risk for serious long-term adverse outcomes. Of the women cared for at Parkland Hospital, at least 20 percent of women followed for 10 years progressed to end-stage renal failure (Stettler, 1992). Similarly, Chen and associates (2001) reported short-term outcomes in 15 women with nephrotic syndromes. By 2 years, three of these women had died, three had developed chronic renal failure, and two had progressed to end-stage renal disease. Women with serum creatinine levels >1.4 mg/dL and 24-hour protein excretion >1 g/d have the shortest renal survival times following pregnancy (Imbasciati, 2007).

CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE

This describes a pathophysiological process that can progress to end-stage renal disease. The National Kidney Foundation (2019) describes six stages of chronic kidney disease (CKD) defined by decreasing GFR. It progresses from stage 0, in which GFR is ≥90 mL/min/1.73 m^2, to stage 5, in which GFR is <15 mL/min/1.73 m^2.

Several diseases result in progressively declining renal function, including the glomerular diseases discussed earlier. Those that most commonly lead to end-stage disease requiring dialysis and kidney transplantation include diabetes mellitus, chronic hypertension, glomerulonephritis, and polycystic kidney disease (Bargman, 2018).

Most reproductive-aged women with these just-mentioned diseases have varying degrees of renal insufficiency, proteinuria, or both. To counsel regarding fertility and pregnancy outcome, the degree of renal functional impairment and of associated hypertension are assessed. In general, successful pregnancy outcome may be more related to these two factors than to the specific underlying renal disorder. An overall prognosis can be estimated by considering women with CKD in arbitrary categories of renal function (Davison, 2011). These include normal or *mild impairment*—defined as a serum creatinine <1.5 mg/dL; *moderate impairment*—defined as a serum creatinine 1.5 to 3.0 mg/dL; and *severe renal insufficiency*—defined as a serum creatinine >3.0 mg/dL. Some recommend using these older categories, although others suggest adopting the classification of the National Kidney Foundation described above (Davison, 2011; Piccoli, 2010, 2011). Thus, obstetricians must be familiar with both.

■ Pregnancy and Chronic Kidney Disease

The severity of renal insufficiency, along with any underlying hypertension, strongly influences pregnancy outcome. Additionally, comorbidities secondary to a systemic disorder—for

example, diabetes or systemic lupus erythematosus—portend a worse prognosis (Blom, 2017). For all women with CKD, the incidences of hypertension and preeclampsia, preterm and growth-restricted neonates, and other problems are high. Low-dose aspirin starting at 12 to 28 weeks is recommended to help lower preeclampsia rates (Chap. 41, p. 705).

Loss of renal tissue is associated with compensatory intrarenal vasodilation and hypertrophy of the surviving nephrons. The resultant hyperperfusion and hyperfiltration eventually damage surviving nephrons to cause *nephrosclerosis* and worsening renal function. With mild renal insufficiency, pregnancy causes greater augmentation of renal plasma flow and GFR (Helal, 2012). With progressively worsening renal function, renal plasma flow is augmented little, if any. In one study, only half of women with moderate renal insufficiency demonstrated pregnancy-augmented glomerular filtration, and women with severe disease had no increase (Cunningham, 1990).

Importantly, chronic renal insufficiency also curtails normal pregnancy-induced hypervolemia. Blood volume expansion during pregnancy is related to disease severity and correlates inversely with serum creatinine concentration. As shown in Figure 56-3, women with mild to moderate renal dysfunction have blood volume expansion that averages 55 percent above nonpregnant volumes. However, with severe renal insufficiency, volume expansion averages only 25 percent, which is similar to that seen with hemoconcentration from eclampsia. In addition, these women have variable degrees of chronic anemia due to intrinsic renal disease. Thus, they are at risk for hypovolemia and acute blood loss anemia with even normal blood loss at delivery.

Renal Disease with Preserved Function

In some women, although glomerular disease has not yet caused renal insufficiency, incidences of pregnancy complications are still increased. As shown in Table 56-5, these problems are less frequent than in cohorts of women with moderate and severe renal insufficiency. Two older studies illustrate this. In one, Surian and colleagues (1984) described outcomes of 123 pregnancies in women with biopsy-proven glomerular disease. Although only a few of these women had renal dysfunction, 40 percent developed obstetrical or renal complications. In another study of 395 pregnancies in women with preexisting glomerulonephritis and minimal renal insufficiency, impaired renal function developed in 15 percent of these women during pregnancy, and 60 percent had worsening proteinuria (Packham, 1989). Only 12 percent had antecedent chronic hypertension, however, more than half of the pregnancies were complicated by hypertension. The perinatal mortality rate was 140 per 1000, and even without early-onset or severe hypertension or nephrotic-range proteinuria, the rate was 50 per 1000. Importantly, in 5 percent of these women, worsening renal function was permanent.

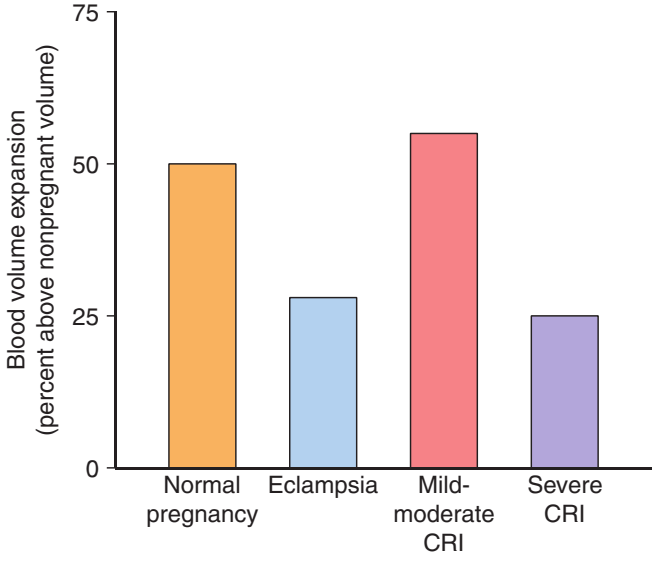


FIGURE 56-3 Blood volume expansion in 44 normally pregnant women at term compared with 29 who had eclampsia; 10 with moderate chronic renal insufficiency (CRI)—serum creatinine 1.5 to 2.9 mg/dL; and four with severe CRI—serum creatinine ≥3.0 mg/dL. (Data from Cunningham, 1990; Zeeman, 2009.)

TABLE 56-5. Complications (%) Associated with Chronic Kidney Disease During Pregnancy

Complication	Preserved Function	Renal Insufficiency: Moderate and Severe	Renal Insufficiency: Severe
Chronic hypertension	25	30–70	50
Gestational hypertension	20–50	30–50	75
Worsening renal function	8–15	20–43	35
Permanent dysfunction	4–5	10–20	35
Preterm delivery	7	30–60	73
Fetal-growth restriction	8–14	30–38	57
Perinatal mortality	5–14	4–7	0

Data from Alsuwaida, 2011; Cunningham, 1990; Farwell, 2013; He, 2018; Imbasciati, 2007; Maruotti, 2012; Nevis, 2011; Piccoli, 2010, 2011; Stettler, 1992; Trevisan, 2004; Zhang, 2015.

Chronic Renal Insufficiency

As noted, pregnancy complication rates are higher in women with CKD and renal insufficiency compared with women who have preserved renal function. Furthermore, adverse outcomes are generally directly related to the degree of renal impairment. Of the more recent reports shown in Table 56-5, outcomes of women with moderate or severe renal insufficiency are usually not separated. A systematic review of 1514 pregnancies in women with CKD described increased odds ratios of preeclampsia, 10.4; preterm delivery, 6.3; fetal-growth restriction, 4.9; and cesarean delivery, 2.7 (Zhang, 2015).

Other investigators have described pregnancies complicated by moderate or severe renal insufficiency (Cunningham, 1990;

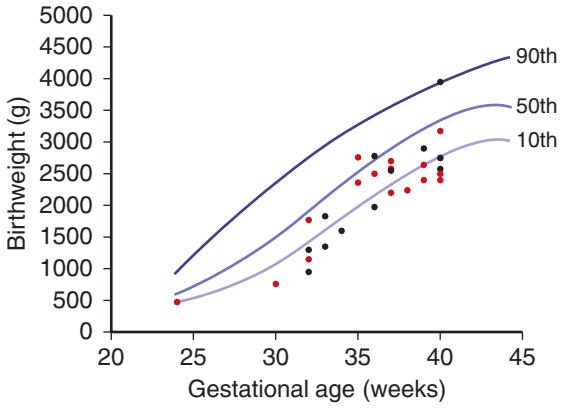


FIGURE 56-4 Birthweight percentiles of infants born to 29 women at Parkland Hospital with mild to moderate renal insufficiency—serum creatinine 1.4–2.4 mg/dL (*black points*) and severe renal insufficiency—serum creatinine ≥2.5 mg/dL (*red points*). (Data from Cunningham, 1990; Stettler, 1992. Growth curves are those reported by Alexander, 1996.)

Imbasciati, 2007; Jones, 1996). Despite a high incidence of chronic hypertension, anemia, preeclampsia, preterm delivery, and fetal-growth restriction, perinatal outcomes were generally acceptable. As shown in Figure 56-4, fetal growth is frequently impaired and related to renal dysfunction severity.

Management

Prenatal care for women with CKD incorporates several important aspects. Frequent monitoring of blood pressure is paramount, and serum creatinine levels and 24-hour protein excretion are quantified as indicated. Bacteriuria is treated to lower the risk of pyelonephritis and further nephron loss. Protein-restricted diets are not recommended. In some women with anemia from chronic renal insufficiency, a response is seen with recombinant erythropoietin. However, hypertension is a common side effect. Serial sonography is performed to follow fetal growth. The differentiation between worsening hypertension and superimposed preeclampsia is problematic. Preliminary data indicate that the angiogenic biomarkers *placental growth factor (PlGF)* and its soluble receptor, *soluble fms-like tyrosine kinase 1 (sFlt-1)*, may be useful to separate chronic from gestational hypertension (Fishel Bartal, 2020). This is described in Chapter 40 (p. 694).

Long-Term Effects

Pregnancy may accelerate CKD progression by augmenting hyperfiltration and glomerular pressure to worsen nephrosclerosis (Bargman, 2018). Women with severe renal insufficiency have greater susceptibility. Jungers and associates (1995) reported few long-term pregnancy-related adverse effects in 360 women with chronic glomerulonephritis and antecedent normal renal function. In a study from Parkland Hospital, 20 percent of pregnant women with moderate to severe renal insufficiency developed end-stage renal failure by a mean of 4 years (Cunningham, 1990). He and coworkers (2018) confirmed these findings in women who had stage 3 or 4 CKD.

As noted, progression is common for many women with chronic renal disorders. At 1 year after pregnancy, Jones and Hayslett (1996) reported that 10 percent of the women had developed end-stage renal failure—stage 5 CKD. Similar findings in women with a median follow-up of 3 years were described by Imbasciati and colleagues (2007). By this time, end-stage disease was apparent in 30 percent of women whose prepregnancy serum creatinine was ≥1.4 mg/dL and who had proteinuria >1 g/d.

Chronic proteinuria is also a marker for subsequent development of renal failure. In one study, 20 percent of women with chronic proteinuria discovered during pregnancy progressed to end-stage renal failure within several years (Stettler, 1992). Another study reported that an equal number of nonpregnant women had identical loss of function when similar durations were compared (Zhang, 2015). It may be that pregnancy does not hasten an already predetermined declining renal function.

Dialysis During Pregnancy

Significantly impaired renal function is accompanied by subfertility that may be corrected with chronic renal replacement therapy—either hemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis (Wiles, 2019b). Not unexpectedly, maternal complications are common and include severe hypertension, placental abruption, heart failure, and sepsis. To illustrate this, the outcomes of 233 pregnancies in women undergoing dialysis are shown in Table 56-6. The high incidences of hypertension, low birthweight, and preterm delivery result in a perinatal mortality rate of 250 per 1000. Piccoli and associates (2016) performed a systematic review and described 681 pregnancies in 647 women undergoing dialysis. Of these, 616 had hemodialysis and 65 had peritoneal dialysis. They chronicled a high incidence of hypertension, preterm delivery, and fetal-growth restriction, and the perinatal mortality was 180 per 1000. They found an inverse relationship between hours of dialysis per week and adverse outcomes. Last, they reported that hemodialysis was superior to peritoneal dialysis.

For the woman already undergoing either method of dialysis, it seems reasonable to continue that method with consideration for its increasing frequency. In the woman who has never been dialyzed, the threshold for initiation during pregnancy is unclear. Hladunewich and colleagues (2016) recommend consideration for dialysis when the creatinine clearance is 20 mL/min or less. Extension of dialysis frequency to five to six times weekly may be necessary to avoid abrupt volume changes that cause hypotension.

Hladunewich and coworkers (2011) recommend attention to certain protocols that include replacement of substances lost through dialysis. Multivitamin doses are doubled, and oral calcium and iron salts are provided along with sufficient dietary protein and calories. Chronic anemia is treated with erythropoietin. To meet pregnancy changes, extra calcium is added to the dialysate along with less bicarbonate.

ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY

Previously termed *acute renal failure*, acute kidney injury (AKI) is now used to describe impairment of kidney function over days

TABLE 56-6. Pregnancy Outcomes in Women Undergoing Dialysis During Pregnancy

	Pregnancies			Pregnancy Outcomes (%)			
Study (Year)	N	Delivery (weeks)	Birthweight (g)	Hypertension	Hydramnios	Perinatal Mortality	Surviving Infants
Toma (1999)	54	31.9	1545	35	44	33	67
Chao (2002)	13	32	1540	72	46	31	69
Tan (2006)	11	31	1390	36	18	18	82
Chou (2008)	13	30.8	1510	57	71	50	50
Luders (2010)	52	32.7	1555	67	40	13	87
Shahir (2013)	13	NS	2130	19[a]	14	22	78
Jesudason (2014)	77	33.8	1750	NS	NS	20	80
Approximate averages	233	~32	~1600	~50	~44	~25	~75

[a]Preeclampsia only.
NS = not stated.

to weeks that leads to retention of nitrogenous and other waste products normally excreted by the kidneys. Current definitions include a rise in a serum creatinine level of at least 0.3 mg/dL within 48 hours, or ≥50 percent increase from baseline within a week, or urine output reduced to <0.5 mL/kg per hour for >6 hours (Waikar, 2018).

Criteria for diagnosis in pregnancy have not been standardized (Gonzalez Suarez, 2019). Most studies use a definition in which serum creatinine levels rise ≥0.3 mg/dL from baseline. Animal studies have shown that pregnancy protects the kidney from acute ischemic injury (Popkov, 2018). Although the incidence of AKI in pregnancy has dropped substantially, it still occasionally causes significant obstetrical morbidity and mortality. In a Canadian study, the incidence was reported to be 2.68 per 10,000 births between 2009 and 2010 (Mehrabadi, 2014). Outcomes are available from four older studies comprising a total of 266 women with AKI (Drakeley, 2002; Nzerue, 1998; Sibai, 1990; Turney, 1989). Approximately 70 percent had preeclampsia, 50 percent had obstetrical hemorrhage, and 30 percent had a placental abruption. Almost 20 percent required dialysis, and the maternal mortality rate approximated 15 percent.

Although obstetrical cases of AKI requiring dialysis are less frequent today, acute renal ischemia is still commonly associated with severe preeclampsia and hemorrhage (Conti-Ramsden, 2019; Jim, 2017; Prakash, 2018). Notable contributors are placental abruption and hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelet count (HELLP) syndrome. Sepsis is another, especially in resource-poor countries (Acharya, 2013). AKI also often complicates acute fatty liver of pregnancy. Nelson and colleagues (2013) reported some degree of renal insufficiency in virtually all of 52 such women cared for at Parkland Hospital (Chap. 58, p. 1034). Dehydration caused by severe hyperemesis gravidarum also can lead to AKI (Hill, 2002). Other causes include thrombotic microangiopathies (Chap. 59, p. 1060).

Diagnosis and Management

In most women, renal failure develops postpartum, thus management is usually not complicated by fetal considerations. Diagnostically, an acute rise in serum creatinine levels is most often due to renal ischemia. But oliguria also is an important sign of acutely impaired renal function. In obstetrical cases, both prerenal and intrarenal factors commonly coincide. For example, with total placental abruption, severe hypovolemia results from massive hemorrhage, and frequently associated preeclampsia causes preexistent renal ischemia (Chap. 40, p. 689).

When azotemia is severe and oliguria persists, some form of renal replacement treatment may be indicated. Hemofiltration or dialysis is initiated before patients markedly deteriorate, and hemodynamic measurements are normalized. Medication dose adjustments are imperative, and magnesium sulfate is a prominent example (Waikar, 2018). Early dialysis appears to reduce the mortality rate appreciably and may enhance the extent of renal function recovery. With time, renal function usually returns to normal or near normal. Even so, women in subsequent pregnancies have higher incidences of hypertension and adverse fetal outcomes (Tangren, 2017).

Prevention

AKI in obstetrics is most often due to acute blood loss and especially that associated with preeclampsia. Thus, it may often be prevented by the following means:

1. Prompt and vigorous volume replacement with crystalloid solutions and blood in instances of massive hemorrhage, such as in placental abruption, placenta previa, uterine rupture, and postpartum uterine atony (Chap. 44, p. 771).
2. Delivery or termination of pregnancies complicated by severe preeclampsia or eclampsia, and careful blood transfusion if blood loss is more than average (Chap. 41, p. 712).
3. Close observation for early signs of sepsis and shock in women with pyelonephritis, septic abortion, chorioamnionitis, or other pelvic infections (Chap. 50, p. 887).
4. Avoidance of loop diuretics to treat oliguria before ensuring that blood volume and cardiac output are adequate for renal perfusion.
5. Judicious use of vasoconstrictor drugs to treat hypotension, and only after it has been determined that pathological vasodilation is the cause.

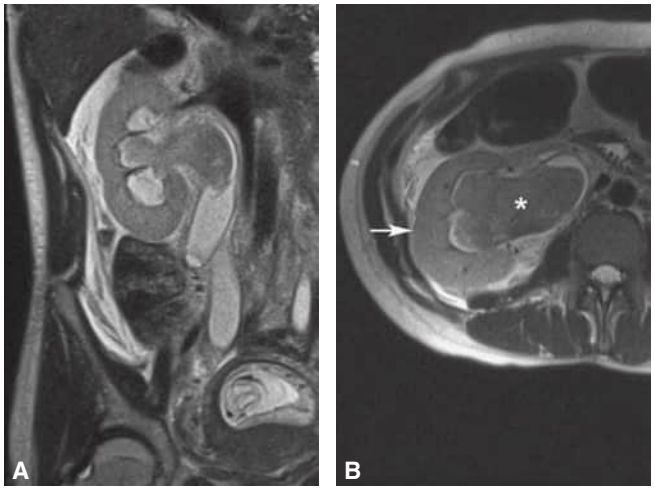


FIGURE 56-5 A. Magnetic resonance image in a coronal plane of a pregnant woman with unilateral hydronephrosis caused by ureteral obstruction. The serum creatinine was 8 mg/dL and decreased to 0.8 mg/dL after a percutaneous nephrostomy tube was placed. **B.** Left kidney (*arrow*) and associated hydronephrosis (*asterisk*) are again noted in this axial plane image.

Irreversible ischemic renal failure caused by *acute cortical necrosis* has become exceedingly uncommon in obstetrics. Before widespread availability of dialysis, it complicated a fourth of obstetrical renal failure cases (Grünfeld, 1987; Turney, 1989). Most cases followed placental abruption, preeclampsia-eclampsia, and endotoxin-induced shock. Once common with septic abortion, this is a rare cause in the United States today (Jim, 2017). Histologically, the lesion appears to result from thrombosis of segments of the renal vascular system. The lesions may be focal, patchy, confluent, or gross. Clinically, renal cortical necrosis follows the course of acute renal failure, and its differentiation from acute tubular necrosis is not possible during the early phase. The prognosis depends on the extent of the necrosis. Recovery of function is variable, and stable renal insufficiency may result.

■ Obstructive Renal Failure

Rarely, bilateral ureteral compression by a very large pregnant uterus obstructs ureters to cause severe oliguria and azotemia. An example is shown in Figure 56-5. Brandes and Fritsche (1991) reviewed 13 cases that were the consequence of a markedly overdistended uterus. They described a woman with twins who developed anuria and a serum creatinine level of 12.2 mg/dL at 34 weeks' gestation. After amniotomy, urine flow resumed at 500 mL/h, and a rapid decline in serum creatinine levels to normal range followed. Eckford and Gingell (1991) described 10 women in whom ureteral obstruction was relieved by stenting. The stents were left in place for a mean of 15.5 weeks and removed 4 to 6 weeks postpartum.

We have observed this phenomenon on several occasions. In our experience, women with previous urinary tract surgery for reflux are more likely to have such obstructions (Satin, 1993). Partial ureteral obstruction may be accompanied by fluid retention and significant hypertension. When the obstructive uropathy is relieved, diuresis ensues and hypertension dissipates. In one woman with massive hydramnios (9.4 L) and an anencephalic fetus, amniocentesis and removal of some of the amnionic fluid was followed promptly by diuresis, a decline in the plasma creatinine concentration, and an improvement of hypertension.

LOWER URINARY TRACT LESIONS

■ Urethral Diverticulum

Infrequently complicating pregnancy, this type of diverticulum is thought to originate from an enlarging paraurethral gland abscess that ruptures into the urethral lumen (Fig. 56-6). As infection clears, the remaining dilated diverticular sac and its ostium into the urethra persist. Associated findings may be urine collecting within and then dribbling from the sac, pain, palpable mass, and recurrent urinary infections. In general, a diverticulum is managed expectantly during pregnancy. Rarely, drainage may be necessary, or surgery required (Iyer, 2013). If additional antepartum evaluation is needed, MR imaging is preferred for its superior soft-tissue resolution and ability to define complex diverticula (Dwarkasing, 2011; Pathi, 2013).

■ Urinary Tract Fistulas

Fistulas found during pregnancy likely existed previously, but in rare cases, they form during pregnancy. In developed countries, *vesicovaginal fistula* following a McDonald cerclage has been reported (Massengill, 2012). These fistulas may also form with the prolonged obstructed labor that is more commonly seen in resource-poor countries. In these cases, the genital tract is compressed between the fetal head and bony pelvis. Brief pressure is not significant, but prolonged pressure leads to tissue necrosis and subsequent fistula formation (Wall, 2012). *Vesicouterine fistulas* that developed after prior cesarean delivery have been described (DiMarco, 2006; Manjunatha, 2012). Rarely, *vesicocervical fistula* may follow cesarean delivery or may form if the anterior cervical lip is compressed against the symphysis pubis (Dudderidge, 2005).

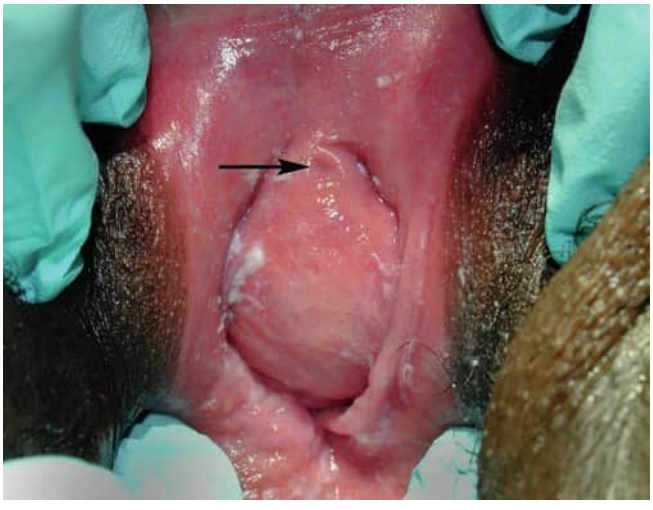


FIGURE 56-6 Asymptomatic urethral diverticulum, seen as a midline bulge beneath the urethral meatus (*arrow*), identified during initial prenatal care examination.

REFERENCES

Acharya A, Santos J, Linde B, et al: Acute kidney injury in pregnancy–current status. Adv Chronic Kidney Dis 20:215, 2013

Ailes EC, Summers AD, Tran EL, et al: Antibiotics dispensed to privately insured pregnant women with urinary tract infections–United States, 2014. MMWR 67(1):18, 2018

Airoldi J, Weinstein L: Clinical significance of proteinuria in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 62(2):117, 2007

Ait Benkaddour Y, Aboulfalah A, Abbassi H: Bladder stone: uncommon cause of mechanical dystocia. Arch Gynecol Obstet 274(5):323, 2006

Al Duraihimh H, Ghamdi G, Moussa D, et al: Outcome of 234 pregnancies in 140 renal transplant recipients from five Middle Eastern countries. Transplantation 85:840, 2008

Alexander GR, Himes JH, Kaufman RB, et al: A United States national reference for fetal growth. Obstet Gynecol 87:163, 1996

Alsuwaida A, Mousa D, Al-Harbi A, et al: Impact of early chronic kidney disease on maternal and fetal outcomes of pregnancy. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 24(12):1432, 2011

American Academy of Pediatrics, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Elk Grove Village, AAP, 2017, p 159

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Asymptomatic microscopic hematuria in women. Committee Opinion No. 703, June 2017.

Attini R, Kooij L, Montersino B, et al: Reflux nephropathy and the risk of preeclampsia and of other adverse pregnancy-related outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis of case series and reports in the new millennium. J Nephrol 31(6):833, 2018

Baer RJ, Nidey N, Bandoli G, et al: Risk of early birth among women with a urinary tract infection: a retrospective cohort study. AJP Rep 11(1):e5, 2021

Banhidy F, Acs N, Puho EH, et al: Pregnancy complications and birth outcomes of pregnant women with urinary tract infections and related drug treatments. Scand J Infect Dis 39:390, 2007

Bargman JM, Skorecki K: Chronic kidney disease. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2111

Beck LH, Salant DJ: Tubulointerstitial diseases of the kidney. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2160

Blom K, Odutayo A, Bramham K, et al: Pregnancy and glomerular disease: a systematic review of the literature with management guidelines. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 12(11):1862, 2017

Bramham K, Nelson-Piercy C, Gao H, et al: Pregnancy in renal transplant recipients: a UK National Cohort Study. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 8(2):290, 2013

Brandes JC, Fritsche C: Obstructive acute renal failure by a gravid uterus: a case report and review. Am J Kidney Dis 18:398, 1991

Briggs GG, Freeman RK, Towers CV, et al: Drugs in pregnancy and lactation, 11th ed. Philadelphia, Wolters Kluwer, 2017, p 987

Brown MA, Holt JL, Mangos GK, et al: Microscopic hematuria in pregnancy: relevance to pregnancy outcome. Am J Kidney Dis 45:667, 2005

Buhling KJ, Elze L, Henrich W, et al: The usefulness of glycosuria and the influence of maternal blood pressure in screening for gestational diabetes. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 113(2):145, 2004

Butler EL, Cox SM, Eberts E, et al: Symptomatic nephrolithiasis complicating pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 96:753, 2000

Cabiddu G, Spotti D, Gernone G, et al: A best-practice position statement on pregnancy after kidney transplantation: focusing on the unsolved questions. The Kidney and Pregnancy Study Group of the Italian Society of Nephrology. J Nephrol 31(5):665, 2018

Cavenee MR, Cox SM, Mason R, et al: Erythropoietin in pregnancies complicated by pyelonephritis. Obstet Gynecol 84:252, 1994

Chaemsaithong P, Romero R, Korzeniewski SJ, et al: Soluble TRAIL in normal pregnancy and acute pyelonephritis: a potential explanation for the susceptibility of pregnant women to microbial products and infection. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(16):1568, 2013

Chapman AB, Johnson AM, Gabow PA: Pregnancy outcome and its relationship to progression of renal failure in autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. J Am Soc Nephrol 5:1178, 1994

Chen HH, Lin HC, Yeh JC, et al: Renal biopsy in pregnancies complicated by undetermined renal disease. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 80:888, 2001

Chu CM, Lowder JL: Diagnosis and treatment of urinary tract infections across age groups. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(1):40, 2018

Chung SD, Chen YH, Keller JJ, et al: Urinary calculi increased the risk for adverse pregnancy outcomes: a nationwide study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 921:69, 2013

Coelho RF, Schneider-Monteiro ED, Mesquita JL, et al: Renal and perinephric abscesses: analysis of 65 consecutive cases. World J Surg 2:431, 2007

Conti-Ramsden FI, Nathan HL, De Greeff A, et al: Pregnancy-related acute kidney injury in preeclampsia: risk factors and renal outcomes. Hypertension 74(5):1144, 2019

Coscia LA, Constantinescu S, Moritz MJ, et al: Report from the National Transplantation Pregnancy Registry (NTPR): outcomes of pregnancy after transplantation. Clin Transpl 2010:65, 2010

Cox SM, Cunningham FG: Acute focal pyelonephritis (lobar nephronia) complicating pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 71:510, 1988

Cox SM, Shelburne P, Mason R, et al: Mechanisms of hemolysis and anemia associated with acute antepartum pyelonephritis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 164:587, 1991

Cruz Lemini MC, Ibarguengoitia Ochoa F, Villanueva Gonzalez MA: Perinatal outcome following renal transplantation. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 95:76, 2007

Cunningham FG, Cox SM, Harstad TW, et al: Chronic renal disease and pregnancy outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 163:453, 1990

Cunningham FG, Lucas MJ, Hankins GC: Pulmonary injury complicating antepartum pyelonephritis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 156:797, 1987

Curhan CG: Nephrolithiasis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018 p 2168

Dai JC, Nicholson TM, Chang HC, et al: Nephrolithiasis in pregnancy: treating for two. Urology 151:44, 2021

Davis S, Dylewski J, Shah PB, et al: Risk of adverse maternal and fetal outcomes during pregnancy in living kidney donors: a matched cohort study. Clin Transplant 33(1):e13453, 2019

Davis R, Jones JS, Barocas DA, et al: Diagnosis, evaluation and follow-up of asymptomatic microhematuria (AMH) in adults: AUA guideline. J Urol 188(6 Suppl):2473, 2012

Davison JM, Lindheimer MD: Pregnancy and chronic kidney disease. Semin Nephrol 31(1):86, 2011

De Castro I, Easterling TR, Bansal N, et al: Nephrotic syndrome in pregnancy poses risks with both maternal and fetal complications. Kidney Int 91(6):1464, 2017

Deshpande NA, James NT, Kucirka LM, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in kidney transplant recipients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Transplant 11(11):2388, 2011

DiMarco CS, DiMarco DS, Klingele CJ, et al: Vesicouterine fistula: a review of eight cases. Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct 17(4):395, 2006

Drakeley AJ, Le Roux PA, Anthony J, et al: Acute renal failure complicating severe preeclampsia requiring admission to an obstetric intensive care unit. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:253, 2002

Dudderidge TJ, Haynes SV, Davies AJ, et al: Vesicocervical fistula: rare complication of cesarean section demonstrated by magnetic resonance imaging. Urology 65(1):174, 2005

Dwarkasing RS, Dinkelaar W, Hop WC, et al: MRI evaluation of urethral diverticula and differential diagnosis in symptomatic women. AJR 197(3): 676, 2011

Eckford SD, Gingell JC: Ureteric obstruction in pregnancy—diagnosis and management. BJOG 98:1137, 1991

Farwell J, Emerson J, Wyatt S, et al: Outcomes of pregnancies complicated by chronic kidney disease. Abstract No. 346. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208:S153, 2013

Fishel Bartal M, Lindheimer MD, Sibai BM: Proteinuria during pregnancy: definition, pathophysiology, methodology, and clinical significance. Am J Obstet Gynecol September 1, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]

Fitzpatrick A, Venugopal K, Scheil W, et al: The spectrum of adverse pregnancy outcomes based on kidney disease diagnoses: a 20-year population study. Am J Nephrol 49(5):400, 2019

Fox MT, Melia MT, Same RG, et al: A seven-day course of TMP-SMX may be effective as a seven-day course of ciprofloxacin for the treatment of pyelonephritis. Am J Med 130(7):842, 2017

French VA, Davis JB, Sayles HS, et al: Contraception and fertility awareness among women with solid organ transplants. Obstet Gynecol 122:809, 2013

Gazmararian JA, Petersen R, Jamieson DJ, et al: Hospitalizations during pregnancy among managed care enrollees. Obstet Gynecol 100:94, 2002

Gebäck C, Hansson S, Martinell J, et al: Obstetrical outcome in women with urinary tract infections in childhood. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 95(4):452, 2016

Ghafari A, Sanadgol H: Pregnancy after renal transplantation: ten-year single-center experience. Transplant Proc 40:251, 2008

Gilstrap LC III, Cunningham FG, Whalley PJ: Acute pyelonephritis in pregnancy: an anterospective study. Obstet Gynecol 57:409, 1981a

Gilstrap LC III, Leveno KJ, Cunningham FG, et al: Renal infection and pregnancy outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 141:708, 1981b

Goes NB, Calvin RB: Case 12–2007: A 56-year-old woman with renal failure after heart–lung transplantation. N Engl J Med 356:1657, 2007
Gonzalez Suarez ML, Kattah A, Grande JP, et al: Renal disorders in pregnancy: core curriculum 2019. Am J Kidney Dis 73(1):119, 2019
Grünfeld JP, Pertuiset N: Acute renal failure in pregnancy: 1987. Am J Kidney Dis 9:359, 1987
He Y, Liu J, Cai Q, et al: The pregnancy outcomes in patients with stage 3–4 chronic kidney disease and the effects of pregnancy in the long-term kidney function. J Nephrol 31(6):953, 2018
Helal I, Fick-Brosnahan GM, Reed-Gitomer B, et al: Glomerular hyperfiltration: definitions, mechanisms, and clinical implications. Nat Rev Nephrol 8:293, 2012
Higby K, Suiter CR, Phelps JY, et al: Normal values of urinary albumin and total protein excretion during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 171:984, 1994
Hill JB, Sheffield JS, McIntire DD, et al: Acute pyelonephritis in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 105:38, 2005
Hill JB, Yost NP, Wendel GD Jr: Acute renal failure in association with severe hyperemesis gravidarum. Obstet Gynecol 100:1119, 2002
Hladunewich M, Herca AE, Keunen J, et al: Pregnancy in end stage renal disease. Semin Dial 24(6):634, 2011
Hladunewich MA, Lafayette RA, Derby GC, et al: The dynamics of glomerular filtration in the puerperium. Am J Physiol Renal Physiol 286:F496, 2004
Hladunewich M, Schatell D. Intensive dialysis and pregnancy. Hemodial Int 20(3):339, 2016
Hooton TM: Uncomplicated urinary tract infection. N Engl J Med 366(11): 1028, 2012
Hooton TM, Scholes D, Stapleton AE, et al: A prospective study of asymptomatic bacteriuria in sexually active young women. N Engl J Med 343(14):992, 2000
Hosseini MM, Hassanpour A, Eslahi A, et al: Percutaneous nephrolithotomy during early pregnancy in urgent situations: is it feasible and safe? Urol J 14(6):5034, 2017
Hussein W, Lafayette RA: Renal function in normal and disordered pregnancy. Curr Opin Nephrol Hypertens 23:46, 2014
Imbasciati E, Gregorini G, Cabiddu G, et al: Pregnancy in CKD stages 3 to 5: fetal and maternal outcomes. Am J Kidney Dis 49:753, 2007
Iyer S, Minassian VA: Resection of urethral diverticulum in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 122(2 Pt 2):467, 2013
Jacobsson B, Hagberg G, Hagberg B, et al: Cerebral palsy in preterm infants: a population-based case-control study of antenatal and intrapartal risk factors. Acta Paediatr 91:946, 2002
Jakobi P, Friedman M, Goldstein I, et al: Massive vulvar edema in pregnancy: a case report. J Reprod Med 40:479, 1995
Jim B, Garovic VD: Acute kidney injury in pregnancy. Semin Nephrol 37(4):378, 2017
Johnson EB, Krambeck AE, White WM, et al: Obstetric complications of ureteroscopy during pregnancy. J Urol 188(1):151, 2012
Johnson JR, Russo TA: Acute pyelonephritis in adults. N Engl J Med 378(12): 1162, 2018
Jolley JA, Kim S, Wing DA: Acute pyelonephritis and associated complications during pregnancy in 2006 in US hospitals. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(12):2494, 2012
Jones DC, Hayslett JP: Outcome of pregnancy in women with moderate or severe renal insufficiency. N Engl J Med 335:226, 1996
Josephson MA, McKay DB: Pregnancy and kidney transplantation. Semin Nephrol 31(1):100, 2011
Jungers P, Houillier P, Forget D, et al: Influence of pregnancy on the course of primary chronic glomerulonephritis. Lancet 346:1122, 1995
Kristensen JH, Basit S, Wohlfahrt J, et al: Pre-eclampsia and risk of later kidney disease: nationwide cohort study. BMJ 365:l1516, 2019
Le Blanc AL, McGanity: The impact of bacteriuria in pregnancy—a survey of 1300 pregnant patients. Tex Rep Biol Med 22:336, 1964
Lewis DF, Robichaux AG III, Jaekle RK, et al: Urolithiasis in pregnancy: diagnosis, management and pregnancy outcome. J Reprod Med 48:28, 2003
Lewis JB, Neilson EG: Glomerular diseases. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2132
Lindheimer MD, Conrad KP, Karumanchi SA: Renal physiology and diseases in pregnancy. In Alpern R, Hebert S (eds): Seldin and Giebisch's The Kidney: physiology and pathophysiology, 5th ed. New York, Elsevier, 2013, p 2712
Lindheimer MD, Davison JM: Pregnancy and CKD: any progress? Am J Kidney Dis 49:729, 2007
Lindquester WS, Novelli PM, Amesur NB, et al: A ten-year, single institution experience with percutaneous nephrostomy during pregnancy. Clin Imaging 72:42, 2021
Liu Y, Ma X, Zheng J, et al: A systematic review and meta-analysis of kidney and pregnancy outcomes in IgA nephropathy. Am J Nephrol 44(3):187, 2016
Lucas MJ, Cunningham FG: Urinary infection in pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 36:855, 1993
Lucas MJ, Cunningham FG: Urinary tract infections complicating pregnancy. Williams Obstetrics, 19th ed. (Suppl 5). Norwalk, Appleton & Lange, February/March 1994
Lumbiganon P, Villar J, Laopaiboon M, et al: One-day compared with 7-day nitrofurantoin for asymptomatic bacteriuria in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 113:339, 2009
Madej A, Mazanowska N, Szpotańska-Sikorska M, et al: Delivery mode in patients after liver or kidney transplantation. Transplant Proc 50(7):2150, 2018
Maikranz P, Coe FL, Parks J, et al: Nephrolithiasis in pregnancy. Am J Kidney Dis 9:354, 1987
Mandal D, Saha MM, Pal DK: Urological disorders and pregnancy: An overall experience. Urol Ann 9(1):32, 2017
Manjunatha YC, Sonwalkar P: Spontaneous antepartum vesicouterine fistula causing severe oligohydramnios in a patient with a previous cesarean delivery. J Ultrasound Med 31(8):1294, 2012
Maruotti GM, Sarno L, Napolitano R, et al: Preeclampsia in women with chronic kidney disease. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(8):1367, 2012
Masselli G, Derme M, Laghi F, et al: Imaging of stone disease in pregnancy. Abdom Imaging 38(6):1409, 2013
Massengill JC, Baker TM, Von Pechmann WS, et al: Commonalities of cerclage-related genitourinary fistulas. Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg 18(6):362, 2012
McAleer SJ, Loughlin KR: Nephrolithiasis and pregnancy. Curr Opin Urol 14:123, 2004
Mehrabadi A, Liu S, Bartholomew S, et al: Hypertensive disorders of pregnancy and the recent increase in obstetric acute renal failure in Canada: population based retrospective cohort study. BMJ 349:g4731, 2014
Millar LK, DeBuque L, Wing DA: Uterine contraction frequency during treatment of pyelonephritis in pregnancy and subsequent risk of preterm birth. J Perinat Med 31:41, 2003
Mirrakhimov AE, Ali AM, Barbaryan A, et al: Primary nephrotic syndrome in adults as a risk factor for pulmonary embolism: an up-to-date review of the literature. Int J Nephrol 2014:916760, 2014
Mor Y, Leibovitch I, Zalts R, et al: Analysis of the long-term outcome of surgically corrected vesicoureteric reflux. BJU Int 92:97, 2003
Morales-Buenrostro LE, Alberu J, Mancilla-Urrea E, et al: Intellectual performance of kidney transplant recipients' offspring: a cross-sectional, multicenter study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(4):542, 2019
Moretti ME, Sgro M, Johnson DW, et al: Cyclosporine excretion into breast milk. Transplantation 75:2144, 2003
Morgan JL, Nelson DB, Roberts SW, et al: Association of baseline proteinuria and adverse outcomes in pregnant women with treated chronic hypertension. Obstet Gynecol 128(2):270, 2016
Murphy EL, Droher ML, DiMaio MS, et al: Preimplantation genetic diagnosis counseling in autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. Am J Kidney Dis 72(6):866, 2018
National Institute for Health And Clinical Excellence: Diabetes in pregnancy: management from preconception to the postnatal period. 2015. Available at: www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng3/resources/diabetes-in-pregnancy-management-from-preconception-to-the-postnatal-period-51038446021. Accessed November 25, 2019
Nelson DB, Yost NP, Cunningham FG: Acute fatty liver of pregnancy: clinical outcomes and expected durations of recovery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(5):456.e1, 2013
Nevis IF, Reitsma A, Dominic A, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with chronic kidney disease: a systematic review. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 6:2587, 2011
Nicolle LE: Asymptomatic bacteriuria: when to screen and when to treat. Infect Dis Clin North Am 17(2):367, 2003
Nicolle LE, Gupta K, Bradley SF, et al: Clinical Practice Guideline for the Management of Asymptomatic Bacteruria: 2019 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America. Clin Infect Dis 68(10):1611, 2019
Nzerue CM, Hewan-Lowe K, Nwawka C: Acute renal failure in pregnancy: a review of clinical outcomes at an inner city hospital from 1986–1996. J Natl Med Assoc 90:486, 1998
Olagbuji BN, Atiba AS, Olofinbiyi BA, et al: Prevalence of and risk factors for gestational diabetes using 1999, 2013 WHO and IADPSG criteria upon implementation of a universal one-step screening and diagnostic strategy in a sub-Saharan African population. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 189:27, 2015
Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network: Data. 2020. Available at: optn.transplant.hrsa.gov/data/. Accessed March 31, 2020

O'Shaughnessy MM, Jobson MA, Sims K, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in patients with glomerular disease attending a single academic center in North Carolina. Am J Nephrol 45(5):442, 2017

Packham DK, North RA, Fairley KF, et al: Primary glomerulonephritis and pregnancy. Q J Med 71:537, 1989

Pathi SD, Rahn DD, Sailors JL, et al: Utility of clinical parameters, cystourethroscopy, and magnetic resonance imaging in the preoperative diagnosis of urethral diverticula. Int Urogynecol J 24(2):319, 2013

Piccoli GB, Attini R, Vasario E, et al: Pregnancy and chronic kidney disease: a challenge in all CKD stages. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 5:844, 2010

Piccoli GB, Conijn A, Attini R, et al: Pregnancy in chronic kidney disease: need for a common language. J Nephrol 24(03)282, 2011

Piccoli GB, Daidola G, Attini R, et al: Kidney biopsy in pregnancy: evidence for counseling? A systematic narrative review. BJOG 120(4):412, 2013

Piccoli GB, Minelli F, Versino E, et al: Pregnancy in dialysis patients in the new millennium: a systematic review and meta-regression analysis correlating dialysis schedules and pregnancy outcomes. Nephrol Dial Transplant 31(11):1915, 2016

Popkov VA, Andrianova NV, Manskikh VN, et al: Pregnancy protects the kidney from acute ischemic injury. Sci Rep 8(1):14534, 2018

Prakash J, Ganiger VC, Prakash S, et al: Acute kidney in pregnancy with special reference to pregnancy-specific disorders: a hospital based study. J Nephrol 31(1):79, 2018

Putra LG, Minor TX, Bolton DM, et al: Improved assessment of renal lesions in pregnancy with magnetic resonance imaging. Urology 74:535, 2009

Rafi J, Smith RB: Acute lobar nephronia in pregnancy: a rarely reported entity in obstetric renal medicine. Arch Gynecol Obstet 286(3):797, 2012

Ramin SM, Vidaeff AC, Yeomans ER, et al: Chronic renal disease in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 108(6):1531, 2006

Raz R, Sakran W, Chazan B, et al: Long-term follow-up of women hospitalized for acute pyelonephritis. Clin Infect Dis 37:1014, 2003

Reinstatler L, Khaleel S, Pais VM Jr: Association of pregnancy with stone formation among women in the United States: a NHANES analysis 2007 to 2012. J Urol 198(2):389, 2017

Rocha A, Cardoso A, Malheiro J, et al: Pregnancy after kidney transplantation: graft, mother, and newborn complications. Transplant Proc 45(3):1088, 2013

Rogozińska E, Formina S, Zamora J, et al: Accuracy of onsite tests to detect asymptomatic bacteriuria in pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 128(3):495, 2016

Rosenberg E, Sergienko R, Abu-Ghanem S: Nephrolithiasis during pregnancy: characteristics, complications, and pregnancy outcome. World J Urol 29(6): 743, 2011

Ruan JM, Adams SR, Carpinito G, et al: Bladder calculus presenting as recurrent urinary tract infections: a late complication of cervical cerclage placement: a case report. J Reprod Med 56(3–4):172, 2011

Rubilotta E, Balzarro M, Lacola V et al: Current clinical management of renal and perinephric abscesses: a literature review. Urologia 81(3):144, 2014

Sabr Y, Lisonkova S, Skoll A, et al: Severe maternal morbidly among women with solid organ transplants: a population-based study. Abstract. No. 612. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220:S405, 2019

Sanchez-Ramos L, McAlpine KJ, Adair CD, et al: Pyelonephritis in pregnancy: once a day ceftriaxone versus multiple doses of cefazolin. A randomized double-blind trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 172:129, 1995

Satin AJ, Seiken GL, Cunningham FG: Reversible hypertension in pregnancy caused by obstructive uropathy. Obstet Gynecol 81:823, 1993

Schieve LA, Handler A, Hershow R, et al: Urinary tract infection during pregnancy: its association with maternal morbidity and perinatal outcome. Am J Public Health 84:405, 1994

Schneeberger C, Geerlings SE, Middleton P, et al: Interventions for preventing recurrent urinary tract infection during pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD009279, 2015

Schneeberger C, Kazemier BM, Geerlins SE: Asymptomatic bacteriuria and urinary tract infections in special patient groups: women with diabetes mellitus and pregnant women. Curr Opin Infect Dis 27:106, 2014

Schreiber-Zamora J, Szpotanska-Sikorska M, Drozdowska-Szymczak A, et al: Neurological development of children born to mothers after kidney transplantation. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(9):1523, 2019

Semins MJ, Matlaga BR: Management of urolithiasis in pregnancy. Int J Womens Health 5:590, 2013

Shahraki AD, Bardeh ME, Najarzadegan MR: Investigation of the relationship between idiopathic microscopic hematuria (in the first and second trimesters) and major adverse outcomes of pregnancy. Adv Biomed Res 28:5, 2016

Sheffield JS, Cunningham FG: Urinary tract infection in women. Obstet Gynecol 106:1085, 2005

Sibai BM, Villar MA, Mabie BC: Acute renal failure in hypertensive disorders of pregnancy. Pregnancy outcome and remote prognosis in thirty-one consecutive cases. Am J Obstet Gynecol 162(3):777, 1990

Siegel JF, Smith A, Moldwin R: Minimally invasive treatment of renal abscess. J Urol 1:52, 1996

Sledzińska A, Mielech A, Krawczyk B, et al: Fatal sepsis in a pregnant woman with pyelonephritis caused by *Escherichia coli* bearing Dr and P adhesions: diagnosis based on postmortem strain genotyping. BJOG 118(2):266, 2011

Snyder CC, Barton JR, Habli M, et al: Severe sepsis and septic shock in pregnancy: indications for delivery and maternal and perinatal outcomes. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(5):503, 2013

Spotti D: Pregnancy in women with diabetic nephropathy. J Nephrol 32(3): 379, 2019

Spurbeck RR, Stapleton AE, Johnson JR, et al: Fimbrial profiles predict virulence of uropathogenic *Escherichia coli* strains: contribution of ygi and yad fimbriae. Infect Immun 79(12):4753, 2011

Steele SE, Terry JE, Page LM, et al: Pregnancy in women known to be living with a single kidney. Obstet Gynecol 12(1):22, 2019

Stehman-Breen CO, Levine RJ, Qian C, et al: Increased risk of preeclampsia among nulliparous pregnant women with idiopathic hematuria. Am J Obstet Gynecol 187:703, 2002

Stephens KK, Warstrak C: Urinary tract infection association with proteinuria in pregnancy as measured by protein to creatinine ratio. Abstract No. 642. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220:S426, 2019

Stettler RW, Cunningham FG: Natural history of chronic proteinuria complicating pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 167:1219, 1992

Strevens H, Wide-Swensson D, Hansen A, et al: Glomerular endotheliosis in normal pregnancy and pre-eclampsia. BJOG 110:831, 2003

Sturgiss SN, Davison JM: Effect of pregnancy on long-term function of renal allografts. Am J Kidney Dis 26:54, 1995

Su X, Lv J, Liu Y, et al: Pregnancy and kidney outcomes in patients with IgA nephropathy: a cohort study. Am J Kidney Dis 70(2):262, 2017

Surian M, Imbasciati E, Cosci P, et al: Glomerular disease and pregnancy: a study of 123 pregnancies in patients with primary and secondary glomerular diseases. Nephron 36:101, 1984

Swartz MA, Lydon-Rochelle MT, Simon D, et al: Admission for nephrolithiasis in pregnancy and risk of adverse birth outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 109(5):1099, 2007

Tan YK, Cha DY, Gupta M: Management of stones in abnormal situations. Urol Clin North Am 40(1):79, 2013

Tangren JS, Powe CE, Ankers E, et al: Pregnancy outcomes after clinical recovery from AKI. J Am Soc Nephrol 28(5):1566, 2017

Tangren JS, Powe CE, Ecker J, et al: Metabolic and hypertensive complications of pregnancy in women with nephrolithiasis. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 13(4):612, 2018

Thomas AG, Burrows L, Knight R, et al: The effect of pregnancy on cyclosporine levels in renal allograft patients. Obstet Gynecol 90:916, 1997

Towers CV, Kaminskas CM, Garite TJ, et al: Pulmonary injury associated with antepartum pyelonephritis: can patients at risk be identified? Am J Obstet Gynecol 164:974, 1991

Trevisan G, Ramos JG, Martins-Costa S, et al: Pregnancy in patients with chronic renal insufficiency at Hospital de Clinicas of Porto Alegre, Brazil. Ren Fail 26:29, 2004

Turney JH, Ellis CM, Parsons FM: Obstetric acute renal failure 1956–1987. BJOG 96:679, 1989

U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Asymptomatic Bacteriuria in Adults: Screening. 2019. Available at: www.uspreventiveservicestaskforce.org/Page/Document/UpdateSummaryFinal/asymptomatic-bacteriuria-in-adults-screening1. Accessed December 31, 2019

Valent AM, Peticca K, DiMatteo A, et al: Pyelonephritis in pregnancy: prediction of prolonged hospitalization and maternal morbidity using prognostic scoring systems. Am J Perinatol 34(12):1212, 2017

Vannevel V, Claes K, Baud D, et al: Preeclampsia and long-term renal function in women who underwent kidney transplantation. Obstet Gynecol 131(1):57, 2018

Waikar SS, Bonventre JV: Acute kidney injury. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 1099

Wall LL: Preventing obstetric fistulas in low-resource countries: insights from a Haddon matrix. Obstet Gynecol Surv 67(2):111, 2012

Wang F, Lu JD, Zhu Y, et al: Renal outcomes of pregnant patients with immunoglobulin a nephropathy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Am J Nephrol 49(3):214, 2019

Watterson JD, Girvan AR, Beiko DT, et al: Management strategy for ureteral calculi in pregnancy. Urology 60:383, 2002

Welsh GW III, Sims EA: The mechanisms of renal glucosuria in pregnancy. Diabetes 9:363, 1960

Whalley PJ: Bacteriuria of pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 97:723, 1967
Whalley PJ, Cunningham FG, Martin FG: Transient renal dysfunction associated with acute pyelonephritis of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 46(2):174, 1975
White WM, Zite NB, Gash J, et al: Low-dose computed tomography for the evaluation of flank pain in the pregnant population. J Endourol 21(11):1255, 2007
Wiles K, Bramham K, Seed PT, et al: Serum creatinine in pregnancy: a systematic review. Kidney Int Rep 4(3):408, 2019a
Wiles K, de Oliveira L: Dialysis in pregnancy. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 57:33, 2019b
Wing DA, Hendershott CM, Debuque L, et al: A randomized trial of three antibiotic regimens for the treatment of pyelonephritis in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 92:249, 1998
Wing DA, Hendershott CM, Debuque L, et al: Outpatient treatment of acute pyelonephritis in pregnancy after 24 weeks. Obstet Gynecol 94:683, 1999
Wing DA, Park AS, DeBuque L, et al: Limited clinical utility of blood and urine cultures in the treatment of acute pyelonephritis during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:1437, 2000
Wyld ML, Clayton PA, Jesudason S, et al: Pregnancy outcomes for kidney transplant recipients. Am J Transplant 13:3173, 2013
Yaprak M, Doğru V, Sanhal CY, et al: Fertility outcome after renal transplantation: a single-center experience. Transplant Proc 51(4):108, 2019
Zeeman GG, Cunningham FG, Pritchard JA: The magnitude of hemoconcentration with eclampsia. Hypertens Pregnancy 28:127, 2009
Zeeman GG, Wendel GD Jr, Cunningham FG: A blueprint for obstetric critical care. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:532, 2003
Zhang JJ, Ma XX, Hao L, et al: A systematic review and meta-analysis of outcomes of pregnancy in CKD and CKD outcomes in pregnancy. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 10(11):1964, 2015
Zhao C, Zhao J, Huang Y, et al: New-onset systemic lupus erythematosus during pregnancy. Clin Rheumatol 32(6):815, 2013
Zhou J, Pollak MR: Polycystic kidney disease and other inherited disorders of tubule growth and development. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2150

CHAPTER 57

Gastrointestinal Disorders

During normal pregnancy, the gastrointestinal (GI) tract and its appendages undergo remarkable anatomical, physiological, and functional alterations. These changes, which are discussed in detail in Chapter 4 (p. 70), can appreciably alter clinical findings normally relied on for diagnosis and treatment. Moreover, as pregnancy progresses, GI findings become more difficult to assess. The clinical examination is often obscured by a large uterus that displaces abdominal organs and can alter the location and intensity of pain and tenderness.

GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

Diagnostic Techniques

Endoscopy

Several endoscopic methods can be used to evaluate the gastrointestinal (GI) tract during pregnancy without reliance on radiographic techniques. With fiberoptic endoscopic instruments, the esophagus, stomach, duodenum, and colon can be inspected (Savas, 2014; Song, 2018). The proximal jejunum also can be studied, and the ampulla of Vater cannulated to perform *endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography—ERCP* (Fogel, 2014; Hedström, 2017). Experience in pregnancy with *video capsule endoscopy* for small-bowel evaluation remains limited (Bandorski, 2016). Normal pregnancy-related slowing of GI motility and thus increased transit time as well as the recorder capsule's electromagnetic field are theoretical concerns.

Upper gastrointestinal endoscopy is used for diagnosis and management of several problems. Common bile duct exploration and drainage are used for choledocholithiasis (Chap. 58, p. 1043). Sclerotherapy and placement of *percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG)* tubes also are performed endoscopically.

Colonoscopy is indispensible for viewing the entire colon and distal ileum. Except for the midtrimester, reports of colonoscopy during pregnancy are limited, but most results suggest that it should be performed if necessary (De Lima, 2015; Ludvigsson, 2017). Pregnancy indications include chronic abdominal pain, hematochezia, and diarrhea (Cappell, 2011). Bowel preparation is completed using polyethylene glycol electrolyte (GoLYTELY) or sodium sulfate (Suprep) solutions (American Society for Gastrointestinal Endoscopy, 2015). With these, most women avoid serious dehydration that may cause diminished uteroplacental perfusion. In select cases, tap water enemas

TABLE 57-1. Preprocedural Considerations for Gastrointestinal Endoscopy During Pregnancy

Plan consultation with an obstetrician, gastroenterologist, and anesthesiologist
Place patient in left lateral decubitus position
Use lowest effective dose of sedation necessary
Give prophylactic antibiotics as indicated. Penicillin, cephalosporin, erythromycin, and clindamycin are safe options
Minimize procedure time
Obtain fetal heart tones at the discretion of the obstetrician. In general, pre- and post-procedure heart tones are adequate
For colonoscopy, favor preparation with PEG-ES or with tap water enemas depending on GI level to be evaluated

GI = gastrointestinal; PEG-ES = polyethylene glycol electrolyte solution.
From American Society for Gastrointestinal Endoscopy, 2012, 2015.

may be an alternative for rectosigmoidoscopy to avoid some of these risks.

Endoscopic procedures should be performed when indicated and ideally in the second trimester (American Society for Gastrointestinal Endoscopy, 2012; Ludvigsson, 2017). A multidisciplinary approach with obstetricians, gastroenterologists, and anesthesiologists is prudent. Table 57-1 outlines preprocedural considerations in pregnancy.

Noninvasive Imaging Techniques

The ideal technique for GI tract imaging during pregnancy is abdominal sonography. However, the gravid uterus may obscure abdominal organs making evaluation difficult. Magnetic resonance (MR) imaging allows inspection of the abdomen and retroperitoneal space yet avoids radiation exposure from computed tomography (CT) (Khandelwal, 2013). Examples are MR cholangiopancreatography (MRCP) and MR enterography (MRE) (Oto, 2009; Stern, 2014). These and other imaging modalities, and their safe use in pregnancy, are discussed in Chapter 49.

Laparotomy and Laparoscopy

Surgery is lifesaving for certain GI conditions—perforative appendicitis being the most common example. Intraabdominal surgery is the most frequently performed nonobstetrical procedure during pregnancy (Devroe, 2019). Laparoscopic procedures have replaced traditional surgical techniques for many abdominal disorders during pregnancy (Ye, 2019). These are discussed in detail with descriptions of surgical technique in Chapter 49 (p. 867) and in *Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics*, 3rd edition (Kho, 2017). Guidelines for laparoscopy during pregnancy have been provided by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019) and the Society of American Gastrointestinal and Endoscopic Surgeons (Pearl, 2017).

■ Nutritional Support

Specialized nutritional support can be delivered *enterally*, usually via nasogastric tube feedings, or *parenterally* by venous catheter access, either peripherally or centrally.

When possible, enteral alimentation is preferable because it has fewer serious complications (Hoffer, 2018; Stokke, 2015). In obstetrical patients, very few conditions prohibit enteral nutrition as a first effort to prevent catabolism. For extreme cases, such as recalcitrant hyperemesis gravidarum, percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy with a jejunal port (PEG-J tube) has been described.

Parenteral nutrition provides nutrients when the intestinal tract must be quiescent. *Peripheral parenteral nutrition (PPN)* administers dilute nutrient admixtures and is appropriate for short-term use. Central venous access is necessary for *central parenteral nutrition (CPN)* because its hyperosmolarity requires rapid dilution in a high-flow vascular system (Robinson, 2018; Worthington, 2017). These solutions provide 24 to 40 kcal/kg/d, principally as a hypertonic glucose solution. Various conditions may prompt CPN during pregnancy (Table 57-2). The most common indications are short bowel syndrome and dysmotility disorders, and feeding duration averages 33 days (Billiauws, 2017).

TABLE 57-2. Some Conditions Treated with Enteral or Parenteral Nutrition During Pregnancy[a]

Achalasia
Anorexia nervosa
Appendiceal rupture
Bowel obstruction
Burns
Cholecystitis
Crohn disease
Diabetic gastropathy
Esophageal injury
Hyperemesis gravidarum
Jejunoileal bypass
Malignancies
Ostomy obstruction
Pancreatitis
Preeclampsia syndrome
Short bowel syndrome
Stroke
Ulcerative colitis

[a]Complications arranged alphabetically.
From Billiauws, 2017; Folk, 2004; Guglielmi, 2006; Mahadevan, 2019; Porter, 2014; Russo-Stieglitz, 1999; Saha, 2009; Spiliopoulos, 2013.

Parenteral nutrition complications are frequent and may be severe (Hoffer, 2018). The most common is catheter sepsis, and Folk (2004) reported a 25-percent incidence in 27 women with hyperemesis gravidarum. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention provides detailed guidelines to prevent catheter-related sepsis (O'Grady, 2011). Other maternal complications include upper-extremity venous thrombosis, volume overload, and reversible liver dysfunction. Perinatal complications are rare, however, fetal subdural hematoma caused by maternal vitamin K deficiency has been described (Sakai, 2003).

Appreciable morbidity is also associated with long-term use of a *peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC)*. Again, infection is the most common serious long-term complication (Hoffer, 2018; Holmgren, 2008). In a series of 84 such catheters inserted in 66 pregnant women, Cape and coworkers (2014) reported a 56-percent complication rate, and bacteremia was the most frequent. For short-term nutrition lasting a few weeks, PICC placement and its greater benefit-versus-risk ratio seems reasonable (Worthington, 2017).

UPPER GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT DISORDERS

Hyperemesis Gravidarum

Mild to moderate nausea and vomiting are especially common in pregnant women until approximately 16 weeks' gestation (Chap. 10, p. 191). In a small but significant proportion of these, however, it is severe and unresponsive to simple dietary modification and antiemetics. *Hyperemesis gravidarum* is defined variably as severe unrelenting nausea and vomiting that produces weight loss, dehydration, ketosis, alkalosis from loss of hydrochloric acid, and hypokalemia. Acidosis develops from partial starvation. In some women, transient hepatic dysfunction develops, and biliary sludge accumulates (Table 58-1, p. 1031). Other causes should first be considered because hyperemesis gravidarum is a diagnosis of exclusion.

Study criteria are not standardized, and thus population incidences vary (Koot, 2018). However, an ethnic or familial predilection has been described (London, 2017). In several population-based studies, the hospitalization rate for hyperemesis gravidarum was 0.5 to 2.1 percent (Fiaschi, 2019; Vikanes, 2013). Up to 25 percent of those hospitalized in a previous pregnancy for hyperemesis will again require admission (Nurmi, 2018).

The etiopathogenesis of hyperemesis gravidarum is unknown and is likely multifactorial. High or rapidly rising serum levels of pregnancy-related hormones such as human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), estrogen, progesterone, placental growth hormone, prolactin, thyroxine, and adrenocortical hormones are implicated (London, 2017; Verberg, 2005). Other associated hormones include ghrelins, leptin, nesfatin-1, and peptide YY 3–36 (Albayrak, 2013; Gungor, 2013).

Superimposed on this hormonal cornucopia are many biological and environmental factors. Moreover, in some but not all severe cases, interrelated psychological components play a major role (Mitchell-Jones, 2017; Senturk, 2017). Factors that increase the risk for admission include hyperthyroidism, previous pregnancy complicated by hyperemesis, diabetes, GI illnesses, some restrictive diets, and asthma (Fell, 2006; Fiaschi, 2016; Mullin, 2012). An association of *Helicobacter pylori* infection has been proposed, but evidence is inconclusive (Goldberg, 2007; London, 2017). Chronic marijuana use may cause the similar *cannabinoid hyperemesis syndrome* (Alaniz, 2015; Andrews, 2015). And for unknown reasons—perhaps estrogen-related—a female fetus raises the risk but smoking and obesity decrease it by 1.5-fold (Cedergren, 2008; Fiaschi, 2016). Some have reported a relationship between severe hyperemesis gravidarum and anemia, venous thromboembolism (VTE), gestational hypertension, and preeclampsia (Fiaschi, 2018). An association between hyperemesis and preterm birth is unclear (Kleine, 2017). Koren and colleagues (2018) suggested that prolonged vomiting may cause metabolic abnormalities that interfere with fetal brain development. No long-term maternal consequences follow hyperemesis. Specifically, two population-based studies found no unfavorable cardiovascular risks in Norwegian women (Fossum, 2017, 2018).

Complications

Vomiting may be prolonged, frequent, and severe, and a list of potentially fatal complications is given in Table 57-3. Various degrees of acute kidney injury from dehydration are encountered, and rhabdomyolysis may be contributory (Lassey, 2016). Rarely, we and others have encountered women with renal failure requiring dialysis (Dayangan Sayan, 2018; Hill, 2002). *Mallory-Weiss* tears result from continuous retching. Other complications include pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum, diaphragmatic rupture, and gastroesophageal rupture—*Boerhaave syndrome* (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018; Chen, 2012).

At least two serious vitamin deficiencies have been reported with hyperemesis in pregnancy. One is *Wernicke encephalopathy* from thiamine deficiency (Di Gangi, 2012; Palacios-Marqués, 2012). A systematic review reported that ocular signs, confusion, and ataxia were common, and approximately 60 percent had this triad (Oudman, 2019). In some women, an abnormal electroencephalogram (EEG) may be seen, and usually MR imaging shows findings (Oudman, 2019; Vaknin, 2006; Zara,

TABLE 57-3. Some Serious and Life-Threatening Complications Reported with Hyperemesis Gravidarum[a]

Acute kidney injury—may require dialysis
Depression—cause versus effect?
Diaphragmatic rupture
Esophageal rupture—Boerhaave syndrome
Hyperalimentation complications
Hypokalemia—arrhythmias, cardiac arrest
Hypoprothrombinemia—vitamin K deficiency
Mallory–Weiss tears—bleeding, pneumothorax, pneumomediastinum, pneumopericardium
Rhabdomyolysis
Wernicke encephalopathy—thiamine deficiency

[a]Complications arranged alphabetically.

2012). One woman had recurrent encephalopathy in a subsequent pregnancy (Stephens, 2019). Maternal deaths have been described, and long-term sequelae include blindness, convulsions, and coma (Oudman, 2019; Selitsky, 2006). *Vitamin K* is a second potential deficiency. Maternal coagulopathy, fetal intracranial hemorrhage, and vitamin K embryopathy have been reported (Kawamura, 2008; Lane, 2015; Nijsten, 2021).

Management

One management algorithm for nausea and vomiting of pregnancy is shown in Figure 57-1. Most women with mild to moderate symptoms respond to outpatient therapy with any of several first-line antiemetic agents (Boelig, 2018, McParlin, 2016). One mainstay is *Diclegis*—a combination of doxylamine (10 mg) plus pyridoxine (10 mg). The usual dose is two tablets orally at bedtime, and it appears safe and effective (Briggs, 2017; Koren, 2014). If relief is insufficient, one additional first-morning tablet is added to the bedtime dose. This can be further escalated to include one first-morning, one midafternoon, and two bedtime tablets (Duchesnay Inc., 2018). At our institution, for cost savings, we prescribe these two agents individually. The formula is one half of a 25-mg Unisom (doxylamine) tablet plus a 25-mg vitamin B_6 (pyridoxine) tablet. The same graduated dosing is used but does not exceed three total daily doses.

Ondansetron (Zofran) is slightly more effective than the combination of doxylamine and pyridoxine (Oliveira, 2014; Pasternak, 2013). In some studies, the former has been associated with birth defects (Briggs, 2017). However, after a recent systematic review of Cochrane and Reprotox databases, authors concluded that ondansetron is not teratogenic (Kaplan, 2019). Other drawbacks include potential maternal effects from prolonged QT-interval and serotonin syndrome. For these reasons it is preferably reserved for severe cases after 8 weeks' gestation (Lavecchia, 2018).

When simple measures fail, intravenous (IV) crystalloid solutions are given to correct dehydration, ketonemia, electrolyte deficits, and acid-base imbalances. Hypokalemia is common, and cardiac arrest has been reported (Walch, 2018). No benefits are gained by infusing 5-percent dextrose along with crystalloids (Tan, 2013). Thiamine, 100 mg, is usually diluted in 1 L of the selected crystalloid to prevent Wernicke encephalopathy for women who require IV hydration and have vomited for more than 3 weeks (Giugale, 2015). It is infused at the maintenance rate desired for patient hydration. This thiamine dose is provided daily for the next 2 to 3 days and is followed by IV multivitamins if IV hydration continues (Levichek, 2002).

If vomiting persists after rehydration and failed outpatient management, hospitalization is recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018). IV hydration is continued and antiemetics such as promethazine, prochlorperazine, chlorpromazine, or metoclopramide are given parenterally (Table 57-4). Several antiemetics are associated with the long-QT syndrome, discussed in Chapter 52 (p. 936). Outpatient treatment regimens at the hospital also are effective (McCarthy, 2014).

Some, but not all, studies indicate that treatment with *glucocorticosteroids* is not effective (Sridharan, 2020; Yost, 2003). They are recommended only for refractory cases because of their putative teratogenicity (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018).

With persistent vomiting after hospitalization, appropriate steps should be taken to exclude possible underlying diseases as a cause of hyperemesis.

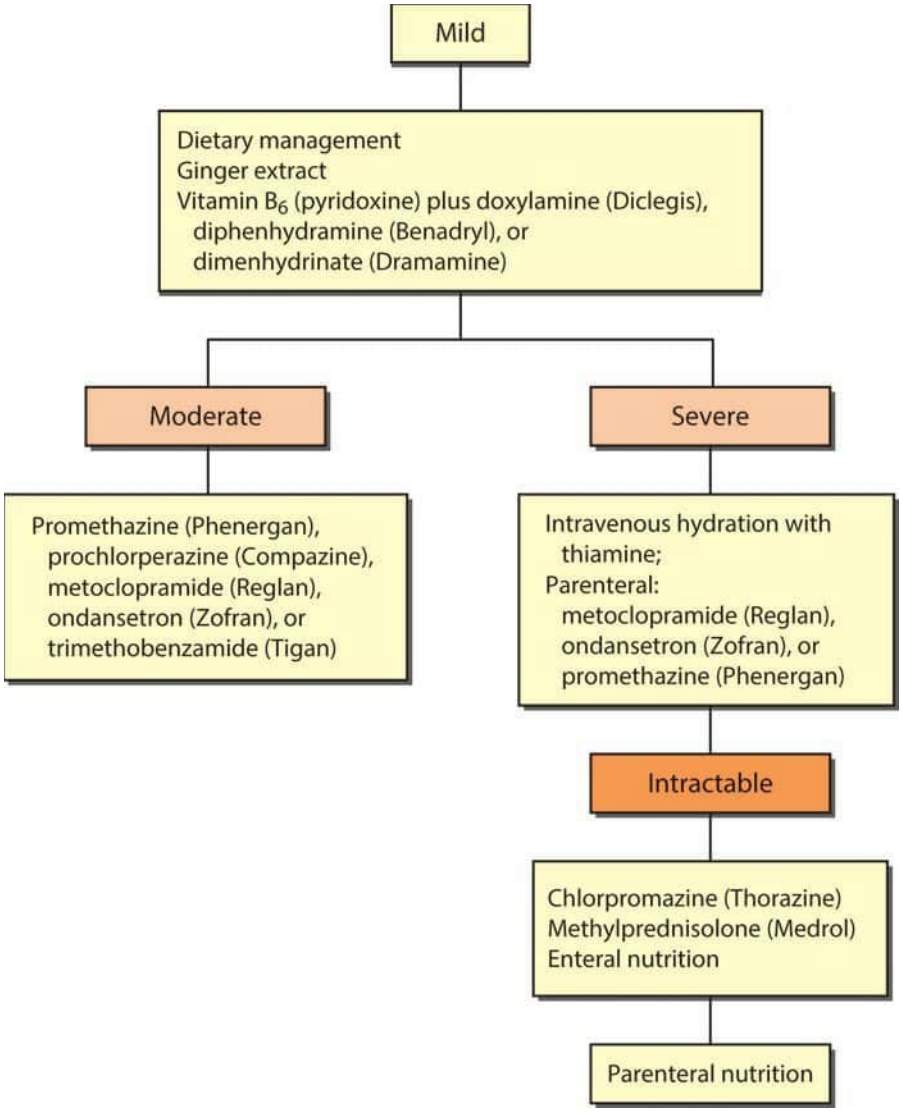


FIGURE 57-1 Algorithm for outpatient and inpatient management of pregnancy nausea and vomiting, and hyperemesis gravidarum.

TABLE 57-4. Medications for Gastrointestinal Disorders in Pregnancy

Medication (Brand Name)	Usual Dosing	Route(s)
Options for nausea and vomiting		
Antihistamine		
Doxylamine + pyridoxine (Diclegis)[a]	At bedtime; up to 4 times daily	PO
Phenothiazines	**Every 6 hr**	
Promethazine (Phenergan)[c]	12.5–25 mg	IM, IV, PO, PR
Prochlorperazine (Compazine)[c]	5–10 (25 PR) mg	IM, IV, PO, PR
Chlorpromazine (Thorazine)[c]	25–50 mg	IM, PO
Serotonin antagonist	**Every 8 hr**	
Ondansetron (Zofran)[b]	8 mg	IV, PO
Benzamides	**Every 6 hr**	
Metoclopramide (Reglan)[b]	5–15 mg	IM, IV, PO
Trimethobenzamide (Tigan)	300 mg	PO
Oral options for gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)		
Proton-pump inhibitors		
Pantoprazole (Protonix)[b]	40 mg daily for up to 8 wks	
Lansoprazole (Prevacid)[b]	15 mg daily for up to 8 wks	
Omeprazole (Prilosec, Zegerid)[c]	20 mg daily for 4–8 wks	
Dexlansoprazole (Dexilant)[c]	30 mg daily for up to 4 wks	
H2-receptor antagonists		
Cimetidine (Tagamet)[b]	400 mg 4 times daily for up to 12 wks 800 mg twice daily for up to 12 wks	
Nizatidine (Axid)[b]	150 mg twice daily	
Famotidine (Pepcid)[b]	20 mg twice daily up to 6 wks	

[a]Food and Drug Administration category A.
[b]Food and Drug Administration category B.
[c]Food and Drug Administration category C.
IM = intramuscularly; IV = intravenously; PO = orally; PR = rectally.

That said, in one study, endoscopy did not change management in 49 women (Debby, 2008). Other potential sources include gastroenteritis, cholecystitis, pancreatitis, hepatitis, peptic ulcer, and pyelonephritis. In addition, severe preeclampsia and fatty liver are more likely after midpregnancy. Although clinical thyrotoxicosis has been implicated as a cause of hyperemesis, it is more likely that abnormally elevated serum thyroxine levels are a surrogate for higher-than-average serum hCG levels (Sun, 2014). This is discussed further in Chapter 5 (p. 97). In our experiences, serum free thyroxine levels normalize quickly with hydration and emesis treatment.

With treatment, most women will have a positive response and may be sent home with oral antiemetic therapy. The readmission rate is 25 to 35 percent in most prospective studies. Risks for anxiety and depression are increased in these women (Mitchell-Jones, 2017; Senturk, 2017). At Parkland Hospital, more than one third of women with hyperemesis required readmission. Patient characteristics had limited utility in predicting the risk of readmission. For example, maternal demographics, substance use, psychiatric illness, and initial hospitalization length were not associated with readmission (White, 2018). If psychiatric and social factors contribute to the illness, the woman usually improves remarkably while hospitalized (Swallow, 2004). However, symptoms relapse in a fourth of these women, and some go on to develop *posttraumatic stress syndrome* (Chap. 64, p. 1150) (Christodoulou-Smith, 2011; McCarthy, 2011; Nurmi, 2018). For some women, hyperemesis may be an indication for elective termination (Poursharif, 2007).

Grooten and colleagues (2017) showed that early enteral tube feeding has no advantages. However, in the small percentage of women who have recalcitrant vomiting after intensive therapy, consideration is given for enteral nutrition (p. 1013). Stokke and associates (2015) described successful use of nasojejunal feeding for up to 41 days in 107 such women. Use of sonography to confirm correct tube placement has been described and avoids radiation exposure (Swartzlander, 2013). PEG-J tubes also have been reported (Saha, 2009; Schrag, 2007).

Only a very few women will require parenteral nutrition (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018; Yost, 2003). In a study of 599 women, however, Peled and coworkers (2014) reported that 20 percent required central parenteral nutrition.

Gastroesophageal Reflux Disease

Symptomatic reflux is seen in up to 15 percent of nonpregnant individuals (Kahrilas, 2018). The spectrum of sequelae includes esophagitis, stricture, Barrett esophagus, and adenocarcinoma.

The main symptom of reflux is *pyrosis* (heartburn), which is especially common in pregnancy. In one study, its prevalence rose from 26 percent in the first trimester to 36 percent in the second and 51 percent in the third trimester (Fill Malfertheiner, 2017). The retrosternal burning sensation stems from esophagitis caused by gastroesophageal reflux of stomach acid, which follows relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter. The diagnosis is typically made from symptoms alone.

Symptoms usually respond to abstaining from tobacco and alcohol, eating small meals, elevating the head of the bed, limiting postprandial recumbency, and avoiding "trigger" foods. These may include fatty foods, tomato-based foods, and coffee. Oral antacids are first-line therapy. If severe symptoms persist, a proton-pump inhibitor is given and an H_2-receptor antagonist and sucralfate can be added (see Table 57-4). Both classes are generally safe for use in pregnancy (Briggs, 2017). From preliminary data, proton-pump inhibitors taken early in pregnancy may increase the risk for preeclampsia (Hastie, 2019). Sucralfate is the aluminum salt of sulfated sucrose and inhibits pepsin. Approximately 10 percent of the aluminum salt is absorbed, and this agent is considered safe for pregnant women (Briggs, 2017). A 1-g sucralfate tablet is taken orally 1 hour before each of the three meals and at bedtime for up to 8 weeks. Antacids are not used within a half hour before or after sucralfate doses. Despite attempts with these options, if relief is not attained, endoscopy should be considered. *Misoprostol* is contraindicated because it stimulates labor (Chap. 26, p. 490).

In nonpregnant patients, surgical fundoplication can be performed (Kahrilas, 2018). Although the procedure is not done during pregnancy, Biertho and colleagues (2006) described 25 women who had undergone laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication before pregnancy. Only 20 percent had reflux symptoms during pregnancy.

Hiatal Hernia

The older literature is informative regarding hiatal hernias in pregnancy. Upper gastrointestinal radiographs performed in 195 women in late pregnancy showed that 20 percent of 116 multiparas and 5 percent of 79 nulliparas had a hiatal hernia (Rigler, 1935). Of 10 women studied postpartum, hernia persisted in three at 1 to 18 months.

The relationship of hiatal hernia with reflux esophagitis is not clear. One study demonstrated no association and showed that the lower esophageal sphincter functioned effectively even when displaced intrathoracically (Cohen, 1971). Nevertheless, during pregnancy, hiatal hernias may cause vomiting, epigastric pain, and bleeding from ulceration. Schwentner (2011) reported severe herniation requiring surgical repair in a woman with a 12-week gestation. Curran and coworkers (1999) described a 30-week pregnancy complicated by gastric outlet obstruction from a paraesophageal hernia.

Diaphragmatic Hernia

These are caused by herniations of abdominal contents through either the foramen of Bochdalek or Morgagni. Fortunately, they rarely complicate pregnancy. In one review of 18 pregnant women who developed acute obstruction within a diaphragmatic hernia, the maternal mortality rate was 45 percent (Kurzel, 1988). Herniation has been reported in one woman who had antireflux surgery in early pregnancy (Brygger, 2013). Several case reports also describe spontaneous diaphragmatic rupture from elevated intraabdominal pressure during delivery (Chen, 2012; Sharifah, 2003). Surgical treatment is considered in symptomatic gravidas and is individualized according to gestational age and clinical setting (Ménassa, 2019; Whang, 2018).

Achalasia

In this rare motility disorder, the lower esophageal sphincter fails to relax properly with swallowing. The esophageal muscularis also displays nonperistaltic contraction activity (Kahrilas, 2018). The defect is caused by inflammatory destruction of the myenteric (Auerbach) plexus within smooth muscle of the lower esophagus and its sphincter. Postganglionic cholinergic neurons are unaffected, and thus sphincter stimulation is unopposed.

Symptoms are dysphagia, chest pain, and regurgitation. Barium swallow radiography demonstrates *bird beak* or *ace of spades* narrowing at the distal esophagus. Endoscopy is performed to exclude gastric carcinoma, and manometry is confirmatory.

During pregnancy, normal physiological relaxation of the lower esophageal sphincter in women with achalasia theoretically should not occur. In one series, half of these women had worsened symptoms, but reflux is uncommon (Vogel, 2018). In other pregnancy studies, most women did not have worsening symptoms (Khudyak, 2006). At least one maternal death was reported at 24 weeks' gestation and perforation of a 14-cm-diameter megaesophagus was implicated (Fassina, 1995).

Management of achalasia includes a soft diet and anticholinergic drugs. With persistent symptoms, other options include nitrates, calcium-channel antagonists, and botulinum toxin A injected locally (Hooft, 2015; Kahrilas, 2018). Balloon dilation of the sphincter may be necessary, and 85 percent of nonpregnant patients respond (Vogel, 2018). *One caveat is that esophageal perforation is a serious complication of dilation.* If dilation or medical therapy fail to provide relief, myotomy is considered. In one report, a 29-week pregnant woman with achalasia was treated for 10 weeks with peripheral parenteral nutrition, and surgical myotomy was done postpartum (Spiliopoulos, 2013).

Peptic Ulcer Disease

The lifetime prevalence of acid peptic disorders in women is 10 percent (Del Valle, 2018). Erosive ulcer disease involves the stomach and duodenum. Gastroduodenal ulcers commonly are caused by chronic gastritis from *Helicobacter pylori*, or they develop from nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug (NSAID) use. Neither is common in pregnancy (McKenna, 2003; Weyermann, 2003). Rosen and coworkers (2021) reported 2535 pregnant women with peptic ulcer disease and found that complications were less frequent than in nonpregnant controls.

Acid secretion also is important, and this underlies the efficacy of antisecretory agents. Natural gastroprotection during

pregnancy probably originates from physiological changes that include reduced gastric acid secretion, decreased motility, and considerably increased mucus secretion (Hytten, 1991). Despite this, ulcer disease may be underdiagnosed because of frequent treatment for reflux esophagitis (Mehta, 2010). In the past 55 years at Parkland Hospital, during which time we have cared for more than 600,000 pregnant women, we have encountered very few who had proven ulcer disease. Perforation is rare (Goel, 2014). Before appropriate therapy was commonplace, Clark (1953) studied 313 pregnancies in 118 women with ulcer disease and noted a clear remission during pregnancy in almost 90 percent. However, benefits were short lived. Symptoms recurred in more than half by 3 months postpartum and in almost all by 2 years.

The mainstay of management is eradication of *H pylori* and prevention of NSAID-induced disease. Antacids are usually self-prescribed, but other first-line therapy is a proton-pump inhibitor or H_2-receptor blocker (see Table 57-4) (Del Valle, 2018; Laine, 2012). Sucralfate can be added and provides a protective coating at the ulcer base.

With active ulcers, a search for *H pylori* is undertaken. Diagnostic aids include the urea breath test, serological testing, fecal testing, or endoscopic biopsy. If any of these yield positive results, combination antimicrobial plus proton-pump inhibitor therapy is indicated (Chey, 2017). Several effective oral treatment regimens do not include tetracycline and can be used during pregnancy. One 14-day regimen includes clarithromycin, 500 mg twice daily, which is paired either with amoxicillin, 1000 mg twice daily or with metronidazole, 500 mg three times daily. These antibiotics are given with a proton-pump inhibitor (Del Valle, 2018).

Upper Gastrointestinal Bleeding

In some women, persistent vomiting is accompanied by worrisome upper gastrointestinal bleeding. Occasionally, a peptic ulcer is the source. However, most of these women have small linear mucosal tears near the gastroesophageal junction—*Mallory-Weiss tears* (p. 1014). Bleeding usually responds promptly to conservative measures that include IV proton-pump inhibitors and topical antacids (Laine, 2012). Transfusions may be needed, and if bleeding persists, endoscopy is usually indicated (O'Mahony, 2007). With sustained retching, the less common, but more serious, esophageal rupture—*Boerhaave syndrome*—may develop from high esophageal pressure.

SMALL BOWEL AND COLON DISORDERS

The small bowel has diminished motility during pregnancy. Lawson and colleagues (1985) showed that the small bowel mean transit times of 99, 125, and 137 minutes in each successive trimester, respectively, were slower than 75 minutes when nonpregnant. Muscular relaxation of the colon is accompanied by increased absorption of water and sodium that predisposes to constipation. This complaint is reported by almost 25 percent of women at some time during pregnancy and the puerperium (Everson, 1992). Symptoms are usually only mildly bothersome, and initial treatment includes increasing fluid intake (>8 glasses/d) and fiber consumption (20 to 35 g/d) (Body, 2016). If these lifestyle modifications fail, bulk-forming agents such as methylcellulose may be added, and in severe cases the stimulant laxative bisacodyl. We have encountered several pregnant women who developed megacolon from impacted stool. These women almost invariably had chronically abused stimulatory laxatives.

Acute Diarrhea

The estimated monthly prevalence of diarrhea among adults is 3 to 7 percent (DuPont, 2014). Diarrhea can be classified as acute (<2 weeks), persistent (2 to 4 weeks), and chronic (>4 weeks). Most cases of acute diarrhea are caused by infectious agents, and a third result from foodborne pathogens. The large variety of viruses, bacteria, helminths, and protozoa that cause diarrhea in adults also afflict pregnant women. These are usually accompanied by vomiting, fever, and abdominal pain. Some of these are discussed in Chapter 64 (p. 1197).

Evaluation of acute diarrhea depends on its severity and duration. Some indications for evaluation include profuse watery diarrhea with dehydration, grossly bloody stools, fever >38°C, duration >48 hr without improvement, recent antimicrobial use, and diarrhea in the immunocompromised patient (Camilleri, 2018; DuPont, 2014). Cases of moderately severe diarrhea with fecal leukocytes or gross blood may be treated with empirical antibiotics rather than evaluation. However, risks and benefits should be considered, and it is reasonable to withhold treatment until stool testing is completed to exclude infection. Some features of the more common acute diarrheal syndromes and their treatment are shown in Table 57-5.

The mainstay of treatment is IV hydration using normal saline or Ringer lactate and potassium supplementation in amounts to restore maternal blood volume and to ensure uteroplacental perfusion. Vital signs and urine output are monitored for signs of sepsis. For moderately severe nonfebrile illness without bloody diarrhea or recent travel, antimotility agents such as loperamide (Imodium) may be useful. An initial 4-mg (two capsules) dose can be followed with another 2-mg capsule after subsequently passed watery stools. Dosages should not exceed 8 mg/d, and loperamide is not used for more than 48 h. Bismuth subsalicylate (Pepto-Bismol) also may alleviate symptoms. The recommended dosage is 30 mL (525 mg) of its liquid form or two tablets (263 mg/tablet) chewed well each 30 to 60 min and not to exceed eight doses in 24 h. The drug will produce harmless black stools (Riddle, 2016).

Judicious use of antimicrobial agents is warranted. For moderately to severely ill women, some recommend empirical treatment with ciprofloxacin, 500 mg twice daily for 3 days. Specific pathogens are treated as needed when identified (see Table 57-5). Syndromes for which treatment is usually unnecessary include those caused by *Escherichia coli*, staphylococcal species, *Bacillus cereus*, and norovirus. Severe illness caused by *Salmonella* species is treated with ciprofloxacin or trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole; by *Campylobacter* species with azithromycin; by *Clostridioides difficile* with oral vancomycin or fidaxomicin; and by *Giardia* species and *Entamoeba histolytica* with metronidazole (DuPont, 2014; McDonald, 2018; Rocha-Castro, 2016).

TABLE 57-5. Etiology, Clinical Features, and Treatment of Common Acute Diarrheal Syndromes

Agents	Incubation	Emesis	Pain	Fever	Diarrhea	Treatment
Toxin producers	1–72 hr	3–4+	1–2+	0–1+	3–4+, watery	
1. *Staphylococcus* spp.						1. None
2. *C perfringens*						2. None
3. *E coli* (enterotoxin)						3. Ciprofloxacin
4. *B cereus*						4. None
Enteroadherent	1–8 days	0–1+	1–3+	0–2+	1–2+, watery, mushy	
1. *E coli*						1. Ciprofloxacin
2. *Giardia* spp.						2. Tinidazole
3. Helminths						3. As detected
Cytotoxin producers	1–3 days	0–1+	3–4+	1–2+	1–3+, watery, then bloody	
1. *C difficile*						1. Vancomycin
2. *E coli* (hemorrhagic)						2. None
Inflammatory						
Minimal	1–3 days	1–3+	2–3+	3–4+	1–3+, watery	
1. *Rotavirus*						1. None
2. *Norovirus*						2. None
Variable	12 hr–11 days	0–3+	2–4+	3–4+	1–4+ watery or bloody	
3. *Salmonella* spp.						3. Ciprofloxacin
4. *Campylobacter* spp.						4. Azithromycin
5. *Vibrio* spp.						5. Doxycycline
Severe	12 hr–8 days	0–1+	3–4+	3–4+	1–2+, bloody	
6. *Shigella* spp.						6. Ciprofloxacin
7. *E coli*						7. Ciprofloxacin
8. *Entamoeba histolytica*						8. Metronidazole

B cereus = *Bacillus cereus*; *C difficile* = *Clostridioides difficile*; *C perfringens* = *Clostridium perfringens*; *E coli* = *Escherichia coli*; spp. = species.
Modified from Camilleri, 2018; DuPont, 2014; McDonald, 2018.

Clostridioides difficile Infection

Formally known as *Clostridium difficile*, this anaerobic gram-positive bacillus is transmitted by the fecal-oral route. In a study from China, 3.7 percent of normal gravidas were colonized (Ye, 2016). It is the most frequent nosocomial infection in the United States. In 2011, 453,000 cases of *C difficile* and 29,000 associated deaths were reported by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (Lessa, 2015). Its incidence in pregnant women has doubled during the past decade (Ruiter-Ligeti, 2018). The most important risk factor is antibiotic use, and the highest risk is with aminopenicillins, clindamycin, cephalosporins, and fluoroquinolones. Other risk factors include inflammatory bowel disease, immunosuppression, advanced age, and gastrointestinal surgery. Most cases are hospital-acquired, however, 10 percent are community-acquired cases (Gerding, 2018). With severe colitis, the infection-related mortality rate is 5 percent.

Laboratory diagnosis from a stool sample uses nucleic-acid amplification testing (NAAT) for *C difficile* itself or uses an enzyme-immunoassay-based algorithm for a unique *C difficile* enzyme or its toxins A and B (McDonald, 2018). Less often, infection may be diagnosed endoscopically (Fig. 57-2). Only patients with new-onset diarrhea and ≥3 unformed stool of unexplained etiology should be tested, and posttreatment testing is not recommended. Prevention is by soap-and-water hand

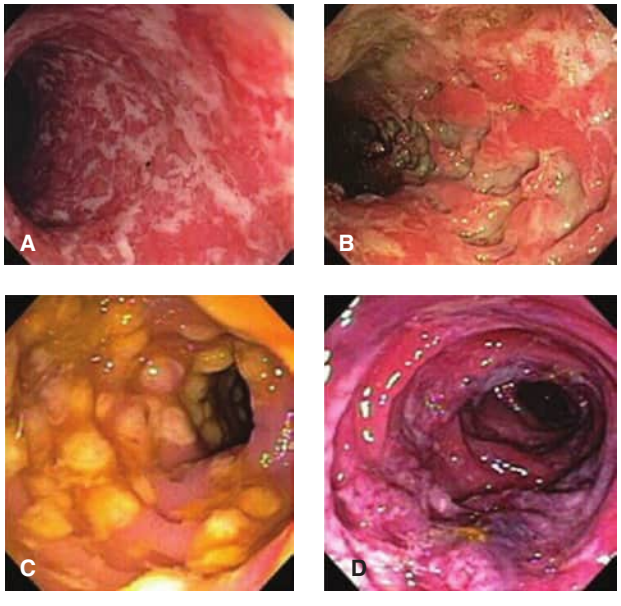


FIGURE 57-2 Causes of colitis. **A.** Ulcerative colitis with diffuse ulcerations and exudates. **B.** Crohn colitis with deep ulcers. **C.** Pseudomembranous colitis with yellow, adherent membranes. **D.** Ischemic colitis. (Reproduced with permission from Song LM, Topazian M: Gastrointestinal endoscopy. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2018.)

TABLE 57-6. Some Shared and Differentiating Characteristics of Inflammatory Bowel Disease

	Ulcerative Colitis	Crohn Disease
Shared Characteristics		
Hereditary	More than 100 disease-associated genetic loci–a third shared; Jewish predominance; familial in 5–10% of cases; Turner syndrome; immune dysregulation	
Other	Chronic and intermittent with exacerbations and remissions; extraintestinal manifestations: arthritis, erythema nodosum, uveitis	
Differentiating Characteristics		
Major symptoms	Diarrhea, tenesmus, rectal bleeding, cramping pain; chronic, intermittent; anemia	Fibrostenotic–recurrent RLQ colicky pain; fever Fistulizing–cutaneous, bladder, interenteric
Bowel involvement	Mucosa and submucosa of large bowel; usually begins at rectum (40% proctitis only); continuous disease	Deep layers small and large bowel; commonly transmural; discontinuous involvement; strictures and fistulas
Endoscopy	Granular and friable erythematous mucosa; bleeding; rectal involvement	Patchy; segmental colitis; rectum spared; perianal involvement
Serum antibodies	Antineutrophil cytoplasmic (pANCA) ~70%	Anti–*S cerevisiae* ~50%
Complications	Toxic megacolon; strictures; arthritis; cancer (3–5%)	Fistulas; arthritis; toxic megacolon; small bowel obstruction
Management	Medical; proctocolectomy curative	Medical; segmental and fistula resection

RLQ = right lower quadrant; *S cerevisiae* = *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*.
From Friedman, 2018; Lichtenstein, 2009.

washing, and infected individuals are isolated. Treatment consists of stopping the offending antibiotics and giving 10 days of oral vancomycin, 125 mg four times daily, or fidaxomicin (Dificid), 200 mg twice daily (McDonald, 2018). The risk of recurrence after an initial episode is 20 percent. Fecal microbial transplantation may become standard for recurrent clostridial colitis (Saeedi, 2017).

Inflammatory Bowel Disease

Two presumably noninfectious forms of intestinal inflammation are ulcerative colitis and Crohn disease. Differentiation between these is important because treatment differs. That said, they both share common features, and sometimes are indistinguishable if Crohn disease involves the colon. The features shown in Table 57-6 permit a reasonably confident diagnostic differentiation in most cases. The etiopathogenesis is enigmatic in both, but a genetic predisposition is suspected, especially for Crohn disease. Inflammation is thought to result from dysregulated mucosal immune function in response to commensal microbiota, with or without an autoimmune component (Friedman, 2018).

Ulcerative Colitis

This is a mucosal disorder with inflammation confined to the superficial luminal layers of the colon. It typically begins at the rectum and extends proximally for a variable distance. In approximately 40 percent of cases, disease is confined to the rectum or the rectosigmoid, but 20 percent have pancolitis. For unknown reasons, prior appendectomy protects against ulcerative colitis (Friedman, 2018). Endoscopic findings include mucosal granularity and friability that is interspersed with mucosal ulcerations and a mucopurulent exudate (see Fig. 57-2).

Major symptoms of ulcerative colitis include diarrhea, rectal bleeding, tenesmus, and abdominal cramps. The disease is characterized by exacerbations and remissions. *Toxic megacolon* and catastrophic hemorrhage are particularly dangerous complications that may necessitate colectomy. *Extraintestinal manifestations* include arthritis, uveitis, and erythema nodosum. The risk of associated colon cancer approaches 1 percent per year. With either ulcerative colitis or Crohn disease, risks for VTE are higher in even asymptomatic women (Friedman, 2018; Mahadevan, 2019).

Crohn Disease

Also known as regional enteritis, Crohn ileitis, or granulomatous colitis, Crohn disease has more protean manifestations than ulcerative colitis. It involves not only the mucosa but also the deeper bowel layers (see Fig. 57-2). Lesions can be seen throughout the entire GI tract, from the mouth to the anus, but it typically is segmental (Friedman, 2018). Approximately 30 percent of patients have only small-bowel involvement, 25 percent have isolated colonic involvement, and 40 percent have both, usually with the terminal ileum and colon involved. Perianal fistulas and abscesses develop in a third of those with colonic involvement.

Symptoms depend on which bowel segment(s) is involved. Thus, complaints may include lower-right-sided cramping abdominal pain, diarrhea, weight loss, low-grade fever, and obstructive symptoms. The disease is chronic with exacerbations and remissions, and importantly, it cannot be cured medically or surgically. Approximately a third of patients require surgery within the first year after diagnosis, and thereafter, the rate is 5 percent per year. Reactive arthritis is common, and the GI cancer risk, although not as great as with ulcerative colitis, is increased substantially.

Inflammatory Bowel Disease and Fertility

Subfertility in women is linked to active disease, but normal fertility is likely with quiescent colitis (Mahadevan, 2019). Subfertility may also be partially attributed to sulfasalazine, which causes reversible sperm abnormalities (Feagins, 2009).

For women requiring surgical resection, a laparoscopic approach has a higher subsequent fertility rate (Beyer-Berjot, 2013). With colectomy, however, although fertility is improved, up to half of women will be persistently infertile (Bartels, 2012; Lee, 2019a). Sexual function and fertility are only modestly affected by ileal pouch–anal anastomosis (Hor, 2016).

Inflammatory Bowel Disease and Pregnancy

Because ulcerative colitis and Crohn disease are relatively common in young women, these disorders are encountered with some frequency in pregnancy. In many studies, the outcomes are grouped together for both entities. For example, in a study from Australia, Shand and colleagues (2016) reported a prevalence of 1 inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) case in 320 births. In this regard, some generalizations can be made. First, consensus supports that pregnancy does not increase the likelihood of an IBD flare (Mahadevan, 2019). Indeed, in a 10-year surveillance of women in the European Collaborative on Inflammatory Bowel Disease, the likelihood of a flare during pregnancy was lower than the preconceptional rate (Riis, 2006). Although most women with quiescent disease in early pregnancy do not have relapses, when a flare develops, it may be severe. Also, and as discussed subsequently, active disease in early pregnancy increases the likelihood of disease relapse during pregnancy (de Lima-Karagiannis, 2016).

In general, most usual treatment regimens may be continued during pregnancy. Diagnostic evaluations should be undertaken if needed to direct management, and surgery should be performed if indicated (Mahadevan, 2019). Fecal calprotectin, an inflammatory biomarker in stool samples, is a valid tool in pregnancy to identify IBD flares (Julsgaard, 2017; Lichtenstein, 2018; Rubin, 2019).

At first glance, it appears that adverse pregnancy outcomes are increased with IBD (Boyd, 2015; Getahun, 2014). Initially, this was attributed to the fact that most studies included women with either form of disease. Specifically, Crohn disease was noted to be linked to excessive morbidity. But, according to Reddy (2008) and others, these adverse outcomes were in women with severe disease and multiple recurrences. Indeed, in the prospective European case-control ECCO-EpiCom study of 332 pregnant women with IBD, outcomes were similar in women with ulcerative colitis or Crohn disease compared with unaffected pregnant women (Bortoli, 2011). Still, women with active disease during pregnancy have an increased frequency of preterm births (Kammerlander, 2017; Shand, 2016). Importantly, perinatal mortality rates are not appreciably increased.

Ulcerative Colitis and Pregnancy. In one review of 755 pregnancies, colitis that was quiescent at conception worsened in approximately a third of pregnancies (Fonager, 1998). In women with active disease at the time of conception, approximately 45 percent worsened, 25 percent remained unchanged, and only 25 percent improved. These observations are similar to those described in a review by Miller (1986) as well as in later reports (de Lima-Karagiannis, 2016; Oron, 2012).

Osteoporosis is a significant complication in up to a third of affected women. Thus, vitamin D—800 IU daily—and calcium—1200 mg daily—are given. Folic acid, 2 to 4 mg orally daily, is recommended preconceptionally and during the first trimester for neural-tube defect prevention (Mahadevan, 2019). This high dose counteracts the antifolate actions of sulfasalazine. Flares may be caused by psychogenic stress, and reassurance is important. Last, the venous thromboembolism risk is doubled, but thromboprophylaxis is not routinely provided (Hansen, 2017).

Management for colitis for the most part mirrors that outside of pregnancy. Treatment of active colitis and maintenance therapy incorporate drugs that deliver 5-aminosalicyclic acid (5-ASA), also known as mesalamine. *Sulfasalazine (Azulfidine)* is the prototype, and its 5-ASA moiety inhibits prostaglandin synthase in colonic mucosa. Others include *olsalazine (Dipentum), balsalazide (Colazal),* and delayed-release 5-ASA derivatives *(Apriso, Asacol, Pentasa, Lialda)*. Glucocorticoids are beneficial and are given orally, parenterally, or by enema for moderate or severe disease that does not respond to 5-ASA. Corticosteroids provide a high remission rate for active disease, but they are not given for maintenance therapy (Friedman, 2018). Recalcitrant disease is managed with immunomodulating drugs, including *azathioprine*, *6-mercaptopurine*, *cyclosporine*, or *tacrolimus*, which all appear relatively safe in pregnancy (Briggs, 2017; Mozaffari, 2015). Importantly, *methotrexate* is teratogenic and contraindicated in pregnancy (Chap. 8, p. 152).

In the past, biologics were reserved for recalcitrant, moderate to severe disease. Because of their considerable efficacy, however, these medications are now frequently given *initially* for this severity of disease to prevent future complications. These agents are antibodies against tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α). Those recommended for IBD treatment are shown in Table 57-7 (Mahadevan, 2019). Women who begin pregnancy while taking biologics should continue these through pregnancy until several weeks before delivery to help avoid maternal infections from immunosuppression. These agents are administered

TABLE 57-7. Biologics Used to Treat Inflammatory Bowel Disease in Pregnancy

Drug (Brand Name)	Recommendations
Adalimumab (Humira)	Last dose 2–3 wks before EDC
Certolizumab pegol (Cimzia)	Continue throughout pregnancy
Infliximab (Remicade)	Last dose 6–10 wks before EDC
Natalizumab (Tysabri)	Last dose 4–6 wks before EDC
Ustekinumab (Stelara)	Last dose 6–10 wks before EDC
Vedolizumab (Entyvio)	Last dose 6–10 wks before EDC

EDC = estimated date of confinement.

IV or subcutaneously. Several studies support their safety in pregnancy, although there are concerns that their discontinuance may prompt a relapse (Chaparro, 2018; Friedman, 2018; Luu, 2018). Another worry is that they may cause immunosuppression in the newborn, and early neonatal vaccination with live-attenuated agents are delayed for at least 6 months (Esteve-Solé, 2017; Julsgaard, 2016).

Colorectal endoscopy is performed as indicated. Surgical management is tailored to disease severity (Killeen, 2017). During pregnancy, colectomy and ostomy creation for fulminant colitis may be needed as a lifesaving measure, and it has been described during each trimester. Dozois (2006) reviewed 42 such cases and found that, in general, outcomes have been good with partial or complete colectomy. Parenteral nutrition is occasionally needed for women with prolonged exacerbations.

For women with an ileal pouch and an anal anastomosis, frequency of bowel movements, fecal incontinence, and pouchitis may temporarily worsen with pregnancy. The last is an inflammatory condition of the ileoanal pouch probably due to bacterial proliferation and stasis. Pouchitis usually responds to ciprofloxacin or metronidazole. In one rare case, adhesions to the growing uterus led to ileal pouch perforation (Aouthmany, 2004).

In general, women with uncomplicated colitis can be delivered vaginally (Foulon, 2017). That said, the cesarean delivery rate in these women is increased (Burke, 2017). It is controversial whether women who have had a prior proctocolectomy and ileal pouch–anal anastomosis can be safely delivered vaginally. Hahnloser (2004) reviewed delivery routes in women with 235 pregnancies before and 232 pregnancies after ileoanal pouch surgery. Functional outcomes were similar, and it was concluded that cesarean delivery should be reserved for obstetrical indications. To the contrary, following their systematic review, Foulon and coworkers (2017) recommended cesarean delivery with the caveat that *uncomplicated* vaginal delivery was safe.

As discussed, quiescent ulcerative colitis likely has minimal adverse effects on pregnancy outcome. Modigliani (2000) reviewed perinatal outcomes in 2398 pregnancies and reported them to be not substantively different from those in the general obstetrical population. Specifically, the incidences of spontaneous abortion, preterm delivery, and stillbirth were remarkably low. These authors and others also describe a cesarean delivery rate that was substantially higher than that for normal controls (Burke, 2017; Mahadevan, 2015). The previously described ECCO-EpiCom study reported similar outcomes in 187 gravidas with ulcerative colitis compared with normal control women (Bortoli, 2011).

Crohn Disease and Pregnancy. In general, Crohn disease activity during pregnancy is related to its status around the time of conception. In a cohort study of 279 pregnancies conceived by 186 women whose disease was inactive at conception, a fourth relapsed during pregnancy (Fonager, 1998). In 93 with active disease at conception, however, two thirds either remained active or worsened. Other reviews describe similar findings (Miller, 1986; Oron, 2012).

Calcium, vitamin D, and folic acid supplementation mirror that for ulcerative colitis. For maintenance during asymptomatic periods, no regimen is universally effective. *Sulfasalazine* is effective for some, but the newer 5-ASA formulations are better tolerated. Glucocorticoids induce a 60- to 70-percent remission rate (Friedman, 2018). *Prednisone* therapy may control moderate to severe flares but is less effective for small-bowel involvement. Immunomodulators such as *azathioprine*, *6-mercaptopurine*, *cyclosporine,* and *tacrolimus* are used for active disease and for maintenance. These appear relatively safe during pregnancy (Chaparro, 2018; Luu, 2018). As discussed in Chapter 8 (p. 152), methotrexate is contraindicated in pregnancy. As with ulcerative colitis, treatment with TNF-α inhibitors is often used initially for active Crohn disease and maintenance (see Table 57-7) (Friedman, 2018; Mahadevan, 2019).

Endoscopy or conservative surgery is indicated for complications (Killeen, 2017). Patients with small-bowel involvement are more likely to require surgery for complications that include fistulas, strictures, obstruction, abscesses, and intractable disease. In an earlier study, an abdominal surgical procedure was required during 5 percent of pregnancies (Woolfson, 1990). Parenteral nutrition has been used successfully during severe recurrences. Those with an ileal loop colostomy may have significant problems. Unless there is a perianal fistula or active perianal disease, women with Crohn disease usually can undergo vaginal delivery without complications (Foulon, 2017; Mahadevan, 2019).

As discussed, Crohn disease compared with ulcerative colitis is associated with higher adverse pregnancy outcome rates. Outcomes are probably related to disease activities. In a case-control Danish study, Norgård (2007) reported a twofold risk of preterm births. Dominitz (2002) reported a two- to threefold increased risk for preterm delivery, low birthweight, fetal-growth restriction, and cesarean delivery in 149 women with Crohn disease. Recall, however, that the ECCO-EpiCom study found pregnancy outcomes to be similar to those in unaffected women.

■ Ostomy and Pregnancy

A colostomy or an ileostomy can be problematic during pregnancy because of its location (Hux, 2010). In a report of 82 pregnancies in 66 women with an ostomy, *stomal dysfunction* was common, but it responded to conservative management in most cases (Gopal, 1985). Surgical intervention was necessary, however, in three of six women who developed *bowel obstruction* and in another four with *ileostomy prolapse*—almost 10 percent overall. In this older study, only a third of 82 women underwent cesarean delivery, but Takahashi (2007) described six of seven cesarean deliveries in women with Crohn disease and a stoma. Although adhesions usually are involved with an obstructed ileostomy, the enlarging uterus may act to cause obstruction (Porter, 2014). Last, Farouk and coworkers (2000) reported that pregnancy did not worsen long-term ostomy function.

■ Intestinal Obstruction

The incidence of bowel obstruction is not increased during pregnancy, although it generally is more difficult to diagnose. Meyerson (1995) reported a 20-year incidence of 1 case in

17,000 deliveries at two Detroit hospitals. Of acute abdomen cases in pregnancy, adhesive disease leading to small-bowel obstruction was second only to appendicitis—15 versus 30 percent, respectively (Unal, 2011). Approximately half of cases are due to adhesions from previous pelvic surgery that includes cesarean delivery (Andolf, 2010; Lyell, 2011). Another 25 percent of bowel obstruction is caused by volvulus, which may involve sigmoid colon, cecum, or small bowel. These have been reported in late pregnancy or early puerperium (Al Maksoud, 2015; Bade, 2014). Bokslag (2014) and Wax (2013) and their colleagues described small-bowel obstruction in pregnancy following the currently popular Roux-en-Y gastric bypass, which is performed for weight loss. Intussusception is occasionally encountered (Bosman, 2014; Moliere, 2019). Bowel obstruction subsequent to colorectal surgery for cancer was increased threefold in women who had open versus laparoscopic surgery (Haggar, 2013). Last, Serra and coworkers (2014) described a massive ventral hernia with intestinal obstruction.

Most cases of intestinal obstruction during pregnancy result from pressure of the growing uterus on intestinal adhesions. This is more likely around midpregnancy when the uterus becomes an abdominal organ; in the third trimester when the fetal head descends; or immediately postpartum when uterine size acutely shrinks (Davis, 1983). Perdue (1992) reported that 98 percent of affected pregnant women had either continuous or colicky abdominal pain, and 80 percent had nausea and vomiting. Abdominal tenderness was found in 70 percent, and abnormal bowel sounds noted in only 55 percent. Plain abdominal radiographs following soluble contrast showed evidence of obstruction in 90 percent of affected women. Plain radiographs, however, are less accurate for diagnosing small-bowel obstruction, and we and others have found that CT and MR imaging can be diagnostic (Essilfie, 2007; Moliere, 2019). Colonoscopy can be both diagnostic and therapeutic for colonic volvulus (Dray, 2012; Khan, 2012).

During pregnancy, mortality rates with obstruction can be excessive because of difficult and thus delayed diagnosis, reluctance to operate during pregnancy, and the need for emergency surgery (Firstenberg, 1998; Shui, 2011). In an older report of 66 pregnancies, Perdue and associates (1992) described 6-percent maternal and 26-percent fetal mortality rates. Two of the four women who died were in late pregnancy, and they had bowel perforation from sigmoid or cecal volvulus caused by adhesions.

Colonic Pseudo-Obstruction

Also known as *Ogilvie syndrome*, pseudo-obstruction is caused by adynamic colonic ileus. It is characterized by massive abdominal distention with cecal and right-hemicolonic dilation (Fig. 57-3). Approximately 10 percent of all cases are associated with pregnancy, and its reported frequency is 1 case in 1500 births (Reeves, 2015). The syndrome usually develops postpartum—90 percent after cesarean delivery—but it has been reported antepartum. In a review, perforation was common, especially if the cecal diameter exceeded 12 cm (Jayaram, 2017). More recently, treatment with an IV infusion of neostigmine, 2 mg, given during cardiac monitoring usually results in prompt decompression (Song, 2018). In some cases, colonoscopic decompression is performed, and in others, laparotomy is needed for perforation (Rawlings, 2010).

Appendicitis

The lifetime incidence for appendicitis ranges from 7 to 10 percent (Flum, 2015). Thus, evaluation for possible appendicitis is relatively common during pregnancy. Theilen and colleagues (2017) studied 171 such women during a 5-year period, but only 14 women ultimately were found to have pathologically confirmed appendicitis. After clinical and imaging evaluation, the frequency of suspected appendicitis drops and that of confirmed appendicitis in more than 8 million women ranged from 1 case in 1000 to 5500 births (Abbasi, 2014; Hée, 1999; Mazze, 1991).

It is repeatedly—and appropriately—emphasized that pregnancy makes the diagnosis of appendicitis more difficult. Nausea

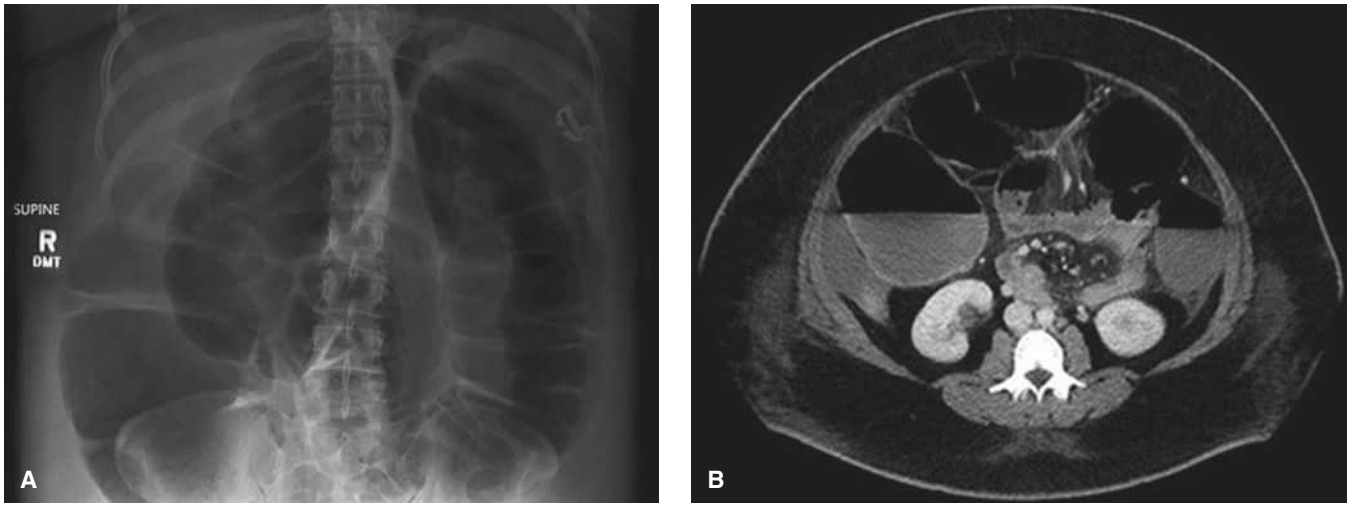


FIGURE 57-3 Ogilvie syndrome. Massive dilation of colon due to pseudo-obstruction in a woman following cesarean delivery. **A.** Abdominal radiograph. **B.** Axial image from computed tomography.

and vomiting accompany normal pregnancy, but also, as the uterus enlarges, the appendix commonly moves upward and outward from the right lower quadrant (Baer, 1932; Erkek, 2015; Pates, 2009). Another often-stated reason for late diagnosis is that some degree of leukocytosis accompanies normal pregnancy. That said, Theilen and coworkers (2017) observed that a white cell count >18,000/μL made the diagnosis tenfold more likely. Neutrophilic shift is another (Gentles, 2020). Pregnant women—especially in late gestation—frequently do not have clinical findings "typical" for appendicitis. Thus, it commonly is confused with cholecystitis, labor, pyelonephritis, renal colic, placental abruption, or uterine leiomyoma degeneration.

Most reports indicate increasing morbidity and mortality rates with advancing gestational age. And, as the appendix is progressively deflected upward by the growing uterus, omental containment of infection becomes increasingly unlikely. It is indisputable that appendiceal perforation is more common during later pregnancy (Abbasi, 2014). In the studies by Andersson (2001) and Ueberrueck (2004), the incidence of perforation was approximately 8, 12, and 20 percent in successive trimesters.

Diagnosis

Persistent abdominal pain and tenderness are the most reproducible findings. Right lower quadrant pain is the most frequent, although pain migrates upward with appendiceal displacement (Mourad, 2000). For initial evaluation, sonographic abdominal imaging is reasonable in suspected appendicitis, even if to exclude an obstetrical cause of pain (Butala, 2010). That said, *graded compression sonography* is difficult because of cecal displacement and uterine imposition (Pedrosa, 2009). *Appendiceal computed tomography* is more sensitive and accurate than sonography to confirm suspected appendicitis (Katz, 2012; Raman, 2008). Specific views can be designed to diminish fetal radiation exposure (Chap. 49, p. 873).

When available, MR imaging is the preferred modality for evaluation of suspected appendicitis in pregnancy (Fig. 57-4).

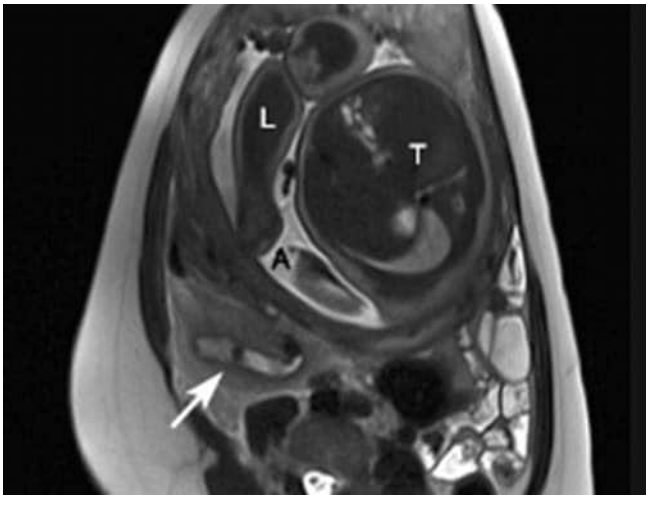


FIGURE 57-4 Magnetic resonance T2 flair image of acute appendicitis in a midtrimester pregnancy. The bright signal is inflammation and the block dot is a fecalith that can be seen in the midappendix (*arrow*). The fetal trunk (*T*) and leg (*L*) and amnionic fluid (*A*) are seen within the gravid uterus superior to the appendix. (Reproduced with permission by Dr. Christina Herrera.)

MR imaging has high diagnostic yield and accuracy, and it also provides alternative diagnoses (Fonseca, 2014; Theilen, 2015). One metaanalysis of 30 studies cited positive- and negative-predictive values of 96 and 99.5 percent, respectively, for MR imaging (Duke, 2016). Others report similar findings (Burke, 2015; Kave, 2019). However, Aguilera and colleagues (2018) found a sensitivity of only 18 percent in pregnant women.

Management

When appendicitis is suspected, most recommend prompt surgical exploration. Although diagnostic errors may lead to removal of a normal appendix, surgical evaluation is preferable to postponed intervention and generalized peritonitis (Abbasi, 2014). In earlier reports, the diagnosis was verified in only 60 to 70 percent of pregnant women. As indicated above, however, with CT and MR imaging, these figures have improved (Duke, 2016; Theilen, 2015). Still and importantly, the accuracy of diagnosis is inversely proportional to gestational age.

Currently, laparoscopic resection is almost always used to treat suspected appendicitis during the first two trimesters. In a report from a Swedish database of nearly 2000 laparoscopic appendectomies, perinatal outcomes were similar to those of more than 1500 open laparotomies done before 20 weeks' gestation (Reedy, 1997). Conversely, in their review, Wilasrusmee and coworkers (2012) reported a higher rate of fetal loss with laparoscopy. Authors of three more recent systematic reviews indicate that the level of evidence is not strong enough to demonstrate a preferred approach to appendectomy (Frountzas, 2019; Lee, 2019b; Walker, 2014). It has evolved that in many centers, laparoscopic appendectomy is also performed in most cases during the third trimester (Donkervoort, 2011). This is encouraged by others, including the Society of American Gastrointestinal and Endoscopic Surgeons (Pearl, 2017; Sekar, 2019; Soper, 2011).

Before exploration, IV antimicrobial therapy is begun, usually with a second-generation cephalosporin or third-generation penicillin. Unless there is gangrene, perforation, or a periappendiceal phlegmon, antimicrobial therapy can usually be discontinued after surgery. Without generalized peritonitis, the prognosis is excellent. Seldom is cesarean delivery indicated at the time of appendectomy. Uterine contractions are common, and although some clinicians recommend tocolytic agents, we do not. de Veciana (1994) reported that tocolytic use substantially increased the risk for pulmonary-permeability edema caused by sepsis (Chap. 50, p. 883).

Antimicrobial versus Surgical Treatment

Because of European studies, some advocate that many cases of appendicitis can be treated successfully with IV antimicrobials alone (Flum, 2015; Talan, 2019). In one study, 6 percent of pregnant women with appendicitis were treated medically, and these gravidas had "considerably" elevated risks for septic shock, peritonitis, and VTE compared with surgically managed cases (Abbasi, 2014). In another study of 20 women, failure rate was 25 percent (Joo, 2017). At this time, we discourage this practice until appropriate studies have been done with pregnant women. Certainly, if elected, such treatment should exclude women with obstructive appendicitis, and the threshold to convert to surgical treatment must be low.

Pregnancy Outcomes

Appendicitis increases the likelihood of preterm labor, especially if peritonitis has developed. Spontaneous labor after 23 weeks ensues with greater frequency following surgery for appendicitis compared with surgery for other indications (Ibiebele, 2019; Won, 2017). In one study, the fetal loss rate was 22 percent if surgery was performed after 23 weeks' gestation. Three large population-based studies attest to the adverse outcomes from appendicitis in pregnancy. From the California State Inpatient Database, the fetal loss rate was 20 percent (Won, 2017). A nationwide study from Taiwan found that risks for low birthweight and preterm delivery rose 1.5- to 2-fold when outcomes in 908 women with acute appendicitis were compared with those of controls (Wei, 2012). Last, an Australian population-based study reported an almost twofold increased incidence of preterm birth following appendectomy (Ibiebele, 2019).

REFERENCES

Abbasi N, Patenaude V, Abenhaim HA: Management and outcomes of acute appendicitis in pregnancy—population-based study of over 7000 cases. BJOG 121(12):1509, 2014

Aguilera F, Gilchrist BF, Farkas DT: Accuracy of MRI in diagnosing appendicitis during pregnancy. Am Surg 84(8):1326, 2018

Alaniz V, Liss J, Metz TD, et al: Cannabinoid hyperemesis syndrome: a cause of refractory nausea and vomiting in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 125(6):1484, 2015

Albayrak M, Karatas A, Demiraran Y, et al: Ghrelin, acylated ghrelin, leptin, and PYY-3 levels in hyperemesis gravidarum. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(9):866, 2013

Al Maksoud AM, Barsoum AK, Moneer MM: Sigmoid volvulus during pregnancy: a rare non-obstetric complication. Report of a case and review of the literature. Int J Surg Case Rep 17:51, 2015

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Nausea and vomiting of pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 189, January 2018

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Nonobstetric surgery during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 775, April 2019

Andersson RE, Lambe M: Incidence of appendicitis during pregnancy. Int J Epidemiol 30:1281, 2001

Andolf E, Thorsell M, Käkkén K: Cesarean delivery and risk for postoperative adhesions and intestinal obstruction: a nested case-control study of the Swedish Medical Birth Registry. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203(4):406, 2010

Andrews KH, Bracero LA: Cannabinoid hyperemesis syndrome during pregnancy: a case report. J Reprod Med 60(9-10):430, 2015

Aouthmany A, Horattas MC: Ileal pouch perforation in pregnancy: report of a case and review of the literature. Dis Colon Rectum 47:243, 2004

ASGE Standards of Practice Committee, Khashab MA, Chithadi KV, et al: Antibiotic prophylaxis for GI endoscopy. Gastrointest Endosc 81(1):8, 2015

ASGE Standards of Practice Committee, Saltzman JR, Cash BD, et al: Bowel preparation before colonoscopy. Gastrointest Endosc 81(4):781, 2015

ASGE Standards of Practice Committee, Shergill AK, Ben-Menachem T, et al: Guidelines for endoscopy in pregnant and lactating women. Gastrointest Endosc 76(1):18, 2012

Bade K, Omundsen M: Caecal volvulus: a rare cause of intestinal obstruction in pregnancy. ANZ J Surg 84(4):298, 2014

Baer JL, Reis RA, Arens RA: Appendicitis in pregnancy with changes in position and axis of normal appendix in pregnancy. JAMA 98:1359, 1932

Bandorski D, Kurniawan N, Baltes P, et al: Contraindications for video capsule endoscopy. World J Gastroenterol 22(45):9898, 2016

Bartels SA, D'Hoore A, Cuesta MA, et al: Significantly increased pregnancy rates after laparoscopic restorative proctocolectomy: a cross-sectional study. Ann Surg 256(6):1045, 2012

Beyer-Berjot L, Maggiori L, Birnbaum D, et al: A total laparoscopic approach reduces the infertility rate after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis: a 2-center study. Ann Surg 258(2):275, 2013

Biertho L, Sebajang H, Bamehriz F, et al: Effect of pregnancy on effectiveness of laparoscopic Nissen fundoplication. Surg Endosc 20:385, 2006

Billiauws L, Armengol Debeir L, Poullenot F, et al: Pregnancy is possible on long-term home parenteral nutrition in patients with chronic intestinal failure: results of a long term retrospective observational study. Clin Nutr 36(4):1165, 2017

Body C, Christie JA: Gastrointestinal diseases in pregnancy: nausea, vomiting, hyperemesis gravidarum, gastroesophageal reflux disease, constipation, and diarrhea. Gastroenterol Clin North Am 45(2):267, 2016

Boelig RC, Barton SJ, Saccone G, et al: Interventions for treating hyperemesis gravidarum: a Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(18):2492, 2018

Bokslag A, Jebbink J, De Wit L, et al: Intussusception during pregnancy after laparoscopic Roux-en-Y gastric bypass. BMJ Case Rep, November 18, 2014

Bortoli A, Pedersen N, Duricova D, et al: Pregnancy outcome in inflammatory bowel disease: prospective European case-control ECCO-Epicom study, 2003–2006. Aliment Pharmacol Ther 34(7):724, 2011

Bosman WM, Veger HT, Hedeman Joosten PP, et al: Ileocaecal intussusception due to submucosal lipoma in a pregnant woman. BMJ Case Rep 2014:pii:bcr2013203110, 2014

Boyd HA, Basit S, Harpsoe MC, et al: Inflammatory bowel disease and risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes. PLoS One 10(6):e0129567, 2015

Briggs GG, Freeman RK, Towers CV, et al: Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation, 11th edition. Philadelphia, Wolters Kluwer, 2017

Brygger L, Fristrup CW, Harbo FS, et al: Acute gastric incarceration from thoracic herniation in pregnancy following laparoscopic antireflux surgery. BMJ Case Rep 2013:pii: bcr2012008391, 2013

Burke KE, Haviland MJ, Hacker MR, et al: Indications for mode of delivery in pregnant women with inflammatory bowel disease. Inflamm Bowel Dis 23(5):721, 2017

Burke LM, Bashir MR, Miller FH, et al: Magnetic resonance imaging of acute appendicitis in pregnancy: a 5-year multiinstitutional study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213:693.e1, 2015

Butala P, Greenstein AJ, Sur MD, et al: Surgical management of acute right lower-quadrant pain in pregnancy: a prospective cohort study. J Am Coll Surg 211(4):491, 2010

Camilleri M, Murray JA: Diarrhea and constipation. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 261

Cape AV, Mogensen KM, Robinson MK, et al: Peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC) complications during pregnancy. JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 38(5):595, 2014

Cappell MS: Risks versus benefits of gastrointestinal endoscopy during pregnancy. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 8(11):610, 2011

Cedergren M, Brynhildsen, Josefsson A, et al: Hyperemesis gravidarum that requires hospitalization and the use of antiemetic drugs in relation to maternal body composition. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198:412.e1, 2008

Chaparro M, Verreth A, Lobaton T, et al: Long-term safety of in utero exposure to anti-TNFα drugs for the treatment of inflammatory bowel disease: results from the multicenter European TEDDY study. Am J Gastroenterol 113(3):396, 2018

Chen X, Yang X, Cheng W: Diaphragmatic tear in pregnancy induced by intractable vomiting: a case report and review of the literature. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(9):1822, 2012

Chey WD, Leontiadis GI, Howden CW, et al: ACG Clinical Guideline: Treatment of *Helicobacter pylori* Infection. Am J Gastroenterol 112(2):212, 2017

Christodoulou-Smith J, Gold JI, Romero R, et al: Posttraumatic stress symptoms following pregnancy complicated by hyperemesis gravidarum. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 24(11):1307, 2011

Clark DH: Peptic ulcer in women. BMJ 1:1254, 1953

Cohen S, Harris LD: Does hiatus hernia affect competence of the gastroesophageal sphincter? N Engl J Med 284(19):1053, 1971

Curran D, Lorenz R, Czako P: Gastric outlet obstruction at 30 weeks' gestation. Obstet Gynecol 93:851, 1999

Davis MR, Bohon CJ: Intestinal obstruction in pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 26:832, 1983

Dayangan Sayan C: A case of prolonged hyperemesis resulting in hepatorenal failure, foetal distress and neonatal mortality. J Obstet Gynaecol 38(4):2018

Debby A, Golan A, Sadan O, et al: Clinical utility of esophagogastroduodenoscopy in the management of recurrent and intractable vomiting in pregnancy. J Reprod Med 53:347, 2008

De Lima A, Galjart B, Wisse PH, et al: Does lower gastrointestinal endoscopy during pregnancy pose a risk for mother and child?—a systematic review. BMC Gastroenterol 15:15, 2015

de Lima-Karagiannis A, Zelinkova-Detkova Z, van der Woude CJ: The effects of active IBD during pregnancy in the era of novel IBD therapies. Am J Gastroenterol 111(9):1305, 2016

Del Valle J: Peptic ulcer disease and related disorders. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2220

de Veciana M, Towers CV, Major CA, et al: Pulmonary injury associated with appendicitis in pregnancy: who is at risk? Am J Obstet Gynecol 171(4):1008, 1994

Devroe S, Bleeser T, Van de Velde M, et al: Anesthesia for non-obstetric surgery during pregnancy in a tertiary referral center: a 16-year retrospective, matched case-control, cohort study. Int J Obstet Anesth 39:74, 2019

Di Gangi S, Gizzo S, Patrelli TS, et al: Wernicke's encephalopathy complicating hyperemesis gravidarum: from the background to the present. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(8):1499, 2012

Dominitz JA, Young JC, Boyko EJ: Outcomes of infants born to mothers with inflammatory bowel disease: a population-based cohort study. Am J Gastroenterol 97:641, 2002

Donkervoort SC, Boerma D: Suspicion of acute appendicitis in the third trimester of pregnancy: pros and cons of a laparoscopic procedure. JSLS 15(3):379, 2011

Dozois EJ, Wolff BG, Tremaine WJ, et al: Maternal and fetal outcome after colectomy for fulminant ulcerative colitis during pregnancy: case series and literature review. Dis Colon Rectum 49:64, 2006

Dray X, Hamzi L, Lo Dico R, et al: Endoscopic reduction of a volvulus of the sigmoid colon in a pregnancy woman. Dig Liver Dis 44(5):447, 2012

Duke E, Kalb B, Arif-Tiwari H, et al: A systematic review and meta-analysis of diagnostic performance of MRI for evaluation of acute appendicitis. AJR Am J Roentgenol 206(3):508, 2016

DuPont HL: Acute infectious diarrhea in immunocompetent adults. N Engl J Med 370:1532, 2014

Duchesnay Inc.: Diclegis prescribing information. 2018. Available at: https://files.duchesnay.com/duchesnay-usa/diclegis/diclegis-prescribing-information.pdf. Accessed April 10, 2020

Erkek A, Anik Ilhan G, Yidixhan B, et al: Location of the appendix at the third trimester of pregnancy: a new approach to old dilemma. J Obstet Gynaecol 35(7):688, 2015

Essilfie P, Hussain M, Stokes IM: Small bowel infarction secondary to volvulus during pregnancy: a case report. J Reprod Med 52:553, 2007

Esteve-Solé A, Deyà-Martínez À, Teixidó I, et al: Immunological changes in blood of newborns exposed to anti-TNF-α during pregnancy. Front Immunol 8:112, 2017

Farouk R, Pemberton JH, Wolff BG, et al: Functional outcomes after ileal pouch–anal anastomosis for chronic ulcerative colitis. Ann Surg 231:919, 2000

Fassina G, Osculati A: Achalasia and sudden death: a case report. Forensic Sci Int 75:133, 1995

Feagins LA, Kane SV: Sexual and reproductive issues for men with inflammatory bowel disease. Am J Gastroenterol 104(3):768, 2009

Fell DB, Dodds L, Joseph KS, et al: Risk factors for hyperemesis gravidarum requiring hospital admission during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 107:277, 2006

Fiaschi L, Nelson-Piercy C, Deb S, et al: Clinical management of nausea and vomiting in pregnancy and hyperemesis gravidarum across primary and secondary care: a population-based study. BJOG 126(10):1201, 2019

Fiaschi L, Nelson-Piercy C, Gibson J, et al: Adverse maternal and birth outcomes in women admitted to hospital for hyperemesis gravidarum: a population-based cohort study. Paediatr Perinat Epidemiol 32(1):40, 2018

Fiaschi L, Nelson-Piercy C, Tata LJ: Hospital admission for hyperemesis gravidarum: a nationwide study of occurrence, reoccurrence and risk factors among 8.2 million pregnancies. Hum Reprod 31(8):1675, 2016

Fill Malfertheiner S, Seelback-Göbel B, Costa SD, et al: Impact of gastroesophageal reflux disease symptoms on the quality of life in pregnant women: a prospective study. Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 29(8):892, 2017

Firstenberg MS, Malangoni MA: Gastrointestinal surgery during pregnancy. Gastroenterol Clin North Am 27:73, 1998

Flum DR: Acute appendicitis—appendectomy or the "antibiotics first" strategy. N Engl J Med 372:1937, 2015

Fogel EL, Sherman S: ERCP for gallstone pancreatitis. N Engl J Med 370:150, 2014

Folk JJ, Leslie-Brown HF, Nosovitch JT, et al: Hyperemesis gravidarum: outcomes and complications with and without total parenteral nutrition. J Reprod Med 49:497, 2004

Fonager K, Sorensen HT, Olsen J, et al: Pregnancy outcome for women with Crohn's disease: a follow-up study based on linkage between national registries. Am J Gastroenterol 93:2426, 1998

Fonseca AL, Schuster KM, Kaplan LJ, et al: The use of magnetic resonance imaging in the diagnosis of suspected appendicitis in pregnancy: shortened length of stay without increase in hospital charges. JAMA Surg 149(7):687, 2014

Fossum S, Halvorsen S, Vikanes ÅV, et al: Cardiovascular risk profile at the age of 40–45 women with previous hyperemesis gravidarum or hypertensive disorders in pregnancy: a population-based study. Pregnancy Hypertens 12:129, 2018

Fossum S, Vikanes Å, Naess Ø, et al: Hyperemesis gravidarum and long-term mortality: a population-based cohort study. BJOG 124(7):1080, 2017

Foulon A, Dupas JL, Sabbagh C, et al: Defining the most appropriate delivery mode in women with inflammatory bowel disease: a systematic review. Inflamm Bowel Dis 23(5):712, 2017

Friedman S, Blumberg RS: Inflammatory bowel disease. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2258

Frountzas M, Nikolaou C, Stergios K, et al: Is the laparoscopic approach a safe choice for the management of acute appendicitis in pregnant women? A meta-analysis of observational studies. Ann R Coll Surg Engl 101(4):235, 2019

Gentles JQ, Meglei G, Chen L, et al: Is neutrophilia the key to diagnosing appendicitis in pregnancy? Am J Surg 219(5):855, 2020

Gerding DN, Johnson S. *Clostridium difficile* infection, including pseudomembranous colitis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 964

Getahun D, Fassett MJ, Longstreth GF, et al: Association between maternal inflammatory bowel disease and adverse perinatal outcomes. J Perinatol 34(6):435, 2014

Giugale LE, Young OM, Streitman DC: Iatrogenic Wernicke encephalopathy in a patient with severe hyperemesis gravidarum. Obstet Gynecol 125(5):1150, 2015

Goel B, Rani J, Huria A, et al: Perforated duodenal ulcer—a rare cause of acute abdomen in pregnancy. J Clin Diagn Res 8(9):OD03, 2014

Goldberg D, Szilagyi A, Graves L: Hyperemesis gravidarum and *Helicobacter pylori* infection. Obstet Gynecol 110:695, 2007

Gopal KA, Amshel AL, Shonberg IL, et al: Ostomy and pregnancy. Dis Colon Rectum 28:912, 1985

Grooten IJ, Koot MH, van der Post JA, et al: Early enteral tube feeding in optimizing treatment of hyperemesis gravidarum: the Maternal and Offspring outcomes after Treatment of HyperEmesis by Refeeding (MOTHER) randomized controlled trial. Am J Clin Nurt 106(3):812, 2017

Guglielmi FW, Baggio-Bertinet D, Federico A, et al: Total parenteral nutrition-related gastroenterological complications. Digest Liver Dis 38:623, 2006

Gungor S, Gurates B, Aydin S, et al: Ghrelins, obestatin, nesfatin-1 and leptin levels in pregnant women with and without hyperemesis gravidarum. Clin Biochem 46(9):828, 2013

Haggar F, Pereira G, Preen D, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes in pregnancies following colorectal cancer. Surg Endosc 27(7):2327, 2013

Hahnloser D, Pemberton JH, Wolff BG, et al: Pregnancy and delivery before and after ileal pouch-anal anastomosis for inflammatory bowel disease: immediate and long-term consequences and outcomes. Dis Colon Rectum 47:1127, 2004

Hansen AT, Erichsen R, Horváth-Puhó E, et al: Inflammatory bowel disease and venous thromboembolism during pregnancy and the postpartum period. J Thromb Haemost 15(4):702, 2017

Hastie R, Bergman L, Cluver CA, et al: Proton pump inhibitor and preeclampsia risk among 157,720 women. Hypertension 73(5):1097, 2019

Hedström J, Nilsson J, Andersson R, et al: Changing management of gallstone-related disease in pregnancy—a retrospective cohort analysis. Scan J Gastroenterol 52(9):1016, 2017

Hée P, Viktrup L: The diagnosis of appendicitis during pregnancy and maternal and fetal outcome after appendectomy. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 65:129, 1999

Hill JB, Yost NP, Wendel GW Jr: Acute renal failure in association with severe hyperemesis gravidarum. Obstet Gynecol 100:1119, 2002

Hoffer LJ, Bistrian BR, Driscoll DF: Enteral and parenteral nutrition. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2324

Holmgren C, Aagaard-Tillery KM, Silver RM, et al: Hyperemesis in pregnancy: an evaluation of treatment strategies with maternal and neonatal outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198:56.e1, 2008

Hooft N, Schmidt ES, Bremner RM: Achalasia in pregnancy: botulinum toxin A injection of lower esophageal sphincter. Case Rep Surg 2015:328970, 2015

Hor T, Lefevre JH, Shields C, et al: Female sexual function and fertility after ileal-anal pouch anastomosis. Int J Colorectal Dis 31(3):593, 2016

Hux C: Ostomy and pregnancy. Ostomy Wound Manage 56(1):48, 2010

Hytten FE: The alimentary system. In Hytten F, Chamberlain G (eds): Clinical Physiology in Obstetrics. London, Blackwell, 1991, p 137

Ibiebele I, Schnitzler M, Nippita T, et al: Appendicectomy during pregnancy and the risk of preterm birth: a population data linkage study. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 59(1):45, 2019

Jayaram P, Mohan M, Lindow S, et al: Postpartum acute colonic pseudo-obstruction (Ogilvies' Syndrome): a systematic review of case reports and case series. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 214:145, 2017

Joo JI, Park HC, Kim MJ, et al: Outcomes of antibiotic therapy of uncomplicated appendicitis in pregnancy. Am J Med 130(12):1467, 2017

Julsgaard M, Christensen LA, Gibson PR, et al: Concentrations of adalimumab and infliximab in mothers and newborns, and effects on infection. Gastroenterology 151:110, 2016
Julsgaard M, Hvas CL, Gearry RB, et al: Fecal calprotectin is not affected by pregnancy: clinical implications for the management of pregnant patients with inflammatory bowel disease. Inflamm Bowel Dis 23(7):1240, 2017
Kahrilas PJ, Hirano I: Diseases of the esophagus. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2209
Kammerlander H, Nielsen J, Kjeldsen J, et al: The effect of disease activity on birth outcomes in a nationwide cohort of women with moderate to severe inflammatory bowel disease. Inflamm Bowel Dis 23(6):1011, 2017
Kaplan YC, Richardson JL, Keskin-Arslan E, et al: Use of ondansetron during pregnancy and the risk of major congenital malformations: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Reprod Toxicol 86:1, 2019
Katz DS, Klein MA, Ganson G, et al: Imaging of abdominal pain in pregnancy. Radiol Clin North Am 50(1):149, 2012
Kave M, Parooie F, Salarzaei M: Pregnancy and appendicitis: a systematic review and meta-analysis on the clinical us of MRI in diagnosis of appendicitis in pregnant women. World J Emerg Surg 14:37, 2019
Kawamura Y, Kawamata K, Shinya M, et al: Vitamin K deficiency in hyperemesis gravidarum as a potential cause of fetal intracranial hemorrhage and hydrocephalus. Prenat Diagn 28:59, 2008
Khan MR, Ur Rehman S: Sigmoid volvulus in pregnancy and puerperium: a surgical and obstetric catastrophe. Report of a case and review of the world literature. World J Emerg Surg 7(1):10, 2012
Khandelwal A, Fasih N, Kielar A: Imaging of the acute abdomen in pregnancy. Radiol Clin North Am 51:1005, 2013
Kho KA: Diagnostic and operative laparoscopy. In Yeomans ER, Hoffman BL, Gilstrap LC III, et al (eds): Cunningham and Gilstrap's Operative Obstetrics, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2017
Khudyak V, Lysy J, Mankuta D: Achalasia in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 61:207, 2006
Killeen S, Gunn J, Hartley J: Surgical management of complicated and medically refractory inflammatory bowel disease during pregnancy. Colorectal Dis 19(2):123, 2017
Kleine I, Da Silva A, Ahmed W, et al: Hospital admission for hyperemesis gravidarum in women at increased risk of spontaneous preterm birth. Birth 44(4):384, 2017
Koot MH, Boelig RC, Van't Hooft J, et al: Variation in hyperemesis gravidarum definition and outcome reporting in randomised clinical trials: a systematic review. BJOG 125(12):1514, 2018
Koren G: Treating morning sickness in the United States—changes in prescribing are needed. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(6):602, 2014
Koren G, Ornoy A, Berkovitch M: Hyperemesis gravidarum-is it a cause of abnormal fetal brain development? Reprod Toxicol 79:84, 2018
Kurzel RB, Naunheim KS, Schwartz RA: Repair of symptomatic diaphragmatic hernia during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 71:869, 1988
Laine L, Jensen DM: Management of patients with ulcer bleeding Am J Gastroenterol 107(3):345, 2012
Lane AS, Stallworth JL, Eichelberger KY, et al: Vitamin K deficiency embryopathy from hyperemesis gravidarum. Case Rep Obstet Gynecol 2015:324173, 2015
Lassey SC, Robinson JN: Rhabdomyolysis after hyperemesis gravidarum. Obstet Gynecol 128(1):195, 2016
Lavecchia M, Chari R, Campbell S, et al: Ondansetron in pregnancy and the risk of congenital malformations: a systematic review. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 40(7):910, 2018
Lawson M, Kern F, Everson GT: Gastrointestinal transit time in human pregnancy: prolongation in the second and third trimesters followed by postpartum normalization. Gastroenterology 89:996, 1985
Lee S, Crowe M, Seow CH, et al: The impact of surgical therapies for inflammatory bowel disease on female fertility. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD012711, 2019a
Lee SH, Lee JY, Choi YY, et al: Laparoscopic appendectomy versus open appendectomy for suspected appendicitis during pregnancy: a systematic review and updated meta-analysis. BMC Surg 19(1):41, 2019b
Lessa FC, Mu Y, Bamberg WM, et al: Burden of *Clostridium difficile* infection in the United States. N Engl J Med 372(9):825, 2015
Lichtenstein GR, Loftus EV, Isaacs KL, et al ACG Clinical Guideline: management of Crohn's disease in adults. Am J Gastroenterol 113(4):481, 2018
Lichtenstein GR, Hanauer SB, Sandborn WJ, et al: Management of Crohn's disease in adults. Am J Gastroenterol 104(2):465, 2009
London V, Grube S, Sherer DM, et al: Hyperemesis gravidarum: a review of recent literature. Pharmacology 100(3-4):161, 2017
Ludvigsson JF, Lebwohl B, Ekbom A, et al: Outcomes of pregnancies for women undergoing endoscopy while they were pregnant: a nationwide cohort study. Gastroenterology 152(3):2017
Luu M, Benzenine E, Doret M, et al: Continuous anti-TNFα use throughout pregnancy: possible complications for the mother but not for the fetus—a retrospective cohort on the French national health insurance database (EVASION). Am J Gastroenterol 113(11):1669, 2018
Lyell DJ: Adhesions and perioperative complications of repeat cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(6 Suppl):S11, 2011
Mahadevan U, Matro R: Care of the pregnant patient with inflammatory bowel disease. Obstet Gynecol 126(2):401, 2015
Mahadevan U, Robinson C, Bernasko N, et al: Inflammatory bowel disease in pregnancy clinical care pathway: a report from the American Gastroenterological Association IBD Parenthood Project Working Group. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(4):308, 2019
Mazze RI, Källén B: Appendectomy during pregnancy: a Swedish registry study of 778 cases. Obstet Gynecol 77:835, 1991
McCarthy FP, Khashan AS, North RA, et al: A prospective cohort study investigating associations between hyperemesis gravidarum and cognitive, behavioural and emotional well-being in pregnancy. PLoS One 6(11):e27678, 2011
McCarthy FP, Murphy A, Khashan AS, et al: Day care compared with inpatient management of nausea and vomiting of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 124(4):743, 2014
McDonald LC, Gerdin DN, Johnson S, et al: Clinical practice guidelines for *Clostridium difficile* infection in adults and children: 2017 update by the Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA) and Society for Healthcare Epidemiology of America (SHEA). Clin Infect Dis 66(7):e1, 2018
McKenna D, Watson P, Dornan J: *Helicobacter pylori* infection and dyspepsia in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 102:845, 2003
McParlin C, O'Donnell A, Robson SC, et al: Treatments for hyperemesis gravidarum and nausea and vomiting in pregnancy: a systematic review. JAMA 316(13):1392, 2016
Mehta N, Saha S, Chien EK, et al: Disorders of the gastrointestinal tract in pregnancy. In Powrie R, Greene M, Camann W (eds): de Swiet's Medical Disorders in Obstetric Practice, 5th ed. New Jersey, Wiley-Blackwell, 2010, p 256
Ménassa M, Bergeron AM, Drolet S, et al: Strangulated congenital diaphragmatic hernia of Bochdalek diagnosed in later pregnancy: a case report and review of the literature. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 41(10):1482, 2019
Meyerson S, Holtz T, Ehrinpresis M, et al: Small bowel obstruction in pregnancy. Am J Gastroenterol 90:299, 1995
Miller JP: Inflammatory bowel disease in pregnancy: a review. J R Soc Med 79:221, 1986
Mitchell-Jones N, Gallos I, Farren J, et al: Psychological morbidity associated with hyperemesis gravidarum: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 124(1):20, 2017
Modigliani RM: Gastrointestinal and pancreatic disease. In Barron WM, Lindheimer MD, Davison JM (eds): Medical Disorders of Pregnancy, 3rd ed. St. Louis, Mosby, 2000, p 316
Moliere S, Cavillon V, Mesli Y: The case for magnetic resonance imaging in bowel obstruction during pregnancy: intussusception in a pregnant woman with Roux-en-Y gastric bypass. Am J Obstet Gynecol 220(3):282, 2019
Mourad J, Elliott JP, Erickson L, et al: Appendicitis in pregnancy: new information that contradicts long-held clinical beliefs. Am J Obstet Gynecol 185:1027, 2000
Mozaffari S, Abdolghaffari AH, Nikfar S, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with inflammatory bowel disease following exposure to thiopurines and antitumor necrosis factor drugs: a systematic review with meta-analysis. Hum Exp Toxicol 35(5):445, 2015
Mullin PM, Ching C, Schoenberg R, et al: Risk factors, treatments, and outcomes associated with prolonged hyperemesis gravidarum. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(6):632, 2012
Nijsten K, van der Minnen L, Wiegers HM, et al: Hyperemesis gravidarum and vitamin K deficiency: a systematic review. Br J Nutr July 30, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]
Norgård B, Hundborg HH, Jacobsen BA, et al: Disease activity in pregnant women with Crohn's disease and birth outcomes: a regional Danish cohort study. Am J Gastroenterol 102:1947, 2007
Nurmi M, Rautava P, Gissler M, et al: Recurrence patterns of hyperemesis gravidarum. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(5):469.e1, 2018
O'Grady NP, Alexander M, Burns L: Guidelines for prevention of intravascular catheter-related infections. Clin Infect Dis 52(9):e162, 2011
Oliveira LG, Capp SM, You WB, et al: Ondansetron compared with doxylamine and pyridoxine for treatment of nausea in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 124(4):735, 2014
O'Mahony S: Endoscopy in pregnancy. Best Pract Res Clin Gastroenterol 21:893, 2007
Oron G, Yogev Y, Shkolnik S, et al: Inflammatory bowel disease: risk factors for adverse pregnancy outcome and the impact of maternal weight gain. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(112):2256, 2012

Oto A, Ernst R, Ghulmiyyah L, et al: The role of MR cholangiopancreatography in the evaluation of pregnant patients with acute pancreaticobiliary disease. Br J Radiol 82(976):279, 2009
Oudman E, Wijnia JW, Oey M, et al: Wernicke's encephalopathy in hyperemesis gravidarum: a systematic review. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 236:84, 2019
Palacios-Marqués A, Delgado-Garcia S, Martín-Bayón T, et al: Wernicke's encephalopathy induced by hyperemesis gravidarum. BMJ Case Rep June 8, 2012
Pasternak B, Svanström M, Henrik A: Ondansetron in pregnancy and risk of adverse fetal outcomes. N Engl J Med 368:814, 2013
Pates JA, Avendanio TC, Zaretsky MV, et al: The appendix in pregnancy: confirming historical observations with a contemporary modality. Obstet Gynecol 114(4):805, 2009
Pearl J, Price R, Tonkin AE, et al: SAGES guidelines for the use of laparoscopy during pregnancy. Surg Endosc 31(10):3767, 2017
Pedrosa I, Lafornara M, Pandharipande PV, et al: Pregnant patients suspected of having acute appendicitis: effect of MR imaging on negative laparotomy rate and appendiceal perforation rate. Radiology 250(3):749, 2009
Peled Y, Melamed N, Hiersch L, et al: The impact of total parenteral nutrition support on pregnancy outcome in women with hyperemesis gravidarum. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 27(11):1146, 2014
Perdue PW, Johnson HW Jr, Stafford PW: Intestinal obstruction complicating pregnancy. Am J Surg 164:384, 1992
Porter H, Seeho S: Obstructed ileostomy in the third trimester of pregnancy due to compression from the gravid uterus: diagnosis and management. BMJ Case Rep August 19, 2014
Poursharif B, Korst LM, Macgibbon KW, et al: Elective pregnancy termination in a large cohort of women with hyperemesis gravidarum. Contraception 76:451, 2007
Raman SS, Osuagwu FC, Kadell B, et al: Effect of CT on false positive diagnosis of appendicitis and perforation. N Engl J Med 358:972, 2008
Rawlings C: Management of postcaesarian Ogilvie's syndrome and their subsequent outcomes. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 50(6):573, 2010
Reddy D, Murphy SJ, Kane SV, et al: Relapses of inflammatory bowel disease during pregnancy: in-hospital management and birth outcomes. Am J Gastroenterol 103:1203, 2008
Reedy MB, Kallen B, Kuehl TJ: Laparoscopy during pregnancy: a study of five fetal outcome parameters with use of the Swedish Health Registry. Am J Obstet Gynecol 177:673, 1997
Reeves M, Frizelle F, Wakeman C, et al: Acute colonic pseudo-obstruction in pregnancy. ANZ J Surg 85(10):728, 2015
Riddle MS, DuPont HL, Connor BA: ACG Clinical Guideline: Diagnosis, Treatment, and Prevention of Acute Diarrheal Infections in Adults. Am J Gastroenterol 111(5):602, 2016
Rigler LG, Eneboe JB: Incidence of hiatus hernia in pregnant women and its significance. J Thorac Surg 4:262, 1935
Riis L, Vind I, Politi P, et al: Does pregnancy change the disease course? A study in a European cohort of patients with inflammatory bowel disease. Am J Gastroenterol 101:1539, 2006
Robinson D, Walker R, Adams SC, et al: American Society for Parenteral and Enteral Nutrition (ASPEN) Definition of Terms, Style, and Conventions Used in ASPEN Board of Directors–Approved Documents. 2018. Available at: http://www.nutritioncare.org/Guidelines_and_Clinical_Resources/Clinical_Practice_Library/Special_Reports/. Accessed April 10, 2020
Rocha-Castro J, Kronbauer K, Dalle J, et al: Characteristics of bacterial acute diarrhea among women. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 132(3):302, 2016
Rosen C, Czuzoj-Shulman N, Mishkin DS, et al: Management and outcomes of peptic ulcer disease in pregnancy. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(9):1368, 2021
Rubin DT, Ananthakrishnan AN, Siegel CA, et al: ACG Clinical Guideline: ulcerative colitis in adults. Am J Gastroenterol. 2019 Mar;114(3):384
Ruiter-Ligeti J, Vincent S, Czuzoj-Shulman N, et al: Risk factors, incidence, and morbidity associated with obstetric clostridium difficile infection. Obstet Gynecol 131(2):387, 2018
Russo-Stieglitz KE, Levine AB, Wagner BA, et al: Pregnancy outcome in patients requiring parenteral nutrition. J Matern Fetal Med 8:164, 1999
Saeedi BJ, Morison DG, Kraft CS, et al: Fecal microbiota transplant for clostridium difficile infection in a pregnant patient. Obstet Gynecol 129(3):507, 2017
Saha S, Loranger D, Pricolo V, et al: Feeding jejunostomy for the treatment of severe hyperemesis gravidarum: a case series. J Parenter Enteral Nutr 33(5):529, 2009
Sakai M, Yoneda S, Sasaki Y, et al: Maternal total parenteral nutrition and fetal subdural hematoma. Obstet Gynecol 101:1142, 2003
Savas N: Gastrointestinal endoscopy in pregnancy. World J Gastroenterol 20(41):15241, 2014
Schrag SP, Sharma R, Jaik NP, et al: Complications related to percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG) tubes: a comprehensive clinical review. J Gastrointest Liver Dis 16:407, 2007
Schwentner L, Wulff C, Kreienberg R, et al: Exacerbation of a maternal hiatus hernia in early pregnancy presenting with symptoms of hyperemesis gravidarum: case report and review of the literature. Arch Gynecol Obstet 283(3):409, 2011
Sekar H, Rajesh Thamaran N, Stoker D, et al: Should the laparoscopic approach be the norm for appendicectomy in the third trimester of pregnancy? BMJ Case Rep 12:e228192, 2019
Senturk MB, Yildiz G, Yildiz P, et al: The relationship between hyperemesis gravidarum and maternal psychiatric well-being during and after pregnancy: controlled study. J Matern Fetal neonatal Med 30(11):1314, 2017
Serra AE, Fong A, Chung H: A gut-wrenching feeling: pregnancy complicated by massive ventral hernia with bowel obstruction. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(1):79, 2014
Shand AW, Chen JS, Selby W, et al: Inflammatory bowel disease in pregnancy: a population-based study of prevalence and pregnancy outcomes. BJOG 123(11):1862, 2016
Sharifah H, Naidu A, Vimal K: Diaphragmatic hernia: an unusual cause of postpartum collapse. BJOG 110:701, 2003
Shui LH, Rafi J, Corder A, et al: Mid-gut volvulus and mesenteric vessel thrombosis in pregnancy: case report and literature review. Arch Gynecol Obstet 283 (Suppl 1):39, 2011
Song LMK, Topazian M: Gastrointestinal endoscopy. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018
Soper NJ: SAGES' guidelines for diagnosis, treatment, and use of laparoscopy for surgical problems during pregnancy. Surg Endosc 25:3477, 2011
Spiliopoulos D, Spiliopoulos M, Awala A: Esophageal achalasia: an uncommon complication during pregnancy treated conservatively. Case Rep Obstet Gynecol 2013(639698):1, 2013
Sridharan K, Sivaramakrishnan G: Interventions for treating hyperemesis gravidarum: a network meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(8):1405, 2020
Stephens A, Patel K, Rao A, et al: Recurrent Wernicke's encephalopathy in pregnancy: a case report. Nutr Neurosci 22(7):528, 2019
Stern MD, Kopylov U Ben-Horin S, et al: Magnetic resonance enterography in pregnant women with Crohn's disease: case series and literature review. BMC Gastroenterol 14:146, 2014
Stokke G, Gjelsvik BL, Flaatten KT, et al: Hyperemesis gravidarum, nutritional treatment by nasogastric tube feeding: a 10-year retrospective cohort study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 94(4):359, 2015
Sun S, Qiu X, Zhou J: Clinical analysis of 65 cases of hyperemesis gravidarum with gestational transient thyrotoxicosis. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 40 (6):1567, 2014
Swallow BL, Lindow SW, Masson EA, et al: Psychological health in early pregnancy: relationship with nausea and vomiting. J Obstet Gynaecol 24:28, 2004
Swartzlander TK, Carlan SJ, Locksmith G, et al: Sonographic confirmation of the correct placement of a nasoenteral tube in a woman with hyperemesis gravidarum: case report. J Clin Ultrasound 41(Suppl 1):18, 2013
Takahashi K, Funayama Y, Fukushima K, et al: Pregnancy and delivery in patients with enterostomy due to anorectal complications from Crohn's disease. Int J Colorectal Dis 22:313, 2007
Talan DA, Saltzman DJ, DeUgarte DA, et al: Methods of conservative antibiotic treatment of acute uncomplicated appendicitis: a systematic review. J Trauma Acute Care Surg 86(4):722, 2019
Tan PC, Norazilah MJ, Omar SZ: Dextrose saline compared with normal saline rehydration of hyperemesis gravidarum: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 121(2 Pt1):291, 2013
Theilen LH, Mellnick VM, Longman RE, et al: Utility of magnetic resonance imaging for suspected appendicitis in pregnant women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 12(3):345, 2015
Theilen LH, Mellnick VN, Shanks AL, et al: Acute appendicitis in pregnancy: predictive clinical factors and pregnancy outcomes. Am J Perinatol 34(6):523, 2017
Ueberrueck T, Koch A, Meyer L, et al: Ninety-four appendectomies for suspected acute appendicitis during pregnancy. World J Surg 28:508, 2004
Unal A, Sayherman SE, Ozel L, et al: Acute abdomen in pregnancy requiring surgical management: a 20-case series. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 159(1):87, 2011
Vaknin Z, Halperin R, Schneider D, et al: Hyperemesis gravidarum and nonspecific abnormal EEG findings. J Reprod Med 51:623, 2006
Vandraas KF, Vikanes AV, Vangen S, et al: Hyperemesis gravidarum and birth outcomes-a population-based cohort study of 2.2 million births in the Norwegian Birth Registry. BJOG 120(13):1654, 2013

Verberg MF, Gillott JD, Fardan NA, et al: Hyperemesis gravidarum, a literature review. Hum Reprod Update 11:527, 2005

Vikanes AV, Stoer NC, Magnus P, et al: Hyperemesis gravidarum and pregnancy outcomes in the Norwegian mother and child cohort—a cohort study. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 13:169, 2013

Vogel T, Wrobel RM, Graupner O, et al: Esophageal achalasia and pregnancy: own observations in 43 patients and a review of the literature. Arch Gynecol Obstet 298(3):511, 2018

Walch A, Duke M, Autry T, et al: Profound hypokalaemia resulting in maternal cardiac arrest: a catastrophic complication of hyperemesis gravidarum? Case Rep Obstet Gynecol 2018:4687587, 2018

Walker HG, Al Samaraee A, Mills SJ, et al: Laparoscopic appendicectomy in pregnancy: a systematic review of the published evidence. Int J Surg 12(11):1235, 2014

Wax JR, Pinette MG, Cartin A: Roux-en-Y gastric bypass-associated bowel obstruction complicating pregnancy—an obstetrician's map to the clinical minefield. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208(4):265, 2013

Wei PL, Keller JJ, Liang HH, et al: Acute appendicitis and adverse pregnancy outcomes: a nationwide population-based study. J Gastrointest Surg 16(6):1204, 2012

Weyermann M, Brenner H, Adler G, et al: *Helicobacter pylori* infection and the occurrence and severity of gastrointestinal symptoms during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:526, 2003

Whang B: Thoracic surgery in the pregnant patient. Thorac Surg Clin 28(1):1, 2018

White S, Byrne J, McIntire DD, et al: Hyperemesis gravidarum: can factors predict risk of readmission? Abstract No. 21L. Presented at 2018 American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Annual Clinical and Scientific Meeting. April 27–30, 2018

Wilasrusmee C Sukrat B, McEvoy M, et al: Systematic review and meta-analysis of safety laparoscopic versus open appendectomy for suspected appendicitis in pregnancy. Br J Surg 99(11):1470, 2012

Won RP, Friedlander S, Lee SL: Management and outcomes of appendectomy during pregnancy. Am Surg 83(10):1103, 2017

Wong CS, Jelacic S, Habeeb RL, et al: The risk of the hemolytic-uremic syndrome after antibiotic treatment of *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 infections. N Engl J Med 342(26):1930, 2000

Woolfson K, Cohen Z, McLeod RS: Crohn's disease and pregnancy. Dis Colon Rectum 33:869, 1990

Worthington P, Balint J, Bechtold M, et al: When is parenteral nutrition appropriate? JPEN J Parenter Enteral Nutr 41(3):324, 2017

Ye GY, Li N, Chen YB, et al: Clostridium difficile carriage in healthy pregnant women in China. Anaerobe 37:54, 2016

Ye P, Zhao N, Shu J, et al: Laparoscopy versus open surgery for adnexal masses in pregnancy: a meta-analytic review. Arch Gynecol Obstet 299(3):625, 2019

Yost NP, McIntire DD, Wians FH Jr, et al: A randomized, placebo-controlled trial of corticosteroids for hyperemesis due to pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 102:1250, 2003

Zara G, Codemo V, Palmieri A, et al: Neurological complications in hyperemesis gravidarum. Neurol Sci 33(1):133, 2012

CHAPTER 58

Hepatic, Biliary, and Pancreatic Disorders

Disorders of the liver, gallbladder, and pancreas together constitute a formidable list of complications that may arise in pregnancy. Some stem from preexisting conditions, and some are unique to gestation. The relationships of several of these with pregnancy can be intriguing and challenging.

HEPATIC DISORDERS

Liver diseases complicating pregnancy are placed into three general categories. The first includes those specific to pregnancy and resolve either spontaneously or following delivery. Hyperemesis gravidarum, intrahepatic cholestasis, acute fatty liver, and *HELLP syndrome*—which is characterized by hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, and low platelet counts, are examples. The second category involves acute hepatic disorders that are coincidental to pregnancy, such as acute viral hepatitis. Last are chronic liver diseases that predate pregnancy, such as chronic viral or autoimmune hepatitis, cirrhosis, or esophageal varices.

Laboratory testing can aid differentiation of these disorders. Hepatic dysfunction from hyperemesis gravidarum may manifest as mildly elevated serum bilirubin and transaminase levels (Chap. 57, p. 1014). Others listed in Table 58-1 can show more marked findings. One example, severe preeclampsia syndrome, discussed in Chapter 40 (p. 689), can be further complicated by the HELLP syndrome, which can rarely cause liver failure (Casey, 2020).

Importantly, several normal pregnancy-induced physiological changes induce appreciable liver-related clinical and laboratory manifestations (Chap. 4, p. 70 and Appendix, p. 1229). Abnormalities such as increased serum alkaline phosphatase levels, palmar erythema, and spider angiomas are common during normal pregnancy. In addition, higher levels of estrogen, progesterone, and other pregnancy hormones alter expression of the cytochrome P450 system. For example, hepatic CYP1A2 expression declines, but that of CYP2D6 and CYP3A4 rises. The latter pair possibly affects metabolism of commonly used therapeutic agents in pregnancy (Dallmann, 2018; Ornoy, 2019). Cytochrome enzymes are also expressed in the placenta. The net effect is complex and likely influenced by gestational age and organ of expression (Isoherranen, 2013). Despite these functional changes, no major hepatic histological changes are induced by normal pregnancy.

Acute Liver Failure in Pregnancy

Fortunately, liver failure is uncommon during pregnancy. Of the various causes, drug-induced liver injury (DILI) is probably the most frequent non-pregnancy-related etiology (Hoofnagle, 2019). Acetaminophen toxicity is the most prevalent cause in the United States (Lee, 2018). Other sources of liver failure include acute fatty liver of pregnancy (AFLP), fulminant viral hepatitis, environmental toxins, autoimmune hepatitis, shock liver, and alternative medicines. In a highly selective study of 70 referred women with a hepatic encephalopathy, half were caused by AFLP and half were associated with HELLP syndrome (Casey, 2020).

The treatment of acute liver failure in pregnancy mirrors that for nonpregnant individuals. Therapy targets the underlying etiology, and a team of obstetricians, maternal-fetal medicine and critical care specialists, hepatologists, and transplant surgeons is

TABLE 58-1. Clinical Findings with Liver Diseases in Pregnancy

Diagnosis	Onset	Symptoms	AST (U/L)	Bili (mg%)	Cr (mg%)	Hematological	Comments
Hyperemesis gravidarum	Early	N&V	<300	1–4	NL or elevated (prerenal)	NL	Common, infant vitamin K deficiency, Wernicke encephalopathy, Boerhaave syndrome
ICP	Late	Pruritus ± jaundice	<200	1–5	NL	NL	Common (0.5–2%), bile acids (>10 μmol/L), normal hepatic function
AFLP	Late	N&V (70%), HTN/ preeclampsia, RUQ pain	145–565	2–8	>0.9	Thrombocytopenia, coagulopathy ± DIC, nucleated red cells, hemolysis, echinocytosis	Low glucose, cholesterol <220 mg/dL, fibrinogen <300 mg/dL
HELLP	Late	Preeclampsia, RUQ pain	75–250 (initial)	1–2	<1.0	Thrombocytopenia, mild hemolysis	Common (7–10% of preeclampsia), normal hepatic function
Hepatitis							
Viral	Variable, chronic, episodic	Jaundice, RUQ pain, fatigue	400–5000	20	NL	Coagulopathy if cirrhotic, thrombocytopenia	Common (1–3%), serological tests for hepatitis A, B, C, E
Autoimmune	Variable, chronic, episodic	Jaundice, RUQ pain, fatigue	100–1000	3–10	NL	Coagulopathy if cirrhotic, thrombocytopenia	Uncommon, ANA+, anti-LKM1, anti–smooth muscle
NAFLD	Variable, chronic, episodic	Obese, diabetes, ± RUQ pain	NL to slightly elevated	NL	NL	NL	Common (6–8%), sonographic findings, MR imaging/ CT findings, ± metabolic syndrome, NASH, cirrhosis

AFLP = acute fatty liver of pregnancy; ANA = antinuclear antibodies; AST = aspartate transaminase; Bili = bilirubin; BP = blood pressure; Cr = creatinine; CT = computed tomography; DIC = disseminated intravascular coagulation; HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, low platelets; HTN = hypertension; ICP = intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy; LKM1 = liver, kidney microsome 1; MR = magnetic resonance; NAFLD = nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; NASH = nonalcoholic steatohepatitis; NL = normal; N&V = nausea and vomiting; RUQ = right upper quadrant.

assembled. Laboratory studies initially include serum levels of transaminases, bilirubin, amylase, lipase, electrolytes, creatinine, albumin, fibrinogen, lactate, and total cholesterol; complete blood count; and coagulation studies (Bacak, 2016). Etiology-targeted testing is described fully in later sections but broadly includes viral and autoimmune serological assays and testing for acetaminophen, iron, and copper toxicity. Computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance (MR) imaging may be needed to investigate hepatic structure. For a pregnancy-related etiology, delivery is undertaken. Because of comorbid coagulopathy, vaginal delivery is preferable if it can be achieved expeditiously and fetal condition allows. Hepatotoxic agents are avoided, coagulopathy is corrected, and monitoring for cerebral edema and increased intracranial pressure is necessary (Brown, 2018). Liver transplantation is problematic during pregnancy, but delivery before transplantation is considered if necessary (Bacak, 2016).

Intrahepatic Cholestasis of Pregnancy

Characterized by pruritus, jaundice, or both, this condition has been called recurrent jaundice of pregnancy, cholestatic hepatosis, and icterus gravidarum. Intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy (ICP) is more common in multifetal pregnancy, and genetic influences are significant (Sticova, 2018). Because of this, its incidence varies by population. In North America, the overall incidence approximates 1 case in 500 to 1000 pregnancies, but its rate nears 5.6 percent among pregnant Latina women in Los Angeles (Lee, 2006). Historically, indigenous women from Chile and Bolivia also have a relatively high incidence of ICP. For unknown reasons, this incidence has decreased since the 1970s and is now less than 2 percent (Reyes, 2016). In Sweden, China, and Israel, the incidence varies from 0.25 to 1.5 percent (Luo, 2015).

Pathogenesis

The cause of ICP is unclear, but changes in various sex steroid hormone levels are implicated. In one study, women treated with vaginal progesterone for preterm labor prophylaxis showed a fourfold increase in the ICP rate (Zipori, 2020). Current research focuses on the numerous mutations in the many genes that control hepatocellular transport systems. One example is mutations of the *ABCB4* gene, which encodes multidrug resistance protein 3 (MDR3) associated with *progressive familial intrahepatic cholestasis.* Another is error in the *ABCB11* gene, which encodes a bile-salt export pump (Reichert, 2018). Other potential gene products are the farnesoid X receptor and transporting ATPase encoded by *ATP8B1* (Abu-Hayyeh, 2016; Sticova, 2018). The latter predisposes to drug-induced cholestasis. In this regard, we have encountered impressive cholestatic jaundice in gravidas taking azathioprine following renal transplantation.

Following the inciting cause(s), bile acids are incompletely cleared and accumulate in plasma. Hyperbilirubinemia results from retention of conjugated pigment, but total plasma concentrations rarely exceed 4 to 5 mg/dL. Alkaline phosphatase levels are usually elevated even more than for normal pregnancy. Serum transaminase levels are normal to moderately elevated but seldom exceed 200 U/L (see Table 58-1). Liver biopsy shows mild cholestasis with bile plugs in the hepatocytes and canaliculi of the centrilobular regions. Inflammation or necrosis is absent. These changes disappear after delivery but often recur in subsequent pregnancies or with estrogen-containing contraceptives.

Clinical Presentation

Generalized pruritus that shows predilection for the palms and soles usually develops in late pregnancy or occasionally earlier. Constitutional symptoms are absent, and skin changes are limited to excoriations from scratching.

Serum transaminase and bile acid levels are measured in women with suspected ICP. As a threshold for comparison, total serum bile acid levels typically remain <10 μmol/L throughout normal pregnancy (Egan, 2012). Elevated total serum bile acid or transaminase levels plus pruritus supports an ICP diagnosis. Biochemical tests may be abnormal at presentation or may follow initial pruritus after several weeks. Moreover, a rise in transaminase levels may precede an increase in serum bile acid levels (Wood, 2018b). Approximately 10 percent of women have concurrent jaundice.

With normal liver enzyme levels or with specific skin findings, pruritus may instead reflect other dermatological disorders (Chap. 65, p. 1155). Sonography may be warranted to exclude cholelithiasis and biliary obstruction (p. 1042). Moreover, *acute viral hepatitis* is an unlikely diagnosis because of the usually low serum transaminase levels seen with ICP. Conversely, underlying *chronic hepatitis C* is associated with a significantly greater risk of developing ICP, which may be as much as 20-fold higher (Marschall, 2013).

Management

Pruritus may be troublesome and is thought to result from elevated serum bile salt concentrations. Antihistamines and topical emollients usually provide some relief. Cholestyramine is reported to be effective, but this compound also lowers absorption of fat-soluble vitamins. This may lead to vitamin K deficiency and fetal coagulopathy. Subsequent fetal intracranial hemorrhage and stillbirth have been reported (Matos, 1997).

Currently, the most popular treatment is with ursodeoxycholic acid (Actigall), which relieves pruritus and reduces serum levels of bile salts and liver enzymes (Bacq, 2012; Parízek, 2016). It is available as 300-mg capsules. Oral dosing is 10 to 15 mg/kg maternal body weight daily, which is divided into two or three doses (Tran, 2016). In a large randomized trial, the maternal "itch score" was not significantly lower with ursodeoxycholic acid compared with placebo (Chappell, 2019). From our experiences at Parkland Hospital, however, pruritus typically improves after 2 to 3 weeks of ursodeoxycholic acid therapy (Yule, 2021). Such treatment has also been reported to lower risks for stillbirth and fetal distress and is discussed subsequently.

Other described treatments include therapeutic plasma exchange and rifampin (Liu, 2018; Ovadia, 2018). A randomized trial comparing ursodeoxycholic acid and rifampicin is underway (Australian New Zealand Clinical Trials Registry, 2019).

Perinatal Outcomes

Early reports describe excessive adverse fetal outcomes in women with ICP. However, data from the past two decades are ambiguous concerning increased perinatal mortality rates and whether close fetal surveillance is preventive. Sheiner and coworkers (2006) described no differences in perinatal outcomes in 376 affected pregnancies compared with their overall obstetrical population. However, rates of labor induction and cesarean delivery in affected women were significantly higher. In a study of 5477 women with ICP from a database of 1.2 million births, neonates had a lower 5-minute Apgar score, but the stillbirth rate was not greater (Wikström Shemer, 2013). The latter rate was thought to reflect a higher labor induction rate, which at the time of the study was recommended to avoid stillbirth.

In some studies, complications developed more frequently in women with higher total bile acid levels (Di Mascio, 2019; Herrera, 2018; Ovadia, 2019). These studies described stillbirths

despite normal findings during antenatal testing. One study of 693 Swedish women found a greater perinatal mortality rate in women with bile acids levels >40 μmol/L (Glantz, 2004). In others, an increased stillbirth risk was noted in women whose serum bile acid levels were >100 μmol/L (Brouwers, 2015; Chappell, 2019, Kawakita, 2015). Chappell and associates (2019) also found that ursodeoxycholic acid treatment did not lower perinatal death rates. The use of antenatal fetal testing was not described. In a metaanalysis of 5557 women with ICP, Ovadia and colleagues (2019) concluded that serum bile acid levels >100 μmol/L were associated with stillbirth.

Other adverse perinatal outcomes also have been described. Brouwers and colleagues (2015) found higher rates of spontaneous preterm birth (19 percent) and meconium-stained amniotic fluid (48 percent), despite active management leading to earlier delivery. Novel associations of ICP with preeclampsia, gestational diabetes, and large for gestational age also are reported (Wikström Shemer, 2013).

In summary, management is directed at early delivery to mitigate the relatively uncommon incidence of fetal death. Treatment with ursodeoxycholic acid does not always improve maternal symptoms or protect against stillbirth. It is problematic that antenatal testing does not reliably forecast impending fetal death. We do not routinely employ these for uncomplicated ICP. The precise gestational age for labor induction is uncertain, but many authors recommend 37 weeks' gestation (Wood, 2018b). At Parkland Hospital, we routinely induce labor at 38 weeks if symptoms worsen or if serum bile acid levels exceed 40 μmol/L.

Fetal Effects of Bile Acids

As noted, evidence supports that maternal serum bile acid levels >100 μmol/L contribute to fetal death and meconium passage. Fetal death may be related to the cardiotoxicity of bile acids, which causes cardiac dysfunction and presumably cardiac arrest. In an ex-vivo preparation of cardiac myocytes, cholic acid lowered beating rates in a dose-dependent fashion, while elevating intracellular calcium concentration (Gao, 2014). Prolongation of the fetal cardiac PR interval and successful reversal with ursodeoxycholic acid has been described (Rodríguez, 2018; Strehlow, 2010). Last, Ozel and coworkers (2018) demonstrated impaired global ventricular function in fetuses of pregnancies complicated by ICP.

■ Acute Fatty Liver of Pregnancy

The most frequent cause of acute liver failure during pregnancy is acute fatty liver—also called *acute fatty metamorphosis* or *acute yellow atrophy.* It is characterized by accumulation of microvesicular fat that literally "crowds out" normal hepatocytic function (Fig. 58-1). Grossly, the liver is small, soft, yellow, and greasy. In its worst form, the incidence approximates 1 case per 10,000 births (Nelson, 2013). AFLP recurring in subsequent pregnancy is rare (Usta, 1994).

Etiopathogenesis

Although the underlying cause remains unclear, many cases of AFLP are associated with recessively inherited mitochondrial

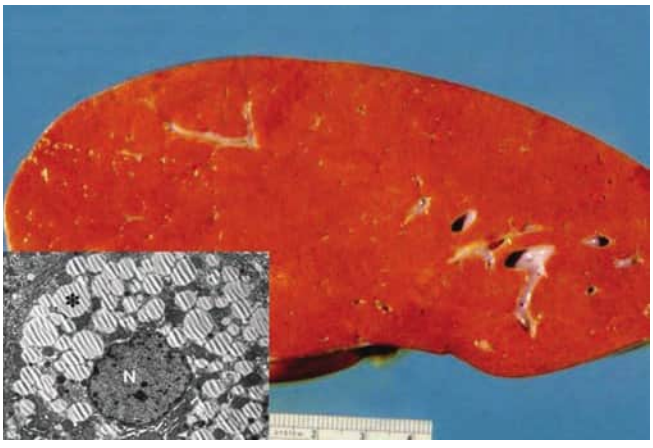


FIGURE 58-1 Acute fatty liver of pregnancy. Cross section of the liver from a woman who died as the result of pulmonary aspiration and respiratory failure. The liver has a greasy yellow appearance. Inset: Electron photomicrograph of a swollen hepatocyte containing numerous microvesicular fat droplets (*). The nucleus (*N*) remains centered within the cell in contrast to the case with macrovesicular fat deposition. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Don Wheeler.)

abnormalities of fatty acid oxidation. Several mutations for the mitochondrial trifunctional protein enzyme complex that catalyzes the last oxidative steps in the pathway are implicated. The most common are the *G1528C* and *E474Q* missense mutations of the gene on chromosome 2 that codes for long-chain-3-hydroxyacyl-CoA dehydrogenase (LCHAD) (Liu, 2017a). Mutations for medium-chain acyl-CoA dehydrogenase (MCAD) and for carnitine palmitoyltransferase 1 (CPT1) deficiency are others. These are similar to mutations in children with Reye-like syndromes.

Sims and colleagues (1995) observed that some *homozygous* LCHAD-deficient children with Reye-like syndromes had *heterozygous* mothers with AFLP. This was also seen in women with a compound heterozygous fetus. Although some conclude that *only* heterozygous LCHAD-deficient mothers are at risk for ALFP when their fetus is homozygous, this is not always true (Liu, 2017a). An association between fatty acid β-oxidation enzyme defects and severe preeclampsia, especially in women with HELLP syndrome, is also controversial (Chap. 40, p. 693). Most observations derive from retrospective study of mothers with a child who later developed Reye-like syndrome. One case-control study compared 50 mothers of children with a fatty acid oxidation defect and 1250 mothers of matched control infants (Browning, 2006). During their pregnancy, 12 percent of mothers with an affected child developed HELLP syndrome and 4 percent developed AFLP. Comparatively, only 0.9 percent of control women developed liver problems. Despite these findings, the clinical, biochemical, and histopathological findings are sufficiently disparate and support that severe preeclampsia, with or without HELLP syndrome, and AFLP are distinct syndromes (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2012; Byrne, 2020).

Clinical Findings

AFLP almost always manifests in the last trimester and rarely midpregnancy (Wong, 2020). From Parkland Hospital,

TABLE 58-2. Comparison of Clinical Findings at the Time of Admission in 67 Women with Acute Fatty Liver of Pregnancy and 67 with HELLP Syndrome

Factor	AFLP	HELLP	*p* Value
Clinical findings (%)			
Hypertension	62	94	<0.001
Abdominal pain	34	46	0.18
Nausea/vomiting	63	19	<0.001
Laboratory values			
AST (u/L)	278 [146, 564]	135 [77, 250]	<0.001
Creatinine (mg/dL)	1.6 [1, 2]	0.6 [1, 1]	<0.001
Fibrinogen (mg/dL)	200 [95, 298]	455 [367, 519]	<0.001
Bilirubin (mg/dL)	2.9 [1, 6]	0.6 [0, 1]	<0.001
Platelets (per μL)	163,000 [121, 205]	115,000 [78, 150]	<0.001
LDH (u/L)	464 [361, 749]	552 [439, 759]	0.19
Glucose (mg/dL)	88 [68, 102]	98 [83, 114]	0.011

AFLP = acute fatty liver of pregnancy; AST = aspartate transaminase; HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets; LDH = lactic acid dehydrogenase.
Data from Byrne, 2020; Nelson, 2020.

Nelson and colleagues (2013) described 51 women with AFLP at a mean gestational age of 37 weeks (range 31.7 to 40.9 weeks). Approximately 41 percent were nulliparous and 20 percent were delivered at 34 weeks' gestation or earlier. Women with a multifetal gestation account for 20 percent of cases (Vigil-De Gracia, 2011).

AFLP has a broad spectrum of clinical features and severity, and symptoms usually advance over several days. Persistent nausea and vomiting are major complaints. Degrees of malaise, anorexia, epigastric pain, and progressive jaundice vary. In almost all severe cases, acute liver injury causes profound endothelial cell activation, capillary leakage, and hemoconcentration; acute kidney injury; ascites; and sometimes pulmonary permeability edema (Bernal, 2013). Half of affected women have hypertension, proteinuria, and edema, alone or in combination. Notably, these signs also suggest preeclampsia.

As shown in Tables 58-1 and 58-2, degrees of moderate to severe liver dysfunction are manifest by hypofibrinogenemia, hypocholesterolemia, and prolonged clotting times. Serum bilirubin levels usually are <10 mg/dL, and serum transaminase levels are modestly elevated and usually <1000 U/L. An AFLP diagnosis is arrived at by clinical and laboratory findings. Biopsy is unnecessary. The Swansea criteria proposed by Ch'ng and associates (2002) as a screening tool and predictor of severity shows suitable sensitivity (Table 58-3) (Morton, 2018; Wang, 2017).

Hemolysis can be severe and is thought to stem from effects of hypocholesterolemia on erythrocyte membranes (Cunningham, 1985). Laboratory evidence includes leukocytosis, nucleated red cells, mild to moderate thrombocytopenia, and increased serum levels of lactic acid dehydrogenase (LDH) or decreased haptoglobin levels. The peripheral blood smear demonstrates echinocytosis. However, the hematocrit is often high or within the normal range because of hemoconcentration. With severe hemoconcentration, uteroplacental perfusion is reduced and this, along with maternal acidosis, can cause fetal death. Likewise, maternal and fetal acidemia are associated with a high incidence of fetal jeopardy and a concordantly high cesarean delivery rate.

The degree of clotting dysfunction varies and can be potentially life threatening, especially if cesarean delivery is undertaken. Coagulopathy is caused by diminished hepatic procoagulant synthesis, although some evidence supports

TABLE 58-3. Swansea Criteria for AFLP Diagnosis[a]

Clinical features
Vomiting
Abdominal pain
Encephalopathy
Polydipsia/polyuria

Laboratory features

Bilirubin >0.8 mg/dL	AKI or Cr >1.7 mg/dL
Glucose <72 mg/dL	Ammonia >47 μmol/L
WBC >11,000/μL	Coagulopathy or PT >14 s
AST or ALT >42U/L	Urea >340 μmol/L

Ultrasound features
Ascites or echogenic liver

Histologic features
Microvesicular steatosis

[a]The presence of six or more features without another explanation for them supports a diagnosis of AFLP.
AFLP = acute fatty liver of pregnancy; AKI = acute kidney injury; ALT = alanine transaminase; AST = aspartate transaminase; PT = protime; WBC = white blood cell count.

increased consumption from disseminated intravascular coagulopathy. As shown in Table 58-2, hypofibrinogenemia can be profound. Of 51 women cared for at Parkland Hospital, almost one third had a plasma fibrinogen level nadir below 100 mg/dL (Nelson, 2014). Elevated levels of serum D-dimers or fibrin-split products also indicate an element of consumptive coagulopathy (Lisman, 2017). Although usually modest, occasionally thrombocytopenia is marked. Among the women from Parkland Hospital, 20 percent had platelet counts <100,000/μL, and 10 percent had platelet counts <50,000/μL (Byrne, 2020).

Because liver dysfunction and kidney injury are central to AFLP, Byrne and colleagues (2020) have proposed the acronym FaCCT to differentiate AFLP from HELLP syndrome using levels of commonly available laboratory analytes: fibrinogen (<300 mg/dL) and cholesterol (<220 mg/dL), creatinine (>0.9 mg/dL), and total bilirubin (>1 mg/dL). To emphasize, the clinical features and sequelae of AFLP are attributed to liver dysfunction, whereas in HELLP syndrome the procoagulant production and function of the liver appears relatively preserved.

AFLP typically continues to worsen after diagnosis. Hypoglycemia is common, and hepatic encephalopathy, severe coagulopathy, and some degree of renal failure each develop in approximately half of women. Delivery fortunately arrests liver function deterioration, but recovery may require substantial supportive care.

Various liver imaging techniques can help confirm the diagnosis, but none is particularly reliable (Liu, 2017a). In a prospective evaluation of the Swansea criteria, only a quarter of women with AFLP had classic sonographic findings that included maternal ascites or an echogenic hepatic appearance (Knight, 2008). Although Châtel and coworkers (2016) described greater liver fat detected by MR imaging, this has not been our experience.

We have encountered several women with an underdeveloped form of AFLP. Clinical involvement is relatively minor and laboratory aberrations—usually only hemolysis and a decreased plasma fibrinogen level—herald the syndrome. Thus, the spectrum of liver involvement can include unnoticed milder cases, findings that are instead attributed to preeclampsia, or a severe form displaying overt hepatic failure and associated encephalopathy.

Management

Intensive supportive measures and sound obstetrical care are essential. Delivery of the fetus is necessary in the treatment of AFLP, and significant procrastination increases maternal and fetal risks. We prefer a trial of labor induction with close fetal surveillance. Although some recommend cesarean delivery to hasten hepatic healing, this raises maternal bleeding complication risks when coagulopathy is severe. Nonetheless, cesarean delivery is common due to fetal intolerance of labor, and rates approach 90 percent. In some cases, the fetus has already died when AFLP is diagnosed, and the delivery route is less problematic. To correct coagulopathy, transfusions with whole blood or packed red cells, along with fresh-frozen plasma, cryoprecipitate, and platelets, are usually necessary for surgery or vaginal laceration repair (Chap. 44, p. 772).

Hepatic function usually returns to normal within a week postpartum, but in the interim, intensive medical support may be required. Two associated conditions can be seen during this time. Perhaps a fourth of women have evidence for *transient diabetes insipidus.* This presumably stems from elevated vasopressinase concentrations caused by diminished hepatic production of its inactivating enzyme. Second, *acute pancreatitis* develops in approximately 20 percent.

With supportive care, recovery usually is complete. Maternal deaths are caused by liver failure, sepsis, hemorrhage, aspiration, renal failure, pancreatitis, and gastrointestinal bleeding. Two women died in the series from Parkland Hospital. One had associated encephalopathy and aspirated before intubation during transfer to our care. The other was a woman with profound liver failure and nonresponsive hypotension (Nelson, 2013). Other treatment measures have included plasma exchange and liver transplantation (Ringers, 2016; Wu, 2018).

Maternal and Perinatal Outcomes

Maternal mortality rates with AFLP approached 75 percent in the past, but the contemporaneous outlook is much better. From his review, Sibai (2007) cites an average mortality rate of 7 percent. He also cited a 70-percent preterm delivery rate and a 15-percent perinatal mortality rate, which in the past was nearly 90 percent. During the past four decades at Parkland Hospital, the maternal and perinatal mortality rates have been 4 percent and 12 percent, respectively (Byrne, 2020).

■ Viral Hepatitis

Most viral hepatitis syndromes are asymptomatic, and acute symptomatic infections are becoming less common in the United States. There are at least five distinct types of viruses causing hepatitis: A (HAV), B (HBV), D (HDV) caused by the hepatitis B–associated delta agent, C (HCV), and E (HEV). The clinical presentation of acute infection is similar in all, and although the viruses themselves probably are not hepatotoxic, the immunological response to them causes hepatocellular necrosis (Dienstag, 2018a,b). Several other viral agents can infect the liver, and two examples are cytomegalovirus and herpes simplex virus (Calix, 2020; McCormack, 2019).

Acute infections are most often subclinical and anicteric. When they are clinically apparent, nausea and vomiting, headache, and malaise may precede jaundice by 1 to 2 weeks. By the time jaundice develops, symptoms usually are improving. Low-grade fever is more common with hepatitis A. Serum transaminase levels vary, and their peaks do not correspond with disease severity. Peak levels that range from 400 to 4000 U/L are usually reached by the time jaundice develops (see Table 58-1). Serum bilirubin values typically continue to rise, and peak at 5 to 20 mg/dL, despite falling serum transaminase levels.

Severe features should prompt hospitalization. These include persistent nausea and vomiting, prolonged prothrombin time, low serum albumin level, hypoglycemia, high serum bilirubin level, or central nervous system symptoms. In most cases, clinical and biochemical recovery is complete within 1 to 2 months in all cases of hepatitis A, in most cases of hepatitis B, but in only a small proportion of those caused by hepatitis C.

Patient's feces, secretions, bedpans, and other articles in contact with the intestinal tract should be handled with glove-protected hands. In hospitals, extra precautions, such as double gloving during delivery and surgical procedures, are recommended. Due to significant exposure of health-care personnel to hepatitis B, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recommend active and passive vaccination, as described later (p. 1037) (Schillie, 2018). For hepatitis C, although direct antiviral regimens have been developed, there is no vaccine. Guidelines instead recommend postexposure serosurveillance only.

Acute hepatitis has a case-fatality rate of 0.1 percent. For those requiring hospitalization, it may reach 1 percent. Most fatalities are due to *fulminant hepatic necrosis*, which in later pregnancy may resemble AFLP. In these cases, hepatic encephalopathy is the usual presentation, and the mortality rate is 80 percent. Approximately half of patients with fulminant disease have hepatitis B infection, and co-infection with the delta agent is common.

Chronic hepatitis is more prevalent than acute infection. The CDC (2019) estimates that almost 3.5 million persons in the United States are living with chronic viral hepatitis. Although most are asymptomatic, approximately 20 percent develop cirrhosis within 10 to 20 years (Dienstag, 2018a). When present, symptoms are nonspecific and usually include fatigue. In some patients, cirrhosis with liver failure or bleeding varices may be the initial finding. Also, asymptomatic chronic viral hepatitis remains the leading cause of liver cancer and the most frequent reason for liver transplantation.

Chronic viral hepatitis is usually diagnosed serologically (Table 58-4). With persistently abnormal biochemical tests, liver biopsy usually discloses active inflammation, continuing necrosis, and fibrosis that may lead to cirrhosis. Chronic hepatitis is classified by cause; grade, defined by histological activity; and stage, which is the degree of progression (Dienstag, 2018a).

Most young women with chronic viral hepatitis either are asymptomatic or have only mild liver disease. For asymptomatic women, pregnancies are usually uncomplicated. With *symptomatic* chronic active hepatitis, pregnancy outcome depends primarily on disease severity, and especially on the presence of portal hypertension (p. 1040). The few women whom we have managed have done well, but their long-term prognosis is poor. Accordingly, they should be counseled regarding possible liver transplantation as well as contraceptive and sterilization options.

TABLE 58-4. Laboratory Features of Chronic Hepatitis

Disorders	Tests	Autoantibodies
Hepatitis B	HBsAg, IgG anti-HBc, HBeAg, HBV DNA	Uncommon
Hepatitis C	Anti-HCV, HCV RNA	Anti-LKM1
Hepatitis D	Anti-HDV, HDV RNA, HBsAg, IgG anti-HBc	Anti-LKM3
Autoimmune	ANA, anti-LKM1, anti-SLA, hyperglobulinemia	ANA, anti-LKM1, anti-SLA
Cryptogenic	All negative	None

HBc = hepatitis core; HBeAg = hepatitis B e antigen; HBsAg = hepatitis B surface antigen; LKM = liver, kidney microsome; SLA = soluble liver antigen.
Modified with permission from Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al: Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2018.

Hepatitis A

Vaccination has reduced the incidence of hepatitis A by 95 percent. In 2019, the rate was 6 cases per 100,000 individuals in the United States (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021). HAV is an RNA picornavirus and is transmitted by the fecal–oral route and usually by contaminated food or water ingestion. The incubation period approximates 4 weeks. Individuals shed virus in their feces, and during the relatively brief period of viremia, their blood also is infectious. Signs and symptoms are often nonspecific and usually mild, although jaundice develops in most patients. Symptoms usually last less than 2 months, but 10 to 15 percent of patients may remain symptomatic or relapse for up to 6 months (Dienstag, 2018b). Early serological testing identifies immunoglobulin M (IgM) anti-HAV antibody, which may persist for several months. During convalescence, IgG antibody predominates, and it provides subsequent immunity. Hepatitis A lacks a chronic stage.

Vaccination during childhood with inactivated hepatitis viral vaccine is more than 90-percent effective. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018) and the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices recommends HAV vaccination for high-risk adults (Freedman, 2020). This includes pregnant women at risk (Nelson, 2020). Candidates are persons with chronic liver disease, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, homelessness, or illegal drug use. Those working in group facilities with at-risk persons, conducting research with HAV, or traveling to or adopting from endemic areas also are included. High-risk countries are listed in the CDC (2020b) "Yellow Book"—Health Information for International Travel.

For an unvaccinated gravida who is recently exposed by close personal or sexual contact with a person with hepatitis A, passive immunization is provided by a 0.1-mL/kg dose of immune globulin. Concurrently, the first dose of the hepatitis A vaccine series is given in a separate arm (Nelson, 2020).

Pregnancy and Hepatitis A. Management of hepatitis A in pregnancy includes a balanced diet and diminished physical activity. Women with mild illness may be managed as outpatients. In developed countries, the effects of hepatitis A on pregnancy outcomes are not dramatic (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2012, 2018). However, in resource-poor countries, both perinatal and maternal mortality rates are substantively higher. HAV is not teratogenic, and transmission to the fetus is negligible. The risk of preterm birth may be higher, and neonatal cholestasis has been reported (Urganci, 2003). Although HAV RNA has been isolated in breast milk, no cases of neonatal hepatitis A have been reported secondary to breastfeeding (Daudi, 2012).

Hepatitis B

This infection stems from a double-stranded DNA virus that is found worldwide. HBV is endemic in Africa, Central and

Southeast Asia, China, Eastern Europe, the Middle East, and certain areas of South America. In all these, infection prevalence reaches 5 to 20 percent. An estimated 1.6 million people in the United States have chronic hepatitis B (Lim, 2020). HBV is carcinogenic, and chronic infection is a known risk for hepatocellular carcinoma. For others, cirrhosis can be a long-term sequela.

HBV is transmitted by exposure to blood or other body fluids from infected individuals. In endemic countries, vertical transmission, that is from mother to fetus or newborn, accounts for at least 35 to 50 percent of chronic HBV infections. In low-prevalence countries such as the United States, which has a prevalence below 2 percent, the more frequent transmission mode is sexual contact or shared contaminated needles.

Acute hepatitis B develops after an incubation period that ranges from 40 to 150 days (Schillie, 2018). At least half of acute infections are asymptomatic. Symptoms completely resolve within 3 to 4 months in most. However, acute hepatitis B accounts for half of fulminant hepatitis cases.

Figure 58-2 details the sequence of the various HBV antigens and antibodies in acute infection. The first serological marker is hepatitis B surface antigen (HBsAg), which often precedes the rise in transaminase levels. As HBsAg disappears, antibodies to the surface antigen develop (anti-HBs), and this marks complete disease resolution. Hepatitis B core antigen (HBcAg) is an intracellular antigen and not detectable in serum. However, antibodies against this core antigen (anti-HBc) are detectable and found within weeks of HBsAg appearance. The hepatitis B e antigen (HBeAg) is present during times of high viral replication and often correlates with detectable HBV DNA. After acute hepatitis, at least 90 percent of adults recover completely, and the remainder are considered to have chronic hepatitis B.

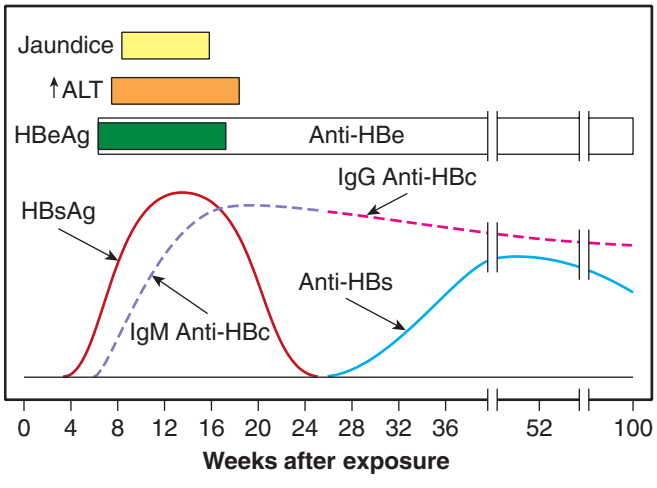


FIGURE 58-2 Sequence of various antigens and antibodies in acute hepatitis B. ALT = alanine transaminase; anti-HBc = antibody to hepatitis B core antigen; anti-HBe = antibody to hepatitis B e antigen; anti-HBs = antibody to hepatitis B surface antigen; HBeAg = hepatitis B e antigen; HBsAg = hepatitis B surface antigen. (Redrawn from Dienstag JL: Acute viral hepatitis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, NY: McGraw Hill; 2018b, p 2347.)

Chronic HBV infection is often asymptomatic but may cause persistent anorexia, weight loss, fatigue, and hepatosplenomegaly. Extrahepatic manifestations include arthritis, generalized vasculitis, glomerulonephritis, pericarditis, myocarditis, transverse myelitis, and peripheral neuropathy. One risk factor for chronic disease is age at acquisition. Pertinent to the obstetrician, this risk exceeds 90 percent in newborns. The risk is 50 percent in young children and is less than 10 percent in immunocompetent adults (Schillie, 2018). An immunocompromised state such as with HIV infection, organ transplantation, or chemotherapy creates vulnerability.

Those with chronic HBV infection have serum test results that show HBsAg persistence. These infected persons may be asymptomatic carriers or may have chronic liver disease with or without cirrhosis or hepatocellular cancer. The presence of HPV DNA in serum tests is a marker of HBV replication. Those with high HBV replication, which is reflected in high HBV DNA levels with or without HBeAg, have the greatest likelihood of developing cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma.

Pregnancy and Hepatitis B. The US Preventive Services Task Force (2019) recommends that all pregnant women be screened for HBV. This practice identifies asymptomatic cases and later allows neonatal intervention. At the first prenatal care visit, a serologic HBsAg level is obtained, and this is repeated in high-risk women again at the time of delivery. All states require cases of HBV infection to be reported, and 26 mandate that pregnant women be screened (Culp, 2016). HBV infection does not cause excessive rates of maternal morbidity or mortality (Stewart, 2013). In one regional study in the United States, 14 percent of women with HBV infection had a worsening of disease, sometimes termed a *flare*, either antepartum or in the 6 months postpartum (Kushner, 2018). A review of data from the National Inpatient Sample reported a modest rise in preterm birth rates in HBV-positive mothers but no effect on fetal-growth restriction or preeclampsia rates (Reddick, 2011). Others have shown similar results (Cui, 2017; Liu, 2017b).

Transplacental HBV infection is uncommon, and Towers and associates (2001) reported that viral DNA is rarely found in amnionic fluid or cord blood. The highest HBV DNA levels are found in women who transmitted the virus to their fetuses (Dunkelberg, 2014; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2016).

To curb vertical transmission, newborns of seropositive mothers are given hepatitis B immune globulin (HBIG) plus the first of a three-dose hepatitis B recombinant vaccine series very soon after birth. In the absence of HBV immunoprophylaxis, 10 to 20 percent of women positive for HBsAg transmit viral infection to their infant. This rate rises to almost 90 percent if the mother is HBsAg and HBeAg positive. Administration of immunoprophylaxis and hepatitis B vaccine shortly after birth has lowered transmission dramatically and prevented approximately 90 percent of infections (Smith, 2012). But, women with high HBV viral loads—10^6 to 10^8 copies/mL—or those who are HBeAg positive still have at least a 10-percent vertical transmission rate, regardless of immunoprophylaxis (Rogan, 2019; Yi, 2016). Hill and colleagues (2002) reported

that the 2.4-percent transmission rate was not increased with breastfeeding if neonatal vaccination was completed. Although virus is present in breast milk, the incidence of transmission is not diminished by formula feeding (Shi, 2011). The American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018) do not consider maternal HBV infection a contraindication to breastfeeding.

As a second transmission-prevention practice, the CDC and numerous societies now recommend antiviral therapy to decrease viral levels in gravidas whose viral load exceeds 10^6 to 10^8 copies/mL (Schillie, 2018). Newer drugs include tenofovir, an adenosine nucleoside analogue, and telbivudine, a thymidine analogue. Tenofovir is the first-line agent during pregnancy, and no dose adjustments are necessary (Cressey, 2018). These antiviral medications appear safe in pregnancy and are not associated with greater rates of congenital malformations or adverse obstetrical outcomes (Sylvester-Armstrong, 2019). Follow-up of children at age 6 to 7 years found no related problems (Wen, 2020).

Regarding efficacy, one randomized trial in Thailand showed that tenofovir compared with placebo beginning at 28 weeks' gestation did not reduce the low rate of vertical transmission if both active and passive immunoprophylaxis were given at birth to the neonate (Jourdain, 2018). In another similar randomized trial, vertical transmission rates were significantly lowered (Pan, 2016).

For high-risk mothers who are seronegative, HBV vaccine can be given during pregnancy. Candidates are persons with chronic liver disease, diabetes, HIV or HCV infection, injection drug use, occupational exposure risk, household contacts, or long-term travel to endemic areas. Those requiring dialysis, living in a long-term-care or correctional facility, or engaging in sex with multiple or HBV-infected partners also are included (Schillie, 2018).

Vaccine efficacy is similar to that for nonpregnant adults, and overall seroconversion rates approach 95 percent after three doses (Stewart, 2013). The traditional vaccination schedule of 0, 1, and 6 months may be difficult to complete during pregnancy, and compliance rates decline postpartum. Sheffield and coworkers (2006) reported that an accelerated three-dose regimen—given initially and at 1 and 4 months—resulted in seroconversion rates of 56, 77, and 90 percent, respectively. This regimen was usually easily completed during prenatal care.

Hepatitis D

Also called *delta hepatitis*, this is a defective RNA virus that is a hybrid particle with an HBsAg coat and a delta core. The HDV must co-infect with HBV either simultaneously or secondarily, and transmission is similar to HBV.

Hepatitis C

This infection stems from a single-stranded RNA virus. Transmission is via blood and other body fluids, although sexual transmission is inefficient. In the United States, adult prevalence of HCV was reported to be 2 to 5 cases per 1000 births (Prasad, 2020; Rossi, 2020). Up to a third of anti-HCV positive persons have no identifiable risk factors (Dienstag, 2018b).

Until recently, screening for HCV was encouraged only for high-risk individuals. But in 2020, the CDC recommended HCV screening for all adults at least once in a lifetime, and more regularly for those with risk factors (Schillie 2020). These are injection drug use, hemodialysis, or exposure to blood-contaminated items. The CDC also recommended prenatal HCV screening for all women regardless of risk factors. The US Preventive Services Task Force (2020) has published similar recommendations.

Chronic hepatitis C is diagnosed by identification of anti-HCV antibodies detected with a serum immunoassay. Acute HCV infection is usually asymptomatic or yields mild symptoms. Only 10 to 15 percent of patients develop jaundice. The incubation period ranges from 15 to 160 days, with a mean of 7 weeks. Transaminase levels are elevated episodically during the acute infection. HCV RNA testing confirms clinical suspicion of active or acute HCV infection. RNA levels may be found even before rises in transaminase and anti-HCV levels. Anti-HCV antibody is not detected for an average of 15 weeks and in some cases up to 1 year (Dienstag, 2018b).

Nearly 80 to 90 percent of patients with acute HCV will be chronically infected. Although most remain asymptomatic, approximately 20 to 30 percent progress to cirrhosis within 20 to 30 years. Transaminase and HCV RNA values fluctuate over time. Liver biopsy reveals chronic disease and fibrosis in up to 50 percent, however, these findings are often mild. Overall, the long-term prognosis for most patients is good.

Pregnancy and Hepatitis C. As expected, most pregnant women diagnosed with HCV have chronic disease. Aggregate reports have chronicled modestly greater fetal risks of low birthweight, neonatal intensive-care admission, preterm delivery, and mechanical ventilation (Rossi, 2020; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2017). In some women, these adverse outcomes may have been influenced by concurrent high-risk behaviors associated with HCV infection.

The primary adverse perinatal outcome is vertical transmission of HCV infection to the fetus-neonate. This is higher in mothers with viremia (Indolfi, 2014). Airoldi and Berghella (2006) cited a rate of 1 to 3 percent in HCV-positive, RNA-negative women compared with 4 to 6 percent in those who were RNA-positive. In a report from Dublin, the vertical transmission rate in 545 women with HCV infection was 7 percent in RNA-positive women compared with none in those who were RNA-negative (McMenamin, 2008). Some have found an even higher risk when the mother is co-infected with HIV (Snidjewind, 2015; Tovo, 2016). Approximately two thirds of prenatal transmission cases occur peripartum. HCV genotype, invasive prenatal procedures, breastfeeding, and delivery mode are not associated with vertical transmission. That said, invasive procedures such as scalp-electrode fetal heart rate monitoring are avoided. HCV infection is not a contraindication to breastfeeding (Post, 2017).

No licensed vaccine is available for HCV prevention. In 2011, the first direct-acting antiviral drugs against HCV became available. Since then, second-generation prototypes with fewer adverse effects have been developed and are given as combinations to nonpregnant individuals. They are currently

not recommended for use in pregnancy except in clinical trials (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2017). The combination of ledipasvir plus sofosbuvir shows efficacy and reassuring safety data in early clinical trials.

Hepatitis E

This infection stems from a water-borne RNA virus, which usually is enterically transmitted by contaminated water supplies. Hepatitis E is found worldwide, but the Centers for Disease Control (2020a) lists Mexico, Asia, and Africa as endemic areas. In these regions, seroprevalence rates vary by age and geography, but overall rates of 10 percent have been reported. In Mexico, Durango State has the highest rate—37 percent (Fierro, 2016).

Hepatitis E is the most common cause of acute hepatitis worldwide but rarely causes liver failure in the United States (Fontana, 2016). Epidemic outbreaks in third-world countries result in substantial morbidity and mortality rates. Pregnant women have a greater case-fatality rate than nonpregnant individuals (Li, 2020). In a metaanalysis of nearly 4000 women from Asia and Africa, maternal and fetal case-fatality rates were 21 and 34 percent, respectively (Jin, 2016a). Fulminant hepatitis, although rare, is more common in gravidas and contributes to the increased mortality rates.

A recombinant HEV vaccine has been developed and licensed in China (Zaman, 2020). It is >95 percent effective for 12 months after vaccination. Long-term efficacy is 87 percent, and protective titers are maintained for up to 4.5 years (Zhang, 2015). Preliminary data from inadvertently vaccinated pregnant women show no adverse maternal or fetal events (Wu, 2012).

Autoimmune Hepatitis

This generally progressive chronic hepatitis is more common in women and western countries. Autoimmune hepatitis frequently coexists with other types of autoimmune disease, particularly autoimmune thyroid disease and Sjögren syndrome. It is characterized by multiple autoimmune antibodies such as antinuclear (ANA), anti-smooth muscle, and anti-liver, kidney microsome 1 (LKM1) antibodies (see Table 58-1). Rates of subsequent cirrhosis vary worldwide. The less common type 2 autoimmune hepatitis has an even higher prevalence in females and typically a more aggressive presentation. The incidence peaks in childhood and adolescence.

Symptoms are typical of acute and chronic hepatitis, but a fourth of patients may be asymptomatic. Treatment employs corticosteroids, alone or combined with azathioprine (Dienstag, 2018a). Failure to respond to these two agents is more frequent in those with type 2 disease. Nearly all women with type 2 disease require long-term intensive therapy. In some patients with progressive disease and cirrhosis, hepatocellular carcinoma develops.

In general, autoimmune hepatitis—especially when severe—increases the risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes. Westbrook and coworkers (2012) reported the outcomes of 81 pregnancies in 53 women. A third had a flare, and these were more common in those not taking medication and those with active disease in the year before conception. Women with cirrhosis had more maternal and fetal complications. From a Swedish national database of 171 births, the frequencies of preterm birth, low birthweight, and diabetes were elevated, but not those of preeclampsia or cesarean delivery (Stokkeland, 2016). Another study reported delivery before 38 weeks' gestation in 25 percent of cases and development of a postpartum flare in a third (Danielsson Borssén, 2016). However, adverse outcomes were not greater in women with cirrhosis. Given the important role of procoagulant production, surveillance of coagulation indices is advised to minimize obstetrical hemorrhage complications. Also, the usual vaccines, along with pneumococcal vaccine, should be given (Furer, 2020).

Iron and Copper Overload

Chronic hepatitis and cirrhosis can result from iron and copper overload. Iron overload may stem from a primary cause, such as hereditary hemochromatosis, or from secondary complications of erythrocyte disorders (Chap. 56 p. 1052). Many gene mutations underlying hereditary hemochromatosis involve hepcidin and result in dysregulated iron transport. Some of these mutations are more common in certain populations from northern Europe (Pietrangelo, 2016; Salgia, 2015). Cardiomyopathy, diabetes, joint disease, and skin changes can coexist with liver disease. Diagnosis is made by identifying an *HFE* gene mutation and elevated serum ferritin and transferrin saturation levels. An abnormal *HFE* gene alone is not diagnostic because the mutation has low penetrance. Pregnancy outcomes are driven by the degree of liver dysfunction, although higher iron levels may affect birthweight (Dorak, 2009).

A form of neonatal hemochromatosis that does not affect the mother is now thought to be alloimmune and is called *gestational alloimmune liver disease* (Anastasio, 2016; Ibrahim, 2020). With this, maternal autoantibodies cross to the fetus and mediate dysfunction of iron homeostasis, although the antigenic target of these alloantibodies remains unclear. It is associated with significant neonatal morbidity and mortality and frequently recurs in subsequent pregnancies. In these cases, antepartum treatment with intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) may improve outcomes (Feldman, 2013; Roumiantsev, 2015).

Wilson disease is caused by copper overload leading to chronic hepatitis and cirrhosis. Autosomal recessive mutations of the *ATP7B* gene underlie this disorder. This gene codes for the P-type ATPase involved in copper transport to ceruloplasmin and bile (Bandman, 2015). This systemic condition can also manifest with cardiomyopathy, renal disease, neuropsychiatric symptoms, and certain endocrine abnormalities. Serum ceruloplasmin, slit-lamp examination, and 24-hour urinary copper excretion are used to identify this disease. A Kayser-Fleischer ring surrounding the iris is highly specific, but a suspected diagnosis generally requires subsequent genetic analysis confirmation.

With Wilson disease, infertility may be present, but pregnancy outcomes among affected women are influenced by disease severity (Malik, 2013). In one multicenter study of 282 pregnancies, the miscarriage rate was 26 percent, and 6 percent of the women had worsening liver disease (Pfeiffenberger, 2018).

Birth defects were not increased with chelation treatment. Maternal and neonatal outcomes were good. The American College of Gastroenterology states that few data guide which of the various chelating agents is best (Tran, 2016). These include penicillamine, zinc, and trientine, and any theoretical risks are outweighed by the risks of discontinuing therapy. The latter include not only hepatic decompensation, but also injury to the placenta and fetal liver. Accordingly, the American College of Gastroenterology recommends that pregnant women should continue their chelation therapy, although a dose reduction of 25 to 50 percent should be considered to promote wound healing in the event of a surgical delivery.

■ Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease

This is the most common chronic liver disease in the United States. Unsurprisingly, because it is frequently comorbid with obesity, it is demonstrable in 25 percent of American adults (Abdelmalek, 2018). Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) is a macrovesicular fatty liver condition that resembles alcohol-induced liver injury but is seen without ethanol abuse. Its most severe form—*nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH)*—is an increasingly recognized condition that may occasionally progress to hepatic cirrhosis. Currently, this is the third most common indication for liver transplantation in the United States (Diehl, 2017).

Obesity, type 2 diabetes, and hyperlipidemia—*syndrome X*—frequently coexist with NAFLD (Chap. 51, p. 904). The current hypothesis suggests that these conditions may interact with other unknown etiological agents to cause multiple insults that lead to hepatic injury (Buzzetti, 2016). In one study of individuals with type 2 diabetes and normal liver enzyme levels, half had NAFLD, and those with NAFLD showed greater insulin resistance (Portillo-Sanchex, 2015). In a study of obese adolescents undergoing bariatric surgery and intraoperative core liver biopsy, more than a third had fatty liver without hepatitis. An additional 20 percent had borderline or definite NASH (Xanthakos, 2015).

Liver damage follows a progressive continuum from NAFLD to NASH and then to hepatic fibrosis that may progress to cirrhosis (Goh, 2016). The disease is usually asymptomatic, and it is a frequent explanation for elevated serum transaminase levels found during routine screening. When other liver disease is excluded, NAFLD is the cause of elevated asymptomatic transaminase levels in up to 90 percent of cases. Currently, weight loss along with control of diabetes and dyslipidemia is the only recommended treatment.

Pregnancy

During the past decade, we have encountered an increasing number of obese and diabetic gravidas with fatty liver infiltration. These women appear to have no greater rates of adverse outcomes relative to liver involvement compared with pregnant women of similar weight. However, some emerging data indicate potential concerns. In one patient registry, risks of gestational diabetes, preeclampsia, preterm birth, and low-birthweight newborns were two- to threefold higher than in unaffected women (Hagström, 2016). Yarrington and colleagues (2016) reported a high rate of gestational diabetes among nonobese women who had elevated alanine transaminase levels in the first trimester. Somewhat related, in another study, almost a fourth of women with prior gestational diabetes had NAFLD (Foghsgaard, 2017). Last, some evidence suggests that the fetus of an affected mother is at increased risk for NAFLD in adulthood (Baker, 2018).

■ Cirrhosis

Irreversible chronic liver injury with extensive fibrosis and regenerative nodules is the final common pathway for several disorders. *Laënnec cirrhosis* from chronic alcohol exposure is the most frequent cause in the general population. However, in young women, most cases are caused by *postnecrotic cirrhosis* from chronic hepatitis B or C. As discussed, many cases of *cryptogenic cirrhosis* are now known to be caused by NAFLD (Ge, 2016; Goh, 2016). Clinical manifestations of cirrhosis include jaundice, edema, coagulopathy, and metabolic abnormalities. Of associated conditions, portal hypertension can lead to gastroesophageal varices, and splenomegaly may cause thrombocytopenia. Also, the incidence of venous thromboembolism is increased. The prognosis is poor, and 75 percent have progressive disease that leads to death in 1 to 5 years.

The incidence in pregnancy was reported to be 1 case in 3300 births (Palatnik, 2017). Common complications include transient hepatic failure, variceal hemorrhage, preterm delivery, fetal-growth restriction, spontaneous bacterial peritonitis, and maternal death (Tan, 2008). Outcomes generally are poor, especially if esophageal varices coexist. Another potentially fatal cirrhosis complication arises from associated splenic artery aneurysms. Up to 20 percent of aneurysm ruptures occur during pregnancy, and 70 percent of these rupture in the third trimester (Tan, 2008). The 20-percent maternal mortality rate is likely related to the emergent diagnosis of these aneurysms (Ha, 2009).

■ Portal Hypertension and Esophageal Varices

In pregnant women, the causes of esophageal varices are equally divided between cirrhosis and extrahepatic portal vein obstruction (Andrade, 2018). Of the extrahepatic cases, some develop following portal vein thrombosis associated with one of the *thrombophilia syndromes* (Chap. 55, p. 976). Others follow thrombosis related to umbilical vein catheterization when the woman was a neonate, especially if she was born preterm. Last, the rare *Budd-Chiari syndrome* results from hepatic vein thrombosis that causes extrahepatic portal hypertension. Of 16 pregnancies complicated by this syndrome, one observational study reported favorable outcomes (Khan, 2017).

With either intrahepatic or extrahepatic resistance to flow, portal vein pressure rises from its normal range of 5 to 10 mm Hg, and values may exceed 30 mm Hg. Collateral circulation develops that carries portal blood to the systemic circulation. Blood drains into the gastric, intercostal, and other veins to reach the esophageal system, where varices develop. In rare cases, abdominal wall varices develop (Wood, 2018a). Bleeding is usually from varices near the gastroesophageal junction, and

hemorrhage can be severe. Bleeding during pregnancy from varices occurs in a third to half of affected women and is the major cause of maternal mortality in this group (Tan, 2008).

Maternal prognosis with esophageal varices largely depends on whether these rupture. The mortality rate is 18 percent if varices are associated with cirrhosis compared with 2 percent for varices without cirrhosis. Similarly, perinatal mortality rates are high in women with varices and are worse if cirrhosis caused the varices. Increased rates of neonatal demise, preterm birth, low birthweight, preeclampsia, and postpartum hemorrhage have been reported (Puljic, 2016).

Treatment is the same as for nonpregnant patients. Preventively, all patients with cirrhosis, including pregnant women, should undergo endoscopic screening for variceal dilation (Bacon, 2015). Beta-blocking drugs such as propranolol are given to decrease portal pressure and bleeding risk (Ge, 2016; Tran, 2016).

For acute bleeding and for prophylaxis, endoscopic band ligation is preferred to sclerotherapy because it avoids any potential risk of injecting sclerotherapeutic chemicals. Acute medical management for bleeding varices verified endoscopically includes the intravenous vasoconstrictors octreotide or somatostatin along with endoscopic banding. Vasopressin is less often used. If endoscopy is not available, *balloon tamponade* using a triple-lumen Sengstaken-Blakemore tube, which is placed into the esophagus and stomach to compress bleeding varices, can be lifesaving. An interventional radiology procedure—*transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent shunting (TIPSS)*—also can control bleeding from gastric varices that is unresponsive to other measures (Ge, 2016; Tan, 2008). We have had good outcomes with this procedure done electively during pregnancy in women with prior variceal hemorrhage (Chandramouli, 2020).

Acetaminophen Hepatotoxicity

As discussed earlier (p. 1030), acetaminophen is the most frequent cause of acute liver failure in the United States (Lee, 2018). This commonly used medication can be associated with hepatotoxicity at doses above 4 g/d, and even less in certain populations (Clark, 2012). The drug is often used during pregnancy, and overdose–either accidentally or by attempted suicide–may lead to hepatocellular necrosis and acute liver failure (Taney, 2017). Massive necrosis causes a cytokine storm and multiorgan dysfunction. Early overdose symptoms are nausea, vomiting, diaphoresis, malaise, and pallor. After a latent period of 24 to 48 hours, liver failure ensues, and it usually begins to resolve in 5 days. In a prospective Danish study, only 35 percent of patients who were treated for fulminant hepatic failure spontaneously recovered before being listed for liver transplantation (Schmidt, 2007).

The antidote is *N-acetylcysteine (NAC)*, which must be given promptly. The drug is thought to raise glutathione levels, which aid metabolism of the toxic metabolite, *N*-acetyl-*p*-benzoquinoneimine. The *Rumack-Matthew nomogram* uses serum acetaminophen levels to predict subsequent plasma hepatotoxic levels as a function of the time from acute ingestion (Rumack, 1975). The need for treatment is based on these projections, and online nomograms and calculators are available. If the plasma level exceeds 150 μg/mL 4 hours after ingestion, treatment is given. When plasma determinations are not available, empirical treatment is initiated if the ingested amount is >7.5 g. An oral loading dose of 140 mg/kg is given followed by 70 mg/kg every 4 hours for a total treatment duration of 72 hours (Heard, 2008). Both the oral and an equally efficacious intravenous dosing regimen have been reviewed by Hodgman and Garrard (2012). Although the drug reaches therapeutic concentrations in the fetus, any protective effects of NAC during acetaminophen overdose are unknown (Wiest, 2014).

After 14 weeks' gestation, the fetus has some cytochrome P450 activity necessary for metabolism of acetaminophen to the toxic metabolite. Riggs and associates (1989) reported follow-up data from the Rocky Mountain Poison and Drug Center in 60 women suffering overdose. The likelihood of maternal and fetal survival was better if the antidote was given soon after overdose. At least one 33-week fetus appears to have died as a direct result of hepatotoxicity 2 days after maternal ingestion. In another case, Wang and coworkers (1997) confirmed acetaminophen placental transfer and found maternal and cord blood levels measuring 41 μg/mL. Both the mother and the emergently delivered neonate died from hepatorenal failure.

Focal Nodular Hyperplasia

This benign lesion of the liver is characterized in most cases by a well-delineated accumulation of normal but disordered hepatocytes surrounding a central stellate scar. These usually can be differentiated from hepatic adenomas by MR and CT imaging. Except in rare situations of unremitting pain, surgery is rarely indicated, and most women remain asymptomatic during pregnancy. In one review of 20 cases, no woman had related complications during pregnancy (Rifai, 2013). Three women showed 20-percent tumor growth; in half, the tumor diminished in size; and the remaining seven tumors were unchanged across pregnancy. In another surveillance of 44 lesions with MR imaging in 30 gravidas, tumor size was unchanged in 80 percent and decreased in most of the remainder (Ramírez-Fuentes, 2013). Investigators concluded that size changes were unrelated to pregnancy, combination oral contraceptive use, or menopause. This lesion is not a contraindication to estrogen-containing contraceptives (Chap. 38, p. 673).

Hepatocellular Adenoma

This rare benign neoplasm develops most often in young women. Lesions are more common in individuals taking combination oral contraceptives or other steroid medications (Renzulli, 2019). Hepatic adenomas have a 5-percent risk of malignant transformation and a significant risk of rupture-associated hemorrhage, particularly in pregnancy. The rupture risk progresses with lesion size, and surgery is generally recommended for tumors measuring >5 cm (Agrawal, 2015). Thus, differentiation from focal nodular hyperplasia is important and can be achieved by MR or CT imaging.

Tran and associates (2016) recommend sonographic surveillance of hepatic adenomas during pregnancy. In a study of

51 pregnancies in women with an adenoma <5 cm, 25 percent of the lesions expanded approximately 14 mm (Gaspersz, 2020). In one review of 27 cases in pregnancy, 23 became apparent in the third trimester and puerperium (Cobey, 2004). No bleeding complications followed tumors measuring <6.5 cm. However, 60 percent presented with tumor rupture that resulted in seven maternal deaths and six fetal deaths. Of note, 13 of 27 women presented within 2 months postpartum, and in half, hemorrhage heralded rupture. Bleeding adenomas can be managed by angiographic embolization followed by resection (Tsilimigras, 2019).

Liver Transplantation

According to the Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network (2020) more than 177,000 liver transplantations have been performed in the United States. Analysis of the National Inpatient Sample database found 2 liver transplantations per 100,000 deliveries (Ghazali, 2017). In most studies, the 80-percent live-birth rate compares favorably with that of the general population. However, risks of preeclampsia, cesarean delivery, fetal-growth restriction, and preterm birth are significantly elevated (Coscia, 2010; Deshpande, 2012; Kanzaki, 2016). Although cesarean delivery is common, vaginal delivery is not contraindicated (Madej, 2018). Mattila and colleagues (2017) found that half of the women they cared for had maternal complications, including acute graft rejection. Importantly, 4 percent of mothers had died within a year after delivery, but this rate is comparable to that in nonpregnant liver transplantation patients.

GALLBLADDER DISORDERS

Cholelithiasis and Cholecystitis

In the United States, 17 percent of women have gallstones. Most stones contain cholesterol, and its oversecretion into bile is thought to be a major factor in stone formation. The cumulative risk of all patients with gallstones to become symptomatic is 20 percent (Lammert, 2016). For this reason, prophylactic cholecystectomy is not warranted for *asymptomatic* stones.

Symptomatic cholelithiasis typically presents with right upper or epigastric abdominal pain, bloating, belching, nausea, and fatty food intolerance. Pain stems from gallbladder contraction, which forces a stone up into the sac's neck. With subsequent gallbladder relaxation, the stone falls back to relieve the obstruction. Laboratory values are normal, and leukocytosis or elevated liver and pancreatic enzymes should warn for acute cholecystitis or pancreatitis. Standard care for symptomatic cholelithiasis is laparoscopic cholecystectomy (Cafasso, 2014). Less often, oral ursodeoxycholic acid therapy or extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy are used, but experience with these during pregnancy is lacking.

Acute cholecystitis usually develops when a stone obstructs the cystic duct, which connects the gallbladder to the common bile duct. Bacterial infection plays a role in 50 to 85 percent of cases. In more than half of patients with acute cholecystitis, a history of prior right upper quadrant pain from biliary colic is elicited. With acute disease, pain is accompanied by anorexia, nausea and vomiting, low-grade fever, and mild leukocytosis. As shown in Figure 58-3, sonography will display stones, and both false-positive and false-negative rates range from 2 to 4 percent (Greenberger, 2018). In acute cases, medical therapy consists of intravenous fluids, antibiotics, analgesics, and in some instances, nasogastric suction. Surgical therapy follows, and laparoscopic cholecystectomy is the preferred route for most.

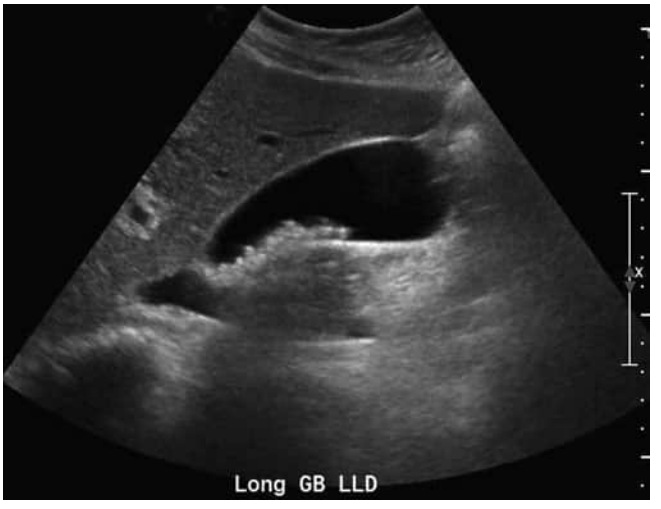


FIGURE 58-3 Sonogram shows multiple, hyperechoic gallstones collecting along the inferior wall of an anechoic gallbladder.

Gallbladder Disease During Pregnancy

After the first trimester, the gallbladder fasting volume and the residual volume after postprandial emptying are doubled. Incomplete emptying may result in retention of cholesterol crystals, a prerequisite for cholesterol gallstones. From studies, the combined incidence of biliary sludge and gallstones is 5 to 8 percent (Ko, 2005, 2014).

Postpartum, sludge frequently regresses, and occasionally gallstones will resorb. Still, gallbladder diseases are the most common cause of nonobstetrical admissions in the first year following delivery (Lydon-Rochelle, 2011). This is particularly true for women managed conservatively during pregnancy. Jorge and coworkers (2015) reported that half of 53 women with symptomatic cholelithiasis in pregnancy underwent later postpartum cholecystectomy. In 80 percent of these women, recurrent symptoms had developed prior to surgery.

Medical versus Surgical Management

Symptomatic cholelithiasis is common in pregnancy. Othman and colleagues (2012) showed that gravidas managed conservatively had greater pain, more recurrent emergency department visits, more hospitalizations, and higher cesarean delivery rate. Dhupar and associates (2010) reported more complications with conservative management of gallbladder disease compared with laparoscopic cholecystectomy in pregnancy. These included multiple admissions, prolonged total parenteral nutrition (TPN), and unplanned labor induction for worsening gallbladder symptoms. Therefore, operative and

endoscopic interventions are increasingly favored over conservative measures.

Acute cholecystitis during pregnancy or the puerperium is also common. Acute disease in pregnancy may be complicated by sepsis, pancreatitis, venous thromboembolism, and bowel obstruction (El-Messidi, 2018). Cholecystitis is initially managed similarly to that for nonpregnant women. In the distant past, most favored medical therapy. However, the recurrence rate during the same pregnancy is high, and 25 to 50 percent of women ultimately require cholecystectomy for persistent symptoms (Dhupar, 2010). Moreover, if cholecystitis recurs later in gestation, preterm labor is more likely and cholecystectomy is technically more difficult.

Cholecystectomy can be performed safely in all trimesters (Kwon, 2018). A metaanalysis found that cholecystectomy does not raise the risk of preterm labor or of maternal or fetal mortality (Athwal, 2016). Of surgical routes, laparoscopic cholecystectomy has evolved as the favored approach (Pearl, 2017; Shigemi, 2019). This is discussed further in Chapter 49 (p. 867). Management at Parkland Hospital favors a surgical approach, especially if biliary pancreatitis, as subsequently discussed, is comorbid (Juo, 2018).

Endoscopic Retrograde Cholangiopancreatography

Approximately 10 percent of patients with symptomatic stone disease have common duct stones (Stinton, 2012). Symptomatic biliary duct gallstones during pregnancy can be retrieved by endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) (Fogel, 2014; Greenberger, 2018). The procedure is performed if common duct obstruction is suspected or proven. ERCP can be modified in many cases so that radiation exposure from fluoroscopy is avoided (Sethi, 2015). If standard fluoroscopy is used, a lead apron shield is placed between the radiation source and the fetus.

In 68 ERCP procedures performed in pregnant women at Parkland Hospital, all but two women had gallstones, and common duct stones were identified in half of 65 women (Tang, 2009). Stones were successfully removed in all but one woman. A biliary stent was placed in 22 percent of cases and removed after delivery. Complications were minimal, but post-ERCP pancreatitis developed in 16 percent. Pregnancy outcomes were not different from those in the general obstetrical population. As a less invasive approach, MR cholangiopancreatography (MRCP) in pregnancy has been reported (Oto, 2009).

Ascending cholangitis can complicate acute biliary obstruction. Nearly 70 percent of affected patients develop *Charcot triad*—jaundice, abdominal pain, and fever. The diagnosis is aided by sonography, and treatment is broad-spectrum antibiotics and biliary drainage by ERCP (Greenberger, 2018).

PANCREATIC DISORDERS

Pancreatitis

Acute pancreatic inflammation is triggered by factors that cause activation of pancreatic trypsinogen followed by autodigestion. It is characterized by cell-membrane disruption and proteolysis, edema, hemorrhage, and necrosis (Conwell, 2018). Up to 10 percent of patients develop necrotizing pancreatitis, which carries a mortality risk of 15 percent. This rate rises if infection develops (Cain, 2015).

The incidence of pancreatitis varies with the population studied. At Parkland Hospital, with a predominant Mexican-American population, acute pancreatitis complicated approximately 1 in 3300 pregnancies (Ramin, 1995). From other reviews, the incidence is 1 case in 3500 to 6000 pregnancies (Eddy, 2008; Hacker, 2015; Hernandez, 2007).

In nonpregnant patients, acute pancreatitis is almost equally associated with gallstones and alcohol abuse. During pregnancy, however, cholelithiasis is almost always the predisposing condition. Other causes are hyperlipidemias, usually hypertriglyceridemia; hyperparathyroidism; congenital ductal anomalies; recent ERCP; some drugs; and rarely autoimmune pancreatitis (Conwell, 2018; Tang, 2018). Nonbiliary pancreatitis occasionally develops postoperatively, or it is associated with trauma, drugs, or some viral infections. Certain metabolic conditions, including acute AFLP and familial hypertriglyceridemia, also predispose to pancreatitis (Nelson, 2013). Cases of acute and chronic pancreatitis have been linked to numerous mutations of the cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator gene (Chang, 2015).

Diagnosis

Acute pancreatitis incites incapacitating epigastric pain, nausea and vomiting, and abdominal distention. Patients are usually distressed and have low-grade fever, tachycardia, hypotension, and abdominal tenderness. As many as 10 percent have sepsis, which causes endothelial activation and can lead to acute respiratory distress syndrome (Chap. 50, p. 887).

Serum lipase measurements are preferred for diagnosis, however, amylase levels also can be used. In 173 pregnant women with pancreatitis, the mean amylase value approximated 2000 IU/L, and the mean lipase value approached 3000 IU/L (Table 58-5). *Importantly, the degree of enzyme elevation and disease severity do not reliably correlate.* By 48 to 72 hours amylase levels may return to normal despite other evidence for continuing pancreatitis. Serum lipase activity typically remains increased with continued inflammation. Leukocytosis is usually found, and 25 percent of patients have hypocalcemia. Elevated serum bilirubin and aspartate transaminase levels may signify concomitant gallstone disease.

TABLE 58-5. Laboratory Values in 173 Pregnant Women with Acute Pancreatitis

Analyte	Mean	Range	Normal
Serum amylase (IU/L)	1980	111–8917	28–100
Serum lipase (IU/L)	3076	36–41,824	7–59
Total bilirubin (mg/dL)	1.7	0.1–8.71	0.2–1.3
Aspartate transaminase (U/L)	115	11–1113	10–35
Leukocytes (per μL)	10,700	1000–27,200	3900–10,700

From Ramin, 1995; Tang, 2010; Turhan, 2010.

Several prognostic scoring systems are used to classify pancreatitis severity. However, the Ranson criteria and the Apache II scoring system may be less relevant for pregnancy. In contrast, the Atlanta Classification incorporates the degree of organ failure as a measure of severity and may be more applicable in pregnancy (Cain, 2015; Conwell, 2018). With this last tool, *mild disease* lacks organ failure or systemic complications. *Moderately severe disease* shows organ failure lasting <48 h, with or without local or systemic complications. *Severe disease* is defined by persistent single- or multi-organ failure (Banks, 2013).

Management

Medical treatment mirrors that for nonpregnant patients. This includes analgesics, intravenous hydration, and measures to decrease pancreatic secretion by interdiction of oral intake. Nasogastric suction does not improve outcomes of mild to moderate disease. In a series by Ramin and colleagues (1995), all 43 affected pregnant women responded to conservative treatment and were hospitalized for a mean of 8.5 days. If bacterial superinfection, necrotizing pancreatitis, sepsis, or cholangitis is found, broad-spectrum antimicrobials are administered. If common duct stones are found, ERCP is indicated.

Enteral feeding may be helpful once pain improves and associated ileus resolves. For women with more severe pancreatitis and prolonged disease course, total enteral nutrition using nasojejunal feeding is superior to TPN (Cain, 2015; Conwell, 2018). Cholecystectomy is considered after inflammation subsides because women with gallstone pancreatitis carry a greater risk of recurrent inflammation (Cain, 2015). Juo and coworkers (2018) reported that a third of women with biliary pancreatitis not treated with cholecystectomy were readmitted, and 30 percent of these had recurrent pancreatitis. Of the initial group, those who instead did undergo cholecystectomy had only a 5-percent readmission rate.

Pregnancy Outcomes

Increasing severity of pancreatitis is associated with adverse maternal and fetal outcomes (Tang, 2018). In one review of 101 pancreatitis cases, Eddy and coworkers (2008) found a 30-percent preterm delivery rate, and 11 percent were delivered before 35 weeks' gestation. There were also 4 percent stillbirths. There were two pancreatitis-related maternal deaths. Importantly, almost a third of women had recurrent pancreatitis during pregnancy. In another study of 342 pregnancies complicated by pancreatitis, preterm delivery and fetal mortality rates were comparable to the data from Eddy (Hacker, 2015).

■ Pancreatic Transplantation

Few reports describe pregnancy following pancreas transplantation. Of 44 pregnancies in 73 women following pancreas-kidney transplantation, outcomes are encouraging, and vaginal delivery has been described (Mastrobattista, 2008). Although the incidence of hypertension, preeclampsia, preterm delivery, and fetal-growth restriction are high, there was only one perinatal death. Four rejection episodes developed during pregnancy and were treated successfully. Pancreatic islet autotransplantation and at least three subsequent successful pregnancies have been reported (Jung, 2007).

REFERENCES

Abdelmalek MF, Diehl AM: Nonalcoholic fatty liver diseases and nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2401

Abu-Hayyeh S, Ovadia C, Lieu T, et al: Prognostic and mechanistic potential of progesterone sulfates in intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy and pruritus gravidarum. Hepatology 63:1287, 2016

Agrawal S, Agarwal S, Arnason T, et al: Management of hepatocellular adenoma: recent advances. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 13:1221, 2015

Airoldi J, Berghella V: Hepatitis C and pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 61(10):666, 2006

American Academy of Pediatrics and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Washington, DC, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Upper gastrointestinal tract, biliary, and pancreatic disorders. Clinical Updates in Women's Health Care, Vol. XI, No. 4, 2012

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Viral hepatitis in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 86, October 2007, Reaffirmed 2018

Anastasio HB, Grundy M, Birsner ML, et al: Gestational alloimmune liver disease: a devastating condition preventable with maternal intravenous immunoglobulin. Obstet Gynecol 128(5):1092, 2016

Andrade F, Shukla A, Bureau C, et al: Pregnancy in idiopathic non-cirrhotic portal hypertension: a multicentric study on maternal and fetal management and outcome. J Hepatol 69(6):1242, 2018

Athwal R, Bhogal RH, Hodson J, et al: Surgery for gallstone disease during pregnancy does not increase fetal or maternal mortality: a meta-analysis. Hepatobiliary Surg Nutr 5:53, 2016

Australian New Zealand Clinical Trials Registry. Trial of ursodeoxycholic acid versus rifampicin in severe early onset intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy: the TURRIFIC study. 2019. https://www.anzctr.org.au/Trial/Registration/TrialReview.aspx?id=374510. Accessed July 10, 2020

Bacak SJ, Thornburg LL: Liver failure in pregnancy. Crit Care Clin 32(1):61, 2016

Bacon BR: Cirrhosis and its complications. In Kasper DL, Fauci AS, Hauser SL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 19th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2015

Bacq Y, Sentilhes L, Reyes HB, et al: Efficacy of ursodeoxycholic acid in treating intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy: a meta-analysis. Gastroenterology 143(6):1492, 2012

Baker PR 2nd, Friedman JE: Mitochondrial role in the neonatal predisposition to developing nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. J Clin Invest 128(9):3692, 2018

Bandman O, Weiss KH, Kaler SG: Wilson's disease and other neurological copper disorders. Lancet Neurol 14:103, 2015

Banks PA, Bollen TL, Dervenis C, et al: Classification of acute pancreatitis–2012: revision of the Atlanta classification and definitions by international consensus. Gut 62(1):102, 2013

Bernal W, Wendon J: Acute liver failure. N Engl J Med 369(26):2525, 2013

Brouwers L, Koster MP, Page-Christiaens GC, et al: Intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy: maternal and fetal outcomes associated with elevated bile acid levels. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212:100, 2015

Brown SA, Axenfeld E, Stonesifer EG, et al: Current and prospective therapies for acute liver failure. Dis Mon 64(12):493, 2018

Browning MF, Levy HL, Wilkins-Haug LE, et al: Fetal fatty acid oxidation defects and maternal liver disease in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 107:115, 2006

Buzzetti E, Pinzani M, Tsochatzis EA: The multiple-hit pathogenesis of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD). Metabolism 65(8):1038, 2016

Byrne JJ, Seasely A, Nelson DB, et al: Comparing acute fatty liver of pregnancy from hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets syndrome. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 19:1, 2020

Cafasso DE, Smith RR: Symptomatic cholelithiasis and functional disorders of the biliary tract. Surg Clin North Am 94(2):233, 2014

Cain MA, Ellis J, Vengrove MA, et al: Gallstone and severe hypertriglyceride-induced pancreatitis in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 70:577, 2015

Calix RX, Loeliger KB, Burn MS, et al: Acute herpes simplex virus hepatitis in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 135(2):396, 2020

Casey LC, Fontana RJ, Aday A, et al: Acute liver failure (ALF) in pregnancy: how much is pregnancy-related? Hepatology 72:1366, 2020

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Hepatitis E FAQs for health professionals. 2020a. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/hev/hevfaq.htm. Accessed July 7, 2020

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Surveillance for viral hepatitis—United States, 2019. 2021. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/hepatitis/statistics/2017surveillance/. Accessed October 19, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Yellow book: table of contents. 2020b. Available at: https://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/yellowbook/2020/table-of-contents. Accessed July 7, 2020

Chandramouli S, Lee WM, Lo J, et al: Prophylactic transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt placement for cirrhosis management in pregnancy. Hepatology 71(5):1876, 2020

Chang MC, Jan IS, Liang PC, et al: Cystic fibrosis transmembrane conductance regulator gene variants are associated with autoimmune pancreatitis and slow response to steroid treatment. J Cyst Fibros 14:661, 2015

Chappell LC, Bell JL, Smith A, et al: Ursodeoxycholic acid versus placebo in women with intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy (PITCHES): a randomised controlled trial. Lancet 394(10201):849, 2019

Châtel P, Ronot M, Roux O, et al: Transient excess of liver fat detected by magnetic resonance imaging in women with acute fatty liver of pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(1):127, 2016

Ch'ng CL, Morgan M, Hainsworth I, et al: Prospective study of liver dysfunction in pregnancy in Southwest Wales. Gut 51(6):876, 2002

Clark R, Fisher JE, Sketris IS, et al: Population prevalence of high dose paracetamol in dispensed paracetamol/opioid prescription combinations: an observational study. BMC Clin Pharmacol 12:11, 2012

Cobey FC, Salem RR: A review of liver masses in pregnancy and a proposed algorithm for their diagnosis and management. Am J Surg 187(2):181, 2004

Conwell DL, Banks PA, Greenberger NJ: Acute and chronic pancreatitis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2437

Coscia LA, Constantinescu S, Moritz MJ, et al: Report from the National Transplantation Pregnancy Registry (NTPR): outcomes of pregnancy after transplantation. Clin Transpl 2010:65, 2010

Cressey TR, Harrison L, Achalapong J, et al: Tenofovir exposure during pregnancy and postpartum in women receiving tenofovir disoproxil fumarate for the prevention of mother-to-child transmission of hepatitis B virus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 62(12):e01686, 2018

Cui AM, Shao JG, Li HB, et al: Association of chronic hepatitis B virus infection with preterm birth: our experience and meta-analysis. J Perinat Med 45(8):933, 2017

Culp LA, Caucci L, Fenlon NE, et al: Assessment of state perinatal hepatitis B prevention laws. Am J Prev Med 51(6):e179, 2016

Cunningham FG, Lowe TW, Guss S, et al: Erythrocyte morphology in women with severe preeclampsia and eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 153:358, 1985

Dallmann A, Ince I, Coboeken K, et al: A physiologically base pharmacokinetic model for pregnant women to predict the pharmacokinetics of drugs metabolized via several enzymatic pathways. Clin Pharmacokinet 57(6):749, 2018

Daudi N, Shouval D, Stein-Zamir C, et al: Breastmilk hepatitis A virus DNA in nursing mothers with acute hepatitis A virus infection. Breastfeed Med 7:313, 2012

Danielsson Borssén Å, Wallerstedt S, Nyhlin N, et al: Pregnancy and childbirth in women with autoimmune hepatitis is safe, even in compensated cirrhosis. Scand J Gastroenterol 51:479, 2016

Deshpande NA, James NT, Kucirka LM, et al: Pregnancy outcomes of liver transplant recipients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Liver Transpl 18(6):621, 2012

Dhupar R, Smaldone GM, Hamad GG: Is there a benefit to delaying cholecystectomy for symptomatic gallbladder disease during pregnancy? Surg Endosc 24(1):108, 2010

Diehl AM, Day C: Cause, pathogenesis, and treatment of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. N Engl J Med 377(21):2063, 2017

Dienstag JL: Chronic hepatitis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018a, p 2375

Dienstag JL: Acute viral hepatitis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018b, p 2347

Di Mascio D, Quist-Nelson J, Riegel M, et al: Perinatal death by bile acid levels in intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy: a systematic review. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 19:1, 2019

Dorak MT, Mackay RK, Relton CL, et al: Hereditary hemochromatosis gene (HFE) variants are associated with birth weight and childhood leukemia risk. Pediatr Blood Cancer 53:1242, 2009

Dunkelberg JC, Berkley EM, Thiel KW, et al: Hepatitis B and C in pregnancy: a review and recommendations for care. J Perinatol 34:882, 2014

Eddy JJ, Gideonsen MD, Song JY, et al: Pancreatitis in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 112:1075, 2008

Egan N, Bartels A, Khashan AS, et al: Reference standard for serum bile acids in pregnancy. BJOG 119:493, 2012

El-Messidi A, Alsarraj G, Czozuj-Shulman N, et al: Evaluation of management and surgical outcomes in pregnancies complicated by acute cholecystitis. J Perinat Med 46(9):998, 2018

Fan L, Owusu-Edusei K Jr, Schillie SF, et al: Cost-effectiveness of active-passive prophylaxis and antiviral prophylaxis during pregnancy to prevent perinatal hepatitis B virus infection. Hepatology 63:1471, 2016

Feldman AG, Whitington PF: Neonatal hemochromatosis. J Clin Exp Hepatology 3:313, 2013

Fierro NA, Realpe M, Meraz-Medina T, et al: Hepatitis E virus: an ancient hidden enemy in Latin America. World J Gastroenterol 22:2271, 2016

Fogel EL, Sherman S: ERCP for gallstone pancreatitis. N Engl J Med 370:150, 2014

Foghsgaard S, Andreasen C, Vedtofte L, et al: Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease is prevalent in women with prior gestational diabetes mellitus and independently associated with insulin resistance and waist circumference. Diabetes Care 40(1):109, 2017

Fontana RJ, Engle RE, Scaglione S, et al: The role of hepatitis E virus infection in adult Americans with acute liver failure. Hepatology 64(6):1870, 2016

Freedman MS, Hunter P, Ault K, et al: Advisory committee on immunization practices recommended immunization schedule for adults aged 19 years or older—United States, 2020. MMWR 69(5):133, 2020

Furer V, Rondaan C, Heijstek MV, et al: 2019 update of EULAR recommendations for vaccination in adult patients with autoimmune inflammatory rheumatic diseases. Ann Rheum Dis 79(1):39, 2020

Gao H, Chen LJ, Luo QQ, et al: Effect of cholic acid on fetal cardiac myocytes in intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy. J Huazhong Univ Sci Technolog Med Sci 34:736, 2014

Gaspersz MP, Klompenhouwer AJ, Broker ME, et al: Growth of hepatocellular adenoma during pregnancy: a prospective study. J Hepatol 72(1):119, 2020

Ge PS, Runyon BA: Treatment of patients with cirrhosis. N Engl J Med 375(8):767, 2016

Ghazali S, Czuzoj-Shulman N, Spence AR, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in liver transplant patients, a population-based study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(3):261, 2017

Glantz A, Marschall H, Mattsson L: Intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy: relationships between bile acid levels and fetal complication rates. Hepatology 40:467, 2004

Goh GB, McCullough AJ: Natural history of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Dig Dis Sci 61:1226, 2016

Greenberger NJ, Paumgartner G: Disease of the gallbladder and bile ducts. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2422

Ha JF, Phillips M, Faulkner K: Splenic artery aneurysm rupture in pregnancy. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 146(2):133, 2009

Hacker FM, Whalen PS, Lee VR, et al: Maternal and fetal outcomes of pancreatitis in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213:568, 2015

Hagström H, Höijer J, Ludvigsson JF, et al: Adverse outcomes of pregnancy in women with non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. Liver Int 36:268, 2016

Heard KJ: Acetylcysteine for acetaminophen poisoning. N Engl J Med 359(3):285, 2008

Hernandez A, Petrov MS, Brooks DC, et al: Acute pancreatitis and pregnancy: a 10-year single center experience. J Gastrointest Surg 11:1623, 2007

Herrera CA, Manuck TA, Stoddard GJ, et al: Perinatal outcomes associated with intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(14):1913, 2018

Hill JB, Sheffield JS, Kim MJ, et al: Risk of hepatitis B transmission in breast-fed infants of chronic hepatitis B carriers. Obstet Gynecol 99(6):1049, 2002

Hodgman MJ, Garrard AR: A review of acetaminophen poisoning. Crit Care Clin 28(4):499, 2012

Hoofnagle JH, Björnsson ES: Drug-induced liver injury—types and phenotypes. N Engl J med 381(3):264, 2019

Ibrahim SH, Jonas MM, Taylor SA, et al: Liver diseases in the perinatal period: interactions between mother and infants. Hepatology 71(4):1474, 2020

Indolfi G, Azzari C, Resti M: Hepatitis: immunoregulation in pregnancy and perinatal transmission of HCV. Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol 11:6, 2014

Isoherranen N, Thummel KE: Drug metabolism and transport during pregnancy: how does drug disposition change during pregnancy and what are the mechanisms that cause such changes? Drug Metab Dispos 41(2):256, 2013

Jin H, Zhao Y, Zhang X, et al: Case-fatality risk of pregnant women with acute viral hepatitis type E: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Epidemiol Infect 144(10):2098, 2016

Jorge AM, Keswani RN, Veerappan A, et al: Non-operative management of symptomatic cholelithiasis in pregnancy is associated with frequent hospitalizations. J Gastrointest Surg 19:598, 2015

Jourdain G, Ngo-Giang-Huong N, Harrison L, et al: Tenofovir versus placebo to prevent perinatal transmission of hepatitis B. N Engl J Med 378(10):911, 2018
Jung HS, Choi SH, Noh JH, et al: Healthy twin birth after autologous islet transplantation in a pancreatectomized patient due to a benign tumor. Transplant Proc 39(5):1723, 2007
Juo YY, Khrucharoen U, Sanaiha Y, et al: Cumulative financial burden of readmissions for biliary pancreatitis in pregnant women. Obstet Gynecol 132(2):415, 2018
Kanzaki Y, Kondoh E, Kawasaki K, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in liver transplant recipients: a 15-year single-center experience. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 42(11):1476, 2016
Kawakita T, Parikh LI, Ramsey PS, et al: Predictors of adverse neonatal outcomes in intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213:570, 2015
Khan F, Rowe I, Martin B, et al: Outcomes of pregnancy in patients with known Budd-Chiari syndrome. World J Hepatol 9(21):945, 2017
Knight M, Nelson-Piercy C, Kurinczuk JJ, et al: A prospective national study of acute fatty liver of pregnancy in the UK. Gut 57(7):951, 2008
Ko CW, Beresford SA, Schulte SJ, et al: Incidence, natural history, and risk factors for biliary sludge and stones during pregnancy. Hepatology 41(2):359, 2005
Ko CW, Napolitano PG, Lee SP, et al: Physical activity, maternal metabolic measures, and the incidence of gallbladder sludge or stones during pregnancy: a randomized trial. Am J Perinatol 31:39, 2014
Kwon H, Lee M, Park HS, et al: Laparoscopic management is feasible for nonobstetric surgical disease in all trimesters of pregnancy. Surg Endosc 32(6):2643, 2018
Kushner T, Shaw PA, Kalra A, et al: Incidence, determinants and outcomes of pregnancy-associated hepatitis B flares: a regional hospital-based cohort study. Liver Int 38(5):813, 2018
Lammert F, Gurusamy K, Ko CW, et al: Gallstones. Nat Rev Dis Primers 2:16024, 2016
Lee RH, Goodwin TM, Greenspoon J, et al: The prevalence of intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy in a primarily Latina Los Angeles population. J Perinatol 26(9):527, 2006
Lee WM, Dienstag JL: Toxic and drug-induced hepatitis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2366
Li M, Bu Q, Gong W, et al: Hepatitis E virus infection and its associated adverse feto-maternal outcomes among pregnant women in Qinhuangdao, China. J Matern Neonatal Med 33(21):3647, 2020
Lim JK, Nguyen MH, Kim WR, et al: Prevalence of chronic hepatitis B virus infection in the United States. Am J Gastroenterol 115(9):1429, 2020
Lisman T, Bernal W: Hemostatic issues in pregnancy-induced liver disease. Thromb Res 151 Suppl 1:S78, 2017
Liu J, Ghaziani TT, Wolf JL: Acute fatty liver disease of pregnancy: updates in pathogenesis, diagnosis, and management. Am J Gastroenterol 112(6):838, 2017a
Liu J, Murray AM, Mankus EB, et al: Adjuvant use of rifampin for refractory intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 132(3):678, 2018
Liu J, Zhang S, Liu M, et al: Maternal pre-pregnancy infection with hepatitis B virus and the risk of preterm birth: a population-based cohort study. Lancet Glob Health 5(6):e624, 2017b
Luo XL, Zhang WY: Obstetrical disease spectrum in China: an epidemiological study of 111,767 cases in 2011. Chin Med J (Engl) 128:1137, 2015
Lydon-Rochelle M, Holt VL, Martin DP, et al: Association between method of delivery and maternal rehospitalization. JAMA 283(18):2411, 2000
Madej A, Mazanowska N, Szpotańska-Sikorska M, et al: Delivery method in patients after liver or kidney transplantation. Transplant Proc 50(7):2150, 2018
Malik A, Khawaja A, Sheikh L: Wilson's disease in pregnancy: case series and review of literature. BMC Res Notes 6:421, 2013
Marschall HU, Shemer EW, Ludvigsson JF, et al: Intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy and associated hepatobiliary disease: a population-based cohort study. Hepatology 58(4):1385, 2013
Mastrobattista JM, Gomez-Lobo V: Pregnancy after solid organ transplantation. Obstet Gynecol 112:919, 2008
Matos A, Bernardes J, Ayres-de-Campos D, et al: Antepartum fetal cerebral hemorrhage not predicted by current surveillance methods in cholestasis of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 89:803, 1997
Mattila M, Kemppainen H, Isoniemi H, et al: Pregnancy outcomes after liver transplantation in Finland. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 96(9):1106, 2017
McCormack AL, Rabie N, Whittemore B, et al: HSV hepatitis in pregnancy: a review of the literature. Obstet Gynecol Surv 74(2):93, 2019
McMenamin MB, Jackson AD, Lambert J, et al: Obstetric management of hepatitis C-positive mothers: analysis of vertical transmission in 559 mother-infant pairs. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199:315.e1, 2008
Morton A, Laurie J: Physiological changes of pregnancy and the Swansea criteria in diagnosing acute fatty liver of pregnancy. Obstet Med 11(3):126, 2018
Nelson DB, Byrne JJ, Cunningham FG: Acute fatty liver of pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 63(1):152, 2020
Nelson DB, Yost NP, Cunningham FG: Acute fatty liver of pregnancy: clinical outcomes and expected durations of recovery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(5):456.e1, 2013
Nelson DB, Yost NP, Cunningham FG: Hemostatic dysfunction with acute fatty liver of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 124:40, 2014
Nelson NP, Weng MK, Hofmeister MG, et al: Prevention of hepatitis A virus infection in the United States: recommendations of the advisory committee on immunization practices. MMWR 69(5):1-38, 2020
Organ Procurement and Transplantation Network: National Data. Virginia, 2020. Available at: https://optn.transplant.hrsa.gov/data/view-data-reports/national-data/. Accessed July 10, 2020
Ornoy A, Koren G. SSRIs and SNRIs (SRI) in pregnancy: effects on the course of pregnancy and the offspring: how far are we from having all the answers? Int J Mol Sci 20(10):2370, 2019
Oto A, Ernst R, Ghulmiyyah L, et al: The role of MR cholangiopancreatography in the evaluation of pregnant patients with acute pancreaticobiliary disease. Br J Radiol 82(976):279, 2009
Othman MO, Stone E, Hashimi M, et al: Conservative management of cholelithiasis and its complications in pregnancy is associated with recurrent symptoms and more emergency department visits. Gastrointest Endosc 76(3):564, 2012
Ovadia C, Lövgren-Sandblom A, Edwards LA, et al: Therapeutic plasma exchange as a novel treatment for severe intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy: case series and mechanism of action. J Clin Apher 33(6):638, 2018
Ovadia C, Seed PT, Sklavounos A, et al: Association of adverse perinatal outcomes of intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy with biochemical markers: results of aggregate and individual patient data meta-analyses. Lancet 393(10174):899, 2019
Ozel A, Alici Davutoglu E, Eric Ozdemir M, et al: Assessment of fetal left ventricular modified myocardial performance index and its prognostic significance for adverse perinatal outcome in intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 12:1, 2018
Palatnik A, Rinella ME: Medical and obstetric complications among pregnant women with liver cirrhosis. Obstet Gynecol 129(6):1118, 2017
Pan CQ, Duan Z, Dai E, et al: Tenofovir to prevent hepatitis B transmission in mothers with high viral load. N Engl J Med 374:2324, 2016
Parízek A, Simják P, Cerný A, et al: Efficacy and safety of ursodeoxycholic acid in patients with intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy. Ann Hepatol 15(5):757, 2016
Pearl JP, Price RR, Tonkin AE, et al: SAGES guidelines for the use of laparoscopy during pregnancy. Surg Endosc 31(10):3767, 2017
Pfeiffenberger J, Beinhardt S, Gotthardt DN, et al: Pregnancy in Wilson's disease: management and outcome. Hepatology 67(4):1261, 2018
Pietrangelo A: Iron and the liver. Liver Int 36:116, 2016
Portillo-Sanchez P, Bril F, Maximos M, et al: High prevalence of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus and normal plasma aminotransferase levels. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 100(6):2231, 2015
Post JJ: Update on hepatitis C and implications for pregnancy. Obstet Med 10(4):157, 2017
Prasad M, Saade GR, Sandoval G, et al: Hepatitis C virus antibody screening in a cohort of pregnant women: identifying seroprevalence and risk factors. Obstet Gynecol 135(4):778, 2020
Puljic A, Salati J, Doss A, et al: Outcomes of pregnancies complicated by liver cirrhosis, portal hypertension, or esophageal varices. J Matern Fetal Med 29:506, 2016
Ramin KD, Ramin SM, Richey SD, et al: Acute pancreatitis in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 173:187, 1995
Ramírez-Fuentes C, Martí-Bonmatí L, Torregrosa A, et al: Variations in the size of focal nodular hyperplasia on magnetic resonance imaging. Radiologia 55(6):499, 2013
Reddick KLB, Jhaveri R, Gandhi M, et al: Pregnancy outcomes associated with viral hepatitis. J Viral Hepat 18(7):e394, 2011
Reichert MC, Lammert F: ABCB4 gene aberrations in human liver disease: an evolving spectrum. Semin Liver Dis 38(4):299, 2018
Renzulli M, Clemente A, Tovoli F, et al: Hepatocellular adenoma: an unsolved diagnostic enigma. World J Gastroenterol 25(20):2442, 2019
Reyes H: What have we learned about intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy? Hepatology 63:4, 2016
Rifai K, Mix H, Krusche S, et al: No evidence of substantial growth progression or complications of large focal nodular hyperplasia during pregnancy. Scand J Gastroenterol 48(1):88, 2013
Riggs BS, Bronstein AC, Kulig K, et al: Acute acetaminophen overdose during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 74:247, 1989
Ringers J, Bloemenkamp K, Francisco N, et al: Auxiliary or orthotopic liver transplantation for acute fatty liver of pregnancy: case series and review of the literature. BJOG 123(8):1394, 2016
Rodríguez M, Sprohnle A, Muñoz J, et al: Treatment of intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy with ursodeoxycholic acid associated with improvement

of fetal first-degree atrioventricular block. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 52(6):801, 2018
Rogan SC, Beigi RH: Treatment of viral infections in pregnancy. Clin Perinatol 46:235, 2019
Rossi RM, Wolfe C, Brokamp R, et al: Reported prevalence of maternal hepatitis C virus infection in the United States. Obstet Gynecol 135(2):387, 2020
Roumiantsev S, Shah U, Westra SJ, et al: Case records of the Massachusetts general hospital. Case 20–2015. A newborn girl with hypotension coagulopathy, anemia, and hyperbilirubinemia. N Engl J Med 372:2542, 2015
Rumack BH, Matthew H: Acetaminophen poisoning and toxicity. Pediatrics 55:871, 1975
Salgia RJ, Brown K: Diagnosis and management of hereditary hemochromatosis. Clin Liver Dis 19:187, 2015
Schillie S, Vellozzi C, Reingold A, et al: Prevention of hepatitis B virus infection in the United States: recommendations of the advisory committee on immunization practices. MMWR 67(1):1, 2018
Schillie S, Wester C, Osborne M, et al: CDC recommendations for hepatitis C screening among adults—United States, 2020. MMWR 69(2):1, 2020
Schmidt LE, Larsen FS: MELD score as a predictor of liver failure and death in patients with acetaminophen-induced liver injury. Hepatology 45(3):789, 2007
Sethi S, Thosani N, Banerjee S: Radiation-free ERCP in pregnancy: a "sound" approach to leaving no stone unturned. Dig Dis Sci 60:2604, 2015
Sheffield J, Roberts S, Laibl V, et al: The efficacy of an accelerated hepatitis B vaccination program during pregnancy. Abstract No. 212. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:S73, 2006
Sheiner E, Ohel I, Levy A, et al: Pregnancy outcome in women with pruritus gravidarum. J Reprod Med 51:394, 2006
Shi Z, Tang Y, Wang H, et al: Breastfeeding of newborns by mothers carrying hepatitis B virus: a meta-analysis and systematic review. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 165(9):837, 2011
Shigemi D, Aso S, Matsui H, et al: Safety of laparoscopic surgery for benign diseases during pregnancy: a nationwide retrospective cohort study. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 26(3):501, 2019
Sibai BM: Imitators of severe preeclampsia. Obstet Gynecol 109:956, 2007
Sims HF, Brackett JC, Powell CK, et al: The molecular basis of pediatric long chain 3-hydroxyacyl-CoA dehydrogenase deficiency associated with maternal acute fatty liver of pregnancy. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 92:841, 1995
Smith EA, Jacques-Carroll L, Walker TY, et al: The national Perinatal Hepatitis B Prevention Program, 1994–2008. Pediatrics 129(4):609, 2012
Snidjewind IJ, Smit C, Schutten M, et al: Low mother-to-child-transmission rate of hepatitis C virus in cART treated HIV-1 infected mothers. J Clin Virol 68:11, 2015
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM), Dionne-Odom J, Tita AT, et al: Hepatitis B in pregnancy screening, treatment, and prevention of vertical transmission. Consult Series No. 38. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214:6, 2016
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM), Hughes BL, Page CM, et al: Hepatitis C in pregnancy: screening, treatment, and management. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(5):B2, 2017
Stewart RD, Sheffield JS: Hepatitis B vaccination in pregnancy in the United States. Vaccines 1:167, 2013
Sticova E, Jirsa M, Pawlowska J: New insights in genetic cholestasis: from molecular mechanisms to clinical implications. Can J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2018:2313675, 2018
Stinton LM, Shaffer EA: Epidemiology of gallbladder disease: cholelithiasis and cancer. Gut Liver 6:172, 2012
Stokkeland K, Ludvigsson JF, Hultcrantz R, et al: Increased risk of preterm birth in women with autoimmune hepatitis—a nationwide cohort study. Liver Int 36:76, 2016
Strehlow SL, Pathak B, Goodwin TM, et al: The mechanical PR interval in fetuses of women with intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203:455.e1, 2010
Sylvester-Armstrong KR, Duff P: Evidence for use of tenofovir in pregnancy to prevent perinatal transmission of hepatitis B infection. Clin Obstet Gynecol 62(4):835, 2019
Tan J, Surti B, Saab S: Pregnancy and cirrhosis. Liver Transpl 14(8):1081, 2008
Taney J, Anastasio H, Paternostro A, et al: Placental abruption with delayed fetal compromise in maternal acetaminophen toxicity. Obstet Gynecol 130(1):159, 2017
Tang M, Xu JM, Song SS, et al: What may cause fetus loss from acute pancreatitis in pregnancy: analysis of 54 cases. Medicine (Baltimore) 97(7):e9755, 2018
Tang S, Mayo MJ, Rodriguez-Frias E, et al: Safety and utility of ERCP during pregnancy. Gastrointest Endosc 69:453, 2009
Tang SJ, Rodriguez-Frias E, Singh S, et al: Acute pancreatitis during pregnancy. Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 8(1):85, 2010
Tovo PA, Calitri C, Scolfaro C, et al: Vertically acquired hepatitis C virus infection: correlates of transmission and disease progression. World J Gastroenterol 22:1382, 2016
Towers CV, Asrat T, Rumney P: The presence of hepatitis B surface antigen and deoxyribonucleic acid in amniotic fluid and cord blood. Am J Obstet Gynecol 184:1514, 2001
Tran TT, Ahn J, Reau NS: ACG clinical guideline: Liver disease and pregnancy. Am J Gastroenterol 111:176, 2016
Tsilimigras DI, Rahnemai-Azar AA, Ntanasis-Stathopoulos I, et al: Current approaches in the management of hepatic adenomas. J Gastrointest Surg 23(1):199, 2019
Turhan AN, Gönenç M, Kapan S, et al: Acute biliary pancreatitis related with pregnancy: a 5-year single center experience. Ulus Travma Acil Cerrahi Derg 16(2):160, 2010
Urganci N, Arapoglu M, Akyildiz B, et al: Neonatal cholestasis resulting from vertical transmission of hepatitis A infection. Pediatr Infect Dis J 22(4):381, 2003
US Preventive Services Task Force, Owens DK, Davidson KW, et al: Screening for hepatitis B virus infection in pregnant women: US Preventive Services Task Force reaffirmation recommendation statement. JAMA 322(4):349, 2019
US Preventive Services Task Force: Screening for hepatitis C virus infection in adolescents and adults: US Preventive Services Task Force recommendation statement: JAMA 323:970, 2020
Usta IM, Barton JR, Amon EA, et al: Acute fatty liver of pregnancy: an experience in the diagnosis and management of fourteen cases. Am J Obstet Gynecol 171:1342, 1994
Vigil-de Gracia P, Montufar-Rueda C: Acute fatty liver of pregnancy: diagnosis, treatment, and outcome based on 35 consecutive cases. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 24(9):1143, 2011
Wang PH, Yang MJ, Lee WL, et al: Acetaminophen poisoning in late pregnancy. A case report. J Reprod Med 42:367, 1997
Wang S, Li SL, Cao YX, et al: Noninvasive Swansea criteria are valuable alternatives for diagnosing acute fatty liver of pregnancy in a Chinese population. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(24):2951, 2017
Wen WH, Chen HL, Ting-Fang Shih T, et al: Long-term growth and bone development in children of HBV-infected mothers with and without fetal exposure to tenofovir disoproxil fumarate. J Hepatol 72(6):1082, 2020
Westbrook RH, Yeoman AD, Kriese S, et al: Outcomes of pregnancy in women with autoimmune hepatitis. J Autoimmun 38(2–3):J239, 2012
Wiest DB, Chang E, Fanning D, et al: Antenatal pharmacokinetics and placental transfer of *N*-acetylcysteine in chorioamnionitis for fetal neuroprotection. J Pediatr 165:672, 2014
Wikström Shemer E, Marschall HU, Ludvigsson JF, et al: Intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy and associated adverse pregnancy and fetal outcomes: a 12-year population-based cohort study. BJOG 120(6):717, 2013
Wong M, Hills F, Vogler K, et al: Acute fatty liver of pregnancy from 18 weeks gestation. Hepatology 71(6):2167, 2020
Wood AM, Grotegut CA, Ronald J, et al: Identification and management of abdominal wall varices in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 132(4):882, 2018a
Wood AM, Livingston EG, Hughes BL, et al: Intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy: a review of diagnosis and management. Obstet Gynecol Surv 73(2):103, 2018b
Wu T, Zhu FC, Huang SJ, et al: Safety of the hepatitis E vaccine for pregnant women: a preliminary analysis. Hepatology 55(6):2038, 2012
Wu Z, Huang P, Gong Y, et al: Treating acute fatty liver of pregnancy with artificial liver support therapy: systematic review. Medicine (Baltimore) 97(38):e12473, 2018
Xanthakos SA, Jenkins TM, Kleiner DE, et al: Teen-LABS consortium. High prevalence of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease in adolescents undergoing bariatric surgery. Gastroenterology 149:623, 2015
Yarrington CD, Cantonwine DE, Seely EW, et al: The association of alanine aminotransferase in early pregnancy with gestational diabetes. Metab Syndr Relat Disord 14(5):254, 2016
Yi P, Chen R, Huang Y, et al: Management of mother-to-child transmission of hepatitis B virus: propositions and challenges. J Clin Virol 77:32, 2016
Yule CS, Holcomb DS, Kraus AC, et al: Cholestasis: a prospective study of perinatal outcomes and time to symptom improvement. Am J Perinatol 38(5):414, 2021
Zaman K, Dudman S, Stene-Johansen K, et al: HEV study protocol: design of a cluster-randomised, blinded trial to assess the safety, immunogenicity and effectiveness of hepatitis E vaccine HEV 239 (Hecolin) in women of childbearing age in rural Bangladesh. BMJ Open 10(1):e033702, 2020
Zhang J, Zhang XF, Huang SJ, et al: Long-term efficacy of a hepatitis E vaccine. N Engl J Med 372:914, 2015
Zipori Y, Bachar G, Farago N, et al: Vaginal progesterone treatment for the prevention of preterm birth and intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy: a case-control study. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 253:117, 2020

CHAPTER 59

Hematological Disorders

Pregnant women are susceptible to several hematological abnormalities that may affect any woman of childbearing age. These include chronic disorders such as hereditary anemias, immunological thrombocytopenia, and hematological malignancies. Other disorders arise from pregnancy-induced demands. Two are iron deficiency and megaloblastic anemias. Pregnancy may also unmask underlying hematological conditions. Importantly, pregnancy induces physiological changes that often confuse diagnosis and assessment of these disorders (Chap. 4, p. 60).

ANEMIAS

Definition and Incidence

Normal values for concentrations of many cellular elements during pregnancy are listed in the Appendix (p. 1227). The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (1998) defined anemia in iron-supplemented pregnant women using a cutoff of the 5th percentile, which is 11 g/dL in the first and third trimesters and 10.5 g/dL in the second trimester. Notably, these were not based on a U.S. population. Table 59-1 describes the distribution of hematocrit values of 480 iron-sufficient women at Parkland Hospital (Zofkie, 2020). Using these data, values below 30 percent seem reasonable to define anemia.

The modest fall in hemoglobin and hematocrit values during pregnancy stems from a relatively greater expansion of plasma volume compared with red cell volume (Georgieff, 2020). The disproportion between the rates at which plasma and erythrocytes add to the maternal circulation is greatest during the second trimester. Late in pregnancy, plasma expansion essentially ceases, while hemoglobin mass continues to accrue.

The causes of more common anemias encountered in pregnancy are listed in Table 59-2. Their frequency is dependent on

TABLE 59-1. Hematocrit Values in Pregnancy

	Percent		
	5th percentile	50th percentile	75th percentile
1st trimester	33.0	37.5	41.2
2nd trimester	30.5	35.7	39.2
Predelivery	30.7	36.5	40.5

TABLE 59-2. Causes of Anemia During Pregnancy

Acquired
Iron-deficiency anemia
Acute blood-loss anemia
Anemia of chronic disease
Megaloblastic anemia
Hemolytic anemias
Aplastic or hypoplastic anemia
Hereditary
Thalassemias
Sickle-cell hemoglobinopathies
Other hemoglobinopathies
Hemolytic anemias

multiple factors such as geography, ethnicity, socioeconomic level, nutrition, preexisting iron status, and prenatal iron supplementation (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021). In the United States, the prevalence of anemia in pregnancy is 3 to 38 percent (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 1989).

Initial evaluation of a pregnant woman with moderate anemia includes measurements of hemoglobin, hematocrit, red cell indices, and serum iron or ferritin levels; careful examination of a peripheral blood smear; and a sickle-cell preparation if the woman has African lineage (Appendix p. 1227).

Effects on Pregnancy Outcomes

Anemia is associated with several adverse pregnancy outcomes (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021; Rahmati, 2020). Most anemia studies during pregnancy describe large populations and nutritional anemias. In a Canadian study, 12 percent of more than 500,000 women had mild anemia defined by a hemoglobin concentration of 9.0 to 10.9 g/dL (Smith, 2019). These women had a 2.5-fold increased risk for blood transfusions. With moderate anemia, incidences of fetal-growth restriction, low 5-minute Apgar score, and perinatal mortality were increased. Ray and coworkers (2020) reported similar results. Correction of iron-deficiency anemia results in a lower transfusion rate with delivery (Ibinosa, 2020).

A seemingly paradoxical finding is that healthy pregnant women with higher hemoglobin concentrations also are at greater risk for adverse perinatal outcomes (von Tempelhoff, 2008). This may result from lower than average plasma volume expansion of pregnancy concurrent with normal red cell mass accrual. Scanlon and associates (2000) studied the relationship between maternal hemoglobin levels and rates of preterm or growth-restricted newborns. Women whose hemoglobin concentration was three standard deviations *above* the mean at 12 or 18 weeks' gestation had a 1.3- to 1.8-fold greater incidence of fetal-growth restriction. Placental weight correlates negatively with maternal hemoglobin concentration (Larsen, 2016). These findings have led some to the illogical conclusion that withholding iron to cause iron-deficiency anemia will improve pregnancy outcomes (Ziaei, 2007).

Iron-deficiency Anemia

The two most common causes of anemia during pregnancy and the puerperium are iron deficiency and acute blood loss (Vandevijvere, 2013). In a typical singleton gestation, the maternal need for iron averages nearly 1000 mg (Chap. 4, p. 60). Multifetal gestational requirements are considerably higher (Ru, 2016). These amounts exceed the iron stores of most women and result in iron-deficiency anemia unless supplementation is provided.

In the third trimester, additional iron is needed to augment maternal hemoglobin levels and for transport to the fetus. Because the amount of iron diverted to the fetus is similar in a normal and in an iron-deficient mother, the newborn of a severely anemic mother does not suffer from iron-deficiency anemia. Neonatal iron stores are related to maternal iron status and to timing of cord clamping.

Iron deficiency often manifests as an appreciable drop in hemoglobin concentration. Classic morphological evidence is erythrocyte hypochromia and microcytosis (Fig. 59-1). These may be less prominent in the pregnant woman. A mean corpuscular volume <80 fL is classically seen (Appendix, p. 1227) (James, 2021). Serum ferritin levels normally decline during pregnancy, and levels below 10 to 15 mg/L confirm iron-deficiency anemia. In addition, *hepcidin* levels drop in pregnancy. This hormone inhibits iron transport by binding to the iron-export channel ferroportin.

Routinely in pregnancy, daily oral supplementation with 30 to 60 mg of elemental iron and 400 μg of folic acid is recommended (World Health Organization, 2016). For iron-deficiency anemia, resolution and restitution of iron stores can be accomplished with simple iron salts that provide approximately 200 mg daily of *elemental iron*. These include ferrous sulfate, fumarate, or gluconate. If a woman cannot take oral iron preparations, parenteral therapy is given. Although both are administered intravenously, ferrous sucrose is safer than iron dextran (Auerbach, 2020; Pavord, 2020).

Moderate iron-deficiency anemia responds to adequate iron therapy, and the hematological response is an elevated

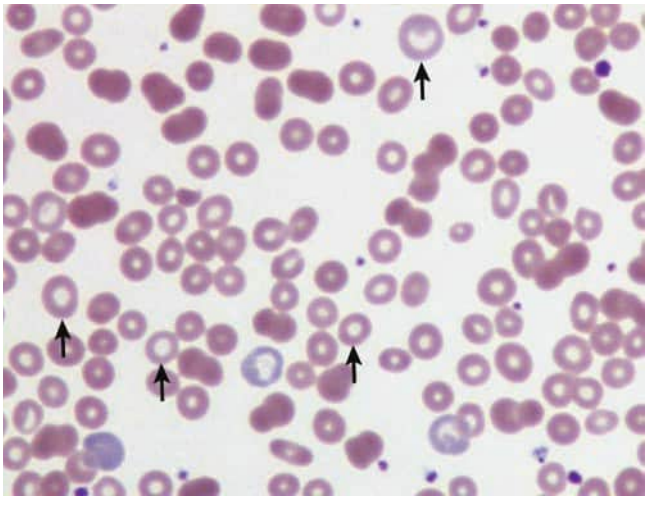


FIGURE 59-1 In this peripheral blood smear, iron-deficiency anemia is reflected by scattered microcytic and hypochromic red cells (*arrows*). (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Siayareh Rambally.)

reticulocyte count. In gravidas, the rise of hemoglobin concentration or hematocrit is typically slower than in nonpregnant women due to the larger plasma volumes of pregnancy. Hemoglobin and ferritin levels show equivalent rises in women treated with either oral or parenteral iron therapy (Breymann, 2017; Daru, 2016; Neogi, 2019).

Anemia from Acute Blood Loss

In early pregnancy, anemia caused by acute blood loss is common with abortion, ectopic pregnancy, and hydatidiform mole. Postpartum, anemia commonly stems from obstetrical hemorrhage. Massive hemorrhage demands immediate treatment and is described in Chapter 44 (p. 771). If a moderately anemic woman—defined by a hemoglobin value of approximately 7 g/dL—is hemodynamically stable, is able to ambulate without adverse symptoms, and is not septic, then blood transfusions are not indicated. Instead, oral iron therapy is provided for at least 3 months.

Anemia of Chronic Disease

Diseases associated with chronic inflammation can cause mild to moderate anemia. Anemia stems from several cytokines produced by inflammatory cells. These restrict erythropoiesis and shorten red cell lifespan. Hepcidin levels are elevated with chronic inflammation, and this inhibits iron-exporting activity from enterocytes (Ross, 2017). Anemia is usually characterized by slightly hypochromic and microcytic erythrocytes, low transferrin saturation, and a high serum ferritin level (Ganz, 2019). Along with iron deficiency, it is the most common form of anemia worldwide.

During pregnancy, women with chronic disorders may develop anemia for the first time. In those with preexisting anemia, it may worsen as plasma volume expands. Frequent causes include chronic renal insufficiency, inflammatory bowel disease, and connective tissue disorders. Others are granulomatous infections and malignant neoplasms.

Chronic renal insufficiency is the most common disorder that we have encountered during pregnancy as a cause of this anemia type. Some cases are accompanied by erythropoietin deficiency. During pregnancy in women with mild chronic renal disease, the degree of red cell mass expansion is inversely related to renal impairment (Chap. 56, p. 1004). At the same time, plasma volume expansion usually is normal, and thus anemia severity intensifies (Cunningham, 1990).

For treatment, adequate iron stores must be ensured. *Recombinant erythropoietin*, with or without intravenous iron, has been used to treat anemia stemming from chronic disease (Ganz, 2019). In pregnancies complicated by chronic renal insufficiency, recombinant erythropoietin is usually considered when the hematocrit approximates 20 percent (Cyganek, 2011). One side effect is hypertension, which is already prevalent in women with renal disease. Red cell aplasia and antierythropoietin antibodies also have been reported (McCoy, 2008).

Megaloblastic Anemia

Folic Acid Deficiency

Megaloblastic anemias are characterized by blood and bone marrow abnormalities from impaired DNA synthesis. This leads to large cells with arrested nuclear maturation, whereas the cytoplasm matures more normally. Worldwide, the pregnancy prevalence of this anemia varies considerably but is low in the United States.

Megaloblastic anemia developing during pregnancy almost always results from folic acid deficiency. In the past, this condition was called *pernicious anemia of pregnancy*. It usually is found in women who do not consume fresh green leafy vegetables, legumes, or animal protein. As folate deficiency and anemia worsen, anorexia often intensifies and further aggravates the dietary deficiency. Other causes are malabsorption syndromes that include tropical sprue, extensive jejunal resection, gastrectomy, and Crohn disease; hemolytic anemias; malignancy; and some antifolate drugs (Hoffbrand, 2018).

Nonpregnant women need 50 to 100 μg of folic acid daily. During pregnancy, requirements rise, and 400 μg/d is recommended. The earliest biochemical evidence is low plasma folic acid concentrations (Appendix, p. 1227). Early morphological changes usually include hypersegmented neutrophils and macrocytic erythrocytes. As the anemia worsens, peripheral nucleated erythrocytes appear, and bone marrow examination discloses megaloblastic erythropoiesis. Anemia may then become severe, and thrombocytopenia, leukopenia, or both may develop. The fetus and placenta effectively extract folate from maternal circulation, and the fetus is not anemic despite severe maternal anemia.

For treatment, 5 to 15 mg of oral folic acid is provided with iron, and a nutritious diet is encouraged (Hoffbrand, 2018). At 4 to 7 days of treatment, the reticulocyte count is higher, and leukopenia and thrombocytopenia are corrected.

For anemia prevention, a diet should contain sufficient folic acid. Moreover, the role of folate deficiency in the genesis of neural-tube defects is well studied (Chap. 15, p. 276).

Vitamin B_{12} Deficiency

With pregnancy, vitamin B_{12} levels are lower than nonpregnant values because levels of binding proteins, namely, the transcobalamins decline. However, in most gravidas, megaloblastic anemia is rarely from vitamin B_{12} deficiency. Of predisposing conditions, vitamin B_{12} deficiency in pregnancy is more likely encountered following gastric resection. Women who have undergone total gastrectomy require 1000 μg of intramuscular vitamin B_{12} (cyanocobalamin) monthly. Those with a partial gastrectomy usually do not need supplementation, but adequate serum vitamin B_{12} levels should be ensured (Appendix, p. 1230). Other causes of megaloblastic anemia from vitamin B_{12} deficiency include Crohn disease, ileal resection, some drugs, and bacterial overgrowth in the small bowel (Hoffbrand, 2018). *Addisonian pernicious anemia* results from absent intrinsic factor that is requisite for dietary vitamin B_{12} absorption. This autoimmune disorder usually has its onset after age 40 years, which accounts for its uncommon occurrence in pregnancy (Govindappagari, 2019).

Hemolytic Anemia

Several conditions accelerate erythrocyte destruction. Hemolysis may be a primary disorder, and sickle-cell disease and

hereditary spherocytosis are examples. In others, hemolysis complicates an underlying condition such as systemic lupus erythematosus or preeclampsia. Microangiopathic hemolytic anemia from malignancy has been reported in pregnancy (Happe, 2016).

Autoimmune Hemolysis

The cause of aberrant antibody production is unknown. Typically, both the direct and indirect antiglobulin (Coombs) tests are positive. Anemias caused by these factors may be due to warm-active autoantibodies (80 to 90 percent), cold-active antibodies, or a combination. These syndromes may also be classified as primary (idiopathic) or secondary due to underlying diseases or other factors. Examples of the secondary group include lymphomas and leukemias, connective tissue diseases, infections, chronic inflammatory diseases, and drug-induced antibodies (Knuesel, 2018). *Cold-agglutinin disease* may be induced by infectious etiologies such as *Mycoplasma pneumoniae* or Epstein-Barr viral mononucleosis. Hemolysis and positive antiglobulin test results may be the consequence of either immunoglobulin M (IgM) or immunoglobulin G (IgG) antierythrocyte antibodies. When thrombocytopenia is comorbid, it is termed *Evans syndrome* (Wright, 2013).

In pregnancy, hemolysis can be markedly accelerated. Low-dose rituximab (Truxima)—100mg weekly for 4 weeks—coupled with prednisone, is first-line treatment (Luzzatto, 2018). Coincidental thrombocytopenia usually corrects with therapy. Transfusion of red cells is complicated by antierythrocyte antibodies, but warming the donor cells to body temperature may decrease their destruction by cold agglutinins. In rare cases, the fetus may be involved (Maroto, 2020).

Drug-induced Hemolysis

These hemolytic anemias must be differentiated from other causes of autoimmune hemolysis. In most cases, hemolysis is mild and resolves with drug withdrawal. Subsequently, avoiding the drug is preventive. One mechanism is hemolysis induced through drug-mediated immunological injury to red cells. If bound to a red cell protein, the drug may act as a high-affinity hapten to which antidrug antibodies attach. An example is IgM antipenicillin or anticephalosporin antibodies. Garratty and colleagues (1999) described seven women with severe Coombs-positive hemolysis stimulated by cefotetan given as prophylaxis for obstetrical procedures. Alpha-methyldopa can cause similar hemolysis (Grigoriadis, 2013). Some other drugs, which include probenecid, quinidine, and rifampin, act as low-affinity haptens and adhere to cell membrane proteins. A frequent mechanism for drug-induced hemolysis relates to a congenital erythrocyte enzymatic defect, such as glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency (p. 1052).

Pregnancy-associated Hemolysis

Unexplained severe hemolytic anemia can develop during early pregnancy and resolves within months postpartum. Clear immune mechanisms or red cell defects are not contributory. Because the fetus–neonate also may demonstrate transient hemolysis, an immunological cause is suspected. Maternal corticosteroid treatment is often—but not always—effective (Kumar, 2001). We have cared for a woman who during each pregnancy developed severe hemolysis with anemia that responded to prednisone. Her fetuses were not affected, and hemolysis abated spontaneously after delivery.

In some cases, hemolysis is induced by conditions unique to pregnancy. Mild microangiopathic hemolysis with thrombocytopenia is relatively common with severe preeclampsia and eclampsia (Cunningham, 2015; Kenny, 2015). This HELLP (hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count) syndrome is discussed in Chapter 40 (p. 699). Another example is acute fatty liver of pregnancy, which causes moderate to severe hemolytic anemia (Chap. 58, p. 1033).

Paroxysmal Nocturnal Hemoglobinuria

Although commonly regarded as a hemolytic anemia, this hemopoietic stem cell disorder is characterized by formation of defective platelets, granulocytes, and erythrocytes. Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria is acquired and arises from one abnormal clone of cells, much like a neoplasm. In contrast, one mutated X-linked gene responsible for this condition is termed *PIG-A* because it codes for phosphatidylinositol glycan protein A. Resultant abnormal anchor proteins of the erythrocyte and granulocyte membrane make these cells unusually susceptible to lysis by complement. A serious complication is thrombosis, which is heightened in the hypercoagulable state of pregnancy.

Chronic hemolysis has an insidious onset, and its severity ranges from mild to lethal. Hemoglobinuria develops at irregular intervals and is not necessarily nocturnal. Hemolysis may be initiated by transfusions, infections, or surgery. Almost 40 percent of patients suffer venous thromboembolism (VTE) and may also experience renal failure, hypertension, and Budd-Chiari syndrome. To counter the VTE risk, prophylactic anticoagulation is recommended (Luzzato, 2018). The preferred treatment is eculizumab (Soliris), an antibody that inhibits complement activation (Kelly, 2015; Stefanovic, 2019). The drug is apparently safe in pregnancy (Sarno, 2019). Median survival after diagnosis of the syndrome is 10 years, and bone marrow transplantation is the definitive treatment.

During pregnancy, paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria can be serious and unpredictable. Complications may affect up to three fourths of affected women, and the maternal mortality rate in the past was 10 to 20 percent (de Guibert, 2011). Complications more often develop postpartum, and half of affected women develop VTE. Kelly and coworkers (2015) described 75 pregnancies in 61 affected women treated with eculizumab. They described no maternal deaths, but the stillbirth rate was 4 percent. Miyasaka and associates (2016) found similar results.

Bacterial Toxins

The most fulminant acquired hemolytic anemia encountered during pregnancy is caused by the exotoxin of *Clostridium perfringens* or by group A β-hemolytic streptococcus (Chap. 50, p. 890). In additional, endotoxin of gram-negative bacteria, that is, lipopolysaccharide, may be accompanied by hemolysis and mild to moderate anemia (Cox, 1991). For example, anemia often accompanies acute pyelonephritis. With normal erythropoietin production, red cell mass is restored following infection resolution (Cavenee, 1994; Dotters-Katz, 2013).

Inherited Erythrocyte Membrane Defects

The normal erythrocyte is a flexible biconcave disc that allows numerous cycles of reversible deformations. Several genes encode erythrocyte structural membrane proteins and intraerythrocytic enzymes. Various mutations can destabilize the lipid bilayer. The loss of lipids from the cell membrane causes a surface area deficiency and poorly deformable erythrocytes that undergo hemolysis (Iolascon, 2019). Anemia severity depends on the degree of rigidity. Erythrocyte morphology similarly is dependent on these factors, and these disorders are usually named after the most dominant red cell shape. Three examples are *hereditary spherocytosis*, *pyropoikilocytosis*, and *ovalocytosis*.

Hemolytic anemias that compose this group of inherited membrane defects are among the most common complicating pregnancy. Mutations are usually an autosomally dominant, variably penetrant α- and β-spectrin deficiency. Others are dominant or recessive gene mutations that result from deficiency of ankyrin, band 3, 4.1, and 4.2, or combinations of these (Luzzato, 2018; Rencic, 2017). The degrees of anemia and jaundice vary, and diagnosis is confirmed by identification of abnormal erythrocytes on peripheral smear and their increased osmotic fragility.

Spherocytic anemias may be associated with a crisis typified by severe anemia from accelerated hemolysis, and it develops in patients with an enlarged spleen. Infection can also accelerate hemolysis or suppress erythropoiesis to worsen anemia. An example of the latter is parvovirus B19 infection (Chap. 67, p. 1191). In severe cases, splenectomy reduces hemolysis, anemia, and jaundice.

In general, women with inherited erythrocyte membrane defects do well during pregnancy. Oral folic acid supplementation of 4 mg daily is given to sustain erythropoiesis. Women with hereditary spherocytosis cared for at Parkland Hospital had hematocrits ranging from 23 to 41 percent, with a mean of 31 (Maberry, 1992). Reticulocyte counts varied from 1 to 23 percent. Among 50 pregnancies in 23 women, eight women miscarried. Four of 42 infants were born preterm, but none was growth restricted. Infection in four women intensified hemolysis, and three of these required transfusions. Similar results were reported by Pajor and colleagues (1993).

Because these disorders are inherited, the newborn may be affected. Preconceptional counseling emphasizes folic acid supplementation and provides an opportunity to discuss prenatal diagnosis. Celkan and Alhaj (2008) report prenatal diagnosis via cordocentesis at 18 weeks' gestation and testing for osmotic fragility. Although fetal anemia is uncommon, newborns with hereditary spherocytosis may manifest hyperbilirubinemia and anemia shortly after birth.

Erythrocyte Enzyme Deficiencies

An intraerythrocytic deficiency of enzymes that permit anaerobic glucose metabolism may cause *hereditary nonspherocytic anemia*. Most of these mutations are autosomal recessive traits. Most episodes of severe anemia with these enzyme deficiencies are induced by drugs or infections.

Pyruvate kinase deficiency has a frequency of 1:10,000 persons and is associated with variable degrees of anemia (Luzzatto, 2018). Recurrent transfusions in homozygous carriers can lead to iron overload, and associated myocardial dysfunction should be monitored (Dolan, 2002). The fetus that is homozygous for this mutation may develop *hydrops fetalis* from anemia and heart failure (Chap. 18, p. 360).

Glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency is complex because there are more than 200 enzyme variants. The most common stem from a base substitution that leads to an amino acid replacement and a broad range of phenotypic severity (Luzzatto, 2018; Puig, 2013). In the homozygous or A variant, both X chromosomes are affected, and erythrocytes are markedly deficient in G6PD activity. Approximately 2 percent of African-American women are affected, and the heterozygous variant is found in 10 to 15 percent. In both cases, random X-chromosome inactivation—*lyonization*—results in variable enzyme activity.

During pregnancy, hemolysis severity in G6PD-deficient heterozygotes or homozygotes is related to enzyme activity. Anemia is usually episodic, but some variants induce chronic nonspherocytic hemolysis. Because young erythrocytes contain more enzyme activity, anemia stabilizes and corrects soon after the inciting cause is resolved.

These women are offered preconceptional counseling to discuss risks of adverse pregnancy outcomes, precipitating factors of hemolysis such as pyelonephritis and pneumonia, and the limited list of safe medications available for treatment during pregnancy. For example, macrodantin is used for pyelonephritis suppression in pregnancy but can induce hemolysis in those with G6PD deficiency. Because fetal and neonatal manifestations are possible, these patients should undergo genetic counseling, with possible partner testing, to assess fetal transmission risk.

■ Aplastic and Hypoplastic Anemia

Aplastic anemia is a grave complication characterized by pancytopenia and markedly hypocellular bone marrow (Young, 2018). The functional defect is a marked decline in the number of committed marrow stem cells. Etiologies are multiple, and the inciting cause can be identified in approximately a third of cases. These include immunological disorders, drugs, other chemicals, infection, irradiation, leukemia, and inherited conditions such as *Fanconi anemia* and *Diamond-Blackfan syndrome* (Green, 2009).

Immunosuppressive therapy is given, and in some nonresponders, eltrombopag (Promacta) is successful (Townsley, 2017; Young, 2018). Definitive treatment is bone marrow transplantation, and approximately three fourths of patients have a good response and long-term survival (Tichelli, 2020). Umbilical cord blood–derived stem cells also can serve as a potential transplant source (Moise, 2005; Pinto, 2008).

Pregnancy

Hypoplastic or aplastic anemia complicating pregnancy is rare. A study of 60 pregnancies complicated by aplastic anemia found that half were diagnosed during pregnancy (Bo, 2016). In another series of 19 pregnancies, the complication rate was 79 percent, but no women died (McGowan, 2019). *Pregnancy-*

induced hypoplastic anemia is rare, and the anemia and other cytopenias improve or remit following delivery or pregnancy termination (Choudhry, 2002; Edahiro, 2020). In some cases, anemia recurs in a subsequent pregnancy.

Diamond-Blackfan anemia is rare form of pure red cell hypoplasia. Approximately 40 percent of cases are familial and have autosomal dominant inheritance (Orfali, 2004). The response to glucocorticoid therapy is usually good. Continuous treatment is necessary, and most become at least partially transfusion dependent (Gansner, 2017). In a study of 64 pregnancies complicated by this syndrome, two thirds had problems related to placental vascular etiologies that included miscarriage, preeclampsia, preterm birth, fetal-growth restriction, or stillbirth (Faivre, 2006).

Gaucher disease is an autosomally recessive lysosomal enzyme deficiency characterized by deficient activity of *acid β-glucosidase*. Affected women have anemia and thrombocytopenia that usually worsens in pregnancy. Elstein and colleagues (1997) described six pregnant women whose disease improved with alglucerase enzyme replacement. Imiglucerase (Cerezyme) is human recombinant enzyme replacement therapy.

The major risks with hypoplastic anemia are hemorrhage and infection. Rates of preterm labor, preeclampsia, fetal-growth restriction, and stillbirth are increased (Bo, 2016). Management depends on gestational age, and supportive care includes continuous infection surveillance and prompt antimicrobial therapy. Granulocyte transfusions are given only during infections. Red cells are transfused to improve symptomatic anemia and routinely to maintain the hematocrit above 20 volumes percent. Platelet transfusions may be needed to control hemorrhage. Mortality rates reported since 1960 have averaged nearly 50 percent but have declined more recently (Giri, 2017).

Bone Marrow Transplantation

Several reports describe successful pregnancies in women who have undergone bone marrow transplantation. In their review, Sanders and coworkers (1996) reported 72 pregnancies in 41 such women. In the 52 pregnancies resulting in a liveborn neonate, almost half were complicated by preterm delivery or hypertension. Data from the National Cancer Institute regarding 102 pregnancies following transplantation showed 71 liveborns, of which 16 were preterm. Of all women, 20 percent had decreased hemopoiesis, and transfusions were required (Giri, 2017). Carter and associates (2006) reported decreased fertility but generally good pregnancy outcomes. Our experiences with a few of these women indicate that they have normal pregnancy-augmented erythropoiesis and total blood volume expansion. In pregnancy, cell-free DNA study results must account for donor DNA contributions (Duque-Afonso, 2018).

POLYCYTHEMIAS

Excessive erythrocytosis during pregnancy is usually secondary and related to chronic hypoxia. Etiologies include maternal congenital cyanotic cardiac disease or a chronic pulmonary disorder. In addition, we have encountered otherwise healthy pregnant women who were heavy smokers, had chronic bronchitis, and had hematocrits ranging from 55 to 60 volumes percent! If polycythemia is severe, the probability of a successful pregnancy outcome is low.

Polycythemia vera is a primary clonal myeloproliferative hemopoietic stem cell disorder characterized by excessive proliferation of erythroid, myeloid, and megakaryocytic precursors. Virtually all patients have a *JAK2* gene mutation (Spivak, 2018). Symptoms are related to greater blood viscosity, and thrombotic complications are common. Treatment of nonpregnant patients is with hydroxyurea or ruxolitinib.

Fetal loss rates are high in women with polycythemia vera, and pregnancy outcome may be improved with aspirin therapy (Bertozzi, 2018; Dewarrat, 2020). Women with a history of VTE are given prophylaxis with low-molecular-weight heparin (Stein, 2019). If cytoreduction is required during pregnancy, interferon alpha may be considered (Kreher, 2014).

HEMOGLOBINOPATHIES

■ Sickle-cell Hemoglobinopathies

Pathophysiology

Hemoglobin A is the most common hemoglobin tetramer and consists of two α- and two β-globin chains. Genes *HBA1* and *HBA2* each code for α-globin, whereas only *HBB* codes for β-globin. Sickle hemoglobin (hemoglobin S) originates from a single β-globin substitution of glutamic acid by valine, which stems from an A-for-T substitution. Hemoglobin C originates from a single β-globin substitution of glutamic acid by lysine, which stems from a T-for-C substitution. Hemoglobinopathies that can result in clinical features of the *sickle-cell syndrome* include sickle-cell anemia (Hb SS); sickle-cell hemoglobin C disease (Hb SC); sickle-cell β-thalassemia disease (either Hb S/B^0 or Hb S/B^+); and sickle-cell E disease (Hb SE). All are associated with higher pregnancy morbidity.

When deoxygenated, red cells containing hemoglobin S undergo sickling, and the hemoglobin aggregates (Fig. 59-2). Constant sickling and unsickling damages the cell membrane, and its shape may become irreversibly sickled. Events that slow

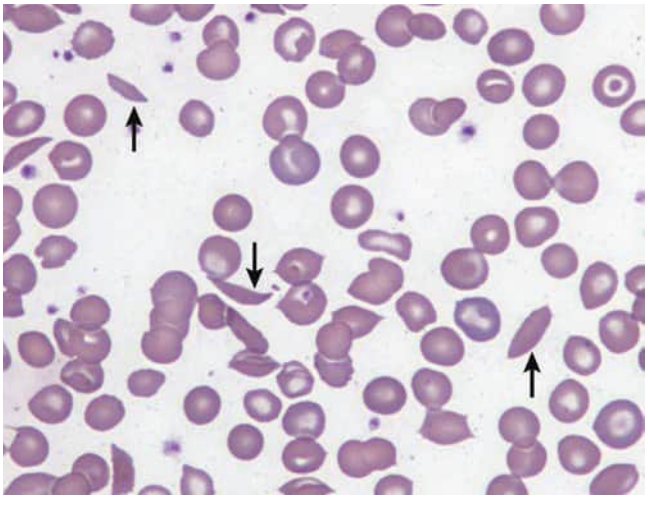


FIGURE 59-2 Peripheral smear of sickle cells (*arrows*) characteristic of sickle-cell anemia. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Imran Hitto.)

erythrocyte transit through the microcirculation include adhesion to endothelial cells, erythrocyte dehydration, and vasomotor dysregulation.

Clinically, sickling episodes are marked by ischemia and infarction in various organs. The *sickle-cell crisis* produces pain, which is often severe. Aplastic, megaloblastic, sequestration, and hemolytic crises can develop.

Chronic and acute changes from sickling include bony abnormalities such as osteonecrosis of femoral and humeral heads, renal medullary damage, autosplenectomy in homozygous SS patients but splenomegaly in other variants, hepatomegaly, ventricular hypertrophy, pulmonary infarctions, cerebrovascular accidents, leg ulcers, and a propensity for infection and sepsis (Benz, 2018; Ware, 2017). Pulmonary hypertension can develop and is found in 20 percent of adults with SS hemoglobin (Gladwin, 2008). Other sequelae are cerebrovascular aneurysms and sickle-cell vasculopathy (Buonanno, 2016).

Treatment

Good supportive care is essential to prevent mortality. Specific therapies are evolving, and many are still experimental. One treatment is hemoglobin F induction with drugs that stimulate γ-globin synthesis. Remember that hemoglobin F is prominent in fetal life (Chap. 7, p. 129). This induction raises hemoglobin F levels, which inhibits hemoglobin S polymerization. One agent is hydroxyurea, which augments hemoglobin F production and reduces the number of sickling episodes (Tshilolo, 2019). Hydroxyurea is teratogenic in animals. A preliminary 17-year surveillance of antenatally exposed children was reassuring (Ballas, 2009; Briggs, 2017).

Other agents include biologic antibody drugs and l-glutamine (Ataga, 2017, Niihara, 2018; Stefanovic, 2019). Various forms of hemopoietic cell transplantation are emerging as "cures" for sickle-cell syndromes and severe thalassemias (Oringanje, 2013; Kanter, 2021). Last, gene therapy has been accomplished by viral vector–mediated addition of a β-globin gene into stem cells (Harrison, 2019; Ribeil, 2017).

■ Sickle-cell Syndromes During Pregnancy

Pregnancy is a serious burden to women with any major sickle hemoglobinopathy, particularly those with hemoglobin SS (Table 59-3) (Kuo, 2016; Villers, 2008). Maternal mortality rates have improved, but perinatal morbidity and mortality rates remain formidable (Bae, 2021; Oteng-Ntim, 2015). Thus, women with sickle-cell hemoglobinopathies require close prenatal observation. Specifically, any factor that impairs erythropoiesis or increases red cell destruction aggravates the anemia. Prenatal folic acid supplementation with 4 mg daily is needed to support rapid red blood cell turnover.

TABLE 59-3. Pregnancy Morbidity with Hemoglobin SS and SC Disease

Outcome	Odds Ratios	
	Hb SS	Hb SC
Preeclampsia	2–3.1	2.0
Stillbirth	6.5	3.2
Preterm delivery	2–2.7	1.5
Growth restriction	2.8–3.9	1.5
Maternal mortality	11–23	11

From Boafor, 2016; Oteng-Ntim, 2015.

One danger is that a symptomatic woman may categorically be considered to be suffering from a sickle-cell crisis. As a result, serious obstetrical or medical problems that cause pain, anemia, or both may be overlooked. Examples are ectopic pregnancy, placental abruption, pyelonephritis, or appendicitis. Thus, a diagnosis of sickle-cell crisis should be applied only after all other possible causes have been excluded. Pain with sickle-cell syndromes is caused by intense sequestration of sickled erythrocytes and infarction in various organs, particularly bone marrow. These episodes develop acutely, especially late in pregnancy, during labor and delivery, and early in the puerperium.

No randomized trials have evaluated treatment during pregnancy. At minimum, intravenous fluids are given, and opioids are administered promptly for severe pain. Oxygen via nasal cannula may decrease the sickling intensity at the capillary level. We have found that red cell transfusions after the onset of severe pain do not dramatically relieve pain intensity and may not shorten its duration. Conversely, as discussed later, prophylactic transfusions almost always prevent further vaso-occlusive episodes and pain crises. Antenatal epidural analgesia may offer benefits for pain (Verstraete, 2012; Winder, 2011). Long term, affected women can become habituated to narcotics. This problem is highlighted by the elevated rates of neonatal abstinence syndrome, which is a constellation of withdrawal symptoms (Shirel, 2016).

Rates of covert bacteriuria and acute pyelonephritis are elevated substantively, and screening and treatment for bacteriuria are essential. If pyelonephritis develops, sickle cells are extremely susceptible to bacterial endotoxin, which can incite dramatic, rapid red cell destruction and suppress erythropoiesis. Pneumonia, especially due to *Streptococcus pneumoniae,* is common. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2020) recommends specific vaccination for those with sickle-cell disease and all asplenic patients. These are polyvalent pneumococcal, *Haemophilus influenzae* type B, and meningococcal vaccines (Table 10-7, p. 190).

Pulmonary complications are frequent. Of these, *acute chest syndrome* is characterized by pleuritic chest pain, fever, cough, lung infiltrates, hypoxia, and usually bone and joint pain (Vichinsky, 2000). It develops in approximately 6 percent of pregnant women (Inparaj, 2020). In addition to symptoms, radiographs show a new pulmonary infiltrate. The four precipitants are infection, marrow emboli, thromboembolism, and atelectasis (Medoff, 2005). Bacterial or viral infection causes approximately half of cases. When acute chest syndrome develops, the mean duration of hospitalization is 10.5 days. Mechanical ventilation is required in approximately 15 percent, and the mortality rate nears 3 percent (Gladwin, 2008).

For nonpregnant adults, some recommend rapid simple transfusion or exchange transfusions to remove the "trigger" for acute chest syndromes (Ramphul, 2020). In a study of nonpregnant patients, Turner and colleagues (2009) reported that

exchange transfusion offered no increased benefits compared with simple transfusions, and the former were associated with fourfold greater blood usage. These results notwithstanding, the American Society of Hematology *suggests* exchange transfusions instead of simple transfusions. However, they state this recommendation is conditional due to scarce high-quality evidence (Chou, 2020).

Women with sickle-cell disease usually have some degree of *cardiac dysfunction* from ventricular hypertrophy. Chronic hypertension worsens the dysfunction. During pregnancy, the basal hemodynamic state characterized by high cardiac output and increased blood volume is augmented (Veille, 1994). Although most women tolerate pregnancy without problems, complications such as severe preeclampsia or serious infections may result in ventricular failure (Cunningham, 1986). Heart failure caused by pulmonary hypertension also must be considered.

In 4352 pregnancies in women with sickle-cell syndromes, Chakravarty and associates (2008) reported significantly higher pregnancy complication rates. Compared with controls, women with sickling disorders had a 63-percent rate of nondelivery-related admissions. They had a 1.8-fold greater incidence of hypertensive disorders—19 percent; a 2.9-fold higher rate of fetal-growth restriction—6 percent; and a 1.7-fold increased cesarean delivery rate—45 percent.

With hemoglobin SC disease, morbidity and mortality rates are appreciably lower than those from sickle-cell anemia. Indeed, fewer than half of these women have symptoms before pregnancy. In our experiences, affected gravidas suffer attacks of severe bone pain and episodes of pulmonary infarction and embolization more commonly than when not pregnant (Cunningham, 1983). Some adverse pregnancy outcomes are shown in Table 59-3.

Prophylactic Red Cell Transfusions

Chronic transfusion therapy has the most dramatic benefit on maternal morbidity rates (Benites, 2016; Malinowski, 2015; Vianello, 2018). It is problematic for universal application because of complications from multiple transfusions. In an earlier 10-year prospective study at Parkland Hospital, we offered prophylactic transfusions to all pregnant women with sickle-cell syndromes. Transfusions were given throughout pregnancy to maintain the hematocrit above 25 volumes percent and the portion of hemoglobin S below 60 percent (Cunningham, 1979). Maternal morbidity was minimal, and erythropoiesis suppression was not problematic. Their outcomes were compared with historical controls who were not routinely transfused. Overall, maternal morbidity and hospitalization rates were reduced in the transfused group, but perinatal morbidity and mortality rates remained increased because of preterm birth and fetal-growth restriction (Cunningham, 1983).

In a multicenter trial, Koshy and coworkers (1988) randomly assigned 72 pregnant women with sickle-cell syndromes to prophylactic or indicated transfusions. They reported a significant decline in the incidence of painful sickle-cell crises with prophylactic transfusions but no differences in perinatal outcomes. Because of risks inherent with blood administration, they concluded that prophylactic transfusions were not indicated.

A metaanalysis of 12 studies found prophylactic transfusions improved rates of most adverse maternal and neonatal outcomes, including maternal mortality, pulmonary complications, and perinatal mortality (Malinowski, 2015). Undoubtedly, morbidity from multiple transfusions is significant. Up to 10 percent of women had a delayed hemolytic transfusion reaction, and infections are a major concern. Garratty (1997) reviewed 12 studies and found alloimmunization developed in a fourth of women. Last, from liver biopsies in these women, we found no evidence of transfusion-related iron overload, hemochromatosis, or chronic hepatitis (Yeomans, 1990).

Because of what some consider marginal benefits, routine prophylactic transfusions during pregnancy remain controversial (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b). Current consensus is that their use should be individualized. With such a practice, approximately 60 percent of women will need transfusions during pregnancy (Sharif, 2018).

Fetal Assessment

Perinatal outcomes include increased risks for preterm birth, fetal-growth restriction, and perinatal mortality. Thus, beginning in the mid-second trimester, serial fetal-growth assessment with sonography is reasonable. At 32 to 34 weeks' gestation, weekly antepartum surveillance with biophysical profiles or nonstress test is considered (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b). Anyaegbunam and colleagues (1991) reported nonreactive stress tests during sickling crises, which resumed reactivity with crisis resolution. They concluded that transient effects of sickle-cell crisis do not compromise umbilical blood flow. Of interest, placentas from sickle-cell pregnancies show abnormalities in 69 percent (Malinowski, 2020).

Labor and Delivery

Management is essentially identical to that for women with cardiac disease (Chap. 52, p. 920). Women are kept comfortable but not oversedated. Conduction analgesia is ideal. Compatible blood should be available. If a difficult vaginal or cesarean delivery is contemplated and the hematocrit is <20 volumes percent, packed erythrocyte transfusions are administered. Vaginal delivery is suitable, and cesarean delivery is reserved for obstetrical indications (Rogers, 2010).

In the puerperium, many clinicians do not recommend combination hormonal contraception because of potential adverse vascular and thrombotic effects. However, one systematic review found that complication rates were not higher with their use in women with sickle-cell syndromes (Haddad, 2012). The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention categorizes combination hormonal contraception, intrauterine devices, implants, and progestin-only methods as having no risk or as having advantages that generally outweigh theoretical or proven risks (Curtis, 2016).

■ Sickle-cell Trait

The frequency of sickle-cell trait among African Americans averages 8 percent. Carriers have occasional hematuria, renal papillary necrosis, and hyposthenuria, which is urine of low

specific gravity (Tsaras, 2009). Sickle trait may be associated with progression of end-stage renal disease in blacks (Olaniran, 2020). Although controversial, sickle-cell trait does not appear to be associated with increased rates of abortion, perinatal mortality, low birthweight, or pregnancy-induced hypertension (Pritchard, 1973; Wellenstein, 2019; Wilson, 2020). In one study of more than 5000 women, the incidence of gestational hypertension was significantly elevated, but that of preeclampsia was not (O'Hara, 2020). Of note, they did not control for chronic hypertension. One unquestioned relationship is the twofold greater incidence of asymptomatic bacteriuria and urinary infection. Sickle-cell trait is not considered a deterrent to pregnancy or to hormonal contraception.

Hemoglobin C and C-β-Thalassemia

Approximately 2 percent of African-Americans are heterozygous for hemoglobin C, but even if homozygous, hemoglobin C is innocuous (Nagel, 2003). Only when coinherited with sickle-cell trait to yield hemoglobin SC is the trait problematic. Pregnancy in women with homozygous hemoglobin CC disease or C-β-thalassemia carries relatively benign associations. Other than mild to moderate anemia, pregnancy outcomes were not abnormal (Maberry, 1990). Supplementation with folic acid and iron is indicated.

Hemoglobin E

Although uncommon in the United States, hemoglobin E is the second most frequent hemoglobin variant worldwide. The heterozygous E trait is common in Southeast Asia. In one study, homozygous hemoglobin E, hemoglobin E plus β-thalassemia, or hemoglobin E trait was identified in 36 percent of Cambodians and 25 percent of Laotians (Hurst, 1983). Homozygosity for hemoglobin E is associated with little or no anemia, hypochromia, marked microcytosis, or erythrocyte targeting. With hemoglobin E trait, another study found no increased pregnancy risks other than asymptomatic bacteriuria between 1073 women and 2146 controls (Kemthong, 2016).

Conversely, doubly heterozygous E-β-thalassemia is a common cause of severe childhood anemia in Southeast Asia (Taher, 2018). In a cohort study of 54 women with singleton pregnancies, a threefold greater risk of preterm birth and fetal-growth restriction was found in affected women (Luewan, 2009). It is unclear if hemoglobin SE disease is ominous during pregnancy.

Hemoglobinopathy in the Newborn

Neonates with homozygous SS, SC, and CC disease can be identified accurately at birth by cord blood electrophoresis. The United States Health Resources and Services Administration (2020) recommends that all newborns be tested for sickle-cell disease. In most states, such screening is mandated by law and performed routinely (Chap. 32, p. 594).

Prenatal Diagnosis

Inheritance is a concern for the fetus whenever a mother and father carry a gene for abnormal hemoglobins that include S, C, and D or for β-thalassemia trait. Sickle-cell anemia results from the inheritance of the gene for S hemoglobin from each parent. In the United States, 1 of 12 African-Americans has sickle-cell trait, which results from inheritance of one gene for hemoglobin S and one for normal hemoglobin A. The computed incidence of sickle-cell anemia among African-Americans is 1 in 576 (1/12 × 1/12 × 1/4 = 1/576). The disease is less common in adults because of earlier mortality. Approximately 1 in 40 African-Americans has the gene for hemoglobin C. Thus, the theoretical incidence for coinheritance of the gene for hemoglobin S and an allelic gene for hemoglobin C in an African-American child is 1 in 2000 (1/12 × 1/40 × 1/4). β-Thalassemia minor affects about 1 in 40, thus S-β-thalassemia also is found in approximately 1 in 2000 (1/12 × 1/40 × 1/4).

Many tests are available to detect sickle-cell disease antenatally. Most are DNA based and use chorionic villus samples or amnionic fluid specimens (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b). Several mutations that encode hemoglobin S and other abnormal hemoglobins can be detected by targeted mutation analysis and polymerase chain reaction–based techniques (Chap. 18, p. 325).

THALASSEMIA SYNDROMES

Hundreds of mutations affect the genes that control hemoglobin production (Benz, 2018). Some of these impair synthesis of one or more of the normal globin peptides and may result in a clinical syndrome characterized by varying degrees of ineffective erythropoiesis, hemolysis, and anemia. Thalassemias are classified according to the globin that is deficient. The two major forms involve impaired production or instability of α-globin to cause α-thalassemia or of β-globin to cause β-thalassemia. Clinically, these can be divided into transfusion dependent and nontransfusion dependent (Taher, 2018).

Alpha Thalassemias

The two α-globin genes, *HBA1* and *HBA2*, are both found on chromosome 16. Because diploid chromosome sets contains four α-globin genes total, the inheritance of α-thalassemia is more complicated than for β-thalassemia (Piel, 2014). Some of the possible genotypes and phenotypes are shown in Table 59-4. The γ-globin genes are similarly duplicated. Correspondingly, the normal genotype for diploid cells can be expressed as αα/αα and γγ/γγ. Of the two main groups of α-thalassemia determinants, α^0-thalassemia is mutation of both genes from one chromosome (––/αα), whereas α^+-thalassemia is mutation of a single gene from one allele (–α/αα heterozygote) or from both alleles (–α/–α homozygote).

The relative frequency of the different α-thalassemia types varies remarkably among racial groups, and all are encountered in Asians. In those of African descent, although α-thalassemia minor has a frequency approximating 2 percent, hemoglobin H disease is rare and hemoglobin Bart disease is unreported. This is because Asians usually have α^0-thalassemia minor inherited with both gene deletions typically from the

TABLE 59-4. Genotypes and Phenotypes of α-Thalassemia Syndromes

Genotype	Genotype	Phenotype
Normal	αα/αα	Normal
α^+-Thalassemia heterozygote	−α/αα αα/−α	Normal; silent carrier
α^+-Thalassemia homozygote[a]	−α/−α	α-Thalassemia minor—mild hypochromic, microcytic anemia
α^0-Thalassemia heterozygote[b]	−−/αα	
Compound heterozygous α^0/α^+	−−/−α	Hb H (β_4) disease with moderate to severe hemolytic anemia
Homozygous α-thalassemia	−−/−−	Hb Bart (γ_4) disease, hydrops fetalis

[a]More common in African Americans.
[b]More common in Asian Americans.

same chromosome (−−/αα), whereas blacks usually have α^+-thalassemia minor in which one gene is deleted from each chromosome (−α/−α).

Pregnancy

Important obstetrical aspects of some α-thalassemia syndromes depend on the number of gene deletions in a given woman. Clinical severity closely correlates with the degree of impaired α-globin synthesis. The silent carrier state with one gene deletion may be associated with mild microcytic anemia (Andolina, 2020). Deletion of two genes resulting in α-thalassemia minor is characterized by minimal to moderate hypochromic microcytic anemia. This is due to either α^0- or α^+-thalassemia trait, and thus genotypes may be −−/αα or −α/−α, respectively. Differentiation is possible only by DNA analysis (Piel, 2014). Because no other clinical abnormalities accompany either form of α-thalassemia minor, it often goes unrecognized and is usually of no maternal consequence (Hanprasertpong, 2013). The fetus with these forms of thalassemia minor will have hemoglobin Bart (γ_4) at birth, but as its levels drop, it is not replaced by hemoglobin H (β_4). Red cells are hypochromic and microcytic, and the hemoglobin concentration is normal to slightly depressed.

Hemoglobin H disease (β_4) results from the compound heterozygous state for α^0- plus α^+-thalassemia with deletion of three of four alpha genes (−−/−α). With only one functional α-globin gene per diploid genome, the newborn will have abnormal red cells containing a mixture of hemoglobin Bart (γ_4), hemoglobin H (β_4), and hemoglobin A. Of these three, fetal hemoglobin Bart (γ_4) and hemoglobin H (β_4) transport oxygen poorly. The neonate appears normal but soon develops hemolytic anemia as most of the hemoglobin Bart (γ_4) is replaced by hemoglobin H (β_4). In adults, their low hemoglobin A production leads to anemia that is moderate to severe and usually worsens during pregnancy.

Inheritance of all four abnormal α-globin genes causes homozygous α-thalassemia, which is also called Hb Bart disease and alpha thalassemia major. Hemoglobin Bart (γ_4) is predominantly produced. This hemoglobin Bart has an appreciably increased affinity for oxygen, transfers oxygen to end organs poorly, and is incompatible with extended survival. These fetuses are stillborn or are hydropic and usually die soon after birth.

Sonographic measurement of the fetal cardiothoracic ratio at 12 to 13 weeks' gestation can be used to identify affected fetuses (Lam, 1999; Zhen, 2015). Sonographic assessment of myocardial performance—the *Tei index*—in the first half of pregnancy has been evaluated. Changes predate hydrops in affected fetuses (Luewan, 2013). These noninvasive tests may aid pregnancy counseling.

■ Beta Thalassemias

The β-thalassemias stem from impaired β-globin production or α-globin instability. Genes that encode control of β-globin synthesis are in the δγβ-gene cluster on chromosome 11 (Chap. 7, p. 129). More than 150 point mutations in the β-globin gene have been described (Weatherall, 2010). In β-thalassemia, β-globin production is decreased, and excess α-globin precipitate to damage cell membranes. Other forms of β-thalassemias derive from α-globin instability (Kihm, 2002).

The heterozygous trait is β-thalassemia minor, and those most commonly encountered have elevated hemoglobin A_2 levels. This hemoglobin is composed of two α- and two δ-globins, and concentrations are usually more than 3.5 percent. Hemoglobin F—composed of two α- and two γ-globins—also usually has increased concentrations that exceed 2 percent. Some patients with heterozygous β-thalassemia minor do not have anemia, and others have mild to moderate anemia characterized by hypochromia and microcytosis.

Homozygous β-thalassemia—also called β-thalassemia major or Cooley anemia—is a serious and frequently fatal disorder. Hemolysis is intense and leads to severe anemia. Many patients become transfusion dependent, and the subsequent iron load, along with abnormally greater gastrointestinal iron absorption, leads to hemochromatosis, which is fatal in many cases. A heterozygous form of β-thalassemia that clinically manifests as *thalassemia intermedia* produces moderate anemia.

Several treatment schemes treat β-thalassemia. Stem cell transplantation has been used to treat β-thalassemia major (Jagannath, 2014). Preliminary observations indicate that a combination of thalidomide and hydroxyurea—both contraindicated in pregnancy—may be beneficial to boost hemoglobin

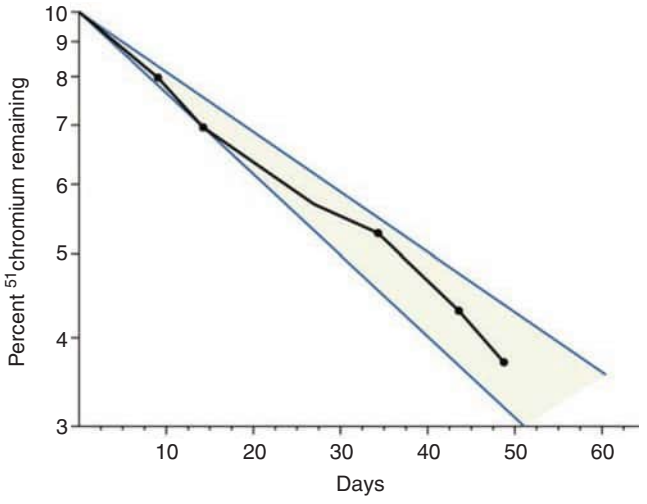


FIGURE 59-3 Erythrocyte-survival times with β-thalassemia minor (*black solid line*) are comparable to those of normal red cells (*shaded area*).

production (Shah, 2020). Inserting a gene with a lentiviral vector into β-globin has been used to transfect harvested bone marrow stem cells (Harrison, 2019). Last, luspatercept—a recombinant fusion protein—may enhance erythroid maturation to reduce transfusion requirements (Cappellini, 2020).

Pregnancy

Iron and folate supplements are given to all affected women. Those with β-thalassemia minor may have mild anemia during pregnancy (Charoenboon, 2016). This is caused by ineffective erythropoiesis and not hemolysis. Shown in Figure 59-3 are comparable red cell survival times in women with β-thalassemia minor compared with those from normally pregnant women. In some women, anemia will worsen because slightly subnormal erythropoiesis accompanies normal plasma volume expansion. Fetal-growth restriction has been associated with thalassemia minor (Vafaei, 2020).

Thalassemia major and some of the other severe forms were uncommonly encountered during pregnancy before the advent of transfusion and iron-chelation therapy. In reviews, 63 pregnancies with such management were reported and suffered no serious complications (Aessopos, 1999; Daskalakis, 1998). Pregnancy is considered reasonably safe if maternal cardiac function is normal. Transfusions are provided throughout pregnancy to maintain the hemoglobin concentration at 10 g/dL. This is coupled with surveillance of fetal growth (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b).

■ Prenatal Diagnosis

Diagnosis of α-thalassemia major in the fetus can be accomplished by DNA analysis using molecular techniques (Piel, 2014). Fetal diagnosis of hemoglobin Bart (γ_4) has been described using capillary electrophoresis or high-performance liquid chromatography techniques (Sirichotiyakul, 2009). Molecular genetic testing for *HBA1* and *HBA2* identifies 90 percent of deletions and 10 percent of point mutations in affected individuals (Galanello, 2011b).

Because β-thalassemia major is caused by numerous mutations, prenatal diagnosis is difficult. For a given individual, targeted mutation analysis requires prior identification of the familial mutation. The analysis is done using chorionic villus sampling and other techniques discussed in Chapter 17 (p. 344). Noninvasive testing using cell-free fetal DNA for β-thalassemia diagnosis has been described (Xiong, 2015; Zhang, 2019). Preimplantation genetic testing allows for identification of affected offspring prior to blastocyst transfer.

PLATELET DISORDERS

■ Thrombocytopenia

Platelet abnormalities are common and may precede pregnancy, develop coincidentally during pregnancy, or be induced by pregnancy. Thrombocytopenia—defined by a platelet count <150,000/μL—is identified in nearly 10 percent of gravidas (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). Of these cases, 75 percent are *gestational thrombocytopenia.* The remainder is due to other causes, and HELLP syndrome is a common one (Eslick, 2020). Thrombocytopenia may be inherited or idiopathic, acute or chronic, and primary or associated with other disorders (Table 59-5). Of recent importance is thrombocytopenia in pregnancy complicated by COVID-19 infection (Tang, 2020; Zitiello, 2020).

■ Gestational Thrombocytopenia

In two studies of pregnant women, platelet counts falling below the 2.5th percentile were 116,000 and 123,000/μL (American

TABLE 59-5. Some Causes of Thrombocytopenia in Pregnancy

Gestational thrombocytopenia: 75 percent
Preeclampsia and HELLP syndromes: 20 percent
Obstetrical coagulopathies: DIC, MTP
Immune thrombocytopenic purpura
Systemic lupus erythematosus and APS
Infections: viral and bacterial
Drugs
Hemolytic anemias
Thrombotic microangiopathies
Malignancies
Pseudothrombocytopenia
Renal or liver diseases
Aplastic anemia
Genetic causes
COVID-19

APS = antiphospholipid syndrome; DIC = disseminated intravascular coagulopathy; HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count; MTP = massive transfusion protocol.
From American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c; Cooper, 2019; Tang, 2020.

College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). Approximately 1 percent have values <100,000/μL. Bleeding is only encountered with drastically lower values. It seems reasonable that a platelet count of <80,000/μL should trigger an evaluation for etiologies other than incidental or gestational thrombocytopenia, which is unlikely to have a platelet count <50,000/μL.

Platelet counts decline normally across pregnancy (Fig. 4-7, p. 62). With gestational thrombocytopenia, the platelet concentration nadir is usually evident in the third trimester and is thought to stem from hemodilution. The normal increased splenic mass of pregnancy also may contribute (Maymon, 2006; Reese, 2018).

Inherited Thrombocytopenias

Bernard-Soulier syndrome and *Glanzmann thrombasthenia* lack a platelet membrane glycoprotein, which leads to severe dysfunction (Grainger, 2018). Moreover, women exposed to fetal platelets carrying this glycoprotein can develop antibodies against this fetal GPIb/IX antigen to cause alloimmune fetal thrombocytopenia (Poon, 2018). In 30 pregnancies in 18 women from one review, the primary postpartum hemorrhage rate was 33 percent, and half of women with bleeding required blood transfusion (Peitsidis, 2010). The reviewers also described six cases of neonatal alloimmune thrombocytopenia and two perinatal deaths. Close monitoring throughout pregnancy and 6 weeks postpartum is critical to avoid potential life-threatening hemorrhage (Prabu, 2006).

May-Hegglin anomaly is an autosomal dominant disorder characterized by thrombocytopenia, giant platelets, and leukocyte inclusions. In one review of 26 studies containing 75 pregnancies, there were four cases of postpartum hemorrhage, 34 cases of neonatal thrombocytopenia, and two fetal deaths (Hussein, 2013).

Immune Thrombocytopenic Purpura

The primary form—also termed *idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura (ITP)*—is usually caused by a cluster of IgG antibodies directed against one or more platelet glycoproteins. Antibody-coated platelets are destroyed prematurely in the reticuloendothelial system, especially the spleen (Baucom, 2019; Cooper, 2019). With ITP, platelet counts range from 10,000 to 100,000/μL (George, 2014). Although not proven, ITP is probably mediated by autoantibodies directed at platelet-associated immunoglobulins—PAIgG, PAIgM, and PAIgA.

ITP classification is shown in Table 59-6 (Rodeghiero, 2009). In adults, it usually is a chronic disease that rarely resolves spontaneously. Secondary forms of immune-mediated chronic thrombocytopenia appear in association with systemic lupus erythematosus, lymphomas, leukemias, and several systemic diseases. Approximately 2 percent of thrombocytopenic patients have positive serological tests for lupus, and in some cases, levels of anticardiolipin antibodies are high. Last, approximately 10 percent of patients with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) have associated thrombocytopenia.

TABLE 59-6. Classification of Immune Thrombocytopenia (ITP)

Etiology	
Primary ITP: acquired immune-mediated disorder characterized by isolated thrombocytopenia in the absence of obvious initiating or underlying cause	
Secondary ITP: thrombocytopenia due to underlying cause/drug exposure	
Duration	
Newly diagnosed: persistent 3–12 months	
Chronic: 12 months or more	

Pregnancy

Pregnancy does not raise the risk of relapse or worsen active disease. The estimated incidence of ITP complicating pregnancy approximates 1 case in 10,000 births (Care, 2018). However, it is not unusual for women who have been in clinical remission for several years to have recurrent thrombocytopenia during pregnancy. Although this may be from closer surveillance, hyperestrogenemia is also implicated.

Therapy is considered if the woman has symptomatic bleeding and the platelet count is below 30,000/μL. The corrected target level is 50,000/μL (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). Primary treatment is corticosteroids, intravenous immune globulin (IVIG), or both (Cooper, 2019). Initially, prednisone, 1 mg/kg daily, helps suppress the phagocytic activity of the splenic monocyte–macrophage system. IVIG given in a total dose of 2 g/kg over 2 to 5 days also is effective.

Some immunomodulating agents are avoided in pregnancy due to teratogenicity risks. Azathioprine (Imuran) and rituximab (Truxima), however, which are used in nonpregnant persons with ITP, have been used for other conditions in pregnancy. Last, the thrombopoietin-receptor agonists romiplostim (Nplate) and eltrombopag (Promacta) have stimulated responses in some patients (Patras, 2020; Rosa María, 2020).

Prospective observations from the UK Obstetric Surveillance System (UKOSS) of 107 pregnancies were described by Care and associates (2018). Postpartum hemorrhage occurred in half, and in 20 percent it was severe. No neonate needed therapy for thrombocytopenia, and no cases of intracranial hemorrhage were noted. Comont and coworkers (2018) reported on 50 pregnancies in 39 women with ITP. Half had a platelet count <50,000/μL, but 84 percent were treated. They concluded that a third of these women were overtreated.

In pregnant women with no response to corticosteroid or IVIG therapy, open or laparoscopic splenectomy may be effective. In late pregnancy, cesarean delivery may be necessary for surgical exposure. Improvement usually follows splenectomy in 1 to 3 days and peaks at approximately 8 days.

Fetal and Neonatal Effects

Pregnancy complications that are increased with ITP include stillbirth, fetal loss, and preterm birth (Wyszynski, 2016). Platelet-associated IgG antibodies cross the placenta, and fetal death from hemorrhage occurs occasionally. Studies that included more than 800 neonates born to women with ITP cite an intracranial hemorrhage rate <1 percent (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c). Hemorrhage was not associated with route of delivery.

Investigators concur that fetal and maternal platelet counts lack strong correlation (George, 2009; Hachisuga, 2014). Because of this, maternal IgG free platelet antibody levels and platelet-associated antibody levels have been evaluated to predict fetal platelet counts. Again, however, little concurrence with these was found. Measuring fetal platelet counts by direct sampling is not recommended (American College Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c).

Alloimmune Thrombocytopenia

Disparity between maternal and fetal platelet antigens can stimulate maternal production of antiplatelet antibodies. Such platelet alloimmunization can be severe, and its pathophysiology mirrors that caused by red cell antigens. This is discussed in Chapter 18 (p. 352).

■ Thrombocytosis

Also called *thrombocythemia*, thrombocytosis generally is defined as persistent platelet counts >450,000/μL. Common causes of *secondary* or *reactive thrombocytosis* are infection, iron deficiency, trauma, inflammatory diseases, and malignant tumors (Tefferi, 2019). Platelet counts seldom exceed 1 million/μL in these secondary disorders, and prognosis depends on the underlying disease. Instead, *primary* or *essential thrombocytosis* accounts for most cases in which platelet counts exceed 1 million/μL. It is a clonal disorder often due to an acquired mutation in the *JAK2* gene (Spivak, 2018). Thrombocytosis usually is asymptomatic, but arterial and venous thromboses may develop, and thrombosis is associated with pregnancy complications (Rabinerson, 2007; Randi, 2014). First-line treatment is aspirin and possibly hydroxyurea.

Normal pregnancies have been described in women whose mean platelet counts were >1.25 million/μL. However, in a report of 40 pregnancies in 16 women with essential thrombocythemia, almost half had a spontaneous abortion, fetal demise, or preeclampsia (Niittyvuopio, 2004). In 63 pregnancies in 36 women cared for at the Mayo Clinic, a third had a miscarriage, but other pregnancy complications were uncommon (Gangat, 2009). In this observational study, aspirin therapy was associated with a significantly lower abortion rate than that in untreated women—1 versus 75 percent, respectively. Suggested treatments during pregnancy include aspirin, low-molecular-weight heparin, and interferon α (Finazzi, 2012; Vantroyen, 2002). Interferon α therapy during pregnancy was successful in a review of 11 women. One women had transient blindness at midpregnancy when her platelet count was 2.3 million/μL (Delage, 1996).

THROMBOTIC MICROANGIOPATHIES

Although not a primary platelet disorder, some degree of thrombocytopenia accompanies the thrombotic microangiopathies, which include *thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura (TTP)* and *hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS).* These are characterized by thrombocytopenia, microangiopathic hemolysis, and microvascular thrombosis (Konkle, 2018). Their similarities to HELLP syndrome allude to their obstetrical ramifications.

■ Etiopathogenesis

Although different causes account for the variable findings within these syndromes, clinically, they frequently are indistinguishable. Inherited or idiopathic TTP is thought to be caused by antibodies to or a plasma deficiency of ADAMTS13 (Konkle, 2018). This endothelium-derived metalloprotease cleaves von Willebrand factor (vWF) to decrease its activity. Conversely, HUS is usually from endothelial damage incited by viral or bacterial infections and is seen primarily in children (George, 2014). Secondary thrombotic microangiopathies are the most common—94 percent (Bayer, 2019). A substantial number of all cases are pregnancy related. Other common causes are malignancies, drugs, transplantations, and autoimmune diseases. COVID-19 infection has been reported to precipitate TTP (Futterman, 2020; Makatsariya, 2020).

With TTP, intravascular platelet aggregation stimulates a cascade that leads to end-organ failure. There is endothelial activation and damage, but it is unclear whether this is a consequence or a cause. Elevated levels of unusually large multimers of vWF are identified with active TTP. Various defects in the *ADAMTS13* gene create differing clinical presentations. In another mechanism, antibodies raised against ADAMTS13 neutralize its action to cleave vWF multimers during an acute episode. The result is microthrombi of hyaline material containing platelets and fibrin within arterioles and capillaries. When sufficient in number or size, these aggregates produce ischemia or infarction.

■ Manifestations

Thrombotic microangiopathies are characterized by thrombocytopenia, fragmentation hemolysis, and organ dysfunction. TTP has the pentad of thrombocytopenia, hemolytic anemia, fever, renal impairment, and neurological abnormalities. HUS typically has more profound renal involvement and fewer neurological aberrations (Gaggl, 2018).

Thrombocytopenia is usually severe, but fortunately, even with very low platelet counts, spontaneous severe hemorrhage is uncommon. Microangiopathic hemolysis is associated with moderate to marked anemia, and erythrocyte transfusions are frequently necessary. The blood smear shows erythrocyte fragmentation and schizocytosis. Reticulocytes and nucleated red blood cells counts are increased, lactate dehydrogenase (LDH) levels are high, and haptoglobin concentrations are decreased (Konkle, 2018). Consumptive coagulopathy, although common, is usually subtle and clinically insignificant.

■ Treatment

The cornerstone of treatment for TTP is plasmapheresis with fresh-frozen plasma replacement along with glucocorticoids. Plasma exchange removes inhibitors and replaces the ADAMTS13 enzyme (George, 2014; Scully, 2019). Treatment with caplacizumab (Cablivi), the anti-vWF immunoglobulin, inhibits the interaction between ultra-large vWF multimers and platelets (Peyandi, 2016). These treatments have remarkably improved outcomes in patients with these formerly fatal syndromes. Red cell transfusions are imperative for life-threatening anemia.

Treatment is usually continued until the platelet count is normal for 2 days. Unfortunately, relapses are common. Additionally, long-term sequelae such as renal impairment can develop (Dashe, 1998; Vesely, 2015). Treatment for pregnancy-associated HUS, which is complement mediated, is eculizumab (Soliris), the anti-C5 humanized monoclonal antibody (Fakhouri, 2016; Gupta, 2020).

Pregnancy

As shown in the Appendix (p. 1228), ADAMTS13 enzyme activity declines across pregnancy by up to 50 percent (Sánchez-Luceros, 2004). Levels drop even further with preeclampsia, and especially HELLP syndrome. This is consonant with prevailing opinions that TTP is more commonly seen during pregnancy. In the Parkland Hospital experience, 11 pregnancies were complicated by these syndromes among nearly 275,000 gravidas—a frequency of 1 in 25,000 (Dashe, 1998).

Some of the disparately higher incidence in pregnancy reported by others may be from the inclusion of women with severe preeclampsia and eclampsia (Hsu, 1995; Magann, 1994). Differences that usually allow appropriate diagnosis are listed in Table 59-7. For example, moderate to severe hemolysis is a rather constant feature of thrombotic microangiopathies. This is seldom severe with preeclampsia, even when complicated by HELLP syndrome (Chap. 40, p. 699). Moreover, although hyaline microthrombi are seen in the liver with thrombotic microangiopathy, hepatocellular necrosis and elevated serum hepatic transaminase levels, which are characteristic of preeclampsia, are not a common feature (Ganesan, 2011; Sadler, 2010).

The diagnosis of thrombotic microangiopathies, rather than severe preeclampsia, should be clear before initiating therapy. Unfortunately, recall that determination of ADAMTS13 enzyme activity may be difficult to interpret with HELLP syndrome (Franchini, 2007). *Plasmapheresis is not indicated for preeclampsia-eclampsia complicated by hemolysis and thrombocytopenia.* Importantly, delivery is imperative to reverse the preeclampsia syndrome, but thrombotic microangiopathy is not improved by delivery (Dashe, 1998; Letsky, 2000).

TABLE 59-7. Some Differential Factors between HELLP Syndrome and Thrombotic Microangiopathies[a]

	HELLP Syndrome	Thrombotic Microangiopathies
Thrombocytopenia	Mild/mod.	Mod./severe
Microangiopathic hemolysis (schizocytosis)	Mild	Severe
ADAMTS13 deficiency	Mild/mod.	Severe
DIC	Mild	Mild
Transaminitis (AST, ALT)	Mod./severe	None/mild
Treatment	Delivery	Plasmapheresis

[a]Includes thrombotic thrombocytopenia purpura (TTP) and hemolytic uremic syndrome (HUS).
ADAMTS13 = ADAM metallopeptidase with thrombospondin type 1 motif, 13; AST = aspartate transaminase; ALT = alanine transaminase; DIC = disseminated intravascular coagulopathy; HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count; Mod. = moderate.

Thrombotic microangiopathy was previously fatal in up to half of mothers. However, during the past two decades, and coincidental with plasmapheresis and plasma exchange, maternal survival rates have improved dramatically (Go, 2018; Gupta, 2020). Hunt and associates (2013) reported that TTP accounted for 1 percent of maternal deaths in the United Kingdom from 2003 to 2008. In a systematic review of 60 cases of pregnancy-associated HUS, two mothers died (Gupta, 2020).

Microangiopathic syndromes are usually recurrent and frequently unassociated with pregnancy. For example, seven of the 11 women described earlier at Parkland Hospital had recurrent disease either when not pregnant or within the first trimester of a subsequent pregnancy. George (2009) reported recurrent TTP in only five of 36 subsequent pregnancies. In 17 women with nonpregnant atypical HUS, recurrence developed in five of 32 pregnancies.

Long-term Prognosis

Women who are diagnosed with thrombotic microangiopathy during pregnancy are at risk for serious long-term complications (Gaggl, 2018; George, 2018). The relapse rate is as high as 40 percent in nonpregnant patients (Konkle, 2018). The described Parkland experience included a mean 9-year surveillance period (Dashe, 1998). These women had multiple recurrences; renal disease requiring dialysis, transplantation, or both; severe chronic hypertension; and transfusion-acquired infection. Two women died remote from pregnancy—one from dialysis complications and one from transfusion-acquired HIV infection. In the review by Gupta (2020) cited earlier, 15 percent of mothers with atypical HUS had long-term renal failure. In 19 women with primary atypical HUS, eight progressed to end-stage renal disease (Timmermans, 2020).

INHERITED COAGULATION DEFECTS

Hemophilias A and B

Obstetrical hemorrhage may infrequently be the consequence of an inherited defect in a protein that controls coagulation (Majluf-Cruz, 2020). Hemophilia and von Willebrand disease are examples.

Hemophilia A is an X-linked recessively transmitted disorder characterized by a marked deficiency of factor VIII. Severity reflects plasma factor levels and is categorized as mild—levels of 6 to 30 percent; moderate—2 to 5 percent; or severe—less than 1 percent (Arruda, 2015). It is rare among women compared with men, in whom the heterozygous state is responsible for the disease. Heterozygous women have diminished factor VIII levels, but almost invariably, the homozygous state is requisite for hemophilia A. In a few instances, it appears in

women spontaneously from a newly mutated gene. Pregnancy-associated acquired hemophilia A from antibodies may result in severe bleeding-related morbidity (Tengborn, 2012). *Christmas disease* or *hemophilia B* is caused by severe deficiency of factor IX and has similar genetic and clinical features.

Pregnancy

The risk of obstetrical bleeding with hemophilia is directly related to factor VIII or IX levels. Affected women have a range of activity that is determined by random X-chromosome inactivation—lyonization—although activity is expected to average 50 percent (Letsky, 2000). Levels below 10 to 20 percent pose hemorrhage risks. If levels fall to near zero, this risk is substantial. Pregnancy does afford some protection, however, because concentrations of both these clotting factors rise appreciably during normal pregnancy (Appendix, p. 1228). Treatment with desmopressin can stimulate factor VIII release. Risks are further reduced by avoiding lacerations, minimizing episiotomy use, and maximizing postpartum uterine contractions. Operative vaginal delivery and cesarean delivery pose bleeding risks.

A few articles describe pregnancy courses. Kadir and colleagues (1997) reported that 20 percent of carriers had postpartum hemorrhage. Guy and associates (1992) reviewed five pregnancies in women with hemophilia B, and in all, outcomes were favorable. They recommended factor IX administration if levels are below 10 percent. Desmopressin in selected cases has reduced obstetrical bleeding complications (Trigg, 2012). If a male fetus has hemophilia, the risk of hemorrhage increases after delivery in the neonate. This is especially true if circumcision is attempted.

Related to preconceptional counseling, most women with hemophilia A or B carry one affected allele and the other X chromosome is normal. These individuals will have all sons affected by the disease, and half of her daughters will be carriers. Rarely, a woman may carry two abnormal alleles, in which case all daughters will be carriers and all of her sons will inherit the disease. Prenatal diagnosis of hemophilia is possible in some families using chorionic villus biopsy (Chap. 17, p. 346). Preimplantation genetic testing for hemophilia was reviewed by Lavery (2009).

Factor VIII or IX Inhibitors

Rarely, antibodies directed against factor VIII or IX are acquired and may lead to life-threatening hemorrhage. Patients with hemophilia more commonly develop antibodies, and their acquisition in patients without hemophilia is extraordinary. It has been identified rarely in women during the puerperium (Santoro, 2009). The prominent clinical feature is severe, protracted, repetitive hemorrhage from the reproductive tract starting a week or so after an apparently uncomplicated delivery (Gibson, 2016). The activated partial thromboplastin time is markedly prolonged. Treatment has included multiple blood-component transfusions, immunosuppressive therapy, and attempts at various surgical procedures, especially curettage and hysterectomy. A recombinant activated factor VII (NovoSeven) stops bleeding in up to 75 percent of patients with these inhibitors (Arruda, 2015; Gibson, 2016).

Von Willebrand Disease

At least 20 heterogeneous clinical disorders involve aberrations of factor VIII complex and platelet dysfunction and collectively are termed *von Willebrand disease (vWD)*. These abnormalities are the most frequently inherited bleeding disorders, and their prevalence is as high as 1 to 2 percent (Arruda, 2015; Punt, 2020). Most von Willebrand disease variants are inherited as autosomal dominant traits. Types I and II are the most common, and type I accounts for 75 percent. Type III, which is the most severe, is a recessive trait. Although most cases of acquired vWD develop after age 50 years, some have been reported in pregnant women (Lipkind, 2005).

Pathogenesis

The *von Willebrand factor (vWF)* is a series of large, plasma multimeric glycoproteins that form part of the factor VIII complex. It is essential for normal platelet adhesion to subendothelial collagen and formation of a primary hemostatic plug. It also plays a major role in stabilizing the coagulant properties of factor VIII. Factor VIII, a glycoprotein, is synthesized by the liver. The von Willebrand precursor, which is present in platelets and plasma, is instead synthesized by endothelium and megakaryocytes. The von Willebrand factor antigen (vWF:Ag) is the antigenic determinant measured by immunoassays.

Symptomatic women typically present with easy bruising, epistaxis, mucosal hemorrhage, heavy menses, and excessive bleeding with trauma or surgery. The classic autosomal dominant forms usually cause symptoms in the heterozygous state. With vWD, laboratory features often include a prolonged bleeding time, prolonged partial thromboplastin time, decreased vWF antigen levels, decreased factor VIII immunological and coagulation-promoting activity, and inability of platelets from an affected person to react to various stimuli.

Although most patients with vWD have heterozygous variants and associated minor bleeding complications, the disease can be severe. Moreover, homozygous offspring develop serious clotting dysfunction. Chorionic villus sampling with DNA analysis to detect the missing genes has been described, but the specific genetic mutation must be known. Some authorities recommend cesarean delivery to avoid trauma to a possibly affected fetus if the mother has severe disease.

Pregnancy

During normal pregnancy, maternal levels of both factor VIII and vWF antigen increase substantively (Appendix, p. 1228). Because of this, pregnant women with vWD often develop normal levels of factor VIII coagulant activity and vWF antigen, although their measured bleeding time still may be prolonged (Delbrück, 2019). If factor VIII activity is very low or if there is bleeding, treatment is recommended. Desmopressin by infusion transiently increases factor VIII and vWF levels (Arruda, 2015). With significant bleeding, 15 or 20 units of cryoprecipitate are transfused every 12 hours. Alternatively, factor VIII concentrates (Alphanate, Humate-P) that contain high-molecular-weight vWF multimers may be given. Lubetsky and colleagues (1999) described continuous infusion with Humate-P in a woman during a vaginal delivery. According to Chi and

coworkers (2009), conduction analgesia can be provided safely if coagulation defects have corrected or if hemostatic agents are administered prophylactically.

Pregnancy outcomes in women with vWD are generally good, but postpartum hemorrhage is common. In one systematic review, with more than 800 deliveries, the postpartum hemorrhage incidence was 33 percent (Punt, 2020). In a database review of more than 2200 deliveries complicated by vWD, this incidence was only about 5 percent (O'Brien, 2020). From two reviews, postpartum hemorrhage may be primary and at the time of delivery, or it may have a delayed onset (Makhamreh, 2021a,b).

■ Other Factor Deficiencies

In general, the activity of most procoagulant factors rises across pregnancy (Appendix, p. 1228). *Factor VII deficiency* is a rare autosomal recessive disorder. Levels of this factor increase during normal pregnancy, but these may rise only mildly in women with factor VII deficiency (Fadel, 1989). A systematic review of 94 births found no difference in postpartum hemorrhage rates with or without prophylaxis with recombinant factor VIIa (Baumann Kreuziger, 2013).

Factor X or *Stuart-Prower factor* deficiency is rare and inherited as an autosomal recessive trait. Factor X levels typically rise by 50 percent during normal pregnancy. Despite this, adverse pregnancy outcome are common. Spiliopoulos and coworkers (2019) reported 31 pregnancies in 19 women. They described a high rate of preterm birth, perinatal mortality, and postpartum hemorrhage. Conversely, Nance and colleagues (2012) described 24 pregnancies, of which 18 resulted in a healthy baby. Treatment is with plasma-derived factor X, fresh-frozen plasma, or prothrombin complex concentrates.

Factor XI deficiency is inherited as an autosomal recessive trait in most families. It manifests as severe disease in homozygotes but only as a minor defect in heterozygotes. It is most prevalent in Ashkenazi Jews and is rarely seen in pregnancy. In one review of 105 pregnancies from 33 affected women, 70 percent had an uneventful pregnancy and delivery (Myers, 2007). Authors recommended peripartum treatment with factor XI concentrate for cesarean delivery and advised against epidural analgesia unless factor XI is given. From another review, factor XI levels and bleeding severity correlated poorly in women with severe deficiency (Martin-Salces, 2010). Wiewel-Verschueren and associates (2016) performed a systematic review of 27 studies with 372 women and reported that 18 percent had postpartum hemorrhage.

Factor XII deficiency is another autosomal recessive disorder that rarely complicates pregnancy. A greater incidence of thromboembolism is encountered in nonpregnant patients with this deficiency.

Factor XIII deficiency is an autosomal recessive trait and may be associated with maternal intracranial hemorrhage (Bouttefroy, 2020). In their review, Kadir and associates (2009) cited an increased risk of recurrent miscarriage and placental abruption. It has also been reported to cause umbilical cord bleeding (Odame, 2014). Treatment is fresh frozen plasma. Naderi and colleagues (2012) described 17 successful pregnancies in women receiving weekly prophylaxis with factor XIII concentrate.

Fibrinogen abnormalities—either qualitative or quantitative—also may cause coagulation abnormalities. Autosomally inherited abnormalities usually involve the formation of a functionally defective fibrinogen—commonly referred to as *dysfibrinogenemia*. Familial *hypofibrinogenemia* and sometimes *afibrinogenemia* are infrequent recessive disorders. Our experience suggests that hypofibrinogenemia represents a heterozygous autosomal dominant state. The thrombin-clottable protein level in these patients typically ranges from 80 to 110 mg/dL when nonpregnant. Cai and coworkers (2018) described successful outcomes in affected women in whom fibrinogen or plasma infusions were given throughout pregnancy.

THROMBOPHILIAS

Several important regulatory proteins act as inhibitors at strategic sites in the coagulation cascade to maintain blood fluidity. Inherited deficiencies of these inhibitory proteins are caused by gene mutations. Because they may be associated with recurrent thromboembolism, they are collectively referred to as *thrombophilias.* These are discussed in Chapter 55 (p. 976) and reviewed by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020).

REFERENCES

Aessopos A, Karabatsos F, Farmakis D, et al: Pregnancy in patients with well-treated β-thalassemia: outcome for mothers and newborn infants. Am J Obstet Gynecol 180:360, 1999

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Hemoglobinopathies in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 78, January 2007, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Thrombocytopenia in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 207, March 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Inherited thrombophilias in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 197, June 2020

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Anemia in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 233, July 2021

Andolina JR: Reexamining 1-gene deletion α-thalassemia: is the silent carrier of clinical significance? Acta Haematol 143:407, 2020

Anyaegbunam A, Morel MI, Merkatz IR: Antepartum fetal surveillance tests during sickle cell crisis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 165:1081, 1991

Arruda VR, High KA: Coagulation disorders. In: Kasper DL, Fauci AS, Hauser SL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 19th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2015

Ataga LI, Kutlar A, Kanter J, et al: Crizanlizumab for the prevention of pain crises in sickle cell disease. N Engl J Med 376:1796, 2017

Auerbach M, Gafter-Gvili A, Macdougall IC: Intravenous iron: a framework for changing the management of iron deficiency. Lancet Haematol 7(4):e342, 2020

Bae E, Tangel V, Liu N, et al: Inpatient mortality and postpartum readmission rates in sickle cell disease pregnancies: a multistate analysis, 2007–2014. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(17):2783, 2021

Ballas SK, McCarthy WF, Guo N, et al: Multicenter study of hydroxyurea in sickle cell anemia. Exposure to hydroxyurea and pregnancy outcomes in patients with sickle cell anemia. J Natl Med Assoc 101(10):1046, 2009

Baucom AM, Kuller JA, Dotters-Katz A: Immune thrombocytopenic purpura in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 74(8):490, 2019

Baumann Kreuziger LM, Morton CT, Reding MT: Is prophylaxis required for delivery in women with factor VII deficiency? Haemophilia 19(6):827, 2013

Bayer G, von Tokarski F, Thoreau B, et al: Etiology and outcomes of thrombotic microangiopathies. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 14(4):557, 2019

Benites BD, Benevides TC, Valente IS, et al: The effects of exchange transfusion for prevention of complications during pregnancy of sickle hemoglobin C disease patients. Transfusion 56(1):119, 2016

Benz EJ: Disorders of hemoglobin. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 690

Bertozzi I, Rumi E, Cavalloni C, et al: Pregnancy outcome and management of 25 pregnancies in women with polycythemia vera. Am J Hematol 93(9):E234, 2018

Bo L, Mei-Ying L, Yang Z, et al: Aplastic anemia associated with pregnancy: maternal and fetal complications. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(7):1120, 2016

Boafor TK, Olayemi E, Galadanci N, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with sickle-cell disease in low and high income countries: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 123(5):691, 2016

Bouttefroy S, Meunier S, Milien V, et al: Congenital factor XIII deficiency: comprehensive overview of the FranceCoag cohort. Br J Haematol 188(2):317, 2020

Breymann C, Milman N, Mezzacasa A, et al: Ferric carboxymaltose vs. oral iron in the treatment of pregnant women with iron deficiency anemia: an international, open-label, randomized controlled trial (FER-ASAP). J Perinat Med 45(4):443, 2017

Briggs GG, Freeman RK, Towers CV, et al: Drugs in pregnancy and lactation. 11th edition. Wolters Kluwer, Philadelphia, 2017

Buonanno FS, Schmahmann JD, Romero JM, et al: Case 10–2016: a 22-year-old man with sickle cell disease, headache, and difficulty speaking. N Engl J Med 374:1265, 2016

Cai H, Liang M, Yang J, et al: Congenital hypofibrinogenemia in pregnancy: a report of 11 cases. Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis 29(2):155, 2018

Cappellini MD, Viprakasit V, Taher AT, et al: A phase 3 trial of luspatercept in patients with transfusion-dependent β-thalassemia. N Engl J Med 382(13):1219, 2020

Care A, Pavord S, Knight M, et al: Severe primary autoimmune thrombocytopenia in pregnancy: a national cohort study. BJOG 125(5):604, 2018

Carter A, Robison LL, Francisco L, et al: Prevalence of conception and pregnancy outcomes after hematopoietic cell transplantation: report from the Bone Marrow Transplant Survivor Study. Bone Marrow Transplant 37(11):1023, 2006

Cavenee MR, Cox SM, Mason R, et al: Erythropoietin in pregnancies complicated by pyelonephritis. Obstet Gynecol 84:252, 1994

Celkan T, Alhaj S: Prenatal diagnosis of hereditary spherocytosis with osmotic fragility test. Indian Pediatr 45(1):63, 2008

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: CDC criteria for anemia in children and childbearing-aged women. MMWR 38(22):400, 1989

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Recommendations to prevent and control iron deficiency in the United States. MMWR 47(3):1, 1998

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Recommended adult immunization schedule for ages 19 years or older, United States, 2020. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/schedules/hcp/imz/adult.html. Accessed September 6, 2020

Chakravarty EF, Khanna D, Chung L: Pregnancy outcomes in systemic sclerosis, primary pulmonary hypertension, and sickle cell disease. Obstet Gynecol 111:927, 2008

Charoenboon C, Jatavan P, Traisrisilp K, et al: Pregnancy outcomes among women with beta-thalassemia trait. Arch Gynecol Obstet 293(4):771, 2016

Chi C, Lee CA, England A, et al: Obstetric analgesia and anaesthesia in women with inherited bleeding disorders. Thromb Haemost 101(6):1104, 2009

Chou ST, Alsawas M, Fasano RM, et al: American Society of Hematology 2020 guidelines for sickle cell disease: transfusion support. Blood Adv 4(2):327, 2020

Choudhry VP, Gupta S, Gupta M, et al: Pregnancy associated aplastic anemia—a series of 10 cases with review of literature. Hematology 7(4):233, 2002

Comont T, Moulis G, Delavigne K, et al: Re: Severe primary autoimmune thrombocytopenia (ITP) in pregnancy: a national cohort study primary immune thrombocytopenia management during pregnancy. A French study. BJOG 125(5):629, 2018

Cooper N, Ghanima W: Immune thrombocytopenia. N Engl J Med 381(10):945, 2019

Cox SM, Shelburne P, Mason R, et al: Mechanisms of hemolysis and anemia associated with acute antepartum pyelonephritis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 164:587, 1991

Cunningham FG, Cox SM, Harstad TW, et al: Chronic renal disease and pregnancy outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 163:453, 1990

Cunningham FG, Nelson DB: Disseminated intravascular coagulation syndromes in obstetrics. Obstet Gynecol 126(5):999, 2015

Cunningham FG, Pritchard JA: Prophylactic transfusions of normal red blood cells during pregnancies complicated by sickle cell hemoglobinopathies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 135:994, 1979

Cunningham FG, Pritchard JA, Hankins GD, et al: Idiopathic cardiomyopathy or compounding cardiovascular events. Obstet Gynecol 67:157, 1986

Cunningham FG, Pritchard JA, Mason R: Pregnancy and sickle hemoglobinopathy: results with and without prophylactic transfusions. Obstet Gynecol 62:419, 1983

Curtis KM, Tepper NK, Jatlaoui TC, et al: U.S. Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive Use, 2016. MMWR 65(3):1, 2016

Cyganek A, Pietrzak B, Kociszewska-Najman B, et al: Anemia treatment with erythropoietin in pregnant renal recipients. Transplant Proc 43(8):2970, 2011

Daru J, Cooper NA, Khan KS: Systematic review of randomized trials of the effect of iron supplementation on iron stores and oxygen carrying capacity in pregnancy. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 95(3):270, 2016

Dashe JS, Ramin SM, Cunningham FG: The long-term consequences of thrombotic microangiopathy (thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura and hemolytic uremic syndrome) in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 91:662, 1998

Daskalakis GJ, Papageorgiou IS, Antsaklis AJ, et al: Pregnancy and homozygous beta thalassaemia major. BJOG 105:1028, 1998

de Guibert S, Peffault de Latour R, et al: Paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria and pregnancy before the eculizumab era: the French experience. Haematologica 96(9):1276, 2011

Delage R, Demers C, Cantin G, et al: Treatment of essential thrombocythemia during pregnancy with interferon-α. Obstet Gynecol 87:814, 1996

Delbrück C, Miesbach W: The course of von Willebrand factor and factor VIII activity in patients with von Willebrand disease during pregnancy. Acta Haematol 142(2):71, 2019

Dewarrat N, Kaiser J, Baud D, et al: Pregnancy with Chuvash polycythaemia and other congenital erythrocytosis. Acta Haematol 143(1):69, 2020

Dolan LM, Ryan M, Moohan J: Pyruvate kinase deficiency in pregnancy complicated by iron overload. BJOG 109:844, 2002

Dotters-Katz SK, Grotegut CA, Heine RP: The effects of anemia on pregnancy outcome with pyelonephritis. Inf Dis Obstet Gynecol 2013:780960, 2013

Duque-Afonso J, Waterhouse M, Pfeifer D, et al: Cell-free DNA characteristics and chimerism analysis in patients after allogeneic cell transplantation. Clin Biochem 52:137, 2018

Edahiro Y, Yasuda H, Ando K, et al: Self-limiting pregnancy-associated pure red cell aplasia developing in two consecutive pregnancies: case report and literature review. Int J Hematol 111(4):579, 2020

Elstein D, Granovsky-Grisaru S, Rabinowitz R, et al: Use of enzyme replacement therapy for Gaucher disease during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 177:1509, 1997

Eslick R, McLintock C: Managing ITP and thrombocytopenia in pregnancy. Platelets 31(3):300, 2020

Fadel HE, Krauss JS: Factor VII deficiency and pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 73:453, 1989

Faivre L, Meerpohl J, Da Costa L, et al: High-risk pregnancies in Diamond-Blackfan anemia: a survey of 64 pregnancies from the French and German registries. Haematologica 91:530, 2006

Fakhouri F: Pregnancy-related thrombotic microangiopathies: clues from complement biology. Transfus Apher Sci 54(2):199, 2016

Finazzi G: How to manage essential thrombocythemia. Leukemia 26(5):875, 2012

Franchini M, Montagnana M, Targher G, et al: Reduced von Willebrand factor-cleaving protease levels in secondary thrombotic microangiopathies and other diseases. Semin Thromb Hemost 33(8):787, 2007

Futterman I, Toaff M, Navi L, et al: COVID-19 and HELLP: overlapping clinical pictures in tow gravid patients. AJP Rep 10(2):e179, 2020

Gaggl M, Aigner C, Csuka D, et al: Maternal and fetal outcomes of pregnancies in women with atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome. J Am Soc Naphrol 39(3):1020, 2018

Galanello R, Cao A: Alpha-thalassemia. In Pagon RA, Bird TD, Dolan CR, et al (eds): GeneReviews. Seattle, University of Washington, 2011a

Galanello R, Cao A: Gene test review. Alpha-thalassemia. Genet Med 13(2):83, 2011b

Ganesan C, Maynard SE: Acute kidney injury in pregnancy: the thrombotic microangiopathies. J Nephrol 24(5):554, 2011

Gangat N, Wolanskij AP, Schwager S, et al: Predictors of pregnancy outcomes in essential thrombocythemia: a single institution study of 63 pregnancies. Eur J Haematol 82(5):350, 2009

Gansner JM, Achebe MM, Gray KJ, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in inherited bone marrow failure syndromes. Blood 130(14):1671, 2017

Ganz T: Anemia of inflammation. N Engl J Med 381(12):1148, 2019

Garratty G: Severe reactions associated with transfusion of patients with sickle cell disease. Transfusion 37:357, 1997

Garratty G, Leger RM, Arndt PA: Severe immune hemolytic anemia associated with prophylactic use of cefotetan in obstetric and gynecologic procedures. Am J Obstet Gynecol 181:103, 1999

George JN: The thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura and hemolytic uremic syndromes: overview of pathogenesis (experience of The Oklahoma TTP-HUS Registry, 1989–2007). Kidney Int 75(112):S8, 2009
George JN: TTP: long-term outcomes following recovery. Hematology Am Soc Hematol Educ Program 2018(1):548, 2018
George JN, Nester CM: Syndromes of thrombotic microangiopathy. N Engl J Med 371:654, 2014
Georgieff MK: Iron deficiency in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223:516, 2020
Gibson CJ, Berliner N, Miller AL, et al: A bruising loss. N Engl J Med 375:76, 2016
Giri N, Stratton P, Savage SA, et al: Pregnancies in patients with inherited bone marrow failure syndromes in the NCI cohort. Blood 130(14):1674, 2017
Gladwin MT, Vichinsky E: Pulmonary complications of sickle cell disease. N Engl J Med 359:2254, 2008
Go RS, Leung N: Vascular injury to the kidney. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2164
Govindappagari S, Nguyen M, Gupta M, et al: Severe vitamin B12 deficiency in pregnancy mimicking HELLP syndrome. Case Rep Obstet Gynecol 2019:4325647, 2019
Grainger JD, Thachil J, Will AM: How we treat glycoprotein defects; Glanzmann thrombasthenia and Bernard Soulier syndrome in children and adults. Br J Haematol 182(5):621, 2018
Green AM, Kupfer GM: Fanconi anemia. Hematol Oncol Clin North Am 23(2):193, 2009
Grigoriadis C, Tympa A, Liapis A, et al: Alpha-methyldopa-induced autoimmune hemolytic anemia in the third trimester of pregnancy. Case Rep Obstet Gynecol 2013:150278, 2013
Gupta M, Goviappagari S, Burwick RM: Pregnancy-associated atypical hemolytic uremic syndrome. Obstet Gynecol 135(1):46, 2020
Guy GP, Baxi LV, Hurlet-Jensen A, et al: An unusual complication in a gravida with factor IX deficiency: case report with review of the literature. Obstet Gynecol 80:502, 1992
Hachisuga K, Hidaka N, Fujita Y, et al: Can we predict neonatal thrombocytopenia in offspring of women with idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura? Blood Res 49(4):259, 2014
Haddad LB, Curtis KM, Legardy-Williams JK, et al: Contraception for individuals with sickle cell disease: a systematic review of the literature. Contraception 85(6):527, 2012
Hanprasertpong T, Kor-Anantakul O, Leetanaporn R, et al: Pregnancy outcomes amongst thalassemia traits. Arch Gynecol Obstet 288(5):1051, 2013
Happe SK, Zofkie AC, Nelson DB: Microangiopathic hemolytic anemia due to malignancy in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 128:1437, 2016
Harrison C: First gene therapy for β-thalassemia approved. Nat Biotechnol 37(10):1102, 2019
Hoffbrand AV: Megaloblastic anemias. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 698
Hsu HW, Belfort MA, Vernino S, et al: Postpartum thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura complicated by Budd–Chiari syndrome. Obstet Gynecol 85:839, 1995
Hunt BJ, Thomas-Dewing RR, Bramham K, et al: Preventing maternal deaths due to acquired thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 39(1):347, 2013
Hurst D, Little B, Kleman KM, et al: Anemia and hemoglobinopathies in Southeast Asian refugee children. J Pediatr 102:692, 1983
Hussein BA, Gomez K, Kadir RA: May-Hegglin anomaly and pregnancy: a systematic review. Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis 24(5):554, 2013
Ibinosa I, Leonard SA, Butwick AJ, et al: Antepartum anemia and racial/ethnic disparities in blood transfusions in California. Abstract No. 464, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:S304, 2020
Inparaj S, Buckingham M, Oakley L, et al: Pulmonary complications for women with sickle cell disease in pregnancy: systematic review and meta-analysis. Thorax 75(7):568, 2020
Iolascon A, Andolfo I, Russo R: Advances in understanding the pathogenesis of red cell membrane disorders. B J Haematol 187(1):13, 2019
Jagannath VA, Fedorowicz Z, Al Hajeri A, et al: Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for people with β-thalassaemia major. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD008708, 2014
James AH: Iron deficiency anemia in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 138(4):663, 2021
Kadir R, Chi C, Bolton-Maggs P: Pregnancy and rare bleeding disorders. Haemophilia 15(5):990, 2009
Kadir RA, Economides DL, Braithwaite J, et al: The obstetric experience of carriers of haemophilia. BJOG 104:803, 1997
Kanter J, Liem RI, Bernaudin F, et al: American Society of Hematology 2021 guidelines for sickle cell disease: stem cell transplantation. Blood Adv 5(18):3668, 2021
Kelly RJ, Hochsmann B, Szer J, et al: Eculizumab in pregnant patients with paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria. N Engl J Med 373(11):1032, 2015
Kemthong W, Jatavan P, Traisrisilp K, et al: Pregnancy outcomes among women with hemoglobin E trait. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(7):1146, 2016
Kenny L, McCrae K, Cunningham FG: Platelets, coagulation, and the liver. In Taylor RN, Roberts JM, Cunningham FG (eds): Chesley's Hypertensive Disorders in Pregnancy, 4th ed. London, Academic Press, 2015
Kihm AJ, Kong Y, Hong W, et al: An abundant erythroid protein that stabilizes free alpha-haemoglobin. Nature 417(6890):758, 2002
Knuesel SJ, Guseh JS II, Karp Leaf R, et al: Case 6–2018: a 35-year-old woman with headache, subjective fever, and anemia. N Engl J Med 378(8):753, 2018
Konkle BA: Disorders of platelets and vessel wall. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 822
Koshy M, Burd L, Wallace D, et al: Prophylactic red-cell transfusions in pregnant patients with sickle cell disease: a randomized cooperative study. N Engl J Med 319:1447, 1988
Kreher S, Ochsenreither S, Trappe RU, et al: Prophylaxis and management of venous thromboembolism in patients with myeloproliferative neoplasms: consensus statement of the haemostasis working party of the German Society of Hematology and Oncology (DGHO), the Austrian Society of Hematology and Oncology (ÖGHO) and Society of Thrombosis and Haemostasis Research (GTHe.V.) 93(12):1953, 2014
Kumar R, Advani AR, Sharan J, et al: Pregnancy induced hemolytic anemia: an unexplained entity. Ann Hematol 80:623, 2001
Kuo K, Caughey AB: Contemporary outcomes of sickle cell disease in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(4):505.e1, 2016
Lam YH, Tang MHY, Lee CP, et al: Prenatal ultrasonographic prediction of homozygous type 1 alpha-thalassemia at 12 to 13 weeks of gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 180:148, 1999
Larsen S, Bjelland EK, Haavaldsen C, et al: Placental weight in pregnancies with high or low hemoglobin concentrations. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 206:48, 2016
Lavery S: Preimplantation genetic diagnosis of haemophilia. Br J Haematol 144(3):303, 2009
Letsky EA: Hematologic disorders. In Barron WM, Lindheimer MD (eds): Medical Disorders During Pregnancy, 3rd ed. St. Louis, Mosby, 2000
Lipkind HS, Kurtis JD, Powrie R, et al: Acquired von Willebrand disease: management of labor and delivery with intravenous dexamethasone, continuous factor concentrate, and immunoglobulin infusion. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:2067, 2005
Lubetsky A, Schulman S, Varon D, et al: Safety and efficacy of continuous infusion of a combined factor VIII–von Willebrand factor (vWF) concentrate (Haemate-P) in patients with von Willebrand disease. Thromb Haemost 81:229, 1999
Luewan S, Srisupundit K, Tongsong T: Outcomes of pregnancies complicated by beta-thalassemia/hemoglobin E disease. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 104(3):203, 2009
Luewan S, Tongprasert F, Srisupundit K, et al: Fetal myocardial performance (Tei) index in fetal hemoglobin Bart's disease. Ultraschall Med 34(4):355, 2013
Luzzatto L: Hemolytic anemias. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 708
Maberry MC, Mason RA, Cunningham FG, et al: Pregnancy complicated by hemoglobin CC and C–beta-thalassemia disease. Obstet Gynecol 76:324, 1990
Maberry MC, Mason RA, Cunningham FG, et al: Pregnancy complicated by hereditary spherocytosis. Obstet Gynecol 79:735, 1992
Magann EF, Bass D, Chauhan SP, et al: Antepartum corticosteroids: disease stabilization in patients with the syndrome of hemolysis, elevated liver enzymes, and low platelets (HELLP). Am J Obstet Gynecol 171:1148, 1994
Majluf-Cruz K, Anguiano-Robledo L, Calzada-Mendoza CC, et al: von Willebrand disease and other hereditary haemostatic factor deficiencies in women with a history of postpartum haemorrhage. Haemophilia 26(1):2020
Makatsariya AD, Slukhanchuk EV, Bitsadze VO, et al: Thrombotic microangiopathy, DIC-syndrome and COVID-19: link with pregnancy prothrombotic state. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med July 6, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Makhamreh MM, Kass SL, Russo ML, et al: Type 3 von Willebrand disease in pregnancy: a systematic literature review. Am J Perinatol 38(5):436, 2021a
Makhamreh MM, Russo ML, Karl T, et al: Type 2B von Willebrand disease in pregnancy: a systematic literature review. Semin Thromb Hemost 47(2):201, 2021b
Malinowski AK, Dziegielewski C, Keating S, et al: Placental histopathology in sickle cell disease: a descriptive and hypothesis-generating study. Placenta 95:9, 2020

Malinowski AK, Shehata N, D'Souza R, et al: Prophylactic transfusion for pregnant women with sickle cell disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Blood 126(21):2424, 2015

Maroto A, Martinez-Diago C, Tio G, et al: Autoimmune hemolytic anemia in pregnancy: a challenge for maternal and fetal follow-up. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med February 25, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]

Martin-Salces M, Jimenez-Yuste V, Alvarez MT, et al: Factor XI deficiency: review and management in pregnant women. Clin Appl Thromb Hemost 16(2):209, 2010

Maymon R, Strauss S, Vaknin Z, et al: Normal sonographic values of maternal spleen size throughout pregnancy. Ultrasound Med Biol 32(12):1827, 2006

McCoy JM, Stonecash RE, Cournoyer D, et al: Epoetin-associated pure red cell aplasia: past, present, and future considerations. Transfusion 48(8):1754, 2008

McGowan KE, Malinowski AK, Schuh AC, et al: Aplastic anaemia in pregnancy—a single centre, North American series. Br J Haematol 184(3):436, 2019

Medoff BD, Shepard JO, Smith RN, et al: Case 17–2005: a 22-year-old woman with back and leg pain and respiratory failure. N Engl J Med 352:2425, 2005

Miyasaka N, Miura O, Kawaguchi T, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in patients with paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria treated with eculizumab: a Japanese experience and updated review. Int J Hematol 103(6):703, 2016

Moise KJ Jr: Umbilical cord stem cells. Obstet Gynecol 106:1393, 2005

Myers B, Pavorod S, Kean L, et al: Pregnancy outcome in Factor XI deficiency: incidence of miscarriage, antenatal and postnatal haemorrhage in 33 women with Factor XI deficiency. BJOG 114:643, 2007

Naderi M, Eshghi P, Cohan N, et al: Successful delivery in patients with FXIII deficiency receiving prophylaxis: report of 17 cases in Iran. Haemophilia 18(5):773, 2012

Nagel RL, Fabry ME, Steinberg MH: The paradox of hemoglobin SC disease. Blood Rev 17(3):167, 2003

Nance D, Josephson NC, Paulyson-Nunez K, et al: Factor X deficiency and pregnancy: preconception counselling and therapeutic options. Haemophilia 18(3):e277, 2012

Neogi SB, Devasenapathy N, Singh R, et al: Safety and effectiveness of intravenous iron sucrose versus standard oral iron therapy in pregnant women with moderate-to-severe anaemia in India: a multicentre, open-label, phase 3, randomised, controlled trial. Lancet Glob Health 7(12):e1706, 2019

Niihara Y, Miller ST, Kanter J, et al: A phase 3 trial of l-glutamine in sickle cell disease. N Engl J Med 379(3):226, 2018

Niittyvuopio R, Juvonen E, Kaaja R, et al: Pregnancy in essential thrombocythaemia: experience with 40 pregnancies. Eur J Haematol 73:431, 2004

O'Brien SH, Stanek JR, Kaur D, et al: Laboratory monitoring during pregnancy and post-partum hemorrhage in women with von Willebrand disease. J Thromb Haemost 18(3):604, 2020

Odame JE, Chan AK, Breakey VR: Factor XIII deficiency management: a review of the literature. Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis 25(3):199, 2014

O'Hara C, Singer DE, Niebuhr DW: The risk of pregnancy related hypertension disorder associated with sickle cell trait in U.S. service women. Mil Med 185(1-2):e183, 2020

Olaniran KO, Allegretti AS, Zhao SH, et al: Kidney function decline among black patients with sickle cell trait and sickle cell disease: an observational cohort study. J Am Soc Nephrol 31(2):393, 2020

Orfali KA, Ohene-Abuakwa Y, Ball SE: Diamond Blackfan anaemia in the UK: clinical and genetic heterogeneity. Br J Haematol 125(2):243, 2004

Oringanje C, Nemecek E, Oniyangi O: Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation for children with sickle cell disease. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD007001, 2013

Oteng-Ntim E, Meeks D, Seed PT, et al: Adverse maternal and perinatal outcomes in pregnant women with sickle cell disease: systematic review and meta-analysis. Blood 125(21):3316, 2015

Pajor A, Lehoczky D, Szakács Z: Pregnancy and hereditary spherocytosis. Arch Gynecol Obstet 253:37, 1993

Patras A, Figueroa R, Singh AP, et al: Romiplostim for management of refractory immune thrombocytopenic purpura in the immediate postpartum period. BMJ Case Rep 13(5):e234335, 2020

Pavord S, Daru J, Prasannan N, et al: UK guidelines on the management of iron deficiency in pregnancy. Br J Haematol 188(6):819, 2020

Peitsidis P, Datta T, Pafilis I, et al: Bernard-Soulier syndrome in pregnancy: a systematic review. Haemophilia 16(4):584, 2010

Peyandi F, Scully M, Kremer Hovinga JA, et al: Caplacizumab for acquired thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. N Engl J Med 374:511, 2016

Piel FB, Weatherall DJ: The α-Thalassemias. N Engl J Med 371:20, 2014

Pinto FO, Roberts I: Cord blood stem cell transplantation for haemoglobinopathies. Br J Haematol 141(3):309, 2008

Poon MC, d'Oiron R: Alloimmunization in congenital deficiencies of platelet surface glycoproteins: focus on Glanzmann's thrombasthenia and Bernard-Soulier's syndrome. Semin Thromb Hemost 44(6):604, 2018

Prabu P, Parapia LA: Bernard-Soulier syndrome in pregnancy. Clin Lab Haem 28:198, 2006

Pritchard JA, Scott DE, Whalley PJ, et al: The effects of maternal sickle cell hemoglobinopathies and sickle cell trait on reproductive performance. Am J Obstet Gynecol 117:662, 1973

Puig A, Dighe AS: Case 20–2013: a 29-year-old man with anemia and jaundice. N Engl J Med 368(26):2502, 2013

Punt MC, Waning ML, Mauser-Bunschoten EP, et al: Maternal and neonatal bleeding complications in relation to peripartum management in women with Von Willebrand disease: a systematic review. Blood Rev 39:100633, 2020

Rabinerson D, Fradin Z, Zeidman A, et al: Vulvar hematoma after cunnilingus in a teenager with essential thrombocythemia: a case report. J Reprod Med 52:458, 2007

Rahmati S, Azami M, Badfar G, et al: The relationship between maternal anemia during pregnancy with preterm birth: a systematic review meta-analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 33(15):2679, 2020

Ramphul K, Majias SG, Joynauth J: Patients with sickle cell disease between ages 0 and 20 years presenting with acute chest syndrome in the United States. J Pediatr Hematol Oncol 42(5):367, 2020

Randi ML, Bertozzi I, Rumi E, et al: Pregnancy complications predict thrombotic events in young women with essential thrombocythemia. Am J Hematol 89(3):306, 2014

Ray JF, Davidson AJ, Berger H, et al: Haemoglobin levels in early pregnancy and severe maternal morbidity: population-based cohort study. BJOG 127:1154, 2020

Reese JA, Peck JD, Deschamps DR, et al: Platelet counts during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 379(1):32, 2018

Rencic J, Zhou M, Hsu G, et al: Circling back for the diagnosis. N Engl J Med 377:1778, 2017

Ribeil J-A, Hacein-Bey-Abina S, Payen E, et al: Gene therapy in a patient with sickle cell disease. N Engl J Med 376:848, 2017

Rodeghiero F, Stasi R, Gernsheimer T, et al: Standardization of terminology, definitions, and outcome criteria in immune thrombocytopenic purpura of adults and children: report from an international working group. Blood 113(11):2386, 2009

Rogers DT, Molokie R: Sickle cell disease in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 37(2):223, 2010

Rosa María RN, Laura RL, Ángeles PB, et al: Use of romiplostim during pregnancy as a rescue therapy in primary immune thrombocytopenia: literature review and case description. Platelets 31(3):403, 2020

Ross AC: Impact of chronic and acute inflammation on extra- and intracellular iron homeostasis. Am J Clin Nutr 106 (Suppl 6):1581S, 2017

Ru Y, Pressman EK, Cooper EM, et al: Iron deficiency and anemia are prevalent in women with multiple gestations. Am J Clin Nutr 104(4):1052, 2016

Sadler JE, Ponca M: Antibody-mediated thrombotic disorders: thrombotic disorders: thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura and heparin-induced thrombocytopenia. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman MA, Beutler E, et al (eds): Williams Hematology, 8th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2010

Sánchez-Luceros A, Farias CE, Amaral MM, et al: von Willebrand factor–cleaving protease (ADAMTS13) activity in normal non-pregnant women, pregnant and post-delivery women. Thromb Haemost 92(6):1320, 2004

Sanders JE, Hawley J, Levy W, et al: Pregnancies following high-dose cyclophosphamide with or without high-dose busulfan or total body irradiation and bone marrow transplantation. Blood 87:3045, 1996

Santoro RC, Prejanò S: Postpartum-acquired haemophilia A: a description of three cases and literature review. Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis 20(6):461, 2009

Sarno L, Tufano A, Maruotti GM, et al: Eculizumab in pregnancy: a narrative overview. J Nephrol 32(1):17, 2019

Scanlon KS, Yip R, Schieve LA, et al: High and low hemoglobin levels during pregnancy: differential risk for preterm birth and small for gestational age. Obstet Gynecol 96:741, 2000

Scully M, Cataland SR, Peyvandi F, et al: Caplacizumab treatment for acquired thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura. N Engl J Med 380(4):335, 2019

Shah S, Sheth R, Shah K, et al: Safety and effectiveness of thalidomide and hydroxyurea combination in β-thalassaemia intermedia and major: a retrospective pilot study. Br J Maematol 188(3):318, 2020

Sharif J, Byrd L, Stevenson K, et al: Transfusion for sickle cell disease in pregnancy: a single-centre survey. Transfus Med 38(3):231, 2018

Shirel T, Hubler CP, Shah R, et al: Maternalopioid dose is associated with neonatal abstinence syndrome in children born to women with sickle cell disease. Am J Hematol 91(4):416, 2016

Sirichotiyakul S, Saetung R, Sanguansermsri T: Prenatal diagnosis of beta-thalassemia/Hb E by hemoglobin typing compared to DNA analysis. Hemoglobin 33(1):17, 2009
Smith C, Teng F, Branch E, et al: Maternal and perinatal morbidity and mortality associated with anemia in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 134(6):1234, 2019
Spiliopoulos D, Kadir RA: Congenital factor X deficiency in women: a systematic review of the literature. Haemophilia 25(2):195, 2019
Spivak JL: Polycythemia vera and other myeloproliferative neoplasms. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 733
Stefanovic V: The extended use of eculizumab in pregnancy and complement activation-associated diseases affecting maternal, fetal, and neonatal kidneys-the future is now? J Clin Med 8(3):pii:E407, 2019
Stein BL, Martin K: From Budd-Chiari syndrome to acquired von Willebrand syndrome: thrombosis and bleeding complications in the myeloproliferative neoplasms. Blood 134(22):1902, 2019
Stoof SC, van Steenbergen HW, Zwagemaker A, et al: Primary postpartum haemorrhage in women with von Willebrand disease or carriership of haemophilla despite specialized care: a retrospective survey. Haemophillia 21(4):505, 2015
Taher AT, Weatherall DJ, Cappellini MD: Thalassaemia. Lancet 391(10116): 155, 2018
Tang MW, Nur E, Biemond BJ: Immune thrombocytopenia due to COVID-19 during pregnancy. Am J Hematol 95(8):E191, 2020
Tefferi A, Pardanani A: Essential thrombocythemia. N Engl J Med 381(22):2135, 2019
Tengborn L, Baudo F, Huth-Kühne A, et al: Pregnancy-associated acquired haemophilia A: results from the European Acquired Haemophilia (EACH2) registry. BJOG 119(12):1529, 2012
Tichelli A, Peffault de Latour R, Passweg J, et al: Long-term outcome of a randomized controlled study in patients with newly diagnosed severe aplastic anemia treated with antithymocyte globuline, cyclosporine, with or without G-CSF: a severe aplastic anemia working party trial from the European Group of Blood Marrow Transplantation. Haematologica 105(5):1223, 2020
Timmermans SA, Werion A, Spaanderman ME, et al: The natural course of pregnancies in women with primary atypical haemolytic uraemic syndrome and asymptomatic relatives. Br J Haematol 190(3):442, 2020
Townsley DM, Scheinberg P, Winkler T, et al: Eltrombopag added to standard immunosuppression for aplastic anemia. N Engl J Med 376:1540, 2017
Trigg DE, Stergiotou I, Peitsidis P, et al: A systematic review: the use of desmopressin for treatment and prophylaxis of bleeding disorders in pregnancy. Haemophilia 18(1):25, 2012
Tsaras G, Owusu-Ansah A, Boateng FO, et al: Complications associated with sickle cell trait: a brief narrative review. Am J Med 122(6):507, 2009
Tshilolo L, Tomlinson G, Williams TN, et al: Hydroxyurea for children with sickle cell anemia in sub-Saharan Africa. N Engl J Med 380(2):121, 2019
Turner JM, Kaplan JB, Cohen HW, et al: Exchange versus simple transfusion for acute chest syndrome in sickle cell anemia adults. Transfusion 49(5):863, 2009
U.S. Health Resources and Services Administration: Advisory Committee on Heritable Disorders in Newborns and Children uniform screening panel. 2020. Available at: https://www.hrsa.gov/advisory-committees/heritable-disorders/index.html. Accessed September 6, 2020
Vafaei H, Karimi S, Akbarzadeh Jahromi M, et al: The effect of mother's β-thalassemia minor on placental histology and neonatal outcomes. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med June 4, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Vandevijvere S, Amsalkhir S, Oyen HV, et al: Iron status and its determinants in a nationally representative sample of pregnant women. J Acad Nutr Diet 113(5):659, 2013
Vantroyen B, Vanstraelen D: Management of essential thrombocythemia during pregnancy with aspirin, interferon alpha-2a and no treatment. A comparative analysis of the literature. Acta Haematol 107(3):158, 2002
Veille J, Hanson R: Left ventricular systolic and diastolic function in pregnant patients with sickle cell disease. Am J Obstet Gynecol 170:107, 1994
Verstraete S, Verstraete R: Successful epidural analgesia for a vaso-occlusive crisis of sickle cell disease during pregnancy: a case report. J Anesth 26(5):783, 2012
Vesely SK: Life after acquired thrombotic thrombocytopenic purpura: morbidity mortality, and risks during pregnancy. J Throm Haemost 13 Suppl 1:S216, 2015
Vianello A, Vencato E, Cantini M, et al: Improvement of maternal and fetal outcomes in women with sickle cell disease treated with early prophylactic erythrocytapheresis. Transfusion 58(9):2192, 2018
Vichinsky EP, Neumayr LD, Earles AN, et al: Causes and outcomes of the acute chest syndrome in sickle cell disease. N Engl J Med 342:1855, 2000
Villers MS, Jamison MG, De Castro LM, et al: Morbidity associated with sickle cell disease in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199:125.e1, 2008
von Tempelhoff GF, Heilmann L, Rudig L, et al: Mean maternal second-trimester hemoglobin concentration and outcome of pregnancy: a population based study. Clin Appl Thromb Hemost 14:19, 2008
Ware RE, de Montalembert, Tshilolo L, et al: Sickle cell anemia. Lancet 390(10091):311, 2017
Weatherall D: The thalassemias: disorders of globin chain synthesis. In Kaushansky K, Lichtman MA, Beutler E, et al (eds): Williams Hematology, 8th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2010
Wellenstein WL, Sullivan S. Darbinian MJ, et al: Adverse pregnancy outcomes in women with sickle cell trait. AJP Rep 9(4):e346, 2019
Wiewel-Verschueren S, Arendz IJ, M Knol H, et al: Gynaecological and obstetrical bleeding in women with factor XI deficiency—a systematic review. Haemophilia 22(2):188, 2016
Wilson S, Ellsworth P, Key NS: Pregnancy in sickle cell trait: what we do and don't know. Br J Haematol 190(3):328, 2020
Winder AD, Johnson S, Murphy J, et al: Epidural analgesia for treatment of a sickle cell crisis during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 118(2 Pt 2):495, 2011
World Health Organization: WHO recommendations on antenatal care for a positive pregnancy experience. Geneva, World Health Organization, 2016
Wright DE, Rosovsky RP, Platt MY: Case 36–2013: a 38-year-old woman with anemia and thrombocytopenia. N Engl J Med 369:21, 2013
Wyszynski DF, Carman WJ, Cantor AB, et al: Pregnancy and birth outcomes among women with idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura. J Pregnancy 2016:8297407, 2016
Xiong L, Barrett AN, Hua R, et al: Non-invasive prenatal diagnostic testing for β-thalassaemia using cell-free fetal DNA and next generation sequencing. Prenat Diagn 35(3):258, 2015
Yeomans E, Lowe TW, Eigenbrodt EH, et al: Liver histopathologic findings in women with sickle cell disease given prophylactic transfusion during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 163:958, 1990
Young NS: Aplastic anemia. N Engl J Med 379(17):1643, 2018
Zhang J, Li J, Saucier JB, et al: Non-invasive prenatal sequencing for multiple Mendelian monogenic disorders using circulating cell-free fetal DNA. Nat Med 25(3):439, 2019
Zhen L, Pen M, Han J, et al: Non-invasive prenatal detection of haemoglobin Bart's disease by cardiothoracic ratio during the first trimester. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 193:92, 2015
Ziaei S, Norrozi M, Faghihzadeh S, et al: A randomized placebo-controlled trial to determine the effect of iron supplementation on pregnancy outcome in pregnant women with haemoglobin ≥13.2 g/dl. BJOG 114:684, 2007
Zitiello A, Grant GE, Ben Ali N, et al: Thrombocytopaenia in pregnancy: the importance of differential diagnosis during the COVID-19 pandemic. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med July 8, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Zofkie AC, Schell RA, Spong CY, et al: Defining anemia in pregnancy. Abstract No. 512, Am J Obstet Gynecol 222:S332, 2020

CHAPTER 60

Diabetes Mellitus

According to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2020), nearly 27 million adults in the United States have been diagnosed with diabetes. Another 7.3 million are suspected to be undiagnosed, and an estimated 88 million have prediabetes. Reasons for these substantial rates include an aging population, which is more likely to develop type 2 diabetes; population growth within minority groups at particular risk for type 2 diabetes; and a dramatic rise in obesity rates. In 2019, almost three in 10 women were considered obese prior to becoming pregnant (Driscoll, 2020). The strong relationship between diabetes and the current obesity epidemic in the United States underlines the critical need for diet and lifestyle interventions to change the trajectory of both.

TYPES OF DIABETES

In nonpregnant individuals, the type of diabetes is based on its presumed pathogenesis and its manifestations. Absolute insulin deficiency, which generally is autoimmune in etiology, characterizes *type 1 diabetes*. In contrast, insulin resistance, relative insulin deficiency, or elevated glucose production characterizes *type 2 diabetes* (Table 60-1). Both types are generally preceded by a period of abnormal glucose homeostasis often referred to as prediabetes. Pancreatic β-cell destruction can begin at any age, but type 1 diabetes is clinically apparent most often before age 30. Type 2 diabetes usually develops with advancing age but is increasingly identified in younger obese adolescents. Etiological overlap in diabetes subtypes is well established and has led to the proposal of a single classification system centered on β-cell function along with the concept of individualized treatment strategies (World Health Organization, 2020). Other forms of diabetes include *maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY)*. The more common MODY type is in obese adolescents (TODAY Study Group, 2021). The less common form is an autosomal dominant condition and characterized by mild diabetes diagnosed in adolescence or young adulthood (Udler, 2020).

Classification During Pregnancy

Diabetes is the most common medical complication of pregnancy. Women can be separated into those diagnosed with diabetes before pregnancy—*pregestational* or *overt diabetes*, and those diagnosed during pregnancy—*gestational diabetes*.

The proportion of pregnancies complicated by diabetes more than doubled between 1994 and 2008, after which rates have leveled (Deputy, 2018; Jovanovič, 2015). In 2018, 7.6 percent of pregnant women in this country had some form of diabetes (Martin, 2019). Prevalence is highest among non-Hispanic

TABLE 60-1. Etiological Classification of Diabetes Mellitus

Type 1: β-Cell destruction, usually absolute insulin deficiency
Immune-mediated
Idiopathic

Type 2: Ranges from predominantly insulin resistance to predominantly an insulin secretory defect with insulin resistance

Other types
Genetic mutations of β-cell function: MODY 1–6, others
Genetic defects in insulin action
Genetic syndromes: Down, Klinefelter, Turner, others
Diseases of the exocrine pancreas: pancreatitis, cystic fibrosis
Endocrinopathies: Cushing syndrome, pheochromocytoma, others
Drug or chemical induced: glucocorticosteroids, thiazides, β-adrenergic agonists, others
Congenital infections: rubella, cytomegalovirus, coxsackievirus

Gestational diabetes (GDM)

MODY = maturity-onset diabetes of the young.
Adapted from American Diabetes Association, 2020; Powers, 2018.

blacks, Mexican-Americans, Puerto Rican-Americans, and Native Americans (Powers, 2018).

White Classification

Until the mid-1990s, the classification system of Priscilla White (1978) for diabetic pregnant women was the linchpin of management. Today, the White classification is used less often but still provides simple, useful information on pregnancy risks and prognosis (Bennett, 2015). Because most currently cited literature also contains data from these older classifications, the one previously recommended by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (1986) is shown in Table 60-2.

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) no longer recommends the White classification. The current focus is whether diabetes *antedates* pregnancy or is first diagnosed *during* pregnancy. Many now recommend the system proposed by the American Diabetes Association (Table 60-3).

PREGESTATIONAL DIABETES

Considering the previously mentioned high percentage of undiagnosed diabetes, many women identified with gestational diabetes likely have previously unrecognized type 2 diabetes. Indeed, 5 to 10 percent of women with gestational diabetes are diagnosed with overt diabetes immediately after pregnancy.

Diagnosis

Women with high plasma glucose levels, glucosuria, and ketoacidosis present no diagnostic challenge. Women with a random plasma glucose level >200 mg/dL plus classic signs and symptoms such as polydipsia, polyuria, and unexplained weight loss, those with a fasting glucose level >125 mg/dL, or those with a first-trimester glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA_{1c}) level of ≥6.5 percent are considered by the American Diabetes Association

TABLE 60-2. Modified White Classification Scheme Used from 1986 Through 1994 for Diabetes Complicating Pregnancy

		Plasma Glucose Level		
Class	**Onset**	**Fasting**	**2-Hour Postprandial**	**Therapy**
A_1	Gestational	<105 mg/dL	<120 mg/dL	Diet
A_2	Gestational	>105 mg/dL	>120 mg/dL	Insulin
Class	**Age of Onset (yr)**	**Duration (yr)**	**Vascular Disease**	**Therapy**
B	Over 20	<10	None	Insulin
C	10 to 19	10 to 19	None	Insulin
D	Before 10	>20	Benign retinopathy	Insulin
F	Any	Any	Nephropathy[a]	Insulin
R	Any	Any	Proliferative retinopathy	Insulin
H	Any	Any	Heart	Insulin

[a]When diagnosed during pregnancy: proteinuria ≥500 mg/24 hr before 20 weeks' gestation.

TABLE 60-3. Proposed Classification System for Diabetes in Pregnancy

Gestational diabetes: diabetes diagnosed during pregnancy that is not clearly overt (type 1 or type 2) diabetes

Type 1 Diabetes:
Diabetes resulting from β-cell destruction, usually leading to absolute insulin deficiency
a. Without vascular complications
b. With vascular complications (specify which)

Type 2 Diabetes:
Diabetes from inadequate insulin secretion in the face of increased insulin resistance
a. Without vascular complications
b. With vascular complications (specify which)

Other types of diabetes: genetic in origin, associated with pancreatic disease, drug-induced, or chemically induced

Data from American Diabetes Association, 2017a; Powers, 2018.

(2019) and the World Health Organization (2019) to have overt diabetes first detected in pregnancy.

Women with only minimal metabolic derangement may be more difficult to identify. To diagnose overt diabetes in pregnancy, the International Association of Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Groups (IADPSG) Consensus Panel (2010) recognizes the threshold values found in Table 60-4 for fasting or random plasma glucose and HbA_{1c} levels at prenatal care initiation. The American Diabetes Association (2020) and the World Health Organization (2019) now also consider a plasma glucose level >200 mg/dL measured 2 hours after a 75-g oral glucose load to be diagnostic. No consensus has been reached as to whether such testing should be universal or limited to those women classified as high risk.

Regardless, a presumed diagnosis of overt diabetes in pregnancy based on these thresholds should be confirmed postpartum. Risk factors for impaired carbohydrate metabolism in pregnant women include a strong familial history of diabetes, prior delivery of a large newborn, persistent glucosuria, or unexplained fetal losses.

Harm in Pregnancy

With overt diabetes, the embryo, fetus, and mother frequently experience serious complications directly attributable to diabetes (Egan, 2020). Many of these complications might be prevented each year by preconceptional care for improved glycemic control (Peterson, 2015). Using HbA_{1c} values as objective risk quartiles, Finneran and Kiefer (2020) reported that glycemic control throughout pregnancy and a late-pregnancy HbA_{1c} level <6.5 percent leads to reduced rates of adverse obstetrical and neonatal outcomes. The likelihood of successful outcomes with overt diabetes, however, is not simply related to glucose control. The degree of underlying cardiovascular or renal disease may be more important. Thus, advancing stages of the White classification, seen in Table 60-2, are inversely related to favorable pregnancy outcomes. Shown in Table 60-5 are data that chronicle the adverse pregnancy outcomes with overt diabetes, and many are described next (Battarbee, 2020b).

Fetal Effects

Spontaneous Abortion

Up to 25 percent of overtly diabetic mothers have an early miscarriage, and poor glycemic control is an associated factor. In one study, those whose HbA_{1c} concentrations were >12 percent or whose preprandial glucose concentrations persisted above 120 mg/dL had an elevated miscarriage risk (Galindo, 2006). In a large Chinese population-based study, those with a history of diabetes had an increased risk of miscarriage, and the risk rose 8 percent for each 20-mg/dL incremental rise in fasting glucose (Wei, 2019). In 89 pregnancies in women with the monogenic form of MODY, only women with the causative *glucose kinase (GCK)* mutation were more likely to miscarry (Bacon, 2015). Another analysis of 128 GCK-MODY pregnancies showed that the observed miscarriage rate was comparable to the background rate (Dickson, 2019). These women have hyperglycemic variability that can be difficult to control.

Preterm Delivery

Overt diabetes is an undisputed risk factor for preterm birth. In an analysis of more than 500,000 pregnancies in Ontario,

TABLE 60-4. Diagnosis of Overt Diabetes in Pregnancy[a]

Measure of Glycemia	Threshold
Fasting plasma glucose	At least 7.0 mmol/L (126 mg/dL)
Hemoglobin A_{1c}	At least 6.5%
Random plasma glucose	At least 11.1 mmol/L (200 mg/dL) plus confirmation

[a]Apply to women without known diabetes antedating pregnancy. The decision to perform blood testing for evaluation of glycemia on all pregnant women or only on women with characteristics indicating a high risk for diabetes is based on the background frequency of abnormal glucose metabolism in the population and on local circumstances.
Data from International Association of Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Groups Consensus Panel, 2010.

TABLE 60-5. Selected Maternal and Perinatal Outcomes in Percent in Women with Gestational and Overt Diabetes Compared with Nondiabetic Women[a]

Factor	Normal 182,464[b] (%)	GDM 10,549[b] (%)	Overt DM 2993[b] (%)
Maternal			
Chronic HTN	1.5	5.0	11.5
Renal disease	0.5	0.6	2.7
Gestational HTN	8.0	12.9	22.9
Chorioamnionitis	4.1	4.0	5.2
Cesarean birth	42	59	69
Neonatal			
RDS	3.8	4.7	11.0
Ventilation	2.8	3.1	7.0
NICU admit	12.8	19.8	41.9
Macrosomia	7.7	18.1	29.9
Death[c]	0.2	0.1	0.4

[a]Unless specified, all comparisons $p < 0.001$.
[b]Number of women in group.
[c]$p < 0.05$.
DM = diabetes mellitus; GDM = gestational diabetes mellitus; HTN = hypertension; NICU = neonatal intensive care unit; RDS = respiratory distress syndrome.

almost 20 percent of women with diabetes were delivered preterm compared with 5.6 percent of women without diabetes, obesity, or hypertension (Berger, 2020). More than 60 percent were indicated preterm births, that is, due to obstetrical or medical complications. Notably, more than 37 percent of women with diabetes and chronic hypertension delivered preterm. In a review of California births, 19 percent of women with pregestational diabetes delivered before 37 weeks' gestation compared with 9 percent of controls (Yanit, 2012). In a study from the United Kingdom, the preterm delivery rate was 42 percent for 8690 type 1 diabetic women and 3 percent for those with type 2 diabetes (Murphy, 2021).

Malformations

The incidence of major malformations in fetuses of women with type 1 diabetes approximates 11 percent and is at least double the rate in fetuses of nondiabetic mothers (Jovanovič, 2015). This risk is present for all women with pregestational diabetes, including those with type 2 disease (Tinker, 2020). Congenital anomalies constitute almost half of perinatal deaths in diabetic pregnancies.

Cardiovascular malformations account for more than half of the anomalies, and Table 60-6 lists selected malformations reported by the National Birth Defects Prevention Study (Tinker, 2020). In a study of more than 2 million births in Canada, the risk of an isolated cardiac defect was fivefold higher in women with type 1 diabetes compared with nondiabetic mothers (Liu, 2013). The *caudal regression sequence*, described in Chapter 15 (p. 280), is a rare malformation that, according to the National Birth Defects Prevention Study, is 80 times more likely in women with pregestational diabetes.

TABLE 60-6. Selected Congenital Malformations in Pregnancies Complicated by Overt Diabetes

Birth Defect	OR (95% CI)
Cardiovascular	
Fallot tetralogy	5.3 (3.5–8.0)
AV septal defect	10.5 (6.2–17.9)
Aortic coarctation	4.5 (2.8–7.1)
Neural-tube defect	
Anencephaly	3.5 (1.9–6.4)
Encephalocoele	5.4 (2.5–11.7)
Hydrocephaly	8.2 (5.0–13.5)
Cleft palate	4.3 (2.9–6.5)
Esophageal	3.4 (1.9–6.1)
Hypospadias	2.8 (1.7–4.8)
Renal	8.1 (3.9–16.9)
Sacral agenesis	80.2 (46.1–139.3)

CI = confidence interval; OR = odds ratio.

Poorly controlled diabetes, both preconceptionally and early in pregnancy, is thought to underlie this elevated risk for major malformation. In one study of mothers with type 1 diabetes, a periconceptional HbA_{1c} <6.5 percent carried a twofold risk for a fetal major cardiac defect, and a HbA_{1c} >9 percent carried a sixfold risk (Ludvigsson, 2018). Others cite similar frequencies (Murphy, 2021). Figure 60-1 shows the association between HbA_{1c} levels and fetal congenital malformation rates in a Parkland Hospital cohort of women with overt diabetes (Martin, 2021).

The etiological mechanisms that explain this link include excess production of toxic superoxide radicals, altered cell signaling pathways, upregulation of some genes by hyperglycemia, and

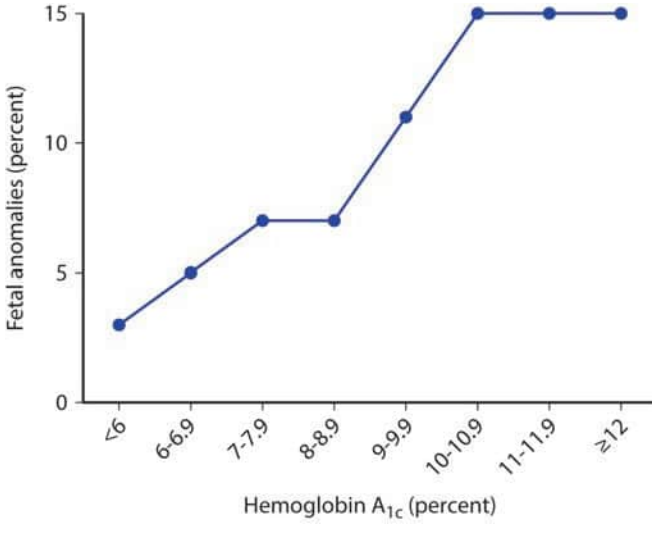


FIGURE 60-1 Association between fetal malformation rates and HbA_{1c} values determined at initiation of prenatal care in 1573 pregnancies in women with pregestational diabetes.

activation of programmed cell death (Basu, 2018; Reece, 2012). One review of potential molecular mechanisms suggests that cellular responses to oxidative stress represent possible therapeutic targets to prevent diabetes-induced embryopathy (Yang, 2015).

Altered Fetal Growth

Diminished fetal growth may result from congenital malformations or from substrate deprivation due to advanced maternal vascular disease. That said, fetal overgrowth is more typical of pregestational diabetes. Maternal hyperglycemia prompts fetal hyperinsulinemia, and this in turn stimulates excessive somatic growth. Except for the brain, most fetal organs are affected by the macrosomia that characterizes the fetus of diabetic women. Newborns are described as anthropometrically different from other large-for-gestational age (LGA) neonates (Catalano, 2003; Durnwald, 2004). Specifically, those whose mothers are diabetic have excessive fat deposition on the shoulders and trunk, which predisposes to shoulder dystocia or fetopelvic disproportion (Fig. 60-2).

The incidence of macrosomia rises significantly when mean maternal blood glucose concentrations chronically exceed 130 mg/dL (Hay, 2012). In addition, the overall birthweight distribution of neonates of diabetic mothers is skewed toward consistently heavier birthweights. In one sonographic study, the macrosomia rates for Nordic women with type 1, type 2, or gestational diabetes were 35, 28, and 24 percent, respectively (Hammoud, 2013). Moreover, the abdominal circumference grew disproportionately larger in the diabetic groups. Analysis of head circumference/abdominal circumference (HC/AC) ratios shows that this disproportionate growth occurs mainly in diabetic pregnancies that ultimately yield macrosomic newborns.

Unexplained Fetal Demise

The risk of fetal death is three to four times higher in women with pregestational diabetes (Gardosi, 2013; Patel, 2015). In the United Kingdom study of more than 17,000 pregnancies in women with pregestational diabetes, the stillbirth incidence was similar in those with type 1 or type 2 diabetes—10.4 versus 13.5 per 1000 live and stillbirths, respectively (Murphy, 2021). Stillbirth without an identifiable cause is a phenomenon relatively limited to pregnancies complicated by overt diabetes. These stillbirths are "unexplained" because common factors such as obvious placental insufficiency, placental abruption, fetal-growth restriction, or oligohydramnios are not identified. These fetuses are typically LGA and die before labor, usually later in the third trimester.

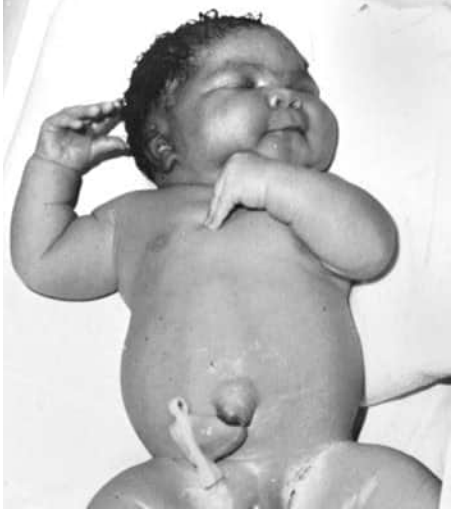


FIGURE 60-2 This 6050-g macrosomic neonate was born to a woman with gestational diabetes.

These unexplained stillbirths are usually associated with poor glycemic control. In one study, suboptimal glycemic control was identified in two thirds of unexplained stillbirths between 1990 and 2000 (Lauenborg, 2003). Fetuses of diabetic mothers also often have elevated lactic acid levels. Salvesen and colleagues (1992, 1993) analyzed fetal blood samples and reported that mean umbilical venous blood pH was lower in diabetic pregnancies and was significantly related to fetal insulin levels. These findings support a hypothesis that hyperglycemic-mediated chronic aberrations in oxygen and fetal metabolite transport may underlie these unexplained fetal deaths (Pedersen, 1977).

Maternal ketoacidosis also can cause fetal death (Bryant, 2017). Moreover, stillbirths from placental insufficiency occur with increased frequency in women with overt diabetes and are usually associated with severe preeclampsia. In the prior cited California study, the fetal death risk was sevenfold higher in women with hypertension and pregestational diabetes compared with the threefold increased risk associated with diabetes alone (Yanit, 2012). Stillbirth rates are also elevated in women with advanced diabetes and vascular complications.

Hydramnios

Diabetic pregnancies are often complicated by excess amnionic fluid. In one sonographic study, 18 percent of 314 pregnancies complicated by pregestational diabetes were found to have hydramnios in the third trimester, which was defined as an amnionic fluid index (AFI) >24 cm. Women with elevated HbA_{1c} values in the third trimester were more likely to have hydramnios (Idris, 2010). In a similar study, poor maternal glucose control was associated with macrosomia and hydramnios (Vink, 2006). A likely—albeit unproven—explanation is that fetal hyperglycemia causes fetal polyuria (Chap. 14, p. 256). In a study from Parkland Hospital, Dashe and coworkers (2000) found that the AFI parallels the amnionic fluid glucose level among women with diabetes.

Neonatal Effects

Before tests of fetal health and maturity became available, delivery before term was deliberately selected for women with diabetes to avoid unexplained stillbirth. Although this practice has been largely abandoned, a higher frequency of preterm delivery in women with diabetes persists. One analysis of early-term delivery ($37^{0/7}$ to $38^{6/7}$ weeks) showed a 13-percent reduction in such deliveries in women with diabetes between 2005 and 2011 (Little, 2015). Most indicated deliveries are prompted by advanced diabetes with superimposed preeclampsia.

Although modern neonatal care has reduced neonatal death rates due to immaturity, neonatal *morbidity* due to preterm birth continues to be a serious consequence. In one Neonatal Research Network study of 10,781 extremely preterm neonates, those born to diabetic women treated with insulin prior

to pregnancy were at greater risk for necrotizing enterocolitis and late-onset sepsis than similarly aged neonates of mothers without diabetes (Boghossian, 2016).

Respiratory Distress Syndrome

Gestational age rather than overt diabetes is likely the most significant factor associated with respiratory distress syndrome (Chap. 34, p. 615). Indeed, in one analysis of 19,399 very-low-birthweight neonates delivered between 24 and 33 weeks' gestation, rates of respiratory distress syndrome in newborns of diabetic mothers were not higher compared with rates in neonates of nondiabetic mothers (Bental, 2011). Diabetes does not appear to alter the beneficial effects of antenatal corticosteroids to hasten lung maturity (Battarbee, 2020a).

Hypoglycemia and Hypocalcemia

Newborns of a diabetic mother experience a rapid drop in plasma glucose concentration after delivery. This is attributed to the hyperplasia of fetal β-islet cells that is induced by chronic maternal hyperglycemia. Low glucose concentrations—defined as <45 mg/dL—are particularly common in newborns of women with unstable glucose concentrations during labor (van Kempen, 2020). Preliminary observations showed that early-term fetuses exposed to antenatal corticosteroids have a high rate of hypoglycemia (Gupta, 2020). Frequent blood glucose measurements in the newborn and active early feeding practices can mitigate this complication.

Hypocalcemia is defined as a total serum calcium concentration <8 mg/dL in term newborns. Early-onset hypocalcemia is one of the potential metabolic derangements in neonates of diabetic mothers. Its cause is unclear. Theories include altered magnesium–calcium economy, asphyxia, and preterm birth. In one randomized study, 137 pregnant women with type 1 diabetes were managed with strict versus customary glucose control (DeMarini, 1994). Almost a third of neonates in the customary control group developed hypocalcemia compared with only 18 percent of those in the strict-control group.

Hyperbilirubinemia and Polycythemia

The pathogenesis of hyperbilirubinemia in neonates of diabetic mothers is uncertain. A major contributing factor is newborn polycythemia, which raises the bilirubin load (Chap. 33, p. 606). Polycythemia is thought to be a fetal response to relative hypoxia. According to Hay (2012), the sources of this fetal hypoxia are hyperglycemia-mediated elevations in maternal affinity for oxygen and fetal oxygen consumption. Together with insulin-like growth factors, this hypoxia leads to elevated fetal erythropoietin levels and red cell production.

Cardiomyopathy

Newborns of pregestational and gestational diabetic pregnancies frequently have hypertrophic cardiomyopathy. This remodeling can be associated with cardiac dysfunction (Aguilera, 2020; Depla, 2021). Huang and coworkers (2013) propose that pathological ventricular hypertrophy in neonates born to women with diabetes is due to insulin excess. In severe cases, this cardiomyopathy may lead to obstructive cardiac failure. In one study, the fetuses of 26 women with pregestational diabetes underwent serial echocardiographic evaluation. In the first trimester, fetal diastolic dysfunction was already evident in some. In the third trimester, the fetal interventricular septum and right ventricular wall were thicker in fetuses of diabetic mothers (Russell, 2008). Others report similar observations (Aguilera, 2020). Most affected newborns are asymptomatic following birth, and hypertrophy usually resolves in the months after delivery. Any long-term adverse sequelae remain to be determined (Depla, 2021).

Long-term Cognitive Development

Intrauterine metabolic conditions are linked to neurodevelopment in offspring. In a study of more than 700,000 Swedish men, the intelligence quotient of those whose mothers had diabetes during pregnancy averaged 1 to 2 points lower (Fraser, 2014). DeBoer and associates (2005) demonstrated impaired memory performance at age 1 year in infants of diabetic mothers. Results from the Childhood Autism Risks from Genetics and the Environment (CHARGE) study indicated that autism spectrum disorders or developmental delay also were more common in children of diabetic women (Krakowiak, 2012). Adane and colleagues (2016) confirmed a consistent relationship between maternal diabetes and diminished cognitive and language development in studies of younger children but not older children. Because interpreting effects of the intrauterine environment on neurodevelopment is confounded by postnatal factors, the link between maternal diabetes, glycemic control, and long-term neurocognitive outcome remains unconfirmed.

Inheritance

The risk of developing type 1 diabetes if either parent is affected is 3 to 5 percent. Type 2 diabetes has a much stronger genetic component. If both parents have type 2 diabetes, the risk of their offspring developing it approaches 40 percent (Powers, 2018). Both types of diabetes develop after a complex interplay between genetic predisposition and environmental factors. Type 1 diabetes is prompted by environmental triggers such as infection, diet, or toxins and is heralded by the appearance of islet-cell autoantibodies in genetically vulnerable people (Pociot, 2016).

■ Maternal Effects

Diabetes and pregnancy can interact to an extent that maternal welfare can be jeopardized. With the possible exception of diabetic retinopathy, however, the long-term course of diabetes does not appear to be affected by pregnancy.

In one analysis of more than 800,000 pregnancies, the 1125 mothers with type 1 diabetes had greater risks for hypertension and respiratory complications than nondiabetic gravidas (Jovanovič, 2015). The 10,126 mothers with type 2 diabetes had an elevated risk for hypertension, infection, depression, and cardiac or respiratory complications compared with nondiabetic gravidas.

Maternal death is uncommon, but rates in women with diabetes are still higher than those in unaffected gravidas. In one analysis of 972 women with type 1 diabetes, the maternal mortality rate was 0.5 percent. Deaths stemmed from diabetic ketoacidosis, hypoglycemia, hypertension, and infection (Leinonen, 2001).

Preeclampsia

Pregnancy-associated hypertension is the complication that most often forces preterm delivery in diabetic women. The incidence of chronic and gestational hypertension—and especially preeclampsia—is remarkably increased (Chap. 40, p. 690). In one metaanalysis of 92 studies, women with pregestational diabetes had a nearly fourfold higher pooled relative risk for preeclampsia (Bartsch, 2016). In the prior cited California study, preeclampsia developed three to four times more often in women with overt diabetes. Moreover, those diabetics with coexistent chronic hypertension were almost 12 times more likely to develop preeclampsia (Yanit, 2012).

Women with type 1 diabetes in more advanced White classes typically exhibit preexisting vascular complications and nephropathy. These women are more likely to develop preeclampsia (Fig. 60-3). This rising risk may be related to oxidative stress, which plays a key role in the pathogenesis of diabetic complications and preeclampsia. With this in mind, the Diabetes and Preeclampsia Intervention Trial (DAPIT) randomly assigned 762 women with type 1 diabetes to antioxidant vitamin C and E supplementation or placebo in the first half of pregnancy (McCance, 2010). Preeclampsia rates were not improved except in the few with a low antioxidant status at baseline.

Preventively, low-dose aspirin prophylaxis is recommended in women at high risk of preeclampsia, which includes those with type 1 or type 2 diabetes (Chap. 40, p. 705). An 81-mg oral daily dose is initiated between 12 and 28 weeks' gestation and is continued until delivery (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

Diabetic Nephropathy

Diabetes is the leading cause of end-stage renal disease in the United States (Chap. 56, p. 1003). Clinically detectable nephropathy begins with microalbuminuria, recognized as 30 to 300 mg of protein in a 24-hour urine collection specimen. This may manifest as early as 5 years after diabetes onset. Macroalbuminuria—more than 300 mg in a 24-hour collection specimen—develops in patients destined to have end-stage renal disease. Hypertension almost invariably develops during this period, and renal failure ensues typically in the next 5 to 10 years. The incidence of overt proteinuria is nearly 30 percent in individuals with type 1 diabetes and ranges from 4 to 20 percent in those with type 2 diabetes (Reutens, 2013). Regression is common, presumably from improved glucose control.

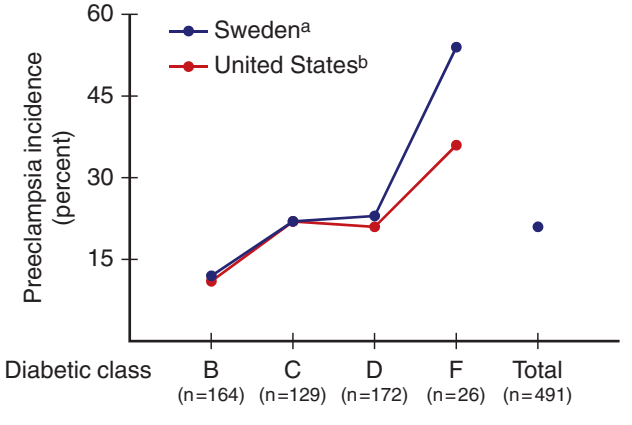


FIGURE 60-3 Incidence of preeclampsia in 491 women with type 1 diabetes stratefied by diabetic class in Sweden and the United States. (Data from Hanson[a], 1993; Sibai[b], 2000.)

Approximately 5 percent of gravidas with overt diabetes already have renal involvement (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020c). As many as 40 percent of these will develop preeclampsia (Vidaeff, 2008). In addition, Ambia and associates (2020) reported that the rates of preterm delivery, preeclampsia, and fetal-growth restriction were significantly higher in diabetic women with proteinuria >300 mg/d compared with rates in diabetic gravidas whose 24-hour protein excretion was <300 mg/d.

In general, pregnancy does not appear to worsen diabetic nephropathy. In one prospective study of 43 women with diabetes, diabetic nephropathy did not progress through 12 months after delivery (Young, 2012). Most of these women had only mild renal impairment. Conversely, pregnant women with moderate to severe renal impairment may have accelerated progression of their disease (Vidaeff, 2008). As in women with glomerulopathies, hypertension or substantial proteinuria before or during pregnancy is a major predictive factor for ultimate progression to renal failure in women with diabetic nephropathy.

Diabetic Retinopathy

Retinal vasculopathy is a highly specific complication of both type 1 and type 2 diabetes. In the United States, diabetic retinopathy is the most important cause of visual impairment in working-aged adults. The first and most common visible lesions are small microaneurysms followed by blot hemorrhages that form when erythrocytes escape from the aneurysms. These areas leak serous fluid that creates hard exudates. Such features are termed *background* or *nonproliferative retinopathy*.

With increasingly severe retinopathy, the abnormal vessels of background eye disease become occluded. This leads to retinal ischemia and infarctions that appear as *cotton wool exudates.* These are considered *preproliferative retinopathy.* In response to ischemia, neovascularization begins on the retinal surface and out into the vitreous cavity. Vision is obscured when these vessels bleed. Laser photocoagulation before hemorrhage reduces the rate of visual loss progression and blindness by half. The procedure may be performed during pregnancy when indicated.

In one study of nearly 500 pregnancies in women with type 1 diabetes, a third had prepregnancy retinopathy and 16 percent of these showed worsening (Bourry, 2021). Almost 25 percent of those without prepregnancy retinopathy developed disease during pregnancy. Fortunately, development of sight-threatening retinopathy was rare, and only 4 percent of patients followed postpartum had progression of disease.

Another group of investigators evaluated 80 women with type 2 diabetes and identified retinopathy, mostly mild, in 14 percent during early pregnancy (Rasmussen, 2010). Progression was identified in 14 percent.

Other risk factors that have been associated with progression of retinopathy include hypertension, higher levels of insulin-like growth factor 1, placental growth factor, and macular edema identified in early pregnancy (Huang, 2015; Vestgaard, 2010). The American Academy of Ophthalmology (2019)

recommends that pregnant women with overt diabetes should be offered retinal assessment after the first prenatal visit. Subsequent eye examinations depend on severity of retinopathy and level of glucose control. Currently, most agree that laser photocoagulation and good glycemic control during pregnancy minimize the potential for deleterious effects of pregnancy.

Ironically, "acute" rigorous metabolic control during pregnancy has been linked to acute worsening of retinopathy. In a study of 201 women with retinopathy, almost 30 percent suffered eye disease progression during pregnancy despite intensive glucose control (McElvy, 2001). That said, Wang and coworkers (1993) observed that although retinopathy worsened during the critical months of rigorous glucose control, long-term progression of eye disease actually slowed.

Diabetic Neuropathy

Peripheral, symmetrical sensorimotor diabetic neuropathy is uncommon in pregnant women. However, one form of this, *diabetic gastropathy*, can be troublesome during pregnancy. It causes nausea and vomiting, nutritional problems, and difficult glucose control. Affected women are advised that this complication is associated with a high risk of morbidity and poor perinatal outcome (Kitzmiller, 2008). Treatment with metoclopramide and dopamine D2 receptor antagonists is sometimes successful. Gastric neurostimulators have shown success during pregnancy (Fuglsang, 2015). Treatment of *hyperemesis gravidarum* can be challenging, and we routinely provide insulin initially by continuous infusion for diabetic women who are admitted with this condition (Chap. 57, p. 1015).

Diabetic Ketoacidosis

This serious complication develops in approximately 1 percent of diabetic pregnancies and is most often encountered in women with type 1 diabetes (Ehrmann, 2020). It is increasingly being reported in women with type 2 or even those with gestational diabetes (Bryant, 2017; Sibai, 2014). Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) may develop with hyperemesis gravidarum, infection, insulin noncompliance, insulin pump failures, β-mimetic drugs given for tocolysis, and corticosteroids given to induce fetal lung maturation. DKA results from an insulin deficiency combined with an excess in counter-regulatory hormones such as glucagon. This leads to gluconeogenesis and ketone body formation. The ketone body β-hydroxybutyrate is synthesized at a much greater rate than acetoacetate, which is preferentially detected by commonly used ketosis-detection methods. Thus, serum or plasma assays for β-hydroxybutyrate more accurately reflect true ketone body levels.

The maternal mortality rate with DKA is <1 percent, but perinatal mortality rates associated with a single episode of DKA may reach 35 percent (Bryant, 2017; Guntupalli, 2015). Noncompliance is a prominent factor, and this and DKA were historically considered prognostically bad signs in pregnancy (Pedersen, 1974). Importantly, pregnant women usually develop DKA at lower blood glucose thresholds than when nonpregnant. In a study from Parkland Hospital, the mean glucose level for pregnant women with DKA was 380 mg/dL, and the mean HbA_{1C} value was 10 percent (Bryant, 2017). Euglycemic ketoacidosis during pregnancy also is possible but is rare (Sibai, 2014; Smati, 2020).

One management protocol for diabetic ketoacidosis is shown in Table 60-7. An important cornerstone of management is

TABLE 60-7. Management of Diabetic Ketoacidosis During Pregnancy

Laboratory Assessment
Obtain arterial blood gases to document degree of acidosis present; measure glucose, creatinine, ketones, and electrolyte levels at 1- to 2-hour intervals
Insulin
Low-dose, intravenous Loading dose: 0.2–0.4 U/kg Maintenance: 2–10 U/hr
Fluids
Isotonic sodium chloride for 3L, then 0.45% saline Total replacement in first 12 hours of 4–6 L 1 L in first hour 500–1000 mL/hr for 2–4 hours 250 mL/hr until 80 percent replaced
Glucose
Begin 5-percent dextrose in 0.45% saline when glucose plasma level reaches 250 mg/dL (14 mmol/L)
Potassium
If initially normal or reduced, an infusion rate up to 15–20 mEq/hr may be required; if elevated, wait until levels decrease into the normal range, then add to intravenous solution in a concentration of 20–30 mEq/L
Bicarbonate
Add one ampule (44 mEq) to 1 L of 0.45 normal saline if serum pH is <7.1

Data from Bryant, 2017; Powers, 2018; Sibai, 2014.

vigorous rehydration with crystalloid solutions of normal saline or Ringer lactate.

Infections

The rates of many infections are higher in diabetic pregnant women. Common ones include candidal vulvovaginitis, bacterial urinary and respiratory tract infections, and puerperal pelvic sepsis. However, in one study of more than 1250 diabetic gravidas screened before 16 weeks' gestation, rates of bacterial vaginosis or vaginal colonization with *Candida* or *Trichomonas* species were not increased (Marschalek, 2016).

In one population-based study of almost 200,000 pregnancies, the risk of asymptomatic bacteriuria in women with diabetes was increased twofold (Sheiner, 2009). Another study found positive urine culture results in 25 percent of diabetic women (Alvarez, 2010). In a 2-year analysis of pyelonephritis in pregnant women at Parkland Hospital, 5 percent with diabetes developed pyelonephritis compared with 1.3 percent without diabetes (Hill, 2005). Rates of urinary tract infections can be minimized by screening and eradicating asymptomatic bacteriuria (Chap. 56, p. 995).

Last, Johnston and colleagues (2017) reported that 16.5 percent of women with pregestational diabetes had postoperative wound complications following cesarean delivery. Prevention options are described in Chapter 30 (p. 550).

Preconceptional Care

Because of the close relationship between pregnancy complications and maternal glycemic control, efforts to achieve glucose targets are typically more aggressive during pregnancy. Unfortunately, nearly half of pregnancies in the United States are unplanned, and diabetic women frequently begin pregnancy with suboptimal glucose control (Finer, 2016; Kim, 2005). Management preferably should begin before pregnancy and then include specific goals during each trimester.

To minimize early pregnancy loss and congenital malformations, the National Preconception Health and Healthcare Initiative Clinical Workgroup established values for optimal glycemic control before conception (Frayne, 2016). This was defined as a HbA_{1c} level <6.5 percent in women with pregestational diabetes. The American Diabetes Association (2017b) has also defined optimal preconceptional glucose control in those using insulin. Reflective values are self-monitored preprandial glucose levels of 70 to 100 mg/dL, peak 2-hour postprandial values of 100 to 120 mg/dL, and mean daily glucose concentrations <110 mg/dL.

In one prospective population-based study of 933 pregnant women with type 1 diabetes, the risk of congenital malformations was not demonstrably higher with HbA_{1c} levels <6.9 percent compared with the risk in more than 70,000 nondiabetic gravidas (Jensen, 2010). However, a substantial fourfold greater risk for malformations was found for HbA_{1c} levels >10 percent (see Fig. 60-1). Another study found fewer adverse outcomes with improved HbA_{1c} values from conception to midpregnancy (Davidson, 2020).

If indicated, evaluation and treatment for diabetic complications such as retinopathy or nephropathy should be instituted before pregnancy. Last, folate, 400 μg/d orally, is given periconceptionally and during early pregnancy to decrease the risk of neural-tube defects (Egan, 2020).

First-trimester Care

Careful monitoring of glucose control is essential. For this reason, we routinely hospitalize women with overt diabetes during early pregnancy to initiate an individualized glucose control program and provide education. This also affords an opportunity to assess the extent of diabetic vascular complications and precisely establish gestational age. The checklist provided by the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2020) is helpful. Some initial evaluations done at Parkland Hospital include assessment of 24-hour urine protein excretion and serum creatinine level, retinal examination, and echocardiogram if chronic hypertension is comorbid.

First-trimester screening for aneuploidy may include measurement of maternal serum pregnancy-associated plasma protein A (PAPP-A), β-human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), and ultrasound measurement of fetal nuchal translucency (Chap. 17, p. 333). Noninvasive prenatal testing with cell-free DNA also is suitable. Although initially thought not to be different in women with pregestational diabetes, one analysis of more than 100 insulin-treated women identified reductions in median PAPP-A and β-hCG levels compared with gravidas without diabetes (Gurram, 2014). Not surprisingly, they detected no difference in nuchal translucency measurements. When calculating aneuploidy risks in women with diabetes, these differences should be considered.

Insulin Treatment

The gravida with overt diabetes is best treated with insulin. Although oral hypoglycemic agents have been used successfully for gestational diabetes (p. 1083), these agents are not currently recommended for overt diabetes, despite some controversy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020c). In an international, placebo-controlled trial including 502 insulin-treated women with type 2 diabetes, adjunctive metformin therapy was associated with improved glycemic control, reduced maternal weight gain, lower cesarean delivery rate, and less neonatal adiposity (Feig, 2020). Importantly, the proportion of small-for-gestational age newborns was higher in the insulin plus metformin group, but the rate of composite serious neonatal outcomes was not increased compared with those receiving insulin plus placebo.

Maternal glycemic control can usually be achieved with multiple daily insulin injections and adjustment of dietary intake. Table 60-8 lists the action profiles of common short- and long-acting insulins (Powers, 2018). Subcutaneous insulin infusion by a calibrated pump does not yield better pregnancy outcomes compared with multiple daily injections. However, an infusion pump is a safe alternative in appropriately selected patients (Farrar, 2016). With the advent of sensor-augmented insulin pumps and closed-loop insulin delivery systems, improved glycemic control with either manual or computer-generated insulin adjustments based on continuous glucose monitoring is now possible (Bergenstal, 2021; Stewart, 2016). In one study of insulin pump use in women with type 1 diabetes, total daily insulin doses declined in the first trimester but later rose more than threefold. Postprandial glucose elevations prompted most of the required daily-dose increases (Roeder, 2012). If a

TABLE 60-8. Action Profiles of Commonly Used Insulins

Insulin Type	Onset	Peak (hr)	Duration (hr)
Short-acting (SC)			
Lispro	<15 min	0.5–1.5	2–4
Glulisine	<15 min	0.5–1.5	2–4
Aspart	<15 min	0.5–1.5	2–4
Regular (SC)	30–60 min	2–3	3–6
Regular inhaled	30–60 min	2–3	3
Long-acting (SC)			
Degludec	1–9 hr	—	<12
Detemir	1–4 hr	Minimal[a]	12–24
Glargine	1–4 hr	Minimal[a]	20–24
NPH	1–4 hr	4–10	10–16

[a]Minimal peak activity.
NPH = neutral protamine Hagedorn; SC = subcutaneous.

continuous-infusion insulin pump is elected, initiation prepregnancy may help avoid hypoglycemia and ketoacidosis risks associated with the device's learning curve (Sibai, 2014).

Monitoring

Self-monitoring of capillary glucose levels using a glucometer is recommended because this involves the woman in her own care (Dong, 2020). The American Diabetes Association (2017b) recommends fasting and postprandial glucose monitoring, and Table 60-9 lists glucose goals recommended in pregnancy. Currently not standard care, one study showed that longitudinal HbA_{1c} values could be used for risk stratification (Finneran, 2020). Advances in noninvasive glucose monitoring will undoubtedly render intermittent capillary glucose monitoring obsolete. Subcutaneous continuous glucose monitoring devices have shown that pregnant women with diabetes experience significant periods of daytime hyperglycemia and nocturnal hypoglycemia that are undetected by traditional monitoring (Combs, 2012). Such glucose monitoring systems, coupled with a continuous insulin pump, offer the potential of an "artificial pancreas" to avoid hypo- or hyperglycemia during pregnancy (Bergenstal, 2021).

Diet

Nutritional planning includes appropriate weight gain through carbohydrate and caloric modifications based on height, weight, and degree of glucose intolerance (American Diabetes Association, 2017b; Egan, 2020). The mix of carbohydrate, protein, and fat is adjusted to meet the metabolic goals and individual patient preferences. A minimum of 175 g/d of carbohydrates ideally is provided. In one analysis of more than 200 obese pregnant women with glucose intolerance, a lower carbohydrate intake, particularly late in pregnancy, was associated with lower fat mass in offspring at birth (Renault, 2015). Allotted carbohydrates are distributed throughout the day in three small- to moderate-sized meals and two to four snacks. Weight loss is not recommended, but modest caloric restriction may be appropriate for overweight or obese women. An ideal dietary composition is 55 percent carbohydrate, 20 percent protein, and 25 percent fat, of which <10 percent is saturated fat.

TABLE 60-9. Self-Monitored Capillary Blood Glucose Goals

Specimen	Level (mg/dL)
Fasting	≤95
Premeal	≤100
1-hr postprandial	≤140
2-hr postprandial	≤120
0200–0600	≥60
Mean (average)	100
Hemoglobin A_{1c}	≤6%

Hypoglycemia

Diabetic control can be unstable in the first half of pregnancy, and the incidence of hypoglycemia peaks during the first trimester. One study found hypoglycemic events—blood glucose values <40 mg/dL—in 37 of 60 women with type 1 diabetes. A fourth of these were considered severe because the women were unable to treat their own symptoms and required assistance from another person (Chen, 2007). *Caution is recommended when attempting to achieve euglycemia in women with recurrent episodes of hypoglycemia.*

From one Cochrane database review, loose glycemic control, defined as fasting glucose values >120 mg/dL, was associated with greater risks for preeclampsia, cesarean delivery, and birthweight >90th percentile compared with women with tight or moderate control (Middleton, 2016). With *very* tight control, defined by fasting values <90 mg/dL, no obvious benefits were gained, but the number of cases of hypoglycemia increased.

■ Second-trimester Care

Maternal serum alpha-fetoprotein determination at 16 to 20 weeks' gestation is used in association with targeted sonographic examination to detect neural-tube defects and other anomalies (Chap. 17, p. 338). These serum levels may be lower in diabetic pregnancies, and interpretation is altered accordingly. Because the incidence of congenital cardiac anomalies shown in Table 60-6 is increased fivefold in mothers with diabetes, fetal echocardiography is an important part of second-trimester sonographic evaluation (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2020). Dashe and coworkers (2009) cautioned that detection of fetal anomalies in obese diabetic women is more difficult than in similarly sized women without diabetes.

Regarding second-trimester glucose control, normoglycemia with self-monitoring continues to be the goal. After the first trimester's glucose instability, a stable period ensues. This is then followed by higher insulin requirements. These stem from the enhanced peripheral resistance to insulin that is related to pregnancy and is described in Chapter 4 (p. 57).

Although most women with pregestational diabetes require a higher total daily insulin dose with advancing gestational age, a small proportion will experience a reduction in their daily dose later in pregnancy. The significance of this drop remains uncertain. One Australian study evaluated women with falling

insulin requirements (FIR), defined as a ≥15 percent drop in the peak total daily insulin dose after 20 weeks' gestation (Padmanabhan, 2017). In 158 women with type 1 and type 2 diabetes and FIR, the risk for a composite of adverse outcomes indicative of placental insufficiency was fourfold greater than in those without FIR. The composite primary outcome included preeclampsia, fetal-growth disorders, delivery before 30 weeks' gestation, placental abruption, and fetal death before 20 weeks. FIR was more common in women with type 1 diabetes.

Third-trimester Care and Delivery

During the past several decades, the threat of late-pregnancy stillbirth in women with diabetes prompted recommendations for various fetal surveillance programs beginning in the third trimester. Such protocols include fetal movement counting, periodic fetal heart rate monitoring, intermittent biophysical profile evaluation, and contraction stress testing (Chap. 20, p. 384). None of these techniques has been subjected to prospective randomized clinical trials, and their primary value seems related to their low false-negative rates. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020c, 2021) suggests initiating such testing at 32 to 34 weeks' gestation. With reassuring testing and no other complications, delivery is anticipated between $39^{0/7}$ and $39^{6/7}$ weeks.

At Parkland Hospital, women with diabetes are seen in a specialized Maternal–Fetal Medicine clinic every 2 weeks. During these visits, glycemic control records are evaluated, and insulin doses are adjusted. Women are routinely instructed to perform fetal kick counts beginning early in the third trimester. At 34 weeks' gestation, admission to our High-Risk Pregnancy Unit is offered to all insulin-treated women. Approximately half of these women choose admission. While in the hospital, they continue daily fetal movement counts and undergo fetal heart rate monitoring three times a week. With no other complications, delivery at Parkland is typically planned for 38 weeks.

At the University of Alabama at Birmingham, weekly antenatal testing is initiated no later than 34 weeks' gestation. Twice-weekly testing is reserved for those with poorly controlled diabetes or supervening medical or obstetrical complications. Delivery is planned for 39 weeks' gestation in those with good glycemic control and reassuring antenatal testing. Earlier delivery is planned for those with poor glycemic control or significant comorbidities.

For vaginal delivery, labor induction may be attempted when the fetus is not excessively large and the cervix is considered favorable (Chap. 26, p. 486). Cesarean delivery at or near term has frequently been used to avoid the traumatic birth of a large fetus in a woman with diabetes. In women with more advanced diabetes, especially those with vascular disease, the reduced likelihood of successful labor induction remote from term has also contributed to an increased cesarean delivery rate.

In an analysis of pregnancy outcomes of diabetic women from University of Alabama at Birmingham according to the White classification, the rates of cesarean delivery and preeclampsia escalated with White class (Bennett, 2015). In another study, a HbA_{1c} level >6.4 percent at delivery was independently associated with urgent cesarean delivery (Miailhe, 2013). This suggests that tighter glycemic control during the third trimester might reduce late fetal compromise and cesarean delivery for fetal indications. Many of these women have undergone prior cesarean delivery. Somewhat related to this, the cesarean delivery rate for women with overt diabetes has remained at approximately 80 percent for the past 40 years at Parkland Hospital.

Reducing or withholding the dose of long-acting insulin on the day of delivery is recommended. Regular insulin should be used to meet most or all of the insulin needs of the mother during this time, because insulin requirements typically drop markedly after delivery. During labor, continuous insulin infusion by calibrated intravenous pump is most satisfactory (Table 60-10). The woman should be adequately hydrated intravenously and given glucose in sufficient amounts to maintain euglycemia. Capillary or plasma glucose levels are checked hourly during active labor, and regular insulin is administered accordingly.

Puerperium

Often, many diabetic women may require virtually no insulin for the first 24 hours or more postpartum. Subsequently, insulin requirements may fluctuate markedly during the next few days. Infection must be promptly detected and treated. When appropriate, oral agents can be restarted. For type 2 diabetic women who will be transitioned to oral agents, this can be done on postoperative day 1.

Counseling in the puerperium should include a discussion of birth control. Effective contraception is especially important in women with overt diabetes to allow optimal glucose control before subsequent conception (Chap. 38, p. 664).

GESTATIONAL DIABETES

In the United States in 2016, almost 6 percent of pregnancies were complicated by gestational diabetes (Deputy, 2018). Worldwide, its prevalence differs according to race, ethnicity, age, and body composition and by screening and diagnostic criteria. As discussed in the following sections, several persisting controversies pertain to the diagnosis and treatment of gestational diabetes.

TABLE 60-10. Insulin Management for Labor Induction or Scheduled Cesarean Delivery

Give evening dose insulin.
Withhold morning dose.
Infuse intravenous normal saline at 100–125 mL/hr.
Regular insulin is infused at 1–1.25 units/hr if glucose levels >100 mg/dL.
Measure glucose levels hourly.
With active labor or if glucose levels are >70 mg/dL, change from intravenous saline to 5% dextrose given at 100–150 mL/hr with a target glucose level of ~100mg/dL.

The word *gestational* implies that diabetes is induced by pregnancy—ostensibly because of exaggerated physiological changes in glucose metabolism (Chap. 4, p. 57). Gestational diabetes is defined as carbohydrate intolerance of variable severity with its onset or first recognition during pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). This definition applies whether or not insulin is used for treatment and undoubtedly includes some women with previously unrecognized overt diabetes.

The term *gestational diabetes* aims to communicate the need for enhanced surveillance during pregnancy and to stimulate further testing postpartum. The most important perinatal correlate is excessive fetal growth, which may result in both maternal and fetal birth trauma. The likelihood of fetal death with appropriately treated gestational diabetes is not different from that in the general population. More than half of women with gestational diabetes ultimately develop overt diabetes in the ensuing 20 years. Moreover, mounting evidence implicates long-range complications that include obesity and diabetes in their offspring.

Screening and Diagnosis

Despite almost 50 years of research, there is still no agreement on the optimal screening method for gestational diabetes. The difficulty in achieving consensus is underscored by the controversy following publication of the single-step approach shown in Table 60-11, which assesses the glucose values following a 75-g oral glucose load. This strategy is espoused by the International Association of Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Groups Consensus Panel (2010) and was greatly influenced by results of the Hypoglycemia and Pregnancy Outcomes (HAPO) study, described subsequently. Although the American Diabetes Association (2019) supports this new scheme, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) continues to recommend a two-step approach to screen and then diagnose gestational diabetes. Similarly, the National Institutes of Health (NIH) Consensus Development Conference in 2013 concluded that evidence is insufficient to adopt a one-step approach.

The recommended two-step approach begins with either universal or risk-based selective screening using a 50-g, 1-hour oral glucose challenge test. Participants in the Fifth International Workshop Conferences on Gestational Diabetes endorsed use of *selective screening* criteria shown in Table 60-12 (Metzger, 1998).

TABLE 60-11. Threshold Values for Diagnosis of Gestational Diabetes with 75-g OGTT

Plasma Glucose	Glucose Concentration Threshold[a]		Above Threshold (%)
	mmol/L	mg/dL	Cumulative
Fasting	5.1	92	8.3
1-hr OGTT	10.0	180	14.0
2-hr OGTT	8.5	153	16.1[b]

[a]One or more of these values from a 75-g OGTT must be equaled or exceeded for the diagnosis of gestational diabetes.
[b]In addition, 1.7% of participants in the initial cohort were unblinded because of fasting plasma glucose levels >5.8 mmol/L (105 mg/dL) or 2-hr OGTT values >11.1 mmol/L (200 mg/dL), bringing the total to 17.8%.
OGTT = oral glucose tolerance test.

TABLE 60-12. Risk-Based Recommended Screening Strategy for Detecting GDM[a]

GDM risk assessment: should be ascertained at the first prenatal visit

Low Risk: Blood glucose testing not routinely required if all the following are present:
- Member of an ethnic group with a low prevalence of GDM
- No known diabetes in first-degree relatives
- Age <25 years
- Weight normal before pregnancy
- Weight normal at birth
- No history of abnormal glucose metabolism
- No history of poor obstetrical outcome

Average Risk: Perform blood glucose testing at 24 to 28 weeks using either:
- Two-step procedure: 50-g oral glucose challenge test (GCT), followed by a diagnostic 100-g OGTT for those meeting the threshold value in the GCT
- One-step procedure: diagnostic 100-g OGTT performed on all subjects

High Risk: Perform blood glucose testing as soon as feasible, using the procedures described above, if one or more of these are present:
- Severe obesity
- Strong family history of type 2 diabetes
- Previous history of GDM, impaired glucose metabolism, or glucosuria
- If GDM is not diagnosed, blood glucose testing should be repeated at 24 to 28 weeks' gestation or at any time symptoms or signs suggest hyperglycemia

[a]Criteria of the Fifth International Workshop-Conference on Gestational Diabetes.
GDM = gestational diabetes mellitus; OGTT = oral glucose tolerance test.

Conversely, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) recommends *universal screening* of pregnant women with a protocol that provides a 50-g oral glucose load and that is followed in 1 hour by a laboratory-based blood glucose test. It is suggested that attempts to identify the minority of women who should *not* be screened would add unnecessary complexity. Screening should be performed between 24 and 28 weeks' gestation in those women not known to have glucose intolerance earlier in pregnancy. This *50-g screening test* is followed by a *diagnostic 100-g, 3-hour oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT)* if screening results meet or exceed a predetermined plasma glucose concentration.

For the 50-g screening test, the plasma glucose level is measured 1 hour after a 50-g oral glucose load without regard to the time of day or time of last meal. In an earlier review, the pooled sensitivity for a threshold of 140 mg/dL ranged from 74 to 83 percent depending on 100-g thresholds used for diagnosis (van Leeuwen, 2012). Sensitivity estimates for a 50-g screen threshold of 135 mg/dL improved only slightly to 78 to 85 percent, but specificity dropped from a range of 72 to 85 percent for 140 mg/dL to 65 to 81 percent. Using a threshold of 130 mg/dL marginally improves sensitivity with a further decline in specificity (Donovan, 2013). In the absence of clear evidence supporting one cutoff value over another, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) sanctions using any one of these three 50-g screen thresholds. At Parkland Hospital, we continue to use 140 mg/dL as the screening threshold to prompt the 100-g test. The threshold used at the University of Alabama at Birmingham is 135 mg/dL.

Justification for screening and treatment of women with gestational diabetes was strengthened by a randomized treatment trial in 1000 women (Crowther, 2005). Women diagnosed with gestational diabetes after a 75-g OGTT and assigned to receive dietary advice with blood glucose monitoring plus insulin therapy were compared with a cohort assigned to usual prenatal care. The former group had a significantly lower risk of a composite perinatal adverse outcome that included death, shoulder dystocia, bone fracture, and nerve palsy. Macrosomia defined by birthweight ≥4000 g complicated 10 percent of deliveries in the intervention group compared with 21 percent in the routine prenatal care group. Cesarean delivery rates were almost identical in the two study groups.

Slightly different results were reported by the Maternal–Fetal Medicine Units Network randomized trial of 958 women identified with mild gestational diabetes using a two-step screening and diagnosis approach (Landon, 2009). They reported no differences in rates of composite morbidity that included stillbirth, birth trauma, and neonatal hypoglycemia, hyperinsulinemia, and hyperbilirubinemia. Secondary analyses did demonstrate a 50-percent reduction in macrosomia, fewer cesarean deliveries, and a significant decrease in shoulder dystocia rate—1.5 versus 4 percent—in treated versus routine care groups.

Based largely on these two landmark studies, the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force (2021) recommends universal screening in low-risk women after 24 weeks' gestation. However, the Task Force concluded that evidence is insufficient to assess the balance of benefits versus harms of screening before 24 weeks. Earlier screening in obese women did not result in better outcomes (Harper, 2020).

TABLE 60-13. Diagnosis of Gestational Diabetes Mellitus Using Threshold Glucose Values from 100-g Oral Glucose Tolerance Test[a,b]

	NDDG[c]		Carpenter–Coustan[d]	
Time	(mg/dL)	(mmol/L)	(mg/dL)	(mmol/L)
Fasting	105	5.8	95	5.3
1-hr	190	10.6	180	10.0
2-hr	165	9.2	155	8.6
3-hr	145	8.0	140	7.8

[a]The test should be performed when the patient is fasting.
[b]Two or more of the venous plasma glucose concentrations listed are met or exceeded for a positive diagnosis.
[c]Serum glucose level.
[d]Serum or plasma glucose level.
NDDG = National Diabetes Data Group.
Data from American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a; American Diabetes Association, 2019; Ferrara, 2002.

The optimal OGTT to identify gestational diabetes also is debated. Proposed criteria for interpretation of the diagnostic 100-g OGTT are shown in Table 60-13. Criteria for the 75-g OGTT are shown in Table 60-11. A secondary analysis of the Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units Network treatment trial showed that women diagnosed with either the National Diabetes Data Group (NDDG) or the Carpenter-Coustan criteria benefited from treatment (Harper, 2016). However, the number needed to treat to prevent a shoulder dystocia was higher for the Carpenter-Coustan criteria. Others report similar observations (Ghaffari, 2020). At Parkland Hospital, we use the NDDG criteria for diagnosis, whereas Carpenter-Coustan criteria are preferred at the University of Alabama at Birmingham.

Controversies of Screening and Diagnosis

The HAPO study was a 7-year international epidemiological study of 23,325 pregnant women at 15 centers in nine countries analyzing the association of various levels of glucose intolerance during the third trimester with adverse perinatal outcomes (HAPO Study Cooperative Research Group, 2008). Blood glucose levels were stratified into seven categories (Fig. 60-4). These values were then correlated with rates for birthweight >90th percentile, primary cesarean delivery, neonatal hypoglycemia, and cord serum C-peptide levels >90th percentile. Cord serum C-peptide is secreted in equimolar concentrations with insulin and reflects fetal β-islet cell function. Findings generally supported the supposition that increasing plasma glucose levels were associated with increasing adverse outcomes.

The International Association of Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Group

This workshop conference in 2008 concerned the diagnosis and classification of gestational diabetes. After reviewing the results of the HAPO study, a panel developed recommendations for the diagnosis and classification of hyperglycemia during pregnancy.

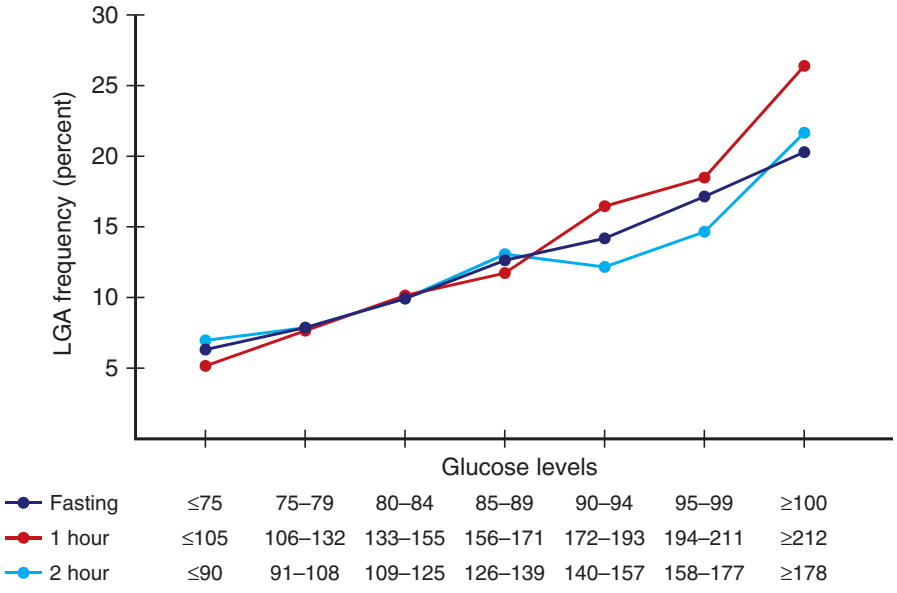


FIGURE 60-4 Hyperglycemia and Adverse Pregnancy Outcome (HAPO) Study. The frequency of newborn birthweight ≥90th percentile for gestational age plotted against glucose levels fasting and at 1- and 2-hr intervals following a 75-g oral glucose load. LGA = large for gestational age. (Reproduced with permission from HAPO Study Cooperative Research Group, Metzger BE, Lowe LP, et al: Hyperglycemia and adverse pregnancy outcomes, N Engl J Med. 2008 May 8;358(19):1991–2002.)

This panel allowed for the diagnosis of overt diabetes during pregnancy as shown in Table 60-4. It also recommended a single-step approach to the diagnosis of gestational diabetes using the 75-g, 2-hour OGTT and thresholds derived using an arbitrary 1.75 odds ratio of outcomes such as LGA birthweight and cord serum C-peptide levels >90th percentile. Only one of these thresholds, shown in Table 60-11, would need to be met or exceeded to make the diagnosis of gestational diabetes.

During their deliberations, the IADPSG estimated that implementation of these recommendations would raise the prevalence of gestational diabetes in the United States to 17.8 percent! Said another way, using this approach, the number of women with mild gestational diabetes would increase almost threefold with no evidence of treatment benefit (Cundy, 2012). Feldman and coworkers (2016) evaluated the implementation of the IADPSG paradigm in a before-after analysis that included more than 6000 women. Compared with a two-step approach, the new strategy was associated with a significant rise in gestational diabetes diagnosis rates but not with reduced macrosomia rates. Remarkably, they identified a higher primary cesarean delivery rate associated with adoption of the IADPSG recommendations. The American Diabetes Association (2013, 2019) initially recommended adopting this new approach, based on benefits inferred from trials in women identified using a two-step approach described earlier. However, it now concludes that data also support a two-step strategy.

NIH Consensus Development Conference

Prompted by these disparate recommendations, the NIH Consensus Development Conference on Diagnosing Gestational Diabetes Mellitus (2013) was convened. The panel found insufficient evidence to adopt the one-step diagnostic process proposed by the IADPSG and recommended continuation of the two-step approach. The Consensus Conference panel did also suggest that further studies resolving the beneficial uncertainties associated with the one-step approach could warrant revision of their conclusions.

A recent trial compared the IADPSG single-step approach to the more traditional two-step approach in almost 24,000 women (Hillier, 2021). Consistent with the IADPSG prediction, the incidence of gestational diabetes was 16.5 percent in those who underwent single-step testing compared with 8.5 percent in women assigned to two-step testing. However, incidences of hypertensive disorders of pregnancy, primary cesarean delivery, LGA newborns, and/or a perinatal composite outcome including measures of birth trauma and perinatal death were not materially different between testing groups. Thus, this large and pragmatic trial does *not* show maternal or perinatal benefit and thus does not justify the increased patient and healthcare costs of broadening the diagnosis of gestational diabetes using the proposed single-step approach (Casey, 2021).

■ Maternal and Fetal Effects

Adverse consequences of gestational diabetes differ from those of pregestational diabetes (see Table 60-5). Similar to women with overt diabetes, adverse maternal effects associated with gestational diabetes include a higher frequency of hypertension and cesarean delivery.

Unlike women with overt diabetes, women with gestational diabetes do not appear to have fetuses with substantially higher rates of anomalies than the general obstetrical population (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a; Sheffield, 2002). In a study of more than 1 million women from the Swedish Medical Birth Registry, major malformation rates were marginally elevated in fetuses of gestational diabetics compared with those of nondiabetic controls—2.3 versus 1.8 percent (Fadl, 2010).

From this Registry, the stillbirth rate was not higher. Additionally, the stillbirth rate was not increased in an analysis of more than 800,000 pregnancies from 2005 through 2011 (Jovanovič, 2015). That said, women with *elevated* fasting glucose levels have elevated rates of unexplained stillbirths similar to those of women with overt diabetes. This increasing risk with progressive maternal hyperglycemia emphasizes the importance of identifying women with evidence of preexisting diabetes early in pregnancy (see Table 60-4).

Fetal Macrosomia

The primary effect attributed to gestational diabetes is excessive fetal size that is variably defined and discussed in Chapter 47

(p. 832). The perinatal goal is to avoid difficult delivery from macrosomia and concomitant birth trauma associated with shoulder dystocia. In one analysis of more than 80,000 vaginal births in Chinese women, the calculated risk for shoulder dystocia in newborns weighing ≥4200 g was 76-fold greater than the risk in those weighing <3500 g (Cheng, 2013). However, the odds ratio for shoulder dystocia in women with diabetes was <2. Said another way, although gestational diabetes is certainly a risk factor, it accounts for only a small number of pregnancies complicated by shoulder dystocia.

One study identified shoulder dystocia in approximately 4 percent of women with mild gestational diabetes compared with <1 percent of women with a 50-g glucose screen result <120 mg/dL (Landon, 2011). The excessive shoulder and trunk fat that commonly characterizes the macrosomic newborn of a diabetic mother predisposes such neonates to shoulder dystocia or cesarean delivery (Durnwald, 2004; McFarland, 2000). However, one prospective study of fetal adipose measurements demonstrated no differences between measurements in 630 offspring of women with gestational diabetes and 142 without diabetes (Buhling, 2012). The authors attributed this negative finding to successful treatment of gestational diabetes.

Insulin-like growth factors also influence fetal growth. These proinsulin-like polypeptides are produced by virtually all fetal organs and are potent stimulators of cell differentiation and division. Although not a current clinical tool, one study found that maternal insulin-like growth factor 1 levels strongly correlated with birthweight (Luo, 2012). The HAPO Study Cooperative Research Group (2008) also found dramatic elevations in cord serum C-peptide levels associated with rising maternal glucose levels following a 75-g OGTT. C-peptide levels >90th percentile were found in almost a third of newborns in the highest glucose categories. Other factors implicated in macrosomia include epidermal growth factor, fibroblast growth factor, platelet-derived growth factor, leptin, and adiponectin (Grissa, 2010; Loukovaara, 2004; Mazaki-Tovi, 2005).

Maternal body mass index (BMI) is an independent and more substantial risk factor for fetal macrosomia than is glucose intolerance (Ehrenberg, 2004; Mission, 2013). In a secondary analysis of women with either untreated mild gestational diabetes or normal glucose tolerance testing results, higher BMI levels were associated with rising birthweight, regardless of glucose levels (Stuebe, 2012). Another analysis found that gestational diabetes, compared with obesity or gestational weight gain, contributed the least to the population-attributable fraction of LGA neonates (Kim, 2014). The highest fraction of LGA neonates was attributable to maternal obesity plus excessive gestational weight gain. Similarly, Egan and colleagues (2014) found that excessive gestational weight gain is common in women with gestational diabetes and confers an additive risk for fetal macrosomia.

Weight distribution also seems to play a role because the risk of gestational diabetes is greater with maternal truncal obesity. One cohort study found that increased maternal abdominal subcutaneous fat thickness at 18 to 22 weeks' gestation correlated with BMI and was a better predictor of gestational diabetes (Suresh, 2012).

Neonatal Hypoglycemia

Hyperinsulinemia may provoke severe neonatal hypoglycemia within minutes of birth, but only three fourths of these episodes occur in the first 6 hours (Harris, 2012). The definition of neonatal hypoglycemia is debated, and recommended clinical thresholds range from 35 to 45 mg/dL. One NIH workshop conference on the topic supported a threshold of 35 mg/dL in term newborns but cautioned that this practice is not strictly evidence based (Hay, 2009). Treating neonates with glucose levels <47 mg/dL did not improve outcomes compared with treating those with glucose levels <36 mg/dL (van Kempen, 2020).

Newborns described by the HAPO Study Cooperative Research Group (2008) had an incidence of clinical neonatal hypoglycemia that rose with increasing maternal OGTT result values defined in Figure 60-4. The frequency varied from 1 to 2 percent, but it was as high as 4.6 percent in women with fasting glucose levels ≥100 mg/dL. Similarly, an analysis of more than 3000 Korean women who underwent a 50-g OGTT found that neonates born to women with a screening result ≥200 mg/dL were 84 times more likely to have hypoglycemia than those born to women with a result <140 mg/dL (Cho, 2016). The risk of neonatal hypoglycemia correlates with umbilical cord C-peptide levels. The risk also rises with birthweight, independent of a maternal diabetes diagnosis (Mitanchez, 2014).

Management

Women with gestational diabetes can be divided into two functional classes using fasting glucose levels. Pharmacological methods are usually recommended if diet modification does not consistently maintain the fasting plasma glucose levels <95 mg/dL or the 2-hour postprandial plasma glucose <120 mg/dL (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). Whether pharmacological treatment should be used in women with lesser degrees of fasting hyperglycemia is unclear. No controlled trials have been done to identify ideal glucose targets for fetal risk prevention. On the other hand, the HAPO Study Cooperative Research Group (2008) did demonstrate increased fetal risk at glucose levels below the threshold used for diagnosis of diabetes. The Fifth International Workshop Conference recommended that fasting capillary glucose levels be kept ≤95 mg/dL (Metzger, 2007).

In their systematic review, Hartling and associates (2013) concluded that treating gestational diabetes resulted in significantly lower incidences of preeclampsia, shoulder dystocia, and macrosomia. For example, the calculated risk ratio was 0.50 for delivering a newborn >4000 g after treatment. These investigators caution that the attributed risk for these outcomes is low, especially when glucose values are only moderately elevated. They were unable to demonstrate an effect on neonatal hypoglycemia or on future metabolic outcomes in the offspring.

Diabetic Diet

Nutritional instructions generally include a carbohydrate-controlled diet sufficient to maintain normoglycemia and avoid ketosis. On average, this includes a caloric intake of 30 to 35 kcal/kg/d. In one study, 152 women with gestational diabetes were randomly assigned to a 40- or a 55-percent daily carbohydrate

diet, and no differences in insulin levels and pregnancy outcomes were found (Moreno-Castilla, 2013). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) suggests that carbohydrate intake be limited to 33 to 40 percent of the total daily calories. The remaining calories are apportioned to give 20 percent as protein and 40 percent as fat.

The most appropriate dietary approach for women with gestational diabetes has not been established. One metaanalysis of trials of low-glycemic-index diets found that diets higher in complex carbohydrates and dietary fiber reduced the risk of macrosomia and likelihood of insulin use in women with gestational diabetes (Wei, 2016). However, there clearly are limits to what can be accomplished with various dietary approaches alone. Most and Langer (2012) found that insulin was effective in reducing the risk of excessive birthweight in offspring of obese women with gestational diabetes. Casey and colleagues (2015b) also found that dietary treatment alone for morbidly obese women with mild gestational diabetes did not reduce neonatal fat mass or LGA birthweights.

Exercise

Few trials have evaluated exercise specifically for women with gestational diabetes. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) recommends regular physical activity that incorporates aerobic and strength-conditioning exercise during pregnancy and extends this to women with gestational diabetes. Two recent metaanalyses demonstrate that structured exercise programs during pregnancy diminish weight gain during pregnancy and even reduce the risk of developing gestational diabetes (Russo, 2015; Sanabria-Martinez, 2015). Exercise during pregnancy in women with gestational diabetes also lowers glucose levels (Jovanovic-Peterson, 1989).

Glucose Monitoring

Hawkins and associates (2008) compared outcomes in 315 women with diet-treated gestational diabetes who used personal glucose monitors against those of 615 gestational diabetics who were also diet-treated but who underwent intermittent fasting glucose evaluation during weekly obstetrical visits. Women using daily blood-glucose self-monitoring had significantly fewer macrosomic newborns. They also gained less weight after diagnosis than women evaluated during clinic visits only. These findings support the common practice of blood-glucose self-monitoring for women with diet-treated gestational diabetes.

Postprandial surveillance for gestational diabetes is superior to preprandial surveillance (DeVeciana, 1995). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) and the American Diabetes Association (2019) recommend glucose assessment four times daily. The first check is performed fasting, and the remainder are done 1 or 2 hours after each meal. At Parkland Hospital in women with diet-treated gestational diabetes, changing to postprandial monitoring significantly reduced weekly maternal weight gain (0.45 lb) compared with preprandial monitoring (0.63 lb).

Insulin Treatment

Historically, insulin has been considered standard therapy in women with gestational diabetes when target glucose levels cannot be consistently achieved through nutrition and exercise. Insulin does not cross the placenta, and tight glycemic control can usually be achieved. Insulin therapy is typically added if fasting levels persist above 95 mg/dL in women with gestational diabetes. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) also recommends that insulin be considered in women with 1-hour postprandial levels that persistently exceed 140 mg/dL or those with 2-hour levels >120 mg/dL. Importantly, all of these thresholds are extrapolated from recommendations for managing women with overt diabetes.

The starting insulin dose is typically 0.7 to 1.0 U/kg/d and is given in divided doses (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). A combination of intermediate-acting and short-acting insulin may be used, and dose adjustments are based on glucose levels at particular times of the day.

At Parkland Hospital, the starting daily dose is divided so that two thirds is given in the morning before breakfast and one third in the evening before dinner. In the morning dose, one third is regular insulin and two thirds are NPH (neutral protamine Hagedorn) insulin. For the evening dose, one half is regular insulin and the other half is NPH. Insulin instruction for these women is accomplished either in a specialized outpatient clinic or during a short hospital stay.

At the University of Alabama at Birmingham, a basal-bolus approach using insulin glargine with rapid-acting insulin at each meal is preferred. After calculating an initial insulin dose, half is given as long-acting glargine at bedtime, and the other half is administered as rapid-acting insulin split into three doses given before breakfast, lunch, and dinner. As shown in Table 60-8, when using insulin analogues such as insulin aspart and insulin lispro, the more rapid onset of action must be considered during postprandial glucose management.

Oral Hypoglycemic Agents

Insulin is the preferred first-line agent for persistent hyperglycemia in women with gestational diabetes (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a; American Diabetes Association, 2017b). Both organizations acknowledge that several studies support the safety and efficacy of either metformin (Glucophage) or glyburide (Micronase), which is also called glibenclamide (Feig, 2020; Langer, 2000; Nicholson, 2009). Balsells and coworkers (2015) completed a metaanalyses of trials that compared both agents with insulin or with each other. In the seven trials comparing glyburide with insulin, glyburide was associated with higher birthweight, more macrosomia, and more frequent neonatal hypoglycemia. In the six trials comparing metformin with insulin, metformin was associated with less maternal weight gain, more preterm birth, and less severe neonatal hypoglycemia. Women requiring insulin initiation or insulin addition were considered to have failed treatment. On average, such failures occurred in 6 percent of women treated with glyburide and 34 percent of those treated with metformin. In the two studies directly comparing oral hypoglycemic agents, however, treatment failure rates of both agents were equivalent. Moreover, reminiscent of findings from the trial of adjunctive metformin therapy in women with type 2 diabetes previously described, metformin treatment was associated with less maternal weight gain, lower birthweight, and less macrosomia.

Conversely, in a randomized trial of glyburide treatment as an adjunct to diet therapy in 395 women with mild gestational diabetes, Casey and colleagues (2015a) did not identify any significant improvements in pregnancy outcomes in women treated with adjunctive glyburide.

Concerns have also emerged regarding potential adverse outcomes among women treated with glyburide. First, glyburide crosses the placenta and reaches concentrations in the fetus that are more than two thirds of maternal levels (Caritis, 2013). In a study of more than 9000 women with gestational diabetes treated with either insulin or glyburide, a significant rise in rates of neonatal intensive care unit admission, respiratory distress, and neonatal hypoglycemia was associated with glyburide use (Castillo, 2015).

Similarly, metformin reaches fetal serum concentrations nearly equal to maternal levels. However, in one study of 751 women with gestational diabetes who were randomly assigned to metformin or insulin treatment, short-term perinatal adverse events such as neonatal hypoglycemia, respiratory distress syndrome, phototherapy, or birth trauma did not differ between groups (Rowan, 2008; 2011). The fat distribution in children exposed to metformin showed a tendency toward a more favorable pattern. From a smaller randomized metformin trial, at 18 months, offspring exposed as fetuses to metformin were slightly heavier. However, markers of early motor or language development did not differ compared with those in offspring exposed as fetuses to insulin (Ijäs, 2015).

The Food and Drug Administration has not approved glyburide or metformin use for treatment of gestational diabetes. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) recognizes both as reasonable choices for second-line glycemic control in women with gestational diabetes. Because long-term outcomes have not been fully studied, the College recommends disclosure of the limitations in current safety data.

Obstetrical Management

In general, for women with gestational diabetes who do not require insulin, early delivery or other interventions are seldom required. There is no consensus regarding the value or timing of antepartum fetal testing. It is typically reserved for women with pregestational diabetes because of the greater stillbirth risk. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a, 2020c) endorses fetal surveillance in women with gestational diabetes and poor glycemic control. At Parkland Hospital, women with gestational diabetes are routinely instructed to perform daily fetal kick counts in the third trimester. As previously discussed, insulin-treated women are offered inpatient admission after 34 weeks' gestation. Approximately half of these women accept admission, and antepartum fetal monitoring is performed three times each week.

Women with gestational diabetes and adequate glycemic control are managed expectantly. Elective labor induction to prevent shoulder dystocia compared with spontaneous labor remains controversial. In the truncated GINEXMAL randomized trial of 425 women with gestational diabetes, outcomes of labor induction between 38 and 39 weeks' were compared with expectant management until 41 weeks' gestation (Alberico, 2017). Although underpowered, this trial demonstrated no clinically meaningful difference in the cesarean delivery rate between the induction and expectantly managed groups—12.6 versus 11.8 percent. However, with early labor induction, neonatal hyperbilirubinemia rates were significantly higher, and there was a nonsignificant threefold greater shoulder dystocia rate. In a cohort study of 8392 women with gestational diabetes, routine delivery at 38 or 39 weeks' gestation was associated with a lower rate of cesarean delivery but with an elevated rate of neonatal intensive care unit admission (Melamed, 2016).

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) recommends that routine labor induction in women with diet-treated gestational diabetes should not occur before 39 weeks' gestation. As mentioned previously, at Parkland Hospital, those treated with insulin are delivered at 38 weeks' gestation. At the University of Alabama at Birmingham, delivery is carried out after 39 weeks.

Elective cesarean delivery to avoid brachial plexus injuries in overgrown fetuses is another issue. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) concludes that data are insufficient to determine whether women with *gestational* diabetes whose fetuses have a sonographically estimated weight ≥4500 g should undergo cesarean delivery to avoid risk of birth trauma. In one systematic review, Garabedian and associates (2010) estimated that as many as 588 cesarean deliveries in women with gestational diabetes and an estimated fetal weight of ≥4500 g would be necessary to avoid one case of permanent brachial plexus palsy. In one analysis of 903 women with gestational diabetes, sonographic estimates of fetal weight within 1 month of delivery typically overdiagnosed fetuses as being LGA. Only 22 percent of women estimated to have an LGA fetus actually delivered an overgrown newborn (Scifres, 2015). Still, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) acknowledges that prophylactic cesarean delivery may be considered in diabetic women with an estimated fetal weight ≥4500 g.

Postpartum Evaluation

Recommendations for postpartum evaluation are based on the 50- to 75-percent likelihood that women with gestational diabetes will develop overt diabetes within 15 to 25 years (American Diabetes Association, 2019). The Fifth International Workshop Conference on Gestational Diabetes recommended that women diagnosed with gestational diabetes undergo postpartum evaluation with a 75-g OGTT (Metzger, 2007). These recommendations and the classification scheme of the American Diabetes Association are shown in Table 60-14. However, one study of insurance claim data from 2000 to 2013 showed that only 24 percent of women with a pregnancy complicated by gestational diabetes underwent postpartum screening within a year. Less than half of those underwent a 75-g OGTT (Eggleston, 2016). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) recommends either a fasting glucose assessment or a 75-g, 2-hour OGTT at 4 to 12 weeks postpartum for the diagnosis of overt diabetes. The American Diabetes Association (2019) recommends testing every 1 to 3 years in women with a history of gestational diabetes but normal postpartum glucose screening.

Women with a history of gestational diabetes are also at risk for cardiovascular complications associated with dyslipidemia,

TABLE 60-14. Fifth International Workshop-Conference: Metabolic Assessments Recommended After Pregnancy with Gestational Diabetes

Time	Test	Purpose
Postdelivery (1–3 d)	Fasting or random plasma glucose	Detect persistent, overt diabetes
Early postpartum (6–12 wk)	75-g, 2-hr OGTT	Postpartum classification of glucose metabolism
1-yr postpartum	75-g, 2-hr OGTT	Assess glucose metabolism
Annually	Fasting plasma glucose	Assess glucose metabolism
Triennially	75-g, 2-hr OGTT	Assess glucose metabolism
Prepregnancy	75-g, 2-hr OGTT	Classify glucose metabolism
Classification of the American Diabetes Association (2013)		
Normal Values	**Impaired Fasting Glucose or Impaired Glucose Tolerance**	**Diabetes Mellitus**
Fasting <100 mg/dL	100–125 mg/dL	≥126 mg/dL
2 hr <140 mg/dL	2 hr ≥140–199 mg/dL	2 hr ≥200 mg/dL
Hemoglobin A_{1c} <5.7%	5.7–6.4%	≥6.5%

OGTT = oral glucose tolerance test.
Data from American Diabetes Association, 2013, 2017a; Metzger, 2007.

hypertension, and abdominal obesity—the *metabolic syndrome* (Chap. 51, p. 903). In a study of 47,909 parous women, the nearly 5000 women with prior gestational diabetes were 2.6 times more likely to be hospitalized for cardiovascular morbidity (Kessous, 2013). Another study evaluated 483 women between 5 and 10 years after being diagnosed with mild gestational diabetes (Varner, 2017). Investigators found no increased risk for developing metabolic syndrome associated with additional pregnancies. However, risk for subsequent diabetes rose almost fourfold if gestational diabetes complicated at least one subsequent pregnancy.

■ Recurrent Gestational Diabetes

In one large metaanalysis, the pooled gestational diabetes recurrence rate was 48 percent. The same investigative group identified elevated maternal BMI, insulin use, fetal macrosomia, and weight gain between pregnancies as additional risk factors for gestational diabetes recurrence (Schwartz, 2015, 2016).

Lifestyle behavioral changes that include weight control and exercise between pregnancies would seem likely to prevent gestational diabetes recurrence. However, women randomized to an exercise program that started before 14 weeks' gestation in a subsequent pregnancy did not have a lower recurrence rate (Guelfi, 2016). Conversely, Ehrlich and coworkers (2011) found that prepregnancy loss of at least two BMI units was associated with a lower subsequent risk of gestational diabetes in women who were overweight or obese in the first pregnancy.

REFERENCES

Adane AA, Mishra GD, Tooth LR: Diabetes in pregnancy and childhood cognitive development: a systematic review. Pediatrics 137(5):pii:e20154234, 2016

Aguilera J, Semmier J, Coronel C: et al: Paired maternal and fetal cardiac functional measurements in women with gestational diabetes mellitus at 35–36 weeks' gestation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223(4):574.e1, 2020

Alberico S, Erenbourg A, Hod M, et al: Immediate delivery or expectant management in GDM at term: the GINEXMAL randomised controlled trial. BJOG 124(4):669, 2017

Alvarez JR, Fechner AJ, Williams SF, et al: Asymptomatic bacteriuria in pregestational diabetic pregnancies and the role of group B streptococcus. Am J Perinat 27(3):231, 2010

Ambia AM, Seasely AR, Macias D, et al: The impact of baseline proteinuria in pregnancy in a contemporary diabetic population. Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 2:100072, 2020

American Academy of Ophthalmology: Diabetic Retinopathy PPP 2019. Available at: https://www.aao.org/preferred-practice-pattern/diabetic-retinopathy-ppp-2019. Accessed August 30, 2021

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Management of diabetes mellitus in pregnancy. Technical Bulletin No. 92, May 1986

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Gestational diabetes mellitus. Practice Bulletin No. 190, February 2018. Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Macrosomia. Practice Bulletin No. 216, December 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Low-dose aspirin use during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 743, June 2018, Reaffirmed 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Physical activity and exercise during pregnancy and the postpartum period. Committee Opinion No. 804, March 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Pregestational diabetes mellitus. Practice Bulletin No. 201, November 2020c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Antepartum fetal surveillance. Practice Bulletin No. 229, June 2021

American Diabetes Association: Classification and diagnosis of diabetes—2020. Diabetes Care 43(1 Suppl):S14, 2020

American Diabetes Association: Management of diabetes in pregnancy: standards of medical care in diabetes-2019. Diabetes Care 42(1 Suppl):S165, 2019

American Diabetes Association: Standards of medical care in diabetes—2013. Diabetes Care 36(Suppl 1):S11, 2013

American Diabetes Association: Standards of medical care in diabetes—2017. Diabetes Care 40(1 Suppl):S114, 2017

Bacon S, Schmid J, McCarthy A, et al: The clinical management of hyperglycemia in pregnancy complicated by maturity-onset diabetes of the young. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(2):236.e1, 2015

Balsells M, García-Patterson A, Solà I, et al: Glibenclamide, metformin, and insulin for the treatment of gestational diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BMJ 350:h102, 2015

Bartsch E, Medcalf KE, Park AL, et al: Clinical risk factors for pre-eclampsia determined in early pregnancy: systematic review and meta-analysis of large cohort studies. BMJ 353:i1753, 2016

Basu M, Garg V: Maternal hyperglycemia and fetal cardiac development: clinical impact and underlying mechanisms. Birth Defects Research 110:1504, 2018

Battarbee AN, Sandoval G, Grobman W, et al: Antenatal corticosteroids and preterm neonatal morbidity and mortality among women with and without diabetes in pregnancy. Am J Perinatol July 27, 2020a [Epub ahead of print]

Battarbee AN, Venkatesh KK, Aliaga S, et al: The association of pregestational and gestational diabetes with severe neonatal morbidity and mortality. J Perinatol 40(2):232, 2020b

Bennett SN, Tita A, Owen J, et al: Assessing White's classification of pregestational diabetes in a contemporary diabetic population. Obstet Gynecol 125(5):1217, 2015

Bental Y, Reichman B, Shiff Y, et al: Impact of maternal diabetes mellitus on mortality and morbidity of preterm infants (24–33 weeks gestation). Pediatrics 128:e848, 2011

Bergenstal RM, Nimri R, Beck RW, et al: A comparison of two hybrid closed-loop systems in adolescents and young adults with type 1 diabetes (FLAIR): a multicentre, randomised, crossover trial. Lancet 397(10270):208, 2021

Berger H, Melamed N, Davis BM, et al: Impact of diabetes, obesity and hypertension on preterm birth: population-based study. PLoS One 15(3):e0228743, 2020

Boghossian NS, Hansen NI, Bell EF, et al: Outcomes of extremely preterm infants born to insulin-dependent diabetic mothers. Pediatrics 137(6):e20153424, 2016

Bourry J, Courteville H, Ramdane N, et al: Progression of diabetic retinopathy and predictors of its development and progression during pregnancy in patients with type 1 diabetes: a report of 499 pregnancies. Diabetes Care 44(1):181, 2021

Bryant SN, Herrera CL, Nelson DB, et al: Diabetic ketoacidosis complicating pregnancy. J Neonatal Perinatal Med 10:17, 2017

Buhling KJ, Doll I, Siebert G, et al: Relationship between sonographically estimated fetal subcutaneous adipose tissue measurements and neonatal skinfold measurements. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 39:558, 2012

Caritis SN, Hebert MF: A pharmacologic approach to the use of glyburide in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 121(6):1309, 2013

Casey B: Gestational diabetes−on broadening the diagnosis. N Engl J Med 384(10):965, 2021

Casey BM, Duryea EL, Abbassi-Ghanavati M, et al: Glyburide in women with mild gestational diabetes: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 126(2):303, 2015a

Casey BM, Mele L, Landon MB, et al: Does maternal body mass index influence treatment effect in women with mild gestational diabetes? Am J Perinatol 32(1):93, 2015b

Castillo WC, Boggess K, Stürmer T, et al: Association of adverse pregnancy outcomes with glyburide vs insulin in women with gestational diabetes. JAMA Pediatr 169(5):452, 2015

Catalano PM, Thomas A, Huston-Presley L, et al: Increased fetal adiposity: a very sensitive marker of abnormal in utero development. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189(6):1698, 2003

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: National diabetes statistics report, 2020. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/data/statistics/statistics-report.html. Accessed August 30, 2021

Chen R, Ben-Haroush A, Weismann-Brenner A, et al: Level of glycemic control and pregnancy outcome in type 1 diabetes: a comparison between multiple daily insulin injections and continuous subcutaneous insulin infusions. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197:404e.1, 2007

Cheng YK, Lao TT, Sahota DS, et al: Use of birth weight threshold for macrosomia to identify fetuses at risk of shoulder dystocia among Chinese populations. Int J Gynecol Obstet 120:249, 2013

Cho Hy, Jung I, Kim SJ: The association between maternal hyperglycemia and perinatal outcomes in gestational diabetes mellitus patients: a retrospective cohort study. Medicine (Baltimore) 95(36):e4712, 2016

Combs CA: Continuous glucose monitoring and insulin pump therapy for diabetes in pregnancy. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 25(10):2025, 2012

Crowther CA, Hiller JE, Moss JR, et al: Effect of treatment of gestational diabetes mellitus on pregnancy outcomes. N Engl J Med 352:2477, 2005

Cundy T: Proposed new diagnostic criteria for gestational diabetes—a pause for thought? Diabet Med 29(2):176, 2012

Dashe JS, McIntire DD, Twickler DM: Effect of maternal obesity on the ultrasound detection of anomalous fetuses. Obstet Gynecol 113(5):1001, 2009

Dashe JS, Nathan L, McIntire DD, et al: Correlation between amniotic fluid glucose concentration and amniotic fluid volume in pregnancy complicated by diabetes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:901, 2000

Davidson AJ, Park AL, Berger H, et al: Association of improved periconception hemoglobin A1c with pregnancy outcomes in women with diabetes. JAMA Netw Open 3(12):e2030207, 2020

DeBoer T, Wewerka S, Bauer PJ, et al: Explicit memory performance in infants of diabetic mothers at 1 year of age. Dev Med Child Neurol 47:525, 2005

DeMarini S, Mimouni F, Tsang RC, et al: Impact of metabolic control of diabetes during pregnancy on neonatal hypocalcemia: a randomized study. Obstet Gynecol 83:918, 1994

Depla AL, de Wit L, Steenhius TJ, et al: Effects of maternal diabetes on fetal heart function at echocardiography: systemic review and meta-analysis. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 57(4):539, 2021

Deputy NP, Kim SY, Conrey EJ, et al: Prevalence and changes in preexisting diabetes and gestational diabetes among women who had a live birth−United States, 2012–2016. MMWR 67:1201, 2018

DeVeciana M, Major CA, Morgan M, et al: Postprandial versus preprandial blood glucose monitoring in women with gestational diabetes mellitus requiring insulin therapy. N Engl J Med 333:1237, 1995

Dickson LT, LeTourneu LR, Sanyoura M, et al: Management and pregnancy outcomes in women with GCK-MODY enrolled in the US Monogenic Diabetes Registry. Acta Diabetol 56(4):405, 2019

Dong W, Li Y, Sun J, et al: Do patients with gestational diabetes mellitus and their own blood glucose meter have better pregnancy outcomes than those not using a glucose meter? Medicine (Baltimore) 99(51):e23793, 2020

Donovan L, Hartling L, Muise M, et al: Screening tests for gestational diabetes: a systematic review for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Ann Intern Med 159(2):115, 2013

Driscoll AK, Gregory EC: Increases in prepregnancy obesity: United States 2016–2019. NCHS Data Brief 392: November 2020

Durnwald C, Huston-Presley L, Amini S, et al: Evaluation of body composition of large-for-gestational-age infants of women with gestational diabetes mellitus compared with women with normal glucose levels. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:804, 2004

Egan AM, Dennedy MC, Al-Ramli W: ATLANTIC-DIP: excessive gestational weight gain and pregnancy outcomes in women with gestational or pregestational diabetes mellitus. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 99(1):212, 2014

Egan AM, Dow ML, Vella A: A review of the pathophysiology and management of diabetes in pregnancy. Mayo Clin Proc 95(12):2734, 2020

Eggleston EM, LeCates RF, Zhang F, et al: Variation in postpartum glycemic screening in women with a history of gestational diabetes mellitus. Obstet Gynecol 128(1):159, 2016

Ehrenberg HM, Mercer BM, Catalano PM: The influence of obesity and diabetes on the prevalence of macrosomia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:964, 2004

Ehrlich SF, Hedderson MM, Feng J, et al: Change in body mass index between pregnancies and the risk of gestational diabetes in a second pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 117(6):1323, 2011

Ehrmann D, Kulzer B, Roos T, et al: Risk factors and prevention strategies for diabetic ketoacidosis in people with established type 1 diabetes. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 8(5):436, 2020

Fadl HE, Ostlund KM, Magnusont AF, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes and time trends of gestational diabetes mellitus in Sweden from 1991 to 2003. Diabet Med 27:436, 2010

Farrar D, Tufnell DJ, West J: Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion versus multiple daily injections of insulin for pregnant women with diabetes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 6:CD005542, 2016

Feig DS, Donovan LE, Zinnman B, et al: Metformin in women with type 2 diabetes in pregnancy (MiTy): a multicentre, international, randomized, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 8(10):834, 2020

Feldman RK, Tieu RS, Yasumura L: Gestational diabetes screening: The International Association of the Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Groups compared with Carpenter-Coustan screening. Obstet Gynecol 127(1):10, 2016

Ferrara A, Hedderson MM, Quesenberry CP, et al: Prevalence of gestational diabetes mellitus detected by the National Diabetes Data Group or the Carpenter and Coustan plasma glucose thresholds. Diabetes Care 25(9):1625, 2002

Finer LB, Zolna MR: Declines in unintended pregnancy in the United States, 2008–2011. N Engl J Med 374(9):843, 2016

Finneran MM, Kiefer MK, Ware CA, et al: The use of longitudinal hemoglobin A1c values to predict adverse obstetric and neonatal outcomes in pregnancies complicated by pregestational diabetes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 2(1):100069, 2020

Fraser A, Almqvist C, Larsson H: Maternal diabetes in pregnancy and offspring cognitive ability: sibling study with 723,775 men from 579,857 families. Diabetologia 57(1):102, 2014

Frayne DJ, Verbiest S, Chelmow D, et al: Health care system measures to advance preconception wellness: consensus recommendations of the clinical workgroup of the national preconception health and health care initiative. Obstet Gynecol 127(5):863, 2016

Fuglsang J, Ovesen PG: Pregnancy and delivery in a woman with type 1 diabetes, gastroparesis, and a gastric neurostimulator. Diabetes Care 38(5):e75, 2015

Galindo A, Burguillo AG, Azriel S, et al: Outcome of fetuses in women with pregestational diabetes mellitus. J Perinat Med 34(4):323, 2006

Garabedian C, Deruelle P: Delivery (timing, route, peripartum glycemic control) in women with gestational diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Metab 36:515, 2010

Gardosi J, Madurasinghe V, Williams M, et al: Maternal and fetal risk factors for stillbirth: population based study. BMJ 346:f108, 2013

Ghaffari N, Gonzalez JM, Rosenstein M: Does the 1-step method of gestational diabetes mellitus screening improve pregnancy outcomes? Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 2(4):100199, 2020

Grissa O, Yessoufou A, Mrisak I, et al: Growth factor concentrations and their placental mRNA expression are modulated in gestational diabetes mellitus:

possible interactions with macrosomia. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 10:7, 2010
Guelfi KJ, Ong MJ, Crisp NA, et al: Regular exercise to prevent the recurrence of gestational diabetes mellitus: a randomized controlled trial. Obstet Gynecol 128(4):819, 2016
Guntupalli KK, Karnad DR, Bandi V, et al: Critical illness in pregnancy: Part II: common medical conditions complicating pregnancy and puerperium. Chest 148(5):1333, 2015
Gupat K, Rajagopal K, King F, et al: Complications of antenatal corticosteroids in infants born by early term scheduled cesarean section. Diabetes Care 43(4):906, 2020
Gurram P, Benn P, Grady J, et al: First trimester aneuploidy screening markers in women with pre-gestational diabetes mellitus. J Clin Med 3:480, 2014
Hammoud NM, Visser GH, Peterst SA, et al: Fetal growth profiles of macrosomic and non-macrosomic infants of women with pregestational or gestational diabetes. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 41(4):390, 2013
Hanson U, Persson B: Outcome of pregnancies complicated by type 1 insulin-dependent diabetes in Sweden: acute pregnancy complications, neonatal mortality and morbidity. Am J Perinatol 10:330, 1993
HAPO Study Cooperative Research Group: Hyperglycemia and adverse pregnancy outcomes. N Engl J Med 358:2061, 2008
Harper LM, Mele L, Landon MB, et al: Carpenter-Coustan compared with National Diabetes Data Group criteria for diagnosing gestational diabetes. Obstet Gynecol 127(5):893, 2016
Harper LM, Jauk V, Longo S, et al: Early gestational diabetes screening in obese women: a randomized controlled trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(5):495.e1, 2020
Harris DL, Weston PJ, Harding JE: Incidence of neonatal hypoglycemia in babies identified as at risk. J Pediatr 161(5):787, 2012
Hartling L, Dryden DM, Guthrie A, et al: Benefits and harms of treating gestational diabetes mellitus: a systematic review and meta-analysis for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force and the National Institutes of Health Office of Medical Applications of Research. Ann Intern Med 159(2):123, 2013
Hawkins JS, Lo JY, Casey BM, et al: Diet-treated gestational diabetes: comparison of early versus routine diagnosis. Am J Obstet Gynecol, 198:287, 2008
Hay WW: Care of the infant of the diabetic mother. Curr Diab Rep 12:4, 2012
Hay WW, Raju TN, Higgins RD, et al: Knowledge gaps and research needs for understanding and treating neonatal hypoglycemia: workshop report from Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development. J Pediatrics 155(5):612, 2009
Hill JB, Sheffield JS, McIntire DD, et al: Acute pyelonephritis in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 105(1):18, 2005
Hillier TA, Pedula KL, Ogasawara KK, et al: A pragmatic randomized clinical trial of gestational diabetes screening. N Engl J Med 384(10): 895, 2021
Huang H, He J, Johnson D, et al: Deletion of placental growth factor prevents diabetic retinopathy and is associated with Akt activation and HIF1α-VEGF pathway inhibition. Diabetes 64(3):1067, 2015
Huang T, Kelly A, Becker SA, et al: Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy in neonates with congenital hyperinsulinism. Arch Dis Child Fetal Neonatal Ed 98(4):F351, 2013
Idris N, Wong SF, Thomae M, et al: Influence of polyhydramnios on perinatal outcome in pregestational diabetic pregnancies. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 36(3):338, 2010
Ijäs H, Vääräsmäki M, Saarela T, et al: A follow-up of a randomised study of metformin and insulin in gestational diabetes mellitus: growth and development of the children at the age of 18 months. BJOG 122(7):994, 2015
International Association of Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Groups Consensus Panel: Recommendations on the diagnosis and classification of hyperglycemia in pregnancy. Diabetes Care 33(3), 2010
Jensen DM, Damm P, Ovesen P, et al: Microalbuminuria, preeclampsia, and preterm delivery in pregnant women with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care 33:90, 2010
Johnston RC, Gabby L, Tith T, et al: Immediate postpartum glycemic control and risk of surgical site infection. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(3):267, 2017
Jovanovič L, Liang Y, Weng W, et al: Trends in the incidence of diabetes, its clinical sequelae, and associated costs in pregnancy. Diabetes Metab Res Rev 31(7):707, 2015
Jovanovic-Peterson L, Durak EP, Peterson CM: Randomized trial of diet versus diet plus cardiovascular conditioning on glucose levels in gestational diabetes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 161:415, 1989
Kessous R, Shoham-Vardi I, Pariente G, et al: An association between gestational diabetes mellitus and long-term maternal cardiovascular morbidity. Heart 99:1118, 2013
Kim C, Ferrara A, McEwen LN, et al: Preconception care in managed care: the translating research into action for diabetes study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192:227, 2005
Kim SY, Sharma AJ, Sappenfield W, et al: Association of maternal body mass index, excessive weight gain, and gestational diabetes mellitus with large-for-gestational-age births. Obstet Gynecol 123(4):737, 2014
Kitzmiller JL, Block JM, Brown FM, et al: Managing preexisting diabetes for pregnancy. Diabetes Care 31(5):1060, 2008
Krakowiak P, Walker CK, Bremer AA, et al: Maternal metabolic conditions and risk for autism and other neurodevelopmental disorders. Pediatrics 129:e1121, 2012
Landon MB, Mele L, Spong CY, et al: The relationship between maternal glycemia and perinatal outcome. Obstet Gynecol 117(2):218, 2011
Landon MB, Spong CY, Thom E, et al: A multicenter, randomized treatment trial of mild gestational diabetes. N Engl J Med 361(14):1339, 2009
Langer O, Conway DL, Berkus MD, et al: A comparison of glyburide and insulin in women with gestational diabetes mellitus. N Engl J Med 343:1134, 2000
Lauenborg J, Mathiesen E, Ovesen P, et al: Audit on stillbirths in women with pregestational type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care 26(5):1385, 2003
Leinonen PJ, Hiilesmaa VK, Kaaja RJ: Maternal mortality in type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care 24(8):1501, 2001
Liu S, Joseph KS, Lisonkova S, et al: Association between maternal chronic conditions and congenital heart defects: a population-based cohort study. Circulation 128(6):583, 2013
Loukovaara M, Leinonen P, Teramo K, et al: Diabetic pregnancy associated with increased epidermal growth factor in cord serum at term. Obstet Gynecol 103:240, 2004
Ludvigsson JF, Neovius M, Soderling J, et al: Periconception glycaemic control in women with type 1 diabetes and risk of major birth defects: population based cohort study in Sweden. BMJ 362:2638, 2018
Luo ZC, Nuyt AM, Delvin E, et al: Maternal and fetal IGF-I and IGF-II levels, fetal growth, and gestational diabetes. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 97:1720, 2012
Marschalek J, Farr A, Kiss H, et al: Risk of vaginal infections at early gestation in patients with diabetic conditions during pregnancy: a retrospective cohort study. PLoS One 11(5):e0155182, 2016
Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Osterman MJ, et al: Births: final data for 2018. Natl Vital Stat Rep 68 (13):1, 2019
Martin RB, Duryea EL, Ambia A, et al: Congenital malformation risk according to hemoglobin A1c values in a contemporary cohort with pregestational diabetes. Am J Perinatol June 4, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]
Mazaki-Tovi S, Kanety H, Pariente C, et al: Cord blood adiponectin in large-for-gestational age newborns. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193:1238, 2005
McCance DR, Holmes VA, Maresh MJ, et al: Vitamins C and E for prevention of preeclampsia in women with type 1 diabetes (DAPIT): a randomised placebo-controlled trial. Lancet 376:259, 2010
McElvy SS, Demarini S, Miodovnik M, et al: Fetal weight and progression of diabetic retinopathy. Obstet Gynecol 97:587, 2001
McFarland MB, Langer O, Fazioni E, et al: Anthropometric and body composition differences in large-for-gestational age, but not appropriate-for-gestational age infants of mothers with and without diabetes mellitus. J Soc Gynecol Investig 7:231, 2000
Melamed N, Ray JG, Geary M, et al: Induction of labor before 40 weeks is associated with lower rate of cesarean delivery in women with gestational diabetes mellitus. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(3):364.e1, 2016
Metzger BE, Buchanan TA, Coustan DR, et al: Summary and recommendations of the Fifth International Workshop-Conference on Gestational Diabetes. Diabetes Care 30(Suppl 2):S251, 2007
Metzger BE, Coustan DR: Summary and recommendations of the Fourth International Workshop-Conference on Gestational Diabetes Mellitus. The organizing committee. Diabetes Care 21 (Supp 2):B161, 1998
Miailhe G, Le Ray C, Timsit J, et al: Factors associated with urgent cesarean delivery in women with type 1 diabetes mellitus. Obstet Gynecol 121:983, 2013
Middleton P, Crowther CA, Simmonds L: Different intensities of glycaemic control for pregnant women with pre-existing diabetes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5:CD008540, 2016
Mission JF, Marshall NE, Caughey AB: Obesity in pregnancy: a big problem and getting bigger. Obstet Gynecol Sur 88(5):389, 2013
Mitanchez D, Burguet A, Simeoni U: Infants born to mothers with gestational diabetes mellitus: mild neonatal effects, a long-term threat to global health. J Pediatr 164(3):445, 2014
Moreno-Castilla C, Hernandez M, Bergua M, et al: Low-carbohydrate diet for the treatment of gestational diabetes mellitus. Diabetes Care 36:2233, 2013
Most O, Langer O: Gestational diabetes: maternal weight gain in relation to fetal growth, treatment modality, BMI and glycemic control. J Matern Fetal Med 25(11):2458, 2012
Murphy HR, Howgate C, O'Keefe J, et al: Characteristics and outcomes of pregnant women with type 1 or type 2 diabetes: a 5-year national population-based cohort study. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 9(3):153, 2021

National Institutes of Health: NIH Consensus Development Conference on Diagnosing Gestational Diabetes Mellitus. 2013. Available at: https://consensus.nih.gov/2013/gdm.htm. Accessed August 30, 2021
Nicholson W, Bolen S, Witkop CT, et al: Benefits and risks of oral diabetes agents compared with insulin in women with gestational diabetes. Obstet Gynecol 113(1):193, 2009
Padmanabhan S, Lee VW, Mclean M, et al: The association of falling insulin requirements with maternal biomarkers and placental dysfunction: a prospective study of women with preexisting diabetes in pregnancy. Diabetes Care 40:1323, 2017
Patel EM, Goodnight WH, James AH, et al: Temporal trends in maternal medical conditions and stillbirth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(5):673.e1, 2015
Pedersen J: The Pregnant Diabetic and Her Newborn, 2nd ed. Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins, 1977
Pedersen J, Mølsted-Pedersen L, Andersen B: Assessors of fetal perinatal mortality in diabetic pregnancy. Analysis of 1332 pregnancies in the Copenhagen series, 1946–1972. Diabetes 23:302, 1974
Peterson C, Grosse SD, Li R, et al: Preventable health and cost burden of adverse birth outcomes associated with pregestational diabetes in the United State. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(1):74.e1, 2015
Pociot F, Lernmark Å: Genetic risk factors for type 1 diabetes. Lancet 387(10035):2331, 2016
Powers AC, Niswender KD, Evans-Molina C: Diabetes mellitus: diagnosis, classifications, and pathophysiology. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2018
Rasmussen KL, Laugesen CS, Ringholm L, et al: Progression of diabetic retinopathy during pregnancy in women with type 2 diabetes. Diabetologia 53:1076, 2010
Reece EA: Diabetes-induced birth defects: what do we know? What can we do? Curr Diab Rep 12:24, 2012
Renault KM, Carlsen EM, Nøgaard K, et al: Intake of carbohydrates during pregnancy in obese women is associated with fat mass in the newborn offspring. Am J Clin Nutr 102(6):1475, 2015
Reutens AT: Epidemiology of diabetic kidney disease. Med Clin North Am 97:1, 2013
Roeder HA, Moore TR, Ramos GA: Insulin pump dosing across gestation in women with well-controlled type 1 diabetes mellitus. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207:324.e1, 2012
Rowan JA, Hague WM, Wanzhen G, et al: Metformin versus insulin for the treatment of gestational diabetes. N Engl J Med 358:2003, 2008
Rowan JA, Rush EC, Obolonkin V, et al: Metformin in gestational diabetes: the offspring follow-up (MiG TOFU): body composition at 2 years of age. Diabetes Care 34(10):2279, 2011
Russell NE, Foley M, Kinsley BT, et al: Effect of pregestational diabetes mellitus on fetal cardiac function and structure. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199:312.e1, 2008
Russo LM, Nobles C, Ertel KA, et al: Physical activity interventions in pregnancy and risk of gestational diabetes mellitus: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 125(3):576, 2015
Salvesen DR, Brudenell MJ, Nicolaides KH: Fetal polycythemia and thrombocytopenia in pregnancies complicated by maternal diabetes mellitus. Am J Obstet Gynecol 166:1287, 1992
Salvesen DR, Brudenell MJ, Snijders JM, et al: Fetal plasma erythropoietin in pregnancies complicated by maternal diabetes mellitus. Am J Obstet Gynecol 168:88, 1993
Sanabria-Martinez G, García-Hermoso A, Poyatos-León R, et al: Effectiveness of physical activity interventions on preventing gestational diabetes mellitus and excessive maternal weight gain: a meta-analysis. BJOG 122(9):1167, 2015
Schwartz N, Nachum Z, Green MS: Risk factors of gestational diabetes mellitus recurrence: a meta-analysis. Endocrine 53(3):662, 2016
Schwartz N, Nachum Z, Green MS: The prevalence of gestational diabetes mellitus recurrence—effect of ethnicity and parity: a metaanalysis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(3):310, 2015
Scifres CM, Feghali M, Dumont T, et al: Large-for-gestational-age ultrasound diagnosis and risk for cesarean delivery in women with gestational diabetes mellitus. Obstet Gynecol 126(5):978, 2015
Sheffield JS, Butler-Koster EL, Casey BM, et al: Maternal diabetes mellitus and infant malformations. Obstet Gynecol 100:925, 2002
Sheiner E, Mazor-Drey E, Levy A: Asymptomatic bacteriuria during pregnancy. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 22(5):423, 2009
Sibai BM, Caritis S, Hauth J, et al: Risks of preeclampsia and adverse neonatal outcomes among women with pregestational diabetes mellitus. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:364, 2000
Sibai BM, Viteri OA: Diabetic ketoacidosis in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 123(1):167, 2014
Smati S, Mahot P, Bourdiol A, et al: Euglycaemic ketoacidosis during gestational diabetes with concomitant COVID-19 infection. Diabetes Metab 29:S1262, 2020
Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Special statement: updated checklist for antenatal care of pregestational diabetes mellitus. Patient safety and quality committee. Am J Obstet Gynecol 223:82, 2020
Stewart ZA, Wilinska ME, Hartnell S, et al: Closed-loop insulin delivery pregnancy in women with type 1 diabetes. N Engl J Med 375(7):644, 2016
Stuebe AM, Landon MB, Lai Y, et al: Maternal BMI, glucose tolerance, and adverse pregnancy outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207:62.e.1, 2012
Suresh A, Liu A, Poulton A, et al: Comparison of maternal abdominal subcutaneous fat thickness and body mass index as markers for pregnancy outcomes: a stratified cohort study. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynecol 52:420, 2012
Tinker SC, Gilboa SM, Moore CA, et al: Specific birth defects in pregnancies of women with diabetes: National Birth Defects Prevention Study, 1997–2011. Am J Obstet Gynecol 222(2):176, 2020
TODAY Study Group, Bjornstad P, Drews KL, et al: Long-term complications in youth-onset type 2 diabetes. N Engl J Med 385(5):416, 2021
Udler MS, Powe CE, Austin-Tse CA: Case 6–2020: a 34-year-old woman with hyperglycemia. N Engl J Med 382(8):745, 2020
U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, Davidson KW, Barry MJ, et al: Behavioral counseling interventions for healthy weight and weight gain in pregnancy: US Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement. JAMA 325(20):2087, 2021
Van Kempen AA, Eskes PF, Nuytemans DH, et al: Lower versus traditional treatment threshold for neonatal hypoglycemia. N Engl J Med 382(6):534, 2020
Van Leeuwen M, Louwerse MD, Opmeer BC, et al: Glucose challenge test for detecting gestational diabetes mellitus: a systematic review. BJOG 119(4):393, 2012
Varner MW, Rice MM, Landon MB, et al: Pregnancies after the diagnosis of mild gestational diabetes mellitus and risk of cardiometabolic disorders. Obstet Gynecol 129(2):273, 2017
Vestgaard M, Ringholm L, Laugesen CS, et al: Pregnancy-induced sight-threatening diabetic retinopathy in women with type 1 diabetes. Diabet Med 27:431, 2010
Vidaeff AC, Yeomans ER, Ramin SM: Pregnancy in women with renal disease. Part II: specific underlying renal conditions. Am J Perinatol 25:399, 2008
Vink JY, Poggi SH, Ghidini A: Amniotic fluid index and birth weight: is there a relationship in diabetics with poor glycemic control? Am J Obstet Gynecol 195:848, 2006
Wang PH, Lau J, Chalmers TC: Meta-analysis of effects of intensive blood-glucose control on late complications of type 1 diabetes. Lancet 341:1306, 1993
Wei J, Heng W, Gao J: Effects of low glycemic index diets on gestational diabetes mellitus: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled clinical trials. Medicine (Baltimore) 95(22):e3792, 2016
Wei Y, Xu Q, Yang H, et al: Preconception diabetes mellitus and adverse pregnancy outcomes in over 6.4 million women: a population-based cohort study in China. PLoS Med 16(10):e1002926, 2019
White P: Classification of obstetric diabetes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 130:228, 1978
World Health Organization: Classification of Diabetes Mellitus. Geneva, WHO, 2019
World Health Organization: Diabetes. 2020. Available at: www.who.int/health-topics/diabetes#tab=tab_1. Accessed August 30, 2021
Yang P, Reece EA, Wang F, et al: Decoding the oxidative stress hypothesis in diabetic embryopathy through proapoptotic kinase signaling. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(5):569, 2015
Yanit KE, Snowden JM, Cheng YW, et al: The impact of chronic hypertension and pregestational diabetes on pregnancy outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207:333, 2012
Young EC, Pires M, Marques L, et al: Effects of pregnancy on the onset and progression of diabetic nephropathy and of diabetic nephropathy on pregnancy outcomes. Diabetes Metab Syndr 5:137, 2012

CHAPTER 61

Endocrine Disorders

Endocrinopathies are closely related to pregnancy for several reasons. One example is the gestational proclivity for prodigious hormone secretion, which is perhaps best illustrated by placental lactogen in diabetes. This is the most common endocrinopathy encountered in pregnancy and discussed in Chapter 57. Pregnancy is also interrelated with some endocrinopathies that are at least partially due to autoimmune dysregulation. Clinical manifestations result from complex interplay among genetic, environmental, and endogenous factors that activate the immune system against targeted cells within endocrine organs. In one extraordinary interaction, studies have implicated maternal organ engraftment by fetal cells transferred during pregnancy. These cells later provoke antibody production, tissue destruction, and autoimmune endocrinopathies.

THYROID DISORDERS

Taken in aggregate, these disorders are common in young women and thus frequently encountered in pregnancy. Maternal and fetal thyroid function are intimately related, and drugs that affect the maternal thyroid affect the fetal gland. Moreover, thyroid autoantibodies are associated with increased rates of early pregnancy wastage. Uncontrolled thyrotoxicosis and untreated hypothyroidism are both associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes. Last, evidence suggests that the severity of some autoimmune thyroid disorders may be ameliorated during pregnancy, only to be exacerbated postpartum.

Thyroid Physiology and Pregnancy

Maternal thyroid changes are substantial, and normally altered gland structure and function can sometimes be confused with thyroid abnormalities. These alterations are discussed in detail in Chapter 4 (p. 71), and normal serum hormone level values are found in the Appendix (p. 1230). First, maternal serum concentrations of thyroid binding globulin are increased concomitantly with total or bound thyroid hormone levels. Second, *thyrotropin*, also called *thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)*, plays a central role in screening and diagnosis of many thyroid disorders, but levels change throughout pregnancy. Notably, TSH receptors are cross stimulated, albeit weakly, by massive quantities of human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG) secreted by placental trophoblast. Because TSH does not cross the placenta, it has no direct fetal effects. During the first 12 weeks of gestation, when maternal hCG serum levels are maximal, thyroid hormone secretion is stimulated. The resulting greater serum free thyroxine (T_4) levels act to suppress hypothalamic *thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH)* and in turn limit pituitary TSH secretion (Fig. 61-1). Accordingly,

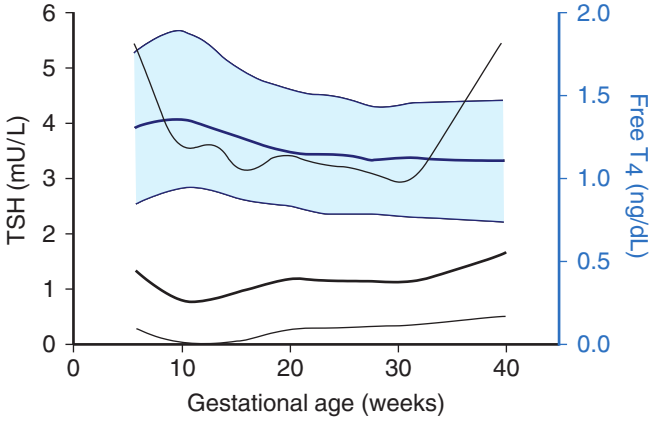


FIGURE 61-1 Gestational-age-specific values for serum thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) levels (*black lines*) and free thyroxine (T_4) levels (*blue lines*). Data were derived from 17,298 women tested during pregnancy. For each color, the dark solid lines represent the 50th percentile, whereas the upper and lower light lines represent the 2.5th and 97.5th percentiles, respectively. (Data from Casey, 2005; Dashe, 2005.)

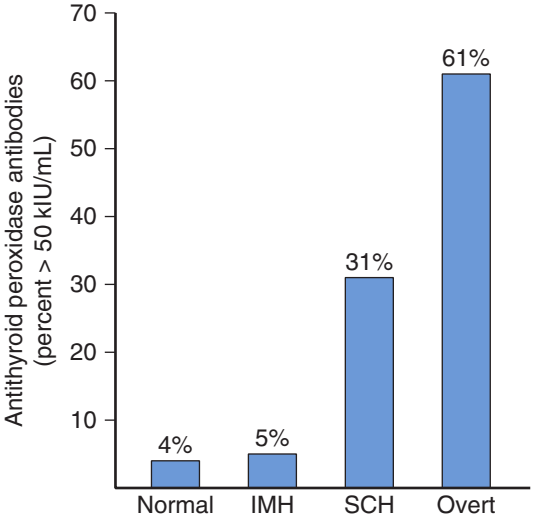


FIGURE 61-2 Incidence of antithyroid peroxidase antibodies in 16,407 women who are normal or euthyroid, in 233 with isolated maternal hypothyroxinemia (IMH), in 598 with subclinical hypothyroidism (SCH), and in 134 with overt hypothyroidism.

TRH is undetectable in maternal serum. Conversely, in fetal serum, beginning at midpregnancy, TRH becomes detectable, but levels are static and do not rise.

Throughout pregnancy, maternal thyroxine is transferred to the fetus (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020). Maternal thyroxine is important for normal fetal brain development, especially before the onset of fetal thyroid gland function (Bernal, 2007; Korevaar, 2016b). Both high and low maternal thyroid function in the first trimester are negatively associated with cortical gray matter volume in childhood (Jansen, 2019). Although the fetal gland begins concentrating iodine and synthesizing thyroid hormone after 12 weeks' gestation, maternal thyroxine contribution remains important. Maternal sources account for 30 percent of thyroxine in fetal serum at term (Thorpe-Beeston, 1991). Still, developmental risks associated with maternal hypothyroidism after midpregnancy remain poorly understood (Morreale de Escobar, 2004; Sarkhail, 2016).

Autoimmunity and Thyroid Disease

Most thyroid disorders are inextricably linked to autoantibodies against nearly 200 thyrocyte components. These antibodies variably stimulate thyroid function, block function, or cause thyroid inflammation that may lead to follicular cell destruction. Often, these effects overlap.

Thyroid-stimulating autoantibodies, also called *thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulins (TSIs)*, bind and activate the TSH receptor to cause thyroid hyperfunction and growth. Although these antibodies are identified in most patients with classic Graves disease, simultaneous production of *thyroid-stimulating blocking antibodies* may blunt this effect (Jameson, 2015).

Thyroid peroxidase (TPO) is a thyroid gland enzyme that normally functions to produce thyroid hormones. *Thyroid peroxidase antibodies* are directed against TPO and are identified in 5 to 15 percent of all gravidas (Fig. 61-2) (Abbassi-Ghanavati, 2010; Casey, 2007; Sarkhail, 2016). TPO antibodies have been associated in some studies with early pregnancy loss and preterm birth (Consortium on Thyroid and Pregnancy, 2019; Plowden, 2017; Thangaratinam, 2011). In another study with more than 1000 pregnant women with TPO antibodies, the risk for preterm birth was not elevated. The risk for placental abruption was greater (Abbassi-Ghanavati, 2010). These women are also at high risk for postpartum thyroid dysfunction and at lifelong risk for permanent thyroid failure (Andersen, 2016; Jameson, 2015).

Fetal Microchimerism

Autoimmune thyroid disease is more common in women than in men. One intriguing explanation for this disparity is fetal-to-maternal cell trafficking (Greer, 2011). Fetal cells are known to enter maternal circulation during pregnancy. When fetal lymphocytes enter maternal circulation, they can live for more than 20 years. Stem cell interchange can lead to engraftment in several maternal tissues and is termed *fetal microchimerism.* In some cases, this may involve the thyroid gland (Bianchi, 2003; Boddy, 2015). A high prevalence of Y chromosome–positive cells has been identified in the thyroid glands of women with Hashimoto thyroiditis—60 percent, or with Graves disease—40 percent (Renné, 2004). In another study of women giving birth to a male fetus, more circulating male mononuclear cells were found in those with Hashimoto thyroiditis (Lepez, 2011). Conversely, for some autoimmune thyroid disorders, fetal microchimerism may actually have a protective role (Cirello, 2015).

Hyperthyroidism

The incidence of thyrotoxicosis or hyperthyroidism in pregnancy varies and complicates between 0.4 and 1.7 percent of births when gestational-age-appropriate TSH threshold values are used (Table 61-1). Because normal pregnancy simulates some clinical findings similar to thyroxine excess, clinically mild thyrotoxicosis may be difficult to diagnose. Suggestive

TABLE 61-1. Incidence of Overt Hyperthyroidism in Pregnancy

Study	Country	Incidence
Wang (2011)[a]	China	1%
Vaidya (2007)[a]	United Kingdom	0.7%
Lazarus (2007)[b]	United Kingdom	1.7%
Casey (2006)[c]	United States	0.4%
Andersen (2016)[c,d]	Denmark	0.4–0.7%
Dong (2019)[e]	International	0.64–0.91%

[a]Screened in the first trimester.
[b]Screened at 9–15 weeks.
[c]Screened before 20 weeks.
[d]Diagnosed in early versus later pregnancy.
[e]Systematic review.

findings include tachycardia that exceeds that usually seen with normal pregnancy, thyromegaly, exophthalmos, and failure to gain weight despite adequate food intake. Laboratory testing is confirmatory. TSH levels are markedly depressed, while serum free T_4 (fT_4) levels are elevated. Rarely, hyperthyroidism is caused by abnormally high serum triiodothyronine (T_3) levels and called *T_3-toxicosis*.

Thyrotoxicosis and Pregnancy

The overwhelming cause of thyrotoxicosis in pregnancy is Graves disease, an organ-specific autoimmune process associated with thyroid-stimulating TSH-receptor antibodies (De Leo, 2016). These antibodies are specific for Graves hyperthyroidism, and targeted assays have been proposed for diagnosis, management, and prognosis in pregnancies complicated by hyperthyroidism (Alexander, 2017; Barbesino, 2013). With Graves disease, during the course of pregnancy, hyperthyroid symptoms may initially worsen because of hCG stimulation. Symptoms then diminish after a decline in receptor-antibody titers in the second half of pregnancy (Mestman, 2012; Sarkhail, 2016). Levels of blocking antibodies also decline during pregnancy (Amino, 2003).

Treatment

Thyrotoxicosis during pregnancy can nearly always be controlled by thionamide drugs. *Propylthiouracil (PTU)* has been historically preferred because it partially inhibits the conversion of T_4 to T_3 and crosses the placenta less readily than *methimazole*. The latter has also been associated with a rare methimazole embryopathy, characterized by *esophageal* or *choanal atresia* and *aplasia cutis*, a congenital skin defect. In one analysis of Japanese women with first-trimester hyperthyroidism, the risk of major fetal malformation in pregnancies exposed to methimazole was twofold higher than risks with either PTU or potassium iodide use (Yoshihara, 2012, 2015). Specifically, seven of nine cases with aplasia cutis and the only case of esophageal atresia were in the group of methimazole-exposed fetuses. A PTU-associated embryopathy also has been described (Andersen, 2014).

Treatment with PTU is associated with a higher risk for liver injury (Yu, 2020). In 2009, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration issued a safety alert on PTU-associated hepatotoxicity. This warning initially prompted the American Thyroid Association and the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists (2011) to recommend PTU therapy during the first trimester followed by a switch to methimazole beginning in the second trimester. The obvious disadvantage is that this might lead to poorly controlled thyroid function. More recently, the American Thyroid Association recommends PTU therapy through 16 weeks' gestation but does not make a recommendation regarding switching to methimazole treatment because both agents are associated with adverse effects and the harm from poorer control during the switch is unknown (Alexander, 2017).

Transient leukopenia can be documented in up to 10 percent of women taking antithyroid drugs, but this does not require therapy cessation (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020). In approximately 0.3 percent, however, *agranulocytosis* develops suddenly and mandates drug discontinuance (Thomas, 2013). It is not dose related, and because of its acute onset, routine serial leukocyte counts during therapy are not helpful. *Instead, if fever or sore throat develops, women are instructed to discontinue medication immediately and report for a complete blood count.*

Therapy may have other side effects. First, as noted, hepatotoxicity develops in approximately 0.1 percent of treated women. Serial measurement of hepatic enzyme levels does not prevent fulminant PTU-related hepatotoxicity. Second, an allergic rash may develop in 3 to 5 percent of women taking thionamide drugs (Alexander, 2017). In addition, although approximately 20 percent of patients treated with PTU develop *antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (ANCA)*, only a small percentage of these subsequently develops serious vasculitis (Kimura, 2013). Last, thionamides have the potential to cause fetal complications, but these are uncommon. In some cases, thionamides may even be therapeutic for the fetus. This is because TSH-receptor antibodies cross the placenta and can stimulate the fetal thyroid gland to cause thyrotoxicosis and goiter.

The initial thionamide dose is empirical. For nonpregnant patients, the American Thyroid Association recommends that methimazole be used at an initial higher daily dose of 10 to 20 mg orally followed by a lower maintenance dose of 5 to 10 mg. If PTU is selected, a dose of 50 to 150 mg orally three times daily may be initiated depending on clinical severity. At Parkland Hospital, we usually initially give 300 or 450 mg of PTU daily in three divided doses for pregnant women. Occasionally, daily doses of 600 mg or higher are necessary. We routinely transition women to methimazole after the first trimester. If a switch is deemed appropriate, a dose ratio of 20:1—PTU to methimazole—is recommended (Alexander, 2017). The goal is treatment with the lowest possible thionamide dose to maintain thyroid hormone levels slightly above or in the high normal range, while TSH levels remains suppressed. Serum free T_4 concentrations are measured every 4 to 6 weeks.

Subtotal thyroidectomy can be performed after thyrotoxicosis is medically controlled. This seldom is done during pregnancy but may be appropriate for the very few women who cannot adhere to medical treatment or in whom drug therapy proves toxic (Pearce, 2019; Stagnaro-Green, 2012a). Surgery is best accomplished in the second trimester. Potential drawbacks of thyroidectomy include inadvertent resection of parathyroid glands and injury to the recurrent laryngeal nerve.

Thyroid ablation with therapeutic radioactive iodine is contraindicated in pregnancy (Lee, 2021). These doses may also cause fetal thyroid gland destruction. Thus, when radioactive iodine is given unintentionally, some clinicians recommend abortion. Any exposed fetus must be carefully evaluated, and the incidence of fetal hypothyroidism depends on gestational age and radioiodine dose (Berlin, 2001). Importantly, several cases of inadvertent periconceptional exposure to radioactive iodine have been reported with no obvious ill effects for the offspring (Radacic-Aumiler, 2016; Sadakata, 2014). The International Commission on Radiological Protection recommends that women avoid pregnancy for 6 months after radioablative therapy (Brent, 2008). Moreover, during lactation, the breast also concentrates a substantial amount of iodine. This may pose a neonatal risk due to ^{131}I-containing milk ingestion and maternal risk from significant breast irradiation. To limit the latter, a delay of 3 months after breastfeeding cessation will more reliably ensure complete breast involution.

Pregnancy Outcome

Women with thyrotoxicosis have pregnancy outcomes that largely depend on whether metabolic control is achieved. For example, excess thyroxine may cause miscarriage or preterm birth (Andersen, 2014; Moleti, 2019; Sheehan, 2015). In untreated women or in those who remain hyperthyroid despite therapy, incidences of preeclampsia, heart failure, and adverse perinatal outcomes are higher (Table 61-2). One case-cohort study in the Danish National Birth Cohort found that maternal hyperthyroidism was also a risk for epilepsy and autism spectrum disorders in children (Andersen, 2018).

Fetal and Neonatal Effects

In most cases, the perinate is euthyroid. In some, however, hyper- or hypothyroidism can develop with or without a goiter (Fig. 61-3). Clinical hyperthyroidism develops in up to 1 percent of neonates born to women with Graves disease (Barbesino, 2013; Fitzpatrick, 2010). If fetal thyroid disease is suspected, nomograms exist for sonographically measured thyroid volume (Gietka-Czernel, 2012).

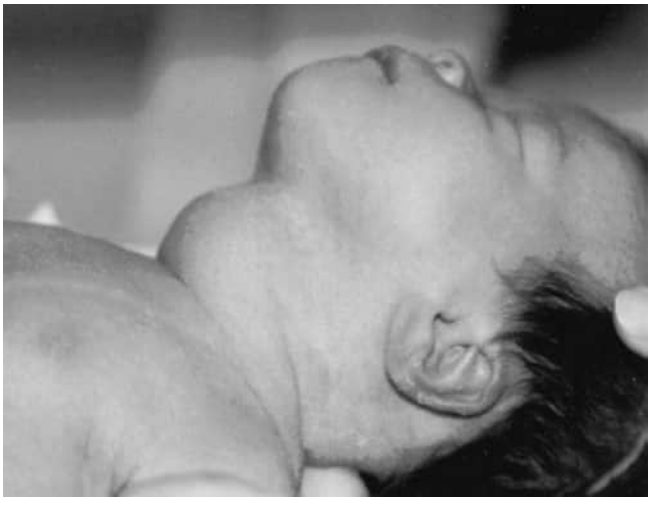


FIGURE 61-3 Term hypothyroid neonate delivered of a woman with a 3-year history of thyrotoxicosis that recurred at 26 weeks' gestation. The mother was given methimazole, 30 mg orally daily, and was euthyroid at delivery.

The fetus or neonate who was exposed to excessive maternal thyroxine may have any of several clinical presentations. First, *goitrous thyrotoxicosis* stems from placental transfer of thyroid-stimulating immunoglobulins. Nonimmune hydrops and fetal demise can complicate fetal thyrotoxicosis (Nachum, 2003; Stulberg, 2000). The best predictor of perinatal thyrotoxicosis is the presence of thyroid-stimulating TSH-receptor antibodies in women with Graves disease (Moleti, 2019; Nathan, 2014). This is especially true if their levels are more than threefold higher than the upper normal limit (Barbesino, 2013). In one study of 72 pregnant women with Graves disease, none of the fetuses in 31 low-risk mothers had a goiter, and all were euthyroid at delivery (Luton, 2005). Low risk was defined as no requirement for antithyroid medications during the third trimester or an absence of antithyroid antibodies. Conversely, in a group of 41 women who either were taking antithyroid medication at delivery or had thyroid-receptor antibodies, 11 fetuses—27 percent—had sonographic evidence of a goiter at 32 weeks' gestation. Seven of these 11 fetuses were determined to be hypothyroid, and the remaining fetuses were hyperthyroid.

Because of these findings, the American Thyroid Association recommends routine evaluation of TSH-receptor antibodies (TRAb) in early pregnancy in women treated with antithyroid medication (Alexander, 2017). In those who have elevated TRAb levels or who continue therapy, repeat testing is recommended between 18 and 22 weeks' gestation. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020), however, does not recommend such testing. If the fetus is thyrotoxic, maternal thionamide drugs are increased even though maternal thyroid function may be within targeted range (Mestman, 2012). If secondary maternal hypothyroidism develops, the fetus can be treated by a reduced maternal antithyroid medication dose and injections of intraamnionic thyroxine if

TABLE 61-2. Pregnancy Outcomes in Women with Overt Thyrotoxicosis

	Treated and Euthyroid[a] (n = 380)	Uncontrolled Thyrotoxicosis[a] (n = 90)
Maternal Outcome		
Preeclampsia	40 (10%)	15 (17%)
Heart failure	1	7 (8%)
Death	0	1
Perinatal Outcome		
Preterm delivery	51 (16%)	29 (32%)
Growth restriction	37 (11%)	15 (17%)
Stillbirth	0/59	6/33 (18%)
Thyrotoxicosis	1	2
Hypothyroidism	4	0
Goiter	2	0

[a]Data presented as n (%).
From Davis, 1989; Kriplani, 1994; Luewan, 2011; Medici, 2014; Millar, 1994.

necessary. Although usually short-lived, neonatal thyrotoxicosis may require a short course of antithyroid drug treatment (Levy-Shraga, 2014; Nathan, 2014).

A second fetal presentation is *goitrous hypothyroidism* caused by fetal exposure to maternally administered thionamides (see Fig. 61-3). Despite theoretical neurological implications, reports of adverse fetal effects seem to have been exaggerated. For example, in at least 239 treated thyrotoxic women shown in Table 61-2, evidence of hypothyroidism was found in only four newborns. Furthermore, at least four long-term studies report no abnormal intellectual or physical development of these children (Mestman, 1998). As long as the maternal free thyroxine level remains in the upper therapeutic to mildly thyrotoxic range, the likelihood of fetal hypothyroidism is remote (Moleti, 2019).

A third presentation, *nongoitrous hypothyroidism,* may develop from transplacental passage of maternal TSH-receptor blocking antibodies (Fitzpatrick, 2010). And last, *fetal thyrotoxicosis* after maternal thyroid gland ablation, usually with ^{131}I radioiodine, may result from transplacental thyroid-stimulating antibodies. In one report of early fetal exposure to radioiodine, neonatal thyroid studies indicated transient hyperthyroidism from maternal transfer of stimulating antibodies (Tran, 2010).

Fetal Diagnosis

Evaluation of fetal thyroid function remains controversial. Although the fetal thyroid volume can be measured sonographically in women taking thionamide drugs or in those with thyroid-stimulating antibodies, most investigators do not currently recommend this routinely (Cohen, 2003; Luton, 2005). Fetal hyper- or hypothyroidism may cause hydrops, growth restriction, goiter, or tachycardia, and fetal blood sampling may be appropriate (Brand, 2005). The American Thyroid Association guidelines for management of thyroid disease during pregnancy recommend that umbilical cord blood sampling only be considered when a fetal goiter is detected and the thyroid status of the fetus is unclear (Alexander, 2017). Diagnosis and treatment are considered further in Chapter 19 (p. 370).

Thyroid Storm and Thyrotoxic Heart Failure

Both of these are acute and life-threatening in pregnancy. Thyroid storm is a hypermetabolic state and is rare in pregnancy. In contrast, pulmonary hypertension and heart failure from cardiomyopathy caused by the profound myocardial effects of thyroxine are common in pregnant women (Sheffield, 2004). As shown in Table 61-2, heart failure developed in 8 percent of 90 women with uncontrolled thyrotoxicosis. In a registry of almost 70,000 pregnancies from one province in China, six of 155 (4 percent) women diagnosed with thyrotoxicosis were found to have hyperthyroid heart disease (Shan, 2019).

The pregnant woman with thyrotoxicosis has minimal cardiac reserve, and decompensation is usually precipitated by preeclampsia, anemia, sepsis, or a combination. Fortunately, thyroxine-induced cardiomyopathy and pulmonary hypertension are frequently reversible (Shan, 2019; Sheffield, 2004).

Management

Treatment is similar for thyroid storm and heart failure and should be carried out in an intensive care area that may include special-care units within labor and delivery (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020). Shown in **Figure 61-4** is our stepwise approach to medical management of thyroid storm or thyrotoxic heart failure. An hour or two after initial thionamide administration, iodide is given to inhibit thyroidal release of T_3 and T_4. It can be given intravenously (IV) as sodium iodide or orally as either saturated solution of potassium iodide (SSKI) or Lugol solution. With a history of iodine-induced anaphylaxis, lithium carbonate, 300 mg every 6 hours, is given instead. Most authorities recommend dexamethasone, 2 mg IV every 6 hours for four doses, to further block peripheral conversion of T_4 to T_3. If a β-blocking drug is given to control tachycardia, its effect on heart failure must be considered. Propranolol, labetalol, and esmolol are options. Coexisting severe preeclampsia, infection, or anemia are aggressively managed before delivery is considered.

Hyperemesis Gravidarum

Transient biochemical features of hyperthyroidism may be observed in 2 to 15 percent of women in early pregnancy (Fitzpatrick, 2010). Many women with hyperemesis gravidarum have abnormally high serum T_4 levels and low TSH levels (Chap. 57, p. 1014). This results from TSH-receptor stimulation from hCG. This transient condition is also termed *gestational transient thyrotoxicosis.* Even if associated with hyperemesis, antithyroid drugs are not warranted (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020). The hCG levels do not correlate with T_4 and TSH values, which trend to normal by midpregnancy (Nathan, 2014; Yoshihara, 2015).

Gestational Trophoblastic Disease

The prevalence of T_4 level elevation in women with a molar pregnancy ranges between 25 and 65 percent (Hershman, 2004). As discussed, abnormally high hCG levels lead to overstimulation of the TSH receptor. Because these tumors are now usually diagnosed early, clinically apparent hyperthyroidism is less common. With molar evacuation, serum free T_4 levels usually drop to normal levels rapidly in parallel with declining hCG concentrations.

Subclinical Hyperthyroidism

Third-generation TSH assays with an analytical sensitivity of 0.002 mU/mL permit identification of subclinical thyroid disorders. These biochemically defined extremes usually represent normal biological variations but may herald the earliest stages of thyroid dysfunction. *Subclinical hyperthyroidism* is characterized by an abnormally low serum TSH concentration in concert with normal T_4 hormone levels. Long-term effects of persistent subclinical thyrotoxicosis include osteoporosis, cardiovascular morbidity, and progression to overt thyrotoxicosis or thyroid failure. In one recent metaanalysis of 20 studies, the prevalence of subclinical hyperthyroidism was 1.77 percent in pregnant women (Dong, 2019). Importantly, subclinical hyperthyroidism has not been associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes (Casey, 2006). In separate retrospective analyses of almost 25,000 women who underwent thyroid screening throughout pregnancy, investigators also found no relationship between

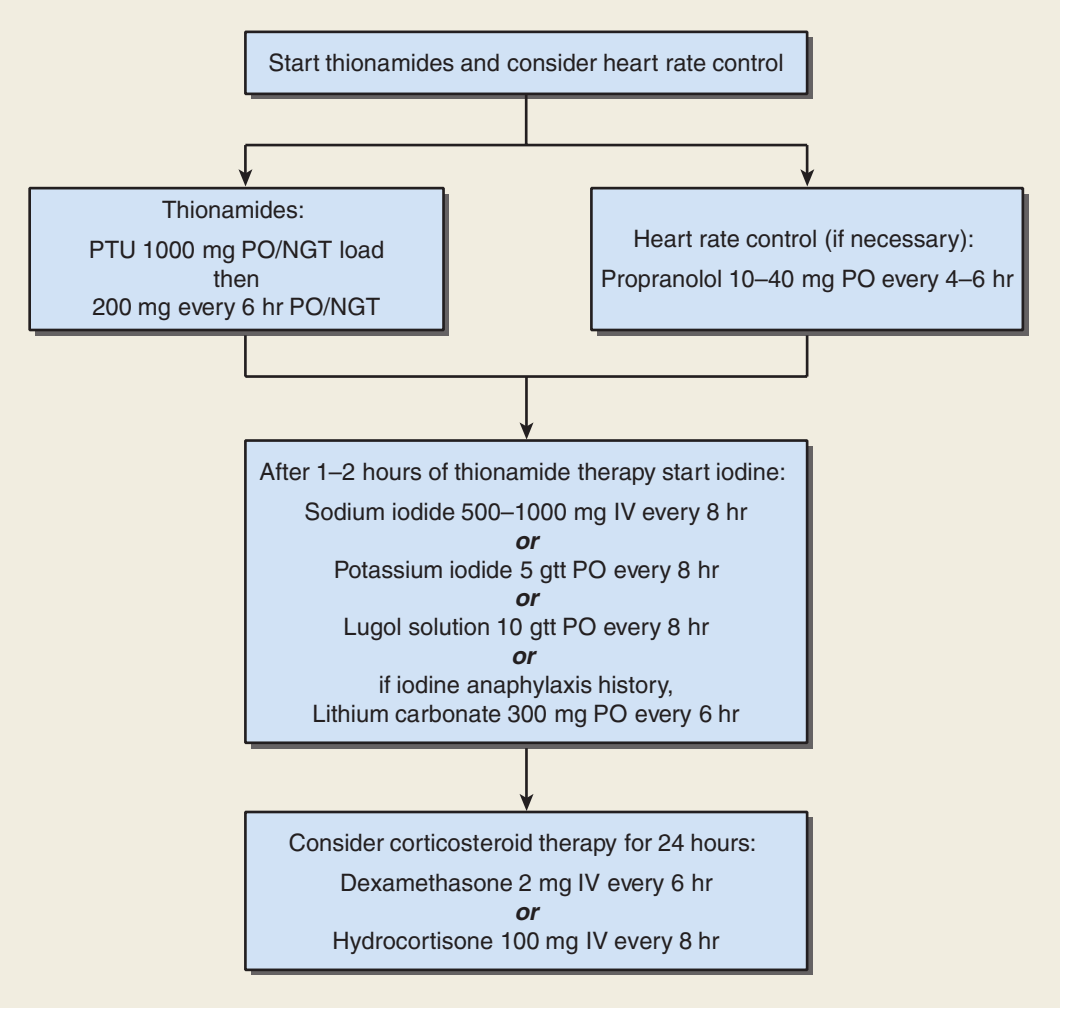


FIGURE 61-4 Parkland Hospital management for thyroid storm or thyrotoxic heart failure. gtt = drops; IV = intravenous; NGT = nasogastric tube; PO = orally; PTU = propylthiouracil.

subclinical hyperthyroidism and preeclampsia or gestational diabetes (Wilson, 2012; Tudela, 2012).

Treatment of subclinical hyperthyroidism is unwarranted in pregnancy because antithyroid drugs may affect the fetus. These women may benefit from periodic surveillance, and approximately half eventually have normal TSH concentrations.

Hypothyroidism

Overt or symptomatic hypothyroidism complicates between 0.2 and 1.2 percent of pregnancies (Andersen, 2016; Casey, 2017). Its insidious, nonspecific clinical findings include fatigue, constipation, cold intolerance, muscle cramps, and weight gain. A pathologically enlarged thyroid gland depends on the etiology of hypothyroidism and is more likely in women in areas of endemic iodine deficiency or those with Hashimoto thyroiditis. Other findings are edema, dry skin, hair loss, and a prolonged relaxation phase of deep tendon reflexes. *Clinical* or *overt hypothyroidism* is confirmed by an abnormally high serum TSH level and an abnormally low T_4 level. *Subclinical hypothyroidism,* discussed later, is defined by an elevated serum TSH level but *normal* serum T_4 concentration (Jameson, 2015). Asymptomatic individuals with high levels of anti-TPO or antithyroglobulin antibodies often are included in the spectrum of subclinical thyroid disease and will also be discussed.

Overt Hypothyroidism and Pregnancy

The most common cause of hypothyroidism in pregnancy is Hashimoto thyroiditis, characterized by glandular destruction from autoantibodies, particularly anti-TPO antibodies. Another cause is postablative Graves disease. Clinical identification of hypothyroidism is especially difficult during pregnancy because many of the signs or symptoms are also common pregnancy itself. Thyroid analyte testing should be performed on symptomatic women, those with a personal or family history of thyroid disease, or those with type 1 diabetes (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020). *Severe hypothyroidism* during pregnancy is uncommon, probably because it is often associated with infertility and higher miscarriage rates (De Groot, 2012).

Treatment

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020) recommends oral replacement therapy for overt hypothyroidism beginning with levothyroxine in doses of 1 to 2 μg/kg/d or approximately 100 μg daily. Women who are athyreotic

after thyroidectomy or radioiodine therapy may require higher doses. Surveillance is with TSH levels measured at 4-week intervals in the first half of pregnancy and at least once in the third trimester. The levothyroxine dose is adjusted by 25- to 50-μg increments until TSH values approximate 2.5 mU/L. Pregnancy is associated with an increased dose requirement in approximately a third of supplemented women (Abalovich, 2010; Alexander, 2004). The greater demand in pregnancy is believed to be related to augmented estrogen production (Arafah, 2001).

Higher dose requirements begin as early as 5 weeks' gestation. Significant hypothyroidism may develop early in women without thyroid reserve, such as those with a previous thyroidectomy, those with prior radioiodine ablation, or those undergoing assisted reproductive techniques (Alexander, 2004; Loh, 2009). Theoretically, an anticipatory 25-percent increase in the levothyroxine dose at pregnancy confirmation will reduce this likelihood. However, one randomized trial compared empiric increases in dose against dose adjustments based on TSH levels and found both equally effective (Sullivan, 2017). Those in the empiric-dosing group had a higher risk of TSH suppression. At Parkland Hospital, all women with hypothyroidism undergo TSH testing at initiation of prenatal care and subsequent indicated dose adjustments. TSH determinations are repeated in each trimester.

Pregnancy Outcome with Overt Hypothyroidism

Observational studies, although limited, indicate that excessive adverse perinatal outcomes are associated with overt T_4 deficiency (Table 61-3). Preterm birth rates also are higher (Sheehan, 2015). With appropriate replacement therapy, however, rates of adverse effects are not increased in most reports (Bryant, 2015; Matalon, 2006; Tan, 2006). In one dissenting study, risks for some pregnancy complications were greater even in women taking replacement therapy (Wikner, 2008). Most experts agree that adequate hormone replacement during pregnancy minimizes the risk of adverse outcomes and most complications.

TABLE 61-3. Pregnancy Complications in 440 Women with Hypothyroidism

Complications	Hypothyroidism (%)	
	Overt (n = 112)	Subclinical (n = 328)
Preeclampsia	32	8
Placental abruption	8	1
Cardiac dysfunction	3	2
Birthweight <2000 g[a,b]	33	32
Stillbirths[c]	9	3[c]

[a]Preterm or term deliveries were the only outcomes reported by Abalovich, 2002.
[b]Low birthweight and stillbirth were outcomes reported by Su, 2011.
[c]One infant died from syphilis.
Data from Abalovich, 2002; Davis, 1988; Leung, 1993; Männistö, 2009; Su, 2011.

Fetal and Neonatal Effects

Undoubtedly, maternal and fetal thyroid abnormalities are related. In both, thyroid function is dependent on adequate iodine intake, and its deficiency early in pregnancy can cause both maternal and fetal hypothyroidism. In one analysis of 4273 mother-child pairs, an association between maternal thyroid function during pregnancy and both neonatal and childhood thyroid function was confirmed (Korevaar, 2016a). As discussed, maternal TSH-receptor-blocking antibodies can cross the placenta and cause fetal thyroid dysfunction. Rovelli and colleagues (2010) evaluated 129 neonates born to women with autoimmune thyroiditis. They found that 28 percent had an elevated TSH level on the third or fourth day of life, and 47 percent of these had TPO antibodies on day 15. Still, autoantibodies were undetectable at age 6 months. In their analysis, Korevaar and coworkers (2016a) concluded that maternal TPO antibodies have no clinically relevant effects on the thyroid function of offspring. Indeed, prevalence of fetal hypothyroidism in women with Hashimoto thyroiditis is estimated to be only 1 case in 180,000 newborns (Brown, 1996).

■ Subclinical Hypothyroidism

Although common in women, the incidence of subclinical hypothyroidism varies depending on age, race, dietary iodine intake, and serum TSH thresholds used (Jameson, 2015). In two large studies totaling more than 25,000 pregnant women screened in the first half of pregnancy, subclinical hypothyroidism was identified in 2.3 percent (Casey, 2005; Cleary-Goldman, 2008). The rate of progression to overt thyroid failure is affected by TSH level, age, other disorders such as diabetes, and presence and concentration of antithyroid antibodies.

Diez and Iglesias (2004) prospectively followed 93 nonpregnant women with subclinical hypothyroidism for 5 years and reported that in a third, TSH values became normal. In the other two thirds, those women whose TSH levels were 10 to 15 mU/L developed overt disease at a rate of 19 cases per 100 patient-years. Those women whose TSH levels were <10 mU/L developed overt hypothyroidism at a rate of 2 cases per 100 patient-years.

Regarding screening for subclinical hypothyroidism in nonpregnant individuals, the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force also reports that nearly all patients who develop overt hypothyroidism within 5 years have an initial TSH level >10 mU/L (Helfand, 2004; Karmisholt, 2008). From one metaanalysis of data from nonpregnant adults with subclinical hypothyroidism, thyroid hormone therapy was not associated with improved general quality of life, thyroid-related symptoms, depression, blood pressure, or other cardiovascular outcomes (Feller, 2018).

In a 20-year follow-up study of 5805 women who were screened in early pregnancy, only 3 percent developed thyroid disease. Of the 224 women identified with subclinical hypothyroidism during pregnancy, 17 percent developed thyroid disease in the next 20 years, and most of these had either TPO or thyroglobulin antibodies during pregnancy (Männistö, 2010). Thus, the likelihood of progression to overt hypothyroidism *during* pregnancy in otherwise healthy women with subclinical hypothyroidism seems remote.

Subclinical Hypothyroidism and Pregnancy

Interest in this subject was heightened 20 years ago by two studies reporting that undiagnosed maternal thyroid hypofunction may impair fetal neuropsychological development (Haddow, 1999; Pop, 1999). Notably, in the Haddow study, many women had both elevated TSH and abnormally low serum free T_4 levels and thus had *overt* hypothyroidism. To evaluate any adverse pregnancy effects, Casey and colleagues (2005) identified subclinical hypothyroidism in 2.3 percent of 17,298 women screened at Parkland Hospital before midpregnancy. These women had small but significantly higher incidences of preterm birth, placental abruption, and neonates admitted to the intensive care nursery compared with euthyroid women. In another study of 10,990 similar women, however, Cleary-Goldman and associates (2008) did not find such associations.

Other studies subsequently confirmed a link between subclinical thyroid function and adverse outcomes (Chen, 2017; Maraka, 2016). One included 24,883 women screened throughout pregnancy and showed an almost twofold greater risk of severe preeclampsia (Wilson, 2012). In an analysis of the latter cohort, a consistent relationship was shown between rising TSH levels and the risk for gestational diabetes (Tudela, 2012). Last, Nelson and associates (2014) found an elevated risk for diabetes and stillbirth.

Lazarus and coworkers (2012) reported the findings of the international multicenter Controlled Antenatal Thyroid Screening (CATS) study. They evaluated prenatal thyroid screening with randomized treatment of both subclinical hypothyroidism and isolated maternal hypothyroxinemia. They found that offspring IQ scores at age 3 years were not superior in the treated cohort. Later evaluation of these offspring through age 9 confirmed that maternal treatment offered no benefit (Hales, 2018). Last, the Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units (MFMU) Network screened more than 97,000 pregnant women for thyroid disorders and reported that 3.3 percent had subclinical hypothyroidism. These 677 women were randomly assigned to thyroxine replacement therapy or placebo. As reported by Casey and colleagues (2017) and shown in Table 61-4, adverse pregnancy outcomes or cognitive development in the offspring at 5 years did not differ between groups. Annual developmental testing scores and behavioral and attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder results also did not differ.

Because of earlier study findings, some professional organizations began to recommend routine prenatal screening and treatment of subclinical hypothyroidism. However, after the CATS and MFMU Network studies, more recent clinical practice guidelines from the Endocrine Society, the American Thyroid Association, and the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists now uniformly recommended screening only those at greater risk during pregnancy (Alexander, 2017; De Groot, 2012; Garber, 2012). This has been and still is the recommendation of the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020).

Isolated Maternal Hypothyroxinemia

Women with low serum free T_4 values but a normal-range TSH level are considered to have *isolated maternal hypothyroxinemia*. Its incidence in two large trials was 1.3 to 2.1 percent (Casey, 2007; Cleary-Goldman, 2008). As shown in Figure 61-2, unlike in subclinical hypothyroidism, these women have a low prevalence of antithyroid antibodies.

Initial studies reported that offspring of women with isolated hypothyroxinemia had neurodevelopmental difficulties (Levie, 2018; Li, 2010; Pop, 1999, 2003). Casey and colleagues

TABLE 61-4. Maternal-Fetal Medicine Unites Network: Pregnancy Outcomes According to Diagnosis and Treatment of Thyroid Disorders[a]

	Subclinical Hypothyroidism		Isolated Hypothyroxinemia	
Outcome	**Thyroxine**	**Placebo**	**Thyroxine**	**Placebo**
Maternal				
EGA at delivery (weeks)	39.1 ± 2.5	38.9 ± 3.1	39.0 ± 2.4	38.8 ± 3.1
Preterm birth <34 weeks	9.1%	10.9%	3.8%	2.7%
Placental abruption	0.3%	1.5%	1.1%	0.8%
Preeclampsia	6.5%	5.9%	3.4%	4.2%
Diabetes	7.4%	6.5%	8.0%	9.2%
Perinatal and Childhood				
Stillbirth	12/1000	21/1000	8/1000	19/1000
Neonatal death	0	3/1000	4/1000	4/1000
NICU admission	8.6%	6.2%	11.8%	11.9%
Birthweight <10th centile	9.8%	8.1%	8.8%	7.8%
IQ median (25th, 75th percentile)	97 (85,105)	94 (85,107)	94 (83,101)	91 (82,101)

[a]For all comparisons, $p > 0.05$.
EGA = estimated gestational age; IQ = intelligence quotient; NICU = neonatal intensive care unit.

(2007), however, found no higher risks in these women for other adverse perinatal outcomes compared with those of euthyroid women. In contrast, a recent individual patient data systematic analysis including 47,045 pregnant women identified a higher risk of preterm birth associated with isolated hypothyroxinemia (Consortium on Thyroid and Pregnancy, 2019).

The aforementioned CATS study, including follow-up of offspring through age 9 years, did not find improved neurodevelopmental outcomes in women with isolated hypothyroxinemia who were then treated with thyroxine (Hales, 2018; Lazarus, 2012). The randomized trial conducted by the MFMU Network also demonstrated no improvement in neurocognitive development with thyroxine treatment during pregnancy (Casey, 2017). This large randomized study also found no higher rates of adverse pregnancy outcomes between groups and found that early thyroxine treatment offered no benefits (see Table 61-4). The American Thyroid Association currently recommends against routine treatment of isolated hypothyroxinemia in pregnancy (Alexander, 2017).

Euthyroid Autoimmune Thyroid Disease

Autoantibodies to TPO and thyroglobulin have been identified in 2 to 17 percent of pregnant women worldwide (Alexander, 2017). Most who test positive for such antibodies, however, are euthyroid. That said, such women carry a two- to fivefold increased risk for early pregnancy loss (Stagnaro-Green, 2004; Thangaratinam, 2011). The presence of thyroid antibodies has also been associated with preterm birth (He, 2012). In a randomized treatment trial of 115 euthyroid women with TPO antibodies, levothyroxine astoundingly reduced the preterm birth rate from 22 to 7 percent (Negro, 2006). In a follow-up trial restricted to women with a TSH <2.5 mU/L, however, levothyroxine treatment had no effect on this risk (Negro, 2016).

In another study, Abbassi-Ghanavati and associates (2010) evaluated pregnancy outcomes in more than 1000 untreated women with TPO antibodies and did not find a higher risk for preterm birth compared with the risk in 16,000 euthyroid women without antibodies. These investigators, however, did find a threefold greater risk of placental abruption in these women. More recently, the Consortium on Thyroid and Pregnancy-Study Group on Preterm Birth (2019) estimated a marginal 1.3-fold increased risk for preterm birth in their meta-analysis of women with TPO antibodies.

As with nonpregnant subjects with TPO antibodies, pregnant women are also at increased risk in later life for progression of thyroid disease and postpartum thyroiditis (Jameson, 2015; Stagnaro-Green, 2012a). Currently, universal screening for the thyroid autoantibodies is not recommended by any professional organization (Alexander, 2017; American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; De Groot, 2012).

Iodine Deficiency

Decreasing iodide fortification of table salt and bread products in the United States during the past 25 years has led to occasional iodide deficiency (Caldwell, 2005; Hollowell, 1998). Importantly, the most recent National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey indicated that, overall, the United States population remains iodine sufficient (Herrick, 2018). However, experts agree that iodine nutrition in vulnerable populations, such as pregnant women, requires continued monitoring. In 2014, the Office of Dietary Supplements of the National Institutes of Health sponsored three workshops to identify information gaps and develop an iodine research agenda. Participants emphasized the gradual decline in median urinary iodine levels in pregnant women and the serious potential effects on developing fetuses (Pearce, 2016).

Dietary iodine requirements are higher during pregnancy due to augmented thyroid hormone production, increased renal losses, and fetal iodine requirements. Adequate iodine is requisite for fetal neurological development beginning soon after conception, and abnormalities vary by the degree of deficiency. For example, Levie and colleagues (2019) demonstrated a positive correlation between maternal urinary iodine/creatinine ratio in the first trimester and offspring nonverbal IQ scores. UNICEF (2018) estimates that nearly 19 million babies born globally every year are at risk of permanent yet preventable brain damage or of reduced cognitive function from iodine deficiency.

Although it is doubtful that *mild deficiency* causes intellectual impairment, supplementation does prevent fetal goiter (Stagnaro-Green, 2012b). In one randomized trial with more than 800 women who had mild deficiency, daily iodine supplementation had no effect on child neurodevelopment at age 5 to 6 years (Gowachirapant, 2017). Supplementation studies conducted in regions with *moderate deficiency* have reported inconsistent findings with regard to psychomotor development (Bell, 2016). Berbel and associates (2009) began daily supplementation in more than 300 pregnant women with moderate deficiency at three time periods. They found improved neurobehavioral development scores in offspring of women supplemented with 200 μg of potassium iodide very early in pregnancy. Similarly, Velasco and coworkers (2009) found improved Bayley Psychomotor Development scores in offspring of women supplemented with 300 μg of iodine daily in the first trimester. In contrast, Murcia and colleagues (2011) identified lower psychomotor scores in 1-year-old infants whose mothers reported daily supplementation of more than 150 μg. *Severe deficiency* is frequently associated with damage typically encountered with *endemic cretinism*, and benefits of universal salt iodization or supplementation have been confirmed (Alexander, 2017).

Regarding daily iodine intake, the Institute of Medicine (2001) recommends 220 μg/d during pregnancy and 290 μg/d during lactation (Chap. 10, p. 185). The American Thyroid Association recommends an average iodine intake of 250 μg/d in all pregnant women and has recommended that 150 μg of iodine be added to prenatal vitamins to achieve this average daily oral intake (Alexander, 2017; Kerver, 2021). In an older study, Leung and coworkers (2011) reported that only half of the prenatal multivitamins in the United States contained iodine. Without evidence of benefit, however, it is hard to justify the cost of iodine supplementation of large numbers of pregnant women in areas with mild iodine deficiency (Pearce, 2016).

Importantly, experts caution against oversupplementation since excessive iodine exposure can lead to subclinical thyroid dysfunction and is associated with increased prevalence of thyroid autoimmunity (Pearce 2016; Shi, 2015). The American Thyroid Association advises against exceeding twice the daily recommended intake of iodine, which is 500 μg/d (Alexander, 2017).

Congenital Hypothyroidism

Universal newborn screening for neonatal hypothyroidism was introduced in 1974 and is now required by law in all states (Chap. 32, p. 594). This develops in approximately 1 in 2000 newborns. The reported incidence has increased during the past few decades and is thought to stem from greater preterm neonate survival rates and methodological shifts in newborn screening (McGrath, 2019). Variation in TSH percentiles according to gestational age at delivery have led some to propose age-adjusted cutoffs to avoid overdiagnosis (Kaluarachchi, 2019). Developmental disorders of the thyroid gland such as agenesis and hypoplasia account for 80 to 90 percent of cases. The remainder may be caused by hereditary defects in thyroid hormone production, but it is estimated that up to 15 percent may have a transient form of the disease (McGrath, 2018; Oron, 2018).

Early and aggressive thyroxine replacement is critical for affected newborns (van Trotsenburg, 2021). In one study of 76 children with congenital hypothyroidism, IQ scores at age 18 years did not differ from those in 40 siblings, provided the initial thyroxine dose was sufficiently high (Aleksander, 2018).

Postpartum Thyroiditis

Transient autoimmune thyroiditis is consistently found in approximately 5 to 10 percent of women during the first year after childbirth (Nathan, 2014; Nguyen, 2019). With an onset within 12 months, postpartum thyroid dysfunction includes hyperthyroidism, hypothyroidism, or both. The propensity for thyroiditis antedates pregnancy and is directly related to increasing serum levels of thyroid autoantibodies. Up to 50 percent of women who have thyroid antibodies in the first trimester will develop postpartum thyroiditis (Stagnaro-Green, 2012a). As mentioned previously, routine thyroid autoantibody testing during pregnancy is currently not recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020).

In clinical practice, postpartum thyroiditis is diagnosed infrequently because it typically develops months after delivery and causes vague symptoms (Nguyen, 2019). The presentation varies, and classically two clinical phases that may develop in succession are recognized. The first and earliest is *destruction-induced thyrotoxicosis* with symptoms from excessive release of hormone from glandular disruption. The onset is abrupt, and a small, painless goiter is common. From many possible symptoms, only fatigue and palpitations are more frequent in thyrotoxic women compared with normal controls. This thyrotoxic phase usually lasts only a few months. Thionamides are ineffective, and if symptoms are severe, a β-blocking agent may be given. The second and usually later phase between 4 and 8 months postpartum is *hypothyroidism* from thyroiditis. Thyromegaly and other symptoms are common and more prominent than during the thyrotoxic phase. Levothyroxine replacement at doses of 25 to 75 μg/d is typically given for 6 to 12 months.

Stagnaro-Green and associates (2011) reported postpartum surveillance results in 4562 Italian gravidas who had been screened for thyroid disease in pregnancy. Serum TSH and anti-TPO antibody levels were measured again at 6 and 12 months. Overall, 169 women (3.9 percent) developed postpartum thyroiditis, and two thirds of these were identified to have hypothyroidism only. The other third were diagnosed with hyperthyroidism. Only 14 percent of all women demonstrated the classic biphasic progression. These findings are consistent with data compiled from 20 other studies between 1982 and 2008 (Stagnaro-Green, 2012a).

Importantly, women who experience either type of postpartum thyroiditis have a 20- to 30-percent risk of eventually developing permanent hypothyroidism, and the annual progression rate is 3.6 percent (Nathan, 2014). Women at greater risk for developing hypothyroidism are those with higher titers of thyroid antibodies and higher TSH levels during the initial hypothyroid phase. Others may develop subclinical disease, but half of those with thyroiditis who are positive for TPO antibodies develop permanent hypothyroidism by 6 to 7 years (Stagnaro-Green, 2012a).

An association between postpartum thyroiditis and postpartum depression has been proposed but remains unresolved (Alexander, 2017). Similarly unsettled is the link between depression and thyroid antibodies. Kuijpens and associates (2001) reported that TPO antibodies were a marker for postpartum depression in euthyroid women. In a randomized trial, however, Harris and coworkers (2002) reported no difference in postpartum depression in 342 women with TPO antibodies who were given either levothyroxine or placebo. Somewhat related, in the MFMU Network randomized trial, women with subclinical hypothyroidism allocated to thyroxine treatment during pregnancy did not experience improvement in their depression (Costantine, 2020).

Nodular Thyroid Disease

Palpable thyroid nodules can be found in up to 5 percent of reproductive-aged women (Angell, 2019). Management of a palpable thyroid nodule during pregnancy depends on gestational age and mass size. Small nodules detected by sensitive sonographic methods are more common during pregnancy in some populations. Kung and associates (2002) used high-resolution sonography and found that 15 percent of Chinese women had nodules larger than 2 mm in diameter. Almost half of cases had multiple masses. The nodules usually enlarged modestly across pregnancy and did not regress postpartum. Biopsy of those measuring >5 mm^3 that persisted at 3 months usually showed nodular hyperplasia, and none was malignant. In most studies, 90 to 95 percent of solitary nodules are benign (Burch, 2016).

Evaluation of thyroid nodules during pregnancy should be similar to that for nonpregnant patients. As discussed in Chapter 49 (p. 875), *radioiodine scanning* in pregnancy is usually not recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020). *Sonographic* examination reliably detects

nodules >5 mm, and their solid or cystic structure also is determined. According to the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists, sonographic characteristics associated with malignancy include hypoechogenic pattern, irregular margins, and microcalcifications (Gharib, 2016). *Fine-needle aspiration (FNA)* under ultrasound guidance is an excellent assessment method because cytological diagnostic criteria are not substantially influenced by pregnancy (Gharib, 2016). If the FNA biopsy shows a follicular lesion, surgery may be deferred until postpartum.

Evaluation of thyroid cancer involves a multidisciplinary approach (Fagin, 2016). Most thyroid carcinomas are well differentiated and indolent. Messuti and coworkers (2014) provided evidence that persistence or recurrence of these tumors may be more common in pregnant women. For thyroid malignancy diagnosed in the first or second trimester, thyroidectomy may be performed before the third trimester. In women without evidence of an aggressive thyroid cancer or in those diagnosed in the third trimester, surgical treatment can be deferred until the early puerperium (Gharib, 2016) (Chap. 66, p. 1174).

PARATHYROID DISEASE

Parathyroid hormone (PTH) maintains extracellular fluid calcium concentration. This 84-amino-acid hormone acts directly on bone and kidney and indirectly on small intestine to increase serum calcium (Potts, 2015). PTH secretion is regulated by serum ionized calcium concentration through a negative feedback system. *Calcitonin* is a potent parathyroid hormone that acts as a physiological PTH antagonist. The relationships between these hormones, calcium metabolism, and *PTH-related protein (PTH-rP)* produced by fetal tissue are discussed in Chapter 4 (p. 73).

Of fetal demands, calcium requirements reach 300 mg/d in late pregnancy and 30 g for the entire gestation. These needs and greater renal calcium loss from augmented maternal glomerular filtration substantively raise maternal calcium demands. Total serum calcium levels decline with serum albumin concentrations, but ionized calcium levels remain unchanged. Pregnancy is also associated with a twofold rise in serum concentrations of 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D, which increases gastrointestinal calcium absorption. The effectuating hormone is probably of placental and decidual origin since maternal PTH levels are low normal or decreased during pregnancy (Cooper, 2011). Calcium is actively transported across the placenta and deposited in the developing fetal skeletal system. Fetal calcium homeostasis is maintained through a complex interplay between PTH-rP, PTH, and receptors in the placenta, fetal kidney, and fetal skeleton (Hirai, 2015).

Hyperparathyroidism

Hypercalcemia is caused by hyperparathyroidism or cancer in 90 percent of cases (Potts, 2015). Because many automated laboratory systems include serum calcium measurement, hyperparathyroidism has changed from being a condition defined by symptoms to one that is discovered on routine screening (Pallan, 2012). Hypercalcemia has a reported prevalence of 2 to 3 cases per 1000 women, but some estimate the rate to reach 14 cases per 1000 if asymptomatic women are included. Almost 80 percent are caused by a solitary adenoma, and another 15 percent by hyperfunctioning of all four glands. In the remainder, an associated malignancy is usually obvious. Of note, PTH produced by tumors is not identical to the natural hormone and may not be detected by routine assays.

In most patients with hyperparathyroidism, the serum calcium level is elevated to within only 1 to 1.5 mg/dL above the upper normal limit. This may help to explain why only 20 percent of those who have abnormally elevated levels are symptomatic (Bilezikian, 2004). In a fourth, however, symptoms become apparent when the serum calcium level continues to rise. *Hypercalcemic crisis* manifests as stupor, nausea, vomiting, weakness, fatigue, and dehydration.

Women with symptomatic hyperparathyroidism should be surgically treated (Davis, 2020; Potts, 2015). Indications for parathyroidectomy include a serum calcium level 1.0 mg/dL above the upper normal range, a calculated creatinine clearance <60 mL/min, reduced bone density, or age >50 years (Bilezikian, 2009). Those not meeting these criteria should undergo annual serum calcium and creatinine level measurement and bone density assessment every 1 to 2 years (Pallan, 2012).

Hyperparathyroidism in Pregnancy

In their review, Schnatz and Thaxton (2005) found fewer than 200 reported cases of hyperparathyroidism complicating pregnancy. As in nonpregnant patients, parathyroid adenoma is the most common etiology. Ectopic parathyroid hormone production and rare cases of parathyroid carcinoma have been reported in pregnancy (Montoro, 2000; Saad, 2014). Symptoms of hyperparathyroidism during pregnancy include hyperemesis, generalized weakness, renal calculi, and psychiatric disorders. Occasionally, pancreatitis is the presenting disorder (Hirsch, 2015).

Pregnancy theoretically improves hyperparathyroidism by significantly shunting calcium to the fetus and by augmented renal excretion. When these effects are withdrawn, however, postpartum hypercalcemic crisis is a danger. This life-threatening complication can be seen with serum calcium levels >14 mg/dL, and nausea, vomiting, tremors, dehydration, and mental status changes are symptoms (Malekar-Raikar, 2011).

Early reports described excessive stillbirths and preterm deliveries in pregnancies complicated by hyperparathyroidism. More recent reports, however, describe lower rates of stillbirth, neonatal death, and neonatal tetany (Kovacs, 2011). Other fetal complications include miscarriage, fetal-growth restriction, and low birthweight (Chamarthi, 2011).) One group reported a 30-percent incidence of preeclampsia (Rigg, 2019).

Management in Pregnancy

Surgical removal of a symptomatic parathyroid adenoma is preferable. This should prevent fetal and neonatal morbidities and postpartum parathyroid crises (Kovacs, 2011). In one case series from an Australian referral hospital, 22 pregnancies were managed medically, and six women underwent parathyroidectomy. Preterm delivery was reported in 66 percent of pregnancies managed without surgery, whereas all surgically treated women delivered at term (Rigg, 2019). Elective neck

exploration during pregnancy is usually well tolerated, even in the third trimester (Hirsch, 2015; Stringer, 2017). In at least two cases, a mediastinal adenoma was removed at midpregnancy (Rooney, 1998; Saad, 2014).

Medical management may however be appropriate in asymptomatic pregnant women with mild hypercalcemia (Hirsch, 2015). If so, patients are carefully monitored in the puerperium for hypercalcemic crisis. Initial medical management might include *calcitonin* to decrease skeletal calcium release, or oral phosphate, 1 to 1.5 g daily in divided doses, to bind excess calcium. For women with dangerously elevated serum calcium levels or those who are mentally obtunded with *hypercalcemic crisis*, emergency treatment is instituted. Diuresis with IV normal saline is begun so that urine flow exceeds 150 mL/hr. *Furosemide* is given in conventional doses to block tubular calcium reabsorption. Importantly, hypokalemia and hypomagnesemia should be prevented. Adjunctive therapy includes *mithramycin*, which inhibits bone resorption.

Neonatal Effects

Normally, cord blood calcium levels are higher than maternal levels (Chap. 7, p. 136). With maternal hyperparathyroidism, abnormally elevated maternal and thus fetal levels further suppress fetal parathyroid function. Because of this, newborn calcium levels rapidly drop after birth, and 15 to 25 percent of these neonates develop severe hypocalcemia with or without tetany (Molitch, 2000). Neonatal hypoparathyroidism caused by maternal hyperparathyroidism is usually transient and is treated with calcium and 1,25-dihydroxyvitamin D_3 (calcitriol). The latter will not be effective in preterm infants, however, because the intestinal vitamin D receptor is insufficiently expressed (Kovacs, 2011). Neonatal tetany or seizures should stimulate an evaluation for maternal hyperparathyroidism (Beattie, 2000; Ip, 2003).

■ Hypoparathyroidism

The most common cause of hypocalcemia is hypoparathyroidism that usually follows parathyroid or thyroid surgery. It is estimated that almost 80 percent of cases are attributable to complications of anterior neck surgery (Gafni, 2019). Hypoparathyroidism is characterized by facial muscle spasms, muscle cramps, and paresthesias of the lips, tongue, fingers, and feet. This can progress to tetany and seizures (Potts, 2015). Chronically, hypocalcemic pregnant women may also have a fetus with skeletal demineralization resulting in multiple bone fractures in the neonatal period (Alikasifoglu, 2005).

Maternal treatment includes calcitriol, dihydrotachysterol, or large vitamin D doses of 50,000 to 150,000 U/d; calcium gluconate or calcium lactate in doses of 3 to 5 g/d; and a low-phosphate diet. Fetal risks from large doses of vitamin D have not been established. During treatment, the therapeutic challenge in women with known hypoparathyroidism is management of blood calcium levels. It is possible that the greater calcium absorption typical of pregnancy will result in lower calcium requirements or that the fetal demand for calcium will result in greater need. The goal during pregnancy is to maintain a corrected calcium level in the low normal range.

■ Pregnancy and Lactation-associated Osteoporosis

In most gravidas, even with their remarkably increased calcium requirements, it is uncertain whether pregnancy causes osteopenia. In one study of 200 women, bone density declined during pregnancy (Kraemer, 2011). Women who breastfed, carried twin pregnancies, or had a low body mass index were at higher risk of bone loss. Thomas and Weisman (2006) in their review cite a 3- to 4-percent average reduction in bone mineral density during pregnancy. Lactation also represents a period of negative calcium balance that may be corrected through maternal skeletal resorption. However, data from the Women's Health Initiative found that parity, number of pregnancies, age at first pregnancy, breastfeeding, and duration of breastfeeding were not associated with postmenopausal hip fracture risk or bone density losses (Crandall, 2017).

The most common symptom of this rare disorder of pregnancy-associated osteoporosis is back pain in late pregnancy or postpartum. Other symptoms are hip pain, either unilateral or bilateral, and difficulty in weight bearing until the woman is nearly immobilized (Maliha, 2012). In more than half of women, no apparent reason for osteopenia is found. Some known causes are heparin (unfractionated only), bed rest, and corticosteroid therapy (Cunningham, 2005; Galambosi, 2016). In a few cases, overt hyperparathyroidism or thyrotoxicosis eventually develops.

Treatment is problematic and includes calcium and vitamin D supplementation and pain management. Long-term surveillance of osteopenia indicates that although bone density improves, these women and their offspring may have chronic osteopenia (Carbone, 1995). Related, prenatal supplementation of normal women with cholecalciferol, 1000 IU/d, did not increase offspring bone mineral content, although it did ensure maternal vitamin D repletion (Cooper, 2016). In lactating women with osteoporosis, some advocate cessation of breastfeeding (Zhang, 2017).

ADRENAL GLAND DISORDERS

■ Pheochromocytoma

Pregnancy has profound effects on adrenal cortical secretion. These interrelationships were reviewed by Lekarev and New (2011) and are discussed in detail in Chapter 4 (p. 73). Several adrenal disorders may be encountered in pregnancy.

Of these, pheochromocytomas are chromaffin tumors that secrete catecholamines and usually are located in the adrenal medulla, although 10 percent are located in sympathetic ganglia. They are called the *10-percent tumor* because approximately 10 percent are bilateral, 10 percent are extra adrenal, and 10 percent are malignant. These tumors can be associated with medullary thyroid carcinoma and hyperparathyroidism in some of the autosomally dominant or recessive *multiple endocrine neoplasia syndromes*, as well as in neurofibromatosis and von Hippel-Lindau disease (Neumann, 2018).

Pheochromocytomas complicate approximately 1 per 50,000 pregnancies (Quartermaine, 2018). Notably, they are found in 0.2 to 0.6 percent of hypertensive patients (Lenders, 2019). Symptoms are usually paroxysmal and manifest as hypertensive crisis, seizures, or anxiety attacks. Others are headaches,

sweating, palpitations, chest pain, nausea, vomiting, and pallor or flushing. Hypertension is sustained in 60 percent of patients, but half of these also have paroxysmal crises.

Standard screening is quantification of metanephrines and catecholamine metabolites in a 24-hour urine specimen (Neumann, 2018). Diagnosis is established by measurement of a 24-hour urine collection with at least two of three assays for free catecholamines, metanephrines, or vanillylmandelic acid (VMA). Determination of plasma catecholamine metabolite levels is the most sensitive test, and a pheochromocytoma diagnosis is excluded if they are within normal range (Eisenhofer, 2018). In nonpregnant patients, adrenal localization is usually successful with either computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance (MR) imaging. For most cases, preferred treatment is laparoscopic adrenalectomy (Neumann, 2018).

In pregnancy, these tumors are rare but result in dangerous complications. Geelhoed (1983) provided an earlier review of 89 cases in which 43 mothers died. Maternal death was much more common if the tumor was not diagnosed antepartum—58 versus 18 percent. As seen in Table 61-5, maternal mortality rates are now lower but still formidable. In one review of 77 cases, antepartum diagnosis was the most important determinant of maternal mortality risk (Biggar, 2013). However, Salazar-Vega and colleagues (2014) described good outcomes in women diagnosed after delivery.

Diagnosis of pheochromocytoma in pregnancy is similar to that for nonpregnant patients. MR imaging is the preferred technique to locate adrenal and extra-adrenal pheochromocytomas (Fig. 61-5). Importantly, differentiating preeclampsia from the hypertensive crisis caused by pheochromocytoma is essential.

Immediate control of hypertension and symptoms is attained with an α-adrenergic blocking agent such as *phenoxybenzamine*. The dose is 10 to 30 mg, two to four times daily. After α-blockade is achieved, β-blocking drugs such as propranolol may be given for tachycardia. In many cases, surgical exploration and tumor removal are performed during pregnancy, preferably during the second trimester (Biggar, 2013; Dong, 2014). Successful laparoscopic removal of adrenal tumors has become the norm (Miller, 2012; Zuluaga-Gómez, 2012). Donatini and colleagues (2018) described three cases of women with bilateral tumors who had laparoscopic unilateral adrenalectomy of the largest tumor during pregnancy and subsequent contralateral adrenalectomy after delivery to avoid the maternal and fetal effects of adrenal insufficiency. If diagnosed later in pregnancy, either planned cesarean delivery with tumor excision or postpartum resection is appropriate.

Recurrent tumors are troublesome, and even with good blood pressure control, dangerous peripartum hypertension may develop. We have cared for three women in whom recurrent pheochromocytoma was identified during pregnancy. Hypertension was managed with phenoxybenzamine in all three. Two newborns were healthy, but a third was stillborn in a mother with a massive tumor burden who was receiving phenoxybenzamine, 100 mg daily. In all three women, the tumor was resected postpartum.

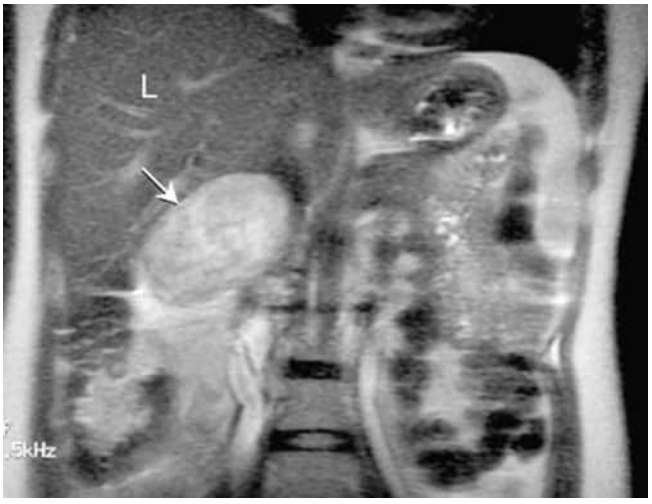


FIGURE 61-5 Coronal magnetic resonance image taken in a 32-week pregnant woman shows a right-sided pheochromocytoma (*arrow*) and its position relative to the liver (*L*) above it.

TABLE 61-5. Outcomes of Pregnancies Complicated by Pheochromocytoma and Reported in Four Contiguous Epochs

	Incidence (%)			
Factor	1980–87 Harper (1989) n = 48	1988–97 Ahlawat (1999) n = 42	1998–2008 Sarathi (2010) n = 60	2000–2001 Biggar (2013) n = 78
Diagnosis				
Antepartum	51	83	70	73
Postpartum	36	14	23	28
Autopsy	12	2	7	
Maternal death	16	4	12	8
Fetal wastage	26	11	17	17

■ Cushing Syndrome

This syndrome is rare and the female:male ratio is 3:1 (Arit, 2018). Most cases of *Cushing syndrome* are iatrogenic from long-term corticosteroid treatment. Excessive glucocorticoids can also be the result of a pituitary adenoma, adrenal tumor, or bilateral adrenal hyperplasia (Melmed, 2020). *Cushing disease* refers to bilateral adrenal hyperplasia stimulated by corticotropin-producing pituitary adenomas. Corticotropin is also called adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH). Most adenomas are microadenomas measuring <1 cm, and half measure <5 mm. Rarely, abnormal secretion of hypothalamic corticotropin-releasing factor may cause corticotropic hyperplasia. Such hyperplasia may also be caused by nonendocrine tumors that produce polypeptides similar to either corticotropin-releasing factor or corticotropin. Less than a fourth of cases of Cushing syndrome are corticotropin independent, and most of these are caused by an adrenal adenoma (Machado, 2018). Tumors are usually bilateral, and half are malignant. Occasionally, associated androgen excess may lead to severe virilization.

The typical cushingoid body habitus is caused by adipose tissue deposition creating *moon facies*, a *buffalo hump*, and *truncal*

obesity. Fatigability and weakness, hypertension, hirsutism, and amenorrhea are each encountered in 75 to 85 percent of nonpregnant patients (Hatipoglu, 2012; Melmed, 2020). Personality changes, easy bruising, and cutaneous striae are common. Up to 60 percent may have impaired glucose tolerance. Diagnosis can be difficult and is suggested by elevated plasma cortisol levels that cannot be suppressed by dexamethasone or by elevated 24-hour urinary free cortisol excretion in three collections (Arit, 2018; Loriaux, 2017). Neither test is totally accurate, and each is more difficult to interpret in obese patients. Serum corticotropin levels and CT and MR imaging are used to localize pituitary and adrenal tumors or hyperplasia.

In pregnancy, diagnosis can be difficult because of pregnancy-induced increases in plasma cortisol, corticotropin, and corticotropin-releasing factor levels. Measurement of urinary free cortisol excretion in a 24-hour collection sample is recommended. With interpretation of results, the normal elevation seen in pregnancy is factored. Because most women have corticotropin-dependent Cushing syndrome, associated androgen excess may cause anovulation, and pregnancy is rare. Caimari and coworkers (2017) identified 263 pregnancies in 220 women with Cushing syndrome in their systematic review. These differ compared with nonpregnant women in that more than half are caused by corticotropin-independent adrenal adenomas (Kamoun, 2014; Lacroix, 2015; Machado, 2018). Approximately 30 percent of cases are from a pituitary adenoma, and 10 percent from adrenal carcinomas. Pregnancy outcomes reviewed by Caimari and associates (2017) in women with Cushing syndrome are listed in Table 61-6.

Long-term medical therapy for Cushing syndrome usually is ineffective, and definitive therapy is resection of the pituitary or adrenal adenoma or bilateral adrenalectomy for hyperplasia (Lacroix, 2015; Machado, 2018). During pregnancy, management of hypertension in mild cases may suffice until delivery. In their review, Lindsay and associates (2005) described primary medical therapy in 20 women with Cushing syndrome. Most were successfully treated with *metyrapone* as an interim treatment until definitive surgery after delivery. A few cases were treated with oral *ketoconazole*. However, because this drug also blocks testicular steroidogenesis, treatment during pregnancy with a male fetus is worrisome. *Mifepristone,* the norethindrone derivative used for abortion and labor induction, has shown promise for treating Cushing disease but should not be used in pregnancy for obvious reasons. Transsphenoidal resection of a pituitary mass or laparoscopic adrenalectomy are considered first-line treatment options in the second trimester (Brue, 2018; Manoharan, 2020). Unilateral adrenalectomy has been safely performed in the early third trimester and can also be curative (Abdelmannan, 2011).

TABLE 61-6. Complications in Pregnancies of Women with Active and Cured Cushing Syndrome

Complication	Incidence (%)	
	Active Disease (n = 214)	Cured (n = 49)
Maternal		
Diabetes	37	2
Gestational hypertension	40	2
Preeclampsia	26	2
Cesarean delivery	52	22
Mortality	1	0
Perinatal		
Preterm birth	66	3
Fetal-growth restriction	15	5
Spontaneous abortion	11	6
Stillbirth	6	2
Neonatal death	5	0

Adrenal Insufficiency—Addison Disease

Primary adrenocortical insufficiency is rare because more than 90 percent of total gland volume must be destroyed for symptoms to develop. *Autoimmune adrenalitis* is the most common cause in the developed world, but tuberculosis is a more frequent etiology in resource-poor countries (Arit, 2018; Betterle, 2019; Kamoun, 2014). In the United States, the prevalence in 7.7 million births was 1 case per 10,000 to 20,000 (Schneiderman, 2017). There is an increased incidence of concurrent Hashimoto thyroiditis, primary ovarian insufficiency, type 1 diabetes, and Graves disease. These *polyglandular autoimmune syndromes* also include pernicious anemia, vitiligo, alopecia, nontropical sprue, and myasthenia gravis.

Untreated adrenal hypofunction frequently causes infertility, but with replacement therapy, ovulation is restored. If untreated, women often note weakness, nausea, vomiting, and weight loss. Low levels of plasma cortisol and elevated ACTH levels are generally considered diagnostic (Betterle, 2019). Because serum cortisol levels rise during pregnancy, a short ACTH-stimulation test documenting less than a twofold increase in plasma cortisol in response to infused corticotropin confirms the diagnosis (Manoharan, 2020).

In a large cohort study, 1188 women with Addison disease were compared with more than 11,000 age-matched controls who delivered between 1973 and 2006 (Björnsdottir, 2010). Women diagnosed with adrenal insufficiency within 3 years of delivery were significantly more likely to deliver preterm, to deliver a low-birthweight newborn, and to undergo cesarean delivery. Others have reported similar adverse outcomes (Quartermaine, 2018). Most pregnant women with Addison disease are already taking glucocorticoid and mineralocorticoid replacement drugs. These should be continued, and women are observed for evidence of either inadequate or excessive corticosteroid replacement. A 20- to 40-percent dose increase is usually expected after midpregnancy to mimic the physiological cortisol elevation in pregnancy (Oliveira, 2018). During labor, delivery, and postpartum, or after a surgical procedure, corticosteroid replacement must be increased appreciably to approximate the normal adrenal response. This augmented dose is called a *stress dose*, and one option is hydrocortisone, 100 mg, given IV every 8 hours for 48 hours. Importantly, shock from causes other than adrenocortical insufficiency—for example, hemorrhage or sepsis—must be recognized and treated promptly.

Primary Aldosteronism

Hyperaldosteronism is caused by an adrenal adenoma—Conn syndrome—in approximately 75 percent of cases. Idiopathic bilateral adrenal hyperplasia makes up the remainder, except for rare cases of adrenal carcinoma (Eschler, 2015; Yang, 2020). Findings include hypertension, hypokalemia, and muscle weakness. High serum or urine levels of aldosterone confirm the diagnosis.

In normal pregnancy, as discussed in Chapter 4 (p. 74), progesterone blocks aldosterone action, and this results in very high aldosterone levels (Appendix, p. 1230). Accordingly, the diagnosis of hyperaldosteronism during pregnancy can be difficult. Because renin levels are suppressed in pregnant women with hyperaldosteronism, a plasma aldosterone-to-renin activity ratio may be helpful for diagnosis (Morton, 2015). Hypertension worsens as pregnancy progresses, and medical management includes potassium supplementation and antihypertensive therapy. In many cases, hypertension responds to *spironolactone.* However, β-blocking or calcium channel–blocking drugs may be preferred because of the potential fetal antiandrogenic effects of spironolactone. Mascetti and coworkers (2011) reported successful use of *amiloride* in a pregnant woman. Use of *eplerenone*, a selective aldosterone-receptor antagonist, also has been described (Manoharan, 2020). Laparoscopic tumor resection is considered curative, but the optimal management during pregnancy, either surgical or medical, remains unclear (Eschler, 2015; Morton, 2015).

PITUITARY DISORDERS

Prolactinomas

The pituitary enlarges impressively during pregnancy, predominantly from lactotrophic cellular hyperplasia induced by estrogen (Chap. 4, p. 70). Several pituitary disorders also can complicate pregnancy.

Of these, prolactinomas are tumors that constitute 75 percent of pituitary adenomas in women (Melmed, 2020). They are often found in nonpregnant women since the advent of widely available serum prolactin assays. Serum levels <25 pg/mL are considered normal in nonpregnant women. Adenoma symptoms and findings include amenorrhea, galactorrhea, and hyperprolactinemia. Tumors are classified arbitrarily by their size measured by CT or MR imaging. A microadenoma is ≤10 mm, and a macroadenoma is >10 mm. Treatment for microadenomas is usually with bromocriptine, a dopamine agonist and powerful prolactin inhibitor, which frequently restores ovulation. For suprasellar macroadenomas, most recommend surgical resection before pregnancy is attempted (Araujo, 2015; Melmed, 2020).

In a pooled analysis of more than 750 pregnant women with prolactinomas, only 2.4 percent with *microadenomas* developed symptomatic enlargement during pregnancy (Molitch, 2015). Symptomatic enlargement of *macroadenomas*, however, is more frequent and was found in 21 percent of 238 pregnant women. In another study of 46 women with a macroprolactinoma, 20 percent had tumor growth–related symptoms (Barraud, 2020). Nonfunctioning adenomas can also cause symptoms of pituitary expansion in pregnancy (Lambert, 2017).

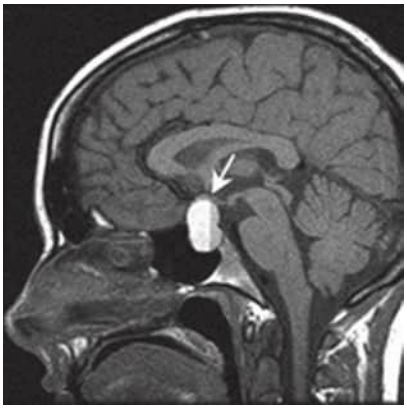


FIGURE 61-6 Magnetic resonance imaging of a pituitary adenoma. This sagittal T1-weighed image demonstrates a fluid-fluid level, consistent with intratumoral hemorrhage (*arrow*). (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Toral Patel.)

Pregnant women with microadenomas should be queried regularly for headaches and visual symptoms. Those with macroadenomas are followed more closely and have visual field testing each trimester. CT or MR imaging is recommended only if symptoms develop (Fig. 61-6). Serial serum prolactin levels serve little use because of normal rises during pregnancy (Appendix, p. 1231). Symptomatic tumor enlargement should be treated immediately with a dopamine antagonist. The safety of bromocriptine in pregnancy is well established. The safety profile is less well known for cabergoline. This drug is increasingly used in nonpregnant women because it is better tolerated and more effective. Cabergoline is generally considered safe for use in pregnancy (Huang, 2019; O'Sullivan, 2020). Surgery is recommended for women with no response, including those with pituitary apoplexy (Barraud, 2020).

Acromegaly

This is caused by excessive growth hormone, usually from an acidophilic or a chromophobic pituitary adenoma. In normal pregnancy, pituitary growth hormone levels decline as placental epitopes are secreted. Diagnosis is suggested by elevated insulin growth factor 1 (IGF-1) serum levels. Levels are more indicative in the first half of pregnancy because IGF-1 concentrations rise in normal pregnancy after midpregnancy (Abucham, 2017; Melmed, 2020). Definitive diagnosis may best be postponed until after delivery. Fewer than 100 cases of acromegaly have been reported during pregnancy (Cheng, 2012; Dias, 2013). Pregnancy is rare in women with acromegaly because half are hyperprolactinemic and anovulatory. During pregnancy, affected women are at marginally greater risk for gestational diabetes and hypertension (Dias, 2013; Jallad, 2018).

Management is similar to that for prolactinomas, and women are monitored for symptoms of tumor enlargement. Dopamine agonist therapy is less effective than for prolactinomas. Transsphenoidal resection, generally considered first-line treatment outside of pregnancy, may be necessary for symptomatic tumor enlargement during pregnancy (Motivala, 2011). Guven and associates (2006) reported a case of pituitary apoplexy necessitating emergent transsphenoidal adenoma resection and

cesarean delivery at 34 weeks' gestation. Successful treatment of pregnant women with the somatostatin-receptor ligand *octreotide* and with the growth hormone analogue *pegvisomant* has been reported (Dias, 2013; Fleseriu, 2015).

Diabetes Insipidus

Vasopressin deficiency evident in diabetes insipidus (DI) is most commonly due to neurohypophysis agenesis or destruction. True DI rarely complicates pregnancy. Instead, other types of DI encountered during pregnancy include primary polydipsia, gestational DI, and nephrogenic DI. These show suppressed secretion of, increased degradation of, and renal insensitivity to vasopressin, respectively (Robertson, 2016). In our experiences, transient secondary DI is more likely encountered with acute fatty liver of pregnancy (Nelson, 2013). This probably stems from altered vasopressinase clearance because of hepatic dysfunction (Chap. 58, p. 1035).

DI therapy is intranasal administration of a synthetic analogue of vasopressin, *desmopressin*, which is 1-deamino-8-D-arginine vasopressin (DDAVP). Available data on the safety of DDAVP during pregnancy is reassuring (Chanson, 2019). Most women require higher doses during pregnancy because of an increased metabolic clearance rate stimulated by placental vasopressinase (Lindheimer, 1994). The prevalence of placental vasopressinase-induced DI is estimated at 2 to 4 cases per 100,000 pregnancies (Wallia, 2013).

Sheehan Syndrome

Sheehan (1937) reported that pituitary ischemia and necrosis associated with obstetrical blood loss could result in hypopituitarism. With modern methods of hemorrhagic shock treatment, Sheehan syndrome rates have gradually declined (Matsuzaki, 2017; Pappachan, 2015). Affected women may have persistent hypotension, tachycardia, hypoglycemia, and lactation failure. Because deficiencies of some or all pituitary-responsive hormones may develop after the initial insult, Sheehan syndrome can be heterogenous and may not be identified for years (Chanson, 2019). In one cohort study of 60 women with Sheehan syndrome, the average time to diagnosis was 13 years (Gei-Guardia, 2011). Because adrenal insufficiency is the most life-threatening complication, adrenal function should be immediately assessed. After glucocorticoid replacement, subsequent analyses and replacement of thyroid, gonadal, and growth hormones is considered. Women with Sheehan syndrome who become pregnant likely have a livebirth (Vila, 2020).

Lymphocytic Hypophysitis

This rare autoimmune pituitary disorder is characterized by massive infiltration by lymphocytes and plasma cells with parenchymal destruction of the gland. Many cases are temporally linked to pregnancy, and more than half of reported cases in women are identified during pregnancy or puerperium (Gubbi, 2018). However, more recent reports describe fewer cases associated with pregnancy (Chanson, 2019). The degrees of hypopituitarism or mass effect symptoms, including headaches and visual field defects, vary. A sellar mass is seen with CT or MR imaging. A mass accompanied by a modestly elevated serum prolactin level—usually <100 pg/mL—suggests lymphocytic hypophysitis. In contrast, levels >200 pg/mL are encountered with prolactinoma. The etiology is unknown, but nearly 30 percent have a history of coexisting autoimmune diseases including Hashimoto thyroiditis, Addison disease, type 1 diabetes, or pernicious anemia (Chanson, 2019). Treatment is with glucocorticoids and pituitary hormone replacement. The disease may be self-limited, and a careful withdrawal of hormone replacement is attempted after inflammation subsides (Foyouzi, 2011; Melmed, 2020). More than two thirds of women who require treatment for lymphocytic hypophysitis, however, will require long-term hormone replacement (Gubbi, 2018).

REFERENCES

Abalovich M, Alcaraz G, Kleiman-Rubinsztein J, et al: The relationship of preconception thyrotropin levels to requirements for increasing the levothyroxine dose during pregnancy in women with primary hypothyroidism. Thyroid 20(10):1175, 2010

Abalovich M, Gutierrez S, Alcaraz G, et al: Overt and subclinical hypothyroidism complicating pregnancy. Thyroid 12(1):63, 2002

Abbassi-Ghanavati M, Casey B, Spong C, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with thyroid peroxidase antibodies. Obstet Gynecol 116(2, Pt 1):381, 2010

Abdelmannan D, Aron D: Adrenal disorders in pregnancy. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 40:779, 2011

Abucham J, Bronstein MD, Dias ML: Management of endocrine disease: Acromegaly and pregnancy: a contemporary review. Eur J Endocrinol 177(1):R1, 2017

Ahlawat SK, Jain S, Kumari S, et al: Pheochromocytoma associated with pregnancy: case report and review of the literature. Obstet Gynecol Surv 54:728, 1999

Aleksander PE, Bruckner-Spieler M, Stoehr AM, et al: Mean high-dose thyroxine treatment is efficient and safe to achieve a normal IQ in young adult patients with congenital hypothyroidism. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 103(4):1459, 2018

Alexander EK, Marquesee E, Lawrence J, et al: Timing and magnitude of increases in levothyroxine requirements during pregnancy in women with hypothyroidism. N Engl J Med 351:241, 2004

Alexander EK, Pearce EN, Brent GA et al: 2017 Guidelines of the American Thyroid Association for the diagnosis and management of thyroid disease during pregnancy and postpartum. Thyroid 27(3):315, 2017

Alikasifoglu A, Gonc EN, Yalcin E, et al: Neonatal hyperparathyroidism due to maternal hypoparathyroidism and vitamin D deficiency: a cause of multiple bone fractures. Clin Pediatr 44:267, 2005

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Thyroid disease in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 223, May 2020

American Thyroid Association, American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists: Hyperthyroidism and other causes of thyrotoxicosis: management guidelines of the American Thyroid Association and American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists. Endocr Pract 17(3):456, 2011

Amino N, Izumi Y, Hidaka Y, et al: No increase of blocking type anti-thyrotropin receptor antibodies during pregnancy in patients with Graves' disease. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 88(12):5871, 2003

Andersen SL, Andersen S, Vestergaard P, et al: Maternal thyroid function in early pregnancy and child neurodevelopmental disorders: a Danish nationwide case-cohort study. Thyroid 28(4):537, 2018

Andersen SL, Olsen J, Laurberg P: Maternal thyroid disease in the Danish National Birth Cohort: prevalence and risk factors. Eur J Endocrinol 174(2):203, 2016

Andersen SL, Olsen J, Wu CS, et al: Severity of birth defects after propylthiouracil exposure in early pregnancy. Thyroid 24(10):1533, 2014

Angell TE, Alexander EK: thyroid nodules and thyroid cancer in the pregnant woman. Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am 48:557, 2019

Arafah BM: Increased need for thyroxine in women with hypothyroidism during estrogen therapy. N Engl J Med 344:1743, 2001

Araujo PB, Vieira Neto L, Gadelha MR: Pituitary tumor management in pregnancy. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 44(1):181, 2015

Arit W: Disorders of the adrenal cortex. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2719

Barbesino G, Tomer Y: Clinical utility of TSH receptor antibodies. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 98(6):2247, 2013

Barraud S, Guédra L, Delemer B, et al: Evolution of macroprolactinomas during pregnancy: a cohort study of 83 pregnancies. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 92(5):421, 2020

Beattie GC, Ravi NR, Lewis M, et al: Rare presentation of maternal primary hyperparathyroidism. BMJ 321:223, 2000

Bell MA, Ross AP, Goodman G: Assessing infant cognitive development after prenatal iodine supplementation. Am J Clin Nutr 104(Suppl):928S, 2016

Berbel P, Mestre JL, Santamaria A, et al: Delayed neurobehavioral development in children born to pregnant women with mild hypothyroxinemia during the first month of gestation: the importance of early iodine supplementation. Thyroid 19:511, 2009

Berlin L: Malpractice issues in radiology: iodine-131 and the pregnant patient. AJR Am J Roentgenol 176:869, 2001

Bernal J: Thyroid hormone receptors in brain development and function. Nat Clin Pract Endocrinol Metab 3(3):249, 2007

Betterle C, Presotto F, Furmaniak J: Epidemiology, pathogenesis, and diagnosis of Addison's disease in adults. J Endocrinol Invest 42(12):1407, 2019

Bianchi DW, Romero R: Biological implications of bidirectional fetomaternal cell trafficking summary of a National Institute of Child Health and Human Development-sponsored conference. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 14:123, 2003

Biggar MA, Lennard TW: Systematic review of phaeochromocytoma in pregnancy. Br J Surg 100(2):182, 2013

Bilezikian JP, Khan AA, Potts JT Jr: Guidelines for the management of asymptomatic primary hyperparathyroidism: summary statement of the Third International Workshop. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 94(2):335, 2009

Bilezikian JP, Silverberg SJ: Asymptomatic primary hyperparathyroidism. N Engl J Med 350:1746, 2004

Björnsdottir S, Cnattingius S, Brandt L, et al: Addison's disease in women is a risk factor for an adverse pregnancy outcome. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 95(12):5249, 2010

Boddy AM, Fortunato A, Wilson Sayres M, et al: Fetal microchimerism and maternal health: a review and evolutionary analysis of cooperation and conflict beyond the womb. Bioessays 37(10):1106, 2015

Brand F, Liegeois P, Langer B: One case of fetal and neonatal variable thyroid dysfunction in the context of Graves' disease. Fetal Diagn Ther 20:12, 2005

Brent GA: Graves' disease. N Engl J Med 358:2594, 2008

Brown RS, Bellisario RL, Botero D, et al: Incidence of transient congenital hypothyroidism due to maternal thyrotropin receptor-blocking antibodies in over one million babies. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 81:1147, 1996

Brue T, Amodru V, Castinetti F: Management of Cushing's syndrome during pregnancy: solved and unsolved questions. Eur J Endocrinol 178(6):R259, 2018

Bryant SN, Nelson DB, McIntire DD, et al: An analysis of population-based prenatal screening for overt hypothyroidism. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(4):565.e1, 2015

Burch HB, Burman KD, Cooper DS, et al: A 2015 survey of clinical practice patterns in the management of thyroid nodules. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 101(7):2853, 2016

Caimari F, Valassi E, Garbayo P, et al: Cushing's syndrome and pregnancy outcomes: a systematic review of published cases. Endocrine 55:555, 2017

Caldwell KL, Jones R, Hollowell JG: Urinary iodine concentration: United States National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey 2001–2002. Thyroid 15(7):692, 2005

Carbone LD, Palmieri GM, Graves SC, et al: Osteoporosis of pregnancy: long-term follow-up of patients and their offspring. Obstet Gynecol 86:664, 1995

Casey BM, Dashe JS, Spong CY, et al: Perinatal significance of isolated maternal hypothyroxinemia identified in the first half of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 109(5):1129, 2007

Casey BM, Dashe JS, Wells CE, et al: Subclinical hypothyroidism pregnancy outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 105(2):239, 2005

Casey BM, Dashe JS, Wells CE, et al: Subclinical hyperthyroidism and pregnancy outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 107(2 Pt 1):337, 2006

Casey BM, Thom EA, Peaceman AM, et al: Treatment of subclinical hypothyroidism or hypothyroxinemia during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 376:815, 2017

Chamarthi B, Greene M, Dluhy R: A problem in gestation. N Engl J Med 365(9):843, 2011

Chanson P: Other pituitary conditions and pregnancy. Endocrinol Metab Clin N Am 48(3):583, 2019

Chen S, Zhou X, Zhu H, et al: Preconception TSH levels and pregnancy outcomes: a population-based cohort study in 184,611 women Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 86(6):816, 2017

Cheng S, Grasso L, Martinez-Orozco JA, et al: Pregnancy in acromegaly: experience from two referral centers and systematic review of the literature. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf) 76(2):264, 2012

Cirello V, Rizzo R, Crippa M, et al: Fetal cell microchimerism: a protective role in autoimmune thyroid diseases. Eur J Endocrinol 173(1):111, 2015

Cleary-Goldman J, Malone FD, Lambert-Messerlian G, et al: Maternal thyroid hypofunction and pregnancy outcome. Obstet Gynecol 112(1):85, 2008

Cohen O, Pinhas-Hamiel O, Sivian E, et al: Serial in utero ultrasonographic measurements of the fetal thyroid: a new complementary tool in the management of maternal hyperthyroidism in pregnancy. Prenat Diagn 23:740, 2003

Consortium on Thyroid and Pregnancy: Association of thyroid function test abnormalities and thyroid autoimmunity with preterm birth: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA 322(7):632, 2019

Cooper C, Harvey NC, Bishop NJ, et al: Maternal gestational vitamin D supplementation and offspring bone health (MAVIDOS): a multicentre, double-blind, randomised placebo-controlled trial. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 4:393, 2016

Cooper MS: Disorders of calcium metabolism and parathyroid disease. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metabol 25:975, 2011

Costantine MM, Smith K, Thom EA: Effect of thyroxine therapy on depressive symptoms among women with subclinical hypothyroidism. Obstet Gynecol 135(4):812, 2020

Crandall CJ, Liu J, Cauley J, et al: Associations of parity, breastfeeding, and fractures in the women's health observational study. Obstet Gynecol 130(1):171, 2017

Cunningham FG: Screening for osteoporosis. N Engl J Med 353:1975, 2005

Dashe JS, Casey BM, Wells CE, et al: Thyroid-stimulating hormone in singleton and twin pregnancy: importance of gestational age-specific reference ranges. Obstet Gynecol 107(1):205, 2005

Davis C, Nippita T: Hyperparathyroidism in pregnancy. BMJ Case Rep 13(2):e232653, 2020

Davis LE, Leveno KL, Cunningham FG: Hypothyroidism complicating pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 72(1):108, 1988

Davis LE, Lucas MJ, Hankins GD, et al: Thyrotoxicosis complicating pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 160(1):63, 1989

De Groot L, Abalovich M, Alexander EK, et al: Management of thyroid dysfunction during pregnancy and postpartum: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 97(8):2543, 2012

De Leo S, Lee SY, Braverman LE: Hyperthyroidism. Lancet 388(10047):906, 2016

Dias M, Boquszewski C, Gadelha M, et al: Acromegaly and pregnancy: a prospective study. Eur J Endocrinol 170(2):301, 2013

Diez JJ, Iglesias P: Spontaneous subclinical hypothyroidism in patients older than 55 years: an analysis of natural course and risk factors for the development of overt thyroid failure. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 89(10):4890, 2004

Donatini G, Kraimps JL, Caillard C, et al: Pheochromocytoma diagnosed during pregnancy: lessons learned from a series of ten patients. Surg Endosc 32(9):3890, 2018

Dong AC, Stagnaro-Green A: Differences in diagnostic criteria mask the true prevalence of thyroid disease in pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Thyroid 29(2):278, 2019

Dong D, Li H: Diagnosis and treatment of pheochromocytoma during pregnancy. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 27(18):1930, 2014

Eisenhofer G, Aleksander P, Peitzsh M, et al: Biochemical diagnosis of chromaffin cell tumors in patients at high and low risk of disease: Plasma versus urinary free or deconjugated O-methylated catecholamine metabolites. Clin Chem 64(11):1646, 2018

Eschler DC, Kogekar N, Pessah-Pollack R: Management of adrenal tumors in pregnancy. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 44(2):381, 2015

Fagin JA, Wells SA Jr: Biologic and clinical perspectives on thyroid cancer. N Engl J Med 375(11):1054, 2016

Feller M, Snel M, Moutouri E, et al: Association of thyroid hormone therapy with quality of life and thyroid-related symptoms in patients with subclinical hypothyroidism. JAMA 320(13):1349, 2018

Fitzpatrick DL, Russell MA: Diagnosis and management of thyroid disease in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 37(2):173, 2010

Fleseriu M: Medical treatment of acromegaly in pregnancy, highlights on new reports. Endocrine 49(3):577, 2015

Foyouzi N: Lymphocytic adenohypophysitis. Obstet Gynecol Surv 66(2):109, 2011

Gafni RI, Collins MT: Hypoparathyroidism. N Engl J Med 380(18):1738, 2019

Galambosi P, Hilsemaa V, Ulander VM, et al: Prolonged low-molecular-weight heparin use during pregnancy and subsequent bone mineral density. Thromb Res 143:122, 2016

Garber JR, Cobin RH, Gharib H, et al: Clinical practice guidelines for hypothyroidism in adults: cosponsored by the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and the American Thyroid Association. Thyroid 22(12):1200, 2012

Geelhoed GW: Surgery of the endocrine glands in pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 26(4):865, 1983

Gei-Guardia O, Soto-Herrera E, Gei-Brealey A, et al: Sheehan syndrome in Costa Rica: clinical experience with 60 cases. Endocr Pract 17(3):337, 2011

Gharib H, Papini E, Garber JR, et al: American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists, American College of Endocrinology, and Association Medici Endocrinology, and European Thyroid Association medical guidelines for clinical practice for the diagnosis and management of thyroid nodules–2016 update. Endocr Pract 22(Suppl 1), 2016

Gietka-Czernel M, Debska M, Kretowicz P, et al: Fetal thyroid in two-dimensional ultrasonography: nomograms according to gestational age and biparietal diameter. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 162(2):131, 2012

Gowachirapant S, Jaiswal N, Melse-Boonstra A, et al: Effect of iodine supplementation in pregnant women on child neurodevelopment: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 5(11):853, 2017

Greer LG, Casey BM, Halvorson LM, et al: Antithyroid antibodies and parity: further evidence for microchimerism in autoimmune thyroid disease. Am J Obstet Gynecol 205(5):471, 2011

Gubbi S, Hannah-Schmouni F, Stratakis CA, et al: Primary hypophysitis and other autoimmune disorders of the sellar and suprasellar regions. Rev Endocr Metab Disord 19(4):335, 2018

Guven S, Durukan T, Berker M, et al: A case of acromegaly in pregnancy: concomitant transsphenoidal adenomectomy and cesarean section. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 19(1):69, 2006

Haddow JE, Palomaki GE, Allan WC, et al: Maternal thyroid deficiency during pregnancy and subsequent neuropsychological development of the child. N Engl J Med 341(8):549, 1999

Hales C, Taylor PN, Channon S, et al: Controlled antenatal thyroid screening II: Effect of treating maternal suboptimal thyroid function on child cognition. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 103(4):1583, 2018

Harper MA, Murnaghan GA, Kennedy L, et al: Pheochromocytoma in pregnancy. Five cases and a review of the literature. BJOG 96(5):594, 1989

Harris B, Oretti R, Lazarus J, et al: Randomised trial of thyroxine to prevent postnatal depression in thyroid-antibody-positive women. Br J Psychiatry 180:327, 2002

Hatipoglu B: Cushing's syndrome. J Surg Oncol 106(5):565, 2012

He X, Wang P, Wang Z, et al: Thyroid antibodies and risk of preterm birth: a meta-analysis of prospective cohort studies. Eur J Endocrinol 167(4):455, 2012

Helfand M: Screening for subclinical thyroid dysfunction in nonpregnant adults: a summary of the evidence for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Ann Intern Med 140(2):128, 2004

Herrick KA, Perrine CG, Aoki Y, et al: Iodine status and consumption of key iodine sources in the U.S. population with special attention to reproductive age women. Nutrients 10(7):874, 2018

Hershman J: Physiological and pathological aspects of the effect of human chorionic gonadotropin on the thyroid. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab 18(2):249, 2004

Hirai T, Kobayshi T, Nishimori S, et al: Bone is a major target of PTH/PTHrP receptor signaling in regulation of fetal blood calcium homeostasis. Endocrinology 156(8):2774, 2015

Hirsch D, Kopel V, Nadler V, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with primary hyperparathyroidism. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 100(5):2115, 2015

Hollowell JG, Staehling NW, Hannon WH, et al: Iodine nutrition in the United States. Trends and public health implications: iodine excretion data from National Health and Nutrition Examination Surveys I and III (1971–1974 and 1988–1994). J Clin Endocrinol Metab 83(10):3401, 1998

Huang W, Molitch ME: Pituitary tumors in pregnancy. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 48(3):569, 2019

Institute of Medicine: Dietary reference intakes for vitamin A, vitamin K, arsenic, boron, chromium, copper, iodine, manganese, molybdenum, nickel, silicon, vanadium, and zinc. Washington, National Academies Press, 2001

Ip P: Neonatal convulsion revealing maternal hyperparathyroidism: an unusual case of late neonatal hypoparathyroidism. Arch Gynecol Obstet 268(3):227, 2003

Jallad RS, Shimon I, Fraenkel M, et al: Outcome of pregnancies in a large cohort of women with acromegaly. Clin Endocrinol 88(6):896, 2018

Jameson JL, Mandel SJ, Weetman AP: Disorders of the thyroid gland. In Kasper DL, Fauci AS, Hauser SL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 19th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2015

Jansen TA, Korevaar TI, Mulder TA, et al: Maternal thyroid function during pregnancy and child brain morphology: a time window-specific analysis of a prospective cohort. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 7(8):629, 2019

Kaluarachchi DC, Allen DB, Eickhoff JC, et al: Thyroid-stimulating hormone reference ranges for preterm infants. Pediatrics 144(2):e20190290, 2019

Kamoun M, Mnif M, Charfi N, et al: Adrenal diseases during pregnancy: pathophysiology, diagnosis and management strategies. Am J Med Sci 347(1):64, 2014

Karmisholt J, Andersen S, Laurberg P: Variation in thyroid function tests in patients with stable untreated subclinical hypothyroidism. Thyroid 18(3):303, 2008

Kerver JM, Pearce EN, Ma T, et al: Prevalence of inadequate and excessive iodine intake in a US pregnancy cohort. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(1):82.e1, 2021

Kimura M, Seki T, Ozawa H, et al: The onset of antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibody-associated vasculitis immediately after methimazole was switched to propylthiouracil in a woman with Graves' disease who wished to become pregnant. Endocr J 60(3):383, 2013

Korevaar TI, Chaker L, Jaddoe VW, et al: Maternal and birth characteristics are determinants of offspring thyroid function. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 101(1): 206, 2016a

Korevaar TI, Muetzel R, Chaker L, et al: Association of maternal thyroid function during early pregnancy with offspring IQ and brain morphology in childhood: a population-based prospective cohort study. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 4(1):35, 2016b

Kovacs CS: Calcium and bone metabolism disorders during pregnancy and lactation. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 40(4):795, 2011

Kraemer B, Schneider S, Rothmund R, et al: Influence of pregnancy on bone density: a risk factor for osteoporosis? Measurements of the calcaneus by ultrasonometry. Arch Gynecol Obstet 285(4):907, 2011

Kriplani A, Buckshee K, Bhargava VL, et al: Maternal and perinatal outcome in thyrotoxicosis complicating pregnancy. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 54(3):159, 1994

Kuijpens JL, Vader HL, Drexhage HA, et al: Thyroid peroxidase antibodies during gestation are a marker for subsequent depression postpartum. Eur J Endocrinol 145(5):579, 2001

Kung AWC, Chau MT, LAO TT, et al: The effect of pregnancy on thyroid nodule formation. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 87(3):1010, 2002

Lacroix A, Feelders RA, Stratakis CA, et al: Cushing's syndrome. Lancet 386(9996):913, 2015

Lambert K, Rees K, Seed PT, et al: Macroprolactinomas and nonfunctioning pituitary adenomas and pregnancy outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 129(1):185, 2017

Lazarus J, Kaklamanou K: Significance of low thyroid-stimulating hormone in pregnancy. Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes 14(5):389, 2007

Lazarus JH, Bestwick JP, Channon S, et al: Antenatal thyroid screening and childhood cognitive function. N Engl J Med 366(6):493, 2012

Lee SY, Pearce EN: Testing, monitoring, and treatment of thyroid dysfunction in pregnancy J Clin Endocrinol Metab 106(3):883, 2021

Lekarev O, New MI: Adrenal disease in pregnancy. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab 25(6):959, 2011

Lenders JW, Langton K, Langenhuijsen JF, et al: Pheochromocytoma and pregnancy. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 48(3):605, 2019

Lepez T, Vandewoesttyne M, Hussain S, et al: Fetal microchimeric cells in blood of women with an autoimmune thyroid disease. PLoS One 6(12):1, 2011

Leung AM, Pearce EN, Braverman LE: Iodine nutrition in pregnancy and lactation. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 40(4):765, 2011

Leung AS, Millar LE, Koonings PP, et al: Perinatal outcome in hypothyroid pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 81(3):349, 1993

Levie D, Korevaar TM, Bath SC, et al: Association of maternal iodine status with child IQ: a meta-analysis of individual participant data. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 104(12):5957, 2019

Levie D, Korevaar TM, Bath SC, et al: Thyroid function in early pregnancy, child IQ, and autistic traits: a meta-analysis of individual participant data. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 103(8): 2967, 2018

Levy-Shraga Y, Tamir-Hostovsky L, Boyko V, et al: Follow-up of newborns of mothers with Graves' disease. Thyroid 24(6):1032, 2014

Li Y, Shan Z, Teng W, et al: Abnormalities of maternal thyroid function during pregnancy affect neurodevelopment of their children at 25–30 months. Clin Endocrinol 72(6):825, 2010

Lindheimer MD, Barron WM: Water metabolism and vasopressin secretion during pregnancy. Baillieres Clin Obstet Gynaecol 8(2):311, 1994

Lindsay JR, Jonklaas J, Oldfield EH, et al: Cushing's syndrome during pregnancy: personal experience and review of literature. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 90(5):3077, 2005

Loh JA, Wartofsky L, Jonklaas J, et al: The magnitude of increased levothyroxine requirements in hypothyroid pregnant women depends upon the etiology of the hypothyroidism. Thyroid 19(3):269, 2009

Loriaux DL: Diagnosis and differential diagnosis of Cushing's syndrome. N Engl J Med 376(15):1451, 2017

Luewan S, Chakkabut P, Tongsong T: Outcomes of pregnancy complicated with hyperthyroidism: a cohort study. Arch Gynecol Obstet 283(2):243, 2011

Luton D, Le Gac I, Vuillard E, et al: Management of Graves' disease during pregnancy: the key role of fetal thyroid gland monitoring. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 90(11):6093, 2005
Machado MC, Fragoso MC, Bronstein MD: Pregnancy in patients with Cushing's Syndrome. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 47(2):441, 2018
Malekar-Raikar S, Sinnott B: Primary hyperparathyroidism in pregnancy—a rare case of life-threatening hypercalcemia: case report and literature review. Case Rep Endocrinol 2011:520516, 2011
Maliha G, Morgan J, Varhas M: Transient osteoporosis of pregnancy. Injury 43(8):1237, 2012
Männistö T, Vääräsmäki M, Pouta A, et al: Perinatal outcome of children born to mothers with thyroid dysfunction or antibodies: a prospective population-based cohort study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 94(3):772, 2009
Männistö T, Vääräsmäki M, Pouta A, et al: Thyroid dysfunction and autoantibodies during pregnancy as predictive factors of pregnancy complications and maternal morbidity in later life. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 95(3):1084, 2010
Manoharan M, Sinha P, Sibtain S: Adrenal disorders in pregnancy, labor and postpartum—an overview. J Obstet Gynaecol 40(6):749, 2020
Maraka S, Ospina NM, O'Keeffe DT, et al: Subclinical hypothyroidism in pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Thyroid 26(4):580, 2016
Mascetti L, Bettinelli A, Simonetti GD, et al: Pregnancy in inherited hypokalemic salt-losing renal tubular disorder. Obstet Gynecol 117(2 Pt 2):512, 2011
Matalon S, Sheiner E, Levy A, et al: Relationship of treated maternal hypothyroidism and perinatal outcome. J Reprod Med 51(1):59, 2006
Matsuzaki S, Yutaka ME, Ueda Y, et al: A case of acute Sheehan's syndrome and literature review: a rare but life-threatening complication of postpartum hemorrhage. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 17(1):188, 2017
McGrath N, Hawkes CP, Mayne P, et al: Optimal timing of repeat newborn screening for congenital hypothyroidism in preterm infants to detect delayed thyroid-stimulating hormone elevation. J Pediatr 205:77, 2019
McGrath N, Hawkes CP, McDonnell CM, et al: Incidence of congenital hypothyroidism over 37 years in Ireland. Pediatrics 142(4):e20181199, 2018
Medici M, Korevaar TI, Schalekamp-Timmermans S, et al: Maternal early-pregnancy thyroid function is associated with subsequent hypertensive disorders of pregnancy: the Generation R Study. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 99(12):E2591, 2014
Melmed S: Pituitary-tumor endocrinopathies. N Engl J Med 382(10):2020
Messuti I, Corvisieri S, Bardesono F, et al: Impact of pregnancy on prognosis of differentiated thyroid cancer: clinical and molecular features. Eur J Endocrinol 170(5):659, 2014
Mestman JH: Hyperthyroidism in pregnancy. Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes 19(5):394, 2012
Mestman JH: Hyperthyroidism in pregnancy. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 27(1):127, 1998
Millar LK, Wing DA, Leung AS, et al: Low birth weight and preeclampsia in pregnancies complicated by hyperthyroidism. Obstet Gynecol 84(6):946, 1994
Miller MA, Mazzaglia PJ, Larson L, et al: Laparoscopic adrenalectomy for pheochromocytoma in a twin gestation. J Obstet Gynecol 32(2):186, 2012
Moleti M, Di Mauro M, Sturniolo G, et al: Hyperthyroidism in the pregnant woman: maternal and fetal aspects. J Clin Transl Endocrinol 16:100190, 2019
Molitch ME: Endocrinology in pregnancy: management of the pregnant patient with a prolactinoma. Eur J Endocrinol 172(5):R205, 2015
Molitch ME: Pituitary, thyroid, adrenal, and parathyroid disorders. In Barron WM, Lindheimer MD (eds): Medical Disorders During Pregnancy, 3rd ed. St. Louis, Mosby, 2000
Montoro MN, Paler RJ, Goodwin TM, et al: Parathyroid carcinoma during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 96(5 Pt. 2):841, 2000
Morreale de Escobar G, Obregon MJ, Escobar Del Rey F: Role of thyroid hormone during early brain development. Eur J Endocrinol 151(Suppl 3):U25, 2004
Morton A: Primary aldosteronism and pregnancy. Pregnancy Hypertens 5(4):259, 2015
Motivala S, Gologorsky Y, Kostandinov J, et al: Pituitary disorders during pregnancy. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 40(4):827, 2011
Murcia M, Rebagliato M, Iniguez C, et al: Effect of iodine supplementation during pregnancy on infant neurodevelopment at 1 year of age. Am J Epidemiol 173(7):804, 2011
Nachum Z, Rakover Y, Weiner E, et al: Graves' disease in pregnancy: prospective evaluation of a selective invasive treatment protocol. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189(1):159, 2003
Nathan N, Sullivan SD: Thyroid disorders during pregnancy. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 43(2):573, 2014
Negro R, Schwartz A, Stagnaro-Green A: Impact of levothyroxine on miscarriage and preterm delivery rates in first trimester thyroid antibody-positive women with TSH less than 2.5 mIU/L. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 101(10):3685, 2016
Negro T, Formoso G, Mangieri T, et al: Levothyroxine treatment in euthyroid pregnant women with autoimmune thyroid disease: effects on obstetrical complications. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 91(7):2587, 2006
Nelson DB, Casey BM, McIntire DD, et al: Subsequent pregnancy outcomes in women previously diagnosed with subclinical hypothyroidism. Am J Perinatol 31(1):77, 2014
Nelson DB, Yost NP, Cunningham FG: Acute fatty liver of pregnancy: clinical outcomes and expected durations of recovery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(5):456.e1, 2013
Neumann HP: Pheochromocytoma. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 2739
Nguyen CT, Mestman JH: Postpartum thyroiditis. Clin Obstet Gynecol 62(2):359, 2019
Oliveira D, Lages A, Paiva S et al: Treatment of Addison's disease during pregnancy. Endocrinol Diabetes Metab Case Rep 2018:17, 2018
Oron T, Lazar L, Ben-Yishai S, et al: Permanent versus transient congenital hypothyroidism: assessment of predictive variables. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 103(12): 4428, 2018
O'Sullivan SM, Farrant MT, Ogilvie CM, et al: An observational study of pregnancy and postpartum outcomes in women with prolactinoma treated with dopamine agonists. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 60(3):405, 2020
Pallan S, Rahman M, Khan A: Diagnosis and management of primary hyperparathyroidism. BMJ 344:e1013, 2012
Pappachan JM, Raskauskiene D, Kutty VR, et al: Excess mortality associated with hypopituitarism in adults: a meta-analysis of observational studies. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 100(4):1405, 2015
Pearce EN: Management of thyrotoxicosis: preconception, pregnancy, and the postpartum period. Endocr Pract 25(1):62, 2019
Pearce EN, Lazarus JH, Moreno-Reyes R, et al: Consequences of iodine deficiency and excess in pregnant women: an overview of current knowns and unknowns. Am J Clin Nutr 104(Suppl 3):918S, 2016
Plowden TC, Schisterman EF, Sjaarda LA, et al: Thyroid-stimulating hormone, anti-thyroid antibodies, and pregnancy outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 217(6):697.e1, 2017
Pop VJ, Brouwers EP, Vader HL, et al: Maternal hypothyroxinemia during early pregnancy and subsequent child development: a 3-year follow-up study. Clin Endocrinol 59(3):282, 2003
Pop VJ, Kujipens JL, van Baar AL, et al: Low maternal free thyroxine concentrations during early pregnancy are associated with impaired psychomotor development in infancy. Clin Endocrinol 50(2):149, 1999
Potts JT, Jüppner H: Disorders of the parathyroid gland and calcium homeostasis. In Kasper DL, Fauci AS, Hauser SL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 19th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2015
Quartermaine G, Lambert K, Rees K, et al: Hormone-secreting adrenal tumours cause severe hypertension and high rates of poor pregnancy outcome; a UK Obstetric Surveillance System study with case control comparisons. BJOG 125(6):719, 2018
Radacic-Aumiler M, Kraljickovic I, Edeljic-Turk V, et al: No adverse effects after radioiodine treatment at 3 weeks of pregnancy. Clin Nucl Med 41(12):964, 2016
Renné C, Lopez ER, Steimle-Grauer SA, et al: Thyroid fetal male microchimerisms in mothers with thyroid disorders: presence of Y-chromosomal immunofluorescence in thyroid-infiltrating lymphocytes is more prevalent in Hashimoto's thyroiditis and Graves' disease than in follicular adenomas. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 89(11):5810, 2004
Rigg J, Gilbertson E, Barrett HL, et al: Primary hyperparathyroidism in pregnancy: maternofetal outcomes at a quaternary referral obstetric hospital, 2000 through 2015. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 104(3):721, 2019
Robertson GL: Diabetes insipidus: differential diagnosis and management. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab 30(2):205, 2016
Rooney DP, Traub AI, Russell CFJ, et al: Cure of hyperparathyroidism in pregnancy by sternotomy and removal of a mediastinal parathyroid adenoma. Postgrad Med J 74(870):233, 1998
Rovelli R, Vigone M, Giovanettoni C, et al: Newborns of mothers affected by autoimmune thyroiditis: the importance of thyroid function monitoring in the first months of life. Ital J Pediatr 36:24, 2010
Saad AF, Pacheco LD, Costantine MM: Management of ectopic parathyroid adenoma in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 124(2 Pt 2 Suppl):478, 2014
Sadakata H, Shinozaki H, Higuchi T, et al: Case of radioactive iodine exposure during pregnancy. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 40(12):2201, 2014
Salazar-Vega JL, Levin G, Sansó G: Pheochromocytoma associated with pregnancy: unexpected favourable outcome in patients diagnosed after delivery. J Hypertens 32(7):1458, 2014
Sarathi V, Lila A, Bandgar T, et al: Pheochromocytoma and pregnancy: a rare but dangerous combination. Endocr Pract 16(2):300, 2010

Sarkhail P, Mehran L, Askari S, et al: Maternal thyroid function and autoimmunity in 3 trimesters of pregnancy and their offspring's thyroid function. Horm Metab Res 48(1):20, 2016
Schnatz PF, Thaxton S: Parathyroidectomy in the third trimester of pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 60(10):672, 2005
Schneiderman M, Czuzoj-Shulman N, Spence AR, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes of pregnancies in women with Addison's disease: a population-based cohort study on 7.7 million births. BJOG 124(11):1772, 2017
Shan D, Bai Y, Chen QH, et al: Hyperthyroid heart disease in pregnancy: retrospective analysis of a case series and review of the literature. World J Clin Cases 7(19):2953, 2019
Shi X, Han C, Li C, et al: Optimal and safe upper limits of iodine intake for early pregnancy in iodine-sufficient regions: a cross-sectional study of 7190 pregnant women in China. I Clin Endocrinol Metab 100(4):1630, 2015
Sheehan HL: Post-partum necrosis of the anterior pituitary. J Pathol Bacteriol 45:189, 1937
Sheehan PM, Nankervis A, Araujo Júnior E, et al: Maternal thyroid disease and preterm birth: systematic review and meta-analysis. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 100(11):4325, 2015
Sheffield JS, Cunningham FG: Thyrotoxicosis and heart failure that complicate pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190(1):211, 2004
Stagnaro-Green A, Glinoer D: Thyroid autoimmunity and the risk of miscarriage. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab 18(2):167, 2004
Stagnaro-Green A, Pearce E: Thyroid disorders in pregnancy. Nat Rev Endocrinol 8(11):650, 2012a
Stagnaro-Green A, Schwartz A, Gismondi R, et al: High rate of persistent hypothyroidism in a large-scale prospective study of postpartum thyroiditis in southern Italy. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 96(3):652, 2011
Stagnaro-Green A, Sullivan S, Pearch EN: Iodine supplementation during pregnancy and lactation. JAMA 308(23):2463, 2012b
Stringer KM, Gough J, Gough IR: Primary hyperparathyroidism during pregnancy: management by minimally invasive surgery based on ultrasound localization. ANZ J Surg 87(10):E134, 2017
Stulberg RA, Davies GA: Maternal thyrotoxicosis and fetal nonimmune hydrops. Obstet Gynecol 95(6 Pt 2):1036, 2000
Su PY, Huang K, Hao JH, et al: Maternal thyroid function in the first twenty weeks of pregnancy and subsequent fetal and infant development: a prospective population-based cohort study in China. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 96(10):3234, 2011
Sullivan SD, Downs E, Popoveniuc G, et al: Randomized trial comparing two algorithms for levothyroxine dose adjustment in pregnant women with primary hypothyroidism. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 102(9):3499, 2017
Tan TO, Cheng YW, Caughey AB: Are women who are treated for hypothyroidism at risk for pregnancy complications? Am J Obstet Gynecol 194(5):e1, 2006
Thangaratinam S, Tan A, Knox E, et al: Association between thyroid autoantibodies and miscarriage and preterm birth: meta-analysis of evidence. BMJ 342:d2616, 2011
Thomas M, Weisman SM: Calcium supplementation during pregnancy and lactation: effects on the mother and the fetus. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194(4):937, 2006
Thomas SK, Sheffield JS, Roberts SW: Thionamide-induced neutropenia and ecthyma in a pregnant patient with hyperthyroidism. Obstet Gynecol 122(2 Pt 2):490, 2013
Thorpe-Beeston JG, Nicolaides KH, Snijders RJ, et al: Thyroid function in small for gestational age fetuses. Obstet Gynecol 77(5):701, 1991
Tran P, DeSimone S, Barrett M, et al: I-131 treatment of Graves' disease in an unsuspected first trimester pregnancy; the potential for adverse effects on the fetus and a review of the current guidelines for pregnancy screening. Int J Pediatr Endocrinol 2010:858359, 2010
Tudela CM, Casey BM, McIntire DD, et al: Relationship of subclinical thyroid disease to the incidence of gestational diabetes. Obstet Gynecol 119(5):983, 2012
UNICEF: Nearly 19 million newborns at risk of brain damage every year due to iodine deficiency. 2018. Available at: https://www.unicef.org/eca/press-releases/newborns-brain-damage-iodine-deficiency. Accessed September 11, 2020
Vaidya B, Anthony S, Bilous M, et al: Detection of thyroid dysfunction in early pregnancy: universal screening or targeted high-risk case finding? J Clin Endocrinol Metab 92(1):203, 2007
van Trotsenburg P, Stoupa A, Léger J, et al: Congenital hypothyroidism: a 2020–2021 consensus guidelines update-an ENDO-European Reference Network initiative endorsed by the European Society for Pediatric Endocrinology and the European Society for Endocrinology. Thyroid 31(3):387, 2021
Velasco I, Carreira M, Santiago P, et al: Effect of iodine prophylaxis during pregnancy on neurocognitive development of children during the first two years of life. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 94(9):3234, 2009
Vila G, Fleserui M: Fertility and pregnancy in women with hypopituitarism: a systematic literature review. J Clin Endocrinol Meta 105(3):e55, 2020
Wallia A, Bizhanova A, Huang W, et al: Acute diabetes insipidus mediated by vasopressinase after placental abruption. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 98(3):881, 2013
Wang W, Teng W, Shan Z, et al: The prevalence of thyroid disorders during early pregnancy in China: the benefits of universal screening in the first trimester of pregnancy. Eur J Endocrinol 164(2):263, 2011
Wikner BN, Sparre LS, Stiller CO, et al: Maternal use of thyroid hormones in pregnancy and neonatal outcome. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 87(6):617, 2008
Wilson KL, Casey BM, McIntire DD, et al: Diagnosis of subclinical hypothyroidism early in pregnancy is a risk factor for the development of severe preeclampsia. Clin Thyroidol 24(5):15, 2012
Yang Y, Reincke M, Williams TA: Prevalence, diagnosis and outcomes of treatment for primary aldosteronism. Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab 34(2): 101365, 2020
Yoshihara A, Noh JY, Mukasa K, et al: Serum human chorionic gonadotropin levels and thyroid hormone levels in gestational transient thyrotoxicosis: is the serum hCG level useful for differentiating between active Graves' disease and GTT? Endocr J 62(6):557, 2015
Yoshihara A, Noh JY, Yamaguchi T, et al: Treatment of Graves disease with antithyroid drugs in the first trimester of pregnancy and the prevalence of congenital malformation. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 97(7):2396, 2012
Yu W, Wu N, Li L, et al: Side effects of PTU and MMI in the treatment of hyperthyroidism: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Endocr Pract 26(2):2020
Zhang M, Chen P, Li B, et al: Approach to the patient with pregnancy and lactation-associated osteoporosis. Medicine (Baltimore) 96(46):e8671, 2017
Zuluaga-Gómez A, Arrabal-Polo MÁ, Arrabal-Martin M, et al: Management of pheochromocytoma during pregnancy: laparoscopic adrenalectomy. Am Surg 78(3):E156, 2012

CHAPTER 62

Connective Tissue Disorders

Connective tissue disorders, also termed collagen vascular disorders, have two basic underlying causes. First are the *immune-complex diseases*, in which deposition of immune complexes causes connective tissue damage. Because these manifest by sterile inflammation—predominantly of the skin, joints, blood vessels, and kidneys—they are referred to as rheumatic diseases. Many of these immune-complex diseases are more prevalent in women, and systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) and rheumatoid arthritis are examples. Second are the *inherited disorders* that involve bone, skin, cartilage, blood vessels, and basement membranes. These include Marfan syndrome, osteogenesis imperfecta, and Ehlers-Danlos syndrome.

IMMUNE-MEDIATED CONNECTIVE TISSUE DISEASES

These disorders can be separated into those associated with and those without autoantibody formation. The *rheumatoid factor* is an autoantibody found in many autoimmune inflammatory conditions such as SLE, rheumatoid arthritis, systemic sclerosis (scleroderma), mixed connective tissue disease, dermatomyositis, polymyositis, and various vasculitis syndromes. Instead, the *RF-seronegative spondyloarthropathies* are strongly associated with expression of the antigen termed human leukocyte antigen B27 (HLA-B27). These include ankylosing spondylitis, psoriatic arthritis, Reiter disease, and other arthritis syndromes.

The normal immunosuppression of pregnancy that allows and is essential for successful engraftment of fetal and placental tissues may mitigate activity in some of these syndromes. First, estrogens upregulate and androgens downregulate T-cell response, and progesterone is immunosuppressive (Abdul Hussain, 2020; Robinson, 2012). Second, pregnancy induces a predominance of T2 helper cells compared with cytokine-producing T1 helper cells (Petri, 2019). These changes are discussed in detail in Chapter 4 (p. 61).

However, active immune-mediated disease may contribute to obstetrical complications (Kither, 2020). One longitudinal cohort study found that unrecognized autoimmune systemic rheumatic disorders are associated with significant risk for preeclampsia and fetal-growth restriction (Spinillo, 2016). In this study, the prevalence of unrecognized systemic rheumatic diseases approximated 0.3 percent, and preeclampsia or fetal-growth restriction complicated 25 percent of these pregnancies.

Last, some immune-mediated diseases may be either caused or activated as a result of prior pregnancies. To explain, fetal cells and cell-free DNA are detectable in maternal blood beginning early in pregnancy (Simpson, 2013; Waldorf, 2008). *Fetal cell microchimerism* is the persistence of fetal cells in the maternal circulation and in organs following pregnancy. These fetal cells may become engrafted in maternal tissues and stimulate production of autoantibodies. Evidence for this includes fetal stem cells engrafted in tissues in women with autoimmune thyroiditis and systemic sclerosis (Jimenez, 2005; Srivatsa, 2001). Such microchimerism has also been described in women with SLE

TABLE 62-1. Some Autoantibodies Produced in Patients with Systemic Lupus Erythematosus

Antibody	Prevalence (%)	Clinical Associations
Antinuclear (ANA)	84–98	Best screening test, multiple antibodies; a second negative test makes SLE unlikely
Anti-dsDNA	62–70	High titers SLE-specific; may correlate with disease activity, nephritis, and vasculitis
Anti-Sm (Smith)	25–38	Specific for SLE
Anti-SS-A (Ro)	30–49	Not SLE-specific; associated with sicca syndrome, predisposes to cutaneous lupus, neonatal lupus with heart block, reduced risk of nephritis
Anti-SS-B (La)	10–35	Associated with anti-Ro
Antiphospholipid	21–50	Lupus anticoagulant and anticardiolipin antibodies associated with thrombosis, fetal loss, thrombocytopenia, valvular heart disease; false-positive test for syphilis
Anti-RNP	33–40	Not SLE-specific, high titers associated with rheumatic syndromes
Antihistone	70	Common in drug-induced lupus
Antierythrocyte	60	Direct Coombs test, may develop hemolysis
Antiplatelet	30	Thrombocytopenia in 15%; poor clinical test

ANA = antinuclear antibody; dsDNA = double-stranded DNA; RNP = ribonucleoprotein; SLE = systemic lupus erythematosus.
Data from Arbuckle, 2003; Hahn, 2018; Petri, 2020a,b.

and those with rheumatoid arthritis–associated HLA alleles (da Silva, 2016; Lee, 2010). Conversely, engrafted maternal cells may provoke autoimmune conditions in a woman's offspring (Stevens, 2016; Ye, 2012).

SYSTEMIC LUPUS ERYTHEMATOSUS

This autoimmune disease has an intricate pathogenesis that results from interactions between susceptibility genes and environmental factors (Hahn, 2018). Tissue-binding autoantibodies and immune complexes that are directed at one or more nuclear components lead to cellular and organ damage (Tsokos, 2011). In addition to this B-cell antibody production, immunosuppression is impaired, including regulatory T-cell function (Tower, 2013). Some autoantibodies produced in patients with SLE are shown in Table 62-1. Most patients have autoantibodies for many years before clinical disease manifests.

Genetic influences are implicated, and the concordance is higher with monozygotic compared with dizygotic twins—25 versus 2 percent, respectively. Moreover, the frequency in patients with one affected family member is 10 percent. The relative risk of disease rises if the "autoimmunity gene" on chromosome 16 that predisposes to SLE, rheumatoid arthritis, Crohn disease, and psoriasis is inherited. However, susceptibility genes such as *HLA-DR3*, *STAT4*, *APOL1*, *FCGR3A*, and *DNAse1* explain only a portion of the genetic heritability (Hahn, 2018; Yang, 2013).

Interestingly, maternal exposure to fetal genes elevates susceptibility to SLE development. A case-control study found that a child's *HLA-DRB1* genotype raises the risk of SLE in the mother (Cruz, 2016). In contrast, neonatal lupus has been reported in an infant conceived via oocyte donor to a mother with autoimmune disease with circulating anti-Ro and anti-La antibodies (Chiou, 2016).

Clinical Manifestations and Diagnosis

Almost 90 percent of SLE cases develop in women, and it more commonly affects African-American women compared with other populations (Izmirly, 2017; Stojan, 2018). Its prevalence in those of childbearing age approximates 1 case in 500 (Pons-Estel, 2010). Accordingly, the disease is encountered relatively frequently during pregnancy.

SLE notoriously varies in its presentation, course, and outcome (Table 62-2) (Hahn, 2018). Findings may be confined initially to one organ system, and others become involved later. Instead, the disease may first be multisystem. Frequent findings are malaise, fever, arthritis, rash, pleuropericarditis, photosensitivity, anemia, and cognitive dysfunction. At least half of patients have renal involvement. SLE is also associated with declines in attention, memory, and reasoning (Hahn, 2018; Kozora, 2008).

Identification of antinuclear antibodies (ANA) is the best screening test, however, a positive result is not specific for SLE. Low titers can be found in normal individuals, other autoimmune diseases, acute viral infections, and chronic inflammatory processes. Several drugs also can cause a positive reaction. Antibodies to double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) and to Smith (Sm) antigens are relatively specific for SLE, whereas other antibodies are not (see Table 62-1). Although hundreds of autoantibodies have been described in SLE, only a few have been shown to participate in tissue injury (Tsokos, 2011). Microarray profiles are being developed for more accurate diagnosis (Putterman, 2016).

Chronic anemia develops frequently, and there may be leukopenia and thrombocytopenia. Proteinuria and casts are found in the half of patients with glomerular lesions. Lupus nephritis can also cause renal insufficiency, which is more common if there are antiphospholipid antibodies (Riancho-Zarrabeitia, 2020). Other laboratory findings include false-positive syphilis serology, prolonged partial thromboplastin time, and higher rheumatoid factor levels. Increased serum D-dimer concentrations often follow a flare or infection, but unexplained persistent elevations are associated with a high risk for thrombosis (Wu, 2008).

The diagnostic criteria for SLE are listed in Table 62-3. If any four or more of the 11 clinical criteria are present, serially or simultaneously, the diagnosis is made. Importantly, numerous

TABLE 62-2. Some Clinical Manifestations of Systemic Lupus Erythematosus

Organ System	Clinical Manifestations	Percentage
Systemic	Fatigue, malaise, fever, weight loss	~95
Musculoskeletal	Arthralgias, myalgias, polyarthritis, myopathy	~95
Hematological	Anemia, hemolysis, leukopenia, thrombocytopenia, lupus anticoagulant, splenomegaly	70–85
Cutaneous	Malar (butterfly) rash, discoid rash, photosensitivity, oral ulcers, alopecia, skin rashes	50–80
Neurological	Cognitive dysfunction, mood disorder, headache, seizures, stroke	40–60
Cardiopulmonary	Pleuritis, pericarditis, myocarditis, endocarditis, pneumonitis, pulmonary hypertension	30–60
Renal	Proteinuria, nephrotic syndrome, renal failure	30–50
Gastrointestinal	Nausea, pain, diarrhea, abnormal liver enzyme levels	30–40
Vascular	Thrombosis: venous (10%), arterial (5%)	10–15
Ocular	Conjunctivitis, sicca syndrome	10–15

drugs can induce a lupus-like syndrome. These include proton-pump inhibitors, thiazide diuretics, antifungals, antihypertensives, chemotherapeutics, statins, and antiepileptics. Drug-induced lupus is rarely associated with glomerulonephritis and usually regresses when the medication is discontinued (Laurinaviciene, 2017).

Lupus and Pregnancy

In a metaanalysis of nearly 9 million pregnancies, the incidence of lupus approximated 1 case in 900 births (He, 2020). During pregnancy, lupus improves in a third of women, remains unchanged in a third, and worsens in the remaining third. Thus, in any pregnancy, the clinical condition can worsen or *flare* without warning (Hahn, 2018).

In a cohort of 13,555 pregnant women with SLE, the maternal mortality rate was 325 per 100,000 (Clowse, 2008). Maternal deaths invariably occur in those with active disease (Ritchie, 2012). Women with SLE are at greater risk for thrombotic complications, infection, postpartum hemorrhage, and blood transfusion. He and Wei (2020) reported increased risks of adverse pregnancy outcomes in women with SLE compared with unaffected women (Table 62-4).

During the past several decades, pregnancy outcomes in women with SLE have improved remarkably. For most women with inactive or mild/moderate disease activity, pregnancy outcomes are relatively favorable (Buyon, 2015). Women who have confined cutaneous lupus do not usually have adverse outcomes (Hamed, 2013). However, newly diagnosed SLE during pregnancy tends to be severe (Zhao, 2013). In general, pregnancy outcome is best in women for whom: (1) lupus activity has been quiescent for at least 6 months before conception; (2) lupus nephritis manifest by proteinuria or renal dysfunction

TABLE 62-3. Clinical Criteria for Classification of Systemic Lupus Erythematosus

Clinical Manifestations
Skin
Oral ulcers
Alopecia
Synovitis
Serositis
Renal: proteinuria, casts, biopsy
Neurological: seizures, psychosis, myelitis, neuropathies, confusional state
Hemolytic anemia
Leukopenia
Lymphopenia
Thrombocytopenia
Immunological Manifestations
ANA
Anti-dsDNA
Anti-Sm
Antiphospholipid
Hypocomplementemia
Direct Coombs

ANA = antinuclear antibodies; dsDNA = double-stranded DNA; Sm = Smith.
Data from Hahn, 2018; Petri, 2020a,b.

TABLE 62-4. Risk of Adverse Pregnancy Outcomes in Women with Systemic Lupus Erythematosus

Outcome	Relative Risk (CI)
Preeclampsia/Eclampsia	3.4 (3.2–3.6)
Cesarean delivery	1.4 (1.1–1.7)
Stillbirth	16.5 (2.9–92.1)
Fetal loss	7.6 (4.8–11.9)
Preterm birth	2.3 (1.8–3.1)
SGA infants	2.5 (1.4–4.5)
LBW infants	4.8 (3.7–6.3)
NICU admission	2.8 (2.3–3.4)

CI = confidence interval; LBW = low birth weight; NICU = neonatal intensive care unit; SGA = small for gestational age.

is absent; (3) neither antiphospholipid syndrome nor lupus anticoagulant are detected; and (4) superimposed preeclampsia does not develop (Peart, 2014; Petri, 2020a; Stojan, 2012).

Lupus Nephritis

Active nephritis is associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes, although these have improved substantially and especially if disease remains in remission (Stojan, 2012; Wagner, 2009). Of complications, women with renal disease have a high incidence of gestational hypertension and preeclampsia. Of 137 women with SLE reported by Rodrigues and colleagues (2019), 27 percent of gravidas with preexisting renal disease developed preeclampsia compared with only 16 percent of those without underlying renal disease. In a review of 309 pregnancies complicated by lupus nephritis, 30 percent suffered a flare, and 40 percent of these had associated renal insufficiency (Moroni, 2005). The maternal mortality rate was 1.3 percent. These findings were corroborated in a subsequent prospective study (Moroni, 2016). In addition, a third of the 113 pregnancies were delivered preterm. Compared with women without nephritis or with inactive nephritis, those with active nephritis have a significantly increased incidence of maternal and fetal complications (Rodrigues, 2019; Wagner, 2009). The higher the histological class, the greater the risk.

Most recommend continuation of immunosuppressive therapy for nephritis during pregnancy. Hydroxychloroquine, cyclosporine, azathioprine, and tacrolimus are permissible in pregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019b; Parikh, 2020). New-onset nephritis or severe renal flare is treated aggressively with tacrolimus, and consideration is given to adding intravenous corticosteroids, immunosuppressive drugs, or intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) therapy (Maynard, 2019; Parikh, 2020).

Lupus Versus Preeclampsia-Eclampsia

Chronic hypertension complicates up to 30 percent of pregnancies in women with SLE (Egerman, 2005). Preeclampsia is common, and in those with nephritis or antiphospholipid antibodies, superimposed preeclampsia is encountered even more often and earlier (Bertsias, 2008; Dong, 2020). Preeclampsia and SLE flares share features of hypertension, proteinuria, edema, and renal function deterioration. However, the management is distinct. Lupus nephritis is treated with immunosuppression, and severe preeclampsia/eclampsia requires delivery. It may be difficult, if not impossible, to discriminate a lupus flare with nephropathy from severe preeclampsia if the kidney is the only involved organ (Petri, 2020b). Serum uric acid and complement levels and dsDNA titers may aid in differentiating the two. Last, central nervous system involvement with SLE may culminate in convulsions similar to those of eclampsia.

Management During Pregnancy

Care consists primarily of monitoring maternal clinical and laboratory status and fetal well-being. Establishment of baseline renal disease and hematological values is important because pregnancy-induced laboratory changes later in gestation can resemble SLE disease activity. A 24-hour urine collection to assess proteinuria and serum creatinine level measurement determine initial renal function. A complete blood count (CBC) identifies preexisting anemia, leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia. Continued assessment of renal function and hematological parameters is undertaken each trimester unless symptoms develop. In this event, measures are monthly (Baer, 2011).

For monitoring of SLE activity, various laboratory techniques have been recommended. As just discussed, establishing baseline values will assist comparisons later in pregnancy. Serum complement levels (C_3 and C_4) and dsDNA titers are drawn at the first prenatal care visit and when symptoms develop. Serum complement levels are normally increased in pregnancy (Appendix, p. 1231). Although falling or low C_3 and C_4 levels are more likely to be associated with active disease, higher levels provide no assurance against disease flare. If symptoms develop, the combination of declining complement levels and rising dsDNA titers does indicate a lupus flare (Baer, 2011). Women with SLE are also screened for antiphospholipid antibodies at the beginning of pregnancy. Last, screening for anti-SS-A (anti-Ro) and anti-SS-B (anti-La) antibodies is recommended because of associated fetal complications described later.

The combination of serial hematological, rheumatological, and renal studies may detect changes in disease activity. SLE-associated hemolysis is characterized by a positive Coombs test, anemia, reticulocytosis, and unconjugated hyperbilirubinemia. Thrombocytopenia, leukopenia, or both may develop. Chronic thrombocytopenia in early pregnancy may be due to antiphospholipid antibodies (Lockshin, 1995). Later, thrombocytopenia may indicate preeclampsia.

The fetus also is closely observed for adverse effects such as growth restriction and oligohydramnios. Sonographic evaluations are performed every 4 weeks beginning at 24 weeks' gestation to assess for both. Antepartum testing for fetal well-being is initiated in the third trimester and described in Chapter 20 (p. 392) (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a,b). Unless evidence of maternal or fetal compromise develops, pregnancy is allowed to progress to term.

Pharmacological Treatment

There is no cure for SLE, and complete remissions are rare. Approximately a fourth of pregnant women have mild disease, which is not life threatening but may be disabling because of pain and fatigue. Arthralgia and serositis can be managed by nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). However, during pregnancy, chronic or large intermittent dosing is avoided due to related oligohydramnios or ductus arteriosus closure (Chap. 8, p. 151).

Antimalarials reduce dermatitis, arthritis, and fatigue (Hahn, 2018). Although these agents cross the placenta, hydroxychloroquine (Plaquenil) does not appear to cause congenital malformations (Briggs, 2022). Most recommend continuation during pregnancy because therapy interruption can precipitate a flare (Marder, 2019; Petri, 2019). For those not previously using hydroxychloroquine, others favor initiation in the first trimester because its use is associated with an 85-percent reduction in the risk of having a small-for-gestational-age neonate (Parikh,

2020). Also, it lowers the risk of fetal congenital heart block by 50 percent in women with anti-SS-A antibodies. Low-dose aspirin can be used throughout gestation.

Severe disease is managed with corticosteroids such as prednisone, 1 to 2 mg/kg/d orally or methylprednisolone, 1000 mg given intravenously over 90 minutes daily for 3 days (Petri, 2007). After the disease is controlled, this dose is tapered to a daily morning dose of 10 to 15 mg. Corticosteroid therapy can lead to gestational diabetes. During labor, delivery, and postpartum, corticosteroids in "stress doses" are given to women who take these drugs chronically or who have done so recently. This augmented dose reflects a normal adrenal response, and one option on admission for delivery is hydrocortisone, 100 mg, given IV every 8 hours for 48 hours.

Tacrolimus, rituximab, and IVIG therapy also have been used to treat lupus flares (Petri, 2019). These are usually reserved for lupus nephritis or disease that is corticosteroid resistant. Azathioprine has a good safety record during pregnancy (Hahn, 2018; Petri, 2019). Its recommended daily oral dose is 2 mg/kg. Teratogenic medications to be avoided include mycophenolate mofetil, methotrexate, and cyclophosphamide (Briggs, 2022; Hahn, 2018). However, cyclophosphamide can be considered in the second or third trimester for severe disease (Lazzaroni, 2016).

In nonpregnant subjects, antihypertensive therapy often includes an angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor or an angiotensin-receptor blocker. For pregnancy, these should be changed to safer fetal options such as calcium-channel blockers, alpha methyldopa, or labetalol (Cabiddu, 2016).

Perinatal Mortality and Morbidity

Adverse perinatal outcome rates are significantly elevated in pregnancies complicated by SLE. Among these are preterm delivery, fetal-growth restriction, stillbirth, and neonatal lupus syndrome (see Table 62-4) (He, 2020; Phansenee, 2018). Perinatal outcome rates worsen in women with active disease, significant proteinuria, or renal impairment and in those with chronic hypertension, preeclampsia, or both (Lazzaroni, 2016). Adverse outcomes are also more common in women with neuropsychiatric lupus (de Jesus, 2017). Reasons at least partially responsible for adverse fetal consequences include decidual vasculopathy with placental infarction and decreased perfusion (Hanly, 1988).

Neonatal Lupus Syndrome

This is characterized by newborn skin lesions—*lupus dermatitis*; various hematological and systemic derangements; and occasionally congenital heart block (Hahn, 2018). Cutaneous manifestations can be present in 30 to 40 percent of infants and appear at 4 to 6 weeks of age (Silverman, 2010). These are usually associated with anti-SS-A and SS-B antibodies, and up to 50 percent of women with SLE are positive for these (see Table 62-1). Thrombocytopenia and hepatic involvement are seen in 5 to 10 percent of affected infants.

In a review of outcomes in 128 infants born to women with lupus, 16 percent developed cutaneous lupus and 26 percent showed hematological abnormalities and elevated transaminase levels (Cimaz, 2003). Cutaneous lupus, thrombocytopenia, and autoimmune hemolysis are transient and clear within a few months (Zuppa, 2017). In subsequent offspring, the recurrence risk for neonatal lupus may approach 25 percent (Bramham, 2012). The only maternal treatment that lowers the risk of neonatal lupus is hydroxychloroquine (Izmirly, 2020; Petri, 2019).

Congenital Heart Block

Fetal and neonatal heart block results from diffuse myocarditis and fibrosis in the region between the atrioventricular (AV) node and bundle of His. Natural killer cells have been detected in fetal myocytes (Ivanchenko, 2021). Congenital heart block develops almost exclusively in fetuses of women with antibodies to the SS-A or SS-B antigens (Buyon, 1993). Even in the presence of such antibodies, the incidence of fetal myocarditis is only 2 to 3 percent (Bramham, 2012; Lateef, 2017). However, it rises to 20 percent with a prior affected child. The cardiac lesion is permanent, and a pacemaker is generally necessary. Long-term prognosis is poor. Of 325 infants with cardiac neonatal lupus, nearly 20 percent died, and of these, a third were stillborn (Izmirly, 2011). Another autoimmune disease, Sjögren syndrome, also is associated with fetal heart block (Brito-Zerón, 2020).

Maternal administration of corticosteroids, plasma exchange, or IVIG therapy does not reduce the risk of congenital heart block. For women with anti-SS-B and anti-SS-A antibodies, fetal cardiac monitoring is performed between 18 and 26 weeks' gestation. Maternal corticosteroid administration for treatment of fetal congenital heart block is controversial and discussed further in Chapter 19 (p. 369). This therapy to treat fetal heart block has not been studied in randomized trials. However, some evidence derives from fetuses exposed to their mother's corticosteroid treatment for SLE and shows that exposure may mitigate fetal myocarditis. Specifically, Shinohara and coworkers (1999) reported no cases of heart block in 26 neonates whose mothers received corticosteroids before 16 weeks' gestation as part of SLE maintenance therapy. By contrast, 15 of 61 neonates with heart block were born to women in whom corticosteroid therapy was begun after 16 weeks for an SLE exacerbation. Maternal hydroxychloroquine therapy is associated with a lower incidence of fetal heart block, especially in those with a prior affected child (Izmirly, 2010, 2020).

Long-term Prognosis and Contraception

The survival rate for women with SLE is 95 percent at 5 years, 90 percent at 10 years, and 78 percent at 20 years (Hahn, 2018). Infection, lupus flares, end-organ failure, hypertension, stroke, and cardiovascular disease account for most deaths. In general, women with SLE and chronic vascular or renal disease may limit family size because of morbidity associated with the disease and greater risks for adverse perinatal outcomes. For contraception, combination oral contraceptives did not increase the incidence of lupus flares in two large multicenter trials (Petri, 2005; Sánchez-Guerrero, 2005). Notably, comorbid antiphospholipid antibodies are a contraindication to estrogen-containing methods

(Chap. 38, p. 672). Progestin-only implants and injections provide effective contraception with no known effects on lupus flare rates (Sammaritano, 2020). Data do not support the concern that intrauterine device use and immunosuppressive therapy lead to higher infection rates in these patients. Tubal sterilization may be advantageous and is performed with greatest safety postpartum or whenever SLE is quiescent (Chap. 39, p. 681).

ANTIPHOSPHOLIPID SYNDROME

This is an autoantibody-mediated acquired thrombophilia that predisposes to recurrent thrombosis or pregnancy morbidity (Moutsopoulos, 2018). Specifically, antiphospholipid syndrome (APS) is diagnosed in women with persistently positive serum tests for antiphospholipid antibodies (APAs) *plus* arterial and/or venous thromboses or obstetrical morbidity. APAs include lupus anticoagulant, anticardiolipin antibody, and anti-β2 glycoprotein-I antibody.

Phospholipids are the main lipid constituents of cell and organelle membranes. Certain proteins in plasma associate noncovalently with these phospholipids. APAs are directed against these phospholipids or these phospholipid-binding proteins (Garcia, 2018; Giannakopoulos, 2013). This antibody group may be of immunoglobulin G (IgG), IgM, and IgA classes, alone or in combination. APAs are most common with SLE, other connective tissue disorders, and APS. That said, a small proportion of normal women and men have low levels of these antibodies.

The stimulus for autoantibody production is unclear, but it possibly is due to a preceding infection or another event that causes endothelial disruption. The resulting pathophysiology is mediated by one or more of the following: (1) activation of various procoagulants, (2) inactivation of natural anticoagulants, (3) complement activation, and (4) inhibition of syncytiotrophoblast differentiation (Garcia, 2018). Clinically, these actions lead to vascular thromboses or to pregnancy morbidity. Virtually every organ system may be affected.

Central nervous system involvement is one of the most prominent clinical manifestations. In addition to cerebrovascular arterial or venous thrombotic events, psychiatric features and even multiple sclerosis can be present (Binder, 2010). Renovascular involvement may lead to renal failure that can be difficult to differentiate from lupus nephritis (D'Cruz, 2009). Peripheral and visceral thromboses also are features. In one case, a puerpera developed a mesenteric vessel infarction and subsequent spontaneous cecal perforation (Ahmed, 2009). Obstetrical complications encompass recurrent pregnancy loss and placental dysfunction reflected by fetal-growth restriction, stillbirth, early-onset preeclampsia, and preterm birth. Treatment using aspirin, heparin, and close monitoring has increased live-birth rates to more than 70 percent in these women (Hamulyák, 2020; Schreiber, 2016).

A small proportion of these patients develop the *catastrophic antiphospholipid antibody syndrome (CAPS)* or *Asherson syndrome*. This is defined as a rapidly progressive thromboembolic disorder simultaneously affecting three or more organ systems or tissues (Garcia, 2018; Schreiber, 2016). It has a high mortality rate from activation of a cytokine storm. In half of cases, a triggering event is identified.

Specific Antiphospholipid Antibodies

As mentioned, several antibodies in APS are directed against a specific phospholipid or a phospholipid-binding protein:

1. *β2 glycoprotein-I*, also known as apolipoprotein H, is a phospholipid-binding plasma protein that inhibits prothrombinase activity within platelets and prevents platelet aggregation (Giannakopoulos, 2013). Thus, its normal action is to limit procoagulant binding and thereby prevent coagulation cascade activation. Logically, antibodies directed against this glycoprotein would reverse its anticoagulant activity and promote thrombosis. This is important from an obstetrical viewpoint because β2 glycoprotein-I is expressed in high concentrations on the syncytiotrophoblast surface. Complement activation may contribute to its pathogenesis (Avalos, 2009; Tsokos, 2011). Teleologically, this seems appropriate because the decidua intuitively should be a critical area to prevent coagulation that might lead to intervillous space thrombosis.
2. *Lupus anticoagulant (LAC)* is a heterogeneous group of antibodies directed against phospholipid-binding proteins. This antibody group induces prolongation in vitro of the prothrombin, partial thromboplastin, and Russell viper venom times. Thus, paradoxically, this so-called anticoagulant is actually powerfully thrombotic in vivo. This is the only APA that has been consistently associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes (Petri, 2020a).
3. *Anticardiolipin antibodies (ACAs)* are directed against one of the many phospholipid cardiolipins found in mitochondrial membranes and platelets.

Antibodies Against Natural Anticoagulants

Some APAs are also directed against the natural anticoagulant proteins C and S. Another is directed against the anticoagulant protein annexin V, which is expressed in high concentrations by syncytiotrophoblast (Giannakopoulos, 2013). Testing for these other antibodies is not recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). However, some studies have evaluated these nonconventional antiphospholipid antibodies in women who clinically meet APS criteria but do not have the classic antibody profile. In one study, treatment of women who had these nonconventional antibodies offered some benefits, such as a lower pregnancy loss rate (Mekinian, 2016).

Clinical features shown in Table 62-5 provide indications for testing. By international consensus, APS is diagnosed based on laboratory and clinical criteria (Table 11-4, p. 205). First, one of two clinical criteria—which are vascular thrombosis or certain pregnancy morbidity—must be present. With laboratory criteria, high IgG or IgM titers of ACA or anti-β2 glycoprotein-I or LAC positivity should be confirmed on two occasions 12 weeks apart. The diagnosis can be further stratified based on the number of these tests that are positive.

Tests for LAC are nonspecific coagulation tests. The *partial thromboplastin time* is generally prolonged because the anticoagulant interferes with conversion of prothrombin to thrombin in vitro. The *dilute Russell viper venom test* is considered more specific.

TABLE 62-5. Some Clinical Features of Antiphospholipid Syndrome

Venous thrombosis: thromboembolism, thrombophlebitis, livedo reticularis
Arterial thrombosis: stroke, transient ischemic attack, Libman-Sacks cardiac vegetations, myocardial ischemia, distal extremity and visceral thrombosis and gangrene
Hematological: thrombocytopenia, autoimmune hemolytic anemia
Renal: thrombotic microangiopathy, glomerular thrombosis
Other: neurological manifestations, migraine headaches, epilepsy; renal artery or vein thrombosis; arthritis and arthralgia
Pregnancy: preeclampsia and HELLP syndrome, recurrent miscarriage, preterm delivery, fetal-growth restriction, fetal death

HELLP = hemolysis, elevated liver enzyme levels, low platelet count.
Data from Garcia, 2018; Giannakopoulos, 2013; Moutsopoulos, 2018.

Branch and Khamashta (2003) recommend conservative interpretation of results that are based on repeated tests from a reliable laboratory and that are consistent with each clinical case. Only approximately 20 percent of patients with APS have a positive LAC assay alone. Thus, ACA enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) testing also should be performed. Efforts have been made to standardize ACA assays, however, these remain without international standards (Garcia, 2018). For each APS test, interlaboratory variation can be large, and agreement between commercial kits is poor.

■ Pregnancy and Antiphospholipid Antibodies

As many as 30 percent of patients with SLE have APAs. In women without autoimmune diseases who have pregnancy complications, the prevalence of positive results with APA testing is 7 percent (Garcia, 2018).

In women with elevated APA levels, and especially when LAC is identified, risks for decidual vasculopathy, placental infarction, fetal-growth restriction, early-onset preeclampsia, and recurrent fetal death are increased (Saccone, 2017). Some of these women, like those with SLE, also have a high incidence of venous and arterial thromboses, cerebral thrombosis, hemolytic anemia, thrombocytopenia, and pulmonary hypertension (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a; Clowse, 2008). In 191 LAC-negative women with APS, those with ACAs and β2-glycoprotein-I had significantly greater miscarriage rates than if either one alone was positive (Liu, 2013). Women with higher titers tend to have more adverse outcomes (Alijotas-Reig, 2020; Gabbay-Benziv, 2018).

■ Pregnancy Pathophysiology

It is not precisely known how APAs cause damage, but it is likely that their actions are multifactorial. Platelets may be damaged directly by APAs or indirectly by binding β2-glycoprotein-I, which causes platelets to be susceptible to aggregation (Giannakopoulos, 2013). One theory proposes that phospholipid-containing endothelial cell or syncytiotrophoblast membranes may be damaged directly by the APA or indirectly by antibody binding to either β2 glycoprotein-I or annexin V (Rand, 1997, 1998). This prevents the cell membranes from protecting the syncytiotrophoblast and endothelium. This exposes the basement membrane, to which damaged platelets can adhere and form a thrombus.

Pierro and colleagues (1999) reported that APAs decreased decidual production of the vasodilating prostaglandin E_2. Diminished protein C or S activity and greater prothrombin activation also may be contributory (Zangari, 1997). Evidence supports that thrombosis with APS stems from activation of the tissue factor pathway (Amengual, 2003). Last, uncontrolled placental complement activation by APAs is implicated in fetal loss and growth restriction (Holers, 2002).

Complications in APS cannot be completely explained by thrombosis alone. Animal models suggest that effects stem from inflammation rather than thrombosis (Cohen, 2011). Some investigators hypothesize that APS-associated clotting is triggered as a "second hit" from innate inflammatory immune responses. These investigators recommend treatment with anti-inflammatory agents (Meroni, 2011).

■ Adverse Pregnancy Outcomes

Overall, APAs are associated with higher rates of fetal wastage (Chap. 11, p. 204). In most early reports that describe these outcomes, however, women were included *because* they had repeated adverse outcomes. Both antibody prevalence and miscarriage are common—recall that the incidence of APAs in the general obstetrical population is about 5 percent and early miscarriage approximates 20 percent of call conceptions. Accordingly, current data are too limited to conclude the exact risks for adverse effects of these antibodies on pregnancy outcomes. Fetal deaths, however, are more characteristic with APS than are first-trimester miscarriages (Garcia, 2018; Roque, 2004).

When otherwise unexplained fetal deaths are examined, the data are mixed. One study measured ACA levels in 309 pregnancies with fetal death and found no differences in their frequency compared with levels in 618 normal pregnancies (Haddow, 1991). In another study of women with recurrent pregnancy loss, those with APAs had an increased rate of preterm delivery (Clark, 2007). In a case-control study of 582 stillbirths and 1547 live births, a three- to fivefold higher risk for stillbirth was found in women with elevated ACA and anti-β2 glycoprotein-I levels (Silver, 2013). In women with APAs, adverse outcomes are more common in the presence of: (1) all three classic APA types, (2) comorbid SLE or systemic autoimmune diseases, and (3) prior thrombosis and pregnancy morbidity. Logistic regression found the probability of pregnancy failure was 93 percent with two or more APA types but was 63 percent for those with only one (Ruffatti, 2011).

Thrombosis Prevention in Pregnancy

Because of study heterogeneity, current treatment recommendations for women with APAs can be confusing. Therapy is directed at thrombosis prevention. As discussed, APAs are immunoglobulins that may be of G, M, or A classes. Those directed against the phospholipids (PL) are termed GPL, MPL, and APL, respectively. During testing, these are reported as semiquantified phospholipid binding-unit levels and expressed as negative, low-positive, medium-positive, or high-positive (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a).

As discussed in Chapter 55 (p. 979), women with prior thromboembolic events who have APAs are at risk for recurrence in subsequent pregnancies. For these women, prophylactic anticoagulation with heparin throughout pregnancy and for 6 weeks postpartum is recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a). For those without prior thromboembolic events, recommendations for management vary and are listed in Table 55-5 (p. 984). Some acceptable schemes include close antepartum maternal observation with or without prophylactic or intermediate-dose heparin, and then some form of postpartum anticoagulation for 6 weeks. Sciascia and coworkers (2016) have presented preliminary salutary results with hydroxychloroquine treatment. This currently is considered investigational (Garcia, 2018; Latino, 2020).

Several researchers have questioned the need for heparin for women with APAs but no history of thrombosis (Branch, 2010). Although this is less clear, some recommend that women be treated if they have medium- or high-positive ACA titers or LAC activity and a prior second- or third-trimester fetal death not attributable to other causes (Dizon-Townson, 1998; Lockshin, 1995). Others report that women with recurrent early pregnancy loss and medium- or high-positive titers of antibodies may benefit from therapy (Robertson, 2006).

Due to the risk of fetal-growth abnormalities and stillbirth, serial sonographic assessment of fetal growth and antepartum testing in the third trimester is recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019a, 2021a,b).

Specific Therapy in Pregnancy

Other agents are used to treat gravidas that have APS but no prior thromboembolic event. *Aspirin*, in doses of 60 to 80 mg orally daily, blocks conversion of arachidonic acid to thromboxane A_2 while sparing prostacyclin production. Thromboxane A_2 usually causes platelet aggregation and vasoconstriction, and prostacyclin has the opposite effect. The only major side effect from low-dose aspirin is a slight risk of small-vessel bleeding during surgical procedures. Low-dose aspirin does not reduce adverse pregnancy outcomes in women who have APAs but who lack the complete APS syndrome (Amengual, 2015). Thus, its use is recommended for women with SLE or APS (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b; Rahman, 2020).

Unfractionated heparin is given subcutaneously in dosages of 5000 to 10,000 units every 12 hours. Some prefer low-molecular-weight heparin, such as 40 mg enoxaparin (Lovenox) once daily (Kwak-Kim, 2013). With therapeutic dosing, measurement of heparin levels may be useful because clotting tests can be altered by LAC. The rationale for heparin therapy is to prevent venous and arterial thrombotic episodes. Heparin therapy also prevents thrombosis in the microcirculation, including the decidual-trophoblastic interface (Toglia, 1996). As discussed, heparin binds to β2-glycoprotein-I, which coats the syncytiotrophoblast. This prevents binding of ACAs and anti-β2 glycoprotein-I antibodies to their surfaces, which likely prevents cellular damage (Tsokos, 2011). Heparin also binds to APAs in vitro and likely in vivo.

Aspirin plus heparin therapy is the most effective regimen (de Jesus, 2014; Hamulyák, 2020). However, despite treatment, 30 percent of women with APS do not achieve a successful outcome (Arslan, 2020). Heparin therapy is associated with several complications that include bleeding, thrombocytopenia, osteopenia, and osteoporosis. A description of various heparins and their adverse effects is found in Chapter 55 (p. 983).

Corticosteroids generally should not be used with *primary APS*—that is, without an associated connective tissue disorder. For women with SLE or those being treated for APS who develop SLE, corticosteroid therapy is indicated. In such cases of *secondary APS* seen with SLE, the dose of prednisone should be maintained at the lowest effective level to prevent flares.

IVIG therapy is controversial and has usually been reserved for women with overt disease—including catastrophic antiphospholipid syndrome or heparin-induced thrombocytopenia or both (Rahman, 2020). It is used when other first-line therapies have failed, especially in the setting of preeclampsia and fetal-growth restriction. IVIG is administered by some in doses of 0.4 g/kg/d for 5 days—total dose of 2 g/kg. This is repeated monthly, or it is given as a single dose of 1 g/kg each month. Treatment is expensive, as one course costs more than $10,000. Tenti and colleagues (2016) found no benefits from adding IVIG to low-dose aspirin and low-molecular-weight heparin. One Cochrane review found no improvement in the live-birth rate for IVIG therapy given to women with recurrent pregnancy loss (Wong, 2014). Trials are needed before application of this expensive and cumbersome therapy is recommended.

Immunosuppression with hydroxychloroquine is commonly used with low-dose aspirin in the treatment of women with SLE. This regimen may be beneficial by reducing the risk of thrombosis and improving pregnancy outcomes in women who also have APS (Mekinian, 2015; Sciascia, 2016).

Statins have been examined due to their protective effects on endothelium. In a small trial in 21 women with APS who developed fetal-growth restriction or preeclampsia, the addition of pravastatin to low-dose aspirin and low-molecular-weight heparin improved placental blood flow, preeclampsia features, and pregnancy outcomes (Lefkou, 2016). Larger trials are needed before this therapy is recommended.

Described earlier (p. 1114), catastrophic antiphospholipid syndrome is treated aggressively with full anticoagulation, high-dose corticosteroids, plasma exchange, and/or IVIG therapy (Garcia, 2018; Rahman, 2020).

Treatment Efficacy

Fetal loss is common in women with untreated APS, and especially in those with LAC positivity. Even with treatment,

TABLE 62-6. Pregnancy Outcomes (%) in 750 Women Treated for Antiphospholipid Syndrome—the PREGNANTS Study

Outcome	Triple-Positive (n = 20)	Double-Positive LAC Negative (n = 90)	LAC Alone (n = 54)	ACA Alone (n = 458)	Anti-β2 Glycoprotein-I (n = 128)
Livebirth	30	43	80	56	48
Stillbirth	45	34	7	21	30
Preeclampsia[a]	55	54	11	34	48

[a]Nonsevere only.
ACA = anticardiolipin antibodies; LAC = lupus anticoagulant.

recurrent fetal loss rates remain at 20 to 30 percent (Arslan, 2020; Empson, 2005; Ernest, 2011). Shown in Table 62-6 are pregnancy outcomes from 750 treated women with primary APS (Saccone, 2017). Participants were treated with low-dose aspirin and prophylactic low-molecular-weight heparin starting in the first trimester. Importantly, some women with SLE and APAs have normal pregnancy outcomes without treatment. It is also emphasized that women with LAC and prior poor pregnancy outcomes have had liveborn neonates without treatment.

In a manner similar to neonatal lupus syndrome (p. 1113), up to 30 percent of newborns demonstrate passively acquired APAs (Nalli, 2017). One group found higher rates of learning disabilities in these children (Tincani, 2009). Another reported a fourfold greater risk for perinatal strokes (Simchen, 2009). Of 141 newborns followed in a European registry, the rate of preterm birth was 16 percent; low birthweight occurred in 17 percent; and later behavioral abnormalities developed in 4 percent of the children. There were no cases of neonatal thrombosis (Motta, 2012). A 7-year study of 36 pregnancies in 26 women who had APS reported three cases of autism spectrum disorder. All were associated with persistent neonatal anti-β2 glycoprotein-I IgG antibodies (Abisror, 2013).

RHEUMATOID ARTHRITIS

This chronic inflammatory disease stems from immunological dysfunction, and infiltrating T cells secrete cytokines to cause inflammation, polyarthritis, and systemic symptoms. The cardinal feature is inflammatory synovitis that usually involves the peripheral joints. The disease has a propensity for cartilage destruction, bony erosions, and joint deformities. Pain, aggravated by movement, is accompanied by swelling and tenderness. Extraarticular manifestations include rheumatoid nodules, vasculitis, and pleuropulmonary symptoms. Other complaints are fatigue, anorexia, and depression. The American College of Rheumatology has published diagnostic criteria (Shah, 2018).

The worldwide prevalence of rheumatoid arthritis is 0.5 to 1 percent, women are affected three times more often than men, and peak onset is from 25 to 55 years (Shah, 2018). There is a genetic predisposition, and heritability is estimated at 15 to 30 percent (McInnes, 2011). Genome-wide associated studies have identified more than 30 loci involved in rheumatoid arthritis pathogenesis (Kurkó, 2013). Class II major histocompatibility complex molecule HLA-DR4 and HLA-DRB1 alleles also show an association (McInnes, 2011; Shah, 2018). Pregnancy provides a protection against rheumatoid arthritis development, and this may be related to HLA-disparate fetal microchimerism (Förger, 2020; Guthrie, 2010).

Management

Treatment is directed at pain relief, inflammation reduction, protection of articular structures, and preservation of function. Physical and occupational therapy and self-care instructions are essential.

Aspirin and other NSAIDs nonspecifically inhibit both cyclooxygenase 1 (COX-1), which is an enzyme critical to normal platelet function, and COX-2, which mediates inflammatory response mechanisms. However, in one systematic review, a small increased rate of cardiac malformations was found in newborns exposed to NSAIDs in the first trimester (Briggs, 2022). In addition, NSAIDs are associated with early spontaneous abortions, ductus arteriosus constriction, and neonatal pulmonary hypertension (Briggs, 2022). Another potential side effect of chronic NSAID therapy is gastritis with acute bleeding. Thus, risks versus benefits of these medications must be considered. Glucocorticoid therapy in low to moderate doses is given to achieve more rapid symptom control. Of these, prednisone, 7.5 mg orally daily for the first 2 years of active disease, substantively reduces progressive joint erosions (Shah, 2018).

Until recently, NSAIDs were the cornerstone of therapy, but they do not retard disease progression. The American College of Rheumatology recommends several disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs) that may reduce or prevent joint damage (Singh, 2016). According to Shah and St. Clair (2018), methotrexate has become the preferred DMARD outside of pregnancy. NSAIDs thus are important in pregnancy because methotrexate and leflunomide are contraindicated (Chap. 8, pp. 151–152). In one review of drug exposure, a fourth of women with rheumatoid arthritis took a DMARD within 6 months of conception (Kuriya, 2011). Of unplanned exposures during pregnancy, 4 percent of 393 pregnant women were given a category D or X medication—methotrexate was the most common at 2.9 percent.

Sulfasalazine and hydroxychloroquine are safe for use in pregnancy (Briggs, 2022; Partlett, 2011). These, combined with relatively low-dose prednisone—7.5 to 20 mg daily—usually successfully treat flares.

Biological DMARDs have revolutionized rheumatoid arthritis treatment. These include the tumor necrosis factor

alpha (TNF-α) inhibitors infliximab, adalimumab, golimumab, certolizumab, and etanercept (Shah, 2018). Their use in pregnancy is limited, but they appear to be safe for the fetus (Briggs, 2022). In one review, 13 percent of 393 pregnant women were given a biological cytokine-inhibiting DMARD—primarily etanercept (Kuriya, 2011). In another review of 300 exposures, no fetal effects were noted (Berthelot, 2009). A prospective study of 38 pregnant women found similar results (Hoxha, 2017). In 74 women exposed to adalimumab during pregnancy, no risks were identified (Burmester, 2017). Little is known regarding the pregnancy effects of anakinra, an interleukin 1 receptor antagonist, or of rituximab, an antagonist to the B-cell CD20 antigen. Other biologics are abatacept, tocilizumab, and tofacitinib.

■ Pregnancy and Rheumatoid Arthritis

In up to 70 percent of women with rheumatoid arthritis, disease will improve during pregnancy (Raine, 2020; Shah, 2018). Some studies suggest this may be due to regulatory T-cell alterations (Förger, 2020). Even so, some women develop disease during pregnancy, and others become worse. A downside to this respite during pregnancy is that postpartum exacerbation occurs in 40 to 50 percent of women (Eudy, 2018; Jethwa, 2019). This may stem from postpartum alterations in innate immunity (Häupl, 2008b).

Some studies report a protective effect of pregnancy against developing new-onset rheumatoid arthritis. In a case-control study of 88 affected women, pregnancy provided a degree of protection long term, but the likelihood of new-onset rheumatoid arthritis was increased sixfold during the first 3 postpartum months (Silman, 1992). Pikwer and colleagues (2009) reported a significant reduction in the risk of subsequent arthritis in women who breastfed longer than 12 months.

These findings may reflect the interference of sex hormones with several putative processes involved in arthritis pathogenesis, including immunoregulation (Förger, 2020; Häupl, 2008a,b). First, Unger and associates (1983) reported that amelioration of rheumatoid arthritis correlated with serum levels of *pregnancy-associated alpha$_2$-glycoprotein*. This compound has immunosuppressive properties. Second, Nelson and coworkers (1993) noted that disease improvement was associated with a disparity in HLA class II antigens between mother and fetus. They suggested that the maternal immune response to paternal HLA antigens may play a role in pregnancy-induced remission of arthritis. In addition to monocyte activations, there also may be T-lymphocyte activation (Förger, 2020).

Fertility is diminished in patients with rheumatoid arthritis, and adverse pregnancy outcomes are increased. Kishore and colleagues (2019) reported pregnancy outcomes from nearly 32,000 women with rheumatoid arthritis. Compared with unaffected women, those with rheumatoid arthritis had significantly greater rates of hypertensive diseases, preterm birth, hemorrhage, and fetal-growth restriction.

■ Juvenile Rheumatoid Arthritis

This group of diseases is the most frequent cause of chronic arthritis in children and persists into adulthood. In 76 pregnancies of 51 affected Norwegian women, pregnancy had no effects on clinical presentation, but disease activity usually became quiescent or remained so during pregnancy (Østensen, 1991). Similar to rheumatoid arthritis, postpartum flares were common. Joint deformities often developed in these women, and 15 of 20 cesarean deliveries were done for contracted pelves or joint prostheses. Results from a summary of 39 Polish women with juvenile rheumatoid arthritis were similar (Musiej-Nowakowska, 1999).

This arthritis portends few adverse pregnancy outcomes. The risk for preterm birth is elevated, but fetal development is normal (Mohamed, 2016; Rom, 2014; Wallenius, 2014). In a study of 1807 births, Remaeus and associates (2017) reported increased incidences of preterm birth, fetal-growth restriction, and preeclampsia. Disease severity in early pregnancy was predictive of preterm delivery and fetal-growth restriction in one cohort study (Bharti, 2015). And, patients with low disease activity scores in the first trimester are likely to have low disease activity or remission in the third trimester (Ince-Askan, 2017).

If the cervical spine is involved, particular attention is warranted during pregnancy. Subluxation is common, and pregnancy, at least theoretically, predisposes to this because of joint laxity. Importantly, there are anesthesia concerns during endotracheal intubation.

SYSTEMIC SCLEROSIS—SCLERODERMA

This is a chronic multisystem connective tissue disorder of unknown etiology. It is characterized by microvascular damage; inflammation from immune system activation; and excessive deposition of collagen in the skin, lungs, heart, gastrointestinal tract, and kidneys. It is uncommon, displays a 5-to-1 female dominance, and typically affects those aged 30 to 50 years (Clark, 2020; Varga, 2018).

This strong prevalence of scleroderma in women and its greater incidence in the years following childbirth give credence to the hypothesis that *microchimerism* is involved as discussed earlier (p. 1109) (Munira, 2020). Artlett and associates (1998) demonstrated Y-chromosomal DNA in almost half of women with systemic sclerosis compared with only 4 percent of controls. Rak and coworkers (2009) identified male microchimerism in peripheral blood mononuclear cells more frequently in women with limited versus diffuse scleroderma.

■ Clinical Course

The hallmark is overproduction of normal collagen. *Limited cutaneous systemic sclerosis* is the more benign form and progresses slowly. With *diffuse cutaneous systemic sclerosis*, skin fibrosis advances rapidly and is followed by gastrointestinal tract fibrosis, especially the distal esophagus (Varga, 2018). Pulmonary interstitial fibrosis along with vascular changes may cause pulmonary hypertension, which develops in 15 percent of patients. Antinuclear antibodies such as those listed in Table 62-1 are found in 95 percent of patients, and immunoincompetence often develops.

Raynaud phenomenon, which is typified by cold-induced, episodic, rapidly reversible digital ischemia, is seen in 95 percent of patients. There also may be swelling of the distal extremities

and face. Symptoms from esophageal involvement, especially fullness and epigastric burning pain, occur in half of patients. Pulmonary involvement is frequent and causes dyspnea. The 10-year cumulative survival rate is 70 percent in those with pulmonary fibrosis, and pulmonary arterial hypertension is the main cause of death (Clark, 2020; Varga, 2018). Women with limited cutaneous disease such as the *CREST syndrome—calcinosis, Raynaud phenomenon, esophageal involvement, sclerodactyly, and telangiectasia*—have milder disease.

Overlap syndrome refers to systemic sclerosis with features of other connective tissue disorders. *Mixed connective tissue disease* is a term used for the syndrome involving features of SLE, systemic sclerosis, polymyositis, rheumatoid arthritis, and high titers of anti-ribonucleoprotein (RNP) antibodies (Rudder, 2021). The disorder is also termed *undifferentiated connective tissue disease* (Radin, 2020; Zucchi, 2020).

Although systemic sclerosis is incurable, treatment directed at end-organ involvement can sometimes relieve symptoms and improve function. Renal involvement and hypertension are often comorbid. At times, ACE inhibitors may be required for blood pressure control despite their known teratogenicity. Obliterative vasculopathy of the renal cortical arteries characterizes *scleroderma renal crisis*, which develops in up to a fourth of these patients. This leads to renal failure and malignant hypertension. Interstitial restrictive lung disease is common and frequently becomes life threatening. Associated pulmonary hypertension is treated with bosentan or sildenafil (Chap. 52, p. 931).

■ Pregnancy and Systemic Sclerosis

The prevalence of scleroderma in pregnancy approximates 1 case in 22,000 pregnancies (Chakravarty, 2008). If baseline function is good, these women usually have stable disease during gestation. As perhaps expected, pregnancy aggravates dysphagia and reflux esophagitis (Steen, 1999). Dysphagia results from loss of esophageal motility due to neuromuscular dysfunction. A lower amplitude or disappearance of peristaltic waves in the lower two thirds of the esophagus is seen using manometry. Symptomatic treatment for reflux is described in Chapter 57 (p. 1017).

Women with renal insufficiency and malignant hypertension have a higher incidence of superimposed preeclampsia. With rapidly worsening renal or cardiac disease, pregnancy termination should be considered. Renal crisis is uncommon, but it is life threatening, and it does not improve with delivery (Zucchi, 2020). Pulmonary hypertension usually contraindicates pregnancy (Table 52-3, p. 919).

Vaginal delivery may be anticipated, unless the soft tissue thickening wrought by scleroderma produces dystocia requiring cesarean delivery. Tracheal intubation for general anesthesia has special concerns because of limited ability of these women to open their mouths widely (Sobanski, 2016). Because of esophageal dysfunction, aspiration is also more likely, and neuraxial analgesia is preferable. Warming the delivery room and intravenous fluids, extra blankets, and socks and gloves are considered to improve impaired circulation from Raynaud phenomenon. If corticosteroids were used frequently, stress doses of hydrocortisone, described earlier for SLE (p. 1113), are recommended (Sobanski, 2016).

Maternal and fetal outcomes correlate with underlying disease severity. In a review of 214 gravidas with systemic sclerosis, 45 percent had diffuse disease (Steen, 1999). Major complications included renal crisis in three and greater rates of preterm birth. A multicenter study of 109 pregnancies from 25 centers reported increased rates of preterm delivery, fetal-growth restriction, and very-low-birthweight newborns (Taraborelli, 2012). In a review of 307 affected pregnancies, risks for miscarriage, preterm births, and gestational hypertension were increased (Blagojevic, 2020). These are likely related to placental abnormalities that include decidual vasculopathy, acute atherosis, and infarcts (Sobanski, 2016). Somewhat related, perinatal outcomes are similar with undifferentiated connective tissue diseases (Radin, 2020; Zucchi, 2020).

Scleroderma may be associated with subfertility (Bernatsky, 2008; Lambe, 2004). For women who do not choose pregnancy, several reversible contraceptive methods are acceptable. However, hormonal agents, especially combination oral contraceptives, probably should not be used, especially in women with pulmonary, cardiac, or renal involvement. Due to the often unrelenting progression of systemic sclerosis, permanent sterilization also is considered.

VASCULITIS SYNDROMES

Inflammation and damage to blood vessels may be primary or caused by another disease. Immune-complex deposition is presumed to underlie most cases (Ross, 2020). Primary types are listed in Table 62-7 (Langford, 2018). Small vessel vasculitides such as *granulomatosis with polyangiitis* and *eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis* have antibodies directed against proteins in the cytoplasmic granules of leukocytes—*antineutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies (ANCA)* (Pagnoux, 2016). In general, women with a vasculitis syndrome have elevated rates of preterm birth and preeclampsia (Nguyen, 2021).

■ Polyarteritis Nodosa

This necrotizing vasculitis of small and medium-sized arteries is characterized clinically by myalgia, neuropathy, gastrointestinal disorders, hypertension, and renal disease (Goodman, 2014). A third of cases are associated with hepatitis B antigenemia (Langford, 2018). Symptoms are nonspecific, and fever, weight loss, and malaise are present in more than half of cases. Diagnosis is made by biopsy, and treatment is high-dose prednisone plus cyclophosphamide. Vasculitis due to hepatitis B antigenemia responds to antivirals, glucocorticosteroids, and plasma exchange (Chap. 58, p. 1037).

TABLE 62-7. Primary Vasculitis Syndromes

Polyarteritis nodosa
Wegener granulomatosis
Takayasu arteritis
Behçet disease
Churg-Strauss
Henoch-Schönlein
Giant cell arteritis

Only a few reports describe polyarteritis nodosa associated with pregnancy. Of 12 affected gravidas, polyarteritis first manifested during pregnancy in seven, and it was rapidly fatal by 6 weeks postpartum (Owen, 1989). The diagnosis was not made until autopsy in six of the seven women. Four women continued pregnancy, which resulted in one stillborn and three successful outcomes.

Granulomatosis with Polyangiitis—Wegener Granulomatosis

This is a small-vessel necrotizing granulomatous vasculitis affecting the upper and lower respiratory tract and kidney (Pagnoux, 2016). Disease frequently includes sinusitis and nasal disease (90 percent); pulmonary infiltrates, cavities, or nodules (85 percent); glomerulonephritis (75 percent); and musculoskeletal lesions (65 percent) (Sneller, 1995). At least 90 percent have polyangiitis (Langford, 2018). It is uncommon and usually encountered after age 50. Koukoura and associates (2008) reviewed 36 cases in association with pregnancy and found a higher preterm birth rate. In another report, a second woman had disease-related pneumonitis, but pregnancy did not appear to affect disease activity (Pagnoux, 2011). Because subglottic stenosis is found in up to a fourth of patients, the anesthesiology service is ideally consulted antepartum (Engel, 2011).

Therapeutic options are limited by teratogenicity and fetotoxicity (Daher, 2020). Corticosteroids are standard treatment, but azathioprine, cyclosporine, and IVIG therapy may also be used. For severe disease in the late second or third trimester, cyclophosphamide in combination with prednisolone is highly effective. Rituximab is also approved for this disorder and appears to be safe for the fetus (Briggs, 2022).

Takayasu Arteritis

Also called *pulseless disease*, this is a chronic inflammatory arteritis affecting large vessels (Abisror, 2020). Unlike *temporal arteritis*, which develops almost exclusively after age 55, the onset of Takayasu arteritis is almost always before age 40. It is associated with abnormal angiography of the upper aorta and its main branches and with upper extremity vascular impairment. Death usually results from congestive heart failure or cerebrovascular events. Computed tomography or magnetic resonance angiography can detect this disorder before the development of severe vascular compromise. Takayasu arteritis may respond symptomatically to corticosteroid therapy, however, it is not curative. Surgical bypass or angioplasty improves survival rates.

Comorbid severe renovascular hypertension, cardiac involvement, or pulmonary hypertension worsen pregnancy prognosis (Comarmond, 2020; Singh, 2015). Hypertension is relatively common and should be carefully controlled. Blood pressure is most accurately measured in the lower extremity. Overall, the prognosis for pregnancy is good (Kirshenbaum, 2018). A study of 43 pregnancies in 33 women with Takayasu arteritis reported that half had complications (Abisror, 2020). Authors described an increased risk of pregnancy-related hypertension and preeclampsia but overall favorable maternal and fetal outcomes. A review from Comarmond and colleagues (2020) cites a 5-percent life-threatening cardiovascular complication rate. Involvement of the abdominal aorta portends worse perinatal outcome (Sharma, 2000). Vaginal delivery is preferred, and epidural analgesia has been advocated for labor and delivery.

Other Vasculitides

Behçet disease is rare, and its prevalence approximates 1 case per 100,000 births (Lee, 2019). In one series of 298 pregnancies in 94 affected women, rates of miscarriage and smaller babies were higher than those in healthy controls (Gungor, 2014). Although greater risks for preeclampsia, preterm delivery, and venous thromboembolism are reported, pregnancy is not contraindicated (Elliot, 2019; Merlino, 2020).

Formerly *Churg-Strauss vasculitis*, eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis is rare in pregnancy (Jennette, 2013). One case report described a pregnant woman who responded to IVIG therapy (Hot, 2007). Another presented an affected 35-year-old woman at term whose necrotizing vasculitis involved the heart, and she subsequently underwent cardiac transplantation (Corradi, 2009). Edwards (2015) described one woman who developed postpartum relapses of this vasculitis in each of two pregnancies.

Henoch-Schönlein purpura is uncommon after childhood. Characteristic signs of the disorder include purpuric rash, arthralgia, abdominal pain, and gastrointestinal bleeding. In one review of 20 pregnancies complicated by this vasculitis, cutaneous lesions and arthralgias were present in three fourths and in approximately one half, respectively (Tayabali, 2012). Henoch-Schönlein purpura responds well to corticosteroid therapy, and pregnancy outcomes are generally good (Kalmantis, 2008).

INFLAMMATORY MYOPATHIES

These are acquired and potentially treatable causes of skeletal muscle weakness with a prevalence of 14 to 32 cases in 100,000 persons (Greenberg, 2018). Three major groups are polymyositis, dermatomyositis, and inclusion-body myositis, which all present with progressive asymmetrical muscle weakness. They have a variable association with connective tissue diseases, malignancy, drugs, systemic autoimmune disease such as Crohn disease, and viral, bacterial, and parasitic infections.

Polymyositis is a subacute inflammatory myopathy that is frequently associated with one of the autoimmune connective tissue disorders (Bitencourt, 2020; Munira, 2020). *Dermatomyositis* manifests as a characteristic rash accompanying or preceding weakness. Laboratory findings include elevated muscle enzyme levels in serum and an abnormal electromyogram. Confirmation is by biopsy, which shows perivascular and perimysial inflammatory infiltrates, vasculitis, and muscle fiber degeneration. It usually develops alone but can overlap with systemic sclerosis or mixed connective tissue disease.

Prevailing theories suggest that the syndromes are caused by viral infections, autoimmune disorders, or both. *Importantly, approximately 15 percent of adults who develop dermatomyositis have an associated malignant tumor*. The timing of myositis and tumor appearance may be separated by several years. The most common sites of associated cancer are breast, lung, stomach, and ovary. The disease usually responds to high-dose corticosteroid therapy, immunosuppressive drugs such as azathioprine or methotrexate, or IVIG (Dalakas, 2012; Linardaki, 2011).

Experiences in pregnancy are garnered mostly from case series and reviews. One cohort of 17 gravidas with polymyositis/dermatomyositis had higher rates of hypertension (23 percent), antepartum hemorrhage (11 percent), cesarean delivery (88 percent), and preterm birth (35 percent) compared with unaffected pregnant women (Chen, 2015). In another series of 60 women with dermatomyositis and 38 with polymyositis, 80 percent had no adverse effect on their disease. Similar results have been reported by others (Missumi, 2015; Pinal-Fernandez, 2014). Pregnancy outcome is related to dermatomyositis activity, and new-onset disease is particularly aggressive (Munira, 2020).

HEREDITARY CONNECTIVE TISSUE DISORDERS

Numerous inherited mutations involve genes that encode for structural proteins of bone, skin, cartilage, blood vessels, and basement membranes. Although connective tissues contain many complex macromolecules such as elastin and more than 30 proteoglycans, the most common constituents are fibrillar collagen types I, II, and III. Various mutations, some recessively and some dominantly inherited, result in clinical syndromes that include Marfan and Ehlers-Danlos syndromes, osteogenesis imperfecta, chondrodysplasias, and epidermolysis bulla. Of concern during pregnancy is the predilection for these disorders to result in aortic aneurysms (Schoenhoff, 2013).

Marfan Syndrome

This is an autosomal dominant connective tissue disorder that has a population prevalence of 1 case in 3000 to 5000 (Prockop, 2018). Marfan syndrome affects both sexes equally. The syndrome is due to abnormal fibrillin—a constituent of elastin—caused by any of several different mutations in the *FBN1* gene (Biggin, 2004). Located on chromosome 15q21, the *FBN1* gene has a high mutation rate. The lack of distinct genotype-phenotype correlation and large clinical variability limits the ability to predict disease severity in progeny. Currently, preimplantation genetic testing and prenatal diagnosis are limited to the 80 percent of cases in which the mutation in the *FBN1* gene is known (Smok, 2014).

In severe disease, the elastic lamina in the media of the aorta shows degeneration. This predisposes to aortic dilation or dissecting aneurysm, which appears more commonly during pregnancy (Curry, 2014; Roman, 2016). Marfan syndrome was found to underlie 65 percent of cases of aortic dissection in 27 pregnant women (Braverman, 2021). Marfan syndrome complicating pregnancy is discussed in more detail in Chapter 52 (p. 936).

Ehlers-Danlos Syndrome

This disease is characterized by various connective tissue changes, including skin hyperelasticity. Its prevalence is 7 cases per 100,000 births (Spiegel, 2020). Several disease types vary based on skin, joint, or other tissue involvement. In the more severe types, rupture of any of several arteries can cause either stroke or bleeding. Some types are autosomal dominant, some recessive, and some X-linked (Solomons, 2013). Types I, II, and III are autosomally dominant, and each accounts for approximately 30 percent of cases. Type IV is uncommon but is known to predispose to preterm delivery, great-vessel rupture, postpartum bleeding, and uterine rupture (Pepin, 2000). In most, the underlying molecular defect affects collagen or procollagen.

In general, women with Ehlers-Danlos syndrome have a higher frequency of preterm rupture of membranes, preterm delivery, antepartum and postpartum hemorrhage, placenta previa, and cervical insufficiency (Hurst, 2014; Spiegel, 2020). Several cases of spontaneous uterine rupture have been described (Rudd, 1983). Tissue fragility makes episiotomy repair and cesarean delivery difficult. A maternal and fetal death from spontaneous rupture of the right iliac artery has been reported (Esaka, 2009). In another case, a newborn was found to have multiple congenital skull fractures and intracranial hemorrhage caused by Ehlers-Danlos type VIIC (Bar-Yosef, 2008).

Osteogenesis Imperfecta

This disorder has a prevalence of 1 case in 20,000 births for type I and 1 case in 60,000 for type II (Prockop, 2018). It is characterized by brittle bones, and affected patients often have blue sclerae, hearing loss, multiple prior bone fractures, and dental abnormalities. There are up to 15 subtypes based on the causative gene and clinical picture, which ranges from mild to severe (Van Dijk, 2010). Genetic inheritance includes autosomal dominant, autosomal recessive, and sporadic patterns. Type I is the mildest form, and the typical mutation affects the *COL1A1* gene (Sykes, 1990). Type II is typically lethal in utero.

Women with osteogenesis imperfecta, most commonly type I, may have successful pregnancies. However, risks include fractures, complications related to scoliosis with restrictive lung disease, micrognathia, brittle teeth, an unstable cervical spine, uterine rupture, and cephalopelvic disproportion. A retrospective cohort of 295 women with osteogenesis imperfecta found greater risks of antepartum hemorrhage, placental abruption, fetal-growth restriction, congenital malformations, and preterm birth (Ruiter-Ligeti, 2016). It is not unusual for affected women to enter pregnancy with 20 to 30 prior fractures. Most require minimal treatment other than management of the fractures and consideration of bisphosphonates to decrease bone loss.

Depending on the type of osteogenesis imperfecta, the fetus may be affected and may also suffer fractures in utero or during delivery. Preimplantation genetic testing and prenatal diagnosis is available in many situations, if desired. In utero stem cell therapy is being evaluated (Couzin-Frankel, 2016).

REFERENCES

Abdul Hussain G, Azizieh F, Makhseed M, et al: Effects of progesterone, dydrogesterone and estrogen on the production of Th1/Th2/Th17 cytokines by lymphocytes from women with recurrent spontaneous miscarriage. J Reprod Immunol 140:103132, 2020

Abisror N, Mekinian A, Hachulla E, et al: Analysis of risk factors for complications and adverse obstetrical in women with Takayasu arteritis: a French retrospective study and literature review. Clin Rheumatol 39(9):2707, 2020

Abisror N, Mekinian A, Lachassinne E, et al: Autism spectrum disorders in babies born to mothers with antiphospholipid syndrome. Semin Arthritis Rheum 43(3):348, 2013

Ahmed K, Darakhshan A, Au E, et al: Postpartum spontaneous colonic perforation due to antiphospholipid syndrome. World J Gastroenterol 15(4):502, 2009

Alijotas-Reig J, Esteve-Valverde E, Ferrer-Oliveras R, et al: Comparative study of obstetric antiphospholipid syndrome (OAPS) and non-criteria obstetric APS (NC-OAPS): report of 1640 cases from the EUROAPS registry. Rheumatology (Oxford) 59(6):1306, 2020

Amengual O, Atsumi T, Khamashta MA: Tissue factor in antiphospholipid syndrome: shifting the focus from coagulation to endothelium. Rheumatology 42:1029, 2003

Amengual O, Fujita D, Otta E, et al: Primary prophylaxis to prevent obstetric complications in asymptomatic women with antiphospholipid antibodies: a systematic review. Lupus 24(11):1135, 2015

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Antiphospholipid syndrome. Practice Bulletin No. 132, December 2012, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Immune modulating therapies in pregnancy and lactation. Committee Opinion No. 776, March 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Low-dose aspirin use during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 743, June 2018, Reaffirmed 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Antepartum fetal surveillance. Practice Bulletin No. 229, May 2021a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Indications for outpatient antenatal fetal surveillance. Committee Opinion No. 828, May 2021b

Arbuckle MF, McClain MT, Ruberstone MV, et al: Development of autoantibodies before the clinical onset of systemic lupus erythematosus. N Engl J Med 349:1526, 2003

Arslan E, Branch DW: Antiphospholipid syndrome: diagnosis and management in the obstetric patient. Best Pract Clin Obstet Gynaecol 64:31, 2020

Artlett CM, Smith B, Jimenez SA: Identification of fetal DNA and cells in skin lesions from women with systemic sclerosis. N Engl J Med 338:1186, 1998

Avalos I, Tsokos GC: The role of complement in the antiphospholipid syndrome-associated pathology. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol 34(2–3):141, 2009

Baer AN, Witter FR, Petri M: Lupus and pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 66(10):639, 2011

Bar-Yosef O, Polak-Charcon S, Hoffman C, et al: Multiple congenital skull fractures as a presentation of Ehlers-Danlos syndrome type VIIC. Am J Med Genet A 146A:3054, 2008

Bernatsky S, Hudson M, Pope J, et al: Assessment of reproductive history in systemic sclerosis. Arthritis Rheum 59:1661, 2008

Berthelot JM, De Bandt M, Goupille P, et al: Exposition to anti-TNF drugs during pregnancy: outcome of 15 cases and review of the literature. Joint Bone Spine 76(1):28, 2009

Bertsias G, Ionnidis JP, Boletis J, et al: EULAR recommendations for the management of systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE). Ann Rheum Dis 67(2):195, 2008

Bharti B, Lindsay SP, Wingard DL, et al: Disease severity and pregnancy outcomes in women with rheumatoid arthritis: results from the Organization of Teratology Information Specialists Autoimmune Diseases in Pregnancy Project. J Rheumatol 42:1376, 2015

Biggin A, Holman K, Brett M, et al: Detection of thirty novel FBN1 mutations in patients with Marfan syndrome or a related fibrillinopathy. Hum Mutat 23:99, 2004

Binder WD, Traum AZ, Makar RS, et al: Case 37–2010: a 16-year-old girl with confusion, anemia, and thrombocytopenia. N Engl J Med 363(24):2352, 2010

Bitencourt N, Solow EB, Wright T, et al: Inflammatory myositis in systemic lupus erythematosus. Lupus 29(7):776, 2020

Blagojevic J, AlOdhaibi KA, Aly AM, et al: Pregnancy in systemic sclerosis: results of a systematic review and metaanalysis. J Rheumatol 47(6):881, 2020

Bramham K, Soh MC, Nelson-Piercy C: Pregnancy and renal outcomes in lupus nephritis: an update and guide to management. Lupus 21(12):1271, 2012

Branch DW, Gibson M, Silver RM: Recurrent miscarriage. N Engl J Med 363:18, 2010

Branch DW, Khamashta M: Antiphospholipid syndrome: obstetric diagnosis, management, and controversies. Obstet Gynecol 101:1333, 2003

Braverman AC, Mitaue E, Harris KM, et al: Clinical features and outcomes of pregnancy-related acute aortic dissection. JAMA Cardiol 6(1):58, 2021

Briggs GG, Towers CV, Forinash AB: Briggs Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation: A Reference Guide to Fetal and Neonatal Risk, 12th ed. Philadelphia, Wolters Kluwer, 2022

Brito-Zerón P, Pasoto SG, Robles-Marhuenda A, et al: Autoimmune congenital heart block and primary Sjögren's syndrome: characterization and outcomes of 49 cases. Clin Exp Rheumatol 38 Suppl 126(4):95, 2020

Burmester GR, Landewe R, Genovese MC, et al: Adalimumab long-term safety: infections, vaccination response and pregnancy outcomes in patients with rheumatoid arthritis. Ann Rheum Dis 76(2):414, 2017

Buyon JP, Kim MY, Guerra MM, et al: Predictors of pregnancy outcomes in patients with lupus: a cohort study. Ann Intern Med 163(3):153, 2015

Buyon JP, Winchester RJ, Slade SG, et al: Identification of mothers at risk for congenital heart block and other neonatal lupus syndromes in their children. Comparison of enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay and immunoblot for measurement of anti SSA/Ro and anti SSB/La antibodies. Arthritis Rheum 36:1263, 1993

Cabiddu G, Castellino S, Gernone G, et al: A best practice position statement on pregnancy in chronic kidney disease: the Italian Study Group on Kidney and Pregnancy. J Nephrol 29(3):277, 2016

Chakravarty EF, Khanna D, Chung L: Pregnancy outcomes in systemic sclerosis, primary pulmonary hypertension, and sickle cell disease. Obstet Gynecol 111(4):927, 2008

Chen JS, Roberts CL, Simpson JM, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with rare autoimmune diseases. Arthritis Rheumatol 67(12):3314, 2015

Chiou AS, Sun G, Kim J, et al: Cutaneous neonatal lupus arising in an infant conceived from an oocyte donation pregnancy. JAMA Dermatol 152(7):846, 2016

Cimaz R, Spence DL, Hornberger L, et al: Incidence and spectrum of neonatal lupus erythematosus: a prospective study of infants born to mothers with anti-Ro autoantibodies. J Pediatr 142(6):678, 2003

Clark CA, Spitzer KA, Crowther MA, et al: Incidence of postpartum thrombosis and preterm delivery in women with antiphospholipid antibodies and recurrent pregnancy loss. J Rheumatol 34:992, 2007

Clark KE, Etomi O, Ong VH: Systemic sclerosis in pregnancy. Obstet Med 13(3):105, 2020

Clowse ME, Jamison M, Myers E, et al: A national study of the complications of lupus in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199:127.e1, 2008

Cohen D, Buurma A, Goemaere NN, et al: Classical complement activation as a footprint for murine and human antiphospholipid antibody-induced fetal loss. J Pathol 225(4):502, 2011

Comarmond C, Saadoun D, Nizard J, et al: Pregnancy issues in Takayasu arteritis. Semin Arthritis Rheum 50(5):911, 2020

Corradi D, Maestri R, Facchetti F: Postpartum Churg-Strauss syndrome with severe cardiac involvement: description of a case and review of the literature. Clin Rheumatol 28(6):739, 2009

Couzin-Frankel J: The savior cells? Science 352(6283):284, 2016

Cruz GI, Shao X, Quach H, et al: A child's HLA-DRBI genotype increases maternal risk of systemic lupus erythematosus. J Autoimmun 74:201, 2016

Curry R, Gelson E, Swan L, et al: Marfan syndrome and pregnancy: maternal and neonatal outcomes. BJOG 121(5):610, 2014

Daher A, Sauvetre G, Girszyn N, et al: Granulomatosis with polyangiitis and pregnancy: a case report and review of the literature. Obstet Med 13(2):76, 2020

da Silva Florim GM, Caldas HC, Pavarino EC, et al: Variables associated to fetal microchimerism in systemic lupus erythematosus patients. Clin Rheumatol 35(1):107, 2016

D'Cruz D: Renal manifestations of the antiphospholipid syndrome. Curr Rheumatol Rep 11(1):52, 2009

de Jesus GR, Rodrigues G, de Jesus NR, et al: Pregnancy morbidity in antiphospholipid syndrome: what is the impact of treatment? Curr Rheumatol Rep 16:403, 2014

de Jesus GR, Rodrigues BC, Lacerda MI, et al: Gestational outcomes in patients with neuropsychiatric systemic lupus erythematosus. Lupus 26:537, 2017

Dizon-Townson D, Branch DW: Anticoagulant treatment during pregnancy: an update. Semin Thromb Hemost 24:55S, 1998

Dong Y, Yuan F, Dai Z, et al: Preeclampsia in systemic lupus erythematosus pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Clin Rheumatol 39(2):319, 2020

Edwards MH, Curtis EM, Ledingham JM: Postpartum onset and subsequent relapse of eosinophilic granulomatosis with polyangiitis. BMJ Case Rep 2015:bcr2015210373, 2015

Egerman RS, Ramsey RD, Kao LW, et al: Hypertensive disease in pregnancies complicated by systemic lupus erythematosus. Am J Obstet Gynecol 193:1676, 2005

Elliot B, Spence AR, Czuzoj-Shulman N, et al: Effect of Sjögren's syndrome on maternal and neonatal outcomes or pregnancy. J Perinat Med 47(6):637, 2019

Empson M, Lassere M, Craig J, et al: Prevention of recurrent miscarriage for women with antiphospholipid antibody or lupus anticoagulant. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD002859, 2005

Engel NM, Gramke HF, Peeters L, et al: Combined spinal-epidural anaesthesia for a woman with Wegener's granulomatosis with subglottic stenosis. Int J Obstet Anesth 20(1):94, 2011

Ernest JM, Marshburn PB, Kutteh WH: Obstetric antiphospholipid syndrome: an update on pathophysiology and management. Semin Reprod Med 29:522, 2011

Esaka EJ, Golde SH, Stever MR, et al: A maternal and perinatal mortality in pregnancy complicated by the kyphoscoliotic form of Ehlers-Danlos syndrome. Obstet Gynecol 113(2):515, 2009
Eudy AM, McDaniel G, Clowse ME: Pregnancy in rheumatoid arthritis: a retrospective study. Clin Rheumatol 37(3):789, 2018
Förger F, Villiger PM: Immunological adaptations in pregnancy that modulate rheumatoid arthritis disease activity. Nat Rev Rheumatol 16(2):113, 2020
Gabbay-Benziv R, Zafrir-Danieli H, Blickstein D, et al: Antiphospholipid syndrome characteristics and adverse pregnancy outcomes after 20 weeks of pregnancy. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 142(2):214, 2018
Garcia D, Erkan D: Diagnosis and management of the antiphospholipid syndrome. N Engl J Med 378(21):2010, 2018
Giannakopoulos B, Krilis SA: The pathogenesis of the antiphospholipid syndrome. N Engl J Med 368:1033, 2013
Greenberg SA, Amato AA: Inflammatory myopathies. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2018
Goodman R, Dellaripa PF, Miller AL, et al: An unusual case of abdominal pain. N Engl J Med 370:70, 2014
Gungor AN, Kalkan G, Oguz S, et al: Behçet disease and pregnancy. Clin Exp Obstet Gynecol 41(6):617, 2014
Guthrie KA, Dugowson CE, Voigt LF, et al: Does pregnancy provide vaccine-like protection against rheumatoid arthritis? Arthritis Rheum 62(7):1842, 2010
Haddow JE, Rote NS, Dostal-Johnson D, et al: Lack of an association between late fetal death and antiphospholipid antibody measurements in the 2nd trimester. Am J Obstet Gynecol 165:1308, 1991
Hahn BH: Systemic lupus erythematosus. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2018
Hamed HO, Ahmed SR, Alzolibani A, et al: Does cutaneous lupus erythematosus have more favorable pregnancy outcomes than systemic disease? A two-center study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 92(8):934, 2013
Hamulyák EN, Scheres LJ, Marijnen MC, et al: Aspirin or heparin or both for improving pregnancy outcomes in women with persistent antiphospholipid antibodies and recurrent pregnancy loss. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5(5):CD012852, 2020
Hanly JG, Gladman DD, Rose TH, et al: Lupus pregnancy: a prospective study of placental changes. Arthritis Rheum 31:358, 1988
Häupl T, Østensen M, Grützkau A, et al: Interaction between rheumatoid arthritis and pregnancy: correlation of molecular data with clinical disease activity measures. Rheumatology (Oxford) 47(Suppl l):19, 2008a
Häupl T, Østensen M, Grützkau A, et al: Reactivation of rheumatoid arthritis after pregnancy: increased phagocyte and recurring lymphocyte gene activity. Arthritis Rheum 58(10):2981, 2008b
He WR, Wei H: Maternal and fetal complications associated with systemic lupus erythematosus: an updated meta-analysis of the most recent studies (2017–2019). Medicine (Baltimore) 99(16):e19797, 2020
Holers VM, Girardi G, Mo L, et al: Complement C3 activation is required for antiphospholipid antibody-induced fetal loss. J Exp Med 195:211, 2002
Hot A, Perard L, Coppere B, et al: Marked improvement of Churg-Strauss vasculitis with intravenous gamma globulins during pregnancy. Clin Rheumatol 26(12):2149, 2007
Hoxha A, Calligaro A, Di Poi E, et al: Pregnancy and foetal outcomes following anti-tumor-necrosis factor alpha therapy: a prospective multicentre study. Joint Bone Spine 84(2):169, 2017
Hurst BS, Lange SS, Kullstam SM, et al: Obstetric and gynecologic challenges in women with Ehlers-Danlos syndrome. Obstet Gynecol 123(3):506, 2014
Ince-Askan H, Hazes JM, Dolhain RJ: Identifying clinical factors associated with low disease activity and remission of rheumatoid arthritis during pregnancy. Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken) 69(9):1297, 2017
Ivanchenko M, Thorlacius GE, Hedlund M, et al: Natural killer cells and type II interferon in Ro/SSA and La/SSB autoantibody-exposed newborns at risk of congenital heart block. Ann Rheum Dis 80(2):194, 2021
Izmirly P, Kim M, Freidman DM, et al: Hydroxychloroquine to prevent recurrent congenital heart block in fetuses of anti-SSA/Ro-positive mothers. J Am Coll Cardiol 76(3):292, 2020
Izmirly PM, Kim MY, Llanos C, et al: Evaluation of the risk of anti-SSA/Ro-SSB/La antibody-associated cardiac manifestations of neonatal lupus in fetuses of mothers with systemic lupus erythematosus exposed to hydroxychloroquine. Ann Rheum Dis 69(10):1827, 2010
Izmirly PM, Saxena AM, Kim MY, et al: Maternal and fetal factors associated with mortality and morbidity in a multi–racial/ethnic registry of anti-SSA/Ro–associated cardiac neonatal lupus. Circulation 124:1927, 2011
Izmirly PM, Wan I, Sahl S, et al: The incidence and prevalence of systemic lupus erythematosus in New York County (Manhattan), New York: The Manhattan Lupus Surveillance Program. Arthritis Rheumatol 69(10):2006, 2017
Jennette JC, Falk RJ, Bacon PA, et al: 2012 revised International Chapel Hill Consensus Conference nomenclature of vasculitides. Arthritis Rheum 65(1):1, 2013
Jethwa H, Lam S, Smith C, et al: Dose rheumatoid arthritis really improve during pregnancy? A systematic review and metaanalysis. J Rheumatol 46(3):245, 2019
Jimenez SA, Artlett CM: Microchimerism and systemic sclerosis. Curr Opin Rheumatol 17:86, 2005
Kalmantis K, Daskalakis G, Iavazzo C, et al: Henoch-Schonlein purpura in pregnancy. J Obstet Gynecol 28(4):403, 2008
Kirshenbaum M, Simchen MJ: Pregnancy outcome in patients with Takayasu's arteritis: cohort study and review of the literature. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(21):2877, 2018
Kishore S, Mittal V, Majithia V: Obstetric outcomes in women with rheumatoid arthritis: results from nationwide inpatient sample database 2003–2011. Semin Arthritis Rheum 49(2):236, 2019
Kither H, Heazell A, Bruce IN, et al: Adverse pregnancy outcomes and subsequent development of connective tissue disease in the UK: an epidemiological study. BJOG 127(8):941, 2020
Koukoura O, Mantas N, Linardakis H, et al: Successful term pregnancy in a patient with Wegener's granulomatosis: case report and literature review. Fertil Steril 89:457.e1, 2008
Kozora E, Arciniegas DB, Filley CM, et al: Cognitive and neurologic status in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus without major neuropsychiatric syndromes. Arthritis Rheum 59:1639, 2008
Kuriya B, Hernández-Díaz S, Liu J, et al: Patterns of medication use during pregnancy in rheumatoid arthritis. Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken) 63(5):721, 2011
Kurkó J, Besenyei T, Laki J, et al: Genetics of rheumatoid arthritis—a comprehensive review. Clin Rev Allergy Immunol 45(2):170, 2013
Kwak-Kim J, Agcaoili MSL, Aleta L, et al: Management of women with recurrent pregnancy losses and antiphospholipid antibody syndrome. Am J Reprod Immunol 69(6):596, 2013
Lambe M, Bjornadal L, Neregard P, et al: Childbearing and the risk of scleroderma: a population-based study in Sweden. Am J Epidemiol 159:162, 2004
Langford CA, Fauci AS: The vasculitis syndromes. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2018
Lateef A, Petri M: Systemic lupus erythematosus and pregnancy. Rheum Dis Clin North Am 43(2):215, 2017
Latino JO, Udry S, Aranda F, et al: Risk factors for early severe preeclampsia in obstetric antiphospholipid syndrome with conventional treatment. The impact of hydroxychloroquine. Lupus 29(13):1736, 2020
Laurinaviciene R, Sandholt LH, Bygum A: Drug-induced cutaneous lupus erythematosus: 88 new cases. Eur J Dermatol 27(1):28, 2017
Lazzaroni MG, Dall'Ara F, Fredi M, et al: A comprehensive review of the clinical approach to pregnancy and systemic lupus erythematosus. J Autoimmun 74:106, 2016
Lee ES, Bou-Gharios G, Seppanen E, et al: Fetal stem cell microchimerism: natural-born healers or killers? Mol Hum Reprod 16(11):869, 2010
Lee S, Czuzoj-Shulman N, Abenhaim HA: Behçhet's disease in pregnancy: obstetrical and neonatal outcomes in a population-based cohort of 12 million births. J Perinat Med 47:381, 2019
Lefkou E, Mamopoulos A, Dagklis T, et al: Pravastatin improves pregnancy outcomes in obstetric antiphospholipid syndrome refractory to antithrombotic therapy. J Clin Invest 126(8):2933, 2016
Linardaki G, Cherouvim E, Goni G, et al: Intravenous immunoglobulin treatment for pregnancy-associated dermatomyositis. Rheumatol Int 31(1):113, 2011
Liu XL, Xiao J, Zhu F: Anti-beta2 glycoprotein I antibodies and pregnancy outcome in antiphospholipid syndrome. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 92(2):234, 2013
Lockshin MD, Druzin ML: Rheumatic disease. In Barron WM, Lindheimer JD (eds): Medical Disorders During Pregnancy, 2nd ed. St. Louis, Mosby, 1995
Marder W: Update on pregnancy complications in systemic lupus erythematosus. Curr Opin Rheumatol 31(6):650, 2019
Maynard S, Guerrier G, Duffy M: Pregnancy in women with systemic lupus and lupus nephritis. Adv Chronic Kidney Dis 26(5):330, 2019
McInnes IB, Schett G: The pathogenesis of rheumatoid arthritis. N Engl J Med 365(23):2205, 2011

Mekinian A, Bourrienne MC, Carbillon L, et al: Non-conventional antiphospholipid antibodies in patients with clinical obstetrical APS: prevalence and treatment efficacy in pregnancies. Semin Arthritis Rheum 46(2):232, 2016
Mekinian A, Lazzaroni MG, Kuzenko A, et al: The efficacy of hydroxychloroquine for obstetrical outcome in anti-phospholipid syndrome: data from a European multicenter retrospective study. Autoimmun Rev 14(6):498, 2015
Merlino L, Del Prete F, Lobozzo B, et al: Behcet's disease and pregnancy: a review of the literature. Minerva Ginecol 72(5):332, 2020
Meroni PL, Borghi MO, Raschi E, et al: Pathogenesis of antiphospholipid syndrome: understanding the antibodies. Nat Rev Rheumatol 7(6):330, 2011
Missumi LS, Souza FH, Andrade JQ, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in dermatomyositis and polymyositis patients. Rev Bras Reumatol 55(2):95, 2015
Mohamed MA, Goldman C, El-Dib M, et al: Maternal juvenile rheumatoid arthritis may be associated with preterm birth but not poor fetal growth. J Perinatol 36(4):268, 2016
Moroni G, Doria A, Giglio E, et al: Maternal outcome in pregnant women with lupus nephritis. A prospective multicenter study. J Autoimmun 74:194, 2016
Moroni G, Ponticelli C: Pregnancy after lupus nephritis. Lupus 14:89, 2005
Motta M, Boffa MC, Tincani A, et al: Follow-up of babies born to mothers with antiphospholipid syndrome: preliminary data from the European neonatal registry. Lupus 21(7):761, 2012
Moutsopoulos HM, Vlachoyiannopoulos PG: Antiphospholipid syndrome. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2018
Munira S, Stine LC: Pregnancy in myositis and scleroderma. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 64:59, 2020
Musiej-Nowakowska E, Ploski R: Pregnancy and early onset pauciarticular juvenile chronic arthritis. Ann Rheum Dis 58:475, 1999
Nalli C, Iodice A, Andreoli L, et al: Long-term neurodevelopmental outcome of children born to prospectively followed pregnancies of women with systemic lupus erythematosus and/or antiphospholipid syndrome. Lupus 26:552, 2017
Nelson JL, Hughes KA, Smith AG, et al: Maternal–fetal disparity in HLA class II alloantigens and the pregnancy-induced amelioration of rheumatoid arthritis. N Engl J Med 329:466, 1993
Nguyen V, Wuebbolt D, Pagnoux C, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with primary systemic vasculitis: a retrospective study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 34(17):2771, 2021
Østensen M: Pregnancy in patients with a history of juvenile rheumatoid arthritis. Arthritis Rheum 34:881, 1991
Owen J, Hauth JC: Polyarteritis nodosa in pregnancy: a case report and brief literature review. Am J Obstet Gynecol 160:606, 1989
Pagnoux C: Updates in ANCA-associated vasculitis. Eur J Rheumatol 3(3):122, 2016
Pagnoux C, Le Guern V, Goffinet F, et al: Pregnancies in systemic necrotizing vasculitides: report on 12 women and their 20 pregnancies. Rheumatology (Oxford) 50(5):953, 2011
Parikh SV, Almaani S, Brodsky S, et al: Update on lupus nephritis: core curriculum 2020. Am J Kidney Dis 76(2):265, 2020
Partlett R, Roussou E: The treatment of rheumatoid arthritis during pregnancy. Rheumatol Int 31(4):445, 2011
Peart E, Clowse ME: Systemic lupus erythematosus and pregnancy outcomes: an update and review of the literature. Curr Opin Rheumatol 26(2):118, 2014
Pepin M, Schwarze U, Superti-Furga A, et al: Clinical and genetic features of Ehlers-Danlos syndrome type IV, the vascular type. N Engl J Med 342:673, 2000
Petri M: Pregnancy and systemic lupus erythematosus. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 64:24, 2020a
Petri M: Systemic lupus erythematosus. Obstet Gynecol 136(1):226, 2020b
Petri M, Kallas R: Lupus in pregnancy. Contemporary OB/GYN 64(3):24, 2019
Petri M, Kim MY, Kalunian KC, et al: Combined oral contraceptives in women with systemic lupus erythematosus. N Engl J Med 353:2550, 2005
Petri M, The Hopkins Lupus Pregnancy Center: Ten key issues in management. Rheum Dis Clin North Am 33:227, 2007
Phansenee S, Sekararithi R, Jatavan P, et al: Pregnancy outcomes among women with systemic lupus erythematosus: a retrospective cohort study from Thailand. Lupus 27(1):158, 2018
Pierro E, Cirino G, Bucci MR, et al: Antiphospholipid antibodies inhibit prostaglandin release by decidual cells of early pregnancy: possible involvement of extracellular secretory phospholipase A2. Fertil Steril 71:342, 1999
Pikwer M, Bergström U, Nilsson JA, et al: Breast feeding, but not use of oral contraceptives, is associated with a reduced risk of rheumatoid arthritis. Ann Rheum Dis 68(4):526, 2009
Pinal-Fernandez I, Selva-O'Callaghan A, Fernandez-Codina A, et al: Pregnancy in adult-onset idiopathic inflammatory myopathy: report from a cohort of myositis patients from a single center. Semin Arthritis Rheum 44(2):234, 2014
Pons-Estel GJ, Alarcón GS, Scofield L, et al: Understanding the epidemiology and progression of systemic lupus erythematosus. Semin Arthritis Rheum 39(4):257, 2010
Prockop DJ, Bateman JF: Heritable disorders of connective tissue. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2018
Putterman C, Wu A, Reiner-Benaim A, et al: SLE-key rule-out serologic test for excluding the diagnosis of systemic lupus erythematosus: developing the ImmunArray iCHIP. J Immunol Methods 429:1, 2016
Radin M, Schreiber K, Cecchi I, et al: A multicentre study of 244 pregnancies in undifferentiated connective tissue disease: maternal/fetal outcomes and disease evolution. Rheumatology (Oxford) 59(9):2412, 2020
Rahman A: Management of antiphospholipid syndrome. Clin Rheumatol 39(7):211, 2020
Raine C, Austin K, Giles I: Mechanisms determining the amelioration of rheumatoid arthritis in pregnancy: a systematic review. Semin Arthritis Rheum 50(6):1357, 2020
Rak JM, Pagni PP, Tiev K, et al: Male microchimerism and HLA compatibility in French women with scleroderma: a different profile in limited and diffuse subset. Rheumatology 48(4):363, 2009
Rand JH, Wu XX, Andree HA, et al: Antiphospholipid antibodies accelerate plasma coagulation by inhibiting annexin-V binding to phospholipids: a "lupus procoagulant" phenomenon. Blood 92:1652, 1998
Rand JH, Wu XX, Andree HA, et al: Pregnancy loss in the antiphospholipid antibody syndrome—a possible thrombogenic mechanism. N Engl J Med 337:154, 1997
Remaeus K, Johansson K, Askling J, et al: Juvenile onset arthritis and pregnancy outcome: a population-based cohort study. Ann Rheum Dis 76:1809, 2017
Riancho-Zarrabeitia L, Martínez-Taboada V, Rúa-Figueroa I, et al: Antiphospholipid syndrome (APS) in patients with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) implies a more severe disease with more damage accrual and higher mortality. Lupus 29(12):1556, 2020
Ritchie J, Smyth A, Tower C, et al: Maternal deaths in women with lupus nephritis: a review of published evidence. Lupus 21(5):534, 2012
Robertson B, Greaves M: Antiphospholipid syndrome: an evolving story. Blood Reviews 20:201, 2006
Robinson DP, Klein SL: Pregnancy and pregnancy-associated hormones alter immune responses and disease pathogenesis. Horm Behav 62(3):263, 2012
Rodrigues BC, Lacerda MI, Ramires de Jesús GR, et al: The impact of different classes of lupus nephritis on maternal and fetal outcomes: a cohort study of 147 pregnancies. Lupus 28(4):492, 2019
Rom AL, Wu CS, Olsen J, et al: Fetal growth and preterm birth in children exposed to maternal or paternal rheumatoid arthritis. A nationwide cohort study. Arthritis Rheumatol 66:3265, 2014
Roman MJ, Pugh NL, Hendershot TP, et al: Aortic complications associated with pregnancy in Marfan syndrome: the NHLBI National Registry of Genetically Triggered Thoracic Aortic Aneurysms and Cardiovascular Conditions (GenTAC). J Am Heart Assoc 5(8), 2016
Roque H, Paidas M, Funai E, et al: Maternal thrombophilias are not associated with early pregnancy loss. Thromb Haemost 91(2):290, 2004
Ross C, D'Souza R, Pagnoux C: Pregnancy outcomes in systemic vasculitides. Curr Rheumatol Rep 22(10):63, 2020
Rudd NL, Nimrod C, Holbrook KA, et al: Pregnancy complications in type IV Ehlers-Danlos syndrome. Lancet 1(8314-5):50, 1983
Rudder M, Russo M, Ventetuolo CE: Breathing for two. N Engl J Med 384:61, 2021
Ruffatti A, Tonello M, Visentin MS, et al: Risk factors for pregnancy failure in patients with anti-phospholipid syndrome treated with conventional therapies: a multicentre, case-control study. Rheumatology 50(9):1684, 2011
Ruiter-Ligeti J, Czuzoj-Shulman N, Spence AR, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with osteogenesis imperfecta: a retrospective cohort study. J Perinatol 36(10):828, 2016
Saccone G, Maruotti GM, Berghella V, et al: Obstetric outcomes in pregnant women with primary antiphospholipid syndrome according to the antibody profile: the PREGNANTS study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(5):525.e1, 2017
Sammaritano LR, Bermas BL, Chakravarty EE, et al: 2020 American College of Rheumatology guidelines for the management of reproductive health in rheumatic and musculoskeletal diseases. Arthritis Rheumatol 72(4):529, 2020
Sánchez-Guerrero J, Uribe AG, Jiménez-Santana L, et al: A trial of contraceptive methods in women with systemic lupus erythematosus. N Engl J Med 353:2539, 2005

Schoenhoff F, Schmidli J, Czerny M, et al: Management of aortic aneurysms in patients with connective tissue disease. J Cardiovasc Surg 54(1 suppl 1):125, 2013
Schreiber K, Hunt BJ: Pregnancy and antiphospholipid syndrome. Semin Thromb Hemost 42(7):780, 2016
Sciascia S, Hunt BJ, Talavera-Garcia E, et al: The impact of hydroxychloroquine treatment on pregnancy outcome in women with antiphospholipid antibodies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(2):273.e1, 2016
Shah A, St. Clair EW: Rheumatoid arthritis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2018
Sharma BK, Jain S, Vasishta K: Outcome of pregnancy in Takayasu arteritis. Int J Cardiol 75:S159, 2000
Shinohara K, Miyagawa S, Fujita T, et al: Neonatal lupus erythematosus: results of maternal corticosteroid therapy. Obstet Gynecol 93:952, 1999
Silman A, Kay A, Brennan P: Timing of pregnancy in relation to the onset of rheumatoid arthritis. Arthritis Rheum 35:152, 1992
Silver RM, Parker CB, Reddy UM, et al: Antiphospholipid antibodies in stillbirth. Obstet Gynecol 122(3):641, 2013
Silverman E, Jaeggi E: Non-cardiac manifestations of neonatal lupus erythematosus. Scand J Immunol 72:223, 2010
Simchen MJ, Goldstein G, Lubetsky A, et al: Factor V Leiden and antiphospholipid antibodies in either mothers or infants increase the risk for perinatal arterial ischemic stroke. Stroke 40(1):65, 2009
Simpson JL: Cell-free fetal DNA and maternal serum analytes for monitoring embryonic and fetal status. Fertil Steril 99(4):1124, 2013
Singh JA, Saag KG, Bridges SL Jr, et al: 2015 American College of Rheumatology Guideline for the management of rheumatoid arthritis. Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken) 68(1):1, 2016
Singh N, Tyagi S, Tripathi R, et al: Maternal and fetal outcomes in pregnant women with Takayasu aortoarteritis: does optimally timed intervention in women with renal artery involvement improve pregnancy outcome? Taiwan J Obstet Gynecol 54(5):597, 2015
Smok DA: Aortopathy in pregnancy. Semin Perinatol 38(5):295, 2014
Sneller MC: Wegener's granulomatosis. JAMA 273:1288, 1995
Sobanski V, Launay D, Depret S, et al: Special considerations in pregnant systemic sclerosis patients. Expert Rev Clin Immunol 12(11):1161, 2016
Solomons J, Coucke P, Symoens S, et al: Dermatosparaxis (Ehlers-Danlos type VIIC): prenatal diagnosis following a previous pregnancy with unexpected skull fractures at delivery. Am J Med Genet A 161(5):1122, 2013
Spiegel E, Nicholls-Dempsey L, Czuzoj-Shulman N, et al: Pregnancy outcomes in women with Ehlers-Danlos syndrome. J Matern Fetal neonatal Med July 13, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Spinillo A, Beneventi F, Locatelli E, et al: The impact of unrecognized autoimmune rheumatic diseases on the incidence of preeclampsia and fetal growth restriction: a longitudinal cohort study. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 16(1):313, 2016
Srivatsa B, Srivatsa S, Johnson K, et al: Microchimerism of presumed fetal origin in thyroid specimens from women: a case-control study. Lancet 358:2034, 2001
Steen VD: Pregnancy in women with systemic sclerosis. Obstet Gynecol 94:15, 1999
Stevens AM. Maternal microchimerism in health and disease. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynecol 31:121, 2016
Stojan G, Baer AN: Flares of systemic lupus erythematosus during pregnancy and the puerperium: prevention, diagnosis and management. Expert Rev Clin Immunol 8(5):439, 2012
Stojan G, Petri M: Epidemiology of systemic lupus erythematosus: an update. Curr Opin Rheumatol 30(2):144, 2018
Sykes B, Ogilvie D, Wordsworth P, et al: Consistent linkage of dominantly inherited osteogenesis imperfecta to the type I collagen loci: COL1A1 and COL1A2. Am J Hum Genet 46(2):293, 1990
Taraborelli M, Ramoni V, Brucato A, et al: Brief report: successful pregnancies but a higher risk of preterm births in patients with systemic sclerosis: an Italian multicenter study. Arthritis Rheum 64(6):1970, 2012
Tayabali S, Andersen K, Yoong W: Diagnosis and management of Henoch-Schönlein purpura in pregnancy: a review of the literature. Arch Gynecol Obstet 286(4):825, 2012
Tenti S, Cheleschi S, Guidelli GM, et al: Intravenous immunoglobulins and antiphospholipid syndrome: how, when and why? A review of the literature. Autoimmun Rev 15(3):226, 2016
Tincani A, Rebaioli CB, Andreoli L, et al: Neonatal effects of maternal antiphospholipid syndrome. Curr Rheumatol Rep 11(1):70, 2009
Toglia MR, Weg JG: Venous thromboembolism during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 335:108, 1996
Tower C, Mathen S, Crocker I, et al: Regulatory T cells in systemic lupus erythematosus and pregnancy. Am J Reprod Immunol 69(6):588, 2013
Tsokos GC: Systemic lupus erythematosus. N Engl J Med 365(22):2110, 2011
Unger A, Kay A, Griffin AJ, et al: Disease activity and pregnancy associated beta$_2$-glycoprotein in rheumatoid arthritis. BMJ 286:750, 1983
Van Dijk FS, Pals G, Van Rijn RR, et al: Classification of osteogenesis imperfecta revisited. Eur J Med Genet 53(1):1, 2010
Varga J: Systemic sclerosis (scleroderma) and related disorders. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2018
Wagner S, Craici I, Reed D, et al: Maternal and foetal outcomes in pregnant patients with active lupus nephritis. Lupus 18(4)342, 2009
Waldorf KM, Nelson JL: Autoimmune disease during pregnancy and the microchimerism legacy of pregnancy. Immunol Invest 37:631, 2008
Wallenius M, Salvesen KA, Daltveit AK, et al: Rheumatoid arthritis and outcomes in first and subsequent births based on data from a national birth registry. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 93(3):302, 2014
Wong LF, Porter TF, Scott JR: Immunotherapy for recurrent miscarriage. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD000112, 2014
Wu H, Birmingham DJ, Rovin B, et al: D-dimer level and the risk for thrombosis in systemic lupus erythematosus. Clin J Am Soc Nephrol 3:1628, 2008
Yang W, Tang H, Zhang Y, et al: Meta-analysis followed by replication identifies loci in or near CDKN1B, TET3, CD80, DRAM1, and ARID5B as associated with systemic lupus erythematosus in Asians. Am J Hum Genet 92(1):41, 2013
Ye Y, van Zyl B, Varsani H, et al: Maternal microchimerism in muscle biopsies from children with juvenile dermatomyositis. Rheumatology (Oxford) 51(6):987, 2012
Zangari M, Lockwood CJ, Scher J, et al: Prothrombin activation fragment (F1.2) is increased in pregnant patients with antiphospholipid antibodies. Thromb Res 85:177, 1997
Zhao C, Zhao J, Huang Y, et al: New-onset systemic lupus erythematosus during pregnancy. Clin Rheumatol 32(6):815, 2013
Zucchi D, Tani C, Monacco F, et al: pregnancy and undifferentiated connective tissue disease: outcome and risk of flare in 100 pregnancies. Rheumatology (Oxford) 59(6):1335, 2020
Zuppa AA, Riccardi R, Frezza A, et al: Neonatal lupus: follow-up in infants with anti SSA/Ro antibodies and review of the literature. Autoimmun Rev 16:427, 2017

CHAPTER 63

Neurological Disorders

Many neurological disorders precede pregnancy. Most affected women will have successful perinatal outcomes, although some disorders carry specific risks. Other women will have new-onset neurological symptoms during pregnancy, and these must be distinguished from pregnancy complications. Neurovascular disorders are an important cause of maternal mortality and accounted for more than 7 percent of maternal deaths in the United States from 2007 through 2016 (Petersen, 2019). Psychiatric disorders can manifest with cognitive and neuromuscular abnormalities and should be considered in the evaluation of neurological symptoms.

CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM IMAGING

Computed tomography (CT) and magnetic resonance (MR) imaging assist in the diagnosis, classification, and management of many neurological disorders. As discussed in Chapter 49, (p. 873), these can be used safely during pregnancy (Chansakul, 2017; Lum, 2020). CT scanning is often used when rapid diagnosis is necessary and is excellent for detecting recent hemorrhage. That said, MR imaging is often preferred and is particularly helpful to diagnose demyelinating diseases, arteriovenous malformations (AVMs), congenital and developmental nervous system abnormalities, posterior fossa lesions, and spinal cord diseases (Jamieson, 2020). Whenever either modality is employed, a woman with advanced pregnancy should be positioned in a lateral tilt with a wedge under one hip to prevent hypotension and to diminish aortic pulsations, which may degrade the image.

Cerebral angiography with contrast injection, usually via the femoral artery, is a valuable adjunct to the diagnosis and treatment of some cerebrovascular diseases. Fluoroscopy delivers more radiation but can be performed with abdominal shielding. Positron emission tomography (PET) and functional MR imaging (fMRI) have not been evaluated in detail for use in gravidas (van den Heuvel, 2016).

HEADACHE

In one national survey in the United States in 2012, 17 percent of persons aged 18 to 44 years reported a severe headache or migraine within the past 3 months (Blackwell, 2014). Burch and coworkers (2015) reported that 24 percent of nonpregnant women in this age group were similarly affected. Of pregnant women presenting with headache who received a neurological consultation, two thirds were due to primary disorders. The diagnosis was migraine in more than 90 percent. Of the other third due to secondary conditions, more than half stemmed from hypertensive disorders (Robbins, 2015). In one recent observational study at University of Texas Southwestern's Clements University Hospital, 20 percent of emergency department postpartum visits were for headache (Rodriguez, 2021).

TABLE 63-1. Headache Classification

Primary
Migraine
Tension-type
Trigeminal cephalalgia
Other

Secondary
Trauma
Vascular disorders
Substance abuse
Infection
Disorders of homeostasis
Craniofacial disorders
Psychiatric disorders

The classification by the International Headache Society (2018) is shown in Table 63-1. As discussed, in pregnant women, primary headaches are more common than those derived from secondary causes (Sperling, 2015). Migraine headaches are those most likely to be affected by the hormonal changes of pregnancy (Pavlovic, 2017). The incidences of different etiologies of severe headaches in pregnancy are shown in Figure 63-1 (Robbins, 2015).

Tension Headache

These are the most frequent cause of all headaches. They may be episodic or chronic. Their characteristic muscle tightness and mild to moderate pain in the back of the neck and head can persist for hours. Importantly, neurological disturbances or nausea are typically absent, which distinguishes them from migraines. The pain usually responds to rest, massage, local heat or ice, nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), or mild tranquilizers. Hospital admission is seldom necessary. For chronic headaches, amitriptyline can be effective (Goadsby, 2018).

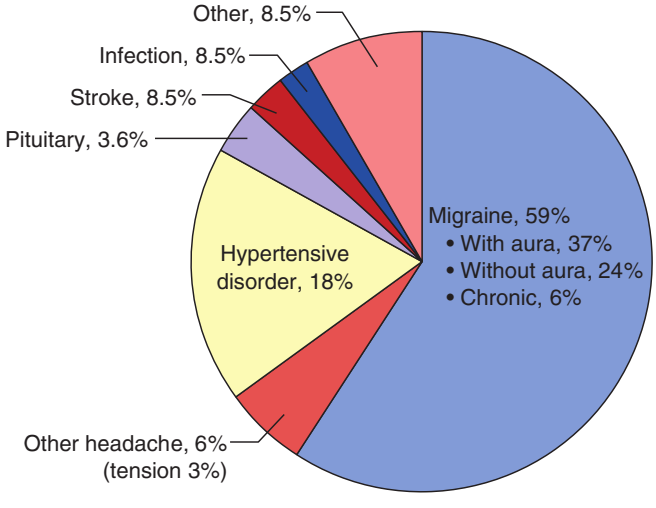


FIGURE 63-1 Incidences of headache causes in 140 consecutive pregnant women for whom in-hospital neurology consultation was requested.

Migraine Headache

This is a periodic, sometimes incapacitating neurological disorder with episodic attacks of severe headache and autonomic nervous system dysfunction (Ashina, 2020; Charles, 2017). The International Headache Society (2018) classifies three migraine types based on chronicity and on the presence or absence of an aura.

1. *Migraine without aura*-formerly termed common migraine-is characterized by a unilateral throbbing headache, nausea and vomiting, or photophobia.
2. *Migraine with aura*-formerly termed classic migraine-has similar symptoms preceded by premonitory neurological phenomena such as visual scotoma or hallucinations. A third of patients have this type, which sometimes can be averted if medication is taken at the *first premonitory sign.*
3. *Chronic* migraine is defined by a migraine headache occurring at least 15 days each month for more than 3 months.

Migraine headaches may begin in childhood, peak in adolescence, and tend to diminish in both frequency and severity with advancing years. According to Ashina (2020), their annual prevalence is 15 percent in women and 6 percent in men. Another 5 percent of women have *probable migraine*, that is, they have all criteria but one.

These headaches are especially common in young women and have been linked to hormone levels (Burch, 2020; Charles, 2017). Sensory sensitivity with migraines is likely caused by monoaminergic sensory control systems in the brainstem, hypothalamus, and cortex (Goadsby, 2018). The exact pathophysiology is uncertain, but symptoms develop when neuronal dysfunction leads to decreased cortical blood flow, activation of vascular and meningeal nociceptors, and stimulation of trigeminal sensory neurons. Importantly, migraines are not primarily a vascular disorder (Charles, 2017). Migraine headaches—especially those with aura in young women—are associated with increased risk for ischemic strokes (Tietjen, 2020). Other associated conditions are asthma, anxiety and depression, and other pain disorders.

Migraine in Pregnancy

Migraine headaches are frequently encountered during pregnancy. Most migraineurs have improvement during pregnancy (Lucas, 2019). Still, migraines—usually those with an aura—occasionally appear for the first time during pregnancy. Pregnant women with preexisting migraine symptoms may have other symptoms that suggest a more serious disorder, and new neurological symptoms should prompt a complete evaluation (Charles, 2017).

Migraines during pregnancy are associated with increased rates of preeclampsia, gestational hypertension, preterm birth, and other cardiovascular morbidities that include ischemic stroke (Grossman, 2017; Wabnitz, 2015). Bushnell and associates (2009) identified a migraine incidence during pregnancy of 185 cases per 100,000 deliveries. Of diagnoses associated in these gravid migraineurs, risks were significantly higher for stroke, 16-fo1d; myocardial infarction, fivefold; and heart disease, venous thromboembolism, and preeclampsia/gestational hypertension, each twofold. In a systematic review of 14

TABLE 63-2. Medications for Treatment of Acute Migraine in Pregnancy

Simple Analgesics
- Acetaminophen
- NSAIDs: naproxen, ibuprofen

5-HT Receptor Agonists
- Triptans: oral, nasal, parenteral

Dopamine-receptor Antagonists
- Metoclopramide
- Prochloroperzine
- Chlorpromazine

Antiemetics
- Ondansetron
- Metoclopramide

Other
- Opioids
- Transcranial magnetic stimulation

5-HT = 5-hydroxytryptamine (serotonin); NSAIDs = nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drugs.
From Ashina, 2020; Charles, 2017; Goadsby, 2018.

studies, risks for preeclampsia and low-birthweight neonates were significantly increased (Aukes, 2019).

Management

Several effective medications are shown in Table 63-2. Mild headaches respond to oral therapy in 50 to 70 percent of cases. Initial therapy with acetaminophen or an NSAID, along with an antiemetic, usually suffices for many early headaches. For severe headaches, parenteral therapy is indicated (Goadsby, 2018). Multitargeted drug therapy is necessary in most cases for migraine relief (Gonzalez-Hernandez, 2014). Headaches are treated aggressively with intravenous hydration, parenteral antiemetics, and triptans, and opioids are reserved for the most recalcitrant headaches. Although a 2-g infusion of magnesium sulfate has gained favor in the past few years, a metaanalysis reported no benefits (Choi, 2014). *Ergotamine derivatives are potent vasoconstrictors and are avoided in pregnancy because of their uterotonic effects* (Briggs, 2022).

Triptans are serotonin 5-$HT_{1B/2D}$-receptor agonists that effectively relieve headaches, nausea, and vomiting and greatly reduce analgesic needs. Triptans can be given as an oral tablet, injection, rectal suppository, or intranasal spray. They are best used in combination with NSAIDs (Goadsby, 2018). However, chronic NSAID use is avoided in pregnancy, especially later pregnancy because of fetal ductus arteriosus constriction and fetal urine production decline (Chap. 18, p. 151). The greatest triptan experience is with sumatriptan (Imitrex), and although not studied extensively in pregnancy, it is not a major teratogen (Saldanha, 2021; Spielmann, 2018). However, in one study at 36 months of children exposed to triptans in pregnancy, Wood and colleagues (2016) found neurodevelopment differences, including emotionality and activity problems.

Some women will benefit from peripheral nerve blocks, and Govindappagari and coworkers (2014) described their experiences with 13 pregnant women. For women with frequent migraine headaches, oral prophylactic therapy is warranted. Amitriptyline (Elavil), 10 to 175 mg daily; propranolol (Inderal), 40 to 120 mg daily; or metoprolol (Lopressor, Toprol), 25 to 100 mg daily, are successful options (Contag, 2010; Lucas, 2009).

Calcitonin gene-related peptide (CGRP) receptor antagonists to prevent migraines have garnered enthusiasm. Several of these monoclonal antibodies have been approved since 2018 for clinical use but not evaluated in pregnancy (Ashina, 2020; Tepper, 2018). Similarly, in a Cochrane review, botulinum toxin type A for chronic migraine may reduce migraine days per month by 2 days compared with placebo (Herd, 2018).

Cluster Headache

This rare primary headache disorder is characterized by severe unilateral lancinating pain radiating to the face and orbit, lasting 15 to 180 minutes, and occurring with autonomic symptoms and agitation. Pregnancy does not affect symptom severity. Affected women should avoid tobacco and alcohol. Acute management includes 100-percent oxygen therapy and sumatriptan given as a 6-mg dose subcutaneously (Vander Pluym, 2016). If recurrent, prophylaxis employs verapamil.

SEIZURE DISORDERS

After headaches, seizures are the next most prevalent neurological condition encountered in pregnancy. The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention reported that 3 million adults in 2015 had active epilepsy (Tian, 2018). Less than half were seizure free in the past year. Importantly, epilepsy accounted for 5 percent of maternal deaths in the United Kingdom from 2011 to 2013 (Knight, 2015).

Pathophysiology

A seizure is a transient combination of signs and symptoms stemming from abnormal excessive or synchronous neuronal activity in the brain (Lowenstein, 2018). Some identifiable causes of convulsive disorders in young adults include head trauma, alcohol- and other drug-induced withdrawals, cerebral infections, brain tumors, biochemical abnormalities, and arteriovenous malformations. A search for these is prudent with a new-onset seizure disorder in a pregnant woman. The diagnosis of idiopathic epilepsy is one of exclusion.

Classification

Epilepsy encompasses different syndromes whose cardinal feature is a predisposition to recurrent unprovoked seizures. The International League Against Epilepsy recently updated the following definitions (Fisher, 2017). Main categories describe seizure onset and include focal, generalized, and unknown groups.

Focal seizure onset describes those that originate in one localized brain area and affect correspondingly localized

neurological function. They are believed to result from trauma, abscess, tumor, or perinatal factors, although a specific lesion is rarely demonstrated. Seizures may occur with either intact or impaired awareness.

Focal seizures without dyscognitive features start in one region of the body and progress toward other ipsilateral areas of the body and produce tonic and then clonic movements. Seizures can affect sensory function or produce autonomic dysfunction or psychological changes. Cognitive function is not impaired, and recovery is rapid.

Focal seizures with dyscognitive features are often preceded by an aura and followed by impaired awareness manifested by sudden behavioral arrest or motionless stare. Involuntary movements such as picking motions or lip smacking are common.

Generalized seizure onset describes those that involve both brain hemispheres and may be preceded by an aura before an abrupt loss of consciousness. They may be motor or nonmotor. There is a strong hereditary component. In *generalized tonic-clonic seizures*, loss of consciousness is followed by tonic contraction of the muscles and rigid posturing, and then by clonic contractions of all extremities while the muscles gradually relax. Return to consciousness is gradual, and the patient may remain confused and disoriented for several hours. *Absence seizures*—also called petit mal seizures—are a form of generalized epilepsy that involve a brief loss of consciousness without muscle activity and are characterized by immediate recovery of consciousness and orientation.

Unknown seizure onset describes seizures with an unwitnessed onset. Thus, they remain unclassified as to focal or generalized onset until further information allows categorization. However, these can be further subgrouped as motor or nonmotor, or unclassified.

■ Preconceptional Counseling

Women with epilepsy ideally are counseled before pregnancy, and relevant points are presented also in Chapter 9 (p. 166). Oral folic acid supplementation with 0.4 mg per day is begun at least 1 month before conception. The dose is increased to 4 mg when the woman taking antiepileptic medication becomes pregnant. These medications are assessed and adjusted with a goal of monotherapy using the least teratogenic medication. If this is not feasible, attempts are made to reduce the number of medications and to use the lowest effective dose (Stephen, 2019; Tomson, 2019b). Medication withdrawal should be considered if a woman is seizure free for 2 years or more.

■ Pregnancy Complications

The major pregnancy-related risks to women with epilepsy are fetal malformations and convulsions. Seizure control is a priority to avoid its attendant morbidity and mortality. Early studies described worsening seizure activity during pregnancy, however, this is less common now because of more effective drugs (Pennell, 2020). Contemporary studies cite higher rates of seizure activity in only 20 to 30 percent of gravidas (Tomson, 2019b). Women who are seizure free for at least 9 months before conception will likely remain so during pregnancy (Harden, 2009b).

Greater seizure frequency is often associated with subtherapeutic anticonvulsant serum levels, a lower seizure threshold, or both. Numerous pregnancy-associated alterations can result in subtherapeutic serum levels. These include nausea and vomiting, slower gastrointestinal motility, antacid use that diminishes drug absorption, pregnancy hypervolemia offset by protein binding, induction of hepatic enzymes such as cytochrome oxidases, placental enzymes that metabolize drugs, and increased glomerular filtration that hastens drug clearance. Importantly, some women discontinue medication because of teratogenicity concerns. Last, the seizure threshold can be affected by pregnancy-related sleep deprivation and by hyperventilation and pain during labor (Tomson, 2019b).

Status epilepticus is a medical emergency. It is more likely to occur in women with refractory epilepsy (Kusznir Vitturi, 2019). In a randomized trial of 384 nonpregnant patients with benzodiazepine-refractory status, intravenous levetiracetam, fosphenytoin, or valproate yielded similar results (Kapur, 2019). Only one half of patients in each cohort had cessation of seizures and improved alertness by 60 minutes.

In addition to seizure-control challenges, women with epilepsy have a small increased risk of pregnancy complications that include miscarriage, hemorrhage, hypertensive disorders, placental abruption, preterm birth, fetal-growth restriction, and cesarean delivery (Salman, 2018; Viale, 2015). Importantly, MacDonald (2015) also reports a tenfold higher maternal death rate, and, as mentioned earlier, epilepsy accounted for 5 percent of maternal deaths in the United Kingdom. Postpartum depression rates also are increased in epileptic women (Turner, 2009). Last, children of epileptic mothers have a 10-percent risk of developing a seizure disorder.

With embryofetal malformations, it was difficult for years to separate the influence of epilepsy from that of its therapy as the primary cause. Now, untreated epilepsy is thought not to be associated with an elevated fetal malformation rate (Tomson, 2019b). That said, the fetus of an epileptic mother who takes certain anticonvulsant medications has an indisputably greater risk for congenital malformations. Moreover, monotherapy is associated with a lower rate of birth defects compared with multiagent therapy. Adherence to these principles has resulted in declining malformation rates from antiepileptic drugs (Tomson, 2019a).

Specific drugs, when given alone, raise the malformation rate (Chap. 8, p. 150). Some are listed in Table 63-3. Phenytoin and phenobarbital increase the major malformation rate two- to threefold above baseline (Perucca, 2005; Thomas, 2008). Valproate is a particularly potent teratogen, which has a dose-dependent effect and raises the malformation risk four- to eightfold (Klein, 2014; Tomson, 2019b). Valproate is also associated with lower cognitive performance (Kasradze, 2017). In general, with polytherapy, the risk rises with each drug added. A metaanalysis of 31 studies found lamotrigine and levetiracetam to carry the lowest malformation risk (Weston, 2016).

■ Management in Pregnancy

The American Academy of Neurology and the American Epilepsy Society have guidelines regarding treatment in pregnancy

TABLE 63-3. Teratogenic Effects of Common Anticonvulsant Medications

Drug (Brand Name)	Abnormalities Described	Affected	Embryofetal Risks[a]
Valproate (Depakote)	Neural-tube defects, clefts, cardiac anomalies; associated developmental delay; ADHD	7–10% with monotherapy; higher with polytherapy	
Phenytoin (Dilantin)	Fetal hydantoin syndrome: craniofacial anomalies, fingernail hypoplasia, growth deficiency, developmental delay, cardiac anomalies, clefts	5–11%	Yes
Carbamazepine; oxcarbazepine (Tegretol; Trileptal)	Fetal hydantoin syndrome, as above, spina bifida	2–5%	Yes
Phenobarbital	Clefts, cardiac anomalies, urinary tract malformations	6–20%	Suggested
Lamotrigine (Lamictal)	Increased risk for clefts (registry data)	Up to 2% (4- to 10-fold higher than expected)	Suggested
Topiramate (Topamax)	Clefts	2–3% (15- to 20-fold higher than expected)	Suggested
Levetiracetam (Keppra)	Theoretical: skeletal abnormalities; impaired growth in animals	1–3%	Suggested

ADHD = attention deficit hyperactivity disorder.
[a]Risk categories from Briggs, 2022; Bromley, 2017; Christensen, 2019; Food and Drug Administration, 2011; Harden, 2009b; Tomson, 2018, 2019b.

(Harden, 2009a,b,c). The major goal is seizure prevention. To accomplish this, treatment for nausea and vomiting is provided, seizure-provoking stimuli are avoided, and medication compliance is emphasized. The fewest necessary anticonvulsants are given at the lowest dosage needed for seizure control. Although some providers routinely monitor serum drug levels, these concentrations may be unreliable because of altered protein binding. Free or unbound drug levels, although perhaps more accurate, are not widely available. Importantly, no evidence suggests that such monitoring improves seizure control (Adab, 2006). For these reasons, drug levels may be most informative if measured following seizures or if noncompliance is suspected.

For women taking anticonvulsant drugs, a targeted sonographic examination in midpregnancy is recommended to evaluate for anomalies. Testing to assess fetal well-being is generally not indicated for women with uncomplicated epilepsy.

For women desiring to breastfeed, data regarding the safety of the various anticonvulsant medications are limited. However, no obvious deleterious effects, such as long-term cognitive issues, have been reported (Birnbaum, 2020; Briggs, 2022). Of birth control methods, combination oral contraceptive (COC) pill failure rates are higher with some of the anticonvulsant agents. For example, lamotrigine efficacy is substantially lowered by COCs. Thus, other more reliable methods should be considered (Chap. 38, p. 664).

CEREBROVASCULAR DISEASES

Abnormalities of the cerebrovascular circulation include both ischemic and hemorrhagic strokes and anatomical anomalies, such as AVMs and aneurysms. Cerebral ischemia is caused by reduction in blood flow that lasts longer than several seconds. Early, neurological symptoms may manifest. After a few minutes, however, infarction often follows. Hemorrhagic stroke is caused by bleeding directly into or around the brain. It produces symptoms by its mass effect, by blood's toxic effects, or by elevated intracranial pressure. Strokes in nonpregnant women are predominately ischemic. In gravidas, roughly half are ischemic, and the other half are hemorrhagic (Zofkie, 2018).

The obesity endemic in this country, along with a concomitant rise in rates of heart disease, hypertension, and diabetes, has increased the prevalence of strokes. Compared with men, women have a higher lifetime risk of stroke and associated mortality rate (Martinez-Sánchez, 2011; Virani, 2021). Moreover, pregnancy raises the immediate and lifetime risk of both ischemic stroke and hemorrhagic stroke (Jamieson, 2010; Jung, 2010).

With an incidence of 10 to 40 cases per 100,000 births, stroke is relatively uncommon in gravidas. However, it contributes disparately to maternal mortality rates (Leffert, 2016; Pacheco, 2019; Elgendy, 2021). The incidence is rising as measured by pregnancy-related hospitalizations for stroke (Callaghan, 2008; Kuklina, 2011). Most events are associated with hypertensive disorders or heart disease. Of the pregnancy-related mortality rate in the United States from 2007 to 2016, 7.2 percent was due to cerebrovascular accidents, and 7.8 percent was associated with hypertension (Petersen, 2019). Of maternal deaths after 42 days postpartum, 9.8 percent were attributable to stroke (Creanga, 2017).

Risk Factors

Most strokes in pregnancy manifest either during labor and delivery or in the puerperium. In a study of 2850 pregnancy-

related strokes, approximately 10 percent developed antepartum, 40 percent intrapartum, and 50 percent postpartum (James, 2005). Of 145 ischemic strokes, Leffert (2016) reported a timing of 45 percent antepartum, 3 percent intrapartum, and 53 percent postpartum.

Several risk factors both unrelated and related to pregnancy have been recognized. Unrelated causes are age; migraines, hypertension, obesity, and diabetes; cardiac disorders such as endocarditis, valvular prostheses, and patent foramen ovale; and smoking. Stroke etiologies related to pregnancy include hypertensive disorders, gestational diabetes, obstetrical hemorrhage, and cesarean delivery. *By far, the most common is pregnancy-associated hypertensive disorders*. A third of strokes are associated with gestational hypertension, and hypertensive women compared with normotensive counterparts have a three- to eightfold greater risk of stroke (Scott, 2012; Wang, 2011). Stroke is the major cause of maternal mortality associated with preeclampsia (Judy, 2019). Moreover, women with preeclampsia undergoing general anesthesia may be at higher risk of stroke compared with those given neuraxial anesthesia (Huang, 2010). Cesarean delivery raises the peripartum stroke risk 1.5-fold compared with vaginal delivery (Lin, 2008). Sepsis from any source increases the risk for postpartum stroke (Miller, 2019).

Pregnancy-induced effects on cerebrovascular hemodynamics include enhanced autoregulation that maintains blood flow despite changes in systemic blood pressure (van Teen, 2016). Although cerebral blood flow *decreases* by 20 percent from midpregnancy until term, it *increases* significantly with gestational hypertension (Zeeman, 2003, 2004b). Such hyperperfusion at least intuitively would be dangerous for women with certain vascular anomalies.

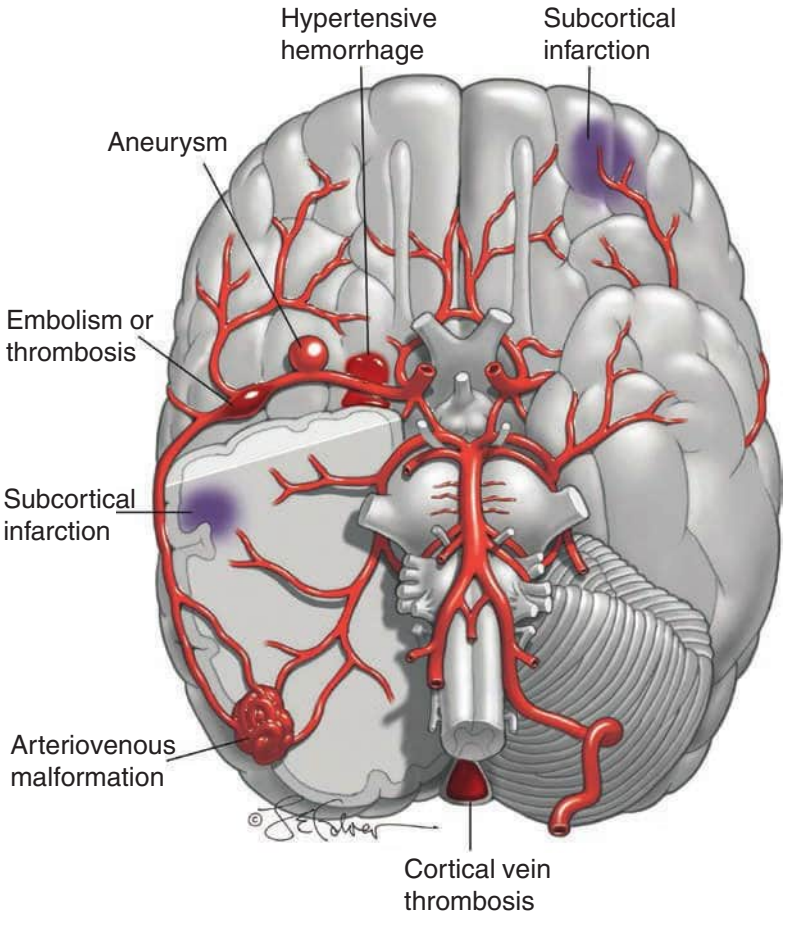


FIGURE 63-2 Illustrations of a brain showing various types of strokes seen in pregnancy: (1) subcortical infarction (preeclampsia), (2) hypertensive hemorrhage, (3) aneurysm, (4) embolism or thrombosis in middle cerebral artery, (5) arteriovenous malformation, and (6) cortical vein thrombosis.

■ Ischemic Stroke

Acute occlusion or embolization of an intracranial blood vessel causes cerebral ischemia, which may result in death of brain tissue (Fig. 63-2). The more commonly associated etiologies of ischemic stroke are shown in Table 63-4. A *transient ischemic attack (TIA)* is caused by reversible ischemia, and symptoms usually last less than 24 hours. Approximately 10 percent of these patients have a stroke by 1 year (Amarenco, 2016).

Stroke usually incites sudden severe headache, hemiplegia, or other neurological deficits. Seizures occasionally develop. Immediate assessment and CT scanning is indicated (Pacheco, 2019). Further evaluation includes echocardiography and additional cranial imaging with CT, MR imaging, or angiography. Serum lipids are measured with the caveat that their values are distorted by normal pregnancy (Appendix, p. 1231). Tests to detect antiphospholipid antibodies, lupus anticoagulant, other thrombophilias, and, if indicated, sickle-cell syndromes are performed (Buonanno, 2016).

TABLE 63-4. Some Associated Disorders or Causes of Ischemic and Hemorrhagic Strokes During Pregnancy or the Puerperium

Ischemic Stroke	Hemorrhagic Stroke
Preeclampsia syndrome	Chronic hypertension
Arterial thrombosis	Preeclampsia syndrome
Venous thrombosis	Arteriovenous malformation
Lupus anticoagulant	Saccular aneurysm
Antiphospholipid antibodies	Angioma
Thrombophilias	Cocaine, methamphetamines
Migraine	Vasculopathy
Paradoxical embolus	
Cardioembolic	
Sickle hemoglobinopathy	
Arterial dissection	
Vasculitis	
Moyamoya disease	
Cocaine, amphetamines	

From Smith, 2018; Yager, 2012; Zofkie, 2018.

These underlie up to a third of ischemic strokes in otherwise healthy young women.

With a thorough evaluation, most causes of embolism can be identified. Some of these include cardiac-associated embolism, vasculitis, or vasculopathy such as Moyamoya disease (Miyakoshi, 2009; Pacheco, 2019). Outcomes of embolic strokes are reported to be favorable and similar to those of nonpregnant women (Leffert, 2016). For some, thrombolysis for ischemic stroke during pregnancy should be considered (Pacheco, 2019). However, published experiences are sparse (Ryman, 2019). For some, mechanical thrombectomy can be used.

Preeclampsia Syndrome

In reproductive-age women, a significant proportion of pregnancy-related ischemic strokes are caused by gestational hypertension and preeclampsia (Miller, 2020; Zofkie, 2018). As shown in Figure 63-2, areas of subcortical edema and petechial hemorrhage may progress to cerebral infarction (Aukes, 2007, 2009; Zeeman, 2004a). Although these usually clinically manifest by an eclamptic convulsion, a few women will suffer a symptomatic stroke from a larger cortical infarction (Chap. 40, p. 700).

Other conditions with findings similar to preeclampsia are *thrombotic microangiopathies* (Chap. 59, p. 1060) and the *reversible cerebral vasoconstriction syndrome* (Chap. 40, p. 700). The latter, also termed *postpartum angiopathy*, can cause extensive cerebral edema, necrosis and widespread infarction, and areas of hemorrhage (Edlow, 2013; Miller, 2016).

Cerebral Embolism

These strokes usually involve the middle cerebral artery (see Fig. 63-2). The diagnosis can be made with confidence only after thrombosis and hemorrhage are excluded and is more certain if an embolic source is identified. Hemorrhage may be more difficult to exclude because both embolization and thrombosis can be followed by hemorrhagic infarction. Paradoxical embolism is an uncommon cause, even considering that more than a fourth of adults have a patent foramen ovale. Through the defect, right-sided venous thromboemboli are deported (Scott, 2012). Foraminal closure may not improve outcomes in these patients, however, this procedure has been performed during pregnancy (Dark, 2011). Assorted cardioembolic causes of stroke include arrhythmias—especially atrial fibrillation, valvular lesions, mitral valve prolapse, mural thrombus, infective endocarditis, and peripartum cardiomyopathy.

Management of embolic stroke in pregnancy consists of supportive measures and antiplatelet therapy. Thrombolytic therapy and anticoagulation in pregnancy are controversial (Li, 2012).

Cerebral Artery Thrombosis

Most thrombotic strokes affect older individuals and are caused by atherosclerosis, especially of the internal carotid artery. Many are preceded by one or more TIAs. Thrombolytic therapy with a recombinant tissue plasminogen activator (rtPA) is recommended. Alteplase is one of these. It is given intravenously within the first 3-hour window if neurological deficits are noted and if neuroimaging has excluded hemorrhage (Pacheco, 2019). A principal risk is hemorrhagic transformation of an ischemic stroke. This agent can be used in pregnancy, but published experiences of rtPA in this group are few (Ryman, 2019).

Cerebral Venous Thrombosis

In one study in the United States, 6 percent of cerebral venous thromboses were associated with pregnancy (Leavell, 2018). However, in more than 8 million deliveries from the Nationwide Inpatient Sample, cerebral venous thrombosis caused only 2 percent of pregnancy-related strokes (James, 2005). Predisposing causes are numerous, and for gravidas, late pregnancy and the puerperium are times of greatest risk (Silvis, 2019).

Thrombosis of the lateral or superior sagittal venous sinus usually occurs in the puerperium and often in association with preeclampsia, sepsis, or thrombophilia (see Fig. 63-2). It is more common in patients with inherited thrombophilias or antiphospholipid antibodies. Headache is the most frequent presenting symptom, neurological deficits are common, and up to a third of women have seizures (Pacheco, 2019). Oh and colleagues (2020) described a postpartum case in which cerebral vein thrombosis was misdiagnosed as postdural puncture headache. The diagnosis is made using MR venography.

Management includes anticonvulsants for seizures, and anticoagulation with heparin (Pacheco, 2019; Smith, 2018). Antimicrobials are given for septic thrombophlebitis, and fibrinolytic therapy is reserved for those women failing systemic anticoagulation. The acute prognosis for venous thrombosis in gravidas is better than in nonpregnant subjects, and mortality rates are <10 percent (McCau11ey, 2011).

In women with a prior cerebral venous thrombosis, one systematic review found only one recurrence in 217 pregnancies and five noncerebral venous thrombotic events in 186 pregnancies (Aguiar de Sousa, 2016). In a study of 52 women on prophylactic anticoagulation with prior cerebral venous thrombosis, recurrent thrombosis or bleeding did not develop. However, 24 percent had late obstetrical complications (Martinelli, 2016).

Ischemic Stroke Recurrence

Women with prior ischemic stroke have a low risk for recurrence during a subsequent pregnancy unless a specific, persistent cause is identified. During a 5-year follow-up of 441 reproductive-aged women with prior ischemic stroke or cerebral venous thrombosis, 13 had a recurrent ischemic stroke, and only two were associated with pregnancy. The authors concluded that the risk of stroke recurrence is low and a previous ischemic stroke is not a contraindication to pregnancy (Lamy, 2000). In one study of nonpregnant women, the ischemic stroke recurrence rate was similar between those with and without antiphospholipid antibodies as long as the former received warfarin or aspirin (Levine, 2004). The recurrence rate of reversible cerebral vasoconstriction syndrome in a subsequent pregnancy was noted to be 9 percent (Boitet, 2019).

Currently, no firm guidelines define prophylaxis in pregnant women with a stroke history (Smith, 2018). The American Heart Association stresses the importance of controlling risk factors such as hypertension and diabetes (Furie, 2011). As discussed in Chapters 52 and 55, those with antiphospholipid syndrome or certain cardiac conditions should be considered for prophylactic anticoagulation. For most of these

women, low-dose aspirin given throughout pregnancy seems reasonable.

Hemorrhagic Stroke

Intracerebral Hemorrhage

The symptoms of a hemorrhagic stroke are similar to those of an ischemic stroke, and their differentiation is possible only with CT or MR imaging (Hemphill, 2015; Smith, 2018). The two distinct categories of spontaneous intracranial bleeding are subarachnoid hemorrhage and intracerebral hemorrhage.

Intracerebral hemorrhage is bleeding into the brain parenchyma. It most often stems from the spontaneous rupture of Charcot-Bouchard aneurysms of small vessels damaged by chronic hypertension (see Fig. 63-2). Thus, pregnancy-associated hemorrhagic strokes such as the one shown in Figure 63-3 are often associated with chronic hypertension and superimposed preeclampsia (Cunningham, 2005; Martin, 2005). Because of its location, this type of hemorrhage has much higher morbidity and mortality rates than subarachnoid hemorrhage (Smith, 2018). Pressure-induced rupture causes bleeding into the putamen, thalamus, adjacent white matter, pons, and cerebellum. In the 28 women described by Martin and associates (2005), half died and most survivors had permanent disabilities. This underscores proper management of gestational hypertension, especially systolic hypertension.

Subarachnoid Hemorrhage

In a study of 639 cases of pregnancy-related subarachnoid hemorrhage from the Nationwide Inpatient Sample, the incidence was 8.5 per 100,000 pregnancies (Limaye, 2019). A remarkably similar incidence was reported in Japanese women (Yoshida, 2017). These bleeding events are more likely caused by an underlying cerebrovascular malformation in an otherwise normal patient (see Fig. 63-2). Ruptured saccular or "berry" aneurysms cause 80 percent of all subarachnoid hemorrhages (Lawton, 2017). The remaining cases stem from a ruptured AVM, coagulopathy, angiopathy, venous thrombosis, infection, drug abuse, tumors, or trauma. The mortality rate of subarachnoid hemorrhage during pregnancy is lower than that reported for nonpregnant women—8 versus 17 percent (Limaye, 2019).

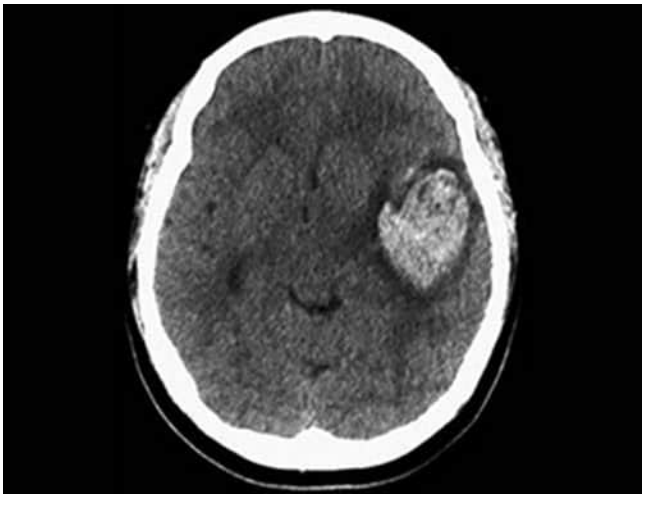


FIGURE 63-3 A noncontrast computed tomography axial head image demonstrates a large intraparenchymal hemorrhage in this woman with preeclampsia.

Intracranial Aneurysm. Approximately 1 to 2 percent of adults have this lesion (Lawton, 2017). Only a small percentage rupture. The rate approximates 0.1 percent for aneurysms <10 mm and 1 percent for those >10 mm (Smith, 2018). Most aneurysms identified during pregnancy arise from the circle of Willis, and in 20 percent of cases, lesions are multiple. Pregnancy does not raise the risk for aneurysmal rupture. However, because of their high population prevalence, they are more likely to cause subarachnoid bleeding than other etiologies (Hirsch, 2009; Tiel Groenestege, 2009). A systematic review of 44 women with 50 aneurysms in pregnancy reported that 72 percent ruptured during pregnancy, and 78 percent of these did so during the third trimester (Barbarite, 2016). This proclivity for rupture late in pregnancy is reported by others (Yoshida, 2017).

The cardinal symptom of aneurysmal rupture leading to subarachnoid hemorrhage is sudden severe headache that is accompanied by visual changes, cranial nerve abnormalities, focal neurological deficits, and altered consciousness. Signs of meningeal irritation, nausea and vomiting, tachycardia, transient hypertension, low-grade fever, leukocytosis, and proteinuria are typical. Prompt diagnosis and treatment may prevent potentially lethal complications. The American Heart Association recommends noncontrast cranial CT imaging as the first diagnostic test, although MR imaging may be superior (Smith, 2018).

Treatment of subarachnoid hemorrhage includes bed rest, analgesia, neurological monitoring, and strict blood pressure control. Repair of a potentially accessible aneurysm during pregnancy weighs surgical risks against the risk of recurrent hemorrhage. At least in nonpregnant patients, the risk of subsequent bleeding with conservative treatment is 20 to 30 percent for the first month and then 3 percent per year. The risk of rebleeding is highest within the first 24 hours, and recurrent hemorrhage leads to death in 70 percent (Smith, 2018).

Early repair after the sentinel hemorrhage is accomplished by open craniotomy or endovascular coil placement. In one systematic review of management in pregnancy, coil embolization yielded lower complication rates than aneurysmal clipping (Barbarite, 2016). For unruptured aneurysms, surgical management resulted in a third fewer complications than no treatment. For gravidas remote from term, repair without hypotensive anesthesia seems optimal. For women near term, cesarean delivery followed by aneurysm repair is a consideration. We have successfully done this in several cases.

For aneurysms repaired before or during pregnancy, most allow vaginal delivery if labor ensues remote from aneurysmal repair. Problems arise in defining "remote," and although some recommend 2 months, the time for complete healing is unknown. For women who survive subarachnoid hemorrhage, but in whom surgical repair is not done, we agree with Cartlidge (2000) and recommend against bearing down and favor cesarean delivery.

Arteriovenous Malformations. These are congenital focal abnormal conglomerations of dilated arteries and veins with subarteriolar disorganization (see Fig. 63-2). They

lack capillaries and have resultant arteriovenous shunting. Although unclear, the risk of bleeding during pregnancy may rise with gestational age. When AVMs bleed, half do so into the subarachnoid space, whereas half are intraparenchymal with subarachnoid extension (Smith, 2018). Uncommon, they affect an estimated 0.01 percent of the general population. Of identified AVM cases in pregnancy, 83 percent ruptured during pregnancy or postpartum, and more than 80 percent of these ruptured in the second or third trimester. Hemorrhage is associated with poor maternal outcome but does not appear to be more likely during pregnancy. (Lu, 2016). Although correspondingly rare during pregnancy, AVM bleeding accounted for 17 percent of hemorrhagic strokes in one study (Yoshida, 2017). At Parkland Hospital in a 35-year period and nearly 500,000 births, 62 women had a stroke, and five of these were due to a bleeding AVM (Simolke, 1991; Zofkie, 2018).

Treatment of AVMs in nonpregnant patients is individualized. No consensus guides whether all accessible lesions should be resected. Factors include AVM symptoms; its anatomy and size; an associated aneurysm, which is found in up to 60 percent of cases; and especially, prior AVM bleeding. After hemorrhage, the risk of recurrent bleeding in unrepaired lesions is 6 to 20 percent within the first year, and 2 to 4 percent per year thereafter (Friedlander, 2007; Smith, 2018). The mortality rate from a bleeding AVM is 10 to 20 percent. In pregnancy, the decision to operate is usually based on neurosurgical considerations. Because of the high risk of recurrent hemorrhage from an unresected or inoperable lesion, we favor cesarean delivery.

DEMYELINATING OR DEGENERATIVE DISEASES

The demyelinating diseases are neurological disorders characterized by immune-mediated focal or patchy destruction of myelin sheaths accompanied by an inflammatory response. The degenerative diseases are multifactorial and characterized by progressive neuronal death.

Multiple Sclerosis

This autoimmune demyelinating disease is second only to trauma as a cause of neurological disability in middle adulthood. The demyelinating effects stem predominantly from T cell–mediated autoimmune destruction of oligodendrocytes that synthesize myelin. It has a familial occurrence with an environmental trigger, it affects women twice as often as men, and it usually begins in the 20s and 30s (Cree, 2018; Fang, 2020). In one study, 0.03 percent of California deliveries were complicated by multiple sclerosis (MS) between 2001 and 2009 (Fong, 2018).

There are three clinical types of multiple sclerosis:

1. *Relapsing MS (RMS)* is the initial presentation in 90 percent of affected individuals. With it, unpredictable recurrent episodes of focal or multifocal neurological dysfunction usually are followed by full recovery. Over time, however, relapses lead to persistent deficits.
2. *Secondary progressive MS (SPMS)* is relapsing disease that begins to pursue a progressive downhill course after each relapse. All patients likely develop this type eventually.
3. *Primary progressive MS (PPMS)* accounts for 10 percent of cases. With it, disability gradually progresses from the time of initial diagnosis.

Classic findings of MS include sensory loss, visual symptoms from optic neuritis, weakness, and paresthesias. Clinical diagnosis is aided by MR imaging and cerebrospinal fluid analysis. In greater than 95 percent of cases, MR imaging shows characteristic multifocal white-matter plaques that represent discrete areas of demyelination (Fig. 63-4). Their appearance and extent are less helpful for predicting treatment response.

Formerly considered an MS variant, neuromyelitis optica spectrum disorder (NMOSD) is viewed as a distinct autoimmune disease. Antibodies target astrocytes and lead to autoimmune inflammation of the spinal cord and optic nerve. Some evidence suggests that pregnancy worsens this disorder (Mao-Draayer, 2020).

Multiple Sclerosis in Pregnancy

Women with MS experience fewer attacks during pregnancy, but with a significantly greater relapse rate postpartum (Cree, 2018). This may be related to higher pregnancy-induced numbers of T-helper lymphocytes and an increased T2/Tl ratio. In a metaanalysis of women with more than 1200 pregnancies complicated by MS, their relapse rate was 0.4 per year before pregnancy; 0.26 per year during pregnancy; and 0.7 per year after delivery (Finkelsztejn, 2011). A systematic review reported similar findings (Bove, 2014). Factors associated with postpartum relapse include a high relapse rate before pregnancy, relapses during pregnancy, and a high MS disability score (Portaccio, 2014). Breastfeeding has no effect on postpartum relapses (Hellwig, 2015; Portaccio, 2011).

With uncomplicated disease, pregnancy outcomes are usually not adversely affected (Bove, 2014; Fong, 2018). Some women

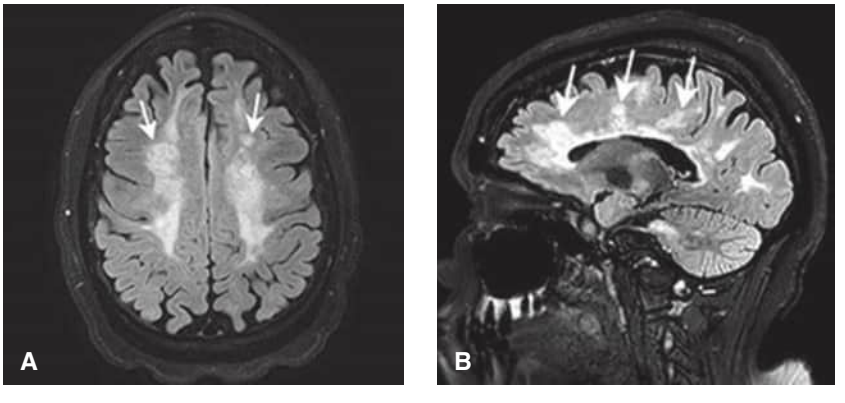


FIGURE 63-4 Magnetic resonance cranial images from a woman with multiple sclerosis. **A.** T2-weighted axial image shows bright signal abnormalities in white matter (*arrows*), typical for multiple sclerosis. **B.** Sagittal T2-FLAIR image shows periventricular hyperintense lesions (Dawson fingers; *arrows*) representative of demyelination in multiple sclerosis.

may fatigue more easily, those with bladder dysfunction are predisposed to urinary infection, and women with spinal lesions at or above T_6 are at risk for autonomic dysreflexia. In one study of 449 pregnancies in affected women, the labor induction rate was higher, and second-stage labor was longer (Dahl, 2006). The greater induction rate and elective operations contributed to the overall higher cesarean delivery rate. In an analysis of 649 affected women, the mean birthweight was lower, but the perinatal mortality rate was similar to controls (Dahl, 2005). In a study of 3875 pregnancies in women with MS, risks for infections and preterm delivery were increased (MacDonald, 2019).

Management

Goals in pregnancy are to arrest acute or initial attacks, employ disease-modifying agents, and provide symptomatic relief. Some treatments may require modification during pregnancy. Acute or initial attacks are treated with high-dose intravenous methylprednisolone—500 to 1000 mg daily for 3 to 5 days. This is followed by oral prednisone for 2 weeks. Plasma exchange may help those with fulminant attacks resistant to corticosteroid therapy. Symptomatic relief can be provided by analgesics. Carbamazepine, phenytoin, or amitriptyline are suitable after the first trimester for neurogenic pain; baclofen, for spasticity; α_1-adrenergic blocking agents, for bladder neck relaxation; and cholinergic and anticholinergic drugs, for bladder-contraction stimulation or inhibition, respectively.

Several disease-modifying therapies are now available to treat relapsing MS or for exacerbations. Examples include interferons, glatiramer, fingolimod, dimethyl fumarate, natalizumab, and ocrelizumab (Cree, 2018; Tintore, 2019). Data regarding their safety in pregnancy are limited (Briggs, 2022). In 246 women with MS, glatiramer was not teratogenic to their offspring (Herbstritt, 2016). In a review of 92 pregnancies, first-trimester natalizumab exposure was associated with an increased miscarriage risk (Portaccio, 2018). Fetal exposure in 89 pregnancies to fingolimod was associated with six fetal malformations and nine spontaneous losses. Because of this and associated animal teratogenicity, its use in pregnancy is not recommended. Due to its prolonged persistence, contraception is recommended for 2 months after fingolimod cessation (Alroughani, 2016). Last, prevention of relapses postpartum has been reported with intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG). A dose of 0.4 g/kg is given daily for 5 days during weeks 1, 6, and 12 (Argyriou, 2008).

Myasthenia Gravis

This autoimmune-mediated neuromuscular disorder is more common in women, and its incidence peaks in their 20s and 30s (Waters, 2019). The etiology is unknown, but genetic factors likely play a role. Of affected patients, 80 to 90 percent demonstrate antibodies to the acetylcholine receptor (Lee, 2019). Those that are seronegative often have antibodies to muscle-specific tyrosine kinase (MuSK), which regulates assembly of the acetylcholine receptor subunits at the neuromuscular junction.

Cardinal features of myasthenia are weakness and easy fatigability of facial, oropharyngeal, extraocular, and limb muscles. Deep-tendon reflexes are preserved. Cranial muscles are involved early and disparately, and diplopia and ptosis are common. Facial muscle weakness causes difficulty in smiling, chewing, and speaking. In 85 percent of patients, the weakness becomes generalized. Other autoimmune diseases may coexist, and hypothyroidism should be excluded. The clinical course is marked by exacerbations. These can be life threatening and include *myasthenic crises*, which are characterized by severe muscle weakness, inability to swallow, and respiratory muscle paralysis (Lee, 2019). Another is a *cholinergic crisis*, which is caused by excessive cholinergic medication and leads to nausea, vomiting, muscle weakness, abdominal pain, and diarrhea.

Management

Myasthenia gravis is manageable but not curable. The oral anticholinesterase pyridostigmine (Mestinon) is first-line treatment. Thymectomy is recommended but postponed until after pregnancy (Amato, 2018a; Wolfe, 2019). Anticholinesterase medications improve symptoms by impeding acetylcholine degradation but seldom produce normal muscle function. Ironically, overdose is manifest by the cholinergic crisis mentioned earlier and may be difficult to differentiate from myasthenic symptoms. Most gravidas refractory to anticholinesterase therapy respond to immunosuppressive therapy with glucocorticoids, azathioprine, or cyclosporine. When short-term, rapid improvement is needed—such as for a surgical procedure or a myasthenic crisis—high-dose IVIG or plasma exchange is usually effective (Amato, 2018a; Sanders, 2016).

Myasthenia Gravis and Pregnancy

The greatest period of risk is within the first year following diagnosis. Thus, postponing pregnancy until improvement is sustained is reasonable. Antepartum management of myasthenia gravis includes close observation, liberal rest, and prompt treatment of infection (Waters, 2019). Women in remission who become pregnant while taking corticosteroids or azathioprine should continue these. Acute onset or exacerbation of myasthenia gravis demands prompt hospitalization and supportive care. Plasmapheresis and high-dose IVIG are options for emergencies (Waters, 2019). In refractory cases, thymectomy has been successfully performed during pregnancy.

Although pregnancy does not appear to affect the overall course of myasthenia gravis, fatigue common to most pregnancies may be exacerbated, and the expanding uterus may compromise respiration. Maternal hypotension or hypovolemia are ideally avoided because they can trigger crises. The clinical course of myasthenia gravis during pregnancy is unpredictable, and frequent hospitalizations are the norm. Up to a third of women have worsening symptoms during pregnancy, and exacerbations develop equally in all three trimesters (Djelmis, 2002; Podciechowski, 2005). In women with stable disease, most will remain stable throughout pregnancy but likely worsen in the first few months postpartum (Sanders, 2016).

Myasthenia gravis has no significant adverse effects on pregnancy outcomes (Wen, 2009). Preeclampsia is a concern because magnesium sulfate may precipitate a severe myasthenia crisis (Hamaoui, 2009; Heaney, 2010). Although phenytoin use also is problematic in this regard, its adverse effects are less troublesome.

Because smooth muscle is unaffected, most women have normal labor. Oxytocin is given for the usual indications, and cesarean delivery is reserved for obstetrical indications. Narcotics may cause respiratory depression, and close observation and respiratory support are essential during labor and delivery. Curariform drugs are avoided. Examples include magnesium sulfate, muscle relaxants used with general anesthesia, and aminoglycosides. Neuraxial analgesia is accomplished with amide-type local agents. Regional analgesia is preferred unless bulbar involvement or respiratory compromise is significant (Almeida, 2010; Blichfeldt-Lauridsen, 2012). During second-stage labor, some women may have impaired voluntary expulsive efforts that may warrant operative vaginal delivery.

Neonatal Effects

As discussed, 80 percent of mothers with myasthenia gravis have immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibodies against the acetylcholine receptor. These and anti-MuSK antibodies cross transplacentally, and the fetus can be affected. Poor fetal swallowing may yield hydramnios (Heaney, 2010). Similarly, 10 to 20 percent of neonates manifest myasthenia symptoms (Jovandaric, 2016). Transient symptoms usually include a feeble cry, poor suckling, and respiratory distress. Symptoms usually respond to anticholinesterase agents and resolve within a few weeks as maternal IgG antibodies clear.

NEUROPATHIES

Peripheral neuropathy is a general term for peripheral nerve(s) disorders, in which one or more nerves are affected. *Mononeuropathies* are relatively common in pregnancy and signify focal involvement of a single nerve trunk. These imply local causation such as trauma, compression, or entrapment. For example, traumatic pudendal, obturator, femoral, and common fibular mononeuropathies can stem from childbirth (Chap. 36, p. 644). *Polyneuropathies* can be axonal or demyelinating and can be acute, subacute, or chronic (Amato, 2018b). These are often associated with systemic diseases such as diabetes, with drug or environmental toxin exposure, or with genetic disease. Late-stage syphilis is a rare cause (Ghanem, 2020).

■ Guillain–Barré Syndrome

In 75 percent of cases, this acute demyelinating polyradiculoneuropathy has clinical or serological evidence of an acute infection. Common associated infections are *Campylobacter jejuni*, cytomegalovirus, Zika virus, and Epstein-Barr virus; surgical procedures; and immunizations (Leonhard, 2019). Guillain–Barré syndrome is thought to be immune-mediated from antibodies formed against nonself antigens. Demyelination causes sensory and motor conduction blockade, and remyelination yields recovery in most cases.

Clinical features include an areflexic, ascending paralysis, with or without sensory disturbances. Autonomic dysfunction is common. The full syndrome develops over 1 to 3 weeks. Some manifest as chronic inflammatory demyelinating polyneuropathy, and our experiences indicate that this may be relatively common in these young women.

Guillain-Barré syndrome is not more common in pregnancy, and its clinical course mirrors that for nonpregnant individuals. After an insidious onset, paresis and paralysis most often continue to ascend to cause ventilatory weakness.

Management is supportive and incorporates venous thromboembolism prophylaxis, pressure ulcer prevention, and enteral nutrition. In the worsening phase, patients are hospitalized, and a fourth require ventilatory assistance. IVIG or plasmapheresis are beneficial if begun within 1 to 2 weeks of motor symptoms, but neither decreases mortality rates (Leonhard, 2019). Up to 10 percent of patients deteriorate after initial improvement on therapy, and re-treatment with 2 g/kg IVIG over 5 days is recommended. Although most patients recover fully within several months to a year, the mortality rate is 5 percent, mainly due to pulmonary complications and arrhythmias (Pacheco, 2016).

■ Bell Palsy

This disfiguring palsy is usually a mononeuropathic acute facial paralysis that is relatively common in reproductive-aged women (Fig. 63-5). It has a female predominance, and rates in pregnancy may be increased (Beal, 2018; Choi, 2020). The disease is characterized by facial nerve inflammation and often is associated with reactivation of herpes simplex virus or herpes zoster virus. Other causes are Lyme disease and borreliosis.

Bell palsy usually has an abrupt and painful onset with maximum weakness by 48 hours. In some cases, hyperacusis and loss of taste accompany paralysis (Beal, 2018). Management includes supportive care with facial muscle massage and eye protection against corneal injury from drying. Consensus supports that prednisone, 1 mg/kg given orally daily for 5 days, will improve outcomes and shorten the recovery period (Beal, 2018; Madhok, 2016). It is controversial whether added valacyclovir or acyclovir will hasten recovery (Beal, 2018; Gagyor, 2019).

It is unclear if pregnancy alters the prognosis for spontaneous facial palsy recovery. In one study, compared with 90 percent of nonpregnant women and men, only half of pregnant women recovered to a satisfactory level after 1 year (Gillman,

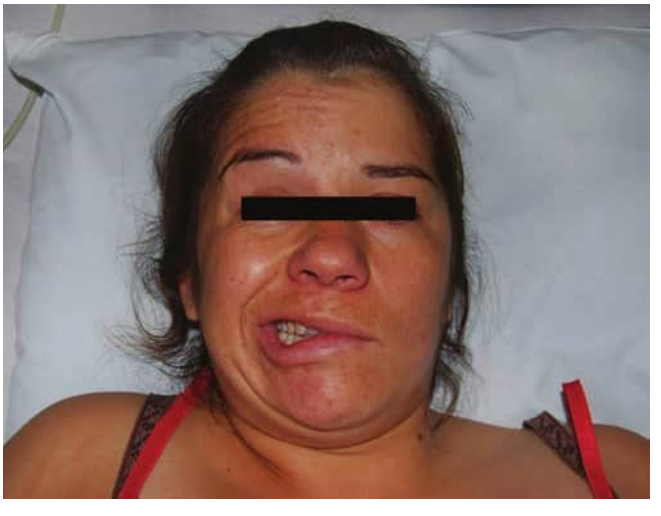


FIGURE 63-5 Bell facial nerve palsy developing on the day of cesarean delivery for dichorionic twins. This woman was treated with prednisone and antiviral medication, and 3 weeks postpartum, the palsy had almost resolved.

2002). In another report, pregnancy-associated Bell palsy had worse long-term outcomes compared with those of nonpregnant cohort (Phillips, 2017). Some prognostic markers for incomplete recovery are bilateral palsy, recurrence in a subsequent pregnancy, greater percentage of nerve function loss, and a faster rate of loss (Cohen, 2000; Gilden, 2004). Other than a fivefold greater rate for gestational hypertension or preeclampsia, women with Bell palsy do not have increased adverse pregnancy outcomes rates (Katz, 2011).

Carpal Tunnel Syndrome

This syndrome results from compression of the median nerve and is the most frequent mononeuropathy in pregnancy (Oliveira, 2019). Symptoms include burning, numbness, or tingling along the inner half of one or both hands. Others are wrist pain and numbness extending into the forearm and sometimes into the shoulder. Symptoms are bilateral in 80 percent of gravidas, and 10 percent have evidence for severe denervation. Differential diagnosis includes cervical radiculopathy of C_6–C_7 and de Quervain tendonitis. The latter is caused by swelling of the conjoined tendons and their sheaths near the distal radius. Nerve conduction studies may help to clarify.

In pregnancy, the reported incidence of carpal tunnel syndrome is 7 to 43 percent and varies greatly because the range of symptoms is marked (Meems, 2015; Oliveira, 2019). Symptomatic treatment with a splint applied to a slightly flexed wrist during sleep lightens pressure and usually provides relief. Although symptoms typically are self-limited, occasionally surgical decompression and corticosteroid injections are necessary (Keith, 2009; Shi, 2011). Symptoms may persist in more than half of patients at 1 year and in a third at 3 years (Padua, 2010).

Meralgia paresthetica is another common pregnancy-induced compression neuropathy (Gooding, 2020). Compression of the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve creates pain, burning, and numbness on the outside of the thigh. For treatment, the site at which the nerve crosses the crease in the groin can be injected with corticosteroids. Oral gabapentin is another treatment.

SPINAL CORD INJURY

According to the National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center (2021), approximately 18,000 new spinal cord injuries are sustained each year. The average age is 42 years, and males account for 80 percent of new cases. Cord injury severity determines the short- and long-term prognosis and pregnancy prognosis. For women, many have altered sexual function and transient hypothalamic pituitary hypogonadism. Despite this, pregnancy is not uncommon, and in a review of nearly 2000 women, 2 percent reported pregnancy in the prior 12 months (Lezzoni, 2015).

Two serious and life-threatening events can complicate spinal cord injuries. First, if the cord is transected above T_{10}, the cough reflex is impaired, respiratory function may be compromised, and pneumonitis from covert aspiration can be serious. Pulmonary function tests are considered to assess this risk, and some women may need ventilatory support in late pregnancy or labor.

Second, women with lesions above T_5–T_6 are at risk for autonomic dysreflexia. With this, stimuli from structures innervated below the level of the spinal lesion lead to massive, disordered sympathetic stimulation. Abrupt catecholamine release can prompt vasoconstriction with severe hypertension and symptoms that include throbbing headaches, facial flushing, sweating, bradycardia, tachycardia, arrhythmias, and respiratory distress. Dysreflexia can be precipitated by various stimuli. These include distention or manipulation of reproductive tract or lower urinary tract organs or bowel (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; Krassioukov, 2009). In one report, 12 of 15 women at risk for autonomic dysreflexia suffered at least one episode during pregnancy (Westgren, 1993).

Gravidas with spinal cord injury have an increased frequency of other complications. In a review of 37 affected pregnant women, 30 percent had pyelonephritis, 32 percent had lower urinary tract infections, and 9 percent had pressure sores (Le Liepvre, 2017). Two women developed autonomic dysreflexia, which caused cerebral hemorrhage in one. Urinary infections may be related to altered vaginal microbiota (Pires, 2016). Bowel dysfunction causes constipation in more than half, and anemia and pressure-necrosis skin lesions are common.

Vaginal delivery is generally successful (Robertson, 2020). Operative vaginal delivery is frequently necessary. Because uterine contractions are not affected by spinal cord lesions, labor is usually easy, comparatively painless, and at times precipitous. If the lesion is below T_{12}, uterine contractions are felt normally. For lesions above T_{12}, the risk of out-of-hospital delivery is substantial and can be minimized by teaching women to palpate for uterine contractions. This is especially important because up to 20 percent of women deliver preterm (Westgren, 1993). Some recommend tocodynamometry and weekly cervical examinations beginning at 28 to 30 weeks' gestation. Another reasonable option that we frequently employ at Parkland Hospital is elective hospitalization after 36 to 37 weeks. Spinal or epidural analgesia extending to T_{10} prevents autonomic dysreflexia and should be instituted at the start of labor (Kuczkowski, 2006). If severe symptoms are identified before epidural placement, steps are taken to abolish the provoking stimulus. A parenteral antihypertensive agent such as hydralazine or labetalol is given.

IDIOPATHIC INTRACRANIAL HYPERTENSION

Also known as *pseudotumor cerebri*, this disorder is typified by increased intracranial pressure without hydrocephalus. The cause is unknown, but it may result from overproduction or underabsorption of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), or both. Symptoms include headache in at least 90 percent of cases, visual disturbances such as loss of a visual field or central visual acuity in 70 percent, and commonly occurring papilledema that may be sight-threatening (Heaney, 2010; Kesler, 2013). Other complaints are stiff neck, back pain, pulsatile tinnitus, and cranial nerve palsies (Dinkin, 2019).

The syndrome is often found in young women and is prevalent in those who are obese, who recently gained weight, or both (Fraser, 2011). Along with symptoms, other criteria for diagnosis include elevated intracranial pressure >25 cm H_2O,

normal CSF composition, normal cranial CT or MR imaging findings, papilledema, and no evidence for systemic disease. If papilledema is not present, other criteria are required (Friedman, 2013).

Idiopathic intracranial hypertension is usually self-limited, but long-term vision loss is common (Hatem, 2018). Visual defects can be prevented by lowering the CSF pressure, and agents include acetazolamide to reduce fluid production, furosemide, or topiramate.

Corticosteroids are now rarely used. Surgical intervention is occasionally necessary and is accomplished by either lumboperitoneal shunting of spinal fluid or optic nerve sheath fenestration. Another treatment is stenting of dural venous sinus stenosis (Dinkin, 2019). It is controversial if pregnancy is a risk factor for idiopathic intracranial hypertension. Certainly, symptoms may first appear in pregnancy, and women previously diagnosed may become symptomatic. Symptoms usually develop by midpregnancy, tend to be self-limited, and usually resolve postpartum.

Pregnancy does not alter management. Some recommend serial visual-field testing to forestall permanent vision loss. In a report of 16 pregnant women, visual-field loss developed in four, and it became permanent in one (Huna-Baron, 2002). Visual-field loss is often coincident with the development of papilledema, for which acetazolamide is given. Lee and associates (2005) reported successful treatment of 12 pregnant women. Although outmoded for treatment of nonpregnant individuals, repeated lumbar punctures are generally successful in providing temporary relief throughout pregnancy. In some pregnant women, surgical therapy becomes necessary, including optic nerve sheath fenestration (Thambisetty, 2007).

Pregnancy complications are likely due to associated obesity and not to intracranial hypertension. Rates of adverse maternal and perinatal outcomes are not increased (Kesler, 2013). The route of delivery depends on obstetrical indications, and conduction analgesia is safe (Aly, 2007; Karmaniolou, 2011).

MATERNAL VENTRICULAR SHUNTS

Pregnancies in women with previously placed ventricular shunts for obstructive hydrocephalus usually have satisfactory outcomes. Shunts may be ventriculoperitoneal, ventriculoatrial, or ventriculopleural. Partial obstruction of a shunt is common, especially late in pregnancy (Schiza, 2012). In one report of 17 such pregnancies, neurological complications were reported in 13 (Wisoff, 1991). Findings included headaches in 60 percent, nausea and vomiting in 35 percent, lethargy in 30 percent, and ataxia or gaze paresis, each in 20 percent. Most symptoms respond to conservative management. However, if CT scanning during symptom evaluation discloses acute hydrocephaly, the shunt is tapped or pumped several times daily. In some cases, surgical revision is necessary and may be emergently indicated (Murakami, 2010). Another shunting procedure is placement of an endoscopic third ventriculostomy for hydrocephalus. With this, a small hole is created in the floor of the third ventricle to allow CSF to flow directly into lower cisterns. One report described successful results in five gravidas who underwent endoscopic ventriculostomy (Riffaud, 2006).

Vaginal delivery is preferred in women with shunts, and unless there is a meningomyelocele, conduction analgesia is permitted. Antimicrobial prophylaxis is indicated if the peritoneal cavity is entered for cesarean delivery or puerperal sterilization.

MATERNAL BRAIN DEATH

Brain death is rare in obstetrics, and only a few institutional brain-death policies address pregnancy (Lewis, 2016). Life-support systems and parenteral alimentation for up to 20 weeks while awaiting delivery have been described (Hussein, 2006; Powner, 2003; Reinhold, 2019). Some women were treated with aggressive tocolysis and antimicrobial therapy. In one review of 17 women with persistent vegetative state who were given various levels of support, five women died after delivery, and most of the others remained in their vegetative state (Chiossi, 2006). The ethical, financial, and legal implications, both civil and criminal, that arise from providing or withdrawing such care are profound (Feldman, 2000). In some women, perimortem cesarean delivery is performed.

REFERENCES

Adab N: Therapeutic monitoring of antiepileptic drugs during pregnancy and in the postpartum period: is it useful? CNS Drugs 20:791, 2006

Aguiar de Sousa D, Canhao P, Ferro JM: Safety of pregnancy after cerebral venous thrombosis: a systematic review. Stroke 47(3):713, 2016

Almeida C, Coutinho E, Moreira D, et al: Myasthenia gravis and pregnancy: anaesthetic management—a series of cases. Eur J Anaesthesiol 27:985, 2010

Alroughani R, Altintas A, Al Jumah M, et al: Pregnancy and the use of disease-modifying therapies in patients with multiple sclerosis: benefits versus risks. Mult Scler Int 2016: 1034912, 2016

Aly EE, Lawther BK: Anaesthetic management of uncontrolled idiopathic intracranial hypertension during labour and delivery using an intrathecal catheter. Anaesthesia 62:178, 2007

Amarenco P, Lavallee PC, Labreuche J, et al: One-year risk of stroke after transient ischemic attack or minor stroke. N Engl J Med 374(16):1533, 2016

Amato AA: Myasthenia gravis and other diseases of the neuromuscular junction. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018a, p 3232

Amato AA, Barohn RS: Peripheral neuropathy. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018b, p 3204

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Obstetric management of patients with spinal cord injuries. Committee Opinion No. 808, April 2020

Argyriou AA, Makris N: Multiple sclerosis and reproductive risks in women. Reprod Sci 15(8):755, 2008

Ashina M: Migraine. N Engl J Med 383(19):1866, 2020

Aukes AM, de Groot JC, Aarnoudse JG, et al: Brain lesions several years after eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 200(5):504.e1, 2009

Aukes AM, Wessel I, Dubois AM, et al: Self-reported cognitive functioning in formerly eclamptic women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197:365.e1, 2007

Aukes AM, Yurtsever FN, Boutin A, et al: Associations between migraine and adverse pregnancy outcomes: systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol Surv 74 (12):738, 2019

Barbarite E, Hussain S, Dellarole A, et al: The management of intracranial aneurysms during pregnancy: a systematic review. Turk Neurosurg 26(4):465, 2016

Beal MF, Hauser SL: Trigeminal neuralgia, Bells palsy, and other cranial nerve disorders. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 3169

Birnbaum AK, Meador KJ, Karanam A, et al: Antiepileptic drug exposure in infants of breastfeeding mothers with epilepsy. JAMA Neurol 77(4):441, 2020

Blackwell DL, Lucas JI, Clarke TC: Summary health statistics for U.S. adults: National Health Interview Survey, 2012. Vital Health Stat (260):1, 2014
BlichfeIdt-Lauridsen L, Hansen BD: Anesthesia and myasthenia gravis. Acta Anaesthesiol Scand 56(1):17, 2012
Boitet R, de Gaalon S, Duflos C, et al: Long-term outcomes after reversible cerebral vasoconstriction syndrome. Stroke 51(2):670, 2020
Bove R, Alwan S, Friedman JM, et al: Management of multiple sclerosis during pregnancy and the reproductive years: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 124(6):1157, 2014
Briggs GG, Towers CV, Forinash CV: Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation, 12th ed. Philadelphia, Wolters-Kluwer, 2022
Bromley RL, Weston J, Marson AG: Maternal use of antiepileptic agents during pregnancy and major congenital malformations in children. JAMA 318(17):1700, 2017
Buonanno FS, Schmahmann JD, Romero JM, et al: Case 10–2016: a 22-year-old man with sickle cell disease, headache, and difficulty speaking. N Engl J Med 374(13):1265, 2016
Burch R: Epidemiology and treatment of menstrual migraine and migraine during pregnancy and lactation: a narrative review. Headache 60(1):200, 2020
Burch RC, Loder S, Loder E, et al: The prevalence and burden of migraine and severe headache in the United States: updated statistics from government health surveillance studies. Headache 55(1):21, 2015
Bushnell CD, Jamison M, James AH: Migraines during pregnancy linked to stroke and vascular diseases: US population based case-control study. BMJ 338:b664, 2009
Callaghan WM, MacKay AP, Berg CJ: Identification of severe maternal morbidity during delivery hospitalizations, United States, 1991–2003. Am J Obstet Gynecol 199:133.e1, 2008
Cartlidge NE: Neurologic disorders. In Barron WM, Lindheimer MD (eds): Medical Disorders During Pregnancy, 3rd ed. St. Louis, Mosby, 2000
Chansakul T, Young GS: Neuroimaging in pregnant women. Semin Neurol 37(6):712, 2017
Charles A: Migraine. N Engl J Med 377(6): 553, 2017
Chiossi G, Novic K, Celebrezze JU, et al: Successful neonatal outcome in 2 cases of maternal persistent vegetative state treated in a labor and delivery suite. Am J Obstet Gynecol 195: 316, 2006
Choi H, Parman N: The use of intravenous magnesium sulphate for acute migraine: meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. Eur J Emerg Med 21:2, 2014
Choi HG, Hong SK, Park SK, et al: Pregnancy does not increase the risk of Bell's Palsy: a national cohort study. Otol Neurotol 41(1):e111, 2020
Christensen J, Pedersen L, Sun Y, et al: Association of prenatal exposure to valproate and other antiepileptic drugs with risk for attend-deficit/hyperactivity disorder in offspring. JAMA Netw Open 2(1):e186606, 2019
Cohen Y, Lavie O, Granoxsky-Grisaru S, et al: Bell palsy complicating pregnancy: a review. Obstet Gynecol Surv 55: 184, 2000
Contag SA, Bushnell C: Contemporary management of migraine disorders in pregnancy. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 22:437, 2010
Creanga AA, Syverson C, Seed K, et al: Pregnancy-related mortality in the United States, 2011–2013. Obstet Gynecol 130(2):366, 2017
Cree BA, Howser SL: Multiple sclerosis. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill Education, 2018, p 3128
Cunningham FG: Severe preeclampsia and eclampsia: systolic hypertension is also important. Obstet Gynecol 105:237, 2005
Dahl J, Myhr KM, Daltveit AK, et al: Planned vaginal births in women with multiple sclerosis: delivery and birth outcome. Acta Neurol Scand Suppl 183:51, 2006
Dahl J, Myhr KM, Daltveit AK, et al: Pregnancy, delivery, and birth outcome in women with multiple sclerosis. Neurology 65:1961, 2005
Dark L, Loiselle A, Hatton R, et al: Stroke during pregnancy: therapeutic options and role of percutaneous device closure. Heart Lung Circ 20:538, 2011
Dinkin M, Oliveira C: Men are from Mars, idiopathic intracranial hypertension is from venous: the role of venous sinus stenos is and stenting in idiopathic intracranial hypertension. Semin Neurol 39(6): 692, 2019
Djelmis J, Sostarko M, Mayer D, et al: Myasthenia gravis in pregnancy: report on 69 cases. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 104:21, 2002
Edlow JA, Caplan LR, O'Brien K, et al: Diagnosis of acute neurological emergencies in pregnant and post-partum women. Lancet Neurol 12:175, 2013
Elgendy IY, Bukhari S, Barakat AF, et al: Maternal stroke: a call for action. Circulation 143(7):727, 2021
Fang X, Patel C, Gudesblatt M: Multiple sclerosis: clinical updates in women's health care primary and preventive care review. Obstet Gynecol 135(3):757, 2020
Feldman DM, Borgida AF, Rodis JF, et al: Irreversible maternal brain injury during pregnancy: a case report and review of the literature. Obstet Gynecol Surv 55:708, 2000
Finkelsztejn A, Brooks JB, Paschoal FM Jr, et al: What can we really tell women with multiple sclerosis regarding pregnancy? A systematic review and meta-analysis of the literature. BJOG 118:790, 2011
Fisher RS, Cross JH, French JA, et al: Operational classification of seizure types by the International League against Epilepsy: position paper of the ILAE commission for classification and terminology. Epilepsia 58(4): 522, 2017
Fong A, Chau CT, Quant C, et al: Multiple sclerosis in pregnancy: prevalence, sociodemographic features and obstetrical outcomes. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(3):382, 2018
Food and Drug Administration: FDA drug safety communication: risk of oral clefts in children born to mothers taking Topamax (topiramate), 2011. Available at: http://www.fda.gov/drugs/drugsafety/ucm245085.htm. Accessed October 2, 2020
Fraser C, Plant GT: The syndrome of pseudotumor cerebri and idiopathic intracranial hypertension. Curr Opin Neurol 24:12, 2011
Friedlander RM: Arteriovenous malformations of the brain. N Engl J Med 356(26):2704, 2007
Friedman DI, Lie GT, Digre KB: Revised diagnostic criteria for the pseudotumor cerebri syndrome in adults and children. Neurology 81(13):1159, 2013
Furie KL, Kasner SE, Adams RJ, et al: Guidelines for the prevention of stroke in patients with stroke or transient ischemic attack: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. Stroke 42:227, 2011
Gagyor I, Madhok VB, Daly F, et al: Antiviral treatment for Bell's palsy (idiopathic facial paralysis). Cochrane Database System Rev 9:CD001869, 2019
Ghanem KG, Ram S, Rice PA: The modern epidemic of syphilis. N Engl J Med 382(9):845, 2020
Gilden DH: Bell's palsy. N Engl J Med 351:1323, 2004
Gillman GS, Schaitkin BM, May M, et al: Bell's palsy in pregnancy: a study of recovery outcomes. Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg 126:26, 2002
Goadsby PJ: Migraine and other headache disorders. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. McGraw Hill Education, New York, 2018, p 3096
Gonzalez-Hernandez A, Condes-Lara M: The multi target drug approach in migraine treatment: the new challenge to conquer. Headache 64:197, 2014
Gooding MS, Evangelista V, Pereira L: Carpal tunnel syndrome and meralgia paresthetica in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 75(2):121, 2020
Govindappagari S, Grossman T B, Ashlesha K, et al: Peripheral nerve blocks in the treatment of migraine in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 124(6):1169, 2014
Grossman TB, Robbins MS, Govindappagari S, et al: Delivery outcomes of patients with acute migraine in pregnancy: a retrospective study. Headache 57(4):605, 2017
Hamaoui A, Mercado R: Association of preeclampsia and myasthenia: a case report. J Reprod Med 54(9):587, 2009
Harden CL, Hopp J, Ting TY, et al: Practice parameter update: management issues for women with epilepsy—focus on pregnancy (an evidence-based review): obstetrical complications and change in seizure frequency. Neurology 73(2):126, 2009a
Harden CL, Meador KJ, Pennell PB, et al: Practice parameter update: management issues for women with epilepsy-focus on pregnancy (an evidence-based review): teratogenesis and perinatal outcomes. Neurology 73(2):133, 2009b
Harden CL, Pennell PB, Koppel BS, et al: Practice parameter update: management issues for women with epilepsy-focus on pregnancy (an evidence-based review): vitamin K, folic acid, blood levels, and breastfeeding. Neurology 73(2): 142, 2009c
Hatem CF, Yri HM, Sorensen AL, et al: Long-term visual outcome in a Danish population of patients with idiopathic intracranial hypertension. Acta Ophthalmol 96(7):719, 2018
Heaney DC, Williams DJ, O'Brien PO: Neurology. In Powrie R, Greene M, Camann W (eds): de Swiet's Medical Disorders in Obstetric Practice, 5th ed. Wiley-Blackwell, Oxford, 2010
Hellwig K, Rockhoff M, Herbstritt S, et al: Exclusive breastfeeding and the effect on postpartum multiple sclerosis relapses. JAMA Neurol 72(10):1132, 2015
Hemphill JC 3rd, Greenberg SM, Anderson CS, et al: Guidelines for the management of spontaneous intracerebral hemorrhage: a guideline for healthcare professionals from the American Heart Association/American Stroke Association. Stroke 46(7):2032, 2015
Herbstritt S, Langer-Gould A, Rockoff M, et al: Glatiramer acetate during early pregnancy: a prospective cohort study. Mult Scler 22(6):810, 2016
Hirsch KG, Froehler MT, Huang J, et al: Occurrence of perimesencephalic subarachnoid hemorrhage during pregnancy. Neurocrit Care 10(3):339, 2009

Huang CJ, Fan YC, Tsai PS: Differential impacts of modes of anaesthesia on the risk of stroke among preeclamptic women who undergo caesarean delivery: a population-based study. Br J Anaesth 105(6):818, 2010
Huna-Baron R, Kupersmith MJ: Idiopathic intracranial hypertension in pregnancy. J Neurol 249(8):1078, 2002
Hussein I Y, Govenden V, Grant JM, et al: Prolongation of pregnancy in a woman who sustained brain death at 26 weeks of gestation. BJOG 113:120, 2006
Iezzoni LI, Chen Y, McLain AB: Current pregnancy among women with spinal cord injury: findings from the US national spinal cord injury database. Spinal Cord 53(11):821, 2015
International Headache Society: Headache classification committee of the International Headache Society (IHS) the international classification of headache disorders, 3rd edition. Cephalgia 38(1):1, 2018
James AH, Bushnell CD, Jamison MG, et al: Incidence and risk factors for stroke in pregnancy and the puerperium. Obstet Gynecol 106:509, 2005
Jamieson DG, McVige JW: Imaging of neurologic disorders in pregnancy. Neurol Clin 38(1):37, 2020
Jamieson DG, Skliut M: Stroke in women: what is different? Curr Atheroscler Rep 12:236, 2010
Jovandaric MZ, Despotovic DJ, Jesic MM, Neonatal outcome in pregnancies with auto-immune myasthenia gravis. Fetal Pediatr Pathol 35(3):167, 2016
Judy AE, McCain CL, Lawton ES, et al: Systolic hypertension, preeclampsia-related mortality, and stroke in California. Obstet Gynecol 133(6):1151, 2019
Jung SY, Bae HJ, Park BJ, et al: Parity and risk of hemorrhagic strokes. Neurology 74:1424, 2010
Kapur J, Elm J, Chamberlain JM, et al: Randomized trial of three anticonvulsant medications for status epilepticus. N Engl J Med 381(22): 2103, 2019
Karmaniolou I, Petropoulos G, Theodoraki K: Management of idiopathic intracranial hypertension in parturients: anesthetic considerations. Can J Anesth 58:650, 2011
Kasradze S, Gogatishvili N, Lomidze G, et al: Cognitive functions in children exposed to antiepileptic drugs in uterostudy in Georgia. Epilepsy Behav 66:105, 2017
Katz A, Sergienko R, Dior U, et al: Bell's palsy during pregnancy: is it associated with adverse perinatal outcome? Laryngoscope 121:1395, 2011
Keith MW, Masear V, Amadio PC, et al: Treatment of carpal tunnel syndrome. J Am Acad Orthop Surg 17:397, 2009
Kesler A, Kupfermic M: Idiopathic intracranial hypertension and pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 56(2):389, 2013
Klein P, Mathews GC: Antiepileptic drugs and neurocognitive development. Neurology 82(3):194, 2014
Knight M, Tuffnell D, Kenyon S, et al (eds): Saving lives, improving mothers; care surveillance of maternal deaths in the UK 2011–13 and lessons learned to inform maternity care from the UK and Ireland Confidential Enquiries into Maternal Deaths and Morbidity 2009–13. Oxford, National Perinatal Epidemiology Unit, 2015
Krassioukov A, Warburton DE, Teasel IR, et al: A systematic review of the management of autonomic dysreflexia after spinal cord injury. Arch Phys Med Rehabil 90:682, 2009
Kuczkowski KM: Labor analgesia for the parturient with spinal cord injury: what does an obstetrician need to know? Arch Gynecol Obstet 274:108, 2006
Kuklina EV, Tong X, Bansil P, et al: Trends in pregnancy hospitalizations that included a stroke in the United States from 1994 to 2007. Stroke 42:2564, 2011
Kusznir Vitturi B, Barreto Cabral F, Mella Cukiert C: Outcomes of pregnant women with refractory epilepsy. Seizure 69:251, 2019
Lamy C, Hamon JB, Coste J, et al: Ischemic stroke in young women. Neurology 55:269, 2000
Lawton MT, Vates GE: Subarachnoid hemorrhage. N Engl J Med 377(3):257, 2017
Leavell Y, Khalid M, Tuhrim S, et al: Baseline characteristics and readmissions after cerebral venous sinus thrombosis in a nationally representative database. Cerebrovasc Dis 46 (5-6):249, 2018
Lee AG, Pless M, Falardeau J, et al: The use of acetazolamide in idiopathic intracranial hypertension during pregnancy. Am J Ophthalmol 139:855, 2005
Lee I, Walker JB, Nozak K, et al: Weak and winded. N Engl J Med 381(1):76, 2019
Leffert LR, Clancy CR, Bateman BT, et al: Treatment patterns and short-term outcomes in ischemic stroke in pregnancy or postpartum period. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(6):723.e1, 2016
Le Liepvre H, Dinh A, Idiard-Chamois B, et al: Pregnancy in spinal cord-injured women, a cohort study of 37 pregnancies in 25 women. Spinal Cord 55(2):167, 2017
Leonhard SE, Mandarakas MR, Gondim FA, et al: Diagnosis and management of Guillain-Barré syndrome in ten steps. Nat Rev Neurol 15(11):671, 2019
Levine SR, Brey RL, Tilley BC, et al: Antiphospholipid antibodies and subsequent thrombo-occlusive events in patients with ischemic stroke. JAMA 291:576, 2004
Lewis A, Varelas P, Greer D: Pregnancy and brain death: lack of guidance in U.S. hospital policies. Am J Perinatol 33(14): 1382, 2016
Li Y, Margraf J, Kluck B, et al: Thrombolytic therapy for ischemic stroke secondary to paradoxical embolism in pregnancy. Neurologist 18:44, 2012
Limaye K, Patel A, Dave M, et al: Secular increases in spontaneous subarachnoid hemorrhage during pregnancy: a nationwide sample analysis. J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis 28 (4):1141, 2019
Lin SY, Hu CJ, Lin HC: Increased risk of stroke in patients who undergo cesarean section delivery: a nationwide population-based study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198:391.e1, 2008
Lowenstein DH: Seizures and epilepsy. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. McGraw Hill Education, New York, 2018, p 3050
Lu X, Liu P, Li Y: Pre-existing, incidental and hemorrhagic AVMs in pregnancy and postpartum: gestational age, morbidity and mortality, management and risk to the fetus. Interv Neuroradiol 22(2):206, 2016
Lucas S: Medication use in the treatment of migraine during pregnancy and lactation. Curr Pain Headache Rep 13:392, 2009
Lucas S: Migraine and other headache disorders: ACOG clinical updates in women's health care primary and preventive care review summary volume XVIII, number 4, Obstet Gynecol 134(1):211, 2019
Lum M, Tsiouris AJ: MRI safety considerations during pregnancy. Clin Imaging 62:69, 2020
MacDonald SC, Bateman BT, McElrath TF: Mortality and morbidity during delivery hospitalization among pregnant women with epilepsy in the United States. JAMA Neurol 72(9):981, 2015
MacDonald SC, McElrath TF, Hernandez-Diaz S: Pregnancy outcomes in women with multiple sclerosis. Am J Epidemiol 188(1):57, 2019
Madhok VB, Gagyor I, Daly F, et al: Corticosteroids for Bell's palsy (idiopathic facial paralysis). Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD001942, 2016
Mao-Draayer Y, Thiel S, Mills EA, et al: Neuromyelitis optica spectrum disorders and pregnancy: therapeutic considerations. Nat Rev Neurol 16(3):154, 2020
Martin JN Jr, Thigpen BD, Moore RC, et al: Stroke and severe preeclampsia and eclampsia: a paradigm shift focusing on systolic blood pressure. Obstet Gynecol 105:246, 2005
Martinelli I, Passamonti SM, Maino A, et al: Pregnancy outcome after a first episode of cerebral vein thrombosis. J Thromb Haemost 14(12):2386, 2016
Martinez-Sånchez P, Fuentes B, Fernåndez-Dominguez J, et al: Young women have poorer outcomes than men after stroke. Cerebrovasc Dis 31:455, 2011
McCau1ley JA, Pates JA: Postpartum cerebral venous thrombosis. Obstet Gynecol 118:423, 2011
Meems M, Truijens S, Spek V, et al: Prevalence, course and determinants of carpal tunnel syndrome symptoms during pregnancy: a prospective study. BJOG 122(8):1112, 2015
Miller EC, Gatollari HJ, Too G, et al: Risk of pregnancy associated stroke across age groups in New York state. JAMA Neurol 73(12):1461, 2016
Miller EC, Leffert L: Stroke in pregnancy: a focused update. Anesth Analg 130(4):1085, 2020
Miller EC, Wen T, Elkind MSV, et al: Infection during delivery hospitalization and risk of readmission for postpartum stroke. Stroke 50(10):2685, 2019
Miyakoshi K, Matsuoka M, Yasutomi D, et al: Moyamoya-disease-related ischemic stroke in the postpartum period. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 35(5):974, 2009
Murakami M, Morine M, Iwasa T, et al: Management of maternal hydrocephalus requires replacement of ventriculoperitoneal shunt with ventriculoatrial shunt: a case report. Arch Gynecol Obstet 282:339, 2010
National Spinal Cord Injury Statistical Center: Spinal cord injury: facts and figures at a glance. 2021. Available at: https://www.nscisc.uab.edu/. Accessed October 15, 2021
Oh MK, Ryu JH, Jeon WJ, et al: Case report: postpartum cerebral venous thrombosis misdiagnosed as postdural puncture headache. BMC Anesthesiol 20(1):80, 2020
Oliveira GA, Bernardes JM, Santos ES, et al: Carpal tunnel syndrome during the third trimester of pregnancy: prevalence and risk factors. Arch Gynecol Obstet 300(3):623, 2019
Pacheco LD, Hankins GD, Saad AF, et al: Acute management of ischemic stroke during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 113(5):933, 2019
Pacheco LD, Saad AF, Hankins GD, et al: Guillain-Barré syndrome in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 128(5):1105, 2016
Padua L, Di Pasquale A, Pazzaglia C, et al: Systematic review of pregnancy-related carpal tunnel syndrome. Muscle Nerve 42:697, 2010

Pavlovic JM, Akcali D, Bolay H, et al: Sex-related influences in migraine. J Neurosci Res 95(1-2):587, 2017
Pennell PB, French JA, May BC, et al: Changes in seizure frequency and antiepileptic therapy during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 383(26):2547, 2020
Perucca E: Birth defects after prenatal exposure to antiepileptic drugs. Lancet Neurol 4:781, 2005
Petersen EE, Davis NL, Goodman D, et al: Racial/ethnic disparities in pregnancy-related deaths United States, 2007–2016. MMWR 68(35):762, 2019
Phillips KM, Heiser A, Gaudin R, et al: Onset of Bell's palsy in late pregnancy and early puerperium is associated with worse long-term outcomes. Laryngoscope 127(12):2854, 2017
Pires CV, Linhares IM, Serzedello F, et al: Alterations in the genital microbiota in women with spinal cord injury. Obstet Gynecol 127(2):273, 2016
Podciechowski L, Brocka-Nitecka U, Dabrowska K, et al: Pregnancy complicated by myasthenia gravis-twelve years' experience. Neuro Endocrinol Lett 26:603, 2005
Portaccio E, Annovazzi P, Ghezzi A, et al: Pregnancy decision making in women with multiple sclerosis treated with natalizumab: I: fetal risks. Neurology 90(10):e823, 2018
Portaccio E, Ghezzi A, Hakiki B, et al: Breastfeeding is not related to postpartum relapses in multiple sclerosis. Neurology 77:145, 2011
Powner DJ, Bernstein 1M: Extended somatic support in pregnant women after brain death. Crit Care Med 31:1241, 2003
Reinhold AK, Kredel M, Markus CK, et al: Vaginal delivery in the 30+4 weeks of pregnancy and organ donation after brain death in early pregnancy. BMJ Case Rep 12(9):e231601, 2019
Riffaud L, Ferre JC, Carsin-Nicol B, et al: Endoscopic third ventriculostomy for the treatment of obstructive hydrocephalus during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 108:801, 2006
Robbins MS, Farmakidis C, Dayal AK, et al: Acute headache diagnosis in pregnant women: a hospital-based study. Neurology 85(12):1024, 2015
Robertson K, Dawood R, Ashworth F: Vaginal delivery is safely achieved in pregnancies complicated by spinal cord injury: a retrospective 25-year observational study of pregnancy outcomes in a national spinal injuries centre. BMC Pregnancy Childbirth 20(1):56, 2020
Rodriguez AN, Patel S, Macias D, et al: Timing of emergency postpartum hospital visits in the fourth trimester. Am J Perinatol 38(4):319, 2021
Ryman KM, Pace WD, Smith S, et al: Alteplase therapy for acute ischemic stroke in pregnancy: two case reports and a systematic review of the literature. Pharmacotherapy 39(7):767, 2019
Saiminen HJ, Leggett H, Boggild M: Glatiramer acetate exposure in pregnancy: preliminary safety and birth outcomes. J Neurol 257(12):3, 2020
Saldanha IJ, Cao W, Bhuma MR,et al: Management of primary headaches during pregnancy, postpartum, and breastfeeding: a systematic review. Headache 61(1):11, 2021
Salman L, Shmueli A, Ashwal E, et al: The impact of maternal epilepsy on perinatal outcome in singleton gestations. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(24):3283, 2018
Sanders DB, Wolde GI, Benatar M, et al: International consensus guidance for management of myasthenia gravis: executive summary. Neurology 87(4):419, 2016
Schiza S, Starnatakis E, Panagopoulou A, et al: Management of pregnancy and delivery of a patient with malfunctioning ventriculoperitoneal shunt. J Obstet Gynaecol 32(1):6, 2012
Scott CA, Bewley S, Rudd A: Incidence, risk factors, management, and outcomes of stroke in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 120:318, 2012
Shi Q, MacDermid JC: Is surgical intervention more effective than non-surgical treatment for carpal tunnel syndrome? A systemic review, J Orthop Surg 6:17, 2011
Silvis SM, Lindgren E, Hiltunen S, et al: Postpartum period is a risk factor for cerebral venous thrombosis. Stroke 50(2): 501, 2019
Simolke GA, Cox SM, Cunningham FG: Cerebrovascular accident complicating pregnancy and the puerperium. Obstet Gynecol 78:37, 1991
Smith WS, Johnston SC, Hemphill III JC: Cerebrovascular diseases. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. McGraw-Hill Education, New York, 2018, p 3068
Sperling JD, Dahlke JD, Huber WJ, et al: The role of headache in the classification and management of hypertensive disorders in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 126(2):297, 2015
Spielmann K, Kayser A, Beck E, et al: Pregnancy outcome after anti-migraine triptan use: a prospective observational cohort study. Cephalalgia 38(6):1081, 2018
Stephen LJ, Harden C, Tomson T, et al: Management of epilepsy in women. Lancet Neurol 18(5):481, 2019
Tepper SJ: Anti-calcitonin gene related peptide (CGRP) therapies: update on a previous review after the American Headache Society 60th Scientific Meeting, San Francisco, June 2018. Headache 58(Suppl 3):276, 2018
Thambisetty M, Lavin PJ, Newman NJ, et al: Fulminant idiopathic intracranial hypertension. Neurology 68:229, 2007
Thomas SV, Ajaykumar B, Sindhu K, et al: Cardiac malformations are increased in infants of mothers with epilepsy. Pediatr Cardiol 29:604, 2008
Tian N, Boring M, Kobau R, et al: Active epilepsy and seizure control in adults—United States, 2013 and 2015. MMWR 67(15):437, 2018
Tiel Groenestege AT, Rinkel CJ, van der Bom JG, et al: The risk of aneurysmal subarachnoid hemorrhage during pregnancy, delivery, and the puerperium in the Utrecht population: case-crossover study and standardized incidence ratio estimation. Stroke 40(4):1148, 2009
Tietjen GE, Maly EF: Migraine and ischemic stroke in women: a narrative review. Headache 60(5):843, 2020
Tintore M, Vidal-Jordana A, Sastre-Garriga J, et al: Treatment of multiple sclerosis success from bench to bedside. Nat Rev Neurol 15(1):53, 2019
Tomson T, Battino D, Bonizzoni E, et al: Comparative risk of major congenital malformations with eight different antiepileptic drugs: a prospective cohort study of the EURAP registry. Lancet Neurol 17(6):530, 2018
Tomson T, Battino D, Bonizzoni E, et al: Declining malformation rates with changed antiepileptic drug prescribing: an observational study. Neurology 93(9):e831, 2019a
Tomson T, Battino D, Bromley R, et al: Management of epilepsy in pregnancy: a report from the International League against Epilepsy Task Force on women and pregnancy. Epileptic Disord 21(6):497, 2019b
Turner K, Piazzini A, Franza A, et al: Epilepsy and postpartum depression. Epilepsia 50(1):24, 2009
Van den Heuvel MI, Thomason ME: Functional connectivity of the human brain in utero. Trends Cogn Sci 20(12):931, 2016
Van Teen TR, Panerai RB, Haeri S, et al: Changes in cerebral autoregulation in the second half of pregnancy and compared to non-pregnant controls. Pregnancy Hypertens 6(4):380, 2016
VanderPluym J: Cluster headache: Special considerations for treatment of female patients of reproductive age and pediatric patients. Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep 16(1):5, 2016
Viale L, Allotey J, Cheong-See F, et al: Epilepsy in pregnancy and reproductive outcomes: a systematic review and metaanalysis. Lancet 386:1845, 2015
Virani SS, Alonso A, Aparicio HJ, et al: Heart disease and stroke statistics-2021 update: a report from the American Heart Association 143(8):e254, 2021
Wabnitz A, Bushnell C: Migraine, cardiovascular disease, and stroke during pregnancy: systematic review of the literature. Cephalalgia 35(2):132, 2015
Wang IK, Chang SN, Liao CC, et al: Hypertensive disorders in pregnancy and preterm delivery and subsequent stroke in Asian women: a retrospective cohort study. Stroke 42:716, 2011
Waters J: Management of myasthenia gravis in pregnancy. Neurol Clin 37(1):113, 2019
Wen JC, Liu TC, Chen YH, et al: No increased risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes for women with myasthenia gravis: a nationwide population-based study. Eur J Neurol 16:889, 2009
Westgren N, Hultling C, Levi R, et al: Pregnancy and delivery in women with a trauma spinal cord injury in Sweden, 1980–1991. Obstet Gynecol 81:926, 1993
Weston J, Bromley R, Jackson CF, et al: Monotherapy treatment of epilepsy in pregnancy: congenital malformation outcomes in the child. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 11:CD010224, 2016
Wisoff JH, Kratzert KJ, Handwerker SM, et al: Pregnancy in patients with cerebrospinal fluid shunts: report of a series and review of the literature. Neurosurgery 29:827, 1991
Wolfe GI, Kaminski HJ, Aban IB, et al: Randomized trial of thymectomy in myasthenia gravis. N Engl J Med 375(6):511, 2016
Wood ME, Frazier JA, Nordeng HM, et al: Longitudinal changes in neurodevelopmental outcomes between 18 and 36 months in children with prenatal triptan exposure: findings from the Norwegian Mother and Child Cohort Study. BMJ Open 6(9):e011971, 2016
Yager PH, Singhal AV, Nogueira RG: Case 31–2012: an 18-year old man with blurred vision, dysarthria, and ataxia. N Engl J Med 367:1450, 2012
Yoshida K, Takahashi JC, Takenobu Y, et al: Strokes associated with pregnancy and puerperium. A nationwide study by the Japan Stroke Society. Stroke 48:276, 2017
Zeeman GG, Fleckenstein JL, Twickler DM, et al: Cerebral infarction in eclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 190:714, 2004a
Zeeman GG, Hat ab M, Twickler DM: Increased cerebral blood flow in preeclampsia with magnetic resonance imaging. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:1425, 2004b
Zeeman GG, Hatab M, Twickler DM: Maternal cerebral blood flow changes in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:968, 2003
Zofkie A, Cunningham FG: A 33-year single-center experience with pregnancy-associated strokes. Abstract No. 799, Am J Obstet Gynecol 218:S476, 2018

CHAPTER 64

Psychiatric Disorders

Pregnancy and the puerperium are at times sufficiently stressful to provoke mental illness. Such illness may represent recurrence or exacerbation of a preexisting psychiatric disorder, or it may signal the onset of a new condition. Especially prevalent in pregnancy and the puerperium are depressive and anxiety disorders (Kendig, 2017). Many of these disorders are associated with less prenatal care, substance use, preterm delivery, and other poor obstetrical and neonatal outcomes. In affected gravidas, the postpartum psychiatric illness rate also is higher (Baer, 2016). Last, perinatal mood disorders can adversely hinder the mother-child relationship.

Despite these known risks, obstetrical providers often are reluctant to confront or fail to identify mental health issues during pregnancy. Lyell and colleagues (2012) found that the diagnosis of depression was not documented in nearly half of the records of affected women.

PSYCHOLOGICAL ADJUSTMENTS TO PREGNANCY

Biochemical factors and life stressors can markedly influence mental health and mental illness during the perinatal period (Meltzer-Brody, 2018b). Intuitively, pregnancy exacerbates some coexisting psychological disorders. Namely, a higher risk for mood disorders is linked with pregnancy-related shifts in sex steroid and monoamine neurotransmitter levels, dysfunction of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis, thyroid dysfunction, and immune response alterations (Yonkers, 2011). These changes, coupled with familial clustering of depression cases, suggest that a subgroup of women may be at greater risk for developing a unipolar major depressive disorder during pregnancy.

Women respond variably to the stresses of pregnancy. Some express persistent concerns regarding fetal health, child care, lifestyle changes, or fear of childbirth pain. Anxiety, sleep disorders, and functional impairment are common (Romero, 2014; Vythilingum, 2008). The level of perceived stress is significantly higher for women whose fetus is at high risk for a malformation, for those with preterm labor or delivery, and for those with other medical complications (Alder, 2007; Ross, 2006). For example, Hippman and associates (2009) screened for depression in 81 women who had an increased risk for a fetus with aneuploidy. Half of these women had a positive depression screening score, whereas only 2.4 percent of those with a normal pregnancy did so.

Several steps can diminish psychological stress in the event of a poor obstetrical outcome. For example, following a stillbirth, parental contact with the newborn and provision of photographs and other infant memorabilia is encouraged (Gold, 2007). Addressing associated sleep disorders also seems reasonable (Juulia Paavonen, 2017).

The Puerperium

This is a particularly stressful time for women, and risks for mental illness are increased. Up to 15 percent of women develop a nonpsychotic postpartum depressive disorder within 6 months of delivery (Tam, 2007; Yonkers, 2011). Depressive disorders are more likely in women with obstetrical complications such as severe preeclampsia or fetal-growth restriction, especially if associated with early delivery. Prior psychiatric disorders or childhood trauma also raises the risk for postpartum depression (Tebeka, 2021). Instead, some have a psychotic illness following delivery, and half of these manifest as a bipolar disorder.

Importantly, stressors beyond those directly related to the pregnancy also can raise perinatal depression rates. Tarney and colleagues (2015) identified spouse military deployment as a factor for postpartum depression. But, among women with a history of bipolar disorder, these elements play a lesser role in the development of mania or depression (Yonkers, 2011).

Maternity Blues

Also called *postpartum blues*, this is a time-limited period of heightened emotional reactivity experienced by half of women within the first week after parturition. Prevalence estimates for the blues range from 26 to 84 percent depending on diagnostic criteria (O'Hara, 2014). This emotional state generally peaks on the fourth or fifth postpartum day and normalizes by day 10 (O'Keane, 2011).

The predominant mood during the puerperium is happiness, but affected mothers are more emotionally labile. They also may have insomnia, weepiness, depression, anxiety, poor concentration, and irritability. Mothers may be transiently tearful for several hours and then recover completely, only to be tearful again the next day. Supportive treatment is indicated, and affected women are reassured that the dysphoria is transient and most likely due to biochemical changes. They are monitored for development of depression and other severe psychiatric disturbances.

Perinatal Evaluation and Screening

Both the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018b) and the United States Preventive Services Task Force now recommend screening at least once during the perinatal period for depression and anxiety (Siu, 2016). Indeed, it has recently been recommended that all obstetrical care providers complete a full assessment of mood and emotional well-being during the comprehensive postpartum visit (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018a). Identification of psychiatric disorders in pregnancy can be challenging because changes in behavior and mood are often attributed to pregnancy. To differentiate these, Yonkers and associates (2011) recommend assessment of cognitive symptoms—for example, loss of concentration. Excessive anxiety and insomnia—even during periods of infant sleep—also can suggest postpartum depression. Specific factors for depression are reviewed and include a prior personal or family history of depression.

Universal screening programs for depression continue to evolve (Venkatesh, 2016). One major step forward is state-level support for screening. Beginning July 1, 2018, mothers who take newborns for Texas Health Steps routine examination are able to receive testing and counseling (Texas Health and Human Services, 2019). At Parkland Hospital, mental illness screening is completed at the first prenatal visit using a brief risk-based query and again postpartum using a recognized screening tool for postpartum depression. Questions search for psychiatric disorders, related therapy, prior or current use of psychoactive medications, and current symptoms. Women with a history of sexual, physical, or verbal abuse; illicit substance use; and personality disorders are also at greater risk for depression (Meltzer-Brody, 2014). Smoking and nicotine dependence and obesity also raise rates of *all* mental disorders in pregnancy (Molyneaux, 2014). Last, because eating disorders may be exacerbated by pregnancy, affected women are followed closely (p. 1149).

Several screening instruments shown in Table 64-1 are available and have been validated for use during pregnancy and the puerperium (Bhat, 2017). Use of one of these is encouraged because symptom- or risk-based screening alone may be insufficient. Cerimele and colleagues (2013) found that obstetrician-gynecologists failed to identify 60 percent of depressed women in clinical practice. In one study at Parkland Hospital, 17,000 women were screened during their first postpartum visit using the Edinburgh Postnatal Depression Scale (EPDS). Of these, 6 percent had scores that indicated either minor or major depressive symptoms, and 12 women had thoughts of self-harm (Nelson, 2013). In another study, Kim and coworkers (2015) assessed suicidal ideation in more than 22,000 women screened

TABLE 64-1. Depression Screening Tools

Screening Tool	Items	Time to Complete (min)	Available Resources Online
Edinburgh Postnatal Depression Scale	10	<5	www.fresno.ucsf.edu/pediatrics/downloads/edinburghscale.pdf
Patient Health Questionnaire 9	9	<5	www.integration.samhsa.gov/images/res/PHQ%20-%20Questions.pdf
Center for Epidemiologic Studies Depression Scale	20	5–10	www.perinatalweb.org/assets/cms/uploads/files/CES-D.pdf

These screening tools are also available in Spanish.

using the EPDS both during pregnancy and postpartum. They found rates of depression as high as 3.4 percent during the puerperium. A small fraction of those with thoughts of self-harm had a credible plan, intent, and means for attempted suicide.

Screening for perinatal depression alone was previously considered insufficient, however, evidence now suggests that screening itself has clinical benefit (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018b). One systematic review of six randomized trials that screened pregnant or postpartum women found that follow-up of these women weeks to months later demonstrated an absolute risk reduction in the depression rate by a range of 2.1 to 9.1 percent (O'Connor, 2016). However, this review included studies with and without treatment components compared with usual care. Another limitation is that four of the six studies did not exclude women previously known to be depressed. Findings from this analysis prompted an interim update by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018b) to state that screening alone can have clinical benefit, although treatment initiation or referral to a mental health care provider offers maximum benefit.

Mechanisms to ensure adequate ensuing care can be problematic. Nelson and associates (2013) found that more than three fourths of the 1106 women with abnormally elevated EPDS scores did not keep their later appointment for more formal psychiatric evaluation. Barriers include access to care, personal perception of depression, and societal stigmata. Women referred to a behavioral health provider located at the same site as their obstetrical care are four times more likely to access treatment than those referred elsewhere (Smith, 2009). To take advantage of this, at Parkland Hospital, mental health counselors also practice at postpartum clinic sites.

Other promising interventions for puerperal depression include home visits, telephone-based peer support, and interpersonal psychotherapy (Dennis, 2013; Lavender, 2013; Yonemoto, 2017). A report from Kaiser Permanente, which describes the benefits and hurdles of system-based perinatal mental health care, provides a glimpse into the possible future of universal perinatal screening and treatment (Avalos, 2016; Flanagan, 2016).

Treatment Considerations

Once a positive mental health screen result is identified, a stage-based response protocol is triggered (Kendig, 2017). In brief, the initial response focuses on maternal and infant safety, and if possible, onsite patient assessment by either a mental health provider or mental health counselor. Integrating on-site assessment and access to counselors quadruples later attendance rates to mental health appointments (Byatt, 2015).

For women with suicidal or homicidal ideation, perinatal care providers first determine a working diagnosis. Second, emergency psychiatric consultation is sought and ambulance transport is implemented if needed. Concurrently, perinatal care and psychiatric teams ideally communicate closely. Last, the patient, her family, and clinical staff are emotionally supported. Appreciation for this issue's significance has grown with the recent national emphasis on maternal mortality. For example, Palladino and associates (2011) found that pregnancy-associated homicide and suicide were significant contributors to maternal mortality in a multistate sample from the National Violent Death Reporting system.

Many psychiatric disorders can be improved with counseling and psychotherapy. In some instances, medications are needed. Shared decision making is employed by patients and their health-care providers. In particular, women taking psychotropic medication are informed of likely side effects. Many of these drugs are discussed in Chapter 8, and some are discussed subsequently.

Pregnancy Outcomes

As noted, maternal psychiatric illness can be linked to untoward outcomes such as preterm birth, low birthweight, and perinatal mortality (Grigoriadis, 2013; Jarde, 2016; Steinberg, 2014). In a study of 16,334 deliveries, a significant association between posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD) and spontaneous preterm delivery was identified (Shaw, 2014). Domestic abuse—another aforementioned risk factor for perinatal mood disorder—also is linked with adverse perinatal outcomes (Yost, 2005).

CLASSIFICATION OF PSYCHIATRIC DISORDERS

The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition (DSM-5)* is the most recent version from the American Psychiatric Association (2013). The manual assists in classifying mental disorders and specifies criteria for each diagnosis. It is presumed that correct diagnosis leads to specific treatment.

MOOD DISORDERS

Historically, depressive disorders include major depression—a unipolar disorder—and manic-depression—a bipolar disorder with both manic and depressive episodes. It also includes dysthymia, which is chronic, mild depression.

Major Depression

This is the most common depressive disorder, and the 12-month prevalence of major depressive episodes among adult women is 8.2 percent (Center for Behavioral Health Statistics and Quality, 2015). From 2011 to 2014, 16 percent of women had used an antidepressant in the prior month (Pratt, 2017). The diagnosis is made by identifying symptoms listed in Table 64-2, but very few patients manifest all of these.

Major depression is multifactorial and prompted by genetic and environmental factors. Families of affected individuals often also have members suffering with alcohol abuse and anxiety disorders. Provocative conditions leading to depression include substance abuse, certain medications, other medical disorders, and life events that prompt grief reactions. Although life events can trigger depression, genes influence the response to these events and render the distinction between genetic and environmental factors difficult.

TABLE 64-2. Symptoms of Depressive Illness[a]

Hopelessness and/or pessimism
Persistent sad, anxious, or "empty" feelings
Guilt, worthlessness, and/or helplessness
Irritability, restlessness
Loss of interest in activities once pleasurable, including sex
Fatigue and decreased energy
Difficulty concentrating, remembering details, and making decisions
Insomnia, early-morning wakefulness, or excessive sleeping
Overeating or appetite loss
Thoughts of suicide, suicide attempts
Persistent aches, or pains, headaches, cramps, or digestive problems that do not ease with treatment

[a]Not all patients experience the same symptoms.
From National Institute of Mental Health, 2019.

Pregnancy and Depression

Pregnancy is a major life stressor that can precipitate or exacerbate depressive tendencies. In addition, various pregnancy-induced effects are implicated. Hormones certainly affect mood, as evidenced by premenstrual syndrome and menopausal depression. Estrogen has been linked to enhanced serotonin synthesis, decreased serotonin breakdown, and serotonin-receptor modulation (Deecher, 2008). Concordantly, women who experience postpartum depression often have higher pre-delivery serum estrogen and progesterone levels and experience a greater decline postpartum (Ahokas, 1999).

The prevalence of antenatal depression averaged 11 percent in one Cochrane Database review (Dennis, 2007). In more than 1800 women enrolled for prenatal care at a single clinic, Melville and coworkers (2010) found rates of nearly 10 percent. A higher rate has been seen in those after antepartum complications (Toscano, 2021).

Postpartum Depression

Major or minor depression develops postpartum in 10 to 20 percent of women (Mental Health America, 2019). Postpartum depressive symptoms are associated with young maternal age, antenatal depression, unmarried status, smoking, newborns requiring intensive care, and stressors during pregnancy (Ko, 2017; Silverman, 2017). Specifically, physical or verbal abuse is a potent risk for postpartum depression (McFarlane, 2014). Last, serious adverse obstetrical events, especially those involving the neonate, are strongly linked (Nelson, 2013, 2015).

Depression is frequently recurrent. Up to 70 percent of women with previous postpartum depression have a subsequent episode. Women with both prior puerperal depression and a current episode of "maternity blues" carry an inordinately high risk for major depression. Indeed, 2 to 9 months postpartum, assistance with postpartum depression was the fourth most common challenge identified in women in the Pregnancy Risk Assessment Monitoring System—PRAMS (Kanotra, 2007).

Postpartum depression is generally underrecognized and undertreated. Major depression during pregnancy or after delivery can have devastating consequences for affected women, their children, and families. One of the most significant contributions to the mortality rate among new mothers is suicide, which is most frequent among women with mental illness (Koren, 2012; Palladino, 2011). If left untreated, up to 25 percent of women with postpartum depression will be depressed 1 year later. As the duration of depression increases, so too does the number of sequelae and their severity. Maternal depression during the first weeks and months after delivery can lead to insecure attachment and later behavioral problems in the child (Mezzacappa, 2017; Viktorin, 2017).

Depression Treatment

Therapy for mood disorders during pregnancy and postpartum has evolved. Babbitt (2014) and Pozzi (2014) and their associates have reviewed principles of perinatal care of women with major mental disorders. In general, for mild and mild-moderate depression, psychological treatment options, such as cognitive behavioral therapy, are considered first (Yonkers, 2011). Light- to moderate-intensity exercise may be beneficial (McCurdy, 2017).

Antidepressant medications together with some form of psychotherapy are indicated for moderate to severe depression during pregnancy or the puerperium (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018b). Shown in Figure 64-1 is one algorithm regarding mood disorder treatment. Some of these medications are listed in Table 64-3. For women with severe depression, a selective serotonin-reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) is selected initially. If depressive symptoms improve during a 6-week trial, the medication is continued for a minimum of 6 months to prevent relapse (Wisner, 2002).

If the response is suboptimal or a relapse occurs, another SSRI is substituted, or psychiatric referral is considered. At least 60 percent of women taking antidepressant medication before pregnancy have symptoms during pregnancy. In one study, approximately three fourths of women taking antidepressants before pregnancy stopped taking them before or during early pregnancy (Hayes, 2012). For those who discontinue treatment, almost 70 percent have a relapse compared with approximately 25 percent who continue therapy.

In one metaanalysis, women using antidepressants during pregnancy had higher rates of preterm birth and low-birthweight neonates (Huang, 2014). Some of the included studies failed

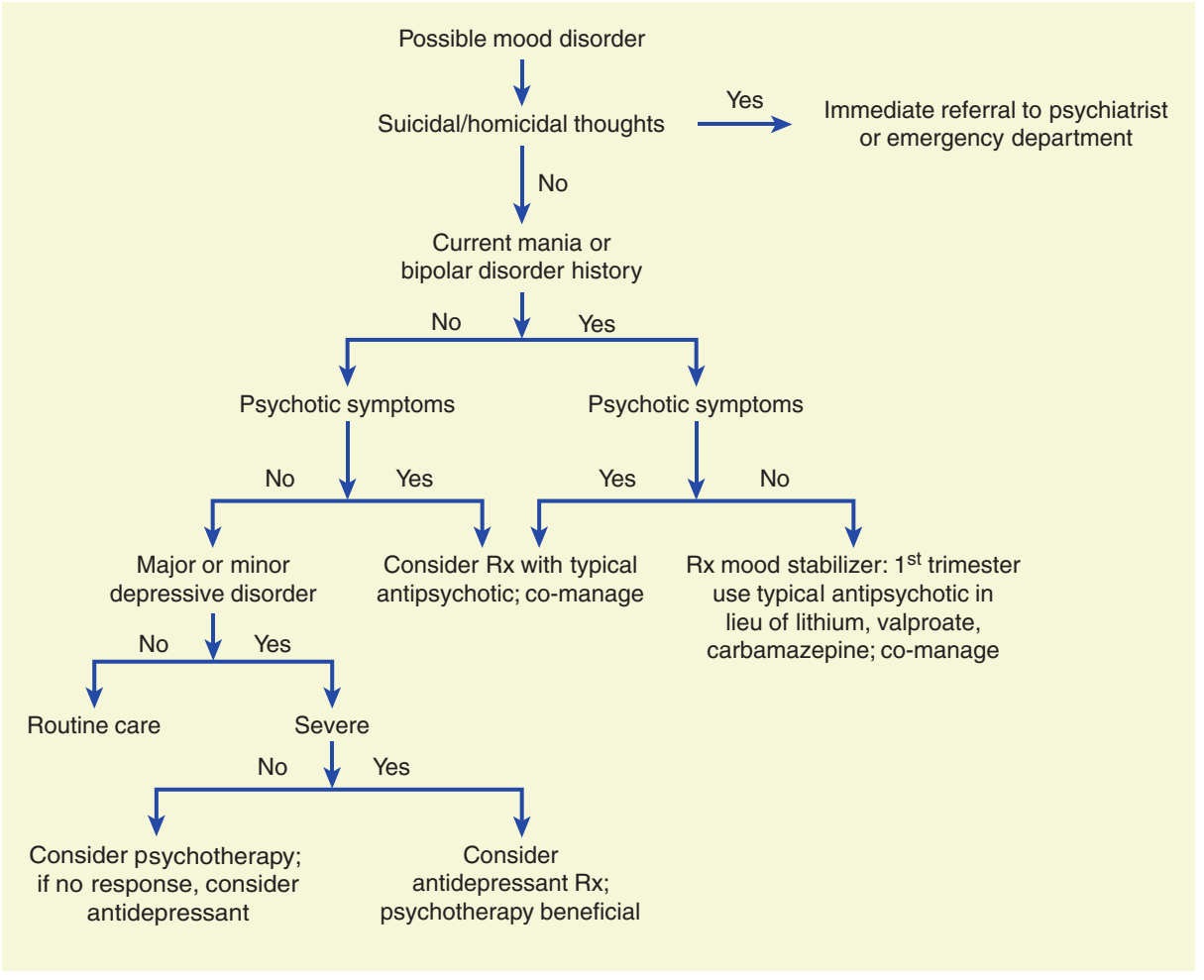


FIGURE 64-1 Treatment algorithm for pregnant women with mood disorders. Rx = prescription.

TABLE 64-3. Drugs Used for Treatment of Major Mood Disorders in Pregnant Women

Indication	Examples	Comments
Antidepressants		
SSRIs[a]	Citalopram, sertraline, fluoxetine, paroxetine	Some have possible link with heart defects, neonatal withdrawal syndrome, and pulmonary hypertension
Others	Bupropion, duloxetine, nefazodone, venlafaxine	
Tricyclics	Amitriptyline, desipramine, doxepin, imipramine, nortriptyline	No evidence of teratogenicity, not commonly used
Antipsychotics		
Typical	Chlorpromazine, fluphenazine, haloperidol, thiothixene	
Atypical	Aripiprazole, clozapine, olanzapine, risperidone, ziprasidone	
Bipolar Disorders		
Lithium[a]	Lithium carbonate	Manic episodes; teratogenic for cardiac defects (Ebstein anomaly)
Valproic acid[b]		Teratogenic for neural-tube defects
Carbamazepine[b]		Antiepileptic; hydantoin syndrome

[a]Chapter 8 (p. 150).
[b]Chapter 63 (p. 1130).
SSRI = selective serotonin-reuptake inhibitor.
Data from American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2018c; Briggs, 2017; Huybrechts, 2015; Koren, 2012.

to control for the underlying depressive illness (Susser, 2016). Nevertheless, in their review, Ray and Stowe (2014) concluded that the relative reproductive safety data are reassuring and that antidepressants remain a reasonable treatment option. Furthermore, recurrence sometime after medication is discontinued develops in 50 to 85 percent of women with an initial postpartum depressive episode. Surveillance includes monitoring for thoughts of suicide or infanticide, emergence of psychosis, and response to therapy. For some women, the course of illness is severe enough to warrant hospitalization.

Fetal and Neonatal Effects of Therapy. Some known and possible fetal and neonatal effects of treatment are listed in Table 64-3. Some studies suggest that SSRIs pose an elevated teratogenic risk for fetal cardiac defects, and these have mainly focused on paroxetine (Paxil). Associations were most consistent for ventricular septal defects. The estimated risk is no greater than 1 case in 200 exposed newborns (Koren, 2012). Nevertheless, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018b) recommends that paroxetine be avoided in women who are either pregnant or planning pregnancy. In women exposed to paroxetine in the first trimester, fetal echocardiography is considered. In one analysis of SSRIs, exposure to SSRIs during pregnancy and perinatal mortality were not linked (Jimenez-Solem, 2013). Andersen and associates (2014) found that women discontinuing SSRI treatment in early pregnancy had a small increased risk of miscarriage. However, the risk was similar to that in women discontinuing SSRI treatment months before pregnancy. These investigators concluded that treatment with SSRIs during pregnancy should not be discontinued for fear of miscarriage.

Of other potential effects, the risk of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn is sixfold higher in neonates exposed to SSRIs after 20 weeks' gestation (Chambers, 2006). This translates to an overall pulmonary hypertension risk of less than 1 case in 100 exposed newborns (Koren, 2012). A population-based cohort study of 1.6 million pregnancies identified a twofold greater rate in exposed neonates. This yields an estimated attributable risk of 2 cases per 1000 births (Kieler, 2012). In a study of more than 120,000 women prescribed antidepressants, an attributed risk of 1 case per 1000 births was found (Huybrechts, 2015).

The maternal risk associated with discontinuing or tapering SSRI use during pregnancy must be weighed against marginally elevated neonatal risks (Ornoy, 2017). Women who abruptly discontinue either serotonin- or norepinephrine-reuptake inhibitor therapy typically experience some form of withdrawal.

Not surprisingly, up to 30 percent of exposed neonates also may exhibit withdrawal symptoms. Symptoms are similar to opioid withdrawal but typically are less severe. Neonatal SSRI withdrawal is usually self-limited, and the newborn rarely remains in the nursery more than 5 days (Koren, 2009). Recent magnetic resonance imaging studies show brain volume differences in SSRI-exposed fetuses compared with unexposed ones (Lugo-Candelas, 2018). Still, at this time, convincing evidence of long-term neurobehavioral effects of fetal exposure to these medications is lacking (Grzeskowiak, 2016; Man, 2017; Mezzacappa, 2017; Viktorin, 2017).

Some psychotropic medications pass into breast milk. In most cases, however, levels are very low or undetectable. Effects may be transient irritability, sleep disturbances, and colic.

Allopregnanolone. A recent Food and Drug Administration (FDA)-approved therapeutic agent for treatment of postpartum depression is brexanolone, which is an allopregnanolone analogue. Plasma allopregnanolone levels rise in connection with progesterone throughout pregnancy, and after childbirth these concentrations drop abruptly. Failure of gamma-aminobutyric acid type A (GABA-A) receptors to adapt to these changes following delivery is a suggested antecedent to postpartum depression. In small randomized trials, intravenous infusions of brexanolone significantly reduced Hamilton Rating Scale for Depression scores compared with placebo (Kanes, 2017; Meltzer-Brody, 2018a). Treatment is prohibitively expensive, and further studies are needed before its use is widely accepted.

Ketamine. This anesthetic drug is given intravenously for refractory depression, but studies in pregnant or postpartum women are lacking. Similarly, the recent FDA-approved esketamine nasal spray has not been studied in these women.

Electroconvulsive Therapy. This form of depression treatment is occasionally necessary during pregnancy for women with major mood disorders unresponsive to pharmacotherapy. Women undergoing electroconvulsive therapy (ECT) should be fasting for at least 6 hours. They are given a rapid-acting antacid before the procedure, and their airway is protected to decrease the likelihood of aspiration. After midpregnancy, a wedge is placed under the right hip to prevent sudden maternal hypotension from aortocaval compression. Other important preparatory steps include assessment of the cervix, discontinuation of nonessential anticholinergic medication, uterine and fetal heart rate monitoring, and intravenous hydration. During the procedure, excessive hyperventilation is avoided. In most cases, maternal and fetal heart rate and maternal blood pressure and oxygen saturation remain normal throughout the procedure.

With proper preparation, the risks to both mother and fetus appear to be reasonable (Ray-Griffith, 2016). Such therapy is relatively safe in the first trimester (Calaway, 2016). That said, adverse maternal and perinatal outcomes have followed ECT. Balki and associates (2006) reported a pregnancy in which fetal brain damage likely was caused by sustained maternal hypotension associated with treatment of status epilepticus stimulated by ECT.

At least two extensive reviews have evaluated ECT outcomes in pregnancy. In one, Miller (1994) found 300 cases and reported complications in 10 percent. These included fetal arrhythmias, vaginal bleeding, abdominal pain, and self-limited contractions. Women not adequately prepared had higher risks for aspiration, aortocaval compression, and respiratory alkalosis. In another review, Anderson and Reti (2009) described 339 cases, undoubtedly with some homology with the earlier study. In most cases, ECT therapy was done to treat depression, and it was 78-percent effective. They reported a 5-percent maternal ECT-related complication rate. The associated perinatal complication rate was 3 percent and included two fetal deaths.

In sum, we agree with Richards (2007) that ECT in pregnancy is not "low risk" and that it should be reserved for women whose severe depression is resistant to intensive pharmacotherapy.

Suicide

Self-harm is a primary cause of death among women during the perinatal period, and major depression is among the strongest predictors (Melville, 2010). Between 2004 and 2012, self-harm, suicide, or drug overdose was the leading cause of maternal death in Colorado (Metz, 2016). During a similar time period in Ontario, perinatal suicide accounted for 5.3 percent of all maternal deaths (Grigoriadis, 2017). Fetal loss is associated with a three- to fivefold greater risk for suicide (Weng, 2018). And, 54 percent of pregnancy-associated suicides reportedly involved intimate-partner conflict (Palladino, 2011).

Bipolar and Related Disorders

According to the National Institute of Mental Health (2017a), the lifetime prevalence for manic-depression illness is 4.4 percent. The prevalence of bipolar disorder does not vary between gravidas and nonpregnant reproductive-aged women (Yonkers, 2011). It has a strong genetic component and has been linked to possible mutations on chromosomes 16 and 8 (Jones, 2007). The risk that monozygotic twins are both affected is 40 to 70 percent, and the risk for first-degree relatives is 5 to 10 percent (Muller-Oerlinghausen, 2002).

Periods of depression last at least 2 weeks. At other times, patients are manic, in which mood is abnormally raised, expansive, or irritable. Potential organic causes of mania include substance abuse, hyperthyroidism, and central nervous system tumors. These are all excluded during an acute event. Importantly, pregnancy frequently prompts medication discontinuation, which poses a substantially increased risk for relapse. Approximately one third of patients with manic-depression illness will attempt suicide during their lifetime (Novick, 2010).

Bipolar Disorder in Pregnancy

This disorder has also been associated with adverse perinatal outcomes such as preterm birth (Mei-Dan, 2015). Women who experience pregnancy complications are more likely to exhibit periods of mania or depression (Di Florio, 2013). Moreover, symptomatic women during pregnancy more likely have postpartum relapses that can be severe (Taylor, 2018). Women who tend to be manic present with exacerbations earlier in the postpartum period.

Typical therapy for bipolar disorder includes mood stabilizers such as lithium, valproic acid, and carbamazepine and antipsychotic medications (see Table 64-3). Treatment of bipolar disorder in pregnancy is complex and is ideally managed concurrently with a psychiatrist. Decisions include risks versus benefits of mood stabilizers, some of which are teratogenic (Clark, 2018). For example, lithium has been linked to Ebstein anomaly in exposed fetuses. More recent data, however, suggest a lower risk of cardiac malformations than previously indicated (Munk-Olsen, 2018; Patorno, 2017). Nevertheless, many recommend fetal echocardiography for lithium-exposed fetuses. Some limited evidence suggests that lithium in breast milk, when its elimination is impaired as in dehydration or immaturity, can adversely affect the infant (Davanzo, 2011). However, lithium use in mothers with a healthy, term fetus is considered moderately safe. Children born to bipolar women do not appear to suffer long-term adverse effects (Santucci, 2017). A more detailed discussion of other mood stabilizers and antipsychotic medications side effects is found in Chapter 8 (p. 153).

Postpartum Psychosis

This severe mental disorder is usually a bipolar disorder, but it may be due to major depression (American Psychiatric Association, 2013). Its estimated incidence is 1 case in every 1000 deliveries, and it is more common in nulliparas, especially those with obstetrical complications (Bergink, 2016; Tinkelman, 2017). In most cases, illness manifests within 2 weeks of delivery and lasts 2 to 3 months. Because those with underlying psychiatric disease have a 10- to 15-fold risk for recurrence postpartum, close monitoring is recommended.

Women with a history of bipolar disease typically exhibit symptoms within 1 to 2 days after delivery (Heron, 2007, 2008). Manic symptoms include feeling excited or elated, being active or energetic, feeling "chatty," and suffering insomnia. Affected women may display confusion and disorientation but may also have lucid episodes.

Postpartum psychosis has a 50-percent recurrence risk in the next pregnancy. As a result, Bergink and associates (2016) recommend initiating lithium therapy immediately after delivery in women with a history of postpartum psychosis.

The clinical course of bipolar illness with postpartum psychosis is comparable with that for nonpregnant women. Patients usually require hospitalization, pharmacological treatment, and long-term psychiatric care. Psychotic women may have delusions leading to thoughts of self-harm or harm to their infants. Unlike women with nonpsychotic depression, these women commit infanticide, albeit uncommonly (Kim, 2008). In most instances, women with postpartum psychosis ultimately develop relapsing, chronic, psychotic manic-depression.

Anxiety Disorders

The prevalence of anxiety disorder in the prior year among women in the United States is 23 percent (National Institute of Mental Health, 2017b). These relatively common disorders include panic attack, panic disorder, social anxiety disorder, specific phobia, separation anxiety disorder, and generalized anxiety disorder. All are characterized by irrational fear, tension, and worry, which are accompanied by physiological changes such as trembling, nausea, hot or cold flashes, dizziness, dyspnea, insomnia, and frequent urination (Schneier, 2006). They are treated with psychotherapy and medication, which may be an SSRI, tricyclic antidepressant, monoamine oxide inhibitor, or other.

Anxiety Disorders in Pregnancy

Despite the relatively high prevalence in childbearing-aged women, data regarding anxiety disorders in pregnancy are few. Most reports conclude that rates between pregnant

and nonpregnant women do not differ. One analysis of 268 gravidas with generalized anxiety disorder demonstrated that both symptoms and anxiety severity decline across pregnancy (Buist, 2011).

From their review, Thorsness and colleagues (2018) concluded that some of the anxiety disorders may have important maternal-fetal implications. Some researchers, but not all, have linked these disorders to preterm birth, fetal-growth restriction, and poor neurobehavioral development (Yonkers, 2017). Children with a history of in utero exposure to maternal anxiety are felt to be at greater risk for various neuropsychiatric conditions such as attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD).

Anxiety Disorder Treatment

Anxiety disorders can be effectively treated during pregnancy with psychotherapy, cognitive behavioral therapy, or medication (Williams, 2018). Mood and anxiety disorders coexist in more than half of women identified with either diagnosis. Thus, antidepressants—specifically, SSRIs—listed in Table 64-3 are often the first line of pharmacotherapy. As with other medication exposures in pregnancy, choosing a single SSRI agent at the lowest effective dose is preferred.

Benzodiazepines also are commonly used to treat anxiety or panic disorders (Thorsness, 2018). Earlier case-control studies linked their use to a possible increased risk for cleft lip and palate. A metaanalysis of more than 1 million exposed pregnancies, however, did not identify a teratogenic risk (Enato, 2011). Benzodiazepines, especially when taken during the third trimester, can cause neonatal withdrawal syndrome, which persists for days to weeks after delivery. Importantly, benzodiazepines should be avoided in women with current or past history of substance misuse (Thorsness, 2018).

SCHIZOPHRENIA SPECTRUM DISORDERS

This major form of mental illness affects 1.1 percent of adults (National Institute of Mental Health, 2016). Schizophrenia spectrum disorders are defined by abnormalities in one or more of the following domains: delusions, hallucinations, disorganized thinking, grossly disorganized or abnormal motor behavior, and negative symptoms. Brain-scanning techniques such as positron emission tomography (PET) and functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) show that schizophrenia is a degenerative brain disorder. Subtle anatomical abnormalities are present early in life and worsen with time.

Schizophrenia has a major genetic component, and concordance was 33 percent in monozygotic twins in large database (Hilker, 2018). If one parent has schizophrenia, the risk to offspring is 5 to 10 percent (Rasic, 2014). Some data, including a strong association between schizophrenia and the velocardiofacial syndrome, suggest associated genes. Some cases are related to chromosome 22q11, but sophisticated gene mapping studies clearly show that schizophrenia is not related to a single gene or mutation (Kukshal, 2012). Other putative risks for subsequent schizophrenia in an exposed fetus remain unproven, for example, the association with maternal influenza A infection (Chap. 67, p. 1187).

Signs of illness begin approximately at age 20 years, and work and psychosocial functioning typically deteriorate over time. Women have a slightly later onset than men. Thus, many investigators theorize that estrogen is protective. With appropriate treatment, patients can experience a decline or cessation of symptoms. Within 5 years from the first signs of illness, 60 percent have social recovery, 50 percent are employed, 30 percent are mentally handicapped, and 10 percent require continued hospitalization (American Psychiatric Association, 2013).

■ Schizophrenia in Pregnancy

Most studies have reported no adverse maternal outcomes, although some earlier ones found higher rates of low birthweight, fetal-growth restriction, and preterm delivery. In a study of more than 3000 pregnancies in schizophrenic women, the rate of placental abruption was elevated threefold and that of "fetal distress"—vaguely defined—was increased 1.4-fold (Jablensky, 2005).

Because schizophrenia has a high recurrence rate if medications are discontinued, continued therapy during pregnancy is advised. That said, "typical" antipsychotic drugs listed in Table 64-3 are associated with adverse fetal or maternal sequelae in some, but not all studies (Coughlin, 2015; Robinson, 2012). Because less is known about "atypical" antipsychotics, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2018c) recommends against their routine use in pregnant and breastfeeding women. The FDA (2011) issued a safety communication concerning the potential risk for abnormal muscle movements and withdrawal symptoms in newborns of mothers treated with antipsychotic drugs during the third trimester.

EATING DISORDERS

These include *anorexia nervosa*, in which the patient refuses to maintain normal body weight, and *bulimia nervosa*, in which binge eating is usually followed by purging or excessive fasting to maintain normal body weight (American Psychiatric Association, 2013). Eating behavior disturbances largely affect adolescent females and young adults. With anorexia and bulimia, the lifetime prevalence for each is 2 to 3 percent (National Institute of Mental Health, 2016a).

Bulik and coworkers (2009) studied pregnancy outcomes in almost 36,000 Norwegian women screened for eating disorders. Approximately 0.1 percent had anorexia nervosa, 0.85 percent had bulimia nervosa, and 5.1 percent reported a binge-eating disorder. This 6-percent pregnancy prevalence is similar to the 6-month prevalence for nonpregnant individuals (National Institute of Mental Health, 2016a). The last subtype had a higher risk for large-for-gestational age neonates with a concomitantly increased cesarean delivery rate. All eating disorders begin with the desire to be slim, and women with chronic eating disorders may migrate between subtypes (Andersen, 2009).

■ Eating Disorders in Pregnancy

Early pregnancy complication rates are increased with both eating disorders, but especially in women with bulimia nervosa

(Hoffman, 2011). Generally, eating disorder symptoms improve during pregnancy, and remission rates may reach 75 percent. In contrast, a typical case of hyperemesis gravidarum may actually be a new or relapsing case of bulimia nervosa or of binge-purge type anorexia nervosa. As perhaps expected, anorexia is associated with low-birthweight, smaller head circumference, and small-for-gestational-age newborns (Micali, 2016). Children born to these mothers are more likely to have psychopathology at 7 years (Barona, 2016). Additional maternal risks associated with eating disorders include poor wound healing and difficulties with breastfeeding. At a minimum, closely monitoring gestational weight gain in women with a suspected history of an eating disorder seems prudent.

Care for these women involves a multidisciplinary team that includes an obstetrician, mental health provider, and either dietician or nutritionist. Psychological treatment is the cornerstone for treatment in women with eating disorders and frequently includes cognitive behavioral therapy. Anorexia nervosa often responds to motivational interactions with meal planning (Cardwell, 2013). After delivery, women with eating disorders are more prone to postpartum depression. Women with bulimia are at particular risk for disease rebound after delivery because of body image concerns.

SUBSTANCE USE DISORDERS

According to the American Psychiatric Association (2013), substance-related disorders encompass 10 classes of drugs that include caffeine, tobacco, cannabis, hallucinogens, opioids, anxiolytics, and stimulants. Their essential feature is a cluster of cognitive, behavioral, and physiological symptoms indicating that the individual continues to use the substance despite significant related problems. Central to these disorders is an underlying change in brain circuits that may persist beyond detoxification and characterized by repeated relapses.

It is estimated that 10 percent of fetuses are exposed to one or more illicit drugs. Agents may include heroin and other opiates, cocaine, amphetamines, barbiturates, and marijuana (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019). Well-documented sequelae include fetal-growth restriction, low birthweight, and drug withdrawal soon after birth. Adverse effects of marijuana are being delineated with expanding legalization. As noted by Metz and Borgelt (2018), adverse perinatal outcomes associated with marijuana use are especially seen with heavy use. Moreover, later childhood neurobehavioral consequences may follow prenatal exposure. Thus, women are currently advised to refrain from using marijuana during pregnancy and lactation. Women who use such drugs frequently do not seek prenatal care, which in itself is associated with risks for preterm and low-birthweight newborns.

Opioid Use Disorder

These disorders have reached epidemic proportions in the United States. The rates of maternal opioid-related diagnoses at delivery (0.8 percent) and of neonatal abstinence syndrome (0.7 percent) in 2017 in the United States were significantly higher than those in 2010 (Hirai, 2021). Because of this, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the American Society of Addiction Medicine (2017) recommend universal screening by questionnaire at the first prenatal visit. Urine drug testing to detect or confirm substance use is performed only with patient consent and in compliance with state laws.

Medication-Assisted Treatment

For women who abuse opioids, *methadone maintenance* can be initiated within a registered treatment program to reduce opioid use complications and narcotic withdrawal, to encourage prenatal care, and to avoid drug culture risks (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2017). Buprenorphine also may be offered and managed by physicians with specific credentialing (Boyars, 2018; Jones, 2018). Available programs can be found through the treatment locator of the Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration at www.samhsa.gov. Methadone dosages usually are initiated at 10 to 30 mg daily and titrated as needed. Concomitant chronic use of naloxone with buprenorphine is discouraged given risks of precipitating neonatal withdrawal.

Medically Supervised Withdrawal

In some women, careful *medication-assisted withdrawal* may be an appropriate option. This is controversial because of the relatively high relapse rate, and it is discouraged by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the American Society of Addiction Medicine (2017). From their review of more than 600 treated women, Boyars and Guille (2018) caution against this approach but concluded that assisted withdrawal is a reasonable approach. At Parkland Hospital, pregnant opioid users who decline maintenance therapy are offered inpatient hospitalization for controlled methadone taper. The goal is reduction of neonatal opioid withdrawal syndrome rates (Dashe, 2002; Stewart, 2013). In 2017, 69 women who were enrolled in our opioid perinatal intervention program delivered at Parkland Hospital. Of these women, 37 (54 percent) delivered without use of opioids at delivery. Their neonates' median length of stay was 4.5 days, which was significantly shorter than the 23.5 days required for newborns whose mothers were using opioids at delivery.

Neonatal Opioid Withdrawal Syndrome

This is a drug withdrawal syndrome that most commonly follows maternal opioid use. It is discussed in Chapter 33 (p. 605).

POSTTRAUMATIC STRESS DISORDER

This is included in trauma– and stressor–related disorders (American Psychiatric Association, 2013). The essential feature of PTSD is development of characteristic symptoms following exposure to one or more traumatic events. One example in obstetrics is PTSD following hyperemesis gravidarum (Chap. 57, p. 1014). Symptoms may be anxiety or fear but can be anhedonia, dysphoria, or dissociative behavior. According to Yonkers and coworkers (2014), 8 percent of pregnant women have facets of this syndrome. Psychotherapy is one first-line therapy (National Institute of Mental Health, 2019). These

women are also treated with benzodiazepines or antidepressants. Those with concordant major depression are at high risk for preterm birth.

PERSONALITY DISORDERS

These disorders are characterized by the chronic use of certain coping mechanisms in an inappropriate, stereotyped, and maladaptive manner. They are rigid and unyielding personality traits. The American Psychiatric Association (2013) recognizes three clusters of personality disorders:

1. Paranoid, schizoid, and schizotypal personality disorders, which are characterized by oddness or eccentricity.
2. Histrionic, narcissistic, antisocial, and borderline disorders, which are all characterized by dramatic presentations along with self-centeredness and erratic behavior.
3. Avoidant, dependent, compulsive, and passive-aggressive personalities, which are characterized by underlying fear and anxiety.

In the United States, the prevalence of any personality disorder in the past year approximates 9 percent (National Institute of Mental Health, 2017c). Genetic and environmental factors are thought important in their genesis. Psychotherapy is appropriate treatment, but most affected individuals do not recognize their problem, and thus only 20 percent seek help. In an observational study of 202 women with borderline personality disorder, De Genna and associates (2012) noted that affected women become pregnant during the most severe trajectory of their illness. They are at higher risk for adolescent and unintended pregnancies. Notably, Conroy and coworkers (2010) found that a mother's ability to care for her newborn was impaired only when a personality disorder was coupled with depression.

REFERENCES

Ahokas A, Kaukoranta J, Aito M: Effect of oestradiol on postpartum depression. Psychopharmacology 146:108, 1999

Alder J, Fink N, Bitzer J, et al: Depression and anxiety during pregnancy: a risk factor for obstetric, fetal and neonatal outcome? A critical review of the literature. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 20:189, 2007

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Optimizing postpartum care. Committee Opinion No. 736, May 2018a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Screening for perinatal depression. Committee Opinion No. 757, November 2018b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Use of psychiatric medication during pregnancy and lactation. Practice Bulletin No. 92, April 2008, Reaffirmed 2018c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Alcohol abuse and other substance use disorders: ethical issues in obstetric and gynecologic practice. Committee Opinion No. 633, June 2015, Reaffirmed 2019

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, American Society of Addiction Medicine: Opioid use and opioid use disorder in pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 711, August 2017

American Psychiatric Association: Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, 5th ed. (DSM-V). Arlington, American Psychiatric Publishing, 2013

Anderson E, Reti I: ECT in pregnancy: a review of the literature from 1941 to 2007. Psychosom Med 71:235, 2009

Andersen JT, Andersen NL, Horwitz H, et al: Exposure to selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors in early pregnancy and the risk of miscarriage. Obstet Gynecol 124(4):655, 2014

Avalos LA, Raine-Bennett T, Chen H, et al: Improved perinatal depression screening, treatment, and outcomes with a universal obstetric program. Obstet Gynecol 127(5):917, 2016

Babbitt KE, Bailey KJ, Coverdale JH, et al: Professionally responsible intrapartum management of patients with major mental disorders. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210:27, 2014

Baer RJ, Chambers CD, Bandoli G, et al: Risk of preterm birth by subtype among Medi-Cal participants with mental illness. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(4):519.e1, 2016

Balki M, Castro C, Ananthanarayan C: Status epilepticus after electroconvulsive therapy in a pregnant patient. Int J Obstet Anest 15:325, 2006

Barona M, Nybo Andersen AM, Micali N: Childhood psychopathology in children of women with eating disorders. Acta Psychiatr Scand 134(4):295, 2016

Bergink V, Rasgon N, Wisner KL: Postpartum psychosis: madness, mania, and melancholia in motherhood. Am J Psychiatry 173(12):1179, 2016

Bhat A, Reed SD, Unützer J: The obstetrician-gynecologist's role in detecting, preventing, and treating depression. Obstet Gynecol 129(1):157, 2017

Boyars L, Guille C: Treatment of perinatal use disorder. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 45(3):511, 2018

Buist A, Gotman N, Yonkers KA: Generalized anxiety disorder: course and risk factors in pregnancy. J Affective Dis 131(1–3):277, 2011

Bulik CM, Von Holle A, Siega-Riz AM, et al: Birth outcomes in women with eating disorders in the Norwegian mother and child cohort (MoBa). Int J Eat Disord 42(1):9, 2009

Byatt N, Levin LL, Ziedonis D, et al: Enhancing participation in depression care in outpatient perinatal care settings: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 126(5):1048, 2015

Calaway K, Coshal S, Jones K, et al: A systematic review of the safety of electroconvulsive therapy use during the first trimester of pregnancy. J ECT 32(4):230, 2016

Cardwell MS: Eating disorder during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 68(4): 312, 2013

Center for Behavioral Health Statistics and Quality: Behavioral health trends in the United States: results from the 2014 National Survey on Drug Use and Health. HHS Publication No. SMA 15–4927, NSDUH Series H-50, 2015

Cerimele JM, Vanderlip ER, Croicu CA, et al: Presenting symptoms of women with depression in an obstetrics and gynecology setting. Obstet Gynecol 122(2 Pt 1):313, 2013

Chambers CD, Hernandez-Diaz S, Van Martin LJ, et al: Selective serotonin-reuptake inhibitors and risk of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn. N Engl J Med 354(6):579, 2006

Clark CT, Wisner KL: Treatment of peripartum bipolar disorder. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 45(3):403, 2018

Conroy S, Marks MN, Schacht R, et al: The impact of maternal depression and personality disorder on early infant care. Soc Psychiatry Epidemiol 45(3):285, 2010

Coughlin CG, Blackwell KA, Bartley C, et al: Obstetric and neonatal outcomes after antipsychotic medication exposure in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 125(5):1224, 2015

Dashe JS, Sheffield JS, Olscher DA, et al: Relationship between maternal methadone dosage and neonatal withdrawal. Obstet Gynecol 100(6):1244, 2002

Davanzo R, Copertino M, De Cunto A, et al: Antidepressant drugs and breastfeeding: a review of the literature. Breastfeeding Med 6(2):89, 2011

Deecher D, Andree TH, Sloan D, et al: From menarche to menopause: exploring the underlying biology of depression in women experiencing hormonal changes. Psychoneuroendocrinology 33:3, 2008

De Genna NM, Feske U, Larkby C, et al: Pregnancies, abortions, and births among women with and without borderline personality disorder. Womens Health Issues 22(4):e371, 2012

Dennis CL, Dowswell T: Psychological interventions for preventing postpartum depression. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2:CD001134, 2013

Dennis CL, Ross LE, Grigoriadis S: Psychosocial and psychological interventions for treating antenatal depression. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 3:CD006309, 2007

Di Florio A, Forty L, Gordon-Smith K, et al: Perinatal episodes across the mood disorder spectrum. JAMA Psychiatry 70(2):168, 2013

Enato E: The fetal safety of benzodiazepines: an updated meta-analysis. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 33(4):319, 2011

Flanagan T, Avalos LA: Perinatal obstetric office depression screening and treatment: implementation in a health care system. Obstet Gynecol 127(5): 911, 2016

Food and Drug Administration: Antipsychotic drug labels updated on use during pregnancy and risk of abnormal muscle movements and withdrawal symptoms in newborns, 2017. Available at: www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm243903.htm. Accessed October 10, 2019

Gold KJ, Dalton VK, Schwenk TL: Hospital care for parents after perinatal death. Obstet Gynecol 109:1156, 2007

Grigoriadis S, VonderPorten EH, Mamisashvili L, et al: The impact of maternal depression during pregnancy on perinatal outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Clin Psychiatry 74(4):e321, 2013

Grigoriadis S, Wilton AS, Kurdyak PA, et al: Perinatal suicide in Ontario, Canada: a 15-year population-based study. CMAJ 189(34):E1085, 2017

Grzeskowiak LE, Morrison JL, Henriksen TB, et al: Prenatal antidepressant exposure and child behavioural outcomes at 7 years of age: a study within the Danish National Birth Cohort. BJOG 123(12):1919, 2016

Hayes RM, Wu P, Shelton RC, et al: Maternal antidepressant use and adverse outcomes: a cohort study of 228,876 pregnancies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207:49.e1, 2012

Heron J, Blackmore ER, McGuinnes M, et al: No "latent period" in the onset of bipolar affective puerperal psychosis. Arch Womens Ment Health 10:79, 2007

Heron J, McGuinness M, Blackmore ER, et al: Early postpartum symptoms in puerperal psychosis. BJOG 115(3):348, 2008

Hilker R, Helenius D, Fagerlund B, et al: Heritability of schizophrenia and schizophrenia spectrum based on the nationwide Danish Twin Register. Biol Psychiatry 83(6):492, 2018

Hippman C, Oberlander TG, Honer WG, et al: Depression during pregnancy: the potential impact of increased risk for fetal aneuploidy on maternal mood. Clin Genet 75(1):30, 2009

Hirai AH, Ko JY, Owens PL, et al: Neonatal abstinence syndrome and maternal opioid-related diagnoses in the US, 2010–2017. JAMA 325(2):146, 2021

Hoffman ER, Zerwas SC, Bulik CM: Reproductive issues in anorexia nervosa. Obstet Gynecol 6:403, 2011

Huang H, Coleman S, Bridge JA, et al: A meta-analysis of the relationship between antidepressant use in pregnancy and the risk of preterm birth and low birth weight. Gen Hosp Psychiatry 36(1):13, 2014

Huybrechts KF, Bateman BT, Palmsten K, et al: Antidepressant use late in pregnancy and risk of persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn. JAMA 313(21):2142, 2015

Jablensky AV, Morgan V, Zubrick SR, et al: Pregnancy, delivery, and neonatal complications in a population cohort of women with schizophrenia and major affective disorders. Am J Psychiatry 162:79, 2005

Jarde A, Morais M, Kingston D, et al: Neonatal outcomes in women with untreated antenatal depression compared with women without depression: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA Psychiatry 73(8):826, 2016

Jimenez-Solem E, Andersen JT, Petersen M, et al: SSRI use during pregnancy and risk of stillbirth and neonatal mortality. Am J Psychiatry 170(3):299, 2013

Jones CW, Terplan M: Pregnancy and naltrexone pharmacotherapy. Obstet Gynecol 132(4):923, 2018

Jones I, Hamshere M, Nangle JM, et al: Bipolar affective puerperal psychosis: genome-wide significant evidence for linkage to chromosome 16. Am J Psychiatry 164:999, 2007

Juulia Paavonen E, Saarenpää-Heikkilä O, Pölkki P, et al: Maternal and paternal sleep during pregnancy in the child-sleepbirth cohort. Sleep Med 29:47, 2017

Kanes S, Colguhoun H, Gundez-Bruce H, et al: Brexanolone (SAGE-547 injection) in post-partum depression: a randomised controlled trial. Lancet 390(10093):480, 2017

Kanotra S, D'Angelo D, Phares TM, et al: Challenges faced by new mothers in the early postpartum period: an analysis of comment data from the 2000 Pregnancy Risk Assessment Monitoring System (PRAMS) Survey. Matern Child Health J 11(6):549, 2007

Kendig S, Keats JP, Hoffman MC, et al: Consensus bundle on maternal health: perinatal depression and anxiety. Obstet Gynecol 129(3):422, 2017

Kieler H, Artama M, Engeland A, et al: Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors during pregnancy and risk of persistent pulmonary hypertension in the newborn: population based cohort study from the five Nordic countries. BMJ 344:d8012, 2012

Kim JH, Choi SS, Ha K: A closer look at depression in mothers who kill their children: is it unipolar or bipolar depression? J Clin Psychiatry 69(10):1625, 2008

Kim JJ, La Porte LM, Saleh MP, et al: Suicide risk among perinatal women who report thoughts of self-harm on depression screens. Obstet Gynecol 125(4):885, 2015

Ko JY, Rockhill KM, Tong VT, et al: Trends in postpartum depressive symptoms—27 states, 2004, 2008, and 2012. MMWR 66(6):153, 2017

Koren G, Finkelstein Y, Matsui D, et al: Diagnosis and management of poor neonatal adaptation syndrome in newborns exposed in utero to selective serotonin/norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 31(4): 348, 2009

Koren G, Nordeng H: Antidepressant use during pregnancy: the benefit-risk ratio. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207:157, 2012

Kukshal P, Thelma BK, Nimgaonkar VL, et al: Genetics of schizophrenia from a clinical perspective. Int Rev Psychiatry 24(5):393, 2012

Lavender T, Richens Y, Milan SJ, et al: Telephone support for women during pregnancy and the first six weeks postpartum. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 7:CD009338, 2013

Lugo-Candelas C, Cha J, Hong S, et al: Associations between brain structure and connectivity in infants and exposure to selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors during pregnancy. JAMA Pediatr 172(6):525, 2018

Lyell DJ, Chambers AS, Steidtmann D, et al: Antenatal identification of major depressive disorder: a cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(6):506.e1, 2012

Maguire J, Mody I: GABA(A) plasticity during pregnancy: relevance to postpartum depression. Neuron 59(2):207, 2008

Man KKC, Chan EW, Ip P, et al: Prenatal antidepressant use and risk of attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder in offspring: population based cohort study. BMJ 357:j2350, 2017

McCurdy AP, Boulé NG, Sivak A, et al: Effects of exercise on mild-to-moderate depressive symptoms in the postpartum period: a meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 129(6):1087, 2017

McFarlane J, Maddoux J, Cesario S, et al: Effect of abuse during pregnancy on maternal and child safety and functioning for 24 months after delivery. Obstet Gynecol 123(4):839, 2014

Mei-Dan E, Ray JG, Vigod SN, et al: Perinatal outcomes among women with bipolar disorder: a population-based cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(3):367.e1, 2015

Meltzer-Brody S: Treating perinatal depression: risks and stigma. Obstet Gynecol 124(4):653, 2014

Meltzer-Brody S, Colguhoun H, Riesenberg R, et al: Brexanolone injection in post-partum depression: two multicentre, double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trials. Lancet 392(10152):1058, 2018a

Meltzer-Brody S, Howard LM, Bergink V, et al: Postpartum psychiatric disorders. Nat Rev Dis Primers 4:18022, 2018b

Melville JL, Gavin A, Guo Y, et al: Depressive disorders during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 116:1064, 2010

Mental Health America: Postpartum disorders. 2019. Available at: www.mentalhealthamerica.net/conditions/postpartum-disorders. Accessed April 15, 2019

Metz TD, Borgett LM: Marijuana use in pregnancy and while breastfeeding. Obstet Gynecol 132(5):1198, 2018

Metz TD, Rovner P, Allshouse AA, et al: Maternal deaths from suicide and drug overdose in Colorado. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(1):S126, 2016

Mezzacappa A, Lasica PA, Giafagna F, et al: Risk for autism spectrum disorders according to period of prenatal antidepressant exposure: a systematic review and meta-analysis. JAMA Pediatr 171(6):555, 2017

Micali N, Stemann Larsen P, Strandberg-Larsen K, et al: Size at birth and preterm birth in women with lifetime eating disorders: a prospective population-based study. BJOG 123(8):1301, 2016

Miller LJ: Use of electroconvulsive therapy during pregnancy. Hosp Community Psychiatry 45:444, 1994

Molyneaux E, Poston L, Ashurst-Williams S, et al: Obesity and mental disorders during pregnancy and postpartum: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 123(4):857, 2014

Muller-Oerlinghausen B, Berghofer A, Bauer M: Bipolar disorder. Lancet 359:241, 2002

Munk-Olsen T, Liu X, Viktorin A, et al: Maternal and infant outcomes associated with lithium use in pregnancy: and international collaborative meta-analysis of six cohort studies. Lancet Psychiatry 5(8):644, 2018

National Institute of Mental Health: The numbers count: mental disorders in America. NIH Publication No. 06–4584, 2016

National Institute of Mental Health: Bipolar disorder. 2017a. Available at: www.nimh.nih.gov/health/statistics/bipolar-disorder.shtml. Accessed October 10, 2019

National Institute of Mental Health: Anxiety disorder. 2017b. Available at: www.nimh.nih.gov/health/statistics/any-anxiety-disorder.shtml. Accessed October 10, 2019

National Institute of Mental Health: Personality disorders. 2017c. Available at: www.nimh.nih.gov/health/statistics/personality-disorders.shtml. Accessed October 10, 2019

National Institute of Mental Health: Postpartum Depression. 2019. Available at: www.nimh.nih.gov/health/publications/postpartum-depression-facts/postpartum-depression-brochure_146657.pdf. Accessed October 10, 2019

National Institute of Mental Health: Post-traumatic stress disorder. 2019. Available at: www.nimh.nih.gov/health/topics/post-traumatic-stress-disorder-ptsd/index.shtml. Accessed October 10, 2019

Nelson DB, Doty M, McIntire DD, et al: Rates and precipitating factors for postpartum depression following screening in consecutive births. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 11:1, 2015

Nelson DB, Freeman MP, Johnson NL, et al: A prospective study of postpartum depression in 17648 parturients. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 26(12):1156, 2013

Novick DM, Swartz HA, Frank E: Suicide attempts in bipolar I and bipolar II disorder: a review and meta-analysis of the evidence. Bipolar Disord 12(1):1, 2010

O'Connor E, Rossom RC, Henninger M, et al: Primary care screening for and treatment of depression in pregnant and postpartum women: evidence report and systematic review for the US Prevention Services Task Force. JAMA 315(4):388, 2016

O'Hara MW, Wisner KL: Perinatal mental illness: definition, description and aetiology. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 28(1):3, 2014

O'Keane V, Lightman S, Patrick K, et al: Changes in the maternal hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis during the early puerperium may be related to the postpartum blues. J Neuroendocrinol 23(11):1149, 2011

Ornoy A, Koren G: Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors during pregnancy: do we have now more definite answers related to prenatal exposure. Birth Defects Res 109(12):898, 2017

Palladino CL, Singh V, Campbell H, et al: Homicide and suicide during the perinatal period: findings from the National Violent Death Reporting System. Obstet Gynecol 118(5):1056, 2011

Patorno E, Huybrechts KF, Bateman BT, et al: Lithium use in pregnancy and the risk of cardiac malformations. N Engl J Med 376(23):2245, 2017

Pozzi RA, Yee LM, Brown K, et al: Pregnancy in the severely mentally ill patient as an opportunity for global coordination of care. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210:32, 2014

Pratt LA, Brody DJ, Gu Q: Antidepressant use among persons aged 12 and over: United States, 2011–2014. NCHS Data Brief 283:3, 2017

Ray S, Stowe ZN: The use of antidepressant medication in pregnancy. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 28(1):71, 2014

Ray-Griffith SL, Coker JL, Rabie N, et al: Pregnancy and electroconvulsive therapy: a multidisciplinary approach. J ECT 32(2):104, 2016

Rasic D, Hajek T, Alda M, et al: Risk of mental illness in offspring of parents with schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, and major depressive disorder: a meta-analysis of family high-risk studies. Schizophr Bull 40(1):28, 2014

Richards DS: Is electroconvulsive therapy in pregnancy safe? Obstet Gynecol 110:451, 2007

Robinson GE: Treatment of schizophrenia in pregnancy and postpartum. J Popul Ther Clin Pharmacol 19(3):e380, 2012

Romero R, Badr MS: A role for sleep disorders in pregnancy complications: challenges and opportunities. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210:3, 2014

Ross LE, McLean LM: Anxiety disorders during pregnancy and the postpartum period: a systematic review. J Clin Psychiatry 67:1285, 2006

Santucci AK, Singer LT, Wisniewski SR, et al: One-year developmental outcomes for infants of mothers with bipolar disorder. J Clin Psychiatry 78(8):1083, 2017

Schneier FR: Clinical practice. Social anxiety disorder. N Engl J Med 355(10):1029, 2006

Shaw JG, Asch SM, Kimerling R, et al: Posttraumatic stress disorder and risk of spontaneous preterm birth. Obstet Gynecol 124(6):1111, 2014

Silverman ME, Reichenberg A, Savitz DA, et al: The risk factors for postpartum depression: a population-based study. Depress Anxiety 34(2):178, 2017

Siu AL, US Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF), Bibbins-Domingo K, et al: Screening for depression in adults: US Preventive Services Task Force recommendation statement. JAMA 315(4):380, 2016

Smith MV, Howell H, Wang H, et al: Success of mental health referral among pregnant and postpartum women with psychiatric distress. Gen Hosp Psychiatry 31(2):155, 2009

Steinberg JR, McCulloch CE, Adler NE: Abortion and mental health: findings from the National Comorbidity Survey Replication. Obstet Gynecol 123:263, 2014

Stewart RD, Nelson DB, Adhikari EH, et al: The obstetrical and neonatal impact of maternal opioid detoxification in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(3):267.e1, 2013

Susser LC, Sansone SA, Hermann AD: Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor for depression in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(6):722, 2016

Tam WH, Chung T: Psychosomatic disorders in pregnancy. Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol 19:126, 2007

Tarney CM, Berry-Caban C, Jain RB, et al: Association of spouse deployment on pregnancy outcomes in a U.S. military population. Obstet Gynecol 126(3):569, 2015

Taylor CL, Broadbent M, Khondoker M, et al: Predictors of severe relapse in pregnant women with psychotic or bipolar disorders. J Psychiatr Res 104:100, 2018

Tebeka S, Le Strat Y, Mandelbrot L, et al: Early- and late-onset postpartum depression exhibit distinct associated factors: the IGEDEPP prospective cohort study. BJOG 128(10):1683, 2021

Texas Health and Human Services: Texas Health Steps Medical Checkups. 2019. Available at: www.txhealthsteps.com/texas-health-steps-medicaid-resource-center. Accessed October 8, 2019

Thorsness KR, Watson C, LaRusso EM: Perinatal anxiety: approach to diagnosis and management in the obstetric setting. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(4):326, 2018

Tinkelman A, Hill EA, Deligiannidis KM: Management of new onset psychosis in the postpartum period. J Clin Psychiatry 78(9):1423, 2017

Toscano M, Royzer R, Castillo D, et al: Prevalence of depression or anxiety during antepartum hospitalizations for obstetric complications: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 137(5):881, 2021

Venkatesh KK, Kaimal A, Nadel H, et al: Implementation of universal screening for depression during pregnancy: feasibility and impact on obstetric care. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(4):517.e1, 2016

Viktorin A, Uher R, Kolevzon A, et al: Association of antidepressant medication use during pregnancy with intellectual disability in offspring. JAMA Psychiatry 74(10):1031, 2017

Vythilingum B: Anxiety disorders in pregnancy. Curr Psychiatry Rep 10(4): 331, 2008

Weng SC Chang JC, Yeh MK, et al: Do stillbirth, miscarriage, and termination of pregnancy increase risks of attempted and completed suicide within a year? A population-based nested case-control study. BJOG 125(8):983, 2018

Williams KE, Koleva H: Identification and treatment of peripartum anxiety disorders. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 45(3):469, 2018

Wisner KL, Parry BL, Piontek CM: Postpartum depression. N Engl J Med 347:194, 2002

Yonemoto N, Dowswell T, Nagai S, et al: Schedules for home visits in early postpartum period. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 8:CD009326, 2017

Yonkers KA, Gilstad-Hayden K, Forray A, et al: Association of panic disorder, generalized anxiety disorder, and benzodiazepine treatment during pregnancy with risk of adverse birth outcomes. JAMA Psychiatry 174(11):1145, 2017

Yonkers KA, Smith MV, Forray A, et al: Pregnant women with posttraumatic stress disorder and risk of preterm birth. JAMA Psychiatry 71(8):897, 2014

Yonkers KA, Vigod S, Ross LE: Diagnosis, pathophysiology, and management of mood disorders in pregnant and postpartum women. Obstet Gynecol 117:961, 2011

Yost NP, Bloom SL, McIntire DD, et al: A prospective observational study of domestic violence during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 106(1):61, 2005

CHAPTER 65

Dermatological Disorders

PREGNANCY-SPECIFIC DERMATOSES

Four dermatoses considered unique to pregnancy are pemphigoid gestationis (PG), pruritic urticarial papules and plaques of pregnancy (PUPPP), atopic eruption of pregnancy (AEP), and intrahepatic cholestasis of pregnancy. Descriptions of these are given in Table 65-1. Their gross appearance can be similar to each other or to other skin disorders, and pruritus is a common feature. Of these four, adverse fetal outcomes are linked only with PG and intrahepatic cholestasis. The latter is discussed in detail in Chapter 58 (p. 1032). It generally lacks primary skin lesions, but pruritus is usually associated with abnormally elevated serum bile acid levels and mildly increased hepatic transaminase levels.

Pemphigoid Gestationis

In this rare autoimmune bullous disease, pruritic papules and urticarial plaques initially form. Vesicles or bullae usually follow after 1 to 2 weeks. Lesions frequently involve umbilicus and other skin surfaces but typically spare mucous membranes, scalp, and face (Fig. 65-1).

Previously termed *herpes gestationis*, PG is not related to the herpesvirus. Instead, maternal immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibodies target collagen XVII found in the basement membrane of skin and amnionic epithelium (Kelly, 1988; Sadik, 2016). Collagen XVII is also termed *bullous pemphigoid 180 (BP180)*. Autoantibody binding to BP180 activates complement to promote eosinophil chemotaxis to the antigen-antibody complexes. Eosinophilic degranulation damages the dermal–epidermal junction and leads to blistering.

Pregnancy

In most cases, PG develops during a first pregnancy. Most subsequent pregnancies also are affected, usually earlier and more severely (Tani, 2015). Additionally, other autoimmune diseases, especially Graves disease, are frequent in affected women (Jenkins, 1999; Shornick, 1992).

PG usually begins during the second or third trimester, but postpartum onset or exacerbation is common (Lawley, 1978). The disease course is often marked by antepartum flares and remissions. In cases with early-onset and blistering, PG can be associated with preterm birth, oligohydramnios, and fetal-growth restriction (Al-Saif, 2016; Chi, 2009; Dabas, 2018). One theory suggests mild placental insufficiency stems from IgG and complement deposition along the amnionic basement membrane (Huilaja, 2013). Thus, surveillance for and management of these complications in affected pregnancies is reasonable.

In 5 to 10 percent of cases, IgG antibodies passively transfer from the mother to cause similar skin lesions in the newborn (Erickson, 2002). These eruptions in the neonate require only wound care and clear spontaneously within a few weeks as the passively acquired IgG levels drop. After delivery, maternal lesions resolve without scarring, and most women are disease-free after 6 months (Jenkins, 1999). In some, however, resolution is protracted. Disease may be exacerbated during menses or by oral contraceptives (Fania, 2017; Semkova, 2009).

Diagnosis and Treatment

Before bullae form, these lesions may resemble PUPPP. Other diagnoses include bullous pemphigoid, pustular psoriasis,

TABLE 65-1. Pregnancy-specific Dermatoses

Disorder	Frequency	Characteristic Lesion	Adverse Pregnancy Effects	Treatment
PUPPP	Common	Erythematous pruritic papules or plaques; patchy or generalized on abdomen, thighs, buttocks, especially within striae, but with umbilical sparing	None	Oral antipruritics, emollients, topical corticosteroids, and if severe, oral steroids
AEP			None	
Eczema in pregnancy	Common	Dry, red scaly patches on extremity flexures, neck, face		
Prurigo of pregnancy	Common	1–5 mm pruritic red papules on extensor surfaces, trunk		
Pruritic folliculitis of pregnancy	Rare	Small red papules, sterile pustules on trunk		
Pemphigoid gestationis	Rare	Erythematous pruritic papules, plaques, vesicles, and bullae; abdomen often with umbilical involvement, extremities	Preterm birth, fetal-growth restriction, transient neonatal lesions	
Cholestasis of pregnancy	Common	No primary lesions, secondary excoriations from scratching	Increased perinatal morbidity	Oral antipruritics, cholestyramine, ursodeoxycholic acid

AEP = atopic eruptions of pregnancy; PUPPP = pruritic urticarial papules and plaques of pregnancy.

erythema multiforme, linear IgA bullous dermatosis, urticaria, dermatitis herpetiformis, allergic contact dermatitis, and AEP (Lipozenčić, 2012). Potentially life-threatening drug-induced blistering syndromes, such as Stevens-Johnson syndrome and toxic epidermal necrolysis, also must be excluded (Stern, 2012).

Diagnostically, immunofluorescent staining of a skin punch biopsy sample is the most accurate. With this, C3 complement and sometimes IgG are seen deposited along the basement membrane between the epidermis and the dermis (Katz, 1976; Tani, 2015). Circulating IgG antibodies against BP180 also can be detected in maternal serum using enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA) (Al Saif, 2017; Sitaru, 2004).

Pruritus with PG can be severe. Early in its course, topical high-potency corticosteroids and oral antihistamines may be effective (p. 1158). For refractory lesions, an oral corticosteroid is provided, and prednisone or prednisolone is preferable. Either is inactivated by placental 11-β-hydroxylase enzyme, which significantly lowers fetal exposure (Benediktsson, 1997). Oral prednisone, 0.5 to 1 mg/kg daily and gradually tapered to a maintenance dose, is one option. In rare intractable cases,

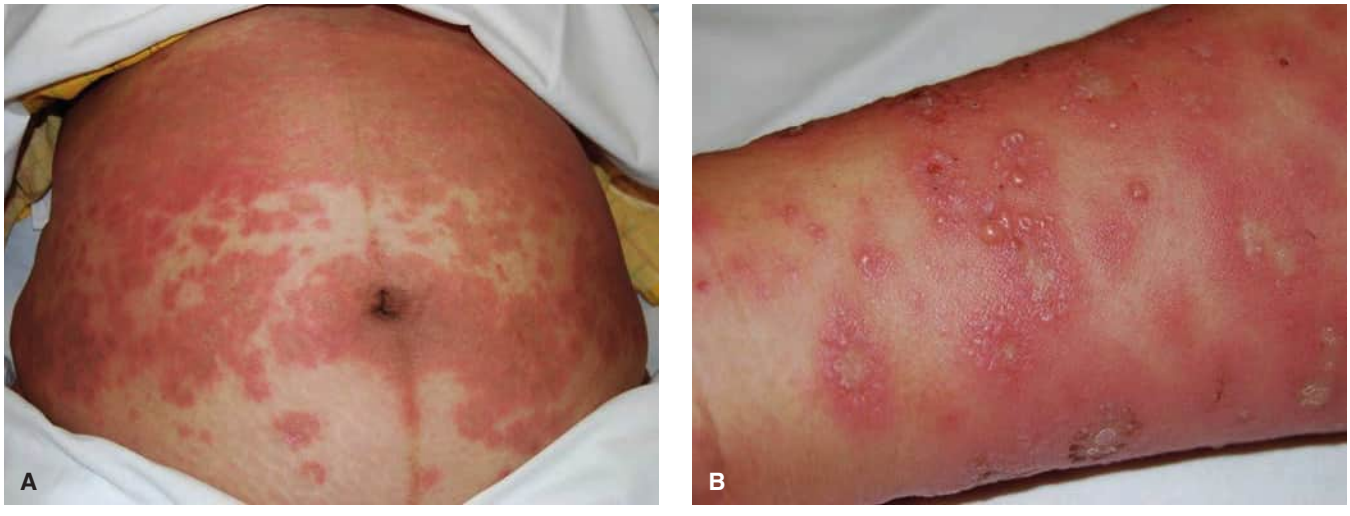


FIGURE 65-1 Pemphigoid gestationis. **A.** Abdominal plaques classically involve the umbilicus. **B.** Blistered lesions on the wrist and forearm. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Kara Ehlers.)

intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) therapy, cyclosporine, or plasmapheresis has been used (Huilaja, 2015; Marker, 2011; Yang, 2018). Rituximab early in pregnancy also is described, but its later use carries the risk of transient newborn immunosuppression risks (Chakravarty, 2011; Tourte, 2017).

Pruritic Urticarial Papules and Plaques of Pregnancy

This common pregnancy-specific dermatosis is characterized by intensely pruritic, 1- to 2-mm erythematous papules that coalesce to form urticarial plaques. Also known as *polymorphic eruption of pregnancy*, PUPPP usually appears late in pregnancy (Rudolph, 2005). Rarely, onset is postpartum (Park, 2013). The rash affects the abdomen and proximal thighs in 97 percent of women (Fig. 65-2). Lesions often initially form within striae but spare periumbilical skin. The face, palms, and soles are rarely involved (High, 2005). It is more frequent in whites and nulliparas, those with multifetal gestation, and those carrying a male fetus (Regnier, 2008). PUPPP seldom recurs in subsequent pregnancies. Its cause is unknown, but an autoimmune basis is not implicated (Ambros-Rudolph, 2011; Lawley, 1979).

PUPPP mimics several other skin eruptions. Some include contact dermatitis, drug eruption, viral exanthem, insect bites, scabies infestation, pityriasis rosea, and the other pregnancy-specific dermatoses (Brandão, 2017). Specifically, it may appear similar to early PG that has not yet blistered. In unclear cases, skin biopsy and negative serum BP180 antibody levels help to differentiate the two.

Pruritus will usually respond to treatment with oral antihistamines, skin emollients, and topical corticosteroids (Lehrhoff, 2013). A few women will need short-course systemic corticosteroids to relieve severe itching (Scheinfeld, 2008).

PUPPP carries no adverse pregnancy effects. It usually resolves within several days following delivery and does not scar. In 15 to 20 percent of women, however, symptoms persist for 2 to 4 weeks postpartum (Vaughan Jones, 1999).

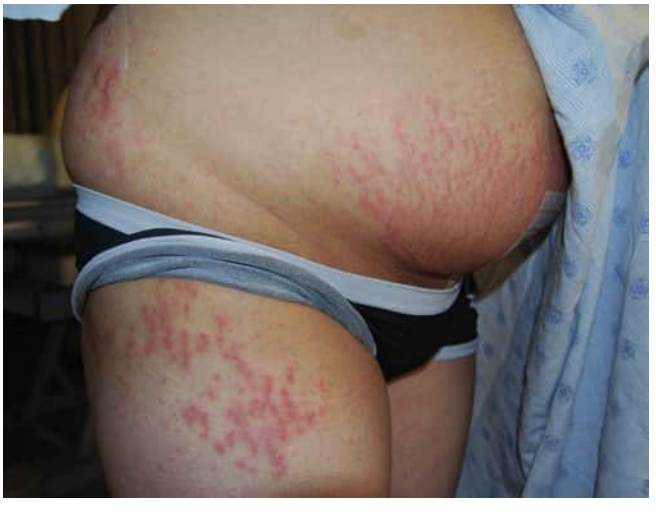


FIGURE 65-2 Pruritic urticarial papules and plaques of pregnancy (PUPPP) shows small papules on the buttock and proximal thigh and within abdominal striae.

Atopic Eruption of Pregnancy

This umbrella term encompasses three conditions previously considered separately: eczema in pregnancy, prurigo of pregnancy, and pruritic folliculitis of pregnancy (Ambros-Rudolph, 2006). Two thirds of women with AEP have widespread eczematous changes, whereas the other third have papular lesions (American Academy of Dermatology, 2019). Diagnosis is greatly aided by a history of prior atopy and by rash characteristics. As a group, these three pose no risk to the fetus (Roth, 2016).

Eczema in pregnancy appears as traditional eczema but with a pregnancy onset. It is the most common pregnancy-specific dermatosis, and affected skin shows dry, thickened, scaly, red patches involving extremity flexures, nipples, neck, and face (Ambros-Rudolph, 2011). In contrast, *prurigo of pregnancy*, also known as *prurigo gestationis,* is characterized by 5- to 10-mm, itchy, erythematous papules or nodules commonly found on the extensor surfaces and trunk. Last, *pruritic folliculitis of pregnancy* is rare and notable for small, erythematous follicular papules and sterile pustules predominantly on the trunk. Of AEP cases, 75 percent develop in the first or second trimesters (Ambros-Rudolph, 2006). All lesions usually resolve with delivery but may persist for up to 3 months postpartum. Recurrence with subsequent pregnancies is variable but common.

Diagnosis is one of exclusion. Biopsy findings and serology results specific for PG are negative (p. 1155). Serum bile acid levels help exclude cholestasis of pregnancy. Many women with eczema of pregnancy have elevated serum immunoglobulin E (IgE) levels (Ambros-Rudolph, 2006).

For all three AEP manifestations, skin lesions and pruritus are usually controlled with chronic emollient use, as-needed oral antihistamines, and low- or moderate-potency topical corticosteroid preparations (Roth, 2016). With the latter, twice-daily application is continued for several weeks to achieve improvement. For maintenance, moisturizer alone or once- or twice-weekly topical corticosteroid use is reasonable. For severe eczema, second-line agents include short-course ultrapotent topical corticosteroids. In some cases, topical tacrolimus, narrow-band ultraviolet B therapy, an oral corticosteroid, or cyclosporine is required (Eichenfield, 2014; Vestergaard, 2019).

OTHER DERMATOLOGICAL CONDITIONS

Acne Vulgaris

This is a common chronic dermatosis that may worsen, improve, or remain stable during pregnancy. In symptomatic gravidas, either 2.5- to 5-percent benzoyl peroxide or 15- to 20-percent azelaic acid is a suitable topical, antiinflammatory, comedolytic agent (Chien, 2016). If needed, 5-percent benzoyl peroxide can instead be coupled with either topical erythromycin or clindamycin, and combined solutions are available. In these combinations, benzoyl peroxide minimizes development of *Propionibacterium acnes* drug resistance (Zaenglein, 2016). Topical retinoids include tretinoin and adapalene. Large studies have not found higher rates of major birth defects with their topical use (Jick, 1993; Shapiro, 1997). However, these are probably best avoided during pregnancy, especially the first trimester (Kaplan, 2015; Panchaud, 2012). The topical retinoid tazarotene is

contraindicated. For more severe cases, oral antibiotics that include erythromycin, azithromycin, cephalexin, or amoxicillin may be coupled with benzoyl peroxide. Systemic antibiotics are ideally delayed until the second trimester, and therapy duration limited to 4 to 6 weeks (Chien, 2016). Refractory cases often merit dermatological consultation. Also, for severe cases, a short course of oral corticosteroid or intralesional injection is an option. Of these, oral agents are delayed until after the first trimester due to the small risk for facial clefts (Chap. 8, p. 153).

Psoriasis and Pustular Psoriasis of Pregnancy

Psoriasis is a common dermatosis with a variable course during pregnancy, however, postpartum flares are common (Murase, 2005). The National Psoriasis Foundation offers pregnancy guidelines (Bae, 2012). Emollients alone are given initially, and low- or moderate-potency topical corticosteroids can be added. In resistant cases, restrained use of high-potency or ultrapotent topical corticosteroids appears safe in the second and third trimesters. Ultraviolet B phototherapy is a second-line option. Last, cyclosporine, oral corticosteroids, or tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF-α) antagonists that include adalimumab, etanercept, and infliximab are third-tier agents for pregnancy. Overall, psoriasis itself does not pose a higher risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes (Bobotsis, 2016). With severe disease, a small increased risk of low birthweight, gestational diabetes, and preeclampsia was found by some (Bröms, 2018; Yang, 2011).

Psoriasis is most commonly of the chronic plaque variety. In contrast, with *pustular psoriasis of pregnancy*, severe systemic symptoms may develop and can mimic sepsis. Formerly called *impetigo herpetiformis*, this rare pustular form has an erythematous background and pruritic plaques ringed by sterile pustules that enlarge, coalesce, and then crust (Fig. 65-3). Plaques initially involve intertriginous areas but may spread to the torso, extremities, and oral mucosa. Extensive lesions can lead to massive fluid loss with hypovolemia, placental insufficiency, and fetal compromise and may also become secondarily infected.

Testing reveals leukocytosis, elevated erythrocyte sedimentation rate, hypocalcemia, and hypoalbuminemia (Umezawa, 2003). Blood cultures and skin viral/bacterial cultures to exclude infection and a diagnostic skin biopsy are obtained. Classically, the former are sterile, and the latter reveals epidermal pustules of neutrophils.

First-line treatment is with oral prednisone (15–80 mg/d), cyclosporine (2–3 mg/kg/d), infliximab (Remicade), topical corticosteroids, or topical calcipotriene (Robinson, 2012; Trivedi, 2018). Selection of a systemic or topical agent and its dose is directed by disease severity. As needed, fluid resuscitation, electrolyte correction, and intravenous antibiotics for secondary infections are adjuncts (Huang, 2011). Pustular psoriasis of pregnancy typically resolves quickly postpartum, and thus early delivery can be considered individually. Recurrences are reported in subsequent pregnancies and with menses or oral contraceptive use (Roth, 2011).

Erythema Nodosum

This skin condition reflects subcutaneous fat inflammation and is associated with many disorders, including pregnancy. Other triggers are infections, sarcoidosis, drugs, Behçet syndrome, inflammatory bowel disease, or malignancy (Mert, 2007; Papagrigoraki, 2010). Characteristically, tender, red, warm, 1- to 6-cm nodules and plaques develop rapidly on extensor surfaces. After a few days, lesions flatten, and color evolves like a bruise—from dark red and purple to yellow green. Constitutional symptoms also may be present. Initial evaluation and treatment focuses on the underlying etiology. Symptoms spontaneously resolve in 1 to 6 weeks without scarring but may leave residual hyperpigmentation (Acosta, 2013).

Pyogenic Granuloma

This lesion is frequently seen in pregnancy (Fig. 65-4) (Bett, 2019). Poorly named, *pyogenic granuloma* is actually a lobular

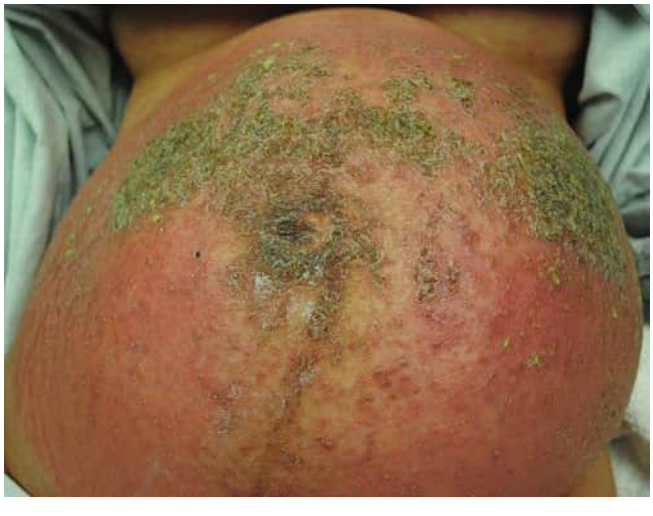


FIGURE 65-3 Generalized pustular psoriasis of pregnancy displays erythematous, sometimes pruritic plaques ringed by sterile pustules that enlarge and then form a scaling crust. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Paul Slocum.)

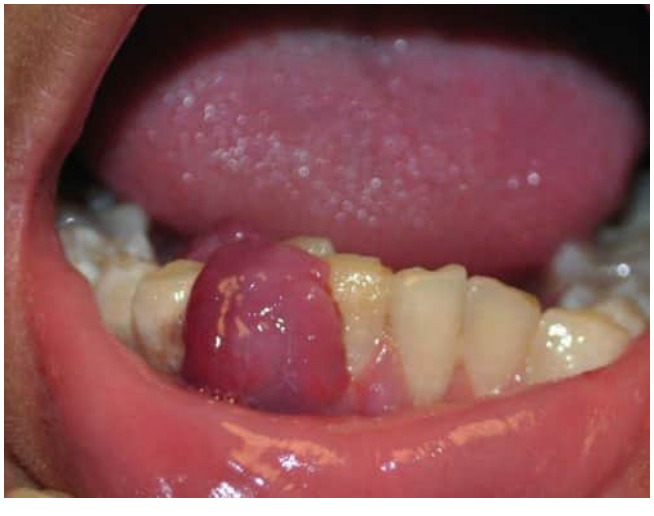


FIGURE 65-4 Pyogenic granuloma is characterized grossly by a lobulated red growth on a pedunculated or sessile base. With minimal trauma, these vascular lesions bleed easily. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Sarah White.)

capillary hemangioma. Pregnancy-associated elevations in angiogenic factors that include vascular endothelial growth factor are implicated (Yuan, 2000, 2004). It commonly forms on the gingiva, other oral/nasal surfaces, or hand in response to low-grade local irritation or trauma (Cardoso 2013). Lesions grow quickly and bleed with minimal provocation. Active bleeding can be controlled with pressure and application of a silver nitrate stick or Monsel (ferric subsulfate) paste. These growths often resolve within months postpartum and thus may be observed antepartum. But, with a symptomatic antepartum growth, a persistent postpartum lesion, or an unclear diagnosis, excision is preferred. An option is scalpel excision plus suturing, electrosurgical curettage, laser photocoagulation, or cryotherapy. Oral lesions are best referred to specialists.

Miscellaneous Conditions

Hidradenitis suppurativa is a chronic inflammatory skin disease. Keratin plugging of hair follicles and recurrent inflammation lead to painful nodules and abscesses that rupture to create sinus tracts. Hurley stages I–III range from transient, widely spaced inflammatory papules to diffuse involvement with multiple deep sinus tracts between skin abscesses (Hurley, 1989). For most, symptoms during pregnancy are unchanged or improved (Kromann, 2014; Vossen, 2017).

Treatment aims to decrease cutaneous inflammation and provide antibacterial effects. For active stage I/II disease, 1-percent clindamycin is topically applied twice daily for 12 weeks (Alikhan, 2019). As alternatives, 0.75-percent metronidazole or 2-percent erythromycin gel are suitable (Perng, 2017). For stage II/III disease, a 300-mg clindamycin plus a 300-mg rifampin dose orally twice daily for 10 weeks has evidence-based support (Alikhan, 2019). Adalimumab (Humira) is an FDA-approved biological agent that targets TNF-α and offers a second-line option for advanced-stage disease in pregnancy (Jemec, 2019; Perng, 2017).

Neurofibromatosis lesions are typified by benign cutaneous neurofibromas, café-au-lait spots, axillary and inguinal freckling, benign iris nodules (Lisch nodules), and optic nerve gliomas. Neurofibromas may grow in size and number during pregnancy (Cesaretti, 2013; Dugoff, 1996). With neurofibromatosis type 1, higher rates of preeclampsia and preterm birth complicate pregnancy (Leppävirta, 2017; Terry, 2013). With type 2, some evidence suggests a risk for preeclampsia (Terry, 2015). Prenatal genetic diagnosis is available for both types (Merker, 2015).

Rosacea fulminans, also known as *pyoderma faciale,* is rare and typified by facial pustules and coalescing draining sinuses but without comedones. Its marked presentation usually merits dermatological consultation. Topical or oral antibiotics are primary treatment, and topical corticosteroids may be added. Less often, short-course oral corticosteroids or focal surgical drainage is a needed adjunct (Angileri, 2021; Fuentelsaz, 2011; Jarrett, 2010).

Other skin conditions discussed elsewhere in this book are hirsutism and melanoma (Chap. 66, p. 1176), cutaneous lupus (Chap. 62, p. 1111), hyperpigmentation (Chap. 4, p. 55), and skin lesions seen with infections (Chaps. 67 and 68, p. 1182).

DERMATOLOGICAL TREATMENT

Local skin care, oral antihistamines, and topical corticosteroids are commonly used for many dermatoses. Oral antihistamines are given for pruritus. Suitable options include first-generation agents such as diphenhydramine (Benadryl), 25 to 50 mg every 6 hours, or chlorpheniramine (Chlor-Trimeton), 4 mg every 6 hours. Second-generation agents—loratadine (Claritin) 10 mg daily or cetirizine (Zyrtec) 5 or 10 mg daily—may produce less sedation and are also safe for pregnancy.

Numerous topical corticosteroid preparations are available, and in the United States, these are categorized by potency (Table 65-2). For initial treatment of dermatological disorders, low- or moderate-potency agents are preferred. Low-potency agents include 1-percent hydrocortisone and 0.05-percent desonide (DesOwen). Moderate-potency drugs are 0.1-percent triamcinolone acetonide (Aristocort) and 0.1-percent mometasone furoate (Elocon). High-potency medications include 0.05-percent betamethasone dipropionate (Diprolene). Ultrapotent agents, such as 0.05-percent clobetasol propionate (Temovate), are best reserved for refractory disorders and used for only 2 to 4 weeks on small surface areas.

Mild and moderate strengths are not associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes, whereas high-potency and ultrapotent agents pose a small risk for fetal-growth restriction with large cumulative doses (Chi, 2013, 2015). Even then, this risk is less than that with oral corticosteroids. Importantly, with any topical agent, factors that raise systemic absorption include a large surface area treated, compromised epidermal barrier, occlusive dressing, prolonged treatment duration, and coadministration of other topical agents that enhance absorption.

TABLE 65-2. Commonly Used Topical Corticosteroids in Pregnancy

Low-Potency Agents	Moderate-Potency Agents	High-Potency Agents	Ultrapotency Agents
Hydrocortisone 0.5–1% *cream, ointment*	Triamcinolone acetonide 0.1% *cream, ointment*	Triamcinolone acetonide 0.5% *cream, ointment*	Clobetasol propionate 0.05% *cream, ointment*
Dexamethasone 0.1% *cream*	Mometasone furoate 0.1% *cream*	Mometasone furoate 0.1% *ointment*	
Desonide 0.05% *foam, cream, ointment*	Betamethasone valerate 0.1% *cream, ointment*	Betamethasone dipropionate 0.05% *cream, ointment*	

TABLE 65-3. Some Dermatological Agents and Their Suitability for Pregnancy

Group	Action	Pregnancy Recommendation
Topical Agents		
Corticosteroids	Antiinflammatory	Suitable
Benzoyl peroxide	Antiinflammatory, comedolytic, antibacterial	Suitable
Azelaic acid		Suitable
Antibiotics: Clindamycin, erythromycin	Antibacterial	Suitable
Calcineurin inhibitors: Tacrolimus, pimecrolimus	Antiinflammatory	Suitable
Calcipotriene	Antiinflammatory, vitamin D analogue	Possible poor ossification in animals; no human data Probably suitable in dermatological dosages
Coal tar	Antiinflammatory; keratinocyte regulation	Possible animal mutagen/carcinogen; no human data If used, delay until 2nd trimester
Retinoids:	Antiinflammatory, comedolytic	
Tretinoin, adapalene		Large studies show no harm, but experts suggest avoiding
Tazarotene		Teratogenic; contraindicated
Crisaborole	Antiinflammatory	Limited pregnancy data; avoidance currently suggested
Systemic Agents		
Oral antibiotics: Azithromycin, amoxicillin, cephalexin, erythromycin	Antibacterial	Suitable
Oral corticosteroids	Antiinflammatory	1st-trimester use linked to small risk of oral clefts
Cyclosporine	Immunomodulator	Low birthweight, preterm birth; nonteratogenic
TNF-α inhibitors: Infliximab, adalimumab, etanercept	TNF-α inhibition	Suitable

From Bae, 2012; Briggs, 2017; Murase, 2014; Park-Wyllie, 2000; Rademaker, 2018; Robinson, 2012; Sekhon, 2018; Vestergaard, 2019.

For use in pregnancy and lactation, Murase (2014) and Butler (2014) have compiled tables and evidence-based descriptions of most. Table 65-3 reflects more commonly encountered agents. Notable therapeutic agents to avoid during pregnancy include methotrexate, psoralen plus ultraviolet A, mycophenolate mofetil, podophyllin, and systemic retinoids. These teratogens are discussed in Chapter 8. Bacterial infections are a potential secondary complication of skin disorders and are treated promptly with oral antimicrobial agents with gram-positive coverage.

REFERENCES

Acosta KA, Haver MC, Kelly B: Etiology and therapeutic management of erythema nodosum during pregnancy: an update. Am J Clin Dermatol 14(3):215, 2013

Al-Saif F, Elisa A, Al-Homidy A, et al: Retrospective analysis of pemphigoid gestationis in 32 Saudi patients—clinicopathological features and a literature review. J Reprod Immunol 116:42, 2016

Al Saif F, Jouen F, Hebert V, et al: Sensitivity and specificity of BP180 NC16A enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for the diagnosis of pemphigoid gestationis. J Am Acad Dermatol 76(3):560, 2017

Alikhan A, Sayed C, Alavi A, et al: North American clinical management guidelines for hidradenitis suppurativa: a publication from the United States and Canadian Hidradenitis Suppurativa Foundations: Part II: topical, intralesional, and systemic medical management. J Am Acad Dermatol 81(1):91, 2019

Ambros-Rudolph CM, Müllegger RR, Vaughan-Jones SA, et al: The specific dermatoses of pregnancy revisited and reclassified: results of a retrospective two-center study on 505 pregnant patients. J Am Acad Dermatol 54:395, 2006

Ambros-Rudolph CM: Dermatoses of pregnancy—clues to diagnosis, fetal risk and therapy. Ann Dermatol 23(3):265, 2011

American Academy of Dermatology: Learning module: dermatoses in pregnancy. 2019. Available at: https://www.aad.org/member/education/residents/bdc/pregnancy. Accessed November 19, 2019

Angileri L, Veraldi S, Barbareschi M: Rosacea fulminans: two case reports and review of the literature. J Dermatolog Treat 32(1):110, 2021

Bae YS, Van Voorhees AS, Hsu S, et al: Review of treatment options for psoriasis in pregnant or lactating women: from the Medical Board of the National Psoriasis Foundation. J Am Acad Dermatol 67(3):459, 2012

Benediktsson R, Calder AA, Edwards CR, et al: Placental 11 beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase: a key regulator of fetal glucocorticoid exposure. Clin Endocrinol 46(2):161, 1997

Bett JV, Batistella EÂ, Melo G, et al: Prevalence of oral mucosal disorders during pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Oral Pathol Med 48(4):270, 2019

Bobotsis R, Gulliver WP, Monaghan K, et al: Psoriasis and adverse pregnancy outcomes: a systematic review of observational studies. Br J Dermatol 175(3):464, 2016

Brandão P, Sousa-Faria B, Marinho C, et al: Polymorphic eruption of pregnancy: review of literature. J Obstet Gynaecol 37(2):137, 2017

Briggs GG, Freeman RK, Towers CV, et al: Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation, 11th ed. Philadelphia, Lippincott Williams & Wilkins, 2017

Bröms G, Haerskjold A, Granath F, et al: Effect of maternal psoriasis on pregnancy and birth outcomes: a population-based cohort study from Denmark and Sweden. Acta Derm Venereol 98(8):728, 2018

Butler DC, Heller MM, Murase JE: Safety of dermatologic medications in pregnancy and lactation: part II. lactation. J Am Acad Dermatol 70(3):417.e1, 2014

Cardoso JA, Spanemberg JC, Cherubini K, et al: Oral granuloma gravidarum: a retrospective study of 41 cases in Southern Brazil. J Appl Oral Sci 21(3):215, 2013

Cesaretti C, Melloni G, Quagliarini D: Neurofibromatosis type 1 and pregnancy: maternal complications and attitudes about prenatal diagnosis. Am J Med Genet A 161A (2):386, 2013

Chakravarty EF, Murray ER, Kelman A, et al: Pregnancy outcomes after maternal exposure to rituximab. Blood 117(5):1499, 2011

Chi CC, Wang SH, Charles-Holmes R, et al: Pemphigoid gestationis: early onset and blister formations are associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes. Br J Dermatol 160(6):1222, 2009

Chi CC, Wang SH, Mayon-White R: Pregnancy outcomes after maternal exposure to topical corticosteroids: a UK population-based cohort study. JAMA Dermatol 149(11):1274, 2013

Chi CC, Wang SH, Wojnarowska F, et al: Safety of topical corticosteroids in pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD007346, 2015

Chien AL, Qi J, Rainer B, et al: Treatment of acne in pregnancy. J Am Board Fam Med 29(2):254, 2016

Dabas G, Afra TP, De D, et al: Anhydramnios in patients with pemphigoid gestationis. JAMA Dermatol 154(4):484, 2018

Dugoff L, Sujansky E: Neurofibromatosis type 1 and pregnancy. Am J Med Genet 66(1):7, 1996

Eichenfield LF, Tom WL, Berger TG, et al: Guidelines of care for the management of atopic dermatitis: section 2. management and treatment of atopic dermatitis with topical therapies. J Am Acad Dermatol 71(1):116, 2014

Erickson NI, Ellis RL: Neonatal rash due to herpes gestationis. N Engl J Med 347(9):660, 2002

Fania L, Guerriero C, Ricci F, et al: Herpes gestationis and oral contraceptive: case report and review of the literature. Dermatol Ther 30(5):1, 2017

Fuentelsaz V, Ara M, Corredera C, et al: Rosacea fulminans in pregnancy: successful treatment with azithromycin. Clin Exp Dermatol 36(6):674, 2011

High WA, Hoang MP, Miller MD: Pruritic urticarial papules and plaques of pregnancy with unusual and extensive palmoplantar involvement. Obstet Gynecol 105:1261, 2005

Huang YH, Chen YP, Liang CC, et al: Impetigo herpetiformis with gestational hypertension: a case report and literature review. Dermatology 222(3):221, 2011

Huilaja L, Mäkikallio K, Hannula-Jouppi K, et al: Cyclosporine treatment in severe gestational pemphigoid. Acta Derm Venereol 95(5):593, 2015

Huilaja L, Mäkikallio K, Sormunen R, et al: Gestational pemphigoid: placental morphology and function. Acta Derm Venereol 93(1):33, 2013

Hurley HJ: Axillary hyperhidrosis, apocrine bromhidrosis, hidradenitis suppurativa and familial benign pemphigus: surgical approach. In Roenigk RK, Roenigk HH (eds): Dermatologic Surgery. New York, Marcel Dekker, 1989, p 729

Jarrett R, Gonsalves R, Anstey AV: Differing obstetric outcomes of rosacea fulminans in pregnancy: report of three cases with review of pathogenesis and management. Clin Exp Dermatol 35(8):888, 2010

Jemec GB, Okun MM, Forman SB, et al: Adalimumab medium-term dosing strategy in moderate-to-severe hidradenitis suppurativa: integrated results from the phase III randomized placebo-controlled PIONEER trials. Br J Dermatol 181(5):967, 2019

Jenkins RE, Hern S, Black MM: Clinical features and management of 87 patients with pemphigoid gestationis. Clin Exp Dermatol 24(4):255, 1999

Jick SS, Terris BZ, Jick H: First trimester topical tretinoin and congenital disorders. Lancet 341:1181, 1993

Kaplan YC, Ozsarfati J, Etwel F, et al: Pregnancy outcomes following first-trimester exposure to topical retinoids: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Br J Dermatol 173(5):1132, 2015

Katz SI, Hertz KC, Yaoita H: Herpes gestationis. Immunopathology and characterization of the HG factor. J Clin Invest 57(6):1434, 1976

Kelly SE, Bhogal BS, Wojnarowska F, et al: Expression of a pemphigoid gestationis-related antigen by human placenta. Br J Dermatol 118:605, 1988

Kromann CB, Deckers IE, Esmann S, et al: Risk factors, clinical course and long-term prognosis in hidradenitis suppurativa: a cross-sectional study. Br J Dermatol 171(4):819, 2014

Lawley TJ, Hertz KC, Wade TR, et al: Pruritic urticarial papules and plaques of pregnancy. JAMA 241(16):1696, 1979

Lawley TJ, Stingl G, Katz SI: Fetal and maternal risk factors in herpes gestationis. Arch Dermatol 114(4):552, 1978

Lehrhoff S, Pomeranz MK: Specific dermatoses of pregnancy and their treatment. Dermatol Ther 26(4):274, 2013

Leppävirta J, Kallionpää RA, Uusitalo E, et al: The pregnancy in neurofibromatosis 1: a retrospective register-based total population study. Am J Med Genet A 173(10):2641, 2017

Lipozenčić J, Ljubojevic S, Bukvić-Mokos Z: Pemphigoid gestationis. Clin Dermatol 30(1):51, 2012

Marker M, Derfler K, Monshi B, et al: Successful immunoapheresis of bullous autoimmune diseases: pemphigus vulgaris and pemphigoid gestationis. J Dtsch Dermatol Ges 9(1):27, 2011

Merker VL, Murphy TP, Hughes JB, et al: Outcomes of preimplantation genetic diagnosis in neurofibromatosis type 1. Fertil Steril 103(3):761, 2015

Mert A, Kumbasar H, Ozaras R, et al: Erythema nodosum: an evaluation of 100 cases. Clin Exp Rheumatol 25(4):563, 2007

Murase JE, Chan KK, Garite TJ, et al: Hormonal effect on psoriasis in pregnancy and postpartum. Arch Dermatol 141(5):601, 2005

Murase JE, Heller MM, Butler DC: Safety of dermatologic medications in pregnancy and lactation: part I. pregnancy. J Am Acad Dermatol 70(3):401.e1, 2014

Panchaud A, Csajka C, Merlob P, et al: Pregnancy outcome following exposure to topical retinoids: a multicenter prospective study. J Clin Pharmacol 52(12):1844, 2012

Papagrigoraki A, Gisondi P, Rosina P, et al: Erythema nodosum: etiological factors and relapses in a retrospective cohort study. Eur J Dermatol 20(6):773, 2010

Park SY, Kim JH, Lee WS: Pruritic urticarial papules and plaques of pregnancy with unique distribution developing in postpartum period. Ann Dermatol 25(4):506, 2013

Park-Wyllie L, Mazzota P, Pastuszak A, et al: Birth defects after maternal exposure to corticosteroids: prospective cohort study and meta-analysis of epidemiological studies. Teratology 62(6):385, 2000

Perng P, Zampella JG, Okoye GA: Management of hidradenitis suppurativa in pregnancy. J Am Acad Dermatol 76(5):979, 2017

Rademaker M, Agnew K, Andrews M, et al: Psoriasis in those planning a family, pregnant or breast-feeding. The Australasian psoriasis collaboration. Australas J Dermatol 59(2):86, 2018

Regnier S, Fermand V, Levy P, et al: A case-control study of polymorphic eruption of pregnancy. J Am Acad Dermatol 58 (1):63, 2008

Robinson A, Van Voorhees AS, Hsu S, et al: Treatment of pustular psoriasis: from the Medical Board of the National Psoriasis Foundation. J Am Acad Dermatol 67(2):279, 2012

Roth MM: Pregnancy dermatoses: diagnosis, management, and controversies. Am J Clin Dermatol 12(1):25, 2011

Roth MM, Cristodor P, Kroumpouzos G: Prurigo, pruritic folliculitis, and atopic eruption of pregnancy: facts and controversies. Clin Dermatol 34(3):392, 2016

Rudolph CM, Al-Fares S, Vaughan-Jones SA, et al: Polymorphic eruption of pregnancy: clinicopathology and potential trigger factors in 181 patients. Br J Dermatol 154:54, 2005

Sadik CD, Lima AL, Zillikens D: Pemphigoid gestationis: toward a better understanding of the etiopathogenesis. Clin Dermatol 34(3):378, 2016

Scheinfeld N: Pruritic urticarial papules and plaques of pregnancy wholly abated with one week twice daily application of fluticasone propionate lotion: a case report and review of the literature. Dermatol Online 14(11):4, 2008

Sekhon S, Jeon C, Nakamura M, et al: Review of the mechanism of action of coal tar in psoriasis. J Dermatolog Treat 29(3):230, 2018

Semkova K, Black M: Pemphigoid gestationis: current insights into pathogenesis and treatment. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 145(2):138, 2009

Shapiro L, Pastuszak A, Curto G, et al: Safety of first-trimester exposure to topical tretinoin: prospective cohort study. Lancet 350:1143, 1997

Shornick JK, Black MM: Fetal risks in herpes gestationis. J Am Acad Dermatol 26:63, 1992

Sitaru C, Powell J, Messer G, et al: Immunoblotting and enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay for the diagnosis of pemphigoid gestationis. Obstet Gynecol 103(4):757, 2004

Stern RS: Exanthematous drug eruptions. N Engl J Med 366:2492, 2012

Tani N, Kimura Y, Koga H, et al: Clinical and immunological profiles of 25 patients with pemphigoid gestationis. Br J Dermatol 172(1):120, 2015

Terry AR, Barker FG 2nd, Leffert L, et al: Neurofibromatosis type 1 and pregnancy complications: a population-based study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(1):46.e1, 2013

Terry AR, Merker VL, Barker FG 2nd, et al: Pregnancy complications in women with rare tumor suppressor syndromes affecting central and peripheral nervous system. Am J Obstet Gynecol 213(1):108, 2015

Tourte M, Brunet-Possenti F, Mignot S, et al: Pemphigoid gestationis: a successful preventive treatment by rituximab. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol 31(4):e206, 2017

Trivedi MK, Vaughn AR, Murase JE: Pustular psoriasis of pregnancy: current perspectives. Int J Womens Health 10:109, 2018

Umezawa Y, Ozawa A, Kawasima T, et al: Therapeutic guidelines for the treatment of generalized pustular psoriasis (GPP) based on a proposed classification of disease severity. Arch Dermatol Res 295(Suppl 1):S43, 2003

Vaughan Jones SA, Hern S, Nelson-Piercy C, et al: A prospective study of 200 women with dermatoses of pregnancy correlating clinical findings with hormonal and immunopathological profiles. Br J Dermatol 141:71, 1999

Vestergaard C, Wollenberg A, Barbarot S, et al: European task force on atopic dermatitis position paper: treatment of parental atopic dermatitis during preconception, pregnancy and lactation period. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol 33(9):1644, 2019

Vossen AR, Van Straalen KR, Prens EP, et al: Menses and pregnancy affect symptoms in hidradenitis suppurativa: a cross-sectional study. J Am Acad Dermatol 76(1):155, 2017

Yang A, Uhlenhake E, Murrell DF: Pemphigoid gestationis and intravenous immunoglobulin therapy. Int J Womens Dermatol 4(3):166, 2018

Yang YW, Chen CS, Chen YH, et al: Psoriasis and pregnancy outcomes: a nationwide population-based study. J Am Acad Dermatol 64(1):71, 2011

Yuan K, Jin YT, Lin MT: The detection and comparison of angiogenesis-associated factors in pyogenic granuloma by immunohistochemistry. J Periodontol 71(5):701, 2000

Yuan K, Lin MT: The roles of vascular endothelial growth factor and angiopoietin-2 in the regression of pregnancy pyogenic granuloma. Oral Dis 10(3):179, 2004

Zaenglein AL, Pathy AL, Schlosser BJ, et al: Guidelines of care for the management of acne vulgaris. J Am Acad Dermatol 74(5):945, 2016

CHAPTER 66

Neoplastic Disorders

Any of the many neoplasms that affect reproductive-aged women can complicate pregnancy. Fortunately, most encountered neoplasms are benign, and uterine leiomyomas and ovarian cysts are the most frequent. Despite this, the incidence of malignancy approximates 1 case per 1000 to 2000 pregnancies (Korenaga, 2020; Ma, 2020). A third are diagnosed prenatally, and the remainder within 12 months of delivery. The distribution of some of these is shown in Figure 66-1 (de Haan, 2018). In another report from the Cancer Research Network, breast malignancies made up 25 percent and thyroid cancers, 20 percent. Melanoma and hematological and cervical cancers each contributed approximately 10 percent (Cottreau, 2019).

During pregnancy, cancer management poses unique problems related to fetal concerns, and treatment is individualized. Considerations include the type and stage of malignancy, the desire for pregnancy continuation, and inherent risks associated with modifying or delaying cancer treatment. Last, adverse pregnancy outcomes have been associated in general with gravidas with cancer (Ma, 2020; Momen, 2018).

CANCER THERAPY IN PREGNANCY

Surgery

Operative procedures may be indicated to aid cancer diagnosis, staging, or therapy. Fortunately, most surgeries that do not

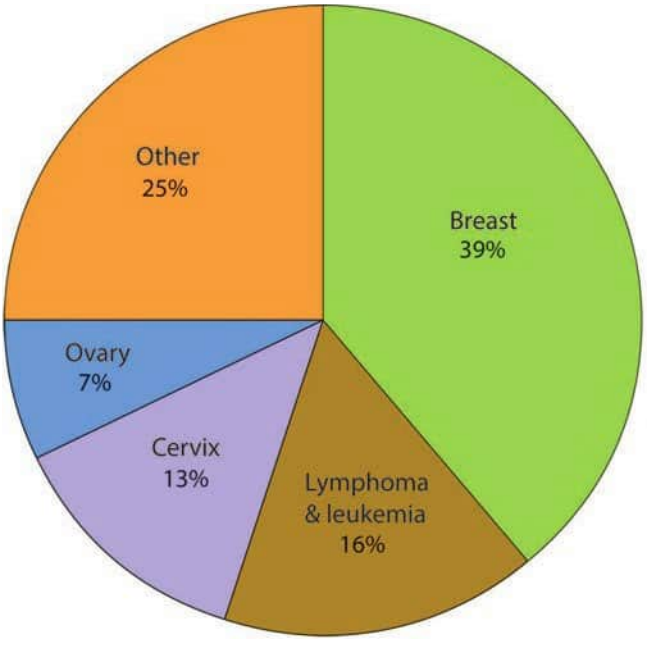


FIGURE 66-1 Distribution of cancer in 1170 pregnant women form the International Network on Cancer, Infertility, and Pregnancy (INCIP).

interfere with the reproductive tract are well tolerated by both mother and fetus (Chap. 49, p. 867). Although many operations have classically been deferred until after 12 to 14 weeks' gestation to minimize miscarriage risks, this probably is unnecessary. We believe that surgery should be performed at any gestational age if maternal well-being is imperiled.

Both pregnancy and malignancy are risk factors for venous thromboembolism (VTE). From studies of women with cancer during pregnancy, the risk of VTE is higher in pregnancy and in the postpartum period than in gravidas without a malignancy (Bleu, 2016; Greiber, 2021). Current guidelines lack specific recommendations for pregnant women undergoing surgeries for cancer. Thus, depending on the complexity of the planned procedure, it seems reasonable to consider prophylactic low-molecular-weight heparin combined with elastic stockings and/or intermittent pneumatic compression (Chap. 55, p. 989).

Diagnostic Imaging

Sonography is a preferred imaging tool during pregnancy. Even so, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019c) notes that most diagnostic radiographic procedures deliver very low x-ray doses and should not be delayed if they would directly affect therapy (Chap. 49, p. 872). Magnetic resonance (MR) imaging can safely be performed in any trimester, but delay until after the first trimester may lower potential risks. Gadolinium should not be used in the first trimester and should be used later in pregnancy only when the benefits overwhelmingly outweigh risks (American College of Radiology, 2021; Kanal, 2013). Computed tomography (CT) is less often selected due to ionizing radiation, and procedure-related doses are listed in Chapter 49 (p. 874). Thus, CT imaging is used in pregnancy most often to evaluate acute concerns that include pulmonary embolism, bowel or renal obstruction, and acute neurological events. To enhance CT imaging, oral and intravenous contrasts may be added. These lack known fetal harm, and postpartum breastfeeding need not be interrupted. In pregnancy, some radioisotopes are relatively safe (Table 49-10, p. 876).

Radiation Therapy

Therapeutic radiation is used to *treat* cancers and delivers a higher radiation dose than that with diagnostic imaging. Radiotherapy may significantly expose the fetus depending on the dose, tumor location, field size, and gestational age. Potential adverse effects include fetal malformation, intellectual disability, growth restriction, sterility, and carcinogenesis (Brent, 1999; Stovall, 1995). In the 2 weeks following fertilization, exposure typically leads to chromosomal damage and embryonic death. The next most susceptible period is during organogenesis in weeks 2 through 8, and exposure can create malformations. These might develop above a threshold dose of 0.1 to 0.2 Gy. During weeks 8 through 25, the fetal central nervous system is especially vulnerable. The threshold dose for intellectual disability at 8 to 15 weeks' gestation approximates 0.06 Gy, and at 16 to 25 weeks it is about 0.25 Gy (Kal, 2005; Otake, 1996). After 25 weeks' gestation, susceptibility is less, although no gestational age is considered safe for therapeutic radiation exposure. Thus, radiotherapy to the maternal abdomen is contraindicated. With some head and neck cancers, however, radiotherapy to supradiaphragmatic areas can be used relatively safely with abdominal shielding of the fetus (Amant, 2015a).

Chemotherapy

Various antineoplastic drugs may be given as primary or adjunctive therapy. Although chemotherapy often improves long-term maternal outcomes, many are reluctant to employ it during pregnancy. Concerns for the fetus include malformations, growth restriction, intellectual disability, and the risk of future childhood malignancies. Risks depend primarily on fetal age at exposure, and most agents are potentially detrimental in the first trimester during organogenesis. Indeed, in one review, 14 percent of major malformations were attributable to first-trimester exposure to cytotoxic drugs (National Toxicology Program, 2013).

After the first trimester, most antineoplastic drugs are without immediate obvious adverse fetal sequelae (Korenaga, 2020; Vercruysse, 2016). Similarly, late mutagenic effects appear limited (Amant, 2015b; Cardonick, 2015). Although not always practicable, some recommend that chemotherapy be withheld in the 3 weeks before expected delivery because neutropenia or pancytopenia might cause undue risk for maternal infection or hemorrhage. Another concern is that neonatal hepatic and renal clearance of chemotherapy metabolites is limited (Ko, 2011). For these reasons, most cytotoxic chemotherapy agents are contraindicated with breastfeeding (Pistilli, 2013).

Molecular Therapy

Biological agents designed to stimulate hemopoiesis are commonly used with cancer treatments. Some of these include the granulocyte colony-stimulating factors filgrastim (Neupogen) and pegfilgrastim (Neulasta). If required in pregnancy, limited data support the safety of these agents (Boxer, 2015). Red blood cells can be stimulated by erythropoietin alfa (Procrit), which from case reports also appears safe in pregnancy (Sienas, 2013). However, maternal hypertension is a known potential risk. Last, for chemotherapy-induced thrombocytopenia, romiplostim and eltrombopag are thrombopoietin-receptor agonists that appear to be safe in pregnancy (Chua, 2020; Michel, 2020).

Targeted Therapy

The two main types of targeted therapy are monoclonal antibodies and small-molecule inhibitors. Both block the actions of specific enzymes, proteins, or other molecules involved in cancer cell growth (Tsao, 2019). Another is nanotherapy using drugs incorporated into encapsulated nanoparticles (Pereira, 2020). These drugs are designed to treat an ever-expanding list of cancers, and some are described in later discussions of specific tumors. Most of these compounds are labeled by the Food and Drug Administration as class D, and data are limited regarding their pregnancy or breastfeeding effects.

Many of these drugs target tyrosine kinase, an important enzyme that regulates signaling pathways involved with cell division, differentiation, and apoptosis. With first-trimester

use, embryo toxicity or teratogenicity has been attributed to these. Thus, use balances potential maternal benefit and potential fetal risk (Lodish, 2013).

Of other agents, the monoclonal antibody trastuzumab (Herceptin) inhibits the human epidermal growth factor receptor type 2 (HER2), which some breast cancers express. Although not teratogenic, its use in the second and third trimesters is associated with oligohydramnios, which appears to be reversible upon stopping the drug (McCormick, 2018; Zagouri, 2013b). Because of sparse available data, other HER2 inhibitors are best avoided in pregnancy (Lambertini, 2015).

Fertility and Pregnancy after Cancer Therapy

Oncofertility is an emerging discipline to preserve fertility in young adults diagnosed with cancer (Robson, 2020). Fertility may be diminished after chemotherapy or radiotherapy. Counseling ideally takes place before cancer treatment, and guidelines have been developed by the American Society for Reproductive Medicine (ASRM) (2018) and other major groups (Oktay, 2018; van de Kooi, 2021). Prior to therapy, embryo or oocyte cryopreservation is a recognized option. Ovarian tissue cryopreservation is available in research settings (American Society for Reproductive Medicine, 2013a,b, 2014). In addition, many cancer survivors conceive by assisted reproductive technologies (ART), which by itself has associated obstetrical risks (Chap. 9, p. 169).

If pelvic radiation is planned, surgical transposition moves ovaries and their intact primary blood supply out of the pelvis. The ovary is then fixed to the lateral abdominal wall at a site 3 to 4 cm above the level of the umbilicus. Metal clips are placed to help identify the ovary in future imaging (Moawad, 2017). In one review, functional preservation was reported in 65 to 94 percent, depending on radiotherapy type (Gubbala, 2014).

In counseling cancer survivors, evidence suggests that exposure to most radiotherapy or chemotherapy agents does not significantly raise the risk of congenital anomalies or genetic disease in their offspring (Signorello, 2012; Winther, 2012). In those treated as children, chemotherapy does not show a consistent link to adverse obstetrical outcomes (Melin, 2015; Reulen, 2009). Data are limited in those with cancer treated as an adult, and some studies show slightly higher rates of preterm birth and cesarean delivery (Haggar, 2014; Stensheim, 2013).

Prior abdominopelvic radiation more convincingly affects neonatal outcomes, including elevated rates of abortion, low birthweight, stillbirth, and preterm birth (Signorello, 2006, 2010; Winther, 2008). Radiation may reduce uterine volume, thin the endometrium, and impair uterine blood flow (Critchley, 1992; van de Loo, 2019). Radiotherapy directed to the uterus and given at a younger age shows greater effects (Teh, 2014).

Placental Metastases

Tumors infrequently metastasize to the placenta. The most common types are malignant melanomas, leukemias, lymphomas, and breast cancer (Chap. 6, p. 112). Placentas from pregnancies in all women with cancer should be sent for histological evaluation. Tumor cells are usually confined within the intervillous spaces, and fetal metastases are rare (Al-Adnani, 2007; Rubrecht, 2020).

REPRODUCTIVE TRACT NEOPLASMS

Benign neoplasms of the reproductive tract are common and include leiomyomas, ovarian tumors, and endocervical polyps. Cancer in these organs may also complicate pregnancy, and of these, cervical neoplasia makes up most (de Haan, 2018).

Cervix

Endocervical Polyp

These are overgrowths of endocervical stroma covered by epithelium. They typically appear as single, red, elongated fleshy masses of variable size that extend outward from the endocervical canal. Usually benign, they can bleed and can be a source of Pap test results reported as *atypical glandular cells of undetermined significance—AGUS*. With removal and histological polyp evaluation, dysplasia is diagnosed in up to 0.5 percent, and cancer is found in approximately 0.1 percent (Park, 2020).

Few formal data guide management in pregnancy. Small asymptomatic lesions may be left alone to slough during delivery or puerperal remodeling. Removal and histological evaluation is reasonable if malignancy is suspected or if bleeding is troublesome. For most, the polyp is grasped with ring forceps and twisted repeatedly about its base to strangulate feeding vessels. With repeated twisting, the base narrows and avulses. Monsel paste, which is ferric subsulfate, can be applied with pressure to the stalk stub for hemostasis. A thick-pedicle polyp may infrequently warrant surgical ligation and excision.

Cervical Neoplasia

Pregnancy provides an opportune time to screen for cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) and invasive cervical cancer. With Pap test screening, pregnancy status should be noted on the requisition form as cytological interpretation may be influenced by normal pregnancy-associated changes. Presence of decidual cells and, less often, an Arias-Stella reaction are examples. The latter gives an appearance of endocervical gland hyperplasia, which can make differentiating this from truly atypical glandular cells difficult.

Current screening guidelines apply to both nonpregnant women and gravidas (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021b; U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, 2018). Recommendations for average-risk women include: (1) no screening until age 21, (2) cytology alone every 3 years in those aged 21 to 29 years, and (3) in women aged ≥30 years, three options are suitable. These are human papillomavirus (HPV) *plus* cytology, termed co-testing, every 5 years; primary HPV testing every 5 years; or cytology every 3 years.

Higher-risk women with altered immune systems include women with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection, systemic lupus erythematosus, organ transplant, or immunosuppressant medication use (Perkins, 2020). Others include those with past CIN or prior early cervical cancer or in utero diethylstilbestrol (DES) exposure. Affected women are screened earlier and more often using current guidelines for HIV-affected individuals (Panel on Opportunistic Infections in Adults and Adolescents with HIV, 2020). Germane to gravidas aged ≤30 years, these guidelines recommend Pap test screening at the time of initial HIV diagnosis and then

yearly. Once three consecutive Pap test findings are normal, screening may be spaced to every 3 years. Co-testing is not recommended. For those aged >30 years, similar Pap testing is applied. Co-testing is suitable for this group, and if negative, the next test can repeated in 3 years.

Human Papillomavirus. This virus infects cervical epithelia. The infection usually clears, but in some, the virus may promote benign, premalignant, or cancerous neoplastic growth. The prevalence of HPV infection in pregnant women approximates 15 percent (Hong, 2013; Liu, 2014). Of the many HPV serotypes, several are associated with high-grade squamous intraepithelial (HSIL) lesions and invasive cancer. Serotypes 16 and 18 are preeminent. HPV testing targets only high-risk types associated with cervical neoplasia, and identification of types 16 or 18 prompts colposcopic evaluation. There is no indication for low-risk HPV testing.

Serotypes HPV 6 and 11 are linked with benign maternal genital warts. Congenital HPV infection resulting from vertical transmission, which is mother to fetus/newborn passage, beyond transient skin colonization is rare. Still, conjunctival, laryngeal, vulvar, or perianal warts present at birth in the neonate or that develop within 1 to 3 years of birth are most likely due to perinatal exposure to these maternal HPV serotypes (Chap. 68, p. 1216). Importantly, cesarean delivery does not lower the risk of neonatal laryngeal papillomatosis.

The clear link between HPV infection and cervical neoplasia led to development of approved vaccines that reduce cervical cancer risk (Lei, 2020). Only one vaccine is currently available in the United States. Gardasil 9 is a nonavalent HPV vaccine (9vHPV) against HPV types 6, 11, 16, 18, 31, 35, 45, 52, and 58. This vaccine is not administered during pregnancy and is compatible with breastfeeding (Chap. 10, p. 189).

Abnormal Cytology and Histology. The incidence of abnormal cervical cancer screening test results and their management is similar for gravidas and nonpregnant women. Current 2019 management consensus guidelines from the American Society of Colposcopy and Cervical Pathology focus on the individual's risk for CIN 3 or cervical cancer, rather than on specific screening results (Perkins, 2020).

Management has become complex and derives from large database analyses. Factors include the abnormal cytology and HPV results, age, and previous screening results. As a result, algorithms now calculate the best clinical approach to abnormal screening test results (www.asccp.org/management-guidelines). In overview, certain cytological abnormalities and HPV test results warrant colposcopy, and the main goal during pregnancy is to exclude invasive cancer. Thus, lesions suspicious for high-grade disease or cancer are biopsied. Endocervical sampling, endometrial biopsy, and treatment of preinvasive lesions are unacceptable during pregnancy.

Women with histologically confirmed CIN from biopsy during pregnancy are allowed to deliver vaginally. Further evaluation is planned at least 4 weeks postpartum. Alternatively, for clinical findings with higher cancer risk, repeat colposcopy and cytology/HPV testing are performed at intervals no more frequently than 12 weeks. Biopsy is repeated only if a lesion appears worse or invasive cancer is suspected (Perkins, 2020).

Postpartum reassessment may reveal lesions missed previously due to either cervical changes of pregnancy or advancing lesion severity. Instead, CIN regression is common during pregnancy or puerperium. In one study of 1079 pregnant women with cervical dysplasia in which biopsy correlated with colposcopic findings, 61 percent of lesions reverted to normal postpartum (Fader, 2010). In another study, lesions regressed postpartum in 70 percent of women with CIN 2 or 3. However, 7 percent of CIN 2 lesions progressed to CIN 3, but no lesion advanced to invasive cancer (Yost, 1999). In another study of 77 women with carcinoma in situ (CIS) diagnosed antepartum, a third had postpartum regression of their lesion, two thirds had persistent CIS, and only two women had microinvasive cancer on cone biopsy after delivery (Ackermann, 2006).

Adenocarcinoma in situ (AIS) is managed in a manner similar to CIN 3 (Dunton, 2008). Thus, unless invasive cancer is identified, treatment of AIS is not recommended until 6 weeks postpartum. Referral to a gynecologist with advanced colposcopic skills is recommended (Perkins, 2020).

Cervical Conization. If invasive epithelial lesions are suspected, conization is indicated and may be done with loop electrosurgical excisional procedure (LEEP) or by cold-knife conization. However, the epithelium and underlying stroma within the endocervical canal cannot be extensively excised without the risk of membrane rupture. Logically, residual disease is common. Of 376 cone biopsies during pregnancy, residual neoplasia was later found in 43 percent of subsequent specimens (Hacker, 1982). In another series, nearly 10 percent of 180 pregnant women required transfusion after conization (Averette, 1970). Thus, if possible, conization is avoided in pregnancy because of its higher risks for abortion, membrane rupture, hemorrhage, and preterm delivery.

Women with CIN treated *before* pregnancy may also encounter pregnancy complications. First, distal cervical stenosis is uncommon but may follow conization, LEEP, or laser surgery. Cervical stenosis almost always yields during labor. A so-called *conglutinated cervix* may undergo almost complete intrapartum effacement without dilation. Spontaneous dilation usually promptly follows firm pressure with a fingertip, although instrumented dilation or cruciate incisions may be required.

Second, preconceptional cold-knife conization is associated with cervical insufficiency and preterm birth. However, the relationship between preterm birth and LEEP continues to be debated (Castanon, 2012; Conner, 2014; Stout, 2015). The size of tissue excised seems to be directly related to adverse outcomes (Weinmann, 2017).

Invasive Cervical Cancer

This cancer is found in approximately 1 in 1200 to 10,000 pregnancies (Bigelow, 2017; McCormick, 2018). The diagnosis is confirmed with biopsies taken during colposcopy, with conization, or from a grossly abnormal lesion. Of the histological types, squamous cell carcinomas account for 75 percent, whereas adenocarcinomas compose the remainder (Schorge, 2017). Cancers may appear as exophytic or endophytic growth; as a polyp, papillary tissue, or barrel-shaped cervix; or as focal

ulceration or necrosis. A watery, purulent, foul, or bloody discharge may be present. The sensitivity of a single Pap test is poor. Thus, biopsy with Tischler forceps is warranted for suspicious lesions. Abnormal tumor vessels may cause heavier than expected biopsy-site bleeding, which is usually controlled by Monsel paste and pressure.

Historically, cervical cancer was solely staged clinically. The current staging system now incorporates radiological and surgical evaluation (Bhatla, 2019). Lymph node metastasis is now also included in staging**.** Allowable components of clinical staging are cold-knife conization, pelvic examination under anesthesia, cystoscopy, intravenous pyelogram (or this portion of MR imaging can be used), proctoscopy, and chest radiography. Notably, physiological pregnancy changes may limit physical assessment of cancer extent, which is more likely to be underestimated in gravidas. Specifically, induration of the broad ligament base, which characterizes tumor spread beyond the cervix, may be less prominent due to cervical, paracervical, and parametrial pregnancy-induced softening. MR imaging can be used without gadolinium contrast to ascertain involvement of the urinary tract, parametrium, and lymph nodes (Beharee, 2019).

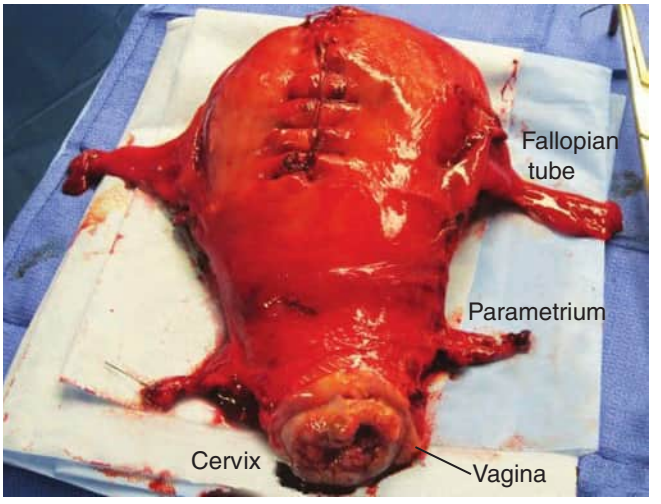


FIGURE 66-2 Radical hysterectomy specimen with invasive cervical squamous cell carcinoma. With radical hysterectomy, the parametrium and 2 to 3 cm of vagina are excised to help achieve a tumor-free resection. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Debra L. Richardson.)

Management and Prognosis. Cervical cancer treatment in pregnant women is individualized, and factors include the clinical stage, fetal age, and individual desire to continue pregnancy. Stage IA1 is termed *microinvasive disease* and describes lesions with deepest invasion <3 mm (Bhatla, 2019). If diagnosed by cone biopsy, treatment follows guidelines similar to those for intraepithelial disease. In general, continuation of pregnancy and vaginal delivery are considered safe, and definitive therapy is reserved until 6 weeks postpartum.

In contrast, cancer with greater invasion demands relatively prompt therapy. During the first half of pregnancy, immediate treatment is advised by most, but the decision whether to continue pregnancy is a factor. During the latter half of pregnancy, the risk of early delivery versus delayed treatment are weighed (McCormick, 2018). In two studies with a total of 40 women past 20 weeks' gestation with either stage I or stage IIA carcinoma, delayed treatment was considered reasonable in women without bulky lesions (Takushi, 2002; van Vliet, 1998). Another option is to complete staging using laparoscopic lymphadenectomy and to delay treatment if metastases are excluded (Alouini, 2008; Favero, 2010). In a metaanalysis, preoperative neoadjuvant chemotherapy with platinum derivatives was found to be promising for treatment in pregnancy (Zagouri, 2013a).

Although surgical therapy and radiation are equally effective, radical hysterectomy plus pelvic lymphadenectomy is the preferred treatment for invasive cervical cancer in most young women with stage I and early stage IIA lesions. Disadvantageously, radiotherapy for cervical cancer destroys ovarian and possibly sexual function and frequently causes intestinal and urinary tract injury. In 49 women with pregnancy-associated stage IB cancer, a 30-percent severe complication rate accompanied radiotherapy compared with that of only 7 percent with radical surgery (Nisker, 1983). With surgery before 20 weeks' gestation, radical hysterectomy is usually performed with the fetus in situ. In later pregnancy, however, hysterotomy and delivery is often performed first (Fig. 66-2).

Although rarely selected during pregnancy, Ungár and colleagues (2006) performed abdominal radical trachelectomy before 20 weeks' gestation for stage IB1 cancer in five pregnant women. One cases series describes four women with stage IA1 adenocarcinoma at 16 to 23 weeks' gestation treated with laser conization, and all delivered at term (Yahata, 2008).

For more advanced-stage cancer, radiotherapy is given. External beam radiation in early in pregnancy typically leads to spontaneous abortion. If miscarriage does not ensue, curettage is performed. During the second trimester, spontaneous abortion may not promptly occur and may necessitate hysterotomy in up to a fourth of cases. This is selected because labor induction or dilation and evacuation may pose serious hemorrhage risks from the cancer.

Pregnancy does not negatively affect cervical cancer prognosis, and survival outcomes are similar for pregnant and nonpregnant women (Amant, 2014; Mogos, 2013). For both of these groups, the overall 5-year survival rate approximated 80 percent in a case-control study of 44 women with pregnancy-associated cervical cancer (van der Vange, 1995).

Delivery

Adverse prognostic effects from vaginal delivery through a cancerous cervix are unknown. For this reason, the mode of delivery is controversial, especially for small, early-stage lesions. In some cases of bulky or friable tumors, hemorrhage from the cancer may complicate vaginal delivery. Also, recurrences in the episiotomy scar have been reported (Goldman, 2003). Thus, most favor cesarean delivery.

Pregnancy after Radical Trachelectomy

Radical trachelectomy for stage IB1 and IB2 cervical cancer before conception is one fertility-sparing option. During the typically vaginal procedure, the cervix is amputated at the level of the internal os, and a permanent-suture cerclage is placed around the isthmus to support future pregnancies. The uterine

isthmus is then reconstructed to the vagina. Following this, women continue to menstruate, and conception can occur naturally. Because of the permanent cerclage, a classical cesarean incision is required for delivery. Evidence suggests that cervical length <13 mm at 20 weeks' gestation is associated with preterm birth <34 weeks (Kasuga, 2017). In a systematic review of 2566 women after radical trachelectomy for early-stage cancer, the 5-year overall maternal survival rate was 97 percent (Smith, 2020). The pregnancy rate was 24 percent, and the live-birth rate was 75 percent.

Uterus

Leiomyomas

Also known as myomas and somewhat erroneously called *fibroids*, uterine leiomyomas are common benign smooth-muscle tumors. Their incidence during pregnancy approximates 2 percent, but the cited range depends on the frequency of routine sonography and population characteristics (Qidwai, 2006; Stout, 2010). In one study of 4271 women, the first-trimester myoma prevalence was highest in black women—18 percent—and lowest in whites—8 percent (Laughlin, 2009).

Leiomyomas vary in location and may develop as submucosal, subserosal, or intramural growths. Less often, these develop in the cervix or broad ligament. Rare parasitic types obtain their blood supply from adjacent structures such as the omentum. In another rare manifestation—*leiomyomatosis peritonealis disseminata*—numerous, small, benign subperitoneal smooth-muscle tumors mimic carcinomatosis but often regress after pregnancy.

In general, progesterone is considered the critical mitogen for uterine leiomyoma growth. In turn, estrogen functions to upregulate and maintain progesterone receptors (Ishikawa, 2010). In pregnancy, progesterone's effect on myoma growth is unpredictable, and tumor size may grow, regress, or remain unchanged (Laughlin, 2009; Neiger, 2006).

Especially during pregnancy, these masses can be confused with other pelvic masses, and sonographic imaging is indispensable (Fig. 66-3). Once diagnosed, myomas do not require sonographic surveillance unless associated complications are anticipated. With unclear sonographic findings, MR imaging may be necessary and ideally performed after the first trimester.

Symptoms. Most leiomyomas are asymptomatic, but acute or chronic pain or pressure may develop, especially with large masses (Doğan, 2016). For chronic pain, nonnarcotic analgesic drugs usually suffice. More acutely, some myomas can outgrow their blood supply and hemorrhagic infarction follows, which is termed *red* or *carneous degeneration*. Clinically, acute focal abdominal pain and tenderness are preeminent and often accompanied by leukocytosis or low-grade fever. Thus, tumor degeneration may be difficult to differentiate from other sources of acute abdominal pain. Sonography aids diagnosis, but close observation is requisite because an infarcted myoma is essentially a diagnosis of exclusion. Uncommonly, preterm labor is stimulated by associated inflammation.

Symptoms from a degenerated myoma usually abate within a few days. In severe cases, observation may be needed to exclude a septic cause. Although surgery is rarely needed during pregnancy, myomectomy in highly selected cases has yielded good outcomes. Of 23 reported cases, women were 14 to 20 weeks' gestation, and in almost half, surgery was performed because of pain (Celik, 2002; De Carolis, 2001). Except for one loss immediately following surgery at 19 weeks, most underwent cesarean delivery at term. Occasionally, a pedunculated subserosal myoma will undergo torsion with subsequent painful necrosis. Laparoscopy or laparotomy can be used to ligate the stalk and resect the necrotic tumor. That said, we believe that surgery should be limited to tumors with a discrete pedicle that can be easily clamped and ligated.

Pregnancy Complications. Myomas have been associated with several complications that include preterm labor, placental

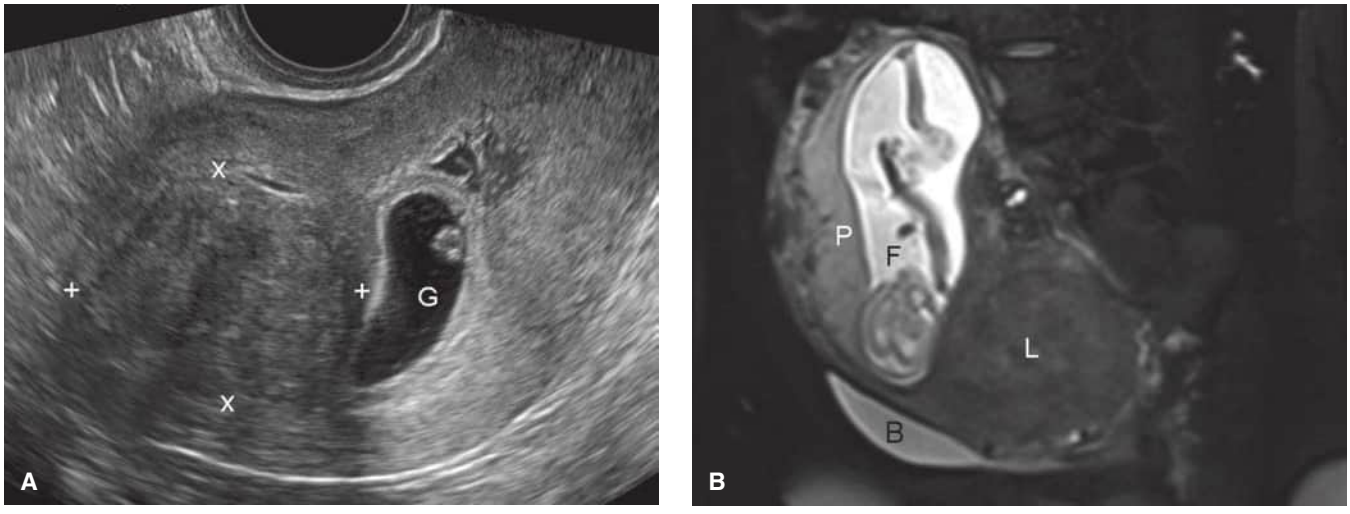


FIGURE 66-3 Leiomyoma imaging. **A.** In this sagittal view from transvaginal sonography, a large uterine leiomyoma (*calipers*) displays heterogeneous echoes and occupies the fundus. This mass lies adjacent to an early first-trimester gestational sac (*G*) that shows a yolk sac. **B.** MR imaging at 16 weeks' gestation shows a large leiomyoma (*L*) in the posterior uterine segment and cervix, which fills the pelvis. Associated ureteral compression and hydronephrosis required placement of a percutaneous nephrostomy tube. At term, planned cesarean delivery was done due to obstruction of the birth canal. B = bladder; F = fetus; P = placenta.

abruption, fetal malpresentation, obstructed labor, cesarean delivery, and postpartum hemorrhage. In a review of pregnancy outcomes in 2065 women with myomas compared with unaffected gravidas, placental abruption and breech presentation were each increased fourfold; first-trimester bleeding and dysfunctional labor, twofold; and cesarean delivery, sixfold (Coronado, 2000). In a report of 301 women with myomas, the preterm birth risk was 2.5-fold higher than in unaffected women (Girault, 2018). Another study reported an eightfold increased second-trimester abortion risk in affected women (Salvador, 2002).

Factors most important in determining morbidity in pregnancy are myoma number, size, and location (Ciavattini, 2015; Jenabi, 2018; Lam, 2014). If the placenta is adjacent to or implanted over a leiomyoma, the risks for abortion, preterm labor, placental abruption, and postpartum hemorrhage are all increased. Retroplacental myomas are also associated with fetal-growth restriction (Knight, 2016). Myoma-related bleeding may stem from miscarriage, preterm labor, placenta previa, and placental abruption. Rarely, bleeding results from a submucous myoma that has prolapsed from the uterus and into the cervix or vagina. In this case, although heavy or persistent bleeding may require earlier intervention, the stalk, if accessible, can be ligated vaginally near term to avoid avulsion during delivery.

Tumors in the cervix or lower uterine segment may obstruct labor (Fig. 66-4). Despite these complications, Qidwai and associates (2006) reported a 70-percent vaginal delivery rate even in women in whom myomas measured ≥10 cm. These data argue against empirical cesarean delivery, and we allow a trial of labor unless myomas clearly obstruct the birth canal. If cesarean delivery is indicated, uterine malrotation, which can be caused by a bulky lateral myoma, should be excluded by palpation of the fundus prior to hysterotomy (Chap. 3, p. 46). Myomas are generally left alone. Specifically, because of enucleation-associated hemorrhage, myomectomy during cesarean delivery is discouraged. Exceptions include recalcitrant intraoperative bleeding or a myoma that prohibits hysterotomy closure. With cesarean delivery in one study, mean hemoglobin levels dropped in those with myomas, but the transfusion rate was not increased (Pergialiotis, 2017). Importantly, cesarean hysterectomy may be technically difficult because of lateral ureteral displacement by the masses.

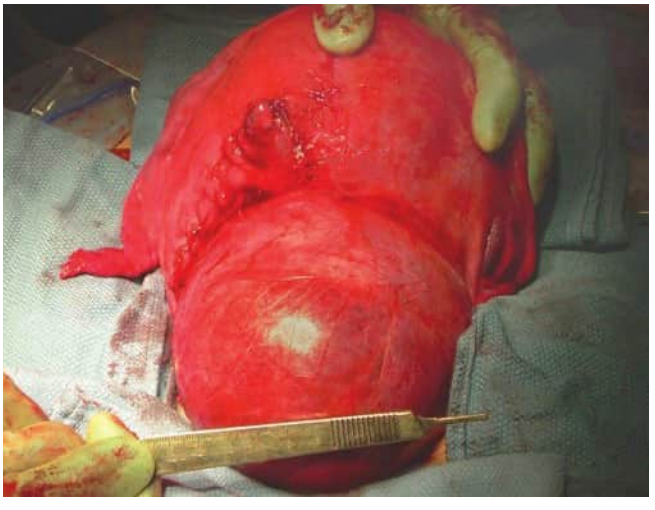


FIGURE 66-4 Cesarean delivery performed because of a large leiomyoma in the lower uterine segment. A classical vertical uterine incision, seen to the left of the myoma, was required for delivery of the fetus.

Fortunately, myomas rarely become infected (Genta, 2001). When infection develops, it usually is postpartum, especially if the tumor is located immediately adjacent to the implantation site (Lin, 2002). They also may become infected with an associated septic abortion or with myoma perforation by a sound, dilator, or curette.

Fertility Considerations. Despite their relatively high prevalence in young women, their negative effect on fertility is unclear. Moreover, evidence from one systematic review was inconclusive to support myomectomy for intramural or subserosal myomas to improve fertility (Metwally, 2020). As an exception, the American Society for Reproductive Medicine (2017) describes fair evidence for hysteroscopic myomectomy of submucous myomas to improve clinical pregnancy rates. In a systematic review of nearly 1400 pregnancies, myomas were not associated with a higher miscarriage rate (Sundermann, 2017).

Instead of an infertility indication, some women may elect myomectomy to treat bleeding or pressure symptoms yet still desire fertility preservation. Importantly, after myomectomy, the gravid uterus can rupture either before or during labor (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2021a). Management is individualized, and review of the prior operative report is prudent. If resection resulted in a defect into or immediately adjacent to the endometrial cavity, cesarean delivery is usually done before labor. Timing of cesarean delivery is individualized, and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021b) cites between $37^{0/7}$ and $38^{6/7}$ weeks' gestation.

Uterine artery embolization of myomas is another option for women seeking symptom relief yet desiring fertility preservation (Ludwig, 2020). Women so treated have higher rates of miscarriage, cesarean delivery, and postpartum hemorrhage. The Society of Interventional Radiology considers myoma embolization relatively contraindicated in women who plan future pregnancies (Dariushnia, 2014). Even so, myoma embolization does not harm ovarian reserve (Shamy, 2020).

Endometrial Lesions

With *endometriosis*, studies have recently focused on a link with adverse obstetrical outcomes (Stephansson, 2009; Zullo, 2017). However, data are complicated by heterogeneity regarding disease stage and location, use of ART, and analysis methodologies (Leone Roberti Maggiore, 2016). Despite this, an association with placenta previa is the most consistent.

Occasionally, an *endometrioma* can develop after delivery from endometrial tissue implanted within laparotomy or episiotomy scars. Pfannenstiel incisions carry greater susceptibility than vertical ones (Ecker, 2014). These form a palpable mass and can cause cyclical localized pain. Endometriomas within an ovary are discussed in the next section.

Adenomyosis is traditionally found in late reproductive life and beyond. Its acquisition may be at least partially related to

disruption of the endometrial-myometrial border during sharp curettage for abortion (Curtis, 2002). In one systematic review, miscarriage, poor fetal growth, preeclampsia, placenta previa, and preterm delivery were associated risks (Nirgianakis, 2021).

Endometrial carcinoma is an estrogen-dependent neoplasia also usually found in women aged >40 years and thus seen only rarely with pregnancy (Korenaga, 2020). Of 27 cases that were identified during pregnancy or within the first 4 months postpartum, most were found in first-trimester curettage specimens (Hannuna, 2009). These are usually early-stage, well-differentiated adenocarcinomas for which treatment consists primarily of total abdominal hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy.

For nonpregnant women, surgical management of early endometrial cancer is also the standard. However, to preserve fertility potential in a well-counseled woman with early-stage, well-differentiated, endometrioid endometrial cancer, treatment with oral or intrauterine progestin therapy can be used to prompt tumor regression (Hamilton, 2021). Notably, live birth rates are low, and a large percentage requires ART for conception (Harrison, 2019). Moreover, recurrences and deaths have been reported (Erkanli, 2010).

Ovary

Ovarian masses found during pregnancy are common. Incidences vary depending on the frequency of prenatal sonography, the ovarian size threshold, and study site designation as tertiary or primary care. Thus, the incidence of ovarian masses not surprisingly ranges from 1 in 100 to 2000 pregnancies (Bacalbaşa, 2020; Korenaga, 2020). Of ovarian malignancies, the incidence in the California Cancer Registry was 1 case in 19,000 pregnancies (Smith, 2003).

The most frequent types of ovarian masses are corpus luteum cysts, endometriomas, benign cystadenomas, and mature cystic teratomas (dermoid cysts). In one series of 53 endometriomas diagnosed in the first trimester, a fourth each remained stable or increased in size, and a third shrank (Bailleux, 2017).

Mature cystic teratomas enlarge infrequently during pregnancy. Rarely, a teratoma may express N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptors within the tumor's neural-tissue component. Antibodies form against these receptors within the tumor and then attack similar-looking receptors in the brain. In one case, a pregnant woman developed encephalitis from these antibodies (Mizutamari, 2016).

Because pregnant women are usually young, malignant tumors and those of low malignant potential are proportionately uncommon. One study found that 1 percent of 9375 ovarian masses were frankly malignant and that another 1 percent were of low malignant potential (Leiserowitz, 2006). In surgically excised masses, rates of malignancy are higher, vary from 4 to 13 percent, and probably reflect a greater preoperative concern for cancer (Sherard, 2003).

Diagnosis

Most ovarian masses are asymptomatic. Some cause pressure or chronic pain, and acute abdominal pain may be due to torsion, rupture, or hemorrhage. Rarely, blood loss is sufficient to cause hypovolemia.

Ovarian masses are usually detected during routine prenatal sonography or during imaging for other indications, including symptom evaluation. For complicated anatomy, MR imaging can be used without contrast.

Cancer antigen 125 (CA125) is a tumor marker, and levels are frequently elevated with ovarian malignancy. Importantly, in early pregnancy and early puerperium, CA125 levels are normally elevated, possibly from the decidua. From the second trimester until term, levels are not normally higher than those in the nonpregnant woman (Appendix, p. 1229) (Korenaga, 2020; Szecsi, 2014). With severe preeclampsia, however, concentrations are abnormally elevated (Karaman, 2014). Other tumor markers that have been used for diagnosis or posttreatment surveillance in pregnancy include human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), alpha-fetoprotein (AFP), inhibins A and B, carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), and the multimarker OVA1 test (Liu, 2011).

Complications

Torsion and hemorrhage are significant complications of adnexal masses. Torsion usually causes acute constant or episodic lower abdominal pain and tenderness that is accompanied frequently by nausea and vomiting. Transvaginal sonography (TVS) often aids diagnosis, and an adnexal mass is typically comorbid. With color Doppler, absent flow strongly correlates with torsion. However, minimal or early twisting may compromise only venous flow, thus leaving the arterial supply intact. Other sonographic signs are ovarian stromal edema; follicle displacement to the ovarian periphery; free cul-de-sac fluid; the whirlpool sign, which displays twisted vessels of the involved pedicle; and the follicular ring sign (Moro, 2020; Yatsenko, 2021). This last sign is a 1- to 2-mm echogenic rim around antral follicles and may reflect edema and engorged capillaries.

If torsion is suspected, laparoscopy or laparotomy is warranted. Contrary to prior teaching, most now recommend untwisting to save the ovary (Fig. 66-5). Concerns for thrombus release and pulmonary embolism have been allayed (McGovern, 1999). A grossly necrotic adnexum is removed. With a salvageable

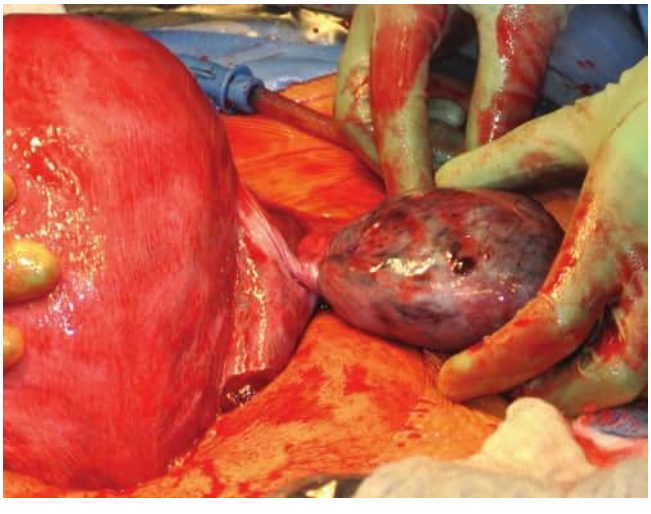


FIGURE 66-5 Ovarian torsion at term. The patient underwent cesarean delivery, and the left uteroovarian pedicle was untwisted. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. C. Edward Wells.)

ovary, within minutes of untwisting, congestion is relieved but the blue-black color typically persists.

If the adnexum is deemed viable, there are options. First, an associated neoplasm is resected. However, ovarian cystectomy in an edematous ovary may be technically difficult, and adnexectomy may be necessary. Less often, cystectomy may be delayed for low-risk lesions to allow easier enucleation following edema resolution (Adeyemi-Fowode, 2019). Second, oophoropexy, especially for a second case of torsion, can minimize recurrence risk (Djavadian, 2004). Techniques described include shortening of the uteroovarian ligament with a running stitch or fixing the uteroovarian ligament to the posterior uterus, the lateral pelvic wall, or the round ligament (Fuchs, 2010).

The most common cause of ovarian hemorrhage follows rupture of a corpus luteum cyst. Symptoms mirror those of hemoperitoneum, and diffuse lower abdominal pain is usual. TVS shows blood in the cul-de-sac and a collapsed ovarian cyst remnant (Fig. 12-5, p. 224). If the diagnosis is certain and symptoms abate, observation and surveillance is usually sufficient. Concern for ongoing bleeding will typically prompt surgical evaluation. If the corpus luteum is removed before 10 weeks' gestation, progestational support is recommended to maintain the pregnancy. Suitable regimens include: (1) micronized progesterone (*Prometrium*), 200 or 300 mg orally once daily; (2) 8-percent progesterone vaginal gel (*Crinone*), one premeasured applicator vaginally daily, plus micronized progesterone, 100 or 200 mg orally once daily; or (3) intramuscular 17-hydroxyprogesterone caproate, 150 mg. The first two regimens are given until 10 completed weeks. For the last, if given between 8 and 10 weeks' gestation, only one injection is required immediately after surgery. If the corpus luteum is excised between 6 and 8 weeks' gestation, two additional doses should be given 1 and 2 weeks after the first.

Asymptomatic Adnexal Mass During Pregnancy

Most of these are incidentally found, and decisions include necessity and timing of resection. A cystic benign-appearing mass measuring <5 cm often requires no additional antepartum surveillance. Early in pregnancy, this is likely a corpus luteum cyst, which typically resolves by the early second trimester. For cysts ≥10 cm, the risk of malignancy, torsion, or labor obstruction is substantial, and surgical removal is reasonable.

Tumors between 5 and 10 cm are carefully evaluated by TVS coupled with color Doppler and possibly MR imaging. Simple-appearing cysts can be managed expectantly with sonographic surveillance (Fig. 66-6) (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2016; Schmeler, 2005). Resection is done if cysts grow, display malignant qualities, or become symptomatic. Those with classic findings of endometrioma or mature cystic teratoma may be resected postpartum or during cesarean delivery for obstetrical indications.

On the other hand, if sonographic findings suggest cancer, prompt resection is indicated (Caspi, 2000). Nodules, papillary excrescences, solid components, or thick, vascular septa within the mass or ascites are suggestive findings (Andreotti, 2020). In one review of 563 masses in pregnancy, approximately half were simple, and the other half complex (Webb, 2015). Among simple masses, 1 percent were malignant, and of complex masses, 9 percent were cancerous.

Approximately 1 in 1000 pregnant women undergoes surgical exploration for an adnexal mass (Boulay, 1998). In general, we plan resection at 14 to 20 weeks' gestation because most masses that will regress will have done so by this time. Laparoscopic removal is ideal (Chap. 49, p. 867) (Naqvi, 2015; Sisodia, 2015). Importantly, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2016) recommends consultation with a gynecological oncologist for elements implicating cancer that include a very elevated CA125 level, a nodular or fixed pelvic mass, ascites, evidence of metastasis, or ultrasound findings suggesting malignancy.

Pregnancy-Related Ovarian Tumors

One group of ovarian masses results directly from the stimulating effects of various pregnancy hormones on ovarian stroma. These include pregnancy luteoma, hyperreactio luteinalis, and ovarian hyperstimulation syndrome.

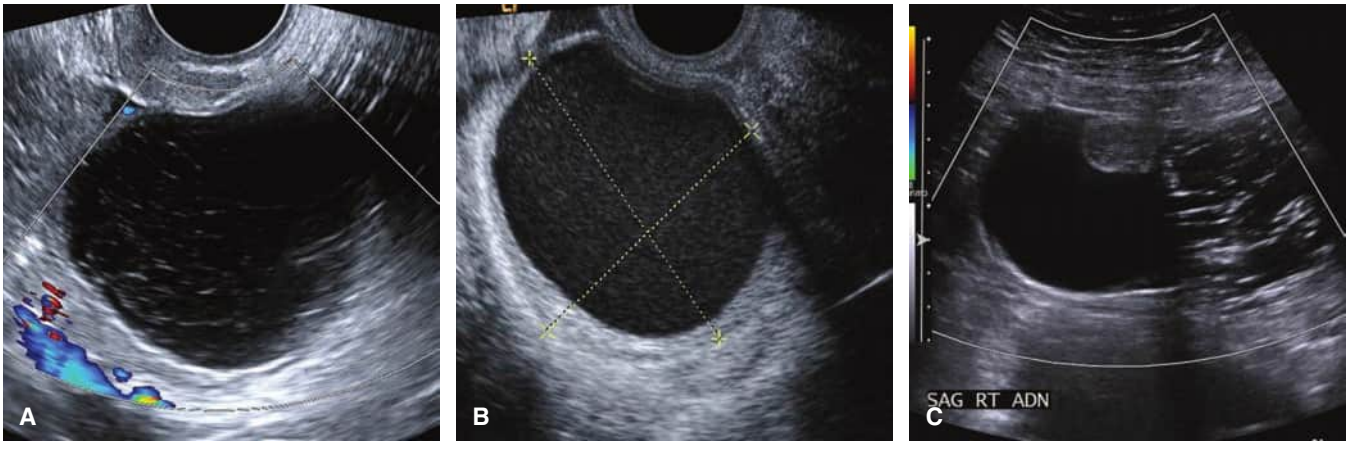


FIGURE 66-6 Sonographic characteristics of common adnexal masses in pregnancy. **A.** A simple hemorrhagic cyst with smooth walls and an internal reticular pattern is characteristic of a physiological corpus luteum cyst. **B.** Homogeneous cystic mass with diffuse internal low-level echoes suggestive of an endometrioma or hemorrhagic corpus luteum. **C.** Mature cystic teratoma (dermoid cyst) appears as a complex adnexal cyst. On the right side, hyperechoic lines and dots represent hair in both longitudinal and transverse planes. At the central superior aspect of this cyst, a mural nodule—the Rokitansky protuberance—is seen. A fat (*right side*)-fluid (*left side*) level is another common finding with these tumors.

Pregnancy Luteoma. This is a rare, benign ovarian neoplasm that arises from luteinized stromal cells and classically raises testosterone levels (Hakim, 2016; Irving, 2011). Up to 25 percent of affected women will be virilized, and of these affected women, nearly half of their female fetuses will have some degree of virilization. However, most mothers and their fetuses may be unaffected because the placenta rapidly converts testosterone to estrogen (Kaňová, 2011).

In typical cases, an adnexal mass along with maternal virilization will prompt sonography and measurement of testosterone and CA125 levels. Luteomas are variably sized, appear solid, may be multiple or bilateral, and may be complex because of internal hemorrhage (Choi, 2000). Concerns for malignancy may be further investigated with MR imaging (Kao, 2005; Tannus, 2009).

Total testosterone levels are increased, but notably, levels in normal pregnancy can be substantially elevated (Appendix, p. 1231). Differential diagnoses include granulosa cell tumors, thecomas, Sertoli-Leydig cell tumors, Leydig cell tumors, stromal hyperthecosis, and hyperreactio luteinalis.

Generally, luteomas do not require surgical intervention unless torsion, rupture, or hemorrhage complicate these (Masarie, 2010). Tumors spontaneously regress during the first few months postpartum, and androgen levels drop precipitously following delivery (Wang, 2005). Lactation may be delayed a week by hyperandrogenemia (Dahl, 2008). Recurrence in subsequent pregnancies is rare.

Hyperreactio Luteinalis. In this condition, one or both ovaries develop multiple, large theca-lutein cysts, typically after the first trimester. Cysts are caused by luteinization of the follicular theca interna layer, and most are stimulated by exceptionally high hCG levels (Russell, 2009). Thus, they are more common with gestational trophoblastic disease, twins, fetal hydrops, and other conditions with increased placental mass (Nassr, 2018). Maternal but not fetal virilization may develop (Malinowski, 2015). Serum testosterone levels are not predictive of maternal virilization (Condic, 2021).

Sonographically, these ovarian tumors have a "spoke wheel" pattern (Fig. 13-3, p. 238) (Baxi, 2014). If the diagnosis is confident, and unless complicated by torsion or hemorrhage, surgical intervention is not required. These masses resolve after delivery. Few data allow prediction of recurrence in a subsequent pregnancy, but in one case report, a woman had hyperreactio with three pregnancies (Bishop, 2016).

Ovarian Hyperstimulation Syndrome. This is typified by multiple ovarian follicular cysts accompanied by increased capillary permeability. It most often is a complication of ovulation-induction therapy for infertility, although it rarely may develop in an otherwise normal pregnancy. Its etiopathogenesis is thought to involve hCG stimulation of vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) expression in granulosa-lutein cells (Soares, 2008). This causes greater vascular permeability that can lead to ascites, pleural or pericardial effusion, hypovolemia with acute kidney injury, and hypercoagulability. Serious complications are renal dysfunction, adult respiratory distress syndrome, ovarian rupture with hemorrhage, and VTE. Unlike hyperreactio luteinalis, virilization is absent (Suzuki, 2004).

Management is outlined by the American Society for Reproductive Medicine (2016). Treatment is primarily supportive to maintain vascular volume and prevent VTE. In severe cases, paracentesis can be helpful.

Ovarian Cancer

Malignancies of the ovary are the leading cause of death from genital-tract cancers in all women (American Cancer Society, 2021). Still, the incidence of ovarian malignancy only ranges from 1 case in 20,000 to 50,000 births (Eibye, 2013; Smith, 2003). Of those found in pregnancy, 75 percent are early-stage cancers that carry a 5-year survival rate between 70 and 90 percent (Brewer, 2011). The types of malignancy are also markedly different in gravidas compared with those in older women. In pregnant women, these are, in decreasing order of frequency, germ cell and sex cord-stromal tumors, low-malignant-potential tumors, and epithelial cancers (Morice, 2012).

Pregnancy apparently does not alter the prognosis of most ovarian malignancies. Management is similar to that for nonpregnant women, with the usual proviso that it may be modified depending on gestational age. Thus, if frozen-section histopathological analysis verifies malignancy, surgical staging is done with careful inspection of all accessible peritoneal and visceral surfaces (Bacalbaşa, 2020). Peritoneal washings are taken for cytology, biopsies are obtained from the diaphragmatic surface and peritoneum, omentectomy is completed, and pelvic and infrarenal paraaortic lymph nodes are sampled, if accessible.

If disease is advanced, bilateral adnexectomy and omentectomy will decrease most tumor burden. In early pregnancy, hysterectomy and aggressive surgical debulking procedures may be elected. In other cases, minimal debulking described in the previous paragraph is done, and the operation is terminated. In some cases of aggressive or large-volume disease, chemotherapy can be given during pregnancy while awaiting pulmonary maturation. Monitoring maternal CA125 serum levels during chemotherapy is not accurate in pregnancy (Morice, 2012).

Preventively, increasing parity is one known factor (Fortner, 2019; Huang, 2020). A metaanalysis also found that prior miscarriage or abortion lowered risk (Lee, 2021). Of modifiable factors, combination oral contraceptives and breastfeeding lower ovarian cancer rates (Babic, 2020; Havrilesky, 2013; Iversen, 2018). Discussed in Chapter 39 (p. 682), rates of some ovarian cancers may decline following tubal interruption and perhaps salpingectomy.

■ Adnexal Cysts

Paratubal and paraovarian cysts either are distended remnants of the paramesonephric ducts or are mesothelial inclusion cysts. One autopsy series in nonpregnant women cited an incidence of 5 percent (Dorum, 2005). The most common paramesonephric cyst is the hydatid of Morgagni, which is pedunculated and typically dangles from one of the fimbria. Although these may undergo torsion, other complications are rare, and most are identified during cesarean delivery or puerperal sterilization. In these instances, they can simply be excised or drained by creating a large window in the cyst wall. Neoplastic paraovarian cysts are rare, sonographically and histologically resemble

tumors of ovarian origin, and rarely are of borderline potential or frankly malignant (Korbin, 1998).

Vulva and Vagina

Preinvasive disease in young women—vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia (VIN) and vaginal intraepithelial neoplasia (VAIN)—are seen more often than invasive disease and are commonly associated with HPV infection. As with cervical neoplasia, these premalignant conditions are treated after delivery.

Cancer of the vulva or vagina is generally a malignancy of older women, and thus, these are rarely associated with pregnancy (Amant, 2019; Korenaga, 2020). Even so, any suspicious lesion is biopsied. Most are squamous cell cancers, and treatment is individualized according to the clinical stage and depth of invasion. In a review of 23 cases, investigators concluded that radical surgery for stage I disease was feasible during pregnancy—including in the last trimester (Heller, 2000). It appears that vaginal delivery is not contraindicated if vulvar and inguinal incisions are well healed. In late pregnancy, resection and definitive therapy can often be delayed due to these tumors' typically slow progression (Anderson, 2001). Other vulvar cancer types and vaginal malignancies are rare in pregnancy and mainly the subjects of case reports (Korenaga, 2020; Matsuo, 2009).

BREAST CARCINOMA

Breast cancer incidence in women aged 25 to 40 years has been rising since the 1930s (American Cancer Society, 2021; Lima, 2020). It has an overall relatively high frequency in younger women and is the most frequent cancer complicating pregnancy (see Fig. 66-1) (Alfasi, 2019; de Hann, 2018). From the Nationwide Inpatient Sample, the incidence approximated 1 case in 15,000 births (Maor, 2017). Postponed childbearing was considered partially responsible for the increase in pregnancy-associated breast cancer in Sweden and Denmark (Andersson, 2015; Eibye, 2013). And, as more women choose to delay childbearing, the frequency of associated breast cancer is certain to rise. Genetic mutations underlie some breast cancer cases, and these are discussed in that section (p. 1174).

Diagnosis

More than 90 percent of gravidas with breast cancer have a palpable mass, and greater than 80 percent of cases are self-reported (Brewer, 2011). In pregnancy, clinical assessment, diagnostic procedures, and treatment of women with breast tumors are often slightly delayed (McCormick, 2018). This is partially attributed to pregnancy-induced growth of breast tissue that obscures masses.

Breast mass evaluation does not differ from that for nonpregnant women (Loibl, 2015; McCormick, 2018). Thus, any suspicious breast mass should be pursued to diagnosis. Pragmatically, a palpable discrete mass can be biopsied or excised. To distinguish between a solid and cystic lesion, sonography has high sensitivity and specificity (Navrozoglou, 2008). Mammography is appropriate if indicated, and the fetal radiation risk is negligible—0.04 mGy—with appropriate shielding (Krishna, 2013). But, because breast tissue is denser in pregnancy, mammography has a false-negative rate of 35 to 40 percent (Woo, 2003). If the decision to biopsy is uncertain, MR imaging may be used.

To better classify imaging findings for breast masses, the American College of Radiology (2013) developed the Breast Imaging-Reporting and Data System—BI-RADS. Suitable for sonography, mammographic, and MR imaging results, the intent is to communicate an individual woman's risk of developing breast cancer (Table 66-1).

Cystic breast lesions are simple, complicated, or complex. Simple cysts do not require special management or monitoring, but they may be aspirated if symptomatic. Complicated cysts

TABLE 66-1. American College of Radiology: Breast Imaging Reporting and Data Systems—BI-RADS[a]

BI-RADS Category	Interpretation	
0	Addition mammography views or sonography required	Focal asymmetry, microcalcifications, or a mass identified on a screening mammogram
1	No abnormalities identified	Normal fat and fibroglandular tissue
2	Not entirely normal, but definitely benign	Fat necrosis from a prior excision, stable biopsy-proven fibroadenoma, stable cyst
3	Probably benign <2% probability of malignancy	Circumscribed mass that has been followed for <2 years
4A	Low suspicion for malignancy (2–9%), but intervention required	Probable fibroadenoma, complicated cyst
4B	Moderate suspicion for malignancy (10–49%), intervention required	Partially indistinctly marginated mass otherwise consistent with a fibroadenoma
4C	High suspicion (50–94%), but not classical for carcinoma	New cluster of fine pleomorphic calcifications, ill-defined irregular solid mass
5	Almost certainly malignant (>95% probability)	Spiculated mass, fine linear and branching calcifications
6	Biopsy-proven carcinoma	Biopsy-proven carcinoma

[a]Mammography, sonography, or magnetic resonance imaging.

show internal echoes during sonography, and they sometimes are indistinguishable from solid masses. These are typically aspirated, and if the sonographic abnormality does not resolve completely, a core-needle biopsy is usually performed. Complex cysts have septa or intracystic masses seen sonographically. Because some breast cancer may form complex cysts, excision is usually recommended.

For solid breast masses, evaluation uses the *triple test*, that is, clinical examination, imaging, and core needle biopsy. If all three suggest a benign lesion or if all three suggest a breast cancer, the test is considered *concordant*. A concordant benign triple test is ≥99-percent accurate, and breast lumps in this category can be followed by clinical examination alone. Most masses in pregnancy have these three reassuring features. In contrast, if any of the three assessments suggests malignancy, the mass should be excised.

Management

With breast cancer, a limited search of the most common metastatic sites is completed. For most, this includes a chest radiograph, liver sonography, and skeletal MR imaging (Becker, 2016; Krishna, 2013). MR imaging can also evaluate the abdomen, pelvis, and brain.

Treatment of breast cancer includes an obstetrician, breast surgeon, and medical oncologist. Initially, desires for pregnancy continuation are addressed, and data indicate that pregnancy interruption does not influence the course or prognosis of breast cancer (Cardonick, 2010). With pregnancy continuation, treatment in general mirrors that for nonpregnant women. Important caveats are that chemotherapy and surgery are postponed to the second trimester, and adjuvant radiotherapy is withheld until after delivery (Brewer, 2011). Delay should be avoided as the risk of metastases increases with every few months by 5 to 10 percent (McCormick, 2018).

Surgical treatment may be definitive. In the absence of metastatic disease, either a wide excision or a modified or total mastectomy—each with axillary node staging—can be performed (Rosenkranz, 2006). Staging by sentinel lymph node biopsy and lymphoscintigraphy with technetium-99m is safe. Breast reconstruction, if desired, is typically delayed until after delivery (Viswanathan, 2011). That said, one small series showed good results in 10 pregnant women who underwent immediate reconstruction after mastectomy (Caragacianu, 2016).

Chemotherapy is usually given with both positive- and negative-node breast cancers. In premenopausal women, survival rates with this approach are improved, even if lymph nodes are cancer free. For node-positive disease, multiagent chemotherapy is begun if delivery is not anticipated within several weeks. Cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, and cisplatin are currently used (Euhus, 2016). If an anthracycline-based agent such as doxorubicin is used, pretherapy maternal echocardiography is performed because of associated cardiotoxicity (Brewer, 2011). Good maternal and perinatal results have been reported (Freret, 2020; McCormick, 2018).

Immunotherapy for breast cancers is now commonplace. Trastuzumab (*Herceptin*) is a monoclonal antibody to the HER2/neu receptor, which is found in approximately a third of invasive breast cancers (Hudis, 2007). The drug is not recommended in pregnancy. This is because HER2/neu is strongly expressed in fetal renal epithelium, and trastuzumab has been linked with miscarriage, fetal renal failure and related oligohydramnios, and preterm birth (Amant, 2010; Azim, 2010).

The effects of pregnancy on the course of breast cancer and its prognosis are complex. Breast cancer is more aggressive in younger women, but whether it is more aggressive during pregnancy in these same women is debatable (Azim, 2014). Clinically, most studies indicate little difference in overall survival rates with pregnancy-associated breast cancer compared with similarly aged and staged nonpregnant women (Beadle, 2009). Other reports note worse overall survival rates with pregnancy-associated breast cancer (Rodriguez, 2008). These investigators do conclude, however, that later disease stages are more prevalent in pregnant women.

Because breast cancer is usually found at a more advanced stage in pregnant women, the overall prognosis is diminished (Andersson, 2015). The aggregate of studies published after 1990 indicate that up to 60 percent of pregnant women have concomitant axillary node involvement at diagnosis. And although, stage for stage, the 5-year survival rate is comparable in pregnant and nonpregnant women, the more advanced stages that are typical of pregnant women worsen their prognosis (Kuo, 2019; Zemlickis, 1992).

Pregnancy Following Breast Cancer

After breast cancer treatment, chemotherapy will render some women infertile, but childbearing options were noted earlier (p. 1164). For those who become pregnant, long-term maternal survival rates are not adversely affected (Averette, 1999; Lambertini, 2019). One metaanalysis found that for women with early breast cancer, pregnancy that occurs 10 months after diagnosis may, in fact, confer a survival benefit (Valachis, 2010). Breastfeeding does not adversely alter the course.

In women successfully treated for breast cancer, recurrence is a concern. Because recurrences are more common soon after treatment, it seems reasonable to delay conception for 2 to 3 years. Hormonal contraceptive methods are contraindicated, and a copper-containing intrauterine device is an excellent method for many. That said, women with breast cancer who subsequently conceive do not appear to have diminished survival rates (Ives, 2006). Those who developed breast cancer within 10 years of delivery have and increased risk for metastases (Goddard, 2019). Importantly, tamoxifen, which may be used long-term following initial therapy, is a teratogen. Discontinuation 2 months prior to conception is recommended (Zydus Pharmaceuticals, 2020).

BRCA1/2 MUTATIONS

Hereditary breast and ovarian cancer (HBOC) syndrome yields a susceptibility to either one or both of these two cancers in individuals with recognized gene mutations (Table 66-2). *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* mutations are preeminent, but others are associated.

Preventively, cancer screening, chemoprevention, prophylactic surgery, and preimplantation testing are options. First,

TABLE 66-2. Some Genes Associated with Hereditary Cancers

Genes with established association with breast cancer										
BRCA1	*BRCA2*	*STK11*	*CDH1*	*PALB2*	*CHEK2*	*ATM*	*TP53*	*PTEN*	*NF1*	*NBN*
Genes with established association with epithelial ovarian cancer[a]										
BRCA1	*BRCA2*	*BR1P1*	*MSH2*	*MSH6*	*MLH1*	*RAD51C*	*RAD51D*			
Genes with established association with uterine cancer										
			MSH2	*MSH6*	*MLH1*	*PMS2*				

[a]*STK11* mutation is associated with ovarian sex-cord stromal tumors but not epithelial types.

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019d; Amin, 2020; Easton, 2015; Menon, 2018; Peters, 2017; Tamura, 2019.

ovarian cancer screening with TVS or serum CA125 levels is not routinely recommended (Daly, 2021). For breast cancer, surveillance in those aged 25 to 29 years is clinical breast examination (CBE) performed by a provider once or twice yearly plus annual breast MR imaging. For older individuals, yearly MR imaging and mammography are alternated every 6 months.

For women with *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* gene mutation, combination oral contraceptives (COC) are recognized chemoprevention for ovarian cancer (Chen, 2019). COC effects on breast cancer risk are conflicting, and studies show no risk or modest increased risk (Daly, 2021). For breast cancer chemoprevention, tamoxifen can lower cancer risk in those with *BRCA2* defects (King, 2001).

Prophylactic bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (BSO) is recommended after childbearing in those aged 35 to 40 years with *BRCA1* defects and aged 40 to 45 years in those with *BRCA2* mutations (Chen, 2019). BSO or mastectomy also decreases breast cancer risk in these women (Kotsopoulos, 2016; Li, 2016; Rebbeck, 2009).

BRCA1/2 genes are transmitted in an autosomal dominant fashion. In those planning pregnancy, affected women may elect *preimplantation genetic testing* of blastocysts (Chen, 2019). However, with an established pregnancy, *prenatal testing* poses ethical concerns regarding pregnancy termination for a mutation that may not lead to cancer. Currently, testing for conditions that do not accrue until adulthood are discouraged by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a,b).

Regarding parity, protective benefits for breast cancer in women with either *BRCA* defect show conflicting data (Kotsopoulos, 2018; Pan 2014; Rieder, 2015; Toss, 2017). For ovarian cancer, parity lowers rates for women with *BRCA1* but not *BRCA2* mutations (Kotsopoulos, 2015). Women with either *BRCA* mutation who undergo induced abortion do not have an elevated breast cancer risk (Friedman, 2006). Breastfeeding conveys a protective effect against breast cancer in those with *BRCA1* defects but not *BRCA2* mutations. It lowers ovarian cancer rates for those with either mutation (Kotsopoulos, 2012; 2020).

Among those with either *BRCA* mutation, a breast cancer diagnosis during pregnancy does not lower survival rates compared with similarly affected but not pregnant women (Valentini, 2013). After breast cancer treatment, women with either *BRCA* defect who pursue pregnancy do not experience increase pregnancy complication rates. Moreover, disease-free or overall survival rates are not worsened (Lambertini, 2020; Valentini, 2013).

THYROID CANCER

Palpable thyroid nodules are detected in 4 to 7 percent of the population, and management is found in Chapter 61 (p. 1098). Approximately 10 percent are malignant (Burman, 2015). In pregnancy, thyroid cancer incidence approximates 10 cases per 100,000 births (Spiegel, 2019; Sullivan, 2019). With this diagnosis, pregnancy termination is not necessary. Primary therapy is partial or subtotal thyroidectomy ideally done during the second trimester. Most lesions are well differentiated, and delayed treatment is acceptable (Angell, 2019). For aggressive tumors, however, prompt surgical treatment is recommended. Postoperatively, replacement thyroxine is given. A higher risk for VTE is reported for these women (Spiegel, 2019).

In some thyroid cancer types, radioiodine is used for primary or postoperative treatment. This is contraindicated in both pregnancy and lactation for several reasons. First, iodine-131 transferred transplacentally is avidly trapped by the fetal thyroid gland to cause hypothyroidism. Second, during lactation, the breast also concentrates a substantial amount of iodide. This may pose neonatal risk due to radioiodine-contaminated milk ingestion and raise maternal cancer risk from significant breast irradiation. To limit maternal exposure, a delay of 3 months between lactation and thyroid ablation will more reliably ensure complete breast involution (Sisson, 2011). In women with thyroid cancer who ultimately receive iodine-131 doses, pregnancy should be avoided for 6 months to 1 year. This time ensures thyroid function stability and permits confirmation of cancer remission (Abalovich, 2007).

LYMPHOMAS

Hodgkin Disease

This lymphoma is probably B-cell derived and is cytologically distinguished from other lymphomas by Reed–Sternberg cells.

TABLE 66-3. Lugano Classification Staging System for Hodgkin and Other Lymphomas

Stage	Findings
I	Involvement in a single lymph node region or lymphoid site—e.g., spleen or thymus
II	Involvement of two or more lymph node groups on the same side of the diaphragm or cancer extends from one node group to a nearby organ
III	Involvement of lymph nodes on both sides of the diaphragm 1. Limited to spleen or splenic hilar, celiac, or portal nodes 2. Includes paraaortic, iliac, or mesenteric nodes plus those in II
IV	Extralymphatic involvement—e.g., liver, bone marrow, or lungs

Substage A = no symptoms; substage B = fever, sweats, or weight loss; substage E = extralymphatic involvement excluding liver and bone marrow; X = bulky disease.

Of cancers in pregnancy, lymphomas are common, and gestational rates are rising because of delayed childbearing (see Fig. 66-1) (Horowitz, 2016). In one review from the Nationwide Inpatient Sample, the incidence of Hodgkin lymphoma approximates 1 case in 12,400 births (El-Messidi, 2015).

In more than 70 percent of these cases, lymph nodes painlessly enlarge at sites above the diaphragm, that is, in the axillary, cervical, or submandibular chains. Approximately one third of patients have fever, night sweats, malaise, weight loss, or pruritus. Diagnosis is by histological examination of involved nodes (McCormick, 2018).

The Lugano staging system is applied to Hodgkin and other lymphomas (Table 66-3). For staging, pregnancy limits the use of some radiographic studies, but at minimum, chest radiography, abdominal imaging with sonography or MR imaging, and bone marrow biopsy are completed (Shah, 2020). MR imaging is excellent for evaluating thoracic and abdominal paraaortic lymph nodes.

The current trend for nonpregnant individuals is to administer chemotherapy for all stages of Hodgkin disease. In pregnancy, for early-stage disease in the first trimester, options include pregnancy termination or observation until after 12 weeks' gestation and then multiagent chemotherapy (Eyre, 2015; McCormick, 2018). For most advanced-stage disease after the first trimester, cycles of doxorubicin, bleomycin, vinblastine, and dacarbazine are given. In general, postponement of therapy until fetal maturity is achieved seems justifiable only when the diagnosis is made late in pregnancy.

Women with Hodgkin lymphoma have a higher incidence of VTE (El-Messidi, 2015; Horowitz, 2016). Also, in our experiences, the gravidas—even after they are "cured"—are inordinately susceptible to infection and sepsis. Active antineoplastic therapy only raises this vulnerability.

The overall prognosis with Hodgkin lymphoma is similar to that for nonpregnant women, and 5-year survival rates exceed 90 percent (Maggen, 2019). Pregnancy does not adversely affect the cancer course of this lymphoma, and pregnancy outcomes are not generally adversely affected. For women with disease in remission, pregnancy does not stimulate relapse (Weibull, 2016).

Non-Hodgkin Lymphomas

Although usually B-cell tumors, non-Hodgkin lymphomas can also be T-cell or natural-killer-cell neoplasms. Their biology, classification, and treatment are complex. They are associated with viral infections, and their incidence has risen sharply at least partly because 5 to 10 percent of persons with HIV infection develop lymphoma. Other associated viruses include Epstein-Barr and hepatitis C viruses and human herpes virus 8. Some of these lymphomas are aggressive, and survival rates vary with the type of cell line involved.

Non-Hodgkin lymphomas are infrequent during pregnancy (Pinnix, 2016). They also are staged according to the Lugano system. If diagnosed in the first trimester, pregnancy termination followed by multiagent chemotherapy is recommended for all but indolent or very early disease. These less aggressive forms may be observed in the first trimester, and then full treatment given in the second. One regimen is rituximab plus the CHOP combination of cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin (hydroxydaunorubicin), vincristine [Oncovin], and prednisone. In a study of 80 pregnant women with this regimen, the 3-year survival rate was 73 to 96 percent (Maggen, 2021).

Burkitt lymphoma is an aggressive B-cell tumor associated with Epstein-Barr virus infection. Prognosis is poor, and treatment is multiagent chemotherapy. In an earlier review of 19 women whose pregnancies were complicated by this lymphoma, 17 died within a year of diagnosis (Barnes, 1998).

Leukemias

These malignancies generally arise either from lymphoid tissues—lymphoblastic or lymphocytic leukemias, or from bone marrow—myeloid leukemias. They can be acute or chronic. Adult leukemias are more prevalent after age 40 but still are among the most common malignancies of young women (see Fig. 66-1). In two large registries, the incidence was 1 case in 40,000 to 50,000 births (Nolan, 2020; Smith, 2003). In a review of 72 pregnancies complicated by leukemia from 1975 until 1988, 44 had acute myelogenous leukemia; 20 had acute lymphocytic leukemia; and eight had one of the chronic leukemias (Caligiuri, 1989). Nolan and colleagues (2020) cite similar proportions.

Acute leukemias almost always cause marked peripheral blood count abnormalities, and often the white blood cell count is elevated with readily recognizable circulating blast cells. The diagnosis is made from bone marrow biopsy.

With current multiagent chemotherapy, remission during pregnancy is common, and termination does not further improve the prognosis. In some cases, pregnancy termination before

viability may simplify management of an acutely ill woman. Abortion is a consideration in early pregnancy to avoid potential chemotherapy teratogens. One is all-*trans*-retinoic acid, also known as *tretinoin*, which causes retinoic acid syndrome (Chap. 8, p. 154) (Li, 2020; Santolaria, 2020). Tyrosine kinase inhibitors are another teratogenic group (p. 1163) (Palani, 2015).

Other than these caveats, treatment of gravidas with leukemia is similar to that for nonpregnant women. Acute myeloid leukemia is treated without delay (Ali, 2015). After induction chemotherapy, postremission maintenance therapy is mandatory to prevent a relapse, which is then usually treated with stem-cell transplantation. If allogeneic stem-cell transplantation is indicated, early delivery is considered. With some chronic leukemias, it may be possible to delay therapy until after delivery (Fey, 2008). As with lymphoma, infection and hemorrhage are significant complications that should be anticipated in women with active disease.

Most descriptions of leukemia treatment in pregnancy are single cases or small series (Routledge, 2018; Sanz, 2015). In one review of 58 cases, 75 percent were diagnosed after the first trimester (Reynoso, 1987). Half were acute myelogenous leukemia, which had a remission rate of 75 percent with chemotherapy. Only 40 percent of these pregnancies resulted in a live birth (Caligiuri, 1989). In a more recent report of 92 pregnant women with acute promyelocytic leukemia, 91 percent had a complete remission (Santolaria, 2020).

MALIGNANT MELANOMA

These most often originate from melanocytes in a preexisting nevus. Lesions most often develop in fair-skinned whites and commonly in childbearing-aged women. Pigmented lesions that change in contour or height or show discoloration, bleeding, or ulceration should prompt biopsy (Richtig, 2017).

In some population studies, melanoma is the most frequent malignancy complicating pregnancy (Andersson, 2015; Bannister-Tyrrell, 2015). The reported incidence ranges from <1 to 3 cases per 1000 births (Cottreau, 2019; Eibye, 2013). Many are treated outpatient and thus not entered into tumor registries.

Staging is clinical. Stage I is a melanoma with no palpable lymph nodes; in stage II, lymph nodes are palpable; and in stage III, distant metastases are identified. For patients with stage I, tumor thickness is the single most important predictor of survival. The Clark classification includes five levels of involvement by depth into the epidermis, dermis, and subcutaneous fat. The Breslow scale measures tumor thickness and size, in addition to invasion depth.

Primary surgical treatment for melanoma is determined by the stage and includes wide local resection, sometimes with extensive regional lymph node dissection. The American Academy of Dermatology recommends sentinel lymph node mapping and biopsy using technetium-99m–sulfur colloid, which has a calculated fetal dose of 0.014 mSv or 0.014 mGy (Swetter, 2019). Routine regional node dissection reportedly improves survival rates in nonpregnant patients with microscopic metastases. For gravidas, an algorithm is proposed that begins with resection of the primary tumor under local anesthesia but postpones sentinel lymph node biopsy until postpartum (Broer, 2012). Although prophylactic chemotherapy or immunotherapy is usually avoided during pregnancy, it may be given if indicated by tumor stage and maternal prognosis. In most cases of distant metastatic melanoma, treatment is at best palliative.

Stage-for-stage, survival is equivalent between pregnant and nonpregnant women (Driscoll, 2016; Johansson, 2014). In two studies, half of pregnant women presented with an advanced stage (de Haan, 2017; Sawyers, 2020). Placentas are submitted for histological evaluation to exclude metastasis (p. 1164). Therapeutic abortion does not improve maternal survival rates. Clinical stage is the strongest determinant of survival, and women with deep cutaneous invasion or regional node involvement have the worst prognosis. Approximately 60 percent of recurrences will manifest within 2 years, and 90 percent by 5 years. Thus, most recommend that pregnancy be avoided for 3 to 5 years after surgical resection. Interim contraception can include combination oral contraceptives, as they do not appear to have adverse cancer effects (Still, 2017).

GASTROINTESTINAL TRACT CANCER

Carcinomas of the colon and rectum are the third most frequent cancer in all women in the United States (American Cancer Society, 2021). Their incidence in pregnancy is rising because of delayed childbearing (Murphy, 2018). Even so, colorectal tumors are uncommon before age 40. An approximate incidence of 1 case in 150,000 deliveries was derived from the California Cancer Registry (Smith, 2003). In another report, however, the incidence approximated 1 case in 13,000 pregnancies (Salani, 2014). Of colorectal carcinomas in pregnant women, 80 percent arise from the rectum. In one review, only 41 cases in pregnancy were colon cancers located above the peritoneal reflection (Chan, 1999).

The most frequent symptoms are abdominal pain, distention, nausea, constipation, and rectal bleeding. If symptoms of colon disease persist, digital rectal examination, stool tests for occult blood, and colonoscopy are done. Some gastrointestinal (GI) tract cancers are found because of metastases to the ovary. These *Krukenberg tumors* are tumor-laden ovaries from another, often GI, primary and carry a bleak prognosis (Kodama, 2016).

Colon cancer treatment in gravidas mirrors that for nonpregnant women. Without evidence of metastatic disease, surgical resection is preferred, but most pregnant women have advanced lesions (Al-Ibrahim, 2014). During the first half of pregnancy, hysterectomy is not necessary to perform colon or rectal resection, and thus, therapeutic abortion is not mandated. During later pregnancy, therapy may be delayed until fetal maturation. However, bowel hemorrhage, obstruction, or perforation may force surgical intervention.

Gastric and esophageal cancers are rare in pregnancy. Despite this, persistent unexplained upper GI symptoms should be prompt upper abdominal sonography and perhaps endoscopy.

REFERENCES

Abalovich M, Amino N, Barbour LA, et al: 2007 management of thyroid dysfunction during pregnancy and postpartum: an Endocrine Society Clinical Practice Guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 92:S1, 2007

Ackermann S, Gehrsitz C, Mehihorn G, et al: Management and course of histologically verified cervical carcinoma in situ during pregnancy. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 85:1134, 2006
Adeyemi-Fowode O, Lin EG, Syed F, et al: Adnexal torsion in children and adolescents: a retrospective review of 245 cases at a single institution. J Pediatr Adolesc Gynecol 32(1):64, 2019
Al-Adnani M, Kiho L, Scheimberg I: Maternal pancreatic carcinoma metastatic to the placenta: a case report and literature review. Pediatr Dev Pathol 10:61, 2007
Al-Ibrahim A, Parrish J, Dunn E, et al: Pregnancy and maternal outcomes in women with prior or current gastrointestinal malignancies. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 36(1):34, 2014
Alfasi A, Ben-Aharon I: Breast cancer during pregnancy-current paradigms, paths to explore. Cancers (Basel) 11(11):1669, 2019
Ali S, Jones GL, Culligan DJ, et al: Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of acute myeloid leukaemia in pregnancy. Br J Haematol 170(4):487, 2015
Alouini S, Rida K, Mathevet P: Cervical cancer complicating pregnancy: implications of laparoscopic lymphadenectomy. Gynecol Oncol 108(3):472, 2008
Amant F, Berveiller P, Boere IA, et al: Gynecologic cancers in pregnancy: guidelines based on a third international consensus meeting. Ann Oncol 30(10):1601, 2019
Amant F, Deckers S, Van Calsteren K, et al: Breast cancer in pregnancy: recommendations of an international consensus meeting. Eur J Cancer 46(18):3158, 2010
Amant F, Han SN, Gziri MM, et al: Management of cancer in pregnancy. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 29(5):741, 2015a
Amant F, Uzan C, Han SN, et al: Matched cohort study on patients with cervical cancer diagnosed during pregnancy. Ann Oncol 25(suppl 4):iv320, 2014
Amant F, Vandenbroucke T, Verheecke M, et al: Pediatric outcome after maternal cancer diagnosed during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 373:1824, 2015b
American Cancer Society: ACS Journals: Cancer statistics. 2021. Available at: www.cancer.org/research/cancer-facts-statistics/all-cancer-facts-figures/cancer-facts-figures-2021.html. Accessed October 12, 2021
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Evaluation and management of adnexal masses. Practice Bulletin No. 174, November 2016
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Guidelines for diagnostic imaging during pregnancy and lactation. Committee Opinion No. 723, Reaffirmed 2019c
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Hereditary breast and ovarian cancer syndrome. Practice Bulletin No. 182, September, 2017, Reaffirmed 2019d
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Carrier screening in the age of genomic medicine. Committee Opinion No. 690, March 2017, Reaffirmed 2020a
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Ethical issues in genetic testing. Committee Opinion No. 410, June 2008, Reaffirmed 2020b
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Management of symptomatic uterine leiomyomas. Practice Bulletin No. May 2021a
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Medically indicated late-preterm and early-term deliveries. Committee Opinion No. 831, June 2021b
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Updated cervical cancer screening guidelines. Practice Advisory April 2021c
American College of Radiology: ACR BI-RADS atlas: breast imaging reporting and data system, 5th ed. Reston, ACR, 2013
American College of Radiology: ACR manual on contrast media. Reston, ACR, 2021
American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Fertility preservation and reproduction in patients facing gonadotoxic therapies: an ethics committee opinion. Fertil Steril 110(3):380, 2018
American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Ovarian tissue cryopreservation: a committee opinion. Fertil Steril 101(5):1237, 2014
American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Prevention and treatment of moderate and severe ovarian hyperstimulation syndrome: a guideline. Fertil Steril 106(7):1634, 2016
American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Removal of myomas in asymptomatic patients to improve fertility and/or reduce miscarriage rate: a guideline. Fertil Steril 108(3):416, 2017
American Society for Reproductive Medicine, Society for Assisted Reproductive Technology: Mature oocyte cryopreservation: a guideline. Fertil Steril 99(1):37, 2013a
American Society for Reproductive Medicine, Society for Assisted Reproductive Technology: Recommendations for gamete and embryo donation: a committee opinion. Fertil Steril 99(1):47, 2013b
Amin N, Chaabouni N, George A: Genetic testing for epithelial ovarian cancer. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 65:125, 2020
Anderson ML, Mari G, Schwartz PE: Gynecologic malignancies in pregnancy. In Barnea ER, Jauniaux E, Schwartz PE (eds): Cancer and Pregnancy. London, Springer, 2001
Andersson TM, Johansson AL, Fredriksson I, et al: Cancer during pregnancy and the postpartum period: a population-based study. Cancer 121(12):2072, 2015
Andreotti RF, Timmerman D, Strachowski LM, et al: O-RADS US risk stratification and management system: a consensus guideline from the ACR ovarian-adnexal reporting and data system committee. Radiology 294(1):168, 2020
Angell TE, Alexander EK: Thyroid nodules and thyroid cancer in the pregnant woman. Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am 48(3):557, 2019
Averette HE, Mirhashemi R, Moffat FL: Pregnancy after breast carcinoma: the ultimate medical challenge. Cancer 85:2301, 1999
Averette HE, Nasser N, Yankow SL, et al: Cervical conization in pregnancy: analysis of 180 operations. Am J Obstet Gynecol 106:543, 1970
Azim HA Jr, Azim H, Peccatori FA: Treatment of cancer during pregnancy with monoclonal antibodies: a real challenge. Expert Rev Clin Immunol 6(6):821, 2010
Azim HA Jr, Partridge AH: Biology of breast cancer in young women. Breast Cancer Res 16(4):427, 2014
Babic A, Sasamoto N, Rosner BA, et al: Association between breastfeeding and ovarian cancer risk. JAMA Oncol 6(6):e200421, 2020
Bacalbaşa N, Bălescu I, Vîlcu M, et al: Cytoreductive surgery for advanced stage ovarian cancer in the second trimester of pregnancy-a case report and literature review. Medicine (Baltimore) 99(29):e21127, 2020
Bailleux M, Bernard JP, Benachi A, et al: Ovarian endometriosis during pregnancy: a series of 53 endometriomas. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 209:100, 2017
Bannister-Tyrell M, Roberts CL, Hasovits C, et al: Incidence and outcomes of pregnancy-associated melanoma in New South Wales 1994–2008. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 55(2):116, 2015
Barnes MN, Barrett JC, Kimberlin DF, et al: Burkitt lymphoma in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 92:675, 1998
Baxi LV, Grossman LC, Abellar R: Hyperreactio luteinalis in pregnancy and hyperandrogenism: a case report. J Reprod Med 59(9–10):509, 2014
Beadle BM, Woodward WA, Middleton LP, et al: The impact of pregnancy on breast cancer outcomes in women < or = 35 years. Cancer 115(6):1174, 2009
Becker S: Breast cancer in pregnancy: a brief clinical review. Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol 33:79, 2016
Beharee N, Shi Z, Wu D, et al: Diagnosis and treatment of cervical cancer in pregnant women. Cancer Med 8(12):5425, 2019
Bhatla N, Berek JS, Cuello Fredes M, et al: Revised FIGO staging for carcinoma of the cervix uteri. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 145(1):129, 2019
Bigelow CA, Horowitz NS, Goodman A, et al: Management and outcome of cervical cancer diagnosed in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 216(3):276.e1, 2017
Bishop LA, Patel S, Fries MH: A case of recurrent hyperreactio luteinalis in three spontaneous pregnancies. J Clin Ultrasound 44(8):502, 2016
Bleau N, Patenaude V, Abenhaim HA: Risk of venous thromboembolic events in pregnant patients with cancer. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(3):380, 2016
Boulay R, Podczaski E: Ovarian cancer complicating pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 25:3856, 1998
Boxer LA, Bolyard AA, Kelley ML, et al: Use of granulocyte colony-stimulating factor during pregnancy in women with chronic neutropenia. Obstet Gynecol 125(1):197, 2015
Brent RL: Utilization of developmental basic science principles in the evaluation of reproductive risks from pre- and postconception environmental radiation exposures. Teratology 59:182, 1999
Brewer M, Kueck A, Runowicz CD: Chemotherapy in pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 54:602, 2011
Broer N, Buonocore S, Goldberg C: A proposal for the timing of management of patients with melanoma presenting during pregnancy. J Surg Oncol 106(1):36, 2012
Burman KD, Wartofsky L: Thyroid nodules. N Engl J Med 373:2247, 2015
Caligiuri MA, Mayer RJ: Pregnancy and leukemia. Semin Oncol 16:388, 1989
Caragacianu DL, Mayer EL, Chun YS, et al: Immediate breast reconstruction following mastectomy in pregnant women with breast cancer. J Surg Oncol 114(2):140, 2016
Cardonick E, Dougherty R, Grana G et al: Breast cancer during pregnancy: maternal and fetal outcomes. Cancer 16:76, 2010
Cardonick EH, Gringlas MB, Hunter K, et al: Development of children born to mothers with cancer during pregnancy comparing in utero

chemotherapy-exposed children with nonexposed controls. Am J Obstet Gynecol 212(5):658.e1, 2015
Caspi B, Levi R, Appelman Z, et al: Conservative management of ovarian cystic teratoma during pregnancy and labor. Am J Obstet Gynecol 182:503, 2000
Castanon A, Brocklehurst P, Evans H, et al: Risk of preterm birth after treatment for cervical intraepithelial neoplasia among women attending colposcopy in England: retrospective-prospective cohort study. BMJ 345:e5174, 2012
Celik C, Acar A, Cicek N, et al: Can myomectomy be performed during pregnancy? Gynecol Obstet Invest 53:79, 2002
Chan YM, Ngai SW, Lao TT: Colon cancer in pregnancy. A case report. J Reprod Med 44:733, 1999
Chen LM, Blank SV, Burton E, et al: Reproductive and hormonal considerations in women at increased risk for hereditary gynecologic cancers: Society of Gynecologic Oncology and American Society for Reproductive Medicine evidence-based review. Gynecol Oncol 155(3):508, 2019
Choi JR, Levine D, Finberg H: Luteoma of pregnancy: sonographic findings in two cases. J Ultrasound Med 19(12):877, 2000
Chua SJ, Morton MR, Svigo J, et al: Use of romiplostim in pregnancy for refractory idiopathic thrombocytopenia purpura: two case reports with maternal and fetal outcomes and literature review. Obstet Med 13:45, 2020
Ciavattini A, Clemente N, Delli Carpini G, et al: Number and size of uterine fibroids and obstetric outcomes. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 28(4):484, 2015
Condic M, Merz WM, Gembruch U, et al: Testosterone serum levels are not predictive of maternal virilization in hyperreaction luteinalis. Arch Gynecol Obstet 303(1):129, 2021
Conner SN, Frey HA, Cahill AG, et al: Loop electrosurgical excision procedure and risk of preterm birth. A systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 123:752, 2014
Coronado GD, Marshall LM, Schwartz SM: Complications in pregnancy, labor, and delivery with uterine leiomyomas: a population-based study. Obstet Gynecol 95:764, 2000
Cottreau CM, Dashevsky I, Andrade SE, et al: Pregnancy-associated cancer: a U.S. population-based study. J Womens Health (Larchmt) 28(2):250, 2019
Critchley HO, Wallace WH, Shalet SM, et al: Abdominal irradiation in childhood: the potential for pregnancy. BJOG 99(5):392, 1992
Curtis KM, Hillis SD, Marchbanks PA, et al: Disruption of the endometrial-myometrial border during pregnancy as a risk factor for adenomyosis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 187(3):543, 2002
Dahl SK, Thomas MA, Williams DB, et al: Maternal virilization due to luteoma associated with delayed lactation. Fertil Steril 90(5):2006.e17, 2008
Daly MB, Pal T, Berry MP, et al: Genetic/familial high-risk assessment: breast, ovarian, and pancreatic, version 2.2021, NCCN clinical practice guidelines in oncology. J Natl Compr Canc Netw 19(1):77, 2021
Dariushnia SR, Nikolic B, Stokes LS, et al: Quality improvement guidelines for uterine artery embolization for symptomatic leiomyomata. J Vasc Interv Radiol 25(11):1737, 2014
De Carolis S, Fatigante G, Ferrazzani S, et al: Uterine myomectomy in pregnant women. Fetal Diagn Ther 16:116, 2001
de Haan J, Lok CA, de Groot CJ, et al: Melanoma during pregnancy: a report of 60 pregnancies complicated by melanoma. Melanoma Res 27(3):218, 2017
de Haan J, Verheecke M, Van Calsteren K, et al: Oncological management and obstetrical and neonatal outcomes for women diagnosed with cancer during pregnancy: a 20-year international cohort study of 1170 patients. Lancet Oncol 19(3):337, 2018
Djavadian D, Braendle W, Jaenicke F: Laparoscopic oophoropexy for the treatment of recurrent torsion of the adnexa in pregnancy: case report and review. Fertil Steril 82(4):933, 2004
Doğan S, Özyüncü Ö, Atak Z: Fibroids during pregnancy: effects on pregnancy and neonatal outcomes. J Reprod Med 61(1–2):52, 2016
Dorum A, Blom GP, Ekerhovd E, et al: Prevalence and histologic diagnosis of adnexal cysts in postmenopausal women: an autopsy study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 192(1):48, 2005
Driscoll MS, Martires K, Bieber AK, et al: Pregnancy and melanoma. J Am Acad Dermatol 75(4):669, 2016
Dunton CJ: Management of atypical glandular cells and adenocarcinoma in situ. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 35(4):623, 2008
Easton DF, Pharoah PD, Antoniou AC, et al: Gene-panel sequencing and the prediction of breast-cancer risk. N Engl J Med 372:2243, 2015
Ecker AM, Donnellan NM, Shepherd JP, et al: Abdominal wall endometriosis: 12 years of experience at a large academic institution. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(4):363.e1, 2014
Eibye S, Kjaer SK, Mellemkjaer L: Incidence of pregnancy-associated cancer in Denmark, 1977–2006. Obstet Gynecol 122:608, 2013
El-Messidi A, Patenaude V, Hakeem G, et al: Incidence and outcomes of women with Hodgkin's lymphoma in pregnancy: a population-based study on 7.9 million births. J Perinat Med 43(6):683, 2015
Erkanli S, Ayhan A: Fertility-sparing therapy in young women with endometrial cancer: 2010 update. Int J Gyn Cancer 20:1170, 2010
Euhus DM: Breast disease. In Hoffman BL, Schorge JO, Bradshaw KD, et al (eds): Williams Gynecology, 3rd ed. New York, McGraw Hill Education, 2016
Eyre TA, Lau IJ, Mackillop L, et al: Management and controversies of classical Hodgkin lymphoma in pregnancy. Br J Haematol 169(5):613, 2015
Fader AN, Alward EK, Niederhauser A, et al: Cervical dysplasia in pregnancy: a multi-institutional evaluation. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203:113, 2010
Favero G, Chiantera V, Oleszczuk A, et al: Invasive cervical cancer during pregnancy: laparoscopic nodal evaluation before oncologic treatment delay. Gynecol Oncol 118:123, 2010
Fey MF, Surbek D: Leukaemia and pregnancy. Recent Results Cancer Res 178:97, 2008
Fortner RT, Poole EM, Wentzensen NA, et al: Ovarian cancer risk factors by tumor aggressiveness: an analysis from the Ovarian Cancer Cohort Consortium. Int J Cancer 145(1):58, 2019
Freret TS, Exman P, Mayer EL, et al: Birthweight and chemotherapy exposure in women diagnosed with breast cancer during pregnancy. Am J Perinatol September 24, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Friedman E, Kotsopoulos J, Lubinski J, et al: Spontaneous and therapeutic abortions and the risk of breast cancer among BRCA mutation carriers. Breast Cancer Res 8:R15, 2006
Fuchs N, Smorgick N, Tovbin Y, et al: Oophoropexy to prevent adnexal torsion: how, when, and for whom? J Minim Invasive Gynecol 17(2):205, 2010
Genta PR, Dias ML, Janiszewski TA, et al: *Streptococcus agalactiae* endocarditis and giant pyomyoma simulating ovarian cancer. South Med J 94:508, 2001
Girault A, Ray CL, Chapron C, et al: Leiomyomatous uterus and preterm birth: an exposed/unexposed monocentric cohort study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(4):410.e1, 2018
Goldman NA, Goldberg GL: Late recurrence of squamous cell cervical cancer in an episiotomy site after vaginal delivery. Obstet Gynecol 101:1127, 2003
Goddard ET, Bassale S, Schedin T, et al: Association between postpartum breast cancer diagnosis and metastasis and the clinical features underlying risk. JAMA Netw Open 2(1):e186997, 2019
Greiber IK, Mikkelsen AP, Karlsen MA, et al: Cancer in pregnancy increases the risk of venous thromboembolism: a nationwide cohort study BJOG 128(7):1151, 2021
Gubbala K, Laios A, Gallos I, et al: Outcomes of ovarian transposition in gynaecological cancers: a systematic review and meta-analysis. J Ovarian Res 7:69, 2014
Hacker NF, Berek JS, Lagasse LD, et al: Carcinoma of the cervix associated with pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 59:735, 1982
Haggar FA, Pereira G, Preen D, et al: Adverse obstetric and perinatal outcomes following treatment of adolescent and young adult cancer: a population based cohort study. PLoS One 9(12):e113292, 2014
Hakim C, Padmanabhan V, Vyas AK: Gestational hyperandrogenism in developmental programming. Endocrinology 14:en20161801, 2016
Hamilton CA, Pothuri B, Arend RC, et al: Endometrial cancer: a society of gynecologic oncology evidence-based review and recommendations, part II. Gynecol Oncol 160(3):827, 2021
Hannuna KY, Putignani L, Silvestri E, et al: Incidental endometrial adenocarcinoma in early pregnancy: a case report and review of the literature. Int J Gynecol Cancer 19(9):1580, 2009
Harrison RF, He W, Fu S, et al: National patterns of care and fertility outcomes for reproductive-aged women with endometrial cancer or atypical hyperplasia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 221(5):474.e1, 2019
Havrilesky LJ, Moorman PG, Lowery WJ, et al: Oral contraceptive pills as primary prevention for ovarian cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 122(1):139, 2013
Heller DS, Cracchiolo B, Hameed M, et al: Pregnancy-associated invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva in a 28-year-old, HIV-negative woman: a case report. J Reprod Med 45:659, 2000
Hong Y, Li SQ, Hu YL, et al: Survey of human papillomavirus types and their vertical transmission in pregnant women. BMC Infect Dis 13:109, 2013
Horowitz NA, Lavi N, Nadir Y, et al: Haematological malignancies in pregnancy: an overview with an emphasis on thrombotic risks. Thromb Haemost 116(4):613, 2016
Huang T, Townsend MK, Wentzensen N, et al: Reproductive and hormonal factors and risk of ovarian cancer by tumor dominance: results from the Ovarian Cancer Cohort Consortium (OC3). Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 29(1):200, 2020
Hudis CA: Trastuzumab—mechanism of action and use in clinical practice. N Engl J Med 357:39, 2007
Irving JA, Clement PB: Nonneoplastic lesions of the ovary. In Kurman RJ, Ellenson LH, Ronnett BM (eds): Blaustein's Pathology of the Female Genital Tract, 6th ed. New York, Springer, 2011
Ishikawa H, Ishi K, Serna VA, et al: Progesterone is essential for maintenance and growth of uterine leiomyomata. Endocrinology 151(6):2433, 2010

Iversen L, Fielding S, Lidegaard Ø, et al: Association between contemporary hormonal contraception and ovarian cancer in women of reproductive age in Denmark: prospective, nationwide cohort study. BMJ 362:k3609, 2018
Ives A, Saunders C, Bulsara M, et al: Pregnancy after breast cancer: population based study. BMJ 334(7586):194, 2006
Jenabi E, Khazaei S: The effect of uterine leiomyoma on the risk of malpresentation and cesarean: a meta-analysis. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 31(1):87, 2018
Johansson AL, Andersson TM, Plym A, et al: Mortality in women with pregnancy-associated malignant melanoma. J Am Acad Dermatol 71(6):1093, 2014
Kal HB, Struikmans H: Radiotherapy during pregnancy: fact and fiction. Lancet Oncol 6(5):328, 2005
Kanal E, Barkovich AJ, Bell C, et al: Expert panel on MR safety. ACR practice guideline for imaging pregnant or potentially pregnant adolescents and women with ionizing radiation. J Magn Reson Imaging 37:501, 2013
Kaňová N, Bičíková M: Hyperandrogenic states in pregnancy. Physiol Res 60(2):243, 2011
Kao HW, Wu CJ, Chung KT, et al: MR imaging of pregnancy luteoma: a case report and correlation with the clinical features. Korean J Radiol 6(1):44, 2005
Karaman E, Karaman Y, Alkis I, et al: Maternal serum CA-125 level is elevated in severe preeclampsia. Pregnancy Hypertens 4(1):29, 2014
Kasuga Y, Miyakoshi K, Nishio H, et al: Mid-trimester residual cervical length and the risk of preterm birth in pregnancies after abdominal radical trachelectomy: a retrospective analysis. BJOG 124(11):1729, 2017
King MC, Wieand S, Hale K, et al: Tamoxifen and breast cancer incidence among women with inherited mutations in BRCA1 and BRCA2: National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project (NSABP-P1) Breast Cancer Prevention Trial. JAMA 286:2251, 2001
Knight JC, Elliott JO, Amburgey OL: Effect of maternal retroplacental leiomyomas on fetal growth. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 38(12):1100, 2016
Ko EM, Van Le L: Chemotherapy for gynecologic cancers occurring during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Surv 66(5):291, 2011
Kodama M, Moeini A, Machida H, et al: Feto-maternal outcomes of pregnancy complicated by Krukenberg tumor: a systematic review of literature. Arch Gynecol Obstet 294(3):589, 2016
Korbin CD, Brown DL, Welch WR: Paraovarian cystadenomas and cystadenofibromas: sonographic characteristics in 14 cases. Radiology 208(2):459, 1998
Korenaga TR, Tewari KS: Gynecologic canter in pregnancy. Gynecol Oncol 157(3):799, 2020
Kotsopoulos J, Gronwald J, Lynch HT, et al: Age at first full-term birth and breast cancer risk in BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers. Breast Cancer Res Treat 171(2):421, 2018
Kotsopoulos J, Gronwald J, McCuaig JM, et al: Breastfeeding and the risk of epithelial ovarian cancer among women with a BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutation. Gynecol Oncol 159(3):820, 2020
Kotsopoulos J, Huzarski T, Gronwald J, et al: Bilateral oophorectomy and breast cancer risk in BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers. J Natl Cancer Inst 109(1):djw177, 2016
Kotsopoulos J, Lubinski J, Gronwald J, et al: Factors influencing ovulation and the risk of ovarian cancer in BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers. Int J Cancer 137(5):1136, 2015
Kotsopoulos J, Lubinski J, Salmena L, et al: Breastfeeding and the risk of breast cancer in BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers. Breast Cancer Res 14(2):R42, 2012
Krishna I, Lindsay M: Breast cancer in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Clin N Am 40:559, 2013
Kuo K, Caughey AB: Optimal timing of delivery for women with breast cancer, according to cancer stage and hormone status: a decision-analytic model. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 32(3):419l, 2019
Lam SJ, Best S, Kumar S: The impact of fibroid characteristics on pregnancy outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(4):395.e1, 2014
Lambertini M, Ameye L, Hamy AS, et al: Pregnancy after breast cancer in patients with germline BRCA mutations. J Clin Oncol 38(26):3012, 2020
Lambertini M, Martel S, Campbell C, et al: Pregnancies during and after trastuzumab and/or lapatinib in patients with human epidermal growth factor receptor 2–positive early breast cancer: analysis from the NeoALTTO (BIG 1–06) and ALTTO (BIG 2–06) trials. Cancer 125(2):307, 2019
Lambertini M, Peccatori FA, Azim HA Jr: Targeted agents for cancer treatment during pregnancy. Cancer Treat Rev 41(4):301, 2015
Laughlin SK, Baird DD, Savitz DA, et al: Prevalence of uterine leiomyomas in the first trimester of pregnancy: an ultrasound-screening study. Obstet Gynecol 113(3):630, 2009
Lee AW, Rosenzweig S, Wiensch A; et al: Expanding our understanding of ovarian cancer risk: the role of incomplete pregnancies. J Natl Cancer Inst 113(3):301, 2021
Lei J, Ploner A, Elfström KM, et al: HPV vaccination and the risk of invasive cervical cancer. N Engl J Med 383(14):1340, 2020
Leiserowitz GS, Xing G, Cress R, et al: Adnexal masses in pregnancy: how often are they malignant? Gynecol Oncol 101:315, 2006
Li X, You R, Wang X, et al: Effectiveness of prophylactic surgeries in BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutation carriers: a meta-analysis and systematic review. Clin Cancer Res 22(15):3971, 2016
Li YW, Xu YF, Hu W, et al: Acute myeloid leukemia during pregnancy: a single institutional experience with 17 patients and literature review. Int J Hematol 112(4):487, 2020
Lima SM, Kehm RD, Swett K, et al: Trends in parity and breast cancer incidence in US women younger than 40 years From 1935 to 2015. JAMA Netw Open 3(3):e200929, 2020
Lin YH, Hwang JL, Huang LW, et al: Pyomyoma after a cesarean section. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 81:571, 2002
Liu J, Zanotti K: Management of the adnexal mass. Obstet Gynecol 117:1413, 2011
Liu P, Xu L, Sun Y, et al: The prevalence and risk of human papillomavirus infection in pregnant women. Epidemiol Infect 142(8):1567, 2014
Lodish MB: Clinical review: kinase inhibitors: adverse effects related to the endocrine system. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 98(4):1333, 2013
Loibl S, Schmidt A, Gentillini O, et al: Breast cancer diagnosed during pregnancy: adapting recent advances in breast cancer care for pregnant patients. JAMA Oncol 1(8):1145, 2015
Ludwig PE, Huff TJ, Shanahan MM, et al: Pregnancy success and outcomes after uterine fibroid embolization: updated review of published literature. Br J Radiol 93(1105):20190551, 2020
Ma KK, Monsell SE, Chandrasekaran S, et al: Cancer and pregnancy: national trends. Am J Perinatol July 21, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]
Maggen C, Dierickx D, Lugtenburg P, et al: Obstetric and maternal outcomes in patients diagnosed with Hodgkin lymphoma during pregnancy: a multicentre, retrospective, cohort study. Lancet Haematol 6(11):e551, 2019
Maggen C, Dierickx D, Cardonick E, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes in 80 patients diagnosed with non-Hodgkin lymphoma during pregnancy: results from the International Network of Cancer, Infertility, and Pregnancy. Br J Haematol 193(1):52, 2021
Maggiore U, Ferrero S, Mangili G, et al: A systematic review on endometriosis during pregnancy: diagnosis, misdiagnosis, complications and outcomes. Hum Reprod Update 22(1):70, 2016
Malinowski AK, Sen J, Sermer M: Hyperreactio luteinalis: maternal and fetal effects. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 37(8):715, 2015
Maor GS, Czuzoj-Shulman N, Spence AR, et al: Maternal and neonatal outcomes of pregnancy associated breast cancer. Abstract No. 802, Am J Obstet Gynecol 216:S461, 2017
Masarie K, Katz V, Balderston K: Pregnancy luteomas: clinical presentations and management strategies. Obstet Gynecol Surv 65(9):575, 2010
Matsuo K, Eno ML, Im DD, et al: Pregnancy and genital sarcoma: a systematic review of the literature. Am J Perinatol 26(7):507, 2009
McCormick A, Peterson E: Cancer in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am 45(2):187, 2018
McGovern PG, Noah R, Koenigsberg R, et al: Adnexal torsion and pulmonary embolism: case report and review of the literature. Obstet Gynecol Surv 54(9):601, 1999
Melin J, Heinävaara S, Malila N, et al: Adverse obstetric outcomes among early-onset cancer survivors in Finland. Obstet Gynecol 126:803, 2015
Menon U, Karpinskyj C, Gentry-Maharaj A: Ovarian cancer prevention and screening. Obstet Gynecol 131(5):909, 2018
Metwally M, Raybould G, Cheong YC, et al: Surgical treatment of fibroids for subfertility. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD003857, 2020
Michel M, Ruggeri M, Gonzales-Lopez TJ, et al: Use of thrombopoietin receptor agonists for immune thrombocytopenia in pregnancy: results from a multicenter study. Blood 136:3056, 2020
Mizutamari E, Matsuo Y, Namimoto T, et al: Successful outcome following detection and removal of a very small ovarian teratoma associated with anti-NMDA receptor encephalitis during pregnancy. Clin Case Rep 4(3):223, 2016
Moawad NS, Santamaria E, Rhoton-Vlasak A, et al: Laparoscopic ovarian transposition before pelvic cancer treatment: ovarian function and fertility preservation. J Minim Invasive Gynecol 24(1):28, 2017
Mogos MF, Rahman S, Salihu HM, et al: Association between reproductive cancer and fetal outcomes: a systematic review. Int J Gynecol Cancer 23(7):1171, 2013
Momen NC, Arendt LH, Ernst A, et al: Pregnancy-associated cancers and birth outcomes in children: a Danish and Swedish population-based register study. BMJ Open 8(12):e022946, 2018
Morice P, Uzan C, Gouy S, et al: Gynaecological cancers in pregnancy. Lancet 379:558, 2012
Moro F, Bolomini G, Sibal M, et al: Imaging in gynecological disease (20): clinical and ultrasound characteristics of adnexal torsion. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 56(6):934, 2020

Murphy JE, Shampain K, Riley LE, et al: Case 32–2018: a 36-year-old pregnant woman with newly diagnosed adenocarcinoma. N Engl J Med 379(16):1562, 2018

Naqvi M, Kaimal A: Adnexal masses in pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 58(1):93, 2015

Nassr AA, Shamshiraz AA, Cortes MS, et al: Unusual course of hyperreaction luteinalis in twin pregnancy complicated by twin-twin transfusion syndrome. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 52(5):677, 2018

National Toxicology Program: NTP monograph: developmental effects and pregnancy outcomes associated with cancer chemotherapy use during pregnancy. NTP Monogr 2:1, 2013

Navrozoglou I, Vrekoussis T, Kontostolis E et al: Breast cancer during pregnancy: a mini-review. Eur J Surg Oncol 34:837, 2008

Neiger R, Sonek JD, Croom CS, et al: Pregnancy-related changes in the size of uterine leiomyomas. J Reprod Med 51:671, 2006

Nirgianakis K, Kalaitzopoulos DR, Schwartz AS, et al: Fertility, pregnancy and neonatal outcomes of patients with adenomyosis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Reprod Biomed Online 42(1):185, 2021

Nisker JA, Shubat M: Stage IB cervical carcinoma and pregnancy: report of 49 cases. Am J Obstet Gynecol 145:203, 1983

Nolan S, Czuzoj-Shulman N, Abenhaim H: Obstetrical and newborn outcomes among women with acute leukemias in pregnancy: a population-based study. J Matern Fetal Neonatal med 33(20):3514, 2020

Oktay K, Harvey BE, Partridge AH, et al: Fertility preservation in patients with cancer: ASCO clinical practice guideline update. J Clin Oncol 36(19):1994, 2018

Otake M, Schull WJ, Lee S: Threshold for radiation-related severe mental retardation in prenatally exposed A-bomb survivors: a re-analysis. Int J Radiat Biol 70:755–63, 1996

Palani R, Milojkovic D, Apperley JF: Managing pregnancy in chronic myeloid leukaemia. Ann Hematol 94 Suppl 2:S167, 2015

Pan H, He Z, Ling L, et al: Reproductive factors and breast cancer risk among BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutation carriers: results from ten studies. Cancer Epidemiol 38(1):1, 2014

Panel on Opportunistic Infections in Adults and Adolescents with HIV: Guidelines for the prevention and treatment of opportunistic infections in adults and adolescents with HIV: recommendations from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the National Institutes of Health, and the HIV Medicine Association of the Infectious Diseases Society of America. 2020. Available at: http://aidsinfo.nih.gov/contentfiles/lvguidelines/adult_oi.pdf. Accessed March 19, 2021

Park CK, Kim YW, Koh HH, et al: Clinicopathological characteristics of squamous cell carcinoma and high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions involving endocervical polyps. In Vivo 34(5):2613, 2020

Pereira KV, Giacomeli R, Gomes de Gomes M, et al: The challenge of using nanotherapy during pregnancy: technological aspects and biomedical implications. Placenta 100:75, 2020

Pergialiotis V, Sinanidis I, Louloudis JE, et al: Perioperative complications of cesarean delivery myomectomy: a meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 130(6):1295, 2017

Perkins RB, Guido RS, Castle PE, et al: 2019 ASCCP risk-based management consensus guidelines for abnormal cervical cancer screening tests and cancer precursors. J Low Genit Tract Dis 24:102, 2020

Peters ML, Garber JE, Tung N: Managing hereditary breast cancer risk in women with and without ovarian cancer. Gynecol Oncol 146(1):205, 2017

Pinnix CC, Osborne EM, Chihara D, et al: Maternal and fetal outcomes after therapy for Hodgkin or non-Hodgkin lymphoma diagnosed during pregnancy. JAMA Oncol 2(8):1065, 2016

Pistilli B, Belletini G, Giovannetti E, et al: Chemotherapy, targeted agents, antiemetics and growth-factors in human milk: how should we counsel cancer patients about breastfeeding? Cancer Treat Rev 39(3):207, 2013

Qidwai II, Caughey AB, Jacoby AF: Obstetric outcomes in women with sonographically identified uterine leiomyomata. Obstet Gynecol 107:376, 2006

Rebbeck TR, Kauff ND, Domchek SM: Meta-analysis of risk reduction estimates associated with risk-reducing salpingo-oophorectomy in BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutation carriers. J Natl Cancer Inst 101(2):80, 2009

Reulen RC, Zeegers MP, Wallace WH, et al: Pregnancy outcomes among adult survivors of childhood cancer in the British Childhood Cancer Survivor Study. Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 18(8):2239, 2009

Reynoso EE, Shepherd FA, Messner HA, et al: Acute leukemia during pregnancy: the Toronto Leukemia Study Group experience with long-term follow-up of children exposed in utero to chemotherapeutic agents. J Clin Oncol 5:1098, 1987

Richtig G, Byrom L, Kupsa R, et al: Pregnancy as driver for melanoma. Br J Dermatol 177(3):854, 2017

Rieder V, Salama M, Glöckner L, et al: Effect of lifestyle and reproductive factors on the onset of breast cancer in female BRCA 1 and 2 mutation carriers. Mol Genet Genomic Med 4(2):172, 2015

Robson D, Phua C, Howard R, et al: Fertility preservation in oncology patients: a literature review examining current fertility preservation techniques and access to oncofertility services in Australia. Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol 60(1):18, 2020

Rodriguez AO, Chew H, Cress R, et al: Evidence of poorer survival in pregnancy-associated breast cancer. Obstet Gynecol 112(1):71, 2008

Rosenkranz KM, Lucci A: Surgical treatment of pregnancy associated breast cancer. Breast Dis 23:87, 2006

Routledge DJ, Tower C, Davies E, et al: Successful management of acute myeloid leukaemia in a twin pregnancy—a case report. Br J Haematol 180(4):605, 2018

Rubrecht AE, Seifert RP, Shenoy A: Maternal hematologic neoplasms during pregnancy: histologic findings in the placenta. Placenta 104:195, 2020

Russell P, Robboy SJ: Ovarian cysts, tumor-like, iatrogenic and miscellaneous conditions. In Robboy SJ, Mutter GL, Prat J, et al (eds): Robboy's Pathology of the Female Reproductive Tract, 2nd ed. London, Churchill Livingstone, 2009

Salani R, Billingsley CC, Crafton SM: Cancer and pregnancy: an overview for obstetricians and gynecologists. Am J Obstet Gynecol 211(1):7, 2014

Salvador E, Bienstock J, Blakemore KJ, et al: Leiomyomata uteri, genetic amniocentesis, and the risk of second-trimester spontaneous abortion. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:913, 2002

Santolaria A, Perales A, Montesinos P, et al: Acute promyelocytic leukemia during pregnancy: a systematic review of the literature. Cancers (Basel) 12(4):968, 2020

Sanz MA, Montesinos P, Casale MF, et al: Maternal and fetal outcomes in pregnant women with acute promyelocytic leukemia. Ann Hematol 94(8):1357, 2015

Sawyers AE, Pavlick AC, Weber JS, et al: Management of melanoma during pregnancy: a case series of 11 women treated at NYU Langone Health. Oncology 98(12):847, 2020

Schmeler KM, Mayo-Smith WW, Peipert JF, et al: Adnexal masses in pregnancy: surgery compared with observation. Obstet Gynecol 105:1098, 2005

Schorge JO, Russo AL, Greene MF, et al: Case 21–2017. A 28-year-old pregnant woman with endocervical carcinoma. N Engl J Med 377(2):174, 2017

Shah MR, Brandt JS, David KA, et al: Lymphoma occurring during pregnancy: current diagnostic and therapeutic approaches. Curr Oncol Rep 22(11):113, 2020

Shamy TE, Amer SA, Mohamed AA, et al: The impact of uterine artery embolization on ovarian reserve: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scan 99(1):16, 2020

Sherard GB III, Hodson CA, Williams HJ, et al: Adnexal masses and pregnancy: a 12-year experience. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:358, 2003

Sienas L, Wong T, Collins R, et al: Contemporary uses of erythropoietin in pregnancy: a literature review. Obstet Gynecol Surv 68(8):594, 2013

Signorello LB, Cohen SS, Bosetti C, et al: Female survivors of childhood cancer: preterm birth and low birth weight among their children. J Natl Cancer Inst 98:1453, 2006

Signorello LB, Mulvihill JJ, Green DM, et al: Congenital anomalies in the children of cancer survivors: a report from the childhood cancer survivor study. J Clin Oncol 30(3):239, 2012

Signorello LB, Mulvihill JJ, Green DM, et al: Stillbirth and neonatal death in relation to radiation exposure before conception: a retrospective cohort study. Lancet 376:624, 2010

Sisodia RM, Del Carmen MG, Boruta DM: Role of minimally invasive surgery in the management of adnexal masses. Clin Obstet Gynecol 58(1):66, 2015

Sisson JC, Freitas J, McDougall IR, et al: Radiation safety in the treatment of patients with thyroid diseases by radioiodine ^{131}I: practice recommendations of the American Thyroid Association. Thyroid 21(4):335, 2011

Smith ES, Moon AS, O'Hanlon R, et al: Radical trachelectomy for the treatment of early-stage cervical cancer: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 136(3):533, 2020

Smith LH, Danielsen B, Allen ME, et al: Cancer associated with obstetric delivery: results of linkage with the California cancer registry. Am J Obstet Gynecol 189:1128, 2003

Soares SR, Gómez R, Simón C, et al: Targeting the vascular endothelial growth factor system to prevent ovarian hyperstimulation syndrome. Hum Reprod Update 14(4):321, 2008

Spiegel E, Spence AR, Czuzoj-Shulman N, et al: Pregnancy outcomes after thyroid cancer. J Perinat Med 47(7):710, 2019

Stensheim H, Klungsøyr K, Skjaerven R, et al: Birth outcomes among offspring of adult cancer survivors: a population-based study. Int J Cancer 133(11):2696, 2013

Stephansson O, Kieler H, Granath F, et al: Endometriosis, assisted reproduction technology, and risk of adverse pregnancy outcome. Hum Reprod 24(9):2341, 2009

Still R, Brennecke S: Melanoma in pregnancy. Obstet Med 10(3):107, 2017

Stout MJ, Frey HA, Tuuli MG, et al: Loop electrosurgical excision procedure and risk of vaginal infections during pregnancy: an observation study. BJOG 122(4):545, 2015
Stout MJ, Odibo AO, Graseck AS, et al: Leiomyomas at routine second-trimester ultrasound examination and adverse obstetric outcomes. Obstet Gynecol 116(5):1056, 2010
Stovall M, Blackwell CR, Cundiff J, et al: Fetal does from radiotherapy with photon beams: report of AAPM Radiation Therapy Committee Task Group No. 36. Med Phys 22(1):63, 1995
Sullivan SA: Thyroid nodules and thyroid cancer in pregnancy. Clin Obstet Gynecol 62(2):365, 2019
Sundermann AC, Velez Edwards DR, Bray MJ, et al: Leiomyomas in pregnancy and spontaneous abortion: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 130(5):1065, 2017
Suzuki S: Comparison between spontaneous ovarian hyperstimulation syndrome and hyperreactio luteinalis. Arch Gynecol Obstet 269(3):227, 2004
Swetter SM, Tsao H, Bichakjian CK, et al: Guidelines of care of the management of primary cutaneous melanoma. J Am Acad Dermatol 80(1):208, 2019
Szecsi PB, Anderson MR, Bjørngaard B, et al: Cancer antigen 125 after delivery in women with a normal pregnancy: a prospective cohort study. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 93(12):1295, 2014
Takushi M, Moromizato H, Sakumoto K, et al: Management of invasive carcinoma of the uterine cervix associated with pregnancy: outcome of intentional delay in treatment. Gynecol Oncol 87:185, 2002
Tamura K, Kaneda M, Futagawa M, et al: Genetic and genomic basis of the mismatch repair system involved in Lynch syndrome. J Int J Clin Oncol 24(9):999, 2019
Tannus JF, Hertzberg BS, Haystead CM, et al: Unilateral luteoma of pregnancy mimicking a malignant ovarian mass on magnetic resonance and ultrasound. J Magn Reson Imaging 29(3):713, 2009
Teh WT, Stern C, Chander S, et al: The impact of uterine radiation on subsequent fertility and pregnancy outcomes. Biomed Res Int 2014:482968, 2014
Toss A, Grandi G, Cagnacci A, et al: The impact of reproductive life on breast cancer risk in women with family history or BRCA mutation. Oncotarget 8(6):9144, 2017
Tsao NW, Lynd LD, Sayre EC, et al: Use of biologics during pregnancy and risk of serious infections in the mother and baby: a Canadian population-based cohort study. BMJ Open 9(2):e023714, 2019
Ungár L, Smith JR, Pálfavli L, et al: Abdominal radical trachelectomy during pregnancy to preserve pregnancy and fertility. Obstet Gynecol 108:811, 2006
U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, Curry SJ, Krist AH, et al: Screening for cervical cancer: US Preventive Services Task Force recommendation statement. JAMA 320(7):674, 2018
Valachis A, Tsali L, Pesce LL, et al: Safety of pregnancy after primary breast carcinoma in young women: a meta-analysis to overcome bias of healthy mother effect studies. Obstet Gynecol Surv 65:786, 2010
Valentini A, Lubinski J, Byrski T, et al: The impact of pregnancy on breast cancer survival in women who carry a BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutation. Breast Cancer Res Treat 142(1):177, 2013
van de Loo LE, van den Berg MH, Overbeek A, et al: Uterine function, pregnancy complications, and pregnancy outcomes among female childhood cancer survivors. Fertil Steril 111(2):372, 2019
van der Kooi AL, Mulder RL, Hudson MM, et al: Counseling and surveillance of obstetrical risks for female childhood, adolescent, and young adult cancer survivors: recommendations from the International Late Effects of Childhood Cancer Guideline Harmonization Group. Am J Obstet Gynecol 224(1):3, 2021
van der Vange N, Weverling GJ, Ketting BW, et al: The prognosis of cervical cancer associated with pregnancy: a matched cohort study. Obstet Gynecol 85:1022, 1995
van Vliet W, van Loon AJ, ten Hoor KA, et al: Cervical carcinoma during pregnancy: outcome of planned delay in treatment. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 79:153, 1998
Vercruysse DC, Deprez S, Sunaert S, et al: Effects of prenatal exposure to cancer treatment on neurocognitive development, a review. Neurotoxicology 54:11, 2016
Viswanathan S, Ramaswamy B: Pregnancy-associated breast cancer. Clin Obstet Gynecol 54(4):546, 2011
Wang YC, Su HY, Liu JY, et al: Maternal and female fetal virilization caused by pregnancy luteomas. Fertil Steril 84:509.e15, 2005
Webb KE, Sakhel K, Chauhan SP, et al: Adnexal mass during pregnancy: a review. Am J Perinatol 32(11):1010, 2015
Weibull CE, Eloranta S, Smedby KE, et al: Pregnancy and the risk of relapse in patients diagnosed with Hodgkin lymphoma. J Clin Oncol 34(4):337, 2016
Weinmann S, Naleway A, Swamy G, et al: Pregnancy outcomes after treatment for cervical cancer precursor lesions: an observational study. PLoS One 12(1):e0165276, 2017
Winther JF, Boice JD Jr, Svendsen AL, et al: Spontaneous abortion in a Danish population-based cohort of childhood cancer survivors. J Clin Oncol 26(26):4340, 2008
Winther JF, Olsen JH, Wu H, et al: Genetic disease in the children of Danish survivors of childhood and adolescent cancer. J Clin Oncol 30(1):27, 2012
Woo JC, Yu T, Hurd TC: Breast cancer in pregnancy. Arch Surg 138:91, 2003
Yahata T, Numata M, Kashima K, et al: Conservative treatment of stage IA1 adenocarcinoma of the cervix during pregnancy. Gynecol Oncol 109(1):49, 2008
Yatsenko O, Vlachou PA, Glanc P: Predictive value of single or combined ultrasound signs in the diagnosis of ovarian torsion. Ultrasound Med 40(6):1163, 2021
Yost NP, Santoso JT, McIntire DD, et al: Postpartum regression rates of antepartum cervical intraepithelial neoplasia II and III lesions. Obstet Gynecol 93:359, 1999
Zagouri F, Sergentanis TN, Chrysikos D, et al: Platinum derivatives during pregnancy in cervical cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Obstet Gynecol 121:337, 2013a
Zagouri F, Sergentanis TN, Chrysikos D, et al: Trastuzumab administration during pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Breast Cancer Res Treat 137(2):349, 2013b
Zemlickis D, Lishner M, Degendorfer P, et al: Maternal and fetal outcome after breast cancer in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 166:781, 1992
Zullo F, Spagnolo E, Saccone G, et al: Endometriosis and obstetrics complications: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Fertil Steril 108(4):667, 2017
Zydus Pharmaceuticals: Tamoxifen citrate. 2020. Available at: https://medlibrary.org/lib/rx/meds/tamoxifen-citrate-11/page/2/#ID28. Accessed January 19, 2021

CHAPTER 67

Infectious Diseases

Infections remain a major cause of maternal and fetal morbidity and mortality worldwide. The unique maternal–fetal vascular interface in some cases serves to protect the fetus from infectious agents, but in other instances it provides a conduit for transmission. Maternal serological status, acquisition mode, gestational age at the time of infection, and immunological status of mother and fetus all influence disease outcome.

The TORCH acronym reflects the infections toxoplasmosis, others, rubella, and cytomegalovirus and herpesvirus infections. These can cross the placenta to cause fetal infection and substantial neonatal sequelae. Of members in the "others" category, parvovirus B19 infection is discussed here. Herpesvirus and syphilis infections are described in Chapter 68.

MATERNAL AND FETAL IMMUNOLOGY

Maternal Immunological Changes

Despite significant advances, many of the maternal immunological adaptations to pregnancy remain unclear. Successful pregnancy results from a complex interplay between the innate and adaptive immune systems to establish fetal tolerance (Chap. 5, p. 93) (Liu, 2017). Within the innate system, decidual natural killer (dNK) cells interact with and aid invasion of fetal extravillous trophoblasts via human leukocyte antigen (HLA)-G (Fig. 21-8, p. 404). Also, cytokines produced during viral infection activate dNK cells to induce protective cytotoxicity (Tilburgs, 2015).

Within the adaptive immune system, a CD4+ subset of T helper cells called regulatory T cells (Tregs) express *forkhead box P3 (FOXP3)*. This is an immune-suppressive transcription factor that plays a critical role in inducing maternal immune tolerance to the fetus (Kahn, 2010). However, this same mechanism compromises maternal defense against bacterial pathogens. Noncoding microRNAs, whose roles are incompletely defined, regulate activation and proliferation of both innate and adaptive immune cells (Robertson, 2017).

In describing infections, *horizontal transmission* is the spread of an infectious agent from one individual to another. *Vertical transmission* is passage of an infectious agent from the mother to her fetus through the placenta, during labor or delivery, or by breastfeeding. Thus, preterm rupture of membranes or prolonged labor may enhance the risk of some neonatal infections (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). Table 67-1 shows specific infections by mode and acquisition timing. A final term, the *secondary attack rate*, is the probability that infection develops in a susceptible individual following known contact with an infectious person.

Fetal and Newborn Immunology

The active immunological capacity of the fetus and neonate is compromised compared with that of older children and adults. That said, fetal innate and adaptive immunity begin to develop by 9 to 15 weeks' gestation (McGovern, 2017). The primary fetal response to infection is mediated by innate immunity—macrophages and dendritic cells—and to a lesser extent, by adaptive immunity—B and T cells (Chougnet, 2018). Passive immunity

TABLE 67-1. Specific Causes of Some Fetal and Neonatal Infections

Intrauterine
Transplacental
Viruses: varicella-zoster, coxsackie, rubella, CMV, human parvovirus B19, HIV, Zika, SARS-CoV-2
Bacteria: *Listeria*, syphilis, *Borrelia*
Protozoa: toxoplasmosis, malaria
Ascending infection
Bacteria: GBS, coliforms
Viruses: HIV
Intrapartum
Maternal exposure
Bacteria: gonorrhea, chlamydia, GBS, tuberculosis, mycoplasmas
Viruses: HSV, HPV, HIV, hepatitis B, hepatitis C, Zika
External contamination
Bacteria: staphylococcus, coliforms
Viruses: HSV, varicella zoster
Neonatal
Human transmission: staphylococcus, HSV, influenza, SARS-CoV-2
Respirators and catheters: staphylococcus, coliforms

CMV = cytomegalovirus; GBS = group B *Streptococcus*; HIV = human immunodeficiency virus; HPV = human papillomavirus; HSV = herpes simplex virus; SARS-CoV-2 = severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus-2.

is provided by maternal immunoglobulin G (IgG) transferred across the placenta. By 16 weeks' gestation, this transfer begins to rise rapidly, and by 26 weeks, fetal concentrations are equivalent to those of the mother. Evidence suggests maternal vaccination also primes the fetal cell-mediated immune response independent of passive immunity (Wilcox, 2018).

Neonatal infection, especially in its early stages, may be difficult to diagnose because these newborns often fail to express classic clinical signs. If the fetus was infected in utero, it may be depressed and acidotic at birth for no apparent reason. The neonate may suck poorly, vomit, or show abdominal distention. Respiratory insufficiency can develop, which may present similarly to idiopathic respiratory distress syndrome. The neonate may be lethargic or jittery. The response to sepsis may be hypothermia rather than hyperthermia, and the total leukocyte and neutrophil counts can be depressed.

VIRAL INFECTIONS

Cytomegalovirus

The most common perinatal infection in the developed world is caused by cytomegalovirus (CMV). It is a ubiquitous DNA herpesvirus that eventually infects most humans, and some evidence of fetal infection is found in 0.2 to 2.2 percent of all neonates (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). The virus is secreted into all body fluids, and person-to-person contact with viral-laden saliva, semen, urine, blood, and nasopharyngeal and cervical secretions can transmit infection. The fetus may become infected by transplacental viremia, but amniocentesis does not result in iatrogenic fetal transmission (Revello, 2008). The neonate is infected at delivery or during breastfeeding and acquisition continues to accrue. Day-care centers, for example, are a frequent source.

Up to 85 percent of women from lower socioeconomic backgrounds are seropositive by the time of pregnancy, whereas only half of women in higher income groups have detectable IgG antibodies to CMV. Following primary CMV infection, and behaving similarly to other herpesvirus infections, the virus becomes latent but undergoes periodic reactivation characterized by viral shedding. This occurs despite high serum levels of anti-CMV IgG antibody. These antibodies do not prevent maternal recurrence, reactivation, or reinfection, nor do they totally mitigate fetal or neonatal infection.

Maternal Infection

Pregnancy does not increase the risk or severity of maternal CMV infection. Most primary infections are asymptomatic, but 10 to 15 percent of infected adults have a mononucleosis-like syndrome characterized by fever, pharyngitis, lymphadenopathy, and polyarthritis. Immunocompromised women may develop myocarditis, pneumonitis, hepatitis, retinitis, gastroenteritis, or meningoencephalitis. Most women with primary infection have elevated serum aminotransferase levels or lymphocytosis. Reactivated disease usually is asymptomatic, although viral shedding is common.

Because most primary maternal infections are clinically silent, they are detected by IgG seroconversion. The rate of seroconversion during pregnancy may reach 20 percent. Rates are higher in regions with greater seroprevalence (Mussi-Pinhata, 2018). Women who are seronegative before pregnancy and then acquire primary CMV infection during pregnancy are at highest risk of having a congenitally infected fetus. Vertical transmission rates for primary infection are 30 to 36 percent in the first trimester, 34 to 40 percent in the second, and 40 to 72 percent in the third (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a**;** Picone, 2017). Approximately 23 percent of congenital CMV infections in the United States are from primary maternal infection (Wang, 2011).

In contrast, recurrent or reactivated maternal infection infects the fetus in only 0.15 to 2 percent of pregnancies. However, up to 90 percent of congenitally infected neonates in high-prevalence areas are born to women with recurrent infection (Mussi-Pinhata, 2018). The diagnosis of recurrent or reactivated maternal CMV infection remains a challenge (Tanimura, 2017).

Congenital Infection

Newborns with apparent sequelae of intrauterine-acquired CMV infection are described as having *symptomatic CMV infection*. Congenital CMV infection is a syndrome that may include growth restriction, microcephaly, intracranial calcifications, chorioretinitis, mental and motor delays, sensorineural deficits, hepatosplenomegaly, jaundice, hemolytic anemia, and thrombocytopenic purpura. An example of periventricular calcifications is shown in Figure 67-1. Of the estimated 40,000

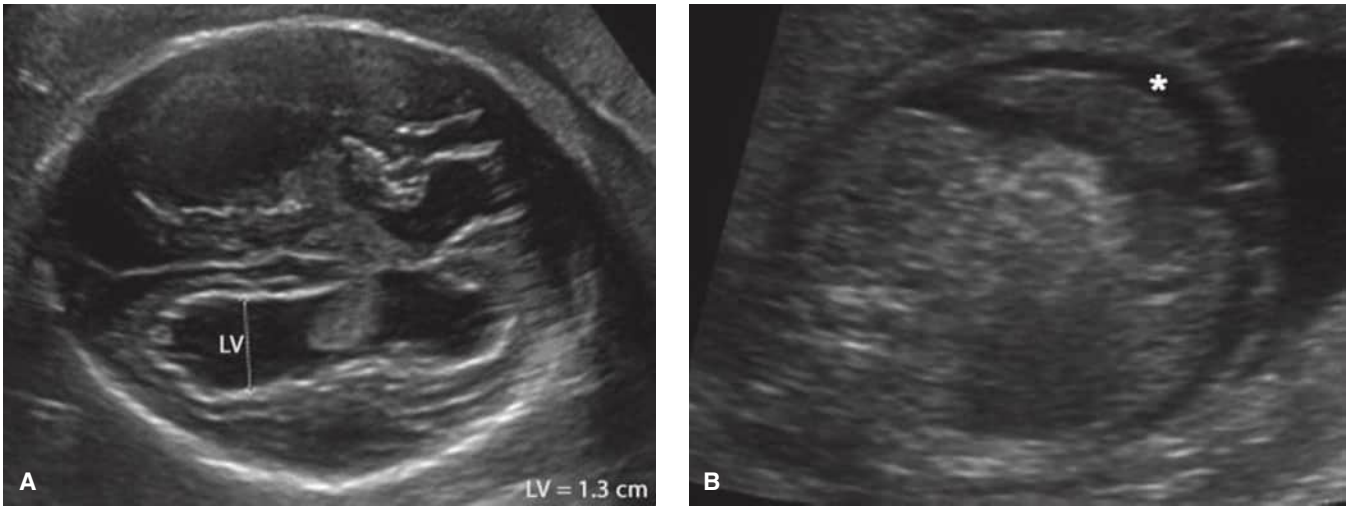


FIGURE 67-1 Congenital cytomegalovirus infection. **A.** Transverse view of the fetal head demonstrates ventriculomegaly (*LV*) and periventricular calcifications. **B.** Transverse image of the fetal abdomen with ascites (*asterisk*) and echogenic bowel.

CMV-infected neonates born each year, only 5 to 10 percent demonstrate this syndrome (Fowler, 1992). Thus, most infected newborns are asymptomatic at birth, but some develop late-onset sequelae. These may include hearing loss, neurological deficits, chorioretinitis, psychomotor delay, and learning disabilities. Infections in dichorionic twins most likely are nonconcordant (Egaña-Ugrinovic, 2016).

Prenatal Diagnosis

Routine prenatal CMV serological screening is not recommended. Pregnant women undergo serological testing for CMV if they present with a mononucleosis-like illness or if congenital infection is suspected based on abnormal sonographic findings (Fig. 67-2) (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a; Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2016). If

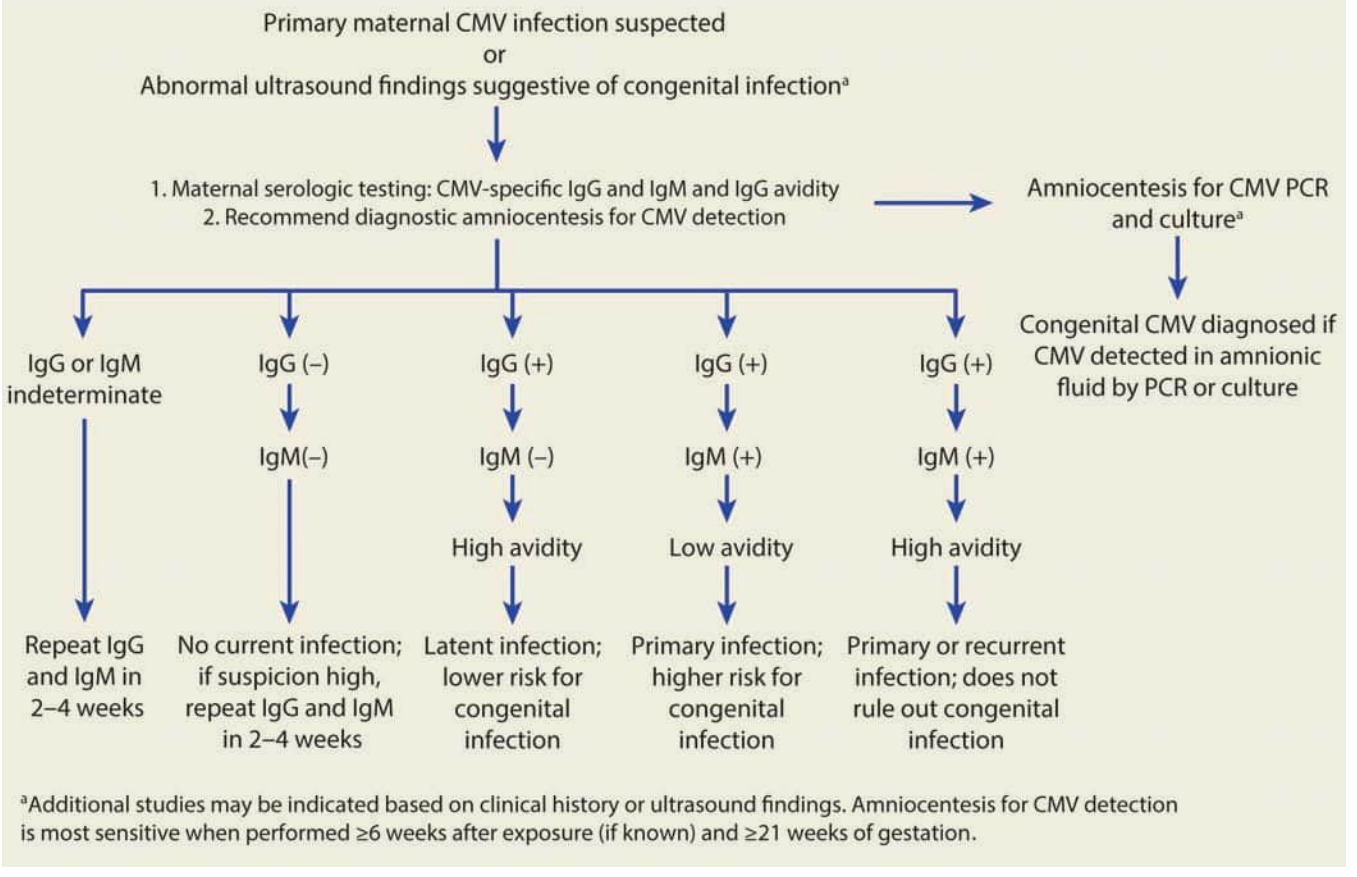


FIGURE 67-2 Diagnostic algorithm for evaluation of cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection in pregnancy. IgG = immunoglobulin G; IgM = immunoglobulin M; PCR = polymerase chain reaction.

either ultrasound or serological results indicate infection, diagnostic amniocentesis is pursued.

Serum levels of CMV IgM alone do not accurately diagnose primary infection because antibodies may persist for more than a year after infection and may rise again following reactivation or reinfection. To help clarify a primary infection from a past one, serological CMV-specific IgG avidity assays measure the "avidity" or binding strength between IgG antibodies and virus. Following primary infection, IgG antibodies have low avidity, which during the next 2 to 4 months matures to high avidity. Low IgG avidity indicates primary CMV infection within the preceding 3 to 4 months, and high IgG avidity excludes primary infection within the previous 3 months. Thus, primary infection during the first trimester may not be excluded if maternal avidity testing is performed in the second or third trimesters (Prince, 2014). In this case, diagnostic amniocentesis is still recommended if ultrasound findings suggest congenital infection. In other cases, early primary infection may be so recent that IgM is not yet detectable. If suspicion is high, serological assays are repeated in 2 to 4 weeks.

More commonly, numerous sonographic fetal findings may prompt CMV testing. Fetal abnormalities associated with CMV infection include microcephaly, ventriculomegaly, and cerebral calcifications; ascites, hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, and hyperechoic bowel; hydrops; early growth restriction; and oligohydramnios. Findings will prompt maternal serological CMV testing and diagnostic amniocentesis (see Fig. 67-2).

CMV polymerase chain reaction (PCR) testing of amnionic fluid is considered the gold standard for the diagnosis of fetal infection. Sensitivities range from 70 to 99 percent and depend on amniocentesis timing. Sensitivity is highest when amniocentesis is performed at least 6 weeks after maternal infection and after 21 weeks' gestation (Guerra, 2000). Abnormal sonographic findings seen in combination with positive findings in amnionic fluid samples are predictive of an approximate 75-percent risk of symptomatic congenital infection (Leruez-Ville, 2016a). A negative result from amnionic fluid PCR testing does not exclude fetal infection and may need to be repeated if suspicion for fetal infection is high. Diagnostic viral culture of amnionic fluid is also suitable although sensitivity is somewhat lower. Isolation of virus from cell culture allows detection of actively replicating virus, and rapid shell vial culture methods enable detection within 24 hours (Saldan, 2017).

Management and Prevention

The management of the immunocompetent pregnant woman with primary, reactivated, or recurrent CMV is limited to symptomatic treatment. If primary CMV infection is diagnosed serologically or if fetal sonographic abnormalities suggest congenital infection, amnionic fluid analysis should be offered (see Fig. 67-2). Counseling regarding fetal outcome depends on the gestational age during which primary infection is documented. Lipitz and associates (2013) reported hearing loss or neurodevelopmental delay in 15 to 25 percent of infants following primary maternal infection in the first trimester compared with 2 to 16 percent after second-trimester infection. Despite the high infection rate with primary infection in the first half of pregnancy, most fetuses develop normally. That said, pregnancy termination may be an option for some.

Currently, no curative treatments are available for CMV infection. One study group reported that treating pregnant women with high-dose oral valacyclovir, 8 g daily, apparently mitigated adverse outcomes for 80 percent of moderately asymptomatic fetuses compared with a historical cohort (Leruez-Ville, 2016b). Kimberlin and colleagues (2015) previously showed that oral valganciclovir administered for 6 weeks to neonates with symptomatic central nervous system (CNS) disease prevented hearing deterioration at 6 months and possibly later. In a recent randomized trial, CMV-specific hyperimmune globulin given to pregnant women with primary infection was ineffective in lowering perinatal CMV infection rates (Hughes, 2021).

For the CMV-affected fetus, a detailed anatomical sonographic evaluation is performed. Referral to a maternal–fetal medicine specialist is warranted, and serial sonography is indicated to identify poor growth, oligohydramnios, or fetal hydrops, which confers a worse prognosis. Antenatal surveillance is typically implemented after a shared discussion about the goals of surveillance in a fetus with known congenital infection. Delivery at term is the goal, although consultation with maternal–fetal medicine and neonatology experts is warranted to determine whether earlier delivery is indicated.

Prevention of congenital infection relies on avoiding maternal primary infection, especially in early pregnancy. Basic hygiene measures such as hand washing and not sharing food or utensils have been promoted, particularly in women with toddlers in day care (Rawlinson, 2017). CMV may be sexually transmitted among infected partners, but no data address the efficacy of preventive strategies. Several clinical trials of a CMV vaccine are underway (Gerna, 2019).

Varicella-Zoster Virus

Maternal Infection

Varicella-zoster virus (VZV) is a double-stranded DNA herpesvirus acquired predominantly during childhood, and 90 percent of adults have serological evidence of immunity. The incidence of varicella infection declined by approximately 95 percent after the introduction of varicella vaccination. Maternal and fetal varicella rates subsequently dropped (Baxter, 2014). In the United States between 2003 and 2010, the incidence of maternal varicella among 7.7 million pregnancy admissions was 1.21 cases in 10,000 (Zhang, 2015).

Primary infection—*varicella* or *chickenpox*—is transmitted by respiratory droplets or through direct contact with an infected individual. The incubation period is 10 to 21 days, and a nonimmune woman has a 70- to 90-percent risk of becoming infected after exposure (Whitley, 2018). Primary varicella has a 1- to 2-day flu-like prodrome, which is followed by pruritic vesicular lesions that crust after 3 to 7 days. Affected patients are contagious from 1 day before the rash onset until all lesions become crusted.

In adults, mortality risk rises with age and is predominantly due to secondary infection or VZV pneumonia (Leung, 2018). Risk factors for severe pneumonitis include immunosuppression and early bacterial co-infection (Mirouse, 2017). Although

the incidence was once thought to be higher in gravidas, only 2.5 percent develops VZV pneumonia (Zhang, 2015).

Symptoms of VZV pneumonia usually appear 3 to 5 days into the illness course. Fever, tachypnea, dry cough, dyspnea, and pleuritic pain are characteristic. Nodular infiltrates are similar to other viral pneumonias. Although resolution of pneumonitis parallels that of skin lesions, fever and compromised pulmonary function may persist for weeks.

If primary varicella is reactivated years later, it causes *herpes zoster* or *shingles*. The associated unilateral dermatomal vesicular eruption often produces severe pain. Zoster does not appear to be more frequent or severe in gravidas. Congenital varicella syndrome rarely develops in cases of maternal herpes zoster (Ahn, 2016). Zoster is contagious if there is direct contact with broken blisters.

Fetal and Neonatal Infection

In women with primary varicella during the first half of pregnancy, the fetus may develop *congenital varicella syndrome*. Some features include chorioretinitis, microphthalmia, cerebral cortical atrophy, growth restriction, hydronephrosis, limb hypoplasia, and cicatricial skin lesions (Ahn, 2016; Auriti, 2009). Among 1373 pregnant women with primary varicella infection in one study, only 0.4 percent with a rash before 13 weeks' gestation had neonates with congenital varicella syndrome (Enders, 1994). The highest risk period for vertical transmission was between 13 and 20 weeks, during which 2 percent of exposed fetuses had evidence of infection. After 20 weeks' gestation, the researchers found no clinical evidence of congenital varicella. Others described similar findings (Ahn, 2016). That said, fetuses that do develop congenital varicella in the third trimester may have CNS abnormalities and skin lesions (Koren, 2005).

If the fetus or neonate is exposed to active infection just before or during delivery, and therefore before maternal antibody has formed, the newborn faces a serious threat. Attack rates range from 25 to 50 percent, and mortality rates approach 30 percent. In some instances, neonates develop disseminated visceral and CNS disease, which is commonly fatal. For this reason, *varicella-zoster immune globulin (VariZIG)* should be administered to neonates born to mothers who have clinical evidence of varicella 5 days before and up to 2 days after delivery (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2013).

Diagnosis

Prior maternal varicella is usually confirmed clinically based on reported history of prior illness or vaccination. Infection is confirmed by PCR-based testing of vesicular fluid or of a crust that is lifted from the skin. Congenital varicella may be diagnosed using PCR-based testing of amnionic fluid, although a positive result does not correlate well with the development of congenital infection (Mendelson, 2006). A detailed anatomical sonographic evaluation performed at least 5 weeks after maternal infection may disclose abnormalities, but the sensitivity is low (Mandelbrot, 2012).

Management and Prevention

Maternal Viral Exposure. *Any patient diagnosed with primary varicella infection or herpes zoster should be isolated from pregnant women.* Several aspects of maternal VZV exposure and infection in pregnancy affect management. Exposed gravidas with a negative clinical history for prior chickenpox or vaccination should undergo VZV serological testing. At least 70 percent of these women will be seropositive and thus immune. Seronegative women should be given intramuscular VariZIG, 125 units per 10 kg body weight, up to a maximum dose of 625 units (5 vials). Although best given within 96 hours of exposure, its use is approved for up to 10 days to prevent or attenuate varicella infection (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2013). This passive immunization appears to be highly effective (Jespersen, 2016). In women with a reported history of chickenpox or varicella vaccination, VariZIG is not indicated.

Maternal and Fetal Infection. For women with primary varicella, a chest radiograph is recommended by many because VZV pneumonia often presents with few symptoms. Most women require only supportive care, but those who require intravenous fluids and especially those with pneumonia are hospitalized. Acyclovir therapy is given to women requiring hospitalization—10 to 15 mg/kg intravenously every 8 hours until afebrile. This is followed by oral acyclovir, 800 mg five times daily to complete 7 days and until lesions have crusted. For uncomplicated primary varicella without hospitalization or for herpes zoster, treatment is oral acyclovir, 800 mg five times daily for 7 days.

For the VZV-affected fetus, greater antenatal surveillance is typically implemented. Serial sonography may help identify poor growth. Delivery at term is the norm unless fetal findings prompt earlier timing.

Vaccination. An attenuated live-virus vaccine is recommended for nonpregnant adolescents and adults with no history of varicella. Two doses are needed and are separated by 4 to 8 weeks. The vaccine is not recommended for gravidas or for those who may become pregnant within one month following each vaccine dose. However, a registry of more than 1000 vaccine-exposed pregnancies reports no cases of congenital varicella syndrome or other associated congenital malformations (Peppa, 2020). The attenuated vaccine virus is not secreted in breast milk. Thus, postpartum vaccination should not be delayed because of breastfeeding (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019e).

■ Influenza Virus

Influenza A and B belong to the Orthomyxoviridae family of RNA viruses, and both cause epidemic human disease (Wright, 2018). Influenza A viruses are subclassified further by hemagglutinin (H) and neuraminidase (N) surface antigens. Influenza outbreaks occur annually, and severity is determined by the number of outpatient visits, hospitalizations, and deaths (Xu, 2019).

Maternal Infection

Fever, dry cough, and systemic symptoms characterize this infection, which usually is not life-threatening in otherwise healthy adults. However, pregnant women in general are more susceptible to serious complications, particularly pulmonary

involvement (Mertz, 2017; Rasmussen, 2012). Severe infection during the 2009 to 2010 pandemic had a maternal mortality rate of 1 percent and caused 12 percent of pregnancy-related deaths (Callaghan, 2015).

No firm evidence links influenza A virus and congenital malformations. Rather, the increased rates of neural-tube defects seen in neonates born to women with influenza may be associated with hyperthermia. Viremia is infrequent, and transplacental passage is rare (Rasmussen, 2012). Stillbirth, preterm delivery, and first-trimester abortion have all been reported, but these usually correlate with maternal infection severity (Fell, 2017; Meijer, 2015; Wang, 2021).

Influenza may be detected by nasopharyngeal swab of symptomatic patients using rapid molecular or viral antigen detection assays known as rapid influenza diagnostic tests (RIDTs). Recently, commercially available multiplex molecular assays have allowed nucleic acid detection and differentiation of both influenza and severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS)-CoV-2 respiratory viruses. Molecular tests are more sensitive and specific than RIDTs, which have sensitivities of 50 to 70 percent. *Decisions to administer antiviral medications for influenza treatment or chemoprophylaxis should be based on clinical symptoms and epidemiological factors*. Namely, the start of therapy should not be delayed pending testing results.

Management

Of available agents, *neuraminidase inhibitors* are highly effective for the treatment of early influenza A and B. These include *oseltamivir* (Tamiflu), which is taken orally for treatment and for chemoprophylaxis; *zanamivir* (Relenza), which is inhaled for treatment; and *peramivir* (Rapivab), which is administered intravenously. A newer agent, *baloxavir marboxil* (Xofluza), was approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration in 2018 for acute uncomplicated influenza, although data in pregnancy are limited.

In pregnancy, experience is most robust with oseltamivir. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019a) and the Infectious Diseases Society of America recommend oral oseltamivir—75 mg twice daily for 5 days—for pregnant women with suspected or confirmed influenza, ideally within 48 hours of symptom onset (Uyeki, 2019). Early administration may reduce length of hospital stays (Oboho, 2016). For prophylaxis following exposure to a contact with confirmed infection, oseltamivir, 75 mg orally once daily for 7 days, is recommended. Antibacterial medications are added when a secondary bacterial pneumonia is suspected (Chap. 54, p. 962).

Vaccination

Effective vaccines against influenza are formulated annually and encouraged for all women who will be pregnant during the influenza season, which extends from October through March. Vaccination throughout the influenza season, but optimally before the end of October, is recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019c; Grohskopf, 2020). This is especially important for those affected by chronic medical disorders such as diabetes, heart disease, asthma, or human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) infection. Influenza vaccination was associated with a 40-percent reduction in influenza-associated hospitalizations in pregnant women (Thompson, 2019).

Importantly, no evidence shows teratogenicity or developmental problems in children exposed to maternal vaccination (Conlin, 2018; Ludvigsson, 2016). Moreover, for mothers vaccinated during pregnancy, their infants are protected from lower respiratory tract infections for the first 3 months of life (Nunes, 2017). All inactivated or recombinant influenza vaccines may be used in gravidas (Grohskopf, 2020). However, a live attenuated influenza virus vaccine available for intranasal use is not recommended for pregnant women. Inactivated or recombinant influenza vaccines may be administered concomitantly or sequentially with other vaccines including COVID-19 and tetanus toxoid, reduced diphtheria toxoid, and acellular pertussis (Tdap) vaccines.

Coronavirus

These single-stranded RNA viruses are named for the "crown" of surface proteins covering the particles. Seven coronaviruses infect humans, four of which cause upper respiratory disease characterized by rhinorrhea, sneezing, and congestion (Cui, 2019). Three newer coronaviruses of zoonotic origin have emerged in the past two decades and may cause serious lower respiratory tract illness in humans. These are SARS-CoV, Middle East respiratory syndrome (MERS-CoV), and the novel coronavirus of 2019 (SARS-CoV-2).

The first SARS-CoV emerged from China in 2003 and infected more than 8000 people. In a cohort of 12 pregnant women with confirmed infection, the predominant symptoms were myalgia, chills, and cough (Wong, 2004). All women had radiographic evidence of atypical pneumonia, 33 percent required mechanical ventilation, and 80 percent of women diagnosed after 24 weeks' gestation delivered preterm. Although no vertical transmission occurred, the maternal fatality rate was 25 percent.

MERS-CoV emerged in the Middle East in 2012 and can cause respiratory illness, acute kidney injury, and gastrointestinal illness (Hui, 2018). Although experience with MERS-CoV in pregnancy is limited, the mortality rate in a small series was 40 percent (Assiri, 2016).

SARS-CoV-2

This virus causes the clinical illness known as coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19). The SARS-CoV-2 pandemic began in China in late 2019, and by mid-2021 it had caused respiratory illness in more than 151 million people and 3 million deaths globally (World Health Organization, 2021). The mortality rate is between 1 and 2 percent in adults, and it increases sharply with age (Verity, 2020). Compared with MERS-CoV and SARS-CoV, SARS-CoV-2 is more infectious but less deadly. Variants with increased transmissibility are emerging, and the Delta (B.1.617.2) variant has recently predominated (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020a). Evidence suggests increased disease severity in gravidas who acquire this variant (Adhikari, 2021).

SARS-CoV-2 is predominantly transmitted via respiratory droplets. Asymptomatic or presymptomatic individuals account for 40 to 50 percent of transmissions (He, 2020; Kimball, 2020). The immune response to natural infection appears to require both humoral and cell-mediated immunity (Hartley, 2020). Because of the potential for asymptomatic transmission,

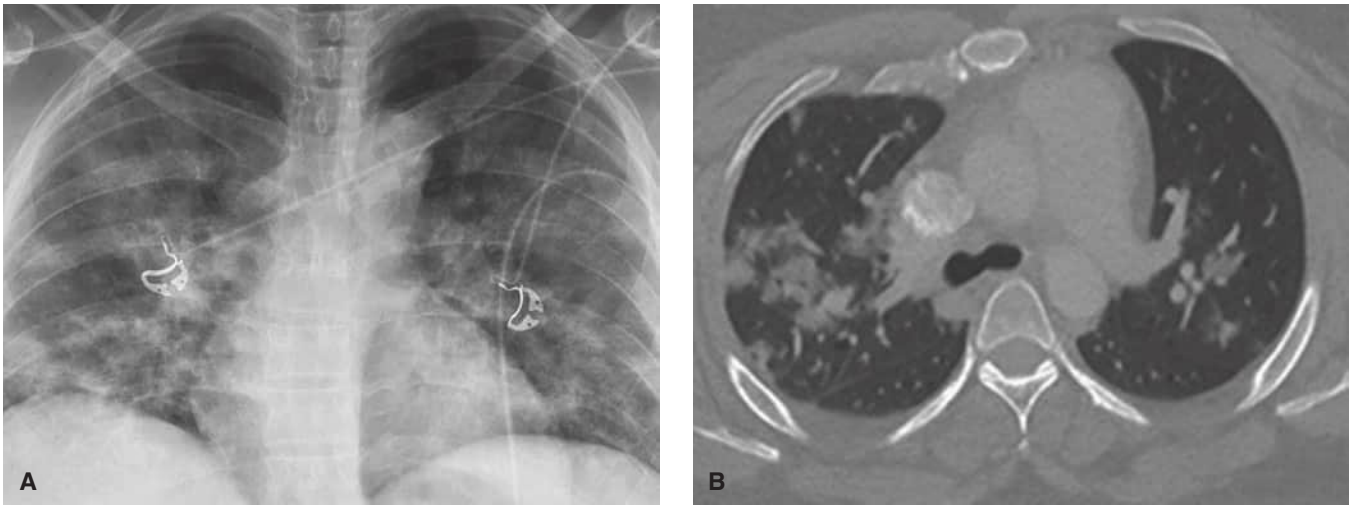


FIGURE 67-3 **A.** Chest radiograph of a critically ill pregnant woman at 26 weeks' gestation demonstrating diffuse bilateral pulmonary opacities with peripheral predominance. **B.** Axial image of the chest from a computed tomographic scan demonstrates advanced COVID-19 disease with multiple peripheral lobular consolidations and ground glass opacities.

interventions such as masking and social distancing are recommended (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021b).

Maternal Infection

COVID-19 symptoms in gravidas do not differ from those in nonpregnant individuals. An incubation period of approximately 5 to 14 days is followed by fever, cough, and myalgia. Loss of smell (anosmia) and taste (ageusia) are reported in more than half of patients (Patel, 2020). Diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting are somewhat less common. Lower respiratory involvement develops in some individuals approximately 8 days after symptom onset (Huang, 2020). Signs of worsening of disease include dyspnea, tachypnea, decreased oxygen saturation, and rarely, acute respiratory distress syndrome. Imaging indicative of moderate to severe viral pneumonia reveals multifocal opacities in a predominantly peripheral distribution and ground glass opacities on computed tomography (Fig. 67-3). Pregnant women may be at higher risk for intensive care unit admission, invasive ventilation, and death (Zambrano, 2020). A study from Parkland Hospital demonstrated that 5 percent of infected gravidas developed severe or critical illness, and diabetes may be a risk factor (Adhikari, 2020). Although COVID-19 was not associated with adverse pregnancy outcomes, women with severe illness experienced a higher rate of preterm birth. In a surveillance program of COVID-19 in pregnant women, the rate of preterm birth was higher than the general population—13 percent compared with 10 percent (Woodworth, 2020).

Fetal Infection

Infection of the placenta by SARS-CoV-2 has been demonstrated, but transmission to the fetus is rare (Schwartz, 2020). Microscopic examination of the placenta may demonstrate inflammation and syncytiotrophoblast necrosis (Fig. 67-4). Standardized criteria have been proposed for determining definite, probable,

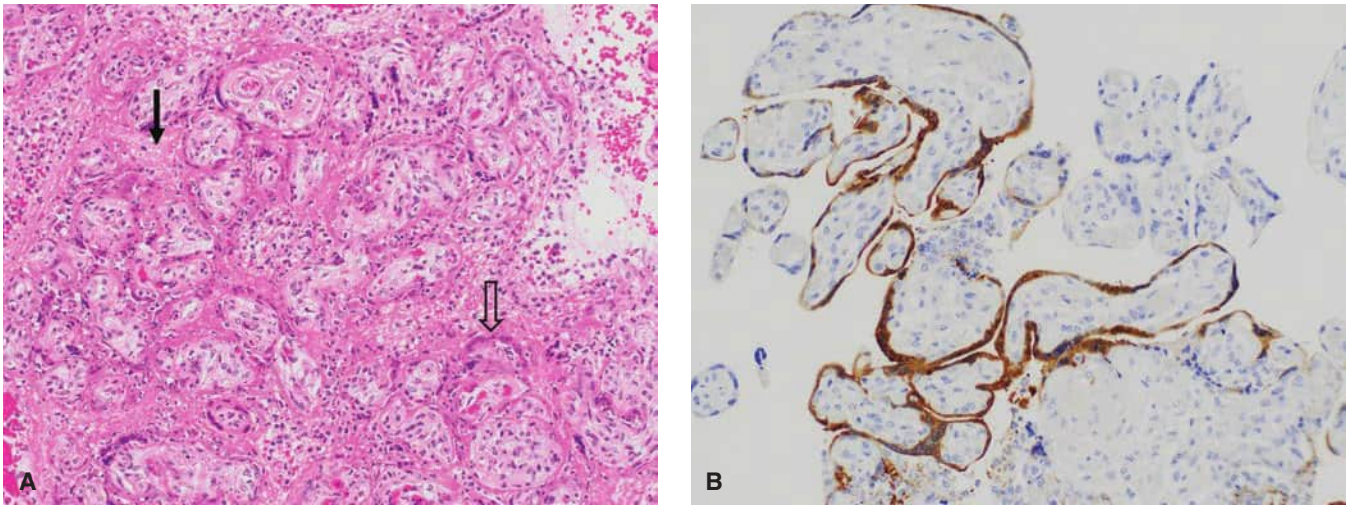


FIGURE 67-4 Placental SARS-CoV-2 infection. **A.** Histologic slide of a placenta with known maternal SARS-CoV-2 infection. Large, discrete areas of the placenta showed increased perivillous fibrin (*solid arrow*), focal trophoblast necrosis (*open arrow*), and marked histiocytic inflammation. **B.** Anti-SARS-CoV-2 viral nucleocapsid antibody is positive in villous trophoblast (*brown immunostaining*), confirming placental infection. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Rebecca Collins.)

or possible placental infection by SARS-CoV-2 (Roberts, 2021). When vertical transmission does occur, infected neonates may have asymptomatic, mild, or severe illness (Raschetti, 2020; Sisman, 2020). Adhikari and associates (2020) demonstrated infection in 3 percent of neonates tested at 24 and 48 hours after birth. Mechanisms of vertical transmission are poorly understood. No evidence suggests transmission of SARS-CoV-2 through breastmilk (Centeno-Tablante, 2021). Newborns with SARS-CoV-2 do not need to be separated from their mothers but are isolated from the general newborn nursery population.

Diagnosis

Active maternal infection can be diagnosed from nasopharyngeal, nasal, or saliva specimens. Reverse transcriptase–polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) testing identifies viral RNA, whereas rapid antigen testing detects viral antigen. Several commercial tests are available and listed on the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) (2021a) website. Rapid antigen tests are inexpensive but less sensitive in asymptomatic individuals. Thus, test result interpretation depends on pretest probability, epidemiological risk factors, and intended use for diagnostic or screening purposes in health-care or congregate settings. The latter include dormitories, correctional facilities, nursing homes, and housing shelters providing social services. Serological screening for IgG is used for epidemiological and seroprevalence studies rather than diagnosis of acute infection.

Management

For mild to moderate illness, supportive care is indicated and delivery is reserved for obstetric indications. For those with mild illness at high risk for clinical progression, anti-SARS-CoV-2 monoclonal antibodies may be administered within 10 days of symptom onset and according to variant predominance (National Institutes of Health, 2021). Pregnancy is considered a high-risk criterion, and use of monoclonal antibodies can be considered in consultation with specialists. Inpatient observation may be considered for moderate illness, as up to 40 percent may worsen (Adhikari, 2020). For pregnant women with severe to critical illness, inpatient management includes supporting respiratory function, managing comorbid conditions, and, when indicated, coordinating safe delivery with subspecialists (Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, 2021). The goal of respiratory support is to maintain oxygen saturation ≥95 percent and reduce dyspnea and tachypnea (Pacheco, 2020). Prone positioning of gravidas to improve oxygenation in severe cases of COVID-19 pneumonia has been described (Tolcher, 2020).

With severe infection, a dysregulated inflammatory response contributes to lung injury and hypoxia. A United Kingdom trial found decreased mortality rates at 28 days with intravenous or oral dexamethasone, 6 mg daily for up to 10 days in patients requiring supplemental oxygen or mechanical ventilation, compared with usual care (RECOVERY Collaborative Group, 2021). In the ACTT-1 trial, intravenous remdesivir, a broad-spectrum antiviral agent, was associated with shortened time to recovery among patients requiring low-flow supplemental oxygen (Beigel, 2020). Remdesivir is approved by the Food and Drug Administration for treatment of COVID-19 in hospitalized adults. Data on efficacy and safety of antiviral and biological agents for COVID-19 in pregnancy are limited. In a study of remdesivir in hospitalized gravidas with COVID-19, no serious adverse events were reported, but elevated serum aminotransaminase levels were common (Burwick, 2020). Decisions to use currently available therapeutic agents under Emergency Use Authorization are made in consultation with experts and should balance potential benefits and theoretical risks (National Institutes of Health, 2021). Antibiotics for respiratory illness are rarely necessary unless bacterial co-infection is suspected.

Prevention

Non-pharmaceutical interventions are mainstays for reducing the spread of SARS-COV-2. These include universal masking, maintaining physical distance of at least 6 feet, and hand hygiene. In healthcare settings, airborne and contact isolation precautions are used, particularly when invasive procedures are planned (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021c).

Currently available vaccines are highly protective against viral transmission and clinical disease in nonpregnant adults (Baden, 2021; Polack, 2020). In one study, the BNT162b2 mRNA vaccine was associated with a reduction in COVID-19 diagnosed in pregnancy (Goldshtein, 2021). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (2021) recommend that pregnant and lactating women receive the COVID-19 vaccine. Individuals who accept vaccination are counseled to anticipate common reactions such as injection-site pain, headache, fatigue, myalgia, and low-grade fever (Shimabukuro, 2021). Recent evidence from national experts suggests no greater miscarriage rate in gravidas receiving the vaccine (Zauche, 2021).

■ Mumps Virus

This is an RNA paramyxovirus that primarily infects the salivary glands but also may involve the gonads, meninges, pancreas, and other organs. It is transmitted by direct contact with respiratory secretions, saliva, or fomites. Most transmission occurs before and within 5 days of parotitis onset, and droplet isolation is recommended during this time (Kutty, 2010). Treatment is symptomatic, and mumps during pregnancy is no more severe than in nonpregnant adults.

An increased risk of spontaneous abortion has been observed in women who acquire mumps in the first trimester. Infection is not associated with congenital malformations, and fetal infection is rare (McLean, 2013).

Recent outbreaks in previously vaccinated young adults prompted the recommendation of a third dose of measles-mumps-rubella (MMR) vaccine for at-risk nonpregnant individuals during any outbreak (Marin, 2018). The MMR vaccine is a live-virus vaccine. Thus, it is contraindicated in pregnancy, although fetal risk from inadvertent administration is theoretical (McLean, 2013). Pregnancy should be avoided for 30 days after vaccination. The vaccine is encouraged for susceptible postpartum women, and breastfeeding is not contraindicated.

■ Measles Virus (Rubeola)

This is a highly contagious RNA virus of the family Paramyxoviridae that infects only humans. In endemic areas, annual

outbreaks of measles occur in late winter and early spring, with larger epidemic cycles every 2 to 5 years. Although once declared eliminated in the United States, recent outbreaks raise concerns regarding waning population immunity (Patel, 2019; Strebel, 2019). Transmission is by respiratory droplets, and the secondary attack rate among susceptible contacts exceeds 90 percent (Rainwater-Lovett, 2018).

Typical symptoms include fever, coryza, conjunctivitis, and cough. *Koplik spots*, small white lesions with surrounding erythema, appear on the buccal mucosa. A characteristic erythematous maculopapular rash develops on the face and neck and then spreads to the back, trunk, and extremities. Diagnosis of acute infection is made by detection of measles-specific IgM antibodies in serum. Additionally, measles RNA may be detected by RT-PCR testing of a throat swab, nasopharyngeal swab, or urine specimen. Treatment of measles is supportive, and evaluation for secondary infections may be necessary.

For pregnant women without evidence of measles immunity, postexposure prophylaxis is intravenous immune globulin (IVIG), and a 400-mg/kg dose is ideally given within 6 days of exposure (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020d). Human immune globulin (IG) is a blood product used to provide antibodies for short-term prevention of infectious diseases and is prepared from plasma pools derived from thousands of donors.

Measles in pregnancy is associated with increased risk for pregnancy loss, pneumonia, and death (Eberhart-Phillips, 1993; Ogbuanu, 2014). If a woman develops measles shortly before delivery, risk of serious infection developing in the neonate is considerable, and neonatal chemoprophylaxis is warranted.

As a live-virus vaccine, MMR vaccine is not provided during pregnancy as prevention. However, MMR vaccination is not an indication for pregnancy termination. Susceptible women are vaccinated routinely postpartum, and breastfeeding is not contraindicated.

Rubella Virus

Also called German measles, rubella is caused by an RNA togavirus and is of minor importance in the absence of pregnancy. Transmission is via nasopharyngeal secretions, and the transmission rate is 80 percent to nonimmune individuals. The peak incidence is late winter and spring in endemic areas (Lambert, 2015).

In 2018, more than 26,000 cases of rubella virus were reported worldwide (Grant, 2019). In the United States, ongoing or sustained transmission was eliminated in 2004, and large epidemics of rubella have virtually disappeared here because of immunization. However, up to 10 percent of women are susceptible, and cases are also imported each year from countries with incomplete vaccine coverage (Al Hammoud, 2018).

Maternal rubella is usually a mild febrile illness that follows an incubation of 12 to 23 days. A generalized maculopapular rash begins on the face and spreads to the trunk and extremities. Other symptoms may include arthralgias or arthritis, head and neck lymphadenopathy, and conjunctivitis. However, 25 to 50 percent of infections are asymptomatic. Viremia usually precedes clinical signs by approximately a week, and adults are infectious during viremia and through 7 days after the rash appears. Up to half of maternal infections are subclinical despite viremia that may cause spontaneous abortion or devastating fetal infection, described subsequently.

Diagnosis

Rubella virus may be isolated from the urine, blood, nasopharynx, and cerebrospinal fluid for up to 2 weeks after rash onset. However, the diagnosis is usually made with serological analysis. Specific IgM antibody can be detected using enzyme-linked immunoassay for 4 to 5 days after onset of clinical disease, but antibody can persist for up to 6 weeks after appearance of the rash. Importantly, rubella virus reinfection can give rise to transient low levels of IgM. With this, no adverse fetal effects have been described. A false-positive IgM result is also possible in populations with low prevalence of disease.

Serum IgG antibody titers peak 1 to 2 weeks after rash onset. These may fail to distinguish between recent infection and preexisting immunity if the specimen is obtained more than a week after symptoms. IgG avidity testing aids differentiation, and high-avidity IgG antibodies indicate an infection at least 2 months prior.

Fetal Effects

Rubella virus is one of the most complete teratogens, and its effects are worst during organogenesis. Up to 90 percent of pregnant women with rubella and a rash during the first 12 weeks of gestation have an affected fetus (Miller, 1982). At 13 to 14 weeks' gestation, this incidence is 50 percent, and by the end of the second trimester, it is 25 percent. Defects are rare after 20 weeks' gestation.

Features of congenital rubella syndrome are cardiac septal defects, pulmonary stenosis, microcephaly, cataracts, microphthalmia, and hepatosplenomegaly (Yazigi, 2017). Other abnormalities include sensorineural deafness, intellectual disability, neonatal purpura, and radiolucent bone disease. *Neonates born with congenital rubella may shed the virus for many months and thus be a threat to other infants and to susceptible adults who contact them.*

Management and Prevention

Rubella has no specific treatment. Droplet precautions for 7 days after the onset of the rash are recommended. Postexposure passive immunization with IVIG may be of benefit if given within 5 days of exposure (Young, 2015).

When rubella infection is diagnosed in the mother, targeted sonographic examination is performed to evaluate for fetal structural anomalies described in the last section. Referral to and counseling by a maternal–fetal medicine specialist is warranted. If ultrasound findings suggest congenital infection or growth delay, diagnostic amniocentesis is recommended to detect rubella virus by PCR and to test for other congenital infections.

As prevention, MMR vaccine should be offered to nonpregnant women of childbearing age who lack evidence of immunity. Vaccination of all susceptible hospital personnel who might be exposed to patients with rubella or who might have contact with pregnant women is important. Rubella

vaccination is avoided 1 month before or during pregnancy because the vaccine contains attenuated live virus, although the fetal malformation risk is theoretical. MMR vaccination is not an indication for pregnancy termination. Prenatal serological screening for rubella is indicated for all pregnant women. Women found to be nonimmune are offered the MMR vaccine postpartum.

■ Parvovirus B19

This virus causes *erythema infectiosum* or *fifth disease*. It is a small, single-stranded DNA virus that replicates in rapidly proliferating cells such as erythroblast precursors. This can lead to anemia, which is its primary fetal effect. In individuals with increased red cell turnover, such as with sickle-cell disease, parvovirus infection may cause an aplastic crisis.

The primary mode of parvovirus transmission is respiratory secretions, although infection through blood transfusion or organ donation has been reported. Most infections occur in late winter to early spring. The maternal infection rate is highest in women with school-aged children and in day-care workers. Viremia develops 4 to 14 days after exposure, and a rash follows several days later. An otherwise immunocompetent individual is no longer infectious at the onset of the rash. By adulthood, only 40 percent of women are susceptible. The annual seroconversion rate is 1 to 2 percent, and the secondary attack rate approaches 50 percent.

Maternal Infection

In 20 to 30 percent of adults, infection is asymptomatic. In others, fever, headache, and flu-like symptoms may begin in the last few days of the viremic phase. Several days later, a bright red rash with erythroderma affects the face and gives a slapped-cheek appearance. The rash becomes lacelike and spreads to the trunk and extremities. Adults often have milder rashes and develop symmetrical polyarthralgia that may persist for several weeks. No evidence suggests that parvovirus infection is altered by pregnancy. With recovery, IgM antibody is generated 7 to 10 days postinfection, and production persists for 3 to 4 months. Several days after IgM is produced, IgG antibody is detectable and persists for life with natural immunity (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

Fetal Infection

There is vertical transmission to the fetus in up to a third of maternal parvovirus infections (de Jong, 2011; Lamont, 2011). Fetal infection is associated with abortion, nonimmune hydrops, and stillbirth (Fig. 67-5). The fetal loss rate with serologically proven parvovirus infection is 8 to 17 percent before 20 weeks' gestation, and 2 to 6 percent after midpregnancy (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). Currently, no data support screening asymptomatic mothers or evaluating stillborn fetuses for parvovirus infection.

Fetal hydrops develops in approximately 4 percent of gravidas infected with parvovirus (Enders, 2004). Still, it is the most frequent infectious cause of nonimmune hydrops in autopsied fetuses (Rogers, 1999). Hydrops usually stems from infection in the first half of gestation. In one report, more than 80 percent of cases of fetal infection developed within 10 weeks of maternal infection. The mean interval was 6 to 7 weeks (Yaegashi, 2000). The critical period for maternal infection leading to fetal hydrops is estimated to be between 13 and 16 weeks' gestation, which coincides with the period in which fetal hepatic hemopoiesis is greatest (Chap. 7, p. 128).

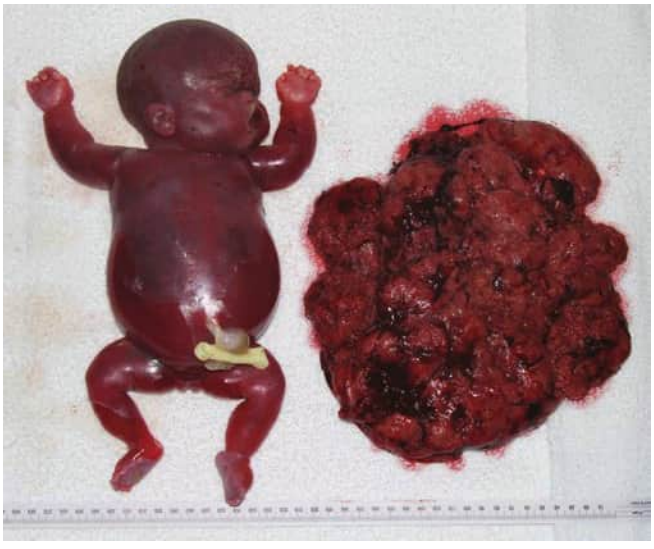


FIGURE 67-5 Stillborn, hydropic fetus and characteristically large placenta resulting from intrauterine parvovirus B19 infection. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. April Bleich.)

Diagnosis and Management

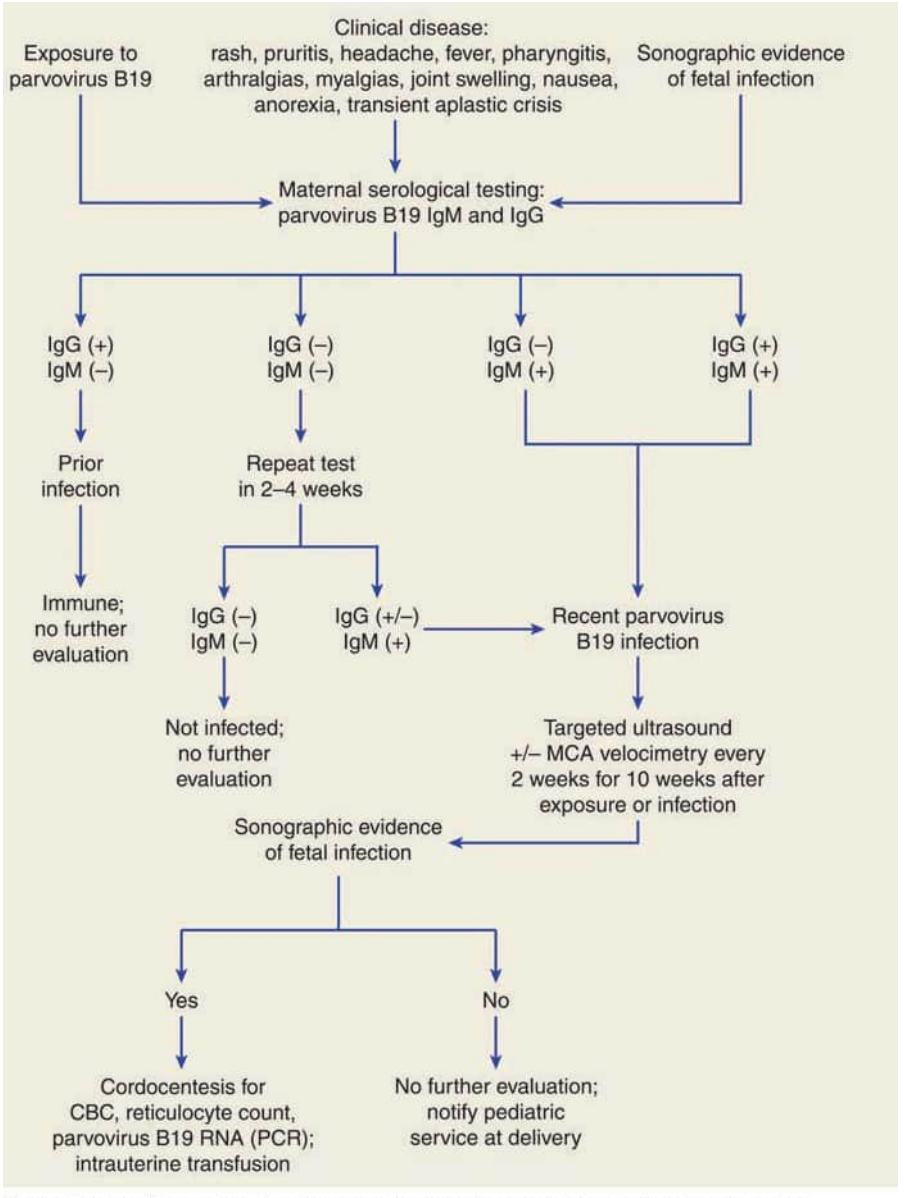
An algorithm for diagnosis of maternal parvoviral infection is illustrated in Figure 67-6. Diagnosis is generally made by maternal serological testing for specific IgG and IgM antibodies. Viral DNA may be detectable by PCR testing in maternal serum during the prodrome and persist for months to years after infection. Fetal infection is diagnosed by detection of B19 viral DNA in amnionic fluid (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). Fetal and maternal viral loads do not predict fetal morbidity and mortality (de Haan, 2007).

Most cases of parvovirus-associated hydrops develop in the first 10 weeks after infection. Thus, sonography should be performed every 2 weeks in women with recent infection. As discussed in Chapter 14 (p. 262), middle cerebral artery (MCA) Doppler interrogation is used to predict fetal anemia. MCA Doppler findings that suggest anemia may warrant fetal blood sampling followed by transfusion.

In hydropic fetuses without transfusion, mortality rates up to 30 percent have been reported. With transfusion, 94 percent of hydrops cases resolve within 6 to 12 weeks, and the overall mortality rate is <10 percent. Most fetuses require only one transfusion because hemopoiesis resumes as infection resolves.

Long-term Prognosis

Neurodevelopmental outcomes in fetuses transfused for B19 infection-induced anemia have varied. In one review of 24 transfused hydropic fetuses, abnormal neurodevelopment was noted in 5 of 16 survivors—32 percent—at 6 months to 8 years (Nagel, 2007). Outcomes were not related to severity of fetal anemia or acidemia, and these investigators hypothesized that the infection



[a]Hydrops fetalis, hepatomegaly, splenomegaly, placentomegaly, elevated MCA peak systolic velocity

FIGURE 67-6 Algorithm for evaluation and management of human parvovirus B19 infection in pregnancy. CBC = complete blood count; IgG = immunoglobulin G; IgM = immunoglobulin M; MCA = middle cerebral artery; PCR = polymerase chain reaction; RNA = ribonucleic acid.

itself induced cerebral damage. In another study of 28 children treated with intrauterine transfusion, 11 percent had neurodevelopmental impairment during evaluation at a median age of 5 years (de Jong, 2012). Conversely, Dembinski (2003) found no significant neurodevelopmental delay despite severe fetal anemia.

Prevention

Currently, no parvovirus vaccine is available, and no antiviral agent is recommended for prevention or treatment of maternal or fetal infection. Decisions to avoid higher-risk work settings are complex and require assessment of exposure risks. Pregnant women should be counseled that risks for infection approximate 5 percent for casual, infrequent contact; 20 percent for intense, prolonged work exposure such as for teachers; and 50 percent for close, frequent interaction such as in the home. Workers at day-care centers and schools need not avoid infected children because infectivity is greatest before clinical illness. Last, infected children do not require isolation.

Other Respiratory Viruses

More than 200 antigenically distinct respiratory viruses cause the common cold, pharyngitis, laryngitis, bronchitis, and pneumonia. The DNA-containing adenovirus is more likely to produce cough and lower respiratory tract involvement, including pneumonia. The RNA-containing rhinovirus, respiratory enterovirus, and nonpandemic common coronavirus usually produce a trivial illness characterized by rhinorrhea, sneezing, and congestion. An enterovirus named EV-D68 caused large outbreaks of respiratory illness in several countries and was linked to clusters of polio-like illness in children, known as *acute flaccid myelitis* (Sejvar, 2016).

The teratogenic risks of respiratory viruses are low. In one study, amnionic fluid viral PCR testing was done on samples from 1191 women undergoing amniocentesis for fetal karyotyping (Adams, 2012). Viral PCR was positive in 6.5 percent, and adenovirus was the virus most frequently identified. There was an association with fetal-growth restriction, nonimmune hydrops, foot/hand abnormalities, and neural-tube defects. Adenoviral infection is a known cause of childhood myocarditis and has been reported in cases of fetal myocarditis and nonimmune hydrops (Towbin, 1994).

Other Enteroviruses

Characterized by a clinical phenotype distinct from that of respiratory enteroviruses, these viruses are a major subgroup of RNA picornaviruses that include nonrespiratory enterovirus species, coxsackievirus, poliovirus, and echovirus. They are trophic for intestinal epithelium but can also cause widespread maternal, fetal, and neonatal infections that may include the CNS, skin, heart, and lungs. Most maternal infections are subclinical yet can be fatal to the fetus-neonate (Tassin, 2014). Hepatitis A is an enterovirus discussed in Chapter 58 (p. 1036).

Coxsackievirus infections with group A and B are usually asymptomatic. Symptomatic infections—usually with group B—include aseptic meningitis; polio-like illness; hand, foot, and mouth disease; rashes; respiratory disease; pleuritis; pericarditis;

and myocarditis. No treatment or vaccination is available (Cohen, 2018). Coxsackievirus may be transmitted by maternal secretions to the fetus at delivery in up to half of mothers who seroconverted during pregnancy (Modlin, 1988). Transplacental passage also has been reported, which may cause neonatal skin lesions, myocarditis, pneumonia, or encephalitis (Ornoy, 2006). Some have reported higher rates of cardiac anomalies and of low-birthweight, preterm, and growth-restricted newborns (Chen, 2010).

Polioviruses are highly contagious and cause subclinical or mild infections. The virus is trophic for the brain, and it can cause paralytic poliomyelitis (Cohen, 2018). Siegel (1955) demonstrated that pregnant women not only were more susceptible to polio but also had a higher death rate. Perinatal transmission has been observed, especially when maternal infection developed in the third trimester (Bates, 1955). Inactivated subcutaneous polio vaccine is recommended for susceptible pregnant women who must travel to endemic areas or are placed in other high-risk situations. Live oral polio vaccine has been used for mass vaccination during pregnancy without harmful fetal effects (Harjulehto, 1989).

■ Mosquito-borne Viruses

West Nile Virus

This mosquito-borne RNA flavivirus is a human neuropathogen. It is the most common cause of arthropod-borne disease in the United States (McDonald, 2019). West Nile viral infection is typically acquired through mosquito bites and is rarely transmitted through donated blood or organs. The incubation period is 2 to 14 days, and most persons have mild or no symptoms. Less than 1 percent of infected adults develop meningoencephalitis or acute flaccid paralysis. With these, presenting symptoms may include fever, mental status changes, muscle weakness, and coma (Stewart, 2013).

West Nile infection is diagnosed based on clinical symptoms and detection of viral IgG and IgM in serum and IgM in cerebrospinal fluid (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2018). Management is supportive, and no effective antiviral treatment is available. The primary strategy for preventing exposure in pregnancy is use of insect repellant containing *N*,*N*-diethyl-*m*-toluamide (DEET), which is considered safe (Wylie, 2016). Avoiding outdoor activity and stagnant water and wearing protective clothing also are recommended.

Adverse effects of West Nile viremia on pregnancy are unclear. Animal data suggest that embryos are susceptible, and one case report of human fetal infection at 27 weeks' gestation described chorioretinitis and severe cerebral leukomalacia (Alpert, 2003; Julander, 2006). However, data from the West Nile Virus Pregnancy Registry show no increased risk for miscarriage, preterm birth, or major malformations (O'Leary, 2006; Pridjian, 2016). No evidence suggests that maternal West Nile virus infection is harmful to a breastfeeding infant.

Zika Virus

This RNA flavivirus is the first major mosquito-borne teratogen recognized (Rasmussen, 2016). Zika virus is primarily transmitted by mosquito bite, but sexual transmission is possible. The virus may be detected in body fluids for months following acute infection (Joguet, 2017; Paz-Bailey, 2017). It was first introduced to a nonimmune Brazilian population in 2014, but as of 2020, no countries had reported active Zika transmission.

Maternal-Fetal Infection. Zika infection is asymptomatic in approximately 80 percent of adults. It may cause mild rash, fever, headache, arthralgia, and conjunctivitis lasting a few days. The fetus can be severely infected whether or not the mother is symptomatic. In one report of 134 women with positive RT-PCR results, the fetal mortality rate was 7 percent (Brasil, 2016). Among live births with first-trimester exposure, the rate of fetal birth defects ranges from 5 to 15 percent (Reynolds, 2017). In the most severely affected fetuses, a *congenital Zika syndrome* has been described that includes microcephaly, lissencephaly, ventriculomegaly, intracranial calcifications, ocular abnormalities, and congenital contractures (Honein, 2017).

Diagnosis and Management. Zika virus is typically detectable in blood around the time of symptom onset and may persist days to months in pregnant women (Meaney-Delman, 2016). Serum IgM antibodies typically become detectable within the first 2 weeks and may persist for months. IgG antibodies develop shortly after IgM ones and confer long-lived immunity (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2019).

Laboratory testing for Zika infection is recommended only in *symptomatic* gravidas with residence in or recent travel to areas with active dengue transmission and risk for Zika transmission (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2019). For a pregnant woman within 12 weeks of symptom onset, PCR testing of serum and urine specimens for both dengue and Zika virus RNA is recommended. For women with prenatal ultrasound findings suggesting congenital Zika syndrome, Zika virus PCR and IgM are initially performed on serum and urine. Amnionic fluid PCR may be performed, although less is known about its diagnostic accuracy for congenital infection.

Currently, no specific treatment or vaccine is available for Zika infection, although several vaccines are in development (Shan, 2018). Prophylaxis includes protective netting, insect spray to control the vector mosquito, personal DEET spray use, and avoidance of sexual contact with partners recently exposed.

■ Ebola Virus

A member of the RNA Filoviridae family, the Ebola virus is transmitted by direct person-to-person contact (Kuhn, 2018). Infection produces a severe hemorrhagic fever with pronounced immunosuppression and disseminated intravascular coagulopathy. Treatment is supportive. Data are few concerning Ebola viral infection in gravidas (Money, 2015; Oduyebo, 2015). Henwood and associates (2017) described an approximate 50-percent risk of death among pregnant and nonpregnant women with Ebola virus disease, and universally poor fetal and neonatal outcomes. That said, no evidence suggests that pregnant women are more susceptible to Ebola virus infection. In survivors, persistent Ebola virus has been detected months after recovery in "sanctuary sites" such as the eyes and gonads.

A live-attenuated Ebola virus vaccine, rVSV-ZEBOV, was approved in 2019 in the United States for individuals studying or treating Ebola virus. Among 84 health-care workers

who inadvertently received vaccination in early pregnancy or who became pregnant soon after vaccination, pregnancy loss or congenital anomalies were not associated with the vaccine (Legardy-Williams, 2020).

BACTERIAL INFECTIONS

Group A Streptococcus

Streptococcus pyogenes is the most frequent bacterial cause of acute pharyngitis. In most cases, streptococcal pharyngitis, scarlet fever, and erysipelas are not life threatening. Treatment, usually with penicillin, is equivalent for pregnant and nonpregnant women. *S pyogenes* produces numerous toxins and enzymes responsible for its local and systemic toxicity. Pyrogenic exotoxin-producing strains are usually associated with severe disease (Wessels, 2018). In the United States, *S pyogenes* infrequently causes puerperal infection. Still, it remains the most common cause of severe maternal postpartum infection and death worldwide, and their incidence is rising (Hamilton, 2013; Wessels, 2018). Puerperal infections are discussed in detail in Chapter 37 (p. 649).

Group B Streptococcus

Streptococcus agalactiae colonizes the gastrointestinal and genitourinary tract in 10 to 25 percent of gravidas (Kwatra, 2016). Group B *Streptococcus* (GBS) is isolated in a transient, intermittent, or chronic fashion during pregnancy. Although the organism is more likely always present in these same women, its isolation is not always consistent.

Maternal and Perinatal Infection

Maternal and fetal GBS effects range from asymptomatic colonization to septicemia. *S agalactiae* can cause maternal bacteriuria, pyelonephritis, osteomyelitis, postpartum mastitis, and puerperal infections. GBS may also have the ability to overcome normally protective cervical mucus barriers during pregnancy to cause ascending antenatal infection (Vornhagen, 2018). As such, GBS has also been implicated in preterm labor, prelabor rupture of membranes, chorioamnionitis, fetal infections, and stillbirth (Randis, 2014; Seale, 2017).

Among newborns in the United States, GBS remains the leading infectious cause of morbidity and mortality (Nanduri, 2019). Infection <7 days after birth is defined as *early-onset disease*, although many investigators recognize a threshold of <72 hours of life as most compatible with intrapartum acquisition of disease (Stoll, 2011). Tudela and associates (2012) reported that newborns with early-onset GBS infection often had clinical evidence of fetal infection during labor or at delivery.

In many neonates, septicemia involves signs of serious illness that usually develop within 6 to 12 hours of birth. These include respiratory distress, apnea, and hypotension. At the outset, therefore, neonatal infection must be differentiated from respiratory distress syndrome caused by insufficient surfactant production (Chap. 34, p. 615). The mortality rate with early-onset disease has declined to approximately 4 percent, and preterm newborns are disparately affected.

Late-onset disease caused by GBS is noted in 0.28 per 1000 live births and usually manifests as meningitis 1 week to 3 months after birth (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020a). The mortality rate, although appreciable, is lower for late-onset meningitis than for early-onset sepsis. Unfortunately, it is not uncommon for surviving infants of both early- and late-onset disease to exhibit devastating neurological sequelae.

Prophylaxis for Perinatal Infections

Maternal intrapartum antibiotic administration is the main prevention of early-onset GBS disease. In the United States, rates of early-onset neonatal sepsis decreased from 3 cases per 1000 live births in the early 1990s to 0.25 cases in the years following widespread prophylaxis (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020a). Both culture- and risk-based criteria to identify candidates for intrapartum prophylaxis have been proposed and debated (Table 67-2) (Braye, 2019; Hughes, 2017).

TABLE 67-2. Indications for Intrapartum Group B Streptococcal Infection Prophylaxis[a]

Intrapartum Prophylaxis Indicated	Intrapartum Prophylaxis Not Indicated
GBS bacteriuria	Negative vaginal–rectal culture obtained at ≥36 weeks' gestation during current pregnancy
Previous infant with invasive GBS disease	Cesarean delivery before labor onset or membrane rupture, regardless of GBS status or gestational age
Positive GBS screening culture during current pregnancy (unless cesarean delivery is performed before labor onset and with intact membranes)	Negative vaginal–rectal GBS culture in late gestation during the current pregnancy, regardless of intrapartum risk factors
Unknown GBS status at labor onset and any of the following:	Unknown GBS status and intrapartum NAAT result negative and no intrapartum risk factors present
Birth at <$37^{0/7}$ weeks' gestation	
Membrane rupture ≥18 hr	
Intrapartum temperature ≥100.4° F (38.0°C)	
Intrapartum NAAT result positive for GBS	
Positive GBS status in prior pregnancy	

[a]Perform vaginal and rectal GBS culture at 36–38 weeks' gestation for all pregnant women, unless intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis indicated for current pregnancy based on bacteriuria or prior infant with invasive GBS disease.
GBS = group B *Streptococcus*; NAAT = nucleic acid amplification test.

Culture-based Prevention. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020b) recommends universal vaginal-rectal culture screening for GBS at 36 to 38 weeks' gestation. This is followed by intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis for women identified to be carriers. Selective enrichment of the vaginal-rectal culture to favor GBS growth and then subculture improves detection. GBS isolates can also be tested for inducible clindamycin resistance in women with reported penicillin allergy. Updated guidance also recommends consideration of antenatal maternal penicillin-allergy testing in GBS-colonized women at high risk for anaphylaxis or IgE-mediated hypersensitivity (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). In a recent surveillance study of neonates with early-onset sepsis, 53 percent of those diagnosed with GBS disease were born to mothers with negative antenatal screening results (Stoll, 2020).

In women with heavy colonization, GBS may be specifically identified in a routine prenatal urine culture obtained to exclude asymptomatic bacteriuria (ASB). Cultures with $\geq 10^5$ colony-forming units (cfu) should prompt treatment of ASB to reduce the risk of acute pyelonephritis in pregnancy. Values $<10^5$ do not require acute antepartum antibiotics for ASB. However, women are given GBS prophylaxis in labor (see Table 67-2). As a surrogate, we also consider a urine culture result that identifies gram-positive cocci, without further speciation, to be a presumptive positive result for GBS.

Risk-based Prevention. This approach is recommended for women in labor and whose GBS culture results are not known. It relies on risk factors associated with intrapartum GBS transmission. Intrapartum chemoprophylaxis is then given to candidates with criteria listed in Table 67-2.

At Parkland Hospital we use the risk-based approach for intrapartum prophylaxis. Additionally, all term neonates who were not given intrapartum prophylaxis are treated in the delivery room with aqueous penicillin G, 50,000 to 60,000 units intramuscularly. With this strategy, early-onset neonatal sepsis rates in our predominantly minority population decreased to levels similar to those reported by national surveillance data (Stafford, 2012; Wendel, 2002).

Nucleic Acid–based Testing. Approximately 20 percent of laboratories now offer PCR testing for maternal GBS screening (Fay, 2019). Additionally, a rapid point-of-care PCR test has been evaluated for intrapartum identification of maternal GBS (El Helali, 2019). One major limitation is cost, which is currently several times greater than that of culture-based techniques. A second is the inability to determine antibiotic sensitivities using current PCR techniques.

GBS Vaccine

Serotype-specific capsular antibody concentrations clinically correlate with reduced rates of GBS neonatal disease. However, vaccine development is challenged by the diversity of GBS serotypes. Another hurdle is the bacterium's ability to undergo serotype switching by altering its capsular polysaccharide (Dangor, 2016). No vaccines are clinically available at this time.

Intrapartum Antimicrobial Prophylaxis

Penicillin remains the first-line agent for prophylaxis, and ampicillin is an acceptable alternative (Table 67-3) (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). Women with a penicillin allergy and at low risk for anaphylaxis are given cefazolin (Briody, 2016). Those at high risk for anaphylaxis or other life-threatening reaction, such as Stevens-Johnson syndrome, should have antimicrobial susceptibility testing for erythromycin and clindamycin performed on GBS isolates. Clindamycin-sensitive but erythromycin-resistant isolates should undergo inducible clindamycin resistance testing. If clindamycin resistance is confirmed, vancomycin should be administered. *Erythromycin is no longer used for penicillin-allergic patients*.

Management of spontaneous preterm labor, threatened preterm delivery, or preterm prelabor rupture of membranes includes obtaining a GBS culture. Intrapartum chemoprophylaxis is initiated until the culture results. Women undergoing cesarean delivery before labor onset with intact membranes do not need GBS chemoprophylaxis, regardless of colonization status or gestational age.

TABLE 67-3. Regimens for Intrapartum Antimicrobial Prophylaxis for Perinatal GBS Disease

Regimen	Treatment[a]
Recommended	Penicillin G, 5 million units IV initial dose, then 2.5 to 3.0 million units IV every 4 hr
Alternative	Ampicillin, 2 g IV initial dose, then 1 g IV every 4 hr or 2 g every 6 hr
Penicillin allergic	
Patients not at high risk for anaphylaxis	Cefazolin, 2 g IV initial dose, then 1 g IV every 8 hr
Patients at high risk for anaphylaxis and with GBS resistant to clindamycin or susceptibility unknown	Vancomycin, 1 g IV every 12 hr *or* 20 mg/kg IV every 8 hr with a maximum of 2 g per single dose
Patients at high risk for anaphylaxis and with GBS susceptible to clindamycin	Clindamycin, 900 mg IV every 8 hr until delivery

[a]Following initial dose, subsequent doses are continued until delivery.
GBS = group B *Streptococcus*; IV = intravenous.
Data from the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020; Verani, 2010.

Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus Aureus* (MRSA)

Staphylococcus aureus is a pyogenic gram-positive organism and is considered the most virulent staphylococcal species. It primarily colonizes the nares, skin, genital tissues, and oropharynx. Although approximately 30 percent of adults carry *S aureus*, MRSA colonizes 2 percent of adults (Gorwitz, 2008). MRSA colonization is considered the greatest risk factor for subsequent infection (Marzec, 2016).

MRSA infection may be hospital- or community-acquired MRSA (CA-MRSA). CA-MRSA is diagnosed in an outpatient setting or within 48 hours of hospitalization in a person without health-care exposures in the past year. Exposures include prior hospitalization, dialysis or surgery, or indwelling catheters or devices (Dantes, 2013). In pregnant women, most cases are CA-MRSA, which disproportionately affects persons in lower socioeconomical strata (See, 2017).

MRSA and Pregnancy

Skin and soft tissue infections are the most common presentation of MRSA in pregnant women. Mastitis and breast abscesses have been reported in up to a fourth of MRSA cases in pregnancy (Laibl, 2005; Lee, 2010). Perineal or episiotomy abscess, abdominal surgical site infection, and rare placental abscess and chorioamnionitis have been associated with MRSA (Maeda, 2018; Pimentel, 2009). Last, osteomyelitis and spinal-epidural abscess have been topics of case reports (Tanamai, 2016; Vakili, 2017).

Vertical transmission of MRSA is rare. Postnatal colonization and infection in the newborn are associated with maternal and health-care worker colonization or infection near the time of delivery (Jimenez-Truque, 2012; Reich, 2016).

Management

Uncomplicated superficial infections are primarily managed by drainage and local wound care. Although historically de-emphasized, evidence suggests benefit from antibiotic therapy added to incision and drainage of smaller abscesses (Daum, 2017; Forcade, 2012). Severe superficial infections, especially those that fail to respond to local care or those in patients with medical comorbidities, are treated with MRSA-appropriate antibiotics. Purulent cellulitis should be treated empirically for MRSA until culture and sensitivity results are available.

Most CA-MRSA strains are sensitive to trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole or clindamycin (Miller, 2015; Talan, 2016). Rifampin rapidly develops resistance and should not be used as monotherapy. Linezolid, although effective against MRSA, is expensive, and little information guides its use in pregnancy. Although effective for MRSA infections, doxycycline, minocycline, and other tetracyclines should not be used in pregnancy. Vancomycin remains a first-line therapy for inpatient treatment of serious MRSA infections.

The control and prevention of MRSA infection relies on appropriate hand hygiene and prevention of skin-to-skin contact. Routine screening of obstetrical patients for MRSA colonization is not recommended (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020c. That said, for women with culture-proven MRSA colonization or infection, we add a single dose of vancomycin to routine beta-lactam perioperative prophylaxis for cesarean deliveries and deep perineal lacerations. Decolonization is not effective in the general obstetrical population (Huang, 2019). Breastfeeding in women colonized with MRSA is not prohibited, but optimal hygiene and attention to minor skin breaks is encouraged.

Listeriosis

Listeria monocytogenes is a facultative intracellular gram-positive bacillus that causes 100 to 200 infections requiring hospitalization each year in the United States (Tack, 2020). Nearly all cases are thought to be foodborne. Outbreaks have been caused by contaminated dairy products, fruits and vegetables, and undercooked or processed meats and deli foods.

Invasive listerial infections are more common in pregnant women, immunocompromised patients, and the very old or young. For unclear reasons, infection during pregnancy is 10 to 20 times more common than in the general population (Craig, 2019). Although pregnancy losses linked to listeriosis are more likely to be reported, another hypothesis is that pregnant women are more susceptible because of decreased cell-mediated immunity (Baud, 2011).

Maternal and Fetal Infection

Infections with *Listeria* may result in noninvasive, febrile gastroenteritis, sepsis, or CNS infection after a 2- to 4-week incubation. Listeriosis during pregnancy may be asymptomatic or may cause a febrile illness that is confused with influenza, pyelonephritis, or meningitis. The diagnosis usually is not apparent until blood cultures are reported as positive. Occult or clinical infection also may stimulate labor. Transplacental bacterial invasion leads to fetal infection, which can result in stillbirth or clinical illness similar to early-onset GBS sepsis. A classic description of overwhelming fetal infection is that of disseminated microabscesses and granulomas known as *granulomatosis infantiseptica*. Chorioamnionitis is common, and placental macroabscesses may be seen. Late-onset neonatal infection can also follow exposure at delivery. In a review of 222 cases, infection with *Listeria* resulted in abortion or stillbirth in 20 percent, and neonatal sepsis developed in 68 percent of surviving newborns (Mylonakis, 2002). In one prospective cohort study, 24 percent of mothers experienced fetal loss, but none after 29 weeks' gestation (Charlier, 2017). However, a neonatal case fatality rate of 21 percent has been reported (Sapuan, 2017).

Treatment with ampicillin plus gentamicin is usually recommended because of its synergism against *Listeria* species (Rouse, 2016). Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole can be given to penicillin-allergic women. Maternal treatment in most cases is also effective for fetal infection. No vaccine is available. Prevention is by washing raw vegetables, cooking all raw food, and avoiding the implicated foods listed previously (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2019d).

Salmonellosis

Infections from *Salmonella* species continue to be a major cause of foodborne illness. Six serotypes, including *Salmonella* subtypes *typhimurium* and *enteritidis*, account for most cases in the

United States. Nontyphoid *Salmonella* gastroenteritis is contracted through contaminated food. Symptoms that include nonbloody diarrhea, abdominal pain, fever, chills, nausea, and vomiting begin 6 to 48 hours after exposure. Diagnosis is made by stool studies (Chap. 57, p. 1018).

Treatment is with intravenous crystalloid solutions given for rehydration. Antimicrobials are not given in uncomplicated infections because they do not commonly shorten illness and may prolong the convalescent carrier state. If gastroenteritis is complicated by high fever or bacteremia, antimicrobials are given (Angelo, 2016). Rare case reports have linked *Salmonella enteritidis* bacteremia with septic abortion (Delcourt, 2019).

Typhoid fever caused by *Salmonella typhi* remains a global health problem. Infection is spread by oral ingestion of contaminated food, water, or milk. Although uncommon in the United States, an outbreak in Central America in 2017 involved almost 300 cases (Pan American Health Organization, 2018). Severe complications among patients requiring hospitalization include gastrointestinal bleeding—11 percent; intestinal perforation—9 percent; encephalopathy—8 percent; renal failure—6 percent; and cardiovascular collapse—7 percent (Bano-Zaidi, 2018). In pregnant women, the disease is more likely to be encountered during epidemics and in those with recent travel (Engsbro, 2019). Septic abortion is rare but reported (Jena, 2017).

Fluroquinolones and third-generation cephalosporins are the preferred empirical treatment for enteric (typhoid) fever and invasive nontyphoidal *Salmonella* infection (Shane, 2017). Antimicrobial susceptibility testing is important to tailor the course of therapy, which typically lasts 1 to 2 weeks. Two licensed vaccines for prevention of typhoid fever are available in the United States (Milligan, 2018). From limited evidence, typhoid vaccine administration to pregnant women before travel is not linked to adverse outcomes.

■ Shigellosis

Transmitted via the fecal–oral route, shigellosis is a common cause of diarrheal outbreaks in children attending day-care centers and in adults following international travel. Bacillary dysentery caused by *Shigella* species can range from mild diarrhea to severe dysentery with fever, bloody stools, abdominal cramping, and tenesmus. In immunosuppressed individuals, severe infection may lead to toxic megacolon, seizures or meningitis, or hemolytic uremic syndrome (Kotloff, 2018).

Although mild infection is typically self-limited, treatment of dehydration is essential. Antimotility drugs are avoided, and meticulous hygiene is recommended to avoid transmission. Antimicrobial therapy during pregnancy includes fluoroquinolones, ceftriaxone, or azithromycin. Resistance is rapidly emerging, and antibiotic susceptibility testing can help guide appropriate therapy (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020e). Shigellosis can stimulate uterine contractions and cause preterm birth (Parisot, 2016).

■ Lyme Disease

Caused by the spirochete *Borrelia burgdorferi*, Lyme disease is the most commonly reported vector-borne illness in the United States (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021g). Lyme borreliosis results from tick bites of the genus *Ixodes*. There are three stages (Steere, 2018). Early infection—stage 1—causes a distinctive local skin lesion, *erythema migrans*, which may be accompanied by a flu-like syndrome and regional adenopathy. If untreated, early disseminated infection—stage 2—follows in days to weeks. Multisystem involvement is frequent, but skin lesions, neuropathies, myalgia, carditis, and meningitis predominate. If still untreated after months, late or persistent infection—stage 3—manifests in perhaps half of patients as a migratory arthritis. Native immunity is acquired, and the disease enters a chronic phase in approximately 10 percent. Some patients remain asymptomatic, but others in the chronic phase develop various skin, joint, or neurological manifestations.

Clinical diagnosis is important because serological and PCR testing have many pitfalls (Steere, 2016). IgM and IgG serological testing is recommended in early infection and is followed by a second test—either a second immunoassay or western blot—for confirmation (Mead, 2019). Ideally, acute and convalescent serological evaluation is completed if possible, however, rates of false-positive and -negative results are high.

Treatment is recommended by the Infectious Diseases Society of America (Lantos, 2021). For erythema migrans, doxycycline for 10 days or amoxicillin or cefuroxime axetil for 14 days is recommended. However, doxycycline is usually avoided in pregnancy. Azithromycin for 7 days is a second-line regimen. For other manifestations, a 14- to 28-day oral or intravenous course of the same first-line drugs is recommended. No vaccine is commercially available. Avoiding areas with endemic Lyme disease and improving tick control in those areas is the most effective prevention. Self-examination with removal of unengorged ticks within 36 hours of attachment reduces infection risk. For tick bites recognized within 72 hours, a single 200-mg oral dose of doxycycline may reduce infection development (Lantos, 2021).

Several reports describe Lyme disease in pregnancy, although large series are lacking. Transplacental transmission has been confirmed, but no congenital effects of maternal borreliosis have been conclusively identified (Shapiro, 2014). Prompt treatment of early maternal infection should prevent most adverse pregnancy outcomes. In the northeast United States, between 2 and 40 percent of women with early Lyme disease may be co-infected with *Babesia microti*, which is another parasite transmitted by same tick. *Babesiosis* has been reported to cause congenital infection (Saetre, 2018).

■ Tuberculosis

Diagnosis and management of tuberculosis during pregnancy is discussed in Chapter 54 (p. 965).

PROTOZOAL INFECTIONS

■ Toxoplasmosis

The obligate intracellular parasite *Toxoplasma gondii* has a life cycle with two distinct stages (Kim, 2018). The *feline* stage takes place in cats—the definitive host—and their prey. Unsporulated oocysts are excreted in feces. In the *nonfeline* stage, tissue cysts containing bradyzoites or oocysts are ingested by

the intermediate host, including humans. Gastric acid digests the cysts to release bradyzoites, which infect small-intestinal epithelium. Here, they are transformed into rapidly dividing tachyzoites, which can infect all cells within the host mammal. Humoral and cell-mediated immune defenses eliminate most of these, but tissue cysts develop. Their lifelong persistence is the chronic form of toxoplasmosis.

Human infection is acquired by eating raw or undercooked meat infected with tissue cysts or by ingesting soil or water contaminated with oocysts from cat feces. Prior infection is confirmed by serological testing, and its prevalence depends on geographical locale and parasite genotype. The incidence of congenital toxoplasmosis in the United States has declined and now approximates 0.23 cases in 10,000 live births (Maldonado, 2017).

Maternal and Fetal Infection

Most acute maternal infections are subclinical and are detected only by prenatal or newborn serological screening. In some cases, maternal symptoms may include a flu-like illness with lymphadenopathy. In immunocompetent adults, initial infection confers immunity, and prepregnancy infection nearly eliminates any risk of vertical transmission. Infection in immunocompromised women, however, may be severe, and reactivation may cause encephalitis, chorioretinitis, or mass lesions.

Vertical transmission can cause fetal infection and then congenital toxoplasmosis. The latter is a fetopathy characterized by ocular or intracranial lesions and growth delay. Congenital toxoplasmosis is also associated with an increased risk for preterm delivery (Freeman, 2005).

The estimated rate of vertical transmission rises with gestational age. In one metaanalysis, the rate was 15 percent at 13 weeks, 44 percent at 26 weeks, and 71 percent at 36 weeks (SYROCOT Study Group, 2007). Although transmission risk is lower in early pregnancy, sequelae of congenital toxoplasmosis are more likely to be severe (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a).

Notably, most infected fetuses are born without obvious toxoplasmosis stigmata. Clinically affected neonates usually have generalized disease expressed as low birthweight, hepatosplenomegaly, jaundice, and anemia. Some primarily have neurological disease with intracranial calcifications, hydrocephaly, or microcephaly (Dhombres, 2017). Many eventually develop chorioretinitis and exhibit learning disabilities. This classic triad—chorioretinitis, intracranial calcifications, and hydrocephalus—is often accompanied by convulsions. Infected neonates with clinical signs are at risk for long-term complications (Abdoli, 2014).

Screening and Diagnosis

With IgG antibody confirmed before pregnancy, there is no risk for fetal infection in immunocompetent hosts. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a) does not recommend prenatal screening for toxoplasmosis in low-prevalence areas, including the United States. Screening IgG serology tests should be performed in immunocompromised gravidas, including those with HIV infection.

Pregnant women with suspected toxoplasmosis also should be tested. The parasite is rarely detected in tissue or body fluids. IgG antibodies against *Toxoplasma* develop within 2 to 3 weeks after infection, peak at 1 to 2 months, and usually persist for life—sometimes in high titers. Although IgM antibodies appear by 10 days after infection and usually become negative within 3 to 4 months, they may remain detectable for years. Thus, IgM antibodies are not used alone to diagnose acute toxoplasmosis. Best results are obtained with the Toxoplasma Serologic Profile performed at the Dr. Jack S. Remington Laboratory for Specialty Diagnostics (www.sutterhealth.org). Toxoplasma IgG avidity increases with time. Thus, if a high-avidity IgG result is found, infection in the preceding 3 to 5 months is excluded. Multiple tests are available that allow high-avidity results to confirm latent infection with a 100-percent positive predictive value (Villard, 2013).

Congenital toxoplasmosis is suspected when sonography reveals findings such as hydrocephaly, intracranial or hepatic calcifications, ascites, placental thickening, hyperechoic bowel, and growth restriction. These are similar to abnormalities that may be seen with congenital CMV. If these are found incidentally, diagnostic amniocentesis with PCR testing for toxoplasma as well as cytomegalovirus DNA is recommended, along with maternal serologic testing for both infections. The sensitivity of PCR for detection of toxoplasma DNA varies with gestational age and is lowest before 18 weeks' gestation (Filisetti, 2015; Yamamoto, 2017).

Management

Prenatal treatment of acute maternal toxoplasmosis is based on two regimens. Spiramycin may be given alone, or a pyrimethamine plus sulfonamide combination is taken with folinic acid (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a). These two regimens have also been used consecutively. Most experts will use spiramycin in women with acute infection early in pregnancy to reduce the risk of vertical transmission. Because it does not cross the placenta, spiramycin may not be used to treat fetal infection. Pyrimethamine plus sulfadiazine with folinic acid is selected for maternal infection after 18 weeks' gestation or if fetal infection is suspected. The SYROCOT study group (2007) reviewed data from 1438 treated pregnancies and found weak evidence for early treatment to reduce congenital toxoplasmosis risks. Treatment has been associated with a reduced rate of serious neurological sequelae and neonatal demise (Cortina-Borja, 2010).

Prevention

No vaccine is available to prevent toxoplasmosis. Strategies to avoid infection include: (1) cooking meat to safe temperatures; (2) peeling or thoroughly washing fruits and vegetables; (3) cleaning all food preparation surfaces and utensils that have contacted raw meat or unwashed fruits and vegetables; (4) wearing gloves when changing cat litter or delegating this duty; and (5) avoiding feeding cats raw or undercooked meat and keeping cats indoors. Although these preventive steps are recommended, no robust data support their effectiveness (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020a; Di Mario, 2015).

■ Malaria

This protozoan infection remains a global health crisis. In 2018, it caused 260,000 deaths, and most occurred among children

younger than 5 years (World Health Organization, 2019). Sub-Saharan Africa and India carry the largest burden of cases. Malaria had been effectively eradicated in Europe and in most of North America, but some cases are imported in returning military personnel or recent immigrants from endemic areas (Mace, 2017). Transmitted by infected *Anopheles* mosquitoes, six species of *Plasmodium* cause human disease.

Pregnant women have increased susceptibility (Kourtis, 2014). After infection, antibodies to the parasite surface antigen VAR2CSA help mediate placental accumulation of infected erythrocytes and lead to the harmful effects of malaria (Mayor, 2015). Through this mechanism, some immunity accrues with parity and is termed *pregnancy-specific antimalarial immunity*. Ironically, malaria treatment dampens this immunity.

Maternal and Fetal Infection

Clinical manifestations are fever, chills, and flu-like symptoms, which may occur episodically. Symptoms are less severe with recurrences. Malaria may be associated with anemia and jaundice, and infections with *Plasmodium falciparum* may cause kidney failure, coma, and death. That said, many otherwise healthy but infected adults in endemic areas are asymptomatic because of partial immunity. Pregnant women, although often asymptomatic, are said to be more likely to develop traditional symptoms.

Malarial infections in pregnancy—either symptomatic or asymptomatic—are associated with higher rates of perinatal morbidity and mortality (Rogerson, 2018). Adverse outcomes include stillbirth, preterm birth, low birthweight, and maternal anemia. These correlate with high levels of placental parasitemia. The maternal anemia and low birthweight are documented most frequently (Machado Filho, 2014; McClure, 2013). Approximately 16 percent of low-birthweight neonates born to women in Africa are attributable to maternal malaria infection (World Health Organization, 2019). Effects stem from parasitized erythrocytes, monocytes, and macrophages that accumulate in the vascular areas of the placenta (Fig. 67-7). Infections with *P falciparum* are the worst, and early infection raises the risk for abortion. The incidence of malaria increases significantly in the latter two trimesters and postpartum (Diagne, 2000). Despite this, congenital malaria develops in <5 percent of neonates born to infected mothers.

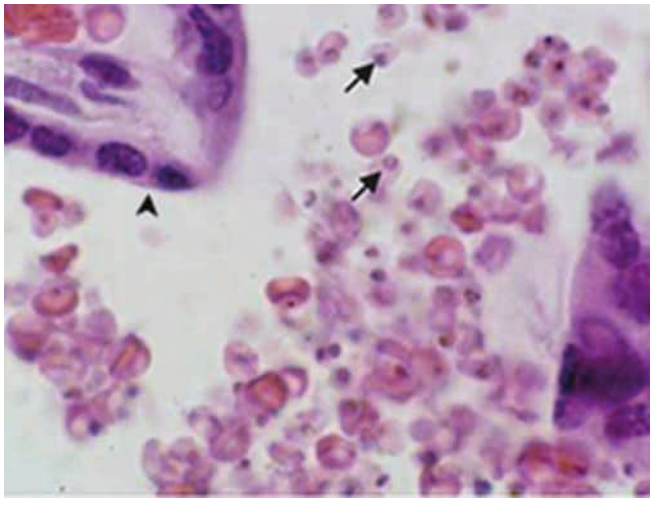


FIGURE 67-7 Photomicrograph of placental malaria. Multiple infected erythrocytes are seen, and two are identified (*arrows*). Cross section of nearby chorionic villus is shown (*arrowhead*).

Diagnosis and Management

Identification of parasites by microscopic evaluation of a blood smear remains the diagnostic gold standard. In women with low parasite densities, however, the sensitivity of microscopy is poor. Malaria-specific antigens are now being used for rapid testing, which has become the diagnostic standard (Cunningham, 2019).

For treatment, the most frequently used antimalarial drugs are not contraindicated in pregnancy. The World Health Organization recommends that all infected patients living in or traveling from endemic areas be treated with an artemisinin-based regimen for uncomplicated falciparum malaria (Tarning, 2016). The CDC (2020c) recommends that initial treatment be determined by where the infection was acquired.

Pregnant women diagnosed with uncomplicated malaria caused by *P vivax*, *P malariae*, *P ovale*, and chloroquine-sensitive *P falciparum* should be treated with hydroxychloroquine or chloroquine (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020c). For women infected with multidrug-resistant *P falciparum*, the first-line agent for gravidas in the second and third trimesters is a drug containing both artemether and lumefantrine. The PREGACT Study Group (2016) compared four artemisinin-based drugs in 3428 pregnant women with falciparum malaria and reported no serious maternal or perinatal adverse effects. Chloroquine-resistant *P vivax* should be treated with mefloquine. Chloroquine-sensitive *P vivax* or *P ovale* should be treated with chloroquine throughout pregnancy and then primaquine postpartum. Resistance to all the antimalarial drugs has been reported, including the recently added artemisinin-based compounds.

Treatment regimens for uncomplicated and severe malarial infections in pregnancy are detailed at: www.cdc.gov/malaria/diagnosis_treatment. The CDC also maintains a malaria hotline for treatment recommendations (855-856-4713).

Prevention and Chemoprophylaxis

Malaria control and prevention relies on chemoprophylaxis when traveling to or living in endemic areas. Vector control also is important. Insecticide-treated netting, pyrethroid insecticides, and DEET-based insect repellent lower malarial rates in endemic areas. These are well tolerated in pregnancy. If travel is necessary, chemoprophylaxis is recommended.

Chloroquine or hydroxychloroquine prophylaxis is safe and well tolerated in pregnancy. One evaluation compared prophylaxis during pregnancy with either sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine or dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine and found the latter to be more effective in preventing placental infection (Kakuru, 2016). Atovaquone/proguanil use is approved for gravidas, however, primaquine and doxycycline are contraindicated (Briggs, 2022). The latest chemoprophylaxis regimens for pregnancy can be obtained from the CDC *Travelers' Health* website at: www.cdc.gov/malaria/travelers/. The CDC also publishes *Health Information for International Travel* (The Yellow Book) at: www.cdc.gov/yellowbook. For women living in endemic areas, intermittent preventive treatment with sulfadoxine-pyrimethamine

is superior to intermittent screening plus indicated treatment, although resistance is a growing concern (Desai, 2018).

Amebiasis

Approximately 10 percent of the world population is infected with *Entamoeba histolytica*, and most are asymptomatic (Andrade, 2018). Amebic dysentery, however, may take a fulminant course during pregnancy. Symptoms are fever, abdominal pain, and bloody stools. Prognosis is worse if complicated by a hepatic abscess. Identifying *E histolytica* cysts or trophozoites within a stool sample is diagnostic. Therapy is similar to that for nonpregnant woman. For amebic colitis and invasive disease, tinidazole may be preferred over metronidazole, (Gonzales, 2019).

MYCOTIC INFECTIONS

Disseminated fungal infection—usually pneumonitis—during pregnancy is uncommon with coccidiomycosis, blastomycosis, cryptococcosis, or histoplasmosis. Their identification and management are considered in Chapter 54 (p. 965). Vulvovaginal candidiasis is described in Chapter 68 (p. 1218).

TRAVEL PRECAUTIONS DURING PREGNANCY

Pregnant travelers face general medical, obstetrical, and potentially hazardous destination risks. Several sources provide travel information (Freedman, 2016). The International Federation for Tropical Medicine has comprehensive information available at www.iftm-hp.org, and the International Society of Travel Medicine publishes information at www.istm.org. Also, *The Yellow Book* from the CDC has extensive travel information regarding pregnancy and breastfeeding.

BIOTERRORISM

The concept of bioterrorism involves the deliberate release of bacteria, viruses, or other infectious agents to cause illness or death. These natural agents are often altered to raise their infectivity or their resistance to medical therapy. Health-care providers should be alert for significant increases in the number of persons with febrile illnesses accompanied by respiratory symptoms or with rashes not easily associated with common illnesses. Clinicians are urged to contact their state health department or the CDC for current information and recommendations. In their Committee Opinion, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2019b) has addressed disaster preparedness for obstetricians.

Smallpox

The variola virus causes smallpox and is considered a serious weapon. The virus is highly transmissible and carries an overall 30-percent case fatality rate. The last case of smallpox in the United States was reported in 1949, and worldwide it was reported in Somalia in 1977. Nishiura (2006) has reviewed the severe perinatal and maternal morbidity and mortality caused by smallpox. The case fatality rate of smallpox is 61 percent if the pregnant woman is unvaccinated. Rates of stillbirth, abortion, preterm delivery, and neonatal demise rise significantly in pregnancies complicated by this infection. The smallpox vaccine is made with live virus. Thus, pregnancy should be delayed for 4 weeks after vaccination.

Anthrax

Bacillus anthracis is a gram-positive, spore-forming, aerobic bacterium. It can cause three main types of clinical anthrax: inhalational, cutaneous, and gastrointestinal (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020b). Anthrax meningitis may accompany any of the clinical anthrax forms and is fatal in most cases. When inhaled, anthrax spores are deposited in the alveoli. They are engulfed by macrophages and germinate in mediastinal lymph nodes. The incubational period is usually less than 1 week but may be as long as 2 months. Within 1 to 5 days of symptom onset, the second stage is heralded by the abrupt onset of severe respiratory distress and high fevers. Mediastinitis and hemorrhagic thoracic lymphadenitis are common. Chest radiographs show a widened mediastinum. Case-fatality rates with inhalational anthrax are high, even with aggressive antibiotic and supportive therapy.

Other Bioterrorism Agents

Other category A bioterrorism agents include *Francisella tularensis*—tularemia, *Clostridium botulinum*—botulism, *Yersinia pestis*—plague, and Ebola, Marburg, Lassa, or Machupo viruses—hemorrhagic fever. The guidelines for these biological agents are evolving and are detailed at the CDC Bioterrorism website: emergency.cdc.gov/bioterrorism.

REFERENCES

Abdoli A, Dalimi A, Arbabi M, et al: Neuropsychiatric manifestations of latent toxoplasmosis on mothers and their offspring. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 27(13):1368, 2014

Adams LL, Gungor S, Turan S, et al: When are amniotic fluid viral PCR studies indicated in prenatal diagnosis? Prenat Diagn 32(1):88, 2012

Adhikari EH, Moreno W, Zofkie AC, et al: Pregnancy outcomes among women with and without severe acute respiratory syndrome Coronavirus 2 infection. JAMA Netw Open 3(11):e2029256, 2020

Adhikari EH, SoRelle JA, McIntire DM, et al: Increasing severity of COVID-19 in pregnancy with Delta (B.1.617.2) variant surge. Am J Obstet Gynecol In press

Ahn KH, Park YJ, Hong SC, et al: Congenital varicella syndrome: a systematic review. J Obstet Gynaecol 36(5):563, 2016

Al Hammoud R, Murphy JR, Pérez N: Imported congenital rubella syndrome, United States 2017. Emerg Infect Dis 24(4):800, 2018

Alpert SG, Fergerson J, Noël LP: Intrauterine West Nile virus: ocular and systemic findings. Am J Ophthalmol 136(4):733, 2003

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Assessment and treatment of pregnant women with suspected or confirmed influenza. Committee Opinion No. 753, September 2018, Reaffirmed 2019a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Hospital disaster preparedness for obstetricians and facilities providing maternity care. Committee Opinion No. 726, December 2017, Reaffirmed 2019b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Influenza vaccination during pregnancy. Committee Opinion No. 732, April 2018, Reaffirmed 2019c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Management of pregnant women with presumptive exposure to *listeria monocytogenes*. Committee Opinion No. 614, December 2014, Reaffirmed 2019d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Maternal immunization. Committee Opinion No. 741, June 2018, Reaffirmed 2019e

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Cytomegalovirus, parvovirus B9, varicella zoster, and toxoplasmosis in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 151, June 2015, Reaffirmed 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prevention of Group B streptococcal early-onset disease in newborns. Committee Opinion No. 797, January 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Use of prophylactic antibiotics in labor and delivery. Practice Bulletin No. 199, August 2018, Reaffirmed 2020c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, Society for Maternal–Fetal Medicine: ACOG and SMFM joint statement on WHO recommendations regarding COVID-19 vaccines and pregnant individuals. 2021. Available at: https://www.acog.org/news/news-releases/2021/01/acog-and-smfm-joint-statement-on-who-recommendations-regarding-covid-19-vaccines-and-pregnant-individuals. Accessed May 11, 2021

Andrade RM, Reed SL: Amebiasis and infection with free-living amebae. In Jameson J, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2018

Angelo KM, Reynolds J, Karp BE, et al: Antimicrobial resistance among nontyphoidal salmonella isolated from blood in the United States, 2003–2013. J Infect Dis 214(10):1565, 2016

Assiri A, Abedi GR, Al Masri M, et al: Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus infection during pregnancy: a report of 5 cases from Saudi Arabia. Clin Infect Dis 63(7):951, 2016

Auriti C, Piersigilli F, De Gasperis MR, et al: Congenital varicella syndrome: still a problem? Fetal Diagn Ther 25(2):224, 2009

Baden LR, El Sahly HM, Essink B, et al: Efficacy and safety of the mRNA-1273 SARS-CoV-2 vaccine. N Engl J Med 384(5):403, 2021

Bano-Zaidi M, Aguayo-Romero M, Campos FD, et al: Typhoid fever outbreak with severe complications in Yucatan, Mexico. Lancet Glob Health 6(10):e1062, 2018

Bates T: Poliomyelitis in pregnancy, fetus and newborn. Am J Dis Child 90: 189, 1955

Baud D, Greub G: Intracellular bacteria and adverse pregnancy outcomes. Clin Microbiol Infect 17:1312, 2011

Baxter R, Tran TN, Ray P, et al: Impact of vaccination on the epidemiology of varicella: 1995–2009. Pediatrics 134(1):24, 2014

Beigel JH, Tomashek KM, Dodd LE, et al: Remdesivir for the treatment of Covid-19–final report. N Engl J Med. 2020 Nov 5;383(19):1813, 2020

Bower WA, Schiffer J, Atmar RL, et al: Use of anthrax vaccine in the United States: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices, 2019. MMWR 68(4):1, 2019

Brasil P, Pereira JP, Moreira ME, et al: Zika virus infection in pregnant women in Rio de Janeiro. N Engl J Med 375(24):2321, 2016

Braye K, Foureur M, de Waal K, et al: Group B streptococcal screening, intrapartum antibiotic prophylaxis, and neonatal early-onset infection rates in an Australian local health district: 2006–2016. PLoS ONE 14(4):e0214295, 2019

Briggs GG, Towers CV, Forinash CV: Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation, 12th ed. Philadelphia, Wolters-Kluwer, 2022

Briody VA, Albright CM, Has P, et al: Use of cefazolin for group B streptococci prophylaxis in women reporting a penicillin allergy without anaphylaxis. Obstet Gynecol 127(3):577, 2016

Burwick RM, Yawetz S, Stephenson KE, et al: Compassionate use of remdesivir in pregnant women with severe Covid-19. Clin Infect Dis October 8, 2020 [Epub ahead of print]

Callaghan WM, Creanga AA, Jamieson DJ: Pregnancy related mortality resulting from influenza in the United States during the 2009–2010 pandemic. Obstet Gynecol 126(3):486, 2015

Centeno-Tablante E, Medina-Rivera M, Finkelstein JL, et al: Transmission of SARS-CoV-2 through breast milk and breastfeeding: a living systematic review. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1484(1):32, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Active bacterial core surveillance (ABCs) report emerging infections program network group B *Streptococcus*, 2018. 2020a. Available at: http://www.cdc.gov/abcs/reports-findings/survreports/gbs18.pdf. Accessed May 7, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Anthrax. 2020b. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/anthrax/index.html. Accessed May 7, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: COVID-19. COVID-19 testing overview. 2021a. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/symptoms-testing/testing.html. Accessed May 7, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: COVID-19. Interim clinical guidance for management of patients with confirmed Coronavirus disease (COVID-19). 2021b. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/hcp/clinical-guidance-management-patients.html. Accessed May 7, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: COVID-19. Interim infection prevention and control recommendations for healthcare personnel during the Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic. 2021c. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/hcp/infection-control-recommendations.html. Accessed May 7, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: COVID-19. Science brief: emerging SARS-CoV-2 variants. 2021d. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/coronavirus/2019-ncov/more/science-and-research/scientific-brief-emerging-variants.html. Accessed May 7, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. COVID-19 vaccine safety update. 2021e. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/vaccines/acip/meetings/downloads/slides-2021-02/28-03-01/05-covid-Shimabukuro.pdf. Accessed May 7, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Ebola (Ebola virus disease). History of Ebola virus disease (EVD) outbreaks. 2021f. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/vhf/ebola/history/chronology.html. Accessed May 7, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Lyme disease. Data and statistics. 2021g. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/lyme/stats/index.html. Accessed May 7, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Malaria. Malaria treatment (United States). 2020c. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/malaria/diagnosis_treatment/treatment.html. Accessed May 7, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Measles (rubeola). For healthcare professionals: clinical features. 2020d. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/measles/hcp/index.html. Accessed May 7, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: *Shigella*–shigellosis. Questions and answers. 2020e. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/shigella/general-information.html. Accessed May 7, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Updated recommendations for use of VariZIG—United States. MMWR 62(28):574, 2013

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: West Nile virus. Diagnostic testing: WNV antibody testing. 2018. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/westnile/healthcareproviders/healthCareProviders-Diagnostic.html. Accessed May 7, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Zika virus. Testing guidance: new Zika and Dengue testing guidance (updated November 2019). 2019. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/zika/hc-providers/testing-guidance.html. Accessed May 7, 2021

Charlier C, Perrodeau E, Leclercq A, et al: Clinical features and prognostic factors of listeriosis: the MONALISA national prospective cohort study. Lancet Infect Dis 17:510, 2017

Chen YH, Lin HC, Lin HC: Increased risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes among women affected by herpangina. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203(1):49.e1, 2010

Chougnet CA: Human fetal immune cells fight back. Sci Transl Med 10(438):eaat3910, 2018

Cohen JI: Enterovirus, Parechovirus, and Reovirus Infections. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds) Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2018

Conlin AM, Bukowinski AT, Levine JA, et al: A follow-up comparative safety analysis of pandemic H1N1 vaccination during pregnancy and risk of infant birth defects among U.S. military mothers. Vaccine 36(20):2855, 2018

Cortina-Borja M, Tan HK, Wallon M, et al: Prenatal treatment for serious neurological sequelae of congenital toxoplasmosis: an observational prospective cohort study. PLoS Med 7(10):1, 2010

Craig AM, Dotters-Katz S, Kuller JA, et al: Listeriosis in pregnancy: a review. Obstet Gynecol Surv 74(6):362, 2019

Cui J, Li F, Zheng-Li S: Origin and evolution of pathogenic coronaviruses. Nat Rev Microbiol 17(3):181, 2019

Cunningham J, Jones S, Gatton ML, et al: A review of the WHO malaria rapid diagnostic test product testing programme (2008-2018): performance, procurement and policy. Malar J 18(1):387, 2019

Dangor Z, Cutland CL, Izu A, et al: Temporal changes in invasive group B Streptococcus serotypes: implications for vaccine development. PLoS One 11(12):e0169101, 2016

Dantes R, Mu Y, Belflower R, et al: National burden of invasive methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* infections, United States, 2011. JAMA Intern Med 173(21):1970, 2013

Daum RS, Miller LG, Immergluck L: A placebo-controlled trial of antibiotics for smaller skin abscesses. N Engl J Med 376:2345, 2017

de Haan TR, Beersman MF, Oepkes D, et al: Parvovirus B19 infection in pregnancy: maternal and fetal viral load measurements related to clinical parameters. Prenat Diagn 27:46, 2007

de Jong EP, Lindenburg IT, van Klink JM, et al: Intrauterine transfusion for parvovirus B19 infection: long-term neurodevelopmental outcome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 206:204.e1, 2012

Delcourt C, Yombi JC, Vo B, et al: Salmonella enteritidis during pregnancy, a rare cause of septic abortion: case report and review of the literature. J Obstet Gynaecol 39(4):554, 2019

Dembinski J, Eis-Hübinger AM, Maar J, et al: Long term follow up of serostatus after maternofetal parvovirus B19 infection. Arch Dis Child 88:219, 2003

Desai M, Hill J, Fernandes S, et al: Prevention of malaria in pregnancy. Lancet Infect Dis 18(4):e119, 2018

Dhombres F, Friszer S, Maurice P, et al: Prognosis of fetal parenchymal cerebral lesions without ventriculomegaly in congenital toxoplasmosis infection. Fetal Diagn Ther 41(1):8, 2017

Diagne N, Rogier C, Sokhna CS, et al: Increased susceptibility to malaria during the early postpartum period. N Engl J Med 343:598, 2000

Di Mario S, Basevi V, Gagliotti C, et al: Prenatal education for congenital toxoplasmosis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD006171, 2015

Eberhart-Phillips JE, Frederick PD, Baron RC, et al: Measles in pregnancy: a descriptive study of 58 cases. Obstet Gynecol 82(5):797, 1993

Egaña-Ugrinovic G, Goncé A, Garcia L, et al: Congenital cytomegalovirus infection among twin pairs. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 29(21):3439, 2016

El Helali N, Habibi F, Azria E, et al: Point-of-care intrapartum group B Streptococcus molecular screening: effectiveness and costs. Obstet Gynecol 133(2):276, 2019

Enders G, Miller E, Cradock-Watson J, et al: Consequences of varicella and herpes zoster in pregnancy: prospective study of 1739 cases. Lancet 343:1548, 1994

Enders M, Weidner A, Zoellner I, et al: Fetal morbidity and mortality after acute human parvovirus B19 infection in pregnancy: prospective evaluation of 1018 cases. Prenat Diagn 24:513, 2004

Engsbro AL, Riis Jespersen HS, Goldschmidt MI, et al: Ceftriaxone-resistant Salmonella enterica serotype Typhi in a pregnant traveller returning from Karachi, Pakistan to Denmark, 2019. Euro Surveill 24(21):1900289, 2019

Fay K, Almendares O, Robinson-Dunn B, et al: Antenatal and intrapartum nucleic acid amplification test use for group B Streptococcus screening—United States, 2016. Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis 94(2):157, 2019

Fell DB, Savitz DA, Kramer MS, et al: Maternal influenza and birth outcomes: systematic review of comparative studies. BJOG 124(1):48, 2017

Filisetti D, Year H, Villard O, et al: Contribution of neonatal amniotic fluid testing to diagnosis of congenital toxoplasmosis. J Clin Microbiol 53(5):1719, 2015

Forcade NA, Wiederhold NP, Ryan L, et al: Antibacterials as adjuncts to incision and drainage for adults with purulent methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) skin infections. Drugs 72:339, 2012

Fowler KB, Stagno S, Pass RF, et al: The outcome of congenital cytomegalovirus infection in relation to maternal antibody status. N Engl J Med 326:663, 1992

Freedman DO, Chen LH, Kozarsky PE: Medical considerations before international travel. N Engl J Med 375(3):247, 2016

Freeman K, Oakley L, Pollak A, et al: Association between congenital toxoplasmosis and preterm birth, low birthweight and small for gestational age birth. BJOG 112:31, 2005

Gerna G, Lilleri D: Human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) infection/reinfection: development of a protective HCMV vaccine. New Microbiol 42(1):1, 2019

Goldshtein I, Nevo D, Steinberg DM, et al: Association between BNT162b2 vaccination and incidence of SARS-CoV-2 infection in pregnant women. JAMA 326(8):728, 2021

Gonzales MLM, Dans LF, Sio-Aguilar J: Antiamoebic drugs for treating amoebic colitis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1(1):CD006085, 2019

Gorwitz RJ, Kruszon-Moran D, McAllister SK: Changes in the prevalence of nasal colonization with *Staphylococcus aureus* in the United States, 2001–2004. J Infect Dis 197:1226, 2008

Grant GB, Desai S, Dumolard L, et al: Progress toward rubella and congenital rubella syndrome control and elimination-worldwide, 2000–2018. MMWR 68(39):855, 2019

Grohskopf LA, Alyanak E, Broder KR, et al: Prevention and control of seasonal influenza with vaccines: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices—United States, 2020–2021 influenza season. MMWR 69(8):1, 2020

Guerra B, Lazzarotto T, Quarta S, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of symptomatic congenital cytomegalovirus infection. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:476, 2000

Hamilton SM, Stevens DL, Bryant AE: Pregnancy-related Group A streptococcal infections: temporal relationship between bacterial acquisition, infection onset, clinical findings, and outcome. Clin Infect Dis 57:870, 2013

Harjulehto T, Aro T, Hovi T, et al: Congenital malformations and oral poliovirus vaccination during pregnancy. Lancet 1:771, 1989

Hartley GE, Edwards ES, Aui PM, et al: Rapid generation of durable B cell memory to SARS-CoV-2 spike and nucleocapsid proteins in COVID-19 and convalescence. Sci Immunol 5(54):eabf8891, 2020

He X, Lau EH, Wu P, et al: Temporal dynamics in viral shedding and transmissibility of COVID-19. Nat Med 26(5):672, 2020

Henwood PC, Bebell LM, Roshania R, et al: Ebola virus disease and pregnancy: a retrospective cohort study of patients managed at 5 Ebola treatment units in West Africa. Clin Infect Dis 65(2):292, 2017

Honein MA, Dawson AL, Petersen EE, et al: Birth defects among fetuses and infants of US women with evidence of possible Zika virus infection during pregnancy. JAMA 317(1):59, 2017

Huang C, Wang Y, Li X, et al: Clinical features of patients infected with 2019 novel coronavirus in Wuhan, China. Lancet 395(10223):497, 2020

Huang SS, Singh R, McKinnell JA, et al: Decolonization to reduce postdischarge infection risk among MRSA carriers. N Engl J Med 380(7):638-50, 2019

Hughes BL, Clifton RG, Rouse DJ, et al: A trial of hyperimmune globulin to prevent congenital cytomegalovirus infection. N Engl J Med 385(5):436, 2021

Hughes RG, Brocklehurst P, Steer PJ, et al: Prevention of early-onset neonatal group B streptococcal disease: green-top guideline no. 36. BJOG 124(12):e280, 2017

Hui DS, Azhar EI, Kim YJ, et al: Middle East respiratory syndrome coronavirus: risk factors and determinants of primary, household, and nosocomial transmission. Lancet Infect Dis 18(8):e217, 2018

Jena PP, Duggal SD, Kumar A, et al: Isolation of Salmonella typhi from high vaginal swab in a case of septic abortion. Indian J Med Microbiol 35(2):311, 2017

Jespersen C, Helmuth IG, Krause TG: Varicella-zoster immunoglobulin treatment in pregnant women in Denmark from 2005 to 2015: descriptive epidemiology and follow-up. Epidemiol Infect 144(16):3426, 2016

Jimenez-Truque N, Tedeschi S, Saye EJ, et al: Relationship between maternal and neonatal *Staphylococcus aureus* colonization. Pediatrics 129:e1252, 2012

Joguet G, Mansuy JM, Matusali G, et al: Effect of acute Zika virus infection on sperm and virus clearance in body fluids: a prospective observational study. Lancet Infect Disease 17(11):1200, 2017

Julander JG, Winger QA, Rickords LF, et al: West Nile virus infection of the placenta. Virology 347:175, 2006

Kahn DA, Baltimore D: Pregnancy induces a fetal antigen-specific maternal T regulator cell response that contributes to tolerance. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107(20):9299, 2010

Kakuru A, Jagannathan P, Muhindo MK, et al: Dihydroartemisinin-piperaquine for the prevention of malaria in pregnancy. N Engl J Med 374(10):928, 2016

Kim K: Toxoplasma infections. In Jameson J, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2018

Kimball A, Hatfield KM, Arons M, et al: Asymptomatic and presymptomatic SARS-CoV-2 infections in residents of a long-term care skilled nursing facility—King County, Washington, March 2020. MMWR 69(13):377, 2020

Kimberlin DW, Sanchez PJ, Ahmed A, et al: Valganciclovir for symptomatic congenital cytomegalovirus disease. N Engl J Med 372(10):933, 2015

Koren G: Congenital varicella syndrome in the third trimester. Lancet 366(9497):1591, 2005

Kotloff KL, Riddle MS, Platts-Mills JA, et al: Shigellosis. Lancet 391(10122):801, 2018

Kourtis AP, Read JS, Jamieson DJ: Pregnancy and infection. N Engl J Med 370(23):2211, 2014

Kuhn JH: Ebolavirus and Marburgvirus infections. In Jameson JL, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2018

Kutty PK, Kyaw MH, Dayan GH, et al: Guidance for isolation precautions for mumps in the US: a review of the scientific basis for policy change. Clin Infect Disease 50(112):169, 2010

Kwatra G, Cunnington MC, Merrall E, et al: Prevalence of maternal colonization with group B Streptococcus: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet Infect Dis 16(9):1076, 2016

Laibl VR, Sheffield JS, Roberts S, et al: Clinical presentation of community-acquired methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 106:461, 2005

Lambert N, Strebel P, Orenstein W: Rubella. Lancet 385:2297, 2015

Lamont RF, Sobel JD, Vaisbuch E, et al: Parvovirus B19 infection in human pregnancy. BJOG 118(2):175, 2011

Lantos PM, Rumbaugh J, Bockenstedt LK, et al: Clinical Practice Guidelines by the Infectious Diseases Society of America (IDSA), American Academy of Neurology (AAN), and American College of Rheumatology (ACR): 2020 Guidelines for the prevention, diagnosis and treatment of Lyme Disease. Clin Infect Dis 72(1):e1, 2021

Lee IW, Kang L, Hsu HP, et al: Puerperal mastitis requiring hospitalization during a nine-year period. Am J Obstet Gynecol 203:332.e1, 2010

Legardy-Williams JK, Carter RJ, Goldstein ST, et al: Pregnancy outcomes among women receiving rVSV-ZEBOV-GP Ebola vaccine during the Sierra Leone trial to introduce a vaccine against Ebola. Emerg Infect Dis 26(3):541, 2020

Leruez-Ville M, Stirnemann J, Yann S, et al: Feasibility of predicting the outcome of fetal infection with cytomegalovirus at the time of prenatal diagnosis. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(3):342.e1, 2016a

Leruez-Ville M, Ghout I, Bussières L, et al: In utero treatment of congenital cytomegalovirus infection with valacyclovir in a multicenter, open-label, phase II study. Am J Obstet Gynecol 215(4):462.e1, 2016b

Leung J, Marin M: Update on trends in varicella mortality during the varicella vaccine era—United States, 1990–2016. Hum Vaccin Immunother 14(10):2460, 2018

Lipitz S, Yinon Y, Malinger G, et al: Risk of cytomegalovirus-associated sequelae in relation to time of infection and findings on prenatal imaging. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 41(5):508, 2013

Liu S, Diao L, Huang C, et al: The role of decidual immune cells on human pregnancy. J Reprod Immunol 124:44, 2017

Ludvigsson JF, Ström P, Lundholm C, et al: Risk for congenital malformation with H1N1 influenza vaccine: a cohort study with sibling analysis. Ann Intern Med 165(12):848, 2016

Mace KE, Arguin PM: Malaria surveillance—United States, 2014. MMWR 66(12):1, 2017

Machado Filho AC, da Costa EP, da Costa EP, et al: Effects of vivax malaria acquired before 20 weeks of pregnancy on subsequent changes in fetal growth. Am J Trop Med Hyg 90(2):371, 2014

Maeda N, Hagiya H, Takiuchi T, et al: Persistent methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus bacteremia owing to placental abscess. J Infect Chemother 24(12):975, 2018

Maldonado YA, Read JS, Committee on Infectious Diseases: Diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of congenital toxoplasmosis in the United States. Pediatrics 139(2):e20163860, 2017

Mandelbrot L: Fetal varicella—diagnosis, management, and outcome. Prenat Diagn 32(6):511, 2012

Mandelbrot L, Kieffer F, Sitta R, et al: Prenatal therapy with pyrimethamine + sulfadiazine vs spiramycin to reduce placental transmission of toxoplasmosis: a multicenter, randomized trial. Am J Obstet Gynecol 219(4):386.e1, 2018

Marin M, Marlow M, Moore KL, et al: Recommendation of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for use of a third dose of mumps virus-containing vaccine in persons at increased risk for mumps during an outbreak. MMWR 67(1):33-38, 2018

Marzec NS, Bessesen MT: Risk and outcomes of methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) bacteremia among patients admitted with and without MRSA nares colonization. Am J Infection Control 44:405, 2016

Mayor A, Bardajf A, Macete E, et al: Changing trends in *P. falciparum* burden, immunity, and disease in pregnancy. N Engl J Med 373(17):1607, 2015

McClure EM, Goldenberg RL, Dent AE, et al: A systematic review of the impact of malaria prevention in pregnancy on low birth weight and maternal anemia. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 121:103, 2013

McDonald E, Martin SW, Landry K, et al: West Nile virus and other domestic nationally notifiable arboviral diseases—United States, 2018c. MMWR 68(31):673, 2019

McGovern N, Shin A, Low G, et al: Human fetal dendritic cells promote prenatal T-cell immune suppression through arginase-2. Nature 546(7660):662, 2017

McLean HQ, Fiebelkorn AP, Temte JL, et al: Prevention of measles, rubella, congenital rubella syndrome, and mumps, 2013: summary recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR 62(4):1, 2013

Mead P, Petersen J, Hinckley A: Updated CDC recommendation for serologic diagnosis of Lyme disease. MMWR 68(32):703, 2019

Meaney-Delman D, Oduyebo T, Polen KN, et al: Prolonged detection of Zika virus RNA in pregnant women. Obstet Gynecol 128(4):724, 2016

Meijer WJ, van Noortwijk AG, Bruinse HW, et al: Influenza virus infection in pregnancy: a review. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 94(8):797, 2015

Mendelson E, Aboundy Y, Smetana Z, et al: Laboratory assessment and diagnosis of congenital viral infections: rubella, cytomegalovirus (CMV), varicella-zoster virus (VZV), herpes simplex virus (HSV), parvovirus B19 and human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). Reprod Toxicol 21:350, 2006

Mertz D, Geraci J, Winkup J, et al: Pregnancy as a risk factor for severe outcomes from influenza virus infection: a systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies. Vaccine 35(4):521, 2017

Miller E, Cradock-Watson JE, Pollock TM: Consequences of confirmed maternal rubella at successive stages of pregnancy. Lancet 2:781, 1982

Miller LG, Daum RS, Creech CB, et al: Clindamycin versus trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for uncomplicated skin infections. N Engl J Med 372(12):1093, 2015

Milligan R, Paul M, Richardson M, et al: Vaccines for preventing typhoid fever. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 5(5):CD001261, 2018

Mirouse A, Vignon P, Piron P, et al: Severe varicella-zoster virus pneumonia: a multicenter cohort study. Crit Care 21(1):137, 2017

Modlin F: Perinatal echovirus and group B coxsackievirus infections. Clin Perinatol 15:233, 1988

Money D, Infectious Disease Committee Members, Yudin MH, et al: SOBC committee opinion on the management of a pregnant woman exposed to or infected with Ebola virus disease in Canada. J Obstet Gynaecol Can 37(2):182, 2015

Mussi-Pinhata MM, Yamamoto AY, Aragon DC, et al: Seroconversion of cytomegalovirus infection during pregnancy and fetal infection in a highly seropositive population: "the BraCHS study." J Infect Dis 218(8):1200, 2018

Mylonakis E, Paliou M, Hohmann EL, et al: Listeriosis during pregnancy. Medicine 81:260, 2002

Nagel HT, de Haan TR, Vandenbussche FP, et al: Long-term outcome after fetal transfusion for hydrops associated with parvovirus B19 infection. Obstet Gynecol 109(1):42, 2007

Nanduri SA, Petit S, Smelser C, et al: Epidemiology of invasive early-onset and late-onset group B streptococcal disease in the United States, 2006 to 2015: multistate laboratory in population-based surveillance. JAMA Pediatr 173(3):224, 2019

National Institutes of Health: Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) treatment guidelines. 2021. Available at: https://www.covid19treatmentguidelines.nih.gov/. Accessed May 7, 2021

Nishiura H: Smallpox during pregnancy and maternal outcomes. Emerg Infect Dis 12:1119, 2006

Nunes MC, Cutland CL, Jones S, et al: Efficacy of maternal influenza vaccination against all-cause lower respiratory tract infection hospitalizations in young infants: results from a randomized control trial. Clin Infect Disease 65(7):1066, 2017

O'Leary DR, Kuhn S, Kniss KL, et al: Birth outcomes following West Nile virus infection of pregnant women in the United States: 2003–2004. Pediatrics 117:e537, 2006

Oboho IK, Reed C, Gargiullo P, et al: Benefit of early initiation of influenza antiviral treatment to pregnant women hospitalized with laboratory-confirmed influenza. J Infect Dis 214(4):507, 2016

Oduyebo T, Pineda D, Lamin M, et al: A pregnant patient with Ebola virus disease. Obstet Gynecol 126(6):1273, 2015

Ogbuanu IU, Zeko S, Chu SY, et al: Maternal, fetal, and neonatal outcomes associated with measles during pregnancy: Namibia, 2009–2010. Clin Infect Dis 58(8):1086, 2014

Ornoy A, Tenenbaum A: Pregnancy outcome following infections by coxsackie, echo, measles, mumps, hepatitis, polio and encephalitis viruses. Reprod Toxicol 21:446, 2006

Pacheco LD, Saad AF, Saade G: Early acute respiratory support for pregnant patients with coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) infection. Obstet Gynecol 136(1):42, 2020

Pan American Health Organization, World Health Organization: Salmonella serovar Typhi haplotype H58–Epidemiological alert. Washington, D.C., 2018. Available at: https://www3.paho.org/hq/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=14721:10-october-2018-salmonella-enterica-serovar-typhi-epidemiological-alert&Itemid=42346&lang=en. Accessed May 7, 2021

Parisot M, Jolivet A, Boukhari R, et al: Shigellosis and pregnancy in French Guiana: obstetric and neonatal complications. Am J Trop Med Hyg 95(1):26, 2016

Patel A, Charani E, Ariyanayagam D, et al: New-onset anosmia and ageusia in adult patients diagnosed with SARS-CoV-2 infection. Clin Microbiol Infect 26(9):1236, 2020

Patel M, Lee AD, Clemmons NS, et al: National update on measles cases and outbreaks—United States, January 1–October 1, 2019. MMWR 68(40):893-896, 2019

Paz-Bailey G, Rosenberg ES, Doyle K, et al: Persistence of Zika virus in body fluids—preliminary report. N Engl J Med 379(13):1234, 2017

Peppa M, Thomas SL, Minassian C, et al: Seasonal influenza vaccination during pregnancy and the risk of major congenital malformations in live-born infants: a 2010–2016 historical cohort study. Clin Infect Dis Jun 23:ciaa845, 2020

Picone O, Grangeot-Keros L, Senat M, et al: Cytomegalovirus non-primary infection during pregnancy. Can serology help with diagnosis? J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(2):224, 2017

Pimentel JD, Meier FA, Samuel LP: Chorioamnionitis and neonatal sepsis from community-acquired MRSA. Emerg Infect Dis 15:2069, 2009

Polack FP, Thomas SJ, Kitchin N, et al: Safety and efficacy of the BNT162b2 mRNA Covid-19 vaccine. N Engl J Med 383(27):2603, 2020

PREGACT Study Group, Pekyi D, Ampromfi AA, et al: Four artemisinin-based treatments in African pregnant women with malaria. N Engl J Med 374(1):913, 2016

Pridjian G, Sirois PA, McRae S, et al: Prospective study of pregnancy and newborn outcomes in mothers with West Nile illness during pregnancy. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 106(8):716, 2016

Prince HE, Lapé-Nixon M: Role of cytomegalovirus (CMV) IgG avidity testing in diagnosing primary CMV infection during pregnancy. Clin Vaccine Immunol 21(10):1377, 2014

Rainwater-Lovett K, Moss WJ: Measles (rubeola). In Kasper DL, Fauci AS, Hauser SL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2018

Randis TM, Gleber SE, Hooven TA: Group B Streptococcus beta-hemolysin/cytolysin breaches maternal-fetal barriers to cause preterm birth and IUFD in vivo. J Infect Dis 210:65, 2014

Raschetti R, Vivanti AJ, Vauloup-Fellous C, et al: Synthesis and systematic review of reported neonatal SARS-CoV-2 infections. Nat Commun 11(1):5164, 2020

Rasmussen SA, Jamieson DJ, Honein MA, et al: Zika virus and birth defects—reviewing the evidence for causality. N Engl J Med 374(20):1981, 2016

Rasmussen SA, Jamieson DJ, Uyeki TM: Effects of influenza on pregnant women and infants. Am J Obstet Gynecol 207(3 Suppl):S3, 2012

Rawlinson WD, Boppana SB, Fowler KB, et al: Congenital cytomegalovirus infection in pregnancy and the neonate: consensus recommendations for prevention, diagnosis, and therapy. Lancet Infect Dis 17(6):e177, 2017

RECOVERY Collaborative Group, Horby P, Lim WS, et al: Dexamethasone in hospitalized patients with Covid-19. N Engl J Med 384(8):693, 2021

Reich PJ, Boyle MG, Hogan PG, et al: Emergence of community-associated methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus strains in the neonatal intensive care unit: an infection prevention and patient safety challenge. Clin Microbiol Infect 22(7):645.e1, 2016

Revello MG, Furione M, Zavattoni M, et al: Human cytomegalovirus (HCMV) DNAemia in the mother at amniocentesis as a risk factor for iatrogenic HCMF infection of the fetus. J Infect Dis 197:593, 2008

Reynolds MR, Jones AM, Peterson EE, et al: Vital signs: update on Zika virus-associated birth defects and evaluation of all U.S. infants with congenital Zika virus exposure—U.S. Zika pregnancy registry, 2016. MMWR 66(13):366, 2017

Roberts DJ, Edlow AG, Romero RJ, et al: A standardized definition of placental infection by severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2), a consensus statement from the National Institutes of Health/Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development (NIH/NICHD) SARS-CoV-2 placental infection workshop. Am J Obstet Gynecol August 5, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Robertson SA, Zhang B, Chan H, et al: MicroRNA regulation of immune events at conception. Mol Reprod Dev 84(9):914, 2017

Rogers BB: Parvovirus B19: twenty-five years in perspective. Pediatr Dev Pathol 2:296, 1999

Rogerson SJ, Desai M, Mayor A, et al: Burden, pathology, and costs of malaria in pregnancy: new developments for an old problem. Lancet Infect Dis 18(4):e107, 2018

Rouse DJ, Keimig TW, Riley LE, et al: Case records of the Massachusetts General Hospital. Case 16–2016. A 31-year-old pregnant woman with fever. N Engl J Med 374(21):2076, 2016

Saetre K, Godhwani N, Maria M, et al: Congenital babesiosis after maternal infection with Borrelia burgdorferi and Babesia microti. J Pediatric Infect Dis Soc 7(1):e1, 2018

Saldan A, Forner G, Mengoli C, et al: Testing for cytomegalovirus in pregnancy. J Clin Microbiol 55(3):693, 2017

Sapuan S, Kortsalioudaki C, Anthony M, et al: Neonatal listeriosis in the UK 2004–2014. J Infect 74(3):236, 2017

Schwartz DA, Morotti D: Placental pathology of COVID-19 with and without fetal and neonatal infection: trophoblast necrosis and chronic histiocytic intervillositis as risk factors for transplacental transmission of SARS-CoV-2. Viruses 12(11):1308, 2020

Seale AC, Bianchi-Jassir F, Russell NJ, et al: Estimates of the burden of group B streptococcal disease worldwide for pregnant women, stillbirths, and children. Clin Infect Dis 65(Suppl_2):S200, 2017

See I, Wesson P, Gualandi N, et al: Socioeconomic factors explain racial disparities in invasive community-associated methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus disease rates. Clin Infect Dis 64(5):597, 2017

Sejvar JJ, Lopez AS, Cortese MM, et al: Acute flaccid myelitis in the United States, August–December 2014: results of nationwide surveillance. Clin Infect Dis 63(6):737, 2016

Shan C, Xie X, Shi PY: Zika virus vaccine: progress and challenges. Cell Host Microbe 24(1):12, 2018

Shane AL, Mody RK, Crump JA, et al: 2017 Infectious Diseases Society of American Clinical Practice Guidelines for the diagnosis and management of infectious diarrhea. Clin Infect Dis 65(12):e45, 2017

Shapiro ED: Lyme disease. N Engl J Med 370(18):1724, 2014

Shimabukuro TT, Kim SY, Myers TR, et al: Preliminary findings of mRNA Covid-19 vaccine safety in pregnant persons. N Engl J Med 384(24):2273, 2021

Siegel M, Goldberg M: Incidence of poliomyelitis in pregnancy. N Engl J Med 253:841, 1955

Sisman J, Jaleel MA, Moreno W, et al: Intrauterine transmission of SARS-COV-2 infection in a preterm infant. Pediatr Infect Dis J 39(9):e265, 2020

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Hughes BL, Gyamfi-Bannerman C: Diagnosis and antenatal management of congenital cytomegalovirus infection. Am J Obstet Gynecol 214(6):B5, 2016

Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine: Publications & clinical guidance. 2021. Available at: https://www.smfm.org/covidclinical. Accessed May 7, 2021

Stafford IA, Stewart RD, Sheffield JS, et al: Efficacy of maternal and neonatal chemoprophylaxis for early-onset group B streptococcal disease. Obstet Gynecol 120(1):123, 2012

Steere AC, Strle F, Wormser GP, et al: Lyme borreliosis. Nat Rev Dis Primers 2:16090, 2016

Steere AC: Lyme borreliosis. Jameson J, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2018

Stewart RD, Bryant SN, Sheffield JS: West Nile virus infection in pregnancy. Case report. Infect Dis 2013:351872, 2013

Stoll BJ, Hansen NI, Sanchez PJ, et al: The burden of group B streptococcal and *E. coli* disease continues. Pediatrics 127(5):817, 2011

Stoll BJ, Puopolo KM, Hansen NI, et al: Early-onset neonatal sepsis 2015 to 2017, the rise of Escherichia coli, and the need for novel prevention strategies. JAMA Pediatr Jul 1;174(7), 2020

Strebel PM, Orenstein WA: Measles. N Engl J Med 381(4):349, 2019

SYROCOT (Systematic Review on Congenital Toxoplasmosis) Study Group: Effectiveness of prenatal treatment for congenital toxoplasmosis: a meta-analysis of individual patients' data. Lancet 369:115, 2007

Tack DM, Ray L, Griffin PM, et al: Preliminary incidence and trends of infections with pathogens transmitted commonly through food—Foodborne Diseases Active Surveillance Network, 10 U.S. Sites, 2016–2019. MMWR 69(17):509, 2020

Talan DA, Mower WR, Krishnadasan A, et al: Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole versus placebo for uncomplicated skin abscess. N Engl J Med 374(9):823, 2016

Tanamai VW, Seagle BL, Luo G: Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* intracranial epidural abscess with osteomyelitis during pregnancy: a case report. J Reprod Med 61(5–6):295, 2016

Tanimura K, Tairaku S, Morioka I, et al: Universal screening with use of immunoglobulin G avidity for congenital cytomegalovirus infection. Clin Infect Dis 65(10):1652, 2017

Tarning J: Treatment of malaria in pregnancy. N Engl J Med 374(1):981, 2016

Tassin M, Martinovic J, Mirand A, et al: A case of congenital echovirus 11 infection acquired early in pregnancy. J Clin Virol 59:71, 2014

Thompson MG, Kwong JC, Regan AK, et al: Influenza vaccine effectiveness in preventing influenza-associated hospitalizations during pregnancy: a multicountry retrospective test negative design study, 2010–2016. Clin Infect Dis 68(9):1444, 2019

Tilburgs T, Evans JH, Crespo ÂC, et al: The HLA-G cycle provides for both NK tolerance and immunity at the maternal-fetal interface. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 112(43):13312, 2015

Tolcher MC, McKinney JR, Eppes CS, et al: Prone positioning for pregnant women with hypoxemia due to coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19). Obstet Gynecol 136(2):259, 2020

Towbin JA, Griffin LD, Martin AB, et al: Intrauterine adenoviral myocarditis presenting as nonimmune hydrops fetalis: diagnosis by polymerase chain reaction. Pediatr Infect Dis J 13:144, 1994

Tudela CM, Stewart RD, Roberts SW, et al: Intrapartum evidence of early-onset group B Streptococcus. Obstet Gynecol 119(3):626, 2012

Uyeki TM, Bernstein HH, Bradley JS, et al: Clinical practice guidelines by the Infectious Diseases Society of America: 2018 update on diagnosis, treatment, chemoprophylaxis, and institutional outbreak management of seasonal influenza. Clin Infect Dis. 68(6):e1, 2019

Vakili M, Crum-Cianflone NF: Spinal epidural abscess: a series of 101 cases. Am J Med 130(12):1458, 2017

Verity R, Okell LC, Dorigatti I, et al: Estimates of the severity of coronavirus disease 2019: a model-based analysis. Lancet Infect Dis 20(6):669, 2020

Villard O, Breit L, Cimon B, et al: Comparison of four commercially available avidity tests for *Toxoplasma gondii*-specific IgG antibodies. Clin Vaccine Immunol 20(2):197, 2013

Vornhagen J, Armistead B, Santana-Ufret V, et al: Group B streptococcus exploits vaginal epithelial exfoliation for ascending infection. J Clin Invest 128(5):1985, 2018

Wang C, Zhang X, Bialek S, et al: Attribution of congenital cytomegalovirus infection to primary versus non-primary maternal infection. Clin Infect Dis 52:e11, 2011

Wang R, Yan W, Du M, et al: The effect of influenza virus infection on pregnancy outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis of cohort studies. Int J Infect Dis 105:567, 2021

Wendel GD Jr, Leveno KJ, Sánchez PJ, et al: Prevention of neonatal group B streptococcal disease: a combined intrapartum and neonatal protocol. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:618, 2002

Wessels MR: Streptococcal infections. In Kasper DL, Fauci AS, Hauser SL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2018

Whitley RJ: Varicella-zoster virus infections. In Jameson J, Fausi AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2018

Wilcox CR, Jones CE: Beyond passive immunity: is there priming of the fetal immune system following vaccination of pregnancy and what are the potential clinical implications? Front Immunol 9:1548, 2018

Wong SF, Chow KM, Leung TN, et al: Pregnancy and perinatal outcomes of women with severe acute respiratory syndrome. Am J Obstet Gynecol 191:292, 2004

Woodworth KR, Olsen EO, Neelam V, et al: Birth and infant outcomes following laboratory-confirmed SARS-CoV-2 infection in pregnancy—SET-NET, 16 Jurisdictions, March 29-October 14, 2020. MMWR 69(44):1635, 2020

World Health Organization: Coronavirus disease (COVID-19) weekly epidemiological update and weekly operational update. 2021. Available at https://www.who.int/emergencies/diseases/novel-coronavirus-2019/situation-reports. Accessed May 7, 2021.

World Health Organization: World Malaria Report 2019. 2019. Available at: https://www.who.int/publications/i/item/9789241565721. Accessed May 7, 2021

Wright PF: Influenza. In Jameson J, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 20th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2018

Wylie B, Hauptman M, Woolf AD: Insect repellants during pregnancy in the era of the Zika virus. Obstet Gynecol 128(5):1111, 2016

Xu X, Blanton L, Elal AI, et al: Update: influenza activity in the United States during the 2018–19 season and composition of the 2019–20 influenza vaccine. MMWR 68(24):544, 2019

Yaegashi N: Pathogenesis of nonimmune hydrops fetalis caused by intrauterine B19 infection. Tohoku J Exp Med 190:65, 2000

Yamamoto L, Targa LS, Sumita LM, et al: Association of parasite load levels in amniotic fluid with clinical outcome in congenital toxoplasmosis. Obstet Gynecol 130(2):335, 2017

Yazigi A, De Pecoulas AE, Vauloup-Fellous C, et al: Fetal and neonatal abnormalities due to congenital rubella syndrome: a review of literature. J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med 30(3):274, 2017

Young MK, Cripps AW, Nimmo GR, et al: Post-exposure passive immunization for preventing rubella and congenital rubella syndrome. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 9:CD010586, 2015

Zambrano LD, Ellington S, Strid P, et al: Update: Characteristics of symptomatic women in reproductive age with laboratory–confirmed SARS-CoV-2 infection by pregnancy status—United States January 22-October 3, 2020. MMWR 69(44):1641, 2020

Zauche LH, Wallace B, Smoots AN, et al: Receipt of mRNA Covid-19 vaccines and risk of spontaneous abortion. N Engl J Med September 8, 2021 [Epub ahead of print]

Zhang HJ, Patenaude V, Abenhaim HA: Maternal outcomes in pregnancies affected by varicella zoster virus infections: population-based study on 7.7 million pregnancy admissions. J Obstet Gynaecol Res 41(1):62, 2015

CHAPTER 68

Sexually Transmitted Infections

Sexually transmitted infections (STIs) include syphilis, gonorrhea, chlamydial and trichomonal infections, and infections caused by human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), herpes simplex virus (HSV), human papillomavirus (HPV), and hepatitis B and C viruses. In describing their pathogenesis, *horizontal transmission* is transfer to a contemporary. Instead, *vertical transmission* refers to passage of an infectious agent from the mother to her fetus through the placenta, during labor or delivery, or by breastfeeding. Many STIs can harm the mother or fetus. Thus, these are sought through both asymptomatic screening and symptomatic diagnostic testing and then treated. For this, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) provides guidelines, which are described throughout this chapter.

For STI screening and diagnosis, *serological testing* is recommended in some cases and identifies antibodies formed by the patient against the pathogen. In others, *direct detection* of an infectious agent by culture or by a nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT) of body fluids or lesions is suitable. NAATs include any molecular method used to detect the presence of DNA or RNA of a pathogen. NAATs may be polymerase chain reaction (PCR) tests (most common), transcription-mediated amplification (TMA) tests, or others. NAATs may be qualitative (detecting presence or absence only) or quantitative depending on the specific test. The terms NAAT and PCR may be used interchangeably in some cases when appropriate.

If one STI is identified, patients are offered screening for all STIs, because these infections are commonly comorbid. Treatment of most STIs is associated with improved pregnancy outcome and prevention of perinatal morbidity. Logically, education, screening, treatment, and prevention are essential components of prenatal care.

SYPHILIS

This infection remains a major threat for both mother and fetus. Since 2001, the combined rate of primary and secondary syphilis has risen almost yearly, and among women in 2019, the rate was 4 cases per 100,000 persons (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021b). For congenital syphilis, the rate in 2019 was 48 cases per 100,000 live births. This is a nearly 300 percent rise since 2015. Of risks, higher congenital syphilis rates are linked to inadequate prenatal care, substance use during pregnancy, African American race, and lack of screening and treatment (Smullin, 2021). The CDC also includes sex work, multiple or new sexual partners, incarceration, or homelessness (Workowski, 2021). Syphilis remains a significant global health problem (Korenromp, 2019).

Pathogenesis

Syphilis is caused by the spirochetal bacterium *Treponema pallidum.* With horizontal transmission, minute abrasions on the vaginal mucosa provide entry, and cervical eversion, hyperemia, and friability raise this risk. Spirochetes replicate and

disseminate through lymphatic channels and then hematogenously if untreated.

During vertical transmission, spirochetes readily cross the placenta. This is the most common route, but neonatal infection may result from contact with spirochetes from lesions at delivery or across the placental membranes. Fetal infection develops in >50 percent of untreated early maternal syphilis cases and in up to 10 percent of late latent disease (Fiumara, 1975; Hollier, 2001).

Clinical Manifestations

Maternal Syphilis and Definitions

This is staged according to clinical features and disease duration.

- *Primary syphilis* is diagnosed by its characteristic chancre, which develops at the inoculation site. Typically, a solitary, painless lesion has a raised, firm border and a red, smooth ulcerated base without significant pus (Fig. 68-1). Nonsuppurative lymphadenopathy may develop. A chancre usually resolves spontaneously in 2 to 8 weeks, even if untreated. Multiple lesions, if found, are predominantly in women with HIV co-infection.
- *Secondary syphilis* stems from spirochete dissemination to multiple organ systems. Manifestations develop 4 to 10 weeks after the chancre appears and include dermatological abnormalities in up to 90 percent. A diffuse macular rash, plantar and palmar circular lesions, patchy alopecia, and mucous patches may be seen (Fig. 68-2). *Condylomata lata* are flesh-colored flat nodules found on the perineum and perianus. Mucosal lesions teem with spirochetes and are highly infectious. Women may have constitutional symptoms such as fever, headache, and myalgias. Hepatitis, nephropathy, ocular changes, anterior uveitis, and periostitis are less common findings. Manifestations of secondary syphilis resolve without treatment after 1 to 6 months, despite incomplete clearance of organisms by the immune system.
- With *latent syphilis*, clinical manifestations of primary or secondary syphilis either have resolved or were never recognized, but infection persists and is identified by serological testing. *Early latent syphilis* is subclinical disease acquired within the preceding 12 months. Timing of infection is determined by laboratory seroconversion results, clearly described symptoms consistent with primary or secondary syphilis within the prior 12 months, or exposure to a sexual partner in the previous 12 months with primary, secondary, or early latent syphilis. If the duration of infection is either unclear or beyond 12 months, the term is *latent syphilis, unknown duration or late*.
- *Tertiary syphilis* is a slowly progressive disease that affects any organ system but is rarely seen in reproductive-aged women.

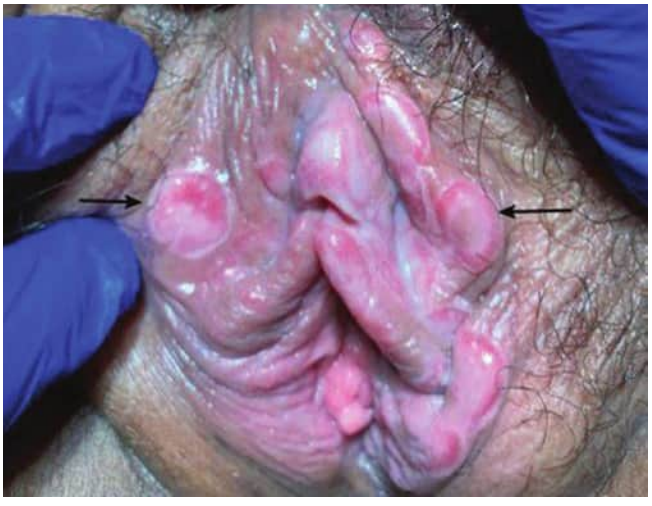


FIGURE 68-1 Primary syphilis. Chancres show a raised, firm border and smooth base and may be singular or multiple, as seen here. Arrows point to two reciprocal or "kissing" lesions, which develop as infection on one side spreads to the other when tissues are apposed. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Allison J. Tracy, MD.)

Early-stage syphilis includes primary, secondary, and early latent syphilis. These are associated with high spirochete loads, and partner transmission rates range from 30 to 60 percent (Garnett, 1997; Singh, 1999). *Late-stage syphilis* includes latent syphilis, unknown duration or late and tertiary syphilis. In these, transmission rates decline because of smaller inoculum sizes.

Congenital Syphilis

Without screening and treatment, approximately 70 percent of infected women will have an adverse pregnancy outcome

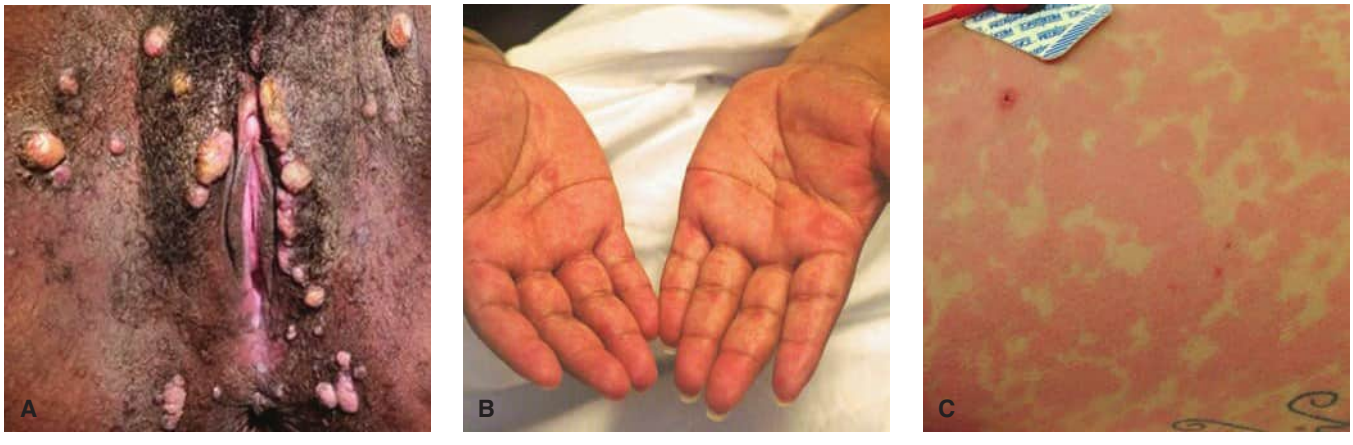


FIGURE 68-2 Secondary syphilis. **A.** Condyloma lata. (Reproduced with permission from Dr. Ralynn Brann.) **B.** Target lesions on the palms. **C.** Diffuse maculopapular rash.

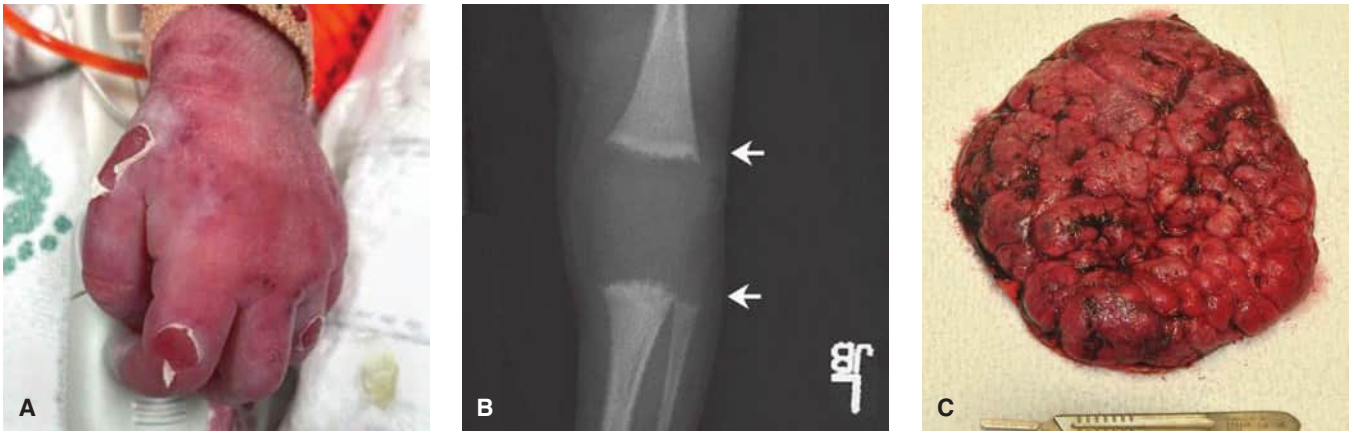


FIGURE 68-3 Congenital syphilis. **A.** A desquamating skin rash known as *pemphigus syphiliticus* may be seen. **B.** Neonatal lower-extremity long-bone radiographs show a "moth-eaten" appearance (*arrows*). **C.** Enlarged hydropic placenta of a syphilis-infected pregnancy.

(Hawkes, 2011). Maternal infection can lead to congenital infection, preterm labor, low birthweight, and fetal or neonatal death (Qin, 2014). Because of its immune incompetence prior to mid-pregnancy, the fetus is less likely to manifest the immunological inflammatory response characteristic of congenital infection before this time (Silverstein, 1962). However, congenital infection is still presumed in all cases, and thus treatment is imperative.

When vertical transmission occurs, severe congenital syphilis progresses along a continuum. Hepatic abnormalities are followed by anemia, thrombocytopenia, and then ascites and hydrops. Stillbirth remains a major complication (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021b). The newborn may have jaundice with petechiae or purpuric skin lesions, lymphadenopathy, rhinitis, pneumonia, myocarditis, nephrosis, or long-bone involvement (Fig. 68-3).

With syphilitic infection, the placenta becomes large and pale. Microscopically, villi lose their characteristic arborization, and blood vessels diminish or are obliterated as a result of endarteritis and stromal cell proliferation. Sheffield and colleagues (2002c) described these villi in more than 60 percent of placentas from women with untreated syphilis at delivery. Examination of the umbilical cord may reveal necrotizing funisitis, and spirochetes may be microscopically seen after immunohistochemical staining (Adhikari, 2020).

Diagnosis

In their 2018 guidance, the United States Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF) recommends screening for syphilis in all pregnant women to prevent congenital infection. Testing is performed at the first prenatal visit. In populations with a high prevalence of syphilis or in persons with the risk factors noted earlier, serological testing is repeated at 28 weeks' gestation and again at delivery (Workowski, 2021).

Treponema pallidum cannot be cultured from clinical specimens. However, direct diagnosis of early-stage disease can be completed by dark-field microscopic examination, NAAT, or immunostaining of lesion exudate, tissue, or body fluid. These methods are not widely available and are less sensitive for blood specimens (Pillay, 2018). In practice, a diagnosis is made with serological testing coupled with clinical findings.

Two types of serological tests are employed to diagnose and screen, and sequential use of both reduces false-positive diagnoses. If the first is positive, the second type is then performed. This combination identifies infection but by itself does not determine disease stage. Instead, disease stage is assigned based on initial serological titer levels, patient history of potential exposures and prior treatment, and clinical-stage definitions, described earlier.

Traditionally, the first type is *nontreponemal testing,* and either the Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (VDRL) or the rapid plasma reagin (RPR) is selected. Both tests measure patient immunoglobulin M and G (IgM and IgG) antibodies formed against cardiolipin that is released from damaged host cells and possibly also from treponemes. Notably, these same antibodies can also be produced in response to other acute events that include recent vaccination, febrile illness, and pregnancy itself. They can be produced in response to chronic conditions such as intravenous (IV) drug abuse, systemic lupus erythematosus, aging, leprosy, or cancer. As such, these all serve as potential sources of false-positive results (Larsen, 1995). Conversely, early infection may be characterized by very high levels of antibody or antigen, which prevent immune complex formation and lead to false-negative test results. This is the prozone effect. Alternatively, seroconversion occurs at around the third week of infection but can take up to 6 weeks (Peeling, 2004). Thus, women with very early primary syphilis can have initially false-negative serological test results.

With positive nontreponemal test results, findings are quantified and expressed as titers. Because titers reflect disease activity, they rise during early syphilis and often exceed levels of 1:32 in secondary syphilis. A nontreponemal titer is usually measured on the day of treatment initiation. Subsequent titer declines are considered relative to this day-of-treatment titer.

The second type of serological test is used to confirm the presence of *T pallidum*–specific antibodies. These tests include fluorescent treponemal-antibody absorption tests (FTA-ABS), *T pallidum* passive particle agglutination (TP-PA) tests, and various immunoassays (Association of Public Health Laboratories, 2020). *Of note, these treponemal-specific tests generally remain positive throughout life, even after treatment.* Antibodies may be detected by treponemal assays up to a few weeks earlier than those detected by nontreponemal tests (Levett, 2015).

TABLE 68-1. Interpretation of Serologic Tests Using Reverse Sequence Syphilis Screening

Treponemal Test	VDRL or RPR	TP-PA	Possible Interpretations
Nonreactive[a]			1. Absence of syphilis 2. Very early syphilis before seroconversion
Reactive[b]	Nonreactive	Reactive	1. Prior treated syphilis[c]
		Reactive	2. Untreated syphilis[c]
		Nonreactive	3. False-positive treponemal test[d]
Reactive	Reactive		1. Active syphilis[c] 2. Recently treated syphilis with nontreponemal titers that have not yet become nonreactive[c] 3. Treated syphilis with persistent titers (serofast)[e]
Nonreactive[a]	Reactive		1. False-positive nontreponemal test

[a]No further testing performed if the initial treponemal test is negative and if there is no clinical suspicion for early syphilis.
[b]Verified using a second, different treponemal test (TP-PA) if the nontreponemal test is nonreactive.
[c]If prior treatment received, verify treatment adequacy for clinical stage and assess for reexposure. If inadequate, unverified, or no treatment received, perform full clinical staging evaluation and begin treatment course.
[d]May be seen in pregnancy or among immigrants with previous exposure to endemic treponematoses.
[e]Successful treatment is usually considered verification of adequate treatment with a fourfold decline in titers (e.g., from 1:32 to 1:8).
RPR = rapid plasma reagin; TP-PA = *T pallidum* particle agglutination assay; VDRL = Venereal Disease Research Laboratory.
From Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2011.

Traditionally, nontreponemal tests are used first for screening, and results are then confirmed by a treponemal-specific test. In a newer *reverse sequence* strategy, screening begins *first* with a treponemal-specific test. Each of the serological tests has limitations, including false-positive and -negative results. Management of discordant finding with this latter sequence is shown in Table 68-1. Notably, both approaches are suitable if a screening, follow-up, and treatment program is in place.

In contrast to these laboratory tests, rapid "point-of-care" (POC) syphilis screening of blood or serum samples is available. Most tests are treponemal-specific, and positive POC results can then be confirmed by laboratory-based tests. In hard-to-reach populations, immediate treatment of women with positive POC results is associated with lower rates of stillbirth, neonatal death, and congenital syphilis (Brandenburger, 2021). This practice, however, risks overtreating previously cured women who still have residual persistent treponemal antibodies. This limitation may be overcome by newer POC dual tests, which simultaneously assess nontreponemal and treponemal antibodies (Satyaputra, 2021).

Following maternal diagnosis, sonographic evaluation is performed for fetuses >20 weeks' gestation to search for signs of congenital syphilis. Rac and associates (2014) noted that 31 percent of infected women diagnosed at ≥18 weeks' gestation had fetuses with abnormal sonographic findings. Hepatomegaly, placental thickening, hydramnios, ascites, hydrops fetalis, and elevated middle cerebral artery Doppler velocimetry measurements suggest fetal infection. Before 20 weeks, treatment is highly successful, and abnormal sonographic findings are rare (Nathan, 1997).

With maternal infection and with a fetus of viable age that shows sonographic findings, antepartum fetal heart rate (FHR) monitoring prior to antibiotic treatment is recommended. If the FHR tracing is reassuring, antibiotic therapy can proceed. In contrast, spontaneous late decelerations or a nonreactive FHR tracing likely reflects an extremely ill fetus that may poorly tolerate a Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction, described subsequently. In this extreme case, consultation with a neonatologist regarding a plan of delaying treatment, pursuing delivery, and then treating in the nursery is a consideration (Wendel, 2002).

After antibiotic treatment, further sonographic surveillance or antenatal testing of fetal well-being is determined in consultation with specialists. Following adequate treatment, sonographic signs of congenital infection resolve over weeks to months, and delivery is reserved for usual obstetrical indications (Rac, 2014). In fetuses *without* initial signs of congenital syphilis, subsequent sonographic evaluations are reserved for other fetal indications.

Treatment

Syphilis therapy during pregnancy aims to eradicate maternal infection and to prevent or treat congenital syphilis. Parenteral penicillin G benzathine remains the preferred treatment for all stages of syphilis during pregnancy (Table 68-2). A second dose of benzathine penicillin G may be given 1 week after the initial dose in patients with early-stage syphilis or sonographic signs of congenital infection. This aims to reduce the risk of fetal treatment failure and is our current practice at Parkland Hospital. High maternal serological titers, preterm delivery, and delivery shortly after antepartum therapy are all risks for failure of maternal treatment to prevent neonatal infection (Sheffield, 2002b). Women should abstain from sexual contact for 7 days, until all skin/mucous membrane lesions heal, and until sexual partners are treated.

TABLE 68-2. Recommended Treatment for Pregnant Women with Syphilis

Category	Treatment
Early syphilis[a]	Benzathine penicillin G (Bicillin L-A)[b], 2.4 million units as a single intramuscular injection; some recommend a second dose 1 week later to help prevent congenital syphilis
>1-yr duration[c]	Benzathine penicillin G (Bicillin L-A)[b], 2.4 million units intramuscularly weekly for 3 doses[d]

[a]Primary, secondary, and early latent syphilis of less than 1-year duration.
[b]Bicillin C-R is not a suitable option.
[c]Latent syphilis of unknown or more than 1-year duration; tertiary syphilis. Missed doses are not acceptable for pregnant women, and those who miss any dose of therapy must repeat the full course of therapy.
[d]Optimal treatment interval is 7 days. If >9 days pass between doses, the entire treatment course is repeated.
Data from Workowski, 2021.

There are no proven alternatives to penicillin therapy during pregnancy. Some data support a 1-g daily IV dose of ceftriaxone for 10 days (Cao, 2017; Liang, 2016). Tetracyclines are effective but not recommended during pregnancy, because of the risk for offspring teeth discoloration.

Following treatment of syphilis before 24 weeks' gestation, nontreponemal tests are repeated in either the third trimester or no sooner than 8 weeks after treatment unless reinfection is suspected (Workowski, 2021). Following treatment after 24 weeks, nontreponemal titers may be repeated in the third trimester in some cases and are repeated at delivery. Adequate serological response to treatment is suggested by a fourfold decline in nontreponemal titer and resolution of any clinical symptoms. A fourfold decline in titer is more likely to occur following treatment of early-stage syphilis, which typically has high nontreponemal titers. Absence of a fourfold decline does not itself determine treatment failure, particularly when the initial nontreponemal titer is <1:8. Titers are best interpreted in conjunction with clinical history and by those experienced with treatment of syphilis in pregnancy. Because VDRL titers do not correspond directly to RPR titers, consistent use of the same test for surveillance is recommended.

Some successfully treated patients may still exhibit persistently low-level positive titers, which are referred to as "serofast." This state is more likely in older individuals, those with lower initial nontreponemal antibody titers, and those with later stages of syphilis (Seña, 2015).

In some instances, a woman may present without symptoms but describes recent sexual contact with a person who has been diagnosed with syphilis. She should be evaluated clinically and serologically. If their sexual contact occurred within the preceding 90 days, the gravida is treated presumptively for early syphilis, even if serological test results are negative. This accounts for early infection but before seroconversion. If contact was more than 90 days ago, treatment is based on serological results.

Penicillin Reactions

Women with a history of penicillin allergy should have either an oral stepwise penicillin-dose challenge or skin testing performed to confirm the risk of IgE-mediated anaphylaxis. If confirmed, penicillin desensitization is recommended and followed by benzathine penicillin G treatment (Table 68-3) (Wendel, 1985).

Distinct from allergy, the *Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction* can develop following penicillin treatment in most women with primary syphilis and approximately half with secondary infection. Uterine contractions, mild maternal temperature elevation, decreased fetal movement, and FHR decelerations are findings. Treatment is supportive with antipyretics as needed, hydration, and oxygen supplementation (Klein, 1990). In a study of 50 gravidas who received benzathine penicillin G for syphilis, the incidence of Jarisch-Herxheimer reactions was 40 percent (Myles, 1998). Of the 31 women monitored electronically, 42 percent developed regular uterine contractions, and 39 percent developed variable decelerations. All contractions resolved within 24 hours. Thus, for fetuses of viable gestational age,

TABLE 68-3. Penicillin Allergy—Oral Desensitization Protocol for Patients with a Positive Skin Test

Penicillin V Suspension Dose[a]	Amount[b] (units/mL)	mL	Units	Cumulative Dose (units)
1	1000	0.1	100	100
2	1000	0.2	200	300
3	1000	0.4	400	700
4	1000	0.8	800	1500
5	1000	1.6	1600	3100
6	1000	3.2	3200	6300
7	1000	6.4	6400	12,700
8	10,000	1.2	12,000	24,700
9	10,000	2.4	24,000	48,700
10	10,000	4.8	48,000	96,700
11	80,000	1.0	80,000	176,700
12	80,000	2.0	160,000	336,700
13	80,000	4.0	320,000	656,700
14	80,000	8.0	640,000	1,296,700

[a]Interval between doses: 15 minutes. Elapsed time: 3 hours and 45 minutes. Cumulative dose: 1.3 million units. Observation period: 30 minutes before parenteral administration of penicillin.
[b]The specific amount of drug was diluted in approximately 30 mL of water and administered orally.
Reproduced with permission from Wendel GD Jr, Stark BJ, Jamison RB, et al: Penicillin allergy and desensitization in serious infections during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 312:1229, 1985.

consideration is given to administering the first dose of antibiotic in labor and delivery to permit continuous fetal monitoring for at least 24 hours when the fetus has sonographic signs of syphilis (Adhikari, 2020; Wendel, 2002). With or without sonographic signs of fetal infection, patients are counseled on symptoms of the Jarisch-Herxheimer reaction prior to syphilis treatment and are encouraged to seek evaluation if they develop.

GONORRHEA

Infection Rates and Effects

Of reportable bacterial STIs, those caused by *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* are the second most common. The incidence in women in the United States has continued to rise since 2015, and the highest rates are in those aged 15 to 24 years (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021b). Among women giving birth in 2018, the rate was 310 cases per 100,000 live births (Gregory, 2020). In most gravidas, infection is limited to the cervix, urethra, and periurethral and greater vestibular (Bartholin) glands. Acute salpingitis is rare in pregnancy. However, pregnant women account for a disproportionate number of disseminated gonococcal infections (Bleich, 2012).

Gonococcal infection can have adverse effects in any trimester. In affected women, associated rates of preterm delivery, preterm prelabor ruptured membranes (PPROM), low birthweight, and perinatal mortality are slightly higher than in those without infection (Vallely, 2021). Miscarriage rates are not increased. However, untreated gonococcal cervicitis is associated with septic abortion and with uterine infection after surgical abortion (Burkman, 1976) (Chap. 11, p. 203).

Vertical transmission of gonorrhea mainly occurs through fetal contact with cervical infection during birth. The predominant sequela is *gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum*, which can lead to corneal scarring, ocular perforation, and blindness. Transmission rates are high and approximate 40 percent (Laga, 1986). Outlined in Chapter 32 (p. 593), ocular prophylaxis is provided to all newborns (U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, 2019a).

Screening and Treatment

Pregnant women who live in high-prevalence areas or who are at risk for gonorrhea should undergo first-trimester screening. Risk factors include age ≤25 years, prior or current STI, sex work, a new or nonmonogamous partner, a partner with an STI, multiple sexual partners, and inconsistent condom use if not monogamous (Workowski, 2021). Gonococcal infection is a marker for concomitant chlamydial infection. Thus, if chlamydial testing is unavailable, presumptive chlamydial therapy is given to women treated for gonorrhea.

Screening for gonorrhea in women is by culture or NAAT. NAATs have replaced culture in most laboratories, and kits are available for specific collection from the vagina, endocervix, or urine. Of these, vaginal or cervical samples are preferred, as urine collection may detect up to 10 percent fewer infections (Papp, 2014). If used, the initial urine stream, not midstream, is collected. In women with vaginal symptoms and who practice anal intercourse, rectal screening can be considered. One study of nonpregnant women at urban STI clinics found that approximately 20 percent of rectal chlamydia and gonorrhea infections would be missed if only cervical, vaginal, or urine samples were obtained (Llata, 2018). NAATs are also suitable for diagnosis of rectal or pharyngeal disease (Food and Drug Administration, 2019).

An ultrarapid NAAT for gonorrhea and chlamydia has been approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for point-of-care use. It performs similarly to laboratory-based testing, and results are available in approximately 30 minutes (Food and Drug Administration, 2021; Van Der Pol, 2020). This test has not been rigorously studied in pregnant women but may reduce barriers to prompt treatment in patients with limited access to care.

Gonorrhea treatment continues to evolve due to the ability of *N gonorrhoeae* to develop antimicrobial resistance (Table 68-4) (St Cyr, 2020). In gravidas, if chlamydia has not been excluded, a 1-g oral dose of azithromycin is added. Patients abstain from intercourse for 7 days after they and their sexual partner(s) have completed treatment.

For those with pharyngeal infection, non-ceftriaxone-based regimens have higher failure rates. Thus, those with contraindications to ceftriaxone merit infectious disease specialist consultation. With pharyngeal infection, a test-of-cure 1 to 2 weeks after treatment is recommend. This is unnecessary after treatment of urogenital or rectal gonorrhea.

To exclude reinfection, repeat testing is recommended 3 months after treatment of any gonorrhea infection. For any

TABLE 68-4. Treatment of Gonorrhea in Pregnancy[a,b]

Regimen	Drug and Dosage
Preferred	Weight <150 kg (<300 lb): ceftriaxone, single 500-mg IM injection[c] Weight ≥150 kg (≥300 lb): ceftriaxone, two simultaneous 500-mg IM injections[c]
Alternative	Cefixime, 800-mg single oral dose Gentamicin, single 240-mg IM dose *plus* azithromycin, 2-g single oral dose

[a]If *Chlamydia trachomatis* co-infection not excluded, then a 1-g oral azithromycin dose is added to regimens not already including azithromycin.
[b]Retesting is recommended at 3 months to exclude reinfection.
[c]1 mL of 1% lidocaine may be added to reduce injection site pain.
IM = intramuscular.
Data from St Cyr, 2020.

woman treated for gonorrhea in the first trimester and for any uninfected woman who is at high risk for gonococcal infection, testing is repeated in the third trimester (American Academy of Pediatrics, 2017; Workowski, 2021).

Sexual contacts are treated. Expedited therapy, discussed with chlamydial infection, is a less-desirable option due to the now-preferred injectable regimen. If elected, a single, oral, 800-mg dose of cefixime is provided. If chlamydia is not excluded, oral doxycycline, 100 mg twice daily for 7 days, is added.

Disseminated Gonococcal Infections

Gonococcal bacteremia may cause disseminated infections that manifest as petechial or pustular skin lesions, arthralgias, or septic arthritis. Antimicrobial susceptibility testing is requested for isolates cultured from infection sites. For treatment, ceftriaxone, 1 g IV or intramuscularly, is given every 24 hours and continued for 24 to 48 hours after clinical improvement (Workowski, 2021). An oral agent that is selected based on susceptibility testing is then provided to complete 1 week of therapy. Prompt recognition and antimicrobial treatment will usually yield favorable outcomes in pregnancy (Bleich, 2012). Meningitis and endocarditis are rare in pregnancy, but they may be fatal. For gonococcal *endocarditis*, ceftriaxone 1 to 2 g IV every 12 hours should be continued for at least 4 weeks, and for *meningitis*, 10 to 14 days. In all these cases, a single, 1-g, oral dose of azithromycin is provided to treat potential chlamydial co-infection (Workowski, 2021).

CHLAMYDIAL INFECTION

Infection Rates and Effects

Chlamydia trachomatis is an obligate intracellular bacterium that attaches to columnar or transitional-cell epithelium to cause urogenital infection. It is the most common reportable STI in the United States. The chlamydial infection rate was 694 cases per 100,000 women in 2019, and the highest rate is in those aged 15 to 24 years (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021b). Among women giving birth in 2018, the rate was 1844 cases per 100,000 live births (Gregory, 2020). Most infected pregnant women are asymptomatic, but a third have urethral syndrome, urethritis, or greater vestibular (Bartholin) gland infection (Peipert, 2003). Mucopurulent cervicitis may result from chlamydial or gonococcal infection or both. Uncommon manifestations during pregnancy are endometritis, salpingitis, reactive arthritis, and Reiter syndrome.

The role of chlamydial infection in pregnancy complications remains controversial. It is disputed whether untreated cervical infection raises rates of preterm delivery, PPROM, low birthweight, or perinatal mortality (Andrews, 2000; Reekie, 2018; Silva, 2011). Chlamydial infection is not associated with a greater risk of chorioamnionitis or with peripartum pelvic infection (Berman, 1987; Gibbs, 1987). However, delayed postpartum uterine infection has been described by Hoyme and associates (1986). The syndrome, which develops 2 to 3 weeks postpartum, is distinct from early postpartum metritis. It is characterized by vaginal bleeding or discharge, low-grade fever, and uterine tenderness.

Infection at delivery poses a higher risk to the newborn than to the mother. Vertical transmission leads to infection in 8 to 44 percent of neonates delivered vaginally from affected women (Rosenman, 2003). Of neonatal infections, conjunctivitis is the most common (Chap. 32, p. 593). Perinatal transmission to newborns can also cause pneumonia.

Screening and Treatment

Currently, the USPSTF and the American Academy of Pediatrics and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2017) recommend chlamydia screening for all women at the first prenatal visit (LeFevre, 2014). The College further suggests testing in the third trimester for those treated in the first trimester, all women aged ≤25 years, and those aged >25 years with behavioral factors, which mirror those for gonorrhea. Dionne-Odom and associates (2020) reported a reinfection rate of 10 percent in pregnant women successfully treated before delivery.

Diagnosis is made predominantly by NAAT rather than culture. Of samples for NAAT, vaginal or cervical samples are preferred, because urine collection may detect up to 10 percent fewer infections (Papp, 2014; Wiesenfeld, 2017). However, Roberts and associates (2011) evaluated NAAT of urine specimens compared with cervical secretions in more than 2000 pregnant women and found them to be equivalent. As with gonorrhea, the first portion of the urine stream is collected.

Currently recommended treatment regimens for chlamydial infections are shown in Table 68-5. Azithromycin is first-line treatment in pregnancy. The fluoroquinolones and doxycycline are usually avoided in pregnancy, and erythromycin estolate is contraindicated because of drug-related hepatotoxicity.

A test of cure is repeated 4 weeks after therapy completion in pregnancy. Earlier NAAT may resample dead but treated organisms (Lazenby, 2017). A positive result can reflect a reinfection, a false-positive case from dead organisms, or treatment failure or noncompliance. Fortunately, drug resistance is rare for *C trachomatis* (Deguchi, 2018). Our practice is to re-treat women with positive test-of-cure results. Additionally, repeat screening 3 months after treatment is recommended to exclude reinfection (Workowski, 2021).

Expedited Partner Therapy

To prevent STI transmission, guidelines for expedited partner therapy (EPT) have been created by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (2006a) and are endorsed by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020a).

TABLE 68-5. Oral Treatment of *Chlamydia trachomatis* Infection in Pregnancy[a]

Regimen	Drug and Dosage
Preferred	Azithromycin, 1 g as a single dose
Alternative	Amoxicillin, 500 mg three times daily for 7 d

[a]Test of cure is recommended at 1 month. Retesting is performed at 3 months to exclude reinfection.
Data from Workowski, 2021.

With EPT, treatment is provided to persons who were sexual contacts of the patient within the prior 60 days. Partner therapy may be a prescription slip for the partner, direct medication administration to the partner and patient simultaneously, or a medication packet delivered to the partner(s) by the patient. Ideally, EPT does not replace traditional partner referral to allow their medical assessment, counseling, and screening for other STIs.

EPT is acceptable for treatment of sexual contacts with chlamydial infection. Because of new guidelines that recommend injectable ceftriaxone alone, EPT for gonorrhea is less desirable unless the partner(s) will be unable or unwilling to seek treatment (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2021a). Fewer data are available to assess this strategy for trichomoniasis (Kissinger, 2006; Schwebke, 2010). EPT is not recommended for syphilis.

EPT is legally permissible or potentially allowable in all states. Links to specific state laws are found at: www.cdc.gov/std/ept/legal/default.htm. Notably, the risk of litigation following an adverse outcome may be elevated when a practice has uncertain legal status or is outside formally accepted community practice standards (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2006a) Medication-related adverse reactions among treated partners is rare (Jamison, 2019).

The goal of EPT in pregnancy is to lower reinfection rates and adverse maternal and neonatal effects. A recent study at Parkland Hospital showed that EPT did not lower the chlamydia reinfection rate prior to delivery (Zofkie, 2021). Partner compliance, cost, and education may be factors (McCool-Myers, 2020; Slutsker, 2020).

HERPES SIMPLEX VIRUS

Adult Disease

Orogenital HSV infection manifests as shallow ulcers on affected mucosa. Infection stems from either of two different HSV viruses that are distinguished based on immunological differences. Yet, the two viruses have significant DNA homology, and thus prior infection with one type attenuates a primary infection with the other. Type 2 HSV is recovered almost exclusively from the genital tract and is usually transmitted sexually. Type 1 is responsible for most nongenital infections and typically is acquired in childhood. However, more than half of the new cases of genital herpes in adolescents and young adults are now caused by HSV-1 infection (Bernstein, 2013). This rise in the prevalence of HSV-1 genital disease may stem from an increase in rates of oral-genital sexual practices. Another explanation is that HSV-1 acquisition has declined in childhood as a result of improved living conditions and hygiene (Chemaitelly, 2019). Without prior exposure, young people without HSV-1 antibodies are rendered susceptible to *genital* acquisition of HSV-1 or -2.

Genital herpes simplex virus affects an estimated 19 million adolescents and adults in the United States (Spicknall, 2021). In pregnant women, the HSV-2 seroprevalence was 21 percent, and for HSV-1, it was 59 percent from 2007 to 2014. However, from 1999 to 2014, pregnant women with fewer sex partners were increasingly seronegative for both virus types (Patton, 2018). Seronegative pregnant women have a 4 to 5 percent risk to acquire either serotype during pregnancy (Brown, 1997; Kulhanjian, 1992). For those who are already HSV-1 seropositive, acquisition risk for HSV-2 approximates 2 percent (Brown, 1997).

Once transmitted by contact, viruses replicate at the entry site. Following mucocutaneous infection, the virus moves retrograde along sensory nerves. It remains latent in cranial nerves or dorsal spinal ganglia, but recurrences are common. HSV infections may be categorized into three groups.

First-episode primary infection describes the case in which HSV-1 or 2 is isolated from a lesion in the absence of HSV-1 or -2 serological antibodies. The typical incubation period of 6 to 8 days may be followed by a papular eruption with itching or tingling that then becomes painful and vesicular. Multiple vulvar and perineal lesions may or may not coalesce but then ulcerate (Fig. 68-4). Associated inguinal adenopathy can be severe. Many women do not present with typical lesions, and abraded or knife-cut lesions instead may be found. Cervical involvement is common, although it may be unapparent clinically. Transient systemic influenza-like symptoms or isolated high fevers with or without painful lesions are frequent and attributed to viremia. Uncommonly, women require hospitalization for febrile syndrome or for pain control of widespread ulceration. Hepatitis, encephalitis, or pneumonia infrequently develop, and disseminated disease is rare. After 2 to 4 weeks, all signs and symptoms of infection disappear. In contrast to these classic symptoms, the percentage of asymptomatic primary HSV-2 genital infections may reach 90 percent (Fanfair, 2013).

First-episode nonprimary infection is diagnosed when one HSV type is isolated from a lesion in a woman who has only antibodies to the other HSV serotype. For example, prior childhood HSV-1 infection likely provides cross-reacting antibodies to blunt the effects of new HSV-2 acquisition. Compared with primary infection, nonprimary infections produce fewer systemic manifestations or lesions, less pain, and briefer duration of lesions and viral shedding.

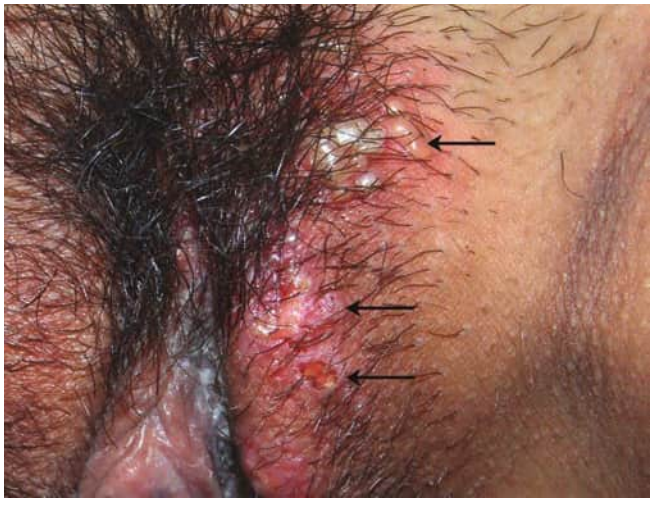


FIGURE 68-4 First-episode primary genital herpes simplex virus infection. As shown by the arrows, lesions may be vesicular, may be crusted, or may be shallow ulcers.

Recurrent disease is characterized by isolation of HSV-1 or -2 from the genital tract in women who carry antibodies to the same serotype. During the latency period, in which viral particles reside in nerve ganglia, reactivation is common and mediated through poorly understood stimuli. In general, lesions are fewer in number, are less tender, and shed virus for a shorter period than those of primary infection. Typically, they recur at the same sites. Recurrences are most frequent in the first year after initial infection, and rates slowly decline subsequently (Benedetti, 1999). Gravidas with a known prior history of genital HSV often experience recurrences (Sheffield, 2006).

Asymptomatic viral shedding is defined by the absence of clinical findings. Most infected women shed virus intermittently over time, and most HSV transmission to a partner occurs during these periods of asymptomatic viral shedding.

Vertical Transmission

HSV poses a higher risk to the newborn than to the mother. Thus, strategies aim to curb rates of vertical transmission, which may occur by three routes: (1) peripartum in 85 percent, (2) postnatal in 10 percent, or (3) intrauterine in 5 percent (James, 2015). Evidence does not suggest an obvious link between HSV infection and miscarriage (Zhou, 2015).

Peripartum transmission is by far the more frequent route of infection, and the fetus is exposed to virus shed from the lower genital tract. HSV-1 or -2 invades the uterus following membrane rupture or is transmitted by contact at delivery. The newborn is mainly infected, but rare cases of maternal endometritis have been described (Hollier, 1997; McGill, 2012). Of neonatal manifestations, infection may localize to the skin, eye, or mouth—*SEM disease*—in approximately 40 percent of cases. Instead, central nervous system (CNS) disease with encephalitis is seen in 30 percent. Last, disseminated disease that involves multiple major organs is found in 32 percent. Localized infection is usually associated with a good outcome. Conversely, even with acyclovir treatment, disseminated infection has a mortality rate of nearly 30 percent (Corey, 2009; Kimberlin, 2011). Of disseminated or cerebral infection survivors, serious developmental and CNS morbidity is seen in 20 to 50 percent.

In the United States, the neonatal infection rate ranges from 1 to 5 cases in 10,000 births (Donda, 2019; Mahant, 2019). Most infected newborns are born to mothers with no reported history of HSV infection (Gardella, 2010). The risk of neonatal infection correlates with the presence of HSV in the genital tract, HSV type, invasive obstetrical procedures, and stage of maternal infection (Brown, 2005, 2007). Neonates born to women who acquire genital HSV near the time of delivery have a 30- to 50-percent risk of infection. This is attributed to higher viral loads and the lack of transplacental protective antibodies (Brown, 1997, 2000). With recurrent HSV, the neonatal infection rate is <1 percent (Pasternak, 2010; Prober, 1987).

Postpartum transmission is uncommon and passed to the newborn by contact with an infected mother, family member, or health-care worker. The clinical presentation mirrors that with peripartum transmission.

In-utero transmission of HSV-1 or HSV-2 is rare and is part of the TORCH (toxoplasmosis, other, rubella, cytomegalovirus, herpes virus) group of infections. Intrauterine HSV infection classically leads to disease involving the skin (blisters, scarring), the CNS (hydranencephaly, microcephaly, intracranial calcification), or the eyes (chorioretinitis, microphthalmia). Bone and viscera can be involved (Marquez, 2011). Congenital infection with HSV or another TORCH infection is considered in a fetus with early or severe growth restriction, microcephaly, intracranial anomalies or calcifications, or hepatomegaly. If sonographic findings are identified, amniocentesis is recommended, and maternal HSV serological testing is done. Analysis of amnionic fluid for HSV-1 and HSV-2 serotypes is by NAAT (PCR) and culture (Curtin, 2013).

Diagnosis

The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020d) and USPSTF (2016) recommend against routine serological HSV screening in asymptomatic gravidas. However, for a woman with a reported history of genital or oral lesions, a serological HSV diagnosis is sought. For women with either suspicious ulcers or sonographic findings suggestive of congenital infection, direct virological testing, described next, is performed along with serological testing for HSV. Testing for syphilis and other STIs is also considered for women with genital ulcers.

Direct virological tests, which are either PCR or culture, are performed on a specimen from a mucocutaneous lesion or from amniocentesis. For mucocutaneous lesions, PCR assays are more sensitive, the results generally are available in 1 to 2 days, and specimen handling is easier. The sensitivity of culture for detecting HSV is relatively low as vesicular lesions begin to ulcerate and then crust. Also, results sometimes are not available for 7 to 14 days (Strick, 2006). Regardless of the test performed, HSV viral types should be differentiated (LeGoff, 2014). Importantly, a negative culture or PCR result does not exclude infection. In contrast, false-positive results are rare. For amnionic fluid assessment, both culture and PCR are recommended (Curtin, 2013).

Serological assays detect antibodies produced against the specific HSV glycoproteins, G1 and G2. These proteins evoke type-specific antibody responses to HSV-1 and HSV-2 infection, respectively, and they reliably differentiate the two serotypes. Antibody detection confirms clinical infection and may reflect a carrier state in an asymptomatic patient. IgG antibodies develop 1 to 2 weeks after a primary infection and then persist. Serological testing may be falsely negative in the case of early infection but may also establish a nonprimary infection. For this reason, direct detection of the virus in a lesion with concomitant type-specific serological testing is helpful for clinical interpretation and counseling. Sensitivity and specificity of glycoprotein-based IgG tests approach 90 to 100 percent (Wald, 2002). IgM antibody detection is not a useful test, and antibodies may be detected with recurrent episodes.

Management

In nonpregnant patients, antiviral therapy with acyclovir, valacyclovir, or famciclovir is used to treat first-episode orogenital

TABLE 68-6. Oral Antiviral Medications for Herpesvirus Infection in Pregnancy[a]

Indication	Pregnancy Recommendation
Primary or first episode infection	Acyclovir, 400 mg three times daily for 7–10 d ***or*** Valacyclovir, 1 g twice daily for 7–10 d
Symptomatic recurrent infection (episodic therapy)	Acyclovir, 800 mg twice daily for 5 d ***or*** Acyclovir, 800 mg three times daily for 2 d ***or*** Valacyclovir, 500 mg twice daily for 3 d ***or*** Valacyclovir, 1 g once daily for 5 d
Daily suppression	Acyclovir, 400 mg three times daily from 36 weeks until delivery ***or*** Valacyclovir, 500 mg twice daily from 36 weeks until delivery

[a]Famciclovir not preferred during pregnancy due to fewer safety data.
Data from Workowski, 2021.

herpes. Oral or parenteral preparations attenuate clinical infection and viral shedding duration. Chronic suppressive therapy also is an option to limit recurrences and to reduce heterosexual transmission (Corey, 2004).

In pregnant women, acyclovir and valacyclovir are safe (Briggs, 2022; Stone, 2004). Data are limited regarding fetal effects with famciclovir.

For a primary outbreak during pregnancy, women may be given antiviral therapy to attenuate and decrease the duration of symptoms and viral shedding (Table 68-6). Women with HIV co-infection may require a longer duration of treatment. Those with severe or disseminated HSV are given IV acyclovir, 5 to 10 mg/kg every 8 hours for 2 to 7 days until clinically improved. This is followed by oral antiviral drugs to complete at least 10 days of total therapy (Workowski, 2021). For intense discomfort, oral analgesics and topical lidocaine ointment may provide some relief. Comorbid urinary retention is rare but can be treated briefly with an indwelling bladder catheter.

For recurrent HSV infections during pregnancy, antiviral treatment is provided mainly for symptom relief (see Table 68-6). Although uncommon, acyclovir resistance has been reported, predominantly in immunocompromised patients (Piret, 2016).

Of precautions during pregnancy, amniocentesis, percutaneous cord blood sampling, or transabdominal chorionic villus sampling may be performed even with active genital lesions. Transcervical procedures may best be delayed until lesions have resolved (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020d).

■ Peripartum Shedding Prophylaxis

To diminish vertical transmission risks, cesarean delivery is indicated for women with active genital lesions or prodromal symptoms. Several studies have shown that acyclovir or valacyclovir suppression initiated at 36 weeks' gestation for gravidas with recurrences during pregnancy lowers the number of HSV outbreaks at term. The goal is to decrease the need for cesarean delivery (Hollier, 2008). This suppressive therapy will also decrease viral shedding (Scott, 2002; Sheffield, 2006; Watts, 2003). One systematic review evaluated acyclovir prophylaxis given from 36 weeks to delivery to women with HSV recurrence during pregnancy. Sheffield and colleagues (2003) found that suppressive therapy was associated with significantly lower rates of clinical HSV recurrence, cesarean delivery for HSV recurrences, total HSV detection, and asymptomatic shedding. Subsequent studies using valacyclovir suppression showed similar results (Andrews, 2006; Sheffield, 2006). Because of these studies, the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020d) recommends viral suppressive therapy to begin at ≥36 weeks' gestation for women with a clinical history of genital herpes. Suppression continues until delivery. Notably, despite maternal antiviral suppression, several cases of atypical neonatal herpes infection have been reported (Pinninti, 2012).

On presentation for delivery, a woman with a history of HSV should be questioned regarding current prodromal symptoms. A careful examination of the vulva, vagina, and cervix is performed for all, and women without genital lesions may proceed with labor and delivery. Usual obstetrical management, including invasive fetal monitoring, is supported in the absence of active lesions or prodromal symptoms (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020d).

Suspicious lesions should be swabbed for culture or NAAT evaluation. Cesarean delivery is indicated for women with suspicious genital lesions or prodromal symptoms. Moreover, for women with a clinical recurrence at delivery, there is no absolute duration of membrane rupture beyond which the fetus would not benefit from cesarean delivery (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020e).

Cesarean delivery is not recommended for women with a history of HSV infection but no active genital disease at the time of delivery. Moreover, an active lesion in a nongenital area can be covered by an occlusive dressing, and vaginal delivery is allowed.

With PPROM, no evidence suggests that external lesions cause ascending fetal infection. However, antiviral treatment during expectant care is recommended. Major and associates (2003) described expectant management in 29 such women at gestational ages <31 weeks. No cases of neonatal HSV developed, and the maximum infection risk was calculated to be 10 percent.

Women with active HSV lesions may breastfeed if the breast skin has no lesions. Strict hand washing is essential. Valacyclovir and acyclovir may be used for symptomatic maternal lesions during breastfeeding, as drug concentrations in breast milk are low (Sheffield, 2002a).

HUMAN PAPILLOMAVIRUS

Maternal Infection and Prevention

This is a common STI, and numerous serotypes infect the lower genital tract. In the United States from 2005 to 2006, the overall HPV prevalence was 40 percent in females aged 14 to 59 years (Liu, 2016). Prevalence is highest in younger women, and some of this seroprevalence now reflects HPV vaccination in this age group (Brouwer, 2015). Reproductive-aged women often become infected within a few years of sexual activity onset, and most infections are asymptomatic and transient. High-risk types are those with the most oncogenic potential. Of these, HPV types 16 and 18 are often associated with lower reproductive tract dysplasia (Chap. 66, p. 1165). Mucocutaneous genital warts termed *condyloma acuminata* are usually caused by types 6 and 11.

The clear link between HPV infection and cervical neoplasia led to development of vaccines that reduce cervical cancer risk (Lei, 2020). Although three vaccines are licensed, only one vaccine is currently available in the United States. Gardasil 9 is a nonavalent HPV vaccine against serotypes 6, 11, 16, 18, 31, 35, 45, 52, and 58. This vaccine is not recommended for gravidas. However, inadvertent exposures do occur, and no adverse pregnancy outcomes are associated (Kharbanda, 2021; Moreira, 2016; Scheller, 2017). If a woman is found to be pregnant after starting the vaccination series, remaining doses are delayed and given after delivery. Women who are breastfeeding may be vaccinated. Gardasil is licensed for females aged 9 to 45 years, and the target age is 11 to 12 years. It is recommended for those aged 9 to 26 years. It is suitable for those aged 27 to 45 years, after shared decision-making regarding age-related benefits and risks (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020b). The three-dose series is given on a schedule of 0, 2, and 6 months for those aged older than 15 (Table 10-7, p. 189). A two-dose regimen is used for younger individuals.

Condyloma Acuminata Treatment

Genital warts frequently grow in number and size with pregnancy. They commonly undergo apoptosis and resolution postpartum. Rarely, lesions may fill the vagina or cover the perineum and make vaginal delivery or episiotomy difficult. Genital wart eradication during pregnancy is usually unnecessary unless they are symptomatic. Therapy is directed toward debulking symptomatic warts yet minimizing treatment toxicity to the mother and fetus.

Trichloroacetic or *bichloracetic acid* in an 80- to 90-percent solution applied topically weekly is an effective regimen for external warts. Some prefer *cryotherapy, laser ablation*, or *surgical excision*. Agents that have limited safety data and thus are not recommended in pregnancy include podophyllin resin, podofilox solution or gel, imiquimod cream, and sinecatechins.

Neonatal Infection

Vertical transmission rates of HPV to the newborn are minimal. Juvenile-onset recurrent respiratory papillomatosis (JoRRP) is a rare, benign neoplasm of the larynx. It can cause hoarseness and respiratory distress in children and is most often caused by HPV 6 or 11. Risks for infection are maternal genital HPV infection and longer labors (Niyibizi, 2014). Although many newborns are likely exposed to HPV, few develop JoRRP (Smith, 2004). The incidence in 2013 in the United States was 5 cases in 10,000 births, and dropping rates are attributed to HPV vaccination (Meites, 2021). The benefit of cesarean delivery for prevention is unknown, and it is not recommended to avert HPV transmission.

VAGINITIS

Pregnant women frequently develop increased vaginal discharge. This may be a physiological discharge, described in Chapter 4 (p. 54), but should be differentiated from symptomatic vaginitis, which is also common in pregnancy. Fortunately, normal vaginal flora serve to prevent vaginitis. To better understand this, normal vaginal microflora composition and function are currently being studied in the Vaginal Human Microbiome Project (Huang, 2014).

Bacterial Vaginosis

Diagnosis

Bacterial vaginosis (BV) is a maldistribution of normal vaginal flora. With BV, numbers of lactobacilli are decreased, and anaerobic bacterial species are overrepresented. These anaerobes include *Gardnerella*, *Prevotella*, *Mobiluncus*, and *Bacteroides* species; *Atopobium vaginae*; and BV-associated bacteria, provisionally named BVAB1, BVAB2, and BVAB3. These last three are relatively newly recognized bacteria (Fredricks, 2005).

Ribosomal RNA gene-sequencing techniques have identified composite communities of vaginal flora, also called the *vaginal microbiota*. Five types of these composite communities exist and are referred to as *community state types (CSTs)*. A woman can be categorized to one of these five CSTs based on her vaginal microbiota composition (Ravel, 2011). Researchers have begun to quantify the risk of BV associated with these CST groups. Specifically, CSTs I, II, III, and V are rich in lactobacilli. CST IV is a heterogeneous microbiota of strict anaerobes and is associated with BV. CSTs vary racially, and CST IV is the most common in asymptomatic, healthy black women (Fettweis, 2014). Pregnancy-related changes in vaginal microbiota also are being defined and may hold keys to adverse BV-related pregnancy outcomes, discussed subsequently (Romero, 2014).

Of childbearing-aged women in the United States, nearly 30 percent have BV. In black women, the prevalence approximates 50 percent (Allsworth, 2007). Most women are asymptomatic. In those with symptoms, a foul, thin vaginal discharge is a typical complaint. Associated risk factors are douching, multiple partners, smoking, and altered host immunity (Desseauve, 2012; Koumans, 2007; Murphy, 2016).

For clinical diagnosis of BV, three of the four following *Amsel criteria* are present: (1) vaginal pH >4.5; (2) a thin, milky, noninflammatory vaginal discharge; (3) >20 percent clue cells seen microscopically; and (4) a fishy odor after addition of 10-percent potassium hydroxide to a vaginal secretion sample (Amsel, 1983). The last is described as a positive "whiff test" result. Likewise, alkalinity of seminal fluid and blood are responsible for complaints of foul odor after intercourse and with menses in affected women. Initially, a vaginal fluid sample is mixed with saline on a glass slide for microscopic evaluation, and this is often called a wet preparation or "wet prep." Clue cells are vaginal epithelial cells containing many attached bacteria, which create a poorly defined stippled cellular border (Fig. 68-5). Microscopically, leukocyte numbers are not increased. The higher vaginal pH stems from the diminished acid production due to a diminished lactobacilli population. Notably, *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection also is associated with anaerobic overgrowth and elaborated amines. Thus, women diagnosed with BV should have no microscopic evidence of trichomoniasis.

The *Nugent score*, used primarily in research rather than clinical practice, is a system employed for diagnosing BV (Nugent, 1991). During microscopic examination of a gram-stained vaginal discharge smear, scores are calculated by assessing bacteria staining and morphology.

NAATs to detect the bacterial types found in women with BV have suitable accuracy and may be used for symptomatic women (Coleman, 2018). However, these tests assess for bacteria that may also be part of normal flora in asymptomatic women. Moreover, compared with traditional methods, molecular tests have yet to show superior health outcomes but do add substantial cost.

Treatment

Adverse pregnancy-related health outcomes associated with BV are preterm birth, PPROM, and postpartum endometritis (Hillier, 1995; Watts, 1990). It also increases susceptibility to STIs, including HIV (Atashili, 2008; Brotman, 2010). For women at low risk for preterm birth, however, treatment of BV does not reduce preterm birth rates (Brocklehurst, 2013; Carey, 2000). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2021) and USPSTF (2020) do not recommend routine BV screening of asymptomatic gravidas at low risk for preterm delivery. For women with prior preterm birth, evidence of screening and treatment benefits are conflicting (Kahwati, 2020). At Parkland Hospital, we do not routinely screen for BV among women with prior preterm birth.

Treatment is reserved for symptomatic women (Table 68-7). Agents not listed are best avoided due to insufficient data regarding their use in pregnancy (Workowski, 2021). It is still debated whether BV is a sexually transmitted infection, and treatment of a male partner does not lower recurrence rates (Amaya-Guio, 2016; Schwebke, 2021).

Trichomoniasis

Diagnosis

Vaginitis caused by *Trichomonas vaginalis* is common, and its prevalence in the United States approximates 2 percent in women (Patel, 2018). The prevalence is higher in those older than 30 years compared with younger women. Risks include black race, douching, and greater number of lifetime sexual partners (Sutton, 2007). Among women, frequent sites of infection include the urethra, endocervix, and vagina. Those with symptomatic vaginitis often have a purulent discharge, pruritus, vulvovaginal erythema, and colpitis macularis. The last is often termed a "strawberry cervix" and displays a patchy, maculoerythematous ectocervix.

Trichomonads are flagellated, pear-shaped, motile organisms that are somewhat larger than leukocytes. These parasites can readily be seen microscopically moving briskly in wet

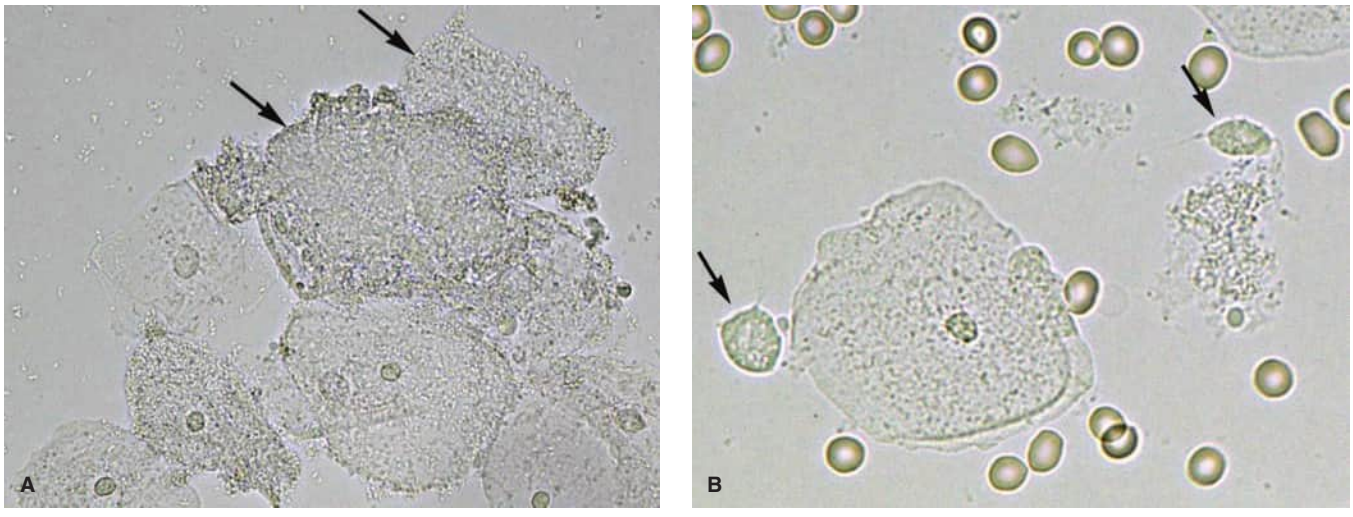


FIGURE 68-5 A. Bacterial vaginosis. Microscopy reveals several squamous cells heavily studded with bacteria. Clue cells are covered to the extent that cell borders are blurred and nuclei are not visible (*arrows*). **B.** Trichomonads (*arrows*).

TABLE 68-7. Treatment of Bacterial Vaginosis in Pregnancy[a]

Regimen	Drug and Dosage
Preferred	Metronidazole, 500 mg orally twice daily for 7 d ***or*** Metronidazole 0.75-percent gel, one applicator intravaginally, daily for 5 d
Alternative	Clindamycin, 300 mg orally twice daily for 7 d ***or*** Clindamycin ovules, 100 mg intravaginally nightly for 3 d

[a]Other agents not listed here are ideally avoided due to insufficient pregnancy data.
Data from Workowski, 2021.

preparation. Prompt inspection of vaginal secretions is advantageous because trichomonads slow with cooling. At times, *T vaginalis* may be found incidentally on a Pap test slide. Both of these microscopic approaches have low diagnostic sensitivity that approximates 60 percent (Krieger, 1988; Wiese, 2000). Pap tests can also yield false-positive results. Thus, Pap test trichomonad findings warrant confirmation with either a wet prep or NAAT.

Of other direct detection methods, culture is expensive, lengthy, and only 75 to 95 percent sensitive (Association of Public Health Laboratories, 2016; Huppert, 2007). Laboratory NAAT-based evaluation of a vaginal, endocervical, or urine sample is available, is completed in minutes to hours, and offers superior sensitivity of 95 to 100 percent (Van Der Pol, 2016). Although more costly than wet-preparation microscopy, a NAAT may be a useful, second-line diagnostic test for microscopy-negative samples. An optimal approach in pregnancy has not been established. Rapid POC testing is also available but may sacrifice sensitivity for speed. The OSOM Trichomonas Rapid Test provides results in 10 minutes, is suitable for office use, and has sensitivities of 88 to 98 percent (Herbst de Cortina, 2016).

Treatment

Treatment is reserved for symptomatic women (Table 68-8). Previously, a one-time, 2-g dose of oral metronidazole was used to eradicate *T vaginalis*. In nonpregnant women, a large randomized trial compared this traditional therapy against metronidazole, 500 mg orally twice daily for 7 days. The longer course provided improved efficacy (Kissinger, 2018). New guidelines from the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020g) now recommend this change in nonpregnant women. The CDC recognizes this regimen for pregnancy.

Reinfection rates among women treated for trichomoniasis are high (Kim, 2020). Thus, retesting for *T vaginalis* is recommended for all sexually active women within 3 months following initial therapy (Workowski, 2021). Some authors recommend retesting 3 weeks after treatment in pregnancy (Lazenby, 2019).

TABLE 68-8. Oral Treatment of Trichomoniasis in Pregnancy[a,b]

Regimen	Drug and Dosage
Preferred	Metronidazole, 500 mg orally twice daily for 7 d

[a]Retesting is encouraged at 3 months to exclude reinfection.
[b]Tinidazole is not recommended in pregnancy.
Data from Workowski, 2021.

Metronidazole is not teratogenic or fetotoxic, and it may be used in all pregnancy stages (Briggs, 2022; Czeizel, 1998; Workowski, 2021). The manufacturer recommends against its use during the first trimester (Pfizer, 2021). Fewer data are available for tinidazole, and thus metronidazole is preferred. For allergic patients, metronidazole desensitization is effective (Helms, 2008). With breastfeeding, the longer, lower-dose metronidazole regimen is not associated with adverse infant outcomes (LactMed, 2021).

Perinatal transmission of trichomoniasis by direct contact in the birth canal is rare but may lead to neonatal respiratory or genital infection (Bruins, 2013; Trintis, 2010). Some studies have linked trichomonal infection with preterm birth (Van Gerwen, 2021). A few other studies implicate this infection with PPROM and small-for-gestational age newborns (Silver, 2014). However, treatment in two randomized studies did not lower preterm birth rates (Klebanoff, 2001; Stringer, 2010).

In sum, treating symptomatic women is reasonable. For most asymptomatic women during pregnancy, screening is not done. However, screening at the first prenatal visit and prompt treatment are encouraged for gravidas with comorbid HIV infection. In this group, *T vaginalis* infection may be a risk factor for vertical HIV transmission (Gumbo, 2010).

Candidiasis

Candida albicans or other candidal species can be identified by culture from the vagina during pregnancy in approximately 20 percent of women. A link between candidiasis and preterm birth is not robust (Cotch, 1998; Roberts, 2015). Thus, asymptomatic colonization requires no treatment. The organism, however, can create a profuse, irritating discharge.

For symptoms, effective treatment is listed in Table 68-9. In pregnancy, the CDC recommends 7-day regimens and suggests topical rather than oral azoles (Workowski, 2021). In some women, infection is likely to recur and require repeat treatment. In these cases, symptomatic infection usually subsides after pregnancy (Sobel, 2007). Although not preferred treatment, a single, 150-mg oral fluconazole dose is generally not considered teratogenic. Data showing a small association with cardiac anomalies are conflicting, but more recent evidence is

TABLE 68-9. Daily, Intravaginal Agents in 7-Day Regimens for Vulvovaginal Candidiasis Treatment in Pregnancy

Brand Name	Formulation
Clotrimazole	
Clotrimazole	1% cream, 1 applicator
Miconazole	
Miconazole Monistat 7, Miconazole 7	100-mg, 1 suppository 2% cream, 1 applicator
Terconazole	
Terazol[a]	0.4% cream, 1 applicator

[a]Prescription required.

reassuring (Mølgaard-Nielsen, 2013; Zhu, 2020). In 2019, the FDA noted that reviewed data do not provide conclusive evidence for an increased miscarriage or stillbirth risk.

HUMAN IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS

Pathogenesis

For *human immunodeficiency viruses*, which are *HIV-1* and *HIV-2,* sexual intercourse is the main mode of transmission. The virus can be passed by blood, and infected mothers may infect their fetuses during labor and delivery or by breast milk. The primary determinant of transmission is the maternal plasma viral load.

For sexual transmission, the viral HIV envelope binds to mucosal dendritic cells. These cells then present the viral particle to specific T lymphocytes. These lymphocytes are defined phenotypically by their *cluster of differentiation 4 (CD4)* glycoprotein surface antigens. The CD4 site serves as a receptor for the virus. Once infected, CD4 T lymphocytes are gradually depleted, which creates an immunodeficiency that is characterized by low serum CD4 counts. In some infected with HIV, *acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)* reflects profound immunodeficiency that gives rise to various opportunistic infections and neoplasms.

The incubation period from exposure to clinical disease averages 3 to 6 weeks. Acute HIV infection is similar to many other viral syndromes and usually lasts less than 10 days. Common symptoms, if any, include fever, fatigue, rash, headache, lymphadenopathy, pharyngitis, myalgias, nausea, and diarrhea. After symptoms abate, the level of viremia usually declines to a set point, and patients with the highest viral burden at this time progress more rapidly to AIDS and death. According to the CDC, AIDS is defined by a CD4 T-cell count <200 cells/μL, by CD4 T cells constituting <14 percent of all lymphocytes, or by one of several AIDS-defining illnesses (Selik, 2014). Route of infection, viral strain's pathogenicity, initial viral inoculum, and the host's immunological status all affect progression.

Prenatal HIV Screening

In the United States, approximately 5000 women with HIV give birth annually (Nesheim, 2018). However, the estimated number of perinatally acquired HIV cases has dropped, and the rate was 0.9 per 100,000 live births in 2018 (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020a). The decline predominantly stems from prenatal HIV testing and antiretroviral therapy (ART) for the woman and then her neonate.

The CDC (2006b) and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020f) recommend prenatal HIV screening using an *opt-out approach*. With this, HIV testing is routinely included in antenatal testing, but this testing may be declined. Women are given information regarding HIV but are not required to sign a specific consent. This opt-out strategy has raised HIV testing rates and is permitted in every United States jurisdiction (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2020b).

Repeat screening during the third trimester, preferably before 36 weeks' gestation, is *considered* for all pregnant women. Retesting is *recommended* in areas where HIV rates exceed 1 case per 1000 pregnant women screened or for those with risk factors. These include incarceration, injection drug use, prostitution, a suspected or known HIV-infected sexual partner, a new or multiple sexual partners, or diagnosis of another STI (American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists, 2020f).

The initial laboratory screening test for HIV is an antigen/antibody combination immunoassay that detects antibodies against HIV-1 and HIV-2 and detects HIV-1 p24 antigen (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2018a). No further testing is required for specimens that yield negative results on the initial immunoassay unless a known recent exposure to HIV has occurred. Antibody can be detected in most patients within 1 month of infection, and thus a test for antibodies alone may not exclude early infection. Instead, for acute primary HIV infection, identification of viral p24 core antigen or viral RNA is necessary.

Specimens with a "reactive" (that is, a positive) antigen/antibody combination immunoassay result should be tested with an antibody immunoassay that differentiates HIV-1 antibodies from HIV-2 antibodies (Fig. 68-6). The HIV-1/HIV-2 antibody differentiation immunoassay provides results that are reported as positive or negative for HIV-1 antibodies, for HIV-2 antibodies, or for HIV antibodies, undifferentiated. If these two serial immunoassays (the initial screen and the differentiation assay) are discordant, an HIV-1 NAAT—qualitative or quantitative HIV RNA test—is performed (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2018a).

At delivery, women with undocumented HIV status should have a fourth-generation HIV antigen/antibody combination screening test performed on a blood sample. A negative screening test result does not need confirmation. However, in cases of recent HIV exposure, consideration is given to peripartum interventions to reduce perinatal transmission despite negative HIV testing. Repeat interval testing is recommended to exclude very early infection not identified with the initial screen. With a positive fourth-generation HIV testing result, peripartum and neonatal interventions to reduce perinatal transmission are initiated. These include intravenous zidovudine infusion during labor and avoidance of breastfeeding, although breast

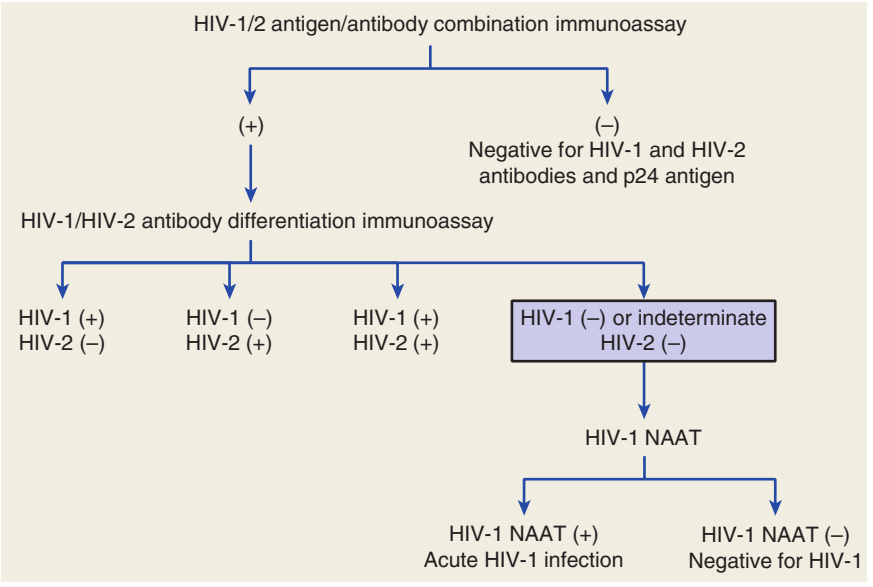


FIGURE 68-6 Algorithm for HIV testing. For specimens that are reactive on the initial antigen/antibody combination immunoassay and nonreactive or indeterminate on the HIV-1/HIV-2 antibody differentiation immunoassay, a nucleic acid amplification test (NAAT) is performed. Following a nonreactive HIV-1/HIV-2 antibody differentiation immunoassay, a positive HIV-1 NAAT indicates laboratory evidence for acute HIV-1 infection. A positive HIV-1 NAAT result following indeterminate HIV-1/HIV-2 antibody differentiation immunoassay indicates the presence of HIV-1 infection confirmed by HIV-1 NAAT. A negative HIV-1 NAAT result following nonreactive or indeterminate HIV-1/HIV-2 antibody differentiation immunoassay indicates a false-positive result on the initial antigen/antibody combination immunoassay. (Reproduced with permission from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2018a.)

milk may be stored until confirmatory test results are available (Panel on Treatment of Pregnant Women with HIV Infection and Prevention of Perinatal Transmission, 2021). Interventions are continued until the results of an antibody differentiation assay—and qualitative or quantitative RNA test if indicated—is known. Interventions can be discontinued if confirmatory testing is negative. To confirm a positive result from any initial HIV test, the laboratory testing algorithm in Figure 68-6 is used and begins with the antigen/antibody combination immunoassay.

Vertical Transmission

Viral burden and neonatal infection rates are directly related. In one cohort, neonatal infection was 1 percent with <400 copies/mL, and it was 23 percent when maternal viral RNA levels were >30,000 copies/mL (Cooper, 2002). Among 2615 neonates born to mothers taking ART before conception and during pregnancy, no cases of vertical transmission occurred when maternal viral loads were <50 copies/mL at delivery (Mandelbrot, 2015). Transmission of HIV infection, however, has been observed at all HIV RNA levels, including those that were nondetectable by current assays. Transplacental HIV transmission can occur early, and the virus has even been identified in specimens from elective abortion (Lewis, 1990). Kourtis and colleagues (2001) estimated that 20 percent of vertical transmission occurs before 36 weeks' gestation, 50 percent in the days before delivery, and 30 percent intrapartum. Transmission rates for breastfeeding may be as high as 30 to 40 percent and are associated with increasing HIV viral burden (Kourtis, 2006, 2007; Slyker, 2012). In nonpregnant individuals, concomitant STIs and horizontal HIV transmission are linked. Evidence also supports that vertical transmission rates may be increased by comorbid STIs (Schulte, 2001; Watts, 2012).

Antepartum Care

Pregnant women with HIV infection need special attention and are seen in consultation by physicians with special interest in this field. An additional resource is the National Perinatal HIV Hotline (1–888–448–8765), which provides free antepartum, intrapartum, or postpartum consultation to providers. At Parkland Hospital, a pregnant woman with HIV infection is initially assessed with the following:

- Standard prenatal laboratory surveys that include serum creatinine, complete blood count, and bacteriuria screening
- Plasma HIV RNA quantification, which establishes the "viral load" value, and antiretroviral resistance testing if the viral load is at least 500 to 1000 copies/mL
- CD4 T-cell count
- Screening for chlamydial infection, gonorrhea, syphilis, and trichomoniasis, if not previously performed with new HIV diagnosis
- Serum hepatic aminotransferase levels
- HSV-1 and -2, cytomegalovirus, toxoplasmosis, and hepatitis B and C serological screening
- Baseline chest radiograph
- Tuberculosis testing with purified protein derivative (PPD) skin testing or with interferon-gamma release assay
- Evaluation of need for pneumococcal, hepatitis A, hepatitis B, Tdap, COVID-19, and influenza vaccines
- Sonographic evaluation to establish gestational age.

During pregnancy, the risk of HIV transmission does not appear to be increased with amniocentesis or other invasive diagnostic procedures in women receiving effective ART that results in viral suppression (Floridia, 2017). For women not receiving ART, the risk rises approximately twofold (Mandelbrot, 1996). If amniocentesis is performed, efforts are taken to avoid passing through the placenta (Panel on Treatment of Pregnant Women with HIV Infection and Prevention of Perinatal Transmission, 2021).

Antiretroviral Therapy

In overview, the ideal strategy to suppress viral load and minimize vertical HIV transmission includes (1) preconceptional ART, (2) antepartum ART, (3) intrapartum continuation of the antepartum oral ART regimen plus IV zidovudine, and (4)

newborn ART prophylaxis. ART is recommended for all pregnant women with HIV infection, and it should be initiated as early in pregnancy as possible. Treatment reduces the risk of perinatal transmission regardless of CD4 T-cell count or HIV RNA level. Regimen adherence is emphasized to help prevent viral drug resistance. Gravidas are treated with at least three antiretroviral (ARV) agents.

The Panel on Treatment of Pregnant Women with HIV Infection and Prevention of Perinatal Transmission (2021) has issued guidelines for four different scenarios during pregnancy (Table 68-10). The following paragraphs summarize these recommendations.

First, women already taking ART at pregnancy onset are encouraged to continue their regimen if viral suppression is adequate and if the ARV is safe and tolerated. Didanosine, stavudine, and full-dose ritonavir, which differs from ritonavir-boosted agents, are exceptions due to pregnancy toxicity but not teratogenicity. The lopinavir/ritonavir combination is no longer recommended based on risks for preterm and small-for-gestational-age neonates.

Second, women who have never received antiretroviral therapy—*antiretroviral naïve*—are given ART regardless of trimester. In general, the starting regimen comprises two nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors that are coupled into a single agent *plus* either a ritonavir-boosted protease inhibitor or an integrase inhibitor.

Third, women who have previously received antiretroviral therapy but are currently not taking medications should undergo HIV-resistance testing because prior ART use raises the risk of drug resistance. However, ART is initiated prior to receiving results of these drug-resistance tests. In this case, initial ART selection should factor results of any prior resistance testing, if available; prior ART regimen; and current ART pregnancy guidelines, that is, those for ART-naïve women. Drug-resistance testing may then modify the initial regimen.

TABLE 68-10. Recommendations for HIV Antiviral Drug Use During Pregnancy

Clinical Scenario	Recommendations
Taking ART and becomes pregnant	Continue current medication if viral suppression adequate and patient tolerating
ART naïve	Initiate ART: combine two NRTIs with either a ritonavir-boosted PI or an integrase inhibitor – Preferred NRTI dual combinations: abacavir/lamivudine, tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF)/emtricitabine, or TDF/lamivudine. If abacavir is used, HLA-B*5701 testing is completed to identify potential hypersensitivity reaction – Preferred PI: atazanavir/ritonavir or darunavir/ritonavir – Preferred integrase inhibitor: dolutegravir or raltegravir. Dolutegravir should not be administered within 2 hr of prenatal vitamins, iron, or calcium
Prior ART use but not currently	Initiate ART, with regimen based on prior therapy history and resistance testing
No ART use and presents in labor	IV ZDV (see Intrapartum care below)
Antepartum care	See antepartum screening test list (p. 1220) Initiate ART as early as possible For those with HIV RNA levels >500–1000 copies/mL, order HIV antiretroviral drug-resistance testing but do not delay ART initiation while awaiting results Repeat HIV RNA levels 2–4 wks after initiating (or changing) ART drugs; monthly until RNA levels are undetectable; then at least every 3 mo; and finally at 34–36 weeks' gestation for delivery planning CD4+ count should be monitored at the initial visit and every 3–6 mo
Intrapartum care	If HIV RNA level >1000 copies/mL or is unknown, plan cesarean delivery at 38 weeks' gestation before labor or ROM If HIV RNA levels >1000 copies/mL or is unknown but labor or ROM has ensued, benefits of cesarean delivery are unclear and labor plans are individualized If HIV RNA level ≤1000 copies/mL, vaginal delivery is permitted; cesarean delivery is not routinely recommended Start IV ZDV unless the following criteria are met: taking a prescribed oral ART regimen, HIV RNA level <50 copies/mL at 34 to 36 weeks' gestation or 3–4 weeks before delivery. Dosing is a 2-mg/kg IV load over 1 hr, then 1 mg/kg/hr until delivery. IV ZDV should begin 3 hr before scheduled cesarean delivery Those taking oral antepartum ART should continue during labor with sips of water

ART = antiretroviral therapy; NRTI = nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor; ROM = rupture of membranes; ZDV = zidovudine.
Adapted from the Panel on Treatment of Pregnant Women with HIV Infection and Prevention of Perinatal Transmission, 2021.

For these three categories of women taking antepartum ART, therapy surveillance is outlined in Table 68-10. Most patients with adequate viral response have at least a 1-log viral load decline within 1 to 4 weeks after starting therapy. Newer integrase inhibitors rapidly decrease viral loads and are useful for women presenting late to prenatal care (Lockman, 2021). For those who fail to achieve this degree of decline, regimen compliance is assessed, resistance studies are reviewed, and ART modification is considered.

During labor and delivery, an oral ART regimen is continued with sips of water. Additionally, IV zidovudine is administered to women during labor and before cesarean delivery. An exception to this addition is the patient who is strictly adherent to her prescribed oral ART regimen and who has an HIV RNA level that was previously documented to be <50 copies/mL at 34 to 36 weeks' gestation or at 3 to 4 weeks before delivery. At Parkland Hospital, we administer intrapartum IV zidovudine to all HIV-positive women, regardless of viral load. A 2-mg/kg loading dose is infused over 1 hour and is followed with zidovudine, 1 mg/kg/hr until delivery. Women with HIV undergoing a scheduled cesarean delivery are given IV zidovudine as a loading dose followed by 2 more hours of continuous maintenance therapy—a total of 3 hours of infused zidovudine prior to surgery.

The fourth group includes women who present in labor and who are taking no ART regimen. These women are given IV zidovudine intrapartum as just described.

Delivery Planning

In some cases, cesarean delivery lowers HIV prenatal transmission rates (International Perinatal HIV Group, 1999). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (2020c) suggests that scheduled cesarean delivery be discussed and recommended for HIV-infected women with HIV-1 RNA load >1000 copies/mL. Scheduled delivery is recommended at 38 weeks' gestation in these women to avoid spontaneous labor. Management of women with either HIV-1 RNA load >1000 copies/mL or unknown viral load who present in labor or with ruptured membranes is individualized. For these women, IV zidovudine is recommended as previously described. In the case of early labor, cesarean delivery is preferred to vaginal birth.

For women with HIV RNA load ≤1000 copies/mL, cesarean delivery to reduce the risk of vertical HIV transmission is not recommended and is unlikely to confer additional benefit to women already taking ART and achieving viral suppression (Briand, 2013; Jamieson, 2007). Vaginal delivery in this group is the goal, and awaiting spontaneous onset of labor is suitable. Labor is not induced to prevent perinatal HIV transmission.

During labor, artificial membrane rupture, fetal scalp electrode placement, episiotomy, and operative vaginal delivery are performed for standard obstetrical indications but are avoided if possible in women with detectable RNA viral load (Peters, 2016). Labor augmentation is used when needed to shorten the interval to delivery to help further lower the transmission risk. For the benefits described in Chapter 27 (p. 500), delayed cord clamping in preterm neonates is acceptable and may be considered for term newborns**.** Neuraxial analgesia is suitable. Postpartum hemorrhage is best managed with oxytocin and prostaglandin analogues. *Methylergonovine (Methergine) and other ergot alkaloids adversely interact with reverse transcriptase and protease inhibitors to cause severe vasoconstriction.*

Postpartum Care

Vertical transmission rates rise with breastfeeding, and it generally is not recommended for women with HIV infection in the United States, where formula is readily available (Committee on Pediatric AIDS, 2013). In nutritionally deprived countries, where infectious disease and malnutrition are primary causes of infant death, the World Health Organization (2016) recommends exclusive breastfeeding during the first 6 to 12 months.

The Panel on Treatment of Pregnant Women with HIV Infection and Prevention of Perinatal Transmission (2021) strongly recommends that ART regimens not be discontinued postpartum but continued lifelong for the advantages of viral suppression. Ideally, all those planning pregnancy should be receiving ART and have a viral load below detectable levels before conception. As one benefit, interpregnancy viral load suppression is associated with less vertical transmission in a subsequent pregnancy (French, 2014; Stewart, 2014). Reassuringly, for those seeking subsequent pregnancy, when ART is available, repeated pregnancy in a healthy woman with HIV has no significant effect on disease progression (Calvert, 2015). Transition postpartum to general HIV care is critical to maintain viral suppression (Swain, 2016).

Prevention

For adults without HIV infection but with risks for HIV acquisition, the USPSTF (2019b) recommends offering preexposure prophylaxis (PrEP) to decrease the risk of acquiring HIV. Risk factors for heterosexually active women without HIV infection are a partner with HIV, syphilis or gonorrhea within the past 6 months, and inconsistent condom use with a high-risk partner. The last is a partner with injection drug use or with multiple other sexual partners. Current guidance from the CDC (2018b) emphasizes the use of ART to achieve viral suppression in the infected partner and barrier use as primary methods of preventing horizontal transmission. However, PrEP for the HIV-negative partner is considered, including during pregnancy to reduce the risk of HIV acquisition and also vertical transmission. PrEP with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF)/emtricitabine taken orally daily is acceptable during pregnancy and is encouraged particularly if the HIV viral load of the infected partner is unknown or unsuppressed. Barrier methods are reinforced.

For conception in HIV-serodiscordant couples, assisted reproductive technologies are available. In lower-resource settings, acceptable approaches combine *safer conception methods*. These include combinations of treatment to achieve viral suppression for the HIV-seropositive partner, PrEP for the HIV-seronegative partner, STI screening and treatment, timed condomless sex during peak fertility days, and self-insemination, (American Society for Reproductive Medicine, 2021; Schwartz, 2019).

If pregnancy is undesired, contraception options are discussed (Chap. 38, p. 664). Counseling also includes education

for decreasing high-risk sexual behaviors to prevent HIV transmission or acquisition and to decrease other STI acquisition.

REFERENCES

Adhikari EH: Syphilis in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 135(5):1121, 2020

Allsworth JE, Peipert JF: Prevalence of bacterial vaginosis: 2001–2004 National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey data. Obstet Gynecol 109(1):114, 2007

Amaya-Guio J, Viveros-Carreño DA, Sierra-Barrios EM, et al: Antibiotic treatment for the sexual partners of women with bacterial vaginosis. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 10:CD011701, 2016

American Academy of Pediatrics and American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Guidelines for Perinatal Care, 8th ed. Washington, 2017

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Expedited partner therapy in the management of gonorrhea and chlamydial infection. Committee Opinion No. 737, June 2020a

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Human papillomavirus vaccination. Committee Opinion No. 809, July 2020b

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Labor and delivery management of women with human immunodeficiency virus infection. Committee Opinion No. 751, August 2018, Reaffirmed 2020c

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Management of genital herpes in pregnancy. Practice Bulletin No. 220, April 2020d

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prelabor rupture of membranes. Practice Bulletin No. 217, February 2020e

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prenatal and perinatal human immunodeficiency virus testing. Committee Opinion No. 752, August 2018, Reaffirmed 2020f

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Vaginitis in nonpregnant patients. Practice Bulletin No. 215, January 2020g

American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists: Prediction and prevention of spontaneous preterm birth. Practice Bulletin No. 234, July 2021

American Society for Reproductive Medicine: Human immunodeficiency virus and infertility treatment: an Ethics Committee opinion. Fertil Steril 115(4):860, 2021

Amsel R, Totten PA, Spiegel CA, et al: Nonspecific vaginitis. Diagnostic criteria and microbial and epidemiologic associations. Am J Med 74(1):14, 1983

Andrews WW, Goldenberg RL, Mercer B, et al: The Preterm Prediction Study: association of second-trimester genitourinary chlamydia infection with subsequent spontaneous preterm birth. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:662, 2000

Andrews WW, Kimberlin DF, Whitley R, et al: Valacyclovir therapy to reduce recurrent genital herpes in pregnant women. Am J Obstet Gynecol 194(3):774, 2006

Association of Public Health Laboratories: Advances in laboratory detection of *Trichomonas vaginalis* (Updated). Silver Spring, APHL, 2016

Association of Public Health Laboratories: Suggested Reporting Language for Syphilis Serological Testing. Silver Spring, APHL, 2020

Atashili J, Poole C, Ndumbe PM, et al: Bacterial vaginosis and HIV acquisition: a meta-analysis of published studies. AIDS 22(12):1493, 2008

Benedetti J, Zeh J, Corey L: Clinical reactivation of genital herpes simplex virus infection decreases in frequency over time. Ann Intern Med 131: 14, 1999

Berman SM, Harrison HR, Boyce WT, et al: Low birth weight, prematurity, and postpartum endometritis. Association with prenatal cervical *Mycoplasma hominis* and *Chlamydia trachomatis* infections. JAMA 257(9):1189, 1987

Bernstein DI, Bellamy AR, Hook EW 3rd, et al: Epidemiology, clinical presentation, and antibody response to primary infection with herpes simplex virus type 1 and type 2 in young women. Clin Infect Dis 56(3):344, 2013

Bleich AT, Sheffield JS, Wendel GD, et al: Disseminated gonococcal infection in women. Obstet Gynecol 119(3)597, 2012

Brandenburger D, Ambrosino E: The impact of antenatal syphilis point of care testing on pregnancy outcomes: a systematic review. PLoS One 16(3):e0247649, 2021

Briand N, Jasseron C, Sibiude J, et al: Cesarean section for HIV-infected women in the combination ART era, 2000–2010. Am J Obstet Gynecol 209(4):335.e1, 2013

Briggs GG, Towers CV, Forinash AB: Briggs Drugs in Pregnancy and Lactation: A Reference Guide to Fetal and Neonatal Risk, 12th ed. Philadelphia, Wolters Kluwer, 2022

Brocklehurst P, Gordon A, Heatley E, et al: Antibiotics for treating bacterial vaginosis in pregnancy. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD000262, 2013

Brotman RM, Klebanoff MA, Nansel TR, et al: Bacterial vaginosis assessed by gram stain and diminished colonization resistance to incident gonococcal, chlamydial, and trichomonal genital infection. J Infect Dis 202:1907, 2010

Brouwer AF, Eisenberg MC, Carey TE, et al: Trends in HPV cervical and seroprevalence and associations between oral and genital infection and serum antibodies in NHANES 2003–2012. BMC Infect Dis 15:575, 2015

Brown EL, Gardella C, Malm G, et al: Effect of maternal herpes simplex virus (HSV) serostatus and HSV type on risk of neonatal herpes. Acta Obstet Gynecol 86:523, 2007

Brown ZA: HSV-2 specific serology should be offered routinely to antenatal patients. Rev Med Virol 10(3):141, 2000

Brown ZA, Gardella C, Wald A, et al: Genital herpes complicating pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 106:845, 2005

Brown ZA, Selke SA, Zeh J, et al: Acquisition of herpes simplex virus during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 337:509, 1997

Bruins MJ, van Straaten IL, Ruijs GJ: Respiratory disease and *Trichomonas vaginalis* in premature newborn twins. Pediatr Infect Dis J 32(9):1029, 2013

Burkman RT, Tonascia JA, Atienza MF, et al: Untreated endocervical gonorrhea and endometritis following elective abortion. Am J Obstet Gynecol 126:648, 1976

Calvert C, Ronsmans C: Pregnancy and HIV disease progression: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Trop Med Int Health 20(2):122, 2015

Cao Y, Su X, Wang Q, et al: A multicenter study evaluating ceftriaxone and benzathine penicillin G as treatment agents for early syphilis in Jiangsu, China. Clin Infect Dis 65(10):1683, 2017

Carey JC, Klebanoff MA, Hauth JC, et al: Metronidazole to prevent preterm delivery in pregnant women with asymptomatic bacterial vaginosis. National Institute of Child Health and Human Development Network of Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units. N Engl J Med 342:534, 2000

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Expedited partner therapy in the management of sexually transmitted diseases. Atlanta, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2006a

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Revised recommendations for HIV testing of adults, adolescents, and pregnant women in health-care settings. MMWR 55(14):1, 2006b

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Discordant results from reverse sequence syphilis screening—five laboratories, United States, 2006–2010. MMWR 60(5):133, 2011

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: 2018 Quick reference guide: recommended laboratory HIV testing algorithm for serum or plasma specimens. 2018a. Available at: https://stacks.cdc.gov/view/cdc/50872. Accessed June 4, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: US Public Health Service: Preexposure prophylaxis for the prevention of HIV infection in the United States—2017 Update: a clinical practice guideline. 2018b. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/risk/prep/cdc-hiv-prep-guidelines-2017.pdf. Accessed June 5, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Monitoring selected national HIV prevention and care objectives by using HIV surveillance data—United States and 6 dependent areas, 2018. HIV Surveillance Supplemental Report, 2020a. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/pdf/library/reports/surveillance/cdc-hiv-surveillance-supplemental-report-vol-25-2.pdf. Accessed June 4, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: State laws that address high-impact HIV prevention efforts. 2020b. Available at: https://www.cdc.gov/hiv/policies/law/states/. Accessed June 4, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Guidance on the use of expedited partner therapy in the treatment of gonorrhea. 2021a. Available at: /www.cdc.gov/std/ept/gc-guidance.htm. Accessed May 30, 2021

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Sexually Transmitted Disease Surveillance 2019. Atlanta, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2021b

Chemaitelly H, Nagelkerke N, Omori R, et al: Characterizing herpes simplex virus type 1 and type 2 seroprevalence declines and epidemiological association in the United States. PLoS One 14(6):e0214151, 2019

Coleman JS, Gaydos CA: Molecular diagnosis of bacterial vaginosis: an update. J Clin Microbiol 56(9):e00342, 2018

Committee on Pediatric AIDS: Infant feeding and transmission of human immunodeficiency virus in the United States. Pediatrics 131(2):391, 2013

Cooper ER, Charurat M, Mofenson L, et al: Combination antiretroviral strategies for the treatment of pregnant HIV-1-infected women and prevention of perinatal HIV-1 transmission. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 29:484, 2002

Corey L, Wald A: Maternal and neonatal herpes simplex virus infections. N Engl J Med 361(14):1376, 2009

Corey L, Wald A, Patel R, et al: Once-daily valacyclovir to reduce the risk of transmission of genital herpes. N Engl J Med 350:11, 2004

Cotch MF, Hillier SL, Gibbs RS, et al: Epidemiology and outcomes associated with moderate to heavy *Candida* colonization during pregnancy. The Vaginal Infections and Prematurity Study Group. Am J Obstet Gynecol 178(2):374, 1998

Curtin WM, Menegus MA, Patru MM, et al: Midtrimester fetal herpes simplex-2 diagnosis by serology, culture and quantitative polymerase chain reaction. Fetal Diagn Ther 33(2):133, 2013

Czeizel AE, Rockenbauer M: A population based case-control teratologic study of oral metronidazole treatment during pregnancy. BJOG 105:322, 1998

Deguchi T, Hatazaki K, Ito S, et al: Macrolide and fluoroquinolone resistance is uncommon in clinical strains of *Chlamydia trachomatis*. J Infect Chemother 24(8):610, 2018

Desseauve D, Chantrel J, Fruchart A, et al: Prevalence and risk factors of bacterial vaginosis during the first trimester of pregnancy in a large French population-based study. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 163(1):30, 2012

Dionne-Odom J, Subramaniam A, Aaron KJ, et al: High rates of persistent and recurrent chlamydia in pregnant women after treatment with azithromycin. Am J Obstet Gynecol MFM 2(4):100216, 2020

Donda K, Sharma M, Amponsah JK, et al: Trends in the incidence, mortality, and cost of neonatal herpes simplex virus hospitalizations in the United States from 2003 to 2014. J Perinatol 39(5):697, 2019

Drugs and Lactation Database (LactMed): Metronidazole. 2021. Available at: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK501315/#LM440.Drug_Levels_and_Effects. Accessed July 24, 2021

Fanfair RN, Zaidi A, Taylor LD, et al: Trends in seroprevalence of herpes simplex virus type 2 among non-Hispanic blacks and non-Hispanic whites aged 14 to 49 years—United States, 1988 to 2010. Sex Transm Dis 40(11):860, 2013

Fettweis JM, Brooks JP, Serrano MG, et al: Differences in vaginal microbiome in African American women versus women of European ancestry. Microbiology 160(Pt 10):2272, 2014

Fiumara NJ: Syphilis in newborn children. Clin Obstet Gynecol 18:183, 1975

Floridia M, Masuelli G, Meloni A, et al: Amniocentesis and chorionic villus sampling in HIV-infected pregnant women: a multicentre case series. BJOG 124(8):1218, 2017

Food and Drug Administration: FDA allows for first point-of-care chlamydia and gonorrhea test to be used in more near-patient care settings. 2021. Available at: https://www.fda.gov/news-events/press-announcements/fda-allows-first-point-care-chlamydia-and-gonorrhea-test-be-used-more-near-patient-care-settings. Accessed August 26, 2021

Food and Drug Administration: FDA clears first diagnostic tests for extragenital testing for chlamydia and gonorrhea. 2019. Available at: www.fda.gov/news-events/press-announcements/fda-clears-first-diagnostic-tests-extragenital-testing-chlamydia-and-gonorrhea. Accessed May 28, 2021

Food and Drug Administration: FDA to review study examining use of oral fluconazole (Diflucan) in pregnancy. 2019. Available at: https://www.fda.gov/drugs/drug-safety-and-availability/fda-drug-safety-communication-fda-review-study-examining-use-oral-fluconazole-diflucan-pregnancy. Accessed June 4, 2021

Fredricks DN, Fiedler TL, Marrazzo JM: Molecular identification of bacteria associated with bacterial vaginosis. N Engl J Med 353:1899, 2005

French CE, Thorne C, Tariq S, et al: Immunologic status and virologic outcomes in repeat pregnancies to HIV-positive women not on antiretroviral therapy at conception: a case for lifelong antiretroviral therapy? AIDS 28(9):1369, 2014

Gardella C, Huang ML, Wald A, et al: Rapid polymerase chain reaction assay to detect herpes simplex virus in the genital tract of women in labor. Obstet Gynecol 115(6):1209, 2010

Garnett GP, Aral SO, Hoyle DV, et al: The natural history of syphilis. Implications for the transmission dynamics and control of infection. Sex Transm Dis 24(4):185, 1997

Gibbs RS, Schachter J: Chlamydial serology in patients with intra-amniotic infection and controls. Sex Transm Dis 14:213, 1987

Gregory EC, Ely DM: Trends and characteristics of sexually transmitted infections during pregnancy: United States, 2016–2018. Natl Vital Stat Rep 69(3):1, 2020

Gumbo FZ, Duri K, Kandawasvika GQ, et al: Risk factors of HIV vertical transmission in a cohort of women under a PMTCT program at three peri-urban clinics in a resource-poor setting. J Perinatol 30:717, 2010

Hawkes S, Matin N, Broutet N, et al: Effectiveness of interventions to improve screening for syphilis in pregnancy: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet Infect Dis 11:684, 2011

Helms DJ, Mosure DJ, Secor WE, et al: Management of *Trichomonas vaginalis* in women with suspected metronidazole hypersensitivity. Am J Obstet Gynecol 198(4):370.e1, 2008

Herbst de Cortina S, Bristow CC, et al: A systematic review of point of care testing for *Chlamydia trachomatis*, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, and *Trichomonas vaginalis*. Infect Dis Obstet Gynecol 2016:4386127, 2016

Hillier SL, Nugent RP, Eschenbach DA, et al: Association between bacterial vaginosis and preterm delivery of a low-birth-weight infant. The Vaginal Infections and Prematurity Study Group. N Engl J Med 333:1737, 1995

Hollier LM, Harstad TW, Sanchez PJ, et al: Fetal syphilis: clinical and laboratory characteristics. Obstet Gynecol 97:947, 2001

Hollier LM, Scott LL, Murphree SS, et al: Postpartum endometritis caused by herpes simplex virus. Obstet Gynecol 89(5 Pt 2):836, 1997

Hollier LM, Wendel GD: Third-trimester antiviral prophylaxis for preventing maternal genital herpes simplex virus (HSV) recurrences and neonatal infection. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 1:CD004946, 2008

Hoyme UB, Kiviat N, Eschenbach DA: The microbiology and treatment of late postpartum endometritis. Obstet Gynecol 68:226, 1986

Huang B, Fettweis JM, Brooks JP, et al: The changing landscape of the vaginal microbiome. Clin Lab Med 34(4):747, 2014

Huppert JS, Mortensen JE, Reed JL, et al: Rapid antigen testing compares favorably with transcription-mediated amplification assay for the detection of *Trichomonas vaginalis* in young women. Clin Infect Dis 45(2):194, 2007

International Perinatal HIV Group: The mode of delivery and the risk of vertical transmission of human immunodeficiency virus type 1: a meta-analysis of 15 prospective cohort studies. N Engl J Med 340:977, 1999

James SH, Kimberlin DW: Neonatal herpes simplex virus infection: epidemiology and treatment. Clin Perinatol 42(1):47, 2015

Jamison CD, Coleman JS, Mmeje O: Improving women's health and combatting sexually transmitted infections through expedited partner therapy. Obstet Gynecol 133(3):416, 2019

Jamison DJ, Read JS, Kourtis AP, et al: Cesarean delivery for HIV-infected women: recommendations and controversies. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197: S96, 2007

Kahwati LC, Clark R, Berkman N, et al: Screening for bacterial vaginosis in pregnant adolescents and women to prevent preterm delivery: updated evidence report and systematic review for the US Preventive Services Task Force. JAMA 323(13):1293, 2020

Kharbanda EO, Vazquez-Benitez G, DeSilva MB, et al: Association of inadvertent 9-valent human papillomavirus vaccine in pregnancy with spontaneous abortion and adverse birth outcomes. JAMA Netw Open 4(4):e214340, 2021

Kim TG, Young MR, Goggins ER, et al: *Trichomonas vaginalis* in pregnancy: patterns and predictors of testing, infection, and treatment. Obstet Gynecol 135(5):1136, 2020

Kimberlin DW, Whitley RJ, Wan W, et al: Oral acyclovir suppression and neurodevelopment after neonatal herpes. N Engl J Med 365(14):1284, 2011

Kissinger P, Muzny CA, Mena LA, et al: Single-dose versus 7-day-dose metronidazole for the treatment of trichomoniasis in women: an open-label, randomised controlled trial. Lancet Infect Dis 1251, 2018

Kissinger P, Schmidt N, Mohammed H, et al: Patient-delivered partner treatment for *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection: a randomized controlled trial. Sex Transm Dis 33:445, 2006

Klebanoff MA, Carey JC, Hauth JC, et al: Failure of metronidazole to prevent preterm delivery among pregnant women with asymptomatic *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection. N Engl J Med 345(7):487, 2001

Klein VR, Cox SM, Mitchell MD, et al: The Jarisch–Herxheimer reaction complicating syphilotherapy in pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 75:375, 1990

Korenromp EL, Rowley J, Alonso M, et al: Global burden of maternal and congenital syphilis and associated adverse birth outcomes—estimates for 2016 and progress since 2012. PLoS One 14(2):e0211720, 2019

Koumans EH, Sternberg M, Bruce C, et al: The prevalence of bacterial vaginosis in the United States, 2001–2004: associations with symptoms, sexual behaviors, and reproductive health. Sex Transm Dis 34:864, 2007

Kourtis AP, Bulterys M, Nesheim SR, et al: Understanding the timing of HIV transmission from mother to infant. JAMA 285:709, 2001

Kourtis AP, Jamieson DJ, de Vincenzi I, et al: Prevention of human immunodeficiency virus-1 transmission to the infant through breastfeeding: new developments. Am J Obstet Gynecol 197:S113, 2007

Kourtis AP, Lee FK, Abrams EJ, et al: Mother-to-child transmission of HIV-1: timing and implications for prevention. Lancet Infect Dis 6:726, 2006

Krieger JN, Tam MR, Stevens CE, et al: Diagnosis of trichomoniasis. Comparison of conventional wet-mount examination with cytologic studies, cultures, and monoclonal antibody staining of direct specimens. JAMA 259(8):1223, 1988

Kulhanjian JA, Soroush V, Au DS, et al: Identification of women at unsuspected risk of primary infection with herpes simplex virus type 2 during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 326(14):916, 1992

Laga M, Plummer FA, Nzanze H, et al: Epidemiology of ophthalmia neonatorum in Kenya. Lancet 2(8516):1145, 1986

Larsen SA, Steiner BM, Rudolph AH: Laboratory diagnosis and interpretation of tests for syphilis. Clin Microbiol Rev 8:1, 1995

Lazenby GB, Korte JE, Tillman S, et al: A recommendation for timing of repeat *Chlamydia trachomatis* test following infection and treatment in pregnant and nonpregnant women. Int J STD AIDS 28(9):902, 2017

Lazenby GB, Thompson L, Powell AM, et al: Unexpected high rates of persistent *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection in a retrospective cohort of treated pregnant women. Sex Transm Dis 46(1):2, 2019

LeFevre ML, U.S. Preventive Services Task Force: Screening for Chlamydia and gonorrhea: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force recommendation statement. Ann Intern Med 161(12):902, 2014

LeGoff J, Péré H, Bélec L: Diagnosis of genital herpes simplex virus infection in the clinical laboratory. Virol J 11:83, 2014
Lei J, Ploner A, Elfström KM, et al: HPV vaccination and the risk of invasive cervical cancer. N Engl J Med 383(14):1340, 2020
Levett PN, Fonseca K, Tsang RS, et al: Canadian Public Health Laboratory Network laboratory guidelines for the use of serological tests (excluding point-of-care tests) for the diagnosis of syphilis in Canada. Can J Infect Dis Med Microbiol 26 Suppl A:6A, 2015
Lewis SH, Reynolds-Kohler C, Fox HE, et al: HIV-1 in trophoblastic and villous Hofbauer cells, and haematological precursors in eight-week fetuses. Lancet 335:565, 1990
Liang Z, Chen YP, Yang CS, et al: Meta-analysis of ceftriaxone compared with penicillin for the treatment of syphilis. Int J Antimicrob Agents 47(1):6, 2016
Liu G, Markowitz LE, Hariri S, et al: Seroprevalence of 9 human papillomavirus types in the United States, 2005–2006. J Infect Dis 213(2):191, 2016
Llata E, Braxton J, Asbel L, et al: Rectal *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* infections among women reporting anal intercourse. Obstet Gynecol 132(3):692, 2018
Lockman S, Brummel SS, Ziemba L, et al: Efficacy and safety of dolutegravir with emtricitabine and tenofovir alafenamide fumarate or tenofovir disoproxil fumarate, and efavirenz, emtricitabine, and tenofovir disoproxil fumarate HIV antiretroviral therapy regimens started in pregnancy (IMPAACT 2010/VESTED): a multicentre, open-label, randomised, controlled, phase 3 trial. Lancet 397(10281):1276, 2021
Mahant S, Hall M, Schondelmeyer AC, et al: Neonatal herpes simplex virus infection among Medicaid-enrolled children: 2009–2015. Pediatrics 143(4):e20183233, 2019
Major CA, Towers CV, Lewis DF, et al: Expectant management of preterm rupture of membranes complicated by active recurrent genital herpes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:1551, 2003
Mandelbrot L, Mayaux MJ, Bongain A, et al: Obstetric factors and mother-to-child transmission of human immunodeficiency virus type 1: the French perinatal cohorts. SEROGEST French Pediatric HIV Infection Study Group. Am J Obstet Gynecol 175(3 Pt 1):661, 1996
Mandelbrot L, Tubiana R, Le Chenadec J, et al: No perinatal HIV-1 transmissions from women with effective ART starting before conception. Clin Infect Dis 61(11):1715, 2015
Marquez L, Levy ML, Munoz FM, et al: A report of three cases and review of intrauterine herpes simplex virus infection. Pediatr Infect Dis J 30(2):153, 2011
McCool-Myers M, Smith AD, Kottke MJ: Expert interviews on multilevel barriers in implementing expedited partner therapy for chlamydia. J Public Health Manag Pract 26(6):585, 2020
McGill AL, Bavaro MF, You WB: Postpartum herpes simplex virus endometritis and disseminated infection in both mother and neonate. Obstet Gynecol 120(2 Pt 2):471, 2012
Meites E, Stone L, Amiling R, et al: Significant declines in juvenile onset recurrent respiratory papillomatosis following HPV Vaccine introduction in the United States. Clin Infect Dis 73(5):885, 2021
Mølgaard-Nielsen D, Svanström H, Melbye M, et al: Association between use of oral fluconazole during pregnancy and risk of spontaneous abortion and stillbirth. JAMA 315(1):58, 2016
Moreira ED Jr, Block SL, Ferris D, et al: Safety profile of the 9-valent HPV vaccine: a combined analysis of 7 phase III clinical trials. Pediatrics 138(2): pii:e20154387, 2016
Murphy K, Mitchell CM: The interplay of host immunity, environment and the risk of bacterial vaginosis and associated reproductive health outcomes. J Infect Dis 214 Suppl 1:S29, 2016
Myles TD, Elam G, Park-Hwang E, et al: The Jarisch–Herxheimer reaction and fetal monitoring changes in pregnant women treated for syphilis. Obstet Gynecol 92:859, 1998
Nathan L, Bohman VR, Sanchez PJ, et al: In utero infection with *Treponema pallidum* in early pregnancy. Prenat Diagn 17:119, 1997
Nesheim SR, FitzHarris LF, Lampe MA, et al: Reconsidering the number of women with HIV infection who give birth annually in the United States. Public Health Rep 133(6):637, 2018
Niyibizi J, Rodier C, Wassef M, et al: Risk factors for the development and severity of juvenile-onset recurrent respiratory papillomatosis: a systematic review. Int J Pediatr Otorhinolaryngol 78(2):186, 2014
Nugent RP, Krohn MA, Hillier SL: Reliability of diagnosing bacterial vaginosis is improved by a standardized method of Gram stain interpretation. J Clin Microbiol 29:297, 1991
Panel on Treatment of Pregnant Women with HIV Infection and Prevention of Perinatal Transmission: Recommendations for use of antiretroviral drugs in pregnant women with HIV infection and interventions to reduce perinatal HIV transmission in the United States. 2021. Available at: https://clinicalinfo.hiv.gov/sites/default/files/guidelines/documents/Perinatal_GL.pdf. Accessed August 30, 2021
Papp JR, Schachter J, Gaydos CA, et al: Recommendations for the laboratory-based detection of *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*—2014. MMWR 63(0):1, 2014
Pasternak B, Hviid A: Use of acyclovir, valacyclovir, and famciclovir in the first trimester of pregnancy and the risk of birth defect. JAMA 304(8):859, 2010
Patel EU, Gaydos CA, Packman ZR, et al: Prevalence and correlates of *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection among men and women in the United States. Clin Infect Dis 67(2):211, 2018
Patton ME, Bernstein K, Liu G, et al: Seroprevalence of herpes simplex virus types 1 and 2 among pregnant women and sexually active, nonpregnant women in the United States. Clin Infect Dis 67(10):1535, 2018
Peeling RW, Ye H: Diagnostic tools for preventing and managing maternal and congenital syphilis: an overview. Bull World Health Organ 82(6):439, 2004
Peipert JF: Clinical practice: genital chlamydial infections. N Engl J Med 18: 349, 2003
Peters H, Francis K, Harding K, et al: Operative vaginal delivery and invasive procedures in pregnancy among women living with HIV. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 210:295, 2016
Pfizer: Flagyl (metronidazole tablets). 2021. Available at: labeling.pfizer.com/ShowLabeling.aspx?id = 570. Accessed June 2, 2021
Pillay A: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Syphilis Summit—diagnostics and laboratory issues. Sex Transm Dis 45(9S Suppl 1):S13, 2018
Pinninti SG, Angara R, Feja KN, et al: Neonatal herpes disease following maternal antenatal antiviral suppressive therapy: a multicenter case series. J Pediatr 161(1):134, 2012
Piret J, Boivin G: Antiviral resistance in herpes simplex virus and varicella-zoster virus infections: diagnosis and management. Curr Opin Infect Dis 29(6):654, 2016
Prober CG, Sullender WM, Yasukawa LL, et al: Low risk of herpes simplex virus infections in neonates exposed to the virus at the time of vaginal delivery to mothers with recurrent genital herpes simplex virus infections. N Engl J Med 316:240, 1987
Qin J, Yang T, Xiao S, et al: Reported estimates of adverse pregnancy outcomes among women with and without syphilis: a systematic review and meta-analysis. PLoS One 9(7):e102203, 2014
Rac M, Bryant S, McIntire DD, et al: Progression of ultrasound findings of fetal syphilis following maternal treatment. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210:S26, 2014
Ravel J, Gajer P, Abdo Z, et al: Vaginal microbiome of reproductive-age women. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108 (Suppl 1):4680, 2011
Reekie J, Roberts C, Preen D, et al: *Chlamydia trachomatis* and the risk of spontaneous preterm birth, babies who are born small for gestational age, and stillbirth: a population-based cohort study. Lancet Infect Dis 18(4):452, 2018
Roberts CL, Algert CS, Rickard KL, et al: Treatment of vaginal candidiasis for the prevention of preterm birth: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Syst Rev 4:31, 2015
Roberts SW, Sheffield JS, McIntire DD, et al: Urine screening for *Chlamydia trachomatis* during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 117(4):883, 2011
Romero R, Hassan SS, Gajer P, et al: The composition and stability of the vaginal microbiota of normal pregnant women is different from that of non-pregnant women. Microbiome 2(1):4, 2014
Rosenman MB, Mahon BE, Downs SM, et al: Oral erythromycin prophylaxis vs watchful waiting in caring for newborns exposed to *Chlamydia trachomatis*. Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med 157(6):565, 2003
Satyaputra F, Hendry S, Braddick M, et al: The laboratory diagnosis of syphilis. J Clin Microbiol 59(10):e0010021, 2021
Scheller NM, Pasternak B, Mølgaard-Nielsen D, et al: Quadrivalent HPV vaccination and the risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes. N Engl J Med 376(13):1223, 2017
Schulte JM, Burkham S, Hamaker D, et al: Syphilis among HIV-infected mothers and their infants in Texas from 1988 to 1994. Sex Transm Dis 28: 316, 2001
Schwartz SR, Bassett J, Mutunga L, et al: HIV incidence, pregnancy, and implementation outcomes from the Sakh'umndeni safer conception project in South Africa: a prospective cohort study. Lancet HIV 6(7):e438, 2019
Schwebke JR, Desmond RA: A randomized controlled trial of partner notification methods for prevention of trichomoniasis in women. Sex Transm Dis 37(6):392, 2010
Schwebke JR, Lensing SY, Lee J, et al: Treatment of male sexual partners of women with bacterial vaginosis (BV): a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. Clin Infect Dis 73(3):e672, 2021
Scott LL, Hollier LM, McIntire D, et al: Acyclovir suppression to prevent recurrent genital herpes at delivery. Infect Dis Obstet Gynecol 10:71, 2002
Selik RM, Mokotoff ED, Branson B, et al: Revised surveillance case definition for HIV infection-United States, 2014. MMWR 63(3):1, 2014
Seña AC, Zhang XH, Li T, et al: A systematic review of syphilis serological treatment outcomes in HIV-infected and HIV-uninfected persons:

rethinking the significance of serological non-responsiveness and the serofast state after therapy. BMC Infect Dis 15:479, 2015
Sheffield JS, Fish DN, Hollier LM, et al: Acyclovir concentrations in human breast milk after valacyclovir administration. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:100, 2002a
Sheffield JS, Hill JB, Hollier LM, et al: Valacyclovir prophylaxis to prevent recurrent herpes at delivery: a randomized clinical trial. Obstet Gynecol 108:141, 2006
Sheffield JS, Hollier LM, Hill JB, et al: Acyclovir prophylaxis to prevent herpes simplex virus recurrence at delivery: a systematic review. Obstet Gynecol 102:1396, 2003
Sheffield JS, Sanchez PJ, Morris G, et al: Congenital syphilis after maternal treatment for syphilis during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 186:569, 2002b
Sheffield JS, Sanchez PJ, Wendel GD Jr, et al: Placental histopathology of congenital syphilis. Obstet Gynecol 100:126, 2002c
Silva MJ, Florencio GL, Gabiatti JR, et al: Perinatal morbidity and mortality associated with chlamydial infection: a meta-analysis study. Braz J Infect Dis 15(6):533, 2011
Silver BJ, Guy RJ, Kaldor JM, et al: *Trichomonas vaginalis* as a cause of perinatal morbidity: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Sex Transm Dis 41(6):369, 2014
Silverstein AM: Congenital syphilis and the timing of immunogenesis in the human fetus. Nature 194:196, 1962
Singh AE, Romanowski B: Syphilis: review with emphasis on clinical, epidemiologic, and some biologic features. Clin Microbiol Rev 12(2):187, 1999
Slutsker JS, Tsang LB, Schillinger JA: Do prescriptions for expedited partner therapy for Chlamydia get filled? Findings from a multi-jurisdictional evaluation, United States, 2017–2019. Sex Transm Dis 47(6):376, 2020
Slyker JA, Chung MH, Lehman DA, et al: Incidence and correlates of HIV-1 RNA detection in the breast milk of women receiving HAART for the prevention of HIV-1 transmission. PLoS One 7(1):e29777, 2012
Smith EM, Ritchie JM, Yankowitz J, et al: Human papillomavirus prevalence and types in newborns and parents. Sex Transm Dis 31:57, 2004
Smullin C, Wagman J, Mehta S, et al: A narrative review of the epidemiology of congenital syphilis in the United States from 1980 to 2019. Sex Transm Dis 48(2):71, 2021
Sobel JD: Vulvovaginal candidosis. Lancet 369:1961, 2007
Spicknall IH, Flagg EW, Torrone EA: Estimates of the prevalence and incidence of genital herpes, United States, 2018. Sex Transm Dis 48(4):260, 2021
St Cyr S, Barbee L, Workowski KA, et al: Update to CDC's treatment guidelines for gonococcal infection, 2020. MMWR 69(50):1911, 2020
Stewart R, Wells CE, Roberts S, et al: Benefit of inter-pregnancy HIV viral load suppression on subsequent maternal and infant outcomes. Am J Obstet Gynecol 210:S14, 2014
Stone KM, Reiff-Eldridge R, White AD, et al: Pregnancy outcomes following systemic prenatal acyclovir exposure: conclusions from the International Acyclovir Pregnancy Registry, 1984–1999. Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol 70:201, 2004
Strick LB, Wald A: Diagnostics for herpes simplex virus: is PCR the new gold standard? Mol Diagn Ther 10(1):17, 2006
Stringer E, Read JS, Hoffman I, et al: Treatment of trichomoniasis in pregnancy in sub-Saharan Africa does not appear to be associated with low birth weight or preterm birth. S Afr Med J 100(1):58, 2010
Sutton M, Sternberg M, Koumans EH, et al: The prevalence of *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection among reproductive-age women in the United States, 2001–2004. Clin Infect Dis 45(10):1319, 2007
Swain CA, Smith LC, Nash D, et al: Postpartum HIV care among women diagnosed during pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 128(1):44, 2016
Trintis J, Epie N, Boss R, et al: Neonatal *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection: a case report and review of literature. Int J STD AIDS 21(8):606, 2010
U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, Bibbins-Domingo K, Grossman DC, et al: Serologic screening for genital herpes infection: US Preventive Services Task Force recommendation statement. JAMA 316(23):2525, 2016
U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, Curry SJ, Krist AH, et al: Ocular prophylaxis for gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum: US Preventive Services Task Force reaffirmation recommendation statement. JAMA 321(4):394, 2019a
U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, Curry SJ, Krist AH, et al: Screening for syphilis infection in pregnant women: US Preventive Services Task Force reaffirmation recommendation statement. JAMA 320(9):911, 2018
U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, Owens DK, Davidson KW, et al: Preexposure prophylaxis for the prevention of HIV infection: US Preventive Services Task Force recommendation statement. JAMA 321(22):2203, 2019b
U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, Owens DK, Davidson KW, et al: Screening for bacterial vaginosis in pregnant persons to prevent preterm delivery: US Preventive Services Task Force recommendation statement. JAMA 323(13):1286, 2020
Vallely LM, Egli-Gany D, Wand H, et al: Adverse pregnancy and neonatal outcomes associated with *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*: systematic review and meta-analysis. Sex Transm Infect 97(2):104, 2021
Van Der Pol B: Clinical and laboratory testing for *Trichomonas vaginalis* infection. J Clin Microbiol 54(1):7, 2016
Van Der Pol B, Taylor SN, Mena L, et al: Evaluation of the performance of a point-of-care test for chlamydia and gonorrhea. JAMA Netw Open 3(5):e204819, 2020
Van Gerwen OT, Craig-Kuhn MC, Jones AT, et al: Trichomoniasis and adverse birth outcomes: a systematic review and meta-analysis. BJOG 128(12):1907
Wald A, Ashley-Morrow R: Serological testing for herpes simplex virus (HSV)-1 and HSV-2 infection. Clin Infect Dis 35:S173, 2002
Watts D: Mother to child transmission of HIV—another complication of bacterial vaginosis? J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr 60(3):221, 2012
Watts DH, Brown ZA, Money D, et al: A double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled trial of acyclovir in late pregnancy for the reduction of herpes simplex virus shedding and cesarean delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 188:836, 2003
Watts DH, Krohn MA, Hillier SL, et al: Bacterial vaginosis as a risk factor for postcesarean endometritis. Obstet Gynecol 75:52, 1990
Wendel GD Jr, Sheffield JS, Hollier LM, et al: Treatment of syphilis in pregnancy and prevention of congenital syphilis. Clin Infect Dis 35(Suppl 2): S200, 2002
Wendel GD Jr, Stark BJ, Jamison RB, et al: Penicillin allergy and desensitization in serious infections during pregnancy. N Engl J Med 312:1229, 1985
World Health Organization, United Nations Children's Fund: Guideline: updates on HIV and infant feeding: the duration of breastfeeding, and support from health services to improve feeding practices among mothers living with HIV. Geneva, WHO, 2016
Wiese W, Patel SR, Patel SC, et al: A meta-analysis of the Papanicolaou smear and wet mount for the diagnosis of vaginal trichomoniasis. Am J Med 108(4):301, 2000
Wiesenfeld HC: Screening for *Chlamydia trachomatis* infections in women. N Engl J Med 376(8):765, 2017
Workowski KA, Bachmann LH, Chan PA, et al: Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2021. MMWR 70(4):1, 2021
World Health Organization, United Nations Children's Fund: Guideline: updates on HIV and infant feeding: the duration of breastfeeding, and support from health services to improve feeding practices among mothers living with HIV. Geneva, WHO, 2016
Zhou Y, Bian G, Zhou Q, et al: Detection of cytomegalovirus, human parvovirus B19, and herpes simplex virus-1/2 in women with first-trimester spontaneous abortions. J Med Virol 87(10):1749, 2015
Zhu Y, Bateman BT, Gray KJ, et al: Oral fluconazole use in the first trimester and risk of congenital malformations: population based cohort study. BMJ 369:m1494, 2020
Zofkie AC, Fomina YY, Roberts SW, et al: Effectiveness of *Chlamydia trachomatis* expedited partner therapy in pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 225(3):325.e1, 2021

APPENDIX

APPENDIX I. Serum and Blood Constituents

HEMATOLOGY

	Nonpregnant Adult[a]	1st Trimester	2nd Trimester	3rd Trimester	References
Erythropoietin[b] (U/L)	4–27	12–25	8–67	14–222	8, 11, 58
Ferritin[b] (ng/mL)	10–150[d]	6–130	2–230	0–116	8, 11, 46, 52, 56, 58, 73, 82
Folate, red blood cell (ng/mL)	150–450	137–589	94–828	109–663	56, 57, 84
Folate, serum (ng/mL)	5.4–18.0	2.6–15.0	0.8–24.0	1.4–20.7	8, 53, 56, 57, 64, 69, 84
Haptoglobin (mg/mL)	25–250	130 ± 43	115 ± 50	135 ± 65	31
Hemoglobin[b] (g/dL)	12–15.8[d]	11.6–13.9	9.7–14.8	9.5–15.0	11, 56, 58, 69, 73
Hematocrit[b] (%)	35.4–44.4	31.0–41.0	30.0–39.0	28.0–40.0	7, 8, 11, 52, 56 69, 77
Iron, total binding capacity (TIBC)[b] (μg/dL)	251–406	278–403	Not reported	359–609	73
Iron, serum[b] (μg/dL)	41–141	72–143	44–178	30–193	11, 73
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH) (pg/cell)	27–32	30–32	30–33	29–32	52
Mean corpuscular volume (MCV) ($\times m^3$)	79–93	81–96	82–97	81–99	7, 52, 56, 69
Platelet ($\times 10^9$/L)	165–415	174–391	155–409	146–429	5, 7, 18, 52, 56
Mean platelet volume (MPV) (μm^3)	6.4–11.0	7.7–10.3	7.8–10.2	8.2–10.4	52
Red blood cell count (RBC) ($\times 10^6/mm^3$)	4.00–5.20[d]	3.42–4.55	2.81–4.49	2.71–4.43	7, 52, 56, 69
Red cell distribution width (RDW) (%)	<14.5	12.5–14.1	13.4–13.6	12.7–15.3	52
White blood cell count (WBC) ($\times 10^3/mm^3$)	3.5–9.1	5.7–13.6	5.6–14.8	5.9–16.9	7, 10, 52, 56, 69
Neutrophils ($\times 10^3/mm^3$)	1.4–4.6	3.6–10.1	3.8–12.3	3.9–13.1	5, 7, 10, 52
Lymphocytes ($\times 10^3/mm^3$)	0.7–4.6	1.1–3.6	0.9–3.9	1.0–3.6	5, 7, 10, 52
Monocytes ($\times 10^3/mm^3$)	0.1–0.7	0.1–1.1	0.1–1.1	0.1–1.4	7, 10, 52
Eosinophils ($\times 10^3/mm^3$)	0–0.6	0–0.6	0–0.6	0–0.6	7, 10
Basophils ($\times 10^3/mm^3$)	0–0.2	0–0.1	0–0.1	0–0.1	7, 10
Transferrin (mg/dL)	200–400[c]	254–344	220–441	288–530	46, 52
Transferrin, saturation without iron (%)	22–46[b]	Not reported	10–44	5–37	58
Transferrin, saturation with iron (%)	22–46[b]	Not reported	18–92	9–98	58

COAGULATION

	Nonpregnant Adult[a]	1st Trimester	2nd Trimester	3rd Trimester	References
Antithrombin III, functional (%)	70–130	89–114	78–126	82–116	17, 18, 47
D-Dimer (μg/mL)	0.22–0.74	0.05–0.95	0.32–1.29	0.13–1.7	18, 28, 29, 43, 47, 51, 62
Factor V (%)	50–150	75–95	72–96	60–88	49
Factor VII (%)	50–150	100–146	95–153	149–2110	18
Factor VIII (%)	50–150	90–210	97–312	143–353	18, 49
Factor IX (%)	50–150	103–172	154–217	164–235	18
Factor XI (%)	50–150	80–127	82–144	65–123	18
Factor XII (%)	50–150	78–124	90–151	129–194	18
Fibrinogen (mg/dL)	233–496	244–510	291–538	301–696	18, 28, 29, 47, 51, 52, 62
Fibronectin (mg/L)	290 ± 85	377 ± 309	315 ± 295	334 ± 257	33
Homocysteine (μmol/L)	4.4–10.8	3.34–11	2.0–26.9	3.2–21.4	53, 56, 57, 64, 84
International normalized ratio (INR)	0.9–1.04[g]	0.86–1.08	0.83–1.02	0.80–1.09	17, 51
Partial thromboplastin time, activated (aPTT) (sec)	26.3–39.4	23.0–38.9	22.9–38.1	22.6–35.0	17, 18, 51, 52
Prothrombin time (PT) (sec)	12.7–15.4	9.7–13.5	9.5–13.4	9.6–12.9	18, 51, 52
Protein C, functional (%)	70–130	78–121	83–133	67–135	17, 27, 49
Protein S, total (%)	70–140	39–105	27–101	33–101	18, 27, 49
Protein S, free (%)	70–140	34–133	19–113	20–65	27, 49
Protein S, functional activity (%)	65–140	57–95	42–68	16–42	49
Thrombin time (TT) (sec)	17.7 ± 2.8	16.1 ± 1.5	15.4 ± 2.7	16.5 ± 2.4	33
Thrombomodulin (ng/mL)	2.7 ± 3.1	4.3 ± 1.3	4.2 ± 1.2	3.6 ± 1.3	33
Tissue plasminogen activator (ng/mL)	1.6–13[h]	1.8–6.0	2.36–6.6	3.34–9.20	17, 18, 29
Tissue plasminogen activator inhibitor-1 (ng/mL)	4–43	16–33	36–55	67–92	18, 29
von Willebrand disease					
von Willebrand factor antigen (%)	75–125	62–318	90–247	84–422	47, 55, 85
ADAMTS-13, von Willebrand cleaving protease (%)	40–170[i]	40–160	22–135	38–105	47, 55

BLOOD CHEMICAL CONSTITUTENTS

	Nonpregnant Adult[a]	1st Trimester	2nd Trimester	3rd Trimester	References
Alanine aminotransferase (ALT) (U/L)	7–41	3–30	2–33	2–25	6, 46, 52, 82
Albumin (g/dL)	4.1–5.3[d]	3.1–5.1	2.6–4.5	2.3–4.2	3, 6, 30, 35, 46, 52, 84
Alkaline phosphatase (U/L)	33–96	17–88	25–126	38–229	3, 6, 46, 52, 82
Alpha-1 antitrypsin (mg/dL)	100–200	225–323	273–391	327–487	52
Alpha-fetoprotein (ng/mL)	—	—	~130–400	~130–590	48
Ammonia (μM)	31 ± 3.2	—	—	27.3 ± 1.6	39
Amylase (U/L)	20–96	24–83	16–73	15–81	40, 46, 52, 80
Anion gap (mmol/L)	7–16	13–17	12–16	12–16	52
Aspartate aminotransferase (AST) (U/L)	12–38	3–23	3–33	4–32	6, 46, 52, 82
Bicarbonate (mmol/L)	22–30	20–24	20–24	20–24	52
Bilirubin, total (mg/dL)	0.3–1.3	0.1–0.4	0.1–0.8	0.1–1.1	6, 46
Bilirubin, unconjugated (mg/dL)	0.2–0.9	0.1–0.5	0.1–0.4	0.1–0.5	6, 52
Bilirubin, conjugated (mg/dL)	0.1–0.4	0–0.1	0–0.1	0–0.1	6
Bile acids (μmol/L)	0.3–4.8[j]	0–4.9	0–9.1	0–11.3	6, 16
CA-125 (μg/mL)	7.2–27	2.2–268	12–25.1	16.8–43.8	4, 37, 79
Calcium, ionized (mg/dL)	4.5–5.3	4.5–5.1	4.4–5.0	4.4–5.3	30, 52, 59, 67
Calcium, total (mg/dL)	8.7–10.2	8.8–10.6	8.2–9.0	8.2–9.7	3, 35, 46, 52, 59, 67, 74
Ceruloplasmin (mg/dL)	25–63	30–49	40–53	43–78	52, 54
Chloride (mEq/L)	102–109	101–105	97–109	97–109	22, 46, 52
Creatinine (mg/dL)	0.5–0.9[d]	0.4–0.7	0.4–0.8	0.4–0.9	46, 52, 56
Gamma-glutamyl transpeptidase (GGT) (U/L)	9–58	2–23	4–22	3–26	6, 46, 52, 82
Lactate dehydrogenase (U/L)	115–221	78–433	80–447	82–524	35, 46, 52, 82
Lipase (U/L)	3–43	21–76	26–100	41–112	40
Magnesium (mg/dL)	1.5–2.3	1.6–2.2	1.5–2.2	1.1–2.2	3, 30, 35, 46, 52, 59, 74
Osmolality (mOsm/kg H_2O)	275–295	275–280	276–289	278–280	19, 74
Phosphate (mg/dL)	2.5–4.3	3.1–4.6	2.5–4.6	2.8–4.6	3, 30, 41, 46, 52
Potassium (mEq/L)	3.5–5.0	3.6–5.0	3.3–5.0	3.3–5.1	22, 30, 35, 46, 52, 74, 77
Prealbumin (mg/dL)	17–34	15–27	20–27	14–23	52
Protein, total (g/dL)	6.7–8.6	6.2–7.6	5.7–6.9	5.6–6.7	30, 35, 52
Sodium (mEq/L)	136–146	133–148	129–148	130–148	19, 30, 35, 46, 52, 74, 77
Urea nitrogen (mg/dL)	7–20	7–12	3–13	3–11	22, 46, 52
Uric acid (mg/dL)	2.5–5.6[d]	2.0–4.2	2.4–4.9	3.1–6.3	19, 46, 52

METABOLIC AND ENDOCRINE TESTS

	Nonpregnant Adult[a]	1st Trimester	2nd Trimester	3rd Trimester	References
Aldosterone (ng/dL)	2–9	6–104	9–104	15–101	23, 42, 81
Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) (U/L)	9–67	1–38	1–36	1–39	22, 65
Cortisol (μg/dL)	0–25	7–19	10–42	12–50	52, 81
Hemoglobin A_{1C} (%)	4–6	4–6	4–6	4–7	59, 60, 70
Parathyroid hormone (pg/mL)	8–51	10–15	18–25	9–26	3
Parathyroid hormone-related protein (pmol/L)	<1.3[e]	0.7–0.9	1.8–2.2	2.5–2.8	3
Renin, plasma activity (ng/mL/hr)	0.3–9.0[e]	Not reported	7.5–54.0	5.9–58.8	22, 42
Thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH) (μIU/mL)	0.34–4.25	0.60–3.40	0.37–3.60	0.38–4.04	46, 52, 68
Thyroxine-binding globulin (mg/dL)	1.3–3.0	1.8–3.2	2.8–4.0	2.6–4.2	52
Thyroxine, free (fT_4) (ng/dL)	0.8–1.7	0.8–1.2	0.6–1.0	0.5–0.8	52, 68
Thyroxine, total (T_4) (μg/dL)	5.4–11.7	6.5–10.1	7.5–10.3	6.3–9.7	35, 52
Triiodothyronine, free (fT_3) (pg/mL)	2.4–4.2	4.1–4.4	4.0–4.2	Not reported	68
Triiodothyronine, total (T_3) (ng/dL)	77–135	97–149	117–169	123–162	52

VITAMINS AND MINERALS

	Nonpregnant Adult[a]	1st Trimester	2nd Trimester	3rd Trimester	References
Copper (μg/dL)	70–140	112–199	165–221	130–240	2, 36, 52
Selenium (μg/L)	63–160	116–146	75–145	71–133	2, 52
Vitamin A (retinol) (μg/dL)	20–100	32–47	35–44	29–42	52
Vitamin B_{12} (pg/mL)	279–966	118–438	130–656	99–526	56, 84
Vitamin C (ascorbic acid) (mg/dL)	0.4–1.0	Not reported	Not reported	0.9–1.3	75
Vitamin D, 1,25-dihydroxy (pg/mL)	25–45	20–65	72–160	60–119	3, 59
Vitamin D, 24,25-dihydroxy (ng/mL)	0.5–5.0[e]	1.2–1.8	1.1–1.5	0.7–0.9	71
Vitamin D, 25-hydroxy (ng/mL)	14–80	18–27	10–22	10–18	3, 71
Vitamin E (α-tocopherol) (μg/mL)	5–18	7–13	10–16	13–23	52
Zinc (μg/dL)	75–120	57–88	51–80	50–77	2, 52, 69

AUTOIMMUNE AND INFLAMMATORY MEDIATORS

	Nonpregnant Adult[a]	1st Trimester	2nd Trimester	3rd Trimester	References
C3 complement (mg/dL)	83–177	62–98	73–103	77–111	52
C4 complement (mg/dL)	16–47	18–36	18–34	22–32	52
C-reactive protein (CRP) (mg/L)	0.2–3.0	Not reported	0.4–20.3	0.4–8.1	34
Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR) (mm/hr)	0–20[d]	4–57	7–47	13–70	83
IgA (mg/dL)	70–350	95–243	99–237	112–250	52
IgG (mg/dL)	700–1700	981–1267	813–1131	678–990	52
IgM (mg/dL)	50–300	78–232	74–218	85–269	52

SEX HORMONES

	Nonpregnant Adult[a]	1st Trimester	2nd Trimester	3rd Trimester	References
Dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (DHEAS) (μmol/L)	1.3–6.8[e]	2.0–16.5	0.9–7.8	0.8–6.5	63
Estradiol (pg/mL)	<20–443[d,f]	188–2497	1278–7192	6137–3460	15, 63
Progesterone (ng/mL)	<1–20[d]	8–48		99–342	15, 63
Prolactin (ng/mL)	0–20[d]	36–213	110–330	137–372	3, 15, 45, 60
Sex hormone binding globulin (nmol/L)	18–114[d]	39–131	214–717	216–724	1, 63
Testosterone (ng/dL)	6–86[d]	25.7–211.4	34.3–242.9	62.9–308.6	63
17-Hydroxyprogesterone (nmol/L)	0.6–10.6[d,e]	5.2–28.5	5.2–28.5	15.5–84	63

LIPIDS

	Nonpregnant Adult[a]	1st Trimester	2nd Trimester	3rd Trimester	References
Cholesterol, total (mg/dL)	<200	141–210	176–299	219–349	9, 20, 38, 52
HDL-cholesterol (mg/dL)	40–60	40–78	52–87	48–87	9, 20, 38, 52, 66
LDL-cholesterol (mg/dL)	<100	60–153	77–184	101–224	9, 20, 38, 52, 66
VLDL-cholesterol (mg/dL)	6–40[e]	10–18	13–23	21–36	38
Triglycerides (mg/dL)	<150	40–159	75–382	131–453	9, 20, 38, 46, 52, 66
Apolipoprotein A-I (mg/dL)	119–240	111–150	142–253	145–262	20, 46, 60
Apolipoprotein B (mg/dL)	52–163	58–81	66–188	85–238	20, 46, 60

CARDIAC

	Nonpregnant Adult[a]	1st Trimester	2nd Trimester	3rd Trimester	References
Atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) (pg/mL)	Not reported	Not reported	28.1–70.1	Not reported	12
B-type natriuretic peptide (BNP) (pg/mL)	22 ± 10	22 ± 10	32 ± 15	31 ± 21	14
Creatine kinase (U/L)	39–238[d]	27–83	25–75	13–101	50, 52
Creatine kinase-MB (U/L)	<6[k]	Not reported	Not reported	1.8–2.4	50
NT-pro-BNP (pg/mL)	50 ± 26	60 ± 45	60 ± 40	43 ± 34	14
Troponin I (ng/mL)	0–0.08	Not reported	Not reported	0–0.064 (intrapartum)	44, 76

BLOOD GAS

	Nonpregnant Adult[a]	1st Trimester	2nd Trimester	3rd Trimester	References
Bicarbonate (HCO_3^-) (mEq/L)	22–26	Not reported	Not reported	16–22	25
Pco_2 (mm Hg)	38–42	Not reported	Not reported	25–33	25
Po_2 (mm Hg)	90–100	93–100	90–98	92–107	25, 78
pH	7.38–7.42 (arterial)	7.36–7.52 (venous)	7.40–7.52 (venous)	7.41–7.53 (venous) 7.39–7.45 (arterial)	25, 30

RENAL FUNCTION TESTS

	Nonpregnant Adult[a]	1st Trimester	2nd Trimester	3rd Trimester	References
Effective renal plasma flow (mL/min)	492–696[d,e]	696–985	612–1170	595–945	21, 24
Glomerular filtration rate (GFR) (mL/min)	106–132[d]	131–166	135–170	117–182	21, 24, 61
Filtration fraction (%)	16.9–24.7[l]	14.7–21.6	14.3–21.9	17.1–25.1	21, 24, 61
Osmolarity, urine (mOsm/kg)	500–800	326–975	278–1066	238–1034	72
24-hr albumin excretion (mg/24 hr)	<30	5–15	4–18	3–22	32, 72
24-hr calcium excretion (mmol/24 hr)	<7.5[e]	1.6–5.2	0.3–6.9	0.8–4.2	77
24-hr creatinine clearance (mL/min)	91–130	69–140	55–136	50–166	24, 77
24-hr creatinine excretion (mmol/24 hr)	8.8–14[e]	10.6–11.6	10.3–11.5	10.2–11.4	72
24-hr potassium excretion (mmol/24 hr)	25–100[e]	17–33	10–38	11–35	77
24-hr protein excretion (mg/24 hr)	<150	19–141	47–186	46–185	32
24-hr sodium excretion (mmol/24 hr)	100–260[e]	53–215	34–213	37–149	19, 77

[a]Unless otherwise specified, all normal reference values are from the seventeenth edition of *Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine* (26).
[b]Range includes references with and without iron supplementation.
[c]Reference values are from *Laboratory Reference Handbook*, Pathology Department, Parkland Hospital, 2005.
[d]Normal reference range is specific range for females.
[e]Reference values are from the 15th edition of *Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine* (13).
[f]Range is for premenopausal females and varies by menstrual cycle phase.
[g]Reference values are from Cerneca et al: Coagulation and fibrinolysis changes in normal pregnancy increased levels of procoagulants and reduced levels of inhibitors during pregnancy induce a hypercoagulable state, combined with a reactive fibrinolysis (17).
[h]Reference values are from Cerneca et al and Choi et al: Tissue plasminogen activator levels change with plasma fibrinogen concentrations during pregnancy (17, 18).
[i]Reference values are from Mannucci et al: Changes in health and disease of the metalloprotease that cleaves von Willebrand factor (55).
[j]Reference values are from Bacq et al: Liver function tests in normal pregnancy: a prospective study of 102 pregnant women and 102 matched controls (6).
[k]Reference values are from Leiserowitz et al: Creatine kinase and its MB isoenzyme in the third trimester and the peripartum period (50).
[l]Reference values are from Dunlop: Serial changes in renal haemodynamics during normal human pregnancy (21).
Appendix courtesy of Dr. Mina Abbassi-Ghanavati and Dr. Laura G. Greer.

APPENDIX II. Maternal Echocardiographic Measurements

Left Ventricle	Pregnancy			Postpartum
	1st Trimester	2nd Trimester	3rd Trimester	
Geometry				
IVS_d (mm)	7.3 ± 1.0	7.4 ± 1.1	7.8 ± 1.2	7.1 ± 0.9
LVEDD (mm)	45–47.8	47–48.9	47–49.6	46–48.8
LVESD (mm)	28–30	29–30.1	30–30.8	28–30.6
PW_d	6.3 ± 0.7	6.6 ± 0.7	6.9 ± 1.0	6.1 ± 0.6
RWT	0.26–0.36	0.27–0.37	0.28–0.38	0.25–0.35
LV mass (g)	111–121	121–135	136–151	114–119
LV mass (g/m^2)	66 ± 13	70 ± 12	76 ± 16	67 ± 11
Systolic function				
FS (%)	37–38	76–78	80–85	67–69
SW thickening (%)	47 ± 17	53 ± 16	51 ± 15	54 ± 19
PW thickening (%)	66 ± 16	72 ± 16	74 ± 16	71 ± 14
VCFC (circ/sec)	1.15–0.3	1.18–0.16	1.18–0.12	1.18–0.12
ESS (g/cm^2)	59 ± 9	53 ± 11	52 ± 11	66 ± 12
Diastolic function				
Heart rate	75–76	76–78	80–85	67–69
Mitral E wave (m/sec)	0.85 ± 0.13	0.84 ± 0.16	0.77 ± 0.15	0.77 ± 0.11
Mitral A wave (m/sec)	0.5 ± 0.09	0.5 ± 0.1	0.55 ± 0.1	0.46 ± 0.1
Deceleration time (ms)	176 ± 44	188 ± 40	193 ± 33	201 ± 48
IVRT (ms)	90 ±19	79 ± 18	72 ± 16	69 ± 10
E wave duration (ms)	263 ± 50	276 ± 43	282 ± 37	288 ± 48
E and A wave duration (ms)	454 ± 121	412 ± 79	375 ± 63	523 ± 88

Values are ranges or means ± SD.
Circ = circumference; d = diastolic; ESS = end-systolic wall stress; FS = fractional shortening; IVRT = isovolumic relaxation time; IVS_d = interventricular septum–diastole; LV = left ventricle; LVEDD = left ventricular end-diastolic dimension; LVESD = left ventricular end-systolic dimension; PW = posterior wall; RWT = relative wall thickness; SW = septal wall; VCFC = rate-adjusted mean velocity of circumferential fiber thickening.
Data from Savu, 2012; Vitarelli, 2011.

APPENDIX III. Sonographic Measurements of the Embryo and Fetus

TABLE III-1. Mean Gestational Sac Diameter and Crown-Rump Length and Corresponding Menstrual Age

Menstrual Age (day)	Menstrual Age (wk)	Gestational Sac Size (mm)	Crown-Rump Length (cm)
30	4.3		
32	4.6	3	
34	4.9	5	
36	5.1	6	
38	5.4	8	
40	5.7	10	0.2
42	6.0	12	0.4
44	6.3	14	0.5
46	6.6	16	0.7
48	6.9	18	0.9
50	7.1	20	1.0
52	7.4	22	1.2
54	7.7	24	1.4
56	8.0	26	1.6
58	8.3	27	1.8
60	8.6	29	2.0
62	8.9	31	2.2
64	9.1	33	2.4
66	9.4	35	2.6
68	9.7	37	2.9
70	10.0	39	3.1
72	10.3	41	3.4
74	10.6	43	3.7
76	10.9	45	4.0
78	11.1	47	4.2
80	11.4	49	4.6
82	11.7	51	5.0
84	12.0	53	5.4

From Daya, 1991; Hadlock, 1992; Nyberg, 1987; Robinson; 1975.

TABLE III-2. Fetal Weight Percentiles According to Gestational Age

Gestational Age (wk)	Fetal Weight Percentiles (g)				
	3rd	10th	50th	90th	97th
10	26	29	35	41	44
11	34	37	45	53	56
12	43	48	58	68	73
13	54	61	73	85	92
14	69	77	93	109	117
15	87	97	117	137	147
16	109	121	146	171	183
17	135	150	181	212	227
18	166	185	223	261	280
19	204	227	273	319	342
20	247	275	331	387	415
21	298	331	399	467	500
22	357	397	478	559	599
23	424	472	568	664	712
24	500	556	670	784	840
25	586	652	785	918	984
26	681	758	913	1068	1145
27	787	876	1055	1234	1323
28	903	1005	1210	1415	1517
29	1029	1145	1379	1613	1729
30	1163	1294	1559	1824	1955
31	1306	1454	1751	2048	2196
32	1457	1621	1953	2285	2449
33	1613	1795	2162	2529	2711
34	1773	1973	2377	2781	2981
35	1936	2154	2595	3026	3254
36	2098	2335	2813	3291	3528
37	2259	2514	3028	3542	3797
38	2414	2687	3236	3785	4058
39	2563	2852	3435	4018	4307
40	2700	3004	3619	4234	4538
41	2825	3144	3787	4430	4749
42	2935	3266	3934	4602	4933

Reproduced with permission from Hadlock, 1991.

TABLE III-3. Smoothed Birth Weight Percentiles for Twins with Dichorionic Placentation

GA (wk)	Smoothed Birth Weight Percentiles				
	5th	10th	50th	90th	95th
23	477	513	632	757	801
24	538	578	712	853	903
25	606	652	803	962	1018
26	684	735	906	1085	1148
27	771	829	1021	1223	1294
28	870	935	1152	1379	1459
29	980	1054	1298	1554	1645
30	1102	1186	1460	1748	1850
31	1235	1328	1635	1958	2072
32	1374	1477	1819	2179	2306
33	1515	1630	2007	2403	2543
34	1653	1778	2190	2622	2775
35	1781	1916	2359	2825	2989
36	1892	2035	2506	3001	3176
37	1989	2139	2634	3155	3339
38	2079	2236	2753	3297	3489
39	2167	2331	2870	3437	3637
40	2258	2428	2990	3581	3790
41	2352	2530	3115	3731	3948

GA = gestational age.
Reproduced with permission from Ananth, 1998.

TABLE III-4. Smoothed Birth Weight Percentiles for Twins with Monochorionic Placentation

GA (wk)	Smoothed Birth Weight Percentiles				
	5th	10th	50th	90th	95th
23	392	431	533	648	683
24	456	501	620	753	794
25	530	582	720	875	922
26	615	676	836	1017	1072
27	713	784	970	1178	1242
28	823	904	1119	1360	1433
29	944	1037	1282	1559	1643
30	1072	1178	1457	1771	1867
31	1204	1323	1637	1990	2097
32	1335	1467	1814	2205	2325
33	1457	1601	1980	2407	2537
34	1562	1716	2123	2580	2720
35	1646	1808	2237	2719	2866
36	1728	1899	2349	2855	3009
37	1831	2012	2489	3025	3189
38	1957	2150	2660	3233	3408
39	2100	2307	2854	3469	3657
40	2255	2478	3065	3726	3927
41	2422	2661	3292	4001	4217

Reproduced with permission from Ananth, 1998.

TABLE III-5. Head Circumference Standard Deviations Below the Mean (cm) According to Gestational Age

GA (wk)	50th Percentile (cm)	Standard Deviations Below the Mean				
		−1	−2	−3	−4	−5
20	17.5	16.0	14.5	13.1	11.6	10.1
21	18.7	17.2	15.7	14.3	12.8	11.3
22	19.8	18.4	16.9	15.4	14.0	12.5
23	21.0	19.5	18.0	16.6	15.1	13.6
24	22.1	20.6	19.1	17.7	16.2	14.7
25	23.2	21.7	20.2	18.8	17.3	15.8
26	24.2	22.7	21.3	19.8	18.3	16.9
27	25.2	23.8	22.3	20.8	19.4	17.9
28	26.2	24.7	23.3	21.8	20.3	18.9
29	27.1	25.7	24.2	22.7	21.3	19.8
30	28.1	26.6	25.1	23.6	22.2	20.7
31	28.9	27.4	26.0	24.5	23.0	21.6
32	29.7	28.3	26.8	25.3	23.9	22.4
33	30.5	29.0	27.6	26.1	24.6	23.2
34	31.2	29.7	28.3	26.8	25.3	23.9
35	31.9	30.4	28.9	27.5	26.0	24.5
36	32.5	31.0	29.5	28.1	26.6	25.1
37	33.0	31.6	30.1	28.6	27.2	25.7
38	33.5	32.0	30.6	29.1	27.6	26.2
39	33.9	32.5	31.0	29.5	28.1	26.6
40	34.3	32.8	31.4	29.9	28.4	27.0

Abbreviated with permission from Chervenak, 1984.

TABLE III-6. Fetal Thoracic Circumference Measurements (cm) According to Gestational Age

Gestational Age (wk)	Percentiles				
	2.5th	5th	50th	95th	97.5th
16	5.9	6.4	9.1	11.9	12.4
17	6.8	7.3	10.0	12.8	13.3
18	7.7	8.2	11.0	13.7	14.2
19	8.6	9.1	11.9	14.6	15.1
20	9.6	10.0	12.8	15.5	16.0
21	10.4	11.0	13.7	16.4	16.9
22	11.3	11.9	14.6	17.3	17.8
23	12.2	12.8	15.5	18.2	18.8
24	13.2	13.7	16.4	19.1	19.7
25	14.1	14.6	17.3	20.0	20.6
26	15.0	15.5	18.2	21.0	21.5
27	15.9	16.4	19.1	21.9	22.4
28	16.8	17.3	20.0	22.8	23.3
29	17.7	18.2	21.0	23.7	24.2
30	18.6	19.1	21.9	24.6	25.1
31	19.5	20.0	22.8	25.5	26.0
32	20.4	20.9	23.7	26.4	26.9
33	21.3	21.8	24.6	27.3	27.8
34	22.2	22.8	25.5	28.2	28.7
35	23.1	23.7	26.4	29.1	29.6
36	24.0	24.6	27.3	30.0	30.6
37	24.8	25.5	28.2	30.9	31.5
38	25.9	26.4	29.1	31.9	32.4
39	26.8	27.3	30.0	32.8	33.3
40	27.7	28.2	30.9	33.7	34.2

Adapted with permission from Chitkara, 1987.

TABLE III-7. Length of Fetal Long Bones (mm) According to Gestational Age

	Humerus Percentile			Ulna Percentile			Radius Percentile			Femur Percentile			Tibia Percentile			Fibula Percentile		
Week	3	50	97	3	50	97	3	50	97	3	50	97	3	50	97	3	50	97
14	11	14	18	9	12	16	8	11	15	11	14	18	8	11	15	7	11	14
15	14	17	21	12	15	19	10	14	17	14	17	21	11	14	18	10	14	17
16	17	20	24	15	18	22	13	17	20	17	20	24	13	17	21	13	16	20
17	20	23	27	17	21	25	16	19	23	19	23	27	16	20	24	16	19	23
18	22	26	30	20	24	28	18	22	26	22	26	30	19	23	27	18	22	26
19	25	29	33	23	27	31	20	24	28	25	29	33	22	26	30	21	25	29
20	27	32	36	25	29	34	23	27	31	28	32	36	25	29	33	24	28	32
21	30	34	38	28	32	36	25	29	33	31	35	39	27	31	35	26	31	35
22	32	36	41	30	34	39	27	31	35	33	38	42	30	34	38	29	33	37
23	34	39	43	32	37	41	29	33	37	36	40	45	32	36	41	31	36	40
24	36	41	45	34	39	43	30	35	39	38	43	48	34	39	43	34	38	42
25	38	43	47	36	41	46	32	37	41	41	46	50	37	41	46	36	40	45
26	40	45	49	38	43	48	34	38	43	43	48	53	39	43	49	38	42	47
27	42	47	51	40	45	50	35	40	44	45	50	55	41	45	50	40	44	49
28	44	49	53	42	47	51	37	41	46	48	53	58	43	47	52	41	46	51
29	46	50	55	43	48	53	38	43	47	50	55	60	44	49	54	43	48	53
30	47	52	57	45	50	55	39	44	49	52	57	62	46	51	56	45	50	55
31	49	54	58	46	51	56	34	44	50	54	59	65	48	53	58	46	52	57
32	50	55	60	48	43	58	40	45	51	56	61	67	49	54	60	48	53	58
33	51	56	62	49	54	59	41	46	53	58	63	69	51	56	61	49	55	60
34	53	58	63	50	55	61	43	49	54	59	65	71	52	58	63	51	56	61
35	54	59	64	51	57	62	44	50	55	61	67	72	54	59	64	52	58	63
36	55	60	66	52	58	64	45	51	56	62	68	74	55	60	66	53	59	64
37	56	62	67	53	59	65	46	52	57	64	70	76	56	62	67	54	60	66
38	57	63	68	54	60	66	47	53	58	65	71	77	57	63	69	56	61	67
39	58	64	69	55	61	67	48	53	59	66	72	79	58	64	70	57	63	68
40	59	65	70	56	62	68	48	54	60	67	74	81	59	65	71	58	64	70

Data from Chitty, 2002.

TABLE III-8. Ocular Parameter Percentiles According to Gestational Age

	Binocular Distance (mm)			Interocular Distance (mm)			Ocular Diameter (mm)		
Age (wk)	5th	50th	95th	5th	50th	95th	5th	50th	95th
15	15	22	30	6	10	14	4	6	9
16	17	25	32	6	10	15	5	7	9
17	19	27	34	6	11	15	5	8	10
18	22	29	37	7	11	16	6	9	11
19	24	31	39	7	12	16	7	9	12
20	26	33	41	8	12	17	8	10	13
21	28	35	43	8	13	17	8	11	13
22	30	37	44	9	13	18	9	12	14
23	31	39	46	9	14	18	10	12	15
24	33	41	48	10	14	19	10	13	15
25	35	42	50	10	15	19	11	13	16
26	36	44	51	11	15	20	12	14	16
27	38	45	53	11	16	20	12	14	17
28	39	47	54	12	16	21	13	15	17
29	41	48	56	12	17	21	13	15	18
30	42	50	57	13	17	22	14	16	18
31	43	51	58	13	18	22	14	16	19
32	45	52	60	14	18	23	14	17	19
33	46	53	61	14	19	23	15	17	19
34	47	54	62	15	19	24	15	17	20
35	48	55	63	15	20	24	15	18	20
36	49	56	64	16	20	25	16	18	20
37	50	57	65	16	21	25	1	18	21
38	50	58	65	17	21	26	16	18	21
39	51	59	66	17	22	26	16	19	21
40	52	59	67	18	22	26	16	19	21

Adapted with permission from Romero, 1988.

TABLE III-9. Transverse Cerebellar Diameter Percentiles According to Gestational Age

Gestational Age (wk)	Cerebellum Diameter (mm)		
	5th	50th	95th
14	13	14	15
15	14	15	16
16	15	16	17
17	16	17	18
18	17	18	18
19	18	19	20
20	19	20	22
21	20	22	23
22	22	23	25
23	23	25	27
24	25	27	28
25	26	28	30
26	28	30	32
27	29	32	34
28	31	34	36
29	33	35	38
30	35	37	40
31	36	39	42
32	38	41	44
33	40	43	46
34	42	45	48
35	44	47	50
36	45	49	52
37	47	51	54
38	49	52	56
39	50	54	58
40	52	56	60

Adapted with permission from Sherer, 2007.

TABLE III-10. Reference Values for Umbilical Artery Doppler Indices

	Percentiles					
	5th		50th		95th	
GA (wk)	Resistive Index	Systolic-Diastolic Ratio	Resistive Index	Systolic-Diastolic Ratio	Resistive Index	Systolic-Diastolic Ratio
16	0.70	3.39	0.80	5.12	0.90	10.50
17	0.69	3.27	0.79	4.86	0.89	9.46
18	0.68	3.16	0.78	4.63	0.88	8.61
19	0.67	3.06	0.77	4.41	0.87	7.90
20	0.66	2.97	0.76	4.22	0.86	7.30
21	0.65	2.88	0.75	4.04	0.85	6.78
22	0.64	2.79	0.74	3.88	0.84	6.33
23	0.63	2.71	0.73	3.73	0.83	5.94
24	0.62	2.64	0.72	3.59	0.82	5.59
25	0.61	2.57	0.71	3.46	0.81	5.28
26	0.60	2.50	0.70	3.34	0.80	5.01
27	0.59	2.44	0.69	3.22	0.79	4.76
28	0.58	2.38	0.68	3.12	0.78	4.53
29	0.57	2.32	0.67	3.02	0.77	4.33
30	0.56	2.26	0.66	2.93	0.76	4.14
31	0.55	2.21	0.65	2.84	0.75	3.97
32	0.54	2.16	0.64	2.76	0.74	3.81
33	0.53	2.11	0.63	2.68	0.73	3.66
34	0.52	2.07	0.62	2.61	0.72	3.53
35	0.51	2.03	0.61	2.54	0.71	3.40
36	0.50	1.98	0.60	2.47	0.70	3.29
37	0.49	1.94	0.59	2.41	0.69	3.18
38	0.47	1.90	0.57	2.35	0.67	3.08
39	0.46	1.87	0.56	2.30	0.66	2.98
40	0.45	1.83	0.55	2.24	0.65	2.89

GA = gestational age.
Adapted with permission from Kofinas, 1992.

REFERENCES: APPENDIX I

1. Acromite MT, Mantzoros CS, Leach RE, et al: Androgens in preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 180:60, 1999
2. Álvarez SI, Castañón SG, Ruata MLC, et al: Updating of normal levels of copper, zinc and selenium in serum of pregnant women. J Trace Elem Med Biol 21(S1):49, 2007
3. Ardawi MSM, Nasrat HAN, BA'Aqueel HS: Calcium-regulating hormones and parathyroid hormone-related peptide in normal human pregnancy and postpartum: a longitudinal study. Eur J Endocrinol 137:402, 1997
4. Aslam N, Ong C, Woelfer B, et al: Serum CA 125 at 11–14 weeks of gestation in women with morphologically normal ovaries. BJOG 107(5): 689, 2000
5. Aziz Karim S, Khurshid M, Rizvi JH, et al: Platelets and leucocyte counts in pregnancy. J Pak Med Assoc 42:86, 1992
6. Bacq Y, Zarka O, Bréchot JF, et al: Liver function tests in normal pregnancy: a prospective study of 102 pregnant women and 102 matched controls. Hepatology 23:1030, 1996
7. Balloch AJ, Cauchi MN: Reference ranges for haematology parameters in pregnancy derived from patient populations. Clin Lab Haematol 15:7, 1993
8. Beguin Y, Lipscei G, Thourmsin H, et al: Blunted erythropoietin production and decreased erythropoiesis in early pregnancy. Blood 78(1):89, 1991
9. Belo L, Caslake M, Gaffney D, et al: Changes in LDL size and HDL concentration in normal and preeclamptic pregnancies. Atherosclerosis 162:425, 2002
10. Belo L, Santos-Silva A, Rocha S, et al: Fluctuations in C-reactive protein concentration and neutrophil activation during normal human pregnancy. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 123:46, 2005
11. Bianco I, Mastropietro F, D'Aseri C, et al: Serum levels of erythropoietin and soluble transferrin receptor during pregnancy in non-β-thalassemic and β-thalassemic women. Haematologica 85:902, 2000
12. Borghi CB, Esposti DD, Immordino V, et al: Relationship of systemic hemodynamics, left ventricular structure and function, and plasma natriuretic peptide concentrations during pregnancy complicated by preeclampsia. Am J Obstet Gynecol 183:140, 2000
13. Braunwald E, Fauci AS, Kasper DL, et al (eds): Appendices. In Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 15th ed. New York, McGraw-Hill, 2001, p A-1
14. Burlingame J, Hyeong JA, Tang WHW: Changes in cardiovascular biomarkers throughout pregnancy and the remote postpartum period. Am J Obstet Gynecol 208:S97, 2013
15. Carranza-Lira S, Hernández F, Sánchez M, et al: Prolactin secretion in molar and normal pregnancy. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 60:137, 1998
16. Carter J: Serum bile acids in normal pregnancy. BJOG 98:540, 1991
17. Cerneca F, Ricci G, Simeone R, et al: Coagulation and fibrinolysis changes in normal pregnancy increased levels of procoagulants and reduced levels of inhibitors during pregnancy induce a hypercoagulable state, combined with a reactive fibrinolysis. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 73:31, 1997
18. Choi JW, Pai SH: Tissue plasminogen activator levels change with plasma fibrinogen concentrations during pregnancy. Ann Hematol 81:611, 2002
19. Davison JB, Vallotton MB, Lindheimer MD: Plasma osmolality and urinary concentration and dilution during and after pregnancy: evidence that

lateral recumbency inhibits maximal urinary concentrating ability. BJOG 88:472, 1981
20. Desoye G, Schweditsch MO, Pfeiffer KP, et al: Correlation of hormones with lipid and lipoprotein levels during normal pregnancy and postpartum. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 64:704, 1987
21. Dunlop W: Serial changes in renal haemodynamics during normal human pregnancy. BJOG 88:1, 1981
22. Dux S, Yaron A, Carmel A, et al: Renin, aldosterone, and serum-converting enzyme activity during normal and hypertensive pregnancy. Gynecol Obstet Invest 17:252, 1984
23. Elsheikh A, Creatsas G, Mastorakos G, et al: The renin-aldosterone system during normal and hypertensive pregnancy. Arch Gynecol Obstet 264:182, 2001
24. Ezimokhai M, Davison JM, Philips PR, et al: Non-postural serial changes in renal function during the third trimester of normal human pregnancy. BJOG 88:465, 1981
25. Fadel HE, Northrop G, Misenhimer HR, et al: Acid-base determinations in amniotic fluid and blood of normal late pregnancy. Obstet Gynecol 53:99, 1979
26. Fauci AS, Kasper DL, Longo E, et al (eds): Harrison's Principles of Internal Medicine, 17th ed. New York, McGraw Hill, 2008
27. Faught W, Garner P, Jones G, et al: Changes in protein C and protein S levels in normal pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 172:147, 1995
28. Francalanci I, Comeglio P, Liotta AA, et al: d-Dimer concentrations during normal pregnancy, as measured by ELISA. Thromb Res 78:399, 1995
29. Hale SA, Sobel B, Benvenuto A, et al: Coagulation and fibrinolytic system protein profiles in women with normal pregnancies and pregnancies complicated by hypertension. Pregnancy Hypertens 2(2):152, 2012
30. Handwerker SM, Altura BT, Altura BM: Serum ionized magnesium and other electrolytes in the antenatal period of human pregnancy. J Am Coll Nutr 15:36, 1996
31. Haram K, Augensen K, Elsayed S: Serum protein pattern in normal pregnancy with special reference to acute phase reactants. BJOG 90(2):139, 1983
32. Higby K, Suiter CR, Phelps JY, et al: Normal values of urinary albumin and total protein excretion during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 171:984, 1994
33. Hui C, Lili M, Libin C, et al: Changes in coagulation and hemodynamics during pregnancy: a prospective longitudinal study of 58 cases. Arch Gynecol Obstet 285:1231, 2012
34. Hwang HS, Kwon JY, Kim MA, et al: Maternal serum highly sensitive C-reactive protein in normal pregnancy and pre-eclampsia. Int J Gynecol Obstet 98:105, 2007
35. Hytten FE, Lind T: Diagnostic Indices in Pregnancy. Summit, CIBA-GEIGY Corporation, 1975
36. Ilhan N, Ilhan N, Simsek M: The changes of trace elements, malondialdehyde levels and superoxide dismutase activities in pregnancy with or without preeclampsia. Clin Biochem 35:393, 2002
37. Jacobs IJ, Fay TN, Stabile I, et al: The distribution of CA 125 in the reproductive tract of pregnant and non-pregnant women. BJOG 95(11):1190, 1988
38. Jimenez DM, Pocovi M, Ramon-Cajal J, et al: Longitudinal study of plasma lipids and lipoprotein cholesterol in normal pregnancy and puerperium. Gynecol Obstet Invest 25:158, 1988
39. Jóźwik M, Jóźwik M, Pietrzycki, et al: Maternal and fetal blood ammonia concentrations in normal term human pregnancies. Biol Neonate 87:38, 2005
40. Karsenti D, Bacq Y, Bréchot JF, et al: Serum amylase and lipase activities in normal pregnancy: a prospective case-control study. Am J Gastroenterol 96:697, 2001
41. Kato T, Seki K, Matsui H, et al: Monomeric calcitonin in pregnant women and in cord blood. Obstet Gynecol 92:241, 1998
42. Kim EH, Lim JH, Kim YH, et al: The relationship between aldosterone to renin ratio and RI value of the uterine artery in the preeclamptic patient vs. normal pregnancy. Yonsei Med J 49(1):138, 2008
43. Kline JA, Williams GW, Hernandez-Nino J: d-Dimer concentrations in normal pregnancy: new diagnostic thresholds are needed. Clin Chem 51:825, 2005
44. Koscica KL, Bebbington M, Bernstein PS: Are maternal serum troponin I levels affected by vaginal or cesarean delivery? Am J Perinatol 21(1):31, 2004
45. Larrea F, Méndez I, Parra A: Serum pattern of different molecular forms of prolactin during normal human pregnancy. Hum Reprod 8:1617, 1993
46. Larsson A, Palm M, Hansson L-O, et al: Reference values for clinical chemistry tests during normal pregnancy. BJOG 115:874, 2008
47. Lattuada A, Rossi E, Calzarossa C, et al: Mild to moderate reduction of a von Willebrand factor cleaving protease (ADAMTS-13) in pregnant women with HELLP microangiopathic syndrome. Haematologica 88(9): 1029, 2003
48. Leek AE, Ruoss CF, Kitau MG, et al: Maternal plasma alphafetoprotein levels in the second half of normal pregnancy: relationship to fetal weight, and maternal age and parity. BJOG 82:669, 1975
49. Lefkowitz JB, Clarke SH, Barbour LA: Comparison of protein S functional and antigenic assays in normal pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 175:657, 1996
50. Leiserowitz GS, Evans AT, Samuels SJ, et al: Creatine kinase and its MB isoenzyme in the third trimester and the peripartum period. J Reprod Med 37:910, 1992
51. Liu XH, Jiang YM, Shi H, et al: Prospective, sequential, longitudinal study of coagulation changes during pregnancy in Chinese women. Int J Gynaecol Obstet 105(3):240, 2009
52. Lockitch G: Handbook of Diagnostic Biochemistry and Hematology in Normal Pregnancy. Boca Raton, CRC Press, 1993
53. López-Quesada E, Vilaseca MA, Lailla JM: Plasma total homocysteine in uncomplicated pregnancy and in preeclampsia. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 108:45, 2003
54. Louro MO, Cocho JA, Tutor JC: Assessment of copper status in pregnancy by means of determining the specific oxidase activity of ceruloplasmin. Clin Chim Acta 312:123, 2001
55. Mannucci PM, Canciani MT, Forza I, et al: Changes in health and disease of the metalloprotease that cleaves von Willebrand factor. Blood 98(9): 2730, 2001
56. Milman N, Bergholt T, Byg KE, et al: Reference intervals for haematological variables during normal pregnancy and postpartum in 434 healthy Danish women. Eur J Haematol 79:39, 2007
57. Milman N, Byg KE, Hvas AM, et al: Erythrocyte folate, plasma folate and plasma homocysteine during normal pregnancy and postpartum: a longitudinal study comprising 404 Danish women. Eur J Haematol 76:200, 2006
58. Milman N, Graudal N, Nielsen OJ: Serum erythropoietin during normal pregnancy: relationship to hemoglobin and iron status markers and impact of iron supplementation in a longitudinal, placebo-controlled study on 118 women. Int J Hematol 66:159, 1997
59. Mimouni F, Tsang RC, Hertzbert VS, et al: Parathyroid hormone and calcitriol changes in normal and insulin-dependent diabetic pregnancies. Obstet Gynecol 74:49, 1989
60. Montelongo A, Lasunción MA, Pallardo LF, et al: Longitudinal study of plasma lipoproteins and hormones during pregnancy in normal and diabetic women. Diabetes 41:1651, 1992
61. Moran P, Baylis PH, Lindheimer, et al: Glomerular ultrafiltration in normal and preeclamptic pregnancy. J Am Soc Nephrol 14:648, 2003
62. Morse M: Establishing a normal range for D-dimer levels through pregnancy to aid in the diagnosis of pulmonary embolism and deep vein thrombosis. J Thromb Haemost 2:1202, 2004
63. O'Leary P, Boyne P, Flett P, et al: Longitudinal assessment of changes in reproductive hormones during normal pregnancy. Clin Chem 35(5):667, 1991
64. Özerol E, Özerol I, Gökdeniz R, et al: Effect of smoking on serum concentrations of total homocysteine, folate, vitamin B_{12}, and nitric oxide in pregnancy: a preliminary study. Fetal Diagn Ther 19:145, 2004
65. Parente JV, Franco JG, Greene LJ, et al: Angiotensin-converting enzyme: serum levels during normal pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 135:586, 1979
66. Piechota W, Staszewski A: Reference ranges of lipids and apolipoproteins in pregnancy. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol 45:27, 1992
67. Pitkin RM, Gebhardt MP: Serum calcium concentrations in human pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 127:775, 1977
68. Price A, Obel O, Cresswell J, et al: Comparison of thyroid function in pregnant and non-pregnant Asian and western Caucasian women. Clin Chim Acta 208:91, 2001
69. Qvist I, Abdulla M, Jägerstad M, et al: Iron, zinc and folate status during pregnancy and two months after delivery. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand 65:15, 1986
70. Radder JK, Van Roosmalen J: HbA1c in healthy, pregnant women. Neth J Med 63:256, 2005
71. Reiter EO, Braunstein GD, Vargas A, et al: Changes in 25-hydroxyvitamin D and 24,25-dihydroxyvitamin D during pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 135:227, 1979
72. Risberg A, Larsson A, Olsson K, et al: Relationship between urinary albumin and albumin/creatinine ratio during normal pregnancy and preeclampsia. Scand J Clin Lab Invest 64:17, 2004
73. Romslo I, Haram K, Sagen N, et al: Iron requirement in normal pregnancy as assessed by serum ferritin, serum transferrin saturation and erythrocyte protoporphyrin determinations. BJOG 90:101, 1983
74. Shakhmatova EI, Osipova NA, Natochin YV: Changes in osmolality and blood serum ion concentrations in pregnancy. Hum Physiol 26:92, 2000

75. Sharma SC, Sabra A, Molloy A, et al: Comparison of blood levels of histamine and total ascorbic acid in pre-eclampsia with normal pregnancy. Hum Nutr Clin Nutr 38C:3, 1984
76. Shivvers SA, Wians FH, Keffer JH, et al: Maternal cardiac troponin I levels during labor and delivery. Am J Obstet Gynecol 180:122, 1999
77. Singh HJ, Mohammad NH, Nila A: Serum calcium and parathormone during normal pregnancy in Malay women. J Matern Fetal Med 8:95, 1999
78. Spiropoulos K, Prodromaki E, Tsapanos V: Effect of body position on Pao_2 and $Paco_2$ during pregnancy. Gynecol Obstet Invest 58:22, 2004
79. Spitzer M, Kaushal N, Benjamin F: Maternal CA-125 levels in pregnancy and the puerperium. J Reprod Med 43(4):387, 1998
80. Strickland DM, Hauth JC, Widish J, et al: Amylase and isoamylase activities in serum of pregnant women. Obstet Gynecol 63:389, 1984
81. Suri D, Moran J, Hibbard JU, et al: Assessment of adrenal reserve in pregnancy: defining the normal response to the adrenocorticotropin stimulation test. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 91:3866, 2006
82. Van Buul EJA, Steegers EAP, Jongsma HW, et al: Haematological and biochemical profile of uncomplicated pregnancy in nulliparous women: a longitudinal study. Neth J Med 46:73, 1995
83. van den Broek NR, Letsky EA: Pregnancy and the erythrocyte sedimentation rate. BJOG 108:1164, 2001
84. Walker MC, Smith GN, Perkins SL, et al: Changes in homocysteine levels during normal pregnancy. Am J Obstet Gynecol 180:660, 1999
85. Wickström K, Edelstam G, Löwbeer CH, et al: Reference intervals for plasma levels of fibronectin, von Willebrand factor, free protein S and antithrombin during third-trimester pregnancy. Scand J Clin Lab Invest 64:31, 2004

REFERENCES: APPENDIX II

Savu O, Jurcuţ R, Giuşcă S, et al: Morphological and functional adaptation of the maternal heart during pregnancy. Circ Cardiovasc Imaging 5:289, 2012
Vitarelli A, Capotosto L: Role of echocardiography in the assessment and management of adult congenital heart disease in pregnancy. Int J Cardiovasc Imaging 27(6):843, 2011

REFERENCES: APPENDIX III

Ananth CV, Vintzileos, Shen-Schwarz S, et al: Standards of birth weight in twin gestations. Obstet Gynecol 91:917, 1998
Daya S, Woods S, Ward S, et al: Early pregnancy assessment with transvaginal ultrasound scanning. CMAJ 144(4):441, 1991
Chervenak FA, Jeanty P, Cantraine F, et al: The diagnosis of fetal microcephaly. Am J Obstet Gynecol 149(5):512, 1984
Chitkara J, Rosenberg J, Chervenak FA, et al: Prenatal sonographic assessment of the fetal thorax: normal values. Am J Obstet Gynecol 156:1069, 1987
Chitty LS, Altman DG: Charts of fetal size: limb bones. BJOG 109(8):919, 2002
Hadlock FP, Harrist RB, Marinez-Poyer J: In utero analysis of fetal growth: a sonographic weight standard. Radiology 181:129, 1991
Hadlock FP, Shah YP, Kanon DJ, et al: Fetal crown-rump length: reevaluation of relation to menstrual age (5-18 weeks) with high-resolution real-time US. Radiology 182(2):501, 1992
Kofinas AD, Espeland MA, Penry M, et al: Uteroplacental Doppler flow velocimetry waveform indices in normal pregnancy: a statistical exercise and the development of appropriate references values. Am J Perinatol 9:94, 1992
Nyberg DA, Mack LA, Laing FC, et al: Distinguishing normal from abnormal gestational sac growth in early pregnancy. J Ultrasound Med 6(1):23, 1987
Robinson HP, Fleming JE: A critical evaluation of sonar "crown-rump length" measurements. BJOG 82(9):702, 1975
Romero R, Pilu G, Jeanty P, et al: Prenatal diagnosis of congenital anomalies. Norwalk, Appleton & Lange, 1988, p 83
Sherer DM, Sokolovski M, Dalloul M, et al: Nomograms of the axial fetal cerebellar hemisphere circumference and area throughout gestation. Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol 29(1):32, 2007